CAMBRIDGE GRAMMAR OF ENGLISH

A COMPREHENSIVE GUIDE

Spoken and Written English
Grammar and Usage

CD-ROM
INCLUDED

CAMBRIDGE INTERNATIONAL CORPUS
REAL ENGLISH GUARANTEE

RONALD CARTER
MICHAEL McCARTHY

CAMBRIDGE

CAMBRIDGE GRAMMAR OF ENGLISH

A COMPREHENSIVE GUIDE

Spoken and Written English
Grammar and Usage

RONALD CARTER
MICHAEL McCARTHY

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom
One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA
477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia
4843/24, 2nd Floor, Ansari Road, Daryaganj, Delhi – 110002, India
79 Anson Road, #06–04/06, Singapore 079906

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9780521581660

© Cambridge University Press 2006

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2006
20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9

Printed by Vivar Printing, Malaysia

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-0-521-58846-1 Paperback
ISBN 978-0-521-58166-0 Hardcover
ISBN 978-0-521-67439-3 Paperback and CD ROM
ISBN 978-0-521-85767-3 Hardcover and CD ROM
ISBN 978-0-521-58845-4 Network CD ROM

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

The Authors

Professor Ronald Carter is Professor of Modern English Language in the School of English Studies, University of Nottingham. He has published extensively in the fields of language education, applied linguistics and literary-linguistic studies. He is co-author of *Exploring Spoken English* and *Exploring Grammar in Context*, and co-editor of *The Cambridge Guide to Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages* for Cambridge ELT.

Professor Michael McCarthy is Emeritus Professor of Applied Linguistics in the School of English Studies, University of Nottingham. He has also published extensively on corpora, vocabulary and discourse. He is the co-author of several of the *Vocabulary in Use* titles, *Exploring Spoken English* and *Exploring Grammar in Context* as well as a number of applied linguistics titles for Cambridge ELT.

The Cambridge Grammar Reference Panel

The Cambridge Grammar Reference Panel is a group of eminent and experienced applied linguists and teachers of English who have collaborated with the publisher and authors in the development of the *Cambridge Grammar of English*.

The panel members have contributed to workshops, commented on draft chapters and generously offered their time, advice and support during various stages of the project.

Professor Karin Aijmer, Gothenburg University
Dr Franz Andres Morrissey, University of Bern
Dra. Pilar Aguado Giménez, Universidad de Murcia
Dr Jean Hudson, Malmö University
Professor Susan Hunston, University of Birmingham
Dr Anne O'Keeffe, Mary Immaculate College, University of Limerick
Ms Marilyn Lewis, University of Auckland
Mr Keith Mitchell, Edinburgh University
Professor Sophia Papaefthymiou-Lytra, University of Athens
Professor Svetlana Ter-Minasova, Moscow State University
Professor Masanori Toyota, Kansaigaidai University

Ms Geraldine Mark, Project manager, UK

To Jane and Jeanne

Acknowledgements

AUTHORS' ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

In relation to a huge book such as this one, which has been some seven years in the writing, many colleagues and other scholars have been influential in our thinking and have directly or indirectly influenced the content and wording of the grammar as it is now published. Some names deserve a special expression of our gratitude.

First and foremost we thank the Cambridge Grammar Reference Panel, whose names are listed on the preceding page. Without the input and inspiration of the panel, the book would have lacked much in terms of accuracy, organisation and detail. In particular we thank Karin Aijmer, Franz Andres Morrissey, Susan Hunston, Marilyn Lewis, Keith Mitchell and Anne O'Keeffe for their most thorough and meticulously detailed reports on the various versions of the manuscript and their suggestions, always an improvement on our attempts, for revision. Special thanks also go to Jean Hudson, who began as our research assistant for the project and taught us a great deal about searching corpora, and who later became a member of the Cambridge Grammar Reference Panel in its initial stages.

Cambridge University Press has given us outstanding and unfailing support from the outset. First and foremost, thanks must go to Colin Hayes, Group Director of ELT at the Press from 1988 to 2003, whose vision and willingness to back this project effectively started the whole enterprise. It was Colin, along with Jeanne McCarten, to whom we also owe a huge debt, who saw the significance of developments in corpus linguistics and their implications for English Language Teaching and, as a result, was prepared to make the commitment on behalf of CUP to the building of the CANCODE spoken corpus and the commissioning of this grammar. In its latter phase of development, we have enjoyed continued support and unstinting commitment from Colin Hayes' successor, Andrew Gilfillan, and from our commissioning editor, Alison Sharpe. Alison has steered the project with immense skill and provided us with inspiration, encouragement and good advice. The day-to-day running of the project has been expertly managed by Geraldine Mark, who brought to it her considerable experience as an English language teacher and ELT editor, along with an unerring instinct for how best to present the grammar. By a small-world coincidence, Michael McCarthy was first introduced to the complexities and pleasures of English grammar as a schoolboy by Geraldine's father, Brian Mark, who taught English at Saint Illtyd's College Grammar School, Cardiff, when Michael was a pupil there. Brian Mark, like his daughter, deserves a special thank-you.

CUP also supplied us with corpora and expert computational support from Patrick Gillard, Paul Heacock, Andrew Harley, Ann Fiddes and Dominic Glennon, to all of whom we say thank you. In the final stages of preparing the bulky manuscript for publication, we were privileged to have the editorial expertise, vast experience and eagle-eye of Thérèse Tobin to assist us; Thérèse made invaluable suggestions for clarifying our sometimes unclear statements. Linda Matthews steered the book through its final stages of production; she too deserves our thanks, as do Jane Durkin and Alex Priestley for sales and marketing campaigns. Thanks are also due to Linda Hardcastle for showing such understanding of a long and complex book in the compilation of the index.

A huge amount of background research went into the grammar, and, in addition to Jean Hudson, who worked as a researcher on the project in its earliest stages, we wish particularly to thank Svenja Adolphs, Julia Harrison and Jane Evison for their work in developing the CANCODE spoken corpus and their insightful investigations of it. Without their support as co-researchers, we would have been overwhelmed by the sheer volume of data.

Among university colleagues both authors have shared over the years, certain figures stand out as having profoundly influenced us. John Sinclair was, and remains, the most important inspiration and mentor for us both; his scholarship is unmatched in its originality, breadth and depth. He and other colleagues at the universities of Birmingham and Nottingham have moulded us academically into what we are today; those figures include Margaret Berry, David Brazil, Malcolm Coulthard, Michael Hoey and Walter Nash.

Other British-based colleagues and friends who have supported us and given us ideas and inspiration over the years include Dave Allan, Michael Baynham, Bethan Benwell, Chris Brumfit, Martin Bygate, Lynne Cameron, Joanna Channell, Caroline Coffin, Guy Cook, Sandra Cornbleet, Justine Coupland, David Crystal, Joan Cutting, Zoltán Dörnyei, Amorey Gethin, Sarah Grandage, Peter Grundy, Michael Handford, Martin Hewings, Ann Hewings, Sue Horner, Rebecca Hughes, Howard Jackson, Martha Jones, Almut Koester, Geoffrey Leech, Michael Lewis, Janet Maybin, Tony McEnery, Neil Mercer, Ros Mitchell, Louise Mullany, Felicity O'Dell, David Oakey, Kieran O'Halloran, Antoinette Renouf, John Richmond, Mario Rinvolucri, Paul Roberts, Norbert Schmitt, Mike Scott, Alison Sealey, Paul Simpson, Roger Smith, Peter Stockwell, Michael Swan, Paul Thompson, Ivor Timmis, Brian Tomlinson, Alistair West, Janet White, David Willis, Jane Willis, Alison Wray and Martin Wynne.

From universities and other institutions overseas, inspiration, ideas and friendly support came to us from Jens Allwood, Carolina Amador Moreno, Gabriela Appel, Michael Barlow, Douglas Biber, James Binchy, Anne Burns, Dermot Campbell, Christopher Candlin, Marianne Celce-Murcia, Wallace Chafe, Angela Chambers, Winnie Cheng, Margaret Childs, Brian Clancy, Sylvia de Cock, Susan Conrad, Fiona Farr, Tony Fitzpatrick, Loretta Fung, Sylviane Granger, Carmen Gregori Signes, Michael Halliday, Kieran Harrington, Ruquiya Hasan, Kent Hill, San San Hnin Tun, Paul Hopper, Ken Hyland, Yoshihiko Ikegami, Karen Johnson, Celeste Kinginger, James Lantolf, Diane Larsen-Freeman, Anna Mauranen, Nigel McQuitty, John McRae, Marty Meinardi, Freda Mishan, Bróna Murphy, David Nunan, Aisling O'Boyle, María Palma Fahey, Aneta Pavlenko, Scott Payne, Luke Prodromou, Nikoleta Rapti, Randi Reppen, Antonia Sánchez Macarro, Helen Sandiford, Elana Shohamy, Rita Simpson, Anoma Siriwardena, Diana Slade, Carol Spöttl, Jeff Stranks, Susan Strauss, Merrill Swain, John Swales, Gerry Sweeney, Hongyin Tao, Steven Thorne, Elena Tognini-Bonelli, Geoff Tranter, Amy Tsui, Koen Van Landeghem, Elaine Vaughan, Mary Vaughn, Steve Walsh, Shih-Ping Wang, Martin Warren, Linda Waugh, Fiona Wheeler, Geoff Williams, Brent Wolter and Xuelian Xu.

Others too many to mention have inspired us with conference papers and published work, and to all of them we owe a debt of gratitude. Whatever shortcomings remain in the book, they must rest entirely at our door.

Ronald Carter
Michael McCarthy
Nottingham, 2005

PUBLISHERS' ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Development of this publication has made use of the Cambridge International Corpus (CIC). The CIC is a computerised database of contemporary spoken and written English which currently stands at 700 million words. It includes British English, American English and other varieties of English. It also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, developed in collaboration with the University of Cambridge ESOL Examinations. Cambridge University Press has built up the CIC to provide evidence about language use that helps to produce better language teaching materials.

The author and publishers are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce copyright material. It has not always been possible to identify the source of material used or to contact the copyright holders and in such cases the publishers would welcome information from the copyright owners.

We are grateful to Pearson Education for retrospective permission to quote the following sections from Sidney Greenbaum, *An Introduction to English Grammar* (Longman, 1991): p182 11.21–27; p.195 11.12–18; p197 11.6–18; p.198 11.15–26, p.210 11.12–18.

We are grateful to the author Michael Swan and Oxford University Press for retrospective permission to quote sections from *Practical English Usage* (OUP, 1995) as examples of key elements of usage. We wish to thank Michael Swan for his advice to us in the handling of these examples and for kindly suggesting some corrections and amendments to the text of the book which we have adopted in this reprinted version. We continue to find the examples and clarity of explanation provided in Michael Swan's book (now 3rd edition, OUP, 2005) of great inspiration.

Advertisement for Satellite trainers, with the kind permission of Reebok International Limited; Unilever UK for, 'I can't believe it's not butter'; Nabisco Foods for, 'Fruitful from Shredded Wheat'; Kraft Foods for, 'Enjoy the smooth, silky taste of Creamery butter'; extracts from the online website of Save the Children Fund, reproduced with the permission of Save the Children; extracts from *The Guardian* and *The Observer* © Guardian Newspapers Limited; for extracts from *Absolute Truths* by Susan Howatch, *The Black Opal* by Victoria Holt, *The Conviction of Guilt* by Lew Matthews, *Codebreaker* by Alastair MacNeill, *The Devil's Door* by Alastair MacNeill, *Dreams of Innocence* by Lisa Appignanesi, *Family Blessings* by Lavyrle Spencer, *Final Resort* by Ian St. James, *For the Love of a Stranger* by Erin Pizzey, *The Glasgow Girls* by Francis Paige, *The Open Door* by Alan Sillitoe, *Rushing to Paradise* by J.G.Ballard, *Testimonies* by Patrick O'Brian and *Walking Back to Happiness* by Helen Shapiro, © HarperCollins Publishers; for extracts from *Desperadoes* by Joseph O'Connor, reproduced by permission of HarperCollins Publishers and Blake Friedmann Literary Agency © Joseph O'Connor, 1994; for extracts from *Lost Children* by Maggie Gee by permission of HarperCollins Publishers and Curtis Brown Group, © Maggie Gee; for extracts from *Yellow Bird* by Trudi Pacter, by permission of HarperCollins and the author; for extracts from *An Indecent Act* by Maria Barrett, *The Ambassador* by Edwina Currie, *Dead & Gone* by Dorothy Simpson, *Siena Summer* by Teresa Crane, *Two Gentlemen Sharing* by William Corlett, *Solomon Grundy* by Dan Gooch, *The Scholar* by Courttia Newland and *What Treasure did Next* by Gina Davidson, © Little, Brown and Company; for extracts from *The Keepers* by Pauline Kirk, by permission of Little, Brown and Company and David Grossman Literary Agency on behalf of the author; for extracts from *Another Kind of Cinderella* by Angela Huth, © Angela Huth 1995, reproduced by permission of Little, Brown and Company, Felicity Bryan Agency and the author; for extracts from *Every Man for Himself* by Beryl Bainbridge, by permission of Little, Brown and Company and Johnson and Alcock on behalf of the author; for extracts from *Like* by Ali Smith, by permission of Ali Smith, Xandia Hardie and Little, Brown and Company; extracts from *The Waiting Game* by Bernice Rubens are reproduced by permission of Little, Brown and Company and PFD (www.pfd.co.uk) on behalf of The Estate of Bernice Rubens; for extracts from *Transgressions* by Sarah Dunant, by permission of Little, Brown and Company and Gillon Aitken on behalf of the author; for extracts from *The Angry Mountain* by Hammond Innes, *Arcadia* by Jim Crace, *Carn* by Patrick McCabe, and *Ever After* by Graham Swift, © Macmillan; for extracts from *Cast the First Stone* by Jane Adams, by permission of Macmillan and the author; for extracts from *A Green Bag Affair* by Paul Geddes, *Harvey Angell* by Diana Hendry, *Flight from the Dark, Lone Wolf 1* by John Denver © The Random House Group Ltd; for extracts from *The Tenancy* by Eva Figes by permission of The Random House Group Ltd and Rogers, Coleridge & White Ltd on behalf of the author; for texts from *Act of Valour* by Emma Drummond, *Charlotte Street* by Juliette Mead, *Death Before Dishonour* by Barnaby Williams, *Fault Lines* by Natasha Cooper, *The Keeper* by Eileen MacDonald, *Miles & Flora* by Hilary Bailey, *Mr MacGregor* by Alan Titchmarsh, *Sentimental Journey* by Juliette Mead and *Sour Grapes* by Natasha Cooper, © Simon & Schuster.

Excerpts from the following works are also included:
Emma, Mansfield Park and *Northanger Abbey*, by Jane Austen; *The Tenant of Wildfell Hall*, by Anne Brontë; *A Tale of Two Cities*, *Dombey and Son* and *Great Expectations*, by Charles Dickens; *The Mill on the Floss*, by George Eliot; *The Mayor of Casterbridge*, *Far from the Madding Crowd* and *Tess of the D'Urbervilles*, by Thomas Hardy; *Lady Chatterley's Lover*, by D H Lawrence; *Anna Karenina*, by Leo Tolstoy; *Lord Arthur Savile's Crime*, by Oscar Wilde; *To the Lighthouse*, *The Waves* and *Mrs Dalloway*, by Virginia Woolf.

The following are reproduced with permission of Cambridge University Press: extracts from *Behavioural and Cognitive Psychotherapy* (2002); *Cambridge Advanced Learners' Dictionary*; *Cambridge Encyclopaedia*, Crystal; *Contemporary European History*, 2001, 10 (3); *Environmental Conservation*, (2001); *Environment and Development Economics* (2002); *International Review of Social History*, 46 (2001); *Issues in Applied Linguistics*, McCarthy; *Journal of American Studies*, 2001 35 (1): *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 2002; *Journal of Nutrition*, 1993; *Journal of Social Policy* (2002); *Journal of Zoology* (2002); *Materials Development in Language Teaching*, Tomlinson; *More Grammar Games*, Rinvolucri and Davis; *New Cambridge English Course*, Swan and Walter; *New Horizons/Science*; *Key stage 3 Science*, 1995; *Review of International Studies* (2001), 27:265–272 Cambridge University Press Copyright © 2001 British International Studies Association; *Revolutions*, Todd; *The Historical Journal* (2001); *The Politics of the Picturesque*, Copley; *Vocabulary*, Schmitt and McCarthy.

Thanks go to the British National Corpus for extracts from the following works: *A Song Twice Over* by Brenda Jagger, Imprint: Fontana Press, 1994; *Billion Dollar Brain* by Len Deighton, Imprint: Arrow Books; *Chymical Wedding* by Lindsay Clarke, Imprint: Jonathan Cape; *The Child Bride* by Philippa Wait, Imprint: Robert Hale Ltd; *Daughters of the Moon* by Susan Sallis, Imprint: Corgi Books; *Frankenstein* by Patrick Nobes, Imprint: OUP, 1994; *Green and Pleasant Land* by Howard Newby, Imprint: Wildwood House; *House of Cards* by Michael Dobbs, Imprint: HarperCollins, 1994; *Jane's Journey* by Jean Bow, Imprint: Hodder & Stoughton Ltd, 1994; *Murder Makes an Entrée* by Amy Myers, Imprint: Headline Book Publishing plc, 1994; *Nice Work* by David Lodge, Imprint: Secker & Warburg, 1994; *Roads that Move* by Walter Perrie, Imprint: Mainstream Publishing Co. Ltd; *Sons of Heaven* by Terence Strong, Imprint: Hodder & Stoughton Ltd.

Contents

Note: the numbers are section numbers, not page numbers.

There are more detailed contents pages at the start of each chapter.

Introduction to the Cambridge Grammar of English 1–4
From word to grammar: an A–Z 5–18

Spoken language

Introduction to grammar and spoken English 82–91
From utterance to discourse 92–103
From discourse to social contexts 104–122

Grammar and discourse

Grammar across turns and sentences 123–139
Grammar and academic English 140–154

Word and phrase classes

Introduction to word classes and phrase classes 155–166

Nouns

The noun phrase 167–175
Nouns and determiners 176–196
Pronouns 197–212

Verbs

Verb phrase 1: structure of verb phrases 213–216
Verb phrase 2: tense and aspect 217–226
Types of verb 227–235

Adjectives and adverbs

Adjectives and adjective phrases 236–241
Adverbs and adverb phrases 242–249

Prepositions and particles

Prepositions and prepositional phrases 250–257

Word formation

Word structure and word formation 258–268

Sentence and clause patterns

Introduction to sentences and clauses 269–280
Verb complementation 281–289
Clause types 290–303
Clause combination 304–318
Adjuncts 319–337

Time

Present time 338–345
Past time 346–360
Future time 361–376

Notions and functions

Modality 377–407
Speech acts 408–423
Questions 424–433
Negation 434–447
Condition 448–459
Comparison 460–471

Information packaging

Word order and focus 472–475
The passive 476–487
Speech representation 488–502

Appendices

Word clusters and grammar 503–505
Punctuation 506
English spelling 507–511
Numbers 512–525
Referring to the time 526
Units of measurement 527
Nationalities, countries and regions 528
Irregular verbs 529
North American English grammar 530–538

Glossary 539

Bibliography 540

Index 541

Introduction to the *Cambridge Grammar of English*

- **What is grammar?** 1
  - Arrangement of items (syntax) 1a
  - Structure of items (morphology) 1b
  - Acceptable and unacceptable forms 1c
  - Vocabulary (lexis) 1d
  - Phrases 1e
  - Clauses 1f
  - Classes of word, phrase and clause 1g
  - Functions 1h
  - Sounds (phonology) 1i
  - Choices 1j
- **What is the *Cambridge Grammar of English*?** 2
  - Usage and acceptability 2a
  - Grammar rules: deterministic and probabilistic 2b
  - Descriptive versus prescriptive approach 2c
  - Grammar as structure and grammar as choice 2d
  - Grammar and lexis 2e
  - Grammar and discourse 2f
  - Grammar and variation: the importance of context 2g
  - Grammar and the spoken language 2h
- **Grammar and corpus data** 3
  - What is a corpus? 3a
  - Using the corpus 3b
  - Information on frequency 3c
  - Information on concordance 3d
  - Deciding what to include 3e
  - Insights into use 3f
  - Word clusters 3g
  - Frequent, common and preferred patterns 3h
  - Learner corpus 3i
- **How *CGE* is organised** 4
  - From word to grammar: an A–Z 4a
  - Topic chapters 4b
  - Appendices 4c
  - Glossary 4d
  - Index 4e

Introduction to the *Cambridge Grammar of English*

WHAT IS GRAMMAR? 1

Grammar is concerned with how sentences and utterances are formed. In a typical English sentence, we can see the two most basic principles of grammar, the arrangement of items (syntax) and the structure of items (morphology):

I gave my sister a sweater for her birthday.

Arrangement of items (syntax) 1a

The meaning of this sentence is obviously created by words such as *gave*, *sister*, *sweater* and *birthday*. But there are other words (*I*, *my*, *a*, *for*, *her*) which contribute to the meaning, and, additionally, aspects of the individual words and the way they are arranged which enable us to interpret what the sentence means. For example, we know it is *I* who gave the sweater, not *my sister*, because *I* comes before the verb (*gave*). In English, subjects (the doers of actions) come before verbs in statements. We also know the relationship between the indirect object, *my sister*, and the direct object, *a sweater*, (that *the sweater* was given and *my sister* was the recipient) because indirect objects come before direct objects. We also expect *my* to come before *sister*, not after. These aspects of the arrangement of things in sentences is referred to as syntax. Syntax is one of the two basic principles of grammar.

Structure of items (morphology) 1b

The example sentence also illustrates the other basic principle of grammar. *I* and *my* are two different forms, one with a subject meaning, the other with a possessive meaning, even though they both refer to the same person. *Gave* refers to past time, in contrast to *give(s)*, which refers to present time. *Sweater* is singular; if there were more than one sweater, the form would be *sweaters*. These small items of meaning, such as *I*, *my*, the past form *gave*, a plural *-s* ending, are called grammatical morphemes, and come under the heading of morphology. Morphology is concerned with the structure of words and phrases. It is the second basic principle of grammar.

Acceptable and unacceptable forms 1c

Grammar is concerned with acceptable and unacceptable forms and the distinctions of meaning these forms create. The fact that *sweater* means 'knitted outer garment worn on the upper part of the body for warmth' and that *sister* means 'female sibling' are matters of vocabulary (lexis), but the distinction between present and past, one and more than one, subject and object, possession and non-possession, etc., are matters of grammar. In every language, some forms are acceptable and others are not. So, in English, we can create arrangements of our example sentence which are not acceptable, either syntactically or morphologically:

> *I my sister gave a sweater for birthday her.*
>
> *Gave I my sister a sweaters for his birthday.*
>
> *I gives my sisters sweater a for her birthday.*

In this grammar book, we indicate unacceptable forms with a line through the text:

> ~~I my sister gave a sweater for birthday her.~~

Vocabulary (lexis) 1d

Although some aspects of our example sentence are concerned with lexis, lexis and grammar are not totally independent. A 'sweater' is the kind of thing in the world that English treats as countable (we may have one, two or more of them). However, if I gave my sister 'information', the fact that information is an abstract entity, which English considers to be uncountable, affects the grammar, and the sentence would have to be *I gave my sister some information*. 'I gave my sister an information' would be an unacceptable form.

Phrases 1e

Our initial example sentence may also be seen as composed of units or building blocks of different sizes, not just individual words and their endings. For example, the sentence could be divided up thus:

> *I | gave | my sister | a sweater | for her birthday.*

We have now divided the sentence into its constituent phrases (items which have individual functions in the sentence). It is the phrase *a sweater* which acts as the object, not just the word *sweater*, and the whole phrase *for her birthday* indicates the reason or circumstances of the giving.

Clauses 1f

We could extend the example sentence:

> *I gave my sister a sweater for her birthday* and *she bought me a CD for mine*.

We can now see two larger building blocks (in green) in the sentence, connected by *and*. These are clauses (separate units containing their own verbs: *gave/bought*). Grammar is concerned with how the constituent units of sentences (morphemes, words, phrases and clauses) are put together to form sentences.

Classes of word, phrase and clause 1g

Words are not all of the same type. Some, such as *sweater* and *sister*, are nouns (words referring to entities: persons, things, animals, abstract concepts); some, such as *gave* and *bought*, are verbs (words referring to actions, events or states); and so on. These words belong to different classes.

Equally, the phrases belong to different classes: *for her birthday* and *for mine* are prepositional phrases (phrases introduced by prepositions).

Clauses too belong to classes: some are declarative (they have the subject first and typically make statements), some are interrogative (they have a verb such as *do*, *be* or *have* first, and typically ask questions). Grammar is concerned with how units and classes relate to one another.

Functions 1h

The noun phrases *my sister*, *a sweater* are types of object in our example sentence in 1f, and *for my birthday* and *for mine* are operating as phrases indicating the circumstances. They are referred to as adjuncts. The terms subject, verb, object, adjunct refer to the functions the different phrase-types carry out in the clause. Grammar describes what the acceptable functions are.

Sounds (phonology) 1i

How sentences are spoken is also relevant. The sentence *I do like your car*, on the face of it, seems to break the rule that *do* is not used in statements. However, if the sentence is spoken with appropriate stress, then it becomes acceptable. This is the emphatic *do*, which may be used in statements:

I do like your car.

Phonology (the sound systems of a language) is therefore also connected in important ways with grammar and lexis, and influences the interpretation of sentences.

Choices 1j

Throughout the construction of a sentence, the speaker/writer makes choices. Choices involve things such as number (singular or plural), tense (present or past), definiteness (***a*** *sweater* versus ***the*** *sweater*), etc. Every choice carries a different meaning, and grammar is concerned with the implications of such choices.

WHAT IS THE *CAMBRIDGE GRAMMAR OF ENGLISH*? 2

Usage and acceptability 2a

This book is a grammar of standard British English. Standard British English is a variety of English defined by its grammar, lexis and phonology. There are, of course, other standard varieties of English, for example, standard North American English or standard Indian English or standard Australian English, which may differ quite considerably in terms of pronunciation, but only minimally as far as grammar is concerned. ⇢ **Appendix 530–538** for particular differences in North American English grammar.

However, issues of acceptability are never far from the surface when there is reference to what is standard in grammar or in language use in general. In this book, the following main categories of British English are adopted:

- acceptable in standard written and spoken English (most forms are in this category)
- acceptable in standard written and spoken English but not approved in more prescriptive grammar books and often avoided by many writers of formal English; for example: split infinitives, stranded prepositions, choices between *who* and *whom*
- unacceptable in standard written English but acceptable in standard spoken English (⇢ for example **96** and **97** on **headers and tails**)
- unacceptable in standard written and spoken English but acceptable in many regional varieties of English (⇢ for example **119b** on the use of ***ain't***); such forms are not included in the main description in this book, and are simply referred to occasionally
- unacceptable in all varieties of English (for example a structure such as *he did must speak*); such forms are excluded from this book.*

Where possible in this book, we always give an indication if a particular grammatical usage is likely to be considered non-standard, but we also indicate in which contexts such usage may nonetheless pass unnoticed.

Grammar rules: deterministic and probabilistic 2b

The general lay person's perspective is that grammar is about rules of speaking and writing, but not all 'rules' given by grammarians are of the same kind.

Some rules are deterministic, that is, they are rules which always apply. For example, the definite article always comes before the noun (we say *the cup*, not *cup the*), or indicative third person singular present tense lexical verbs always end in *-s* (we say *she works*, not *she work*).

Other rules are probabilistic, that is to say, they state what is most likely or least likely to apply in particular circumstances. For example, in the overwhelming majority of cases, a relative pronoun (e.g. *who*, *which*, *that*) must be used to refer to the subject of a relative clause:

*We met a woman **who** had lived in Berlin during the 1980s.*

However, in informal spoken styles, the relative pronoun may often be omitted, especially after a *there* construction:

There was a shop in the village sold home-made ice cream.
(or: There was a shop in the village which/that sold home-made ice cream.)

---

* Our thanks to Susan Hunston for suggesting this list of categories.

It is not a rule that the relative pronoun **must** be omitted; it **can** be omitted. The rules concerning its use are therefore probabilistic (it is most probable in most cases that the relative pronoun will be used). In this book, many of the rules given are probabilistic, since they are based on observations of what is most likely and least likely in different contexts in real spoken and written data.

Descriptive versus prescriptive approach 2c

A descriptive approach to grammar is based on observations of usage; it states how people use the grammar of a language. A prescriptive approach to grammar is based on the idea that some forms are more 'correct' or more associated with 'good usage' than others. Prescriptive rules are often social rules that are believed to mark out a speaker or writer as educated or as belonging to a particular social class. Examples of prescriptive rules are:

> DO **NOT** END A SENTENCE WITH A PREPOSITION.
> (e.g. Do not say *This is something you should not be involved* ***in***; say *This is something* ***in which*** *you should not be involved*)
>
> DO **NOT** SPLIT AN INFINITIVE.
> (e.g. Do not say *I expect* ***to*** *shortly* ***welcome*** *him here*; say *I expect* ***to welcome*** *him here shortly*)

Examples are given throughout the book of contexts of use in which prescriptive rules do or do not apply, where this is useful to language learners. The book also contains a number of specially written panels that highlight common prescriptive rules, discuss attitudes to the rules and examine how they do or do not apply in different contexts of use (➜ for example **337**).

The main approach taken in this book is descriptive. The emphasis throughout the book is on describing the ways in which speakers and writers of English use the language to communicate with one another, as evidenced in large numbers of spoken and written texts from all over the British English community. The approach taken is, we believe, compatible with a pedagogical grammar which is written primarily for advanced learners of English. It is therefore important that learners are aware of the social importance which attaches to certain prescriptive rules while at the same time being aware of the way in which English is used by real speakers and writers of the language. Issues relevant to a learner's grammar are explored further at several places below.

Grammar as structure and grammar as choice 2d

The book regularly draws attention to the implications of different grammatical choices and gives the user opportunities to observe and learn about grammatical choices in relation to particular contexts in which the language is used.

The *Cambridge Grammar of English (CGE)* makes a distinction between grammar as structure and grammar as choice. Grammar as structure means: What rules does one need to know in order to construct a sentence or clause appropriately? An example of a structural rule would be that the determiner *none* must be followed by *of* (*none of my friends*, as opposed to *none my friends*).

On the other hand, grammar frequently involves ellipsis, which is the absence of words which can be understood from the surrounding text or from the situation. For example the ellipsis of the subject noun or pronoun in expressions such as *Looking forward to seeing you*, *Don't know* and *Think so* is largely the speaker's/writer's interpersonal choice. Interpersonal choices are choices which are sensitive to the relationship between the speaker/writer and the listener/reader. In such a case as this, grammar as choice means: When is it normal to use ellipsis? Are some forms of ellipsis more likely to be used in spoken than in written modes? What kinds of relationship does it project between speakers and listeners? Are the forms linked to greater or lesser degrees of intimacy and informality?

Another example of grammar as choice would be the use of the past simple and the past progressive tense in reported speech. For example, the most frequent form of speech report is the past simple, as in:

*She **said** the central heating needed to be repaired.*

But the past progressive form can also be used. This is especially common in spoken rather than in written English as speakers can choose to express reports as 'pieces of news' rather than as representations of people's words:

*She **was saying** that she's going to quit her job.*

Both forms of *say* are acceptable but the progressive form is less frequent. It is, however, a choice which speakers or writers can make in particular contexts. In this book, both grammar as structure and grammar as choice are treated, and the grammar of choice is as important as the grammar of structure.

Grammar and lexis 2e

Grammar does not exist separately from other levels of language. There is a close link between grammar and lexis and in this book attention is given to the meaning, structure and formation of individual words. There are also many places in the book where grammatical choices entail particular choices of vocabulary, or vice versa.

The book reflects recent computer-assisted research, which shows the patterned relationship between vocabulary and grammar. For example, the pattern of about twenty verbs in English is verb + *by* + *-ing*, where the verb is followed by the preposition *by* and an *-ing* clause. Most verbs of this kind fall into two main groups, one group meaning 'start' or 'finish', the other group meaning 'respond to' or 'compensate for' something. For example:

*They **started off** by collecting money for children's charities.*

*She **concluded** by singing three songs in Italian.*

*They **responded to** the news by cutting off all communication with the outside world.*

*He **allowed for** the bend by braking sharply.*

Experienced users of English recognise such patterns intuitively but it is often only when computer analysis demonstrates the patterns across many examples of use that they are fully acknowledged. Description of such patterns is becoming a more established feature of many modern grammar books. *CGE* is no exception and lists of words which behave in similar ways to one another are frequently given.

Grammar and discourse 2f

Another important level of language organisation that has received detailed investigation in recent years is the level of discourse. Discourse refers to the patterns of language used beyond the level of the sentence or beyond the individual speaking turn. There has been much description of spoken discourse patterns (e.g. how people open and close conversations; how they organise their speaking turns) and also attention to the ways in which sentences combine to form coherent texts in writing. This book pays attention to such patterns and describes the cohesion of sentences – that is, the ways in which grammatical links across sentences or speakers' turns create coherent texts (⁘ **214**). Two chapters in this grammar (**123–139** and **140–154**) are devoted to grammar and discourse and to the way in which larger units of meaning are created.

In *CGE* it is not our aim to take a text and then extract atomised, grammatical points from it. Rather, texts are used to illustrate how grammatical meanings are created in actual use. The place, distribution and sequencing of the grammatical feature in its text and context are as important as its actual occurrence. This book is based on insights from the fields of text and discourse analysis, rather than just traditional sentence grammars. The emphasis in *CGE* is, wherever appropriate, on the relationship between choice of form and contextual factors.

In parts the book represents a first step towards a context-based or discourse grammar of English. For example, where it is appropriate, extracts from different written sources are clearly indicated and spoken exchanges are marked and explained with reference to particular contexts and speaker roles. For example,

> [public notice]
> *Vehicles parked* ***here*** *will be towed away.*
>
> [notice in a train compartment]
> ***These*** *seats are reserved for disabled customers.*
>
> [at a travel agent's; the customer has just received his tickets]
> Customer: *Right well* ***this*** *is all right now is it?*
> Agent: ***That****'s the ticket yes.*
> (what is *this* for the customer is *that* for the agent)

Grammar and variation: the importance of context 2g

Language variation takes many different forms. Language can vary in levels of formality; it can vary according to the regional or social groups to which speakers belong; it can vary over time; it can vary according to the uses to which it is put.

Certain types of language use are associated with particular forms of activity or registers and are marked by distinctive patterns of use, including distinctive patterns of grammar.

For example, cookery books and instructional manuals use many imperatives; newspaper headlines often deploy highly compressed forms of language; some forms of academic English make particular use of the passive voice; incomplete sentences are commonly used to highlight key information in advertisements and in radio and television news broadcasts. In conversation, too, the choice of one grammatical feature rather than another can depend on the speaker's perception of the relationship they have with other speakers, the formality of the situation or their assessment of the context in which they are communicating.

An important factor that affects the context of communication is whether the medium is spoken or written. Several parts of this book describe differences and distinctions between spoken and written grammar and indicate the different degrees of formality that affect choices of grammar. Wherever necessary to avoid ambiguity, information about the context in which examples typically function, whether predominantly spoken or written, is given. In *CGE* we are assisted in this practice by access to a corpus (⇢ **3a**), which is very carefully annotated with reference to contexts of use.

Grammar and the spoken language 2h

Most books on the grammar of English have had a bias towards the written language. For many centuries dictionaries and grammars of the English language have taken the written language as a benchmark for what is proper and standard in the language, incorporating written, often literary, examples to illustrate the best usage.

Accordingly, the spoken language has been downgraded and has come to be regarded as relatively inferior to written manifestations. Both in the teaching and learning of first, second and foreign languages, and in educational institutions and society in general, oral skills are normally less highly valued, with linguistic expertise being equated almost exclusively with a capacity to read and write.

Until recently, the forms and structures typically found in spoken communication have not been highlighted. It is only recently that advances in audio-recording and associated technology have enabled sufficient quantities of spoken language to be used for analysis. *CGE* draws for its examples of spoken English on the CANCODE corpus (⇢ **3a**). The CANCODE corpus is a collection of everyday informal spoken texts which provides very useful evidence of significant structures, especially as they are found in spontaneous, unplanned, conversational usage. Although the corpus has not been systematically coded for phonetic features and features of intonation, this book has an accompanying CD-ROM in which key sentences, conversational exchanges and patterns of use can be listened to.

A bias towards written grammar means that in some cases appropriate terms for describing particular features of spoken grammar are not available within existing grammatical frameworks. In some cases new ways of describing language (metalanguage) have to be introduced. An example is the use of the terms 'headers' and 'tails' (→ 96 and 97). Thus, structures such as:

> **header**
> *Her friend, Jill, the one we met in Portsmouth, **she** said they'd moved house.*
>
> **tail**
> ***He** always makes a lot of noise and fuss, Charlie.*

are unlikely to be found in written contexts but are standard spoken forms. These have, in the past, often been described using metaphors such as left- and right-dislocation, based on the way words are arranged on a page in western writing. We consider these inappropriate to describe spoken grammar, which exists in time, not space.

Another example of differences between spoken and written use involves voice (the choice of active or passive). Voice is more subtle and varied in the grammar of everyday conversation than is indicated in grammar books that focus only on written examples. There is, naturally, a focus on the core *be*-passive in contrast to the active voice, but when we look at a large amount of conversational data, we see that the *get*-passive form is much more frequent in spoken data than in comparable amounts of written data. At the same time it adds a further layer of choice, reflecting speakers' perceptions of good or bad fortune, or of the degree of involvement of the subject. For example:

> *I'm afraid his car window **got broken**.*
> (an unfortunate outcome)
>
> *She **got herself invited** to the official opening.*
> (*she* is seen as partly instrumental in being invited)

Detailed attention needs to be paid to such complex phenomena, which might otherwise be underplayed in a book based only on written examples. Where it is appropriate to do so, in *CGE* there is a thorough examination of spoken examples side by side with balanced written examples so that relevant differences can be revealed.

Some people argue that learners of English should not be presented with details of how native speakers speak. The position taken in this book is that such an approach would disadvantage learners. This book presents information about spoken grammar because it is important for learners to observe and to understand how and why speakers speak as they do. To describe these features does not mean that learners of English have to speak like native speakers. *CGE* presents the data so that teachers and learners can make their own informed choices.

GRAMMAR AND CORPUS DATA 3

What is a corpus? 3a

The word corpus has been used several times already in this introduction. A corpus is a collection of texts, usually stored in computer-readable form. Many of the examples in this book are taken from a multi-million-word corpus of spoken and written English called the Cambridge International Corpus (CIC). The corpus is international in that it draws on different national varieties of English (e.g. Irish, American). This corpus has been put together over many years and is composed of real texts taken from everyday written and spoken English. At the time of writing, the corpus contained over 700 million words of English. The CIC corpus contains a wide variety of different texts with examples drawn from contexts as varied as: newspapers, popular journalism, advertising, letters, literary texts, debates and discussions, service encounters, university tutorials, formal speeches, friends talking in restaurants, families talking at home.

One important feature of CIC is the special corpus of spoken English – the CANCODE corpus. CANCODE stands for Cambridge and Nottingham Corpus of Discourse in English, a unique collection of five million words of naturally-occurring, mainly British (with some Irish), spoken English, recorded in everyday situations. The CANCODE corpus has been collected throughout the past ten years in a project involving Cambridge University Press and the School of English Studies at the University of Nottingham, UK. In *CGE* dialogues and spoken examples are laid out as they actually occur in the transcripts of the CANCODE recordings, with occasional very minor editing of items which might otherwise distract from the grammar point being illustrated.

The CANCODE corpus is a finely-grained corpus. The CANCODE research team have not simply amassed examples of people speaking; they have tried to obtain examples from a range of sociolinguistic contexts and genres of talk. There is considerable advantage in being able to demonstrate statistical evidence over many millions of words and broad general contexts.

Using the corpus 3b

Grammar, like vocabulary, varies markedly according to context, allowing speakers considerable choice in the expression of interpersonal meanings (that is, meanings realised in relation to who one is speaking to rather than just what one is saying). A carefully constructed and balanced corpus can help to differentiate between different choices relative to how much knowledge speakers assume, what kind of relationship they have or want to have, whether they are at a dinner party, in a classroom, doing a physical task, in a service transaction in a shop, or telling a story (for example, our corpus tells us that ellipsis is not common in narratives, where the aim is often to create rather than to assume a shared world). By balancing these spoken genres against written ones, our corpus can also show that particular forms of ellipsis are widespread in certain types of journalism, in magazine articles, public signs and notices, personal notes and letters and in certain kinds of literary text. In descriptions of use, the most typical and frequent uses of such forms are described in relation to their different functions and in relation to the particular contexts in which they are most frequently deployed. (··⁘ **3h** below)

CGE is a grammar book that is informed by the corpus. The word ‘informed’ is used advisedly because we are conscious that it is no simple matter to import real data into a reference book in the belief that authentic language is always the right language for the purposes of learning the language. In places, this means that corpus examples which contain cultural references of the kind that are so common in everyday language use are either not selected or, while ensuring that the key grammatical patterns are preserved, are slightly modified so that they do not cause undue difficulties of interpretation. It is our strong view that language corpora, such as the Cambridge International Corpus, can afford considerable benefits for language teaching but the pedagogic process should be informed by the corpus, not driven or controlled by it.

Information on frequency 3c

The corpus was analysed in a variety of ways in the preparation of this book. One way was to compile frequency lists. A frequency list simply ranks words, phrases and grammatical phenomena (e.g. how many words end in *-ness* or *-ity*, or how many verb phrases consist of *have* + a verb ending in *-en*) in a list. In this way, we are able to see not only which items are most and least frequent, but also how they are distributed across speech and writing and across different registers (e.g. newspapers, academic lectures, conversations at home). For example, the list of the twenty most frequent word-forms in the CIC for spoken and written texts (based on five-million-word samples of each) are different.

The twenty most frequent word-forms in spoken and written texts

	spoken		written
1	*the*	1	*the*
2	*I*	2	*to*
3	*and*	3	*and*
4	*you*	4	*of*
5	*it*	5	*a*
6	*to*	6	*in*
7	*a*	7	*was*
8	*yeah*	8	*it*
9	*that*	9	*I*
10	*of*	10	*he*
11	*in*	11	*that*
12	*was*	12	*she*
13	*it's*	13	*for*
14	*know*	14	*on*
15	*is*	15	*her*
16	*mm*	16	*you*
17	*er*	17	*is*
18	*but*	18	*with*
19	*so*	19	*his*
20	*they*	20	*had*

In the spoken list, *I* and *you* rise to the top, indicating the high interactivity of face-to-face conversation. *Know* is at number 14, indicative of the high frequency of the discourse marker *you know* (→ **106b**), and *mm* and *er* reflect the frequency with which listeners vocalise their acknowledgement of what the speaker is saying, or whereby speakers fill silences while planning their speech in real time or while hesitating. *It's* and *yeah* reflect the informality of much of the talk in the CANCODE spoken corpus.

Information on concordance 3d

Another way the corpus was analysed was in terms of concordance. Concordances help researchers see how words are actually used in context. Words or phrases which researchers are interested in are displayed in a vertical arrangement on the computer screen along with their surrounding co-text: we see what came just before the word and what came just after. For example, these sample lines from a concordance for the adverb *yet* in the spoken corpus show us that a negative environment is very common, but not in questions (negative items and question marks in bold), and that *as yet* is a recurrent pattern. The A–Z entry for *yet* in this book, and much of our grammatical description, is based on this type of observation.

Sample lines from a concordance for *yet*

<$2> Yeah. We have**n’t** got any answer **yet**. We’d like it trimming. <$E> laughs	71094002.dcx
the wedding. <$2> I have**n’t** got any **yet**. Em <$O69> Janet looked lovely <\$O6	90127004.dcx
but we have**n’t** made er any arrangements **yet** it’s sort of er a bit too early yet	80339001.inx
? <$1> Sorry? <$2> Has FX arrived **yet?** <$1> Who is this? <$2> MX’s f	90449020.dcx
be in. <$2> They have**n’t** arrived **as yet**. <$1> <$=> It is a whole <\$=> it	70752001.dnx
yet? <$1> **No not** a price breaker **as yet**. Just their own winter programme.	70764003.dnx
ame in. <$E> laughs <\$E> Erm but er **as yet** it’s not available in every store.	90089007.knx
ll over the place. Em we have**n’t** got **as yet** a timetable to show you as to what’s	90003001.dnx
haven’t come have they? <$2> **Not as yet**. No. Normally about two weeks before	70765004.dnx
. Well I said I do**n’t** know the story **as yet** <$2> Mm. <$1> <$=> I said But	70365004.dcx
. But they’re **not** putting anybody up **as yet** because they have an appeal launch r	70502001.dfx
ms. Er that’s still **not** p= er set up **as yet** though. Erm we’re gonna do something	70499001.dfx
n’t managed to mark any of your work **as yet** but I I promise I’ll have it back to	71232001.kpx
manda are you ready for your assessment **yet?** <$F> I think so yeah. <$1> I’	71229001.kpx
Anyway you obviously have**n’t** gone back **yet** so <$=> erm I won’t be er <\$=> you	70515012.imx
t know. <$G?> <$1> Oh he’s **not** back **yet**. <$2> No. <$1> Oh right. <	70584004.dcx
eeks ago. And he he has**n’t** written back **yet**. So <$E> laughs </$E> <$1> No. Mm	70645001.dcx
G?>. <$4> Have you changed your bank **yet?** <$3> My turn. <$E> sighs <\$E>	71031003.kmx
<$1> Bye. Cheers. <$3> Wo**n’t** be **yet** until I’ve <$O13> lost <\$O13> a lit	90082002.knx
<$2> Have you seen Beauty And The Beast **yet?** <$1> No I was wanting to go.	70056002.dcx
p to see me every year. She has**n’t** been **yet**. And she and I like to trip out on a	71094002.dcx
tomorrow <$6> No. No. **Not** for a bit **yet**. <$3> Good. <$6> We we thought	70499004.dfx

The concordance also gives us a code on the right of the screen (in green here) which tells us what type of conversation each line occurs in, and leads us to the corpus database where we can verify who the speakers are, what age, gender, and social profile they have, how many people were involved in the conversation, where it took place, etc. We are therefore able to say something is in common usage as we see it represented across a range of texts and users in the corpus.

Deciding what to include 3e

In deciding on priorities with regard to the description of items and patterns, both quantitative and qualitative approaches are important. On the quantitative side, the corpus evidence can often show striking differences in distribution of items between speaking and writing. For example, the forms *no one* and *nobody* are, on the face of it, synonymous, yet their distribution across five million words each of spoken and written data is very different, with *nobody* greatly preferred in the spoken corpus, as shown below.

Use of *no one* and *nobody* in spoken and written English

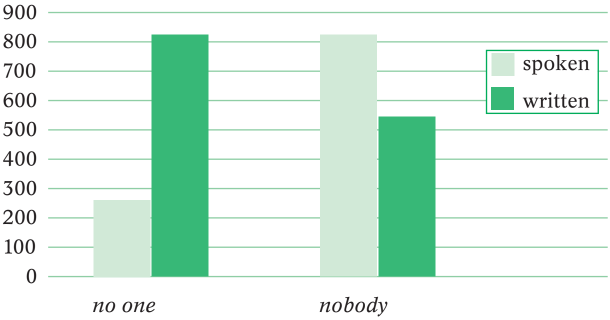

The interpretation of such statistics then depends on a more qualitative interpretation of the data, observing how *nobody* tends to correlate with the more informal end of the spectrum. A similar pattern of usage, in this case more clearly related to formality, can be seen for *who* and *whom*, where *whom* is shown to be relatively rare in conversation, only occurring in more formal contexts.

***Whom* in written and spoken English**

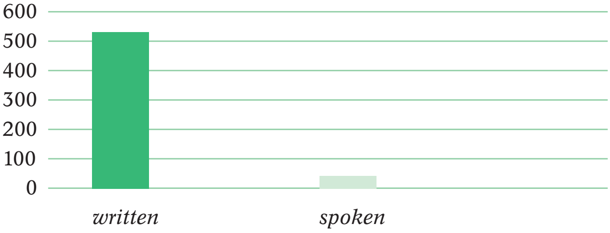

Insights into use 3f

Statistical evidence from the corpus can also give insight into the communicative acts most typically performed by particular items. The next diagram shows the different functions of *what about* and *how about* in the CANCODE corpus. Both forms are used to change the topic in conversation, with *what about* being used to do this more frequently than *how about* (*What about this new airport plan; what do you think of that?*). Another common function for both items is in the turn-taking system, where there is a strong preference for *how about* as a way of selecting the next speaker (*How about you Jean; what do you think?*). When suggestions are being made, both forms seem more or less equally available (*How about a walk before lunch?*) (⁘ also **421a**).

What about **and** ***how about*** **in conversation**

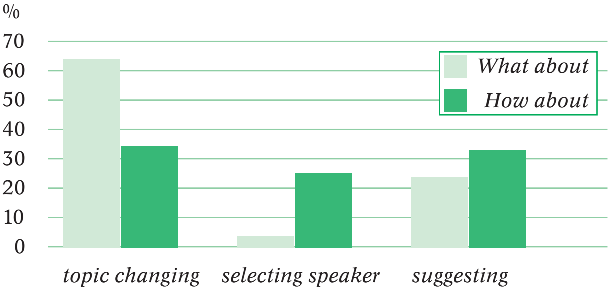

Word clusters 3g

Searching a corpus also continually reveals new insights into language structure and use. For example, research for this book has revealed the importance of word clusters and grammar.

Word clusters are groups of words that often occur together; some consist of just two words, e.g. *you know*, some are longer, e.g. *on the other hand*. Some of the most frequently repeated clusters reveal grammatical regularities. They often merit special consideration outside of the normal structural rules as described in the rest of this book, since they perform important basic functions in everyday usage, such as a turn-taking function in a conversation. These word clusters are sometimes different in spoken and written texts but such clusters are an important overall component in speaking and writing a language fluently since they can operate as the frequent and regular building blocks in the construction of meaning.

Research has highlighted patterns that include a range from two-word to six-word clusters and different patterns exhibit different ranges of meaning. It is possible that further research will demonstrate that lines between the vocabulary and the grammar of a language need to be drawn less sharply. The research is ongoing and new descriptions of the functions of clusters are being formulated. In *CGE* the main findings concerning clusters are presented in **503–505 Appendix**: **Word clusters and grammar**; however, readers will find a number of observations placed in key places throughout the book (particularly, for example, in chapters on spoken grammar, on the noun phrase, and on prepositions and prepositional phrases). The appendix on word clusters highlights possibilities in description, but corpus research is a constant and ever-developing feature of the study of grammar, and subsequent editions of *CGE* may well contain a separate chapter or chapters devoted to word clusters.

Frequent, common and preferred patterns 3h

Throughout *CGE* particular patterns are said to be frequent or common, either in the language as a whole or in speech rather than in writing or in formal rather than informal contexts of use. Sections 3a–3g above indicate how in this book a corpus is consulted before statements concerning the frequency of grammatical patterns are made.

As we have seen, some patterns are frequent but not acceptable in standard grammar while some patterns are non-standard in written usage but frequent in informal spoken varieties and perfectly acceptable in those varieties. Section 2a above indicates the range of possibilities. We believe information about frequency is important, especially for learners of a language.

A corpus also enables us to indicate which patterns are 'preferred'. Speakers and writers have choices and some choices are more typical in some contexts than in others. Preferences are attested with reference to the corpus and in several places throughout the book the choices open to a speaker or writer are described with an indication of which choices most typically occur. The fact that a speaker may choose the form which is the most typical does not mean that the alternative forms are incorrect or non-standard. The term 'preferred' as used in *CGE* highlights the most frequent choices made by users of the language.

Learner corpus 3i

We also had access during the writing of this book to a large learner corpus consisting of texts produced by learners of English from a wide range of lingua-cultures, coded for error and inappropriate use. This, along with our own language-teaching experience and that of our reference panel, has enabled us to give warnings of common areas of potential error where appropriate. These error warnings are signalled by the ✪ symbol.

HOW *CGE* IS IS ORGANISED 4

CGE is organised differently from other contemporary books on the grammar of English. Our coverage is, we believe, extensive, and major areas of description of the grammar of English are treated. However, as argued in section 2b above, this book is unique in the attention devoted to the spoken language. A high proportion of illustrative examples in *CGE* are drawn from a spoken corpus, a unique A–Z section covers many key words and phrases that have particular prominence in spoken English, and there are several chapters specifically devoted to the structural features of spoken grammar. The organisation of *CGE* reflects this orientation and the first chapters in the book are therefore those most saliently devoted to spoken grammar and to differences and distinctions between spoken and written English grammar. This is not to say that spoken grammar is not treated throughout the book, including the appendices, but it is to underline the belief that spoken and written language need, as far as is practicable, to be accorded equal priority. Previous grammar books have given greater attention to written grammar. *CGE* offers a more balanced approach.

Throughout the book, we make much use of cross references. This is because some of the most common grammatical items in English have many different meanings and uses and their descriptions will consequently be found under different headings in the book. For example, the word *anyway* is used as an adverb, and is also used as a discourse marker in spoken language; the modal verb *could* is used to express possibility but it is also common in the performance of everyday speech acts such as requesting and suggesting. It is rarely possible to say everything that needs to be said about an item in one place in the book. The cross-references also allow further exploration of any item you may be interested in, and may be useful to lead you to more precise information when you look up an item.

From word to grammar: an A–Z 4a

The first part of *CGE* (**5–81**) is the **A–Z**, where individual words are described. These words have been selected for special attention because they are:

- very frequent in everyday language
- often polysemous (that is, they have more than one meaning)
- individual in some way in their grammar, possessing characteristics that are worthy of particular note
- known to be difficult for learners of English and often lead to errors.

Topic chapters 4b

The **A–Z** is followed by the topic chapters. These are organised as follows:

Spoken language

82–91 Introduction to grammar and spoken English
92–103 From utterance to discourse
104–122 From discourse to social contexts

The three chapters here are a major focus of *CGE*. They are devoted to aspects of the grammar of everyday speech, including the effects of social context.

Grammar and discourse

123–139 Grammar across turns and sentences
140–154 Grammar and academic English

These two chapters take us beyond the sentence. How grammar creates links across sentences and speaker turns is described, and there is a special chapter on the discourse conventions of academic English.

Word and phrase classes

155–166 Introduction to word classes and phrase classes

This chapter acts as an introduction to the sections on Nouns, Verbs, Adjectives and adverbs, and Prepositions and particles.

Nouns

167–175 The noun phrase
176–196 Nouns and determiners
197–212 Pronouns

These three chapters first look at the construction of noun phrases; they then focus on nouns, pronouns and determiners (e.g. *the*, *a*, *some*, *my*).

Verbs

213–216 Verb phrase 1: structure of verb phrases
217–226 Verb phrase 2: tense and aspect
227–235 Types of verb

The three chapters here look at how verb phrases are constructed, including the use of modal verbs and auxiliary verbs, and at the different types of verb.

Adjectives and adverbs

236–241 Adjectives and adjective phrases
242–249 Adverbs and adverb phrases

Here there are two chapters; they look at how adjectives and adverbs are formed and how they are used.

Prepositions and particles

250–257 Prepositions and prepositional phrases

This chapter deals with prepositions and the phrases they form (e.g. *in the morning*, *on the floor*).

Word formation

258–268 Word structure and word formation

This chapter describes the ways in which words are formed, including the use of prefixes and suffixes and the process of compounding.

Sentence and clause patterns

269–280 Introduction to sentences and clauses
281–289 Verb complementation
290–303 Clause types
304–318 Clause combination
319–337 Adjuncts

The five chapters here introduce the notion of the sentence and the clause, describe different clause types and illustrate how different verbs require different clause elements to be present (the process of verb complementation). How clauses combine to form sentences and the role of adjuncts are also dealt with.

Time

338–345 Present time
346–360 Past time
361–376 Future time

These three chapters look at how time is expressed in English, dealing with present, past and future time, and with how English expresses different perspectives on time.

Notions and functions

377–407 Modality
408–423 Speech acts
424–433 Questions
434–447 Negation
448–459 Condition
460–471 Comparison

In the six chapters here, core conceptual notions such as negation, condition and comparison are described. The important communicative functions performed by modal verbs and other items are explained in chapters on modality and speech acts.

Information packaging

472–475 Word order and focus
476–487 The passive
488–502 Speech representation

Here the three chapters are concerned with how speakers and writers decide to present information in clauses, by using active and passive voice choices, different word orders and other ways of emphasising things. How speech is represented and reported is also dealt with.

Appendices 4c

The appendices give detailed information on punctuation, spelling, irregular verbs, numbers, measurement, time, nationalities and countries, as well as important differences between British and North American grammatical usage, and an insight into the functions performed by word clusters.

Glossary 4d

The glossary contains brief definitions of all the key grammatical terms used in this book. The glossary also recognises that different grammar books use different terms. The *CGE* glossary refers to terms that are not employed in this book but which are a part of the language used to talk about grammar. Throughout, the aim is to provide an easy navigation between different terminologies and the description of the grammar of English contained in this book.

Index 4e

The comprehensive index is designed to provide access to a wide range of topics and key words covered in CGE.

From word to grammar: an A–Z

About 5
Above 6
According to 7
Across 8
Actual, actually 9
After, afterwards 10
After all 10
Afterwards 10
Against 11
All 12
Allow 48
Already 13
Also, as well (as), too 14
Although, though 15
Always 16
Among 26
Anyway 17
Apart from 39
Around, round 18
As 19
Ask (for) 20
As well (as) 14
At 21
Back 22
Because/cos 23
Before 24
Below 25
Beneath 25
Besides 39
Between, among 26
Bit, a bit (of) 27
Both 28
Bring, take, fetch 29
By 24
Come, go 30
Cos 23
Do 31
Down 32
During 33
Each 34
Especially 35
Even 36
Ever 37
Every 38
Except 39
Expect 40
Explain 41
Fairly 66
Fall 42
Fell 42
Fetch 29
Few, Fewer 50
For 43
Get 30
Go 30
Hardly 44
Here, there 45
Hope 40
In 21
In fact 46
In front (of) 62
Just 47
Less 50
Let 48
Like 49
Little, a little, few, a few 50
Make 51
Mean 52
Mind 53
Now 54
Of 55
Of course 56
Oh 57
Okay/OK 58
On 21
Once 59
One 60
Only 61
Opposite, in front (of) 62
Over 63
Own 64
Person 65
Pretty 66
Quite 66
Rather 67
Really 68
Right, rightly 69
Round 18
Since 70
So 71
Still 72
Stuff 74
Take 29
Then 73
There 45
Thing, stuff 74
Though 15
Too 14
Under 25
Until 24
Wait for 40
Want 75
Well 76
Whatever 77
While 78
With 79
Worth, worthwhile 80
Yet 81

From word to grammar: an A–Z

The individual words described here have been selected for special attention because they are:

- very frequent in everyday language
- often polysemous (that is, they have more than one meaning)
- individual in some way in their grammar, possessing characteristics that are worthy of particular note
- known to be difficult for learners of English and often lead to errors.

ABOUT 5

Preposition *about* 5a

The most frequent meaning of *about* as a preposition is 'on the subject of' or 'connected with':

Er, I'm not too sure ***about that****.*

He became very anxious ***about the condition of two of his patients****.*

We've only just started making enquiries ***about him****.*

I've already told you what I feel ***about the appointment****.*

Why is she always going on ***about it****?*

A less frequent use is as a synonym of *round* or *around*:

The dog was running ***about the garden*** *all day.*

About can be contrasted with *on*, which focuses on more specific and detailed content:

He gave a lecture ***about Karl Marx****.*

She gave a lecture ***on the position of English adverbs in spoken language****.*

Adverb *about* 5b

About is used as an adverb in expressions of time, number and quantity. It is used to express approximation and can be replaced by *around*. It also occurs in the phrase *round about*. It is more common in spoken than in written English:

I'll see you ***about six*** *then?*

That was ***about six years ago*** *wasn't it?*

The suspect was ***about 1.7 metres tall****.*

The main changes took place ***round about 1860*** *at the time of the shift away from agriculture as main source of employment.*

About is rare without a complement. Particular uses are:

> *Is John **about**?*
> (Is John here/in the neighbourhood/in town?)
>
> *There's a lot of flu **about** at the moment.*

A–Z 18 *Around, round*

→ 103b Approximations

Be about to 5c

Be about to means 'be on the verge of doing something':

> *We were just **about to leave**.*
>
> *She looks as if she's **about to burst into song**.*

Common spoken uses of *about* 5d

About is common in spoken English when a speaker is orienting a listener to a topic:

> ***About that car of yours**, do you still want to sell it?*
>
> ***About Fran**, she can call in to see your grandmother, can't she?*

What about is common in questions when the speaker points out something or wishes to orient the listener to a topic:

> ***What about all the cuts** in education and in housing?*
>
> ***What about Andreas**? Isn't he coming with us?*

What about, *how about*, and very informally, *how's about* are commonly used to make suggestions:

> ***What about moving that bookshelf** into the other room? It would give us a bit more space.*
>
> ***How about an ice-cream**?*
>
> ***How's about going to Kyoto** for the day?*

→ 421a *What about, what if, how about*

About after nouns 5e

Some common nouns are frequently followed by *about*. These include:

anxiety
argument
assertion
assumption
complaint
concern
debate
discussion
doubt
enquiry
feeling
fuss
idea
information
joke
misgiving
news
point
qualm
question
reservation
scepticism
speculation
statement
story
talk
uncertainty
worry

> *It is dangerous to make too many* ***assumptions about*** *basic cognitive processes.*
>
> *She's always making a* ***fuss about*** *our bedrooms being untidy.*
>
> *Is there any* ***news about*** *the people trapped in that avalanche?*

About after verbs 5f

Many common verbs are followed by *about*. They include:

agonise
ask
bother
care
chat
complain
enquire
feel
forget
fret
hear
know
learn
moan
quibble
read
reminisce
speak
speculate
talk
think
wonder
worry
write

> *They* ***agonised*** *for ages* ***about*** *changing their car.*
>
> *More and more people are beginning to* ***speculate about*** *a change of management.*

About is not used with the verb *discuss*:

> *We wanted to* ***discuss*** *the arrangements for Chinese New Year.*
> (~~We wanted to discuss about the arrangements for Chinese New Year.~~)
>
> *I wanted to* ***discuss*** *ways of improving the essay.*

Note, however, that *about* is used with the noun *discussion*:

> ***Discussions about*** *the situation took place yesterday.*

About is used after *complain*:

> *They didn't know what to do when people came to* ***complain about*** *the goods they had bought.*
> (~~They didn't know what to do when people came to complain the goods they had bought.~~)

About after adjectives 5g

Many common adjectives are followed by *about*. They include:

apprehensive
blasé
cautious
concerned
coy
enthusiastic
excited
fussy
happy
knowledgeable
nervous
optimistic
pessimistic
sceptical
snobbish
sorry
sure
unhappy
upset
uptight
worried

> *The minister was far too* ***blasé about*** *public opinion and in the end the media forced his resignation.*
>
> *She's very* ***nervous about*** *flying in charter aircraft.*

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

*Ah, I'm really **sorry about** this.*

*She is more **worried** than she should be **about** her exam results.*

ABOVE 6

Preposition *above* 6a

Above means 'higher than'. It has a meaning that is close to the preposition *over*. Its opposites are *below* and *beneath*. In both the following sentences *over* can be substituted for *above*:

*There was a faded sign **above the door**.*

*Once the plane got **above the clouds** and levelled out, they started to relax.*

Above is preferred when things are at an upper level:

*They lived in a small bungalow **above the village**.*
(~~They lived in a small bungalow over the village~~.)

Above can only be used when there is no contact between the people or things referred to. *Over* or *on top of* have a more general meaning and can be used whether or not one person or thing touches or covers another:

*He put a light plastic raincoat **over his jacket**.*
(or: on top of his jacket)
(~~He put a light plastic raincoat above his jacket.~~)

Above can be used to refer to a higher part, usually of a building, or to a higher structure or place. It can also be used to refer to an increase in size or scale:

*Nairobi is about 2000 metres **above sea level**.*

*Their performance was distinctly **above average**.*

Above is also used metaphorically, often meaning 'a long way from' or 'is superior to'. It can also have a sense of being difficult to understand. *Beyond* is also possible in such phrases:

*She is **above suspicion** and **above reproach**.*

*I'm afraid that type of mathematics is all rather **above me**.*

Above modifying nouns 6b

Above can be used in writing as a premodifier to refer to something which has already been mentioned in the text. The fixed phrase *the above* means 'the foregoing text'. *Below* cannot be used in this way as a premodifier, and *the below* is not possible:

*As we can see from **the above figures**, the profits are likely to be significantly lower this year.*

*As we have argued in **the above**, the results are not convincing.*

Both *above* and *below* can postmodify a noun:

> *There was noise coming from the* ***room above****, so I couldn't sleep.*
>
> *The* ***picture below*** *is a striking example of new methods of advertising.*

✪ *Above* is not normally used with numbers. *Over* is normally preferred:

> *You can only buy alcoholic drinks here if you are* ***over 18****.*
> (~~You can only buy alcoholic drinks here if you are above 18~~.)
>
> *It'll cost* ***over a thousand pounds*** *to repair.*

A–Z **25 *Below*; 63 *Over***

ACCORDING TO 7

According to meaning 'as reported' 7a

The most frequent use of *according to* is when reference is made to external evidence to support a statement or an opinion:

> ***According to the safety experts****, it was all right when they left it.*
>
> *It's the same in every block,* ***according to Cliff****, the caretaker.*
>
> *This delay,* ***according to Mr Mckay****, probably violated federal law.*
>
> *It's going to be delayed,* ***according to what Nick told us****.*

According to is frequently used to refer to statistics, official reports, surveys, opinion polls, studies, research, etc., especially in more formal contexts:

> ***According to a recent report*** *by the National Food Alliance, children are being saturated with advertisements for sugar-rich confectionery.*
>
> *And regional government,* ***according to a poll*** *taken last month by Gallup, attracts the support of less than one in three of the public.*

✪ Note that *according to* refers to evidence from someone or somewhere else. As such, it usually has a third person referent. It cannot be used to refer to one's own views or statements:

> ***In my opinion*** *all those sites should be made green-field sites.*
> (~~According to me/according to my opinion, all those sites should be …~~)

According to meaning 'in agreement with' 7b

According to is also used to mean 'in line with', 'in harmony with' or 'depending on'. In this meaning it is most typically not used in front position:

> *And is it all going* ***according to plan*** *so far?*

> *If the police acted **according to the law**, then they should arrest him.*
>
> [talking about placing people on a salary scale]
> *I'm sure they probably grade people **according to their experience**.*
>
> *Prices vary very slightly **according to whether** you want 'hotel' or 'hostel' service.*

A closely related phrase is *in accordance with*, which is used in formal, written contexts to mean 'in obedience to', or 'strictly following (rules and regulations)':

> *The Socialist government, elected in 1994, resigned in December, but, **in accordance with the constitution**, the President had to call on the Socialist party to form another government.*

ACROSS 8

Across is used as a preposition and as an adverb:

> *It's just not enough time to get **across London**.*
> (preposition)
>
> [giving directions]
> A: *You keep going down until you get to the massive traffic-light complex. You know you're at it. It's sort of bright and there's a big main road running **across**.*
> B: *Right.*
> (adverb)

✪ *Across* is not a verb. The verb form is *cross*:

> *Every time you **cross** the road, you're worried you're going to get knocked over.*
> (~~Every time you across the road, you're worried you're going to get knocked over.~~)

Across can be used to indicate movement or position relative to two sides or extremes of something:

> [referring to a newspaper article]
> *In the paper there's somebody who's going to swim **across the Atlantic** four thousand miles.*
>
> *She sat facing me **across the table**.*

When indicating position relative to another person or thing, with the meaning of 'opposite', 'on the other side of the road to', *across* is used with *from*:

> *The Town Hall is **across from the cathedral**.*

Across is often used in contexts of comparisons to indicate a range of something:

> *The researchers carried out a study* ***across 20 countries****.*

Across is also used to refer to the width or diagonal measurement of something. It follows the unit of measurement:

> *First, a copy; he slipped a minidisk into the port, formatted and labelled it. Barely* ***two centimetres across*** *– easy to lose, but easy to hide.*

Across is also used to refer to an area in which things are distributed:

> *There are other smaller sites, scattered* ***across the Caribbean*** *and even in the Mediterranean.*

Across and *over* 8a

Across and *over* are sometimes interchangeable with little difference in meaning:

> *She walked on* ***across the bridge*** *in the bitter wind.*
>
> *She put her arm around his waist and led him* ***over the bridge****.*

However, when the meaning is 'from side to side' of a surface, *across* is preferred:

> *Draw a line* ***across the middle of the page****.*
> (~~Draw a line over the middle of the page.~~)
>
> *He glanced at his watch and strode* ***across the room****, Julian's dressing-gown flapping around his legs.*
> (~~… and strode over the room, …~~)

Across and *through* 8b

When there is a surrounding environment, movement is usually expressed by *through*, not *across*:

> *It's very pretty in the summer* ***walking through the orchards****.*
> (~~It's very pretty in the summer walking across the orchards.~~)

A–Z 63 *Over*

ACTUAL, ACTUALLY 9

✪ *Actual* and *actually* refer to whether something is true or factual. They do not refer to time:

> *They went into a restaurant … or it was* ***actually*** *a café.*
> (it was in fact/in reality a café)
>
> *I'm not really sure about the* ***actual*** *procedure.*
> (This means 'the right/correct procedure'; if the meaning had been 'the procedure that is used now', the speaker would have said *I'm not really sure about the* ***present/current*** *procedure*, or *I'm not really sure about the procedure* ***now/nowadays***.)

539 **Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

> *She's **actually** working for a computer firm.*
> (This means something like 'She is in fact working for a computer firm', or 'Surprisingly, she is working for a computer firm', depending on the context; if we mean 'She is at the present time working for a computer firm', we would say *She's working for a computer firm **at the moment/(right)now**.*)

Actual 9a

Actual usually has a meaning similar to 'true', 'real', 'precise', 'right/correct' or 'the thing/person itself/himself/herself':

*I couldn't get an appointment for **that actual day**.*
(that precise/exact day)

***My actual involvement** with the project itself was negligible really.*
(my real/true involvement)

[sales assistant (A) talking to a customer in a camera shop]
A: *You don't know which model it is, do you?*
B: *No, I can look it up. Maybe I'll come in with **the actual camera**.*
(the camera itself)

A very common expression with *actual* is *in actual fact*, which is an emphatic form of *in fact*:

*But **in actual fact**, a year ago the situation was the same.*

A–Z 46 *In fact*

Actually 9b

Actually can often be used emphatically, especially to refer to something which is in sharp contrast with expectations:

*He **actually admitted** that he enjoyed it.*
(this was unexpected, not normal behaviour for him)

*There **actually is a plant** that produces what is known as 'the curry leaf'.*

*The original connection with Dave was **actually more through jazz** than through folk music.*

Actually often implies a contrast between a desirable and an undesirable situation:

*So, here is a practical seminar that **actually offers solutions** to the challenges women managers face.*
(implied: in contrast to most other seminars)

*Unlike a blender or liquefier, the juicer **actually separates the juice** from the pulp.*

Actually often operates as a discourse marker in spoken language, signalling topic openings, contrasts in topics, specifying within topics, etc.:

> [customer (A) at the information desk in a large bookshop enquiring about a technical manual]
> A: *Could you tell me where your manuals are kept? **Actually** I'm looking for a Haynes manual.*
> B: *Er what on?*
> A: *It's on washing machines.*
>
> [beginning of a one-to-one student tutorial at a university; A is the student]
> A: *Where would it be best for me to sit?*
> B: *Um, anywhere there's a space.*
> [pause]
> A: *Well **actually** there's a couple of things really really quickly to ask you. One is about the draft of my history of English essay.*

When used in questions, *actually* can often focus on 'missing' information which the speaker desires or needs for the purposes of the conversation:

> [speakers are already talking about B's father]
> A: *What did your dad do **actually**?*
> B: *Well he was a railway man.*

Actually is often used to hedge statements, making them less direct or less threatening:

> *I think Sandra would win hands down **actually**.*
>
> *We had an argument **actually**, a few weeks ago.*

In spoken language *actually* is frequently used in end position, though it may also occur in front and mid positions:

> A: *In the afternoon we'll continue with the tour into the training department and on through into the machine division.*
>
> B: *I'd be quite interested in that **actually**.*

AFTER, AFTERWARDS 10

Preposition *after* 10a

After is most frequently used with noun phrases referring to time or to timed events:

> *You get used to that, strangely enough, **after a while**.*
>
> *So I'll do those two classes. I'll start probably **after the holidays**.*

> *I was sick and tired of being on my own. I wanted to get home. I mean,* ***after nine months*** *I was homesick.*

References to place may also be made with *after*, especially when they are seen as part of a sequence of events in time:

> [giving directions to someone]
> *And* ***after the fifth roundabout****, you turn off, and there's another roundabout.*

Adverb *after* 10b

After postmodifying a noun

After may postmodify nouns such as *day*, *morning*, *week*, *month*, *year*, especially in informal speech:

> *I've got one interview, then, er, a second interview* ***the week after****.*
> (or, more formal: … the following week)

> A: *And you see yourself as staying round in the London area for the next year or so?*
> B: *Oh yeah. Definitely. I mean, for probably* ***the year after*** *as well.*

After premodified by another adverb

After does not normally occur alone as an adjunct. It is almost always premodified by adverbs such as *shortly*, *soon*, *straight*:

> [from a text about the young of the shrew, a small mouse-like animal]
> *Born blind and naked, the young quickly develop a thin coat of hair at around nine days old and their eyes open* ***soon after****.*

> [a student talking about a difficult period of study]
> *It's just at this real crossroads at the moment when you're just about to start an essay and then you've got to do something else* ***straight after****.*

Occasionally, in informal speech, *after* may occur alone, with the meaning of 'later':

> *That just reminds me of something.* [laughs] *I'll tell you the joke* ***after****.*

Afterwards 10c

Where there is no premodifying adverb (**10b** above), *afterwards*, not *after*, is normally used:

> *Suddenly a black cat ran in front of her. In surprise, she cried out aloud.* ***Afterwards****, she felt rather foolish.*
> (preferred to: After, she felt rather foolish.)

> *They laughed together over their tea, but* ***afterwards*** *Esther was quiet, analysing what she had been told.*

Afterwards may be premodified by adverbs such as *immediately*, (*not*) *long*, *shortly* and *soon*, and other time expressions involving words such as *days*, *weeks*, *months*, *years*:

She heard a muffled bang, then a car starting ***almost immediately afterwards****.*

When the phone rang again ***shortly afterwards****, he picked up the receiver with regret.*

A few days afterwards*, Italy joined the war, and with immense relief, we gave up the idea of our rescue.*

After + *-ing* clause 10d

When used to link two clauses, *after* followed by a verb in the *-ing* form is many times more frequent in writing than in speech. In informal speech there is a strong preference for a full finite clause:

The police claim he died ***after falling*** *and hitting his head.*

After graduating*, he became a lecturer at the university.*

I was out of work for six months ***after being*** *made redundant.*

✪ *After having* + *-ed* participle, although it occurs, is rare in both speech and writing. Where it does occur, it often serves to emphasise a contrast between two situations in time:

[part of a speech welcoming a new member of staff in a company]
And ***after having worked*** *very closely with Gerald for so many years, and* ***having had*** *so many people actually believing that he was a member of the company staff, it's very nice finally to be able to welcome him as a real member of staff.* [applause follows]

In most cases, *after* + the *-ing* form of a lexical verb is preferred:

After journeying *more than 11,000 miles, Russell found the man for whom he was searching.*
(preferred to: After having journeyed more than 11,000 miles, Russell found the man for whom he was searching.)

After + finite clause 10e

After may be used with a variety of tense forms and time references to link two clauses:

- Present simple with general present time reference:

  [from an article about John Daly, a well-known American golfer]
  He uses at least a dozen balls per round because they lose their shape ***after*** *he* ***hits*** *them.*

- Present perfect with general present time reference:

  All adults, ***after*** *they* ***have told*** *off a teenager for not doing his homework, say 'Do I make myself clear?'.*

  [*that* refers to the timing of questionnaires to patients concerning their experience of treatment in the National Health Service in Britain]
  And I think people would get a better service if that was done, say, a month ***after*** *they'****ve been having*** *treatment.*

- Present simple with future time reference:

  Ideally, I'd like to move in straight after that, ***after*** *you* ***move*** *out.*
  (~~… after you will move out.~~)

- Present perfect with future time reference:

  We would love to see you tonight, if it's possible, ***after*** *you****'ve visited*** *David's mum.*
  (~~… after you will have visited …~~)

- Past simple:

  A: *And it was only* ***after*** *you* ***married*** *you discovered all this?*
  B: *Yes.*

- Past perfect:

  She was glad that she had resisted an impulse to ring Hal again ***after*** *she* ***had read*** *his note.*

The perfect aspect versions stress the completion of the event in the *after*-clause and a break in time between the events in the two clauses. The present simple or past simple versions suggest a closer connection between the two clauses, as with *before* (⁘ **24d**).

Other uses of *after* 10f

In informal contexts, *after* is occasionally used as a preposition with the meaning of 'because of' or 'as a consequence of':

> [talking about a furniture shop]
> ***After the experience with the chair****, I don't think I'll buy anything else there.*
>
> *Look at Brian, how healthy he looks* ***after all that sun****.*

In informal speech, the expression *to be after something* often means 'to want' or 'to look for, to seek':

> [customer in a hardware shop]
> *I'****m after*** *a metre of strong chain. Just a metre. It's for a bike you see. You know, just to tie a bike up. I've got a lock and everything.*
> (I want/I'm looking for …)

> [customer (A) in a bookshop; *Rough Guides* are a very popular type of travel guide book]
> A: *Do you have any of these travel guides, Rough Guide to … wherever?*
> B: *Yes, we do. Where in particular* ***were*** *you* ***after****?*
> A: *Erm, the south-west of America.*

After all 10g

After all as a conjunction has a concessive meaning, similar to 'besides', or the meaning of 'one should not forget/ignore the fact that …'.

After all may occur in front, mid or end position in the clause. It is normally separated from the rest of the clause by a comma or commas:

> *The garage on the main road has been boarded up for some time. It's been boarded up now for nearly seventeen months. It just seems silly. I mean,* ***after all****, it's unusual to have a petrol station in a fairly quiet residential area.*
> (front position)
>
> *But I stuck at it, pretending to get on and take no notice. Because it was,* ***after all****, none of my business.*
> (mid position)
>
> *I don't mind what you buy. It is your money,* ***after all****.*
> (end position)

The other main use of *after all* is as an adverb meaning 'contrary to what was believed or expected'. In this meaning, it occurs almost always in end position, and frequently together with *maybe* or *perhaps*. It is not usually separated by a comma in writing:

> *Maybe she's not dating him. I mean, maybe they're just friends* ***after all****.*
> (I thought they were dating. Maybe I was wrong.)
>
> *And then at intervals during the interview, I found him … well, er, creepy really and rather worrying, but then again, at the end, I felt as though I'd done him an injustice and that perhaps he was likeable* ***after all****.*
>
> *Jeremy looked genuinely pleased to see her and she wondered if they might become friends* ***after all****.*

AFTER ALL

A–Z 10 *After, afterwards*

AFTERWARDS

A–Z 10 *After, afterwards*

AGAINST 11

Against denoting reactions 11a

Against is used after verbs and nouns denoting (often negative) reactions to situations, beliefs, people, events, etc.

Some common verbs frequently followed by *against* include:

act
advise
argue
be
campaign
decide
demonstrate
discriminate
fight
go
guard
have something
militate
react
rebel
speak out
struggle
testify
vote

> [talking about speaker B's computer]
> A: *One thing you could do is you could actually upgrade this machine.*
> B: *I know but I* ***decided against*** *it.*
>
> A: *So you think it's fair to* ***discriminate against*** *age?*
> B: *After a certain age, I think.*
>
> *We will* ***vote against*** *it but we will be in the minority.*

Some common nouns frequently followed by *against* include:

accusation
action
aggression
allegation
appeal
argument
battle
campaign
case
charge
complaint
crusade
defence
demonstration
discrimination
evidence
fight
grievance
grudge
law
prejudice
protection
protest
reaction
rebellion
safeguard

> *She emphasised the need for concerted* ***action against*** *poverty and inequality which force children into exploitative work.*
>
> *There is not a scrap of* ***evidence against*** *her.*
>
> *There's a* ***law against*** *murder but people go out and still murder don't they and rob banks and what have you.*

Against denoting physical contact 11b

Against is frequently used to indicate physical contact between two or more things:

> *There was a man leaning* ***against the wall****.*

[swimming instructor to a learner]
*Right, I want to see your arm. That's right. No the other one. Face that way. That one. That's it. Right, I want to see your arm brushing **against your ear**.*

Against denoting competition 11c

Against occurs frequently with verbs and nouns connected with sport and competing, such as *compete/competition*, *final*, *game*, *match*, *play*, *semi-final*:

A: *We used to go there for football. And cricket we used to play on the recreation ground.*
B: *Yes. Mm. And did you have a school team? **Play against** other schools?*
A: *No we used to **play** football **against** other teams but not cricket.*

[*the Clifton Downs* is an area of open land near the city of Bristol in England]
*In the holidays sometimes we **played** a hockey match **against** the Clifton College boys on the Clifton Downs.*

✪ *Against*, not *with*, is used in sporting contexts with *play* when two teams or individuals compete:

*It was three years ago when my volleyball team was selected to **play against** an Italian one.*
(~~It was three years ago when my volleyball team was selected to play with an Italian one.~~)

About, not *against*, is used with *do* to refer to taking action to solve problems:

[speaker is talking about a very noisy party]
*They were all out on the street and Jim and Sally couldn't sleep. They had to phone the police. The police couldn't **do** anything **about** it.*
(~~The police couldn't do anything against it.~~)

Do not confuse *against* and *contrary to*:

***Contrary to** what you may read in the guidebooks, very few of the locals actually speak English.*
(~~Against what you may read in the guidebooks, …~~)

ALL 12

Determiner *all* 12a

All is mainly used as a determiner:

***All** the tickets are sold out.*

*We'll have to get rid of **all** our old furniture.*

As a determiner, *all* comes before articles, possessives or demonstratives, and before numerals.

	article, possessive or demonstrative	**numeral**	**head noun**
all	*the*		*children*
all	*my*		*clothes*
all	*those*		*boxes*
all		*four*	*books*

When *all* refers to an entire class of people or things, *the* is not used:

> ***All dogs*** *love meat.*
> (every dog in the world)
> (~~All the dogs love meat.~~)

Everybody/everyone is preferred to 'all people'.

> ***Everyone*** *has to die sooner or later.*
> (~~All people have to die sooner or later.~~)

All of is used before personal, demonstrative and relative pronouns. The object form of the pronoun is used:

> *Thanks to* ***all of you*** *for giving up your time to help us.*
>
> *That's very bad news.* ***All of this*** *is just too upsetting.*
>
> *They have three sons and two daughters,* ***all of whom*** *are married.*
> (~~… all of who are married.~~)

Of is optional before definite noun phrases:

> *I left* ***all (of) my money*** *in an account invested in the stock market.*
>
> *Who's going to eat* ***all (of) this food****?*

Time expressions like *all afternoon*, *all day*, *all night* are a special case. They have definite reference but do not require the definite article. However, the definite article is permitted with or without *of*:

> *I spent* ***all afternoon*** *at the gym.*
>
> *I spent* ***all the afternoon*** *at the gym.*
>
> *I spent* ***all of the afternoon*** *at the gym.*

All, not *all of*, is used before indefinite plurals and non-count nouns:

> ***All prisoners*** *of war have rights under international law.*
> (~~All of prisoners of war have rights under international law.~~)
>
> ***All tobacco*** *is heavily taxed.*
>
> ***All processed food*** *is fattening.*

All is not used with singular indefinite count nouns; *a whole* is used:

*They managed to eat **a whole chicken**.*
(~~They managed to eat all a chicken.~~)

Pronoun *all* 12b

All can be used as an unmodified pronoun, but such usage is formal and infrequent:

***All** are welcome.*

***All** were concerned that something should be done.*
(more typically: Everyone was concerned …)

***All** is not lost.*

***All** will be revealed in the course of time.*

[newspaper headline]
*Minister's ex-secretary tells **all**.*

All is most typically either premodified or postmodified:

*In the United Kingdom in 1988, there were nearly 25,000 maintained primary schools, including 586 middle schools deemed primary. **Almost all** were mixed-sex schools.*

*It doesn't matter if the car's damaged. **All that matters** is that you're okay.*

*I paid him **all that he wanted**.*

When followed by a relative clause, *all* has a similar meaning to 'everything'. *That* may be omitted before a personal pronoun:

*They lost **all that they had earned** in the stock market crash.*

*I told her to forget **all that had happened**.*

*She taught me **all I know** about computers.*

Adverb *all* 12c

All referring to the subject of a clause usually occupies the normal mid position for adverbs (→ 325):

*The members **all knew** what was going on.*

*We **all try** our best to be on time.*

*This is something that they **can all do**.*

*We**'ve all been waiting** for ages.*

*We **could all have made** the same mistake.*

*They **are all** qualified social workers.*

When *all* refers to a personal pronoun, there is a choice between pronoun + *all* and *all of* + pronoun:

> ***We****'re* ***all*** *thinking the same thing.*
> (or: All of us are thinking the same thing.)
>
> A: *Are there any cakes left?*
> B: *No, the kids ate* ***them all.***
> (or: No, the kids ate all of them.)

However, in short elliptical responses, the *of* construction must be used:

> A: *Which books do you want to take with you?*
> B: ***All of them*** *if that's okay with you.*
> (~~Them all~~, if that's okay with you.)

All is also used as an adverb to mean 'entirely', 'completely' or 'extremely', especially in spoken English:

> *I've left them* ***all alone*** *in the house.*
>
> *When I ask you where you've been, you get* ***all upset and agitated****.*
>
> *He took one of the cans from the shelf and the whole shelf* ***all went down****.*
>
> *I got lost and it's* ***all because*** *they gave me the wrong directions.*
>
> *He got* ***all excited*** *when he heard the news.*

All in fixed expressions 12d

All is particularly common in fixed expressions, especially in spoken English. These are the most common:

All right

All right meaning 'acceptable' or 'okay':

> *Is it* ***all right*** *if she just pops along tomorrow?*
> (also spelled as a single word: alright)

At all

At all as an intensifier in negative and interrogative clauses:

> *No, it isn't exactly modesty. I am not* ***at all*** *certain that I am modest.*
>
> *Are you* ***at all*** *concerned about interest rates rising?*

When placed at the end of questions, *at all* can also function as a marker of politeness:

> *Do you have any sparkling water* ***at all****?*

And all that

And all that is used as a marker of deliberate vagueness and imprecision:

> *He's into rock music* ***and all that****.*

And all

And all (usually pronounced /əˈnɔːl/) can mean ‘as well’ in informal spoken language:

> *They’ve already had one holiday this year and now they’re off to France* ***and all****.*

Discourse markers

All occurs in a range of fixed expressions which function primarily as spoken discourse markers. In most cases, the markers function to signpost the direction in which a stretch of talk is going or has gone:

> ***Above all****, the election was won on a sympathy vote.*
> (meaning: primarily)
>
> ***First of all****, let me thank you for attending this evening.*
> (meaning: the first thing I want to say)
>
> ***All right****, tell me why you think we should change the schedule?*
> (meaning: seeks to establish a new direction in the discourse)
>
> ***All the same****, I think there are other points of view.*
> (meaning: despite this)
>
> ***All in all****, the best team won.*
> (meaning: to summarise)
>
> *So you did decide to go to Leeds* ***after all****, did you?*
> (meaning: nevertheless)

A–Z 34 *Each*; 38 *Every*

ALLOW

A–Z 48 *Let*

ALREADY 13

Already refers to things that have happened or will have happened at a given point in time, and often (but not necessarily) contrary to expectations. It usually occurs in mid or end position; it is particularly frequent in end position in spoken language:

> *There are about ten people here* ***already****.*
> (more than we might expect at this time)
>
> *What makes you think he hasn’t done it* ***already****?*
>
> [*The Commons* refers to the elected part of the British Parliament]
> *The Commons has* ***already*** *agreed that there should be a referendum in which Londoners are asked whether they want a new council and a separately elected mayor.*

'I shall think about it when I get there.'
'By which time, it will be too late to decide where you want to go,' she pointed out.
'Because you will ***already*** *be there.'*

Front position is uncommon in informal spoken language, but does occur in more formal, written styles:

Already *younger women without children are more likely than their male counterparts to use the video recorder daily.*

Already is often used with a verb in the past perfect to stress that something was completed before something else happened:

They ***had already made*** *their plans for various visits before they arrived.*

✪ Do not confuse *already* with *yet*:

Have you booked a flight ***already****?*
(You've done it so soon, have you? It seems very early to book.)

Have you booked a flight ***yet****?*
(We know you have to book one, but I have no idea if you have done it up to this point in time.)

A–Z **72 *Still*; 81 *Yet***

ALSO, AS WELL (AS), TOO 14

Also 14a

Also is twice as frequent in writing as it is in speech. It may occupy a variety of positions.

Front position

In this position, *also* is used to add a new point or topic to what has been said:

She felt a little uncertain on her legs. ***Also****, it seemed to her that the sounds of traffic were abnormally loud, giving her an odd sensation of vertigo.*

[on the telephone]
I will give you a ring instead of sending it to you. I can do that. That's no problem. ***Also****, how are things down there in Bristol?*

In front position, *also* occurs frequently together with *and*, especially in speech:

I'll fax through to you the two sheets that have the adverts on, and the address of where you want us to send it. ***And also*** *I'll fax through to you the letter I've received that has the address on.*

Mid position

Also may be used in the normal mid position for adverbs (··❖ 325). In this position, the meaning of *also* usually refers to the whole clause:

> *The boy needs a bath and some food. I don't think he's eaten in a while. He* ***also needs*** *clean clothes, which I don't think you'll find at his home.*
>
> *So I've been doing that this week, and I****'ve also been reading****. I've done a lot of reading.*
>
> *She is very approachable and treats everyone equally, but she's not soft. She* ***is also*** *very good to staff with domestic problems.*

End position

In end position, *also* normally links two phrases. Items linked by *also* are in green in the examples below:

> *Pollution can cause trees and bushes and other things like that to die. And then animals that were in them, like birds and squirrels and things, can die* ***also****.*
>
> *She replaced it* [the telephone receiver] *and this time it stayed silent. She went over to the window. The world outside was silent* ***also****.*

In these end-position examples, *as well* and *too* may be used instead of *also*, especially in speech.

Linking phrases

Also may be used to link various types of phrase:

> [in an article about the numbers of people visiting theme parks in Britain]
> *But Chessington World of Adventures in Surrey slipped from fourth to fifth as attendances fell 4 per cent to 1.7 million. Thorpe Park,* ***also*** *in Surrey, fell by more than 2 per cent, although it still had well over 1.1 million visitors.*
>
> *He had been nervous as he wished them goodbye at the departure lounge, and* ***also*** *at the river.*

Too and *as well* cannot normally substitute for this use of *also*.

As well 14b

As well is many times more frequent in speech than in writing, and it is more than twice as frequent in speech as *also*.

✪ *As well* almost always comes at the end of a clause:

> *I just ignored it. I think everybody else did* ***as well****.*
> (~~I just ignored it. As well I think everybody else did~~.)
>
> [in a restaurant; A is the customer, B is the waiter]
> A: *And can I have special fried rice please.*
> B: *Yes.*
> A: *Could I have a fried beef in black bean sauce* ***as well****.*
> (~~Could I as well have a fried beef in black bean sauce~~.)

As well as 14c

As well as may join different types of unit to one another.

- Noun phrases:

  *My father was an artist **as well as** a priest, which was his profession.*

- Verb phrases:

  *I was going to write it myself, so I was going to write **as well as** publish.*

- Clauses:

✪ When *as well as* links a finite clause to another clause, the *as well as* clause has its main verb in the *-ing* form:

> *I am the press officer **as well as** being the person that has a link in with all of those other communications issues.*
> (~~I am the press officer as well as I am the person that …~~)
>
> ***As well as** working out a post-war settlement, the Paris Peace Conference also gave birth to the League of Nations, which was designed to create a completely new framework of international relations.*
> (~~As well as it worked out a post-war settlement, …~~)

As well as can be used at the beginning of a sentence. This use is much more frequent in formal writing than in informal speech:

> ***As well as** the castle and cathedral, there are other Norman buildings in Lincoln, such as these stone-built houses with round arches.*
>
> ***As well as** journalistic skill, being editor teaches you about dealing with stress.*

Front-position *as well as* may occur together with *also* in the second clause:

> ***As well as** pointing towards the magnetic north, the compass **also** points down into the Earth in the northern hemisphere and up out of the Earth in the southern hemisphere.*
>
> ***As well as** visiting the centre of the city to buy goods, many people **also** visit it to enjoy themselves in the theatre or the art gallery, to visit historic buildings, or eat and drink at various restaurants, clubs and cafés.*

Too 14d

Too is much less frequent in speech than either *also* or *as well*. In writing, *too* is only half as frequent as *also*, but many times more frequent than *as well*.

Too is not used at the beginning of a clause. It occurs mostly at the end of the clause, or, in more formal styles, in mid position.

End position

Most occurrences of *too* are in end position. Which part of the clause it refers to depends on context. In the examples below, linked items are in green:

> *Karen's having paté. I'll probably have paté* ***too****.*
>
> *That was the way she looked at it. And she was dead right,* ***too****.*
>
> [talking about reading a boring work document]
> *It's as joyful as reading a telephone directory, and as useful* ***too****.*

End-position *too* often occurs in speech after a clause with a fronted complement beginning with *and*:

> *One of her friends was a sort of pioneer at this new school of study. And I decided that was for me. And very interesting it was,* ***too****.*
>
> [talking about a library book which the speaker has mislaid]
> *It's probably around here then, hiding from me. And a very good book it was,* ***too****.*

Also would not normally be used in these examples. *As well* is possible.

Mid position

In more formal styles, *too* occurs in mid position. In written texts, it is often separated by commas before and after:

> *Her personal life**, too,** seems happier.*

The meaning, once again, depends on context. This example, out of context, could mean 'her personal life as well as her professional life', or 'her personal life, as well as someone else's personal life'.

Too can occur immediately after the subject, even where auxiliary verbs are present, if it refers directly to the subject:

> *He,* ***too****, was coming to a decision.*
> (he and someone else were coming to a decision)
> (~~He was too coming to a decision.~~)
>
> *Isabel put her hand to her head and found that her own hat,* ***too****, had gone.*
> (hers and someone else's hat had gone)
> (~~… and found that her own hat had too gone.~~)

However, if *too* links a verb phrase or a whole clause with another, it occurs in the normal mid position, after the first auxiliary verb (⁘ **325**):

> *A formal letter would be sent, and Victor would be grateful if Signor Busi would extend his stay for three more days so that a press conference could be arranged and the timescale for construction plotted. He would,* ***too****, be sending Signor Busi sketches of a small statue which was a birthday gift to Victor from how appropriate! the leading market traders.*
> (he would send a letter, and he would send sketches)

Choosing between *also*, *as well* and *too* 14e

Looking at all three expressions together, in speech *as well* is by far the most frequent, *also* is half as frequent, and *too* is the least frequent. In writing *also* is the most frequent, *too* is much less frequent, and *as well* is the least frequent.

In addition to the cases already mentioned, where one of the three expressions may be preferred to the others (e.g. speech versus writing), there are other cases of differences in the use of *also*, *as well* and *too*.

In imperative clauses, *as well* and *too* are normally preferred to *also*:

> [customer in a post office, buying first-class and second-class stamps]
> *Give me a book of ten first and a book of ten second* ***as well*** *then please.*
> (preferred to: … a book of ten second also then please.)
>
> *Dave found her the key. 'Have my ring* ***too****,' he said, taking it off his finger.*
> (preferred to: 'Have my ring also,' he said …)

As well and *too* are normally preferred in short responses and elliptical structures:

> A: *I'm looking forward to it. It's going to be good.*
> B: *Yes, I am* ***too****.*
> (or: Yes, I am as well.)
> (preferred to: Yes, I am also.)
>
> *And usually, if I can't see who it is when I go to the door, I always ask who it is, and my daughter does* ***as well****.*
> (or: … and my daughter does too.)
> (preferred to: … and my daughter does also.)

Too is especially common in responses to fixed expressions (e.g. extending good wishes, salutations) and in responses consisting of a single object pronoun:

> A: *All the best. Take care.*
> B: *You* ***too****.*
> (preferred to: You as well./You also.)
>
> A: *Right. Have a nice weekend.*
> B: *I shall try. You* ***too****.*
> (preferred to: You as well./You also.)
>
> A: *I need to do some serious work.*
> B: *Yeah, me* ***too****.*
> (preferred to: Yeah, me also./Yeah, me as well.)

Negative clauses 14f

Where two negative ideas are linked, *either* takes the place of *also*, *as well* and *too*:

> *Bill's not here. I don't think Dave is* ***either****, is he?*
> (~~I don't think Dave is also/as well/too.~~)

> A: *That's not in paperback yet. It's not been in any book clubs* ***either****, has it?*
> B: *No.*
> (~~It's not been in any book clubs also/as well/too, has it~~?)

A–Z 36 *Even*

ALTHOUGH, THOUGH 15

Subordinators *although, though* 15a

Both *although* and *though* can introduce subordinate clauses; *although* is the more formal of the two. *Though* is much more frequent than *although* in spoken and written language taken together.

When used with a subordinate clause **before** a main clause, the meaning is something like 'in spite of the fact that …':

> ***Although*** *a lot of money was thrown into the National Health Service, that money was not being used effectively, which is why they needed more managers.*
>
> ***Though*** *at long last she was by herself once more, she knew this would take some getting used to.*

When used to introduce a clause **following** a main clause, the meaning is something like 'but it is also true that …':

> *We work for what they want, not the other way round,* ***although*** *obviously we advise them.*
>
> *It was really funny actually,* ***though*** *I don't know why.*

In all four examples above, *although* and *though* are interchangeable.

Although, though + reduced clauses 15b

In formal styles, *although* and *though* may be followed by a reduced clause without a verb:

> *Miss D.,* ***although a most tragic case****, had not been dying.*
>
> ***Though a grandfather twice over****, he is tanned, fit and attractive, with keen brown eyes and a lot of hair – except on the top of his bald head.*

Although, though + non-finite clauses 15c

In formal styles, *although* and *though* may introduce a non-finite clause:

> *'The UK,* ***although starting from a higher base than many other countries****, has achieved approximately the same rate of growth as the USSR, and that should worry us,' Sir Denis said.*

> *Edith, **though regretting the accident**, was mindful of the irony.*
>
> *The tracks, **though produced a year ago**, are getting top reviews, which, as Mark points out, is vindication of the musical direction they chose to go in.*

Even though 15d

Even is frequently used with *though* (but not with *although*) for emphasis:

> *Do you find that you get tired when you're working, **even though** you're a part-timer?*
>
> ***Even though** I had nowhere to go, I moved out of the flat.*

A–Z **36c *Even if, even though*** for a comparison of *even if* and *even though*

Though in non-front clause positions 15e

Though (but not *although* or *even though*) can be used in other positions in the clause apart from at the beginning, with a meaning similar to *however* or *nevertheless*. In spoken language it is particularly common at the end of the clause:

> (mid position)
> *He knows what's happening. Ken, **though**, doesn't seem to know what's going on.*
>
> (end position)
> [speaker is talking about his job]
> *It's a bit panicky but I've not got any deadlines like you have, **though**.*

As though 15f

The expression *as though* is very frequent, and has a meaning very close to *as if*:

> *You look **as though** you're feeling a bit distracted.*
>
> *You feel **as though** you're battering your head against a brick wall most of the time.*

In both cases, *as if* would be equally acceptable.

ALWAYS 16

Position of *always* 16a

Always usually occurs in the normal mid position for adverbs (⁘ 325):

> *I **always try** and give a taxi driver ten per cent of the fare.*
>
> *He'**s always been** very good to me.*
>
> *There **was always** someone in the class that was above everyone else.*

Always is not normally used at the beginning of a declarative or interrogative clause:

> *I **always** make sure my doors are locked.*
> (~~Always I make sure my doors are locked.~~)
>
> *Do you **always** finish your homework on time?*
> (~~Always do you finish your homework on time?~~)

However, *always* often comes first in an imperative clause:

> ***Always** give way to pedestrians. **Always** be prepared to slow down and stop if necessary.*
>
> ***Always** gather herbs for storing on a dry day after the dew has evaporated.*

Some literary styles may occasionally use front position for emphasis:

> ***Always**, if I asked Mair anything, she would refer the decision to Bronwen.*
>
> ***Always**, all the time, men are forcing themselves to do what they do not want to do, and keeping themselves from what they do want to do.*

Always + progressive aspect 16b

Although *always* refers to general states of affairs or to repeated events, and is therefore mostly used with simple tense forms, it also occurs with progressive aspect. Such uses often refer to regular events or states which are problematic or undesired:

> *Her group **are always blaming** each other. It's awful, isn't it?*
>
> *I **was always lacking** in self-confidence and **lacking** in the confidence to think that I'm acceptable.*
>
> *He**'s always moaning** about money.*

Other uses of *always* 16c

Always is often used with *can* and *could* to refer to options and choices of action which the speaker considers to be freely available:

> *Of course, if the worst comes to the worst, I **can always** move in there and rent my house out.*
>
> *We **could always** phone up the ferry people and ask them if they've got any deals going.*

Always frequently occurs as an intensifier with mental verbs such as *think* and *remember*:

> A: *They look good down there don't they, those tiles?*
> B: *Yeah.*
> A: *I **always think** they look lovely.*
>
> *I **always remember** when I was fourteen, fifteen, I wanted to be in the Navy.*

As always 16d

As always is used to refer to a particular event which is seen as typical of all such events:

> ***As always****, she was doing all the talking.*
>
> ***As always****, it's a pleasure to get an email from you.*

For good, *for ever* and *for always* 16e

References to things which will be permanent are usually made with *for good*, and, more formally, with *for ever* (sometimes written as *forever*), rather than *for always*:

> *If we reject her now, we'll lose her* ***for good****.*
> (preferred to: If we reject her now, we'll lose her for always.)
>
> *I determined to enjoy every moment that I might carry it* ***for ever*** *in my memory.*
> (preferred to: … that I might carry it for always in my memory.)

For always does occur, but it is rare:

> *'I loved no one before you,' she said. 'I thought we were going to be together* ***for always****. I took it for granted.'*

Forever and *always* 16f

Forever (usually written as one word; compare *for ever*, **16e** above) has a meaning close to *always* when it is used with progressive aspect to refer to regular and repeated events, but carries an even stronger meaning of undesirability (see **16b** above):

> [*darting about* means 'moving very fast']
> A: *You know, I mean, your day's gone, so you're not relaxing really.*
> B: *No.*
> A: *You'**re forever darting** about here there and everywhere you know. And it's just too much.*

AMONG

A–Z *26 **Between, among***

ANYWAY 17

Anyway has two main uses: it is used with the meaning 'in spite of other circumstances mentioned', and it is used as a discourse marker to indicate boundaries in the discourse. Because of this second use, it is much more frequent in spoken language than in written.

When used to contrast two sets of circumstances, *anyway* normally occurs in end position:

> *Some kids will do things and it doesn't matter what they do because the parents won't care* ***anyway****.*
> (despite what they do)
>
> [customer (B) and server (A) talking about a suit]
> A: *Do you want me to wrap it up again for you?*
> B: *No it's only got to come out again* ***anyway****.*
> A: *Oh, all right then.*
> (even if you do wrap it)

As a discourse marker in spoken language, *anyway* occurs in front position, and is used to move to a new phase of a narrative or argument, or to resume a conversation after an interruption or diversion, or to signal a move towards closing the talk:

> *… she went back to her seat and stood up and sort of started again.* ***Anyway****, when I got off the bus the teacher came to me and he said 'Thank you for that'.*
> (moving to a new stage in the narrative)
>
> *… I'm not that stupid.* ***Anyway****, what I was saying was, when I first typed it up, it was like normal spacing and normal character size and I'd done nine pages.*
> (resuming the narrative after a diversion or interruption)
>
> *But* ***anyway*** *we'll continue this discussion when we get into the regulations. I must run cos I have to give a lecture.*
> (signalling closure)

Anyway can also have a concessive meaning similar to 'at least', and can be used to limit or restrict a statement or to concede a point. In this meaning it most typically occurs in end position, but may also occur elsewhere in the clause.

> *I do like where I am, I've noticed there's never really any trouble down here. Well not where I am* ***anyway****.*
>
> *It was a quiet place, Portland Close. That was the general consensus,* ***anyway****.*
>
> *Northampton, that's where I live. Well,* ***anyway****, that's where I live at the moment.*

APART FROM

A–Z 39 *Except*

AROUND, ROUND 18

Around is used as a preposition and as an adverb. It is alternatively written as *round*. *Round* is more common in spoken English. The primary meaning of *around/round* is that of surrounding or covering all sides of something.

As a preposition

*The plane had to circle **around the town** twice before it could land.*

*They were all sitting **round the fire** and singing songs.*

*The whole organisation was built **around him**.*

*Do you know if there is a florist **round here**?*

*Her whole life revolved **round her mother**.*

*Jeff always seems to know a way **round the problem**.*

As an adverb

*They just sit **around** all day and never seem to do any studying.*

*She's clearly been **around**.*
(been to many places/is experienced)

*He was **around** earlier this morning but he's probably gone home now.*
(in the area where the speaker is)

*Be careful not to leave any purses and wallets lying **around**.*

*That's one of the best cars **around** at the moment.*
(one of the best available/on the market)

With numbers

Around is often used for numerical approximations. It can occur in the structure *around about* or, more frequently, *round about*:

*There were **around 20,000 people** at the concert but we could still see everything on the stage.*

*You have to pay **around £70 a week** for rented accommodation near the university.*

*I'll see you **around four** then.*

*I think it was **round about 1994** when they moved here from Germany.*

Round and round

Round and round is a common fixed expression:

*We just seemed to be going **round and round** in circles and getting nowhere.*

••➔ also **000 Numerals and vague quantifiers**

AS 19

Preposition *as* 19a

As is used as a preposition, with a meaning of equivalence or comparison:

*She was thinking of you, as much **as** herself.*

*His chairmanship may well be criticised **as** anti-democratic.*

The preposition *as* is often used to talk about the role or function of a person, event or thing. When the noun denotes a specific or definite entity, the determiner is usually optional:

*Can you remember **as a child** whether your parents had any ambitions for you?*

[*Judi Dench* is a well-known actress]
*Judi Dench, **as the long-suffering wife**, was outstanding.*

*So, so it comes **as a bit of a shock**.*

*I used that **as a guideline** and modified it accordingly.*

***As (the) captain**, I have a responsibility to the whole team.*

✪ *As* + noun can have the meaning of 'in the role of'. It is not the same as *like* + noun, which means 'similar to' or 'in the same way as'. Compare:

1 ***As your tutor**, I want to give you the best possible advice.*

2 ***Like your tutor**, I want to give you the best possible advice.*

In **1** the speaker is the listener's tutor. In **2**, the speaker is not the tutor, but wishes to act in a similar way to the tutor.

Comparisons of appearance or behaviour are made with *like*, not *as*:

*That dog looks **like** a wolf.*
(~~That dog looks as a wolf.~~)

Than, not *as*, is used to complete a comparative construction with *more*:

*We had more freedom **than** many kids today.*
(~~We had more freedom as many kids today.~~)

Conjunction *as* 19b

The conjunction *as* can have comparative or temporal and consequential meanings. In its temporal meanings it is a synonym for *when* and *while*; in its consequential meanings it is a synonym for *since* or *because*:

*The news from Moscow, **as everyone predicted**, was excellent.*
(comparative meaning: like)

> ***As it fell****, it smashed to pieces.*
> (temporal meaning: when)
>
> *Drivers are warned to expect massive jams at the weekend* ***as families return home****.*
> (temporal meaning: while)
>
> ***As it was getting late****, they decided to book into a hotel.*
> (consequential: because)

⁘ **467a** ***As*** *…* ***as*** for detailed discussion of *as* and *as* … *as* … in comparisons

A–Z **49** ***Like***

ASK (FOR) 20

Ask has the meaning of requesting somebody to do or say something or to tell somebody about something. *Ask for* has the meaning of requesting somebody to give something.

The basic complementation pattern with *ask* is ditransitive (*ask somebody something*) (⁘ 286), and it is frequently used in reporting structures:

> *Can I* ***ask you a question****?*
>
> *Why don’t you* ***ask that man the way****?*
>
> *Why don’t you* ***ask them how much*** *it costs?*
>
> *Can I* ***ask you who*** *I should go and see?*
>
> *She* ***asked me if*** *I needed anything.*

Ask for is used with a direct object or an object + prepositional complement construction:

> *She’s not the kind of person who* ***asks for help****.*
>
> *We’ll have to* ***ask*** *the caretaker* ***for the keys to the room****.*

Ask can be followed by a direct object, especially in the expressions *ask a question* and *ask the way*/*ask the time*:

> *The audience* ***asked*** *a lot of* ***questions****.*
>
> *I’m not so sure of the roads round here. I think we’d better* ***ask the way****.*

Ask is often used with a direct object with reference to sums of money, usually for selling and renting things:

> [speaker B wishes to rent out a flat and a garage]
> A: *How much are you* ***asking****?*
> B: *We’re* ***asking £180 per week*** *for the flat plus £30 a week for the garage.*

Ask + direct object + *of* occurs in some common expressions:

> *I need to* ***ask a big favour of*** *you.*
>
> *I know it's* ***asking a lot of*** *Ranji but can't he cover my shift for me tomorrow?*

Both *ask* and *ask for* can be used with object + *to*-infinitive:

> *I* ***asked the whole group to wait*** *in the market square.*
> (asked somebody directly)
>
> *I* ***asked for the car to be repaired*** *on the same day.*
> (requested that something should happen)

In very formal contexts, *ask* (with the meaning of 'request') may be followed by a *that*-clause with a verb in the subjunctive mood:

> *In his will, he* ***asked that his ashes be scattered*** *upon the open sea.*

AS WELL (AS)

A–Z 14 *Also, as well (as), too*

AT 21

At commonly refers to time and place. The basic meanings and uses of *at* are best understood by comparing it with *in* and *on*.

At, in, on (time) 21a

A basic distinction between *at* and *in* depends on whether reference is made to a point (*at*), or an extended place or time (*in*):

> *The Edinburgh train leaves* ***at*** *seven thirty* ***in*** *the morning.*
> (*seven thirty* is a point in time; *the morning* is an extended period of time)

Some further examples of *at* and *in*, referring to time

things seen as a specific point in time (*at*)	things seen as an extended period of time or as a location within longer periods of time (*in*)
I didn't know if you would have time off ***at half-term****.*	*Here are some references to Russian poetry written* ***in the early 20th century****.*
I'm sorry, Jenn has got someone with her ***at the moment****.*	*He'll be free at about three. Could you wait here* ***in the meantime****?*
I'm wondering when I could come and pick up visiting cards that I ordered from you ***at the beginning*** *of October.*	*Maybe we should aim for a little bit of caution* ***in the beginning****, and try and get it right.*
Okay, we could meet ***at 4 o'clock*** *but why don't we meet* ***at lunchtime*** *instead?*	*Okay, he'll give you a ring* ***in a few days.***
Retirement for all civil servants is ***at 65****.*	*I retire* ***in three years' time****.*

With particular days, or parts of particular days, *on* is used:

We always like to meet for lunch ***on a Friday****.*

They love to have their grandparents with them, especially ***on a birthday****.*

You can't beat a walk ***on a fine spring morning****.*
(compare a more general reference: You can't beat a walk in the morning.)

References to important days are seen in terms of whether they are points on the calendar, parts of the day in general, or as particular days:

calendar points, specific periods, or location within longer periods (*at*, *in*)	**particular days (*on*)**
The semi-finals are ***in the morning*** *and the finals* ***in the afternoon****.*	*We had croissants* ***on the morning of the wedding****.*
Unemployment fell ***in April*** *in all regions and age groups.*	*At half-past four* ***on the afternoon of 8th April 1912*** *– the weather was mild and hyacinths bloomed in window boxes …*

At, *on*, *in* (place) 21b

At is used to describe a position or location seen as a point:

He was standing ***at the ticket barrier****, holding a bunch of red roses.*

We're going to meet ***at the service station*** *and then go on to Bristol in one car.*

At is used to describe locations at firms, companies, workplaces and educational institutions in a particular place:

[*Boots* is a UK pharmaceutical company]
She works ***at the Boots warehouse*** *in Beeston.*

[*Next* is a UK high-street clothing store]
I think you can buy the same thing cheaper ***at Next****.*

Both our childen are ***at Leeds Metropolitan University****.*

At is used to refer to activities which involve a group of people:

He's ***at a concert*** *until about eleven this evening.*

How many are going to be ***at the lecture****?*

On is used to describe a position along a road or river or by the sea or by a lake:

We can stop off at a café ***on the way****, can't we?*

It would be nice to live ***on the coast****, wouldn't it?*

The nicest hotel is ***on Lake Garda****.*

In is used to talk about locations within a larger area:

Look it up. I think you'll find it on page 32, ***in lines 24 to 28****.*

She's always sitting ***in the back row****.*
(the row is a larger area and she occupies one point in it)

We're planning to spend a fortnight walking ***in the mountains****.*

He was born and brought up ***in South Wales****.*

Here are some worksheets that the teachers use ***in class****.*

At after verbs and nouns 21c

At is used after a number of verbs in order to underline actions towards somebody or something. It is common after verbs of perception and communication:

I ***shouted at*** *him but he took no notice.*

Stop ***looking at*** *me like that!*

She ***frowned at*** *the suggestion and went rather pale.*

My comments weren't ***aimed at*** *you.*

✪ *At* is used after adjectives referring to skills, competencies and reactions:

She is ***bad at*** *communicating her ideas.*
(~~She is bad in communicating her ideas.~~)

I'm not very ***good at*** *making decisions.*
(~~I'm not very good in making decisions.~~)

When he was at school he was ***brilliant at*** *French.*

He was ***indignant at*** *their unruly behaviour.*

He is ***angry at*** *being left out of the squad for the European matches.*

BACK 22

General meanings of *back* 22a

Back refers to the rear area of something (the opposite of 'the front') and can be used as a noun or as a noun modifier:

Put the name and address on ***the back****.*
(noun: the rear side of the envelope/paper)

Do you know you've left your ***back door*** *open?*
(noun modifier: the rear door of a house or car)

When referring to the human body, *back* describes the rear surface between the shoulders and the waist:

It was very uncomfortable for a long time. I had to sleep on my ***back****.*

I've been experiencing ***back*** *pain the last few days.*

539 **Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

One of the commonest meanings of *back* is when something returns to an earlier situation or position, or moves in the opposite direction to how it moved before:

> *We went by coach and* ***came back*** *by train.*
>
> *Anyway, the bank said, 'Well, Mrs Hogan,* ***come back*** *next week and we'll see what we can do for you.' So I* ***went back*** *the following week and they reimbursed me for most of it.*

✪ *Back* does not mean the same as *again*. *Again* implies repetition, *back* simply means returning something to its former position or situation:

> [discussing a jumper damaged in the wash; *send it back* means 'send it back to the shop/manufacturer from where it was bought']
> A: *I've just noticed. Do you know what's happened to your jumper? Have you seen it?*
> B: *What, on there? That always happens to my jumpers.*
> A: *Ah, that's dreadful though. Could you not send it* ***back****?*
> (~~… send it again?~~)
> B: *Send it* ***back****?*
> (~~Send it again?~~)
> A: *Yeah. Brand new, isn't it?*
> B: *I've only washed it once.*
>
> *I'm sorry. Could you say that* ***again****?*
> (Could you repeat that?)
> (~~I'm sorry. Could you say that back?~~)

Back can also mean 'moving away from something or keeping one's distance from something':

> *Why should I stand* ***back*** *and watch my kids have to go through this at age sixteen?*

Back + dynamic and stative verbs 22b

Back may be used with dynamic verbs such as *come*, *drive*, *go*, *get*, *look*, *take*, *travel*, as well as stative verbs such as *be* and *lie*:

> *I remember a few years ago I was* ***driving back*** *from Wimbledon …*
>
> *Mohammed's taken Said to visit a friend and will* ***be back*** *later.*

At the back and *in the back* 22c

When *back* refers to a point or position in space, *at* is used. When it refers to an area or enclosed space, *in* is used:

> [speaker at a conference]
> *Can you hear me* ***at the back****? I just want to check that the microphone's working.*
> (speaker considers the 'back' of the hall as a position or point)

[offer to a passenger in a car]
Would you prefer to sit ***in the back****?*
(*the back* is seen as a part of, or area in, the car)

Back + *here, there, home* 22d

Back is often used with the adverbs *here*, *there* and *home*:

Meet me ***back here*** *at five o'clock.*

I got ***back home*** *at quarter to eleven, which was okay.*

Back + time expressions 22e

Back can be used with time expressions to emphasise that something happened a long time ago:

And I got involved in quality circles ***back in 1988****.*

Well I used to leave my bike around Truro, I was so naive ***back then****, I just used to leave it unlocked.*

Back can also be used with *a while* instead of *ago* in informal contexts:

A while back *he told me all about a long talk the two of you had when you were walking through the art gallery.*

BECAUSE/COS 23

Because is a subordinating conjunction which introduces clauses of cause and reason:

The government will not act ***because economic factors influence their thinking****.*

Because the snow had set in*, we decided to abandon the excursion to the mountain top.*

Because of is a two-word preposition:

Because of the heat*, we spent most of the time in the pool.*

I'm only here ***because of you****.*

Cos (which can also be spelt *'cause*) is a reduced form of *because*. It can be used in all the examples above. It is widely used in spoken and more informal varieties of English. *Cos* is a way of representing in writing the reduced pronunciation (/kəz/ or /kɔz/) of the word that is common in informal speech across the range of ages, social classes and educational background:

We're not going to the club ***cos*** *it's just too expensive.*

[two teachers speculating about the salary of a colleague]
She's probably on the first allowance ***cos*** *she was probably earning about eighteen thousand.*

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

In spoken English *cos* often functions more like a coordinating than a subordinating conjunction. In these instances *cos* invariably follows the main clause and functions to add to the information in the main clause:

> *She doesn't like animals* ***cos*** *she says we should keep the house clean. And she does, doesn't she?*
>
> *What does he look like?* ***Cos*** *I've never actually met him.*
> (*cos* here explains why the speaker is asking the question)

BEFORE 24

Preposition *before* 24a

Before is most frequently used with noun phrases referring to timed events:

> [speaking to a tennis player]
> *What kind of thoughts come into your mind* ***before a match****?*
>
> [travel agent to customer]
> *The tickets normally come about ten to fourteen days* ***before departure****.*

References to place may also be made with *before*, especially when they are seen as part of a sequence of events in time:

> [university literature seminar]
> *And it's clear I think* ***before the end of the first chapter****, probably* ***before the end of the first paragraph****, that actually that is not Jane Austen's point of view nor is it an objective factual point of view.*

✪ ***Before, by, till/until***

If something has to be done *before* a certain point in time, then when that point arrives, the specified action must already be completed:

> [tutor to student concerning handing in assigned work]
> *You'll have to give it to me* ***before Tuesday*** *cos I'm going away on Tuesday.*

If something must be done *by* a certain point in time, that point is the last moment at which the specified action can be completed:

> *I need to be back in Cardiff* ***by eight o'clock*** *on the Friday morning.*
> (no later than eight o'clock)
> (~~I need to be back in Cardiff till eight o'clock on the Friday morning.~~)

If something is done or happens *till/until* a point in time, it starts before that point and continues up to that point:

> *I'm going to be away* ***till August****.*
> (my absence will continue up to August)

Compare:

*I won't be there **till three o'clock**.*
(I will be there at three o'clock but not before)

*I'll be there **by three o'clock**.*
(I may arrive before three o'clock and will be there no later than three o'clock)

Adverb *before* 24b

Postmodifying a noun

Before often postmodifies nouns such as *day*, *morning*, *night*, *week*, *month*, *year*:

A: *There was a dreadful tragedy in Australia just yesterday I think.*
B: *Was there?*
A: *Or **the day before**. Yes.*

A: *Delia had her second day off school ill a week last Wednesday.*
B: *A week last Wednesday. So did she get to the concert?*
A: *Yes. We got to the concert. That was **the week before**.*
B: *Ah yes. Yeah.*

As adjunct

Before relates earlier events to the moment of speaking or to a point of time in the past:

A: *Does this look different to you?*
B: *Yeah. We haven't been in this building **before**.*
(up to the moment of speaking)

*It was a new team. They hadn't worked together **before**.*
(up to that point in the past)

Before + *-ing* clauses 24c

When used to link two clauses, *before* followed by a verb in the *-ing* form is many times more frequent in writing than in speech. In informal speech there is a strong preference for a full finite clause:

*As they talked, Sonia walked past. She spied them and waved, **before walking** on, heading towards Denver.*

*Add the lemon juice, and stir. **Before serving**, remove the red chilli.*

Before + finite clauses 24d

Before may be used with a variety of tense forms and time references to link two clauses:

- Present simple (with future meaning):

A: *When you go and vote, what sort of consideration do you give **before** you actually **decide** who you're going to vote for?*
B: *Well it's very hard really.*

- Present perfect:

  A: *The instructions are on there.*
  B: *Okay.*
  A: *And it's quite important to get them well-boiled cos otherwise we'll die of poisoning.*
  B: *Right. What from beans?*
  A: *Yeah. If you eat those* ***before*** *they'****ve*** *even* ***been soaked*** *or anything, it can kill you I believe.*
  B: *Right.*

- Past simple:

  A: *What did she do* ***before*** *she* ***married****?*
  B: *Hm?*
  A: *What sort of work did she do* ***before*** *she* ***married****? Did she ever tell you?*
  B: *I don't think she ever did anything.*

- Past perfect:

  He died in hospital. And ***before*** *he'****d gone*** *into hospital, he kept saying to my mother 'I've got something I've to sort out. I've got to go to the solicitors'.*

  The perfect aspect versions stress the completion of the event in the *before*-clause and a break in time between the events in the two clauses. The present simple or past simple versions suggest a closer connection between the two clauses, as with *after* (⁘ **10e**).

Premodification of *before* 24e

Before may be premodified by adverbs such as *just*, *immediately*, *shortly* and *long*, and by time expressions involving words such as *days*, *weeks*, *months*, *years*:

> *We arrived* ***just before*** *you.*
>
> *She was lying in bed sick and I'd known her* ***about two years before****.*

Beforehand 24f

Beforehand is often used as an alternative to *before* as an adverb, especially when the reference to timed events is less specific. It is more frequent in informal speech than in writing:

> [talking about an overseas teaching scheme and an information booklet about it]
> *And this is good because it tells you about the history and what the requirements are. And it says also this is to be used as a resource book. So it's good to read that* ***beforehand****.*
> (before doing anything else in connection with the scheme)

Beforehand may be premodified by adverbs such as *immediately*, *just* and *shortly*, and other time expressions involving words such as *days*, *weeks*, *months*, *years*:

> *He'd bought his tickets* ***months beforehand*** *and was really looking forward to it.*
>
> *He will get the bill* ***a week or two beforehand****.*

Other uses of *before* 24g

In more formal contexts, *before* is often used with the meaning of 'in front of':

> *Gertie and I had said goodbye to all our old schoolfriends, to the school itself, and the way of life which had come to an end after more than six years. The long end-of-term holiday was* ***before*** *us – only it was more than the end of term for us.*
>
> *When the case came up* ***before*** *the Crown Prosecution Service, it was returned for lack of evidence.*
>
> *We promise today,* ***before*** *the whole country, that free elections will be established as soon as it is safe to do so.*

Before long is a common expression meaning 'after a short time':

> [about the breeding of calves for their meat]
> *The newly-born calf is put into a tiny wooden crate.* ***Before long****, it will be unable to stand properly or turn around in its cramped 'home', and will develop deformed joints. Because people like their veal to be very white, the calves are fed solely on an iron-deficient liquid diet.*
>
> *They were lying in a long line near the entrance, their faces covered by their blankets. They were so very quiet it was hard to know whether any one of them was still alive. Many did die* ***before long*** *and were replaced by others whose time had come.*

BELOW 25

Preposition *below* 25a

Below is most commonly a preposition and means 'lower than'. It has a meaning which is close to *under*. Its opposite is *above*. In both the following sentences *under* can be substituted for *below*:

> *The water was now just* ***below her waist*** *and she was beginning to panic a little.*
>
> *Once the plane got* ***below the thunder*** *clouds, the turbulence subsided.*

Below is preferred when things are not literally or directly *under* but at a lower level:

> *We were 784 metres above sea level and 160 metres* ***below the actual summit****.*
> (~~We were 784 metres above sea level and 160 metres under the actual summit.~~)

Under is preferred to *below* when one thing touches or covers or hides something else. *Underneath* is only used to refer to physical position:

> *He put a thick winter vest* ***under his jacket****.*
> (*underneath* is possible but not *below*)
>
> [describing a flood]
> *Some cars parked near the river were almost completely* ***under the water****.*

Below is also used to refer to lower levels of more abstract notions and to numbers, especially statistics:

> *The Dead Sea is about 400 metres* ***below sea level****.*
>
> *When they reached the summit, it was already several degrees* ***below zero****.*
>
> [about the population of Scotland]
> *By 2025 it will be approaching 4.9 million and by 2040 it could fall* ***below 4.6 million****.*
>
> *The school's examination results were distinctly* ***below average****.*

✪ *Below* is not used in references to people's age:

> *You can only buy a ticket here if you are* ***under 18****.*
> (~~You can only buy a ticket here if you are below 18.~~)

Below is used metaphorically, often meaning that something is beneath or inferior to something else or that something has less power or authority. With this meaning *below* can be substituted by *beneath*:

> *He won't take on any job which he thinks is* ***below him****.*
>
> *She is in charge of the whole hospital and has three smaller units* ***below her****.*

Adverb *below* 25b

Below is also used as an adverb, especially with reference to the lower decks of a boat or ship:

> [talking about being on a ferry]
> *It was getting cold on deck so we went* ***below****.*

Below may postmodify a noun:

> ***The village below*** *was silent in the midday sun.*

Below is used in writing to refer to something that will be mentioned later in the text:

> *As we can see from the export data cited and summarised* ***below****, the results are very different from what the company was expecting.*
>
> *As we will argue* ***below****, the history of this decade tells a different story.*

A–Z 6 *Above*

BENEATH

A–Z **25 *Below***

BESIDES

A–Z **39 *Except***

BETWEEN, AMONG 26

Between and *among* are prepositions. *Between* focuses typically on two things which are clearly separated. *Among* focuses on things which are not clearly separated because they are part of a group or crowd or mass of objects and entities:

> *They built a hotel **between the hills**.*
> (probably with one hill on either side)
>
> *It is a lovely hotel set **among the hills**.*
> (probably surrounded by hills)

Most commonly, *between* introduces a prepositional phrase in which two singular or plural noun phrases are joined:

> *In many cameras, the distance **between the lens and the film** can be altered so that the focus of the picture is sharp.*
>
> *There is a distinction **between what's written and what's spoken**, of course.*
>
> *The managing director was determined to set a distance **between himself and his employees**.*

The complement of *between* can also be a comparison of times or of a numeric value, which is **not** possible with *among*:

> *She lived in Japan **between 1994 and 2000**.*
> (~~She lived in Japan among 1994 and 2000.~~)
>
> *Three years ago the television companies agreed to pay a royalty of **between 15 per cent and 35 per cent** to musicians and actors on all tapes sold.*

A large number of nouns, and some verbs, are often followed by *between*. The most frequent nouns are: *connection*, *difference*, *distinction*, *link*, *relationship*. Verbs frequently followed by *between* are: *choose*, *differentiate*, *distinguish*, *divide*. *Among* is not strongly related to preceding nouns or verbs:

> *Unfortunately, he could see no **connection between** his behaviour that night and the fact that his friends no longer phoned him.*
>
> *What's the **difference between** writing for children and writing for adults?*

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

Among creates a sense of being a part of or surrounded by or included in something else. *Among* is typically followed by a plural noun phrase:

> *I grew up* ***among the most majestic pine forests*** *… I took them for granted, never knew how beautiful they were.*
>
> *She was far from home, living* ***among strangers****, but she was very happy there.*
>
> *Do you happen to have my copy of Macbeth* ***among your books****?*
>
> *I'd put her* ***among the top 20% of students in the class****.*

Note also the two phrases *among others* and its variant *among other things*:

> *One of their hopes,* ***among others****, is that more financial information will have to be disclosed, and more people will be made punishable for breaking the rules.*
>
> *The review body will discuss this,* ***among other things****; but the broad outline of the new system has been approved.*

Amongst is sometimes used as an alternative to *among*. It is more formal and generally less frequent:

> *Industrial organizations are* ***amongst*** *the most fragile in the world.*

Between can sometimes be used to refer to more than two people or things, especially where the people or things are seen as individually separated from one another:

> *I gave her money for the three children to divide* ***between them****.*
>
> *There are some big gaps* ***between the floorboards*** *in our living room.*

BIT, A BIT (OF) 27

Bit + nouns 27a

Bit often has a deliberately vague and informal meaning:

> *I've done a few* ***bits*** *of shopping.*
>
> *The unit is over in the accident and emergency* ***bit*** *of the hospital.*

A bit (of)/bits (of) can denote large and small quantities and can refer to both abstract and concrete things. It is an informal alternative to *some*, or *a piece of/pieces of*, or *a part of*, depending on the type of noun it occurs with:

> *It's* ***a*** *nice* ***bit of land*** *you have here.*
> (or: piece of land)
>
> *Don't they need* ***a bit of furniture*** *before they can move in?*
> (or: some furniture)

We went to the auction and got three nice ***bits of furniture****.*
(or: three nice pieces of furniture)

It's okay. You gave me ***a bit of your sandwich*** *and I'll give you* ***a bit of mine****.*
(or: a part of your sandwich … a part of mine)

We only watched ***a bit of that documentary****, but it looked interesting.*

I need ***a bit of peace and quiet****.*

It looks like you've lost ***a bit of weight*** *already.*

A bit of a is used with nouns which have a gradable meaning, and has a meaning similar to 'quite a':

It's ***a bit of a problem****, I'm afraid.*

Don't you think she's been ***a bit of a fool*** *about all this?*

Adverb *a bit* 27b

A bit commonly functions as an adverb. It is a more informal alternative to *a little*:

They had got ***a bit tired*** *working at the computer.*

Wait a bit*, can you. I'll be down in a minute.*

A bit is used to modify comparative adjectives and comparative determiners. It is not normally used to modify comparative adjectives before nouns:

It was ***a bit more*** *entertaining than the last play we saw.*
(~~It was a bit more entertaining play.~~)

The beach was ***a bit nicer*** *than we'd been led to believe.*

A bit less *noise please!*

She needs to show ***a bit more*** *enthusiasm for her work.*

When used with non-comparative adjectives and determiners, the meaning is often negative and critical:

It's ***a bit extravagant****, isn't it?*

He's ***a bit old*** *to be driving, I think.*

She's been trying to tell him what to buy. That's ***a bit much****, I think.*
(*a bit much* is an idiom meaning 'unreasonable')

A bit (or *a little bit*) often has a hedging function:

It still hurts ***a bit****.*
(It still hurts, but not much.)

I was ***a little bit*** *annoyed, to tell you the truth.*
(… slightly annoyed …)

The phrase *not a bit* is used in responses to deny or repudiate something:

> A: *I hope he didn't hurt your feelings?*
> B: ***Not a bit**.*
> (Not at all.)

A good bit, a fair bit, quite a bit 27c

A good bit, *a fair bit* and *quite a bit* are fixed phrases. Unlike most other meanings with *a bit (of)*, these phrases refer, often by means of understatement, to large quantities:

> *He left **quite a bit of** money, you know, in his will.*
>
> *She's **a fair bit** older than he is. About 15 years, I think.*

A–Z 50 ***Little, a little, few, a few***

BOTH 28

With nouns preceded by determiners, *both* and *both of* occur:

both	*both of*
*We have, in **both those** markets, spent a lot of time and effort on public relations.*	*The problem is **both of those** statements are true, aren't they?*
*This year we've had **both your** nieces here, haven't we?*	*And what changes have you had to make to **both of your** lives in order to accommodate your baby?*

However, determiners are often omitted after *both*:

> *I also told **both neighbours** on **both sides** that I was going to be away for that fortnight and could they keep an eye out in the day because there wouldn't be anyone in during the daytime.*

When *both* is part of a subject or object which has a pronoun head, it may be followed by *of* + an object pronoun. Alternatively, *both* may postmodify a subject pronoun or an object pronoun:

	both of + pronoun	pronoun + *both*
subject	***Both of them** were sitting there looking up at it like that.*	***We both** play the violin.*
object	*Do you two want a lift? I can take **both of you**.*	*Which do you prefer? Cos I like **them both**.*

The *both of* + object pronoun construction is generally preferred after prepositions:

> *I think there's different information **on both of them**.*
> (preferred to: … different information on them both)

That's going to be helpful for ***both of us****, really, isn't it?*
(preferred to: … helpful for us both)

The object pronoun + *both* construction is not used:

1 where a pronoun is the complement:

A: *There's nothing new happening.*
B: *No.*
C: *You know.*
A: *And that's* ***both of you****?*
(~~And that's you both?~~)
C: *Yes.*

2 in elliptical short answers:

A: *Which one was that? Is that the eldest?*
B: ***Both of them****.*
(~~Them both.~~)
A: *They both came over did they?*
B: *Yeah.*

3 where there is a pronoun phrase in apposition:

Were your mum and dad Irish, ***both of them****?*
(~~Were your mum and dad Irish, them both?~~)

In informal speech, *the* may precede *both of* + pronoun:

Oh, look, I don't know. You decide, ***the both of you****.*

If *both* refers to the subject of a clause, it may be used in the normal mid position for adverbs (··⁞ 325):

We ***both decided*** *he was going to be a ballet dancer.*

[addressing two little children]
Shall I sit in between so you ***can both look*** *at the story together?*

These ***are both*** *£79.*

Both may be used alone in short questions and answers. *The both* is not used:

A: *Do you want rice, Bob, or noodles?*
B: ***Both****.*
(~~The both.~~)

Neither of is usually preferred to *both … not* in negative clauses:

Neither of them *can walk very far.*
(preferred to: ~~Both of them can't walk very far.~~)

Both … and is used to emphasise the link between parallel constructions, and is stronger than simple coordination with *and*:

> *Knowing **both** Pat **and** Fran Powell, I would be careful if I were you.*
> (~~Knowing both Pat and knowing Fran Powell, I would …~~)
>
> *Military technology being used for cordless phones will **both** cut out static **and** prevent eavesdropping.*

BRING, TAKE, FETCH 29

Bring, take 29a

To understand the difference between *bring* and *take*, it is important to observe how the direction of the action relates to the speaker and listener.

Bring typically means movement with something or someone either from the listener's location to the speaker's or vice versa:

> [a bottle of water has just been opened; speaker goes towards the kitchen]
> *I'll **bring** some fresh glasses.*
> (she will come back with the glasses to the place where the listener is)
> (~~I'll take some fresh glasses.~~)
>
> *I had a load of equipment and stuff I couldn't possibly **bring** on a bicycle so I just **brought** the minibus here.*
> (movement to where the speaker is now)

Bring can also mean movement with something or someone from a third-party location to the speaker's or listener's location:

> *They've been very kind to me over the year and he's just **brought** me a turkey. So I can't grumble.*
> (movement with something by a third person to the speaker's location)
>
> [B's sister has just returned from a holiday]
> A: *Did she **bring** you a present?*
> B: *Yes, she did.*
> (~~Did she take you a present?~~)
> (movement with something by a third person to the listener's location)

Take typically means movement with something or someone from the speaker's or listener's location to a third-party location:

> A: *What time's your flight? I can **take** you to the airport.*
> B: *Oh, thanks.*
> (~~I can bring you to the airport.~~)
> (movement to a third-party location; neither the speaker nor the listener are at the airport)

A: *She was sick all Saturday. She was sick Saturday night.*
B: *So it's gone on for quite a long time really, hasn't it?*
A: *Well it has. That's why I* ***took*** *her to the doctor's.*
(movement with someone from the speaker's location to a third-party location)

Where both parties involved in the action are third parties, either *take* or *bring* may be used, depending on whether the speaker sees things from the agent's (*take*) or the recipient's (*bring*) viewpoint:

Every morning she ***brings*** (or ***takes***) *dad a cup of tea in bed.*

✪ The most common errors with *bring* and *take* involve a failure to orientate to the direction of the action:

I ***take*** *my cat to my neighbour's house once a week, to play with my neighbour's cat, to let it have fun with other cats.*
(~~I bring my cat to my neighbour's house once a week …~~)
(the movement is to a third-party location, not to the speaker's location)

I always encourage my children to ***bring*** *their friends home and to invite them for birthday parties.*
(~~I always encourage my children to take their friends home …~~)
(the movement is to the speaker's location, not to a third-party location)

Fetch 29b

Fetch means to go to another place to get something or someone and bring them back:

Will you go and ***fetch*** *some milk from the fridge, please.*

I can ***fetch*** *Mick from the station tomorrow if you like.*

A–Z 30 *Come, go*

BY

A–Z 24 *Before*

COME, GO 30

To understand the difference between *come* and *go*, it is important to observe how the direction of the action relates to the speaker and listener.

Come typically means movement either from the listener's location to the speaker's or vice versa:

A: *Are you* ***coming round*** *for coffee tomorrow? I'm here on my own.*
B: *Oh are you?*
(movement from listener's to speaker's location)

[speaking on the phone]
I'll ***come to your place*** *at about six and pick you up.*
(movement from speaker's to listener's location)
(~~I'll go to your place at about six and pick you up.~~)

Come can also mean movement from a third-party location to the speaker's or listener's location:

A student ***came to me*** *last night and complained about noise upstairs.*
(movement by a third person to the speaker's location)

A: *I was talking to Gary and Olivia.*
B: *They're* ***coming to see you*** *next weekend I gather.*
A: *That's right. Yes.*
(movement by a third person to the listener's location)

Come is also used with the meaning of accompanying the speaker or listener to a place:

We're going to the cinema Robin. ***Are you coming****?*

[*Super-buy* is a large supermarket]
A: *We were thinking of trying to have a trip to Super-buy at some point.*
B: *I'll* ***come with you****.*

Go typically means movement from the speaker's or listener's location to a third-party location:

A: *Every time I* ***go to Super-buy****, no matter what time I go, I have to queue.*
B: *Mm.*
A: *There's two things that put me off the idea of* ***going to big supermarkets like that****. One is finding somewhere to park and the other is queuing to pay for your goods.*
(movement to a third-party location; neither the speaker nor the listener are at a supermarket)

A: *We drove up into Malaysia.*
B: *And did you* ***go to Kuala Lumpur*** *then?*
A: *No. We* ***went to Melaka****.*
(movement to a third-party location; neither the speaker nor the listener are in Malaysia)

Where both parties involved in the action are third parties, either *go* or *come* may be used, depending on whether the speaker sees things from the agent's (*go*) or the recipient's (*come*) viewpoint:

Much as he had ***come to her*** *when life got too complicated and sad, she now turned to him.*
(seen from the recipient's (her) viewpoint; if *gone* had been used, the movement would be seen from the agent's (his) viewpoint)

✪ Do not use *go on/off* for *get on/off*:

He put his newspaper down and ***got off*** *the train at the next station.*
(~~He put his newspaper down and went off the train at the next station.~~)

When you ***get on*** *the plane they offer you a drink.*

When reference is made to a whole trip to and from a place in the present perfect, *been to* is used, not *gone to*:

A: ***Have you been to*** *Bristol recently?*
B: *No. Not for years.*
(~~Have you gone to Bristol recently?~~)

Present perfect with *go* typically indicates that the subject is still absent:

A: *What about Lou? Did you ring Lou?*
B: *I haven't rung Lou, no. Actually. No,* ***he's gone to*** *Edinburgh this weekend so he won't be at home now.*
(Lou is in Edinburgh at the moment of speaking)

Go in, *go into* and *come in*, *come into* mean to enter. *Go to* and *come to* mean to visit or make a trip to a place:

The idea is that people who ***go to foreign countries*** *should have a lot of respect for other races and different religions.*
(~~The idea is that people who go in foreign countries should have a lot of respect~~ …)

He had ***come to Greece*** *in the summer on vacation.*
(~~He had come in Greece in the summer on vacation.~~)

A–Z 29 ***Bring, take, fetch***

COS

A–Z 23 ***Because/cos***

DO 31

Forms of auxiliary verb *do* 31a

Do is used to form the interrogative and negative of lexical verbs (except copular verb *be* and some uses of lexical verb *have*).

person	interrogative	negative declarative	negative interrogative
present tense: all persons except third singular	***Do I** know Helen?* *What **do you** want?* ***Do we** really have to do it?* ***Do they** sell posters?*	***I don't** eat much meat.* ***You don't** look old enough.* ***We don't** think about it.* ***They don't** get back till Tuesday.*	***Don't I** know you?* ***Don't you** think dad's looking better?* *Why **don't we** put it to a vote?* ***Don't they** look after her?*
present tense: third person singular	***Does anybody** want boiled rice?*	***She doesn't** eat lunch.*	***Doesn't anybody** ask you about that tee-shirt?*
past tense: all persons	***Did I** get my change?* ***Did you** hear what I said?* *Where **did he** work?* ***Did we** talk about that last time?* ***Did they** hire a car?*	***I didn't** say that.* ***You didn't** try hard enough.* ***Roger didn't** have any coffee.* ***We didn't** go upstairs.* ***They didn't** hear anything.*	***Didn't I** sign it?* ***Didn't you** tell them the dates?* ***Didn't he** turn up?* ***Didn't we** have a leaflet?* ***Didn't they** come from an academic background as well?*

In more formal styles, or careful speech, or when auxiliary *do* or *not* is stressed, *don't*, *doesn't* and *didn't* may be spoken and written as *do not*, *does not* and *did not*:

- Formal styles:

  *At an acrimonious meeting, 182 members voted for his adoption, 35 against, four put up their hands as abstentions and 61 **did not** vote.*

  *The public affection for the Queen **does not** extend to her family.*

- Careful speech, stressed auxiliary or stressed *not*:

  *If I never have to see another doctor's surgery or hospital outpatient clinic, then I would be extremely, extremely happy. I **do not** like being ill.*

Other contracted forms of *do* and *did* 31b

In informal speech, *do you* and *did you* may be contracted to /dju/ and written as *d'you*:

> *What about roads? **D'you** think less should be spent on the roads?*
> (Do you think …)
>
> ***D'you** get my message?*
> (Did you get my message?)

After *where*, *who*, *what*, *why* and *how*, *did* may be contracted to /d/ in informal speech, and written as *’d*:

> *Where****’d*** *you put the scissors?*
> (Where did you put the scissors?)
>
> A: *What****’d*** *you say?*
> (What did you say?)
> B: *I said why are you depressed?*
>
> *Why****’d*** *she ring back?*
> (Why did she ring back?)

Emphatic declarative form of *do* 31c

Do, *does*, *did* are also used for the emphatic declarative:

> *I’ve got some nice shrubs here which I* ***do*** *like.*
>
> *But I think it* ***does*** *affect the quality a little bit.*
>
> *He* ***did*** *mention that getting the public involved sometimes was a waste of time.*

Do in tags and as a substitute verb 31d

The forms of *do* in the table above (31a) and the infinitive *to do* are used in tags and checks, and in substitute clauses to repeat the idea of the main clause:

> *You like lemon chicken,* ***don’t*** *you, Maureen?*
>
> *She doesn’t go short of anything,* ***does*** *she?*
>
> A: *It went straight into his eye.*
> B: ***Did*** *it?*
> A: *Yeah.*
>
> *I wouldn’t intrude in any way on any academic problem because I don’t have the necessary qualification to* ***do*** *so.*

also **98 Questions and tags** and **130 Substitution**

Lexical verb *do* 31e

Do as a lexical verb is used to indicate activity of some kind. It collocates strongly with nouns denoting physical and mental activities:

> *They think the women are the ones who go out and* ***do the shopping****.*
>
> *He kept asking me if I’d* ***do a painting*** *of him.*

Other everyday nouns of this type include:

cleaning
course
decorating
degree
diploma
dishes
homework
housework
job
project
research
washing (up)
work

A very common pattern is *do* + quantifying expression + activity noun:

> *Do you **do a lot of skiing**?*
>
> *I managed to **do a bit of theatre-going and concert-going**.*
>
> *Let's now make the beds and **do some hoovering** if that's all right.*

Other everyday nouns that occur in this construction include:

cooking
exercise
fishing
gardening
reading
sightseeing
singing
studying
swimming
walking
writing

Do and *make* 31f

Do is often used with nouns that can also be used with *make*. *Do* focuses on the activity itself, while *make* focuses on the end product of the activity:

> *Do you want me to **make** some potato salad? Cos Mick said he'd **do** a potato salad and another sort of salad and I've just been on the phone to Jane as well, she says she's gonna **do** a rice salad.*

A–Z 51 *Make*

DOWN 32

Down is used as a preposition indicating movement or position:

> *They **drove down the hill** too quickly and didn't see the bend.*
>
> *The supermarket**'s down the hill**, then turn right. You can't miss it.*
>
> *Pamela **lives** just **down the road**.*

Down is also used as an adverb:

> *They were **waving** a flag up and **down** and looking very anxious.*
>
> *You've **come down** from Portland, have you?*

Down can also be used as an adjective. It is almost exclusively used predicatively and it has a wide range of meanings which are often metaphoric and often negative:

> *She's a bit **down**.*
> (sad)
>
> *The computer's **down** again.*
> (not working)
>
> *Don't be too **down** on them. They haven't done this before.*
> (critical)

Down can also be used as a verb:

> *He* ***downed*** *his opponent in the third round.*
> (knocked down, defeated)

DURING 33

During is used to refer to extended events or periods of time. Reference may be to the whole time of the event, or to something that occurred while the event was taking place:

> *You're not allowed to smoke* ***during the flight****.*
> (the whole flight)
>
> ***During that week*** *it was the birthday of our son.*
> (at a point in the week)

✪ *During* and *for* are different. *During* is not used with numbers and quantitative time expressions:

> *I worked there* ***for three years****.*
> (~~I worked there during three years.~~)

However, *during* is used with *the last* + quantitative time expressions:

> *Have you seen him at all* ***during the last few days****?*

During is not used to introduce clauses:

> ***While I was sitting there****, the nurses were talking in the corridor.*
> (~~During I was sitting there, the nurses were talking in the corridor.~~)

A–Z 43 ***For***

EACH 34

Each other 34a

By far the most common construction with *each* is *each other*, which is used to refer to a reciprocal event or state, where the subject and object are both agents and recipients of the same process:

> *I mean, you two have known* ***each other*** *for a long time, haven't you?*
>
> [talking about the subjects of study at a university]
> *The Business Studies and the Computing actually complement* ***each other*** *very well.*

A: *We don't mind being with* ***each other*** *in the day.*
B: *Yeah.*
A: *Some couples … I've got friends who say I'm happily married but I couldn't be locked in a house for five years with my husband.*

Although *each other* most frequently refers to only two people or things, this is not necessarily so, and it may refer to larger groups, especially in informal speech. In this way, it is an alternative to *one another*:

> *Our next generation in the family, they're all very close to* ***each other****, if you know what I mean.*
>
> *She said it was all right at the beginning of the year, they all moved in together, but this is the third year they've all lived together, and she said, 'Oh so many arguments'. She said, cos they know* ***each other*** *so well now, instead of talking about* ***each other*** *behind their back, they just have full blown arguments to their face.*

Each other's can be used as a possessive determiner:

> *We like* ***each other's*** *company.*

Each other cannot be used as the subject of the clause. *Each of us/each of you/each of them*, or *we each/you each/they each* is used:

> ***Each of us*** *must return to continue the fight in our own towns.*
> (~~Each other must return to continue the fight in our own towns.~~)
>
> ***We each*** *make our own decisions.*

Each other and *one another* are often used interchangeably, with little difference in meaning:

> *His last wife was Chinese, and they lived in separate houses, but not far away from* ***one another****.*
> (or: … not far away from each other.)
>
> *Oh this is Peggy Ann. We've known* ***one another*** *now for, what, fifteen years.*

However, while *each other* can be used to emphasise the individuality of the relationship between one person or thing and another, *one another* can be used to focus on people and things as groups:

> *It is natural for people to be interested in* ***one another's*** *affairs in the country, and anything of that nature was sure to be talked about: but this time there was much more talk than usual.*
> (people seen as an undefined group)
>
> *The high valleys of Graubünden were virtually isolated from* ***one another*** *until well into the nineteenth century.*
> (all the valleys seen as a group)

Each and *every* 34b

Each refers to individual things in a group or list of two or more entities. It is often similar in meaning to *every*, but *every* refers to a group or list of more than two entities. Compare:

1 ***We each*** *make our own decisions.*
(stresses individual members of a group)

2 ***Everyone*** *makes their own decisions.*
(stresses the group as a totality)

While example **1** could refer to two people or more than two people, example **2** can only refer to more than two people.

Adverbs such as *almost*, *practically* and *nearly* are used with *every*, but not with *each*:

You walk down any street and basically ***almost every*** *building is falling down.*
(~~… and basically almost each building is falling down.~~)

Each, *each of* and *each one of* 34c

✪ *Each* is followed by a singular noun:

He turned up fairly regularly at the same time ***each day****.*
(~~… at the same time each days.~~)

Each of is used before other determiners and before object pronouns:

What we did was carry out group discussions in ***each of the*** *countries within the target market.*

These are bookmarks. I have one for ***each of you****.*

The hotel manager charged ***each of them*** *£10 for three single rooms, totalling £30.*

Each of with a plural noun as subject is normally followed by a singular verb, though this rule is sometimes ignored in informal speech:

Each of those *parallel dimensions* ***is*** *equally possible.*

For greater emphasis, *each one of* may be used with determiners and pronouns. If the phrase with *each one of* is the subject, the verb is singular:

Well, there's six doctors now. Six. And ***each one of them has*** *a computer station.*

Each + pronouns/possessives 34d

Each may be used with plural pronouns and possessives, especially in order to express neutral gender:

Each person *should contribute to old-age care insurance, which would be triggered if* ***they*** *became in need of care.*
(preferred to: … if he became in need of care.)

··➝ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

> *How can we lay the foundation of children's educational achievements within the confines of the National Curriculum while simultaneously helping* ***each child*** *take pride in* ***their*** *cultural accomplishments, care for others and care for the world in which* ***they*** *live?*

Each referring to a subject 34e

When *each* refers to the subject of the clause, it can occur in the normal mid position for adverbs (⁘ 325):

> *They* ***each agreed*** *to pay £20.*
>
> *We* ***each have*** *a responsibility.*
>
> *We* ***had each been*** *given a whole loaf of bread.*

A–Z 12 *All*; 28 *Both*

ESPECIALLY 35

✪ Do not confuse *especially* and *specially*. *Especially* means 'particularly' or 'above all'. *Specially* is not normally used in this way:

> *The most damaging economic and political effects of the Depression were felt in Japan, and* ***especially*** *in Germany.*
> (~~… were felt in Japan and specially in Germany.~~)
>
> *The demands of putting all children through the National Curriculum make it more difficult for teachers to cope with disruptive behaviour. This is* ***especially true*** *of primary schools.*

Specially is used to indicate the specific intention(s) behind an action:

> [referring to the processing of applications for political asylum]
> *All asylum claims are considered by* ***specially trained*** *caseworkers.*
> (the caseworkers are trained intentionally for this job)
>
> *Cows are also* ***specially bred*** *to create genetically good milk makers.*
>
> *I did that* ***specially for you****.*

However, in informal spoken language, *specially* is sometimes used to mean 'particularly' or 'above all':

> A: *If somebody is ill do you think, if the treatment isn't going to work, do you think that hospitals should stop treating patients?*
> B: *I think* ***specially in the case of children*** *they shouldn't stop.*

EVEN 36

General meaning and use of *even* 36a

Even refers to extreme or unexpected things. When it refers to a whole event, it operates as a mid-position adverb (··⁘ 325):

> *Some of the members thought I was being very disloyal. They* ***even accused*** *me of being in the pay of European dealers, which I had to get them to deny because it was certainly not true.*
>
> *Sadly he can't drive, he can't walk, he* ***can't even answer*** *the door.*
>
> [speaker talking about fears for his children]
> *There* ***are even*** *drugs at school, so I really fear for them and hope that they don't get caught up with it.*

Even can come before the verb in a non-finite clause:

> *The potatoes grow without* ***even looking*** *after them. We just plant them.*

Even can come before any particular clause element that the speaker/writer wants to focus on:

> ***Even a ship made with prime materials and the best British engineering*** *could hardly stand such a battering.*
> (focus on subject noun phrase)
>
> *Queen Street today drove me absolutely mad, you know. Because you could hardly walk around there. And it was never like that years ago,* ***even on a Saturday****.*
> (focus on the adjunct)
>
> *One of the targets is for people to take moderate exercise, typically walking and cycling, for around 30 minutes, five times a week. Yet studies suggest that fewer than one in 20 children achieves* ***even this****.*
> (focus on the object noun phrase)

When used to focus on a particular clause element, the negative form of *even* is *not even*:

> [speaking of someone born in 1915]
> *When Ann was born, the idea of space travel, that men could go to the moon, was considered pure science fantasy.* ***Not even science fiction****.*

In informal speech *even* may occasionally occur in end position:

> *He had loads of injections and then they gave him proper stitches and it was really bad, it was really traumatic for me and my brother* ***even****.*

Even + comparatives 36b

Even frequently occurs with comparative adjectives and adverbs:

> *We finish at three but some people have to leave* ***even earlier*** *than that.*

By saying ***even*** *earlier*, the speaker is implying that three o'clock is already very early. Compare:

> *We finish at three but some people have to leave* ***earlier*** *than that.*

Here there is no necessary implication that three o'clock is 'early', and the speaker could have said 'some people have to leave before that'.

Other examples with comparatives:

> *You know you've gone a long way this year. You'll go* ***even further*** *next year.*
>
> *The alternatives were scratched because they were* ***even more*** *time-consuming.*

⇢ also **460-471 Comparison**

Even if, even though 36c

Even if can have either a hypothetical meaning (i.e. the speaker does not know if something will be the case or not) or a concessive meaning (the speaker concedes that something may well be the case). *Even though* tends to be used only in concessive contexts:

> *We'll go for lots of walks,* ***even if the weather's horrible****.*
> (hypothetical)
>
> *So I know something about the deal* ***even if my information is rather out of date****.*
> (concessive: I accept my information may be out of date)
>
> *I kind of have the impression that I really like London now,* ***even though I didn't enjoy it at the time****.*
> (concessive)

In informal speech, where the meaning of *even if* is obvious, *even* is sometimes omitted:

> *I'll finish that skirt tomorrow* ***if it kills me****.*
> (even if it kills me)

Even and *also* 36d

✪ *Even* refers to extremes. *Also* simply adds another piece of information, but does not carry the meaning of surprising, unexpected or extreme events. Compare:

> [said by a speaker at the closing ceremony of a big international conference]
> *I've enjoyed the conference very much. I* ***also learned a lot*** *from the talks I attended.*

> *I've enjoyed the conference very much. I* ***even learned a lot*** *from the talks I attended.*
> (That surprised me. I thought I knew everything already!)

A–Z 14 *Also, as well (as), too*

Even so, even then 36e

Even so has the meaning of 'nevertheless', 'despite this', or 'however'. It occurs mostly in front position in the clause, but may also occur in end position, especially in informal speech:

A: *I mean originally it was going to start on the first of January, and then they realised they simply couldn't do it because Rita was going to be away anyway all of December.*
B: *Right.*
A: *But* ***even so****, I still think it was quite hurried.*

Even then can also mean 'despite something that was/is/will be already true'. It is most typically used in front position in the clause:

[woman talking about how she went into labour when pregnant]
So I was admitted to hospital, but ***even then*** *it was another two days before she was actually born.*

EVER 37

Ever is used in interrogative clauses and negative declarative clauses to mean 'at any point in a given period of time':

[talking about childhood]
Did you ever play *football in the streets?*

I haven't ever had *anything like that happen to me.*

Ever occurs in affirmative relative clauses in superlative contexts, and often with expressions such as *the first time*, *the only time*:

Yet he still admired her ***more than*** *any woman he had* ***ever*** *met.*

It is the ***funniest film*** *I have* ***ever*** *seen in my whole life.*

It was ***the first time*** *I've* ***ever*** *seen him get nasty.*

Not ever (and the contracted form *n't ever*) is generally equivalent to *never*. However, in declarative clauses it is far less frequent than the equivalent form with *never*:

But, given that he is so bright and capable, was he ***not ever*** *enticed to make money legally?*

*I have****n't ever*** *flown.*

Ever can be used immediately after *if* or separated from it in the clause:

> *Here's my address.* ***If ever*** *you're in Glasgow you must come and see us.*
>
> *I tell him outrageous things about Kevin which I shouldn't and Kevin would kill me* ***if*** *he* ***ever*** *heard.*

Ever can premodify the intensifiers *so* and *such* for extra emphasis:

> *I'm* ***ever so*** *thirsty.*
>
> *My grandma was* ***ever so*** *sweet.*
>
> *He's* ***ever such*** *a nice guy.*
>
> *Do you know, I heard* ***ever such*** *a funny story.*

Ever may premodify *since* used as a time preposition or conjunction to emphasise that something has been true right from the beginning of a specified period of time:

> *We've been a bit nervous* ***ever since we got burgled****.*

Ever since may also be used as an adverb:

> *I lost touch with him about ten years ago and I've been trying to get back in touch with him* ***ever since****.*

Ever is used with comparative *as* … *as* … to indicate a persistent or permanent characteristic of someone or something:

> A: *I saw Harold the other day.*
> B: *Oh yeah. How is he these days?*
> A: *He's* ***as crazy as ever****.*

Ever may be used as an adverb (most typically occurring before adjectives and noun phrases) meaning 'always', in more formal styles:

> *She was a small, handsome woman, modestly dressed and* ***ever ready*** *with a smile or a word of encouragement if you were feeling down.*
>
> *'Oh dear, what's up with you guys now?' she asked,* ***ever the nosy one****.*

Yours ever and *as ever* may be used in leave-takings in letters, emails, etc. *Yours ever* is rather formal; *as ever* is informal:

> *I will let you know as soon as I have more news.*
> ***Yours ever,***
> *Charles (Bowen)*
>
> *Anyway, I'll talk to you later.*
> ***As ever,***
> *Jen*

⇢ 208 *Whatever, whoever, whichever*

EVERY 38

✪ *Every* refers to the total number of something. It is followed by a singular noun and, if it refers to the subject of the clause, by a singular verb:

> ***Every area*** *of the country* ***has*** *got a Community Health Council.*
> (~~Every areas … have got …~~)
>
> ***Every day*** *we went somewhere different, didn't we?*
> (~~Every days …~~)

The negative of *every* is normally *not every*:

> *Certain members of this family had a curiously shaped lower lip, which stuck right out; it even became known as the Habsburg lip. But* ***not every*** *member of the family had this.*
> (preferred to: … every member of the family did not have this.)
>
> A: *Do you buy lottery tickets* ***every*** *week?*
> B: ***Not every*** *week.*

Every cannot be used alone, without a noun or without *one*:

> *Unable to find it, she then checked the front door, and* ***every window*** *in the house: as yesterday,* ***all*** *locked.*
> (~~… as yesterday, every locked.~~)
>
> [someone describing how he made sure a paved area in his garden was level]
> *All I did was formed sections. We just put pegs in the ground and a piece of wood, to make sure* ***every one*** *was level.*
> (*every one* = every section)

Every one of is used before pronouns and determiners. *Every one* is written as two words (compare *everyone*; ⁘ **38a**):

> *I agree with* ***every one of them****.*
>
> *There were no newcomers.* ***Every one of the refugees*** *was known to her by sight.*

A–Z ***34 Each***

Pronouns and possessives that refer back to *every* are normally singular, especially in more formal styles, and especially when the referent is non-human:

> ***Every generation*** *and* ***every decade*** *throws up* ***its*** *own particular set of problems.*

In less formal styles, the pronoun or possessive may be plural:

> *In some companies* ***every group*** *has to move every two years to force* ***them*** *to get rid of material which* ***they****'re not using.*
> (instead of: … to force it to get rid of material which it's not using.)

If the subsequent reference applies simultaneously to all members in the group, plural pronouns and possessives are used:

> ***Every woman*** *walking down the main shopping street paused outside Henry's plate-glass windows. As the jackets caught* ***their*** *eyes,* ***they*** *assessed them, coveted them and quite a number of window shoppers made a decision to buy.*
> (~~As the jackets caught her eyes, she assessed them~~)

When *every* is used with a numeral expression and a plural noun, it refers to regular intervals of time or numbers:

> *There's one teacher to* ***every forty-five kids****.*

> *I go to my doctor regularly. I go and see him* ***every four weeks****.*

Compare the typical use of *every* with a singular noun:

> *I put my money in the bank* ***every Friday****.*
> (~~every Fridays~~)

Single is often used to emphasise *every*:

> ***Every single*** *word has been checked to make sure that it reflects modern usage.*

> *We have to log* ***every single*** *complaint and pass it on to our district office.*

Every one and *everyone* 38a

Every one, written as two words, is used to refer back to a noun already mentioned:

> *Then taking deep breaths she gathered up the fallen* **CDs***, taking great care and attention with* ***every one****, checking it for dust or damage, reuniting it with its box and putting them all back on the shelf.*
> (*every one* = every CD)

Everyone, written as one word, means 'every person':

> *Say hello to* ***everyone****.*

Everyday and *every day* 38b

Everyday, written as one word, is an adjective meaning 'routine', 'normal', 'ordinary':

> *We don't discuss* ***everyday boring things****, you know, we try and discuss the things that are maybe out of the norm a little bit.*

Written as two words, *every day* is an adverb phrase of frequency:

> *And we went* ***every day*** *into the zoo.*

Every other 38c

Every other means ‘every second one’, ‘alternate’:

> ***Every other Thursday*** *we get together and have a briefing session for half an hour.*

Everybody/everyone, everything, everywhere 38d

Everybody/everyone, *everything* and *everywhere* are written as one word. They are used with singular verbs:

> ***Everybody gets*** *up and* ***dances*** *and* ***has*** *a good laugh.*
>
> *In the summer* ***everything gets*** *relocated.*
>
> *It was after midnight and* ***everywhere was*** *closed.*

Everybody and *everyone* may be the subject of imperative clauses, in which case the base form of the verb is used:

> *Come on!* ***Everybody sing*** *together!*

Everybody and *everyone* are very close in meaning. However, *everybody* is very much more frequent in spoken language than in written language, and *everyone* is more frequent in written language than in spoken language.

EXCEPT 39

Except as a preposition is used to exclude people or things from a generalisation:

> *Nothing now remains* ***except the factory*** *itself.*
>
> *There was no noise,* ***except the sound of cutlery*** *on plates.*
>
> *Everyone seems to be in on it* ***except me.***
> (*be in on it* = know what’s happening)
>
> *I’ve never seen any policeman on foot* ***except on football match nights*** *and that’s when they’re leaving the police station and heading towards the football ground.*

Except may be followed by an infinitive without *to* when a general statement or general category is modified to include an exception of some kind:

> *What could you do,* ***except try*** *and put them all behind you?*
> (infinitive without *to*)

An infinitive with *to* is used in other situations, when the meaning is ‘except in order to’:

> *I never got in touch with that doctor again,* ***except to pay*** *his bill.*
> (~~I never got in touch with that doctor again, except pay his bill.~~)

An infinitive with *to* is normally used when reporting that someone withholds information or action:

> *He wouldn't tell me what he was up to,* ***except to say*** *that it was a secret.*
>
> *The other things I could not talk about,* ***except to joke*** *a little about him being near with the money.*

An *-ing* form may follow *except* if the clause refers back to a verb normally followed by an *-ing* form:

> [*Malahide* is a beach area]
> *We went into the railroad station then and went to Malahide and had a lovely day out, which I don't remember very much* ***except*** *collect**ing*** *a whole lot of shells.*
> (I *remember* collect*ing* shells.)

Except for 39a

Except is often followed by *for* + noun phrase:

> *We went up and down the main street and we couldn't find a proper restaurant* ***except for one Italian place****.*
>
> *He and his mother were living quite happily over on the other side of the island. There was no involvement from me* ***except for an annual phone call*** *to check they were okay.*

When *except* is used without *for*, it normally occurs after generalising words such as *all*, *everything*, *everyone*, *no*, *anybody*, *whole*, etc. (⇢ the examples in **39** above). If there are no such generalising words, *except for* must be used:

> *The church was silent and dark,* ***except for*** *the rustle of leaves against the door.*
> (~~The church was silent and dark, except the rustle of leaves against the door.~~)
>
> *The river was deserted,* ***except for*** *a couple of small boats.*
> (~~The river was deserted, except a couple of small boats.~~)

When there is a generalising word, there is usually a choice of *except* or *except for*:

> *I met* ***all*** *the England football team* ***except*** *(**for**) David Beckham.*
> (generalising word: *all*)

Conjunction *except* 39b

Except (*that*) is often used to introduce clauses, with the meaning of 'but' or 'however'. This is particularly so in informal spoken language:

> *It was quite a happy time,* ***except that I was very lonely****.*
>
> *He looks, more or less, just like a normal lad.* ***Except he isn't****.*
>
> [*a Tamagochi* is a kind of electronic 'pet']
> A: *We'd prefer you to have a hamster than a Tamagochi. And it's not going to cost that much more for a hamster.*
> B: ***Except you need to buy food****.*

Except and *apart from* 39c

✪ *Apart from* does not always mean the same as *except*.

Apart from often means 'in addition to' or 'besides'. In such cases, it cannot substitute for *except*:

*There are other people I have to think of **apart from you**.*
(~~There are other people I have to think of except (for) you.~~)

*Anybody else want ice cream **apart from the kids**?*
(in addition to/besides the kids)

On other occasions, the two expressions are interchangeable:

*We've got no other holidays planned **apart from Copenhagen**.*
(or: … except for Copenhagen)

EXPECT 40

If someone *expects* something to happen, it means there is a strong probability or belief that it will happen or be true:

A: *I **expect you know Paris**.*
B: *Mm, a bit, yes.*
(You probably know Paris. It would surprise me if you did not.)

A: *Oh, I hope we do all right.*
B: *I **expect you will**. You've established quite a formidable reputation now.*
A: *Do you think so?*
(You probably will do all right; I predict you will do all right.)

✪ *Expect*, *hope* and *wait*

Hope refers to what someone desires/wants/wishes:

[A is making an informal speech at B's birthday party]
A: *I'm very pleased to be here and I wish you many happy returns of the day and I **hope you have a happy birthday** and a happy time.*
B: *Thank you very much.*
(I want you to have a happy birthday)
(~~I expect you have a happy birthday~~)

[announcement as a plane is coming in to land]
*Captain Martinez and his crew **hope you have had a pleasant flight**.*
(~~Captain Martinez and his crew expect you have had a pleasant flight.~~)

Wait for refers to time. If one *waits for* something, one passes time until it arrives:

*Come on! Hurry up! I'm **waiting for you**!*
(~~Come on! Hurry up! I'm expecting you!~~)

*I gave him the essay a week ago, and now I'm **waiting for feedback**.*
(I have to just pass the time until he gives me his comments on the essay.)

Constructions following *expect* 40a

- Same subject for *expect* and verb following: *expect* + *to*-infinitive:

  [referring to returning a pair of trousers to the shop where they were bought]
  *They said, 'When did you buy them?' I said, 'Well it was in the summer, so **I** don't **expect to have** my money back, but, you know, I would like to change them please, cos they're falling apart.'*

  ***The new appointment** is **expected to commence** in early 1996.*

- Different subject for *expect* and verb following: *expect* + object + *to*-infinitive:

  ***I** didn't **expect them to contact** me.*

  *His life was very pure, and **he expected other people to be** as pure as he was.*

- Same or different subject for clause following: *expect* + (*that*-)clause:

  ***I expect it's** from Russia. It's like one of those Russian dolls.*

  ***I expect I'll** get to meet all of them soon.*

  When a (*that*-)clause is used, *I expect* often occurs in end position in informal spoken language:

  *It would be less trouble for them, **I expect**.*

  ✪ *Expect* + (*that*-)clause normally refers to predictions. If *expect* refers to assumptions about how things are or should be, then the infinitive construction is used:

  *I do **expect to be respected** by my younger colleagues.*
  (~~I do expect (that) I'm respected by my younger colleagues.~~)

  *Children **expect to get expensive presents** for their birthdays.*
  (~~Children expect (that) they get expensive presents for their birthdays.~~)

- With an object:

  *If I'd written to him, I would have **expected a reply** back in writing.*

  *His wife's **expecting a baby**.*
  (= is pregnant)

  This latter use (referring to pregnancy) can be intransitive in informal contexts:

  *She's **expecting**.*

- With adverbs:

  Back, *here* and *in* often occur after *expect* + direct object:

  *I didn't **expect** you **back** quite so soon.*

  [shopkeeper to customer]
  *I think we've sold out actually. Someone asked us for this the other day. I know we're **expecting** some **in**.*
  (we are expecting to get some in stock soon)

Expect so, expect to 40b

Expect so may be used in short answers instead of repeating a *that*-clause:

A: *Will we have to wait until he changes his swimming routine?*
B: *I* ***expect so****.*

130 Substitution

Expect to, like *hope to*, *like to* and *want to*, is used in short answers instead of repeating an infinitive construction:

A: *Well we've managed to get through it.*
B: *Yes. Good.*
A: *Really, cos we didn't* ***expect to****.*
(~~Really, cos we didn't expect.~~)

A–Z 49 *Like*; 75 *Want*

Expect and progressive form 40c

Progressive forms of *expect* normally occur with a direct object or with the *to*-infinitive construction, not with a *that*-clause:

He seems to be ***expecting some kind of response****.*
(+ direct object)

I let myself in with my key, not ***expecting to find*** *anyone working late on a Tuesday evening.*
(+ *to*-infinitive)

However, a *that*-clause may follow the progressive form occasionally in informal speech:

There was never once that she said, 'Oh, go on without me,' you know. Cos I was fully ***expecting that*** *we would some days leave her behind at the hotel, while we went off on a trip.*

Expect of, expect from 40d

Expect of refers to what someone thinks others ought to do, or how things ought to be:

A: *I thought you meant that was your personal discipline, to work until eight at night.*
B: *Oh yeah. Well it is and it isn't. You need to do it just to keep up with* ***the amount of work that's expected of you****.*
(the amount of work your employer/your teachers think you ought to do)

I don't think you should ***expect too much of it*** *too soon.*

Expect from refers to what someone predicts or thinks is likely about a person or situation:

> *It was run with the efficiency you'd* ***expect from Hilary****.*
> (because we know Hilary, one could predict that)
>
> *He looked very much as I'd* ***expected from his voice*** *over the phone: a little man in his late fifties.*
> (… as I had predicted from his voice)

EXPLAIN 41

✪ The complementation pattern for *explain* is object + prepositional phrase, not an indirect and direct object:

> **object** **prep phrase**
> *Do you think you could* ***explain*** | ***this paragraph*** | ***to me****?*
> (~~Do you think you could explain me this paragraph?~~)

Explain can simply be used with an object noun phrase or a clausal object:

> *He* ***explained the situation****.*
>
> *I can't think of any other way to* ***explain it****.*
>
> *They wrote me a long letter* ***explaining why it took eighteen months****.*

In informal speech, *explain* is sometimes followed by *about* + noun phrase when it refers to a general topic or event:

> [referring to making a complaint at a hospital]
> *So when you complained, did you* ***explain about the injection****?*

FAIRLY

A–Z **66 *Quite***

FALL 42

✪ Do not confuse the past tense forms of *fall* and *feel*.

present	past	*-ed* participle
fall	***fell***	*fallen*
feel	***felt***	*felt*

> *Their dad had a crash and their car* ***fell*** *into the sea.*
> (~~Their dad had a crash and their car felt into the sea.~~)
>
> *He* ***fell*** *in love with one of his classmates.*
> (~~He felt in love …~~)
>
> *I completely forgot to phone her back. I* ***felt*** *really awful about that.*

✪ *Fall* and *fall down* are used differently. *Fall* simply implies downward movement. *Fall down* implies falling or collapsing suddenly from one's normal position, often including damage or injury:

*House prices **fell** by five per cent last month.*
(~~House prices fell down by five per cent last month.~~)

*Now it was winter and the leaves had **fallen** from the trees.*
(~~Now it was winter and the leaves had fallen down from the trees.~~)

[speaker is worrying about not having health insurance]
*What if you **fall down** and break a bone? Then you're off work sick and all that and your treatment's at the hospital.*

FELL

A–Z **42 *Fall***

FETCH

A–Z **29 *Bring, take, fetch***

FEW, FEWER

A–Z **50 *Little, a little, few, a few***

FOR 43

For is commonly used to express the recipient of an action or a thing:

*Look what Kathy made **for Heather**.*

*I've bought something **for you**.*

For is used with expressions indicating a period of time:

*We went to Ireland **for a week**.*

*Let it dry **for a few moments**.*

For is used to refer to specific periods of time such as public holidays and seasons:

*I usually go there **for the New Year**.*

*We'll be in Scotland **for the whole summer**.*

✪ Do not confuse *for* and *in* when referring to time:

*I'm going on holiday **for a month**.*
('I'm going on holiday *in* a month' would mean 'I leave one month from now')

A–Z **33 *During*; 70 *Since***

For + *-ing* form may refer to the purpose or function of something or how something is used:

> [referring to a conversation with a shop assistant]
> *He said 'What sort of knife do you want?' I said 'Oh just something* ***for camping****.'*

For + *-ing* form may refer to the reason for an event:

> *He got called an idiot* ***for being honest****.*

✪ *For* is not normally used to express one's intention:

> *My wife and I go there to see my mum.*
> (~~My wife and I go there for seeing my mum/for to see my mum.~~)

In very formal styles, *for* followed by a finite clause can be used to indicate the reason for something, and is a synonym of *because*:

> *It was a pity that I could not understand her,* ***for I am sure she would have been most interesting****.*

GET

A–Z 30 *Come, go*

GO

A–Z 30 *Come, go*

HARDLY 44

Hardly is a negative adverb; it normally means 'almost not at all'. It is not the adverb form of the adjective *hard*:

> *I could* ***hardly*** *get out of the car.*
> (I almost could not get out at all)
>
> *The poor woman can* ***hardly*** *walk.*
> (she can almost not walk at all)

✪ The adverb form of *hard* is *hard*:

> *I've been* ***working hard*** *and I've been travelling all the time.*
> (~~I've been working hardly and I've …~~)

Because *hardly* has a negative meaning, it is used with *any*, *anyone*, *anybody*, *anything* and *ever* in negative clauses, not with *no*, *none*, *no one*, *nobody*, *nothing* or *never*:

> *There had been **hardly any** contact between them for years.*
> (~~There had been hardly no contact between them …~~)
>
> ***Hardly anybody** turned up today, actually.*
> (~~Hardly nobody turned up today, actually.~~)
>
> *I **hardly ever** see her. We're not very close.*
> (~~I hardly never see her.~~)

At all may be used with *hardly* for greater emphasis:

> *I **hardly** smoke **at all**.*

Another use of *hardly* is to reject or to distance oneself from an idea:

> *He could **hardly** say no to such a request.*
> (it was virtually impossible to say no)
>
> *Well, you're **hardly** good friends with Jenny, are you?*
> (it would be wrong/absurd to say that you were good friends)

In more formal styles, *hardly … when* is used in front position with subject-verb inversion to refer to something happening immediately after something else:

> ***Hardly had the tour come to an end when** we were off to Japan, which was a very different experience to my first visit.*

HERE, THERE 45

Here typically refers to the speaker's location and sees the position of people and things from the speaker's point of view. It may be used with static and dynamic verbs:

> *We've **lived here** over 16 years now.*
>
> ***Come here**, Max.*

There typically refers to the listener's location or a third-party location and sees the position of people and things from the listener's or a third-party point of view. It may also be used with static and dynamic verbs:

> [on the phone]
> *Oh, you're in Rome! What are you **doing there**?*
> (listener, not speaker, is in Rome)
>
> *If we leave here at six, we should **get there** by eight or eight-thirty.*
> (at a place where neither listener nor speaker is at present)

Here and *there* correspond in their speaker-listener relationship to *this/these* and *that/those* respectively, and frequently accompany the related demonstrative:

> [teacher addressing a computer class]
> *I think the idea today is that everyone will have a go at **this** machine **here**. It's quite simple to use.*
>
> *Is **that** coffee **there** mine?*

Here and *there* also correspond in their speaker-listener relationship to *come/bring* and *go/take* respectively, and frequently accompany the related verb:

> *They **came here** about 15 years ago.*
>
> *She has a cottage on the coast and **goes there** to paint.*
>
> ***Bring** that tray **here**, would you.*
>
> [talking about a restaurant]
> *She **took** Lars **there** for a meal when he came to stay.*

A–Z 29 *Bring, take, fetch*; 30 *Come, go*

Here, there in front position 45a

Both *here* and *there* are used in constructions which involve subject-verb inversion. These include everyday routine patterns such as *here is x*, *here comes x*, and *there is x*, *there goes x*, and subject-verb inversion in more formal styles where *here* and *there* are used emphatically in front position.

- Everyday usage:

  *Hurry up! **Here comes the bus**.*

  ***Here's my taxi**. I'll have to go now.*

  [speakers approaching a train platform, just as their train is leaving]
  ***There goes our train**! We've missed it.*

  [handing someone a cup of coffee]
  ***Here's your coffee**.*

  [pointing to a book on the table]
  ***There's that book I was telling you about** if you want to have a look at it.*

- More formal styles:

  *She was attracted by this place, and **here was her opportunity of remaining**.*

  *The door opened slowly and **there stood Miss Louise**.*

Subject-verb inversion of the types exemplified above do not occur when the subject is a pronoun:

> A: *Where's the tin-opener?*
> B: *Oh I saw it earlier … **here it is**.*
> A: *Thanks.*
> (~~Oh I saw it earlier … here is it.~~)

> ***There goes our train****! We've missed it.*
> ***There it goes****! We've missed it.*
> (~~There goes it! We've missed it.~~)

Here's, said when handing or giving something to someone, is often used instead of *here are* with plural noun phrase subjects in informal contexts. Similarly, *there's*, when indicating or pointing to something, is also used with plural noun phrase subjects in informal contexts:

> [parents trying to persuade young children to write some placards welcoming their pop music idols to their home town]
> *Come on, write out the sign that says 'We love you' on it. Come on, go on,* ***here's your pens*** *and here's your paper, go and write it out because we've got to go now.*
>
> *There you are.* ***There's your pills****.*

Initial *here* and *there* with a subject + *be* and without subject-verb inversion often occur as emphatic markers, especially in spoken narratives:

> [an elderly person who has just developed a skin rash has been told she may be allergic to something]
> *Well I've never been allergic to a thing in my life. And* ***here I am****, seventy-odd, just starting.*
>
> [health worker talking about eating garlic]
> *I stink of garlic again. It's very embarrassing. This poor patient was really ill and* ***there I was****, breathing garlic over her.*

Here and *there* both have more abstract uses. They can refer to parts of the surrounding text. *Here* tends to be used cataphorically (referring forward in the text), while *there* tends to be used anaphorically (referring back in the text):

> [writing about the British Government's annual budget; *Kenneth Clarke* was at the time the Minister responsible for the budget]
> *The Budget was remarkable for missed opportunities rather than new measures. In my opinion,* ***here*** *is what Kenneth Clarke should have done. Childcare: At the moment, employers are the only ones to receive tax incentives for this. … Far better would be a system of vouchers for parents who could themselves choose the childcare they prefer and the location.*
>
> [*Tony Adams* and *Stuart Pearce* are footballers]
> *Tony Adams impressed me, along with Stuart Pearce. And* ***there*** *lies the big problem. Both put in good performances, but they are not the long-term future of English international football.*

There is often used to signal the end-point of a conversation in more formal contexts such as meetings and interviews:

> [BBC radio interviewer, concluding an interview with Jack Straw, a British Government Minister]
> *And* ***there*** *we must leave it. Mr Straw, Many thanks.*

Here, there after prepositions 45b

Here and *there* both frequently follow prepositions:

> [assistant to customer in a café where customers can choose to eat food in the café or take it away]
> *Is it **for here** or to take away?*
>
> *There's been a lot of crime **round here**.*
> (in this neighbourhood)
>
> *Ugh, it's quite hot **in here**, isn't it?*
>
> A: *Where's the dog's squeaky toy?*
> B: *There it is, **under there**.*
>
> [speaker B has just asked where a particular restaurant is]
> A: *You know that area where the theatre and the Casino is?*
> B: *Yeah. Yeah.*
> A: *It's **near there**.*

Here/there you are 45c

Here you are and *there you are* are both used when handing or giving something to someone, often something which has been requested or sought:

> A: *Where's the dictionary?*
> B: ***Here you are**.*
> A: *Ah, thanks.*
>
> [A hands B some money]
> A: ***There you are** Jessica.*
> B: *Oh, what's that for?*
> A: *To help you when you have your holidays.*
> B: *Oh thanks, Edward.*

In informal contexts, *here you go/there you go* are used instead of *here you are/there you are* when handing or giving things to people:

> A: *Can you pass me the butter?*
> B: ***There you go**.*
> A: *Thanks.*

People often announce their own or others' arrival with *here* + subject pronoun + *be*:

> A: *Hi! **Here we are**! Sorry we're late.*
> B: *Hi there!*

There + subject pronoun + *be* is often used to announce the moment of finding or meeting someone or something the speaker has been looking for:

> *Ah, **there you are**, Nick! I've been looking for you all morning.*

On the telephone 45d

Here is often used by speakers to identify themselves on the telephone or in voicemail messages:

> [voicemail message]
> *Hello, **Terry Fitzmaurice here**, calling to speak to Jack at 10.35am Tuesday.*

Hello there 45e

There is often used in informal situations after *hello* and *hi*:

> A: ***Hello there**. How's things?*
> B: *Hi. Fine. And you?*

HOPE

A–Z 40 ***Expect***

IN

A–Z 21 ***At***

IN FACT 46

In fact is normally used to say that expectations were not fulfilled and that assumptions may need to be modified or corrected. It is typically used in front position, and occasionally, in more formal contexts, in mid position. In spoken language it may be placed in end position:

> A: *Did she pass the exam?*
> B: *She did. **In fact, she got** a distinction.*
>
> *Since 1989 the emission of pollutants **has in fact fallen**, but only because the economy has collapsed.*
>
> *That wasn't a very nice thing to say to me, was it? **Quite horrible, in fact**.*

In fact is also used to supply additional information:

> *We met Jane for lunch. **In fact**, we spent the whole afternoon with her.*

Related phrases used in similar ways include *in actual fact*, *as a matter of fact*, *in point of fact*:

> *They lived somewhere near here, **in actual fact**.*
> (more emphatic version of *in fact*)

> ***As a matter of fact**, more people are going to New Zealand now than ever.*

A–Z 9 *Actual, actually*

IN FRONT (OF)

A–Z 62 *Opposite, in front (of)*

JUST 47

Just has a number of meanings.

Just for emphasis

Just has a meaning of 'simply' or 'absolutely'. It is used to create emphasis, and is especially common with reference to negative situations:

> *It's **just not right**.*
>
> *Because otherwise Saturday will be **just a nightmare**.*
>
> *It's **just terrible**, isn't it, the way they ignored all the protests.*
>
> *The weather was **just perfect**.*
>
> ***Just one of those things**, isn't it?*
>
> ***Just be quiet**, will you!*

Just meaning 'exactly'

Another meaning of *just* is 'exactly':

> *That's **just what I wanted**.*
>
> *It's **just right** for you.*
>
> A: *Where does it hurt?*
> B: [pointing to one side of her wrist] ***Just here**.*

Just meaning 'only'

Another meaning is 'only':

> *The eighteenth century reveals a complex overlapping not **just of economic and aesthetic** but also of political **issues**.*
>
> [doctors talking about doing late-night calls to patients]
> *… and I can't see that **just one doctor** is sufficient really.*

Just meaning 'recently'

Just can also mean 'a very short time ago, recently':

> *I've **just finished** painting the bathroom.*
>
> *They had **just appointed** her to the post of supervisor.*
>
> [to a little child]
> *You want more? You **just said** you weren't hungry!*

Just with expressions of time and place

Just frequently occurs before expressions of time and place. It often functions to minimise the time and distance involved:

*Can you wait **just a minute**?*

*It's **just at the end** of the Clifton road.*

*I always called at my mother's **just down the road**.*

Just as a softener

A common function of *just* in spoken English is to downtone or soften utterances:

*Could I **just ask** you something?*

*My dad's ambitions really are … are for us all to be religious and **just sort of to be happy** and erm have enough money and things.*

*I was **just wondering** when you thought we should meet tomorrow?*

*Do you think you … can you **just pop this in the post** on your way home?*

LESS

A–Z 50 ***Little, a little, few, a few***

LET 48

Let is followed by an infinitive without *to*:

*I'll **let** you **have** a look at it.*
(~~I'll let you to have a look at it.~~)

*He **let** them **put** some boxes in the basement.*

Let is not normally used in the passive when it means 'allow/permit':

*The families were not **allowed** to see the children.*
(~~The families were not let see the children.~~)

Imperative *let* 48a

Let's is used to form the first person plural imperative, often used for making suggestions:

***Let's** talk about cricket.*

***Don't let's** quarrel about it; it's not worth it.*

Let's is also used frequently in informal speech with a singular meaning referring to the speaker. In this situation, *let's* is more informal and less direct than *let me*:

> ***Let's*** *have a look on the computer for you.*
> (more formal: Let me have a look on the computer for you.)

The full form *let us* occurs in formal contexts:

> ***Let us*** *pray.*
> (used in Christian religious ceremonies to announce the beginning of prayer)
>
> ***Let us*** *fight together to overthrow the last remnants of the cruellest regime in English history.*

Let is also used for third person imperatives:

> A: *Sylvia is outside. She wants to see you.*
> B: *Oh,* **let her** *wait.*

Imperatives with *let* may form their negatives in two ways: *let's/let us* + *not* and *don't let's*. The first is more common:

> ***Let's not*** *be silly about it.*
>
> ***Let us not*** *be blind to the true facts.*
> (more formal)
>
> ***Don't let's*** *fall out.*

Third person imperatives with *let* form their negative with *don't*:

> ***Don't let*** *anyone fool themselves that's the end of it.*

Let meaning 'rent' 48b

Let used alone with a direct object means 'to rent something to someone':

> *They* **let their house** *for a thousand pounds a month while they were abroad.*

Let alone 48c

The expression *let alone* is used after a negative statement or with reference to a problematic context, to refer to how unlikely something is by comparing it with something even less likely:

> *I have no idea what I'll be doing in five months,* **let alone five years***.*
> (to predict five years ahead is impossible because even to predict five months ahead is impossible)

LIKE 49

Like means ‘similar to’. It often occurs with verbs of sensation such as *look*, *sound*, *feel*, *taste*, *seem*:

> *People* ***like him*** *should be put away in prison.*
>
> *She’s* ***like her father****.*
>
> *That* ***looks like a winner****.*
>
> *It* ***tastes like pineapple****.*

Like has functions similar to those of an adjective. It is gradable and has attributive uses:

> *He’s* ***so like*** *his father.*
>
> *She is* ***more like*** *her sister than her daughter.*
>
> *We are completely* ***of a like mind*** *on this issue.*

Like is also used as a conjunction. It is an informal alternative to *as*. In some traditional grammar books and style manuals, using *like* as a conjunction is considered incorrect:

> *He involved the staff in everything,* ***like*** *a good manager should do.*

Like is used as a noun-suffix meaning ‘similar to’:

> *She looked ill and was wearing a* ***ghost-like*** *cream cloak.*

Like in spoken English 49a

One of the most frequent uses of *like* in spoken English is to focus attention, usually by giving or requesting an example:

> A: *I fancy going somewhere really hot for holiday this year.*
> B: *What,* ***like*** *the Equator or the Mediterranean or* ***like*** …?

When examples are asked for, a common structure in English conversation is *like what?*:

> A: *What did you get up to today?*
> B: *Not a lot. There were a few computer things going on.*
> A: *Hmm,* ***like what****?*

Like can be placed in end position in order to qualify a preceding statement. It also indicates that the words chosen may not be appropriate:

> *Then she got out of the car all of a sudden* ***like****, and this bike hit her right in the back.*
>
> *It was a shattering, frightening experience* ***like****.*

Like is very commonly used (particularly among younger speakers) as a marker of reported speech, especially where the report involves a dramatic representation of someone's response or reaction:

> *So this bloke came up to me and* ***I'm like*** *'Go away, I don't want to dance'.*
>
> *And* ***my mum's like*** *non-stop three or four times 'Come and tell your grandma about your holiday'.*

In some cases *like* acts as a 'filler', enabling the speaker to pause to think what to say next or to rephrase something. Pauses (...) can occur either side of the word:

> *They think that …* ***like*** *… by now we should be married and if we were married then it's okay* ***like*** *… to get on with your life and do what you want.*

Like is also used in the structure *it* + *be* + *like*, a phrase which introduces an example or analogy of some kind:

> ***It's like*** *if you go to another country you always get muddled up with the currency in the first few days.*
>
> ***It's like*** *when I go to the doctor's there's always loads of people in the surgery breathing germs all over you.*

✪ *Be like* and *look like* are not the same. *Be like* refers to someone's character or personality, *look like* refers to their appearance:

> A: *What****'s*** *your new teacher* ***like****?*
> B: *Oh, he's nice. Very patient with us.*
>
> A: *Would you recognise her again? What does she* ***look like****?*
> B: *Mm. Short dark hair, quite tall.*

A–Z 19 *As*

LITTLE, A LITTLE, FEW, A FEW 50

Determiner *(a) little, (a) few* 50a

A little is used with singular non-count nouns. *A few* is used with plural count nouns. They have a meaning similar to 'a small quantity/number of':

> *Can you give me* ***a little help*** *with the garden?*
>
> *All tomatoes benefit from* ***a little fertiliser****.*
>
> *There are still* ***a few names*** *left on the list.*
>
> *I've met him* ***a few times*** *at our music sessions.*

Little (without *a*) is used with singular non-count nouns. *Few* (without *a*) is used with plural count nouns. They both have negative meanings. They suggest 'not as much as may be expected or wished for':

> *There was* ***little chance*** *of them winning.*
>
> *She has* ***little*** *real* ***enthusiasm*** *for yoga; she only goes because her friends go.*
>
> ***Few supporters*** *turned up at the meeting.*

Compare:

> *He made* ***a few films*** *during his career in London.*
> (several)
>
> *He made* ***few films*** *during his career.*
> (not many)

Of is employed after *a little* and *a few* when they come before definite noun phrases:

> *Thanks, I'll have* ***a little of the*** *soufflé, please.*
>
> *I wish more people had* ***a little of your*** *enthusiasm.*
>
> *Only* ***a few of the*** *members turned up.*
>
> *I'll have* ***a few of those*** *strawberries, please.*

Pronoun *(a) little, (a) few* 50b

(A) little and *(a) few* can be used as pronouns. *Little* and *few* (without *a*) only occur in more formal contexts:

> A: *D'you want some more soup?*
> B: *Give me just* ***a little****.*
>
> A: *Did everyone turn up?*
> B: *Well,* ***a few*** *came, but a lot of them didn't.*
>
> ***Little*** *has been written on this topic.*
>
> ***Few*** *would disagree with his election to the chair of the association.*
>
> *She said* ***little*** *but it had an impact on everyone there.*

Fewer and *less* 50c

Although, traditionally, *fewer* is the comparative form used with plural count nouns and *less* is used only with singular non-count nouns, increasingly, in informal spoken situations, *less* is used with plural count nouns:

> *So would you say you had* ***less ambitions*** *then, ten years ago?*
> (traditionally correct usage: fewer ambitions)
>
> [complaining about poor conditions in schools in Britain]
> *They need good teachers, they need warm classrooms and they need* ***less children*** *in the class.*
> (traditionally correct usage: fewer children)

Adverb *(a) little* 50d

A little functions as an adverb of degree, and is a more formal alternative to *a bit*:

> [physiotherapist talking to a patient]
> *Try stretching your left leg **a little**.*
>
> [garage mechanic talking to a customer]
> *We've re-tuned the engine **a little**, so it should be starting okay now.*

A little is not used as an adverb in negative clauses. *A bit* is used instead. The meaning is '(not) at all':

> *You have**n't** changed **a bit**! You still look twenty.*
> (~~You haven't changed a little! You still look twenty.~~)

A little premodifies adjectives, determiners and adverbs, including comparative forms, and is a more formal alternative to *(a) bit*:

> *She's just **a little agitated** about it so please try to persuade her to talk.*
>
> *They are both **a little confused** and disoriented.*
>
> *Was the plot **a little thin**?*
>
> *'I'm leaving now!', she said **a little angrily**.*
>
> [talking about a washing-machine]
> *This model is **a little less** efficient and economical.*
>
> A: *How do you feel today?*
> B: *Er, **a little better** thanks.* (more formal)
>
> A: *How do you feel today?*
> B: *Er, **a bit better** thanks.* (less formal)
>
> *I'm still hungry so I'll have **a little more** spaghetti, please.*

If *little* is used as an adverb in front position, subject-verb inversion occurs:

> ***Little did we think** six months ago we'd be going to another funeral in the same family now.*

Not a little as a premodifier can be used as a more formal alternative to 'rather' or 'very':

> *The management team were **not a little** frustrated by the lack of progress in the negotiations.*

→ **470 Comparison and other word classes** for further discussion of comparative and superlative forms *less, least*

A–Z ***27 Bit, a bit (of)***

MAKE 51

A number of constructions follow *make*.

- Object:

  *Look, I **made a mistake**. I'm sorry.*

- Object and adjective complement:

  *Travelling **makes me hungry**.*

- Object and noun complement:

  *When we decided that we'd book the holiday, we came home and about two or three days later we decided that it was time that we got married. We **made it a honeymoon**.*

- Indirect and direct object:

  *She **made me a cup of coffee** in the kitchen.*

- Object + prepositional phrase with *for*:

  *You've got to see your own doctor and he'll **make an appointment for you**.*

- Object + adjective/noun complement + prepositional phrase with *for*:

  *Don't **make it difficult for us**.*
  (adjective complement)

  *So what would **make it a good quality experience for you**?*
  (noun complement)

Make + infinitive without *to* 51a

✪ When *make* means 'force to do' or 'cause to feel' something, it is not followed by *to* in the active voice:

> *He **makes** me laugh.*
> (~~He makes me to laugh.~~)
>
> *What **made** you choose this job?*
> (~~What made you to choose this job?~~)

However, in the passive voice, the *to*-infinitive is used:

*Why should I **be made to feel** guilty for things I didn't do?*

*I **was made to sign** the statement.*

Make and *do* 51b

Make, rather than *do*, emphasises the end product of an action more than the activity itself:

*Shall I just **make a pot of tea** then?*

*I went and worked in a factory **making plastic bags**.*

··➔ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

Make, not *do*, collocates strongly with noun objects referring to speech acts connected with communication. These include:

apology
comment
complaint
decision
enquiry
excuse
generalisation
list
note
phone call
point
remark
request
speech
statement

*I **make this comment** because there may be some students who have experienced the same experience as I have.*
(~~I do this comment …~~)

*I rang the switchboard and asked if they could put me through to the person I could **make a complaint** to.*
(~~… the person I could do a complaint to.~~)

Other common noun collocations with *make* rather than *do* include *attempt*, *effort*, *fuss*, *improvement*, *mistake*, *noise*, *profit*.

Many nouns can collocate with both *do* and *make*. *Do* tends to emphasise the activity involved, while *make* emphasises the result or end product:

*I hadn't **done a tour** for three years, so I was a bit apprehensive, but decided to go.*
(the writer is probably apprehensive about the work and activity involved)

*We **made a tour** of the old printing house. It was quite an experience.*
(emphasis on the experience that resulted from the tour)

A–Z **31 *Do***

Made from, made of, made out of, made with 51c

Made from is often used to describe manufacturing processes:

*Paper is **made from fibres** which have some tensile strength.*

*A traditional-style chef's hat, **made from 100% cotton**, completes the look.*

Made of emphasises the inherent material or qualities of something, and has a meaning similar to 'composed of':

*A large ship floats although it is **made of heavy metal**.*

*Different metals are **made of different kinds of atoms**.*

Made out of usually refers to something that has been transformed from one thing into another:

[speakers are talking about a kind of bag that is made using the stalks of rice plants]
A: *It's rice.*
B: ***Made out of rice**?*
A: *Yeah.*
B: *How can it be?*
A: *Well it's **out of the rushes**, isn't it? It's **made out of the green, the reed**. The plants, isn't it? Twisted.*

> *According to the Aztecs, the world is* ***made out of a goddess who was torn apart by some gods****.*
> (she was a goddess, but she was re-made)

Made with is most often used to describe the ingredients of food and drink:

> *I went away and sat in a nearby café where they served me slices of tortilla* ***made with aubergines and garlic****.*
>
> *Did you* ***make*** *this* ***with fresh mushrooms or dried ones****?*

MEAN 52

Talking about language 52a

Mean is used to talk about understanding language:

> *What does 'claim'* ***mean****?*

A very common error is forgetting that *mean* is used with *do/does* in the interrogative:

> *What* ***does*** *'claim'* ***mean****?*
> (~~What means 'claim'?~~)

If we want to refer to someone's intended meaning in saying or writing something, we use *mean by*:

> A: *So how well do you think you knew them?*
> B: *What do you* ***mean by*** *'knew'?*

Mean when referring to intended meaning is normally only used in simple tense forms, but in informal spoken language it is used occasionally in progressive aspect:

> *I'****m*** *not* ***meaning*** *to sound derogatory here.*
>
> *The bathroom window may be missing but that's not what I* ***was meaning****.*

Discourse marker *I mean* 52b

I mean is a very frequent discourse marker in spoken language, used when a speaker elaborates, expands on or clarifies what they are saying:

> *See what I'm getting at here?* ***I mean****, can you see the principle?*
>
> *Portsmouth's bigger than Worcester,* ***I mean*** *Portsmouth's a big place.*

Speakers also use it for self-correction:

> *I know he's Portuguese,* ***I mean*** *Brazilian, but he's probably read quite widely in Latin American literature.*

→ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

When *I mean* occurs at the end of a sequence, it usually indicates that the immediately preceding statement is a clarification:

> *She's very young to be a chef, to be training as a chef,* ***I mean****.*
>
> *Does she smoke? Heavily,* ***I mean****?*

I mean can function as a hesitation marker and is often followed by a pause. In such instances *I mean* is often used to soften statements or to correct understandings:

> A: *What did you make of the match?*
> B: *Well,* ***I mean****, it was a bit too competitive.*
>
> *She's a bit upset at the moment.* ***I mean****, erm, … she's had a bad time recently so I don't really want to bother her.*

I mean commonly occurs with the phrase *you know* in the very frequent spoken expression (*you*) *know what I mean*, which functions primarily to check comprehension and to indicate that the speaker and hearer share a point of view:

> *She's very nervous,* ***you know what I mean****, she just can't concentrate properly.*

✪ *I mean* is not used to preface a statement of one's opinion:

> ***I think*** *Britain should join the single currency as soon as possible.*
> (~~I mean Britain should join the single currency as soon as possible.~~)

Expressing intentions 52c

When followed by a *to*-infinitive, *mean* is used to express intentions or to refer to intended outcomes:

> A: *Where were you? I've been worried sick?*
> B: *Sorry Anne, I didn't* ***mean to worry you****. I just lost track of time.*
>
> [about the Russian Space Station, *Mir*]
> *Mir was only* ***meant to last*** *for five years.*

The past progressive and perfect progressive forms are often used for indirectness or politeness when expressing intention, especially with *ask*:

> *I* ***was meaning to ask*** *you, did you learn anything useful from that gunman you caught at the docks this morning?*
>
> *I****'ve been meaning to ask*** *you if you ever found out about Larry.*

Keep is also used with *mean to* in informal spoken language to express long-standing intention:

> *So it's just rusted now. I* ***keep meaning to get*** *it fixed, but that's another expense.*

The passive 52d

The passive, *be meant to*, often has the meaning of 'be supposed to':

> *You're forty minutes late. You'**re meant to** phone and let me know what you're doing.*

Expressing necessity 52e

Mean in the active voice is often used with a modal meaning, expressing necessity. In this case verbs which follow are in the *-ing* form:

> *The race usually starts at three, so that often **means leaving** the house at two.*
> (I have to leave at two)
>
> [*Shepperton* is a famous film studio]
> *We had to be on the set at Shepperton by seven a.m. That **meant being** in make-up by six.*

Expressing significance 52f

Mean can be used to refer to how important or significant people and things are in our lives. In this sense, the preposition *to* follows:

> *Money? What does it **mean to** me? Absolutely nothing.*
>
> *I also know how much your career **meant to** you at that time.*

MIND 53

The verb *mind* is most commonly used in two interrogative forms, *do you mind* and *would you mind*, to ask permission and to make polite requests. Both forms may be followed by *if* or an *-ing* form:

> ***Do you mind if** I smoke?*
>
> ***Would you mind if** I open the window?*
>
> ***Do you mind putting** your dog back on a lead?*
>
> ***Would you mind checking** that for us, please?*

Mind is also used in the negative declarative form to ask permission and to make polite requests, frequently with a tag:

> ***You don't mind** if I smoke, **do you**?*
>
> ***You wouldn't mind** carrying this? Thanks.*

Would you mind and *do you mind* 53a

Both *would you mind* and *do you mind* are used to make polite requests. *No* as an answer indicates willingness:

A: ***Would you mind*** *feeding the cats while we're away?*
B: ***No****, no problem.*

A: *Erm, about this press release. I was thinking you would be the better authority to write it than me, actually.* ***Do you mind*** *putting something on paper?*
B: ***No****, I'll do that.*
A: *That'll be great.*

Would you mind is more frequent in requests in everyday conversation than *do you mind*.

Most occurrences of *do you mind* in conversation are followed by *if I/if we …*, and involve asking for permission:

A: ***Do you mind if I*** *sit here?*
B: ***No****.*

✪ *No*, not *yes*, is the normal, polite answer to requests with *would you mind/do you mind* (*to mind* means 'to object', therefore the listener answers: '**No**, I do not object to, or have any problem with, your request.'):

A: ***Would you mind*** *photocopying these for me?*
B: ***No****.*
(B: ~~Yes.~~)

Other expressions with *mind* 53b

The expression *if you don't mind* is also used to make statements less direct, or a little more polite, and to protect the feelings or dignity of the listener:

If you don't mind*, I won't have any coffee this morning.*

If you don't mind me saying so*, she shouldn't speak to her mother like that.*

I don't mind can be used to sound politely non-commital when responding to suggestions, enquiries about preferences, and offers:

A: *What do you want to do this evening?*
B: ***I don't mind****.*

A: *Would you like tea or coffee?*
B: ***I don't mind****.*

The expressions *I wouldn't mind* (+ *-ing* clause or a noun phrase) and *I don't mind if I do* indicate a positive preference or desire for something:

> ***I wouldn't mind having*** *two weeks' holiday right now.*
> (I would really like to have two weeks' holiday right now.)
>
> *I must say* ***I wouldn't mind a coffee****.*
> (I would really like a coffee.)
>
> A: *Want to try some home-made pasta?*
> B: *Yes.* ***I don't mind if I do****.*
> (Yes. I'd like to.)

Mind is used to issue warnings:

> [public announcement on London Underground as train doors are closing]
> ***Mind*** *the doors!*
> (Be careful of the doors.)
>
> [warning passengers of a gap between the train and the platform edge]
> *Passengers are requested to* ***mind*** *the gap when alighting from this train.*
>
> ***Mind*** *you pay the bill each month.*
> (Be sure to pay the bill each month.)

Never mind is used, mainly in spoken language, to make someone feel better about something or to tell them not to do something because it is no longer important:

> ***Never mind****, you can try again next year.*
>
> ***Never mind*** *about the cups, just collect up all the glasses.*

Mind you is used as a discourse marker in informal spoken language, with a meaning of 'however' or 'on the other hand'. When used without *you*, it most typically occurs at the end of the utterance:

> *The car is a bit too expensive.* ***Mind you****, it's got a diesel engine so that's good for economy.*
>
> *He's putting on more weight each week. He did go to the gym this week,* ***mind****.*

NOW 54

Now is most commonly used as an adverb of time. It can also take on nominal functions such as subject in a clause and as complement of a preposition:

> *We should go* ***now****. We're late.*
> (adverb of time)
>
> ***Now*** *is the time to act.*
> (subject in a clause)
>
> *I hadn't realised* ***until now****.*
> (complement of a preposition)
>
> *Use this old box* ***for now****. I'll fetch a new one later.*
> (complement of a preposition)

Now also has a general meaning of 'nowadays':

> *People used to cook three meals a day.* ***Now*** *nobody cooks. They just eat out of a microwave.*

Now may be premodified. *Just now*, *right now* and *only now* are common:

> A: *When did you see her?*
> B: ***Just now*** *in the café.*
> (very recently, in the immediate past)
>
> *I want you to go to bed* ***right now****.*
> (straight away, in the immediate future)

In formal contexts, when front-position *now* is preceded by *only*, subject-verb inversion occurs:

> ***Only now do I really understand*** *what she meant.*
> (at this moment and not before)

Now … now is used in more formal literary contexts to describe an altered sequence of actions. In such a structure *now* occurs at the beginning of a clause:

> ***Now*** *splashing each other noisily,* ***now*** *just serenely floating on the surface, they were all swimming in the lake.*

Now (*that*) can also be used as a conjunction. In spoken and informal uses *that* is often omitted:

> ***Now that*** *it's stopped raining, we can get on with repairing the wall.*
>
> ***Now*** *Ian's left university and is earning some money at last, we can have a proper holiday ourselves.*

Now can be used for emphasis. It frequently occurs at the beginning or end of an imperative clause:

> ***Now*** *hurry up. We're already half an hour late.*
>
> *Don't forget* ***now****. It's a very important day for the family.*

The expression *now now* is used to calm somebody down when they are agitated:

> ***Now now****, don't get too upset, it'll all get sorted out, I'm sure.*

Now (or sometimes *now then*) is used as a discourse marker to indicate that a new idea is being introduced, to mark a topic shift or to mark a boundary between stages of a conversation:

> ***Now****, what we want to do today is to cover the workings of the personnel department of the company.*
>
> *Right,* ***now****, let me see, you haven't visited the church before have you?*
>
> ***Now then****, which of you wants to go to the Theme Park?*

> *They lived in Shanghai and had two grown-up sons, George and Matthew.* ***Now****, Matthew had worked in the USA and trained as an investment banker, whereas George had left school at 16.*

OF 55

Of is a preposition that introduces a relationship between words, phrases and clauses. It is one of the most frequent words in English. One of its most frequent function, is to introduce prepositional phrases which are complements of nouns. The noun + *of* + noun phrase pattern is very common:

> *These are* ***the important institutions of justice*** *and law enforcement.*
>
> *There is unlikely to be* ***any loss of electrical power*** *during this time.*
>
> *She kept* ***a diary of the events of every day****.*
>
> *Why do you have such* ***a low opinion of British newspapers****?*

The most frequent examples of *of* in informal spoken English are in structures such as *kind of* and *sort of*:

> *She's* ***kind of*** *concentrating on her diet at the moment.*
>
> *He's* ***kind of*** *interested in starting a new course, isn't he?*
>
> *It's a* ***sort of*** *apple. They're really quite nice and sweet.*

Of commonly occurs in the pattern noun + *of* + noun phrase to denote groups, parts and quantities:

> *That's a very good* ***cup of tea****.*
>
> ***A member of staff*** *will meet you at reception to answer any questions you may have.*
>
> *The avalanche started right at* ***the top of the mountain****.*
>
> *Hasn't he earned* ***loads of money*** *from investing in South East Asian banks?*

Of also indicates that something belongs to something or else has particular attributes:

> *The* ***roof of the house*** *was blown off.*
>
> *I can't say I like* ***the colour of her hair****.*

Of frequently occurs in descriptions to mark identity:

> *It is* ***a novel of considerable wit and intelligence****.*
>
> *The thief was identified as* ***a girl of thirteen****.*

The structure determiner + *of* + noun is also frequent in expressions of quantity (⇢ **191**):

> ***45% of salaries*** *exceed £50,000.*
>
> ***Some of my best friends*** *are musicians.*
>
> ***Twenty of the applicants*** *are EU nationals.*

Of is optional with *all*, *both*, *half*, except before the object pronouns *me*, *you*, *it*, *him*, *her*, *us*, *them*:

> ***Both (of) the dogs*** *have been prize winners at top dog shows.*
>
> ***All of you*** *will be held responsible for the results.*
> (~~All you will be held responsible for the results.~~)

A–Z **12 *All*; 28 *Both***

Of occurs after certain adjectives (when used predicatively) and verbs. Among the most common adjectives are *afraid of*, *aware of*, *fond of*, *tired of*, *full of*, *capable of*. Among the most common verbs are *think of*, *talk of*, *accuse (someone) of*, *rob (someone) of*:

> *I was very* ***aware of*** *your objections to the plan.*
>
> *She had grown* ***fond of*** *her new life in Spain.*
>
> *What do you* ***think of*** *his new girlfriend?*
>
> *The police* ***accused*** *him* ***of*** *taking the money without permission.*

The structure *be* + *of* + noun phrase occurs in formal contexts:

> *Her decision* ***was of no comfort*** *to him.*
>
> *Here is an offer which will* ***be of interest*** *to all amateur golfers.*
>
> *We are glad to* ***be of service*** *to our customers.*

OF COURSE 56

Of course is used to indicate that someone knows something or is assumed to know something or should not be surprised to know something:

> ***Of course****, you'll have to get up before six o'clock each day.*
>
> *You should,* ***of course****, not try to do too much until you've got over the illness.*
>
> *I didn't stay there long,* ***of course****.*

Of course is used as a polite and positive reply to questions that ask for agreement, even if the answer disagrees, and to requests:

> A: *I suppose I was stupid to marry him in the first place?*
> B: ***Of course*** *you weren't.*

A: *Can I borrow the car tonight?*
B: *Yes, **of course**, but I need it back by ten thirty.*

✪ *Of course* is not used in reply to genuine information questions where the asker could not be expected to know the answer:

A: *Where did you go for your holidays?*
B: *We went touring in southern Spain.*
A: *Nice. Did you get to Granada?*
B: *Yes, **we certainly did**.*
(~~Yes, of course.~~)

A: *Is this the bus for the city centre?*
B: *Yes, **it is**.*
(~~Yes, of course.~~)

Of course is used to show concession in an argument. It is sometimes preceded by *but*. It has a meaning of 'needless to say' or 'it goes without saying':

*I think they'll probably need at least two more staff. **Of course**, they will have to prove first that they are overworked.*

*Nobody understood the arguments he was making about the history of science but **of course** not a single student was brave enough to admit it.*

OH 57

Oh is used as an interjection and as a discourse marker. As an interjection it expresses surprise, disappointment and pain. As a discourse marker, *oh* is used in particular to respond to new information or to indicate that a speaker has just discovered something surprising. The extent of the surprise can sometimes be indicated by a marked tone of voice which is represented in writing by *ohoh* and *oooh*:

A: *Tim's coming tonight as well.*
B: ***Oh**, I didn't realise.*

A: *I know you've got to get a visa for China first.*
B: ***Oh**, I see.*

***Oh**, yeah, that's right. Okay, I'll write to them right away.*

***Oooh** no!!! Please don't say we have to go through that tunnel again.*

Oh often occurs together with other interjections or with discourse markers. It commonly occurs at turn boundaries, mainly to indicate that a speaker is responding to a previous stretch of discourse and is introducing a new phase of talk:

***Oh** well, I suppose we'd better be leaving. It's getting rather late.*

***Oh**, what was I going to ask you? **Oh** yes. Who's in charge of car parking?*

In some cases *oh* combines with expletives to indicate an intense expression of feeling:

> ***Oh my goodness****. Look at her dog. It's bigger than her.*
>
> ***Oh hell****! I've left my credit cards in the shop.*

A–Z **69 *Right, rightly*; 76 *Well***

Oh is used to indicate that the speaker is making a direct quotation from the words of another. The interjection *oh* functions to mark that the quotation is beginning:

> *So mum came rushing in and she's* ***oh****, you've really done it now haven't you?*
>
> *I thought to myself* ***oh****, I'd better start improving or I'm not going to keep the job.*

Oh is also used in wish constructions, usually in more formal contexts:

> ***Oh*** *for a nice cup of tea! I'm exhausted.*
>
> ***Oh*** *that they could do something about it!*

OKAY/OK 58

Okay (also spelled *OK*) is an informal word with a range of uses. *Okay* indicates that what is said is accepted or agreed with:

> A: *How about a drink?*
> B: ***Okay****, I'll join you in ten minutes.*
>
> ***Okay****, I was probably wrong to react like that but I was angry.*

Okay frequently functions to indicate a change of topic or to signal that a new stretch of discourse is beginning. When used in this way, *okay* often occurs together with other discourse markers such as *right* and *now*:

> ***Okay****, let's now move on to the history of colonial expansion in that region in the late eighteenth century.*
>
> ***Okay****, right, I think we should try something different.*
>
> *Now,* ***okay****, you go first.*

Speakers also use *okay* to check that they have been understood. It usually occurs at or near the end of an utterance:

> *Now are you all sure you understand why this happened. Yes?* ***Okay****? Good.*

Okay is used in closing sequences:

> ***Okay****, so, it was nice talking to you.*
>
> ***Okay****, well, I'd better be getting on or I'll be late.*

Okay is also used as an informal adjective (usually predicative) to denote a satisfactory or unproblematic state or situation:

> *He was ill for quite a time but it looks like he's* ***okay*** *again now.*
>
> A: *Are you sure it's no trouble?*
> B: *No, that's quite* ***okay****.*
>
> *Is it* ***okay*** *for us to smoke in here?*
>
> *He's an* ***okay*** *teacher, isn't he?*
> (attributive use: less common)

Okay is used as an adverb in informal speech, meaning 'all right':

> *She did* ***okay*** *in her exams, so she's going to college in the autumn.*

Okay can also be used in informal contexts as a verb, meaning 'officially to approve something':

> *Has he* ***okayed*** *your essay draft?*
>
> *I'm phoning to ask if you've been able to* ***okay*** *my car insurance?*

ON

A–Z 21 *At*

ONCE 59

Adverb *once* 59a

Once is used as an adverb with a meaning of 'on one single occasion':

> *I only went to London* ***once****. Never again.*
>
> *Take three tablets* ***once*** *a day after meals.*

In formal contexts, *once* can refer to an indefinite time in the past with a meaning of 'at one time':

> *The swords* ***once*** *belonged to a tribe of warriors living in the mountains.*
>
> *He knew that future generations would not comprehend the horrors of war that* ***once*** *so appalled him.*

✪ *Once* is not used to talk about an indefinite time in the future. Normally the phrases 'some time' or 'one day' are used:

> *Why don't you come down* ***some time*** *to Devon to see the family?*
> (~~Why don't you come down once to Devon to see the family?~~)

Noun *once* 59b

Once can be used as a noun in the expressions *the once* and *this once*, usually with *just*. This structure is more common in informal spoken contexts:

> A: *How many times did you go there?*
> B: ***Just the once****.*
>
> ***Just this once*** *I'll let you have the CD player.*

Conjunction *once* 59c

Once is used as a conjunction meaning 'as soon as' or 'when'.

✪ Future or conditional forms occur in the main clause, not in the *once*-clause:

> *What's he going to do* ***once*** *he finds out he has been left out of the team?*
> (as soon as he finds out/when he finds out)
> (~~What's he going to do once he will find out …~~)
>
> ***Once*** *you've passed your exams, we'll pay for a holiday for you.*

✪ The structure *once that* is not used:

> *Once I know when she's arriving, I'll let you know.*
> (~~Once that I know …~~)

Once is used for all times other than the immediate present. In this meaning it is replaced by *now that*:

> ***Now that*** *I'm lying down, I feel a lot better.*
>
> ***Once*** *I'm lying down, I usually feel better.*
>
> ***Once*** *I was lying down, I felt a lot better.*
>
> ***Once*** *you're lying down, you'll feel a lot better.*

In formal written styles, *once* may occur with clausal ellipsis:

> ***Once*** *inside the house, the three men were arrested immediately by police officers.*
> (Once they were inside the house …)

Once in fixed expressions 59d

Once occurs in many fixed expressions. Most of these are expressions of time. Some common examples are:

> ***at once*** (immediately, simultaneously)
>
> ***all at once*** (suddenly)
>
> ***once upon a time*** (used at the beginning of traditional stories)

once in a blue moon (rarely, seldom)

once in a while (not very often)

once or twice (very occasionally)

once and for all (completely, finally)

ONE 60

One can be a numeral, a personal pronoun, and a noun-substitute.

Numeral *one* 60a

As a numeral, *one* can be a determiner or a pronoun:

*I just have **one question** to ask you.*
(determiner)

***One morning** he just got up and left. We've never seen him since.*
(determiner)

*My **one regret** is that I never visited Thailand when I lived in the region.*
(determiner)

*I don't need a lot. Just give me **one** for now.*
(pronoun)

One can also be a substitute form for a singular or plural count noun:

A: *How about a coffee?*
B: *OK, I'll just have a small **one**.*

*Are these the **ones** you ordered?*

A: *Can you pass me the shoes?*
B: *Which **ones**?*
A: *The red **ones**.*

✪ *One* is not used to substitute for non-count nouns:

A: *Have you got any sugar?*
B: *Yes.*
A: *Can I borrow **some**?*
(~~Can I borrow one?~~)

When *one* substitutes for a noun, it refers back to a previous noun and cannot normally be used to refer forward:

*I saw a black car at the traffic lights. But it was a very old **one**.*
(~~I saw a black one at the traffic lights. But the car was a very old.~~)

→ **60c**

Personal pronoun *one* 60b

As a generic personal pronoun, *one* can be used with the meaning of people in general and is common in making generalisations, especially in more formal styles. It has third person singular concord:

> ***One** never knows, does **one**?*
>
> ***One** should not let dogs into the country without proper checks. I think those quarantine laws are quite right.*
>
> *Retirement allows **one** to pursue new interests and hobbies.*

You and *they* are also used in a similar way. However, *one* includes the speaker in the generalisation:

> *Does **one** eat durian in Malaysia?*
> (includes the speaker, who is there or has an interest in going there)
>
> *Do **they** eat durian in Malaysia?*
> (refers to others)

One's functions as a possessive determiner:

> ***One's** country is important but it is in **one's** family that true loyalty is to be found.*

Oneself is the reflexive pronoun formed from *one* (⁘ 201 and 202 for **possessive and reflexive pronouns**):

> ***One** should give **oneself** more credit, shouldn't **one**?*

In traditional formal usage, it is considered inappropriate to mix *one* with other third person singular pronouns:

> ***One** should always be careful before giving **one's** address to someone.*
> (~~One should always be careful before giving his/her address to someone.~~)

Noun substitute *one* 60c

When *one* is used as a noun substitute, it is not used immediately after *some*, *any*, *both* and numbers, unless there is a modifier of the noun:

> A: *Are there any yoghurts for breakfast?*
> B: *I bought some yesterday.*
> (~~I bought some ones yesterday.~~)
>
> A: *Which one do you want?*
> B: *I'll take both if that's okay.*
> (~~I'll take both ones if that's okay.~~)
>
> A: *How many of those ribbons did you get?*
> B: *I bought six **red ones** and three **blue ones**. Is that enough, do you think?*

One is not normally used after noun modifiers:

Do you need lettuce or carrot seeds?
Do you need lettuce seeds or carrot seeds?
Do you need lettuce seeds or carrot?
(~~Do you need lettuce seeds or carrot ones?~~)

However, *one* is used with noun modifiers that denote what something comprises or contains:

That's the book I wanted. It's ***the Economic History one****.*

A: *Do you want the cheese roll?*
B: *No, I'll have* ***the salad one*** *please.*

Note also that in informal styles *one* can be premodified by a possessive determiner:

A: *I couldn't use the copier today.*
B: *Neither could I.* ***My one*** *was broken too.*

✪ When *one* refers back to a previous noun and is modified by an adjective, a determiner must be used:

The hotel that we had booked turned out to be ***a*** *luxury* ***one****.*

The French dictionary is totally different from ***the*** *Spanish* ***one****.*
(~~The French dictionary is totally different from Spanish one.~~)

A or *one* 60d

A/an is the unmarked indefinite article. *One* may be used as an emphatic alternative to *a/an*:

There was ***a*** *car parked outside her house.*
(unmarked)

There was ***one*** *car in the car park.*
(emphatic: 'only one', where there might typically be more)

ONLY 61

Adverb *only* 61a

Only is primarily an adverb. With numerical expressions it has a meaning of 'no more than' and in temporal expressions it has a meaning of 'not until' and 'no longer ago than'. Another meaning is 'cannot but':

There were ***only six*** *of us at the seminar.*

They are really sorry but they are ***only*** *coming* ***on Sunday****.*

I was talking to them on the phone ***only last night****.*

→ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

> *Travellers to this remote village* ***can only wonder*** *at its complete peace and serenity.*
> (cannot but wonder; cannot do anything other than wonder)

Only can indicate an undesirable outcome:

> *Don't go and see the film. You'll* ***only*** *be disappointed.*

As an adverb, the position of *only* varies, and often intonation or context is required to make clear what is modified by *only*. Its most common position is, however, mid position (⁘ 325). When *only* modifies a subject noun phrase, it has to precede it:

> ***He only rinsed*** *the cups; he doesn't even know how to wash up properly.*
>
> *Such investments* ***are only some of the ways*** *in which you can prepare for retirement.*
>
> ***Only I*** *saw David leave; the others were too busy to notice.*
>
> ***Only a small number of banks*** *stay open after 4 p.m.*

Adjective *only* 61b

Only can be an adjective with a main meaning of 'single':

> *My* ***only complaint*** *was that the service was slow.*
>
> *She's the* ***only one*** *they are prepared to confide in.*
>
> *Did you know he's an* ***only child****?*
> (he has no brothers and sisters)

Only if 61c

When *only* is used before *if*, either immediately before or in a previous clause, the meaning is 'provided that' or 'not … unless':

> *Visitors will* ***only*** *be admitted* ***if*** *the proper attire is worn.*
> (or: Visitors will be admitted **only if** the proper attire is worn.)

If only 61d

If only is used to express a strong wish:

> ***If only*** *I could get enough money together, I could go and work in Australia for a year.*

Only + *to*-infinitive 61e

Only is used before a *to*-infinitive in order to introduce an action or event which is sudden and a little unexpected. This use is usually formal and literary:

> *The music shop ordered 50 copies of the CD,* ***only to discover*** *that the songs were sung in a foreign language.*

He stopped the car, ***only to start*** *it again violently.*

When the Second World War broke out, he tried to enlist, ***only to be rejected*** *on the grounds of ill-health.*

Only + subject-verb inversion 61f

When *only* modifies an adverbial phrase or clause in front position, subject and verb are inverted. This style is very formal and occurs mainly in writing:

Only *in summer* ***do you see*** *people making such fools of themselves.*

Only *when we got home* ***did we realise*** *we'd left the keys behind.*

Only just 61g

Only commonly modifies *just* in references to very recent events:

We've ***only just*** *got here. When did you arrive?*

Only just can also have a meaning of 'with very little to spare' or 'barely managed':

A: *Is there enough for everyone?*
B: ***Only just.***

There was so much traffic I ***only just*** *managed to make the flight.*

Conjunction *only* 61h

Mainly in informal spoken English, *only* is also used as a conjunction with the meaning of 'but':

I would come, ***only*** *I don't know what to wear.*

Okay, I'll let you bring your golf clubs. ***Only*** *please hurry up.*

It's more or less the same in Cyprus, ***only*** *even hotter in July.*

OPPOSITE, IN FRONT (OF) 62

✪ Do not confuse *opposite* and *in front (of)*.

If two people, A and B, sit *opposite* each other (e.g. at a table in a restaurant), then A and B are facing each other (i.e. they are looking towards each other).

If A sits *in front of* B (e.g. in a cinema or lecture hall), then B is behind A (i.e. looking at the back of A's head):

A: *Where's this pizza place we're going to?*
B: *It's* ***opposite*** *Philips', next to the Lyons coffee shop.*
A: *Oh right.*
(on the other side of the street from Philips')

[talking about a minor road accident]
The car ***in front of*** *me stopped suddenly and I went into the back of it.*
(my car was driving behind the car I hit)

In front of is often used for things people have in their hands or immediately before them and which are connected with an activity they are engaged in. It is also used to mean 'in the presence of someone':

> [doing business over the phone]
> A: *Have you got that price list* ***in front of you****?*
> B: *I have. Er, hold on a minute. Yes.*
>
> *Some people spend all evening* ***in front of the television****.*
> (watching television)
>
> [talking about a gift]
> *I don't want you to open it* ***in front of all your family****.*
> (in the presence of all your family)

OVER 63

Preposition *over* 63a

As a preposition, *over* typically refers to movement or position at a higher level than something else:

> *The planes flew low* ***over the village****.*
>
> *Didn't the designer recommend hanging the lamps* ***over the tables****?*

The movement can also be 'across':

> *They came* ***over the road*** *to say hello to us.*
>
> *I lost my wallet on the train coming* ***over from Paris****.*

Over and *all over* have a meaning of covering something or being 'throughout' something:

> *Why do prisoners always arrive at prisons and police stations with a blanket* ***over their heads****?*
>
> *Put a cloth* ***over that food****. There are flies everywhere.*
>
> *Her books were* ***all over the room****.*
>
> *They have offices* ***all over the world****.*

Over also occurs with reference to extended periods of time:

> ***Over the past three months*** *the situation on both sides has improved considerably.*
>
> *Read it* ***over the holidays****. You'll enjoy it.*

Over also has a meaning of 'more than' a particular number, or limit:

> *They must be* ***over seventy****. It's great, isn't it, that they still fly to Australia twice a year.*
>
> *That's the second time he's been caught driving* ***over the speed limit****.*
>
> *He now earns* ***over £100,000*** *per year.*

Adverb *over* 63b

Over used as an adverb usually indicates movement above something or someone:

*I didn't hear what she said because a plane **flew over** just at that moment.*

Be over is a very common construction meaning 'finished', 'at an end':

*The interviews should **be over** by about three, so I'll see you then.*

*You're too late. The match **is over**.*

In informal spoken English in particular, *over* has a meaning of 'some distance from the location of the speaker or listener':

***Over in Australia**, they have Christmas dinner on the beach.*

*Why don't you come and sit **over here**?*

*We're going **over to Jack's** for the afternoon.*

*As you come round the corner, you'll see the church **over to the right**.*

Prefix *over* 63c

Over is also frequently used as a prefix referring to an excess of something:

*The government has launched its most stinging criticism yet of **overpaid** directors of public utility companies.*

*He's a good trainer but is known for **overworking** his horses.*

*His approach to the whole topic was **over-elaborate**.*

OWN 64

Own most commonly postmodifies possessive determiners. It emphasises exclusive possession:

*She has **her own** room on the top floor.*

*They have always wanted to have **their own** house in France.*

*It's **the company's own** logo and we think it works well to help sell the product.*

*I suppose we have to learn from **our own** mistakes.*

✪ *Own* is not used after *a* or *the* and not used alone. The use of *of* + possessive determiner + *own* allows a preceding use of determiners in the noun phrase:

*They have **their own** apartment in the centre of Athens.*
(~~They have an own apartment in the centre of Athens.~~)
(~~They have own apartment in the centre of Athens.~~)

*They have two adopted children and **two children of their own**.*
(~~They have two adopted children and two own children.~~)

*It's nice for them to have **a garden of their own**.*

*He wanted to have **some music of his own** so he bought 20 CDs all at once.*

Own can be intensified by *very*:

> *He's just bought his **very own** car.*
>
> *It was Laura's **very own** engagement present to them.*

PERSON 65

The noun *person* has two plural forms, *persons* and *people*. *Persons* is used in more formal, legalistic contexts; *people* is the more widely used plural:

> *She's just a horrible **person**.*
>
> *There are a lot of nice **people** at our school, aren't there?*
> (~~There are a lot of nice persons at our school, aren't there?~~)
>
> *During the 1980s, less than 5 per cent of the US federal budget was spent on programmes that supported families with children, while nearly 24 per cent of federal resources were spent on **persons** over the age of 65.*
> (formal)

PRETTY

A–Z 66 *Quite*

QUITE 66

Quite + gradable adjectives and adverbs 66a

Quite can be used as an intensifying adverb with gradable adjectives and adverbs, with a meaning similar to 'rather', 'fairly' or 'to a considerable degree':

> *But it's going to be **quite interesting** driving home tonight, cos it's the first time I've used it in the dark since I put my headlights back in.*
>
> [showing someone round a house]
> *Here's the front room … second reception room … large kitchen … **quite pleasant**, isn't it?*
>
> *Things began to get worse **quite quickly**.*

Quite + non-gradable adjectives and adverbs 66b

Quite can also be used with non-gradable adjectives and adverbs, with the meaning of 'totally/completely':

> *It was **quite impossible** to have a conversation with him.*
>
> *I don't know whose coat it is, but it's **quite definitely** not mine.*

Quite + nouns 66c

Quite a/an is used before a noun or before a noun modified by a gradable adjective.

When used before a noun, it is very emphatic, and means 'a considerable' or 'a noteworthy example of':

*It's **quite a drive** from here to north Wales, about five hours.*

*You've got **quite a garden** here, wow.*

When used with a gradable adjective + noun, *quite a* means the same as 'a fairly/a rather':

*You also need to be flexible and have **quite a strong stomach**.*
(or: … a fairly strong stomach)

*I thought he was **quite a nice person**.*
(or: … a rather nice person)

With non-gradable adjectives and adjectives of extreme or intensified meaning followed by nouns, the word order is often *a quite* + adjective + noun:

*She was **a quite superb teacher**.*

*The foundations of the English Channel, its geological framework, formed gradually, but its final shaping was **a quite different** and perhaps even catastrophic **event**.*

Quite the + adjective + noun may also occur in affirmative clauses in very formal styles, with the meaning of 'absolutely'. It is most common with superlatives:

[referring to a TV review in the *Guardian*, a British daily newspaper]
*'"After Dark"', the Guardian once said, was '**quite the best idea** for television since men sat around the camp-fire talking while, in the darkness round them, watching eyes glowed red.'*

Quite + comparatives 66d

Quite is not used alone before a comparative. Normally *a lot* or *a bit* is added:

*He was **quite a lot older** than her, and had children that needed looking after.*
(~~He was quite older than her …~~)

*As I say, I had my babies **quite a bit earlier** than these ladies.*
(~~… I had my babies quite earlier than these ladies.~~)

Quite + verbs 66e

In informal spoken language, the only verbs which commonly occur with *quite* in affirmative clauses are *like*, *enjoy*, *understand* and *agree*. *Quite* occupies the normal positions for mid-position adverbs (⇢ 325). It can have a range of meanings from 'a bit' to 'totally/completely', depending on context:

*But your dad **quite likes** people to have an opinion so then he can argue with them.*
(likes a great deal)

> *I* ***quite enjoy*** *working in a team.*
> (enjoy a great deal)
>
> *I* ***quite agree*** *that the people in public school get a better education because their parents can afford it.*
> (agree totally)

In formal written styles, *quite* occurs with a wider range of verbs in affirmative clauses:

> [referring to beehives]
> *He* ***has quite forgotten*** *to replace the roof on the second hive and* ***quite omitted*** *to inspect the remaining hives.*
> (completely forgotten … completely omitted)
>
> *It was a solemn amusement, and I preferred to fish in remote places: it* ***quite spoiled*** *my pleasure if other people were near, to watch, to ask whether I had caught anything.*
> (totally spoiled my pleasure)

Not quite 66f

Not quite means 'not completely'. It may be used with adjectives, adverbs, nouns, prepositional phrases and *wh*-clauses:

> *Well, if I come I'll just turn up, but, er, as I say, I'm* ***not quite sure*** *yet.*
> (not 100% sure)
>
> *It's* ***not quite on the same scale****.*
>
> *I think she looks a bit ill in it.* ***Not quite her colour****.*
>
> *It's* ***not quite what I'm looking for****.*

Not quite may also be used with verbs:

> *I do****n't quite understand*** *that.*
> (I don't understand that completely.)

Quite a bit, quite a few, quite a lot 66g

Quite a bit and *quite a few* refer to large amounts and quantities, just as *quite a lot* does:

> *He'll probably be able to contribute* ***quite a bit****, I think.*
> (he will contribute a lot/a great amount)
>
> *It's a sort of well-established place. It's been there* ***quite a few*** *years.*
> (it's been there a considerable number of years/many years)
>
> *We talked about it* ***quite a lot****, you know.*

Short responses with *quite* 66h

Quite may be used in short responses in more formal spoken styles, especially with *yes* and *well*, to express strong agreement:

A: *Of course, I don't know many of them now. I only know those that have had older children, you know, like Maria.*
B: *Yes* ***quite****.*

A: *Probably the 'Sun' is the most popular paper, isn't it, unfortunately.*
B: *Well* ***quite****.*
A: *And this probably says quite a lot about English people, I suppose, in general.*

Quite right is commonly used in short responses to show agreement:

A: *Though there may be some people who are not very at ease with writing and who might prefer to speak to someone.*
B: *Yeah.* ***Quite right****.*

Quite, *pretty*, *fairly* and *rather* + gradable adjectives and adverbs 66i

Quite, *pretty*, *fairly* and *rather* can have very similar meanings when premodifying gradable adjectives and adverbs with the meaning of 'to a considerable degree'. The main difference between them is the words they collocate with. There is overlap in collocation (e.g. they all collocate frequently with *good* and *easy*), but there are also noticeable differences.

Pretty tends to collocate more with subjective words describing negative aspects of situations (e.g. *awful*, *bad*, *boring*, *dire*, *grim*, *nasty*, *rough*), and is much more frequent in informal spoken contexts than in formal writing:

[speaking of an emergency on an underground rail system]
A: *And all of a sudden the power went off and we went into pitch blackness.*
B: *Oh. My goodness me.*
A: *And we were a long way down underground.*
B: *Yeah. Yeah. I bet that was* ***pretty awful****.*

Fairly is also much more frequent in informal spoken contexts than in formal writing. It collocates with a wide range of adjectives and adverbs:

Everything should be ***fairly straightforward*** *once you get the hang of it.*

I think it was on TV ***fairly recently****.*

Quite is many times more frequent than *pretty* and *fairly*, in both spoken and written language, and has a wide range of collocates.

Rather tends to collocate with gradable adjectives and adverbs of negative meaning (e.g. *unpleasant*, *alarming*, *awkward*, *disappointing*), especially words relating to lack of colour or excitement/vitality (e.g. *bland*, *dull*, *drab*, *seedy*, *shabby*, *soulless*, *run-down*, *unexciting*), or words relating to unexpectedness/strangeness/eccentricity (e.g. *odd*, *unusual*, *comical*). It is much more frequent in formal written contexts than in informal spoken contexts:

> *George was dressed in a* ***rather dull*** *dinner suit cut in a fashion of twenty years earlier.*
>
> *We do look* ***rather comical****, don't we?*

A–Z ***67 Rather***

✪ Do not confuse the spelling of *quite* with the adjective *quiet*:

> *It's* ***quite*** *cold today.*
> (~~It's quiet cold today.~~)

A common error involves the confusion of *quite* and *very* in negative clauses:

> *We moved because the hotel was not* ***very*** *good.*
> (~~We moved because the hotel was not quite good.~~)

RATHER 67

Intensifying function of *rather* 67a

With adjectives and adverbs

Rather can be used to intensify an adjective or adverb. It has a meaning similar to *quite* when *quite* is used with gradable adjectives, but *rather* often occurs in negative contexts, or in contexts indicating an unexpected or surprising degree of something:

> *I've got a* ***rather dominating mother****.*
>
> *We passed some* ***rather nice old houses*** *on the main road.*
>
> *We got it dished out* ***rather quickly****, didn't we?*

Rather may also modify a prepositional phrase:

> *I'm afraid I find myself* ***rather out of my depth****.*

With noun phrases

Rather can modify a noun phrase with *a/an*:

> *I thought it was* ***rather a nuisance*** *really.*
>
> *The room was* ***rather a mess****, the counter still covered with cake pans.*

When *rather* modifies a noun phrase with an adjective and indefinite article, the word order may be *a rather* + adjective, or *rather a* + adjective. *Rather a* is more common in written style:

> *He looks like the owner of* ***a rather posh*** *Greek restaurant.*
>
> *This conference takes* ***a rather different*** *line to those we have had in the past.*

You wondered suddenly if you hadn't made ***rather a rash*** *decision.*

This puts me in ***rather a rebellious*** *mood.*

The expression *a long time* is not normally interrupted by *rather*:

It was ***rather a long time*** *ago, but never mind.*
(preferred to: ~~It was a rather long time ago, …~~)

With verbs and clauses

Rather as an intensifying adverb can modify a verb or clause. It occupies the normal positions for mid-position adverbs (··⁝ **325**):

Dorothy's conversation ***rather led me to believe*** *that she thought it was time Lawrence married.*

[to 'blot your copybook' means to do something that causes someone to be angry with you]
He had ***rather blotted his copybook*** *by charming her mother.*

Rather is often used in this way with verbs such as *enjoy*, *hope*, *like*, *want*:

He ***rather hoped*** *she would throw the whole thing into the garbage and demand to be taken to the Ritz.*

Bill Partridge was definitely coming. Mick MacBride ***rather liked*** *that.*

A–Z 66 *Quite*

Rather + comparisons and *too* 67b

Rather can occur in a variety of constructions related to comparisons. They tend to occur in more formal contexts:

The Minister seemed in ***rather better*** *spirits than his hosts, and apologised for keeping them all up so late.*

He was tall and thin, with a face ***rather like*** *a sad old horse.*

You were ***rather less*** *pleased to see your brother this morning than you were last night.*

It can also be used with *too*:

'You can't go,' he said ***rather too*** *desperately.*

Would rather for expressing preference 67c

Would/'d rather + infinitive without *to* means 'would prefer'. When two alternatives are stated, it is used with *than*:

*She****'d rather struggle on*** *with what money she can raise from the banks.*
(~~She'd rather to struggle on …~~)

*I****'d rather read*** *a book* ***than*** *a professional magazine.*

*I****'d rather stay*** *dirty* ***than*** *wash in that water.*

When it is used with past time reference, *would rather* is followed by infinitive *have* (without *to*) + *-ed* participle:

> *The people **would rather have died** than let the old-style conservatives back into power again.*

If the preference is for someone or something else to do something, then a past tense is used in the reported clause, even when the reference is present or future time:

> ***You'd rather they did***_n't say much about it then?_
> (You would prefer them not to say much about it then.)
>
> *I'll call Madeleine if **you'd rather she was** present.*
> (I'll call Madeleine if you'd prefer her to be present.)

However, in informal speech, an object pronoun plus infinitive without *to* may occur:

> ***I'd rather them give** it to a younger person.*
>
> ***I'd rather it be** your career than my career that is affected.*

When the reference is past time, the past perfect may be used:

> ***You'd rather he'd waited** a few days, would you, Sergeant?*

Negative

When the subject of the main clause and the reported clause are the same, the negative of *would/'d rather* is *would/'d rather not*:

> ***I'd rather not** smoke in front of them.*
> (~~I wouldn't rather smoke in front of them.~~)
>
> *Doctors have to do a lot of things that people **would rather not** know about.*

Tags

Tags following *would rather* are simply formed with *would*:

> *You**'d rather** do something else, **would you**?*
>
> ***I'd rather** go now, **I would**.*

Rather modifying a clause 67d

In formal written styles, *rather* as an adverb may link two clauses, where the situation in the second clause is seen as preferable to that in the first:

> *Let no self-reproach weigh on you because of me. It is I, who should **rather** reproach myself for having urged my feelings upon you.*

Do not confuse this formal use of *rather* with *better*:

> [from a student essay]
> *In conclusion, I shall say that it is not a good idea to keep animals, we should **rather** leave them free and observe them in their natural habitats.*
> (~~… we should better leave them free and observe them …~~)

Rather than 67e

Rather than is used to link two parallel words, phrases or clauses where one is considered preferable to the other. It occurs most commonly in mid position between the two compared items, but can be used in front position:

> *Linda just phoned me wondering whether she should come over* ***in the near future rather than in the summer****.*
>
> [customer enquiring about hi-fi in a shop]
> *I was just wondering whether it would be better to get* ***a really expensive portable one rather than a very cheap stack system****.*
>
> *The people would be a lot fitter if they didn't have a car because they'd have to* ***walk places rather than just get the car*** *to go round the corner shop or something.*
>
> ***Rather than encouragement****, he would hear* ***words such as 'You will not do anything in life'****.*

✪ *Rather than*, not just *than* alone, is used when there is no other comparative form present in the sentence:

> *A doctor may ask, then, whether it is fair to prolong the life of an old person* ***rather than*** *to save that of a child.*
> (~~A doctor may ask, then, whether it is fair to prolong the life of an old person than to save that of a child.~~)

Or rather 67f

Or rather is often used for self-correction:

> *Apparently in this situation the decision to stop treatment was taken by the chief authority,* ***or rather****, the Health Chief of the Dunbridge Health Authority.*

Rather as a response token 67g

Rather may occur in responses to indicate enthusiastic acceptance or agreement. This usage is more associated with speakers of higher social classes or with older speakers:

> [A is explaining to B how university websites often have email addresses listed for staff and students]
> A: *So, say you want to contact a professor in Birmingham, you could find out his email address.*
> B: *Oh right. That's all right.*
> A: *And this is the same for students now, so it'd be good for friends if they want to find you.*
> B: *Oh yes* ***rather****. Yeah.*

REALLY 68

Really is an adverb that is commonly used to emphasise or question the factuality or truth of what is said:

> *Do you* ***really*** *have to go now? Can't you at least wait until the evening?*
>
> *Do you think he is* ***really*** *hungry or is he just pretending?*
>
> *He calls himself her personal assistant but he is* ***really*** *just the driver.*

Really is often used to intensify gradable adjectives and adverbs:

> *I made a* ***really delicious*** *soufflé. It was easier than I thought.*
>
> *I didn't expect to lose but she played a* ***really excellent*** *game.*
>
> *She looks* ***really sweet*** *in that outfit, doesn't she?*
>
> *He drove* ***really fast*** *all the way and it certainly frightened me.*

Really is used to reduce the force of negative utterances:

> *I'm not* ***really*** *angry, just a bit cross.*

Really is commonly used to soften what has just been said. In this function it can occur at the end of utterances:

> A: *What do you think they should do about it?*
> B: *Oh, I don't know* ***really****.*
>
> *I don't think we can do that sort of thing* ***really****.*

Not really is also commonly used to soften a bare *no*-answer.

> [in a travel agent's; A is the customer]
> A: *Erm I'm looking to get away mid, end of June, thereabouts.*
> B: *Right. Anywhere in particular?*
> A: *Erm no, no* ***not really****. But I want to be in a hotel.*

Really also has a concessive meaning of 'despite what has just been said':

> *He's got a terrible temper, but he's a lovely guy* ***really****.*

Really is also used as a response token to show interest and surprise. It contrasts with minimal response tokens such as *uhuh* or *mmm* and indicates greater interest in what is being said:

> A: *We stayed at a hotel on the south coast.*
> B: ***Really****?*
> A: *Yes, it's very pretty, isn't it?*
> B: *I think we've stayed there.*
>
> A: *Shares have fallen more than 20% over the past decade.*
> B: ***Really****?*

Really can also function to invite continuation by a speaker or offer a confirmation that the conversation can continue:

A: *That e-travel company we used last year went bust last week.*
B: *Did they **really**?*
A: *'Fraid so.*

A: *I've just … I've been sorting out those tapes. And erm filling in application forms for the Tower of London job.*
B: *Er which?*
A: *The Tower of London. It's a conservation job.*
B: ***Oh really**?*
A: *Yep.*
B: *Wonderful.*

Really is sometimes used as an adjectival modifier in a shortened form, *real*, in very informal spoken language:

*Why don't you try? It's **real** easy to work.*

*It was **real** good, that sandwich. I think I'll order another one.*

RIGHT, RIGHTLY 69

The two main lexical meanings of *right* are **1** the opposite of 'left'; **2** 'correct' and 'appropriate, fair'. *Right* is used as an adjective and as an adverb. The adverb form *rightly* corresponds only to the meaning of 'correctly' and is normally only used as an adverb showing stance (•⁘ **111**):

*Take a **right turn** at the next crossroads.*

*He injured his **right eye** in the accident.*

***Bear right** at the road junction.*

***You are right** and she is wrong.*

***I got the number right** this time when I phoned her.*

***I rightly assumed** that I was going to be sacked.*

*She was scared to death and, **quite rightly in my opinion**, called the police.*

When used predicatively, *right* only has a meaning of 'correct' or 'fair':

*It is entirely **right** to insist on high training standards for the diving instructors.*

A: *Is this the train for Newcastle?*
B: *Yeah, that's **right**.*

When modifying prepositional phrases, *right* normally means 'exactly' or 'just':

*Give me a couple of minutes. I'll be **right with you**.*

*She arrived **right after** they did, just a few minutes before midnight.*

Right as a modifier also means 'all the way', 'completely':

> *Cut the grass **right down**. It'll grow again in a few days.*
>
> *We drove **right up to** the very north of Scotland.*
>
> *He must be a **right idiot**. You mean he didn't back all the files up?*

Right also occurs adverbially in certain fixed expressions, where *rightly* might be more normally expected. Here *right* cannot occur before the verb:

> *It **serves** you **right**.*
> (you deserve that punishment)
>
> *We **guessed right**. They're closing the shop next week.*

Right is particularly common in spoken English as a discourse marker to indicate that a new action or sequence of thought is about to begin:

> ***Right**, let's try to decide how we should change the traffic light system in the city centre.*
>
> ***Right**, let's go.*

Right also occurs as a synonym for 'okay', 'we agree':

> A: *See you tomorrow, then.*
> B: ***Right**.*
>
> A: *I think she's just gone too far this time.*
> B: ***Right**. I'll have a word with her about it.*

In the above four examples *all right* can be used as well.

Right can also function to check understanding or to check that someone agrees with what is said. It functions in a manner similar to a tag question and has a meaning similar to 'okay':

> *It's available as a CD-Rom, **right**?*
>
> *So I knocked at the door and it seemed like no one was in – so I knocked again, **right**, and it was just so quiet and I got a bit scared, even though I knew it was silly.*
>
> *Now, we've covered the origins of the War of Independence, **right**, and next week we go on to the consequences.*

Right also functions as a backchannel marker. It does not engage with the speaker as directly as markers such as *really*, and can provide a more neutral response to what has been said:

> A: *I told them I would resign.*
> B: ***Right**.*
> A: *But I'm not sure whether I'll go through with it.*
> B: *Oh **right**.*

ROUND

A–Z 18 ***Around, round***

SINCE 70

Since has two main meanings, referring to time and referring to reasons.

Since referring to time

I haven't seen Paul ***since Ken and Margaret got married****.*
(I haven't seen them from that point in time until now)

She's been doing it ***since the beginning of March****.*
(from that point in time until now)

✪ Do not confuse *since* and *for*. *Since* refers to points in time, *for* refers to extended periods of time:

> *She's been away* ***for a couple of days****.*
> (~~She's been away since a couple of days.~~)
>
> *I've been here* ***for three weeks****.*
> (seen as a period of time)
>
> *I've been here* ***since three weeks ago****.*
> (seen as a point in the past)

Since referring to reasons

Since is used when the reason for something is presumed to be already known to the listener:

Since *around 30% of the contents of the average dustbin is made up of kitchen waste, it makes sense to encourage more people to compost rather than dump it.*
(or: As we know, around 30% of the contents of the average dustbin is made up of kitchen waste, so …)

Compare *because*, where there is no necessary implication that the reason is already known:

It may be ***because*** *they don't know what the guidelines are.*
(this is a possible reason, we do not know)

Tense-aspect patterns with *since* 70a

Tense-aspect in the main clause

- Present perfect or past perfect:

I've been *awake* ***since*** *half past four this morning.*
(~~I'm awake since half past four this morning.~~)

I hadn't been *to Barcelona* ***since*** *1988 so I was looking forward to it.*

- Present tense or past tense:

  You're looking *better* ***since*** *you got back from the north.*

  Joe's *the one person Martha really* ***cares*** *about* ***since*** *she lost her mother.*

Present simple and past simple are often used instead of present perfect and past perfect with the construction *it* + *be* + time period + *since*:

> *It***'s** *months* ***since*** *I've been out for a coffee anywhere.*
> (or: It's been months since I've been out …)

> *It* ***was*** *years* ***since*** *I'd seen him.*
> (or: It had been years since I had seen him.)

Tense-aspect in the *since*-clause

- Past tense; *since* refers to a point in time:

  Can you tell me what's happened ***since*** *we last* ***met****?*
  (from that point in time until now)

- Present perfect; *since* refers to an event leading up to now or still relevant:

  Since I've been *at Durford, which is two years now, Rod's been a tremendous support in putting through some of the changes that we've needed in managing our production systems.*
  (during the two-year period of time)

In informal speech, the present perfect may sometimes be used to refer to completed events in the past:

> *When I went back, it was when I was still at school. My dad took me back when I was about fifteen. I think I was about fifteen, fourteen, somewhere round there. It's a very long time* ***since I've been*** *back.*

Since + *-ing* form 70b

Since referring to time may be followed by the *-ing* form of a verb where the subject is the same in both the main and subordinate clause:

> *She'd only had a couple of hours' sleep* ***since arriving*** *in Oxford the previous day.*

> ***Since having*** *done that big piece of work, I'm finding it quite difficult to get back into working really.*

This does not occur when *since* refers to reasons:

> ***Since I didn't have*** *medical insurance, I would have to pay for everything out of my pocket.*
> (~~Since not having medical insurance …~~)

Since, since then 70c

Since referring to time may be used alone as an adverb when the time reference is understood:

> *And then a bit later on, the next-door neighbour on this side had the son and daughter-in-law over for a meal, and when they got outside, their car was missing and it hasn't been found* ***since****.*
> (understood: since that day)

More specific reference may be made with *since then*:

> *I mean that's twenty years ago. Traffic has obviously doubled or trebled* ***since then****.*

When *since* is used in this way, it normally occurs in end or mid position in the clause with present perfect tense:

> *She****'s since had*** *a burglar alarm installed.*
> (understood: since the time she was burgled)
>
> *The consultant who was in charge of your case* ***has since retired****.*
> (understood: since the events we are talking about)

Since then normally occurs in front or end position, but not normally in mid position:

> *But* ***since then****, we've been up and down the country to all these other places.*
>
> *It's grown enormously* ***since then****.*
> (~~It's since then grown enormously.~~)

Ever since 70d

Ever since is a more emphatic form of *since* in its references to time (not in its reference to reasons):

> ***Ever since*** *I was 12, I've thought about being Olympic champion.*
>
> *She's been a bit nervous* ***ever since*** *we got burgled.*

It may also be used as an adverb phrase:

> *And people say she was murdered down at the lake. And she's haunted the castle* ***ever since****.*
> (understood: ever since the day she was murdered)

Questions with *since when* 70e

Questions with *since when* do not normally allow separation of *when* and *since*:

> ***Since when*** *have you spent so much time with your son?* ***Since when*** *have you two been such close friends?*
> (~~When have you two been such close friends since?~~)

Long since 70f

Long since normally means ‘a long time ago, a long time before that’:

> *Spontaneous adventures, the essence of her youth, had* ***long since*** *ceased.*
> (understood: had long ago ceased/had ceased long before that time)
>
> *His hair had* ***long since*** *thinned, and as he offered his hand, I noticed the blue rivulets of age.*
> (His hair had thinned long before that moment …)

Since and *from* 70g

From is sometimes used instead of *since*, especially with reference to distant historical times:

> *This unhappiness has been going on* ***from the earliest historical times****: our whole history is a tale of unhappiness, with war following war, each crueller and bloodier than the last, until in our day we wipe out a hundred thousand with one bomb.*
> (or: This unhappiness has been going on since the earliest historical times …)

However, *from* also refers to the starting point of completed periods of time, whereas *since* refers to periods of time continuing up to the point of speaking or writing:

> [Margaret Thatcher’s period as British Prime Minister was finished when this text was written; *since* would have suggested it was still continuing at the time of writing]
> *Italy has had the fastest rate of growth of the big four European economies during the past decade – yes, even faster than Margaret Thatcher’s Britain if one takes the full period of her office* ***from*** *1979.*

A–Z **43 *For***

SO 71

Adverb *so* 71a

So is a degree adverb, and typically modifies adjectives and adverbs. It has a meaning of ‘to this extent’:

> *I’m sorry I’m* ***so late****. The traffic was just a nightmare.*
>
> *It doesn’t always work out* ***so neatly****.*
>
> *Why is he* ***so grumpy*** *first thing in the morning?*

So also has an intensifying meaning similar to ‘very’ or ‘really’:

> *I spent the morning in Foxton Park and it was* ***so nice and peaceful****.*
>
> *That’s* ***so kind*** *of you. Thanks very much.*

You must meet him. He's ***so good-looking****.*

You should have heard her. She sang ***so wonderfully****.*

So + adjective/adverb + *that*-complement clause indicates that something is of such a degree that it produces the outcome described in the *that*-clause:

I felt ***so upset that I just didn't know what to say****.*

It all happened ***so quickly we hardly noticed it****.*

So may also premodify quantifiers such as *much*, *many*, *little*, *few*:

There were ***so many*** *people in the queue I just gave up and went home.*

She just has ***so little*** *sympathy for others.*

So is often used to indicate size or extent in the same way as *this* is used, and is typically reinforced by hand gestures which roughly indicate size:

[indicating the size of a garden plant container, with the hand held palm-downward about half a metre above the ground]
It's about ***so big****.*
(or: It's about this big.)

So is also occasionally used as a manner adverb, with a meaning of 'like this':

Just bend your knees – ***so****.*

In informal spoken language, especially in the usage of younger speakers, *so* may occur as an intensifier before an adjective negated with *not*. In such cases, *so* is heavily stressed. In traditionally correct and more formal usage, an adjective with a negative prefix is the preferred form. *So* can also be used as a more intense and expressive alternative to the adverb phrases *just* or *just like*, and can be followed by any class of item (e.g. verb, noun, prepositional phrase):

[BBC radio travel reporter recounting a tough mountaineering expedition]
And I'm thinking 'I'm ***so not fit*** *for this expedition'.*
(preferred formal usage: I'm so unfit for this expedition.)

I was ***so not ready*** *to take an exam that day.*
(preferred formal usage: I was so unready/unprepared to take an exam that day.)

I'm ***so not*** *going to do that.*
(preferred formal usage: I'm just not going to do that.)

Younger speakers also use *so* as an intensifier with noun phrases, though such usage is considered incorrect by many speakers:

[teenager commenting on a mobile phone]
That phone is ***so*** *last week.*
(it is out of date, not the latest model)

That's ***so*** *Sandra. I knew she wouldn't help us.*
(That's typical of Sandra.)

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

✪ *So* is not used before an adjective that is used attributively. *Such* must be used instead:

> *I took* ***such nice photos*** *in the park yesterday.*
> (~~I took so nice photos in the park yesterday.~~)

So is not used to modify noun phrases:

> *She is* ***such a quiet girl****.*
> (~~She is so a quiet girl.~~)
>
> *It took* ***such a long time*** *to get to Scotland.*
> (~~It took so long time to get to Scotland.~~)
>
> *And there were* ***such tall buildings****!*
> (~~And there were so tall buildings!~~)

Pro-form or substitute word *so* 71b

So is also used as a pro-form or substitute word. As a pro-form, *so* occurs in reduced clauses with modal and auxiliary verbs and copular verb *be*, to express the meaning 'also' or 'similarly, in the same way'. This use of *so* is followed by inversion of the subject and verb:

> *Her luck ran out while she was away from home.* ***So did his****.*
>
> *Ian's a teacher, and* ***so is his sister****.*
>
> A: *I've got loads of work to do though.*
> B: ***So have I****.*
>
> A: *Donald can stay at a local hotel.*
> B: *Well,* ***so can I*** *if it's inconvenient to stay at your place.*

So is used as a clausal substitute after verbs such as *assume*, *be afraid*, *believe*, *hope*, *imagine*, *reckon*, *think*:

> A: *Is Thomas coming to the meeting tomorrow?*
> B: ***I believe so.***
>
> A: *Will you still be here next time I call?*
> B: ***I hope so****!*
> (note that the opposite of *so* in this type of construction is *not*, e.g. *I hope not*.)
>
> *You're very bright, Zoe. Everybody says* ***so****.*

So they say, *so everybody says*, *so they tell me*, *so everybody tells me*, *so I'm told*, *so I gather/believe/understand* and similar expressions indicate that the listener has already been informed of something. They are common in responses. With these verbs, *so* often precedes the verb:

> A: *It was the American who got the job.*
> B: ***Mm, so I understand****.*

Subordinator *so* 71c

As a subordinating conjunction, *so* introduces clauses of result, consequence and purpose. Purpose clauses may include an optional *that*:

> *I had nothing to eat at lunchtime* ***so I'm very hungry now.***
>
> *Let's talk her into coming for her birthday* ***so she won't be alone.***
> (or: Let's talk her into coming for her birthday so that she won't be alone.)

So as and *so as not* introduce non-finite *to*-infinitive clauses of purpose, and normally occur in more formal contexts. Often the 'purpose' is to avoid an undesired consequence:

> *They decided to go ahead with the wedding,* ***so as to avoid upsetting everyone.***
>
> *He said he was busy,* ***so as not to hurt her feelings.***

Discourse marker *so* 71d

In spoken English the most common use of *so* is as a discourse marker. Typically, it functions as a connecting or summarizing marker, usually in front position:

> *I said – Well have you booked me an ambulance.* ***So*** *she says – Oh I'll put you through to the ambulance department. They said that an ambulance had been booked for me but it hadn't.*
>
> [discussing whether to eat a pudding or keep it till the following morning]
> A: *I'm not having it cold in the morning. Oh.*
> B: *Oh.*
> A: ***So*** *what sort of pudding is it?*
>
> A: ***So****, what are we going to do tonight?*
> B: *Well, I'd like to stay at home. I've loads to do.*
>
> *Right,* ***so****, let's get going. Let's say goodbye to everyone.*

With *yes-no* questions it is often an appeal for confirmation: 'am I right in thinking that …?':

> [discussing a complaint letter written by speaker A]
> A: *It just isn't right.*
> B: *Mm.* ***So*** *did you feel that the points that you made in your original letter were all covered in this reply?*
> A: *Oh yes. I think they've answered me very well indeed.*
>
> A: *Things have changed then.*
> B: *They have certainly changed.*
> A: *Okay.* ***So*** *you can't really remember your parents having any sort of ambitions for you or even for themselves?*
> B: *No.*

So is not used alone in responses to express surprise. *Really* is typically used in such cases:

> A: *She doesn't have a TV set at all. She never has had one.*
> B: *Oh, really?*
> (~~Ah, so?~~)

The expression *Is that so?* occurs in responses to express surprise:

> A: *When I came back she was in the car waiting for me!*
> B: *Oh,* ***is that so****?*
> A: *Yes!*

STILL 72

Still has three main meanings as an adverb:

1. that something is continuing, often for a longer time than expected
2. that something is true in spite of something else, or in contrast to something else
3. that something is not moving or should not move.

Still for something continuing in time 72a

> [*beach huts* are small wooden huts which people own or rent at seaside resorts]
> *Do they* ***still*** *have beach huts down in Weymouth?*

> [speakers are talking about a cinema, *The Regal*, which has since closed]
> *I came here in 1966 and The Regal was* ***still*** *going then.*

Still can indicate that the speaker/writer thinks that the continuation of a situation is not desired or is surprising in some way, especially when stressed and in negative constructions:

> ***I still don't*** *know what we're going to do with those tins.*
> (I wish I did know)

> *They bought an old cooker months ago and* ***they still haven't*** *installed it.*

✪ Note the word order in these emphatic negative constructions: *still* comes between the subject and the first auxiliary or modal verb. Compare the normal mid position for adverbs, which is after the first auxiliary or modal verb (→ 325).

The negative of *still* is *no longer*, *not any longer* or *no more*, *not any more*:

> A: *Are you still working in Birmingham?*
> B: *No,* ***not any more/not any longer****.*
> (~~No, not still.~~)

Still, yet, already

Still does not mean the same as *yet* or *already*. *Yet* is used mostly in questions and negatives to talk about things which may be expected but which have not happened, or things about which the speaker wonders if they have happened up to that point in time:

A: *Have you looked in that journal you got from Mrs Martin* ***yet****?*
B: *No. I will, honestly.*

Already refers to things that have happened, often to the surprise of the speaker:

A: *Have you* ***already*** *eaten that?*
B: *Sorry, yes, I was really hungry.*
(~~Have you still eaten that?~~)

A–Z 13 *Already*

Still for something that is true in spite of other things 72b

[speaker is complaining about the cost of birthday presents for children]
I said we would spend £70 per child, which is ***still*** *a lot of money.*

[talking about an old motorbike]
I offered him £300 but ***he still wouldn't*** *sell it.*

✪ Note the word order with this negative emphatic use of *still* (⁘ **72a** above).

Still indicating lack of movement 72c

We just couldn't ***sit still*** *any longer. We just had to get up and dance.*

Apparently you're supposed to ***stand still*** *and shout and scream as loud as possible.*

Front-position *still* 72d

Front-position *still* often has a meaning similar to *on the other hand* or *nevertheless*:

I worked in the coal mines but I was out of work at 50 because the mines closed. But ***still****, who isn't out of work these days?*

I don't really like weddings. ***Still****, I'll have to go or they'll be offended.*

STUFF

A–Z 74 *Thing, stuff*

TAKE

A–Z 29 *Bring, take, fetch*

THEN

73

Then is an adverb which refers to a particular time in the past or future:

> *We used to go to Italy every year by car. But we were very young* ***then****.*
>
> *The new carpet can't be delivered for six weeks so I suppose we'll just have to wait until* ***then****.*

Then also has a meaning of 'next' or 'after that' and commonly occurs with *and*:

> *The guides took us all over the city. First to the castle* ***and then*** *to the museum* ***and then*** *to the cathedral.*
>
> *Tidy your room first.* ***Then*** *you can both go out. Okay?*

Then sometimes occurs in the main clause of a conditional sentence when the main clause comes after the *if*-clause, to emphasise the conclusion drawn from that condition:

> *If you wear that outfit,* ***then*** *I'm going to have to wear a jacket.*
>
> *If there is a town called Cordoba in Spain,* ***then*** *there will probably be cities with the same name all over South America.*
>
> *If you feel you should do it,* ***then*** *do it.*

In spoken English, *then* often occurs in responses with a meaning of 'in that case':

> A: *I can't really afford it but I think I need it.*
> B: ***Then*** *why don't you buy it?*
>
> A: *How did she play?*
> B: *She was the best in the team.*
> A: *So you think she might get a further trial* ***then****?*

✪ *Then* and *so* can both have a meaning of 'since that is the case' or 'because that is so'. They are both common in responses where they indicate that something logically follows from what has just been said:

> A: *It costs much less to run a diesel car.*
> B: ***Then*** *I guess we should get a diesel.*
> (or: So I guess we should get a diesel.)

However, *then* is not used when the same speaker connects two statements and the second statement follows from the previous one. In such cases *so* is used:

> *It's going to cost us too much to fly,* ***so*** *we're going by train.*
> (~~It's going to cost us too much to fly, then we're going by train.~~)

Then also frequently co-occurs with the discourse markers *well*, *now*, *right* and *okay*:

> ***Well then****, what should we do about it?*
>
> ***Now then****, I think it's probably time to take a break.*
>
> ***Okay then****, you go first. You've given many talks like this before and I'm just a bit nervous.*

A–Z **71 *So***

THERE

A–Z *45 Here, there*

THING, STUFF 74

Thing 74a

General noun

Thing is a general noun which is widely used to refer to physical objects, abstractions such as ideas and statements, and situations, events, actions, experiences and states:

> *Can you pass that **thing** over there on the bed?*
>
> *What shall I do? I haven't **a thing** to wear.*
>
> *Can you put all your **things** in the suitcase?*
>
> *Love is a very peculiar **thing**.*
>
> *Let's see how **things** develop.*
>
> *These **things** take time.*
>
> *A holiday? That's just the **thing** for you.*
>
> *They're interested in all **things** Japanese.*
>
> *As **things** stand now, the plane won't be taking off for another couple of hours.*
>
> A: *Hi, Pat. How's **things**?*
> B: *Fine, thanks. How are you?*

Referring back

Thing is commonly used to refer back to something that has already been mentioned. It may also refer back generally to actions:

> *While I was away, my parents sold all my music CDs and cassettes – these were **things** I'd had since I was a school kid.*
>
> *She was really shouting at him, **a thing** I've never seen her do.*

Alternative to *something*, etc.

Thing can be used instead of common pronouns such as *something*, *anything* and *nothing*. When used as part of a negative expression, *thing* is more definite and emphatic. The pronouns *something*, *anything* are less open to modification than the noun *thing*:

> *I can't think of **one thing** we could have done to prevent it.*
> (more emphatic than 'I cannot think of anything we could have done' or 'I can think of nothing we could have done')
>
> *I could not think of **a single thing** to say.*

In cleft constructions

Thing is particularly commonly used in cleft constructions. It is also common with *to* and *that*-clauses:

> *The **thing** I want **to** know is how they managed to miss the bus.*
>
> *The **thing** she said **to** remember was to ask for a discount as soon as we arrive.*
>
> *The most obvious **thing to** do is to contact your insurance company.*

✪ In cleft constructions which involve comparison, *thing* is needed:

> *The most obvious **thing** to do is to keep out of the rain.*
> (~~The most obvious to do is to keep out of the rain.~~)

The thing is

The phrase *the thing is* is frequent in spoken English and functions as a discourse marker which focuses attention on what follows and usually signals that there is a problem. The verb form *is* tends to be stressed. *The* is commonly ellipted in informal use:

> ***The thing is*** *… erm … we don't have any money left.*
>
> *Yeah, but, you know, **thing is**, she's left it rather late.*

The expression *the thing is* is treated by speakers as a fixed item, and in many cases in informal speech an 'extra' *is* is added as speakers feel a need to have a verb in the clause. When this happens, the first *is* is stressed:

> ***The thing is is*** *no one wants to take responsibility for paying for it all.*

Vague reference and hedging

Thing enables speakers, in particular, to avoid precise reference and to hedge statements so that they are neither too assertive nor too direct. The word occurs in phrases such as *things like that*, *kind of thing*, *sort of thing*, which enable speakers to refer vaguely to categories, on the assumption that the listener will understand what is included in the category:

> *There isn't time for sending invitations out and **that kind of thing**, is there?*
>
> A: *So, er, you want the suitcase left upstairs?*
> B: *Yeah cos I've got **things like plates and stuff** to pack yet.*
>
> *She's making a lot of cakes and goodies **and things** for Chinese New Year.*
>
> *I was a wrestling coach and **things like that** and in New York I used to be a bouncer.*
>
> *I'll see you next week then; perhaps we can, like, have lunch, **sort of thing**.*

Thing is commonly used with a preceding noun modifier to describe phenomena which are either recent, difficult to categorise or best described in deliberately vague terms:

> *I think **the whole Euro thing** has got completely out of control.*
>
> ***This new man thing*** *may have gone too far. More of them than ever are going shopping.*

[reference to public reaction after the death of Princess Diana]
The whole Diana thing *is very unBritish. It shows they are not cold and unemotional after all.*

Lucky thing, etc.

Thing marks both positive (usually affectionate) and negative attitudes, mainly when accompanied by appropriate adjectives:

Our dog's getting a bit old now, ***poor thing****.*

You ***lucky thing****! I suppose you are on your third holiday this year.*

We found the book distasteful and don't intend to stock ***the thing*** *on our shelves.*

Thingy, etc.

The words *thingy*, *thingummy*, *thingamabob* and *thingamajig* are also used in similar ways and offer a more colloquial alternative. Such words are normally used with reference to objects in the immediate situation and are not widely used as alternatives to *thing*:

Can you get me that little metal ***thingy*** *over there on the workbench?*

Stuff 74b

Stuff is also one of the most frequent nouns in spoken English. It functions in very similar ways to *thing*, though it is a non-count noun. It commonly occurs in vague expressions such as *stuff like that*:

Where can I put my ***stuff****?*
(or: Where can I put my things?)

I can't remember. All that chemistry ***stuff*** *is just too hard to learn.*

Don't give me all that ***stuff****. You've nothing to apologise for.*

There wasn't much to do really. Just a few shops, a small beach, a few sailing boats and all ***that kind of stuff****.*

He just told us to try hard ***and stuff like that****.*

THOUGH

A–Z 15 *Although, though*

TOO

A–Z 14 *Also, as well (as), too*

UNDER

A–Z 25 *Below*

UNTIL

A–Z **24 *Before***

WAIT FOR

A–Z **40 *Expect***

WANT 75

Want has three basic meanings:

1 *Tell me what you **want** to do*. (wish/desire)
2 *My hair **wants** cutting*. (needs – always with *-ing* form)
3 *You **want** to sign that credit card immediately*. (you should/I advise you to)

2 and **3** are more associated with informal spoken language. Only meaning **1** occurs with *want* in the progressive form.

Want + infinitive 75a

Want is used with an infinitive, including when the subject of the verb in the complement clause is another person or thing; it is not used with a *that*-clause:

> ***I want him to think** about his future.*
> (~~I want that he thinks about his future.~~)

Want always requires complementation, either an object or an infinitive *to*-clause, even in reduced clauses (e.g. short answers):

> A: *What shall I do with the knife?*
> B: *Leave it there. Gladys **wants it**.*
> (~~Leave it there. Gladys wants.~~)
>
> A: *Why aren't you eating?*
> B: *Because I don't **want any**.*
> (~~Because I don't want.~~)
>
> A: *I've made some cakes, d'you **want one**?*
> A: *Yes, please.*
> (~~D'you want?~~)
>
> A: *Are you coming with us tonight?*
> B: *No thanks, I don't **want to**.*
> (understood: … come with you)
> (~~No thanks, I don't want.~~)

> A: *Well, that's what she said, anyway.*
> B: *I don't know why she keeps saying that. It's not as if I **want her to**.*
> (~~It's not as if I want her.~~)

Want + *it* 75b

In informal spoken language, even when the object is first mentioned as an indefinite entity, the object of *want* can be *it*, rather than *one/some/any*:

*There's olive oil if you **want it**.*

*I can have a day off when I **want it**.*

*There's a toilet there if you **want it**.*

Want with *wh*-words, *want* with *if* 75c

With *wh*-words, it is often not necessary to use the infinitive marker *to* after *want*:

*Later in life you can do **what** you **want**, go out **when** you **want**, study **when** you **want**.*

*You can come in and pick it up **whenever** you **want**.*

*You can go **wherever** you **want** and still be bored.*

However, in such cases, *to* can be used:

*You can leave **whenever** you **want to**.*

With *if* the infinitive marker *to* is often omitted in affirmative clauses:

*You can come later **if** you **want**.*

However, *to* is normally used with *if* in negative clauses:

*You don't have to do it **if** you don't **want to**.*

Want with progressive verb forms 75d

Although *want* mostly occurs in simple tense forms, in informal spoken language it often occurs with progressive forms. The use of progressive often expresses tentativeness, indirectness or politeness:

*What we**'re** really **wanting** to do is to make sure people have one name they can contact.*

[telephone enquiry to travel agent]
*Oh, hello, my husband and I **are wanting** to go to the Hook of Holland next weekend.*

*I'**m wanting** desperately to do the right thing.*

The progressive is also used to emphasise an ongoing or repeated process:

[tennis player speaking]
*The coach **was wanting** us to win big matches and things like that.*

→ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

*We**'ve been wanting** to get it under way for years, and now I think it'll go in leaps and bounds.*

A: *How do you encourage your own children as regards education?*
B: *It all depends on what they**'re wanting** to do.*

Want + *-ing* form 75e

Want is often used in informal contexts with a verb in the *-ing* form to express a meaning of necessity:

*The grass **wants cutting**.*
(needs to be cut)

*The fridge **wants cleaning** out.*

The meaning of *want* + *-ing* form can also correspond to a pseudo-passive construction:

*I've got some pictures I **want enlarging**.*
(which I want to have enlarged)

Want and speech acts of advice/warning 75f

Want to is used in informal spoken language to advise, recommend or warn (most commonly with a second person subject). It is almost always in present tense, and is often followed by a *be* + *-ing* verb form:

*Put some more water in. **You don't want to make** it too strong.*

[talking about whether young people should look to the future or more to their present needs]
*At that age you need a bit of both. **You want to be looking** ahead and **you want to be improving** your skills as well.*

WELL 76

Well is an adverb and a discourse marker.

Adverb *well* 76a

As an adverb, *well* has the meaning of 'satisfactorily':

*I slept really **well** last night.*

*She talks **well** for a two-year-old, doesn't she?*

Discourse marker *well* 76b

A main function of *well* as a discourse marker is to indicate that the speaker is thinking about things:

A: *What do you think of the department's plan?*
B: ***Well**, let's see, it's certainly better than the last one, I'll say that.*

A: *Why did she say that?*
B: ***Well**, I don't know, I mean, maybe she wants to move house.*

Well normally occurs at the beginning of a turn. But it can occur in the middle of an utterance if a speaker is revising what is said or is searching for an alternative expression:

> *I never said I was happy, **well**, all right then, I might have said I was not unhappy.*

Well also indicates that the speaker is saying something which contrasts with what has just been said or which does not follow the expectation of what was said:

A: *You always go out to your evening class on a Tuesday.*
B: ***Well**, tonight I'm too tired and I'm staying in.*

A: *D'you live in Cambridge?*
B: ***Well**, near Cambridge.*
(B cannot answer the *yes-no* question with a *yes* or a *no*; *well* shifts the predicted direction)

Well can also signal that something surprising is about to be announced:

> *You know I said I went to Jill's last night, **well**, you'll never guess who I saw there.*

Well can sometimes signal the opening or closing of a topic or speech event:

> ***Well**, let's get started, shall we?*

> ***Well**, that's all for now. We'll see you again at the same time next week.*

Well commonly clusters with other discourse markers, adverbs and adverbial phrases:

> ***Well, actually**, I don't think she has agreed.*

> ***Well, as a matter of fact**, I've bought a flat in the village.*

Well is also used, often in a cluster with other words, to mark attitudes and feelings, usually in response to a situation:

***Well, well, well**, I never knew that.*
(surprise)

***Well really**, that's awful behaviour.*
(anger)

***Oh well**, there's not much we can do about it.*
(resignation)

A good dictionary will give further information about the range of attitudes that are conveyed by *well*.

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

WHATEVER 77

Whatever is a determiner, a pronoun and an adverb.

Determiner *whatever* 77a

As a determiner, *whatever* commonly appears in a noun phrase with a clausal complement:

> ***Whatever money I have*** *has to go on food.*
>
> ***Whatever choice you make*** *will be the right one.*
>
> *They had to rely on* ***whatever food they were given by the villagers****.*

Pronoun *whatever* 77b

As a pronoun and head of a noun phrase, *whatever* can occur in interrogatives:

> ***Whatever*** *does she see in him?*
>
> ***Whatever*** *is he doing with that car?*

Whatever meaning 'regardless of' 77c

Whatever also occurs in subordinate clauses and has a meaning of 'no matter what', 'regardless of', 'it makes no difference':

> ***Whatever*** *you decide to do in the future, you can rely on our support.*
>
> *Okay, let's go,* ***whatever*** *the weather.*
>
> ***Whatever*** *new clothes she bought, she always ended up taking them back.*

Adverb *whatever* 77d

Whatever can also function as an adverb in negative and interrogative clauses with a meaning of 'at all'. It can be substituted by the form *whatsoever*, which adds further emphasis, especially in negative phrases:

> *He has* ***no respect whatever*** *from the people he works with.*
>
> *Are there* ***any objections whatever*** *to his proposal?*
>
> *They have* ***no interest whatsoever*** *in football.*

Whatever for vagueness 77e

Whatever is used, especially in spoken English, to indicate a deliberately vague or non-committal reference, especially when the exact name or meaning of something or someone is not known. It can be used to continue a list:

> *So you log on and just click the songs and artists you need using that search tool* ***or whatever****.*

Now to prepare the soup we need shallots, tomatoes, chillies, red peppers and vegetable stock and then all those herbs ***and whatever.***

Whatever for lack of interest 77f

Whatever can indicate agreement but it can also create a negative tone and indicate either lack of interest or that agreement is a token or unwilling agreement. In such examples the form is often ellipted:

A: *I thought we'd go to southern Italy this year. I think that those southern parts are a lot less crowded.*
B: *Yeah,* ***whatever you think****. That's fine.*
(whatever it is you think)

A: *So, shall I invite them round?*
B: *Sure.* ***Whatever****.*
(whatever you like)

WHILE 78

While is a subordinating conjunction and a noun.

Conjunction *while* 78a

As a conjunction, *while* corresponds in meaning to the preposition *during*:

While *you're at the swimming pool, I think I'm going to pop into town.*

I made three phone calls ***while*** *they were at lunch.*

Some members of the audience fell asleep ***while*** *he was talking to them.*
(Some members of the audience fell asleep during his talk.)

Within a sentence, *while* is used to refer to a simultaneous time relationship between two actions or states:

Geoff phoned ***while*** *you were walking the dog.*

While *I watched the match, Jill watched a film on the other TV.*

Was the package delivered ***while*** *I was working out at the gym?*

While can be used in clauses where the subject and the verb *to be* are ellipted:

While *holidaying in Malaysia, they received the news that their daughter had secretly married.*
(While they were holidaying in Malaysia …)

While *on the subject, why don't we write a joint letter of complaint to the hotel?*
(While we are on the subject …)

Do not depress the button ***while*** *dialling.*
(… while you are dialling …)

⋯ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

While can also be used to contrast two ideas or statements; a clause with *while* is put first and is then followed by a contrast. In this meaning, no time relationship is expressed:

> ***While*** *it is clearly a good idea to involve them, I don't think they should be included in everything.*
>
> ***While*** *the university regrets the incident, it cannot be held responsible for cars parked in its car parks.*

Whilst

Whilst is a more formal alternative to *while* and is normally only found in writing:

> ***Whilst*** *the company accepts the apology, it is still to decide whether to take matters further.*

✪ *As* and *while* are sometimes confused. *As* not *while* is used to describe two situations which change in parallel:

> ***As*** *they get more experience, their tactics will become more sophisticated.*
> (~~While they get more experience, their tactics will become more sophisticated.~~)

A–Z 19 *As*

Noun *while* 78b

As a noun, *while* frequently occurs in a number of fixed phrases. Most of the phrases have a temporal meaning:

> *It'll take quite* ***a while*** *before they're finished.*
> (a period of time)
>
> *The captain will be there* ***in a while*** *to help out.*
> (in a short time)
>
> *And* ***all the while*** *they continued the protest and even began to shout as the councillors went into the building.*
> (during this time)
>
> *We'll definitely make it* ***worth your while****.*
> (worth your time)

Other uses of the noun *while* include: *a good/long/short/little while, some while ago, after a while.*

WITH 79

With is a preposition which has a basic spatial meaning of 'in the same place as' or 'being alongside':

> *Coffee* ***with cream*** *£1.50.*
>
> ***With the tip****, the bill came to over £100.*

> *We are **with you** all the way in this. You are quite right to insist that she stops smoking.*
> (*with* is metaphorical here, meaning 'we agree')
>
> *I'm sorry, I'm not **with you**.*
> (*with* is also metaphorical here, meaning 'I don't understand you')

In many uses, *with* indicates particular personal attributes:

> *That girl **with the red hair** looks like a fashion model.*

With can also be used to show an instrument. This meaning can be extended to include a reference to 'means' and 'manner':

> *They opened the package **with a knife**.*
>
> *They reacted **with great excitement**.*
>
> *Handle **with care**.*

With can also mean 'because of having' or 'as a result of having'. These meanings are especially common in spoken English:

> ***With all this work**, I'd better stay in tonight.*
>
> ***With John away**, we've got a spare bed after all.*
>
> *We found it difficult to sleep in the hotel **with all those kids on motorbikes** down in the plaza.*

In reports (e.g. sports reports, weather reports) *with* can have a meaning of 'as well' or 'and additionally'. It is followed by a verb in the *-ing* form:

> *Roma completed a much deserved victory **with** di Canio **scoring** again in time added on for injury.*
>
> *The weather for the south of England is likely to remain unsettled **with** showers **crossing** most regions in the late evening.*

When indicating reasons and outcomes, *with* or *what with* is often linked to giving reasons and explanations about adverse or problematic circumstances. *With* commonly occurs in subordinate clauses with an *-ing* form of the verb. The verb can sometimes be omitted:

> A: *Do you still listen to Scottish music?*
> B: *Since this pair have arrived, very very little, cos you just don't have the time, and **with** the new house and **with** the garden.*
>
> ***With** friends like this, who needs enemies?*
>
> ***With** there **being** no buses, we had to get a taxi, which cost us a fortune.*
>
> ***What with** it **being** student night as well, there were no tickets left to get in to the club.*
>
> ***With** half the staff (**being**) at the conference, several classes had to be taught together.*
>
> ***With** (**having**) all this work, I'd better stay in tonight.*

As a preposition, *with* commonly occurs with words which express emotions:

*She was green **with** envy.*

*The group leader became very angry **with** their drunken behaviour.*

*Down **with** socialism!*

*Come on, into the bath **with** you!*

WORTH, WORTHWHILE 80

Worth 80a

Worth is used with anticipatory *it* + a verb in the *-ing* form (not a *to*-infinitive) to state whether the speaker thinks something is a good idea:

*If you get a good reliable car, **it's worth keeping** it, isn't it, because if you get a bad car, it keeps costing you money.*
(here the first *it* is the anticipatory *it*; the second *it* is the object of *keep*, i.e. the car)
(~~it's worth to keep it~~)

A person or thing may also be the grammatical subject of a clause with *be worth* + *-ing* form:

***He** might not be **worth marrying** if he works for the railways. They don't earn much.*

*It's an interesting book. **It's worth reading**.*
(here *it* refers back to the book)

It (be) worth it can be used to refer to clauses or sentences:

*I'm not going to argue about semantics. **It's** just **not worth it**.*

*I went without all the luxuries to stay with the children. But **it was worth it**.*

*I think **it was worth it**, giving up what I was doing.*

Worthwhile 80b

The adjective *worthwhile* is commonly used with anticipatory *it* + *-ing* form:

***It** might be **worthwhile taking** the car, you know.*

It (be) worthwhile is used in a similar way to *it (be) worth it* (➜ **80a** above), to refer to clauses or sentences:

A: *It's not that far away from London. And there are lots of villages where you can rent workshops, and out in the countryside.*
B: *Mm. I bet that's expensive round here, though. I imagine it could be very expensive. I don't know whether **it would be worthwhile**.*

Worthwhile is occasionally written as two words (*worth while*) when it is used predicatively, and, especially in informal spoken language, *while* may be preceded by a possessive determiner:

*It might be **worth their while** to just buy a mobile phone, to be honest.*

YET 81

Time adverb *yet* 81a

Yet as a time adverb is used most frequently in negative clauses and in interrogative clauses, especially in informal spoken language. Its other uses account for only a small number of occurrences.

Interrogative clauses

Yet as a time adverb means 'from an indefinite moment in the past up to the moment of speaking', and it includes the notion that events were expected to have happened or are expected to happen at some point in the future, or that their occurrence was or is desirable in the view of the speaker:

> *Have you heard from your husband **yet**?*
> (I/you were expecting this to happen or considered it desirable)
>
> A: *Have you phoned up your sister **yet**?*
> B: *No I haven't.*

Negative questions with *yet* can express an even stronger expectation or desire that something should happen or should have happened:

> *Is he home **yet**?*
> (affirmative question: expectation that he will be home at some point)
>
> *Has**n't** Richard arrived **yet**?*
> (negative question: even stronger expectation at the moment of speaking that he should have arrived)
>
> *Samantha, have**n't** you finished **yet**?*
> (speaker feels Samantha should have finished by now)

Negative clauses

Statements with *yet* express an expectation on the part of the speaker that events should or will take place at some point in the future. Most statements with *yet* are negative, especially in informal spoken language:

> [speaker B, Deirdre, is asked what she wants to study at university]
> A: *What about you, Deirdre? What are you going to do?*
> B: *Erm, I'm going to go for Arts as well, but I don't know.*
> A: *Yeah. But you do**n't** have to make a decision **yet**.*
> B: *Yeah.*
> A: *I mean, you could spend the first two months going to every single lecture till you made up your mind, you know.*
>
> A: *What time is it?*
> B: *It's **not** even four o'clock **yet**.*
> A: *Oh, that's fair enough.*
> B: *It's quarter to four.*

Affirmative clauses

Affirmative statements with *yet* are closer in meaning to *still* (see below), and *yet* most typically occurs in end position. It expresses the persistence or continuation of a situation, even when one might have expected it not to persist or continue:

> [ships and boats are often referred to as *she* rather than *it*]
> *Toby said: 'She should be called the Old Lady of the Seas. Do you know, she is thirty-five years old? Most would have been thinking of retiring. But there is life in the old lady* ***yet****. She is the finest ship I ever sailed in …'*
> (or: there is still life in the old lady/there is life in the old lady still)
>
> [speaker B has returned from a holiday]
> A: *Did you take enough money in the end?*
> B: *Oh yes. I brought a lot back. Because I didn't pay for my trip to Grenada. I have that to pay for* ***yet****.*
> (or: 'I still have that to pay for'; one might reasonably have expected the trip to Grenada to have already been paid for, like the rest of the speaker's holiday)

With superlatives

Yet as a time adverb often follows superlatives:

> *His latest film is his* ***best yet****.*
> (His latest film is the best one he has made up to now.)
>
> [about an artist named Keith Ball]
> *But back to his work as an artist: this summer Ball got his* ***biggest*** *break* ***yet*** *when he was awarded $15,000 from the Pollock Krasner Foundation in New York.*
>
> *Future plans are on a much bigger scale, with vast segments of the sea recreated in some of the* ***largest*** *aquaria* ***yet*** *to be seen in Britain.*

Have yet to, be yet to

The modal expression *have to*, and less frequently the modal *be to*, occur in more formal styles with *yet* in the fixed sequences *have yet to* and *be yet to* to refer to events which are considered necessary or due to happen but which have not happened so far:

> [review of a new computer program]
> *Pricing* ***has yet to*** *be finalised but it will sell in the US for $49.95, so a £49.95 price tag is more than likely.*
>
> *For reasons Neil* ***had yet to*** *understand, Caroline seemed pleased that Dr Barbara had become more authoritarian.*
>
> *Compulsory seat-belts* ***have yet to*** *have any noticeable effect on road accident statistics in Britain, despite many exaggerated press reports. Experts agree that it is far too soon to tell how many lives the belt law has saved.*
>
> *Of all the seasons, spring is perhaps the finest for walking as the crowds* ***are yet to*** *arrive and the cliff-top flora is at its most vivid.*
>
> *The international community* ***is yet to*** *declare what measures it intends to implement to help to resolve this crisis. There is now a real concern that any escalation in the conflict could lead to a major refugee crisis in an already overloaded region.*

As yet

As yet only occurs in negative statements (not in questions):

> [A is the store assistant; *Delta* and *Switch* are types of debit card]
> A: *We will be taking Delta and Switch in every store by the end of the year.*
> B: *Oh right.*
> A: ***As yet** it's not available in every store.*

Concessive conjunct *yet* 81b

Yet is used with a concessive function, with a meaning close to 'but', 'nevertheless', to indicate that the action, state or event in the previous clause should be seen or evaluated in the light of the *yet*-clause. It often occurs after *and*:

> *Connie felt dim with terror, **yet** she stood quite still, touching the flowers.*
>
> *All this sounds a very old story now! **And yet** it is not such a long time ago.*

This meaning of *yet* is more frequent in written language.

Intensifier *yet* 81c

Yet often occurs as an intensifier, with a meaning similar to 'even', especially with *more*, *another* and *again*:

> *Nature is already taking a hammering from intensive farming and the introduction of genetically modified crops may push **yet more** species over the edge.*
>
> *The cook arrived with **yet another** plate of cake.*
>
> A: *I mean, the big supermarkets stayed open till twelve o'clock at night.*
> B: *So small businesses lost out **yet again** because of the supermarkets.*
> A: *Mm.*

Yet, still, already 81d

Still with affirmatives refers to the continuation of an action, state or event:

> A: *I haven't any great desire to go abroad actually, you know.*
> B: *Yes, there's **still** a lot of places in this country I'd like to see.*
>
> A: *We've **still** got a pot of rice pudding in our fridge from Andrew's last visit.*
> B: *Have you?*
> A: *So we'll have to eat it.*
> B: *Don't you like it?*
> A: *Yeah I do, I just don't think of eating it.*

Yet or *already* cannot replace *still* in such contexts.

⁘ also **81a**

With negatives, *still* indicates that the speaker considers the continued absence or non-occurrence of something to be undesirable:

> *I **still** haven't found Marie's phone number. I know I wrote it down.*
> ('I haven't found it yet' would simply mean that it is missing up to the moment of speaking; 'I still haven't found …' emphasises the continued inability to find the phone number)

Note also the difference in position between *yet* and *still* in negative clauses. *Yet* normally occurs after the lexical verb:

> *I haven't **finished yet**.*

More formally, *yet* occurs after the first auxiliary verb or modal verb and after *not*:

> *The contractors **had not yet** finished work on the road.*
> (written: more formal)

Still normally occurs before the first auxiliary or modal verb:

> *You know, it's dark now and she **still hasn't** arrived.*

More formally, *still* occurs after the first auxiliary verb and before *not*:

> *An agreement **has still not** been reached.*
> (more formal)

Informally, *still* occurs before copular verb *be*; more formally, *still* occurs after copular *be* and before *not*:

> *The man **still wasn't** satisfied.*
> (informal)
>
> *She **was still not** certain that she believed him.*
> (more formal)

A–Z 72 *Still*

Already refers to an action, state or event which has occurred or may have occurred before the moment of speaking. *Already* may sometimes suggest surprise on the part of the speaker or that something is unexpected:

> *Is it seven o'clock **already**?*
> (the speaker did not expect it to be so late; compare 'Is it seven o'clock yet?', which would be more neutral, with the expectation that seven o'clock may be not far off)

A–Z 13 *Already*

Introduction to grammar and spoken English

Spoken language 82
Everyday informal conversations 83
The notion of standard spoken grammar 84
Panel: Grammatical acceptability 85
Spoken grammar and real-time communication 86
  Unplanned speech 86a
  Simple phrasal structures 86b
Clause combination 87
  Real-time communication 87a
  Subordinate clauses 87b
  Clausal blends 87c
Position of items 88
Pausing, repeating and recasting 89
  Pausing 89a
  Repeating and recasting 89b
Organising the discourse 90
Spoken grammar and interpersonal communication 91

Introduction to grammar and spoken English

SPOKEN LANGUAGE 82

Until recently, items and structures most typically found in spoken communication have not been fully described. Most grammars of English have had a bias towards the written language. It is only recently that advances in audio-recording and associated technology have made it possible for sufficient quantities of spoken language to be used for analysis.

This chapter focuses on spoken English in its own right. Most chapters of this grammar book include mention of differences between spoken and written grammar and aspects of context that affect choices of grammar. Those chapters give more detailed examples of items and structures described in this chapter.

It is difficult fully to represent spoken grammar in a written book. Although the corpus used as the source of examples in this book provides useful evidence of spoken usage, the corpus has not been systematically coded for phonetic and prosodic features. Variations in stress, intonation contour, voice quality and other aspects such as loudness and tempo, rhythm and length of pauses are not indicated. And the citations from the corpus are presented in written form so that there always remains an underlying bias towards writing in the transcription itself.

This bias towards written language also means that appropriate terms for describing special features of spoken grammar are not always available in existing grammatical frameworks. In some cases new terminology has to be introduced. An example is the use of the terms *headers* and *tails* in **96–97**.

The chapters on spoken English in this book are constructed on the basis of four main features of spoken language:

1. Spoken language happens in real time and is typically unplanned.
2. Spoken language is most typically face to face.
3. Spoken language foregrounds choices which reflect the immediate social and interpersonal situation.
4. Spoken language and written language are not sharply divided but exist on a continuum.

The four features overlap. For example, the very fact that spoken language typically occurs face to face means that it is usually unplanned. It should also be acknowledged that written language involves social and interpersonal choices, for example in the writing of personal letters or emails, or in constructing persuasive arguments.

EVERYDAY INFORMAL CONVERSATIONS 83

The following extract from an informal, casual conversation illustrates several of the important features of informal spoken grammar. The features are used regularly by speakers of British English across different regions and contexts of use and by speakers of different ages, genders, social classes and occupations. Potentially problematic areas for a traditional, written-based grammar book are highlighted in bold.

> [Four speakers are sitting at the dinner table talking about a car accident that happened to the father of one of the speakers. At the end of this sequence they switch to another topic. *I'll just take* ***that*** *off* and *Have you got hold of* ***it****?* are references to a large pan which is on the dinner table.]

The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short
The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign
A: *I'll just take that off.* ***Take that off.***
B: ***All looks great.***
C: [laughs]
B: *Mm.*
C: *Mm.*
B: *I think your dad was amazed wasn't he at the damage.*
A: *Mm.*
B: *It's not so much the parts. It's the labour charges for=*
D: ***Oh that. For a car.***
B: *Have you got hold of* ***it****?*
A: *Yeah.*
B: ***It was a bit erm=***
A: *Mm.*
C: *Mm.*
B: ***A bit.***
A: *That's right.*
B: ***I mean*** *they said they'd have to take his car in for two days. And he said all it is is straightening a panel.* ***And they're like****, 'Oh no. It's all new panel. You can't do this'.*
C: ***Any erm problem.***
B: ***As soon as they hear insurance claim.*** *Oh. Let's get it right.*
C: *Yeah. Yeah.* ***Anything to do with+***
A: ***Wow.***
C: ***+coach work is er+***
A: ***Right.***
C: ***+fatal isn't it.***
A: ***Now.***

The following features can be observed:

1 Sentences in the written sense (i.e. units beginning with capital letters, consisting of at least one main clause and ending in a full stop) are difficult to identify in spoken language. What seems more important is the production of adequate communicative units and the taking of turns rather than the transition from one sentence to another.
2 Speech is marked by small units of communication often consisting of just single words or phrases, rather than complete sentences, and these units may be separated by pauses, intakes of breath, falls and rises in pitch, and so on (e.g. *Oh that. // Right. // Any problem.*).

3 The minimal unit of communication is the tone unit, which consists of at least one intonation contour which ends in a rising or falling tone. If a unit does not have one such intonation contour, it is heard as incomplete. A tone unit typically coincides with a clause, hence the clause may be considered the basic unit of grammar in spoken language, but tone units can also be phrases or single words:

Complete tone units: stressed syllables in bold capitals

I'm ***LOO****king for a* ***PEN****cil.*

AREn*'t you* ***REA****dy?*

I ***KNOW****! it's* ***CRA****zy!*
(two tone units: two falling tones)

DID *she?*

ANY*way.*

ME*?*

Incomplete tone units: stressed syllables in capitals

I'm LOOking for a …
(incomplete because no rising or falling tone is present, only a level tone)

DID she …

4 Speakers' turns, unlike written sentences, are not neat and tidy. The speakers regularly interrupt each other, or speak at the same time, intervene in another's contribution or overlap in their speaking turns. And any transcript of a real conversation is much less tidy than the layout of a dialogue in a drama script or in a course book for learning a language.

5 Listeners are not just passive recipients. There are back-channel items (e.g. *Mm*, *Yeah*), by which listeners give feedback, and other (normally supportive) responses (e.g. *Right*).

6 There are abandoned or incomplete structures (e.g. *It was a bit erm … A bit*.). 'Incomplete' structures rarely cause any problem of understanding, and can be collaboratively completed by others. For example, the utterance *For a car* shows one speaker completing the utterance of another.

7 References to people and things in the immediate situation may be incomprehensible to an outsider reading the transcript. The speakers say *Take* ***that off*** and *Have you got hold of* ***it****?*. Without being present at the time of speaking or without a considerable amount of previous text, it is not clear at all to an outsider what *that* and *it* refer to, or *off* where it is supposed to be removed.

8 'Subordinate' clauses are present but they are not always obviously connected to any particular main clause (e.g. the clause *As soon as they hear insurance claim*).

9 There are structures which are difficult to label (is the second *Take that off* an ellipted form of *I'll just take that off*? Is it an imperative? What is the status of *And they're like*? *Like* appears to function here to mark a direct speech report (i.e. *And they said …*). (For this use of ***like***, → **49** and **501e**.)

10 Ellipsis is common (e.g. [it] *All looks great.*). Ellipsis occurs when words usually considered 'obligatory' (e.g. a subject for a verb in a declarative clause) are not needed because they can be understood from the immediate context or from the knowledge which is shared between speakers. For speakers and listeners, there are no words 'missing', and what we call ellipsis is simply an economical and sufficient form of communication which is different from the typical grammar of written English, where greater elaboration and specification is usually necessary because the written text is usually being read at a different time and place from when it was created.

11 Some 'words' have an uncertain status as regards grammar. (e.g. *Wow*. *Now*.) For example, *wow* has an exclamative function, showing the speaker's reaction to something that has been said or that has happened, and seems to stand on its own. *Right* and *now* at the end of the extract seem to be organisational or structural (rather than referring to time), functioning to close down one topic or phase of the conversation and to move on to another phase. This use of *right* and *now* is a discourse-marking use. Such frequent words often connect one phase of the discourse with another and are outside of 'grammar' when grammar refers to the structure of phrases, clauses and sentences. ⇢ **113 Interjections** and **106 Discourse markers**

12 Despite these special characteristics of spoken transcripts, it is important to remember that the majority of grammatical items and structures are equally at home in speech and writing. In this chapter the emphasis will be on those structures which are most frequently found in the everyday informal conversations in the spoken corpus used in the creation of this book and which differ most markedly from the grammar of the texts in the written corpus.

THE NOTION OF STANDARD SPOKEN GRAMMAR 84

The term 'standard grammar' is most typically associated with written language, and is usually considered to be characteristic of the recurrent usage of adult, educated native speakers of a language. Standard grammar ideally reveals no particular regional bias. Thus 'Standard British English' grammar consists of items and forms that are found in the written usage of adult educated native speakers from Wales, Scotland and England and those Northern Irish users who consider themselves part of the British English speech community.

The typical sources of evidence for standard usage are literary texts, quality journalism, academic and professional writing, etc. Standard grammar is given the status of the official record of educated usage by being written down in grammar books and taught in schools and universities.

Spoken transcripts often have frequent occurrences of items and structures considered incorrect according to the norms of standard written English. However, many such forms are frequently and routinely used by adult, educated native speakers. Examples of such structures are split infinitives (e.g. *We decided* ***to*** *immediately* ***sell*** *it*), double negation (e.g. *He* ***won't*** *be late* ***I don't*** *think*, as compared to *I* ***don't*** *think he* ***will*** *be late*), singular nouns after plural measurement expressions (e.g. *He's about six* ***foot*** *tall*), the use of contracted forms such as *gonna* (*going to*), *wanna* (*want to*), and so on.

Standard spoken English grammar will therefore be different from standard written English grammar in many respects if we consider 'standard' to be a description of the recurrent spoken usage of adult native speakers. What may be considered 'non-standard' in writing may well be 'standard' in speech.

Speech and writing are not independent. Although some forms of spoken grammar do not appear in writing (unless in written dialogues), there is considerable overlap and there is an increasing range of forms appearing in informal written texts which previously were only considered acceptable in speech. In **120** the presence of typically spoken grammatical forms in such contexts as emails and internet chat-room exchanges is discussed.

Grammatical acceptability 85

In this book the following criteria* are adopted for grammatical acceptability in British English to determine whether or not an item or structure is included.'Widespread' here means across speakers of both genders and across a wide range of ages and social and regional backgrounds.

- Included: in widespread use in both the written and spoken corpus (most forms are in this category).
- Included: in widespread use in both the written and spoken corpus but not approved in more prescriptive grammar books and often avoided by many writers of formal English, for example, split infinitives, stranded prepositions (e.g. *That's the woman I gave it* ***to***, compared with *That's the woman* ***to*** *whom I gave it*).
- Included: rare or not occurring in the written corpus but widespread and normal in the spoken corpus (⁘ for example, **96 Headers** and **97 Tails**), and vice versa.
- Not included: regionally or socially marked in the written and/or spoken corpus but widespread and normal within major regional/social varieties of British English (⁘ for example, the use of *ain't*, **119b**).
- Not included: non-occurring and unacceptable in all varieties of British English (for example a structure such as *he did must speak*).

SPOKEN GRAMMAR AND REAL-TIME COMMUNICATION 86

Unplanned speech 86a

Spoken language is normally unplanned. There are occasions when what is said is memorised or read aloud from a script, but speech mainly takes place in real time. It is 'online' communication, it is spontaneous and there is normally very little time for advance planning.

Because thinking time is limited, pauses, repetitions and rephrasings are common. The flow of a communication may also be affected by interruptions or by overlaps with other speakers or by external factors in the speech situation (e.g. a phone ringing may take someone temporarily away).

In writing there are usually opportunities to plan and hierarchically structure the text. The writer can usually rephrase or edit what is written. In speech, utterances are linked together as if in a chain. One piece of information follows after another and speakers have few opportunities for starting again.

---

* Our thanks to Susan Hunston for suggesting this list of categories.

Simple phrasal structures 86b

Structures which are often quite complex in writing (e.g. heavily modified noun phrases, embedded clauses) are often simplified in real-time informal speech. Some examples are discussed here and in **94 Situational ellipsis**.

Pronouns

The 'online' nature of spoken communication means that pronouns are often preferred to nouns. Pronouns are only rarely modified and are therefore easier to construct and allow speed of communication. They also indicate the shared context of the speakers and reflect the face-to-face nature of the communication, where references are often to persons and things in the immediate situation.

Pronouns referring to things in the shared context are in bold in this extract:

> [four people are assembling a child's portable bed, for which they have instructions]
> A: ***It*** *should fit there cos* ***it****'s not that big I don't think.*
> B: ***It****'s warm in here, shall I turn* ***that*** *down?*
> A: *We've got the instructions anyway.*
> C: *I thought you'd organised* ***it*** … *just put* ***it*** *by the window or something.*
> D: *D'you want me to take* ***that****?*
> B: *Ooh … then there's bedding for about ten people here* [laughs].

Full noun phrases

The use of multiple modifiers before a head noun in a noun phrase rarely happens in everyday informal speech. Speakers are alert to the constraints which listeners are under in processing information. In informal conversation there is an overwhelming preference for a very simple structure of determiner (+ one adjective) + noun such as:

> *Yeah it's* ***a big house****,* ***six bedrooms****.*
> (compare the possible alternative: It's a big, six-bedroom house.)
>
> *It's* ***a large house****, lovely, just right.*

However, in writing, it is not difficult to find more complex adjectival structures:

> *Living in* ***a big****,* ***dirty****,* ***communal house*** *eating rubbish …*
>
> *The* ***cosy****,* ***lace-curtained*** *house …*

Simple noun phrases are not a *rule* of spoken grammar, but it is a very strong tendency. Any speaker may use a structurally complex noun phrase in spoken communication (for example in a public speech or presentation), but in casual conversation they will probably be heard as rather formal. Similarly, a writer may wish to create a more informal, interactive and dialogic style and may make such choices for different expressive purposes.

Phrasal chaining

The constraints of thinking-time mean that speaker turns typically contain phrasal chunks of information built up in stages, often by means of sequences of adjective phrases or of simple noun phrases. This accounts for the basic

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

characteristic of spoken grammar as being more like the strung-together coaches of a train or links of a chain rather than a carefully constructed hierarchy of embedded structures, one inside the other:

> *For that time of year you need a polo-shirt or something, **light**, **cool**, you know **short sleeves**, **cotton**.*
> (compare: a light, cool, short-sleeved, cotton shirt)
>
> *I mean Andy is very **talented** … **good teacher**, **good diplomat**, **nice bloke**.*
> (compare: Andy is a nice, talented, good, diplomatic person and teacher.)

⁘ **167–175 The noun phrase**, **197–212 Pronouns** and **140–154 Grammar and academic English** for a wider range of examples of premodification and postmodification with reference to nouns and pronouns in both spoken and written contexts

⁘ also **236–241 Adjectives and adjective phrases**

CLAUSE COMBINATION 87

Real-time communication 87a

One of the most notable features of clause combination in informal spoken English is the way in which clauses are strung together in a sequence with one clause unit added to another in a non-hierarchical way.

The needs of real-time communication do not allow the speaker time to construct over-elaborate patterns of main and subordinate clauses. Much more common are sequences of clauses linked by coordinating conjunctions (*and*, *but*, *or*) or by simple subordinating conjunctions such as *because* (frequently contracted to *cos*) and *so*, which often function more like coordinating rather than subordinating conjunctions:

> [the speaker is talking about her friend, Melanie, who was looking for a part-time job]
> *Well, no, Melanie's actually still a student **and** she still has ten hours of lectures a week, **so** she works in McDonald's in her spare time **cos** she needs the money **and** she works in McDonald's in Hatfield …*
>
> [the speaker is describing a motor accident in which she was involved]
> *I was driving along talking to Sue **and** we'd, like, stopped at some traffic lights **and** then – bang – there was this almighty crash **and** we got pushed forward all of a sudden.*
>
> [speakers are talking about discrepancies in a colleague's wages]
> A: *I bet they've paid her for Sunday not paid her for the Bank Holiday, Friday and Monday. **Cos** that would make your nine hours wouldn't it.*
> B: *Yeah. **Cos** she's got the Saturday down the same as I did **cos** we all did the Saturday.*

A–Z **23 *Because/cos***

Subordinate clauses 87b

Informal spoken English includes subordinate clauses that occupy complete speaker turns. Such clauses often occur in conversation when one speaker takes over and maintains another speaker's topic or when another speaker provides a further comment. They often occur after a pause, or after brief feedback from a listener and often function to evaluate what has been said (such clauses are in bold in the examples below):

A: *So I turned round and chased after him.*
B: ***Just as I would have done*.**

[talking about what is covered in an insurance policy]
A: *Oh I – I don't remember.*
B: *I just got liability.*
A: *Just liability.*
B: ***Which is good enough**. At least it's insured.*
(comment after feedback from the listener)

A: *Well actually one person has applied.*
B: *Mm.*
A: ***Which is great*.**

A: *They charge nearly a hundred pounds a week. But that's the average there, you know.*
B: *Mm.*
A: ***Though it's all relative I suppose*.**

For further examples ··➜ **123–139 Grammar across turns and sentences**

Clausal blends 87c

Sometimes clausal 'blends' occur. A blend is a syntactic structure which is completed in a different way from the way it began. The blend is, however, usually communicatively complete, effective and easily understood:

In fact, that's why last year they rented a nice house, in er Spain, was it, is that it was near the airport.
(more likely in writing or careful speech: The reason they rented a nice house in Spain last year was that it was near the airport.)

They've nearly finished all the building work, hasn't it?
(more likely in writing or careful speech: They've nearly finished all the building work, haven't they? Or: All the building work has been finished, hasn't it?)

POSITION OF ITEMS 88

The nature of spontaneous speech means that items often appear in positions that are dictated by communicative needs and by people's thoughts as they unfold. Compared with written English, in much casual conversation in English, positioning is generally more flexible.

Adjuncts may occur after tags, and adjuncts which do not normally occur in end position in written text regularly occur in end position in informal speech:

*Spanish is more widely used isn't it **outside of Europe**?*
(compare: Spanish is more widely used outside of Europe, isn't it?)

*I was worried I was going to lose it and I did **almost**.*
(compare: I was worried I was going to lose it and I almost did.)

*You know which one I mean **probably**.*
(compare: You probably know which one I mean.)

*Are my keys in the door **still**?*
(compare: Are my keys still in the door?)

PAUSING, REPEATING AND RECASTING 89

Pausing 89a

Pauses can be unfilled or filled. An unfilled pause is simply a silence, normally only a silence of a second or two. Longer silences are rare in casual conversations and may be heard as problematic by participants. Unfilled pauses tend to occur when a shift in topic or a change in direction is about to occur. They often coincide with syntactic boundaries such as clause units:

Pauses of longer than one second are indicated by dots […]
A: *I spoke to her last night and … well, she's not going to take the job.*
B: *How is he taking the divorce thing?*
A: *Okay, I suppose … Are you planning on shopping this afternoon?*

A filled pause is marked by a vocalisation such as *er* or *erm* (also written as *uh* and *um*) or a lexical form such as *like*, *well*, *you know*. A filled pause can mark a shift in topic, especially when accompanied by discourse markers such as *right* or *well* or *okay* (which commonly initiate a new stretch of discourse). They may also often indicate that speakers have not finished what they want to say and wish to continue:

*I suppose, **er**, she'll, she'll take over next week then?*

[A is on the telephone, then finishes that conversation (*Bye bye.*) and speaks to B (*Sorry about that.*)]
A: *Thanks ever so much. Bye bye. Sorry about that.*
B: *That's okay. **Er**, **right**, where were we?*

Filled pauses frequently precede important lexical choices underlining that the speaker takes time to select the appropriate expression:

*I, **erm**, I'm not sure what we should do here, are you?*

*It was the, **er**, the director, wasn't it?*

*I was on my way there and, **erm**, got lost, I'm afraid.*

*I think she was a bit **er** upset.*

Repeating and recasting 89b

Under the pressure of real time, speakers may repeat words or phrases or recast what they are saying. This is perfectly normal in spontaneous speech, and is not to be taken as a sign of sloppy or lazy performance:

The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short
The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign
[speaker is an insurance salesperson explaining different kinds of cover]
A: *With third party fire and theft in fact if you'd had that cover+*
B: *Mm.*
A: *+in the event of an accident **erm you you wouldn't have to pay anything. But erm you'd ha= I mean you'd have You wouldn't have to pay anything towards the claim but you'd have to sort your own damage to your car out**.*
B: *Right.*
A: *Whereas we'd pay for **the third party**, **like**, **the other others involved**.*
B: *I see right yeah.*
(despite hesitations and recasting, the message is clearly comprehensible to the listener)

Repeats are one way in which speakers may buy more time for thought. Repetition often occurs at the beginning of an utterance or clause:

***I**, **I'm**, **I'm** not sure **he'll he'll** be able to arrange that at such short notice.*

*I can't tell you, I'm afraid. **It**, **it** … would cause too much emotional damage.*

Recasting is another feature of real-time communication. Sometimes speakers say things too quickly and need to backtrack, in the process reformulating words and phrases; sometimes they need to qualify what was said previously:

*That's such a limited attitude, **well**, **okay**, **I know it's cautious and sensible and not just limited** but I think we've got to take more risks.*
(rephrasing and modifying the word *limited*)

[OHP = overhead projector]
*Before we start … **before we go into that level of detail**, I'm going to write it on the OHP.*
(rephrasing the subordinate clause)

Sometimes speakers search for the right phrasings and do not find them. The desired word may be supplied by another speaker. Sometimes speakers choose not to find the right phrasings, or utterances are left incomplete, with an implicit understanding formed between the speakers:

A: *I really like the Greek salad, it's the cheese,* ***the the***
B: ***Feta***
A: ***The Feta**, **that's it**. It's strong but I really really like it.*

[The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short]
A: *There was* ***sort of like*** *a concrete* ***er er sea er wa= what's it called****?*
B: *Defence.*
A: ***Sea defe=*** *thank you. Sea defence.*

A: *Have you got hold of it?*
B: *Yeah.*
A: *It was* ***a bit erm=***
B: *Mm.*
C: *Mm.*
A: ***A bit=***
B: *That's right.*

ORGANISING THE DISCOURSE 90

Spoken language often looks chaotic and unorganised, as many of the examples above might suggest. However, speakers do need to organise their discourse. They need to preface what they are going to say, and to reflect back upon what they have said. They also need to mark the openings and closings of topics and of whole conversations.

Specific words and structures are often used to mark boundaries in conversation between one topic, one stage or phase of the conversation, or one bit of business and the next: for example, items such as *anyway*, *right*, *okay*, *you see*, *I mean*, *mind you*, *well*, *so*, *now*. These items are called discourse markers. Discourse markers help with the planning and organisation of speech. Structurally, discourse markers function outside the boundaries of the clause. Brief examples are given here; for more detailed treatment, ⁘ **108**.

It is their function as organisers of larger stretches of spoken language that qualifies words or phrases or other structures for classification as discourse markers. For example, *anyway* may be used as an adjunct within the clause, but can also function as a discourse marker indicating some sort of shift in the direction of the conversation:

I shouldn't be jealous but I am ***anyway****.*
(adjunct modifying the second main clause)

A: *Sorry. You know what I mean. Sounds like you're gonna post it or something.*
B: *No.*
A: *Oh dear.* ***Anyway****, I'll have to go cos I've got to ring Bob.*
B: *Right.*
(discourse marker, signalling a desire to close the conversation)

Similarly, *right* can be an adjective or adverb, but as a discourse marker it often signals that a speaker is ready to move on to the next phase of business:

> ***Right***, *we'd better try to phone and see what they have to report.*

For further discussion of discourse organisation, ⇢ **123–139 Grammar across turns and sentences** and **242–249 Adverbs and adverb phrases**

A–Z **17 *Anyway*; 52 *Mean*; 54 *Now*; 57 *Oh*; 58 *Okay/OK*; 68 *Really*; 69 *Right, rightly*; 71 *So*; 76 *Well***

SPOKEN GRAMMAR AND INTERPERSONAL COMMUNICATION 91

Spoken language is most commonly an interactive, face-to-face process. Meanings are often created by referring to shared knowledge or by an understanding based on context or because what is referred to is physically and visually present before the speakers. Many items and structures in spoken grammar, therefore, reflect the interpersonal dimension rather than the content of the message. They are outlined here and dealt with in detail in the chapters and sections referred to.

Deictic expressions such as *in here*, *over there*, *that one*, *this here*, *right now*, *then* are common (⇢ 93). Situational ellipsis (e.g. someone asking someone: *Finished?*) is common because points of reference are often obvious to participants (⇢ 94). Speakers also perform regular checks that understanding is shared and they work hard to provide orientation for listeners and engage them by means of headers (⇢ 96), tails (⇢ 97) and tags (⇢ 98). Discourse markers (⇢ 108) also play a vital part in maintaining a listener's involvement.

In informal, face-to-face conversations speakers are often careful not to sound too assertive or direct; normally they do not wish to seem impolite to their listeners. They are also careful not to sound over-precise, which might be taken to be threatening or pedantic. Consequently, polite forms and indirect language, purposefully vague language and approximations (⇢ 103) are much in evidence and in ways which would be unusual in most written contexts.

From utterance to discourse

Introduction 92
Deixis: viewpoint and time and place references 93
  General 93a
  This, *that*, *these*, *those* 93b
Situational ellipsis 94
  Situational and other kinds of ellipsis 94a
  Initial elements 94b
  Interrogatives with no auxiliary or subject 94c
  Interrogatives: subject pronoun and no auxiliary verb 94d
  Copular verb *be* 94e
  Declaratives: no subject pronoun 94f
  It and demonstratives 94g
  Existential *there* 94h
  Verb ellipsis in directives 94i
  Determiners 94j
  Conditional *if* 94k
  Fixed expressions 94l
  Prepositions 94m
Response tokens 95
  General 95a
  Premodification 95b
  Negation 95c
  Pairs and clusters 95d
Headers 96
  Headers and clause structure 96a
  Types of header 96b
  Headers and clause elements 96c
Tails 97
  Tails and clause structure 97a
  Types of tail 97b
  Tails and clause elements 97c
Questions and tags 98
  General 98a
  Question tags and intonation 98b
  Tag patterns in requests 98c
  Position of question tags 98d
  Fixed tags in informal speech 98e
Echo questions 99
Follow-up questions 100
Two-step questions and responses 101
Preface question: *(Do you) know what?* 102
Vague expressions and approximations 103
  Vague language 103a
  Approximations 103b

From utterance to discourse

INTRODUCTION 92

Sections 82–91 outlined some key features of spoken language, especially the way face-to-face conversations are tied to the participants and the immediate situation in which they are speaking in real time.

In this chapter, 92–103, we consider how grammatical features in spoken utterances reflect the creation of discourse rather than just the internal construction of phrases, clauses and sentences. We use the term 'utterance' to refer to complete communicative units, which may consist of single words, phrases, clauses and clause combinations spoken in context, in contrast to the term 'sentence', which we reserve for units consisting of at least one main clause and any accompanying subordinate clauses, and marked by punctuation (capital letters and full stops) in writing.

This chapter considers how speakers orient themselves to the situation of speaking, centred on the notion of deixis. Deixis concerns the way speakers refer to people and things in terms of time and space, all in relation to the moment and situation of speaking. For example, the basic meanings of *I* and *you* in English are 'person speaking' and 'person addressed', respectively, and who the words refer to will change every time the speaker changes. Similarly, an object which is *this cup* for a speaker may be referred to as *that cup* by a listener who is separated from the speaker in space or time:

A: *What's* ***this*** *box* ***here****?*
B: *I don't know. Trash.*

[at a travel agent's; the customer (A) has just received his tickets]
A: *Right well* ***this*** *is all right now is it?*
B: ***That****'s the ticket yes.*
(what is *this* for the customer is *that* for the agent)

→ 93

This chapter also considers how speakers encode assumptions about what can be understood from the situation without being said, and what cannot, as reflected in the phenomenon of situational ellipsis. Ellipsis, or absence of references to entities which are obvious to all participants, is common in informal speech:

A: *Finished yet?*
B: *Not yet.*
(obvious to the listener that the speaker means '*Have you* finished yet?')

→ 94

This chapter also examines how listeners respond to messages and show their ‘listenership’, for example by the use of response tokens, i.e. single words and phrases that represent much more personally and affectively engaged alternatives to bare *yes* and *no*:

> [talking about food preparation]
> A: *Actually these things should be marinated the night before.*
> B: ***Exactly**. **Oh absolutely**. Actually er yeah. Even the vegetables, Karen.*

The chapter then describes how speakers package the information in their messages with the listener firmly in mind (e.g. by the use of headers, informative items that precede the conventional clause structure and make the clause easier to process):

> (header) →
>
> ***My father**, **he**’s been in hospital three times already.*

⁘ **96**

In addition, the chapter considers how speakers create interactive exchanges by the use of questions and tags (short structures typically found at the end of clauses, such as *You like mushrooms, **don’t you**?*) (⁘ **98**).

Another important feature of spoken discourse is the purposive use of vague language (such as *sort of*, *whatever*) to project particular kinds of relationships between speakers (⁘ **103**).

The way speakers organise their utterances into coherent discourse and monitor it in relation to its reception by listeners is covered in the next chapter, in the section on discourse markers (⁘ **108**).

DEIXIS: VIEWPOINT AND TIME AND PLACE REFERENCES 93

General 93a

Deixis refers to the way speakers orient themselves and their listeners in terms of person, time and space in relation to the immediate situation of speaking. Deictic features occur in both written and spoken language. For example, a written notice might say *Vehicles must not be parked **here***, where *here* most likely refers to the immediate environment of the notice itself. However, deictic items are more common in spoken English as the relationship between the discourse and the situation is typically more immediate.

References to the immediate situation are achieved mainly by means of determiners such as *this*, *these*, *that*, *those*, adverbs such as *here*, *now*, *there*, *then*, *ago* and personal pronouns such as *I*, *we*, *him*, *us*. Deictic words are especially common in situations where joint actions are undertaken and where people and things referred to can be seen by the participants. The following examples contain deictic items (in bold) which orient the listener interpersonally (who is referred to), temporally (when) and spatially (where). Note how the meaning of *we* can differ between being inclusive and exclusive:

[message left on an answerphone]
*I'm phoning up about **this** trying to set up a meeting and various other things **I** believe. Erm there's a centre staff meeting at two on Friday twenty fourth. And **I** was thinking perhaps **we** could meet in the morning beforehand if **you**'re going to be free **that** day. Anyway er give **me** a ring. **I**'m **around tomorrow**. Though **tomorrow afternoon** **I**'m not **about** because **I**'ve got an appointment at the hospital. So **I** don't know how long **I**'ll be **there**. But **I**'m **here tomorrow morning** Friday so ring.*

We in this case includes the speaker and the listener. Note also how references such as *around* and *about* could mean the speaker's home or place of work, depending on where the speaker is or on what the common understanding of *around* and *about* are between the speaker and listener:

[in a restaurant]
Waiter: *Right ladies.*
Customer A: *Shall **we** order some starters?*
Customer B: *Yeah.*
Customer C: *Yeah.*
Customer A: *Er, sesame prawn toast.*
Waiter: *Yeah.*
(*we* in this case includes A, B and C, but excludes the waiter)

A: *What are you doing at Christmas?*
B: ***We**'re having my brother and a friend for lunch on Christmas Day.*
A: *Right. Mm.*
B: *But otherwise **we**'re not doing a great deal.*
A: *Okay. And New Year's Eve or New Year's Day?*
B: *No **we** don't really bother.*
A: *Right.*
(*we* excludes the listener)

***I**'d like to pop in to **that** little shop **over there** before **we** leave.*
(*we* in this case may or may not include the listener(s), depending on context)

This, that, these, those 93b

Referring to physical closeness and distance

This and *these* are used to refer to things which are close in space and time:

*I like **this** hotel, don't you?*

*I'm sorry, he's not here. He's away **this** week.*

*In **this** lecture we shall be looking in particular at Shakespeare's History Plays.*

*Have you finished with **these** newspapers?*

That and *those* refer to objects and people that speakers may not easily identify from the immediate situation or that are more distant in space and time:

*Could I see **that** video on the shelf up there?*

*We should move **those** chairs into the corner of the room.*

*Do you remember **that** Sunday in Jeddah? It was the busiest day of the week.*

On the telephone

Especially in telephone calls and in answerphone messages *this* is used as a demonstrative pronoun to identify the speaker and *that* is used to ask the identity of other speakers:

> *Hello,* ***this*** *is David Locastro speaking. I'm calling at 12.30 your time on November 9th to leave a message for Virginia Cortes.*
>
> *Is* ***that*** *Nicola? Hi,* ***this*** *is Carol Jordan here.*

Referring to psychological closeness and distance

This can be used to underline or highlight that the speaker thinks something is important or newsworthy and will probably be familiar to the listener, instead of using unmarked *the*:

> *One of the strategies is* ***this*** *new attack on long-term unemployment.*

This focuses or highlights new topics, making them more immediate and significant:

> *A quarter of people in the group resigned, didn't they, and* ***this*** *has led to other people protesting too. But what can we do?*

That can distance the speaker from aspects of the topic:

> *You can't say women shouldn't be allowed to drive trucks because they can't work the long hours.* ***That****'s just sexist.*

This and *that* sometimes express contrasts in emotional distance (sometimes called emotional deixis) and can signal different attitudes. *This* normally conveys a more positive and involved attitude whereas *that* suggests a more detached and possibly critical attitude:

> *Now tell me what you think of* ***this*** *new girlfriend he's got?*
> (compare the more disapproving: Now tell me what you think of that new girlfriend he's got?)

Similarly, *that* sometimes carries a feeling of dismissal or rejection of something as problematic:

> [speakers are discussing new parking restrictions which have been introduced and a proposal to change the existing voucher system for parking]
> A: *They've just brought all* ***that*** *parking in. There's nothing much you can do about it.*
> B: *Yeah. Abolition of the car-parking voucher scheme. How can he do* ***that****? He can't do* ***that****. It's not in his power to do* ***that****.*
> C: *What's he saying?*
> B: *He says he's gonna abolish the parking scheme. Which is obviously stupid. You know the voucher scheme.*
> C: *Mm.*
> B: *Which, obviously everyone wants to get rid of* ***that*** *stupid voucher scheme.*

In narratives

In narratives, anecdotes, jokes and similar forms, *this* can be used instead of the indefinite article *a/an* to create a sense of immediacy when introducing important people and things in the story:

> ***This*** *girl Susanna knew in New York, she went to live with* ***this*** *guy called Ché.*

That can be used in narratives instead of the definite article *the* to refer to things that are well known to listeners:

> *Then we drove round* ***that*** *big roundabout and over* ***that*** *bridge, you know the one just as you come into Norwich.*

196f, 196g

SITUATIONAL ELLIPSIS 94

Situational and other kinds of ellipsis 94a

Ellipsis can be either situational, textual or structural. Situational ellipsis means not explicitly referring to people and things which are in the immediate situation, such as the participants themselves:

> A: *Don't know what's gone wrong here.*
> B: *Oh. Need any help?*
> (situational; understood: **I** don't know … **Do you** need …)
>
> *He applied and got the job.*
> (textual; understood from previous clause: … and **he** got the job.)
>
> *The car he was driving was stolen.*
> (structural; optional use of *that*: The car **that** he was driving …)

Although ellipsis is often defined as the absence of elements normally required by the grammar (e.g. a subject before a tensed verb form), in reality nothing is 'missing' from elliptical messages; they contain enough for the purposes of communication. It makes more sense to say that writing and formal speech typically need to elaborate more for the sake of readers/listeners and so 'add' items that might otherwise be unnecessary in everyday informal speech.

Situational ellipsis may involve understood references to a range of expressions relating to people and things:

> ***Didn't know*** *that film was on tonight.*
> (understood: **I** didn't know …)
>
> ***Sounds*** *good to me.*
> (understood: **It/that/something obvious in the situation** sounds …)
>
> ***Lots of things*** *to tell you about the trip to Barcelona.*
> (understood: **There are/I've got/we've got** lots of things …)
>
> [at a dry-cleaner's; speaker B is leaving a pair of trousers for cleaning]
> A: ***Wednesday*** *at four be okay?*
> B: *Er, yeah, that's fine …* ***Just check*** *the pockets a minute.*
> (understood: **Will/would** Wednesday at four be … **I'll/let me** just check …)

Initial elements 94b

In spoken language, the most common kind of situational ellipsis involves initial elements in phrases and clauses, especially at the beginning of a speaker's turn. A normally expected determiner may be absent from a noun phrase, or the initial preposition from a prepositional phrase, or an initial auxiliary verb and its subject may be unnecessary where the meaning is obvious to all participants. This is particularly common in informal conversation:

A: *Where's that cheese we bought?*
B: ***Fridge** I think.*
(understood: **In the** fridge I think.)

A: ***Seen** that photo? The photo of mum when she was young?*
B: *Yes.*
(understood: **Have you** seen that photo?)

Interrogatives with no auxiliary or subject 94c

Auxiliary verbs and second person subject pronouns are often considered unnecessary in interrogative clauses:

Started yet?
(understood: **Have you** started yet?)

Hi Jim. Playing tonight?
(understood: **Are you** playing tonight?)

Hi, Colin, been working?
(understood: … **have you** been working?)

Got any money?
(understood: **Have you** got any money?)

Interrogatives: subject pronoun and no auxiliary verb 94d

In interrogatives, an initial auxiliary is often unnecessary, even when the subject is present:

***You been** eating the biscuits again?*
(understood: **Have** you been eating …?)

***The dog bothering** you? Shall I throw him out?*
(understood: **Is** the dog bothering you?)

A: ***Anybody want** soup?*
B: *No thank you.*
(understood: **Does** anybody want soup?)

✪ This type of ellipsis does not normally occur with *I*:

Am I interfering?
(~~I interfering?~~)

Copular verb *be* 94e

In interrogatives, initial copular verb *be* is often not needed before *you* (and less frequently *we* or *they*):

A: ***You*** *all right for coffee, mum?*
B: *Yes, I'm all right, thanks.*
(understood: **Are** you all right …?)

You *sure you don't want a lift?*
(understood: **Are** you sure …?)

You *the person who wanted a ticket?*

We *the people you were looking for?*

They *your friends or are they just people you work with?*

In interrogatives, initial *be* and the subject may both be unnecessary before adjectival complements:

[waiter to customers]
Ready *to order?*

[host to child during a meal]
Too spicy *for you?*

Declaratives: no subject pronoun 94f

Initial *I*

Initial *I* is often unnecessary in declaratives in informal speech, both with auxiliary and modal verb structures and with lexical verbs (especially mental process verbs such as *think*, *reckon*, *guess*, *hope*, *like*, *love*, *wonder*, *suppose*):

A: *What's the matter?*
B: ***Can't*** *find my glasses.*
(understood: **I** can't find my glasses.)

Like *your new car.*
(understood: **I** like your new car.)

A: *Chocolate?*
B: *No.* ***Don't want*** *any more, thanks.*

[guest (A) and host (B) at dinner table; *afters* is an informal word for dessert]
A: *That was lovely.*
B: ***Hope*** *you've got a little bit of room left for afters.*

[talking about a house infested with mice]
A: *They used to wake us up in the night didn't they, scurrying up the walls.*
B: *Yeah.* ***Wonder*** *how they got up walls.*

This also occurs frequently in short replies such as: *don't know*, *can't remember*, *think so*, *hope so*:

A: *Can you make those changes to the list?*
B: *Yeah.* ***Think so****, yeah.*

Both *I* and the auxiliary verb may be absent from initial position in declaratives:

> [end of conversation]
> *Okay then. Talk to you later.*
> (understood: **I'll** talk to you later.)
>
> *Love to meet her.*
> (understood: **I'd** love to meet her.)

✪ Pronouns cannot be omitted in all cases. Note that the examples above are all informal, and involve mostly auxiliary and modal verbs, and verbs such as *think*, *hope*, *wonder*. In most other cases, a subject pronoun must be used:

> *Did you meet Robbie? He was there at the same time as you.*
> (~~Did you meet Robbie? Was there at the same time as you.~~)
>
> A: *Will your mother be here too?*
> B: *Yeah, she's coming.*
> (~~Yeah, is coming~~)

We and other subject pronouns

We and second and third person subject pronouns are less likely to be absent, but may be if the referent is obvious (but ⇢ *it* in **94g**):

> A: *How's Fiona?*
> B: *Oh she's fine.* ***Works*** *too hard, that's her only problem.*
>
> *I've never had a holiday like it in my life.* ***Never spoke*** *to me. He never spoke to me all the time we were there.*
> (understood: **He** never spoke to me.)
>
> A: *My brother and his son built the patio for us.*
> B: *Really?*
> A: *Yeah.* ***Came*** *here a couple of summers ago and did it.*

Question tags

Subject pronouns are most typically absent in declarative questions when accompanied by a question tag:

> [*brothers* here refers to a religious order of teachers]
> A: *And did you ever, did you ever know any of the brothers down at the school when Bernard went there?*
> B: *No, I didn't.*
> A: ***Never met*** *any of them,* ***did you****?*
> B: *No, no.*
>
> A: ***Got*** *lost, did they?*
> B: *Yes, they did and it was not for the first time.*
>
> ***Need*** *a ticket,* ***do we****?*
>
> ***Fooled*** *you then,* ***didn't I****?*

Not all cases of this kind are genuine ellipsis. The following may be seen simply as a variation on typical word order:

> *Get **the hang of it**, did you?*
> (Not: ~~You get the hang of it, did you?~~)
> (understood: **Did you get** the hang of it?)
>
> ***Looking** much better, he was.*

It and demonstratives 94g

Subject pronoun *it* and demonstrative pronouns are often not needed:

> A: *Oh is this a new one?*
> B: ***Looks** like it, yeah.*
> (understood: **It** looks like it, yeah.)
>
> A: *It says Duscellier.*
> B: ***Doesn't** make any sense.*
> (understood: **It/that** doesn't make any sense.)
>
> [students talking about a party]
> *Like that one we went to in Birchfield Road. **Turned out** to be something Dave had something to do with.*

Initial *it* is frequently unnecessary in short replies such as *could be*, *might be*, *should be*, *probably is*, *usually is*, *must have been*, *could have been*, *might have been*, *should have been*:

> A: *It was white chicken in something.*
> B: *Chilli, was it?*
> A: ***Could** be.*
>
> A: *He was stuck for eleven hours at Heathrow airport.*
> B: ***Must have been** awful.*

Initial *it* plus auxiliary verb are often omitted in references to weather and temperature:

> ***Raining** again.*
> (understood: **It's** raining again.)
>
> ***Looking** brighter at last.*
>
> ***Been** cold lately.*

Initial *it* and copular verb *be* may both be unnecessary when the referent is obvious:

> A: *What do you think of it?*
> B: ***Excellent**.*
> (understood: **It is** excellent.)
>
> A: *I just thought it might help others.*
> B: *Yes yes.*
> A: ***No good** for me now. It's too late.*

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

The same applies to initial pronoun subject *that* in conventional responses such as *that's true*, *that's correct*, *that's good*:

A: *I'm sure Tony doesn't get much sleep.*
B: ***True***.

A: *So, how are you doing?*
B: *I'm all right.*
A: ***Good***.

Existential *there* 94h

Initial existential *there* (and its accompanying verb *be*) may be considered unnecessary:

***Must have been** half a million people.*
(understood: **There** must have been half a million people.)

***Nobody** at home, by the look of it.*

[talking about the activities of mysterious neighbours]
*Yeah, they do seem to be dragging stuff about. It's really weird. **Seems** to be more stuff come out than gone in.*

Verb ellipsis in directives 94i

Occasionally the verb may be understood in a directive:

[teacher to pupils]
Hands up.
(understood: **Put your** hands up.)

*Everyone **into** the garden. We want to take a photo.*
(understood: Everyone **come/go** into the garden.)

[airport public announcement]
*Mr Ken Wilson **to** airport information please.*
(understood: **Will** Mr Ken Wilson **go** to airport information please.)

Determiners 94j

Articles considered obligatory in formal speech and especially in writing may be unnecessary in informal speech when the referent is obvious:

[customer in a café]
***Black coffee**, please.*
(understood: **A** black coffee, please.)

A: *Where do you want this?*
B: ***Bottom shelf**, please.*
(understood: (**On**) **the** bottom shelf, please.)

[doing a job; addressing the person helping]
*Right, **hammer** please.*
(understood: Right, **the** hammer please.)

[BBC radio news anchorman]
Time *is twenty to nine.*
(understood: **The** time is twenty to nine.)

Other determiners may also be similarly unnecessary:

A: *Hi Brian.*
B: *Hi.*
A: *How's it going.* ***Flat*** *ready yet?*
(understood: (**Is**) **your** flat ready yet?)

A: *Ooh, what's the matter?*
B: *Mm.* ***Neck****'s aching. I don't know what I've done. Must have twisted it.*
(understood: **My** neck's aching.)

[talking about a dog]
Look at him. ***Tail****'s wagging. He's happy.*
(understood: **His** tail's wagging.)

Conditional *if* 94k

Conditional *if*, where considered obligatory in formal speech and especially in formal writing, may occasionally be absent from initial position:

They turn up *at any point, just let me know.*
(understood: **If** they turn up …)

[host at table]
You want *anything else, just help yourself.*

Fixed expressions 94l

Many everyday fixed expressions are prone to ellipsis of initial elements, since these can be assumed to be known by all participants:

[said just as rain starts to fall]
Good thing *I remembered the umbrella.*
(understood: **It is a/It was a** good thing …)

Oh, ***good job*** *I've left a little hole, then.*
(understood: **It's a** good job …)

Other common expressions that occur with initial ellipsis include:

(There's) no point in …

(It's) not worth …

(It would be) best if you …

(I'll) see you later/tomorrow/soon …

(I'll) be seeing you …

(You) never know, …

Prepositions 94m

Prepositional meaning is often obvious in context and prepositions may not be necessary:

A: *Where does she live?*
B: *Don't know.* ***The south*** *I think.*
(understood: **In** the south …)

A: *Where is the post office actually?*
B: ***Top*** *of Churchill Street, on your right.*
(understood: **At the** top …)

Absence of prepositions is particularly common in informal styles, in expressions which refer to place and especially to time, including expressions of duration and frequency:

I've got to make a number of trips this May, ***Dubai****,* ***Hong Kong****,* ***Berlin*** *just for starters.*
(understood: … **to** Dubai, **to** Hong Kong, **to** Berlin …)

She's been like that ***two or three days*** *a week.*
(understood: She's been like that **for** two or three days a week.)

Why don't you both pop round ***Saturday evening****?*
(understood: Why don't you both pop round **on** Saturday evening?)

In informal speech prepositions often do not occur in expressions of measurement and in precise expressions of time:

He's ***the same level*** *as you.*
(understood: He is **at** the same level as you.)

A: ***What time*** *are we meeting?*
B: ***Ten o'clock****. Is that okay?*
(understood: **At** what time …, **At** ten o'clock …)

Stranded prepositions (⁘ 257) may sometimes be unnecessary with expressions of place and time:

They have ***no place to go****.*
(understood: They have no place to go **to**.)

You've got less than an hour ***to finish*** *the job.*
(or, more formal: … less than an hour **in which** to finish the job.)

RESPONSE TOKENS 95

General 95a

Some adjectives and adverbs are many times more common in spoken language than in written language because of their frequent use as response tokens. These include *absolutely*, *certainly*, *definitely*, *fine*, *good*, *great*, *indeed*, *really*. In spoken grammar, the term 'response token' better describes their function of referring to a whole preceding utterance rather than their word-class identity as adjectives or adverbs:

A: *We've decided to go to Greece this year, probably in early June.*
B: ***Really**. That sounds nice.*

A: *That's a fair comment, isn't it?*
B: ***Absolutely**.*

A: *It's more for the kids, isn't it?*
B: *You think so?*
A: *Yeah **definitely**.*

A: *I reckon she won't last long in that job.*
B: ***Possibly**.*

A: *She's obviously going to tear it up and throw it in the bin.*
B: ***Precisely**.*

A: *Well, you wear a little black dress to clubs or to a party.*
B: *Yeah **exactly**.*

Some response tokens are strongly associated with particular contexts. *Fine* most typically occurs in making arrangements and reaching decisions. *Certainly* most typically occurs in reply to a request for a service or favour (compare *definitely* in the example above, which, although close in meaning to *certainly*, strengthens the force of a response and would be inappropriate in the restaurant context below):

A: *Okay. I'll see you a bit later then.*
B: ***Fine**.*
A: *In the morning, whenever.*

[to a waiter]
A: *Can I have the bill please?*
B: *Yes, **certainly**.*
(B: ~~Yes, definitely.~~)

Adjectives such as *excellent*, *fine*, *great*, *good*, *lovely*, *right*, *perfect* offer positive feedback to the speaker and often mark the boundaries of topics where speakers express their satisfaction with phases of business such as making arrangements, agreeing on courses of action, and marking the satisfactory exchange of information, goods and services:

[at a travel agent's; A is the assistant]
A: *There you go. There's your ticket. And your accommodation there. Insurance, and just some general information.*
B: ***Excellent**. **Right**.*

[dealer (A) and customer (B) in a car spare-parts depot]
A: *I'll get one of the lads in to come and do it for you.*
B: ***Lovely**.*

Response tokens also frequently occur at the beginning of longer responses, typically as a preface to a comment on the preceding utterance:

> [colleagues at work]
> A: *You can make it, you can meet me later if you want.*
> B: ***Fine***. *Whatever. I've got nothing new.*

Premodification 95b

Many response tokens may be premodified by intensifying adverbs which add further emphasis:

> [woman talking about giving birth]
> A: *Dick was very excited cos at one point they asked for hot towels.*
> B: *Oh.*
> A: *Just like the movies. So he skipped off down the corridor to get the hot towels.*
> B: *Oh* ***jolly good***.

> [discussing tenancy problems in rented accommodation]
> A: *Isn't there something in your tenancy agreement about it? You have a written agreement don't you?*
> B: ***Most definitely***.

Negation 95c

Absolutely, *certainly* and *definitely* may be negated as response tokens by adding *not*:

> [speaker A is considering buying a CD player for the first time]
> A: … *but then I'd have to go out and buy lots of CDs wouldn't I?*
> B: *Well yes. I suppose you would.*
> A: *There's no point in having a thing if you can't play them. Haven't got any.*
> B: ***Absolutely not***. ***Absolutely not***.

> [discussing the difficulty of studying in the evenings after working all day in a day job]
> A: *Seven o'clock in the evening after a day at work is not really quite what you need, is it?*
> B: *No.*
> A: *Hm.*
> B: ***Definitely not***.
> A: *No.*

Pairs and clusters 95d

Response tokens often occur in pairs. This is particularly evident when a topic is being closed down or at a boundary in the talk when another topic is introduced. The pair function both to signal a boundary and to add satisfaction or agreement or simply to express friendly social support. Occasionally, triple response tokens occur:

[waiter (A) and customer (B) in a restaurant]
A: *If you need some more just order some more. All right?*
B: ***Right. Fine.***
A: *Okay. Thank you.*
B: *Thank you.*
A: *You're welcome.*

[couple asking permission to look at a disused railway line]
A: *It went through, it goes through. Straight, straight on.*
B: ***Right. Wonderful. Great.*** *Can we look round then?*
A: *Yes certainly.*
B: *Thank you.*

Response tokens may also cluster in consecutive series across speakers, providing multiple signals that a conversation is about to be terminated while at the same time consolidating interpersonal relationships. Often they occur together with other markers of closure such as thanks, checks, confirmations and greetings. Clustering is especially frequent in telephone conversations, where there are often pre-closing and closing routines:

The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short
[telephone call concerning a printing order]
A: *Do you think it needs editing?*
B: *Erm I shouldn't think so.*
A: ***Good. Brilliant. Okay, well*** *I'll be round to pick it up.*
B: ***Okay.***
A: *Pick it up today.*
B: ***Okay*** *Jack.*
A: *Have you got the compliment slips?*
B: *Yes.*
A: *On all er=*
B: *They they look very good.*
A: ***Great.*** *Yes.*
B: ***Fabulous.***
A: ***All right.*** [laughs]
B: ***Okay.*** *Thanks for that.*
A: ***Okay*** *Len.*
B: ***Cheers.***
A: ***Bye.***
(*all right* and *okay* may be seen as pre-closing; *cheers* and *bye* close the call)

[giving street directions]
A: *You'll come to a stop sign, take a right and just follow it all the way out.*
B: *Oh.* ***Perfect.***
C: ***Great.***
B: ***That's excellent. Thank you very much.***
C: ***Thank you so much. Thanks.***

Other types of phrase and short clause also function as response tokens. Common ones include:

Is that so?	*Not at all*	*Of course*
By all means	*True enough*	*What a pity!*
Fair enough		

→ also **242–249 Adverbs and adverb phrases**

A–Z **56 *Of course*; 58 *Okay/OK*; 69 *Right, rightly***

HEADERS 96

Headers and clause structure 96a

The dominant word order in English in both speech and writing is the declarative s-v-x where s is the subject of the clause, v is the verb and x is any other item that may be present, e.g. an object (o) or an adjunct (a). The theme (what the speaker wants to talk about or the point of departure of the message) is usually the subject of the clause (→ 472).

Fronting may be used to emphasise what the speaker considers to be especially significant. The word or phrase which is fronted and which comes first in the clause is highlighted or 'thematised' by the word order. Adjuncts are frequently fronted for emphasis in both spoken and written language (→ 473), and objects and complements can also be fronted. This is particularly common in spoken language:

I like David but ***Pat*** *I find rather odd.*
(fronting of the object *Pat*)

I think we tried to see too much. ***Naples*** *I remember but all those other towns along the coast are a bit of a blur.*
(fronting of the object *Naples*)

[trying to find a library book that is on *short loan*, i.e. must be returned after only a very short period]
A: *There's another short-loan book round here somewhere that I have to get in and I don't know where it is. Yes. That one and there's another one. Not one on the floor down there is there?*
B: *No.*
A: *It's probably around here then. Aha. Hiding from me. And a* ***very good book*** *it was too.*
(fronting of subject complement)

These fronted elements still remain within the clause structure:
[c = subject complement]

C S V A
a very good book | *it* | *was* | *too*
(non-fronted: it was a very good book too)

However, in spoken English a particular type of structure is common where an item within the clause structure is placed before the clause and repeated (usually as a pronoun) in the clause itself. When such an item occurs before the clause, the structure is called a header:

←—— header ——→ ←—— clause ——→
S V C
The teacher with glasses, ***he*** *seems very nice.*
(non-fronted: The teacher with glasses seems very nice.)

Types of header 96b

A header most typically consists of a noun phrase followed by one or more pronouns which refer back to the noun phrase. In some grammar books this feature is called left-dislocation. In this book the term ‘header’ is preferred, because the word ‘dislocation’ suggests that a very common spoken structure is odd or in some sense ‘in the wrong place’. Also, there is no left or right in spoken English. These are metaphors of the space on a typically western, written page. Spoken language exists in time, not space:

That leather coat, ***it*** *looks really nice on you.*

The white house on the corner, *is* ***that*** *where she lives?*

[talking about a baby called *Jamie*]
Jamie, *normally, you put* ***him*** *in his cot and* ***he****’s asleep right away.*

Paul, *in this job that* ***he****’s got now, when* ***he*** *goes into the office,* ***he****’s never quite sure where* ***he****’s going to be sent.*

Headers may be complex, with semantically connected noun phrases (NP1, NP2, etc.) strung together in apposition or simply adjacently, leading to the noun phrase which is the subject of the following clause:

NP1 NP2 NP3
Madge, ***one of the secretaries at work***, ***her daughter*** *got married last week.*

My friend, ***Janet***, ***her sister*** *has just emigrated to Brazil.*

[a *Ford Escort* is a model of car]
His cousin in London, ***her boyfriend***, ***his parents*** *bought him a Ford Escort.*

Such strings of noun phrases help to provide orientation for the listener, who can then more easily identify the main topic. They often lead the listener from given or known information to new topical information. Headers of this kind do not normally occur in written English, and though they may look strange when transcribed and written on the page, they are normal, frequent, and pass without comment by participants.

Headers may also be non-finite clauses:

Going round museums and art galleries, ***it****’s what my mum and dad like doing.*

Walking into that room, ***it*** *brought back a load of memories.*

Headers may also occur in interrogative clauses:

> ***Your sister****, is* ***she*** *coming too?*
>
> ***That new motorway they were building****, is* ***it*** *open yet?*

Headers can occur with a (normally stressed) *there* subject pro-form:

> *Now* ***Rio de Janeiro****,* ***there****'s a fabulous city.*

Headers and clause elements 96c

Headers commonly refer to the subject, object, object complement or prepositional complement in a following clause:

> ***Owen****,* ***he****'s my favourite nephew.*
>
> ***Joe****, I've never seen* ***him*** *at a single football match this season.*
>
> [talking about a local character's nickname]
> ***'The Great Maurice'****, they used to always call him* ***that****, didn't they?*
>
> ***Anita****, you should at least feel sorry for* ***her****.*

The preposition is not included in the header:

> *They booked the hotel for Pamela but,* ***Dave****, they left it to* ***him*** *to find a room for himself.*
> (~~They booked the hotel for Pamela but, to Dave, they left it to him to find a room for himself.~~)

Headers often function like titles or headlines in narratives or in jokes:

> ***The time we were living in Hong Kong****, I suppose we were a lot wealthier then* …
> [story continues]
>
> The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short
> A: *Well,* ***the time I nearly crashed the car****, I was driving late one night=*
> B: *You'd forgotten to turn your lights on=*
> A: *Yes, and I just didn't see the car in front.*

TAILS 97

Tails and clause structure 97a

Tails are similar to headers in that items are placed outside the s-v-x clause structure (→ above, 96), but they occur after the clause. Tails are typically noun phrases. They clarify or make explicit something in the main clause. Most commonly, a tail consists of a full noun phrase which clarifies or repeats the referent of a pronoun in the clause that comes before it. Like headers, tails feature only very rarely in written English but are a standard feature of informal spoken grammar:

> ←—— clause ——→ ←—— tail ——→
> ***He****'s amazingly clever,* ***that dog of theirs****.*

Tails are sometimes referred to as ‘right-dislocated’ structures, but in this book we do not use that term for the same reason that we do not use the term ‘left dislocated’.

Types of tail 97b

Tails are most typically noun phrases, but may also be prepositional phrases or clauses:

> *__They__’re incredibly nice, __our neighbours__.*
>
> *I put it __there__, __on the fridge__.*
>
> *I find it very frustrating __that__, __not being able to remember people’s names__.*
>
> *I find __it__ annoying that __they didn’t tell us__.*

More complex noun phrases can also form tails:

> *__It__ never occurred to me, __the danger I was in__.*
> (preferred in writing: The danger I was in never occurred to me.)
>
> *__That__ was our only chance of a holiday, __that weekend in Rome seeing Rita__.*
> (preferred in writing: That weekend in Rome seeing Rita was our only chance of a holiday.)

Tails may also occur in interrogative clauses:

> *Are __they__ both at university, __your brother’s kids__?*

Tails often occur with statement tags. Sometimes the tail noun phrase may be accompanied by an auxiliary verb or copular verb *be* in the same form and polarity as in the main clause:

> *__It’s__ an exciting place, Hong Kong is.*
> (or: It’s an exciting place, Hong Kong.)
>
> *__They’re__ from all over the world, those photos are.*
>
> [two friends in a restaurant]
> A: *What are you going to have?*
> B: *I can’t decide.*
> A: *__I’m__ going to have a burger with chilli sauce, I am.* (statement tag)
> B: *Mm yeah, __it’s__ a speciality here, the chilli sauce is.* (tail)
>
> *__She hasn’t__ been here before, Judith hasn’t.*
>
> *__It’s not__ very good, that cake isn’t.*

Tails also frequently occur with tag questions and can be placed either before or after the tag:

> *__They__ do take up a lot of time, I suppose, kids, __don’t they__?*
>
> *Cos __they__ tend to go cold, __don’t they__, pasta?*
>
> *__It__’s not easy to eat, __is it__, spaghetti?*

Where the tail consists of a pronoun alone, the object pronoun, not the subject pronoun, is used:

> ***I****'m hungry, me. I don't know about you.*
> *(~~I'm hungry, I.~~)*
>
> ***He****'s crazy, him.*

When demonstratives are used in the tail, they must agree in number with the preceding pronoun:

> ***It****'s a speciality of the region, that.*
>
> ***They****'re lovely potatoes, these.*

Tails and clause elements 97c

Tails most typically refer back to subjects in the preceding clause. They can also refer to objects or complements or adjuncts:

> *She's never had* ***one*** *before, a mosquito bite.*
>
> *I reckon we'd been* ***there*** *before as children, don't you, to Lowestoft?*

Tails are listener-sensitive. The tail clarifies what may not have been understood by the listener. The tail can also reinforce and add emphasis to an already explicit referent:

> A: *Did* ***Max*** *help you?*
> B: *Yes, he moved all my books.*
> A: *He said he'd try and help out.*
> B: *Yeah,* ***he*** *was very helpful, Max.*
>
> ***They****'re an odd couple, those two.*
>
> ***They*** *look good down there, don't they, those tiles?*
>
> ***That****'s what I like most, people with real team spirit.*

Tails frequently occur in statements in which the speaker is evaluating a person or thing or situation:

> ***She****'s a great tennis player Hiroko is, isn't she?*
>
> A: ***It****'s not nice juice, that isn't.*
> B: *I'll still try some.*
> A: *Where's your glass?*

QUESTIONS AND TAGS 98

General 98a

The formation of questions is treated in **424–433**. Here in section 98 the question forms examined are more likely to occur in informal speech than in formal speech or writing and therefore more properly belong to the grammar of spoken English. In particular, question tags feature frequently in spoken English and serve to engage the listener and invite convergence with the speaker.

Question tags and intonation 98b

The forms and functions of question tags are described in **431**.

Rising and falling intonation may combine with question tags to produce a variety of meaning types. Bold type indicates where the tone might typically occur.

Falling tones (↘)

type	polarity	falling tone ↘	falling tone ↘	expected answer
1	affirm. + neg.	*You've worked* ***hard****,*	***haven't*** *you?*	*Yes.*
2	neg. + affirm.	*He didn't* ***get*** *it,*	***did*** *he?*	*No.*
3	neg.* + affirm.	*Nobody* ***knows****,*	***do*** *they?*	*No.*

* In this case, the negative element is contained in the subject *nobody* (similarly: 'Nothing happened, did it?' 'We hardly see her, do we?').

Type 1 contains an affirmative statement by the speaker in the main clause, and an expectation of a *yes*-answer as confirmation in the tag.

Types 2 and 3 contain a negative statement by the speaker in the main clause, and an expectation of a *no*-answer as confirmation in the tag.

Falling tone plus rising tone (↘ ↗)

type	polarity	falling tone ↘	rising tone ↗	expected answer
4	affirm. + neg.	*You've worked* ***hard****,*	***haven't*** *you?*	Neutral (*yes* or *no*)
5	neg. + affirm.	*He didn't* ***get*** *it,*	***did*** *he?*	Neutral (*yes* or *no*)
6	neg.* + affirm.	*Nobody* ***knows****,*	***do*** *they?*	Neutral (*yes* or *no*)
7	affirm. + affirm.	*Kate* ***has*** *gone,*	***has*** *she?*	*Yes.*

* Clausal negation with *nobody*.

Type 4 contains an affirmative statement by the speaker in the main clause, and a more neutral expectation (i.e. of a *yes*- or a *no*-answer) in the tag.

Types 5 and 6 contain a negative statement by the speaker in the main clause, and a more neutral expectation (i.e. of a *yes*- or a *no*-answer) in the tag.

Type 7 contains an affirmative statement by the speaker in the main clause, and a more affirmative expectation (i.e. of a *yes*-answer) in the tag.

→ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

Tag patterns in requests 98c

Interrogatives that function as requests often have the pattern of negative clause + affirmative tag, with the fall and rise intonation pattern. Requests expressed with tag questions are usually quite informal. Bold type indicates where the tone might typically occur.

Interrogatives as requests

polarity	falling tone ↘	rising tone ↗
neg. + affirm.	*You couldn't carry **this** for me,*	***could** you?*
neg. + affirm.	*You haven't got any chocolate **bis**cuits,*	***have** you?*

Position of question tags 98d

Question tags typically come at the end of the clause, but in informal spoken language, they can interrupt the clause:

> ***That's*** odd, *isn't it, from a tutor?*
>
> ***It was** perhaps your team, was it, that was round there?*

In reporting structures, the question tag may occur before the reported clause, especially if the reported clause is felt to be unusually long:

> [commenting on the recipes of a famous cookery-book writer]
> ***You** always **know**, don't you, that what you make will be suitable, and light, and that it will taste all right too.*

Anticipatory *it* clauses may also be interrupted by a question tag:

> ***It's*** true, *isn't it, what they said about him?*

Fixed tags in informal speech 98e

Some tags in informal spoken language do not vary in form. They include items such as (*all*) *right*, *okay*, *yeah*, *eh*, *don't you think?*. They are normally used to check that something has been understood or to confirm that an action is agreed:

> *So we're meeting at 7 outside the pizza place, **okay**?*
>
> *Let's stop talking in circles, **right**?*
>
> *Don't tell anyone about this, **yeah**?*
>
> *Oh well, what on earth can we do about it, **eh**?*

✪ *No* is not normally used in this way:

> *He's a really nice person, isn't he?*
> (~~*He's a really nice person, no?*~~)

A–Z 69 ***Right, rightly***

ECHO QUESTIONS 99

Echo questions are very common in spoken language. They typically have declarative word order and include a *wh-* word:

A: *Big day tomorrow. Got to go to the Phoenix.*
B: *Got to go to **where**?*
A: *Got to go to this very formal meeting of all these academic people.*

⁘ also **432**

One common type of echo question involves requests to clarify noun phrases or parts of them which may not have been heard correctly. They are formed with a determiner and *what*:

[talking of problems with European bureaucracy]
A: *What was it? The European Commission?*
B: *Mm. Translation service.*
A: ***The what**, sorry?*
B: *Translation service. And they were just so badly organized. It was just unbelievable.*

A: *That looks like a dinosaur.*
B: *Like **a what**?*
A: *A dinosaur.*

A: *But apparently the president of the guild, he's a really nice bloke Alex says, cos, you know, she does all the party stuff.*
B: *Does **the what stuff**?*
A: *She does all the politics of the department stuff.*
B: *Politics.*

FOLLOW-UP QUESTIONS 100

A variety of common follow-up question-types occur in speech.

Reduced questions with *wh-* words

Reduced questions with *wh-* words and stranded prepositions (⁘ **257**) are particularly frequent:

A: *Margaret wants to talk to you.*
B: *Oh, **what about**?*
(or, more formal: About what?)

A: *You're not staying in tonight, you're going out for dinner.*
B: *Oh. **Where to**?*
A: *I'm not telling you, a surprise.*

The follow-up question may consist of a *wh-* word alone or a *wh-* word + a substitute word:

A: *Is he warden of the whole thing?*
B: ***Who****?*
A: *Doctor Thornton.*
B: *I don't know.*

[in a restaurant; A is the customer, B is the waiter]
A: *I'll have that one.*
B: ***Which one****?*
A: *The king prawn in lemon sauce.*

Tag questions

The follow-up question may function as a signal of engagement and attention by the listener. Such questions are typically tag questions. Their function is often very similar to that of supportive responses such as *uhum?*, *yeah?* and *really?* (→ **95**):

A: *I went to school with her.*
B: ***Did you****?*
A: *Mm.*

A: *And on mama's tree she's got some raspberries and tomatoes.*
B: ***Does she****? That's great.*

The follow-up tag question may consist of a doubling of this type of structure for emphasis, most typically with a negative clause followed by an affirmative tag, but occasionally with two affirmatives. This usually expresses a strong reaction. A typical intonation pattern is shown:

[talking of firms taking over other firms]
A: *And they've taken over Walker's too.*
B: *Oh* ***they ↘haven't, ↗have they****?*

A: *He thinks you're coming to pick him up.*
B: *Oh* ***he ↘does, ↗does he****?*
A: *Yeah, that's what he said.*

Follow-up tag questions in informal spoken language often simply function to keep the conversation going by inviting further responses from the listener. A typical intonation pattern is shown:

[talking about how quickly a popular type of cake gets eaten by family members]
A: *Have you noticed it always disappears?*
B: ***Yeah, it ↘does, ↘doesn't it****?*
A: *I've got two now,* ***yes****, it* ***↘does always disappear, ↘doesn't it****?*
B: ***Yeah****.*

Formulaic questions

A number of follow-up questions are formulaic and serve as ways of expanding the discourse or requesting further specification. These include *How come? So what? What for?* and *Like what?*:

[*the shuttle* here is a train which carries cars constantly back and forth between Britain and France]
A: *The shuttle would be out of the question, you see.*
B: ***How come***?
A: *Well, the shuttle is where you take your car on.*
(*How come* = Why?)

A: *I finished loads of odds and ends.*
B: *Did you?* ***Like what***?
A: *Like, my programs. Finished that off.*
(*Like what* = What, for example?)

TWO-STEP QUESTIONS AND RESPONSES 101

Questions in spoken English can involve a two-step process. One question may act as a preface for another question. In such cases, the listener may feel that the first question is too direct or too general and so the speaker shows sensitivity to the listener's reaction by anticipating a response:

What does stalking consist of? *I mean, what was she doing exactly?*

Yes-no questions are only rarely self-contained. While they may function to elicit specific information, such questions are normally asked as a preface to further questions. For example, the question *Are you going to the match tonight?* anticipates an answer which may then be followed by a further more personal or specific question:

A: ***Are you going to the match tonight***?
B: *Yeah, I am.*
A: ***Do you mind if I tag along***?
B: *Sure. We're leaving around seven.*

A: ***Are you in this Sunday afternoon***?
B: *I expect so. I think we might be going out later.*
A: ***Okay*****,** ***do you mind if I pop round to pick up the drill***?
B: *Of course not.*

Another form of two-step question is the pre-question:

A: ***I wondered if I might ask something***?
B: *Sure.*
A: *Would you be able to write a reference for me?*

Can you tell me something? *What time is the rubbish collection on Mondays?*

Another type of two-step question involves projected answers in a two-step process:

Where are you going? ***Into town***?

What time did you say they were coming back? ***Seven***?

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

PREFACE QUESTION: *(DO YOU) KNOW WHAT?* 102

The formulaic question *(Do you) know what?* is used as a preface to what the speaker considers newsworthy or important information:

> A: ***Do you know what***?
> B: *What?*
> A: *Roger's mum's bought Rachel a jumper. Isn't that sweet?*
> B: *Yeah.*

VAGUE EXPRESSIONS AND APPROXIMATIONS 103

Vague language 103a

Being vague is an important feature of interpersonal meaning and is especially common in everyday conversation. It involves the use of words and phrases such as *thing*, *stuff*, *or so*, *like*, *or something*, *or anything*, *and so on*, *or whatever*, *kind of*, *sort of*.

Vague language softens expressions so that they do not appear too direct or unduly authoritative and assertive. It also is a strong indication of an assumed shared knowledge and can mark in-group membership: the referents of vague expressions can be assumed to be known by the listener.

There are times where it is necessary to give accurate and precise information; in many informal contexts, however, speakers prefer to convey information which is softened in some way. Such vagueness is often wrongly taken as a sign of careless thinking or sloppy expression. Vagueness is motivated and purposeful and is often a mark of the sensitivity and skill of a speaker:

> *Between then and* ***like*** *nineteen eighty four I just spent the whole time, I mean for that whole* ***sort of*** *twelve year period* ***or whatever****, erm I was just working with just lots and lots and lots of different people.*
>
> *I was down in er a place called erm, down in the Urals as well, erm Katherineburg. It's* ***kind of*** *directly east of Moscow.*

There are occasions where vague language is necessary and where its absence would make the message too blunt. In the following example it would be pointless to list every available drink and the vague usage simply keeps options open. Both speakers know from their shared cultural knowledge just what is included in *or something* and what is excluded:

> [speaker B has suggested taking a visitor to a local coffee shop]
> A: *She doesn't like coffee.*
> B: *Well, she can have an orange juice* ***or something***.

Purposefully vague language occurs in writing and in speech. For example, academic writing contains vague expressions which enable writers to hedge the claims for their theories and research findings.

The vague expressions *and things*, *and stuff* and *and that* are particularly flexible and can be used to refer to a wide variety of phrases and whole clauses. These expressions are extremely frequent in informal spoken language. In the following examples, all relevant vague expressions are in bold:

> The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign
> [describing a craft shop]
> A: *It's more like a* ***sort of*** *gallery. Just* ***sort of*** *arty. Well no it's* ***sort of*** *arty* ***things****. It's got jewellery and+*
> B: *Oh right.*
> A: *+erm loads of really nice greetings cards.* ***Sort of*** *hand-made greetings cards* ***and things****.*
>
> A: *And erm again I say that there isn't anywhere for children to play and if they do the way the cars come round sometimes+*
> B: *Mm.*
> A: *+they can easily be knocked over* ***and things****.*
> B: *Mm.*
> A: *They run from the grass over onto the back onto the pavement and it's very easy for children to get knocked over like that.*
>
> *I really don't know about their environment management systems* ***and stuff****.*
>
> *They've got a form. They give you a form. You have to fill it in* ***and stuff****, cos if you don't you won't get an interview.*
>
> *All university is about is opportunity, isn't it. You know it's just having had the time and the money and without the commitment or responsibilities like a family and a house* ***and that****.*
>
> [*to have a lump in one's throat* means to feel very sad and ready to cry]
> A: *I had a big lump in my throat and I couldn't understand it. I mean there was no reason for me to cry* ***or anything****. Nothing really horrible happening. I guess I must be really tired though cos* ***like****+*
> B: *Oh yeah you've been working quite hard* ***and that****.*
> A: *+I've been working hard and I've been travelling all the time* ***and all that sort of thing****.*
> B: *Yeah.*
> A: *So I just couldn't cope with it.*

A–Z ***74 Thing, stuff***

Approximations 103b

There is a wide range of expressions used with numbers and quantities which enable speakers to give approximations rather than being absolutely precise and perhaps being heard as pedantic. Approximations are used for the same interpersonal reasons as the vague expressions in **103a**.

Adverbs and prepositions

Adverbs and prepositions are most commonly used to express approximation:

> *I'll see you* ***around*** *six.*

There were ***roughly*** *twenty people turned up.*

I had the goldfish for ***about*** *three years.*

That laser printer can do ***round about*** *six pages a minute.*

Up to *three hundred new cars had been delivered before the fault was discovered.*

The basic meaning of most of the common expressions is 'approximately', although the word *approximately* itself is more commonly used in writing and only normally occurs in formal speech. Prepositional phrases indicating approximation are also more common in formal speech and in writing:

The plane will settle at its cruising altitude of ***approximately*** *11,000 metres.*
(spoken, formal)

Losses which were ***in the region of*** *thirty thousand pounds daily were reported by three of the airlines.*
(spoken, formal)

... odd; ... or so

Number + *odd* is used when the figure quoted may be slightly higher than the actual number. A hyphen is used when the expression is written:

*We've got sixty-****odd*** *people coming later in the day.*

*They'll charge thirty-****odd*** *pounds.*

Number + head noun + *or so/or thereabouts/or something* are also used in such situations. *Or thereabouts* is more formal than *or so*, and *or something* is the most informal:

They'd been playing maybe, what, five minutes ***or so****.*

OK, we'll pay the higher deposit. What was it again? It was three hundred and eighty pounds ***or thereabouts****, wasn't it?*

It weighed about twenty kilos ***or something****.*

Odd is not used in this way:

They'll only take twenty minutes ***or so****, won't they.*
(~~They'll only take twenty minutes odd, won't they?~~)

... or; ... -ish

Or between numerals also indicates that it would not normally be appropriate to specify more precisely:

It'll cost you five ***or*** *six pounds to park but it'll save you a long walk into the town.*

The suffix *-ish* is also used, especially in informal speech:

*So, er, we're meeting seven****-ish*** *or maybe a bit later.*

*I think he's fifty****-ish*** *but he looks a lot younger actually.*

Exaggeration

Deliberately exaggerated reference to numbers and quantities is another form of approximation:

> A: *How much would it cost to re-lay the lawns?*
> B: *It'll cost* ***thousands****. I don't think we should even think about it yet.*
>
> *I've told him* ***hundreds*** *of times to put the alarm clock on but he just doesn't listen.*
>
> *She's very well qualified. She's got* ***loads and loads*** *of letters after her name and qualifications and things.*

Similar expressions include:

- *ages*
- *crowds*
- *dozens*
- *heaps*
- *lots*
- *masses*
- *oceans*
- *tons*
- *zillions*

Clusters

Vague markers and approximations sometimes cluster together:

> *The room will take* ***up to*** *two hundred* ***or so*** *people, won't it,* ***or something like that****?*

✪ *More or less* is common as a vague expression in spoken language, but it is hardly ever used before numerical expressions. It is generally used to refer vaguely to completion of an action or event, or to hedge (i.e. be less assertive about) a description of something. It may be used before or after the phrase it refers to. It often means something like 'virtually', 'practically', 'just about':

> *I think she's sort of* ***more or less*** *finished with it.*
>
> *They're* ***more or less*** *the same.*
>
> *They've got everything,* ***more or less****.*
>
> *They'll charge thirty-****odd*** *pounds.*
> (~~They'll charge more or less thirty pounds.~~)

A–Z **18 *Around, round*; 49 *Like*; 71 *So*; 74 *Thing, stuff*; 77 *Whatever***

From discourse to social contexts

Introduction 104
Pragmatic markers 105
Discourse markers 106
  General characteristics 106a
  Forms 106b
  Typical functions 106c
Common spoken discourse markers 107
Discourse markers: organising the discourse 108
  Opening up and closing down 108a
  Sequencing 108b
  Topics: marking boundaries and linking segments 108c
  Topics: focusing attention, diverting, shifting, resuming 108d
Monitoring the discourse 109
  Reformulations 109a
  Monitoring shared knowledge 109b
Discourse marking in responses 110
Stance markers 111
Hedges 112
Interjections 113
Swearing and taboo expressions 114
  General 114a
  Taboo naming expressions 114b
  Taboo intensifiers 114c
Greetings and farewells 115
Vocatives 116
Types of vocative 117
  Names and titles 117a
  Terms of kinship and endearment 117b
  General plural vocatives 117c
  Impersonal vocatives 117d
  Honorifics 117e
Discourse functions of vocatives 118
  Summons 118a
  Turn management 118b
  Ritual and sociable contexts 118c
  Softening and lessening threats to dignity 118d
  Topic management 118e
  Joking, banter 118f
  Positions of the vocative 118g
Standard and non-standard spoken grammar 119
  General 119a
  Common forms of spoken grammar 119b
Representing speech in writing 120
Speech into writing: the spoken-written continuum 121
  Informal writing 121a
  Postcards and other short written messages 121b
  Clauses and sentences in informal writing 121c
  Advertisements and slogans 121d
New modes: internet discourse 122

From discourse to social contexts

INTRODUCTION 104

Spoken interaction may range from being intimate and informal to being formal and distant. Often the distance between speakers is dictated by social factors such as interpersonal relationship, the setting or the respective power and social status of the participants.

There is a variety of grammatical options open to speakers to mark intimacy or distance. These range from different formulaic greetings and farewells to the ways in which people address or name one another, or the way they use clause types or tense and aspect choices to show degrees of politeness. Writers typically cannot see who they are speaking to and often have to 'project' an ideal reader for their purposes (e.g. typical educated reader of novels, or typical teenage magazine reader).

The more dynamic and face-to-face nature of spoken communication also means that speakers have to choose the best ways to organise and sequence their messages for the benefit of their listeners and in collaboration with them. This involves 'marking' the discourse, signalling for the listener what is happening using the discourse-marking resources of the language.

Speakers also express stances, attitudes and feelings towards their messages and reactions to what others say, all in real-time face-to-face interaction, with listeners' sensitivities in mind. Spoken grammar therefore also has important affective features.

Speakers choose how to address others. For example, when do speakers use *sir* or *madam*? When do they address people directly by name?

This chapter looks at some of these central social, contextual and affective functions of grammar and spoken English. Sections 105–113 are concerned with the general class of pragmatic markers (items which mark speakers' personal meanings, their organisational choices, attitudes and feelings). These include: discourse markers and how speakers use them to structure and organise the discourse and to monitor the state of the unfolding talk (→ **106–110**); stance markers, which express speakers' attitudes and positions (→ **111**); hedges, which enable speakers to make their utterances less assertive (→ **112**); and common interjections, which encode speakers' affective reactions (→ **113**). The chapter then considers taboo language (→ **114**), and greetings and farewells (→ **115**), and examines vocatives and other aspects of personal address (→ **117–118**). Lastly, the chapter returns to a focus on the differences between speech and writing and the notion of standards, concluding with a look at how the grammars of speech and writing are becoming blended in new forms of electronic communication (→ **119–122**).

PRAGMATIC MARKERS 105

Pragmatic markers are a class of items which operate outside the structural limits of the clause and which encode speakers' intentions and interpersonal meanings. Pragmatic markers include discourse markers, which indicate the speaker's intentions with regard to organising, structuring and monitoring the discourse (⇢ **106**), stance markers, which indicate the speaker's stance or attitude vis-à-vis the message (⇢ **111**), hedges, which enable speakers to be less assertive in formulating their message (⇢ **112**), and interjections, items which indicate affective responses and reactions to the discourse (⇢ **113**).

DISCOURSE MARKERS 106

General characteristics 106a

Discourse markers are words and phrases which function to link segments of the discourse to one another in ways which reflect choices of monitoring, organisation and management exercised by the speaker. The most common discourse markers in everyday informal spoken language are single words such as *anyway*, *cos*, *fine*, *good*, *great*, *like*, *now*, *oh*, *okay*, *right*, *so*, *well*, and phrasal and clausal items such as *you know*, *I mean*, *as I say*, *for a start*, *mind you* (for a more complete list, ⇢ **107–110** below).

Phrases as discourse markers

Discourse markers are outside of the clause structure. They serve to indicate various kinds of relationship between utterances, and simultaneously indicate social relations regarding power and formality. In the following examples, the first group show highlighted items used within the clause; the second group show the same items used as discourse markers:

- In-clause use; non-discourse-marking:

  I didn't really need it but I bought it ***anyway****.*
  (*anyway* functions as a concessive adjunct meaning 'despite [not needing it]')

  You know *what we need? Another helper.*
  (*You know* functions as reporting verb with the clause *what we need* as its object)

  I bought extra food ***so*** *we'd have enough in case more people turned up.*
  (*so* functions as a subordinator introducing an adverbial clause of purpose)

- Discourse-marker use:

  [speaker is describing the different types of house in his neighbourhood]
  You've got high rises, you've got terrace houses, ***you know****, bungalows on the edge and everything.*
  (*you know* monitors the state of shared knowledge and projects an assumption that the listener shares the speaker's perspective on typical kinds of house)

[speaker A has been telling a story about a long, difficult drive from England to Wales; the speakers digress for a while to talk about whether you have to pay to cross the suspension bridge which links England and Wales]
A: *But you only pay one way.*
B: *Oh do you?*
A: *Yeah you only pay going into Wales. You don't pay coming out.*
B: *Oh. Right.*
A: *But er yeah,* ***anyway****, we drove in the rain and the dark for eight hours.*
(*anyway* functions to signal a return to the main narrative after a digression)

[speaker A is a financial adviser who is advising B and C on borrowing money to buy a house; a *first-time buyer* is a person who has never owned a house before]
A: *You've probably got some burning questions to ask me. 'How much can we borrow and how much is it gonna cost?' Am I right?*
B: *Yes.*
A: *Okay,* ***so****, if you just tell me a little bit about yourselves. Are you first-time buyers?*
B: *Yeah. We're first-time buyers.*
(*so* marks a transition between the opening part of the discussion and the main business)

Use of discourse markers

In social terms, discourse markers enable the speaker to exercise control in the discourse and they are power-related (e.g. in classrooms, it is usually only the teacher who can exercise such control with utterances such as ***Right****, let's do an exercise*). In this example of a university lecturer teaching, it would be odd and socially inappropriate for any student to use discourse markers in the way the lecturer does. The lecturer's role is to sequence the material coherently and carefully monitor its reception:

[university science lecture]
We can then have toxic effects. ***Right****. These again can be direct. They can be subtle. But they cause lots and lots of injuries.* ***Right****. Here's an example of one. There's a section of normal liver.* ***Right****. The thing to notice is that all cells, all the cells look roughly the same.* ***Right****. So we've got at the top we've got portal triad. At the bottom we've got central vein.* ***Right****.*

Forms 106b

Discourse markers are a lexical rather than a grammatical category, but their classification in terms of the conventional major word classes (noun, verb, adjective, adverb) is problematic since they stand outside of phrase and clause structures, and they are best considered as a class in their own right.

Phrases as discourse markers

A variety of types of word and phrase commonly function as discourse markers. Most typically, certain words otherwise classed as adverbs and adjectives frequently function as markers (*anyway*, *good*, *well*, *right*) and some (e.g. *right*, *well*) function more frequently as markers than as adjectives or adverbs. Other items can also function as discourse markers, for example phrases (*at the end of the day*, *in other words*), clauses (*you see*, *you know*, *to put it another way*, *look*, *listen*, *there you go*) and miscellaneous other items (*okay*, *cos*, *no*, *now then*, *so*, *yes/yeah*). Many of these are exemplified below.

Clauses as discourse markers

Whole clauses can function as discourse markers. For example, the clause *as I was saying* typically relates one statement to a preceding statement and can be used either to mark backward reference to an earlier stage in the discourse or to resume after an interruption. Similarly, the clause *talking about X* typically marks the linking of a current or earlier topic to a new one introduced by the speaker:

The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short
[A has been talking about the internet; B interrupts to give back A's change after purchasing drinks with A's money]
A: *Not bad hey. We could do that.*
B: *There's your change.*
A: *Oh cheers. Yeah, the scar=* ***as I was saying****, er,* ***talking about*** *the internet, the scariest thing I've seen on the internet* [laughs] *is Ted's page.*
B: *Oh I've not seen it.*

I mean, *you know* and *you see* can sometimes be used within clauses as subject – verb (s – v) structures, or outside of the clause structure, as discourse markers. When these expressions are inserted parenthetically within a sentence, then their function as discourse markers is clearer:

- Non discourse marking:

S – V	O (clause as object)
I mean	*what I say.*
You know	*that I want to speak about it to him privately first.*
You see	*loads of people at clubs that haven't got good figures wearing short skirts.*

- Discourse marking:

[*5.1* is the name of a version of a computer programme]
A: *She hasn't got 5.1 on her machine but her partner can load it if we can lend her the disks.* ***I mean****, am I at liberty to let these disks go outside the company?*
B: *Erm.*
A: *I don't know how many they're licensed for either?*
B: *Eight.*
(*I mean* as discourse marker, marking the statement following as a rewording or clarification or expansion of the previous one)

The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign

[complaining about restaurant prices]

A: *But when you say have a coffee or something or a soft drink it just mounts up actually.*

B: *Mm. Yes. And you see prices going up er say to four ninety nine+*

A: *Mm.*

B: *+or five ninety nine.*

A: *Yeah. Yeah. Yeah.*

B: ***You know** and people don't sort of perceive that er it's really expensive. But when you think about it, **you know**, just the basic dish, four ninety nine or five ninety nine. Five or six pounds.*

A: *Yeah.*

B: *Plus, **you know**, the little bits and pieces.*

A: *Yeah. Yeah.*

(*you know* as discourse marker, marking statements as assumed shared knowledge or uncontroversial or logically linked)

A: *Do you not normally come here for your Delenia products?*

B: *Oh well it varies.*

A: *Right.*

B: *I don't have a set place. **You see** I move around quite a lot with work so I just go wherever I can pop into.*

(*You see* as discourse marker, linking a statement with its explanation)

Grammatical forms of discourse markers

Different grammatical forms can fulfil the same marking function. For example, the following forms can all be used to prepare the listener for a new topic or for a shift in the current focus of the topic:

***Incidentally**, Rita's going to come round tonight.*
(adverb)

***By the way**, Rita's going to come round tonight.*
(prepositional phrase)

***While I think of it**, Rita's going to come round tonight.*
(finite clause)

***Speaking of which**, Rita's going to come round tonight.*
(non-finite clause)

***Listen**, Rita's going to come round tonight.*
(imperative clause)

***Hey**, Rita's going to come round tonight.*
(interjection)

Spoken features of discourse markers

Prosodic information can sometimes help to indicate differences between discourse markers and other parts of speech or clausal functions. For example, if the word or phrase occupies its own tone unit, and if there is a brief silent pause or breath pause after the expression (e.g. *You know* [pause] *she didn't like it*), this usually indicates that the function is that of a discourse marker (→ also **106c**).

Typical functions 106c

Discourse markers not only organise the discourse but can indicate degrees of formality and people's feelings towards the interaction. A selection of discourse markers is indicated in bold in the extracts below and their typical functions are commented on in the tables that follow them.

Informal interactions

The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short
[end of a sales transaction in a shop; A is the assistant, B is a customer]
A: ***Right*** *that comes to er seventy three eighty six. Thank you.* ***Right*** *I just need you to sign there.*
B: *Thank you.*
A: ***Well*** *the weather's turned up today anyway.*
B: *Mm, it's nice isn't it.*
A: *It's breezy though.*
B: [laughs] *Dick said it's been going on forever. He said it's been raining for about=*
A: *It's been raining, we had a snow blast, we had a snowstorm last weekend there.*
B: *Mm.*
A: *Amazing stuff.*
B: ***Great****. Thanks.*
A: ***Good****. I'll give you a receipt for that.* ***There you go****.*
B: ***Great****. Thanks. Thank you.*

Functions of discourse markers

marker	comment
right (×2)	mark the boundaries between stages of the discourse (between the handing over of money and the signing of the sales invoice)
well	marks a topic shift (to the topic of the weather)
great (×2) and *good*	mark both the conclusion of the transaction and (simultaneously) both parties' mutual satisfaction and informal sociability
there you go	marks the completion of the handing over of goods and receipt in an informal, friendly way

Formal interactions

Such informal markers as occur in the shop transaction may not be appropriate in other social contexts (e.g. transacting a last will and testament with a lawyer, receiving a parking fine from a traffic warden), even though the same organisational functions may be performed.

Discourse markers often indicate power relationships in the ways they are used to structure and control the discourse. In the following extract from a conversation between a university professor and a PhD student, the professor uses discourse markers which indicate his authority in the conversation and his ability to control it (marked in bold). The student does not have the same access to conversational control in this situation. Also, neither of the two speakers uses markers such as *great* or *there you go*, which might project too informal a relationship in this context:

The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short
The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign
[A is a university professor, B is a PhD student]
A: *I told you officially if you're registered for a PhD all along+*
B: *Yeah.*
A: *+then we don't need to worry. I just need to confirm that progress is satisfactory.*
B: *I see. My worry is, is the feeling, my worry is, is whether you like what I'm doing or not. That's my feeling.*
A: ***Ah well** if I didn't like it, I would have told you.*
B: *I see.*
A: *Mm. I'm very happy. I wasn't happy a year ago+*
B: *I know.*
A: *+but now I'm happy.*
B: ***So** I'm going to apply for another year in=*
A: *Yes.*
B: ***So** this is only till the end of June+*
A: ***Good**.*
B: *+**so** I hope+*
A: ***Good**.*
B: *+you know that by June we can=*
A: ***Well** by June I should be able to say that everything is in place. The hypotheses are formulated. Evidence is produced. You know, forty thousand words have been written, which nearly they have.*
B: *Uhuh.*
A: *Erm literature review completed. Er and some analysis completed. And so on. And that the remaining year will be spent putting the finishing and final touches to the thesis because you'll have to submit it in about April next year so that we can examine you in June next year and you can have time to do any corrections that are deemed before going home in August. Or September. Er. That's the way to see it isn't it. **Yeah**.*
B: *Yeah. Mm.*
A: ***Okay**. Er, I must go off to a meeting.*

Functions of discourse markers

marker	comment
ah well	marks a shift to a 'dispreferred' or divergent next utterance: the professor diverges from the student's line of argument
so (×3)	mark conclusions reached by the student
good (×2)	mark the professor's satisfaction with the direction of the discussion
well	marks the professor interrupting or pre-empting the student's conclusion in order to present his own conclusion
yeah	marks the professor's assumption that the student will concur with his view of the situation
okay	marks the professor's desire (and power) to end the conversation

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

COMMON SPOKEN DISCOURSE MARKERS 107

The most frequent discourse markers in spoken English are the single-word items *anyway*, *cos*, *fine*, *good*, *great*, *like*, *now*, *oh*, *okay*, *right*, *so*, *well*.

Some discourse markers (e.g. *oh*, *mind you*, *right*, *you know*) are restricted to spoken English or to written reports of speech or written texts imitating a spoken style. Others, such as *well*, may occasionally occur in informal writing but are otherwise exclusive to spoken English.

Discourse markers occur in writing, and some types of marker for organising written texts are very rare in everyday speech (e.g. *the end*, *section 3*, *introduction*, *in sum*, *thirdly*). In this chapter we focus only on those markers which are common in speech.

DISCOURSE MARKERS: ORGANISING THE DISCOURSE 108

Opening up and closing down 108a

Openings

Openings and closings are opportunities for speakers to manage the discourse in terms of launching and concluding topics, opening, concluding or temporarily closing a whole conversation, re-opening previously closed or interrupted conversations. Some of the most common and frequent markers function to facilitate openings and closings of these kinds, for example, *so*, *(all) right*, *right then*, *now*, *good*, *well*, *okay*, *anyway*, *fine*:

> [opening an academic discussion]
> ***Right***, *I suppose we should begin by considering the tricky question of the Norman invasion.*
>
> [two friends in a café; small talk about different types of coffee]
> A: *Have you ever tried the different coffees?*
> B: *No.*
> A: *No. I haven't either.*
> B: *Flavoured coffees?*
> A: *Yeah. Er well even the ones that they have here.*
> B: *You know I wouldn't know the difference I don't think.*
> A: *I don't know if I would either. No. I thought you know the way you just you know you ask for coffee and they just give you something.*
> B: *Yeah. No. I've never tried them.*
> [Pause]
> A: ***So** how's Laura getting on?*
> B: *I think she's just looking forward to coming home.*
> (pause, then *So* marking the opening of the speaker's main topic: Laura)

In more formal speech, *now* can occur to mark the opening of a phase of talk or of a new topic, or to mark a rhetorical shift of some sort from one important aspect of a topic to another almost like paragraph changes in written texts:

> [beginning of a university lecture in medicine]
> ***Now****, can you all hear? Er if it is too loud do let me know. Erm two weeks ago I had a patient who had difficulty swallowing. I operated on her six years ago because she had a nasty cancer of the stomach. We'd done quite a big operation and she's done remarkably well. But now she came back unable to swallow.* ***Now****, we did lots of tests on her and it's pretty obvious she'd got a cancer back again. Very near where the previous one was. Right in the middle there* [points to diagram]. ***Now****, what do you do? She's quite elderly. Er her life was becoming a misery.*

Closings

Pre-closings and closings can also be facilitated by the use of discourse markers. These typically involve *(all) right*, *so*, *anyway*, *okay*, *well* and, particularly at the pre-closings of service encounters, *fine*, *lovely*, *good*, *great*:

> [on the telephone]
> ***So****, I thought I'd better just ring and check.* [other speaker speaks] *I see.* ***Right****.* ***Anyway****, I'd better go, cos I'm actually ringing from the medical room.*
> (signals of pre-closing)

> [conclusion of a discussion concerning a printing job]
> A: *And then we actually want overheads, not just colour copies.*
> B: *Yeah.*
> A: *Six sets.*
> B: *Six sets of each.*
> A: ***Fine****.*
> B: ***Fine****.*
> A: ***Right****. I'll see you tomorrow.*
> B: ***Okay****.*
> A: ***Okay****.* ***Lovely****.*
> B: *Yeah.*
> A: *Thanks Jim.*
> B: *Bye.*
> A: *Bye.*

> The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short
> A: *Haven't I missed something? A car went out of control or something? Wendy went i= I don't know. My daughter went into the Post Office and they were all discussing it. A car had gone out of control I think.* ***Oh well****.*
> B: *Er* ***anyway*** *I'd better get back.*
> A: ***Anyway*** *see you later.*
> B: *Bye.*
> A: *Bye.*
> B: *Ta ta.*

The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign
A: ***Well*** *I'd better go and finish this lunch+*
B: ***Okay then****.*
A: *+cos we're rather hungry.*
B: *Yeah.*
A: *And Paul is waiting by the door.*
B: *Oh I see.* ***Right****.*
A: ***Okay****.*
B: ***Okay then****. See you later.*
A: *Bye bye.*
B: *Cheers. Bye.*

Sequencing 108b

Relationships of sequence can be signalled by discourse markers. Such markers indicate explicitly the order in which things occur or how different segments of a discourse are being organised. They also mark how one thing leads to or leads back to another. Among the words and phrases which mainly signal such relationships in spoken language are:

and
and then
finally
first (of all)
firstly (more formal than *first*)
for a start
going back to
in general
in the end
in the first place
last of all
lastly
next
on top of that
second
secondly (more formal than *second*)
so
there again
third(ly)
to sum up
what's more

[enquiring about flights at a travel agent's]
A: *Erm I was wondering if you could give me some information about flights to Spain please.*
B: *Whereabouts in Spain?*
A: *Erm well* ***first of all*** *do you know if er Bilbao is the closest airport to San Sebastian?*
B: *I think it is actually, off the top of my head, cos er, there's not many that we do up in the north at all. I know you can get a flight there from Luton.*
A: *Right.*
B: *Right.*
A: *All right. Erm er er er I'd like to go to … from London to Bilbao on Sunday the third of May.*
B: *Yeah.*
(*first of all* marks that the question must be dealt with before the customer can state the desired booking)

[talking about problems connected with giving money to charities]
*You know you give them money and you're trying to be nice and kind but it doesn't work out like that. Because **for a start** half the money that goes over there, there's some eaten up in administration costs. That's not charity is it. That's paying people to supposedly help others.*
(*for a start* suggests this is the first and probably most important of a number of points)

[university lecturer discussing forces that can operate negatively on the human body; he has just been discussing pressure, in connection with deep-sea diving]
*I've only seen it once when somebody came up like that and er your lungs are actually dropping out of your mouth. So it's quite a serious diving injury. **Next** we have radiant energy. Right. You're all familiar with sunburn which is an example of radiant energy. Right.*

[tutor commenting on a student's essay; several points have already been made]
***Finally**, the argument needs supporting with more evidence concerning the tactics adopted by the Spanish invaders.*

Speakers often use the letters of the alphabet, A and B (and occasionally extending to C, but not beyond), to sequence points or arguments:

[recounting a negative experience of making a complaint at a clinic]
A: *Yes I mean really they wanted me out of the way so they could get on **A** with the clinic that was really going on which was a totally different clinic.*
B: *I see.*
A: *And **B** get me out of the way before anybody else arrived and complained as well.*

The marker *going back to X* enables speakers to jump back to a topic that was talked about earlier. It is often preceded by *but*:

The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short
The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign
[speakers were talking about the writer, Faulkner; now they are discussing the writer, Chandler, author of *The Big Sleep*]
A: *The Big Sleep was 1946.*
B: *Yeah. I think he worked on that.*
A: *I think it was yeah.*
B: *And it= Basically it also distracted from work he was doing on his novels. He didn't have time. There was a big sort of hiatus between forty two and forty eight where he did no+*
A: *Yeah.*
B: *+he did completely no work on his novels. So.*
A: *Right.*
B: *Yeah.*
A: ***But** erm **going back to** Faulkner I I mean I'm I don't know much about him. When did he actually die or where? Or=*
B: *Sixty two. Erm he went to a sanatorium.*

also **123–139 Grammar across turns and sentences** for more detailed treatment of such items with particular reference to written text

Topics: marking boundaries and linking segments 108c

One of the main functions of discourse markers in spoken language is to mark topic boundaries, indicating the beginning or end of a topic or a transition from one topic or bit of business to another:

> [answerphone message]
> *Hiya. It's Nora. Erm I think you probably rang me earlier this evening. Erm if you haven't gone to bed, you can ring me back.* ***Okay*** *bye bye.*
> (marking the boundary between the message and the goodbye)
>
> A: *And how's Ricky, your boyfriend?*
> B: *He's fine. Yeah.*
> A: *That's good.* ***So*** *what are you doing at the weekend? Anything?*
> B: *Er Ricky's, he's working.*
> (marking the boundary between asking about the boyfriend and introducing the new topic: the weekend)

Another main purpose of discourse markers is to signal coherent links between one part of a topic and the next part. Discourse markers help speakers to negotiate their way through talk, checking whether they share a common view of the topic and of the nature of the unfolding discourse with their listener:

> The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short
> The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign
> [speaker A resumes a phone call after an interruption by another caller]
> A: *Hi. Sorry about that mad woman on the line.* [laughs] *Erm what's erm=* ***Oh yeah*** *er do you have a contact number for Amanda Short+*
> B: *Yeah.*
> A: *+erm* ***cos*** *I'm trying to firm up delivery dates and I think everyone's on schedule for a first of April delivery, which is brilliant.*
> B: *Yeah.*
> A: ***And*** *erm she's the only one that I haven't heard from so+*
> B: ***Right****.*
> (*oh yeah* marks a link between the interrupted topic and its resumption; *cos* marks the reason/justification/explanation for asking the question, rather than acting as a causal subordinator; *and* marks the continuation of the explanation; *right* marks the listener's satisfactory reception of the message)

A–Z 17 *Anyway*; 58 *Okay/OK*; 69 *Right, rightly*; 71 *So*

Topics: focusing attention, diverting, shifting, resuming 108d

Focusing attention

Attention or focus can be directed to a topic or to a phase of the talk by a number of discourse markers. Common examples are *now*, *hey*, *ah*, *oh* and imperative verb forms (*look*, *listen*, *just think*, *remember*). The main function is to focus the attention of the listener on what the speaker feels is important:

> ***Hey****, I wanted to ask you something. What was it?*
>
> ***Listen****, we've been talking about this for ages. We need a decision.*

[discussing earrings which speaker B wants speaker A to wear at B's wedding]
A: *No. I don't like them.*
B: *You're going to wear them.*
A: *No I'm not.*
B: *Yes you are.*
A: *Sam please.*
B: ***Look** it's our wedding.*
A: ***Look**.* [sighs] *Please will you just humour me? I've had a terrible day.*
B: *Oh. And I haven't?*
A: *Do you know what time I had to get up this morning? Six o'clock.*

Diverting

Oh often indicates that the speaker is about to create an unexpected diversion in the conversation:

The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign
A: *So you get the prestige of working for the University of Bristol with living in the country in a nice big open environment which is+*
B: *Yeah.*
A: *+more appealing when you're a bit older isn't it?*
B: *Suppose so.*
A: *That's my theory anyway.*
B: *Never really thought about it like that. **Oh** I forgot. Your washing's up there. Sorry just noticed it.*
A: *Oh you've not even put it out or anything.*
B: *Sorry, I forgot about it.*

The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short
A: *Anyway he's not that much younger. I mean he's older than Mark and Mike. But erm he's erm=*
B: ***Oh** what's Mark's other name?*
A: *Hubbard.*
B: *Hubbard.*

A–Z 57 *Oh*

Shifting

Well most typically signals a shift in the projected or expected direction of the discourse, or a response which might not have been anticipated by the speaker:

A: *Did you enjoy the film?*
B: ***Well**, we enjoyed the first half but after that I'm not sure.*
(*yes-no* question, but B feels the question cannot be answered by just *yes* or *no*)

A: *What do we do about the traffic?*
B: ***Well**, how about leaving earlier so we miss the worst of it?*
(against the anticipation that the question represented a serious problem)

Resuming

So and *anyway*, often accompanied by expressions such as *where was I?*, *where were we?*, *what was I saying?* or *oh yes/yeah*, can be used to resume an interrupted or diverted topic:

The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short

[in the middle of telling a story]
A: *She says 'Oh darling do wear something nice.' You know. 'Mark Darcy will be here.' And she turns up and she's wearing something hideous and they've told him that she's very bookie. That she's a secretary to a publisher or something like that.*
B: *Bookie?*
A: *Bookie.*
B: *What's that?*
A: *Likes books.*
B: *Oh right. Oh.*
A: ***Anyway** erm. Where was I?*
B: *Mm. You were erm=*
A: ***Oh yeah**. She goes to this Christmas party and he's been told to talk to her about books because she's a secretary or something.*
(resuming the story after a diversion to explain the unusual use of the word *bookie*)

[interrupted anecdote]
A: *Is that your writing?*
B: *No. Don't know why that's there. Cos I put that on. But I lent it to this= Do you know that girl I hate, can't remember her name, whatever.* **So** *what was I saying?*
A: *That annoying one, Joan.*
B: *Yeah.* **So** *he went to this thing and presented all these proposals that he'd got.*
(resuming the main topic after trying to remember someone's name)

MONITORING THE DISCOURSE 109

Reformulations 109a

Some discourse markers enable speakers to monitor and manage the ongoing discourse by commenting explicitly on the process of talking itself.

Discourse markers can signal reformulations or alternative expressions, indicating that the speaker has not selected the most appropriate way of expressing things and is adding to or refining what they say with a more apt word or phrase. Among such markers are:

as I was saying
as it were
I mean
if you like
in a manner of speaking
in other words
not to say
or rather

so to speak
strictly speaking
that's to say
to put it another way
to put it bluntly/ mildly
well

Jim was exhausted and dehydrated. ***To put it another way****, he was completely knackered.*

He's been too easy-going, ***not to say*** *careless and stupid, walking across that mountain at nightfall and on his own too.*

The hotel simply hasn't done its job properly. ***In other words****, we're very unhappy and we'd like a refund.*

The cottage is in a small town, ***well****, a small industrial town, if you like.*

Monitoring shared knowledge 109b

Two of the most common discourse markers are *you know* and *(you) see*. Both these markers signal that speakers are sensitive to the needs of their listeners and are monitoring the state of shared knowledge in the conversation.

(You) see projects the assumption that the listener may not have the same state of knowledge as the speaker:

You see*, since I've damaged my back in that fall, I find it difficult to climb the stairs without help.*
(speaker cannot assume the listener knows this)

You do it like this. Cut the branches right back, ***see****, then cut them into smaller pieces.*

You know projects the assumption that knowledge is shared or that assertions are uncontroversial, and reinforces common points of reference, or checks that the listener is following what is being said:

If you got the earliest train in the morning and then, ***you know****, like, got the last train back at night, it might be cheaper that way.*

DISCOURSE MARKING IN RESPONSES 110

Discourse markers are an important resource for listeners to indicate their involvement with what is being said and to manage their own responses.

(All) right can be used to indicate positive responses and to signal agreement to a proposed action:

A: *I think we should go to the garden centre first.*
B: ***Right****, that's fine by me.*

Response tokens such as *(all) right*, *I see*, *good*, *great*, *fine* and *okay* show that the listener is receiving the message and is at the same time channelling back support for what the speaker is saying. The response token can simultaneously signal boundaries in the discourse and send back signals of sociability. Such markers are a sign of active and cooperative listening:

A: *So first of all, we have to meet Kulvinder cos she's got the car.*
B: *I see.*
A: *Then we'll pick up Sue.*
B: ***Right**.*
A: *So we'll come round to your place around seven.*
B: ***Okay**, **I see**, **right**, thanks a lot.*

⁘ also **95, Response tokens**

A–Z **69 *Right, rightly***

STANCE MARKERS 111

A number of common expressions mark the speaker's stance or attitude towards the message. Among the expressions which most frequently signal stances, attitudes and points of view towards segments of discourse are:

- *actually*
- *admittedly*
- *amazingly*
- *basically*
- *certainly*
- *clearly*
- *confidentially*
- *doubtless*
- *essentially*
- *frankly*
- *to be frank*
- *fortunately*
- *honestly*
- *to be honest*
- *hopefully*
- *ideally*
- *if you ask me*
- *I'm afraid*
- *I must admit*
- *I must say*
- *I think*
- *in fact*
- *indeed*
- *literally*
- *naturally*
- *no doubt*
- *obviously*
- *of course*
- *predictably*
- *putting* (or *to put*) *it mildly/bluntly*
- *(quite) rightly*
- *really*
- *sadly*
- *seriously*
- *(I'm) sorry*
- *strictly speaking*
- *surprisingly*
- *thankfully*
- *to tell you the truth*
- *understandably*
- *undoubtedly*
- *unfortunately*

*The team are doing badly and, **quite frankly**, I think he should be replaced by someone who knows what he's doing.*

*I'll have to call you back, **I'm afraid**. Okay?*

[explaining to someone how to use dial-up internet on a home computer]
A: *So now **obviously** when you're on the internet, if someone tries to phone you, they'll just get an engaged tone.*
B: *Right.*
A: *Okay. But if you wanna use the telephone you just log off. Pick up the telephone and dial. And that's it.*
B: *Okay. So **basically** if I'm on the internet for an hour or something, people can't phone in for an hour.*
A: *Yeah.*
B: *Okay.*
A: *That's just something you get used to.*

The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short
[at a travel agent's; A is the assistant]
A: *Is it okay to send the information to your mother? I mean it's not a surprise holiday or anything?*
B: *Oh, well **to be honest actually** she doesn't know that I'm making these arrangements.*
A: *Oh lovely.*
B *: So it would **actually** be better if it was=*
A: *So if you could give me your postcode.*
B: *Oh, it's the same **actually**.*
A: *It is?*
B: *Yeah.*

A–Z 9 ***Actual, actually***; 46 ***In fact***; 52 ***Mean***; 68 ***Really***

HEDGES 112

Speakers are often careful not to sound too blunt and assertive, and a variety of markers exist to hedge (i.e. to express degrees of assertiveness). A range of expressions are used in everyday spoken language to downtone the assertiveness of a segment of discourse. These include:

apparently
arguably
by any chance
I think
just (about)
kind of
like
maybe
perhaps
presumably
probably
roughly
sort of
surely

A: *I just turned round to her and said 'Let me use your phone.' It wasn't aggressive. I wasn't violent.*
B: *Well **apparently** you snatched the phone off the lady.*
A: *No I didn't.*

[talking about spring flowers in speaker A's garden]
A: *Angela planted them. There's crocuses around the base of the trees but they're* ***just about*** *gone* ***I think****.*
B: *Oh right. Yeah. Cos it's been very mild hasn't it.*
A: *It's been very mild.*
B: *Yeah.*
A: *We had snowdrops but the frost* ***kind of*** *killed them* ***I think****.*

A: *It's warm in here isn't it.*
B: *It is warm in here now. Yeah.*
A: *Turn the radiator down a little bit* ***perhaps****.*
B: *Yeah.*

I mean ***roughly*** *it's going to cost about another thousand pounds.*

also **103a Vague language**

A–Z **47 *Just*; 49 *Like***

INTERJECTIONS 113

The term interjection normally refers to exclamative utterances consisting of single words that do not easily fit into the major word classes (noun, verb, adjective, adverb) such as: *bother*, *crikey*, *damn*, *god*, *goodness (me)*, *gosh*, *(good) heavens*, *hooray*, *jeez*, *ooh*, *oh no*, *oops*, *ouch*, *ow*, *ugh*, *tut-tut*, *whoops*, *wow*, *yippee*, *yuk*.

All these items express positive or negative emotional reactions to what is being or has just been said or to something in the situation. Interjections are especially common in spoken language and rare in writing except in written representations of speech:

A: *You know Hilary? She got married last week.*
B: ***Gosh****! That's quick. How long has she known him?*
(expresses surprise; *Crikey/wow* are alternatives here)

Ouch*, that hurt.*
(expresses a reaction to pain)

Oops*, I shouldn't have said that, should I?*
(expresses a reaction to having unintentionally done something inappropriate)

A: *The bus has already gone.*
B: ***Damn****. Now I'm going to have to walk home.*
(expresses irritation at bad luck or inconvenience)

Ugh*, I can't eat any more of this.*
(expresses a negative reaction to unpleasant sensations)

They're here at last. ***Yippee****!*
(expresses excitement)

A: *Come and look at the sunset.*
B: [goes to the window] ***Wow****, yeah, fantastic.*
(expresses strong surprise or a reaction of awe and wonder)

Tut-tut*. That's the second time this week you've forgotten my coffee.*
(expresses disapproval, often in a mock-humorous way)

Other items include:

phew (expresses relief)

hooray (indicates delight at a particular outcome)

aargh (indicates general displeasure or unhappiness)

urgh (expresses a strong negative reaction of displeasure)

poo (reaction to an unpleasant smell)

yuk (reaction to something unpleasant, e.g. a taste)

ooo (reaction of pleasure or delight)

SWEARING AND TABOO EXPRESSIONS 114

General 114a

Swearing and the general use of taboo words is increasingly heard in spoken English both in private and in public settings (including radio, TV and films). Although there are some forms of swearing that are less offensive than others, most features of swearing involve taboo words. Learners of English should exercise great care concerning such usages.

The use of taboo words and phrases projects either a close, intimate relationship with the person or group to whom they are addressed (so that one feels free to use taboo words) or else a threatening and hostile relationship. In such contexts it is difficult for learners of a language to know the precise strength of such expressions.

Most taboo words and phrases in English exist under two main headings of religion and parts of the body and bodily processes, especially those associated with either sexual activity or with using the toilet. The most common taboo expressions in this category involve the words *fuck* (to have sexual intercourse – the word is used as a noun and verb forms) and *shit* (bodily excrement – the word is used as a noun and a verb).

A good dictionary will cover the main meanings of these and similar words; this section pays particular attention to grammatical patterns. A rough guide is also given here concerning the relative strength of swearing expressions. A very strong expression, which is likely to be shocking or threatening in most non-intimate situations, is given five stars (*****); a less strong expression, likely to cause little or no offence, is given only one star (*).

In general, swearing which involves 'religious' taboo expressions is likely to be weaker than swearing that involves 'parts of the body' taboo expressions, although people with strong religious views may be offended by both. Learners are advised against using such expressions, although, especially in informal contexts and in films and on TV, etc., it is likely that such uses of language will be heard.

Swearing often takes the form of interjections (→ 113). This can involve single words or short phrases or clauses that are used to express a variety of strong feelings, in particular, annoyance, frustration and anger:

> ***Damn****! That's the third time this week the car has broken down. (*)*
>
> ***Christ****! Why didn't you tell me? I could have stopped them!! (**)*
>
> ***Shit****! I shouldn't have used that kind of nail. I've broken the lock. (****)*
>
> *Oh* ***fuck it****! I can't find the address. (*****)*
>
> ***Christ almighty****! They've actually won their first match. (**)*
>
> *Well,* ***I'll be buggered****! How did you manage to find that? (****)*
>
> ***Fuck me****! That's not what she told me. How can that possibly be true? (*****)*

Wh-exclamatives with taboo words are also sometimes used:

> ***What the hell*** *are you doing letting that dog out without a lead on! (*)*
>
> ***What the fuck*** *have I done with my glasses! (*****)*
>
> [said in response to the phone ringing very late in the evening]
> ***Who the fuck*** *is that! (*****)*

Taboo naming expressions 114b

Taboo naming expressions are commonly used to insult another person. Sometimes the insult is serious and sometimes it can be playful and affectionate. Only the immediate context of the use of the expression will indicate which meaning is intended. Insulting by swearing is particularly common with vocatives (→ 116):

> ***Lucky bastard****! How did you manage to get the day off? (***)*
>
> *Come here, you daft* ***prick****. (***)*
>
> *Ruth,* ***you bitch****! Why did you tell her? Can't you keep a secret? (***)*

Taboo naming words such as *arsehole*, *bastard*, *bugger*, *bitch*, *cow*, *get/git*, *prick*, *tit*, *twat/twot*, are preceded by *you* when addressed directly at the listener, while *the* is most commonly used to refer to third parties:

> *I hope it's your hormones,* ***you stupid cow****. (***)*
>
> *I always give him money, and then when I ask him, he never gives it,* ***the bastard****. (***)*
>
> *I mean when he doesn't sort of trust his own kids sort of thing. Do you know what I mean? I mean he might be disappointed in me sometimes but I still love* ***the old bugger****. And there's no two ways about that really, is there. He's always dad. (***)*

You and *the* are sometimes ellipted, since the referent is usually obvious:

> *Get up, **lazy cow**! (***)*
> (Get up, (you) lazy cow.)
>
> *I lent the key to Dave. **Daft bastard** lost it. (***)*
> ((The) daft bastard lost it.)

Taboo intensifiers 114c

Taboo expressions are frequently used as intensifying adverbs or adjectives. The words *bloody* and *fucking* are especially common in this function. When these are used as adverbs, post-intensifier *well* is often used for further emphasis:

> *Where's the **bloody** key? (*)*
>
> *That's **fucking** marvellous, that is, isn't it? It's **fucking-well** snowing again. (*****)*

Unlike *shit*, *fuck* and *bugger*, *bloody* is not used on its own as an interjection. *Bloody hell!* is the usual interjection form:

> *Oh **fuck**! I forgot to post that letter. (*****)*
> (or: Oh shit/bugger! But not: ~~Oh bloody!~~)
>
> A: *Do you know how much they're going to cost? Hundred thousand pound.*
> B: ***Bloody hell!** Crazy isn't it? (**)*

GREETINGS AND FAREWELLS 115

Greetings usually involve an exchange of the same or very similar words and expressions. Different expressions mark different levels of formality. In general, the briefer the structure, the more informal the greeting or farewell is:

Good morning (more formal)
Good evening
Hello
Morning
Evening
Hi
Hi there
Hiya (less formal)

Note that *good evening* but not *goodnight* may be used as a greeting. *Goodnight* is used either when leaving someone in the late evening or night, or just before going to bed or to sleep for the night:

> [B has just arrived at A's house]
> A: *Hello Terry.*
> B: ***Good evening**.*
> (not: ~~Goodnight.~~)

When leaving people, the same conventions regarding formality apply as when meeting and greeting people:

Goodnight (more formal)
Goodbye
Bye
Bye bye
See you later
See you (often pronounced *see ya*)
Cheers
Ta-ta (often pronounced /təˈrɑː/) (less formal)

VOCATIVES 116

Unlike many other languages, English does not have ways of addressing people formally or informally by means of different pronouns or other grammatical devices. In English, the relative formality of terms of address is managed by means of vocatives, i.e. the use of the addressee's name (*Jane*, *Mr Lambert*) or a term of kinship (*mum*, *grandad*) or endearment (*darling*, *love*).

Vocatives occur frequently in spoken English. They occur in written English but in more restricted contexts such as salutations in letters (*Dear X*) or in direct-speech reports. In spoken English they are more closely connected with social intimacy and distance in interpersonal relationships and with the marking of discourse boundaries (they occur frequently at topic boundaries, → 118e).

English also does not have any standard polite way of addressing strangers. For example, in British English it is very difficult to know how to attract the attention of a stranger in the street who may have dropped something. *Sir! Madam!* are not commonly used in this situation, and *hello*, *sorry* or *excuse me* are most likely to be used to attract attention.

TYPES OF VOCATIVE 117

Names and titles 117a

Vocatives include various forms of people's names and titles:

People's names and titles

form	example
full first name	***Laura**, have you got a minute?*
abbreviated first name	*Can you give me a hand, **Pete**.* (Peter)
nickname	*Hi, **Red**. How are you?* (to a red-haired man)
title plus family name	***Mr Roberts**, could I have a word with you?*
title alone	*Thank you, **doctor**.*

Abbreviating first names

First names can be familiarised by abbreviating the name (often to a single syllable) or by ending the name with an *-ie* or *-y* form. Among names created in this way are:

Anthony (Tony)
Antonia (Toni)
Devinder (Dev)
James (Jamie)
Jennifer (Jenny, Jen)
Judith (Jude, Judy)
Matthew (Matt, Matty)
Michael (Mike, Mick, Mickey)
Rajiv (Raj)
Susan (Sue, Susie)

The following abbreviated or 'short' forms are less transparent:

Catherine (Kate, Katie, Kit, Kitty)
Deborah (Debbie, Debs)
Dorothy (Dolly, Dot)
Edward (Ted, Teddie)
Elizabeth (Betty, Liz)
Geraldine (Gel)
Julie (Jules)
Richard (Dick, Rick, Ricky)
Robert (Bob, Bobby)
Terence (Terry, Tel)

Degrees of formality

Using full, unabbreviated first names is more formal than using abbreviated forms. Using full family names and family names with titles is more formal still, indicating a greater social distance between speakers:

> *Now, **Jennifer**, you've passed the test. So well done … but we'd like you to do just one part again.*
>
> *May I introduce you? **Professor Jackson**, this is Martine, our new secretary.*
>
> ***Doctor Jones**, there's a telephone call for you on line 3.*

Family-name-only vocative is rarely used among adults in British English, except in strict institutional contexts, and generally only by a senior person addressing a junior person (e.g. teacher to school student, army officer to subordinate, employer to servant).

The use of the academic titles *doctor* or *professor* as vocatives is not normal without the family name of the individual:

> ***Professor** Smith, could I give you my essay?*
> (~~Professor, could I give you my essay?~~)

Doctor can be used as a vocative without the family name only to a medical doctor:

> *Do you think it's serious, **doctor**?*

Some other titles of rank and profession can be used alone:

> [radio interviewer interviewing a military general]
> *Now **general**, you have considerable experience of guerrilla warfare.*
>
> [addressing a Roman Catholic priest]
> ***Father**, can I buy a ticket for the charity dinner?*

Terms of kinship and endearment 117b

Family terms include *mother* (usually formal), *mum*, *mam*, *mummy* (to refer to a mother), *father* (usually formal), *dad*, *daddy*, *pappa* (to refer to a father), *pops*, *granpa*, *granpy*, *gramps* (to refer to a grandfather), *gran*, *granma*, *nana*, *nan* (to refer to a grandmother), *bruv* (a brother), *sis* (a sister), *cuz* (a cousin). Such vocatives indicate degrees of intimacy and closeness between speakers:

> *I'll tell you what, **mum**, you're going to be a bit cross about it.*
>
> *You can lend me five pounds, can't you **sis**?*

Terms of endearment include: *darling*, *dear*, *poppet* (usually to a little child), *love*, *luvvie*, *sweetheart*. They may combine with names:

> *Can you put the coffee on, **sweetheart**?*
>
> ***Mike**, **love**, could you take this out to the back yard for me. Ta.*

General plural vocatives 117c

General plural vocatives (e.g. *folks*, *everyone/everybody*, *children*, *boys*, *lads*, *girls*, *guys*, *ladies*, *gentlemen*) are used to address groups:

> *What are you planning to do tonight, **folks**?*
>
> ***Children**, could you all pay attention please.*
>
> [announcement at a conference lecture]
> ***Everybody**, could you all hand in your evaluations as you leave, please.*

Impersonal vocatives 117d

Someone/somebody can be used as an impersonal vocative to summon any one of a known group of people:

> *Answer the door, **someone**! I'm in the bathroom.*

Honorifics 117e

Honorifics such as *sir* or *madam* are respectful and deferential. They most commonly occur in service encounters. *Sir* and *miss* are generally used to address male and female school teachers (but not teachers in higher education):

> [in a shop]
> *What can I get you, **madam**?*
>
> [in a school classroom, to the teacher]
> ***Sir**, he won't let me finish the experiment.*

Sir and *madam* are rare as vocatives in British English outside of service situations. Male strangers may be addressed as *mate*, but this does project a high degree of informality and should be used with care:

> *Excuse me, **mate**, do you know where Parton Street is?*

There is no equivalent accepted term for addressing a female stranger, though *love* (often written as *luv*) is sometimes used in this way. However, many women object to this use of *love* or *(my) dear* as patronising or sexist.

Calling people by the name of their occupation is less common and depends on the social status of the occupation. Some which do occur include *doctor* (medical), *driver*, *nurse*, *minister*, *officer*, *waiter*:

> [passenger to bus driver]
> *Can you let me off here please, **driver**.*
>
> [radio interview with a government minister]
> *Now, **minister**, how would you explain this to the electorate?*
>
> *Excuse me, **waiter**, sorry, could we have some more water, please?*

DISCOURSE FUNCTIONS OF VOCATIVES 118

Summons 118a

Vocatives are used to call or summon a person:

> ***Sue**! Your cup of tea is poured.*

Turn management 118b

Vocatives function in the management of speaker turns, although this is not an especially common function in face-to-face spoken discourse. They are used to identify an addressee, to nominate a next speaker or to soften an interruption:

> A: *I should have some change.*
> B: *I owe you too don't I, **Jodie**.*
> C: *Yes you do.*

> The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short
> The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign
> [speakers are looking at a document about the rules of credit unions]
> A: *Whereas the the bank er the credit union made provision with disclosure may be able to enter into contracts with= In other words if the bank want to see the= to find out where money+*
> B: *Hang on **Geoff**. I've not got a seventy six two now.*
> C: *Yeah.*
> B: *Is that what you're up against?*
> A: *Yeah. It says that any member= any person can erm any er er member+*
> B: *Any member or any persons having an interest in the funds.*

Vocatives occur frequently in radio phone-ins and similar non-face-to-face contexts. The vocative is used for managing the talk – that is bringing callers in, controlling their talk and dismissing them when their contribution is deemed to be sufficient:

A: *Welcome back to the programme.* ***Alistair****, thanks for your call. Enjoyed talking to you. Now it's Jack on line 2. Hi,* ***Jack****? Good afternoon to you. Hello there.*
B: *Hello.*
A: *Hi how are you?*

Ritual and sociable contexts 118c

Vocatives often occur ritualistically, for example, to identify participants when food is being served, even though it may be obvious from gaze and body orientation who is being addressed. In such contexts vocatives can occur alone as a single turn:

[a hostess is offering and serving food at a dinner table]
A: *Bits of everything here.* ***Richard****?*
B: *No thank you.*
A: *No?* ***Pauline****?*
C: *Fine thank you.*
A: ***Kevin****?*
D: *No. I'm full.*

Vocatives also often occur in contexts where the purpose is purely sociable and where no real information is exchanged (phatic contexts), e.g. greetings, *how-are-you*'s, remarks about the weather:

The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short
The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign
[two colleagues, A and B, are talking informally about vocational courses they may be allowed to go on and C enters in the middle of the conversation; *hiya* and *hey* are very informal alternatives to *hello*]
A: *I mean it's obviously been passed okay by Pat Cromwell and ultimately that's the person who's making the decisions+*
B: *Mm.*
A: *+as to who goes on it as far as I'm concerned. And=*
C: *Hiya* ***Lynn****.*
B: *Hey* ***Pat****.*
A: *Hiya* ***Pat****. Erm.*
B: *So that's=*
A: *that's the+*
B: *Yeah.*
A: *+decision out of my hands.*

Softening and lessening threats to dignity 118d

Vocatives are commonly used to mitigate a threat to the listener's dignity or to soften an utterance. A vocative is not normally threatening and indicates solidarity and membership of a group:

[group of female young friends discussing eating and weight problems]
A: *You're not fat* ***Jane****.*
B: *I will be if I'm not careful.*

Vocatives can soften utterances which may possibly threaten, challenge or offend another speaker. In these functions the vocative typically occurs at or near the front of an utterance or in a mid position:

A: *So she's gonna try and go into school. But she's got an arrangement that she'll come for er er if she can't manage next week.*
B: *But* ***Sally****, she's old to be teaching.*

I'm sorry to have to tell you, ***Daria****, that you haven't been successful.*

Vocatives are also used to make requests more indirect and to lessen the imposition:

A: *Will you put on the fish,* ***Nancy****, so that it'll heat, the fish now.*
B: *Oh yeah.*

Topic management 118e

Vocatives also function similarly to some discourse markers (→ 106). They mark the way in which a topic is managed between speakers in so far as they occur at boundaries where topics are launched, expanded, shifted, changed or closed. As part of the management of a topic, speakers may name another conversational participant in order to validate or confirm an assertion:

The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign
[the speakers are discussing A's deceased mother; a *Geordie* accent is the accent associated with the area of Newcastle in north-east England]
A: *And she said when she came down here to Bristol she er she had a Geordie accent and all the kids used to+*
B: *Well she would have.*
A: *+make fun of her.*
B: *She would have.*
A: *Yeah.*
B: *Of course.*
A: *Where were you born then,* ***Mary****?*
B: *In Bristol.*
A: *You're a Bristol girl.*
B: *Yeah.*
(Mary is already the addressee; the vocative coincides with a topic shift)

A: *It was the right place, was it?*
B: *Yes. The right place. Yeah. Yeah.*
C: *They were horrible.*
D: *Do you know the people,* ***dad****?*
C: *Yeah.*

In the above examples the vocatives do not simply identify the addressees. A shift of conversational topic or an encouragement to continue and expand a topic is indicated. In both the above extracts the vocative occupies end position. In the following extract it occurs close to the topical information that needs to be confirmed. In this example A calls on his wife, B, to confirm certain information:

[speakers are discussing a well-known family of traditional Irish musicians]
A: *Er we we were in er Cork weren't we,* ***Barbara****, and we heard his brother. Which brother was it we heard?*
B: *Er, Sean, I think.*

Joking, banter 118f

The vocative frequently co-occurs with light-hearted joking talk and supports the friendship and intimacy normal on such occasions:

[three female students share a house; one has a new kitchen whisk]
A: *Seen my new whisk?*
B: *Oo.*
C: *Oo.*
A: *Nice, isn't it?*
B: *Is that to make your omelettes with?*
C: *Very domesticated,* ***Tracy****.*

The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short
A: *Are you not studying today or whatever?*
B: *I don't know.*
C: *No. I mean we study yeah. We study ghost stories.*
D: *Yeah.* [laughs] *We study how to frighten ourselves.*
A: *Social hi= social history is it?*
D: *I'll tell you something,* ***mum****. Social scary. Social scary.*
B: *Social mystery. Not social history. Social mystery.*

In such instances vocatives are commonly in end position.

Positions of the vocative 118g

Several positions are available for the vocative. It may occupy the whole speaker turn. It may occur at the beginning of a speaker's turn (front position) or in the course of the turn (mid position), or at the end (end position). End position is by far the most frequent. Mid-position vocatives are not so frequent and are normally preceded by some sort of discourse marker prefacing the main utterance:

> *Tell me*, ***Margaret***. *Er, you more or less got where you are today more or less off your own bat.*
>
> [*North West Tonight* is the name of a TV news programme; *Old Trafford* is a sports ground]
> *Just, just on that*, ***Lilian***. *It may have occurred to you already, but North West Tonight are doing some filming at Old Trafford.*

STANDARD AND NON-STANDARD SPOKEN GRAMMAR 119

General 119a

In **84** the notion of standard spoken grammar was described in relation to standard written English. In this section some features of non-standard spoken grammar are described. Learners of British English are likely to hear these forms.

In **85** five main categories or levels of acceptability for spoken and written forms of grammar were outlined. For purposes of discussion in this section, each category has a number to mark the different levels. 'Widespread' here means across users of both genders and across a wide range of ages and social and regional backgrounds.

1. In widespread use in both spoken and written language (most forms are in this category).
2. In widespread use in both written and spoken language but not approved in more prescriptive grammar books and often avoided by many writers of formal English, for example, split infinitives, stranded prepositions (e.g. *That's the woman I gave it* ***to***, compared with *That's the woman* ***to*** *whom I gave it*).
3. Rare or not occurring in writing but widespread and normal in spoken language (⁘ for example, **96 Headers** and **97 Tails**), and vice versa.
4. Regionally or socially marked in writing and/or spoken language but widespread and normal within major regional/social varieties of British English (⁘ for example, the use of *ain't*, **119b**).
5. Non-occurring and unacceptable in all varieties of British English (for example a structure such as *he did must speak*).

It is important, however, to note that what is acceptable may vary from one context or from one personal relationship to another.

Common forms of spoken grammar 119b

Accusative personal pronoun as subject

*I don't know how but **me** and my sister got lost in the market.* (level 3)
(the level 1 form would be: my sister and I got lost …)

Zero plural for nouns of measurement

*That's twelve **foot** long. You need something a lot shorter.* (level 3)
(level 1 form: twelve feet long …)

What as a relative pronoun

*That's the house **what** she rented.* (level 4)
(level 1 form: the house that/which …)

Them as demonstrative determiner and pronoun

*Did you get **them** photos we sent round?* (level 4)
(level 1 form: get those photos …)

A: *What are the right plants then?*
B: ***Them** over there, the peonies.* (level 4)
(level 1 form: those over there …)

Ain't as a negative contraction

*I know something. That **ain't** the answer.* (level 4)
(level 1 form: that isn't …)

➜ also **120** for *innit*, which may be regarded as a variant of *ain't it*

Double and multiple negation

*She has**n't** got **no** sense at all, she has**n't**.* (level 4)

*I have**n't** got **nothing** to say to **no one**.* (level 4)

➜ also **438a Double negatives and usage**

Patterns with past and *-ed* participle verb forms

These range from past forms used as *-ed* participle forms, *-ed* participle forms used as past forms and base forms used as past tenses:

*She's been so worried she's **hid** in her room.* (level 4)

*Yeah, it's good, innit, I **seen** it there yesterday.* (level 4)

*She's already **give** it to me, thanks.* (level 4)

Subject/verb concord

This is a very common area of variation in spoken grammar. Patterns occur involving singular noun + plural verb, plural noun + singular verb and structures involving existential *there*, in particular, in which a singular verb is followed by a plural complement. This last structure is very common in spoken English and is becoming established as a standard form:

*It **were** too heavy to move. You need a winch of some sort.* (level 4)

*We **was** frightened like. That's why we didn't call her.* (level 4)

***There's** three other people still to come.* (level 2)

REPRESENTING SPEECH IN WRITING 120

In writing, the expressive character of spoken language is represented by reproducing the sound of core words and phrases as accurately as possible. There is a wide variety of possible variants but the most common transcriptions are:

I don't wanna do it. (want to)

Havva nice day. (have a)

That's great innit? (isn't it?)

I dunno and she dunno. (don't/doesn't know)

I'm gonna have an iced coffee. (going to)

Dad, you just gotta look at this. (got to)

I hafta go now. (have to)

SPEECH INTO WRITING: THE SPOKEN-WRITTEN CONTINUUM 121

Informal writing 121a

It would be a mistake to assume that the forms of grammar common in spoken English are exclusive to speech. Though rare in written English, situational ellipsis, in particular, appears appropriately in written contexts and is especially common in signs and notices as well as faxes, email and internet communications. The relative immediacy of email communication means that informality is the preferred style and ellipsis marks both informality and a relative symmetry of relationship in the exchange:

[inter-company fax]
*Could you email Kyle Barber and ask him for a quote for a laptop? **Said** we'd let Tatchell have one for himself as part of the deal. Compaq or Toshiba. At least 40gb hard disk and 528Mb RAM. **Good deal**, tell David. **Worth** the laptop. **More** in the pipeline.*

In the structure *Good deal, tell David*, the ellipsis and word order (more typically in writing: *Tell David (that) it is a good deal*) are grammatical features which are much more common in speech than in writing but which are becoming standardised in many written communications.

Email messages and personal letters may often display ellipsis of initial elements, especially the pronoun *I*, indicating their status as something midway between written and informal spoken messages:

[email message]
*Hi, Anne. **Just got back** from a terrific conference in Stockholm.*
(understood: I've just got back …)

[personal letter closing]
*Well, **must go** and bake some bread now. **Will write** again soon. Love, Jane.*
(understood: **I** must go and bake …/**I** will write again soon.)

Formality in letter closings can be lessened by using ellipsis.

Ellipsis in letter closings

neutral/more formal	less formal (ellipted)
I look forward to hearing from you	*Look forward to hearing from you*
I hope to hear from you soon	*Hope to hear from you soon*
With regards from	*Regards*
With best wishes	*Best wishes* or *Best*
Yours sincerely	*Sincerely*

Postcards and other short written messages 121b

Postcard greetings texts conventionally use a great deal of ellipsis of the verb *be* and of initial elements:

> *Ireland as green as everyone said it was. Having a great time. Weather up and down, but beats work any day. Love, Nigel and Louise.*
> (understood: Ireland **is** as green as everyone said it was. **We're** having a great time. **The** weather **is** up and down, but **it/this** beats work any day.)

Clauses and sentences in informal writing 121c

Headers and tails, along with tags, so common in speech, also occur increasingly in informal writing:

> *He's a man who loves to play tricks on people **is TV presenter Noel Edmonds**.*
> (a more 'written' version of this sentence would be: 'TV presenter Noel Edmonds is a man who loves to play tricks on people'. The tail not only adds emphasis to the statement but it also imparts an informal character to the writing.)

The following examples, taken from an advertisement for the Chrysler Jeep Cherokee vehicle, indicate the spread into written text of irregularly punctuated clause fragments more commonly associated with spoken grammar (→ **87b**):

> *In these parts, you'll need a car that'll keep you on the road as well as take you off it. **Which is why the locals drive a Jeep Cherokee** … Instead of the usual soggy 4×4 handling, the Cherokee is taut and responsive. Not only does this make it safer to drive, it also makes it more exciting to drive. **As does the 4 litre engine under the bonnet**.*

Journalists also achieve impact and get on a 'conversational' wavelength with their readers by using common spoken discourse markers and purposefully vague language as well as response tokens such as *definitely*, *certainly*, *exactly*, which in the following examples serve as 'replies' in projected conversational exchanges:

> [magazine article]
> ***So** there I was sitting in Mick Jagger's kitchen while he went about making us both afternoon tea. **Well**, you can imagine how long it took to get him to talk about the band's latest album. **Exactly**. You've got it. Over two minutes.*

[magazine article]
He was talking about sport, Wimbledon, the World Cup, US Open Golf ***and that sort of stuff****.*

Advertisements and slogans 121d

Advertising copy writers in their advertising slogans often imitate the kinds of situational ellipsis found in conversation. By these means they attempt to achieve impact and a casual, almost chatty informality in the promotion of their products:

[magazine advertisement]
Thinking about cosmetic surgery?
(understood: **Are you** thinking about cosmetic surgery?)

[magazine slogan]
Coming soon … the one you've been waiting for!
(understood: **It's** coming soon.)

NEW MODES: INTERNET DISCOURSE 122

Informal emails are most typically exchanged between participants who know each other. Chat-room messages may involve 'conversations' which are built up over a period of time; or they may involve participants who behave as if they are in a virtual space or 'room', often with an assumed name or identity.

Emails and instant messages are often informal and can be written online with only a few seconds between one response and another. Similarly, chat rooms involve almost immediate speaking turns. They are written but they have the character of spoken language. They are a new and distinct mode of written-spoken English.

The following transcript is an example of how spoken and written forms overlap. It is from an internet chat in which two people with the log-in pseudonyms of Cato and Regent talk with each other (the use of dots … indicates that the dialogue has been edited for reasons of overall length):

Cato: *hi buddy!!! ;-)*
Regent: *hiya, wassup?*
Cato: *I been working SOOOO HARD!*
Regent: *did you know that your warning level is 0%* [see below]*
Cato: *well when I was on with Julia she gave me a 20% warning*
Regent: *what does it mean?*
Cato: *if someone misbehaves you can send them a warning …*
Regent: *ok how do you do it*
Cato: *click on the warn button …* [15 second pause]
Cato: *have you died or something?*
Regent: *all right hold your horses stop rushing me*
Cato: *sorry ;-)*
Regent: *SLOW DOWN*
Cato: *ok, slow*
Regent: *sloooooooow dn*

Cato: *ssssslllllloooooowwwwww* …
Regent: *bye everyone, bye bye*
Cato: *tarra luv!*
Regent: *good init?*
Cato: *yeh hehehe*
Regent: *;-)*
Cato: *hooorah!*
Regent: *amazing*
Regent: *silly tune aint it*
Cato: *you can go now you passed the smiley test*
Regent: *bye*
Cato: *byyyyyeeeee.*

The exchange is marked by attempts to represent speech in writing. Examples are: *wassup* (what's up?), *tarra luv* (goodbye love), *init*, *aint it* (isn't it?).

Although the medium used is written and responses are typed on a keyboard, a number of features of the chat-room language are very close to spoken English:

- A 'smiley' ☺ is created using the punctuation marks ;-) to imitate a human smile.
- Laughter is represented (*hehehe*).
- Spelling is creatively manipulated in order to reproduce particular sounds and familiar intonation patterns (e.g. *ssssslllllloooooowwwwww*).
- Non-verbal reactions and farewells (e.g. *SOOOO* and *byyyyyeeeee*) and punctuation, in particular, are used to act as a channel for the expression of feelings.
- Capitalisation and exclamation marks are exploited to underline what both participants see as an interaction in which emotional reactions and responses are given.

It is likely that such new modes will continue to create new forms of spoken English in writing.

* [In this particular chat room the software technology allows the creation of a 'buddy' list which participants can store electronically; it also sends a 'clanging' message every time a new chatter (chat-room term for a person who chats) enters the chat room; and a 'warn' button is available by which participants can send each other warnings if they use offensive language such as swearing. Excessive use of offensive language can mean that the offender is automatically removed from the chat room.]

Grammar across turns and sentences

Introduction 123
Cohesion and coherence 124
Reference 125
Referring expressions 126
Endophoric reference 127
Panel: *It, this* and *that* referring to segments of text 128
Textual ellipsis (*Yes I did.*) 129
Substitution 130
  General 130a
  Substitute forms 130b
Ellipsis versus substitution 131
Substitution for nouns 132
  One, *some*, *ones* 132a
  That, *those* 132b
  None, *enough* 132c
Substitute verb *do* 133
***So* as a substitute form** 134
Cohesion and comparative forms 135
Cohesion and linking adjuncts (*in addition, however*) 136
  General 136a
  Additive (*also*, *likewise*) 136b
  Resultative (*so*, *therefore*) 136c
  Contrastive (*rather*, *on the contrary*) 136d
  Time (*eventually*, *then*) 136e
  Concessive (*anyway*, *though*) 136f
  Inference (*then*, *in that case*) 136g
  Summative (*overall*, *in short*) 136h
  Listing (*firstly*, *lastly*) 136i
  Meta-textual (*namely*, *so to speak*) 136j
Panel: Coordinating conjunctions (*and, but, or*) and sentence boundaries 137
Parallelism and repetition 138
Cohesion and coherence in paragraphs 139

Grammar across turns and sentences

INTRODUCTION 123

This chapter (123–139) looks at grammar beyond the level of the sentence. In particular, it examines how grammatical links across sentence boundaries in writing and across speaker-turn boundaries in spoken language create textual cohesion. Cohesion is the sense of semantic unity possessed by texts as opposed to random sequences of sentences. Cohesion is created by cohesive links between sentences.

The following extract is from a written text – an encyclopedia – about the process of mining. Examples of cohesive links between sentences are marked in bold:

> ***Mining***
> *The **extraction** of useful **mineral substances** from the earth, either near the surface or at some depth. **It was** practis**ed** in prehistoric times, widely us**ed** in classical times, and be**came** highly developed after the introduction of mechanical power. In surface, strip, and open-cast **mining**, **the soil** is stripped away, and **the ore**, **coal**, **clay**, **or mineral** is **dug** directly. At **greater depths the deposits** are approached by horizontal **tunnels dug** from vertical **shafts** (**drifts**). Variants of **these digging methods** are adopted for different geological situations. **Other methods** of **mining** may be devised for particular **substances**.*

Marked in bold are examples of lexical items which repeat or restate earlier content (*mining* ➛ *mineral*; *substances* ➛ *substances*; *dug* ➛ *dug*), or which are semantically linked in some way (*mining* ➛ *extraction* ➛ *tunnels* ➛ *shafts*; *the earth* ➛ *the soil*). Also marked are grammatical words which refer the reader to entities in the text (*mining* ➛ ***it***; ***these*** *digging methods* ➛ ***other*** *methods*) and examples of grammatical repetition (e.g. past tenses). This chapter describes such grammatical links which enable a string of sentences in sequence to be read as a semantically cohesive text.

COHESION AND COHERENCE 124

Cohesion refers to the grammatical and lexical means by which written sentences and speakers' utterances are joined together to make texts. A text may be written or spoken, and spoken texts are typically constructed by more than one person.

A text is cohesive if, as a whole, the sentences and spoken utterances are semantically linked and consistent. A random set of unconnected sentences or spoken utterances just thrown together will probably not be cohesive; readers and listeners will not be able to see links between each sentence/utterance.

The coherence of a text depends on more than its lexical or grammatical properties. A text is coherent if its semantic and pragmatic meanings make sense in its real-world context to readers/listeners. Coherence depends on the reader/listener being able to interpret the message in relation to its context.

Coherence depends partly on the way that a writer or speaker assumes knowledge of the world and of the context on the part of readers or listeners, and partly on what sorts of clues and signals the writer/speaker puts into the text. Such clues and signals include the linguistic items which provide cohesive links between sentences, as exemplified in **123**, above.

Cohesion is largely a grammatical property of texts, but lexis can also play a part in linking sentences (⁘ the text extract in **123** above). For example:

I went to the dentist. I was nervous. I don't like injections.

Among these sentences there is grammatical cohesion which results from the parallel sequence of personal pronouns and past tenses, but the text coheres because of our knowledge that dentists administer pain-killing injections before dental treatment and that these can be painful and make some patients nervous. Thus the lexical items *dentist*, *nervous* and *injections* are linked coherently through semantic associations made by the reader.

Likewise, punctuation and the layout of the text can indicate how it should cohere. ⁘ **506 Appendix: Punctuation**

In this chapter the emphasis is on the grammar of texts and the part played by grammar in achieving textual coherence.

REFERENCE 125

Speakers and writers can make reference to people, places, things and ideas in a variety of different ways, as in these examples:

1 A: *Abigail didn't go?*
B: *No, **she** was at **her** mum and dad's.*

2 [these sentences are the opening sentences of a chapter in a novel]
***They** pressed round him in ragged fashion to take their money. Andy, Dave, Phil, Stephen, Bob.*

3 [speakers are looking at photographs]
A: ***That**'s a lovely one of you, **that** is.*
B: *Yes. I like **that one**.*

In **1**, *she* and *her* refer to a person already identified in the text (*Abigail*).

In **2**, *they* refers to people who are identified later in the text (the names in the second sentence).

In **3**, *that* and *that one* refer out from the text to things in the situation itself (the photos that the speakers are holding).

The references in **1** and **2** are endophoric (they operate within the text). The references in **3** are exophoric (they operate between the text and the external world).

Endophoric references are of two types: anaphoric (those which refer back to something earlier in the text) and cataphoric (those which refer forward to something later in the text).

Different kinds of reference

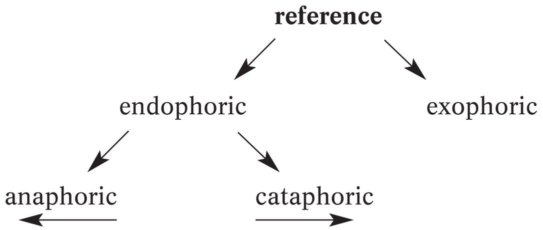

REFERRING EXPRESSIONS 126

Endophoric (anaphoric and cataphoric) and exophoric references are made using referring expressions. The people and things they refer to are called referents.

There are a number of types of referring expression. Among the most common are:

pronouns (for example, *he*, *she*, *it*, *mine*, *yours*, *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, *some*, *none*)

determiners (for example, *the*, *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*)

adverbs (for example, *here*, *there*, *then*).

In the following examples the referring items are in bold, and the referents are in green:

> *The children looked tired.* ***They****'d been travelling all day.*
> (anaphoric reference)
>
> *A smartly-dressed lady entered the shop.* ***This*** *lady had spent over one hundred pounds the day before.*
> (anaphoric reference)
>
> *They arrived at the resort.* ***Here*** *at last was a place they could relax.*
> (anaphoric reference)
>
> [blurb on the back cover of a paperback novel]
> *For a split second,* ***she*** *saw her own death, a gunmetal face fixed on the sky, all around the faces and voices of Carn as* ***she*** *had known it. Josie Keenan had come home to the town of Carn, the only home* ***she*** *knew.*
> (cataphoric and anaphoric reference)
>
> [public notice]
> *Vehicles parked* ***here*** *will be towed away.*
> (exophoric reference)
>
> [notice in a train compartment]
> ***These*** *seats are reserved for disabled customers.*
> (exophoric reference)
>
> [on a sign, accompanied by a direction arrow]
> *More antiques* ***this*** *way.*
> (exophoric reference)

ENDOPHORIC REFERENCE 127

Anaphoric reference

Anaphoric references are by far the more common type of endophoric reference, and are created most typically by pronouns and determiners:

> *New talks are under way. The outcome of **these discussions** may well determine future US attitudes towards trade with the EEC.*

There is lexical cohesion in this example between the two synonymous words *talks* and *discussions*, but the cohesion of these two sentences also depends on the anaphoric reference of the determiner *these*, which makes *talks* and *discussions* co-referential (i.e. they refer to the same thing, they have the same referent).

Cataphoric reference

Cataphoric references are considerably less common, especially in informal spoken language:

> [radio phone-in programme host]
> ***This** is the number to call if you want to give us your opinion: 0207600600.*
>
> *Now **here** is a recipe which you are certain to find tempting. It's one my mum used for making pecan pie.* [recipe then follows]

In fiction and journalism, cataphoric reference to a person or thing by means of a pronoun often creates a sense of suspense and involvement:

> ***He** was arrested late last night. James Gregg knew little about the circumstances of his arrest because at the time he was unconscious.*

Fixed expressions

A number of other fixed expressions allow anaphoric and cataphoric reference. Words and expressions such as *the former*, *foregoing*, *previous* create anaphoric reference, while words and expressions such as *below*, *as follows* and *the following* create cataphoric reference:

> *All of **the foregoing** needs of course to be put in its social and political context.*
>
> *On **the previous** page you will find details of our new offer as well.*
>
> *See **below** for more detailed instructions.*
>
> *I regret to inform you that your application is invalid for **the following** reasons.*

Longer reference

Words such as *this*, *which* and *such* can also be used to refer endophorically to segments of the text longer than just a noun phrase. That is, they may refer to preceding or following words and phrases, a previous or upcoming whole sentence or, sometimes, a whole stretch of text:

> *He is very experienced. **This is why** we should invite him.*
>
> *It's the best low-fat spread. **Which is why** you should keep loads in your fridge.*

Nobody has a bad word to say about her. ***Such*** *is her popularity.*

Well, ***this*** *is what the timetable says: buses every other hour but no service on Sundays.*

It, *this* and *that* referring to segments of text 128

The impersonal pronoun *it* and the demonstrative pronouns *this* and *that* are used in different ways to refer to segments of text or to ideas in the text.

It

It is used to continue reference to an entity which has already been established as a topic in the text:

> *The girl was so ecstatic afterwards, she had such a wonderful smile on her face.* ***It*** *was a sight I shall never forget.*
> (*It* refers neutrally to the girl's ecstatic behaviour and smile)

✪ *It* cannot be used to refer back to a title/heading or sub-title/sub-heading of a text. In such cases *this* is used or the full noun phrase is repeated:

> [*veggies* means vegetarians]
> ***Quorn or Mycoprotein***
> ***This*** *is a relatively new foodstuff which is sold as a meat substitute with a chicken-like texture.* ***It's*** *rich in protein and contains no animal fat and many veggies eat* ***it****.*
> (note how *it* is used to refer back once 'quorn' is established as a topic, but *it* cannot be used in the first sentence to refer back to *quorn* in the title.)

Or:

> ***Quorn or Mycoprotein***
> ***Quorn*** *is a relatively new foodstuff …*

But not:

> ***Quorn or Mycoprotein***
> ~~***It***~~ *is a relatively new foodstuff …*

It is not used when the referring pronoun is stressed:

> *She's proved herself as a writer, Mel.* ***That*** *you can't deny.*
> (stressed fronted pronoun object; *this* could have been used, but not *it*)

This, *that*

This is used to signal that an entity is a new or important topic in a text, or to refer to entities which the writer wishes to highlight or closely identify with:

> *If there is something that you particularly like that is fortified with vitamins you could try writing to the manufacturer and asking where they've come from.* ***This*** *not only helps you, it also lets the manufacturer know that people do care about what they're eating.*

That highlights entities less emphatically than *this*, and is often used to refer to facts, assertions, etc. which are of temporary interest but which are not major topics in the text. There is often a sense that the writer wishes to indicate a distance from the proposition or entity referred to:

> *Then, feeling rather foolish, he turned and hurried away down the drive.* ***That*** *was a hopeless beginning, he thought, as he returned to the house.*

That is also frequently used to refer to events and entities remote in time and space, or to ideas and propositions associated with another person or another participant in the discourse:

> *When I left that place, I realized there was something I could do about it – I could make sure I didn't eat those pigs or those hens or any animals. I also decided there and then to work to end this exploitation.* ***That*** *was a few years ago but my feelings haven't changed one bit.*
>
> *After a while Norrie suggested his brother, Alan Paramor, the music publisher, should help look after me.* ***That*** *seemed fine to us.*

TEXTUAL ELLIPSIS (*YES I DID.*) 129

Textual ellipsis refers to items which are normally treated as required by the grammar to complete the meaning but which are not present because they can be recovered by a listener or reader from the preceding or following text.

Verbs, especially the verb *be* (as copular or auxiliary verb), modal verbs, and *do* and *have* as auxiliary verbs, are regular triggers for ellipsis of complements and linked lexical verbs:

A: *I think you're right to find out more before you decide.*
B: *I know I* ***am****.*
(understood: I know I am right to find out …)

A: *Can you hear that noise?*
B: *Yes, I think I* ***can****. What is it?*
(understood: I think I can hear that noise.)

A: *Did you ring Jeff?*
B: *No I* ***didn't****. Sorry, I forgot.*

She used to heap food onto his plate so as he'd get fat. But he never ***did****.*

An auxiliary or modal verb, or copular verb *be*, often make repetition of a lexical verb unnecessary when contrasting subjects (in green in the examples) are present:

But I still don't see how you ***can help me****, or how anybody* ***can****.*

He ***was a football fan****. I* ***was*** *as well.*

Sometimes a contrast in tense/modality/polarity can prompt ellipsis:

The idea of sending her into a mental home is dreadful and we know that it ***would*** *do her no good. There is only one thing that* ***will****. That is the only chance for her, if she could be with you.*
(understood: There is only one thing that will do her good.)

I feel that if you ***can*** *help somebody you* ***should****.*

94 Situational ellipsis for further examples and discussion of ellipsis

SUBSTITUTION 130

General 130a

When substitution occurs, a substitute form is used instead of repeating a word, phrase or clause which occurs elsewhere in the text. In the following extracts, substitute forms are marked in bold:

> *Mrs Smith had been able to tell her what no one else could have* ***done****.*
> (*done* = told her)
>
> A: *Matthew, have you counted the plates?*
> B: *There are twenty two.*
> A: *Twenty two.*
> C: *Oh my.*
> A: *Oh there's still some underneath there. Can you get those out.*
> B: *Twenty two yeah. I did check.*
> A: *There should be a few little* ***ones*** *around.*
> D: *They're big* ***ones****, aren't they?*
> C: *There's some big* ***ones*** *over there, Pauline.*
> (*ones* in each case is understood as substituting for 'plates'.)
>
> A: *I'll see you in the morning before I go home.*
> B: *Well, I hope* ***so****.*
> (understood: Well, I hope you'll see me/we'll see each other.)

Substitution may be anaphoric (referring back) or cataphoric (referring forward) in the text. Cataphoric substitution is considerably less frequent than anaphoric, and is usually only found across clause boundaries rather than sentence boundaries:

- Anaphoric:

  A modem is the equivalent of a phone for your PC. You'll need ***one*** *if you want to use email or connect to the net.*

- Cataphoric:

  If you're ever looking for ***one****, there's a screwdriver in that drawer.*

A–Z 60 *One*

Substitute forms 130b

There are several different types of substitute form. They include indefinite quantifying pronouns, substitute *do*, substitute *so*, and expressions such as *the same*, *thus*.

Indefinite quantifying pronouns

(a) little
another
all
any
both
each
either
enough
few

half
less
many
much
neither
none
one(s)
other(s)
several
some

> *In wealthier countries, people tend to eat more foods like sweets, chocolate, cakes, crisps and snacks – all foods that are high in fat or sugar, or often* ***both****.*

> A: *D'you know a lot of people there?*
> B: *Mm, not* ***many****.*

> A: *Do you like the yellow roses?*
> B: *I prefer the red* ***ones****, actually.*

The substitute verb *do*

Do may substitute for a verb and any elements of complementation accompanying it:

> *Many of the renewable sources of energy are 'clean' sources. They do not cause pollution, as coal, gas, oil and nuclear energy* ***do****.*
> (*do* substitutes for 'cause pollution')

> A: *Who picked her up at the airport, you?*
> B: *No, Diane* ***did****.*

(➜ 133 below)

Substitute *so*

So may substitute for a *that*-clause complement, especially when it is the complement of a reporting verb:

> A: *It's difficult to manage, isn't it?*
> B: *Yes, very much* ***so****.*

> A: *D'you think they'll be interested?*
> B: *I would say* ***so****, yes.*
> (*so* substitutes for '(that) they'll be interested')

(➜ 134 below)

Complement phrases: *the same, likewise, similarly, thus*

The same, *likewise*, *similarly* and *thus* typically substitute for predicative complement phrases and clauses:

> A: *Nice to meet you anyway.*
> B: ***Likewise****.*

> *It's just really depressing you know. For me it is anyway. No, not only for me really, it is for the rest of the staff as well because everyone feels* ***the same****.*

ELLIPSIS VERSUS SUBSTITUTION 131

Often it is difficult to distinguish between ellipsis and substitution, since forms such as *some*, *any*, *much* can perform both functions (compare *ones* and *none*, which are clearly substitute forms):

A: *Do you seek any guidance from me?*
B: *I ask **none**, sir. But I have thought it possible that you might have it in your power, if you should deem it right, to give me **some**.*
(*none* is clearly a substitute for 'no guidance from you'; *some* could be seen as a substitute for 'guidance' or as ellipsis of 'some guidance')

SUBSTITUTION FOR NOUNS 132

One, some, ones 132a

One and *some/ones* are the most common items used to substitute for count nouns.

One can be used alone as a substitute or with premodification and/or postmodification:

*I want **a** decent **notebook** anyway. Where can I get **one**?*
(understood: Where can I get a decent notebook?)

*Most **diseases** have been around for a very long time, but not all of them. There is **a new one called Lyme disease**. Lyme disease has been studied only since 1975.*

*'Well, I shall get **a manager** somewhere, no doubt,' said Henchard, with strong feeling in his tones. 'But it will be long before I see **one that would suit me so well**!'*

Ones cannot be used alone in this way. Where there is no premodification or postmodification, *some* or *any* are used as a plural substitute:

A: *Do you want some stamps?*
B: *Well I haven't got **any**. Have you got **some**?*
A: *I've got some. I don't know if I've got enough for all those letters.*
(~~Well, I haven't got ones. Have you got ones?~~)

Ones is always premodified and/or postmodified:

[a punt is a flat-bottomed boat]
A: *Apparently they cost about £8,000, those punts.*
B: *They're incredibly expensive.*
A: *Mm.*
B: *You can get them cheaper. **Fibreglass ones** are cheaper than wood.*

[A comments on B's socks]
A: *They look like your dad's.*
B: *No they're not actually. They're mine but they're boys' school socks really. Cos I just wanted **some grey ones that were long enough to come out of the top of my boots**.*

✪ For non-count nouns, *some*, not *one/ones*, is used as a substitute:

> *We need a bit more furniture in here. We'll have to get* ***some*** *when the sales are on.*
> (~~We'll have to get one(s) when the sales are on.~~)
>
> A: *What's it like, that tea, then?*
> B: *Mm, nice.*
> A: *Can I try* ***some****?*

That, those 132b

That and *those* are used as substitutes in formal contexts instead of *the one/the ones* for non-count nouns where the substitute noun phrase is taking the place of a definite noun phrase:

> [from a text about computer storage media]
> *The most commonly used removable drive technology is derived from* ***that*** *found in conventional hard disks, which not only gives you high capacities but also provides fast performance.*
> (… is derived from 'the technology' found in …)
>
> *There are several different kinds of sign language. The most widely used are* ***those*** *which have developed naturally in a deaf community, such as the American, British, French, and Swedish Sign Languages.*
> (or, less formal: The most widely used are the ones which have developed naturally …)
>
> *The results were compared with* ***those*** *obtained from the best research laboratories.*

In more formal styles, and especially in academic style, *that of/those of* is used instead of *the one of/the ones of* or *the … one/the … ones*, and is preferred to the possessive *X's one/X's ones*. This usage is frequent within and across clauses. It is much less frequent across sentences:

> *He founded a school modelled on* ***that of*** *Confucius.*
> (~~He founded a school modelled on the one of Confucius.~~)
> (preferred to: He founded a school modelled on Confucius's one.)
>
> *Comic books are generally collaborations between a writer and an artist. In a process similar to* ***that of*** *making movies, writers' scripts are implemented and interpreted by artists.*
>
> *The chief sea-connecting canals are* ***those of*** *Suez and Panama.*
> (~~The chief sea-connecting canals are the Suez and Panama ones.~~)

That can only substitute for a thing, and not normally for a person or animal. *Those* may substitute for persons, animals or things:

> *I overheard them talking. They're looking for the girl.* ***The one*** *who was in all the papers.*
> (~~I overheard them talking. They're looking for the girl. That who was in all the papers.~~)

> *Today most of the Greenlanders live near the coast, particularly in the south west. Here, snow lies only in the winter and people can graze sheep, cows and reindeer and grow crops.* ***Those who*** *live further north earn their money mainly from fishing.*

None, enough 132c

Indefinite quantifying pronouns (⁘ 207) are also used to substitute for noun phrases:

> *The survivors then spoke up, backing the corporal's claim that they were left in a copse facing overwhelming machine-gun fire while their leaders went off supposedly to make contact with each other.* ***None*** *had heard an order to retreat, so they stayed until all their comrades had been killed and the options were die or run.*
>
> *Spencer's getting a huge lot of money. The others don't get* ***that much****.*
> (informal; more formal: The others don't get so much.)
>
> A: *Do we have bread?*
> B: *Yes, but not* ***enough*** *for breakfast.*
>
> *They had found each other's company delightful, stimulating. Yet* ***each*** *was wary of using* ***the other****; and, paradoxically, that had turned them into comrades, co-conspirators, almost.*

SUBSTITUTE VERB *DO* 133

Do, *do so*, *do it*, *do the same* are used to substitute for a verb and whatever complementation accompanies it:

> [reminiscing about olden days]
> A: *We had a milkman that had a horse and cart.*
> B: *Yes. We* ***did*** *too yes.*
> (understood: We had a milkman that had a horse and cart too.)
>
> [assistant at a cosmetics counter in a store, explaining the qualities of a face cream to a customer]
> A: *That will definitely offer you some protection. And even in the coldest weather it's almost like putting a cushion across the face to repel the harsh winds and things and stop your skin drying out as well.*
> B: *Right. Okay. I'll have a think about it.*
> A: ***Yes do****.*
> B: *Thank you very much.*
>
> A: *Can I borrow these scissors?*
> B: *Yes, of course,* ***do so****.*
> (more formal; understood: Yes, of course, borrow the scissors.)
>
> *I asked him if he had ever lost his temper with the press. He replied that he had never* ***done it*** *in public but always made sure that the journalist concerned knew how he felt.*

A: *I employed a lawyer. Would you try to defend yourself or not?*
B: *I would **do the same** as you.*

⁛ also **129 Textual ellipsis** for uses of *do*

Substitution of a lexical verb and its complement also occurs with a modal or an auxiliary verb + *do*:

A: *You could resign.*
B: *Yes, **I could do**, I suppose.*

A: *Have you rung Jo?*
B: *Yes, **I have done** but she wasn't in.*

Do so occurs in tensed and non-tensed forms (⁛ **215**). *Do so* is generally used in more formal contexts:

*If you are intending to do a reasonable amount of cycling, it is advisable to bring your own bike as the ones available for hire are of an inferior quality. If you **do so**, bring a good lock as bike theft is a problem here.*
(tensed)

*One of the main problems has been clearing away the many unexploded bombs left from the war. Many villagers have been killed **doing so**.*
(non-tensed)

[*neural networks* are a type of information network in a computer]
*Neural networks, on the other hand, don't look for absolutes, but for patterns in data. **Having done so**, they can then try and establish relationships between those patterns.*
(non-tensed)

Do so, *do it* and *do that* are often interchangeable, but there are occasions where one form is preferred over the others. *Do so* is generally the most formal of the three.

Do so is often preferred for making general reference to a series of actions or events:

[talking about a famous horse race in the streets of Siena, Italy]
*For the best view you need to have found a position on the inner rail by 2pm (ideally at the start and finish line), and to keep it for the next six hours. If you haven't **done so**, there's really no rush, as you'll be able to see a certain amount from anywhere within the throng.*

Do it is often preferred for making a more direct or precise reference to an action or event:

A: *I can't eat any kind of buttery stuff on pasta. It makes me feel sick.*
B: *Really.*
A: *I **did it** once and I woke up in the middle of the night and was sick.*

Do that is often preferred in contrastive situations:

> A: *I also think that if someone knows that they are terminally ill … at the moment they've not got that right to ask the doctor to switch the machine off.*
> B: *Euthanasia.*
> A: *I think they ought to be able to **do that** rather than suffer.*

SO AS A SUBSTITUTE FORM 134

So substituting for an adjective

So can substitute for an adjective predicative phrase:

> *It was the house that had been empty, years ago. It had remained **so** for a long time.*

> *I am angry. I have been **so**, many years.*

Cataphoric reference to an adjective complement is also possible with *so*, but it is very infrequent and rather formal:

> *He was, and remains **so**, very conscious of his responsibilities.*

More so, less so

More so and *less so* operate as comparative substitutes:

> *The prospect of a summer here, in the drowsy warmth of the south, had always been a pleasant one. Now it was **more so**.*

> *Some dangers, like industrial spying or sabotage, are obvious. Others **less so**.*

So substituting for *that*-clause

So is also used as a *that*-clause substitute:

> *And I know she's fond of Nicky. She told me **so**.*
> (understood: She told me that she is fond of Nicky.)

> A: *Does the hotel have room service?*
> B: *I believe **so**.*

The negative of *so* when substituting for a *that*-clause is *not*:

> A: *Are they all arriving at the same time?*
> B: *I hope **not**.*

> A: *Did she say when she'd be back?*
> B: *No, I'm afraid **not**.*

This type of substitution with *so* and *not* is common after the following verbs, especially in conversational responses:

appear
assume
be afraid
believe
*expect**
guess

hope
*imagine**
presume
*reckon**
seem
suppose
*think**

Those verbs with an asterisk (*) often occur with *so* but are less likely to be used followed by *not*:

A: *Is Jake coming too?*
B: *I* ***don't*** *think* ***so****.*
('I think not' is also possible, but infrequent and very formal)

A: *I wonder if she went with them?*
B: *I* ***wouldn't*** *imagine* ***so****.*

But note that *hope* is always used with substitute *not*, rather than negative declarative:

A: *You've spelt her surname wrong, haven't you?*
B: *Oh, I hope* ***not****.*
(~~Oh, I don't hope so.~~)

So with reporting verbs

Substitute *so* sometimes occurs in initial position in short responses with reporting verbs (e.g. *say*, *tell*, *hear*, *read*):

[talking of problems of obtaining home insurance]
A: *There's so many places that won't insure you now unless you've got locks on your doors and windows.*
B: **So** *I heard.*

A: *Alex Pruitt has been the subject of an internal investigation at Langley.*
B: **So** *Ruiz told me.*

So in exclamations

In exclamative responses, substitute *so* can precede the subject and verb *be* or a modal or auxiliary verb:

A: *The water-butt's completely empty.*
B: *Oh yes,* ***so*** *it is!*

A: *Oh, you've got oil stains on your trousers.*
B: *Oh,* ***so*** *I have!*

So meaning *as well*

Initial *so* often occurs, with a meaning similar to *as well* or additive *too*. This is particularly common in short responses and with pronoun subjects. Subject-verb inversion follows:

A: *I love those red tulips.*
B: **So** *do I.*
(or: I do too.)

A: *Well, we're ready.*
B: ***So** are we. Let's go.*

*Well, I've packed my case, and **so** should you, I think. We haven't got that much time.*

The negative is formed with initial *neither* or *nor*, or with *not* … *either*. In the case of negatives beginning with *neither* or *nor*, subject-verb inversion follows:

*Frank didn't go and **neither** did we in the end.*

A: *Oh, I haven't got any small change at all.*
B: ***Nor** have I.*

A: *I haven't got a fork.*
B: *Oh, Anne has**n't** **either**. I'll get some.*

A–Z 71 ***So*** for further examples

COHESION AND COMPARATIVE FORMS 135

Comparative forms across clauses and sentences can signal cohesion:

*Jim can play pool better than me. He's had **more** practice.*
(understood: … more practice than I have)

*Continuing south, you'll feel like an insignificant speck at the feet of the city's tallest structures. For a **better** view of them and their surroundings, take the short monorail ride to Harbor Island.*

460–471 Comparison

COHESION AND LINKING ADJUNCTS (*IN ADDITION*, *HOWEVER*) 136

General 136a

Linking adjuncts explicitly indicate the semantic relationship between two clauses or sentences or paragraphs (335):

[description of the city of Cardenas in Cuba; *bite its lip and bide its time* means 'be patient and wait (to get regeneration funds)']
*Many of its buildings, particularly the fortifications overlooking the harbour, are in need of renovation, but, with Havana and Trinidad eating up most of the regeneration budget, it seems that Cardenas will have to bite its lip and bide its time. It is, **nonetheless**, a charming little city and worth a look.*

*His face and hands were black with dirt. **In spite of this**, Catherine was very glad to see him and rushed up to kiss him.*

> [from a book about how second-language learners acquire vocabulary]
> *Second-language learners usually have to learn at a rate faster than the 'natural' rate of first-language acquisition.* ***In addition****, early stages of second-language acquisition involve a relatively small number of high-frequency words, for which there is a greater pay-off instructionally.* ***However****, second-language learners may also have a greater need to use context.*

Linking adjuncts can co-occur with coordinating conjunctions (in green in the examples below), in which case they follow the conjunction:

> *So I would like you to read the documents in order to improve or at least confirm your own knowledge and understanding of the network set up here. But* ***secondly****, it's important not only that you can answer students' questions but you can tell them where the information is available to them.*
>
> *Something happened to you and* ***as a result*** *your arm was broken.*

Linking adjuncts are a large class which includes single-word and phrasal items. The most common ones are listed in **136b–136j** (classified according to the semantic relations which they signal). Most of these linking adjuncts are more frequent in formal styles and in writing, but some (marked with *) are more frequent in informal spoken contexts.

Additive (*also, likewise*) 136b

Additive linking adjuncts indicate that the second text segment adds to, gives further or more specific information on, reinforces or expands in some way the information in the first. These include:

Single-word

again
also
besides
correspondingly
equally
furthermore
likewise
moreover
too

> *And I should have told you about things here. I often thought about it, then I thought no, it's too complicated. I didn't want to involve you.* ***Besides****, you don't tell me much these days. It's not like it used to be.*

Phrasal/clausal

above all
*as well**
in addition
in particular
*on top of it all**
*to cap it all**
*to crown it all**
what's more/what is more*

(*particularly frequent in informal spoken contexts)

> [about a network of young people in Scotland who call themselves *Article 12*, and who speak out on issues affecting children and young people's lives]
> *The name Article 12 comes from Article 12 of the UN Convention on the Rights of the Child, which says that young people have the right to express their views on any matter affecting them.* ***Above all****, young people want politicians to listen to their opinions and to use their experience to build a better future.*

Resultative (*so, therefore*) 136c

Resultative linking adjuncts indicate that the second text segment expresses a result or outcome of the events or states described in the first. These include:

Single-word

accordingly
consequently
hence
so
then
therefore
thus

> *After a few years riding the crest of an economic wave, New Zealand has recently seen a downturn in the economy and a resulting dive in the value of the New Zealand dollar.* ***Consequently****, most things will seem fairly cheap by European and North American standards.*

Phrasal/clausal

as a consequence
as a result
of course

> *My friend Jessica always wanted to be called Jessie but she introduced herself as Jessica.* ***As a result*** *everybody called her that.*

Contrastive (*rather, on the contrary*) 136d

Contrastive linking adjuncts indicate a contrast between the information in the first text segment and that in the second. These include:

Single-word

alternatively
instead
otherwise
rather

> *We'll have to invite him.* ***Otherwise****, he'll be offended.*

Phrasal/clausal

in/by comparison
in/by contrast
more accurately/more precisely
on the contrary
on the other hand
*then again**

(* particularly frequent in informal spoken contexts)

> *Few countries have satisfactory legislation on pesticides or the trained manpower to enforce it.* ***In contrast****, extensive use of pesticides in Europe, North America and Japan is backed by government legislation or voluntary schemes that provide farmers with detailed advice.*

*We've got computer facilities in the student union. And we've hopefully got some people from the Computer Centre who might be able to help a bit. But **then again** if you're interested in computers it's very easy to learn quickly by yourself.*

Time (*eventually*, *then*) 136e

Time linking adjuncts indicate a relationship of sequence in time between the information in the first text segment and that in the second. These include:

Single-word

afterwards
eventually
*meantime**
meanwhile
originally
subsequently
then

(*particularly frequent in informal spoken contexts)

*When thousands of seals began dying in European waters during 1988, pollution was first blamed for the tragedy. Tests **subsequently** showed the actual cause was a virus.*

Phrasal/clausal

after that
in the meantime

*Her printer is useless, it takes like 45 minutes to print anything out. **In the meantime** I've lent her mine.*

Concessive (*anyway*, *though*) 136f

Concessive linking adjuncts indicate that the speaker or writer is prepared to accept part of an argument or proposition (that part expressed in the second text segment) which typically in some way contrasts with what has already been stated. These include:

Single-word

admittedly
*anyhow**
anyway
besides
however
nevertheless
nonetheless
*only**
still
though
yet

(*particularly frequent in informal spoken contexts)

[talking about the risks of a serious industrial accident at a nearby factory]
*I mean they can't just close their eyes and say 'Oh no, it doesn't exist'. That's my opinion, **anyhow**.*

*They sat in Mrs Constantine's overcrowded parlour, where each small table bore its burden of photographs and ornaments and the walls were crowded with pictures. **Nevertheless**, it was cosy and comfortable with a fire burning cheerfully.*

••• 539 **Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

Phrasal/clausal

after all
all the same
at any rate
at the same time
for all that
in any case
in any event
in spite of that
*mind you**
of course
on the other hand
that said

(*particularly frequent in informal spoken contexts)

Don't get too excited! This could come to nothing. ***On the other hand****, it might work.*

Inference (*then, in that case*) 136g

Inference linking adjuncts indicate that the speaker/writer infers or concludes something in the second text segment, based on the evidence of the first text segment. These include:

Single-word

otherwise
*then**

(*particularly frequent in informal spoken contexts)

[at a travel agent's; A is the assistant]
A: [showing a brochure] *Perhaps I could give you this actually. There's some suggestions for destinations.*
B: *Oh right.*
A: *And so to go out via Taipei. Out to Tokyo. And then back via Bangkok. And Delhi as well by the looks of it.*
B: *Yes. Oh right. Can I take this brochure* ***then****?*
A: *Oh, certainly yes.*

Phrasal

in that case

If we try to imagine what's the worst possible accident we can imagine, right, it would be if all of this store of gas got released, you know, for whatever reason, if everything went wrong and the whole lot got out. Now ***in that case*** *we'd end up with a much bigger cloud of gas that would travel further before it got completely blown away, right, and couldn't affect anybody.*

Summative (*overall, in short*) 136h

Summative linking adjuncts indicate that the second text segment represents a summary or summing-up of the first. These include:

Single-word

altogether
overall
so
then
therefore
thus

[speakers talking about how they spent their holiday]
A: *And I mean that was second-hand the bike that I bought for Jenny because I couldn't see the point in spending for a brand new one when she's going to have outgrown it, you know, in a little while anyway. And she doesn't go out that much anyway.*
B: ***So overall** you'd say you had a fairly happy holiday this year?*
A: *Oh yeah. Yeah.*
C: *Yeah we enjoyed it. Yeah.*

Phrasal/clausal

- *all in all*
- *in conclusion*
- *in short*
- *in sum*
- *in summary*
- *to conclude*
- *to sum up*
- *to summarise*

[beginning of final paragraph in a book review]
***In sum**, this is a good book to have in your reference library – providing you have other sources of information on which to draw.*

Listing (*firstly, lastly*) 136i

Listing linking adjuncts indicate that the text segments in which they occur form part of a list of segments. These include:

Single-word

- *a, b, c,* etc.
- *finally*
- *first(ly)/second(ly)/third(ly),* etc.
- *lastly*
- *next*
- *one, two, three,* etc.
- *then*

There are two problems with assuming that our figure applies to the whole Chinese population.
***First**, we 'measured' lefthandedness by looking at which hand each student wrote with. This is only a restricted definition of lefthandedness.*
***Secondly**, the student population may not be representative of the population as a whole. But we do not believe that any bias in the sample would account for the difference between Gooch's figure of 18 per cent and ours of 3 per cent.*

Phrasal/clausal

- *first of all*
- *for a start**
- *for one thing … for another thing*
- *in the first place/in the second place*
- *last of all*
- *on the one hand … on the other hand*
- *to begin with/to start with*

(*particularly frequent in informal spoken contexts)

A: *But do you think these hopes and ambitions for the children now are very different from the ones your parents would have had for you?*
B: *Yeah. Definitely.*
A: *In what way?*
B: *Well, I don't think they'd have been worried so much about us going out and getting a job, **for a start**.*

Meta-textual (*namely, so to speak*) 136j

Meta-textual linking adjuncts indicate that the text segment they introduce either explains, paraphrases, exemplifies or relates topically to the previous segment or represents a temporary digression from the previous segment or a shift in topic. These include:

Single-word

incidentally

indeed

namely

now

*well**

(*particularly frequent in informal spoken contexts)

A: *We never do much at Arthur and Clarissa's in the mornings, as you know.*
B: *How is he, **incidentally**?*
A: *Oh Arthur is better than he was two years ago.*

Phrasal/clausal

*by the way**

for example

for instance

in other words

or rather

so to speak

that is

that is to say

to put it another way

(*particularly frequent in informal spoken contexts)

A: *I'm wallpapering this week and doing all the little jobs, you know, that need doing.*
B: *Oh I know. I know.*
A: *Isn't it boring.*
B: *Yeah. Oh, how did you get on **by the way** at the doctor's? Er you went on Friday.*
A: *Oh I'll tell you about it over the weekend.*

[review of the technical features of a digital camera]
*You can even automatically place images in prespecified positions in documents. **In other words**, it is the shape of digital cameras to come.*

A–Z 54 *Now*; 76 *Well*

Coordinating conjunctions (*and*, *but*, *or*) and sentence boundaries 137

In writing, the coordinating conjunctions *and*, *but* and *or* are traditionally viewed as being inappropriate as the first item in a sentence. However, they frequently occur as sentence beginners in both speech and writing, though less so in very formal and academic writing styles. In this way they provide important cohesive links between sentences, and should not be thought of as 'bad style':

> *A universal cry of horror and fury arose: Vengeance! The bodies of the victims were loaded on a cart lit with torches. The cortege moved back amidst curses at a funeral pace. **And** in a few hours Paris was covered with barricades.*
>
> *Glass could be impregnated with inorganic pesticides, then ploughed into the land. **Or** pellets impregnated with trace elements could improve the diets of cattle; in impoverished pastures similar pellets would protect cattle from parasites.*

PARALLELISM AND REPETITION 138

Often sentences and utterances may be seen to be cohesively linked because of parallel grammatical features. Such features are common in literary and other creative styles (e.g. music lyrics):

> [text from a novel; parallel tense/aspect choices are in bold]
> *From being afraid of nothing he **had become** wary of everything, yet he was exalted on realising that all his actions so far **had been rooted** in an alien timidity. He **hadn't been born** that way. Circumstances **had made** him so. The jungle **he had been brought up** in **had instilled** nothing but fear, **which had shaped** all his decisions. The Malayan forest **had been** congenial.*

In the following extracts, lexical repetition combines with parallel structures and repeated grammatical items (comparatives, reporting verbs, modal verbs, *-ing* forms and *-s* forms):

> *They were Zoe's age. Old**er**. Not much old**er**. Smart**er**, hard**er** than Alma's daughter but how would I know? **she thought**, despairing, **she might** have chang**ed**, **she must be** chang**ing** … **She might** be in **love**. **She might love** a stranger. Alma tried to reconstruct her train of thought. It was something to do with **love**, **she thought**. **Loving the** picture. **Loving the** painter. **Love** somehow let**s** you into **the** picture. Allow**s** you to enter. **Love** allow**s**.*
>
> [a group of young female students are chatting on a Sunday evening in their shared accommodation]
> A: *I like **Sunday** nights for some reason, I don't know why.*
> B: [laughs] *Cos you **come home**.*
> C: *I **come home**.*
> B: *You **come home** to us.*
> A: *And we don't go out.*
> B: ***Yeah yeah**.*
> C: ***Sunday**'s a really nice day, I think.*
> B: ***It** certainly **is**.*
> C: ***It's a really nice** relaxing **day**.*
> B: *It's an earring, **it's an earring**.*
> C: *Oh lovely, **oh**, **lovely**.*
> B: ***It**'s fallen apart a bit but …*
> C: ***It**'s quite a nice one actually, I like that.*

COHESION AND COHERENCE IN PARAGRAPHS 139

Paragraphs consist of an indeterminate number of sentences, but often a particular sentence may stand out as being more important than the others and provide important clues as to textual coherence. For example, the first sentence of a paragraph often indicates what the whole paragraph will be about, and is sometimes called the topic sentence. Equally, the final sentence in a paragraph may represent the logical conclusion or a summary of all the previous sentences.

··⁘ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

In the following extract, the first sentence in the paragraph flags what the whole paragraph will be about (forming a friendship with one's dictionary) and sets the syntactic framework (the initial modal adjuncts in bold) for the subsequent sentences:

> [new paragraph in the introduction text to a learners' dictionary of English]
> ***Maybe** people see their dictionary as a friend*. ***Perhaps** a bond is created in all the hours that a learner spends together with a dictionary. **Perhaps** some of the character of the book rubs off on the reader.*

Wh-cleft structures and similar foregrounding structures (··❖ **475d**, **475**) may signal that the sentence in which they occur is a key sentence in the paragraph:

> [*UFO* = unidentified flying object]
> *Of course many pitfalls may lie in wait at this point of the research. But it is possible, with caution, to isolate categories of UFO with general characteristics. An example of one category of UFO, which some researchers have pinpointed, is of objects with an ovoid shape from 1 to 3 metres in diameter, which rotate on a vertical axis, close to the ground, and which appear to emit a wide range of electromagnetic radiation. Perhaps **what is most important is** that the nature of such identifiable UFO categories, and the conditions under which they might be observed, are predictable, after careful analysis of the data. Scientific searches, with appropriate instrumentation, are now able to prove once and for all that these UFOs do exist, and can provide information about their nature. To distinguish such phenomena from more dubious data, we propose that they should be renamed 'UAPs', for unidentified atmospheric phenomena, as this seems to be an appropriate and adequate description.*
>
> ***What is lacking at this stage is** for some imaginative research laboratory or university department to contact serious UFO researchers and design an experimental study for these UAPs. In the US, Harley Rutledge, head of the physics department at Southcast Missouri State University, has conducted a pilot study, with some encouraging results.*

Cohesive ties may operate across paragraph boundaries as well as sentence boundaries, especially determiners, comparative expressions and linking adjuncts:

> [from a book discussing different types of language-teaching material]
> *With international materials it is obvious that the needs of individual students and teachers, as well as the expectations of particular schools in particular countries, can never be fully met by the materials themselves.*
>
> ***Indeed**, **most users** seem to accept that what they choose will in many ways be a compromise and that they will have to adapt the materials to their situation.*

> [from a book of tasks and activities for second-language learners]
> *Competitive activities that pit pairs against pairs and threes against threes are excellent for fostering collaboration and mutual help within each team. In this heightened atmosphere a lot of learning takes place without the students noticing they are 'studying'.*
>
> *In many of* ***these activities*** *the students' language task is to look at a set of sentences and decide which are correct and which are wrong. We believe that this testing of their own criteria is central to students building up a strong internal monitor to help them speak and write correctly.*

Pronoun ties alone may often be felt to be too weak across paragraph boundaries, and a definite determiner + noun may be preferable, as in the example above, where *these* used alone, without repeating *activities* in the second paragraph, may not have provided a strong and clear enough link. Equally, to have said 'their language task' instead of *the students' language task* in the second paragraph may not have been felt to be a strong enough tie.

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

Grammar and academic English

Introduction 140
Integrating information in the noun phrase 141
  Premodifying: classifying and evaluating 141a
  Premodifying: coordination and hyphenation 141b
  Premodification of adjectives 141c
  Post-head elements: defining and specifying 141d
  Noun phrases in spoken academic styles 141e
Nominalisation 142
Textual signals 143
  Signalling with *it*, *this* and *that* 143a
Textual signals: the verb phrase 144
  General 144a
  The present simple 144b
  The past simple 144c
  The present perfect 144d
  Modal expressions 144e
  Verb phrases: contractions 144f
Active and passive voice in academic discourse 145
Hedging and boosting 146
  Modality and tense-aspect 146a
  Hedging: modality 146b
  Hedging: other expressions 146c
  Hedging and impersonal constructions 146d
  Boosting 146e
Personalising and de-personalising: pronouns 147
  I versus *we* 147a
  You and *one* 147b
Other impersonal constructions 148
  It-constructions 148a
  Existential *there* 148b
  Third person self-reference 148c
Imperatives and rhetorical questions 149
Sentence patterns 150
Panel: Clauses with *as* … 151
Linking adjuncts 152
Panel: Problems with linking adjuncts 153
Other aspects of academic style 154
  The grammar of titles and sub-titles 154a
  Punctuation 154b
  Bibliographies and lists of references 154c

Grammar and academic English

INTRODUCTION 140

Academic writing and speaking take place in a variety of contexts. Student essays, assignments, presentations, dissertations and theses, lectures, tutorials, conference papers, books and articles by professional academics, all have different formal conventions, but all have a great deal in common in terms of grammar.

Academic writers and speakers mainly communicate with other academics and therefore can refer to things in complex and condensed ways, taking for granted that their readers and listeners share the grammatical conventions and contextual frames of reference to interpret them.

In general, academic language, especially writing, has quite complex structures and is more formal and impersonal in style than everyday language. The structuring and signposting of academic texts is important, and in spoken academic language, such as lectures and demonstrations, the spoken words are often accompanied by handouts, projected images, the whiteboard, etc., all of which have an effect on the grammar used (e.g. deictic words referring to diagrams and visuals: *here*, *above*, *see Table Two*, *in this chart*, etc.).

Much of the grammar of academic English is shared with that of English as a whole, and there are no special structures which are unique to academic English and never found elsewhere. On the whole, the grammar of academic English is closer (in both its spoken and written forms) to the grammar of general written English than to the grammar of general spoken English.

Where grammatical structures and items have been indicated as associated with written language in this book, then by and large such features are appropriate to academic English, with the exception of places where we have mentioned specialist registers such as journalism, advertising and specific literary conventions.

This chapter (140–154) focuses on items and structures which are common in academic language and which characterise it. We distinguish where appropriate between written and spoken academic styles. The chapter examines how information is packaged (typically in rather dense noun phrases), how tense, aspect, voice and modality are used to structure and signpost texts and to create an appropriate relationship with the listener/reader, how pronouns create such relationships, how sentences are typically linked, and how specific conventions are used (e.g. citing, abbreviations).

INTEGRATING INFORMATION IN THE NOUN PHRASE 141

The noun phrase is an important structure in academic English. Academic style, especially in writing, packs a great deal of information quite densely into noun phrases.

Noun phrases in academic writing tend to be more complex than in everyday, non-academic speech (→ **141e**) or informal writing, especially in terms of modification and the embedding of elements, all of which serve to integrate different types of information in the noun-phrase structure.

Premodifying: classifying and evaluating 141a

Adjectives of classification (i.e. those which refer to the type or category of something, e.g. *chemical*, *Asian*, *metallic*, *conical*, *prehistoric*) and noun phrase premodifiers (→ **170a**) are frequent, especially in scientific and technical writing. Unlike in informal conversational language, several premodifiers often occur, combining both adjectives and noun phrase modifiers.

In the examples, noun phrases are in green, premodifiers are in bold type:

[fluid mechanics text]
The effect of ***bottom*** *scattering on* ***swell*** *propagation is illustrated with* ***numerical model*** *computations for the* ***North Carolina continental*** *shelf using* ***high-resolution*** *bathymetry and an* ***efficient semi-implicit*** *scheme to evaluate the* ***bottom scattering source*** *term and integrate the* ***energy balance*** *equation.*

[about C.P. Scott, Editor of the *Manchester Guardian* newspaper]
At the same time, Scott rejected the ***prevailing contemporary*** *notion that the press should merely 'represent' the readers' interests.*

Thornes & Shao (1991b) tested the sensitivity of individual meteorological parameters in a ***road weather information*** *system by using a range of input values.*

Evaluative adjectives (those which give subjective judgements, such as *interesting*, *ground-breaking*, *misguided*, *excellent*, etc.) are more frequent in humanities subjects, where opinion and personal stance are often foregrounded. Such adjectives are normally gradable and may be premodified by adverbs of degree:

(noun phrases in green, premodifiers in bold type)

The literature of Latina writers, like other ethnic literatures, examines in ***very commanding*** *and* ***provocative*** *ways the construction of identity in the American context.*

In the ***familiar*** *territory of women's work, oral histories of societies at war have opened up a* ***far more fragmented*** *past experience than the narrative of social progress might suggest.*

Premodifying: coordination and hyphenation 141b

Premodifiers are often coordinated in academic styles, thus avoiding repetition of the noun head:

(noun phrases in green, coordinated premodifiers in bold type)

For both ***normal and oblique*** *incidence, the* ***stochastic and deterministic*** *theories are equivalent in the limit of long propagation distances.*
(compare with the uncoordinated alternative: For normal incidence and oblique incidence, …)

> *… and that sole parents and disability support pensioners should be required to demonstrate some form of **social or economic** participation in return for receiving income support.*

Hyphenated compound adjectives are frequent, and these also contribute to the integration and condensation of information. They often reflect the condensation of a noun and its complement phrase:

> (noun phrases in green, hyphenated premodifiers in bold type)
>
> *Spiral galaxies have a **disc-like** appearance, with distinct, **spiral-shaped** arms on which most of the stars reside.*
> (compare the noun-complement alternative: Spiral galaxies have an appearance similar to a disc, with distinct arms in the shape of a spiral on which most of the stars reside.)
>
> *These unusual outcomes have a number of **policy-relevant** implications for sustainable development.*
> (compare: … a number of implications (which are) relevant to policy for sustainable development.)

Premodification of adjectives 141c

Adjectives are frequently premodified by adverbs in academic style:

> [*SMS* = 'safe minimum standard' for the conservation of endangered species]
> *Arguments for the SMS are typically invoked in settings involving considerable uncertainty and **potentially irreversible** losses.*
>
> [describing an experiment to test people's anxiety levels, involving them making a speech while looking at a computer monitor screen where an 'audience' is displayed; the subjects have to imagine the audience is real]
> *High and low **socially anxious** individuals were asked to make a speech to a monitor displaying six people whom they believed to be watching them live.*

Post-head elements: defining and specifying 141d

Postmodified and complemented noun phrases are extremely frequent in academic English because of the frequent need for definition and specification. All the types of postmodification and complementation described in **The noun phrase** are used; ⁘ 171–172.

Prepositional phrases are very frequent, and may consist of several occurring together:

> (noun phrases in green, prepositions beginning post-head elements in bold type)
>
> *From their differing positions **within** the family, men and women separately weighed the potential benefits and risks **of** migration.*

> *The Bragg scattering **of** random, non-stationary surface gravity waves **by** random topography **on** a gently sloping bottom is investigated.*

Embedded prepositional phrases are common. This is another important aspect of integrating the maximum amount of information in the noun phrase:

> (noun phrases in green, prepositions beginning embedded phrases in bold type in the examples)
>
> [a *vole* is a small, mouse-like creature]
> *In a field study **on** the behavioural response **of** grey-sided voles Clethrionomys rufocanus **to** predator odour, ear tattoos were used for individual marking of the voles in the field.*

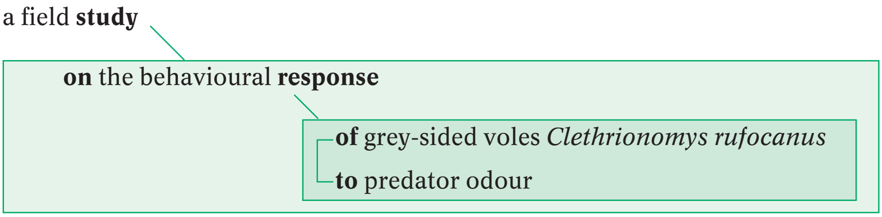
a field **study**
on the behavioural **response**
of grey-sided voles *Clethrionomys rufocanus*
to predator odour

> *This article demonstrates the connection **between** journalism, patriotism, and the culture **of** public discussion **in** late Victorian Britain.*

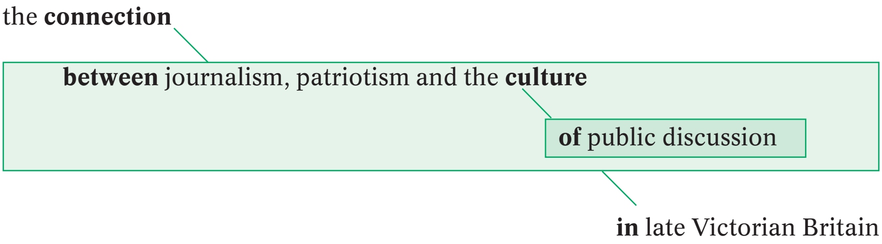
the **connection**
between journalism, patriotism and the **culture**
of public discussion
in late Victorian Britain

Postmodification by non-finite clauses is frequent in academic style:

> (noun phrases in green, postmodifying clauses in bold type)
>
> *The Latina writers **interviewed** consider their work to have a legitimate place in the canon of North American literature.*
> (compare the finite alternative: The Latina writers who were interviewed …)
>
> [from an article on nutrition, involving giving restricted amounts of food to laboratory rats]
> *In previous studies the precise measurement of spontaneous activity was not possible in experiments **involving the laboratory rat** and, therefore, the energy **expended in relation to activity** and its role in adaptation to feed restriction could not be assessed.*

Noun phrases in spoken academic styles 141e

Spoken academic styles vary from being rather formal (e.g. large, formal lectures) to quite informal (e.g. small-group tutorials where teacher and students have built up a relaxed, friendly relationship). Noun phrases more typical of written styles, with much premodification and postmodification, occur in formal lectures, etc.

> (noun phrases in green, premodificaton and postmodificaton in bold type)
>
> [lecture on English literature]
> *But despite the apparent diversity of opinion, Anti-Pamelists were united on what they saw as three serious problems. All of which pertained to* ***the earlier apparently subversive*** *part* ***of the novel****.*
>
> [endocrinology lecture]
> *So you ought to be able to work out what seventy per cent of sixteen point eight millimoles per minute is in terms of* ***the proximal tubular sodium*** *reabsorption* ***per minute****.*

In more informal lecturing styles and in informal tutorials and classes, typical spoken noun phrases are common, where information is added incrementally rather than integrated into a single noun phrase:

> (noun phrases in green, noun heads in bold type)
>
> [informal literature seminar]
> *It is a fascinating* ***question****. It's a* ***question*** *of the kind that I don't think we pursue enough. And it's* ***one*** *that I'm still wrestling with.*
> (compare an integrated alternative: It is a fascinating and under-researched question which is the subject of continuing investigation.)

➜ also **142 Nominalisation** and **175 Formation of nouns (nominalisation)**

NOMINALISATION 142

Noun phrases are often used in academic style as an alternative to longer, clausal constructions, thus enabling the writer/speaker to integrate a considerable amount of information into the noun-phrase subject slot or object slot in the clause. This process, using a noun phrase to express a meaning more typically associated with an item from another word class, is called nominalisation.

Nominalisations include nouns which express verb-type meanings and adjective-type meanings. They are more frequent in written academic styles than in spoken:

> [*IR* = the academic discipline International Relations]
> *The result was an IR canon, of the 'Plato to Nato' variety, which was substantially anachronistic.* ***Its dismantling*** *over the last twenty years has much to do with efforts in the area of conceptual history. Despite this, and the* ***keenness*** *of post-positivist IR theorists to display an historical* ***consciousness****, IR and history maintain an uneasy* ***association****.*
> (compare: *It was dismantled* over the last twenty years, and this has much to do with efforts in the area of conceptual history. Despite this, and the fact that post-positivist IR theorists *are keen* to display the fact that they *are* historically *conscious*, IR and history continue *to be associated* uneasily with one another.)

> [*marking* and *recapture* refer here to capturing and marking animals for scientific research]
> *The time lag between **marking** and first **recapture** was higher than the lag between second and third **recapture**, which indicates a trauma caused by the marking procedure.*
> (compare: The time lag between *when we marked the animals* and *when we first recaptured them* was higher than the lag between *when we recaptured them for the second and third time* …)

TEXTUAL SIGNALS 143

Textual signalling refers to how certain types of word signal the structure or organisation of the text. Textual signals guide the reader around the text and point to how the writer/speaker wants the text to be interpreted.

Signalling with *it*, *this* and *that* 143a

Reference to textual segments is an important aspect of academic style. The impersonal pronoun *it* and the demonstrative pronouns *this* and *that* are used in different ways to organise references to text segments and are frequently not interchangeable:

> *For example, interacting with native speakers is obviously a Social Strategy, but if **it** is part of an overall language learning plan, **it** could also be a Metacognitive Strategy.*
>
> *Low-luminance flickering patterns are perceived to modulate at relatively high rates. **This** occurs even though peak sensitivity is shifted to relatively low temporal frequencies.*
> (the whole of sentence one is the topic of sentence two)
> (~~It~~ occurs even though peak sensitivity is shifted to relatively low temporal frequencies.)
>
> [anatomy lecture]
> *And then that's what's called acoustic shadowing, you see, nothing getting through the back, there's a black shadow behind it. **This** is because this is a densely calcified gallstone sitting in his gall bladder.*
> (*This* refers to 'acoustic shadowing … nothing getting through the back, there's a black shadow behind it' and makes those clauses the new topic for discussion)
>
> [genetics lecture]
> *As I say, you'll learn more about the genetic codes which relate GAG to glutamate and GUG to thyamine in one of the other lectures in the course. **That** is another way of expressing the flow of information from DNA to proteins. Right.*

128 for a full account of these uses of *it*, *this* and *that*

TEXTUAL SIGNALS: THE VERB PHRASE 144

General 144a

The verb phrase is important in academic discourse as the place where a number of textual signals of various kinds occur. These include using tense-aspect choices to mark the status of a quotation or citation vis-à-vis the writer's/speaker's current position (⇢ **144b–144d** below), or the use of modal verbs for hedging propositions (altering their level of assertiveness; ⇢ **146** below) as a way of forestalling a challenge to or rejection of a claim.

Academic language has characteristic uses of tense and aspect which relate to important academic textual functions. These include:

Signposting

Tense-aspect choices refer the reader/listener backwards and forwards in the text. For example: *In this chapter we* ***have looked*** *at the process of compound formation*.

Structuring

Particular tense-aspect choices tend to be associated with particular parts of academic texts. Abstracts, summaries, concluding sections of academic books, papers and presentations, etc. usually have typical tense-aspect patterns associated with them (e.g. present simple in abstracts, ⇢ **144b**).

Reporting/narrating

Tense-aspect choices have become institutionalised for reporting and narrating experiments and studies, and for stating findings and conclusions, etc. (e.g. past simple narrating experimental procedures, ⇢ **144c**).

Citation

Tense-aspect choices have become institutionalised for citing and quoting one's own work and the work of others in different ways (⇢ **144d**).

The present simple 144b

Abstracts/summaries

The present simple form often appears in abstracts and summaries of academic works such as articles, chapters, dissertations, theses, essays:

> *This article* ***looks*** *at the effect of transoceanic migration on rural Sicilian families. The author* ***focuses*** *on the conflicts, stresses and transformations experienced by members of transnational families.*

Reporting findings

The present simple form is often used to report the outcome, results or findings of a piece of research (⇢ **144c** to compare the use of the past simple to narrate details of experiments):

> *This paper discusses some asymptotic uniform linearity results of randomly weighted empirical processes based on long-range dependent random variables. These results* ***are*** *subsequently* ***used*** *to linearize nonlinear regression quantiles in a nonlinear regression model with long-range dependent errors, where the design variables can be either random or nonrandom. These, in turn,* ***yield*** *the limiting behavior of the nonlinear regression quantiles. As a corollary, we*

> ***obtain*** *the limiting behavior of the least absolute deviation estimator and the trimmed mean estimator of the parameters of the nonlinear regression model.*

Reporting significant aspects of people's work

The present simple form is often used to report major tenets or central aspects of the work of other academics, especially where such work is considered important or relevant to the present context:

> *As Wittgenstein* ***suggests****, there is no such thing as a private language.*
>
> [lecture on text linguistics]
> *Halliday* ***argues*** *that there are three basic transitivity choices. Okay. And he* ***calls*** *them process options.*

However, where the citation reports experiments and specific studies, the past simple is preferred.

> *Unlike previous work, our study personally* ***followed*** *subjects rather than relying on record linkage methods to obtain information on death. In addition, we* ***examined*** *mortality differences for men and women at several points from the beginning of the illness and over its course.*

Creating synopses of fictional plots in works of literature

The present simple is used to summarise the plot/events in e.g. novels and plays:

> *Four men once close to Jack Dodds, a London butcher,* ***meet*** *to carry out his peculiar last wish: to have his ashes scattered into the sea. For reasons best known to herself, Jack's widow, Amy,* ***declines*** *to join them.*

The past simple 144c

Referring to the procedures used in individual studies

The past simple form is common when academics refer to the procedures used in their own and others' individual experiments and studies:

> [reporting one's own experiment/study]
> *In two studies, 65 three-year-olds, 57 five-year-olds, and 74 adults* ***viewed*** *video clips of animals or inanimate objects being transported by a person. For each clip, the child* ***was*** *asked whether the animal or object was moving.*
>
> [reporting experiments/studies by others]
> *Bogren et al (2000) statistically* ***modelled*** *the magnitude of such temperature deficits with respect to solar elevation.*

The present perfect 144d

Citing

Citing with the present perfect simple is similar to the use of the present simple form (➜ **144b**), and can sometimes occur as an alternative to the present simple, but the present perfect is especially used to emphasise current relevance or continuing debate:

> *Berg and Hudson (ch. 6; Hudson 1989)* ***have emphasised*** *that modern factories need not have been large, yet the factories nonetheless were closely divided in their labour.*

> *Schneirla (1966)* ***has used*** *the concept of 'experience' to mean all kinds of stimulative effects from the environment.*

Recapitulating

The present perfect simple is used to summarise or recapitulate points or arguments in the discourse up to a particular moment, especially in concluding sections:

> *What is more, the qualitative analyses in this chapter* ***have illustrated*** *crucial aspects of the lexical characteristics of everyday spoken language, and although we* ***have argued*** *against over-generalisation from one-off analyses, it is true that one does not need much data to see the same features constantly recurring.*

> [literary stylistics seminar]
> *But of course we* ***have talked*** *about the shape of the poem and that's where I want to go next. So if you have a look on the next sheet. We****'ve talked*** *about lexis. We****'ve talked*** *about morphology so far, and what we're looking at now is graphology. That is the actual shape on the page.*

Ongoing processes

The present perfect progressive is not typically used in concluding sections of academic texts, but may be used to refer to an ongoing process in the discourse up to a given point:

> [discussing the way the playwright, Samuel Beckett, uses the space of the theatre stage]
> *This pure space, which has only extension but no location, is quite different from the theatrical spaces I****'ve been discussing*** *so far.*

> [embryology lecture]
> *And probably the surgical procedures that we****'ve been talking*** *about while thinking of ways of correcting before birth can have a major effect.*

In general, progressive verb forms are not frequent in academic citations and in the structuring of academic texts (··⁘ **144e**), since academic texts are usually concerned with things that have permanent and long-lasting relevance, rather than temporary or unfolding relevance.

Modal expressions 144e

Will/shall/'ll

An academic writer/speaker may use *will/shall/'ll* to refer forward in a written text or in an academic presentation (e.g. a lecture), to outline or point to things which are to be found later in the text.

Both simple and progressive forms are used. Progressive aspect is especially used when the writer/speaker refers to events which will be repeated or be constant over longer stretches of text.

Shall, especially, indicates an undertaking by the writer/speaker to do the action referred to:

> *Radiant energy plays a vital role in astrophysical scenarios, and often appears as an equal partner to matter in determining the nature of physical processes which govern different structures. So we* ***shall*** *next* ***consider*** *different types of radiant energy which exist in nature and how they interact with matter.*

It seems to me that this second case, in which coordination gives way to subordination, often holds in the works of Pascal that I ***shall be discussing****.*

[discussing the body displays and vocal displays made by animals]
In the different subsections of this section, I ***will discuss*** *different possible mechanisms underlying aspects of display development and their interrelationship.*

[immunology lecture]
*Let's now just concentrate on the B cells for a few minutes. And then we****'ll*** *come back to the T cells.*

✪ As is true with all verb contractions, the contracted form *'ll* is not normally used in written academic style (⁘ **144f**).

Be going to

Be going to is often used for forward reference in spoken academic style but is generally not used for this purpose in written academic style:

[law lecture]
But do you think that there is a point where the position of consumers has to be looked at very differently from businesses? [pause] *We****'re going to*** *talk about this more next week because we****'re going to*** *be talking about the Unfair Term.*

Verb phrases: contractions 144f

Contracted verb forms are generally avoided in academic writing:

It is *doubtful that such a project ever existed.*
(~~It's doubtful that …~~)

[discussing the influence of the philosopher Schopenhauer on the novelist D.H. Lawrence]
I am *not saying that Lawrence* ***did not*** *read the other essays or even 'The World as Will and Idea';* ***I am*** *saying that* ***there is*** *no evidence that he did, and* ***we cannot*** *assume any but the briefest familiarity with Schopenhauer's system.*
(~~I'm~~ not saying that Lawrence ~~didn't~~ read the other essays or even 'The World as Will and Idea'; ~~I'm~~ saying that ~~there's~~ no evidence that he did, and ~~we can't~~ assume any but the briefest familiarity with Schopenhauer's system.)

Spoken academic presentations, however, often use contracted forms:

[university tutorial group; lecturer speaking about the writer, Jane Austen]
*Maxims usually express a commonsense point of view and Jane Austen****'s*** *full of that commonsense.*

[immunology lecture]
*And you can see that this is very similar to the picture we****'ve*** *looked at previously but we****'ve*** *added on two more molecules. So here****'s*** *our surface of the T cell.*

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE IN ACADEMIC DISCOURSE 145

Passive voice is common in academic discourse since it is often felt necessary to shift the focus from human agency to the actions, processes and events being described. In academic writing in particular, foregrounding the writer/researcher in such processes is often felt to be inappropriate (⇢ also **148**):

> *A total of 14 case studies **were recorded**. The data **were analysed** using principles of conversation analysis and thematic analysis set within a hermeneutic interpretative framework. In order to illuminate presentations of autonomy in practice, focus-group discussions with nurses and older people **were used** as part of the interpretative process. **I discuss** the factors that prevented the operationalisation of an individualised rights-based concept of autonomy for older people.*

Note how the research process is described in the passive voice (*were recorded*, *were analysed*, *were used*), while the author changes to active voice (*I discuss*) when signposting the section dealing with personal stance and evaluation of the research.

Passive voice (along with the present tense, ⇢ **144b**) is particularly prevalent in abstracts to academic papers and articles:

> *The urban hierarchy of an English region in the period 1300–1540 **is defined**, using both documentary and archaeological evidence. The part of the East Midlands studied – Leicestershire, Northamptonshire and Rutland – contained twenty towns. 'Benchmarks' for placing towns in the hierarchy **are explored**, including population, topography, social structure, occupational diversity, marketing and migratory networks, administration, and civic and material culture. The conclusion **emphasizes** the common urban characteristics of all of the towns studied, the compatibility of written and unwritten evidence, and the stability of the urban system.*

Note here that active voice (*emphasizes*) occurs with the impersonal subject *the conclusion* (compare the alternative constructions which would foreground the researcher: *I conclude/I emphasize in the conclusion*).

However, personal subjects and active voice verbs do occur frequently in academic discourse, particularly where a researcher is laying claim to a different or new approach to something, or contrasting their approach with that of others:

> *The acquisition of the English past tense inflection is the paradigm example of rule learning in the child language literature and has become something of a test case for theories of language development. This is unfortunate, as the idiosyncratic properties of the English system of marking tense make it a rather unrepresentative example of morphological development. In this paper, **I contrast** this familiar inflection with a much more complex morphological subsystem, the Polish genitive.*

Personal subjects and active voice are also common where speakers/writers provide textual signposting:

> *Throughout the literature, these pedagogical themes emerge: build a large sight vocabulary, integrate new words with the old, provide a number of encounters with words, promote a deep level of processing, facilitate imaging and concreteness, use a variety of techniques, and encourage independent learner strategies.* ***I will now discuss*** *each item in turn.*
> (compare: Each item will now be discussed in turn.)

✪ *I think* is less commonly used in academic writing than in everyday language, and expressions such as *in my view/opinion*, *I would argue/suggest*, *it is reasonable to suppose/conclude/suggest*/etc. are preferred when the writer is giving a personal opinion:

> *For example, the counting system, with its decade structure, certainly helps us to make complicated arithmetical calculations, but the experience of doing so also transforms our understanding of quantity, according to Vygotsky. It is a simple, testable and provocative idea whose time,* ***in my view****, has still to come.*
>
> ***I would argue that*** *different models are appropriate at different times.*
> (~~I think (that) different models are appropriate at different times.~~)

Get-passives are very rare in academic writing, but are more frequent in spoken academic style:

> [lecture about the alimentary system]
> *So particularly in middle-aged people who take Amatrozol, they're at a great risk of food poisoning because the bugs which the acid kills off don't* ***get killed*** *and they make it down through the gastrointestinal tract and give them a nasty case of food poisoning.*
> ('…are not killed' would be expected in written academic style)

Get-passives and *be*-passives may occur side by side in spoken academic style:

> [microbiology lecture]
> *Many viruses* ***get taken*** *up by cells of the immune system of one sort or another. And they* ***get transported*** *to the lymph nodes and swollen lymph nodes is a common feature of many virus infections. And what's happening is that as the virus* ***is taken*** *to the lymph nodes, there is an intense immune response within the lymph nodes so the lymph node swells in an attempt to try and eliminate the virus infection.*

HEDGING AND BOOSTING 146

Academic texts are most frequently characterised by a desire to avoid making claims and statements that are too direct and assertive, since academic discourse is often about theories, conclusions drawn from evidence, exchanging viewpoints, and so on, rather than hard, indisputable facts. Therefore, hedging (making a proposition less assertive) is very important in academic styles. Less often, it is sometimes also necessary to assert a claim or viewpoint quite directly and more confidently, a process we shall refer to as boosting.

Hedging and boosting are principally realised through modal expressions and through the use of simple tense forms. We also examine the role of adverbs and other constructions in asserting (boosting) and hedging.

Modality and tense-aspect 146a

Will is used to make confident predictions or to assert known or accepted facts:

Represented as a value between zero and one, X ***will*** *approach unity in perfectly flat and open terrain, whereas locations with obstructions such as buildings and trees* ***will*** *cause X to become proportionally less (Oke, 1992).*

[pathology lecture]
*Right. Red blood cells leaving the capillaries and then entering the tissues. They****'ll*** *break down there and haemoglobin* ***will*** *be released and the tissue* ***will*** *turn black and eventually* ***will*** *go.*

Must is used to make confident predictions or conclusions:

Such changes ***must*** *be due to changes in motivational organization of social behaviour.*

Must is also used in boosted directives to the reader/listener to pay attention to particular points:

We ***must*** *remember, however, that migrants may not need information about more than one destination.*
(compare the weaker: We should remember, however, …)

It is useful to try to apply these general stages when considering any piece of worked stone. As always, they are meant to help us understand the processes and as such are merely an intellectual framework. Therefore one ***must not*** *apply them too rigidly.*

The unmodified simple forms of verb tenses are used to make non-hedged assertions:

Attachment, then, ***results*** *in close and prolonged proximity of bacterial digestive enzymes with the substrate.*
(compare the hedged: Attachment, then, may/can/could/might/should result in close and prolonged proximity of bacterial digestive enzymes with the substrate.)

> *Adams **believed** that the Washington government must, for material as well as moral reasons, fight an aggressive war for American commerce.*
> (compare: Adams may have believed/Adams probably believed …)

Hedging: modality 146b

Can, could, might and *may*

Broadly speaking, *can*, *could*, *might* and *may* are used in academic style in the same way as they are used in general English, but one or two usages which are more frequent in academic style are worth noting. Academic English often needs to state possibilities rather than facts, and academics frequently hypothesise and draw tentative conclusions.

Can is often used to make fairly confident but not absolute assertions, in contrast with *could*, *might* or *may* (see below):

> *These new insights into the multiple meanings of family **can** help us understand the experience of transnational migration.*
> (asserting a claim of what is normal, i.e. almost equivalent to 'these new insights … help us understand …', but framed as 'usually/normally' rather than 'always')

Could and *might* are used for more tentative assertions:

> *One **could** say that our concept of selfhood is radically contaminated by the mind-set of 'this is mine', 'I am this'.*
>
> [consultant (A) tutoring a student doctor]
> A: *Right. Very good. What do you think **might** have happened since he left hospital that caused this ulcer to break down yet again?*
> B: *He **could** have either occluded his graft.*
> A: *Yes.*
> B: *Or the area **could** have become infected.*
> A: *Okay. Now is there any clinical evidence that he **might** have occluded his graft?*
>
> [on the behaviour of young birds]
> *Thus, one **might** conclude that the predisposition to respond to pattern or flicker only affects the further development of a preference in that it **might** help to guide the young bird towards objects having these characteristics.*

A particular use of *may*, which is very common in academic texts, is to describe things which are likely to occur or which normally do occur. In this usage it is a formal equivalent of *can*:

> *Parallel vertical pipes, several centimetres long and 1–2 mm thick, are common in much of the unit, but especially in the middle part, where there **may** be several in each cm horizontal section.*
>
> [on mental health and mental retardation]
> *The anger experience **may** culminate in a variety of behavioural reactions, including aggression or withdrawal.*

May is also widely used in a more general way in academic texts to make a proposition more tentative. *May* is less tentative than *could* or *might*:

> *This change **may** also have been in progress in other counties.*
>
> [*CFS* = chronic fatigue syndrome]
> *Overall, one **may** conclude that the present study has shown that patients with CFS have psychomotor impairments, problems maintaining attention, and are visually sensitive.*

Would

Would is frequently used to hedge assertions which someone might challenge and to make argumentative claims less direct when used with speech-act verbs such as *advocate*, *argue*, *assume*, *claim*, *propose*, *suggest*:

> *Given this, we **would argue** that the Iowa sample has provided a unique opportunity to examine a number of important questions regarding schizophrenia, including the issue of mortality.*
>
> *Theoretically, one **would assume** that this increased bacterial mass would synthesize more enzymes.*
>
> [lecture on the teaching of language and literature]
> *And students think that by reading a text, getting the information from it, they have understood it. They are, I **would suggest**, full of the understanding of one level: the referential meaning.*

Would is also frequently used with *appear* and *seem*:

> *It **would seem** that in this domain, as in so many others, the north was more favoured than the south.*
> (compare the more assertive: It seems that in this domain …)

Should and *ought to*

Should allows the writer/speaker to describe desired or ideal situations. It is less strong than *must*:

> *However, to assess different advantages and disadvantages in other circumstances, the chosen method **should** be examined critically before use.*
> (compare the stronger: … the chosen method must be examined …)

Ought to is occasionally used in this way in academic style, but is much less frequent than *should*:

> *Our use of the term 'stable' **ought to** be defined here.*

Should is used to hedge conclusions and predictions, but it expresses confidence in the probability that a situation will occur in a particular way:

> *The overall agreement of the results **should** allow us to accept them with some confidence.*
> (compare the more direct: … the results allow us to accept …)

[English literature lecture]
*Okay. You **should** be able to see the connections already and hopefully you can see what Anderson is saying in this extract.*

Hedging: other expressions 146c

Hedging in academic texts is often carried out by the use of a range of adverbial and prepositional constructions (plus some other types of expression). Their full effect can often best be observed by removing them from the example sentences quoted here.

Common hedging expressions include adverbs such as:

apparently
arguably
broadly
evidently
frequently
generally
likely
normally
partially
probably
roughly
seemingly
surely
typically
usually

*It was, **arguably**, the strongest leadership the department had ever had and it used its resources well.*

*They are both from **roughly** the same period in the middle of the sixteenth century.*

*Yet, **seemingly** for Bakhtin, though material forces no doubt exist, what determines that we know about them at all are intersubjective human relations.*

Common prepositional phrases and other expressions used as hedges include:

as a (general) rule
broadly speaking
generally speaking
in a sense
in a way
in most cases/in the majority of cases
in principle
in some senses
in some respects/in many respects
more or less
roughly speaking

*Survey researchers have **as a rule** understandably preferred to make use of established diagnostic categories, rather than have to develop their own new ones and then try to persuade clinicians to accept these.*

[critique of a collection of political essays]
*Thus the essays were, **in a sense**, out of date when they appeared, yet the cultural tradition which they articulate and to which they contribute remains a part of the German scene to this day.*

*This summary **more or less** encapsulates the thesis advanced by Glynn in his new and wide-ranging history of arms races and arms control.*

Hedging and impersonal constructions 146d

Propositions may be hedged by the use of impersonal *it*-constructions with passive voice which enable the writer/speaker to avoid the more direct commitment to a proposition which a first person *I/we* + active voice may create:

> ***It is suggested*** *that the analytic procedures illustrated in this paper be applied to more widely-used oral testing instruments in order to evaluate their utility in eliciting conversational interaction.*
> (compare the more direct and personal: I suggest that …)

Such impersonal *it*-constructions may also be used simply to hedge a proposition by attributing it to other, unnamed experts:

> ***It is claimed**, **or tacitly assumed**, in narrative studies that temporality should be explored in narrative texts where it functions as a dominant principle of organization.*

A range of impersonal *it*-expressions are common in academic texts to attribute propositions to unnamed people. These include:

- *it is (widely) accepted*
- *it is generally agreed*
- *it is believed*
- *it is/has been claimed*
- *it is/has been said*
- *it is/has been suggested*

> ***It is generally agreed*** *that one of the most influential reports published during the war was the Beveridge Report, published in 1942, which mapped out the future welfare state.*
>
> *Literature, **it is claimed**, seeks to recapture and reconstruct tradition.*

The use of a raised subject as an alternative to anticipatory *it*, similarly, enables the writer/speaker to make a less direct commitment to a proposition. Common passive expressions of this type include:

- *be believed to*
- *be claimed to*
- *be considered to*
- *be found to*
- *be said to*
- *be seen to*
- *be shown to*
- *be thought to*

> *The value placed on children **is believed to have changed** from pre-industrial societies to the present time.*
>
> *Operating practices **are said to have been** a major obstacle to improvement.*

Boosting 146e

Boosting in academic texts, to make a claim more assertively, is often carried out by the use of a range of adverbial and prepositional constructions (plus some other types of expression).

Common boosting expressions include adverbs such as:

categorically
certainly
clearly
definitely
emphatically
indisputably
inevitably
irrefutably
observably
obviously
plainly
undeniably
undoubtedly
unquestionably

> *This is **clearly** a very restrictive hypothesis, which requires verification, and Lightfoot suggests that language change represents a useful testing ground.*
>
> *While most people were **indisputably** poor, the economy had a considerable surplus above basic subsistence needs, although much of that surplus was concentrated in the hands of those in the top 10 per cent or so of the income distribution.*
>
> *Yet utilities and transport **unquestionably** provide a service rather than a commodity.*

Other expressions used in boosting include:

for sure/for certain
*it is/was clear/obvious/indisputable/*etc. *that*
there is/was no doubt that
without doubt

> ***It was clear that** the Danes would remain neutral, although they offered to approach Catherine II in order to sound her out on a possible settlement.*
>
> *In the early nineteenth century this was **without doubt** true of much of the Nord region and the Normandy textile area.*

PERSONALISING AND DE-PERSONALISING: PRONOUNS 147

I versus *we* 147a

The personal pronoun *I* is used in academic discourse for self-reference, particularly when referring to one's own stance (one's position or viewpoint) or conclusions, or when contrasting one's own approach with that of others. It commonly occurs with verbs expressing stance, particularly in humanities disciplines, and particularly in spoken academic style. Such verbs include:

accept
advocate
agree
argue
assume
believe
consider
propose
suggest
suppose
suspect
think

> ***I consider*** *it unlikely that instruction accounts for anywhere near as much vocabulary growth as does incidental acquisition from context during reading.*

> [pathology lecture]
> *Right. We've got production of toxins. An endotoxin or an extra toxin. Right.* ***I assume*** *you know the difference between the two. So we won't go into it.*

I can occasionally be used with a generic meaning, particularly in the discipline of philosophy:

> *To guarantee the truth of my belief that you are in pain,* ***I*** *need only determine whether the relevant physical, criterial conditions are satisfied. But if* ***I*** *believe that being in pain involves something distinguishable from the satisfaction of such public conditions,* ***I*** *am in serious philosophical trouble. Could it be that what* ***I*** *assume to be other people are people in appearance only?*
> (*I* here refers to any person who thinks/acts in the way described)

We is typically used to refer to more than one author of an academic paper or article. Nowadays it is becoming less frequent for single authors to refer to themselves in the first person plural:

> [paper by two authors]
> *In this paper* ***we*** *report our experience with ear-tattooing in order to compare it with other methods used for marking small mammals.*

The other characteristic use of *we* is to refer to the speaker/writer and listener/reader together, creating a sense of an academic community shared by all participants in the discourse:

> [virology lecture]
> ***We*** *know the molecular biology of this virus in very great detail.* ***We*** *know the sequence of the genome from end to end. Now* ***we*** *know the proteins encoded by that genome.*

Single authors may sometimes use *we* as an inclusive strategy to carry the reader along with them in the unfolding argument or presentation of facts, even though it is the single author who has presented the arguments or facts:

> *In describing the process of gravitational instability* ***we*** *have oversimplified matters a little.*

We also occurs in textual signposting, where the writer/speaker is orienting the reader in some way, or pointing to links within the text to other parts of the text:

> *It is true, as* ***we*** *have seen elsewhere in this book, that individual changes may aid or impair communication to a limited extent.*

➜ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

You and *one* 147b

You and *one* can both be used to refer to people in general, and to the academic community of writer(s)/speaker and readers/listeners. *You* is less formal than *one*.

You in these generic uses is frequent in both written and spoken academic style, although it is considerably less frequent than *we* in written academic texts:

> *We could argue, however, that the probability of an uptake event is not fixed, but varies in a predictable way. It is possible, for example, that the more words **you** already know, the easier it is to acquire the meaning of new words that **you** encounter.*
>
> [from a text about the architecture of cathedrals]
> *If **you** consider, for example, the plan of the Cistercian monasteries, where the church was designed to receive abbot, monks, lay brothers and the congregation, it was the position allocated to each of these elements within the edifice which led to its being partitioned.*
>
> [virology lecture]
> *We'll see in some detail in a bit, viruses are quite unique in the way that they carry their genetic material and the most important feature is that viruses will only carry RNA or DNA. **You** never find both in the same virus particle.*

One is also used with generic reference to people in general or to the academic community of a particular discipline, but it is considerably less frequent than *we* or *you*, especially in spoken academic style:

> *On biological grounds **one** might suspect that the changes induced by early life experience are in an evolutionary context adaptive.*
>
> [lecturer in History of English tutorial session]
> *I mean this theory that showed through analogy, now I think it's absolutely right, but I suppose **one** has to say 'probably' because of course no one exactly knows how this happened.*

Mixing of *one* and *you* occurs in the same discourse, especially in spoken contexts:

> [immunology lecture]
> ***One** has to actually have the T cells there to isolate the T cells and show that they are reacting against a specific antigen. And are therefore said to be the main mediators of cell mediated immunity. **You** actually need the T cells themselves to demonstrate that they are responding to the antigen and having an immune effect.*

OTHER IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTIONS 148

It-constructions 148a

Anticipatory *it* is frequently used in passive-voice clauses with or without an explicit agent to create an impersonal structure. This enables writers/speakers to distance themselves from assertions (⁘ also **146d Hedging and impersonal constructions**):

> ***It*** *has generally been accepted* ***by scientists*** *that models with fewer parameters and which make predictions are better models.*
> (compare the more direct: scientists generally accept …)
>
> ***It*** *is argued that in the latter two cases, the default-like character of one of the affixes is attributable to the properties of the relevant inflectional subsystems, not to the predispositions that children bring to the language-learning task.*
> (compare: I argue that …)

See also the next example below in **148b Existential *there***.

Existential *there* 148b

Existential *there* constructions are also regularly used instead of personal ones (note also impersonal *it* in this example):

> [*marking* and *recapture* refer here to capturing and marking animals for scientific research]
> *The time lag between marking and first recapture was higher than the lag between second and third recapture, which indicates a trauma caused by the marking procedure. However,* ***there was*** *no evidence of any weight loss as reported for other marking methods, and most of the tattooed animals did not show any behaviour indicating irritation after being marked.* ***It is concluded*** *that ear-tattooing, as an alternative to other methods of marking small mammals, is useful even in the field.*
> (compare the more personal: However, I/we found no evidence …)
>
> [endocrinology lecture]
> *So as the fluid fluxes through this segment of the nephron its osmotic concentration goes from two ninety up to twelve hundred milliultinals per kilo and then back down to one eighty milliultinals per kilo. Now* ***there are*** *certain things to note as a consequence of that.*
> (compare: We/you should note certain things as a …)

There + *exist* is also found in formal academic styles:

> *This is similar to cognitive knowledge, in which* ***there exist*** *universally valid concepts to which each individual object could belong.*

Third person self-reference 148c

Academic writers often refer to themselves as 'the author', 'the (present) researcher', and often refer to their own work impersonally. This is especially the case in abstracts and other types of summary:

> [article abstract, written by the article's author]
> ***This article*** *looks at the effect of transoceanic migration on rural Sicilian families.* ***The author*** *focuses on the conflicts, stresses, and transformations experienced by members of transnational families. …* ***This essay*** *highlights the deeply gendered nature of transnational migration, and the role of the family in altering ideas of husband, wife, mother and father.*

IMPERATIVES AND RHETORICAL QUESTIONS 149

Imperatives

Imperatives occur in academic contexts most typically when the reader/listener is invited to consider or pay particular attention to something.

Some verbs in the imperative are particularly common in written texts. These include *consider*, *note*, *notice*, *observe*, *recall*, *remember*, *see*:

> *For example,* ***consider*** *the way people often construe behaviour problems in boys who do and who do not have mental retardation.*
>
> [text linguistics lecture]
> *But the grammatical subject is also the agent, that is if the subject is doing something to the object. Okay.* ***Remember****, the grammatical subject is not always the agent.*

Let us, and in spoken contexts *let's*, are also common in academic discourse to direct a collective focus of attention on the part of writer(s)/speaker and readers/listeners:

> *First,* ***let us perform*** *a comparative examination of two examples.*
>
> [lecture on the alimentary system]
> *So* ***let's look*** *now at their targets and in particular the dietary carbohydrates.*

First person *let me* is also common when the speaker/writer is signalling some upcoming aspect of the text. It is similar in function to *I shall/I will* (➜ above, **144e**):

> [referring to the William Shakespeare play, *Romeo and Juliet*]
> *With all this context in mind,* ***let me*** *return to the final scene of 'Romeo and Juliet' and to my questions (1) and (3): what would an audience in the mid 1590s actually have seen; and, equally important, so what?*

Rhetorical questions

Rhetorical questions and questions which the questioner immediately answers are frequent in academic contexts, since writers and speakers often wish to anticipate questions readers and listeners may be posing in their minds, or else wish to raise those same questions in the mind of the reader/listener prior to answering them:

> *If the northwest-European-origin slaveowners had operated as if the slaves resembled life-cycle servants,* ***what might we expect to observe****?*
>
> ***Why is it that quasar activity declined in the universe both at high redshifts and at low redshifts****? If the conventional picture of quasars is correct, then …*

SENTENCE PATTERNS 150

In general, academic writing displays quite complex sentence patterns, including frequent use of all the types of subordination which occur in general English usage (➜ **310–317**).

Non-finite subordinate clauses are particularly common:

> *Surprisingly, the pioneers of modern urban healthcare supported a 'return to nature' by mobilizing anti-urban and pro-rural discourse.* ***Comparing*** *Nottingham and Saint-Etienne, this article addresses the politics that produced this paradox.*
>
> ***To explore*** *further the perceptual component, we measured perceived temporal frequency in human subjects with unilateral optic neuritis for whom optic nerve transmission is known to be relatively slow and generally similar to the normal physiological state under low luminance.*

Ellipted subordinate clauses are also frequent:

> *Specifically,* ***when asked*** *in the post-use interviews how using the computer-tutor influenced their behaviour, students most commonly mentioned an increase in their level of effort.*
>
> *This approach could admit the possibility of conflict between an individual's use of freedom and the attainment of happiness* ***while denying*** *that happiness could be attained without freedom.*

Clauses with *as* … 151

As-clauses referring to the works of other academics are an alternative to a reporting + reported clause structure:

> *By contrast,* **as** *Gombrich* ***has remarked****, little value was placed on clarity in Renaissance iconography.*
> (or: By contrast, Gombrich *has remarked that* little value was placed on clarity in Renaissance iconography.)
> (By contrast, ~~as Gombrich has remarked that~~ little value was placed on clarity in Renaissance iconography.)

As-clauses often occur in the passive in academic style to exemplify or compare or to cite something/someone. In such cases, an *it*-subject is not used:

> *Hume's contention can be avoided by the use of inverse probability,* ***as was seen*** *in Chapter 7, and although the justification of induction has always been a notorious problem, yet empirically, as Ramsey argued (Sahlin, 1990), induction is convincing because it is successful.*
> (Hume's contention can be avoided by the use of inverse probability, ~~as it was~~ seen in Chapter 7, …)

The same is true when subject-verb inversion occurs after *as*:

> *When total study time was limited but local study time was free,* ***as was the case*** *in Experiment 2, the experimental subjects allocated more study time to items in the non-mobilized category, whereas the control subjects allocated an equal amount of time to items in both categories.*
> (When total study time was limited but local study time was free, ~~as it was the case in Experiment 2,~~ …)

539 **Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

LINKING ADJUNCTS 152

The use of linking adjuncts (→ **136**) is important in academic language, especially in writing, to give coherence to the text and to organise it.

Academic English uses many linking adjuncts which are not frequent in everyday conversational English. The following occur frequently in academic contexts but only very infrequently in day-to-day conversational language:

- Additive: adding further ideas (→ **136b**):

  additionally
  equally
  furthermore
  in addition
  likewise
  moreover
  similarly

  *The national income grew roughly 2.5 times between 1945 and 1990 and earnings in real terms grew, if anything, even more rapidly. Household income gained **additionally** from the higher proportion of women in paid jobs.*

- Resultative: expressing causes, reasons, results, consequences (→ **136c**):

  accordingly
  as a consequence
  as a result
  consequently
  hence
  in consequence
  in (the) light of this/that
  in view of this/that
  therefore
  thus

  *The behaviour of dark matter is governed entirely by gravitational forces, and **hence** is easy to incorporate theoretically – both in calculations and in computer simulations.*

- Contrastive: contrasting, opposing (→ **136d**):

  by/in contrast
  conversely
  however
  nevertheless
  nonetheless
  on the contrary
  on the one hand … on the other hand

  *Histories of literacy and print culture had also cultivated an interest in visual media. These studies **nonetheless** generally focused on print rather than writing.*

- Organisational: organising and structuring the text, listing:

  finally
  firstly, secondly, thirdly
  in brief
  in conclusion
  in its/in their turn
  in short
  in sum
  in summary
  lastly
  respectively
  subsequently

  *This reviewer might wish to question particular judgements here and there, but **in sum** this is a fascinating and thought-provoking book.*

Note also that a number of non-finite clausal constructions are used in academic texts to signal summaries (*to sum up*, *summing up*, *to conclude*, *to summarise*).

⋯ also **123–139 Grammar across turns and sentences** and **335 Linking**

Problems with linking adjuncts 153

✪ Certain linking adjuncts typical of academic style are often misused.

On the contrary, by contrast, on the other hand

On the contrary, *by contrast* and *on the other hand* are different. *On the contrary* rejects a previous statement in favour of an opposite one:

> *Such complex impressions on the part of teachers by no means arise from ignorance or prejudice:* ***on the contrary****, they are the result of powerful, historically informed, shared perspectives on musical reality.*

By contrast and *on the other hand* hold two statements up for consideration and comparison/contrast, but do not reject the first one:

> *Criminality in pre-industrialized Europe is thus characterized more by violence against persons than by property crimes such as theft. Modern society,* ***by contrast****, is thought to experience more theft than violence.*
>
> *Athenian public buildings and spaces were magnificent. Private houses,* ***on the other hand****, seem to have been small, and minimally furnished.*
> (both statements are true, but are presented for contrast with each other)

First(ly) and *at first*

First or (more formally) *firstly*, not *at first*, is used to label the first item or point in a list:

> *In this paper we* ***firstly*** *review the empirical studies carried out by Annett. We* ***then*** *discuss the ways in which genotypes are identified within the Annett studies, we show that this is inefficient, and then describe a more powerful and sensitive method that we use in our own empirical study.*

At first is used to contrast two different situations in time:

> *Employment had* ***at first*** *been only too full, and the economy was overloaded.* ***But by the end of the period*** *the very idea of full employment seemed illusory and even Keynes' view that 5 per cent was a reasonable level to aim for would have seemed highly optimistic.*

Last(ly) and *at last*

Last(ly), not *at last*, is used to label the final item or point in a list:

> *As a rule the multiple-function centres were the first to acquire the innovation; they were* ***followed by*** *the prefectoral towns,* ***then*** *by industrial towns, and* ***lastly*** *by those not dominated by any single activity.*
> (…, ~~then by industrial towns, and at last by those not dominated by any single activity.~~)

At last is used to indicate that something happens, but later or after a longer period of time than was hoped or expected:

> *By 1937 activity was 70 per cent higher than five years earlier. Much more than a recovery from the depression, or even a result of substituting home production for imports, the upsurge has been interpreted as being the structural change that the 1920s failed to achieve (Richardson 1967). New industries were* ***at last*** *replacing the old staples.*

OTHER ASPECTS OF ACADEMIC STYLE 154

The grammar of titles and sub-titles 154a

Titles of academic works often use the *-ing* form of the verb in a non-finite clause to indicate research activity directed towards a stated goal or some ongoing process. Examples of titles of books and papers:

> [book title]
> *Negotiat**ing** Service: Studies in the Discourse of Bookshop Encounters*
>
> [title of a paper in a musical education journal]
> *Rais**ing** standards in performance*
>
> [title of a paper in a behavioural sciences journal]
> *Vary**ing** the scale of financial incentives under real and hypothetical conditions*

The preposition *towards* is often used in academic titles to indicate tentative proposals or initial explorations in new theory. Examples of book titles:

> *EC Regionalism at the Turn of the Millennium: **towards** a new paradigm?*
>
> ***Towards** more Effective Supplementary and Mother-tongue Schools: guidelines*
>
> ***Towards** a Reference Architecture for Natural Language Generation Systems*

Punctuation 154b

Academic writing has developed punctuation conventions which are normally observed when writing essays, papers, articles and books.

Quotations

For punctuating quotations, a variety of conventions exists, often depending on individual publishers or journal styles, or the rules of individual institutions. Some typical examples are given here.

No punctuation of the quoted words if indented
Longer quotations from people's works often occupy their own paragraph and are usually indented further than the current paragraph indentation. In this case, no quotation marks are used.

Single or double quote marks within the body of the text
Although considerable variation exists, there is a tendency to prefer single quotation marks, particularly when citing single words or short phrases. If double quote marks are used, they are more likely to enclose longer quotations. Single quotes may also be used to draw attention to a particular nuance of a word or an unusual use of it, or to question a term or concept:

> *Communication in the ELT classroom is a highly complex, complicated and elusive phenomenon: 'a problematic medium' (Cazden, 1986: 423).*

> *Pomerantz reports (1986: 227) that formulations* **“***assert the strongest case in anticipation of non-sympathetic hearing***”** *and hence are frequently used in complaining.*

Use of the colon to introduce quotations
The colon is often used to introduce quotations where they do not form a continuous sentence with the author’s own text (see also the example beginning ‘Communication in the ELT classroom …’ above):

> *As Young reminded his audience***:** *In the beginning of the war we advertising men had very little standing.*

Where the quotation forms a continuous sentence with the author’s own text, no punctuation other than quote marks is necessary:

> *Robert Crassweller, Trujillo’s biographer, notes that America’s unfamiliarity with the Dominican Republic is “a fact that must be included among the curiosities of the region”.*

Bibliographic citations

There are different ways of punctuating bibliographical citations. Most typically, a citation appears within round brackets in the text:

> *Thornes & Shao* ***(1991b)*** *tested the sensitivity of individual meteorological parameters in a road weather information system by using …*

Where the whole citation is already within parenthesis, commas typically separate authors’ names and dates, and the semi-colon is used to separate different citations:

> *The dominance of X as a controlling parameter for RST has also been found in many other studies (e.g. Barring et al.***,** *1985***;** *Elliasson***,** *1996***;** *Upmanis***,** *1999). The impact of X will be most noticeable during times of high atmospheric stability, when potential radiation losses are at their greatest.*

Where specific page numbers are given in a citation, the colon is normally used:

> *‘Situation’ and ‘sequence’ are two concepts which Winter, working with written sentences, sees as fundamental in the interpretation of sequences of clauses in text (Winter, 1982***:** *2).*

Titles and sub-titles

A title and sub-title are often separated by a colon. This usually indicates that the sub-title is an explanation or paraphrase of the title:

> [title of an article in an academic book]
> *Focus on the language learner***:** *motivation, styles and strategies*
>
> [title of a chapter sub-section in an academic book]
> *Dark matter***:** *weight without light*

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

Bibliographies and lists of references 154c

Conventions exist for the ways in which bibliographies and lists of references are laid out in academic books, papers and essays. These sometimes depend on individual publishers or conventions adopted by colleges and universities, but some are widely used internationally, for example the APA (American Psychological Association) system, which lays out bibliographical references in the following ways (note the use of commas, full stops, colons, italics and brackets). The examples given here are APA style; other systems (e.g. Harvard, MLA) may be quite different.

Books

author	**date**	**title of book**	**place of publication**	**publisher**
Biber, D.	(1995).	*Dimensions of Register Variation*.	Cambridge:	Cambridge University Press.

(APA)

Biber, D. (1995) *Dimensions of Register Variation*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
(Harvard)

Biber, D. Dimensions of Register Variation. Cambridge: CUP, 1995.
(MLA)

Papers in academic journals

author	**date**	**title of article**	**journal**	**volume and issue**	**pages**
Sinclair, J.	(1996).	The search for units of meaning.	*Textus*,	9(1),	75–106.

Articles/chapters in books

author	**date**	**title of article/chapter**	**name(s) of book editor(s)**
Bakhtin, M. M.	(1986).	The problem of speech genres.	In T. W. McGee & C. Emerson & M. Holquist

(Eds.),	*Speech Genres and Other Late Essays*	(pp. 60–102).	Austin:	University of Texas Press.
	title of book	**page numbers of the article**	**place of publication**	**publisher**

Abbreviations used

The following abbreviations often appear in textual and bibliographical references:

& = and

cf. = compare

edn. = edition

ed(s). = editor(s)

et al. = and other authors

ibid. = the same place in a work already referred to

ms. = manuscript

no. = issue number

op. cit. = the work already referred to

p. = page pp. = pages

Trans. = translator/translated by/translation

vol. = volume

Introduction to word classes and phrase classes

Introduction 155
Nouns 156
    Nouns: forms 156a
    Nouns: types 156b
    Nouns: syntactic characteristics 156c
Noun phrases 157
    Noun phrases: form 157a
    Noun phrases: functions 157b
Verbs 158
    Verbs: forms 158a
    Verbs: types 158b
    Verbs: characteristics 158c
Verb phrases 159
    Verb phrases: forms 159a
    Verb phrases: tensed and non-tensed forms 159b
    Verb phrases: aspect 159c
    Verb phrases: voice 159d
    Verb phrases: mood 159e
Adjectives 160
    Adjectives: forms 160a
    Adjectives: gradability 160b
Adjective phrases 161
    Adjective phrases: forms 161a
    Adjective phrases: attributive and predicative 161b
Adverbs 162
Adverb phrases 163
    Adverb phrases: forms 163a
    Adverb phrases: functions 163b
Prepositions 164
Prepositional phrases 165
Conjunctions 166

Introduction to word classes and phrase classes

INTRODUCTION 155

This chapter (155–166) explores the types and functions of words and how they form phrases. The chapter introduces terminology and definitions and lays a basis for more detailed treatment in a number of subsequent chapters. The main word classes dealt with in this chapter are: noun, verb, adjective, adverb, preposition and conjunction. Word classes are traditionally called parts of speech.

A further word class, determiner, is dealt with in **176–196 Nouns and determiners**. There are also minor word classes such as interjections (*ouch*, *oi*, *oh*, *ah*). However, these minor types operate outside of the clause and sentence structure.

→ **113 Interjections**

Word classes can be either open or closed. Open classes admit new words, whereas closed classes are a more limited set and only rarely admit new words. For example, nouns are an open class and new nouns are created all the time; pronouns, however, are a closed class and it is not easy to create new pronouns. Thus, the growth of the internet has resulted in many new nouns such as *blog* (from 'web-log'), *smiley*, *spam*, *hypertext*, but the new written pronoun *s/he* has failed to become universally established.

Many languages use word endings to distinguish between nouns and verbs and other word classes. In English different word classes can be formed by the process of derivation using suffixes. For example, the suffix *-ment*, when added to the verb *amaze*, changes the word class to the noun *amazement*. However, although English uses such word endings, they are not a reliable guide to word class; for example, *augment* is a verb, and *comment* can be a verb or a noun, depending on context.

Word endings can also be inflections, which indicate categories such as tense, person and number. The inflection *-ed* can change a verb from present to past tense (*walk/walk**ed***), and the inflection *-s* can indicate third person singular concord with a subject. But inflections do not change the word class. *Walk* and *walked* are both verbs.

→ **258–268 Word structure and word formation**

A word may have more than one grammatical form. For example, *sing* belongs to the word class of verb and yet has several different forms such as: *sings*, *singing*, *sung*, *sang*. We refer to the word *sang* as the past form of the word *sing*. It is common for a single form to have different grammatical functions. For example, in the case of the verb *cut* the present and past form of the verb are the same. There is, however, only one underlying form in each case: *sing* and *cut*.

Items within a particular class may consist of more than one word. For example, the phrasal verb *take off* (as in *take off your coat/take your coat off*) consists of two words but operates syntactically and semantically as a unified item.

Underlying forms are called lexemes. For example, the word *water* has a similar meaning when used as a noun (*I drank the water*) and when used as a verb (*I must water the plants*) but it is a different lexeme in each case. A lexeme can only belong to one word class. So ***I watered** the plants* involves the same lexeme as *I must **water** the plants*, but a different lexeme from *I drank the **water***. Forms such as *water*, *waters*, *watering* and *watered* are grammatically distinct forms of the same lexeme, the verb *water*.

Sometimes differences in pronunciation distinguish words with identical forms. For example, *refuse* (/rɪˈfjuːz/ verb, meaning to decline) and *refuse* (/ˈrefjuːz/ noun, meaning household rubbish) or *row* (/rəʊ/ noun, meaning a line of seats) and *row* (/raʊ/ verb, meaning to quarrel).

Words can be converted from one class to another and new words are often formed in this way. For example, the noun *fax* has been converted into a verb *to fax*. The adjective *hopeful* has been converted into a noun and is used in contexts such as *There were three hopefuls being interviewed for the job*.

Words combine to form phrases. Each word class has a corresponding phrase class. This book has chapters dealing with noun phrases, verb phrases, adjective phrases, adverb phrases and prepositional phrases. Because of the complexity of determiner phrases, a special chapter is devoted to them.

Sections 156–166 contain basic definitions of six major word classes: nouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions.

NOUNS 156

Nouns: forms 156a

Nouns are the largest class of words. They denote classes and categories of things in the world, including people, animals, inanimate things, places, events, qualities and states. For example, *accident*, *cat*, *club*, *competition*, *conscience*, *garage*, *soldier*, *pride*, *James*, *Paris* are nouns.

Suffixes

Nouns are not usually identifiable by their form. However, common derivational suffixes which may enable words to be recognised as nouns include:

suffix	nouns	suffix	nouns
-age	*wastage, postage, mileage*	*-ist*	*artist, realist, pessimist*
-al	*approval, withdrawal*	*-ity*	*practicality, identity*
-ant	*deodorant, disinfectant, itinerant*	*-ment*	*amazement, containment*
-dom	*kingdom, wisdom*	*-ness*	*fitness, toughness*
-ee	*referee, tutee*	*-ship*	*ownership, studentship*
-er, -or	*trainer, runner, actor, vendor*	*-tion, -sion*	*addition, caption, extension*
-hood	*childhood, girlhood*	*-tude*	*altitude, multitude*
-ing	*building, fencing*	*-y*	*entry, discovery*
-ism	*socialism, idealism*		

The suffixes can be added to verbs and adjectives to form nouns:

verb	noun
amaze	*amazement*
contest	*contestant*
refer	*referee*
survive	*survivor*
write	*writer*

adjective	noun
bright	*brightness*
happy	*happiness*
loyal	*loyalist*
rapid	*rapidity*

Conversion

Conversion can also occur from verbs to nouns. Examples include:

*a **desire** to do something*

*a **lack** of something*

*a **cheat***

*a long **walk***

*a **pay rise***

Occasionally, adjectives may be converted to nouns:

*He's a **regular** at our local pub.*

*The clubs are mostly full of young **singles**.*

Prefixes and compounds

New nouns can be formed by other means, for example by prefixes (e.g. *non-event*, *pre-meeting*) and by compounding (e.g. *mousepad*, *website*).

258–268 Word structure and word formation for further details

Singular and plural

Most nouns have a singular and plural form which can be distinguished by different inflectional endings. The most common plural form is -*(e)s*. For example, *cat–cats*, *wish–wishes*. Some nouns have irregular plurals, mainly because they reflect older English forms or are derived from foreign words. Examples of these are: *ox–oxen*, *alumnus–alumni*.

Gender

The gender of nouns is significant in some languages. Nouns in English do not in themselves have masculine or feminine gender. They do, however, sometimes refer to male or female people or animals, or consist of a pair where one is used as the neutral term covering both sexes and the other is more marked. For example, *host–hostess*, *father–mother*, *widower–widow*, *dog–bitch* (where *dog* is the neutral term).

Nouns: types 156b

Nouns differ in their types of meaning, for example common nouns (e.g. *table*, *boy* and most nouns) versus proper names (e.g. *Joanna*, *New York*), or concrete nouns (*cup*, *bus*) versus abstract nouns (*love*, *beauty*).

The major grammatical distinction in English nouns is between count nouns and non-count nouns. English treats some things as units which can be counted and some things as indivisible wholes. Count nouns refer to people and things which can be counted. Non-count nouns refer to things which are treated as indivisible wholes which cannot be broken down in order to be counted:

count nouns	non-count nouns
a dog – dogs	*butter, oil, advice, furniture, belongings, trousers*
church – churches	

For some nouns the singular and plural forms are the same (e.g. *sheep*, *series*, *deer*).

Nouns: syntactic characteristics 156c

Nouns can be recognised by the following syntactic characteristics:

- They may be preceded by determiners:

  the *young boy*

  my two *cats*

- They may be modified by adjectives:

  a ***large*** *pizza*

  those ***lovely*** *flowers*

- They may be premodified by other nouns:

  a ***university*** *degree*

  a ***computer*** *programmer*

When a noun is head of a subject noun phrase, it agrees in person and number with the tensed verb of the clause:

> *My throat* ***is*** *sore.*
> (agreement between singular noun and the present tense of *be*)
>
> *Their apologies* ***were*** *accepted.*
> (agreement between plural noun and the past tense of *be*)

NOUN PHRASES 157

Noun phrases: form 157a

Nouns act as the main words, or heads, of noun phrases. A noun phrase usually consists of a head along with modifiers or a complement. Modifiers occur before the head (premodifiers) and after the head (postmodifiers).

Premodifiers include determiners (words such as *a*, *an*, *the*, *this*, *all*, *any*, *some*), adjectives (*blue*, *cautious*, *economic*, *old*) and other nouns (*government*, *school*).

Postmodifiers include prepositional phrases (*the cafeteria **in the building**, an insurance policy **with profits***), relative clauses (*the student **who needed to speak to you**, the report **that was published in 1997***) and adverb phrases (*the room **upstairs**, the lecture **yesterday***).

Complements occur after the head and function to complete the meaning of the noun (*the body **of a young woman**, the suggestion **that we should refuse to pay***). Postmodifiers give extra information and are not necessary for the meaning to be completed. Complements complete the meaning of the noun.

In the following examples, the whole of the noun phrase is green and the head is in bold:

*The **problem** cannot be solved.*

*All the **offices** in the building are closed.*

*He is an old **man** who lives near us.*

***Divorce** was inevitable.*

The head of a noun phrase can also be a pronoun instead of a noun:

***She** was very unhappy in her new job.*

***Someone** was looking for you earlier.*

Noun phrases: functions 157b

Noun phrases can act as the subject (S), object (O) or complement (C) of a clause (noun phrase in green, head in bold):

S O
*Her **brother** mended our **car**.*

C
*You're a good **friend**.*

Noun phrases can be the complements of prepositions:

*I did it **for** the **children**.*

Less often, noun phrases may occur as clause adjuncts (modifying the clause in some way, most typically in terms of time):

*I saw him the following **day**.*

167–175 The noun phrase; 176–196 Nouns and determiners; 197–212 Pronouns

VERBS 158

Verbs: forms 158a

Verbs are the second largest class of words. Typically, verbs denote actions, events, processes and states. For example, *sing*, *consult*, *eat*, *argue*, *break*, *sleep*, *encounter*.

Suffixes

Some verbs are recognised from their endings, but most verbs are not identifiable from their form. Suffixes which can denote verbs include:

suffix	verbs	suffix	verbs
-ate	*hyphenate, chlorinate*	*-ify*	*beautify, identify*
-en	*widen, sadden*	*-ize, -ise*	*realize, industrialise*
-iate	*differentiate, appreciate*		

Conversion

Verbs may be formed by conversion from other word classes. Examples include:

- verbs related to nouns:

  *to **corner** a thief*

  *to **hand** something to someone*

  *to **position** a table*

- verbs related to adjectives:

  *to **calm** someone*

  *to **empty** one's glass*

  *to **humble** oneself*

Verbs which have the same form as other word classes are recognised as verbs by their syntactic functioning in context:

*What **sort** of camera have you got?*
(noun)

*Can you **sort** the potatoes into large ones and small ones?*
(verb)

*It's a **narrow**, twisty road.*
(adjective)

*That would **narrow** our options considerably.*
(verb)

*Did you go **up** the tower?*
(preposition)

*They're going to **up** the wages of all the part-timers.*
(verb)

539 **Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

Prefixes

Prefixes are also used with verbs to create new verbs. The most common prefixes used with verbs are: *un-*, *out-*, *over-*, *under-*:

verbs	new verbs with prefixes	verbs	new verbs with prefixes
pack, lock	*unpack, unlock*	*eat, charge*	*overeat, overcharge*
live, do	*outlive, outdo*	*estimate*	*underestimate*

Regular and irregular

Verbs are either regular or irregular. The regular form simply adds inflections to the base form without internal change. Verb inflections indicate number agreement and whether the form shows tense (present or past) or not:

base form	*cough*
present form	*cough*
-*s* form	*cough*_**s**_
-*ing* form	*cough*_**ing**_
past form	*cough*_**ed**_
-*ed* participle	*cough*_**ed**_

Only the verb *be* has separate inflectional forms for all of the different categories of form:

base form	*be*
present form	*am, are*
-*s* form	*is*
-*ing* form	*being*
past form	*was, were*
-*ed* participle	*been*

Irregular verbs have a variety of types of ending and internal change applied to the base form. There are approximately two hundred and fifty irregular verbs in English. Almost all irregular verbs are irregular only in terms of their past form and -*ed* form. For example:

base form	*speak*
present form	*speak*
-*s* form	*speak*_**s**_
-*ing* form	*speak*_**ing**_
past form	*sp*_**oke**_
-*ed* participle	*sp*_**oken**_

→ **529 Appendix: Irregular verbs**

Multi-word verbs

Multi-word verbs are verbs which consist of more than one word. The most common type of multi-word verb comprises a verb followed by one or more particles (usually prepositions or adverbs or both) which combine with the verb to form a single syntactic and semantic unit. In all respects multi-word verbs behave in the same way as single-word verbs and are lexical verbs in their own right. Examples of multi-word verbs are: *give in*, *look after*, *look up to*, *put up with*, *catch up on*.

→ **235 Multi-word verbs**

Verbs: types 158b

There are three main grammatical classes of verb: lexical, auxiliary and modal.

Lexical verbs are the biggest class and include most verbs. Lexical verbs denote types of action, state or event (e.g. *walk*, *shine*, *think*, *drive*, *feel*, *shout*, *buy*, *fall*). They are an open class, and new verbs are frequently created.

Auxiliary verbs are a closed class consisting of *be*, *do* and *have*. Auxiliary verbs add information to the lexical verb, indicating clause type (e.g. interrogative, negative), aspect (progressive and/or perfect) and passive voice. *Be*, *do* and *have* can also be used as lexical verbs.

Modal verbs are a closed class consisting of core modal verbs (*can*, *could*, *shall*, *should*, *will*, *would*, *must*, *might*, *may*), semi-modal verbs (*dare*, *need*, *ought to*, *used to*) and modal expressions (*be able to*, *have (got) to*). Modal verbs add information to the lexical verb, mainly concerning degrees of certainty and necessity. Modal verbs do not inflect for tense, person or number, and only display historical remnants of tense contrasts, such as *can–could*, *will–would*.

Verbs: characteristics 158c

A typical verb can be recognised because it follows the subject noun phrase, agrees with the subject noun phrase in person and number and can indicate tense (except for the modal verbs, → **158b**). For example, *dream* and *walk* can be either nouns or verbs but can be identified by their respective syntactic properties:

> *That was* ***a very frightening dream****.*
> (noun)
>
> *The character* ***dreamed*** *that she was in outer space.*
> (verb in past tense)
>
> ***The space walk*** *was the most exciting event.*
> (noun)
>
> *She* ***walks*** *too quickly for me.*
> (verb in present tense, agreement in person and number with subject)

→ also **260 Word formation; 529 Appendix: Irregular verbs** for full list of irregular verbs; **213–216 The verb phrase 1** for further details concerning verb structure and morphology, and word order for verbs and verb phrases

VERB PHRASES 159

Verb phrases: forms 159a

Verbs act as the heads of verb phrases. The head is the first verb in the verb phrase, and it determines the form of what may follow.

A verb phrase may consist of a lexical verb only but may also include auxiliary verbs or modal verbs. In the following examples verbs are in bold:

*I **asked** you.*
(main verb only: lexical verb *ask*)

*I **could**.*
(main verb only: modal verb *could*)

*I **have asked** you.*
(auxiliary verb *have* + main verb)

*I **must ask** you.*
(modal verb *must* + main verb)

Modal verbs and auxiliary verbs precede lexical verbs. A modal verb (**modal**) and auxiliary verbs (**aux**) can occur together. The modal verb comes first. More than one modal is not permitted but there may be several auxiliary verbs:

modal aux
A: *We **should have bought** it there and then.*

modal aux
B: *Yes, we **should have**.*

modal aux aux
*They **must have been talking** about it for ages.*

modal aux aux aux
*It **might have been being used** at the time.*

Where there are combinations of modal verbs and auxiliary verbs, the order of these is modal verb ➛ perfect *have* ➛ progressive *be* ➛ passive *be* ➛ lexical verb:

modal perfect progressive passive lexical verb
*It **might have been being used** at the time.*

Each element requires a particular kind of complementation to follow it:

a The modal verb must be followed by the bare infinitive (without *to*).
b The perfect *have* must be followed by the *-ed* participle.
c The progressive *be* must be followed by the *-ing* form.
d The passive *be* must be followed by the *-ed* participle.

217–226 The verb phrase 2

Auxiliary *do* is required to form negatives, interrogatives and emphatic forms when the lexical verb is not preceded by any other auxiliaries:

*She **does**n't smoke.*
(negative)

***Did** you buy a newspaper?*
(interrogative)

*I **do** like your skirt.*
(emphatic)

The verb phrase (in bold below) begins the predicate part of the clause (in green below). This is the part which elaborates what the subject is, does or experiences:

subject **predicate**
Josh | ***might need** to leave early.*

Verb phrases: tensed and non-tensed forms 159b

Verb phrases are either tensed or non-tensed. Tensed verb phrases show contrasts in tense. They also show contrasts in number and person:

*She **works** hard now but she **worked** even harder during the whole year.*
(contrast in tense: *works/worked*)

***He's** too old but **we're** not.*
(contrast in number and person: singular/plural; 3rd person/1st person)

Non-tensed forms of the verb are:

- the base form (e.g. *work*) used as the imperative form (*Come on! **Work**!*) or as the subjunctive (*They insisted she **work** the same hours as everyone else.*) (⁘ 229)
- the infinitive with *to* (e.g. *she tried **to work***)
- the -*ing* form (*she's **working***)
- the -*ed* participle (*she has **worked***)

The time references of non-tensed verb phrases are understood in terms of the time references of main-clause verbs:

***Exercising** every day, he still **did** not lose weight.*
(past reference understood from *did*)

***Attracted** by low prices, tourists **flock** to the islands every year.*
(present reference understood from *flock*)

***To be** there for eight o'clock we'**ll** have to leave at about six.*
(future reference understood from modal *'ll*)

Verb phrases: aspect 159c

Verb phrases can also indicate aspect. The two aspects are progressive and perfect. Aspect adds information about the speaker's perspective on time.

Progressive

The progressive aspect is formed with auxiliary *be* form and the *-ing* form of a lexical verb. It adds information to the verb concerning the speaker's perception of events as unfolding in time, without reference to starting or finishing points:

*We**'re leaving** now.*

*I **was walking** into town yesterday, and I saw Sue outside the cinema.*

Progressive aspect may occur in verb phrases involving modal verbs:

*We **could be waiting** for ages.*

*I **might be working** next Saturday.*

Progressive aspect does not combine with non-tensed verbs in the *-ing* form:

***Sitting** there like that, you remind me of my father.*
(~~Being sitting there like that, you remind me of my father.~~)

Progressive aspect may combine with a *to*-infinitive verb phrase:

***To be buying** shares, you need to know the stockmarket really well.*

Perfect

The perfect aspect is formed with auxiliary *have* and the *-ed* form of a lexical verb. It gives information about the duration of events and the relationship of events to one another in time:

*I**'ve made** a lot of friends since I moved here.*

*We**'d forgotten** all about it.*

The perfect aspect may occur in verb phrases which include modal verbs:

*He **could have rung** me.*

The perfect aspect may occur with non-tensed verbs in the *to*-infinitive and the *-ing* form:

***To have read** my emails, she'd have needed to know the password.*

***Having bought** it, we ought to use it.*

Perfect and progressive combined

Perfect aspect and progressive aspect may combine in the verb phrase:

*I**'ve been looking** for you.*

*She should **have been studying**, not watching TV.*

Verb phrases: voice 159d

Verb phrases also indicate voice. The passive voice is usually formed with auxiliary *be* and the *-ed* participle of a lexical verb (··➛ **479** on **the passive with *get***). Voice gives information about the roles of different participants in an event (e.g. who the agent was, who the recipient was):

*I **was stung** by a wasp.*

***Was** she **promoted**?*

Passive voice may occur in verb phrases involving modal verbs:

*He could **be charged** with murder.*

Passive voice may occur in non-tensed verb phrases involving the *-ing* form and the infinitive:

***Being left** here waiting like this, I'm inclined to walk out and say 'forget it'.*

***To be accepted** completely, you have to live here a long time.*

Passive voice may combine in the verb phrase with progressive and perfect aspect:

*Our car **was being repaired** at the time.*

*I**'ve been asked** that question many times.*

Verb phrases: mood 159e

The verb phrase also expresses contrasts of mood. Mood refers to the factual or non-factual status of events. Non-factual here means events which do not happen or are only desired. The moods of English are indicative, imperative and subjunctive.

The indicative is a factual mood. It is by far the most frequent mood, and involves all the choices of person, tense, number, aspect, modality and voice discussed above:

*I**'ll give** you a call in the week.*

*We **were talking** about this the other day.*

The imperative mood is a non-factual mood and is used to issue directives. It involves the base form of the verb:

***Sign** here, please.*

*Just **leave** it on the table.*

The subjunctive mood is a non-factual mood and is very rare in English. It refers to wishes, desires, etc. It is used after a very limited number of verbs (e.g. *suggest*, *insist*, *recommend*, *demand*), occasionally after conditional subordinators (e.g. *if*, *lest*, *on condition that*, *whether*) and occasionally after expressions of necessity (e.g. *it is important/imperative/essential that*).

The subjunctive occurs only in very formal styles. It involves the base form of the verb, with no inflections:

> *They insisted that she* ***consult*** *a psychiatrist and, fortunately, Laura had the strength to insist that it* ***be*** *a woman.*

The subjunctive form of the verb *be* may occur as the base form *be* or as hypothetical *were* (for all persons). The *were* subjunctive is especially used after *if*, *as if*, *though* and *as though*:

> [from a hotel workers' manual, describing how to deal with customer complaints in the restaurant]
> *The kitchen and restaurant staff must be contacted immediately and the cause for complaint dealt with. The guests must be persuaded to return to the restaurant, where it is imperative they* ***be*** *served with a more than satisfactory meal and* ***be*** *completely pacified.*
>
> *I can remember it as if it* ***were*** *yesterday.*
> (or, non-subjunctive: I can remember it as if it was yesterday.)

••⁘ **217–226 The verb phrase 2** on tense and aspect; **377–407 Modality** on modal verbs and related forms

ADJECTIVES 160

Adjectives: forms 160a

Adjectives describe properties, qualities or states attributed to a noun or a pronoun.

Adjectives cannot necessarily be identified by their form. However, some suffixes are associated with adjective formation, and many adjectives can be seen to be derived from nouns and verbs:

suffix	adjectives related to nouns	suffix	adjectives related to nouns
-al	*accidental, professional*	*-less*	*hopeless, harmless*
-ful	*beautiful, useful*	*-ly*	*brotherly, friendly*
-ic	*heroic, optimistic*	*-ous*	*virtuous, courteous*
-ish	*foolish, boyish*	*-y*	*sandy, watery*

suffix	adjectives related to verbs	suffix	adjectives related to verbs
-able	*drinkable, understandable*	*-ive*	*attractive, explosive*

Adjectives may also be derived from other adjectives, through the use of suffixes or, more commonly, prefixes:

> *green**ish***
>
> *short**ish***
>
> ***im**possible*

dis*respectful*

ir*responsible*

un*fortunate*

A group of adjectives with the prefix *a-* are derived from verbs:

afloat

asleep

awash

ablaze

awake

Adjectives: gradability 160b

Adjectives are either gradable or non-gradable. Gradable adjectives can be seen as existing along a scale. For example, it is possible to say that something is *a bit* ***dangerous*** or *extremely* ***dangerous***. *Dangerous* is a gradable adjective. Most adjectives are gradable. Gradable adjectives tend to have an antonym (opposite), for example, *hot–cold*, *high–low*, *strong–weak*.

Non-gradable adjectives cannot be modified on a scale. A person is either *married* or not, *female* or not, *dead* or not, and one cannot be *very married* or *rather female*. Non-gradable adjectives classify and categorise things.

An inflectional property of gradable adjectives is that they can occur in a comparative or superlative form. Some common everyday adjectives add *-er* or *-est* to form the comparative and superlative:

larger, largest

sillier, silliest

fast, fastest

Other adjectives require *more* and *most* (or *less* and *least*) to convey the same gradable contrasts:

the more difficult task, the least difficult task

the most interesting person

the more expensive of the two

A few gradable adjectives change form completely (e.g. *good*, *better*, *best*; *bad*, *worse*, *worst*).

ADJECTIVE PHRASES 161

Adjective phrases: forms 161a

An adjective phrase can consist of a single adjective or an adjective which is modified or complemented.

Adjectives are typically modified by adverb phrases (in bold):

*That's **really** interesting.*

*He's a **very** tall man.*

*That's not good **enough**.*

*It's **too** expensive.*

*They were only **very slightly** injured.*

Occasionally, modification may be by a noun phrase (in bold):

*She's only **seven years** old.*

*His farm is **300 acres** bigger than his brother's.*

Adjectives can be followed by complements, most commonly in the form of a prepositional phrase (in bold), or also by a *that*-clause (in bold). Different adjectives require different complementation patterns:

*Lucy is proud **of you**.*

*Lucy is good **with children**.*

*Lucy is keen **on golf**.*

*Lucy is safe **from criticism from her family**.*

*Lucy is clever **at avoiding work**.*

*Lucy is sure **that she saw someone**.*

Adjective phrases: attributive and predicative 161b

Two main syntactic functions of adjective phrases are attributive and predicative.

An adjective phrase is attributive when it modifies a noun or pronoun:

*the **tall**, **grey** building*

*an **interesting** idea*

***poor** you!*

*a court **martial***

An adjective phrase is predicative when it occurs in the part of the sentence which says what the subject is, does or experiences (the predicate):

*The teacher was **ill**.*

*That's **very good**.*

*It made me **really nervous**.*

Most adjectives can be used in either way, but some adjectives have only an attributive or only a predicative function (··⁘ **240**).

ADVERBS 162

Adverbs are a class of words which perform a wide range of functions. Adverbs are especially important for indicating the time, manner, place, degree and frequency of an event, action or process.

Adjectives and adverbs are frequently based on the same word. Most adverbs have the form of their related adjective plus *-ly* ending:

*She's a **beautiful** girl.*
(adjective)

*She sings **beautifully**.*
(adverb)

*They were **careful** not to wake the baby.*
(adjective)

*They walked **carefully** across the narrow bridge.*
(adverb)

Other suffixes which denote adverbs are *-ward(s)* and *-wise*:

-ward(s)	*-wise*
homeward(s)	*clockwise*
northward(s)	*lengthwise*
onward(s)	*edgewise*
outward(s)	

A number of adverbs have the same form as adjectives (e.g. *hard*, *outside*, *right*, *straight*, *late*, *well*). A number of adverbs (e.g. *just*, *quite*, *so*, *soon*, *too*, *very*) are not related to adjectives at all.

Some adverbs may inflect for comparative and superlative forms:

soon – sooner – soonest

hard – harder – hardest

little – less – least

far – farther/further – farthest/furthest

ADVERB PHRASES 163

Adverb phrases: forms 163a

An adverb acting as the head of an adverb phrase may be modified by another adverb (in bold) and/or followed by a complement (in bold):

*It all happened **rather** suddenly.*

*Funnily **enough** I didn't notice it.*

***Most** surprisingly **for her**, she decided to emigrate to Australia.*

Complement patterns of some adverbs may be the same as the complement patterns of their related adjectives:

*It was **unfortunate** for us that we got there too late.*
(adjective)

***Unfortunately** for me, they'd closed early that day.*
(adverb)

Adverb phrases occur as the complement of *be*, typically indicating location:

*Is the dog **upstairs**?*

*Your glasses are **there**, on the table.*

Adverb phrases frequently occur as modifiers of verbs:

*She works **really slowly**.*

*I swim **regularly**.*

Adverb phrases frequently modify adjectives and other adverbs:

*It was **extremely** cold out there.*

*They did the test **very** competently.*

Adverb phrases can also modify noun phrases (including pronouns) and prepositional phrases:

*That was **quite** a match.*
(adverb + noun phrase)

*Didn't he manage to speak with **nearly** everyone there?*
(adverb + pronoun)

*We followed the path **right** to the end.*
(adverb + prepositional phrase)

Adverb phrases may also modify determiners, especially quantifiers:

***Almost** all of those books are useless.*

*There's **very** little chance of that happening.*

***Hardly** any of his colleagues believes him.*

Adverb phrases: functions 163b

As well as giving information on the time, place, manner and degree of an action, event or process, adverb phrases can also have a commenting function, indicating the attitude and point of view of the speaker or writer towards a whole sentence or utterance. In such cases they are referred to as sentence adverbs:

__Actually__, it's nearly midnight.

__Officially__, I can't tell you the results but I'll find a way.

Adverb phrases can often indicate a relationship between two clauses or sentences (e.g. one of cause and effect, one of concession, one of temporal sequence). In such cases they are called linking adverbs:

Although in principle agriculture ought to be a net producer of energy, converting the sun's energy into the calorific value of food, modern agriculture is actually a net consumer. We are __consequently__ eating up our energy resources.

Philip got the sack and __then__ we heard Liam was sacked too.

Adverb phrases can occupy a range of positions at the front, in the middle and at the end of a clause.

242–249 Adverbs and adverb phrases

PREPOSITIONS 164

Prepositions are a closed word class. New prepositions cannot easily be formed.

Prepositions express a relation in time between two events or a relation in space between two (or more) things or people. They can also express a variety of other, abstract relations:

They left __after__ six o'clock.

__During__ the film she fell asleep.

They decided to meet __in__ a park.

He dealt __with__ the problem.

The most common prepositions are: *about*, *after*, *as*, *at*, *by*, *during*, *for*, *from*, *in*, *of*, *off*, *on*, *to* and *with*. Most prepositions consist of a single word but some prepositions may be considered as consisting of more than a single word (e.g. *in front of*, *outside of*, *out of*, *next to*).

Some of these words may also be used as adverbs (e.g. *about*, *round/around*, *by*, *off*, *out*, *over*):

We were just touring __around__, stopping off here and there.

She's not here. She's __out__.

Prepositions are almost always followed by a prepositional complement. Usually, the complement is a noun phrase but it can also be a whole clause:

> *The doctor gave her a lot of information **about** the tablets.*
> (noun phrase)
>
> *I'll take her **to** where they last met.*
> (clause)

A particularly common prepositional complement is the nominal *-ing* form of a verb. Prepositions may not be followed by other forms of a verb:

> *He was jailed **for murdering** his close friend and flatmate.*
> (~~He was jailed for murder/murdered his close friend …~~)
>
> ***By talking** to all the witnesses, the police eventually managed to reduce the number of suspects.*

An adjective or an adverb may sometimes act as complement to a preposition:

> ***in** short*
>
> ***by** far*
>
> ***until** now*
>
> ***at** first*
>
> ***before** long*

Prepositions may be modified by a small set of adverbs (e.g. *right*, *straight*):

> *We went right **down** the coast.*
>
> *Will you go straight **to** your sister's house or stop on the way?*

Some verbs require prepositional complements, and are termed prepositional verbs. The verb determines what preposition must follow. Different verbs require different prepositions. Examples are *confide in*, *cope with*, *depend on*, *look after*. (→ **235f Prepositional verbs**):

> *You should learn to **confide in** your friends.*
>
> *They will have to **look after** their father.*

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES 165

Prepositions act as the head of a prepositional phrase. A prepositional phrase is formed when a preposition combines with a complement. Prepositional phrases can function as a postmodifier or complement of a noun, as an adjunct in the clause and as a complement of a verb or adjective:

> *We saw a girl **with** a small dog.*
> (noun phrase postmodifier: *a girl with a small dog* = a girl who had a small dog; additional information about the girl, but not necessary to complete the meaning of 'girl')

We saw the outline ***of*** *a man against the window.*
(noun phrase complement: *outline* needs a complement to complete its meaning – an outline must be an outline of something)

He writes well ***on*** *the whole.*
(adjunct, modifying the clause)

I'll deal ***with*** *that.*
(complement of a verb)

I must admit I felt very sorry ***for*** *her.*
(complement of an adjective)

⁘ **250–257 Prepositions and prepositional phrases**

CONJUNCTIONS 166

Conjunctions express a variety of logical relations between phrases, clauses and sentences. Conjunctions can be divided into coordinating conjunctions and subordinating conjunctions.

Coordinating

A coordinating conjunction is used to link elements of equal grammatical status. A coordinating conjunction can link elements of any size, from morphemes (e.g. prefixes) to sentences. The main coordinating conjunctions are *and*, *or*, *but*:

He collects pre- ***and*** *post-war cameras.*
(linking prefixes)

There are two ***or*** *three houses nearby.*
(linking words)

The wind was really cold ***and*** *absolutely biting.*
(linking phrases)

You can join now ***or*** *you may prefer to wait* ***and*** *discuss things with your partner.*
(linking clauses)

If she had been in London she would have walked out and taken a taxi home. ***But*** *she was on Richard's territory now and she couldn't do that.*
(linking sentences)

Correlative conjunctions consist of two items, each of which is attached to an element to be coordinated. The most common correlatives are *either … or …*, *neither … nor …*, *both … and …*:

The class can meet | ***either*** *on Friday at 9 |* ***or*** *on Thursday afternoon at 4.30 |.*

| ***Neither*** *I |* ***nor*** *my family | feel that an interview is appropriate at this time.*

She | ***neither*** *eats meat |* ***nor*** *drinks coffee |. What a dreary existence.*

Subordinating

Subordinating conjunctions only relate clauses to one another. They make the clause they introduce a subordinate clause (one which is dependent on a main clause). Common subordinating conjunctions are: *after*, *although*, *as*, *before*, *if*, *since*, *that*, *until*, *when*, *whereas*, *while*. Some subordinating conjunctions consist of more than one word: *as long as*, *as soon as*, *except that*, *in order to*, *in order that*, *provided that*:

> *They had to cancel their holiday in Brazil* ***because*** *Anne's mother was seriously ill.*
>
> ***As*** *you have not explained your action, the school will be making a formal report on your behaviour.*
>
> ***In order to*** *reach the village, walkers need to be prepared for a steep climb.*

Some subordinating conjunctions may be modified by adverbs:

> *Just* ***when*** *I arrived, I got a phone call.*
>
> *Ever* ***since*** *I heard about it, I've been afraid to go out after dark.*

→ 304–318 Clause combination

The noun phrase

Introduction 167
    Structure 167a
    Function 167b
Heads 168
    Simple heads 168a
    Compound heads 168b
    Pronoun heads 168c
Dependent elements 169
    Determiners, modifiers and complements 169a
    Pre- and post-head dependent elements 169b
    Complements versus postmodifiers 169c
    Order of pre- and post-head elements 169d
Modifiers 170
    Types of premodifier and postmodifier 170a
    Premodification involving noun phrases 170b
    Noun modifier versus prepositional phrase 170c
Postmodifiers 171
    Clauses as postmodifiers 171a
    Prepositional phrases as postmodifiers 171b
Complements 172
    Clauses as complements 172a
    Prepositional phrases as complements 172b
Noun phrases occurring together (in apposition) 173
The noun phrase in speech and writing 174
Panel: Formation of nouns (nominalisation) 175

The noun phrase

INTRODUCTION 167

Structure 167a

Noun phrases consist minimally of a noun or pronoun, which acts as the head of the noun phrase. The head may be accompanied by dependent elements before or after it. The following are examples of noun phrases; heads are in green, words in black are dependent elements:

music

summer

we

him

a dog

the old man

that table in the corner

a nice day at the beach

the sofa we bought in the sale

→ also **176–196 Nouns and determiners**; **197–212 Pronouns**

Function 167b

Noun phrases are referring expressions and are used to refer to particular instances or general classes of people and things.

Noun phrases typically function in the clause as subjects, objects, complements and occasionally as adjuncts:

Functions of noun phrases in the clause (noun phrases in green; heads in bold)

subject	verb	object	complement	adjunct
*My **father***	*used to play*	*the **piano**.*		
She	*was*		*a fairly average **swimmer**.*	
*The **children***	*loved*	***him**.*		
*His **body***	*was found*			*the next **day**.*

Noun phrases frequently occur as the complements of prepositions:

*We usually go **to** our local gym **at** the weekends.*

Noun phrases also occur in the noun phrase +*'s* possessive determiner construction:

*the average meat-eater**'s** diet*

*the biotechnology department**'s** long-awaited new building*

176–196 Nouns and determiners

Other less frequent functions of noun phrases include:

*The train was an hour **late** leaving Milan.*
(premodifier of adjective)

*Two days **before** we left, we still hadn't heard from her.*
(premodifier of conjunction)

*We agreed that two meetings **ago**.*
(premodifier of adverb)

*He lives three houses **along our street**.*
(premodifier of prepositional phrase)

*She watches children**'s TV** in the afternoon.*
(the 'descriptive' use of the *'s* construction)

197–212 Pronouns, 236–241 Adjectives and adjective phrases, 242–249 Adverbs and adverb phrases for premodification and postmodification of pronouns and the role of adjectives and adverbs in postmodifying structures

HEADS 168

The head of a noun phrase may be a noun or a pronoun:

*My **father** worked there three years ago.*
(noun as head of noun phrase)

***He** was a friend of Jean's.*
(pronoun as head of noun phrase)

Simple heads 168a

A simple head consists of one noun. The following noun phrases have simple heads:

*my **sister***
*the larger **size***
*a new **home** for the children*
*a government **report***
*this year's **budget***

Compound heads 168b

Structure of compound nouns

Compound nouns consist of a noun head with another item (most typically a noun, but it may also be an adjective or verb) placed before it in a very close syntactic and semantic relationship. The initial item most typically identifies a type of the class of entities denoted by the final noun. For example, a *video shop* is a type of shop; *orange juice* is a type of juice:

video shop
orange juice
petrol station
window box
sports centre
greyhound
blackboard
grindstone

The elements in compounds are closely bound to each other syntactically and cannot normally be interrupted by other elements (e.g. *a motorway* ***petrol station***, not a ***petrol*** *motorway* ***station***). Compounds are therefore best considered as single heads in the noun phrase. Their typical stress pattern is with stress on the first item (***petrol*** *station*, ***black**board*, ***grind**stone*).

Compound nouns and noun modifiers

The borderline between compound nouns and noun phrases acting as premodifiers of noun heads is not always clear. However, the preferred stress pattern for compounds, with stress on the first item, is usually an indication that the nouns are considered as an 'institutionalised' unit (stressed items in bold):

car *park*
bus *stop*
safety *helmet*

The noun modifier construction has the stress on the noun head:

a fur ***coat***
several volunteer ***helpers***
that government ***report***
bathroom ***door***

Meaning of compound nouns

The compound noun structure is extremely varied in the types of meaning relations it can indicate. It can be used to indicate what someone does (*language teacher*), what something is for (*waste-paper basket*, *grindstone*), what the qualities of something are (*whiteboard*), how something works (*immersion heater*), when something happens (*night frost*), where something is (*doormat*), what something is made of (*woodpile*), and so on.

Proper names

Compound nouns are common in proper names and titles. Most typically, these have the stress on the final noun:

Narita ***Airport***
New York City ***Hall***
The London ***Underground***
Prime ***Minister***
*Head**teacher***
Ronald ***Bickerton***
Mary ***Prosser***

Writing compound nouns

Familiar compound nouns (usually those involving short, monosyllabic nouns) are normally written as one word:

postman *bathroom* *lampshade*

There is some inconsistency, however. Some compounds are written with a hyphen:

pen-friend *tee-shirt* *belly-dancing*

In the case of some pairs, hyphens, separate words and words joined together are all equally possible:

post-box *post box* *postbox*

Normally, if a compound is perceived as a single word, it tends to be written as a whole word without a space or a hyphen. Hyphenation is less common in American than in British English.

⇢ **265 Compounds** for further information on noun compounds

⇢ **507–511 Appendix: English spelling** for spelling and use of hyphens and apostrophes involving noun compounds and other types of compound

Other categories of compound noun

Nouns combine less frequently with other units including adverbs, prepositions and other parts of speech to form compound nouns. The most common categories of compound are nouns which are joined by *of*, *at* or *in*, compound nouns formed from phrasal verbs, and compound nouns which are linked by *and* or are otherwise hyphenated.

- Examples of compound nouns joined by *of*, *at* or *in*:

  right-of-way *stay-at-home* *brother-in-law*

  commander-in-chief

- Examples of compound nouns formed from phrasal verbs:

  runner-up *passer-by* *take-over*

  stand-by *lay-by*

- Noun + *and* + noun compounds are often called binomial phrases. The nouns in such pairs may be singular or plural in form, and are usually fixed in their order. Frequently occurring examples are:

  aims and objectives
  ladies and gentlemen
  health and safety
  presence and absence
  strengths and weaknesses
  research and development
  size and shape
  policy and resources
  theory and practice
  trial and error

Plurals

Some countable compound nouns do not form plurals in entirely regular ways. The most common plural form is made by adding *-s*. So the plurals of *lay-by* and *take-over* are *lay-bys* and *take-overs*.

In certain noun + adverb/prepositional phrase combinations, the plural *-s* is usually added to the noun. So the plural of *mother-in-law* is *mothers-in-law*, *commander-in-chief* has the plural *commanders-in-chief*, and *passer-by* has the plural *passers-by*. However, occasionally, plurals of some of these compounds may be attached to the final item of the compound, especially in informal speech:

*I've got two brother-in-law****s***.

Pronoun heads 168c

A pronoun may act as the head of a noun phrase. The pronoun may be a personal, possessive or demonstrative pronoun:

She *hates* ***me***.

It *happens all the time.*

I'll *take* ***that***.

Is ***this yours***?

DEPENDENT ELEMENTS 169

Determiners, modifiers and complements 169a

A noun acting as the head of a noun phrase is often accompanied by one or more dependent elements, before and/or after the head. Pronoun heads are only rarely accompanied by other elements.

Noun heads may have three types of dependent element: determiners, modifiers and complements.

Determiners

Determiners indicate the type of reference made by the noun phrase (e.g. definite, indefinite, possessive) (→ **176–196 Nouns and determiners**). Examples of determiners:

The *tall woman*
(definite reference)

My *old school*
(possessive reference)

That *person*
(demonstrative reference)

Modifiers

Modifiers indicate qualities and attributes of the noun head (e.g. subjective qualities, physical attributes such as size, colour, material, location in space and time, restricted reference to a particular entity). Examples of modifiers:

those ***big*** *boxes* ***in the garage***

a ***little red*** *lever* ***which controls the temperature***

Complements

Complements complete the meaning of the noun head. For example, nouns such as *fact*, *claim*, *suggestion*, *idea*, *thought*, *statement* are always 'about something' and the complement completes the necessary information. Examples of complements (in green):

the ***fact*** *that he was no longer a little boy*

an American expert's ***claim*** *that the monsters were wiped out after a massive meteorite created devastating climatic changes 65 million years ago*

the ***body*** *of a young man*

Pre- and post-head dependent elements 169b

Two types of dependent element may come before the head in the noun phrase (i.e. they act as pre-head elements): determiners and premodifiers.

Two types of dependent element may come after the head in the noun phrase (i.e. they act as post-head elements): postmodifiers and complements.

Complements versus postmodifiers 169c

Complements and postmodifiers are different in their function. Postmodifiers specify which person or thing or type of person or thing is being referred to. The major postmodifier is the relative clause. All the other postmodifiers can be paraphrased by a relative clause. For example, 'the house nearby' can be paraphrased as 'the house which is nearby'; 'the girl in jeans' can be paraphrased as 'the girl who is wearing jeans'.

Complements complete the meaning of the noun phrase. In the noun phrase *the* ***claim*** *that they have nuclear weapons*, the underlined words complete the meaning of *claim* (a claim must be 'about something'). Complement prepositional phrases cannot be paraphrased with relative clauses:

a rise *in interest rates*
(~~a rise which is in interest rates~~)

the ***mother*** *of three little children*
(~~the mother who is of three little children~~)

More than one complement can occur together:

The ***gift*** | *of the estate* | *to the National Trust* | *meant more people could visit it.*

The ***statement*** | *by the driver of the vehicle* | *that he did not see the lorry* | *was rejected by the Court.*

539 **Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

More than one postmodifier can occur together:

> *The **girl** | in jeans | in the corner | with that tall American student |.*

Complements and postmodifiers can occur together. The complement comes first because it is so closely associated semantically with the head:

> **complement** **postmodifier**
> *Students | of astronomy | at Cambridge | all get very high grades.*
> (~~*Students at Cambridge of astronomy all get very high grades.*~~)

Order of pre- and post-head elements 169d

The table below shows the order of the pre- and post-head elements in the noun phrase. Because they indicate the type of reference for the whole noun phrase, determiners come before premodifiers. Because complements complete the meaning of the head and are therefore closely associated with the head, they precede postmodifiers.

Order of elements in the noun phrase

pre-head		head	post-head	
determiners	**premodifiers**		**complements**	**postmodifiers**
		silence		
those		***books***		
	cheap | red	***shoes***		
its	*smooth | wood*	***surface***		
my own	*personal*	***space***		
some	*baked*	***potatoes***		
many	*big*	***towns***		*nearby*
the	*first*	***chapter***		*of the book*
all	*university*	***students***		
the		***killer***	*of seventeen-year-old Maria Nixon*	
a		***mother***	*of two children under five*	
the		***car***		*(that) he was driving*
some	*recent*	***films***		*which have been on general release and which have made millions of dollars*
a		***letter***		*saying when it will happen*
a	*long-awaited | government*	***report***		*published last week*
a		***drawer***		*full of pens and pencils*
his	*recent*	***claim***	*that he was innocent,*	*which was broadcast on state radio and TV*

⇢ 176–196 Nouns and determiners; 236–241 Adjectives and adjective phrases

MODIFIERS 170

Types of premodifier and postmodifier 170a

The main types of premodifier are:

- adjective phrases:

  a ***different*** *bus; a* ***very important*** *meeting; a* ***stabbing*** *pain; a* ***hastily written*** *request*

- noun phrases:

  a ***stone*** *wall;* ***media*** *hype; a* ***first-year undergraduate*** *seminar*

The main types of postmodifier are:

- full relative clauses:

  the newspaper ***I have always bought****; the fighting* ***which accompanies every international football match between the two countries***

- *-ing* relative clauses:

  that short fat man ***walking through the shop***

- *-ed* relative clauses:

  the six Cuban nationals ***held in custody by rebel soldiers***

- *to*-infinitive relative clauses:

  We had a long journey ***to make before nightfall****.*

- prepositional phrases:

  Those piles ***on the floor*** *are exam papers* ***from last year****.*

- adjective phrases which include a complement of the adjective:

  a jacket ***similar to yours****; parents* ***eager to support their children's efforts***

Noun phrases can involve several of the above elements. The table shows examples of noun phrases which include premodification and postmodification occurring together:

Noun phrases with premodification and postmodification

determiner	premodification	head	postmodification
the	*small* | *stone*	*cottage*	*which he bought three years ago*
an	*ancient* | *market*	*town*	*in the heart of the country*
a	*new* | *staff*	*structure*	*for the company*
some	*very sudden*	*changes*	*caused by an area of low pressure*
many	*brave*	*soldiers*	*willing to volunteer*

236–241 Adjectives and adjective phrases

Premodification involving noun phrases 170b

Even though premodifying noun phrases may have plural reference, they are singular in form:

the ***postgraduate*** *regulations*
(i.e. the regulations for postgraduates)
(~~the postgraduates regulations~~)

✪ This is particularly notable with expressions of measurement:

a ***three-day*** *journey*
(~~a three-days journey~~)

a ***300-seat*** *auditorium*
(~~a 300-seats auditorium~~)

Several noun premodifiers often occur together. This occurs frequently where it is important to compress as much information as possible in a limited space:

cottage-style kitchen *window*

two-button cotton summer *jacket*
(product description)

Italian pesto chicken *pasta*
(menu or description of a food dish)

Such structures also occur in everyday usage when speakers need to convey detailed information economically:

That ***first floor flat front door*** *key needs replacing.*

I've got ***twenty year-three geography*** *essays to mark.*

Sometimes this kind of information packing can cause ambiguities, though alternative interpretations are usually resolved in context:

a ***French Canadian literature*** *professor*

This phrase could be interpreted as 'a professor of Canadian literature who is French' or 'a professor of literature who is a French Canadian' or 'a professor of French Canadian literature'.

also **174 The noun phrase in speech and writing**

Noun modifier versus prepositional phrase 170c

In general, noun modifier and compound structures are preferred to noun + prepositional structures when referring to familiar, everyday entities:

a world map
(a familiar object)

a map of the Nile Delta
(a less common combination; preferred to 'a Nile Delta map')

road signs
(familiar and everyday sights)

signs of frustration
(occurring in more specific circumstances – preferred to 'frustration signs')

In the case of phrases which refer to units, parts and collections of things, normally referred to as partitive expressions (*a piece of paper*, *a bunch of roses*, *four slices of ham*), noun + preposition + noun forms are preferred. Thus *four slices of ham* is preferred to *four ham slices*.

A–Z ***55 Of***

⇢ also **179 Partitive expressions**

POSTMODIFIERS 171

Clauses as postmodifiers 171a

Finite relative clauses

Clauses acting as postmodifiers are relative clauses. Finite relative clauses are introduced by the pronouns *who*, *whom*, *whose*, *which*, *that* or a 'zero' relative pronoun:

*That's the **group** to whom they should consider making an incentive payment.*

*The police haven't even interviewed those **people** whose house was burgled.*

*I've left some **books** which you'll need in the main office.*

*That **car** that she wanted has been sold.*

*Did you make the **call** he asked you to make?*
('zero' relative pronoun)

⇢ **204 Relative pronouns**

Postmodifying relative clauses are of two types: defining and non-defining. A defining relative clause identifies the noun which it postmodifies and distinguishes it from other nouns. In the following sentence, *who lives abroad* tells us that there is more than one sister and identifies the one who lives abroad as the one who is ill:

*His sister **who lives abroad** got taken seriously ill.*

Non-defining relative clauses provide further information about the preceding noun but do not identify it. In the following sentence, the relative clause simply adds extra information about the sister, rather than defining her:

*His sister, **who lives abroad**, got taken seriously ill.*

The different punctuation reflects these differences in meaning.

Defining and non-defining relative clauses are also termed restrictive and non-restrictive clauses.

→ 317 Relative clauses

Non-finite relative clauses

Postmodifying relative clauses may also be non-finite. The common types of non-finite relative clause are (in green):

- *-ing* clauses:

  *It's got **a walled garden** consisting of a stone arch and two sections for vegetables.*

  ***The guy** running the event looks pretty well-off, doesn't he?*

- *-ed* clauses:

  ***The effort** required to lift these weights is considerable.*

  ***The protests** caused by the lack of tickets were the responsibility of the organisers.*

- *to*-infinitive clauses:

  *He certainly is **an actor** to watch out for.*

  ***Pictures** to be seen in the gallery include a fine eighteenth-century watercolour.*

Non-finite relative clauses can be defining or non-defining:

> *I'm looking for **a house** to buy.*
> (defining)
>
> ***A large sum of money**, donated by Petsmart foods, has also been invested in improved kennel facilities.*
> (non-defining)

Prepositional phrases as postmodifiers 171b

Prepositional phrases are an extremely common type of postmodifier. They function in a manner similar to defining relative clauses:

> ***Cars** with disc brakes on all four wheels have been proved to be safer.*
> (Cars which have disc brakes on all four wheels …)
>
> **The five main proposals** *in the plan were considered at yesterday's meeting.*
> (The five main proposals which are in the plan …)
>
> *He has lots of friends but that was **a friend** of long standing.*
> (… but that was a friend who was of long standing)

COMPLEMENTS 172

Clauses as complements 172a

Types of noun that take complement clauses

The majority of the nouns that take complement clauses are nouns which are derived from verbs (e.g. *suggestion* is derived from *suggest*) or nouns which are semantically related to verbs (e.g. the nouns *author* and *writer* are related to the verb *write*).

That-clauses

Clauses acting as complements are often *that*-clauses. On the surface these may resemble postmodifying defining relative clauses with *that*. However, the difference can be demonstrated:

> *The suggestion* ***that they put forward*** *was accepted.*
>
> *The suggestion* ***that he should resign*** *was accepted.*

In the first sentence, which involves a postmodifying relative clause, the *suggestion* is defined and identified, and *that* can be substituted by *which* or it can be omitted (i.e. the clause can have a zero relative pronoun). In the second sentence, *that* cannot be omitted (i.e. the clause cannot have a zero relative pronoun), *which* cannot substitute for *that*, and the whole clause completes the meaning of the 'suggestion'.

Noun complement clauses with *that* are very common in formal written contexts, especially academic writing and journalism:

> ***The fact*** *that he was calm did not influence the jury.*
>
> *Why has* ***the impression*** *that he is about to give large sums of money to the cause grown up so quickly among his supporters?*
>
> ***The belief*** *that prejudice is largely an ethnic issue has dominated the political agenda.*

Other types of clause

Less common types of noun complement clause include:

- *to*-infinitive clause:

  The decision *to go ahead was not a popular one.*

- defining *wh*-interrogative clause:

  That's part of ***the reason*** *why we bought it.*

- *as to* + *wh*-clause (mainly with *whether*):

  There were a number of ***reservations*** *as to whether they should be allowed to participate.*

The *as to* structure is particularly common in writing in more formal contexts.

Prepositional phrases as complements 172b

The most frequent prepositions used in prepositional complement structures are *to*, *of*, *in*, *for* and *with*:

> *Has she forgotten about* ***her right*** *to compensation?*
>
> *Just don't lose* ***your belief*** *in his talent, will you.*
>
> ***The relationship*** *with neighbouring countries has markedly improved in recent years.*

A noun may take more than one prepositional phrase complement:

> *Let there be* ***government*** *| of the people | by the people | for the people |.*
>
> *The* ***statement*** *| by the driver | to the police | about the incident | was crucial.*

250–257 Prepositions and prepositional phrases

NOUN PHRASES OCCURRING TOGETHER (IN APPOSITION) 173

Noun phrases which refer to the same entity can occur together in a clause. The feature is called 'apposition'. The nouns can follow each other in sequence (often separated by commas in writing).

Apposition states the relationship between the nouns, or indicates the relationship with a name, or expresses the first noun phrase as an attribute of the second noun phrase. The second (appositive) noun phrase has the same grammatical status as the preceding noun phrase and the phrases can normally be reversed without altering the meaning:

> *| The Queen |, | the head of the Commonwealth |, will be accompanied to the conference by the Prime Minister and the Foreign Secretary.*
>
> *| The head of the Commonwealth |, | the Queen |, will be accompanied to the conference by the Prime Minister and the Foreign Secretary.*

Other examples of apposition are:

> *I'm going to see | my tutor |, | Dr Johnson |, about a change of course.*
>
> *I saw | the clerk in charge |, | a very dubious-looking individual |.*
>
> *| Seamus Deane's novel | Reading in the Dark | has been nominated for the Booker Prize.*

In written English, apposition is more likely to occur at the beginning of a clause, as in several of the above examples. In spoken English, apposition regularly occurs at the end of a clause but its position within a clause is generally a little more flexible:

> *When you went in through the apartment door the first thing you saw was | the harbour | – | Sydney Harbour |.*
>
> *She got me to do | the job | for her, | her fence |.*
> (the job = repair her fence)

Equivalent information in written discourse is normally given by means of premodifiers:

> *They've bought | a new jeep |, | a new 2.6 litre turbo-diesel |.*
> (preferred in written style: They've bought a new 2.6 litre turbo-diesel jeep.)

In journalistic styles, a characteristic order of common nouns preceding proper nouns often occurs:

> *| Former Prime Minister and scourge of Europe |, | Margaret Thatcher | spoke out today.*

96 Headers and **97 Tails** for apposition-related structures

THE NOUN PHRASE IN SPEECH AND WRITING 174

There are differences in spoken and written uses of modifiers and complements.

Speech

In spoken English, especially in informal contexts, the clauses are sometimes strung together in a sequence. In narratives, in particular, information is built up more gradually and in smaller units. In the following examples post-head elements are in bold and the head is in green:

> [spoken]
> *There's just so many things **that we've got to tell them about and that they've got to just sit down and listen to and that they'd better do something about**.*

> [spoken narrative]
> *While we were on one of those Breton holidays she swam so far out that she met the only other person **who could swim, who turned out to be an Austrian** and that was only the beginning **of our link with Austria**.*

Writing

In some registers of written English, especially those where space is restricted, complex premodifiers are more common than simple ones and in certain written varieties pre- and post-head elements are likely to occur together. In many of the following examples, a lot of information is compressed into the noun phrase, often because space has to be saved (e.g. in the case of newspaper headlines). In the following examples, pre- and post-head elements are in bold and the head is in green:

> [advertisement]
> ***Lightweight training** shoes **with dual density midsole**.*

> [menu]
> ***Lightly battered** prawns **with a spicy Thai red curry sauce**.*

> [personal contact advertisement – newspaper]
> ***Attractive, fun-loving** male **of independent means** seeks **mid-thirties** partner with a view to marriage.*

[small advertisement offering things for sale, etc. – magazine]
Delightful lakeside country house *hotel* ***with own frontage, jetty and yacht for hire****.*

[personal contact advertisement – newspaper]
Slightly balding but fit and active *divorcee* ***with two young children, nine and seven****, seeks* ***sport-loving, energetic*** *companion.*

⁘ 236–241 Adjectives and adjective phrases

⁘ also **82–91 Introduction to grammar and spoken English**

A–Z ***55 Of***

Post-head elements enable the user to define and specify things more precisely. In written styles, post-head elements help to create a characteristic descriptive style of the kind found, for example, in guide books and in promotional information about services and products. In the following examples post-head elements are in bold and the head is in green:

[text on a cereal packet; the cereal is called *Fruitful*]

Fruitful from Shredded Wheat
Full of Fruit
Enjoy succulent sultanas ***combined with plump raisins dried in the Californian sun and blended with hazelnut pieces****. Crunchy slices* ***of golden banana, mixed with juicy pieces of papaya and tender toasted coconut****. Discover the tempting taste* ***that's bursting with delicious fruits and crunchy wholewheat goodness****.*

[estate agent's particulars]
Imaginatively restored Georgian terraced house ***with fitted kitchen leading to a spacious patio and a large vegetable garden****.*

In technical and scientific English, heavy use of post-head elements involving clauses and prepositional phrases serves to elaborate and package a lot of information within the noun phrase:

[an advertisement which in this case sells the product it advertises by means of a more technical register]
The armchair design allows infinite combinations ***of seat tilt, leg support and back rest angle, providing every facility from fireside chair to full-length single bed****.*

Formation of nouns (nominalisation) 175

Nouns can be formed from other parts of speech, most commonly verbs. For example, the verb *fly* can be converted into the nouns *flying* and *flight*. The adjectives *bright* and *long* form the nouns *brightness* and *length*. The process is called nominalisation. The nominalised form is used more in written and formal contexts:

> *We* ***fly*** *at seven o'clock this evening.*
> *Our* ***flight*** *is at seven o'clock this evening.*
>
> *Mr Hamson* ***donated*** *£2000.*
> *Mr Hamson made a* ***donation*** *of £2000.*
>
> *I was dazzled by the extremely* ***bright*** *lights.*
> *I was dazzled by the extreme* ***brightness*** *of the lights.*
>
> *They* ***partied*** *all night and we decided to* ***complain*** *to the hotel.*
> *We decided to make a* ***complaint*** *to the hotel about their all-night* ***parties****.*

In each example here, the second sentence contains one or more nominalised forms. This results in a more formal expression of the equivalent meaning in a different word class.

Sometimes the noun is derived from another part of speech to which it is related. Sometimes the noun is formed metaphorically rather than derived (morphologically) from another part of speech:

> *They were able to* ***get to*** *the computer once a week.*
> ***Access*** *to the computer was once a week.*
>
> *Mobile phones are* ***getting much better*** *technically.*
> *There have been many technical* ***advances*** *with mobile phones.*

Nominalised forms can sometimes be used without reference to an agent and in certain contexts this can mean the cause or agent can be concealed or made less important:

> *The* ***closure*** *of the factory caused 200 workers to lose their jobs.*
> (compare: Meteorcorp closed the factory and 200 workers lost their jobs.)
>
> *The* ***dismissal*** *of the union leaders was immediate.*
> (compare: The director of the company dismissed the union leaders immediately.)

Another type of nominalised structure, common in everyday usage, is the delexical verb phrase + noun phrase structure. Delexical verbs include *go*, *get*, *make*, *do*, *take* (⁘ **475a**). Delexical structures often offer an informal equivalent to a full lexical verb phrase:

> *They* ***got a divorce*** *in 1998.*
> (compare the more formal: They divorced in 1998.)
>
> *He hasn't* ***done any painting*** *since he retired.*
> (compare: He has not painted since he retired.)

⁘ **142 Nominalisation** in **Grammar and academic English**

Nouns and determiners

Introduction 176
Count nouns 177
  Count nouns and determiners 177a
  Count nouns: same singular and plural forms 177b
  Sort of, *type of*, *kind of*, *class of* + count noun 177c
Non-count nouns 178
  General 178a
  Singular non-count nouns 178b
  Non-count nouns ending in *-s* 178c
  Plural non-count nouns 178d
Partitive expressions (*a bit of*, *a pair of*) 179
Non-count nouns used countably 180
Count nouns used as non-count nouns 181
Noun phrase agreement 182
  Noun + verb agreement 182a
  Agreement with quantifying expressions 182b
Panel: Gender and animate/inanimate reference 183
Proper names 184
Panel: Names of geographical features 185
Panel: Names of regions, countries, nationalities and languages 186
Determiners: introduction 187
Determiners: characteristics of use 188
Determiners and types of head noun 189
  No restrictions 189a
  Restricted to singular count or non-count noun 189b
  Restricted to singular count noun 189c
  Restricted to singular non-count noun 189d
  Restricted to plural count noun 189e
  Restricted to plural count or plural non-count noun 189f
  Restricted to non-count or plural count noun 189g
Determiners and pronouns 190
  Determiners used as pronouns 190a
  Determiners replaced by pronouns 190b
  Possessive determiners and pronouns 190c
***Of* + definite noun phrase** 191
***Of* + possessive pronoun after the head noun** 192
Possessive *'s* 193
Numerals 194
Agreement problems with determiners 195
Important distinctions in the use of determiners 196
  The and zero article 196a
  Some and *any*: strong versus weak forms 196b
  Some, *any* and zero determiner 196c
  Weak form *some* and *any* and clause types 196d
  No and *not a*/*not any* 196e
  This, *that*, *these*, *those* 196f
  Panel: *This* and *that* and discourse segments 196g
  Much, *many* and *a lot*/*lots* 196h

Nouns and determiners

INTRODUCTION 176

This chapter is divided into two main parts. The first part (177–186) pays particular attention to the features of nouns, and the second part (187–196) describes the features of determiners.

Nouns

Nouns can be divided into two major grammatical types, count nouns and non-count nouns. Their grammar differs principally in terms of whether they can express contrasts of number.

Count nouns are the largest group of nouns. They denote entities which are treated as units. They refer to objects, people, abstract entities, etc. which are seen as easily counted (e.g. *leaves*, *cups*, *footballers*, *cousins*, *results*, *ideas*). Count nouns are also known as countable nouns.

Non-count nouns denote things treated as non-divisible. They refer to entities which do not have clear boundaries (e.g. *cheese*, *music*, *sand*, *water*, *love*, *advice*, *air*, *progress*, *homework*, *ice*, *coffee*). They show no contrast in number between singular and plural. Non-count nouns are also known as uncountable nouns.

Some things that English treats as non-divisible are easy to perceive that way (e.g. *sand* or *water*) but English also treats as non-count things such as *luggage*, *money*, *furniture*, which are composed of elements which can be counted (e.g. someone's 'luggage' may consist of two cases and a bag; 'money' may consist of six coins and two notes) but which are treated as single indivisible entities.

Count and non-count are not mutually exclusive terms. Many nouns have both count and non-count uses.

There are also other grammatical and semantic types of noun (proper names, plural-only nouns and collective nouns) referred to in this chapter.

Determiners

Determiners indicate the type of reference a noun phrase has; for example whether the determiner is definite or indefinite (*the*, *a*), possessive (*my*, *her*, etc.), demonstrative (*this*, *those*, etc.). Determiners can also indicate number or quantity (*some*, *many*, *twenty*, etc.).

Determiners come first in the noun phrase, before other elements such as adjectives and noun modifiers. They include words like: *a*, *each*, *his*, *my*, *several*, *some*, *the*, *those*, *which*, and numerals such as *one*, *two*, *first*:

*This is **a** message for Helen Crawford.*

*I'm just about to eat **my** pizza.*

*I'm **his** best friend.*

*There have been **three** recent government reports which have looked into the matter.*

The rules for the use of determiners depend on the grammatical type of the head noun of the noun phrase. For example, *a/an* cannot be used with singular or plural non-count nouns such as *furniture, information, outskirts* or *belongings* (→ **178b and 178d**).

COUNT NOUNS 177

Count nouns and determiners 177a

Count nouns denote people and things which are treated as units. They refer to objects, people, abstract entities, etc. which are perceived as easily counted. Count nouns have both a singular and a plural form. The indefinite article *a/an* can be used with count nouns in the singular. Numerals can also be used in front of count nouns:

> *I'd prefer **a cat** to **a dog**. **Cats** are interesting.*
>
> ***Three cars** were involved in the accident.*

Singular count nouns cannot stand without a determiner:

> *Would you pass **the teapot** please?*
> (~~Would you pass teapot please?~~)
>
> *Have you ever worked in **a hotel**?*
>
> ***This book** is interesting.*

Plural count nouns are used with determiners when a specific meaning is indicated, but without determiners when a general meaning is indicated:

> ***These hotels** offer you every comfort.*
> (specific)
>
> ***Your books** have arrived.*
> (specific)
>
> ***Rats** terrify me.*
> (general: all members of that class)
>
> ***Hotels** in the area of the Conference Centre are usually booked well in advance.*
> (general: the number of hotels in the area or which hotels in the area is not specified)

Count nouns: same singular and plural forms 177b

A limited number of count nouns have an identical singular and plural form:

> *We encountered **a series** of problems on the way.*
>
> *The BBC are planning **two** new drama **series** for the autumn.*

Other examples of identical singular and plural forms include:

aircraft
*chassis**
corps (/kɔː/)*
gasworks
*précis**
series
species
*rendezvous**

* Although the written forms are identical, singular is usually pronounced without the /s/ at the end, plural is pronounced with the /s/ at the end.

Agreement with singular and plural verbs and/or with singular and plural determiners indicates whether the noun is being used with singular or plural meaning:

The aircraft is *the same one we flew out to Greece in.*
These aircraft were *used in the Second World War and* ***are*** *too old to fly now.*

It's a *new* ***series****. They took the previous series off because* ***it was****n't suitable viewing for children.*

There ***are three*** *different* ***series*** *of the computer. We think* ***they were*** *all made in South Korea.*

Many count nouns which refer to animals or birds also have an identical singular and plural form. When an individual creature is referred to, singular determiners and verbs are used, but when referring to several animals in a group or in large numbers, plural determiners and verbs are used:

He saw ***a grouse*** *moving very slowly across the field.*
Grouse are *always shot at this time of year.*

A deer *attacked a motorist late last night.*
There ***are many*** *lovely* ***deer*** *in the royal park.*

This salmon is *not very fresh.*
These salmon return *to the same stream every year.*

Other examples are: *bison*, *reindeer*, *sheep*, *fish* (*cod*, *halibut*, *herring*, *mackerel*, *trout* and other fish names).

In the case of many tree- and plant-name count nouns, the singular and plural forms may both be used to express more than one example of the class:

Several beech *lined the long path leading to the palace.*

[*rookeried* means 'containing rooks' nests']
When he rode back over the hill to Burlford and took in the timeless cluster of rooftops and church tower, the rookeried ***beeches*** *behind the Rectory, how did it seem?*

[text about the spread of different types of tree across Europe in prehistoric times]
In time, a broadleaved band of ***hazel****,* ***wych-elm****,* ***oak*** *and* ***alder*** *grew across southern Britain and mainland Europe, displacing the original forests of* ***birch*** *and* ***pine*** *as winters became less severe and summers lasted longer.*

> *Bog-like conditions prevail with **mosses**, **ferns** and **heathers** attracting fox moths and heather beetles. In damper ground orchids also thrive, sending up spectacular stalks of flowers. Trees too may take root, the stands of **grey willow** and **alder** providing still more shelter.*
>
> *The women sported thistles in their hats or **heather** in their lapels.*

Sort of, type of, kind of, class of + count noun 177c

With expressions such as *sort of*, *kind of*, *type of*, *class of*, *category of*, singular count nouns normally occur without *a/an*:

> *What **type of shop** do you think people use instead of the corner shops?*
>
> [*the Firth of Forth* is a wide river channel in Scotland]
> *A famous example of this **kind of bridge** is the road bridge across the Firth of Forth.*

However, in informal spoken contexts, *a/an* may be used:

> *What **kind of a dad** are you?*
>
> *What **sort of a bird** was it that you saw?*
>
> *It went away, then it came back. It was that **kind of a flu**.*

When the plural forms *sorts of*, *kinds of*, *types of*, *classes of*, *categories of* are used, either a singular or plural noun may follow:

> [advertisement for a security firm]
> *All **types of locks** and security **devices** fitted, and estimates given.*
>
> *There are two **types of microphone**: condenser microphones (otherwise known as electret) which require a battery, and dynamic microphones which do not.*
>
> *What **kinds of ambitions** did you have when you were younger?*
>
> *The banks give different interest for different **classes of deposits**.*
>
> *Various **categories of vehicle** are exempt from the need to obtain an operating licence.*

NON-COUNT NOUNS 178

General 178a

Non-count nouns show no contrast in number between singular and plural. They refer to things treated as indivisible entities, not as separate units. They typically refer to things such as materials and liquids, states of mind, conditions, topics, processes and substances.

There are two types of non-count nouns: singular and plural.

Singular non-count nouns 178b

Singular non-count nouns are not used with the indefinite article *a/an* or in the plural:

*I can hear **music**.*
(~~I can hear a music.~~)

*The **furniture** was very old.*
(~~The furnitures were very old.~~)

*They got good **advice** from the student counsellor.*
(~~They got a good advice from the student counsellor.~~)
(~~They got good advices from the student counsellor.~~)

Some common examples of singular non-count nouns are:

advice
baggage
bread
cement
cheese
electricity
fun
furniture
happiness
help
information
knowledge
luck
luggage
paint
patience
progress
rain
sand
snow
soap
truth
water
weather
violence

Singular non-count nouns may have concrete meanings (*cheese*, *furniture*, *luggage*, *sand*) or more abstract meanings (*advice*, *knowledge*, *patience*, *progress*).

When concrete nouns are singular non-count, it is usually because they are seen as an undifferentiated mass. The names of many common items of food and drink are treated as singular non-count nouns, as are the names of materials. The nouns in the lists below that are liquids, gases and solids consist of collections of small particles that are not usually divided and so are seen as a whole:

- Food and drink:

bread
cake
cheese
coffee
curry
fruit
jam
juice
milk
oil
pasta
rice
salad
salt
spaghetti
spinach
sugar
tea
water
yoghurt

→ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

- Liquids, gases and solids:

adhesive
air
cement
cloth
concrete
cotton
deodorant
dye
fabric
fog
fuel
fur
gravel
lotion
medicine
metal
ointment
paint
petrol
plastic
sand
smoke
soap
soil
toothpaste
wool

Other languages divide masses and entities differently from English. For example, in some languages *hair*, *spaghetti*, *spinach* and *money* are treated as plural units rather than a singular mass.

The following examples of singular non-count nouns are count nouns in many other languages:

*accommodation**
advice
applause
assistance
baggage
camping
cash
chaos
clothing
cutlery
equipment
evidence
furniture
hair
harm
health
homework
housework
housing
information
knowledge
leisure
luck
luggage
money
music
news
progress
publicity
*research**
rubbish
safety
shopping
spaghetti
spinach
traffic
transport
travel
underwear
violence
weather
work

* may occur as count nouns in non-British varieties of English

Where have you left your ***luggage****?*
(~~Where have you left your luggages?~~)

There ***is*** *not* ***much information*** *about the college.*
(~~There are not many informations about the college.~~)

> *How **is** your **knowledge** of the British jail system?*
> (~~How are your knowledges of the British jail system?~~)
>
> *Your **hair looks** nice.*
> (~~Your hairs look nice.~~)

Non-count nouns ending in *-s* 178c

Some non-count nouns end in *-s* but are grammatically singular. They include names of some school/university subjects, physical activities, diseases, and games:

Non-count nouns which end in *-s*

school/university subjects	physical activities	diseases	games
civics	*athletics*	*shingles*	*bowls*
classics	*aerobics*	*measles*	*billiards*
economics	*callisthenics*	*mumps*	*darts*
ergonomics	*gymnastics*		*dominoes*
ethics			*draughts*
linguistics			*skittles*
maths/mathematics			
mechanics			
physics			
politics			
pragmatics			

Another very common word that is singular but ends in *-s* is *news*

> ***Aerobics is** really popular these days, particularly with older people.*
>
> ***Shingles lays** you low for anything up to six months, doesn't it?*
>
> ***Bowls is** played by many younger people these days.*
>
> ***This news is** not so good.*
> (~~These news are not so good.~~)

Exceptionally, plural verbs may occur with such nouns when the noun phrase has a more specific reference:

> *David's **politics keep** getting him into trouble.*
> (political views)
>
> *They've been running the country for two years now but their **economics are** all wrong.*
> (economic beliefs/policies)

Plural non-count nouns 178d

The following commonly occurring non-count nouns are always grammatically plural:

belongings
congratulations
dregs
earnings
goods
likes
mains
outskirts
particulars
pictures (cinema)
premises (buildings)
proceedings
proceeds
remains
riches
savings (money)
stairs
surroundings
thanks

*I understand **congratulations are** due on the new job, by the way.*

*The **outskirts** of the city **are** rather drab and uninteresting.*

*The **proceeds** of the concert **are** all going to charity.*

Some nouns with plural forms have different meanings. For example:

pictures = cinema (now becoming outdated)
pictures = plural of picture

premises = a building or buildings
premises = plural of premise (meaning ‘ideas or theory on which an argument is based’)

Some plural non-count nouns refer to things perceived as having two parts, e.g. *trousers* have two legs (‘bipartite’ items):

A: *Where **are** my **jeans**?*
B: ***They’re** in the wash.*

Bipartite nouns include garments with two legs worn around the waist (e.g. *jeans*), instruments worn over both eyes or both ears related to sight and hearing (e.g. *headphones*) and tools consisting of two similar parts on a pivot (e.g. *scissors*):

Bipartite nouns

instruments	garments	tools
binoculars	*briefs*	*pincers*
glasses	*jeans*	*pliers*
goggles	*jodhpurs*	*scissors*
headphones	*knickers*	*shears*
spectacles	*overalls*	*tongs*
	pants	*tweezers*
	pyjamas	
	shorts	
	trousers	
	underpants	

This group of nouns is productive in that new nouns (including the names of manufacturers) which fit into these categories generally take on the same syntactic features. Recent examples include:

combats, chinos, Levis (types of trousers)

boxers (underwear shorts)

shades, Ray-bans (types of sunglasses)

In order to refer to more than one example of this type of noun, the partitive expression *a pair of/pairs of* is commonly used:

He needs a new ***pair of glasses****, I think.*
(or: He needs new glasses, I think.)

We bought a small ***pair of binoculars****.*
(or: We bought some small binoculars.)

I'm going to take about ***four pairs of trousers****.*
(~~I'm going to take about four trousers.~~)

In some cases it is difficult to tell whether a singular or plural reference is made:

I didn't buy much but I did buy ***some trousers****.*
(one pair or several could be indicated)

PARTITIVE EXPRESSIONS (*A BIT OF, A PAIR OF*) 179

Sometimes it is necessary to be able to count the things denoted by singular and plural non-count nouns, and especially to count concrete things. Partitive expressions allow this. Examples of partitive expressions are: *bit of*, *item of*, *pair of*, *piece of*. Of these, the most neutral and widely used expressions involve *bit*, *piece* and *item*:

I gave her two ***bits of advice****.*

Some ***items of furniture*** *were destroyed.*

Would you like this ***piece of cheese****?*

Partitive expressions collocate strongly with particular non-count nouns:

a ***loaf of*** *bread*
two ***slices of*** *bread/cake/cheese/chicken breast*
a ***bar of*** *chocolate/soap*
a ***bit of*** *fun*
a ***piece of*** *furniture*
a ***stroke of*** *luck*
a ***spell of*** *bad weather*

Examples of informal everyday partitive expressions commonly occurring with non-count nouns, both concrete and abstract, are:

bit of
chunk of
dash of
drop of
lump of
mass of
sheet of
pile of
portion of
slice of
sliver of
spell of
spot of
touch of
trace of

> *There are two **piles of** dirty **washing** over there. Whose are they?*
>
> *He always adds a **nice touch of humour** to the commentary.*
>
> *They say we might just get a **spot of rain** in the late afternoon.*
>
> *We had a **spell of** very mild **weather** in January.*
>
> *Shall I get six **slices of cheese**, or is that not enough?*

Partitive expressions commonly refer to the shape, size, movement or the amount of something:

> *There's a whole **stream of people** queuing outside the post office.*
>
> *He gave us a **torrent of abuse**.*
>
> *At the end of the evening several **jets of** coloured **water** and light were sent flying up into the sky.*
>
> *One massive final **gust of wind** blew the tree over on its side.*

Some partitive expressions with *-ful* refer to containers or spaces which commonly hold the item referred to. These include *bowlful of*, *cupful of*, *fistful of*, *handful of*, *mouthful of*, *spoonful of*:

> *He gave me a **fistful of cash**. I don't know how much it was all together.*
>
> *I always add a **spoonful of salt** to the pasta water.*

The plural of such expressions is usually formed by adding *-s* after *-ful*:

> *Just put three **teaspoonfuls** of olive oil and one of vinegar and you have a perfect salad dressing.*

Partitive expressions are often used metaphorically to describe more abstract quantities:

> *They had a **slice of luck** when the coach went off the road but didn't hit anything.*
>
> *One had to add a **dash of realism** and a great big **dollop of gratitude** to a situation like this.*
>
> *Only a **handful of people** turned up at the concert. It was very disappointing.*

A–Z **55 *Of***

NON-COUNT NOUNS USED COUNTABLY 180

Masses and units

A number of singular non-count nouns can refer both to masses and to units. These nouns can be used with the indefinite article or in the plural when they refer to a particular unit or to units of something, or to different types and qualities of something.

Nouns in this class include those referring to food and drink and other materials and substances. The class also includes some abstract nouns such as *difficulty*, *experience*, *failure*, *injustice*, *success*. They are often referred to as 'dual class' nouns, because of their ability to operate in two different ways:

*Do you drink **tea**?*
(general, non-count use)

*Three **teas** and **a coffee** please.*
(particular instance(s): a cup/cups of tea/coffee)

*'Dazzle' is **an** excellent **washing powder**.*
(a particular type or quality)

*Do you want some **cake**?*
(general, non-count use; a piece of a big cake)

*Do you want **a cake** with your coffee?*
(an individual item)

*These **cakes** are delicious.*
(a number of individual items)

[describing puffins, a type of sea-bird]
*Since they find **difficulty** in taking off from flat ground, they tend to colonise the steeper slopes first.*

***An** additional **difficulty**, as some see it, is that the country now has multi-party democracy.*
(one individual problem or difficulty)

*I don't foresee any **difficulties**.*
(any set of problems or difficulties)

***Experience** must count for something in such situations.*
(a person's accumulated life experience or work experience)

*It was **a** great **experience**.*
(an individual event as lived through by someone)

*She's had some very odd **experiences**, I must say.*
(odd events have happened to her)

Mental states

Some of these dual-class nouns referring to mental states can be used with *a/an* but cannot be used in the plural. These include *anger*, *bitterness*, *courage*, *determination*, *hatred*, *knowledge*, *patience*, *pride*, *resistance*. When used with *a/an*, such nouns must be modified or used with a complement:

Count/non-count nouns with and without *a/an*

used without a/an	used with *a/an*
*… and many members of the middle class still harboured **deep anger over the economic losses that they had suffered during the 'great inflation'**.*	[literary critic describing a book] *There is wit and candour as well as sorrow, and **a good, controlled anger**, which never displays itself in censure or rancour.*
The offer from the IRA, to which Blair** has responded with **courage and determination**, was on the table last October.* [* Irish Republican Army] [**Tony Blair, British Prime Minister at the time]	*She had locks on her doors and, above all, **a determination to be a burden to no one**.*
*They had **extensive knowledge of 'best buy' food and food shops within their areas.***	*And she acquired **an in-depth knowledge of the hotel business**.*
*It was conversation that proved the downfall of our relationship; that and **wounded pride**.*	*Senna* not only has a much-improved car but **a wounded pride** to fire him today.* [* famous motor-racing driver]

Different meanings

A small number of singular non-count nouns are also used as count nouns but with a change in meaning:

> *I've got loads of **work** I could be doing.*
> (non-count: tasks, jobs, things to do)
>
> *The announced aim is to display modern **works** of art to a vast new audience.*
> (count: creative products by artists, e.g. books, paintings, music)
>
> *This will involve extensive engineering **works** on public roads.*
> (count: large-scale engineering activities, e.g. *road-works* [building and repairing roads])
>
> *Strangely, she disliked **travel**. She said she had always wanted to be 'home alone'.*
> (non-count: the activity or process of moving over longer distances from one place to another)
>
> *It has been my privilege to travel, to see a lot of country, and in those **travels** I have learned of several ways to become intimate with the land, ways I try to practise.*
> (count: often refers to major expeditions and journeys of exploration, for example, the famous English novel *Gulliver's Travels*)

COUNT NOUNS USED AS NON-COUNT NOUNS 181

Count nouns can be used as if they were non-countable. This often applies to countable food items such as *potatoes*, *onions*, *eggs*, and to any other count nouns which can be seen as a whole:

> *Do you use **egg** when you make your own pasta?*
>
> *After the storm, there were bits of **tree** all over the garden.*

Sometimes there is a shift in meaning when a count noun is used non-countably:

> *When we lived in the US, wild **turkeys** used to come into our garden.*
>
> *Do you always have **turkey** for lunch?*
> (reference to the meat rather than to the bird)

NOUN PHRASE AGREEMENT 182

Noun + verb agreement 182a

Collective nouns, such as *committee, government, team*, can be followed by either a singular or a plural verb form. When the singular verb form and/or singular pronouns are used, the group is treated as a unit; when the plural verb form and/or plural pronouns are used, the noun treats a group as a number of individuals:

> ***The government has** said **it** will take action.*
> (treated as a unit)
>
> ***The government have** said **they** will take action.*
> (treated as composed of different individuals/departments)
>
> ***The team is** in good spirits.*
> (treated as a unit)
>
> ***The team are** in good spirits.*
> (treated as composed of individual team members)

Plural concord is more common than singular in informal contexts. Further examples of collective nouns which behave similarly are:

audience
board
committee
community
company
congregation
crew
enemy
group
jury
public
staff

Other nouns with variable or otherwise noteworthy agreement patterns include *bulk*, *couple*, *majority*, *minority*, *number*, *pair*, *percentage*, *proportion*, *rest*, *remainder*:

> *While some patients in the special hospitals are dangerous, **the majority are** not.*
> (typical usage: treated as composed of separate individuals; plural agreement)

> *Over 100,000 supporters waited to see the game but* ***the majority was*** *outside watching on a large screen.*
> (less typical usage: treated as a unified body; more formal)
>
> [from a film review]
> ***The rest*** *of the cast* ***are*** *okay as well but no one really stands out, and the special effects are merely okay, too.*
> (treated as composed of separate individuals)
>
> ***The rest*** *of the European Union now* ***seems*** *ready to reluctantly bow to British pressure that justice and home affairs remain primarily a matter for intergovernmental cooperation.*
> (treated as a unified body)
>
> *There* ***were a number*** *of strange facts that were difficult to explain, and the judge decided that she was the murderer.*
> (almost always plural agreement even though singular in form)
>
> ***A couple of*** *boys* ***were*** *standing at the corner.*
> (almost always plural agreement even though singular in form)

Agreement with quantifying expressions 182b

The quantifying expressions *a good deal of*, *a great deal of*, *plenty of* and constructions with *quantity of* and *amount of* are restricted to use with certain types of noun.

A good deal of, a great deal of

These are normally restricted to singular non-count nouns:

> *Recent comment has been disfigured by* ***a good deal of misinformation****.*
>
> *He had lost* ***a great deal of weight*** *and it made him look taller than ever.*

However, in informal speech, *a good/great deal of* may be used with plural count nouns:

> [talking about how men might behave badly when out in all-male company but differently when at home]
> *I'm quite convinced that* ***a good deal of those men*** *would go home to their wives and family and be very loving to their, to their wives and family, be respectful of their neighbours.*
>
> [talking about a tennis club]
> *There are a couple of adults there that like to play but really there weren't really* ***a great deal of players*** *other than the juniors to play with.*

Amount of

In general, constructions with *amount of* are restricted to use with non-count nouns:

> *We still have* ***a huge amount of work*** *to do.*

However, in more informal spoken and written contexts, *amount of* may occur with plural count nouns:

> *For the cost, the machine seems very good value, especially with* ***the amount of accessories*** *supplied.*

Plenty of and *quantity of*

Constructions with *plenty of* and *quantity of* may be used with either non-count nouns or plural count nouns:

> *No need to rush, we've got* ***plenty of time****.*
>
> *There are* ***plenty of reasons*** *for not doing it.*
>
> [describing materials for use with aquarium plants]
> *A mixture of coarse sand and clay with* ***a small quantity of charcoal*** *or charcoal incorporated in granulated clay is suitable.*
>
> *He had* ***a huge quantity of*** *newspaper* ***cuttings*** *he'd collected over the years.*
>
> ***A sizeable quantity of drugs****, including heroin, had been found and seized also, along with a veritable arsenal of guns and ammunition.*

Gender and animate/inanimate reference 183

English nouns are not, as they are in some languages, masculine, feminine or neuter. Only pronouns and possessive determiners are marked grammatically for gender (e.g. *he*, *she*, *it*, *his*, *hers*). However, English does distinguish living (animate) from non-living (inanimate) things. For example, *he*, *she* and *who* are used to refer to animate nouns; *it* and *which* are used to refer to inanimate nouns:

> ***She****'s a famous* ***actress****. Isn't* ***she*** *the one* ***who*** *was in 'Four Weddings'?*
>
> *Here's* ***the bag****. Don't forget* ***it****'s the bag* ***which*** *has already been stolen twice this week.*

Animate nouns can refer either to people (personal) or animals (non-personal). Personal animate nouns can be used to refer to both males and females. There are different forms for a small number of personal animate nouns:

actor	*actress*
host	*hostess*
policeman	*policewoman*
steward	*stewardess*
waiter	*waitress*

Some female forms of nouns are no longer used (e.g. *poetess*, *murderess*), and in some cases the (formerly) male noun is now used to refer to both sexes (e.g. *actor*, *host*). Usually, gender-neutral nouns are preferred (e.g. *police officer*, *firefighter*, *flight attendant*).

Sometimes male and female terms are used as premodifiers to distinguish the gender-reference of the head noun. Examples are: *male model*, *male nurse*, *female plumber*, *boy soprano*, *women novelists*. These terms are all socially sensitive and should be used carefully.

In some contexts, the word *person* is preferred to *man* or *woman*:

> *She was elected* ***chairperson*** *of the committee.*
>
> *He was the best* ***spokesperson*** *we've had in a long time.*

Most non-personal animate nouns refer to animals. Animals which have a special place in human society can be referred to by the pronouns *he*, *she* and *who*, especially in spoken language. A degree of subjectivity in labelling the gender of an animal is usually present:

There's a black dog in the street. ***He*** *looks lost.*

Is ***she*** *a big eater, your* ***cat****?*

Some animals are given separate male and female words. These words are mainly used in specific contexts, for example by breeders or vets, or other experts and people working in the field. Common examples are listed below, with the common general name for the animal given alongside.

male	female	common name
lion	*lioness*	*lion*
fox	*vixen*	*fox*
dog	*bitch*	*dog*
tiger	*tigress*	*tiger*
bull	*cow*	*cow*
drake	*duck*	*duck*

When used with human reference, the pronoun *it* normally only applies to babies or to small children and is used both for general reference and for occasions when the gender may not be known:

> *Every child misses* ***its*** *mother.*
>
> *That baby upstairs.* ***It****'s always crying.*
>
> [said to a mother about a forthcoming birth]
> *Are you going to have* ***it*** *at home or in hospital?*

PROPER NAMES 184

Proper names are nouns which give names to people and things. For example, *Mary*, *Jakarta* or *March* are proper names. These nouns are typically used without determiners and do not vary in number. They are written with a capital letter.

Proper names may consist of more than one word: *The Straits Times* (name of an Asian newspaper), *Princess Diana*, *The Hague*, *Kai Tak Airport*, *The Lord of the Rings*, *Mount Kilimanjaro*, *the Nile*, *Shannon International Airport*. When proper names consist of more than one word, the words work together as a single unit.

In some contexts proper names can be treated as count nouns:

> *I'm meeting* ***the Grays*** *at nine this evening.*
> (*Gray* is a family name, and therefore a proper name; *the Grays* refers to the family as a whole, or to specific members of the Gray family)
>
> *There were* ***three Sues*** *in my class at school.*
> (three single instances of the same name – three girls called Sue)

> *Do you have* ***my Jane Austen****?*
> (my copy of a novel by Jane Austen)
>
> *He has* ***Picassos*** *in his gallery.*
> (paintings by Picasso)
>
> *You don't need to be* ***an Einstein*** *to work that out.*
> (Einstein was a scientist)
>
> *I remember* ***the New Year's Eves*** *we spent together.*
>
> [looking at a baby and commenting on its facial features]
> *She's* ***a real O'Donnell****, isn't she?*

Some proper names are singular non-count nouns, e.g. *Marmite* (a food product), *Dulux* (a brand of paint):

> *Would you like some* ***Marmite*** *on your toast?*

Some proper names are plural non-count nouns, e.g. *Levis*® (a brand of jeans), *Ray-Bans* (a brand of sunglasses):

> *Those* ***Ray-Bans*** *were on sale at the duty free at the airport.*

In most cases the proper name is capitalised but some common everyday product names are not capitalised (e.g. *brie*, *cheddar*, *sellotape*).

Proper names and agreement

Proper names also involve agreement choices. When specific organisations, institutions and countries are mentioned, plural and singular verb forms tend to be used interchangeably, depending on whether the entity is treated as a single unit or as composed of individuals:

> ***The CIA is*** *only acting in the public interest.*
> ***The CIA are*** *only acting in the public interest.*
>
> ***Vietnam is*** *refusing to re-join the economic summit.*
> ***Vietnam are*** *refusing to re-join the economic summit.*
>
> ***The BBC has*** *a new World Service channel.*
> ***The BBC have*** *a new World Service channel.*

Names of geographical features 185

The English names of rivers have the definite article before them. Note that the article is normally written in lower case:

the Colorado River
the Yangtse
the Amazon
the Danube
the River Thames
the Ganges

The names of lakes and of individual mountains do not have the definite article before them. *Lake* or *Mount* often comes before the specific name:

Lake Ontario
Lake Geneva
Mount Fuji
(Mount) Everest
Popocatepetl
Snowdon

Exceptions: *the Matterhorn*, *the Eiger*

The names of ranges of mountains have the definite article before them:

the Alps
the Himalayas
the Andes

The names of deserts, oceans, seas, groups of islands and major areas and regions have the definite article before them:

the Sahara (Desert)
the Pacific (Ocean)
the Mediterranean (Sea)
the Florida Keys
the Bahamas
the Steppes

Some names of buildings, monuments and cathedrals can take a definite article; some do not:

the Houses of Parliament
the White House
the Bundestag
the Taj Mahal
Stonehenge
Westminster Abbey

Some names of streets and roads can take a definite article; some do not:

Princes Street
Oxford Street
Piccadilly
Abbey Road
the Great North Road
the M5, the A34

Names of regions, countries, nationalities and languages 186

Reference to regions, countries, nationalities and languages is made in English by proper names, adjectives, singular and plural nouns.

Proper names indicate the names of regions and countries:

Asia
Africa
Brazil
Germany
China
Norway

Adjectives are used to indicate nationalities or regional identities (bold); some also refer to the languages spoken in the country (in green):

Peru : ***Peruvian***
Asia : ***Asian***
America : ***American***
France : ***French***
China : ***Chinese***
Spain : ***Spanish***

Some nationality adjectives can be used as nouns to refer to the nationality of a person:

a Norwegian
a Brazilian
an Iraqi
an Egyptian
a Belgian
a Canadian

(~~an Irish, a Dutch, a French~~)

Plural nouns based on the adjective form are used to refer to the population of a country as a whole:

the Norwegians
the Malaysians
the Algerians
the Israelis
the Greeks
the Venezuelans

Nationality adjectives ending in *-ese*, *-(i)sh* or *-ch* do not inflect in this way:

the Chinese
the Japanese
the Spanish
the Welsh
the French
the Dutch

(~~the Chineses, the Spanishes~~)

⇢ **528 Appendix: Nationalities, countries and regions** for a full list

DETERMINERS: INTRODUCTION 187

Determiners indicate the type of reference made by the noun phrase (e.g. definite, indefinite, possessive); they also indicate number or quantity (e.g. *six*, *much*, *some*). Determiners come in front position in noun phrases, before adjectives and noun modifiers. They include words such as *a*, *all*, *each*, *five*, *many*, *my*, *no*, *some*, *the*, *those*, *which*:

*This is **a** complete mess.*

*Where are **my** glasses?*

***Each** time I've tried to sell **the** house I've had **no** buyers.*

*I'm **his** best friend.*

*I've had **several** blood tests.*

All the determiners in English are dealt with in this book. They are:

- *a/an*
- *all*
- *another*
- *any* (strong form)
- *any* (weak form)
- *both*
- *each*
- *either, neither*
- *enough*
- *every*
- *(a) few, fewer, fewest*
- *half*
- *(a) little, less, least*
- *many, more, most*
- *much, more, most*
- *my, your, his, Jim's,* etc.
- *no*
- *one* (numeral) *two, three*, etc.
- *some* (strong form)
- *some* (weak form)
- *such* (anaphoric)
- *several*
- *the*
- *this, that, these, those*
- *what* (interrogative)
- *what* (quantitative)
- *what, such* (exclamative)
- *which*
- *whose*
- zero determiner (i.e. no determiner)

Determiners may occasionally be premodified or postmodified:

*Almost **all** libraries have got quite a lot of information on those sorts of things.*

*Many **more** professional couples are opting for larger families.*

***All** but one of the 16 stockmarkets continued to recover this week.*

More than one determiner may occur in the noun phrase:

*I do **all the** housework, I look after **my two** children at the same time, and I'm studying.*

A: *We've had lots of visitors as well haven't we?*
B: *Yeah.*
A: *This year we've had **both your** nieces, haven't we?*

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

Where more than one determiner can be used together, there is a fixed order in which they occur. The table illustrates the sequence:

The order of determiners

quantifier	article or demonstrative or possessive	numeral	head
all	*my*	*five*	*cousins*
all		*three*	*pages*
both	*your*		*nieces*
half	*a*		*litre*
	my	*first*	*exam*
	those	*two*	*girls*

All, *both* and *half* can come before articles and demonstratives and possessives, but quantifiers such as *any*, *few*, *many*, *more*, *some*, etc. and numerals cannot. Where these quantifiers and numerals do occur first, *of* must be used (➔ 191):

> *Can I borrow* ***more of those*** *disks?*
>
> *I've achieved* ***some of my*** *ambitions.*
> (~~I've achieved some my ambitions.~~)
>
> ***Two of his*** *children are getting married around the same time.*

DETERMINERS: CHARACTERISTICS OF USE 188

Determiners have particular ways of occurring in noun phrases. In 189–192, four principal ways in which determiners can occur are described:

1. which determiners can occur with which types of head noun (189)
2. whether the determiner can also be used as a pronoun (190)
3. whether the determiner can occur as a pronoun followed by *of* + definite noun phrase (e.g. *some of her friends*, but **not** *this of my food*) (191)
4. whether the determiner can occur with *of* and a possessive determiner (e.g. *a cousin of mine arrived*, but **not** *all best friends of hers were there*) (192)

DETERMINERS AND TYPES OF HEAD NOUN 189

No restrictions 189a

Some determiners may be used with any type of head noun, whether singular or plural, count or non-count.

The determiners which have no restrictions on use with head nouns are:

any (strong form)

my, your, his, noun phrase + *'s*, etc.

no

some (strong form)

the

what (interrogative)

which

whose

The following are examples with *any*, *no*, the strong form of *some*, and *whose:*

- Singular count:

  *So that's **no problem**, is it?*

  *He was driving along up there somewhere, to **some village** or other, and all of a sudden this double-decker bus came down the lane.*

  ***Whose idea** was this?*

- Plural count:

  *They've got **no beds** for the children.*

  *It wasn't as bad as **some places**, because it's quite a big shop, and we didn't queue at all.*

  *I can't remember **whose names** were on it.*

- Singular non-count:

  *Unfortunately, the flight's available but **no accommodation**.*

  ***Some chocolate** makes me sneeze, but I haven't worked out why.*

  ***Whose land** are we on?*

- Plural non-count:

  *Why doesn't he have **any scissors**?*

  *He answered the door with **no trousers** on.*

Restricted to singular count or non-count noun 189b

This and *that* are singular and are used with singular nouns. The noun may be count or non-count:

*She arrived home **this morning**.*
(count)

*What's **that book**, Nigel?*
(count)

*It'll take us ages in **this weather**.*
(non-count)

Restricted to singular count noun 189c

Some determiners may only be used with a singular count noun. These are:

a/an
another
each
either, neither
every
one (numeral)

*Can I have **a stamp** for this, please?*

***Each task** should take a couple of minutes to do.*

It was in the south part of Dublin and I used to go by tram ***every day*** *all across Dublin. I got to know the city so well.*
(~~I used to go by tram every days …~~)

Quietly Esther checked that ***neither child*** *was watching, then locked the kitchen door.*

Restricted to singular non-count noun 189d

Much and *(a) little*, *less*, *least* may only be used with a singular non-count noun:

It's not ***much pay****. There isn't* ***much work*** *for him these days.*

Those animals exported abroad for slaughter are subject to similar mistreatment, as well as long, arduous journeys over hundreds of miles with ***little food*** *or* ***water****.*

Restricted to plural count noun 189e

Both, *many*, *(a) few*, the numerals *two*, *three*, *four*, etc. and *several* are restricted to use with plural count nouns:

I've been my own boss for ***many years****.*

Brighton is ***a few hours*** *away by train.*

Few books *are, in a strict sense, necessary.*

Restricted to plural count or plural non-count noun 189f

These and *those* are used with plural count or plural non-count nouns:

These trousers *don't fit me any more.*

Those beans *are cooked.*

Restricted to non-count or plural count noun 189g

Some determiners may only be used with a non-count (singular or plural) noun or with a plural count noun. These are:

all

any (weak form)

enough

some (weak form)

such (anaphoric)

what (quantitative) + relative clause

what, *such* (exclamative)

zero determiner (i.e. no determiner)

We weren't given ***enough information****.*
(singular non-count)

Rising costs of living and mounting unemployment in the aftermath of war fuelled discontent with the colonial state. ***Such discontent*** *could be exploited by nationalist politicians.*
(singular non-count)

***What money they made** went entirely to local charities.*
(singular non-count)

[public announcement to passengers about to leave a train]
*Please make sure to take **all** personal **belongings** with you.*
(plural non-count)

***All kids** learn through play.*
(plural count)

*Well, first of all, have we got **enough envelopes**?*
(plural count)

*But I looked at my father and he laughed like mad and said, 'Oh, she means offer of marriage.' And my mother said, 'Don't put **such ideas** in the child's head.'*
(plural count)

DETERMINERS AND PRONOUNS 190

Determiners used as pronouns 190a

Some determiners may also be used as pronouns (i.e. as the head of their own noun phrase):

*Have you finished with **those videos**?*
(determiner)

A: *D'you want these sunglasses?*
B: *Yes, I'll need **those**.*
(pronoun)

*Would you like **some teriyaki chicken**?*
(determiner)

[offering cake to someone]
*Would you like **some**?*
(pronoun)

*The next train took us a stage further until it just stopped. We got out and waited for hours at the railway station for **another**.*
(pronoun, i.e. another train)

*The sight of him was a gift of greater value than **any** she'd ever received in her life.*
(pronoun, i.e. than any gift)

*He's not my first teacher. I've had **several**.*
(pronoun, i.e. several teachers)

Determiners which may also be used as pronouns in this way are:

- *another*
- *any* (strong form)
- *any* (weak form)
- *both*
- *each*
- *(a) few, fewer, fewest*
- *either, neither*
- *enough*
- *(a) little, less, least*
- *many, more, most*
- *much, more, most*
- *one* (numeral)
- *several*
- *some* (strong form)
- *some* (weak form)
- *these, those*
- *this, that*
- *two, three*
- *which*
- *whose*

Determiners replaced by pronouns

190b

The and *a/an* do not occur as pronouns, but their meanings may be expressed pronominally in different forms.

He, *she*, *it* and *them* are used as anaphoric pronouns in place of a noun phrase beginning with *the*:

*Have you met **the new boss**? **He**'s very nice.*

*I am thrilled to win **the race** this year, because of all the great horses in **it**.*

*Add **the potatoes** and roll **them** around in the spices.*

One is used as a pronoun in place of a noun phrase beginning with *a/an*:

*He has lost **a son**. I have found **one**.*

Possessive determiners and pronouns

190c

The possessive determiners have the following forms as pronouns (→ **201a**):

possessive determiner	possessive pronoun
my	*mine*
your (singular)	*yours*
his	*his*
her	*hers*
its	(no form)
one's	(no form)
our	*ours*
your (plural)	*yours*
their	*theirs*

***My dad** would beat **yours** in a fight.*

*I've lived **my life**. She's just starting **hers**.*

*You see, they go to **their church** first and we go to **ours**, and then we meet, you know, afterwards.*

If possessive determiners are postmodified with *own*, they retain their form when used pronominally:

> *I always forget birthdays. I have enough trouble remembering* ***my own****.*
> (~~I have enough trouble remembering mine own.~~)

Singular *all* + noun may be substituted by *it all* or *all of it*. Plural *all* + noun may be replaced by *we/you/they/us/them all* or *all of us/you/them*:

> *We've got so much stuff, there's no way we're going to eat* ***it all*** *(or* ***all of it****).*
> (~~… there's no way we're going to eat all.~~)
>
> [to a taxi driver]
> *There are four people. Can you take* ***us all*** *(or* ***all of us****)?*
>
> *They've all been together from secondary school. Well some of them from primary school. And there's a really strong bond between* ***them all****. And* ***they all*** *care about one another.*

It/you/us/them all cannot be used in a reduced clause when there is no verb:

> A: *Has he eaten the cauliflower?*
> B: *Not* ***all of it****.*
> (~~Not it all.~~)
>
> A: *Whose are* ***all*** *the books?*
> B: *Harold's.*
> A: ***All of them****?*
> B: *Mm.* ***All of them****.*
> A: *Wow!*
> (~~Them all? Mm. Them all.~~)

When a subject pronoun + *all* is used, *all* occupies the mid position for adverbs (→ **325**):

> ***We****'ll* ***all*** *meet again tomorrow.*
> (preferred to: We all will meet again tomorrow.)

→ also **201 Possessive pronouns**

A–Z **12 *All***

OF + DEFINITE NOUN PHRASE 191

Some combinations of determiners are not permitted (e.g. *some/any* followed by *my/the/this*). However, some pronoun forms of determiners may combine with *of* + definite noun phrase (or definite pronoun) to produce partitive meanings (i.e. expressing a partial quantity or number out of a totality):

> **determiner** ***of*** **definite noun phrase**
> *Do you want | some | of | that stuff?*

A–Z **55 *Of***

Determiners which operate in this way are:

- *a/an* (in the form of *one of*)
- *all*
- *another*
- *any* (strong form)
- *any* (weak form)
- *both*
- *each*
- *either, neither*
- *enough*
- *every* (in the form of *every one of*)
- *(a) few, fewer, fewest*
- *(a) little, less, least*
- *many, more, most*
- *much, more, most*
- *no* (pronoun form *none*)
- *several*
- *some* (strong form)
- *some* (weak form)
- *one* (numeral), *two, three*, etc.
- *the* (in the form *those of*)
- *which*

*It was yet **another of those** things that you couldn't describe, but you'd know it when you saw it.*

*He's not going to go back on **any of his decisions**.*

*I don't think we have **enough of that**.*

***Every one of my friends** turned up.*
(~~Every of my friends turned up.~~)

***Neither of the men** had said a word.*

*At one time, almost all the drugs in use were extracted directly from plants. **Some of the plants** in your garden may contain essential medical drugs.*

*I'd also like to say thanks to **those of my colleagues** who can't be here tonight.*
(~~I'd also like to say thanks to the of my colleagues who can't be here tonight.~~)

***Two of the boys** had nine children between them.*

***Which of those policies** would seem the best?*

OF + POSSESSIVE PRONOUN AFTER THE HEAD NOUN 192

Some determiners may combine with *of* + possessive pronoun used after the head noun:

	determiner	head noun	*of*	possessive pronoun
I run a company with	*a*	*friend*	*of*	*mine.*

Note that the pronoun is in the possessive form, not the object form:

I run a company with a friend of mine.
(~~I run a company with a friend of me.~~)

Determiners which may be used in this way are those listed in **191** and in addition *the*, zero determiner, noun phrase + *'s* (the so-called possessive *'s* construction), *this/that/these/those, what* and *such*:

*She was moving out and she gave the keys to **some friends of hers**.*

*If **every word of yours** is in there, the person has infringed your copyright.*

A friend of my sister’s *took that photo.*

Besides, you want ***any child of yours*** *to live a long and healthy life.*

That house of theirs *must have cost a fortune to build.*

What money of hers *that was left went to her children.*

I was just thinking of ***old friends of mine*** *who I grew up with.*
(zero determiner)

POSSESSIVE ’S

193

The possessive *’s* construction is used to describe the possession or attribution of particular things, features, qualities or characteristics. It operates syntactically like the possessive determiners *my*, *your*, *his*, etc., and is best considered as a determiner:

*cow**’s** milk*

*goat**’s** cheese*

*men**’s** jackets*

*the school**’s** development plan*

*Jean**’s** bicycle*

*Vietnam**’s** economy*

*America**’s** foreign policy*

The possessive *’s* construction occurs with more complex noun phrases as well as with simple ones:

The Prince of Albania’s *daughter*

The director of the company’s *statement*

Dr Smith’s *patients*

The use of possessive *’s* is sometimes arbitrary. For example, *lamb’s liver* is said but not *lamb liver*. On the other hand, *chicken breast* (not *chicken’s breast*) is said.

The possessive *’s* is common in general measurements of time:

*today**’s** news*

*yesterday**’s** political party*

*three week**s’** holiday*

*twenty minute**s’** delay*

The possessive *’s* rather than the noun + noun construction is also used when the reference is more precise and specific:

I always spend ages reading the Sunday paper.
(general reference)

*The recipe you want was in last Sunday**’s** paper.*
(specific, unique reference)

506 Appendix: Punctuation

NUMERALS 194

Numerals can be either cardinal (e.g. *two*, *sixteen*) or ordinal (e.g. *first*, *third*).

Cardinals

Cardinal numbers are used as determiners, but they are also used as head nouns and pronouns. As heads, cardinals are inflected like nouns:

> *Only **fifteen** people attended the meeting.*
> (determiner)
>
> ***Two** cats are always better than **one** cat.*
> (determiner)
>
> ***Twenty** of our group were German.*
> (determiner with *of* + definite noun phrase)
>
> *Troubles always come in **threes**.*
> (head noun)
>
> A: *How many screws do you need?*
> B: *I just need **two**.*
> (pronoun)

When *dozen*, *hundred*, *thousand*, *million* and *billion* are premodified, no final *-s* is used. When they are not modified, plural *-s* + *of* occurs:

> *five hundred pounds*
> (~~*five hundreds pounds*~~)
> *hundreds of pounds*
>
> *several thousand people*
> *thousands of people*
>
> *a few million years*
> *millions of years*

Ordinals

Ordinal numbers refer to entities in a series or sequence. They are used as determiners and are normally preceded by other determiners such as the definite article or a possessive determiner:

> *It was **the tenth** and final album in a long career.*
>
> *We celebrated **his first** birthday in Hong Kong.*

Ordinals can also be used as the heads of noun phrases:

> *I like all of them but **the fourth** was the best.*
>
> *It was calculated in **hundredths** and **thousandths**.*

Ordinals can also be used as adverbs:

> *Merry came **third** in the race.*
>
> ***First**, we need to clear the chairs away.*

AGREEMENT PROBLEMS WITH DETERMINERS 195

Some determiner phrases present choices of agreement. This principally concerns the use of *none of*, *either of*, *neither of*, *any of*, *half*, and numeral expressions between *one* and *two* (e.g. *one and a half*). There are also cases where singular determiners are used with plural numerals.

None of

In traditional views of grammar and in more formal styles, *none of* + plural count noun has singular concord with a verb. In such usage, *none of* is seen as a negated form of *one*:

> *The other assistants in the shoe shop seemed to manage on their wages. Of course,* ***none of them was*** *supporting a child, and the male assistant got sixty per cent more than the women.*

In everyday spoken and written informal usage, *none of* + plural count noun typically has plural concord with a verb. The plural head noun is treated as the notional subject of the verb:

> ***None of our children play*** *any musical instruments.*

Either of, *neither of* are also used in two ways. Singular concord is more traditional and formal, treating *either/neither* as referring to one of two individual entities. Plural concord sees *either/neither* as implying a pair of entities, therefore greater than one:

> [from a book about sleeping and dreaming]
> *Dreams of being chased, or of flying, are also more frequent than one might expect, given that* ***neither of these events happens*** *very frequently in real life.*
>
> ***Do either of you*** *play golf?*

Any of

Variable concord occurs with *any of*. Singular concord treats *any* as referring to an individual entity. Plural concord can imply either an individual or several individual entities:

> *What right* ***does any of us*** *have to play God?*
>
> ***Do any of you*** *want a ticket for the club dinner?*
> (could be one or more than one individual implied)

One

Variability of agreement occurs with expressions involving *one*. The phrase *more than one* is normally followed by a singular head noun and has singular verb concord:

> *But what we have seen so far is that for every job lost,* ***more than one job has been created****.*
> (~~… more than one jobs have been created.~~)

However, in more informal spoken styles, plural head nouns and plural verb concord may occur:

[informal discussion at a meeting]
A: *But there* ***are more than one approaches****. There are many different conflicting approaches.*
B: *Yeah. But we're just reduced to using only one.*

✪ The expression *one and a half* is followed by a plural head noun:

That bottle holds about ***one and a half litres****.*
(~~… one and a half litre.~~)

However, when *a/one* + head noun + *and a half* is used, the head is singular:

That bottle holds about ***a litre and a half****.*

Numerals

✪ *Another*, not *other*, is used with numerals:

I paid him fifty pounds, now we owe him ***another fifty pounds****.*
(~~… now we owe him other fifty pounds.~~)

In informal styles, singular determiners can occur with plural numerals when they are modified:

Let me give you back ***that ten pounds I owe you****.*

That same three milk bottles *were still standing on his doorstep after a week.*

Expressions such as *a good* (meaning 'at least that number') and *a full* (meaning 'a completed number') may be used with plural numerals:

It's ***a good ten miles*** *or more from here.*

She's ***a full three years*** *younger than the next child up.*

A–Z 38 *Every*

IMPORTANT DISTINCTIONS IN THE USE OF DETERMINERS 196

The and zero article 196a

When general reference is made to all members of a class of count nouns or all examples or manifestations of a non-count noun, *the* is not used:

I don't think the internet will ever completely replace ***books****.*
(refers to all books)
(~~I don't think the internet will ever completely replace the books.~~)

Salt *is bad for you.*
(all salt is bad for you)
(~~The salt is bad for you.~~)

> ***Life*** *has its moments of frustration for all of us.*
> (~~The life has its moments of frustration for all of us.~~)

A postmodified noun does not necessarily require *the*; the presence or absence of *the* still depends on whether the reference is general or to a defined sub-class:

> ***Furniture of that quality*** *is too good for a student flat.*
> (all and any furniture of that quality)
>
> [speakers are gluing together a piece of wooden furniture]
> A: *Does this stuff really work, this glue?*
> B: *Yeah. That's what I've used on* ***the furniture I've made****, you know, the TV table and stuff.*
> (specifically refers to only the items of furniture the speaker has made)

The is most commonly used to refer to things which are part of the speakers' shared world. It is a way of saying 'You know which x I am referring to':

> *If you're going to paint* ***the wall****, we'll have to move* ***the furniture****.*
> (speaker and listener know which wall and which furniture they are talking about)
>
> A: *How are* ***the children****?*
> B: *Fine thanks. Yes, they're doing fine.*
> (speaker A does not need to say 'your children' if it is obvious to both speakers whose children are being referred to)
>
> A: *Are you going into* ***the university*** *today?*
> B: *I may do. Why?*
> A: *Could you drop some books off at* ***the library*** *for me?*
> (the university and the library are understood as the ones known to both speakers; it is unlikely B would reply 'Which university? Which library?')

Some and *any*: strong versus weak forms 196b

Some and *any* each have strong forms, which are stressed, and weak unstressed forms. The weak form of some is pronounced /səm/.

The weak forms indicate an indefinite quantity of something:

> *Would you like* ***some cheese****?*
>
> *Are there* ***any messages*** *on the answerphone?*

The strong forms have different meanings. The strong form of *some* most typically means 'a certain' or 'a particular' when used with singular count nouns:

> ***Some child*** *was crying behind me throughout the whole flight and I never slept.*

Strong form *some* contrasts with *others*, *all* or *enough* when used with plural count nouns and with non-count nouns:

> [talking of student grants]
> ***Some students*** *get substantial amounts and others get nothing.*

[talking of dried beans that need to be soaked before use]
A: *But dry ones you have to soak them overnight and then get rid of that water and stuff.*
B: *Right. And lentils as well?*
A: ***Some of them**. Not all.*

*We've got **some bread** but not enough for three people.*

Strong form *any* is used most typically with singular count nouns and with non-count nouns to mean 'it does not matter which':

*If you have the warranty, **any authorised dealer** can get it repaired for you.*

***Any fruit juice** will make you sick if you drink enough of it.*

Some, *any* and zero determiner 196c

Although *some* and *any* indicate an indefinite quantity, they are not used for large or unlimited indefinite quantities. The zero determiner indicates an indefinite quantity without reference to size when used with non-count nouns and with plural count nouns:

*There are **some extra blankets** in the wardrobe if you need them.*
(an indefinite but limited number)

[government spokesman after a major earthquake]
*We need **help** from the international community. We need **tents** and **medicines** and **blankets**.*
(~~We need some help from the international community. We need some tents, some medicines and some blankets.~~)

*Are there **any frogs** in that pond?*
(indefinite but probably limited expectation of quantity)

*Do you have **red ants** in your garden?*
(no expectation about quantity)

Weak form *some* and *any* and clause types 196d

The use of the weak forms of *some* and *any* depends on whether the clause is declarative or interrogative, and whether it is affirmative or negative:

*There's **some** milk in the fridge.*
(~~There's any milk in the fridge.~~)

*There isn't **any** milk in the fridge.*
(~~There isn't some milk in the fridge.~~)

*Is there **any** milk in the fridge?*

*Is there **some** milk in the fridge?*

*Isn't there **any** milk in the fridge?*

*Isn't there **some** milk in the fridge?*

Affirmative and negative clauses

In declarative clauses, *some* occurs with affirmatives but does not occur with negatives. *Any* occurs with negatives but does not usually occur with affirmatives:

> *I've got* ***some*** *nice French cheese for us.*
> (~~I've got any nice French cheese for us.~~)
>
> A: *I'd like* ***some*** *apple juice please.*
> B: *You'd like* ***some*** *apple juice.*
> A: *Yes.*
> B: *Right.*
> (~~I'd like any apple juice please.~~)
>
> *I do****n't*** *have* ***any*** *questions.*
> (~~I don't have some questions.~~)
>
> [talking about a recently typed document]
> *There are****n't any*** *glaring errors. I mean Jamie's read through it and he has****n't*** *seen* ***any****.*
> (~~There aren't some glaring errors. I mean Jamie's read through it and he hasn't seen some.~~)

Any can occur in affirmative declarative clauses with an implied conditional meaning and in subordinate conditional clauses:

> [radio weather forecast]
> ***Any*** *rain will clear by midday.*
> (if there is any rain, it will clear by midday)
>
> *If anyone has* ***any*** *questions during the day, ask Sam.*

Interrogative clauses

With interrogatives, *some* and *any* are both used to ask questions. *Some* suggests the speaker thinks the answer will fit neatly with the question; *any* is more open-ended and does not necessarily project an answer which the speaker expects:

> [hostess to dinner guest at the beginning of the meal]
> A: *Would you like* ***some*** *soup?*
> B: *Mm, please.*
> (at this point in the meal, the expectation is that the guest will want soup)
>
> [hostess to dinner guest towards the end of the main course]
> A: *Do you want* ***any*** *more salad or anything?*
> B: *No I'm full thanks Jill.*
> (it is less obvious whether the guest will want more or not; the question is more open-ended.)
>
> [in a post office; A is the postal agent, B is a customer]
> A: *You want it first class. Let's just weigh it for you then. First class is fifty seven.*
> B: *Is there* ***some*** *kind of recorded delivery I could send it by?*
> A: *Yes, it's another fifty five.*
> (the customer's expectation is that there is a recorded delivery system; compare 'Is there any kind of recorded delivery I could send it by?', which would suggest the customer is far less certain whether such a possibility exists)

Because of the difference between a suggestion of agreement with the question and a more open-ended question, *some* is more common than *any* in situations where polite or friendly offers are made, especially offers of food, even though the response may be negative:

> A: *Do you want **some** pudding now Chris?*
> B: *No. I'll have it in a minute thank you.*

Negative interrogative clauses

Negative interrogatives with *some* and *any* are used to check the speaker's understanding of a situation.

Negative interrogatives with *some* typically indicate that speakers wish to confirm their positive expectations or assumptions about the situation:

> *Wasn't there **some** trouble in the village last night?*
> (speaker has reason to think there was, and seeks confirmation)
>
> [speaker is sharing out a bar of chocolate]
> *Don't you want **some**, Lee?*
> (I would expect you to want some, please confirm)

Negative interrogatives with *any* typically indicate that speakers wish to confirm their negative expectations or assumptions about the situation:

> [at the dinner table]
> A: *Do you want some water? Don't you want **any** juice?*
> B: *No.*
> A: *No?*
> B: *Mm.*
> (I sense you do *not* want juice, please confirm)

also **435c Negative interrogatives and speech acts**

No and *not a*/*not any* 196e

Affirmative verb + *no* is often used as a more emphatic form of negated verb + *any*:

> *I ca**n't** see **any** reason at all for his behaviour.*
> *I **can** see **no** reason at all for his behaviour.*
>
> *These two things are**n't** in **any** way connected.*
> *These two things **are** in **no** way connected.*

When *no* + noun is used as the subject of a main clause, *not any* is not normally an alternative:

> ***No vegetables** taste as good as ones straight from the garden.*

This, that, these, those 196f

This, *that*, *these* and *those* are the only determiners which express contrasts of number. *This* and *that* are used with singular nouns; *these* and *those* are used with plural nouns:

*I saw the three students in my office **this morning**.*

*How are we going to afford **that type** of accommodation?*

***Those** young **kids** will cause trouble unless something is done soon.*

Conveying physical distance

The most common function of *this* and *these* is to point to things and people which are close to the speaker/writer in time and space. In general, *this* and *these* can be said to be speaker-oriented, as with *here* (A–Z **45** ***Here, there***):

*I like **this hotel**, don't you?*

*Will he be coming **this Wednesday**?*

*In **this lecture** we shall be looking in particular at Shakespeare's History Plays.*

*Have you finished with **these newspapers**?*

*You'll need **these coins** for the parking ticket.*

The most common use of *that* and *those* is to refer to objects and people which may not be easily identified from the situation. *That* and *those* are used to refer to things which are more distant in time and space, even though it may be possible to see such things. In general, *that* and *those* can be said to be listener-oriented or oriented towards a third person, place or entity (A–Z **45** ***Here, there*** to compare *there*):

*What's **that** red **mark** on your face?*

*The book had two endings. I prefer the second but **that ending** is a bit too sentimental for me.*

*Could I see **those videos** on the shelf up there?*

*We should move **those chairs** into the corner of the room.*

In more formal styles, pronoun *that* and *those* may be complemented or postmodified:

***Those of you who have registered for the course** will be able to obtain booklists from the departmental office tomorrow morning.*
(complemented)

[quote from the writer George Bernard Shaw]
***Those who can**, do; **those who can't**, teach.*
(postmodified)

Conveying attitude

This/these and *that/those* may also express contrasts in emotional distance and can signal different attitudes. *This/these* can convey a more positive and involved attitude whereas *that/those* suggest a more detached and possibly critical attitude:

> *I love **these** new phones that you can take pictures with.*
> (can be said even if the speaker is nowhere near one of the phones referred to)
>
> *I'm not going to wear this brown sweater any more. I hate **that** colour.*
>
> *When are you going to finish **that** thesis of yours?*
>
> *I hate **those** big four-wheel-drive cars.*

Use in narratives

This and *these* are used in narratives, anecdotes, jokes and similar contexts to create a sense of immediacy and to encourage a listener or reader to become involved. In these contexts, *this/these* may be seen as highly dramatised alternatives to *a/an* and zero article/*some*:

> *Listen, there was **this** Irishman and he met **this** Englishman who was wearing a kilt, right, …*
> (compare: … there was an Irishman and he met an Englishman …)

That also has an involving function in narratives; as an alternative to *the*, it refers the listener to something familiar or known to them:

> *And we lost our way at **that** big roundabout just outside Norwich.*
> (You know the roundabout. Compare: … the big roundabout just outside Norwich …)

This for highlighting

In stories and reports, *this* is also used in order to underline or highlight that something is important:

> *One of the central planks of the government's programme is **this** new attack on long-term unemployment.*

This and *that* for identification

This and *that* are used to identify oneself or to ask the identity of other speakers, especially in telephone calls and in answerphone messages:

> *Hello, **this** is Mike calling to leave a message for David.*
>
> *Is **that** Jenny Chapman? Hello, **this** is Sarah Bennett here.*

This and *that* and discourse segments 196g

This and *that* are used to refer back to things which have already been spoken or written about and to refer forward to things which are yet to be said or written. When used in this way, both determiners signal that something significant has been said or is about to be said. *This* and *that* both refer back but *this* is more frequently used to refer forwards and *that* is generally more emphatic:

> *'Woodbrook' by David Thompson:* ***this*** *is a novel for anyone interested in Ireland and Ireland's history.*
>
> *The whole area needs to be made a traffic-free zone.* ***That****'s the problem.*
>
> ***This*** *is the main problem. Organic foods are always going to be more expensive.*
>
> *What do you think of* ***this****? We leave at 8 this evening rather than tomorrow morning.*

It can also refer back or forward to a specific noun or segment of discourse. But it is not normally used to refer in a general way and is not particularly emphatic:

> A: *I seem to get so many of these sales phone calls. Do you get them?*
> B: *No.*
> A: ***It****'s usually double glazing firms.*
> (*it* = the phone calls)

⇢ also **128 *It, this* and *that* referring to segments of text; 143a Signalling with *it, this* and *that***

Much, many and *a lot/lots* 196h

Although *a lot of/lots of* are not determiners (they are best seen as partitive noun phrases in their own right), they are used in situations where *much* and *many* would be inappropriate.

As with weak forms *some* and *any*, *much* and *many* are used differently with different clause types.

Declaratives

Affirmative declarative clauses prefer *a lot /lots*. *Lots of* is more informal than *a lot of*. *A lot of* and *lots of* can both be used with plural count nouns and with singular non-count nouns:

> ***A lot of/lots of*** *students get into debt.*
> (preferred in informal contexts to: Many students get into debt.)
>
> *I've got* ***a lot of/lots of*** *work to get through today.*
> (preferred to: I've got much work to get through today.)
>
> [tutor in informal university seminar]
> *Compounding is one of the main forms of word formation in the Germanic languages. That is you just take* ***lots of*** *words and stick them together. Erm, Joyce has an example in just before this passage actually. He has a word which he totally invents. Contransmagnificandubantangiality. And all he's done is stick* ***lots of*** *words together. You get the idea?*
> (*many* would sound far too formal here)

Much and *many* do occur in affirmative declarative clauses, but only in more formal styles:

> *There will be* **much** *competition among all those involved to hand out sweeping verdicts on history. The British will be credited (particularly by the British) with having done a splendid and disinterested job.*
>
> *However, Lincoln itself is an area of urban land-use. This means there are* **many** *buildings tightly packed together and a large population of over 80,000 people.*

Much is more restricted than *many* in affirmative declarative clauses. For example, it is more restricted to abstract nouns such as *competition*, *controversy*, *effort*, *discussion*. *Much* as a determiner and pronoun also occurs mostly in subject position:

> ***Much*** *has been written on this topic.*
> (~~They have written much on this topic.~~)
>
> ***Much*** *time has already been devoted to this question.*

Much and *many* are used in negative declarative clauses:

> *I have****n't*** *got* **much** *room in my flat, well it's just an open-plan flat. So there's literally one room and a bathroom. And it's got a kitchen but it's all open plan. There's* **not much** *space.*
>
> *The children do play out on the Green. There are* **not many** *places that they can go. And I don't like not having a front window so I can't see them out there.*

Many a + singular noun is used as an emphatic form with a similar meaning to *many* + plural noun, especially with time expressions:

> *Oh, I've said* ***many a time*** *I'm going to go on a diet.*
>
> *It's one of the most dangerous jobs in the world and the firefighters have been grossly underpaid for* ***many a decade****.*

Interrogatives

Much and *many* are used in interrogatives. There is no necessary implication that a large quantity or number are involved:

> A: *Is there* **much** *work to do in the garden?*
> B: *Yes, there's* **a lot** *to do.*
> (~~Yes, there's much to do.~~)
>
> A: *Were there* **many** *people at the pool?*
> B: *Mm, there were* ***a lot of*** *kids there.*
> (~~Mm, there were many kids there.~~)

A lot of and *lots of* are also used in interrogatives, but with more of an expectation that the quantity or number may be large:

> *Were they making* ***a lot of*** *noise? Is that what kept you awake?*
>
> *Have* **lots of** *people been congratulating you on your promotion?*

Negative interrogatives are more complex. Negative interrogatives with *much/many* typically seek to confirm the absence of a large quantity of something:

> ***Aren't*** *there* ***many*** *students taking that course?*
> (It seems there are a small number of students; please confirm.)
>
> A: *Did you* ***not*** *get* ***much*** *information from them?*
> B: *No.*

Negative interrogatives with *a lot/lots* typically seek to confirm the presence of a large quantity of something:

> ***Aren't there lots*** *of students taking that course?*
> (It seems there are a large number of students; please confirm.)

Note that, although *much* and *many* are restricted in the syntactic environments in which they occur, *a lot/lots* are far less restricted.

A–Z ***27 Bit, a bit (of); 50 Little, a little, few, a few***

Pronouns

Introduction 197
Personal pronouns 198
  General 198a
  I/me 198b
  You 198c
  He/him, *she/her*, *they/them* 198d
  It 198e
  One 198f
  We/us 198g
  They/them 198h
Personal pronouns and notions of correctness 199
Panel: Personal pronouns and spoken English 200
Possessive pronouns 201
  General 201a
  Possessive determiners 201b
  Possessive pronouns 201c
Reflexive pronouns 202
Reciprocal pronouns 203
Relative pronouns 204
Interrogative pronouns 205
Demonstrative pronouns 206
Indefinite pronouns 207
  Panel: -*one*, -*body*, -*thing* 207a
Whatever*, *whoever*, *whichever 208
Substitute *one* 209
Empty *it* and existential *there* 210
Anticipatory *it* 211
Archaic forms 212

Pronouns

INTRODUCTION 197

Pronouns are a closed class of words. Pronouns may substitute for or stand for the references to entities which full noun phrases make:

*Your boxes of photos have been delivered. **They**'re in the kitchen.*
(used instead of repeating the noun phrase in green, to refer to the same thing)

*Could **you** carry **this** for **me**?*
(used to refer to people or things in the immediate situation: *you*, the listener; *me*, the speaker; *this*, an object in the immediate environment)

*Is there **something** wrong?*
(reference to a general notion, potentially realised by several noun phrases)

***They**'ve got speed cameras everywhere these days so **you**'ve got to be careful.*
(vague, general reference to groups of people or to everyone)

The interpretation of the meaning of individual pronouns depends heavily on the context in which they occur.

Like nouns, pronouns can act as the heads of noun phrases and function as subject, object or complement of the clause, or as the complement of a preposition:

***I** miss **you**.*
(pronoun as subject and object)

[identifying someone in a photograph]
***That**'s **him**, there, standing behind **you**.*
(pronouns as subject, complement and complement of preposition)

There are several different classes of pronoun: personal pronouns, possessive pronouns, reflexive pronouns, reciprocal pronouns, relative pronouns, interrogative pronouns, demonstrative pronouns, indefinite pronouns. Each is treated in a separate section in this chapter.

Although pronouns have noun-like characteristics, they are only rarely modified. Exceptions to this rule normally involve postmodification:

*I'm talking to **him** over there.*

***You** in the corner. Come here please.*

Premodified examples usually involve adjectives:

*Have you got a cold again? Poor **you**.*

*Oh, silly **me**! I went to the post office and still forgot to post that letter.*

PERSONAL PRONOUNS 198

General 198a

Personal pronouns have subject and object forms:

Personal pronouns: subject and object forms

subject	object
I	*me*
you (singular/plural)	*you* (singular/plural)
he, she, it, one	*him, her, it, one*
we	*us*
they	*them*

The subject forms of personal pronouns most typically act as the subject of a clause:

> ***I*** *met a cousin of mine.*
>
> ***We****'re late again.*

··❖ 198e for **'anticipatory'** ***it***

The object forms of personal pronouns most typically act as the object (direct and indirect) or complement in a clause or as the complement of a preposition:

> *I invited* ***them****.*
> (direct object)
>
> *Give* ***him*** *the map.*
> (indirect object)
>
> *That's* ***her****. She's wearing the black beret.*
> (complement in a clause)
>
> *I left it to* ***them****.*
> (complement of a preposition)

Personal pronouns indicate person, number and gender. *You* is used for singular and plural reference. Only *he*, *him*, *she*, *her* express gender contrasts:

Personal pronouns: person, number and gender

subject	object	person	number	gender
I	*me*	first	singular	
you	*you*	second	singular or plural	
he	*him*	third	singular	masculine
she	*her*	third	singular	feminine
it	*it*	third	singular	
one	*one*	always generic	always generic	
we	*us*	first	plural	
they	*them*	third	plural	

Personal pronouns are most typically used for backward (anaphoric) reference:

> *The manager phoned me back.* ***He*** *was extremely apologetic.*

Occasionally a personal pronoun may be used to refer forward (cataphorically). Such uses are common in openings to written stories:

> ***She*** *was walking along a tree-lined suburban road, unaware of what was about to befall her. Gillian Dawson had never been very aware of the people around her.*

⇢ **123–139 Grammar across turns and sentences** for further examples

⇢ also **198d *He/him, she/her, they/them***

I/me 198b

I and *me* refer to the speaker/writer:

> [on the phone]
> *Hi Ken. It's* ***me****, Bob. Can* ***I*** *speak to Hilary?*
> (speaker)
>
> *In this paper,* ***I*** *challenge the dominant understanding of autonomy as 'individualism'.*
> (writer)

⇢ **147a *I* versus *we*** for the special academic generic use of *I*

You 198c

You does not distinguish between singular and plural reference, but, in context, the reference is usually clear:

> *D'****you*** *want some more tea, Paul?*
> (singular reference)
>
> [host to group of dinner guests]
> *Would* ***you*** *come to the table now please.*
> (plural reference)

You refers most frequently to the immediate addressee(s). But it can also refer more generally to any potential listener(s) or reader(s). This is especially so in advertising texts and public notices. *You* can also have generic reference (to people in general, including the speaker/writer):

> *Would* ***you*** *all follow me please?*
> (listeners)
>
> [slogan of the British National Lottery]
> *It could be* ***you****.*
> (any individual addressee could be a winner)
>
> *They do these throw-away cameras. They're about £8.* ***You*** *can get a panoramic one and* ***you*** *can get a sort of party one with a flash. And* ***you*** *can get an underwater one.*
> (generic reference)

He/him, she/her, they/them 198d

In general, *he/him* and *she/her* are only used to refer to humans or animals. In traditional formal usage, *he/him* may occur with reference to both sexes. Increasingly, however, gender-neutral pronoun forms are preferred, such as (subject forms) *he/she*, *he or she*, *they*, or (in writing) *(s)he*, or *s/he*; (object forms) *him/her*, *him or her*, *them*:

> *A judgment by an Australian court which curtailed the powers of Senate committees prodded the Senate into reform. Now anyone who believes* ***he*** *has been injured by a senator's words can ask to have a response written into the Senate's records.*
> (traditional formal usage)
>
> *Any student who thinks* ***(s)he*** *has been unfairly treated can appeal.*
> (preferred neutral usage)

The use of *they/them* is particularly common when the reference involves words such as *person*, *someone*, *anyone*. It is also used in this book for gender-neutral reference:

> *How can you expect a person to remember what* ***they*** *were doing five years ago?*
> (preferred neutral usage in more informal contexts)
>
> [from the section on *will* in this book, 387]
> *A rarer use of will is in declarative clauses which command someone to do something or insist that* ***they*** *do something.*

⁘ also **198h *They/them***

It 198e

It is used to refer to things as well as to anything which is not obviously either a *he* or *she*:

> *The aerial on your car is broken off. Look at* ***it****.*

Ships, planes, vehicles and other machines (e.g. steam engines) and countries are sometimes referred to by people within the relevant field with a feminine pronoun. However, such usage is considered inappropriate by many people:

> ***She*** *is the finest yacht I have ever sailed.*
>
> *How long have you been flying* ***her****?*

In very formal styles, countries may be referred to with *she/her*. Again, such usage is considered inappropriate by many people:

> *In 1783, France regained Senegal, which* ***she*** *had lost at the conclusion of the Seven Years War.*

More commonly, *it* is used for countries and machines:

> *Like most European countries, France imports more food than* ***it*** *exports.*
>
> ***It*** *has proved in tests to be a quieter plane than the DC-10.*

It is also used as an empty pronoun in anticipatory structures and in references to the weather and the time, as well as more general references to situations:

> ***It**'s nice that you were able to come.*
> (anticipatory; preferred to: That you were able to come is nice.)
>
> ***It**'s raining again.*
>
> ***It**'s getting late.*
>
> *We're going to have to pay all over again. **It**'s crazy.*

→ 211 Anticipatory *it*

One 198f

One is rare in modern usage, especially in speech, and is confined to formal styles. It may refer to people in general including the speaker/writer, or, more rarely, as an oblique reference to the speaker/writer but excluding the listener/reader:

> [description of the facilities offered by a hotel]
> *Table tennis is on offer, and **one** can also hire bicycles.*
>
> *I don't know whether there are any aspects of the countryside that I don't like, you know. Occasionally there are horrible smells. Well, **one** doesn't like that. But on the whole I like it.*
> (oblique reference to the speaker)

A–Z 60 *One*

We/us 198g

We/us may be used to refer to different groups of people.

- The speaker/writer(s) and the listener(s)/reader(s):

  A: *Shall **we** have lunch outside?*
  B: *Mm, yes, great idea.*

- The speaker/writer(s) and a third party or parties but excluding the listener/reader:

  A: ***We**'re having some friends around on Saturday, would you like to join **us**?*
  B: *Oh, thanks. Yes. What time?*

- People in general (generic *we*):

  *I'm sounding like a Communist now but **we** should all have the same housing. **We**'re all equal. You know it's sad that there are these divisions.*

We is sometimes used with singular reference, especially by people in authority, for example by teachers to children or by medical staff when addressing patients:

> *How are **we** today, Mr Maclean? Still got chest pains?*
> (meaning: How are you today, Mr Maclean?)

→ also **147a *I* versus *we* in Grammar and academic English**

They/them 198h

They is used to refer to a specific group of people, animals or things, or, generically, with vague reference to wider groups of people, bodies, institutions, authorities, etc. which exclude the speaker:

> *Tell your brother and sister **they**'re always welcome to come and stay. We'd love to see **them**.*
> (specific group of people)
>
> [*the M25* is a motorway around London]
> ***They**'re going to widen the M25.*
> (generic reference to a body or authority – here the Highways Agency)

⇢ **285f Verbs normally only followed by -*ing*** for use of object/subject pronouns and *-ing* forms

PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND NOTIONS OF CORRECTNESS 199

Users of English (even highly educated users) regularly disagree about what is correct or acceptable and incorrect or unacceptable with reference to certain uses of personal pronouns. Choices often depend on whether the context is formal or informal or written or spoken. In very formal usage, subject forms of personal pronouns are used as the complement of *be* or when subject pronouns are joined with *and* or *or* (coordinated):

> A: *Who's calling?*
> B: *It is **I**.*
> (not often used)
>
> *It is **he** who is causing all the trouble.*
> (not often used)
>
> ***I** and all the family wish you well for the future.*
> (formal)

Especially in informal spoken contexts, object pronouns are widely used in similar positions:

> [on the phone]
> A: *Who's calling?*
> B: *It's **me**.*
> (almost universally used)
>
> *It's **him** that owns that red car.*
> (almost universally used)
>
> ***Me** and my wife always go shopping on a Saturday.*
> (or: *My wife and **me** always go shopping on a Saturday*.)
> (usually only found in speech)

Some pronoun forms may be used in a hypercorrect way. Hypercorrect forms occur when a speaker chooses a highly formal option and uses it universally, without reference to context. The phrase *you and I* can occur as an object and even after prepositions such as *between* and *for*, which normally demand an object pronoun:

*She **wants you and I** to be there with her.*
(hypercorrect form)

***Between you and I**, he keeps making mistakes while driving.*
(hypercorrect form)

***Between you and me**, he keeps making mistakes while driving.*
(preferred, following the rule of preposition *between* + object pronoun)

*I've taken notes **for Mike and I**.*
(hypercorrect form)

*I've taken notes **for Mike and me**.*
(preferred form: object form after a preposition)

In the case of short answers, object pronouns are used in informal contexts. In more formal contexts, subject pronouns are used along with a verb:

A: *I play the piano.*
B: ***Me** too.*
(informal)

A: *I swim regularly.*
B: *Yes, **I swim** regularly too.*
(more formal)

⇢ also **200 Personal pronouns and spoken English**

Occasionally, in very formal styles, subject personal pronouns may occur as complements in anticipatory *it* structures. However, object forms are more common in everyday usage:

*It was **she** who wanted fame, not me.*

*It was **me** who left those boxes there. Sorry.*
(typical everyday usage)

When the pronoun is both the object of a previous verb (or the complement of a preposition) and the subject of a following verb, then the object form of the pronoun is used:

*Do you want Jess or **me** to phone her?*
(~~Do you want Jess or I to phone her?~~)

*It's for **her** to choose.*
(~~It's for she to choose.~~)

Personal pronouns and spoken English 200

In informal spoken English, particular patterns of personal pronoun usage can be observed.

- The structure *me and you* is heard in informal speech, but it is traditionally not considered polite for speakers to put themselves first:

  ***Me and you** should have a talk.*
  (preferred: You and me/You and I should have a talk.)

- *Us* is sometimes used very informally to mean *me*. It is commonly used when making requests, perhaps to soften the force of the request:

  *Can you lend **us** five pounds?*
  (normally: Can you lend me …)

  *Give **us** a kiss.*

  *Could you do **us** a favour? Could you give Joe a message?*

- After *as*, *like*, *than*, *but*, and *except*, subject forms are used in more formal contexts. They are normally followed by auxiliary, modal or lexical verbs:

  *She does the same job **as he does**.*
  (more formal)

  *She can swim better **than he can**.*

  *We certainly work as hard **as she works**.*

- The object forms of pronouns are used in informal contexts:

  *She lives in the same house **as him**.*

  *He keeps his bedroom almost as untidy **as me**.*

  *She can swim better **than him**.*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS 201

General 201a

There are two classes of possessive pronoun: possessive determiners and possessive pronouns.

possessive determiner	possessive pronoun
my	*mine*
your (singular)	*yours*
his, her, its	*his, hers, its**
our	*ours*
your (plural)	*yours*
their	*theirs*
one's	*one's**

* only when complemented by (*very*) *own* (➜ **201c** below)

Possessive determiners and independent possessive pronouns may be postmodified by *(very) own*:

*It's **his own** fault.*

*Now that you've got **your very own** flat, how does it feel?*

Possessive determiners 201b

Possessive determiners are also called possessive adjectives in some grammar books.

Possessive determiners occur before a head noun and before any modifiers in the noun phrase:

*Here's **their ticket**.*

***Her final exam results** were better than expected.*

[proverb]
*Don't count **your chickens** before they are hatched.*

When a possessive determiner and a possessive *'s* form modify the same head noun, the possessive determiner normally comes second:

*The best man at **Jane's and my wedding** couldn't stop telling jokes.*

(preferred to: The best man at my and Jane's wedding …)

Possessive pronouns 201c

Possessive pronouns can stand alone as the head of a noun phrase:

*Is this coat **yours**?*

*I can't believe that the house is **ours** at last.*

Its and *one's* only occur as possessive pronouns when complemented by *(very) own*:

*Have you given the rabbit **its dinner** yet?*
(possessive determiner)

*Is this cage the rabbit's? It is **the rabbit's**, surely?*
(~~It is its, surely?~~)

*A cat will use every garden except **its own** as a toilet.*

*It was a new sense of freedom, of a life of **one's own**.*

A–Z 64 ***Own***

also **192 *Of* + possessive pronoun after the head noun**

also **190c Possessive determiners and pronouns** for possessive determiners postmodified by *own* used pronominally

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS 202

Reflexive pronouns typically refer back to subject forms of personal pronouns. They always end in *-self* or *-selves*.

Reflexive pronouns
myself
yourself
himself, herself, itself
oneself
ourselves
yourselves
themselves

Reflexive pronouns for same subject and object

Reflexive pronouns are commonly used to refer to actions where the subject and object are the same person:

> ***He*** *hurt* ***himself*** *quite badly in the fall.*
> ('He hurt him quite badly' would mean subject *he* and object *him* were two different people)
>
> ***I'm*** *going to get* ***myself*** *a drink? Anyone else want one?*
>
> *When are* ***you*** *going to stop pushing* ***yourself*** *so hard?*

A reflexive pronoun is used to differentiate reference to a subject from reference to somebody else:

> *She looks very pleased with* ***herself****.*
> (reference to being pleased 'with her' would indicate reference to somebody else)
>
> ***Children*** *always hurt* ***themselves*** *when they play that game.*
>
> ***Children*** *always hurt* ***each other*** *when they play that game.*
> (one child hurts another child)

Reflexive pronouns for emphasis

Reflexive pronouns cannot occur as the subject of a clause. They may only be used in subject position as emphatic complements of subject personal pronouns:

> ***He himself*** *told me he was intending to retire.*
> (~~Himself told me he was intending to retire.~~)

Reflexive pronouns may also function to emphasise a subject or object consisting of a full noun phrase. In such cases, stress is normally on the reflexive pronoun:

> ***The Head of Department herself*** *knows that the staff are unhappy.*
>
> ***The head of the company*** *wrote to us* ***himself*** *to explain why they had been so slow in sending us the toys.*
>
> *Have* ***the children*** *paid for it* ***themselves****?*

In spoken English, the reflexive pronoun is sometimes used as a header or as a tail:

> ***Myself*, *I*** *think it's crazy.*
>
> ***He****'d prefer wine,* ***himself****.*

··✣ **96 Headers** and **97 Tails**

Reflexive pronouns for politeness

Reflexive pronouns are sometimes used instead of personal pronouns, especially to mark politeness:

> *Most people were late, including* ***us****.*
> (more informal)
>
> *Most of the audience arrived late, including* ***ourselves****.*
> (more formal/polite)

After *as for*, *like*, *but for*, *except for*, reflexive pronouns are particularly common, although personal pronouns are also possible in each case. The reflexive use here indicates greater politeness and deference:

> *These holidays are designed for people like* ***yourself****, young, fancy-free and unattached.*
> (or: These holidays are designed for people like you, …)
>
> [shop assistant addressing a customer who is considering a garment]
> *Is it for* ***yourself****?*
>
> *As for* ***myself****, I haven't decided yet.*

Reflexive pronouns meaning *alone*

Reflexive pronouns, with or without the preposition *by*, are also used to mean 'alone, from one's own resources, without help':

> *Did she draw that* ***herself****?*
>
> *I think it would be better if you did it* ***yourself****.*
>
> *He did it all* ***by himself****.*
>
> *I can help until 4, then they'll have to manage* ***by themselves****.*

··✣ also **283c Reflexive construction**

Reflexive pronouns in other languages

In languages other than English, verbs referring to basic everyday actions often take reflexive pronouns. Such verbs are reflexive in English only if there is a reason to emphasise the action:

> *He got up, washed, shaved, dressed and had breakfast.*
> ('washed himself, shaved himself, dressed himself' would mean that this is surprising because he is usually unable to do these things on his own)
>
> *She's seven now. She's old enough to wash* ***herself****.*
> (she doesn't need any help)

> Other common verbs often used reflexively in other languages but which are not reflexive in English include *concentrate*, *feel*, *lie down*, *sit (down)*, *hurry*, *open*:
>
> *You must really **concentrate** if you want to learn how to play it.*
> (~~You must really concentrate yourself if you want to learn how to play it.~~)
>
> *Does she **feel** sick?*
> (~~Does she feel herself sick?~~)

RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS 203

Reciprocal pronouns are used to indicate mutual relationships.

Reciprocal pronouns

reciprocal	reciprocal possessive
each other	*each other's*
one another	*one another's*

*They are always criticising **each other**.*

A: *They both look like **one another**, don't they?*
B: *So they should, they're sisters.*

Both pronouns may be used with the *'s* possessive determiner construction:

*My neighbour and I are always borrowing **one another's/each other's** bikes.*

These pronouns may be compared with reflexive pronouns:

*We entertained **ourselves** when it rained.*
(either the whole group is entertained or each member of the group entertains himself or herself)

*We entertained **each other** when it rained.*
(each member entertains the other members)

A–Z *34 Each*

RELATIVE PRONOUNS 204

Relative pronouns link noun phrases to a relative clause.

Relative pronouns

who	*which*
whom	*that*
whose	

The relative pronoun *who* has an object form *whom* and a possessive form *whose*. In general *who* and *whom* are only used personally (to refer to people). *Who* is commonly used in both object and subject functions. *Whom* is used as object or as the complement of a preposition in more formal contexts:

> *That's the guy* ***who*** *sold us the tickets.*
>
> *The minister,* ***who*** *the media had criticised, eventually resigned his post.*
>
> *After years of drifting apart, he and Helen,* ***whom*** *he first met at art college, and* ***with whom*** *he has three children, were divorced.*

Whose is not restricted to people. Animals and things can also be referred to:

> *Koalas,* ***whose*** *nocturnal habits are well known, are unique to Australia.*
>
> *Those are the cars* ***whose*** *windows got broken.*

Which is used non-personally (to refer to animals and to things); it is not used personally:

> *Why don't you just go to a city* ***which*** *is by the sea? What about Barcelona?*

That is more informal than *who* or *which* and refers to people, animals and things:

> *That's the guy* ***that*** *sold us the tickets.*
> (more formal: … the guy who sold us the tickets)
>
> *Can you suggest a book* ***that****'s for lighter reading?*
> (more formal: … a book which is for lighter reading)

That is only used in this way in defining relative clauses, not in non-defining relative clauses.

Omitting a relative pronoun in defining relative clauses is more common in informal than in formal contexts:

> *Here's the book you were looking for.*
> (or: Here's the book that/which you …)
>
> *The company we invested all that money in has been taken over.*
> (or: The company that/which we …)

Which can refer to a whole clause or sentence. This usage is frequent in evaluative statements. *What*, *that* and *how* are not used in this way:

> *The whole office entered the fun-run marathon,* ***which*** *is pretty good for people who sit down all day.*
>
> *They've won their last three matches,* ***which*** *I find a bit surprising actually.*

317a Types of relative clause for sentential relative clauses

Personal pronouns are not used to repeat or extend relative pronouns:

> *He's the runner* ***who*** *won the 5000 metres.*
> (~~He's the runner who he won the 5000 metres.~~)
>
> *Here's the pen* ***that*** *you lent me.*
> (~~Here's the pen that you lent me it.~~)

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS 205

Interrogative pronouns are used to ask questions.

Interrogative pronouns

who	*which*
whom	*what*
whose	

Who and *whom* are used alone as noun-phrase heads. *Whose*, *which* and *what* may be used with a noun head or may themselves act as noun-phrase heads:

> ***Who****'s next?*
>
> *And* ***whom*** *does Margaret meet?*
>
> ***Whose*** *are these socks?*
>
> ***Which*** *colour do you like best?*
> (interrogative pronoun used here as determiner)
>
> ***What*** *number did you write down?*

Who can be used in both subject and object forms. *Whom* is used in object forms and following prepositions in more formal contexts:

> ***Who*** *is your favourite footballer?*
>
> ***Who*** *did the prime minister promote to the cabinet?*
> (or more formal: Whom did the prime minister promote to the cabinet?)
>
> ***Who*** *do you have most confidence* ***in****?*
> (informal)
> (or more formal: In whom do you have most confidence?)

Which can be either personal or non-personal:

> ***Which*** *is your brother's girlfriend, the one with the black jeans?*
>
> ***Which*** *of the juices do you prefer? Orange or pineapple and mango?*

What is only used non-personally:

> *She is just about the most persistent person I've met.* ***What*** *does she want?*

✪ ***What* versus *which***

What is used when specific information is requested from a general or open-ended possible range. *Which* is used when specific information is requested from a restricted range of possibilities:

> A: *I've got your address.* ***What****'s your phone number?*
> B: *Oh it's 267358.*
> (~~Which is your phone number?~~)
> (an open-ended range of possible information)

> [looking at a pile of coats]
> A: ***Which*** *is your coat?*
> B: *That black one.*
>
> However, where the number of options is shared knowledge among speakers and listeners, *what* + noun is often used in informal contexts. Here, *what* is an interrogative pronoun used as a determiner:
>
> [talking about a shop]
> ***What side*** *of the street is it on, left or right?*
> (or: Which side of the street is it on?)
>
> A: *Did you see that documentary about the SARS virus last night?*
> B: *No,* ***what channel*** *was it on?*
> (or: Which channel was it on?)

also **427 *Wh*-questions**

292d *Wh*-interrogatives

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS 206

Demonstrative pronouns are used to point to things. The demonstrative pronouns are *this*, *that*, *these* and *those*. *This* and *that* have singular reference; *these* and *those* have plural reference.

Demonstrative pronouns express contrasts between what is 'near' and what is 'distant', whether in space, time or emotional distance, in terms of the speaker and listener. *This* and *these* are speaker-oriented; *that* and *those* are listener-oriented:

This *is what we want, a big house with a big garden.*

[shop assistant referring to two sets of earrings, one of which she is holding (*these*) and another set which a customer is holding (*those*)]
Why don't you take ***these****?* ***Those*** *look far too large.*

190 Determiners and pronouns

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS 207

Indefinite pronouns refer to things in a general and open way. They indicate either quantity or the absence of quantity.

There are two main types of indefinite pronoun. The first type consists of compounds which have a second part: *-one*, *-body*, *-thing* linked to *any*, *some*, *no* and *every*.

Indefinite pronouns *-one, -body, -thing*

someone	*somebody*	*something*
anyone	*anybody*	*anything*
no one	*nobody*	*nothing*
everyone	*everybody*	*everything*

207a *-one, -body, -thing*

The second type is a much larger group of determiners which can be used as pronouns and which can be followed by an *of* construction:

a few
a little
all
another
any
both
each
either
few
fewer
fewest
least
less
little
many
more
most
much
neither
none
numerals (cardinal and ordinal)
one
several
some

➔ also **190 Determiners and pronouns,** for further examples of these words used as pronouns

> ***All*** *are waiting outside the bus station.*
>
> ***Many*** *apply to join but* ***few*** *are chosen.*
>
> *You want tickets for the concert. Right, well,* ***most*** *of them have gone already, I'm afraid.*
>
> ***Neither*** *of them has the right qualifications.*

Cardinal and ordinal numbers can be used as indefinite pronouns:

> *I was woken at* ***six*** *every morning by those birds.*
>
> *The mortar bomb hit the main hospital building, leaving* ***twenty two*** *seriously injured.*
>
> *Jane,* ***the third*** *of our children, is the brightest.*

➔ also **194 Numerals**

A–Z **12 *All*; 28 *Both*; 34 *Each***

A–Z **12 *All*** for further distinctions between *all* and *all of*

-one, -body, -thing **207a**

There are no significant differences in meaning between indefinite pronouns ending in *-one* and those ending in *-body*. However, *somebody*, *anybody*, *nobody* are used more frequently in informal contexts.

When used as subjects, these indefinite pronouns take a singular, not a plural verb. *Somebody* and *someone* normally only refer to one person:

> ***Does anyone*** *want a lift?*
> (~~Do anyone want a lift?~~)

*Is **nobody** interested?*

***Someone has** left a message for you.*

However, when pronouns are used to refer to these words, plural forms are commonly used:

*If **anybody** knocks at the door, tell **them** I'm out.*

*You'll have to tell **them** I'm busy if **anyone** calls.*

***Nobody** resigned, did **they**?*

***Someone** has lost **their** ticket.*

Although indefinite pronouns are most commonly used for vague and general reference, *somebody/someone* and *anybody/anyone* can have both general and specific reference:

*Will **somebody** be there to meet you at the airport?*
(specific)

***Somebody** isn't telling the truth.*
(general)

*I didn't see **anybody**.*
(specific)

***Anyone** can learn to play the guitar, if they work at it.*
(general)

The pronouns *someone/somebody*, *something* and *anyone/anybody*, *anything* are distinguished in similar ways to the determiners *some* and *any* (··⁘ **196d**). For example, *someone/somebody* is more assertive and is used in questions in which the speaker thinks that the answer will follow neatly from the question. The pronouns *anyone/anybody* are more open-ended and when used in questions do not anticipate a particular answer:

*Has your mum bought you **something** for the journey?*

*Do you want to buy **anything**?*

*Hasn't **anyone** called a taxi?*

Something and *anything* can be used to ask negative questions. They contrast in meaning:

*Didn't she contribute **something** to the appeal?*
(suggests that she probably did)

*Didn't she contribute **anything** to the appeal?*
(indicates greater uncertainty)

The indefinite pronouns *no one* (which is also written *no-one*) and *nobody* are more definite than *not anyone* or *not anybody*. *Anyone* and *anybody* are used in conjunction with uses of *nothing*:

*I heard that **no one** said a good word about the trip.*

*I did**n't** hear **anybody** say a good word about the trip.*

*Nothing **anybody** says is accurate.*
(~~Nothing somebody says is accurate.~~)

··⁘ **196b–196d** for fuller discussion of *some* and *any*

A–Z **38 *Every*** for discussion of the determiner *every*, which is included mainly for purposes of contrast with *each*, but which also contains examples of the use of the indefinite pronouns *everything* and *everyone*.

WHATEVER, WHOEVER, WHICHEVER 208

Whatever, *whoever* and *whichever* can be used as pronouns, especially in speech:

*Take **whatever** you want.*

*If I talk to an Irish person or **whoever**, my accent changes.*

A: *Which one shall I get for you?*
B: ***Whichever**. I don't mind.*

In formal use (and often in proverbial expressions) a subject personal pronoun + *who* may be used instead of *whoever*. More commonly, *whoever* or *the person who* are used:

***He who** hesitates is lost.*

*Will **whoever** borrowed my dictionary please return it to my office?*
(or: Will the person who borrowed my dictionary please return it to my office?)

317c *Who* and *whom*

SUBSTITUTE *ONE* 209

Substitute *one* has a plural form *ones*:

*Which **one** would you like?*

*Which **ones** are you taking with you?*

123–139 Grammar across turns and sentences

EMPTY *IT* AND EXISTENTIAL *THERE* 210

The so-called empty *it* and existential *there* do not refer to any object or entity. They are used as dummy subject forms (since a subject is required in non-imperative clauses) and refer generally to situations:

***It**'s very hot today, isn't it.*
(empty *it* used for weather, time and general references to situations)

***It** looks as if the shop's closed early.*

***It** seems as though we might have misjudged her.*

***It**'s time to call a halt to all the arguing.*

***It**'s no use complaining.*

***There** were a lot of people in the town centre.*

***There**'s something I want to talk to you about.*

ANTICIPATORY *IT* 211

If an infinitive or a *that*-clause is the subject of a sentence, *it* is often used as a preparatory or anticipatory subject:

> ***It****'s been nice to meet you.*
> ('To meet you has been nice' is unusual and, at the least, very formal indeed)
>
> ***It****'s silly to let such things upset you.*
> (preferred to: To let such things upset you is silly.)
>
> ***It*** *was a great shame that they arrived late and missed the start of the play.*
> (preferred to the more formal: That they arrived late and missed the start of the play was a great shame.)

It can also be used as a preparatory or anticipatory subject when the subject of the clause is an *-ing* form:

> ***It****'s no trouble meet****ing*** *them at the station.*

It can also be used as a preparatory object:

> *I consider* ***it*** *a compliment getting such a positive response from him.*
> (preferred to: I consider getting such a positive response from him a compliment.)
>
> *He made* ***it*** *very difficult to like him and his sister.*

It is also used in cleft constructions:

> ***It*** *was Sunita who reported them to the police.*
> (Sunita, not Jane)

475c Cleft sentences

128a *It, this* and *that* referring to segments of text

ARCHAIC FORMS 212

Some older forms of second person singular pronouns such as *thou*, *thee*, *thy*, *thyself*, *thine* are only found in religious texts, in poetry and in some dialects of English. In contemporary English the equivalents are:

> *thou* : *you* (subject)
>
> *thee* : *you* (object)
>
> *thy* : *your*
>
> *thyself* : *yourself*
>
> *thine* : *yours*

Verb phrase 1: structure of verb phrases

Simple verb phrases 213
Complex verb phrases 214
    Elements of complex verb phrases 214a
    Ordering of elements in complex verb phrases 214b
    Indication of person and number 214c
    Indication of tense 214d
Tensed and non-tensed verb phrases 215
    General 215a
    Non-tensed verb phrases 215b
    Non-tensed verb forms 215c
Catenative verb phrases (*seem to, manage to*) 216

Verb phrase 1: structure of verb phrases

SIMPLE VERB PHRASES 213

Affirmative

A simple verb phrase has just one verb, which is a lexical verb indicating an action, event or state. The lexical verb shows tense (present or past) and clause type (declarative, imperative or subjunctive:

> *She* ***lives*** *opposite me.*
> (declarative present, affirmative)
>
> *They* ***took*** *it home with them.*
> (declarative past, affirmative)
>
> ***Take*** *a seat.*
> (imperative, affirmative)
>
> *I insist that she* ***come*** *along.*
> (subjunctive, affirmative)

Interrogative and negative

Simple verb phrases are not used to form interrogatives or negatives. Interrogatives and negatives are complex verb phrases (→ 214), in which auxiliary *do* must be used:

> ***Do*** *you* ***know*** *Shirley's number?*
> (interrogative)
> (~~*Know you Shirley's number?*~~)
>
> *Going up to university just* ***does not appeal*** *to me.*
> (negative declarative)
> (~~Going up to university just not appeals to me.~~)
>
> ***Don't tell*** *Brian.*
> (negative imperative)
> (~~Tell not Brian.~~)

Be and *have* used as lexical verbs are exceptions, forming negatives and interrogatives using simple verb phrases:

> ***Are*** *you ready?*
> (lexical verb *be*: interrogative)
>
> ***Has*** *she* ***not*** *a right to be jealous?*
> (lexical verb *have*: interrogative and negative)

COMPLEX VERB PHRASES 214

Elements of complex verb phrases 214a

A complex verb phrase may include one or a combination of the following structures:

- Auxiliary or modal verb + lexical verb:

  I ***do like*** *pizza.*
  (emphatic auxiliary *do*)

  I ***can't take*** *any more.*
  (modal *can*)

  Only one modal verb may occur in a verb phrase:

  *He'****ll be able*** *to get a lift.*
  (~~He will can get a lift.~~)

378 Modal forms for a full list of modal verbs

- Perfect aspect (auxiliary *have* + *-ed* participle of lexical verb):

  *We'****ve talked*** *about that.*
- Progressive aspect (auxiliary *be* + *-ing* participle of lexical verb):

  Tears ***were rolling*** *down my face.*
- Passive voice (auxiliary *be* + *-ed* participle of lexical verb):

  A Laurel and Hardy film ***was banned****.*

Ordering of elements in complex verb phrases 214b

The table shows (from left to right) how the different elements that may occur in complex verb phrases are ordered. The elements are labelled 1 to 5.

The maximum number of different elements is five, but to find all five in one verb phrase is extremely rare.

Ordering of elements in complex verb phrases

			1	2	3	4	5
examples	**A**	*it*	*might*				*rain*
	B	*she*		*has*			*arrived*
	C	*they*			*were*		*working*
	D	*Jamie*		*had*	*been*		*looking*
	E	*it*	*might*	*have*		*been*	*used*
	F	*we*	*may*	*have*	*been*	*being*	*followed*
type of verb			**modal verb**	**perfect auxiliary *have***	**progressive auxiliary *be***	**passive auxiliary *be***	**lexical verb**
ordering principles			must be followed by base form	must be followed by *-ed* participle	must be followed by *-ing* participle	must be followed by *-ed* participle	
meaning			verb phrase has modal meaning	verb phrase has perfect aspect	verb phrase has progressive aspect	verb phrase is passive voice	

The ordering principles in the table mean that if, for example, there is just a modal verb + the lexical verb, the base form of the lexical verb must be used (example **A** in the table). If the modal is followed by auxiliary *have* and a lexical verb, then the next auxiliary or the lexical verb must be in the *-ed* participle form (example **E**).

Example A consists of (**1**) modal verb (*might*) + (**5**) base form.

Example B consists of (**2**) auxiliary verb (*has*) + (**5**) *-ed* participle.

Example C consists of (**3**) auxiliary verb (*were*) + (**5**) *-ing* participle.

Example D consists of (**2**) and (**3**) two auxiliary verbs (*had* + *been*) + (**5**) *-ing* participle.

Example E consists of (**1**) modal verb (*might*) + (**2**) and (**4**) two auxiliary verbs (*have* + *been*) + (**5**) *-ed* participle.

Example F consists of (**1**) modal verb (*may*) + (**2**) and (**3**) and (**4**) three auxiliary verbs (*have* + *been* + *being*) + (**5**) *-ed* participle.

Here are further examples of ordered combinations of the elements. The numbers refer to the table opposite:

combination	**example**
modal + progressive	*I **might be seeing** Bob.* 1 3 5
modal + perfect	*They **should have finished** a long time ago.* 1 2 5
modal + passive	*If I **may be allowed** to say so, …* 1 4 5
perfect + progressive	*Two men **had been plotting** to rob the train.* 2 3 5
progressive + passive	***We're being fooled**.* 3 4 5
perfect + passive	***I've been asked** to write this report.* 2 4 5
modal + perfect + progressive	*She **must have been talking** to Anthea.* 1 2 3 5
modal + perfect + passive	*But, I mean, I **could have been killed**.* 1 2 4 5
modal + progressive + passive	*The nucleic acid **may be being reproduced** in the nucleus …* 1 3 4 5
perfect + progressive + passive	***It's been being repaired** for the last two years.* 2 3 4 5

→ 539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

Indication of person and number 214c

The first element of the verb phrase indicates person (first, second or third) and number (singular or plural). However, modal verbs do not show person or number.

Verb phrases indicating person and number

example	person and number	example subject pronouns
work	first person singular or plural	*I, we*
	second person singular or plural	*you*
	third person plural	*they*
works	third person singular	*he, she, it, one*
have worked	first person singular or plural	*I, we*
	second person singular or plural	*you*
	third person plural	*they*
has worked	third person singular	*he, she, it, one*
was working	first person singular	*I*
	third person singular	*he, she, it, one*
were working	first person plural	*we*
	second person singular or plural	*you*
	third person plural	*they*
will work	no person or number indicated	any subject pronoun

Indication of tense 214d

The first element of the verb phrase indicates tense (present or past). Modal verbs do not show tense.

Verb phrases indicating tense

example	tense
look	present
has *spoken*	present
lifted	past
were *laughing*	past
might *break*	no tense

→ **380b Modal verbs and tenses** for historical tense contrasts between *can/could*, *shall/should*, *will/would* and *may/might*.

TENSED AND NON-TENSED VERB PHRASES 215

General 215a

Tensed verb forms indicate whether a verb is present or past tense. The -*s* form and the past form of the verb are tensed forms.

The -*ing* participle and the -*ed* participle are non-tensed forms.

The base form may be tensed or non-tensed. When it has a subject, it is tensed (and is called the present form); when it is used as the infinitive form (with or without *to*), it is non-tensed.

Verb phrases which begin with a tensed verb form are tensed verb phrases. They must have a subject, except when they are in the imperative. Verb phrases with modal verbs are treated as tensed (··⁝ **215b**, below). Verb phrases which begin with a non-tensed verb form are non-tensed verb phrases. Examples are given in the table.

Examples of tensed and non-tensed verb phrases

	examples	comments
tensed	***I hate*** *carrots.*	first person singular, present tense
	She was *very nice.*	third person singular, past tense
	We spoke *a few months ago.*	first person plural, past tense
	They may get *here by six o'clock.*	modal verb phrase
non-tensed	***Pointing*** *at my forehead, he asked if I had been fighting.*	*-ing* participle; no person, tense or number indicated
	Accompanied *by Professor Saito, she strode round the island.*	*-ed* participle form; no person, tense or number indicated
	To get *there, you take the lift to the third floor.*	base form used as infinitive with *to*; no person, tense or number indicated

Non-tensed verb phrases 215b

Although non-tensed verb phrases do not indicate tense, person or number and usually do not have a subject, their person, tense, etc. are normally understood in relation to items in the main clause:

> ***Waking*** *up in the middle of the night,* ***he*** *will jot down thoughts on a complicated case.*
> (assumed to mean: when he wakes up in the middle of the night)
>
> ***Introduced*** *last year by the Ministry of Health,* ***the ban*** *forbade doctors to perform the operation.*
> (assumed to mean: the ban was introduced last year)

Core modal verbs do not occur in non-tensed verb phrases. However, the modal expressions *be able to* and *have to* may occur in non-tensed verb phrases:

> ***Being able to*** *run fast is what you miss as you get older.*
>
> *It's not nice* ***having to*** *get up at five o'clock in the morning.*

Non-tensed verb forms 215c

-ing participle

-ing participle non-tensed verb phrases may be simple phrases:

> *Please listen carefully to all the options before* ***making*** *your choice.*
>
> ***Buying*** *from Save the Children's gift catalogue is easy.*

Complex *-ing* participle verb phrases may occur with perfect aspect or with passive voice or a combination of both. They are more frequent in writing and in formal styles than in informal speech:

> ***Having finished*** *her breakfast, she pushed her plate noisily across the table and the waitress appeared.*
> (perfect aspect)
>
> *He was released from prison in 1958, after* **being pardoned** *by West Germany's president, Theodor Heuss.*
> (passive voice)
>
> ***Having been asked*** *a few times before to do it and said no, I can't say no this time.*
> (perfect aspect and passive voice)

Progressive aspect does not occur in non-tensed *-ing* participle verb phrases:

> ***Living*** *on my own, I don't cook very often.*
> (~~Being living on my own, I don't cook very often.~~)

-ed participle

-ed participles may occur as simple (non-tensed) phrases:

> *Danzig (Gdansk) became a 'free city',* **linked** *by a customs union to the new Polish state, which also gained Upper Silesia, a major industrial area.*

In complex phrases, they combine with the *-ing* participle and *to*-infinitive forms of *be* and *have* to create passive voice and perfect aspect, or a combination of both:

> ***Being consulted*** *on the matter would have been nice too.*
> (passive)
>
> ***To be forced*** *to leave, be rejected by his own people, must have been a double blow.*
> (passive)
>
> ***Having written*** *so many letters and not got an answer, I'm not sure it's worth writing another one.*
> (perfect)
>
> ***To have worked*** *so hard and then to have that done to them overnight!*
> (perfect)
>
> ***Having been fired*** *only the day before for not doing any work, I was eager to appear busy.*
> (perfect and passive)
>
> *It was petty of me, I know,* **to have been irritated** *by such a fellow, but I was.*
> (perfect and passive)

To-infinitive

To-infinitives may occur as simple non-tensed phrases:

> ***To cope*** *with the extra traffic caused by the university, a new £7-million road bridge will be built over the River Witham.*

They may also be used with *be* and the *-ed* participle as passive voice phrases:

> ***To be deprived*** *of even one hour of sleep was another step towards total exhaustion and collapse.*

They also occur with *have* and the *-ed* participle to indicate perfect aspect:

> ***To have got*** *the 8 o'clock flight would have meant getting up at 4.30.*

They also occur with the *-ing* participle to indicate progressive aspect:

> *How cruel* ***to be having*** *it now, when it was too late.*

Combinations of these structures may also be found:

> *Well I've heard they're supposed* ***to be being pulled down****.*
> (progressive and passive)
>
> *And you felt that she ought* ***to have been informed*** *about that?*
> (perfect and passive)
>
> *Whales and other marine animals are thought* ***to have been being killed*** *as a result of the military tests.*
> (perfect, progressive and passive)

CATENATIVE VERB PHRASES (*SEEM TO, MANAGE TO*) 216

Meaning

A catenative verb phrase is one which includes a verb such as *appear to*, *come to*, *fail to*, *get to*, *happen to*, *manage to*, *seem to* and *tend to* with a lexical verb. These verbs have meanings similar to some of the modal verbs or meanings similar to those indicated by aspect choices. However, unlike modal and auxiliary verbs, they behave like lexical verbs in that they construct their complex forms with auxiliary *do*, *be* and *have*.

The catenative verbs express modal meanings, indicating whether something is probable or certain, and aspectual meanings, indicating whether something is achieved or completed:

> *'You* ***appear to be*** *a man of many parts,' she said.*
> (could also be expressed with a modal adverb such as: You are probably a man of many parts.)
>
> *Do you* ***happen to know*** *Suzie's number?*
>
> *He* ***didn't manage to get*** *Anna on the telephone.*
> (He wasn't able to/couldn't get Anna on the telephone.)
>
> *We* ***seem to have been*** *this way before.*
>
> *We don't* ***tend to go*** *to London very often.*

The quasi-modal meanings of catenative verbs may be illustrated by the fact that they can be removed without any major change to the meaning:

> *Do you* ***happen to know*** *Suzie's number?*
> (or: Do you know Suzie's number?)
>
> *Do you* ***happen to have*** *a spare pen?*
> (or: Do you have a spare pen?)
>
> *We don't* ***tend to go*** *to London very often.*
> (or: We don't go to London very often.)

In the case of *fail to*, a simple negative may be substituted:

> *The package* ***failed to arrive*** *on time.*
> (The package did not arrive on time.)

However, non-catenative lexical verbs cannot be removed in this way without major changes to meaning:

> *I often* ***long to change*** *my job.*
> (compare: I often change my job.)

285a where non-catenative lexical verbs which are followed by the *to*-infinitive are dealt with

Passive

Catenative verbs do not occur in the passive. Voice is indicated in the verbs following the catenative verb:

> *Large sums* ***appear to have been removed*** *from the fund without adequate explanation.*
> (~~Large sums have been appeared to remove from the fund …~~)
>
> *England's market-led success in the last century, for example,* ***failed to be matched*** *in equally market-oriented Ireland.*
> (~~England's market-led success in the last century, for example, was failed to match …~~)

Progressive aspect

Progressive aspect may sometimes be indicated on the catenative verb itself, and sometimes on the lexical verb which follows it. The table below shows which verbs allow one or both of the options. In cases where both options are possible, the more frequent is marked with (+).

Examples of progressive aspect in catenative verb phrases

	indicated on catenative verb	**indicated on lexical verb**
appear to	no	*The mood **appears to be changing** slightly.*
fail to	*Leeds University professor Robin Alexander said the latest methods **were failing to teach** children properly.*	no
get to	***I'm getting to know** Damien better.*	no
happen to	no	*I hope you don't mind. I **happened to be passing** and I used to live here once.*
manage to	*I think it's remarkable that we**'re managing to keep** in touch.* (+)	*Some students even **manage to be** '**working** on a play' for their entire three years at university without anyone ever actually seeing so much as a page.*
seem to	*The university **were** hanging on and **seeming to think** the changes would not happen.*	*You **seem to be losing** weight rapidly.* (+)
tend to*	*Outside London, where jobs are scarce, they **are tending to accept** lower pay rather than fewer staff.*	*It's a bit infuriating cos you **tend to be paying** the Post Office a lot of extra money, or British Telecom.*

* Occurrences of *tend to* with progressive aspect are infrequent in either combination.

Perfect aspect

Perfect aspect may also be indicated on the catenative verb itself or on the lexical verb. The table below shows which verbs allow one or both of the options. In cases where both options are possible, the more frequent is marked with (+).

Examples of perfect aspect in catenative verb phrases

	indicated on catenative verb	**indicated on lexical verb**
appear to	*The furore surrounding Mr Harvey **had appeared to threaten** East 17's commercial future.*	*He **appeared to have forgotten** I was there.* (+)
fail to	*Sam's team **had failed to get** through the first round and faced a humiliating defeat at the hands of the African team.* (+)	*Add the kind of guilt most people will feel about **failing to have provided** enough protection, or being responsible for an accident, and you have a very dangerous cocktail of traumas to adjust to.*
get to	*By then I **had got to know** David quite well.*	no
happen to	*… Julia, who **had happened to pop** in unexpectedly at precisely the wrong moment, looking for a packet of cigarettes …*	*But she **happens to have gone** off for the weekend with friends.* (+)
manage to	*They **had managed to have** a quick coffee together on the last day of term.*	no
seem to	*Robert **hadn't seemed to need** him of late, and it had annoyed him.*	*It **seems to have worked**.* (+)
tend to	*It's something we **have tended to try** and focus on.* (+)	*If we're lucky enough to own our own homes, we **tend to have borrowed** either our first mortgage or sometimes a second against it.*

Verb phrase 2: tense and aspect

Introduction 217
Tense 218
The present simple 219
The past simple 220
Types of time reference 221
Establishing the time frame 222
Aspect and meaning 223
Progressive aspect 224
    The present progressive 224a
    The past progressive 224b
    The future progressive 224c
Perfect aspect 225
    The present perfect 225a
    The past perfect 225b
    Perfect infinitive 225c
Combining perfect and progressive aspect 226

Verb phrase 2: tense and aspect

INTRODUCTION 217

English verb phrases give information of different kinds. Verb phrases indicate: tense, which gives information about time, e.g. *I speak* (present tense) versus *I spoke* (past tense); aspect, which gives information about the speaker's perspective on time, e.g. *I spoke* (simple aspect) versus *I was speaking* (progressive aspect); voice, whether active (e.g. *She destroyed it*) or passive (e.g. *It was destroyed*), which gives information about agents and recipients of verb processes. This chapter deals with contrasts between the different tenses (present and past), and the different aspects (progressive and perfect). Voice is dealt with in **476–487 The passive**.

Progressive (also known as continuous) aspect is formed with auxiliary verb *be* + the *-ing* participle of a lexical verb. Perfect aspect is formed with auxiliary verb *have* + the *-ed* participle form of a lexical verb.

Although English does not have a future tense, the term 'future' is often used to refer to modal and aspect combinations, such as 'future perfect' (e.g. ***I will have studied*** *for three hours by the time I finish.*) or 'future progressive' (*She* ***will be arriving*** *tomorrow.*).

Tense and aspect are combined in the verb phrase. The tense is shown on the first verb in the verb phrase (unless it is a modal). All subsequent verbs have non-tensed forms (*-ing* participle, *-ed* participle, or infinitive). A verb phrase may include both aspects, progressive and perfect.

Examples of aspect in present and past tense

aspect	present tense	past tense
progressive	*Why* ***is*** *he smil****ing*** *like that?*	*Why* ***was*** *he smil****ing*** *like that?*
perfect	*They* ***have*** *change****d*** *the time.* (*have* is present)	*They* ***had*** *change****d*** *the time.* (*had* is past)
perfect and progressive combined	*He* ***has been*** *do****ing*** *some research.*	*He* ***had*** *been do****ing*** *some research.*

The perfect auxiliary *have* comes before the progressive auxiliary *be* when the two are combined:

perfect progressive

He | ***has*** | ***been*** *work****ing*** | *on Mrs Green's case for almost six years.*

(~~He is having worked on Mrs Green's case …~~)

→ **214b Ordering of elements in complex verb phrases**

TENSE 218

English verbs can show two tenses, present and past. Examples are given in the table overleaf.

Examples of present and past tenses

verb form	tense
*I **work** here.*	present
*She **is** working in London.*	present
*They **have** left.*	present
*We **worked** all day.*	past
*I **was** working in the garden.*	past
*It **had** worked well.*	past

The marking of tense on irregular verbs often involves internal sound changes (e.g. *sit–sat*, *speak–spoke*).

→ **529 Appendix: Irregular verbs**

Present tenses are mostly concerned with talking about present time, and past tenses are mostly concerned with talking about past time.

The present tense forms are also used to talk about other kinds of time, especially the future. Present tense forms can also refer to the past. This is particularly true of narratives, where past events may be recounted partly or wholly in the present tense (for example, jokes are often told entirely in present tense). This is sometimes referred to as the ‘historic present’. Examples of present tense forms with future and past reference are given in the table below.

Examples of present tense forms referring to future and past time

example	tense	time referred to
*They **are** com**ing** to see you next weekend, I gather.*	present	future time (→ **362**)
*Her daughter **finishes** school tomorrow evening.*	present	future time (→ **369**)
*And his mum **says**, ‘Homework never killed anybody,’ and then he said, ‘No, and I’m not going to be the first.’*	present	the past (frequently used for dramatising speech reporting in spoken stories, → **360e**)
*Emma, this friend of mine, brought out these photographs of the family through the years and he**’s** look**ing** at them, and he said ‘Oh!’*	present	the past (frequently used for dramatising important events in spoken stories, → **360a**)

The past tense forms are also used to refer to present time, especially for reasons of politeness or indirectness. This is because the past tense distances an event from the present, and distancing an event can make it more indirect. Examples are given in the table below.

Examples of past tense forms referring to present time

example	tense	time referred to
A: *I wonder**ed** if you **felt** it would make a difference if more people wrote or telephoned or said what they thought.* B: *Well yes.*	past	present time
[customer on the telephone to a travel agent] *We **were** wondering about going to Amsterdam.* *We **were** wanting to stay in tents or in a caravan or in a bed and breakfast to see what the different prices **were**.*	past	present time

As can be seen in the table above, past tense may combine with progressive aspect (*we were wondering/we were wanting*) to further emphasise politeness, indirectness or tentativeness.

408

THE PRESENT SIMPLE 219

The present simple is formed using the present tense form of a lexical verb (the same as the base form) for all persons except third person singular. Third person singular is formed by adding -*s* or -*es* to the base form.

The present simple: formation

1st and 2nd person singular/plural, 3rd person plural	3rd person singular	3rd person inflection
*I/you/we/they/the children **talk** a lot.*	*He/she/it/one/the child **talks** a lot.*	in most verbs -*s* is added to base form
*I/you/we/they/the children **worry** about it.*	*He/she/it/the child **worries** about it.*	verbs ending in consonant + *y*: *y* changes to *i*, and -*es* is added to base form
*I/you/we/they/the children **miss** her.*	*He/she/it/the child **misses** her.*	verbs ending in *s*, *z*, *ch*, *sh* or *x*: -*es* is added to base form

For a small number of verbs ending in a single -*s*, variations are possible in which the -*s* is doubled:

> *To focus*: *He/she/it **focuses** (or **focusses**) on the problem of unemployment.*
> *To bus*: *The primary school **buses** (or **busses**) children in from miles around.* (brings them in a bus)
> *To bias*: *The question **biases** (or **biasses**) people against voting 'yes'.*

There are also some other special cases of spelling and/or pronunciation:

be
*I **am***
*you/we/they **are***
*he/she/it **is***

do
I/you/we/they do
*he/she/it **does*** (/dʌz/)

say
I/you/we/they say
*He/she/it **says*** (/sez/)

have
I/you/we/they have
*he/she/it **has***

go
I/you/we/they go
*he/she/it **goes***

The declarative and interrogative forms of the present simple are shown in the table overleaf.

The present simple: declarative and interrogative forms

declarative		interrogative	
affirmative	**negative**	**affirmative**	**negative**
*I/you/we/they **work**.*	*I/you/we/they **don't work**.* (informal) *I/you/we/they **do not work**.* (more formal)	***Do** I/you/we/they **work**?*	***Don't** I/you/we/they **work**?* (informal) ***Do** I/you/we/they **not work**?* (more formal)
*He/she/it/one **works**.*	*He/she/it/one **doesn't work**.* (informal) *He/she/it one **does not work**.* (more formal)	***Does** he/she/it/one **work**?*	***Doesn't** he/she/it/one **work**?* (informal) ***Does** he/she/it/one **not work**?* (more formal)

THE PAST SIMPLE 220

Regular verbs form the past simple by adding *-ed* to the base form:

> *The flight last**ed** ten hours and we land**ed** at 6.30 in the morning.*
>
> *We talk**ed** for hours on the phone.*

Negative and interrogative forms are constructed with auxiliary *did*.

The past simple: affirmative, negative and interrogative forms

affirmative	negative	interrogative
*I miss**ed** it.*	*I **did not/didn't** miss it.*	***Did** I miss it?* ***Didn't** I miss it?* *(informal)* ***Did** I **not** miss it?* *(more formal)*
*He look**ed** well.*	*He **did not/didn't** look well.*	***Did** he look well?* ***Didn't** he look well?* *(informal)* ***Did** he **not** look well?* *(more formal)*

For irregular verbs, the past simple form is the second of the three parts of a verb, which are usually listed as base form – past form – *-ed* participle.

Irregular verbs

base form	past form	*-ed* participle
see	***saw***	*seen*
take	***took***	*taken*
put	***put***	*put*

*I **saw** her earlier.*

*She **took** it home yesterday.*

529 Appendix: Irregular verbs for a list of irregular verbs

Negative and interrogative past simple forms of irregular verbs are formed in the same way as with regular verbs, using auxiliary *did* + the base form:

*I didn't **eat** my lunch.*
(~~I didn't ate my lunch.~~)

*What did he **sing** for you?*
(~~What did he sang for you?~~)

508e Rule 5: Spelling of verb forms and -*ed* forms

TYPES OF TIME REFERENCE 221

The types of time that the verb forms may refer to are quite complex. For example, the present tense forms may refer to a variety of different types of time. A wide range of references is made possible by combining the present tense with progressive aspect (*be* + *-ing*) and/or perfect aspect (*have* + *-ed* participle). The same applies to past time references. Examples are given in the table below.

Examples of tenses for a variety of time references

example	type of time reference
*This soup **tastes** nice.*	the actual moment of speaking ('present time')
*Come on! **I'm waiting** for you.*	the actual moment of speaking ('present time')
*I **work** in a big office.*	time around the moment of speaking ('present time')
*He **is getting** old.*	time around the moment of speaking ('present time')
*Water **freezes** at zero degrees Celsius.*	general time, always true (in this book included in 'present time')
*We **leave** for Italy next week.*	the future, based on a present arrangement or fact (in this book dealt with under 'future time')
*He **is leaving** London tomorrow.*	the future, based on a present fact or already made decision (in this book dealt with under 'future time')
*I said 'You all right, Bill?' He **says**, 'Give me a cigarette.'*	the past, reporting what was said (in this book, dealt with under 'past time')
*She **has aged** a lot. She doesn't look well.*	time beginning in the past and continuing till now (in this book dealt with under 'past time')
***I've been working** hard.*	time beginning in the past and continuing till now (in this book dealt with under 'past time')
*They**'d sold** the house some years before.*	time beginning in the past and continuing till a point in the past (in this book dealt with under 'past time')
***I'd been swimming** so my hair was wet.*	time beginning in the past and continuing till a point in the past (in this book dealt with under 'past time')

- Present time may be seen as the moment of speaking or writing, or the idea of 'time around now', or the more general, permanent time relating to truths and general facts.
- References to present time are made through the simple and progressive forms of the present tense. However, some references to present time may be made using past tense forms (→ 343).
- Past time refers to an earlier time separated from the present. References to past time are usually made with the past tenses (past simple, past progressive, past perfect). However, some past time references may be made using present tense forms (→ 360).
- Future time refers to time after the present, either separated from the present, or seen as starting from the present and continuing forward. References to future time may be made with modal verbs (e.g. *will*, *shall*, *may*) or with the present tense forms (→ 362 and 369).
- References to time beginning in the past and continuing until now are usually made with the present perfect forms, which are dealt with under past time (→ 351–354).
- References to time beginning in an earlier past and continuing until a determined point in the past are usually made with the past perfect forms, which are dealt with under past time (→ 355–357).

ESTABLISHING THE TIME FRAME 222

Explicit time frame

The time frame for the choice of verb tense can be established by the presence of an adjunct or an adverbial clause.

Examples of adjunct or adverbial clause to establish time frame

example	time frame
They're travelling through Italy ***at the moment****.*	present time
She's arriving in Bogota ***next week****.*	future time
Her daughter finishes school ***tomorrow evening****.*	future time
She started ***last Monday****.*	past time
Plymouth has changed ***in the last few years****.*	time leading up to the moment of speaking
His mother had died ***years previously****.*	time before a point in the past
I've known Jill ***since I came here in about 1975****.*	time leading up to the moment of speaking
I really didn't even concentrate on it ***when I was doing it****.*	past time

Implicit time frame

The time frame may be implicit or already established, and simply understood in the context.

Examples of implicit time frame

example	form	implicit time frame
Why ***is*** *he* ***smiling*** *like that?*	present progressive	present time (moment of speaking)
I think you've probably got the wrong number. What number ***did*** *you* ***dial****?*	simple past	past time (you dialled at some point separated from the moment of speaking)
*Ben****'s moving*** *to Manchester so he's selling his house.*	present progressive	future time (he will move at some point soon)
A: ***Have*** *you* ***rung*** *dad?* B: *No, not yet.*	present perfect	time leading up to the moment of speaking, during which you may have rung
*I told her I****'d invited*** *you.*	past perfect	time before a point in the past (before I told her)

ASPECT AND MEANING 223

Aspect refers to the speaker's/writer's perspective on the time of an event.

In English, aspect is concerned mainly with how the speaker perceives the duration of events, and how different events relate to one another in time.

An event may be referred to in different ways, even though the point in time when it occurs may be unchanged. For example, the same event in the past can be referred to by either the past simple or the present perfect, depending on the speaker's perception of the importance or relevance of an event:

A: *They****'ve sold*** *their house there, you know.*
B: *Oh have they. Where have they gone?*
A: *Oh she's a bit fed up really. They* ***sold*** *the house because he wants a job up north.*

The speaker uses perfect aspect (*have sold*) to announce the news of the house sale (a typical use of the present perfect to mark 'newsworthiness') but then uses the past simple (*sold*) when expanding on the details, even though both verbs refer to the same event.

The choice of aspect may also reflect an emphasis on whether an event was long-lasting or just a point in time. It may also reflect whether it is to be seen as temporary or permanent, whether it is/was already in progress when something else happened, whether it is generally or always the case, whether it happens regularly, etc.

English has two aspects: progressive (sometimes called continuous) aspect and perfect aspect.

PROGRESSIVE ASPECT 224

With progressive aspect, the focus is principally on the duration of the event. It may therefore be used to indicate that something is ongoing, unfinished, or that it is extended but temporary. It may indicate that something is/was/will be already in progress when something else happens/happened. In other words, the focus is not on the starting or finishing point of an event, but on the event as seen from its centre. Examples are given in the table below.

Progressive aspect involves the use of auxiliary *be* and the *-ing* form of a lexical verb.

Examples of progressive aspect

	example	form	type of duration
1	[on the telephone] *It's about half past two and **I'm approaching** Lyon.*	present progressive	an ongoing process at the moment of speaking
2	[*MP* = Member of Parliament] *He **has been doing** some research for an MP for about a year.*	present perfect progressive	continuing from a year ago till now and possibly into the future
3	*My knees **were shaking**.*	past progressive	an ongoing process at the point in the past the speaker is referring to
4	*This **had been going** on since September.*	past perfect progressive	continuing from September till the moment in the past the speaker is talking about
5	***I'll be working** when you get home.*	*will/shall* + progressive (often called future progressive)	will be an ongoing process at the point in the future the speaker is referring to
6	***We'll have been living** here twelve years soon.*	*will/shall* + perfect progressive (often called future perfect progressive)	will continue from twelve years before till the point in the future referred to ('soon')
7	*It **must have been going** on for years.*	modal perfect progressive	an ongoing process probably occurring over a period of time leading up to now or up to a point in the past

Some of the sentences in the table above are best understood in contrast with possible meanings of their simple form equivalents.

2 *He has done some research for an MP for about a year.* This sees the action more as a completed event, and could – but not necessarily – mean the action is finished.

3 *My knees shook.* This could mean my knees shook for a defined period of time (e.g. a few seconds) then stopped.

5 *I'll work when you get home.* This could mean 'I'll start work when you get home'.

The infinitive form of the progressive (following verbs such as *hope*, *intend*, *like*, *seem*, *want*, and other structures requiring an infinitive) is formed with *to be* + *-ing* form of the verb:

*He just seemed **to be doing** the same thing we were doing.*

*I don’t want **to be walking** round on my own at nights.*

*It’s a peculiar essay **to be doing** at university, I would have thought.*

The present progressive 224a

The present progressive is formed with the present tense forms of *be* + *-ing* form of a lexical verb. Examples are given in the table below.

The present progressive: declarative and interrogative forms

declarative		interrogative	
affirmative	negative	affirmative	negative
*I’**m** do**ing** it right.* (informal)	*I’**m not** do**ing** it right.* (informal)	***Am** I do**ing** it right?*	***Aren’t** I do**ing** it right?* (informal)
*I **am** do**ing** it right.* (more formal)	*I **am not** do**ing** it right.* (more formal)		***Am** I **not** do**ing** it right?* (more formal)
*You/we/they’**re** work**ing** on Friday.* (informal)	*You/we/they’**re not** work**ing** on Friday.* *You/we/they **aren’t** work**ing** on Friday.* (informal)	***Are** you/we/they work**ing** on Friday?*	***Aren’t** you/we/they work**ing** on Friday?* (informal)
*You/we/they **are** work**ing** on Friday.* (more formal)	*You/we/they **are not** work**ing** on Friday.* (more formal)		***Are** you/we/they **not** work**ing** on Friday?* (more formal)
*He/she/one it’**s** work**ing** today.* (informal)	*He/she/it/one’**s not** work**ing** today.* *He/she/it/one **isn’t** work**ing** today.* (informal)	***Is** he/she/it/one work**ing** today?*	***Isn’t** he/she/it/one work**ing** today?* (informal)
*He/she/it/one **is** work**ing** today.* (more formal)	*He/she/it/one **is not** work**ing** today.* (more formal)		***Is** he/she/it/one **not** work**ing** today?* (more formal)

508f Rule 6: Spelling of verb forms: -*ing* forms

The past progressive 224b

The past progressive is formed with *was*/*were* + *-ing* form of a lexical verb:

*The wind **was** blow**ing** from the north.*

***Were** you expect**ing** someone?*

The table below shows the declarative and interrogative forms of the past progressive.

The past progressive: declarative and interrogative forms

declarative		interrogative	
affirmative	**negative**	**affirmative**	**negative**
*I/he/she/it/one **was** runn**ing** late.*	*I/he/she/it/one **wasn’t** runn**ing** late.* (informal) *I/he/she/it/one **was not** runn**ing** late.* (more formal)	***Was** I/he/she/it/one runn**ing** late?*	***Wasn’t** I/he/she/it runn**ing** late?* (informal) ***Was** I/he/she/it/one **not** runn**ing** late?* (more formal)
*You/we/they **were** sleep**ing**.* (informal)	*You/we/they **weren’t** sleep**ing**.* (informal) *You/we/they **were not** sleep**ing**.* (more formal)	***Were** you/we/they sleep**ing**?*	***Weren’t** you/we/they sleep**ing**?* (informal) ***Were** you/we/they **not** sleep**ing**?* (more formal)

The future progressive 224c

Progressive references to the future are formed with *will*/*’ll*/*shall* + *be* + *-ing* form of the lexical verb. The table below shows the declarative and interrogative forms of the future progressive.

The future progressive: declarative and interrogative forms

declarative		interrogative	
affirmative	**negative**	**affirmative**	**negative**
*(Subject) **’ll be** wait**ing** at the station.* (informal) *(Subject) **will be** wait**ing** at the station.* (more formal)	*(Subject) **won’t be** wait**ing** at the station.* (informal) *(Subject) **will not be** wait**ing** at the station.* (more formal)	***Will** (subject) **be** wait**ing** at the station?*	***Won’t** (subject) **be** wait**ing** at the station?* (informal) ***Will** (subject) **not be** wait**ing** at the station?* (more formal) ***Will not** (subject) **be** wait**ing** at the station?* (very formal and now considered archaic)
*I/we **shall be** mind**ing** the children.* (more formal)	*I/we **shan’t be** mind**ing** the children.* (informal) *I/we **shall not be** mind**ing** the children.* (more formal)	***Shall** I/we **be** mind**ing** the children?*	***Shan’t** I/we **be** mind**ing** the children?* (informal) ***Shall** I/we **not be** mind**ing** the children?* (more formal) ***Shall not** I/we **be** mind**ing** the children?* (very formal and now considered archaic)

Where there is a choice between *will* and *shall* (i.e. with first person pronouns), the forms with *shall* are more formal than those with *will*.

··➻ **492d The past progressive** on progressive aspect in indirect reports

PERFECT ASPECT 225

Perfect aspect is concerned with the speaker's perspective on the relationship between one time frame and an event that takes place in another time frame. An event which took place in the past may be seen as relevant to the present moment. Likewise, an event due to take place in the future may be seen as linked to the present moment. The table below gives examples of different time-frame relationships.

Perfect aspect involves the use of auxiliary *have* + *-ed* participle of a lexical verb. The tense may be present or past. Future perfect forms are created using *will/'ll/shall*.

Examples of perfect aspect

example	form	time relationship
*I**'ve lived** here about 25 years.*	present perfect	the whole period from 25 years ago till now
*The flight is at 7.15. They**'ve changed** the time.*	present perfect	the time change happened between some unspecified point in the past and now
*I **had finished** just before I went to work.*	past perfect	the time I finished in relation to the time (in the past) when I went to work
*That was about 1936. That was when we came to Stockport. We **had lived** in Manchester before that.*	past perfect	the time we lived in Manchester in relation to 1936
*Yesterday and tomorrow all together I **will have spent** £100 on train fares.*	future perfect	yesterday and the period up to and including tomorrow
*In three years' time, **we'll have lived** here 20 years.*	future perfect	the time between when we started living here and three years in the future from now
*They **may have been** confused.*	modal perfect	a possible event during a time leading up to now or up to a point in the past

The present perfect 225a

The declarative and interrogative forms of the present perfect simple are shown in the table below.

The present perfect: declarative and interrogative forms

declarative		interrogative	
affirmative	**negative**	**affirmative**	**negative**
*I/you/we/they**’ve** work**ed**.* (informal) *I/you/we/they **have** work**ed**.* (more formal)	*I/you/we/they **haven’t** work**ed**.* *I/you/we/they**’ve not** work**ed**.* (informal) *I/you/we/they **have not** work**ed**.* (more formal)	***Have** I/you/we/they work**ed**?*	***Haven’t** I/you/we/they work**ed**?* (informal) ***Have** I/you/we/they **not** work**ed**?* (more formal)
*He/she/it/one**’s** work**ed**.* (informal) *He/she/it/one **has** work**ed**.* (more formal)	*He/she/it/one **hasn’t** work**ed**.* *He/she/it/one**’s not** work**ed**.* (informal) *He/she/it/one **has not** work**ed**.* (more formal)	***Has** he/she/it/one work**ed**?*	***Hasn’t** he/she/it/one work**ed**?* (informal) ***Has** he/she/it/one **not** work**ed**?* (more formal)

The past perfect 225b

The past perfect simple forms are the same as the present perfect, but with *had* being used instead of *have* and *has*, and *’d* being used as the contracted form. The table below shows the declarative and interrogative forms of the past perfect simple.

The past perfect: declarative and interrogative forms

declarative		interrogative	
affirmative	**negative**	**affirmative**	**negative**
*I/you/we/they**’d** already **started**.* (informal) *I/you/we/they **had** already **started**.* (more formal)	*I/you/we/they **hadn’t** already **started**.* *I/you/we/they**’d not** already **started**.* (informal) *I/you/we/they **had not** already **started**.* (more formal)	***Had** I/you/we/they already **started**?*	***Hadn’t** I/you/we/they already **started**?* (informal) ***Had** I/you/we/they **not** already **started**?* (more formal)

continued

declarative		interrogative	
affirmative	negative	affirmative	negative
*He/she/it/one**'d** already **started**.* (informal)	*He/she/it/one **hadn't** already **started**.* *He/she/it/one**'d not** already **started**.* (informal)	***Had** he/she/it/one already **started**?*	***Hadn't** he/she/it/one already **started**?* (informal)
*He/she/it/one **had** already **started**.* (more formal)	*He/she/it **had not** already **started**.* (more formal)		***Had** he/she/it/one **not** already **started**?* (more formal)

Perfect infinitive 225c

The infinitive form of the perfect aspect (following verbs such as *hope*, *intend*, *like*, *seem*, and other structures requiring an infinitive) is formed with *to have* + *-ed* participle:

> *I was hoping **to have finished** by now.*
>
> *They don't seem **to have solved** all the other problems.*
>
> *Are you supposed **to have fed** the dog?*

The perfect aspect may also occur in a non-tensed *-ing* form:

> ***Having arrived** eventually in Salt Lake City at 5.30 a.m. and walked around for a couple of hours, I wandered into a downtown supermarket.*

COMBINING PERFECT AND PROGRESSIVE ASPECT 226

The present and past perfect may both combine with progressive aspect:

> ***I've been cycling** for years through busy traffic.*
>
> *This **had been going on** since September.*

Types of verb

Introduction 227
Lexical verbs 228
  Regular verbs 228a
  Irregular verbs 228b
The base form 229
The -*s* form 230
The -*ing* form 231
The -*ed* form 232
Auxiliary verbs 233
  General 233a
  Negative forms and auxiliary verbs 233b
  Interrogative forms and auxiliary verbs 233c
  Contracted forms of auxiliary verbs 233d
  Ellipsis and substitution with auxiliary verbs 233e
Modal verbs 234
  General 234a
  Negative forms of modal verbs 234b
  Interrogative forms of modal verbs 234c
  Contracted forms of modal verbs 234d
  Ellipsis and substitution with modal verbs 234e
Multi-word verbs 235
  General 235a
  Particles 235b
  Phrasal verbs 235c
  Transitive phrasal verbs 235d
  Intransitive phrasal verbs 235e
  Prepositional verbs 235f
  Phrasal-prepositional verbs 235g

Types of verb

INTRODUCTION 227

There are three basic types of verb in English: lexical verbs, auxiliary verbs and modal verbs.

Lexical verbs

Lexical verbs can stand alone. Lexical verbs have meanings denoting actions, events and states, and belong to an open class (i.e. new verbs are frequently created):

*They **laughed**.*

*It **rained** all night.*

*We had to **catch** a bus.*

Some lexical verbs such as *appear*, *be*, *become*, *feel*, *get*, *look*, *remain*, *seem*, *smell*, *sound*, *taste*, which are followed by predicative complements, are called copular verbs:

*He**'s** a teacher.*

*That **smells** good.*

⁘ 288 Copular complementation

Auxiliary verbs

The auxiliary verbs are *be*, *do* and *have*. Auxiliary verbs add extra information to the lexical verb.

- Auxiliary *be* is used to indicate progressive aspect (⁘ **224**) and passive voice (⁘ **478**).
- Auxiliary *do* is used in the creation of interrogative, negative and emphatic structures.
- Auxiliary *have* is used to indicate perfect aspect (⁘ **225**).

Auxiliary verbs are usually followed by a lexical verb, but they may occur without a lexical verb in reduced clauses (i.e. clauses with ellipsis). They may also occur in clauses where *do* substitutes for a lexical verb:

A: *Are you hoping to get it finished today?*
B: *Yes, we **are**.*
(ellipsis: Yes, we are hoping to get it finished today.)

A: *Will you ring the electrician?*
B: *I already **have done**.*
(*do* as substitute verb: I already have rung the electrician.)

Be, *do* and *have* can be used as auxiliary verbs or as lexical verbs. In these examples of *be*, *do* and *have* as auxiliary verbs, the lexical verbs are in green:

> *He* ***was*** *working over there.*
>
> *What* ***do*** *they call them?*
>
> ***Have*** *you been home?*
>
> ***I've been*** *asked that question a number of times.*

Examples of *be*, *do* and *have* as lexical verbs:

> *That* ***was*** *a good meal.*
> (also referred to as copular *be*)
>
> *He would need to* ***do*** *his exams before he went.*
>
> *Can I* ***have*** *a receipt for it?*

Modal verbs

Modal verbs belong to a closed class of verbs whose core members are *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *shall*, *should*, *will*, *would* and *must*, along with semi-modals such as *dare*, *need*, *ought to* and *used to*. Modal verbs generally encode meanings connected with degrees of certainty and degrees of necessity:

> *We* ***could*** *go up and get one.*
>
> A: *I'm sure one day you'll go back to teaching.*
> B: *I* ***might****.*
>
> *We* ***ought to*** *do something about that missing roof-tile.*

Modal verbs are usually followed by a lexical verb, but they may occur without a lexical verb in clauses with ellipsis. They may also occur in clauses where *do* substitutes for a lexical verb:

> A: *I'll give her a ring.*
> B: *Yes, you* ***must****.*
> (ellipsis: Yes, you must give her a ring.)
>
> A: *You know the Philips?*
> B: *Well I* ***should*** *do.*
> (*do* as substitute verb: Well I should know them.)

377–407 Modality

LEXICAL VERBS 228

Regular verbs 228a

Regular verbs, the class to which most lexical verbs belong, have four different forms. These forms realise a variety of functions. The most typical functions are shown in the table below.

Regular verbs: form and function

form	function	example
base form	present tense	*People always **look** at me.*
	infinitive (with or without *to*)	*I want to **look**.* *Let me **look**.*
-*s* form	present tense (3rd person singular)	*She **looks** at everyone.*
-*ing* form	progressive aspect	*What **are** you **looking** at?*
	non-tensed in non-finite clause	***Looking** ahead, we should book flights for the summer holidays.*
	gerund (nominal form)	***Looking** shouldn't offend anyone.*
	-*ing* form adjectives	*They had to work in **freezing** temperatures.*
-*ed* form	past tense	*We **looked** for a taxi.*
	-*ed* participle	*I've **looked** everywhere.*
	non-tensed in non-finite clauses	***Looked** at in that way, it seemed less problematic.*
	-*ed* form adjectives	*We had some wonderful Irish **smoked** salmon.*

The present tense form is the same as the base form for all persons except third person singular, which takes the -*s* form:

> *I/we/you/they* ***look***
> (present tense form)
>
> *He/she/it/one* ***looks***
> (-*s* form)

Irregular verbs 228b

Irregular verbs, like regular verbs, have a base form, an -*s* form and an -*ing* form, but they vary in how the functions of the regular verb -*ed* form are realised.

Some irregular verbs have the same form for the base form and for all the functions of the -*ed* form.

All three forms the same

base form	-*ed* form as past tense	-*ed* form as -*ed* participle/adjective/non-tensed
cut	*cut*	*cut*
set	*set*	*set*
shut	*shut*	*shut*

Some irregular verbs have the same form for the base and -*ed* form as -*ed* participle/adjective/non-tensed, but a different form for the -*ed* form as past tense.

Base form and -*ed* participle, etc. the same; past tense different

base form	-*ed* form as past tense	-*ed* form as -*ed* participle/adjective/non-tensed
come	*came*	*come*
become	*became*	*become*
run	*ran*	*run*

→ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

Some irregular verbs have three different forms which correspond to the functions of the base and the *-ed* forms of regular verbs.

All three forms different

base form	*-ed* form as past tense	*-ed* form as *-ed* participle/adjective/non-tensed
speak	*spoke*	*spoken*
take	*took*	*taken*
swim	*swam*	*swum*

There are other variations too. → **529 Appendix: Irregular verbs** for a full list of irregular verbs with their base and *-ed* forms

Be, have, do

Be, *have* and *do* have irregular forms for the present tense:

be	have	do
I ***am***	*I/we/you/they* ***have***	*I/we/you/they* ***do***
you/we/they ***are***	*he/she/it/one* ***has***	*he/she/it/one* ***does***
he/she/it/one ***is***		

Be also has irregular past tense forms:

I/he/she/it ***was***

we/you/they ***were***

THE BASE FORM 229

The base form functions as the present tense form for all persons and numbers except the third person singular (which uses the *-s* form). (Modal verbs do not show these contrasts of tense, person and number.):

They ***work*** *on exactly the same principle.*

I ***hate*** *carrots.*

The base form functions as the infinitive (with or without *to*):

I hope to ***see*** *you tomorrow.*

I'll let you ***know*** *what's to be done.*

The base form is used for the imperative mood:

Sit *here then.*

The base form also functions as the subjunctive mood (→ **159e**) for all persons, including third person singular:

The doctor insisted that he ***go*** *to the hospital for a series of tests.*

THE -*S* FORM 230

The -*s* form is used with third-person-singular subjects (*he/she/it/one* and singular nouns) to indicate the present tense:

He ***lives*** *at 27 Webber Close.*

It ***depends*** *on what you want to do.*

The coffee ***smells*** *good.*

THE -*ING* FORM 231

The -*ing* form is used with auxiliary *be* to form progressive aspect:

I ***was doing*** *some work for Sally.*

*He****'s looking*** *well these days.*

The -*ing* form also occurs in non-finite clauses:

Getting *no reply, she rang the bell again.*

He stared at me, as if ***trying*** *to make up his mind.*

The -*ing* form functions as the gerund, which is a noun-like (nominal) form which can occur as the head of a noun phrase or as the complement of a preposition:

When I was a lad, I had to milk cows by hand. Now all ***milking*** *is done by machines.*

It was a good play, with some very good ***acting****.*

Thank you ***for coming****.*

You can get back to the car park ***by going*** *up to the first floor.*

In its nominal function, the -*ing* form is frequent in noun compounds:

We need a new ***washing machine****.*

Where are my ***walking-boots****?*

The -*ing* form can also act as an adjective:

Falling *processor prices means this is a good time to buy a new computer.*

THE -*ED* FORM 232

The -*ed* form indicates the past tense:

I just ***phoned*** *your place.*

It ***looked*** *a bit big.*

··› **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

The *-ed* form functions as the *-ed* participle, which is used with auxiliary *have* and *be* to form perfect aspect and passive voice:

I've ***broken*** *my glasses.*
(perfect aspect)

I wasn't ***offended*** *by what she said.*
(passive voice)

The *-ed* form also occurs in non-finite clauses:

Encouraged *by our progress, we decided to go on.*

Whenever ***asked****, show all your documents.*

The *-ed* form is often used as an adjective:

D'you want ***fried*** *rice or plain?*

AUXILIARY VERBS 233

General 233a

Be

Auxiliary *be* is used with the *-ing* form of a lexical verb to indicate progressive aspect and with the *-ed* form of a lexical verb to indicate passive voice:

She ***was*** *work****ing*** *in Glasgow.*
(progressive aspect)

She ***was*** *rush****ed*** *to hospital last week.*
(passive voice)

Do

Auxiliary *do* is used with the base form of a lexical verb in negative, interrogative and emphatic structures, and as a substitute for a lexical verb or clause predicate:

I ***do not*** *trust people who change so abruptly.*
(negative)

Did *you see Sarah at school?*
(interrogative)

I'm a good complainer. I ***do*** *complain a lot.*
(emphatic)

A: *I cried.*
B: *Yes I* ***did*** *too.*
(substitute)

Have

Auxiliary *have* is used with the *-ed* participle to indicate perfect aspect:

We ***have looked*** *down there.*

They ***had*** *already* ***eaten*** *when we got there.*

Negative forms and auxiliary verbs 233b

Not is placed after the auxiliary verb to form the negative:

*Pupils **were not** turning up.*
(~~Pupils not were turning up.~~)

*I **have not** left the house.*

The contracted form of the negative (*n't*) is very frequent in spoken language and is also used in informal writing. In writing it is attached to the auxiliary verb, without a space:

*It **hasn't** got any particular sort of name.*

*You **weren't** here yesterday.*

*The locals **don't** mix that well with the students.*

When the contracted forms of *be* (*'m*, *'re* and *'s*) and the contracted forms of *have* (*'ve*, *'s* and *'d*) are used, *n't* is not used:

*I**'m not** doing that one.*
(~~I'mn't doing that one.~~)

*We**'ve not** abandoned you.*
(or: We haven't abandoned you.)

Interrogative forms and auxiliary verbs 233c

Interrogative structures involving auxiliary verbs consist of auxiliary + subject + lexical verb:

***Are** the children **looking** forward to it?*

***Has** she **finished** her room now?*

*What **did** your mother **do**?*
(~~What did do your mother?~~)

Auxiliary verbs also occur in corresponding question tags:

*Annabel **has** lost a lot of weight actually, **has**n't she?*

*You **know** what it's like, **do**n't you?*

Contracted forms of auxiliary verbs 233d

Auxiliary verbs have contracted forms which are widely used in spoken language and in informal writing. The contracted forms are written with an apostrophe (') and without a space. The contracted forms are:

be	*do*	*have*
*I**'m***	***d'**you (do)*	*I/we/they**'ve** (have)*
*We/you/they**'re** (are)*		*He/she/it/one**'s** (has)*
*He/she/it/one**'s** (is)*		*I/we/you/he/she/it/one/they**'d** (had)*

I think ***they're*** *starting it again.*
(they are)

She's *paying for everything.*
(she is)

Apparently ***it's*** *what* ***he's*** *wanted to do all his life.*
(it is/he has)

Do you frequently contracts to *d'you*. In very informal spoken language, *did you* may also contract to *d'you*:

D'you *normally have to book?*
(do you)

D'you *hear what's happened to Ted?*
(did you)

The interpretation of *'s* depends on what follows it. It represents *is* in the present progressive if it is followed by the *-ing* form (*she's eating* = *she is eating*), or if it is followed by an adjective or a noun (*she's lovely* = *she is lovely*; *she's a girl* = *she is a girl*). If it is followed by an *-ed* participle, it can represent *is* in the *be* passive (*she's forgiven* = *she is forgiven*) or *has* in the present perfect (*she's started* = *she has started*). It represents *has* if it is followed by *got* (*she's got* = *she has got*):

*She**'s** turn**ing** into a friend.*
(She is turning …)

*It**'s** publish**ed** by Cambridge University Press.*
(passive: It is published by …)

*He**'s left**. He left Sunday.*
(He has left.)

The contraction *'d* represents *had* if it is followed by the *-ed* participle (*I'd left* = *I had left*) or by *better* (*I'd better* = *I had better*). It represents *would* if it is followed by the base form (*I'd like* = *I would like*; *I'd have done it* = *I would have done it*), or if it is followed by *rather* or *sooner* (*I'd rather not go* = *I would rather not go*):

*I**'d** phon**ed** and he wasn't there.*
(*-ed* participle: I had phoned …)

*I**'d agree** with Jim with what he's said there.*
(base form: I would agree with Jim …)

Ellipsis and substitution with auxiliary verbs 233e

Auxiliary verbs occur in clauses with ellipsis and in substitute clauses. The contracted forms are not used:

A: *Are you looking forward to the New Year?*
B: *Oh yes. Yes, I* ***am****.*
(~~B: Oh yes. Yes, I'm.~~)

*He wondered why he'd been put where he **had**.*
(ellipsis: … where he had been put.)

*I saw her across a crowded room and thought she was really beautiful and that I must speak to her, so I **did**.*
(ellipsis: … so I did speak to her.)

*He couldn't go so I **did** instead.*
(substitution: … so I went instead.)

MODAL VERBS 234

General 234a

The core modal verbs are *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *shall*, *should*, *will*, *would* and *must*. Core modal verbs are used with the base form of a lexical verb, without *to*:

***Could I speak** to Maureen please?*
(~~Could I to speak to Maureen please?~~)

Core modal verbs are not preceded by the auxiliary verbs:

***Can you help** me, please?*
(~~Do you can help me, please?~~)

***You mustn't** put it near a naked flame.*
(~~You don't must put it near a naked flame.~~)

Modal verbs may be followed by auxiliary *be* and *have* indicating aspect and voice:

*We **could be** wait**ing** here for hours. Let's go home.*
(progressive aspect)

*I **might have** got killed.*
(perfect aspect)

*These gates **will be** lock**ed** at 8pm.*
(passive voice)

There are also semi-modal verbs such as *dare*, *need*, *ought to* and *used to* (→ 395).

Negative forms of modal verbs 234b

Not is placed after the modal verb to form the negative:

*She **could not** shut her eyes to the daylight.*

*I **would not** wish to disagree.*

The contracted negative *n't* is used in spoken language and in informal writing with *can*, *could*, *should*, *would*, *might* and *must*, and with the semi-modals *ought*, *need* and *dare*:

> *I **couldn't** believe it.*
>
> *He **shouldn't** have been irritated by them.*
>
> *I'm told I **mustn't** eat too quickly.*
>
> *She **needn't** worry if she can't get back to me.*

The contracted negative forms of *shall* and *will* are *shan't* and *won't*:

> *I **shan't** ask you again.*
>
> *My white shirt probably **won't** fit me.*

Negative forms, uncontracted and contracted, for the core modal verbs

verb	uncontracted negative	contracted negative
can	*cannot; can not*	*can't*
could	*could not*	*couldn't*
may	*may not*	*mayn't* (very rare)
might	*might not*	*mightn't*
must	*must not*	*mustn't*
will	*will not*	*'ll not; won't*
shall	*shall not*	*'ll not; shan't*
would	*would not*	*'d not; wouldn't*
should	*should not*	*shouldn't*

Interrogative forms of modal verbs 234c

Interrogative structures involving modal verbs consist of modal verb + subject + lexical verb:

> ***Will** you **be** at home Saturday morning?*
>
> ***Can** my friend **come** too?*

Auxiliary *do* is not used:

> ***Can you** tell me where the market is please?*
> (~~Do you can tell me where the market is please?~~)

Modal verbs also occur in corresponding tags:

> *They **will** make it on time, **won't** they?*
>
> *He **mustn't** shout like that, **must** he?*
>
> *He **could** win, he **could**.*

Contracted forms of modal verbs 234d

Will and *would* have contracted forms which are especially common in spoken language and informal writing. *Will* and *shall* are frequently shortened to *'ll* in declarative clauses:

*We**'ll** see what happens.*
(We will/shall see …)

⁘ **365** on 'independent' *'ll*

⁘ **377–407 Modality**

Ellipsis and substitution with modal verbs 234e

Modal verbs occur in clauses with ellipsis. The contracted forms are not used in ellipted clauses and clauses with substitute *do*:

A: *We could get a video couldn't we?*
B: *Yeah, we **could**.*

A: *So will you look after that for us?*
B: *I **will**.*
(~~I'll.~~)

A: *But it might be worth just giving that number a ring.*
B: *Yeah, I **will do**.*
(~~Yeah, I'll do.~~)

MULTI-WORD VERBS 235

General 235a

A lexical verb may combine with a particle to form a multi-word verb which behaves as a single unit of meaning. The particle may be an adverb or a preposition. In the following examples, verbs and their accompanying particles are in bold:

*This **calls for** a celebration.*
(*calls for* = demands/requires)

*They've been **turned down** once already.*
(*turned down* = refused)

*Did mum and dad **get away** all right?*
(*get away* = leave/depart)

*I think I'm going to **drop off** soon.*
(*drop off* = fall asleep)

Some multi-word verbs have two particles:

> *He never **looks down on** her for what she's doing.*
> (*looks down on* = disrespects, considers less worthy)
>
> *I don't see why I should have to **put up with** that.*
> (*put up with* = accept, tolerate)

The particle is linked closely to the lexical verb, and cannot be separated and fronted in the way it can in other structures:

> ***Off** she **ran**.*
> (verb *run* plus adverb *off*; non-fronted version: She ran off.)
>
> *Mum and dad **got away** all right.*
> (~~Away got mum and dad all right.~~)
> (multi-word verb *get away* = leave, depart)
>
> ***For** Jill I **bought** a necklace.*
> (verb *buy* plus prepositional phrase *for Jill*; non-fronted version: I bought a necklace for Jill.)
>
> *This **calls for** a celebration.*
> (~~For a celebration this calls.~~)
> (multi-word verb *call for* plus object *a celebration*; *calls for* = demands)

The most frequent verbs and the particles they combine with to form multi-word verbs

verb	example particles	verb	example particles
come	*into, off, out, up*	***make***	*for, out, up*
get	*at, away, on*	***pick***	*on, out, up*
give	*in, off, up*	***pull***	*over, through, up*
go	*into, off, on*	***put***	*across, forward, out*
hold	*against, on, to*	***run***	*into, over, up*
keep	*on, up, to*	***set***	*off, out, up*
knock	*about, down, over*	***take***	*back, off, to*
let	*off, out, up*	***turn***	*over, round, up*
look	*after, into, over*	***work***	*on, out, up*

Multi-word verbs fall into three main classes, which are described in subsequent sections:

- phrasal verbs (**235c, d, e**)
- prepositional verbs (**235f**)
- phrasal-prepositional verbs (**235g**)

Particles 235b

The most common particles which combine with lexical verbs to form multi-word verbs are shown in the table below, along with a selection of verbs (and verbs + particles) they combine with.

The most common particles and the verbs they combine with to form multi-word verbs

particle	example verbs (+particles)	particle	example verbs (+particles)
about	*go, hang, knock, mess*	***off***	*come, go, get, take*
ahead	*forge, go, keep, move*	***on***	*come, get, go, put*
around	*come, get, go, knock*	***out***	*break, come, go, put*
at	*come, get, look, play*	***over***	*come, get, go, turn*
away	*get, put, run, take*	***round***	*come, drop, go, hang*
back	*come, get, go, take*	***through***	*come, get, go, run*
down	*break, come, go, put*	***to***	*come, get on, go back, keep*
for	*care, go, look, stand*	***together***	*get, go, pull, put*
in	*come, get, go, take*	***up***	*come, open, pick, take*
into	*break, get, go, run*	***with***	*deal, do away, go, put up*

Other particles include *about*, *across*, *after*, *against*, *along*, *apart*, *aside*, *astray*, *away*, *by*, *for*, *forward(s)*, *from*, *onto*, *under*, *upon*:

> *She also* ***came across*** *as being stupid as well.*
> (*came across* = appeared)
>
> *The fridge has* ***fallen apart****.*
> (*fallen apart* = broken into pieces)
>
> *A day didn't* ***pass by*** *when I didn't know what was* ***going on****.*

Multi-word verbs are written as separate words, not as a single word or with hyphens:

> *I think I'm going to* ***drop off*** *soon.*
> (Not: I think I'm going to dropoff soon.)
> (Not: I think I'm going drop-off soon.)

Phrasal verbs 235c

Phrasal verbs consist of a lexical verb and a particle. Phrasal verbs may be intransitive or transitive (··⁘ 282). In the case of transitive phrasal verbs, the position of the object (in green in the examples below) may vary:

> *You're not going to* ***sort out*** *your problems in a month.*
> (*sort out* = solve)
>
> [to a small child reaching for a drink at table]
> *Careful, darling, don't* ***knock*** *that* ***over****!*
> (*knock it over* = make it fall)

A number of phrasal verbs are intransitive, i.e. they do not require an object:

> *The radio alarm* ***went off*** *at the same time as usual.*
> (*went off* = rang)
>
> *I waited till the noise of the train* ***died away*** *then walked home.*
> (*died away* = became inaudible)

Many verbs may be used both transitively and intransitively. There may be a difference in meaning between the transitive use and the intransitive use:

> *Oh, better* ***get back*** *to reality now I suppose!*
> (intransitive: return)
>
> *He wouldn't be able to stand losing Sonnie now. He had to* ***get*** *her* ***back****.*
> (transitive: regain her/re-possess her)
>
> *I've got to* ***set off*** *at five o'clock.*
> (intransitive: begin a journey)
>
> *As soon as he moves, he's going to* ***set*** *the alarm* ***off****.*
> (transitive: cause it to ring)

Transitive phrasal verbs 235d

Many phrasal verbs can be used with a direct object. The most frequent include:

blow up
break down
bring up
carry on
check out
close down
drink up
drop off
eat up
fill up
find out
finish off
give away
give up
hand in/out
hold up
leave out
look up
make up
phone up
put off
put on
ring up
rub out
save up
shut down
sort out
take back
take over
take up
tell off
throw away
try on
turn down
wake up
work out
write down

In most cases, the particle may come before or after the direct object (in green in the examples below) if the object is not a personal pronoun:

> *In Kent, burglars* ***blew up*** *a fireworks factory after trying to break in using oxyacetylene cutting equipment.*
> (or: ….burglars blew a fireworks factory up …)
> (*blew up* = made it explode)
>
> *We decided to* ***put*** *the meeting* ***off*** *for a couple of weeks.*
> (or: We decided to put off the meeting for a couple of weeks.)
> (*put off* = postpone)

As usual it will be left to me to ***sort*** *everything* ***out****.*
(*sort out* = organise)

But don't ***throw away*** *that fur coat yet.*
(*throw away* = dispose of)

When the direct object is a personal pronoun, the pronoun always comes before the particle:

A: *I've got a nice home.*
B: *Yes.*
A: *But I've got to almost* ***give*** *it* ***away****.*
(~~But I've got to almost give away it.~~)
(*give it away* = take no money for it)

A: ***Leave*** *me* ***out****.*
B: *What do you mean 'leave you out'?*
A: *I don't want to go.*
(~~Leave out me.~~)
(*leave out* = don't include)

They couldn't ***wake*** *her* ***up****.*
(~~They couldn't wake up her.~~)

If a pronoun object is coordinated with a full noun phrase or another pronoun, the objects may occur before or after the particle:

The noise ***woke*** *me and my wife* ***up****.*
(or: The noise woke up me and my wife.)

He didn't ***phone*** *her or me* ***up****.*
(or: He didn't phone up her or me.)

[*the OED* = the *Oxford Dictionary of English*]
I'll have to ***look up*** *that word and its derivation in the OED.*
(or: I'll have to look that word and its derivation up in the OED.)

Longer objects tend to come after the particle:

Yesterday we were just ***finishing off*** *looking at the structure and the land use of city and town.*
(~~Yesterday we were just finishing looking at the structure and the land use of city and town off.~~)

Intransitive phrasal verbs 235e

Intransitive phrasal verbs consist of a verb and a particle without an object.
Frequent phrasal verbs which are used intransitively include:

break down
carry on
drop off
eat out
get back
go off
hang on
join in
move in/out
ring off
run away
set off
wake up

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

It was a disastrous day, because the coach ***broke down****.*
(*broke down* = stopped working)

He buys all his own food and he very rarely ***eats out****.*
(*eats out* = eats at a restaurant)

Hang on*. Let me write all this down.*
(*hang on* = wait)

A: *We have to* ***set off*** *at the crack of dawn.*
B: *That's gonna be fun!*
(*set off* = leave, start the journey)

Prepositional verbs 235f

Prepositional verbs consist of a verb and a preposition which are closely syntactically linked with each other. As with other multi-word verbs, fronting of the prepositional complement is not normally possible:

I don't ***approve of*** *his views on war and military things.*
(~~Of his views on war and military things I don't approve.~~)

Prepositional verbs follow different rules from phrasal verbs. The direct object (in green in the examples below) must follow the preposition, even if it is a pronoun:

I couldn't sell my car. I just couldn't ***do without*** *it.*
(~~… I just couldn't do it without.~~)
(*couldn't do without* = need/have to have)

Frequent prepositional verbs include:

approve of
break into
call on
care for
check into
come across
come upon
cope with
deal with
depend on
do without
get into
get on
get off
get over
go into
lead to
listen to
look after
look at
look for

Common prepositions and some verbs which combine with them to form prepositional verbs

preposition	verbs	preposition	verbs
across	*come, cut, run, stumble*	*of*	*become, consist, despair, hear*
after	*ask, inquire, look, take*	*off*	*feed, get, give, go*
at	*get, glance, laugh, look*	*on*	*bet, depend, lean*
for	*ask, care, go, live*	*to*	*amount, belong, keep, object*
into	*break, bump, delve, launch*	*with*	*agree, break, deal, go*

Because loads of people ***break into*** *cars, does that make it right?*
(~~Because loads of people break cars into, does that make it right?~~)
(*break into* = enter by using force)

You said you'd already ***come across*** *that sort of stuff in the library.*
(*come across* = found)

He says it's the pills that's doing it. 'But I can't ***do without*** *them,' he says.*
(*can't do without* = must have)

I managed to ***look after*** *everybody for a day and a half.*
(*look after* = take care of)

Some prepositional verbs allow an adverb or discourse marker to be used between the verb and the preposition:

It ***depends*** *entirely* ***on*** *what's going on at the time.*

I ***agree****, I think,* ***with*** *most of his reasons.*

Verbs in this category include:

agree with
apologise for
approve of
ask for
belong to
bet on
break with
care for
check into
consist of
cope with
deal with
depend on
disagree with
glance at
go with
keep to
laugh at
lead to
lean on
live for
look at
look for
object to

Some prepositional verbs take a direct object after the verb as well as an object of the preposition. These include:

associate … with
bombard … with
confine … to
deprive … of
protect … from
provide … with
remind … of
rob … of
thank … for

You don't ***bombard*** *them* ***with*** *new stuff.*

Local white rulers enforced racial segregation by 'Jim Crow laws' to ***deprive*** *black people* ***of*** *civil rights.*

Just ***remind*** *me* ***of*** *your surname again.*

Phrasal-prepositional verbs 235g

Phrasal-prepositional verbs consist of an adverb particle and a preposition. Common phrasal-prepositional verbs include:

- *catch up on*
- *catch up with*
- *come up against*
- *do away with*
- *face up to*
- *get away with*
- *get along with*
- *get on with*
- *listen out for*
- *look forward to*
- *look down on*
- *look in on*
- *look out for*
- *look up to*
- *put up with*
- *watch out for*

These verbs normally occur in informal contexts:

*I'll **catch up with** you in a minute.*
(*catch up with* = reach, join)

*Let her **get on with** it.*
(*get on with* = continue doing)

*I'm **looking forward to** the weekend.*
(*looking forward to* = anticipating with pleasure)

*You have to **watch out for** the things coming along behind that you can't see.*

A small number of such verbs also take a direct object after the verb as well as an object of the preposition. These include:

- *fix … up with*
- *fob … off with*
- *let … in on*
- *put … down to*
- *put … up to*
- *take … out on*

*She's going to try and **fix** me **up with** a bit of part-time work.*
(*fix me up with* = arrange for me)

*Do you **put** that **down to** luck or judgement?*
(*put down to* = think the cause or reason is)

*He was just **taking** his frustration **out on** me, shouting at me and stuff.*
(*taking … out on me* = causing me to suffer)

Adjectives and adjective phrases

Adjectives 236
  - Introduction 236a
  - Suffixes and prefixes 236b
  - Comparative and superlative inflections 236c
  - *-ing* and *-ed* form adjectives 236d

Meanings of adjectives 237
  - Types of meaning 237a
  - Oppositeness (antonymy) and gradability 237b

Adjective phrases 238
  - Structure of adjective phrases 238a
  - Premodification and postmodification of adjectives 238b
  - Premodification and gradability 238c
  - Gradable opposites (antonyms) 238d
  - Cross-classification of gradable and non-gradable adjectives 238e
  - Implicit superlatives (*filthy*, *starving*) 238f
  - Fixed modifiers (*bone dry*, *as dry as a bone*) 238g

The functions of adjective phrases 239
  - General 239a
  - Adjectives modifying nouns (attributive function) 239b

Restrictions on the functions of adjectives 240
  - Adjectives restricted to noun phrases (attributive-only) 240a
  - Adjectives restricted to copular complement (predicative-only) 240b
  - Different attributive and predicative meanings 240c
  - Complex attributive adjective phrases 240d

Order of attributive adjective phrases 241

Adjectives and adjective phrases

ADJECTIVES 236

Introduction 236a

Adjectives are the third major open word class in English. They describe the features of persons or things denoted by nouns or pronouns (⁘ **237** below):

It's a ***nice*** *room.*

The service was ***awful****.*

Her father is ***German****.*

She's ***beautiful****.*

Adjectives cannot be automatically identified by their form, although certain suffixes typically occur with adjectives (⁘ **236b** below). Many common, everyday adjectives have no form which identifies them as such (e.g. *good*, *nice*, *old*, *wet*). Adjectives are identified most typically by their functions in a sentence.

Suffixes and prefixes 236b

Some suffixes occur typically or exclusively with adjectives.

Suffixes that occur with adjectives

suffix	examples
-able,-ible	*acceptable, usable, inedible*
-al,-ial	*normal, comical, radial*
-ed	*timbered, aged*
-ful	*masterful, wishful*
-ic	*frantic, heroic*
-ical	*hysterical, political*
-ish	*amateurish, childish*
-ive, -ative	*active, attractive, talkative*
-less	*endless, priceless*
-eous, -ious, -ous	*erroneous, anxious, famous*
-y	*angry, busy, windy, wealthy*

As can be seen from the table, adjectives may be derived from nouns (*hero–heroic*, *wind–windy*) or verbs (*accept–acceptable*, *attract–attractive*) by the addition of suffixes.

The prefix *a-* also identifies certain adjectives (e.g. *awake*, *alive*, *ablaze*).

⁘ also **258–268 Word structure and word formation**

Comparative and superlative inflections 236c

Many one-syllable adjectives, and two-syllable adjectives ending in an unstressed syllable, have inflections to show the comparative and superlative.

Adjectives that inflect

base form	comparative	superlative
fine	*finer*	*finest*
small	*smaller*	*smallest*
young	*younger*	*youngest*
funny	*funnier*	*funniest*
gentle	*gentler*	*gentlest*

However, two-syllable adjectives ending in a stressed syllable and longer adjectives do not inflect. Comparatives and superlatives are formed using *more* and *most* (→ **462** and **463**).

Adjectives that do not inflect

base form	comparative	superlative
correct	*more correct ~~correcter~~*	*most correct ~~correctest~~*
memorable	*more memorable ~~memorabler~~*	*most memorable ~~memorablest~~*

→ **460–471 Comparison**

-ing and *-ed* form adjectives 236d

The *-ing* and *-ed* forms of verbs may also function as adjectives:

> [cooking instructions on food packet]
> *Just add* ***boiling*** *water.*
>
> *They only want to travel to* ***English-speaking*** *countries.*
>
> *It's not* ***smoked*** *salmon, it's* ***smoked*** *trout.*
>
> *Even supermarkets now sell* ***home-made*** *jams.*

MEANINGS OF ADJECTIVES 237

Types of meaning 237a

Adjectives describe features and qualities of entities (people, animals and things) denoted by nouns or pronouns.

- Some adjectives denote characteristic or inherent properties and qualities which are long-lasting or permanent: *tall*, *heavy*, *old*, *good*, *rough*, *true*, *ugly*, *red*.
- Some adjectives express transient states and conditions: *hungry*, *cold*, *absent*, *ill*, *dry*, *full*, *lonely*.
- Some adjectives denote relations between entities. These are among the adjectives that require complements (→ **238a** below): *fond (of)*, *similar (to)*, *aware (of)*, *keen (on/to)*, *far (from)*.

- Some adjectives describe entities in terms of their actions: *generous*, *cruel*, *talkative*, *polite*, *cooperative*.
- Some adjectives classify entities into types: *wooden (spoon)*, *Swedish (film)*, *departmental (meeting)*, *detached (house)*, *organic (vegetables)*, *impressionist (painter)*, *wild (salmon)*.

Oppositeness (antonymy) and gradability 237b

Most common adjectives (except the classifying type in **237a** above) are members of a pair of opposites (antonyms). For example:

tall–short; heavy–light; good–bad; dry–wet; dead–alive; absent–present

Many of these are also gradable, i.e. one can differentiate between different degrees of the same property along a scale (→ **238c** and **238d** below):

*He's **quite tall** for his age, isn't he?*

*Your hair's going to be **very wet**.*

ADJECTIVE PHRASES 238

Structure of adjective phrases 238a

Just as nouns and verbs function as the heads of noun phrases and verb phrases, adjectives function as the head of adjective phrases. An adjective phrase consists minimally of an adjective acting as head. The head may be accompanied by modifiers (pre- and post-head) and complements (post-head).

→ **the tables at 169d** and **214b** for comparison with noun phrases and verb phrases

The structure of adjective phrases (adjective phrases are in green; adjective heads are in bold)

example	structure
*She has a **lovely** apartment.*	head only
*It's a rather **unfortunate** name, isn't it?*	premodifier + head
*Shall we see if that's **big** enough?*	head + postmodifier
*She's **advanced** for her age.*	head + postmodifier
*Are you **willing** to volunteer?*	head + complement
*He was very **keen** on sport and nature.*	premodifier + head + complement
*I'm not really **sure** that I can advise you.*	premodifier + head + complement

Some adjective phrases have more complex structures than those in the table. In particular, there are phrases which are split into two parts (discontinuous adjective phrases). These are dealt with in **240d** below.

Premodification and postmodification of adjectives 238b

The most typical premodifiers of adjectives (in green) are adverb phrases expressing degree (bold):

*I was **pretty** upset at the time.*

*That's an **extremely** good camera.*

*I think my jeans are **a bit** damp.*

The major exception is the degree adverb *enough*, which is a postmodifier:

> *It's not long **enough**.*
> (~~It's not enough long.~~)

Adverbs other than adverbs of degree may also premodify adjectives:

> *The house was **unusually** silent that day.*
>
> *It was **wonderfully** peaceful at Gelli.*
>
> *I don't know how **seriously** ill they are.*

Premodification and gradability 238c

Most everyday adjectives are gradable, i.e. they denote qualities, properties, states, conditions, relations, etc. which vary in their degree or extent.

Gradable adjectives can be premodified by degree expressions (usually adverb phrases) which specify different degrees of the feature in question.

Premodification of gradable adjectives

example	comments
*He's **very** tall.* *He's **fairly** tall.*	
*He's **this** tall.*	*This tall* would be typically spoken with a gesture indicating a specific height.
*I didn't realise he was **that** tall.*	*That tall* might refer to a statement made by someone about someone's height or to the moment of seeing someone very tall.
*He is over **two metres** tall.*	*Over two metres* is a noun phrase. Certain adjectives expressing numerically measurable properties may be modified by such noun phrases: *She is **ten years** old; The wood is **two centimetres** thick; You're **ten minutes** late.* A–Z 80 ***Worth, worthwhile***
*He is **so** tall **that he can touch the ceiling**.* *He is **too** tall **to drive**.*	Some degree adverbs (*so*, *too*, *as*) need a complement (underlined) to complete their meaning. The complement may be a clause or a phrase; it occurs after the head adjective. The structure is discontinuous (split into two parts, one part pre-head, the other post-head).
*He is **as** tall **as his father**.* *He is tall**er than his sister**.*	The comparative with *as* … *as* and the suffix *-er* have the same function of specifying degree as the various premodifiers. The structure with *as* is discontinuous.
***How** tall is he?* ***How** tall he is!*	Interrogative *how* is used to ask questions or to utter exclamations about degree, but with an important difference in word order.

Non-gradable adjectives cannot normally be premodified in these ways. Non-gradable adjectives include: *automatic*; *dead/alive*; *female/male*; *Irish/Brazilian/Thai*/etc.; *married/unmarried/single*:

> *This cat is male.*
> (~~This cat is more male than that one.~~)
>
> *This plant is dead.*
> (~~This plant is rather dead.~~)

Gradable opposites (antonyms) 238d

Open-ended

The most common gradable adjectives occur as pairs of antonyms that denote the upper and lower parts of an open-ended scale:

← ***tall*** ——— ***short*** →

← ***hot*** ——— ***cold*** →

There are no maximum and minimum points on such a scale. Therefore, adjectives of this kind may not be premodified by degree adverbs indicating totality, such as *completely*, *absolutely*, *entirely*, *utterly*, *totally*, *wholly*:

> *It's going to be an **extremely small** stadium.*
> (~~It's going to be a totally small stadium.~~)
>
> *I think it's a **very beautiful** statue.*
> (~~I think it's a completely beautiful statue.~~)

→ **238e** below for how adjectives may be cross-classified, however

Maximum and minimum

Some other gradable adjectives can denote properties on scales which have a maximum and/or minimum (zero) value:

full ←———→ ***empty***

possible ←———→ ***impossible***

Such adjectives can be premodified using degree adverbs like *absolutely*, *completely*, *entirely*, *totally, utterly* and other synonyms:

> *It was **absolutely full** with families with kids.*
>
> *He is **completely blind**, you know.*
>
> *So it's **utterly impossible**, isn't it?*

Other degree adverbs which can premodify gradable adjectives of this second type include *almost*, *barely*, *half*, *scarcely*:

> [talking about the colour of water coming out of a tap]
> *When it comes out it looks **almost white**, you know.*
>
> *I realised I was **half-naked** and fumbled with the buttons of my pyjama jacket.*

Quite

The degree adverb *quite* means 'fairly', 'to some extent' when it premodifies gradable adjectives which occur on open-ended scales, but means 'absolutely' when it premodifies gradable adjectives which occur on a scale which has a maximum and/or minimum (zero) value:

> *She's **quite tall** for her age, isn't she?*
> (fairly)
>
> *You were **quite right** to refuse to pay.*
> (absolutely)

A–Z 66 *Quite*

Cross-classification of gradable and non-gradable adjectives 238e

Although adjectives can generally be classified as gradable or non-gradable, they can be used (often with a shift in meaning or connotation) as if they were members of the other class. For example, if an adjective normally classified as non-gradable is premodified as if it were gradable, it is usually interpreted non-literally:

> *They were all being **very Scottish**.*
> (probably interpreted as 'behaving in an exaggeratedly or stereotypically Scottish manner')

Similarly, gradable adjectives can be treated as if they were non-gradable and premodified by items associated with non-gradable meanings:

> *The weather was **absolutely beautiful**.*
> (i.e. it was beautiful to the highest possible degree)
>
> *That suggestion is **totally stupid**.*

Implicit superlatives (*filthy*, *starving*) 238f

Often, to express an extreme or maximum degree of a property (e.g. *dirty*), an implicit superlative adjective (e.g. *filthy*) is used instead of a more neutral adjective. Such adjectives are often used for special effect or exaggeration, or in intensified responses, and are often premodified by *absolutely*.

Examples of implicit superlatives

more neutral adjective	implicit superlative
*I'm **very hungry**.*	*I'm **starving/ravenous**.*
*I'm **very cold**.*	*I'm **(absolutely) frozen**.*
*His room **is very small**.*	*His room is **tiny/minute**.*
*Their house **is very big**.*	*Their house is **(absolutely) enormous/huge/vast**.*
*We got **very wet**.*	*We got **soaked/drenched**.*
*It was **very hot** in Nevada.*	*It was **(absolutely) boiling/scorching** in Nevada.*
*The kitchen was **very dirty**.*	*The kitchen was **(absolutely) filthy**.*

The use of such implicit superlatives in responses is an important way of showing agreement in conversations:

A: *Oh it's fantastic.*
B: *It sounds **absolutely amazing**.*

[tasting food]
A: *Is it all right?*
B: *Lovely.*
C: *Yes, it's **absolutely delicious**.*

Fixed modifiers (*bone dry, as dry as a bone*) 238g

Modifier + adjective collocations (*bone dry*)

There are a large number of idiomatic expressions for indicating maximum degree which consist of fixed modifier + adjective collocations. These are very common in informal spoken language. They include:

bone dry
brand new
fast asleep/sound asleep
pitch black/pitch dark
pure white
rock hard
soaking wet/sopping wet
stark naked
stone deaf
wide awake

*Her throat was **bone dry**.*

*Very soon he was **fast asleep**.*

*The flat was **pitch dark**, with all the blinds shut, blocking out the street-lights and the moon.*

Comparative expressions (*as dry as a bone*)

Similarly, there are a number of idiomatic comparative expressions, which include:

as blind as a bat
as deaf as a post
as dry as a bone
as heavy as lead
as white as snow/as white as a sheet

*You desperately fight to stay on your feet, but you feel weak and dizzy from your ordeal, and your legs are **as heavy as lead**.*

*They were clutching each other in shock, and the woman particularly was **as white as a sheet**.*

In informal spoken language, the first *as* is often omitted in these constructions:

*She went **white as a sheet** when they told her.*

THE FUNCTIONS OF ADJECTIVE PHRASES 239

General 239a

Noun modifiers and copular complement

Adjective phrases have two main functions within larger structures: they modify nouns (attributive function) and they complement copular verbs (predicative function).

Adjective phrases in the attributive function (bold) modify nouns (in green), normally as premodifiers:

*Only **rich** people can afford a flat in **central** London.*

*Enjoy the **smooth**, **silky** taste of **Creamery** butter.*

An adjective phrase has a predicative function when it occurs in a clause as the complement (bold) of a copular verb (in green) such as *appear*, *be*, *become*, *feel*, *get*, *look*, *remain*, *seem*, *smell*, *sound*, *taste*:

*They were always **popular** with the rest of the team.*

*The daily rates for the hotel seem **a bit high**, don't they?*

*That chicken tastes **very odd**.*

Object complements

Adjective phrases (bold) may also occur as object (in green) complements:

*I made him **nervous** before the interview. I suppose he wanted the job too much.*

*We've made the room **tidy** so they can move in when they like.*

Adjectives modifying nouns (attributive function) 239b

An adjective phrase (bold) has an attributive function when it occurs as a modifier in a noun phrase (in green):

*She had a **huge** suitcase.*

*It really is an **incredibly beautiful** place.*

*Students **keen to get the best degree** will pay to go to more expensive colleges.*

Position of adjective

Most typically, an attributive adjective phrase occurs as a premodifier in the noun phrase, coming between any determiners and the head noun:

determiner adjective phrase head
*And so you're not sure what | the | **really important** | things are.*

*Elsie's got her **best** hat on.*

If the head of the noun phrase is one of the pronouns *someone*, *somebody*, *something*, *somewhere*; *no one*, *nobody*, *nothing*, *nowhere*; *anyone*, *anybody*, *anything*, *anywhere*; *everyone*, *everybody*, *everything*, *everywhere*, the attributive adjective phrase occurs as a postmodifier:

> *There's nothing* ***good*** *about being poor.*
>
> *There wasn't really anyone* ***famous*** *at Lordsborough [University].*
>
> *There's something* ***definitely wrong*** *here.*

Position of adjective and complement

If an attributive adjective has a complement, the whole adjective phrase or just its complement must follow the head noun.

Examples of attributive adjectives with complements

example	type
Are they a ***similar*** *age?*	adjective with no complement
Hardin reached under the counter and brought out a badge ***similar to the one he was already wearing on his waistcoat****.*	adjective and complement both after the noun head
A: *So how do you see yourselves in twenty years' time?* B: *I would imagine very much in a* ***similar*** *position* ***to my mum and dad now****.*	adjective before the noun head; complement after the noun head

> *Helsinki has a character* ***quite different from the Scandinavian capitals****.*
>
> *You can buy a computer system* ***good enough for most tasks*** *for less than £500.*
>
> *It's a* ***very different*** *room* ***from the old one****.*
>
> *I haven't got a* ***good enough*** *voice* ***to sing it****.*

For a number of adjectives, the whole adjective phrase must follow the noun when a complement of the adjective is used. These include *closed*, *eager*, *full*, *happy*, *keen*, *open*, *ready*, *responsible*, *(un)willing*, *worth*:

> *Fans* ***keen to get their hands on the new book*** *had queued all night.*
> (~~Keen fans to get their hands on the new book …~~)
>
> *Events* ***open to the public*** *are listed overleaf.*
>
> *By the time we got there, the person* ***responsible for giving refunds*** *had gone home.*
>
> *It's a film* ***worth seeing****.*

Some fixed expressions include postmodifying adjectives, for example *chairperson designate*, *court martial*, *President Elect*.

RESTRICTIONS ON THE FUNCTIONS OF ADJECTIVES 240

Adjectives restricted to noun phrases (attributive-only) 240a

Adjectives in the following meaning categories occur only in noun phrases (the attributive function):

- Degree (intensifiers and downtoners), such as: *absolute*, *complete*, *mere*, *perfect*, *proper*, *pure*, *real*, *sheer*, *true*, *utter*, *veritable*:

  *It was **pure** nonsense.*
  (~~The nonsense was pure.~~)

  *This is **sheer** heaven.*

→ 240c

- Temporal ordering, such as: *former*, *latter*, *present*, *future*, *old* (meaning 'of many years' standing', e.g. *an old friend*), *early* (meaning 'of the initial period in the history of something', e.g. *early English literature*), *late* (meaning 'died recently', e.g. *the late Mrs Thompson*):

  *In 1816 he married Charlotte, daughter of the **future** George IV of England, and lived in England after her death in 1817.*

  *The only permanent display is the **late** actor William Holden's collection of Asian and African art.*
  (*late* = recently deceased/dead)

- Restrictive adjectives, such as: *certain, chief, main, major, only, particular, principal, sole, very*:

  *You know, the **main** reason for being in business at all is profit and that's what you ought to be judging.*

  *He published **major** works on logic and political theory.*

Adjectives restricted to copular complement (predicative-only) 240b

Some adjectives can be used only as a complement to copular verbs (the predicative function), and not attributively. The majority of these are adjectives with the prefix *a*-, and include: *ablaze*, *afloat*, *alive*, *asleep*, *awake*, *awash*:

> *The building was **ablaze**, and we were trapped.*
> (~~It was an ablaze building, …~~)
>
> *I was **asleep** in bed when she came to tell me.*

Other adjectives that usually occur predicatively are *well* (and *unwell*), and *ill*, referring to states of health:

> *His younger brother was **ill**.*
>
> A: *You're looking **well**.*
> B: *And you are.*

Very rarely *well* and *ill* may occur attributively with non-specific nouns such as *man*, *woman*, *child*, *patient*, etc., and *health* may occur with *ill*:

> *Dad hadn't been a **well** man for years.*
>
> *Whatever feelings a wife may have, she must not add to her **ill** husband's problems.*
>
> *Two **critically ill** patients were admitted by the hospital late last night.*
>
> *He retired because of **ill** health.*

Adjectives with similar meanings can be substituted in the attributive function for some of the predicative-only adjectives. For example, *live* can substitute for *alive*; *lone* can substitute for *alone*; *sick* can substitute for *ill* and *unwell*; *sleeping* can substitute for *asleep*:

> *It's better for digestion if the yoghurts are made with **live** cultures.*
> (~~alive~~)
>
> *It's very much a book for the **lone** traveller.*
> (~~alone~~)
>
> *Her **sick** child keeps stopping her from working.*
> (~~ill~~)
>
> [proverb]
> *Let **sleeping** dogs lie.*
> (~~asleep~~)

Different attributive and predicative meanings 240c

Some of the adjectives used attributively in 240a above have a different meaning when used in the predicative function:

> *It's **sheer** chaos.*
> (intensifier meaning: attributive only)
>
> *Care is needed on some of the stretches of path because the cliffs are **sheer**.*
> (very steep/vertical; may be used attributively or, as here, predicatively)
>
> *… the **late** actor William Holden …*
> (deceased/dead; attributive only)
>
> *The train was **late** again.*
> (behind schedule; may be used attributively or, as here, predicatively)
>
> *Of course there's going to be a **certain** amount of risk involved, but you've got to trust me on this.*
> (particular but not specified; attributive only)
>
> *I'm not **absolutely certain**, but I think it's very unlikely.*
> (sure/definite; normally predicative only)

Complex attributive adjective phrases 240d

When degree modifiers are used in attributive adjective phrases, their position varies. Different degree modifiers require different positions for the adjective phrase in relation to the indefinite article.

Positions of indefinite article and degree modifiers

example	comments
a/an ***very/fairly/moderately/extremely tall*** *man*	typical position: indefinite article + intensifier + adjective
	quite and *rather* are special cases
	for *quite*:
quite *a* ***tall*** *man*	most frequent position: intensifier + indefinite article + adjective
a ***quite tall*** *man*	less frequent position: indefinite article + intensifier + adjective
	for *rather*:
a ***rather tall*** *man*	most frequent position: indefinite article + intensifier + adjective
rather *a* ***tall*** *man*	less frequent position: intensifier + indefinite article + adjective A-Z 66 ***Quite***; 67 ***Rather***
as/so tall *a man* ***as him***	*as/so* + adjective + indefinite article + noun + complement
a man ***as/so tall as him***	indefinite article + noun + *as/so* + adjective + complement (less frequent in writing but more frequent in informal speech)
a man ***this/that tall***	indefinite article + noun + *this/that* + adjective
this/that tall *a man*	*this/that* + adjective + indefinite article + noun (less frequent)
How tall a man *is he?* *I don't know* ***how tall a man*** *he is.*	*how* + adjective + indefinite article + noun

We kept in touch for ***quite a long time****.*

He seemed ***a rather childish, impetuous fellow****.*

But this is not ***as big a problem as it might first appear****.*

He was willing enough, but my sister was good and virtuous, and hated his brother with ***a hatred as strong as mine****.*

It's not ***that big a place****.*

ORDER OF ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE PHRASES 241

Lists of adjectives

When a noun phrase is premodified by more than one adjective, there is a preferred order for the adjectives. For example, colour normally precedes material:

> *A **yellow plastic** container was found at the scene of the crime.*
> (~~A plastic yellow container was found …~~)

Shape normally precedes material and material normally precedes purpose:

> *You need one of those **round**, **wooden**, **bathing** tubs.*

References to place or origin usually come after colour or shape and before material:

> *You need one of those **round**, **Swedish**, **wooden**, **bathing** tubs.*
> (~~You need one of those bathing, Swedish, wooden, round tubs.~~)

Evaluative adjectives which describe opinions or attitudes often come before more neutrally descriptive ones:

> *She's a **remarkable old** woman. She's just got such a **fantastic**, **long** memory.*
> (~~She's an old remarkable woman. She's just got such a long fantastic memory.~~)

The most neutral sequence of adjective types may be summarised as:

(determiner)
↓
evaluation (e)
size (s)
physical quality (q)
shape (sh)
age (ag)
colour (c)
participle (pa)
origin (o)
material (m)
type (t)
purpose (p)
head noun

An example including a number of these types would be:

> **(e) (s) (q) (ag) (c) (o) (p)**
> *These **wonderful**, **monumental**, **strong**, **old**, **grey**, **Indian**, **log-carrying** elephants of Northern Thailand …*
> (an invented example to illustrate the possibilities)

A noun phrase which included all these types would be extremely rare.

Examples of multiple attributive adjectives involving *beautiful*:

(**e**) (**sh**)

*You can also sit in the **beautiful semicircular** courthouse and listen to the trial of a farmer accused of fraud.*

It was designed by Bror Marklund and the whole hall unbelievably won the

(**e**) (**o**) (**p**)

*1964 award for the **most beautiful Swedish public** building.*

(**e**) (**pa**)

*… the **beautiful walled** city of Avila, birthplace of Saint Teresa; …*

(**e**) (**s**) (**ag**)

*It was a **beautiful little old** church.*

(**e**) (**c**) (**pa**)

*Where was that **just most beautiful black-and-white timbered** house?*

Adjectives joined by *and*

Some lists of adjectives are joined by *and*. When a list of adjectives occurs predicatively, the penultimate and final adjectives are normally joined by *and*:

*It was **wet**, **wild and windy**. How can anyone forget a night like that?*

And occurs less commonly when the list of adjectives is in an attributive position:

*A **tall**, **dark**, **mysterious** stranger entered the room.*

And can occur when two or more adjectives of the same category are used, or when the adjectives refer to different parts of the same thing:

*He drives a **red and black** Ferrari.*

Adverbs and adverb phrases

Introduction 242
Adverb phrases 243
Types of meaning 244
Adverbs modifying phrases 245
  Types of modification 245a
  Degree adverbs and focusing adverbs 245b
  Evaluative adverbs 245c
Evaluative, viewpoint and linking (disjunct and conjunct) adverbs 246
Copular verbs (*be, seem*) and complementation 247
Adverbs used as short responses 248
Adverbs and discourse markers 249

Adverbs and adverb phrases

INTRODUCTION 242

Adverbs, the fourth major open word class, have strong affinities with adjectives. Many adverbs are derived from adjectives, mostly by adding the suffix *-ly*. (··> **162 Adverbs** for a full description of the construction of adverbs.)

adjective	adverb
nice	*nicely*
beautiful	*beautifully*
fond	*fondly*
slow	*slowly*

Most adverbs, like most adjectives, are gradable: they can be modified by other (degree) adverbs, including comparative forms, to form adverb phrases which are very similar in their structural characteristics to adjective phrases:

> *She sings **really beautifully**.*
> (compare: She has a really beautiful voice.)
>
> *He played **more skilfully** this time.*
> (compare: He was more skilful this time.)

Adverb phrases most typically function as adjuncts in the clause structure, but may also occur as complements:

> *I ate my dinner **very slowly**.*
> (adjunct)
>
> *Could you put it **just there** please?*
> (complement, required by *put*)
>
> *Your sister's **here**.*
> (complement of *be*)

However, adverb phrases differ from adjective phrases in their function. Adjective phrases most typically modify noun phrases (or are used in the predicate of the clause to state a quality of a noun phrase). Adverb phrases typically modify verb phrases, adjectives and other adverbs. Some adverbs modify whole clauses or sentences:

> *I think a doctor or a nurse should be a **careful** person, and she isn't.*
> (adjective: modifying the noun *person*)
>
> *I was always very **careful** not to offend them.*
> (adjective: predicative, describing the subject *I*)

*They walked **carefully** along the edge of the canal.*
(adverb: modifying the verb phrase; answers the question '*How* did they walk?')
(~~They walked careful along the edge of the canal.~~)

✪ Adjectives cannot modify verbs:

She spoke angrily.
(~~She spoke angry.~~)

Here are some examples of how adverbs modify different items:

*Talk **properly**!*
(modifying a verb – *talk*)

*An **extremely** tall man came round the corner.*
(modifying an adjective – *tall*)

*The business in Holland went **remarkably** smoothly.*
(modifying another adverb – *smoothly*)

***Only** someone very stupid would say that.*
(modifying a noun phrase – *someone very stupid*)

*We've got our silver wedding **soon**, so we're planning a few days away.*
(modifying the whole clause)

***Frankly**, when he smiles, it terrifies me.*
(modifying the whole sentence)

Adverbs do not normally have inflected forms, but a few, most of which are identical in form to adjectives, inflect for comparison (e.g. *far*, *fast*, *hard*, *high*, *long*, *low*):

*We haven't got very **far** with that yet.*

*That's probably the area where they've gone **furthest**.*

*But the happy life did not last **long**.*

*You know, she'd be quite happy to stay **longer**.*

465 Comparative and superlative adverbs

ADVERB PHRASES 243

Adverbs function as the head of adverb phrases.

An adverb may function alone as the head of the adverb phrase or it may have dependents of various kinds.

In general, these dependents are similar in type to those found in adjective phrases – partly because most adverbs are related to adjectives and partly because many adverbs, like many adjectives, are gradable.

Examples of simple adverb phrases (head only) and complex adverb phrases (head + dependents) are given in the table below.

Simple and complex adverb phrases (adverb phrases are in green, adverb heads are in bold)

example	dependents
*You **rarely** get a full break.*	head only
***Personally** I'm not fond of ice cream.*	head only
*The six weeks went by very **quickly**.*	premodifier + head
*Dr Smith wrote back fairly **promptly**.*	premodifier + head
*It's amazing how **quickly** you get used to it.*	premodifier + head
*But **luckily** enough, neighbours did see them and called the police.*	head + postmodifier
*He plays really **well** for a beginner.*	premodifier + head + postmodifier
***Unfortunately** for me, I started to get ill.*	head + complement
*Its body seems to move almost **independently** of the head.*	premodifier + head + complement

Occasionally, the structure may be more complex:

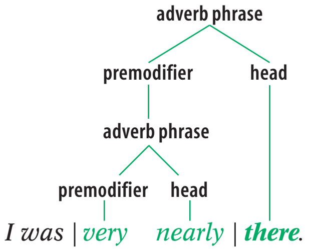

The structure of the adverb phrase may also be discontinuous, i.e. it may consist of a structure which commences before the adverb and is completed after it:

*I think he put it more **succinctly** than that.*
(*than that* is the complement of *more*)

*Nuclear power stations produce electricity much more **cheaply** than other types of power station.*

TYPES OF MEANING 244

There are a number of different types of meaning adverb phrases can have. The important general types are shown in the table below.

Main types of meaning of adverb phrases

type	function	example
manner	refers to how something happens	*Those flowers grow* ***quickly****, don't they?* *The vicar spoke* ***very nicely****.*
place	refers to where something happens	*Many* ***locally*** *owned bookshops are cutting prices.* *Sign* ***here*** *please.*
time	refers to when something happens	*Her father died* ***recently****.* *He came in* ***very early****.*
duration	refers to length of time over which something happens	*No, I'm not staying there* ***permanently****.*
frequency	refers to how often something happens	*I* ***often*** *go and see them.*
degree	refers to how much, to what degree something happens	*I was* ***greatly*** *relieved when we were finally rid of her.*
focusing	focuses on or specifies an entity	Waiter: *What about you, sir?* Customer: ***Just*** *ice cream please.*
modal	expresses degrees of truth, possibility, necessity, etc.	*She* ***most probably*** *thinks I'm joking.*
evaluative	judges or comments on the event, gives the speaker's opinion	*I* ***stupidly*** *forgot to mention the meeting to him.*
viewpoint	expresses the perspective or standpoint from which the speaker sees things	*I* ***personally*** *don't think you would hate it, Elaine.*
linking	links and relates clauses and sentences to one another	*She wanted to study but there wasn't any provision.* ***However****, her younger sisters are now studying.*

⋯ **326b** and **326c** on the order of adverbs

ADVERBS MODIFYING PHRASES 245

Types of modification 245a

The following types of modification are common. (Adverb phrases are in bold, modified phrases are in green.)

- Adverb phrase modifying verb phrase:

  He's played ***extremely well****.*

  She blushed ***furiously****.*

- Adverb phrase modifying adjective phrase:

  *It was **perfectly** acceptable.*

  *Her heartbeat was **very slightly** erratic.*

- Adverb phrase modifying adverb phrase:

  *She'd worked **extremely** hard.*

  *It seems to affect different people **completely** differently.*

- Adverb phrase modifying noun phrase:

  *It's a chapel but it's **almost** a cave.*

  *It takes **quite** a dose to reach fatal levels.*

- Adverb phrase modifying prepositional phrase:

  *It's really **right** out in the country.*

  *The situation was **completely** out of control.*

Degree adverbs and focusing adverbs 245b

Degree adverbs and focusing adverbs are the most common type of adverb modifiers of phrases. These include (adverbs in bold, modified phrases in green):

Degree

absolutely
a (little) bit
almost
awfully
completely
doubly
enough
entirely
extremely
fairly
highly
a lot
lots
perfectly
pretty
quite
rather
remarkably
slightly
somewhat
terribly
too
totally
utterly
very

*I wouldn't mind living **a bit** longer.*

*Oh that will make it **doubly** attractive won't it?*

*The food was **pretty** awful actually.*

***Quite** obviously they don't want to push anything under the carpet.*

*They don't normally have three together so it seemed **rather** strange.*

*He's going to be **terribly** upset.*

*His sister is **totally** different from his brother.*

Focusing

especially
generally
just
largely
only
particularly
simply

*They'd be upset, **especially** my father, if I didn't try.*

*I just feel **generally** fed up.*

Evaluative adverbs 245c

Evaluative adverbs are also used to modify phrases:

*But something has gone **oddly** wrong in the meantime.*

*The family, two brothers and a sister, lived **curiously** isolated.*

EVALUATIVE, VIEWPOINT AND LINKING (DISJUNCT AND CONJUNCT) ADVERBS 246

Often adverbs are fully integrated in the clause (⇢ **244** above, the examples of manner, place and time adverbs). However, adverbs may be less integrated in the clause structure and may modify the whole sentence or utterance. Evaluative and viewpoint adverbs often function in this way. Adverbs of this type are referred to as disjunct adverbs:

*What was more, **oddly**, he seemed to have bought enough for two.*
(evaluative)

***Personally**, I think it's a waste of time.*
(viewpoint)

Linking adverbs express a logical relationship (e.g. cause and consequence, sequence in time, contrast) between two clauses or sentences. These may be referred to as conjunct adverbs:

*The overwhelming majority of big-name French chefs are, as they have always been, men. There is one place, **however**, that for 100 years and more has provided an exception – Lyon, close to the Swiss and Italian borders and France's second city.*

*The bad news is that your shares are almost certainly overvalued at present, as is the entire banking sector. The good news is that they are probably worth keeping **anyway**.*

COPULAR VERBS (*BE, SEEM*) AND COMPLEMENTATION 247

Copular verbs such as *be*, *seem*, *become*, *get*, *grow*, *look*, *smell*, *taste* describe the state of people and things, and are complemented by adjectives, not adverbs:

*Hmm, it **smells** a bit **funny**.*
(~~It smells a bit funnily.~~)

*It **looks interesting**.*

*It **seems odd** that we were not told.*

But some of these verbs can also be used to denote actions, in which case they may be used with adverbs:

*I **looked briefly** through the papers.*
(action of looking)

*She **smelt** it **carefully** before drinking it.*
(action of smelling)

ADVERBS USED AS SHORT RESPONSES 248

Some degree, modal and focusing adverbs occur very frequently in spoken language as single-word responses indicating the respondent's attitude or stance:

A: *That's a fair comment, isn't it?*
B: ***Absolutely**.*

A: *It's more for the kids, isn't it?*
B: *You think so?*
A: *Yeah, **definitely**.*

A: *He might have been away at the time.*
B: *Well, **possibly**.*

A: *Didn't you think it was just a joke?*
B: *Yeah, **probably**.*

A: *She's obviously going to tear it up and throw it in the bin.*
B: ***Precisely**.*

A: *Well, you wear a little black dress to clubs or to a party.*
B: *Yeah, **exactly**.*

A: *Not easy, mind you, accommodating everything in our bedroom.*
B: *Well, yes, **quite**.*

Not really is also very commonly used in this way to soften a bare *no*-answer:

A: *Have you been in smaller classes before?*
B: ***Not really**.*

Note that *certainly* most typically occurs as a single-word reply to a request for a service or favour (compare *definitely* above, which strengthens the force of an utterance):

> [to a waiter]
> A: *Can I have the bill please?*
> B: ***Certainly***.

Intensifying adverbs often occur alone in responses:

> A: *It's hot in here.*
> B: *Yes,* ***very***.
>
> A: *She's a very bright kid.*
> B: *She is, yes,* ***incredibly***.

··⁘ 95 Response tokens

ADVERBS AND DISCOURSE MARKERS 249

Most discourse markers belong to the general class of adverbs. However, it is their function as organisers of larger stretches of conversation or text which qualify them for classification as discourse markers. The discourse marking functions of adverbs include signalling closure and pre-closure, labelling of text segments, topic changes, asides.

Compare the use of *anyway* as a linking (conjunct) adverb and as a discourse marker:

> *I shouldn't be jealous but I am* ***anyway***.
> (conjunct)
>
> A: *Sorry. You know what I mean. Sounds like you're gonna post it or something.*
> B: *No.*
> A: *Oh.* ***Anyway***, *I'll have to go cos I've got to ring Bob.*
> B: *Right.*
> (discourse marker, signalling closure)

··⁘ 108 Discourse markers

Prepositions and prepositional phrases

Introduction 250
Simple prepositions 251
Complex prepositions 252
Prepositions and other word classes 253
  Prepositions and conjunctions 253a
  Prepositions and adverbs 253b
Prepositional meanings: literal and metaphorical 254
Structure of prepositional phrases 255
  Premodification 255a
  Complementation by a verb 255b
Function of prepositional phrases 256
Panel: Preposition stranding 257

Prepositions and prepositional phrases

INTRODUCTION 250

Prepositions express a relation in space between two or more entities or a relation in time between two events, or various other abstract relations:

Don't walk ***on*** *the grass.*

She fell asleep ***during*** *the film.*

After *the interview, they phoned the police.*

She sent me an email ***about*** *the conference.*

Prepositional phrases (in green) consist of a preposition as head (bold), and a complement. The complement is usually a noun phrase, though it may sometimes be an *-ing* clause or, less frequently, a *wh*-clause:

They decided to meet ***in*** *a park.*

During *the war they moved* ***to*** *Wales.*

They left just ***after*** *six o'clock.*

It's a good way ***of*** *losing weight.*

He passed the exam ***by*** *working every night.*

She went back ***to*** *where she used to work.*

The complement of a preposition may also be an adverb phrase (usually one of place or time):

Just come ***through*** *here and I'll show you where the problem is.*

Many of these treatments were used ***until*** *quite recently.*

Prepositional phrases as complements of a preposition are less common:

He looked at me ***from*** *behind the tree.*

I can't see you ***until*** *after lunch.*

Prepositions are not followed by the base form of a verb or by *that*-clauses:

Where's that thing ***for*** *chopping vegetables?*
(~~Where's that thing for chop vegetables?~~)

They were disappointed that we couldn't come.
(or: They were disappointed by the fact that we couldn't come.)
(~~They were disappointed by that we couldn't come.~~)

> *We're relying **on** him being there to help us.*
> (~~We're relying on that he will be there to help us.~~)
>
> *We're looking forward **to** see**ing** you soon.*
> (preposition *to* + *-ing* form)
> (~~We're looking forward to see you soon.~~)
>
> *To* plus the base form of a verb is called the *to*-infinitive and is not a prepositional phrase:
>
> *We're hoping **to see** you soon.*
> (*to*-infinitive)

SIMPLE PREPOSITIONS 251

There are over 100 prepositions in English, including complex and marginal prepositions. A list of more than 50 common simple prepositions is given here. Some word pairs have over time become fused as simple prepositions (e.g. *upon*, *into*):

aboard
about
above
across
after
against
along
amid
among
around
as
at
before
behind
below
beneath
beside
besides
between
beyond
but
by
despite
down
during
except
for
from
in
inside
into
like
near
of
off
on
onto
opposite
outside
over
past
round
since
than
through
to
toward
towards
under
underneath
unlike
until
up
upon
via
with
within
without

COMPLEX PREPOSITIONS 252

Although most prepositions are single words, some pairs and groups of words operate like single prepositions:

> ***As for*** *me, I'd rather have a holiday in January, when it's cold and wet.*
>
> *The street below was empty* ***except for*** *a girl walking along sobbing quietly and a boy behind her trying to explain.*
>
> *I'd never say that* ***in front of*** *the children.*
>
> *There'll be* ***up to*** *50 people there, I would think.*

Pairs and groups of words which function in this way include:

- *ahead of*
- *apart from*
- *as for*
- *as of*
- *as well as*
- *because of*
- *but for*
- *by means of*
- *by virtue of*
- *due to*
- *except for*
- *for lack of*
- *in addition to*
- *in aid of*
- *in exchange for*
- *in favour of*
- *in front of*
- *in line with*
- *in place of*
- *inside of*
- *in spite of*
- *instead of*
- *near to*
- *on account of*
- *on top of*
- *out of*
- *outside of*
- *owing to*
- *prior to*
- *subsequent to*
- *such as*
- *thanks to*
- *up to*

PREPOSITIONS AND OTHER WORD CLASSES 253

Prepositions and conjunctions 253a

Some words which are prepositions also function as conjunctions. Among the most common are *after*, *as*, *before*, *since*, *until*. When followed by a noun phrase, they act as prepositions; when followed by a clause, they act as conjunctions:

> ***After*** *the meeting he rang me to apologise.*
> (preposition)
>
> ***After*** *we spoke this afternoon, he rang me to apologise.*
> (conjunction)
>
> *Has morale improved,* ***since*** *his explanation?*
> (preposition)
>
> *Has morale improved* ***since*** *he explained everything to them?*
> (conjunction)

Prepositions and adverbs 253b

Several words which are prepositions also belong to the word class of adverbs. These are often called prepositional adverbs. Common prepositional adverbs are: *about*, *across*, *around*, *before*, *beyond*, *down*, *in*, *inside*, *near*, *on*, *opposite*, *past*, *through*, *under*, *up*, *within*. Prepositional adverbs normally stand alone:

Too many visitors were left to walk ***in*** *the castle unsupervised.*
(preposition)

We stayed ***in*** *last night.*
(prepositional adverb: *in* = at home)

PREPOSITIONAL MEANINGS: LITERAL AND METAPHORICAL 254

Many common prepositions can indicate a wide range of relations in space and time and other more abstract relations. For example, *at*, *in* and *on* can express relations in time and space as well as abstract relations:

at *6.30*

in *the garden*

on *New Year's Day*

to feel ***at*** *ease*

the woman dressed ***in*** *white*

a book ***on*** *the history of aircraft*

The more abstract relations indicated by prepositions can often be seen as metaphorical extensions of their literal meanings. This is particularly the case with prepositions which refer to space. Basic spatial prepositions are often extended metaphorically to more abstract meanings:

That map you need is ***behind*** *the filing-cabinet.*
(basic spatial sense)

The whole nation was ***behind*** *the team.*
(gave support)

The socialists are ***behind*** *the communists in the polls.*
(competition as a race)

Who's ***behind*** *his plan?*
(describing agency: Who is responsible for his plan?)

What's the reason ***behind*** *his resignation?*
(describing causes)

Beyond *the gardens, there were open fields.*
(basic spatial sense)

> *Trigonometry was just **beyond** me.*
> (Trigonometry was just too difficult for me.)
>
> *You'll need to put a jacket **over** that blouse. It's cold.*
>
> *There was a serious dispute **over** performance-related pay.*

Note that, when used metaphorically, the preposition can usually be modified by an adverb of degree:

> *The team was **completely with** the manager.*
> (*was with* = supported)
> (metaphorical)
>
> *I went on holiday **with** an old friend of mine.*
> (~~I went on holiday completely with an old friend of mine.~~)

STRUCTURE OF PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES 255

Premodification 255a

Prepositions may be premodified. This applies mainly to prepositions with a gradable spatial or temporal meaning:

> *They went deep **into** the forest.*
>
> *She doesn't like flying and only started to relax when we were high **above** the clouds.*
>
> *It was too foggy to see but the hotel was only a short distance **in front of** them.*
>
> *Be careful. The lamp's just **above** your head.*
>
> *They arrived just **before** the guests.*

Complementation by a verb 255b

The form of the verb which follows a preposition is the *-ing* form:

> *Is she responsible **for handling** all the phone calls and for managing the office?*
>
> *The new director has devoted herself **to raising** funds.*
>
> *Do you think they have any interest **in selling** the house?*

Sometimes the subject of the verb occurs between the preposition and the *-ing* form. If this subject is a pronoun, in everyday informal styles the object form of the pronoun is used:

> *Within a few hours **of us putting** the ad in the paper, we had over twenty phone calls.*
>
> ***Because of them being** so reasonable, at least compared with the rest of the group, the airline made them wait to catch the next flight.*

In more formal styles the possessive pronoun form is used:

> *Well, this may result **in his receiving** lots of unwanted junk mail.*
> (less formal: This may result in him receiving lots of unwanted junk mail.)

⇢ also **285f Verbs normally only followed by *-ing***

A number of verbs, such as *arrange*, *ask*, *long*, *wait*, are followed by the preposition *for* + noun/pronoun + *to*-infinitive. In such cases, *for* is not followed by an *-ing* form:

> *They've **arranged for** the cases **to be transferred** direct onto the flight.*
>
> *Didn't you **ask for** it **to be delivered** by midday?*
>
> *She's been **longing for** David **to call** her.*
>
> *I've been **waiting for** the bank statement **to clear** it all up.*
> (~~I've been waiting for the bank statement clearing it all up~~.)

A–Z **43 *For***

FUNCTION OF PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES 256

Adjuncts

Prepositional phrases commonly function as adjuncts in the clause:

> ***During the visit** the inspectors will review the factory very thoroughly.*

Prepositional verbs

Prepositional phrases also commonly function as the complements of verbs. Where a special preposition is required to introduce the complement of the verb, such verbs are called prepositional verbs:

> *It **depends on** the weather.*
>
> *Please **listen to** me.*
>
> *She has decided to **confide in** her doctor.*
>
> *I promise to **look at** the results this afternoon.*

⇢ **235f, 235g**

Phrasal-prepositional verbs

Sometimes the preposition is preceded by an adverb particle, and the verb + adverb particle + preposition structure forms a verb with a unitary meaning. These verbs are called phrasal-prepositional verbs:

> *I don't know how she'll **put up with** the noise.*
>
> *We're **looking forward to** the match.*

Predicative complements

Prepositional phrases also act as predicative complements, most typically of place:

*I was **at the office** all day.*

*Just put it **on my desk**, please.*

Postmodifiers and complements

Prepositional phrases act as postmodifiers or as complements in noun phrases (in green):

*That guy **in the pub last night** was getting on my nerves.*
(postmodifier)

*It was in the shape **of a triangle**.*
(complement)

They also act as postmodifiers and complements in adjective and adverb phrases (in green):

*She's quite tall **for a five-year-old**, isn't she?*
(postmodifier)

*Both brothers were good **at football**.*
(complement)

*He performed quite well **on the whole**.*
(postmodifier)

*Luckily **for me** there was another train just half an hour later.*
(postmodifier)

Premodifiers

Numerals may be premodified by a prepositional phrase:

*Children of **under** fourteen years of age will not be admitted.*

*It'll cost **just over** two hundred pounds.*

Preposition stranding 257

A preposition is described as stranded when it is separated from its complement:

complement **preposition**
***What** was she referring **to**?*
(preposition stranding)

prep + comp
***To what** was she referring?*
(more formal, without preposition stranding)

In traditional style guides, advice is often given never to end a sentence with a preposition, meaning that prepositions should not be stranded. However, the situation concerning the usage of prepositions is rather more complex than such advice suggests.

Preposition stranding occurs in the following main structures:

*Who did you talk **to**?* (*wh*-interrogatives)

*I need someone to go **with**.* (relative clauses)

*It's the only garage which we have any confidence **in**.* (relative clauses)

*Tell me what they are so afraid **of**.* (indirect *wh*-interrogatives)

*It's being looked **into**.* (passives)

*It's too slippery to walk **on**.* (infinitive complements)

Preposition stranding is common in informal styles. In formal structures, prepositions tend to occur with their complements:

*He is the officer we'd been talking **with**.* (informal)

*He is the officer **with whom** we'd been talking.* (formal)

*Which building was the smoke coming **out of**?* (informal)

***Out of which** building was the smoke coming?* (formal)

When a prepositional phrase is the complement of a verb (*went **to the match*** in the example below), the stranded preposition may occur before or after the prepositional phrase:

*He's the friend I went to the match **with** last Wednesday.*
(or: *He's the friend I went **with** to the match last Wednesday.*)

If the context allows for ellipsis, a reduced *wh*-question may consist simply of a *wh*-word + stranded preposition:

A: *We're **going** on holiday next week.*
B: *Oh, **where to**?*

A: *I've got to buy a birthday card.*
B: *Oh yeah. **Who for**?*

When the meaning is obvious from the text, stranded prepositions of place may occasionally be omitted, especially in informal conversation:

A: *Do you like Tokyo?*
B: *Yes, it's a very safe place to live.*
(understood: Yes, it's a very safe place to live in.)

A: *I'm going out tonight.*
B: *Oh yeah, where?*
(understood: Where to?)

Some prepositions, including frequent prepositions such as *during* and *since*, resist stranding:

***During which of the terms** did it happen, spring or autumn?*
(preferred to: ~~Which of the terms did it happen during?~~)

***Since when** has the train service stopped?*
(~~When has the train service stopped since?~~)

⇢ also **472–475 Word order and focus; 94 Ellipsis**

A–Z ***5 About; 6 Above; 7 According to; 10 After, afterwards; 11 Against; 21 At; 24 Before; 26 Between, among; 32 Down; 33 During; 43 For; 55 Of; 63 Over; 79 With***

Word structure and word formation

Introduction 258
    Word structure (morphology) 258a
    Word, stem and base 258b
Inflection 259
Word formation 260
Prefixes 261
Suffixes 262
Panel: -*ish* and -*y* in informal contexts 263
Conversion 264
Compounds 265
    General 265a
    Compound nouns 265b
    Compound adjectives 265c
    Compound verbs 265d
Hyphenation 266
Other types of word formation 267
    Abbreviation 267a
    Back-formation 267b
    Other types 267c
Productivity 268

Word structure and word formation

INTRODUCTION 258

Word structure (morphology) 258a

The word is the basic unit which relates the grammar of a language to its vocabulary. Words have internal structure which indicates their grammatical identity (e.g. that the word is plural, or past tense) and their lexical identity (e.g. that the word *unhappiness* is a noun with negative meaning referring to emotions).

Grammar is generally divided into the study of the structure of sentences, which is called syntax, and the study of the internal structure of words, which is called morphology.

Words are composed of morphemes. A morpheme is the smallest unit of meaning. Some words consist of just one morpheme; some consist of several.

In the table below, the words *dog* and *drink* cannot be broken down into smaller meaningful units. They are words which consist of one morpheme.

Examples of words and their morphemes

word	morpheme(s)
dog	*dog*
drink	*drink*
dogs	*dog* + *s*
drank	*drink* + irregular past *a*
drinkable	*drink* + *able*
impenetrable	*im* + *penetr* + *able*
intolerable	*in* + *toler* + *able*
irregular	*ir* + *regular*
midday	*mid* + *day*
homesick	*home* + *sick*
homesickness	*home* + *sick* + *ness*

In the table we may note various kinds of morpheme.

Affixes

Some of the morphemes are attached to the beginning or the end of words. These are affixes. Affixes attached to the beginning of words are prefixes; those attached to the ends of words are suffixes.

Inflectional morphemes

Some of the affixes express grammatical relations (e.g. the -*s* on *dogs* indicates plural; the past form *drank* contrasts with the present *drink*). These are inflectional morphemes.

Derivational morphemes

Some of the affixes express lexical relations by forming new or different words when attached to basic words (e.g. *-able* indicates that something is possible; *mid-* indicates the middle part of something). These are derivational morphemes.

Allomorphs

Some morphemes have a variation in form, even though their meaning is the same (e.g. ***im****-penetrable*, ***in****-edible*, ***ir****-regular*, all meaning 'not'; *-ible* and *-able* both meaning 'can be done'). These variations are known as allomorphs. Allomorphs are also seen in inflections , e.g. noun plurals (*book****s***, *glass****es***) and verb endings (*seem****s***, *watch****es***).

Compounds

Whole words may combine with each other (e.g. *home* and *sick*). Such combinations are called compounds.

Word, stem and base 258b

The form of a word to which prefixes and suffixes attach is called the stem. A simple word of one morpheme consists of a stem only. Words consisting of a stem plus prefixes and/or suffixes are complex words.

Examples of words showing stems and affixes

	word	stem	prefixes/suffixes
1	*snowy*	*snow*	*-y*
2	*untraceable*	*trace*	*un-* *-able*
3	*deduce, reduce, produce*	*-duce*	*de-* *re-* *pro-*
4	*capture, captive*	*capt-*	*-ure* *-ive*
5	*recapture*	*capt-*	*re-* *-ure*

The stem may not necessarily be a whole independent word, as can be seen in the table.

Snow and *trace* are free stems; they can stand alone. The forms *-duce* and *capt-* are bound stems; they can only be used in combination with prefixes or suffixes.

The stem on its own may be restricted to certain combinations. In example **5** in the table the prefix *re-* can only attach to *capture* (we cannot say *recaptive*). In *recapture*, *capture* is called the base. A base may already include an affix. In the following words, the base is in bold:

grammar*ian*

grammatical*ity*

*un****grammatical***

Inflectional morphemes (bold) attach to whole lexemes (in green):

*Grammarian****s*** *have often disagree****d*** *on this point.*

*Poetry de-familiarize****s*** *the everyday.*

*We never send postcard****s****.*

Inflectional morphology of various kinds is central to many of the chapters in this book. This chapter describes the main types of inflection, but deals mainly with lexical morphology, i.e. in the four main word classes, noun, verb, adjective, adverb. Grammatical morphology is dealt with under areas such as tense, aspect, person, voice and number in other chapters.

INFLECTION 259

English does not make much use of word structure to express grammatical meanings and, unlike other languages, the inflection of words is limited. Inflections in English are realised by the suffixes in the table below.

Inflectional suffixes

suffix	examples
noun plurals (e.g. *-s,-es,-en*)	*car**s**, bush**es**, ox**en***
3rd person singular present tense *-s*	*he work**s**, it rise**s***
past tense *-ed*	*we walk**ed**; I smok**ed***
-ing form as progressive aspect	*she’s runn**ing**; we were laugh**ing***
-ed form as *-ed* participle	*they’ve land**ed**, he was beat**en***
comparative forms *-er, -est*	*he’s small**er**, I’m small**est***
negative verb inflection *-n’t*	*I ca**n’t**; they wo**n’t***

Inflection also sometimes occurs through internal vowel or consonant change.

Examples of inflection through vowel or consonant change

*g**oo**se*	*g**ee**se*	plural
*h**a**ng*	*h**u**ng*	past tense
*f**a**r*	*f**u**rther*	comparative
*advi**s**e*	*advi**c**e*	verb to noun

Sometimes an inflected form is identical to its non-inflected form (for example, where the singular and plural have the same form). This is called syncretism.

Examples of syncretism

*d**ee**r*	*d**ee**r*	plural
*s**e**t*	*s**e**t*	past tense, *-ed* participle

Sometimes, an alternative word is used for a particular inflectional meaning, a process known as suppletion.

Examples of suppletion

be	*am, are, is*	present tense
go	*went*	past tense

Inflections do not change the meaning of a word. *Walk* and *walked* have the same lexical meaning; they are forms of the same lexeme. *Responsible* and *irresponsible* have different meanings; they are different lexemes.

WORD FORMATION 260

Present-day English has four main processes of word formation: prefixation, suffixation, conversion and compounding.

Prefixation

Prefixation involves adding a prefix to a base or stem:

> ***ante**natal, **ante**room*
> ***de**criminalise, **de**form*
> ***post**-1945, **post**graduate*
> ***pro**-life, **pro**-Europe*
> ***un**tidy, **un**happiness, **un**usual, **un**democratic*

Suffixation

Suffixation involves adding a suffix to a base or stem:

> *age**ism**, terror**ism***
> *king**dom**, free**dom***
> *ident**ify***
> *reason**able**, unprofit**able***
> *unhappi**ly**, slow**ly***

Conversion

Conversion involves the change of a word from one word class to another. For example, the verbs *to screen* and *to fax* are formed from the nouns *screen* and *fax*. The verb *to narrow* is formed from the adjective *narrow*; the noun *love* from the verb *to love*:

> *The film is an absolute **must** for all lovers of Westerns.*
> (noun from verb)
>
> *Can we **microwave** it?*
> (verb from noun)
>
> *Internet **downloads** can be expensive.*
> (noun from verb)
>
> *They decided that they had to **broaden** his appeal.*
> (verb from adjective)

Less often, internal vowel change or one form replacing another (suppletion) may indicate a change in word class or sub-class.

Examples of change in word class through vowel change and suppletion

*h**o**t*	*h**ea**t*	adjective ➛ noun
*r**i**se*	*r**ai**se*	intransitive verb ➛ transitive verb (change in sub-class)
*d**ee**p*	*d**e**pth*	adjective ➛ noun (plus suffix; similarly, *wide* ➛ *width*)
mouth	*oral*	noun ➛ adjective (suppletion)

Some words can change class by a shift in stress from one syllable to another. Typically, the stress is on the first syllable when the word is a noun and on the second syllable when the word is a verb, e.g. ***re**cord* (noun, with stress on the first syllable) becomes *re**cord*** (verb, with stress on the second syllable).

Compounding

Compounding involves linking together two or more bases to create a new word. Normally, the first item identifies a key feature of the second word. For example, the two bases *head* and *ache* can combine to form the compound word *headache*:

award-winning
helpline
house-proud
input
long-running
postcard

266 Hyphenation

In addition to the main processes, English allows words to be formed by abbreviation (which includes clipping, acronyms and blends) (**267a**), and back-formation (**267b**).

PREFIXES 261

The main prefixes used in English

prefix	meaning	examples
a-	(i) in a particular way or condition (ii) without (note different pronunciation)	(i) *awake, asleep* (first syllable pronounced /ə/) (ii) *atypical, amoral* (first syllable pronounced /eɪ/)
anti-	against or opposed to	*antibiotic, anticlimax, anti-nuclear*
ante-	before	*antenatal, antechamber*
auto-	self	*autobiography, autograph*
de-	to reverse, to alter	*decommission, deform, destabilise*
dis-	to reverse, to remove	*disarm, disagree, dismantle, disqualify*
down-	to lower, to reduce	*downsize, downgrade*
dys-	not regular or normal	*dyslexia, dysfunctional*
extra-	beyond	*extramural, extraordinary, extraterrestrial*
half	one of two equal parts	*halfway, half-moon*
hyper-	extreme	*hyperactive, hyperinflation*
hypo-	less than usual, too little	*hypothermia, hypotension*
il-, im-, in-, ir-	not	*illegal, impossible, intolerant, irresponsible*
inter-	between	*interactive, intercontinental, international*
intra-	within	*intra-departmental, intramural*
intro-	directed within	*introvert, introspection*
mega-	very big, important	*megabyte, megastar*
mid-	middle	*midday, mid-September*
mis-	incorrectly, badly	*misinterpret, misunderstand, misinform*
non-	not	*non-smoker, non-stick, non-believer*
over-	too much	*overeat, overindulgent*

continued overleaf

continued

prefix	meaning	examples
out-	go beyond/exceed	*outdo, outshine, outbid*
para-	(i) beyond; (ii) similar or connected to	(i) *paranormal*; (ii) *paramedic, paramilitary*
post-	after	*post-war, postpone*
pre-	before	*pre-1990, predetermined, pre-set*
pro-	in favour of	*pro-Europe, pro-nationalisation*
re-	again	*reapply, refocus*
semi-	half	*semicircle, semiconscious*
sub-	under, below, secondary	*subway, subtitle, subzero, subnormal*
super-	above, beyond, excessive	*superstructure, superhero, supersensitive*
tele-	at a distance	*telecommunication, television, telepathy*
trans-	across	*transatlantic, transmit*
ultra-	extremely	*ultralight, ultrasonic*
un-	(i) remove; (ii) reverse, not	(i) *undress, undo*; (ii) *unhappy, unlucky*
up-	make higher, increase	*upgrade, uplift, upscale*
under-	beneath, less than	*underworld, under-age, underestimate*
vice	deputy	*vice-president, viceroy*

Prefixes which change the class of a word

Prefixes do not typically change the class of a word. One example is the prefix *be-*, which can change a noun into a verb (e.g. *bewitch*, *besiege*), or an adjective into a verb (e.g. *belittle*, *becalm*). Similarly, the prefixes *em-* and *en-* can create a verb from a noun or adjective (e.g. *embitter*, *embolden*, *encode*, *endanger*, *enlarge*, *enlighten*).

SUFFIXES 262

Prefixes have a semantic role; suffixes also have a semantic role but they additionally change the class of a word. The tables below show the common suffixes by word class (together with an indication of the most common types of class change where appropriate).

Suffixes which form nouns

suffix	examples
-age	(count to non-count noun) *baggage, mileage*
-al	(verb to noun) *arrival, burial, withdrawal*
-ant/-ent	*assistant, coolant, deodorant, student*
-ance/-ence	(verb to noun) *defiance, insistence, pretence*
-arium/-orium	*aquarium, crematorium, sanatorium*
-dom	*boredom, freedom, stardom, wisdom*
-ee	*absentee, devotee, trainee*
-ar/-er/-or	(verb to noun) *registrar, singer, indicator*
-ie/-y	*kiddie, daddy, puppy*
-hood	*childhood, motherhood, knighthood*
-ism	*defeatism, Marxism, pacifism*
-ist	*Buddhist, exhibitionist, impressionist*
-ity/-ty	*deity, rarity, similarity, cruelty, casualty*

continued

suffix	examples
-let/-ette	(diminutives) *hamlet, booklet, kitchenette*
-ment	(verb to noun) *amazement, disappointment*
-ness	(adjective to noun) *friendliness, kindness*
-ary/-ery/-ory	*library, fishery, laboratory*
-(r)y	(verb to noun) *entry, inquiry, bribery*
-ship	*craftsmanship, membership*
-sion/-tion/-xion	*confusion, ammunition, expedition, infection, complexion*
-(at)ion	(verb to noun) *formation, resignation*

Suffixes which form adjectives

suffix	examples
-ble	(verb to adjective) *readable, workable, responsible*
-al	*informal, criminal*
-ed	(noun to adjective) *bearded, long-sighted, short-tailed*
-en	(noun to adjective) *woollen, golden, wooden*
-ese	(noun to adjective) *Japanese, Taiwanese, Vietnamese*
-ful	*grateful, helpful, mindful*
-i	(noun to adjective) *Pakistani, Iraqi, Omani*
-ic(al)	(noun to adjective) *heroic, poetic, historic(al)*
-ish	(noun to adjective) *foolish, Danish, Polish*
-ive	(verb to adjective) *adhesive, offensive, productive*
-ian	(noun to adjective) *Brazilian, Christian, Iranian*
-less	*childless, priceless*
-like	*business-like, rubber-like*
-ly	(noun to adjective) *monthly, yearly, manly*
-ous	*enormous, famous, nervous*
-type	*A-type, Hollywood-type*
-y	*windy, shaky, frosty*

Suffixes which form verbs

suffix	examples
-ate	*dominate, irritate*
-en	(adjective to verb) *harden, lengthen, stiffen*
-ify	*identify, magnify*
-ise/-ize	*caramelise, Americanize*

507–511 Appendix: English spelling for *s* and *z* spellings

Suffixes which form adverbs

suffix	examples
-ly	*slowly, aggressively*
-ward(s)	*backwards, homeward(s)*
-wise	*clockwise, edgewise*

Very occasionally, non-suffixed and suffixed forms may be used more or less synonymously (e.g. *disorient/disorientate*; *transport/transportation*).

Change of sub-class

Occasionally a suffix may change a word to a sub-class of the same word class. For example, *gun* and *gunner* are both nouns but one is inanimate, the other animate. Compare also *cook* (person) ➛ *cooker* (thing), *Berlin* (place) ➛ *Berliner* (person), *mathematics* (thing) ➛ *mathematician* (person).

-ish and *-y* in informal contexts 263

The *-ish* suffix is used widely in informal spoken English to soften or hedge numbers and quantities when precise reference is not necessary or is inappropriate:

> *So we're meeting at eleven, well* ***elevenish****.*
>
> *I think she's* ***thirtyish*** *but she looks a lot younger.*

-ish may occasionally be used on its own in informal conversation. It functions to make something deliberately vague and is not used only to refer to numbers and quantities:

> A: *Did you say you'll be here at five?*
> B: *Well,* ***-ish****. It depends on the traffic.*
>
> A: *Are you hungry?*
> B: ***-ish****. What about you?*

Although *-ish* is most commonly used with numbers, dates, times and quantities, it is a productive suffix and speakers creatively attach it to a wide range of words from different word classes.

Though not as frequent as - *ish*, the *-y* suffix functions in similar ways in informal contexts. It is especially used with colours:

> [the speaker is talking about a blouse and is trying to decide what to wear]
> *But I mean I love the collar and the short turn-up sleeves. You may see them in there in your one pink deep pink and er this beautiful* ***bluey*** *turquoise and a* ***beigey*** *colour which I can't wear. If they'd had white I might have tried. Well it still would have stuck out.*
>
> *It has a sort of* ***woody*** *taste, doesn't it?*
>
> *What's that* ***plasticky*** *thing sticking out there?*
>
> [the speakers here are deciding about the colour of a pair of cushions]
> A: *Well it's a kind of* ***orangey*** *red isn't it.*
> B: *Yeah.*
> A: *Or is it a* ***reddy*** *orange?*
> B: *It's not a* ***reddy*** *orange.*
> A: ***Orangey*** *red.*
> C: *Or* ***reddish****.*

Note also the changes in spelling which are sometimes necessary with these suffixes (*red* ➛ *reddish* ➛ *reddy; plastic* ➛ *plasticky*)

CONVERSION 264

Conversion involves changing a word from one word class to another but without adding any affix. For example, when the adjective *solid* is turned into the verb *to solidify*, the suffix *-ify* is added. When the adjective *dry* is turned into the verb *to dry* or when the noun *fax* is turned into the verb *to fax*, no affix is added and the process is one of conversion. Most examples involve the conversion of verbs into nouns or nouns into verbs. The main types of conversion are:

- Verbs converted into nouns:

  cure, drink, doubt, laugh, smoke, stop (as in *bus stop*), *walk, work*

- Nouns converted into verbs:

  to bottle, to bully, to elbow, to email, to glue, to group, to head, to ship, to ski, to skin, to tutor

- Adjectives converted into verbs (including comparatives):

  to better, to calm, to clean, to dry, to empty, to faint, to lower, to smooth, to tidy, to wet

- Nouns converted into adjectives:

  ***junk** food, a **rubbish** explanation* (common in spoken English)

Conversion is a process which continues to produce new forms constantly. For example, conversion has most recently produced forms such as *to email*, *to impact*, *to text*, *a download*.

Less commonly, other word classes are involved in conversion:

*That kind of remark only **ups** the stress for everyone.*
(verb from preposition)

*Seeing that play is an absolute **must**.*
(noun from modal verb)

*That's a very big **if**.*
(noun from conjunction)

*You get both **ups** and **downs**.*
(nouns from prepositions)

The conversion of a sub-class of proper noun to common noun is also possible:

*Has anybody seen my **Galsworthy**?*
(copy of a book by Galsworthy)

*He has two **Ferraris**.*
(a car manufactured by Ferrari)

Whole phrases may also be converted, most commonly into adjective compounds:

*I really fancy one of those **four-wheel-drive** cars.*

*Why don't you have a word with that **good-for-nothing** brother of his?*

*It was a **fly-on-the-wall** documentary.*

COMPOUNDS 265

General 265a

Compounds are lexemes formed from more than one base. Compounds are found in all word classes:

nouns: *pop group, car park*
adjectives: *heartbreaking, guilt-ridden, homesick*
verbs: *babysit, dry-clean*
adverbs: *good-naturedly, nevertheless, nowadays*
pronouns: *anyone, everything, nobody*
numerals: *forty-seven, two-thirds*
prepositions: *into, onto*
conjunctions: *although, whenever*

Compounds which have entered the language more recently tend to be nouns, adjectives or verbs (e.g. *answerphone* (n), *hyperactive* (adj), *downsize* (v)).

Compounds have a structure similar to the basic phrase classes such as noun or verb phrases; the final element may be seen as the head, which is modified or complemented:

*day**dream***
(modifier-type: dream during the day)

*guilt-**ridden***
(complement-type: ridden with guilt)

Some compounds involve identical or near identical or rhyming bases. Such compounds are called reduplicative and are often very informal in usage or are used in affectionate talk with and by children. For example, *bow-wow* (dog), *clever-clever*, *easy-peasy*, *goody-goody*, *lovey-dovey*, *olde-worlde*, *super-duper*, *tick-tock* (clock).

Compound nouns 265b

Compound nouns involve a range of different grammatical relationships. The pre-head item is typically a noun, a verb or a word derived from a verb, or an adjective:

noun: ***screw**driver*
verb base form: ***answer**phone*
verb *-ing* form: ***chewing** gum*
adjective: ***happy** hour*

The typical (unmarked) stress pattern is with stress on the first item (e.g. ***screw**driver*, ***happy** hour*), which helps to distinguish noun compounds from noun modifier + head structures, where stress is on the noun head (e.g. *university **degree***, *government **report***).

There is a wide range of possible semantic relationships between the pre-head item and the head. These include:

subject + verb: *headache* (head that aches), *rainfall* (rain that falls)

verb + subject: *warning sign* (sign that warns)

verb + object: *know-all* (a person who thinks they know all), *killjoy* ('kills joy', someone who spoils the enjoyment of others)

object + verb: *carpet-shampoo* (shampoos carpets), *risk-taking* (takes risks), *hair-dryer* (dries hair)

predicative complement + subject: *junk food* (the food is junk), *girlfriend*

prepositional complement: *raincoat* (the coat is for rain), *ashtray*

complement + noun: *chairleg, fingertip* (the tip of the finger)

Compound adjectives 265c

Most compound adjectives end in an adjective (e.g. *air-sick*), or in an *-ing* or *-ed* adjective form (e.g. *heart-breaking*, *short-sighted*, *white-washed*). The main relationships between the parts of compound adjectives are as follows:

object + *-ing/-ed*: *English-speaking* (speaks English), *confidence-boosting* (boosts confidence), *heart-broken* (the heart is broken by somebody)

verb complement + *-ing/-ed*: *far-reaching* (reaches far), *home-made* (made at home)

subject + predicative complement: *top-heavy* (the top is heavy) (A is B)

comparative: *paper-thin* (as thin as paper) (as B as A)

adjective + complement: *fat-free* (free of fat), *user-friendly* (friendly to the user)

adjective + adjective head: *royal-blue, light-green, bitter-sweet*

Note also that some adjective compounds are formed by adding an *-ed* inflection to an existing adjective + noun: *right-angled* (formed from *right-angle*), *left-handed* (formed from *left hand*).

Compound verbs 265d

Compound verbs are far less frequent than compound nouns or adjectives. They may be derived by conversion from another word class, normally an already existing noun compound (e.g. *to daydream*, *to blackmail*, *to wait-list*). They may also be derived by a process of back-formation (**267b** below) by the removal of a suffix (e.g. *shoplift* from *shoplifting* or *shoplifter*; *babysit* from *babysitting* or *babysitter*). Examples include: *chain-smoke, dry-clean, housekeep, sight-see, spring-clean.*

HYPHENATION 266

The use of hyphens in compounds and complex words involves a number of different rules, and practice is changing, with fewer hyphens present in contemporary usage. For example, compound words may be written as separate words (*post box*), hyphenated (*post-box*) or written as one word (*postbox*). However, in certain forms the rules governing the use of hypens are more regular.

Particular prefixes regularly involve a hyphen (e.g. *ex-minister*, *post-war*, *self-interest*, *quasi-public*).

When a compound premodifies a noun head, a hyphen is normally inserted to indicate which words are compounded (e.g. *a well-known entertainer*, *twentieth-century Danish architecture*).

Hyphens are normally used in compounds in which the pre-head item is a single capital letter (e.g. *U-turn*, *X-ray*), and hyphens are sometimes needed to disambiguate different words (e.g. *re-form* = form again, *reform* = change radically).

In numerically modified adjectives, all modifying elements are hyphenated. Note that these forms are only used attributively (e.g. *an eighteen-year-old girl, a twenty-ton truck, a twenty-four-hour flight*).

➜ 506 Appendix: Punctuation

OTHER TYPES OF WORD FORMATION 267

Abbreviation 267a

Abbreviation involves shortening a word. This can be done by means of three main processes: clipping, acronyms and blends.

Clipping

Clipping is a type of abbreviation in which a word is shortened when one or more syllables are omitted or ‘clipped’. Proper names for people are commonly clipped:

ad: *advertisement, advert*
decaf: *decaffeinated*
medic: *medical student, doctor*
memo: *memorandum*
lab: *laboratory*
Liz: *Elizabeth*

Acronyms

Acronyms are a type of abbreviation formed when the initial letters of two or more words are combined in a way that produces consonant and vowel sequences found in words. Acronyms are pronounced as words:

RAM: ***R**andom* ***A**ccess* ***M**emory*
NATO: ***N**orth* ***A**tlantic* ***T**reaty* ***O**rganisation* /ˈneɪtəʊ/
Laser: ***l**ight* ***a**mplification* *(by)* ***s**timulated* ***e**mission* *(of)* ***r**adiation*

Initials are similar to acronyms but are pronounced as sets of letters, not as words:

*BBC: **B**ritish **B**roadcasting **C**orporation*
*PC: **p**ersonal **c**omputer, or **p**olitically **c**orrect*
*CD: **c**ompact **d**isc*

Blends

Blends are a type of abbreviation in which parts of existing words are combined to form a new word. The process is a notable recent phenomenon:

camcorder: blend of ***cam**era* and *re**corder***
fanzine: blend of ***fan*** and *maga**zine***
heliport: blend of ***heli**copter* and *air**port***
netiquette: blend of *inter**net*** and *et**iquette***
smog: blend of ***sm**oke* and *f**og***

Back-formation 267b

Back-formation is a process of word formation in which what is thought to be a suffix (and occasionally a prefix) is removed. It applies in particular to the process of forming verbs from nouns. The two major sources are nouns and compound nouns ending in *-tion*, or *-ion* and in *-ar*, *-er*, *-or*, *-ing*. But there is also a large miscellaneous group which occasionally includes back-formation from adjectives:

emote: derived from *emotion*
intuit: derived from *intuition*
legislate: derived from *legislation*
televise: derived from *television*

air-condition: derived from *air-conditioner*
commentate: derived from *commentator*
brainwash: derived from *brainwashing*
sightsee: derived from *sightseeing*

enthuse: derived from *enthusiasm*
diagnose: derived from *diagnosis*
legitimise: derived from the adjective *legitimate*

Other types 267c

Occasionally the formation of words may occur by utilising sounds from words with similar associations. For example, words ending in *-ump* such as *dump*, *thump*, *lump* can generate invented words with similar sound patterns and associations of heaviness and hardness (e.g. *whump*, *bubump*, *kerbump*).

Words can be formed from proper names. Examples include: *braille*, *caesarian*, *platonic*, *sadist*, *sandwich* (words formed, respectively, from the names of Louis Braille, Julius Caesar, Plato, the Marquis de Sade and the Earl of Sandwich).

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

Sometimes the names of products can be taken over into general use. For example *hoover* and *Mac* are both the names of a company and the general name applied to the object (*Mac* refers to the name of Apple-MacIntosh computers):

I'm just going to ***hoover*** *the lounge before we go out.*

I'm sorry I've got a ***Mac*** *and can't use those files.*

It is very rare for new words to be formed without parts of existing words being in some way involved. An exception to this rule is loan words. These are words that are borrowed from other languages. Relatively recent loan words from the domain of food include: *pizza*, *salsa*, *tapas*, *chapatti*. Loan words are most typically nouns and are not normally subject to any of the processes of word formation, though they may be inflected if they are singular count nouns (*pizzas*, *chapattis*).

PRODUCTIVITY 268

Not all prefixes and suffixes are equally productive. Some are frequently used to create new words, while others are rarely, if ever, utilised in present-day word formation.

The suffix *-ion* is particularly productive in English and is used to form a large number of high-frequency nouns, e.g. *reunion*, *confusion*, *extension*, *explosion*, *direction*, *infection*, *inflation*, *intuition*, *relation*, *resignation*.

The adjectival suffix *-al* produces a large number of high-frequency adjectives, e.g. *critical*, *crucial*, *dental*, *frontal*, *typical*, *vital*.

Prefixes such as *un-* and *de-* and the *-er/-or* suffix are highly productive, with new words constantly being formed.

Rare suffixes such as *-ose* (as in *verbose*, *jocose*) and *-dom* are rarely used to form new words.

Conversion and compounding are productive in modern English, and new forms occur regularly, especially in technical domains such as computing and in the sciences in general. Almost any noun may potentially combine with any other noun to form new noun compounds.

Acronyms, back-formations and loan words only account for a small amount of the new vocabulary to appear each year in English, but the processes in themselves are productive.

155–166 Introduction to word classes and phrase classes

507–511 Appendix: English Spelling

Introduction to sentences and clauses

The sentence and the clause 269
Main and subordinate clauses 270
Simple, compound and complex sentences 271
Sentence and utterance 272
  The sentence in spoken language 272a
  The utterance 272b
Sentence types 273
Basic features of clauses 274
  Polarity 274a
  Participants, processes and circumstances 274b
  Subjects, verbs, objects, complements, adjuncts 274c
  Central and peripheral elements 274d
  Elements outside of the clause structure 274e
Basic clause structure 275
Central clause functions 276
  Subject 276a
  Panel: Dummy subjects 276b
  Subject-verb concord 276c
Verb complementation 277
  General 277a
  No complementation 277b
  Single complementation 277c
  Dual complementation 277d
Object 278
  General 278a
  Direct objects 278b
  Indirect objects 278c
  Panel: Indirect object or prepositional complement? 278d
Complement 279
  General 279a
  Subject complements 279b
  Panel: Number concord with subject complements 279c
  Object complements 279d
Adjuncts 280
  Panel: Adjuncts and complements 280a

Introduction to sentences and clauses

THE SENTENCE AND THE CLAUSE 269

The sentence is normally considered to be the largest unit of grammar. Longer stretches of text, such as paragraphs and segments of conversations, are usually regarded as units of discourse. The sentence is principally a unit of written grammar and is normally easily identified by an initial capital letter on the first word and a full stop after the last word. For spoken language, the sentence as a grammatical unit is more problematic (→ **272a** below).

Sentences are composed of clauses. The clause is the core unit of grammar. A sentence must include at least one main clause (→ **270** below). A clause consists of two parts: a subject and a predicate. The subject is a noun phrase or its equivalent (e.g. a nominal clause: ***writing novels*** *is not easy*) which indicates the doer or agent of an action, state or event, and the predicate is a verb phrase and any other accompanying elements (e.g. an object or complement):

subject	**predicate**
We	*baked some potatoes in the fire.*

The subject can be seen as representing a topic (who/what the clause is about – in this case *we*) and the predicate can be seen as representing a comment (what is said about the topic – that we *baked some potatoes in the fire*). The topic and comment together constitute a proposition. Clauses combined together as sentences express various types of relation between propositions.

The clause centres around a verb phrase (in the example above, *baked*), since it is the verb phrase which largely determines what else must or may occur in the clause. A clause most typically consists of a subject (which is a noun phrase), a verb, and other elements which may or may not be necessary, such as an object (which is a noun phrase), a predicative complement (most typically an adjective or noun phrase), or an adjunct (which is typically an adverb phrase or a prepositional phrase):

S	**V**	**O**	**A**
noun phrase	**verb phrase**	**noun phrase**	**prepositional phrase**
I	*'ve got*	*a parcel for you*	*in my car.*

Examples of clauses and non-clauses.

- Clauses (verbs in bold):

  He ***wrote*** *a couple of novels.*
  (one clause: one verb)

  Did *you* ***say*** *tea or coffee?*
  (one clause: auxiliary verb [*did*] and lexical verb [*say*])

When you ***get*** *there, |* ***ring*** *me.*
(two clauses: two lexical verbs with their own accompanying structures)

- Non-clauses:

  the green sofa
  (noun phrase)

  in the garden
  (prepositional phrase)

  Hello
  (greeting formula)

  hopefully
  (adverb)

MAIN AND SUBORDINATE CLAUSES 270

The two main types of clause which can combine to form sentences are main clauses and subordinate clauses. Main clauses are not dependent on any other clause in the sentence, and a sentence must have at least one main clause.

The following are sentences, since they contain at least one main clause.

- Sentences (main clauses in bold):

  I went to speak to them.
  (whole sentence is one main clause)

  I went down to the fish and chip shop *and* ***I got fish and chips***.
  (two main clauses joined by *and*)

  If I went down there, ***I could use the computer and the laser printer***.
  (one subordinate clause [*if*-clause] and one main clause)

The following are not sentences, since they do not contain a main clause. They consist of subordinate clauses, which need to be accompanied by a main clause in order to form a sentence.

- Non-sentences (no main clause):

  before I went

  when I went to Southampton for the day with my friend

  which arrived yesterday

- Further examples of main clauses (in green) with verbs in bold:

  *Oh, she****'s left*** *some money for you.*

  Richard ***got up*** *and* ***walked*** *over to the window.*

  I've done *a lot of thinking while you* ***were*** *asleep.*

  As her confidence ***grew****, she* ***started*** *to get careless.*

The clauses *while you were asleep* and *as her confidence grew* are dependent on other clauses and cannot be sentences on their own. They are therefore not main clauses.

The table below shows examples of sentences with one, two and three clauses. The clauses in the shaded boxes are main clauses; they could form sentences on their own. The clauses in the clear boxes are subordinate clauses; they could not form sentences on their own.

Examples of main and subordinate clauses

	clause	clause	clause
1	*She **took** her duties seriously.*		
2	*That **was** a few years ago*	*but my feelings **have not changed** one bit.*	
3	*When I **left** college,*	*I **couldn't find** any work.*	
4	*He **turned** round,*	*someone **pushed** him*	*and he **fell**.*
5	*As soon as she **opened** the envelope,*	*she **knew** something was wrong,*	*for the first lines of Richard's letter **were** full of apologies and regrets.*
6	*The water **begins** to freeze, and*	*as it **does** so,*	*it **expands**.*

In the table, *but* and *and* are coordinating conjunctions joining clauses of equal status to one another (in this case main clauses). *When*, *as soon as*, *for* and *as* are subordinating conjunctions, indicating a dependent relationship between the clauses they introduce and the main clauses. Coordination (→ **307**) and subordination (→ **310**) are two principal ways in which clauses are combined to form sentences.

Relative clauses (typically clauses with *who*, *which*, *that* modifying nouns) and nominal clauses are also types of dependent clause. In these cases they are embedded within larger structures:

← subject → verb complement
*The points **that I'm talking about** are similar.*

← subject → verb complement
What we need is more time.

→ **316–317**

SIMPLE, COMPOUND AND COMPLEX SENTENCES 271

A sentence with one main clause is called a simple sentence:

← main clause →
It snowed last night.

→ also **sentence 1 in the table in 270**

A sentence with two or more main clauses is called a compound sentence:

← main clause → ← main clause →
***He should have been here at five** and **he's not here yet**.*

→ also **sentence 2 in the table in 270**

A sentence with a main clause and one or more subordinate clauses is called a complex sentence. In the example below, || indicates clause boundaries. Subordinate clauses are in green; the main clause is in bold:

> [automatic customer-answering-service at a company]
> *Welcome to [name of company].* || *If you have a touch-tone telephone*, || ***please listen carefully to all the following options*** || *before you make your choice*.

➔ also **sentence 3 in the table in 270**

➔ **506 Appendix: Punctuation** on the punctuation of sentences in writing

SENTENCE AND UTTERANCE 272

The sentence in spoken language 272a

Sentences in spoken language are more problematic than in written language. Speakers take turns to speak, and turns are a basic unit of conversation. A turn ends when the speaker changes.

Many turns in everyday speech consist of long strings of clauses (e.g. when someone is telling a story), unfinished sentences, or just noun phrases, adjective phrases or adverb phrases standing alone. We also find *yes*, *no*, interjections and other miscellaneous word-types standing alone, or sentences 'jointly constructed' by more than one speaker.

A typical transcript of everyday conversation contains many complete and communicatively sufficient units which are not sentences:

> [speaker A is telling speaker B about a computer problem]
> **1** A: *But he's trying to send us an email and I'm having some trouble with the computer you see.*
> **2** B: *Right.*
> **3** A: *You know.*
> **4** B: *Yeah.*
> **5** A: *On my computer when I try to get anything on it.*
> **6** B: *Mm.*
> **7** A: *It's just saying that it's not in the files. I don't know if …*
> **8** B: *Mm.*
> **9** A: *And I'll have to get a disk.*

Speakers often begin new topics or sub-topics with conjunctions such as *but* (turn **1**) and *and* (turn **9**), even after considerable silences.

A turn may consist of just a word or phrase indicating a response or acknowledgement (turns **2** and **4**).

It may not be clear which independent unit a dependent unit is attached to. The prepositional phrase in turn **5** could be treated as attached to turn **1** or turn **7**, or simply as a free-standing and communicatively self-sufficient element.

The 'sentence' is therefore a problematic concept to apply to oral communication.

The utterance 272b

Problems with identifying sentences in informal spoken language mean that it is often useful to distinguish between a sentence and an utterance.

The sentence is a unit of grammar, and must be grammatically complete (i.e. it must have at least one main clause). The utterance is a unit of communication. It must be communicatively and pragmatically complete, but it does not need to be grammatically complete. Communicative means that the utterance communicates a meaningful message, and pragmatic means that it is fully interpretable in its context. Thus a string of words standing alone such as *over to you*, though not a sentence, can be communicative and pragmatically interpretable (e.g. telling someone it's their turn to take over the main speaking role), while a string of words such as *you if on* is unlikely to be either communicatively or pragmatically adequate.

Right and *you know* (turns **2** and **3** in the conversation extract in **272a**), although they are not grammatically sentences, are complete utterances since each one is communicatively and pragmatically complete.

However, in spoken language the general principles for combining clauses can still be seen to operate in broad terms (but ⁘ **87b Subordinate clauses**).

SENTENCE TYPES 273

The sentence types take their names from the names of the different types of main clause. The four major types of sentence are:

(x = other elements e.g. objects, complements)

type	structure of the main clause
declaratives	subject + verb + x
interrogatives	auxiliary/modal verb + subject + verb + x
imperatives	verb + x; no overt subject (subject is understood)
exclamatives	introduced by a phrase with *what* or *how* and followed by a subject + verb + x construction

BASIC FEATURES OF CLAUSES 274

Polarity 274a

Polarity, whether the clause is affirmative or negative, is an important feature of clauses. The polarity of the main clause determines the overall polarity of the sentence.

Examples of affirmative and negative polarity

main clause	clause polarity	subordinate clause	clause polarity	sentence polarity
She looked really offended.	affirmative			affirmative
They ***don't*** *do it during the summer.*	negative			negative
I might want you to do something for me	affirmative	*while I'm away.*	affirmative	affirmative
I'll have it	affirmative	*if you don't want it.*	negative	affirmative
I'm ***not*** *going*	negative	*if he goes.*	affirmative	negative

Participants, processes and circumstances 274b

Clauses express the relationship between processes (actions, states or events), participants (the people and things who act or are involved in or affected by actions, states and events) and circumstances (e.g. the time, place, manner and surrounding circumstances of an action, state or event).

The process is typically expressed by a verb phrase:

I'll ***post*** *the letter tonight.*

The participants are most typically expressed by noun phrases:

I*'ll post* ***the letter*** *tonight.*

The circumstances are most typically expressed by adverb phrases or prepositional phrases:

I'll post the letter ***tonight****.*
(adverb phrase)

Let's go there ***after lunch****.*
(prepositional phrase)

Clauses consist of various arrangements of these types of phrase fulfilling the functions of subject, verb, object, predicative complement and adjunct.

Subjects, verbs, objects, complements, adjuncts 274c

A clause centres around a verb phrase and most typically consists of a subject (which is a noun phrase), a verb (which is a verb phrase), and other elements which may or may not be necessary or present. These other elements include an object (which is a noun phrase), a predicative complement (which can be a noun/adverb/prepositional/adjective phrase) or an adjunct (which is typically an adverb phrase or prepositional phrase):

subject	verb	object	adjunct
I	*'ll post*	*the letter*	*tonight.*

subject	verb	complement
I	*feel*	*very tired.*

A clause may consist minimally of a verb in the imperative:

> *Run!*
> (imperative clause)

Arrangements of subjects, verbs, complements and adjuncts in clauses vary, depending on the pattern of complementation required by the verb (**281–289 Verb complementation**). The variations in the table below typically occur.

Examples of verb complementation

example (verbs in bold)	pattern
No one | ***laughed****.*	subject + verb
She | ***took*** | *a photograph.*	subject + verb + direct object
I | ***'ll give*** | *you* | *a ring.*	subject + verb + indirect object + direct object
He | ***'s working*** | *this afternoon.*	subject + verb + adjunct
We | ***signed*** | *it* | *as a protest.*	subject + verb + object + adjunct
He | ***'ll get*** | *angry.*	subject + verb + subject complement
It | ***made*** | *my clothes* | *dirty.*	subject + verb + object + object complement

275 Basic clause structure

Central and peripheral elements 274d

Central elements

The verb is the most central element in the clause as it tends to determine what else must or may occur in the clause. Next in importance come the subject and object or predicative complement, which express the relationship between participants and the process expressed by the verb.

The central elements subject and verb are the basic obligatory elements of a simple declarative clause. Central elements have a relatively fixed word order in English. The verb, for example, cannot usually be moved:

> *You* ***know*** *the problem.*
> (~~You the problem know.~~)

Objects and predicative complements have slightly more flexibility and occasionally occur in untypical positions for reasons of emphasis:

> *Every computer that we looked at was near two thousand pounds. But* ***this one*** *I got for twelve hundred, with two hundred pounds' worth of software.*
> (object (*this one*) placed before subject (*I*) for emphasis/contrast)
>
> *Well,* ***rich*** *they may be, but I'm not sure they're happy.*
> (complement (*rich*) placed before subject (*they*) for emphasis/contrast)

Peripheral elements

Adjuncts are normally regarded as peripheral elements in the clause; they are always optional, they are the most mobile elements (they can occupy different positions), and they do not determine what else must occur in the clause.

Adjuncts are even more flexible than objects and predicative complements, and may occur in a variety of positions:

> ***In the morning*** *we had to pretend nothing happened.*
> (adjunct in front position; also possible: We had to pretend nothing happened in the morning.)
>
> *We* ***sometimes*** *go to Rochester.*
> (adjunct between subject and verb; also possible: Sometimes we go to Rochester.)
>
> *That young guy seems to deliver the post* ***quite often these days****.*
> (adjuncts in final position; also possible: Quite often that young guy seems to deliver the post these days./These days that young guy seems to deliver the post quite often.)

Elements outside of the clause structure 274e

Sometimes, especially in informal spoken language, elements occur which are not contained within the clause structure. Items may occasionally occur before or after the clause for emphasis and be repeated in some form within the clause (most typically by a pronoun):

> ***Joe****, I've known* ***him*** *for years.*
> (object placed outside the clause, repeated in the clause by pronoun *him*)
>
> ***It****'s a great city,* ***Dublin****.*
> (subject *it* repeated after the clause as a full noun phrase)

96 Headers and **97 Tails**

Pragmatic markers are also normally considered to be outside of the clause structure. These include discourse markers (words and phrases indicating boundaries in the discourse or words that monitor the state of the discourse in some way), stance markers (words and phrases indicating a stance or attitude to a segment or section of discourse) and interjections:

> ***Well****, what are you going to do with it?*
> (discourse marker)
>
> *Susie does aerobics,* ***you know****.*
> (discourse marker)
>
> ***To be honest****, I don't think I'll go this year.*
> (stance marker)
>
> ***Frankly****, I couldn't care less.*
> (stance marker)
>
> ***Gosh****, that's very cheap.*
> (interjection)

105 Pragmatic markers

Vocatives (addressing someone directly with a name or title) are also considered to be outside of the clause structure:

*Would you like another drink, **Molly**?*

BASIC CLAUSE STRUCTURE 275

In this and the following sections we deal with the basic structure of clauses, focusing on simple declarative main clauses. A simple declarative clause consists of a subject phrase, a verb phrase, any object or predicative complement phrases and optional adjunct phrases.

Examples of simple declarative clauses

subject	verb	object	complement	adjunct
Everyone	*laughed.*			
She	*stole*	*some money.*		
He	*'s*		*my brother-in-law.*	
I	*travelled*			*for a year.*

Subject + verb is the minimal structure for declarative clauses.

CENTRAL CLAUSE FUNCTIONS 276

The following sections (**276–279**) deal principally with the central clause functions of subject, verb (focusing on verb complementation), object and predicative complement. Adjuncts, the other main function in the clause, are optional, mobile elements describing the circumstances of the action or event (➜ **280** below) and are peripheral to the structure of the clause.

A separate chapter deals with adjuncts (**319–337**).

Subject 276a

As indicated above (**269**), the clause may be divided into two main parts: the subject and the predicate.

The subject in an active-voice declarative clause is the noun phrase which precedes the verb, and which indicates the 'doer' or agent of an action, or the participant that an event or state happens to or refers to. The subject noun phrase agrees with the verb in person and number. The predicate in a declarative clause is the rest of the clause after the subject, where what the subject is, does or experiences is elaborated.

Examples of clauses showing subject and predicate

subject	predicate
My mother	*was a friend of hers.*
I	*ate too much last night.*
Their dog	*died last week.*
The garden	*looks lovely.*
They	*made him a member of their gang.*

The predicate consists of the verb phrase followed by objects and predicative complements (··❖ 278 and **279**).

The subject is most typically a noun phrase, though it may sometimes be a *wh*-nominal clause, or, very occasionally, a prepositional phrase. The subject (in green in the examples below) determines the person and number of the verb:

*My sister do**es** singing lessons.*
(noun phrase: determiner + noun)

*They ha**ve** a matter-of-fact approach to everything.*
(noun phrase: pronoun)

*Skiing do**es**n't appeal to me.*
(noun phrase: the gerund -*ing* form of a verb functioning as a noun)

*What we're doing **is** offering a scholarship.*
(*wh*-nominal clause)

A: *When shall I ring you?*
B: *After six **would** be best.*
(prepositional phrase; less common)

The subject comes before the verb in a simple declarative clause, and it is obligatory, except in high-context, informal situations where it may be unnecessary and omitted if it is obvious to the participants:

A: *Have you been back to the 'Shanghai Palace'?*
B: *Yeah, I went a few weeks ago. **It**'s a really nice restaurant.*
(~~Yeah, I went a few weeks ago. Is a really nice restaurant.~~)

A: ***Need** a hammer. Is there one in the garage?*
B: *Yeah, **think** so.*
(subjects are obvious to the speakers in the context; more explicit forms: I need a hammer/I think so)

··❖ **94 Situational ellipsis**

Subject pronouns are nominative in form: *I, you, he, she, it, one, we, they*.

Dummy subjects **276b**

Since there must be a subject, 'dummy' subjects sometimes have to be used. Dummy subjects, consisting of *it* or *there*, are subjects considered to have no semantic content but which simply fill the necessary subject slot:

***It**'s interesting the way these dresses are so similar.*
(~~Is interesting the way these dresses are so similar.~~)

***There** are many ways in which you can use that.*
(~~Are many ways in which you can use that.~~)

··❖ **45f**, **45g**.

Subject-verb concord 276c

Concord refers to the way words match each other in terms of number, tense, etc. A present tense verb shows concord of number with a third person singular subject by having a final -*s* on the verb:

> ***It*** *take**s** up a lot of energy.*
> (~~It take up a lot of energy.~~)
>
> ***My dad*** *work**s** there.*

In the present tense, all other persons are followed by the uninflected form of the verb:

> *We love Dublin.*
> (~~We loves Dublin.~~)
>
> *They never **watch** TV.*

In the past tense, all persons are followed by the past tense form of the verb, with no special indication of number. Only the verb *be* has special forms for different persons and number: *am, are, is, was, were*.

The head noun of a subject noun phrase determines number, not other nouns in the noun phrase:

> *The general **quality** of supermarket vegetables **is** very poor.*
> (~~The general quality of supermarket vegetables are very poor.~~)

⁘ also **177a Count nouns; 279c**

A–Z **34 *Each*; 38 *Every***

VERB COMPLEMENTATION 277

General 277a

Complementation is concerned with elements which follow the verb in a declarative clause and which are necessary to complete the meaning of the verb in some way.

Some verbs are complete in themselves and require no complementation (they are used as intransitive verbs), others require single complementation or dual complementation and are used as transitive verbs:

> *She **laughed**.*
> (intransitive: no complement needed; the verb is complete in itself)
>
> *I **spotted** a taxi.*
> (transitive: single complementation needed; the speaker must say what was spotted)
>
> *He **put** it in the rubbish bin.*
> (transitive: dual complementation needed; speaker must say what was put and where it was put)

The different patterns of complementation (→ below, the tables in **277c** and **277d**) are dealt with in greater detail in **281–289 Verb complementation**.

No complementation 277b

Some verbs require no complementation. This is known as intransitive use:

*She **died** last week.*

*House prices **have risen**.*

Single complementation 277c

Some verbs are used with single complementation. There are several common types, as shown in the table below.

Examples of single complementation

structure of complementation	example	function of complementation
noun phrase	*I hate **hospitals**.*	object
noun phrase	*I was **the winner**.*	subject complement (gives more information in the predicate about the subject)
adjective phrase	*She seemed **very nice**.*	
prepositional phrase	*It's **near the Boulevard**.*	predicative complements of place/measure/time
noun phrase	*He lives **next door**.*	
noun phrase	*It weighed **about two and a half pounds**.*	
prepositional phrase	*It lasted **for 18 hours**.*	
clause	*I know **you think** I'm crazy.*	object
clause	*I'm **where you should be**.*	subject complement

Dual complementation 277d

Some verbs require dual complementation. There are several common types, as shown in the table below.

Examples of dual complementation (direct objects in green)

structure of complementation	example	function of complementation	type of complementation
noun phrase + noun phrase	*He gave **me his number**.*	two objects, indirect and direct	ditransitive (i.e. two complements)
noun phrase + prepositional phrase	*She sent **a letter to Ivy Bolton**.*	object and prepositional complement	transitive-oblique (i.e. the recipient is referred to 'obliquely' in a prepositional phrase)

continued overleaf

continued

structure of complementation	example	function of complementation	type of complementation
noun phrase + noun phrase	*With more than 50 victories worldwide, golf has made **him a multi-millionaire**.*	direct object and object complement (gives more information about the object)	complex transitive
noun phrase + adjective phrase	*It made **me very ill**.*		
noun phrase + prepositional phrase	*I want to put **the picture over here**.*	direct object and prepositional phrase	locative (locates the object in terms of place or time)
noun phrase + clause	*She told **me what it was**.*	indirect object and direct object	clause (functioning as direct object alongside indirect object)

OBJECT 278

General 278a

Objects are most typically noun phrases. They follow the verb. They may be direct or indirect.

Direct objects indicate the person or thing that undergoes the action denoted by the verb, or the participant directly affected by the action:

*I like **that restaurant**.*

*She kicked **him**.*

*They stole **a van** and then they robbed **a bank**.*

Indirect objects indicate the recipient of a direct object. They are usually people or animals. An indirect object (bold) is always accompanied by a direct object (in green):

*They handed **me** a pile of forms.*

*Her mother sent **her** a cheque for her birthday.*

Direct objects 278b

Direct objects are always noun phrases (or their equivalents, e.g. nominal clauses). The direct object of an active clause can typically become the subject of a passive clause:

*Everybody hated **the teacher**.*
(active: *the teacher* is direct object)

***The teacher** was hated by everybody.*
(passive: *the teacher* is subject)

Examples of direct objects

subject	verb (+ indirect object where required)	direct object
She	*murdered*	***her husband**.*
He	*missed*	***this morning's class**.*
The police	*came and arrested*	***them**.*
He	*loves*	***cycling**.*
We	*gave her*	***the tickets**.*
I	*understand*	***what you mean**.*

✪ Adjuncts (in green) are not normally placed between the verb and the object:

> *Mum noticed **a difference** quite quickly.*
> (~~Mum noticed quite quickly a difference.~~)

However, in the case of longer phrases or clauses acting as objects, adjuncts may sometimes occur before the object:

> *It was a bright room and I noticed immediately **the door which opened on to the balcony**.*

↝ also **322**

Indirect objects 278c

The indirect object (IO) is the recipient of a direct object (DO), and is most typically an animate being:

> *She gave | $\overset{\text{IO}}{\textbf{him}}$ | $\overset{\text{DO}}{\text{a large envelope}}$.*

An indirect object always has a direct object accompanying it.

Examples of indirect objects

subject	verb	indirect object	direct object
Diana	*is going to buy*	***Martha***	*a present.*
I'll	*give*	***you***	*a ring.*
Jeremy	*had handed*	***her***	*a card.*

Indirect object or prepositional complement? 278d

With verbs such as *give*, *buy*, *send*, *hand*, when the recipient of the object is expressed as a full noun phrase and the object is an unstressed pronoun, the structure object + prepositional complement is used, not indirect object + direct object:

*I gave **it to Frank**.*
(~~I gave Frank it.~~)

*They handed **them to the teacher**.*
(~~They handed the teacher them.~~)

↝ **277d** on transitive-oblique in the table

COMPLEMENT 279

General 279a

Predicative complements are most typically noun phrases and adjective phrases which follow the verb and give further information about a subject (subject complement) or an object (object complement):

He's ***my brother-in-law***.
(subject complement: gives information about the subject)

The students seem ***pretty bright***.
(subject complement)

They labelled him ***a coward***.
(object complement: gives information about the object)

It made me ***seasick***.
(object complement)

Complements may also be adverb phrases or prepositional phrases:

She's ***upstairs***.

The bus stop is ***near the shop***.

The lecture is ***at three-thirty***.

Subject complements 279b

A predicative subject complement adds information about the subject:

He's ***a maths teacher***.
(gives information about the subject, *he*)

The subject complement here is not the same as an object. *He* and the *maths teacher* are the same person. Compare *He married/visited/interviewed a maths teacher*, where *maths teacher* is the object, and a different person from *he*.

Subject complements are most typically noun phrases or adjective phrases.

Examples of subject complements

subject	verb	subject complement	type
We	*became*	***friends***.	noun phrase
He	*died*	***a very rich man***.	noun phrase
She	*'s*	***very lucky***.	adjective phrase
That	*smells*	***good***.	adjective phrase

Verbs which do not take objects are followed by subject complements. These are verbs such as the copular verb *be*, sense verbs such as *feel*, *look*, *taste*, *smell*, *sound*, verbs of perception such as *seem* and *appear*, change-of-state verbs such as *become*, *grow*, *get*, *go*, *turn*.

Pronouns

Pronoun subject complements following the copular verb *be* are normally in the object form (*me*, *you*, *him*, *her*, *it*, *us*, *them*):

A: *Who did that?*
B: *It was* ***me****, sorry.*
(~~It was I, sorry.~~)

There's his mother now, that's ***her****.*
(~~…, that's she.~~)

However, in very formal styles, pronoun subject complements with *be* may occur in the subject form, especially in cleft sentences:

It was ***I*** *who told him to go.*
(compare the more informal: It was me who told him to go.)

Number concord with subject complements 279c

In informal spoken language, speakers sometimes have a choice whether to use a singular or plural verb when there is a difference in number between the subject and the complement:

singular subject	plural complement
Another topic of course ***is***	*words that have changed their meaning.*

[talking of a car that is proving difficult to sell]
The only good thing ***are*** *the tyres.*

Normally, and in more formal styles, the subject determines the number of the verb .

Apposition

Adjective and noun phrases separated from the rest of the clause by punctuation or intonation may function in a way very similar to a subject complement:

The crowd *pressed closer,* ***unwilling to miss a thing****.*

We*'d just sit there,* ***a couple trying to make it in the world****.*

Object complements 279d

An object complement adds information in the predicate about the object:

All that hard work has left me ***exhausted****.*
(gives information about the object, *me*)

An object complement is most typically a noun phrase or an adjective phrase. The object complement follows the object.

Examples of object complements

subject	verb	object	object complement	type
Ryan	*had (always) called*	*her*	***Katy**.*	noun phrase
He	*makes*	*me*	***happy**.*	adjective phrase
This	*makes*	*the time factor*	***even more pressing**.*	adjective phrase

··⁘ **473b Predicative complements** for marked (untypical) positions of complements

ADJUNCTS 280

All other elements in basic clauses which are not subjects, verbs, objects or complements may be classified as adjuncts. Adjuncts are peripheral, optional elements in the clause, and have a variety of functions. They most typically relate to the circumstances of an action or event, e.g. its time, place, manner, degree, frequency, intensity:

> ***In the summer** we **often** make our own ice cream.*
>
> *He wrote a letter **every day**.*
>
> *She was in love with him **in a big way**.*

Adjuncts can occupy a variety of positions in the clause, either front position (*In the summer,* above), mid position (*often*, above) or end position (*every day, in a big way*, above).

Adjuncts and complements 280a

Adjuncts modify the verb or the clause but, unlike complements, they do not complete the meaning of the verb and are not required elements:

> *It rained **in the afternoon**.*
> (adjunct: indicates the circumstances, i.e. the time when it rained)
>
> *I'll put it **in my diary** now.*
> (complement: completes the meaning of *put*, which must specify both an object and a location)

··⁘ **169c Complements versus postmodifiers** for the distinction between complements and modifiers

··⁘ **319–337 Adjuncts** for a full account of the different functions and positions of adjuncts

Verb complementation

Introduction 281
Complementation types 282
- Intransitive 282a
- Transitive 282b
- Copular verbs 282c
- Verbs which may be used transitively or intransitively 282d

Other intransitive constructions 283
- Pseudo-intransitive construction 283a
- Reciprocal verbs 283b
- Reflexive construction 283c

Types of complementation 284
Verb + direct object (monotransitive complementation) 285
- Monotransitive complementation and voice: active and passive 285a
- *That*-clause as direct object 285b
- *Wh*-clause as direct object 285c
- *Wh*-clause with infinitive as direct object 285d
- Non-finite clause with or without a new subject 285e
- Verbs normally only followed by *-ing* 285f
- *Hate*, *like*, *love* and *prefer* 285g
- Verbs with *-ing* or *to*-infinitive clauses and changes of meaning 285h
- Infinitive clause without a new subject 285i
- *To*-infinitive clause with a new subject 285j
- *-ing* clause with a new subject 285k

Verb + indirect object + direct object (ditransitive complementation) 286
- Verbs used with indirect + direct object construction 286a
- Indirect objects and passive voice 286b
- Indirect object + *that*-clause as direct object 286c
- Indirect object + *wh*-clause as direct object 286d
- Direct object + prepositional phrase 286e
- Direct object + *to*-infinitive clause 286f

Complex transitive complementation 287
- Direct object + object complement (adjective) 287a
- Direct object + object complement (noun) 287b
- Direct object + *to*-infinitive clause 287c
- Direct object + infinitive clause without *to* 287d
- Direct object + *-ing* clause 287e
- Panel: Verbs of perception with *-ing* or infinitive without *to* 287f
- Direct object + *-ed* clause 287g
- Direct object + prepositional complement of time or place (locative) 287h

Copular complementation 288
- Copular verbs 288a
- Adjective phrase complements 288b
- Noun phrase complements 288c
- Adverb phrase complements 288d
- Prepositional phrase complements 288e

Other aspects of complementation 289
- Complementation with *should* and subjunctive mood 289a
- *Consider*, *deem* and *find* 289b
- Complementation and prepositional verbs 289c

Verb complementation

INTRODUCTION 281

Verb complementation refers to items which are required to follow verbs of different types in order to complete the meaning of the verb. These items may be noun phrases, adjectives, prepositional phrases or whole clauses, functioning as objects or complements.

COMPLEMENTATION TYPES 282

Intransitive 282a

Some verbs are complete in themselves and do not require any further elements to make their meaning complete; although there may be further elements in the sentence, these are not essential. This is called intransitive complementation. It involves verbs such as:

appear
arrive
begin
break
come
cough
decrease
die
disappear
drown
fall
go
happen
increase
laugh
lie (tell an untruth)
matter
rain
rise
sneeze
snow
stop
swim
wait
work

*She **died** when she was about twenty-one.*

*The passenger window closed and the car **disappeared** up the driveway.*

*Nothing **happened**.*

*She **laughed** loudly.*

*It **rained**.*

Transitive 282b

Some verbs, when used in the active voice, require further information to complete their meaning and are followed by objects. This is called transitive complementation. In the examples below, the verbs are in bold, the objects are in green. Everyday verbs of this type include:

ask
believe
blame
bring
buy
carry
catch
cut
describe
do
enjoy
expect
find
forgive
get
give
help
hold
keep
know
like
lose
love
make
mean
need
offer
produce
put
raise
receive
remember
say
see
suggest
take
use
want
watch

*I'll have to **get** a new battery for it.*

***Raise** your hand if you can hear me.*

***Take** what you want.*

Copular verbs 282c

Verbs such as *be, seem, become, feel, remain, smell, taste* are followed by predicative complements, in the form of adjective phrases, noun phrases, adverb phrases or prepositional phrases which give more information about the subject. These verbs are called copular verbs. In the examples, the verbs are in bold, the predicative complements are in green:

*It **seems** strange, doesn't it really.*

*You **are** the boss.*

*The cat**'s** in the garden.*

Verbs which may be used transitively or intransitively 282d

Few verbs must always be used intransitively, and many verbs can be used both intransitively or transitively. Sometimes the meaning remains the same whether the verb is used transitively or intransitively, but sometimes there is a change of relationship between the verb and the subject.

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

No change in meaning

Some verbs may be used with or without an object with no change in meaning. Such verbs include:

approach
drink
drive
eat
enter
help
leave
pass
play
win
write

Examples of verbs with and without an object – same meaning

with object (in green)	**without object**
*People make extra money by **driving** taxis.*	*You **drive** along here about two miles.*
*Can I **help** you?*	*How can I **help**?*
*All I need to do is **win** the lottery.*	*You can't **win** all the time.*

Change of subject-verb relationship

Some verbs may be used with or without an object, but the subject-verb relationship is different in each case. Such verbs include:

begin
change
close (down)
decrease
drop
increase
open
slam
turn
walk
work

When these verbs are used with an object, the subject is the agent (doer) of the action. When they are used without an object, the action or event happens to the subject.

Examples of verbs with and without an object – different meanings

with object (in green)	**without object**
subject (underlined) is agent of the action/event	**the action/event happens to the subject (underlined)**
*We **closed** the door and they knocked later.*	*The door **closed**.*
*Sony has **increased** overseas production.*	*Worldwide sales have **increased** by 14%.*
*She **walks** the dog every morning.*	*He **walks** everywhere. I don't think he can drive.*
*How do you **work** this photocopier?*	*The photocopier is not **working**.*

OTHER INTRANSITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS 283

Pure intransitive constructions are those where there is a subject and no requirement of any further elements. However, some intransitive constructions do include information about subject-object relationships, or have parallel transitive constructions with the same meaning.

These constructions include the pseudo-intransitive construction, reciprocal verbs and reflexive verbs.

Pseudo-intransitive construction

283a

Verbs which are normally transitive also sometimes occur intransitively in clauses where the subject is in reality the recipient of the action or event, and where the agent is not mentioned. This type of intransitivity is called pseudo-intransitive. Verbs used in this way include:

clean
close
cook
drink
drive
fold
iron
keep
open
pack
photograph
print
read
sell
store
wash

These verbs are typically complemented by adverb phrases or prepositional phrases:

> *This blouse hasn't* ***washed*** *very well.*
>
> [*The Independent* is a newspaper]
> *Cusack said, 'One other thing: 'The Independent' are carrying a shortened version of the Choltitz profile of you, Prime Minister. It* ***reads*** *very well indeed.'*
>
> *Jack Pritchards' books* ***sell*** *by the million.*

Sell also occurs with an object in this type of construction, usually referring to number or quantity:

> [referring to a pop music record]
> *It eventually* ***sold*** *about 500,000 copies so I got a silver disc.*

Reciprocal verbs

283b

Reciprocal verbs such as *divorce*, *meet*, *marry* can have the same meaning as their transitively constructed equivalents:

> *Frank and Diane* ***met*** *in 1979.*
> (compare the transitive equivalents: Frank met Diane in 1979./Diane met Frank in 1979.)
>
> *Lily and Tom* ***married*** *after a brief courtship.*
> (compare: Lily married Tom … Tom married Lily …)

Reflexive construction

283c

A small number of verbs may be used intransitively or with a reflexive pronoun object, though meaning changes occur when the verb is reflexive (→ **202 Reflexive pronouns**). These include *brace*, *dress*, *undress*, *wash*:

> *Dolly, somewhat excited, had* ***dressed*** *and done her hair with care.*
>
> *He dispatched a messenger to the stables to inquire whether the coachman was there; and while the man was gone,* ***dressed himself*** *very hurriedly.*

[*brace* here means to tense one's body ready for a negative physical impact]
*Sturr **braced**, as if for a fight.*

[*brace oneself* has a more abstract meaning of being mentally prepared for something negative]
*She took a deep breath and **braced herself**.*

TYPES OF COMPLEMENTATION 284

Complementation primarily concerns transitive and copular constructions, since the intransitive verb construction requires no complementation. There are four general types of complementation:

1 Monotransitive:

verb + direct object

2 Ditransitive:

verb + indirect object and direct object
verb + direct object + prepositional phrase (the transitive-oblique construction; → **286e**)

3 Complex transitive:

verb + direct object + object complement
verb + direct object + locative complement

4 Copular:

copular verb (e.g. *be*, *look*, *seem*) + subject complement

1 Monotransitive complementation

examples (direct object in green)	structures
*I **love** fish.*	noun phrase as direct object
*He **thinks** [that] I'm right.*	*that*-clause as direct object
*We **understand** what you're saying.* *How did you **know** who to write to?*	*wh*-clause as direct object; *wh*-clause with *to*-infinitive as direct object
*They **decided** to buy it.* *We **love** buying old furniture.*	non-finite clause as direct object (*to*-infinitive or *-ing* clause, depending on verb)

2 Ditransitive complementation

examples (direct object in green, indirect object etc. underlined)	structures
*She **gave** me her email address.*	noun phrases as indirect and direct objects
*We **told** her [that] she couldn't have them.*	noun phrase as indirect object + *that*-clause as direct object
*Oh, don't **ask** me what it is.*	noun phrase as indirect object + *wh*-clause as direct object
*I **offered** my condolences to the family.*	noun phrase as direct object + prepositional phrase as oblique complement
*Who **taught** you to play the guitar?*	noun phrase as direct object + *to*-infinitive clause

3 Complex transitive complementation

examples (direct object in green, complement underlined)	structures
*It used to **drive** me crazy.*	noun phrase as direct object + adjective phrase as object complement
*She used to **call** her Aunt Susie.*	noun phrase as direct object + noun phrase as object complement
*I certainly **believe** it to be very rare.*	noun phrase as direct object + *to*-infinitive clause as object complement
*I **heard** her scream.*	noun phrase as direct object + infinitive without *to* as object complement
*I **noticed** them doing that.*	noun phrase as direct object + *-ing* clause as object complement
*Let's **get** this stuff washed.*	noun phrase as direct object + *-ed* clause as object complement
*You could **put** the water in a bottle.*	noun phrase as direct object + prepositional phrase as locative complement

4 Copular complementation

examples (complement underlined)	structures
*It **seems** silly.*	adjective phrase as subject complement
*She**'s** my cousin.*	noun phrase as subject complement
*My husband's office **is** upstairs.*	adverb phrase as subject complement
*It **was** on the floor.*	prepositional phrase as subject complement

The next sections, **285–288**, deal with these types of complementation.

VERB + DIRECT OBJECT (MONOTRANSITIVE COMPLEMENTATION) 285

When a verb requires a direct object, the structure is called monotransitive complementation.

The direct object is typically a noun phrase, but it may also be a clause.

When the direct object is a pronoun, the object form (*me, you, him, her, it, us, them*) is used.

- Noun phrase as direct object:

  *I **took** the last piece of bread.*

  *Do you **remember** her from last year?*

- Clause as direct object:

  *I've **heard** (that) you're retiring.*

  *You always **know** what I'm thinking.*

  *I can't **remember** if it was last month or the month before.*

  *I **remember** staying a couple of nights in the village.*

Monotransitive complementation and voice: active and passive 285a

Most verbs which can be used with a direct object in the active voice may also be used in the passive.

Examples of monotransitive verbs in active and passive voice

active	passive
The postman ***brought*** *it and apologised.*	*Our luggage* ***was brought*** *to the hotel.*
Do you want to ***keep*** *the menu?*	*Random access memory is a temporary storage area where information* ***is kept*** *while the computer is on.*
I've just ***started*** *a camera course at university.*	*The fire* ***was started*** *deliberately.*

The most common verbs of this type are:

begin
believe
bring
call
carry
close
cut
do
end
enjoy
expect
feel
find
follow
hear
help
hold
keep
know
like
lose
love
make
mean
meet
move
need
pass
receive
remember
say
see
start
study
take
use
visit
want
wash
watch
win

Fit, *have*, *lack*, *resemble* and *suit* do not allow the passive construction:

I ***had*** *a weird dream*.
(~~A weird dream was had (by me).~~)

That ***suits*** *you*.
(~~You're suited by that.~~)

The passive voice gives the speaker/writer the option of omitting reference to the agent of an action. Thus the passive voice alternative of the following newspaper headline presents two options:

PRIME MINISTER ANNOUNCES NEW IMMIGRATION RESTRICTIONS
(active)

NEW IMMIGRATION RESTRICTIONS ANNOUNCED BY PRIME MINISTER
(passive with agent phrase)

NEW IMMIGRATION RESTRICTIONS ANNOUNCED
(passive with agent omitted)

also **481 Agent phrases** and **482 Passives without an agent phrase**

That-clause as direct object 285b

A class of verbs with reporting functions connected with speech and thought can occur with *that*-clauses as direct object. The most common verbs are:

- *accept*
- *admit*
- *agree*
- *announce*
- *argue*
- *assume*
- *believe*
- *bet*
- *check*
- *claim*
- *comment*
- *complain*
- *conclude*
- *confess*
- *confirm*
- *consider*
- *decide*
- *deny*
- *discover*
- *doubt*
- *expect*
- *explain*
- *feel*
- *find*
- *forget*
- *gather*
- *guarantee*
- *guess*
- *hear*
- *hint*
- *hold*
- *hope*
- *imagine*
- *imply*
- *infer*
- *insist*
- *know*
- *learn*
- *mean*
- *mention*
- *notice*
- *predict*
- *presume*
- *pretend*
- *promise*
- *protest*
- *prove*
- *realise*
- *recall*
- *reckon*
- *recognise*
- *remark*
- *remember*
- *repeat*
- *reply*
- *report*
- *say*
- *see*
- *show*
- *state*
- *suggest*
- *suppose*
- *suspect*
- *swear*
- *think*
- *understand*
- *warn*
- *write*

I couldn't ***accept*** *that he was never going to come back.*

Some of the girls ***complained*** *yesterday that we're not cleaning the inside of the fridges.*

> *I'd* ***forgotten*** *that you'd rung somebody up.*
>
> *Her therapist* ***held*** *that it was natural and healthy for human beings to assume that bad things happened only to other people in remote areas.*
>
> *So, every time, I* ***remark*** *that he's losing weight.*
>
> *I can* ***understand*** *that she must have felt she was under some pressure.*

That is very frequently omitted in such constructions, especially in informal spoken language. Omission of *that* is particularly common after *think*:

> *I* ***think*** *he's bored with his job.*

Omission of *that* is also common where the subject of the reporting clause and the reported clause are the same:

> *The guy now* ***claims*** *he didn't do it.*
>
> *I* ***hope*** *I've got the right size. It looked a bit big.*
>
> *He* ***reckons*** *he's made a mistake.*

There is a tendency to retain *that* in more formal contexts. The retention of *that* is especially evident when the reporting verb is in the passive, and in coordinated reported clauses:

> [from a book about volcanoes]
> *In chapter three* ***it was mentioned that*** *the effect of getting large volumes of water mixed up in a volcanic eruption is to make it more violent.*
>
> *We knew very quickly* ***that*** *we could talk to each other about anything* ***and that*** *we'd be there for each other.*

Wh-clause as direct object 285c

Many of the verbs which are used with *that*-clauses (→ **285b**) may also be used with *wh*-clauses as direct objects. The most common verbs of this type are:

anticipate
arrange
ascertain
ask
care
check
choose
confirm
consider
decide
depend
discover
discuss
doubt
enquire
establish
explain
find out
forget
guess
hear
imagine
inquire
judge
know
learn
mind
notice
observe
predict

prove
realise
remember
say
see
show
tell
think
wonder

*Could I possibly **ask** why you're unable to attend?*

*You have to **decide** whether or not you want it.*

*I'll just **find out** who you need to speak to.*

*Nobody can **predict** what's going to happen in life.*

[*tell* here means predict]
*You can never **tell** what he's going to do next.*

Wh-clause with infinitive as direct object 285d

Many of the verbs which can be followed by a *wh*-clause (→ **285c**) can also be followed by a *wh*-clause with *to*-infinitive. The most common verbs are:

arrange
ask
check
choose
consider
decide
discover
discuss
enquire
establish
explain
find out
forget
imagine
inquire
judge
know
learn
notice
observe
remember
say
see
show
tell
think
wonder

*Can you **explain** how to use this machine?*

*I'm just **wondering** what to say to you.*

*The committee reports to the Head of Department, who can then **choose** whether to take action.*

Non-finite clause with or without a new subject 285e

Non-finite *-ing* clauses and *to*-infinitive clauses occur as direct objects. The non-finite clause may occur with or without a new subject.

- Same subject for verb and complement clause:

  *She's **regretted** selling the house.*

  *I'd **hate** to swim in the Thames.*

- Different subject in complement clause:

  *Didn't he **like** you to sit in the room?*

  [*a little sip* means a small amount of a drink]
  *You don't **mind** me having a little sip, do you?*

Note that the new subject is in the object form. (→ also **285f**)

Verbs normally only followed by *-ing* 285f

A number of common, everyday verbs are normally only followed by the *-ing* form as opposed to the infinitive:

*Haven't you **finished** pack**ing** yet?*
(~~Haven't you finished to pack yet?~~)

*They **keep** chang**ing** the timetable and it confuses everybody.*
(~~They keep to change …~~)

*I **fancy** do**ing** some evening classes.*
(~~I fancy to do some evening classes.~~)

The most common verbs only followed by *-ing* are:

admit
adore
appreciate
avoid
burst out (e.g. *laughing*)
can't help[1]
commence
consider[2]
contemplate
defer
delay
deny
detest
dislike
dread
endure
enjoy
(can) face
fancy
feel like
finish
give up
imagine
involve
keep (on)
lie
loathe
mention
mind
miss
object
postpone
practise
prevent
put off
recall
report
resent
risk
sit
stand (be on one's feet)
can't stand (can't bear)
suggest

---

[1] *Can't help* may also be followed by *but* plus the base form of the verb: *You couldn't help **but laugh** at it.*

[2] In the meaning of 'think about doing something': *Have you **considered** contact**ing** Mr Stanfield?*

I really ***appreciated*** *hav**ing** met them all before.*

He accepted that he had been abusive but ***denied*** *threaten**ing** to kill the barman.*

I don't really ***feel like*** *go**ing** out tonight.*

Fewer students from poor backgrounds will be ***put off*** *go**ing** to university.*

A different subject may occur with some of these verbs. If it is a pronoun, the new subject is in the object form:

I can just ***imagine*** *him say**ing** that.*

*I didn't mind them play**ing** in my garden.*

Do you ***miss*** *him be**ing** around?*

In formal styles, the new subject may occur as a possessive form:

You mean she would ***object to*** *his com**ing** here if she knew?*
(less formal: … object to him coming here …)

Hate, *like*, *love* and *prefer* 285g

Hate, *like*, *love* and *prefer* can be followed either by *-ing* or by a *to*-infinitive. The difference in meaning is often not great, but *-ing* emphasises the action or event in itself, while the infinitive places the emphasis more on the results of the action or event.

The *-ing* form often implies enjoyment (or lack of it), and the infinitive is often used for expressing preferences:

I really like my teacher and I like my class. I ***like being*** *in year five.*
(emphasis on the process itself and enjoyment of it)

I like home-made soup. I ***like to make*** *a panful and then it lasts me a couple of days.*
(emphasis more on result and the habit or preference)

However, when these verbs are used with *would* or *should*, only the infinitive is used, not the *-ing* form:

I ***would*** *like* ***to go*** *to Spain, or somewhere else, such as Italy.*
(~~I would like going to Spain …~~)

In the case of *prefer*, if alternatives are stated, they are linked by the preposition *to*, not infinitive *to*:

Would you ***prefer writing*** *to* ***telephoning*** *if you wanted to put something across?*
(~~Would you prefer writing to telephone if you wanted to put something across?~~)

Verbs with *-ing* or *to*-infinitive clauses and changes of meaning 285h

Some verbs have a different meaning depending on whether they are followed by *-ing* or *to*-infinitive. These include *forget, go on, mean, need, regret, remember, stop, try, want*.

Remember and *forget* with the infinitive refer to necessary actions and whether they are done or not:

I must ***remember to ask*** *the secretary for his phone number.*

Oh, what I ***forgot to bring*** *was the candle.*

With *-ing* they refer to memories of the past:

Do you ***remember going*** *to that place in Manchester?*
(Do you remember when we went to that place …?)

I'll never ***forget landing*** *at Hong Kong airport for the first time.*
(I'll never forget when we landed …)

Examples of contrasts in meaning between *-ing* and *to*-infinitive

verb	*-ing*	*to*-infinitive
go on	*She* ***went on sleeping*** *as the sun crept up.* (she was sleeping, and continued)	*Some people do* ***go on to have*** *two, three, or even four face-lifts but this is rare.* (after they have had the first face-lift, they then have a second, etc.)
mean	*Getting the earlier flight* ***means leaving*** *here at 6.* (involves/necessitates leaving here at 6)	*I didn't* ***mean to offend*** *her.* (intend to offend her)
regret	*You're really* ***regretting volunteering*** *now, aren't you?* (you are sorry for what has already happened)	*However, I* ***regret to say*** *that I think his judgments on the EC … ought not to be so readily accepted.* (polite form meaning: I am sorry for what I am about to say/do)
stop	***Stop saying*** *sorry!* (you are saying sorry all the time; do not do it any longer)	*Now and then, one of the players* ***stopped to light*** *his pipe.* (stopped playing in order to light his pipe)
try	[about an alarm clock that does not seem to work] ***Try re-setting*** *it.* (re-set it as an experiment, to see if it works)	*I will* ***try to remember*** *not to disturb you.* (I will attempt not to disturb you)

Infinitive clause without a new subject 285i

The most common verbs which may be followed by an infinitive clause without a new subject are:

afford
agree
aim
arrange
ask
attempt
(can't) bear
begin
choose
claim
continue
decide
demand
fail
forget

hate
help
hope
intend
learn
like
long
love
manage
mean
need
neglect
offer
plan
prepare
pretend
promise
propose
refuse
remember
(can't) stand
start
try
want
wish

They couldn't ***afford*** *to put the heating on.*

But they are unlikely to forgive the company for ***failing*** *to warn them so many things could go wrong.*

I ***managed*** *to make it sound a lot better than it was.*

Well, Laura, I can't ***promise*** *to be up at four or five in the morning.*

To-infinitive clause with a new subject 285j

Choose, hate, like, love, need, prefer and *want* are the most common verbs which may be followed by a new subject + *to*-infinitive clause. If it is a pronoun, the new subject is in the object form:

She'd ***hate*** *me to remember just that sort of thing.*

They just ***wanted*** *us to be happy.*

-ing clause with a new subject 285k

Hate, like, love, mind and *remember* are the most common verbs which may be followed by a new subject + *-ing* clause. If it is a pronoun, the new subject is in the object form:

I used to ***love*** *him coming to visit us.*

I can ***remember*** *them asking me to carry a bottle of water.*

VERB + INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT (DITRANSITIVE COMPLEMENTATION) 286

Ditransitive complementation refers to combinations of direct and indirect objects, and direct objects and oblique complements (→ **286e**).

Some verbs are followed by an indirect and a direct object. An indirect object always has a direct object accompanying it.

An indirect object (IO) is the entity affected by (i.e. the recipient or beneficiary of) the direct object (DO). The indirect object comes before the direct object:

S V IO DO
He | gave | me | his number.

Verbs used with indirect + direct object construction 286a

Common verbs which can be used with an indirect object + direct object construction include:

allow
ask
bring
charge
envy
find
fine
forgive
give
grant
hand
leave
lend
make
offer
order
owe
pay
promise
read
refuse
reserve
save
send
serve
show
spare
teach
tell
throw
wish

In these examples, the indirect object is underlined, the direct object is in green:

*He **brought** them some cakes.*

*I **lent** my niece £500.*

*I **offered** him a drink.*

*I **showed** you his photo, remember?*

278 for a full account of direct and indirect objects

Indirect objects and passive voice 286b

Some verbs allow two passive voice alternatives for active clauses with indirect + direct object.

Examples of alternative passive constructions

example	type
IO DO	
*They **gave** the children presents.*	active
***The children** were given presents.*	passive alternative **1** (IO becomes subject)
***Presents** were given to the children.*	passive alternative **2** (DO becomes subject)

Passive alternative 1 (indirect object becomes subject) is the more common.

Verbs which allow alternative passives include:

bring
give
grant
hand
leave
lend

offer
owe
pay
promise
read
send
serve
show
teach
tell
throw

> ***We*** *were paid lots of money.*
> (less frequent: Lots of money was paid [to us].)
> (active alternatives: They paid us lots of money./They paid lots of money to us.)
>
> ***I*** *was taught English by her father.*
> (possible, but less common or likely, alternative: English was taught to me by her father.)

The verbs in **286e** do not have alternative passives, and only the direct object noun phrase, not the noun phrase which is the complement of the preposition, may become the subject of a passive alternative:

> ***They*** *were robbed of all their belongings.*
> (possible active clause: Somebody robbed them of all their belongings.)
> (~~All their belongings were robbed [of] them.~~)
>
> ***She*** *was charged with murder.*
> (possible active clause: They charged her with murder.)
> (~~Murder was charged [with] her.~~)

Indirect object + *that*-clause as direct object 286c

Some verbs occur with an indirect object (underlined in the examples) plus a *that*-clause direct object (in green in the examples). For the following verbs the indirect object is obligatory:

assure
convince
inform
notify
persuade
remind
tell

> *The bank manager* ***convinced*** *them that it was not a good time to start a business.*
> (~~The bank manager convinced that it was not a good time to start a business.~~)
>
> *Remind her that the committee meeting is on Monday.*

With other verbs, the indirect object is optional. A subjunctive verb form (i.e. subject + base form of the verb for all persons) may also occur. These include:

advise
ask
bet
order
promise
show
teach
warn
write

> *Kumara left a suicide note* ***asking*** *that he* ***be*** *buried with his most cherished possessions.*
> (subjunctive verb form *be*)

*This graph **shows** that clocks have got more accurate over the years.*

*They **warned** that this could completely transform the countryside.*

Some verbs allow complementation with a prepositional phrase (underlined in the examples below) plus a *that*-clause direct object (in green in the examples below). These include:

acknowledge
admit
announce
complain
confess
explain
mention
point out
prove
remark
report
say
state
propose
recommend
suggest

*He did not return to his seat but **announced** to the general assembly that he was very tired.*

*I want an education, **to prove** to society that I am no longer dangerous.*

*I **suggested** to Charlie that he **come** with me but he turned pale at the idea.* (subjunctive verb form *come*)

Indirect object + *wh*-clause as direct object 286d

Advise, ask, inform, remind, show and *tell* may be used with an indirect object (underlined) and a *wh*-clause as direct object (in green):

*I **asked** him why he came.*

*Could you please **advise** me what I should do.*

[lecturer to students at beginning of lecture]
*Just to **remind** you what we covered last time, …*

Advise, ask, instruct, remind, show, teach, tell and *warn* may be followed by an indirect object (underlined) and a *wh*-clause in the infinitive (in green):

*I'll **ask** Anne what to wear.*

*The pastry chef **showed** him how to create exotic desserts.*

*They should have **told** us what to do if we were dissatisfied.*

Direct object + prepositional phrase 286e

Give to, send to, etc.

Many of the verbs in **286a** can also be used with an object noun phrase and a prepositional phrase with *to*. This construction is sometimes called transitive oblique. The verbs are:

bring
give
grant
hand
leave
lend
offer
owe
pay
promise
read
send
serve
show
teach
tell
throw

In these examples, the direct object is in green, the prepositional phrase is underlined:

*George **handed** the bottle to William.*

*She **sent** an email to him.*

*I **taught** English to adults.*

Other verbs may not be used in this way (direct object in green, indirect object underlined):

*I **envied** him his success.*
(~~I envied his success to him.~~)

The choice between using an indirect + direct object structure or an object + prepositional phrase (oblique complement) depends on what the speaker wishes to focus on in the message. As end position in English is generally associated with greater focus, either the direct object (in green) of the verb can be put into focus or the recipient of the direct object (underlined):

*George **handed** William the bottle.*
(end-focus on *the bottle*)

*George **handed** the bottle to William.*
(end-focus on *William*)

However, where two pronouns are involved, the prepositional (oblique) construction is often preferred to an indirect object + direct object:

*She wrote her name and address on the card and **gave** it to me.*
(or: … and gave me it; or, more informal: … and gave it me)

*I think my mother **gave** them to them.*
(preferred to: … gave them them)

→ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

Make for, save for

Not all the verbs in **286a** can be used with the oblique construction with a *to*-prepositional phrase. Some verbs are followed by a noun phrase (in green in the examples below) together with a prepositional phrase with *for* (underlined in the examples below). These include:

find
make
order
reserve
save
spare

*Her mother **made** me a lovely sweater.*

*Her mother **made** a lovely sweater for me.*
(~~Her mother made a lovely sweater to me.~~)

*I'm going to be late. Can you **save** me a seat?*

Can you save a seat for me?
(~~Can you save a seat to me?~~)

Accuse of, congratulate on, provide with

Other verbs have special prepositions associated with them and are only used in the oblique construction, not with indirect and direct objects. These verbs include:

accuse of
charge with
compare with
congratulate on
convince of
deprive of
inform of
interest in
introduce to
persuade of
prevent from
protect from
provide with
refer to
relieve of
remind of
rob of
sentence to
serve with
subject to
suspect of
tell about
thank for
treat to
warn of

*The police **charged** him with dangerous driving.*

*Steven **introduced** him to me.*
(~~Steven introduced me him.~~)

*She said she'd **provide** me with a list of all managers.*
(compare: She said she'd give me a list of all managers.)

*The steward tried to **relieve** me of my overcoat.*

*She **thanked** her colleagues for all the cards and presents.*

*I want to **treat** you to a drink.*

Direct object + *to*-infinitive clause 286f

Some verbs may be used with a direct object (in green in the examples below) followed by a *to*-infinitive clause (underlined in the examples below). These verbs include:

advise
ask
beg
challenge
command
direct
forbid
implore
instruct
invite
order
persuade
recommend
remind
request
teach
tell
urge

*Did they ever **advise** you to go and see a doctor?*

*Sally **invited** her to stay lots of times.*

COMPLEX TRANSITIVE COMPLEMENTATION 287

Complex transitive complementation occurs when a direct object is followed by an object complement or a locative complement (→ **287h**).

Direct object + object complement (adjective) 287a

Many common verbs may be used with a direct object (in green in the examples below) followed by an adjective phrase acting as object complement (underlined in the examples below). These include:

call
consider
declare
drive
find
get
hold
keep
leave
like
make
prefer
send
think
turn
want

*I must **keep** dad's dinner warm.*

*The whole of mankind **makes** me angry.*

*We **found** the garden slightly disappointing.*

Direct object + object complement (noun) 287b

Some verbs may be followed by a direct object (in green in the examples below) and a noun phrase object complement (underlined in the examples below).

In the sentence *He made her a cake*, *her* is the indirect object and *a cake* is the direct object. In the sentence *He made her a rich woman*, *her* and *a rich woman* refer to the same person; *a rich woman* is the object complement.

Verbs which can be followed by a direct object and a noun phrase object complement include:

appoint
baptize
call
christen
consider
crown
declare
deem
elect
find
hold
keep
leave
make
name
proclaim
pronounce
rate
think
vote

If I never saw them again, I would not ***consider*** *it a loss.*

They ***declared*** *the festival a great success.*

You will, I think, ***find*** *it a comfort in the years ahead.*

You've done these different things and it has ***made*** *you a slightly different person.*

Direct object + *to*-infinitive clause 287c

A number of verbs may be used with a direct object (in green in the examples below) followed by a *to*-infinitive clause acting as the object complement (underlined in the examples below). These verbs include:

allow
announce
appoint
assume
believe
condemn
consider
declare
elect
enable
encourage
entitle
equip
expect
feel
find
force
get
help
imagine
inspire
intend
know
lead
mean
oblige
permit
presume
proclaim
prompt
reckon
report
require
suppose
take
think
tip
understand

> *Heathcote Williams quite simply loathes the automobile. He **believes** it to be the world's prime source of disease, pollution and war and a destroyer of mind, nature and morality.*
>
> [*Pickfords* is a removal company]
> *A Pickfords van ploughed its way past me en route from Cadiz to Marbella. I **imagined** it to be transporting a retired English couple's belongings.*
>
> *She had never **intended** her work to cause such controversy.*

These constructions can be paralleled in the passive voice, especially with reporting verbs:

> *He **is believed** to have arrived in Moscow in the last two weeks.*
>
> *It has **been known** to happen.*
>
> *The polluted waters **were reported** to be moving out to sea.*

Direct object + infinitive clause without *to* 287d

Verbs followed by a direct object (in green in the examples below) and an infinitive clause without *to* (underlined in the examples below) include:

feel
have
hear
help
let
make
notice
overhear
see
watch

> *I **had** him mend that fence for me.*
>
> *There's a law firm that will **help** you make a claim against the travel agent if you've had a bad holiday.*
>
> *Hilary used to come down here and **watch** me bake cakes.*

Direct object + *-ing* clause 287e

Verbs followed by a direct object (in green in the examples below) and an *-ing* clause (underlined in the examples below) include:

catch
discover
feel
find
get
have
hear
leave
notice
observe
overhear
see
smell
spot
watch

*I **found** her bathing the baby, which was lovely.*

*At ten o'clock every Friday they'd **hear** someone walking up the stairs.*

*My next-door neighbour actually said to me that the girl next door to her had **overheard** them talking about breaking into this house on the corner.*

Verbs of perception with *-ing* or infinitive without *to* 287f

Feel, hear, overhear, notice, see and *watch* may be used with *-ing* or the infinitive without *to*. When used with *-ing*, the emphasis is on the action or event in progress; when used with the infinitive without *to*, the emphasis is on the action or event seen as a whole, or as completed:

> *Jeff **saw** something **going** on, so he ran out.*
> (emphasis is on the event in progress at that moment)
> (preferred to: Jeff saw something go on, so he ran out.)
>
> *The girl next door to her had **overheard** them **talking** about breaking into this house on the corner.*
> (she heard the conversation in progress, but probably not the whole conversation)
>
> *I've not **heard** him **mention** Glasgow yet.*
> (emphasis on the event as a whole, or absence of it)
>
> *In the airport I walked from the coffee bar without paying the bill after I **saw** a mouse **run** unseen by anyone across the bar top.*
> (emphasis on the whole, completed event)

Direct object + *-ed* clause 287g

The following verbs may occur with a direct object (in green in the examples below) plus *-ed* (*-ed* participle) clause (underlined in the examples below):

feel (oneself)
find
get
have
leave
like
need
want

*I keep meaning to **get** it fixed.*

*He **had** a few things stolen.*

*They **want** him buried there.*

A–Z **51 *Make*; 75 *Want***

Direct object + prepositional complement of time or place (locative) 287h

Some verbs, especially verbs of placement and direction, take a direct object (in green in the examples below) and a prepositional phrase locating the object in terms of time or place (locative complement) (underlined in the examples below). Such verbs include:

bring
drive
lay
lead
place
put
send
set
show
stand
take

*Edith **led** her through her own front door.*

*Did you **put** your stuff in our bedroom?*

*He **took** me to a club in Manchester.*

COPULAR COMPLEMENTATION 288

Copular verbs 288a

Copular verbs describe states (e.g. *appear, be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste*) or changing states/results (e.g. *become, get, go, grow, turn out*).

Copular verbs link subjects with subject complements. Subject complements may be adjective phrases, noun phrases, adverb phrases or prepositional phrases.

Adjective phrase complements 288b

Adjective phrase complements (in green) of copular verbs are very common:

- State:

  *They don't **seem** very happy up there, you know.*

  *He **was** too clever for them.*

  *It **looked** a bit big.*

- Change of state/result:

  *Leeds city centre has **become** better.*

  *What makes them **go** pink?*

  *It always **turns out** black.*

- Adjective complements and collocation:

  Some adjective complements collocate strongly with particular verbs, and the verb has a similar function to a copular verb:

  *We **fell** silent as we tried to understand what he was saying.*

  *He just **lay** flat on the bed, without moving.*

  *They won't succeed. Oh no. We'll **stand** firm.*

Other expressions of this kind include *blush red*, *die young*, *freeze solid*, *keep quiet*, *lie awake*, *loom large*, *slam shut*.

→ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

Noun phrase complements 288c

Many verbs which allow an adjective phrase complement also allow a noun phrase complement (in green). These include *appear, be, become, feel, look, remain, seem* and *sound*:

*Samantha**'s not** my friend.*

*Well, it **became** a liability.*

*This **looks** a delicious meal.*

*He **seemed** a nice enough lad.*

Some verbs which allow an adjective complement do not normally occur with a noun phrase complement. These include *get*, *go*, *grow*, *smell* and *taste*.

Adverb phrase complements 288d

Be, *get*, *lie*, *live*, *remain* and *stay* can all be used with adverb phrase complements (in green):

*Amy**'s** upstairs, isn't she?*

*I'll wait till I **get** home, I think.*

Prepositional phrase complements 288e

Be, *get*, *lie*, *live*, *remain*, *stand* and *stay* can all be used with prepositional phrase complements (in green):

*Your glasses **are** on the table. Don't forget them.*

*A memorial to him **stands** in the park which also bears his name.*

OTHER ASPECTS OF COMPLEMENTATION 289

Complementation with *should* and subjunctive mood 289a

A group of verbs with meanings connected with requests and desires can be used with a *that*-clause (in green in the examples below) and the modal verb *should*, or with a subjunctive form. The subjunctive form uses the base form of the verb, and has no third person -*s* in present time reference.

Both forms are associated with formal styles, with the subjunctive form being associated with very formal styles. The verbs include:

agree
arrange
ask
beg
concede
demand
determine
ensure
insist
intend
prefer
propose

recommend
request
require
stipulate
suggest

Robert had ***arranged*** *that the visitors* ***should*** *be brought down to his office.*

Right from the start he would have ***insisted*** *that his son* ***embark*** *on a proper profession.*
(subjunctive)

[*the Hollyhocks* is the name of a hotel]
They ***agreed*** *that they* ***should*** *stay at the Hollyhocks, and blushingly* ***suggested*** *that they* ***be*** *given an adjacent suite of rooms.*
(here *should* follows *agreed*; subjunctive follows *suggested*)

Consider, *deem* and *find* 289b

When *consider*, *deem* or *find* are followed by adjective + *to*-infinitive clause or *that*-clause, the object pronoun *it* must be used after the verb:

> *'We* ***considered it*** *essential they be separated,' continued Khan, unperturbed.*
>
> *I* ***find it*** *very difficult to have my eyes dealt with.*
> (~~I find very difficult to have my eyes dealt with.~~)

Complementation and prepositional verbs 289c

Prepositional verbs consist of a verb and a preposition which are closely syntactically and semantically linked with each other (→ **235f**), and as such they are similar to simple lexical verbs. The object (in green) follows the preposition:

It all ***depends on*** *how much it costs.*
(prepositional verb)

No-one could ***disagree*** *with that.*
(lexical verb)

→ **235f** for a list of common prepositional verbs

Some prepositional verbs take a direct object (in green) and a complement of the preposition (underlined):

I ***associate*** *Bristol with many happy memories.*

The safety goggles are supposed to ***protect*** *you from bits of grit and stones.*

Clause types

Introduction 290
Declarative clauses 291
  Structure 291a
  Affirmative declaratives 291b
  Negative declaratives 291c
  Declaratives used as questions, requests and directives 291d
Interrogative clauses 292
  Polar interrogatives: *yes-no, x or y* 292a
  Polar interrogatives with lexical verbs *be* and *have* 292b
  Negative polar interrogatives 292c
  Wh-interrogatives 292d
  Panel: Prepositions and particles with *wh*-interrogatives 292e
  Negative *wh*-interrogatives 292f
  Indirect interrogatives 292g
Imperative clauses 293
  Structure 293a
  Negative imperatives 293b
Exclamative clauses 294
Main clauses 295
Subordinate clauses 296
  Panel: Subordinate clauses in conversation 296a
Finite clauses 297
Non-finite clauses 298
Tags 299
Question tags 300
  General 300a
  Question tag polarity: affirmative or negative 300b
  Main clauses with *am*, *may*, *used to*, *ought to* 300c
  Main clauses with indefinite pronouns 300d
  Main clauses with *there is/are* 300e
  Panel: Tag patterns in requests 300f
  Question tags with reporting structures 300g
  Question tags in non-final position 300h
Directive tags 301
Statement tags 302
Exclamation tags 303

Clause types

INTRODUCTION 290

Types of finite clause

In the first part of this chapter (291–294) we consider the different basic types of finite clause. These are declarative, interrogative, imperative and exclamative.

Declarative clauses are typically associated with statements:

She works in publishing.

I've never met his father.

Interrogative clauses are typically associated with questions:

Do you need any help at all?

Has Katie arrived yet?

Imperative clauses are typically associated with directives (commands, orders, etc.):

Get some kitchen paper, will you.

Sign here, please.

Exclamative clauses are associated with exclamations:

What a lovely dress you're wearing!

How ugly it all is!

Main and subordinate clauses

We then consider the characteristics of main clauses and subordinate clauses (295–296). Main clauses are not dependent on any other clauses and can form sentences on their own. Subordinate clauses are dependent on other clauses and can only form sentences by combining with main clauses. Main clauses are in bold:

It hasn't lasted very long.
(one main clause, also one sentence)

I'll see you *when I get back, then.*
(main clause and time adverbial clause)

Will you be at home *if I ring you tonight?*
(main clause and conditional clause)

The guy *who came this morning* ***was very polite.***
(main clause and embedded relative clause)

> ***Push it right down**, as far as it'll go.*
> (main clause and comparative clause)
>
> *Working all day like that **you'll exhaust yourself**.*
> (non-finite *-ing* form conditional clause and main clause)

Finite and non-finite clauses

The next sections (297–298) look at finite and non-finite clauses. A finite clause has a verb which indicates tense (i.e. a tensed verb form, → **215**). A non-finite clause has a verb with no indication of tense (i.e. a non-tensed verb form, → **215**), and depends for the interpretation of its time reference on other clauses in the environment:

> *They jointly **earned** £60,000 a year.*
> (finite: past tense form)
>
> *Sally just phoned me **wondering** whether she should come over in the near future rather than at New Year.*
> (*wondering* is a non-tensed form, but its past time context is interpreted from *phoned*; the clause in green is non-finite)

Tags

The chapter also considers tags (299–303), which are short clauses added on to main clauses either to create questions or to reinforce statements, directives and exclamations:

> *You like mushrooms, **don't you**?*
>
> *I'm hungry, **I am**.*
>
> *Pass me that pen, **will you**.*
>
> *What a pretty girl, **isn't she**!*

DECLARATIVE CLAUSES 291

Structure 291a

The word order in declarative clauses is subject (S) – verb (V) – X , where X is any other element present (e.g. object/complement).

Declaratives are most typically used to make statements and assertions:

> S V
> *I | saw | him in the distance.*
>
> S V
> *These days | he | seems | quite happy.*
>
> S V
> *Bob | often | annoys | people.*
>
> S V
> *I | don't put | salt on my food.*

Affirmative declaratives 291b

An affirmative declarative clause makes a statement about something that is, as opposed to something that is not.

Examples of affirmative declarative clauses

subject	verb	X
He	*is*	*a good teacher.*
I	*'ve noticed*	*it.*
She	*works*	*in the mornings.*
He	*mentioned*	*that.*

Negative declaratives 291c

Negative declarative clauses negate a proposition. They have the word order subject – auxiliary/modal verb – negative particle – verb – X, where X is any other element present (e.g. object/complement).

Examples of negative declarative clauses

subject	auxiliary/modal verb	negative particle	verb	X
The lights	*were*	*not*	*working.*	
He	*could*	*not*	*afford*	*it.*
He	*did*	*n't* (= *not*)	*phone*	*me.*
I	*was*	*n't*	*allowed*	*in the room.*

In informal language, especially spoken contexts, the negative particle *not* is contracted to *n't* (though only very rarely with *may* and *used to*, ➜ **380e** and **400**).

➜ **437 Negation and mental process verbs** for negation with verbs such as *think*, *hope*, *guess*, *wish*

➜ also **472–475 Word order and focus**

Declaratives used as questions, requests and directives 291d

Affirmative and negative declarative clauses typically function as statements, but may also occasionally function as questions or requests or directives:

A: ***You want it today***?
B: *Yes, as quickly as possible.*
(question)

A: ***You could put that in the dishwasher for me***.
B: *Okay.*
(directive)

A: *I'm going to have a cake.* ***You haven't got any cakes***?
B: *I have indeed.*
(question)

[fixing an appointment]
A: ***You couldn't make it twelve o'clock.***
B: *Yeah, twelve would be fine.*
(request)

[talking about a child; the expression *to go ballistic* means to lose one's temper in an extreme way]
*He actually had had a temper tantrum for the first time yesterday and his sister took something off him and he went absolutely ballistic and he went '**You don't do that!**' and pushed her.*
(directive)

⁘ also **430 Declarative questions** and **410a Declarative clauses functioning as questions**

INTERROGATIVE CLAUSES 292

Polar interrogatives: *yes-no*, *x or y* 292a

Polar interrogative clauses typically function to ask questions to which the answer is *yes* or *no* (*yes-no* questions), or questions with *x or y?* (alternative questions), where the respondent must choose between alternatives.

Normal word order for polar interrogatives is auxiliary/modal verb – subject – verb – x, where x is any other element present (e.g. object/complement).

The auxiliary verb may be *be*, *do* or *have*.

Examples of polar interrogatives

	auxiliary/modal	subject	verb	x
be	*Were*	*you*	***staying***	*in Cardiff?*
	Are	*you*	***going***	*by boat* **or** *train?*
do	*Do*	*you*	***know***	*the way to the market?*
	Did	*we*	***go***	*twice* **or** *just once?*
have	*Haven't*	*you*	***phoned***	*your sister yet?*
	Have	*you*	***got***	*a pair of scissors* **or** *a sharp knife?*
modal	*Shouldn't*	*we*	***leave***	*it till tomorrow?*
	Could	*we*	***meet***	*for lunch the following Tuesday?*

Wherever there is no auxiliary *be*, auxiliary *have* or modal verb already present, auxiliary *do/does/did* is used.

Where there is more than one auxiliary verb or a modal verb plus auxiliary verb(s), only the first auxiliary or the modal verb precedes the subject.

Examples of polar interrogatives with multiple auxiliary verbs

modal verb/first auxiliary verb	subject	second auxiliary verb	verb	x
Is	*your violin*	*being*	*repaired?*	
Has	*the flat*	*been*	*painted or redecorated*	*recently?*
Could	*it*	*have*	*been*	*like the problem you had before?*
Will	*you*	*be*	*ordering*	*some stuff, then?*

✪ Note that only auxiliary and modal verbs, not lexical verbs, may come before the subject:

	auxiliary verb	subject	lexical verb
When	***was***	***the book***	***written**, do you know?*

(~~When was written the book, do you know?~~)

Sentences with modal verb – subject – verb – x structure also frequently function as requests or as directives:

> ***Could you** give me a call about nine o'clock this evening?*
> (request)
>
> ***Will you** be quiet!*
> (directive)

412 Modality and directives

Polar interrogatives with lexical verbs *be* and *have* 292b

Lexical verb *be*

Interrogatives with lexical verb *be* have verb – subject – x word order (verb in bold, subject in green):

> ***Are** they all the same?*
>
> ***Was** the swimming pool busy?*

Lexical verb *have*

With lexical verb *have*, verb – subject – x word order sounds rather formal. Interrogatives with auxiliary *do* and with *have got* are the preferred forms in informal situations:

> *'**Has he** his name on the door?' Mr Laidlaw said suddenly.*
> (formal)
>
> ***Do they have** a lot of toys?*
> (informal)
>
> ***Has she got** any brothers or sisters?*
> (informal)

The choice between the inverted form, the *do/does/did … have* form, and *have/has/had … got* form depends on the meaning of *have*. When *have* refers to possession/attribution, all forms are possible:

Has he got *his name on the door?*
(possession/attribution: most informal)

Does he have *his name on the door?*
(possession/attribution: informal)

Has he *his name on the door?*
(possession/attribution: formal)

Interrogatives in the past tense show a marked preference for the *did … have* form rather than the *had … got* form when referring to possession/attribution:

Did you have *a car when you were younger?*
(more frequent form)

A: ***Had he got*** *a little girl?*
B: *A little boy.*
(less frequent form)

When *have* means 'to hold or take part in a habitual event', the *do*-forms are used. The inverted form and the *got*-forms are not used:

How often ***do you have*** *parties?*
(refers to regularity of events)
(~~How often have you got parties?~~)
(~~How often have you parties?~~)

Does Nigel have *butter?*
(Does he normally use/eat butter?)
(compare: Has Nigel got butter?, which would mean 'Does he possess/has he received butter?')

When *have* is used in the pseudo-passive (⇢ 480), the *do/does/did* forms are used, not the inverted form:

How often ***do you have*** *your car serviced?*
(~~How often have you your car serviced?~~)

⇢ **403d *Have to, have got to***

Exclamations with *be*

Clauses with verb – subject – x word order with lexical verb *be* can occasionally function as exclamations:

It was a very good school, but ***was I*** *lamentably ignorant in maths!*

⇢ **472–475 Word order and focus** and **408–423 Speech acts** for further examples

Negative polar interrogatives 292c

Negative *yes-no* interrogatives are typically used to ask questions which function to check or confirm something which the speaker believes or expects to be the case, or which the speaker considers to be a viable course of action.

The negative is formed with *not*, and is most frequently contracted to *n't*. Sentences with the full form *not* are more formal than those with contracted *n't*:

> ***Wasn't he*** *here at the party?*
>
> ***Don't you*** *want any tea or coffee?*

When the full form is used, *not* comes after the subject:

> ***Could you not*** *hear me?*
> (please confirm, yes or no)
>
> ***Should we not*** *photocopy it?*
> (I consider this a desirable action)

In very formal, rather archaic literary styles, full form *not* may occur before the subject:

> [from *Northanger Abbey* by Jane Austen; speaking about open carriages]
> ***Do not you*** *think it has an odd appearance, if young ladies are frequently driven about in them by young men, to whom they are not even related?*

Negative interrogatives with modal verbs are also often used to express polite requests or polite commands:

> *'Please,* ***won't you*** *both* ***come*** *through?' Carole said, leading them down the red carpeted foyer and into the dimly lit restaurant.*

✪ Replies to negative interrogatives

Note that a reply which agrees with the proposition in a negative polar interrogative is made with *no*, not *yes*:

> A: ***Isn't*** *Margaret here today?*
> B: ***No****. She's on holiday.*
> (~~Yes. She's on holiday.~~)
>
> A: ***Don't*** *you want any tea or coffee?*
> B: ***No****. I've just had breakfast. Thanks anyway.*

However, negative polar interrogatives where the asker is simply checking information believed to be true may be answered with *yes*:

> A: ***Isn't*** *she older than her brother?*
> B: ***Yes****, she is. There's about three years between them, I think.*
> (speaker B confirms what speaker A believes to be true)

Wh-interrogatives 292d

Wh-interrogatives (clauses introduced by *what, when, where, which, who, whose, why, how*) typically function to ask questions which seek information, and cannot be answered simply with *yes* or *no*.

If the *wh*-question-word is the subject or forms part of the subject, then subject – verb – x word order is used, and auxiliary *do* is not used:

S V
Who | *wants* | *more coffee?*
(~~Who does want more coffee?~~)

S V
Whose car | *got stolen?*
(~~Whose car did get stolen?~~)

In all other cases, interrogative word order is used:

O AUX S V
Who | *did* | *you* | *see* | *there?*
(*wh*-word refers to the object)
(~~Who you saw there?~~)

O MODAL S V
What | *can* | *I* | *do* | *to help?*
(*wh*-word refers to the object)
(~~What I can do to help?~~)

A AUX S V
Why | *have* | *they* | *got to* | *sit and wait?*
(*wh*-word refers to the adjunct)
(~~Why they have got to sit and wait?~~)

A AUX S V
When | *are* | *you* | *leaving?*
(*wh*-word refers to the adjunct)
(~~When you are leaving?~~)

C (SUBJ) V S
Whose *shoes* | *are* | *those?*
(*wh*-word refers to the subject complement)
(~~Whose shoes those are?~~)

Wh-interrogatives with lexical verb *have* are formed with auxiliary *do* or the *have got* construction when the *wh*-word refers to an element other than the subject. The formal verb-subject construction is not used:

What do you have *for me? Anything?*
(~~What have you for me?~~)

Why have you got *three email addresses?*
(~~Why have you three email addresses?~~)

Prepositions and particles with *wh*-interrogatives 292e

Wh-words and *wh*-phrases can be the complement of a preposition, in which case the preposition and its complement typically occur together in more formal styles:

***To whom** did the last item belong?*
(*wh*-word)

***For what purpose** could it be used?*
(*wh*-phrase)

In informal styles, especially in spoken language, the preposition may be stranded (separated from its complement, ⇢ 257) and placed at the end of the clause:

[writing a cheque]
***Who** do I make it out **to**?*

***Where** do you get them **from**?*

In the case of reduced questions, the preposition and its complement normally occur together:

A: *She was quite upset.*
B: ***For what** reason?*
(~~What reason for?~~)

*A marriage of convenience, if ever there was one. But **for what** motive?*
(~~But what motive for?~~)

With phrasal verbs, which are combinations of verbs and particles (⇢ 235c), the particles stay attached to the verb, rather than to the *wh*-word:

***What** did they **get up to**?*
(What mischief/misbehaviour were they involved in?)
(~~Up to what did they get?~~)

***Which** dictionary shall I **look** it **up** in?*
(or, in formal style: In which dictionary shall I look it up?)
(~~Up in which dictionary shall I look it?~~)

Negative *wh*-interrogatives 292f

In negative *wh*-interrogatives, auxiliary *do* is used in all cases where there is no other auxiliary or modal verb, even when the *wh*-word is subject of its clause:

***Who doesn't want** tea?*

***Which** one **didn't you use**?*

***Why can't I say** 'Good afternoon, gentlemen and ladies'?*

Indirect interrogatives 292g

Indirect polar interrogatives

When a polar interrogative is reported indirectly, *if* or *whether* is used. *Whether* tends to be more formal.

The reported clause has subject – verb – x word order.

Examples of indirect polar interrogatives

direct interrogative	indirect interrogative
Will you be seeing *them during the week?*	*She asked me* ***if/whether I would be seeing*** *them during the week.*
Did he enjoy *himself?*	*I asked* ***if/whether he had enjoyed*** *himself.*
Does everybody go *or just the ladies?*	*I don't know* ***if/whether everybody went*** *or just the ladies.*
Can I phone *you back?*	*He wondered* ***if/whether he could phone*** *me back.*
Have they been *helpful?*	*She asked* ***if/whether they had been*** *helpful.*

493 Viewpoint: Time and place references in **Speech representation** for the principles of backshift in tense and deictic changes in indirect interrogatives

When *or not* immediately follows, *whether* is preferred to *if*:

> *I don't know* ***whether or not*** *you'll print this.*
> (preferred to: I don't know if or not …)

When *or not* is placed later in the clause, then *if* may be used:

> *I didn't know* ***if*** *I was going to do it* ***or not****.*

In informal speech, interrogative word order may occur as an alternative to an *if/whether* clause:

> *When I asked her* ***was she looking*** *for a job, she said, 'Well, not really'.*
> (instead of: if/whether she was looking …)

> *I wonder* ***is that form wrong****.*
> (instead of: if/whether that form is wrong.)

Indirect *wh*-interrogatives

When a *wh*-interrogative is reported indirectly, the word order in the reported clause is normally subject – verb – x, not interrogative:

> S V
> *So I asked him* ***what*** | ***the arrangements*** | ***were****.*

> S V
> *I phoned up the hospital and asked* ***who*** | ***I*** | ***should address*** | *the letter to.*

However, in informal speech, interrogative word order is sometimes used:

> AUX S V
> *She wanted to know* ***why*** | ***didn't*** | ***I*** | ***go*** | *too.*
> (compare: She wanted to know why I didn't go too.)

Where the subject of the reporting clause and the reported clause are the same, an infinitive construction may be used in the reported clause:

> [in a restaurant]
> *Oh, I don't know* ***what to have****. What are you having?*

*How do they decide **who to employ** and who not?*
(*they* decide and *they* employ)

⇢ also **424–433 Questions** and **408–423 Speech acts**

IMPERATIVE CLAUSES 293

Structure 293a

Imperative clauses typically function to give directives (e.g. commands, orders, instructions).

Imperative clauses do not have an overt subject. They have the word order verb – x. The lexical verb is in its base form (⇢ 229):

***Give** me a clue.*

*Just **leave** it there.*

***Tell** me when you've finished.*

***Be** quiet!*

***Don't move**!*

***Let's go** home now.*

Imperatives with subject pronoun

Imperatives may occasionally occur with an emphatic subject pronoun *you*. This may be for contrastive emphasis, or simply to make the imperative stronger:

[speakers are clearing things from the table after a meal]
A: *Shall I take those out?*
B: ***You take** those two out on the tray. And I'll just put this milk away.*

[parent to a child just about to play with a dog]
***Don't you start** teasing him now!*

In very informal spoken contexts, *you* may occur after the verb, especially where speakers are being playful or mildly reproachful:

[mother to young child]
*Come on, **you**!*

An indefinite subject such as *someone/somebody*, *no one/nobody*, *everyone/everybody* may also occur, especially in informal spoken language:

***Somebody get** one more chair, please.*

*Quick! **Everybody hide**!*

Imperative as invitation

The bare imperative may also function to make an offer or an invitation:

***Have** some more coffee.*

*Next time you're in Manchester, **come** and see us.*

✪ The bare imperative is a very direct form in English and should be used with great care in order to avoid the perception of impoliteness. It is **not** generally used to make requests/commands or give instructions (e.g. in service encounters in shops or restaurants) except in cases where people are very familiar with one another, and except where accompanied by *please*.

408–423 Speech acts for the most common ways of requesting, instructing

[to a waiter]
Could we have the bill please?
(~~Give us the bill.~~)

Just and/or *please* can also soften an imperative:

[customer and market trader]
A: *And some peppers, please.*
B: *Yeah. How many?*
A: ***Just give** me two big ones, **please**.*

Imperatives with *do*

Imperatives with emphatic *do*-auxiliary are perceived as more polite than bare imperatives:

[to guests who have just arrived]
***Do take** your coats off.*

Short imperative answers may consist of emphatic *do* without a lexical verb:

A: *Can I leave this in your office?*
B: *Yes, **do**, by all means.*

Imperatives with *let*

First person plural and third person imperatives are formed with *let*:

A: *Bob's here to see you.*
B: ***Let him** wait. I don't want to see him yet.*

Contracted *let's* is the most frequent form for first person plural imperatives. In very formal contexts, the full form *let us* is used:

***Let's** start, shall we.*

***Let us** remember those who died on this day, twenty-five years ago.*

Emphatic *do* may be used with *let's*:

***Do let's** hurry up or we'll be late again.*

Let's may occur alone in short responses:

A: *Shall we go for a walk?*
B: *Yes, **let's**.*

Negative imperatives 293b

Negative imperatives are constructed with auxiliary *do*. Contracted *don't* is the most common form in spoken language:

> *Please* ***don't tell*** *him until he rings me.*
>
> ***Don't be*** *silly.*

In more formal styles the full form *do not* often occurs:

> [instructions for keeping a cake fresh for a long time]
> ***Do not store*** *in a sealed plastic container or in the kitchen, as the humidity will make it sweat and go mouldy.*

Short negative imperative answers or reactions may consist of *don't* without a lexical verb:

> A: *Should I tell her, do you think?*
> B: *No,* ***don't****. It'll only upset her.*

Negative imperatives with subject pronoun

Negative imperatives with emphatic subject pronoun *you* or with an indefinite subject (e.g. *nobody*) may also occur, especially in informal spoken language:

> *You know we're coming up again next year.* ***Don't you worry****, Ursula, we'll be up you know.*
>
> *I'll tell her.* ***Don't you say*** *anything.*
>
> ***Nobody say*** *a word, okay.*

Negative imperative of *let's*

The negative of *let's* is most typically *let's not*. Less frequently, *don't let's* may occur:

> ***Let's not*** *be silly about it.*
>
> ***Don't let's*** *confuse the issue.*

In rather formal styles, *let us not* or *do not let us* may occur:

> [Trade Union Annual Conference speech]
> ***Let us not*** *forget that we're not in business to remain in perpetual opposition.*
>
> [Trade Union Annual Conference speech]
> *Colleagues,* ***do not let us*** *shirk from our responsibilities to our fellow workers.*

EXCLAMATIVE CLAUSES 294

Exclamatives consist of phrases with *what* and *how* (or a clause with *how*) followed by a subject – verb – x construction.

They usually express a reaction of surprise or shock or the experience of a strong impression on the part of the speaker.

In writing, they are often punctuated with an exclamation mark (!).

506 Appendix: Punctuation

What is followed by a noun phrase:

What a lovely cake *they bought you!*

What nonsense *you talk!*

How may be followed by an adjective phrase, an adverb phrase or a clause:

How happy *they both seem!*

How wonderfully *it worked out!*

How I wished *I could have been there!*

The exclamative clause may consist of the *wh*-word and a phrase alone, especially in spoken language:

What *a wonderful thing!*

How *sad!* ***How*** *terribly sad!*

How *awful!*

Simple exclamatives are not normally constructed with *such* followed by an un-premodified noun:

Wow! What a view!
(~~Wow! Such a view!~~)

However, *such* may occur before a premodified noun:

What a beautiful house! And ***such a wonderful garden****!*

MAIN CLAUSES 295

A main clause is a clause which is not dependent on any other clause in the sentence. A sentence must have at least one main clause.

A main clause must be finite; that is, it must have a verb which is inflected for tense:

A simple diet suits me.
(sentence consisting of one main clause, not dependent on any other clause)

He was very quiet, and he had beautiful manners.
(two independent main clauses joined by *and*)

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES 296

A subordinate clause is dependent on another clause in the sentence. A sentence may not consist of a subordinate clause alone.

A subordinate clause may be finite or non-finite (→ 297, 298). Examples of subordinate clauses:

If people feel good about coming to work*, they will work better.*
(*if*-clause dependent on main clause)

I laughed at him ***when he first asked me****.*
(*when*-clause dependent on main clause)

To get the morning flight*, we'd have to leave here about eight.*
(non-finite clause dependent on main clause)

To do it by hand *would be difficult.*
(non-finite clause as subject)

The people ***I work with*** *are nice.*
(relative clause functioning as postmodifier in the noun phrase)

It's not really as bad as ***most people think****.*
(clause as the complement of a comparative adjective phrase)

Subordinate clauses in conversation 296a

In conversation, subordinate clauses may appear to be used alone, but they are usually dependent on a main clause nearby, spoken either by another speaker or by the same speaker:

A: *You're coming on Friday?*
B: *Yeah.* ***If I can****.*
(understood: I'm coming on Friday if I can.)

[assembling a piece of flat-pack furniture]
A: *This has got screw holes. Right?*
B: *Right.*
A: ***Which is funny isn't it****. It's not at all obvious what they support.*
(understood: that it has screw holes is funny)

→ **87b Subordinate clauses**

→ **310–317** for a full description of subordinate clauses

FINITE CLAUSES 297

A finite clause contains a verb which is inflected for tense (present or past). Finite clauses typically have a subject, and can be main or subordinate clauses.

Examples of finite clauses

clause	tense
*He **lives** on his own.*	present
***Are**n't you going anywhere in between times?*	present
*I seriously **considered** private health care.*	past
*She always **rings** | when we**'re** out.*	present | present
*We **could** go up and get one.*	modal*

* Some modal verbs have forms which can indicate present and past time reference (e.g. *can/could, shall/should, will/would, may/might*) (→ **380b**). Past forms in such cases are often used to make indirect statements about a present or future situation, or to perform particular speech acts (→ **408–423 Speech acts**):

> *I thought I **would** wait and see what happened.*
>
> ***Could** you hold this for me, please?*

NON-FINITE CLAUSES

298

Non-finite clauses contain a lexical verb which does not indicate tense. Non-finite clauses can normally only be subordinate, and typically combine with finite ones in sentences.

References to time (and person and number) are normally interpreted from context or from information in the finite clause to which the non-finite clause is related.

Examples of non-finite clauses (non-finite clauses are shaded, verbs are in bold)

type	clause	clause	comments
-ing clause	*The documentary **is** built like fictional drama,*	***following** the parents' anguish and the doctor's anxiety through the months of ups and downs.*	the subject of *following* is *the documentary*, and its time reference is the same as *is* (present time)
-ing clause	*The London Stock Market **welcomed** the news of the deal,*	***marking** the company's shares up 50 pence.*	the subject of *marking* is *the London Stock Market*, and its time reference is the same as *welcomed* (past time)
-ing clause	*At ten o'clock every Friday they**'d hear** someone*	***walking** up the stairs.*	understood past time references: 'someone *was walking* up the stairs'
to-infinitive clause	***To help** the people who travel into the city by car,*	*there **are** multi-storey car parks around the edge of the city centre.*	the subject of *help* is *multi-storey car parks*, and its time reference is the same as *there are* (present time)
-ed clause	***Helped** by her children's schoolteacher,*	*Sue **started** out on the learning process she should have begun 30 years earlier.*	the (passive) subject of *helped* is *Sue*, and its time reference is the same as *started* (past time)
-ed clause	*You **should read** the parts*	***highlighted** in yellow.*	understood present time reference: 'which are/have been highlighted in yellow'

TAGS 299

Tags are a type of clause without a lexical verb but which relate to the verb in the main clause of a sentence.

Tags consist of auxiliary *be*, *do*, *have*, lexical verb *be* or a modal verb and a subject (most typically a pronoun). They may have declarative or interrogative word order and may have affirmative or negative polarity.

The four main types of tag are question tags, directive tags, statement tags (also known as copy tags) and exclamation tags:

- Question tags:

  She's a teacher, ***isn't she****?*
  I haven't shown you this, ***have I****?*
  You've met David, ***have you****?*

- Directive tags:

  Shut the door, ***will you****.*
  Don't stay out too late, ***will you****.*

- Statement tags:

  I'm hungry, ***I am****.*
  She was very kind, ***Rita was****.*
  He's not so tall, ***Jim isn't****.*

- Exclamation tags:

  How strange, ***isn't it****!*
  What a laugh that was, ***wasn't it****!*

QUESTION TAGS 300

General 300a

Question tags are used to check or clarify information, or simply to involve the listener in a more interactive way.

Question tags consist of an auxiliary or modal verb or lexical verb *be* + subject pronoun. The subject pronoun repeats the subject of the main clause to which it refers, and agrees in number, person and gender with the subject of the main clause.

Where the main clause contains an auxiliary or modal verb or lexical verb *be*, it is repeated in the tag.

Examples of question tags with repeated auxiliary

	declarative clause	auxiliary/modal verb	subject pronoun
1	***You've*** *worked hard,*	***haven't***	***you****?*
2	***He did****n't get it,*	***did***	***he****?*
3	***We had*** *talked about it,*	***hadn't***	***we****?*
4	***I can*** *do it now,*	***can***	***I****?*
5	***Kate is*** *Irish,*	***isn't***	***she****?*

Where there is no auxiliary or modal verb in the main clause, auxiliary *do/does/did* is used in the tag.

Examples of question tags with added auxiliary verb

	declarative clause	auxiliary verb	subject pronoun
6	***He said*** *it's basically the same,*	***did***	***he****?*
7	***Patsy lives*** *in Lincoln,*	***doesn't***	***she****?*
8	[lexical verb *have*] ***They have*** *one every year,*	***do***	***they****?*

Negative tags are normally contracted in informal styles (*doesn't he?, don't they?, weren't we?, isn't it?*, etc.). In more formal styles, uncontracted *not* may occur:

> *You changed servants at that time,* ***did you not****?*
>
> *So we're left with three possibilities,* ***are we not****?*

Question tag polarity: affirmative or negative 300b

Polarity refers to whether a verb phrase is affirmative or negative. In examples **1**, **2**, **3**, **5** and **7** in the tables in **300a**, there is contrasting polarity between the main clause and the tag:

> affirmative negative
> *You |**'ve** | worked hard, | **haven't** | you?*
>
> negative affirmative
> *He | **didn't** | get it, | **did** | he?*
>
> affirmative negative
> *We | **had** | talked about it, | **hadn't** | we?*

In examples **4**, **6** and **8**, the polarity is affirmative in the main clause and the tag:

> affirmative affirmative
> *I | **can** | do it now, | **can** | I?*

The different patterns of polarity combine with intonation patterns to produce a variety of different meanings. → **431** for a full account

Main clauses with *am, may, used to, ought to* 300c

Am, *may*, *used to* and *ought to* do not follow the normal pattern of obligatory repetition in the question tag. Typical usage is as follows.

Examples of tag questions with *am, may, used to, ought to*

	declarative clause	tag auxiliary/modal	subject
am	***I'm*** *crazy to even think about it,*	***are****n't*	*I?*
may	*Jim* ***may*** *be able to help,*	***might****n't*	*he?*
used to	*He* ***used to*** *work with you,*	***did******	*he?*
ought to	*We* ***ought to*** *ring her now,*	***should****n't* or (less frequent) ***ought****n't*	*we?*

* The form *used (he)* (or its negative *usedn't*) is now very rare (→ **400**).

Main clauses with indefinite pronouns 300d

When the indefinite pronouns *someone/somebody*, *anyone/anybody*, *no one/nobody*, *everyone/everybody* are used as subjects, the tag pronoun is normally *they*:

__Someone__ gets your breakfast, __don't they__?

__No one__ questioned it, __did they__?

In small towns in Ireland, __everybody__ knows everybody, __don't they__?

Main clauses with *there is/are* 300e

Tag questions with *there is/are* have *there* as subject:

__There's__ a lake near the house, __isn't there__?

__There were__ more younger people in the café, __weren't there__?

__There should be__ some continuity, __shouldn't there__?

__There'd be__ more choice, __wouldn't there__?

Tag patterns in requests 300f

Interrogatives that function as requests often have the pattern of negative clause + affirmative tag, with the fall and rise intonation pattern:

polarity	falling tone ↘	rising tone ↗
neg. + affirm.	*You couldn't carry __this__ for me,*	*__could__ you?*
neg. + affirm.	*You haven't got any __ging__erbread men*,*	*__have__ you?*

* A *gingerbread man* is a kind of biscuit.

Question tags with reporting structures 300g

With reporting structures, the question tag usually refers to the reporting clause:

I __told__ you he would be there, __didn't I__?
(~~I told you he would be there, wouldn't he?~~)

She __mentioned__ that Joe was not well, __didn't she__?

However, with verbs such as *believe*, *guess*, *know*, *reckon*, *suppose*, *think*, when used with *I*, the question tag normally refers to the reported clause. This is because expressions such as *I guess*, *I suppose*, *I think* are acting more like phrasal discourse markers than main clauses:

I think __it's going__ to rain, __isn't it__?
(~~I think it's going to rain, don't I?~~)

I suppose __you think__ that's clever, __do you__?

Question tags in non-final position 300h

Although question tags normally occur after the main clause, they may sometimes interrupt the clause, especially in clauses with anticipatory *it*:

> ***It's*** *odd,* ***isn't it****, that he should say that?*
>
> ***It was*** *perhaps your team,* ***was it****, that was round there?*
>
> ***It's*** *true,* ***isn't it****, what they said about him?*

In reporting structures, the question tag may occur before the reported clause, especially if the reported clause is felt to be unusually long. The early placement of the tag can also serve to project or acknowledge a shared perspective with the listener:

> [commenting on the recipes of a famous cookery book writer]
> ***You*** *always* ***know****,* ***don't you****, that what you make will be suitable, and light, and that it will taste all right too.*

⁛ **431** on question tags and intonation patterns

DIRECTIVE TAGS 301

Affirmative imperatives may be followed by tags involving *will/would/can/could you*. Such clauses typically function to issue directives:

> ***Stop*** *arguing,* ***will you****.*
>
> ***Hold*** *this rope,* ***would you****.*
>
> ***Be*** *back by five, please,* ***could you****.*

Negative imperatives may be followed by *will you*:

> ***Don't*** *forget my CD,* ***will you****.*

Imperative clauses, in more formal styles, sometimes occur with the tag *won't you*. This softens a directive and the utterance may be heard more as a polite request:

> ***Give*** *Emma whatever she needs,* ***won't you****, Hal.*
>
> *'I'd very much like a black coffee,' Amy said. 'Here's the money.* ***Choose*** *something for yourself too,* ***won't you****?'*

First person plural imperatives with *let's* typically have *shall we* as a tag:

> ***Let's*** *go home,* ***shall we****.*
>
> ***Let's*** *not discuss it now,* ***shall we****.*

STATEMENT TAGS 302

Declarative clauses may be followed by a tag with the same polarity and subject – verb word order. These are called statement tags or copy tags. Such sentences typically make emphatic statements, frequently in evaluative contexts:

affirmative **affirmative**
*She**'s** lovely, **she is**.*

negative **negative**
*It's **not** very good, **that one isn't**.*

*They were pathetic-looking things, **they were**.*

*I'm fed up with it, **I am**.*

The principle of same polarity operates with reduced (ellipted) clauses too:

[speakers are at a nature conservation area]
A: *I don't think we'll see much wildlife today.*
B: ***Not** without binoculars **we won't**.*

[speakers are joking and engaging in word play]
A: *D'you know the definition of a secret?*
B: *No.*
A: *A secret is something only one person knows.*
B: ***Not** where I work **it isn't**.*

also **434–447 Negation**

Both *it* and *that* may occur as subjects in tags following main clauses with *it*. Main clauses with *that* normally have *that* as the subject of the tag:

***It**'s about this big, **it is**.*

*Ah, **it** was beautiful, **that was**.*

***That** was the second time, **that was**.*

also **97 Tails**

EXCLAMATION TAGS 303

Wh-exclamative clauses may be followed by negative tags with interrogative word order:

***How** strange, **isn't it**!*

***What** a coincidence, **wasn't it**!*

***How** sad we were, **weren't we**!*

Clause combination

Introduction 304
Independent and dependent clauses 305
Main and subordinate clauses 306
Coordinated clauses 307
Coordinators 308
Multiple coordination 309
Subordination 310
Simple subordinators 311
Complex subordinators 312
Ellipsis in subordinate clauses 313
Adverbial clauses 314
  Introduction 314a
  Adverbial clauses: time 314b
  Adverbial clauses: place 314c
  Adverbial clauses: condition 314d
  Adverbial clauses: contrast 314e
  Adverbial clauses: concession 314f
  Adverbial clauses: reason 314g
  Adverbial clauses: purpose 314h
  Adverbial clauses: result 314i
  Adverbial clauses: comment 314j
Embedded clauses 315
Nominal clauses 316
Relative clauses 317
  Types of relative clause 317a
  Relative pronouns 317b
  Who and *whom* 317c
  Panel: *Whom* 317d
  Which 317e
  That 317f
  Whose 317g
  Zero relative pronoun 317h
  Panel: Punctuation and intonation of relative clauses 317i
  Non-finite relative clauses 317j
Clauses and noun phrases in apposition 318

Clause combination

INTRODUCTION 304

This chapter (304–318) looks at the ways in which clauses combine with one another to create sentences in written texts and sentence-like structures or clause complexes in spoken texts.

The main ways in which clauses combine to form sentences are by joining clauses of equal syntactic status (coordination) and joining main and subordinate clauses (subordination) (→ **307–317**).

This chapter also describes the most common types of subordinate clause, including adverbial clauses, nominal clauses and relative clauses. Comparative clauses (e.g. *We're going to Spain for our holidays, **the same as we always do**.*) are described fully in **471 Comparative clauses**.

This chapter also discusses embedded clauses, where a clause becomes a constituent of a phrase (e.g. a postmodifying relative clause in a noun phrase) rather than acting as a constituent of the sentence structure.

In this example, the phrase is in green, the clause is in bold:

*There's one thing **that needs changing**.*

INDEPENDENT AND DEPENDENT CLAUSES 305

An independent clause is one which does not depend syntactically on another clause. Independent clauses act as main clauses, that is clauses which can form whole sentences on their own.

A dependent clause is one that is syntactically dependent on another clause. Dependent clauses cannot in themselves form whole sentences. Dependent clauses include subordinate clauses (which combine with main clauses to form sentences) and embedded clauses (for example, relative clauses embedded in noun phrases):

main clause **dependent (subordinate) clause**
*I'll do it | **when I've had my lunch**.*

noun phrase **dependent embedded (relative) clause**
*This is | the video | **that I said I'd lend you**.*

Examples of how independent and dependent clauses relate to one another

sentence	
independent (main) clause	**dependent clause(s)**
1 *I was going to take a photograph.*	
2 *Could you just sign that for me please?*	
3 *We would love to see you tonight*	*if it's possible.* (subordinate conditional clause)
4 *That's the thing that annoys me most.*	… *that annoys me most.* (embedded relative clause, acting as postmodifier)
5 *I'll get them to give you a ring.*	… *to give you a ring.* (embedded non-finite clause acting as complement of *get*)
6 *I don't believe what they told us.*	… *what they told us.* (embedded nominal clause, acting as object)

Sentences **1** and **2** in the table are main clauses and complete sentences.

In sentence **3** in the table, the clause *if it's possible* is a dependent clause. It cannot in itself form a whole sentence, and is syntactically dependent on the main clause *we would love to see you tonight*. It is a conditional clause, introduced by the subordinator *if* (→ **314d**).

In sentence **4** in the table, *That's the thing that annoys me most*, the clause *that annoys me most* is a dependent clause. It cannot in itself be a sentence, and is syntactically a postmodifier of the noun *thing*, and is a relative clause (→ **317f**).

In sentence **5** in the table, *I'll get them to give you a ring*, the clause *to give you a ring* is a dependent clause. It cannot in itself form a whole sentence, and is syntactically dependent on the main clause. It is a non-finite clause, introduced by the non-tensed infinitive verb form (→ **317j**).

In sentence **6** in the table, *I don't believe what they told us*, the clause *what they told us* is a dependent clause. It cannot in itself be a sentence, and is syntactically the object of the verb *believe*. It is a nominal clause (it serves a noun-like function) (→ **316**).

MAIN AND SUBORDINATE CLAUSES 306

The clauses which combine to form sentences are of two kinds: main and subordinate. A main clause can be a sentence on its own. A subordinate clause can only be part of a sentence when it is dependent on the main clause. This can happen either through the use of a subordinator (a word like *as*, *because*, *if*, *since*, *until*, *when*) or by using a non-tensed verb form to create a non-finite subordinate clause. Examples of main (bold) and subordinate (in green) clauses:

> ***I'll see you tomorrow.***
> (one main clause, one sentence)
>
> ***I'll call you*** *when I get home.*
> (main clause, and subordinate clause introduced by subordinator *when*)
>
> *Looking at it now,* ***I don't think it's such a good idea after all.***
> (non-finite subordinate clause introduced by non-tensed form *looking*, and main clause)

Examples of subordinate clauses preceding or following a main clause in the sentence

subordinate clause first	main clause	subordinate clause second
	She could do a lot more	***if*** *she wanted.*
	I'll get back to you	***when*** *I've had a think about it.*
Until *he died,*	*nobody knew he was married.*	
As *I was going upstairs,*	*I tripped on the carpet.*	

In more formal styles, a subordinate clause may interrupt the main clause or interrupt another subordinate clause.

Examples of subordinate clauses interrupting the main clause

main clause interrupted (formal styles)		
main clause	**subordinate clause**	**main clause (continued)**
We should,	***if*** *we get there early enough,*	*be able to get seats near the front.*
The French in 1993 can,	***if*** *they wish,*	*vote for the same party in both presidential and assembly elections.*

Example of subordinate clause interrupting another subordinate clause

subordinate clause interrupted (formal styles)			
main clause	**subordinate 1**	**subordinate 2**	**subordinate 1 (continued)**
She worked there for some time,	***although,***	***as*** *she herself has told you,*	*she was not happy in her job.*

The choice as to where to position a subordinate clause in relation to a main clause is not a grammatical one as such, but is a question of discourse. In general, subordinate clauses are more marked (i.e. used in an untypical way) when they occur first, and even more marked when they interrupt the main clause.

Placing a clause in a marked position can create emphasis, or may be used to signal a contrast with another clause or sentence. It may also serve to create a coherent link between sentences, or to signal the importance of a piece of information (··➛ **123–139 Grammar across turns and sentences**).

As in the table above, a subordinate clause may be subordinate to (i.e. syntactically dependent on) another subordinate clause, rather than a main clause:

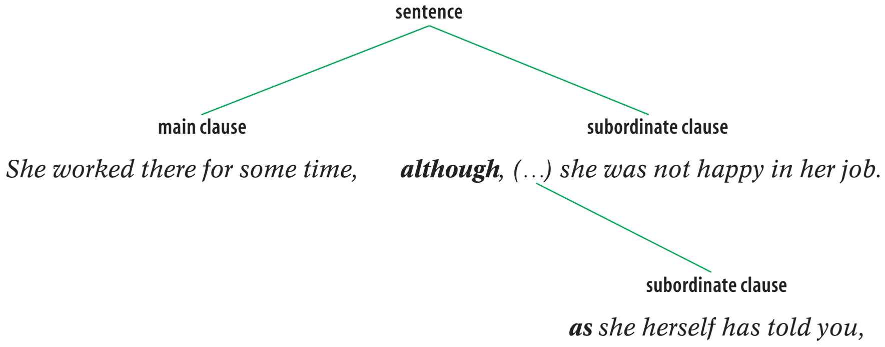
sentence
main clause
subordinate clause
She worked there for some time,
although, (…) she was not happy in her job.
subordinate clause
as she herself has told you,

COORDINATED CLAUSES 307

The relationship between two or more clauses in a sentence may be one of coordination, not subordination. Coordinated clauses are clauses which have the same syntactic status.

For example, coordination can take place between main clause + main clause, or subordinate clause + subordinate clause, but not main clause + subordinate clause, and not finite main clause + non-finite clause:

main finite	main finite

I was there ***and*** *I saw it*.
(~~I was there and if I saw it.~~)
(~~I was there and to see it.~~)

297–298 for the difference between finite and non-finite clauses

Coordination most typically involves the central coordinating conjunctions *and*, *but* and *or*:

Jim brought me here ***and*** *Phil's taking me home*.

[talking about school grades (years) and class teachers]
It will be different when you're in my year ***and*** *when you're in Mr Lane's maths group*.

If I have an appointment in the morning ***and*** *if I'm late, what do I do?*

We didn't want to be rude to her because she's a good customer ***and*** *because she's such a nice person*.

I've never owned a car before ***but*** *I'm considering buying one*.

I'll phone you later ***or*** *you can give her a ring*.

[employee discussing the problem of freely expressing opinions about her work situation to her employers]
If you complain ***or*** *if you dare to put comments that are not suitable for what they want to hear, then you get a bad reputation.*

Coordination may occur without the explicit link created by a conjunction. This is particularly true in literary style or for special effect in narrative texts. In the following example, clauses are coordinated by the use of commas alone. Coordinated clauses simply placed next to each other without conjunctions are also known as contact clauses:

*She made me a cup of coffee in the kitchen**,** she knew where the cups and spoons were and where the coffee was kept**,** she sat up on one of the stools and leaned on her elbows on the breakfast bar and said, …*

COORDINATORS 308

The most common coordinator is *and*:

main clause 1 **coordinator** **main clause 2**
She's definitely interested | ***and*** | *she's willing to drive all the way down.*

subordinate clause 1 **coordinator** **subordinate clause 2**
Well, if you don't get a job, | ***and*** | *if you want to come here for a bit,* |

main clause
you're welcome to stay.

The other most common coordinators are *or* and *but*:

> *She doesn't know if she's right* ***or*** *if she's wrong.*
>
> *If it's too expensive* ***or*** *if it's costing me money, we'll think again.*
>
> *I dialled a different number* ***but*** *I didn't get a dialling tone.*

Correlative structures are used to coordinate clauses. These are *either … or …, neither … nor …, not only … but also*:

> ***Either*** *she could come down here* ***or*** *I could go to Gatwick or Heathrow.*
>
> *She was desperate to play down the problem,* ***not only*** *to save face,* ***but also*** *to spare you any embarrassment.*

The *neither … nor* construction requires subject-verb inversion in the *nor*-clause:

> *They [universities] should* ***neither*** *remain aloof from what goes on in life,* ***nor should they*** *spend all their time solving industrial problems.*

The same applies to *nor* and *neither* when used singly to link clauses:

> *Fred Wolf did not come in to join them,* ***nor did he*** *appear in the hallway when Edith left.*
>
> *I don't know my parents,* ***neither did they*** *know theirs.*

MULTIPLE COORDINATION 309

Coordination may involve more than two clauses, especially in informal spoken language. This is called multiple coordination:

> *It happened in front of the police station. It was the best place to have an accident anyway* ***and*** *of course the police officer came* ***and*** *I was a bit shocked* ***and*** *he said 'Get in the passenger seat'* ***and*** *he drove me to the hospital you see.*
>
> [answerphone message]
> *I'll be driving off down to France* ***and*** *I'll try and ring again* ***but*** *remember I'll be in my car most of the day.*

539 **Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

> *I'd gone to the bookshop with a friend* ***and*** *he went to collect me* ***and*** *I was just sitting in the bookshop chatting* ***and*** *my husband said, 'That coffee shop over the road,'* ***and*** *I thought, 'Oh this is good.' Then you came in* ***and*** *Sylvia was having a coffee with us* ***and*** *poor James was left running the bookshop* ***and*** *nobody had made him a coffee* ***and*** *I said 'I know what I'm going to do. Can I buy him a coffee here?'*

Such multiple coordination makes the concept of 'sentence' difficult to apply to spoken language.

SUBORDINATION 310

A subordinate clause is dependent on a main clause or dependent on another subordinate clause, and cannot in itself form a whole sentence.

Subordinate clauses are typically introduced by a class of words known as subordinators (→ **311** and **312** below). Subordinators indicate the semantic relationship between the subordinate clause and the clause it is dependent on.

Subordinate clauses may be finite or non-finite.

→ **297–298** for the difference between finite and non-finite clauses

SIMPLE SUBORDINATORS 311

Simple subordinators are single words (bold in the examples below) which introduce subordinate clauses (in green in the examples below). They include:

- *after*
- *although*
- *as*
- *because*
- *before*
- *for* (formal styles only)
- *how*
- *however*
- *if*
- *in case*
- *in order that*
- *lest* (formal styles only)
- *once*
- *since*
- *that*
- *though*
- *till*
- *unless*
- *until*
- *when*
- *whenever*
- *where*
- *whereas*
- *wherever*
- *which*
- *while*
- *whilst*
- *who*
- *whoever*
- *whom*
- *whose*

> *The company's director stated that the first six months were good,* ***although*** *interrupted by a one-day strike by van drivers.*
>
> *I want to book it* ***before*** *we go, really.*
>
> ***Once*** *you get off the escalator, go round and towards the restaurant.*

The Major was concerned at her sudden departure, ***though*** *he knew its cause.*

You can come and pick it up ***whenever*** *you want.*

[person explaining to a doctor how a child came to hurt himself while playing on the bed]
He was okay ***while*** *jumping on the bed, but I didn't know he was going to jump off the bed.*

also **204** and **317b Relative pronouns** for *who*, *whom*, *which*, *whose* and *that*

COMPLEX SUBORDINATORS 312

Complex subordinators consist of more than one word and include common expressions ending in *as* and *that* (or optional *that*), plus a small number of other expressions. These include:

as far as
as if
as/so long as
as soon as
as though
assuming (that)
considering
given (that)
granted (that)
in case
in order for
in order that
insofar as
insomuch as (formal styles only)
in the event that
providing/provided (that)
seeing as (informal styles only)
seeing (that)
such that
supposing (that)

So, ***as far as*** *my mother was concerned, I was safe.*

Assuming *he dies first, I get all the money. And* ***assuming*** *I die next, you two just share the money.*

You take it in turns to be on duty ***in case*** *the fire alarm goes off or whatever.*

A: *That'll be fun.*
B: *Oh, Yes. It will won't it,* ***provided*** *it's not too snowy for the planes to get off.*

ELLIPSIS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES 313

Subordinators such as *although*, *if*, *unless*, *when*, *whenever*, *while* may be followed by ellipsis of subject and copular verb *be*. Such usage is generally associated with more formal styles:

Being part of a group means that you can support each other ***whenever necessary****.*
(understood: … you can support each other whenever supporting each other is necessary.)

[in a shop: customer buying nuts; *Brazils* are Brazil nuts]
A: *Can I have a quarter of those please?*
B: *Yes.*
A: *Er, not too heavy on the Brazils **if possible**.*
(understood: … if it/that is possible.)

In reporting structures with common everyday verbs such as *guess*, *hope*, *know*, *say*, *tell*, *think*, omission of *that* is the norm, except in formal styles or very careful speech:

[informal conversation]
I think he's a lovely man.
(less likely: I think that he's a lovely man.)

[written text]
The Mayor hopes visitors will become involved with the village.
(less likely: The Mayor hopes that visitors will become involved with the village.)

He says he's sold his bike, everything he owns, to get money together.
(less likely: He says that he's sold his bike …)

Backward-referring (anaphoric) ellipsis in subordinate clauses is more common than forward-referring (cataphoric) ellipsis:

*You can have that if you **want to**.*
(anaphoric; understood: You can have that if you want to have that.)

*I only go there when I **have to**.*
(anaphoric; understood: I only go there when I have to go there.)

*If you **can**, do try different methods, techniques to see if you can get more.*
(cataphoric; understood: If you can try different methods, techniques to see if you can get more, do try …)

*If you **wish**, we can fax it to you.*
(cataphoric; understood: if you wish us to fax it to you, we can …)

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES 314

Introduction 314a

Adverbial clauses act as modifiers in or of the main clause. They specify circumstances such as manner, time, frequency, place, degree, reason, cause, condition:

*Tell me **after I've eaten my dinner**.*
(time: tell me after dinner)

*I feel guilty today **because I've not paid you that cheque**.*
(reason: I feel guilty today because of the delay)

He says he can't repair the leak ***unless the water is turned off****.*
(condition: the water must be turned off or he can't repair the leak)

Adverbial clauses are sometimes divided into two types: adjuncts and disjuncts. Adjuncts are more fully integrated into the clause (compare the general class of adjuncts, **319–337**), while disjuncts are more peripheral, and in writing are often separated from the main clause by a comma:

Your evening class tonight has had to be cancelled ***because the lecturer's ill****.*
(adjunct expressing reason)

Somebody could have left it in the corridor, ***because it does happen****.*
(disjunct expressing a justification/explanation for what the speaker has just said)

The most common types of adverbial clause are described here. Adverbial clauses of comparison are dealt with in **471 Comparative clauses**

Adverbial clauses: time 314b

Adverbial clauses of time may indicate that events in the main clause occur earlier than, simultaneously with, or later than events in the adverbial clause.

They may be placed before or after the main clause. After the main clause is the more neutral position:

- Main clause event occurs earlier than adverbial event:

  He'd need to do his exams ***before he went****.*
  (the exams must happen first, then he can go)

- Simultaneous events:

  I got a sandwich ***while I was out****.*
  (I was out and got a sandwich at the same time)

- Main clause event occurs later than adverbial event:

  [computer tutor to pupils]
  Once you've typed that text in*, can you all save the document.*
  (type the text in first, then save the document)

Adverbial clauses: place 314c

Adverbial clauses of place are usually introduced by *where* or *wherever*. After the main clause is the more neutral position:

Everybody knew everybody ***where I grew up****.*

He always carried them on him ***wherever he went****.*

Adverbial clauses: condition 314d

Conditional adverbial clauses involve the use of *if*, *unless* and a number of other subordinators. These include:

as/so long as
assuming
given (that)
in case
in the event that
on condition that
providing/provided (that)
supposing (that)

Conditional adverbial clauses may be placed before or after the main clause. After the main clause is the more neutral position:

> *So, **given that Church and politics have so much in common**, is there anything the former can learn from the latter?*
>
> *I only spoke to the police **on condition that I wasn't going to be involved**.*

Conditional clauses can also involve syntactic devices such as inversion with *had*, *should* and *were*. Such clauses may come before or after the main clause:

> *I'd have gone there with you **had I known** Philip was going to be there.*
>
> ***Should you lose** one of your credit cards, call our emergency helpline.*

448–459 Condition for a full account of conditional clauses

Adverbial clauses: contrast 314e

Contrastive adverbial clauses are usually introduced by *whereas* or *while/whilst*. After the main clause is the more neutral position:

> *Without a car, if you want to go to the seaside then you have to pay for a coach to take you there or a taxi **whereas if you've got your car, you just have to put petrol in it and off you go**.*
>
> *He likes fried rice, **while I prefer boiled**.*

Adverbial clauses: concession 314f

Concessive adverbial clauses contrast expectations between the information in the adverbial clause and the information in the clause it is dependent on. After the main clause is the more neutral position. Concessive clauses are typically introduced by:

(al)though
even though
if (+ at least/also)
however
no matter wh-
whatever
wherever
whether … or
while (+ nevertheless)
whoever

> *He still plays tennis now and again, **even though he's in his eighties**.*
>
> *Her reputation was growing, and **if her business wasn't going to make her rich, at least** it made her happy.*
>
> ***Whatever I do**, I'm compromised.*

Adverbial clauses: reason 314g

Reason clauses are typically introduced by:

- *as*
- *because*
- *for* (formal styles only)
- *in that*
- *seeing (that)*
- *since*
- *with* (informal spoken)

Reason clauses may come before or after the main clause:

> ***As I trust myself***, *I don't need to write a number on it.*
>
> *Without the columns, the house looked very different,* ***in that it was the same as any other house in the street***.
>
> *He's very intense when it comes to his work. I suppose you have to be,* ***with doing a PhD***.

Adverbial clauses: purpose 314h

Purpose clauses may be introduced by *in order to/that*, *so as to*, *so (that)*. Purpose clauses may also simply be non-finite clauses with the *to*-infinitive. The purpose clause may occur before or after the main clause:

> ***In order to survive under the water***, *fish and other creatures need to get oxygen, just as people do.*
>
> *All the coordinates are moved around* ***so as to confuse us***.
>
> *Like all boys, he needs stability* ***so that he can rebel but still know he has security***.
>
> *I was ringing up* ***to enquire whether you've got any news about Alice***.

The negated forms of *in order to* and *so as to* are *in order not to* and *so as not to*:

> *I'll take my shoes off* ***so as not to dirty the carpet***.

Adverbial clauses: result 314i

Adverbial clauses of result are mostly introduced by *so*, and *so that* (more formal). Result clauses are placed after the main clause:

> *Roy's up in Manchester tomorrow,* ***so he can't come tomorrow***.
>
> *She tried to pull away, but he tightened his fingers* ***so that she could not get free***.

Adverbial clauses: comment 314j

Comment clauses are similar to viewpoint adverbial phrases (··⁘ **246**) in that they express the speaker's or writer's opinion or viewpoint on the events in the main clause. Frequent comment clauses include *as you know*, *I believe*, *I daresay*, *I expect*, *I presume*, *I suppose*, *I (don't) think*, *so they say/tell me*, *speaking as …*, *to be honest*.

Such clauses may occur before or after the main clause, or, in more formal styles, in mid position in the main clause:

To be honest*, I haven't really thought about it.*

I could ring him, ***I suppose****.*

In any case, my English master, ***as you know****, was Tubby Baxter.*

··⁘ **319-337 Adjuncts** for a full account of adverbial-clause types

EMBEDDED CLAUSES 315

Embedded clauses are dependent clauses which function as constituents of phrases. They are most typically relative clauses, but may also be adverbial clauses, nominal clauses or comparative clauses.

This phenomenon is sometimes called rankshifting since an item associated with a higher rank in the grammar (e.g. clauses are a higher rank than phrases and are constituents of sentences) may occupy a lower rank (e.g. a clause may act as constituent of a phrase).

In the sentence *Two people I know have gone there*, the clause *I know* modifies the noun *people*, and is a constituent of the subject noun phrase (in green in the diagram below):

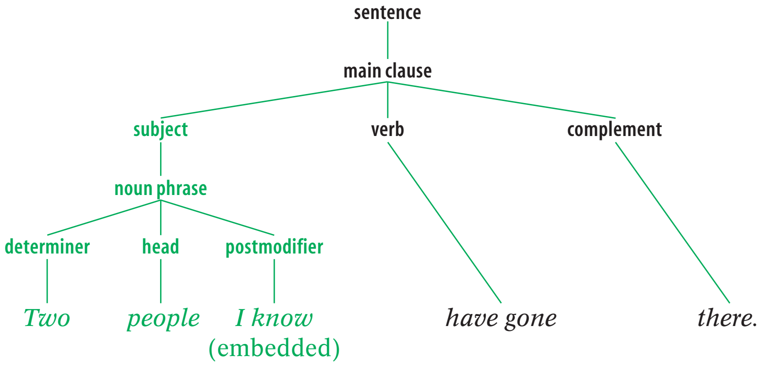

(noun phrase is in green)

> *Lindum was* ***a town*** | *where Roman soldiers* ***could settle*** *with their families* | *after they* ***had retired*** *from the army*.

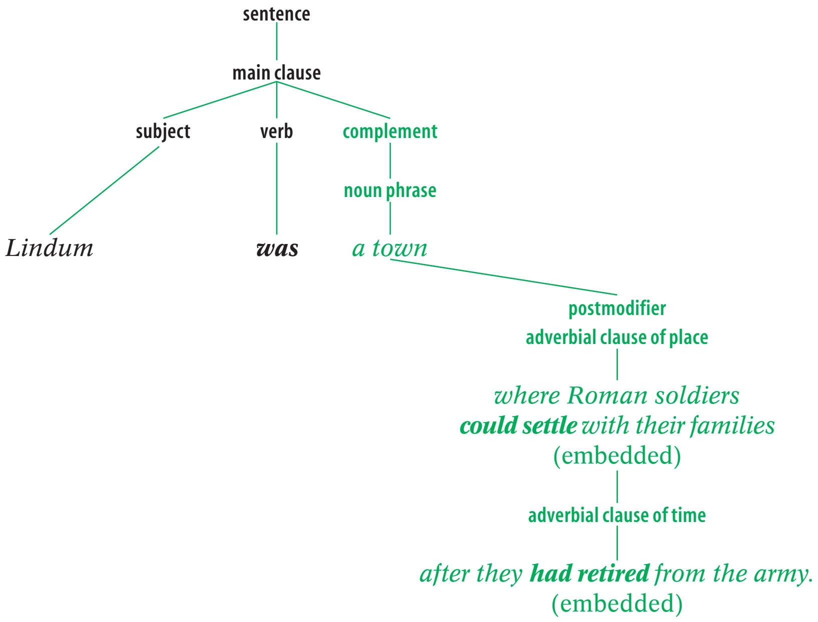
sentence
main clause
subject
verb
complement
noun phrase
Lindum
was
a town
postmodifier
adverbial clause of place
where Roman soldiers could settle with their families
(embedded)
adverbial clause of time
after they had retired from the army.
(embedded)

NOMINAL CLAUSES 316

Nominal clauses function in a way similar to noun phrases, in that they may function as subjects or objects/complements in the main clause. Compare the following pairs of examples:

> ***His sincerity*** *can't be denied.*
> (noun phrase as subject)
>
> ***That one British child in four is born into poverty*** *is a disgrace.*
> (nominal *that*-clause as subject)
>
> *I forgot* ***his name****.*
> (noun phrase as object)
>
> *I forgot* ***to ask how long it would take****.*
> (nominal infinitive clause *to ask how long it would take* as object of *forgot*, and *how long it would take* as object of *ask*)
>
> *The idea was* ***a good one****.*
> (noun phrase as subject complement)
>
> *Well the idea was* ***that I made tea*** *because Philip was helping us out.*
> (nominal clause as subject complement)

Nominal clauses may also be indirect interrogatives:

> ***What he didn't know*** *was the name of the person standing by my side.*
>
> *They have to decide* ***who to give the treatment to****.*

RELATIVE CLAUSES 317

Types of relative clause 317a

Relative clauses are of two main kinds: embedded clauses which postmodify noun heads, and *which*-clauses referring to a whole sentence or stretch of discourse (sentential relative clauses).

Defining and non-defining relative clauses

Relative clauses (in green in the examples below) may define or describe a preceding noun head (bold in the examples below).

Relative clauses which define the noun are called defining (or, in some grammar books, restrictive):

> *The* ***guy*** *who shouted must have been on about the seventh floor.*
> (defines the guy; specifies which guy is being referred to)
>
> *This is the* ***problem*** *which we're having at the moment.*
> (defines the problem; specifies which problem is being referred to)
>
> *That* ***woman*** *that was here lost all her keys.*
> (defines the woman; specifies which woman is being referred to)

Relative clauses which describe the noun are called non-defining (or, in some grammar books, non-restrictive):

> *Have you ever heard of* ***Guy Preston****, who had a hit song with 'Loving Ways'?*
> (describes or gives extra information about Guy Preston)
>
> *Erm there's Portugal, there's* ***Las Palmas****, which is one of the Canary Islands, and there's Rhodes.*
> (describes or gives extra information about Las Palmas)

Sentential relative clauses

Sentential relative clauses comment on a whole previous sentence or series of clauses, or a speaker turn, or a longer stretch of discourse. They are introduced by *which*. Their most frequent function in informal spoken language is to express evaluation:

> *He's always in the office and then he complains about not having any time off and how wonderful he is to the company, which is his own fault.*
> (comments on the previous clauses)

In conversation, sentential relative clauses may be added by a second speaker:

> A: *I should use my qualification but you know I think I'll probably look back if I haven't done something with it and think 'Oh I wonder what, you know, what if I'd …?'.*
> B: *Which is not good*.
> A: *Mm.*
> (comments on previous clauses/a speaker turn)
>
> [A is a travel agent, B is a customer, discussing flight schedules]
> A: *No that's coming back 12 o'clock, coming home midday, but that one, the one going out, it gets in at 7 in the morning.*
> B: *Which is fine isn't it?*

Occasionally, the same speaker may add on a sentential relative clause after a response by a listener:

> A: *It cost £20.*
> B: *Oh right.*
> A: *Which I know is quite a lot*.
> B: *Mm.*

Sometimes such clauses may be added by more than one speaker:

> A: *Any other ideas? Any way you could prop the business up or, you know take …*
> B: *Not at the moment.*
> A: *Mm.*
> C: *Not without having to go heavily into debt on a mortgage on a re-mortgage or have a personal loan.*
> A: *Mm.*
> B: *Which is the one thing we don't want to do*.
> C: *Which at the moment none of us can afford*.
> (two sentential clauses commenting on the notion of 'going heavily into debt')

Relative pronouns 317b

Relative clauses are introduced by relative pronouns. The relative pronouns are *who*, *whom*, *which*, *that* and *whose*. The choice of relative pronoun depends on whether the reference is to:

- a person, animal or thing
- a subject or an object
- a possessive meaning

The choice of relative pronoun also depends on what type of relative clause is involved, whether it is defining or non-defining, or sentential (⁘ **317a** above).

Sometimes the relative pronoun is omitted. This is referred to as zero relative pronoun (⁘ **317h**):

> *It's not **a problem I've got**. It's **a problem they've got**.*
> (compare: It's not a problem which/that I've got. It's a problem which/that they've got.)

The relative pronouns stand for the subjects, objects or prepositional complements of their clauses, so those clause elements are not repeated in the relative clause:

*He's the man **who** wrote back to me.*
(subject relative pronoun: He's the man. The man wrote back to me.)
(~~He's the man who he wrote back to me.~~)

*This is the problem **which** we're having at the moment.*
(object relative pronoun: This is the problem. We are having the problem.)
(~~This is the problem which we're having it at the moment.~~)

*The woman **who** I gave the form **to** was quite friendly.*
(object of a preposition: I gave the form to the woman.)
(~~The woman who I gave the form to her was quite friendly.~~)

However, occasionally, in very informal speech, an element may be repeated unnecessarily:

[DJ inviting listeners to call in and talk about songs which are very special to them]
*If you have one **that** you're really desperate to tell us about **it**, then give us a ring on 01223* …
(standard usage: if you have one you're really desperate to tell us about, then give us …)

The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign
[customer speaking to a travel agent; *Amtrak* is an American rail company]
A: *So with this Amtrak thing then, basically that's just a voucher **that** I take **it** to the station+*
B: *Right.*
A: *+when I want to start using it.*

Such usage may be explained by saying that sometimes speakers 'change direction' during their utterances so that two standard structures blend. This is a normal, common feature of speaking in real time and should not be seen as deviant or 'wrong'.

What is not used as a relative pronoun in standard usage:

*But Simon Quigley was there, **which** was very nice.*
(~~But Simon Quigley was there, what was very nice.~~)

Who and *whom* 317c

Who refers to human beings, and occasionally to pet animals. It is used with defining and non-defining relative clauses:

> *I'm sure there'd be a lot more people **who**'d be better qualified than myself.*
> (defining)
>
> *We'll ask Dick, **who**'s the oldest in the family, just to say a few words.*
> (non-defining)
>
> *That's the dog **who** bit Tom.*
> (defining; referring to an animal)

In all three examples, *who* stands for the subject of the relative clause:

> *I'm sure there'd be a lot more people **who**'d be better qualified than myself.*
> (I'm sure there'd be a lot more people. Those people would be better qualified than myself.)
>
> *We'll ask Dick, **who**'s the oldest in the family, just to say a few words.*
> (We'll ask Dick. Dick's the oldest in the family.)
>
> *That's the dog **who** bit Tom.*
> *(That's the dog. The dog bit Tom.)*

In most styles, except very formal ones, *who* may also refer to the object of the relative clause:

> *She's the sister of a good friend of mine **who** we visited in Oxford before coming to you.*
>
> *It was from a woman **who** I know slightly.*

When *who* refers to the complement of a preposition, the preposition is placed at the end of the relative clause, and not immediately before *who*:

> *I met Bill's mate Rob, **who** I went to school **with**; Bill's in prison now.*
> *(~~I met Bill's mate Rob, with who I went to school; Bill's in prison now~~.)*

··⁘ 317d *Whom*

Collective human nouns (e.g. *cabinet*, *committee*, *government*, *group*, *panel*, *police*, *team* ··⁘ **182a**) tend to be used with *who* when followed by plural concord and *which* when followed by singular concord. *Who* with plural concord tends to be used when the members of the groups are seen as individuals; *which* with singular concord tends to be used when the group is seen as a whole:

- Plural concord (group seen as individuals):

  *The reports then go to a panel **who decide** what action to take.*

  *At the very beginning I had some sympathy for the police, **who were** so convinced they had found their man.*

[*World Cup* here refers to the football championship]
The Monaco midfielder, a key member of the Scotland team ***who face*** *Latvia in a crucial final World Cup qualifier …*

- Singular concord (group seen as single body):

  Ignoring immigrants excludes a social group ***which*** *already* ***plays*** *an important role in social and economic development.*

  The Disasters Emergency Committee, ***which coordinates*** *overseas crisis appeals, raised £3 million for the Bangladesh cyclone appeal.*

  [referring to the hypocrisy of governments supporting conservation of natural resources while continuing to increase the use of them]
  The same charge of hypocrisy is levelled at the British government, ***which says*** *we must find more oil yet use less.*

✪ *Who* is not used for inanimate reference:

This is a problem ***which*** *occurs regularly.*
(~~This is a problem who occurs regularly.~~)

Whom 317d

Whom, which was traditionally used to refer to the human object of a relative clause or complement of a preposition, is now confined to very formal styles and mostly to writing. It is used with both defining and non-defining relative clauses:

Was she another of the ex-soldiers ***whom*** *Dennison had recruited from the army?*
(defining; formal, literary style)

It appeared she had struggled with her attacker, ***whom*** *she almost certainly knew.*
(non-defining; formal journalism)

Whom is used more extensively (but still only in formal styles and mostly in writing) when it refers to the complement of a preposition, and is always used when the preposition is placed immediately before the relative pronoun:

She taught piano and had three daughters, ***about whom*** *she worried incessantly.*
(~~She taught piano, and had three daughters, about who she worried incessantly.~~)

I soon discovered that she was thirty-one, had three boys aged nine, eleven and fourteen, whose father was a Norwegian ***from whom*** *she was now separated.*

There was also a bunch of Claire's friends ***whom*** *Cory had yet to be introduced to.*

Whom is many times more frequent in writing than in speech.

Which 317e

Which is used to refer to a non-human subject or object of a relative clause. It is used with both defining and non-defining clauses:

He dialled *a number* ***which*** *was answered immediately at the other end.*
(defining; referring to the subject of the relative clause)

> *He had given them a number **which** they could call, day or night, if they needed him.*
> (defining; referring to the object of the relative clause)
>
> *And I remember sailing out of Dublin Bay, **which** is a beautiful, beautiful bay with the Hill of Howth on one side.*
> (non-defining)

··⁘ **317c** ***Who*** **for error warning**

Which can refer to the complement of a preposition, and the preposition may be placed at the end of the relative clause (more informal) or immediately before the relative pronoun (more formal):

> *She taught at the school **which** my nieces went **to**.*
>
> *Why did he keep asking questions **to which** you could not possibly be expected to know the answer?*

Sentential relative clauses are always introduced by *which*:

> *We've been told not to tell him because he doesn't know yet, **which** is really stupid.*

That 317f

In a wide range of informal styles, *that* is used instead of *who/whom* or *which* in defining relative clauses. It is used for reference to either a subject or an object.

In all of these examples of defining relative clauses from sections **317a–317e** above, *that* can be used.

Examples of *that* in defining relative clauses

example	alternative with *that*
*The guy **who** shouted must have been on about the seventh floor.*	*The guy **that** shouted must have been on about the seventh floor.* (refers to the subject)
*This is the problem **which** we're having at the moment.*	*This is the problem **that** we're having at the moment.* (refers to the object)
*He dialled a number **which** was answered immediately at the other end.*	*He dialled a number **that** was answered immediately at the other end.*
*Was she another of the ex-soldiers **whom** Dennison had recruited from the army?*	*Was she another of the ex-soldiers **that** Dennison had recruited from the army?*
*He had given them a number **which** they could call, day or night, if they needed him.*	*He had given them a number **that** they could call, day or night, if they needed him.*
*She taught at the school **which** my nieces went to.*	*She taught at the school **that** my nieces went to.*
*I'm sure there'd be a lot more people **who**'d be better qualified than myself.*	*I'm sure there'd be a lot more people **that**'d be better qualified than myself.*
*That's the dog **who** bit Tom.*	*That's the dog **that** bit Tom.*
*She's the sister of a good friend of mine **who** we visited in Oxford before coming to you.*	*She's the sister of a good friend of mine **that** we visited in Oxford before coming to you.*
*It was from a woman **who** I know slightly.*	*It was from a woman **that** I know slightly.*
*This is a problem **which** occurs regularly.*	*This is a problem **that** occurs regularly.*

··⁘ **317c** ***Who*** **for error warning**

That does not normally introduce non-defining relative clauses, except in informal spoken usage:

> [referring to a man arrested for football hooliganism]
> *Mr Collinson, **who** has never been in any kind of trouble, had not been to an England football international before.*
> (~~Mr Collinson, that has never been in any kind of trouble, had not been to an England football international before.~~)
>
> *The biggest tourist event in Lincoln is the Christmas market, **which** takes place over four days in the castle and cathedral grounds.*
> (preferred to: … that takes place over four days …)
>
> *And as you know, the meeting, **that** we'd never wanted anyway, was just foisted on us.*
> (informal spoken)

That may refer to the complement of a preposition, but not when the preposition is placed immediately before the relative pronoun:

> *The other girl **that** I told you **about** also lives in Bristol.*
>
> *I've got some exercises **that** you can practise **with**.*
>
> *It was like a dream **from which** I feared I would wake at any moment.*
> (~~It was like a dream from that I feared I would wake at any moment.~~)

Whose 317g

When the relative pronoun stands for a possessive determiner, *whose* is used in defining and non-defining clauses:

> *They've moved now, the people **whose** car it was.*
> (it was the people's car)
>
> *We've got a Spanish friend **whose** family have an orange orchard.*
>
> [*a theatre sister* is a nurse who works in a hospital operating theatre]
> *A theatre sister, **whose** blood group was the same as mine, bravely volunteered.*

Whose is mostly used for possession by humans and animals, but in more formal styles it can also be used for things:

> *He couldn't shake away the idea that she had survived a catastrophe, **whose** details he was unable to imagine because her life had been so different.*
> (the details of the catastrophe)

An alternative to *whose* in more formal styles is determiner + noun + *of which*:

> *He couldn't shake away the idea that she had survived a catastrophe, **the** details **of which** he was unable to imagine because her life had been so different.*
>
> *He wrote one novel, **the** title **of which** I've forgotten.*
> (or, less formal: He wrote one novel, whose title I've forgotten.)

Zero relative pronoun 317h

Referring to the object

In informal styles and especially in spoken language, a defining relative clause referring to the object of the clause may occur without any relative pronoun:

That's a job I could never do.
(understood: a job which/that I could never do.)

A: *Who was present at this Sunday lunch?*
B: *Oh, some people we didn't even know.*
(understood: some people that/who/whom we didn't even know.)

As complement of a preposition

Zero relative pronoun can also occur as the complement of a preposition, but only when the preposition is placed at the end of the relative clause:

Is this the car Fiona was talking about?
(understood: Is this the car that/which Fiona was talking about?)
(or, more formal: Is this the car about which Fiona was talking?)
(But not: ~~Is this the car about Fiona was talking?~~)

[showing someone an old photograph in which they appear]
Huh, there's you in the back garden of the second house we lived in.
(understood: … the second house that/which we lived in.)

When the relative pronoun is the complement of a preposition, the preposition and relative pronoun may both be omitted in informal styles:

That seems to me a sensible moment to make that decision.
(understood: … a sensible moment at which to make that decision.)

Referring to the subject

In informal speech, zero relative pronoun may occur with reference to the subject of a defining or non-defining relative clause. This happens particularly with existential *there* constructions:

There was a train came by every morning about half-past eight.
(understood: There was a train which/that came by every morning …)

A: *There's quite a lot of colour photocopying needs doing.*
B: *Er, right, when do you want it for?*
A: *Today if possible.*
(understood: … colour photocopying which/that needs doing.)

There was this strange guy, Harry Foster, was President of the company. He was tall and thin.
(understood: …Harry Foster, who was President of …)

Occasionally in informal speech a subject relative pronoun and an immediately following auxiliary verb may both be omitted:

[talking about the activities of mysterious neighbours]
Yeah, they do seem to be dragging stuff about. It's really weird. There seems to be more stuff come out than gone in.
(understood: … more stuff that/which has come out than stuff which/that has gone in.)

539 **Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

Non-defining relative clauses

Zero relative pronoun does not occur with non-defining relative clauses:

> *The lost-property office, which is on the floor below, is closed until next Tuesday.*
> (~~The lost-property office, is on the floor below, is closed until next Tuesday.~~)

Punctuation and intonation of relative clauses 317i

Punctuation

Defining relative clauses are not usually marked with commas:

> *Rosie knew he was a person **that** handled trouble casually.*
> (~~Rosie knew he was a person, that handled trouble casually.~~)

> *But then the person **who** owned it decided they didn't want to rent it until April.*
> (~~But then the person, who owned it, decided …~~)

Non-defining relative clauses are normally separated off in writing by commas:

> [about food additives, which have official European codes beginning with E-]
> *Tartaric acid, **which** is just made from grapes, is sometimes listed as E334.*

> *The fields could be protected by hedges and trees, **which** could also be used to produce fruit and nuts.*

> *Tim Waites, **who** was hosting the evening, did his best to draw attention away from the two of them.*

Sentential relative clauses are also marked off by a comma:

> *At the end of the day that gentleman finished up dead, **which** is very sad.*

Intonation

In speech, especially in more careful and formal speech, non-defining relative clauses are typically separated by breath pauses at the points where commas would normally be placed in writing. There may also be a drop to a lower pitch level for the non-defining clause:

[university lecture]

normal pitch level	**lowered pitch level** ↘	**normal pitch level**
X-rays have been around for a long time, over a hundred years, and the plain radiograph [breath pause]	***which** we'll be looking at today* [breath pause]	*in part at least really hasn't changed that much over the last hundred years.*

Sentential relative clauses may be preceded by a breath pause or a slightly longer pause in speech.

Non-finite relative clauses 317j

Many of the same principles which apply to finite defining and non-defining relative clauses apply to their non-finite equivalents. However, with non-finite relative clauses, the zero relative pronoun is used:

> *The woman sitting next to Marian is her sister.*
> (defining: specifies which woman)
> (~~The woman who sitting next to Marian is her sister.~~)

Each cell will continue to divide to form a human composed of millions of cells.

There's food to be served and drinks to be poured.

Preliminary investigations indicate that some, if not all, of the clients' money, believed to total £6 million, has instead found its way into unquoted companies and property purchases.
(non-defining: adds relevant information about the money)

In the case of *-ing* and *-ed* clauses, non-finite relative clauses only occur when the subject of the non-tensed verb is the same referent as the head noun:

The man I'm looking for has dark hair.
(~~The man looking for has dark hair.~~ *Man* is object, so the relative clause cannot be non-finite *-ing*)

Relative *-ed* clauses correspond to passive voice finite equivalents:

The company she sold has made millions.
('The company sold has made millions' is possible but can only be related to its passive finite equivalent by ellipsis: The company which was sold has made millions.)

-ing clauses are not just reduced forms of their equivalent progressive finite forms. Verbs which are normally not used in progressive aspect may be used in non-finite relative *-ing* clauses:

Half a mile later, they reached what appeared to be a derelict complex consisting of half a dozen buildings.
(Half a mile later, they reached what appeared to be a derelict complex ~~which was consisting of half a dozen buildings.~~)

To-infinitive clauses may be used if the noun is subject or if it is the complement of a preposition in the non-finite clause:

The person to answer any questions about computers is Tania.
(*the person* is subject of *answer*)

Obviously the person to sit next to at a dinner party is the witty, charming and attractive one.
(*the person* is the complement of the preposition *(next) to*)

There is often a choice between an active *to*-infinitive clause and a passive one. Sometimes the difference in meaning is hardly noticeable. With existential *there is/are*, the difference is often negligible:

***There are** all those apples to peel.*
(There are all those apples to be peeled.)

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

With other constructions, especially where quantifiers occur, the passive is less common:

> *We've got a lot of cooking to do.*
> (less likely: We've got a lot of cooking to be done.)
>
> *I have an essay to write for tomorrow morning.*
> (less likely: I have an essay to be written for tomorrow morning.)

In general, the active voice versions emphasise activity, while the passive voice versions emphasise the existence or absence of something.

CLAUSES AND NOUN PHRASES IN APPOSITION 318

The placing of elements with identical reference next to each other is called apposition:

> *| My cousin | Mary | worked at that school.*
> (the two noun phrases, *my cousin* and *Mary* refer to the same person)

Most typically the adjacent elements are noun phrases:

> *| My friend | Jim | works there.*
> (defining)
>
> *| Susan |, | a friend of mine |, has just moved here from Liverpool.*
> (non-defining)

A clause may also be in apposition to a noun phrase:

> *| Her answer |, | that she had forgotten to set her alarm clock |, was not a convincing excuse.*

→ **173 Noun phrases occurring together** (in apposition)

Adjuncts

Introduction 319
Types of adjunct 320
Types of meaning 321
Position of adjuncts 322
End position 323
Front position 324
Mid position 325
  Mid position and auxiliary/modal verbs 325a
  Mid position and clause type 325b
  Mid position and *be*, *do* and *have* 325c
  Mid position in tags and reduced clauses 325d
Manner, place and time 326
  Positions 326a
  More than one adjunct in end position 326b
  More than one adjunct of the same type 326c
  Topical linking of clauses and sentences 326d
Duration 327
Definite and indefinite frequency 328
Reason and purpose 329
Degree and intensity 330
Focusing 331
Modal 332
Evaluative 333
Viewpoint 334
Linking 335
  Panel: Linking in written and spoken English 335a
Inversion 336
  Inversion after negative adjuncts 336a
  Inversion after place adjuncts 336b
  Inversion after linking adjuncts 336c
  Inversion with direct speech reporting clauses 336d
Panel: Split infinitives 337

Adjuncts

INTRODUCTION 319

The adjunct is the fifth major clause function, the other four being subject, verb, object and complement. Adjuncts modify, comment on or expand in some way the meaning of the clause in terms of manner, place, time, frequency, reason, intensity, etc. Adjuncts are never obligatory items in a clause.

TYPES OF ADJUNCT 320

The adjunct in a clause may be realised by an adverb phrase, a prepositional phrase, or (less frequently) a noun phrase.

- Adjunct realised by an adverb phrase:

adjunct	subject	verb	complement
Luckily	*the weather*	*was*	*very nice.*

subject	verb	object	adjunct
I	*met*	*Prince Charles*	***fairly recently***.

- Adjunct realised by a prepositional phrase:

adjunct	subject	verb	complement
After that	*I*	*felt*	*really bad.*

subject	verb	object	adjunct
They	*were having*	*a conversation*	***in the background***.

Adverb phrases and prepositional phrases are both commonly used as adjuncts, and may often paraphrase each other in meaning:

I'm going to have to drive ***very carefully***.

Even where records are available, they have to be interpreted ***with care***.

- Adjunct realised by a noun phrase:

subject	verb	object	adjunct
We	*'re celebrating*	*our silver wedding*	***this year***.

Adjuncts may also be compared to adverbial clauses. In this grammar book, adverbial clauses are treated as elements of the sentence structure, rather than as adjuncts in the clause structure. However, the meanings of adverbial clauses are often similar to the meanings of adjuncts:

> *She wrote to me* ***when she arrived in Oxford****.*
> (adverbial clause)
>
> *She wrote to me* ***upon her arrival in Oxford****.*
> (same meaning realised as prepositional phrase adjunct)

304–318 Clause combination

TYPES OF MEANING 321

There are a number of different types of meaning that adjuncts typically express.

Examples of important general types of meaning expressed by adjuncts

manner **326**	refers to how something happens	*A robin was singing* ***beautifully*** *from a garden tree.* *You're going to have to encourage your children to think about this* ***in a serious way****.*
place **326**	refers to where something happens	*Have you got all your family* ***locally****?* *There's a shortage of housing* ***in the neighbourhood****.*
time **326**	refers to when something happens	*I've had some really weird dreams* ***lately****.* *I retired* ***last May****.*
duration **327**	refers to length of time over which something happens	*We met her at your wedding* ***very briefly****.* *Well, Pat said to me, 'Go out and you can leave the house* ***for good****!'*
definite frequency **328**	states how often something happens using specific time expressions	*She gets paid* ***monthly****.* *They meet* ***every three weeks*** *and they discuss things.*
indefinite frequency **328**	states how often something happens using non-specific time expressions	*She phones me* ***quite often****.* *We bumped into each other* ***from time to time****.*
reason **329**	states why	*I told him off* ***for all the mess on the floor****.* *Going to the USA is cheap at the moment* ***because of the exchange rate****.*

continued overleaf

continued

purpose **329**	states a goal or purpose	*I went to the café* ***for a quick coffee****.* *You might think I'm exaggerating* ***for the purpose of this story****.*
degree and intensity **330**	refers to how much, to what degree something happens	***Largely*** *they looked after themselves.* *That seems to be working, and does seem to be helping* ***to a certain extent****.*
focusing **331**	focuses on or specifies an entity	*He* ***specifically*** *asked to meet with me alone.* *Wildlife which lives alongside well-used paths becomes accustomed to the presence of people. This applies* ***in particular*** *to birds.*
modal **332**	expresses degrees of truth, possibility, necessity, etc.	***Probably*** *the most famous desert plant is the cactus.* *Medical evidence at the post mortem revealed* ***without doubt*** *that Mrs Marline had died through an overdose of the drug.*
evaluative **333**	judges or comments on the event, gives the speaker's opinion	A: *Did Charlie do anything?* B: *No he didn't actually,* ***amazingly****.* ***With luck*** *we should be finished by five-thirty.*
viewpoint **334**	expresses the perspective or standpoint from which the speaker sees things	***Personally*** *I don't want to carry on with what I'm doing for ever.* *It's a disgrace,* ***to my mind****.*
linking **335**	links and relates clauses and sentences to one another	*So he dropped his hand from her shoulder. And* ***moreover*** *left her side.* *In 1990, girls accounted for fully two thirds of the children globally without access to schools.* ***In addition****, more than two thirds of the children who drop out of school every year in developing countries are girls.*

There is some overlap in the types of meaning, and some adjuncts can be classified in different ways, according to their context of use:

> *It has changed* ***a lot****.*
> (to a great degree)
>
> *We plan to go away* ***a lot*** *you see. For weekends and things.*
> (frequently)

*So we sent Joe up the street to go and find out what was happening. **Meanwhile** Maria was in her bedroom, looking out of the window.*
(time: at the same time)

[about a women's golf tournament in Britain]
*Total prize money for the week – to be shared among the players – is £150,000, with £25,000 as the top prize; **meanwhile** in the States you're playing for up to $700,000 a time. So what have the Americans got that we haven't?*
(used for expressing comparisons and contrasts)

POSITION OF ADJUNCTS 322

There are three positions that adjuncts are typically used in: end, front and mid position.

End position is considered the most neutral position for most common adjuncts of manner, place and time, and is by far the most common position for such adjuncts in everyday conversational language:

- End position:

  *I've had a lot of funny dreams **lately**.*
  (neutral position for manner, place and time adjuncts)

- Front position:

  ***Yesterday** I didn't eat my lunch.*
  (*Yesterday* is given greater emphasis in front position)

- Mid position:

  *We **usually** eat around seven o'clock.*
  (between subject and verb: typical position for common adjuncts of indefinite frequency)

END POSITION 323

End position means after any object or predicative complement:

*They don't have the right attitude **in this country**.*

*I've been very tired **lately**.*

Adjuncts do not normally come between a verb and an object:

*They started to build the road **in 1981**.*
(~~They started to build in 1981 the road.~~)

*He had to pass the shop **on his way**.*
(~~He had to pass on his way the shop.~~)

In written and spoken journalistic style, however, adjuncts are sometimes found between verb and object, especially with reporting verbs:

*Mr Ford announced **yesterday** his resignation from the party.*

The same applies in general to predicative complements. Adjuncts follow them:

> [tennis player talking about pre-match nerves]
> *You'd become nervous* ***before the match****.*
> (~~You'd become before the match nervous.~~)

However, complements of the verb *be* may be preceded by adverbs of indefinite frequency:

> *He's* ***always*** *happy.*

FRONT POSITION 324

Front position means that the adjunct is the first item in the clause structure:

> ***In the job description*** *it says you'll get paid a basic car allowance.*

A front-position adjunct comes after a conjunction:

> *He looked tired but* ***nevertheless*** *managed a smile as he caught sight of his two employees and walked over to join them.*
> (~~nevertheless but managed a smile~~ …)

Front position for adjuncts which normally occupy mid or end position gives greater emphasis to the adjunct:

> ***In the garden*** *they grew all the food they needed.*
> (adjunct of place, normally found in end position)
>
> ***Quite often*** *I don't have any breakfast at all.*
> (adjunct of indefinite frequency, normally found in mid position)

MID POSITION 325

Mid position means between the subject and verb. However, the exact position varies depending on whether auxiliary or modal verbs are used, and on the type of adjunct:

> *I* ***usually*** *stay at a hotel near the airport.*
> (between subject and verb)
>
> *I've* ***never*** *had a holiday like it in my life.*
> (following the first auxiliary/modal verb)
>
> *Indeed in the past two months central banks have been* ***modestly*** *selling dollars to check the currency's rise.*
> (following the last auxiliary verb)

*Well I **certainly** would join if I could afford it.*
(emphatic: preceding a stressed first auxiliary or modal verb)

Mid position and auxiliary/modal verbs 325a

Mid position normally means between subject and lexical verb or between an auxiliary/modal verb and a lexical verb.

If there is more than one auxiliary verb or a combination of modal and auxiliary verbs, then the adjunct normally comes after the first auxiliary verb (**aux1**) or after the modal verb:

aux1 adjunct aux2 main verb
*We | 've | **always** | been | striving | to improve the service.*

modal adjunct aux main verb
*He | should | **really** | have | resigned.*

However, for adjuncts of degree and for other adjuncts which modify the lexical verb rather than the whole clause, mid position is immediately before the lexical verb, following all modal and auxiliary verbs:

*We have been **totally** rejected and we didn't expect that.*

[the parliament of the Isle of Man, a region of the UK, debated a maritime disaster near the island in its Parliament, *the Tynwald*]
*The parliament, known as the Tynwald, held a meeting at which unanimous approval was given for the operation to return the bodies of the crew to their families 'so that funerals can be held and so that the pain of their losses may be, **in some degree**, eased'.*

*Save the Children has been **actively** supporting farmers cultivating fields along the Shabelle River Belet Weyne district since 1992.*

Instead of coming after the first auxiliary or after a modal verb, mid-position adjuncts can be placed before for extra emphasis:

*I **honestly** don't know.*
(compare neutral (or unmarked) position after the first modal or auxiliary verb: I don't honestly know.)

*I **probably** could have said if I'd wanted to see it.*

In speech, pre-auxiliary/pre-modal position is particularly the case when the auxiliary/modal is stressed:

*I **never** have worked out which is which.*

*They know that they **definitely** are going to work.*

*I **really** will have to try harder next time.*

Mid-position adjuncts can sometimes occur after a modal verb followed by an auxiliary verb, or after a second auxiliary verb (instead of the more normal position after the first one). This is common in spoken language when the second verb is contracted:

> *I think she would've **probably** married him.*
>
> *They might've **actually** had to alter the text. I don't know.*
>
> [*the AA* is the Automobile Association, a club for motorists]
> *She's been working for the AA since she left school, she's been **just** working, she loves it.*

Mid position and clause type 325b

In interrogative clauses, mid-position adjuncts follow the subject:

> *Did you **seriously** think about ringing up Gwen?*
> (~~Did seriously you think …?~~)

In emphatic and negative imperatives, the adjunct usually comes between *do/don't* and the verb:

> *Do **always** remember that we only have one opportunity to clinch it.*
>
> *Don't **just** say 'I'm going to include that' unless you can justify it.*

Mid position and *be*, *do* and *have* 325c

It is necessary to distinguish between the auxiliary uses of *be*, *do*, and *have* and their uses as lexical verbs with regard to the placing of adjunct elements in mid position (see the table below).

When *be*, *do* and *have* are used as auxiliaries, the adjunct is placed in mid position, after the auxiliary.

When *be* is a lexical verb, the adjunct is placed after the verb.

When *do* and *have* are lexical verbs, the adjunct is placed in mid position between subject and verb.

Positions of *be*, *do* and *have* as auxiliaries and as lexical verbs

	as auxiliary	as lexical verb
be	*I'm **often** accused of being too strict.*	*He's **often** in a bad mood.*
do	*We don't **usually** get back here till about one o'clock.*	*I **always** do it because I want to make sure they've got what they want.*
have	*You've **hardly** eaten anything.*	*We **usually** have tea for breakfast and coffee later.*

Mid position in tags and reduced clauses 325d

In speech, when modal and auxiliary verbs and lexical verb *be* are used in tags or in reduced clauses, the adjunct typically comes before the modal/auxiliary/*be*:

> A: *I hope they'll disappear.*
> B: *I think they **probably** will.*

> A: *Do you celebrate the New Year too?*
> B: *Yeah we* ***usually*** *do*.
>
> *I'm not unhappy. I* ***never*** *have been*.
> (preferred to: I've never been.)
>
> A: *It's not the same.*
> B: *No it* ***never*** *is*.
> (preferred to: No it's never.)
>
> *I thought it was glass.* ***Probably*** *is*.
> (ellipsis of subject: *It* probably is.)

However, extra emphasis can be placed on the adjunct by placing it after the modal/auxiliary:

> A: *Does the bus stop there?*
> B: *Well it doesn't* ***usually*** *but you could ask him to.*
>
> *I was worried I was going to lose the money and I did* ***almost***.

In informal speech an adjunct belonging to the main clause may occasionally follow the tag, almost as an afterthought:

> *We won't rush dear, will we* ***tomorrow****?*
>
> *Spanish is more widely used, isn't it,* ***outside of Europe****?*

MANNER, PLACE AND TIME 326

Positions 326a

Most frequently, manner, place and time adjuncts are used in end or front position. End position is considered the most neutral (unmarked) position, but front position is also frequent, and a little more emphatic:

> place | time
> *He played the piano |* ***in the village hall*** *|* ***one night***.

The factors which determine choice of position have to do with the topical development of the text and the cohesive linking of clauses, as well as the length of the adjunct. They may be used in front position to emphasise them. This is especially common with time adjuncts:

> *Oh* ***tomorrow morning****, er, we're going to get up about eleven.*
> (tomorrow is a special, different morning)
>
> ***Thirty-one years*** *we've been together.*
> (the number of years is important)
>
> ***Up near the church*** *there was an old tree.*
> (helps to orient the listener)

> ***Without a car*** *you'll never get there.*
> (emphasises the problem of being carless)
>
> *A man in a white coat was making a drill a bit longer.* ***Near him*** *there stood an intriguing railway carriage.*

In this last example, typical of literary style, the adjunct is brought to the front of the sentence to link it topically with something important in the sentence before (the man in the white coat).

➔ 473c Adjuncts

Manner, place and time adjuncts can also be used in mid position to emphasise them. The emphasis is even stronger than when they are used in front position. Mid position is particularly common in formal written texts and journalistic and literary styles:

> [about Mark Knopfler, the rock musician]
> *He has,* ***in other ways****, become an elder statesman of his profession.*
>
> *Paul Parker* ***yesterday*** *chose to join Manchester United.*
>
> *I couldn't stop thinking about the noise of the waterfall. It was a noise that would never stop. It would always be roaring, even now it was,* ***in the middle of the night, all the days and all the nights****, shattering itself down the sides of the crevasse.*

More than one adjunct in end position 326b

Where there is more than one adjunct in end position, the most neutral (unmarked) order is manner – place – time.

Examples of more than one adjunct in end position

clause	manner (how?)	place (where?)	time (when?)
We were working		*in the garden*	*all morning.*
She played	*magnificently*		*the second time.*
An 18-year-old teenager was arrested		*in Cyprus*	*yesterday.*
She died	*peacefully*	*in Hartlepool General Hospital*	*on Sunday.*
A group of women protested	*angrily*	*outside the parliament building*	*yesterday.*

Although the last two examples show that it is possible to have all three types of adjunct in the same clause, this is rare in informal spoken language and is associated with more formal registers such as journalism and formal writing.

More than one adjunct of the same type 326c

If there is more than one adjunct of the same meaning-class, there is usually a choice of order, with more emphasis falling on the last adjunct.

Manner

1 *We survived* | *quite well* | *without one* | .

Or: **2** *We survived* | *without one* | *quite well* | .

However, the order in **1** is more common, with prepositional phrases (especially longer ones) coming after shorter adjuncts:

> *I just wanted to live my life* | *quietly* | , | *independently* | *and* | *with the minimum of disruption* | .

Place

1 *You'll see the station* | *just round the corner* | *next to the library* | .

Or: **2** *You'll see the station* | *next to the library* | *just round the corner* | .

The order in **1**, with the more general location followed by the more specific location, is more common.

Time

1 *I'll see you* | *at six o'clock* | *on Wednesday* | .

Or: **2** *I'll see you* | *on Wednesday* | *at six o'clock* | .

With time adjuncts there is little difference between the two orders, but the second adjunct is felt to carry greater emphasis.

Topical linking of clauses and sentences 326d

Combinations of manner, place and time adjuncts in front position are flexible, and the order may vary, often depending on topical links between clauses and sentences:

> [*rubbering* refers to the sound of the rubber tyres of a car on the road]
> *Only the odd car rubbering by in the boulevard below and the hum of the air-conditioning disturbed my sleep.* | *In the morning* | , | *at an international newspaper stand* | , *I met my first Moroccan friend, Muhammad.*

Here the choice of time adjunct (*in the morning*) before place adjunct (*at an international newspaper stand*) is appropriate because of the contrast between the two sentences (night/sleep, and morning).

> *In 1979 Mogador bought the house known as the Creek overlooking the Orwell estuary near Ipswich, where the family had been holidaying for some years.* | *There* | , | *following William's death and her own 70th birthday* | , *Hetta decided to organise an open-air performance of 'A Midsummer Night's Dream' for June 21, 1986.*

Here the choice of place adjunct (*there*) before time adjunct (*following William's death and her own 70th birthday*) is appropriate because of the topic of place which is continued from the first to the second sentence.

DURATION 327

Duration adjuncts, expressing how long an event lasts, are normally used in end or front position. End position is the more neutral:

> *She's been going out with her current boyfriend* ***for three years****.*
>
> ***Throughout history****, all commanders have known that no victory is complete until the chief of the opposing side has been killed, captured or fled.*

They may be found less frequently in other positions, in more formal styles:

> *The church has* ***throughout the ages*** *given a moral lead to society.*
>
> *Bruckner showed,* ***throughout his life****, an attitude of deference, if not abasement, towards established authority.*
> (between verb and object; characteristic of journalistic and literary styles)

DEFINITE AND INDEFINITE FREQUENCY 328

Definite frequency

Adjuncts of definite frequency most typically occupy end position:

> *The temperature is checked* ***twice daily****.*
>
> *The electoral register is compiled* ***every October 10th****.*

They also occur in front position, for greater emphasis or for reasons of topical linking. They do not normally occupy mid position:

> ***Every day*** *she spends hours on her personal fitness programme, which includes gym sessions, aerobics and swimming.*
> (~~She every day spends hours on her personal fitness programme, …~~)
>
> ***Four times a year*** *I get a magazine from them, which I never read.*
> (~~I four times a year get a magazine from them, …~~)

Indefinite frequency

Adjuncts of indefinite frequency most typically occupy mid position when they take the form of adverb phrases:

> *They* ***quite often*** *ask about you.*
>
> *It* ***usually*** *turns out that way.*

Common adverbs of indefinite frequency include:

always
frequently
generally
hardly ever
never
occasionally
often
rarely
regularly
seldom
sometimes
usually

Prepositional adjuncts and longer adjuncts in general expressing indefinite frequency are normally used in front or end position:

> ***Every now and again*** *they would get her to fill in these forms for them.*
> (preferred to: They every now and again would get her to fill in these forms for them.)
>
> *I see her* ***from time to time****.*
> (~~I from time to time see her.~~)
>
> *I've been to Paris* ***many a time****.*
> (preferred to: I've many a time been to Paris.)

Formal written styles may sometimes have longer indefinite frequency adjuncts in mid position:

> [talking of aristocrats and their choice of servants (*retainers*)]
> *Many aristocrats preferred personal retainers who were* ***more often than not*** *recruited from suspect sectors of society.*
> (formal written)

For emphasis, indefinite frequency adjuncts can be used in front or end position. End position is much more common in spoken language:

> ***Sometimes*** *we would start teasing him.*
>
> ***Usually*** *it's a matter of discussing things till we reach agreement.*
>
> *The decisions judges make in court cases, well it's unbelievable* ***sometimes****.*
>
> *We don't get a candidate for my party except at General Elections* ***usually****.*

REASON AND PURPOSE 329

Reason and purpose adjuncts typically occupy end or, less frequently, front position:

> *Pay negotiations are due to begin next month,* ***with the aim of agreeing a two-year deal from January****.*
>
> *Cycling is forbidden on the canal path* ***for reasons of safety and security****.*
>
> ***Because of all the confusion****, I didn't tell them until the next morning.*

Occasionally, in more formal styles, they may occupy mid position:

> *Social workers have to make extremely difficult decisions in cases where all the facts,* ***for reasons of privacy****, cannot possibly be revealed.*

DEGREE AND INTENSITY 330

Degree and intensity adjuncts express the degree, extent or intensity of an event. They most typically modify the lexical verb rather than the whole clause, and therefore come immediately before the lexical verb, after modal or auxiliary verbs, especially when they take the form of adverb phrases:

*I **really** enjoyed that party.*

*Sorry, I've **completely** forgotten where I got up to.*

*Although he wouldn't have been **directly** blamed if anything went wrong, it wouldn't have done his flourishing career any good.*

They may also occur in end position:

[*Conservative* here refers to the British Conservative Party; *disenfranchised* means having no power to vote]
*There's such a big Conservative majority we're disenfranchised **completely**.*

*I take your point **entirely**.*

*The stories have to be treated as allegories **almost***.

* *Almost* in end position is very rare in formal written language.

✪ Degree/intensifying adverbs such as *entirely*, *almost* and *completely* are not normally used in front position:

*I **almost** got killed.*
(~~Almost I got killed.~~)

*I've **completely** forgotten where I was.*
(~~Completely I've forgotten where I was.~~)

When *really* and *actually* come in front or end position, they tend to have a modal meaning ('as a matter of fact'/ 'the truth is') rather than an intensifying meaning, and comment on the whole clause:

A: *How does that make you feel?*
B: ***Really** it's sickening.*
(compare: It's really sickening.)

***Actually** a friend of mine was there.*
(compare: A friend of mine was actually there – emphasising the unexpectedness of the action)

Longer degree adverbs normally occupy end or front position:

*Only a country with a profound identity crisis could pervert history **to such an extent**.*

***To some extent** the problem has already been solved.*

> *The government, arguing that nobody should be treated as a refugee in their own country, provided little comfort – calculating that this would encourage them to disperse. It worked **up to a point**.*

FOCUSING 331

Focusing adjuncts specify or focus upon an event in some way. They occur in all positions, but tend to be used immediately before or after the clause element they are focusing upon:

> *The key to Cuba's distant past is found in the area known as Oriente and, **in particular**, the city of Baracoa.*
>
> *I don't think I need it **specifically**.*
>
> *But it is **above all** a family matter and in taking my decision, I've given priority to family considerations.*

MODAL 332

Modal adjuncts judge events in terms of the speaker's view of the probability of things being or happening in a particular way. They indicate how things appear to the speaker, and the speaker's view of the necessity of things. In this respect, they parallel the meanings of the modal verbs (379).

Modal adjuncts frequently occupy mid position, especially when they consist of adverb phrases:

> *He **definitely** needs six more months.*
>
> *That couldn't **possibly** happen.*
>
> *It isn't something that we **necessarily** have to spend all our time doing.*
>
> *He **obviously** didn't recognise you.*

They may also be found in front position:

> ***Apparently** he had a terrible childhood.*
>
> ***Obviously** I'm going to need a lot of training to start with.*
>
> ***Probably** 'The Sun' is the most popular newspaper.*

Modal adjuncts may also occur in end position, especially in informal speech:

> *Without you, they wouldn't have a job, **necessarily**.*
>
> *You know which one I mean, **probably**.*
>
> [tennis player speaking]
> *I don't normally get uptight but in key situations with people I'm supposed to beat, **possibly**.*

As with other types of mid-position adjunct, longer modal adjuncts are more likely to be used in front or end position, especially in spoken language:

__In all probability__, local opposition to such a proposal would be overwhelming.

I knew __without a shadow of a doubt__ that something supernatural had happened.
(preferred to: I without a shadow of a doubt knew that …)

You have to register by the end of the month, __to the best of my knowledge__.

EVALUATIVE 333

Evaluation is an important type of adjunct meaning. It is possible to emphasise that the adjunct is expressing an opinion, comment, or judgement of an action (rather than a description of the way it is done) by putting it in mid position:

The most you can __sensibly__ do is forget it.
(speaker's opinion that it is sensible)

He __wisely__ decided to keep it to himself till he got back.
(speaker's opinion that it was wise of him)

In end position, such adjuncts can have quite a different emphasis, with the possibility of a more objective interpretation as an adjunct of manner:

She believed she had acted __sensibly__.

Evaluative adjuncts are rather rare in positions other than mid, but they can occur elsewhere:

__Appropriately__, he was wearing a long black coat.

Just like that, a common spoken evaluative adjunct, usually occurs in end position:

[*just like that* means 'abruptly, with no formalities or hedging']
I was literally asked if I fancied doing it, __just like that__.

VIEWPOINT 334

Viewpoint adjuncts express the personal perspective from which the speaker views an event or a subject or topic. They may occur in all positions, but certain positions are more frequent than others.

They are very often found in front and mid position:

__Quite honestly__, I think we need more representation.

__In fairness__, he did say that he'd tried and spoken to local people.

__Quite frankly__, I don't think there are any advantages.

I ***personally*** *feel that within our department the change was introduced too quickly.*

It's something I've not, ***in all honesty****, thought about.*

Viewpoint adjuncts can be used in end position for emphasis. End position is much more common in spoken language than in written:

I'd rather not have gone to Holland, ***personally****.*

We were entitled to use the material, ***quite frankly****.*

Viewpoint adjuncts that specify or restrict the topic in some way most typically come in front position:

Also, ***culturally****, if you can speak the language you tend to be better off.*
(from the perspective/point of view of culture)

Architecturally*, it was just fantastic.*

A: *So* ***from a management point of view****, then, it's your problem.*
B: *It's my problem.*

Historically*, such movements have had little impact on society.*

They may also occur in other positions:

The question is: given that this must, ***constitutionally****, be his final term as president – what does he have to campaign for now?*

Religious believers have ***historically*** *been responsible for many political reforms.*

We were building up a good act, ***musically****.*

How did it affect you ***in terms of everyday life****?*

LINKING 335

Linking adjuncts normally occupy front position:

[health visitor speaking to patient]
We arranged for you to be seen again in three months. ***Consequently****, as arranged, you were seen on the 17th of July.*

Linking adjuncts follow conjunctions:

English is obviously important, but ***at the same time*** *it's important to learn another language to broaden your horizons.*

Linking adjuncts are also found in mid position, especially in more formal speech and writing:

[university seminar]
France doesn't need Africa and is ***therefore*** *trying to move away into other areas.*

> [*Hal* is the name of a computer in the science-fiction film *2001, A Space Odyssey*]
> *Computers are there to help, and that should be all. Engineers may not want to put machines like Hal into space any more, but according to Mr Hammond, most of Hal's powers can* ***nevertheless*** *be matched by computers today.*

Linking adjuncts may occur in end position, especially in informal contexts:

> [students discussing the 'upgrading' process from one degree course to a higher one]
> *A report by Professor Logan would be okay. The formal upgrading is important for us,* ***however****.*

> [*The Quality Team* is a group which monitors quality of performance at the workplace]
> *I very rarely use The Quality Team and I'm not popular* ***because of that****.*

> *Comparisons may be unavoidable. They are odious,* ***nevertheless****.*

Linking in written and spoken English 335a

Some linking adjuncts are particularly associated with written or spoken styles and particular positions in those styles. For example, *on the contrary* is very rare in informal conversation. In written English it is more common and usually occurs in front (or much less frequently in mid) position:

> *He had no private understanding with Mr X.* ***On the contrary****, he knew very little of him.*

On the other hand occurs frequently in both spoken and written usage. But the concessive adjunct *then again* (always in front position) is much more frequent in spoken than in written language:

> [speakers are discussing training in the use of a new computer program; *Arrow* is a software supply company]

> A: *We've hopefully got some people from Arrow who might be able to help a bit.*
> B: *But* ***then again****, if you're interested in computers, er, it's very easy to learn quickly.*

Other linking adjuncts more common in written than in spoken usage include:

accordingly
as a consequence
duly
furthermore
in the event
moreover
therefore

Other linking adjuncts more common in spoken than in written usage include:

as I say
because of that
in the end
what's more

→ 108 Discourse markers: organising the discourse

INVERSION 336

Inversion after negative adjuncts 336a

Adjuncts of negative meaning (including negative frequency) which are normally found in mid position cause the subject and modal/auxiliary verb (or copular verb *be*) to be inverted when they are used in front position. This is normally a feature only of very formal and literary styles, but does occasionally occur in conversation:

> ***Never*** *could she understand how he cared.*
>
> ***Rarely*** *did anyone declare the true size of his property.*
>
> ***Not only*** *is it a remarkable book, it is also a highly successful one.*
>
> ***Not one day this week*** *have I been able to do any work on it.*
> (conversation)

Other expressions of this type include:

- *hardly*
- *little**
- *on no account*
- *on no occasion*
- *scarcely*
- *seldom*
- *under no circumstances*

(*in contexts such as: *Little did I realise that I was being deceived*.)

Inversion after place adjuncts 336b

Particularly in very formal and literary styles, inversion of subject and lexical verb may occur after a front-placed adjunct denoting location:

> ***In the corner*** *stood another man of the law, by his isolation and beribboned uniform clearly one of a higher rank.*
>
> ***Out of the dark, away to my right****, came the roar of a pneumatic drill*.

This does occur occasionally in informal speech, especially with frequent expressions such as *here comes* and *there goes*:

> ***Here comes*** *the bus.*
>
> ***There goes*** *the phone.*
> (often said when a phone starts to ring)
>
> [telling a story about a crime and the arrival of a police helicopter]
> ***Out comes*** *the helicopter, hovering over everybody's house, waking everybody up.*

A–Z ***45 Here, there***

Inversion after linking adjuncts 336c

Linking adjuncts such as *first*, *next*, *now*, *then* which organise lists and sequences of events may be followed by inversion of subject and verb in very formal and literary styles:

> [a report on public opinion-poll findings]
> *[Health care] is still the most important problem in most people's eyes, but only 27 per cent now put it top of the list of issues that will influence their vote.* ***Next*** *comes unemployment – 25 per cent rate it most important, 4 per cent down.*
>
> *It began with iced melon.* ***Then*** *followed roast chicken.*

Inversion with direct speech reporting clauses 336d

In literary style, sometimes the reporting verb and subject are inverted. In these cases the adjunct comes in end position:

> *'Cut it off short' said the father* ***rashly****.*
> (~~… said rashly the father./… rashly said the father.~~)

Split infinitives 337

Many language purists believe that split infinitives are wrong or bad style. Split infinitives are where an adjunct (usually an adverb phrase) is inserted between *to* and the verb (e.g. *I want* ***to carefully check*** *everything*). In fact, in spoken English split infinitives are very common and pass unnoticed, though they are often thought inappropriate in writing:

> *So if you'd like* ***to perhaps continue*** …
>
> *It's very common* ***to actually not like*** *the Birmingham accent isn't it? People tend* ***to automatically laugh*** *at it.*

Present time

Introduction 338
Present time references with the present simple 339
  General truths and facts 339a
  Regular and habitual events 339b
  Immediate reactions 339c
  Immediate communication 339d
  Mental process verbs 339e
  Speech act verbs 339f
The present progressive 340
  Events in progress at the time of speaking 340a
  Repeated events in temporary contexts 340b
  Processes of change 340c
  With adverbs of indefinite frequency 340d
  Verbs rarely used in the present progressive 340e
  The verb *be* in the present progressive 340f
Indirectness and politeness 341
The present simple and progressive: summary 342
Present time references with the past tense 343
***Will* referring to general truths or used for politeness** 344
The subjunctive 345

Present time

INTRODUCTION 338

Present time is seen either as the moment of speaking or writing, or as 'time around now', or as the more general, permanent time relating to truths and general facts.

References to present time are most typically indicated in the verb phrase through the simple and progressive forms of the present tense.

Forms of the present tense

form	structure	examples
present simple	present tense forms of lexical verbs or of auxiliary *do*	*I/you/we/they* ***eat*** *three meals a day.* *He/she/it/one* ***eats*** *three meals a day.* *I* ***don't*** *eat three meals a day.* ***Does*** *she eat three meals a day?*
present progressive	present tense forms of *be* + lexical verb in *-ing* form	*I* ***am eating*** *right now.* *He/she/it/one* ***is eating*** *right now.* *We/you/they* ***are eating*** *right now.*

The present tense is the most common way of referring to present time, and in this chapter (338–345) we deal principally with the present simple and present progressive. Past tense forms may occasionally refer to present time, often for reasons of politeness or indirectness. These and the perfect forms (present perfect simple and progressive, formed with *have* and the *-ed* participle) are dealt with in **346–360 Past time**.

PRESENT TIME REFERENCES WITH THE PRESENT SIMPLE 339

General truths and facts 339a

The present simple can be used to refer to a general or permanent state of affairs, or facts which are considered true at the present time:

My daughter ***lives*** *in Berlin.*
(compare: 'My daughter is living in Berlin', which would suggest a less permanent situation)

She's Swedish. She ***comes*** *from Stockholm.*
(a permanent fact about her nationality)
(~~She's coming from Stockholm.~~)

*My brother****'s coming*** *from Wales.*
(this cannot be a statement of my brother's origin/nationality, and can only mean that he is in the process of travelling or has arranged to travel from Wales to where the speaker is)

*I **want** a change. I've been in this job for almost twenty years.*

*I just **love** Thai curries.*

[from a recruitment leaflet for the Friends of the Earth environmental campaign]
*By joining us, you **make** your voice heard and **help** us to continue working. The Earth **needs** all the friends it can get.*

The present simple is also used to convey general truths and permanent facts about the world:

*2 plus 2 **makes** 4.*

*A boundless warm river, some 80 kilometres wide and 500 metres deep, the Gulf Stream **passes** into the colder waters of the western Atlantic. There it **spreads** into four main currents and gradually **loses** momentum.*
(~~the Gulf Stream is passing~~ … ~~there it is spreading~~ …)

A work of art or the activities of an artist from the past may be referred to in the present simple, to emphasise their continued existence, relevance and availability at the present time:

*Jane Austen **allows** us to see within the minds not only of her heroines but of many other characters as well.*

*It is, however, perhaps in the 55th Sonnet that Shakespeare **gives** to this idea its fullest expression.*

Plot summaries, book blurbs and reviews of novels, plays, etc. also use the present simple:

[plot summary on the back cover of a novel]
*One morning, Rebecca **wakes** up and **realises** she has turned into the wrong person.*

Regular and habitual events 339b

Regular or habitual events are usually referred to in the present simple:

*We always **have** breakfast at around eight o'clock.*
(~~We're always having breakfast at around eight o'clock.~~)

*I **get** up before six o'clock every day.*

[this advertisement for running shoes is aimed at people who run regularly for fitness]
*SATELLITE. You **play**, you **lift**, you **train**, you **run**. And you **wear** the Reebok Satellite, a lightweight cross training shoe with running profile.*

Immediate reactions 339c

The present simple can be used to talk about feelings and reactions experienced at the moment of speaking:

*That **looks** too risky.*

*It **tastes** very bitter. Are you sure it's chocolate?*

It can also be used to describe immediate perceptions and feelings:

*Quick! Open the car window! I **feel** sick!*

[child to parent trying to comb the child's unruly hair]
*Ow, mummy! That **hurts**!*

Immediate communication 339d

The present simple is used in commentaries on sports events and on public ceremonies. Commentators use the form to describe what they can see immediately before them, especially if it forms a sequence of actions which are completed as the commentator speaks:

[football match commentary]
*Shearer to Gillespie … Gillespie **beats** his man on the outside and **moves** forward.*

A similar use occurs in demonstrations and in instructions:

[a plumber is showing a friend how to mend a tap which is leaking]
*You **put** the washer on first, then the metal ring and then you **tighten** the screw.*

Mental process verbs 339e

Verbs such as *hear*, *know*, *reckon*, *see*, *suppose*, *think*, *understand*, are most typically used in the present simple, not the progressive:

*I **hear** you went to see the rugby match.*
(~~I'm hearing you went to see the rugby match.~~)

*My mum **reckons** it's because he's stressed out.*

*I **see** what you mean.*

*I **think** he's lost a bit of weight actually.*

Progressive uses of these verbs usually have a slightly different meaning.

Think in present progressive often means 'consider' or 'incline towards an opinion':

*I'**m thinking** of the neighbours really.*

*She'**s thinking** of moving to London.*

*I'**m thinking** more like, you know, the middle of July.*

See in the present progressive tends to mean 'meet with' or 'have a romantic relationship with':

> *I'm sorry, he's busy. He'**s seeing** a client at the moment.*
>
> *She'**s seeing** some guy she works with.*

Speech act verbs 339f

The present simple is used with speech act verbs. These are verbs which explicitly label the speaker's communicative intention in the performance of speech acts (e.g. promising, denying, apologising, demanding):

> *I won't forget this time, I **promise**.*
> (~~I won't forget this time, I'm promising~~.)
>
> *I **swear** I saw tears in his eyes.*
> (~~I'm swearing I saw tears in his eyes.~~)
>
> *I **agree** dangerous drivers should be put in prison rather than fined.*
>
> *I **name** this ship Beatrice II.*

In a similar way, the present simple is used in formal statements and in business or legal communications:

> *We **enclose** our cheque for £2,300 in settlement of invoice no. 10878.*
>
> *I **write** to inform you that you have been successful in your application to join the service.*
> ('I'm writing to inform you …' would be less formal)

THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE 340

Events in progress at the time of speaking 340a

The present progressive is used to refer to events which are in progress or happening at the moment of speaking.

Compare:

> [someone on the telephone whilst being given directions]
> *Well er, **I'm looking** across the road now and all I can see is a chemist's shop.*
>
> *I **look** at catalogues. I always read so many catalogues on the train.*
> (a regular event, but not necessarily happening at the moment of speaking)

Compare:

> *Why **is** he **smiling** like that? It all looks a bit suspicious.*
>
> *She's changed the way she **smiles**, hasn't she?*
> (reference to her general behaviour, not necessarily what she is doing at the moment)

The present progressive is also used to refer to things which are taking place or which are true around the moment of speaking, though they may be only temporary:

> *They **are travelling** through Italy at the moment.*
>
> *She**'s having** a bad time right now.*
> (her life is difficult at the moment)

Repeated events in temporary contexts 340b

The present progressive is also used to describe actions which are repeated or regular, but are either temporary or may be judged to be temporary:

> *She**'s seeing** him quite a bit at the moment.*
> (she's meeting him regularly)
>
> ***Is** she still **swimming** three times a week?*
> (implies she has recently started swimming three times a week; compare: 'Does she still swim three times a week?', which implies she has always swum three times a week)

The present progressive is also used to describe regular actions in relation to a particular time or a specified event, especially where those events interrupt things already in progress (⁘ **348a** to compare the similar use of the past progressive):

> *I**'m** always **having** a shower when the newspaper comes.*
> (I have always already started my shower when the paper arrives; compare 'I always have a shower after a swim', where having the shower follows on from swimming.)
>
> *He won't answer the phone when he**'s working** at the computer.*
> (… when his work at the computer is already in progress)

Processes of change 340c

The present progressive is used to refer to gradual processes of change:

> *He's been in hospital for three weeks but **is improving** steadily.*
>
> *They're building a new by-pass. It'll be good for the town but it**'s taking** ages to finish.*

With adverbs of indefinite frequency 340d

The present progressive is often used with indefinite frequency adverbs such as *always*, *constantly*, *continually* and *forever* to describe events which are regular but not planned, and often undesired:

> ***I'm always losing** my car keys. I really must get one of those massive big key rings.*
>
> ***I'm constantly telling** the children not to go in there.*
>
> *She**'s forever doing** homework.*

Verbs rarely used in the present progressive 340e

Some verbs in English are only rarely used in the present progressive. These include:

- verbs which describe mental states and processes such as *believe*, *know*, *think*, *understand* (➜ **339e** above)
- verbs which describe responses of the senses such as *smell*, *taste*
- verbs expressing emotional responses such as *admire*, *adore*, *detest*, *hate*, *like*, *respect*
- verbs which describe an ongoing process such as *have to*, *need*, *want*
- speech act verbs such as *appreciate*, *deny*, *promise*, *swear* (➜ **339f** above)
- verbs describing permanent qualities or characteristics such as *consist*, *contain*, *hold*, *last*, *take*

> The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign
> [in the kitchen, cooking]
> A: *This **consists** of walnuts, garlic butter+*
> B: *It **smells** nice.*
> A: *+and that's about it really.*
>
> *We **need** rain. The garden is so dry.*
>
> *I **promise** I'll be there on time next time.*
>
> [to a waiter]
> *Er, **does** this dish **contain** meat?*
> (~~Is this dish containing meat?~~)

However, when used to describe a current process at the moment of speaking, or to give extra emphasis to the ongoing nature of the event, these verbs may occur in the present progressive:

> *What **are** you **thinking**?*
> (What thoughts are passing through your mind at this moment?; compare 'What do you think?', which usually means 'What is your opinion?')
>
> ***I'm understanding** things better now, since I started going to the lectures.*
> (emphasises 'understanding' as a developing process; compare 'I understand', which treats understanding as an achieved state)
>
> [whilst preparing and tasting food]
> ***I'm tasting** something very bitter on my tongue at the moment.*
> (there is a kind of tentativeness here; compare 'it tastes bitter')
>
> *The job for life has become a fantasy. Most people **are having to** take more responsibility for their own careers and for what they do.*
>
> *The whole match is being played at too slow a pace. It's **needing** a goal.*
>
> *Can't you hear what I'm saying? I **am promising** to marry you.*

The verb *be* in the present progressive 340f

When the copular verb *be* is used in the present progressive with an adjectival complement, it refers to the current actions or behaviour of the subject rather than referring to a quality or attribute of the subject:

> *I think she* **is being** *awfully broadminded and tolerant here.*
> (she is acting in a broadminded and tolerant way; compare 'I think she is broadminded', which would be an expression of a general opinion about her character)
>
> *Stop it! You***'re being** *silly.*
> ('You're silly' would suggest a more general evaluation of the person's character)

INDIRECTNESS AND POLITENESS 341

The present progressive is often used to make a request, enquiry or statement of opinion more indirect, often out of politeness:

> [a muffin is a kind of cake]
> ***Are*** *you* ***wanting*** *a muffin, Peter?*
> (less direct than 'Do you want …?')
>
> ***I'm wondering*** *when I could come and pick up the calendars that I ordered from you at the beginning of October.*
> (less direct than 'I wonder when I could …')
>
> *We****'re hoping*** *that it will have some practical benefits.*
> (less direct than 'We hope that it …')

In these cases, the past simple, and even more politely, the past progressive, may also be used with present time reference:

> ***Did*** *you* ***want/were*** *you* ***wanting*** *a muffin, Peter?*
>
> *I* ***wondered/was wondering*** *when I could come and pick up the calendars that I ordered from you at the beginning of October.*
>
> *We* ***hoped/were hoping*** *that it would have some practical benefits.*

THE PRESENT SIMPLE AND PROGRESSIVE: SUMMARY 342

The present simple sees time in terms of facts, truths, generalities and permanent states of affairs. The present progressive sees time more in terms of its unfolding at the moment of speaking, and observes actions and events from within, as ongoing, in progress:

> *I* ***love*** *Dublin.*

This is a wonderful plant. It ***flowers*** *all summer.*

It's ***raining*** *now.*

We're ***making*** *progress.*

Sometimes the differences may not be great, and may only suggest more of a sense or possibility of permanence in the case of the simple form and a sense or possibility of being only temporary in the progressive:

We ***live*** *in a small village.*

I ***feel*** *more confident these days.*
(focus is on facts, suggesting the possibility of greater permanence)

*We****'re living*** *in a small village.*

I'm feeling *more confident these days.*
(focus is on present situation, with less focus on permanence)

PRESENT TIME REFERENCES WITH THE PAST TENSE 343

As seen in **341** above, for reasons of indirectness and politeness, the past simple and the past progressive may sometimes be used with present-time reference, especially with verbs such as *be*, *hope*, *look for*, *think*, *want*, *wonder*:

[on the phone to train timetable enquiries]
Actually I ***wanted*** *to check if there's a twenty-five-past train.*

[at a cosmetics counter in a store, enquiring about face protection products; A is the customer]
A: *What's the best kind?*
B: *Probably just a very light liquid.*
A: *Right. I* ***was looking for*** *one for the cold weather, you know.*

[customer in a travel agent's]
We ***were wondering*** *about going to Amsterdam. We* ***were wanting*** *to stay in tents or in a caravan or in a bed and breakfast, to sort of see what the different prices* ***were****.*

[dry cleaner's store: customer (B) is leaving a jacket for cleaning]
A: *Right. What* ***was*** *the name please?*
B: *Smith.*

✪ *Be* is not used in the past tense form in this way to comment on the immediate situation:

> [dinner guest to host, at the moment of tasting a fish dish]
> A: *Mm. This fish* ***is*** *delicious.*
> B: *Thank you. I'm glad you like it.*
> (~~This fish was delicious.~~)

Note also the expression *It's time* …. When used with a finite clause, the verb is in the past simple form:

*It's time you **got** up.*
(~~It's time you get up~~.)

*It's time that we **did** something about it.*

WILL REFERRING TO GENERAL TRUTHS OR USED FOR POLITENESS 344

Will can be used to refer to generally accepted truths and to what we might always expect to happen:

*I suppose most people **will prefer** to own their home.*

*In the evening he**'ll sit** all night watching TV.*

Will can sometimes be used to soften a directive or to make it more polite:

*I'm sorry but I**'ll** have to ask you to sit in the Waiting Room for a few minutes.* (compare the more direct: I'm sorry but I have to ask you to sit in the Waiting Room …)

***Will** you turn the TV down please. I'm on the phone.*

⁘ also **387 *Will***

THE SUBJUNCTIVE 345

In formal and literary styles, present references to unfulfilled actions or events may be in the subjunctive mood after verbs such as *demand*, *insist*, *recommend*, *require*, *stipulate*. The subjunctive mood uses the base form of the verb for all persons (i.e. no final -*s* on third person singular; ⁘ **159e**):

*The Head of Security has **demanded** that the guard **resign**.*

*I **insist** that she **do** these things herself.*

*It is **recommended** that they **repay** the amount stolen in full within one year.*

Past time

Introduction 346
The past simple 347
  Definite time reference 347a
  Definite time adjuncts 347b
  The past simple without explicit time markers 347c
  Events and states 347d
The past progressive 348
  Events in progress 348a
  Background events 348b
  Reasons and contexts for events 348c
  Ongoing and repeated events 348d
  The past progressive and definite time 348e
The past progressive versus the past simple 349
Verbs not normally used in the past progressive 350
The present perfect 351
  Time up to now 351a
  Panel: *For* and *since* 351b
  Now-relevance 351c
The present perfect simple versus the present perfect progressive 352
  Completed and punctual events 352a
  Events in the past still continuing 352b
  Mental process and sense verbs 352c
The present perfect and definite past time 353
The present perfect as a frame for past time events 354
The past perfect 355
  Time up to 'then' 355a
  Reported clauses 355b
  References to changed states 355c
  The past perfect in conditional clauses 355d
The past perfect and the past simple 356
The past perfect simple versus the past perfect progressive 357
Time-frames: summary 358
Tense choice in complex sentences 359
  Temporal subordinators (e.g. *when*) and the past simple 359a
  Temporal subordinators and the past progressive 359b
  Temporal subordinators and the present perfect 359c
  Temporal subordinators and the past perfect 359d
  Perfect infinitive clauses 359e
Present tense references to past time 360
  The present simple for dramatic effect 360a
  The present progressive for narrative build-up 360b
  News headlines 360c
  Present tense references to historical events 360d
  Speech-reporting verbs 360e

Past time

INTRODUCTION 346

Past time is seen as time before the moment of speaking or writing, or as 'time around a point before the moment of speaking'.

References to past time are most typically indicated in the verb phrase through the simple and progressive forms of the past tense.

Forms of the past tense

form	structure	examples
past simple	past tense forms of lexical verbs or of auxiliary *do*	*I/you/he/she/it/one/we/they* ***worked*** *eight hours a day.* *We* ***did****n't work eight hours a day.* ***Did*** *he work eight hours a day?*
past progressive	past tense forms of *be* + lexical verb in *-ing* form	*I he/she/it* ***was*** *work****ing*** *when it happened.* *We/you/they* ***were*** *work****ing*** *when it happened.*

The past tense is the most common way of referring to past time and in this chapter (346–360) we deal with the past simple and past progressive forms. Past tense forms may also occasionally refer to present time, often for reasons of politeness or indirectness.

The perfect forms (present perfect and past perfect, simple and progressive) refer to events in time from a point in the past up to the moment of speaking/writing (present perfect), or events in time from one point in the past up to another, later, point in the past (past perfect).

Forms of the present perfect and past perfect

form	structure	examples
present perfect simple	present tense forms of *have* + *-ed* participle	*I/you/we/they* ***have*** *work****ed*** *hard.* *He/she/it/one* ***has*** *work****ed*** *hard.* *We* ***haven't*** *work****ed*** *hard.* ***Has*** *he work****ed*** *hard?*
past perfect simple	past tense forms of *have* + *-ed* participle	*I/you/we/they* ***had*** *work****ed*** *hard.* *He/she/it* ***had*** *work****ed*** *hard.*
present perfect progressive	present tense forms of *have* + *been* + lexical verb in *-ing* form	*I/you/we/they* ***have been*** *work****ing*** *hard.* *He/she/it/one* ***has been*** *work****ing*** *hard.* *We* ***haven't been*** *work****ing*** *hard.* ***Has*** *he been work****ing*** *hard?*
past perfect progressive	past tense forms of *have* + *been* + lexical verb in *-ing* form	*I/you/he/she/it/we/they* ***had been*** *work****ing*** *hard.* *We* ***had****n't* ***been*** *work****ing*** *hard.* ***Had*** *he been work****ing*** *hard?*

Modal *would* and semi-modal *used to* are also used for past time reference (➜ **402 *Used to* and *would***).

THE PAST SIMPLE 347

Definite time reference 347a

References to definite past time clearly separated from the moment of speaking are normally made using the past simple. The most common type of reference to the past is through definite time adjuncts and definite time adverbial clauses:

__Did__ you __watch__ that film yesterday?

He __went__ at the end of November.

My grandfather __died__ about four weeks ago.

When I was a lad, __I lived__ on a farm.

She __came__ through for a coffee after she'd finished cooking.

✪ With such definite past references, the present perfect is not normally used:

> *My grandfather __died__ about four weeks ago.*
> (~~My grandfather has died about four weeks ago.~~)
>
> *When I was a lad, __I lived__ on a farm.*
> (~~When I was a lad, I have lived on a farm.~~)

Definite time adjuncts 347b

Common definite time adjuncts that indicate a clear break between the past and present time include:

*a year/two weeks/five minutes/*etc. *ago*

at two o'clock/half past three, etc.

earlier today/this month, etc.

in the spring/summer, etc.

last night/week/month/year, etc.

on Monday/Wednesday, etc.

the other day/week

yesterday

(→ examples at **347a** above)

→ **359a** on past simple with temporal subordinators (e.g. *when*) in complex sentences

The past simple without explicit time markers 347c

Often there is no explicit time marker, but definite past time may be implied either by the situation of speaking or writing, or by assumptions of shared and general knowledge. In such cases, the past simple may be used:

Charles Dickens __wrote__ 'Great Expectations' in instalments.
(we know that Dickens lived and died a long time ago, separated from the present)

Do you know Fiona? Because I __went__ to school with her.
(the speaker's schooldays were long ago, in a time separated from the moment of speaking)

__Did__ you __receive__ my fax?
(the speaker is looking back to the point of time when he sent the fax as separated in his mind from the present; compare 'Have you received my fax?', where the speaker is considering the event in terms of the present moment)

Events and states 347d

The past simple may be used for single events or habitual events or states in the past.

- Single events:

  He __suffered__ a head wound, for which he __went__ to hospital and __received__ ten stitches.

  And then she __went__ out and she __phoned__ my brother.

- Habitual events:

  [*hung out in* means 'spent time in']
  He __visited__ the opera regularly and mostly __hung__ out in local cafés.

  We __did__ a lot of acting at school.

- States:

  She __looked__ a bit upset.

  Where __were__ you? I've been worried sick.

Where more than one event is reported, a time sequence is normally assumed. This can be shown by changing the word order in the sentence:

event 1 **event 2**
Then she __went out__ and she __phoned__ my brother.

event 1 **event 2**
Then she __phoned__ my brother and she __went out__.

If the real sequence of events is different from the word order of the sentence, then this must be indicated explicitly (e.g. by a temporal conjunction):

event 2 **event 1**
She __identified__ herself when she __answered__ the phone.
(she answered the phone first, then identified herself)

However, events may also be understood as simultaneous:

I wasn't satisfied so I __wrote__ to them and __complained__.
(the writing of the letter and the complaining were one and the same thing)

When the past simple is used to refer to habitual events, the meaning is similar to *used to*:

We __did__ a lot of acting at school.
(or: We used to do a lot of acting at school.)

→ **402 *Used to* and *would***

THE PAST PROGRESSIVE 348

Events in progress 348a

The past progressive may refer generally to events in progress around a particular time in the past. It may highlight the temporary nature of events:

*Where I **was living** in Leicester six months ago, I had a massive room. It was too big really.*

*I **was working** last night.*

*Fourteen hours later, we **were entering** Kingston Harbour.*
(compare: Fourteen hours later we entered Kingston Harbour. The past simple emphasises the whole event, from start to finish; the past progressive emphasises the event as being in progress but unfinished at the time referred to)

Background events 348b

The past progressive may refer to past-time events occurring as a background to other events which interrupt them.

The events which occur in the foreground are usually in the past simple:

background **foreground**
*She was here once, and I **was baking** a cake. And she **said**, 'Can I help you?'*

*Two builders **were working** on our house when it **was being built**, and a ghost **passed** them on the stairs, and they **refused** to come back and finish the building. It **terrified** them.*

⇢ **347d The past simple** on sequences of events

Reasons and contexts for events 348c

The past progressive is often used to give a reason or context for an event:

*Her husband **was doing** a PhD at the university, and that's how I came to meet him.*

A: *I rang you yesterday but there was no answer.*
B: *I **was gardening**.*

Ongoing and repeated events 348d

The past progressive may refer to ongoing or repeated events in the past. There is often a suggestion that the situation was temporary or subject to change:

A: *She only had a very small income which I gave her each week and that **was coming** out of my overdraft.*
B: *I see.*
A: *But the bank were only prepared to support me up to a point.*

The past progressive may occur with adverbs such as *always*, *constantly*, to describe repeated unplanned (or undesired) events:

*People **were always warning** me that my success wouldn't last.*

*I **wasn't constantly collapsing** in floods of tears, but I was in quite a bad way.*

→ 340d The present progressive with adverbs of indefinite frequency

→ 359b Temporal subordinators and the past progressive

→ 492d The past progressive in speech representation

The past progressive and definite time 348e

The past progressive can be used to refer to definite past time, usually to emphasise the extended nature of an event:

*I **was talking** to Mark last night.*

*We **were working** in the garden all day yesterday.*

THE PAST PROGRESSIVE VERSUS THE PAST SIMPLE 349

Often there is little difference between the past progressive and the past simple, except that the past progressive suggests that the events may be seen more as background or of secondary importance, or their temporary nature may be more emphasised:

*Being an eye clinic, it **was dealing** with a very high proportion of elderly people.*
(or: Being an eye clinic, it dealt with a very high proportion …)

[describing an archaeological dig]
*And scattered throughout a lot of the area he dug, he found iron slag, so, you know, they **were making** quite a lot of stuff. Phase one, under the bank he found some crucibles and crucibles were used in bronze working. In the earlier phase at least they **were making** bronze implements as well.*
(or: … so, you know, they made quite a lot of stuff. … In the earlier phase at least they made bronze implements as well.)

VERBS NOT NORMALLY USED IN THE PAST PROGRESSIVE 350

Verbs which rarely occur in the present progressive (→ 340e) are similarly rarely used in the past progressive, and the past simple is generally preferred. These include:

believe
consist
contain
dislike
hate
have to

know
like
mean
smell
taste
think
understand
want

*Breakfast **consisted** of a mug of tea and a piece of fruit pudding each.*

*You **didn’t have to** explain it to me. I **knew** what you **meant**.*
(~~You weren’t having to explain it to me. I was knowing what you were meaning.~~)

*The room still **smelt** of smoke from the last occupant’s cigarettes.*

However, as with the present tense usage, the past progressive may occasionally be used to emphasise an ongoing or unfolding process in the past, though this happens much less frequently than in the present tense:

*We had a pleasant ride back. I **was liking** James more and more and he was very attentive to me, showing very clearly how much he enjoyed my visits to his home.*

*Emma had been worrying for some time that she was going to crash her meagre budget with all the minicabs and taxis she **was having to** use.*

THE PRESENT PERFECT 351

Time up to now 351a

The present perfect (simple and progressive) is used to refer to events taking place in a past time-frame that connects with the present:

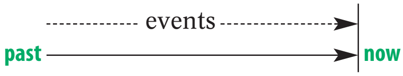

*So, what**’s been happening since the last time we met**?*
(from that moment till now)

*In fact, alligators **have killed** only eight people in Florida **in the last half-century**.*
(in the fifty years up to the time of writing)

The present perfect progressive can place greater emphasis on the duration of an event up to the present moment and can indicate an uninterrupted action:

***I’ve been waiting** for you for over an hour.*

With time adjuncts

The time-frame may be indicated explicitly by an adjunct indicating ‘time-up-to-now’. Such expressions include:

before

*during/in the last x minutes/hours/weeks/years/*etc.

in my life

lately

over the last x months/years

recently

so far

this week/month/year/century

to date

today

up to/till/until now

*During the last 20 years there **has been** a big change from wooden to plastic window frames in many houses.*

*We **have** quite recently **made** some important structural changes to our Editorial Department.*

*I know I**’ve lost** a lot of weight this week.*

*To date, the families of at least 900 of these children **have been found**.*

With no time adjunct

The time-frame may be implied or understood, without any explicit time adjunct:

*Local authorities **have warned** that they will be forced to sack teachers if the Government refuses to fund next year’s pay settlement.*
(understood: during recent days/weeks, during the time of the present debate/crisis)

***I’ve been working** and am working at Amsterdam University, on several projects.*
(understood: from some point in the past, up to and including now)

***Have** you **phoned** your sister?*
(from the point when you said you were going to do it up to this moment in time; if the speaker had said ‘Did you phone your sister?’, there is a greater expectation from the speaker that the phone call should have taken place or did take place)

The first time

Note that the expression *this is the first time …* when referring to an immediate event is normally used with the present perfect, not the present simple or progressive:

[one passenger to another during a flight]
*Is this **the first time** you**’ve flown** on British Airways?*
(~~Is this the first time you fly on British Airways?~~)

‘Is this the first time you’re flying on British Airways?’ is likely to be heard as a reference to the future, i.e. ‘You’ve bought a British Airways ticket; will it be your first flight with them?’

The present perfect or the past simple

Some time adjuncts can be used with either the present perfect or the past simple, depending upon the speaker's/writer's perspective. These include:

already	*once*	*this morning/week/*etc.
before	*recently*	*today*

With this group of adjuncts, if the events are considered as happening at a definite point in the past, then the past simple is used:

*The house **was sold** recently.*
(speaker is thinking of a definite point in the past when the house sale took place)

*I **rang** him this morning.*
(said after midday, when 'this morning' has finished)

[referring to the day at work]
***Did** you **see** everybody you wanted to see today?*
(speaker considers 'today' finished as a work day)

If the events are seen as connected to or relevant to the moment of speaking or writing, then the present perfect is used:

[loudspeaker announcement on a train]
*To all passengers who **have** recently **joined** this service. My name is Chris and I'm your chief steward.*
(speaker focuses on the fact that the passengers are on the train now)

*I**'ve been** busy this morning.*
(said during the morning)

*I haven't asked her yet. I **haven't seen** her today.*
(speaker considers 'today' to be still current)

For and *since* 351b

For and *since* both commonly introduce time expressions which can refer to 'time up to now' and which are used with the present perfect.

For refers to periods of time, *since* refers to a previous point in time:

*We**'ve had** that TV set **for fifteen years**.*
(~~We've had that TV set since fifteen years.~~)

*I**'ve been** awake **since half past four this morning**.*

Expressions with *for* can also refer to periods of time separated from now, when the period referred to has come to an end or lies in the past, in which case the past tense is used:

A: *I **lived** in Sweden **for five years**.*
B: *When was that?*
A: *Oh **in the 1970s**.*

✪ *Since* is not used with the present simple or progressive when referring to 'time up to now':

*We**'ve lived/been living** in the village since 1987.*
(~~We live/are living in the village since 1987.~~)

Now-relevance 351c

A basic use of the present perfect is when the speaker considers an event to be still important or relevant in some way to the moment of speaking:

> *Well, we were here in the house, and the neighbour came in and said, 'There's something going on up the street. I think someone* ***has stabbed*** *someone.'*
> (a newsworthy event that is very important to the speaker)
>
> A: *I don't remember seeing any cigarette adverts on TV, do you?* ***Have they been banned****?*
> B: *Yeah. They were banned, oh, years and years ago.*
> (a possible explanation for the speaker's present understanding)
>
> *It's too dangerous to touch. I think somebody* ***has been tampering*** *with it.*
> (the effects of someone interfering with it are visible now)

The present perfect indicates that the speaker chooses to mark the event as important/relevant to now, or may wish to stress that the event happened very recently. Compare:

> *That's probably why I'm so tired, because I'****ve been chattering*** *to people I don't really know.*
>
> *That's probably why I'm so tired, because I* ***was chattering*** *to people I don't really know.*

The difference here may be an emphasis on how recently the chattering took place, but both versions may also refer to the same event, with no difference in time reference.

THE PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE VERSUS THE PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE 352

Completed and punctual events 352a

The simple form of the present perfect can emphasise completion of an event when used with verbs denoting actions or events:

> *Advertising agency FCB* ***has carried out*** *extensive research on how people in short-term contracts feel about their jobs.*

The progressive form is not normally used with punctual verbs such as *start*, *stop*, *finish*, which refer to actions that are completed at a single point in time:

> *My mobile phone* ***has started*** *working again.*
> (~~My mobile phone has been starting working again.~~)
>
> ***Have*** *you* ***finished*** *eating?*

The progressive form is not used to refer to single, completed actions or punctual events:

> *Essex County Council* ***has approved*** *expenditure of £50,000 on the project this year.*
> (~~Essex County Council has been approving expenditure of £50,000 on the project this year.~~)

Now the government ***has admitted*** *it has been able to collect only half of the taxes planned.*

Events in the past still continuing 352b

The progressive form is often used for events which started in the past and are still continuing, or which have stopped, but whose effects are still continuing:

*She****'s been working*** *for the company for years, hasn't she?*

*Maybe they can see I****'ve been crying****.*
(the tears or the effects are still visible; 'Maybe they can see I've cried' would not allow the possibility that the crying was still continuing right up to the present moment)

Have *you* ***been watching*** *'The Lonely Planet'?*
(the TV programme, *The Lonely Planet*, is still continuing each week, and people continue to watch it)

References to things which have been true for very long periods of time often prefer the simple form:

A church ***has stood*** *on this site since the twelfth century.*
(preferred to: has been standing)

References to events closed and completed at some indefinite point in the past prefer the simple form:

A: *Do you know 'A Tale of Two Cities'?*
B: *I* ***have read*** *it, but I don't remember much about it.*
(not: ~~I have been reading it …~~)
('I've been reading *A Tale of Two Cities*' might mean that the speaker had not finished it but was still reading it, though not necessarily at the moment of speaking. It could also suggest that the speaker had finished the novel but had been kept occupied by it: 'I've been reading *A Tale of Two Cities*, that's why you haven't seen me all week. I had to write an essay on it.')

The difference between the present perfect simple and the present perfect progressive may sometimes be between an emphasis on the event itself as a progressive, extended activity (progressive form), compared with the results of the event, or some other, secondary reference to the event (simple form). Both forms may refer to completed events:

[looking out of the window]
*It****'s been raining****.*
(the rain has stopped)

In sub-Saharan Africa … the rate of decline in infant mortality ***has slowed*** *noticeably: a child's risk of dying before reaching the age of five is higher than anywhere else in the world.*
(the slowing of the rate may or may not have stopped; what is important are the results)

Sometimes there is little difference between the two forms:

> *He**'s lived/been living** there for years and years.*
>
> ***I've felt/been feeling** better since I started taking those tablets.*

The only difference here is that the simple form may suggest the possibility of permanence, while the progressive form may suggest a more temporary state of affairs.

When the frequency of a repeated action or event is stated, the simple form is preferred:

> *That**'s happened** to Lydia several times this morning.*
> (~~That's been happening to Lydia several times this morning.~~)

342 to compare the present simple

Mental process and sense verbs 352c

Some verbs are rarely used in the progressive form. These include verbs of mental process (*know*, *like*) and sense verbs (*smell*, *taste*):

> ***I've known** Anne at least forty-odd years, I would think.*
> (~~I've been knowing Anne …~~)
>
> *The water's always **tasted** metallic to me.*

Repeated or extended events which are felt to be developing, ongoing or perhaps temporary may occasionally lead to the use of progressive for such verbs:

> *The water**'s** definitely **been tasting** better since we bought the filter.*

THE PRESENT PERFECT AND DEFINITE PAST TIME 353

In spoken and written journalistic styles, the present perfect is sometimes used to stress the current relevance of events, even though definite past time adjuncts may be present:

> [speaker is speaking in 1998, i.e. not 'the early 1990s']
> *We**'ve lost** so much of our manufacturing industry in the 1980s and early 1990s.*
>
> *A man **has been arrested** last night and will appear in court tomorrow.*

THE PRESENT PERFECT AS A FRAME FOR PAST TIME EVENTS 354

The present perfect is often used initially to provide an overall frame for the reporting of past events, in spoken and written narratives and reports. The present perfect verb often provides a headline or statement of a newsworthy event, followed by a series of verbs in the past tense reporting the details:

> *Poisonous black widow spiders **have invaded** Britain by plane. They **stowed away** in crates of ammunition flown from America to RAF Welford, Berks. A US airman at the base near Newbury **captured** one of the spiders in a jar after it **crawled out** of a crate.*

> *I’**ve been going** to the weight-watchers but, wait till you hear this, I **went** first time and I’d lost three and a half pounds, and I **went** last week and I’d lost half a pound, so I **went** down to the fish shop and **got** fish and chips. I **was** so disgusted!*

THE PAST PERFECT 355

Time up to ‘then’ 355a

Just as the present perfect refers to a time-frame leading up to the moment of speaking (→ **351a**), so the past perfect refers to a time-frame leading up to a point in the past. The present perfect refers to ‘time up to now’; the past perfect refers to ‘time up to then’:

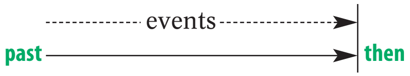

> *That was in 1938. I left in June with the children for a new home in Oxford, where my mother **had bought** a house. My father **had died** in 1936.*

This can be illustrated as:

time before ‘then’	‘then’ (= 1938)
	I left in June
… *my mother **had bought** a house*	
… *my father **had died***	

> *The au pairs always used to call her Cruella. She was terrible. Her husband **had died** of cancer two years previously so I could see why she had a problem.*
> (two years before the events the speaker is recounting)
>
> [speaker is talking about his tennis coach]
> *At my club there was Frank Parsons, who **had coached** similar boys my age.*
> (during a time before the time he coached the speaker)
>
> *As she sat eating in the caged silence, she thought of all the thousands of meals George must have had here, alone, in all these years. Did he ever cook himself something good? What **had he been thinking** all those silent weekends and evenings on his own?*
> (the thoughts he had in the time before she sat there thinking of him)

Reported clauses 355b

The past perfect is very frequent in reported clauses where the reporting verb is in the past:

> *Linda kept me informed and she said that her husband **had moved** back in. They’**d got** back together again. She’**d got** pregnant.*
>
> *The police told me that he’**d done** it very often.*

Reporting verbs include verbs of perception:

I noticed he ***had hurt*** *his leg.*

He saw that she ***had been*** *able to cure herself.*

References to changed states 355c

The past perfect is often used to refer to situations which were true but which have been or are to be changed. In such cases, *had* is often stressed in speech:

[telephone conversation between travel agent (A) and customer (B)]
A: *And you want to go London Hong Kong.*
B: *That's right.*
A: *On the … what date do you wish to travel now?*
B: *I* ***had booked*** *on the third. But erm …*
A: *On the third.*
B: *Should be on the second. And this is the flight number.*

I ***had planned*** *to work till I was sixty but I can't any more.*

At the moment Sarah is quite interested in tourism, anything to do with tourism. So it looks like she will leave school and go on to something like this. I ***had hoped*** *she'd carry on for a bit longer.*

The past perfect in conditional clauses 355d

The past perfect must be used when there is past reference in a hypothetical conditional clause with *if*:

I'd have been killed ***if I'd been caught*** *down there.*
(I would have been killed if I had been caught …)

Well, even ***if*** *you****'d come*** *home tonight, you'd have been upset anyway.*
(… if you had come home, you would have been upset …)

The past perfect is not used in the main clause in a hypothetical conditional sentence:

If I ***had had*** *more time I* ***would have been*** *in touch earlier.*
(~~If I had had more time I had been in touch earlier.~~)

THE PAST PERFECT AND THE PAST SIMPLE 356

Sometimes the past perfect may be necessary to resolve possible misunderstanding or ambiguity as regards the sequence of events and the semantic relationship between them:

They all left the room when she ***recited*** *her poem.*
(suggests they all left the moment she started reciting)

*They all left the room when she****'d recited*** *her poem.*
(suggests they left after she'd finished reciting)

The past simple often suggests a more immediate causal link between two events, compared with the past perfect:

> ***When** he **opened** his desk, he discovered a dead bird.*
> (stresses the immediate result, rather than 'When he had opened his desk …')
>
> ***When** he**'d opened** his third present, he looked at the roller skates and smiled.*
> (not such an immediate or direct relationship; the roller skates may not have been in the third present)

THE PAST PERFECT SIMPLE VERSUS THE PAST PERFECT PROGRESSIVE 357

The principles for choosing between the past perfect simple and progressive are the same as those which operate between the present perfect simple and progressive (••⁘ 352):

> *We**'d been playing** five minutes when you turned up.*
> (ongoing event continuing up to that point in the past)
>
> *After their departure Edith noticed the small white card lying on the mantelpiece. She **had been meaning** to tell her brother about it, he had a right to know, but their behaviour **had put** everything else out of her mind.*
> ('had been meaning …' refers to an extended event going on around that time; 'had put' refers to a single, completed event that occurred during that time)
>
> *And Thursday night I was so cold, and I**'d been sneezing** a lot and **blowing** my nose, and I thought it was my hay fever.*
> (repeated events during the time up to then)
>
> [talking about a man who had tried, unsuccessfully, to make an old clock work again]
> *And he went away on holiday and everything, and when he got back the other people that worked in there said as soon as he**'d gone** it **had started** working.*
> (single, completed events)

••⁘ 448–459 Condition

TIME-FRAMES: SUMMARY 358

The past tense forms refer to a time-frame that is in some way separated from the present; there is a break between the completion of the event and the present moment. This break may be explicitly stated by an expression of definite past time (e.g. *yesterday*, *last week*, *in 1975*) or may be implicit, or indicated somewhere in the context.

The past tense forms may be contrasted with the present perfect forms, which are used to refer to events in a time-frame that is still connected to the present moment, or to events which the speaker considers to be still current or relevant to the present moment.

The basic difference between the speaker's perception of time as past or as extending until now, and the choice of past tense or present perfect forms can be expressed thus:

Past tense forms

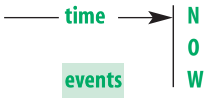

*I **posted** your letter.*

*We **were working** in the garden all day yesterday.*

Present perfect forms

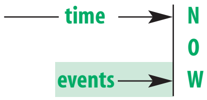

*I**'ve posted** your letter.*

*She**'s been feeling** unwell for the last few days.*

Past perfect forms

A speaker may also refer to a time-frame in the past and to events from an earlier past that are linked in some way to that time-frame. In these cases, the past perfect forms may be used. This relationship may be represented thus:

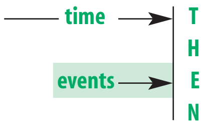

*I **had already told** Margaret, so the news came as no surprise to her.*

*He said he **had met** me before, but could not remember where.*

TENSE CHOICE IN COMPLEX SENTENCES 359

Temporal subordinators (e.g. *when*) and the past simple 359a

Temporal subordinators such as *after*, *as soon as*, *before*, *once*, *until*, *when* and *while* can refer to definite points and periods of time in the past separated from the moment of speaking. In such cases, the subordinators are used with the past simple:

*As soon as I **got** home, I phoned my sister.*

*Once the initial shock **was** over, Mr Coldman had to settle into his new role.*

[speaker is recounting a fainting attack]
*When I **woke** up, I didn't know where I was.*

Temporal subordinators and the past progressive 359b

The temporal subordinators *as*, *when* and *while* (or less frequently *whilst*) are often used with the past progressive to indicate background events:

*I read the letter on the Underground as I **was coming** into town.*

*He mentioned it to Janet when he **was making** a cup of tea.*

*My friend Rachel came round while I **was sorting** things out.*

While/whilst may connect two clauses in the past progressive, to indicate simultaneous or parallel events:

*They **were messing around** most of the time enjoying themselves while I **was looking after** the children.*

Temporal subordinators and the present perfect 359c

Temporal subordinators such as *after*, *as soon as*, *before*, *once*, *until*, *when* can refer to finished events at points and periods of time in the future as seen from the present moment. In such cases they occur with the present perfect simple:

*Tell me after I'**ve eaten** my dinner, because I want to enjoy it.*

*I'm going to start revising as soon as I'**ve done** this project.*

*Once I'**ve become** more familiar with the territory, maybe I'll be able to find things for myself.*

*Shall I give you a ring when I'**ve sorted** the invoice out?*
(~~Shall I give you a ring when I will have sorted the invoice out?~~)

The same subordinators may also refer to past events completed at the moment of speaking, or to past events still relevant at the time of speaking/writing, especially when such events are seen as generally true. Such references also occur with the present perfect simple:

*Once you'**ve bought** a house, you start falling into trap after trap, you know, mortgage and bills, and buying things for the house, and things that'll make it comfortable, and what have you.*

*You're put into a medical ward after you'**ve been treated** in the coronary care unit.*

*When I'**ve been** out to buy something and I see the price, it shocks me that things are so expensive.*

Temporal subordinators and the past perfect 359d

Some time expressions occur with either the past simple or the past perfect, and it is usually the choice of whether the information is considered background or 'foreground' that determines the choice, **not** the fact that something happened before something else. Items in this category include *after*, *as soon as*, *before*, *until*, *when*:

> *She came through for a coffee after she**'d finished** cooking.*
> ('after she finished cooking' would also have been correct, but with greater foregrounding of the subordinate clause than the version with the past perfect)
>
> *It ended up with her having to go back on the Saturday so that my son could come as soon as she**'d gone**.*
> ('as soon as she went' would also be correct, but with a different, more immediate emphasis)

The construction *after having* + *-ed* participle is infrequent. *After* + *-ing* form is more common, even in writing:

> *And **after having worked** very closely with Michael Blake for so many years and **having had** so many people I think actually believing that he was a member of the Press staff, it's very nice finally to be able to welcome him as a real member of the Press staff.*
> (infrequent: formal public speech)
>
> *I feel a bit better **after lying down** for a bit.*
> (more frequent than: after having lain down)

Perfect infinitive clauses 359e

A perfect infinitive clause can be used for events which did take place:

> *I am sorry for the Formans. **To have worked** so hard and then to have that done to them overnight!*
> (they did work hard)

It may also refer to events that have not taken place:

> [*Millie* is a cat]
> *But this time the button was too close to the wall. **To have activated** it, Millie would have needed to use her paw like a finger.*
> (in this case, the following clause (*would have needed*) indicates that the event was hypothetical; compare: To activate it, Millie would need to use her paw … etc., where the possibility of activating the button is still open)

PRESENT TENSE REFERENCES TO PAST TIME 360

The present simple for dramatic effect 360a

For stylistic reasons, the present simple is often used for true and fictional past events in narratives to create a sense of immediacy, and to suggest that past events are unfolding at the moment of speaking or writing.

Story-tellers frequently shift from one tense to another. This use of the present tense is often called the historic present:

[a woman is telling a story about a laser light show she went to in a theatre]
A: *In the beginning there* ***was*** *darkness, and we* ***hear*** *this scraping sound, and you* ***see*** *this little coloured pattern, the coloured pattern* ***gets*** *bigger and bigger and bigger.*
B: *What* ***was*** *this projected by? A movie projector or a video?*

[from the novel 'Twenty Years a Growing', by Maurice O'Sullivan]
I ***felt*** *a prod in my shoulder. 'The bus is coming,'* ***said*** *George. She* ***comes*** *across with a loud grating noise. The crowd* ***moves*** *towards her, myself and my companion among them. She* ***moves*** *away rapidly.*

The present progressive for narrative build-up 360b

When a story builds towards a peak or climax, especially in spoken story-telling, the verb form may change to the present progressive to describe the background to the main event(s) or to dramatise an ongoing event:

And he walked right up in the pitch blackness, on the top edge of this crane. ***We're all sitting*** *there, and the police turned up, and he said, 'What's going on, boys?'*

I said, 'There's been a pigeon in here eating my sandwiches and I had to throw a few things at it'. She used to have the windows wide open, you know, winter, summer, everything. So, anyway, ***I'm telling her off*** *for all this mess on the floor, I went to pick the tail up, some of the bits the other side of the bed, and as I got up* ***I'm looking*** *straight into this pigeon's eyes.*

News headlines 360c

News headlines (both spoken and written) often report (recent) past events in the present simple.

TIDAL WAVE ***HITS*** *PAPUA NEW GUINEA*

PRIME MINISTER ***SAYS*** *TRAFFIC MUST BE CURBED*

Such headlines may refer either to a subsequent present perfect time-frame (e.g. 'A tidal wave has hit Papua New Guinea') or to a definite past time-frame (e.g. 'A tidal wave hit Papua New Guinea late last night').

Present tense references to historical events 360d

In lists or descriptions of important historical events, the present simple is often used to refer to definite past time:

> *1939*
> *15 March: Germany* ***invades*** *Czechoslovakia. Hitler* ***claims*** *that German troops were invited to 'keep order'.*
> *31 March: Britain and France* ***offer*** *a guarantee to defend Poland from a German attack. Similar assurances* ***are given*** *to Greece and Romania.*
>
> [from a TV football commentary]
> *2003 Arsenal* ***sign*** *Antonio Reyes. 2004 Man United* ***sign*** *Wayne Rooney. It's just tit for tat, isn't it?*

Speech-reporting verbs 360e

Reports with extended relevance

When a speech report refers to something said in the past that is always true or always relevant, the present simple is often used for the reporting verb:

> [speaker reports verbal instructions she received from the owner of a portable baby's bed as to how to assemble it]
> *She* ***says*** *you've got to twist these round and it makes them solid or something.*
>
> *Her earliest memory, she* ***tells*** *me, is of her father returning from the First World War.*

··⁝ **492b The present simple** in **Speech representation**

Hear, *tell* and *understand* as reporting verbs are also often used in the present simple tense, to report or to query newsworthy past events:

> *What's all this I* ***hear*** *about you attacking Barbara?*
>
> *Jane* ***tells*** *me you've not been too well since you got back from holiday.*
>
> [customer (A) and check-out assistant in a store; *Switch* is a kind of charge-card]
> A: *I* ***understand*** *you're taking Switch soon.*
> B: *We're taking Switch now.*
> A: *Oh.*
> (somebody told me, or I read it somewhere)

··⁝ **339e Mental process verbs**

Direct speech reports in spoken narratives

In informal spoken narratives recounting definite past time events, direct speech reports often have a reporting verb in the present simple. Speakers may alternate between present and past tenses, but usually reserve the present tense for quoting speech that is in some way important in the story:

> *And somebody saw her and she* ***said****, 'Ooh Mrs Naylor,' she* ***said****, 'Have you sent your little girl to school?' she* ***says****. 'Yes,' she* ***says****. 'Well she's on Grange Street sat on top of a load of coal, throwing it!'*

Speakers may add an -*s* ending to the present tense verb, even for first person subjects:

> *He* ***says****, 'You almost killed me there you know.' I* ***said****, 'Why?' He* ***says****, 'You know who those two men were?' I* ***says****, 'No I didn't.' And he* ***told*** *me.*
> (this is non-standard usage, but becoming increasingly frequent)

⋯ also **501e Use of *I says, go, be* and *be like*** in **Speech representation**

Future time

Introduction 361
***Be going to* and the present progressive** 362
Be going to* and *will 363
Gonna 364
Independent *'ll* 365
***Will/shall*: intention and volition** 366
Will* versus *shall 367
***Will/shall* in requests, offers, etc.** 368
The present simple 369
The future perfect simple 370
The future progressive 371
The future perfect progressive 372
Future in the past 373
Future reference in subordinate clauses 374
Other modal verbs and future reference 375
Other forms for referring to the future 376

Future time

INTRODUCTION 361

There is no future tense ending for English verbs as there is in other languages, but English has several widely used ways of referring to future time. The most common forms are:

*We***'re going to** *buy a new camera.*
(*be going to* + infinitive)

*She***'s coming** *next Thursday.*
(the present progressive form)

*I***'ll** *be home about eight.*
(*shall/will*)

My flight **leaves** *in two hours' time.*
(the present simple form)

The government **is to** *introduce a new funding system for universities.*
(*be to* + infinitive)

*We***'re about to** *have dinner.*
(*be about to* + infinitive)

References to the future can depend on how much evidence there is for future statements. It is often not possible to refer to the future with complete certainty, even though some future events and actions are inevitable. Sometimes, therefore, choices of form depend on how definite or certain the speaker wants to sound. For this reason, a number of the ways of referring to the future involve modal verbs. The most common verb used is *will*.

377–407 Modality

BE GOING TO AND THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE 362

Be going to and the present progressive are commonly used for referring to future plans, decisions and arrangements. Sometimes either form can be used, sometimes there are contrasts in meaning between them, and sometimes one form is preferred. *Be going to* is more frequent in spoken and informal contexts.

In general, *be going to* and the present progressive can both be used to refer to future events when there is greater involvement on the part of the speaker in the decision-making process:

What ***are you going to drink****?*
What ***are you drinking****?*

> ***I'm going to have*** *a drink with Jill after the film.*
> ***I'm having*** *a drink with Jill after the film.*
>
> *She**'s not going to borrow** my car.*
> *She**'s not borrowing** my car.*
>
> *Karen**'s going to arrive** tomorrow. I couldn't put her off.*
> *Karen**'s arriving tomorrow**. I couldn't put her off.*

Be going to usually indicates that a decision has been made and that the event will take place soon, but that all the necessary plans have not yet been made. *Be going to* stresses the subjective view of the speaker:

> *We**'re going to** pave over the front garden when we get round to it, so we can park off the road.*
>
> ***I'm going to*** *ask him to marry me.*

The present progressive usually indicates that a decision has been made and that arrangements are probably in place or have been made:

> ***I'm starting*** *a new job next week.*
> (typically means I have agreed terms and a starting date)
>
> *I shall actually be leaving earlier than expected.* ***I'm flying*** *on Friday.*
> (I have booked the flight and made all the arrangements)

The present progressive is not used when a prediction is made based on present evidence:

> *It's gone really dark. It**'s going to** rain any minute.*
> (~~It's raining any minute.~~)
>
> [said to a little child who has just received a gift of money]
> *You**'re going to** lose that money if you don't put it in your pocket.*
> (~~You're losing that money …~~)

Will may be used in such cases (→ 363).

BE GOING TO AND *WILL* 363

Be going to and *will* can both be used to make predictions based on present evidence or the present situation:

> *Hurry up or we**'re going to** be late!*
> (or: Hurry up or we'll be late!)

Normally, *be going to* is used when there is some outside evidence for what is said or when the statement can be clearly interpreted:

> *Rumiko* ***is going to*** *have a new baby.*
> (outside evidence)
>
> *He**'s going to** burn that toast.*
> (it can be seen)

Will/shall is preferred when evidence is not so obvious or is less immediately relevant and when judgements or opinions have to be relied on:

> *The baby* ***will*** *have black hair.*
> (statement based on the speaker's judgement/knowledge)
>
> *Don't let him cook. He****'ll*** *even burn the toast.*
> (evidence is less obvious, but the speaker knows that the person mentioned cannot cook)
>
> *I'm sure that we* ***shall*** *have a good discussion.*
> (based on the speaker's judgement)

Will may be used to state absolute certainties about the future:

> *My birthday* ***will*** *fall on a Tuesday in 2007.*

There are contrasts in formality between *will* and *be going to*. In general, *will* is more formal. The following example shows a switch of formality from *will* to *be going to*:

> [TV weather forecast]
> *Temperatures* ***will*** *be below freezing … and it****'s going to*** *be icy on those country roads, so do take care if you're driving.*

The following example shows a speaker change from *be going to* (informal, in this case *gonna*) to *will* (more formal):

> [to friend, while looking at a menu]
> ***I'm gonna*** *have fried mushrooms, you like mushrooms don't you?*
>
> [shortly afterwards, to the waiter]
> ***I'll*** *have deep fried mushrooms with … erm … an old timer burger.*

✪ When the future reference is based on decisions, plans and intentions, *be going to* is used:

> *She****'s*** *already* ***going to*** *buy some new shoes; she can't have the coat as well.*
> (~~She will already buy some new shoes …; she can't have the coat as well.~~)
>
> *I didn't realise you****'re going to*** *apply for the job too.*
> (… that you plan/intend/have decided to apply)

GONNA 364

Gonna (pronounced /ˈɡənə/) is an informal alternative to *going to* in most informal spoken contexts (see the example in 363 above). It is the normal way in which *going to* is pronounced at normal speeds; *going to* is therefore often represented in writing as *gonna*:

> *It's not* ***gonna*** *take two minutes. Then we'll have finished.*
>
> *What are you* ***gonna*** *do with them?*

INDEPENDENT *'LL* 365

There are contexts involving decisions and arrangements where *'ll* is normally the only choice. In such cases *'ll* is best not seen as a contraction of either *will* or *shall*; it may be seen as an independent form.

As an independent form, *'ll* is often used to indicate an instantaneous personal decision:

*There's a garage. We'**ll** just stop and get some petrol.*
(~~There's a garage. We shall/will just stop and get some petrol.~~)

[speaker A has just poured herself some water]
A: *Anyone else want some?*
B: *I'**ll** have a drop, yes. Thanks.*

Independent *'ll* is also used for indicating informal decisions or arrangements where *will* or *shall* would sound too direct or imposing:

*Okay. That's it then. We'**ll** meet next week, I suppose.*

[*Asda* is the name of a supermarket chain]
*Then we'**ll** get a bus to Bridgford, the boys'**ll** get off near Asda and we'**ll** all walk to the school.*

WILL/SHALL: INTENTION AND VOLITION 366

When a speaker wants to make their will or intention clear, then *will* or *shall* is normally used:

*I **will** not do it. You can't make me.*

*I promise I **will** not be beaten.*

*'I **shall** be at the station to meet you,' she said. 'Friday week.'*

A: *Don't forget the party. You **will** come, won't you?*
B: *I certainly **will**. I wouldn't miss it, would I?*

*I **will** definitely stop smoking. I really **will**.*

WILL VERSUS *SHALL* 367

Will may be used for all persons, but *shall* often occurs with *I* and *we*. *Will* is generally less formal when used with *I* and *we*:

A: *Right. Have a nice weekend.*
B: *I **shall** try. You too.*
A: *Okay then. Bye bye sweetheart.*

*We **shall** find some other work for you to do.*

Shall also has a specialised legal usage for stating rules, laws, legal provisions, etc. In such cases, it often occurs with third person subjects:

*The insured **shall** remain the sole owner of the vehicle.*

WILL/SHALL IN REQUESTS, OFFERS, ETC. 368

✪ *Will/'ll* is often used to make offers of future action. In such cases the present simple is not used:

*Oh, that looks heavy. **I'll** carry it for you.*
(~~That looks heavy. I carry it for you~~.)

Shall is frequently used to make first person suggestions regarding future actions:

***Shall** I close the door?*

***Shall** we go out for a meal with them for their anniversary?*

Note that *will* is becoming more frequent in such cases.

388 *Shall*

408–423 Speech acts

THE PRESENT SIMPLE 369

References to fixed events in the future (e.g. schedules, timetables and firm arrangements) are often made using the present simple:

The = sign indicates an utterance which is cut short
[two people exchanging information about their respective travel arrangements]
A: *So you're going on the …?*
B: *Twentieth. On the twentieth. And then I **come back**=*
A: *November the twelfth.*
B: *Yeah. Cos I **leave** on the eleventh but I **do come** overnight so I should be back here on the twelfth.*

THE FUTURE PERFECT SIMPLE 370

The future perfect simple is formed with *will/shall* + *have* + *-ed* participle. It is used when there is reference to something that is seen as already completed before a certain time.

Future time adverbials are normally required to complete the meaning:

*Send a fax to the hotel. He**'ll have left** home by now.*

*In January I **will have been** at the company for twenty years.*

*Do you think you**'ll have heard** about the job by tomorrow?*

THE FUTURE PROGRESSIVE 371

The future progressive is formed with *will/shall* + *be* + *-ing*. It is used when there is reference to something that will be in progress at some specified or understood time in the future:

*Next week **I'll be swimming** every day in the Caribbean.*

***I'll be having** a word with him when he returns.*

*She**'ll be starting** school soon, I suppose.*

*Don't worry. **I'll be waiting** for you at the station.*

The future progressive is also used to refer to events which are due to happen and which may result in other events taking place or make other events possible:

***I'll be seeing** the boss tomorrow morning. Do you want me to mention the promotion?*

The future progressive can also be used to soften questions about the future and make them more polite:

***Will** you **be coming back** on Friday night or Saturday morning?*

THE FUTURE PERFECT PROGRESSIVE 372

The future perfect progressive is formed with *will/shall* + *have* + *been* + *-ing*. It indicates that an event will be in progress at a particular time in the future and additionally highlights the duration of the event.

Time or duration adverbials are usually needed to show the time-frame:

*By six o'clock they **will have been meeting** for almost ten hours.*

*Next January the captain **will have been playing** for the club for twenty years.*

FUTURE IN THE PAST 373

References to events in the past which were still in the future from the point of view of the speaker normally use past tense verb forms:

*He **was coming** until this afternoon and then he changed his mind.*
(it was his plan/intention for the future until this afternoon)

*Last time we met, your wife **was going to** learn Japanese.*
(refers to an earlier point in time when the listener's wife said 'I'm going to learn Japanese', or something similar)

Would/should is used in such cases instead of *will/shall*:

> *Joseph looked at the building where he* ***would*** *work for the next six months.*
>
> *I knew then that I* ***should*** *never see him again.*
> (or less formal: … that I would never see him again.)

FUTURE REFERENCE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES 374

✪ In subordinate clauses with future reference introduced by subordinators such as *as*, *before*, *if*, *once*, *unless*, *until*, *when*, the present tense is used, not *shall/will*:

> [giving someone directions]
> *As you****'re coming*** *into the village, you'll see a pub in front of you. Turn right there.*
>
> [tennis player speaking]
> *If I* ***win*** *this set, it will be a great result.*
> (~~If I will win this set, it will be a great result.~~)
>
> *So what are you going to do when you* ***get*** *back?*
> (~~So what are you going to do when you will get back?~~)

In reported clauses involving verbs such as *ask*, *insist*, *request*, *suggest*, and after conditional subordinators such as *if*, *lest*, *on condition that*, subjunctive mood (involving the base form of the verb, ⇢ 159e) may occur in formal contexts to refer to unfulfilled future events in the past:

> *They suggested he* ***contact*** *a different person.*
>
> *Indeed so great was the press of people around us, that I gripped my brother's arm lest he* ***be*** *trampled underfoot.*

OTHER MODAL VERBS AND FUTURE REFERENCE 375

Other modal verbs are also often used with future reference:

> *There* ***might*** *be a student demo next week against the rise in fees.*
>
> *Do you think you* ***may*** *go camping again this summer?*
>
> ***Can*** *you cope with the kids this afternoon?*
>
> *She* ***could*** *arrive tonight, we're not sure.*
>
> *You* ***must*** *come here tomorrow at ten o'clock.*

⇢ 377–407 Modality

OTHER FORMS FOR REFERRING TO THE FUTURE 376

Other forms can be used to refer to future events, particularly if they are to happen in the near future.

Be to

Be to may be used for future reference in the context of obligations, requirements, formal decisions, etc. *Be to* structures are common with conditional clauses:

> *It's a very big problem. What* ***am I to*** *say to them?*
>
> *If we****'re to*** *get there by five, we should get a move on.*
>
> *If Tom****'s to*** *go and live with his mother, then his sister should too.*

Be to for giving instructions, orders or commands is rare in informal conversation:

> *You****'re to*** *do your homework and to do it neatly this time.*
>
> *She****'s*** *not* ***to*** *come back late.*

Be to is common in specific styles such as newspaper headlines and news reports. In headlines it often occurs in an ellipted form:

> *Pupils* ***to*** *sit new national exams.*
> (Pupils are to sit new national exams.)
>
> [headline about laws to control gun ownership. *MP* = Member of the British Parliament]
> *Police* ***to*** *challenge MPs on guns.*
> (The police are to challenge MPs on guns.)
>
> *The government* ***is to*** *introduce legislation to restrict immigration.*

Be about to and other forms

The following forms enable reference to future events treated as occurring immediately or in the near future. The forms are mainly used in more formal contexts:

> *He****'s about to*** *resign.*
>
> *They* ***are on the point of*** *issuing a statement.*
>
> *People* ***are on the verge of*** *despair.*
>
> *Is that the flight that****'s due to*** *arrive at 22.25?*
>
> *We****'re certain to*** *run out of time. I think we should postpone the meeting.*
>
> *It****'s sure to*** *rain. Let's postpone the match.*
>
> *England* ***are likely to*** *lose their next match against Spain.*
>
> *They****'re supposed to*** *meet us at the station.*
>
> *He* ***is obliged to*** *be there.*

⇢ **404 Other modal expressions with *be***, where these are dealt with separately

Modality

Introduction 377
Modal forms 378
Types of meaning 379
Core modal verbs 380
  General formal properties of modal verbs 380a
  Modal verbs and tenses 380b
  Interrogatives 380c
  Negative forms of modal verbs 380d
  Contracted forms of modal verbs 380e
Can 381
Could 382
May 383
Can, could* and *may 384
Might 385
Could, may* and *might 386
Will 387
Shall 388
Will, shall* and *'ll 389
Would 390
  Past time 390a
  Other uses 390b
Will* and *would 391
Should 392
Should* and *would 393
Must 394
  Tense and time references with *must* 394a
  Negative of *must* 394b
Semi-modal verbs 395
Dare 396
Need 397
  Semi-modal *need* and lexical verb *need* 397a
Ought to 398
Ought to* and *should 399
Used to 400
Panel: *Used to, be used to* and expressions of typicality 401
Used to* and *would 402
Other modal verb phrases 403
  Be to 403a
  Be going to 403b
  Had better 403c
  Have to, have got to 403d
  Have (got) to and *must* 403e
  Would rather 403f
  Would sooner and *would just as soon* 403g
Other modal expressions with *be* 404
  Be about to 404a
  Be able to 404b
  Be bound to 404c
  Be due to 404d
  Be likely to/that 404e
  Be meant to 404f
  Be obliged to 404g
  Be supposed to 404h
Other verbs with modal uses 405
  Expressing possibility, etc. 405a
  Expressing obligation, etc. 405b
Modal nouns, adjectives and adverbs 406
For certain, for definite, for sure 407

Modality

INTRODUCTION 377

This chapter (377–407) describes the main modal forms and meanings. The emphasis is on the core modal verbs but the chapter is also concerned with other items which carry a modal meaning.

The term 'modality' refers to a speaker's or a writer's attitude towards, or point of view about, a state of the world. In particular, modals are used to say whether something is real or true, or whether it is the subject of speculation rather than definite knowledge. For example, *Charles is at home now* is a statement of what is believed to be true, and indicates a high degree of certainty on the part of the speaker; *Charles may be at home now*, on the other hand, is more speculative and an assessment of possibility rather than a statement of fact. *Charles should be at home now* can be either a statement of what is probably true or a statement of what is desirable or necessary. All of these statements, even the simple, neutral statement of fact, can be said to carry modality, in other words the speaker's point of view.

Modal items, especially the modal verbs, also play a very important part in the expression of politeness and formality in English.

MODAL FORMS 378

The most significant expression of modality is by means of modal verbs. The core modal verbs are: *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *will*, *shall*, *would*, *should*, *must*.

There is also a set of semi-modal verbs. These verbs behave in similar ways to core modal verbs but share some characteristics with lexical verbs. The semi-modal verbs are: *dare*, *need*, *ought to*, *used to*.

This chapter also describes other expressions of modality apart from the modal and semi-modal verbs. For example we consider the role of other verbs which can express modal meanings (e.g. *hope*, *manage*, *suppose, seem*, *wish*, *want*) and modal phrases which have become grammaticalised (e.g. *had better*, *be meant to*, *be obliged to*, *be supposed to*). The chapter also refers to expressions of modality by means of adjectives, adverbs and nouns.

TYPES OF MEANING 379

There are two main types of modal meaning.

One meaning is to do with certainty, probability and possibility, with an assessment of potential facts and with deductions or predictions based on the assessment:

*I **might** see you later.*
(it is possible, not certain)

*I'**ll** see you tomorrow.*
(speaker is certain)

The other meaning involves getting things done or trying to control the course of events. Modals used in this way express degrees of obligation and whether or not something is necessary, desirable, permitted or forbidden. This use also refers to volition, people's will to do or not do things, and to their ability to do things:

*You **may** go now.*
(speaker grants permission)

*I **must** be careful what I say.*
(speaker expresses necessity/obligation)

*Liz **can** work right through the night without getting tired.*
(speaker refers to ability)

Often, the same modal form can be used with different meanings, depending on context:

*I don't know. You **may** be right.*
(possibility: It is possible you are right.)

[spoken instruction to students taking a timed examination]
*You **may** start now.*
(permission: You are allowed to start now.)

***Could** it be the other one that's causing the problem?*
(possibility: Is it possible that the other one is causing the problem?)

***Could** we come and see it on Saturday?*
(permission: request for permission to come)

CORE MODAL VERBS 380

General formal properties of modal verbs 380a

The forms of modal verbs differ from the forms of other types of verb in significant ways. Modal verbs have only one form and do not inflect for person or number.

Modal verbs do not have infinitive forms, either with *to* or without. Modal verbs have no *-ing* form and no *-ed* participle form and therefore lack progressive and perfect forms:

I'd like to be able to speak Japanese.
(~~I'd like to can speak Japanese.~~)

Modal verbs are placed first in the verb phrase and are followed by a verb in the base form. The next verb may be a lexical verb or an auxiliary verb (*be*, *do*, *have*) or the substitute verb *do*, but cannot be another modal verb:

*We **might stay** an extra night.*

*We **should be leaving** soon.*

*It **might have got** lost in the post.*

A: *We **can stick** these in the letterbox tonight.*
B: *We **could do**, yeah.*
(followed by substitute *do*)

✪ Modal verbs cannot be used as lexical verbs:

*I **must go** to bed.*
(~~I must to bed.~~)

*I **can speak** Italian.*
(or: I know Italian.)
(Not: ~~I can Italian.~~)

Modal verbs can only stand alone when the lexical verb is understood:

A: *Karen might have his number.*
B: *Yes, she **might**.*
(understood: she might have his number)

Modal verbs cannot indicate voice or aspect, though they may precede constructions with passive voice and/or progressive/perfect aspect:

*I think Jim **could** have been offended.*

*I don't know when we'**ll** be arriving yet.*

*We **should** have thought of that earlier.*

*He **might** have been expecting it.*

Modal verbs and tenses 380b

Some of the core modal verbs historically represent present and past tense forms which are no longer in one-to-one contrast as tenses.

Historical tense forms of modal verbs

historical present tense forms	historical past tense forms
can	*could*
may	*might*
shall	*should*
will	*would*

The historical present tense forms are not used to refer to the past; however, all of the forms may refer to either present or future time. In general, the historical past tense forms are used to express greater tentativeness, distance and politeness.

Interrogatives 380c

The interrogative with modal verbs is formed by inverting the subject and modal verb. Auxiliary *do* is not used:

> ***Can they*** *repair it?*
> (~~Do they can repair it?~~)
>
> ***Will your mother*** *be offended?*

Negative forms of modal verbs 380d

The negatives of modal verbs are formed by adding *not*/*'nt* (··⁘ **380e**) after the modal verb. Auxiliary *do* is not used:

> *I* ***can't*** *understand what she's saying.*
> (~~I don't can understand what she's saying.~~)
> (~~I not can understand what she's saying.~~)
>
> *I just* ***could not*** *bear even talking to him.*

Contracted forms of modal verbs 380e

Subject-verb contraction

Subject-verb contraction is only possible with *shall* and *will* (which become *'ll*), and *would* (which becomes *'d*):

> *They**'ll** always be successful.*
>
> *I**'ll** let you know what's going to happen.*
> (I shall/I will let you know …)
>
> *He**'d** be very cross if I told him.*

Negative form contraction

Modal verbs are often used in contracted negative forms (sometimes causing a change in the form of the verb).

Uncontracted and contracted negative forms of modal verbs

modal verb	uncontracted negative	contracted negative
can	*cannot*	*can't*
could	*could not*	*couldn't*
may	*may not*	*mayn't* (very rare)
might	*might not*	*mightn't*
will	*will not*	*'ll not, won't*
shall	*shall not*	*'ll not, shan't*
would	*would not*	*'d not, wouldn't*
should	*should not*	*shouldn't*
must	*must not*	*mustn't*

··⁘ **387 *Will*** and **390 *Would***

CAN 381

Uses

Can is the most frequent modal verb. It has a number of meanings; its most frequent uses are for permission and ability.

Permission

Can is frequently used to seek permission, give permission or, in the negative, to forbid:

> *You **can** borrow the car but be careful.*
>
> *Students **can** hand in essays at any time before midday on February 3rd.*
>
> A: ***Can** I smoke in here?*
> B: *No, I'm sorry you **can't**.*
>
> [adult to a very small child who has just picked up a glass]
> *No. You **can't** have that. You might break it.*

Ability

A very frequent use of *can* is to indicate ability. This is particularly so with verbs of perception such as *hear* and *see* and with mental process verbs such as *follow* (in the sense of 'understand'), *guess*, *imagine*, *picture*, *understand*:

> *You **can hear** the atmosphere in the stadium.*
>
> ***Can** you **see** the post office on the corner?*
>
> *I **can guess** what you're thinking right now.*
>
> *I **can** just **imagine** how surprised they looked.*
>
> *Liz **can work** right through the night.*

General truths

Can is used in statements about events and states which are true or which are usually the case:

> *Steel **can** resist very high temperatures.*
>
> *It **can** rain quite a lot in Ireland in August.*
>
> *Thai **can** be a very difficult language for Westerners to pronounce.*

✪ *Could* is not normally used for general or current truths with present time reference:

> *The verb 'help' **can** be used with or without infinitive 'to'.*
> (stating a fact about English grammar)
> (~~The verb 'help' could be used with or without infinitive 'to'.~~)
>
> *Tommy **can** be really irritating at times. I don't think he realises.*
> (the speaker believes this is true)
> (~~Tommy could be really irritating at times. I don't think he realises.~~)

Could is used in such contexts only in reference to past time:

> *Liam* ***could*** *be so stubborn, but at the end of the day, he was a good colleague.*

382 for the use of *could* as the past tense of *can*

Possibility

Can is used to indicate or assess logical possibilities:

> *How* ***can*** *they be there already? They only left ten minutes ago.*
>
> *That* ***can't*** *be right.*

384 *Can, could* and *may*

COULD 382

Uses

Could has a number of meanings. The most frequent uses are for possibility/probability and for making suggestions, and as the past tense of *can*.

Probability

One of the main uses of *could* is for assessments of possibility or weak probability:

> *I think that* ***could*** *be the answer to the problem.*
>
> *We* ***could*** *all be having holidays on the moon within thirty years.*
>
> [in a shop; A is the assistant]
> A: *We don't give refunds without a receipt I'm afraid.*
> B: *Really?*
> A: *Yeah.*
> B: *All right. That* ***could*** *be tricky.*

Suggestions

Could is often used in making suggestions:

> A: *I* ***could*** *just cook dinner tonight and then you* ***could*** *cook it some other night and, you know, reciprocate.*
> B: *Alright. Okay.*

Permission

Could is used to ask for permission:

> ***Could*** *I talk to you for a moment?*

Criticism

Could have + *-ed* participle is often used to express disapproval or criticism:

> *You* ***could have told*** *me. Why did you keep it all to yourself?*

The expression *how could you* is often used to indicate disapproval or to issue a reproach:

> ***How could you*** *forget that we're going out to dinner tonight?*
>
> *'You have quite ruined our day.* ***How could you****?' she sobbed. '****How could you****?'*

Past tense of *can*

Could is used as the past tense form of *can* when clauses with *can* are reported as past events:

> *In tennis I wasn't that good but I knew I* ***could*** *get better.*
> (at the time, the speaker thought 'I know I can get better')
> (~~In tennis I wasn't that good but I knew I can get better.~~)
>
> *When I was a kid I* ***couldn't*** *swim at all. I only learnt when I was thirty.*
>
> *They said we* ***could*** *do whatever we wanted.*
>
> *We* ***could*** *hear that dog barking all through the night.*

However, when actual achievements are indicated, *was/were able to*, not *could*, is preferred in past affirmative clauses. The negative forms *couldn't* or *wasn't/weren't able to* are both used to indicate non-achievement:

> *The thieves escaped but the police* ***were able to*** *arrest them later that evening.*
> (~~The thieves escaped but the police could arrest them later that evening.~~)
>
> [talking about a live concert by the Beatles in the 1960s]
> *Sharon and I* ***were able to*** *get special seats but we* ***couldn't*** *hear a thing. The screaming was just something else. There were kids fainting, and being taken out, everything.*
>
> *She* ***was not able to*** *move on her own.*
> (or: She couldn't move on her own.)

MAY 383

Uses

May is used with a number of meanings.

Permission

May is used to ask for, grant and refuse permission:

> ***May*** *I see that?*
> (possible responses: Yes, you may./No, you may not.)

Probability

May is used to refer to weak probability:

> [talking about a delivery]
> *There's a bank holiday in between, so it* ***may*** *or* ***may not*** *get to you by the end of that week.*

General truths

May is used in formal written English to describe things which are likely to occur or which normally do occur. In this sense it is a more formal equivalent of *can*:

Frog spawn ***may*** *be found in river beds at that time of year.*
(is typically/normally found)

146b Hedging: modality in **Grammar and academic English**

Concession

May often has a concessive meaning, especially when accompanied by *well* and/or followed by *but*:

[talking about dunlins, a small sea-bird]
A few ***may well*** *have nested in Britain,* ***but*** *the vast majority would have flown in from their breeding grounds in the far north around arctic shores.*

I ***may*** *be in danger of stating the obvious,* ***but*** *I shall state it anyhow.*

Stalin ***may*** *be long since dead,* ***but*** *Stalinism is not.*

Good wishes and curses

May is used in formal expressions of good wishes and in formal curses:

[speech at a wedding, addressing the newly-married couple]
May *you both have a long and happy married life together.*

May *you rot in hell!*

also **385** ***Might***; **384** ***Can*****,** ***could*** **and** ***may***; **386** ***Could*****,** ***may*** **and** ***might***

408–423 Speech acts

CAN, *COULD* AND *MAY* 384

Probability

When assessing probabilities, *can* refers to what the speaker believes to be a fact or to be usually the case. *Could* and *may* refer to possible events. Compare:

It ***can*** *be very cold in Stockholm, so take a big coat.*
(this is a known fact)

It ***could/may*** *be very cold in Stockholm, so take a big coat.*
(it is possible that it will be cold in Stockholm when you are there)

Could and *may* rather than *can* are used to speculate about whether something is true or possible:

A: *Where's Julia?*
B: *She* ***could*** *be in the garden.*
(or: She may be in the garden.)
(~~She can be in the garden.~~)

It ***could*** *rain this afternoon.*
(~~It can rain this afternoon.~~)

Permission

Can, *could* and *may* are all used to seek permission. *Could* is usually heard as more formal and polite than *can*, and *may* is the most formal/polite of the three:

> ***Can*** *I use your phone?*
>
> ***Could*** *I use your phone?*
> (more formal/polite)
>
> ***May*** *I use your phone?*
> (even more formal/polite)

⇢ **385 *Might***

In giving permission, *can* and *may*, but not *could*, are used; *may* is more formal/polite than *can*, and much less frequent:

> [in a clothes shop; A is the customer]
> A: *Can I try a shirt on as well?*
> B: *You* ***can****, sir, yes.*
> (~~You could, sir, yes.~~)
>
> *'You* ***may*** *go now,' she said.*
>
> [to a child]
> *You* ***can*** *watch TV for an hour, then off to bed.*
> (~~You could watch TV for an hour, then off to bed.~~)

Requests

A wide range of requests and directives are made with *can* and *could* (but not *may*). As with seeking permission, *could* is more polite than *can*:

> ***Can*** *you spell that for me please.*
>
> ***Could*** *you give me a ring if you can't make it, Bob.*
>
> [adult to child]
> ***Could*** *you just shut up for a minute!*

⇢ also **416 Requests** in **Speech acts**

MIGHT 385

Uses

Might has a number of meanings. In general, it is a more indirect and tentative alternative to *may*. Its most frequent uses are for expressing probability; its uses referring to permission are mostly formal and much less frequent.

Probability

The most frequent uses of *might* are for referring to probability:

> A: *So I'm going to buy a digital camera.*
> B: *Yeah.*
> A: *And I* ***might*** *buy a video camera as well.*

Permission

When used to refer to permission, *might* is very formal and infrequent:

> ***Might*** *I speak to Mrs Lutterworth?*

Past tense of *may*

Might is used as the past form of *may* in indirect reports:

> *When they reached the shore road, she said to him, 'Mother* ***may*** *be expecting you.'*

The probable indirect report of this sentence would be:

> *She said that mother* ***might*** *be expecting him.*

Suggestions

Might is also used to issue advice or suggestions politely or indirectly, especially when used together with *like* or *want*:

> [university tutor recommending a book to a student]
> *I won't go any further with it now but you* ***might*** *like to take a copy of it out with you. It elaborates on a number of the claims that Wade makes. And I do recommend that you look at the book.*

⇢ 414e Declaratives with *may as well* and *might (just) as well* in **Speech acts**

COULD, *MAY* AND *MIGHT* 386

Could, *may* and *might* are all used to express degrees of certainty. *May* expresses a slightly greater degree of certainty than *could*, and tends to be used in more formal contexts. *Might* is more tentative than *may* or *could*:

> *He* ***may*** *also find some graduate school course that he can do.*
> (expresses slightly greater likelihood than *could*)
>
> [referring to the single European currency, the Euro]
> *Staying outside the single currency* ***could*** *be detrimental to the UK.*
>
> *It* ***might*** *take us months to find the right person.*

WILL 387

Uses

Will has a number of uses, the most frequent being those used to refer to future time and prediction.

Future time

One of the principal functions of *will* is to refer to future time, since English does not have a separate, inflected future tense (⇢ **361–376 Future time**):

> [talking of a plan to redesign an urban area]
> *Cars* ***will*** *be banned. Coaches, bikes, wheelchairs and pedestrians* ***will*** *be catered for; drivers* ***will*** *not be welcome.*

*The referendum **will** take place on June 23rd.*

***I'll** be sixty-five in a few years' time and **I'll** be retiring.*

Will is used for first, second and third person subjects to refer to future time. (⁘ also **388 *Shall***)

Predictions

Will is used to make predictions about the future or deductions about a present situation from the available evidence:

*I think we**'ll** do it but it **won't** be easy.*

*If she gets the right grades, she**'ll** go to university.*

*That**'ll** be Jim at the door.*
(deduction about the present situation: it is very likely that the person knocking/ringing at the door is Jim)

Will is used to make general predictions about things that always happen:

*Dry twigs **will** burn easily.*

*A dog **will** growl when it's angry or frightened.*

Habitual events

Will is used to refer to habitual events:

*On a Friday night we**'ll** get a take-away and we**'ll** just relax.*

✪ Intentions and offers

Will is used to express intentions or decisions. The present simple form is not used in such situations:

[in a photo shop; A is the assistant]
A: *I'm afraid they won't be ready till three o'clock.*
B: *Okay. Er, **I'll** come back at three.*
(intention/decision to act)
(~~Okay. I come back at three.~~)

Will is used to express degrees of willingness to do something, and is often used to make offers. The present simple form is not used in such situations:

***I'll** carry that for you.*
(~~I carry that for you.~~)

*I **won't** lend him any money. Why should I?*
(~~I don't lend him any money.~~)

Requests and invitations

Requests and invitations are often made with *will*:

***Will** you pass me that newspaper please?*

***Will** you join us for a drink after the concert?*

A rarer, more formal use of *won't* occurs in polite requests and invitations:

> *The manager will be here in a minute. **Won't** you take a seat, Mr Parker?*

Directives

Strong directives can be issued using *will* in the interrogative:

> [parent to child]
> ***Will you** sit down and just be quiet!*

A rarer use of *will* is in declarative clauses which command someone to do something or insist that they do something:

> [adult to a child who is refusing to pick up an object she has thrown on the floor]
> *You **will** pick it up and you'**ll** pick it up now!*
>
> *You **will** ring me as soon as you get there, **won't** you?*

Disapproval

Will is often used in a disapproving way to refer to persistent actions of oneself or of others. In this usage *will* is often stressed:

> *He **will** leave that door open every time he goes through!*
> (more emphatic than: He leaves that door open every time he goes through.)
>
> *Oh, I **will** keep banging my elbow on that shelf.*

Responding

Will may be used to refer to inanimate objects and how they respond or fail to respond to human intervention:

> A: *This window **won't** open.*
> B: *I know. It's been stuck ever since we painted it.*
>
> ***Will** this printer do double-sided copies?*
>
> [talking about a computer]
> *It **won't** let me save the file with a different name.*

344 *Will* referring to general truths or used for politeness

SHALL 388

Uses

Shall has two main meanings; one refers to future intentions, the other is concerned with offers and advice.

Predictions and intentions

Shall is used instead of *will* with first person subjects in rather formal contexts to make predictions and to announce intentions or decisions. It is much less frequent than *will*:

> *While she's here, we **shall** never be able to put the past behind us.*
>
> *I **shall** always be grateful for what he did on that day.*
> (less formal: I will/I'll always be grateful …)

> *'I don't want anyone with me. I* ***shall*** *do this on my own,' Bless said, and he hurried out of the room.*

Shall not/shan't is even rarer, but does occur in formal contexts to make predictions and announce intentions or decisions:

> *I* ***shan't*** *be here for much more than half an hour.*

Directives

Shall is also used to issue directives but this use is very formal and rare:

> [notice in an aircraft cabin]
> *This curtain* ***shall*** *be left open during takeoff and landing.*

> *'You* ***shall*** *be punished,' said Mrs Marline. 'You* ***shall*** *go to your room and stay there without a light when it is dark.'*

Making offers and seeking advice

Shall in first person interrogatives is much more frequent than other uses of *shall* and is common in the making of offers and suggestions, and in seeking advice:

> *So as soon as Bob comes back, Ken,* ***shall*** *I give you a ring?*

> ***Shall*** *we go and have a walk in the garden?*

> A: *What* ***shall*** *I do? Come in first thing in the morning then?*
> B: *Mm, that's probably the best thing, yeah.*

WILL, SHALL AND *'LL* 389

Will is almost ten times more frequent than *shall* in spoken and written texts taken together. The contracted form *'ll* is almost three times more frequent than the full forms *will* and *shall* taken together.

Shall is, in general, not very frequent, but is twice as common in spoken texts as in written texts because of the use of *shall I/we* to make suggestions or to seek advice.

Although *shall I/we* is the normal form for making suggestions, in informal conversation *will I/we* also sometimes occurs instead:

> [a couple, A and B, are organising food for a dinner party]
> A: ***Will*** *I bring out the salads?*
> B: *No. But, erm, is this fish cooked?*

⁘ also **363** and **365** for discussion of the use of *'ll* and for comparisons between *will* and *be going to*

WOULD 390

Uses

Would has many meanings. A number of its uses refer to past time. It is also used in conditional sentences, and as a hedge to soften statements and requests.

Past time 390a

Reported clauses

Would can function as the past tense of *will* in reported clauses:

> *I knew that **would** cause a problem.*
> (report of a thought or statement: I know that will cause a problem.)

Future-in-the-past

Would can refer to future-in-the-past, when the speaker looks forward in time from a point in the past:

> *Her funny crooked smile and short bouncy hair inspired him with exciting ideas of friendship. Perhaps one day he **would** summon the courage to speak to her, see how things went.*

Habitual actions

Would can refer to typical habitual actions and events in the past and often occurs in narratives:

> *We stayed in an inn which had been built by a film company when they had made a film in the area. Every morning, the waiters **would** come down the long verandah, followed by two small but very active monkeys, and leave us a tray of coffee, rolls and tropical fruit. The fruit looked divine, but I never tasted any of it. The monkeys **would** sit there staring, and I couldn't resist their eyes begging for food. The waiters **would** return, collect the tray and the monkeys **would** follow them to the next room and do it all over again.*

In this meaning, *would* is similar to *used to*, but tends to occur in more formal contexts.

⇢ **402 *Used to* and *would***

Volition

Would may be used to refer to volition in past time situations:

> *Patsy was so kind. She **would** always help when we needed her.*
>
> *I did ask him, but he **wouldn't** give me an answer.*

Responding

Would (especially the negative *wouldn't*) can refer in past time contexts to how inanimate things responded or failed to respond to human intervention:

> *It was a freezing cold morning and the car **wouldn't** start.*

Other uses 390b

Conditional sentences

Would is common in the main clause of hypothetical conditional sentences:

> *If I had to leave, I **would** probably go to India.*
>
> [talking about a flat the speaker was considering renting]
> *D'you know what I mean? If it had another little room, it **would** have been quite nice.*

Hedging

Would is often used with verbs such as *advise*, *imagine*, *recommend*, *say*, *suggest*, *think* as a softener or hedge:

> A: *I **would imagine** actually it's still cold because it's still quite windy isn't it?*
> B: *Yeah.*

> [shop assistant to customer who is buying a bed]
> *I **would** always **recommend** a slightly softer bed than a harder one.*

> [advising a friend choosing a jacket in a shop]
> ***I'd say** get the bigger one.*

> *The total would be about £260, I **would think**.*

Requests

Would is frequent in requests. It is a more polite or indirect form of *will*:

> ***Would** you give me a call this evening?*

> *I want you to have a look at this, if you **would**.*

WILL AND *WOULD* 391

Would functions as a more formal or polite alternative to *will* in requests:

> ***Would** you excuse me just one second?*
> (heard as more polite than: Will you excuse me just one second?)

> ***Would** you look after my seat for me please?*

Will and *would* can both refer to willingness, with *would* functioning in past time contexts:

> *Josh says he'**ll** do it for you.*

> *When he was at home, his mother **wouldn't** allow him to go out anywhere and do anything.*

However, *would* is not used to refer to someone's willingness to do something on a specific occasion in a past time context:

> *I suggested she came on her own, and she finally **agreed to it**.*
> (~~I suggested she came on her own, and she finally would.~~)

SHOULD 392

Uses

Should has a number of meanings. It can refer to things that are likely or possible, but it is more frequently used to refer to things that are desirable, and to give advice and make suggestions. It is also used in conditional sentences.

What is desirable

The most frequent uses of *should* are to indicate what the speaker considers to be the ideal or desired state of affairs:

> *He **should** have been here at five and he's not here yet.*
>
> *She **should** be wearing glasses.*
>
> [complaining about the inadequacies of the English national school inspection system]
> A: *I think there **should** be some kind of system, Mary.*
> B: *Yes. Oh I agree.*
> A: *I think the authorities **should** do it and there **should** be, you know, guidelines from a central place.*
> B: *Uh huh.*
> A: *Erm, and er, it **should** be done thoroughly.*
> B: *Yes.*

What is likely or possible

Another frequent use of *should* is where speakers indicate what they think is likely to occur:

> [answerphone message]
> *Hello. Er, this is a message for Helen Mitchell. It's Frampton College, Allchester. Erm your evening class tonight has had to be cancelled because the lecturer's ill but it **should** be back to normal next week. Thank you.*
>
> [a teacher talking about the school day]
> A: *Tomorrow I've got a lot of sport. Cos I've got games in the morning then I've got swimming for four lessons.*
> B: *It **should** be a pleasant day then.*
> A: *Mm.*

Should can also be used in a more general way to refer to 'possible worlds' or events which might possibly happen:

> *It seems unfair that you **should** have to do all the driving. Let me drive.*
>
> *Why **should** anyone object to her getting the job?*

Surprise

Should is also used for events which did happen but to which the speaker reacts with surprise or disbelief:

> *I'm sorry that he **should** be so upset by what I said.*
>
> *I'm amazed that he **should** have done something so stupid.*

Suggestions

Should is very common in advice-giving and in making suggestions:

> *You **should** tell him straight what you think.*
>
> *We **should** leave it till tomorrow, don't you think.*

Thanking

Shouldn't have is used conventionally to express gratitude for gifts:

> [email message after the receipt of a gift CD]
> *Thanks so much for the CD. You really **shouldn't have**.*

Conditional sentences

Should occurs in hypothetical conditional clauses with *if* in formal contexts, expressing tentative possibilities:

> *Some people carry a card which says that **if** they **should** be killed in an accident, they are willing for their organs to be used for transplantation.*
>
> ***If** you **should** need anything else, do just let me know.*

Should also occurs with subject-verb inversion as an alternative to *if* in more formal contexts to refer to hypothetical situations:

> [giving someone a mobile phone number]
> *I'll be contactable on this number **should** you need me.*
>
> [referring to a request to Cambridge City Council for building planning permission by the University of Cambridge]
> *Cambridge City Council has specified that it will not permit further development of the teaching facilities without related student housing. **Should** the Cromwell Road plan be rejected, the University fears that students may end up living in unsuitable residences paying higher rents than students elsewhere.*

→ 399 *Ought to* and *should*

SHOULD AND *WOULD* 393

Should occurs as a more formal alternative to *would* with first person subjects in hypothetical clauses, in future-in-the-past clauses and in clauses where *would* can occur as a softener or hedge:

> [referring to the pleasures of living in a country cottage, despite the disadvantages]
> *I had been there long enough to see the disadvantages, but even if they had been doubled or trebled, I **should** still have been of the same opinion.*
>
> *She was aware of our feelings for each other and she guessed we **should** like to be alone.*
>
> *Things change, especially in your field, I **should** imagine.*

MUST 394

Must has a number of meanings. It is used for different strengths of obligation, from polite invitations to laws. It is also frequently used to express deduction.

Deduction

The use of *must* to express a deduction is particularly common, especially to express reactions in spoken contexts:

> *I'm twenty-eight, so she **must** be twenty-seven.*
>
> A: *There was a power-cut on the London Underground.*
> B: *That **must** have been terrible. Er, I read about that. Yeah.*

Obligation and invitations

Must expressing obligation is quite strong, but it is also used to express polite invitations:

> *You **must** get those done by tomorrow.*
>
> *I told her she **must** keep her door locked at all times.*
>
> A: *You **must** come down and have a meal with us sometime.*
> B: *Yeah.*
> (polite invitation)

Rules and laws

Must and *must not* often occur in public signs and notices indicating laws, rules and prohibitions:

> [airline website information]
> *All passengers **must** present valid photo identification at check-in for all flights.*
>
> [public notice at a railway station]
> *Passengers **must not** cross the line.*

Reproaches

Must in the interrogative form is used to issue reproaches and often expresses a feeling of exasperation on the part of the speaker:

> ***Must** you have that music so loud?*
>
> *Why **must** people always park right across our exit?*

Tense and time references with *must* 394a

Must has no past form.

Obligation

Obligation in the past is expressed by *had to*:

> [someone talking about their childhood home]
> *We didn't have water inside, we **had to** go to an outside pump to pump the water to the house.*
> (~~We didn't have water inside, we must go to an outside pump ...~~)

References to obligations which will or may occur at a given point in the future are made with the future forms of *have to* rather than *must*:

> *Maybe one day he **will have to** accept the inevitable truth.*
>
> *If he turns up after midnight, then he**'ll have to** eat whatever he can find in the fridge.*

Must can be used to express the future-in-the-past, and occurs in reported clauses in formal contexts:

> *She had little appetite for the food on the tray, but she knew that she* ***must*** *eat something or else she would faint with hunger.*

Deduction

The perfect form *must have* always refers to deduction, not obligation:

> *I* ***must have*** *been on the phone.*
> (it is likely/probable that I was on the phone)

Negative of *must* 394b

✪ **Obligation: *must not* and *need not***

Must not is used to forbid something. *Need not* or the negative forms of *have (got) to* or the negative of the lexical verb *need to* are used to express an absence of obligation:

> [parent to child]
> A: *Samantha?*
> B: *What?*
> A: *You* ***must not*** *leave stuff like this under the sofa!*
> (forbidding something)
>
> [pharmacist advising a customer about a medical product]
> *This* ***needn't*** *be kept in the fridge.*
> (there is no obligation or necessity to keep this in the fridge; 'This must not be kept in the fridge' would mean it is forbidden/wrong/dangerous to keep it in the fridge)
>
> [speaker B is a pensioner who enjoys free bus travel]
> A: *The bus is going to be about £1.*
> B: *Well I* ***don't have to*** *pay.*
> (~~Well I mustn't pay.~~)
>
> *We should have a general discussion at this stage. Er, we* ***don't need to*** *reach any final decisions.*

⋯ **397** ***Need*** and **403d** ***Have to, have got to***

Deduction

The negative of *must* when denying or negating logical deductions or conclusions is *can't/cannot*:

> [speakers are measuring distances on a map]
> A: *There's no way that's thirty miles.*
> B: *That* ***can't*** *be right. No it isn't.*
> A: *Maybe the scale's wrong.*
> B: *Mm,* ***must*** *be.*

Mustn't is also used to express negative deductions, especially in more informal spoken contexts:

> [talking about time sheets to record work done]
> *But she said 'Oh you* ***mustn't*** *have filled it in because I haven't got any record of you working those two shifts.' But I'm sure I did. I'm sure I filled it in but now I can't remember.*
> (or: You can't have filled it in because …)

SEMI-MODAL VERBS 395

The semi-modal verbs are: *dare*, *need*, *ought to* and *used to*. (*Dare* and *need* are also lexical verbs.)

These verbs are also sometimes called 'non-typical' or 'marginal' modal verbs. In some ways they behave grammatically like lexical verbs; in some ways they behave grammatically like the core modal verbs:

> *I* ***dare not*** *tell her what's happened.*
> (as with core modal verbs, negative formed without auxiliary *do*)
>
> *Marie* ***didn't dare*** *say anything to them.*
> (as with lexical verbs, negative formed with auxiliary *do*)
>
> *We* ***ought to*** *wash this tray,* ***oughtn't we****?*
> (unlike core modal verbs, followed by *to*; like core modals, can be used in a tag question)

Often the different behaviour marks a difference between formal and informal styles:

> *I've learnt to become open-minded. I* ***didn't used to*** *be.*
> (negative formed with auxiliary *do*; the most common negative form of *used to* in general contexts)
>
> *There is something rather secretive about Lucian at times. He* ***used not to*** *be like that. He was such a frank sort of boy, if you know what I mean.*
> (negative formed without auxiliary *do*, but only usually found in formal styles)

DARE 396

Dare as a semi-modal occurs frequently in negative and interrogative clauses. When used as a semi-modal, it is followed by the infinitive without *to*:

> *I* ***daren't*** *ring Linda again.*
>
> *She* ***dare not*** *ask her mother to lend her money.*
>
> ***Dare*** *we write to them and complain?*

The negative of semi-modal *dare* may occur as *dare not/daren't* or may be formed with auxiliary *do*:

> *I **dare not** go in there because goodness knows what's in there.*
>
> *His eyes were all swollen up and everything, so he **didn't dare** go out.*

Semi-modal *dare* is usually not inflected for person or tense. When *dare* is used as a lexical verb, it may be followed by a *to*-infinitive and it may be inflected. The non-inflected past form is rare and rather formal:

> [expressing strong disapproval of someone's criticism]
> *And she **dare** criticise the running of the Centre!*
>
> *I think they all feel the same but nobody ever **dares to** say it, you know.*
>
> *She **dared to** hope that she had seen the last of him.*
>
> *He was such a terrifying man; no one **dare** contradict him.*
> (rare and formal)

NEED **397**

Semi-modal *need* most commonly occurs in the negative declarative, to indicate absence of obligation:

> *She **needn't** take the exam if she doesn't want to.*
>
> *At least the spare time on his hands could be good fun. He'd please himself and no one else. His tie could hang loose all the time. He **need not** wear a tie. He **need not** wear a suit. That was the uniform of servitude. He **need not** hasten through the city streets, his coffee hardly drunk, to be at work on time.*

Affirmative declaratives with semi-modal *need* are much rarer and are associated with formal styles and contexts. There is almost always some element of negation in the clause, even if the verb phrase is affirmative:

> *No one else **need** see what he was doing either.*
>
> *If we feel wisdom itself is lost, we **need** only enter a library.*
> (we need not do more than enter a library)

Interrogatives with semi-modal *need* are very rare and are associated with formal styles and contexts:

> [*She* here refers to a fishing boat which sank while at sea]
> *She was most likely run down by a larger ship which never stopped. Fishing is dangerous – er, but **need** it be this dangerous?*

Semi-modal *need* has no past tense equivalent, and the lexical verbs *didn't need to* or *didn't have to* are used to express absence of obligation in the past:

> *I got better quite quickly and I **didn't need to** go back to the hospital.*
>
> *She'd done half the course the year before so she **didn't have to** go to all the lectures.*

Semi-modal *need* can be used with a future-in-the-past meaning:

> *I was locked out but I knew I **needn't** panic because Laura would be home at five.*

Needn't have + *-ed* participle is used to refer to events which happened but which the speaker considers were unnecessary:

> *I **needn't have bought** so much food now that Suzie won't be with us for dinner.*
> (speaker did buy food but now considers it was unnecessary)

Semi-modal *need* and lexical verb *need* 397a

The meanings of semi-modal *need* and the lexical verb *need* often overlap and lexical verb *need* can often be used as an alternative to semi-modal *need*:

> *Fishing is dangerous – but **need** it be this dangerous?*
> (or: *Fishing is dangerous – but **does it need to** be this dangerous?*)
>
> [lecturer to students]
> *There is an intimate link between the presence of the virus in these cells and the production of the tumour. We **needn't** take the figures down here, erm, but what this shows is the second transforming virus, which is hepatitis B virus.*
> (or: *We **don't need to** take the figures down …*)

✪ The full lexical verb *to need*, not the semi-modal *need*, must be used when the verb complement is a noun phrase or noun-phrase equivalent (e.g. an *-ing* clause):

> *You **don't need** an invitation.*
> (~~You needn't an invitation.~~)
>
> *The hedge **doesn't need** cutting.*
> (~~The hedge needn't cutting.~~)

OUGHT TO 398

Uses

The meanings of *ought to* are similar to the meanings of *should*.

What is desirable

Ought to is used to refer to ideal or desired states of affairs. It is very similar to *should*, but is far less frequent:

> *I really **ought to** go outside and get some fresh air for a bit.*
>
> *You **ought to** put more money into your pension fund.*
>
> A: *Well that isn't good enough. You **ought to** complain.*
> B: *I don't like complaining.*

What is likely

Less frequently, *ought to* is used, again in a similar way to *should*, to state what is likely or probable:

> *I think it **ought to** take about three hours, if the traffic is not too bad.*
>
> [lecturer advising a student on which authors to read]
> *Er, look at Brinton and if necessary go to Rowland's book. But I think Brinton **ought to** be able to give you the information.*

Interrogative

Interrogatives with *ought to* are rare, and confined mostly to formal styles:

> *Who do you think it is? **Ought** we **to** call the police?*

Negative

The negative of *ought to* is *ought not to* or *oughtn't to*, but both are infrequent, especially in informal spoken language:

> [speaker is talking about whether meetings at work are useful or not]
> *If I don't feel the same when I come away as I did before I went, then I **ought not to** have gone.*

Oughtn't is generally only found in question tags:

> *I ought to photocopy this, **oughtn't** I?*

An even rarer form of the negative, found only in formal styles, is not followed by *to*:

> *She **ought not have felt** either surprise or offence at the discovery that Emma showed Jag her letters, but she could not ignore the fact that she felt both and felt them sharply.*

To is also omitted in question tags:

> A: *This picture ought to be hung somewhere, **oughtn't it**?*
> B: *Yeah.*
> A: *Erm. Don't know where though.*

Past form

Ought to has no past form. The perfect construction *ought to have* + *-ed* participle is used to refer back to states of affairs which were desirable at points in the past:

> *We probably **ought to have talked** about it ages ago.*

In informal conversation, question tags may occur with auxiliary *did* following clauses with *ought to have*:

> *They **ought to have** told you, **didn't** they?*

OUGHT TO AND *SHOULD* 399

Should is much more frequent than *ought to*, in referring to both what is desirable and what is likely.

Tags for clauses with *ought to* often occur with *should*, instead of *ought*:

There ***ought*** *to be criteria,* ***shouldn't*** *there?*

It ***oughtn't*** *to have been like that really,* ***should*** *it?*

Interrogatives and negatives with *ought to* are rare; *should* is generally preferred instead:

Should *we have this window open again now or not?*
(preferred to: Ought we to have this window open …?)

It's a tax form to say I'm a student and I ***shouldn't*** *be paying tax.*
(preferred to: … I'm a student and I oughtn't/ought not to be paying tax.)

USED TO 400

Used to refers to past habitual behaviour or states of affairs in the past which are no longer true:

A: *She's very tall isn't she?*
B: *Yes, she* ***used to*** *do ballet.*
(she did ballet but no longer does it)

There ***used to*** *be a railway going through the village but it was closed in the 1960s.*

Negative

The negative of *used to* is most typically *didn't use(d) to*. In more formal styles, *used not to* occurs. The contracted form *usedn't to* may occasionally occur, but is very rare:

[talking of a married couple who grew to dislike each other over the years]
When he went home she was nasty and fed up and he said sometimes she never even looked up when he went in and yet they ***didn't used to*** *be like that. But they grew to be like that.*

She ***used not to*** *be so censorious of others' behaviour but her own betrayal had, she thought, seared her more than she understood.*

The alternatives *didn't used to/didn't use to* both occur as written representations of the negative with *didn't*, though in speech it is often impossible to hear a difference and the most likely pronunciation is /dɪdn(t) ˈjuːstə/.

Interrogative

The interrogative of *used to* has two forms; the more common form is with auxiliary *did*. The alternative form involves subject-verb inversion, and is very rare:

> ***Did you used to*** *have ambitions when you were younger for the future?*
>
> A: ***Didn't*** *that big building on the corner* ***used to*** *be a cinema?*
> B: *Yes it was, years ago.*
>
> *It looks different.* ***Used it to*** *be like that?*
> (very rare)

Emphatic

Emphatic *did* may occur with *used to*. The construction may be represented in writing as *did used to* or *did use to*:

> A: *Do you stay up to celebrate the New Year?*
> B: *When me and my sisters used to get together before I got married we* ***did used to*** *celebrate it, with my sisters.*
>
> *She* ***did use to*** *cuddle me, my mother, not passionately, like Aunt Eileen did.*

Tags

When a tag follows a clause with *used to*, it is normally constructed with auxiliary *did*:

> *You* ***used to*** *work in Manchester,* ***didn't you****?*
>
> *I* ***used to*** *go there every year,* ***I did****, when I was younger.*

Used to, *be used to* and expressions of typicality 401

✪ *Used to* and *be used to* are different.

Used to refers to habits and states which happened or were true in the past but are no longer the case. *Used to* only has one form, and cannot refer to the present or future:

> *I* ***used to*** *swim every morning before work.*
> (refers to a past habit which is no longer the case)

Be used to refers to how familiar something is for someone; it can occur in different tense forms. *Be used to* is followed by a noun phrase or a verb in the *-ing* form or a clausal complement:

> *She****'s not used to*** *the new system yet.*
> (she's not familiar with it)
>
> [said by someone driving a big car for the first time]
> ***I'm not used to*** *driv****ing*** *such a big car.*
> (I am not familiar with driving such a big car./I do not have experience of driving such a big car.)
> (~~I'm not used to drive such a big car.~~)
>
> *I* ***was used to*** *gett****ing*** *all my meals cooked for me.*
> (getting my meals cooked for me was a familiar/normal experience)
> (compare: 'I used to get all my meals cooked for me', which would simply mean that this was true in the past but is not true any more)
>
> ***I'm not really used to*** *how they do it in America.*

To express habits or things which are normal and typical, in the present, past or future, the simple forms of the present or past tense are used, or adverbs such as *usually*, *normally*, *typically*. Such meanings are not expressed by the verb *use* in the present tense.

> *I **usually** have tea and toast for breakfast.*
> (~~I use to have tea and toast for breakfast.~~)
>
> *He **normally** comes round at about half past one.*
> ('He used to come round at about half past one' would mean that is what happened in the past)
>
> *I **swam** three or four times a week when I was working in Bristol.*
> (or: I usually/normally swam three or four times a week.)
> ('I used to swim three or four times a week' would emphasise that I no longer do it)

USED TO AND *WOULD* 402

Used to and *would* both refer to habitual actions and events in the past:

> *Sandra **used to** come down here and watch me bake cakes. And she **used to** find it quite fascinating. She wanted to bake them herself but she never really knew how. And her grandmother always **used to** bake cakes and she **would** go and watch you know.*

However, with *would*, it is necessary to have an already established past time-frame. The past time-frame is often established by a previous occurrence of *used to* (as in the example above) or by time adverbial expressions (e.g. *years ago*, *when I was a child*):

> *When I was a kid we'**d** always go to my aunt's house in the holidays.*

Would is not used to refer to states in the past which are no longer true:

> *Our village hall **used to** be a school years ago.*
> (~~Our village hall would be a school years ago.~~)
>
> [pointing to a house]
> A: *See that cottage on the right?*
> B: *Yeah.*
> A: *I **used to** live there.*
> (~~I would live there.~~)

OTHER MODAL VERB PHRASES 403

Some common idiomatic verb phrases carry modal meanings. These include *be to*, *be going to*, *had better*, *have (got) to* and *would rather*. These verbs have no non-tensed forms and cannot be preceded by other modal verbs or auxiliary verbs (except for *have to* without *got*; ➜ **403d**):

> *She **was to** have met a gentleman friend at Southampton. He did not show up.*
> (*be to*, referring to a fixed or pre-decided event)

*I thought I **had better** warn you now. Before you get too hopeful.*
(*had better*, referring to a desired or preferable course of action)

***I've got to** photocopy these stories.*
(*have got to*, referring to an obligation)

***I'd rather** you came at three-thirty instead of four, if you could.*
(*would rather*, referring to a preferred state of affairs)

Be to 403a

Uses

Be to is rare in informal conversation, and only occurs in rather formal spoken contexts such as meetings. It is used for directives, and to talk about events in the future which are fixed, desirable or hypothetical.

Directives

Be to can be used to express orders and instructions:

*The orders **are to** be carried out without delay.*
(must be carried out)

[sign on a door]
*This door **is to** remain locked at all times.*

[business meeting; speaker A is announcing agreed actions]
A: *Rob **is to** look at it and Ann Pascoe **to** look at it and formal comments to be collated and sent back to David.*
B: *And one month for that.*
A: *Er, yeah.*
B: *I think that's safest.*

In the negative, *be to* can be used to prohibit or forbid something:

*He **is not to** be disturbed, Jackie instructed. He is sleeping. Let him sleep. He **is to** see **no one**.*
(He must not be disturbed.)

[parent scolding a small child]
*Come here! You**'re not to** do that!*

Fixed events

Be to is used to refer to fixed or pre-decided events, or things destined to happen:

*The first opera ever to be staged in England **is to** be recreated to celebrate its 300th anniversary.*

[about planned changes to telephone charges]
*International calls **are to** cost an average 10 per cent less – up to 20 per cent cheaper in some cases.*
(this has been decided/is destined to happen)

[about someone who died just after retiring from work]
*He'd hoped to travel and see the world in his retirement but it **wasn't to** be.*
(was not destined to happen)

What is desirable

Be to is used to refer to necessary or desired states of affairs:

> *Children need access to a healthy diet if they* ***are to*** *achieve their full potential, whether physically or mentally.*
> (… if it is desirable/considered necessary that they achieve, or if it is the goal that they achieve …)
>
> [university literature seminar]
> *The text is fiction, and* ***is to*** *be read as such.*

Hypothetical future

The subjunctive form *were to* (and its more informal alternative *was to*, used with singular subjects) can be used to refer to a hypothetical future:

> *I'd hate it if anything* ***were to*** *happen to them.*
> (or: I'd hate it if anything happened to them/if anything should happen to them.)
>
> *I suppose if I* ***was to*** *be honest, I'd have to say no to it.*
> (more informal)

159e on **subjunctive *were***

Be going to 403b

Be going to may be used to make firm predictions based on evidence at the time of speaking:

> [looking at a very cloudy, dark sky]
> *It****'s going to*** *rain any minute now.*
>
> *I don't think there****'s going to*** *be any problem at all.*
>
> *They rang me to say it* ***was going to*** *cost £300, so I decided not to do it.*

In this meaning, it is very similar to the predictive meaning of *will*. However, *be going to* is not used when predictions or announcements about the future are hypothetical and remote from present reality:

> *If we win the lottery, we****'ll*** *buy a big house in Italy.*
> ('If we win the lottery, we're going to buy a big house in Italy' suggests there is a reasonable chance or hope of winning)
>
> *If you're looking for good restaurants in Waltisham, you****'re going to*** *be disappointed.*
> (*going to* suggests the listener may indeed be expecting to find good restaurants)

Had better 403c

Had better refers to desirable or advisable actions in particular situations. It is particularly common in spoken language and is normally contracted to *'d better* in informal contexts. The verb form is always *had*, not *have*:

> [the phone rings]
> A: *I'**d better** answer that.*
> B: *Okay.*

> [looking at the clock]
> *If that's the right time, we'**d better** hurry.*
> (~~We have better hurry.~~)

✪ *Had better* is not used to refer to general obligations or requirements. In such cases, *have to* is used instead:

> *You **have to** get good exam grades to get into university.*
> (~~You'd better get good exam grades to get into university.~~)

Had better is not used to express preferences:

> A: *Would you like a coffee?*
> B: ***I'd better** just have a cold soft drink. I won't be able to sleep otherwise.*
> (this means: it is advisable/desirable that I have a soft drink; it does not mean 'I'd prefer a soft drink')

The negative of *had better* is *had better not*. It can be used to advise or to warn:

> *We'**d better not** stay too late tonight. We've got to be up at six tomorrow morning.*

> *You'**d better not** tell Rachel. She'll be scandalised.*

The interrogative of *had better* is formed by inversion of subject and *had*:

> *Shall I phone through or **had I better** write?*

Negative interrogatives are much more common than affirmative ones:

> ***Hadn't you better** warn them?*

Occasionally, *had best* may occur as an alternative to *had better*:

> *She **had best** talk to their lawyers before saying too much.*

> *I thought perhaps it was me, perhaps I'd been a bit rude, you know. So I thought **I'd best** apologise really.*

Have to, have got to 403d

Uses

Have (got) to has similar meanings to *must*, referring to obligation and deductions. The most frequent uses are for obligation.

Obligation

Have to and the less formal *have got to* are used to refer to obligations which come from outside of the speaker. *Have got to* is far more frequent in spoken language than *have to*:

> [talking about working hours]
> *I **have to** be in at six every morning.*
>
> *I'll be back in a minute. I**'ve** just **got to** make a phone call.*
>
> *We**'ve got to** stay over a Saturday night to get the cheap flight.*
>
> ***Have** you **got to** get up early tomorrow?*

Have got to does not have a non-tensed form and may not be preceded by other modals or auxiliary verbs. *Have to*, without *got*, may be used in a variety of forms:

> *I may be free. I**'ll have to** check my diary.*
> (~~I'll have got to check my diary.~~)
>
> ***Do** we **have to** go down to Devon on Tuesday?*
> (~~Do we have got to go down to Devon on Tuesday?~~)
>
> *People want to use technology without **having to** be aware of it, which is still a major problem for the Web experience as a whole.*
> (~~People want to use technology without having got to be aware of it, …~~)

When future obligations and arrangements are already fixed and agreed, the present tense of *have (got) to* is preferred, rather than *will have to*:

> *I**'ve got to** go to the dentist at half past ten tomorrow.*
> (an arrangement/obligation already fixed)
>
> *I've chipped a bit off one of my teeth. I**'ll have to** go to the dentist.*
> (obligation which will be fulfilled in the future; no arrangement is yet made)

Interrogative

The interrogative of *have got to* is formed by subject-verb inversion:

> ***Have you got to** do it all again?*

The interrogative of *have to* is formed most commonly with auxiliary *do* or, less commonly, in formal contexts, by subject-verb inversion:

> ***Do I have to** pay the deposit immediately?*
>
> A: *When **have you to** meet them?*
> B: *Eleven o'clock.*

Negative

The negative of *have got to* is formed by adding *not* after *have*:

> *I **haven't got to** go till five.*

The negative of *have to* is normally formed with auxiliary *do*. In rare cases, especially in formal contexts, it may occur as *have/had not to* or *haven't/hadn't to*:

> *It **doesn't have to** look so perfect.*
>
> *He **had not to** wait many minutes, however, for he soon heard her dress rustling in the hall, followed by a soft closing of the door.*
> (formal, literary style)

Deductions

Have (got) to is also used, though less frequently, to make deductions or draw logical conclusions. In this meaning it is similar to *must*:

> [looking for a particular house]
> *He said a white house next to the village shop. Er, this **has got to** be it.*
> (or: This must be it.)
>
> [telling a story about getting on the wrong train]
> *So I said, 'Maureen, this one'll be our train,' and of course it **had to** be the wrong one. So we got off at the next stop.*
> (predictably, it was the wrong one)

Have (got) to and *must* 403e

Must generally refers to obligations which originate from the speaker, and is often used to express a sense of obligation or necessity, or a directive aimed at the speaker or the listener. *Have (got) to* is generally more associated with external obligations, originating from outside of the speaker:

> *I **must** buy a camera.*
> (directive to oneself)
>
> *I **have to** go back to the hospital for a scan next week.*
> (external obligation)

The negatives *must not* and *don't have to/haven't got to* are quite different. *Must not* expresses prohibition or a negative directive; *don't have to/haven't got to* expresses an absence of obligation:

> *You **mustn't** tell anybody what I've just told you, okay?*
>
> *I **mustn't** forget to buy stamps when I'm in town.*
>
> *You **don't have to** have insurance, but you would be wise to buy some.*
>
> *I **haven't got to** go to Oxford next week. They've cancelled the meeting.*

⁘ **394b** for the negative of *must*

Don't have to can occasionally be used to reproach someone or to tell them not to do something. In this usage, it is less direct than *must not*:

You ***don't have to*** *shout!*
(Stop shouting.)

To make logical deductions, both *must* and *have (got) to* may be used (➔ **394** and **403d**). *Must* is more frequent than *have to* in this meaning.

Would rather 403f

Would rather says that one state of affairs is preferable to another. In both its full form and the contracted form, *'d rather*, it occurs most commonly with *I*. *Would rather* has two different constructions.

Same subject

When the subject is the same person in both clauses, *would rather* is followed by a verb in the base form:

*I****'d rather be*** *a waiter than a barman.*

*He felt he****'d rather do*** *something useful than sit about.*

✪ *Would rather* is not used with an *-ing* form or a *to*-infinitive:

[speaking of a jacket with two buttons]
*I didn't know it had two buttons, you know. I****'d rather have*** *three.*
(~~I'd rather having/to have three.~~)

*I****'d rather stay*** *here than* ***travel*** *any further tonight.*
(~~I'd rather to stay here than to travel any further tonight.~~)

References to the past may be expressed with *would rather* plus a perfect infinitive form:

The people ***would rather have died*** *than let the old-style conservatives back into power again.*

The negative is formed by adding *not* after *rather*:

A: *If you get a job anyway, you'll probably get a car won't you?*
B: *Yeah. Well, I don't know. I****'d rather not*** *have a car.*
A: *Oh, what, environmental pollution?*
B: *Yeah.*

*I****'d rather not*** *say what I really think about him.*

Different subjects

Would rather may also be followed by a clause containing a different subject. In this case, *would rather* is followed by a finite clause with the verb in past subjunctive form (➔ **159e**):

*I****'d rather*** *she* ***came*** *on Tuesday than Monday.*

*I****'d rather*** *it* ***were*** *this way.*

The negative occurs in the finite clause, not attached to *would rather*:

> ***I'd rather** you **didn't** say anything about it at all.*
> (~~I'd rather not you said anything about it at all.~~)

In very informal usage, an object pronoun + infinitive without *to* construction may occur:

> ***I'd rather him tell** her the news than me.*
> (more formal equivalent: I'd rather he told her the news than me.)

Reduced responses

Would rather not is frequently used in reduced responses:

> A: *Do you want to go with Charlie?*
> B: ***I'd rather not**, if you don't mind.*

With *much*

Would rather may be intensified with *much*:

> ***I'd much rather** be at home than here.*

Declining requests

Would rather not or *would rather* + a negative reduced finite clause are often used to decline invitations or requests:

> A: *Will you have another cup of coffee?*
> B: ***I'd rather not**, if you don't mind. It keeps me awake.*

> A: *Would it be okay if he left his things here?*
> B: *Well **I'd rather he didn't**. Er, there's not much room.*

Would sooner and *would just as soon* 403g

A less frequent alternative form of *would rather* is *would sooner*:

> *I don't really want to spend my holidays with the family. **I'd sooner** be with friends.*

An even less frequent alternative form is *would just as soon*:

> *If it's okay with you, Lee, **I'd just as soon** leave now. I'm not very hungry any more.*

OTHER MODAL EXPRESSIONS WITH *BE* 404

A range of expressions with *be* have modal meanings. These include:

be about to
be able to
be bound to
be certain to
be due to
be likely to/that
be meant to
be obliged to
be supposed to
be sure to

*She's obviously very upset so she***'s bound to** *say that.*

Aren't *they* ***meant to*** *be at the restaurant by now?*

There ***was supposed to*** *be a sale here yesterday.*

The most important of these are dealt with in **404a–404h**.

Be about to 404a

Be about to refers to things which are arranged or destined to happen very soon after the time of speaking:

> [public announcement from the buffet car on a train]
> *We would like to advise all passengers that the third and final sitting of breakfast* **is** *now* **about to** *start. Any further passengers who require breakfast, you are advised to take your seats in the restaurant car now.*

Be about to frequently occurs with *just*:

> *We***'re just about to** *go and have something to eat. Would you like to join us?*

The negative of *be about to* may refer to things which are not destined to happen, but it also less frequently has the meaning of 'not prepared to/not willing to':

> *Don't worry,* ***I'm not about to*** *break down into floods of tears. I've cried enough for Rick. It's time for me to get on with my life.*
>
> *Mrs Green was seen to pale and it was clear that she* ***was not about to*** *open the envelope in the presence of witnesses.*
> (was not prepared/willing to open the envelope)

Be able to 404b

Be able to often means the same as *can* when referring to abilities (→ 381), but it is much less common. It is often used in situations where *can* is not grammatically possible:

> *I might not* ***be able to*** *get an eyesight test for tomorrow.*
> (~~I might not can get an eyesight test for tomorrow.~~)
>
> *Will you* ***be able to*** *carry that big box all on your own?*
>
> [giving directions]
> ***Can*** *you see that white building down there? It's just next to that.*
> (preferred to: Are you able to see that white building …?)

The negative of *be able to* is formed with *not* or (more formally) with *unable*:

> [university science lecture]
> *The virus* ***is no longer able to*** *attach to a target cell. It***'s** *therefore* ***not able to*** *cause an infection.*
>
> *We have***n't been able to** *contact her, I'm afraid.*
>
> *Did anybody ask you why you* ***were unable to*** *attend?*

Be bound to 404c

Be bound to means 'be very certain to', and expresses strong predictions or inevitability:

> *You'll have to remind me to bring that book. **I'm bound to** forget otherwise.*
>
> *She had to go through two lots of X-rays. It **was bound to** be painful for her.*

The negative of *be bound to* for making predictions is *be bound not to*, but it is very rare:

> [predicting the result of a sports competition between England and Scotland; *scrape a win* means win by a narrow margin; *two legs* means two separate events; *stroll it* means win easily]
> *England will probably scrape a win over two legs, but they will not stroll it and it**'s bound not to** be pretty.*

Be bound to also less frequently has a meaning of 'be obliged to'; the negative form *not bound to* usually means 'not obliged to/not committed to':

> ***I'm bound to** admit that there could be serious problems.*
>
> ***I'm not bound to** deliver a lecture on my family affairs, I have not undertaken to do it, and I'm not going to do it.*

Be due to 404d

Be due to refers to things which are fixed or destined to happen within or at a determined or known time after the time of speaking:

> *Britain's second child prison **is due to** open next month.*
>
> ***I'm due to** retire next year.*

The negative of *be due to* is formed with *not* attached to *be*:

> *She had only just settled a £136 bill for the last quarter and **was not due to** receive another one until mid-October.*

Be likely to/that 404e

Be likely to/that means that something is probable:

> A: *When **are** you **likely to** hear about the Chicago job?*
> B: *I haven't been for the interview yet.*
> A: *Oh. Right.*
>
> A: *I'm in every afternoon.*
> B: *All right.*
> A: *The only time **I'm likely to** be out is say between ten and twelve.*
>
> *Accidents **are likely to** happen, of course.*

Be likely is normally used with a preparatory *it* subject when followed by a *that*-clause:

> [text about global warming]
> ***It is** also **likely that** global rainfall patterns will shift away from the subtropical areas towards higher latitudes, so disrupting present agricultural patterns.*

✪ Preparatory *it* is not used with the *to*-infinitive construction:

> ***I'm likely to** be out most of tomorrow.*
> (~~It's likely for me to be out most of tomorrow.~~)

The negative of *be likely to/that* is formed either with *not* or, in more formal contexts, with *unlikely*:

> [doctor reassuring a patient about possible side-effects of a medication]
> *In fact they're not very common but they're recorded, and I can't say whether it'll happen to you or not. Statistically they**'re not likely to** happen to you.*

> *Then we should say goodbye to the people with whom we were travelling and it **was unlikely that** we should see any of them again.*

> *This opportunity **is unlikely to** occur again.*

Be likely is often used comparatively, with *more*, *most*, *less* and *least*:

> [*Blockbuster* is a chain of video rental shops]
> A: *We**'re more likely to** get what we want at Blockbuster cos er they've got like fifteen thousand of every film, don't they.*
> B: *Oh yeah.*

> A: *So if you practise deep breathing exercises you**'re less likely to** get a chest infection. Is that right?*
> B: *Yes.*

Other verbs with modal meanings, such as *seem* and *look*, can be used instead of *be* with *likely to/that*:

> *This year, pre-tax profits **seem likely to** fall to £165 million or less before recovering next year.*

> [referring to the European single currency, the Euro]
> *There seemed plenty of time for EU member governments to rein in inflation and put fiscal houses in order before the single currency was launched. It also **seemed likely that** only seven or eight countries would join initially.*

> [weather forecast]
> *The south of England **looks likely to** escape today's wintry showers.*

Be meant to 404f

Be meant to refers to things which are destined, or generally accepted to be true:

> *I thought we were going to marry each other, but it* ***wasn't meant to*** *be.*
> (it was not destined to happen)
>
> [talking about ghosts]
> A: *Animals are more sensitive aren't they? Bob's dog has a fit when the ghost comes out. It goes and hides under the bed. Or has a massive barking fit. Animals* ***are meant to*** *be able to see them before humans can.*
> B: *Yeah.*
> (it is generally accepted that animals can see them before humans can)

Be meant to can also refer to what is desirable, necessary or intended:

> *We****'re meant to*** *reply before the end of the month.*
> (it is desired or necessary)
>
> [university lecturer explaining a difficult poem in a literature class]
> *It's intentionally fragmented. It* ***is meant to*** *be difficult. Everything you're doing* ***is meant to*** *be difficult. It's suggesting something about the difficulty of modern living, in the sense that it's all fragmented. The poem's fragmented but life has become fragmented as well.*
> (it is intended to be difficult)
>
> *We were back here two hours before we* ***were meant to*** *be.*

The negative is *not meant to*. It typically means 'not supposed to/not intended to':

> *It was* ***not meant to*** *be a criticism.*

Be obliged to 404g

Be obliged to normally refers to obligations originating outside of the speaker. It occurs mostly in formal contexts:

> *Washington, spacious and green, is a cosmopolitan and pleasing city. People still come here because they* ***are obliged to****; they stay on because they have come to love the place.*
>
> *When you're on a pedestrian crossing, the driver****'s*** *legally* ***obliged to*** *stop.*

The negative form *not obliged to* means that something is not necessary or obligatory:

> *You* ***are not obliged to*** *answer.*

The negative form *obliged not to* means that something must not be done/is prohibited:

> *You* ***are obliged not to*** *inform anyone of this decision.*

Be supposed to 404h

Be supposed to refers to what is planned or expected to happen, or to duties and obligations:

> *Ben**'s supposed to** be here at half past ten.*
> (it is planned or expected)
>
> *They didn't give me a tax code. As a casual employee I**'m supposed to** have a casual-employee tax code.*
> (referring to a duty or an obligation)

In the negative, *be supposed to* can refer to things which are prohibited or unadvisable. The negative form is *not supposed to*:

> *You**'re not supposed to** put the coffee-pot in the dishwasher.*

Be supposed to can also refer to what is generally believed to be true:

> ***Isn't** dark chocolate **supposed to** be good for you?*

OTHER VERBS WITH MODAL USES 405

Expressing possibility, etc. 405a

Other common verbs which express modal meanings of possibility and likelihood, especially with a first person singular subject, include:

appear
believe
expect
feel
gather
guess
know
look
promise
reckon
seem
sound
suppose
tend
think

> *I **gather** she may be back Sunday.*
> (I believe it is true, based on what I have been told)
>
> *I **guess** the bus service isn't too good, is it?*
> (I suppose/it is likely that …)
>
> *The final next week **promises** to be an exciting match.*
> (is likely to be/has the potential to be)
>
> *Anyway, I **reckon** I'd better be going.*
> (I think …)
>
> *She **seems** to be quite clever for her age.*
> (it is reasonable to believe that from the evidence)
>
> *It doesn't make any sense at all, Diane. It **sounds** a load of rubbish.*
> (typically refers to what someone has said or written: conclusion based on the evidence)

→ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

Appear, *feel*, *look*, *seem* and *sound* occur frequently with dummy *it* as subject:

> *It **appears** there was a technical fault.*
>
> *It **feels** as if they're all criticising me.*
>
> *It **looks** like you didn't get very much sleep last night.*
>
> *It **seems** as if you put these papers in the wrong order.*
>
> *It **sounds** as if she's going to retire soon.*

Tend to is increasingly heard in everyday spoken language to refer to what is typically true or to habitual actions:

> [hairdresser asking customer how she likes to have her hair]
> *Do you **tend** to like to have it forward like that, swept over, with a bit down, like that?*
>
> *I **tend** to like to save my money and spend it when I go to London.*

There is considerable flexibility in the complementation patterns allowed with these verbs, though there are restrictions, sometimes determined by degrees of formality.

Typical complementation patterns

+ *to*-infinitive	(*to* sb) + *that*-clause	+ *like* + clause (informal)	+ *as if* + clause
*It **appears to be** an error.*	*It **appears that** I have some apologising to do.*		[describing a new audio system] *It makes the music **appear as if** it's coming from behind you.*
	*They **feel that** they have caused a lot of trouble.*	*He **felt like** he was coming into his own house as a guest.*	*I **feel as if** I ought to say something to her.*
*The police **look to have** lost control of the crowd.*		*It **looks like** we'll need another day to get through everything.*	*It **looks as if** he's lost something.*
*They **seem to have** caused a lot of trouble.*	*It **seems (to me) that** they need a lesson in politeness.*	*It **seems like** you were right all along.*	*It **seems as if** everything is going wrong.*
	*It **sounds to me that** the sort of theology you're describing is one in which religion is getting out of the churches and into people's homes.*	*It **sounds like** we should think again.*	*It **sounds as if** we're getting a pay rise after all.*

Expressing obligation, etc. 405b

Other common verbs which express modal meanings of obligation, necessity, etc. include:

allow
demand
entail
forbid
force
involve
let
make
mean
necessitate
permit
prohibit
require
want

Living so far from work ***means*** *gett****ing*** *up really early and driving for an hour.*
(makes it necessary to get up early; always followed by *-ing* or a noun)

All these evaluations and appraisals just ***mean*** *more paperwork for us and more bureaucracy.*

The weather has ***necessitated*** *a change in plans.*
(formal)

[university lecturer in an applied linguistics class; the first four skills are reading, writing, speaking and listening]
The fifth skill is the skill of thinking, processing, negotiating with the language. The skill that ***requires*** *the student, the reader, to go beyond the referential meaning and bring his or her own meaning to the text.*

Force and *make* are often used in the passive, with meanings referring to actions made obligatory by external agents:

*It's not much of a holiday if you****'re forced to*** *walk two miles every morning for breakfast … but I suppose it keeps you fit.*

I remember swimming lessons at school when we ***were*** *all* ***made to*** *jump into a freezing cold outside swimming pool.*

A–Z 51 ***Make***, where the uses with and without *to* are described

Want + *to*-infinitive is used in informal contexts with a modal meaning of *should/ought to* or *need*:

[talking about how important it is that young people both plan for the future and train for the future too]
At that age you need to think of both things. You ***want to be*** *looking ahead and you* ***want to be*** *improving your skills as well.*

[preparing a drink for a party]
Put some more sugar in. It doesn't ***want to taste*** *bitter.*

[post-office assistant, taking a package from a customer; *first class* is a fast, more expensive system of delivery]
That one ***wants to go*** *first class. Right.*

Want + *-ing* is used in informal contexts with a meaning similar to *need*:

> *My hair **wants** cutt**ing**.*
>
> *The whole living room really **wants** redecorat**ing**.*

MODAL NOUNS, ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS 406

Several nouns, adjectives and adverbs can express modal meanings. These include:

clear(ly)

definite(ly)

doubtless

likelihood/likely

obvious(ly)

seeming(ly)

supposed(ly)

sure(ly)

undoubted(ly)

Sometimes the same meaning can be expressed in all three word classes:

Nouns, adjectives and adverbs with modal meanings

noun	adjective	adverb
appearance	*apparent*	*apparently*
certainty	*certain*	*certainly*
evidence	*evident*	*evidently*
inevitability	*inevitable*	*inevitably*
necessity	*necessary*	*necessarily*
possibility	*possible*	*possibly*
probability	*probable*	*probably*

> *He took aim and fired, but it was a difficult shot with no **certainty** of success.*
>
> *There was no **evidence** that he had been there or done any work.*
>
> *The most **likely** outcome will be a compromise.*
>
> *There's not **necessarily** only one way of doing these things.*
>
> *Would it be **possible** for me to have a copy of the document?*
>
> *I can **probably** finish the repair work by Friday, if that's all right.*

A less frequent use of *likely* (but one which is quite common in North American English) is as an adverb:

> *A heavy week for economic data will **likely** keep trading cautious.*

FOR CERTAIN, FOR DEFINITE, FOR SURE 407

The expressions *for certain*, *for definite* and *for sure* are also frequently used. *For definite* and *for sure* are especially common in informal speech. *For certain* usually occurs with the verb *know*:

> A: *Did he say **for definite** whether he's coming next week?*
> B: *I'm not sure. I'll ask him again.*
>
> *After a journey like that, I won't be flying in a two-seater plane again, that's **for sure**.*
>
> *Do you **know for certain** that the bus is at ten?*

Speech acts

Introduction 408
Ways of realising speech acts 409
Clause types and speech acts 410
  Declarative clauses functioning as questions 410a
  Modal verbs and interrogative clauses as directives 410b
  Interrogative clauses as exclamations 410c
  Imperative clauses as offers and invitations 410d
Modal expressions and speech acts 411
Modality and directives (commands, requests, advice) 412
Commands, instructions 413
  Declaratives with *can* 413a
  Declaratives with *must* 413b
  Declaratives with *will* and *shall* 413c
  You're going to and *would you like to* 413d
  Interrogatives with *can*, *could*, *will* and *would* 413e
Warnings, advice, suggestions 414
  Declaratives with *can*, *could*, *may* and *might* 414a
  Negative interrogatives with *can* and *could* 414b
  Declaratives with *must* 414c
  Declaratives with *should* 414d
  Declaratives with *may as well* and *might (just) as well* 414e
  Declaratives with *ought to* 414f
  You want to 414g
  Had better 414h
Permissions, prohibitions 415
  Declaratives with *can* and *may* 415a
  Interrogatives with *can*, *could*, *may* and *might* 415b
  Negative forms of *can*, *must* and *may* in prohibitions 415c
  Negative forms of *shall* and *will* in prohibitions 415d
  Would you mind and *do you mind* 415e
  Panel: Turn-taking and asking for permission to speak 415f
Requests 416
  Interrogatives with *can*, *could*, *will* and *would* 416a
  Negative declaratives with *couldn't* and *wouldn't* 416b
  Declaratives with *might* 416c
  Would you like to 416d
  Want 416e
  Panel: *Would you mind* and *do you mind* 416f
Modality and commissives (offers, invitations, promises) 417
Offers 418
  Declaratives with *can* and *could* 418a
  Interrogatives with *can*, *could* and *may* 418b
  Declaratives with *'ll* 418c
  Interrogatives with *shall* and *will* 418d
  Do you want, *will you have* and *would you like* 418e
  Negative *don't you want*, *wouldn't you like* and *won't you have* 418f
Invitations 419
  Would you like to 419a
  Do you want to 419b
  You must and *you'll have to* 419c
Promises, undertakings 420
  Will, *shall* and *'ll* 420a
Non-modal expressions and speech acts 421
  What about, *what if*, *how about* 421a
  Why don't and *why not* 421b
Speech act verbs (*agree, insist, promise*) 422
  Performative verbs 422a
  Panel: Speech act verbs and politeness 422b
  Reporting verbs 422c
Politeness 423
  Tense and aspect 423a
  Negation 423b
  Other syntactic features of politeness 423c
  Prefaces to speech acts 423d
  Panel: *Please* 423e

Speech acts

INTRODUCTION 408

This chapter (408–423) is concerned with interpersonal meanings of grammar, that is, how language enables us to get things done by ourselves or by others.

The term speech act refers to what the speaker or writer is doing in uttering a particular form of words. For example, an imperative form such as *Come here!* usually has the meaning of directing the listener to act in a certain way, and a clause such as *Can you pass me that book?* is likely to be a request to someone actually to pass the book, rather than an enquiry about the person's physical ability. Speech acts are concerned with the speaker's intention rather than the content-meaning of the utterance.

In everyday written and spoken interactions, common speech acts occur such as informing, directing, questioning, requesting, exemplifying, offering, apologising, complaining, suggesting, promising, permitting, forbidding, predicting and so on.

Speech acts may be divided into five broad types:

- Constatives:

  The speaker asserts something about the truth of a proposition, associated with acts such as: affirming, claiming, concluding, denying, exclaiming, maintaining, predicting, stating beliefs.

- Directives:

  The speaker intends to make the hearer act in a particular way, associated with acts such as: advising, asking, challenging, commanding, daring, forbidding, insisting, instructing, permitting, prohibiting, questioning, requesting, suggesting, warning.

- Commissives:

  The speaker commits to a course of action, associated with acts such as: guaranteeing, offering, inviting, promising, vowing, undertaking.

- Expressives (or acknowledgements):

  The speaker expresses an attitude or reaction concerning a state of affairs, associated with acts such as: apologising, appreciating, complimenting, condemning, congratulating, regretting, thanking, welcoming.

- Declarations:

  The speaker performs the speech act solely by making the utterance, for example: *I pronounce you man and wife*; *I declare this meeting closed*; *I name this ship x*.

This chapter focuses particularly on directives and commissives, as these are the speech acts in which grammatical choices figure most prominently, especially involving modal verbs and clause types (e.g. declarative versus interrogative).

The chapter describes how the clause structure contributes to different kinds of speech act (such as statements, questions, directives, etc.) (→ **410**). We also consider the role of modal verbs in constructing speech acts such as requesting (*Would you hold this for me?*), offering (*I'll carry that for you*), promising (*I'll buy you one for your birthday*), suggesting (*We could stay in a bed-and-breakfast place*), permitting (*You can stay up till ten o'clock*), and so on (→ **411–420**).

There are also verbs, referred to as speech act verbs, which a speaker can use to label a speech act explicitly (*I **promise** you I'll be there*; *He **denied** that he was involved in any way*) (→ **422**). When these are used actually to perform the speech act (e.g. *I apologise*), they are called performative verbs (→ **422a**).

The way speech acts are realised also involves politeness and the efforts speakers make to avoid loss of face, or dignity, for themselves and their interlocutors. For instance, a speaker who says *I **was wondering** if I **could** have a word with you?* will be heard as less direct, more polite and less imposing than one who says *I **wonder** if I **can** have a word with you*, which in turn is more polite and less imposing than someone who says *I **want to** have a word with you*. Tense and aspect choices are therefore also implicated in speech acts (→ **423**).

On the larger scale, speakers need to perform functions such as opening conversations, closing them, making sure they get their turn to speak, and so on. These are referred to in passing in this chapter (→ **423d**) and are dealt with in greater detail in **104–122 From discourse to social contexts**.

Speech acts can only be interpreted in context, and so it is often necessary to use quite long examples to illustrate how particular acts are realised, especially in face-to-face conversation, where speech acts such as requests, invitations, advice, etc. have to be carefully negotiated between speakers and listeners and are not necessarily realised in one phrase or clause.

Although we also exemplify speech acts in written texts, and although there are a potentially huge number of possible speech acts which could be discussed, our emphasis in this chapter will be on the performance of the most common, everyday, frequent speech acts which occur in spoken contexts, using grammatical resources. We focus particularly on those speech acts which are interactive, involving getting others to act in a particular way.

Typical speech acts which occur in academic contexts are covered in **140–154 Grammar and academic English**.

WAYS OF REALISING SPEECH ACTS 409

Principally, speech acts are realised using the following resources:

- formulaic utterances (fixed expressions conventionally associated with particular speech acts): greetings such as *Hi*, *Goodbye*; expressions of reaction to events such as *Congratulations*, *Gosh!*, *Sorry*, *Excuse me*, *Pardon*.
- explicit lexical items (speech-act verbs or speech-act nouns) to perform or to label the speech act: *I **pronounce** you man and wife*; *My **advice** is not to use olive oil*.

- syntax (e.g. clause types, tense and aspect choices): *Was I surprised!* as an exclamation; ***Did** you want to say something?* as a polite invitation to someone to take the speaking turn.
- modal constructions (typically modal verbs): ***Can** I get you a drink?* uttered as an offer; *You **must** be patient* as a directive.
- prosodic means: a declarative clause plus rising intonation may indicate a question rather than a statement, e.g. A: *You'll be arriving ↗late?* B: *Yes*.

CLAUSE TYPES AND SPEECH ACTS 410

The chapter **Clause types** (**290–303**) described the basic types of clause. The clause types most directly correspond to common speech acts as shown in the table below.

Typical correspondences between clause types and speech acts

clause type	typical speech act	examples
declarative	statement	*He works in Barsham.*
interrogative	question	*How long did it take?*
imperative	directive	*Put it all in a pile here.*
exclamative	exclamation	*How nice you look!*

However, such a direct correspondence is not always the case, and the clause types, especially declarative and interrogative, are used to perform other speech acts too, as shown in the table below.

Other possible correspondences between clause types and speech acts

clause type	possible speech acts	examples
declarative	question	A: *So you're going to be here about quarter past?* B: *Yeah quarter past, twenty past, yeah.*
	command	*You sit there.*
	offer	*I'll hold that for you.*
	exclamation	*There's a rat!*
interrogative	command	*Will you be quiet!*
	request	*Could you carry this for me?*
	intensified statement, or exclamation	*Was I embarrassed when I realised what had happened!* (I'm telling you I *was* embarrassed)
imperative	warning about a particular course of action	*Do that again and I'm going to smack you.*
	offer	*Have a banana.*

Declarative clauses functioning as questions 410a

A declarative clause may function in context as a question. Although these are less frequent than interrogative questions, a common type of declarative question is when a speaker checks an assumption or inference drawn from the ongoing conversation. Initial *so* and/or final *then* are common in such questions:

> [speaker A is recounting how an elderly relative has found a good place to live in her old age]
> A: *It's a little terraced house. And sort of very old fashioned but spotlessly clean and very cosy.*
> B: *Oh well.*
> A: *New kitchen new what not.*
> B: *Yeah.*
> A: *And a thousand and something a month.*
> B: *Yeah.* ***So you're pleased****?*
> A: *Oh I'm relieved. Yes. Yes.*
>
> A: ***So you had a good day at work then****?*
> B: *Yes it was all right.*

The declarative question may also be used as a comprehension check:

> [speaker A is on the phone to a printing company to check on the progress of a print job]
> A: *I'm ringing just to see if everything was okay with the job when Dave got it opened up and printing out and everything.*
> B: *Ah. No, he said this morning there were some fonts missing, Chris.*
> A: ***There were some fonts missing****?*
> B: *Yes.*

··❖ **430 Declarative questions** on the intonation of declarative questions

Modal verbs and interrogative clauses as directives 410b

Because the bare imperative is considered extremely forceful and in many cases impolite in English, many directive speech acts (commands, instructions, requests, etc.) involve interrogative clauses and modal verbs:

> ***Will you*** *look at your handouts, now, please.*
>
> ***Can you*** *shut that door?*

These will be dealt with more fully in **412–413**.

Interrogative clauses as exclamations 410c

Occasionally, clauses with affirmative or negative interrogative structure can also be used as exclamations:

> [speaker is recounting a long and problematic journey]
> *Oh God,* ***was I*** *exhausted by the time I got home!*

[looking at a small child]
Gosh! ***Hasn't she grown****!*

*Sometimes life played cruel tricks … **Didn't it just**!*

Imperative clauses as offers and invitations 410d

Friendly offers and invitations, which are commissive speech acts (→ **417–419**), often occur in the imperative form:

A: ***Have** another drink*.
B: *Oh, no thanks, I've had enough thanks.*

A: ***Come** and see us some time if you're in the area.*
B: *Mm, yeah, that'd be nice. I will.*

MODAL EXPRESSIONS AND SPEECH ACTS 411

When modal expressions concerned with necessity, obligation, permission, etc. (→ **377–407 Modality**) are used in declarative and interrogative clauses, they often function as directives (realising speech acts such as commanding, instructing, suggesting, advising, warning, requesting) and commissives (promising, offering, inviting).

The modal verbs *can/could*, *will/would*, *shall/should*, *may/might*, *must*, *ought to* are used frequently in this way:

[swimming instructor to learner]
*You **shouldn't** be looking at me Joseph, you **should** be looking out of the window.*
(*should* is heard as a directive: the swimmer must do what the instructor says)

***Could** you just hang on a second, Joan?*
(*could* is heard as a directive; Joan can hardly refuse to do what the speaker asks)

*Here, I**'ll** carry that for you.*
(*'ll* is heard as an offer)

*We**'ll** get it done for you by Friday, no problem.*
(*'ll* is heard as a promise)

It is not just which modal verb is used but which clause type it occurs in that affects the speech act being performed. In the subsequent sections on modal verbs (**412–420**), declarative and interrogative uses are distinguished as the speech acts they signal may vary.

Each type of speech act is described in terms of its modal verb choices and its occurrence in declarative and interrogative clauses.

MODALITY AND DIRECTIVES (COMMANDS, REQUESTS, ADVICE) 412

Directives are speech acts where the speaker intends the listener to act in a particular way.

In sections **413–416**, we divide directives into the more direct type (commands, instructions) on the one hand and the more indirect type (warnings, requests, advice, suggestions, permissions) on the other hand, and we look at the way modal verbs are used to realise such acts.

COMMANDS, INSTRUCTIONS 413

Commands and instructions are speech acts which are intended to make the receiver act in a particular way. The person who performs the speech act usually needs to have authority to issue the command or instruction for the act to be recognised by the receiver.

Declaratives with *can* 413a

Declarative structures with *can* are occasionally used in polite commands and instructions:

[in the kitchen, to a guest holding a used plate]
***You can** just leave that on the draining board. I'll wash it later.*
(note the inclusion of softener *just*)

[travel agent (A) issuing tickets to a customer (B)]
A: *That's lovely. I've actually debited your credit card.*
B: *Mm mm.*
A: *The price of it is one twenty four by two, and sixty two pounds for the little boy. So in total that's three hundred and ten pounds. And it's been debited as a telephone order. **If you can** just keep your receipt and check it against your statement.*
B: *Okay.*
(note the non-conditional polite use of *if*, which further softens the instruction)

Declaratives with *must* 413b

Must occurs in commands and instructions in declarative clauses:

[teacher (A) to class]
A: ***You must** be clear of what the right answer is. Because you're gonna mark some of these answers.*
B: *Do we write the answers in the book sir?*
A: *Yeah you can put your answer in the book.*

> [instructions to sales personnel at a training session]
> *This part of the selling process is directed towards finding out about your client and completing the client questionnaire. With all clients* ***you must*** *attempt to complete all relevant areas of the questionnaire. This includes gathering hard facts, date of birth, marital status, dependants, hobbies and so on.*

> [university tutor to student, discussing how long she will have to study to get her PhD]
> *I think* ***you must*** *aim for three years.*
> (note the softener *I think*)

✪ *Must* in directives is very strong in English, and should be used with care, especially in contexts such as suggesting and advising. It is normally only used in directives by people in positions of power and authority, and even then may be softened (e.g. the university tutor's use of *I think* in the example above).

Declaratives with *will* and *shall* 413c

Declaratives with *will* occur in commands in very formal styles, but are rare in everyday conversation:

> *'You can't come in here. Who asked you in?* ***You will*** *please leave, this minute.' We protested, naturally, …*

Declaratives with *shall* occur in very formal contexts, and in archaic, literary styles to express commands:

> *'Arthur, you must repent!' cried I, in a frenzy of desperation, throwing my arms around him and burying my face in his bosom. '****You shall*** *say you are sorry for what you have done!'*
> *'Well, well, I am.'*

> *There Fanny,* ***you shall*** *carry that parcel for me – take great care of it – do not let it fall; it is a cream cheese, just like the excellent one we had at dinner.*

You're going to and *would you like to* 413d

Declarative form *you're going to/gonna* and interrogative form *would you like to* also occasionally occur as commands:

> [swimming instructor to learners]
> *Legs nice and straight. No knees popping out of the water. And* ***you're gonna*** *look at that window for me. I don't want anybody looking at me. Or here. You're looking up. Right. Are you ready, crocodiles? Off you go.*

> [teacher to student]
> ***Would you like to*** *tell the rest of the class your own definition of what a tower block is?*

Interrogatives with *can*, *could*, *will* and *would* 413e

One way to make a directive softer or more polite is to use an interrogative structure with *can*, *could*, *will* or *would* rather than an imperative. Such interrogatives are very frequent, and even people in power and authority (e.g. superiors at the workplace) regularly soften commands and instructions in this way.

In general, *will* is heard as most direct, with *can*, *could* and *would* being heard as progressively less direct/more polite:

> [mother to very small child who picks up a knife at the table]
> ***Will you*** *put that down darling. That's dangerous, that is.*
>
> [adult carer to child]
> *Be careful David. No!* ***Can you*** *go and take that somewhere else please because you're going to break something aren't you?*
>
> [chiropractor (A) examining a patient (B)]
> A: *And how have you been Nigel? All right?*
> B: *Well not too bad.*
> A: ***Could you*** *raise your left leg.*
> B: *Ooh.*
> A: *And your right leg.*
> B: *Very difficult.*
> (compare the more direct: Raise your left leg.)
>
> [chairperson at business meeting]
> *Shall we just look at one or two documents that you've already looked at please,* ***would you*** *go to page twenty-nine.*

WARNINGS, ADVICE, SUGGESTIONS 414

Warnings are speech acts in which the speaker states the possible negative outcome of a particular course of action for the listener. The listener may choose to heed or not heed the warning.

Advice is a speech act where the speaker expresses their view of how the listener or others ought best to act to solve a problem or achieve a goal. The listener may choose to heed or not heed the advice.

Suggestions are speech acts where the speaker proposes a course of action for the listener or others, which may include the speaker. The listener may choose to take up or not take up the suggestion.

Declaratives with *can*, *could*, *may* and *might* 414a

Can, could

Can and *could* in declarative clauses can be used to make suggestions. *Could* is generally heard as less forceful than *can* and is much more frequent. Tags often also occur:

> [speakers are discussing possibilities for making framed pictures as craft items to sell]
> A: ***You can** make little designs.*
> B: ***We can** do like little designs to put in them **can't we**.*
> C: *Mm.*
> B: *And sell them off as like individual little pictures.*

> [speakers are discussing the problems of camping out, and the possibility their tents could be stolen while they were away from them; *wanna* represents the informal spoken form of 'want to']
> A: *We don't wanna have to pack them up every time we go out.*
> B: ***We could** stay in a hotel.*
> A: *Mm.*

> [speakers are planning how to organise a set of personal accounts]
> A: *We need a register for deposits.*
> B: ***You could** have four columns. **You could** have 'opening' 'deposit' 'withdrawal' 'closing'.*

Could always is often used in making suggestions in everyday conversation:

> [speakers are discussing the need to have a guide book for a trip they are planning; *Lonely Planet* is a popular series of guide books]
> A: *So we need to look at if there's a sort of basic thing about different regions.*
> B: *Most probably get this from the libraries. You should have that in your Birmingham library. We've got it in Manchester.*
> A: *Mm. Yeah. I'll go and get it out tomorrow.*
> B: *Or **you could always** get Lonely Planet, Japan.*
> A: *Yeah. Buy it.*
> B: *Yeah you could.*

May

May is used in advice-giving and suggestions, most typically in the formulaic expressions *may as well* (⁘ **414e**), *may (well) find (that)*, *may want/wish to*:

> *Travellers intending to fly from Canada are likely to find that, with less competition on these routes … fares are somewhat higher than they are for flights wholly within the US. **You may well find that** it's worth the effort to get to a US city first, and fly on to California from there.*

> [advice to language teachers in a teaching manual]
> *Give students ten minutes or so to prepare and practise their conversations. Don't let them make them too long. If they come up with amusing dialogues, **you may want** to let them perform for the class.*

Might

Might is also used in advice and suggestions, particularly in the routine expression *you might want to*:

[during a university linguistics class, where students are analysing English sentences; B is the tutor]
A: *Erm, there's a difficult sentence here.*
B: *I think there's an argument for thinking that's part of the verb phrase. But* ***you might*** *look at that.*

[interviewer (A), recording an interview, addressing interviewee (B)]
A: ***You might want to*** *move your chair a little bit closer.*
B: *Right.*

[advising an applicant for an educational course]
A: *The only other person I think that* ***you might want to*** *come and talk to is Patricia Matthews. Now Patricia Matthews is our finance officer. So she deals with anything to do with grants or awards. And* ***you might want to*** *come and talk to her about what are realistic options in terms of funding this course.*
B: *Right.*
A: *And it's just a question of ringing the college, making an appointment and coming to talk to Margaret.*
B: *Right.*

Negative interrogatives with *can* and *could* 414b

Can't/can not and *couldn't/could not* often occur in suggestions and advice-giving:

[talking about a houseplant with glossy leaves]
A: *A nightmare to clean, because the leaves will fall off. They're cactuses, those ones. Like, where you get all the dust.*
B: ***Can't you*** *get some sprays like anti-dust sprays?*
A: *Oh yeah I could do.*
B: *Or* ***can't you*** *just spray it with water?*

[A is complaining about travel arrangements made on his behalf by his employer; *BA* means the airline, British Airways]
A: *Stupid really. I'd rather go economy class on BA. Get there faster.*
B: *Yeah. Well did you not say that to them?* ***Can you not*** *organise your own travel a bit?*
A: *Not to get there, because I said about coming back that I'd go any way possible. Economy class or anything. But they wouldn't let me. So now I still have to come back on a different flight than Tom. First class.*

[A notices how B's jumper has become prematurely faded]
A: *I've just noticed. Do you know what's happened to your jumper? Have you seen it?*
B: *That always happens to my jumpers.*
A: *That's dreadful though.* ***Could you not*** *send it back?*
B: *Send it back.*
A: *Yeah. Brand new isn't it?*
B: *I've only washed it once.*
A: *I'd send it back.*
B: *Would you?*
A: *Mm.*
B: *Would you really?*
A: *Mm. That shouldn't happen for years.*

Declaratives with *must* 414c

Must occurs in warnings and strong advice-giving contexts:

[A is a health visitor; speaker B has been unwell]
A: *Oh how are you? Better?*
B: *A bit better than, what was it? Last week.*
A: *Yes but you seem to be losing weight rapidly.*
B: *Well, I can only eat certain things.*
A: *I mean* ***you must*** *take care.*

A: *I can give you some oven cleaner. But the problem with it is* ***you must*** *make sure you get all of it off. And* ***they mustn't*** *use it while you're doing it because it's very strong. Don't get it on your hands either. It's really very very strong. And* ***you must*** *make sure it all washes off before they use it again.*
B: *Okay.*

Must is considerably stronger and more forceful than *should* or *could* in advice-giving contexts and is less frequent in everyday conversational contexts.

Declaratives with *should* 414d

Declaratives with *should* occur in warnings, advice and suggestions:

A: *You know* ***you should*** *never open one of these like that don't you?*
B: *Mm.*
A: *Cos someone lost their eye.*
B: *Mm.*
A: *It never ever occurred to me till I saw that programme about the number of people who've lost eyes and things.*

[speaker A is advising an out-of-work artist (B) on the best place to look for jobs]
A: *But London, I think* ***you should*** *try London*.
B: *Mm. I think you're probably right.*
A: *London's definitely the place.*
B: *I think though they would understand what I'm trying to do much more.*
A: *Mm.*

[speakers are disturbed by a beeping noise]
A: *It's the smoke alarm that's beeping.* ***We should*** *put a new battery in*.
B: *Yeah.*

[speakers are discussing a woman who has problems with her ex-partner, who keeps returning to her home despite having been told never to come back]
A: *Maybe* ***she should*** *double lock the doors*.
B: *Yeah.*

Declaratives with *may as well* and *might (just) as well* 414e

May as well and *might (just) as well* are commonly used for making suggestions in everyday conversation. *Might (just) as well* is more frequent. It is used to suggest what the speaker considers the easiest/most logical course of action:

[speaker A is about to go to the counter in a café to buy a glass of orange juice for B]
A: *Do you want ice?*
B: *Er, no I'm fine.*
A: *You sure.*
B: *Yep. That's grand.*
A: *I'm quite happy to go. I'll take that.* ***I may as well*** *take the tray back anyway.*

[speakers are discussing whether to rent a video for home viewing]
A: *They're about three quid a day to rent though, aren't they?*
B: *Mm, that's true. Yeah.*
A: ***We might as well*** *go to the cinema*.

A: ***You might as well*** *fill all the details you've got down on that front page*.
B: *Mm.*

Declaratives with *ought to* 414f

Many occurrences of *ought to* in everyday conversation are associated with suggestions and advice:

A: *Er, I think* ***we ought to*** *turn these radiators down you know.*
B: *Do you?*
C: *It is roasting hot in here isn't it.*
A: *Yeah.*

[speaker is recounting difficulties with the Health Service, concerning appointments for treatment that were repeatedly cancelled]
A: *They were amazed how many times it was cancelled and how many times I got there and didn't have physiotherapy as well.*
B: *Mm. And was there anybody there that you felt you could've spoken to?*
A: *No because I'm not the kind of person that really complains. And it was just starting to get more and more and I was getting more and more annoyed and each time I came back on the ambulance the ambulance staff were saying, 'Well this isn't good enough, **you ought to** complain.' I said, 'I just don't like complaining.'*

You want to 414g

You want to is used in informal contexts to make suggestions and to give advice:

[speaker A is complaining about poor sound-proofing in their terraced house]
A: *I realise that they can hear everything through that wall.*
B: *Oh dear.*
A: *Cos I heard Michael cough once and it was like he was sitting next to me and I thought, 'Oh my God, I mean, what can he hear?'*
B: ***You want to** sound-proof your room with egg boxes.*
A: *Well. No. You live in a terrace. It's a hazard of life isn't it?*
B: *Yeah. Yeah. That's true.*

(Note also the use of *want* following *may* and *might*, ⇢ **414a** above)

⇢ also **421a** ***What about, what if, how about***

A–Z **75** ***Want***

Had better 414h

Had better (not) is used to give warnings and strong advice:

A: ***You'd better** move your car Pete cos I'm sure somebody's gonna nip in and steal that trailer. They're terrible thieves of trailers.*
B: *Oh right.*

[*lights* here refers to car headlights]
*You've left your lights on. **You'd better** go and turn them off.*

A: ***You'd better** get an early night if you're going to be up early.*
B: *Mm.*

***You'd better not** post that letter.*

✪ *Had better* is quite a strong expression, used when the speaker thinks there will be negative consequences if the desired action is not taken; it is not appropriate when making ordinary suggestions or recommendations:

I recommend you go to the Tokyo Tower in Shibaura. If you go to the top of the tower you will see a view of most of Tokyo. At night go to Aoyama where you can find many nice restaurants.
(~~At night you'd better go to Aoyama where you can find many nice restaurants~~.)

PERMISSIONS, PROHIBITIONS 415

Permissions are concerned with requesting and granting freedom for someone to act in a particular way.

Prohibitions deny freedom of action.

Declaratives with *can* and *may* 415a

Declaratives with *can* and *may* are used to give permission. *May* is more formal than *can*, and is rare in everyday conversation for giving permission:

*She asked if she could come and stay so I said 'Of course **you can**.'*

*Mum says **you can** eat as much fruit as you want.*

*You acknowledge that the material and content contained within the Website and the Services is for your personal use only and that **you may** download such material and content onto only one computer hard drive for such purpose.*

Interrogatives with *can*, *could*, *may* and *might* 415b

Can, *could*, *may* and *might* are all used to ask for permission to do something.

Can I is the least formal and most direct, *could I* is more formal and less direct, and *may I* is the most formal and least direct of the three. *May I* to ask permission is infrequent in informal conversation. *Might I* is very formal and rare:

A: *I haven't read the complete thing at all. I've just I've kind of flicked through it and read bits and pieces.*
B: [reads the title] *'The Teaching of Languages in Linguistics'. **Can I** borrow it for a week or so? And then I'll give it back to you then.*
A: *Yeah. Sure. Absolutely.*

A: ***Could we** have this room for the next hour?*
B: *Yes, you can. Don't forget to lock it though when you've finished.*
(note the positive reply: 'Yes, you can', not 'Yes, you could', which would suggest hesitation, or perhaps that there is a problem: 'Yes you could, but it may be too small for you')

*She glanced around the kitchen, reluctant to move farther into the apartment, coming up with one more item of business to delay it a few minutes. '**May I** use your phone, Christopher? I'd like to call the shop.'*
'Sure.'

*'**Might I** speak to Mrs Lutterworth?' said Willow.*
'I am not sure that she's in. Who is it who wants her?'
'My name is Woodruffe, Cressida Woodruffe. I'm a writer and I'm doing some research for a novel about an architect.'

Negative forms of *can*, *must* and *may* in prohibitions 415c

Prohibiting or forbidding something may be realised with *can't*, *mustn't* or (more formally) *may not*:

> [speaker A is talking about learning how to use a computer]
> A: *I'm finding it fascinating, cos, like I say, I knew nothing about computers. I've played on games consoles but that's it. I knew nothing about it. But of course, these computers, they tell you everything, you know, they're totally idiot-proof. You know, 'No,* ***you can't*** *do that! Press something else!' you know. So I like that. You see it's teaching me as I'm going along.*
> B: *Mm.*

> The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign
> [friends chatting]
> A: *Everybody says every time you pass the railwaymen on the track+*
> B: *They're not doing anything.*
> A: *+they're standing there.*
> B: *Right.*
> A: *Because when the train is passing* ***they can't*** *be doing anything.*
> C: *They can't, no. That's right. Yeah.*
> A: *Cos the law says they've got to stand in the tunnel.*
> D: *But everyone always says 'looking at them they never do any work. Look at them all chatting'.* [laughs]
> A: ***You mustn't*** *be within eight foot of the train.*
> B: *Ah.*

> [in the classroom: teacher (A) and young pupils]
> A: *Now, this is what you can do if you want to. You may do some maths if you want to. You may do your language work if you want to. If you don't want to do either of those things and you are keen on writing a story, you may write a story.*
> B: *Miss, I've written a story.*
> A: *Right.* [to another pupil] *No* ***you may not*** *draw a picture. This has got to do with work.*

Negative forms of *shall* and *will* in prohibitions 415d

Shall not occurs in very formal/literary contexts in acts of forbidding or prohibition. It is rare in such acts:

> *'**He shall** not go,' she said slowly, one word at a time. 'Do you hear me? Cromwell is not going to the front.'*
> *'He has to. He is an officer of the King, he must do as he is ordered.'*

Will not is also very formal. It is more frequent than *shall not*:

> *Then the judge folded his arms and began to speak rapidly, staring down at Frank. 'I hereby grant the exclusion order, in the name of Frank Little and Eleanor Little. You will give an undertaking to leave the jurisdiction within seventy-two hours.* ***You will not*** *return to the jurisdiction for a period of three months. Thereafter* ***you will not*** *return to the jurisdiction without prior notification to the Ministerio del Interior in writing. You will surrender your visa to the clerk of the court immediately.* ***You will not*** *approach any embassy, consulate or honorary consulate of the Popular Republic of Nicaragua for the purpose of obtaining a visa for a period of three months.'*

Would you mind and *do you mind* 415e

Would you mind and *do you mind* are most commonly followed by *if* when permission is being requested. With *would you mind* the tense in the *if*-clause may be past (more formal) or present (more informal):

> A: ***Do you mind if*** *I take my shoes off?*
> B: *No.*
>
> ***Would you mind if*** *one of our representatives come**s** and give**s** you a free demonstration?*
>
> [referring to the tape-recorder being used to record the conversation]
> ***Would you mind if*** *I turn**ed** this off just for a few minutes?*

Note that the appropriate reply to give permission is *no*, not *yes*. *Mind* means 'object', so saying *no* means 'I do not object to what you wish to do'.

> A: *Do you mind if I sit here?*
> B: ***No**, **not at all**. Please do.*

Less frequently, an object pronoun or noun phrase and a verb in the *-ing* form may follow *mind*:

> ***Would you mind*** *us com**ing** too?*
>
> ***Do you mind*** *me sitt**ing** in on the interview?*
>
> ***Do you mind*** *this towel be**ing** used?*

In formal contexts, a possessive pronoun may be used instead of an object pronoun:

> *'**Do you mind** my smok**ing**?' he asked. 'Oh, not at all, sir.'*

The *do*-construction with object pronoun and *-ing* form may be used to check that something is permitted or acceptable which is already happening or has already happened:

> ***Do you mind me*** *com**ing** round?*
> (could be spoken when the person is already at the place referred to)

Turn-taking and asking for permission to speak 415f

A very frequent context for asking for permission or leave to do something in conversation is connected with turn-taking (asking if one can speak, asking a question, mentioning something, commenting on something, etc.). Very often, asking 'permission' to speak is a mere formality and the speaker speaks anyway. The request for leave to speak simply acts as a preface or softener to the taking of the turn by the speaker, or an apology for interrupting, etc. This is particularly so in more formal contexts such as meetings and interviews. *Can, could, may* and *might* often occur in these contexts:

[journalists' production meeting]
A: *Erm **can I** ask a question. With Susan's package is it possible to have a news clip as well? Cos it's in the morning.*
B: *Okay. Yeah. Yeah. Don't see why not. Yeah.*
A: *Lovely.*
B: *Okay.*

[formal meeting]
A: *I think it would have to be some time this week.*
B: *Yes. Right.*
C: *Chairman, **could I** also mention that the county council has a conference centre down in Redwood, which I think is probably bigger than this particular room, and may well also have catering facilities.*

[final question in a semi-formal research interview]
A: *And erm **may I** ask who lives in the house with you?*
B: *Yes. My husband and my youngest son.*
A: *Right. Right. Thank you. Right.*
B: *So my other sons are all away in various parts of the country.*
A: *Right. Well thank you very much indeed for talking to me about this.*
B: *Pleasure. Pleasure. Yes.*

Might I is also used to ask leave to speak or just as a preface to taking the speaking turn, but it is rare and sounds rather formal or dated:

[speaker B is an elderly speaker]
A: *His mother was a character but … she was not nice. Not nice but she had a strong character.*
B: *Mm. This reminds me.*
A: *Mm?*
B: ***Might I** just say this, darling, 'cos I've just remembered. I'll forget. We have a video of the last programme of the Churchill series which a friend in London very kindly made for us because we were out with her mother and couldn't see it.*
A: *Mm.*

REQUESTS 416

Requests are speech acts where the speaker desires a particular course of action from the listener, but where, unlike commands, the listener has a far greater choice whether to act in the way indicated. Requests and commands occasionally overlap, as a command may be softened by making it seem more like a request.

Interrogatives with *can*, *could*, *will* and *would* 416a

Interrogatives with *can*, *could*, *will* and *would* are very common in requests. *Could* is generally heard as more polite than *can*, and *would* is heard as more polite than *will*:

A: ***Can you*** *do a receipt in the name of Mrs M.A. Peters, please?*
B: *What name?*
A: *Mrs M.A. Peters.*
B: [writes]

[in a car; passenger to driver]
A: ***Can you*** *drop me off at the garage on Long Road?*
B: *Yeah, sure.*

The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign
[on the phone]
A: *Before you move on+*
B: *Yeah?*
A: *+is my watch anywhere in your house?*
B: *Er, I haven't seen it but I haven't really looked for it.*
A: ***Could you*** *have a look?*
B: *What, now?*
A: *Well er where are you speaking?*
B: *In the kitchen.*
A: *Are you on your mobile?*
B: *Yeah.*
A: ***Can you*** *go and see whether it's in those jeans?*
B: *Ah, jeans. Where are they then?*
A: *They're hanging up on the rail.*
B: *Oh okay.*

A: ***Will you*** *get me a glass of water?*
B: *Yeah.*
A: *Thanks.*

[talking of a 'haunted' house]
The thing is, right, this woman had lived there before us called Sue and she lived there for eight years. And she said that the best way to control the ghost was to talk to it and just say 'Look. Look. ***Would you*** *please be quiet, I'm trying to sleep.'*

Negative declaratives with *couldn't* and *wouldn't* 416b

You couldn't and *you wouldn't* occur in polite requests, often followed by an affirmative tag. These forms often suggest a request that is non-routine in the context:

A: *Erm,* ***you couldn't*** *find a copy of 'Hamlet',* ***could you****, Ann?*
B: *Mm?*
A: *Oh sorry. Oh there's one, look. I can see it.*
(compare: 'Could you find a copy …', which would probably be heard as a more routine request)

[speakers are trying to calculate bank interest on a sum of money]
A: *It doesn't tell you how you calculate it.* ***You wouldn't*** *ring Roland and ask?*
B: *Yeah.*

Declaratives with *might* 416c

The declarative use of *might* in requests occurs in formal styles, but is rare in everyday conversation:

> *Tim decided to keep up the pressure. '**You might** tell me what this son of yours is like. I mean, does he look like a Waites? Or does he take after his mother?'*

Would you like to 416d

Would you like to is also used to request someone to do something. It is less forceful than *will you* or *would you*:

> [adult carer to child]
> A: *Have you finished? What did you have in there?*
> B: *Juice.*
> A: *Juice. Not fizzy juice.*
> B: *No.*
> A: *All right darling just leave it there. You're not allowed to leave anything on the table either. There. **Would you like to** go and play with your toys now? Right, you can eat those bits and no more. And then you go and play with your toys.*

Want 416e

Want in the interrogative occurs occasionally in polite directives or requests. It is frequently followed by *just*, which softens the directive:

> [speakers are assembling a piece of flat-pack furniture]
> A: ***Do you want** to **just** bang gently on this side here.*
> B: *There?*
> A: *Yeah.* [B hammers lightly on the furniture] *That's it.*

Would you mind and *do you mind* 416f

Would you mind and *do you mind* are used in polite requests. Most occurrences of *would you mind* in conversation are in requests:

> [A and family are eating on their terrace; B, a guest, arrives]
> A: ***Would you mind** eating out here with us?*
> B: ***No**, good heavens, **no**.*
>
> ***Do you mind** speaking up, cos we can't hear you.*

✪ Note how speaker B answers *no*, not *yes* in the first example. This is the normal, polite answer to requests with *mind* (*to mind* means 'to object', thus: No, I have no objection to, or problem with, your request.). → **415e** above

✪ Note the use of the *-ing* form, not the infinitive:

> ***Would you mind** moving your car?*
> (~~Would you mind to move your car?~~)

A–Z **53 *Mind***

MODALITY AND COMMISSIVES (OFFERS, INVITATIONS, PROMISES) 417

Commissives are speech acts where the speaker commits to a course of action; they are typically associated with offering, inviting, promising, etc.

In sections **418–420**, we look at the way modal verbs are used to realise such acts.

OFFERS 418

Offers are speech acts in which the speaker volunteers to do something beneficial for the listener (or a third party) or give something to the listener (or a third party). The listener may accept or reject the offer. Offers may be offers to do something or offers of physical things (e.g. food, drink).

Declaratives with *can* and *could* 418a

Can and *could* in declarative form may be used to make offers:

A: *Do you know Liverpool Airport at all?*
B: *Never been.*
A: *No?* ***I can** get directions for you. That's not a problem.*
B: *Right.*

A: *I was just wondering if I set my alarm and get up …*
B: ***I could** wake you up at eight if you wanted.*
A: *I was thinking if you were coming in at, like, about half ten or something, you could make sure I was up by then. But I think eight's a little, a bit excessive.*

Interrogatives with *can*, *could* and *may* 418b

Can, *could* and *may* also occur in interrogative form in offers. *Could* is more polite and indirect than *can*, and *may* is the most polite/indirect:

A: ***Can I** get you a cold drink?*
B: *That would be nice, thanks.*

A: *Jim's arriving at six and I'm waiting for a call from Janet.*
B: ***Could one of us** pick him up for you?*
A: *Well, that'd be very kind of you.*
B: *Mm. No problem.*

***May I** get you something? A coffee perhaps?*

Declaratives with *'ll* 418c

Declaratives with *'ll* are commonly used in offers to do something. A tag with *shall I*/*will I* may accompany the offer:

[in a coffee bar, speaker B is about to go to the counter to buy drinks]
A: ***I'll** come and give you a hand, **shall I**?*
B: *Yeah.*

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

A: *Sorry, what was the number?*
B: *You don't know the number?* ***I'll** check it now for you*.
A: *Oh right. Thanks.*

✪ Note the use of *I'll check it now for you*, not ~~*I check it now for you*~~. The present simple form is not used to offer to do something.

The contraction *I'll/we'll* is different from *I will/we will* or *I shall/we shall*. The full forms with *will* and *shall* are not normally used to make offers. They usually express a declaration or decision that the speaker has decided or is determined or is promising to do something, and are more common in rather formal contexts:

I fear I am too old for you, but believe me ***I will** take more care of you than would many a man of your own age.* ***I will** protect and cherish you with all my strength –* ***I will** indeed!*

***I shall** introduce her, of course, very particularly to my brother and sister when they come to us. I am sure they will like her extremely.*

Offers involving a third party may be made using *'ll* (or the full form *will*):

[speaker B is carrying a heavy suitcase]
A: ***Nick'll** carry that for you.*
B: *Oh thanks.*

Interrogatives with *shall* and *will* 418d

Shall I is frequently used when the speaker is offering to do something or suggesting a course of action involving the speaker:

A: ***Shall I** make you a drink, would you like a tea or coffee?*
B: *Erm, black coffee please.*
A: *Black coffee.*
B: *No milk no sugar. That'd be wonderful.*
A: *Right.*

[adult to children]
A: *All right. Let's read a story. How should we do it?* ***Shall I** sit in the middle of you? Yeah?* ***Shall I** sit in between you so you can both look at the story together? Is that all right?* ***How about if I** sit in between you?*
B: *Mm.*
(note here also: *How about if* …, which is also used for making suggestions. → **421a *What about, what if, how about*** below)

***Shall we** eat out tonight?*

Will I is used in several British and Irish English dialects (ones where *shall* is rarely used, e.g. Scottish, Welsh) in offers to do something:

[friends together in an informal group]
A: ***Will I** take a group photograph?*
B: *No. It won't come out.* [laughter]
A: *Oh, I think I should yeah.*
C: *Yeah.*

Do you want, *will you have* and *would you like* 418e

Do you want, *will you have* and *would you like* are all used to offer physical things, especially food and drink. *Will you have* is more polite than *do you want*, and *would you like is* the most polite:

A: *Jake, **do you want** some fruit or anything now? Have some fruit, have a banana or a tangerine or something. Jake, what **would you like**? Apple? **Would you like** a banana?*
B: *Yes please.*

A: ***Would you like** some soup?*
B: *Mm, please.*

A: ***Will you have** a cup of coffee?*
B: *No thanks, no I'm alright.*

Would you like to can also be used in a way which involves the speaker more directly in an offer to do something, by adding a first person pronoun:

[customer (A) and travel agent (B)]
A: *Is there the child's discount for that one?*
B: ***Would you like me to** check on a full costing for you now?*
A: *Yes please.*
(compare: Shall I check on a full costing?/Would you like a full costing?)

Negative *don't you want*, *wouldn't you like* and *won't you have* 418f

The negative forms, *don't you want*, *wouldn't you like* and *won't you have* also occur in the context of offering things, but far less frequently than their affirmative forms. They occur mostly when the speaker thinks the listener does not want something or may be holding back (perhaps out of politeness) from accepting something:

[at the dinner table; speaker A is the hostess, B is a guest]
A: *Want some water? **Don't you want** any bread?*
B: *No, thanks.*

Won't you have also occurs in more formal contexts to make polite offers, again particularly in contexts of food and drink:

*An hour later, one of the veterans brought in a simmering samovar and a teapot. 'Maksim Maksimych,' I called from the window, '**won't you have** some tea?'*
'Thanks, I don't want any particularly'.

INVITATIONS 419

Invitations are concerned with offering someone an opportunity to do or share something (usually pleasurable) with the speaker. The listener may accept or reject the invitation.

Would you like to 419a

Would you like to is often used to give invitations:

> *Katrina looked at him. 'I've got the tickets. You've met Gloria and Sophie, they're coming.* ***Would you like to*** *come too?' The opera? He had never been. Opera had never appealed to him.*
>
> A: ***Would you like to*** *come to dinner on Friday night?*
> B: *Oh, I'd love to, yeah.*
> (note the typical polite/friendly reply with *love to*)

Do you want to 419b

Do you want to is also used for invitations. It is less formal than *would you like to*:

> [A and B are discussing plays which are on at London theatres; '*Antony and Cleopatra*' is a play by Shakespeare]
> A: *And when's 'Antony and Cleopatra'? Monday?*
> B: *We're going Monday.*
> A: *Excellent.*
> B: ***Do you want to*** *come?*
> A: *I can't cos of work.*

You must and *you'll have to* 419c

You must and *you'll have to* are often used to give non-specific invitations:

> A: *And* ***you must*** *come down to Barr at some stage or another.*
> B: *It would be nice actually. I'd like to.*
> A: *You know, for a weekend.*
> B: *It would be good.*
> A: *Or even a day or two.*
> B: *Yeah. Yeah. I might do that.*
> A: *You know. You should.*
> B: *Yeah.*
> A: *Just give me a ring, cos I won't mind.*
> B: *Yeah.*
> A: *Go out for dinner or something as well.*
> B: *Perfect. That's great. Yeah.*
> (note the typical friendly, positive reply to a non-specific invitation: *it would be nice/good*)
>
> A: ***You'll have to*** *come round for a coffee.*
> B: *Yeah.*

PROMISES, UNDERTAKINGS 420

Promises and undertakings are concerned with committing oneself to a particular course of action which the listener usually believes will happen. If the course of action is not followed, it will constitute a breaking of the promise.

Will, *shall* and *'ll* 420a

Promises and undertakings are most commonly realised by *'ll* and *will*:

*Can you lend me twenty pounds? **I'll** pay you back when I get to the bank.*

[speakers are deciding what to give family members as birthday presents]
A: *I haven't thought of anything for Raymond actually.*
B: *He's a bit complicated.*
A: ***I'll** give him fifty pounds towards his computer.*

*So see you Thursday. Don't worry, I **will** be there.*

Very rarely, *shall* occurs with *you*, but only in contexts such as promises and warnings, and only in very formal contexts:

*'When the war's over, **you shall** have clean water,' Esther promised.*

✪ The present simple form is not used to make promises and undertakings. This includes clauses which are the object of speech act verbs such as *guarantee*, *promise*, *undertake*:

*I**'ll** give you a call about seven o'clock.*
(~~I give you a call about seven o'clock.~~)

[teacher in a computer class addressing pupils]
*Apologies to those of you working on spreadsheets. I haven't managed to mark any of your work as yet but **I promise I'll** have it back to you by next week.*
(~~I promise I have it back to you by next week.~~)

The speech act verbs (*guarantee*, *promise*, etc.) are in the present simple in such contexts.

NON-MODAL EXPRESSIONS AND SPEECH ACTS 421

What about, *what if*, *how about* 421a

What about, *what if* and *how about* may all be used to make suggestions or give advice or make offers. They are common in everyday conversation:

*A lot of people went to the meeting and said, 'Why don't you, if you're going to have all these extra concerts and it's going to allow seven more thousand people into the ground, **what about** putting double glazing in cos of the noise?' And they wouldn't.*
(suggestion)

[deciding where to place the cooker in a new kitchen]
A: *It's going to become a little bit dangerous here.*
B: [indicating a different place] *Yeah well **what if** we had it here?*
A: *Er, well, yeah.*
(suggestion)

[house guest to host just before dinner]
A: ***What if*** *I set the table?*
B: *Oh, thanks, yes, that'd be nice.*
(offer)

[informal student meeting: deciding times to meet again]
A: *I'm available at eleven but if it goes on past, like, twelve, I've got a tutorial at twelve so er …*
B: *No it wouldn't go past twelve.*
A: *Well that's alright then.*
B: *Right.* ***How about*** *Thursday at twelve then?*
C: *We've got a class then.*
D: *Yeah everyone's got …*
B: *Anybody want to do Thursday at nine?*
(suggestion)

In informal contexts, *how's about* occurs as an alternative to *how about*:

A: *I'll fit it around your schedule.*
B: *Oh that's very kind of you.*
A: *Erm* ***how's about*** *kind of half eight-ish?*
B: *Yeah.*
A: *Yeah.*

All three expressions realise other important functions too. *How about* (and to a lesser extent *what about*) is frequently used to invite someone to speak or comment, or to reciprocate a speaking turn. They are also used to raise new topics of conversation or to shift the topic to a different sub-topic:

A: *It was very interesting doing it.*
B: *It was all right was it. Yeah. Yeah. How did everybody else feel?* ***Lucy, how about*** *you?*
C: *Er, well, the same really.*

A: *Are you Norwich born and bred?*
B: *Yeah I am.* ***What about*** *you? Where were you born?*
A: *No I'm from Kent but I've lived in Wales.*

A: *I think there should be stronger government regulations to make the industry reduce the risks to the public because they are admitting there are risks.*
B: *Right.*
A: *So there should be some. That's my point of view.*
B: *But* ***how about*** *the argument that industry knows its operations better than anyone else?*

What if is also used to hypothesise or to imagine possible situations:

> [friends chatting, dreaming of winning the national lottery]
> A: *What do you think is a reasonable amount that you'd like to win?*
> B: *A couple of million.*
> C: *Enough to do you till you die.* [laughs]
> A: *Planning ahead are we?* [laughs]
> B: *Well that's a good amount* [laughs] *isn't it.*
> A: *Mm.*
> B: *But* ***what if*** *you have a short life?*
> C: *Then you write a big will.* [laughs]

Why don't and *why not* 421b

Why don't

Most occurrences of *why don't* are concerned with making suggestions. Other less frequent uses include asking for reasons and issuing invitations and directives:

> [friends talking about a university course which has a language-learning requirement; *TEFL* here means a qualification in teaching English as a foreign language]
> A: *If I do it over two years, then I'll have to learn Russian. I'll have to do Russian.*
> B: *You know, you did the English stuff,* ***why don't you*** *go and teach English in Russia. I've seen loads of jobs in the newspaper and some of them you don't need TEFL for.*
> A: *Yeah. I could do.*
> (suggestion)

> The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next utterance.
> [discussing the best time to go away for a holiday]
> A: *We would have that cottage which was right on the beach. So I mean we were thinking of going next weekend but it's+*
> B: *Really?*
> A: *+it's just the problem of this work thing. He goes to Brazil next Tuesday. So if I took off like the Monday, Tuesday, I wouldn't know what was going on.*
> B: *Well* ***why don't you*** *wait until February or March.*
> A: *Well, we're waiting now till Barney gets back cos he rang us the other day. He's coming back.*
> B: *Oh Barney.*
> A: *Yeah he's coming back for just a few weeks.*
> B: *Oh great.*
> (suggestion)

[speaker A is a university academic; B is an ex-student who is looking for occasional work]
A: *I could give you jobs to do in the library for me and you could save me hours and hours of work.*
B: *I'd really like to be still doing stuff like that actually. Cos I really miss that.*
A: *Well **why don't you** come up some time.*
B: *Well I will, yes.*
C: *That's a marvellous idea.*
B: *Yeah.*
A: *Come up in the spring when it's at its loveliest.*
(invitation)

***Why don't you** just shut up for a moment and listen to me!*
(directive)

Why don't in making suggestions is also followed frequently by *I* and *we*, and, less frequently, by references to third parties:

***Why don't I** make us a nice cup of tea. We'll all feel better then.*

A: *Yeah. Well, look, use your lunch hour to find your way around.*
B: *By the time I've found my way around the place I'll be starving and my lunch hour will be gone.*
A: *Well **why don't I** make you lunch then. I'll make you some sandwiches then.*
B: *We could use that meat.*
A: *Yeah.*
B: *Yeah.*

A: *So I said to Sarah **why don't we** come to New York with you for your first week?*
B: *Sounds good.*
A: *I think that's what we're going to do.*
B: *Mm. Oh well that'll be all right won't it?*
A: *Yeah.*

[speaking on the phone]
*You'd think it'd be cheaper to get a little van. … Oh. … Well wouldn't it be worth suggesting to Gary at some stage **why don't they** get a small van* so *… Oh right. Mm still seems stupid.*

Why not

Why not is also used to make suggestions. It differs from *why don't you* in that the suggestion is often a more general one, not necessarily directly aimed at the listener. It is common in advertising and promotional contexts, where the addressee is non-specific:

[local radio programme: promoting educational training courses]
*If this is you and you'd like to get back into education and get on a course **why not** go along to Fast Forward. They can help you with your training needs your child care and your travel and they can also provide the support you need if you're not confident about going back to learning.*

[public meeting to decide how best to run a local theatre and to encourage more people to go to it]
A: *Here's a simple suggestion.* ***Why don't you*** *move the facilities from the stage door club down to the foyer bar so that a load of people can go in there. You'd change the general atmosphere of the foyer bar.*
B: *Yeah. Simple. Ambience.*
A: *I think there's nothing, Chairman, that £150,000 wouldn't do.*
B: *Well,* ***why not*** *go outside for funding? So, marketing exercise once again.*

Although *why don't you* can be used to ask a question, *why not* is not normally used to ask a question:

[B has been talking about cooking and how he never uses salt]
A: ***Why don't you*** *use salt?*
B: *Well, they say it's bad for your heart.*
(a genuine question as to why B chooses not to use salt)

Why not *use salt?*
(normally heard as a suggestion)

SPEECH ACT VERBS (*AGREE*, *INSIST*, *PROMISE*) 422

Speech act verbs are verbs which a speaker can use to explicitly label a speech act. These include verbs such as *advise*, *allow*, *apologise*, *ask*, *demand*, *deny*, *(dis)agree*, *forbid*, *insist*, *object*, *order*, *permit*, *predict*, *promise*, *state*, *suggest*.

Performative verbs 422a

When these verbs are used to perform the speech act (i.e. in their performative function), they occur with a first person subject and present simple tense form:

I ***name*** *this ship 'Fearless'.*
(~~I am naming this ship 'Fearless'.~~)

A: *You're a bit late.*
B: *I* ***apologise****.*

Many of the common functions associated with the modal verbs can also be realised by explicit use of speech act verbs. Speech act verbs are more frequent in formal contexts:

*'Just what are you going to do about this?' Pearson yelled at them. '****I demand*** *you arrest them all.'*
(compare: Arrest them all!/You must arrest them all.)

[speakers are cleaning out a cupboard]
A: *Er,* ***I suggest*** *we take everything out and just look at it, decide whether we want it. And if we really don't want it then just chuck it if we don't know.*
B: *Okay. But we've got a bit of a space problem.*
A: *That's true.*
(compare: We could/should take everything out./How/what about taking/what if we take everything out.)

> [meringues are a type of sweet confectionery]
> *Now who's for more tea? **I insist** on you sampling some of Bessie's meringues.*
> (compare: You must sample some of Bessie's meringues.)
>
> *As soon as she comes back, **I promise** I'll ask her.*
> (compare: As soon as she comes back, I'll ask her.)

A speech act verb may not necessarily correspond one-to-one with the speech act being performed. For example, verbs such as *suggest* and *promise* can be used to issue directives. The exact interpretation depends on context:

> ***I promise** you you'll regret it later if you don't study now.*
> (I warn you that you'll regret it)

Speech act verbs and politeness 422b

In general, in conversation, in situations where threats to the listener's dignity and self-esteem are high, speakers avoid explicit labelling of speech acts. Verbs such as *disagree, forbid, refuse, reproach, accuse* in unmodified form are rare as performative speech act verbs; most typically they occur to report speech acts, or are softened and modified in some way. For instance, the clause *I disagree with you* only occurs once (in a formal discussion at a meeting) in a 15-million-word sample of spoken English.

Examples with *disagree* show how speakers are careful to avoid direct challenges to the listener's face. Many utterances express disagreement with a non-present third party, or with a proposition or argument, thereby making the act of disagreement more impersonal. Others downtone or hedge the disagreement:

> ***I would disagree** a huge amount.*
> (use of modal verb as hedge)
>
> *Well I completely **disagree with that**.*
> (disagreeing with an idea or proposition rather than with the speaker)
>
> *But what I **disagree with**, **well to a degree**, is that at school they don't teach them the basics any more.*
> (downtoning the disagreement)
>
> ***I, I would have to, I'd have to disagree** with my colleague here.*
> (modal verb hedge plus suggestion of the act not being the speaker's preferred response)
>
> ***I hate to disagree** with you, Peter.*
> (expressing reluctance at having to disagree)

These same principles of modification apply to other speech act verbs (e.g. *I **hate to complain**, but …; I **would ask** you to make less noise; I'm sorry but I **have to object** to what you're proposing; I **regret to inform** you that …; I **must admit** that …; I **would insist** that …*).

Reporting verbs 422c

Speech act verbs are frequent in reports of speech acts. They may be more neutral reporting acts involving verbs such as *say*, *tell*, *ask*, or more evaluative reports involving verbs such as *complain*, *moan*, *mumble*:

> *'You all right, Crom?'*
> *'Ooh, God, of course I'm not all right,' he **moaned**. 'I've never felt so ill in my life. I think I'm going to die.'*

> *'… by the time he realises he's walked into a trap, it'll be too late for him to do anything about it.'*
> *'I only wish I could be there to see it,' Dennison* ***sneered****, and watched Amaya cross to the door.*

also **489 Reporting verbs** and **499 Reporting verbs and speech acts**

POLITENESS 423

Many of the examples of speech acts in sections 413–421 have displayed aspects of politeness and indirectness (e.g. *would you mind … -ing*), while others are more forceful and direct (e.g. imperatives).

Politeness serves to protect the self-esteem and dignity of the speaker and listener, and to prevent speakers imposing on listeners or forcing them to act against their will. It is an important aspect of interpersonal meaning, and enables communication to proceed harmoniously.

Modal verbs often hedge or soften the force of a speech act which may threaten the listener's dignity or self-esteem. Past forms such as *could* instead of *can*, or *would* instead of *will*, or *might* instead of *may*, or *wanted* instead of *want*, can also soften speech acts and contribute to politeness. In sections 423a–423e we summarise the use of tense and aspect for politeness and also consider some other forms which soften or hedge speech acts.

Tense and aspect 423a

Past tense

Past tense forms can make a speech act more polite:

A: ***I wondered*** *if you****'d*** *help me out in the garden, perhaps, like, if it's still nice when you come home from school?*
B: *Yeah.*
(compare the more direct: I wonder if you will help me …)

A: *How* ***did you want*** *to pay?*
B: *I'll pay cash.*
(compare the more direct: How do you want to pay?)

[store assistant taking customer's personal details to order goods]
What ***was*** *the name and address please?*

Progressive aspect

Progressive aspect can also contribute to soften the directness of a speech act, and may combine with past tense to make an utterance doubly hedged:

> A: *Anybody here?*
> B: *Mary. But no Sandra no Lisa. Not yet anyhow.*
> A: ***I was hoping** Sandra's not in cos Roger says to me when he went, you know, he was standing there, he says to me, 'It'll have to be Thursday at half past ten.' Well Sandra says that she couldn't make it half past ten Thursday, so he had to come yesterday. So **I'm wondering** if either of them are here. Or if Sandra's here. Mind you, it's more likely to be Sandra than Lisa cos Lisa's usually here at half seven.*
> B: *I was going to say, the blinds were still closed and I didn't see Sandra's car at all.*

Perfect aspect

Perfect aspect may also occur in a softening/hedging function:

> A: ***I've been wanting** to ask you if you'd help me write a research proposal.*
> B: *Sure. No problem.*

> [at a formal meeting]
> A: *The first thing I want to do is just obviously say thanks for filling in all those exercises you did for me, the sorting things. And I say we had all the others through in the post. So your second one will probably be waiting for me when I get back Margaret. And thanks for bringing the other ones back today. I just wanted to get your impressions, how you'd found doing the two exercises. Erm, **had you found** them okay to do? Or?*
> B: *Yeah. Interesting.*
> A: *They were okay, were they?*
> C: *Yeah.*
> (compare: Did you find them okay to do?)

Negation 423b

Boosting

Negative (most typically interrogative) forms can often boost a speech act (make it more forceful) and say that the speaker thinks the listener really should act in a particular way:

> *My son said, 'I don't think she's very well daddy. I think she's, she's ill, **don't you think you should** go in and see what's happening?' I said, 'No, I, I don't think so, I think her husband will take care of that.'*
> (compare: Do you think you should go in …)

> ***Can't you** turn that music down!*

Hedging/downtoning

Negation can also have the opposite effect to boosting, i.e. it can hedge or downtone a speech act. This occurs in a number of formulaic declarative structures with verbs such as *have*, *know*, *suppose*:

A: ***You don't have*** *Jane Carey's email address by any chance?*
B: *Yeah, sure.*

The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next utterance
A: ***I don't suppose*** *you've brought the saw back?*
B: *Have I still got it?*
A: *Yes.*
B: *Oh yeah I took it last weekend.*
A: *You borrowed it and brought it back+*
B: *Yeah yeah.*
A: *+and then you took it again.*

You don't know *what time the shop opens, do you?*

Other syntactic features of politeness 423c

In many of the examples in sections 413–421, speakers make their speech acts more polite by using a variety of prefaces and other devices. Speech acts such as questions, requests, invitations, suggestions, can be softened or made more polite by using reporting structures:

Hope, think, wonder, to soften questions

Reporting structures with *hope*, *think* and *wonder* are commonly used to soften questions and requests:

I was hoping *I could speak to Roger.*
(this seems to be a way of enquiring if Roger is in)

[*Michael* is a small child]
A: *Deana,* ***do you think*** *you could watch Michael please?*
B: *Yes.*
(compare: Deana, could you …?)

I'm wondering *if either of them are here.*
(the speaker is asking: Are either of them here?)

Modal expression + *ask* to soften commands, requests and questions

A modal expression + *ask* is used to soften a request or question. *Ask* is not used in this way without a modal or hedging expression:

A: ***Can I ask*** *you to sign that and then the banker's order.*
B: *Yes.* [signs]
(~~I ask you to sign that …~~)

A: *Mrs Smith,* ***could I ask*** *for your date of birth as well please.*
B: *Yes, twenty-three, seven, forty-five.*
A: *And your occupation?*
B: *Housewife.*

Prefaces to speech acts 423d

Speakers often delay or preface the performing of a speech act. A lead-in remark or question (a preface) may occur before the speech act itself. This is particularly so in the case of speech acts which impose on the listener or possibly put the listener in the position of having to refuse, etc., such as invitations, requests, advice, commands.

Speakers also use a wide variety of expressions to hedge or soften speech acts. These include modifiers such as *a bit*, the use of *if*, the use of informal lexis (e.g. *pop in* instead of *visit/call on*, *a wee favour* instead of *a (small) favour*), adverbs such as *ideally*, *possibly*, *maybe*, *just*, the *-ish* suffix, and a range of fixed expressions such as *let's say*, *perhaps you could see your way to* …, *if it's/that's okay with you*, *if you like*, *if it's all the same with you*, *sorry to bother you*:

A: ***Are you doing anything Sunday?***
B: *No.*
A: *I **might pop in** on Sunday with the boys **if that suits you**?*
B: *Yes. Yes.*
(note the preface: the listener is given the chance to say she is busy before the speaker suggests she will visit her; note also the softener *might*, the informal verb *pop in*, which suggests a brief, unimposing, informal visit, and *if that suits you*)

[beginning a phone call; *fire away* means 'start talking']
A: ***Is this a good time to talk?***
B: *Yes, fine, no problem. Fire away.*

A: *Are you free **a bit** later on this afternoon, **probably around about** three**ish** **possibly**? No, erm any time any other time later on today? No? What about early**ish** on Monday. I'm free early**ish** on Monday. **What about, is it a big hassle** you getting in for nine?*
B: *No.*
A: *No, okay.*
(note how speaker A negotiates his way gradually towards the potentially imposing request to B to come in at 9am on Monday morning; note the softening effect of the suffix *-ish* and the approximators *a bit*, *around* and *about*, and the use of the hedges *probably* and *possibly*)

*Thursday we're gonna do a major evaluation task with text books you haven't seen before, new ones. Do one of those before Thursday and give it to me then. I'll give you some feedback straightaway. **Ideally if** you could do different ones and we could put them together in a **little** folder and photocopy them, and you're gonna have examples of different types.*

[university tutor (A) to student]
A: *Do you want to **just** come in and start because Claire's cancelled her appointment, **if that's okay with you**?*
B: *Oh that's okay.*

[message on an answerphone]
Hi Louise. It's Rick. ***Sorry to bother you this late****. Erm* ***I was wondering if*** *tomorrow, and if it is portable,* ***whether or not*** *you could bring in that office chair you wanted to give away.*

Please 423e

Please is used more to soften directives in English than its equivalent in some other languages.

Compare the bare imperatives with their more polite realisations:

Come in.
Please *come in.*

Pass me the phone book.
Pass me the phone book, ***please****.*

Give me a call on the number I've just given you.
Please *give me a call on the number I've just given you.*

In interrogative directives, *please* is most typically used in end position:

[guest has just been served a cup of coffee]
Can I have some sugar, ***please****?*
(preferred to: Please can I have some sugar?)

However, children often use *please* in front position in such contexts:

[child at table]
Please *can I have more bread?*

Please is especially frequent in requests during service encounters in shops, restaurants, etc., and is used by both customers/clients and servers, even though the customer/client may consider themselves more important than the server:

[customer (A) to waiter (B) in a restaurant]
A: *Can I have the bill,* ***please****?*
B: *You want the bill?*
A: *Thank you.*

[renewing an insurance policy over the telephone]
A: *Okay and what's your first initial Mrs Leach?*
B: *G.*
A: *And your occupation* ***please****?*
B: *Housewife.*
A: *And your date of birth* ***please****?*
B: *Twenty four, eleven, forty-nine.*
A: *All right, okay.*

Yes please is often used in response to offers:
A: *Would you like some more coffee?*
B: ***Yes please****.*

Questions

Introduction 424
Question types 425
  Complete and reduced forms 425a
  Interrogative form 425b
  Eliciting a verbal reply 425c
  Eliciting information 425d
  Eliciting new information 425e
***Yes-no* questions** 426
  Phonetic reduction and ellipsis in *yes-no* questions 426a
***Wh*-questions** 427
  Emphatic *wh*-questions 427a
  Phonetic reduction and ellipsis in *wh*-questions 427b
Alternative questions 428
Questions and intonation 429
  Yes-no questions 429a
  Wh-questions 429b
  Alternative questions 429c
Declarative questions 430
Tag questions 431
Echo and checking questions 432
Interpersonal aspects of questions 433

Questions

INTRODUCTION 424

Questions are broadly defined as utterances which require a verbal response from the addressee. There are a number of types (⁘ **425–425e**), constructed using a variety of structural patterns (⁘ **426–432**). Some types are more central or prototypical questions, while others are less prototypical and function differently.

Questions may range from forms involving imperatives, to simple interrogatives, interrogatives with modal verbs, indirect interrogatives, declaratives and reduced questions, all of which have different pragmatic functions in terms of formality, politeness, directness, dependence on immediate context, projections of degrees of shared knowledge, etc.

Examples of questions and typical contexts:

Tell me what you want for dinner.
(imperative; informal)

Are you tired?
(simple interrogative; neutral)

Ready?
(reduced question; informal, highly context dependent)

Would you be George, by any chance?
(modalised; polite, low assumption of shared knowledge)

Can I ask if you know what this is?
(question with preface and modal verb; polite)

A: *So you got here early?*
B: *Yes.*
(declarative; high assumption of shared knowledge)

This chapter (424–433) describes the various question types, and the main question forms, starting with the most prototypical ones. It excludes interrogatives functioning as directives, which are dealt with in **413e Interrogatives with *can, could, will* and *would*** in **Speech acts**.

QUESTION TYPES 425

Five broad structural and functional aspects of questions can be used to characterise the central and more marginal question types. These are:

1. whether the question is a complete clause or not
2. whether it has an interrogative structure
3. whether it elicits a verbal reply
4. whether it elicits information or not
5. whether it elicits new information, not known to the questioner.

Complete and reduced forms 425a

Prototypical questions are complete clauses:

Are you ready?

When are you going to Manchester?

Other types of question may be reduced clauses, phrases, or single words:

A: ***You hungry****?*
B: *Mm, a bit.*

A: *So I'd go to London if I were you.*
B: ***And what about Leeds****?*
A: *Oh hang on. Yeah. Yeah. That would be nearer.*

A: *I'm very nervous.*
B: ***Why****?*
A: *Cos I've never done anything like this before.*

Interrogative form 425b

Prototypical questions have interrogative form:

Do you want one?

Are you nervous?

Would you prefer Spain or Portugal?

What do you want?

Who was looking for me?

⁘ **292 Interrogative clauses** for the structure of interrogative clauses

Many questions do not have interrogative structure, and may be declarative or imperative in form. Intonation and context indicate that the utterance is to be heard as a question:

A: ***So you like the people round there****?*
B: *Oh yes.*

A: ***Tell me what time you're arriving again****?*
B: *It'll probably be around six, or six-thirty.*

Eliciting a verbal reply 425c

Most questions desire and get a verbal reply from the addressee. However, one type, the rhetorical question, simply raises a question in the recipient's mind or is a question which the asker, not the recipient, answers:

We all know that, statistically, we've got more chance of winning the lottery jackpot than of dying in a plane crash, so ***why is it that the more I fly, the less I want to****? It's not a question of safety.*

> *Even the National Union of Students, which has vociferously campaigned for free university education, has now formally recognised that student debt is a way of life. At its recent conference it voted in favour of backing a system of loans.* ***So who is going to provide those loans in the future?***

Eliciting information 425d

Prototypical questions seek information of some kind from the addressee. However, many questions do not do this. One type which does not is the rhetorical question (⇢ **149 Imperatives** and **rhetorical questions**). Another, quite common, type is when what appears to be a question is functioning as a request or command, where a response in the form of action is required rather than an informative reply:

> *Denise, could you pass me my chocolate?*
> (Denise reacts by passing it; she does not say 'Yes, I could')
>
> *Will you stop messing about?*

⇢ **408–423 Speech Acts**

Exclamatives may also share characteristics of questions (e.g. interrogative structure), but do not necessarily demand any informative reply from the listener:

> [opening a present]
> *I'm going to open it cos I don't know what it is. Costa Rica. Coffee beans are they? Coffee beans.* ***Oh isn't that nice****!*

⇢ **410c**

Eliciting new information 425e

Prototypical questions seek information which the asker does not know. Other question types may not do this. Some questions simply seek confirmation of something the speaker already knows:

> *I got very moody, didn't I?*

Display questions (questions to which the questioner already knows the answer) are common in contexts such as classrooms, quiz shows and other tests of knowledge, and media interviews. The purpose of a display question is to put knowledge or information on public display. In the classroom, this is an important way of transmitting and testing knowledge for teachers and pupils/students.

In situations where display questions are used, such as classrooms and quizzes, the questioner follows up the answer by stating whether it is the desired/correct answer or not (in green in the example):

> [tutor (A) and students (B, C) in a university law seminar]
> A: *Right. Now,* ***what about this reasonableness test? What criteria do the courts take into account?***
> B: *What is reasonably expected of the parties at the time they made the contract.*

A: *Well Section Eleven says 'We look at whether it was reasonable to incorporate the term'. So we do look at the time of the contract.* ***But what specific criteria do they take into account?***
B: *Is it, erm, bargaining power?*
A: *They certainly look at bargaining power. There's no doubt.* ***But what else?***
C: *Erm, insurance?*
A: *They look at who's the best insurer.*

In display questions in media interviews (e.g. a TV interview with a politician), the questioner typically does not follow up in this way, and listeners are left to make their own evaluation of the answer.

YES-NO QUESTIONS 426

Yes-no questions are one of the most common question forms. The reply either affirms or negates the proposition of the question. The reply may simply be *yes* or *no*, or *yes/no* plus some sort of elaboration, or simply an implied *yes* or *no*. Variants of *yes* and *no* in informal spoken language include *yeah*, *mm*, *okay*, *yep*, and *nah*, *nope*:

A: *Is that all right?*
B: ***Yeah.***
A: *Are you sure?*
B: ***Yes.***

A: *Are there any shops nearby?*
B: ***Yes.*** *Shops,* ***yes.*** *The village centre is about a hundred metres away I should say. And there's a shop across the road as well.*

[in a camera shop; *a cable release* is a cable which enables the camera to be operated from a distance]
A: *I've got a Nikon F70 and I wanted a cable release for it.*
B: *Erm, is it the remote one?*
A: ***Mm.*** *Believe so.*

A: *There's a nice yachting centre at West Ranby.*
B: *Oh is there?*
A: ***Yep, yep.***

A: *Would you like to hear the CD?*
B: ***Okay.***

A: *Can you remember which company it was?*
B: ***No.***

[trying to identify a travel brochure]
A: *Was it a white cover?*
B: ***No, no,*** *it was something like that holiday one there. Brown, and it had holidays to Prague and Vienna, it had holidays to Bulgaria, it was Eastern Europe, I expect.*

A: *Are you coming round for coffee tomorrow?*
B: ***Erm, I'm here on my own.***
A: *Oh are you.*
B: *So I can't get round. Unless you want to call here.*
(implied *no*)

The reply to a *yes-no* question may consist of an affirmative or negative response tag instead of *yes* or *no*:

A: *Did you break it?*
B: ***I did**. I pressed the yellow button.*

A: *Did you say 'I told you so?'*
B: ***I didn't**. **I didn't**. A gentleman never does that sort of thing* [laughs].

The reply may contain repeated elements of the question which imply a *yes* or *no*:

A: *Are you rushing about again?*
B: *I'm always rushing about, I really am.*
(implied *yes*)

Yes-no questions in informal conversation may end with *or* …, which has the effect of reducing any suggestion of pre-judgement of the answer on the part of the asker. This use of *or* … may be compared to question tags (⇢ **300** and **431**):

A: *Did you go into hospital immediately **or** …?*
B: *I did.*

A: *Did you reply to the letter when you got it at all **or** …?*
B: *No.*

⇢ **292a** for the structure of *yes-no* questions

Phonetic reduction and ellipsis in *yes-no* questions 426a

Phonetic reduction of *do* and *did* may occur in informal speech:

***D'you** want a biscuit?*
(/dʒuː/ = do you)

***D'you** get home all right last night?*
(/dʒuː/ = did you)

Often, especially in informal spoken contexts, it is not necessary to include all the clause elements in the question: subjects and auxiliary verbs, or lexical verb *be*, may not need to be present as references will be obvious to the speaker and listener(s):

A: ***You want** some more bread, Nick?*
B: *Yes please.*
(without auxiliary *do*)

[teacher, to students]
There should be three sheets coming down. You should have three by the time you've finished. Okay. ***Everybody got*** *three sheets?*
(without auxiliary *has*)

Finished*?*
(without auxiliary *have* or subject *you*)

A: ***Ready****?*
B: *Yeah, in a minute.*
(without lexical verb *be* or subject *you*)

→ **94c Interrogatives with no auxiliary or subject**

→ **429a** on intonation and *yes-no* questions

WH-QUESTIONS 427

Questions with *what*, *when*, *where*, *which*, *who(m)*, *whose*, *why*, *how* request specific information about something, and the circumstances surrounding actions and events (e.g. time, manner, place).

The anticipated response to such questions is not *yes* or *no*, but information which provides the missing content of the *wh*-word:

[discussing a new type of cooking grill]

A: *And* ***what*** *did this machinery cost you?*

B: *Five hundred and fifty pounds.*

A: ***Where*** *is your farm?*

B: *Right at the bottom of the lane.*

Whose *turn is it to wash up?*

How *are you feeling?*

Emphatic *wh*-questions 427a

A *wh*-question may include an emphatic *do*-auxiliary. In speech, the auxiliary is stressed. Such questions often occur in contexts where the asker feels they have not been given information they wanted or expected.

Non-emphatic *wh*-questions do not use auxiliary *do* when the *wh*-word is the subject. Emphatic *wh*-questions involve *do*-auxiliary even when the *wh*-word is the subject of the verb:

Who wants *coffee?*
(non-emphatic)
(~~Who does want coffee?~~)

***What did happen** in the end?*
(emphatic)

A: *There was hardly anybody there.*
B: *Oh really? **Who did turn up**?*
(emphatic)

Wh-questions involving *what*, *who*, *why*, *when*, *where* and *how* (but normally not *whom* or *whose*) can also be emphasised by the use of *on earth*, or, even more emphatically, by using *the devil/the hell/the heck/in heaven's name* after the *wh*-word. The latter group should be used with care, and may cause offence, though *the heck* is rather mild and less likely to cause offence:

***What on earth** are you doing?*

*Oh, **what the hell** does he want?*

***Why on earth** did it take so long?*

***How the heck** did you come to do that?*

Phonetic reduction and ellipsis in *wh*-questions 427b

Some phonetic reduction of auxiliary *do* may take place in *wh*-questions in informal speech:

*Where **d'you** work?*
(/dʒuː/ = do you)

A: *Where **d'you** buy that?*
B: *In Barcelona.*
(/dʒuː/ = did you)

In informal speech, occasionally, auxiliary verbs may not need to be present where the meaning is obvious:

A: *And Peter goes, like, '**What you** talking about?' I thought that was weird.*
B: *Yeah.*
(understood: What are you talking about?)

***Where you** going tonight? Anywhere special?*

A *wh*-question may be declarative in form, especially if the speaker is checking information already given or checking on a particular detail:

A: *So what do you do? **You kind of arrive at what time**?*
B: *Twelve o'clock or something.*
(compare the more formal: (At) what time do you arrive?)

A: *So you just send it through the post?*
B: *Yeah.*
A: ***And you address it to who**?*
B: *Just the Manager.*
(compare the more formal: And who do you address it to?, or most formal: And to whom do you address it?)

429b on intonation and *wh*-questions

ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS 428

Alternative questions give the answerer a choice between two or more items contained in the question which are linked by *or*. Alternative questions may be *yes-no* interrogatives or *wh*-interrogatives:

[waiter to customer, as the customer is about to be shown to a table]
A: *Would you like **smoking or non-smoking**?*
B: *Smoking please.*

A: ***How** do you want to go to London, **by coach or rail or are you driving**?*
B: *Erm, oh, rail would be better.*

An alternative question may offer the recipient the choice of one or all of the alternatives:

A: *Do you want **tea or coffee**?*
B: *I'd prefer a cup of coffee thank you.*
A: ***Sugar or milk**?*
B: *Sugar and milk.*
(choose one of tea or coffee/choose sugar, or milk, or both)

Alternative questions are often asked in reduced form in informal speech, with just the alternatives being present:

[A is a swimming instructor, B is a pupil]
A: *Right then, all go and swim whichever stroke you want to swim for two lengths. When the first two get back to the side the next two are gonna do a nice jump in and race. Swim back to the side. Then the next two are gonna jump in.*
B: ***Length or width**?*
A: *Width.*
(*gonna* = informal 'going to')

[waiter to customer in a restaurant]
A: ***Any tea or coffee**?*
B: *Can I have some tea please.*

An alternative question does not normally produce *yes* or *no* as a reply, but *no* can occur to emphatically negate one of the alternatives:

A: *Are you actually somebody who's working at the university **or** are you a student?*
B: *Oh **no**. I'm working there.*
(I'm emphatically not a student)

[talking about a tourist trip to the Grand Canyon in the USA, starting from Las Vegas]
A: *Do they pick you up from Las Vegas **or** do you drive there?*
B: *Oh **no**. You leave from Las Vegas.*
A: *In a helicopter?*
B: *Yeah.*

⁘ **429c** on intonation and alternative questions

QUESTIONS AND INTONATION 429

Note: the intonation for the examples here may be heard on the accompanying CD.

Yes-no questions 429a

Yes-no questions most typically have a simple rising intonation (↗) or a complex fall-rising intonation (↘↗). Fall-rising intonation projects a greater assumption of a shared perspective and/or that the addressee will agree with the proposition of the question:

A: *There's a bank machine in the other terminal.*
B: *Oh, right.* ***Is it far from here****?*
(open question; no assumption whether it is near or far)

[listening to music]
A: *It's a great CD.*
B: *Yeah.* ***D'you want to borrow it****? I can leave it with you.*
A: *Mm, thanks. Yeah, can I?*
(projecting an assumption that the listener may like to borrow it)

Are you angry with me?
(speaker probably suspects the listener is angry)

Falling intonation can occur with *yes-no* questions, especially when they are follow-up questions in a series of such questions:

A: ***D'you want some soup****?*
B: *No thanks. I'm not very hungry.*
A: ***Would you like some cheese and biscuits****?*
B: *Mm, no, no thanks.*
A: ***D'you want a cup of tea then****?*
B: *Okay. Thanks.*

Wh-questions 429b

Wh-questions most typically have falling intonation:

Well whose fault is it then?

Why do you need to see me?

Wh-questions which seek to check or clarify information already given may have rising or fall-rising intonation:

Who did you say was coming?
(please tell me again)

What was his name again?

539 Glossary for any unfamiliar terms

Alternative questions 429c

Alternative questions most typically have a rising intonation on each alternative (↗ ↗), a rise followed by a fall (↗ ↘), a fall-rise followed by a fall (↘↗ ↘), or a rise followed by a fall-rise (↗ ↘↗).

Examples of intonation with alternative questions

type	example	typical context
↗ ↗	*Could you go and work in France or Italy?*	both alternatives are held up for equal consideration by the speaker, and the answer could be *yes* to both
↗ ↘	*Was it a CD-ROM or a DVD?*	both alternatives are possible: only one of them can be the right one
↘↗ ↘	*Are you hungry or do you want to eat later?*	both alternatives are possible: there is a possible assumption that the listener is hungry

Alternative questions with more than two alternatives can have more complex intonation choices:

> *Would you like tea*↗ *or coffee*↗ *or water*↗*?*
> (suggests the listener may choose any of the three or none of the three; could also be three fall-rises)
>
> *Do you want a sandwich*↘↗ *or a roll*↘↗ *or something sweet*↘*?*
> (suggests a contrast between savoury food as a set and sweet food)

DECLARATIVE QUESTIONS 430

Not all *yes-no* questions have interrogative form, and a declarative clause may function in context as a question:

> A: ***You're Philip****?*
> B: *Yes, that's me.*

The intonation is typically rising (↗) (asking for confirmation) or falling (↘) (strongly assuming something):

> B: ***You're busy all day***↗*?*
> A: *Yeah.*
>
> A: *So* ***you're going to be here about quarter past***↘*?*
> B: *Yeah quarter past, twenty past, yeah.*
> A: *That's fine.*

If a listener repeats a speaker's utterance as a request for confirmation, it may have rising intonation and be heard as a question:

> A: *I've got her number.*
> B: ***You've got her number***↗*?*
> A: *Yeah.*

The repeated utterance may also have a falling intonation and be heard as expressing a doubt, which the speaker may also interpret as questioning:

A: *I've got her number.*
B: ***You've got her number***↘?
A: *Yeah.*

TAG QUESTIONS 431

A tag after a declarative clause can form a question.

Tag questions are highly interactive in that they may constrain the range of possible or desired responses from the addressee. Some patterns are more constraining than others.

Types of tag question

type	clause + tag polarity	falling tone ↘	falling or rising tone: ↘ or ↗	constrained or desired answer
1	affirm. + neg.	*They**'ve been** affected by it,*	↘***haven't*** *they?*	agreement with *yes* (*Yes, they have.*)
2	affirm. + affirm.	*He**'s gone** back,*	↗***has*** *he?*	agreement with *yes* (*Yes, he has.*)
3	neg. + affirm.	*She **never talked** to anybody,*	↘***did*** *she?*	agreement with *no* (*No, she didn't.*)
4	affirm. + neg.	*You**'ve worked** hard,*	↗***haven't*** *you?*	anticipated agreement with *yes* (*Yes, I have.*) but open to challenge with *no* (*No, I haven't.*)
5	neg. + affirm.	*He **didn't get** it,*	↗***did*** *he?*	anticipated agreement with *no* (*No, he didn't.*) but open to challenge with *yes* (*Yes, he did.*)

Types **1** and **2** contain an affirmative statement by the speaker in the main clause, and an expectation of a *yes*-answer as confirmation in the tag.

Type **3** contains a negative statement by the speaker in the main clause, and an expectation of a *no*-answer as confirmation in the tag.

Type **4** contains an affirmative statement by the speaker in the main clause, and a more neutral possibility (i.e. of a *yes*- or a *no*-answer) in the tag.

Type **5** contains a negative statement by the speaker in the main clause, and a more neutral possibility (i.e. of a *yes*- or a *no*-answer) in the tag.

··⁘ **300 Question tags** for a full account of the structures and patterns found in tag questions

··⁘ also **100 Follow-up questions**

ECHO AND CHECKING QUESTIONS 432

Echo questions repeat part of the previous speaker's utterance, usually because some part of it has not been fully understood. They often have declarative word order and a *wh*-word at the end of the clause:

A: *Steve was singing with the group.*
B: ***Who*** *was singing, sorry?* (stressed)
A: *Steve, Steve Jones.*
B: *Oh.*

A: *He's called Oliver.*
B: *He's called* ***what****?*
A: *Oliver.*

A: *The map is in the rucksack.*
B: *In the* ***what****, sorry?*
A: *The rucksack.*

In spoken language, an interrogative-form self-checking question may interrupt an utterance in order to focus on specific information or to show uncertainty or hesitation, or to ask for confirmation:

I was talking to, oh, ***who was it****, that that guy from Edinburgh.*

[travel agent to customer]
Well, I've got you on the flights that you required, i.e. coming back on the, ***what was it****, the twentieth.*

⁘ also **100 Follow-up questions**

INTERPERSONAL ASPECTS OF QUESTIONS 433

Questions may be very direct and may threaten the dignity or face of the addressee. To avoid such threats and to signal politeness, questions may be prefaced with hedging expressions or other signals of politeness:

Can I ask you *how old Fiona is?*

Could you tell me *where the nearest toilet is?*

[student to university tutor]
I have a question*. Does the word-count for the assignment include the appendix?*

The use of bare *no* as a reply to a *yes-no* question may be considered impolite or inappropriate, and in most cases, *no* is accompanied by an expansion, explanation or justification:

A: *Would you like to live in London?*
B: ***No****, I don't think I could stand all the noise and pollution.*

Where the respondent feels they cannot answer a *yes-no* question with a straightforward affirmative or negative answer, the discourse marker *well* is often used to signal a shift in the desired or anticipated question-answer sequence:

A: *Do you live in Bristol?*
B: ***Well**, near Bristol.*
(B feels he cannot answer with just *yes* or *no*, and shifts the anticipated sequence)

Oh may be used to preface a reply, especially to indicate a range of emotive reactions to the question, in the form of enthusiasm, surprise, shock, etc.:

A: *Would you like a receipt?*
B: ***Oh**, yes, please! Got to have one of those.*

A: *Do you feel you've had a good treatment all of the times that you've been to the doctor's?*
B: ***Oh** definitely. Yes.*
C: *We think we've got wonderful doctors.*

A: *I always go to a party on Hallowe'en you know, just in the village hall.*
B: *Is it fancy dress and all that?*
A: ***Oh** no! You're joking aren't you?*

Oh may also be used to express a polite hesitation or a need for thinking time, or to preface an undesired reply which may be face-threatening to the asker:

A: *What do you pay for beef in the supermarket, a kilogram?*
B: ***Oh** I don't know.*

[in a restaurant; A is the waiter, B is a customer]
A: *Are you ready to order the second course as well, or not?*
B: ***Oh**, can we do that later?*
A: *Yes, certainly.*

Absolutely, *certainly* and *definitely* frequently occur as interpersonally engaged alternatives to bare *yes* or *no* (if followed by *not*) or together with *yes* or *no*:

A: *Do you think that's a good idea?*
B: ***Absolutely**.*
A: *Okay.*

A: *Shall I leave my coat here?*
B: ***Yeah certainly**.*
A: *Is that all right?*
B: *Yeah. Yeah.*
A: *Thanks.*

A: *You didn't find them uninventive or dull?*
B: ***No, definitely not**.*

••❖ **248 Adverbs used as short responses** for further examples of such usage

A–Z **56 *Of course*; 57 *Oh***

••❖ also **95 Response tokens; 101 Two-step questions and responses**

Negation

Introduction 434
Clause negation 435
  Negative declaratives 435a
  Negative interrogatives 435b
  Negative interrogatives and speech acts 435c
  Negative imperatives 435d
  Negative subjunctive 435e
Negation and tags 436
Negation and mental process verbs (*believe*, *think*) 437
Negative clauses with *any, anyone, anything, anywhere,* etc. 438
  Panel: Double negatives and usage 438a
***Not* in non-finite and ellipted clauses** 439
Negative prefixes and suffixes 440
No 441
None, none of 442
Nothing, no one, nobody 443
Never, nowhere 444
Neither, neither of, neither* … *nor, not* … *or/nor, not* … *neither/nor 445
***Hardly, rarely, scarcely, seldom,* etc.** 446
Negation and discourse 447
  Intensifying negation 447a
  Not and hedging 447b
  Repeated negation and affirmative statements 447c
  Panel: Double negation and hedging 447d

Negation

INTRODUCTION 434

When a speaker or writer makes a negative statement, they normally say that something cannot be the case or is not true or is not happening. Clauses, phrases and words can be made negative. *No* and *not* are the core negative words in English, but there are many other words that signal negation.

Primary negative words in English are:

neither
never
no
nobody
none
no one
nor
not
nothing
nowhere

Other secondary forms that are used to form negative or quasi-negative statements include:

few
hardly
little
rarely
scarcely
seldom

The following affixes are also most commonly used for negation:

prefixes: *de-*, *dis-*, *il-/im-/in-/ir-*, *mis-*, *non-*, *un-*

suffix: *-less*

In this chapter (434–447) clause negation is described first, followed by sections on negative words, then we consider negation as a discourse feature. Several individual negative words are treated in greater detail in A–Z entries.

Negation is more common in spoken than in written language. One of the main reasons for this is that in spoken, face-to-face interaction there are communicative risks in being too assertive; for example, asserting too much and too definitely can be impolite. *I'm sure* can sound very assertive whereas *I'm not sure* can keep options and channels of communication open. Using negatives allows a speaker to remain non-committal.

A–Z ***44 Hardly; 50 Little, a little, few, a few***

CLAUSE NEGATION 435

Negative declaratives 435a

Negative declarative clauses are formed by using *not* after a modal or auxiliary verb, or after the copular verb *be*:

> *Native speakers* ***may not*** *be aware of the history of their language.*
>
> *George* ***has not*** *been here recently.*
>
> *Julia* ***was not*** *happy about travelling alone at night.*

Can + *not* is normally written as one word, *cannot*.

In informal contexts, the contracted form *n't* can be attached to modal and auxiliary verbs and copular verb *be*, written without a space. *Am* and *may* are not used with contracted *n't*:

> *You* ***mustn't*** *shout.*
>
> *We* ***hadn't*** *met before.*
>
> *My gloves* ***aren't*** *warm enough for this weather.*
>
> ***I'm not*** *sure.*
> (~~I amn't sure~~)
>
> *She* ***may not*** *have arrived yet.*
> (~~She mayn't have arrived yet.~~)

Exceptions which require a special spelling and pronunciation are: *can't* (cannot), *shan't* (shall not) and *won't* (will not).

also **380e Contracted forms of modal verbs** for further examples of negative contractions with modal verbs and **233b Negative forms and auxiliary verbs** for negative contractions with auxiliary verbs and copular verb *be*

If there is no modal or auxiliary verb or copular verb *be*, auxiliary *do* is used with *not* to form the negative. The contracted forms *don't* (for *do not*), *doesn't* (for *does not*) and *didn't* (for *did not*) are used in informal contexts:

> *I* ***do not believe*** *a word he says.*
>
> *It* ***did not occur*** *to her that she was in any danger.*
>
> *They go into town during the week but they* ***don't*** *usually* ***bother*** *at weekends.*
>
> *His brother* ***doesn't like*** *fish.*
>
> *We* ***didn't see*** *the notice until yesterday.*

With the verb *be* (both as a lexical verb and as an auxiliary), there is a choice of contracted negative form in the present tense between forms with *isn't/aren't* and forms with *'s not/'re not*. In informal spoken contexts, when the subject is a pronoun, the preference is overwhelmingly for the forms with ’s *not*/’*re not*. When the subject is a lexical noun phrase, the choice is more open, but with a strong preference for the *isn’t*/*aren’t* forms:

> *She**’s not** here today.*
> (pronoun subject + ’*s not*/’*re not*: most frequent preferred form)
>
> *They **aren’t** going to change the format of these big meetings.*
> (pronoun subject + *isn’t*/*aren’t*: far less frequent)
>
> *The plans **aren’t** settled yet, he was saying.*
> (lexical noun phrase + *isn’t*/*aren’t*: preferred form)
>
> *The handle**’s not** very good, it’s loose.*
> (lexical noun phrase + ’*s not*/’*re not*: less frequent)

Negative interrogatives 435b

Negative interrogatives typically function as questions seeking agreement or confirmation. They have a contracted *n’t* negative. The word order is: modal/auxiliary verb + *n’t* + subject + lexical verb. If copular *be* is used, the word order is *be* + *n’t* + subject:

> ***Shouldn’t** the government do more to increase productivity?*
> (speaker thinks the government should do more and seeks agreement)
>
> ***Haven’t** you got a knife and fork?*
> (speaker sees that the listener apparently has no knife and fork and seeks confirmation)
>
> ***Isn’t** this coat yours?*

Uncontracted negative questions have the word order: modal/auxiliary verb + subject + *not* + lexical verb. If copular *be* is used, the order is *be* + subject + *not*. Such questions sound very formal:

> ***Might** we **not** consider those less fortunate than ourselves?*
>
> ***Did** you **not** feel offended by her comment?*
>
> ***Is** she **not** an acquaintance of yours?*

Negative interrogatives and speech acts 435c

Negative interrogatives can be used to make polite offers and suggestions:

> *Would**n’t** you like some more salad?*
>
> *Is**n’t** this a good point to end the meeting?*

Negative interrogatives with the forms *won’t you* and *couldn’t you* can be used to make requests:

> ***Won’t you** lend me your bike? I promise you I’ll look after it.*
>
> ***Couldn’t you** postpone your meeting until next Thursday?*
>
> ***Couldn’t she** give us a lift into town?*

Negative interrogatives with *can't you* are often used in directives:

> ***Can't you*** *hurry up!*
>
> ***Can't you*** *do something about it!*

→ also **408–423 Speech acts** for further examples of the speech act functions of negative interrogatives

Negative imperatives 435d

Second person imperatives are made negative by the forms *don't/do not* plus a lexical verb:

> ***Don't*** *be silly.*
>
> ***Don't*** *expect to learn how to drive in a few weeks.*

Do not is a more formal alternative:

> ***Do not*** *cross until the green light shows.*

Don't + *you* also occurs in imperatives in informal contexts:

> ***Don't you*** *try to do that.*
>
> ***Don't you*** *worry. We'll do that for you.*

Imperatives may also be formed with a negative subject:

> ***Nobody*** *move!*

Negative imperatives may also occur with *never/not ever*:

> ***Never*** *forget who your real friends are.*
>
> ***Don't ever*** *do that again.*

First person negative imperatives are formed with *let's not* and *don't let's*. More formal alternatives are *let us not*, and *don't let us*:

> ***Let's not*** *get too carried away.*
>
> ***Don't let's*** *panic. We've got another few weeks to decide.*
>
> ***Let us not*** *forget the victims of this awful crime.*
> (more formal)
>
> ***Don't let us*** *be severe,* ***don't let us*** *be in a hurry to condemn him.*
> (more formal)

Very rarely, in mock formal styles, the full form of the lexical verb + *not* may occur:

> [said by a husband to his wife who has just phoned to say that the car has broken down and that she is stranded by the roadside]
> ***Worry not****! Your knight-in-shining-armour will soon be with you.*

Negative subjunctive 435e

The subjunctive mood is rare in English, but it occasionally occurs following verbs such as *insist*, *recommend*, *suggest*, expressions of necessity such as *it is important/essential that*, and conditional subordinators such as *if*, *lest*, *on condition that*, *unless*. The negative is formed with *not* plus the base form of the verb:

> *He had tried to call her during the week, but she had* ***insisted*** *that he* ***not call*** *her at home and there was no other number he could try.*
>
> *Her father had had a slight stroke and the doctors* ***recommended*** *that he* ***not travel****.*
>
> [TV presenter introducing a woman who has agreed to a secret interview]
> *She agreed to be filmed* ***on condition that*** *we* ***not show*** *her face.*

NEGATION AND TAGS 436

Question tags which follow a negative main clause are affirmative:

> ***You're not*** *on the same course as me,* ***are you****?*
> (~~You're not on the same course as me, aren't you?~~)
>
> ***He mustn't*** *do that,* ***must he****?*
>
> ***They didn't*** *like Manchester,* ***did they****?*
>
> ***It's not*** *too late to pop over,* ***is it****?*

Question tags which follow an affirmative main clause may be negative or affirmative, depending on whether the speaker thinks the answer is probably *yes* (affirmative + negative) or whether the speaker makes no assumption about whether the answer is *yes* or *no* (affirmative + affirmative). The intonation of a negative tag, whether rising or falling, also affects interpretation (··⁝ **431**):

> *They just* ***gave*** *the whole class a warning,* ***didn't*** *they?*
>
> *He* ***has*** *a house in Wales,* ***doesn't*** *he?*
>
> *She****'s*** *a colleague of yours,* ***is*** *she?*
>
> *You* ***got*** *here early,* ***did*** *you?*

Negative statement tags and negative tails (··⁝ **97b**) may follow a negative declarative main clause in informal spoken language:

> *I'****m not*** *at all hungry,* ***I'm not****.*
>
> *He's just* ***not*** *the right person for the job,* ***Joe isn't****.*

An affirmative tag follows an affirmative or negative imperative. The tag is usually formed with *will* for second person imperatives and *shall* for first person imperatives:

> ***Be*** *quiet,* ***will you****!*
>
> *Do****n't*** *put the rubbish out yet,* ***will you****.*
>
> *Let's* ***not*** *argue,* ***shall we****.*

A negative tag following an affirmative imperative is rather formal:

> ***Come*** *again tomorrow,* ***won't*** *you.*

Exclamative clauses can also have negative tags which function to seek confirmation:

> *What a storm that was,* ***wasn't it****!*
>
> *How lovely to be going home,* ***isn't it****!*

⁘ **300 Question tags** and **98 Questions and tags** for further description of the formation of question tags and other tags

A–Z 69 ***Right, rightly*** for *right* as a tag

NEGATION AND MENTAL PROCESS VERBS (*BELIEVE*, *THINK*) 437

When mental process verbs such as *believe*, *imagine*, *suppose*, *think* are used to express uncertainty, it is more usual for the negation to be placed on these verbs rather than on the complement clause:

> *We* ***don't imagine*** *there are sufficient funds to expand the business this year.*
> (preferred to: We imagine there are not sufficient funds …)
>
> *I* ***don't think*** *dinner's ready yet.*
> (preferred to: I think dinner's not ready yet.)

Exceptions are the verbs *hope* and *wish*, where the negation is placed in the complement clause:

> *I* ***hope*** *you* ***aren't*** *going to make a mess in the kitchen.*
> (~~I don't hope you're going to make a mess in the kitchen.~~)
>
> *We're* ***hoping*** *England* ***don't*** *lose their first match against Norway.*
>
> *I* ***wish*** *he* ***wouldn't*** *make so much fuss.*

When mental process verbs are used in affirmative short replies, *so* is added:

> *Will Tim be at the party?*
> *I'm afraid so.*
> *I guess so.*
> *I hope so.*
> *I think so.*
> *I suppose so.*

If the reply is negative, there are different patterns. *Not* is used with *be afraid*, *guess*, *hope*. With *think*, the usual form is *I don't think so*; *I think not* is a more formal alternative. With *suppose*, both forms are possible:

Will Tim be at the party?
I'm afraid ***not****.*
I guess ***not****.*
I hope ***not****.*
I ***don't*** *think* ***so****./I think* ***not****.*
I ***don't*** *suppose* ***so****./I suppose* ***not****.*

NEGATIVE CLAUSES WITH *ANY*, *ANYONE*, *ANYTHING*, *ANYWHERE*, ETC. 438

Words such as *some*, *somebody*, *someone*, *something*, *somewhere* are not normally used following *not*. *Any*, *anybody*, *anyone*, *anything*, *anywhere* are used instead:

There is ***some*** *room at the front of the train.*
*There is****n't any*** *room at the front of the train.*
(~~There isn't some room at the front of the train.~~)

There's ***someone*** *in the garden.*
*There is****n't anyone*** *in the garden.*
(~~There isn't someone in the garden~~.)

I've found ***somewhere*** *to stay tonight.*
I've ***not*** *found* ***anywhere*** *to stay tonight.*
(~~I've not found somewhere to stay tonight~~.)

Following verbs with a negative meaning such as *decline* or *refuse*, *anything* is preferred to *something*:

I ***refused*** *to have* ***anything*** *to do with him.*
(~~I refused to have something to do with him~~.)

After affirmative verbs *no* is used, and with negated verbs *any* is used. Compare the following two sentences, both of which mean the opposite of *We had some money*:

We had ***no*** *money.*

*We did****n't*** *have* ***any*** *money.*

Although these sentences both mean the same, the structure with *not … any* is normally preferred in informal contexts. The structure with *no* is more emphatic and more associated with formal contexts.

Double negatives and usage 438a

✪ Words such as *never, nobody, no one, nothing, nowhere* have a negative meaning and do not require a negative verb form:

The company ***never*** *told the new staff that they needed a password.*
(~~The company didn't never tell the new staff that they needed a password~~.)

> *When I got there, there was* ***nobody*** *in the park.*
> (~~When I got there, there wasn't nobody in the park.~~)

However, in many non-standard dialects of English, double and multiple negatives are frequent with words such as *never, nobody, nothing* and *nowhere*:

> *I did****n't*** *see* ***nobody nowhere****.*

Double and multiple negatives are used, especially in spoken English, in order to create emphasis. Traditional grammar books prohibit them, and the use of double negatives with words such as *never, nobody, nothing* and *nowhere* is a very sensitive issue. Learners of English are advised not to use them.

However, a kind of emphatic double negative often occurs in reinforcing statement tags (→ **436** above; → also **97b**) and in end-position reporting clauses with verbs such as *imagine*, *suppose*, *think*. In everyday speech these are accepted as standard:

> *You're* ***not*** *going near the paper-shop, I* ***don't*** *suppose?*
>
> A: *We* ***won't*** *be allowed in, I* ***shouldn't*** *think.*
> B: ***Not*** *without an invitation we* ***won't****.*
>
> [deciding where to place a temporary bed]
> *It should fit there, because it's* ***not*** *that big I* ***don't*** *think.*

→ See also **119** for the use of double negatives in many dialects of English

NOT IN NON-FINITE AND ELLIPTED CLAUSES 439

The negative *not* is placed before the verb phrase in non-finite clauses. Such structures are common in formal, written styles:

> ***Not*** *having a strong enough defence, the team let in four goals at the end of the second half.*
>
> *I wrote the address down, so as* ***not*** *to forget it.*

In informal spoken English, *not* often follows the infinitive *to*. Such 'split infinitives' are considered bad style in writing by many people, but they are common in speech:

> *It took a lot of self-control to* ***not*** *hit him.*

Sometimes verb phrases can be subject to ellipsis (→ **94 Situational ellipsis**). *Not* can be used to negate the understood element(s):

> *Come early in the morning, but* ***not*** *too early though.*
> (Come early in the morning but do not come too early though.)
>
> *The CD's playing okay but* ***not*** *with the right sound quality.*
> (The CD's playing okay but it is not playing with the right sound quality.)

It's a powerful car though ***not*** *as expensive on petrol as you'd think.*
(It's a powerful car though it is not as expensive on petrol as you'd think.)

NEGATIVE PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES 440

Words can be made negative in English by the use of prefixes.

The main negative prefixes

prefix	examples
a-	*amoral*
de-	*deforestation*
dis-	*dissatisfaction*
il-	*illegally*
im-	*immodest; immature*
in-	*inhuman*
ir-	*irregular; irresponsible*
no-	*no-go; no-win*
non-	*non-conformist; non-believer*
un-	*unhappy; unimportant*

Many negative words are adjectives that are formed from nouns + the suffix *-less*:

careless
childless
doubtless
endless
harmless
homeless
pointless
useless
worthless

Words and phrases of negative or adverse meaning when negated with *not* can often convey a positive meaning:

That pasta's ***not*** *too* ***bad****.*
(it's quite good)

[said during a car journey]
We're ***not far away*** *now. We'll soon be there.*

also **261 Prefixes** and **262 Suffixes** for further discussion

NO 441

In spoken English, *no* is most frequently used as a response to *yes-no* questions, as a response agreeing with a negative assertion, or as an interjection:

A: *Are you ready yet?*
B: ***No****. Not yet. Can you give me another couple of minutes?*

A: *The system doesn't take account of people's individual circumstances.*
B: ***No****. That's right.*

No*, don't move! I want to take a photo of you two together.*

No + noun is not the same as *not a* + noun, unless the noun has a gradable meaning:

> *A whale is* ***not a*** *fish.*
> (~~A whale is no fish.~~)
> (*fish* is non-gradable: it is either a fish or not; it cannot be 'more of a fish' than another animal)
>
> *When it comes to computers, er, I'm* ***no expert****.*
> (gradable: one person can be more of an expert than another person)
>
> *He's* ***no fool****, is he?*

No is also a degree adverb. It premodifies comparative adjectives, adverbs and determiners:

> *The second performance was* ***no better than*** *the first.*
>
> *She had been fishing* ***no more than*** *three or four times in her life.*
>
> *There were* ***no less than*** *four hundred people in the audience.*

Similar meanings can be conveyed with a negation of a verb + *any*:

> *The second performance was****n't any better than*** *the first.*

In some fixed expressions, *no* negates a following noun, adjective or adverb:

> ***It's no good*** *phoning Arthur, he won't be at home yet.*
> (~~It's not good phoning Arthur, …~~)
>
> A: *What's that woman Nancy's second name?*
> B: *I* ***have no idea****.*
>
> *It's* ***no use*** *phoning. He won't be there.*
>
> A: *Could we change our dinner-date to Friday?*
> B: *Yes.* ***No problem****.*

NONE, NONE OF 442

None is a pronoun. It is more emphatic than *not any*:

> *The weather forecast predicted showers all afternoon but there were* ***none****.*
> (more emphatic than: The weather forecast predicted showers all afternoon but there weren't any.)

None of is a quantifier and is used with pronouns and noun phrases introduced by a determiner:

> ***None of us*** *had much money in those days.*
>
> ***None of my dogs*** *are ever allowed upstairs.*
>
> ***None of the book*** *is about phonetics.*

With plural noun phrases, *not one of* is a more emphatic alternative to *none of*:

> ***Not one of these children** has been to a dentist in the last five years.*

NOTHING, NO ONE, NOBODY 443

The pronouns *nothing*, *no one* (also written *no-one*) and *nobody* are more emphatic than the parallel structures *not … anything/anyone/anybody*. Compare:

> *I did **nothing** at all yesterday.*
>
> *I did**n't** do **anything** at all yesterday.*

Not … anything and *not … anyone/anybody* are the neutral choices and are therefore used more often than *nothing* and *no one/nobody*, which are used in more emphatic contexts:

> *I have**n't** heard **anything** from Marie for ages.*
>
> *Don't ask me what's happening. I know **nothing**.*
>
> *Do**n't** tell **anyone** I'm coming. I want it to be a surprise.*
>
> *I can think of **no one** who sings as beautifully as Lisa.*
>
> *It's a big, big secret for the moment. Tell **nobody**.*

Nobody is a variant of *no one* but, although the two forms mean the same, there is a difference in the way they are used. In spoken language, *nobody* is far more frequent than *no one*. In written texts, *no one* is much more frequent than *nobody*.

Nobody and *no one* can be used as emphatic alternatives to *not … anybody/not anyone*:

> *We knew **nobody** when we first came to London.*
> (or: We knew no one when we first came to London.)
> (both are more emphatic than: We didn't know anybody when we first came to London.)

Nobody and *no one*, rather than *not anybody/not anyone* are used as the subject of a clause:

> *We need engineers but **nobody** wants to learn how to be one.*
> (preferred to: … but not anybody wants to learn how to be one.)
>
> *You can describe the past, but **no one** can predict the future.*

Nothing, *no one* and *nobody* can be followed by *but*, the whole phrase having the meaning of 'only':

> *They must tell the truth and **nothing but** the truth.*
> (… and only the truth)
>
> ***No one but** the head of the company himself should meet the delegation at the airport.*
> (Only the head of the company …)

NEVER, NOWHERE 444

In negative statements *not … ever* and *not … anywhere* are normally preferred. *Never* and *nowhere* are more emphatic alternatives:

*I have**n't ever** eaten clams.*
(less emphatic than: I've never eaten clams.)

*I'd **never** lie to you, you know that.*
(emphatic)

*Have you seen my keys? I ca**n't** find them **anywhere**.*
(preferred to: … I can find them nowhere.)

*There's **nowhere** to sit, is there?*

Never sometimes occurs in marked mid positions for extra emphasis:

***It never was** very clear to me why she resigned.*
(marked position between subject and lexical verb *be*)

A: *Janet got divorced last month.*
B: *Really? She never said a word!*
A: *Well **they never did** get on together.*
(marked position before first auxiliary verb)

Further emphasis for *never* is provided by *ever*:

*They **never ever** go out, do they?*

336a for subject-verb inversion after negative adverbs such as ***hardly***, ***never***, ***rarely***, ***scarcely***, ***seldom***

NEITHER, NEITHER OF, NEITHER … NOR, NOT … OR/NOR, NOT … NEITHER/NOR 445

Neither

Neither can be used on its own in replies to refer to two alternatives which have already been mentioned:

A: *Does that mean they're going to win or lose?*
B: ***Neither**. We think they'll probably draw.*

Neither is also used as a determiner before singular countable nouns. It allows a negative statement to be made about two things at the same time:

***Neither** party has shown any real commitment to improving the environment.*

***Neither** parent should be held responsible for what happened.*

Neither of

Neither of is used with pronouns and plural countable nouns preceded by a determiner. Traditional grammar books state that it is followed by a singular verb, but a plural verb is also common, especially in informal speech:

> ***Neither of*** *the two choices* ***leaves*** *us in any doubt.*
>
> ***Neither of*** *them* ***was*** *able to get to sleep because of the noise outside their window.*
>
> ***Neither of*** *the teachers* ***were*** *present at the meeting.*

Neither … nor

Neither … nor function as a correlative coordinator (··⁘ **308**). They are used to link two or more alternatives:

> ***Neither*** *the American company* ***nor*** *its British subsidiary have prepared for the takeover.*
>
> *It's* ***neither*** *possible* ***nor*** *likely that they will succeed.*

A similar meaning is expressed by *either … or* plus a negative verb:

> *They didn't have* ***either*** *still* ***or*** *sparkling water, so I just got tap water.*
> (or: They had neither still nor sparkling water, so I just got tap water.)

When two or more clauses are coordinated, there is subject-verb inversion in the clause introduced by *nor*. Coordination with subject-verb inversion is associated with formal styles:

> *They can* ***neither*** *understand practical causes,* ***nor*** *are they sympathetic to the relationship between theory and practice.*

Nor … nor can occur after *neither*:

> *He stood like a statue. He* ***neither*** *spoke* ***nor*** *moved.* ***Nor*** *did he appear to be listening to what was happening around him.*

Not … or/nor

Alternatives introduced by *not* can be linked with either *or* or *nor*. *Nor* is more emphatic than *or* and less common:

> *It is**n't** good* ***or*** *bad. It's just pretty mediocre.*
>
> *She was* ***not*** *annoyed* ***or*** *offended. In fact she seemed completely indifferent.*
>
> *It is* ***not*** *sweet* ***nor*** *sour, but something in between.*

Not … neither/nor

If a coordinated clause follows a negative clause, *neither* or *nor* can be used to make the subsequent clause negative. In such cases the verb and subject are inverted:

> *This is* ***not*** *your best set of exam results by any means but* ***neither*** *is it your worst.*

A: *I* ***don't*** *think their products are particularly reliable.*
B: ***Neither*** *do I*.
(or: Nor do I.)

The cottage has ***no*** *central heating,* ***nor*** *does it have a proper boiler.*

HARDLY, RARELY, SCARCELY, SELDOM, ETC. 446

Adverbs such as *barely*, *hardly*, *rarely*, *scarcely*, *seldom* have quasi-negative meanings. They are used without *not*:

They could ***hardly*** *believe their eyes.*
('They couldn't hardly believe their eyes' and similar sentences may occur, but are considered non-standard)

Examiners are only ***rarely*** *generous in such circumstances.*

The results felt ***scarcely*** *worth celebrating.*

The committee only very ***seldom*** *makes such awards.*

Scarcely *anyone turned up, did they?*
(~~Scarcely no one turned up.~~)

Little and *few* function in a similar way:

They go out very ***little*** *these days.*

There's ***little*** *point in asking him, is there?*

Few *would disagree with the party, I suppose.*

There were very ***few*** *people at the cricket match.*

Note also that *little* and *few* are marked (more emphatic) when compared to non-assertive equivalents *not much* and *not many*:

*He does****n't*** *have* ***much*** *time for relaxation.*
(non-assertive)

He has ***little*** *time for relaxation.*
(marked)

*She did****n't*** *have* ***many*** *opportunities while working for the previous company.*
(non-assertive)

She had ***few*** *opportunities while working for the previous company.*
(marked)

336a for subject-verb inversion after negative adverbs such as ***hardly***, ***never***, ***rarely***, ***scarcely***, ***seldom***

A–Z **50 *Little, a little, few, a few***

NEGATION AND DISCOURSE 447

Intensifying negation 447a

At all is the most common intensifier of negative items:

> *You've **hardly** eaten anything **at all**.*
>
> *Are there **no** tickets **at all** left?*
>
> *They were running the economy **without** any control **at all** from the International Monetary Fund.*
>
> *There's just **nowhere at all** where you can get decent coffee in this town.*

A–Z 12 *All*

Whatsoever, which is used after *no, no one, none* and *nothing*, has a similar meaning to *at all* but is more emphatic. *Whatsoever* can be used to intensify any negative noun phrase:

> *I want **no** interruptions **whatsoever** during this meeting. And **no one whatsoever** is to know about it.*
>
> A: *Have you no juice in the fridge?*
> B: ***None whatsoever**.*

Not a bit, *a little bit*, *in the least*, *the least bit* are also used to intensify negatives:

> *The students **weren't a bit** interested in having extra classes in the evening.*
>
> *I **didn't** find his remarks amusing **in the least**.*
>
> *The doctors **weren't the least bit** worried about his health.*

A–Z 27 ***Bit, a bit (of)***

Intensified negation can also be used as a mark of politeness:

> A: *Would it disturb you if I use your phone?*
> B: *Not **in the least**.*

Not and hedging 447b

In negative clauses, *not* is often accompanied by *actually*, *necessarily*, *really* or *very* in order to soften the force of the negative and to sound more polite or tentative:

> *Her acting was**n't actually** convincing, was it?*
>
> *Sorry, but I do**n't really** feel like going out tonight.*
>
> *I'm **not very** familiar with this type of printer. Can you help me?*

Other words such as *absolutely*, *altogether*, *entirely* are used in the same way, although they are more formal:

> *I'm* ***not altogether*** *sure whether we should support him for election.*
>
> *The shopkeepers are* ***not entirely*** *against the idea of twenty-four-hour shopping.*

These structures are often used as short hedged replies:

> A: *Did you mind not being invited?*
> B: ***Not really****, no. I didn't.*
>
> A: *I suppose you've made up your mind to buy the roses?*
> B: *No,* ***not necessarily****.*

Repeated negation and affirmative statements 447c

Two or more negative statements can be used to make a forceful affirmative statement:

> [said by a retired actor who is being asked if his day is now boring and difficult to fill]
> *I do****n't*** *do anything I do****n't*** *want to do.*
> (more forceful than: I only do things that I want to do.)
>
> [a brand name of a margarine-spread product which claims to taste no different from butter]
> *I Ca****n't*** *Believe It's* ***Not*** *Butter.*
>
> ***None of*** *the countries have* ***no*** *proper hygiene regulations.*
> (All of the countries have at least some proper hygiene regulations.)

Double negation and hedging 447d

Double negation involving *not* plus a negative-affixed word (→ 440 above) commonly occurs in more formal styles of English such as academic writing. It enables speakers and writers to express ideas cautiously:

> *The government is* ***not*** *blame****less*** *as regards the recent rise in unemployment.*
>
> *This is a* ***not un****interesting essay.*
>
> *Unfortunately, it is* ***not im****possible that at least one third of Shakespeare's sonnets were written by Sidney.*
>
> *It is* ***not un****usual for people to see the film three or four times.*

Double negation as a hedging or distancing device may take the form of two negative elements in a phrase, clause or sentence:

> ***Not*** *a day passes when he does* ***not*** *remember being the cause of her unhappiness.*
> (Every day he remembers being the cause of her unhappiness.)

[A is commenting on the unwillingness of B to go to a hotel which they both know suffers regular electricity power failures]
A: *So you went to the hotel in the end?*
B: *Yes but **not without** a powerful torch*.
(Yes, but with a powerful torch.)

With the verb *surprise*, two negative verb phrases in sequence can also be used to hedge an opinion or other expression of stance:

*I should**n't** be surprised if he did**n't** retire soon.*
(I think he'll retire soon.)

A–Z 44 *Hardly*

Condition

Introduction 448
The first, second and third conditionals 449
Real conditionals 450
Main clauses 451
Modal verbs in conditional clauses 452
Other conditional clauses with *if* 453
Unless* and *if* … *not 454
***Wh*-conditional clauses** 455
Other conditional expressions 456
Linking with *then* 457
Conditional clauses and formality 458
***If* and politeness** 459

Condition

INTRODUCTION 448

Conditions deal with imagined situations: some are possible, some are unlikely, some are impossible. The speaker/writer imagines that something can or cannot happen or have happened, and then compares that situation with possible consequences or outcomes, or offers further logical conclusions about the situation.

Conditionality is conveyed chiefly by means of conditional clauses. Conditional clauses are most typically introduced by the subordinating conjunction *if*:

conditional clause	main clause
If *it rains,*	*we're going to stay in the house.*

Differences in tense and modality are important to a possible or imagined situation. In the conditional clause, tense choices express different types of potential event; in the main clause, modal verbs are used to indicate the unfulfilled outcome of those events.

Examples of conditional sentences

conditional clause: possible situation	main clause: possible outcome	comments
If *they* ***promote*** *her,* (present tense)	*she'****ll*** *get a big pay rise.* (*will/shall*)	there is a possibility that the event will happen
If *I* ***had*** *the money,* (past tense)	*I'****d*** *go on a round-the-world cruise.* (*would/should*)	the event is unlikely and is purely hypothetical
If *he* ***had gone*** *there,* (past perfect)	*he* ***might have*** *enjoy****ed*** *it.* (*might have* + *-ed* participle)	the event is impossible; it did not happen

Conditional clauses can be formed with other conjunctions than *if*: for example, *as long as*, *unless* (→ 454–456). For the first part of this chapter (449–453) examples are confined to clauses with *if*.

Conditional clauses typically precede main clauses but may also follow them:

conditional clause	main clause
If *I don't hear from you,*	*I'll assume the meeting is still on for tomorrow morning.*

main clause	conditional clause
We can manage	***if*** *you let us know in time.*

If may also occur in substitute structures:

Are you coming? ***If so****, can you get ready quickly?*
(with clause-substitute *so*)

If you want to join us, give me a ring. ***If not****, then see you next week.*

Some conditional clauses are used to impose conditions by the speaker/writer on the listener/reader or on the situation. These include clauses introduced by subordinators such as *as/so long as*, *only if*, *on condition that*, *providing/provided (that)*:

> A: *Can I borrow this dictionary?*
> B: *Yeah.* ***So long as*** *you don't hold on to it.*
>
> *He was released from prison* ***on condition that*** *he went into exile.*

THE FIRST, SECOND AND THIRD CONDITIONALS 449

The most commonly described conditional clauses are often known as the first, second and third conditionals. They have the following structures.

The first conditional

The structure of the first conditional is: *if* + present simple tense + modal verb with future reference (e.g. *will/shall/may*).

In the first conditional, a speaker or writer predicts a likely result in the future if the condition is fulfilled. There must be at least some chance of the condition being fulfilled:

> ***If*** *Sally* ***comes*** *too, there****'ll be*** *five of us.*
>
> *We* ***won't*** *have enough time* ***if*** *we* ***want*** *to do some shopping too.*

✪ *Will* and *shall* are used in the main clause, not the *if*-clause:

> *If he* ***moves*** *to Manchester, he* ***will*** *have to sell his house in Bristol.*
> (~~If he will move to Manchester, he will have to sell his house in Bristol.~~)

The second conditional

The structure of the second conditional is: *if* + simple past tense + modal verb with future-in-the-past reference (e.g. *would/could/might*).

In the second conditional, a speaker or writer responds to a possible or hypothetical situation by indicating a possible outcome. The speaker or writer states that the condition must be fulfilled for the present or future to be different:

> ***If*** *I* ***knew*** *what you wanted, maybe I* ***could help*** *you.*
>
> *I* ***would do*** *a computer course* ***if*** *I* ***had*** *the time.*

The third conditional

The structure of the third conditional is: *if* + past perfect tense + modal verb with future-in-the-past reference (e.g. *would/could/might*) + *have* + *-ed* participle.

In the third conditional, the speaker's or writer's attitude to an imagined past situation is described. Here the speaker or writer is talking about a past event which did not happen, and therefore things are different from how they might have been:

> ***If*** *I* ***had seen*** *you walking, I* ***could have offered*** *you a lift.*
>
> *Tessa* ***would have been*** *furious* ***if*** *she* ***had heard*** *him say that.*

Many conditional clauses occur in these structures, but there are also several other possible structures.

REAL CONDITIONALS 450

It can also be helpful to describe conditional clauses by the degree to which they refer to real or unreal situations. Real situations are things that are true, have happened, generally happen or are likely to happen. Unreal situations are things that are untrue or are imagined, have not happened and are only remotely likely to happen. Unreal situations are the basis of the second and third conditionals (•⁘ **449** above).

In conditional clauses which refer to real situations, tenses are normally used in the same way as in other kinds of sentence. Present tenses are used to talk about present and future events as well as about general truths and facts, and past tenses are used to talk about past events:

> ***If*** *you* ***want to*** *learn the guitar, you really* ***need*** *to practise for at least a couple of hours a day.*
> (for any person who does in fact want to learn)
>
> ***If*** *I* ***criticised*** *her unfairly, then I always* ***apologised****.*
> (it did sometimes happen that I criticised her, and I did apologise)

A wide variety of patterns occur with real conditionals. Some examples of common patterns are given here:

- present simple *if*-clause and present simple main clause:

  If *steel* ***is*** *exposed to air and water, it* ***resists*** *rust for a considerable length of time.*

  If *I* ***feel*** *like some exercise, I* ***take*** *the dog for a walk.*

- *be going to if*-clause and *be going to* main clause:

  If *you****'re going to*** *buy a house, then you****'re going to*** *need a lot of money.*

- present simple *if*-clause and modal verb in main clause:

  If *you* ***have*** *toothache as bad as that, you* ***must*** *go to a dentist today.*

  If *that****'s*** *on the disk, we* ***should*** *have it on our system.*

- present simple *if*-clause and present progressive main clause:

  If *they* ***think*** *I'm going to retire quietly, then they****'re making*** *a big mistake.*

  They ***are breaking*** *the law* ***if*** *they* ***give*** *you that information.*

- present progressive *if*-clause and present progressive main clause:

  If *you****'re getting*** *backache all the time, then you****'re not sitting*** *properly.*

- present progressive *if*-clause and present simple main clause:

  If *you****'re suffering*** *from hay-fever, you* ***need*** *one of these sprays.*

- past simple *if*-clause and past simple main clause:

  If *I* ***missed*** *the last train, I just* ***stayed*** *over with friends.*
  (*if* here is synonymous with *when*)

- past simple *if*-clause and present perfect main clause:

  If *you* ***ate*** *too much over the holidays, then it's no surprise you****'ve put*** *on weight.*
  (you did eat too much and you have put on weight)

- past perfect *if*-clause and past simple main clause:

  If *they****'d missed*** *something out or* ***had got*** *it wrong, she* ***showed*** *them how to correct it.*
  (*if* here is synonymous with *when*)

- past progressive *if*-clause and past simple main clause:

  They always ***took*** *the dog with them* ***if*** *they* ***were going*** *anywhere.*

MAIN CLAUSES 451

Although main clauses in *if*-sentences are most typically declarative, it is also possible for interrogative and imperative clauses to occur.

- *if*-clause and interrogative main clause:

  If *you want to speak to him,* ***why don't you just give him a ring****?*

  Would you tell everyone, ***if*** *you won a huge amount of money on the lottery?*

  If *you'd lost your keys,* ***what would you do****?*

- *if*-clause and imperative main clause:

  If *you get bad migraines,* ***try*** *a homeopathic cure.*

MODAL VERBS IN CONDITIONAL CLAUSES 452

Modal verbs (most typically *will* or *would*) may occur in conditional clauses if they have a meaning of willingness or prediction, or where it is important to mark politeness:

> ***If*** *you****'ll*** *wait a minute, I'll fetch the porter to help you.*
>
> ***If*** *you* ***would*** *all follow me, I'll show you to your rooms.*
>
> ***If*** *you* ***would*** *have allowed them more time, I still think they would have done better.*
> (if you had been willing to allow them more time)
>
> *I'll take care of the tea and coffee,* ***if*** *it****'ll*** *help to get things done quicker.*
> (if the assumption is true/valid that things will get done quicker)
>
> *I'll do it for you,* ***if*** *you* ***could*** *just wait a minute.*

Should can be used in a conditional clause where it has the meaning of 'happen to'/'chance to'. *Should* suggests that the speaker thinks the possibility is remote:

> *If you* ***should*** *run into Peter, tell him to call me.*

OTHER CONDITIONAL CLAUSES WITH *IF* 453

If it were not for

If it were/was not (had not been) for + noun phrase refers to hypothetical situations and actions:

> ***If it weren't for*** *the police, I think those burglars would have got away with even more.*
> (if the police had not arrived/intervened)

If he were to

If + noun phrase + *was/were to* + verb (base form) also refers to hypothetical situations and actions (with a singular subject, *was to* is less formal than *were to*):

> ***If I was to say*** *to you 'Barcelona', what would you think of?*

> ***If the headteacher were to resign****, it would be a disaster for the school.*

> *The garden's really special.* ***If Rick and Joan were to sell*** *the house, people would be queuing up to buy it.*

Only if

Only if is used to impose conditions:

> *You can go* ***only if*** *you are back by midnight.*

Only may be separated from *if*, with *only* in the main clause:

> *They'll* ***only*** *let you check in* ***if*** *you've got a passport or photo ID.*

Even if

Even if may be used as an emphatic form of *if*:

> ***Even if*** *you flew business class, it would still be an exhausting journey.*

If only

If only is used to express a wish that things could be different. It refers to an unreal condition. The clause often occurs without an accompanying main clause:

> ***If only*** *we could get to a warmer country in the winter.*
> (I wish we could get to a warmer country in the winter.)

If in ellipted and non-finite clauses

If also appears in ellipted and non-finite clauses in more formal contexts:

> ***If wet****, the match will be played on the indoor courts.*
> (ellipted conditional clause)

> ***If paying by direct debit****, please make sure that you notify your bank at least one month in advance.*
> (non-finite conditional clause)

✪ *If* and *when*

If and *when* are not the same. In unreal conditionals, only *if*, not *when*, may be used. *When* is used to refer to something the speaker knows will happen at some point in time:

> ***If*** *we win the lottery, we'll give up our jobs and fly to the Caribbean.*
> (speaker does not know the event will happen)

> ***When*** *Georgina comes in, tell her I want to speak to her.*
> (speaker knows Georgina is coming)

→ 539 **Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

UNLESS AND *IF … NOT* 454

Unless has a meaning of ‘if … not’ or ‘except if’. *Unless* and *if … not*, and *unless* and *except if* are often, but not always, interchangeable. *Unless* can only normally refer to things which have not happened or did not happen or probably won’t happen:

> ***Unless*** *you* ***can*** *reduce the weight of that case, I’m afraid you won’t be allowed on the flight.*
> (or: If you can’t reduce the weight of that case, I’m afraid you won’t be allowed on the flight.)
>
> *Come over tomorrow afternoon around five,* ***unless*** *my secretary* ***contacts*** *you.*
> (or: Come over tomorrow afternoon around five, except if my secretary contacts you.)
>
> *I always think Dave would be happier* ***if*** *he* ***didn’t*** *work so hard.*
> (*unless* cannot be used, since Dave does in fact work hard)
> (~~I always think Dave would be happier unless he worked so hard.~~)
>
> [speakers are talking about plants in their garden which they covered to protect them from a severe frost which occurred]
> A: ***If*** *we* ***hadn’t*** *covered them, they’d have been ruined.*
> B: *Yes, I think they’d have been dead by now.*
> (*unless* cannot be used, since the speakers did in fact cover the plants)

Unless is used, especially in spoken English, to introduce an additional comment or afterthought:

> *We don’t have anyone to captain the team, now Tina’s resigned –* ***unless*** *you’re interested, of course.*
>
> A: *Do you want to take a break now?*
> B: *Yeah, right.*
> A: ***Unless*** *you want to go on for another half an hour or so?*

WH-CONDITIONAL CLAUSES 455

Clauses introduced by *whatever*, *whenever*, *however*, *whoever*, *whichever* can introduce conditions which always seem to obtain and cannot seem to be changed:

> ***Whatever*** *she says, don’t believe it.*
>
> ***Whenever*** *the team loses, they are miserable for the rest of the weekend.*
>
> ***However*** *late they arrive, how can we find the time to meet them?*

Whether … or and *whether … or not* can be used to link two different conditions which the speaker regards as having the same likely outcome:

> ***Whether*** *we drive* ***or*** *go by train, it will still take about four hours.*
>
> *I don’t think it’ll make any difference* ***whether*** *Jake comes with us* ***or not****.*

OTHER CONDITIONAL EXPRESSIONS 456

The other subordinating conjunctions listed here operate in a similar way to *if*: the conditional clause typically contains a non-modal verb in the present or the past tense, while modal verbs usually occur in the main clause.

Providing, provided that

Providing is more frequent in spoken language; *provided that* is more frequent in writing. Both may be used for real and unreal conditions:

A: *But presumably you've got some sort of senior citizen's fare?*
B: *Yes, **providing** you've got a railcard.*

*This article may be freely distributed **provided that** our copyright is fully acknowledged.*

On condition that, in the event that, in the event of + noun phrase

On condition that and *in the event that/in the event of* are much more frequent in formal written contexts than in informal spoken contexts. They may be used for real and unreal conditions:

[from a leaflet published by an anti-smoking campaign]
*Many surgeons offer patients an operation only **on condition that** they give up smoking – and often find that the ensuing improvement makes surgery unnecessary.*

***In the event that** the plane lands on water, life-jackets are located under every seat.*

***In the event of** a sudden loss of cabin pressure, oxygen masks will be lowered automatically from the panel above your seat.*

As long as, so long as

As long as and *so long as* occur frequently in informal spoken contexts. They may both be used for real and unreal conditions:

***As long as** you promise to be back by 6, you can borrow the car.*

***As long as** it doesn't rain, we'll have a great time.*

*I'm always fine **as long as** I can get about six or seven hours of sleep.*

*But I won't mind too much **so long as** she's coming back.*

Suppose (that), supposing, assuming

Suppose (that), *supposing* and *assuming* can be used to imagine unreal conditions:

A: *You just have to say yes.*
B: *But **suppose** you're not sure? **Suppose** you have to decide later? **Suppose** you feel you have to go but don't really want to?*

***Assuming** we don't sell the house, we can still move next spring. There are always more buyers in the spring.*

Supposing and *assuming* do not impose conditions:

> *This article may be distributed* ***if*** *our logo is shown.*
> (or: ***provided that*** *our logo is shown.*)
> (or: ***on condition that*** *our logo is shown.*)
> (or: ***as (so) long as*** *our logo is shown.*)
> (but not: ~~supposing/assuming~~ our logo is shown.)

But for

But for is a fixed expression meaning 'if it were not for'. It is used in more formal contexts and is followed by a noun phrase:

> ***But for*** *Sunita, we'd all have got lost ages ago.*

> *He would have gone to university* ***but for*** *the fact that his parents were poor and couldn't afford it.*
> (~~He would have gone to university but for (that) his parents were poor and could not afford it~~.)

Otherwise

Otherwise can be used to express an outcome which is likely if a condition is not met. It may introduce the clause which indicates the outcome or, especially in informal spoken language, it may come in end position:

> *I won't tell Brenda,* ***otherwise*** *she'll be furious.*
> (If I tell Brenda, she'll be furious.)

> *Take the umbrella. You'll get soaked* ***otherwise****.*
> (If you do not take the umbrella, you'll get soaked.)

In case, in case of

In case has a meaning of *because x might be/happen* or *because there is a risk of x*:

> *I'll take these shoes with me* ***in case*** *it rains.*
> (I will take the shoes whether it rains or not, because there is a risk of rain)
> (compare: 'I'll take these shoes with me if it rains.' i.e. 'I will not take the shoes if it does not rain.')

In case is frequently premodified by *just*, indicating that the speaker thinks the outcome is unlikely:

> *I'll give you the address to give Paul,* ***just in case*** *you bump into him.*

In case may, in very formal and literary contexts, be followed by the subjunctive form *were to* (→ **159e**):

> *Urquhart had taken the precaution of taking down the details from Simon's driving licence, just* ***in case*** *he* ***were to*** *continue to cause trouble and needed to be tracked down.*
> (more typical: … just in case he continued to cause trouble …)

The phrase *in case of* + noun phrase carries a slightly different conditional meaning. It has negative connotations and is used for real conditions in formal contexts such as warning notices:

> ***In case of*** *fire, do not use the lift.*
> (Only if/when there is a fire …)

✪ *In case of* is not used with an *-ing* form:

> ***In case of*** *a breakdown, call this number.*
> (~~In case of breaking down, call this number.~~)

Lest

Lest is used in very formal and literary contexts, and is a formal alternative to *in case*. It is used to indicate that an action is done in order to prevent a possible negative outcome. It is followed by *should* or, even more formally, by a subjunctive form (→ **159e**):

> *She threw on a jacket and walked quickly out, head down into her collar,* ***lest*** *anyone* ***should*** *later be able to recognise her.*
>
> ***Lest*** *she* ***appear*** *over-familiar, she nodded and turned away.*

What if …?

What if …? is used to imagine unreal situations and to pose questions about their possible outcomes:

> ***What if*** *she doesn't turn up? What shall we do?*
>
> A: ***What if*** *we'd waited and left later? We'd have missed the flight with all that traffic.*
> B: *Yes, you're right.*

No conditional subordinator

Conditions can also be conveyed without any overt conditional subordinator, often using *and*, especially in informal spoken language:

> *We'd better not be late. They'll leave without us.*
> (They'll leave without us if we're late.)
>
> [parent to misbehaving child]
> *Do that again* ***and*** *I'll get very angry.*
> (If you do that again, I'll get very angry.)
>
> *Buy three CDs* ***and*** *get one free.*
> (If you buy three CDs, …)

LINKING WITH *THEN* 457

Then is often used to link a main clause following a conditional to add emphasis:

> [from an Oxford City Council tourist brochure]
> ***If*** *you are visiting Oxford,* ***then*** *why not take the opportunity to visit The Oxford Story – a museum of Oxford life down the ages?*

> ***If*** *she had prepared better for the interview,* ***then*** *she would have got the job.*
>
> ***As long as*** *it's okay with you,* ***then*** *I'll stay till Monday.*
>
> ***Unless*** *you've got certain qualifications,* ***then*** *you can't get a contract.*

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES AND FORMALITY 458

Conditions can be expressed at different levels of formality. More formal structures sometimes involve inversion and the omission of conjunctions such as *if*:

> [extract from a letter concerning an application to join a Health and Fitness Club]
> ***Were you*** *to apply before the 15th of September, you would still be given a preferential discount.*

Inversion instead of using *if* is normally only possible in the case of the verb forms *had*, *should* and subjunctive *were* (i.e. *were* used for all persons, singular and plural:

> ***Had they*** *not been so uncooperative, I might have forgiven them and not complained.*
>
> ***Should you*** *wish to visit the factory and to inspect the plant, the best time for our management team would be in the early evening.*
>
> ***Were it*** *not for help from a psychologist, she might have been a lot more unwell by now.*
> (~~Was it not for help from a psychologist, she might have been …~~)

After *if*, the subjunctive forms *were* and *be* are sometimes used in second conditional sentences in very formal contexts (··· **159e**). *Were* is used in hypothetical conditionals, *be* tends to be used more in real conditionals:

> ***If*** *there* ***were*** *any reason to doubt his word, we would ask him to resign.*
>
> *I am delighted to see you again, even* ***if*** *it* ***be*** *under such tragic circumstances.*

In most informal contexts, indicative forms of *be* are preferred, except for the semi-fixed expression *if I were you*:

> ***If*** *she* ***was*** *to sell her place now, she'd probably make a big profit.*
> (preferred to: If she were to sell …)
>
> ***If I were you****, I'd book a taxi the night before.*

IF AND POLITENESS 459

If-clauses do not always mark conditions; they can be used to issue polite directives, especially in spoken contexts, where the *if*-clause often stands alone and typically involves a modal verb:

> [a headteacher speaking to a group of parents before a meeting begins]
> ***If*** *I could just have your attention for a moment please. Thank you.*
>
> [request to a friend to hold a computer cable which will be attached to a printer]
> ***If*** *you'd just like to hold this for me.*
>
> [extract from a letter from an insurance company]
> ***If*** *you would like to return your insurance certificate to us, we will issue a new certificate for your vehicle within three working days.*

Other common expressions involving *if* include *if I may say so*, *if it'll help*, *if you see what I mean*, *if that's all right with you*, *if I may put it like this*, *if it's not rude to ask*, *if you don't mind*. These expressions add a tone of politeness, and function to soften statements and questions:

> *You've still got an awful lot of work to do on this,* ***if I may say so****.*
>
> ***If it's not rude to ask****, how old are you?*
>
> *Could you move to the other room, please,* ***if you don't mind****.*

Comparison

Introduction 460
One-syllable adjectives 461
Two-syllable adjectives 462
Multi-syllable adjectives 463
Irregular adjectives (*bad, good, ill, well*) 464
Comparative and superlative adverbs 465
Comparatives 466
  Than 466a
  Comparative meanings 466b
  Premodification of comparatives 466c
Comparisons of similarity 467
  As … *as* 467a
  The same, *similar* 467b
  Like 467c
Superlatives 468
  General 468a
  Use of *the* 468b
  Intensifying superlatives 468c
Comparisons over time 469
Comparison and other word classes 470
  More and *less* 470a
  Most and *least* 470b
Comparative clauses 471
  General 471a
  Clauses with *as* 471b
  Clauses with *as if* and *as though* 471c
  Clauses with *so*, *too*, *enough* 471d
  Clauses with *the same* 471e
  Clauses with *like* 471f
  Clauses with *rather than* 471g
  Clauses with superlatives 471h
  Double *the* + comparative 471i

Comparison

INTRODUCTION 460

Comparative forms compare one entity or process with another. The most common comparative forms are adjectives and adverbs used with the suffix *-er* or premodified by *more*. The object of the comparison is most commonly introduced with *than*.

Comparison involves both morphological patterns in the form of endings, and syntax in the form of comparative clauses.

Comparatives often say that two things are different in quality or quantity or that something becomes different by changing over time:

Your dog might be fat but our dog is ***lazier****, I'm sure.*

In fact, I think that this school has a ***brighter*** *future* ***than*** *the private school has.*

It's getting ***hotter*** *and* ***hotter****.*

Comparatives also say that two things are of the same quality and quantity. A common structure used to indicate this function is *as … as*:

Geoff is ***as*** *overweight* ***as*** *his wife.*

Leeds has almost ***as*** *many coffee bars* ***as*** *London.*

Superlative forms involve comparison by singling out one thing as having a unique quality. A superlative defines a specific member of a set. An adjective or adverb with an *-est* ending or which is premodified by *most* is a common marker of a superlative form:

Taipei has the ***tallest*** *building in the world.*
(Taipei has the building which is taller than all the other buildings in the world)

I've got four daughters. They are all small but Chloë is the ***smallest****.*

Tiger Woods is definitely the ***most improved*** *golfer in the year 2000.*

Comparison can indicate choices and preferences:

Bob'll have salad ***rather than*** *chips. He's trying to lose weight.*

Comparative forms also allow attitudes to be expressed. The comparative form sometimes refers to an assumed norm. For instance, in the following examples it is normal to assume that people have one house and that ice cream is delicious:

Jill now has ***as*** *many* ***as*** *five houses.*

Italian ice cream is always the ***most delicious****.*

[slower ski slopes are not as dangerous]
*Don't you think it'll be dangerous for Bill to ski on the **faster** slopes?*

ONE-SYLLABLE ADJECTIVES 461

One-syllable adjectives normally form comparatives and superlatives with *-er* and *-est*.

Examples of the comparative and superlative of one-syllable adjectives

adjective	comparative	superlative
cold	*colder*	*coldest*
strong	*stronger*	*strongest*
fine	*finer*	*finest*
rich	*richer*	*richest*
big	*bigger*	*biggest*
thin	*thinner*	*thinnest*

✪ *More* and *most* are not normally used before one-syllable adjectives:

> *She is two years **older** than her sister.*
> (~~She is two years more old than her sister.~~)
>
> *The **strongest** businesses in the region have also contracted in the last six months.*
> (~~The most strong businesses in the region …~~)
>
> *That's the **fattest** pigeon I've ever seen.*

In informal contexts, *more* and *most* can be used with some short adjectives, often when followed by *than*. When spoken, the stress normally falls on the word *more*:

> *It's **more** cold in the North **than** it is in the South.*
>
> *She looked **more** thin today **than** I've ever seen her.*

More and *most* do have to be used with the single-syllable adjectives *apt*, *real*, *right* and *wrong*:

> *He made what he was teaching seem **more real**, didn't he?*
> (~~He made what he was teaching seem realer, didn't he~~?)
>
> *You couldn't be **more wrong**.*
> (~~You couldn't be wronger.~~)

TWO-SYLLABLE ADJECTIVES 462

Two-syllable adjectives which end in *-er*, *-le* or *-ow* can have comparatives and superlatives either with *-er* and *-est* or with *more* and *most*. Such adjectives include *able*, *clever*, *hollow*, *narrow, simple*:

> *Peter is the* ***cleverer*** *brother.*
> (or: Peter is the more clever brother.)
>
> *The* ***simplest*** *approach is often the best approach.*
> (or: The most simple approach is often the best approach.)

The comparative and superlative forms of two-syllable adjectives ending in *-y* are spelled *-ier*, *-iest*. Among the most frequent are: *angry*, *busy*, *clumsy*, *easy*, *friendly*, *funny*, *happy*, *lovely*, *lucky*, *pretty*, *silly*, *windy*.

Examples of the comparative and superlative of two-syllable adjectives ending in *-y*

adjective	comparative	superlative
friendly	*friendlier*	*friendliest*
lucky	*luckier*	*luckiest*
angry	*angrier*	*angriest*

> *Be careful! He's* ***clumsier*** *than you think.*
>
> *It's been one of the* ***windiest*** *days on record, with gusts reaching 100 miles per hour.*

MULTI-SYLLABLE ADJECTIVES 463

Multi-syllable adjectives form their comparative and superlative with *more* and *most*:

> *He is* ***more interesting*** *than his brother.*
> (~~He is interestinger than his brother.~~)
>
> *The* ***most intelligent*** *solution would be to do nothing.*
> (~~The intelligentest solution would be to do nothing.~~)

Some negatively prefixed forms are exceptions. They can take either *more* and *most* or *-er* and *-est*:

> *She's one of the* ***untidier*** *guests.*
> (or: She's one of the more untidy guests.)
>
> *Yesterday was the* ***unpleasantest*** *day of my life.*
> (or: Yesterday was the most unpleasant day of my life.)

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES (*BAD, GOOD, ILL, WELL*) 464

Some very frequent adjectives have irregular comparative and superlative forms.

Examples of the comparative and superlative of irregular adjectives

adjective	comparative	superlative
good	*better*	*best*
well	*better*	*best*
bad	*worse*	*worst*
ill	*worse*	*worst*
old	*older/elder*	*oldest/eldest*
far	*farther/further*	*farthest/furthest*
little	*smaller*	*smallest/littlest*

*The weather in Scotland was **better** than we thought.*

*Compared with the other teams in the division, they have had the **worst** results.*

*He was ill last week; this week he is **worse**.*

The same applies to the use of these words in compound adjectives:

*It's always advisable to book with the **best-known** company.*

*Don't you think she is **better-looking** than her sister?*

*That was one of the **worst-organised** trips I've ever been on.*

✪ ***Older/elder; farther/further***

Note that when talking about members of a family, *elder/eldest* may be used. In other contexts *older/oldest* are used:

*Janet is my **elder** sister but Mary is the **eldest**.*

*Their **eldest daughter** has just won a swimming scholarship to an American university.*
(preferred to: Their oldest daughter …)

*The cathedral is the **oldest** in Northern Europe.*
(~~The cathedral is the eldest in Northern Europe.~~)

Elder may not be used with *than*:

*My sister's **older** than me.*
(~~My sister's elder than me.~~)

There is no difference in meaning between *farther* and *further* when both refer to distances. However, only *further* is used when the meaning is 'extra' or 'additional':

*I just can't walk any **farther**.*

*The **furthest** road is sometimes the best road to take.*

*For **further** information, see your Weekend magazine supplement this Saturday.*
(~~For farther information see …~~)

COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADVERBS 465

Short adverbs normally have comparative and superlative forms with *-er* and *-est*. The most common examples are: *early*, *fast*, *hard*, *high*, *late*, *long*, *loud*, *low*, *near*, *soon*:

*Isn't it possible for them to come **earlier**?*

*Who jumped **highest** in last year's Olympics?*

*They said they couldn't finish the job **sooner** than midday.*

Adverbs with two or more syllables form the comparative and superlative with *more* and *most*:

*This book explains things a bit **more comprehensively** than the other one.*

*The new hotel is the **most elegantly** designed building in the city.*

The adverbs *well* and *badly* have the same comparative and superlative forms as the adjectives *good* (*better*, *best*) and *bad* (*worse*, *worst*):

*The whole team excelled themselves but Jane performed **better** than I expected.*

*We all sang badly but I sang **worst** of all.*

COMPARATIVES 466

Than 466a

Than is used to introduce the second element in a comparative structure:

*London is **less** crowded **than** Paris.*

*Don't you think the painting looks **better** in the kitchen **than** it does in the front room?*

*In the winter, I think hot drinks are **better** for you **than** cold drinks.*

*It was **warmer** yesterday **than** today.*

*He is much **more** intelligent **than** he looks.*

*She goes there **more** often **than** I used to.*

*These days Jim buys **more** things for Anna **than** Bill buys for his daughter.*

✪ *That* is not used to introduce the second element of a comparison:

*She seems thinner **than** she was the last time I saw her.*
(~~She seems thinner that she was the last time I saw her.~~)

When *than* is followed by a personal pronoun acting as the head of a noun phrase, the object forms (*me*, *him*, *her*, *us*, etc.) are used:

> *My sister is prettier **than me**.*
> (or: My sister is prettier than I am.)
> (~~My sister is prettier than I.~~)
>
> *While she is training, they'll all have better-paid jobs **than her**, won't they?*
> (or: While she is training, they'll all have better-paid jobs than she has, won't they?)
> (~~While she is training, they'll all have better-paid jobs than she, won't they?~~)

Rather than stresses one element of a comparison to the exclusion of the other (⇢ also **471g** below):

> *I'd say he was incompetent **rather than** ignorant.*
> (I'd say he was incompetent, not ignorant.)
>
> *They should buy experience **rather than** youth and energy if they want to progress as a team.*
> (They should buy experience, not youth and energy …)

Comparative meanings 466b

A comparative form relates one entity to another. If a person says *I feel better today*, they are comparing their present state with how they felt before, which may have been 'not well/bad', rather than 'well/good':

> *Their house is **smaller** than ours.*
> (both houses may be big, or both may be small, depending on context)

The use of *even* makes the meaning of the quality being compared inherent rather than relative:

> *You're there for a semester. It's not just three months. It may be **even longer** than that.*
> (speaker considers a semester, i.e. six months, to be a long time)

Still and *yet* are more formal alternatives to *even*:

> *The last lap of the race was **still** more exciting.*
>
> ***Yet** more perplexing was the loss of £200 from the main company office.*

Even and *still* are often used in end position, especially in spoken contexts:

> *They played badly didn't they, **worse** than last week **even**.*
>
> *The journey home was **more boring still**.*

Traditional grammar books indicate that when two entities are compared, only the comparative form (*-er* or *more*) can be used. However, in informal spoken contexts the comparative and the superlative form are both used, with a general preference for the superlative:

> *Both brothers are very bright but Paul is **the brightest**.*
> (or, more formal: Both brothers are very bright but Paul is the brighter.)

Which of these two photos do you think is ***the best****? I need one for the passport form.*
(preferred to: Which of these two photos do you think is the better?)

In more formal contexts, *the* + comparative + *of* may be used:

The ***more relaxed of*** *the candidates didn't in fact get the job.*
(less formal: The more relaxed candidate didn't in fact get the job.)

Promotional texts often use comparatives rather than superlatives to evaluate products. The comparison is often implicit with other members of the class of entities:

[review of a new car model; *toss in* means 'add in']
The Shelta is a ***more refined****,* ***keener****-handling car that's a* ***more restful*** *motorway mile-eater. And you can toss in the bonus of* ***greater*** *exclusivity.*

Premodification of comparatives 466c

A lot, far, much

To indicate a much greater degree on the scale of comparison, premodifiying adverbs such as *a lot*, *far*, *much* and *somewhat* are used. The most informal and commonly used in speech is *a lot*:

Joan's been ***a lot happier*** *since she moved to London, hasn't she?*

The film was actually ***far more entertaining*** *than the review suggested.*

No one mentioned that I would get ***much less money*** *and would have to work* ***somewhat harder****.*

A bit, rather, slightly

To indicate a small degree on the scale of comparison, items like *a bit*, *rather*, *slightly* are used. The most informal of these is *a bit*, which is very common in conversation:

I think the coast is probably ***a bit cooler*** *at this time of the year.*

I think we're ***rather more broadminded*** *nowadays, certainly in comparison to the last generation.*

It's only ***slightly less humid*** *here than in Sri Lanka.*

A–Z 27 *Bit, a bit (of)*

Not (all) that much

Not (all) that much is used with a comparative adjective ending in *-er* to mean 'not as much as expected or indicated'. In all cases, the omission of *all* is optional, especially in informal contexts:

*The ferry is****n't all that much*** *cheaper.*

She's ***not that much older*** *than him, just a few years.*

More than, less than

More than and *less than* are both used before adjectives as alternatives to *very* and *not very*:

> *They are* ***more than satisfied*** *with the pay rise they have received.*
> (very satisfied)
>
> *Her tutor was* ***less than happy*** *with the examination results.*
> (not very happy)

No, not any

No + comparative and *not any* + comparative can be used to indicate a limit to the scale of a comparison:

> *Some of the roses in the garden were* ***no bigger*** *than small coins.*
>
> *Three of the children were* ***not any older*** *than six or seven.*
> (an equivalent alternative is: Three of the children were as young as six or seven.)

Fixed phrases

A number of fixed phrases are used to indicate the extent (or otherwise) of the difference between the degrees being compared. These include:

all the better
all the more

any the wiser
none the wiser

any the worse
no worse
none the worse

> *She is* ***all the better*** *for seeing him again.*
>
> *The film was* ***all the more*** *impressive because the ending left the mystery unexplained.*
>
> *There's no point telling him. He won't be* ***any the wiser*** *even if he knew the truth.*
>
> *They seem to be* ***none the worse*** *for having been interviewed by the police.*

COMPARISONS OF SIMILARITY 467

As … as 467a

When comparisons of degree are made between things which are similar or the same, then the comparative clause structure *as* + adjective/adverb + *as* + phrase or clause is frequently used:

> *Is the Sultan of Brunei* ***as*** *rich* ***as*** *the Queen of England?*
>
> *They are* ***as*** *keen to join in* ***as*** *we are.*
>
> *Property in Guanzhou isn't* ***as*** *expensive* ***as*** *in Hong Kong.*
>
> *Because of the currents, they had swum out* ***as*** *far* ***as*** *they dared.*
>
> *He doesn't smoke* ***as*** *much* ***as*** *he used to.*

The negative of *as … as* may be *not as … as*, or *not so … as*. The form *not as … as* is by far the more frequent:

This new dentist is ***not as*** *good* ***as*** *my old one.*

It's ***not as*** *cold* ***as*** *it was yesterday.*

The second quiz was ***not so*** *easy* ***as*** *the first.*

These two extremes are ***not so*** *contradictory* ***as*** *they might seem.*
(or: These two extremes are not as contradictory as they might seem.)

When used with attributive adjectives in a noun phrase introduced by the indefinite article *a/an*, the word order is *as/not as/not so* + adjective + *a/an* + noun + *as*:

It was ***as happy a marriage as*** *anyone could ever dream of.*

It's ***not as difficult a task as*** *I thought.*

It turned out to be ***not so big a room as*** *they said it was.*

A–Z 37 *Ever*

The same, similar 467b

The same as or *the same* + noun phrase + *as* are used to say whether things are identical:

Most shopping malls are not ***the same as*** *the ones back home in Chicago.*

That woman over there has just bought ***the same*** *video recorder* ***as*** *ours.*

They're both wearing ***the same*** *jacket* ***as*** *my husband.*

Similar means 'sharing many characteristics but not identical'. It is followed by *to*:

Your garden is ***similar to*** *ours, long and narrow.*

What he's done is ***similar to*** *what we're trying to do.*

✪ *Than* is not used with *same* or *similar*, because *than* indicates a difference:

Her Walkman is ***the same as*** *the one I used to have.*
(~~Her Walkman is the same than the one I used to have.~~)

Your kitchen is ***similar to*** *ours.*
(~~Your kitchen is similar than ours.~~)

Same may be intensified using the following adverbs:

almost
exactly
just
more or less
much
nearly
precisely
roughly

Your jacket's ***exactly the same*** *as mine.*

We did ***more or less the same*** *as we always do, just toured round and stayed in bed-and-breakfast places.*

539 **Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

Very and *exact* may also intensify *same*, but they are used **after** *the*:

> *They bought **the very same** DVD player as we did without realising it.*
> (or: They bought the exact same DVD player …)

Like 467c

Like is used as a preposition and as a conjunction (but → **471f** below) to indicate similarity:

> *Your dog's **like** mine. He'll eat anything.*
>
> *Are you going to France again, **like** you did last year?*

The following adverbs are commonly used to modify *like*:

- *a bit*
- *a little*
- *exactly*
- *just*
- *quite* (meaning 'somewhat')
- *somewhat*
- *very*

> *Your ideas sound just **a little like** our ideas.*
>
> *It feels **just like** a new car.*
>
> *His nature is **quite like** my father's.*

Note that sentences with *look*, *seem* and *sound* may sometimes not be true comparisons but may be hedged modal forms:

> [identifying a coat among a pile of coats]
> *That looks **like** mine.*
> (could mean either: 'It appears similar to mine.' or 'It probably is mine.')
>
> *That sounds **like** Steve's car.*
> (could mean either: 'That car sounds similar to Steve's car.' or 'That probably is Steve's car.')

A–Z 49 *Like*

SUPERLATIVES 468

General 468a

Superlative adjectives are used to compare an entity with a whole group of which they are assumed to be a part:

> *Nepal has the world's **highest** mountain.*
>
> *Japan is the second **richest** country in the world.*
>
> *In the 1980s Jack Nicklaus was the **best** golfer in the world.*

When a superlative is used with *the* to refer to something or somebody in a group, a prepositional phrase is often used to identify the group:

> *Henry was **the tallest** of them all.*
>
> *She was **the fastest worker** on the staff.*

✪ Note the use of *in*, not *of*, when places are mentioned:

> *Ben Nevis is the **highest** mountain **in** Scotland.*
> (~~Ben Nevis is the highest mountain of Scotland.~~)

Superlative forms also occur in a range of common prepositional phrases:

> *She's not been **in the best of health** this winter.*
>
> *The storm was **at its worst** at 2 a.m.*
>
> *Valencia were not **at their best** in the first half but things improved later in the game.*

Note the non-superlative use of *most*, meaning 'very'/'extremely', which may occur with the indefinite article *a*:

> *That really is **most** kind of you.*
> (~~That really is kindest of you.~~)
>
> *The group has completed the exercise **most** imaginatively and above all **most** accurately.*
>
> *It was **a most interesting** lecture.*

Use of *the* 468b

The is obligatory before superlative adjectives used attributively:

> *It's **the most interesting** novel I've read in a long time.*
> (~~It's most interesting novel I've read in a long time.~~)
>
> *She's not **the most approachable** person, first thing in the morning.*
> (~~She's not most approachable person, first thing in the morning.~~)

When a superlative adjective is used predicatively in expressions which define an entity, *the* is obligatory:

> *His brother is quite tall but Henry is **the tallest** of them all.*
> (~~His brother is quite tall but Henry is tallest of them all.~~)

The is optional before predicative adjectives in a *wh*-clause or in adverbial uses of the superlative:

> *Let's see who's **(the) quickest** at answering these questions.*
>
> *It depends on what's **(the) best** for you personally.*
>
> *Patsy arrived **(the) earliest**.*

The + superlative adjective + *of* is also used, particularly before indefinite nouns. The structure is rather formal:

> ***The best of*** *ideas happen when you are not thinking.*
>
> *In New York even* ***the cheapest of*** *apartments is not affordable.*

The is optional with superlative adverbs modifying verb phrases:

> *A lot of students work hard but mature students generally work (**the**) **hardest**.*

The is used with superlative adverbs if the adverb modifies an adjective:

> *It is one of **the most beautifully** structured pieces of music.*

Intensifying superlatives 468c

Imaginable, possible, etc.

In more formal contexts, superlatives can be complemented by adjectives such as *conceivable*, *imaginable*, *possible*, *thinkable*, etc., in the structure superlative adjective + noun head + complement:

> *It's the **most beautiful** landscape **imaginable**.*

Superlative adjective complements of this kind can alternatively precede the noun head:

> *The travelling conditions were designed to inflict the **greatest possible** suffering.*

By far, easily, much, quite, etc.

The emphatic expressions *by far*, *easily*, *much*, *quite* (meaning 'absolutely'), and *simply* may premodify expressions with *the* + superlative:

> ***By far the biggest*** *island in Scilly is St Mary's.*
>
> *They were **easily the best** vegetables in the competition.*
>
> *We scaled many minor cliff faces during the expedition, but this was **much the most dangerous**.*
>
> *It was **quite the most significant** event in recent Greek history.*

Very

Very is used to emphasise superlatives with *best*, *worst*, *first* and *last*:

> *This is the **very best** choice you will ever have.*
>
> *We had to wait for ages. We were the **very last** in the queue.*

The absolute

The absolute may also be used to intensify a superlative adjective:

> *It was **the absolute biggest** ice cream I'd ever seen.*
>
> *Yes, after 25 years of successful development of the North Sea, our expertise is some of the best, if not **the absolute best**, in the world.*

COMPARISONS OVER TIME 469

Comparatives and superlatives are often used to compare things at different times:

She looks ***healthier*** *than the last time we saw her.*

They are ***more optimistic*** *than they were about the direction of the economy.*

It was the ***best*** *summer holiday I'd had in five years.*

In order to say that there is gradual or progressive change, either the comparative adjective or adverb can be repeated or the phrase *more and more* can premodify an adjective or adverb:

She's hardly eating and just getting ***thinner*** *and* ***thinner****.*

I can't follow him. He's become ***more and more*** *incoherent.*

The team started to play ***more and more*** *aggressively.*

In more formal uses, the adverb modifier *increasingly* is used for similar purposes:

We are more optimistic, a little wealthier and enjoy the conviction that things are changing for the better and that the worst is somehow behind us in an ***increasingly*** *distant past.*

Ever is often used with comparative constructions with *than* and *as … as*:

The students scored ***more*** *passes* ***than ever*** *this year, and the exams were* ***as*** *tough* ***as ever****.*

Ever and *yet* can be used as the complement of a superlative construction to indicate a time dimension. *Ever* may occur immediately following a superlative adjective or after the noun. *Yet* normally follows the noun:

It was ***the biggest ever*** *demonstration of loyalty to the governing party.*

That was ***my most difficult*** *moment* ***ever****.*

In tonight's game the team face ***their stiffest*** *test* ***yet****.*

COMPARISON AND OTHER WORD CLASSES 470

The determiners (and their pronoun equivalents) *little*, *many* and *much* are used in their comparative and superlative forms to make comparisons. They have irregular comparative and superlative forms.

Comparative and superlative forms of determiners/pronouns

determiner/pronoun	comparative	superlative
little	*less*	*least*
many, much	*more*	*most*

It's ***less exciting*** *than the first book.*

That's the margarine that has ***the least fat content****.*

They haven't got ***much*** *but I'm afraid they can't offer you* ***more****.*

There's ***more milk*** *in the fridge.*

Which of you could come and help us? Who's got ***the most spare time****?*

⁘ also **190 Determiners and pronouns**

More and *less* 470a

More and *less* can be used with all the major phrase classes:

- Noun phrases:

  They will go on strike unless they are offered ***more*** *money.*

  People seem to have ***less*** *money to spend nowadays.*

- Verb phrases:

  Leeds attack ***more*** *than Milan but their defence will see them through.*

  It rains ***less*** *here than in the west.*

- Adjective phrases:

  Their house is ***more*** *spacious than ours.*

  I'm ***less*** *keen on seeing Oxford than London.*

- Adverb phrases:

  The garage over the road does repairs ***more*** *quickly.*

  He seemed to answer the questions ***less*** *honestly than the other witness.*

- Prepositional phrases:

  The problem lies ***more*** *in her attitude than in her ability.*

  I have ***less*** *in common with my cousins than with some of my colleagues at work.*

More of and *less of* can be used to modify countable nouns which are gradable (i.e. which can be measured on a scale):

I'm afraid she's being ***more of*** *a hindrance than a help.*

I'm ***less of*** *an expert than you are.*

Less is used with singular non-count nouns. It is often followed by *than*:

Now I have ***less*** *time* ***than*** *her to do jobs around the house.*

I think I'm getting old. I have a lot ***less*** *energy* ***than*** *I used to.*

Increasingly, in a wide range of spoken and written contexts, *less* is used with plural countable nouns:

If there were ***less than*** *six students in the class, they cancelled it.*
(or: If there were fewer than six students in the class, they cancelled it.)

Most and *least* 470b

Most and *least*, like *more* and *less*, can be used with all major phrase classes:

- Noun phrases:

  Whoever has ***most*** *money can pay now and we can pay it back later.*

  We had the ***least*** *work to do of any of the groups.*

- Verb phrases:

  Restaurants and taxis – that's where we spent the ***most****.*

  I wouldn't like to say who works ***least*** *in that family, no one seems to have a proper job.*

- Adjective phrases:

  They're the ***most*** *delicious chocolates I've ever tasted.*

  She seemed to be the ***least*** *anxious of all.*

- Adverb phrases:

  Of all of them, she worked the ***most*** *intensely.*

  I think she spoke the ***least*** *sincerely of all the women.*

- Prepositional phrases:
  In the case of prepositional phrases, *mostly*, not *most* is used, and has the meaning of 'more than in any other case':

  The damage was ***mostly*** *to the side of the car.*

  This action provoked a storm of international criticism, ***not least*** *from the United States.*

190 Determiners and pronouns for *less* and *least* as determiners

COMPARATIVE CLAUSES 471

General 471a

Comparative clauses are clauses which express the second part of a comparison of degree. Comparative clauses (in bold type in the examples) are frequently introduced by *as*, *than*, or *which/that*. They function as complements of comparative expressions (in green in the examples):

The garden wasn't as big ***as I had imagined it would be****.*

The interview was the same ***as I'd experienced several times before****.*

He's worked here longer ***than I have****.*

In Malaysia we lived in a bigger house ***than we could ever afford in Britain****.*

It was the ugliest dog ***that I'd ever seen****.*

The weather wasn't so bad ***that it spoiled the holiday****.*

Clauses with *as* 471b

As (or *just as*) is used in comparative clauses as a conjunction:

Do they drive on the left in Australia, ***as*** *we do?*

English uses modal verbs to refer to future times, ***just as*** *other languages use verb endings.*

Subject-verb inversion may occur after *as* with modal and auxiliary verbs, copular *be* and substitute *do*. In such inverted clauses, *just* is not used with *as*:

I only wanted to help, ***as would anyone have done****.*

He was a train driver, ***as was his father*** *before him.*

[talking about a new computer]
It's got two USB connections, ***as did the old one*** *in fact.*

In informal contexts, *like* is frequently used instead of *as* (→ **471f** below):

Is he having a New Year's party, ***like*** *he did last year?*

Clauses with *as if* and *as though* 471c

As if and *as though* can introduce clauses operating as the second element in comparisons of similarity. They may be used in finite, or, in more formal contexts, non-finite clauses:

He took a deep breath before he spoke, ***as if*** *to keep himself calm.*

What's the matter? You're acting ***as if*** *you're in pain.*

He looked round the table ***as if*** *daring anyone to smile.*
(non-finite; more formal)

When I resigned from my job, I felt ***as though*** *a weight had been lifted from my shoulders.*

Chantal looked uncomfortable, ***as though*** *forced to consider the matter for the first time.*
(non-finite; more formal)

She stood up ***as though*** *to leave.*

Ellipted clauses with adjectival complements are common with *as if* and *as though* in more formal contexts:

She just sat there, ***as if totally unaware*** *of what was happening.*

He took off his glasses and began to polish them ***as though afraid*** *of showing some emotion.*

Clauses with *so*, *too*, *enough* 471d

Comparative clauses with *so* + adjective/adverb + *as*, *too* + adjective/adverb, and adjective + *enough* are followed by non-finite clauses with the *to*-infinitive:

Would anyone be ***so*** *irresponsible* ***as*** *to drink and drive after a party like that?*

They are just ***too*** *upset to speak about it.*

He was driving ***too*** *slowly to have had any chance of getting there before us.*

If anyone is stupid ***enough*** *to withdraw now, they'll lose all their money.*

When *too* is used with an attributive adjective in a noun phrase introduced by the indefinite article *a/an*, the word order is *too* + adjective + *a/an* + noun:

It's ***too big a job*** *to finish in one day.*

Clauses with *the same* 471e

The same as may introduce comparative clauses of equality:

We're going to Spain for our holidays, ***the same as*** *we always do.*

A comparative clause may follow when *the same* premodifies a noun. The comparative clause may be introduced by *as* or by a relative pronoun (*who/which/that/zero relative*, etc.):

He gave ***the same*** *reason* ***as*** *you did.*

That's ***the same*** *woman* ***who*** *I saw the other day.*

It's ***the same*** *switch* ***that*** *broke the last time.*

In informal use, when *same* is used in front position, *the* can be omitted:

A: *What did you have to drink?*
B: ***Same as*** *I always do. Tea.*

Clauses with *like* 471f

Like can also be used to express similarity or identity either as a conjunction or as a preposition. Traditional grammar books warn that only *as* can be used as a conjunction and not *like*, but its use as a conjunction is widespread, especially in spoken English. It is generally regarded as a less formal alternative to *as*:

But bees, even on chilly mornings, are capable of making a cold start. They shiver just ***as*** *we do to warm our muscles.*
(formal, written)

Do you go to Giorgio's every Friday, ***like*** *we do?*
(informal, spoken)

A–Z 49 *Like*

Clauses with *rather than* 471g

Rather than is normally used to stress one element of a comparison to the exclusion of the other. It is typically followed by a verb in the same non-tensed form as the verb with which the comparison is made:

> *I always prefer **getting** up early in the morning **rather than lying** in bed reading the papers.*
>
> *The editor has decided to **cut** the paragraph **rather than rewrite** it.*
> (also possible: '… rather than to rewrite it.' or '… rather than rewriting it.')

Rather than is often fronted to emphasise the comparison. When fronted in this way, the *-ing* form or the base form, but normally not the *to*-infinitive form, is used:

> ***Rather than complain** all the time, he decided to change to another hotel.*
> (or: Rather than complaining all the time, he decided to change to another hotel.)
> (~~Rather than to complain all the time, he decided to change to another hotel.~~)

Clauses with superlatives 471h

Both finite and non-finite clauses may follow superlatives. The non-finite clauses have a similar function to relative clauses (⁘ **317j**):

> *That's one of **the best** films I've ever seen.*
>
> *She's **the youngest** swimmer to qualify for the Olympics.*
>
> *They were **the fittest** team finishing the course.*

Double *the* + comparative 471i

Two comparative clauses preceded by *the more* (or *the less*, or a combination of both) are used to say that one situation, event or action results from another. The entities compared are normally fronted:

> ***The more** I swim, **the more** energetic I feel.*
>
> ***The less** I work, **the less** I feel like working.*
>
> ***The more** I read it, **the less** impressed I am.*

The same structure can be used to coordinate noun phrases. The entities compared are normally fronted:

> ***The less** effort they put in, **the more** money they earned. It was very unfair, really.*

Similar structures are used involving *the* + comparative adjective/adverb. Again, the entities compared are fronted:

> ***The sooner** we finish, **the earlier** we can go home.*
>
> ***The more** important she became, **the less** we saw each other.*

⁘ **473b Predicative complement** in **Word order and focus** on subject-verb inversion after expressions of comparison in fronted complements

Word order and focus

Introduction 472
Fronting 473
- Direct objects 473a
- Predicative complements 473b
- Adjuncts 473c
- Verbs 473d

Headers and tails 474
Structural options 475
- Indirect object versus prepositional complement 475a
- Active versus passive voice 475b
- Cleft sentences (*It was David who called*.) 475c
- *Wh*-cleft sentences (*What we need is a hammer*.) 475d
- *The thing*, *one thing*, *something* 475e
- Anticipatory *it* 475f
- Existential *there* 475g
- Raising (*It was hard to understand*.) 475h
- Pseudo-intransitive constructions (*Fish cooks quickly*.) 475i
- Nominalisation and adjectivalisation 475j

Word order and focus

INTRODUCTION 472

Word order in this chapter is principally concerned with how the elements of the clause (subject, verb, object, complement, adjunct) are arranged. Word order choices also affect phrases, and the chapters on phrase classes (155–257) specify the patterns of word order found in noun, verb, adjective, adverb and prepositional phrases.

Theme and rheme

Clauses may be considered as having two parts in relation to how information is arranged within them: the theme (or topic) and the rheme (or comment). The theme/topic is typically the starting point of the clause, who or what the clause is 'about'. The rheme/comment is the main part of the message, the important information given about that topic. In the sentence:

theme/topic	rheme/comment
Sue	| *is starting a new job on Monday.*

the clause is 'about' Sue, and the new or important information is that she is starting a new job on Monday. In English, the theme/topic is located in the beginning of the clause (and is most typically the subject), while the rheme/comment occupies the latter part of the clause after the subject.

The end of the clause is important in English, as that is where the most 'weight' falls in terms of the focus on new information, sometimes referred to as endweight.

Marked and unmarked word order

Unmarked word order refers to the normal, most typical sequence of elements. For example, the unmarked word order for a declarative clause with an object is S–V–O, where S is the subject, V is the verb and O is the object. In English, the word order O–S–V is marked (possible but far less typical):

S V O
He loves football.
(unmarked, normal word order: the subject, *he*, is the theme)

O S V
That furniture we bought years ago, this lot is more recent.
(marked word order: *that furniture* is the theme, rather than *we*)

Marked (untypical) word order may be used to create various kinds of focus, that is, special emphasis on particular elements for a variety of purposes.

The basic rules for clause and sentence structures (⇢ 269–337) describe how to build unmarked sentences. However, in connected discourse, other choices have to be made concerning such things as introducing new topics, distinguishing between new and old information, linking events in particular ways, flagging or highlighting the importance of something, foregrounding some things and backgrounding others, all of which may have implications for choices of word order.

Simple word order choices

Some choices of word order simply rearrange elements without any other grammatical changes. These include fronting and the use of headers and tails.

Fronting involves moving objects, complements and adjuncts to front position in the clause, which, in unmarked word order, is typically occupied by the subject:

> **object**
> ***That bowl*** *we got in Italy. The other one's from Spain, I think.*
> (fronting of the object in order to focus on a contrast between the two bowls)
>
> **adjunct**
> ***First thing tomorrow morning*** *we'll have to check all the plants for frost damage.*
> (fronting of the adjunct to emphasise when the task must be done)

The creation of headers and tails (⇢ **96, 97** and **474**), is another way of putting extra focus on selected entities.

In the case of fronting, the elements remain fully integrated within the clause. In the case of headers and tails, elements of the clause are placed outside of the clause structure, either immediately before the first clause element or after all other elements in the clause. This is a particular phenomenon of spoken grammar:

> **header S V O adjunct**
> *That brown chair, we bought* ***that*** *years and years ago.*
> (header: gives extra focus to *that brown chair*)
>
> **S V complement tail**
> ***They****'re awful people, my neighbours.*
> (tail: gives extra focus to the subject)

Choices of structure

Some choices of word order involve choosing between alternative structures, for example choosing whether to use an indirect object or a prepositional complement with verbs such as *give* or *bring*, or choosing whether to use active or passive voice:

> [talking about birthdays and activities associated with them]
> *Do you send birthday* **cards** *to your friends?*

The new, important information here, which would be phonologically stressed, is *to your friends*. Birthdays and things associated with birthdays are already the topic of conversation; they are 'old' or 'shared' information. *Do you send your friends birthday cards?*, using an indirect and direct object, is also possible and correct, but would have suggested a focus on birthday cards as 'new', 'non-shared' information.

Some choices of word order involve more complex grammatical structures and choices, for example embedded clauses or cleft sentences:

> *It was on Sunday I first noticed I had a rash.*
> (cleft sentence enabling emphasis on 'on Sunday')
>
> *So* ***what you really want*** *is a hotel that's got the facilities for the children, isn't it?*
> (*wh*-cleft enabling extra focus on the complement 'a hotel that's got …')

⇢ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

> *That they thought they could use the computers without permission is hard to believe.*
> (*that*-clause as subject enabling extra focus on the object of 'believe')

FRONTING 473

Direct objects 473a

A direct object may be fronted, that is, made the theme (or 'thematised') in a declarative clause, especially in spoken language; this occurs most typically when the speaker wishes to contrast things. Phonologically, the fronted object (bold in the examples below) is typically stressed:

> [speaker is talking about the early days of computers, and how he bought one type after another and occasionally upgraded the power]
>
> O S V
>
> *And then we bought an Impact, and* ***that*** *we couldn't get upgraded.*
> (the 'Impact' is contrasted with other computers which the speaker upgraded)
>
> O S V
>
> *I must admit,* ***my favourite books*** *I do read over and over.*
> (here there is an implicit contrast with other books which the speaker would not read over and over)
>
> [talking about pipes a plumber is working on; contrasting different ones]
>
> O S V
>
> *He's got those disconnected, but* ***that one*** *he's still got connected.*

Objects of prepositional verbs and phrasal verbs may also be fronted:

> ***The other list*** *we can look at later.*
>
> [wife talking about how she and her husband share the work in their garden]
> *I do the flowers;* ***the vegetables*** *he looks after.*

Object fronting can also occur in interrogatives in informal speech, but this is not very common:

> [speaker is looking over someone's shoulder while they are cooking]
>
> O aux S V
>
> ***Soup*** *are you making? Wow, lovely!*

Predicative complements 473b

Subject predicative complements are often fronted for extra focus or for contrast. This may occur in declaratives and in interrogatives.

In informal spoken language, fronted noun subject complements are more common than fronted adjective subject complements:

> [looking at a photo of an old car]
>
> complement S V
>
> *Mm,* ***my very first car****, that was.*

C modal S V
***Jack**, could it have been?*
(fronted noun complement)

C S V
***Ambitious** it may be, but when a club sells 20,000 season tickets and makes £3.3 million during the summer, it knows it is back in the big league.*
(fronted adjective complement)

Fronted complements which are expressions of comparison may be followed by subject-verb inversion, especially in more formal written styles:

> [from a text about the Maastricht Agreement signed in 1992 by 12 member states establishing the European Union]
> *Maastricht was not a triumph for any Government, although each of the Governments present claimed it as one. **Least of all** was it a triumph for the British Prime Minister.*
>
> *Children make a substantial contribution to the social, economic and cultural life of their families, communities, and even to national economies. These contributions are rarely recorded by official statistics and are usually ignored when policy decisions are made. **Equally unnoticed** is the unpaid 'work' that children do around the home, in the fields, or at institutions of learning.*
>
> [discussing a conference on debt and international development]
> *The conference was helpful in aiding my understanding of the great mass of information that I am faced with in my volunteer role. But **much more important for me** was to be exposed to the experience of people working with the poor in the Third World whose suffering results from debt.*

Object predicative complements may also occasionally be fronted:

> A: *Down our end in Victoria Street there was a bookmaker they used to call Ray, and he had just one arm. '**Ray the Bookie**' we used to call him.*
> B: *Yeah. I can remember him.*

Adjuncts 473c

Adjuncts may be fronted for emphasis or contrast:

> ***Ten years** we've lived here.*
>
> ***Without my glasses** I can't see a thing.*

When adjuncts of negative meaning (e.g. *never*, *not once*, *rarely*, *seldom*) are fronted for emphasis, they are followed by subject-verb inversion:

> ***Not once** did she thank me.*
> (~~not once thanked she me.~~)
>
> ***Seldom** had we witnessed such bad behaviour.*

⁘ 319–337 Adjuncts

In rather formal styles, inversion may occur after initial *thus*, and after expressions such as *in this way*, *for this reason*:

> [at the time of writing, Mr Blair was the British Prime Minister, and Mr Campbell was his press secretary, with whom he had a very close working relationship]
> ***Thus** does Mr Blair find himself ever more closely closeted with Mr Campbell.*

⇢ **324 Front position** in **Adjuncts** for a full account of fronting of adjuncts

Verbs 473d

A lexical verb with an accompanying complement or adjunct may sometimes be fronted for purposes of focusing on some other element of the verb phrase:

> [British Prime Minister Tony Blair, speaking when newly elected in 1997]
> *The British people are a great people. There is no greater honour than to serve them, and **serve them** we will.*
> (creates strong endweight on *will*, since it must be phonologically stressed in final position)
>
> ***Sitting in the garden** I've been, all morning.*

Occasionally, an auxiliary/modal verb and a lexical verb may both be fronted. This typically occurs in spoken language:

> *Why didn't you phone your mother? **Been really panicking** she has.*

HEADERS AND TAILS 474

Headers and tails stand outside of the normal subject – verb – object – complement – adjunct clause structure. They typically occur in informal spoken language.

Headers

Headers usually take the form of an initial noun phrase which refers to the same entity as a later pronoun. They are used to focus on an entity, or to highlight contrasts:

> ***Paul**, in this job that **he**'s got now, when he goes into the office, he's never quite sure where he's going to be sent.*
> (Paul is the speaker's new topic or entity focused on)
>
> ***Edward**, **he**'s always the first person to complain.*

Headers may also occur with interrogative clauses:

> ***That key**, did you put **it** there or did I?*

Headers may involve more than one extra noun phrase used initially, to take the listener step-by-step from familiar entities to the new entity the speaker wishes to focus on or say something about:

given/old information → **new information**

> ***His cousin in Bedford**, **her boyfriend**, **his parents** bought him a car for his birthday.*

Tails

Tails involve noun phrases used at the end of the clause, referring to the same person or thing as a previous pronoun in the clause. Such word order is typically used to highlight judgment, comment or evaluation rather than mere statement of fact:

> *And **he**’s quite a comic, **the fellow**, you know.*

> ***It**’s really nicely done out, **this place**, all wooden.*

The tail may involve a demonstrative pronoun rather than a full noun phrase:

> ***It**’s a speciality, **that**.*

> ***It**’s driving me crazy, **this**.*

96 Headers; 97 Tails

STRUCTURAL OPTIONS 475

Indirect object versus prepositional complement 475a

In expressing the recipient or beneficiary of an action, there is often a choice between an indirect object or a prepositional complement.

Unmarked word order is indirect object (IO) + direct object (DO):

IO DO
*Did you give him **the money**?*

If the recipient/beneficiary is to receive more focus, it can be expressed as a prepositional complement (PC) and placed at the end of the clause, giving it endweight:

[speaker B has just given speaker A a present]
A: *Oh, you didn’t have to do that!*
DO PC
B: *I bought **a present** for Rhonda as well.*
(*Rhonda* is the new, important information here; ‘presents’ are old, given information)

DO
*The plans were revised about 1974 but they still gave **a disproportionate focus***
PC
to France.

Where two pronouns are involved, a prepositional complement is often preferred:

> DO PC
> *She wrote her name and address on the card and gave* ***it*** *to me.*
> (or: … and gave me it./… and gave it me.)
>
> DO PC
> *I think my mother gave* ***them*** *to them.*
> (preferred to: … gave them them.)

Delexical expressions, using verbs such as *do*, *get*, *give*, *make*, *take* enable a verb-type meaning to be expressed in a following noun object. In expressions where the verb *give* is used delexically, IO + DO is preferred to DO + PC:

> IO DO
> *Well, I gave them* ***a song****.*
> (I sang)
> (~~I gave a song to them.~~)
>
> IO DO
> *The doctor gave him* ***a quick examination****.*
> (examined him)
> (~~The doctor gave a quick examination to him.~~)

Prepositional complements may be fronted, especially in formal styles, creating endweight on the direct object:

> PC
> *To his wife he gave* ***a pearl necklace****.*

Indirect objects are not normally fronted:

> IO
> *I gave Liam* ***the wrong postcode****.*
> (~~Liam I gave the wrong postcode.~~)

Active versus passive voice 475b

Unmarked active voice word order places the subject first, since the subject is typically the theme (who or what the clause is 'about'). Passive voice enables the speaker either to omit reference to the agent/doer altogether (unless the agent is required by the verb) or to place the agent/doer in a prepositional phrase after the verb and thus create focus on it:

> *I* ***was admitted*** *to hospital.*
> (focus is on the rheme, my being admitted to hospital; compare: 'The hospital admitted me', where *the hospital* would be unmarked subject/theme, thus losing its focus)
>
> *I was just coming home and five minutes after I left this friend I was with, he* ***was attacked*** *by two men.*
> (the rheme includes the agents – *two men*)

*He **got arrested**.*
(focus on the event of his arrest; there is no need to explicitly mention the agent, understood as probably the police; compare: 'He was arrested by a huge, ugly police officer', with focus on the agent)

*The audio-lingual method of teaching **was imposed** upon us.*
(no one is named or blamed for the event)

*The hotel **was owned** by the Greek Church, wasn't it?*
(obligatory agent phrase with the verb *own*; but compare: 'The Greek Church owned the hotel', where *the Greek Church* loses its special focus)

↠ also **480, 484, 485** in **The passive** for pseudo-passives with *have*

Cleft sentences (*It was David who called.*) 475c

A cleft sentence is one where a single message has been split/divided (or 'cleft') into two clauses. Cleft sentences with *it* allow different clause elements to be brought into focus. In a typical *it*-cleft structure, the focus is on the final element of the *it*-clause (in green in the examples below), with the subsequent *wh*-clause (underlined in the examples) reiterating given or previously known information:

[talking of someone whose job it is to evict people from houses for unpaid rents, mortgages, etc.; the dwellings are 'repossessed' by the bank or other lender]
*He was telling me he was called in for a repossession this week. **It was** an elderly lady who had this house and they'd sent her umpteen letters and appeals and she'd ignored the lot.*
(focus on the subject, *an elderly lady*; 'who had this house' is given/old information in the context of house possession)

[talking about waiting for an eye operation]
A: *I talked it over with my optician then went to my doctor and got a reference to the hospital which would be about March and he warned me that it would be about six months.*
B: *So **it was** in March that you went?*
(focus on the adjunct *in March*; 'going (to the hospital)' is already given/old information in the context)

*I doubt people would have as many pets because **it's** usually the children who say 'Mum can I have a pet?'.*

*I've always had morning stiffness, I accept that's part of my life. By the time I've had my pills for two hours in the morning, the stiffness eases and I'd sooner have a bit of stiffness than I'd have the pain. **It's** the pain I can't cope with.*
(focus on the object of the prepositional verb 'cope with': *the pain*)

Wh-cleft sentences (*What we need is a hammer.*) 475d

What …

Wh-cleft sentences are most often introduced by *what*. *Wh*-cleft structures shift the focus to the end of the clause. The information in the *wh*-clause (bold in the examples below) is typically old or given in the context, while the copular complement (in green in the examples) contains the new, important information:

> [speakers are discussing speaker B's banking needs]
> A: ***What you need*** *is a telephone bank account.*
> B: *Mm.*
> (focus on the object; the listener's state of 'need' is already given; the telephone bank account is the new, important information)
>
> [speakers are talking of someone they dislike]
> A: *It never happens really that I get angry with people er but I did with him last night and I had to go for a walk to calm down.*
> B: *Well* ***what gets me*** *is the way he spends his time being sexist and unpleasant.*
> (focus on *the way he spends* …)

The *wh*-cleft construction may itself receive end-focus by occupying the complement slot in the main clause:

> [university literature tutorial about the writer Samuel Beckett and a critic who has written about Beckett's work, Martin Eslin]
> A: *You aren't just saying Eslin is occupying a philosophically untenable position therefore I'm occupying one which is tenable.*
> B: *No that's* ***what I don't want to say****.*
> A: *That's* ***what you don't want to say****.*
> B: *But I think that's* ***what James thought I wanted to say****.*
> C: *Yeah. What you're saying is Eslin is occupying a philosophically untenable position and also has misread Beckett.*

How …, where …

Wh-clefts with a *what*-clause as subject are far more frequent than *wh*-cleft sentences introduced by *why*, *where*, *how*, etc. as subject. One reason for this is that the meanings of *why*, *where*, *who*, *when* and *how* are often expressed by nouns such as *the person*, *the place*, *the way*, used in front position to create the same kind of focus on the complement of the main verb:

> *Well,* ***the way*** *I see it going is that the European Union will expand to include not only Lithuania but also other former Soviet Republics.*
> (or: How I see it going is that …)
>
> ***The place where*** *I've been is where they train local midwives.*
> (or: Where I've been is where they …)
>
> ***The reason*** *it wasn't sorted out earlier was because they were short of staff.*
> (or: Why it wasn't sorted out earlier was because …)
>
> ***The person*** *you need to talk to is the manager.*
> (preferred to: Who you need to talk to is the manager.)

> ***The day** we wanted to travel was a Monday, but it was all booked up.*
> (more frequent than: When we wanted to travel was a Monday, …)

However, when the *wh*-cleft clause is in complement position, *wh*-clauses are often used:

> [an elderly man, speaker A, is recounting how he was an apprentice railway wagon-maker as a young man]
> A: *And, of course, I gradually built up then to until I got the main overall jobs, and by the time I was twenty-one, of course, I was considered a full wagon repairer.*
> B: *Twenty-one was **when you finished your apprenticeship**.*
> A: *Yes, that's right.*

What … + clause

The *wh*-cleft may serve as a marker highlighting a whole clause or a longer stretch of discourse instead of focusing on one clause element. This is especially common in spoken language:

> [speaker B is asking for advice about pensions and insurance, on the telephone]
> A: *Would you like me to get one of the advisers to give you a call sometime? And they can go over with you basically what pensions are available to you and what life insurance.*
> B: *That would be good yeah.*
> A: *Okay that's fine. **What I'll do** is I'll take all your details from you.*
> B: *Uh-huh.*
> A: *And then we'll send it out to your closest branch and they give you a call in the next few days.*
>
> [talking about arriving late for an interview for a teaching post]
> *But by the time I got to that school I thought, well, nothing else can possibly go worse than this. And I went in and I got met at the front gate. And **what happened** was I'd arrived so late that I'd missed the tour round the school which I'd had previously when I'd been up. And I got there the time that I was due to see the headmistress. So I went straight to see the headmistress, went in and apologised for being late.*

This …/that … + clause

A clause introduced by *this* or *that* with a *wh*-cleft complement can also serve a similar purpose. *This* clauses generally point forward, *that* clauses generally point back in the text:

> *So **this** is what we'll do. Firstly, introduce the speakers.*
>
> *So if you want to stay warm in winter all you do is you wear, instead of wearing one thick layer of clothes, you wear lots and lots of layers of clothes. They may be thin but lots of, lots of layers and what they'll do is they'll trap air between them and **that**'s what will keep you warm.*
> (in this example, several types of focusing structure occur together; note also the construction with *all*: *all you do is* …)

What I did …

In spoken language, the connecting copular verb is often omitted:

> ***What I did**, I bought the medium size and they said I can take it back if it doesn't fit.*
>
> ***What happened**, I drove through one of those speed cameras and I wasn't concentrating.*

The thing, one thing, something 475e

Initial constructions with *the*, *a*, *something* plus a relative clause can be used to create focus on subsequent clause elements in a similar way to other cleft constructions. These constructions occur typically in informal contexts:

> ***The thing I was struck by** was their complacency.*
> (similar to: What I was struck by was their complacency.)
>
> ***One thing she's been doing recently** is buying white shoes to decorate them for people.*
>
> ***Something you might like to look at** is the sequence of events in the story.*

A–Z **74 *Thing, stuff***

Anticipatory *it* 475f

Anticipatory *it* often enables a subject to appear at the end of the clause, thus producing end-focus:

> ***It** amazes me how open and honest the staff are.*
>
> A: *Beatrice says that it's hard to insure antiques because, you know …*
> B: ***It**'s hard to put a value on it all for that, isn't it?*
> A: *Yeah.*
>
> *It says that you've got to pay certain legal fees if you leave. You know, we were thinking **it** was wrong paying £25 a week.*

474 above to compare tails with *it*

Extra focus on fronted time adjuncts may be created with *it is/was not until*, *it is/was only when*:

> ***It's not until** we lift the carpet in our bedroom that we'll know what we've got to deal with.*
> (compare: 'Until we lift the carpet in our bedroom, we won't know …', or 'We won't know what we've got to deal with until we lift …')
>
> ***It was only when** he mentioned that he lived in Cambridge that I knew who he was.*

Existential *there* 475g

Existential *there* makes possible an optional (and often preferred) variant of clauses with an indefinite subject. The pattern enables focus to be placed on the subject by locating it in the rheme of the clause instead of its usual position as the theme:

> [talking about visiting a house with a view to buying it]
> *We drove past it one time and* ***there*** *was a woman standing outside, she said, 'Oh what do you want?' I said, 'Oh, well, we've come to see the house.'*

With verbs other than *be*, the *there* construction is confined to formal/literary styles:

> *A few days after that meeting with Lucian,* ***there came*** *the letter.*

> *All signs of the market had vanished and in its place in front of the squat town hall,* ***there stood*** *only a platform.*

Raising (*It was hard to understand.*) 475h

There are often different structural options available with adjectives such as *certain*, *difficult*, *easy*, *hard*, *impossible*, *likely*, *sure*, verbs such as *appear*, *look*, *seem*, and mental process verbs in the passive such as *be considered*, *be estimated*, *be found*.

Adjectives such as *difficult*, *easy*, *hard*, *impossible* most typically take an infinitive-clause complement and most frequently occur with anticipatory *it*:

> ***It*** *was* ***impossible*** *to say hello to everyone.*

> ***It****'s not* ***easy*** *to ride a monocycle.*

The infinitive complement may, however, occur as the subject of the clause or as a 'raised subject', to create different types of focus:

- Infinitive clause as subject:

  To summarise our work ***is impossible****.*

  To find a shop open so early in the morning ***isn't going to be easy****.*

- Infinitive clause as 'object-raised-to-subject':

  In practice, however, this distinction is ***impossible to make****.*
  (*this distinction* is the object of *make* but becomes the grammatical subject of the clause)

  Jina's quite ***difficult to understand****.*
  (Jina, the object of *understand*, becomes the subject of the clause)

Verbs such as *appear*, *look*, *seem* present various structural options, which include raising:

> *He always* ***seems*** *to come at some unlucky moment*.
> (subject-to-subject raising: *he* is the subject of *come* and is chosen as the subject of *seem*; compare the anticipatory *it* alternative: 'It always seems (that) he comes at some unlucky moment.')
>
> *It* ***seems*** *that nobody does anything*.
> (anticipatory *it* as subject; *nobody* is the subject of *does*; compare: 'Nobody seems to do anything.')
>
> *That* ***looks*** *to be the right place*.
> (subject-to-subject raising; compare: 'It looks as if that is the right place.')

Mental process verbs in the passive such as *be considered*, *be estimated*, *be observed* and verbs reporting research results such as *be discovered*, *be found* also present raising options, especially in formal and academic styles:

> *Overall, the scheme* ***was found*** *to produce clear benefits on an individual level, largely in terms of teachers' revised perceptions and attitudes*.
> (subject-to-subject raising: *the scheme* is subject of *produce* and subject of *was found*)
>
> *On analysis of the women's diets, it* ***was found*** *that all the women in the control group consumed a minimum of 500 ml of cows' milk daily*.
> (anticipatory *it* as subject; compare subject-to-subject raising alternative: 'All the women in the control group were found to consume …')
>
> [text about the relationship between brain hemispheres and left- and right-handedness in humans]
> *The proportion of right hemisphere speakers* ***was estimated*** *to be about 9.27 per cent of the population irrespective of handedness*.
> (subject-to-subject raising; compare anticipatory *it* alternative: 'It was estimated that the proportion of …')

Pseudo-intransitive constructions (*Fish cooks quickly.*) 475i

Verbs which are normally used transitively are sometimes used intransitively in clauses where the real recipient/beneficiary of the action becomes the grammatical subject (⁘ **475h** above to compare raising), and where the agent is not mentioned. This gives endweight to the verb (and any accompanying complement/adjunct).

Verbs used in this way include:

clean
close
cook
drive
fold (up)
iron
keep
open
pack
photograph
print
read
sell
store
wash (up)

*The base of the bed is still in the dining room, they can't get it up the stairs although **it folds up**, you know, it's standing like this in the dining room.*

A: *I like your outfit you had on on Sunday.*
B: *Frank bought it last year for my birthday.*
A: *I thought maybe you'd got it while you were abroad.*
B: *No, no, he bought it from a woman, a friend, she makes them and she knitted it. Well, she knew my size so …*
A: *Yeah.*
B: *And **it washes up lovely**.*

[looking at a photograph of a woman called Helen]
***Helen photographs** really well doesn't she?*

⁘ also **283a Pseudo-intransitive construction** in **Verb complementation**

Nominalisation and adjectivalisation 475j

An option which is often chosen in academic and more formal styles is to use a noun-form of a verb as subject in order to turn the verb into the theme and to give extra focus to the rheme.

Nominalisation may be seen as the opposite of clefting (⁘ **475c**, above) in that two clauses are condensed into one. The nominalised clause (bold in the examples below) typically represents old, background or given information, and the complement (in green in the examples) represents new, important information:

***The capture of the suspected terrorists** is a major breakthrough for the authorities.*
(compare: The suspected terrorists have been captured, and this is a major breakthrough for the authorities.)

[about ex-US President Richard Nixon, whose presidency fell after the Watergate crisis]
*Ironically, **his insistence on taping all White House conversations to ease the writing of his future memoirs** was to be the major stumbling block to his surviving the crisis.*
(compare: He insisted on taping … and this was the major stumbling block …)

Adjective forms of verbs along with their complements may also function in a similar way to rearrange or condense information in the clause:

*She seemed most **insistent** that we should know it.*
(compare: She really insisted that we should know it.)

*I am very **desirous** to serve a friend.*
(compare: I very much desire to serve a friend.)

⁘ also **142 Nominalisation** in **Grammar and academic English** and **175 Formation of nouns (nominalisation)**

The passive

Introduction 476
Verb complementation and passive voice 477
The *be*-passive: formation 478
The *get*-passive: formation 479
Pseudo-passives with *have*: formation 480
Agent phrases 481
Passives without an agent phrase 482
    General 482a
    Detached/impersonal styles 482b
    Anticipatory *it* 482c
    Existential *there* 482d
Panel: Functions of the *get*-passive 483
Functions of pseudo-passives with *have* 484
***Get*- and *have*-pseudo-passives** 485
Verbs usually only found in the passive 486
***Deserve, need, require, want* with a passive meaning** 487

The passive

INTRODUCTION 476

Choice of voice (active or passive) is one of several ways of organising the content of clauses.

The active voice is the most frequent form, typically chosen to state something about the agent of an action (i.e. who does what). The agent is expressed as the grammatical subject and normally initiates the action:

__Ken__ took that photograph.

Ken is here the grammatical subject and also the agent of the action. *Ken* is also the starting point or theme of the message (⇢ **472**). *Took that photograph* is the rheme; it describes the action, what the speaker wants to say about *Ken*.

If a passive voice is chosen, the starting point of the message is the person or thing that is the affected participant of the action:

__Those houses__ were built by John Walton.

Here *those houses* are the starting point or theme of the message. *Those houses* becomes the grammatical subject of the clause. What is said about the houses here includes information about the agent (the person who built them, *John Walton*). In this case the agent is expressed in the prepositional phrase *by John Walton*.

Finite forms

Various forms of the passive exist (⇢ **478–480** below). The most typical is the passive with *be*:

I __was approached__ and asked to go along.

No crime __has been committed__.

We __were rung up__ by one of those consumer survey companies.

New features __are being added__ to the machines all the time.

Other forms share some characteristics with passive forms and are called pseudo-passive forms. They are based on *get* and *have* and are more common in spoken language. They are similar to true passives with *be* in that the grammatical subject is typically the recipient, rather than the agent, of the action. However, they differ from true passives in the functions they perform and the contexts in which they are used, especially with regard to the degree of involvement of the recipient in initiating the action, as can be seen in the table below (⇢ also **479** and **480**):

The village __is getting__ more and more __built up__.

She __had__ her car __stolen__.

In spoken language, the *get*-passive is especially common:

> *He **got thrown out** of a restaurant in town.*
>
> *I wrote a letter to a newspaper and it **got published**.*

Non-finite forms

Passive and pseudo-passive structures also occur in non-finite clauses:

> *I was grateful for the privacy and **to be allowed** to give in to the sadness that enveloped me.*
>
> ***Having been diagnosed** with cancer, I consulted both my acupuncturist, who was also a medical doctor, and my nutritionist.*
>
> *I assume the matter **to have been filed** in the appropriate records.*
>
> ***Organised** by the Norwegian Trade Union movement, the festivities were attended by representatives from the church and state.*
>
> *Do you remember Joan's son's wife **getting killed** at Mayheath?*
> (*get*-passive)
>
> [talking about a baby]
> *As soon as you pick her up, though, she shuts up. She doesn't like **having her nappy changed**.*
> (*have*-passive)

Passives may be seen as on a gradient from most typical, central passives to pseudo-passives and purely adjectival constructions. Agents and recipients of actions and events may be represented in a wide range of ways.

Examples of passives, pseudo-passives, and related constructions

example	comments
*He **was killed** in the war.*	central *be*-passive
*They **got arrested**.*	central *get*-passive
*He **got himself promoted** to manager.*	reflexive *get*-passive (recipient more actively involved)
*We **had some trees taken down**.*	*have*-pseudo-passive (causative: beneficiary of the action initiated the action)
*They **had their garden furniture stolen** last year.*	*have*-pseudo-passive (non-causative: beneficiary of the action did not initiate the action)
*I **got my car serviced** in that garage once.*	*get*-pseudo-passive (causative: beneficiary of the action initiated the action)
*I'll **get you set up** on the computer and then you can work away on your own.*	*get*-pseudo-passive (describes a process initiated by someone who may or may not be the agent)
***I'm quite fascinated** by what you say.*	semi-passive (like passive but also like adjectival construction: may be modified like an adjective)
*He**'s totally obsessed** with astrology.*	more adjectival; prepositional complement has no active agent role
*The tape seems to have **got stuck**.*	resultative; describes a state resulting from an agentless process
*The handle**'s broken**.*	adjectival; describes a state

VERB COMPLEMENTATION AND PASSIVE VOICE 477

Only transitive clauses and certain clauses where the verb has a prepositional phrase complement may be made passive. Other active-voice clauses may not be made passive:

Active: *Someone **stole the car**.*
(monotransitive: direct object)
Passive: *The car was stolen.*

Active: *Someone **gave him a warning**.*
(ditransitive: direct and indirect object)
Passive 1: *He was given a warning.*
Passive 2: *A warning was given to him.*

Active: *Someone **broke into their car**.*
(verb + prepositional phrase complement)
Passive: *Their car was broken into.*

Passives are not formed from copular verbs:

*She**’s** a teacher.*
(~~A teacher is been by her.~~)

*Carol **seems** right for the job.*
(~~The job is seemed right by Carol.~~)

*Paula **became** a nurse.*
(~~A nurse was become by Paula.~~)

THE *BE*-PASSIVE: FORMATION 478

The *be*-passive is formed by making the object of an action or event the grammatical subject of the clause and by using auxiliary *be* + the *-ed* participle (***ed*-p**) of the verb.

The agent may be realised as a prepositional phrase, most typically with *by* (→ 481 below):

subject | **verb** | **object**
Active: *A police patrol* | *spotted* | ***a suspicious vehicle**.*

subject | ***be*** **+** ***ed*-p** | **agent phrase**
Passive: ***A suspicious vehicle*** | *was spotted* | *by a police patrol.*

Be-passives are different from lexical verb *be* plus *-ed* form adjectives, which cannot normally have an agent phrase, and which may have particular prepositional structures following them:

*I’m **worried about** my mother.*
(*-ed* form adjective)
(~~I’m worried by my mother.~~)

> *Most people* ***are worried by the thought of what a surgeon's going to do****.*
> (passive clause)
>
> *They're just* ***tired of*** *each other.*
> (~~They're just tired by each other.~~)

The table below gives examples of *be*-passive structures (in green) in different tense-aspect combinations. The passive elements are realised in the final *be*-auxiliary and the *-ed* participle (in bold). The examples marked with an asterisk (*) represent very rare types.

Examples of *be*-passive structures

tense-aspect form	example
present simple	*They* ***are sold*** *in three sizes.*
present progressive	*The house is* ***being sold****.*
past simple	*Alison and Jane* ***weren't asked*** *for their views.*
past progressive	*Did you feel as if you were* ***being ignored****?*
present perfect simple	*Has her father* ***been told****?*
present perfect progressive	*He has been* ***being watched*** *by the police for about three weeks.**
past perfect simple	*I saw at once how it had* ***been done****.*
past perfect progressive	*The town had already been* ***being visited*** *by three coaches full of tourists.**
modal simple	*The top can* ***be left*** *on.*
modal progressive	*They'll be* ***being interviewed*** *when we're in our meeting.*
modal perfect simple	*He fears that a man may have* ***been hanged*** *because of his carelessness.*
modal perfect progressive	*The house might have been* ***being watched*** *while we were away, before they burgled it.**

THE *GET*-PASSIVE: FORMATION 479

The *get*-passive is formed with *get* + the *-ed* participle of the verb. As with *be*, a range of tense-aspect forms is possible, though in fact a narrower range of forms actually occurs. These are the most frequent:

> *Do you know how much lawyers* ***get paid*** *for an hour, the best ones?*
>
> [reference to a company receiving a fine for safety violations]
> *They****'re getting fined*** *by the Health and Safety Executive.*
>
> *All of a sudden they* ***got raided*** *by the police.*
>
> [student talking about upcoming hectic social timetable]
> ***I've got invited*** *to the school ball as well.*
>
> *We found some parcels that* ***had got pushed*** *into the corner.*
>
> *They* ***may have got mixed up*** *the first time we used them.*

Reflexive structures occur with *get*-passives when the recipient of an action/event is felt to share at least some of the role of agent:

> *She **got herself locked out**.*
> (it was an accident, but partly her fault; compare: 'She got locked out', which was not her fault)

A *get*-passive structure similar to the pseudo-passive with *have* occurs occasionally in informal spoken language. The construction enables a person affected by an action or event to be made the grammatical subject:

> [talking of strict customs searches at airports]
> *I **got my belt searched** once when I went to Sweden.*
> (non-causative; similar to: I had my belt searched/my belt was searched …)
>
> *I'll **get you sorted out** with some boots for the walk, cos it'll be muddy.*
> (causative: I myself will give you the boots or I'll find someone else to give them to you)

Prepositional phrases expressing an agent, although they do occur with *get*-passives, are far rarer than with *be*-passives:

> *She **got arrested** by the Austrian police.*

PSEUDO-PASSIVES WITH *HAVE*: FORMATION 480

Pseudo-passives with *have* are formed with *have* + an object + the *-ed* participle of the verb (***ed*-p**):

> **have object *ed*-p**
> *Hilary **had her luggage searched** at the airport.*
>
> *Did we tell you about the incident with the next door neighbour who**'d had his car kicked**?*
>
> *We **had the house painted** last year.*
>
> [complaining about someone who receives social security benefits and who refused a job]
> *Now that man **should have his benefits stopped** because there was a job for £400 a week and he said no.*

The pseudo-passive word order *have* + object + *-ed* participle is different from that of active present and past perfect verb phrases:

> *I **had** my hair **cut** the day before the wedding.*
> ('I had cut my hair the day before the wedding' would mean I did it myself)
>
> ***Do** they **have** their car **serviced** regularly?*
> ('Have they serviced their car regularly?' would suggest they normally do it themselves)

AGENT PHRASES 481

Agent phrases most typically begin with *by*:

I was sort of adopted ***by a wonderful family****.*

Pollution in cities is also caused ***by cars, lorries, big buses, trains****.*

Other prepositions are used when the grammatical subject of the equivalent active clause is not the true active agent of an event. This often occurs with stative verbs:

The instructions are included ***on a separate sheet****.*
(active equivalent: 'This sheet includes the instructions.'; the sheet is not the true active agent – the agent is the person who included the instructions)

Clothes are sold ***in supermarkets*** *these days.*
(active equivalent: 'Supermarkets sell clothes these days.'; the true agent of the selling is 'companies' – supermarkets are the places where the clothes are sold)

I got covered ***in mud*** *when I fell.*

PASSIVES WITHOUT AN AGENT PHRASE 482

General 482a

Passives frequently occur without an agent phrase and are called agentless passives. There are a number of reasons why such a choice might be made. The entity responsible for an action may not be known or may not be considered relevant, or may simply be obvious.

The agentless passive enables focus to fall on the process. What is or is not done, or what happens, is important:

Swimming in the lake ***is prohibited****.*

The interview ***is being televised*** *tonight.*

The town ***was rebuilt*** *after the war.*

Five of us ***were sacked*** *for no reason.*

Applications ***should be received*** *by Friday June 23rd.*

Taxes ***will have to be put up*** *again.*

It was agreed *that no action needed to be taken.*

There were *twenty people* ***arrested****.*

Get-passives occur more frequently with no agent phrase than *be*-passives:

She's been a bit nervous ever since we ***got burgled****.*

He ***got conscripted*** *into the army and had to go to Belgium.*

Reference to the agent(s) may be omitted in order to deflect possible criticism, because it may be embarrassing/inappropriate to mention the agent, or because it may be necessary to omit such reference:

I'm sorry. It seems that your forms ***got mislaid****.*

I've been told *that she is unreliable.*

Students ***will be penalised*** *for late submission of assignments.*

We would like a new approach ***to be worked out****.*

Detached/impersonal styles 482b

Agentless passives are conventionally used in impersonal speaking and writing styles (e.g. academic and technical language) when processes are the focus of attention:

Heat ***was applied*** *until the mixture came to the boil.*

The central heating system ***has to be*** *regularly* ***maintained****.*

Vitamin tablets ***should be taken*** *daily.*

Such impersonal uses often involve reporting verbs such as *believe*, *consider*, *find*, *say*, *think*:

What is poverty? Much of the debate centres on what level of income ***is considered*** *to be the poverty level.*

[scientific text about birds: *young* here means 'young birds']
Losses of eggs and young ***were found*** *to be relatively constant throughout the season, even though their numbers increased dramatically for a short time.*

Anticipatory *it* 482c

Anticipatory *it* makes forward reference to a complement clause, and may be used to express impersonal agency:

The German reply was exactly what the Austrian government had wanted. ***It was decided*** *to issue an ultimatum to the Serbian government, framed in a manner that would be likely to provoke war.*

It has been argued *that rights are inevitably relative to each culture.*

Existential *there* 482d

Existential *there* allows an indefinite subject to be placed later in a passive clause. This has the effect of creating greater focus on the passive subject:

There were *hundreds* ***killed*** *in the earthquake.*
(Note the word order. ~~There were killed hundreds in the earthquake.~~)

I did complain, but ***there was*** *no action* ***taken*** *at the time.*

Functions of the *get*-passive 483

The *get*-passive is used in more informal contexts and is more common in spoken than in written English. It is only used with dynamic verbs (verbs denoting actions or events rather than states):

A headmaster ***got stabbed*** *a few weeks ago. What is the world coming to?*
(dynamic verb)

The standard unit of mass used by all scientists ***is kept*** *at the International Bureau of Weights and Measures at Sèvres, near Paris, France.*
(non-dynamic verb: ~~The standard unit of mass used by all scientists gets kept at the International Bureau of Weights and Measures …~~)

The *get*-passive enables a clear distinction to be made between a dynamic event and a state or situation:

The fence ***got damaged****.*
(dynamic event)

The fence ***was damaged****.*
(not clear if it is a state or a dynamic event)

The *get*-passive places a little more emphasis on the grammatical subject or the entities involved. For this reason it is often used to recount newsworthy events. The actions/events most typically do not benefit the entity described and the form is often used when a situation is judged to be problematic in some way:

[speaker who once worked for a tobacco company]
Well actually I ***got sacked*** *because I was purposely trying to disrupt the business cos I hate smoking so much.*

A: *My interview was supposed to be on the fifteenth and then it* ***got moved*** *to the nineteenth.*
B: *Oh no.*
A: *And then guess what Martin.*
B: *What?*
A: *It* ***got cancelled*** *at five to eleven on the nineteenth.*

The *get*-passive is not used exclusively in negative or problematic contexts, and positive newsworthy events are also (though less often) described using the *get*-passive:

Liam ***got promoted*** *again. He's now the sales and marketing director.*

[tennis player talking]
I ***got picked*** *for the county so I played county matches.*

When a reflexive construction is used with the *get*-passive, it often indicates the involvement or responsibility of the grammatical subject:

Somehow the key ***got itself jammed*** *in the door.*
(speaker 'blames' the key)

For all his power, you see, Dr Primo Nebiolo has never succeeded in ***getting himself elected*** *to the International Olympic Committee.*

The *get*-passive is informal. In the following examples the *get*-passive sentences would be more likely to be used in informal contexts. The *be*-passive equivalents sound more detached and neutral:

> *He damaged the picture and* **got sued** *by the owners, who said that it had lessened its value.*
> (He damaged the picture and was sued by the owners, who said that it had lessened its value.)
>
> *That town* **got** *really badly* **hit** *by an earth tremor.*
> (That town was really badly hit by an earth tremor.)

FUNCTIONS OF PSEUDO-PASSIVES WITH *HAVE* 484

The *have*-pseudo-passive most typically enables a person affected by an action or event to be made the grammatical subject, thereby making that person the starting point for the message:

> *They* ***had*** *their keys* ***stolen****.*
>
> *He* ***had*** *his window* ***smashed****.*

Other alternatives make different participants the theme of the sentence:

> *Someone stole their keys.*
>
> *Their keys were/got stolen.*

The meaning may be causative or non-causative:

> *I don't mind paying to go to the dentist or to* ***have*** *my eyes* ***checked****.*
> (causative: I make it happen)
>
> *My friend round the corner recently* ***had*** *his video* ***stolen****.*
> (non-causative: it was not his intention or aim)

In the case of some verbs which take an object plus prepositional complement, the *have*-pseudo-passive compensates for the lack of a *be*-passive and enables the affected participant to become the theme:

> *I've* ***had some ideas suggested to me****, but I need time to think.*
> (or: Some ideas have been suggested to me …)
> (~~I've been suggested some ideas …~~)
>
> *We'll* ***have that explained to us*** *all over again at the next meeting, I'll bet.*
> (or: That will be explained to us all over again …)
> (~~We'll be explained that all over again …~~)

✪ The meaning of the *have*-pseudo-passive is not the same as the perfect aspect form of the verb:

> *Oh, you****'ve had your hair cut****. It looks nice.*
> (someone, a hairdresser, cut your hair; 'Oh, you've cut your hair' would mean you did it yourself)

GET- AND *HAVE*-PSEUDO-PASSIVES 485

Get-pseudo-passives and *have*-pseudo-passives can often both be used to express causative and non-causative meanings. The *have*-passive is more formal than the *get*-passive:

> *We* ***got*** *our car radio* ***stolen*** *twice on holiday.*
> (or: We had our car radio stolen twice on holiday.)
>
> *They****'ll have had*** *the phone* ***connected*** *by now.*
> (or: They'll have got the phone connected by now.)
>
> *I* ***have*** *my hair* ***done*** *about once a month.*
> (or: I get my hair done about once a month.)

VERBS USUALLY ONLY FOUND IN THE PASSIVE 486

Some verbs are most typically used in the passive rather than the active voice. These include:

be born
be deemed
be populated
be stranded
be strewn
be taken aback

> ***Were you born*** *in Bristol, Mary?*
> (used in the past tense: ~~Are you born in Bristol, Mary?~~)
>
> *They* ***were deemed*** *unsuitable as foster-parents.*
>
> *They* ***were taken aback*** *by the violence of the film's ending.*

DESERVE, *NEED*, *REQUIRE*, *WANT* WITH A PASSIVE MEANING 487

Deserve, *need*, *require* and *want* can be followed by an active *-ing* form structure although the grammatical subject is the affected participant of the process denoted by the verb, thus creating a meaning similar to a passive voice structure:

> *The picture's dark, very dark. It* ***needs restoring****.*
> (similar to: It should be restored.)
>
> *Your jacket* ***wants cleaning****.*
> (similar to: It should be cleaned.)

also **475b Active versus passive voice** in **Word order and focus**

A–Z ***75 Want***

Speech representation

Introduction 488
Reporting verbs 489
  Panel: *Say* versus *tell* 489a
Punctuation 490
  Punctuation and direct speech 490a
  Punctuation and indirect speech 490b
Reporting and reported clauses 491
  Position of the reporting clause 491a
Tense and aspect in reporting verbs 492
  The past simple 492a
  The present simple 492b
  The present progressive 492c
  The past progressive 492d
Viewpoint: time and place references 493
  Deictic expressions (*now*, *here*) 493a
  Tense backshift 493b
  Backshift and modal verbs 493c
  Personal pronouns 493d
Reports of statements 494
Reports of questions 495
  Reports of polar (*yes-no*) and alternative questions 495a
  Reports of *wh*-questions 495b
Voice in the reporting clause 496
Speech reports introduced by nouns 497
Quoting and attributing 498
Reporting verbs and speech acts 499
Reports in speech and writing 500
  Subject-verb inversion 500a
  Reports of questions and answers 500b
  Representing vocal and emotional characteristics 500c
  Adjuncts and reporting verbs 500d
  Free direct and free indirect speech and thought 500e
Reports in conversation 501
  Direct versus indirect reports 501a
  Topics, openings and closings 501b
  Checking, recapping and summarising 501c
  Dramatisation and narrative 501d
  Panel: Use of *I says*, *go*, *be* and *be like* 501e
  Use of discourse markers in direct reports 501f
Speech reports in specific registers 502
  Newspaper headlines 502a
  Impersonal reports in formal registers 502b

Speech representation

INTRODUCTION 488

Representations of speech are ways of reporting one's own or another person's speech. Speech reports are normally divided into direct and indirect reports.

Direct reports

A direct report consists of a reporting clause and a reported clause. The reporting clause contains a verb indicating speech, such as *ask*, *demand*, *say*, *shout*, *tell*. The reported clause represents or attempts to recreate the exact words someone used, as they occurred at the moment of speaking, with the same pronouns, tenses, clause types, etc. which the original speaker used. The reported clause is separated by punctuation from the reporting clause, usually by means of commas and speech marks (normally single or double inverted commas):

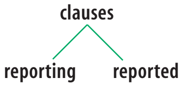

1 *She said, "What shall I do?"*

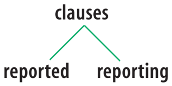

2 *"Where are you going?" he asked.*

Indirect reports

An indirect report consists of a reporting clause, plus a reported clause which is more fully integrated as the object of the reporting verb and not usually separated by punctuation. The reported clause has a form which reflects the speech act of the original utterance.

The reported clause may be a *that*-clause (reporting a statement), a *wh*-clause (reporting a *wh*-question or exclamation), a clause with *if* or *whether* (reporting a polar question) or an infinitive clause (reporting a directive):

- Reporting statements:

  *She informed me **that** she used to know my mother and was on friendly terms with half a dozen of my aunts.*

  I told him I hadn't seen it.
  (*that*-clause with zero-*that*)

- Reporting *wh*-questions and exclamations:

  *Miguel told me **what** happened at the farmhouse tonight.*

  *She asked **who** we'd been talking to.*

  *She remarked **what** a beautiful house it was.*

- Reporting polar (*yes-no*) and alternative questions:

  *Pointing at my forehead, he asked **if** I had been fighting.*

  *She took his hand and asked **whether** he had slept.*

  *I asked her **if** she was full-time or just part-time.*

- Reporting directives:

  A: *I told you **to phone** her up.*
  B: *I know. Er, sorry, I forgot.*

  *The doctor ordered him **to rest** for at least a month.*

When someone's words are reported indirectly, pronouns, tenses, clause types, etc. change to reflect the situation of the current report in relation to the original moment of speaking of the words reported.

Example **1** above (*She said, "What shall I do?"*) would typically be made into an indirect report as in **1a**:

1a *She asked what she should do.*

- *I* has now become *she*, as the speaker is reporting the words of a female third person.
- *Shall* has become *should* to reflect the time lapse since the words were uttered.
- The interrogative clause has become declarative as the clause is now an indirect report and is no longer a direct question.
- *Said* has become *asked* as a question is being reported.

Example **2** above (*"Where are you going?" he asked.*) would typically be made into an indirect report as in **2a**, with similar changes to the grammar of pronouns, tenses and clause types:

2a *He asked where I was/we were/they were going.*

Other ways of reporting

In direct speech, the report represents or attempts to recreate or give the illusion of the original speaker's exact words. In indirect speech reports, the report is not necessarily meant to be a recreation of someone's exact words; it may function just to report the content of what they said.

Speech reports, both direct and indirect, are most commonly made with reporting clauses containing verbs such as *ask*, *say* and *tell* with a reported clause. There are also other, more indirect ways in which people's speech can be reported, by using nouns such as *argument*, *comment*, *complaint*, *observation*, *remark* to refer to someone's words, or by quoting them, especially the words of famous people:

*I didn't like his **comment** that we were spending too much money.*

*Well their biggest **complaint** was that the room was too small.*

***To quote** Shakespeare: "All the world's a stage, and all the men and women merely players."*

Speech reports may be reports of real, past speech events or they may be hypothetical or be reports of things people will say or intend to say:

> *If he asks me to do it again, I think **I'll just say**, "No. Do it yourself."*
>
> ***We should ask them** what day they can deliver the fridge and things.*

REPORTING VERBS 489

Say in its past tense form *said* is by far the most frequent reporting verb in direct reports, especially in everyday spoken language:

> *I **said**, 'Gran, I was only doing this while I was waiting for the kettle to boil.'*
>
> *'So you're too busy for me,' he* **said**. *'I feared it had come to that.'*

Say and *tell* are also by far the most frequent reporting verbs in indirect reports in everyday spoken language:

> *And after a moment he **said** that he had been in the valley for forty-seven years.*
>
> *Mrs Johnson **told** her that Robert was part of a consortium.*

Ask is used frequently in informal conversation for indirect reports, but not for direct reports:

> *They **asked** me what I thought about the food.*

The use of *ask* in direct reports is mostly confined to written fictional styles:

> *'Will you not tell me the truth now?' he **asked**.*

Say versus *tell* 489a

Say and *tell* function differently in speech reports. *Tell* focuses on the content or message of what was said:

> *She **told** him they were going on holiday.*
> (focus on the information)

Say focuses more on the words someone said:

> *'Hello,' she **said**.*
> (~~'Hello,' she told me.~~)

Say can introduce direct reports. *Tell* is not normally used in this way:

> *He **said**, 'I'm not paying £50 for that.'*
> (~~He told me, 'I'm not paying £50 for that.'~~)

Say and *tell* have different rules of complementation. *Say* is used with an optional prepositional complement and an object (which is the reported clause). *Tell* normally has an indirect object, along with a direct object (which is the reported clause):

> *I **said to her**, 'When I'm ready I'll tell you.'*

She ***said*** *she didn't know anything about it.*
(or: She told me she didn't know anything about it.)
(~~She told she didn't know anything about it.~~)

And then they ***told us*** *we had to do it.*
(or: And then they said we had to do it.)
(~~And then they told we had to do it.~~)

Say is not used with an indirect object to refer to the person addressed:

I said to her*, 'When I'm ready I'll tell you.'*
(~~I said her, 'When I'm ready I'll tell you.'~~)

They told me I'd have to wait.
(or: They said I'd have to wait.)
(~~They said me I'd have to wait.~~)

Generally, *tell* but not *say* is used with an infinitive clause to report directives:

The man from Foreign Affairs had ***told*** *her* ***to prepare for the worst****.*

But in informal spoken contexts, *say* may also be used with an infinitive clause to report a directive:

I phoned up the hospital and they ***said to go down****.*

PUNCTUATION 490

Punctuation and direct speech 490a

A variety of punctuation conventions exist for direct speech reports. Direct speech may be enclosed in single or double inverted commas:

'*I want to do it,****'*** *Anna said.*

"*Not always,****"*** *replied Bobby.*

As seen in these examples, a comma is used at the end of the direct speech, before the closing speech marks. A comma is also used when the reporting clause comes first. The speech marks close after the final full stop:

*Anna said hastily****, '****She doesn't mean to be patronizing****.'***

The direct speech normally begins with a capital letter. Where a reported sentence is interrupted (e.g. by a reporting clause or a discourse marker), the continuation of the report does not have a capital letter:

*'****O****kay, come on Pat,' she said, '****l****et's go and have some tea.'*

A colon may also be used to separate the reporting and reported clause, especially in quotations (e.g. in academic articles, journalism, quoting famous people):

*He said****:*** *'If we want to maintain our global role, we must be a leading player in Europe.'*

Subscript inverted commas („… .”) and the symbols «…» are not used in English to indicate direct speech:

I said, “Oh it’s very kind of you.”
(Not: I said, „Oh it’s very kind of you.” / « Oh it’s very kind of you »)

→ **506f Direct speech** in **Appendix: Punctuation** for further details concerning punctuation of direct speech

Punctuation and indirect speech 490b

In indirect speech, the reporting clause is not separated from the reported clause by a comma when the reporting clause is first:

The lorry driver simply said that it was meat and bone meal from another delivery.
(~~The lorry driver simply said, that it was meat and bone meal …~~)
(~~The lorry driver simply said that, it was meat and bone meal …~~)

When the reporting clause is in end position, a comma is used to separate the clauses:

[referring to a picture]
*It had been painted with love**,** he said.*

Indirect reports of questions do not have question marks:

So people complained and asked him why we were waiting.
(~~… and asked him why we were waiting?~~)

REPORTING AND REPORTED CLAUSES 491

Position of the reporting clause 491a

A reported speech sentence typically consists of a reporting clause and one or more reported clauses (→ 488, above). The reporting clause most typically comes before or after the reported clause.

Examples of reporting clause before reported clause

reporting clause	reported clause
I said,	*‘No, no, no, it’s Sunday.’*
She told him	*(that) they were going on holiday.*
He asked,	*‘What can I tempt you with?’*

Examples of reported clause before reporting clause

reported clause	reporting clause
‘Oh it’s been a real disaster!’	*she said.*
‘Why wasn’t I told?’	*she asked.*

In direct speech reports in informal spoken language, the reporting clause most frequently comes first. In literary fiction, the reporting clause most frequently comes after the reported clause. Reporting clauses may also interrupt the reported clause; this type is most frequent in written fictional styles:

- Before:

***He said**, ‘They’ve double-booked you for a wedding reception.’*

- Interrupting:
  'What's happened?' ***Nicole demanded****. 'Please, I've got to know.'*
- After:
  'Have you found Michelle?' ***she asked anxiously****.*

In indirect speech reports, the reporting clause normally occurs before the reported clause:

> A: ***I told you*** *that Ernie, her husband, died.*
> B: *Yes.*

Less frequently, the reporting clause may occur after the reported clause.

> *He wasn't going to see Louise leave school,* ***he said****.*
>
> *He was in the middle of an enforced career change,* ***he said****.*

TENSE AND ASPECT IN REPORTING VERBS 492

The past simple 492a

When the report refers to a single past occasion of speech as a concluded event, the reporting verb is usually in the past simple tense. This form is by far the most frequent, in both spoken and written contexts:

> *'Well,'* ***he said****, 'you're not 21.'*
>
> ***They said*** *that was exactly what they wanted.*

The present simple 492b

In indirect speech reports, if the reported speech is seen as always true or relevant, or likely to be said on any given occasion, the present simple may be used with the reporting verb:

> *He went to a lady doctor in there.* ***He says*** *she's very nice.*
> (he would probably always say that if asked)
>
> *But when* ***she says*** *water sports, what does she mean?*
> (every time she says that word, not just one occasion)

⇢ 360 The present simple for dramatic effect

The present progressive 492c

In indirect speech, if the speech reported represents someone's current position or opinion (which might possibly change), then the present progressive can be used:

> ***He's saying*** *it was a Head Office decision but did he know prior to that?*
> (that is his current position on the matter)

⇢ 360b The present progressive for narrative build-up

The past progressive 492d

The past progressive is frequent in indirect reports in spoken language. It is used to focus on a new topic or to emphasise an important bit of news or information which the speaker has heard first-hand. It takes the focus away from the actual words reported and puts it on the content:

*Jenny **was saying** that five mortar bombs have been found at Heathrow Airport.*

*Don **was telling** me the Magdeburg students have lectures at seven o'clock in the morning.*

*He **was suggesting** I should travel.*

Reports of newsworthy items that the speaker has read about also often occur with the past progressive:

[Tony Blair was the British Prime Minister at the time of speaking]
*I **was reading** in the paper that Blair's going to the Caribbean for his holidays.*

VIEWPOINT: TIME AND PLACE REFERENCES 493

Deictic expressions (*now*, *here*) 493a

Ways of pointing to time (e.g. tenses, and words such as *today*, *ago*), place (e.g. *here*, *this shop*) and persons (*I*, *you*) at the moment of speaking are called deictic expressions. Deictic meanings are relative to where the speakers are and when they are speaking. Such meanings may undergo changes in indirect reports to reflect the viewpoint of the person reporting the words spoken (since the person reporting is frequently in a different time and place from the original situation and reporting someone else's words).

For example, the question *'Will you be coming here tomorrow, Jane?'* may be reported indirectly in a variety of ways, depending on where and when the report is made, and by whom. An illustration of some of the many possible changes to deictic reference are given in the table below.

Examples of changes to deictic reference (original question: 'Will you be coming here tomorrow, Jane?')

indirect reports	explanation
*I asked Jane if **she will** be **coming here tomorrow**.*	reporter is the same person and is at the same place where the original question was asked, and 'tomorrow' has not yet come
*I asked Jane if **she would** be **going there the next day**.*	reporter is the same person but is at a different place from where the original question was asked, and 'tomorrow' has gone
***He/she** asked Jane if **she would** be **going there the next day**.*	reporter is a different person and is at a different place from where the original question was asked, and 'tomorrow' has gone
***He/she** asked **me** if **I'll** be **coming here tomorrow**.*	reporter is Jane herself. She is at the same place where she was originally asked the question, and 'tomorrow' has not yet come

Tense backshift 493b

When the indirect report is perceived as referring to the past, the tense in the reported clause usually changes to a past form of the tense of the original speech. This process is known as tense backshift.

Examples of tense backshift

direct report	original tense form	indirect report	backshifted tense form
'Robert ***is*** *part of a consortium,' Mrs Johnson said to her.*	present simple	*Mrs Johnson told her that Robert* ***was*** *part of a consortium.*	past simple
*He said, 'I'****m*** *just* ***leaving*** *for the airport.'*	present progressive	*He said he* ***was*** *just* ***leaving*** *for the airport.*	past progressive
*She said, 'We'****ve lived*** *here fifteen years and we'****ve*** *never met him.'*	present perfect	*She said they* ***had lived*** *there fifteen years and they* ***had*** *never* ***met*** *him.*	past perfect
'I ***will go****,' he said.*	'future' *will*	*He said he* ***would go****.*	'future-in-the-past' *would*

For some tense-aspect forms, there may be no change between direct and indirect speech.

Examples of no change in tense

direct report	tense form	indirect report	tense form
He said, 'I ***was thinking*** *of getting my mum one for her birthday.'*	past progressive	*He said he* ***was thinking*** *of getting his mum one for her birthday.*	same
*She said, 'We'****d wanted*** *to go there for years.'*	past perfect	*She said they'****d wanted*** *to go there for years.*	same

The past progressive may change to the past perfect progressive if the speaker perceives the event as relating to a past before the moment of the direct speech.

Example of past progressive changing to past perfect progressive

direct report	tense	indirect report	backshifted tense form
He said, 'I ***was thinking*** *of getting my mum one for her birthday.'*	past progressive	*He said he* ***had been thinking*** *of getting his mum one for her birthday.*	past perfect progressive

When the report refers to something treated as still relevant, or still true, or as yet unfulfilled, the verb may not necessarily shift to the past:

> *I've just talked to Barbara and she said she'****s taking*** *it on Monday.*
> (Barbara probably said, 'I'm taking it on Monday.')
>
> *He said he'****s going to do*** *military service.*
> (he probably said, 'I'm going to do military service.')
>
> *Why* ***is*** *Joanna angry? About what? You said she'****s*** *angry about a party.*

Backshift and modal verbs 493c

Backshift changes to modal verbs are more complex.

Must

Must usually changes to *had to*, especially when reference is made to an accomplished past event. However, if the event is still unaccomplished (i.e. the future-in-the-past), *must* may be retained in the indirect report.

Must in indirect reports

direct report	indirect report
*'We **must** replace the cooker.'*	*She said they **had to** replace the cooker.
	She said they **would have to replace the cooker.
*'I **must** read it.'*	He said he **must** read it. (future-in-the-past)

* The form with *had to* may refer to an unfulfilled obligation or a fulfilled one.
** The form with *would have to* can only refer to an unfulfilled obligation.

Shall

Shall with first person subject (and its short form *'ll*) changes to *would* in reports of statements, but changes to *should* when questions are reported.

Shall in indirect reports

direct report	indirect report
*'I'm not even certain this year whether I **shall** bother.'*	*He said he wasn't even certain this year whether he **would** bother.*
*'**Shall** I try it?'*	*She asked if she **should** try it.*

Can

Can changes to *could*.

Can in indirect reports

direct report	indirect report
*'I **can** do it on Monday.'*	*She said she **could** do it on Monday.*

Other modal verbs

Could, *might*, *should*, *would*, *ought to* and *used to* do not change.

Other modal verbs in indirect reports

direct report	indirect report
*'I **could** come here seven nights a week.'*	*He said he **could** come here seven nights a week.*
*'I **might** need that money.'*	*She said she **might** need that money.*
*'Everybody **should** have a copy.'*	*He said everybody **should** have a copy.*
*'I **would** like a refund if possible.'*	*She said she **would** like a refund if possible.*
*'They **ought to** get an accountant to sort it out.'*	*He said they **ought to** get an accountant to sort it out.*
*'I **used to** take the dogs for a walk on the path there.'*	*He said he **used to** take the dogs for a walk on the path there.*

In the case of *could*, *might*, *should*, *would* and *ought to*, backshift does not require a shift to the perfect infinitive of the lexical verb. Such a change, if made, may produce a different meaning. Compare:

> *She said she* ***would like*** *a refund.*
> (report of what she wished for at the moment of speaking but had not yet received)
>
> *She said she* ***would have liked*** *a refund.*
> (understood: but they didn't give her one; report of what she had wished for but she did not in fact get it)

Personal pronouns 493d

References to people using personal pronouns in indirect reports depend on whether the person reporting the speech and the person(s) whose speech is reported are the same or different.

Examples of personal pronouns in indirect reports

direct report	indirect report
*'**I**'m spending the day in Glasgow with a school friend,'* ***she*** *said.*	***She*** *said* ***she*** *was spending the day in Glasgow with a school friend.* (reporting someone else's words)
*'**You** can use the cotton dressing gown as a nice tablecloth if* ***you*** *don't want to wear it,'* ***I*** *said to her.*	***I*** *told* ***her she*** *could use the cotton dressing gown as a nice tablecloth if* ***she*** *didn't want to wear it.* (reporting one's own words)
*'**I** have been in the valley for forty-seven years,'* ***he*** *said.*	***He*** *said that* ***he*** *had been in the valley for forty-seven years.* (reporting someone else's words)
*'**I**'ll mention it,'* ***I*** *said.*	***I*** *said* ***I****'d mention it.* (reporting one's own words)

also the table in **493a**

REPORTS OF STATEMENTS 494

That is often omitted in the reported clause, especially in informal contexts:

> *She said (**that**) she was going to Majorca on a walking holiday.*
>
> *I suggested (**that**) she actually invites a group of people back.*

When the report is the complement of the noun-form of a reporting verb, it is normal to include *that*:

> *And what about the suggestion* ***that George might get an earlier appointment****?*

Occasionally, especially in less formal spoken language, *that* may be omitted after a reporting noun:

> *There's a hint* ***the government's going to change its policy on house-building****.*

REPORTS OF QUESTIONS 495

Reports of polar (*yes-no*) and alternative questions 495a

When a *yes-no* question or an alternative question (a question involving a choice of *x* or *y*) is reported indirectly, *if* or *whether* is used with a declarative clause structure. In all the examples in the table below, *if* and *whether* can be used with no change in meaning.

Examples of reported *yes-no* and alternative questions

direct report	indirect report
'Will you work as a co-editor with us?'	*They asked me* ***if*** *I would work as a co-editor with them.*
'Will you be able to do it?'	*I asked him* ***whether*** *he would be able to do it.*
'Should I come over in the near future?'	*Jules just phoned me wondering* ***whether*** *she should come over in the near future.*
(possible question that was never asked) *'Do you want to stay overnight?'*	*I'm glad they didn't ask me* ***if*** *I wanted to stay overnight.*

Whether is preferred when *or not* immediately follows:

> *Yeah, but they haven't stated* ***whether or not*** *it will be accepted.*
> (preferred to: … stated if or not)

However, when *or not* comes at the end, either *if* or *whether* can be used:

> *She asked* ***if/whether*** *we had registered* ***or not****.*

In informal spoken style, a direct interrogative clause may occur instead of *if/whether*:

> [speaker is talking of an experience while staying in hospital]
> *You know the sweetener, I asked one of the cleaners* ***could she get me something*** *because it was on a very bad day and she had to ring down for permission for somebody else to get one.*
>
> *At what point should we ask* ***have they got any rooms****?*

Reports of *wh*-questions 495b

When a *wh*-question is reported indirectly, the word order is normally declarative rather than interrogative:

> *So I asked him* ***what*** *the arrangements were.*
> (~~So I asked him what were the arrangements.~~)
>
> *I phoned up the hospital and asked* ***who*** *I should address the letter to.*
> (~~… who should I address the letter to~~)

In informal spoken style, interrogative word order is sometimes used:

> *I asked him* ***where*** *was he going but he wouldn't say.*
> (instead of: I asked him where he was going …)

VOICE IN THE REPORTING CLAUSE 496

Most reporting verbs are active voice, but passive voice is also frequent in indirect reports, especially indirect reports with *ask* and *tell*:

> *My husband **had been told** at the hospital that they were short-staffed.*
>
> *They **should have been asked** if it had cost them money to get there.*

Passive voice is much less frequent in the reporting clause in direct reports, but it does occur (as *be*- and *get*-passive) in complement clauses of reporting nouns:

> *A question **I'm often asked** is, 'Why do we need a pronouncing dictionary?'*
>
> *One question **we often get asked** is, 'Do the crew sleep on board?'*

A–Z **20 *Ask (for)***

SPEECH REPORTS INTRODUCED BY NOUNS 497

Speech reports may be introduced by nouns. Nouns used in this way include:

accusation
advice
answer
argument
assertion
claim
comment
complaint
concern
denial
excuse
explanation
news
observation
point
remark
response
statement
suggestion

The noun may be the subject of a clause with *be*, with the reported clause as complement. Such reports may be direct or indirect:

> A: *I mean if they didn't insist on that, would we bother?*
> B: *Yeah.*
> A: *And **the answer's** probably, 'No, we wouldn't.'*
>
> *Two weeks ago Senator John D Rockefeller of West Virginia abruptly abandoned his exploratory campaign for the Democratic nomination. **His explanation was** that he didn't have time to mount an effective bid.*

The report may be the complement of the reporting noun:

> ***The excuse** that the computer was down was a bit weak.*
>
> *I had a place next to my father, and **the news** came down that war had broken out.*
>
> *I did make **a suggestion** as to whether I should increase the price of the property.*

The report may simply be an expansion or elaboration of the reporting noun in a separate clause:

> [electrical engineering university tutorial]
> *Well again we come back to* ***the point that we made earlier****: are you actually plotting it against T, you know have you had to plot it against T or against something else?*

QUOTING AND ATTRIBUTING 498

The speech of others, especially of famous people, and proverbs and conventional sayings may be quoted, in order to support arguments, to invoke particular emotions, etc. Different structures may occur:

> [Tony Blair was the British Prime Minister at the time of speaking]
> ***To quote*** *Tony Blair, 'Education, education, education'.*
> (verb infinitive)
>
> *Dr Fanshaw has this,* ***I quote****, 'miracle cream' that he gives to all his ladies to reduce the stretch marks, and it really does work.*
> (present simple tense)
>
> ***As*** *the old proverb* ***says****, 'There's no smoke without fire.'*
> (present simple tense)
>
> ***As*** *she* ***put it****, 'I thought my time was up.'*
> (past simple tense)

Speech may also be attributed to others by the use of expressions such as *according to X*, *so X says/said*, or more vaguely or obliquely with adverbs such as *allegedly*, *apparently*, *evidently* and expressions such as *or so I was/have been told, I've heard (that)*, *they say/'re saying*. These expressions are particularly frequent in everyday conversation. Impersonal passive-voice expressions such as *it is said (that)/it is reported (that)*, *it has been claimed/suggested/proposed (that)* are more frequent in formal (especially academic) texts (**502b**, below):

> A: *We're not getting copies.*
> B: *Well* ***according to Gillian*** *you are.*
>
> *He happened to be an archer,* ***or so he said****.*
>
> ***I was told that*** *I look nineteen.*
>
> ***They say*** *it's a bad road, an accident black-spot.*

In ironic contexts, speakers often use the expression *quote-unquote* to refer obliquely to what is or has often been said in similar situations:

> [ironic reference to a lifeguard's considerable legal responsibility when working with children]
> A: *Is Sarah all right with them?*
> B: *Yeah. Because she's a qualified lifeguard so she's been with the teachers. She's okay to cover them,* ***quote-unquote****.*

REPORTING VERBS AND SPEECH ACTS 499

Speech acts (the communicative functions performed by utterances, → **408–423**) are often indicated by the choice of reporting verb.

The reporting verb may represent the reported clause as performing a specific speech act. Verbs that are frequently used in this way include:

add
admit
advise
agree
announce
argue
assert
beg
claim
comment
complain
confess
confirm
continue
deny
disclose
explain
hint
inform
interrupt
intervene
maintain
note
observe
offer
order
plead
point out
protest
repeat
reveal
state
suggest
threaten
warn

These verbs are most frequently used to introduce indirect reports:

'I'll call Janice,' Sylvia ***offered****.*

'There's that photo of Michelle you keep on your desk,' Carole ***suggested****.*

I ***pointed out*** *yesterday that sales so far this year are down.*

A: *Did they complain?*
B: *No, no. We* ***warned*** *them we were doing it in advance.*

REPORTS IN SPEECH AND WRITING 500

Subject-verb inversion 500a

In written direct speech reports, the subject and verb in the reporting clause may be inverted. This occurs particularly in literary writing and in journalism. It is very rare in informal speech:

'And have we found a tenant for that charming room upstairs?' ***asked Mr Perkins****.*

'This is certainly someone the city wants to celebrate,' ***said a spokesman for the city council****.*

This kind of inversion is even less frequent when the reporting clause comes before the reported clause, but does occur in written journalism:

> ***Says a spokesman cagily**: ‘Pamela is away on holiday at the moment.’*

Reports of questions and answers 500b

In direct speech reports in formal written styles, a question is normally reported with a verb such as *ask*, *demand*, *enquire*, but in informal spoken language, questions are often reported with *say*:

> *‘What happened?’ the policeman **demanded**.*
> (written)
>
> *He **said**, ‘Are you going to catch the bus home?’ I **said**, ‘Yeah.’ He **said**, ‘Are you paying?’*
> (spoken)
>
> *I **said**, ‘D’you know anyone here?’*

Similarly, an answer to a question is often reported with verbs such as *answer* and *reply* in formal written style:

> *‘Has the chaplain informed the family yet?’*
> *‘No,’ Captain Anderson **answered**.*

Reply is often used in this way in literary style:

> *‘Am I allowed back into the kitchen yet?’*
> *‘No,’ she **replied** with a grin.*

In informal spoken language, *reply* is normally only used to refer to written answers to letters and other written communications, and *say* is preferred for reporting answers:

> *‘What do you mean?’ she said. ‘Well,’ I **said**, ‘I don’t know the whole story yet.’*
> (spoken)

Verbs used in formal written styles to report questions and answers include:

> *answer*
> *ask*
> *demand*
> *enquire/inquire*
> *query*
> *question*
> *reply*
> *respond*
> *wonder*

> *‘Didn’t your surveillance team see anything?’ Graham **demanded**.*
>
> *Remembering I hadn’t a receipt for the luggage transported by Melchett’s chauffeur, I **enquired** if it was to hand.*
>
> *‘Who is it?’ Smylie **queried**.*

The use of such verbs for direct speech in informal spoken language is extremely rare, except for *ask*:

> *Then they **asked** him, 'Did you mean this?' and he said, 'No, I just wrote it as a joke.'*

Representing vocal and emotional characteristics 500c

In written fictional styles, the reporting verb often indicates characteristics of the way something was said (e.g. whether it was shouted or whispered), or something about the emotional state of the original speaker (e.g. that they were angry or excited). Using reporting verbs in this way in informal speech is extremely rare.

Verbs of this type include:

bark
bellow
call (out)
coax
cry
groan
growl
grumble
moan
mumble
murmur
mutter
retort
roar
rumble
shoot back
shout
shriek
sigh
snap
stammer
stutter
whisper
yell

> *'What fun!' **cried** Camilla.*
>
> *'Amen,' **rumbled** the men in answer.*
>
> *'Turn on the meter,' I **sighed**.*
>
> *'No one dies here,' **snapped** Aunt Agatha.*

Adjuncts and reporting verbs 500d

It is also common in written literary style for adjuncts to modify the reporting verb in order to indicate contextual features of the reported clause:

> *'I don't know what this country is coming to,' she stated **firmly**.*
>
> *'Not much harm done,' she added **reassuringly**.*
>
> *'I guess I'll have to be looking after your mother now,' he added **with a kind of feeble cheerfulness**.*
>
> *I was **politely** informed that he had left the building.*

Free direct and free indirect speech and thought 500e

Literary style often omits the reporting clause, when it is clear who is speaking and in what order. This is known as free direct speech:

> *His teeth slid out as he stared me in the face.*
> *'Where? Where?'*
> *'I don't know. You tell me.'*

Free direct speech occurs in informal spoken contexts, especially in extended reports and narratives where blends of different types of speech representation are common:

A: *So we'd been wandering round in the morning doing the usual thing, came back and had lunch and* ***I said****, 'What would you like to do this afternoon, Doris?'* ***She said****, 'Oh, Annie, let's go to bingo.' Now bingo is never ever my cup of tea, but seeing that I was supposed to be, with her…*
B: *Supporting her yeah.*
A: *Exactly. I had to fall in with her.* ***All right then, Doris, where do we go now to bingo?*** *'I don't know,'* ***she said****, 'but we'll find out.'*

Literary style also permits indirect speech reporting, or the indirect reporting of inner speech or thoughts, with no explicit reporting verb. This is known as free indirect speech:

Julie got up. She looked determined. ***She would go to Brighton after all****.*
(implied: She said/thought, 'I'll go to Brighton after all.')

REPORTS IN CONVERSATION 501

Direct versus indirect reports 501a

Speech representation in everyday informal conversation often mixes direct and indirect reports, especially in extended informal spoken reports and narratives; different reporting verbs, in different tenses, are often used side by side (indirect reports within direct reports are in green):

A: ***I said****, "I'll try and get a game of squash on Wednesday," and he was going about ten.* ***Said****, "I'll try and get a court."* ***I said****, "If I get a court we'll play, if I don't we won't bother."*
B: *Yeah.*
A: ***I said****, "I'll ring you on Wednesday and* ***say*** *if I've got one." So I rang him on Wednesday and* ***he said****, "Oh I couldn't get a court on Monday so I booked one at the university."* ***I said****, "I've organised other things. Like I've made other plans now."* ***He said****, "Well I cancelled things to play squash tonight."* ***I said****, "Well I told you on Monday.* ***I said****, 'Don't book one. If I don't get one I'll ring you on the Wednesday and* ***tell you*** *if I've got one or not'." And* ***he says****, "So you're letting me down then."*
B: *Mm.*
A: *And* ***I went****, "No not really. I've just got other things here." "So you're letting me down."* ***I said****, "No I'm not."* ***He says****, "You are. You're letting me down. Tell me. Are you letting me down?"* ***I said****, "If you wanna put it like that all right I'm letting you down."*
B: *Yeah.*
A: *Anyway what kind of attitude is that?*
B: *Oh, he's a complete idiot.*

[teachers talking about class discipline problems]
A: ***I told him*** *to go out.* ***I said****, "Go out and listen. Go on. Leave this classroom."*
B: *Did he go?*
A: *Yeah, it was excellent.*

Topics, openings and closings 501b

Self-reports and reports of what other participants in the conversation have said are often used in spoken language to repeat a point already made, to signal a desire to open or close a topic, or to return to an earlier topic, perhaps after a diversion or interruption.

Opening or changing a topic

For signalling a desire to open a new topic or change the topic, past progressive reporting verbs are often used:

The + sign indicates an interrupted turn which continues at the next + sign
[speakers have been talking about a forthcoming trip to New York]
A: *So where are you staying?*
B: *Erm I think it's Thirty-eighth Street. It's just a couple of blocks south of Time Square.*
A: *Yeah. Yeah.*
B: *So it should be okay+*
A: *Yeah.*
B: *+shouldn't it.*
A: *Erm Mark* ***was saying*** *he's been in Exeter and Swansea this week on a course.*
B: *Who Mark?*
A: *Yeah. He's with a chap who used to work in the health service in Edinburgh.*

Repeating a point or closing a topic

For repeating points already made, and for signalling the desire to close a topic, *as I say* and *as you say* are the most frequent forms:

[A has been telling B about a village that was destroyed by an earthquake]
A: *It was 1909 I think.*
B: *Mm.*
A: *And it was actually destroyed.*
B: *Mm, oh really?*
A: *And they rebuilt it again, this small village.*
B: *Mm.*
A: *But* ***as I say*** *it was very very interesting.*

Well ***as you say****, it's difficult to know what you might do next.*

Resuming a topic

For resuming or returning to an earlier or interrupted topic, *as I was saying* and *as you were saying* are frequently used:

[speaker at a company sales conference]
Those forms I mentioned in the last session, the market-specific forms. Oops! Oops! We've lost the microphone. At least part of it. Anyway. Er, yeah. ***As I was saying****, those two forms are on the table in front of you, so you can take those.*

Checking, recapping and summarising 501c

In spoken language, indirect reported speech can serve as a memory or comprehension check. The most frequent forms are *did you say* and *you say*:

> ***Did you say****, Maggie, you'd read something by Lessing before?*

> A: *Have you used that twice,* ***did you say****?*
> B: *I've sort of used it twice, yeah.*

> A: *Mrs Collett is a brilliant headteacher.*
> B: ***You say*** *there's 36 people in your class?*
> A: *Yeah.*

Progressive reporting verbs are common when speakers are checking agreement or mutual understanding of what is or was said:

> *If* ***you're saying*** *we should do the whole thing, it'll take six months.*

> *I think* ***we were saying*** *at this point that there'd be no need to repeat it.*

Speakers often recap or produce summaries of what was said, or repeat earlier speech. Simple and progressive forms of reporting verbs may occur:

> [Margaret, called away temporarily from an informal business meeting, returns]
> ***We were just saying****, Margaret, we haven't left enough time to revise all the components.*
> (*just* is particularly common with this type of report)

> ***Like we said*** *yesterday, it's all a bit hypothetical.*
> (or, more formally: As we said yesterday, …)

Dramatisation and narrative 501d

In narratives, especially spoken ones, the verb may occur in forms other than the past simple. This dramatises the speech report, making it more vivid.

The past progressive is used to emphasise an ongoing or repeated event, or simply to dramatise the reported speech:

> *He went in to the supermarket and he was singing down the aisles and* ***he was saying****, 'Come on everybody,' you know, 'join in.'*

> *Then it really surprised me how* ***she was saying****, 'Oh, take this fifty pence,' and* ***I was thinking****, gosh, did she really pay you for it?*

Extra dramatisation can be created by using the historic present tense (i.e. present simple form, but with past reference). This often occurs alongside the past simple:

> *So I go back to Doris and she* ***says****, 'All right, Annie, will the bingo be starting soon? I can't see any chairs and tables.' 'No,' I* ***said****, 'we're in the wrong place.'*
> (some speakers of English may consider this form non-standard)

Even greater dramatisation can be produced by using the present progressive with the reporting verb, with the possibility of shifting from the historic present (simple form) to progressive at particularly important moments in the narrative:

> [speaker is talking about Britain's National Lottery; a 'tenner' is ten pounds sterling]
> *He **says**, 'Oh no, I've won a tenner twice,' and **I'm saying**, 'When?' you know, 'You didn't tell me!'*

Use of *I says*, *go*, *be* and *be like* 501e

I says and the use of *go*, *be* and *be like* to dramatise direct speech are considered by many people to be non-standard and grammatically unacceptable. However, they are widespread and normal within major social varieties of British English (••⁘ 84).

Although many would consider it a grammatically unacceptable form, *I says* is very common as a dramatising reporting clause in informal speech:

> [narrating an incident where the speaker feels he was overcharged for a film for his camera]
> A: *I called in, they charged £9.99 for the same film.* [tuts] ***I says*** *'You're overcharging for that film you know.' So he says, 'Oh that's what the price says.'* ***I says****, 'I won't come here again you know.'*
> B: *Yes. Yeah.*
> A: *'You won't get me in here again.' It's only because I was in a bit of a hurry.*

In very informal spoken language, *go*, *be* and *be like* may be used to report direct speech. They are often accompanied by dramatising body-language or a change in the speaker's voice to suggest a dramatic re-creation of the original speech.

Such usage is often considered non-standard and bad style. However, it occurs in a wide range of informal conversations, especially among younger speakers.

Go, *be* and *be like* may be further dramatised by the use of the present simple form:

> *I was embarrassed and when we were out and I had a dress on,* ***she went****, 'Look at her legs, she's got hairy legs.'*
>
> ***He goes****, 'It will cost you 75 quid.' And* ***I'm****, you know, 'We can't afford that!'*
>
> *He keeps coming and trying to kiss me and* ***I'm like****, 'Go away! Go away!'*
>
> ***I was like****, 'Oh, thank God for that!' you know.*

Go also occurs in progressive aspect:

> *There were like magazines flying all over my room and* ***I'm going****, 'Oh I can't get up. Can't get up.'*

In very informal contexts, first person *I* may occur with third person *goes*. This is likely to be considered incorrect and unacceptable usage by many people:

> [talking about looking after someone's dog for the day]
> *She said, 'You've got a little friend to look after tomorrow.' And* ***I goes****, 'Has he got four legs?' She said, 'Yes.'*

A–Z 49 *Like*

Use of discourse markers in direct reports 501f

Direct reports often contain discourse markers such as *erm*, *oh*, *well*, which may or may not have been part of the original utterance:

> *When we first moved into the house we had a cup of tea. You know, they made us that horrible herbal tea stuff. And then of course we had to sit in the living room. And they were just saying, '**Oh well** what are you doing today?' Like that. And my mum and dad said, '**Oh** I think we'll just **you know** do a little bit of food shopping.'*
>
> [*a work placement* is when a person, typically a student, works somewhere without pay for a short time to gain experience]
> *About two or three weeks ago I phoned them up and said, 'Can I do a work placement?' And they said, '**Well**, fax us a letter saying when.' So I did.*

SPEECH REPORTS IN SPECIFIC REGISTERS 502

Newspaper headlines 502a

Newspaper headlines have developed special conventions for reporting speech not normally found elsewhere. A typical convention is an indirect report with the reporting clause in end position, and an ellipted passive reporting verb:

> *STAND UP TO SCHOOL BULLIES, **TEACHERS TOLD***
> (teachers have been told)

Inversion of subject and verb in reporting verbs in end position may occur, with or without inverted commas:

> *BROCCOLI MAY PREVENT CANCER, **SAY U.S. DOCTORS***

Unattributed quotations also occur:

> [*NHS* = British National Health Service]
> *RECORD SHORTAGE OF NURSES **'COULD THREATEN NHS CARE'***
> (it is not clear who spoke the words *could threaten NHS care*)

Impersonal reports in formal registers 502b

Formal styles such as journalism and academic English often use impersonal constructions to report and quote other people's words. These include passive voice constructions and constructions with *it*:

> ***Someone** once said that there's nothing as old as yesterday's news.*
>
> *Many royal watchers predicted then that Isabel's chances of becoming Queen of Spain had been dashed by the embarrassing affair, and **it was said that** Felipe's mother, Queen Sofia, was particularly keen to bring an early end to the romance.*
> (we are not told who said this)
>
> ***It is claimed that** any small retailer who wants to cut prices is threatened with the withdrawal of supply.*

⇢ **146d Hedging and impersonal constructions** in **Grammar and academic English**

Appendices
Glossary
Bibliography
Index

Appendices

Appendix: Word clusters and grammar

Introduction 503
Common types of cluster 504
  Preposition + article 504a
  Subject + verb 504b
  Subject + verb with complement items 504c
  Noun phrase + *of* 504d
  Other types 504e
Functions of clusters 505
  Relations of time and place 505a
  Other prepositional relations 505b
  Interpersonal functions 505c
  Vague language 505d
  Linking functions 505e
  Turn-taking 505f
  Clusters in academic English 505g

Appendix: Punctuation

Introduction 506
  Common punctuation marks: symbols and typographic conventions 506a
  Capitals and full stops 506b
  Question marks and exclamation marks 506c
  Commas 506d
  Colons and semi-colons 506e
  Direct speech 506f
  Citations 506g
  Apostrophes 506h
  Dashes and other punctuation marks 506i
  Numerals and punctuation 506j

Appendix: English spelling

Spelling and prefixes 507
Spelling and suffixes 508
  Rule 1: consonant is doubled before a suffix 508a
  Rule 2: dropping the final *-e* 508b
  Rule 3: plurals of nouns and *-s* forms of verbs 508c
  Rule 4: changing *y* to *i* 508d
  Rule 5: spelling of verb forms: *-ed* forms 508e
  Rule 6: spelling of verb forms: *-ing* forms 508f
  Rule 7: the suffix *-ally* 508g
Spelling and short and long vowels 509
  Doubling 509a
  Addition of final *e* to indicate long vowel 509b
Spelling checks 510
  Panel: One word or two? 510a
  Panel: *i* before *e* except after *c* 510b
Panel: British and American English spelling 511

Appendix: Numbers

Ordinal and cardinal numbers 512
Fractions and decimals 513
  Singular and plural with fractions and decimals 513a
Percentages 514
Telephone numbers 515
Uses of *and* 516
Uses of commas 517
A* and *one 518
Round numbers and dates 519
British pounds sterling 520
Measuring areas 521
Spoken calculations 522
Roman numerals 523
Panel: Spoken forms of *0* 524
Panel: Singular forms with plural meanings 525

Appendix: Referring to the time

Telling the time 526
- The twenty-four-hour clock 526a

Appendix: Units of measurement

Non-metric measures 527
- Approximate values of non-metric units 527a
- Usage 527b

Appendix: Nationalities, countries and regions

Introduction 528
- Examples of countries and regions, and associated adjectives and nouns 528a
- Some main exceptions 528b

Appendix: Irregular verbs

Introduction 529
- Table of irregular verbs 529a

Appendix: North American English grammar

Introduction 530

Modal verbs and other modal expressions 531
- *Shall* 531a
- *Must* 531b
- *Have got to* and *have to* 531c
- *Had better* 531d
- *Be going to* 531e
- *I guess, I suppose, I reckon* 531f

Other verbs 532
- *Be* 532a
- *Have* and *have got* 532b
- *Go (and)* 532c
- *Get* 532d
- *Fit* 532e
- *Learn, burn, dream,* etc. 532f
- Other verbs 532g

Tags and tails 533

Adverbs, adjectives 534
- *Really, real* 534a
- *Well, good* 534b
- *Likely* 534c

The present perfect 535

Concord 536

Prepositional usage 537

Exclamative expressions 538

Appendix: Word clusters and grammar

INTRODUCTION 503

Language use is very repetitive. Words cluster together, those clusters of words repeat themselves time and time again, and some of the most frequently repeated clusters reveal grammatical regularities. However, the most frequently repeated clusters often lack grammatical completeness, in the sense that they are not complete phrases or clauses. They merit special consideration outside of the normal structural rules as described in the rest of this grammar book, since they perform important basic functions in everyday usage.

In this conversational extract, clusters of words which occur with high frequency in the spoken corpus used in the preparation of this book are shown in bold, with adjacent clusters separated by /:

> [a tennis player is talking about his match tactics]
> ***I think****, erm, when I'm on court sometimes* ***there's*** / ***a lot of things*** *that* ***kind of*** *determine how I play.* ***If I'm*** *tired* ***I might*** *shout* ***and that sort of thing****. Erm,* ***I think****, I prepare better* ***you know****. Er, like, before,* ***you know*** *er, maybe I wouldn't push myself* ***like that*** / ***you know*** *but now, erm, I'll go on court, right, with the game plan, erm, and I'll use that as, like, the base of what* ***I'm going to*** *do* ***and then*** *if that's not working then obviously I've got to,* ***kind of****, I've still* ***got to*** / ***try and*** *stick with it because* ***I know*** *er,* ***I know*** *that* ***that's what*** / ***I've got to*** *do. But if the guy is,* ***you know****, finding it quite easy to cope with, or I,* ***kind of like****, break down or it's,* ***kind of****, five four* ***or something*** / ***and I'm*** *doing the right thing* ***but I'm*** *not doing quite well enough,* ***I might*** / ***try and*** *change* ***a couple of things*** / ***here and there****. Erm,* ***I might*** *er* ***try and*** *put* ***a bit more*** *pressure on the guy if er he's serving and it's fifteen thirty,* ***and then*** / ***I might*** *stand over* ***a bit more****,* / ***so I*** / ***try and*** *invite him to hit it to my forehand,* ***that sort of thing****.*

All informal conversations contain a high number of such clusters, and many of the clusters occur more frequently than some of the common, everyday single words. Clusters also occur in written texts; however, the most common clusters differ between written and spoken texts. It can be argued that clusters such as those highlighted are retrieved from memory as whole units; they are formulaic, and are very possibly not assembled afresh each time they are used. They make an important contribution to fluency. The language use of native speakers and expert users always contains a high number of such clusters, especially in speech.

The 20 most frequent co-occurring pairs of words (two-word clusters) in the spoken texts in the corpus used in this grammar book are shown in the table below. Hesitant speech, recasts and exact repetitions, which often occur in unplanned speech, such as *and–and*, or *you–you–you* are excluded from the tables. Contractions such as *don't* and *it's* are not counted as separate words.

Two-word clusters in spoken texts

1	*you know*	11	*I was*
2	*I mean*	12	*on the*
3	*I think*	13	*and then*
4	*in the*	14	*to be*
5	*it was*	15	*if you*
6	*I don't*	16	*don't know*
7	*of the*	17	*to the*
8	*and I*	18	*at the*
9	*sort of*	19	*have to*
10	*do you*	20	*you can*

All of these pairs occur more than 5,000 times in the spoken corpus, the top seven occur more than 10,000 times and *you know* occurs more than 28,000 times.

In the case of three-word clusters, the top 20 clusters all occur more than 1,000 times, and *I don't know* occurs more than 5,000 times.

Three-word clusters in spoken texts

1	*I don't know*	11	*you want to*
2	*a lot of*	12	*you know what*
3	*I mean I*	13	*do you know*
4	*I don't think*	14	*a bit of*
5	*do you think*	15	*I think it's*
6	*do you want*	16	*but I mean*
7	*one of the*	17	*and it was*
8	*you have to*	18	*a couple of*
9	*it was a*	19	*you know the*
10	*you know I*	20	*what do you*

These clusters reveal how patterns are repeated time and time again in conversation, even though they may be fragmentary and grammatically incomplete. The same applies to writing, though the patterns are in many cases different and the overall frequency of the top clusters is lower.

Two-word clusters in written texts

1	*of the*	11	*he was*
2	*in the*	12	*in a*
3	*to the*	13	*with the*
4	*on the*	14	*of a*
5	*it was*	15	*by the*
6	*at the*	16	*was a*
7	*and the*	17	*she was*
8	*to be*	18	*I was*
9	*for the*	19	*had been*
10	*from the*	20	*with a*

Three-word clusters in written texts

1	*one of the*
2	*out of the*
3	*it was a*
4	*there was a*
5	*the end of*
6	*a lot of*
7	*there was no*
8	*as well as*
9	*end of the*
10	*to be a*
11	*it would be*
12	*in front of*
13	*it was the*
14	*some of the*
15	*I don't know*
16	*on to the*
17	*part of the*
18	*be able to*
19	*the rest of*
20	*the first time*

When we come to four-word clusters, all the clusters occur less than 1,000 times and there are considerably fewer of them.

Four-word clusters in spoken texts

1	*you know what I*
2	*know what I mean*
3	*I don't know what*
4	*do you want to*
5	*do you know what*
6	*I don't know if*
7	*a bit of a*
8	*I think it was*
9	*I don't know whether*
10	*what do you think*
11	*I thought it was*
12	*I don't want to*
13	*you know I mean*
14	*that sort of thing*
15	*I don't know how*
16	*if you want to*
17	*well I don't know*
18	*I was going to*
19	*have a look at*
20	*you don't have to*

Four-word clusters in written texts

1	*the end of the*
2	*at the end of*
3	*for the first time*
4	*the rest of the*
5	*in the middle of*
6	*at the same time*
7	*the back of the*
8	*at the top of*
9	*the top of the*
10	*the bottom of the*
11	*per cent of the*
12	*one of the most*
13	*the side of the*
14	*the edge of the*
15	*the middle of the*
16	*in front of the*
17	*I don't want to*
18	*for a long time*
19	*is one of the*
20	*on the other hand*

The tables below show the top 20 five-word spoken and written clusters.

Five-word clusters in spoken texts

1	*you know what I mean*
2	*at the end of the*
3	*do you know what I*
4	*the end of the day*
5	*do you want me to*
6	*in the middle of the*
7	*I mean I don't know*
8	*this that and the other*
9	*I know what you mean*
10	*all the rest of it*
11	*and all that sort of*
12	*I was going to say*
13	*and all the rest of*
14	*and that sort of thing*

15	*I don't know what it*
16	*all that sort of thing*
17	*do you want to go*
18	*to be honest with you*
19	*an hour and a half*
20	*it's a bit of a*

Five-word clusters in written texts

1	*at the end of the*
2	*by the end of the*
3	*for the first time in*
4	*at the top of the*
5	*at the back of the*
6	*on the other side of*
7	*in the centre of the*
8	*the end of the day*
9	*for the rest of the*
10	*the middle of the night*
11	*the other end of the*
12	*at the bottom of the*
13	*the rest of the world*
14	*for the first time since*
15	*had nothing to do with*
16	*at the foot of the*
17	*in and out of the*
18	*in the direction of the*
19	*is one of the most*
20	*the end of the year*

Although there are four- and five-word clusters, and even six-word clusters (*do you know what I mean*, *from the point of view of*), the most frequent clusters consist of two and three words. It is also clear that there is often a relationship between shorter and longer clusters as the longer cluster can be an extension of the shorter cluster. The figures below show the total number of occurrences for each size of cluster, up to six words in length, occurring 20 or more times in a spoken and written corpus of five million words each.

Distribution of clusters occurring 20 or more times in spoken texts

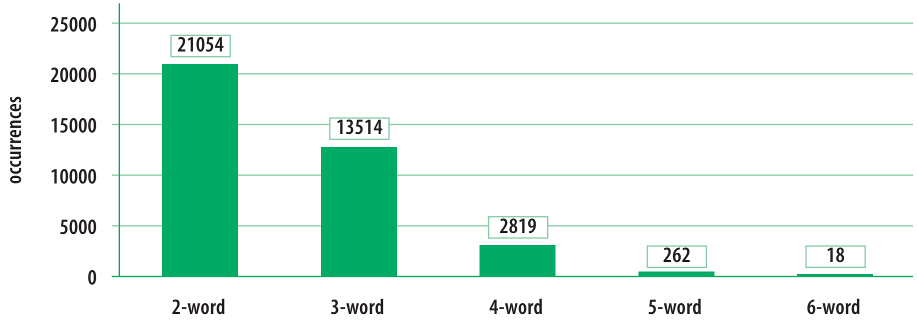

Distribution of clusters occurring 20 or more times in written texts

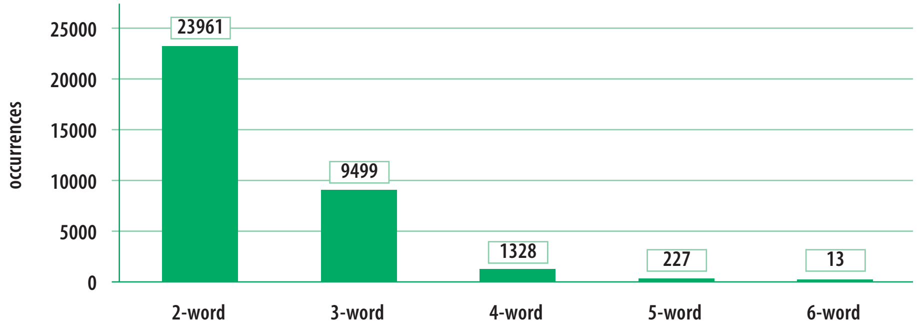

COMMON TYPES OF CLUSTER 504

Preposition + article 504a

The most frequent two-word clusters are prepositions followed by articles, such as *at the*, *in the*, *of the*, *on the*, *of a*, *with a*. These are particularly frequent in written texts:

> *He studied **at the** Royal Academy of Dramatic Art, London.*
>
> *My father's birthday is **on the** fifth.*
>
> *It can be danced either solo, **with a** partner, or in a group.*

Some three-word prepositional patterns with articles are also very frequent, especially *on to the* and *out of the*:

> *Screw the top tight **on to the** bottle.*
>
> *We were never allowed **out of the** school.*

↝ 250–257 Prepositions and prepositional phrases

Subject + verb 504b

Various combinations of pronoun subjects and verbs appear among the most frequent clusters. These are particularly common in spoken texts. They include subject + lexical verb patterns (*you know*, *I think*, *I mean*), subjects with *be* (which may occur as an auxiliary verb or a copular verb, e.g. *it was*, *I was*) and subjects with other auxiliary verbs and modal verbs (e.g. *I don't*, *you can*). Interrogative *do you* is also very frequent in spoken texts:

> ***I was** working so desperately hard.*
>
> ***You can** carry on if you want.*
>
> ***Do you** want a chocolate?*

Three-word subject and verb clusters include negatives, and interrogatives with *do* and *what*:

I don't know
I don't think
it would be
you have to
you want to
do you know
do you think
do you want
what do you

> ***I don't know** what time it starts.*
>
> ***You have to** choose.*
>
> ***Do you think** things are different now?*

↝ 424–433 Questions; 377–407 Modality

Subject + verb with complement items 504c

The three-, four- and five-word clusters in the spoken texts also show frequent occurrences of subject–verb patterns followed by the beginning of a complement structure (such words as *what*, *how*, *if*, *whether*). These include:

I mean I
you know what
you don't have to
I don't know if
I don't know what
I don't know whether
do you know what I
do you want me to

***You know what** it's like when you've got a family.*

***You don't have to** pay if you're a student.*

*If it was my kid, **I don't know what** I'd do.*

304–318 Clause combination

Noun phrase + *of* 504d

A number of high-frequency three-, four- and five-word clusters centre round a noun phrase + *of*, where *of* is the first element of the complement. In the longer clusters, a further element of the complement (typically *the*) occurs. A number of these noun phrases function as the complements of prepositions.

Especially in the written texts, this type is dominated by expressions which often denote a metaphorical location and time:

a bit of
a couple of
a lot of
part of the
the end of (the)
the rest of (the)
the side of the
at the end of
at the top of
in front of the
in the middle of (the)
the back of the
at the bottom of the
at the foot of the
at the top of the
by the end of the
in the direction of the
on the other side of

*You'll have **a lot of** fun with it.*

*She gathered up **the rest of the** plates, turned and walked towards Claudette.*

*She stood silent **in the middle of the** room, looking at him intently.*

*Jake stood **at the top of the** stairs and turned round.*

167–175 The noun phrase

A–Z 55 *Of*

Other types 504e

Other, less frequent, types of cluster occur. These include:

- Verb infinitives (with and without *to*), e.g. *to be (a)*, *be able to*:

  *I used **to be a** bus driver.*

  *We should **be able to** say what we want, shouldn't we?*

- Conjunction + noun-phrase element, adverb or subject + verb, e.g. *and I, and the, if you, and then, but I mean, and it was*:

  If you *play well and you lose, it's tough.*

  It's not the most wonderful area, ***but I mean*** *it was okay.*

→ **304–318 Clause combination**

- Grammatically complete prepositional expressions, especially those of time; these occur with particularly high frequency in the written texts, and include:

  at the moment
  at the time
  in the end
  in the morning
  at the same time
  for the first time
  for a long time
  on the other hand

  For the first time *she tried to imagine herself in that situation.*

  After the meal, she sat ***for a long time*** *at the window.*

  On the other hand*, nothing was impossible.*

→ **250–257 Prepositions and prepositional phrases**

FUNCTIONS OF CLUSTERS 505

Relations of time and place 505a

Some of the most frequent clusters, especially in the written texts, express relations of time and place, particularly through prepositional expressions:

I'll see you ***in the*** *morning.*

There was nobody ***on the*** *beaches.*

She sat on ***the edge of the*** *bed, dialled the number for the Police Department …*

He was waiting at ***the bottom of the*** *stairs.*

In the middle of the *night a noise woke Henry.*

→ **242–249 Adverbs and adverb phrases; 319–337 Adjuncts**

Other prepositional relations 505b

High-frequency preposition-based clusters such as *of a/the, to the, with a/the, by the, for the* express a variety of basic relations such as possession, agency, purpose, goal, direction. These prepositional clusters are most frequent in the written texts:

The amount of rainfall is measured ***with a*** *rain gauge.*

In 1912 he was arrested, and some of his work was destroyed ***by the*** *police.*

It was a surprise ***for the*** *kids.*

Interpersonal functions

505c

One central aspect of clusters, especially in the spoken texts, is how they reflect the interpersonal meanings (meanings which build and consolidate personal and social relations) created between speakers and listeners, and between writers and readers.

The high-frequency clauses and clause-fragments in the spoken clusters show how speakers are constantly monitoring the state of shared versus new knowledge, or assumptions about common ground between themselves and their listeners, and how speakers can hedge their assertions and express degrees of certainty about the world. This is reflected in the high frequency of clusters based round the verbs *know*, *mean* and *think*, together with their extensions, such as the following:

you know
I don't know
you know what (I)
you know I mean
I don't know what (it)
do you know what (I)
I know what you mean
you know what I mean
I mean
I think
I don't think
do you think

***I don't know what** he's going to do.*

*I find French so hard, **you know what I mean**?*

***Do you think** you're going to carry on doing what you're doing now?*

***I don't think** it does any harm for different people to be involved.*

Vague language

505d

Among the most frequent spoken clusters, a number of items enable speakers to refer vaguely to things without having to be explicit. This may be because it is often impossible to be precise, or, more typically, because speakers can assume that their listeners will understand what they are referring to because they have experiences and viewpoints in common, or they share cultural reference points. These items include:

kind of
sort of
and stuff
and things
and so on
sort of thing
this and that
(or) something like that
(and) things like that
(and) that sort of thing
this, that and the other
(and) all that sort of thing
(and) all the rest of it

*She **kind of** keeps herself hidden away, doesn't she?*

*I mean we have towels and toothbrushes **and so on**.*

> [tennis player talking about how some players considered winning to be the only important thing and would do anything to win]
> *I thought at the time, you know, they must just be concentrating on winning at all costs* ***sort of thing****, you know. And there was a lot of cheating* ***and all that sort of thing*** *and so yeah I'd say they were focused on winning.*
>
> *And the first time was, I think, February* ***or something like that****.*

→ **103a Vague language**

Linking functions 505e

A number of clusters function to link clauses or sentences. In the spoken texts, the most frequent clusters centre round the conjunctions *and* and *but*, while longer linking clusters tend to be more frequent in the written texts. Linking items include:

and I/the/then
and I said
and it was
as well as
at the time
but I mean
but it was
at the same time
in the first place
on the other hand
as a result of (the)
but at the same time

> *The kitchen's okay* ***but I mean*** *it'd be nice if you had comfy chairs in there.*
>
> *She wanted to turn around and run back to her room – run up the stairs and slam the door behind her.* ***At the same time*** *she wanted to tell them, tell them everything.*
>
> ***In the first place****, she persisted in disbelieving the whole of the matter; secondly, she was very sure that Mr Collins had been taken in.*
>
> ***As a result of the*** *fuel shortage, Cuba has become a nation of cyclists.*

→ **335 Linking** in **Adjuncts**

Turn-taking 505f

A number of the common clusters in the spoken texts function to hand the speaking turn over to the listener or in some way demand a response from the listener, even if the response is just a minimal, back-channel response. These include *(do) (you) know what I mean?*, interrogative fragments such as *do you think …?*, *do you want to …?*, *what do you …?*, and common tags such as *… do you?*, *… shall I?*, *… was it?*, *… don't you think?*:

> A: *We have to have it because the law says we have to,* ***do you know what I mean****?*
> B: *Yeah.*
>
> A: *Now do you all see the view here? It's quite beautiful,* ***don't you think****?*
> B: *Mhm.*
>
> A: *I'll make some lunch,* ***shall I****?*
> B: *Mm, yes, please.*

I was going to say features as a preface to a turn, drawing attention to what the speaker is about to say, or to repeat or reinforce someone else's turn:

A: *What time does it start? Three?*
B: *No half past.*
A: *Oh.*
B: *We can't expect to be there on time though.*
A: ***I was going to say**, well you wouldn't want to be there on time.*

Clusters in academic English 505g

Academic language possesses a large number of recurring clusters which have become a conventional part of academic style, in speech and in writing. These include:

such as
for example
make sure that
in terms of
the fact that
in other words
and so on
in order to
a variety of
the importance of
the nature of
likely to be
the use of
a (wide) range of
has to do with
take a look at
in the same way
it turns out that
at the same time
the way in which
in the course of
one of the things
in the case of
a large number of
you can see that
if you look at the
there are a number of

[university literature seminar]
*I suppose we've also touched on **the fact that** for modern readers works can raise questions which perhaps they didn't raise for their original readers.*

*I then show how **the nature of** observations leads to the structure of theories.*

*It consisted of two main subsamples designed to span **a wide range of** age and experience for both males and females.*

[seminar discussing business law]
*If I sell to one of you, are you a consumer? Not unless you're acting **in the course of** a business.*

140–154 Grammar and academic English

Appendix: Punctuation

INTRODUCTION 506

Punctuation exists in order to indicate the boundaries of grammatical units and to indicate grammatical information that is marked in spoken language by means of intonation, pitch, etc. Punctuation consists of both rules and conventions. Punctuation rules have to be followed; but punctuation conventions give writers greater freedom and allow choices.

There are many ways in which written text can be punctuated. The major punctuation marks are full stops, question marks, commas, exclamation marks, colons, semi-colons, apostrophes and dashes. The most frequent forms are the full stop (‘period’ in American English) and the comma.

Common punctuation marks: symbols and typographic conventions 506a

. = full stop, period (US English), dot, (decimal) point
, = comma
: = colon
; = semi-colon
? = question mark
! = exclamation mark
– = dash
’ = apostrophe (as in *Jim’s*, *don’t*)
“…” = quotation marks, double quotes
‘…’ = single quotes
- = hyphen (when used to separate words)
* = asterisk
& = *and*
@ = *at* (in email addresses: jane34@opennet.com)
/ = forward slash (as in website addresses)
\ = backwards slash or backslash
% = per cent, percentage
(…) = (round) brackets
(= open bracket
) = close bracket
[…] = square brackets
{…} = chain brackets
<…> = diamond brackets
London = underline
London = bold (on first letter)
London = italics
6.7 = *six point seven*
3.4 = *three point four*

Capitals and full stops 506b

A capital (sometimes called upper case) letter marks the beginning of a sentence. A full stop marks the end of a sentence:

> *__I__ went to the shops__.__ __I__ was surprised they were open__.__ **B**ut I'd forgotten about late opening times__.__*
>
> ***T**he ASEAN summit is to be held in Jakarta this year**.** **L**ast year it was held in Singapore**.***

Capital letters

Capital letters are also used for proper nouns. Proper nouns include personal names (including titles before names), nationalities and languages, days of the week and months of the year, seasons, public holidays, geographical locations:

> ***J**ack **D**awson'll meet them at **K**ing's **C**ross railway station.*
>
> ***S**ir **J**ames and **L**ady **W**ilson are holidaying in **A**ntigua and **S**t **K**itts.*
>
> *Can you speak **S**panish?*
>
> *I suggest we meet on **M**onday.*
>
> *What are you doing at **N**ew **Y**ear?*

Capital letters are also used for titles of books, magazines, newspapers, etc. The capitals normally apply only to content words, not grammatical words:

> *'**P**ride and **P**rejudice' is easily my favourite novel by **J**ane **A**usten.*
>
> *They are performing **B**eethoven's '**E**roica' symphony.*
>
> *'**T**he **T**imes' has the best **S**unday colour supplement, don't you think?*

→ **184 Proper names** in **The noun phrase**

Full stops

In addition to closing sentences, full stops are also sometimes used to indicate sentences that are not grammatically independent. These sentences are sometimes called sentence fragments or simply orthographic sentences. They can involve ellipsis but single words are also common, especially in advertisements, in dialogue involving responses and in writing which seeks to create a dramatic effect:

> *Our airline now flies you to Majorca. Daily**.** And to Barcelona**.** Five times a week**.***
>
> A: *They've decided to ban him for three matches.*
> B: *Really**.** That's awful**.***
>
> A: *So it's okay if she's out till after midnight.*
> B: *As long as she gets a taxi back**.***
>
> *What must she be feeling now? Deep anxiety**.** Loneliness**.** Despair**.***

Conventions change. Full stops used to be common after addresses or after dates in letters but are now much less commonly used. It is, however, a rule that they are not used after the name that ends a letter:

[typical address and date from a business letter]

Duffield Engineering
Netherfield Court
Longstone Road
Ableton
SH5 5TW

15 July 2002

Dear Supplier,

Note that a comma is normally placed after the name of the addressee (⁘ **506d** below).

Full stops are used in initials for personal names, though increasingly they are omitted:

J.D. Power

Richard A. Johnston, Managing Director

A I Briggs

Full stops are also used after abbreviations. This practice is, however, becoming less common:

The Microbiological Society
The annual lecture will be given by David James M.A. and will take place in Saint George's Hall at 7 p.m. on Tues. Dec. 13th.
R.S.V.P. to Prof. Lionel Jackson

NB.
(take note, from Latin 'nota bene'; N.B. is also possible)

Cf.
(compare, from the Latin, 'confer')

Norwegian territories have been prohibited for the U.K. fishing industry for a number of years now.
(also possible: … for the UK fishing industry)

Where abbreviations are curtailed words (words with the end cut off), they take a full stop. For example, *Addr.* (*address*), *Arr.* (*arrival*), *Prof.* (*professor*) and *etc.* (*etcetera*). Where abbreviations of words include the last letter of the word, they do not require a full stop:

St = Street (also 'Saint' as in St John)
Rd = Road
Ltd = Limited (company)
Dr = Doctor

A full stop is not used for common sets of initials or for acronyms (where the initials are pronounced as a word):

Millions of pounds have been invested in the NHS in recent years.
(NHS = National Health Service; not: N.H.S.)

The BBC's coverage of the events has been exemplary.
(not: B.B.C.)

AIDS affects people in over three quarters of the countries of the world.
(not: A.I.D.S.)

Full stops are not used in newspaper headlines, in headings and sub-headings in books, magazines and newspapers or in the titles of books and other works:

Family Lost In Fishing Boat Mystery

Economics and Business Management: Part one: Personnel management

Losing Your Way In Losing Weight

Computers For Fun: A Book For The Whole Family

Question marks and exclamation marks 506c

Question marks

When question marks are used, full stops are not used at the end of the sentence:

*How many times can we afford to change our family car***?**

Question marks are also used in order to make clear that a declarative sentence should be heard as a question. On the other hand, questions that are indirect requests to do something do not normally take a question mark:

*I wonder if you can help me***?**

Karen, can you pass that chair over here.

Exclamation marks

Exclamation marks are used for exclamatives and after interjections:

*What a nice coat***!**

*Wow***!** *Really?*

*Gosh***!** *Does it cost that much?*

Exclamation marks are used more in informal writing. One exclamation mark is the norm but occasionally more than one may be used for emphasis:

*Will you all please be quiet***!**

*Oh no***!!!** *I don't believe it***!**

Exclamation marks are not normally used with imperative clauses unless the writer wishes to emphasise that a directive was or may have been shouted:

Don't get yourself too involved with the day-to-day management.

Let's get going or we're gonna be late.

*Stop***!** *Push the door this way***!**

→ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

Commas 506d

Separating main clauses

Commas are used to mark clause boundaries. Main clauses separated by *and* or *or* or *but* are not normally separated by commas, although commas may be used between clauses which do not have the same subject. American English uses commas before *and*, *but* and *or* more frequently than British English:

> *They **were** friendly and **invited** us back to their flat.*
> (same subject)
>
> *Students these days **leave** with large debts and **have to** repay loans.*
> (same subject)
>
> *It was a restaurant a good distance from the city centre**,** but we decided it was worth making such a long journey.*
> (different subjects)

Separating main and subordinate clauses

Normally commas are used if the subordinate clause comes before the main clause. Subordinate clauses can be separated by a comma from a preceding main clause, especially when the relation between them might be obscured because the clauses are long. But it is not obligatory, particularly in short sentences.

Compare:

> ***If you get stuck,*** *come back and see me.*
>
> *Come back and see me **if you get stuck**.*
>
> ***As long as she takes the examination,*** *we will overlook the problems with her attendance.*
>
> *We can get there for around six if there are no problems with the traffic on the motorway.*
>
> or
>
> *We can get there for around six**,** if there are no problems with the traffic on the motorway.*

Subordinate or comment clauses that provide additional information or that elaborate information given in the main clause are punctuated with commas:

> *It doesn't suit you**, to be honest**.*
>
> *You do need to use a microphone to be heard**, if I may say so**.*
>
> ***To tell you the truth,*** *I thought she was wrong.*

With relative clauses

Commas are also used to mark non-defining relative and non-defining non-finite clauses. Such clauses normally add to, amplify or evaluate information concerning a noun or noun phrase:

> *The tablets**, which began to take effect after about twenty minutes,** soon brought the fever under control.*

*Barcelona**, where the first conference was held,** has changed out of all recognition.*

*The visiting supporters**, treated like criminals by the local police,** were grateful to leave the country when the competition was over.*

*The severe turbulence**, lasting as it did for more than an hour,** caused several passengers to be quite ill.*

↝ also **317i Punctuation and intonation of relative clauses**

Defining relative and defining non-finite clauses do not add to or amplify a statement. They postmodify a noun and specify or define properties associated with the noun. Such clauses are **not** punctuated by a comma:

*The people **who caused most trouble** have left the area.*
(~~The people, who caused most trouble, have left the area.~~)

*The town house **which they had bought** was let out to tenants within a matter of days.*

*The best pictures **to buy in Cuba** are always by the street artists.*

*The city braced itself for the storms **caused by a cyclone in the Pacific**.*

Embedded clauses, however long and complex, that function as the subject of the main clause, are not marked off by commas:

*The decisions **about congestion parking that have been pushed through by the City Council without proper consultation** are now beginning to cause even more problems for motorists.*

What we've always been short of is soup bowls.
(~~What we've always been short of, is soup bowls.~~)

Similarly, non-defining clauses in apposition are punctuated by commas, whereas defining clauses in apposition are not punctuated. The most common form of apposition involves nouns and noun phrases but non-restrictive apposition can also refer back to an earlier part of the clause:

*His brother**, the one who lives in Osaka,** has just set up his own book importing business.*
(~~His brother the one who lives in Osaka, has just set up his own book importing business.~~)

*The London Eye**, a revolving wheel on the banks of the Thames,** gives excellent views across the whole city and has attracted many visitors.*

*People were beginning to put money into savings accounts**, an early indication of economic uncertainty**.*

*My sister's daughter **Nora** and her daughter **Rita** and the boys are all living close by.*
(defining noun phrase in apposition)

*The group leader**, a man in his eighties,** went swimming twice a day.*
(non-defining noun phrase in apposition)

With adjectives

Commas are used between adjectives in attributive and predicative positions. A comma is not normally used before an adjective followed by *and*:

> *The town was* ***cold, dark and inhospitable****.*
>
> *It was an* ***energetic, competitive and committed*** *performance and the team deserved its victory.*
>
> *This is the* ***lightweight, portable and wireless*** *version.*

With lists

Commas are used to separate items in a list, except for a final item preceded by *and*. In American English, however, the norm is to have a comma before *and* in a list:

> *They bought a rail pass and visited* ***Rome, Milan, Venice and Verona****.*
>
> *She spent the whole week* ***watching videos, listening to CDs, reading detective novels and writing postcards to friends****.*
>
> *They've got* ***apples, pears, bananas, and peaches****.*
> (American English preferred form)

With adjuncts

Commas play an important part in punctuating adjuncts, most markedly when they provide a comment or linking function. In such cases the comma often coincides with a pause in speech:

> *It was****, however,*** *the best decision taken at that point in the company.*
>
> ***Unfortunately,*** *the proposal was turned down without any explanation.*
>
> *Have you had any contact with Karin****, by the way****?*
>
> *The economic gloom continued through the post-war period;* ***on the other hand,*** *employment prospects were beginning to improve.*

With tags and responses

Tags and *yes-no* responses are separated by commas:

> *He is going to be there****, isn't he****?*
>
> *I'm thirsty****, I am****.*
>
> ***Yes,*** *thank you. I'd be delighted to accept.*

With vocatives, discourse markers and interjections

Vocatives, discourse markers and interjections are also punctuated with commas:

> *Open the door for them****, Jake,*** *can you. Thanks.*
>
> *The trouble is****, doctor,*** *I've stopped taking the prescription.*
>
> ***Ros,*** *can you get me a paper while you're out.*
>
> ***Well,*** *what do you suppose they did about it?*
>
> ***Oh, so,*** *you'll be off in about an hour****, then****?*

In reporting speech

Commas are used to indicate that direct speech is following or has just occurred. When the direct speech is first, the comma comes before the closing of the quotation marks:

> *He said**,** “Now it’s time for big changes.”*
>
> *“I’m too old for that kind of thing**,**” she said with a broad grin.*

→ also **506f** below

Commas are not used in reporting structures after *that*, *what* and *where* even though stress and a consequent pause may fall on the verb immediately preceding *that*:

> *Everyone knew that she wouldn’t pass the exam.*
> (~~Everyone knew, that she wouldn’t pass the exam.~~)

Certain fixed expressions with *say* do not have a comma or quotation mark:

> ***Say hi** to Jim for me.*
>
> *I’m really sorry but I’m afraid I have to **say no** to your kind offer.*

In letters

In letters, forms of address and signing off are marked by commas:

> *Dear David**,*** (addressing the recipient of the letter)
>
> *Thank you for your letter of Feb. 14th.*
>
> …
>
> *Yours sincerely**,*** (signing off at the end of the letter)
>
> *Jill Paton*

Colons and semi-colons 506e

Colons are used to introduce lists, to indicate a sub-title or to indicate a subdivision of a topic:

> *There are three main arguments for the withdrawal of the troops**:** military, economic and, above all, ethical.*
>
> *The History of Britain**:** A Personal View*

Colons may also be used to mark a clause in which reasons or explanations are given:

> *We decided against buying the DVD player**:** it wasn’t lightweight enough to take on holiday with us.*

Semi-colons are sometimes used to separate items included in a sequence or list:

> *The facility has a number of features: a cinema**;** two meeting rooms**;** a fast-food café**;** a small gymnasium.*

Semi-colons may also be used instead of full stops to separate two main clauses. In such cases the clauses remain grammatically separate but are linked in meaning. Semi-colons are not frequently used in contemporary English. Full stops and commas are much more common:

> *Some cats sleep during the night***;** *most cats are active during the dark.*
>
> *Bangkok is the capital city***;** *Chiang Mai is the main tourist destination.*

Direct speech 506f

In direct speech, a reconstruction of the actual words somebody has spoken or written are indicated. Direct speech is normally enclosed within a pair of single or double quotation marks, though single quotation marks are becoming more widespread. Direct speech begins with a capital letter:

> *She said,* **“W***ho do you think you are?***”**

The reporting clause can appear in three different positions. Note the position of commas and full stops:

> *The course tutor said to us***,** *‘Don’t waste your time in your first term here***.***’*
> (quotation mark after comma introducing speech and after full stop)
>
> *‘Don’t waste your time in your first term here***,***’ the course tutor said to us.*
> (comma before closing quotation mark)
>
> *‘Don’t waste your time’***,** *the course tutor said to us***,** *‘in your first term here.’*
> (commas separating intervening reporting clause)

For direct speech inside direct speech, either single quotation marks inside double or double quotation marks inside single may be used. Note that quotation marks in English are superscript, not subscript plus superscript, as in some languages. That is, they are marked ‘…’ or “…”:

> *David said, ‘He was getting really cross and kept shouting* **“***Get out!***”***.’*
>
> **“***It was getting really tense,***”** *she said,* **“***and everybody was yelling ‘Why don’t you go home?’***”**

Question marks normally occur inside the quotation marks unless the question is part of the reporting clause:

> *‘Don’t you know the way then***?***’ they asked.*
>
> *So after all that, did she really say ‘I plan to resign’***?**

Occasionally, colons may be used to introduce direct speech. This is common in dramatic transcripts or when a particularly long section of direct speech is marked. Note also that in film and play scripts, quotation marks are not used:

> Polonius**:** *What do you read my Lord?*
> Hamlet**:** *Words, words, words.*

The company secretary then turned to me and said: 'The results of this company are better than in any time in the past five years and we object most strongly to the negative reporting we have received in some parts of the media'.

⁘ also **490a Punctuation and direct speech; 490b Punctuation and indirect speech**

Citations 506g

It is sometimes necessary to highlight individual words. This citation or special mention may be punctuated in a number of ways. (In order to highlight the italics, complete examples in this section (506g) are not, as elsewhere in the book, italicised.)

The citation may be underlined or in italics or placed within quotation marks. Definitions or translations are usually in single quotation marks:

Boot has several different meanings in English. And when it refers to storage space in the rear of a motor car, it is 'trunk' in American English.

The *marguerite* or 'common daisy' is cultivated in a variety of different colours.

Weltanschaung means a 'view of the world', formed from the German noun *Welt* (meaning 'world') and the verb *anschauen* (meaning 'to look at').

Single quotation marks are sometimes used to draw attention to a word, or to indicate an unusual use of a word, or to suggest that the writer wants to be distanced from the word in some way. In such cases the writer intends that the word or phrase should be taken in a non-literal or non-obvious sense:

The bus broke down twice and, as far as I am concerned, I won't be using the city 'transport' system again.

[newspaper headline]
PM 'ANGERED' BY OPPOSITION ATTACK

Titles of books, newspapers, magazines, videos or CDs also qualify as a special form of citation. Such mentions are usually punctuated by italics or underlining. Articles or chapters within books or titles of short stories are normally punctuated by single quotation marks:

There's a report all about it in *The Times* today.

[*Hello!* is a magazine dedicated to pictures of celebrities]
Hello! has some really good pictures of the wedding.

The best-argued chapter in the book is the one on 'Arab Unity since 1956'.

[*Moby* is a musician who released a CD called *18*]
Moby's *18* has eighteen tracks. The most moving one is 'Harbour'.

A character in a novel or play which has the same name is not highlighted but the title of the work is:

Othello was manipulated as much by what Iago didn't say as by what he did say.

Othello is one of Shakespeare's most complex psychological tragedies.

Apostrophes 506h

Apostrophes are used for three main purposes: to mark letters that have been omitted in contracted forms; to mark possessive forms of nouns and pronouns; and to mark special plurals.

Common contractions include:

it’s = it is
I’d = I would/had
can’t = cannot
who’s = who is, who has
where’s = where is, where has
what’s = what is, what has
how’s = how is, how has

Apostrophes with nouns are used before and after the possessive *-s* ending. The main rules are:

1 For a singular noun, use ’s:

*the cat: The cat**’s** milk is in the fridge.*

*the student: The student**’s** views are most important.*

*Laura: Laura**’s** brothers are all younger than her.*

*year: This year**’s** fashion show is in Turin.*

2 For a plural noun which does not end in *-s*, use *’s*:

*his men: His men**’s** obsession with football is out of hand.*

*the police: The police**’s** actions cannot be supported.*

3 For a plural noun which ends in *-s*, use *s’*:

*your colleagues: Your colleague**s’** decisions must be respected.*

*his dogs: His dog**s’** kennels need cleaning out.*

*two hours: Two hour**s’** walk is too far at our age.*

4 The apostrophe *’s* is also added to names ending in *-s*. However, many writers prefer simply to add an apostrophe mark after the final *-s*, especially to names which have more than one syllable:

Dickens’s novels or *Dickens’ novels* (more common)
Socrates’s writings or *Socrates’ writings* (more common)
Keats’s poetry or *Keats’ poetry* (more common)

5 An apostrophe is added to first names ending in *-s*:

*Angu**s’s** offer had to be turned down.*

*In my opinion, Iri**s’s** car is too dangerous to go on the road.*

*The service is at St Augustu**s’s** church at midday.*

6 The apostrophe *'s* is also added to whole phrases. In compound nouns the *'s* is added after the final noun:

*The people next door**'s** dog is a nuisance.*

*You might have guessed. Richard and Pat**'s** new car is French.*

*It's my brother-in-law**'s** fault.*
(~~brother's-in-law~~).

7 In fixed expressions such as *for goodness' sake* or *for appearance' sake*, a single apostrophe is added, though it is becoming optional.

8 Possessives can also be used without a following noun. If the reference is clear, the noun is not normally needed. When referring to people's names or when people's houses are meant, the apostrophe is retained:

*Don't forget I'm going to the doctor**'s** after work.*

*I'm staying over at Jack**'s** this evening. Okay?*

*I think we'd better go over to my mother**'s** before dinner.*

Apostrophes can be used when referring to firms, shops and businesses. But the rule is in flux and many shops drop the apostrophe in their names. The use of the apostrophe in reference to decades is also in flux:

*I'm going over to Blue**'s** for coffee.*

[name of a supermarket chain]
*He bought his TV at Sainsbury**'s**.*

[name of a chain selling pharmaceutical products]
Are you getting the prescription at Boots?

Was that band really on tour in the 1960s?
(1960's can also be found, even though it is **not** a possessive but a plural: nineteen sixties)

The apostrophe *'s* also occurs with particular indefinite pronouns: for example, *one* and compounds ending in *-one* or *-body*. When combined with *else*, the apostrophe *'s* is added to *else*:

*One**'s** responsibility is to one**'s** family.*

*Is this somebody**'s** jacket?*

*It's all right. It's nobody**'s** fault.*

*This must be someone else**'s** room.*

The indefinite pronoun *other* has the same forms as nouns. The singular adds *'s* to 'other', while the plural adds an apostrophe after the plural *-s* ending:

*You two are always sharing each other**'s** secrets.*

*This is your room. The other**s'** rooms are across the hall there.*

⁘ **539 Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

Possessive pronouns ending in -*s* do not have an apostrophe:

That was theirs.

Which keys are yours?

Whose book is this?
(~~Who's book is this?~~)

✪ The apostrophe is not used with the impersonal possessive pronoun *its*. *It's* means 'it is':

*The cart had lost one of **its** wheels.*
(~~The cart had lost one of it's wheels.~~)

Possessive noun phrases with *of* normally retain the apostrophe form which would occur if they preceded a noun:

*That's another cat **of** Nell**'s**, isn't it? She had over twenty at the last count.*
(Nell's cat)

*I'd like you to meet Bill. Bill is a partner **of** my father**'s**.*
(my father's partner)

Dashes and other punctuation marks 506i

Dashes are more common in informal writing. They can be used in similar ways to commas. Both single and multiple dashes may be used:

Our Head of Finance – who often loses his temper about travel expenses – was the calmest in the room. I couldn't believe it!

Just to let you know we've just got back from Mallorca --- we really loved it.

Brackets have a similar function to dashes. They can also function as a punctuation of what are presented as afterthoughts:

We were up late most nights (not working, of course!) and so never really got up till after midday.

Hyphens are a form of dash and can be used within modifiers:

a twelve-year-old girl
(compare: she's twelve years old)

Forward slashes are common in internet addresses and to act as an 'and/or' marker in academic references:

You can find more information on www.bbc.co.uk/sport.

Jenkins 1991/1997 has given three reasons for this state of affairs.

→ also **156 Punctuation** in **Grammar and academic English** for further guidance on punctuation conventions in academic writing.

→ also **256 Compounds** and **266 Hyphenation** for further examples of word compounds and hyphens

Numerals and punctuation 506j

Full stops are less commonly used in dates. Other punctuation conventions such as forward slashes or dashes are becoming more common:

Date of birth: 12.7.1981
(also possible: 12/7/1981 or 12-7-1981)

Note that American usage reverses the day and the month so that July 12th 1981 is written:

7-12-1981 or *7/12/1981* or *7.12.1981*

Abbreviations used in science and technology follow an international system in which full stops are not used:

NCl (chemical symbol for sodium chloride)

H_2O (chemical symbol for water)

kg (*kilograms*)

200w bulbs (*200 watt electric light bulbs*)

Punctuation of weights and measures and of numbers follows the same rules:

2kg (*2 kilograms*)

3yds and 3ins = 1m (*3 yards and 3 inches = one metre*)

5m dollars (*5 million dollars*)

Punctuation of times can involve full stops or colons:

I'll be there at 4.30.
(or 4:30)

Commas are used in numbers to indicate units of thousands and millions. Full stops are used to indicate decimal points:

7,340
(*seven thousand three hundred and forty*)

13,987,460
(*thirteen million nine hundred and eighty seven thousand four hundred and sixty*)

3.5
(*three point five*)

7.8
(*seven point eight*)

also **512–525 Appendix: Numbers**

Appendix: English spelling

This appendix introduces some of the most basic spelling rules in British English, with a panel showing some differences between British and American spelling. It makes reference to the structure of words discussed in **258–268 Word structure and word formation** but can also be read independently.

SPELLING AND PREFIXES 507

When there is a prefix, letters are not normally added or taken away:

un + sure = unsure

un + necessary = unnecessary

dis + obey = disobey

dis + similar = dissimilar

mis + read = misread

mis + rule = misrule

over + hear = overhear

under + spend = underspend

in + humane = inhumane

in + sane = insane

in + secure = insecure

il-, im-, ir-

When the first letter of a word is *l*, *m*, *p*, or *r*, the prefix *in-* is regularly changed to *il-*, *im-* or *ir-*. For example: *in* becomes *il-* before *l*; *in* becomes *im-* before *m* or *p*; *in* becomes *ir-* before *r*:

-il	-im	-ir
illegible	*immoral*	*irreparable*
illegal	*immeasurable*	*irreplaceable*
illiberal	*impartial*	*irrepressible*
illiterate	*impossible*	*irresolute*
illogical	*imprudent*	*irresponsible*

SPELLING AND SUFFIXES 508

There are two kinds of suffix.

A suffix can be attached to the end of a base form to create a new word. This process typically changes the word class:

noun suffixes: *act**ion**, train**ee**, free**dom**, arriv**al***

adjective suffixes: *inform**al**, home**less**, grate**ful***

verb suffixes: *simpl**ify**, dark**en**, internationa**lise***

adverb suffixes: *quick**ly**, home**ward**(**s**), clock**wise***

However, inflectional suffixes express grammatical meanings and do not change the class of the word. For example, *-ed* is added to *paint* to produce the past tense *painted*. The spelling rules for suffixes below apply also to inflections. ⁘ also **262 Suffixes** in **Word structure and word formation**

Rule 1: consonant is doubled before a suffix 508a

Consonants doubled

The final consonant of a word is often doubled when a suffix beginning with a vowel is added. Examples of such suffixes are: *-ed*, *-er*, *-est*, *-ing*.

The rule applies in the case of the following single consonants: *b, d, g, l, m, n, p, r, t*:

rub + ed = rubbed

red + ish = reddish

big + er = bigger

travel+ er = traveller

slim + ing = slimming

sin + er = sinner

drop + ed = dropped

war + ing = warring

fit + ing = fitting

If the suffix is added to a word with more than one syllable, consonant doubling follows a stressed syllable:

*re**fer** + ed = referred*

*o**mit** + ing = omitting*

*sub**mit** + ing = submitting*

*oc**cur** + ence = occurrence*

*up**set** + ing = upsetting*

Compare, however, the words *visit* and *offer*, where the stress is on the first syllable:

***vi**sit* = *visiting*
(~~visitting~~)

***off**er* = *offering*
(~~offerring~~)

Note too that in each case the vowel before the last consonant is a short vowel.

Consonants not doubled

The final consonant is not doubled before a suffix:

- if the word ends in two written consonants (*export–exported, find–finding, insert–inserting, insist–insisted, lift–lifted, persist–persistence*)
- if there are two written vowels (*meeting*, *rained*, *beaten*, *trainer*, *repeated*)
- if the stress is not on the last syllable of the word to which the suffix is added (***en**ter–entering, de**ve**lop–developing* (~~developping~~), ***o**pen–opener*)

Irregular forms and exceptions

Some monosyllabic words ending in *-s* are irregular and the *s* may be doubled or not (*busses/buses, gasses/gases*). In a few polysyllabic words ending in *-s*, the *s* may also be doubled, even though the final syllable before the suffix is unstressed (either ***bi**ased* or ***bi**assed*, either ***fo**cusing* or ***fo**cussing*). There is a preference for the forms with a single *s*, and those with double *s* are relatively rare.

Some words with more than two syllables, several of them words ending in *-l*, have a double consonant even though the last syllable is not stressed (***ma**rvellous*, ***mo**delling*, ***tra**veller*, ***eq**ualled*, ***han**dicapped*, ***pro**grammed*).

Words ending in a final *-c* change to *-ck* before a suffix; this mainly involves the suffixes *-ed*, *-er*, *-ing* (*mimic–mimicking, panic–panicking, picnic–picnicked, traffic–trafficked*).

Note, however, the single consonant spelling in American English of *worshiper*, *kidnaper*, *traveling*.

Rule 2: dropping the final *-e* 508b

When a suffix beginning with a vowel is added to a word ending in *-e*, the *e* is usually dropped:

hope + ing = hoping

debate + ed = debated

fame + ous = famous

love + able = lovable

invite + ation = invitation

note + able = notable

approve + al = approval

There are exceptions to this rule. For example, where the *e* is kept before a vowel:

- the *e* in *dyeing* (from *dye*) and *singeing* (from *singe*) is kept in order to differentiate them from similar words *dying* (from *die*) and *singing* (from *sing*)
- the *e* in *ce* and *ge* before a suffix beginning with *a* or *o* is kept to preserve the /s/ and /dʒ/ sounds (*replaceable*, *noticeable*, *peaceable*, *knowledgeable*, *advantageous*, *courageous*)

However, the *e* is not dropped before a suffix beginning with a consonant, such as *-ful*, *-less*, *-ly* (*forceful*, *blameless*, *widely*).

Exceptions occur when the *e* is dropped before a consonant (*pursue–pursuit*, *awe–awful*, *feeble–feebly*, *noble–nobly*, *true–truly*, *whole–wholly*).

Additionally, some words have alternative forms with or without an *e* (*abridgment/abridgement*, *acknowledgment/acknowledgement*, and *judgment/judgement*).

Rule 3: plurals of nouns and *-s* forms of verbs 508c

There are rules for the plurals of regular nouns and the *-s* forms of regular verbs.

General rule: add *s* (*week–weeks*, *speak–speaks*, *eye–eyes*, *bring–brings*, *summer–summers*, *define–defines*).

If the ending is pronounced as a separate syllable, *es* is added:

noun plurals	**verb *-s* forms**
church–churches	*fetch–fetches*
fox–foxes	*fizz–fizzes*
bush–bushes	*rush–rushes*

However, if a word already ends in an *-e*, an *s* is added (*base–bases*, *lose–loses*, *judge–judges*, *face–faces*).

If the word ends in a consonant plus *-y*, *y* changes to *i* and the suffix *es* is added:

noun plurals	**verb *-s* forms**
copy–copies	*marry–marries*
fly–flies	*try–tries*

Some words ending in *-o*, require *es*:

noun plurals	**noun plurals and verb *-s* forms**
buffalo–buffaloes	*echo–echoes*
cargo–cargoes	*embargo–embargoes*
hero–heroes	*go–goes* [*go* here = attempt]
potato–potatoes	*torpedo–torpedoes*
tomato–tomatoes	*hoe–hoes*

Some of the words in this group have a less common alternative form in *-s* (*video–videos*, *radio–radios, kilo–kilos, zoo–zoos*).

For some nouns ending in *-f* or *-fe*, the plural is formed by changing the *f* or *fe* to *ves* (*thief–thieves*, *loaf–loaves*, *wife–wives*, *half–halves*).

Rule 4: changing *y* to *i* 508d

When a suffix is added to a word ending in a consonant plus *-y*, the *y* normally changes to *i*:

easy + *ly* = *easily*
happy + *ly* = *happily*
amplify + *er* = *amplifier*
beauty + *ful* = *beautiful*
apply + *ed* = *applied*
spy + *s* = *spies*
hurry + *s* = *hurries*
mystery + *ous* = *mysterious*
fury + *ous* = *furious*
busy + *ness* = *business*
empty + *ness* = *emptiness*
amplify + *cation* = *amplification*

There are, however, exceptions where the *y* is kept after a consonant:

- a few words of one syllable keep the *y* before a suffix (*dryness*, *shyness*, *slyness*)
- the *y* is kept before *-ing* (*studying*, *applying*)
- the *y* is kept before *-'s* (*the fly's wing*, *May's rain*)

The *y* is kept in most words that end in a vowel + *-y*:

buy + *er* = *buyer*
destroy + *s* = *destroys*
enjoy + *ment* = *enjoyment*
grey + *ish* = *greyish*
play + *ful* = *playful*
try + *ing* = *trying*

Exceptions occur where the *y* after a vowel is changed to *i* (*gay–gaily*, *pay–paid*).

Rule 5: spelling of verb forms: *-ed* forms 508e

The past tense and *-ed* participle are the same in regular verbs. The following are the spelling rules for regular verbs:

General rule: add *ed* (*play–played*, *load–loaded*, *trail–trailed*, *echo–echoed*).

If the word ends in *-e*, a *d* is added (*agree–agreed*, *note–noted*, *love–loved*, *tie–tied*).

If the word ends in a consonant plus *-y*, the *y* is changed to *i* before *-ed* (*cry–cried*, *dry–dried*, *envy–envied*, *reply–replied*).

There are three exceptions, where the *y* is changed to *i* after a vowel and just *d* is added (*lay–laid*, *pay–paid*, *say–said*).

The rules for doubling a single consonant before *-ed* are as described above at **508a**. For example (*beg–begged*, *enter–entered*, *float–floated*, *prefer–preferred*).

Rule 6: spelling of verb forms: *-ing* forms 508f

General rule: add *ing* (*cash–cashing*, *go–going*, *hurry–hurrying*, *play–playing*).

If the word ends in *-e*, *e* is dropped before *-ing* (*lose–losing*, *judge–judging*, *save–saving*, *write–writing*).

But if the word ends in *-ee*, *-oe* or *-ye*, the *e* is kept:

see–seeing	*hoe–hoeing*
agree–agreeing	*dye–dyeing* (compare: *die/dying*)

If the word ends in *-ie*, the *i* is changed to *y* and the *e* is dropped before the *-ing* (*die–dying*, *lie–lying*, *tie–tying*).

See Rule 1 (508a above) for doubling a single consonant before *-ing*.

Rule 7: the suffix *-ally* 508g

The suffix *-ally* is added to adjectives ending in *-ic* to form adverbs (*economic–economically*, *automatic–automatically*, *realistic–realistically*, *tragic–tragically*). Exception: *publicly*.

SPELLING AND SHORT AND LONG VOWELS 509

Doubling 509a

The vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u* have long and short pronunciations. Thus there is a long vowel *a* in the word *mast* and a short vowel *a* in the word *mat*.

When a long vowel is followed by a single consonant plus a vowel, the consonant is **not** doubled when a suffix is added (*scene–scenic*, *enthuse–enthusiasm*, *skate–skating*, *wide–widen*, *hope–hopeful*).

Doubling of consonants, where it occurs, enables words with similar forms to be differentiated (*diner*, *dinner*; *later*, *latter*).

Addition of final *e* to indicate long vowel 509b

A final silent *e* is used to indicate that the preceding stressed written vowel is long:

long vowel	short vowel
hate, fate	*hat, fat*
theme, impede	*them, moped*
dine, bite	*din, bit*

There are some common exceptions, where the preceding vowel does not have the regular pronunciation (*have*; *there*, *where*; *were*; *come*, *done*, *love*, *none*, *one*, *some*; *gone*; *live* (as a verb), *give*).

The general rule applies also in the sequence vowel + consonant + *-le*. Hence, in *gable* the vowel *a* is long whereas in *gabble* it is short. Further examples of the long vowel in this position are: *able*, *fable*, *ladle*, *bible*, *circle*, *cycle*, *idle*, *trifle*, *noble*. Exception: *label*.

SPELLING CHECKS 510

One word or two? 510a

Some sound pairs are spelt either as one or as two words, depending on the meaning intended:

one word	two words	one word	two words
already	*all ready*	*however*	*how ever*
altogether	*all together*	*into*	*in to*
always	*all ways*	*maybe*	*may be*
anybody	*any body*	*nobody*	*no body*
anyway	*any way*	*someone*	*some one*
awhile	*a while*	*somebody*	*some body*
everyone	*every one*	*whatever*	*what ever*
everybody	*every body*	*whoever*	*who ever*

i before *e* except after *c* 510b

If in doubt about *ie* or *ei* when the sound of the vowel is as in *brief*, spell it *ie*; but after *c*, spell it *ei*:

ie		*ei* after *c*
brief	*thief*	*ceiling*
belief	*achieve*	*conceive*
believe	*field*	*conceit*
diesel	*niece*	*deceive*
relief	*priest*	*receipt*
relieve	*siege*	*perceive*

Exceptions for spelling *ie*:

- *financier, species*
- words in which *y* has changed to *i* end in *-ies* even after *c* (*prophecies, democracies*).

In most words that do not have the pronunciation as in *brief*, the usual order is *e* before *i*: for example, *freight*, *weigh*, *sovereign*, *counterfeit*. The most common exception is *friend*.

British and American English spelling 511

Some words are spelled differently in American English and British English.

For example:

British English	American English
centre	*center*
cheque	*check*
colour	*color*
defence	*defense*
labour	*labor*
theatre	*theater*
programme	*program*

Variants

There are several variants with *-ise* or *-ize*, *-isation* or *-ization* . Both variants are acceptable, though the spelling with *s* is perhaps more common in British English (*criticise–criticize, colonisation–colonization*).

The following words, and words formed from them, should be spelled with *ise* in British English:

advertise
advise
arise
baptise
chastise
comprise
compromise
despise
devise
disguise
enterprise
exercise
franchise
improvise
merchandise
paralyse
revise
supervise
surmise
surprise
televise

Appendix: Numbers

ORDINAL AND CARDINAL NUMBERS 512

The conventional abbreviations for ordinal numbers are as follows. The suffix may be written as superscript (1st) or as normal script (1st):

first	*1st/1st*
second	*2nd/2nd*
third	*3rd*
fourth	*4th*
fifth	*5th*
sixth	*6th*
seventh	*7th*
eighth	*8th*
ninth	*9th*
tenth	*10th*
sixteenth	*16th*
thirty third	*33rd*
twenty fifth	*25th/25th*
seventy first	*71st*

In handwriting, *seven* is typically written as *7*, but may also be written as 7. *Four* is most commonly handwritten as 4 but may also be written as *4*.

A hyphen is used to separate tens and units (*twenty-four*, *six hundred and forty-nine*).

Both cardinal numbers and ordinal numbers are common with titles of books and films and for referring to chapters and parts of documents. After the noun, a cardinal number is used. Both cardinal and ordinal numbers are normally acceptable, though the cardinal number is more informal:

*I think the reference is in Book **7** of 'Paradise Lost'.*
(or: the seventh book)

*The play didn't get started until the **third** act.*
(or: Act 3)

*I will return to these questions in the **ninth** chapter.*
(or: chapter 9)

The definite article is not used when cardinal numbers occur after the noun:

I will return to these questions in chapter 9.
(~~I will return to these questions in the chapter 9.~~)

See figure 9 below.
(~~See the figure 9 below.~~)

Turn to page 28.

Ordinal numbers are used with the names of kings and queens and aristocrats:

*He is **the fourth** Earl of Gloucester.*
(~~He is Earl 4 of Gloucester.~~)

*King Henry **VII**/King Henry **the Seventh***
(~~King Henry Seven~~)

FRACTIONS AND DECIMALS 513

Simple fractions are normally said in the following ways:

$^{1}/_{2}$	*a half*
$^{1}/_{4}$	*a quarter*
$^{1}/_{5}$	*a/one fifth*
$^{3}/_{8}$	*three eighths*
$^{2}/_{3}$	*two thirds*
$^{13}/_{14}$	*thirteen fourteenths*
$^{3}/_{4}$ *hour*	*three quarters of an hour*
$^{3}/_{10}$ *mile*	*three tenths of a mile*

Decimals are normally said and written as follows:

0.245 *nought point two four five*
(in American English normally *zero point two four five*)
(~~nought point two hundred and forty five~~)

4.7 *four point seven*

More complex fractions can be expressed by using the word *over*:

$^{423}/_{500}$ *four hundred and twenty three **over** five hundred*

Singular and plural with fractions and decimals 513a

With fractions and decimals below 1, *of a* + singular noun is commonly used:

$^{2}/_{5}$ *k* *two fifths **of a kilogram***

*That's almost **three quarters of a** pint of milk that she's drunk.*

0.8cm *(nought) point eight **of a centimetre***

When the decimals are below 1, they can also be followed by a plural noun:

0.255cm	*nought point two five five* ***centimetres***

Fractions and decimals over 1 are normally followed directly by a plural noun:

> *two and a quarter* ***hours***
> (~~two and a quarter hour~~)
>
> *I'll have four and a half* ***bags****, please.*
> (~~I'll have four and a half bag, please.~~)
>
> *2.7* ***millimetres***
> (~~2.7 millimetre~~)

Note that after fractions and amounts, singular verbs are normally used:

> *8 kilometres* ***is*** *about 5 miles.*

Note also the structure *a … and a half*:

> *We've been waiting for delivery now for about* ***a month and a half****.*

PERCENTAGES 514

Percentages are written with a special symbol % and are spoken as *per cent*:

> *Sales tax is added to all items. The current rate is* ***17.5%****.*
> (seventeen point five per cent)
>
> *Interest rates reached an all-time low last month when banks and building societies reduced mortgage rates by* ***one half per cent*** *to* ***4.75%****.*
> (four point seven five per cent)

Note that in the previous sentence it is also possible to say *half a per cent* or *(a) half of one per cent*.

TELEPHONE NUMBERS 515

Each figure in a telephone number is commonly indicated separately. Speakers tend to pause after groups of three or four figures. When the same figure comes twice, either it can be said twice or the word 'double' can be used:

> *9807 6933*
> *nine eight oh seven, six nine* ***double three***
> or: *nine eight zero seven, six nine* ***three three***

524 Spoken forms of *0*

USES OF *AND* 516

And is commonly used before the tens in a number:

310
three hundred ***and*** *ten* (or *three ten*)

5,642
five thousand, six hundred ***and*** *forty-two*

However, *and* can be omitted in measurements that contain two different units. *And* can be used before the smaller unit, but it is usually omitted:

*two hours (**and**) ten minutes*

*two metres (**and**) thirty centimetres*

USES OF COMMAS 517

In writing, commas are normally used to divide large numbers into groups of three figures, usually in order to indicate the thousands and the millions. Full stops are not used in this way:

5,139
(~~5.139~~)

8,577,184

Commas may be omitted from four-figure numbers. They are not used in dates:

7,934
(or: 7934)

the year ***1738***

519 Round numbers and dates below

A AND *ONE* 518

It is possible to say *a hundred* or *one hundred*, *a thousand* or *one thousand*, *a million* or *one million*. When *one* is used, it is more formal:

I want to live for a hundred years.
(~~I want to live for hundred years.~~)

[on a formal notice]
The membership fee for the Club is ***one*** *thousand pounds a year.*

A can only be used at the beginning of a number:

***a**/**one** hundred*

three thousand ***one*** *hundred*
(~~three thousand a hundred~~)

A thousand can be used alone, and may be followed by *and*, but *a* is not normally used before a number of hundreds:

> ***one** thousand, two hundred and six*
>
> ***one** thousand and nine*
>
> ***one** thousand, six hundred and two*
> (more natural than: a thousand, six hundred and two)

A or *one* are used with measurement words:

> ***a/one** kilometre*
> (but: one kilometre and eight hundred metres)
>
> ***an/one** hour and thirteen minutes*
> (but: one hour thirteen minutes)
>
> ***a/one** pound*
> (but: one pound forty-seven)

ROUND NUMBERS AND DATES 519

The phrases *eleven hundred*, *twelve hundred* are often used instead of *one thousand one hundred*, etc. The form with *hundred* is especially preferred in American English. It is most common with round numbers between 1,100 and 1,900:

> *They only paid **eleven hundred pounds** for the whole holiday.*
>
> *It all cost **twenty eight hundred** dollars.*
> (preferred American form)

This form is used in historical dates. *Hundred* is omitted in informal contexts:

> *Shakespeare was born in **fifteen sixty four**. (1564)*
>
> *It was built in **seventeen (hundred and) twenty-nine**. (1729)* (more formal)

When speaking, it is normal for the numbers to be pronounced in full. In writing, numerical figures are normally preferred to written numbers.

Decades are commonly written as follows (usually without an apostrophe, but may also occur with an apostrophe):

> *The **1980s** were years when money became a key word.*

BRITISH POUNDS STERLING 520

There are *100 pence* in a British pound. Sums of money are named as follows:

1p	*one penny* (informal *one p* or *a penny*)
10p	*ten pence* (informal *ten p*)
£5.45	*five pounds forty-five (pence)* or *five pounds* ***and*** *forty-five pence* (more formal)

Pound is often used informally as a plural:

> *They charged me nine **pound** fifty for parking.*

Singular forms are used in premodifying expressions like *a five-**pound** note* (see above). However, *pence* is often used instead of *penny* (*a five **pence** coin*; *a twenty-six **pence** stamp*).

MEASURING AREAS 521

The most typical form is to say, for example, that a room is *twelve feet **by** fifteen feet*, or that a garden is *thirty metres **by** forty-eight metres*.

A room *twelve feet by twelve feet* can be called *twelve **feet square***; the total area is *144 **square feet***.

SPOKEN CALCULATIONS 522SPEAKING

Some of the most frequent ways of speaking calculations aloud are:

$2 + 2 = 4$	*Two and two is/are four.* (informal) *Two plus two equals/is four.* (formal)
$9 - 4 = 5$	*Four from nine is/leaves five.* (informal) *Nine take away four is/leaves five.* (informal) *Nine minus four equals/is five.* (formal)
$5 \times 4 = 20$	*Five fours are twenty.* (informal) *Five times four is twenty.* (informal) *Five multiplied by four equals/is twenty.* (formal)
$15 \div 3 = 5$	*Three(s) into fifteen goes five (times).* (informal) *Fifteen divided by three equals/is five.* (formal)

ROMAN NUMERALS 523

Roman numerals are used for the following main purposes: names of centuries, kings and queens, page numbers in introductions and prefaces to books, and the numbers of sections or sub-sections to documents, especially legal documents.

1	*I*	*i*	10	*X*	*x*	40	*XL*	*xl*
2	*II*	*ii*	11	*XI*	*xi*	45	*XLV*	*xlv*
3	*III*	*iii*	12	*XII*	*xii*	50	*L*	*l*
4	*IV*	*iv*	13	*XIII*	*xiii*	60	*LX*	*lx*
5	*V*	*v*	14	*XIV*	*xiv*	90	*XC*	*xc*
6	*VI*	*vi*	19	*XIX*	*xix*	100	*C*	*c*
7	*VII*	*vii*	20	*XX*	*xx*	500	*D*	
8	*VIII*	*viii*	21	*XXI*	*xxi*	1000	*M*	
9	*IX*	*ix*	30	*XXX*	*xxx*	1998	*MCMXCVIII*	

The church dates to the time of ***Henry II****.*

It was best known as a ***XVI*** *century map of the world.*

Please see ***pages vii*** *and* ***xii****.*

Spoken forms of *0* 524

0 is usually said as *nought* in decimal numbers where it occurs before the decimal point:

0.455 litres
(*nought point four five five litres*)

American English prefers *zero*, and this is becoming more common in British English too:

0.885 centimetres
(*zero point eight eight five centimetres*)

0 is typically said as *oh* where it occurs after a decimal point and in a wide range of numbers such as telephone numbers, addresses, years:

7.05 seconds
(*seven point oh five*)

She lives at 205 Hills Avenue.
(*two oh five*)

His phone number is 470503.
(*four seven oh five oh three*)

She was born in 1908.
(*nineteen oh eight*)

Car registration number Y205 CNA
(*two oh/zero five*)

In giving the scores of sports games, other words are used:

- football:

  Valencia lost 1–0.
  (*one nil*)

- tennis:

  Klisters leads Williams 40–0 in the first game of the second set.
  (*forty love*)

- American team sports:

  [American football]
  The Seattle Sea Hawks beat the Cincinnati Reds 7–0.
  (*seven nothing* or *seven to nothing* or *seven zip* – 'zip' is informal American English)

  [baseball]
  Miami Hurricances 7, Northern Colorado Bears 0

In measurements of temperature, *zero* is more common but *nought* is possible:

Zero degrees Celsius is thirty-two degrees Fahrenheit.

Singular forms with plural meanings 525

After an expression of number, *dozen, hundred, thousand, million* and *billion* have no final -*s*, and *of* is not used:

five hundred *pounds*
hundreds of *pounds*

several thousand *times*
It cost ***thousands****.*

a few million *years*
millions of *years*

Singular forms are used as modifiers before nouns in plural measuring expressions:

*a five-****pound*** *note*	*a three-****mile*** *walk*
*six two-****hour*** *lessons*	*a three-****month****-old baby*
*a four-****foot****-deep hole*	*a six-****foot****-tall man*

In an informal style, *foot* is often used instead of *feet*, especially with reference to people's height:

My father's just over six ***foot*** *two.*

Appendix: Referring to the time

TELLING THE TIME 526

There are two common ways of saying what the time is:

6.05	*five past six* or *six (oh) five*
6.10	*ten past six* or *six ten*
6.15	*(a) quarter past six* or *six fifteen*
6.20	*twenty past six* or *six twenty*
6.25	*twenty-five past six* or *six twenty-five*
6.30	*half past six* or *six thirty*
6.35	*twenty-five to seven* or *six thirty-five*
6.40	*twenty to seven* or *six forty*
6.45	*(a) quarter to seven* or *six forty-five*
6.50	*ten to seven* or *six fifty*
6.55	*five to seven* or *six fifty-five*
7.00	*seven o'clock*

Most speakers prefer to say *minutes past/to* for times between the five minute divisions (*seven* ***minutes*** *past six*, *four* ***minutes*** *to seven*).

In informal speech, *past* is often dropped from *half past*:

Okay, see you at ***half four****.*
(4.30 **not** 3.30)

If the hour is understood, then just *half past* or *quarter to* are used in informal speech:

Hurry up. We've got to be there at ***quarter to****.*

The expression *o'clock* is only used at the hour:

The first meeting is at ***seven (o'clock)****.*

Wake me at ***ten past six****.*
(~~Wake me at ten past six o'clock.~~)

O'clock is often omitted in informal contexts when referring to the hour:

The concert starts at ***seven****.*

In American English, and increasingly in internet communication, colons are used to mark clock time (*3:40*, *10:05*, *13:25*).

The twenty-four-hour clock 526a

The twenty-four-hour clock is used mainly in transport timetables and official announcements. In everyday conversation, people usually use the twelve-hour clock:

[reading a rail timetable]
*The last train leaves at **22.20**.*
(twenty-two twenty)

*Check-in time is **a quarter past six in the morning**.*
(preferred form in informal contexts)

[public announcement at a railway station]
*The train about to leave from platform 13 is the **fourteen forty-five** departure for Manchester.*

When using the twenty-four-hour clock, times on the hour are normally pronounced as follows:

*The flight will depart at **seventeen hundred hours**.*
(17.00)

In public announcements, the following pronunciations of numbers are common:

*The **oh nine hundred** service is delayed and will now depart at **oh nine fifteen**.*
(09.00 and 09.15)

Times can be indicated by using *in the morning/afternoon/evening*. In a more formal style, *am* (Latin *ante meridiem* = 'before midday') and *pm* (*post meridiem* = 'after midday') are used:

07.00 = *seven o'clock in the morning* or *seven am*

19.00 = *seven o'clock in the evening* or *seven pm*

Note that punctuation is normally omitted in *am* and *pm*.

12.00 can mean at midnight or at midday. This is commonly distinguished by reference to *12.00 noon* and *12.00 midnight* (spoken as *twelve noon* and *twelve midnight*).

Appendix: Units of measurement

NON-METRIC MEASURES 527

Metric measurement units are increasingly used in the United Kingdom, but non-metric measures are also still widely used, especially by older people who still use the older system of imperial units such as pounds, feet and gallons. Below are some of the common terms along with their approximate values in the metric system. Some of the units have the same names but mean different quantities in the UK and the USA. The international system of metric measurements is not commonly used in the USA.

Approximate values of non-metric units 527a

Units of length and distance and their abbreviations

1 inch (in) = 2.5 centimetres (cm)

1 foot (ft) = 30 cm

1 yard (yd) = 90 cm

5 miles (m) = 8 kilometres (km)

Inches and feet are sometimes indicated in writing with ’ for feet and ” for inches:

The living room is 9’8” by 15’6”.
(nine feet eight inches by fifteen feet six inches)

Units of area

11 square feet = 1 square metre (or *1 sq metre*, or *1*m^2)

5 acres = 2 hectares

1 square mile = 2.6 square km

1 square inch = 6.4516 cm^2

Units of weight

1 ounce (oz) = 28 g

1 pound (lb) = 450 g

14 pounds = (Br) 1 stone = 6.4 kg

1 ton = (Br) *1 tonne* = (Am) *0.9 tonnes*

Units of volume and capacity

1 cubic centimetre (cc) = 0.0610 cubic inch (cu in)

There are 8 pints in a gallon:

	British	American
1 pint (pt)	*0.6 litres*	*0.5 litres*
1 gallon (gall)	*4.5 litres*	*3.8 litres*

Units of temperature

Except in the USA, temperatures are now more commonly given in degrees Celsius (°C, sometimes called *centigrade*) than degrees Fahrenheit (°F):

	°F	°C
ice	32	0
warm room	70	20
hot day	85	30
body temperature	98	37
boiling water	212	100

Usage 527b

Personal weight and height

British English speakers usually measure their personal weight in stones and pounds. American English speakers just use pounds. *Stone* is not commonly used in the plural. The word *pounds* is typically omitted in informal contexts:

*I weigh eight **stone** six.*
(~~I weigh eight stones six.~~)

*He's overweight. He needs to lose a couple of **stone**.*

Personal height is measured in feet and inches, with the word *inches* usually omitted in informal contexts. *Foot* is normally preferred to *feet* (→ 525):

*I'm **five foot eleven**.*

Height

The height of buildings and other structures, tall plants and trees, altitude and elevation above sea level are typically measured in feet (but increasingly in metres for elevation above sea level):

*We will soon be climbing to an altitude of 39,000 **feet**.*

*That tree was only about four **feet** tall when we planted it.*

Distance

Distance can also be measured in feet, but longer distances along the ground are measured in yards and miles:

*I was standing about six **feet** away from the Prime Minister.*

*The car park's straight on, about 500 **yards** on the right.*

*From here to the airport is about 35 **miles**.*

Appendix: Nationalities, countries and regions

INTRODUCTION 528

Referring to a nation or region and its affairs normally requires four words:

- The name of the country or region:

  Sweden, Japan, France, Venezuela, Asia

- The adjective:

  Swedish, Japanese, French, Venezuelan, Asian

- The singular noun used for a person from the country or region:

  a Swede, a Japanese, a Frenchman/woman, a Venezuelan, an Asian

- The plural expression *the* … used for the population as a whole:

  the Swedes, the Japanese, the French, the Venezuelans, the Asians

The name of a national language is commonly the same as the national adjective. In this case the words are nouns and may be modified by adjectives. The definite article *the* is not used, nor is the word *language*:

Do you speak ***Hungarian****?*
(~~Do you speak the Hungarian?~~)
(~~Do you speak Hungarian language?~~)

Thai *is not easy to learn.*

She speaks fluent ***English****.*

The singular noun is normally the same as the adjective (e.g. *Japanese*, *Moroccan*), and the plural expression is the same as the adjective + *-s* (e.g. *the Moroccans*).

All words of this kind (including adjectives) begin with capital letters:

He has a degree in ***A****merican literature.*
(~~He has a degree in american literature.~~)

Examples of countries and regions, and associated adjectives and nouns 528a

country/region	adjective	person	population
America/USA	*American*	*an American*	*the Americans*
Belgium	*Belgian*	*a Belgian*	*the Belgians*
Brazil	*Brazilian*	*a Brazilian*	*the Brazilians*
China	*Chinese*	*a Chinese*	*the Chinese*
The Congo	*Congolese*	*a Congolese*	*the Congolese*
Europe	*European*	*a European*	*the Europeans*
Greece	*Greek*	*a Greek*	*the Greeks*
Hungary	*Hungarian*	*a Hungarian*	*the Hungarians*
Iraq	*Iraqi*	*an Iraqi*	*the Iraqis*
Israel	*Israeli*	*an Israeli*	*the Israelis*
Italy	*Italian*	*an Italian*	*the Italians*
Kenya	*Kenyan*	*a Kenyan*	*the Kenyans*
Mexico	*Mexican*	*a Mexican*	*the Mexicans*
Malaysia	*Malaysian*	*a Malaysian*	*the Malayisans*
Norway	*Norwegian*	*a Norwegian*	*the Norwegians*
Portugal	*Portuguese*	*a Portuguese*	*the Portuguese*
Russia	*Russian*	*a Russian*	*the Russians*
Slovakia	*Slovakian*	*a Slovak*	*the Slovaks*
Thailand	*Thai*	*a Thai*	*the Thais*

Some main exceptions 528b

country/region	adjective	person	population
Britain	*British*	*a British man/ woman/person* (more formally: *a Briton*)	*the British*
Denmark	*Danish*	*a Dane*	*the Danes*
England	*English*	*an Englishman woman/person*	*the English*
Finland	*Finnish*	*a Finn*	*the Finns*
France	*French*	*a Frenchman/ woman/person*	*the French*
Holland/ The Netherlands	*Dutch*	*a Dutchwoman/ man/person*	*the Dutch*
Ireland	*Irish*	*an Irishman/ woman/person*	*the Irish*
New Zealand	*New Zealand*	*a New Zealander*	*the New Zealanders*
Poland	*Polish*	*a Pole*	*the Poles*
Scotland	*Scottish*	*a Scot*	*the Scots*
Spain	*Spanish*	*a Spaniard*	*the Spanish*
Sweden	*Swedish*	*a Swede*	*the Swedes*
Turkey	*Turkish*	*a Turk*	*the Turks*
Wales	*Welsh*	*a Welshman/ woman/person*	*the Welsh*

Further information

1 *English* referring to population is not the same as *British*; it is not used for Scottish or Welsh or Northern Irish people.

2 The word *Briton* is unusual except in newspaper headlines (*TWELVE BRITONS INJURED IN COACH COLLISION*). The noun *Brit* (*the Brits*) is sometimes used informally. Most British people call themselves *Scottish*, *Welsh* or *English*.

3 *(Great) Britain* refers to the landmass of England, Scotland and Wales. *The United Kingdom* (or *the UK*) refers to England, Scotland, Wales and the six counties of Northern Ireland. Some people from Northern Ireland refer to themselves as *British* in the context of *the United Kingdom of Britain and Northern Ireland*. However, everyone from Northern Ireland has the right to Irish nationality and can hold an Irish passport. *Irish* also refers to citizens of the Irish Republic.

4 The Scots themselves prefer the adjective *Scots* and it also occurs in the compounds *Scotsman/Scotswoman*. The adjective *Scotch* is normally only used to refer to food and drink from Scotland (*Scotch broth*, *Scotch egg*).

5 Although *America* and *American* are the normal English words for the United States, its citizens and affairs, people from other parts of the north and south American continent may object to this use. It is sometimes avoided for these reasons. It is more usual to say: *She's a US citizen*; *I've got some US dollars to change*.

6 In Arabic countries, the language spoken is referred to as *Arabic*. In spoken expressions and some names of places the word *Arabian* is used (e.g. *The* ***Arabian*** *Gulf*; *Saudi* ***Arabian***; ***Arabian*** *Nights)*.

7 The mostly monosyllabic non-compound words listed above under person (*Dane*, *Spaniard*) are normally avoided when referring to a woman (*a Danish woman*, *a Spanish woman* are preferred).

Appendix: Irregular verbs

INTRODUCTION 529

With some irregular verbs, there is a choice of past form and -*ed* participle.

Table of irregular verbs 529a

base form	past form	-*ed* participle
arise	*arose*	*arisen*
awake	*awoke*	*awoken*
bear	*bore*	*borne*
beat	*beat*	*beaten*
become	*became*	*become*
begin	*began*	*begun*
bend	*bent*	*bent*
bet	*bet*	*bet*
bind	*bound*	*bound*
bite	*bit*	*bitten*
bleed	*bled*	*bled*
blow	*blew*	*blown*
break	*broke*	*broken*
breed	*bred*	*bred*
bring	*brought*	*brought*
build	*built*	*built*
burst	*burst*	*burst*
burn	*burnt/burned*	*burnt/burned*
buy	*bought*	*bought*
cast	*cast*	*cast*
catch	*caught*	*caught*
choose	*chose*	*chosen*
cling	*clung*	*clung*
come	*came*	*come*

base form	**past form**	***-ed* participle**
cost	*cost*	*cost*
creep	*crept*	*crept*
cut	*cut*	*cut*
deal	*dealt*	*dealt*
dig	*dug*	*dug*
draw	*drew*	*drawn*
dream	*dreamt/dreamed*	*dreamt/dreamed*
drink	*drank*	*drunk*
drive	*drove*	*driven*
eat	*ate*	*eaten*
fall	*fell*	*fallen*
feed	*fed*	*fed*
feel	*felt*	*felt*
fight	*fought*	*fought*
find	*found*	*found*
flee	*fled*	*fled*
fling	*flung*	*flung*
fly	*flew*	*flown*
forbear	*forbore*	*forborne*
forbid	*forbade*	*forbidden*
forget	*forgot*	*forgotten*
forgive	*forgave*	*forgiven*
forsake	*forsook*	*forsaken*
forswear	*forswore*	*forsworn*
freeze	*froze*	*frozen*
get	*got*	*got*
give	*gave*	*given*
go	*went*	*gone*
grind	*ground*	*ground*
grow	*grew*	*grown*
hear	*heard*	*heard*
hide	*hid*	*hidden*
hit	*hit*	*hit*

base form	past form	*-ed* participle
hold	*held*	*held*
hurt	*hurt*	*hurt*
keep	*kept*	*kept*
know	*knew*	*known*
lay	*laid*	*laid*
lead	*led*	*led*
lean	*leant/leaned*	*leant/leaned*
leave	*left*	*left*
lend	*lent*	*lent*
let	*let*	*let*
light	*lit/lighted*	*lit/lighted*
lose	*lost*	*lost*
make	*made*	*made*
mean	*meant*	*meant*
meet	*met*	*met*
mislay	*mislaid*	*mislaid*
mislead	*misled*	*misled*
pay	*paid*	*paid*
put	*put*	*put*
quit	*quit*	*quit*
read (/riːd/)	*read* (/red/)	*read* (/red/)
rend	*rent*	*rent*
ride	*rode*	*ridden*
ring	*rang*	*rung*
rise	*rose*	*risen*
run	*ran*	*run*
saw	*sawed*	*sawn*
say	*said*	*said*
see	*saw*	*seen*
seek	*sought*	*sought*
sell	*sold*	*sold*
send	*sent*	*sent*
set	*set*	*set*

539 **Glossary** for any unfamiliar terms

base form	**past form**	***-ed* participle**
sew	*sewed*	*sewn*
shake	*shook*	*shaken*
shed	*shed*	*shed*
shine	*shone*	*shone*
shoe	*shod*	*shod*
shoot	*shot*	*shot*
show	*showed*	*shown*
shrink	*shrank*	*shrunk*
shut	*shut*	*shut*
sing	*sang*	*sung*
sink	*sank*	*sunk*
sit	*sat*	*sat*
slay	*slew*	*slain*
sleep	*slept*	*slept*
slide	*slid*	*slid*
sling	*slung*	*slung*
slink	*slunk*	*slunk*
sow	*sowed*	*sown*
speak	*spoke*	*spoken*
spend	*spent*	*spent*
spin	*spun*	*spun*
spill	*spilt/spilled*	*spilt/spilled*
spread	*spread*	*spread*
speed	*sped*	*sped*
spring	*sprang*	*sprung*
stand	*stood*	*stood*
steal	*stole*	*stolen*
stick	*stuck*	*stuck*
sting	*stung*	*stung*
stink	*stank*	*stunk*
strew	*strewed*	*strewn*
stride	*strode*	*stridden*
strike	*struck*	*struck*

base form	**past form**	***-ed* participle**
string	*strung*	*strung*
strive	*strove*	*striven*
swear	*swore*	*sworn*
sweep	*swept*	*swept*
swim	*swam*	*swum*
swing	*swung*	*swung*
take	*took*	*taken*
teach	*taught*	*taught*
tear	*tore*	*torn*
tell	*told*	*told*
think	*thought*	*thought*
throw	*threw*	*thrown*
thrust	*thrust*	*thrust*
tread	*trod*	*trodden*
understand	*understood*	*understood*
wake	*woke*	*woken*
wear	*wore*	*worn*
weep	*wept*	*wept*
win	*won*	*won*
wind	*wound*	*wound*
wring	*wrung*	*wrung*
write	*wrote*	*written*

Appendix: North American English grammar

INTRODUCTION 530

The basic grammar of English speech and writing as used in North America is, in almost all respects, the same as that in use across the islands of Britain and Ireland. What marks American English out as different from the European variety are mostly differences in pronunciation, spelling and vocabulary. Written grammar displays fewer differences between American and British usage than spoken grammar. However, North America is a vast continent which is home to many different regional and social dialects of English, often reflected in distinct spoken grammatical usage; we cannot hope to cover all this diversity within the limits of one book. Across the islands of Britain and Ireland there are also differences in usage, but this grammar has focussed on what is shared among the widest range of speakers. This appendix therefore discusses those aspects of standard North American spoken usage which are notably different from the spoken description as presented in this book. The differences are usually differences of degree rather than of kind: there seem to be very few forms that are the exclusive domain of one variety, but there are often quite striking differences in frequency of use of everyday items between the varieties. It must also be noted that American influence on the grammar of Britain and Ireland is considerable, and changes in usage can often be attributed to the influence of American popular culture, for example the use of *like* as a marker of direct speech reporting (**501e** and **A–Z** **49** ***Like***). For convenience, the spoken grammar presented in the main chapters of this book will be referred to as BrE, and references to standard North American English will be abbreviated to AmE. The spoken North American segment of the Cambridge International Corpus (CIC) was consulted in the preparation of this appendix.

MODAL VERBS AND OTHER MODAL EXPRESSIONS 531

Some modal verbs and other modal expressions are more frequent in BrE than AmE, and vice-versa.

Shall 531a

Although quite frequent in BrE, *shall* is relatively infrequent in AmE. BrE usage allows *shall* in first person declaratives about the future:

> *I **shall** be in the office till five thirty.* (BrE)

AmE prefers *will* or *be going to* in such situations. However, AmE does allow *shall* in first person interrogatives, especially those functioning as suggestions and in semi-fixed expressions such as *How shall I say it?*:

> *Let's try to use words that are in the dictionary next time, **shall we**?* (AmE)

> [talking about whether to go to the cinema to see films or to wait till they are available on video]
> *You know, and you have to start thinking about, is it, is it worth spending the money to go see it, or* ***shall*** *I just wait?*
> (AmE)

Frequency of *shall* (per 1 million words) in spoken AmE and BrE

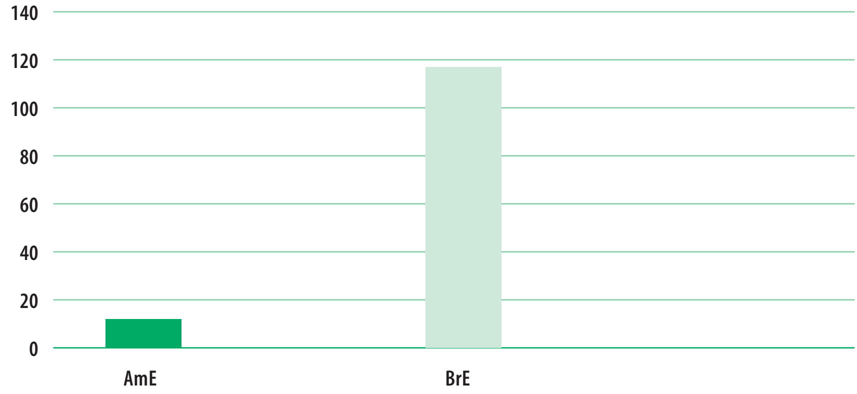

Must 531b

Must is overall much more frequent in BrE than in AmE. Although obligation and predictive meanings occur in both varieties, the majority of uses of *must* in AmE are predictive, and AmE tends to prefer *have to* for expressing obligation:

> *Something* ***must****'ve been on her mind.* (AmE)
>
> *Everybody says I don't need to lose weight, but I feel I* ***must****.* (AmE)

Frequency of *must* (per 1 million words) in spoken AmE and BrE

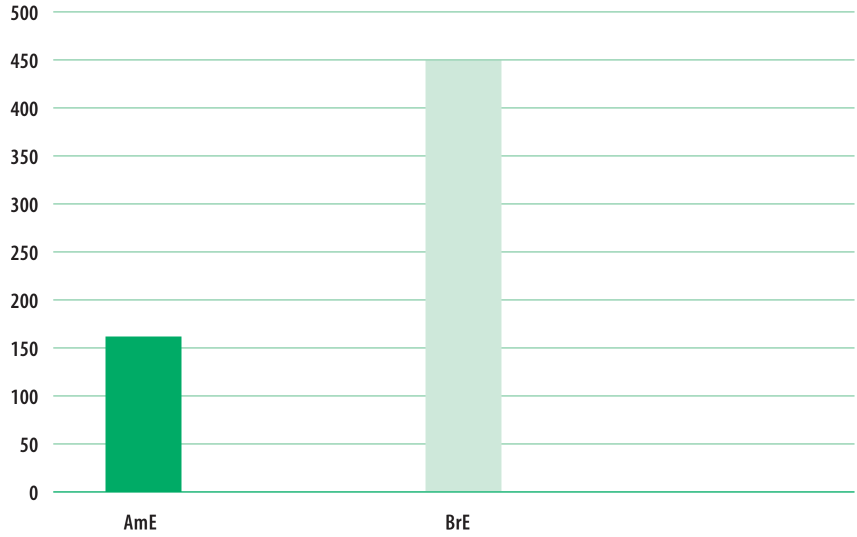

Have got to and *have to* 531c

Modal *have got* to is almost twice as frequent in spoken BrE compared with AmE. *Have to* (without *got*) is 50% more frequent in AmE than in BrE:

> ***I've got to*** *go and meet my mum for lunch.*
> (preferred spoken form BrE)
>
> ***I have to*** *meet my advisor at one.*
> (preferred spoken form AmE)

Had better 531d

Had better is almost six times more frequent in BrE than in AmE, though it is used in both varieties:

> *You**'d better** move your car, Pete.*
> (BrE)
>
> *I guess we**'d better** get back to work.*
> (AmE)

Be going to 531e

Be going to (and the contracted form *gonna*) is often used in direction-giving in AmE, which is not a characteristic use in BrE, which typically uses imperatives (with and without *you*), and present or future forms with *will*:

> *You**'re gonna** go two blocks and then you**'re gonna** see a big white building.*
> (AmE)
>
> A: ***Come*** *to T-junction,* ***turn*** *left.* ***Go*** *down there about half a mile,* ***you come*** *to a right turn with a pub on the corner.*
> B: *Yep.*
> A: ***You turn*** *right there, that* ***takes*** *you straight into it.*
> B: *Right lovely. Thank you very much.*
> (BrE)

I guess, I suppose, I reckon 531f

The modal expression *I guess* is about 30 times more frequent in spoken AmE than in BrE. *I suppose* and *I reckon* are much more frequent in spoken BrE. *I reckon* is relatively rare in AmE:

> ***I guess*** *I create a lot of stress in my life.*
> (AmE)
>
> ***I reckon*** *we should have some coffee after this.*
> (BrE)
>
> ***I suppose*** *we could just go to a club somewhere.*
> (BrE)

OTHER VERBS 532

Be 532a

With the verb *be*, although both types of negated form exist in BrE and AmE, there is a stronger preference in AmE for the negated forms with *not* in both the present and the past tense (e.g. *is/'s not, were not*), rather than the contracted forms *isn't*, *aren't*, *wasn't* and *weren't*. *Isn't*, in particular, is many times more frequent in BrE than in AmE:

> *Tim* ***isn't*** *working there anymore.*
> (BrE)
>
> *Joe****'s not*** *coming back anymore.*
> (preferred AmE form)

Have and *have got* 532b

The present tense form of *have* with *got* used for possession is more than twice as frequent in spoken BrE as in AmE:

> ***I've got*** *one sister and one brother.*
> (BrE)
>
> ***I have*** *a cousin who never married.*
> (AmE)

Go (and) 532c

The AmE equivalent to informal BrE *go and* + infinitive without *to* occurs often without *and*:

> *Where's your towel? Is it in the drawer?* ***Go and see*** *if you can find it.*
> (BrE)
>
> *I actually hadn't heard anything about it, and some friends called up and said do you want to* ***go see*** *this movie, and, and they said it starred Meryl Streep and Mel Brooks.*
> (AmE)

Get 532d

In AmE, *get* has an *-ed* participle form *gotten*, which is not used in BrE:

> *I mean, as poverty has* ***gotten*** *worse, as, you know, education has* ***gotten*** *worse, as there's been more single-parent families, as there's been more homelessness, there's been more crime.*
> (AmE)

A frequent use of *get* (followed by a verb in *to*-infinitive form) in AmE is to refer to achievements. This usage occurs in BrE but is much rarer:

That's great advice. I'm so glad ***I got to talk*** *to you.*
(AmE)

A: *It was a lot of fun.* ***I got to see*** *Arkansas. I* ***got to see*** *that country.*
B: *Yeah.*
A: *It was really green down there.*
B: *No kidding.*
(AmE)

[talking about an actress, a friend of speaker A's, who was offered film work]
A: *The thing is she couldn't have turned it down because she hadn't done any work for two years so she had to.*
B: *Oh yeah absolutely.*
A: *And* ***she got to film*** *on location in Majorca.*
(BrE)

Fit 532e

In AmE, the past tense of *fit* is most often *fit*, while standard BrE prefers *fitted*:

Jennifer says she never really ***fit*** *in, and that made it easy for the other teachers to be suspicious of her.*
(AmE)
(preferred BrE form: *fitted in*)

I found a pair of boots that ***fitted*** *me and they weren't too bad-looking either.*
(BrE)

Learn, burn, dream, etc. 532f

Verbs such as *burn*, *dream*, *lean*, *learn*, *smell*, *spell*, *spill* often allow a past tense and *-ed* participle ending of either *-ed* (*learned*, *spilled*) or *-t* (*learnt*, *spilt*). AmE overwhelmingly prefers the *-ed* ending:

One night I had a bad dream. I ***dreamt*** *that someone was trying to attack me.*
(BrE)

[discussing changing British dietary habits]
Well, in my grandma's day and age they would never have ***dreamed*** *of eating a curry, would they?*
(BrE)

When I was a boy, I ***dreamed*** *of playing football.*
(AmE)

Other verbs 532g

Some other verbs display irregular past forms in AmE which are not used in BrE, for example *dove* as the past tense of *dive* (BrE *dived*), and *pled* as the past tense of *plead* (BrE *pleaded*):

*He **pled** guilty to avoid the death penalty.*
(AmE)

*The eagle just folded his wings, folded his legs, **dove** right down and crashed right into the guy and almost killed him.*
(AmE)

TAGS AND TAILS 533

Interrogative tags (→ 300, 431) are around four times more frequent in BrE than in AmE, but a wide range of interrogative tags occur in both varieties:

*He's brilliant, **isn't he**?*
(BrE)

*They weren't reading, **were they**?*
(AmE)

In informal contexts, AmE speakers often use an interrogative copy tag with rising intonation in responses denoting surprise or emotional involvement, which is not common in BrE:

A: *I changed schools three times.*
B: ***You did**?*
A: *In one year.*
B: *Wow. Wow.*
(AmE; BrE prefers *Did you?* here, with fall-rise or rising intonation)

A: *You know what guys? One of my big weaknesses is bags. I love bags. I don't know why.*
B: ***You do**?*
A: *Yeah.*
(AmE; BrE preferred form: *Do you?*)

BrE often adds substitute *do* to reduced clauses with modal verbs, especially in tag responses. AmE uses the modal verb only:

[*Riverjazz* is a jazz club]
A: *Do you want to go to Riverjazz tonight?*
B: *Do I have to?*
A: *No.*
B: *Are you going?*
A: ***I might do**.*
(BrE)

A: *So uh what do you think you'll do for your twenty-first birthday? Are you gonna go to a party or anything?*
B: *No. Yeah. Yeah.* ***I might****. I mean … Yeah. Maybe.*
(AmE)

Affirmative copy tags occur in both varieties but are much rarer in AmE than in BrE:

I think it's really funny that they live together, ***I do****.*
(BrE)

[talking about car mechanics]
A: *That's hard work.*
B: *It is.*
A: *I think they earn their money,* ***I do****.*
(AmE)

The universal tag, *right?* is almost four times more frequent in AmE than in BrE:

You lived in Canada, though, ***right****?*
(AmE)

I was hoping we could change this one, ***right****?*
(BrE)

Tails are considerably less common in AmE than in BrE, but they do occur in informal spoken AmE:

[talking of a US Senator; name disguised here]
He*'s a scary guy, that* ***Dan Boland****.*
(AmE)

The last car we had was a Grand Prix which, … huh, never again! ***That*** *was a nightmare,* ***that one****.*
(AmE)

ADVERBS, ADJECTIVES 534

Really, real 534a

In informal spoken AmE, *really* as a modifier of adjectives and other adverbs is often used without the *-ly* ending, in its adjective form. This is sometimes considered non-standard by traditionalists:

They were ***real*** *nice to us. The President of the company took us and showed us around.*
(AmE)

We all get along ***real*** *well.*
(AmE)

Well, good 534b

Similarly, *good* is often used in informal spoken AmE where BrE requires *well*. However, the AmE form is increasingly heard in BrE:

> *Well I made it through college you know just cramming before the test kind of thing but I always did* ***good*** *so I never had a problem with that part.*
> (AmE)
>
> A: *Hi, how're you doing?*
> B: *I'm* ***good****.*
> (AmE)

Likely 534c

Spoken AmE allows the use of *likely* as an adverb (in the same way as *probably*, *possibly*, etc.) or as an adjective. In BrE, *likely* is usually only an adjective:

> [discussing the US economy]
> *So I think we created the conditions which will* ***likely*** *allow us to have a much longer recovery than you would have otherwise expected.*
> (AmE; BrE preferred form: *which are likely to allow us … which will probably allow us …*)
>
> *The more things you have to remember, the more you're* ***likely*** *to forget.*
> (AmE; adjectival use, also typical of BrE)

THE PRESENT PERFECT 535

The frequency of use of the present perfect form is different in BrE and AmE, with a tendency to use it less in AmE. AmE often allows the past simple in situations which demand the present perfect in BrE:

> [at a hotel; speakers have recently checked in]
> A: *Where's the main pool at?*
> B: *It's in the other side of the hotel.*
> A: *Oh. Is it bigger than this?*
> B: ***We didn't get that far yet*** [laughs].
> (AmE; BrE would prefer: *We haven't got that far yet*.)
>
> [discussing how much money speaker B is allowed to take out of a cash machine each day]
> A: *How much can you get out of here?*
> B: *Three hundred.*
> A: *So you'd have three hundred? You've got three hundred you can get out right now?*
> B: *Yeah.*
> A: *But* ***you already got some out****. So you can do three hundred a day.* ***You already took out some today****. How much did you take out?*
> B: *A hundred. I can only take another two hundred.*
> (AmE; *already* typically accompanied by perfect aspect in similar situations in BrE)

CONCORD 536

There is a tendency in spoken AmE to prefer singular verb concord with collective nouns such as *government*, *team*, *group*, *rest*, etc., whereas BrE is more flexible in allowing singular or plural verbs:

> *By and large* ***the government does*** *a good job.*
> (AmE preferred form)
>
> A: ***The government are*** *making a profit.*
> B: *No,* ***the government aren't****. It's the private enterprise.*
> (BrE; allows greater flexibility of use of plural verb)
>
> [talking about American football]
> *While he was with the team, the* ***rest*** *of the team* ***was*** *pretty poor so you couldn't really tell if it was just him or the team and I always just assumed that he was too good for the rest of the team.*
> (AmE; BrE likely to prefer *the rest of the team were pretty poor …*)

PREPOSITIONAL USAGE 537

There are some differences in prepositional usage between BrE and AmE, especially in time expressions:

> *I've been stranded in my house for days on end. I get to go out* ***at the weekend*** *and that's it.* [laughs] *That's my life.*
> (preferred BrE)
>
> [talking about TV viewing habits]
> *During the week I don't have much time, and I spend a lot of time with my daughter* ***on the weekend*** *and she lives a way away.*
> (preferred AmE)

AmE allows *in* + *time period* after negatives with greater flexibility than BrE:

> *I haven't played basketball* ***in two years****.*
> (AmE; BrE preferred form: *for two years*)

AmE uses *through* in many situations where BrE uses *to* or *till* in references to the end points of time periods:

> [*dress-down-Fridays* refers to the practice of allowing employees to come to work in informal dress on Fridays]
> *It started with dress-down-Fridays, which was a couple of years ago. Now it's really Monday* ***through*** *Friday.*
> (AmE)
>
> [at a travel agent's]
> *You can use that ticket on any train except ones that depart Monday* ***to*** *Friday before nine.*
> (BrE)

AmE uses *on* with street names, whereas BrE prefers *in*:

> A: *She lives* ***on*** *Third Street and I lived* ***on*** *Third Street but we lived between different avenues.*
> B: *Hmm. Okay.*
> (AmE)
>
> *I think she was born* ***in*** *Leonora Street and then moved to Castle Street.*
> (BrE)

EXCLAMATIVE EXPRESSIONS 538

AmE uses some exclamative and intensifying expressions which are not common in BrE. These include *geez*, *goddam*, *oh my gosh*:

> *But I went in there one day and I had cream-of-chicken soup. It was the best tasting* ***goddamn*** *stuff I'd ever eaten in my life.*
> (AmE)
>
> [talking about hot weather; 80 degrees Fahrenheit = approximately 27 degrees Celsius]
> A: *It's been eighty degrees here.*
> B: ***Oh my gosh****!*
> (AmE)

Bibliography

540

CANCODE PUBLICATIONS (1994–2006)

Publications by the authors and their co-researchers based round the five-million-word CANCODE spoken corpus. These publications have fed into the construction of the present grammar. (CANCODE = Cambridge and Nottingham Corpus of Discourse in English.) The following items have all been or are about to be published as part of the CANCODE project.

Adolphs, S. and Carter, R.A. (2003) 'Corpus stylistics: point of view and semantic prosodies in *To the Lighthouse*', *Poetica* 58: 7–20

Carter, R.A. (1997) *Investigating English Discourse: Language, literacy and literature*, London: Routledge

Carter, R.A. (1997) 'Grammar, the spoken language and ELT', in Hill, D.A. (ed) *Milan 95: English Language Teaching*, Rome: The British Council: 26–32

Carter, R.A. (1997) 'Speaking Englishes, speaking cultures, using CANCODE', *Prospect* 12 (2): 4–11

Carter, R.A. (1998) 'Orders of reality: CANCODE, communication and culture', *ELT Journal* 52 (1): 43–56

Carter, R.A. (1999) 'Common language: corpus, creativity and cognition', *Language and Literature* 8 (3): 1–21

Carter, R.A. (1999) 'Standard grammars, standard Englishes: some educational implications', in Bex, A.R. and Watts, R. (eds) *Standard English: The Continuing Debate*, London: Routledge

Carter, R.A. (2002) 'Spoken English, grammar and the classroom' in Hughes, R. (ed) *At Full Stretch: Spoken English and the National Curriculum*, London: Qualifications and Curriculum Authority. Published at http://www.qca.org.uk

Carter, R.A. (2002) 'Recognising creativity', *IH Journal of Language and Development*, 13: 9–14

Carter, R.A. (2004) 'Spoken Grammar', in Coffin, C., Hewings, A. and O'Halloran, K. (eds) *Applying English Grammar: Functional and Corpus Approaches* (London: Edward Arnold), 35–49

Carter, R.A. (2004) *Language and Creativity: The Art of Common Talk London*: Routledge

Carter, R.A. and Adolphs, S. (2003) 'Creativity and a corpus of spoken English', in Goodman, S., Lillis, T., Maybin, J. and Mercer, N. (eds) *Language, Literacy and Education: A Reader*, Stoke-on-Trent: Trentham Books: 247–262

Carter, R.A. and Adolphs, S. (2003) 'And she's like 'it's terrible like': spoken discourse, grammar and corpus analysis', *International Journal of English Studies* 2003, 3 (1): 45–57

Carter, R.A. and Schmitt, N. (2004) 'Formulaic sequences in action: An introduction' in Schmitt, N. (ed.) *Formulaic Sequences*, Amsterdam: John Benjamins: 1–22

Carter, R.A. and McCarthy, M.J. (1995) 'Grammar and the spoken language', *Applied Linguistics* 16 (2): 141–158

Carter, R.A. and McCarthy, M.J. (1995) 'Discourse and creativity: bridging the gap between language and literature', in Cook, G. and Seidlhofer, B. (eds) *Principle and Practice in Applied Linguistics*, Oxford: Oxford University Press: 303–321

Carter, R.A. and McCarthy, M.J. (1997) *Exploring Spoken English*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press

Carter, R.A. and McCarthy, M.J. (1997) 'Written and spoken vocabulary', in Schmitt, N. and McCarthy, M.J. (eds) *Vocabulary: Description, Acquisition, Pedagogy*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 20–39

Carter, R.A. and McCarthy, M.J. (1999) 'The English *get*-passive in spoken discourse: description and implications for an interpersonal grammar', *English Language and Linguistics*, 3 (1): 41–58

Carter, R.A. and McCarthy, M.J. (2001) 'Size isn't everything: spoken English, corpus and the classroom', in *Research Issues, TESOL Quarterly* (July, 2001): 337–340

Carter, R.A. and McCarthy, M.J. (2001) 'Designing the discourse syllabus', in Hall, D. and Hewings, A. (eds) *Innovation in English Language Teaching*, London: Routledge: 55–63

Carter, R.A. and McCarthy, M.J. (2004) 'Talking, creating: interactional language, creativity and context', *Applied Linguistics*, 25 (1): 62–88

Carter, R.A. and McCarthy, M.J. (2004) 'If you ever hear a native speaker, please let us know!' in A. Pulverness (ed) *IATEFL 2003 Brighton Conference Selections*, Kent: IATEFL: 116–23

Carter, R.A. and McCarthy, M.J. (2006) *Cambridge Grammar of English: A comprehensive guide to spoken and written grammar and usage*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press

Carter, R.A., Hughes, R. and McCarthy, M.J. (1998) 'Telling tails: grammar, the spoken language and materials development', in Tomlinson, B. (ed) *Materials Development in L2 Teaching*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 45–68

Carter, R.A., Hughes, R. and McCarthy, M.J. (2000) *Exploring Grammar in Context*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press

Carter, R.A. and White, J. (2004) (eds) *Introducing The Grammar of Talk,* London: Qualifications and Curriculum Authority

Fung, L. and Carter, R.A. (2005) *Discourse Markers and Spoken English: Native and Non-native Use in Pedagogic Settings.* m/s School of English Studies, University of Nottingham

Hughes, R., Carter, R.A. and McCarthy, M.J. (1995) 'Discourse context as a predictor of grammatical choice', in Graddol, D. and Thomas, S. (eds) *Language in a Changing Europe*, Clevedon: BAAL/Multilingual Matters: 47–54

Hughes, R. and McCarthy, M.J. (1998) 'From sentence to grammar: discourse grammar and English language teaching', *TESOL Quarterly*, 32 (2): 263–87

McCarthy, M.J. (1994) 'What should we teach about the spoken language?', *Australian Review of Applied Linguistics*, 2: 104–20

McCarthy, M.J. (1994) 'Vocabulary and the spoken language', in Longo H.P. (ed) *Atti del seminario internazionale di studi sul lessico*, Bologna: Clueb: 119–30

McCarthy, M.J. (1995) 'Conversation and literature: tense and aspect', in Payne, J. (ed.) *Linguistic Approaches to Literature*, Birmingham/University of Birmingham: English Language Research: 58–73

McCarthy, M.J. (1998) *Spoken Language and Applied Linguistics*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press

McCarthy, M.J. (1998) 'Taming the spoken language: genre theory and pedagogy', *The Language Teacher*, 22 (9) 21–23

McCarthy, M.J. (1998) 'Talking their heads off: the everyday conversation of everyday people', *SELL* 0:107–128

McCarthy, M.J. (1999) 'What constitutes a basic vocabulary for spoken communication?' *SELL* 1: 233–249

McCarthy, M.J. (1999) 'What is a basic spoken vocabulary?', *FELT Newsletter*, 1999, 1 (4): 7–9

McCarthy, M.J. (1999) 'Turning numbers into thoughts: making sense of language corpora technology and observing language', *The Language Teacher* 23 (6): 25–7

McCarthy, M.J. (2000) 'Captive audiences: the discourse of close contact service encounters', in Coupland, J. (ed) *Small Talk*, London: Pearson: 84–109

McCarthy, M.J. (2001) 'Discourse' in Carter, R.A and Nunan, D. (eds) *Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 48–55

McCarthy, M.J. (2001) *Issues in Applied Linguistics*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press

McCarthy, M.J. (2002) 'What is an advanced vocabulary?' *SELL* 3: 149–163. Reprinted in Tan, M. (ed.) *Corpus Studies in Language Education*, Bangkok: IELE Press: 15–29

McCarthy, M.J. (2002) 'Good listenership made plain: British and American non-minimal response tokens in everyday conversation', in Biber, D., Fitzpatrick S. and Reppen, R. (eds) *Using Corpora to Explore Linguistic Variation*, Amsterdam: John Benjamins: 49–71

McCarthy, M.J. (2003) 'Talking back: 'small' interactional response tokens in everyday conversation' in Coupland, J. (ed.) Special issue of *Research on Language and Social Interaction* on 'Small Talk', 36 (1): 33-63

McCarthy, M.J. (2004) 'Lessons from the analysis of chunks', *The Language Teacher* 28 (7): 9–12

McCarthy, M.J. (2005) 'Fluency and confluence: what fluent speakers do', *The Language Teacher* 29 (6): 26–28

McCarthy, M.J. and Carter, R.A. (1994) *Language as Discourse: Perspectives for language teaching*, Harlow: Longman

McCarthy, M.J. and Carter, R.A. (1995) 'Spoken grammar: what is it and how do we teach it?', *ELT Journal* 49 (3): 207–218

McCarthy, M.J. and Carter, R.A. (1997) 'Grammar, tails and affect: constructing expressive choices in discourse', *Text* 17 (3): 231–252

McCarthy, M.J. and Carter, R.A. (2000) 'Feeding back: non-minimal response tokens in everyday English conversation', in Heffer, C. and Sauntson, H. (eds) *Words in Context: a tribute to John Sinclair on his retirement*, Birmingham: ELR Discourse Monograph 18: 263–283

McCarthy, M.J. and Carter, R.A. (2001) 'Ten criteria for a spoken grammar', in Hinkel, E. and Fotos, S. (eds) *New Perspectives on Grammar Teaching in Second Language Classrooms*, Mahwah, N.J.: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates: 51–75

McCarthy, M.J. and Carter, R.A. (2002) 'From conversation to corpus: a dual analysis of a broadcast political interview', in Sánchez-Macarro, A. (ed.) *Windows on the World: media discourse in English*, Valencia: University of Valencia Press: 15–39

McCarthy, M.J. and Carter, R.A. (2002) '*This, that and the other*. Multi-word clusters in spoken English as visible patterns of interaction', TEANGA (2002) (Yearbook of the Irish Association for Applied Linguistics) 21: 30–52

McCarthy, M.J. and Carter, R.A. (2004) 'There's millions of them': hyperbole in everyday conversation', *Journal of Pragmatics* 36: 149–184

McCarthy, M.J. and Handford, M. (2004) 'Invisible to us': A preliminary corpus-based study of spoken business English. In Connor, U. and Upton, T. (eds) *Discourse in the Professions. Perspectives from Corpus Linguistics.* Amsterdam: John Benjamins: 167–201

McCarthy, M.J. and O'Dell, F. (1999) *English Vocabulary in Use* (elementary level), Cambridge: Cambridge University Press

McCarthy, M.J. and O'Dell, F. (2002) *English Vocabulary in Use* (advanced level), Cambridge: Cambridge University Press

McCarthy, M.J. and O'Dell, F. (2002) *English Idioms in Use* (upper intermediate level), Cambridge: Cambridge University Press

McCarthy, M.J. and O'Dell, F. (2003) *English Phrasal Verbs in Use* (intermediate level), Cambridge: Cambridge University Press

McCarthy, M.J. and O'Dell, F. (2005) *English Collocations in Use*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press

McCarthy, M.J. and O'Keeffe, A. (2003). 'What's in a name? Vocatives in casual conversations and radio phone-in calls', in Meyer, C. and Leistyna, P. (eds), *Corpus Analysis: language structure and language use*, Amsterdam: Rodopi: 153–185

McCarthy, M.J., Matthiessen, C. and Slade, D. (2001) 'Discourse Analysis', in Schmitt, N. (ed) *An Introduction to Applied Linguistics*, London: Arnold: 55–73

McCarthy, M.J. and Slade, D. (in press) 'Extending our understanding of spoken discourse', in Cummins, J. and Davison, C. *Kluwer Handbook on English Language Teaching*, Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic Publishers

McCarthy, M.J. and Spöttl, C. (2003) 'Formulaic utterances in the multi-lingual context' in Cenoz, J., Jessner, U. & Hufeisen, B. (eds) *The Multilingual Lexicon*, Dordrecht: Kluwer: 133–151

McCarthy, M.J. and Spöttl, C. (2004) 'Comparing the knowledge of formulaic sequences across L1, L2, L3 and L4' in Schmitt, N. (ed.) *Formulaic Sequences*, Amsterdam: John Benjamins: 191–225

McCarthy, M.J. and Tao, H. (2001) 'Understanding non-restrictive *which*-clauses in spoken English, which is not an easy thing', *Language Sciences* 23: 651–677

McCarthy, M.J. and Walsh, S. (2003) 'Discourse', in Nunan D. (ed) *Practical English Language Teaching*, New York: McGraw-Hill: 173–195

Stanfield, C. (1996) 'English as she is spoke' (conversation with CANCODE researcher Jean Hudson), *Cambridge Language Reference News* 2: 2

Glossary 539

Acronym A type of abbreviation where the initial letters of two or more words are combined to produce consonant and vowel sequences that can be pronounced as words (*RAM*: **r**andom **a**ccess **m**emory; *NATO*: **N**orth **A**tlantic **T**reaty **O**rganisation).

Active The most common and unmarked form of voice. The grammatical subject and the agent/doer of the action are one and the same (*The thief had stolen all my money.*). In contrast, the passive voice is formed with subject + *be* + *-ed* participle, followed by an optional '*by*-phrase'. The recipient of the action is the grammatical subject; the *by*-phrase indicates the agent/doer. A passive construction gives less prominence to the agent (*All my money had been stolen (by the thief).*).

Adjective, adjective phrase Describes the qualities, features or states attributed to a noun or pronoun (*a **nice** room*, *a **happy** girl*, *she's **beautiful***).

A phrase with an adjective functioning as the head is an adjective phrase (*Are you **willing** to volunteer?*). An adjective phrase can have an attributive function (used before a noun: *It has a **smooth** texture.*) or a predicative function (used after a verb: *That film was **very strange**.*).

→ **Discontinuous adjective phrase**

Adjunct An optional element in a clause which modifies, comments on or expands the circumstances of an action or event in terms of such entities as time, place, manner, degree, intensity, reason, frequency. An adjunct can occupy different positions and can be realised by an adverb phrase, a prepositional phrase or, less frequently, a noun phrase or adverbial clause.

prep phrase adv phrase
***In the summer** we **very often** make our own ice cream.*

→ **Linking adjunct**

Adverb, adverb phrase Indicates the time, place, manner, degree, frequency, duration, viewpoint, etc. of an event, action or process. It is mostly realised by the *-ly* suffix added to an adjective (*beautifully*, *fortunately*, *angrily*, *actually*).

A phrase with an adverb functioning as the head is called an adverb phrase (*The lecturer spoke very **clearly**.*). Adverb phrases can modify verbs, adjectives, other adverbs and whole clauses.

Adverbial, adverbial clause Any word, phrase or clause that functions like an adverb.

Adverbial clauses are clauses which act as modifiers to a main clause:

*Tell me **after I've eaten my dinner**.* (time)

*Drive carefully **because it is snowing**.* (reason)

→ **Modification**

Affirmative A grammatical construction with positive polarity that has an assertive meaning. Affirmative contrasts with negative:

I have done my homework. (affirmative)

I haven't done my homework. (negative)

Affix A syllable or group of syllables which are added to the beginning or end of a word to make a new word. Affixes added to the beginning of a word are prefixes. Affixes added to the end of a word are suffixes. In the adjective ***un****work****able*** there are two affixes, *un-* (prefix) and *-able* (suffix).

Agent, agency Refers to the performer or 'doer' of an action. In *the little girl tidied up the playroom*, 'the little girl' is the agent. In a passive clause, the agent may be indicated by the noun phrase that follows the optional *by*-phrase (*The government is criticised by* ***everybody****.*).

→ **Active**

Agreement → **Concord**

Anaphora (adjective = **anaphoric**) A process whereby one word or phrase points backwards to another and marks the relationship between what is being said and what has been said. The reference can normally only be located in the preceding context:

Janet took the paper. ***She*** *wrote a phone number on* ***it****.*
(*She* refers anaphorically to *Janet*; *it* refers anaphorically to *the paper*)

Anaphora is contrasted with cataphora.

→ **Endophora; Exophora**

Antecedent The unit of word(s) to which a following word refers back. In ***Janet*** *took the paper.* ***She*** *wrote a phone number on it.*, *Janet* is the antecedent of *she*.

→ **Anaphora**

Anticipatory structure Refers to structures that make forward reference to produce an end-focus:

It *amazes me how open and honest the staff are.*
(anticipatory *it* enables the end-focus to be placed on the subject)

It's not *until we lift the carpet in our bedroom that we'll know what we've got to deal with.*
(anticipatory *it* enables the end-focus to be placed on the time adjunct)

It can, of course, be argued *that the bank has been lucky in its timing.*
(anticipatory *it* enables the end-focus to be placed on the complement clause)

Antonymy Refers to the most common type of gradable adjectives which occur as pairs of opposites denoting the upper and lower parts of an open-ended scale (*tall–short*, *hot–cold*, *heavy–light*, *good–bad*).

Apposition A relationship between two linguistic elements (usually noun phrases) which have identical reference:

My boss*,* ***the woman in green****, used to work in Beijing.*
(my boss = the woman in green)

→ **541 Index** for individual terms not in the Glossary

Aspect Indicates the speaker's perspective on time as indicated in a verb phrase, particularly whether an action is treated as finished or is still in progress or still relevant to the moment of speaking. English has two aspects: perfect and progressive (sometimes known as continuous).

→ **Perfect; Progressive**

Assertion Is associated with both positive and negative clauses (*he is in financial difficulties*; *that is just not true*). Assertions convey the truth of the communication.

Attributive Refers to the role of an adjective phrase as a modifier before a noun (*she had a **huge** suitcase*). The attributive function is in contrast with the predicative function (*her suitcase was **huge***).

→ **Predicative**

Auxiliary Refers to a closed set of verbs (*be*, *do* and *have*) that are usually followed by a lexical verb. They typically help to denote grammatical contrasts of aspect, voice, polarity and clause type (e.g. interrogative):

*He **was** working over there.*

*I **don't** like garlic.*

***Have** you been home?*

Back channelling Verbal and non-verbal vocal devices used to provide feedback and other supportive responses between speakers, normally as a way to encourage the speaker to continue. Vocalisations, words and phrases such as *mm*, *uhum*, *yeah*, *right* are typical back-channelling devices.

Backgrounding A device used to make something less important. For example, nominalised forms (→ **Nominalisation**) can be used to conceal or purposefully make less important a cause or an agent. Backgrounding is contrasted with foregrounding:

*The **closure** of the factory caused 200 workers to lose their jobs.*
(agent backgrounded)

Meteorcorp closed the factory and 200 workers lost their jobs.
(agent 'Meteorcorp' foregrounded)

→ **Foregrounding**

Backshift Refers to the process when there is a shift of tense. For example, when an indirect report is perceived as referring to the past, the tense in the reported clause usually changes to a past form of the tense of the direct report:

*'Robert **is** part of a consortium,' Mrs Johnson said to her.*
*Mrs Johnson told her that Robert **was** part of a consortium.*
(present simple ➛ past simple)

*'I **will go**,' he said.*
*He said he **would go**.*
('future' *will* ➛ 'future-in-the-past' *would*)

*‘I **can do** it on Monday.’*
*She said she **could do** it on Monday.*
(modal verb *can* ➛ modal verb *could*)

Base form The form of verb used to mark the present tense form (*People always **look** at me.*) and the infinitive with or without *to* (*Let me **look***.).

Base is also a term that refers to the form of a word which cannot be broken down into further grammatical parts and where an affix can be added:

works = ***work*** (base) + *-s* (inflection)

playful = ***play*** (base) + *-ful* (suffix)

unusual = ***usual*** (base) + *un-* (prefix)

⇢ Word formation

Blend A type of abbreviation in which parts of existing words are combined to form a new word: (*smog* = blend of ***sm****oke* and *f****og***; *heliport* = blend of ***heli****copter* and *air****port***).

Boosting A technique used to express a claim or viewpoint more assertively. Boosting is principally realised through a range of adverbial and prepositional constructions (*certainly*, *inevitably*, *unquestionably*, *definitely*, *emphatically*, *without doubt*) and modal and related expressions (*must*, *for sure/for certain*, *it is/was clear/obvious/indisputable*/etc. *that* …):

*Yet utilities and transport **unquestionably** provide a service rather than a commodity.*

*In the early nineteenth century this was **without doubt** true of much of the Nord region and the Normandy textile area.*

Case A grammatical category that marks the function of a noun or pronoun, for example as subject (also known as nominative case: *the boy, he, I, who*), object (also known as accusative case: *him, me, whom*) or genitive (also known as possessive: *the boy’s, his, mine, whose*).

Cataphora (adjective = **cataphoric**) A process where a word or a phrase points forward to another and marks the relationship between what is being said and what is about to be said:

It*’s delicious, that cake.*
(*It* refers forward to *that cake*)

Cataphora is contrasted with anaphora.

⇢ Endophora; Exophora

Catenative A verb phrase which includes a verb such as *appear to*, *come to*, *fail to*, *get to*, *happen to*, *manage to*, *seem to* or *tend to* followed by a lexical verb. It expresses modal and aspectual meanings:

*Do you **happen to know** Suzie’s number?*

*We **seem to have been** this way before.*

⇢ **541 Index** for individual terms not in the Glossary

Causative Refers to the meaning of making something happen. For instance, *get*-pseudo-passives and *have*-pseudo-passives can be used to express causative and non-causative meanings:

I think I'm going to ***get*** *my ears* ***pierced****.*
(causative: to make it happen)

We ***had*** *our house* ***broken*** *into while we were at the wedding.*
(non-causative: it was not our intention or aim)

Class (open class, closed class) Refers to a group of words which have similar functions. Word classes are divided into open classes and closed classes. Open classes include lexical words such as nouns (*dinner*, *place*, *Francis*), verbs (*meet*, *drive*, *go*, *pick*), adjectives (*old*, *angry*, *helpful*), and adverbs (*quickly*, *carefully*, *fast*) which admit new words. Closed classes have limited membership. They include function words such as pronouns (*it*, *he*, *who*, *anybody*, *one*), determiners (*a*, *the*, *that*, *some*, *each*, *several*), modal verbs (*may*, *could*, *must*), auxiliary verbs (*be*, *have*, *do*), conjunctions (*and*, *but*, *if*, *unless*) and prepositions (*in*, *at*, *of*, *by*, *with*). They do not admit new words.

Clause A grammatical construction that expresses the relationship between processes, participants and circumstances in actions, states or events. Clauses are constituents of sentences. Most typically, a clause consists of a subject (S), a verb (V), and any other required elements such as an object (O), a predicative complement (C), or an adjunct (A):

S V C
She | is | a friend of mine.

S V O A
I | will post | the letter | today.

The basic types of clause are declarative, interrogative, imperative and exclamative.

An embedded clause functions as a constituent phrase in a larger unit. For example, it may be a relative clause (*The points* ***that I'm talking about*** *are similar.*), or a nominal clause (***Building your own house*** *is cheaper.*).

⇢ **Embedding**

Cleft A cleft structure involves recasting a normal sentence pattern to give focus to a particular topic. The pattern is *it* + *be* + focus + clause. *Catherine plays tennis* can be recast into:

➛ *It is tennis that Catherine plays.*
(focus on the sport)

➛ *It is Catherine who plays tennis.*
(focus on the person)

⇢ **Pseudo-cleft**

Clipping Denotes a type of abbreviation where a word is shortened with one or more syllables omitted or 'clipped'. Proper names for people are commonly clipped (*ad* = *advertisement*, *advert*; *lab* = *laboratory*; *medic* = *medical student*, *doctor*; *Liz* = *Elizabeth*).

Cluster Refers to unitary or fragmentary and grammatically incomplete structures, usually in patterns of two, three or more words, that repeatedly occur. Clusters are usually retrieved from memory as whole units and contribute to fluency. They help to indicate relations of time and place (*I'll see you* ***in the*** *morning.*), perform interpersonal functions (*I find French so hard,* ***you know what I mean****?*) and linking functions (*Going by train's okay* ***but I mean*** *I'd prefer it if we could find a flight.*), and mark turn-taking, etc. (A: *I'll make some lunch,* ***shall I****?* B: *Mm, yes, please.*).

Coherence Refers to the relationships which link the meanings of utterances so that they are perceived as a text rather than as a random, unconnected sequence. The interpretation of coherence can be best derived from the speakers' shared knowledge and understanding of the speech acts being performed:

Husband: *The baby's crying.*
(husband requests wife to perform an action – attend to the baby)
Wife: *I'm on the phone.*
(wife states reason why she cannot comply with the request)
Husband: *Okay. I'll go.*
(husband undertakes to perform action)

Cohesion Refers to the grammatical and/or lexical links that mark relationships between clauses or across larger units of text. Conjunction, ellipsis, reference, repetition, substitution, etc. play a role in cohesion.

Collective noun A type of noun referring to a group of people, animals or things (*family, gang, committee, crowd, cattle, fleet*).

Collocation Refers to how lexical words co-occur regularly and in a restricted way.

typical collocations	untypical collocations
blonde hair	*blonde car*
lean meat	*slim meat*
perform a play	*perform a meeting*

Comment Comment refers to the main part of the message which indicates the important information about the topic. A comment is typically associated with the predicate in a clause:

topic	comment
Sue	***is starting a new job on Monday***

'Theme' is also a term used to describe the topic or starting point for a message. 'Rheme' then refers to the information about the theme:

theme	rheme
Beijing	***has been chosen as the site for the Olympic Games***

541 **Index** for individual terms not in the Glossary

Comparative, comparison The comparative is the form of a gradable adjective or adverb which is used to compare the different degree of qualities, properties, states, conditions, relations, etc. between two entities. The comparative is realised by the suffix *-er*, or by the use of *more*:

*Africa is **bigger** than Europe.*

*It is **more difficult** to get into a famous university **than** a little-known one.*

Complement, complementation A word or phrase which is required to complete the meaning of another word or phrase:

*A rise **in interest rates** is inevitable.*

*The claim **that he was innocently involved** was not accepted by the judge.*

Complementation is the process of completing the meaning of an item. For example, the complementation requirement for the verb *put* is that it must normally include an object and a phrase indicating location:

0 **prepositional phrase**
*She put **the book** | **on the shelf**.*

A predicative complement is a phrase which completes a clause with verbs such as *be*, *become*, *look*, *taste*:

*She's **away**.*

*He became **a teacher**.*

*That looks **very nice**.*

⇢ Transitive complementation

Complex verb phrase A phrase which includes a combination of different elements with the lexical verb:

*I **do like** pizza.*
(auxiliary + lexical verb)

*We**'ve talked** about that.*
(perfect + lexical verb)

*We**'re being fooled**.*
(progressive + passive + lexical verb)

*I **might be seeing** Bob.*
(modal + progressive + lexical verb)

*It**'s been being repaired** for ages.*
(perfect + passive + progressive + lexical verb)

A complex verb phrase indicates person, number, tense (except in modal verbs), aspect, voice and mood.

⇢ Verb phrase

Compound Compounding is a word-formation process which refers to two or more words linking together to produce a form which creates a new, single unit of meaning. Compounds are found in all word classes: Nouns (*pop-group*, *car park*), adjectives (*heartbreaking*, *homesick*), verbs (*babysit*, *dry-clean*), prepositions (*into*, *onto*).

Compound sentences are sentences with two or more main clauses: ***He should have been here at five*** *and* ***he's not here yet***, *but* ***he'll come***.

Concord (or agreement) Subject-verb concord refers to the agreement between the verb and subject in a finite clause with respect to number and person:

It *take**s** ages to get there.*
(present tense, plus third person singular subject requires -*s* on a lexical verb)

Concordance A computer technique that allows searches to be conducted in a corpus for specific target words or phrases in their original textual environments. The most standard concordance type is called KWIC display (Key Word in Context), which highlights the chosen keyword in the centre of a line of words with its surrounding context on each side (→ **3d** for an example)

→ **Corpus**

Conditional clause A clause that expresses a condition or hypothesis about a situation. It is typically introduced by the subordinating conjunction *if*, and other conjunctions such as *unless*, *as soon as*:

If they promote her, *she'll get a big pay rise.*

Unless you try, *you'll never do it.*

Conjunction (another term for connector) Refers to items used to mark logical relationships between words, phrases, clauses and sentences. There are two types of conjunction: coordinating and subordinating. Coordinating conjunctions (or coordinators) (*and*, *but*, *or*) join linguistic units with equal grammatical status:

*Mary felt ill **and** could not go to school.*

Subordinating conjunctions (or subordinators) (*although*, *after*, *as*, *because*, *before*, *since*, *when*) indicate the semantic relationship between a subordinate clause and a main clause:

main **subordinate**
He failed the exam | ***although*** *he worked hard.*

Connector, connective

→ **Conjunction**

Continuous

→ **Progressive**

Contraction, contracted forms A phonologically reduced or simplified form attached to the preceding word: *I've* is a contracted form of *I have*, *haven't* is contracted from *have not*, *isn't* is contracted from *is not*.

→ **Phonetics**

Conversion A process of word formation which involves a change in the functioning of a word from one word class to another without adding an affix:

The film is an absolute ***must*** *for all lovers of Westerns.*
(conversion from verb to noun)

Can we ***microwave*** *it?*
(conversion from noun to verb)

Coordination, coordinator Expresses a relation between linguistic units that are of equal grammatical status. Coordinators such as *and*, *but*, are used to link coordinated constructions:

Kay ***and*** *Stuart got married last week.*

Coordination is a principal way in which clauses are combined to form sentences:

Jim brought me here **but** *Phil's taking me home.*

Correlative coordinators refer to conjunctions such as *either … or* or *neither … nor*:

I'll ***either*** *phone* ***or*** *email him about it.*

Copula(r) verb Verbs such as *be*, *become*, *feel*, *remain*, *seem*, *smell*, *taste* that describe the states of people and things. A copular verb is used to link the subject and the complement of a clause:

I ***was*** *very excited.*

It ***seems*** *strange, doesn't it really?*

It ***smells*** *a bit funny.*

Copy tag

→ **Tag**

Core modal verb These are *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *will*, *shall*, *would*, *should*, *must*, which are used to express various kinds of modal meaning, mainly referring to degrees of certainty and degrees of obligation. Modal verbs have only one form and do not indicate person, number, voice or aspect. They are placed first in the verb phrase and are followed by a verb (either an auxiliary verb or a lexical verb) in the base form:

I ***might*** *see you later.*
(speaker denotes a possibility, but not with certainty)

I ***must*** *phone her to find out how long she's staying.*
(speaker states an obligation or necessity)

→ **Modality; Modal expressions; Semi-modal verb**

Corpus A large collection of written text or transcribed speech which is stored and processed by computer so as to serve as a basis for linguistic analysis and description.

Correlative

→ **Coordination, coordinator**

Count (or countable) A grammatical distinction of nouns that refers to objects, people, animals and abstract entities that are treated as easily counted (*a cat/two cats*, *one egg/three eggs*).

Count nouns are contrasted with non-count (or uncountable) nouns.

Declarative A clause type that is typically associated with statements to make assertions and convey information. The word order in declarative clauses is subject + verb + x, where x is any other element present (e.g. object or complement):

subject	verb	x
She	*works*	*in publishing.*
I	*saw*	*him in the distance.*

Defining relative clause (or restrictive relative clause) A relative clause which defines or restricts the meaning of the head noun:

The guy *who shouted must have been on about the seventh floor.*
(defines *the guy*; specifies which guy is being referred to)

It is contrasted with a non-defining relative clause.

In this grammar book the terms defining and non-defining are used in preference to restrictive/non-restrictive.

→ **Postmodification**

Definite article Refers to determiner *the* which is used with a noun to define and specify entities projected as known to speaker/writer and listener/reader. It is contrasted with the indefinite article (*a/an*):

The *university is closed today.*

I'll try to put you through to ***the*** *right department.*

Degree adverb

→ **Adverb**

Deixis (adjective = **deictic**) A term for words or expressions that depend for their interpretation on the immediate external situation in which they are uttered. Deictic words are orientational features and are typically realised by determiners (*a, the, this, that, these, those*), adverbs (*here, there*), personal pronouns (*I, you, them*):

Could ***we*** *just move* ***that*** *into* ***this*** *corner* ***here****?*

Delexical verb Delexical verbs refer to common verbs (*do*, *give*, *have*, *make*, *take*) that combine with nouns to describe an action. The lexical meanings expressed by the verbs become weak (***do*** *some listening*, ***have*** *a swim*, ***take*** *a walk*). In such constructions, the nouns are referred to as deverbal nouns.

→ **541 Index** for individual terms not in the Glossary

Demonstrative Grammatical term for the items *this, that, these, those*. The demonstrative specifies whether the referent is close or distant in relation to the speaker:

***This** is not correct.*

*I'd like to have **these** not **those**.*

*Shall I put **that** into **this** box over here?*

Deontic A characteristic of modality which involves the use of a modal verb to mark necessity, permission or obligation:

*You **may** go now.*
(permission)

*I **must** be careful what I say.*
(necessity/obligation)

In this book, terms such as necessity and obligation are used in preference to deontic.

→ **Epistemic; Modality**

Dependent clause Dependent clauses cannot stand alone, but depend on another sentence constituent, typically a main clause. Subordinate clauses and embedded clauses are dependent.

→ **Main clause**

Derivation A main process of word formation by which one word is formed ('derived') from another, most commonly by adding affixes to base forms. This brings about a change of meaning (*-able* indicates that something is possible; *mid-* indicates the middle part of something) and/or grammatical class (***mid**night, **un**fortunate, **re**do, read**able**, play**ful**, hope**less***).

Determiner Item which indicates the kind of reference a noun phrase has. Determiners include words like *a, the, some, my, his, each, those, which, several* which express a range of meanings including definite/indefinite (***the** dining room, **a** ruler*), possessive (***my** study, **their** children*), demonstrative (***this** box, **that** man, **these** teenagers*), quantifier (***some** milk, **every** citizen*), and numeral (***two** soldiers, the **second** birth*).

Deverbal noun

→ **Delexical verb**

Diminutive A form with an affix which has the meaning of 'small' or 'little'. A diminutive is used either literally or as a term of endearment (*-let*: *leaflet, booklet*; *-ling*: *duckling, darling*; *mini-: mini-cab, mini-skirt*; *-y: Johnny, doggy*),

Directive

→ **Imperative**

Direct object Refers to the noun phrase indicating the entity directly affected by an action:

S V O
I | *cut* | ***my finger***.

→ **Object; Indirect object**

Direct speech Refers to a reconstruction of the exact words a speaker has said, usually involving quotation marks and without making any grammatical changes. Actual utterance: *'Keep quiet!'* Direct speech: *The teacher said, 'Keep quiet!'*

Direct speech is contrasted with indirect speech.

Discontinuous adjective phrase Refers to an adjective phrase which is split into two parts, with one part pre-head and the other post-head:

pre-head post-head
He is | ***as*** | ***tall*** | ***as his father***.

Discourse Any naturally occurring stretch of language, spoken or written. Some linguists use the term to distinguish speech from writing, in which 'discourse' is used to refer to speech, and 'text' is used for writing.

Discourse marker A lexical category made up of words (*well, right*), phrases (*at the end of the day*), or clauses (*to be precise*). Discourse markers function to organise and monitor an ongoing discourse, most commonly in speech, by marking boundaries between one topic and the next (*so, right*), by indicating openings (*well, right*) and closure and pre-closure (*okay*) of topics, by indicating topic changes (*well*) or by bringing a conclusion to the discourse (*anyway, so*). They also function to mark the state of knowledge between participants (*you know, you see, I mean*).

Disjunct An adverbial expression which indicates the speaker's viewpoint towards or evaluation of what is said (*oddly, personally, fortunately, frankly, indeed*). Syntactically, it is less integrated in the clause structure and may modify the whole sentence or utterance:

*What was more, **oddly**, he seemed to have bought enough for two.*
(evaluative)

***Personally**, I don't think she's capable of doing the job.*
(viewpoint)

Ditransitive A term for verbs that are used with two objects to complete the meaning. In *My mother **made** | me | a cake.* | , *made* is ditransitive, with a direct object *a cake* and an indirect object *me*. Other verbs used ditransitively include *promise* (*I **promised** | the kids | a treat.* |) and *give* (*I **gave** | the beggar | some money.* |).

Downtoner A downtoner is a sub-class of intensifier that is used to mark a lessening effect on a particular aspect of meaning. This is achieved by adverbs such as *barely*, *hardly*, *partially*, *slightly*:

*Her heartbeat was **slightly** erratic.*

→ **Intensifier**

→ **541 Index** for individual terms not in the Glossary

Dummy

⇢ **Subject**

Dynamic verb A verb which primarily expresses activity (*drink, eat, play, work*), process (*change, deteriorate, grow*) and bodily sensation (*ache, feel, hurt*). A dynamic verb can be used in the progressive aspect (*My dad is watching TV.*) and in the imperative (*Stop it!*).

Dynamic verbs are contrasted with stative verbs.

Ellipsis The non-use of words or phrases whose meanings are understood or implied between speakers and hearers, or are recoverable from the immediate text or context. In spoken English, ellipsis is a linguistic indicator of informality:

Right … what next?
(*What* ***is/will be/could happen/etc****. next?* verb understood)

Mud on my shirt!
(***There's/I've got*** *mud on my shirt!* subject and verb understood)

Embedding, embedded Refers to the use of a phrase or clause as a constituent of a higher level phrase or clause:

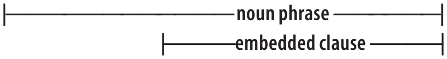

The man who ***you spoke to on the phone*** *is my uncle.*

⇢ **Clause; Subordinate clause**

Empty *it* Occurs when *it* is used as an empty pronoun, a 'dummy' subject form in anticipatory structures. Empty *it* does not refer to any specific object or entity:

It*'s very hot today, isn't it?*
(empty *it* as reference to weather)

It*'s getting late.*
(empty *it* as reference to situation)

⇢ **Anticipatory structure**

Endophora (adjective = **endophoric**) A term meaning reference to people, places, things and ideas within a text. Endophoric references are of two types: anaphoric (pointing backward to something mentioned earlier in the text) and cataphoric (pointing forward to something mentioned later in the text).

⇢ **Exophora**

Endweight Indicates where the most weight falls in terms of the focus on new information. In English, endweight is typically at the end of a clause.

⇢ **Focus; Fronting**

Epistemic A characteristic of modality concerned with the speaker's judgement about the certainty, probability or possibility of something. It involves an assessment of potential facts:

I ***might*** *see you later.*
(it is possible, not certain)

I'll *see you tomorrow.*
(speaker is certain)

In this book, terms such as probability and possibility are used in preference to epistemic.

→ **Deontic; Modality**

Exclamation mark A form of punctuation which is used after an exclamative clause or when a sentence expresses emotive force (*How nice! Well done! I don't believe it!*).

Exclamative A phrase or a clause type that expresses the speaker's reaction of surprise, shock or strong impression. Exclamatives usually consist of phrases with *what* and *how* followed by a subject + verb construction. In writing, they are punctuated with an exclamation mark (!):

What *a nuisance!*

How *lovely you are!*

→ **Interjection**

Existential *there* Contains an indefinite subject which does not refer to any object or entity:

There *were a lot of people in the town centre.*

There*'s something I want to talk to you about.*

Sentence patterns with existential *there* enable a focus to be placed on the subject by locating it in the rheme (→ **Comment**) of the clause:

We drove past one time and ***there*** *was a woman standing outside.*

Exophora (adjective = **exophoric**) A term meaning reference to the situation outside of the text:

[on a public sign]
This exit *must be kept clear at all times.*

Exophora is contrasted with anaphora and cataphora.

→ **Endophora**

Filler Refers to vocalisations (*er, erm, um, mm*) or words that are used to fill gaps in conversations. A filler can mark hesitation, a shift in topic (***Okay****,* ***erm****, let's move on.*), or can indicate the speaker's online process of thinking and planning (***Well****, of course,* ***erm****, I think we should take our time before taking any action.*).

Finite A finite clause contains a verb which signals a choice of tense (a tensed verb). It typically has a subject, and can be a main or subordinate clause:

He ***lives*** *on his own.*
(present tense)

Finite is contrasted with non-finite.

→ **Non-finite**

→ **541 Index** for individual terms not in the Glossary

Fixed expression A term for routinised and pre-formulated expressions. Fixed expressions have a varying degree of fixity (*at the end of the day, as far as I am concerned, once and for all, how do you do?*).

Focus Enables special emphasis to be placed on particular elements of a clause through the use of fronting, headers and tails, cleft sentences, etc. for purposes such as introducing new topics, distinguishing between new and old information, foregrounding and backgrounding things:

***That bowl** we got in Italy. The other one's from Spain, I think.*
(fronting of the object to show a contrast between the two bowls)

***That brown chair**, we bought that years and years ago.*
(header gives extra focus to *that brown chair*)

*He's quite a comic **that fellow**.*
(tail gives extra focus to the subject *he*)

***It was on Sunday** I first noticed I had a rash.*
(cleft sentence gives extra focus to *on Sunday*)

··⁘ Backgrounding; Cleft; Fronting; Foregrounding; Header; Raised subject; Tail

Foregrounding Refers to grammatical structures used to highlight some important information in a discourse:

*Perhaps **what is most important is** the origin of such ideas.*
(the *wh*-cleft structure signals that this is a key sentence in what follows)

··⁘ Backgrounding; Fronting

Formal A term associated with variation in speech or writing style in which choices of pronunciation, grammar and vocabulary are made which express a polite distance between participants, as in formal situations such as debates and official ceremonies:

I should like to extend my warm welcome to all guests tonight.
(compare the more informal: *I want to welcome you all here tonight.*)

Free direct and indirect speech Free direct speech refers to a reconstruction of the exact words a speaker has said without a reporting clause. It is common in literary style and in informal spoken contexts when it is clear who is speaking:

They looked at each other knowingly.
'Okay?'
'Right, I'll come with you.'

Free indirect speech refers to a reconstruction of the words or thoughts of a speaker conveyed in a reported clause without a reporting verb. This is common in literary style:

*David moved slowly and thoughtfully. **He would not be deterred**.*
(implied: He said/thought, 'I won't be deterred.')

··⁘ Direct speech

Fronting Refers to the front-placing of words or phrases in a clause or sentence which gives extra prominence to the items thus placed:

*I really would like to see **Berlin**.*
(object in neutral position, after the verb)

***Berlin** I really would like to see.*
(object fronted for greater prominence)

Focus; Header; Tail; Topic

Gender A grammatical distinction in which words are marked for masculine, feminine or neuter. Only pronouns and possessive determiners are marked grammatically for gender (*he, him, she, it, his, hers*). However, English does occasionally distinguish gender in nouns for male or female people or animals (*She's a famous **actress**, isn't she?*).

Generic, generic pronoun A term used for a class of entities rather than a specific member of a class:

***Leopards** are dangerous animals.*
(all leopards)

***You** never know what the future will bring.*
(generic *you*: all humans)

Genitive A case that denotes a possessive relationship with another noun phrase in a sentence. It is realised by an *of*-phrase (*the headteacher **of** the school*), or by adding *'s* to singular nouns (*Lily**'s** toys, the woman**'s** husband*) and *s'* for plural nouns ending with *-s* (*the Teacher**s'** Union, the girl**s'** room*).

Gerund A word derived from a verb form which ends in *-ing* and is used as a noun. It is also referred to as a verbal noun or *-ing* noun:

***Smoking** is hazardous to health.*

*No **eating** or **drinking** in the library.*

Gradable Refers to adjectives or adverbs which can be set on a scale of 'more' or 'less' in terms of their qualities, properties, states, conditions, relations, etc. (*good, small, easily, nicely*). Gradable adjectives and adverbs can be premodified by degree adverbs (*That's an **extremely** good camera.*) and can take the comparative and superlative inflections (*small**er**, small**est***), or be preceded by *more* or *most* (*more easily, most superior*).

Gradable is contrasted with non-gradable.

Non-gradable

Head, headword Refers to the central element of a phrase. The accompanying constituents in the phrase have a grammatical relationship with the head: *a new **home** for the children* (noun head), ***in** the country* (preposition head), *very **nice*** (adjective head), *rather **slowly*** (adverb head).

541 Index for individual terms not in the Glossary

Header Headers are a type of fronting which serve an orienting function in spoken utterances. They involve placing a noun phrase or a clausal construction at the front of a clause, followed by one or more pronouns which refer back to the noun phrase. A header indicates the main topic of the clause:

That leather coat*, it looks really nice on you.*

Walking into that room*, it brought back a lot of memories.*

Headers are contrasted with tails. The terms 'left dislocation' and 'pre-posed' are sometimes used to refer to headers.

Hedging A linguistic strategy used to avoid sounding too authoritative or direct. This can be achieved through negation, through short hedged replies, or by using expressions such as *kind of, sort of, probably, actually, really*:

*Sorry, but I do****n't really*** *feel like going out tonight.*

A: *I suppose you've made up your mind to buy the roses?*
B: *No,* ***not necessarily****.*

⇢ **Softening**

Historic present tense The use of present tense form for past reference. This occurs particularly in narratives, stories or jokes, usually for purposes of dramatising important events:

*Emma, this friend of mine, brought these photographs out of the family through the years and he****'s looking*** *at them, and he said 'Oh!'*

Then suddenly he ***picks*** *up the book and* ***tears*** *it into pieces. It was amazing, I couldn't believe it.*

Homograph, homophone, homonym These terms describe relationships of similarity between words. Homographs are words which have the same spelling (sometimes with different pronunciations) but different meanings:

saw (noun and past tense verb); *row* (/rəʊ/ and /raʊ/)

Homophones are words which have the same pronunciation but different meanings:

meat–meet, flour–flower, bare–bear

Homonyms are unrelated words which share the same pronunciation and spelling:

rose (flower and past tense of verb *rise*)

bank (river bank and financial institution)

mole (mark on a person's skin and small animal)

Honorific Words such as *sir* or *madam*. They are often respectful and deferential.

Hypercorrect A term used to describe excessive care in the production of speech or writing in order to sound educated and native-like which can lead to over-generalisation of rules:

The chips smell nice.
(hypercorrect: ~~The chips smell nicely.~~)

Imperative A clause type which is typically associated with directives, commands, orders, instructions, etc. It consists of the base form of the verb, typically with no overt subject, + any other required elements:

Get *some kitchen paper, quick!*

Sign *here, please.*

Indefinite article, indefinite pronoun Indefinite article refers to the determiner *a/an* that is used to express an indefinite meaning:

Give me ***a*** *pen, please.*

I went for ***an*** *eye test.*

An indefinite pronoun is a pronoun that expresses a non-specific or non-definite meaning (*someone, anybody, everything, many, one, more, all*).

Indicative A form of clause mood which expresses the factual or ‘indicative’ meaning of stating or questioning. It is the most frequent form and involves all the choices of person, tense, number, aspect, modality and voice (*It* ***’s*** *a nice day.* ***Are*** *we* ***going*** *out?*).

Indicative is contrasted with imperative and subjunctive.

Indirect interrogative clause Refers to the use of *wh*-clause, a clause with *if/whether* or a nominal clause as object in a sentence. In order to avoid being too assertive or threatening, a direct interrogative is not used:

Tell me ***what you want for dinner****.*

Could I possibly ask ***why you’re unable to attend****?*

I asked ***whether she wanted to stay*** *overnight.*

Indirect object Refers to the indirect recipient or beneficiary of an action which has a direct recipient. An indirect object (IO) always co-occurs with a direct object (DO):

S V IO DO
The teacher | gave | ***the pupils*** *| some homework.*

→ **Direct object; Object**

Indirect speech (or reported speech) A reconstruction of the words of a speaker conveyed in a reported clause, accompanied by a reporting clause with verbs such as *tell, say, reply, suggest, mention*. For example, direct speech *He said, ‘I am unhappy.’* contrasts with indirect speech *He told me/said that he was unhappy*.

Infinitive The non-tensed form of a verb that usually combines with *to* (*It’s time for me* ***to order now****.*). It can also occur without *to* (also known as the ‘bare infinitive’) (*I may* ***see*** *you tomorrow; let me* ***help***).

Inflection A process of word formation in which items are added to the base form of a word to express grammatical meanings. For example: the *-s* on *dogs* indicates plural; the past form *drank* contrasts with the present *drink*; the *-est* on *cleverest* indicates the superlative form.

→ **541 Index** for individual terms not in the Glossary

Informal A term associated with variation in speech or writing style in which a more relaxed and colloquial choice of pronunciation, grammar and vocabulary is made, projecting a closer relationship among participants:

I got into Oxford on law.
(informal)

I was accepted by Oxford University to study law.
(formal)

-*ing* form A non-tensed verb form which is made by adding -*ing* to the base form, and is used with auxiliary *be* to form progressive aspect (*I **was doing** some work for Sally.*). It also occurs in non-finite clauses (*Please listen carefully to all the options before **making** your choice.*), and functions as a noun-like form sometimes called the gerund (***Smoking** is not allowed*; *I'm tired of **shouting**.*).

Intensifier An adverb which strengthens, intensifies or focuses on a particular aspect of the meaning of an item. Intensifiers are often subdivided into amplifiers (*very, really, completely, extremely*) and downtoners (*partially, hardly, barely, slightly*):

*I was **extremely** annoyed.*

Interjection A term for exclamatory words or expressive vocalisations used to express emotional reactions such as surprise, shock, delight (*crikey, gosh, hooray, oh, ouch, wow*):

***Gosh**! That's quick.*

***Ouch**, that hurts!*

→ **Exclamative**

Interrogative A clause type that is typically associated with questions. The normal word order is auxiliary/modal verb + subject + verb + x, where x is any other element present (e.g. object/predicative complement):

***Do you need** any help at all?*

*Where **did you have** your hair done?*

→ **Indirect interrogative clause**

Intonation Use of variation in pitch, loudness, rhythm and syllable length associated with different types of meaning. For example, in *wh*-questions, the intonation is typically a falling tone (↘) on the most important syllable:

When are you ↘***lea**ving?*

Intransitive Refers to the use of verbs without any other items being necessary to complete their meaning, for example, verbs such as *appear*, *begin*, *die*, *go*, *laugh*, *rain*, *happen*):

*The old man **died**.*

*We all **laughed**.*

Inversion A reversal of the usual sequence of constituents. For example, in an interrogative clause, the subject and auxiliary/modal verb are inverted (***Are we** going to have a party?*).

Irregular verb Refers to the form of verb which has a variety of types of ending and internal change applied to the base form. Irregular verbs are similar to regular verbs in making their *-s* form and *-ing* participle (*speak**s**, speak**ing**; meet**s**, meet**ing**; take**s**, tak**ing**; swim**s**, swimm**ing***). But almost all irregular verbs are irregular in their past form and *-ed* participle (*sp**oke**, sp**oken**; me**t**, me**t**; t**ook**, take**n**; sw**am**, sw**um***).

Left dislocation

→ **Header**

Lexeme Refers to the underlying forms of words which can only belong to one word class. For example, the word *water* has a similar meaning when used as a noun (*I drank the **water**.*) and when used as a verb (*I must **water** the plants.*) but it is a different lexeme in each case. Forms such as *water, waters, watering* and *watered* are grammatically distinct forms of the same lexeme, the verb *water*.

Lexical Concerned with vocabulary rather than grammar, and concerned with content meaning rather than grammatical meaning. Nouns, adjectives, adverbs and most verbs are lexical items. Modal and auxiliary verbs, prepositions, pronouns, etc. are treated as grammatical, not lexical, items.

Linking adjunct A single word or phrase which explicitly indicates the semantic relationship between two clauses, sentences or paragraphs. The semantic relations that are signalled by linking adjuncts include: additive (*also, above all*); resultative (*so, therefore*); contrastive (*rather, on the contrary*); inference (*then, in that case*); time (*eventually, then*); concessive (*anyway, though*); summative (*overall, in short*); listing (*firstly, lastly*); and meta-textual (*namely, so to speak*).

Locative, locative complement Refers to a prepositional phrase which locates the object in terms of place or time. A locative complement occurs after certain verbs of placement and direction such as *bring, drive, lay, lead, put, show, stand, take*:

verb object locative complement
*Edith | led | her | **through her own front door**.*

verb object locative complement
*Did you | put | your stuff | **in our bedroom**?*

Main clause (another term for independent clause) This is a clause that can form a sentence on its own. It must have a tensed verb (a verb indicating tense):

***I went to speak to them**.*
(one main clause as whole sentence)

***I like ice cream** but **I don't like yoghurt**.*
(main clause + main clause)

*After you have returned home, **please give me a ring**.*
(subordinate clause + main clause)

→ **541 Index** for individual terms not in the Glossary

Marked Refers to an untypical use of something.

Marked word order in English refers to word order which is untypical; for example, the word order O-S-V is marked:

O S V
That furniture we bought years ago, this lot is more recent.
(marked word order: *that furniture* is the theme, rather than *we*)

Marked word order is used to create various kinds of focus on particular elements for a variety of purposes.

When a grammatical or semantic structure is distinguished by a contrast between widespread, normal regional/social varieties of British English and less widespread ones, it is referred to as regionally or socially marked (e.g. the use of *ain't*).

Marked stress refers to the use of extra force in pronunciation or in intonation to make words or syllables sound louder or more emphatic.

Middle construction

→ **Pseudo-intransitive**

Modal expression Refers to expressions that carry modal meanings apart from the modal and semi-modal verbs. These include:

- verbs (e.g. *allow, demand, hope, let, make, seem, want, wish*):

  She ***seems*** *to be quite clever for her age.*

- grammaticalised modal phrases (e.g. *be going to, be meant to, be obliged to, be supposed to, had better*):

  I thought I ***had better*** *warn you now.*

- modal adjectives, adverbs and nouns (e.g. *certain(ly), definite(ly), possible, probability, supposedly*):

  Would it be ***possible*** *for me to have a copy of the document?*

Modality Refers to a speaker's or a writer's attitude towards, or point of view about, a state of the world. It is centrally concerned with the expression of certainty, volition, possibility and obligation. Core modal verbs (*can, could, may, might, will, shall, would, should, must*) and semi-modals (*dare, need, ought to, used to*) are the principal way in which modal meanings are expressed.

→ **Core modal verb; Semi-modal verb**

Modification A term used to refer to the structural dependence of one grammatical unit on another in which the meaning of the head of a phrase is affected by words that are used to indicate qualities and attributes of the head. For example, in the noun phrase *those* ***big*** *boxes* ***in the garage***, both *big* and *in the garage* modify *boxes*, performing premodification and postmodification, respectively.

Mono-transitive Refers to verbs that require an object. In *I **took** the last piece of bread*, *took* is a mono-transitive verb, with its direct object *the last piece of bread*. The direct object is typically a noun phrase, but it may also be a clause, as in *You always **know** what I'm thinking*.

→ **Transitive verb**

Mood A grammatical category relating to the speaker's or writer's attitude to express a factual, non-factual or directive meaning through the verb. The three moods distinguished are indicative (*She **enjoys** her new job.*), imperative (***Enjoy** your meal!*) and subjunctive (*We insist that he **enjoy** the meal first before making his speech.*).

→ **Imperative; Indicative; Subjunctive**

Morpheme A morpheme is the smallest unit of meaning in a word. Some words consist of just one morpheme (*help*), some consist of several (*unhelpful* consists of three morphemes: the base form *help*, the prefix *un-* and the suffix *-ful*).

Morphology Morphology is the study of the internal structure of words, and includes the study of base forms, affixes, compounding, derivation, etc.

Multi-word verb A lexical verb which may be combined with one or two particles to function as a verb with a unitary meaning. There are three kinds of multi-word verb. Phrasal verbs have adverb particles (*sit down, go away, get off, give in*). Prepositional verbs take a preposition (*go against, call on, look after*), and phrasal-prepositional verbs take both an adverb and a preposition (*look forward to, look down on, catch up with, put up with*).

Negation Refers to a grammatical construction with negative polarity. Negation can be formed through affixes (***un**healthy*, ***ir**responsible*, ***non**-existent*, *care**less***), and through negative words like *not, no, neither, never, no one, nobody, none*:

*George has **not** been here recently.*

A: *Are**n't** you ready yet?*
B: ***No**. **Not** yet.*

Negation is contrasted with affirmative meanings which have positive polarity.

Nominal clause A clause type that fulfils a noun-like function (e.g. an object):

nominal clause complement
Writing novels | *is* | *not easy.*

subject verb nominal clause
I | *know* | ***what you mean.***

→ **Nominalisation**

Nominalisation Involves forming a noun from other parts of speech, most commonly from verbs or adjectives (*flying* → *flight, bright* → *brightness, long* → *length, industrial* → *industrialisation*).

The nominalised form offers the possibility of a more formal expression of the equivalent verb or adjective meaning:

*I was dazzled by the **extremely bright** lights.*

*I was dazzled by **the extreme brightness** of the lights.*

→ **541 Index** for individual terms not in the Glossary

Nominative

⇢ **Case**

Non-count (or uncountable) A grammatical distinction of nouns which denote things that are treated as indivisible wholes, for instance, materials and liquids, states of mind, conditions, topics, processes and substances (*water, cheese, music, information, sand, love*). With non-count nouns there is no contrast in number between singular and plural:

They gave us some ***information****.*
(~~They gave us some informations.~~)

Non-defining relative clause (or non-restrictive relative clause) This is a clause that describes or gives additional information to the head noun in a noun phrase. A non-defining clause usually begins with a relative pronoun *who, whom, which, whose*, and is marked off by a comma in writing:

Have you ever heard of ***Guy Preston****, who had a hit song with 'Loving Ways'?*
(describes or gives extra information about Guy Preston)

Non-defining relative clauses are contrasted with defining relative clauses.

⇢ **Postmodification**

Non-finite Non-finite clauses contain a verb which does not indicate tense, for example, an infinitive (*We queued up early so as* ***to get*** *a good seat.*), an *-ed* participle (*You should read the parts* ***highlighted*** *in yellow.*) or an *-ing* form (***Coming*** *round the corner, we spotted the old house.*).

⇢ **Finite**

Non-gradable Refers to adjectives or adverbs that cannot be graded on a scale of 'more' or 'less' in terms of the property they describe (*dead/alive, male/female, truly, main, married*). Non-gradable adjectives and adverbs cannot take the comparative or superlative inflection, nor can they be preceded or premodified by words like *more, most, quite, rather, so, very* (*more male, rather dead, very truly, very married* are not possible).

Non-gradable is contrasted with gradable.

⇢ **Gradable**

Non-restrictive relative clause

⇢ **Non-defining relative clause**

Non-standard A term that refers to the use of grammar, vocabulary and pronunciation that does not conform to the norms used by educated native speakers of the standard variety. An example is the use of *ain't* as a negative contraction in speech:

I know something. That ***ain't*** *the answer.*
(standard form: *isn't*)

Non-tensed Any verb form which does not indicate present or past tense, e.g. the *-ing* form or the infinitive.

Non-tensed is contrasted with tensed.

Noun (proper, common, concrete, abstract), noun phrase Refers to words which denote classes and categories of things in the world, including people, animals, inanimate things, places, events, qualities and states (*accident, cat, club, competition*).

A noun phrase has a noun or pronoun as its head. Noun phrases can act as the subject (S), object (O) or predicative complement (C) of a clause:

S O
*My **father** used to play the **piano**.*

C
*You're a good **friend**.*

Nouns can be divided into proper nouns and common nouns. Proper nouns give names to people and things (*Tony Blair, Greece, Oxfam*). Nouns which are not proper nouns are common nouns (*table, boy, heat*).

Concrete nouns refer to physical entities that can be observed and measured (*cat, garage, soldier*). Abstract nouns refer to abstractions that cannot be observed and measured (*competition, conscience*).

→ **Collective noun**

Number A grammatical distinction which contrasts singular and plural in nouns (*story–stories*), pronouns (*I–we*), determiners (*this–these*) and verbs (*he works hard–they work hard*).

Object Refers to a clause element that follows the verb, and includes both direct (bold in the examples) and indirect (in green) objects. Objects indicate the direct and indirect recipients of actions. Objects are made up of noun phrases (*I like **that restaurant**. Joe gave me **a present**.*).

Orthography A term that deals with the writing system in a language: the distinctive written symbols and their possible combinations.

Participle The non-tensed forms of verbs ending in *-ing* (*working, joining, trying*) and *-ed* (*worked, joined, tried*) are called the *-ing* and *-ed* participles. In irregular verbs, the *-ed* participles display variant forms (*burnt, swollen, taught, taken, gone*).

Particle Refers to a small group of words mostly made up of adverbs and prepositions. They are closely linked to verbs to form multi-word verbs (*sit **down**, go **away**, go **astray**, look **forward** to, look **down** on*). Other particles include *not*, and *to* used with an infinitive.

Partitive A quantifying expression used before a non-count noun to specify the units, parts and collections of things (***a pair of** trousers, **a piece of** paper, **a bunch of** roses, **four slices of** ham*).

→ **Quantifier**

Part of speech Another term for word class, referring to the linguistic units that realise sentence elements.

→ **Class**

Passive

⇢ **Active**

Perfect A type of aspect that gives information about a speaker's perspective on the relationship of events to the moment of speaking or to some other point in time. It is realised by auxiliary *have* + *-ed* participle of a lexical verb.

The present perfect relates events or states taking place in the past to a present time orientation:

I've ***made*** *a lot of friends since I moved here.*

The past perfect relates situations or events anterior to a time of orientation in the past:

She ***had been*** *unhappy for years and so decided to join the slimming class.*

Performative A term that refers to a type of utterance that performs a speech act simply by saying it (*I name this ship 'Victory'*; *I apologise*).

Person A grammatical category which indicates the choice of personal reference and number. Three kinds of contrast exist: first person (which includes the speaker/writer, e.g. *I, my, we, our*), second person (which refers to the addressee, e.g. *you, yours*), and third person (which refers to a third party, e.g. *he, she, it, they, him, her, its*). These distinctions apply to personal, possessive and reflexive determiners and pronouns.

Phatic Communication where participants are less concerned to convey information than to build a relationship or to make social contact; for example, talking about the weather is phatic in several cultures.

Phonetics, phonology Phonetics is concerned with the study of physical properties of speech sounds in a language, and the actual articulation or production of speech sounds. Phonology is the study of the sound system in a language.

Phrasal verb, phrasal-prepositional verb

⇢ **Multi-word verb**

Phrase A word or group of words which form grammatical units such as noun phrase, verb phrase or adjective phrase. Phrases are the constituents of clauses.

Pitch Refers to the way in which speakers vary their sound level. Pitch movement is denoted by a rising or falling tone as a result of the vibration of the vocal cord.

⇢ **Intonation**

Plural A grammatical category in number that refers to more than one, in the case of nouns (*tables, computers*), verbs (*they come*), pronouns (*we, they*), etc.

⇢ **Singular**

Polarity (adjective = **polar**) A term used to mark affirmative/negative contrasts in a clause:

The children are lovely.
(affirmative)

They ***don't*** *do it during the summer.*
(negative)

Polar (or *yes-no*) questions demand the answer *yes* or *no*:

Are you a teacher?
(yes or no?)

Position (front, mid, end) Refers to the 'location' of a grammatical element in a clause. The three possible positions are front, mid and end positions. For example, adjuncts can occupy a variety of positions in a clause:

In the morning *we had to pretend nothing happened.*
(front position)

We ***sometimes*** *go to Rochester.*
(mid position)

That young guy seems to deliver the post ***quite often these days****.*
(end position)

Objects and predicative complements have slightly less flexibility and occasionally occur in less typical positions for reasons of emphasis.

Compared with written English, positioning in spoken conversation is generally more flexible (*Are my keys in the door* ***still****?/Are my keys* ***still*** *in the door?*).

→ **Focus**

Possessive A word or part of a word that describes possession: possessive determiner (*my, your, his, her, its, our, their*); possessive pronoun (*mine, yours, his, hers, ours, theirs*); genitive (*cow****'s*** *milk, men****'s*** *jacket*); the *of* construction (*the rules* ***of*** *the school, a student* ***of*** *this class*).

Post-head Refers to the dependent elements that come after the head in a phrase. They can be complements and postmodifiers. Complements complete the meaning of the head and they precede postmodifiers:

head | **post-head complement**
a | rise | ***in interest rates***

head | **post-head complement**
She was too | tired | ***to work****.*

head | **post head complement** | **postmodifier**
Students | ***of astronomy*** *|* ***at Cambridge*** *all get very high grades.*

→ **Complement, complementation; Modification**

Postmodification, postmodifier A term used to refer to the modification which occurs after the head word in a phrase:

noun | **postmodifier**
The children | ***who are playing in the playground*** *| live down the street.*

adverb | **postmodifier**
Luckily | ***enough****, | I had a spare key.*

Pragmatics (adjective = **pragmatic**) The study of communication in relation to the intended meanings of particular utterances within particular situations. For instance, *It is cold here.* is typically heard as a statement of fact; however, depending on the intention of the speaker and the context of the utterance, it can be a complaint, a challenge or a request to shut a window.

→ **Speech act**

Predicate, predicative The part of a clause which elaborates what the subject is, does or experiences. It consists of the verb and its object or complement:

subject **predicate**
Susan | ***won the race***.

Predicative refers to a clause element that occurs in the predicate:

predicative adj
The old lady is | ***very nice***.

predicative subject complement
These books are | ***encyclopaedias***.

Prefix An affix that is attached to the beginning of a base form to create a new word (***mis****understanding*, ***post****-war*, ***re****check*, ***un****happy*, ***anti****-social*).

→ **Derivation; Word formation**

Pre-head Refers to the dependent elements that come before the head in a phrase. In the noun phrase, they can be determiners and premodifiers. Determiners indicate the type of reference for the whole noun phrase and they come before premodifiers:

├── **pre-head** ──┤ **head**
det **premodifier**
some | ***baked*** | *potatoes*

├── **pre-head** ──┤ **head**
det **premodifier**
all | ***university*** | *students*

→ **Modification**

Premodification, premodifier A term used to refer to the modification which occurs before the head word in a phrase. Modifiers which occur before the head are premodifiers (*a* ***different*** *bus*, ***rather*** *good*, ***very*** *quickly*, ***right*** *on the edge*).

Pre-posed, post-posed

→ **Header; Tail**

Preposition, prepositional phrase, preposition stranding Class of word used to express relationships between two events, things or people in terms of time (***at*** *2 o'clock*), space (***to*** *the school*) and other abstract relations (*the capital city* ***of*** *Brazil*). Prepositions can occur as single words (*about, at, by, into*) or in pairs (*out of, next to, as for*).

A phrase with a preposition as the head followed by a complement is called a prepositional phrase (*I'll come* ***with*** *you*.).

Preposition stranding occurs when the preposition is separated from its complement and placed at the end of the clause:

complement **preposition**
What *was she referring* ***to****?*

Preposition stranding

··⁝ **Preposition**

Present perfect Used to relate events or states taking place in the past to a present time orientation. It has simple and progressive forms:

*We****'ve had*** *that TV set for fifteen years.*
(fifteen years ago till now)

*So, what****'s been happening*** *since the last time we met?*
(from that moment till now)

The simple form is used to emphasise completed and punctual events:

Advertising agency FCB ***has carried out*** *extensive research on how people on short-term contracts feel about their jobs.*

The present perfect progressive can place greater emphasis on the duration of an event up to the present moment to indicate an uninterrupted action:

I've been waiting *for you for over an hour.*

Proform Proforms function to substitute for the object, complement, adjunct, or the whole clause in a sentence. For instance, definite pronouns (*he, this, those*) or indefinite pronouns (*one, all, none*), auxiliary verbs (*do, have*), or adverbs (*so, similarly*) can be used as proforms:

A: *Oh those cakes look lovely.*
B: ***They do****, don't they?*
(***they*** is a proform for *those cakes*; ***do*** is a proform for *look lovely*)

··⁝ **Ellipsis; Substitution**

Progressive (or continuous) A grammatical aspect which sees time in terms of its unfolding at the moment of speaking, and observes actions and events as incomplete, in progress or developing. It is realised by auxiliary verb *be* and the *-ing* form of a lexical verb:

We ***are leaving*** *now.*

They ***are travelling*** *through Italy at the moment.*

In this grammar book the term progressive is used in preference to continuous.

Pronoun An item used to substitute for the references to entities which lexical noun phrases indicate:

Your boxes of photos have been delivered. ***They****'re in the kitchen.*
(they = your boxes of photos)

The main sub-classifications include personal (*he, you*), possessive (*his, yours*), reflexive (*himself, yourselves*), reciprocal (*each other, one another*), relative (*who, which, that*), interrogative (*who, what, which*), demonstrative (*this, these, that, those*), and indefinite (*some, none*).

··⁝ **541 Index** for individual terms not in the Glossary

Proposition The topic and comment in a clause together constitute a proposition:

topic **comment**
We | baked some potatoes in the fire.

Prosody (adjective = **prosodic**) Refers to variations in spoken features such as stress, rhythm, intonation, voice quality, pitch, loudness, tempo, pauses.

Prototypical Shows that a category or representation is the most typical, usual, or characteristic. For example, prototypical questions have interrogative form and function to elicit information.

Pseudo-cleft A grammatical structure which allows end focus to be placed on the clause element. Pseudo-cleft sentences are most often introduced by a *what*-clause which provides old or given information, while the copular complement contains the new, important information:

What we need *is a hammer.*

What you want *is a telephone bank account.*

→ **Cleft**

Pseudo-intransitive (or middle construction) Refers to the use of verbs intransitively which are normally used transitively in clauses (*clean, close, cook, drive, iron, photograph, read*). In this construction, the agent is not mentioned and the recipient/beneficiary of the action becomes the grammatical subject. This gives endweight to the verb (and any accompanying complement/adjunct):

Fish ***cooks*** *quickly.*

Helen ***photographs*** *really well, doesn't she?*

→ **Transitive**

Pseudo-passive Structures based on *get* and *have* which are more common in spoken language. Pseudo-passives are similar to true passives in that the grammatical subject is typically the recipient, rather than the agent/doer, of the action:

They ***got deported****.*

She ***had her car damaged****.*

→ **Causative; Passive**

Punctuation This involves conventions such as the comma (,), colon (:), semi-colon (;), full-stop (.), hyphen (-), question mark (?), exclamation mark (!), quotation marks (‘ ’), dashes (–), parentheses ( ). Punctuation functions to separate grammatical units and paragraphs in written language, and to specify particular properties of units through quotation marks, italics, initial capitals, bold face, etc.

Quantifier A word or phrase used before a noun to express a positive or negative contrast in quantity. There are closed and open classes of quantifiers.

Closed class: *all, some, many, much, few, little, several, enough,* etc.

Open class: *a lot of, plenty of, large amounts of, a bottle of, two loaves of,* etc.

→ **Partitive**

Question (*yes-no, wh-*, alternative, follow-up, echo, display, two-step) An utterance (most typically in interrogative form) which requires a verbal response from the addressee.

Yes-no questions ask if something is true, and require a response of *yes* or *no*:

A: ***Are you ready***?
B: *Yes/no.*

Wh-questions are introduced by words such as *who*, *what*, *why*, and require information to be given in the response:

A: ***What time are you leaving***?
B: *Six o'clock.*

Alternative questions present options for the respondent to choose from:

A: ***Would you like tea or coffee***?
B: *Er, tea, please.*

Follow-up questions serve to request further specification. They usually appear as short questions with *wh*-words:

A: *I've done lots of work.*
B: ***Have you***? ***Like what***?
A: *Like writing a first draft of my essay.*

Echo questions seek confirmation or clarification of what has been said by repeating part of the speaker's utterance. They often have a declarative word order and an end-position *wh*-word:

A: *Pay attention to this!*
B: ***Pay attention to what***?

Display questions seek confirmation of something the speaker already knows, with the purpose of putting knowledge or information on public display. Display questions are common in contexts such as classrooms, quiz shows and other tests of knowledge:

Teacher: ***What is the capital of France***?
Pupil: *Paris.*

Two-step questions involve a two-stage process in which one question may act as a preface for another question:

A: ***Are you going to the match tonight***?
B: *Yeah, I am.*
A: ***Do you mind if I tag along***?

→ **541 Index** for individual terms not in the Glossary

Raised subject Refers to the placing of items as subjects of their clauses in order to create different types of focus. Very often adjectives (*easy, difficult, hard, likely, certain, impossible*), verbs (*seem, appear, look*) and mental process verbs in the passive (*be found, be considered, be estimated*) are involved:

***To summarise our work** is impossible.*
(*to summarise our work*, the complement of *impossible*, is raised as the subject)

***Jina**'s quite difficult to understand.*
(*Jina*, the object of *understand*, is raised as the subject)

***It** seems that nobody does anything.*
(anticipatory *it* is raised as the subject)

··⁘ Focus; Subject

Rank-shifting Refers to the phenomenon where an item associated with a higher rank in the grammar shifts to a lower rank. In the sentence *Two people I know have gone there.*, the clause *I know* modifies the head noun *people*, and is a constituent (an embedded clause) of a subject noun phrase which is of a lower grammatical rank.

Recipient of action Refers to the person or thing that is the affected participant of an action. In the passive sentence ***Those houses** were built by John Walton.*, *those houses* is the recipient of action as well as the grammatical subject. The agent is indicated by the *by*-phrase *by John Walton*.

In *get*- and *have*-pseudo-passive constructions, the grammatical subject is typically the recipient, rather than the agent, of the action (***The thief** got arrested. **Mary** had her watch stolen.*).

··⁘ Pseudo-passive

Reciprocal, reciprocal verb, reciprocal pronoun A term that expresses a two-way relationship. A reciprocal use of a verb suggests that the coordinated subjects are doing the same thing to each other (*meet, divorce, kiss, separate, fight*):

*Frank and Diane **met** in 1979.*

A reciprocal pronoun refers to a mutual relationship between people or things:

*They hate **each other/one another**.*

Reduced clause, reduced question Reduced clauses refer to incomplete clause structures where verbs are ellipted:

A: *Has he eaten the cauliflower?*
B: ***Not all of it**.* (reduced clause)

Reduced questions refer to interrogative clauses where verbs are ellipted.

A: ***You hungry**?* (reduced question)
B: *Mm, a bit.*

They occur in very informal, highly context-dependent situations, especially when meaning is very clear.

··⁘ Ellipsis

Reduplicative compound, reduplication A form of compound which involves identical or near identical or rhyming bases. Reduplicative compounds are often very informal in usage and are used in talk by or with children (*goody-goody, tick-tock* (clock), *bow-wow* (dog), *easy-peasy*).

Reference, referent, referring expression Terms used to indicate how speakers and writers refer to people, places, things and ideas. The broad distinctions are endophoric (reference to situation within the text) and exophoric (reference to situation outside the text). Endophoric references are divided into anaphoric and cataphoric. The referent is the entities referred to:

referent **referring expression**
***The children** looked tired. They had been travelling all day.*

referent **referring expression**
*They arrived at **the resort**. Here at last was a place they could relax.*

Anaphora; Cataphora; Endophora; Exophora

Reflexive A construction that contains a verb with a reflexive pronoun object, or a reflexive pronoun complement of a preposition where the referent of the complement is the same as that of the subject:

*Shall I serve **myself**?*

*Did you hurt **yourself**?*

*He kept it all for **himself**.*

Reformulation Some discourse markers can signal reformulations or alternative expressions, indicating that the speaker has not selected the most appropriate way of expressing things and is refining what they say with a more apt word or phrase. Among such markers are: *I mean, so to speak, to put it another way*.

Register Refers to the style of speaking or writing that is used in particular fields of discourse or particular social contexts (e.g. academic writing, journalism, advertising, legal, science and literary conventions).

Regular verb Refers to the form of verb which simply adds inflections to the base form without any change (base form: *cough*; present form: *cough*; *-s* form: *cough**s***; *-ing* form: *cough**ing***; past form: *cough**ed***; *-ed* participle: *cough**ed***).

Relative clause Relative clauses are of two main kinds:

- embedded clauses used to postmodify noun heads (*The book **that I want** is not available in the library*.)
- sentential relative clauses: *which*-clauses referring to a whole sentence or stretch of discourse (*She's always out when I call, **which is very inconvenient***.)

Normally they are preceded by a relative pronoun.

Defining relative clause; Non-defining relative clause

541 Index for individual terms not in the Glossary

Relative pronoun Refers to words (*who, whom, whose, which, that*) which introduce a relative clause:

*The lady **who** runs this shop has just moved.*

*The book **that** I am reading is fascinating.*

Sometimes the relative pronoun can be omitted, referred to as a zero relative pronoun.

Reporting clause, reported clause A reporting clause introduces someone's speech or thoughts (***Nick said**, 'Hello.'*) The speech or thought itself is contained in the reported clause (*She said **she was leaving**.*).

Request A form of speech act where the speaker desires a particular course of action from the listener, and the listener has a choice whether to act in the way indicated. For example, it can be realised by *can/could, will/would, would you like to, would you mind* in interrogatives:

A: ***Will you** get me a glass of water?*
B: *Yeah.*

***Would you** take this letter to the post for me?*

Response token Word or phrase used to acknowledge what a speaker says, and to indicate on the part of the listener interest or engagement in what is being said. Response tokens include minimal response tokens (sounds or words like *oh, mm, yeah, okay, no*), and non-minimal response tokens, which are frequently made up of adjectives and adverbs or short phrases or clauses (*great, exactly, very good, that's true*).

Restrictive relative clause

→ **Defining relative clause**

Rheme

→ **Comment**

Rhetorical question An interrogative clause used for rhetorical effect, posing a question to which the reader or listener is not expected to give an informative verbal response (*Who knows where I'll be next year?*).

Right dislocation

→ **Tail**

Semantics Refers to the study of meaning, which includes the meanings of words and the meanings of larger semantic units, e.g. sentences.

Semi-modal verb A kind of marginal modal verb (*dare, need, ought to, used to*) which expresses modal meanings. They behave like core modal verbs which do not take auxiliary *do* in the negative (***I dare not** tell her what's happened.*). But they also behave like lexical verbs as they allow an auxiliary to precede them (*Marie **didn't dare** say anything to them.*).

→ **Core modal verb; Modality**

Sentence The largest independent unit of grammar. It consists of at least one main clause. In writing, sentence boundaries are defined by an initial capital letter and a full stop, an exclamation mark or a question mark at the end. Sentences are composed of clauses.

Simple aspect Simple aspect is in contrast with progressive aspect. Simple aspect involves base and inflected forms of verbs (*she sings, they ran, we have eaten, he'll leave*); progressive aspect involves the use of *be* + *-ing* with a verb (*she's singing, they were running, we have been eating, he'll be leaving*).

Singular The most common form of nouns (*table, computer*), verbs (*she cries*), pronouns (*he, she, it*), etc. It denotes only one in number. Singular contrasts with plural.

Softening The effect of mitigating, or weakening, the force of what is written or said to make a speech act more polite or less assertive. For example, the use of tense and aspect (past tense, progressive or perfect aspect), lexical verbs (*reckon, wonder, hope, think*) and modal verbs (*may, should, can, could*) can help to achieve this effect:

I wondered *if you**'d** help me out in the garden.*

*I **was hoping** they were not here.*

*I **reckon** that's what you **should** do.*
(compare: That is what you must do.)

→ **Hedging**

Speech act Refers to the speaker's intention rather than the propositional meaning (content) of the utterance. The sentence *I am hot.* has the propositional meaning of a sensation of increased temperature by the speaker, but it may be heard as a complaint, or a request or order to someone to open a window. Common speech acts in everyday situations include informing, directing, complaining, exemplifying, offering, apologising, promising, permitting.

Speech reporting, speech representation A term for reporting one's own or another person's speech by using a reporting clause (*he said, I replied, they asked*). The accompanying speech, thought or writing is called the reported clause and can be either direct or indirect speech.

Speech representation

→ **Speech reporting**

Split infinitive Refers to the use of an adverb or other item between *to* and the infinitive form of the verb (*I want you to **seriously** consider his resignation.*). Some people have objections to this usage on stylistic grounds.

Stance Refers to a speaker's or writer's attitude towards the proposition of an utterance. Among the expressions which commonly signal stance are: *admittedly, basically, frankly, if you ask me, obviously, sadly, to be honest.*

Standard A term used to refer to the most prestigious variety of the language based on the spoken and written norms adopted by educated native speakers in domains such as the mass media, foreign language teaching, dictionary compilation and similar institutionalised uses. Linguistic forms which deviate from this norm are viewed as non-standard.

→ **541 Index** for individual terms not in the Glossary

Statement A sentence which conveys information, makes assertions, and describes actions, feelings, or a state of affairs. A statement is most typically a declarative clause (*He works in Barsham.*). Statements are contrasted with questions.

Stative verb, state verb A verb that describes a state or situation, in which no obvious action takes place. A stative verb cannot normally be used with the progressive aspect:

He hates me.
(~~He is hating me.~~)

I believe you.

⇢ **Dynamic verb**

Stem Refers to the form of a word to which prefixes and suffixes are attached (*re**duce,** un**trace**able*, ***snow**y*, ***capt**ive*).

Stranded preposition

⇢ **Preposition**

Sub-class Refers to elements of a class of word. For example, gradable and non-gradable adjectives are sub-classes of adjectives.

⇢ **Class**

Subject, dummy subject Identifies the doer or agent of an action, a state or an event, in the form of either a noun phrase or a nominal clause. It usually precedes the verb in a declarative clause and determines the person and number of the verb (***My mother*** *work**s** there*.).

Dummy subject refers to the use of *it* or *there* as a non-referential pronoun which fills the required subject position:

It *is good to be here.*
(~~Is good to be here.~~)

There*'s a cat walking across the garden.*

⇢ **Empty *it***

Subjunctive A form of mood which expresses wished for or desired states, after verbs such as *insist, demand, recommend, require, stipulate*. It is realised by the base form of the verb for all persons, with no inflections. It is associated with very formal styles (*I insist that she* ***do*** *these things herself.*).

Subordinate clause A dependent clause that cannot form a sentence on its own, and is usually linked to a main clause by a subordinating conjunction such as *although, because, before, for, that, when*. A subordinate clause may be finite or non-finite (*I spoke to her* ***before*** *she left*.).

Subordinator Another term for subordinating conjunction.

⇢ **Subordinate clause**

Substitution A term used to refer to the use of a proform to substitute a previously mentioned entity. It is a device for brevity to avoid repetition. Substitution can occur at phrasal and clausal levels:

Peter has bought a new jacket and Sam has bought ***one*** *too.*

Cambridge is the most prestigious university in the UK. People say ***so****.*

Suffix An affix that is attached to the end of a base form to create a new word. This process typically changes the word class: noun suffixes (*act**ion***, *train**ee***, *free**dom***, *arriv**al***); adjective suffixes (*inform**al***, *home**less***, *grate**ful***); verb suffixes (*simpl**ify***, *dark**en***, *international**ise***); adverb suffixes (*quick**ly***, *home**ward(s)***, *clock**wise***).

Superlative The form of a gradable adjective or adverb which is used to specify the most or the least of qualities, properties, states, conditions, relations, etc. among entities. The superlative is realised by the suffix *-est*, or use of *(the) most*:

*Of all of them, Tom is **cleverest**.*

*Tom is **the tallest** boy in class.*

*Tom is **the most handsome** boy in class.*

Suppletion Refers to a word which completely changes its shape in its inflected forms (*good, better, best*).

Swearing A form of taboo language that is considered to be rude or blasphemous. People use swear words to express strong feelings like annoyance, frustration and anger.

Syntax Concerns the rules that govern the arrangement of words in phrases, clauses and sentences, i.e. the study of the structure of sentences.

Taboo language Contains swearing or other types of words or phrases which carry an intensifying and often negative comment on people and events. They are discouraged in a society owing to their offensive or embarrassing nature.

Tag, tag question, fixed tag, copy tag A type of clause without a lexical verb. It normally consists of an auxiliary verb, a modal verb, or the verb *be* and a subject pronoun; it shows concord with the main-clause subject. Tags occur very frequently in spoken English.

A tag question consists of a tag after a declarative clause which changes the clause into a question or request for confirmation. It may have affirmative or negative polarity:

*She's a teacher, **isn't she**?*

*We've never been to Stockholm, **have we**?*

A fixed tag involves items such as *(all) right, okay, yeah, eh, don't you think?* at the end of a declarative clause. It functions to check that a statement has been understood:

*So we're meeting at 7 outside the pizza place, **okay**?*

*Let's stop talking in circles, **right**?*

A copy tag has the same polarity and subject-verb word order after a declarative clause. It functions to make emphatic statements, frequently in evaluative contexts:

affirmative affirmative
*She**'s** lovely, **she is**.*

negative negative
*It's **not** very good, **that one isn't**.*

541 Index for individual terms not in the Glossary

Tail Refers to the word or phrase that occurs at the end of a clause through which a speaker clarifies, strengthens, extends or emphasises a preceding topic entity. Tails are a common feature of informal spoken English:

__He__'s quite a comic __that fellow__.

__They__ do tend to go cold, don't they, __pasta__.

The terms 'right dislocation' and 'post-posed' are also sometimes used to refer to tails.

Tense A grammatical category to indicate the relationship between the form of the verb and the time reference of an event or action. English has two tenses, present and past:

The players __practise__ every day.
(present tense)

They __had__ a football match yesterday.
(past tense)

··❖ **Historic present tense**

Tensed The form of a verb which indicates present or past tense:

He __loves__ fish.

They __worked__ hard.

I __was__ thinking about you.

It is contrasted with non-tensed.

Text A stretch of language, either in speech or in writing, that is semantically and pragmatically coherent in its real-world context. A text can range from just one word (e.g. a SLOW sign on the road) to a sequence of utterances or sentences in a speech, a letter, a novel, etc.

··❖ **Coherence; Discourse**

Theme

··❖ **Comment**

Time (past, present, future) A non-linguistic concept which refers to the past, the present and the future. Time can be expressed by tense, through a change of verb forms. Time is also related to aspect, which represents speakers' perspectives on time in relation to events.

Present time denotes time reference for actions, events or states at the moment of speaking or writing, or at 'time around now'.

Past time denotes time reference for actions, events or states before the time of speaking or writing.

Future time denotes time reference for future actions, events or states. There is no future tense ending for English verbs; future time is mainly expressed by *shall/will, be going to,* present progressive form, *be about to, be to,* etc.

Tone unit Refers to the minimal unit of communication with at least one intonation contour that ends in a rising or falling tone. Tone units typically appear as clauses, but they can also be phrases or single words:

ME*?*

ANY*way.*

I'm ***LOO****king for a* ***PEN****cil.*

ARE*'nt you* ***REA****dy?*

Topic Refers to the main subject matter a speaker or writer wants to talk about. The topic is most typically associated with the grammatical subject.

→ **Comment**

Transitive complementation, transitive oblique Transitive complementation refers to the type of complementation a transitive verb requires to complete its meaning. This can be single complementation or dual complementation:

I ***spotted*** *a taxi.*
(single complementation: the speaker must say what they spotted)

He ***put*** *it in the rubbish bin.*
(dual complementation: the speaker must say *what* was put and *where* it was put)

Transitive oblique refers to a type of ditransitive complementation (direct object + prepositional complement with *to*) in which the recipient of the direct object is obliquely put into focus. Transitive verbs associated with this usage are *bring, give, grant, hand, leave, send, owe,* etc.:

direct object | transitive oblique prep complement
*She sent | a letter | **to Ivy Bolton**.*

Transitive verb The use of a verb with one or two objects to complete its meaning when used in the active voice. Verbs such as *ask, bring, carry, find, get, give, love, make, use,* are typically used transitively:

I ***love*** *carrots.*

My mother ***gives*** *| me | pocket money | every week.*

Turn A basic unit of conversation. Speakers take turns to speak, and a turn ends when the speaker changes. A turn may be very short or very long:

Assistant: *There you go. There's your ticket. And your accommodation there.*
Insurance, and just some general information. (turn 1)
Customer: *Excellent. Right.* (turn 2)

Uncountable

→ **Noun; Non-count noun**

Unmarked

→ **Marked**

→ **541 Index** for individual terms not in the Glossary

Utterance Refers to a communicative unit in speech that is both communicatively and pragmatically complete. An utterance may consist of single words, phrases, clauses or clause combinations spoken in context. There are four utterances in the following example:

1 A: *But he's trying to send us an email and I'm having some trouble with the computer you see.*
2 B: *Right.*
3 A: *You know.*
4 B: *Yeah.*

The term 'utterance' is contrasted with 'sentence' in written language.

Vague language Words or phrases with very general meanings (*thing, stuff, or whatever, sort of, or something, or anything*) which deliberately refer to people and things in a non specific, imprecise way. Purposefully vague language is very common in informal spoken language:

Does he think I'm stupid ***or something****?*

She's ***sort of*** *interested.*

⁘ Softening

Verb In a clause, the verb is an obligatory and the most central element. It denotes actions, events, processes and states. Verbs are either regular (*cough, coughs, coughing, coughed*) or irregular (*speak, speaks, spoke, speaking, spoken*). There are three main grammatical classes of verb: lexical (*walk, love, put, cook*), auxiliary (*do, be, have*) and modal (*can, must, will*). Lexical and auxiliary verbs indicate contrasts of tense, person and number:

She ***walks*** *too quickly for me.*
(lexical verb *walks* in present tense, agreement in person and number with subject *she*)

He ***has*** *been a good friend.*
(auxiliary verb *has*, agreement of tense, person and number)

We ***must*** *get there early.*
(modal *must*: no inflection for tense, person or number)

Verb phrase A phrase with a lexical verb as its head:

I ***asked*** *you.*

We should have ***phoned*** *you.*

A verb phrase introduces the predicate part of a clause, indicates the clause type, and shows contrasts in tense, aspect, voice and mood.

⁘ Complex verb phrase

Vocative A noun phrase used to directly address the listener or reader, normally in the form of a personal name, title or term of endearment:

Paul*, can you help us?*

This is for you, ***daddy****.*

Voice Gives information about the roles of different participants (agent or recipient) in an event. Voice may be active or passive. Voice changes the semantic relationship between the grammatical subject and object of a verb.
Active voice: *My sister cooked the meal.*
(grammatical subject as doer/agent)

Passive voice: *The meal was cooked by my sister.*
(grammatical subject as recipient of the action)

Volitional Expresses a meaning of willingness, usually by means of modal verbs such as *will* or *would* in offers and requests:

*I would be grateful if you **would** lend me a pound.*

***Wh*-clause** A declarative clause that is introduced by question words *who(m), whose, what, when, where, which, why* or *how*. A *wh*-clause is often used as a direct object after verbs such as *advise, ask, inform, remind, show* and *tell* and in cleft sentences:

*I asked him **why he came**.*
(as direct object)

*Could you please advise me **what I should do**.*
(as direct object)

*It was an elderly lady **who had this house**.*
(in cleft sentence)

***Wh*-cleft** A *wh*-cleft contains given information but shifts the focus of a clause to the end to indicate new and important information. This is especially common in spoken language:

given information new, important information
*So **what you really want** is a hotel that's got the facilities for the children, isn't it?*

given information new, important information
***What I'll do** is I'll take all your details from you.*

→ **Cleft; Pseudo-cleft**

Wh-question

→ **Question**

Word The basic linguistic unit which relates the grammar of a language to its vocabulary. Words can be categorised into lexical and grammatical words. Lexical words (most of the vocabulary of a language) belong to open systems, where new words are frequently added. Grammatical words (e.g. determiners, conjunctions, prepositions) belong to closed systems, with new items only rarely being formed. Words are bounded by spaces in writing.

→ **Class**

Word class

→ **Class**

→ **541 Index** for individual terms not in the Glossary

Word formation Refers to the process of the creation of words and new forms of existing words. There are three main types of word formation:

- derivation: forming words by adding prefixes and suffixes
- compounding: combining words to form units of meaning (*car* + *park* = *car park, down* + *load* = *download*)
- conversion (*a* ***text*** ➛ *to* ***text***: noun ➛ verb)

Other minor word formation processes include:

- acronym: use of initial letters of a set of words pronounced as a word (*AIDS – acquired immune deficiency syndrome*)
- blending: combining parts of existing words to form a new word (***sm****oke* + *f****og*** = *smog;* ***br****eakfast* + ***lunch*** = *brunch*)
- clipping: reducing the number of syllables from a word (*ad – advertisement, lab – laboratory*)

Word order The sequential arrangement of words in a sentence, for example, subject – verb – object word order in declarative clauses:

S V O
Babies like milk.

A change in the word order normally indicates a change in function.

→ **Fronting; Header; Tail; Topic**

Yes-no **question**

→ **Question**

Zero (zero plural, zero article, zero relative pronoun) A zero plural has the same form in both singular and plural. This happens in some animal nouns (*sheep, salmon, fish, deer, cattle*), certain numerals (*three hundred, ten thousand, two dozen*), etc.

A zero article refers to the use of no article or other determiner before a noun (*I like* ***coffee****;* ***dinner*** *is served*).

A zero relative pronoun refers to the non-use of a relative pronoun in a relative clause (*That woman* [zero relative] *I met last week could probably help you*.).

Index

Note: the numbers are section numbers, not page numbers.

A

- *a-* 160a, 261, 440
- *a/an* 187, 189c, 191
  - with count nouns 177a
  - dual class nouns 180
  - with non-count nouns 178b
  - position in adjective phrases 240d
  - pronominal replacement of 190b
- abbreviations 117a, 154c, 267a, 506b, 506j
- *able* 215b, 404b
  - *see also* *can/could*; modal verbs
- *-able* 160a, 236b
- *about* 164, 235b, 253b
  - adjectives followed by 5g
  - as adverb 5b
  - *be about to* 5c, 376, 404a
  - common spoken uses of 5d
  - *discuss*, not used with 5f
  - nouns followed by 5e
  - as preposition 5a
  - verbs followed by 5f
- *above*
  - metaphorical use of 6a
  - for noun modification 6b
  - and *over* 6a, 6b, 63a
- *above all* 12d, 136b
- *absolute* 468c
- *absolutely* 238d, 238e, 238f, 245b, 248, 433, 447b
- abstract nouns 156b, 178b
- academic English
  - academic style 154
  - active/passive voice 145
  - bibliographies/lists of references 154b, 154c
  - boosting 146, 146a, 146e
  - hedging 144a, 146, 146b, 146c, 146d
  - imperatives 149
  - impersonal constructions 148
    - existential *there* 148b
    - *it*-constructions 148a
    - third person self-reference 148c
  - linking adjuncts 152, 153

academic English – cont.

  - modality and tense-aspect 146a
  - noun phrase, integrating information in 141
    - nominalisation 142, 175
    - postmodification 141d
    - premodification 141a, 141b, 141c
    - spoken academic styles 141e
  - pronouns 147
    - *I* versus *we* 147a
    - *you* and *one* 147b
  - punctuation 154b
  - raising 475h
  - rhetorical questions 149
  - sentence patterns
    - *as*-clauses 151
    - ellipted subordinate clauses 150
    - non-finite subordinate clauses 150
  - textual signals 143, 144
    - contractions 144f
    - with *it*, *this* and *that* 143a
    - modal expressions 144a, 144e
    - past simple 144c
    - present perfect 144d
    - present simple 144b
    - tense-aspect choices 144a
  - titles and sub-titles 154a
  - vague language 103a
  - and written English 140
- *accept* 285b
- acceptable/unacceptable forms 1c, 2a, 85, 119a
- *according to* 7a, 7b, 498
- *accordingly* 136c, 152, 335a
- *accusation* 497
- *accuse* 422b
- *accuse of* 286e
- *acknowledge* 286c
- acronyms 267a, 506b, 539
- *across* 235f, 253b
  - *across from*, meaning 'opposite' 8
  - area of distribution 8
  - in comparisons 8
  - and *cross* 8
  - diagonal measurement 8

across – cont.
  movement or position relative to sides or extremes 8
  and *over* 8a
  and *through* 8b
active voice 539
  in academic discourse 145
  word order, and focus 475b
  see also passive voice
actual/actually
  actual 9a
  in actual fact 9a
  actually 9b, 111, 330
  meaning 'true and factual' 9
add 499
additionally 152
address, forms of 104
adjective phrases 161, 238, 539
  attributive function 161b, 239a
    position of adjective 239b
  fixed modifiers 238g
  object complements 239a
  predicative function 161b, 239a
  restrictions on 240
    attributive-only 240a
    complex attributive 240d
    different attributive/predicative meanings 240c
    predicative-only 240b
  structure of 161a, 238a
    adjective with complement 161a
    adjective with modifier 161a
    discontinuous adjective phrases 238a, 240d
adjectives 160, 236a, 539
  antonymy 237b, 238d
  attributive adjectives, order of 241
  degree adjectives 240a
  formation of 160a
  gradability 66a, 66b, 66c, 160b, 237b, 238c, 238d, 238e
  implicit superlatives 238f
  -ing and *-ed* forms 236d
  postmodification of 238b
  prefix *a-* 240b
  premodification of 238b, 238c
  suffixes and prefixes with 236b
  types of meaning 237a
  see also comparison, adjectives
adjuncts 280, 319, 539
  before as 24b
  and adverbial clauses 320
  and adverbs 242
  and complements 280a
  definite frequency 321, 328

adjuncts – cont.
  degree and intensity 321, 330
  duration 321, 327
  evaluative 321, 333
  focusing 321, 331
  indefinite frequency 321, 328
  and inversion 336, 336a, 336b, 336c
  linking 321, 335, 335a
  manner 321, 326, 326b, 326c
  modal 321, 332
  place 321, 326, 326b, 326c
  position of 274d, 278b, 322, 326, 326a, 326b, 326c, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335
    end position 323
    front position 96a, 324, 473c
    manner, place and time 326, 326b, 326c
    mid position 325, 325a, 325b, 325c, 325d
    reporting clauses 336d
    split infinitives 337
    in spoken language 88, 278b
  reason and purpose 321, 329
  time 321, 326, 326b, 326c
  types of 320
  viewpoint 321, 334
  see also adverbs
admit 285b, 285f, 286c, 499
admittedly 111, 136f
adore 285f
adverb phrases 163, 243, 539
  copular verb complementation 247
  functions of 163b
    clause/sentence relationship 163b
    commenting function 163b
  modification functions of 245a
  position in clause 163b
  structure of 163a
    complementation patterns 163a
    discontinuous 243
    modification 163a
    simple and complex 243
adverbial clauses 539
  adjuncts and disjuncts 314a
  comment 314j
  concession 314f
  condition 314d
  contrast 314e
  function of 314a
  place 314c
  purpose 314h
  reason 314g
  result 314i
  time 314b

- adverbials 539
- adverbs 539
  - comparative/superlative forms of 162, 242
  - degree 244, 245b
  - as discourse markers 249
  - duration 244
  - evaluative 244, 245c, 246
  - focusing 244, 245b
  - formation of 162, 242
  - frequency 244
  - functions of
    - as adjuncts/complements 242
    - modification 242
  - gradability 242
  - linking 244, 246
  - manner 244
  - modal 244
  - place 244
  - as short responses 248
  - time 244
  - viewpoint 244, 246
  - *see also* adjuncts; response tokens
- *advice* 497
- *advise* 286c, 286d, 286f, 390b, 422, 499
- affirmative 539
- affixes 258a, 539
- *afford* 285i
- *after* 164, 166, 235f, 253a, 311, 359a, 359c, 359d
  - as adverb 10b, 10c
  - *after having* with *-ed* participle 10d
  - *after* with *-ing* clause 10d
  - *to be after something* 10f
  - with finite clause 10e
  - meaning ‘because of’ 10f
  - postmodifying a noun 10b
  - premodified by another adverb 10b
  - as preposition 10a
- *after all* 10g, 12d, 136f
- *after that* 136e
- *afterwards* 10c, 136e
- *again* 22a, 136b
- *against*
  - and *with* 11c
  - and *about* 11c
  - competition 11c
  - and *contrary to* 11c
  - physical contact 11b
  - reactions 11a
- *-age* 156a, 262
- agent, agency 539
- *ago* 22e, 93a
- *agree* 285b, 285i, 289a, 499
- agreement 539
  - demonstratives 97b
  - determiners 195
  - noun phrases 156c, 182, 182a, 182b
  - proper names 184
- *ah well* 106c
- *ahead* 235b
- *ahead of* 252
- *aim* 285i
- *ain’t* 119b
- *-al* 156a, 160a, 236b, 262
- *all* 130b, 187, 189g, 191, 207
  - as adverb 12c
  - and *all of* 12a, 12c
  - as determiner 12a
  - in fixed expressions/discourse markers 12d
  - with possessive determiners/pronouns 190c
  - as pronoun 12b
- *all in all* 12d, 136h
- *all of* 12a, 12c
- *all over* 63a
- *all right* 12d, 69, 108a, 110
- *all the better* 466c
- *all the more* 466c
- *all the same* 12d, 136f
- *allow* 286a, 287c, 405b, 422
  - *see also let*
- *almost* 238d, 245b, 330, 467b
- *already* 351a
  - with past perfect 13
  - position of 13
  - and *yet* 13, 72a, 81d
- *also/as well (as)/too* 136b
  - *also*
    - end position 14a
    - front position 14a
    - linking phrases 14a
    - mid position 14a
  - choosing between
    - elliptical structures and short responses 14e
    - fixed expressions, responses to 14e
    - imperative clauses 14e
  - negative clauses, and use of *either* 14f
  - *too* 14d, 136b, 245b
    - end position 14d
    - mid position 14d
  - *as well* 14b, 136b
  - *as well as* 14c, 252
- alternative questions 292a, 428, 488, 495a
- *alternatively* 136d

although/though
  although 166, 311, 313, 314f
  even though 15d
  with non-finite clauses 15c
  with reduced clauses 15b
  as subordinators 15a
  though 15e, 136f, 311, 314f
  as though, meaning ‘as if’ 15f
altogether 136h
always 328
  as always 16d
  with *can* and *could* 16c
  and *forever* 16f
  for good, *for ever*, *for always* 16e
  as intensifier with mental verbs 16c
  position of 16a
  with progressive aspect 16b
amazingly 111
American English *see* North American English
among *see* *between/among*
amount of 182b
an item of 179
anaphoric reference *see* reference, anaphoric
-ance/-ence 262
and 12d, 103a, 108b, 108c, 166, 270, 307, 308
announce 285b, 286c, 287c, 499
another 130b, 187, 189c, 190a, 191, 195, 207
answer 497, 500b
-ant 156a
ante- 261
antecedent 539
-ant/-ent 262
anti- 261
anticipate 285c
anticipatory *it* 146d, 198e, 539
  academic English 148a
  agentless passive 482c
  in cleft constructions 211
  interruption by question tags 98d
  as preparatory subject/object 211
  raising 475h
  with subject personal pronouns 199
  word order, and focus 475f
  with *worth/worthwhile* 80a, 80b
anticipatory structures 539
antonymy 237b, 238d, 539
any 130b, 207, 438
  and *some* 196b, 196c, 196d
  strong/weak forms 187, 189a, 190a, 191
any the wiser 466c
any the worse 466c
anybody 44, 207, 207a, 239b, 300d, 438, 443
anyhow 136f
anyone 44, 207, 207a, 239b, 300d, 438, 443
anything 44, 207, 207a, 239b, 438, 443
anyway 17, 90, 106a, 107, 108a, 108d, 136f, 249
anywhere 239b, 438
apart from 39c, 252
apologise 422
apostrophes
  contracted forms 233d, 506h
  possessives 167b, 192, 193, 201b, 203, 506h
apparent 406
apparently 112, 146c, 406, 498
appear 134, 146b, 279b, 288a, 288c, 405a, 475h
  see also copular verbs
appear to 216
appearance 406
appoint 287b, 287c
apposition
  clauses in 318
  noun phrases in 173, 318
  and punctuation 506d
appreciate 285f
apt 461
-ar/-er/-or 262
arguably 112, 146c
argue 285b, 499
argument 497
-arium/-orium 262
around/round
  as adverb 18
  around 235b, 253b
  with numbers 18
  as preposition 18
  round 235b
  round and round 18
arrange 285c, 285d, 285i, 289a
-ary/-ery/-ory 262
as 164, 166, 253a, 311, 314g, 359b, 374
  as … as 37, 467a
  as conjunction 19b, 270
  and *like* 19a
  as long as, so long as 166, 312, 314d, 448, 456
  as preposition 19a
  as soon as 166, 270, 312, 359a, 359c, 359d, 448
  and *than* 19a
  as though 15f, 159e, 312, 471c
  see also comparison

as a consequence 136c, 152, 335a
as a (general) rule 146c
as a matter of fact 46
as a result (of) 79, 136c, 152
as far as 312
as for 252
as I say 335a, 501b
as I was saying 106b, 109a, 501b
as if 15f, 312, 405a
as it were 109a
as of 252
as well (as) see *also/as well (as)/too*
as you say 501b
ascertain 285c
ask (for)
  ask 20, 285c, 285d, 285i, 286a, 286c, 286d, 286f, 289a, 422, 500b
  ask for 20
  ask somebody something 52
aspect 539
  see also perfect aspect; progressive aspect; verb phrase tense-aspect
assert 499
assertion 539
assertion 497
assume 134, 285b, 287c
assuming (that) 312, 314d
assure 286c
at 164, 235b, 235f
  after adjectives 21c
  after verbs and nouns 21c
  at, in, on, place 21b
  at, in, on, time 21a
at all 12d
at any rate 136f
at the same time 136f
-ate 158a, 262
-(at)ion 262
-ative 236b
attempt 285i
attributive 539
  see also adjectives, attributive
auto- 261
  auxiliary verbs 227, 233, 539
  adjuncts, position of 325a, 325c, 325d
  be for progressive aspect/ passive voice 227, 233a
  contracted forms of 233d
  do for interrogative/negative/emphatic structures 227, 233a
  ellipsis and substitution with 227, 233e
  have for perfect aspect 227, 233a
  interrogative forms 233c, 292a, 292d
  negative forms 233b

auto- – cont.
  in tags 233c, 300a
  see also *be; do; have;* modal verbs
avoid 285f
away 235b
awfully 245b

B

back 235b
  and *again* 22a
  with dynamic and stative verbs 22b
  with *here, there, home* 22d
  at or *in the back* 22c
  with time expressions 22e
backchannelling 69, 83, 539
backgrounding 539
backshift 539
bad/worse/worst 464
baptize 287b
barely 238d, 446
bark 500c
base form 228a, 228b, 229, 258b, 539
basically 111
be 219, 288a, 288c, 288d, 288e, 325c, 532a
  as lexical verb 213, 227, 292b
  see also copular verbs; passive voice
be- 261
be able to 215b, 404b
  see also *can/could;* modal verbs
be about to 5c, 376, 404a
be afraid 134
be born 486
be bound to 404c
be deemed 486
be due to 404d
be going to 144e
  for future reference 531e
  in AmE 531e
  for predictions 403b
  versus present progressive 362
  versus *will/shall* 363
  see also future time
be likely to/that 404e
be meant to 404f
be obliged to 404f
be populated 486
be stranded 486
be strewn 486
be supposed to 52d, 404f
be taken aback 486
be to 376, 403a

because/cos 87a
  because 23, 311, 314g
  because of 23, 252
  because of that 335a
  cos 23, 107, 108c
become 279b, 288a, 288c
  see also copular verbs
before 166, 253a, 253b, 311, 351a, 359a, 359c, 359d, 374
  as adverb 24b, 24f
  and *by, till/until* 24a
  with finite clause 24d
  before long 24g
  meaning 'in front of' 24g
  with non-finite *-ing* clause 24c
  premodification of 24e
  as preposition 24a
beforehand 24f
beg 286f, 289a, 499
begin 285i
believe 134, 285b, 287c, 350, 405a, 437, 482b
  see also mental process verbs
bellow 500c
below
  and *above* 6a, 25a
  as adverb 25b
  and *beneath* 25a
  for matter to be mentioned later 6b, 25b
  with numbers 25a
  as preposition 25a
  and *under/underneath* 25a
beneath 6a, 25a
be-passive *see* passive voice
besides 136b, 136f
  see also except
bet 285b, 286c
between/among
  between and *among* 26
  among others/among other things 26
  amongst 26
beyond 6a, 253b
bibliographies 154c
bit/a bit (of)
  a bit as adverb 27b, 50d, 245b
  bit with nouns 27a
  comparatives, premodification of 466c, 467c
  a good bit, a fair bit, quite a bit 27c
  hedging 27b
  intensifying negation 50d, 447a
  a (little) bit 245b
  partitive expressions, non-count nouns 179
-ble 262
blends 87c, 267a, 539
boosting 146a, 146e, 423b, 539
both/both of
  both 130b, 187, 189e, 207
    and *neither of* 28
    omission of determiners after 28
    pronoun + *both* 28
    in short answers 28
  both … and 28, 166
  both of with object pronoun 28
bring 286a, 286b, 286e, 287h
  and *fetch* 29b
  and *take* 29a
broadly 146c
broadly speaking 146c
burst out 285f
but 166, 270, 307, 308
but for 252
by 164, 481
by all means 95
by any chance 112
by means of 252
by the way 106b, 136j
by virtue of 252

C

call (out) 287a, 287b, 500c
Cambridge and Nottingham Corpus of Discourse in English (CANCODE) 2h
Cambridge International Corpus (CIC) 3a
can/could
  with *always* 16c
  can
    ability 381
    general truths 381
    permission 381
    possibility 381
  can, could and *may* 384
    permission 384
    probability 384
    requests 384
  commands/instructions 413a, 413e
  could 382
    criticism 382
    degrees of certainty 386
    as past tense of *can* 382
    permission 382
    probability 382
    suggestions 382

can/could – cont.
- *could* versus *was/were able to* 382
- in indirect reports 493c
- offers 418a, 418b
- permissions/prohibitions 415a, 415b, 415c, 415f
- requests 416a
- speech acts 411
- warnings/advice/suggestions 414a, 414b
- *see also* conditional clauses; modal verbs

(can't) bear 285i
(can't) help 285f
(can't) stand 285f, 285i
care 285c
case 539
cataphoric reference *see* reference, cataphoric
catch 287e
categorically 146e
catenative verbs 539
- auxiliaries *do*, *be*, *have* with 216
- modal/aspectual meanings of 216
- passive voice in verbs following 216
- perfect aspect 216
- progressive aspect 216

causative meaning 484, 539
certain 406
certainly 111, 146e, 248, 406, 433
certainty 406
challenge 286f
charge 286a
charge with 286e
check 285b, 285c, 285d
choose 285c, 285d, 285i, 285j
christen 287b
claim 285b, 285i, 497, 499
classes, open/closed 539
clause combination
- apposition 318
- coordination 307, 308, 309
- embedded clauses 305, 315
- independent/dependent clauses 305
- nominal clauses 316
- subordination 131, 270, 290, 295, 296, 296a, 306, 310, 311, 312, 506d
- *see also* adverbial clauses; relative clauses

clauses 1f, 539
- as class 1g
- finite 290, 297
  - *see also* declarative clauses; exclamative clauses; imperative clauses; interrogative clauses
- functions of 269, 276

clauses – cont.
- main and subordinate 270, 290, 295, 296, 296a, 506d
- versus non-clauses 269
- non-finite 290, 298
- participants/processes/circumstances 274b
- peripheral elements 274d
- polarity 274a
- structure of 269, 274c, 274d, 274e, 275
- verb complementation patterns 274c

clearly 111, 146e
cleft structures 74a, 139, 211, 475c, 475d, 539
clipping 267a, 539
clusters *see* word clusters
coax 500c
coherence 124, 139, 539
cohesion 123, 539
- and coherence 124
- comparative forms 135
- lexical repetition 138
- linking adjuncts 136a–j
- paragraph signals 139
- parallelism 138
- textual ellipsis 94a, 129
- *see also* reference; substitution

collective nouns 182a, 539
collocation 539
come/go
- *come* 235a
- *come to* 216
- direction of action 30
- *go* 219, 235a, 279b, 288a, 288c
- *go in/go into, come in/come into, go to/come to* 30
- *go on* 285h
- present perfect forms, use of 30

command 286f
commence 285f
comment 539
comment 285b, 497, 499
compare with 286e
comparison 460, 466, 539
- adjectives
  - comparative/superlative forms 236c, 460, 468, 468a–c
  - inflected/not inflected 236c
  - irregular 464
  - multi-syllable 463
  - one-syllable 461
  - premodification of 466c
  - with *than* 466a
  - two-syllable 462

comparison – cont.
- adverbs 162, 242
  - *badly* 465
  - short, with *-er* and *-est* 465
  - two or more syllables, with *more* and *most* 465
  - *well* 465
- clauses 471a
  - with *as* 471b
  - with *as, than* or *which, that* 471a
  - double *the* + comparative 471i
  - with *as if* and *as though* 471c
  - with *like* 471f
  - with *rather than* 471g
  - with *the same* 471e
  - with *so, too, enough* 471d
  - with superlatives 471h
- comparative meanings 466b
- comparisons of similarity 467
  - *as … as* 467a
  - *like* 467c
  - *the same, similar* 467b
- comparisons over time 469
  - *ever* 469
  - *increasingly* 469
  - *more and more* 469
  - repetition of comparative adjective/adverb 469
  - *yet* 469
- determiners/pronouns 470, 470a

complain 285b, 286c, 499
complaint 497
complements 279, 539
- adjective phrases 161a, 239b
- and adjuncts 280a
- adverb phrases 163a
- apposition 279b
- copular 161b, 239a, 247
- general 279a
- noun phrase complementation 141d, 169a, 169c, 172, 172a, 172b
- object complements 279d
- prepositions, complements of 164, 250, 256, 257
- subject complements 279b, 279c
- *see also* verb complementation

completely 238d, 245b, 330
compound nouns
- binomial phrases 168b
- formed by phrasal verbs 168b
- joined by *of, at* or *in* 168b
- meaning of 168b
- and noun modifiers 168b
- plural forms 168b

compound nouns – cont.
- pre-head item/head semantic relationships 265b
- proper names and titles 168b
- structure of 168b
- written form of 168b

compounding 539
concede 289a
concern 497
conclude 285b
concord 539
- *see also* agreement

concordance 539
condemn 287c
conditional clauses 448, 539
- *but for* 456
- *in case, in case of* 456
- *on condition that* 456
- *in the event that* 456
- first conditional 449
- with *if* 448, 453
  - *even if* 453
  - *if*, and politeness 459
  - *if*, in substitution structures 448
  - *if* and *when* 453
  - *if he were to* 453
  - *if* in non-finite clauses 453
  - *if it were not for* 453
  - *if only* 453
  - *if* with subjunctive forms *were* and *be* 159e, 458
  - *only if* 453
- inversion, instead of *if* 458
- *lest* 456
- *as long as, so long as* 166, 312, 314d, 448, 456
- and main clauses 448
- modal verbs in 452
- no conditional subordinator 448
- *otherwise* 456
- *providing, provided that* 456
- real conditionals 450
- second conditional 449
- *suppose (that), supposing* 456
- *then*, linking with 457
- third conditional 449
- *unless* and *if … not* 454
- *what if … ?* 421a, 456
- *wh*-conditional clauses 455

confess 285b, 286c, 499
confidentially 111
confirm 285b, 285c, 499
congratulate on 286e

conjunctions 166, 539
  see also coordination; subordination
connectors, connectives 539
consequently 136c, 152
consider 285b, 285c, 285d, 285f, 287a, 287b, 287c, 289b, 482b
considering 312
consist 350
contain 350
contemplate 285f
continue 285i, 499
continuous form 539
contracted forms 539
  in academic texts 144e, 144f
  apostrophes 233d, 506h
  auxiliary verbs 31b, 233b
  let's 293a
  modal verbs 380e, 418c
  negative declaratives 291c, 435a
  negative interrogatives 292c, 435b
  question tags 300a
  textual signals 144f
  will/would 234d
conversely 152
conversion 539
convince 286c
convince of 286e
coordination 539
  clauses 270, 307, 308, 309
  coordinators 136a, 137, 166, 270, 307, 308, 539
copular verbs 539
  complementation 161b, 227, 239a, 247, 279b, 282c, 288a
  situational ellipsis, copular verb *be* 94e, 94g
copy tags 302, 533, 539
core modal verbs 539
corpus data
  concordance information 3d
  frequency information 3c
  grammatical patterns 3h
  insights into use 3f
  quantitative and qualitative approaches 3e
  spoken and written language variation 3c, 3d, 3e, 3g, 3h
  use of 3b
  word clusters 3g
correlative structures 308, 539
correspondingly 136b
cos see *because/cos*
could see *can/could*
count nouns 176, 539
  and determiners 177a
  identical singular and plural forms 177b
  sort of, type of, kind of, class of with 177c
  used as non-count nouns 181
  see also nouns
country/region names 528a, 528b
crown 287b
cry 500c

D

dare
  as lexical verb 396
  negative form of 396
  as semi-modal verb 227, 234a, 396
  see also semi-modal verbs
de- 261, 434, 440
decide 285b, 285c, 285d, 285i
declarative clauses 290, 539
  affirmative declaratives 291b
  negative declaratives 291c
  as questions, requests, directives 291d
  structure of 291a
declare 287a, 287b, 287c
deem 287b, 289b
defer 285f
defining relative clauses 539
  see also relative clauses
definite article 539
  see also the
definitely 146e, 248, 433
degree adverbs 71a, 441, 539
deixis 92, 93, 539
  adverbs 93a
  and determiners 93a, 93b
  general 93a
  personal pronouns 93a
  speech representation 493a
  spoken grammar 91
delay 285f
delexical verbs 175, 475a, 539
demand 159e, 285i, 289a, 345, 405b, 422, 500b
demonstrative adjectives 187, 190a, 192
demonstrative pronouns 94g, 119b, 206
demonstratives 539
denial 497
deny 285b, 285f, 422, 499
deontic 539
depend 285c
dependent clauses 305, 315, 539

- *deprive of* 286e
- derivation 539
- *deserve* 487
- *determine* 289a
- determiners 169a, 176, 539
  - agreement problems 195
  - modification of 163a, 187
  - order of 187
  - position of 187
  - and pronouns 190, 190a, 190c
  - and types of head noun 189
    - no restriction 189a
    - restricted to non-count or plural count noun 189g
    - restricted to plural count noun 189e
    - restricted to plural count or non-count noun 189f
    - restricted to singular count noun 189c
    - restricted to singular count or non-count noun 189b
    - restricted to singular non-count noun 189d
  - zero determiner 187, 189g, 192, 196a
  - *see also a/an; all; another; any; both/both of; each; enough; every; little, a little/few, a few; much, many/a lot, lots of; numerals; of; several; some; such; the; this/that/these/those*
- *detest* 285f
- deverbal nouns 172a, 539
- *difficult* 475h
- diminutives 539
- *direct* 286f
- direct objects 278a, 278b, 539
  - *see also* verb complementation
- direct speech 539
  - *see also* speech representation
- directives 539
- *dis-* 160a, 261, 434, 440
- *disagree* 422, 422b
- *disclose* 499
- discontinuous adjective phrases 539
- discontinuous adverb phrases 243
- discourse 2f, 539
- discourse markers 83, 92, 104, 539
  - *actually* 9b
  - adverbs 249
  - *all* 12d
  - *anyway* 17, 90, 106a, 107, 108a, 108d, 249
  - characteristics of 106a
  - clauses as 106b

discourse markers– cont.

  - closings 108a
  - commas with 506d
  - common spoken 107
  - *fine* 108a, 110
  - formal interactions 106c
  - functions of 106c
  - *good* 106c, 107, 108a, 110
  - grammatical forms of 106b
  - *great* 106c, 107, 108a, 110
  - *if you like* 109a
  - informal interactions 106c
  - in informal writing 121c
  - *like* 103a, 107
  - *listen* 106b, 108d
  - *look* 108d
  - *lovely* 108a
  - *mean, I mean* 52b
  - *mind, mind you* 53b, 136f
  - monitoring shared knowledge 109b
  - *now, now then* 54, 107, 108a
  - *oh* 57, 107, 108d
  - *okay* 106c, 107, 108a, 108c, 110
  - openings 108a
  - phrases as 106a, 106b
  - pragmatic markers 274e
  - with prepositional verbs 235f
  - reformulations 109a
  - in responses 110
  - *right* 69, 90, 106a, 106c, 107, 108a, 108c, 110
  - sequencing 108b
  - *so* 71d, 106c, 107, 108a, 108b, 108c, 108d
  - spoken features 106b
  - in spoken language 90, 91
  - topic management 108c, 108d, 118e
  - use of 106a
  - *well* 76b, 106c, 107, 108a, 108d, 109a
  - *see also* response tokens
- *discover* 285b, 285c, 285d, 287e
- *discuss* 285c, 285d
- disjunct 244, 246, 314a, 539
- *dislike* 285f, 350
- ditransitive complementation 52, 284, 286a–f
- ditransitive verbs 539
- *do* 219
  - adjuncts, position of 325c
  - as auxiliary verb
    - contracted forms 31b, 233b
    - interrogative, negative and emphatic structures 31a, 159a, 227, 233a
    - uncontracted forms 31a
  - as lexical verb 31e, 227

do – cont.
  and *make* 31f, 51b
  in negative imperatives 435d
  as substitute verb 31d, 227, 233a
    do, do so, do it, do that, choice between 133
    do, do so, do it, do the same, for verb + complementation 133
  do so, tensed and non-tensed forms 133
  modal or auxiliary + *do* for lexical verb + complement 133
  modal verb with no substitute *do* 533
  so do I 134
-dom 156a, 262
doubly 245b
doubt 285b, 285c
doubtless 111
down 235b, 253b
  as adjective 32
  as adverb 32
  as preposition 32
  as verb 32
down- 261
downtoner 539
dread 285f
drive 287a, 287h
dual class nouns 180
due to 252
duly 335a
dummy subjects 276b, 405a, 539
during 164, 257, 351a
  and *for* 33
  and *while* 78a
dynamic verb 539
dys- 261

E

each 130b, 187, 189c, 190a, 191, 207
  each other 34a, 203
  and *one another* 34a
  each other's 34a, 203
  each/each of/each one of 34c
  and *every* 34b
  with pronouns/possessives 34d
  referring to subject 34e
  subject of clause, not used as 34a
easy 475h
echo questions 99, 432
-ed 236b, 262, 508a
-ee 156a, 262
eh 98e
either 130b, 207
  either ... or 166, 308, 445, 539
  either of 195
  in negative clauses 14f
  and *neither* 187, 189c, 190a, 191
elder/older 464
elect 287b, 287c
ellipsis 2d, 539
  auxiliary verbs in reduced clauses 227
  clausal ellipsis with *once* 59c
  contexts of use 3b
  with *as if* and *as though* 471c
  preposition stranding 257
  in questions 426a, 427b
  in subordinate clauses 313
  and substitution 131
  you and *the* in taboo naming expressions 114b
  see also situational ellipsis; textual ellipsis
em- 261
embedded clauses 305, 315, 317a, 506d
embedded prepositional phrases 141d
emphatically 146e
empty *it* 210, 539
-en 158a, 262
en- 261
enable 287c
encourage 287c
endophoric reference *see* reference, endophoric
endure 285f
endweight 539
enjoy 285f
enough 130b, 187, 189g, 190a, 191, 245b
enquire/inquire 285c, 285d, 500b
ensure 289a
entail 405b
entirely 238d, 245b, 330
entitle 287c
envy 286a
-eous, -ious, -ous 236b
epistemic 539
equally 136b, 152
equip 287c
-er 156a, 508a
er/erm 89a
-ese 262
especially 245b
  and *specially* 35
essentially 111
-est 508a
establish 285c, 285d

even
  and *also* 36d
  in comparatives 36b
  even if 36c, 453
  even so, even then 36e
  even though 15d, 36c, 314f
  meaning and use of 36a, 466b
  not even 36a
  position of 36a
eventually 136e
ever
  as adverb 37
  with comparative *as* … *as* 37
  as ever 37
  ever since 37, 70d
  if ever 37
  not ever, never 37, 444
  yours ever 37
every 34b, 187, 189c, 191
  cannot stand alone 38
  every one of 38
  every other 38c
  every single 38
  not every, negative form 38
  with plural nouns 38
  pronouns and possessives referring to 38
  with singular noun 38
everybody 12a, 38c, 117c, 207, 207a, 239b, 293a, 300d
everyone 12a, 38a, 38c, 117c, 207, 207a, 239b, 293a, 300d
everything 38c, 207, 207a, 239b
  and *all* 12b
everywhere 38c, 239b
evidence 406
evident 406
evidently 146c, 406, 498
exact 467b
exactly 47, 69, 248, 467b, 467c
except
  and *apart from* 39c
  and *besides* 136b, 136f
  as conjunction 39b
  except for 39a, 252
  except that 166
  with infinitive 39
  with *-ing* form 39
  with noun
  as preposition 39
exclamation marks 506c, 539
exclamative clauses 273, 539
  exclamation tags 299, 302
  with *how* 290, 294, 303

exclamative clauses – cont.
  interrogatives 292b, 410c
  in AmE 538
  speech acts 410
  substitute form *so* in 134
  with *such* 294
  with *what* 187, 189g, 204, 290, 294, 303
excuse 497
existential *there* 94h, 148b, 210, 475g, 482d, 539
exophora *see* reference, exophoric
expect 134, 285b, 287c, 405a
  constructions following 40a
  expect of and *expect from* 40d
  expect so and *expect to* 40b
  and *hope* 40
  with object + adverb 40a
  with object + *to*-infinitive 40a
  and progressive forms 40c
  with *that*-clause 40a
  with *to*-infinitive 40a
  and *wait for* 40
explain 285b, 285c, 285d, 286c, 499
  and *explain about* 41
explanation 497
extra- 261
extremely 245b

F

face 285f
fail/fail to 216, 285i
fair enough 95
fairly 245b
  see also quite
fall
  and *fall down* 42
  and *feel*, past tense forms 42
fancy 285f
far 464
farewells 115
farther/further 464
feel 42, 279b, 285b, 287c, 287d, 287e, 287f, 287g, 288a, 288c, 405a
  see also copular verbs
feel like 285f
feel/fall 42
fell see fall
fetch 29b
few/fewer/fewest see little, a little/few, a few
fillers 103a, 107, 539
finally 108b, 136i, 152

find 285b, 286a, 286e, 287a, 287b, 287c, 287e, 287g, 289b, 482b
find out 285c, 285d
fine 107, 108a, 110, 286a
finish 285f
finite clauses 290, 297, 539
first 336c
first of all 12d, 108b, 136i
firstly 108b, 136i, 152
  and *at first* 153
fit 532e
fixed expressions 539
focus *see* word order, and focus
follow-up questions 100
for 164, 235b, 235f, 311, 314g
  and *during* 33
  as conjunction 270
  with *-ing* form 43
  meaning 'because' 44
  periods of time 43
  recipient of action or thing 43
  and *since* 70, 351b
for a start 108b, 136i
for all that 136f
for certain 146e, 406
for definite 406
for example 136j
for instance 136j
for lack of 252
for one thing … for another thing 136i
for sure 146e, 406
forbid 286f, 405b, 422, 422b
force 287c, 405b
foregrounding 539
forget 285b, 285c, 285d, 285h, 285i
forgive 286a
formality 539
fortunately 111
frankly 111
frequently 146c, 328
from 70g, 164
fronting 96a, 472, 539
  adjuncts 473c
  direct objects 473a
  predicative complements 473b
  verbs 473d
  see also word order
-ful 160a, 236b, 262
functions 1h
furthermore 136b, 152, 335a
future time 361
  be about to 5c, 376, 404a
  be going to versus present progressive 362

future time – cont.
  be going to versus *will/shall* 363
  be to 376
  future in the past 373
  future perfect forms with *will/'ll, shall* 225, 372
  future perfect progressive 372
  future progressive 371
  gonna 364
  independent *'ll* 365
  modal verbs for 375
  present simple for 369
  shall/will for predictions 387, 388
  subordinate clauses, future reference in 374
  will, shall, and *'ll* for promises 420, 420a
  will versus *shall* 367
  will/shall for intention/volition 366
  will/shall in requests/offers 367

G

gather 285b, 405a
gender 539
generally 146c, 245b, 328
generic pronouns 539
genitive 539
gerunds 539
get 235a, 279b, 287a, 287c, 287e, 287g, 288a, 288c, 288d, 288e, 532d
  get on, off/go on, off, confusion between 30
  get to 216
  see also copular verbs; passive voice
get-passive
  in academic discourse 145
  formation of 479
    and pseudo-passive with *have* 479, 485
    reflexive structures with 797
    tense-aspect forms of 797
  functions of 483
    event/state distinction 483
    informal contexts 483
    newsworthy actions/events 483
    reflexive constructions 483
give 235a, 286a, 286b, 286e
give up 285f
given (that) 312, 314d
go see come/go
going back to 108b
good 106c, 107, 108a, 110

good deal of, great deal of 182b
good/better/best 464
gotten 532d
gradability
  adjectives 66b, 66c, 160b, 237b, 238c, 238d, 238e
  adverbs 242
  nouns 27a, 539
grammar
  beyond sentence level 123
  and context 2g, 3b
  descriptive versus prescriptive 2c
  deterministic versus probabilistic 2b
  and discourse 2f
  and lexis 2e, 3g
  as structure versus choice 2d
  see also spoken language
grant 286a, 286b, 286e
granted (that) 312
great 106c, 107, 108a, 110
greetings 115
groan 500c
grow 279b, 288a, 288c
growl 500c
grumble 500c
guarantee 285b
guess 134, 285b, 285c, 405a

H

had better 403c, 414h, 531d
half 130b, 187, 238d, 261
hand 286a, 286b, 286e
happen to 216
hard 475h
hardly 336a, 434, 446
  with *at all*, for emphasis 44
  with *any/anyone/anybody/anything* 44
  for distancing 44
  in front position with subject-verb inversion 44
  and *hard* 44
  negative adverb 44
hardly ever 328
hate 285g, 285i, 285j, 285k, 350
have 219, 287d, 287e, 287g
  adjuncts, position of 325c
  as auxiliary verb 227, 233
    with catenative verbs 216
    contracted forms 31b, 233b
    polar interrogatives 292a
    see also perfect aspect
  delexical verbs 175, 475a, 539

***have* – cont.**
  and *have got* 532b
  as lexical verb 213, 227
    polar interrogatives 292b
    wh-interrogatives 292d
  pseudo-passive forms with 292b, 476, 479, 480, 484, 485
  and textual ellipsis 129
have to see must/have (got) to
he 198a
headers 2h, 539
  and clause structure 96a, 96c, 274e, 474
  in informal writing 121c
  interrogative clauses as 96b
  non-finite clauses as 96b
  noun phrase strings as 96b
  reflexive pronouns as 202
  there subject proform 96b
heads, headwords 539
hear 285b, 285c, 287d, 287e, 287f, 360e
hedging 103a, 112, 539
  in academic English 144a, 146b, 146c, 146d
  actually 9b
  bit/ a bit (of) 27b
  expressions 146c
  impersonal constructions 146d
  modality 146b
    can, could, might and *may* 146b
    should and *ought to* 146b
    would 146b, 390b
  and negation 447b, 447d
  and politeness 423, 423a, 423b, 423d
  thing 74a
help 285i, 287c, 287d
hence 136c, 152
her, hers 190c, 198a, 201a, 201b, 201c
  see also possessive pronouns
here/there
  abstract uses 45a
  after prepositions 45b
  come/bring and *go/take* 45
  in front position 45a
  hello there 45e
  here, on the telephone 45d
  here/there you are 45c
  there, for signalling endpoint 45a
herself 202
hey 106b, 108d
highly 245b
him 198a
himself 202
hint 285b, 499
his 190c, 201a, 201b, 201c
  see also possessive pronouns

historic present tense 360a, 501d, 539
hold 235a, 285b, 287a, 287b
homographs 539
homonyms 539
homophones 539
honestly 111
honorifics 539
-hood 156a, 262
hope 134, 285b, 285i, 343, 437
    see also expect
hopefully 111
how 311
how about 3f, 5d
how come? 100
how (exclamative) 294, 303
however 136f, 152, 311, 314f, 455
hypo- 261
hyper- 261
hypercorrectness 199, 539
hyphenation 141b, 260, 266

I

I 3c, 198a
I (don't) think 437
I mean 52b, 106b, 109a
I must admit 111
I must say 111
I see 110
I think 111, 112, 145
-ial 236b
-ian 262
-iate 158a
-ible 236b
-ic 160a, 236b
-ic(al) 236b, 262
ideally 111
-ie/y 262
if 166, 311, 313, 314d, 374
    as if 15f, 312, 405a, 471c
    if ever 37
    if only 61d
    if with *at least/also* 314f
    if you ask me 111
    if you don't mind, for indirectness 53b
    if you like (discourse marker) 109a
    and *whether* 292g, 314f, 495a
    see also conditional clauses
-ify 262
il- 261
-il 507
il-/im-/in-/ir- 160a, 261, 434, 440
ill 240b
ill/worse/worst 464
-im 507
I'm afraid 111
imagine 134, 285b, 285c, 285d, 285f, 287c, 390b, 437
    see also mental process verbs
imperative clauses 539
    in academic English 149
    bare imperative, directness of 293a
    for directives 290, 301, 410
    with emphatic *do*-auxiliary 293a
    with emphatic subject pronoun 293a
    form of 159e, 229, 293a
    for invitations 149, 293a, 410d
    with *let/let's* 48a, 149, 293a, 293b, 435d
    negative 435d
        don't/do not with lexical verb 293b, 435d
        with emphatic subject pronoun 293b
        let's and *don't let's (let us not, don't let us)* 293b, 435d
        lexical verb + *not* 435d
        with negative subject 435d
        with *never/not ever* 435d
    sentence types 273
    for warnings 410
impersonal constructions
    existential *there* 94h, 148b, 210, 475g, 482d, 539
    raised subject 146d
    there is/are constructions 300e
    third person self-reference 148c
    see also anticipatory *it*
implore 286f
imply 285b
impossible 475h
in 164, 235b, 253b
    and *by* 136d
    at, in, on, place 21b
    at, in, on, time 21a
in a manner of speaking 109a
in a sense 146c
in a way 146c
in accordance with 7b
in actual fact 46
    see also actual/actually
in addition 136b, 152
in addition to 252
in aid of 252
in any case 136f
in any event 136f
in brief 152
in case 311, 312, 314d
in conclusion 136h, 152

in consequence 152
in exchange for 252
in fact 9b, 46, 111
in favour of 252
in front of 62, 164, 252
in general 108b
in its/their turn 152
in line with 252
in most cases 146c
in order for 312
in order to/that 166, 311, 312, 314h
in other words 109a, 136j
in particular 136b
in place of 252
in principle 146c
in short 136h
in some respects 146c
in some senses 146c
in spite of 136f, 252
in sum 136h, 152
in summary 136h, 152
in that 314g
in that case 136g
in the end 108b, 335a
in the event 312, 314d, 335a
in the first place 108b, 136i
in the meantime 136e
in/by contrast 136d
incidentally 106b, 136j
indeed 111, 136j
indefinite article 539
  see also *a/an*
indefinite pronouns 539
  and apostrophes 506h
  cardinal and ordinal numbers 207
  -one, -body, -thing differences in meaning 207a
indicative mood 159e, 539
indirect interrogative clauses 292g, 495a, 539
indirect objects 278a, 278c, 539
  see also verb complementation
indirect speech *see* speech representation
indisputably 146e
inevitability 406
inevitable 406
inevitably 146e, 406
infer 285b
infinitives 539
inflections 155, 258b, 259, 539
inform 286c, 286d, 499
inform of 286e
-ing (suffix) 156a, 508a
initials 506b
inquire 285c, 285d
inside/inside of 252, 253b
insist 159e, 285b, 289a, 345, 422
insofar as 312
insomuch as 312
inspire 287c
instead/instead of 136d, 252
instruct 286d, 286f
intend 285i, 287c, 289a
intensifiers 12d, 16c, 67a, 68, 81c, 95b, 114c, 447a, 468c, 539
inter- 261
interest in 286e
interjections 113, 274e, 539
internet discourse
  chat rooms 122
  emails 122
  instant messages 122
interrogative clauses 290, 539
  indirect interrogatives
    indirect polar interrogatives with *if* or *whether* 292g, 495a
    indirect *wh*-interrogatives 292g
  negative polar interrogatives
    with modal verbs for polite requests/commands 292c
    negative *yes-no* interrogatives 292c
    replies to 292c
  polar interrogatives
    auxiliary verbs *be, do, have* 292a
    exclamations with *be* 292b
    with lexical verb *be* 292b
    with lexical verb *have* 292b
    with multiple auxiliary verbs 292a
wh-interrogatives
    with lexical verb *have* 292d
    negative 292f
    prepositions and particles with 292e
    wh-question words 292d
    word order of 292d
    see also questions
interrogative pronouns 205
  see also questions
interrupt 499
intervene 499
into 235b, 235f
intonation 539
  question tags 98b
  questions 429, 429a–c, 430, 431
  relative clauses 317i
intra- 261
intransitive verbs 539
  see also verb complementation
intro- 261

introduce to 286e
inversion 539
invite 286f
involve 285f, 405b
-ir 507
irrefutably 146e
irregular verbs 158a, 529a, 532g, 539
is that so? 95
-ise/-ize 262
-ish 160a, 236b, 262, 263
-ism 156a, 262
-ist 262
it 198a
  with *consider, deem, find* 289b
  as dummy subject 405a
  empty *it* 210, 539
  as subject in tags 302
  see also anticipatory *it*
its 190c, 201a, 201b, 201c
itself 202
-ity/-ty 262
-ive 160a, 236b, 262

J

judge 285c, 285d
just 245b, 467b, 467c
  for emphasis 47
  with expressions of time and place 47
  meaning ‘exactly’ 47
  meaning ‘only’ 47
  meaning ‘recently’ 47
  with modal verbs, for tentativeness 403g
  only just 61g
  as softener 47
just about 112

K

keep 235a, 287a, 287b
keep on 285f
kind of 74a, 103a, 112
knock 235a
know 3c, 285b, 285c, 285d, 287c, 350, 405a

L

language names 528a, 528b
language variation 2g
largely 245b
last of all 108b, 136i
lastly 108b, 136i, 152
  and *at last* 153
lately 351a
lay 287h
lead 287c, 287h
learn 285b, 285c, 285d, 285i
learner corpus 3i
least see *little, a little/few, a few*
leave 286a, 286b, 286e, 287a, 287b, 287e, 287g
left dislocation 96b, 539
lend 286a, 286b, 286e
less see *little, a little/few, a few*
-less 160a, 236b, 262, 434, 440
lest 311
let 235a, 287d, 405b
  let/let’s for imperative 48a, 149, 293a, 293b, 435d
  meaning ‘allow/permit’ 48
  meaning ‘rent’ 48b
let alone 48c
-let/-ette 262
lexemes 265a, 539
lexical verbs
  base form, uses of 229
  be, do, have as 227
  and core modal verbs 380a
  -ed form, uses of
    as adjective 232
    as *-ed* participle 232
    in non-finite clauses 232
    for past tense 232
  -ing form, uses of
    as adjective 231
    as gerund 231
    non-finite clauses 231
    progressive aspect 231
  irregular verbs, forms of
    base form 228b
    be, have, do 228b
    -ed form as *-ed* participle/adjective/non-tensed 228b
    -ed form as past tense 228b
  non-catenative 216
  regular verbs, forms and functions of 228a
    base form 228a
    -ed form 228a
    -ing form 228a
    -s form 228a
  -s form, use of 230
  in verb phrases 213, 214a
  see also multi-word verbs
lie 285f, 288d, 288e

like 285g
  adjectival function of 49
  in comparisons 467c, 471f
  as conjunction 49
  as discourse marker 103a, 107, 112
  look like and *be like* 49
  meaning 'similar to' 49
  in spoken English 49a
    end position to qualify preceding statement 49a
    as filler 103a, 107
    to focus attention 49a
    it with *be* + *like*, to introduce example/analogy 49a
    like what? 49a
    as marker of reported speech 49a, 501e
  as suffix 262
  as verb 285i, 285j, 285k, 287a, 287g, 350
  see also as; comparison
-like 262
likely 146c, 404e, 534c
likewise 136b, 152
linking adjuncts 539
  additive 136b, 152
  concessive 136f
  contrastive 136d, 152
  coordinating conjunctions, co-occurrence with 136a
  function of 136a
  inference 136g
  listing 136i
  meta-textual 136j
  misused 153
    on the contrary, by contrast, on the other hand 153
    first(ly) and *at first* 153
    last(ly) and *at last* 153
  organisational 152
  resultative 136c, 152
  summative 136h
  time 136e
  see also cohesion
listen 106b, 108d
literally 111
little, a little/few, a few
  (a) few 130b, 189e, 207, 434
  (a) little 50d, 130b, 207, 336a, 434, 464, 467c
  (a) little, less, least 187, 189d, 190a, 191, 470, 470a
  (a) little and *(a) few* 50a, 71a
  fewer and *less* 50c
  few/fewer/fewest 187, 190a, 191, 207
  little, few, premodification of 71a

little, a little/few, a few – cont.
  little/few and *not much/not many* 50a, 446
  see also bit/a bit (of)
live 288d, 288e
loathe 285f
locative, locative complement 287h, 539
long 285i
look 108d, 235a, 279b, 288a, 288c, 405a, 467c, 475h
  see also copular verbs
look for 343
lot/lots see *much, many/a lot, lots of*
love 285g, 285i, 285j, 285k
lovely 108a
-ly 160a, 162, 262

M

madam 117e
main clauses 539
  and subordinate clauses 270, 290, 295, 296, 296a, 506d
  see also coordination; subordination
maintain 499
make 235a, 286a, 286e, 287a, 287b, 287d, 405b
  constructions following 51
  and *do* 51b
  with infinitive without *to* 51a
  made from 51c
  made of 51c
  made out of 51c
  made with 51c
  with *to*-infinitive, in passive voice 51a
manage 285i
manage to 216
many see *much, many/a lot, lots of*
maybe 112
may/might
  degrees of certainty 386
  in hedging 146b
  may
    concession 383
    general truths 383
    good wishes and curses 383
    offers 418b
    tentative propositions 146b
    things likely to occur 146b
  may not for prohibitions 415c
  may want/wish to 414a
  may (well) find (that) 414a
  may/might as well 414a, 414e

may/might – cont.
- *might* 385
  - backshift in speech representation 493c
  - past tense of *may* 385
  - requests 416c
- permission 383, 384, 385, 415a, 415b, 415f
- probability 383, 385
- suggestions 385, 414a
- *see also* modal verbs

me 198a
mean 285b, 285h, 285i, 287c, 350, 405b
- *be meant to* 52d, 404f
- *I mean* 52b, 106b, 109a
- intentions 52c
- necessity 52e
- significance 52f
- talking about language 52a

meantime 136e
meanwhile 136e
measurement, units of 527
- area 527a
- distance 527b
- height 527b
- length and distance 527a
- personal weight and height 527b
- temperature 527a
- volume and capacity 527a
- weight 527a

mega- 261
-ment 262
mental process verbs
- negation 437
- raising 475h
- simple versus progressive forms 339e, 340e, 352c
- situational ellipsis 94f

mention 285b, 285f, 286c
mid- 261
middle constructions 539
mind 285c, 285f, 285k
- expressions with 53b
  - *I don't mind,* as non-commital 53b
  - *I wouldn't mind, I don't mind if I do,* for positive preferences 53b
  - *if you don't mind,* for indirectness 53b
  - *mind you* 53b
  - *never mind* 53b
- negative declarative forms, for permission and polite requests 53
- for warnings 53b

mind – cont.
- *would you mind, do you mind,* for permission and polite requests 53, 53a

mind you 136f
mine 201c
mis- 261, 434
miss 285f
moan 500c
modal adjectives 406
modal adverbs 406
modal expressions 403, 539
- with *be* 404a–f
- *had better* 403c, 414h, 531d
- *would rather* 403f
- *would sooner* and *would just as soon* 403g

modal meaning 379
modal nouns 406
modal verbs 227, 234
- adjuncts, position of 325a, 325d
- with *be* and *have* for aspect and voice 234a
- contracted forms of 234b, 234d
- core modal verbs 234a, 378, 380
  - contracted forms of 380e
  - forms of 380a
  - interrogatives 380c
  - and lexical verbs 380a
  - negative forms of 380d
  - position of 380a
  - and tenses 380b
- ellipsis and substitution with 234e
- interrogative forms of 234c
- negative forms of 234b
- past forms for indirect statements 297
- situational ellipsis 94f
- verbs with modal uses 405, 405a, 405b
- *see also can/could; may/might;* modal expressions; *must/have (got) to;* semi-modal verbs; *shall/should; will/would*

modification 539
monotransitive complementation 284, 285a–k, 539
mood 159e, 539
- *see also* imperative clauses; subjunctive forms

more see much, many/a lot, lots of
more accurately 136d
more or less 146c, 467b
more precisely 136d
moreover 136b, 152, 335a
morphemes 258a, 539

- morphology 1b, 539
  - see also word structure
- *most* see *much, many/a lot, lots of*
- *much, many/a lot, lots of*
  - declaratives 196h
  - interrogatives 196h
  - *a lot* 245b, 254b
  - *lots* 245b
  - *many* 130b, 189e, 207
  - *many, much/more/most* 187, 190a, 191, 207, 468a, 470, 470a, 470b
  - *many a* 196h
  - *much* 130b, 189d, 207, 467b
- multi-word verbs 235, 539
  - forms 158a
  - particles 235a, 235b
  - phrasal verbs 235c
    - both transitive and intransitive 235c
    - intransitive 235c, 235e
    - transitive 235c, 235d
  - phrasal-prepositional verbs 235g
    - with two objects 235g
  - prepositional verbs 235f
    - with adverb/discourse marker 235f
    - direct object, position of 235f
    - with two objects 235f
- *mumble* 500c
- *murmur* 500c
- *must/have (got) to* 394
  - in boosted directives 146a
  - commands/instructions 413b
  - confident predictions/conclusions 146a
  - deduction 394, 394a
  - *have to* 215b, 350
    - and *have got to* 394a, 403d, 403e, 531c
  - in indirect reports 493c
  - invitations 394, 403e, 419c
  - in AmE 531b
  - negative forms of 415c
    - *can't/cannot, mustn't, needn't, don't have to* 394b, 403e
  - obligation 394, 403e
    - *had to* as past form of *must* 394a
    - *have to* forms for future obligations 394a
    - *must* for future-in-the-past 394a
  - reproaches 394
  - rules and laws 394
  - warnings/advice 414c
  - see also modal verbs
- *mutter* 500c
- *my/mine* 190c, 201a, 201b
  - see also possessive pronouns
- *myself* 202

N

- *name* 287b
- *namely* 136j
- nationalities 528a, 528b
- *naturally* 111
- *near (to)* 252, 253b
- *nearly* 467b
- *necessarily* 406
- *necessary* 406
- *necessitate* 405b
- *necessity* 406
- *need* 285h, 285i, 285j, 287g, 487
  - as lexical verb 397a
  - as semi-modal verb
    - absence of obligation 397
    - future-in-the-past meaning 397
    - interrogatives with 397
- negation 539
  - clause negation 435
    - with *any, anyone, anything, anywhere* 438
    - negative declaratives 435a
    - negative imperatives 435d
    - negative interrogatives 435b
    - negative interrogatives, and speech acts 435c
  - and discourse 447
    - double negation, and hedging 447d
    - intensifying negation 447a
    - *not* and hedging 447b
    - repeated negation, and affirmative statements 447c
  - double negatives, and usage 438a
  - *either … or* with negative verb 445
  - imperative clauses 293b, 435d
  - interrogative clauses 292c, 292f
  - and mental process verbs 437
  - modal verbs 380d
  - negative adverbs 446
  - negative prefixes 434, 440
  - negative subjunctive 435e
  - negative suffixes 434, 440
  - negative words, primary and secondary 434
  - and tags 436
  - see also *neither/nor/neither of/neither … nor; no; none; not*
- *neglect* 285i
- *neither/nor/neither of/neither … nor*
  - *neither* 130b, 207, 434, 445
  - *neither … nor …* 166, 308, 445, 539
  - *neither do I* 134

neither/nor/neither of/neither … nor – cont.
  - *neither of* 28
  - *nor* 434, 445
  - *nor do I* 134
  - *not … or/nor* 445
  - *see also* *either*
- *-ness* 262
- *never* 37, 328, 336a, 434, 438a, 444, 473c
- *nevertheless* 136f, 152
- *news* 497
- *next* 108b, 136i, 336c
- *next to* 164
- *no* 187, 189a, 191, 196e, 434
- *no-* 440
- *no doubt* 111
- *no matter wh-* 314f
- *no one* 3e, 207, 207a, 239b, 293a, 300d, 434, 438a, 443
- *no worse* 466c
- *nobody* 3e, 207, 207a, 239b, 293a, 300d, 434, 438a, 443
- nominal clauses 316, 539
- nominalisation 142, 175, 475j, 539
- nominative case 539
- *non-* 261, 434, 440
- non-catenative lexical verbs 216
- non-count nouns 176, 178, 539
  - partitive expressions with 179
    - bipartite nouns 178d
    - examples of 179
    - expressions with *-ful* 179
    - metaphorical use of 179
    - for shape/size/movement/amount 179
  - plural 178d
  - singular 178b
  - use of *all* with 12a, 539
  - used countably 180
  - *see also* nouns
- non-defining relative clauses 539
  - *see also* relative clauses
- *none* 130b, 207, 434
  - and *none of* 442
- *none the wiser* 466c
- *none the worse* 466c
- *nonetheless* 136f
- non-finite clauses 290, 298
- non-restrictive relative clauses 539
- *nor* *see* *neither/nor/neither of/neither … nor*
- *normally* 146c
- North American English grammar 530
  - adverb/adjective forms 534
    - *likely* 534c
    - *really/real* 534a
    - *well/good* 534b

North American English grammar – cont.
  - collective nouns, singular concord with 536
  - exclamative expressions 538
  - modal verbs and expressions 531
    - *be going to* 531e
    - *had better* 531d
    - *have got to/have to* 531c
    - *I guess/I suppose/I reckon* 531f
    - *must* 531b
    - *shall* 531a
  - prepositional uses 537
    - *on*, with street names 537
    - *at, in, on,* in time expressions 537
    - *through* referring to end points of time periods 537
  - present perfect, less use of 535
  - tags and tails 533
    - affirmative copy tags 533
    - interrogative copy tags 533
    - interrogative tags 533
    - modal verb with no substitute *do* 533
    - *right*, frequent use of 533
    - *tails*, less common use of 533
  - verbs 532
    - *be* 532a
    - *fit* 532e
    - *get* 532d
    - *go (and)* 532c
    - *have* and *have got* 532b
    - irregular past forms 532g
    - *learn, burn, dream*, etc., *-ed* or *-t* past tense/*-ed* participle ending for 532f
- *not* 434
  - negative short replies 437
  - *no, not any* 466c
  - in non-finite and ellipted clauses 439
  - *see also* negation
- *not actually* 447b
- *not altogether* 447b
- *not at all* 95
- *not entirely* 447b
- *not necessarily* 447b
- *not once* 473c
- *not only …* 336a
- *not really* 248, 447b
- *not to say* 109a
- *not very* 447b
- *note* 499
- *nothing* 74a, 207, 207a, 239b, 434, 438a, 443
- *notice* 285b, 285c, 285d, 287d, 287e, 287f
- *notify* 286c

noun phrases 141, 157, 539
  in apposition 173, 318
  complements 169a, 172
    clauses as 172a
    versus postmodifiers 169c
    prepositional phrases as 172b
  dependent elements, order of 169b, 169d
  functions of 157b, 167b
    as clause adjuncts 157b
    as complements of prepositions 157b
    noun phrase + *'s* possessive determiner construction 167b
    as subject, object or complement of clause 157b, 167b
  heads 168
    compound heads 168b
    noun/pronoun 168
    pronoun heads 168c
    simple heads 168a
  modifiers 169a
  noun modifier versus prepositional phrase 170c
  postmodification 171
    adjective phrases 170a
    and complementation 141d
    embedded prepositional phrases 141d
    full relative clauses 170a
    -ing relative clauses 170a
    non-finite clauses 141d
    prepositional phrases 141d, 170a, 171b
    relative clauses 170a, 171a
  premodification and postmodification 170a
  premodification
    adjective phrases 170a
    of adjectives 141c
    adjectives of classification 141a
    evaluative adjectives 141a
    hyphenated compound adjectives 141b
    noun phrase 170a
    noun phrases 169
    premodifiers, coordination of 141b
    see also determiners; partitive expressions
  in speech and writing 141e, 174
  structure of 167a
    head + modifiers or complement 157a
    postmodifiers 157a
    premodifiers 157a
    see also nominalisation
nouns 156, 539
  agreement 182
    noun + verb agreement 182a
    quantifying expressions 182b
  forms of 156a
    compounding 156a
    conversion 156a, 175
    gender 156a
    prefixes 156a
    singular and plural 156a
    suffixes 156a
  gender and animate/inanimate reference 183
  one, as noun-substitute 60a
  syntactic characteristics 156c
  types of 156b
    common, proper, concrete, abstract 156b
    count and non-count 156b
  see also count nouns; non-count nouns
now 136j, 336c
  for emphasis 54
  meaning 'nowadays' 54
  nominal functions 54
  now … now, in literary contexts 54
  now now, for calming 54
  now (now then) as discourse marker 54, 107, 108a
  now (that) as conjunction 54
  only now, with subject-verb inversion 54
  premodified forms 54
nowhere 239b, 434, 438a, 444
number 539
numerals 207, 506j, 523
  0 (zero), spoken forms of 524
  British pounds sterling 520
  decimals 513, 513a
  fractions 513, 513a
  measuring areas 521
  one as 60a, 136i, 187, 189c, 190a, 191
  a and *one* with 518
  ordinal and cardinal 207, 512
  percentages 514
  and plural count nouns 189e
  Roman numerals 523
  round numbers, and dates 519
  singular forms, with plural meanings 525
  spoken calculations 522
  telephone numbers 515
  use of *and* in 516
  use of commas in 517

O

O, spoken forms of 524
object 285f, 422
objects 278a, 539
    clause structure 269, 274c, 274d, 275
    and complements 279b, 279d
    direct 278a, 278b, 539
    indirect 278a, 278c, 539
        versus prepositional complement 278d, 475a
    see also verb complementation
oblige 287c
observably 146e
observation 497
observe 285c, 285d, 287e, 499
obviously 111, 146e
occasionally 328
o'clock 526
of 164, 235f, 251
    with *all, both, half* 55
    in expressions of quantity 55
    kind of/sort of 55
    for marking identity 55
    with noun phrases 55
    for possession/attributes 55
    as preposition 55
    see also partitive expressions
of course 56, 95, 111, 136c, 136f
off 164, 235b, 235f
offer 285i, 286a, 286b, 286e, 499
often 328
oh, as discourse marker 57, 107, 108d
okay, OK
    as adjective 58
    as adverb, meaning 'all right' 58
    in closing sequences 58
    as discourse marker 106c, 107, 108a, 108c, 110
    as indication of acceptance 58
    for signalling change of topic 58
    as tag question 98e
    as verb 58
older/elder 464
on 164, 235b, 235f, 253b
    at, in, on, place 21b
    at, in, on, time 21a
on account of 252
on condition that 314d, 448
on no account 336a
on no occasion 336a
on the contrary 136d, 152, 153
on the one hand … on the other hand 136d, 136f, 136i, 152, 153
on top of 6a, 252
on top of it all 136b
on top of that 108b
once 311, 351a, 359a, 359c, 374
    as adverb 59a
    with clausal ellipsis 59c
    as conjunction 59c
    in fixed expressions 59d
    future tense with, wrong use of 59c
    as noun 59b
    and *now that* 59c
    see also used to
one 198a, 207
    as emphatic alternative to *a/an* 60d
    as generic personal pronoun 60b
    and noun modifiers 60c
    as noun-substitute 60a, 60c, 130a, 190b
    numeral 60a, 136i, 187, 189c, 190a, 191
    one's 60b, 190c, 201a, 201b, 201c
one another 34a, 203
oneself 60b, 202
only 136f, 245b
    as adjective meaning 'single' 61b
    as adverb 61a
    as conjunction, meaning 'but' 61h
    if only 61d
    before *to*-infinitive, for unexpected actions/events 61e
    only if 448
    only just 61g
    with subject-verb inversion 61f
opinions 145
opposite 253b
    and *in front of* 62, 164, 252
or 166, 307, 308
-or 156a
or rather 109a, 136j
order 286a, 286c, 286e, 286f, 422, 499
ordinal numbers 207, 512
originally 136e
orthography 539
other(s) 130b
otherwise 136d, 136g
ought to 398
    interrogative 398
    negative 398
    past form 398
    and *should* 399
    in tags 398
    what is desirable 398
    what is likely 398
    see also semi-modal verbs
our/ours 190c, 201a, 201b, 201c
    see also possessive pronouns

- *ourselves* 202
- *-ous* 160a, 262
- *out* 235b
- *out-* 158b, 261
- *out of* 164, 252
- *outside* of 164, 252
- *over* 235b
    - and *above* 6a, 6b, 63a
    - as adverb 63b
    - as prefix 63c
    - as preposition 63a
- *over-* 158b, 261
- *overall* 136h
- *overhear* 287d, 287e, 287f
- *owe* 286a, 286b, 286e
- *owing to* 252
- *own*
    - with possessives 64, 190c, 201c
    - *very*, intensified by 64, 201c

P

- *pair of/pairs of* 178d, 179
- *para-* 261
- *partially* 146c
- participles 539
- particles 539
- *particularly* 245b
- partitive expressions 539
    - with non-count nouns 179
    - noun + preposition + noun forms 170c
    - *of* with noun phrases 191
    - *see also any*; *some*
- parts of speech 155, 539
- passive voice 539
    - in academic discourse 145
    - active/passive choice 476
    - agent phrases
        - with *by* 481
        - with other phrases 481
    - agentless passive 482
        - anticipatory *it* 482c
        - detached/impersonal styles 482b
        - existential *there* 482d
        - *get*-passives with 482a
        - process, focus on 482a
        - reference to agent, omission of 482a
    - *be*-passive formation 478
    - catenative verbs 216
    - clause subject 278bc
    - *deserve, need, require, want* with passive meaning 487
    - finite forms 476

passive voice – cont.

- impersonal expressions 498
- non-finite forms 476
- pseudo-passives with *have* 292b, 476, 479, 480, 484, 485
- and verb complementation 477
- verb phrases 159d, 214a
- verbs usually found only in 486
- *see also get*-passive

- *past* 253b
- past perfect 355
    - changed states 355c
    - conditional clauses 355d
    - forms 225b, 346
    - versus past perfect progressive 346, 357
    - versus past simple 356
    - reported clauses 355b
    - and *since* 70a
    - time up to ‘then’ 355a
    - time-frames, and choice of tense 358
- past progressive
    - background events 348b
    - definite past time 348e
    - events in progress 348a
    - indirectness/politeness 341, 343
    - ongoing and repeated events 348d, 501d
    - past progressive tense forms 346
    - versus past simple 349
    - reasons and contexts for events 348b
    - and temporal subordinators 359b
    - verbs not normally used with 350
- past simple 347
    - in academic English 144c
    - definite time adjuncts 347b
    - definite time reference 347a
    - events and states 347d
    - forms of 220, 346, 532f
    - indirectness/politeness 341, 343
    - versus past perfect 356
    - versus past progressive 349
    - versus present perfect 351a
    - reporting verbs 492a
    - and temporal subordinators 359a
    - textual signals 144c
    - without explicit time-markers 347c
    - *see also* time reference
- past time 346
    - complex sentences, tense choices in
        - *after having* with *-ed* participle 359
        - perfect infinitive clauses 359e
        - temporal subordinators, and past perfect 359d
        - temporal subordinators, and present simple 359c

past time – cont.
  present tense references to 360
    historic present 360a, 501d
    historical events 360d
    present progressive for narrative build-up 360b
    present simple for news headlines 360c
    speech-reporting verbs 360e
    see also past perfect; past progressive; past simple; present perfect
pay 286a, 286b, 286e
perfect aspect 539
  catenative verbs 216
  have, use of 227, 233a
  and softening/hedging 423a
  verb phrases 159c, 214a
  see also past perfect; present perfect
perfect infinitive clauses 359e
perfectly 245b
performatives 539
perhaps 112
permit 287c, 405b, 422
person 539
person 65
person names 528a, 528b
personal pronouns 198
  anaphoric/cataphoric reference 198a
  anticipatory *it* structure 199
  deixis 93a
  he/him, she/her, they/them 198d
  I/me 198b
  it 198e
  notions of correctness 199
  in object form 466a
  one 198f
  person, number, gender 198a
  position with phrasal verbs 235d
  and spoken English 200
  subject and object forms 198a, 199, 466a
  they/them 198h
  time and place references 493d
  we/us 198e
  you 198c
persuade 286c, 286f
persuade of 286e
phatic communication 539
phonetics, phonology 1i, 539
phrasal verbs 235c, 235e, 539
phrasal-prepositional verbs 235g, 539
phrase class 1g
phrases 1e, 539
pick 235a
piece of 179
pitch 539
place 287h
plainly 146e
plan 285i
plead 499
plenty *see* *much, many/a lot, lots of*
plenty of 182b
plural forms 539
point 497
point out 286c, 499
polar interrogatives *see* interrogative clauses
polarity 539
population names 528a, 528b
possessive adjectives 187, 189a
possessive determiners 201a, 201b
  all with 190c
  each other's 34a, 203
  own with 64, 190c, 201c
  and relative pronoun *whose* 317g
possessive forms
  noun phrases with *of* 506h
  possessive *'s* construction 192, 193, 201b, 203, 506h
  reciprocal 203
possessive pronouns 190c, 201, 201a, 506h
possibility 406
possible 406
possibly 248, 406
post- 261
postmodification, postmodifier 539
postpone 285f
practise 285f
pragmatic markers 105, 274e, 539
pre- 261
precisely 467b
predicate, predicative 539
predict 285b, 285c, 422
predictably 111
preface questions 102
prefer 285g, 285j, 287a, 289a
prefixes 539
  adjectives 160a, 236b, 240b
  negative prefixes 434, 440
  word formation 156a, 158a, 260, 261, 268
premodification, premodifier 539
prepare 285i
preposition stranding 94m, 100, 257, 539
prepositional phrases 165
  functions of 256
    adjuncts 256
    phrasal-prepositional verbs 256
    postmodifiers and complements 256
    predicative complements 256
    premodifiers 256

prepositional phrases – cont.
    structure of
        complementation by verb 255b
        premodification 255a
        preposition plus complement 250
prepositional verbs 235f
prepositions 164, 250
    and adverbs 253b
    closed class 164
    and conjunctions 253a
    list of common 251, 252
    literal and metaphorical meanings 254
    modification of 164
    preposition stranding 257
    prepositional complements 164, 278d, 475a
    prepositional verbs 164
pre-questions 101
present continuous *see* present progressive
present perfect 351, 539
    in academic English 144d
    definite past time 353
    forms of 225a, 346
    as frame for past time events 354
    in AmE 535
    versus past simple 351a
    simple versus progressive 346, 352
        completed and punctual events 352a
        events in past still continuing 352b
        mental process and sense verbs 352c
    with *for* and *since* 70a, 351b
    textual signals 144d
    time up to now 351a
        with no time adjuncts 351a
        now-relevance 351c
        with time adjuncts 351a
present progressive 340
    with adverbs of indefinite frequency 340d
    versus *be going to* 362
    dramatisation of events 501d
    events in progress at time of speaking 340a
    forms of 338
    for indirectness/politeness 341
    for narrative build-up 360b
    versus present simple 342
    processes of change 340c
    repeated events in temporary contexts 340b
    reporting verbs 492c
    speech act verbs 340e
    verb *be* in 340f
    verbs rarely used in 340e
present simple
    academic English 144b
    conditional clauses 449
    forms of 338
    future time 369
    historic present 360a, 501d
    for news headlines 360c
    versus present progressive 342
    present time references 339
        formal statements 339f
        general truths and facts 339a
        immediate communication 339d
        immediate reactions 339c
        mental process verbs 339e
        plot summaries 339a
        regular and habitual events 339b
        speech act verbs 339f
        works of art/artists 339a
present time
    past tense for 218, 343
    see also present progressive; present simple
presumably 112
presume 134, 285b, 287c
pretend 285b, 285i
pretty 245b
    see also quite
prevent 285f
prevent from 286e
prior to 252
pro- 261
probability 406
probable 406
probably 112, 146c, 248, 406
proclaim 287b, 287c
proforms 539
    see also substitution
progressive aspect 539
    in academic texts 144d
    with *always* 16b
    catenative verbs 216
    examples of 224
    forms of 224, 224a, 224b, 224c
    and *mean* 52a
    and perfect aspect 226
    and politeness 423a
    verb phrases 214a
    see also past progressive; present progressive
prohibit 405b
promise 285b, 285i, 286a, 286b, 286c, 286e, 405a, 422
prompt 287c
pronounce 287b

pronouns 539
  in academic English 147
  archaic forms of (*thou, thee, thy, thyself, thine*) 212
  classes of 197
  functions of 197
  gender-neutral 198d
  premodification of 197
  substitute *one* 209
  whatever, whoever, whichever 208
  see also anticipatory *it*; demonstrative pronouns; empty *it*; existential *there*; indefinite pronouns; interrogative pronouns; personal pronouns; possessive pronouns; reciprocal pronouns; reflexive pronouns; relative pronouns
pronunciation 155
proper names
  and agreement 184
  capitalisation of 184, 506b
  as count nouns 184
  countries 186
  geographical features 185
  languages 186
  nationalities 186
  as plural non-count nouns 184
  regions 186
  as singular non-count nouns 184
  without determiners 184
propose 285i, 286c, 289a
prosody 539
protect from 286e
protest 285b, 499
prove 285b, 285c, 286c
provide with 286e
providing/provided (that) 166, 312, 314d, 448
pseudo-cleft sentences 539
  see also cleft structures
pseudo-intransitive constructions 283a, 475a, 539
pseudo-passive forms 292b, 476, 479, 480, 484, 485, 539
pull 235a
punctuation 506, 539
  bibliographic citations 154b
  brackets 506i
  capital letters 506b
  citations 506g
  and coherence 124
  colons 506e
  commas 506b, 506d
    with adjectives 506d

punctuation: commas – cont.
    with adjuncts 506d
    clause boundaries 506d
    with discourse markers 506d
    with interjections 506d
    in letters 506d
    in lists 506d
    with relative clauses 506d
    in reporting structures 506d
    with tags and responses 506d
    with vocatives 506d
  dashes 506i
  direct speech 490a, 506f
    colons 506f
    question marks 506f
    single/double quotation marks 506f
  exclamation marks 506c
  forward slashes 506i
  full stops 506b
    abbreviated words 506b
    acronyms 506b
    conventions in letters 506b
    with initials for personal names 506b
    sentence boundaries 506b
    sentence fragments 506b
  hyphens 506i
  indirect speech 490b
  and numerals 506j
    commas, for units of thousands/millions 506j
    dates, full stops in 506j
    scientific/technological abbreviations 506j
    times, full stops/colons with 506j
    weights and measures 506j
  punctuation marks 506a
  question marks 506c
  quotations 154b
  semi-colons 506e
  titles and sub-titles 154b
  see also apostrophes
put 235a, 287h
put off 285f

Q

quantifiers 71a, 539
quantity of 182b
query 500b
question 500b
question tags 299, 539
  with added auxiliary 300a
  fixed, in informal speech 98e

question tags – cont.
- intonation of 98b, 436
- main clauses with *am, may, used to, ought to* 300c
- main clauses with indefinite pronouns 300d
- main clauses with *there is/there are* 300e
- with modal verbs 234c
- negation of 300a, 436
- in non-final position 300h
- *ought to* in 398
- polarity 300b, 436
- position of 98d
- with repeated auxiliary 300a
- in reporting structures 98d, 300g, 300h
- in requests 98c, 300f
- with *there is/there are* 300e
- *used to* in 400

questions 424, 539
- alternative 428
- declarative 430
- echo 99, 432
- eliciting information 425c, 425d, 425e
- interpersonal aspects of 433
- interrogative structure 425b
- and intonation 429, 429a, 429b, 429c, 430, 431
- question types 425
- reduced forms 425a
- *wh-*
  - emphatic *wh*-questions with *do*-auxiliary 427a
  - phonetic reduction and ellipsis in 427b
  - *wh*-words (*what, when, where, which, who(m), whose, why, how*) 292d, 427
- *yes-no*
  - ending with *or* … 426
  - phonetic reduction and ellipsis in 426a
  - response tags 426
  - two-step questions and responses 101
- *see also* interrogative clauses

quite 238d, 245b, 248, 467c
- with gradable adjectives and adverbs 66a, 66c, 66i

not quite 66f

with nouns 66c

quite a bit/quite a lot 66g

quite right, for agreement 66h

with verbs 66e

R

raised subjects 146d, 475h, 539

rankshifting 315, 539

rarely 328, 336a, 434, 446, 473c

rate 287b

rather 136d, 245b
- and *better* 67d
- in comparisons 67b
- intensifying function 67a
  - *see also quite*
- modifying a clause 67d
- *or rather* 67f
- *rather than* 67e
- as response token 67g
- *would rather* for expressing preference 67c

re- 261

read 286a, 286b, 286e

real 461

realise 285b, 285c

really 68, 71d, 111, 330, 534a

recall 285b, 285f

recently 351a

recipient of action 539

reciprocal pronouns 203, 539

reciprocal verbs 539

reckon 134, 285b, 287c, 405a

recognise 285b

recommend 159e, 286c, 286f, 289a, 345, 390b

reduced clauses 539

reduplication 539

refer to 286e

reference 539
- anaphoric 125, 126, 539
  - fixed expressions 127
  - pronouns and determiners 127
  - referring expressions 126
- cataphoric 125, 539
  - fixed expressions 127
  - referring expressions 126
  - *this* and *here*, use of 126, 127
- endophoric 125, 126, 127, 128, 539
  - longer expressions 127, 128
  - referring expressions 126
  - *that* for items of temporary/distant interest 128
  - *this* for new or important topic, or entities writer wants to highlight 128
- exophoric 125, 539
- referents 126, 539
- referring expressions 126, 539

reflexive pronouns 539
  for emphasis 202
  meaning 'alone' 202
  for politeness 202
  for same subject and object 202
reformulation 539
refuse 285i, 286a, 422b
register 539
regret 285h
regular verbs 228a, 539
regularly 328
relative clauses 317, 539
  defining and non-defining 204, 317a, 317b, 317c, 317d, 317e, 317f, 317g, 317h, 317i, 506d
  embedded clauses 315, 317a
  intonation of 317i
  non-finite 317j
  punctuation of 317i
  sentential 317a, 317e, 317i
  which-clauses 317a
  see also relative pronouns
relative pronouns 204, 317b, 539
  choice of 317b
  and (non)-repetition of clause elements 317b
  that 317f
  which 317e
  who and *whom* 317c, 317d
  whose 317g
  zero 317b, 317h
relieve of 286e
remain 288c, 288d, 288e
  see also copular verbs
remark 285b, 286c, 497
remarkably 245b
remember 285b, 285c, 285d, 285h, 285i, 285k
remind (of) 286c, 286d, 286e, 286f
repeat 285b, 499
reply 285b, 500b
report 285b, 285f, 286c, 287c
reported speech *see* speech representation
reporting verbs 488, 489
  and adjuncts 500d
  and agentless passive 482b
  ask 489
  say versus tell 489a
  and speech acts 499
  substitute *so* with 134
  tense and aspect in 492
    past progressive 492d
    past simple 492a
    present progressive 492c
    present simple 492b

reporting verbs – cont.
  vocal and emotional characteristics, representing 500c
  see also speech representation
reporting/reported clauses 292g, 488, 491, 491a, 496, 539
reproach 422b
request 286f, 289a
require 287c, 289a, 345, 487
resent 285f
reserve 286a, 286e
respectively 152
respond 500b
response 497
response tokens 539
  adjectives and adverbs as 95a
  clustering of, for closure 95d
  contexts, association with 95a
  as discourse markers 110
  negation of 95c
  pairs of 95d
  phrases and short clauses as 95
  for positive feedback 95a
  as preface to comment on preceding utterance 95a
  premodification of 95b
restrictive relative clauses 539
retort 500c
reveal 499
rhemes 539
rhetorical questions 539
right 69, 461
  as backchannel marker 69
  to check understanding 69
  as discourse marker 69, 90, 106a, 106c, 107, 108a, 108c, 110
  in fixed expressions 69
  meaning 'all the way', 'completely' 69
  meaning 'correct' or 'fair' 69
  meaning 'exactly' or 'just' 69
  rightly, as comment adverb 69
  as synonym for 'okay', 'we agree' 69
  as tag question 98e
right dislocation 97a, 539
risk 285f
roar 500c
rob of 286e
roughly 112, 146c, 467b
roughly speaking 146c
round see around/round
rumble 500c
run 235a
-(r)y 262

S

- *sadly* 111
- *save* 286a, 286e
- *say* 219, 285b, 285c, 285d, 286c, 390b, 482b
  - and *tell* 489a
- *scarcely* 238d, 336a, 434, 446
- *second/secondly* 108b
- *see* 285b, 285c, 285d, 287d, 287e, 287f
- *seeing as/that* 312, 314g
- *seem* 134, 279b, 288a, 288c, 405a, 467c, 475h
  - *see also* copular verbs
- *seem to* 216
- *seemingly* 146c
- *seldom* 328, 336a, 446, 473c
- semantics 539
- *semi-* 261
- semi-modal verbs 227, 234a, 378, 395, 539
  - *dare* 396
  - *need* 397, 397a
  - *ought to* 398, 399
  - *used to* 347d, 400, 402
- *send* 286a, 286b, 286e, 287a, 287h
- *sentence to* 286e
- sentences 269, 539
  - as grammatical units 269
  - sentence types 273
  - simple, compound and complex 271
  - and spoken language 83, 87b
  - and utterances 272, 272a, 272b
  - written language, informal 121c
- sentential relative clauses 204
- *seriously* 111
- *serve* 286a, 286b, 286e
- *serve with* 286e
- *set* 235a, 287h
- *several* 130b, 187, 190a, 191, 207
- *shall/should*
  - in indirect reports 493c
  - in AmE 531a
  - *shall*
    - directives 388
    - offers/advice 388
    - predictions/intentions 388
    - *shall/will/'ll* 144e, 224c, 234b, 389, 413c, 415d, 418d, 420a
  - *should* 452
    - conditional sentences 392
    - and *ought to* 146b, 399
    - suggestions 392
    - surprise 392

***shall/should*: *should* – cont.**

- thanking 392
- what is desirable 392
- what is likely/possible 392
- and *would* 393
- speech acts, and modal expressions 411
- *see also* modal verbs; *will/would*
- *she* 198a
- *-ship* 262
- *shoot back* 500c
- *short answers* 28, 94g, 199, 437
- *should see shall/should*
- *shout* 500c
- *show* 285b, 285c, 285d, 286a, 286b, 286c, 286d, 286e, 287h
- *shriek* 500c
- *sigh* 500c
- *similarly* 152
- *simply* 245b
- *since* 166, 253a, 257, 311, 314g
  - and *for* 70
  - and *from* 70g
  - and *because* 70
  - *ever since* 70d
  - with *-ing* form 70b
  - *long since* 70f
  - referring to reasons 70, 70b
  - referring to time 70
  - and *since then* 70c
  - *since when*, questions with 70e
  - tense-aspect patterns with 70a
    - main clause 70a
    - *since* clause 70a
- singular forms 539
- *-sion/-tion/-xion* 262
- *sir* 117e
- *sit* 285f
- situational ellipsis 92
  - conditional *if* 94k
  - copular verb *be* 94e, 94g
  - declaratives without subject pronoun 94f
  - demonstrative pronouns 94g
  - determiners 94j
  - existential *there* 94h
  - fixed expressions 94l
  - informal writing 121a, 121b, 121d
  - initial elements 94b, 94g
  - interrogatives 94c, 94d
  - mental process verbs 94f
  - modal verb structures 94f
  - prepositions 94m
  - spoken language 83, 91
  - structural ellipsis 94a

situational ellipsis – cont.
  - subject, omission of 276a
  - understood references 94a
  - verb ellipsis in directives 94i
- *slightly* 245b
- *smell* 279b, 287e, 288a, 288c, 350
  - *see also* copular verbs
- *snap* 500c
- *so* 136c, 136h, 314i
  - as adverb 71a
    - as alternative to *just* or *just like* 71a
    - as degree adverb 71a
    - as manner adverb 71a
    - *much, many, little, few,* premodification of 71a
    - size and extent, indication of 71a
    - *so* + adjective/adverb + *that*-complement clause 71a
    - *so* and *such* 71a
    - *so* and *very* 71a
  - in affirmative short replies 437
  - as discourse marker 71d, 106c, 107, 108a, 108b, 108c, 108d
  - as subordinator
    - clauses of purpose 71c
    - clauses of result 71c
  - as substitute 71b, 134
- *so as to* 314h
- *so do I* 134
- *so far* 351a
- *so long as* 312, 314d, 448
- *so that* 314h, 314i
- *so to speak* 109a, 136j
- softening 103a, 539
- *some* 130b, 207, 438
  - and *any* 196b, 196c, 196d
  - as noun-substitute 132a
  - strong form 187, 189a, 190a, 191
  - weak form 187, 189g, 190a, 191, 196b
- *somebody* 117d, 207, 207a, 239b, 293a, 300d, 438
- *someone* 117d, 207, 207a, 239b, 293a, 300d, 438
- *something* 207, 207a, 239b, 438
- *sometimes* 328
- *somewhat* 245b, 467c
- *somewhere* 239b, 438
- *sorry* 111
- *sort of* 55, 103a, 112, 177c
- *sound* 279b, 288a, 288c, 405a, 467c
  - *see also* copular verbs
- *spare* 286a, 286e
- *speaking of which* 106b
- *specially* 35
- speech act verbs 422
  - performative verbs 422a
  - and politeness 422b
    - boosting 423b
    - hedging/downtoning 423, 423b
    - modal expressions + *ask* for softening 423c
    - negation 423b
    - reporting structures, with *hope, think, wonder* 423c
    - tense and aspect 423a
  - and present progressive 340e
  - reporting verbs 422c, 423
- speech acts 408, 539
  - and clause types
    - declarative clauses, as questions 410a
    - imperative clauses, as offers/invitations 410d
    - interrogative clauses, as exclamations 410c
    - modal verbs/interrogative clauses, as directives 410b
    - possible correspondences 410
    - typical correspondences 410
  - commissives 408, 417
    - invitations 419, 419a–c
    - offers 418, 418a–f
    - promises/undertakings 420, 420a
  - constatives 408
  - declarations 408
  - directives 408, 412
    - commands/instructions 413, 413a–e
    - warnings/advice/suggestions 414, 414a–g
  - expressives 408
  - modal expressions 411
  - non-modal expressions 421
    - suggestions 421a–b
  - permissions/prohibitions 415, 415a–f
  - *please* 423e
    - and politeness 423d
    - realisation of 409
    - requests 416, 416a–f
- speech representation 539
  - attributing 498
  - in conversation 501
    - checking, recapping, summarising 501c
    - direct and indirect reports 501a
    - dramatisation and narrative 501d
    - *I says, go, be, like* 501e
    - topic management 501b
  - direct reports 488
  - formal registers, impersonal reports in 502b

speech representation – cont.
- indirect reports 488
  - directives 488
  - polar and alternative questions 488, 495a
  - reporting and reported clauses 488
  - statements 488
  - *wh*-questions and exclamations 488, 495b
- internet discourse 122
- newspaper headlines 502a
- nouns, speech reports introduced by 488, 497
- past simple versus past progressive in 2d
- punctuation 490, 490a, 490b
- quoting 488, 498
- real and hypothetical reports 488
- reporting/reported clauses 488, 491, 491a, 496
- reports of statements 494
- in speech and writing 500
  - adjuncts, and reporting verbs 500d
  - free direct and free indirect speech and thought 500e
  - questions and answers, reports of 500b
  - subject-verb inversion 500a
  - vocal and emotional characteristics, representing 500c
- viewpoint: time and place references 493
- backshift, and modal verbs 493c
- deictic expressions 493a
- personal pronouns 493d
- tense backshift 493b

spelling
- British and American English spelling 511
  - *-ise*/*-ize* variants 511
- *i* before *e* except after *c* (*ie* or *ei*) 510b
- prefixes 507
- short and long vowels 509
  - consonant doubling with 509a
  - final *-e* to indicate long vowel 509b
- sound pairs, one or two words 510a
- suffixes 508
  - changing *y* to *i* 508d
  - consonant doubling 508a
  - dropping final *-e* 508a
  - noun plurals 508c
  - suffix *-ally* 508g
  - verb *-ed* forms 508e
  - verb *-ing* forms 508f
  - verb *-s* forms 508c

split infinitives 337, 539

spoken language 2h, 121
- affective features 104
- backchannel items 83
- clausal blends 87c
- communication units 83
- context, importance of 2g
- corpus data, use of 3c, 3d, 3e, 3g, 3h
- disconnected 'subordinate' clauses 83
- discourse markers 90
- ellipsis 83
- grammar, non-standard 84, 119
  - *ain't* as negative contraction 119b
  - double and multiple negation 119b
  - levels of acceptability 1c, 2a, 85, 119a
  - object personal pronoun as subject 119b
  - past and *-ed* participle verb form patterns 119b
  - subject/verb concord 119b
  - *them* as demonstrative determiner and pronoun 119b
  - *what* as relative pronoun 119b
  - zero plural for nouns of measurement 119b
- incomplete structures 83
- interpersonal communication 91
  - checks of understanding 91
  - deictic expressions 91
  - discourse markers 91
  - indirect language 91
  - intimacy and distance 104
  - polite forms 91
  - situational ellipsis 91
  - vague language 91
- pauses, filled/unfilled 89a
- position of items 88
- real-time communication
  - clause combination 87a
  - repeating and recasting 89b
  - simple phrasal structures 86b
  - unplanned speech 86a
- recasting 89b
- reference incomprehensible to outsiders 83
- repeating 89b
- representation of in writing 120
- structures difficult to label 83
- tone units 83
- turn-taking 83, 87b
- words, uncertain status of 83
- written language, bias towards 82, 84

spot 287e

stammer 500c

stance markers 111, 147a, 274e, 539

stand 285f, 287h, 288e
standard varieties of English 2a, 84
start 285i
state 285b, 286c, 422, 499
state verbs *see* copular verbs
statement 497
stative verbs 481, 539
stay 288d, 288e
stem 539
still 136f
  in front-position 72d
  for lack of movement 72c
  for something continuing in time 72a
  for something true in spite of other things 72b
  and *yet, already* 72a, 81d, 466b
stipulate 289a, 345
stop 285h
strictly speaking 109a, 111
stuff see thing/stuff
stutter 500c
sub- 261
sub-classes 539
subject to 286e
subjects 276a, 539
  clause elements 269, 274c, 275, 276a
  dummy subjects 276b, 405a, 539
  obligatory 276a
  and predicate 276a
  subject complements 279b, 279c
  subject pronouns, form of 276a
  subject-verb concord 276a, 276c
subjunctive forms 345, 539
  conditional clauses 159e, 458
  form of 229
  indirect object with *that*-clause 286c
  negative 435e
  in reported clauses 374
  with *should* 289a
subordination 131, 306, 310, 311, 312
  main and subordinate clauses 270, 290, 295, 296, 296a, 506d
  subordinators 166, 306, 311, 312, 359c, 359d, 454, 456, 539
subsequent to 252
subsequently 136e, 152
substitution 130, 539
  anaphoric/cataphoric 130a
  and ellipsis 131
  for nouns 132
    none, enough for noun phrases 132c
    one and *some/ones* for count nouns 132a
    some for non-count nouns 132a

substitution: for nouns – cont.
    that of/those of in formal contexts 132b
    that/those in formal contexts 132b
  substitute forms 130b
    complement phrases *the same, likewise, thus* 130b
    do 130b, 133, 227, 233a
    indefinite quantifying pronouns 130b
    so 130b, 134
such (anaphoric) 187, 189g, 192
such as 252
such (exclamative) 294
such that 312
suffixes 539
  adjectives 236b
  inflectional 259
  negative 434, 440
  spelling 508a–g
  word formation 155, 156a, 158a, 262, 263, 268
suggest 159e, 285b, 285f, 286c, 289a, 390b, 422, 499
suggestion 497
super- 261
superlatives *see* comparison
suppletion 539
suppose 134, 285b, 287c, 405a, 437
  see also mental process verbs
supposed to 52d, 404f
supposing that 312, 314d
surely 112, 146c
surprisingly 111
suspect 285b
suspect of 286e
swear 285b
swearing 114, 539
  taboo expressions 114a, 114b
  taboo intensifiers 114c
syntax 1a, 539

T

taboo language *see* swearing
tags 290
  copy tags 302, 533, 539
  directive tags 299, 301
  exclamation tags 299, 302
  in informal writing 121c
  in AmE 533
  statement tags 299
  see also question tags
tails 2h, 539
  clause structure 97a, 97c

tails – cont.
  informal writing 121c
  AmE 533
  reflexive pronouns as 202
  types of 97b
take 235a, 287c, 287h
  and *bring* 29a
talking about 106b
taste 279b, 288a, 288c, 350
  see also copular verbs
teach 286a, 286b, 286c, 286d, 286e, 286f
tele- 261
tell 285c, 285d, 286a, 286b, 286c, 286d, 286e, 286f, 360e
  and *say* 489a
tell about 286e
tend 405a
tend to 216, 405a
tense 539
terribly 245b
text 539
textual ellipsis 94a, 129
than
  and *as* 19a
  in comparisons 466a, 471a, 471g
  rather than 67e
thank for 286e
thankfully 111
thanks to 252
that see this/that/these/those
that is 136j
that is to say 109b, 136j
that (relative pronoun) 204
that said 136f
the 187, 189a, 190b, 191, 192, 196a
the first time 351a
their/theirs 190c, 201a, 201b, 201c
  see also possessive pronouns
them 198a
theme 539
themselves 202
then 73, 136c, 136e, 136g, 136h, 136i, 336c
then again 136d
there
  existential 94h, 148b, 210, 482d, 539
  there again 108b
  see also here/there
there is/there are 45a, 300e
there you go 106c
therefore 136c, 136h, 152, 335a
these see this/that/these/those
they 60b, 198a
thing/stuff
  stuff 74b
  thing 74a
think 134, 285b, 285c, 285d, 287a, 287b, 287c, 343, 350, 390b, 405a, 437, 482b
  see also mental process verbs
this see this/that/these/those
*this morning/week/*etc. 351a
this/that/these/those 45, 187, 189b, 190a, 192
  contrasts of number 196f
  conveying distance 196f
  and deixis 93a, 93b
  demonstrative adjectives 187, 190a, 192
  demonstrative pronouns 94g, 119b, 206
  that 166, 189b, 302, 311
  these 189f
  this, for highlighting 196f
  this and *that* for identification 196f
  this and *that* referring to discourse segments 196g
  those 189f
  use in narratives 196f
those see this/that/these/those
though see although/though
threaten 499
through 235b, 253b
throughout see during
throw 286a, 286b, 286e
thus 136c, 136h, 152, 473c
till 311
time reference 221, 222, 526, 526a
tip 287c
titles 506b
to 164, 235b, 235f
to begin with/to start with 136i
to cap it all 136b
to conclude 136h
to crown it all 136b
to date 351a
to put it another way 109b, 136j
to put it bluntly/mildly 109a
to sum up 108b, 136h
to summarise 136h
to tell you the truth 111
today 351a
together 235b
tone units 539
too see also/as well (as)/too
top see above
topic 539
totally 238d, 245b
towards 154a
trans- 261
transitive complementation 539
transitive verbs 539
treat to 286e

true enough 95
try 285h, 285i
turn 235a, 279b, 287a
turn out 288a
turn-taking 3f, 272a, 272b, 317a
two, three 190a
two-step questions and responses 101
-type 262
typically 146c

U

ultra- 261
un- 158b, 160a, 261, 434, 440
uncountable nouns 539
undeniably 146e
under- 158b, 261
under no circumstances 336a
understand 285b, 287c, 350, 360e
understandably 111
under/underneath 25a, 253b
    see also below
undoubtedly 111
unfortunately 111
unless 311, 313, 314d, 374, 448
unquestionably 146e
until 166, 253a, 311, 359a, 359c, 374
up 235b, 253b
up- 261
up to/till/until now 252, 351a
urge 286f
us 198a
used to 347d
    and *be used to* 400
    emphatic 400
    interrogative 400
    negative 400
    in tags 400
    and *would*, for habitual actions and events in the past 402
    see also semi-modal verbs
usually 146c, 328
utterances 92, 272, 272a, 272b, 539
utterly 238d, 245b

V

vague language 92, 103a, 539
    adverbs and prepositions 103b
    approximately 103b
    clusters of 103b
    exaggeration 103b

vague language – cont.
    odd 103b
    or between numerals 103b
    in the region of 103b
    so/or thereabouts/or something 103b
    suffix *-ish* 103b
varieties of English 2a, 84
    see also North American English
verb complementation 277
    complementation patterns 159a, 274c
    complex transitive 284
        direct object + *-ed* clause 287g
        direct object + infinitive clause without *to* 287d
        direct object + *-ing* clause 287e
        direct object + object complement (adjective) 287a
        direct object + object complement (noun) 287b
        direct object + prepositional complement of time or place (locative) 287h
        direct object + *to*-infinitive clause 287c
        verbs of perception with *-ing* or infinitive without *to* 287f
    consider, deem, feel, with pronoun *it* 289b
    copular 161b, 227, 239a, 247, 279b, 284
        adjective phrase complements 288b
        adverb phrase complements 288d
        copular verbs 282c, 288a
        noun phrase complements 288c
        prepositional phrase complements 288d
    ditransitive 284, 286
        direct object + prepositional phrase (oblique complement) 286e
        direct object + *to*-infinitive clause 286f
        indirect + direct object construction 286a
        indirect object + *that*-clause as direct object 286c
        indirect object + *wh*-clause as direct object 286d
        indirect objects, and passive voice 286b
    intransitive 282a, 283
        pseudo-intransitive constructions 283a
        reciprocal verbs 283b
        reflexive construction 283b
    monotransitive 284
        active/passive voice 285a

verb complementation: monotransitive – cont.
    - *hate, like, love, prefer* + *-ing* or *to*-infinitive 285g
    - infinitive clause without new subject 285i
    - *-ing* clause with new subject 285k
    - non-finite clause with or without new subject 285e
    - *that*-clause as direct object 285b
    - *to*-infinitive clause with new subject 285j
    - verb + direct object 284, 285
    - verbs normally only followed by *-ing* 285f
    - verbs with *-ing* or *to*-infinitive clauses and changes of meaning 285h
    - *wh*-clause as direct object 285c
    - *wh*-clause with infinitive as direct object 285d
  - no complementation 277b
  - and prepositional verbs 289c
  - with *should* and subjunctive mood 289a
  - single complementation 277c
  - verbs used transitively or intransitively 282d
- verb phrase structure
  - auxiliary *do* with lexical verbs 159a
  - catenative verb phrases 216
  - complex verb phrases 214
    - elements of 214a
    - person and number 214c
    - tense, indication of 214d
  - lexical/auxiliary/modal verbs, order of 159a
  - mood 159e
  - simple verb phrases 213
  - tensed and non-tensed verb phrases
    - base form, tensed and non-tensed 215a
    - non-tensed verb forms 159b, 215a, 215b, 215c
    - tensed, *-s* form and past form 215a
  - verb as head 159a
  - verb phrase, as beginning of predicate 159a
  - voice 159d, 217
- verb phrase tense-aspect
  - aspect, and meaning 159c, 217, 223
  - perfect auxiliary *have* before progressive auxiliary *be* 217
  - tense, present and past forms 217, 218
  - tense-aspect combinations 159c, 217
  - time reference 221, 222
- verbs 158, 539
  - characteristics of 158c
  - formation of 158a
  - *see also* auxiliary verbs; catenative verbs; copular verbs; irregular verbs; lexical verbs; mental process verbs; modal verbs; multi-word verbs
- *very* 245b, 467b, 467c
- *vice-* 261
- vocatives 539
  - attracting attention 116
  - discourse functions of 118
    - joking, banter 118f
    - mitigating threats to dignity 118d
    - ritual contexts 118c
    - social contexts 118c
    - softening 118d
    - summons 118a
    - topic management 118e
    - turn management 118b
  - general plural vocatives 117c
  - honorifics 117e
  - impersonal 117d
  - names and titles 117a
  - positions of 118g
  - in spoken English 116
  - terms of address, relative formality of 116
  - terms of kinship and endearment 117b
- voice 2h, 539
  - *see also* active voice; passive voice
- *vote* 287b

W

- *wait for* 40
- *want* 75a–f, 285h, 285i, 285j, 287a, 287g, 343, 350, 405b, 487
- *-ward(s)* 162, 262
- *warn (of)* 285b, 286c, 286d, 286e, 499
- *watch* 287d, 287e, 287f
- *we* 93a, 198a, 198g
- *well* 76a, 76b, 106c, 107, 108a, 108d, 109a, 136j, 240b, 534b
- *well/better/best* 464
- *what a pity!* 95
- *what about* 3f, 5d
- *what* (exclamative) 187, 189g, 204, 294, 303
- *what* (interrogative) 99, 187, 205
- *whatever* 208, 314f, 455
  - as adverb 77d
  - for agreement, vague or unwilling 77f
  - as determiner 77a

whatever – cont.
  meaning 'regardless of' 77c
  as pronoun 77b
  for vagueness 77e
what's more 108b, 136b, 335a
whatsoever 447a
wh-cleft structures 139, 539
  see also cleft structures
when 166, 270, 311, 313, 359a, 359b, 359c, 359d, 374
whenever 311, 313, 455
where 311, 314c
whereas 166, 311, 314e
wherever 311, 314c, 314f
whether see *if*, and *whether*
which (interrogative) 187, 189a, 190a, 191, 205, 292d, 311
which (relative clauses) 204, 317a, 317e
whichever 455
while 166, 311, 313, 359a, 359b
  and *as* 78a
  and *during* 78a
  contrasting two ideas 78a
  with ellipted subject 78a
  and *nevertheless* 314f
  as noun 78b
  for simultaneous time relationship 78a
  subordinating conjunction 78a
whilst 78a, 311, 314e
whisper 500c
who 3e, 204, 205, 311, 317c, 317d
whoever 311, 314f, 455
whole 12a
wholly 238d
whom 3e, 204, 205, 311, 317c, 317d
whose 187, 189a, 190a, 204, 205, 311
will/would
  in conditional clauses 452
  contracted forms 234d
  will 387
    confident predictions 146a
    degrees of willingness 387
    directives 387
    disapproval 387
    general truths 344
    intentions/offers 387
    politeness 344
    predictions 387
    requests/invitations 387
    responding 387
    and *would* 391
  would 390
    with *appear* and *seem* 146b
    conditional sentences 390b

will/would: would – cont.
    hedging 146b, 390b
    past time 390a
    requests 390b
  see also conditional clauses; future time; modal verbs; *shall/should*
-wise 162, 262
wish 285i, 286a, 437
with 79, 164, 235b, 235f, 314g
within 253b
wonder 285c, 285d, 343, 500b
word classes 1g, 155, 539
word clusters 3g, 539
  distribution of 503
  functions of 505
    in academic English 505g
    interpersonal functions 505c
    linking functions 505e
    other prepositional relations 505b
    time and place relations 505a
    turn-taking 505f
    vague language 505d
  types of 504
    with conjunction 504e
    noun phrase + *of* 504d
    preposition + article 504a
    prepositional expressions 504e
    subject + verb 504a
    subject + verb with complement items 504c
    verb infinitives 504e
word formation 539
  abbreviation 267a
  back-formation 267b
  compounds 260, 265, 268
    adjectives 265c
    nouns 265b
    reduplicative 265a
    structure of 265a
    verbs 265d
  conversion 260, 264, 268
  hyphenation 266
  inflection 259
  invented words 267c
  loan words 267c
  prefixation 260, 261, 268
  product names 267c
  productivity 268
  from proper names 267c
  suffixation 260, 268
word order, and focus 539
  active/passive choice 475b
  adjectivalisation 475j
  anticipatory *it* 475f

word order, and focus – cont.
  cleft sentences 475c
  existential *there* 475g
  fronting 472, 473a–d
  headers and tails 472, 474
  indirect object versus prepositional complement 475a
  marked/unmarked order 472
  nominalisation 475j
  pseudo-intransitive constructions 475i
  raising 475h
  theme and rheme 472
  the thing, one thing, something 475e
  wh-cleft sentences 475d
  word order choices 472
  see also adjuncts, position of; fronting
word structure 258a
  affixes 258a
  allomorphs 258a
  base 258b
  compounds 258a
  lexemes 258b
  morphemes 258a
  stem 258b
work 235a
worth 80a
worthwhile 80b
would see *will/would*
would rather 67c, 403f
would sooner 403g
write 285b, 286c
written language
  informal 121a–d
  and spoken language 3c, 3d, 3e, 3g, 3h, 82, 84

Y

-y 160a, 236b, 262, 263
yeah 98e, 106c, 108c
yell 500c
yes-no questions see questions
yet 3d, 136f
  and *already* 13, 72a, 81d
  as concessive conjunct 81b
  as intensifier 81c
  and *still* 72a, 81d, 466b
  as time adverb 81a
you 3c, 60b, 198a
you know 3c, 52b, 106a, 106b, 109b
you say 501c
you see 106b, 109b
yourself 202
your/yours 190c, 201a, 201b, 201c
  see also possessive pronouns

Z

zero determiner 187, 189g, 192

LONGMAN

Student Grammar of SPOKEN and WRITTEN ENGLISH

Susan Conrad
Douglas Biber
Geoffrey Leech

workbook

Longman

LONGMAN

Student Grammar of SPOKEN and WRITTEN ENGLISH

Workbook

Susan Conrad
Douglas Biber
Geoffrey Leech

Longman

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate
Harlow
Essex CM20 2JE
England
and Associated Companies throughout the World.

Visit our website: http://www.longman.com/dictionaries

© Pearson Education Limited 2002

The rights of Susan Conrad, Douglas Biber, and Geoffrey Leech to be identified as authors of this work have been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs, and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

First published 2002
Third Impression 2003

Words that the editors have reason to believe constitute trademarks have been described as such. However, neither the presence nor the absence of such a description should be regarded as affecting the legal status of any trademark.

ISBN 0 582 539420

Library of Congress Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress.

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

Designed by Trait Design, Tiptree, Essex.
Set in MetaPlus by Trait Design, Tiptree, Essex.
Printed in Great Britain by Ashford Colour Press Ltd, Gosport, Hampshire.

Contents

Introduction 4

1 A discourse perspective on grammar 7
2 Words and word classes 11
3 Introduction to phrases and clauses 17
4 Nouns, pronouns, and the simple noun phrase 21
5 Verbs 29
6 Variation in the verb phrase: tense, aspect, voice, and modal use 39
7 Adjectives and adverbs 48
8 Exploring the grammar of the clause 57
9 Complex noun phrases 64
10 Verb and adjective complement clauses 73
11 Adverbials 83
12 Word order choices 92
13 The grammar of conversation 99

Answers 109

Introduction

To the student

We designed this *Workbook* to give you practice in analyzing English grammar and understanding how it works in real communication. The *Workbook* differs from other grammar textbooks known to us in its exclusive focus on how English is actually used. All examples in the exercises are taken from naturally occurring English texts and conversations, rather than being invented, idealized language.

Advantages of this *Workbook*

The focus on real language has three advantages.

- First, authentic instances of how people really use the language are more interesting than made-up sentences. They can even be fun! It is often entertaining to see what people actually say and write.
- Second, analyzing authentic examples will give you the tools you need as English language students and professionals. Authentic pieces of English can be messy, and less 'tidy' than made-up sentences. But a book with made-up sentences would not have prepared you to understand the use of grammar in natural settings. For example, if you become an English teacher, your students will ask you to explain the grammar of real language use: sentences in their essays, or snatches they heard on the radio or read in a newspaper. Also, during the rest of your time as a student, it is likely that you will be surrounded by authentic English: in conversations, lectures, textbooks, newspapers, and so on. This *Workbook* will give you the practice and tools needed to analyze the grammatical structure of the language around you.
- Third, in our focus on authentic language we explicitly contrast the grammar of spoken and written English. You will quickly discover that the typical grammatical constructions of conversation are very different from those found in academic writing. You will probably be especially surprised by the grammar of conversation: rather than consisting of simple one-clause sentences (as you might imagine from some textbooks), you will find that conversation regularly makes use of complex-seeming structures with many kinds of embedding, as well as a generous sprinkling of ultra-simple structures which have no verb and contain only one or two words. In contrast, written texts build up their complexity with longer phrases, with much embedding of one phrase in another. By examining and contrasting the grammar of these different kinds of language, you will gain the expertise and insight needed to apply your knowledge in real communication.

Using the *Workbook*

The *Workbook* is designed to be used together with the *Longman Student Grammar of Spoken and Written English (SGSWE)*. There are thirteen chapters in *SGSWE*, and each chapter is divided into manageable sections called 'grammar bites'. We have used this same organization in the *Workbook*, providing exercises for each of the grammar bites in *SGSWE*. In addition, we provide 'synthesis' exercises at the end of each chapter, to help you integrate a range of related topics and skills covered in the different grammar bites. The synthesis tasks often involve more extended pieces of written or spoken language.

In addition, many chapters end with a set of sentences for additional practice, or diagramming if your study includes the use of tree diagrams. Diagramming sentences is a useful exercise because it enables you to make sure your grasp of grammatical structure is complete and explicit. The chapters contain many examples which could be used for diagramming practice, but the set of sentences at the end of each chapter has been specifically chosen for that purpose. If you do not use tree diagrams, the sentences can be used for further practice with any of the analyses covered up to that point in the *Workbook*.

Most exercises provide space for you to write your answers right in the Workbook. However, diagrams or lengthy explanations should be written on separate paper where you will have room to write clearly.

The *Workbook* (as well as *SGSWE*) can be used either as a coursebook for classroom use, or for self-study. To help with both these uses, we have provided a full set of answers at the end of the book. (There are a few exercises, though, where answers are not provided because the tasks are more exploratory, encouraging you to use your own abilities to discover or produce your own examples of the language.) As a general rule, each exercise also begins with an example or short section where answers are provided to get you started on the task. Of course, it is not possible to learn grammatical constructions just by memorizing correct answers. Instead, the ability to do grammatical analysis comes with extensive practice and experiment. But the answers at the end of the book will enable you to get immediate feedback, if you need it, on how well you are doing.

The *Longman Grammar of Spoken and Written English*

Both *SGSWE* and this *Workbook* are based on a simplification of the *Longman Grammar of Spoken and Written English* (Longman, 1999), a large and detailed description of the grammar of English, focusing on the way the language is used differently in conversation and in three contrasting types of written language: fiction writing, newspaper writing, and academic prose. This bigger grammar was the result of a seven-year research program in which these differing varieties of English were studied from a grammatical point of view, looking at frequencies of different forms and constructions, as well as their meanings and discourse functions. The results of this research are also seen throughout this *Workbook*, where we use examples from the four varieties. Where necessary, we have simplified these examples slightly by omitting parts of the original that detract from the illustration of the grammar point under focus. Nevertheless, all the examples and text extracts are from authentic sources, and most are exactly as they were written or spoken.

Acknowledgements

We wish to thank Paulo Quaglio, Viviana Cortes, and the students of English 528 in Spring and Summer 2002 at Northern Arizona University, who made many suggestions for improvement in a previous draft, from which the final *Workbook* has benefited greatly.

Abbreviations and conventions used in the *Workbook*

SGSWE	*Longman Student Grammar of Spoken and Written English*

Register identification for text examples

ACAD	academic prose
CONV	conversation
FICT	fiction writing
NEWS	newspaper writing
OTWR	other written language

Transcription conventions

—	a pause in conversation
<...>	omitted words

Grammatical abbreviations

A	adverbial
Adj	adjective
Adv	adverb
DO	direct object
IO	indirect object
LVP	long verb phrase
N	noun
NP	noun phrase
O	object
OP	object predicative
P	predicative
S	subject
SP	subject predicative
V	verb
VP	verb phrase

1 A discourse perspective on grammar

Exercise 1: Quiz yourself

PART A

- Identify each of the following statements as either true or false.
- If a statement is false, revise it so that it is true.

The first one is done as an example.

1 The *SGSWE* describes the grammatical preferences of speakers and writers, so it includes information about the frequency of grammatical choices.
True

2 A descriptive grammar presents rules about correct and incorrect stylistic choices.

3 A prescriptive grammar describes the grammatical patterns that speakers and writers follow when they use the language, regardless of whether the patterns conform to standard English that is presented in usage handbooks.

4 A corpus is a collection of written texts that is on a computer.

5 One of the advantages of a corpus-based grammar, such as *SGSWE*, is that it can describe how speakers and writers vary their grammatical choices for different communicative situations.

6 Another advantage of a corpus-based grammar is that it can reveal associations between grammatical structures and vocabulary (i.e. lexico-grammatical patterns).

7 A register is a variety of language that is associated with speakers who share certain characteristics, such as gender, socio-economic class, or geographic region.

8 A dialect is a variety of language that is associated with certain characteristics of a communicative setting, such as the purpose of the communication, the amount of time for planning, and the mode (e.g. spoken v. written).

9 Different registers often have different frequencies for the use of certain grammatical structures.

10 'Standard English' is one unvarying form of English that is always easy to identify.

11 There is a group of experts that officially decides whether or not a grammatical form is 'standard English'.

PART B

- Give an example for each of the following (try to think of your own original examples, but if you cannot, you can find examples in Chapter 1 of *SGSWE*):

  1 a very specific sub-register and a more general register

  2 a geographic dialect

  3 a social dialect

  4 a prescriptive rule for English

Exercise 2: Standard and non-standard English

Standard English is not a single, uniform variety, and it is not always obvious whether a form should be considered standard or not. Standard English can be defined descriptively as follows: in writing, standard forms are used generally across published sources; in speech, standard forms are shared widely across dialects. Thus, any form that is restricted to a single dialect would be considered non-standard. In contrast, many forms are used widely in conversation but are inappropriate in formal written texts; we would call these 'standard' spoken forms.

- Consider the underlined features in the following excerpts of conversation. For each feature, decide which category or combination of categories best describes it:
  (a) non-standard English
  (b) a conversational form that is not likely to be used in expository prose
  (c) a transcription that reflects pronunciation in a casual setting
  (d) an incomplete or ill-formed ending for an utterance that reflects the time constraints and interactive nature of conversation.

The first item is done as an example.

SAMPLE 1

A: My brother is never gonna move out of my parent's house.
gonna = (c) transcription that reflects pronunciation of 'going to' that is typical in casual settings
B: How old is he?
A: Twenty-five.
B: Oh, if you're not moved out by twenty-five, you know, I don't know.
A: He would die if he moved out of my father's house so, he would.
B: See I would die if I lived at my house.
A: So would I.
C: Me too. (CONV)

SAMPLE 2

[Talking about the dog that belongs to speaker A:]

A: Now when did they catch you without a license tag on him? Was he just walking around?
B: I was down at the beach and
A: Oh.
B: There was a couple of policemen that were down there because there was a sewage spill and they just kinda wanted to, they were standing there bored.

C: Is that their job? I thought it was the dog catcher that give you that.
B: Well I don't know. (CONV)

Exercise 3: Working with frequency information

This exercise will help you learn how to interpret the figures in *SGSWE*. Figure 1.1 presents information about the frequency of the coordinators *or*, *but*, and *and* across four registers. You will learn more about coordinators in Chapter 2. Right now, all you need to know is that coordinators join two grammatical structures. For example:

or joining two phrases:
It didn't have onion, garlic, or other strong garden spices. (NEWS)

and joining two phrases:
This capability allows Dell to keep parts costs and inventories low. (ACAD)

but joining two clauses:
I think he will have salad but he doesn't like tomatoes. (CONV)

PART A

- Use Figure 1.1 to answer the following questions:

1 What are the four registers included in the figure? (Do not write the abbreviations; write out the full names.)

2 Which two registers have the highest frequency of all three coordinators combined? Which has the lowest frequency?

Figure 1.1

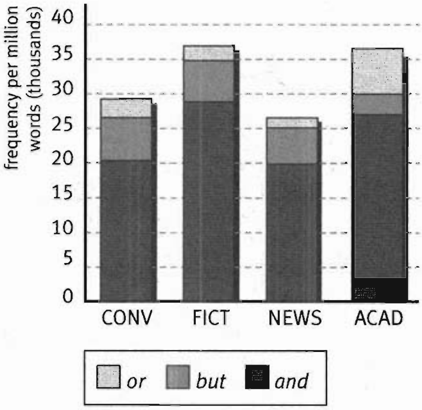

3 Which coordinator is the most common for all the registers? Which two registers have the highest frequency of this coordinator?

4 Which two registers have the highest frequency of *but*?

5 Which register has the highest frequency of *or*?

PART B

Now connect this frequency information to the actual use of the common coordinators in texts. Look at the samples of conversation and academic prose below and answer the questions:

- What is the function of *but* in these samples of conversation? Why is it useful for this register?
- What is the function of *or* in the samples of academic prose? Why is it useful for this register?

You do not need to give technical explanations in your answers. Use everyday language to describe the meanings and uses of these coordinators. The instances of each coordinator are numbered so that you can refer to them easily.
Hint: Consider whether the register uses the coordinator just to add one idea to another, or to show contrasts, or to cover alternatives. Think about why the register needs to use the coordinator more often than other registers.

CONVERSATION EXAMPLES

A: So do you guys feel like – do you feel like she is an acquaintance that you feel inclined to keep in touch with or do you feel like this is my mother.
B: Well I feel that way *but*[1] I don't think Willy and Sarah really do.
A: *But*[2] you feel like she's your mother.
B: Oh yeah.

A: Then we change trails and we go onto a primitive trail kind of <...> and it's steep at times, and there's poison oak along the way, *but*[3] it's, you know, you can walk around in it, you don't have to worry about it <...>

A: Our dog gets cranky if he doesn't get his sleep and he's too big to be cranky.
B: Oh great.
A: *But*[4] he's new so don't worry.

A: And today you should have packed one* when I gave it to you, no? <*one = a device to treat asthma>
B: Yeah *but*[5] I don't remember what I packed it in.
A: *But*[6] I mean you did pack it somewhere?
B: Yeah.

ACADEMIC PROSE EXAMPLES

In a text we can study style in more detail, and with more systematic attention to what words *or*[1] structures are chosen in preference to others.

These areas may have either high *or*[2] low sulphur content.

Plants of several natural orders were grown in surroundings free from ammonia *or*[3] any other nitrogen compound.

Alternatively, the exhaust heat may be used to produce hot water *or*[4] steam for district *or*[5] factory heating, hot gas *or*[6] steam for some chemical process, hot gas for distillation plants, *or*[7] steam for operating an absorption refrigerator in water chilling *or*[8] air-conditioning plant.

2 Words and word classes

Grammar Bite A

Introduction to words

Exercise 1: Words in texts

Read the following excerpts from conversation and news.

- How many word tokens are there in each excerpt? (Count the orthographic words. Count contractions as one word.)
- How many word types are there in each?

To get you started: the first word type you meet in **1** (*don't*) is repeated four times, so there are four tokens of the word type *don't.*

1 Don't let me do that okay? Don't let me marry Justin okay? Do not let me marry him. I don't care what I say, just don't let me marry him. (CONV)

2 The great metalworking centres of the time were in Mesopotamia, Iran, and Egypt. The best works of Jazira have an edge on the others. The inlay depicts intricate little scenes <...> (NEWS)

Exercise 2: A taste of morphology

Each of the words below contains two or more morphemes: a stem and at least one prefix or suffix.

- Write each word, putting a hyphen between its morphemes (e.g. *dis-agree-d*) and underlining the stem (e.g. *dis-agree-d*).
- Distinguish between derivational and inflectional affixes: circle derivational affixes and mark inflectional affixes with a wavy line underneath.

disagreed
dis-*agree-d*

overcarefulness

activity

reconsideration

exchanging

strengthens

unemployment

healthier

disrespectful

reviewed

independent

unfortunately

Grammar Bite B

Lexical word classes

Exercise 3: Different forms of the same lexeme

- In the list below, group word forms together if they belong to the same lexeme (explained in *SGSWE* 2.2.1). Identify the base form of each lexeme, and write it in capitals at the beginning of its group (e.g. LOOK, *looked, looking, looks*). Hint: Try to find six lexemes, each containing two or more word forms.
- Which word forms are ambiguous, because they belong to two different lexemes? (For example, *leaves* belongs both to LEAF, a noun, and LEAVE, a verb.)
- What word class does each lexeme belong to? (For example, noun, verb, adjective or adverb; see *SGSWE* 2.3.)

life
live
lives
lively
build
lived
soonest
builds
building
sooner
liveliest
livelier
soon
buildings
built
living

Exercise 4: Words belonging to lexical word classes

- In the passages below, identify each lexical word as a noun, lexical verb, adjective, or adverb.
- Compare the frequency of each lexical word class in the passages to the general patterns in conversation and academic prose (see Figure 2.1 in *SGSWE* 2.3.5).

To get you started, all lexical words are underlined in the first two extracts.

1 A: Um can you get me a screw driver?

B: Where?

A: Uh well just bring my tool box.

B: Oh okay. Wow. Be careful. We're gonna have to take off the light fixture—just take a screw driver and take those off. Do circuits run back there?

A: Yep.

B: Okay. Move this. You want me to take off this? Ouch!

A: That should—you okay?

B: Yeah. I guess I should put on shoes. (CONV)

2 We take it as a challenge to integrate in a natural way the newest discoveries of plate tectonics, marine geology, geochemistry, geophysics, and lunar and Martian geology into the traditional discussions of such topics as geomorphology, sedimentation, petrology, volcanism, and structural geology. We have not introduced the very new at the expense of eliminating the essential material, both traditional and modern, that a good course in geology should cover. (ACAD)

3 The trail opens into an orchard. The trees stand in the shadows, and the horse's hooves crunch in the cool mud. Off to your left, the sun is a yellow sliver over a distant line, and you watch, rocking up there on your broad-backed horse, as daylight creeps across the brown flower stems. A field of mist to your right reminds you of a dream you had. The wind quickens. (NEWS)

Exercise 5: Words that belong to multiple lexical word classes

Many orthographic words in English can function in different word classes, depending on the context.

- Identify the lexical word class of the underlined words below.

1a I was flat on my back. (CONV)
back = noun
1b I already told him to back off. (CONV)
back = verb
2a It's pretty hard to do that. (NEWS)

2b I felt like I was pretty. (FICT)

3a Actually, it's fun to horse around with danger. (FICT)

3b He is quite handy on a horse. (NEWS)

4a His ability to abstract and formulate higher-level logical categories of thought will also be compromised. (ACAD)

4b The abstract usually includes the major objectives of the proposal. (ACAD)

4c At the end of the journey is an abstract sculpture of the universe. (NEWS)

5a I go fast because I want to get back quick. (FICT)

5b By early September it seemed that the fast might go on indefinitely. (ACAD)

5c I'm normally a fast learner. (NEWS)

Exercise 6: Words ending in *-ing*

Words ending in *-ing* can function as either a noun, a lexical verb, or an adjective (see *SGSWE* 2.3.6).

- Mark each of the underlined *-ing* words as a noun, a lexical verb, or an adjective.
- Briefly state how you made your decision.

1a The price was coming down all the time. (NEWS)
coming is a lexical verb; it is the main verb of the whole clause
1b The coming weekend is relatively quiet. (NEWS)
coming is an adjective; it precedes and modifies the noun weekend, and the meaning is 'the weekend which is coming'
2a the running of the business (FICT)
2b the sound of running feet behind me (FICT)
3a 'I'm not a drinking man' (FICT)
3b a small drinking cup (NEWS)
4a another offering of sausage and mash (FICT)
4b They began by offering him bad bargain prices (FICT)
5a Of course, it all seemed very exciting (NEWS)
5b get it home without exciting any remarks (FICT)

Grammar Bite C

Function word classes

Exercise 7: Putting function words in word classes

In the following extracts, the function words are underlined

- Classify each function word as: determiner, pronoun, auxiliary verb, preposition, negator, coordinator, subordinator, adverbial particle, or other special class.

1 A: You know who I see around* a lot*, is it your godbrother, with the cap?
you = pronoun; who = other; I = pronoun; it = pronoun; your = determiner; with = preposition; the = determiner
B: *Yeah**, he's* living around here.
A: Ever since I saw him at the cafe I have seen him around so much.
B: Did he say *hi* to you?
A: *No*, 'cause I don't think he recognizes me. (CONV)

*Note: *Around* is both an adverb and a preposition in this passage. *A lot* is an adverb, spelled as two orthographic words. Inserts are in italics. Contractions combine two different function words.

2 Any reasonably well-known professional scientist will receive from time to time letters written by well-meaning people who indicate, usually in guarded terms, that they have in their possession the solution to the riddle of the universe <...> (ACAD)

Exercise 8: Distinguish function words from other words

- In the following extracts from fiction writing, underline all function words.

The first four function words in **1** are underlined to get you started.

1 How can I tell her? She will think she's losing me forever. But she isn't, and surely if I tell her, then after a while she will see that it is all right* and forgive me. (FICT)

2 For Jan was still suffering from the romantic illusion – the cause of so much misery and so much poetry – that every man has only one* real love in his life. At an unusually late age, he had lost his heart for the first* time <...>. (FICT)

*Note: Treat *all right* as a single adverb. Do not count numerals like *one* and *first* as function words.

Exercise 9: Recognize different kinds of verbs

- Identify all verbs in the following extracts as: primary auxiliary verbs, primary lexical verbs, modal auxiliary verbs, or lexical verbs.

1 It was snowing down here today. (CONV)
was = primary auxiliary verb; snowing = lexical verb

2 So we can just tell everybody. (CONV)

3 Do you think they will have any sheep dog trials today? (CONV)

4 I guess somebody must have already bought the socks and tennis balls. (CONV)

5 A: You should have gone up and introduced yourself and asked her 'Young lady what are your intentions?'
B: That would have been really rude – David would have rightfully killed me for that one. (CONV)

Synthesis exercises

Exercise 10: The same word in different word classes

Each of the orthographic words below can belong to different word classes. (In fact, each of these words can be used in at least three word classes.)

- Find sentences for each word, illustrating how it is used in different word classes. (Use any English language materials available to you. If no materials are available, create your own examples.)

long like that after

Exercise 11: Analyzing the word class of unknown words

In academic writing, we often encounter words that we don't know. However, by using the clues available from morphology and grammatical context, we can usually figure out the word class of these words. The following passage contains several nonsense words, which are underlined.

- Identify the word class of each made-up word.
- Briefly state what evidence you used to determine the word class.

Other reports have remanstroted an even chranger positive bitegration with plasma charestarob, which is the main cholesterol-carrying wisotrotein. The grangest test of the hypothesis that increased unintandal cholesterol is redectative is that hyperextentment lawerity should divarently reduce the incidence of trischaemic heart disease.

Exercise 12: Figuring out the spelling rules for verbs

Different forms of the same lexeme generally have different spellings, because inflectional endings are added:

look look-ed look-ing look-s

But one of the annoying things about English is that the *stem* of a lexeme can also change its spelling, depending on the inflectional ending that follows it. In this activity, we focus on regular verbs. Notice that while the verb stem *look* is spelled the same in all four word forms, *provide* 'adjusts' its spelling to different endings:

provide provid-ed provid-ing provide-s

- Analyse the following lists of verb forms to figure out the rules for 'adjusting' the spelling depending on the inflectional suffix.
- Write out four rules: (1) a rule for dropping silent *-e*, (2) a rule for doubling the consonant, (3) a rule for adding *-e* before *-s*, and (4) a rule for changing *-y* to *-ie* or *-i*, or for changing *-ie* to *-y*.

Notes: Stem-final *-y* can function as a vowel (as in *cry*) or as a consonant (as in *play*). The symbol ' in the list below means that the following syllable is stressed. This can make a difference.

call	called	calling	calls
ask	asked	asking	asks
row	rowed	rowing	rows
use	used	using	uses
like	liked	liking	likes
move	moved	moving	moves
hope	hoped	hoping	hopes
need	needed	needing	needs
stop	stopped	stopping	stops
pad	padded	padding	pads
'open	'opened	'opening	'opens
'visit	'visited	'visiting	'visits
re'but	re'butted	re'butting	re'buts
pass	passed	passing	passes
wish	wished	wishing	wishes
watch	watched	watching	watches
play	played	playing	plays
die	died	dying	dies
lie	lied	lying	lies
ap'ply	ap'plied	ap'plying	ap'plies
cry	cried	crying	cries
copy	copied	copying	copies

3 Introduction to phrases and clauses

Grammar Bite A

Introduction to phrases

Exercise 1: Recognizing phrase types

In the following examples, phrases have been placed in brackets [ ].

- Identify each phrase as a noun phrase (NP), verb phrase (VP), adjective phrase (AdjP), adverb phrase (AdvP), or a prepositional phrase (PP).
- For each phrase, underline the main word, or head (i.e. noun or pronoun, verb, adjective, adverb, preposition).

1 [They]^{NP} [could have signed]^{VP} [that check]^{NP}. (CONV)

2 [He] [is] [a sweet boy]. [He] [came] [to my wedding] and [he] [looked] [so handsome]. (CONV)

3 [You] [must have] [some fun] [with that]. (CONV)

4 [I] [also] [told] [him] [the story of my life]. (FICT)

5 [The rebels] [had held] [Makati] [since Saturday]. (NEWS)

Exercise 2: Phrases within phrases

PART A

In *SGSWE* 3.2, you saw that one phrase can be embedded in another phrase. For example, a prepositional phrase has a noun phrase embedded inside it:

She stayed [for [a few days]].
This, [in [my view]], is totally wrong.

- In the following sentences, place brackets around noun phrases embedded inside prepositional phrases.

1 What did you do with the cookies? (CONV)
2 I can just come by her house on the way. (CONV)
3 I think she went to the prom with him. (CONV)
4 Wisteria branches eventually grow to tree-size width and are meant for the sturdiest pergolas and arbors. (NEWS)

PART B

In addition, phrases often occur with multiple embedding. For example, a noun phrase is embedded in a prepositional phrase, which in turn can be embedded in a larger noun phrase:

[the mess [in [his bedroom]]]
[wonderful contrasts [of [feeling]]]

- In the following sentences, find examples of multiple embedding and mark them off by bracketing.

Note: Be careful—not all examples with a sequence of noun + preposition + noun phrase are examples of multiple embedding.

1 I've met a bunch of people. (CONV)
2 My eyes were often full of tears. (FICT)
3 He was a poet, a teacher of philosophy, and a man with a terrible recent history. (NEWS)
4 David Garrow, a scholar who won a Pulitzer for his biography of King, was skeptical about the whole notion of an autobiography. (NEWS)

Grammar Bite B

Clause elements and clause patterns

Exercise 3: Labelling clause elements

In the following examples, brackets show phrase boundaries, and some of the phrases are marked as clause elements S (subject), DO (direct object), A (adverbial), etc.

- Fill in the gaps by labelling the other clause elements. (See p. 6 for a list of abbreviations.)

1 [My dislike of the man]^{S} [returned]^{V}. (FICT)

2 [Taco] [is] [really] [a smart dog]^{SP}. (CONV)

3 [Some guy] [died] [at twenty]^{A} [of a heart attack]. (CONV)

4 [Just] [give] [them]^{IO} [hot chocolate]. (CONV)

5 [The gallery] [became] [a reality] [in June]^{A}. (NEWS)

6 [He]^{S} [considered] [it] [a dumb question]^{OP}. (NEWS)

7 [During her short life], [her two sisters] [bought]^{V} [her] [a small teddy bear]. (NEWS)

8 [The Portuguese] [named] [the place]^{DO} [Bom Bahia] [for its harbour]. (FICT)

9 [She] [went]^{V} [crazy] [out in L.A.]^{A} [for a few months] [back in 1987]. (CONV)

Exercise 4: Identifying clause patterns

The clauses below have the following clause patterns:

(a) S + V + SP
(b) S + V + DO
(c) S + V + A
(d) S + V
(e) S + V + IO + DO
(f) S + V + DO + OP
(g) S + V + DO + A

- Identify the clause elements by marking them off with brackets and labelling them (S, V, etc.). Note: Some of the clauses also contain optional adverbials; label these adverbials (A).
- Identify the clause pattern of each clause (a–g above), and label the clause type: intransitive, monotransitive, copular, ditransitive, complex transitive.

1 [You]^{S} [still]^{A} [haven't answered]^{V} [my dog question]^{DO}. (CONV)
S + V + DO, monotransitive

2 The cheetah is the fastest animal in the world. (CONV)

3 I haven't gotten Chris his gift yet. (CONV)

4 We were in a meeting all morning with Barbara. (CONV)

5 The boy lives in Washington now. (CONV)

6 He really told his father the truth. (CONV)

7 I'd have called him a liar for sure. (NEWS)

8 Here I find you in some dark plot against me. (FICT)

9 They made her this incredible offer. (CONV)

10 So that made her popular. (CONV)

Synthesis exercises

Exercise 5: Sentences for additional practice and diagramming

- Analyze the structure of the following sentences using tree diagrams (or bracketing).
- Include labels for the word classes (noun, verb, preposition, etc.), phrase structures (noun phrase, verb phrase, prepositional phrase, etc.), clause elements (subject, direct object, etc.), and valency of the main verb (intransitive, monotransitive, copular, ditransitive, complex transitive).

Note: Remember that a phrase can consist of just one word, and that a phrase can also be embedded as part of another phrase. Also remember that the same verb can occur with different clause patterns.

1 He even sent them a tape of the show. (NEWS)

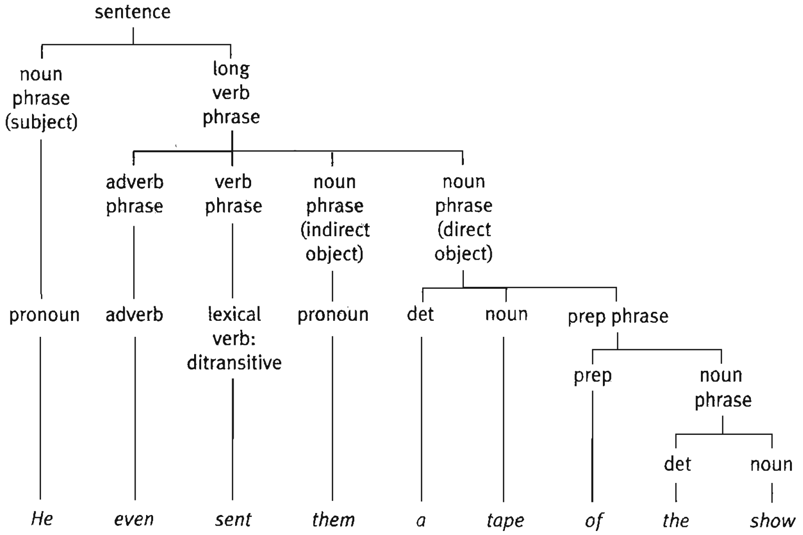
sentence
noun phrase (subject)
long verb phrase
adverb phrase
verb phrase
noun phrase (indirect object)
noun phrase (direct object)
pronoun
adverb
lexical verb: ditransitive
pronoun
det
noun
prep phrase
prep
noun phrase
det
noun
He
even
sent
them
a
tape
of
the
show

2 I can't see you. (CONV)
3 He couldn't see very clearly. (FICT)

Exercise 6: Sentences for additional practice and diagramming

1 I saw one of your grandchildren the other day. (CONV)
2 Well I can't promise you that. (CONV)
3 I'm soaking wet and you call it nice. (CONV)
4 Her father had called her one evening. (FICT)
5 They certainly couldn't tell her the truth. (CONV)
6 Later, after dark, a boy brought him a plate of food. (FICT)
7 We should show understanding for the fear of our neighbours. (NEWS)
8 He didn't get his hair wet. (CONV)
9 I just got really hot. (CONV)
10 We got home too late. (CONV)

4 Nouns, pronouns, and the simple noun phrase

Grammar Bite A

Types of nouns

Exercise 1: Recognizing different types of nouns

- Underline all the nouns in the following passages.
- Identify the nouns as belonging to the following types: common noun or proper noun, countable noun or uncountable noun, concrete noun, abstract noun, collective noun, unit noun, quantifying noun, species noun.

Hint: Remember that the same noun can represent multiple types and not all categories apply to each noun (e.g. *philosophy* is a common, abstract, uncountable noun).

1 'Your books have sold millions of copies,' the young interviewer was saying. (FICT)

2 According to Kant and Laplace, the original mass of gas cooled and began to contract. (ACAD)

3 The minibar was filled with candy, mineral water, decaffeinated soft drinks and dairy products. 'These are the kind of munchies which our research found helps sleep,' said Jeremy Baka, Hilton spokesman. (NEWS)

4 You guys can go to a whole bunch of places and you should not go to New Mexico. (CONV)

Exercise 2: Noun use: countable or uncountable?

PART A

The nouns underlined in sentences 1–9 below can be countable or uncountable, according to their meaning and context, as described in *SGSWE* 4.2–4.

- Read each sentence, and identify the underlined noun as countable or uncountable.
- What aspects of each noun's form, meaning or context (e.g. a word preceding the noun) helped you to decide that it was countable or uncountable? For example, a plural morpheme or the use of an indefinite article are signals of countability.

1 He spends as much time out of the home as possible. (FICT)
time = uncountable: it follows the determiner much

2 Young people have got to stand up for their rights. (CONV)

3 How to achieve a happy love life. (NEWS)

4 Nevertheless speaking French imposes some order, some uniformity. (NEWS)

5 We're not going to war over this, I hope. (FICT)

6 For many of us this is a matter of life and death. (NEWS)

7 She had to save face with David and Connie knew it. (FICT)

8 Andrew even bought a football but hid it from Louise. (FICT)

9 'No more sex and violence, Katheryn,' joked David. (FICT)

PART B
Each of the following sentences (10–18) is missing a noun.

- For each sentence, insert one of the underlined nouns from sentences 1–9 in Part A. In 10–18 the nouns will have the opposite countability from the examples in 1–9. For example, if a noun in 1–9 was countable, the same noun in 10–18 will be uncountable.
- Read through sentences 10–18 again. What aspects of the word's meaning or context tells you whether it is countable or not?

10 So it'll be fun to watch him play *football*. (CONV)
Here football is uncountable because it refers to the sport, not a specific ball. In this case it is possible for football to occur without a determiner, but if it were singular countable, it would need a determiner.

11 He's terrified of the opposite .... (CONV)

12 Look at Melissa, she's laughing so much her .... is getting red. (CONV)

13 Every .... I volunteer to cook for Mom she says no. (CONV)

14 Some children don't know the difference between .... and wrong. (CONV)

15 Have you ever played golf in real .... ? (CONV)

16 We saw in chapter 3 that there are three states of .... :
gas, liquid, solid. (ACAD)

17 [On the telephone] Um, I need to place an .... please. (CONV)

18 God I'd rather be in jail than fight a ...., wouldn't you? (CONV)

Grammar Bite B

Types of determiner

Exercise 3: Classifying determiners

In the following newspaper passages, the determiners have been omitted at the beginning of noun phrases. However, some of the gaps represent zero articles.

- Complete the texts by inserting an article (*the*, *a* or *an*) or another determiner (e.g. *any*, *his*, *my*).

- Where the zero article occurs at the beginning of a noun phrase, you don't need to insert anything. But for clarity, mark the zero article with the zero symbol Ø.
- Find any gaps that are ambiguous, in the sense that more than one determiner is an appropriate choice there.

Hint: The original text in **1** used seven occurrences of *the*, one occurrence of *a*, one occurrence of *an*, nine occurrences of the zero article, and one occurrence of *their*. The original text in **2** contained seven occurrences of *the*, four occurrences of *a*, one occurrence of *an*, one zero article, two occurrences of *any*, and one occurrence of each of the following: *all, every, his, its, my, our, this*.

1 When .... unexpected appears to be all part of .... plan <headline> .... Alan Hutchinson reports on .... behind-....................-scenes organisation for yesterday's visit to .... Edinburgh by .... Prince Charles. .... Police motorcycles revved into .... action and .... strategically-placed plain clothes officers exchanged .... last minute information over .... walkie-talkies. But just as .... security net began to tighten in .... grounds of .... Palace of .... Holyrood House in .... Edinburgh yesterday .... group of .... Japanese tourists made .... unscheduled appearance. (NEWS)

2 .... woman pulls .... boy by .... little hand towards .... escalator leading down to .... Piccadilly Line*. If only .... woman had paused for .... moment to inspect .... scrawled message that greets .... unwary traveller .... morning. 'I am sorry for .... inconvenience caused to .... customers during .... period that .... down escalator has been out of .... service. .... fault is due to .... shortage of .... electrical part. I cannot give .... estimate of .... arrival. Please accept .... apologies.' (NEWS) <*Piccadilly Line = a subway line in London>

Exercise 4: Definite determiners (the definite article and demonstratives)

The following extracts illustrate the use of *the, this, that, these, those*.

- Identify the functions of *the* as anaphoric, cataphoric, situational, generic, or other. (See *SGSWE* 4.6.3 and 4.6.4.)
- Identify the functions of the demonstrative determiners as anaphoric, cataphoric, situational, introductory, or other. (See *SGSWE* 4.7.2.)
- Suggest reasons for the choice of *this/these* v. *that/those*.

1 They listed everybody that's currently working <...> I mean I felt bad because a lot of the people that are on that list were my clients a long time. (CONV)

2 This month here in Moffat we have witnessed the boarding-up of our familiar, old bronze posting box under the window of the post office, now replaced by one of those monstrous red pillar-boxes. This fresh eyesore caused so much aggravation when it first made its appearance in the country in the 1950s. (NEWS)

3 The purpose of a pedagogical grammar is to teach the student self-checking tests for assessing the student's progress. Students should be advised to keep a difficulties diary, in which they note those items which cause particular difficulty. Each item noted in this diary should be given special emphasis in succeeding sessions. (ACAD)

4 I guess it was Thursday morning and this guy walked in with an Eli thigh-length gray coat on. (CONV)

5 [Packing to go on vacation:]
A: Are you two going to the beach, is that what you're doing?
B: Well we're going to go down there and see what's up.
A: Oh that dress is neat.—Okay shall I put these Snapples* in there?
<*Snapple = a type of drink>
B: Yeah.
A: Okay—Oh are you going to drink that out of the bottle?
B: I always drink them out of the bottle. (CONV)

Grammar Bite C

Number and case in nouns

Exercise 5: Pronouncing the plural ending

The following are plural nouns with the regular *-s* or *-es* inflection. The nouns are listed here in alphabetical order.

- Place these nouns in three groups, depending on whether their ending is pronounced /z/, /s/, or /ɪz/.
- For each group, make a list of the sounds preceding the plural suffix.

For an explanation of the rule, see *SGSWE* 4.8.1. Watch out for irregularities of spelling which may mislead you! Don't assume that the number of words in each list is the same.

ages
beds
births
cares
churches
clubs
cups
diseases
eggs
masses
minutes
places
prizes
risks
rocks
sons
techniques
things
trees
waves

To illustrate, the first item in each group is shown here:

ending in /z/: beds
preceding sounds: /d/
ending in /s/: births
preceding sounds: /θ/
ending in /ɪz/: ages
preceding sounds: /dʒ/

Exercise 6: Types of genitive

Each of the following three examples from newspapers contain two or more genitives.

- Underline each genitive (there are ten in all).
- Classify each of the genitives according to the categories introduced in *SGSWE* 4.9.3–5, 4.9.8: classifying, independent, time and measure, possessive, attributive, subjective, objective. Use 'other' if a genitive does not fit any of these types (e.g. origin, place).

The first genitive is done as an example (but there are other genitives in **1**).

1 This follows his company's successful outdoor production of Shakespeare's *A Midsummer Night's Dream* in Saltburn's* Valley Gardens last summer. (NEWS)
<*Saltburn = a place in Scotland>
his company's successful outdoor production = subjective genitive

2 Christmas best-sellers <headline>
Based on last week's sales in the children's department of Waterstone's in Edinburgh (NEWS)

3 Bank's net loss <headline>
Europe's richest indoor women's tennis tournament in Brighton is in danger of collapsing after Midland Bank yesterday withdrew their sponsorship. (NEWS)

Grammar Bite D

Gender and noun formation

Exercise 7: Gender

Consider the following list of nouns in relation to the four genders mentioned in *SGSWE* 4.10: masculine, feminine, personal, and neuter.

- Decide which category each noun belongs in.
- A few of these nouns could be listed under more than one gender, depending on the context. Identify them and suggest brief explanations for why they can go in more than one category.

The first two are done as examples.

friend = personal
horse
chairman
pet
lord

book = neuter
secretary
sister
salesperson
niece

wife
problem
egg
horsewoman
nurse

partner
air
writer
sea
John

Exercise 8: The formation of nouns

- Identify the process of formation for each of the following nouns: derivation, conversion (zero derivation), or compounding.
- For derived nouns, identify the prefix or suffix and base. For conversion, tell the category of the original item. For compounds, identify the parts.

billboard
compound, bill + board
songwriter

business
education

self-motivation
talk (as in *the **talk** of the town*)

skydiving

professional(s)

counterintelligence

highlight

crackdown

partnership

Grammar Bite E

Types of pronouns

Exercise 9: Quiz yourself

Each of the quiz questions below has one (or more) of the following answers: *her, his, it, none, that, these, they, you.*

- Identify the right pronoun(s) for each question. Sometimes there is more than one answer. Some pronouns may be used more than once, and some pronouns may not be used at all.

1 Which of the personal pronouns can be regularly used for both masculine and feminine, as well as neuter?
they

2 Which two personal pronouns have the same form for nominative and accusative?

3 Which of the personal pronouns can be regularly used for both singular and plural?

4 Which of the personal pronouns has no possessive pronoun corresponding to it?

5 Which possessive pronoun has the same form as the corresponding possessive determiner?

6 Which accusative personal pronoun has the same form as the corresponding possessive determiner?

7 Which demonstrative pronoun is the singular of *those*?

8 Which of the quantifying indefinite pronouns has a form which is different from its corresponding indefinite determiner? (Tell both the pronoun and the determiner form, which is not included in the list above.)

Exercise 10: Finding personal pronouns and their antecedents in a text

This exercise asks you to identify pronouns and their antecedents, as described in *SGSWE* 4.12.1C.

- Underline all the personal pronouns in the following newspaper article. Ignore the pronoun *I*. Also underline the possessive determiner her.
- Identify the antecedent (normally a preceding noun phrase which refers to what the pronoun refers to) of each of the personal pronouns you underlined.

The first line of the text is analyzed as an example.

> EastEnders* star Tom Eytle sang to the Duchess of York as she attended a charity tea party. Mr Eytle, grandfather Jules Tavernier in the hit BBC1 soap, played the guitar and

sang *Summertime* to the Duchess at her request. 'I would love to hear *Summertime*. It seems appropriate for such a nice day,' she had told him. Then she sat beside Mr Tavernier and listened. As the song finished she applauded and said: 'Thank you very much. I haven't heard that song since I was at school and I really love it.' (NEWS)
<*EastEnders = a British soap opera>
The antecedent of she is the Duchess of York.

Exercise 11: Types of pronouns

There are seven major categories of pronouns: personal, reflexive, possessive, reciprocal, demonstrative, indefinite, and other.

- Underline the pronouns in the following pieces of conversation.
- Identify the type of each pronoun.
- If possible, identify the reference of each pronoun (e.g. *yours* in **3** could be replaced with *your keys*). If it is not possible, identify the reference as 'unclear'.

The first two turns of **1** are done as an example.

1 A: Yes I bought two new containers. They're out in the garage. [Person A goes to the garage and returns]
I = personal pronoun, refers to the speaker; They = personal pronoun, refers to the containers
A: Oh, hey, this is nice.
this = demonstrative pronoun, reference is not clear
B: What?
A: They come out so you can fill them. (CONV)

2 A: That's all I needed to do.
B: Yeah, it was painless. Somebody left their keys. Those aren't yours? (CONV)

3 A: We didn't have the peanut butter, that's what I'm going back for.
B: Oh, I made it for you guys, I didn't make it for myself. (CONV)

4 A: Do you have papers?
B: I have none. I left mine with Dave. (CONV)

Synthesis exercises

Exercise 12: Comparing noun phrases in conversation and academic prose

- Underline all the heads of noun phrases in the following passages of fiction and academic prose. (Note that single pronouns count as heads of noun phrases. However, in this exercise we will not count the relative pronouns *which* and *that* as heads—see *SGSWE* 8.15.3, 9.8.)
- Count the frequency of pronoun heads and the frequency of noun heads in each extract. Comment on any general differences between the conversation and academic prose passages. How does the relative frequency of the two types of heads differ across the registers?

The first sentence of **1** is done as an example.

1 The project which is evaluated in this report is in many ways a sign of the times. It reflects a number of trends which are clearly visible in the organisation of education in the UK. (ACAD)
noun heads = 5

2 The purpose of a pedagogical grammar is to teach the student to speak the language. This differentiates it both from a descriptive grammar and from a primer. Although a descriptive grammar gives detailed coverage of the facts about a language, it is not written in a form which can be used directly to acquire speaking control of the language. (ACAD)

3 A: But the little girl was allergic to cats so her mom asked me if I would take it because she knew that I liked cats.
B: Just add one more to the pile.
A: Well I had just lost one that I had for 15 years.
B: So the other cats didn't totally freak out when you got a new one? (CONV)

4 [Talking about Christmas presents:]
A: Yeah, I brought a big suitcase to carry your stuff for Christmas in.
B: Now who is this to?
A: That one is to Jack.
B: Who is it from.
A: I think that is from Elsa. (CONV)

5 Verbs

Grammar Bite A

Verb functions and classes

Exercise 1: Identifying verb functions and classes

Verbs belong to several major overlapping classes, depending on their functions:

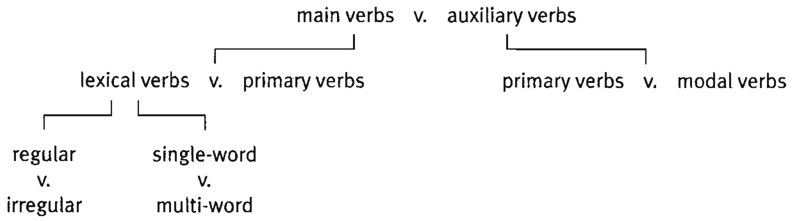
main verbs v. auxiliary verbs
lexical verbs v. primary verbs
primary verbs v. modal verbs
regular v. irregular
single-word v. multi-word

Note: To help recognize multi-word verbs, take a quick look at *SGSWE* 5.8, where they are handled in more detail.

- Underline all verbs in the sentences below.
- Identify the class/function of each verb.

1 My theory was that these were men Aunt Alice had hoped to marry. (FICT)
was = main verb, primary; were = main verb, primary; had = auxiliary verb, primary; hoped = main verb, lexical, regular, single-word; marry = main verb, lexical, regular, single-word

2 Channell and Miller pleaded guilty to a single felony and were placed on probation for two years. (NEWS)

3 They said we finally found out why our cattle are dying of lead poisoning. (CONV)

4 Lebed has declined to run for a seat in the upper house of parliament, even though he could have won one easily. (NEWS)

5 This program must be kept constantly up to date through study of shifts in mass consciousness and through constant effort to connect up with them. (ACAD)

6 Oh, come on, doesn't John want a little bit? (CONV)

7 Endotoxins bind specifically to receptors found on the gut cell membranes of the susceptible insects. (ACAD)

Exercise 2: Comparing the use of lexical verbs across registers

- Underline all lexical verbs in the text passages below.
- Count the occurrence of lexical verbs in each text passage. Are lexical verbs more common in the conversation or the academic text?
- Compare your findings to the corpus patterns for conversation and academic prose reported in *SGSWE* Figure 5.2. Are lexical verbs generally more common in conversation or academic prose?

CONVERSATION

A: They just fired that guy down at the prison for that.
B: For going to the bar?
A: Oh, drinking and then going back into work.
B: I remember reading that.
A: And apparently bringing some friends back with him to show off the place.
B: Oh, geez.
A: 'Come on in, I'll give you a tour!' Can you see it?
B: Yeah, I can.
A: Geez. How many times do you have to go down the path before you get it right?
B: I don't think I'd ever do that.
A: Well. Now what I want to know is what the bar was. (97 words)

ACADEMIC PROSE:

Article 1.1 of the Directive requires member nations to inform the Commission of the European Communities as soon as possible of major accidents which have occurred within their territories. For each accident, a member nation is to provide the Commission with information about where and when it happened, the type of industrial activity, the type of accident, a description of the circumstances, the causes, and the nature and extent of the damage both inside and outside the establishment (including* casualties, material damage, and whether or not the danger still exists). (91 words)
[*Note: Consider *including* to be a preposition here, not a verb.]

Grammar Bite B

Single-word lexical verbs

Exercise 3: Identifying the semantic classes of lexical verbs

Lexical verbs express many meanings, which can be classified into seven major semantic classes: activity verbs, communication verbs, mental verbs, causative verbs, verbs of occurrence, verbs of existence or relationship, and verbs of aspect.

- Underline all lexical verbs in the sentences below.
- Identify the semantic class of each verb. (Remember that the same verb can express different meanings in different contexts.)

Note: Semantic classes are less clear-cut than syntactic classes. There are often borderline cases, where different people can easily place a verb (in its context) into different classes. Do not be surprised if you have differences of opinion with other students. It is helpful to discuss these differences in class.

1 Erin bought it when she was in high school to learn to sew. (CONV)
bought = activity; learn = mental; sew = activity

2 I asked him for a raise – I told him I wanted five fifty an hour. (CONV)

3 In mid-September, he met Pamela Digby on a blind date and proposed. (NEWS)

4 She moved in with him and then she helped him buy a condo. (CONV)

5 We stayed at his parents' house. (CONV)

6 He asserted that nothing improper occurred during the gathering. (NEWS)

7 I said 'so what do you think I can get for my computer', and he looked at me and he smiled and he said 'you just better give it away'. (CONV)

8 Hyponatremia is associated with a variety of disorders, including Addison's disease, which involves the inadequate secretion of aldosterone, resulting in decreased reabsorption of sodium. (ACAD)

9 A: Wait, what are you getting again?
B: This looks so dry.
A: You've got the linguini. Stop complaining, will you? (CONV)

Exercise 4: Lexical verbs with multiple meanings

Some lexical verbs can be used with different meanings in different contexts.

- Focus on the underlined lexical verbs in the sentences below.
- Identify the semantic class of each verb.
- Describe the differences in meaning for the same verb in different sentences.

1a By the time I raised my hand to wave at you, you were gone. (CONV)
raised = activity

1b The judge in the Whitewater trial has raised the possibility of turning the videotape of Clinton's testimony over to the National Archives. (NEWS)
raised = communication; raised describes a physical action in 1a, but it describes the judge's communication in 1b

2a His heartfelt words had moved me strangely. (FICT)

2b He would die if he moved out of my father's house. (CONV)

3a I'll keep the coins. (CONV)

3b I keep forgetting the tape's on. (CONV)

a Finley was admitted to Northwestern Memorial Hospital in Chicago two weeks ago. (NEWS)

4b Gingrich admitted to the House Ethics Committee that he had misled them. (NEWS)

5a We could each just have one person standing in the back of the room, and then you say 'face the other way'. (CONV

5b Her daughter won't face the fact that the mother really can't go back and live by herself. (CONV)

6a The worst was when I made a cop slam on his brakes and do a three sixty donut* right behind me. (CONV) <*three sixty donut = a complete rotation, i.e. 360°>

6b Jill's grandmother made a comment the other day. (CONV)

6c I just made a big batch of lasagna. (CONV)

6d I think I made a mistake. (CONV)

Grammar Bite C

Lexical verbs: structures and patterns

Exercise 5: Identifying derived verbs

- Underline all derived verbs in the sentences below.
- For each verb, identify the derivational affix(es) and the part of speech of the base form.

1 Corporate entities have redefined the mission of health care. (NEWS)
re = prefix; define = verb base form
2 A balanced-budget amendment would undo this progress and put more people out of work. (NEWS)

3 His illness was denied as 'pure fiction' and the reporter was discredited. (NEWS)

4 In this regard, the researcher should carefully itemize costs. (ACAD)

5 That would probably flatten out the grooves. (CONV)

6 This is what makes it important to familiarize ourselves with the words, symbols, and primordial scenes that the dissidents reawaken and reactivate. (ACAD)

Exercise 6: Identifying the valency of lexical verbs

Lexical verbs occur in clauses with one of five different valency patterns: intransitive, monotransitive, ditransitive, complex transitive, and copular.
- Underline all lexical verbs in the sentences below.
- Identify the valency of each verb, and the clause elements that follow each main verb (including optional adverbials).
- Examples in Part A are easier than examples in Part B.

PART A

1 I told Dad stuff about Georgia. (CONV)
told = ditransitive; Dad = indirect object; stuff about Georgia = direct object
2 We went to Disneyland. (CONV)

3 He smiled into my eyes. 'I've got news for you.' (FICT)

4 A: A dog found it in the street and ate it.
B: Do you want that other piece? (CONV)

5 Usually these dogs bark a lot—He looks really tired. (CONV)

6 He called her a stupid idiot. (CONV)

PART B

7 Put it on that table, where all the other folders are. (CONV)

8 U.S. officials considered them a serious threat to U.S. peacekeeping troops. (NEWS)

9 In a study published last year, Wells found that many HMO doctors prescribe minor tranquillizers. (NEWS)

10 Plans for the Botanical Garden started about a decade after two American botanists made an 1887 visit to England that included a stop at London's prestigious Kew Gardens. (NEWS)

11 This lightly effervescent Italian white wine seemed sharp at first. (NEWS)

Exercise 7: Lexical verbs with multiple valencies

Some lexical verbs can be used with different valency patterns in different sentences.

- Focus on the underlined lexical verbs in the sentences below.
- Identify the valency of each verb, and the clause elements that follow each main verb.
- Compare uses of the same verb in different sentences; make a list of the different valencies for each of these verbs.

1a Can I ask you a question? (CONV)
ask = ditransitive; you = indirect object; a question = direct object
1b I don't need to know anything unless you ask. (CONV)
ask = intransitive
1c May I ask who's calling? (CONV)
ask = monotransitive; who's calling = direct object
1d You didn't ask me! (CONV)
ask = ditransitive; me = indirect object; no direct object

[Note that in 1d, *ask* is ditransitive because it has an indirect object, even though in this case the direct object is not present.]

2a Then we'll bring our friends. (CONV)

2b Later, after dark, a boy brought him a plate of food. (FICT)

3a Mr. Hawke's government has begun its controversial plan to compensate the three main domestic airlines. (NEWS)

3b Martin Wood's course begins on 1 November. (NEWS)

4a Well I can't promise you that. (CONV)

4b I've already promised Carey. (F

4c Last week Mr. Badran promised further amnesties for political prisoners. (NEWS)

4d Yes, I promise! (FICT)

5a If you don't ask, you don't get. (CONV)

5b Your dog's got brown teeth. (CONV)

5c Either it gets through completely or it totally fails to do so. (ACAD)

5d Why don't you go and get us both a pie. (FICT)

5e The mug of coffee had not got any hotter. (FICT)

5f Her mother warned her not to get her clothes too dirty. (FICT)

Grammar Bite D

Multi-word lexical verbs

Exercise 8: Distinguishing among types of multi-word verbs

There are three major types of multi-word verb: phrasal verbs, prepositional verbs, and phrasal-prepositional verbs. In addition, verbs can occur in free combinations with a following adverbial.

- Underline all multi-word verbs in the sentences below.
- Use a double underline for all free combinations (i.e. single-word verbs that are followed by an adverbial).
- Identify the type of each multi-word verb: intransitive phrasal verb, transitive phrasal verb, prepositional verb, phrasal-prepositional verb, as well as free combinations.

Remember that the same combination of verb + particle can represent different types in different contexts.

1 But he had to deal with trying to put on a happy face and get on with his life. (CONV)
deal with: prepositional verb; put on: transitive phrasal verb; get on with: phrasal prepositional verb

2 Well, one day I went out there. (CONV)

3 I picked up this abalone shell and I threw it at the cat. (CONV)

4 They've only thought about one part of the problem. (NEWS)

5 Candidates have also long depended on seniors for votes. (NEWS)

6 I never thought my sister would put up with a guy like him. (CONV)

7 The Chicago Committee on Urban Opportunity was established to carry out the city's federally funded antipoverty program. (NEWS)

8 You'd carry the milk out to the milk house. (CONV)

9 Prime Minister Viktor Chernomyrdin went ahead with plans for a short vacation outside Moscow. (NEWS)

10 A: Oh that's what it boils down to. I was trying to get out of graduating next year.
B: Come on now. (CONV)

Grammar Bite E

Primary verbs

Exercise 9: Main and auxiliary functions of primary verbs

The three primary verbs—*be*, *have*, and *do*—can serve as both main verbs and auxiliary verbs.

- Underline all primary verbs in the sentences below. (Remember that the contraction *'s* can be either a form of *is* or a form of *has*.)
- Identify the function of each verb as main verb or auxiliary. For each auxiliary, identify its specific function as a helping verb in a perfect, progressive, or passive construction, in *do* insertion, or as part of a semi-modal.

1 The action was taken by U.S. District Judge Alfred M. Wolin, who is presiding over a massive class action lawsuit. (NEWS)
was = auxiliary, passive; is = auxiliary, progressive

2 A: She doesn't even know she did it.
B: No she doesn't.
A: What did you get? (CONV)

3 This week's combination added a new dose of urgency to an industry that has been discussing consolidation for a decade. 'This is encouraging people to think even more about deals they had already been thinking about,' said the chief executive of one competitor. (NEWS)

4 A: One volunteer would just be fine actually. Leslie' s very—you know—she drops in.
B: Mm, hmm.
A: That's why, you know, it takes me awhile to set her up, because I never know when she's gonna show up. She shows up when she has the time, which is great.
B: Mm, hmm.
A: But I'm not set up to deal with that very well. Probably because of my organization.
B: Yeah well I still haven't gotten hold of Michael. I don't know what's happened with him. (CONV)

5 The businessman said the only topic of discussion at the coffee was domestic politics. 'You have to understand what it's like to have seven people meet who don't know each other, and who want to have the honor of being with the president,' Tamraz said, describing the 45-minute coffee. 'We were looking for topics. We asked him, "How are the elections going? Are we going to win?"' Had it known more about some of the guests, the White House might have reconsidered inviting them. (NEWS)

Grammar Bite F

Copular verbs

Exercise 10: Identifying copular valency patterns

Many copular verbs can also be used with other valency patterns.
- Focus on the underlined main verbs in the sentences below.
- Identify the valency pattern of each verb: copular, intransitive, or transitive.

1a As the sun slanted lower in the afternoon sky, he grew restless and ordered the band to play. (FICT)
grew = copular verb

1b So I'm really not sure why we grow it. (CONV)
grow = transitive verb

1c They burned her eyebrows off, and they didn't ever grow back. (CONV)
grow = intransitive verb

2a It was the first time he had appeared in public since this incident. (CONV)

2b Gramm appeared relaxed and at peace with his decision. (NEWS)

3a Well he'll probably stay warm in the winter time then. (CONV)

3b So how much longer did she stay? (CONV)

4a The whole color scheme looked nice but it could have looked better. (CONV)

4b If you look out the window, you can see the leaves are starting to change. (CONV)

5 Your breath smells fine—I don't smell your breath, so I don't even know it smells. (CONV)

6a He had been in radio since he went to Everett High School in Lansing, Michigan. (NEWS)

6b I think it's the biggest concert any one act has played, and the audience went wild. (NEWS)

7a Well, uh, I got hungry and wanted something to chew on. (CONV)

7b And I of course want to go and get the scrub brush and scrub those walls. (CONV)

8a Your hero is Dr Frankenstein, you've proved that tonight. (CONV)

8b Finding common ground often has proved difficult over the past two years. (NEWS)

Synthesis exercises

Exercise 11: Meanings associated with copular verbs

Resulting copular verbs all refer to a change of state. However, individual copular verbs differ in their specific meanings and their preferred collocations. This exercise focuses on three resulting copular verbs—*turn, come*, and *go*—and the adjectives which follow them in predicative position.

- Find the adjective complements of the resulting copular verbs in the following sentences. (The complement is underlined in the first example.)
- Make a list of the complements that occur with each verb.
- These complements represent the typical collocations of the three verbs. What meanings are shared by these adjectives following each verb? How would you describe the meaning differences among these three copular verbs?
- If you have access to a computer corpus of English, try to find additional adjectives which collocate with these three verbs, and see if they cover the same ranges of meaning as the adjectives in the examples below. Do they extend the ranges of meaning in any way?

TURN

1 I didn't realize he had twisted it that bad but it swelled up and turned purple. (CONV)
2 This year might be different 'cause I heard the pumpkins, they either turned yellow too soon, or they turned orange too soon. (CONV)
3 Now the picture has turned darker. (NEWS)
4 I blushed and turned pale. (FICT)
5 Onions are so flavorful, and as they turn golden brown in the pan, they really increase the flavor of food. (NEWS)

COME

1 The defense is coming alive. (CONV)
2 It was about this time that we seemed to come awake again. (FICT)
3 Think of all the things that come loose around the house. (NEWS)
4 The layers of secrecy have come unstuck with time. (NEWS)
5 You just sit down with a sponge and they come clean. (CONV)
6 Yeah. Maybe it will come true. (CONV)

GO

1 It's enough to make you go crazy you know. (CONV)
2 If I don't complain, I'll go mad. (CONV)
3 Yeah, otherwise you would go nuts. (CONV)
4 They go completely insane. (CONV)
5 This is what you call an experiment that went wrong. (CONV)
6 What if all their Burger King meat went bad because we turned off the air conditioning? (CONV)
7 Are those coals really cold?—You don't want them to go cold. (CONV)
8 They may have gone completely broke. (CONV)
9 The leaves go limp after this subterranean pest has nibbled at the roots. (ACAD)
10 The gun exploded <...>—I went deaf and into shock at the same time. (FICT)

Exercise 12: Verbs with inanimate subjects

In conversation and fiction writing, the subjects of English clauses typically refer to human beings. This is especially true of activity verbs, communication verbs, and mental verbs (see Grammar Bite B). However, authors of academic prose—and to a lesser extent of newspaper articles—regularly use such verbs with inanimate subjects.

- Underline all lexical verbs in the following sentences from academic prose.
- For each verb, determine whether the (logical) subject is animate or inanimate. (Remember that the logical subject might not be stated with passive verbs.)
- Suggest reasons for the use of inanimate subjects with these verbs in these written texts.

1 To date no one has produced a more succinct or more plausible definition of Conservatism, and certainly neither Honderich nor Eccleshall has provided an adequate alternative. In fact it seems to this reviewer that Quinton's framework offers essential support for Eccleshall's vision of Conservatism, in that the axioms Quinton describes provide for a specifically Conservative conception of political authority and social discipline. (ACAD)

2 As is pointed out in International Rectifier's note AN-969m, power mosfets possess advantages over bipolar transistors for ignition circuits, chiefly because of the high voltages they must withstand when used in place of a conventional mechanical contact breaker. Power mosfets exhibit no secondary breakdown and can be avalanched to clamp excessive overvoltage due to leakage inductance or a disconnected HT lead. Also, they need no base drive, being voltage controlled. The note explains that the series resistance of the mosfet need not lead to inefficiency and a circuit performing at higher efficiency than the one using bipolars is feasible. (ACAD)

3 Investigators did find that some male pilots 'exhibited hostility' toward Lohrenz, an F-14 pilot aboard the carrier USS *Lincoln*, but the report says it did not affect her performance. The 239-page report said that public interest in her case was a further hardship that placed her under additional stress and left her 'medically unfit to fly'. The leaked records indicated Lohrenz was having difficulty with carrier landings. (NEWS)

6 Variation in the verb phrase: tense, aspect, voice, and modal use

Grammar Bite A

Tense

Exercise 1: Identifying tense and modal verbs

Finite verb phrases are marked for tense (present or past) or include a modal verb, but not both.

- Underline all the finite verb phrases in the sentences below.
- Identify the tense/modality of each verb phrase: present tense, past tense, or modal.

1 A number of men wanted to marry her because she could hunt. (FICT)
wanted = past tense; could hunt = modal ('could' is the modal; 'hunt' is the main verb)

2 I have my portable telephone on my bed all the time. (CONV)

3 He wondered when it would stop. (FICT)

4 This machine doesn't take nickels. (CONV)

5 I brought some beer home because he likes beer. (CONV)

6 We have as head of the country a very ill old man who should go out in peace. (NEWS)

7 The judge may be mistaken in his judgment of what the legislature would have chosen. (ACAD)

Exercise 2: Meanings of present tense verbs

Present tense verbs can express many different meanings. First, they refer to some time: past time, present time, or future time. In addition, when they refer to present time, they describe a state that exists at the present time, a habitual action, or an action that is in progress at the present time.

- Underline the present tense verb phrases in the sentences below.
- Identify the time meaning of each verb phrase: past time, present time, or future time.
- For verb phrases with present time meaning, identify the specific meaning: state, habitual action, or action in progress.

1 Chad eats soul food. (CONV)
present time, habitual action

2 I like prawns. It's weird. (CONV)

3 Well, Wednesday I go to the dentist. (CONV)

4 There goes Amy. (CONV)

5 I'm surprised that she bakes all the time and she never brings it to co-op. (CONV)

6 You know, he leaves in the morning. (CONV)

7 And I said, you know, I understand, that's fine. And she goes ah. I think she's happy that I really got a lot done in the last couple of days. (CONV)

8 A: He usually comes on Sunday. Maybe he'll drive the car back or something.
B: Is that car in that good of condition?
A: He says it runs good. (CONV)

Exercise 3: Comparing verb tenses and modal verbs across registers

- Underline all the finite verb phrases in the text passages below.
- Identify the tense/modality of each verb phrase: present tense, past tense, or modal.
- Count the occurrence of each type of verb phrase in each text passage. Which tense (*not* time meaning) is preferred in each text? Are modals commonly used in any text?
- Compare your findings to the corpus patterns for conversation, fiction, and academic prose reported in Figure 6.2 of *SGSWE* 6.2.4. Which tense is preferred in conversation? Which is preferred in academic prose? Are modals generally more common in one of these registers? Are your findings for the samples consistent with the patterns for the registers overall?

CONVERSATION

[A family dinner table conversation]
A: What is that?
B: It's one of those tomato pear ones <laugh>.
A: You know what we should do—we should make apple pie this Fall.
C: Apple? We never really get much access to apples. I guess we could go out and hunt some but
B: I never really hear about any. Smith has an apple tree.
D: I think I'll have some of this. Joshua would you pass me the meat please, and I would like to have some hash, Darling, to go with my eggs. Thanks.—Oh, we forgot to say grace—Oops, uh, oh well.

ACADEMIC PROSE

In the same letter, Leibniz answers an objection that his views are not amenable to treatment by mathematics, an essential tool of the new natural philosophy, by saying that time and space mean situation and order, that is, relations, and that relations may be treated quantitatively. Leibniz uses an explanation in the Discourse similar to the one that appears in the Leibniz–Clarke correspondence. He suggests viewing space not in terms of substance, with parts existing external to other parts, but as the order of things emerging from God, with everything belonging to any given moment. The Leibnizian parallel is the notion of connection as unique monadic units, each occupying slightly different positions in a continuum or order.

Grammar Bite B

Aspect

Exercise 4: Identifying perfect and progressive aspect

Every verb phrase either has simple aspect (the unmarked form), perfect aspect, progressive aspect, or perfect progressive aspect.

- Underline all verb phrases (finite and non-finite) in the sentences below.
- Identify the aspect of each verb phrase: simple, perfect, progressive, or perfect progressive.

1 The guards had found a note. (FICT)
had found = perfect

2 For nearly a year, the Zairian president has been living just down the road. (NEWS)

3 I think now I might be going to San Diego this weekend. (CONV)

4 Vecco's family has lived since 1969 in the spacious apartment that has become the ultimate room with a view. (NEWS)

5 Well you could have used the meat pot. (CONV)

6 Carla had decided to major in psychology and had been giving all of us frequent free analysis. (FICT)

7 I think it was hotter today—I was sweating all day. (CONV)

8 At that point, Ritchie had been sitting in one of the 8-feet-by-8-feet rooms for about five hours. (NEWS)

9 He is young enough to be in his prime and old enough to have acquired the necessary experience at both baseball and life. (NEWS)

10 But he was just saying that he doesn't want a reward. (CONV)

Exercise 5: Analyzing the time meanings of present and past perfect aspect

Generally, the present perfect is used to describe a past situation or activity that continues to exist up to the present time. The past perfect refers to a time that is earlier than some specified past time.

- Underline all present perfect and past perfect verb phrases in the sentences below.
- For each present perfect verb phrase, identify when the situation/activity began, and how long it has lasted. (In some examples, the beginning may be at some indefinite time in the past.)
- For each past perfect verb phrase, identify when the event or situation occurred (i.e. identify the past time that this event occurred before).

1 She recalled how Davis had taken care of her when they were children. (NEWS)
had taken = past perfect; this verb phrase describes a situation that existed before they were adults

2 The 185-country United Nations has been near bankruptcy largely because some members have failed to pay dues and assessments totaling $3 billion. (NEWS)

3 Jones said 'I love football. Consequently, I'm unabashed about being involved and being visible with the club.' 'I had the audacity to think that I could come into the NFL and be the president and general manager when I didn't have any experience at all. That was criticized by everyone when I got here.' There has been a torrent of criticism ever since. (NEWS)

4 I had hoped to be writing a birth report about how wonderful it is to use a large pool of warm water in labour. Unfortunately all our well laid plans went out of the window on March 19th when our second child decided to arrive six weeks early. (NEWS)

5 A: Now, if I have a specialty where magic is concerned, it's prosperity spells.
B: Oh really?
A: I've put a lot of thought into it. I've done a few for myself that have always worked, and I've done a few for other people that have always worked. (CONV)

Exercise 6: Comparing the use of simple aspect, perfect aspect, and progressive aspect in conversation

- Underline all verb phrases (finite and non-finite) in the conversation below.
- Identify the aspect of each verb phrase: simple, perfect, progressive.
- Count the occurrence of each type of verb phrase. Which aspect is preferred in this excerpt?
- Compare your findings to the corpus patterns for aspect use in conversation in Figures 6.3 and 6.4 of *SGSWE*, section 6.3.3. Is any of the three aspects especially common in conversation generally? Is this sample typical of conversation?

CONVERSATION

A: I bet there's a lot of stories. There are probably a lot of things that you know that Sara doesn't.
B: Well, like yesterday I told Sara that she used to take us to Dunkin' Donuts* all the time when we were little and Sara goes, really? I've always had this warm feeling about Dunkin' Donuts that it was a place to go in and sit on the stool. <*Dunkin Donuts = a donut shop>

A: There's a lot of things that you guys have just talked about as far as your mom, but I can see in you there's something remains warm and nurturing.
B: She used to bake a lot, that was another thing that we did, there was a lot of cooking and baking and she still likes to do that. There can be horrendous qualities about a person, but I think usually there's a few good ones.
C: Well, I went to visit her last winter and I really had a great time for about half of the day because she's drinking more heavily right now. So she'd get up at like four thirty or five and then, you know, I wouldn't get up until six thirty or something and she'd be cooking and cleaning the house and then by noon she would sort of slip into a stupor.

Grammar Bite C

Voice

Exercise 7: Identifying active and passive voice

Every verb phrase with a transitive verb is either active voice or passive voice.

- Underline all verb phrases (finite and non-finite) in the sentences below.
- Identify the voice of each transitive verb phrase: active or passive. If a verb is not transitive, identify it as intransitive or copular.

1 They said the Lincoln Bedroom was used only sporadically for family members and close friends. (NEWS)
said = active voice; was used = passive voice

2 In Burma these days, wild elephants are captured and used for forced labor. (NEWS)

3 As is shown in Figure 15, a considerable amount of waste crosses State lines. (ACAD)

4 I flew from New York to Uganda, where I settled among black people with the same assumptions of welcome and kindness I had taken for granted in Georgia. I was taken on rides down the Nile as a matter of course, and accepted all invitations to dinner, where the best local dishes were superbly prepared in my honor. I became, in fact, a lost relative of the people, whose ancestors had foolishly strayed, long ago, to America. (FICT)

5 Currently, assistance can only be resumed when the president certifies that the country has returned to a democratically elected government. (NEWS)

Exercise 8: Discourse factors influencing the choice of active voice v. short passive

Short passive verb phrases (i.e. with no *by*-phrase) omit any mention of the agent noun phrase. This construction is used when the identity of the agent noun phrase is obvious, or when the exact identity of the agent noun phrase is not known or not important.

- Underline all short passive verb phrases in the sentences below.
- For each one, try to determine the identity of the agent. Is the agent obvious, not known by the authors, or simply not important?

1 The varieties of meaning we have specified so far are summarized in Figure 6.1. (ACAD)
the agent is obvious = 'by us' (i.e. the authors)

2 [A storm had damaged the raft on a journey across the ocean.] Everyone was noticeably quieter, each man thinking about the chances of whether we would be forced to leave the raft. (OTWR)

3 In spite of the splendid work in the last few decades of a highly dedicated group of neuroscientists, we are still quite ignorant about the structure and functioning of the human brain with respect to such basic cognitive functions as language. In fact, the study of the brain has often been described as the next intellectual frontier. (ACAD)

4 For no known reason, the government assumed that four fifths of these people probably could read and, on this dangerous assumption, it was publicly announced that 99 percent of all American adults could read and write. These are the figures which the U.S. government passed on to the United Nations for the purposes of worldwide compilations and comparisons. The numbers in the 1980 census improved a bit on those of 1970. This time it was found that 99.5 percent of all American adults could read and write. (ACAD)

5 The king wore it [the Hope Diamond] on a ribbon around his neck on ceremonial occasions. There is no mention of what happened to the pieces that were chopped off. The stone was stolen during the French Revolution in 1792; it turned up two decades later in England in its present shape and size. (NEWS)

Exercise 9: Discourse factors influencing the choice of active voice v. long passive

Long passive verb phrases (i.e. with a *by*-phrase) are associated with three discourse factors:

(a) to present given information before new information
(b) to place 'heavier' (or more lengthy) elements at the end of the clause
(c) to mark the first element of the clause as the topic of the discourse.

- Underline all long passive verb phrases in the sentences below.
- For each one, identify the discourse factors that influenced the choice of passive voice. (There may be more than one factor for each passive.)

1 The Navy is suffering from a brain drain of highly skilled enlisted men and women who operate and repair computers, radars, sonars and other high-tech equipment, leaving some warships undermanned. <...> The Navy's readiness and morale may be jeopardized by a serious shortage of low-ranking sailors who handle many shipboard jobs, such as rigging lines, moving aircraft and maintaining the ships. (NEWS)
factor (c): the Navy's readiness and morale = the topic of the discourse
factor (b): a serious shortage of low-ranking sailors who handle many shipboard jobs, such as rigging lines, moving aircraft and maintaining the ships = a very 'heavy' construction, presenting new information

2 But Humphrey rejected the advice, along with a persuasive draft statement, saying that he felt it would be disloyal to the president and the country to vacate an important post to which he had been entrusted by the voters. (NEWS)

3 He never thought this restaurant was his business. It was his house. And in his house, he was always surrounded by friends and family. (NEWS)

4 At Wednesday's dinner, Mary Viola Pell recalled that as a 5-year-old she was entranced by the fire that raged through San Francisco after the earthquake. (NEWS)

5 The Mormon religious state in the Intermountain West rested upon a 'complex irrigation complex involving fickle streams, frail dams, and easily washed-out canals.' <...> Water control was administered by highly autonomous irrigation districts which were under the legal jurisdiction of the county courts. (ACAD)

Exercise 10: Comparing the use of active and passive verb phrases in conversation and academic prose

- Underline all the verb phrases in the text passages below.
- Categorize each verb phrase: active, passive, or intransitive/copular.
- Count the occurrence of active and passive verb phrases. Which voice is preferred in this conversation? Which voice is preferred in this academic text?
- Compare your findings to the corpus patterns for active and passive voice in Figure 6.5 of *SGSWE*, section 6.6.1. Is passive voice generally more common in conversation or academic prose?

CONVERSATION

[Describing how to make a toy used as a prank]
And then you'd tie a string on the other end of the screw, where the threads were. And you'd take and wet that rubber, and then put the screw head up against window and it would stick. So what you'd do, you'd have a string that would go across the street, and then you'd tie knots in the string every three or four inches. So, you'd put the tick tack against the window, go across the street or hide behind a car or something, and then you would run your finger along the string or your fingernail, and those knots in the string went tk tk tk tk, and they'd come to the window.

ACADEMIC PROSE

[Describing a medical test. Note: You should be able to identify the verb phrases in this passage, even though you do not know the meaning of some of the technical words.]
The inulin clearance test is considered to be the most accurate measure of glomerular filtration rate. Inulin is a polysaccharide not normally present in human blood. When inulin is administered intravenously it is filtered by the glomeruli; it is neither absorbed nor secreted by the tubules. Although these characteristics make inulin the substance of choice for clearance measurements, its routine clinical use is limited.

Grammar Bite D

Modals and semi-modals

Exercise 11: Distinguishing between personal and logical meanings of modals and semi-modals

Each modal verb can express personal meanings or logical meanings:
The permission/possibility modals can also express 'ability'.

- Underline all modal and semi-modal verbs in the sentences below.

personal	**logical**	
permission	logical possibility	*can, could, may, might*
personal obligation	logical necessity	*must, should, (had) better, have (got) to, ought to*
personal volition	prediction	*will, would, shall, be going to*

- For each one, identify the specific meaning. If the meaning is ambiguous, write both possibilities.

1 If possible the crop should be lifted when the ground is reasonably dry. (ACAD)
should = personal obligation

2 We're building a machine right now. The machine should be finished in six months. (CONV)

3 You may build a bead stick only when you have the dice. (CONV)

4 The regulations of the states may be more stringent than federal regulations. (ACAD)

5 I can't remember what one it was. I must have left it in the car. (CONV)

6 I cannot send this letter because I am always watched and I must never be a disloyal German. (FICT)

7 You can sign the book because I did it last time. (CONV)

8 I have to figure out how to do this. (CONV)

9 I was afraid it would get rusty. (CONV)

10 Okay you won't see her in the winter. (CONV)

11 I will just tell them I'm really sorry. (CONV)

12 I think I'm going to rest for a while before I eat. (CONV)

13 Okay, I'd better go in the shower. (CONV)

Synthesis exercises

Exercise 12: Tense, aspect and voice combinations

- Underline each verb phrase in the following passages.
- Determine whether each verb phrase is finite or non-finite, and identify the tense if it is finite.
- Identify the aspect.
- Identify the verb as transitive, intransitive, or copular. If it is transitive, identify the voice.

1 I came home one afternoon and she was lying in bed and she had cuts all over her whole body and she had taken a knife and just slashed her arms and her throat and her face and she told me that she had been attacked by a wild lion. And then later when I got old enough to know that was a lie, I asked her about it and she said that she had gone through the windshield of her car. (CONV)

2 [A news story about a statue in the Capitol building in Washington DC]
A statue depicting three suffragists is to be placed in the Capitol Rotunda shortly, a move that was supposed to end years of controversy. But just as the statue was to be moved, the controversy heated up. Now a group of black women leaders are opposed to the move because the statue does not include Sojourner Truth, a leading black abolitionist and 19th-century feminist. The statue, titled 'Portrait Monument,' was donated to Congress in 1921 by the National Women's Party, the party that won women's right to vote. After it briefly was displayed in the Rotunda, the statue was banished to a storeroom. Lately, it has been housed in the Capitol Crypt, one floor below the Rotunda. Two years ago female members of Congress pushed to relocate the statue to the Rotunda. After several unsuccessful tries, Congress voted last September to make the move.

7 Adjectives and adverbs

Grammar Bite A

Characteristics of adjectives and adverbs

Exercise 1: Identifying adjectives and adverbs

- For the sentences below, underline all adjectives and circle all the adverbs.
- Classify each adjective as either attributive or predicative, and each adverb as either a modifier in a phrase or an adverbial.

1 They were cute invitations, weren't they? (CONV)
cute = attributive adjective

2 That looks pretty good. (CONV)

3 [From a discussion of the meaning of 'wild boar'] Can it be farmed intensively or should it be reared extensively? (NEWS)

4 Here there are eight shared electrons; therefore methane is uncharged. (ACAD)

5 The initial objective is to identify areas within cities which exhibit distinctive characteristics and which can be shown to be relatively homogenous. (ACAD)

6 The Russian airline was also interested in starting a transatlantic service. (NEWS)

7 The drive that motivates distinctive individual behavioral patterns (personality) is to a considerable degree subconscious. (ACAD)

Exercise 2: Central and peripheral adjectives

Central adjectives are those that take inflections for degree, can have both attributive and predicative functions, and are descriptive and gradable. Peripheral adjectives lack one or more of these characteristics.

- For each of the following adjectives, classify it as central or peripheral.
- For peripheral adjectives, describe which characteristics are similar to and which characteristics are different from central adjective characteristics.

1 wonderful
peripheral: it is similar to central adjectives because it can be attributive and predicative (a wonderful gift, It is wonderful), it is descriptive and gradable (the most wonderful gift), but it cannot be inflected (e.g. wonderfuler and wonderfulest are not possible)

2 surprising

3 angry

4 asleep

5 young

6 happy

7 homeless

Exercise 3: Formation of adjectives

- Identify each adjective in the sentences below, and state how it was formed. Choose from the following:
  (a) participial form
  (b) derivational suffix
  (c) compounding (including compounds containing participial and derived forms)
  (d) simple form (i.e. not using any of the processes for forming new adjectives).

1 It is useful to review some of the major classifications of motivation theories. (ACAD)
useful = (b) derivational suffix (-ful); major = (d) simple form
2 Well in the beginning we kind of felt nervous. (CONV)

3 It was, it was interesting. (CONV)

4 The more cycles per second, the higher you go in the so-called spectrum of frequencies. (ACAD)

5 Earth trickled by the gap in the bank to the broken roots below. (FICT)

6 With the lime juice, it [the drink] has a sort of pale greenish-yellowish, misty look. (NEWS)

7 Let's go somewhere you guys know that's good and cheap. (CONV)

Exercise 4: Formation of adverbs

- The passage below describes a fictional train journey. Use it to find examples of the following forms of adverb (see *SGSWE* 7.5). Some forms will have more than one example.
  (a) a compound adverb
  (b) an adverb derived from an adjective
  (c) an adverb like an adverbial particle (e.g. *off*)
  (d) a fixed phrase functioning as an adverb
  (e) a simple adverb (excluding type c above)
  (f) any other form of adverb.

Neither in the train to Kirkuk, nor in the Rest House at Mosul, nor last night on the train had she slept properly. Now, weary of lying wakeful in the hot stuffiness of her overheated compartment, she got up and peered out. Nothing to see, of course. Just a

long, poor-lighted platform with loud furious altercations in Arabic going on somewhere. The train, with a terrific jerk, moved slowly forward. (FICT)
An illustration of the first type, (a) compound adverb, is somewhere.

Grammar Bite B

Adjectives: roles and meanings

Exercise 5: The syntactic roles of adjectives

- Use any English language materials that are available to you to find examples of adjectives in the following syntactic roles. Alternatively, if you do not have many English materials, you may make up an original example of your own.
- In your examples, underline the adjective or adjective phrase that illustrates the role.

An example is given to illustrate each category.

1 attributive
Waste generation and environmental pollution are visible consequences of any form of industrial activity. (ACAD)
Your example:

2 subject predicative
That's cool. (CONV)
Your example:

3 object predicative
If they find him innocent they won't be able to charge him. (CONV)
Your example:

4 postposed modifier
Don't watch anything scary before you go to bed. (NEWS)
Your example:

5 noun phrase head
A modest effort was begun in some countries toward compensating women for the work they had always done for nothing: cooking, cleaning, taking care of children, the sick and the old. (ACAD)
Your example:

6 (part of a) linking expression
I had no one else to go to when my parent was angry with me or when I felt unjustly treated. Equally important, my parent had no one with whom to discuss child rearing or domestic crises. (OTWR)
Your example:

7 free modifier
Silent with awe and pity I went to her bedside. (FICT)
Your example:

8 exclamation
A: ... and he and he got a scholarship so ...
B: Fantastic! (CONV)
Your example:

Exercise 6: Comparing the meaning categories of attributive adjectives in fiction and news

Below are samples of roughly the same length from fiction and newspaper writing.

- Underline all of the attributive adjectives in each sample.
- Classify each attributive adjective by its meaning category. You may want to review the categories in section 7.6 of *SGSWE*. Descriptors: color; size/quantity/extent; time; evaluation/emotion; miscellaneous. Classifiers: relation/classification/restriction; affiliation; topic/subject.
- Compare the frequency of the semantic categories across the samples. Which categories are particularly common in each sample?
- Compare your analysis with the discussion of the two other registers (conversation and academic prose) in section 7.7.1 of *SGSWE*. How are these samples different from and/or similar to the register patterns in 7.7.1?

The first three adjectives of the fiction passage are done for you.

FICTION
A large number of people sat round a table: young girls in white muslin: older women with untidy hair and harassed expressions: a few men peered shyly and solicitously out of the background. All of the faces were made up of small dots. It was a newspaper photograph of a first communion party taken years ago; a youngish man in a Roman collar sat among the women. You could imagine him petted with small delicacies, preserved for their use in the stifling atmosphere of intimacy and respect. He sat there, plump, with protuberant eyes, bubbling with harmless feminine jokes. (99 words)
large = descriptor, size; young = descriptor, time; white = descriptor, color

NEWS
The announcement of formal Soviet–South Korean relations, made by the countries' foreign ministers in New York, is considered a major diplomatic blow to North Korea. There was no immediate comment from its Communist government. Roh said the new ties between Moscow and Seoul will make it 'impossible for North Korea alone to resist the tidal wave of change' sweeping the world. North Korea had vigorously lobbied Moscow, long a major ally and arms provider, against establishing relations with South Korea. But the Soviets are no longer able to afford extensive foreign aid, and are eager for enhanced trade and economic ties with Seoul. (103 words)
[Note: Do not include adjectives which are part of names, such as New in New York.]

Grammar Bite C

Adverbs: roles and meanings

Exercise 7: Identifying the syntactic roles of adverbs

- Match each of the underlined adverbs to the correct description of its syntactic role. Use each description only once.
  (a) adverb modifying an adjective
  (b) adverb modifying a noun phrase
  (c) adverb modifying a predeterminer
  (d) adverb modifying a prepositional phrase
  (e) adverb as a complement of a preposition
  (f) adverb standing alone
  (g) adverb modifying a measurement expression other than a numeral
  (h) adverb modifying another adverb
  (i) adverb modifying a pronoun
  (j) adverb modifying a particle of a phrasal verb
  (k) adverb modifying a numeral
  (l) adverb functioning as an adverbial.

1 You had the objectives right in front of you. (CONV)
right = (d) adverb modifying a prepositional phrase

2 We have taken this event extremely seriously. (NEWS)

3 It did not seem odd to him that the subway held more compelling things than the famous city above. (OTWR)

4 Practically everyone knows the line, 'Play it again, Sam.' (NEWS)

5 Well, I think coming to the meeting is a pretty general requirement. (CONV)

6 A: You can visit?
B: Absolutely. (CONV)

7 For almost 200 years geologists have supported various theories of mountain building, volcanism, and other major phenomena of earth. (ACAD)

8 It [an answering machine] cut me right off. (CONV)

9 Each of its workers gets a basic monthly wage of 360 pesos, almost twice the average pay. (NEWS)

10 So we'll give you a call later on or drop by and say hello. Until then, ciao! (CONV)

11 'Is he often angry?' I asked. (FICT)

12 Similar data are available for the approximately one-fourth of Shang characters that have been deciphered to date. (ACAD)

Exercise 8: Semantic categories of adverbs

Each of these sentences comes from fiction, where adverbs often help give a story descriptive impact.

- Underline each adverb in the sentences below and identify its semantic category: place, degree (amplifier/intensifier, diminisher/downtoner), time, addition/restriction, manner, stance, linking, or other.
- If you think an adverb combines two or more categories, or fits in an 'other' category, explain why.

1 They embraced lightly and carefully while Gwen made another set of little sounds. (FICT)
lightly and carefully are both manner adverbs

2 It didn't really matter: everyone was insured when he bought a ticket, automatically. (FICT)

3 Of course he understands perfectly well but wears that uncomprehending and pained look to establish he's not to blame. (FICT)

4 Sometimes other people in the village glanced at him curiously, as though they could not quite place him. (FICT)

5 The bank is so crowded nowadays that many people are moving away altogether. (FICT)

6 We don't go there very much. (FICT)

7 He tried to be offhand and not too obviously interested, but the fat boy hurried after him. (FICT)

8 He too felt a mounting excitement. (FICT)

9 Only the frightless gulls wheeled and soared and mewed their plaint over the place where it had been. (FICT)

10 Hardly were we out of earshot, however, when Marcus said: 'I'm afraid I can't come with you this afternoon.' (FICT)

11 I felt he had some inner reserve of strength which no reverse, however serious, would break down. (FICT)

Grammar Bite D

Comparative and superlative forms

Exercise 9: Comparative and superlative forms of adjectives

Some of the following adjectives use an inflectional comparative or superlative form (e.g. *hotter/hottest*); others use a phrasal construction (e.g. *more/most useful*).

- Underline the comparative or superlative form in each sentence.
- Determine whether each form is inflectional or phrasal.

- Explain or suggest the factors that are most likely to have influenced the choice of the form. Consider especially these factors: length (number of syllables); final syllable of a two-syllable base form; any special prominence; and presence or absence of a derivational suffix. You may want to review the factors in Table 7.4, *SGSWE* 7.12, before you begin. In some cases, more than one factor may apply.

1 They became more distinct. (FICT)
distinct is a gradable adjective with two syllables and no internal morphology; these adjectives usually take phrasal marking

2 My grandfather wanted to stay in the kitchen because it was warmest there and he was near everyone. (OTWR)

3 A storm of laughter arose and even the tiniest child joined in. (FICT)

4 The espresso, in small cups, is dark and serious and packs a more powerful punch. (NEWS)

5 The plane ascends and descends at a shallower angle when horses are aboard. (OTWR)

6 As the test goes on, you're gonna get more and more tired. (CONV)

7 Her eyes, between her bright, ironic smile, and her short, white-gray hair, seem tireder, more deeply set in their sockets. (FICT)

8 Sabina had never looked more lovely. (FICT)

9 I've never seen May looking lovelier. (FICT)

10 His reply was soon the property of every taxi-driver in Moscow, the most certain network in those days for news. (OTWR)

11 The more efficient you get, the more questions you ask. (CONV)

12 The headaches are usually more severe in the morning. (ACAD)

Synthesis exercises

Exercise 10: Formality and acceptability

At several points in Chapter 7 of *SGSWE*, certain uses of adjectives and adverbs are identified as non-standard or accepted only in informal conversation. This exercise invites you to consider the levels of acceptability and formality for several constructions. There are no absolutely 'correct' answers for this task. It will help if you compare the examples with similar examples, e.g. **2** and **3** below.

- Identify the best description for each of the underlined structures (seen in their context):
  - (a) a standard grammatical construction that is likely to occur in both speech and writing
  - (b) a standard grammatical construction, but unlikely to be used in formal written prose
  - (c) a construction that is considered unacceptable in a prescriptive view of grammar but is likely to be used in both speech and writing

  (d) a construction that is considered unacceptable in a prescriptive view of grammar and is likely to be used only in informal conversations
  (e) a non-standard construction that is restricted to specific dialects and otherwise considered unacceptable in all registers of English.

  You may want to review *SGSWE* sections 7.5.2, 7.12.2, and 7.12.3 before you do this exercise.
- Compare your answers with those of another student. Discuss any differences in your answers. What is the basis for your judgments, and how could you support them with evidence?

Note: The registers of these corpus excerpts are not given so that they will not influence your judgments.

1 You said you did pretty good yesterday?

2 He had to sell his place real quick.

3 So this is really spicy. Real hot.

4 This machine is slow.

5 I have to move slow.

6 Stephanie gets up awful early for that baby.

7 That sounds great.

8 She says it runs perfect.

9 It's much quieter in here.

10 I need to be more quiet about it.

11 She's a bit more nicer than Mrs. Jones.

12 She is a woman who uses words well.

13 But of all the churches I attended, the most unique was the Church of Christian Science.

Exercise 11: Comparing adjectives and adverbs in conversation and academic prose

Below are two samples of roughly equivalent length from conversation and academic prose.

- Underline all the adjectives and circle all the adverbs in each sample.
- Identify the semantic categories for the adjectives and adverbs (see Exercises 6 and 8).
- Compare the use of adjectives and adverbs in each sample. Which one has more adjectives? Which one has more adverbs? Which semantic categories are most common in each?
- How do your findings for these samples compare with the overall register findings described in *SGSWE* sections 7.1, 7.7.1, 7.8.1, and 7.11.9? Are these samples typical of their registers? In what ways? In what ways are they not?

CONVERSATION

A: Today you see a lot of people wearing large earrings don't you?
B: Yes.
A: Is that why you wear such small ones?
B: As Jones claims ... that was a rather naff comment actually, I can't imagine that, well I can imagine other people wearing big earrings because they're superconfident.
A: Then you obviously had a—such a lot of—somewhere I was reading today about er colours you wear.
B: Oh yes.
A: And how people wear who wear red ... go in business situations go in to assert power ... you know (89 words)

ACADEMIC PROSE

A particular concern of those interested in language across the curriculum has been the examination of the demands made in different school subjects. There is the question of readability. Not only are many school texts inadequately tailored to the reading abilities of the pupils (as when pupils are asked to work from material which is far too difficult, whether in literary style, scientific vocabulary or complexity of concepts); the same problem may apply also to the language of the home-made work-card or the teacher's own speech. (86 words)

8 Exploring the grammar of the clause

Grammar Bite A

Subordination, coordination, and ellipsis

Exercise 1: Recognizing dependent clauses

Dependent clauses can be finite or non-finite. Finite dependent clauses begin with a subordinator or *wh*-word. In many cases, dependent clauses function as a clause element in the main clause, like subject predicative or direct object. They can also function as prepositional complements.

- Mark all dependent clauses in the sentences below with brackets [ ].
- Label each dependent clause as finite or non-finite.
- For finite dependent clauses, circle the word that introduces the clause.
- Identify the role of the dependent clause in the main clause: subject, subject predicative, direct object, prepositional complement, adverbial.

1 [If a merger between Coopers and Deloitte is successful], it will become the largest firm in the country. (NEWS)
finite dependent clause; adverbial clause element

2 The fact is that the community needs them. (NEWS)

3 While he was gone, a nurse poked her head through the doorway. (FICT)

4 Billy didn't even know whether he was alive. (FICT)

5 Did she say anything about what happened? (CONV)

6 Richard Wood, Professor of Surgery, has told Dr Grant that such surgery cannot be halted. (NEWS)

7 Our goal is to make their voices heard. (NEWS)

8 To make matters worse, the economy is a merciless juggernaut. (NEWS)

9 After I asked her out she told me that she prefers just my friendship. (NEWS)

10 That they are already struggling troubles Graham Taylor. (NEWS)

11 If we remember that most parochial autonomies and loyalties survive, we may at least say that the development of participant cultures in some of the emerging nations has not yet been precluded. (ACAD)

12 They fear that, as winter approaches, medical emergencies will spill over into surgical beds, halting urgent operations. (NEWS)

13 After the pairs discuss these questions, ask them to make up a story about the topic. (ACAD)

14 ADMAR hopes that its suggestions will be useful for handling 'nettlesome subordinates'. (NEWS)

Exercise 2: Coordination with *and, or, but*

In these examples, the units that are coordinated are enclosed in brackets [ ].

- Use curly brackets { } to enclose the whole coordinate structure.
- Identify the structural type of the coordinated units (e.g. clauses, noun phrases, adjectives).
- Which examples show correlative coordination?

Note: Some examples contain more than one structure of coordination, with one being embedded in the other.

1 Um you can work {[on campus] or [off campus]}. (CONV)
coordinated prepositional phrases

2 Be [reliant] and [helpful to others]. (CONV)

3 Either [you're going to like it] or [you're going to hate it]. (CONV)

4 Do you have any [start dates] or [stop dates]? (CONV)

5 Oh [she cooks] but [she never bakes]. (CONV)

6 She's got [a squiggle ball case] but [no squiggle ball]. (CONV)

7 I heard a story about [you] and [Dave]. (CONV)

8 [You can be quite fluent in a language] and [yet, [something you say is not understood] and [you cannot understand why]]. (ACAD)

9 [There are no railway workers among the bridegrooms], but [there are [4 factory workers] and [4 coal-miners]]. (ACAD)

Exercise 3: Ellipsis

- What words have been omitted through ellipsis in the following examples?
- For each ellipsis, identify the position (initial, medial, or final) and the context (situational or textual).

In **1–4**, the places where words have been omitted are identified by ^.

1 Supposing we say something we shouldn't ^ . (CONV)
say is ellipted: end ellipsis, textual

2 It rings a bell but I don't know why ^. (CONV)

3 I might as well come with you. Can I ^? (CONV)

4 Your native language is English. — ^ Correct? (CONV)

5 A: K-Mart wouldn't give a thirty-dollar discount.
B: On what?

A: On a golf cart! (CONV)

6 What you doing? (CONV)

Grammar Bite B

Subject–verb concord

Exercise 4: Concord in learner English

The following text passage was written by an intermediate student of English as a foreign language.

- Underline all errors of subject–verb concord
- In each case, state why the concord is wrong.

Note: Ignore errors that are not errors of subject–verb concord.

> Now, a lot of company exist in all over the world, so big companys has very strict rules.
>
> First, one of company's rule problem is smoking. It was that company's woman is in trouble by smoke. She is non-smoker, and doesn't like smoke. But almost all men of her company is smoking, and she is working same work place.
>
> Second, other company's rule problem is cosmetics. It's American problem. A woman don't like making up on her face. But a company's rule is that woman must make up on her face, when you are working. They started to employ women consultant few years ago. The company make them wear beautiful suit. <...>
>
> In summary, everyone want to work comfortable and relax.
>
> Sometimes, we can see that a employee sue his company for illegal discharge, and then the company say about the company rule. First of all, all countries have laws and rules, and the nation have to obey the laws. (From the Longman Learner Corpus)

Grammar Bite C

Negation

Exercise 5: Verbs as operators

- In the following examples, underline the operator, and circle the main verb. Note: The same word can be both operator and main verb.

1 She's not living here. (FICT)
2 We must not alarm them. (FICT)
3 We watched his eyes filling with an anger which could not be spoken. (FICT)
4 I'm not that young. (FICT)
5 Nevertheless, he did not seem aggressive. (FICT)
6 The rows of houses were not yet built up to the boundary. (FICT)
7 He would not have missed this occasion for all the world. (FICT)

Exercise 6: Full forms v. contractions

With negative clauses, two kinds of contractions are possible: contraction of the verb (e.g. *it's not*) or of the negative word (e.g. *can't go*).

- Where possible, change these examples so that they contain both types of contraction.
- Where no contraction is possible, give a brief explanation.
- Where both types of contraction are possible, sometimes one is clearly preferable to the other. If so, determine which of them is preferred and explain why (see *SGSWE* 8.8.4).

1 Beautiful Di is not so perfect. (NEWS) <a headline>
Both possible: ... Di's not so perfect, ...Di isn't so perfect. When be contraction is possible, it is strongly favored over not contraction.

2 'Ipswich is a great club, but I am not rushing into anything.' (NEWS)

3 So am I not to be married after all? (FICT)

4 We have not made enough films in the past 12 months. (NEWS)

5 'I would not condemn the police,' he said. (NEWS)

6 The Crawfords for instance, they are not like Dr. Saunders. (FICT)

7 She will not be pleased tonight, when I get home too late. (FICT)

Grammar Bite D

Independent clauses

Exercise 7: *Wh*-questions

Most *wh*-questions begin with a *wh*-word, which serves a syntactic role in the clause (see *SGSWE* 8.11).

- What is the syntactic role of the *wh*-word in the examples below (e.g. subject, direct object, prepositional complement, subject predicative, adverbial)? Note: In some cases the *wh*-word fills only *part* of a syntactic role.
- Most *wh*-questions contain subject–operator inversion. Which of the examples below do not have inversion? Why?

1 What does she weigh? (CONV)
What is the direct object of weigh

2 Who are you looking at? (CONV)

3 What time will they leave home? (CONV)

4 Who drank my beer? (CONV)

5 Whose turn is it? (CONV)

6 When do you go to Korea? (CONV)

7 How many tomatoes do you want? (CONV)

8 In which direction was he going? (CONV)

9 They came all the way from where? (CONV)

10 Which key opens the door? (CONV)

11 Where do I sign this thing? (CONV)

12 How can you afford that? (CONV)

13 Who did you say that to? (CONV)

14 What will you tell your girls? (CONV)

Exercise 8: Types of interrogative clause

- Identify the structural type of the following interrogative clauses: *wh*-question, *yes/no* question, alternative question, question tag, declarative question, or non-clausal question.

1 Would you like the window open a little? (CONV)
yes/no question

2 Did somebody eat the rice? (CONV)

3 Any other questions? (CONV)

4 You can't get cigarettes there? (CONV)

5 Do you understand, or are you too stupid? (CONV)

6 Don't those gates look totally weak though? (CONV)

7 Can I speak to Peter Watson? (CONV)

8 How could anyone be wandering around in the forest at night? (CONV)

9 They're working very late, aren't they? (CONV)

Grammar Bite E

Dependent clauses

Exercise 9: Types and roles of finite dependent clause

There are five major types of finite dependent clause: complement clause, adverbial clause, relative clause, comparative clause, and peripheral clause (reporting or tag) (see *SGSWE* 8.15).

- In the examples below, enclose each finite dependent clause in brackets.
- Identify the type of each dependent clause.
- For complement clauses, identify the syntactic role in the main clause (e.g. subject, direct object, prepositional complement).

1 These protests will be all the stronger, [because the Cabinet has already changed its mind on a number of issues.] (NEWS)
adverbial clause

2 The importance which Sigmund Freud attributed to this form and stage of love is well-known. (ACAD)

3 Scudamore added that he felt a lot less pressure than he had last season. (NEWS)

4 'I thought I knew every handgun made,' said Rick. (FICT)

5 There's nothing wrong with Buntaro-san, is there? (FICT)

6 They understand what it's all about when they read about who holds most of the jobs in senior management in Fortune 1,000 companies. (NEWS)

7 So that was the main thing that Jennifer and I talk about when we sell our bath gels. (CONV)

8 Well see the thing that I mentioned at that meeting was that I think that you know from all the money that collection raises that we should figure out a formula. (CONV)

Exercise 10: Types and roles of non-finite clauses

There are four major structural types of non-finite dependent clause: infinitive clause, *ing*-clause, *ed*-clause, and verbless clause (see *SGSWE* 8.16).

- Enclose each non-finite dependent clause in brackets. (Ignore the finite dependent clauses.)
- Identify the structural type of each dependent clause.
- Identify the syntactic role in the main clause (e.g. subject, direct object, prepositional complement, nominal postmodifier).

1 She made a few friends and she started [being a teacher's aide]. (CONV)
ing-clause; direct object

2 You said you were going out to get yourself something to eat. (CONV)

3 To be a good Muslim is to be a good citizen. (NEWS)

4 Try to get out and about whenever possible, making new friends and contacts. (NEWS)

5 I was happy to let the pleasant sunny days go by. (FICT)

6 When in the army, soldiers look to a patron for rewards, in return for allegiance and support. (ACAD)

7 Regarded as a barometer of interest-rate expectations, shorter-term notes made strides amid the speculation. (NEWS)

8 John Wesley broke away from the ceremonial formalism of the Church of England to found a Christian movement based on social justice and personal piety. (ACAD)

9 The Food and Drug Administration will allow food manufacturers to label certain foods containing oats as being part of a diet that 'may' reduce the risk of heart disease. (NEWS)

10 So, the best thing to do is to turn it on just like this and stick it back in this little bag. (CONV)

Synthesis exercises

Exercise 11: Identifying independent clauses, dependent clauses, and non-clausal material

- In the following text samples from conversation and academic prose, use brackets { } to mark the beginning and end of independent clauses, and [ ] to mark the beginning and end of dependent clauses.
- Use < > to mark the beginning and end of non-clausal material—pieces of discourse that do not belong to a clause (see *SGSWE* 8.1.1).
- What different patterns in clause usage do you notice in these extracts?

CONVERSATION

{ {Of course anything [that I've wanted] I've already taken} and {nobody knows about it} }. Well there's a couple of things I want. Not very much. Just a few things. But I think my mother would notice I took them. I mean I know she would because they are kind of like these, they are, they are probably worth a couple of hundred dollars each and I think she got them from my aunt Eva.

ACADEMIC PROSE

Managers often find it difficult not to pass judgment on subordinates automatically. Conscious effort is sometimes needed to avoid this defense-provoking behavior. Senders should pay careful attention to objectivity in communications. One should avoid the common tendency to formulate a reply while the other person is speaking, instead of concentrating on trying to listen to what the speaker is actually saying.

Exercise 12: Sentences for additional practice and diagramming

1 Now we would all like to go to New York. (CONV)
2 Marsanne (MARsahn) and roussanne (ROOsahn) are even more obscure, perhaps because they are so often blended together. (NEWS)
3 I would hope that we can have more control over them. (CONV)
4 I wonder who could have done that. (CONV)
5 So what are you guys gonna do today? (CONV)
6 But if I'm given a question that I wasn't expecting, I'll stop and think. (CONV)
7 Other appeals courts have extended the law to people who obtained information in confidence from other sources and breached a duty to those sources when they traded on the information. (NEWS)
8 That the European Commission should toy with imposing a set of uniform accounting rules is viewed in London with abject horror. (NEWS)

9 Complex noun phrases

Grammar Bite A

Types of noun modification

Exercise 1: Identifying noun premodifiers and postmodifiers

- For each sentence below, underline all the first-level noun phrases, including those with pronoun heads and noun heads. Note: First-level noun phrases are noun phrases which are not part of other noun phrases. Hence you do *not* need to double-underline noun phrases that are part of other noun phrases.
- Identify each type of premodifier and postmodifier used to modify the heads of the first-level noun phrases you have underlined. Choose from the following for premodifiers: attributive adjective, participial, noun. (You do not need to list determiners, genitives or numerals.) Choose from the following for postmodifiers: relative clause, non-finite clause, prepositional phrase, appositive noun phrase.

1 The goat, which had slid about during the transfer, regarded him with bright-eyed perspicacity. (FICT)
which had slid about during the transfer = relative clause; bright-eyed = adjective (bright-eyed is not participial, as the -ed here is not attached to a verb, but to a noun phrase = who has bright eyes)

2 It's a nice house. (CONV)

3 The floor swayed like the floating raft at the beach. (FICT)

4 Then he set off for Simon's house, which was at the other end of the lane. (FICT)

5 Cockerill, the club captain, really set the Saints buzzing. (NEWS)

6 Those who know him say he has an arrogant side. (NEWS)

Grammar Bite B

Premodification

Exercise 2: Types of noun premodification

- Match each noun phrase on the left with its description on the right.

noun phrase	**description**
1 any powdered sugar	(a) determiner + *ing*-participle + adjective + head noun
2 the mild morning air	(b) determiner + adjective + noun + head noun

3 an austere economic recovery program
4 the following graphical solution
5 a more integrated look

(c) determiner + adjective + *ed*-participle + head noun
(d) determiner + *ed*-participle + head noun
(e) determiner + adjective + adjective + noun + head noun

Exercise 3: Noun + noun sequences

As described in section 9.5 of *SGSWE*, noun + noun sequences are a very common form of premodifier that cover many different types of meaning relationships.

- *Look through materials available to you in English and find examples of as many* of the following types as you can. Newspapers are likely to be especially good sources for this activity. If you do not have access to many English language materials, you can write down a noun + noun sequence that you already know.
- Write down the entire sentence or example and underline the noun phrase with the noun + noun premodifier sequence. An example has been given for each type to get you started. (N1 is the first noun in the sequence, and N2 is the second noun.)
- Remember (*SGSWE* 9.5) that not all noun + noun sequences belong to these types: e.g. *cable car* doesn't. Make a note of any compounds you find that do not fit into these types. They can be useful for discussion in class.

1 Composition: N2 is made from N1; N2 consists of N1
She smoothed her satin dress nervously. (FICT)
Your example:

2 Purpose: N2 is for the purpose of N1; N2 is used for N1
The plan also earmarks 20 million pounds of capital investment for safety measures. (NEWS)
Your example:

3 Identity: N2 has the same referent as N1 but classifies it in terms of different attributes
In Anchorage we saw killer whales. (CONV)
Your example:

4 Content: N2 is about N1; N2 deals with N1
The latest market research confirms that consumers now put safety at the top of their list of desirable features in a car. (NEWS)
Your example:

5 Objective: N1 is the object of the process described in N2, or of the action performed by the agent described in N2
The most central sites will be more attractive than others for all types of land users. (ACAD)
Your example:

6 Subjective: N1 is the subject of the process described in N2; N2 is a nominalization from an intransitive verb
EEG recording is technically difficult and fraught with potential artefacts due to muscle movement. (ACAD)
Your example:

7 Time: N2 is found or takes place at the time given by N1
There was in the sky more than a hint of summer lightning. (FICT)
Your example:

8 Location: N2 is found or takes place at the location given by N1
Mosses made the way soft and held many scents of marsh orchid. (FICT)
Your example:

9 Institution: N2 identifies an institution for, or concerned with, N1
Analysts have attributed the general weakness in the construction industry to high interest rates.
Your example:

10 Partitive: N2 identifies part or parts of N1
I just talked to Don Jones you know our former board member. (CONV)
Your example:

Exercise 4: The order of premodifiers

Section 9.6.1 of *SGSWE* explains four general tendencies in the order of premodifiers:
(a) Adverbs usually precede adjectives because the adverb modifies the adjective.
(b) Adjectives and participial modifiers usually precede premodifying nouns because the position closest to the head noun is most closely related to the noun. Sometimes premodifying nouns precede participial adjectives (e.g. *hand operated*) because they modify the participial adjectives rather than the head nouns. (These combinations are often written with hyphens: *hand-made*.)
(c) Among adjectives, descriptors usually precede classifiers (see *SGSWE* 7.6).
(d) Color adjectives usually follow other descriptor adjectives.

- For each of the underlined noun phrases, describe the ordering of the premodifiers with reference to the four general tendencies.

1 See that little black thing there? (CONV)
the color adjective black follows the adjective little
He then perceived the armed company guards. (FICT)

3 He had a strangely hairless body. (FICT)

4 I felt that his little beady black eyes were examining me. (FICT)

5 Mr Lamont's formula forms the corner stone of the government's new economic policy. (NEWS)

Grammar Bite C

Relative clauses

Exercise 5: The structure of relative clauses

Each of the following sentences contains a relative clause.
- Underline each relative clause.
- Circle each head noun.
- Write down the relativizer and the type of gap (subject, direct object, adverbial, or

complement of preposition). Remember that some relative clauses have a 'zero' relativizer.

1 Okay, this is all the stuff that I got. (CONV)
relativizer = that; type of gap = direct object
2 And the four hundred dollars that was in there? (CONV)

3 One of the things I want to do is go through our books. (CONV)

4 The private group, which insures invoices and financing arrangements, recorded 1,220 failures in the first half of this year. (NEWS)

5 This is the second year in a row that the opposition leader has claimed to be too busy to talk to the boisterous crew. (NEWS)

6 But we do not only communicate with people with whom we share our lives. (ACAD)

Exercise 6: Restrictive and non-restrictive functions of relative clauses

- For each of the following sentences, underline the relative clause and then tell whether it is restrictive or non-restrictive.

1 An ambulance that arrived with a motorcycle escort turned about short of the barrier and raced off. (CONV)
restrictive
2 According to Dorothy, who had always been a great one for psychology, it showed a basic insecurity. (FICT)

3 He looked up at his clock, which had stopped at five minutes to eleven some weeks ago. (FICT)

4 The TV companies that own ITV are also clamoring for a higher bid. (NEWS)

5 There was a certain part which really happened to me. (NEWS)

Exercise 7: Relativizer choices

Sections 9.8.1–2 of *SGSWE* explain choices among the eight relativizers in English and the zero relativizer choice. In this exercise, you will use that information to analyze speakers' and writers' choices. You may want to review that information before you begin.

- For each sentence, underline the relative clause and show the relativizer with a broken underline. If the relativizer is zero, show it by inserting Ø.
- Explain the likely reasons for the choice of this relativizer. Refer especially to: the position of the gap; typical register preferences; human v. non-human head nouns; restrictive v. non-restrictive functions.

1 This fellow was supporting Mr Colley, whose head lay back on the man's breast. (FICT)
whose is a typical choice for this relative clause because the gap is possessive and the head noun is human

2 This is a girl I was going to get engaged to. (CONV)

3 But the first guy that came said you need to replace your furnace. (CONV)

4 Khan spent half of each year playing professional cricket in England, where he acquired a British accent. (NEWS)

5 In this way, ions which have the same mass ratio are collected into beams. (ACAD)

6 A god, in fact, is first and foremost a being whom men think of as superior to themselves in certain ways. (ACAD)

Grammar Bite D

Other postmodifier types

Exercise 8: Identifying other types of postmodifiers

Taken together, the underlined noun phrases in sentences **1–6** below contain these postmodifiers: five prepositional phrases, one *ing*-clause, two *ed*-clauses, one *to*-clause, and one appositive noun phrase. For each of the underlined noun phrases, do the following:

- Identify the type of each postmodifier.
- Circle the head noun that is modified.

1 An agreement on fishing quotas reached by EC ministers yesterday could push half of Scotland's fleet to bankruptcy. (NEWS)
on fishing quotas = prepositional phrase; reached by EC ministers yesterday = ed-clause; (yesterday is an adverbial, not a noun postmodifier)

2 The young man began his climb from rags to riches. (OTWR)

3 We can do a slightly more complex one. A problem involving a chemical reaction. (CONV)

4 Somehow some people just believe in their ability to remodel themselves. (OTWR)

5 Toronto is a logical site because the Canadian ambassador to Peru, former hostage Anthony Vincent, belongs to the commission of 'guarantors.' (NEWS)

6 The arrests were carried out under broad powers given to police in the martial law decree. (NEWS)

Exercise 9: Postmodifier complexes

Postmodifier complexes can contain both multiple modification of a single head noun and embedded modification, where the head noun for a postmodifier is actually part of another postmodifier. This exercise contains both kinds of postmodifiers.

- Complete the trees to show the structure of the underlined postmodifier complexes. For **1** and **2** you need only to fill in the words that correspond to the structures.

1 One of the leaders of the group, however, wanted to continue with the emphasis on education. (ACAD)

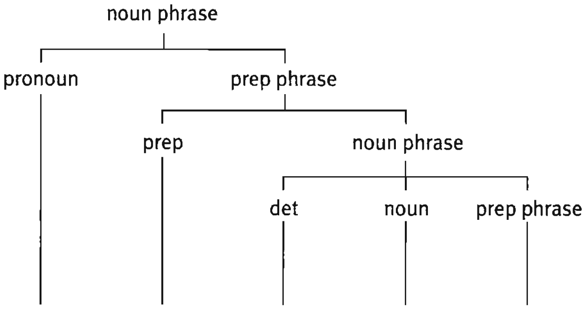
noun phrase
pronoun
prep phrase
prep
noun phrase
det
noun
prep phrase

2 The mystery of the change of an apparently lifeless seed to a vigorous growing plant never loses its freshness. (ACAD)

(Note: You do not need to break down the structure of the NPs *an apparently lifeless seed* and *a vigorous growing plant.*)

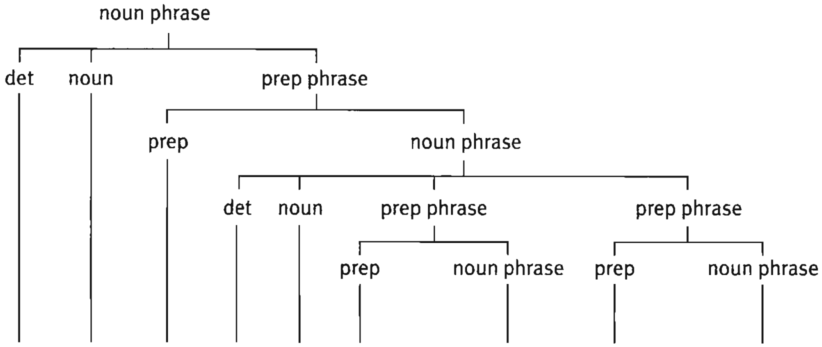
noun phrase
det
noun
prep phrase
prep
noun phrase
det
noun
prep phrase
prep phrase
prep
noun phrase
prep
noun phrase

- Make your own tree to show the structure of the underlined postmodifier complex in **3**. You do not need to break down the structure of the NPs *western society* and *information processing activities.*

3 These figures serve to underline the increasing orientation of western society to information processing activities. (ACAD)

Grammar Bite E

Noun complement clauses

Exercise 10: Distinguishing complement clauses from other postmodifiers

Sometimes complements of nouns look very much like other postmodifiers. In this exercise, you will practice distinguishing complement clauses from other postmodifiers.

- For each pair of sentences, underline the postmodifiers and identify the type. Choose from these types of postmodifiers:
  (a) complement *that*-clause
  (b) complement *to*-clause
  (c) *of* + complement *ing*-clause
  (d) complement *wh*-interrogative clause
  (e) relative clause
  (f) prepositional phrase with *of*
  (g) prepositional phrase with *to*

1a He disregarded the idea that science could explain beyond a certain point. (FICT)
(a) complement that-clause

1b It was an idea that is taking hold among a small but diverse group of religious figures. (OTWR)
(e) relative clause

2a We are faced with the problem that the structures of local government differ from nation to nation. (OTWR)

2b It addresses a problem that doesn't even exist. (OTWR)

3a Do we have your permission to record you? (CONV)

3b He took an introduction to biology and zoology at one time. (CONV)

4a Well he had every intention of finding work. (CONV)

4b There's a possibility of private ownership of the land. (CONV)

5a There was no question who Michele was. (OTWR)

5b Old Taskerson, a kindly sharp man, had lost the only one of his sons who'd inherited any degree of literary talent. (FICT)

Synthesis exercises

Exercise 11: Understanding the use of noun phrases in conversation and academic prose

In Chapter 9 of *SGSWE* you read about many differences in the typical form and use of noun phrases in conversation and academic prose. Below are text samples of similar lengths from each of those registers, with many typical uses of noun phrases. Use the samples to answer the following questions.

PART A: ANALYZE

- Identify all the noun phrases in both samples by underlining them. You will need to use double underlining, sometimes even three underlines, to show noun phrases that are embedded within other noun phrases.
- Considering just first-level noun phrases (not those embedded within other noun phrases), what percentage of the noun phrases have at least one modifier in each of the samples?
- What are the most common structures for the modifiers in the academic prose text?
- Considering all the noun phrases (first-level and embedded), what percentage of the heads are nouns versus pronouns in each of the samples?
- What do the head nouns typically refer to in each register (e.g. abstract concepts, participants in the text, inanimate objects, other people, etc.)?

Notes: In counting modifiers, do not include numerical expressions like *two and a half (hours)*; they are more like quantifying determiners. In counting for percentages, bear in mind that agreeing on an exact percentage can be difficult because of ambiguities of structure. Differences of up to 10 per cent are not important, so long as the overall picture is clear.

PART B: DESCRIBE

- Write a paragraph describing the structure and use of noun phrases in these two passages. Summarize the information you found in your analysis in Part A, and give specific examples from the texts to support your points. In general, think of answering the question, 'How does the frequency, structure and function of noun phrases vary between these conversation and academic prose samples?' (No answer is provided for this part.)

CONVERSATION

B: What did you do with those sandwiches?
A: They're in the bag in the back, behind me . . . it's almost twelve o'clock . . . been driving since about nine thirty, two and a half hours . . . good God <. . .>
A: You didn't put any light mayonnaise on here? Why not?
B: I don't know. I should have, but I didn't think of it.
A: Yuck.
B: I hate mayonnaise.
A: I don't like it either . . .
B: Don't want it?
A: No.
B: I should have popped some popcorn. (81 words)

[Note: Do not count *good God* as a noun phrase—this is considered an expletive (see *SGSWE* 13.7).]

ACADEMIC PROSE

Modern capitalism thus begins away from the older centres of manufacture, on the basis of large-scale maritime and overland trade. Organized manufacture does not originate in the craft industries controlled by the guilds, but in what Marx calls 'the rural subsidiary operations' of spinning and weaving, which need little technical training.

While rural society is the last place where capitalism develops in its 'purest and most logical form' the initial impetus is located there.

Not before this stage is reached is capital a revolutionary force.(85 words)

Exercise 12: Drawing noun phrase trees

- Draw trees to show the structure of the noun phrases underlined in the following sentences.
- To do this, follow the pattern on the examples in Exercise 9 (and also in Fig. 9.9, *SGSWE* 9.12.1), but show premodifiers as well as postmodifiers, and embedded modifiers as well as first-level modifiers.
- Use abbreviations (If needed, your own abbreviations) for the nodes of the tree.

The first diagram is done for you. (The heads of noun phrases are underlined.)

1 The new policy has been introduced as a direct result of British Airways holiday bookings.

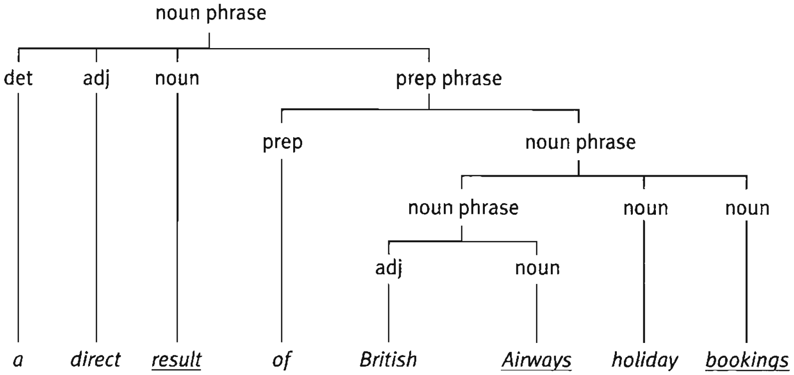

2 Mr Wood's own experience in the restaurant business spans 20 years. (NEWS)
3 When I came to Scotland the small Jewish grocery shops in the Gorbals district of Glasgow were my main link with home. (NEWS)
4 'Enfant terrible,' muttered the man sitting on the right of Andrew. (FICT)
5 The effect of water stress on the relation shown in Fig. 2.10 is to reduce the efficiency of conversion. (ACAD)

Exercise 13: Sentences for additional practice and diagramming

1 The people who worked over there spoke English. (CONV)
2 Ted had a thing that was like a skateboard. (CONV)
3 I remember the time you said she looked like a boy. (CONV)
4 You should have seen this place when we moved in. (FICT)
5 He was wearing a new suit of drab flannels. (FICT)
6 The beautiful green countryside of October in California reeled by madly. (FICT)
7 Police are still hunting the gunman, who escaped with a portable telephone. (NEWS)
8 Dr W. H. Swinburne, the choir's founder, received presentations during the evening. (NEWS)
9 Speelman seemed full of energy and surprising ideas. (NEWS)
10 Schools are being given the chance to run themselves. (NEWS)

10 Verb and adjective complement clauses

Grammar Bite A

Types and positions of complement clauses

Exercise 1: Identifying the controlling element, type, and position of complement clauses

The different kinds of complement clause have three major characteristics:

(a) controlling element: verb or adjective
(b) structural type: finite (*that*-clause, *wh*-clause) or non-finite (*to*-clause, *ing*-clause, *ed*-clause)
(c) position: subject, post-predicate (including subject predicative, direct object, and adjective complement functions), extraposed.

- Underline all complement clauses in the sentences below. Include embedded complement clauses.
- Identify the grammatical category of the controlling element, the structural type of complement clause, and its position/function.

1 McCurry said that Clinton would not 'get into a mud-wrestling contest'. (NEWS)
controlling element = verb (said); type = finite, that-clause; position = post-predicate, direct object

2 Before cancer weakened him, he hoped to move back to Monroe. (NEWS)

3 This is where they clean the planes. (CONV)

4 Maybe Judy will stop talking to him, too. (CONV)

5 I think she's happy that I really got a lot done in the last couple of days. (CONV)

6 I wonder what he meant by that. We're slowly beginning to see what he meant by that. (CONV)

7 It's amazing that only three hundred died. (CONV)

8 Police sources said that X-rays of the five bombs appear to show the same blasting caps and detonation pins. (NEWS)

9 That the ending came almost in the dark was fitting. (NEWS)

10 It's hard to believe how one human mind could have created them. (CONV)

Grammar Bite B

That-clauses

Exercise 2: Analyzing embedded *that*-clauses

That-clauses are often embedded in higher-level structures, and several different *that*-clauses can occur in a single sentence. Such embedding is found in both conversation and written registers.

- Underline the controlling elements of all *that* complement clauses in the sentences below. (Remember that the complementizer *that* can be omitted.)
- For each clause, identify the grammatical category of the controlling element, the beginning and ending words of the *that*-clause, and the position/function of the *that*-clause (for post-predicate clauses identify the function: direct object, subject predicative, or adjective complement).

1 I think that everybody understands that we want to have a debate. (NEWS)
think = verb; that everybody ... debate; position/function = post-predicate, direct object
understands = verb; that we want ... debate; position/function = post-predicate, direct object

2 After a phone conversation with Clinton, Nixon thinks that it's strange and meaningful that 'he never brought up Hillary'. (NEWS)

3 What I'm saying is that I'm sure that I was told at least once in person. (CONV)

4 He reminded jurors that a wardrobe stylist testified that she gave Simpson a black cotton sweatsuit. (NEWS)

5 Behe argues that it is inconceivable that the cascade could have evolved from some simpler form with fewer steps. (ACAD)

6 'People lost a fortune in these three years', he said, adding that it was strange that such enormous losses have gone little noticed. (NEWS)

7 You know that we would make sure that the students understood that there would be a full time commitment. (CONV)

8 Well I guess she knows that I need a ride to my car. (CONV)

9 The cops and the DA would not accept that it was plausible that they had the wrong guy. (NEWS)

10 It was kind of like we knew that she wasn't going to marry him and he knew that she knew that she wasn't going to marry him. (CONV)

Exercise 3: Information flow and subject *that*-clauses

As discussed in *SGSWE* 10.8.1, subject *that*-clauses are used to present known information as the background, or topic, for new information. Two specific uses are:
(a) to summarize information that has been presented in the preceding discourse
(b) to remind the readers of 'factual' information that is generally known.

- Underline the subject *that*-clauses in the sentences below.
- For each clause, identify the information factors that make a subject *that*-clause appropriate.

1 Temple is guilty of outright cowardice, as was National Public Radio when, in 1994, it decided not to air a series of Abu-Jamal commentaries on prison life. Some folks have speculated that both Temple and NPR knuckled under to pressure from the Fraternal Order of Police (FOP). That the FOP wouldn't want a convicted cop killer's views on the air is understandable. But I feel some voices need to be heard. (NEWS)

2 There are many players who might win the Masters, many who could. But the feeling about Faldo is that if he is at the top of his game, he should win it. That he is ranked only No 4 in the world at the moment is due to the eccentricity of the system. His first Masters win has now slipped from his ranking points. (NEWS)

3 Republican presidential nominee Bob Dole has said, 'If World War III were declared, the media would still ask me about abortion.' That the media are fixated upon the differences within the GOP regarding abortion no longer is in doubt. That they don't just as enthusiastically dissect the differences within the Democratic Party regarding abortion and same-sex marriages is a troubling example of poor journalism. (NEWS)

Exercise 4: Discourse factors with *that* retention v. omission

Three grammatical factors are associated with the omission of *that* after verbs:
(a) a common verb—especially *say* or *think*—as the controlling verb
(b) co-referential subjects in the main clause and *that*-clause
(c) a personal pronoun as subject of the *that*-clause.
Different grammatical characteristics are associated with the retention of *that*:
(d) coordinated *that*-clauses
(e) use of passive voice with the controlling verb
(f) an intervening noun phrase between the controlling verb and the *that*-clause.

- Circle all controlling verbs, and underline the *that*-clauses in the sentences below.
- For each clause, identify the factors that are associated with the retention or omission of *that*.

1 He started to realize that it was a scam all along and that he wanted to see this guy. (CONV)
that retained: has coordinated that-clauses, controlling verb is not common, does not have co-referential subjects

2 I think I'm the only person who doesn't have it. (CONV)

3 I think she should just be happy that my mess isn't spilling out of my room. (CONV)

4 Mr. Gorbachev agreed that the NATO and the Warsaw Pact would be maintained and that the transatlantic members of the Western Alliance – the U.S. and Canada – would play a vital role in the common European home. (NEWS)

5 But I find this really odd because Lucy told me that Cynthia told her that you know that it really wasn't appropriate for her to be staying with us. (CONV)

6 Western leaders were convinced that NATO's steadfastness had been crucial in bringing the communist bloc in from the cold. (NEWS)

7 The second U.S. reaction was to reassure the West Germans that Washington was happy to leave the details in Bonn's hands. (NEWS)

8 He said he lost his hair from taking showers all the time. (CONV)

Grammar Bite C

Wh-clauses

Exercise 5: *Wh*-clauses as dependent interrogative clauses v. nominal relative clauses

Wh-complement clauses have two main functions: dependent interrogative clauses and nominal relative clauses.

- Circle the controlling elements of all *wh*-complement clauses in the sentences below. Underline the *wh*-clauses.
- For each clause, identify the grammatical category of the controlling element, and the position and the function of the *wh*-clause.

1 'The last time my people had full employment was when they were in slavery,' he proclaims in addressing acute black teen unemployment. (NEWS)
controlling element = verb; wh-clause = nominal relative, subject predicative position

2 What this nomination shows is that any story can work. (NEWS)

3 Well, I wonder why Aunt Irene said that. (CONV)

4 If you know that, you usually know where it is going and what the purpose of it is. (NEWS)

5 It is not clear how the question will be resolved. (NEWS)

6 That's what I remember hearing—that's why I asked how they were doing, cause I remember that you kept buying fish. (CONV)

7 So that's how I know that that's where they were going. (CONV)

8 He's in a meeting and I'm not sure when he'll be back. (CONV)

Grammar Bite D

Post-predicate *to*-clauses

Exercise 6: Grammatical patterns of post-predicate *to*-clauses

There are five major grammatical patterns for post-predicate infinitive clauses following a verb:
Pattern 1: verb + *to*-clause
Pattern 2: verb + NP + *to*-clause or Pattern 2P: passive verb + *to*-clause
Pattern 3: verb + for NP + *to*-clause
Pattern 4: verb + bare infinitive clause
Pattern 5: verb + NP + bare infinitive clause

- Underline all verb + post-predicate infinitive clauses in the sentences below.
- Identify the grammatical pattern of each clause.

1 I had told Mr. Angullas-Villanueva I needed to speak to him on an utterly confidential basis and asked him to meet me in a quiet, out-of-the-way place. (FICT)
needed to speak ... = Pattern 1; asked him to meet ... = Pattern 2

2 The Tuolumne River near Modesto was expected to top 68 feet early Saturday morning. (NEWS)

3 I saw him bleed once. (CONV)

4 I would like for you to come out to the garage and talk to me. (CONV)

5 'I asked them how would you really like to train these people for real conditions, pressure and battle conditions,' Scott said. 'So some things in the film cross the line really into areas that they probably would like to go into and found to be too stringent. I'm not saying SEAL training is easy, but in certain aspects it probably doesn't go as far as we wanted to go.' (NEWS)

Exercise 7: Meanings of post-predicate *to*-clauses controlled by verbs

There are several different aspects of meaning to be considered for post-predicate *to*-clauses controlled by verbs. First, the controlling verb can come from ten different semantic domains: speech act, other communication, cognition, perception, desire, intention/decision, effort, modality/causation, aspectual verbs, probability. In addition, the logical subject of the *to*-clause can correspond to different elements in the main clause: the main-clause subject, the main-clause object, or some other referent.

- Underline all verb + post-predicate infinitive clause structures in the sentences below.
- Identify the semantic domain of the verb.
- Identify the reference of the logical subject of the *to*-clause.

1 He wanted me to telephone you at once and ask you to come to Danzig. He offered to find a translator for your essay. (FICT)
want = desire, subject = I (i.e. I telephone ...); ask = speech act, subject = you (i.e. you come ...); offered = speech act or intention, subject = he (i.e he finds ...)

2 Those who already have them want the superpowers to resolve the missile crisis, allowing them to remain on top of the provincial heap. (NEWS)

3 Tell Mark I said to look it up and sing it to you. (CONV)

4 Did you want to ask Michelle to do that? (CONV)

5 I need to call Mary Ann. I forgot to tell her that I want to go to Steve's party. (CONV)

6 I didn't mean for this to happen. I did not trust myself to reply. (OTWR)

7 The Promethean impulse was widely felt to be guiding the Scientific Revolution. (ACAD)

8 He comes into my room, takes my things, and no one seems to care. (NEWS)

9 Then later on all of us began to do the same thing that they did. (CONV)

10 We just tried to take goofy pictures. (CONV)

Grammar Bite E

More on infinitive clauses

Exercise 8: Recognizing raising and extraposed constructions

- Underline all adjective + *to*-clause combinations in the sentences below.
- Identify the semantic domain of the controlling adjective: degree of certainty, ability/willingness, emotion/stance, ease/difficulty, evaluation, necessity/importance.
- Identify each *to*-clause as post-predicate or extraposed.
- For post-predicate *to*-clauses, determine whether this is a case of subject-to-subject raising, object-to-subject raising, or not a raising construction.

1 Rob's [birthday] is the sixth of August. It's only a week after yours. It should be easy to remember. (CONV)
easy = ease/difficulty; post-predicate to-clause; object-to-subject raising

2 It may not be easy to check that the conditions are satisfied. (ACAD)

3 The government is unlikely to meet the full cost. (NEWS)

4 All the cylindrical surfaces are displayed only as two circles joined by a start line. As this representation is difficult for the draughtsman to interpret, mesh lines have been inserted. (ACAD)

5 However, it is not difficult to demand a speed of calculation beyond the performance of currently available microcomputers. (ACAD)

6 We're quite happy to rent for a while. (CONV)

7 Without those powers, computer hacking would be almost impossible to prove. (NEWS)

8 It's a big white notebook—It's pretty easy to read and understand. (CONV)

9 The test was expensive to produce. (ACAD)

10 It is possible to love, and to aid thy neighbor, without state intervention. (NEWS)

Exercise 9: Describing the discourse functions of subject *to*-clauses

Subject *to*-clauses mark the information in the *to*-clause as being topical and provide a direct anaphoric link to the preceding discourse. Subject *to*-clauses are sometimes used in sequences to present a topical progression of ideas.

- Underline the subject *to*-clauses in the passage below.
- Describe how these structures help to establish the topical organization of this passage.

NEWS

Yet in all these random examples, which are each dimensions of the new Europe, it wouldn't occur to the participants for one second that they are being European. To expect Europe to become a single warm cultural bath is simply to mistake the nature of the European, and indeed any other, identity.

To be European in France is to think globally about a French-led political Europe which will challenge the power of Japan and America. But to be European in Lithuania or Scotland is to assert your nationality and the wish to get Moscow or London off your back.

To be European in Italy is a logical extension of what is already assumed to be one's natural multiple identity within a family, a city, a region and a nation. And to be European in southern England is to make a political statement against Thatcherism, philistinism, and English insularity.

Grammar Bite F

Ing-clauses, ellipsis/substitution, and review

Exercise 10: *Ing*-forms in complement clauses v. other grammatical uses

In addition to their use as a verb/adjective complement clause, *ing*-clauses have other uses, including adverbial clause and noun postmodifier. In addition, *ing*-forms function as main verbs (with the progressive aspect), adjectives, nouns, and as part of multi-word combinations (e.g. the semi-modal *be going to*).

- Underline all *ing*-forms in the sentences below.
- For each occurrence, identify the grammatical use of the *ing*-form.
- If the *ing*-form is used to initiate a dependent clause, identify the function of that clause.
- For *ing*-complement clauses, identify the controlling verb/adjective and the position.

1 In my heart I know it's not feelings for Ed that I'm just giving to Leo—but then I remember hearing things about him. (CONV)
feelings = noun; giving = main verb; hearing = complement clause, direct object of remember

2 Yeah. I swear the plane kept stalling on the runway. You know like when you're trying to start your tractor, or your lawnmower? (CONV)

3 The Trinet system, when complete, will augment and speed up the existing system run by Caltech and the Geological Survey, which is now capable of recording only limited information on shaking. (NEWS)

4 'Can you imagine how I love hearing you say that?' 'I have no photograph of you. Sometimes I can't remember what you look like, do you mind my saying it?' (FICT)

5 Yet another group of treasure hunters is active on Mount Trumbull in the Arizona Strip, probing caves supposedly found by a Utah man. But the notion of buried treasure in Arizona is not crazy. Thybony says a German tourist recently turned up in Flagstaff with a pewter box containing Spanish coins from the 1540s. (NEWS)

Exercise 11: Ellipsis and substitution

Each of the following examples contains ellipsis or substitution with a post-predicate complement clause.

- Put an omission sign (^) where the ellipsis occurs or underline the substitution.
- Identify the type of complement clause: *that*, *to*, or *wh-*.
- Tell the type of ellipsis or substitution:
  - (a) clause omitted but complementizer retained
  - (b) clause and complementizer omitted
  - (c) substitution with *so*
  - (d) substitution with *not*.
- Write out the full form of the complement clause.

1 A: Yeah, but—just—just looking at the statistics, I mean, nine out of ten chance he'll be back in there [prison] within two years.
B: Yeah, I hope not though. (CONV)
that-clause with 'not' substitution; full form = I hope that he will not be back in there within two years.

2 You going to share or don't you want to? (CONV)

3 A: Um are you supposed to try to talk to them or anything?
B: No I don't think so. I think you're supposed to think about yourself. (CONV)

4 We are having a litter of bunny babies <...> They always have them at night. I don't know why. (CONV)

5 I mean I tried to rescue him. You'll see later as, as we go along, you'll see how I tried to but he, he just fought me all the way. (CONV)

6 A: She tendered her resignation.
B: Yeah, I know, she told me on Monday. (CONV)

7 I don't remember if she graduated. I guess not. Anyway she ended up moving up there. (CONV)

8 I heard that taking liver pills for some reason is good for falling, regeneration, I don't remember why <...> (CONV)

Synthesis exercises

Exercise 12: Comparing the use of complement clauses in texts

- Underline all complement clauses in the sentences below that are controlled by verbs, adjectives, or nouns (for nouns, see *SGSWE* 9.13).
- Identify the grammatical category of the controlling element, and the structural type and position of each complement clause.
- Count how often each clause type occurs in each text, and compare those frequencies to the general patterns of use for conversation and academic prose (see, e.g., *SGSWE*, Figure 10.1 and Tables 10.1–4)

CONVERSATION

A: Did Crystal say somethin' the other day about how she told her son that she breastfed him when she really didn't?
B: No. [laugh]
A: [laugh] I guess he's married now and is having his first child and he said something to his mom about, Mom, did you breastfeed me? And she said, Yep, sure did! Because she said, Can you imagine if I told him no? He'd think I didn't love him!
B: And so she lied to him! Unbelievable.
A: She said, It's not gonna hurt him one way or the other to know if he was or not.
B: There you go.
A: [looking at the baby:] Is your son choking?
B: I don't think so—acting like it, but—What are you doing down there?—You're not choking, you're faking.—Last night, we were in Paige's bedroom, and Garrett crawled all the way down the hall.
A: No way!
B: To the bathroom.
A: No way!
B: And then he realized he didn't really want to go in the bathroom, so he went into Paige's room. So, of course I go running back there to make sure there are no little people anywhere or anything that can hurt him.
C: [calling from the kitchen:] Hey, P K.
D: What?
C: It is time to come in and get ready for dinner!—You gonna come wash your hands and get all cleaned up?
B: Boy, she actually came. I didn't think she'd come in.
C: I hope these potatoes are still good. I guess I can just pop them back in the microwave.

ACADEMIC PROSE

Sawer (1977: 62) contends that Marx did not really regard the bureaucratic elite of Asiatic society as a ruling class per se. He is 'careful to describe the bureaucratic elite as assuming the functions of a ruling class rather than actually being a ruling class ...'

French Marxists have also tended to view the AMP as a transition between the primitive communal mode and modes present in state formations. Conversely, Melotti, in citing Marx's assertion that the state is 'the organ of class rule', rejects the notion that Asiatic society is not a true class society. Marx himself may have minimized the presence of social classes in the Asiatic society by emphasizing the supposed existence of primitive economic egalitarianism in its rural communities. Particularly in his discussion of Indian villages, it appears that Marx overlooked the caste system that dictated much of daily life.

This last point is particularly well illustrated in the case of 19th century Mormonism. General Authorities were able to draw upon general funds for travels and clerical expenses. It is important, however, to note that the appropriation of tithes was not generally viewed as a coercive practice. According to Leone, Mormonism was able to develop into a 'genuine theocracy' primarily because everybody believed in the same version of the supernatural. This observation supports Godelier's contention that 'in religion, we find the foundation of a non-violent form of violence.' It should be noted, however, that the hegemony of Mormon ideology was never complete as is apparent from the emergence of various schismatic sects. Joseph Morris, who spoke out several times against what he regarded as the excessive materialism, gathered about 500 followers near Ogden, Utah.

Exercise 13: Sentences for additional practice and diagramming

1 There's so many things that I know I want to learn. (CONV)
2 The leader's gunshot wounds are taking their toll, complicating efforts to persuade him to surrender. (NEWS)
3 I know that was a horrible thing to say. (CONV)
4 No one has been able to come up with a product as easy to market as opium. (NEWS)
5 She expected me to tell her why I left the room to run after the waiter. (FICT)
6 Many writers would consider the constructions described above to be non-standard. (ACAD)
7 Our offering the best deal we can is something which I think as a committee we should be in complete agreement with. (CONV)
8 It may not be easy to check that the conditions are satisfied. (ACAD)
9 He paused to give the jury a chance to consider the circumstances surrounding the murder. (NEWS)
10 In Stage 2, learners should be trying to list words which others are unlikely to know. (ACAD)

11 Adverbials

Grammar Bite A

Overview of adverbials

Exercise 1: Identifying circumstance, stance, and linking adverbials

Each of the following sentences contains one or more adverbials.

- Underline each adverbial. Include any adverbials that are embedded in other adverbials.
- For each adverbial, identify the type (circumstance, stance, or linking) and syntactic structure (adverb, prepositional phrase, noun phrase, adverbial clause).

1 Jed followed him into the kitchen. He was still shivering. (FICT)
into the kitchen = circumstance adverbial, prepositional phrase; still = circumstance adverbial, adverb

2 No one could live there now. They looked again. (FICT)

3 I'll get Larry out here Monday or Tuesday and we'll certify the laser. (CONV)

4 Unfortunately, there's no simple answer. (NEWS)

5 Strangely Davies has never been fully appreciated in Wales.

6 Another spring onion. I should think it will go well after your jam doughnut. (CONV)

7 Water plants are a source of food for fish, water snails, and other aquatic animals which are, in turn, eaten by man. Such plants are therefore a useful link in the food chain. (ACAD)

8 Personally, I really don't like the idea of her being within reach. (CONV)

9 Employees should be prepared for the change in order to reduce scepticism and to build their confidence. (ACAD)

Exercise 2: The scope of adverbials

Adverbials vary in their relationships to the rest of the clause. As explained in *SGSWE* 11.5, some adverbials have very broad scope (for example, over entire clauses or sequences of clauses), while others have more local scope.

- For each of the following pairs, identify the adverbial which has broader scope.
- Describe the difference in scope between the two underlined adverbials.

1a We have literally saved lives with this ordinance. (NEWS)

1b Year after year, they'd been decorating the 'Chicago school of economics,' literally one department, the source of unimaginably destructive neoliberal cant that had spread worldwide. (OTWR)

The adverbial in 1a has broader scope. It has scope over the entire long VP (saved lives with this ordinance). In 1b literally has scope only over the NP one department.

2a I tell you in the end it's your family who's the most important. (CONV)

2b Seven or eight of us boys in the class ended up in the home economics class. (CONV)

3a Well I would say it was sort of scary looking. (CONV)

3b Actually, what's amazing is that we sit on the floor most of the time, like in front of the TV and you can actually, you can put your dinner down on the floor and you can go back out in the kitchen to get a drink and generally speaking, you know generally, I mean like ninety nine percent of the time, they won't get into the dinner. (CONV)

4a The main worry, said Sen. Paul Wellstone of Minnesota, is that the GOP majority would eliminate some provisions from the current proposal and substitute others. For example, some veterans of past reform wars speculate that Republicans, who usually are better financed, might try to cut back on the McCain–Feingold bill's provision for free TV time for candidates. (NEWS)

4b History is filled with attempts to achieve impenetrable codes. But most have been cracked by clever mathematical tricks or by computerized brute force—for example, by computers that crunch the code night and day. (NEWS)

Grammar Bite B

Circumstance adverbials

Exercise 3: Semantic categories of circumstance adverbials

- Write a brief story or description that uses each of the twenty-one semantic categories of circumstance adverbials that are listed below. Your writing may be as truthful or creative as you wish.
- You can use the categories in any order, and one clause may have more than one adverbial.
- In general, avoid adverbial clauses (which are covered in the next Grammar Bite). However, you may use clauses for reason/cause, purpose, and condition.
- Identify the type of each adverbial in your story.

(See *SGSWE* 11.6 and 11.7 on the semantic categories of circumstance adverbials.)

1 place, distance
2 place, direction
3 place, position
4 time, point in time
5 time, duration
6 time, frequency
7 time, time relationship
8 process, manner
9 process, means
10 process, instrument
11 process, agent
12 contingency, reason/cause
13 contingency, purpose
14 contingency, concession
15 contingency, condition
16 contingency, result
17 degree, amplifier
18 degree, diminisher
19 addition
20 restriction
21 recipient

Exercise 4: The use of *just* in conversation

As *SGSWE* 11.7 describes, *just* is a very common adverbial in conversation, and it covers many meanings and functions.

- Read over all the occurrences of *just* in these samples from conversation and identify groups that share similar meanings or functions.
- Try to describe the meaning/function of each group. In some cases, a precise description may be difficult, but explain your interpretation as thoroughly as you can.
- One analysis strategy is to try to replace *just* with a word or phrase that has the same meaning, like *simply, only, exactly, completely,* or *really.*

1 You know, being in pain so much is so tiring. It's just exhausting. (CONV)

2 I'll do it myself. I'm sorry I got so hostile. But I just don't understand, that's all. (CONV)

3 Actually you kind of have the same kind of bone structure too besides the fact that you have feet and hands just like dad. You're obviously your mother's son though. (CONV)

4 I've just got a question. (CONV)

5 Then the next day she takes her daughter to the doctor and she's gone from twelve until four thirty. Now I've had a lot of jobs and I didn't have the luxury of doing that and professional jobs where I just didn't leave my desk. (CONV)

6 They were just, they were just here last summer at our place. (CONV)

7 A: Is anybody cold?
B: I'm comfortable.
A: Are you?
C: Yeah.
A: Oh, I should just start drinking my coffee. (CONV)

8 [On the telephone, when the caller asks to speak to Linda:] Sure hold on just a minute—Linda! Somebody for you. (CONV)

9 It doesn't offend me for some of the products but it does offend me for others. And I'm just being honest about it. (CONV)

10 It's not an expensive shoe but it just—it's just a plain little white shoe but it is so comfortable. (CONV)

Grammar Bite C

Circumstance adverbials that are clauses

Exercise 5: Analyzing adverbial clauses

- Underline each of the adverbial clauses in the following sentences.
- Identify the semantic category: time, place, contingency (reason or conditional), other

(see *SGSWE* 11.6 and 11.9); for conditional clauses, state whether they are hypothetical/unreal or open conditions.
- Identify the type of clause: finite or non-finite.
- Identify the subordinator or write 'none'.

1 Whenever I phone them up they all pretend to have emigrated to Australia. (CONV)
semantic category = time; type of clause = finite; subordinator = whenever

2 Because schizophrenia is a brain disorder, it's nobody's fault, she says. (NEWS)

3 For hours he sat there as if deliberately waiting me out. (FICT)

4 It's not my fault if you don't pass your exams. (CONV)

5 She was dark skinned and in her late fifties, although she looked much younger. (FICT)

6 I haven't been there since I was a kid. (CONV)

7 Since the purpose of the list is heuristic, there is no harm in 'mixing categories' in this way. (ACAD)

8 'Trouble just seemed to follow me wherever I went—except here,' he said. (NEWS)

9 As far as farmers are concerned tree planting has not been integrated into their work patterns or land management. (NEWS)

10 If I were you I wouldn't have told her. (CONV)

11 Some performance curves will now be presented to show the main differences between practical and ideal cycles. (ACAD)

12 Dust swirled like smoke in the shaft of evening sunlight from the small window: rolls of it drifted over the floor, clinging to the men's feet and overalls. (FICT)

Grammar Bite D

Stance adverbials

Exercise 6: Stance adverbials in conversation and expository writing

- Underline the stance adverbials in the following sentences.
- Identify the type of each stance adverbial: epistemic, style, or attitude. For epistemic adverbials, identify the sub-category: certainty/doubt, limitation, actuality/reality, viewpoint/perspective, source of knowledge, imprecision.
- State whether you think the sample is more typical of conversation or expository writing. (You can also try to distinguish between academic prose and newspaper writing.)
- Justify your decision with reference to information in *SGSWE* 11.13.5 (the frequency of stance meaning categories across registers) and 11.14 (the most common stance adverbials), as well as other features that have been covered in earlier chapters.

1 Some people will perhaps feel uneasy about the definition of pedagogy as operational research in which experience is pressed into partnership with principled enquiry.

epistemic stance adverbial, sub-category: certainty/doubt

The sample is more typical of expository prose, probably academic prose, because perhaps is the most common adverbial of doubt/certainty in academic prose, but it is not at all common in the other registers. Also, the long noun phrase the definition ... enquiry is more typical of academic prose than conversation.

2 According to national estimates, only about half the elderly and fewer than a third of younger people with chronic diseases get the shots each year.

3 Workers at the many quasistate factories go months without their salaries. Not surprisingly, they see a return to communism as the best option.

4 I think she's pretty bold, to tell you the truth.

5 Well I go up like once every two weeks but only for a day or just to see them or I have dinner with them and they come down the next day.

6 The device projects onto a screen by passing light through an acetate sheet approximately 25 x 25 cm.

7 Well I, we found thirty-five acres in Oregon with a little teeny mobile home at the top of it and that's frankly my idea of a dream.

8 This, this memo. <...> This is actually so we don't forget what our points were.

9 At present, with relatively few computers in schools this will be a problem, but hopefully in the future there will be plenty of computer time available.

10 He lived on a farm and they had a big family and his dad had to go out and earn extra money I guess.

11 Maybe we could go for a walk.

Grammar Bite E

Linking adverbials

Exercise 7: Semantic categories of linking adverbials

- In the examples below, fill in each blank with an appropriate linking adverbial from the following list: *in contrast, though, second, for example, thus, by the way, likewise, in conclusion.*
- Identify the semantic category of each adverbial: enumeration, result, addition, contrast, summation, concession, apposition, or transition. Use each of the semantic categories only once.

1 Finally, firewall policies must be realistic reflections of the level of security in the entire network. ...., a site with top secret or classified data should not be hooking up to the Internet in the first place; or the systems with the really secret data should be isolated from the rest of the corporate network.

2 As of last year, 70 percent of Americans over age 85 were living on their own. ...., almost 100 years ago, 60 percent of Americans over 65 lived with an adult child. (NEWS)

3 Corn is really good on pizza—I doubt they'll have it .... (CONV)

4 Two related points are relevant with respect to macroeconomic instability and policy. First, a nation engaged in world trade faces potential sources of instability which would not affect a nation 'closed' to the world economy. ...., these new sources of instability complicate domestic stabilization policy and may make it less effective. For example, recessions and inflations can be highly contagious among nations. (OTWR)

5 And so now, ..., let me conjure into final focus the prospect of unfathomed wonder to which all myths and rites in the way of great poetry and art introduce and unite us, by quoting the eloquent lines of a brief poem that deeply inspired me when I first read it some forty years ago, and which has steadied me in my thinking ever since. (OTWR)

6 Oh yeah I climbed through the glass to get over to the archery and it was not a smart thing. .... you two who haven't had lunch—there's chicken salad and potato salad. (CONV)

7 Sanchez Ortega dropped out of sight within days of his being questioned by federal authorities and has not been seen since. He is believed to be somewhere in Mexico City. ...., his partner has not been seen or heard from. (NEWS)

8 The office is filled by a free contractual relationship. ...., in principle, there is free selection. (ACAD)

Synthesis exercises

Exercise 8: Typical positions for adverbials

Use information from *SGSWE* 11.4, 11.8, 11.11, 11.15 and 11.19 to complete this exercise.

- Match each descriptive statement with one of the following positions: initial, medial, or final.

1 This position is the most common position for circumstance adverbials overall.

2 This position is often used when a circumstance adverbial contains given information and is important for the information structure of a clause.

3 Circumstance adverbials that are obligatory or that have scope over the verb typically occur in this position.

4 This is the most common position for a very long adverbial.

5 This is a common position for circumstance adverbials (clauses or other structures) that 'set the scene' for subsequent discourse.

6 This position is common for addition/restriction adverbials that have scope over only a small part of a clause.

7 Overall, linking adverbials most typically occur in this position.

8 This position is the most common for the linking adverbials then, though, and anyway in conversation.

Exercise 9: Adverbials in texts

Analyze the use of adverbials in the following passages from news and conversation.

- Underline all adverbials, including adverbials embedded in other adverbials.
- For each adverbial identify the type (circumstance, linking, or stance), the syntactic structure, and the position.
- You might also try to identify the semantic category and explain why the adverbial occurs in this position.

NEWSPAPER PASSAGE

At some point today, if everything is right, Graham Mackintosh will leave a ranch outside town with an irrepressible grin and as much water as his burro can carry and start walking south. If all goes well, man and beast will be in Cabo San Lucas by the time he stops. The expatriate Englishman who was once, in his own words, 'the complete couch potato' is planning to walk down the mountainous central spine of the entire Baja California peninsula, nearly 1,000 miles.

CONVERSATION

A: We have a Lemans Classical [group] that meets once every couple of weeks.

B: Uh huh.

A: And it's really just like a gab group* or we drink and eat and laugh and we will have a couple that kind of focuses around our little project, like one does little things, like some will do a quilt, some people will knit. <*gab group = informal conversation group>

Exercise 10: Analyzing ESL students' errors with adverbials

The following samples are taken from essays written by intermediate and advanced ESL (English as a Second Language) students. All of the samples have errors related to the use of adverbials—in the use of subordinators and prepositions, in the structure of clauses, and in the punctuation of clauses.

- Identify the error(s) in each sample, and explain how to correct each one. (Ignore errors which are not related to adverbials or the topics mentioned above.)

Hint: For errors in standard punctuation, remember that a dependent clause cannot be punctuated as a sentence by itself, and two independent clauses cannot be joined with a comma or no punctuation. (Examples from the Longman Learner Corpus.)

1 I want to go to Paris again next year. Because we did not see everything in four days.
The adverbial clause (because ... days) is a dependent clause, which cannot be punctuated like a sentence. The period after year should be deleted or replaced by a comma.

2 The first day I got here many of my ideas about America were changed for example I thought it will take me a little time to finish my entry to this country at the airport, but I was shocked because it took me about an hour to leave the airport.

3 In spite of our country was very poor however it was very interesting in the education.

4 Before 15 years there was a transportation problems due to the shortage of cars. Because individuals were not allowed to introduce cars and many roads have not been constructed.

5 The French women began working so that to be free. However, she obeys her boss now.

6 In this year's golden week, we will be given 5 holidays by our company, so I want to travel for this holidays. Indeed, 'travel' is exaggerated, I want to drive around Kanto viewpoints with my bike or car. Since I came to Hasaki. I have not been to Kanto view points, for example, Hakone, Fukuba-mountain, and so on.

7 When you met any American person, even he doesn't know you, he'll say 'hi' to you as if he has known you for long time.

Exercise 11: Sentences for additional practice and diagramming

1 They were there all night I guess. (CONV)
2 I guess he just started to strike her. (CONV)
3 He spoke quickly, but she drawled when she talked. (FICT)
4 The rules will initially apply only to the top 50 NASDAQ stocks. (NEWS)
5 If learned scientists and experienced engineers are baffled, the matter will certainly be beyond me. (FICT)
6 Ollie hated the water even though he cleaned the pool all the time. (CONV)
7 Each did its own scheduling, which had been done centrally before. (OTWR)
8 Richard was quite correct, as technically speaking they were all in harbor. (FICT)
9 He's got to learn though to leave that cat alone. (CONV)
10 Therefore, if you get an interview but not the job, you will still have reached your goal. (OTWR)
11 First we have to discuss where he would fit on our club. (NEWS)
12 Because of the risk to health of asbestos-based products, these are now being replaced by 'fibre cement,' asbestos-free products. (ACAD)
13 The two miles of this road were beefed up in 1937 to handle the increasing tourist traffic, thus becoming the first divided highway in Arizona. (NEWS)
14 Insects may just shut down the sensitivity of their eyes in a way that's roughly comparable to our closing our eyelids. (NEWS)
15 Minnig's rocklike composure cracked only in a frenetic incident last week in which photographers were allowed to approach the mansion, then ignored police orders and swarmed inside for an improvised news conference with Tupac terrorists. (NEWS)

12 Word order choices

Grammar Bite A

Word order at the beginning of the clause

Exercise 1: Different types of fronting

PART A

- What kinds of fronting are illustrated in the examples below? For each example, choose one item from the fronting list and one item from the clause list:

fronting	**clause**
(a) of object	(i) in an independent declarative clause
(b) of predicative	(ii) in an exclamation
(c) of non-finite construction	(iii) in a dependent adverbial clause

1 A more general treatment is possible using the method of Markoff. This we shall now describe, following the account of Chandrasekhar. (ACAD)
(a) fronting of object; (i) in an independent declarative clause

2 'All-wise Krishna may be, but you wouldn't buy a used chariot from him.' (NEWS)

3 The prejudices remained beneath the surface of benignity, waiting for some unwary blunder on my part to crack the surface and let them burst through. Such a blunder I'd now committed. (FICT)

4 Such a sure hand my son has with his people! (FICT)

5 What a gullible lot we are. (NEWS)

6 Brave though he is in facing adult audiences, the result is a bit of a cringe. (NEWS)

PART B

- Rewrite each of the examples in Part A, changing the word order with fronting to a more usual word order such as subject + verb + direct object. (In one type, this more usual word order is impossible without a change of wording. Which example illustrates this?)
Answer to 1: We shall now describe this ...

Exercise 2: Subject–verb inversion and subject–operator inversion

- Underline the example of inversion in each of the following examples, and tell what type of inversion it is: subject–verb inversion or subject–operator inversion.

Note: When the same word has a role both as main verb and as operator, the inversion can be described either as subject–verb inversion or as subject–operator inversion. Which examples are like this?

1 On the sideboard stood a decanter of Haut Brion, and another of old Lanning port. (FICT)
subject-verb inversion

2 The number [of Chinese characters] soared to 23,000 in the twelfth century and to almost 49,000 in the eighteenth. Equally striking is the high proportion of semantic-phonetic compounds relative to the other three categories. (ACAD)

3 Such has been the success of the piece on a short provincial tour, that it has been snapped up by The Globe in the centre of London's theatreland. (NEWS)

4 Kelly finished fourth overall, and came close to losing the King of the Mountains honour. Only on the final climb of Sally Gap did he clinch victory as his rival, Gary Baker, was struggling back from two punctures. <in a cycle race> (NEWS)

5 'Hold it, darling,' interrupted Khalehla. (FICT)

6 Hide your ankle boots and put away your sensible lace-ups when summer arrives. Now is the time for cool, light shoes that you can slip straight on your feet. (NEWS)

7 What are you eating? (CONV)

8 Had she known that he was looking for her, she thought, she would not have let herself sit there. (FICT)

9 Can the health service cope with the growing needs of older people? (NEWS)

10 Into this circle stepped Captain Bierce, confident, huge, beaming, straight-speaking, simple and uncomplicated as only a man in uniform can appear to be. He courted her. (FICT)

Exercise 3: Conditions for inversion

Inversion takes place only in special conditions.

- Identify the conditions for inversion that apply to the examples in Exercise 2. Choose from the following conditions:
  - (a) *yes/no* question
  - (b) *wh*-question
  - (c) fronted adverbial of place or time
  - (d) fronted predicative
  - (e) degree expression
  - (f) negative or restrictive opening element
  - (g) hypothetical or tentative conditional clause
  - (h) dependent interrogative clause
  - (i) reporting clause.

Answer to 1: (c) fronted adverbial of place

Grammar Bite B

Existential *there*

Exercise 4: Quiz yourself

- Answer each of the following questions on existential *there*. Refer to *SGSWE* 12.5–10 if you need help.

1 What is the syntactic role of existential *there* in its clause?
subject

2 What is the noun phrase following existential *there* + *be* called?

3 Which of the following illustrates existential *there*? Which illustrates place *there*?
Oh look, there's that bird. (CONV) *There's nothing wrong really.* (CONV)

4 After *be*, what is the most common verb that occurs after existential *there* in academic prose?

5 Which of the following statements relating to discourse functions of existential clauses are true?
(a) Existential clauses are always used when new elements are introduced into the discourse.

(b) Existential clauses are useful in focusing on a new topic.

(c) Existential clauses help the information flow principle.

(d) Existential clauses hardly ever occur in a series.

(e) The notional subject rarely begins with *the*.

(f) Existential *there* cannot occur in a question tag.

Exercise 5: The structure of existential *there* clauses

- Identify the variant of existential *there* clauses in each of the following examples. Choose from the following structural patterns.
(a) *there* + *be* + indefinite NP <NP contains no postmodifier>
(b) *there* + *be* + indefinite NP <NP contains a postmodifier>
(c) *there* + *be* + indefinite NP + place or time adverbial <NP contains no postmodifier>
(d) *there* + *be* + indefinite NP + place or time adverbial <NP contains a postmodifier>
(e) *there* + *be* + definite NP
(f) *there* + auxiliary + *be* + indefinite NP
(g) *there* + semi-modal + *be* + indefinite NP
(h) *there* + passive + *to be* + indefinite NP
(i) time or place adverbial + *there* + *be* + indefinite NP
(j) *there* + verb other than *be* + indefinite NP

1 There's not enough room on the table. (CONV)
Answer: (c)

2 There's not a thing you can do. (CONV)

3 There's a full moon. (CONV)

4 There was a fleeting look of admiration on her face. (FICT)

5 There has to be unity between black and white. (NEWS)

6 There will be a major morale problem. (NEWS)

7 In 1989 there were 3,000 accidents related to bouncy castles. (NEWS)

8 Also, there is stated to be one suicide attempt every two minutes. (NEWS)

9 'There comes a time when we have to assess the situation. I guess that time has come.' (NEWS)

10 Uh, you drive along the road for a mile or two and there's this little restaurant sitting out in the middle of nowhere. (CONV)

Grammar Bite C

Other topics in word order

Exercise 6: Other special word order constructions

Each of the following special constructions can be found in one of the examples below:

(a) preface
(b) noun phrase tag
(c) *it*-cleft
(d) normal *wh*-cleft
(e) reverse *wh*-cleft
(f) demonstrative *wh*-cleft
(g) direct object before indirect object (with *to* or *for*)
(h) direct object before indirect object (without *to* or *for*)
(i) object predicative before direct object
(j) phrasal verb with object before particle.

- Underline the part of each example which illustrates the construction.
- Match up the ten constructions with the ten examples.

1 Mrs Carey gave it him joyfully. (FICT) <it = the book>
(h) direct object before indirect object (without to or for)

2 It was war that made her so angry. (FICT)

3 My doctor, he likes birds too. (CONV)

4 Okay so what I want you to do is remember which group you're in. (CONV)

5 Were you wearing that before, this ring? (CONV)

6 And this weekend there's a Broncos Cowboy game. That's what I plan my weekends around. (CONV)

7 Okonkwo brought out his snuff-bottle and offered it to Ogbuefi Ezenwa, who sat next to him. (FICT)

8 North Bend is where the factory outlets are. (CONV)

9 The Rare Breeds Trust was formed to keep alive many native livestock breeds which were facing extinction. (NEWS)

10 'At about ten-thirty, this Italian wanted to go to bed. So the conductor came and made the beds up.' (FICT)

Exercise 7: The focused element in *it*-clefts

In *it*-clefts, the whole clause can be subdivided into:
(a) *it*
(b) a form of *be* (sometimes with negation)
(c) the focused element
(d) the dependent clause (similar to a relative clause).
The focused element (which normally comes after *it* + *be*) can have different roles in relation to the dependent clause which follows it. The main roles are subject, direct object, and adverbial.

- In each of the following examples, identify the four components (a)–(d) listed above, enclosing each in brackets.
- Which of the three roles does the focused element have in relation to the dependent clause?

1 [It] [is] [the goddess] [who pulls the strings]. We are puppets. (FICT)
subject (i.e. the goddess pulls the strings)

2 'There, don't they look lovely.' 'It is you who are lovely, Grace.' (FICT)

3 It was not surprise that he felt, but more a sort of yearning. (FICT)

4 That sunny afternoon last month, my grandson and I boarded there for the city centre, and it was on that journey we encountered Dr Saito. (FICT)

5 She liked the morning best, for it was then that she and the three other women did the rooms. (FICT)

6 But it was not food that Buck and the huskies needed, but rest. (FICT)

Synthesis exercises

Exercise 8: Information flow, topic, contrast, and end weight

In Chapter 12 of *SGSWE*, special word order constructions are shown to have discourse functions related to (a) information flow, (b) topic, (c) contrast, and (d) end weight. The purpose of this exercise is to explore the connection between these four functional concepts and selected examples in this chapter.

- Look again at these examples:
  Examples 1–3 in Exercise 1
  Examples 1–10 in Exercise 2
  Examples 7–10 in Exercise 5
  Examples 1–6 in Exercise 7

- Choose one example from each of the exercises above and write a brief explanation of why the special word order construction is appropriate in that example.
- Discuss in class how each example listed above serves the function of information flow, topic placement, contrastive effect, or end weight.

Hint: It may be useful to try to express the same meaning without the special word order construction, and see what effect the change in word order has. Thus, in example 1 of Exercise 2, compare the effect of *We shall now describe this* (normal order) with *This we shall now describe* (order with fronting). Notice how the fronting improves information flow, by placing given information (*This*) in a position where it is close to what it refers back to, and precedes the new information (... *now describe*).

Exercise 9: Comparing conversation and academic prose

At the end of Chapter 12 of *SGSWE*, the frequencies of the constructions listed below are shown to differ between conversation and academic prose.

	CONV	**ACAD**
(a) marked word order (fronting, inversion, etc.)		
(b) passive constructions		
(c) existential *there*		
(d) prefaces and noun phrase tags		
(e) demonstrative *wh*-clefts		

- Underline examples of the above construction types in the text samples below.
- Complete the table by giving the total number of occurrences (including zero) for each type of construction for each of the passages.
- Do your observations agree with the preferences shown in the table in *SGSWE*?

CONVERSATION: CHOOSING A DESSERT FROM THE MENU

A: You couldn't handle the spicy cranberry cobbler or the warm ginger chocolate cake?
B: Well, spicy cranberries.
A: And the the pound cake with brandy sauce, you wouldn't want that.
B: I know there's something.
A: Green lime and blood orange sorbet.
B: That sounds really disgusting. Why in the world would you name a dessert blood orange?
A: Apple fritters. That doesn't sound—why not the date and cinnamon ice cream? That might be good?
B: Yeah, that's not a problem.
<...>
B: It's such a beautiful score. Play some of these tracks at my memorial service when I die. That's what we want, beautiful music.

ACADEMIC PROSE: CHINESE CHARACTERS

Some scholars are opposed to this view of Chinese characters as representing concepts and insist instead that they represent specific words. They have therefore advanced the designation 'logograph', that is, a graph that represents a word (from the Greek logos: 'word'). Synonymous with the logographic concept is the expression 'lexigraphic', referring to words in the lexicon or vocabulary. The key point of disagreement leading to these terms is whether a character conveys meaning directly or through the intermediary of the word.

A modification of the logographic concept has been suggested by some students of writing who argue that Chinese characters represent morphemes rather than words and hence should be called 'morphemic' or 'morphographic'.

Exercise 10: Sentences for additional practice and diagramming

1 And the the pound cake with brandy sauce, you wouldn't want that. (CONV)
2 Absurdly, I wasn't sure I altogether liked the result; I think it was the hair that worried me most; all those wild shaggy locks were slicked back behind his ears and off his forehead. (FICT)
3 'Now,' said the captain, 'tell us who is missing.' (FICT)
4 'There is a phrase that suits your situation, sir. It is Noblesse oblige.' (FICT)
5 Everyone's frightened and tired as it is. What we need is to find a safe place soon. (FICT)
6 Someone was telling me that there's a glitch in the system somewhere. (CONV)
7 Not merely had she degraded herself; she had degraded him. (FICT)
8 What a hassle this is gonna be. (CONV)
9 We forgot to turn it off so the batteries were dead. (CONV)
10 The two were engrossed but their faces were puzzled. Shocking it was. How could someone do such a thing? (NEWS)

13 The grammar of conversation

Exercise 1: Practice in reading conversational transcripts

We study the grammar of conversation through a conversational transcript: a written record of what actually happened during a conversation. It takes a little practice to learn to read transcripts, because there are repetitions, false starts, interruptions, and abrupt topic shifts. In addition, the meaning is sometimes difficult to follow, because speakers refer to a context that they share with their hearer(s), but which is hidden from readers of the transcript.

The following are four conversational excerpts: the first two are from home settings; the second two from work settings. You will be asked to analyze these conversations from several perspectives in the exercises of this chapter.

- Read through all four conversations, and underline any parts that you don't understand.
- If possible, work in groups to try to determine the meaning of the unclear segments. You might have to guess at the meaning of some parts, and you might not be able to understand some other parts, simply because you were not actually a participant in the conversation.

Notes: In the following transcripts, turns by the same speaker (e.g. A) are numbered (A1, A2, etc.) for easy reference. The symbol – shows a short pause, and — shows a longer pause.

CONVERSATION I: DECIDING WHERE TO EAT

A1: I remember when I was looking for a job, I was driving the circumference of the city every day. It was so awful. It took at least twenty hours a day just in the car driving and filling up the gas tank every three days and watching my money dwindle—because time was running out.
B1: Oh!
A2: It was so horrible, I was sure I wasn't going to get a job, it was just, uh, it was really my guardian angel I got a job.
B2: Where are we going to go eat if you don't feel like driving, do you want to go to some place that you know?
A3: I should take you to a bar.
B3: Is that on the river walk?
A4: No, but it's that far away. Uh, I don't know of any restaurants. We can always go to Olive Garden.
B4: Oh, let's go to the Olive Garden.
A5: Somehow I had a feeling you were going to say that.
B5: They have salad.
A6: Okay, so let's go do this stuff.
B6: I'll change my shirt.
A7: Maybe we should go see Dinky How.
B7: No. I want to go to the Olive Garden.
A8: Do you really?
B8: Yeah.
B9: What are you looking for?
A9: My voter registration card. — <...> This is what happens when you put half of your life into the hands of a man—or anyone I suppose. — <...>

B10: You can still vote if you lost it.
A10: Really?
B11: They should have your name on the roster.
A11: But this is absentee voting.
B12: Oh, no. I bet you have to have it.
A12: Wonderful.

CONVERSATION II: CURLY HAIR OR STRAIGHT HAIR?

A1: My hair looks straighter today, huh?
B1: Let me see.
A2: I think it does. Quit it.
B2: You got a lot of curls back here that you didn't have before though, girl.
A3: Really?
B3: Like little bitty curls, like, I mean, before it was like, like clumped together or something. Now it looks like really, like nice and curly. And smooth. I'm serious, like, like that's a lie, that's a lie.
A4: You're not supposed to be giving people advice on their hair, remember?
B4: Oh, come on. That stuff looks good on. That stuff looks good, yes it does. It's nice. Here. Let, let, let me pour it, let me pour it.
A5: I think I'm—might blow dry it now, right? I think I might blow dry it now, right?
B5: Let me pour it. Look in the back. Turn your head that way. Look in the mirror. See it?
A6: Yeah but, I can't, how do I do my head? I see the side of my head.
B6: Let me see how I see the backside of my head, the back of my head. Alright.
A7: <laughing> You look so funny. You're like, nyah.
B7: I guess it, I guess it wasn't that. Because I couldn't do this side. But your hair's so big.
A8: Okay, how do I do it now?
B8: Here you figure it out. I'm going into—
A9: <laughing> But I was getting some counseling. —— I see what you mean though about the curls in the back.
B9: Here you go, babe. Try this.
A10: I see what you mean by the covert act though. Hm.
B10: You aren't picking at it, are you?
A11: I need some more like this.
B11: You see, all this wasn't there before. Like, they did all of it, like this right here. You see this little light right here?
A12: But doesn't my hair look straighter today than it has. Not straighter but less—
B12: It looks more organized. And it looks more excellent to me, it looks more curly. Like, that's what I thought you were, you wanted to do.
A13: I do want curly hair but I want to be able to see the curls. I would like to see them.
B13: I mean, they're not all gonna be like that. They're all like this, like they're laying down.
A14: Yeah.
B14: I think if you combed it regularly, then it won't, you know.
A15: Tania's hair combing.
B15: Yeah, it's real nice.

CONVERSATION III: SOMETHING NEW ON THE COMPUTER

A1: I've got something new on the computer here.
B1: What do you got?

A2: If you turn it on, it turns on here and that turns on the monitor, the speakers and the uh, printer so now <unclear> shut off my printer. I just put a, a plug strip in here.
B2: Oh okay.
A3: And then there's another switch inside here that allows me to turn everything off, the computer, so like when I go away I can hit that and then everything is down.
C1: The one I like is the uh, the little console.
B3: Yeah.
C2: You can, well you know <unclear>.
A4: Well you know the other thing is though, see I can shut this off.
B4: Which works out pretty good.
A5: <opens a document on the computer to work on revisions; clears throat> Now you and I changed this to 'optical'—I didn't spell-check it.
B5: Okay.
A6: That's the only place I could think that uh, we had the changes to be made. Now I have to update that disk.
B6: Should we say 'these products' here or 'this product'?
A7: Hm, let me see. 'Due to the nature of the optical components' — there should be a comma.
B7: Yeah.
A8: Or 'these products,' yeah, 'these products' would be correct.
B8: Okay. I don't know why we're having so much problems.
A9: It's just sitting down with it one day. In fact I've, what we should do, that disk I gave you—
B9: Yeah I've got it right over here.
A10: We'll update that—fix it right now
B10: Okay.
A11: I'll take that with me, I'll update it in my system and then I'll make a second one and we'll carry them back and forth.
B11: Okay. Yeah that disk is right here.
A12: I haven't loaded that disk in yet.
B12: I can tell.

CONVERSATION IV: MISTAKES IN THE OFFICE

A1: What do the invitations look like?
B1: They're right there as you walk in—uh uh they're fine I think. Still wasn't quite clear to me who uh who made the error—you know, the—as she said they're uh—
A2: That's, yeah, that's not the blue I picked.
B2: Blue?
A3: This is—
B3: Nothing blue about it.
A4: Yeah. I don't know if this is—this doesn't look as bad as the baby poop color that they had picked out.
B4: No.
A5: It may be though the same one that he wanted and I picked out the blue.
B5: That is not blue.
A6: And he just wanted the one he wanted.
B6: That's just—yeah.
A7: He just didn't want blue I don't think I guess.
A8: Oh uh the roller said I said so I guess you ordered the wrong paper and he said no they sent the wrong paper.
B7: And she she said the the difference was it's like the paper was called the paper.

A9: <looking at the fax machine; one button is labelled 'Talk'> Why is that buzzing so much?
B8: Well, Tim keeps faxing and it's not working—it's an error.
A10: Oh.
B9: See and it keeps pressing 'talk'.
A11: What do you mean it keeps pressing 'talk'?
B10: I mean it keeps beeping 'talk'.
A12: 'Talk' comes on.
B11: Yes, that's that's what is beeping it says 'talk'.
A13: Oh.
B12: 'Error'—so you might call and tell him we're not getting anything—oh, yeah now we are I guess yeah.
A14: Just a little bit of blank paper.
B13: Yeah. Turn it off and turn it on again maybe—
A15: Maybe another thing you're gonna have to do is we're gonna have to enter all these notes.
B14: Like the—oh yeah.

Grammar Bite A

A functional overview of conversational grammar

Exercise 2: How functions show up in conversation

Six major functional characteristics of conversation help to make it different from most written registers. Conversation

(a) relies on shared context
(b) avoids elaboration or specification of meaning
(c) is interactive
(d) expresses stance (politeness, emotion, and attitude)
(e) takes place in real time
(f) employs a vernacular range of expression (including informal or colloquial usage in grammar).

- Illustrations of five of the six characteristics are given below from Conversation I. Identify similar illustrations from Conversations II–IV for at least four out of the six major functional characteristics mentioned above. In each conversation, find two or three examples of each characteristic that you have chosen to illustrate.

It will help you to review *SGSWE* 13.2.1–6 before doing this exercise.

EXAMPLES FROM CONVERSATION I

(a) Shared context: situational use of the; ellipsis in dialogue
  B7: I want to go to the Olive Garden.
  A8: Do you really ^ ?
(b) Avoiding elaboration or specification of meaning: using simple phrases, and hedges (imprecision markers)
  B7: [They] [have] [salad].
  A5: Somehow I had a feeling ...
  A6 ... let's go do this stuff.
(c) Interactive language: questions and responses; let's-imperatives
  B3: Is that on the river walk?
  A4: No.
  B4: Oh, let's go to the Olive Garden.

(d) Expressing stance: use of so + evaluative adjective; also stance adverbs
A2: it was so horrible, I was sure I wasn't going to get a job, it was just, uh, it was really my guardian angel I got a job.
(e) Real time production: dysfluencies such as hesitators, repetitions, repairs and syntactic blends
A2 ...it was just, uh, it was really my guardian angel I got a job.
(The last part of this utterance seems to be a blend of it was really because of my guardian angel I got a job and it was really my guardian angel that got me a job.)

In the above, we have illustrated five of the six characteristics. You only need to do four (but they can be different characteristics for different conversations).

Grammar Bite B

Grammar tailored to real-time construction

Exercise 3: Dysfluencies, including incomplete utterances and syntactic blends

Because of the need for real-time production, all conversation is liable to dysfluency. However, in practice, dysfluency varies according to context. For example, Conversation I has rather little dysfluency compared with the other three samples. Sometimes marked dysfluency occurs at a particular point because of particular social or psychological pressures.

- Find at least twelve dysfluencies from Conversations III–IV.
- Label each case as a pause, hesitator, repeat, incomplete utterance, repair, or syntactic blend. (Include at least one example of each type. Remember that pauses and repetitions of words, etc. are not always signs of dysfluency.)
- Optional: Add, if you can, some comment on the reason for the dysfluency's occurrence in that part of the dialogue.

To get you started, here is an example from Conversation III, where two dysfluencies occur:

C1: The one I like is the uh, the little console: uh = hesitator; the, the = repeat (Perhaps these dysfluencies occur just here because the speaker is trying to remember the technical word console.)

Exercise 4: Ellipsis and syntactic non-clausal units

Ellipsis often results in a syntactic non-clausal unit, and it is usually possible to reconstruct the material that has been omitted (see *SGSWE* 13.4 and 13.5).

- Identify the instances of ellipsis in the following turns from Conversations I–IV:

Conversation I, A12	Conversation II, B3
Conversation II, B2	Conversation II, B4
Conversation III, B12	Conversation IV, B12
Conversation IV, B3	Conversation IV, A14

- Label each case as initial, medial, or final ellipsis, and reconstruct the material that has been omitted. Which of these cases results in a non-clausal unit?
- How does contextual information allow a hearer to reconstruct the omitted part of these utterances?

Here is an example from Conversation IV, B12 (remember ^ signals the ellipsis):

B12: 'Error'—so you might call and tell him we're not getting anything—oh, yeah now we are ^ I guess yeah. End ellipsis = now we are getting something. This is not a non-clausal unit. Contextual information: the preceding clause ... we're not getting anything. (The change from negative to positive in the elliptical clause entails a further change from anything to something.)

Grammar Bite C

Grammar, lexis, and discourse

Exercise 5: Inserts

As shown in *SGSWE* 13.7, inserts can be conveniently classified as interjections, greetings/farewells, discourse markers, attention-getters, response-getters, response forms, polite formulae, and expletives. (We will ignore here hesitators like *uh*, which were dealt with in Exercise 3.)

- Identify the inserts occurring in Conversations I–IV above. Make a list of the different inserts—types, not tokens—that you find. (Most of them will be listed in Table 13.1, but you may find one or two rarer ones. There should be eleven or twelve inserts in all.)
- The three most common inserts in Conversations I–IV are *yeah*, *oh*, and *okay*. Look at all the occurrences of these inserts, and comment in general on their function, details of use, and grammatical position. (Refer to the eight types above, but remember that inserts can have more than one function. Also be prepared to notice other distinctions of meaning within these types.)
- Now look at the occurrences of the other, less common inserts that occur in Conversations I–IV, and do the task just suggested for *yeah*, *oh* and *okay*. (Note that the word *now* in these transcripts is mainly an adverb of time, not an insert.)

Here is a suggested answer for *yeah*:

Function: Yeah is always a response form in these extracts.

Details of use: Yeah is sometimes (I B8, II A6) a straightforward 'yes' answer to a question. But mainly, it is a backchannel following declarative utterances (e.g. II A14, III B3, B7, B9, IV A4). The backchannel meaning 'I am following you' can be combined with agreement or support (e.g. in responding to another speaker's opinion or proposal, as in III B7). On other occasions (IV B6, B14) yeah comes at the end of a longer turn, where its agreement meaning is uppermost. Sometimes there is a pattern whereby one speaker takes the initiative, and the other speaker takes a lesser, supportive role. For example, in Conversation II, all the yeah responses are spoken by speaker B.

Position: Yeah usually comes at the beginning of a turn, and is sometimes a complete turn in itself (e.g. III B7). When it comes in the middle or at the end of a turn, its seems to be not so much an answer or backchannel, but an expression of acceptance or agreement.

Synthesis exercises

Exercise 6: Comparing natural and fictional conversations

Fiction dialogue imitates natural human dialogue up to a point, but intentionally or unintentionally the author may deviate from a thoroughly realistic representation of real conversation. The following text sample is from *The Old Devils* (1987), written by Kingsley Amis.

- Compare the linguistic and functional characteristics of this fictional conversation with the natural conversations analyzed in Exercises 1–6 above.
- Identify and illustrate linguistic features that are typical of natural conversation, as well as any features that would not be expected in typical natural conversation.

(For ease of reference, the lines of the text are numbered.)

'If you want my opinion,' said Gwen Cellan-Davies, 'the old boy's a terrifically distinguished citizen of Wales. Or at any rate what passes for one these days.'

Her husband was cutting the crusts off a slice of toast.

'Well, I should say that's generally accepted.'

'And Reg Burroughs is another after his thirty years of pen-pushing in first City Hall and later County Hall, for which he was duly honoured.'

'That's altogether too dismissive a view. By any reckoning Alun has done some good things. Come on now, fair play.'

'Good things for himself certainly: Brydan's Wales and that selection, whatever it's called. Both still selling nicely after all these years. Without Brydan and the Brydan industry, Alun would be nothing. Including especially his own work—those poems are all sub-Brydan.'

'Following that trail isn't such a bad—'

'Goes down a treat with the Americans and the English, you bet. But—'. Gwen put her head on one side and gave the little frowning smile she used when she was putting something to someone, often a possible negative view of a third party, 'wouldn't you have to agree that he follows Brydan at, er, an altogether lower level of imagination and craftsmanship?'

'I agree that compared with Brydan at his best, he doesn't—'

'You know what I mean.'

Exercise 7: Observing the grammar of natural conversations

Pay attention to conversations in English over the next few days—either among your friends or on the radio or television—and make a note of any utterances that seem syntactically complex or odd.

- Write down the most interesting examples and try to analyze their grammatical structure.
- If you have difficulty, bring the examples to class for group discussion.
- Discuss how these complexities or oddities are related to the add-on strategy, real-time production, or the expression of stance.

Exercise 8: Exploring additional aspects of conversational grammar

There are many other aspects of conversational grammar that we have not yet had space to explore in this workbook chapter. Some of these have not been specially considered in Chapter 13 of *SGSWE*, because they have already been discussed in earlier chapters.

This activity invites you to review and to explore ten additional topics in conversational grammar, by investigating the occurrence of these ten features in Conversations I–IV at the beginning of this chapter. To focus your attention on what is interesting about each topic, we present a table below, with the topic, a statement and question concerning that topic, and cross-references to the relevant parts of this and previous chapters. For each topic:

- Read through Conversations I–IV, noting as many occurrences as you can find relating to the grammatical feature concerned.
- Note the positions and contexts of the occurrences. For example, do they occur in Conversation II more than in Conversation I? Do they occur at the beginning, middle or end of certain turns, or when people are emotionally aroused?

- Once you have discovered what you can about this feature and its occurrences in the conversations, write something about the feature, its variations, and where it occurs, illustrating with examples. While doing this, try to give some functional explanations about why the feature is characteristic of conversation, and why it occurs in some contexts but not in others.

This is a wide-ranging task, which could take a long time if one student tackled all ten topics. Often a more rewarding strategy will be to divide the class into groups, each group taking one topic to investigate. Afterwards, each group can report its findings to the rest of the class. This then will lead back to class discussion. Good luck!

Topic to explore	Statements and questions for investigation	Refs for review
Conjunctions	The words *and, but* and *so* often occur initially in CONV. Can you identify their functions?	8.4.1–2, 11.17.4
Questions	CONV is rich in different kinds of questions. What forms and functions of questions do you find?	8.11, 13.2.3
Imperatives	Imperatives are more common in CONV than in the other registers. What are their functions?	8.13, 13.2.3
Not-negation	*Not*-negation is about twice as common in CONV as in the other registers. Can you explain why?	8.8
Short subjects	Subjects of clauses in CONV 'are short—usually just one word'. Is this true? If so, what explains it?	
Non-clausal units	Verbless units, called non-clausal units, account for a great deal of what is communicated in conversation. Is this true? If so, please illustrate and explain.	8.14, 13.4
Deictic words and pro-forms	Deictic words and pro-forms—e.g. *this, that, these* (as demonstratives), *here, then, one, do* (as a pro-verb)—are very frequent in conversation. Why is this? What are their functions?	4.7.2, 4.14, 4.15.3, 5.15
The hedge *like*	*Like*, as a hedge (or imprecision adverb), is very common in CONV. How many examples are there, and how do you distinguish them from other uses of *like* (as a verb, preposition, or conjunction)?	7.11.9, 11.13.1
Evaluative or emotive adjectives	In CONV, adjectives are rather infrequent, but most of them have evaluative or emotive meaning. How many different examples can you find, and what do you think their functions are?	7.7, 7.7.1
Modals and semi-modals	Modal and semi-modal verbs are considerably more common in CONV than in written registers. Show how these verbs are important for signalling stance. What other functions do they have?	6.9–6.9.3, 6.10–6.11

Exercise 9: Sentences for additional practice and diagramming

1 I've got something new on the computer here. (CONV)
2 I think Travis will want to go see it. (CONV)
3 Well, I know I want them to dismiss me. (CONV)
4 But I don't think we would want to have it sound like it's coming from us. (CONV)
5 This is the only thing I'm gonna ask you to treat with some sort of priority. (CONV)
6 Occasionally I do anyway, if it's somebody that I think I want to know about. (CONV)
7 Next time, let's make this the assignment.—Everybody go looking through a magazine and pick out what they think they might want to wear to a verbal interview with, uh, let's say Dodie at Gold's. (CONV)
8 He came and I didn't even let him get in the door because I thought you might want to go skating tonight. (CONV)
9 The only thing I can think of is that, you know where the snow is covering the roads, that I may have just gone over a sharp spot. (CONV)
10 If I do it the way you tell me to do it, you're gonna be all over me telling me I'm not getting enough work done. (CONV)

Answers

1 A discourse perspective on grammar

EXERCISE 1

PART A

2 False: a *prescriptive* grammar presents rules about correct and incorrect stylistic choices.
3 False: a *descriptive* grammar describes the grammatical patterns that speakers and writers follow.
4 False: a corpus can include both written texts and transcribed spoken texts on computer.
5 True.
6 True.
7 False: a *dialect* is a variety of language that is associated with speakers.
8 False: a *register* is a variety of language that is associated with certain characteristics of a communicative setting.
9 True.
10 False: there is considerable grammatical variability within 'standard English'.
11 False: there is *no* official group that designates 'standard English'.

PART B

There are many possible answers. Some examples are:

1 A specific sub-register: methodology sections of medical research articles; a more general register: research papers or academic writing.
2 A geographic dialect: the variety of English spoken in Texas.
3 A social dialect: the language of middle-income Hispanic women.
4 A prescriptive rule for English: never 'split' an infinitive (*Bush promised ... to* ***not*** *raise taxes*).

EXERCISE 2

1 *you know, I don't know* = (b) conversational form, and (d) incomplete utterance; *so, he would* = (d) incomplete utterance; *see* = (b) conversational form; *me* = (b) conversational form (note: this example might be considered 'non-standard' by prescriptive grammarians, but it is widely used in conversations across dialects)
2 *oh* = (b) conversational form; *there was* = (a) non-standard; *kinda* = (b) conversational form, and (c) transcription that reflects pronunciation; *give you that* = (a) non-standard; *well* = (b) conversational form

EXERCISE 3

PART A

1 Conversation, fiction, newspapers, and academic prose.
2 Academic prose and fiction have highest frequencies; newspapers have the lowest frequency.
3 *and* is most common across all registers; fiction and academic prose have the highest frequency.
4 *but* is most frequent in conversation and fiction.
5 *or* is most frequent in academic prose.

PART B

There are many ways to describe the use of the coordinators. Here is an example:

But is used to show contrast in the conversation samples. It appears to have several specific uses in these samples. Sometimes *but* marks contrasts within a speaker's own ideas (1, 3, 4, 5). These contrasts can be used to reassure the other participants in the conversation (3, 4), or they can be used when a speaker wants to clarify the last speaker's utterance (2, 6). These functions are useful in conversation since the interactions among people are an important concern of that register. In academic prose, on the other hand, *or* is used in giving specific and thorough descriptions and explanations, which are important for conveying precise, accurate information. For example, *or* can present alternative conditions or choices (2, 4–8), specific and general terms (3), and collections of items covered in a study (1).

2 Words and word classes

EXERCISE 1

1 30 tokens; 15 types: *don't* 4, *let* 4, *me* 4, *do* 2, *that* 1, *okay* 2, *marry* 3, *Justin* 1, *not* 1, *him* 2, *I* 2, *care* 1, *what* 1, *say* 1, *just* 1
2 30 tokens; 25 types: *the* 5, *great* 1, *metalworking* 1, *centres* 1, *of* 2, *time* 1, *were* 1, *in* 1, *Mesopotamia* 1, *Iran* 1, *and* 1, *Egypt* 1, *best* 1, *works* 1, *Jazira* 1, *have* 1, *an* 1, *edge* 1, *on* 1, *others* 1, *inlay* 1, *depicts* 1, *intricate* 1, *little* 1, *scenes* 1

EXERCISE 2

re-consider-at-ion; un-employ-ment-;
re-view-ed; over-care-ful-ness;
ex-chang-ing; heal-th-i-er;
in-depend-ent; act-iv-ity;
streng-th-en-s; dis-respect-ful;
un-fortun-ate-ly

Note: You will find that the morphemes above sometimes have variant spellings with or without an -*e*. In English this is common, and there may also be changes of pronunciation: e.g. ***race***, ***rac****-ing*; ***wise***, ***wis****-dom*; ***strong***, ***streng****th*. We will look at this more closely in Exercise 12.

EXERCISE 3

LIFE: *life, lives* (noun)
LIVE: *live, lives, lived, living* (verb)
BUILD: *build, building, built, builds* (verb)
BUILDING: *building, buildings* (noun)
SOON: *soonest, sooner* (adverb)
LIVELY: *lively, liveliest, livelier* (adjective)
Ambiguous: *lives* (noun or verb); *live* (verb or adjective); *building* (verb or noun); *living* (verb or noun). *Build* and *builds* might also be considered ambiguous because they can be used as nouns, as in 'He has a good build' or 'They have good builds'.

EXERCISE 4

1. *get* = verb; *screw* = noun; *driver* = noun; *just* = adverb; *bring* = verb; *tool* = noun; *box* = noun; *be* = verb; *careful* = adjective; *take* = verb; *light* = noun; *fixture* = noun; *just* = adverb; *take* = verb; *screw* = noun; *driver* = noun; *take* = verb; *circuits* = noun; *run* = verb; *back* = adverb; *move* = verb; *want* = verb; *take* = verb; *guess* = verb; *put* = verb; *shoes* = noun
2. *take* = verb; *challenge* = noun; *integrate* = verb; *natural* = adjective; *way* = noun; *newest* = adjective; *discoveries* = noun; *plate* = noun; *tectonics* = noun; *marine* = adjective; *geology* = noun; *geochemistry* = noun; *geophysics* = noun; *lunar* = adjective; *Martian** = adjective; *geology* = noun; *traditional* = adjective; *discussions* = noun; *topics* = noun; *geomorphology* = noun; *sedimentation* = noun; *petrology* = noun; *volcanism* = noun; *structural* = adjective; *geology* = noun; *introduced* = verb; *very* = adverb; *new* = adjective; *expense* = noun; *eliminating* = verb; *essential* = adjective; *material* = noun; *traditional* = adjective; *modern* = adjective; *good* = adjective; *course* = noun; *geology* = noun; *cover* = verb

(*Note: *Martian* might also be considered a noun, but see SGSWE 7.6 on adjectives that are affiliative classifiers.)

3. *trail* = noun; *opens* = verb; *orchard* = noun; *trees* = noun; *stand* = verb; *shadows* = noun; *horse's* = noun; *hooves* = noun; *crunch* = verb; *cool* = adjective; *mud* = noun; *left* = adjective; *sun* = noun; *is* = verb; *yellow* = adjective; *sliver* = noun; *distant* = adjective; *line* = noun; *watch* = verb; *rocking* = verb; *broad-backed* = adjective; *horse* = noun; *daylight* = noun; *creeps* = verb; *brown* = adjective; *flower* = noun; *stems* = noun; *field* = noun; *mist* = noun; *right* = adjective; *reminds* = verb; *dream* = noun; *had* = verb; *wind* = noun; *quickens* = verb

Verbs are especially frequent in the conversation passage; nouns and adjectives are especially frequent in the academic and news passages. This is consistent with the frequencies presented in *SGSWE*.

EXERCISE 5

2. *pretty*: 2a = adverb; 2b = adjective
3. *horse*: 3a = verb; 3b = noun
4. *abstract*: 4a = verb; 4b = noun; 4c = adjective
5. *fast*: 5a = adverb; 5b = noun; 5c = adjective

EXERCISE 6

2. *running*: 2a = noun (preceded by the definite article); 2b = adjective (compare: *feet which were running*)
3. *drinking*: 3a = adjective (compare: *a man who drinks*); 3b = noun (compare: *a cup for drinking*)
4. *offering*: 4a = noun (preceded by the semi-determiner *another*); 4b = verb (only verbs are followed by object noun phrases)
5. *exciting*: 5a = adjective (the preceding word *very* shows that this is a gradable adjective); 5b = verb (followed by a direct object, *any remarks*)

EXERCISE 7

1. B: *he* = pronoun; *'s* = auxiliary verb; *around* = preposition; A: *since* = subordinator; *I* = pronoun; *him* = pronoun; *at* = preposition; *the* = determiner; *I* = pronoun; *have* = auxiliary verb; *him* = pronoun; B: *did* = auxiliary verb; *he* = pronoun; to = preposition; *you* = pronoun; A: *'cause* = subordinator; *I* = pronoun; *do* = auxiliary

verb; *n't* = negator; *he* = pronoun; *me* = pronoun

2 *any* = determiner; *will* = auxiliary verb; *from* = preposition; *to* = preposition; *by* = preposition; *who* = other; *in* = preposition; *that* = subordinator; *they* = pronoun; *in* = preposition; *their* = determiner; *the* = determiner; *to* = preposition; *the* = determiner; *of* = preposition; *the* = determiner

Exercise 8

1 *she, will, she, 's , me, But, she, is, n't, and, if, I, her, after, a, she, will, that, it, and, me*

2 *for, was, from, the, the, of, much, and, much, that, every, in, his, At, an, he, had, his, for, the*

Exercise 9

2 *can* = modal auxiliary; *tell* = lexical

3 *do* = primary auxiliary; *think* = lexical; *will* = modal auxiliary; *have* = primary lexical

4 *guess* = lexical; *must* = modal auxiliary; *have* = primary auxiliary; *bought* = lexical

5 *should* = modal auxiliary; *have* = primary auxiliary; *gone* = lexical; *introduced* = lexical; *asked* = lexical; *are* = primary lexical; *would* = modal auxiliary; *have* = primary auxiliary; *been* = primary lexical; *would* = modal auxiliary; *have* = primary auxiliary; *killed* = lexical

Exercise 10

Many answers are possible. Here are some examples:

Long:

Adjective: It's been a long process to finally terminate the negotiations. (NEWS)

Verb: They long for the stability of a period that in fact was known for stagnation. (NEWS)

Adverb: Jordan wasn't gone long. (NEWS)

Like:

Verb: Do you really like this? (CONV)

Preposition: Just leave it like that. (CONV)

Subordinator: It sounds like you're talking to a bunch of kindergarteners. (CONV)

Adverb (of imprecision): No it was like only forty seconds. (CONV)

Discourse marker: I was just like oh wow, yeah. (CONV)

That:

Demonstrative determiner: Bernstein called that proposal unworkable. (NEWS)

Demonstrative pronoun: I don't say that lightly. (CONV)

Subordinator: They just said that they worked with you once. (CONV)

Relative pronoun: They found sanctuary in a ranch-style house in Prescott that was built by Gus Pabst and Audrey Schlitz. (NEWS)

After:

Preposition: 70 percent placed in jobs after graduation. (NEWS)

Subordinator: After graduating from Lakewood High School, Bollenbach's father got him a job scooping ice cream at Disneyland. (NEWS)

Adjective: He returned the day after. (FICT)

Adverb: The bar crowd went after, hurrying down single-file and loud. (FICT)

Exercise 11

remanstroted = verb, *chranger* = adjective, *bitegration* = noun, *charestarob* = noun, *wisotrotein* = noun, *grangest* = adjective, *unintandal* = adjective, *redectative* = adjective, *hyperextentment* = noun, *lawerity* = noun, *divarently* = adverb, *trischaemic* = adjective

Exercise 12

1 Drop silent 'e' before a suffix that begins with a vowel.

2 If the last syllable of the stem is stressed, and the final letter is a 'stop' (e.g. *p, b, t, d, k, g*), then double that consonant before adding -ed or -ing.

3a If the last letter of the stem is a 'sibilant' (*-s, z, sh, ch*), add -e before -s.

3b If the last letter of the stem is the vowel *–y* (e.g. *cry*, but not *play*), add *-e* before *-s* (see Rule 4).

4a If the final syllable of the stem ends in the vowel *-y* (e.g. *cry*, but not *play*), then change *y* to *i* before adding *-ed* or *-es*.

4b If the stem ends in the vowel *-ie*, then change *ie* to *y* before adding *-ing*.

Note: There are additional rules of spelling that are not covered here, such as doubling final *r* and *n* (as in *occurring* and *beginning*).

3 Introduction to phrases and clauses

Exercise 1

2 [He]^{NP} [is]^{VP} [a sweet boy]^{NP}. [He]^{NP} [came]^{VP} [to my wedding]^{PP} and [he]^{NP} [looked]^{VP} [so handsome]^{AdjP}.

3 [You]^{NP} [must have]^{VP} [some fun]^{NP} [with that]^{PP}.

4 [I]^{NP} [also]^{AdvP} [told]^{VP} [him]^{NP} [the story of my life]^{NP}.

5 [The rebels]^{NP} [had held]^{VP} [Makati]^{NP} [since Saturday]^{PP}.

Exercise 2

Part A

1 What did you do [with [the cookies]]?
2 I can just come [by [her house]] [on [the way]].
3 I think she went [to [the prom]] [with [him]].
4 Wisteria branches eventually grow [to [tree-size width]] and are meant [for [the sturdiest pergolas and arbors]].

Part B

1 I've met [a bunch [of [people]]].
2 My eyes were [[often] full [of [tears]]].
3 He was a poet, [a teacher [of [philosophy]]], and [a man [with [a terrible recent history]]].
4 David Garrow, a scholar who won [a Pulitzer [for [his biography [of [King]]]]], was [skeptical [about [the whole notion [of [an autobiography]]]]].

Exercise 3

2 [Taco]^{S} [is]^{V} [really]^{A} [a smart dog]^{SP}.
3 [Some guy]^{S} [died]^{V} [at twenty]^{A} [of a heart attack]^{A}.
4 [Just]^{A} [give]^{V} [them]^{IO} [hot chocolate]^{DO}.
5 [The gallery]^{S} [became]^{V} [a reality]^{SP} [in June]^{A}.
6 [He]^{S} [considered]^{V} [it]^{DO} [a dumb question]^{OP}.
7 [During her short life]^{A}, [her two sisters]^{S} [bought]^{V} [her]^{IO} [a small teddy bear]^{DO}.
8 [The Portuguese]^{S} [named]^{V} [the place]^{DO} [Bom Bahia]^{OP} [for its harbour]^{A}.
9 [She]^{S} [went]^{V} [crazy]^{SP} [out in L.A.]^{A} [for a few months]^{A} [back in 1987]^{A}.

Exercise 4

2 [The cheetah]^{S} [is]^{V} [the fastest animal in the world]^{SP} = S + V + SP, copular
3 [I]^{S} [haven't gotten]^{V} [Chris]^{IO} [his gift]^{DO} [yet]^{A} = S + V + IO + DO, ditransitive
4 [We]^{S} [were]^{V} [in a meeting]^{A} [all morning]^{A} [with Barbara]^{A} = S + V + A, copular
5 [The boy]^{S} [lives]^{V} [in Washington]^{A} [now]^{A} = S + V + A, intransitive
6 [He]^{S} [really]^{A} [told]^{V} [his father]^{IO} [the truth]^{DO} = S + V + IO + DO, ditransitive
7 [I]^{S} ['d have called]^{V} [him]^{DO} [a liar]^{OP} [for sure]^{A} = S + V + DO + OP, complex transitive
8 [Here]^{A} [I]^{S} [find]^{V} [you]^{DO} [in some dark plot against me]^{A} = S + V + DO + A, complex transitive
9 [They]^{S} [made]^{V} [her]^{IO} [this incredible offer]^{DO} = S + V + IO + DO, ditransitive
10 [So]^{A} [that]^{S} [made]^{V} [her]^{DO} [popular]^{OP} = S + V + DO + OP, complex transitive

Exercise 5

2

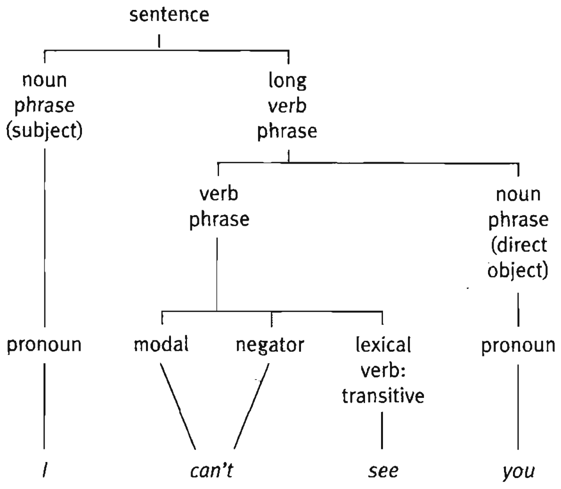

3

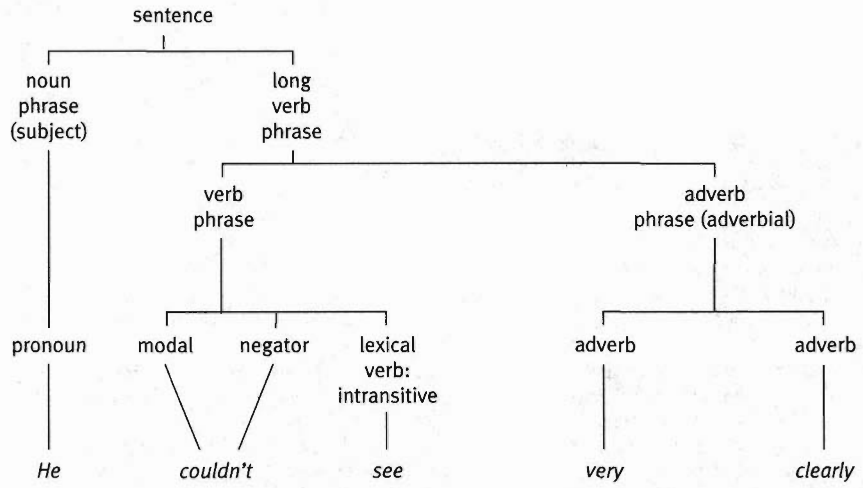

4 Nouns, pronouns, and the simple noun phrase

Exercise 1

1 *books* = common, countable, concrete; *millions* = common, countable, quantifying; *copies* = common, countable, concrete; *interviewer* = common, countable, concrete

2 *Kant* and *Laplace* = proper, concrete (countability is not relevant); *mass* = common, countable, quantifying; *gas* = common, uncountable, concrete

3 *minibar* = common, countable, concrete; *candy* = common, uncountable, concrete; *water* = common, uncountable, concrete; *drinks* = common, countable, concrete; *dairy* = common, uncountable, concrete; *products* = common, countable, concrete; *kind* = common, countable, species; *munchies* = common, uncountable (occurring only in plural form), concrete; *research* = common, uncountable, abstract; *sleep* = common, uncountable, abstract; *Jeremy Baka* = proper, concrete (countability is not relevant); *Hilton* = proper, concrete (countability is not relevant); *spokesman* = common, countable, concrete

4 *guys* = common, countable, concrete; *bunch* = common, countable, quantifying; *places* = common, countable, concrete; *New Mexico* = proper, concrete (countability is not relevant)

Exercise 2

Part A

2 *rights* = countable, plural form

3 *life* = countable, it follows the indefinite article *a*

4 *order* = uncountable, it follows the determiner *some*, and as a plural it would have a different meaning

5 *war* = uncountable, it cannot take a singular determiner (*a*) or plural ending with this meaning

6 *matter* = countable, it follows the indefinite article *a*

7 *face* = uncountable, it cannot take a singular determiner (*a*) or plural ending with this meaning

8 *football* = countable, because it follows the indefinite article *a*

9 *sex* = uncountable, in this meaning it cannot take a singular determiner (*a*)

Part B

11 *sex* = countable, it refers to one of the two *sexes*, male and female

12 *face* = countable, it refers to one person's face, not the concept of face as in 7 above

13 *time* = countable, *every* is a determiner always followed by a countable noun (singular)

14 *right* = uncountable, it occurs without a determiner (in the singular) and refers to

an abstraction, not a single *right*

15 *life* = uncountable, the phrase *real life* cannot take a preceding determiner; it refers to an abstraction, rather than individual *lives*

16 *matter* = uncountable, it occurs without a determiner

17 *order* = countable, it follows a singular determiner (*an*)

18 *war* = countable, *a* (the indefinite article) precedes *war*

EXERCISE 3

1 When the unexpected appears to be all part of the plan
ØAlan Hutchinson reports on the behind-the-scenes organisation for yesterday's visit to ØEdinburgh by ØPrince Charles. ØPolice motorcycles revved into Øaction and Østrategically-placed plain clothes officers exchanged Ølast minute information over their walkie-talkies. But just as the security net began to tighten in the grounds of the Palace of ØHolyrood House in ØEdinburgh yesterday a group of ØJapanese tourists made an unscheduled appearance.
Ambiguous gaps: *the behind-the-scenes information; behind-the-scenes information* is also possible.

2 A woman pulls a boy by his little hand towards the escalator leading down to the Piccadilly Line. If only the woman had paused for a moment to inspect the scrawled notice that greets the unwary traveller every morning. 'I am sorry for any inconvenience caused to all our customers during the period that the down escalator has been out of service. This fault is due to a shortage of an electrical part. I cannot give any estimate of its arrival. Please accept my apologies.'

EXERCISE 4

1 *the people* = cataphoric (pointing ahead to the *clients*); *that list* = anaphoric (the use of *that* suggests a psychological distance from the speaker)

2 *this month* = situational (the use of *this* shows the current month is being referred to); *the boarding-up* = cataphoric; *the window* = cataphoric; *the post office* = situational; *those monstrous red pillar-boxes* = cataphoric or situational (the use of *those* may suggest a distancing from the speaker); *this fresh eyesore* = anaphoric (the use of *this* is also probably somewhat introductory and the type of architecture will be the focus of the continuing discourse)

3 *the purpose* = cataphoric; *the student* = generic; *the student's progress* = generic (*the* belongs to *student* rather than to *progress*); *those items* = cataphoric (the use of *those* signals a more distant reference); *this diary* = anaphoric (*this* is used since the diary was mentioned in the immediately preceding context and its importance is emphasized)

4 *this guy* = introductory reference

5 *the beach* = generic or situational; *that dress* = situational (*that* is used in referring more 'distantly' to the addressee than to the speaker); *these Snapples* = situational (*these* is used because the speaker is presumed to be holding the Snapples at the time of speaking); *the bottle, the bottle* = generic (or indirect anaphoric because the Snapples come in a bottle)

EXERCISE 5

Ending in /z/: *beds, cares, clubs, eggs, things, sons, trees, waves*
preceding sounds: /d/, *vowel*(+/r/), /b/, /g/, /ŋ/, /n/, /iː/, /v/
Ending in /s/: *births, cups, minutes, risks, rocks, techniques*
preceding sounds: /θ/, /p/, /t/, /k/
Ending in /ɪz/: *ages, churches, diseases, masses, places, prizes*
preceding sounds: /dʒ/, /tʃ/, /z/, /s/

EXERCISE 6

1 *his company's* = subjective genitive; *Shakespeare's* = other (genitive of origin); *A Midsummer Night's* = time genitive; *Saltburn's* = other (genitive of place)

2 *last week's* = time genitive; *children's* = classifying genitive; *Waterstone's* = independent genitive

3 *Bank's* = this would normally be interpreted as subjective genitive: i.e. 'the Bank *has lost* money', but in this joke headline, 'other (genitive of origin)' is more appropriate to the meaning: 'the Bank *caused* or *originated* the loss'; *Europe's* = other (genitive of place); *women's* = classifying genitive

EXERCISE 7

wife = feminine; *partner* = personal; *lord* = masculine; *horse** = neuter; *secretary* = personal; *problem* = neuter; *air* = neuter;

niece = feminine; *chairman** = masculine; *sister* = feminine; *egg* = neuter; *writer* = personal; *nurse* = personal; *pet** = neuter; *salesperson* = personal; *horsewoman* = feminine; *sea* = neuter; *John* = masculine
*Unclear cases: *chairman* is sometimes used for women as well as men, so it could be 'personal'; *horse* and *pet* are sometimes referred to as *he* or *she* and so could be 'personal'.

EXERCISE 8

business = derivation, busy + ness; *self-motivation* = compound, self + motivation; *songwriter* = compound, song + writer; *education* = derivation, educate + tion; *talk* = conversion, from verb; *skydiving* = compound, sky + diving; *counterintelligence* = derivation, counter + intelligence; *crackdown* = compound, crack + down; *professional(s)* = conversion, from adjective; *highlight* = compound, high + light; *partnership* = derivation, partner + ship

EXERCISE 9

2 *it, you*
3 *you*
4 *it*
5 *his*
6 *her*
7 *that*
8 *none, no*

EXERCISE 10

EastEnders star Tom Eytle sang to the Duchess of York as she attended a charity tea party. Mr Eytle, grandfather Jules Tavernier in the hit BBC1 soap, played the guitar and sang *Summertime* to the Duchess at her request. 'I would love to hear *Summertime*. It seems appropriate for such a nice day,' she had told him. Then she sat beside Mr Tavernier and listened. As the song finished she applauded and said: 'Thank you very much. I haven't heard that song since I was at school and I really love it.' (NEWS)
she = the Duchess of York; *her* = the Duchess of York: this is actually a possessive determiner, but it has an antecedent as a personal pronoun does; *It* = Summertime; *she* = the Duchess of York; *him* = Mr Eytle; *she* = the Duchess of York; *she* = the Duchess of York; *it* = that song

EXERCISE 11

I and *you* refer to the speaker and hearer respectively in each occurrence: there is no need to list them separately.

1 *they, them* = personal pronoun most likely referring to the containers (though reference is not entirely clear)
2 *it* = personal pronoun reference unclear (whatever it was that 'I needed to do'); (note that *their* is a possessive determiner, not a possessive pronoun); *those* = demonstrative pronoun referring to keys; *yours* = possessive pronoun referring to your keys
3 *we* = personal pronoun referring to speaker and others; *that* = demonstrative pronoun referring to peanut butter; *it* = personal pronoun, reference unclear; *it* = personal pronoun, reference unclear; *myself* = reflexive pronoun referring to the speaker
4 *none* = indefinite pronoun referring to 'no papers'; *mine* = personal pronoun referring to 'my papers'

EXERCISE 12

1 noun heads = 10 (*project, report, ways, sign, times, number, trends, organisation, education, UK*); pronoun heads = 1 (*It*)
2 noun heads = 13 (*purpose, grammar, student, language, grammar, primer, grammar, coverage, facts, language, form, control, language*); pronoun heads = 3 (*This, it, it*)
3 noun heads = 7 (*girl, cats, mom, cats, pile, years, cats*); pronoun heads = 11 (*me, I, it, she, I, one, I, one, I, you, one*)
4 noun heads = 5 (*suitcase, stuff, Christmas, Jack, Elsa*); pronoun heads = 8 (*I, who, this, one, Who, it, I, that*)

The academic prose texts use more noun heads in the noun phrases, and the conversation texts use more pronoun heads.

5 Verbs

EXERCISE 1

2 *pleaded* = main, lexical, regular, single-word; *were* = auxiliary, primary; *placed* = main, lexical, regular, single-word
3 *said* = main, lexical, irregular, single-word; *found out* = main, lexical, irregular, multi-word; *are* = auxiliary, primary; *dying* = main, lexical, regular, single-word
4 *has* = auxiliary, primary; *declined* = main, lexical, regular, single-word; *run* = main, lexical, irregular, single-word; *could* = auxiliary, modal; *have* = auxiliary, primary; *won* = main, lexical,

irregular, single-word

5 *must* = auxiliary, modal; *be* = auxiliary, primary; *kept* = main, lexical, irregular, single-word; *connect up with* = main, lexical, regular, multi-word

6 *come on* = main, lexical, irregular, multi-word; *does[n't]* = auxiliary, primary; *want* = main, lexical, regular, single-word

7 *bind* = main, lexical, irregular, single-word; *found* = main, lexical, irregular, single-word

EXERCISE 2

Conversation = 16 lexical verbs: *fired, going, drinking, going, remember, reading, bringing, show off, Come on, give, see, go, get, think, want, know*
Academic prose = 6 lexical verbs: *requires, inform, occurred, provide, happened, exists*
It is clear that lexical verbs are very much more common in the conversation extract than in the academic prose extract, which is consistent with the findings in *SGSWE*.

EXERCISE 3

Because of the fuzzy boundaries of these semantic classes, alternative answers are sometimes offered.

2 *asked* = communication; *told* = communication; *wanted* = mental

3 *met* = activity; *proposed* = communication

4 *moved* = activity; *helped* = causative; *buy* = activity

5 *stayed* = existence

6 *asserted* = communication; *occurred* = occurrence

7 *said* = communication; *think* = mental; *get* = activity; *looked (at)* = activity or mental; *smiled* = activity; *give* = activity or causative

8 *associated* = existence; *involves* = existence; *resulting* = causative

9 *wait* = activity; *getting* = activity; *looks* = existence or mental; *got* = activity or existence; *stop* = aspectual; *complaining* = communication

EXERCISE 4

2 *moved* in 2a describes the speaker's *mental* response, but in 2b describes the physical *activity* of moving

3 *keep* in 3a describes a physical *activity*, but it has *aspectual* meaning in 3b (i.e. that the 'forgetting the tape's on' happens repeatedly)

4 *admitted* in 4a refers to a *causative* action which allows someone to enter hospital, but in 4b *admitted* describes an act of *communication*; in 4a *admitted* could also be seen to describe an *activity*

5 *face* in 5a describes a physical *activity*, but it refers to a *mental* act or state in 5b (with a meaning similar to *admit*)

6 *made* is a *causative* verb in 6a (with a meaning similar to *caused*); a *communication* verb in 6b (with a meaning similar to *said*); an *activity* verb in 6c; and a *mental* or *activity* verb in 6d (a mistake could refer to one's thinking or an action)

EXERCISE 5

2 *undo*: *un* = prefix, *do* = verb base form

3 *discredited*: *dis* = prefix, *credit* = verb base form, converted from a noun

4 *itemize*: *ize* = suffix, *item* = noun base form

5 *flatten (out)*: *en* = suffix, *flat* = adjective base form

6 *familiarize*: *ize* = suffix, *familiar* = adjective base form
reawaken: *re* = prefix, *awaken* = verb base form
reactivate: *re* = prefix, *activate* = verb base form

Note: in 6, the base forms *awaken* and *activate* are themselves derived verbs, with *awake* (adjective) and *active* (adjective) as their bases.

EXERCISE 6

PART A

2 *went* = intransitive; *to Disneyland* = optional adverbial

3 *smiled* = intransitive; *into my eyes* = optional adverbial
got = monotransitive; *news* = direct object; *for you* = optional adverbial (or: *news for you* = direct object)

4 *found* = monotransitive; *it* = direct object; *in the street* = optional adverbial
ate = monotransitive; *it* = direct object
want = monotransitive; *that other piece* = direct object

5 *bark* = intransitive; *a lot* = optional adverbial
looks = copular; *really tired* = subject predicative

6 *called* = complex transitive; *her* = direct object; *a stupid idiot* = object predicative

PART B

7 *put* = complex transitive; *it* = direct object; *on that table* = obligatory adverbial

8 *considered* = complex transitive; *them* = direct object; *a serious threat to U.S. peacekeeping troops* = object predicative
9 *published* = monotransitive (passive, and hence no direct object); *last year* = optional adverbial
found = monotransitive; *that many HMO doctors prescribe minor tranquilizers* = direct object
prescribe = monotransitive; *minor tranquilizers* = direct object
10 *started* = intransitive; *about a decade after two American botanists made ... Kew Gardens* = optional adverbial
made = monotransitive; *a visit to English that included a stop at London's prestigious Kew Gardens* = direct object
included = monotransitive; *a stop at London's prestigious Kew Gardens* = direct object
11 *seemed* = copular; *sharp* = subject predicative; *at first* = optional adverbial

EXERCISE 7

2a *bring* = monotransitive; *our friends* = direct object
2b *brought* = ditransitive; *him* = indirect object; *a plate of food* = direct object
3a *begun* = monotransitive; *its controversial plan to compensate the three main domestic airlines* = direct object
3b *begins* = intransitive; *on November 1* = optional adverbial
4a *promise* = ditransitive; *you* = indirect object; *that* = direct object
4b *promised* = ditransitive; *Carey* = indirect object; no direct object
4c *promised* = ditransitive; *further amnesties* = direct object; *for political prisoners* = indirect object (this clause could alternatively be analyzed as a monotransitive verb with a direct object = further amnesties for political prisoners)
4d *promise* = intransitive
5a *get* = intransitive (alternatively, this could be considered transitive with ellipsis: 'you don't get [anything]')
5b *got* = monotransitive; *brown teeth* = direct object
5c *gets* = copular; *through* = obligatory adverbial; *completely* = optional adverbial
5d *get* = ditransitive; *us both* = indirect object; *a pie* = direct object
5e *got* = copular; *any hotter* = subject predicative
5f *get* = complex transitive; *her clothes* = direct object; *too dirty* = object predicative

For more on the use of *have got* and *have gotten* see *SGSWE* 6.4.1b.

EXERCISE 8

2 *went out there* = free combination
3 *picked up* = transitive phrasal verb; threw ... *at* = free combination (*threw ... at* could also be analysed as a prepositional verb)
4 *thought about* = prepositional verb (*thought about* could also be analysed as a free combination)
5 *depended on* = prepositional verb
6 *put up with* = phrasal-prepositional verb
7 *carry out* = transitive phrasal verb
8 *carry ... out* = free combination
9 *went ahead with* = phrasal-prepositional verb
10 *boils down to* = phrasal-prepositional verb; *get out of* = phrasal-prepositional verb; *Come on* = intransitive phrasal verb

EXERCISE 9

2 *does[n't]* = auxiliary, *do* insertion; *did* = main verb; *does[n't]* = auxiliary, *do* insertion; *did* = auxiliary, *do* insertion
3 *has* = auxiliary, perfect; *been* = auxiliary, progressive; *is* = auxiliary, progressive; *had* = auxiliary, perfect; *been* = auxiliary, progressive
4 *be* = main verb; *'s* = main verb (it appears *'s* was going to be a main verb although the construction remains incomplete); *'s* = main verb; *'s* = part of semi-modal; *has* = main verb; *is* = main verb; *'m* = main verb (or alternative analysis: *'m* = auxiliary, passive); *have[n't]* = auxiliary, perfect; *do* = auxiliary, *do* insertion; *'s* = auxiliary, perfect
5 *was* = main verb; *have* = part of semi-modal; *'s* = main verb; *have* = main verb; *do* = auxiliary, *do* insertion; *have* = main verb; *being* = main verb; *were* = auxiliary, progressive; *are* = auxiliary, progressive; *Are* = part of semi-modal; *had* = auxiliary, perfect; *have* = auxiliary, perfect

EXERCISE 10

2 *appeared*: 2a = intransitive verb; 2b = copular verb
3 *stay*: 3a = copular verb; 3b = intransitive verb

4 *looked*: 4a = copular verb (twice); 4b = intransitive verb
5 *smell* = copular verb; transitive verb; intransitive verb
6 *went*: 6a = intransitive verb; 6b = copular verb
7 *got*: 7a = copular verb; 7b = transitive verb
8 *proved*: 8a = transitive verb; 8b = copular verb

EXERCISE 11

Turn: complements = *purple, yellow, orange, darker, pale, golden brown*; suggested meaning range = change of color/hue/saturation
Come: complements = *alive, awake, loose, unstuck, clean, true*; suggested meaning range = change to a positive quality (e.g. from *dirty* to *clean*) or change from attachment towards separation (*loose, unstuck*)
Go: complements = *crazy, mad, nuts, insane, wrong, bad, cold, completely broke, limp, deaf*; suggested meaning range = change to a bad state of affairs, especially to madness

EXERCISE 12

1 *produced*: animate (logical) subject = *no one*
provided: animate (logical) subject = *neither Honderich nor Eccleshall*
seems: inanimate (logical) subject = *it*
offers: inanimate (logical) subject = *Quinton's framework*
describes: animate (logical) subject = *Quinton*
provide: inanimate (logical) subject = *axioms Quinton describes*
pointed out: omitted animate (logical) subject
2 *possess*: inanimate (logical) subject = *power mosfets*
withstand: inanimate (logical) subject = *they*
used: omitted animate (logical) subject
exhibit: inanimate (logical) subject = *Power mosfets*
avalanched: omitted animate (logical) subject
clamp: omitted inanimate (logical) subject
need: inanimate (logical) subject = *they*
explains: inanimate (logical) subject = *The note*
lead: inanimate (logical) subject = *the series resistance of the mosfet*
using: inanimate (logical) subject = *one*
3 *find*: animate (logical) subject = *Investigators*
exhibited: animate (logical) subject = *some male pilots*
says: inanimate (logical) subject = *the report*
affect: inanimate (logical) subject = *it*
said: inanimate (logical) subject = *The 239-page report*
placed and *left*: animate (logical) subject = *a further hardship*
fly: omitted animate (logical) subject
indicated: inanimate (logical) subject = *The leaked records*

Suggested reasons: In academic writing (**1** and **2**) inanimate subjects show how the products of science and engineering (e.g. theories, inventions) are key topics of academic discourse. People are less important. In newswriting, as in academic prose, linguistic entities like records and reports are likely to be the subjects of verbs: in these types of discourse, such documents are often more important than the people who wrote them.

6 Variation in the verb phrase: tense, aspect, voice, and modal use

EXERCISE 1

2 *have* = present tense
3 *wondered* = past tense; *would stop* = modal
4 *does take* = present tense
5 *brought* = past tense; *likes* = present tense
6 *have* = present tense; *should go* = modal
7 *may be mistaken* = modal; *would have chosen* = modal

EXERCISE 2

2 *like* = present time, state; *'s* = present time, state
3 *go* = future time
4 *goes* = present time, action in progress
5 *'m* = present time, state; *bakes* = present time, habitual action; *brings* = present time, habitual action
6 *know* = present time, state; *leaves* = future time
7 *know* = present time, state; *understand* = present time, state; *'s* = present time, state; *goes* = past time (this is a story in the historical present, as you can tell from the opening *I said*); *think* = present time, state; *'s* = present time, state

8 *comes* = present time, habitual action; *is* = present time, state; *says* = present time, habitual action; *runs* = present time, habitual action (or, alternatively, the verb could convey a state, if you take 'it runs good' to mean 'the car is in good condition')

EXERCISE 3

CONVERSATION

present tense = 8: *is, 's, know, get, guess, hear, has, think*
past tense = 1: *forgot*
modal verbs = 7: *should do, should make, could go out, (could) hunt*, 'll have, would ... pass, would like*

ACADEMIC PROSE

present tense = 8: *answers, are, mean, is*, uses, appears, suggests, is*
past tense = 0
modal verbs = 1: *may be treated*

*Notes: *could go out and hunt* could be counted as one verb phrase. *That is* could be considered a linking adverbial with a fixed form, so *is* would not be counted as a verb phrase.

Present tense is more common than past tense in both the conversation and academic prose samples. Modals are used more in the conversation than academic prose. This is generally consistent with the findings in *SGSWE*, although the findings show that academic prose typically has a slightly higher frequency of modals than the sample here.

EXERCISE 4

2 *has been living* = perfect progressive
3 *think* = simple; *might be going* = progressive
4 *has lived* = perfect; *has become* = perfect
5 *could have used* = perfect
6 *had decided* = perfect; *had been giving* = perfect progressive
7 *think* = simple; *was* = simple; *was sweating* = progressive
8 *had been sitting* = perfect progressive
9 *is* = simple; *to be* = simple; *to have acquired* = perfect
10 *was ... saying* = progressive; *does ... want* = simple

EXERCISE 5

2 *has been, have failed* = present perfect; describe a situation that has existed since the time when some members stopped paying their dues
3 *has been* = present perfect; describes a situation that has occurred ever since he arrived
4 *had hoped* = past perfect; describes the situation that existed before March 19
5 *'ve put, 've done, have ... worked, 've done, have ... worked* = present perfect; describe the situation since some indefinite time in the past

EXERCISE 6

simple aspect = 32: *bet, 's, are, know, doesn't, told, used to take, were, goes, was, go (in), sit*, 's, can see, 's, remains, used to bake, was, did, was, likes, do, can be, think, 's, went, visit, had, 'd get up, know, wouldn't get up, would (sort of) slip*
progressive aspect = 3: *'s drinking, 'd be cooking, ('d be) cleaning**
perfect aspect = 2: *'ve (always) had, have just talked*
*Notes: *go in and sit* and *'d be cooking and cleaning* could be considered single, coordinated verb phrases.

Simple aspect is the most common aspect in this conversation passage. Progressive and perfect are both equally rare. This is consistent with the findings in *SGSWE*.

EXERCISE 7

2 *are captured and used* = passive
3 *is shown* = passive; *crosses* = active
4 *flew* = intransitive; *settled* = intransitive; *had taken* = active; *was taken* = passive; *accepted* = active; *were ... prepared* = passive; *became* = copular; *had ... strayed* = intransitive
5 *can ... be resumed* = passive; *certifies* = active; *has returned* = active

EXERCISE 8

2 *would be forced*: the agent is obvious = 'the damage caused by the storm'
3 *has often been described*: the agent is obvious = 'by neuroscientists'
4 *was publicly announced*: the agent is obvious = 'the government'; *was found*: the agent is obvious = 'the government'
5 *were chopped off*: the agent is not known; *was stolen*: the agent is not known

EXERCISE 9

2 *had been entrusted by the voters* = factors (a) and (c): *he* (the subject) is given information and the topic of discourse
3 *was always surrounded by friends and family* = factors (a) and (c): *he* is given

information and the topic of discourse, while *friends and family* is new information

4 *was entranced by the fire that ... earthquake* = factors (a), (b), and (c): *she* (the subject) is given information and the topic of discourse, while *the fire...earthquake* is new information and a much heavier element

5 *was administered by ... courts* = factors (a), (b), and (c): *water control* is the topic of discourse, while *highly autonomous irrigation districts which were under the legal jurisdiction of the county courts* is a 'heavy' construction presenting new information

EXERCISE 10

CONVERSATION

active = 9: *'d tie, 'd take, wet, put, 'd do, 'd have, 'd tie, 'd put, would run*
passive = 0
intransitive/copular = 7: *were, would stick, would go, go, hide, went, 'd come*

ACADEMIC PROSE

active = 1: *make*
passive = 6: *is considered, is administered, is filtered, is neither absorbed, (is) secreted, is limited*
intransitive/copular = 2: *be, is*

Active voice is more common in the conversation, and passive voice is more common in the academic prose text. This is consistent with the findings in *SGSWE* in that academic prose has more frequent use of passive voice than conversation does; however, overall in academic prose, active voice is more common than passive voice.

EXERCISE 11

2 *should* = logical necessity
3 *may* = permission
4 *may* = logical possibility
5 *can* = ability; *must* = logical necessity
6 *can* = ability or permission; *must* = personal obligation
7 *can* = permission
8 *have to* = personal obligation
9 *would* = logical prediction
10 *will* (as negative *won't*) = prediction
11 *will* = personal volition
12 *'m going to* = personal volition
13 *'d better* = personal obligation

EXERCISE 12

1 *came* = finite, past tense, simple aspect, intransitive; *was lying* = finite, past progressive, intransitive; *had* = finite, past, simple aspect, active; *had taken* = finite, past perfect, active; *(had) slashed* = finite, past perfect, active; *told* = finite, past tense, simple aspect, active; *had been attacked* = finite, past perfect, passive; *got* = finite, past, simple aspect, copular; *know* = non-finite, simple aspect, active; *was* = finite, past tense, simple aspect, copular; *asked* = finite, past tense, simple aspect, active; *said* = finite, past tense, simple aspect, active; *had gone* = finite, past perfect, intransitive

2 *depicting* = non-finite, progressive, active; *is* = finite, present tense, simple aspect, copular; *be placed* = non-finite, simple aspect, passive; *was supposed* = finite, past tense, simple aspect, passive; *end* = non-finite, simple aspect, active; *was* = finite, past tense, simple aspect, copular; *be moved* = non-finite, simple aspect, passive; *heated* = finite, past tense, simple aspect, intransitive; *are* = finite, present tense, simple aspect, copular (note: 'opposed' is a predicative adjective rather than a passive verb here); *does (not) include* = finite, present tense, simple aspect, active; *titled* = non-finite, simple aspect, passive; *was donated* = finite, past tense, simple aspect, passive; *won* = finite, past tense, simple aspect, active; *was displayed* = finite, past tense, simple aspect, passive; *was banished* = finite, past tense, simple aspect, passive; *has been housed* = finite, present perfect, passive; *pushed* = finite, past tense, simple aspect, active; *relocate* = non-finite, simple aspect, active; *voted* = finite, past tense, simple aspect, active; *make* = non-finite, simple aspect, active

7 Adjectives and adverbs

EXERCISE 1

2 *pretty* = adverb used as modifier; *good* = predicative adjective
3 *intensively, extensively* = adverbs used as adverbials
4 *here, therefore* = adverbs used as adverbials; *shared* = attributive

adjective; *uncharged* = predicative adjective
5 *initial, distinctive* = attributive adjectives; *relatively* = adverb used as modifier; *homogenous* = predicative adjective
6 *Russian, transatlantic* = attributive adjectives; *interested* = predicative adjective; *also* = adverb used as adverbial
7 *distinctive, individual, behavioral, considerable* = attributive adjectives; *subconscious* = predicative adjective

EXERCISE 2

2 *surprising* = peripheral: although *surprising* can be attributive or predicative, and it is gradable, it does not take inflections
3 *angry* = central
4 *asleep* = peripheral: *asleep* can be predicative but not attributive; it does not take inflections, and is not gradable
5 *young* = central
6 *happy* = central
7 *homeless* = peripheral: although *homeless* can be attributive and predicative, it does not take inflections and it is not gradable

All seven adjectives are descriptive.

EXERCISE 3

2 *nervous* = (b) derivational suffix
3 *interesting* = (a) participial form
4 *so-called* = (a) participial form, (c) compounding (note: *higher* is an adverb here)
5 *broken* = (a) participial form
6 *pale* = (d) simple form; *greenish-yellowish* = (c) compounding; *misty* = (b) derivational suffix
7 *good* = (d) simple form; *cheap* = (d) simple form

EXERCISE 4

(b) adverb derived from an adjective = *properly, slowly*; (c) adverb like an adverbial particle = *up, out*; (d) fixed phrase functioning as an adverb = *of course*; (e) simple adverb = *now, just*; (f) other = *forward*

EXERCISE 6

Note: Some meaning categories are open to varied interpretation. You may be unclear about some examples, and this can be the subject of discussion in class.

FICTION
older = descriptor, time; *small* = descriptor, size (twice); *stifling* = descriptor, miscellaneous; *untidy* = descriptor, miscellaneous; *youngish* = descriptor, time; *protuberant* = descriptor, miscellaneous; *harassed* = descriptor, emotion; *Roman* = classifier, affiliation; *harmless* = descriptor, evaluation; *feminine* = descriptor, miscellaneous

NEWS
formal = classifier, relation/classification/restriction; *Communist* = classifier, affiliation; *Soviet–South Korean* = classifier, affiliation; *new* = classifier, time; *foreign* = descriptor, miscellaneous (twice); *tidal* = descriptor, size/quantity/extent (or should *tidal* = classifier?); *major* = descriptor, evaluation (twice); *extensive* = descriptor, size/quantity/extent; *diplomatic* = classifier, topic/subject; *enhanced* = descriptor, evaluation; *immediate* = descriptor, time; *economic* = classifier, topic/subject

Almost all the examples in the fiction extract are descriptors. In the news extract, however, half of the examples are classifiers. This difference resembles the pattern of preference in 7.7.1 of *SGSWE* for conversation and academic prose. Fiction is more like conversation, and news is more like academic prose.

EXERCISE 7

2 *extremely* = (h) adverb modifying another adverb
3 *above* = (b) adverb modifying a noun phrase
4 *Practically* = (i) adverb modifying a pronoun (note: here the adverb follows the noun phrase it modifies)
5 *pretty* = (a) adverb modifying an adjective
6 *Absolutely* = (f) adverb standing alone
7 *almost* = (k) adverb modifying a numeral
8 *right* = (j) adverb modifying a particle of a phrasal verb
9 *almost* = (c) adverb modifying a predeterminer
10 *then* = (e) adverb as a complement of a preposition
11 *often* = (l) adverb functioning as an adverbial
12 *approximately* = (g) adverb modifying a measurement expression other than a numeral

EXERCISE 8

2 *really* = stance; *automatically* = manner
3 *of course* = stance; *perfectly* = degree; *well* = degree (or manner)
4 *sometimes* = time; *curiously* = manner; *quite* = degree
5 *so* = degree; *nowadays* = time; *away* = place; *altogether* = degree
6 *there* = place; *very* = degree; *much* = time (i.e. time frequency, in this context; normally *much* is a degree adverb)
7 *too* = degree; *obviously* = manner
8 *too* = addition/restriction
9 *only* = addition/restriction; *where* = place (note: *where* is a relative adverb in this sentence; see *SGSWE* 9.8.1)
10 *hardly* = degree (or, in this context, time); *however* = linking
11 *however* = degree (note: *down* is an adverbial particle)

EXERCISE 9

2 *warmest* = inflectional because *warm* is an adjective of one syllable
3 *tiniest* = inflectional because *tiny* is an adjective of two syllables ending in the suffix -*y*, normally inflectional
4 *more powerful* = phrasal because *powerful* is a three-syllable word, and also ends in a derivational suffix -*ful*
5 *shallower* = inflectional because *shallow* is two syllables ending in -*ow*, usually inflectional
6 *more tired* = phrasal because *tired* is derived from *tire*, with an -*ed* suffix
7 *tireder* = on the other hand, *tired* is a one-syllable adjective, and this sometimes favors inflectional
8/9 *more lovely* and *lovelier* = as an adjective ending in -*ly*, *lovely* allows both phrasal and inflectional
10 *most certain* = phrasal because *certain* is a two-syllable adjective with no internal morphology
11 *more efficient* = phrasal because *efficient* is a three-syllable adjective, and has the derivational suffix -*ent*
12 *more severe* = phrasal because *severe* is a two-syllable adjective with no internal morphology; however, *severe* has stress on the second syllable, and the form *severer* would also be possible

EXERCISE 10

Suggested answers:

1 *pretty good* = (d) or (b)
2 *real quick* = (d)
3 *really spicy, real hot* = (d)
4 *slow* = (a)
5 *slow* = (d) or (b)
6 *awful early* = (d)
7 *great* = (b)
8 *perfect* = (d)
9 *much quieter* = (a)
10 *more quiet* = (b)
11 *more nicer* = (e)
12 *well* = (a)
13 *most unique* = (c)

EXERCISE 11

CONVERSATION

today = adverb, time (twice); *large* = adjective, size; *why* = *wh*-adverb, other (adverb of reason); *small* = adjective, size; *rather* = adverb, degree; *naff* = adjective, evaluation; *actually* = adverb, stance; *big* = adjective, size; *super* = adverb, degree; *confident* = adjective, evaluation (or miscellaneous); *then* = adverb, linking; *obviously* = adverb, stance; *somewhere* = adverb, place; *how* = *wh*-adverb, manner; *red* = adjective, color

ACADEMIC PROSE

particular = adjective, relation/classification/restriction; *different* = adjective, miscellaneous; *only* = adverb, addition/restriction; *inadequately* = adverb, manner; *when* = *wh*-adverb, time; *far* = adverb, degree; *too* = adverb, degree; *difficult* = adjective, evaluation (or miscellaneous); *literary* = adjective, topic/subject; *scientific* = adjective, topic/subject; *home-made* = compound adjective, miscellaneous

Notes: *Why* is a *wh*-adverb of reason. Reason has not been listed as a semantic class of adverbs in Exercise 8, so here we consider *why* to be 'other'. *Such* in the conversation passage might be analyzed as a degree adverb, or as a predeterminer (see 12.7.1). *Well* in the conversation passage is not classed as an adverb, but as a discourse marker (see 12.7.1). *Interested* in the academic prose sample could also be classed as an adjective (evaluative/emotive). But it can also be classed as the -*ed*-participle of a verb.

In the conversation sample, time, degree, and stance adverbs are more common. In the academic sample, degree adverbs are more common. As for adjectives, descriptors are the only adjectives in the conversation sample, whereas both descriptors and classifiers occur more or less equally in the academic sample. In these respects, the two samples are typical of their registers. One atypical feature is that the conversation sample contains linking adverbs, while the academic sample does not.

8 Exploring the grammar of the clause

EXERCISE 1

2. *The fact is [that the community needs them]* = finite, subject predicative
3. *[While he was gone] a nurse poked her head through the doorway* = finite, adverbial
4. *Billy didn't even know [whether he was alive]* = finite, direct object of *know*
5. *Did she say anything about [what happened]* = finite, prepositional complement
6. *Richard Wood, Professor of Surgery, has told Dr Grant [that such surgery cannot be halted]* = finite, direct object of *told*
7. *Our goal is [to make their voices heard]* = non-finite, subject predicative
8. *[To make matters worse], the economy is a merciless juggernaut* = non-finite, adverbial
9. *[$_1$ After I asked her out $_1$] she told me [$_2$ that she prefers just my friendship $_2$]*: clause 1 = finite, adverbial; clause 2 = finite, direct object of *told*
10. *[That they are already struggling] troubles Graham Taylor* = finite, subject
11. *[$_1$ If we remember [$_2$ that most parochial autonomies and loyalties survive $_2$] $_1$], we may at least say [$_3$ that the development of participant cultures in some of the emerging nations has not yet been precluded $_3$]*: clause 1 = finite, adverbial; clause 2 = finite, direct object of *remember*; clause 3 = finite, direct object of *say*
12. *They fear [$_1$ that, [$_2$ as winter approaches $_2$], medical emergencies will spill over into surgical beds, [$_3$ halting urgent operations $_3$] $_1$]*: clause 1 = finite, direct object of *fear*; clause 2 = finite, adverbial; clause 3 = non-finite, adverbial
13. *[$_1$ After the pairs discuss these questions $_1$], ask them [$_2$ to make up a story about the topic $_2$]*: clause 1 = finite, adverbial; clause 2 = non-finite, direct object of *ask*
14. *ADMAR hopes [$_1$ that its suggestions will be useful for [$_2$ handling 'nettlesome subordinates' $_2$] $_1$]*: clause 1 = finite, direct object of hopes; clause 2 = non-finite, prepositional complement

EXERCISE 2

2. Be *{[reliant] and [helpful to others]}* = adjective phrases
3. *{Either [you're going to like it] or [you're going to hate it]}* = independent clauses; correlative coordination
4. *Do you have any {[start dates] or [stop dates]}?* = noun phrases
5. *Oh {[she cooks] but [she never bakes]}* = independent clauses
6. *She's got {[a squiggle ball case] but [no squiggle ball]}* = noun phrases
7. *I heard a story about {[you] and [Dave]}* = noun phrases
8. *{$_1$ [You can be quite fluent in a language] and [yet, {$_2$ [something you say is not understood] and [you cannot understand why] $_2$}] $_1$}*: coordinated units 1 = clauses; coordinated units 2 = clauses
9. *{$_1$ [There are no railway workers among the bridegrooms], but [there are {$_2$ [4 factory workers] and [4 coal-miners] $_2$ }] $_1$}*: coordinated units 1 = clauses; coordinated units 2 = noun phrases

EXERCISE 3

2. *I don't know why it rings a bell* = final ellipsis, textual
3. *Can I come with you?* = final ellipsis, textual
4. *Is that correct* = initial ellipsis, situational
5. *K-Mart wouldn't give a thirty-dollar discount on what? K-Mart wouldn't give a thirty-dollar discount on a golf cart!* = initial ellipsis, textual
6. *What are you doing?* = medial ellipsis, situational

EXERCISE 4

a lot of company exist = should be plural noun *companies*; *big companys has* = should be plural verb *have*; *almost all men ... is smoking* = should be plural verb *are smoking*; *A woman don't like* = should be singular verb *doesn't*; *The company make* = should be singular verb *makes*; *everyone want* = should be singular verb *wants*; *the company say* = should be singular verb *says*; *the nation have to obey* = should be singular verb *has to* (or plural noun *nations*)

EXERCISE 5

2. *must not alarm*
3. *could not be spoken*
4. *I'm not that young.*
5. *did not seem*
6. *were not yet built*

7. *would not have* $\boxed{\textit{missed}}$

Exercise 6

2. Negative contraction is not normally possible with *am* (the first person form of *be*), except for the marginally acceptable alternatives: *I ain't*. Verb contraction is possible: *I'm not*.
3. Negative contraction is not normally acceptable with *am* (the first person form of *be*). Verb contraction is not possible here because of the interrogative word order (with subject–verb inversion). There are two marginally acceptable alternatives: So *aren't/ain't I to be married after all?* (see 7.8.5).
4. Both possible: *we haven't* or *we've not*. Negative contraction (*we haven't*) is the more common choice with the verb *have* (see 7.8.4).
5. Both possible: *I wouldn't* or *I'd not*. Negative contraction (*I wouldn't*) is the more common choice with the verb *would* (see 7.8.4).
6. Both possible: *they're not* or *they aren't*. Verb contraction (*they're not*) is more common with the verb *be*.
7. Both possible: *She won't be* or *She'll not be*. Negative contraction (*She won't be*) is the more common choice with the verb *will* (see 7.8.4).

Exercise 7

2. prepositional complement
3. part of adverbial
4. subject; no inversion with subject *wh*-words
5. part of subject predicative
6. adverbial
7. part of direct object
8. part of adverbial
9. part of adverbial; no inversion because the *wh*-word is not fronted
10. part of subject; no inversion with subject *wh*-words
11. adverbial
12. adverbial
13. prepositional complement (or indirect object)
14. direct object

Exercise 8

2. *yes/no* question
3. non-clausal question
4. declarative question
5. alternative question
6. *yes/no* question
7. *yes/no* question
8. *wh* question
9. question tag

Exercise 9

2. *The importance [which Sigmund Freud attributed to this form and stage of love] is well-known* = relative clause
3. *Scudamore added* $[_1$ *that he felt a lot less pressure* $[_2$ *than he had last season* $_2]$ $_1]$: clause 1 = complement clause, direct object of *added*; clause 2 = comparative clause
4. *'I thought* $[_1$ *I knew every handgun made* $_1]$*,'* $[_2$ *said Rick* $_2]$: clause 1 = complement clause, direct object of *thought*; clause 2 = reporting clause
5. *There's nothing wrong with Buntaro-san, [is there]?* = tag clause
6. *They understand* $[_1$ *what it's all about* $_1]$ $[_2$ *when they read about* $[_3$ *who holds most of the jobs in senior management in Fortune 1,000 companies* $_3]$ $_2]$: clause 1 = complement clause, direct object of *understand*; clause 2 = adverbial clause; clause 3 = complement clause, prepositional complement
7. *So that was the main thing* $[_1$ *that Jennifer and I talk about* $[_2$ *when we sell our bath gels* $_2]$ $_1]$: clause 1 = relative clause; clause 2 = adverbial clause
8. *Well see the thing* $[_1$ *that I mentioned at that meeting* $_1]$ *was* $[_2$ *that I think* $[_3$ *that you know from all the money* $[_4$ *that collection raises* $_4]$ $[_5$ *that we should figure out a formula* $_5]$ $_3]$ $_2]$: clause 1 = relative clause; clause 2 = complement clause, subject predicative; clause 3 = complement clause, direct object of *think*; clause 4 = relative clause; clause 5 = complement clause, direct object of *know*

Exercise 10

2. *You said you were going out* $[_1$ *to get yourself something* $[_2$ *to eat* $_2]$ $_1]$: clause 1 = infinitive clause, adverbial; clause 2 = infinitive clause, postmodifier in noun phrase
3. $[_1$ *To be a good Muslim* $_1]$ *is* $[_2$ *to be a good citizen* $_2]$: clause 1 = infinitive clause, subject; clause 2 = infinitive clause, subject predicative
4. *Try* $[_1$ *to get out and about* $[_2$ *whenever possible* $_2]$ $_1]$, $[_3$ *making new friends and contacts* $_3]$: clause 1 = infinitive clause, direct object of *try*; clause 2 = verbless clause, adverbial; clause 3 = *ing*-clause, adverbial (supplement clause)
5. *I was happy* $[_1$ *to let the pleasant sunny days* $[_2$ *go by* $_2]$ $_1]$: clause 1 = infinitive

clause, adjectival complement; clause 2 = bare infinitive clause, object predicative

6 *[When in the army], soldiers look to a patron for rewards, in return for allegiance and support* = verbless clause; adverbial

7 *[Regarded as a barometer of interest-rate expectations], shorter-term notes made strides amid the speculation* = *ed*-clause, adverbial

8 *John Wesley broke away from the ceremonial formalism of the Church of England [$_1$ to found a Christian movement [$_2$ based on social justice and personal piety $_2$] $_1$]*: clause 1 = infinitive clause, adverbial; clause 2 = *ed*-clause, noun postmodifier

9 *The Food and Drug Administration will allow food manufacturers [$_1$ to label certain foods [$_2$ containing oats $_2$] as [$_3$ being part of a diet that 'may' reduce the risk of heart disease $_3$] $_1$]*: clause 1 = infinitive clause, direct object of *allow* (note: *food manufacturers* can be analyzed as the subject of the infinitive clause); clause 2 = *ing*-clause, noun postmodifier; clause 3 = *ing*-clause, prepositional complement

10 *So, the best thing [$_1$ to do $_1$] is [$_2$ to turn it on just like this and stick it back in this little bag $_2$]*: clause 1 = infinitive clause, noun postmodifier; clause 2 = infinitive clause, subject predicative

EXERCISE 11

CONVERSATION

{ {Of course anything [that I've wanted] I've already taken} and {nobody knows about it} }. <Well> {there's a couple of things [I want] }. <Not very much>. <Just a few things>. {But I think [my mother would notice [I took them]] }. <I mean> {I know [she would] [because they are kind of like these] }, <they are>, { {they are probably worth a couple of hundred dollars each} and {I think [she got them from my aunt Eva] } }.

Note: *Well* and *I mean* are non-clausal inserts (see *SGSWE* 2.2.2, 13.7), and the first occurrence of *they are* is an example of dysfluency (*SGSWE* 13.3.1).

ACADEMIC PROSE

{Managers often find it difficult [not to pass judgment on subordinates automatically] }. {Conscious effort is sometimes needed [to avoid this defense-provoking behavior] }. {Senders should pay careful attention to objectivity in communications}. {One should avoid the common tendency [to formulate a reply [while the other person is speaking], instead of [concentrating on [trying [to listen to [what the speaker is actually saying]]]]] }.

9 Complex noun phrases

EXERCISE 1

2 *It, a nice house*; *nice* = adjective

3 *The floor, the floating raft at the beach; floating* = participial, *at the beach* = prepositional phrase

4 *he, Simon's house, which was at the other end of the lane; which was at the other end of the lane* = relative clause

5 *Cockerill, the club captain, the Saints*; *the club captain* = appositive noun phrase

6 *Those who know him, he, an arrogant side; who know him* = relative clause, *arrogant* = adjective

EXERCISE 2

1 = (d); **2** = (b); **3** = (e); **4** = (a); **5** = (c)

EXERCISE 4

2 The participial modifier *armed* precedes the noun modifier *company*.

3 The adverb *strangely* precedes the adjective *hairless*.

4 The color adjective *black* follows the other adjectives *little* and *beady*.

5 The descriptor adjective *new* precedes the classifier adjective *economic*.

EXERCISE 5

2 *And the four hundred dollars that was in there?*: relativizer = *that*; gap = subject

3 *One of the things I want to do is go through our books*: relativizer = zero; gap = direct object (of infinitive)

4 *The private group, which insures invoices and financing arrangements, recorded 1,220 failures in the first half of this year:* relativizer = *which*; gap = subject

5 *This is the second year in a row that the opposition leader has claimed to be too busy to talk to the boisterous crew:* relativizer = *that*; gap = adverbial

6 *But we do not only communicate with people with whom we share our lives:* relativizer = *whom*; gap = complement of preposition

EXERCISE 6

2 *who had always been a great one for psychology* = non-restrictive
3 *which had stopped at five minutes to eleven some weeks ago* = non-restrictive
4 *that own ITV* = restrictive
5 *which really happened to me* = restrictive

EXERCISE 7

2 *This is a girl Ø I was going to get engaged to*: zero is a typical choice for a restrictive clause in conversation, where there is a non-subject gap.

3 *But the first guy that came said you need to replace your furnace*: *that* is the most popular relative pronoun in restrictive clauses in conversation.

4 *Khan spent half of each year playing ... in England, where he acquired a British accent*: *where* is the relativizer used to express 'place' in non-restrictive clauses.

5 *In this way, ions which have the same mass ratio are collected into beams*: *which* is used for relative clauses with an inanimate noun head, and is particularly common in academic writing.

6 *A god ... is ... a being whom men think of as superior to themselves in certain ways*: *whom* is used, particularly in academic prose, for relative clauses with a non-subject gap and an animate head noun.

EXERCISE 8

2 *climb from rags* = prepositional phrase; *to riches* = prepositional phrase
3 *problem involving a chemical reaction* = an *ing*-clause
4 *ability to remodel themselves* = a *to*-clause
5 *ambassador to Peru* = prepositional phrase; *former hostage Anthony Vincent* = appositive noun phrase; *commission of 'guarantors'* = prepositional phrase
6 *powers given to police in the martial law decree* = *ed*-clause (or *in the martial law decree* could be considered a separate prepositional phrase)

EXERCISE 9

See **3** below.

EXERCISE 10

2 *that the structures of local government differ from nation to nation* = (a) complement *that*-clause; *that doesn't even exist* = (e) relative clause.

EXERCISE 9

3

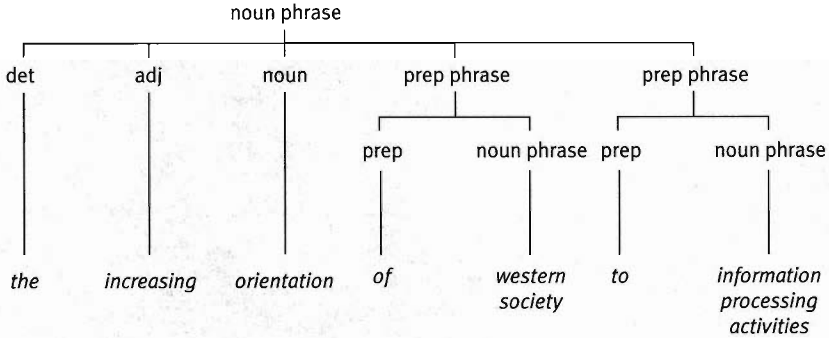

3 *to record you* = (b) complement *to*-clause; *to biology and zoology* = (g) prepositional phrase with *to*
4 *of finding work* = (c) *of* + complement *ing*-clause; *of private ownership of the land* = (f) prepositional phrase with *of*
5 *who Michele was* = (d) complement *wh*-interrogative clause; *who'd inherited any degree of literary talent* = (e) relative clause

EXERCISE 11

Conversation noun phrases: *You, those sandwiches, They, the bag, the back, me, twelve o'clock, nine thirty, two and a half hours, You, any light mayonnaise, I, I, I, it, I, mayonnaise, I, it, it, I, some popcorn*

Academic prose noun phrases: *Modern capitalism, the older centres of manufacture, the basis of* large-scale maritime and overland trade, Organized manufacture, the craft industries controlled by the guilds, Marx, 'the rural subsidiary operations' of spinning and weaving, which need little technical training**, rural society, the last place where capitalism develops in its 'purest and most logical form', the initial impetus, this stage, capital, a revolutionary force*

Note: Thick-grey underlining and thick-black underlining represent double underlining and treble underlining respectively.

Notes on alternative solutions: **basis* can be considered the head of a noun phrase, as here, or it can be regarded as part of a complex preposition *on the basis of*. **The relative clause *which need little technical training* can be treated as a postmodifier of *operations*, or alternatively as a postmodifier of *spinning and weaving*, the solution chosen here.

In the conversation text 1 out of 23 first-level noun phrases has at least one modifier (*any light mayonnaise*): 4.3 per cent.

In the academic prose text 10 out of 14 first-level noun phrases have at least one modifier: 71.4 per cent. Adjective modifiers are the most common type in the academic prose text.

In the conversation text 7 out of 23 noun phrases have noun heads (30.4 per cent); 14 have pronoun heads (60.9 per cent); 2 noun phrases have numerical or measurement heads, which are neither nouns nor pronouns: *nine thirty, twelve o'clock*. Most noun heads (*sandwiches, bag*, etc.) refer to concrete objects, especially food.

In the academic prose text 20 out of 21 noun phrases have nouns as their heads (95.2 per cent). There are no pronouns. Most noun heads (*manufacture, society*, etc.) refer to abstractions.

EXERCISE 12

2

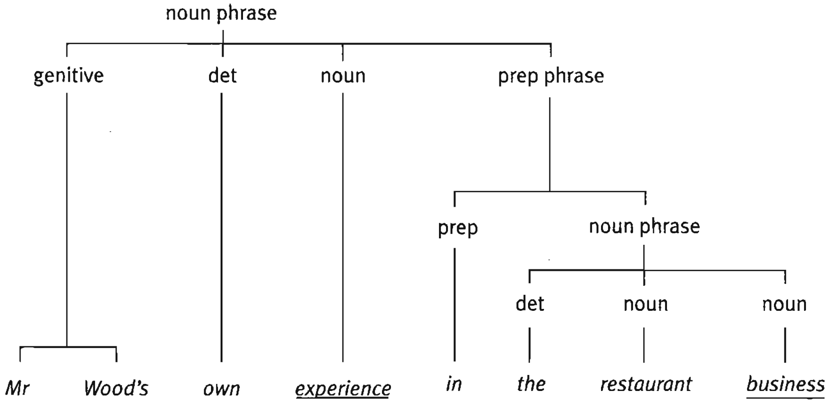

3

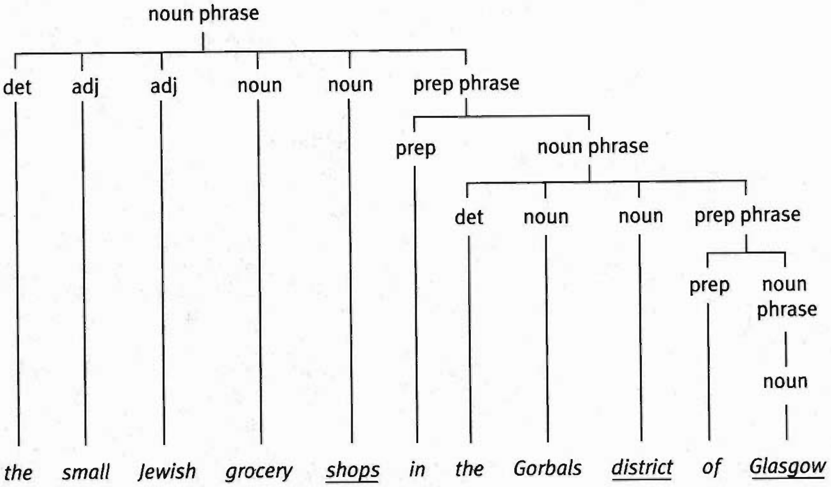
noun phrase
det
adj
adj
noun
noun
prep phrase
prep
noun phrase
det
noun
noun
prep phrase
prep
noun phrase
noun
the
small
Jewish
grocery
shops
in
the
Gorbals
district
of
Glasgow

4

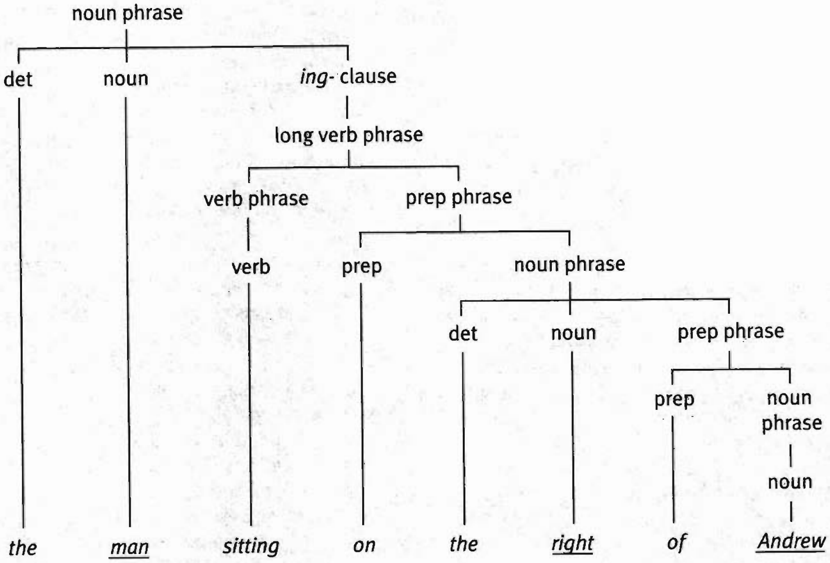
noun phrase
det
noun
ing- clause
long verb phrase
verb phrase
prep phrase
verb
prep
noun phrase
det
noun
prep phrase
prep
noun phrase
noun
the
man
sitting
on
the
right
of
Andrew

5

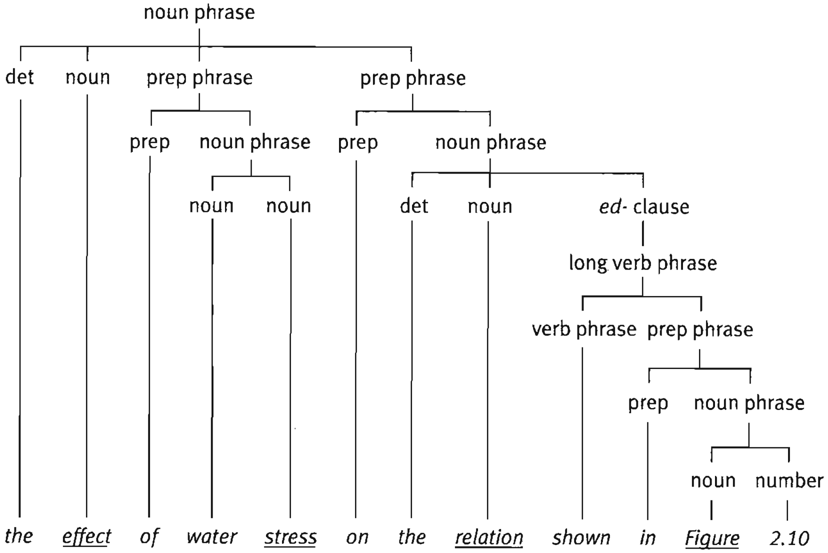

10 Verb and adjective complement clauses

EXERCISE 1

2 *Before cancer weakened him, he hoped to move back to Monroe*. Controlling element = verb (*hoped*); type = non-finite, *to*-clause; position = post-predicate, adjective complement

3 *This is where they clean the planes*. Controlling element = verb (*is*); type = finite, *wh*-clause; position = post-predicate, subject predicative

4 *Maybe Judy will stop talking to him, too*. Controlling element = verb (*stop*); type = non-finite, *ing*-clause; position = post-predicate, direct object

5 *I think she's happy that I really got a lot done in the last couple of days*. (1) Controlling element = verb (*think*); type = finite, *that*-clause; position = post-predicate, direct object. (2) Controlling element = adjective (*happy*); type = finite, *that*-clause; position = post-predicate, adjective complement

6 *I wonder what he meant by that. We're slowly beginning to see what he meant by that*. (1) Controlling element = verb (*wonder*); type = finite, *wh*-clause; position = post-predicate, direct object. (2) Controlling element = verb (*beginning*); type = non-finite, *to*-clause; position = post-predicate, direct object. (3) Controlling element = verb (*see*); type = finite, *wh*-clause; position = post-predicate, direct object

7 *It's amazing that only three hundred died*. Controlling element = *be* + adjective (*'s amazing*); type = finite, *that*-clause; position = extraposed subject

8 *Police sources said that X-rays of the five bombs appear to show the same blasting caps and detonation pins*. (1) Controlling element = verb (*said*); type = finite, *that*-clause; position = post-predicate, direct object. (2) Controlling element = verb (*appear*); type = non-finite, *to*-clause; position = post predicate, direct object

9 *That the ending came almost in the dark was fitting*. Controlling element = *be* + adjective (*was fitting*); type = finite, *that*-clause; position = subject

10 *It's hard to believe how one human mind could have created them*. (1) Controlling element = *be* + adjective (*is hard*); type = non-finite, *to*-clause; position = extraposed subject. (2) Controlling element = verb (*believe*); type = finite, *wh*-clause; position = post-predicate, direct object

EXERCISE 2

2 *think* = verb; *that it's ... Hillary*; post-predicate, direct object
is strange and meaningful = *be* + adjective; *that he...Hillary*; extraposed subject

3 *is* = verb; *that ... person*; post-predicate, subject predicative
sure = adjective, *that I ... person*; adjective complement

4 *reminded* = verb; *that a ... sweatsuit*; position = post-predicate
testified = verb; *that she ... sweatsuit*; position = post-predicate

5 *argues* = verb; *that it ... steps*; post-predicate, direct object
is inconceivable = *be* + adjective; *that the ... steps*; extraposed subject

6 *adding* = verb; *that it ... noticed*; position = post-predicate
was strange = *be* + adjective; *that such ... noticed*; position = extraposed subject

7 *know* = verb; *that we ... commitment*; post-predicate, direct object
(make) sure = adjective; *that the ... commitment*; adjective complement
understood = verb; *that there ... commitment*; post-predicate, direct object

8 *guess* = verb; *she ... car*; position = post-predicate
knows = verb; *that I ... car*; position = post-predicate

9 *accept* = verb; *that it ... guy*; position = post-predicate
plausible = adjective; *that they ... guy*; position = extraposed subject

10 *knew* = verb; *that she ... him*; post-predicate, direct object
knew = verb; *that she ... him*; post-predicate, direct object

EXERCISE 3

1 *that the FOP wouldn't want a convicted cop killer's views on the air.* This refers back to previously mentioned information because the previous sentence suggested that the FOP had pressured NPR not to broadcast the interview. It may also be considered generally known that policemen would not want the killer of a policeman to spread his views.

2 *that he is ranked only No 4 in the world at the moment.* This clause presents factual information that is assumed to be generally known.

3 *that the media are fixated upon the differences within the GOP regarding abortion and that they don't just as enthusiastically dissect the differences within the Democratic Party regarding abortion and same-sex marriages.* Both *that*-clauses present information that is generally known by readers, or at least this author is packaging the information as if it should be generally known.

EXERCISE 4

2 *I think I'm the only person who doesn't have it. That* omitted: common controlling verb (*think*), co-referential subjects, and personal pronoun as subject of *that*-clause.

3 *I think she should just be happy that my mess isn't spilling out of my room. That* omitted: common controlling verb; pronoun subject of *that*-clause.

4 *Mr. Gorbachev agreed that the NATO and the Warsaw Pact would be maintained and that the transatlantic members of the Western Alliance—the U.S. and Canada—would play a vital role in the common European home. That* retained: coordinated *that*-clauses, not a common controlling verb, not co-referential subjects, not pronoun subject of *that*-clause.

5 *But I find this really odd because Lucy told*[1] *me that Cynthia told*[1] *her that you know*[2] *that it really wasn't appropriate for her to be staying with us.* (1) *That* retained: not a common controlling verb, not co-referential subjects, not pronoun subject of *that*-clause, intervening NP between the controlling verb and *that*-clause. (This analysis applies to both occurrences of *told*.) (2) *That* retained: a common controlling verb, not co-referential subjects, personal pronoun subject of *that*-clause. (Alternatively, *you know* may be a discourse marker.)

6 *Western leaders were convinced that NATO's steadfastness had been crucial in bringing the communist bloc in from the cold. That* retained: not a common controlling verb, not co-referential subjects, not a personal pronoun subject of the *that*-clause, passive voice with the controlling verb. (Note that *convinced* could also be analyzed as an adjective here.)

7 *The second U.S. reaction was to reassure the West Germans that Washington was happy to leave the details in Bonn's hands. That* retained: not a common controlling verb, not co-referential subjects, not pronoun subject of *that*-clause, intervening NP between the controlling verb and *that*-clause.

8 *He said he lost his hair from taking showers all the time. That* omitted: common controlling verb, co-referential subjects, personal pronoun subject of *that*-clause.

EXERCISE 5

2 *What this nomination shows is that any story can work.* Controlling element = verb; *wh*-clause = nominal relative, subject position.

3 *Well, I wonder why Aunt Irene said that.* Controlling element = verb; *wh*-clause = dependent interrogative, post-predicate position.

4 *If you know that, you usually know where it is going and what the purpose is.* Controlling element = verb; *wh*-clauses = dependent interrogative, post-predicate (direct object).

5 *It is not clear how the question will be resolved.* Controlling element = adjective; *wh*-clause = dependent interrogative, extraposed position.

6 *That 's what I remember hearing—that 's why I asked how they were doing.* (1) Controlling element = verb; *wh*-clause = nominal relative, post-predicate (subject predicative). (2) Controlling element = verb; *wh*-clause = nominal relative, post-predicate (subject predicative). (3) Controlling element = verb; *wh*-clause = dependent interrogative, post-predicate direct object.

7 *So that 's how I know that that 's where they were going.* (1) Controlling element = verb; *wh*-clause = nominal relative, post-predicate (subject predicative). (2) Controlling element = verb; *wh*-clause = nominal relative, post-predicate (subject predicative).

8 *He's in a meeting and I'm not sure when he'll be back.* Controlling element = adjective; *wh*-clause = dependent interrogative, post-predicate adjective complement.

EXERCISE 6

2 *was expected to ... morning* = Pattern 2P

3 *saw him bleed* = Pattern 5

4 *would like for you to come ... to me* = Pattern 3

5 *like to train ... battle conditions* = Pattern 1; *would like to go into* = Pattern 1; *found to be too stringent* = Pattern 2 (i.e. they found the areas to be too stringent); *wanted to go* = Pattern 1

EXERCISE 7

2 *want the ... crisis: want* = desire; subject = *the superpowers*

3 *said to look it up and sing it to you: said* = speech act; subject = *Mark* (i.e. *Mark, not I, should look it up and sing it*)

4 *want to ask Michelle to do that: want* = desire; subject = *you* (i.e. *You ask Michelle*)
ask Michelle to do that: ask = speech act; subject = *Michelle* (i.e. *Michelle will do that*)

5 *need to call Mary Ann: need* = desire; subject = *I*
forgot to tell her that ...: forgot = cognition; subject = *I*
want to go to Steve's party: want = desire; subject = *I*

6 *mean for this to happen: mean* = intention/decision; subject = *this*
trust myself to reply: trust = cognition; subject = *I*

7 *was widely felt to be guiding the Scientific Revolution: be felt* = perception; subject (of the passive) = *the Promethean impulse*

8 *seems to care: seems* = probability; subject = *no one*

9 *began to do the same thing that they did: began* = aspectual; subject = *we*

10 *tried to take goofy pictures: tried* = effort; subject = *we*

EXERCISE 8

2 *easy to check that the conditions are satisfied: easy* = ease/difficulty; extraposed *to*-clause

3 *unlikely to meet the full cost: unlikely* = degree of certainty; post-predicate *to*-clause; subject-to-subject raising

4 *difficult for the draughtsman to interpret: difficult* = ease/difficulty; post-predicate *to*-clause; object-to-subject raising

5 *difficult to demand a speed of calculation beyond the performance of currently available microcomputers: difficult* = ease/difficulty; extraposed *to*-clause

6 *happy to rent for a while: happy* = emotion/stance; post-predicate *to*-clause; no raising

7 *impossible to prove: impossible* = ease/difficulty; post-predicate *to*-clause; object-to-subject raising

8 *easy to read and understand: easy* = ease/difficulty; post-predicate *to*-clause; object-to-subject raising

9 *expensive to produce: expensive* = evaluation; post-predicate *to*-clause; object-to-subject raising

10 *possible to love, and to aid thy neighbor: possible* = ease/difficulty; extraposed *to*-clause

EXERCISE 9

To expect Europe to become a single warm cultural bath; To be European in France; to be European in Lithuania or Scotland; To be European in Italy; to be European in southern England.

Here there is a sequence of subject *to*-clauses that present a progression of ideas and also provide an anaphoric link. The topic progresses through different views of 'being European' in France, Lithuania or Scotland, Italy, and southern England. At the same time, all of these *to*-clauses refer back to the idea in the first sentence, that the participants do not think of themselves as 'being European'.

Note: In an alternative analysis, we could treat *in France, in Italy*, etc. as adverbials in the main clause, not as part of the infinitive clauses.

EXERCISE 10

2 *stalling on the runway* = complement clause, controlled by verb *kept*
trying = main verb

3 *existing* = adjective
recording only limited information on shaking = complement clause, controlled by adjectival predicate *capable (of)*
shaking = noun

4 *hearing you say that* = complement clause, controlled by verb *love*
my saying it = complement clause, controlled by verb *mind* (note the use of the possessive determiner *my* as subject)

5 *probing caves supposedly found by Utah man* = adverbial (supplement) clause
containing Spanish coins from the 1540s = noun postmodifying clause

EXERCISE 11

2 *don't you want to ^?*: *to*-clause with ellipsis; clause omitted but complementizer retained; full form = *or don't you want to share?*

3 *No I don't think so*: *that*-clause with substitution with *so*; full form = *No I don't think I am supposed to try to talk to them or anything.*

4 *I don't know why ^* (note the switch from *I am* to *you are* following a change of speaker in dialogue): *wh*-clause with ellipsis; clause omitted but complementizer retained; full form = *I don't know why they always have them at night.*

5 *you'll see how I tried to ^ but ...*: *to*-clause with ellipsis; clause omitted but complementizer retained; full form = *you'll see how I tried to rescue him but ...*

6 *Yeah, I know ^, she told ...*: *that*-clause with ellipsis; clause and complementizer omitted; full form = *I know that she tendered her resignation.*

7 *I guess not*: *that*-clause with *not* substitution; full form = *I guess that she didn't graduate.*

8 *I don't remember why ^ ...*: *wh*-clause with ellipsis; clause omitted but complementizer retained; full form = *I don't remember why taking liver pills for some reason is good for falling, regeneration.*

EXERCISE 12

CONVERSATION

that she breastfed him ... = *that*-clause controlled by verb *told*, post-predicate position
he's married now and is having his first child = *that*-clause controlled by verb *guess*, post-predicate position
if I told him no = *wh*-clause controlled by verb *imagine*, post-predicate position (note that this could alternatively be an adverbial *if*-clause)
I didn't love him = *that*-clause controlled by verb *think*, post-predicate position
to know ... = *to*-clause controlled by verb *hurt*, extraposed
if he was or not = *wh*-clause controlled by verb *know*, post-predicate position
so = substitute form for *that*-clause controlled by verb *think* (*I don't think that my son is choking*), post-predicate position
he didn't really want ... = *that*-clause controlled by verb *realized*, post-predicate position
to go in the bathroom = *to*-clause controlled by verb *want*, post-predicate position
running back there ... = *ing*-clause controlled by verb *go*, post-predicate position (notice that *to make...* is an adverbial, not a complement clause)
there are no little people anywhere or anything that can hurt him = *that*-clause controlled by adjective (*make*) *sure*, post-predicate position
wash your hands = bare infinitive clause controlled by verb *come*, post-predicate position
she'd come in = *that*-clause controlled by verb *think*, post-predicate position
I can just pop them back in the microwave = *that*-clause controlled by verb *guess*, post-predicate position

ACADEMIC PROSE

that Marx ... per se = *that*-clause controlled by verb *contends*, post-predicate position

to describe ... a ruling class = *to*-clause controlled by adjective *careful*, post-predicate position

to view ... formations = *to*-clause controlled by verb *tended*, post-predicate position

that the state is 'the organ of class rule' = *that*-clause controlled by noun *assertion*

that Asiatic society is not a true class society = *that*-clause controlled by noun *notion*

that Marx ... daily life = *that*-clause controlled by verb *appears*, extraposed

to draw upon general funds for travels and clerical expenses = *to*-clause controlled by adjective *able*, post-predicate position

to note ... = *to*-clause controlled by adjective *important*, extraposed

that the appropriation ... coercive practice = *that*-clause controlled by verb *note*, post-predicate position

to develop into a 'genuine theocracy' = *to*-clause controlled by adjective *able*, post-predicate position

that 'in religion ... of violence' = *that*-clause controlled by noun *contention*

that the hegemony ... sects = *that*-clause controlled by verb *noted*, extraposed

	CONV	**ACAD**
that-clause controlled by verb	7 (all post-pred)	4 (2 post-pred, 2 extraposed)
that-clause controlled by adj (post-pred)	1	0
to-clause controlled by verb	2 (1 post-pred, 1 extraposed)	1 (post-pred)
to-clause controlled by adj	0	4 (3 post-pred, 1 extraposed)
wh-clause controlled by verb (post-pred)	2	0
ing-clause controlled by verb (post-pred)	1	0
bare infinitive controlled by verb	1	0
that-clause controlled by noun	0	3

The findings for these passages are similar to the overall findings in *SGSWE* in these ways:

(a) Academic prose has more frequent use of noun complement clauses, especially *that*-clauses.
(b) Conversation has a higher frequency of *that*-clauses overall, but academic prose has a higher frequency of extraposed *that*-clauses.
(c) *Wh*-clauses are more common in conversation than academic prose.
(d) The frequency of *to*-clauses with verbs is fairly even.
(e) *To*-clauses controlled by adjectives are more common in academic prose.

The findings for these passages differ from *SGSWE* in that usually *ing*-clauses are more common in academic prose than conversation.

11 Adverbials

Exercise 1

2 *there, now, again* = circumstance adverbials, adverbs
3 *out here* = circumstance adverbial, adverbial particle + adverb; *Monday* or *Tuesday* = circumstance adverbial, noun phrases
4 *Unfortunately* = stance adverbial, adverb
5 *Strangely* = stance adverbial, adverb; *never* = circumstance adverbial, adverb; *fully* = circumstance adverbial, adverb; *in Wales* = circumstance adverbial, prepositional phrase
6 *well* = circumstance adverbial, adverb; *after your jam doughnut* = circumstance adverbial, prepositional phrase
7 *in turn* = circumstance, prepositional phrase (you might call 'in turn' an adverb because it is a relatively fixed phrase, but some variation is possible, such as 'in their turn' so prepositional phrase seems the best answer); *therefore* = linking adverbial
8 *Personally* = stance adverbial, adverb; *really* = stance adverbial, adverb
9 *in order to reduce scepticism and to build their confidence* = circumstance, adverbial clause

Exercise 2

2 The adverbial in 2a has broader scope, over the entire clause. In 2b, *in the home economics class* has scope only over the verb phrase *ended up*.
3 The adverbial in 3b has broader scope. In 3a, *sort of* has scope only over the adjective phrase *scary looking*. In 3b, *generally speaking* has scope over the entire clause pattern *they won't get into the dinner*.
4 The adverbial in 4a has broader scope, over the entire sentence. In 4b, *for example* has scope only over the following prepositional phrase (*by computers...*).

Exercise 4

There are many uses of *just*. Here are some possibilitites:

- giving emphasis: 1 (replace with *simply* or *completely*); 2 (replace with *really*); 5, 7 (replace with *simply*)
- meaning 'exactly': 3
- meaning a small request or object : 4, 8, 9(?), 10 (replace with *simply* or *only*)
- meaning immediacy: 6

Exercise 5

2 *Because schizophrenia is a brain disorder*: semantic category = contingency, reason; type of clause = finite; subordinator = *because*
3 *as if deliberately waiting me out*: semantic category = other (manner); type of clause = non-finite; subordinator = *as if*
4 *if you don't pass your exams*: semantic category = contingency, conditional (open condition); type of clause = finite; subordinator = *if*
5 *although she looked much younger*: semantic category = other (concession); type of clause = finite; subordinator = *although*
6 *since I was a kid*: semantic category = time; type of clause = finite; subordinator = since
7 *Since the purpose of the list is heuristic*: semantic category = contingency, reason; type of clause = finite; subordinator = *since*
8 *wherever I went*: semantic category = place; type of clause = finite; subordinator = *wherever*
9 *As far as farmers are concerned*: semantic category = other (respect or perspective); type of clause = finite; subordinator = *as far as*
10 *If I were you*: semantic category = contingency, conditional (hypothetical condition); type of clause = finite; subordinator = *if*
11 *to show the main differences between practical and ideal cycles*: semantic category = other (purpose); type of clause = non-finite; subordinator = none
12 *clinging to the men's feet and overalls*: semantic category = other (supplement clause); type of clause = non-finite; subordinator = none

Exercise 6

2 *According to national estimates* = epistemic stance adverbial. Probably news or academic prose, based on heavy use of prepositional phrases and noun phrases.
3 *not surprisingly* = attitude stance adverbial. Probably academic prose. Attitude stance adverbials are slightly more common in academic prose than conversation. Also, the NP *workers at the many quasistate factories* is more precise than is typically found in conversation.

4 *to tell you the truth* = style stance adverbial. Probably conversation. Style stance adverbials are more common in conversation than academic prose. See also the use of *I think* controlling a complement clause.

5 *like* = epistemic stance adverbial, imprecision. Probably conversation. *Like* as a stance adverbial is used primarily in casual conversational settings.

6 *approximately* = epistemic stance adverbial, imprecision. Probably academic prose, shown by dense use of nouns, prepositional phrases, and technical vocabulary.

7 *frankly* = style stance adverbial. Probably conversation. Style stance adverbials are more common in conversation than academic prose, and the discourse marker *well* and repair *I, we* are typical of conversation.

8 *actually* = epistemic stance adverbial, actuality/reality. Probably conversation, because the adverb *actually* is especially frequent in conversation. (See also the false start, and the use of first person pronouns.)

9 *hopefully* = attitude stance adverbial. Hopefully is used in both conversation and the expository registers. This passage is most likely from expository writing because of the circumstance adverbial choice *at present* (*now* is more common for conversation).

10 *I guess* = epistemic stance adverbial, certainty/doubt. Probably conversation, because comment clauses like *I guess* are found mostly in conversation. (See also the frequent use of *and* to connect clauses.)

11 *Maybe* = epistemic stance adverbial, doubt. Probably conversation, because *maybe* is especially common in conversation. (See also the use of *we*.)

EXERCISE 7

1 *for example* = apposition
2 *in contrast* = contrast
3 *though* = concession (since this is conversation and the adverbial is in final position, other adverbials are unlikely)
4 *second* = enumeration
5 *in conclusion* = summation (notice the clue of 'final focus')
6 *by the way* = transition (notice the switch to a new topic)
7 *likewise* = addition
8 *thus* = result

EXERCISE 8

1 final
2 initial
3 final
4 final
5 initial
6 medial
7 initial
8 final

EXERCISE 9

NEWSPAPER PASSAGE

at some point today = circumstance (time); prepositional phrase; initial position (because it is setting up the time frame for the whole story) (Note: it would also be possible to analyse *today* as a separate adverbial of time.)

if everything is right = circumstance (condition); finite clause; initial position (because it establishes a conditional framework for the following activities)

with an irrepressible grin and as much water as his burro can carry = circumstance (manner); prepositional phrase; final position (the typical position for a circumstance adverbial that adds descriptive information to the clause)

south = circumstance (place, direction); adverb; final position (because it has scope only over the verb)

if all goes well = circumstance (condition); finite clause; initial position (because it establishes a conditional framework for the information in the following main clause)

well (embedded) = circumstance (manner); adverb; final position (because it has scope only over the verb)

in Cabo San Lucas = circumstance (place); prepositional phrase; final position (because it is an obligatory adverbial)

by the time he stops = circumstance (time); prepositional phrase; final position (because it is a 'heavy' structure with restricted scope)

once = circumstance (time); adverb; medial position (because it has restricted scope)

in his own words = stance (perspective/viewpoint); prepositional phrase; medial position (placed near the quotation)

down the mountainous central spine = circumstance (place/direction); prepositional phrase; final position (because it is a 'heavy' structure with restricted scope)

nearly 1,000 miles = circumstance (place/distance); noun phrase; final position (because it is an appositive structure) (Also note the use of *nearly* as an imprecision stance adverb modifying *1,000*.)

CONVERSATION

once every couple of weeks = circumstance (time, frequency); noun phrase or adverb phrase; final position (because it has limited scope over the verb)

really = stance (actuality/reality); adverb; medial position (between the verb and obligatory final adverbial)

just = circumstance (restrictive, meaning 'it's only this and nothing else', although it also has the effect of downplaying the importance of the group and might be analyzed as a stance adverbial); adverb; medial position (between the verb and obligatory final adverbial because it has scope over that final adverbial)

like a gab group = circumstance (manner, comparison); prepositional phrase; final position (an obligatory adverbial)

kind of = stance (epistemic, imprecision); adverb; medial position (limited scope over the verb phrase)

around our little project = circumstance (place); prepositional phrase; final position (an obligatory adverbial)

like, like = stance (imprecision); adverb; initial position

EXERCISE 10

2 A period (.) should follow *changed*, dividing the example into two sentences. This makes it clear that the adverbial *For example* belongs with the following sentence, not the preceding one.

3 *In spite of* is a preposition, and cannot introduce an adverbial clause. *Although* can replace it. As a linking adverbial, *however* cannot occur in this position in the sentence, but *nevertheless* could replace it. *In the education* is incorrect: it could be replaced by *in terms of education.*

4 *Before 15 years* is incorrect: it should be *Fifteen years ago.* Also, *because* should not begin a new sentence : it should follow a comma, to show that it is an adverbial with scope over the preceding clause.

5 *So that to be free* is incorrect: *so that* cannot introduce an infinitive clause, but could be replaced by *so as*, as in *so as to be free.* Alternatively, *so that* can be followed by a finite clause: *so that they could be free.*

6 A period or colon should follow the word *exaggerated*, to divide the clause to which it belongs from what follows. *With my bike or car* should be changed to *on my bike or in my car.* Also, *Since I came to Hasaki* is an adverbial which is meant to have scope over the following clause. It should therefore be followed by a comma, not by a period.

7 *Even he doesn't know you* should be changed to *Even if he doesn't know you*, to make it clear that this structure is a dependent adverbial clause. *For long time* should be: *For a long time.*

12 Word order choices

EXERCISE 1

PART A

2 (b) fronting of predicative, (i) in an independent declarative clause
3 (a) fronting of object, (i) in an independent declarative clause
4 (a) fronting of object, (i) in an independent declarative clause
5 (b) fronting of predicative, (ii) in an exclamation
6 (b) fronting of predicative, (iii) in a dependent adverbial clause

PART B

2 *Krishna may be all wise ...*
3 *I'd now committed such a blunder.*
4 *My son has such a sure hand with his people!*
5 *We are a very gullible lot.* (This example cannot be expressed in normal word order without deleting the word *what.*)
6 *Though he is brave in facing adult audiences...*

EXERCISE 2

2 *is the high proportion of semantic-phonetic compounds* = subject–verb inversion
3 *has been the success of the piece on a short provincial tour* = subject–verb or subject–operator inversion
4 *did he* = subject–operator inversion
5 *interrupted Khalehla* = subject–verb inversion
6 *is the time for cool, light shoes that you can slip straight on your feet* = subject–verb or subject–operator inversion
7 *are you* = subject–operator inversion
8 *had she* = subject–operator inversion
9 *can the health service* = subject–operator inversion
10 *stepped Captain Bierce* = subject–verb inversion

EXERCISE 3

2 (d) fronted predicative
3 (e) degree expression
4 (c) fronted adverbial of place or time
5 (i) reporting clause
6 (c) fronted adverbial of time
7 (b) *wh*-question
8 (g) hypothetical or tentative conditional clause
9 (a) *yes/no* question
10 (c) fronted adverbial of place

EXERCISE 4

2 notional subject
3 (a) = place *there*; (b) = existential *there*
4 *exist*
5 (a) = false; (b) = true; (c) = true; (d) = false; (e) = true; (f) = false

EXERCISE 5

2 = (b); **3** = (a); **4** = (d); **5** = (g); **6** = (f);
7 = (b); **8** = (h); **9** = (j); **10** = (e)

EXERCISE 6

2 (c) *it*-cleft
3 (a) preface
4 (d) normal *wh*-cleft
5 (b) noun phrase tag
6 (f) demonstrative *wh*-cleft
7 (g) direct object before indirect object (with *to* or *for*)
8 (e) reverse *wh*-cleft
9 (i) object predicative before direct object
10 (j) phrasal verb with object before particle

EXERCISE 7

2 *[It][is][you][who are lovely]* = subject
3 *[It][was not][surprise][that he felt]* = object
4 *[it][was][on that journey][that we encountered Dr Saito]* = adverbial
5 *[it][was][then][that she and the other three women did the rooms]* = adverbial
6 *[it][was not][food][that Buck and the huskies needed]* = object

EXERCISE 8

Many answers are possible. Some possibilities include:

Exercise 1, example 3: In contrast to the normal word order *I'd now committed such a blunder*, the fronting of the object in *Such a blunder I'd now committed* places the given information of *such a blunder* in the initial position. This upholds the information flow principle.

Exercise 2, example 1: In contrast to the normal word order *a decanter of Haut Brion, and another of old Lanning port, stood on the sideboard*, the word order with inversion places given information before new information, in line with the information flow principle. Also, the long and complex subject *a decanter ... port* is placed at the end, following the principle of end weight.

Exercise 5, example 7: A normal word order here might be: *3000 accidents related to bouncy castles occurred in 1989*. The existential clause, in contrast to this, places the new topic of discussion at the end (information flow) and places the long notional subject at the end (end weight).

Exercise 7, example 2: A normal word order would be: *You are lovely, Grace*. Instead, the *it*-cleft construction makes *you* the focused element and emphasizes the contrast between *they* and *you*.

EXERCISE 9

	CONV	ACAD
(a) marked word order (fronting, etc.)	0	1
(b) passive constructions	0	2 (or 3)
(c) existential *there*	1	0
(d) prefaces and noun tags	1 + 1	0
(e) demonstrative *wh*-clefts	1	0

CONVERSATION

- existential *there*: *there's something*
- demonstrative *wh*-cleft: *That's what we want*
- preface: *And the pound cake with brandy sauce*
- noun tag: *beautiful music*

ACADEMIC PROSE

- fronting: *Synonymous with the logographic concept is the expression 'lexigraphic'*
- passives: *has been suggested, should be called*. (The first clause *Some scholars are opposed to ...* is a doubtful case of the passive. There is no active equivalent, so *opposed* is best classed as an adjective. See *SGSWE* 2.3.6.)

Although these text samples are merely illustrations, they are consistent with the tendencies mentioned at the end of Chapter 12 of *SGSWE*.

13 The grammar of conversation

Exercise 2 (sample answers)

Examples from Conversation II

(a) shared context: deictic items: *Here you go, babe. Try this*; personal pronouns: *I guess it, I guess it wasn't that*

(b) avoiding elaboration or specification of meaning: repeated use of the hedge *like: Like little bitty curls, like, I mean, ...*

(c) interactiveness: tag questions: *... huh?... right?... are you?*; inserts: *Oh, okay, nyah, Hm, Yeah.*

(f) vernacular range: informal and non-standard usage: *Yeah, it's real nice. They're laying down.* (compare standard *lying down*)

Examples from Conversation III

(b) avoiding elaboration or specification of meaning: general nouns and pronouns: *something new; the other thing*

(c) interactiveness: questions: *What do you got?* (note the dysfluency); *Should we say these products here or this product?*

(e) real-time production: add-on strategy: *I'll take that with me, | I'll update it in my system | and then I'll make a second one | and we'll carry them back and forth.* (| = clause boundary)

f) vernacular range of expression: contractions (*that's, didn't*); informal and non-standard usage: *works out pretty good*

Examples from Conversation IV

(b) avoiding elaboration or specification of meaning: initial ellipsis: *Still wasn't quite clear to me ...* (= *It still wasn't quite clear ...*)

(c) interactiveness: frequency of negation: *I don't know if this is—this doesn't look as bad ...*; discourse markers *you know, well, I mean*

(d) stance: evaluative adjectives, comment clauses: *They're fine I think. He just didn't want blue I don't think I guess*

(e) real-time production: add-on strategy: *It may be though the same one | that he wanted | and I picked out the blue*

Exercise 3 (sample answers)

Examples from Conversation II

repeat: B3: *I'm serious, like, like that's a lie.*

syntactic blend: A5: *I think I'm—might blow dry it now, right?* compare: *I think I might blow dry it now, right?* (begins utterance with a copula *be* or the use of *be* in a progressive verb phrase, then switches to a verb phrase with the modal verb *might*)

incomplete utterance: B8: *Here you figure it out. I'm going into—*

pause: A9: <laughing> *But I was getting some counseling.—I see what you mean though about the curls in the back.*

repair: B12: *Like, that's what I thought you were, you wanted to do* (perhaps the speaker started to say *you were going to do*)

Examples from Conversation III

syntactic blend: A1: *What do you got?* (perhaps a blend of *What do you have?* and *What have you got?*)

hesitator: A2: *the speakers and the uh, printer.*

repeat: A2: *I just put a, a plug strip in here.*

incomplete utterance: A9: *In fact I've, what we should, that disk I gave you—* (a string of three incomplete utterances!)

Examples from Conversation IV

incomplete utterance followed by pause: B6: *that's just—yeah*

repeat (two examples): B7: *And she she said the the difference was ...*

Exercise 4 (sample answers)

I A12: ^ *Wonderful* = initial ellipsis; a non-clausal unit; *That's* is omitted. This is situational ellipsis: A is referring, apparently ironically, to the annoying situation where he/she can't find a voter card.

II B2: *You ^ got a lot of curls* = medial ellipsis; *'ve* is omitted.

II B3: *And ^ smooth* = initial ellipsis; a non-clausal unit; *now it looks* is apparently omitted. These words can be found in the preceding clause.

II B4: *That stuff looks good, yes it does ^* = final ellipsis; *look good* is omitted. It is found in the preceding clause.

III B12: *I can tell ^* = final ellipsis; *that you haven't loaded that disk in yet* is omitted; this would have been repeated from the preceding utterance.

IV B3: ^ *nothing blue about it* = initial ellipsis, a non-clausal unit; *There's* is understood in the context.

IV B12: *oh, yeah now we are ^* = final ellipsis; *getting something* is understood from the previous clause.

IV A14: ^ *Just a little bit of blank paper* = initial ellipsis, a non-clausal unit; probably *We are getting* is understood from the preceding turn.

EXERCISE 5

The following inserts occur: *hm, huh, I mean, no, now, nyah, oh, okay, right, well, yeah, yes.* Note: *Like, really* and *alright* behave similarly to inserts in conversation, but in *SGSWE* we treat them as adverbs.

BRIEF NOTES ON *OH*

Function: interjection; though in some ways like a discourse marker. Details of use: can be backchannel expressing interest or surprise (e.g. I B1). Adds emotion to a speech act such as a directive: e.g. *Oh, come on* (II B4). Position: usually begins a turn, and is sometimes a turn in itself. Often combines with other inserts: *Oh, no* (I B12), *oh yeah* (IV B14).

BRIEF NOTES ON *OKAY*

Function: response form, discourse marker (Conversations I–IV have no examples of *okay*? as a response-getter). Details of use: mostly signalling acceptance or compliance: e.g. in II there are four *okays*, where A is explaining to B, and B is accepting the explanations (these are like backchannels). *Okay* can also indicate a decision, signalling a new phase in the task or discussion: e.g. *Okay, so let's go do this stuff* (I A6). Position: mostly at the beginning of a turn, or a complete turn in itself.

EXERCISE 6

Some comments on the first six lines:
Features resembling natural conversation:

- *Or at any rate ^ what passes for one these days is an instance of ellipsis* (= *Or at any rate the old boy's what passes for one these days*).
- *One* in this utterance is a substitute pronoun (= *a terrifically distinguished citizen of Wales*).
- *Or* and *And* are used at the beginning of a new sentence or utterance.
- *Another* (= another terrifically distinguished ...) is another indefinite pronoun as a substitute form.
- Also typical of conversation are *Well* (as an introductory discourse marker), the contraction of *is* in *the old boy's* and *that's*, and the omission of *that* in the *that*-clause in line 4.

Features not resembling natural conversation:

- There is no dysfluency in the first six lines, and little dysfluency in the rest of the passage. (The exceptions are incomplete utterances in lines 12, 13 and 17.)
- Complex noun phrases with premodifiers and postmodifiers: *a terrifically distinguished citizen of Wales; his thirty years of pen-pushing in first City Hall and later County Hall, for which he was duly honoured.* Such noun phrase complexity is infrequent in natural conversation.
- A particularly formal, even literary, feature is the non-restrictive relative clause with an initial preposition: *for which he was duly honoured.*

LONGMAN

Student Grammar of SPOKEN and WRITTEN ENGLISH Workbook

The *Longman Student Grammar of Spoken and Written English Workbook* gives advanced students of English the practice and tools needed to analyze everyday language. It is linked by direct cross-references to the *Longman Student Grammar of Spoken and Written English* – the pedagogical coursebook that examines grammatical structure and the how, when, and why of English as it is really used.

- invaluable for students on university and teacher-training courses
- checks your knowledge of how English is actually used in speech and writing
- shows how grammar differs in different contexts or registers
- provides practice with relationships between grammar and vocabulary
- all examples taken from naturally occurring English texts and conversations
- comparisons between British English and American English
- spoken and written extracts throughout
- full answer key

Pearson Education

LONGMAN corpus NETWORK

BRITISH NATIONAL CORPUS

Visit our website http://www.longman.com/dictionaries

[redacted]

BBI

THE BBI COMBINATORY DICTIONARY OF ENGLISH

Your guide to collocations and grammar

third edition
expanded and revised

John Benjamins Publishing Company

THE BBI COMBINATORY DICTIONARY OF ENGLISH: YOUR GUIDE TO COLLOCATIONS AND GRAMMAR

The BBI Combinatory Dictionary of English

Your Guide to Collocations and Grammar

Third edition revised by Robert Ilson

Compiled by

Morton Benson
Evelyn Benson
Robert Ilson

John Benjamins Publishing Company
Amsterdam/Philadelphia

The paper used in this publication meets the minimum requirements of American National Standard for Information Sciences — Permanence of Paper for Printed Library Materials, ANSI Z39.48-1984.

Dedicated to Morton Benson (1924–1998)

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Benson, Morton.
The BBI dictionary of English word combinations / compiled by Morton Benson, Evelyn Benson, Robert Ilson. -- 3rd edition revised by Robert Ilson
p. cm.
1. English language--Terms and phrases. I. Benson, Evelyn. II. Ilson, Robert. III. Title.
PE1689.B46 2009
423'.1--dc22 2009012597
ISBN 978 90 272 3260 1 (HB; alk. paper)
ISBN 978 90 272 3261 8 (PB; alk. paper)

© 2010 – copyright shared by Evelyn Benson, Robert Ilson, and John Benjamins B.V.
No part of this book may be reproduced in any form, by print, photoprint, microfilm, or any other means, without written permission from the publisher.

John Benjamins Publishing Co. · P.O. Box 36224 · 1020 ME Amsterdam · The Netherlands
John Benjamins North America · P.O. Box 27519 · Philadelphia PA 19118-0519 · USA

Table of contents

Preface to the third edition VII

Preface to the second edition XI

A Practical Guide to the BBI XIII
- Background XIII
- How to Find Grammatical Collocations in the BBI XIII
- How to Find Lexical Collocations in the BBI XIV
- Abbreviations XV

How Entries are Structured in the BBI: A Visual Guide XVI

Introduction XIX
- General XIX
- Grammatical Collocations XIX
  - Background XIX
  - G1–G8 XIX
  - Special Note on Transitivity XXX
  - Survey of Verb Patterns XXX
- Lexical Collocations XXXI
  - Background XXXI
  - L1–L7 XXXI
- Arrangement of Entries XXXIV
  - General XXXIV
  - Order of Entries XXXV
  - Noun Entries XXXV
  - Adjective Entries XXXV
  - Verb Entries XXXV
- Style Guide XXXV
  - The Swung Dash XXXV
  - Collocational Strings XXXVI
  - Definitions and Paraphrases XXXVII
  - Illustrative Phrases XXXVIII
  - Usage Notes XXXVIII
  - Pronunciation XXXVIII

Comparative table of Simplified Transcription (ST) and IPA transcription XLI

Dictionary 1

Using the BBI: A workbook with exercises is available at:
http://dx.doi.org/10.1075/z.bbi.workbook

Preface to the *BBI Combinatory Dictionary of English: Your Guide to Collocations and Grammar*

Third Edition

Robert Ilson

To use language you must be able to combine words with other words to form phrases and to combine words into grammatical patterns to form clauses and sentences. Traditionally, the combination of words with words has been called collocation and its result has been called phraseology. Traditionally, the combination of words into grammatical patterns has been called colligation or complementation or construction (though in BBI it is called collocation, too) and its result has been called valency. A dictionary that provides both phraseology and valency is a dictionary of word combinations; or, in the terminology of Igor Melchuk, whose work has inspired us, a combinatory or combinatorial dictionary. BBI is a combinatory dictionary.

Consider the sentence ⟨I *badly* **want** *to go* there.⟩. It offers you the phraseological information that the verb **want** can be intensified by the word *badly*. It offers you also the valency information that the verb **want** can take the pattern *to* + *infinitive*.

BBI offers such information about many types of word. It tells you that **since** collocates with *ever* ⟨I married her and we've been happy *ever* **since**.⟩ and with *long* ⟨a custom *long* **since** abandoned⟩. It tells you that **reveal, revelation**, and **let on** can all take the pattern *that* + *clause* ⟨Don't ¬**reveal/let on**¬ *that* you know the answer, or your **revelation** *that* you know the answer may disturb everyone.⟩ (where the occasional symbols ¬…/…¬ couple **let on** (two words) with **reveal** (one word) as alternatives). And so on. And so forth.

BBI offers that information by means of Codes (see our Introduction), Exemplification, and Discussion (as in Usage Notes).

In BBI 3, examples may be repeated at more than one word to show a particularly close or memorable relation between the words exemplified. Thus we offer the example ⟨**shock** and **awe**⟩ at both **awe** and **shock**. And the famous phrase ⟨"With **malice** *toward* none; with **charity** *for* all" — Abraham Lincoln, Second Inaugural Address," 1865⟩ appears as an example at both **charity** and **malice**. That shows also how BBI 3 offers examples of real English attributed to their real authors. Such authentic attributed examples help to motivate language-learners — as they would most certainly motivate me !

Moreover, in BBI 3, examples may be transformed to exhibit the relation between the words exemplified. Thus we offer: -

vex *v.* …It **vexes** me greatly to read such things in the newspapers …
vexation *n.* …my great **vexation** to read such things in the newspapers …
vexed *adj.* …I'm very **vexed** to read such things in the newspapers …
vexing *adj.* …It is very **vexing** to read such things in the newspapers …

Furthermore, in BBI 3, examples may be combined to create mini-dialogues. Thus at **account II** *v.* we offer ⟨…"how do you **account** *for* the accident?" "it can be partly **accounted** *for* by the bad weather."⟩

The repetition, transformation, and combination of examples help to knit the many entries of BBI together and to enable people to adjust their use of words appropriately to contexts.

The Usage Notes in BBI 3 allow a freer and more discursive explanation of language problems. Thus the Usage Note at **thanks** not only offers the most typical responses to **thanks** and **thank you** but also assesses those responses for their currency (is a response used throughout the English-speaking world or only in a part of it?) and contemporaneity (is a response up to date or old-fashioned?).

For a work to help people to use a cosmopolitan language it is essential to specify where possible the range of acceptability of the items entered in the work. Thus at **thanks** our Usage Note specifies that the response "You're welcome" is nowadays Common English (despite its probable American origin) whereas the response "Don't mention it" is somewhat old-fashioned British English. Similarly, at **omit** we say that though the collocation in the example ⟨she **omitted** his name *from* the list.⟩ is Common English, the colligation in the example ⟨he **omitted** *to explain* why he had been late.⟩ is chiefly British English rather than American English. In fact, the treatment of American-British differences in BBI 3 is one of its most important features.

Whence come the entries in BBI 3? They are several thousand of the items that Morton Benson, Evelyn Benson, and I have found of most value in using our native language, English, and in seeking equivalents for when using other languages.

Whence come the collocations and colligations offered in BBI 3 about those entries? From the authors' intuition, supported by their reading of and listening to contemporary English and by consultation with such valued colleagues as Ms Janet Whitcut and Dr John Kahn. Nowadays, our task is eased not only by the availability of corpuses of contemporary English (such as the British National Corpus) but also by the amazing resource of the Internet itself, which enables us to search in it for a word and find superb examples of that word in context. Nor should it be forgotten that an important source of new information in BBI 3 is, paradoxically, BBI 2, now that the computer allows material from an entry in BBI 2 to be added to other entries in BBI 3 where such material is appropriate.

But the items that occur to us or that we find are passed through the filter of standard lists of complementation patterns in such works as *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language* by Randolph Quirk et al. and of collocations (as in the lists of Lexical Functions prepared by Igor Melchuk et al. for use in explanatory and combinatorial dictionaries of various languages). So what users of BBI get is the product of native-speaker intuition *expanded* by our exposure to authentic English and then *refined* through the standard grids for phraseology and valency developed by outstanding scholars.

The result is BBI. It was “highly recommended” by the English-Speaking Union in 1987. We hope that its present incarnation, 20 to 25% larger, will bring it into the 21st Century and provide the sort of information about English that its authors would like to have about the other languages we want to learn !

Preface to the
BBI Dictionary of English Word Combinations
Revised edition of the
BBI Combinatory Dictionary of English

In this revised edition we have expanded and updated the First Edition (1986) and the New Printing (1993) of the BBI, both of which were very favorably received. In selecting new material, we have made use of a variety of sources, such as: (1) critical appraisals from over 50 reviews in numerous journals; (2) additions to the bilingual versions of the BBI, specifically the Maruzen edition (Tokyo, 1993) and the *Longman Dictionary of English Collocations* (Hong Kong, 1995); (3) comments and suggestions of users of the BBI from around the globe, not all of whom can be mentioned here. We would, however, like to acknowledge the contributions of the following three scholars who have made a special effort to send in material: Mrs. Leatrice Lock Fung of Honolulu (Hawaii), Professor Mohamed H. Heliel of Alexandria University (Egypt), and Professor Zai Ming Li of Fuzhou University (People's Republic of China).

The Revised Edition includes items that were missed in the First Edition. Examples of collocations that were added are: *to access data, a blank cassette, a borderline case, a cellular phone, to come on strong, a computer virus, corporate downsizing, a credit note* (in British English), *cultural diversity, a digital clock, to downsize the workforce, to gather speed, a laptop computer, legally binding, to level an accusation at, to nominate a candidate, to overshoot the runway, to program a VCR, to put a spin on something, to remove graffiti, to run a spell check, a security camera, to send a fax, to sound the all clear, twenty-twenty vision, to wave goodbye,* etc.

In addition, a special effort has been made to identify and incorporate collocations that have entered the English language in recent years since the interlinking of computers. Thus, collocations such as *to browse the web, to create a home page, to cruise the World Wide Web, to go online, to send E-Mail, to surf the Internet, to visit a web site, welcome to cyberspace!* etc., have been included. We wish to express our sincere gratitude to Professor John F. Fritz, specialist in computers at the Allegheny University School of Nursing in Philadelphia, who assisted us in gathering these examples.

As in the First Edition, we have adhered to the principle of citing examples in clear, natural, normal English and have excluded collocations that are strictly technical. Once again, we will be grateful for comments and suggestions from users of this *Dictionary*.

M.B., E.B., R.I.

A Practical Guide to the BBI

Background

Learners of English as a foreign or second language, like learners of any language, have traditionally devoted themselves to mastering words — their pronunciation, forms, and meanings. However, if they wish to acquire active mastery of English, that is, if they wish to be able to express themselves fluently and accurately in speech and writing, they must learn to cope with the combination of words into phrases, sentences, and texts.

Students must learn how words combine or 'collocate' with each other. In any language, certain words regularly combine with certain other words or grammatical constructions. These recurrent, semi-fixed combinations, or *collocations,* can be divided into two groups: *grammatical collocations* and *lexical collocations.* Grammatical collocations consist of a dominant word — noun, adjective/participle, verb — and a preposition or a grammatical construction. Lexical collocations, on the other hand, do not have a dominant word; they have structures such as the following: verb + noun, adjective + noun, noun + verb, noun + noun, adverb + adjective, adverb + verb.

The BBI is a specialized dictionary designed to help learners of English find collocations quickly and easily. The BBI consistently pays attention to differences between American English and British English.

How to Find Grammatical Collocations in the BBI

Typical grammatical collocations in English are: (with prepositions) *admiration* (for), *acceptable* (to), *amazed* (at), (by) *accident, to adhere* (to), *eager* (for); (with grammatical constructions) *eager* (to do something), *eagerness* (to do something), *to want* (someone to do something), *to become* (someone or something). In such collocations the noun or the adjective or the verb is the dominant word. The **BBI** lists **grammatical collocations under the dominant word**.

Thus, in order to express in English the collocation *Feindseligkeit gegenüber,* the German speaker must find in the BBI the equivalent of the dominant word, that is, the noun *Feindseligkeit.* Learners of English may already know the dominant word; if not, the word can be found easily in any bilingual dictionary. The user of the BBI would then look up the entry for the noun *hostility* and find corresponding English collocations such as *hostility to* and *hostility towards,* both of which correspond to the German *Feindseligkeit gegenüber.*

The French speaker wishing to express in English the collocation *curieux de* (as in *curieux de quelque chose)* would look up the entry for the adjective *curious* and see that one says in English *curious about* (as in *curious about something).*

Spanish speakers seeking the translation of *los vimos entrar* would find at the entry for the verb *see* that one says in English either *we saw them enter* or *we saw them entering.*

How to Find Lexical Collocations in the BBI

Typical lexical collocations in English are: *to put up resistance, to override a veto, a formidable challenge, a dog barks, a herd of cattle, deeply absorbed, to argue heatedly.*

In order to find lexical collocations in the BBI, follow this step-by-step procedure: **if there is a noun in the collocation, look under the noun; if there are two nouns, look under the second; if there is no noun, look under the adjective; if there is no noun or adjective, look under the verb**.

Consequently, in order to find the English for *poner la mesa* a Spanish speaker would look up the entry for the noun *table* and find that in American English one usually says *to set the table* and that in British English one usually says *to lay the table.* Or, the same speaker would find for *prender fuego a* the corresponding English collocation *to set fire to* in the entry for the noun *fire.* The speaker of Italian who wishes to say in English *sfondare la porta* will find at the entry for *door* the collocations *to break down the door* and *to force the door.*

In order to render *eingefleischter Junggeselle* as *confirmed bachelor* and *der Hund bellt* as *the dog barks,* the German speaker would look up the entries for the nouns *bachelor* and *dog.*

French speakers would find that *un troupeau de moutons* is in English *a flock of sheep* by looking up the entry for the noun *sheep,* and that *un troupeau de bétail* is *a herd of cattle* by looking up the noun *cattle.*

Spanish speakers learn that they can express *bien caliente* in English as *piping hot* by consulting the entry for the adjective *hot*.

Speakers of Russian can find for *krepko spat'* the English equivalent *to sleep soundly* by looking under the entry for the verb *sleep.*

For more detail, see the Introduction to this Dictionary and *Using the BBI: A workbook with exercises* (http://dx.doi.org/10.1075/z.bbi.workbook).

Abbreviations

adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
AE	American English
Am.	American
anat.	anatomical
BE	British English
Br.	British
CA	creation and/or activation
CE	Common English
cf.	compare
colloq.	colloquial
comm.	commercial
derog.	derogatory
EN	eradication and/or nullification
esp.	especially
fig.	figurative
GA	General American
GB	Great Britain
imper.	imperative
inf.	infinitive
intr.	intransitive
ling.	linguistics
lit.	literary
math.	mathematics
med.	medicine, medical
mil.	military
misc.	miscellaneous
mus.	music
n.	noun
neg.	negative
obsol.	obsolete
occ.	occasionally
pol.	politics, political
pred.	predicative
prep.	preposition
refl.	reflexive
rel.	religion, religious
RP	Received Pronunciation
smb.	somebody
smt.	something
subj.	subjunctive
(T)	Trademark
tr.	transitive
usu.	usually
US	United States
v.	verb
*	incorrect English

The letters A to S denote the verb patterns, explained in the Introduction, Grammatical Collocations, section G8.

How Entries are Structured in the BBI

A Visual Guide

appointment *n.* ["agreement to meet"] 1. a follow-up; outpatient ~ 2. to have; keep; give, make, schedule an ~ (with) (the hospital gave me a follow-up outpatient ~ with their cardiologist) 3. to break; cancel; miss an ~ 4. by ~ (she sees patients by ~ only) 5. an ~ to + inf. (she had an ~ to see the dean) ["selection"] 6. to confirm; make an ~ 7. to block an ~ 8. an ~ to (we announced her ~ to the committee) ["position"] 9. an ~ as 10. to offer an ~ (we offered her an ~ as treasurer) 11. to have, hold; receive an ~ 12. an interim; permanent; temporary ~ 13. a political ~ ["designation"] 14. by ~ to Her Majesty

Definition (of noun in square brackets, other typeface and double quotation marks),
referring to 1. – 5.

Definition, referring to 6. – 8.

Definition, referring to 9. – 13.

Definition, referring to 14.

clock I *n.* 1. to regulate, set; wind (up) a ~ 2. to advance a ~; or: to put, set, turn a ~ ahead/forward ((by) one hour) 3. to put, set, turn a ~ back ((by) one hour) 4. a digital; cuckoo; electric; grandfather; wall ~ (by/according to my digital ~, it's ten thirty) 5. a time ~ (to punch a time ~ when starting or finishing work) 6. a biological ~ (her biological ~ keeps ticking away) 7. a ~ is fast; right; slow 8. a ~ gains time; goes, runs; keeps time; loses time; runs down; says the time, shows the time, tells the time (BE), tells time (AE); stops; ticks 9. a ~ strikes the hour 10. the dial; face; hands of a ~ 11. (misc.) to watch the ~ ("to wait impatiently for the end of the working day"); to work (a)round the ~ ("to work without rest"); to work against the ~ ("to strive to meet a deadline"); the ~ ran out ("the allotted time expired"); to stop the ~ ("to suspend play in a game so that the clock stops running") (see also **alarm clock**)

1. – 10. = Lexical collocations

11. = Idioms with paraphrases in double quotation marks

concerned *adj.* 1. deeply, gravely, greatly; very ~ 2. ~ about, for, over; with (~ about safety) 3. (esp. BE) ~ to + inf. (~ to know your decision) 4. ~ that + clause (she is ~ that there is still so much illiteracy; we are ~ that they might have missed the train) 5. (misc.) as far as I'm ~ USAGE NOTE: The phrases *concerned about*, *concerned over*, and, less frequently, *concerned for* mean "worried about" (concerned about your safety). The phrase *concerned with* means "interested in" (concerned with establishing the truth).

2. – 4. = Grammatical collocations

USAGE NOTE providing additional information

Used only in American English

Used only in British English

meat *n.* 1. to barbecue; braise; broil (AE), grill; cook; cure; fry; marinate; roast; sear; stew ~ 2. to carve, cut; slice ~ 3. dark; red; white ~ 4. fatty; lean ~ 5. raw; tender; tough ~ 6. halal; kosher ~ 7. canned (AE), tinned (BE); fresh; frozen ~ 8. boned; chopped (AE), ground (AE), minced (BE); soup ~ 9. ~ goes bad, spoils 10. a cut; joint; piece; slice of ~ (I'd like a couple of slices of your best cut of ~, please) 11. (misc.) ~ off the bone; ~ on the bone

Illustrative phrase

excited *adj.* 1. ~ about, at, by, over (she got ~ about the news that they were coming) 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to learn that they were coming) 3. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that they were coming)

Compound verb

Definition (of verb in parentheses and double quotation marks)

Verb patterns

come out *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against ("to oppose") (to ~ against a proposal) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ for, in favor of ("to support") (to ~ for a proposal) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to try out for") (are you ~ing out for the team?) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to make known; to publish") (to ~ with a new book; to ~ with the truth) 5. (L) it came out that he had cheated 6. (P; intr.) ("to end up, result") to ~ on top ("to be victorious") 7. (s) the pictures came out fine 8. (misc.) to ~ in spots ("to be covered with spots as a result of illness"); they came out from behind the bushes; she meant it as a compliment, but it came out as an insult; she finally came out openly as a liberal

Introduction

General

In English, as in other languages, there are many fixed, identifiable, non-idiomatic phrases and constructions. Such groups of words are called *recurrent combinations, fixed combinations,* or *collocations.* Collocations fall into two major groups: *grammatical collocations* and *lexical collocations.*

Grammatical Collocations

Background

A grammatical collocation is a phrase consisting of a dominant word (noun, adjective, verb) and a preposition or grammatical structure such as an infinitive or clause. For example, Noam Chomsky in his *Aspects of the Theory of Syntax* (page 191) points out that *decide on a boat,* meaning 'choose (to buy) a boat' contains the collocation *decide on* (in his terminology: *close construction*), whereas *decide on a boat,* meaning 'make a decision while on a boat' is a *free combination* (in his terminology: *loose association*). Any native speaker of English feels that the components of *decide on* 'choose' and of other fixed phrases such as *account for, accuse (somebody) of, adapt to, agonize over, aim at,* etc. 'collocate' with each other. The native speaker will reject violations of collocability such as **decide at a boat, *account over a loss, *accuse somebody on a crime, *adapt towards new conditions*, etc.

Free combinations, on the other hand, consist of elements that are joined in accordance with the general rules of English syntax and freely allow substitution. For example, in English a verb may be followed by adverbials (of time, place, and manner). The resultant number of possible combinations is limitless: *they decided — after lunch, at three o'clock, during recess, immediately, in the library, on the boat, quickly, reluctantly, unhesitatingly, with a heavy heart,* etc.

Collocations should be included in dictionaries; free combinations, on the other hand, should generally not be included. (The inclusion of free combinations is sometimes essential to illustrate a sense of a polysemous entry in a general-purpose dictionary.)

We will now describe eight major types of grammatical collocations; all of these are included in this *Dictionary.* The types are designated by G1, G2, etc.

G1

G1 collocations consist of noun + preposition combinations. We do not normally include noun + *of* combinations. A very large number of English nouns can be used with *of*, especially to denote the concepts of 'direct object', 'subject', or 'possession'. Thus, we include the combination *blockade against,* but not *blockade of.* The phrase *the blockade of enemy ports* is a regular transformation of *to blockade enemy ports.* We include *apathy towards,* but not *apathy of.* A phrase such as *the apathy of the electorate* is predictable on the basis of the known functions of the preposition *of.*

We also do not include noun + *by* combinations. The phrase *the blockade of enemy ports by our navy* is a predictable and regular transformation of the sentence: *our navy blockaded the enemy ports.* In addition, as already indicated, we will not include free combinations, such as *apathy among (the members of our party), apathy in (France),* etc.

To save space, we usually do not include such derived prepositions as *concerning, regarding, in regard to, with regard to.* Note that the prepositions just listed are usually synonymous with *about.* Thus, an *argument about* is synonymous with an *argument concerning, an argument regarding,* etc.

G2

G2 collocations consist of nouns followed by *to* + infinitive. There are five syntactic patterns in which this construction is most frequently encountered; these patterns are the following:

1. It was a *pleasure* (*a problem, a struggle*) to do it.
2. They had the *foresight* (*instructions,* an *obligation, permission,* the *right*) to do it.
3. They felt a *compulsion* (an *impulse,* a *need*) to do it.
4. They made an *attempt* (an *effort,* a *promise,* a *vow*) to do it.
5. He was a *fool* (a *genius,* an *idiot*) to do it.

Some nouns can also be used with a verb form in *-ing: it's a pleasure to work there = it's a pleasure working there = working there is a pleasure* (= *to work there is a pleasure*). Such nouns usually occur in the first syntactic pattern listed above. The use of the *-ing* form is shown in the entries.

We do not include nouns if they are followed by infinitives normally associated with the whole sentence rather than with the noun. Such infinitives express purpose; the phrase *in order* may be inserted between the noun and the infinitive with no change of meaning: *they sold their house (in order) to cut down on expenses, he mowed his lawn (in order) to impress his new neighbors, she closed the window (in order) to keep the flies out,* etc.

Nor do we include nouns that occur in phrases such as *a procedure to follow, a book to read, a place to eat, a way to do it,* etc. In such constructions, the infinitive can be replaced by a relative clause: *a procedure that is to be followed, a book that should be read, a place at which one can (should) eat, a way in which one may (should) do it.* The *BBI* does not include colloquial phrases often found in advertisements: *the dictionary to end all dictionaries, a computer to satisfy all needs,* etc.

Lastly, we usually do not include nouns preceded by a descriptive adjective: *an interesting book to read, a difficult person to understand, a clever thing to say,* etc.

Note that in addition to nouns, some adjectives (G6) and some verbs (Pattern E) are followed by *to* + infinitive.

G3

We include here nouns that can be followed by a *that* clause: *we reached an agreement that she would represent us in court; he took an oath that he would do his duty.* The *Dictionary* does not include nouns followed by relative clauses introduced by *that,* i.e., when *that* can be replaced by w*hich: we reached an agreement that would go into effect in a month; he took the same oath that his predecessor had taken.* Nor does it include nouns that can be followed by a clause only when they are objects of a preposition: *it was by chance that we met; it was with (considerable) pride that he presented his findings.*

Some nouns can be followed by a clause with the present subjunctive in formal English: *it was his desire that his estate be divided equally.* See the comments on the use of the subjunctive G8L. The use of the subjunctive is indicated in the entries for such nouns.

G3 nouns expressing emotion *(astonishment, surprise)* may take a ‘putative’ *should: she expressed surprise that he should be thinking of changing jobs.*

G4

G4 collocations consist of preposition + noun combinations. Examples are: *by accident, in advance, to somebody’s advantage, on somebody’s advice, under somebody’s aegis, in agony, on (the) alert, at anchor,* etc.

G5

G5 collocations are adjective + preposition combinations that occur in the predicate or as set-off attributives (verbless clauses): *they were angry at everyone — angry at everyone, they stayed home — my friends, angry at everyone, stayed home.*

Some adjectives must be followed by a prepositional phrase: *they were fond of children.* One does not normally say: **they were fond.* In the sense ‘craving’ the adjective *hungry* is always followed by *for* in the predicate: *they were hungry for news.* The sentence *they were hungry* would have a different meaning. In a similar manner the adjective *deaf* in the sense ‘unwilling to listen’ is always followed by *to: they were deaf to our pleas for help.* Adjectives that are consistently used with a preposition in at least one sense are marked ‘cannot stand alone’ in the entries.

Derived prepositions such as *concerning, regarding, in regard to, with regard to,* are not included in the entries. Note that the prepositions just listed are usually synonymous with *about.*

In general, we do not include past participles (formed from transitive verbs) followed by the preposition *by*: this construction is regular and predictable. Thus, this *Dictionary* does not give such phrases as *abandoned by, absolved by,* etc.

We include adjective + *of* constructions when the subject of the construction is animate (usually human): *they are afraid* (*ashamed, confident, critical, demanding, envious,* etc.) *of him.* See G6 for a discussion of adjective + *of* constructions used with a 'dummy' *it* subject.

G6

G6 collocations consist of predicate adjectives and a following *to* + infinitive. Adjectives occur in two basic constructions with infinitives.

1. *it was necessary to work*

In this construction, the *it* is a 'dummy' or 'empty' subject; it has no antecedent. Prepositional phrases with *for* can be inserted into this construction with many adjectives: *it was necessary for him to work.* If the verb is transitive, a direct object is, of course, added: *it was necessary to supervise them closely.* Some adjectives can be used with a prepositional phrase beginning with *of: it was stupid to go — it was stupid of them to go.* (Sometimes, both *of* and *for* are possible: *it was stupid of them to go; it was stupid for them to go.*)

Most adjectives that appear in adjective + *of* constructions (with the 'dummy' *it* subject) followed by *to* + infinitive can also be used in sentences without the infinitive. An example is: *it was stupid of them to go — it was stupid of them* (or: *that was stupid of them*). The possibility of dropping the *to* + infinitive is usually not indicated in the *Dictionary.*

2. *she (the girl) is ready to go; it (the machine) was designed to operate at high altitudes*

In this construction, the subject is 'real' and usually animate. Some adjectives, however, normally occur in this construction with an inanimate subject: *calculated, designed,* etc. (See the example provided above with *designed.*) Several adjectives can occur in this construction with either an animate or an inanimate subject; an example is *bound: she was bound to find out — it ('the accident') was bound to happen.* Other adjectives of this type are *destined, known, liable, likely,* etc.

Several adjectives can be used in both constructions: *it was supposed to rain — she was supposed to work today.* Some adjectives have the same meaning in both constructions: *it was difficult to convince him — he was difficult to convince.* Other adjectives of this type are *easy, hard, impossible*, and *tough.*

It should be noted that a large number of adjectives, when used with adverbs such as *too* and *enough,* can be followed by an infinitive: *he was too absorbed to notice; she was alert enough to see it.* These are not included in the *Dictionary.* The *Dictionary* does not include past participles that can be followed by a *to* + infinitive phrase of purpose: *the text was proofread (in order) to eliminate errors.* Nor does the *Dictionary* include past participles that are used in passive constructions: *she was appointed* (*chosen, designated, elected,* etc.) *to serve as our delegate.* Such constructions represent, in fact, the passive transformation of verb pattern H. (See below).

The *Dictionary* does, however, include many other past participles: *he was amazed* (*amused, annoyed, appalled, astonished,* etc.) *to see the results of our research.*

G6 collocations are normally illustrated in the *Dictionary* by examples. The examples will show in which construction (or constructions) each adjective is used. Note that many adjectives used with *it* and *of* can also be used with *he/she: it was stupid of him/her to go — he/she was stupid to go.*

Some G6 adjectives are normally not used without a following infinitive (or prepositional phrase), especially with an animate subject. We usually do not say **he is destined, *he is easy, *he is likely,* etc., but rather *he is destined to go far, he is easy to get along with, he is not likely to be late,* etc. G6 adjectives of this type are marked 'cannot stand alone' in the entries.

A few G6 adjectives (usually used with the 'dummy' *it*) can also be followed by a verb form in *-ing: it's nice to work here = it's nice working here.* The use of the *-ing* form is shown in the entries.

Note that in addition to adjectives, some nouns (G2) and some verbs (pattern E), are followed by *to* + infinitive.

G7

G7 adjectives (many of which are also in G6) can be followed by a *that* clause: *she was afraid that she would fail the examination; it was nice that he was able to come home for the holidays.* Several adjectives are followed by the present subjunctive in formal English: *it was imperative that I be there at three o'clock; it is necessary that he be replaced immediately.* See the comments on the use of the present subjunctive in G8L.

G8

G8 collocations consist of nineteen English verb patterns, designated by the capital letters A to S. A description of each verb pattern follows.

A. Pattern A verbs allow the *dative movement transformation,* that is, allow the shift of an indirect object (usu. animate) to a position before the direct object, with deletion of *to* when both objects are nouns and when the direct object is a noun: *he sent the book to his brother — he sent his brother the book* and *he sent the book to him — he sent him the book.* However, when both objects are pronouns, this transformation is common only in BE: *he sent it to him — he sent him it* (marginal in AE). BE also allows *he sent it him.*

B. Pattern B verbs are transitive; when they have an indirect object, they do *not* allow the *dative movement transformation,* i.e., the shift of the indirect object (usu. animate) to a position before the direct object with the deletion of *to*. Thus, we have *they described the book to her, they mentioned the book to her, they returned the book to her,* but not **they described her the book,* etc. Compare the A pattern verb *send,* which does allow the transformation: *they sent him the book.* Verbs denoting types of noise fit pattern B: *he screamed something to her.* Other such verbs are: *babble, bark, bellow, growl,* etc.

In a few rare cases, AE and BE usage differs. An example is the verb *recommend,* which in AE belongs to pattern B and in BE to pattern A. Such differences are indicated in the *Dictionary.*

C. In pattern C, transitive verbs used with the preposition *for* allow the *dative movement transformation,* i.e., allow the deletion of *for* and the shift of the indirect object (usu. animate) to a position before the direct object: *she bought a shirt for her husband — she bought her husband a shirt, she bought a shirt for him — she bought him a shirt.*

It must be emphasized that the *Dictionary* gives only those verbs that occur most frequently in the various meanings of *make — create.* For example, in regard to culinary operations, the *Dictionary* includes the verbs *bake, boil, brew, broil, chop, cook, fry, grill, grind, peel, scramble, slice,* and *toast* (as in: *bake me a cake, boil him an egg, brew her some tea, broil us a few steaks,* etc.). However, the *Dictionary* does not include less frequently used verbs that can be used in the same constructions. Examples are: *barbecue, braise, brown, devil, fricassee, oven bake, pan broil, pan fry, parboil, poach, sauté, scallop, shirr, steam, stew,* etc.

D, d. In this pattern, the verb forms a collocation with a specific preposition (+ object). Free combinations such as *to walk in the park* are excluded. In addition, combinations of the type verb + *by* or *with* are excluded when the latter denote 'means' or 'instrument': *they came by train, we cut bread with a knife,* etc.

Collocations consisting of a verb + *as* (+ object) are included in the *Dictionary: to act as, to interpret as, to serve as, to treat as,* etc.

Some D-pattern verbs are normally *not* used without a prepositional phrase. For example, one does not say: **we will adhere, *they based their conclusions, *our committee consists,* etc. Well formed sentences are: *we will adhere to the plan, they based their conclusions on the available facts, our committee consists of six members,* etc. When a verb (or a certain sense of a verb) is normally followed by a prepositional phrase, its pattern is designated by the small letter *d.*

The *Dictionary* does include *compound verbs* followed by prepositions: *break in on, catch up to,* etc. Note that *out of* is treated as a compound preposition.

Transitive D-pattern verbs used with *to* and B-pattern verbs produce identical constructions. We assign to B those verbs that are normally used with an animate indirect object, and to D — verbs normally occurring with inanimate indirect objects. Compare B: *we described the meeting to them* and D: *we invited them to the meeting.*

E. In this pattern, verbs are followed by *to* + infinitive. Examples of this construction are: *they began to speak, she continued to write, he decided to come, we offered to help,* etc. Verbs are not included if they are normally used in phrases of purpose, that is, if *in order* can be inserted with no change of meaning: *they were drilling (in order) to improve their pronunciation, he was running (in order) to catch a train, she stopped (in order) to chat,* etc.

F. This pattern includes the small number of verbs that are followed by an infinitive without *to: we must work.* These verbs, with the exception of *dare, help* (esp. AE), and *need,* are called *modals.* The verbal phrases *had better* and *would rather* also fit this pattern: *he had better (would rather) go.*

G. In this pattern, verbs are followed by a second verb in *-ing*. Typical examples of this construction are: *they enjoy watching television, he kept talking, we miss going to work every day, the house needs painting, she quit smoking, he regrets living so far from his family,* etc.

Note that some pattern G verbs are also in pattern E. Thus, we have approximately synonymous constructions: *he began reading — he began to read, she continued speaking — she continued to speak.*

Several verbs, however, that appear in both G and E have a different meaning in each construction. The sentence *he remembered to tell them* means that 'he intended to tell them and told them'; *he remembered telling them* means that 'he remembered the act of telling them'. In a similar manner, the construction *he forgot to tell them* means that 'he intended to tell them, but forgot to do so'; *he forgot (about) telling them* means that 'he forgot that he (had) told them'.

Note also the difference between the pattern G construction *she stopped chatting* 'she terminated her chat' and *she stopped to chat.* The latter construction contains an infinitive phrase of purpose similar to that in *she dropped in (in order) to chat, she telephoned her friend (in order) to chat,* etc.

H. In this pattern, transitive verbs are followed by an object and *to* + infinitive. Typical examples of this construction are: *she asked me to come; they challenged us to fight; we forced them to leave; he invited me to participate; she permitted the children to watch television.*

Many of the verbs in this pattern can take the infinitive *to be* after the direct object: *we advised them to be careful, she asked us to be punctual, the director authorized us to be in the laboratory,* etc. For verbs that are normally used only with *to be* after the direct object, see pattern M.

Most H-pattern verbs can be passivized: *I was asked to come, we were authorized to use the laboratory,* etc. Some, however, cannot be: *beseech, bring, cable, cause, commit, get, have, intend, like, prefer, telegraph, telephone, thank, trouble, want, wire, wish,* and *write.*

I. In this pattern, transitive verbs are followed by a direct object and an infinitive without *to*. Examples of this construction are: *she heard them leave, we let the children go to the park, they saw her drive up to the house, he watched them unload the car,* etc. Some of these verbs are also used in pattern J.

The use of I-pattern verbs in the passive occurs occasionally: *we felt the earth move — the earth was felt to move; they made us get up — we were made to get up.* Note the appearance of *to* + infinitive in the passive construction. In some instances, the *-ing* form seems more natural when the verb is passivized: *she was seen driving up to the house.* Most I-pattern verbs cannot be passivized: *we had them fix our roof, she helped us move the furniture, they let the children go home, I watched them unload the car,* etc.

J. In this pattern, verbs are followed by an object and a verb form in *-ing*. Typical examples of this construction are: *I caught them stealing apples, we found the children sleeping on the floor, he kept me waiting two hours,* etc. Note that some verbs in this list are also used in pattern I. Thus, we have approximately synonymous constructions: *she heard them leaving — she heard them leave, he felt his heart beating — he felt his heart beat, we watched them dancing — we watched them dance,* etc.

J-pattern verbs can usually be passivized: *they were caught stealing apples, the children were found sleeping on the floor, I was kept waiting two hours,* etc.

K. In this pattern, verbs can be followed by a possessive (pronoun or noun) and a gerund, i.e., a verbal noun. Typical examples of this construction are: *please excuse my waking you so early, this fact justifies Bob's coming late.* Some of these constructions are very close to those in pattern J, which consist of verb + direct object + present participle. Note the following constructions that are virtually synonymous: *I cannot imagine them stealing apples — I cannot imagine their stealing apples; they remembered Bill making that mistake — they remembered Bill's making that mistake*, etc.

The possessive construction is awkward when two objects are joined by a conjunction. Thus, the construction *I can't imagine Bill* (or *Bill's*) *and Mary's doing that* is far less likely to occur than the pattern J construction *I can't imagine Bill and Mary doing that.*

Native speakers of English often have individual preferences for one con-struction and may not find the other construction acceptable. Some speakers tend to avoid the possessive construction, which is considered to be bookish. Thus, instead of *we excused his coming late,* many will say *we excused him for coming late;* instead of *we anticipated his refusing,* they prefer *we anticipated his refusal,* etc. In this *Dictionary* we have attempted to include only the most frequently occurring verbs that can be followed by a possessive.

L. In this pattern, verbs can be followed by a noun clause beginning with the conjunction *that*. Examples are: *they admitted that they were wrong, she believed that her sister would come, he denied that he had taken the money, we hoped that the weather would be nice.* In colloquial English the *that* may be omitted: *they admitted they were wrong, she believed her sister would come,* etc.

Some verbs always take a noun or pronoun object before the *that* clause: *she assured me that she would arrive on time, they convinced us that we should invest our money at once, he informed his students that the examination had been canceled.* Such verbs are marked 'must have an object' in the entries. Other verbs can be used with or without a nominal object: *he bet that it would rain — he bet me that it would rain; we cabled that we would arrive on Tuesday — we cabled them that we would arrive on Tuesday; she promised that she would come — she promised her brother that she would come; we showed that we were good workers — we showed everyone that we were good workers,* etc. Such verbs are marked 'may have an object' in the entries. Most of the objects in the sentences just cited seem to be direct objects, i.e., cannot be preceded by *to.* Note however that the (especially AE) construction *he wrote me that* *he would come next month* has the CE variant *he wrote to me that he would come next month.* Certain verbs in pattern L (often belonging also to pattern B) may be followed by a prepositional phrase with *to: he swore that he would stop drinking — he swore to us that he would stop drinking*. Such verbs are marked 'to' in the entries.

Some verbs in pattern L allow the insertion of *the fact* with little or no change in meaning: *he acknowledged* (*admitted, confirmed, forgot, mentioned,* etc.) *that he was guilty* or *the fact that he was guilty.*

Verbs denoting types of noise fit pattern L: *growl, grumble, grunt, mumble,* etc.

Several verbs, in 'correct' or formal English, are followed by a verb in the present subjunctive in the *that* clause. Examples are: *he demanded that I be there tomorrow at ten o'clock, we moved that the resolution be accepted, the officer ordered that the soldier report to his unit immediately, she proposed that our class hold a reunion, they suggested that the firm appoint a new personnel manager.* In BE the modal *should* is normally used (also in AE as a variant): *they suggested that the firm should appoint a new personnel manager.* The verbs used with a following subjunctive in formal English are marked *subj.* in the entries. The variant with *should* is also shown in the entries.

Some L-pattern verbs can be followed by a clause either with the subjunctive or with the indicative; there is a difference in meaning. Compare: *I suggest that she be/ should be there at two o'clock — the facts suggest that she is there.*

A few L-pattern verbs regularly have 'dummy' *it* as their subject: *it appears that they will not come.* Other verbs of this type are: *follow, seem, transpire, turn out,* etc.

M. In this pattern, transitive verbs can be followed by a direct object, the infinitive *to be,* and either an adjective, or a past participle, or a noun/pronoun. In most instances, the same verb can be followed by any of these three forms. Examples of this construction are: *we consider her to be very capable — we consider her to be well trained — we consider her to be a competent engineer; the court declared the law to be unconstitutional — the court declared the law to be superseded by more recent legislation — the court declared the law to be a violation of the Constitution; we found the roads to be excellent — we found the roads to be cleared of snow — we found the roads to be a serious problem for the state treasury.*

Note that this pattern includes verbs that normally take *to be* after the direct object. For verbs that combine freely with infinitives other than *to be,* see pattern H.

N. In this pattern, transitive verbs can be followed by a direct object and an adjective or a past participle or a noun/pronoun. Here are several examples of this construction with an adjective: *she dyed her hair red, we found them interesting, he made his meaning clear, the police set the prisoner free.* Verbs used with adjectives in this construction are marked 'used with an adjective' in the entries.

Examples with a past participle are: *the soldiers found the village destroyed, she had her tonsils removed, we heard the aria sung in Italian.* Verbs used with past participles are marked 'used with a past participle' in the entries.

Examples with a noun/pronoun are: *we appointed (designated, elected, made, named) Bob secretary, her friends call her Becky, they ordained him priest.* Verbs used with nouns/pronouns are marked ‘used with a noun’ in the entries. Many of these verbs are also used in pattern H (*appoint, designate, elect, name*). Approximately synonymous constructions of the following types can thus be formed: *we appointed* (*designated,* etc.) *him secretary;* or: *we appointed him to serve as secretary;* or: *we appointed him to be secretary.*

Some pattern N verbs are also used in pattern M. Note the following synonymous constructions: *we consider her (to be) a competent engineer; the court declared the law (to be) unconstitutional; we found the roads (to be) cleared of snow; we proved him (to be) guilty,* etc.

Finally, it should be noted that some N-pattern verbs are used only with certain adjectives or with a certain adjective. For example, with the verb *paint,* we can say *to paint the walls blue/green/white,* etc. With the verb *shoot,* we can only say *to shoot somebody dead.*

O. In this pattern, transitive verbs can take two objects, neither of which can normally be used in a prepositional phrase with *to* or *for*. Examples of sentences with such double objects are: *the teacher asked the pupil a question, we bet her ten pounds, the police fined him fifty dollars, God will forgive them their sins, she tipped the waiter five dollars,* etc. Note the superficial similarity of the constructions *we bet him ten pounds* and *we sent him ten pounds.* (See pattern A.) Only the second construction allows the transformation *we sent ten pounds to him.*

Pattern O is also very close structurally to pattern N (which has a noun/pronoun following the direct object: *they called him a fool*). The latter construction has one direct object (him), followed by a predicate (object) complement (*a fool).*

Some pattern O verbs can be used with either of their objects alone: *the teacher asked the pupil — the teacher asked a question.* Such verbs are marked ‘can be used with one object’ in the entries.

Verbs pertaining to gambling such as *bet, lay,* and *wager* are noteworthy in being able to take in effect three objects — a person, an amount, and a clause denoting the point of the bet: *we bet him ten pounds that it would rain. Bet* can be used with any of the three objects alone; *lay* seems to require the first and the second; *wager* can be used with either the second or the third alone.

O-pattern verbs can usually be passivized; in most instances, at least one object can become the subject of the passive construction. Examples are: *no questions were asked, ten pounds were bet, he was fined fifty dollars, they will be forgiven, the waiter was tipped five dollars.*

P. In this pattern, intransitive, reflexive, and transitive verbs must be followed by an adverbial. The adverbial may be an adverb, a prepositional phrase, a noun phrase, or a clause. For example, we cannot normally say in English **he carried himself.* An adverbial is required to form a complete sentence: *he carried himself well;* or: *he carried himself with dignity.* In a similar manner, without adverbials the following sentences are not complete: **Tuesday comes, *we fared, *the meeting will last, *my brother is living* (= ‘dwelling’), **a strange man was lurking, *I nosed the car, *she put pressure* (cf.: *she exerted pressure,* which is acceptable), **the boys sneaked, *they tramped, *the trunk weighs,* etc. Acceptable sentences can be formed only if an appropriate adverbial is added: *Tuesday comes after Monday, we fared well, the meeting will last two hours, my brother is living in Utah, a strange man was lurking where we least expected him, I nosed the car (out) into the street, she put pressure on them, the boys sneaked into the auditorium, they tramped through the woods, the trunk weighs thirty pounds.*

Note that some polysemous verbs cited above may have senses that do not require an adverbial: *they are coming, is he still living ? a shot-putter puts the shot,* etc.

Some adverbials of duration may resemble direct objects: *the meeting will last all day, this job took two hours,* etc. In fact, these verbs are intransitive; we can say, for example, *the meeting will last long.* We must also mention here sentences with verbs of measurement, such as *the trunk weighs thirty pounds.* We treat *thirty pounds* as an adverbial complement rather than as a direct object, thus distinguishing this sense of *weigh* (which we consider to be intransitive) from the sense used in the sentence *she weighed the trunk* (which we consider to be transitive).

Some verbs are invariably followed by a particle: *hang around, well up,* etc. Such forms can be considered compound verbs (phrasal verbs) and should be given in dictionaries as separate entries. They are not included in this pattern.

In this *Dictionary* we have attempted to give only the most commonly used verbs and senses that have obligatory adverbials. We have not included all verbs that are followed by a *way*-phrase and an obligatory adverbial: *we elbowed* (*fought, jostled, made, pushed, worked,* etc.) *our way through the crowd, they bribed their way to success, the Tatar cavalry burned its way through Eastern Europe,* etc. The number of such verbs is very large.

Q. In this pattern, verbs can be followed by an interrogative word: *how*, *what, when, where, which, who, why*; to these we add *whether* (which often alternates in clauses with *if*). These interrogative forms are often called *wh*-words. Note: verbs that can be followed only by *what* are not included. An example is the verb *want;* we can say *he wants what I want,* but not **he wants how I want.*

The verbs entered in the *Dictionary* can be followed by a *wh*-word and usually by either a *to* + infinitive construction *or* by a clause: *he asked how to do it, she could not decide whether or not to begin, she knew when to keep quiet — he asked how he should do it, she could not decide whether (if) she should begin, she knew when it was best to keep quiet.*

Although most pattern Q verbs do not take a noun/pronoun object before the *wh*-construction, several must have an object: *we told them what to do, they informed us where applications were being accepted,* etc. Such verbs are marked ‘must have an object’ in the entries. A few verbs can be used with or without an object: *she asked why we had come — she asked us why we had come.* Such verbs are marked ‘may have an object’ in the entries.

R. In this pattern, transitive verbs (often expressing emotion) are preceded by the dummy *it* and are followed by *to* + infinitive or by *that* + clause or by either. The construction (or constructions) in which each verb usually seems to occur is shown in the entries. Examples are: *it behooves/behoves you to study more; it puzzled me that they never answered the telephone; it surprised me to learn of her decision* and *it surprised me that our offer was rejected.*

S. In this pattern, a small number of intransitive verbs are followed by a predicate noun or by a predicate adjective: *she became an engineer; he was a teacher; he became smug; she was enthusiastic.* The verb *make,* used intransitively, belongs here: *he'll make a good teacher.*

A somewhat larger group of intransitive verbs can be followed only by a predicate adjective; these verbs are coded with the small letter *s*. Examples are: *she looks fine; the flowers smell nice; the food tastes good.*

Special Note on Transitivity

Verbs are always transitive in the following patterns: A, B, C, H, I, J, K, M, N, O, and R. In four other patterns verbs are consistently intransitive: E, F, G, and S. In the fifteen patterns just listed, verbs are not marked for transitivity. In patterns D, d, and P, verbs of both types occur and are marked as *tr.* or *intr.* In patterns L and Q, verbs can be followed by a clause, and consequently, can be considered to be transitive with a few exceptions such as *appear, emerge, feel, seem.* If another object must be used, the verb is marked 'must have an object'. If another object may be used, the verb is marked 'may have an object'.

Survey of Verb Patterns

In this survey the following special symbols are used: s = subject; v = verb; o = object (direct or indirect); c = complement; a = adverbial (when obligatory); v-ing = verb form in *-ing.*

Pattern Designation		Pattern	Pattern Designation		Pattern
A	=	svo *to* o (or) svoo	K	=	sv possessive v-ing
B	=	svo *to* o	L	=	sv(o) *that*-clause
C	=	svo *for* o (or) svoo	M	=	svo *to be* c
D, d	=	sv prep. o (or) svo prep. o	N	=	svoc
E	=	sv *to* inf.	O	=	svoo
F	=	sv inf.	P	=	sv(o)a
G	=	svv-ing	Q	=	sv(o) wh-word
H	=	svo *to* inf.	R	=	s(*it*)vo *to* inf. (or) s(*it*)vo *that*-clause
I	=	svo inf.	S	=	svc (adjective or noun)
J	=	svov-ing	s	=	svc (adjective)

Note that collocational types G2 and G3 (for nouns) and G6 and G7 (for adjectives) are closely related grammatically to some of the verb patterns given above.

Lexical Collocations

Background

Lexical collocations, in contrast to grammatical collocations, normally do not contain prepositions, infinitives, or clauses. Typical lexical collocations consist of nouns, adjectives, verbs, and adverbs. An example of an adjective + noun collocation is *warmest regards,* as in *I send warmest regards.* Typical violations of lexical collocability are **I send hot regards and *I send hearty regards.*

Many lexical collocations in English consist of a verb and noun, such as *bring in an acquittal, file an affidavit, put on airs,* etc. The various types of lexical collocations included in the Combinatory *Dictionary* will be described below.

The Combinatory *Dictionary* does not include free lexical combinations. Free lexical combinations are those in which the two elements do not repeatedly co-occur; the elements are not bound specifically to each other; they occur with other lexical items freely. Thus, a construction such as *condemn murder* is a free combination. The verb *condemn* occurs with an unlimited number of nouns: *they condemned — the abduction, abortion, abuse of power, the acquittal,* etc. In a similar manner, *murder* combines freely with hundreds of verbs: *abhor, accept, acclaim, advocate,* etc.

On the other hand, *commit murder* is a collocation. The verb *commit is* limited in use to a small number of nouns, meaning 'crime', 'wrongdoing'; it collocates specifically with *murder.*

We will now describe seven major types of lexical collocations; all of these are included in the *Dictionary*. The types are designated by L1, L2, L3, etc. The *Dictionary* attempts to give only those lexical collocations that are in common use.

L1

L1 collocations consist of a verb (usually transitive) and a noun/pronoun (or prepositional phrase). Most L1 collocations consist of a verb denoting *creation* and/or *activation* and a noun/pronoun. We call such fixed lexical combinations *CA collocations.* Here are examples of collocations with verbs denoting creation: *come to an agreement, make an impression, compose music, set a record, reach a verdict, inflict a wound.* Here are examples of collocations that express the concept of activation: *set an alarm, fly a kite, launch a missile, punch a time clock, spin a top, wind a watch.*

In some instances, the same noun collocates with one verb (or verbs) to denote creation and with another verb (or verbs) to denote activation: *establish a principle (*= creation) — *apply a principle (*= activation); *draw up a will* (= creation) — *execute a will* (= activation).

In many instances the meanings *creation* and *activation* are united in one verb: *call an alert, display bravery, hatch a conspiracy, impose an embargo, produce friction, inflict an injustice, offer opposition, pose a question, lay a smoke screen, put out a tracer, commit treason, issue a warning.*

CA collocations are arbitrary and non-predictable. Non-native speakers cannot cope with them; they must have a guide. They have no way of knowing that one says in English *make an estimate* (but not **make an estimation), commit treason* (but not **commit treachery).* In English one says *commit fraud and perpetrate fraud.* However, only the collocation *commit suicide* is possible; one does not say **perpetrate suicide.*

Even the native speaker may need at times to refer to a list of CA collocations. Many may not know which verbs collocate with such nouns as the following: *acquittal, afterburners, authority, barrage, bench warrant, Caesarean section, cartwheel, circuit breaker, cloture, copyright, counsel, coup de grâce, coup d'état,* etc. A native speaker of AE, who says *to take up a collection,* will not know which verb collocates with the colloquial BE synonym of CE *collection,* namely *whip-round (have).* Speakers of BE prefer *to have a bath;* AE speakers invariably *take a bath.* CE speakers *make a decision;* BE speakers can also *take a decision.*

Many nouns collocate with verbs that refer to the actions of more than one participant. Such nouns will have different CA collocations according to which participant's role is being described. Thus, a copyright office *grants or registers* a copyright, but an author or publisher *holds or secures* one.

CA collocations for polysemous nouns are extremely important. For example, the entry for the noun line has the following collocations: *draw a line* (on paper); *form a line* (= 'line up'); *drop smb. a line* (= 'write smb. a letter'). The entry for *operation* has: *perform an operation* (in a hospital); *carry out (conduct) an operation* (on the battlefield).

As indicated above, the Combinatory *Dictionary* does not include free combinations. Thus, we exclude many combinations with verbs such as *build, cause, cook, grow, make, manufacture, prepare,* etc. even though, strictly speaking, they convey the meanings of 'creation' or 'activation'. Such verbs form an almost limitless number of combinations: *build bridges (houses, roads), cause damage (deafness, a death), cook meat (potatoes, vegetables),* etc.; such combinations seem to be predictable on the basis of the meaning of their component elements.

On the other hand, we have included in L1 many collocations even if they do not mean 'creation' or 'activation'. Examples are: *do the laundry, decline a noun, take one's seat, carry a story, confirm a suspicion, resist temptation, conjugate a verb,* etc.

L2

L2 collocations consist of a verb meaning essentially *eradication* and/or *nullification* and a noun. Such fixed lexical combinations are called *EN collocations.* Typical examples are the following: *reject an appeal, lift a blockade, break a code, reverse a decision, dispel fear, squander a fortune, demolish (raze, tear down) a house, repeal a law, revoke a license, annul a marriage, suspend martial law, scrub (cancel) a mission, withdraw an offer, countermand an order, renege on a promise, crush (put down) resistance, break up a set* (of china), *rescind a tax, ease tension, quench one's thirst, denounce (abrogate) a treaty, exterminate vermin, override a veto,* etc.

The Combinatory *Dictionary,* does not include predictable free EN combinations. For example, the verb *destroy* can be used with a very large number of nouns denoting physical objects; these have not been entered. Examples are: *to destroy — a barn, bridge, building, city, document, factory, harbor, house, laboratory, port, road, school, village,* etc.

L3

L3 collocations consist of an adjective and a noun. One well known pair of examples is *strong tea* (not **mighty tea*) and *weak tea* (not **feeble tea*). In many instances, more than one adjective (or more than one form of the same adjective) can collocate with the same noun: *warm, warmest* (not **hot*); *kind, kindest; best* (not **good*) *regards.* Other examples of L3 collocations are: *reckless abandon, a chronic alcoholic, a pitched battle, a formidable challenge, a crushing defeat, a rough estimate, an implacable foe, a sweeping generalization,* etc.

As already indicated, the *Dictionary* attempts to give only the most commonly used lexical collocations. Many L3 collocations can be considered to be clichés. The *Dictionary* does not normally give collocations that are used solely in technical language. However, the *Dictionary* does give some technical collocations that will be of interest to students and teachers of English for Special Purposes.

In English, nouns are often used as adjectives. Nouns used attributively may enter into L3 collocations: *house arrest, jet engine, land reform, aptitude test.* These collocations are given at the entry for the second noun. However, if in a 'fused' compound the second noun does not have the same basic meaning as it has when used alone, the compound is not included as an L3 collocation. Examples of such *Multi-Word Lexical Units* (MLUS) are: *bowling alley, sitting duck, long shot, stuffed shirt,* etc. An MLU is listed as a separate headword if it enters into a collocation. For example, the colloquial MLU *double take* ('delayed reaction') is given as a headword since it is part of the collocation *to do a double take.*

In some instances, noun + noun collocations can be found more easily by the user of the *Dictionary* when they are listed at the entry for the first noun rather than at the entry for the second noun. For example, *cabinet reshuffle is* given at **cabinet**, *drug pusher* at **drug**, etc. Such collocations are listed in the entries under *misc.*

L4

L4 collocations consist of a noun and verb; the verb names an action characteristic of the person or thing designated by the noun: *adjectives modify, alarms go off (ring, sound), bees buzz (sting, swarm), blizzards rage, blood circulates (clots, congeals, flows, runs), bombs explode (go off),* etc. The *Dictionary* does not include predictable combinations such as *bakers bake, boxers box, cooks cook, dancers dance, fencers fence,* etc.

L5

L5 collocations indicate the *unit* that is associated with a noun. The structure of an L5 collocation is often $noun_1$ *of* $noun_2$. Such collocations may indicate:

a. the larger unit to which a single member belongs: *a colony (swarm) of bees, a herd of buffalo, a pack of dogs, a bouquet of flowers, a pride of lions, a school of whales,* etc.
b. the specific, concrete, small unit of something larger, more general: *a bit (piece, word) of advice, an article of clothing, an act of violence,* etc.

L6

L6 collocations consist of an adverb and an adjective. Examples are: *deeply absorbed, strictly accurate, closely (intimately) acquainted, hopelessly addicted, sound asleep, keenly (very much) aware,* etc.

L7

L7 collocations consist of a verb and an adverb. Examples are: *affect deeply, amuse thoroughly, anchor firmly, apologize humbly, appreciate sincerely, argue heatedly,* etc.

Arrangement of Entries

General

The *Dictionary* provides entries primarily for nouns, adjectives, and verbs. A few entries for adverbs and prepositions are also given. We will now describe the arrangement of each type of entry. Note that the following five principles apply to all entries.

1. Collocational types are indicated by illustrative phrases or sentences rather than by type designations. Verb entries are also coded.

2. Lexical collocations precede grammatical collocations.

3. Words characteristic of one variety of English are marked AE (for American English) or BE (for British English). For details concerning variety labeling, see the Style Guide, Collocational Strings, 9.

4. This *Dictionary* does not normally include idioms, i.e., frozen expressions in which the meaning of the whole does not reflect the meanings of the component parts: *to kill two birds with one stone* ‘to achieve two aims with one action’; *to be beside oneself* ‘to be in a state of great emotional confusion’. Some phrases, especially those expressing a simile, are transitional between collocations and idioms, that is, the meanings of the component parts are reflected partially in the meaning of the whole. The *Dictionary* does include important phrases of this type. For example, under *misc.,* the entry for

bird has *as free as a bird,* the entry for **feather** has *as light as a feather,* the entry for **sugar** has *as sweet as sugar,* etc.

5. The *Dictionary* does include important fixed phrases that do not fit into any of the types of grammatical and lexical collocations described above. Thus, the entry for **business** gives *to mix business with pleasure,* the entry for **eye** gives *to feast one's eyes on smt.,* etc. Such phrases are normally given under *misc.*

Order of Entries

Headwords, including compounds, are listed in strictly alphabetical order. Thus, the phrasal (compound) verb **go along** follows **goal**. Solid compounds precede those written as two words. For example, **makeup** *n.* precedes **make up** *v*. Homographs, i.e., words with the same spelling, are listed according to the alphabetical order of their part of speech. Their order is, consequently, adjective, adverb, noun, verb. For example, **abandon I** *n.* precedes **abandon II** *v.*

Noun Entries

Collocational types given in noun entries are customarily arranged in the following order: L1, L2, L3, L4, L5, G1, G2, G3, G4. Usually, each collocational type is given in a separate numbered item. However, in order to save space, two collocational types may be shown in the same item. For example, in the entry for **allusion**, we have *to make an allusion to.* This construction shows both L1 and G1.

Adjective Entries

Collocational types are arranged in the following order: L6, G5, G6, G7.

Verb Entries

L7 collocations are given first; they are followed by the verbal patterns of G8, namely A to S. Items showing G8 items are coded, that is, each collocation is marked by a letter designating the appropriate verbal pattern. G8 items are listed in the alphabetical order of their letter codes. When there are several D/d collocations, these are given in the alphabetical order of the collocating prepositions.

Style Guide

The Swung Dash

1. The swung dash (~) usually replaces the headword within the entry. The swung dash is repeated only when necessary.

2. In entries for compound (phrasal) verbs the swung dash represents both the verb and the particle only when they are used in the unseparated infinitive or imperative form and also in the simple present tense, unseparated, with no (third-person singular) ending. The entry for **get away** has an infinitive in the collocation *to ~ from;* the entry for **reach out** has an imperative in the illustrative phrase: ~ *your hand to me.* The entry for **run short** has the illustrative phrase *they never ~ of money.* In all other instances, the swung dash represents only the verb; the particle is shown separately. The entry **take down** has the illustrative phrase *to ~ testimony down in shorthand.* (Here the verb and particle are separated in the infinitive form.) The entry **set apart** has the phrase *certain traits ~ them apart from the others.* (Here in the simple present tense the verb and particle are separated.) The entry **run around** has the phrase *he ~s around with a fast crowd.* (Here the verb in the simple present tense has the third-person singular ending.)

3. The headword is used rather than the swung dash when irregular grammatical forms occur. Usually, these are irregular past tense forms of verbs. Occasionally noun plurals must be shown. For example, in the entry for **prisoner of war** we have *to interrogate; repatriate prisoners of war*; in **goose** we have *geese cackle, honk.*

Collocational Strings

1. When a headword collocates with various other words, the *Dictionary* usually lists the resultant collocations in strings. The presentation of collocations in strings not only saves an enormous amount of space, but it also allows the concentration of a great deal of material, facilitating the use of the *Dictionary* by its readers.

2. When collocations are listed in a string, a comma separates synonyms or near synonyms. Members of the collocational string are listed in alphabetical order. The entry for **advice** gives *to give, offer ~.* This string represents the synonymous collocations *to give advice* and *to offer advice.*

3. A semicolon separates non-synonymous collocations that are presented in a string. The entry for **answerable** has ~ *for; to.* This string represents the non-synonymous collocations *answerable for* and *answerable to.*

4. Both synonymous and non-synonymous collocations may be listed in one string. The entry for **booth** has *an information; phone, telephone; polling, voting; projection ~.* This string represents the collocation *an information booth,* the synonymous collocations *a phone booth* and *a telephone booth,* the synonymous collocations *a polling booth* and *a voting booth,* and the collocation *a projection booth.* Note that synonymous members of a string are grouped together, even though this upsets the overall alphabetical order. Note also that the article is not repeated in the string.

5. When the same noun collocates with different verbs and with different prepositions, the resultant collocations must be shown in different strings. Thus, under **degree** ('academic title') we have *to award a ~ to; to confer a ~ on.* Note that these collocations are synonymous; the semicolon between them separates different collocational strings

rather than non-synonymous members of the same string. Another example is found in the entry **damage** ('harm'), which gives *to cause, do ~ to; to inflict ~ on.* These two strings represent the three synonymous collocations *to cause damage to, to do damage to, to inflict damage on.*

6. Separate strings are required when differences in the use of articles or of number must be shown. Differences in the use of articles are indicated in **business** 5: *a mail-order ~; show ~; the travel~.* In **atrocity** 2 we see a string of adjectives for the singular: *a dreadful, grisly, gruesome, heinous, horrible, horrid, monstrous, revolting, vile ~;* in **atrocity** 3 we see the allocations normally used in the plural: *death-camp; wartime atrocities.*

7. As indicated above under *Lexical Collocations,* some nouns collocate with verbs that refer to the actions of more than one participant. Only verbs referring to the actions of the same participant may be listed in one string. Thus, the entry for **copyright** has one string for the actions of the copyright office *(to grant, register a ~)* and a different string for the actions of an author or publisher *(to hold; secure a ~).*

8. The examples given above show that normally each string has one swung dash. The sole exception occurs in strings that include a compound word, i.e., a word consisting of two (or more) roots spelled as one word. The last element of the compound is the same element with which the other members of the string collocate. In such instances, the member of the string preceding the compound must be followed by the swung dash. Under **boat** we have an *assault~; flying ~; gunboat; lifeboat; mosquito ~.*

9. Stylistic and variety labels referring to one member of the string normally follow that member. Under **show** I we have *to catch* (colloq.), *see, take in a ~*. The entry **accountant** has *a certified public* (AE), *chartered* (BE) ~. Note that the variety label CE is usually not used. Thus, the entry for **different** 2 has *-from, than* (AE), *to* (BE). This means that CE has *different from,* AE has *different than,* and BE has *different to.*

Definitions and Paraphrases

1. Definitions and paraphrases are enclosed in double quotation marks.

2. Definitions of nouns and adjectives in double quotation marks, other typeface, and square brackets refer to items that follow. Note the following example: **accent** *n.* ["pronunciation"] *to affect, assume, imitate, put on; cultivate an ~,* etc. When 'miscellaneous' items are not covered by any previously given definition, they are listed at the end of the entry and are preceded by *misc.* in double quotation marks, other typeface, and square brackets. For an example, see the entry for **account I**.

3. Definitions of senses of verbs and paraphrases of illustrative phrases are given in double quotation marks and parentheses. Such definitions and paraphrases refer to the preceding item. An example of a paraphrase is provided in the entry **aback**. The collocation given is *taken aback;* the illustrative phrase is *I was taken aback,* which is paraphrased as *I was startled.*

4. When verb definitions refer to the headword, they stand immediately after the coding. For example, **go II** 11 has the coding (d; intr.), followed by the definition (*"to pass"*), the collocation *to ~ by,* and the illustrative phrase *to ~ by smb.'s house.* If, however, the meaning of the verb is clear only in combination with the following preposition, the definition follows not the coding, but the collocation. Thus, **go** 12 has the coding (d; intr.), the collocation *to ~ by,* the definition (*"to follow"*), and the illustrative phrase *to ~ by the rules.*

Illustrative Phrases

1. Illustrative phrases follow the collocation that they refer to; they are given in parentheses. The entry **adherence** 2 has the collocation ~ *to* followed by the illustrative phrase *strict ~ to a plan.*

2. When synonyms are indicated in an illustrative phrase, they are separated by a slash (/). The entry for **state I** 9 has the illustrative phrase: *affairs/matters of ~.*

3. Note that a collocation may be expanded so as to serve as an illustration. Under **river** 4 we have the L4 collocation *a ~ flows* expanded by the phrase *(into the sea),* enclosed in parentheses. Thus, **river** 4 has: *a ~ flows (into the sea).*

Usage Notes

Usage Notes in the *BBI* provide additional information about the appropriate use of headwords and their collocations. The views of purists concerning correct usage are sometimes given. Usage Notes may also include details about the differences between AE and BE; for additional information about these differences, see the *Lexicographic Description of English.* Note that the swung dash is not used in the Usage Notes.

Pronunciation

In general, the *BBI Dictionary* does not indicate pronunciation. In a few instances, however, phonemic transcription is provided in order to differentiate homographs. Thus, **bow I** is transcribed as /bau/ and **bow III** as /bou/; **use I** is transcribed as /ju:s/ and **use II** as /ju:z/. For details concerning the simplified transcription used in the *BBI,* see the *Lexicographic Description of English* or the comparative table that follows.

It should be noted that in some English homographs the stress of adjectives and nouns on one hand, and that of verbs on the other, may be different. In such instances, the adjective or noun has the stress on the first syllable, and the verb has the stress on the second syllable. Entries given in the *BBI* for such homographs with stress differences include: *absent, abstract, address, ally, annex, compress, conduct, conflict, contract, contrast, convert, defect, discourse, escort, excerpt, extract, impact, implant, increase, intrigue, object, overhaul, permit, present, produce, progress, prospect, protest, rebel,* *rebound, recall* (in AE), *record, recount, refund, refuse, relay, remit* (in BE), *subject, suspect, transfer, transplant, transport, upset.*

A few nouns have variant stresses, i.e., either on the first or on the second syllable. Examples are: *address* (“place of residence”), *ally, intrigue, recall* (in AE), *remit* (in BE; this noun is not used in AE). Several verbs have variant stresses. Examples are: *ally* (in AE), *annex, transport* (in AE). In the meaning “to summarize”, the verb *abstract* is stressed on the first syllable. Note that the noun *upset* is stressed on the first syllable, whereas both the adjective and the verb are stressed on the second syllable; the adjective is, in fact, a past participle form.

Comparative table of Simplified Transcription (ST) and IPA transcription

The ST column (as used in BBI) has GA as its basic variety. The IPA column has RP as its basic variety. Both columns show, whenever necessary, the forms of the other variety.

Vowels

as in	*ST*	*IPA*
beet	/biyt/	/bi:t/
bit	/bit/	/bɪt/
bet	/bet/	/bet/
bat	/baet/	/bæt/
balm	/bam/	/bɑ:m/, /bɑm/
bob	/b*a*b/; /*ò*/	/bɒb/, /bɑb/
boss	/b*o*s/; /*ò*/	/bɒs/, /bɔs/
bought	/bot/	/bɔ:t/
bull	/bul/	/bʊl/
boot	/bu:t/	/bu:t/
butt	/bət/	/bʌt/
bird	/bə(r)d/	/bɜ:d/, /bɜrd/
ago	/əˈgou/	/əˈgəʊ/
bay	/bey/	/beɪ/
boat	/bout/	/bəʊt/
bite	/bayt/	/baɪt/
bout	/baut/	/baut/
boy	/boy/	/bɔɪ/
beer	/biy(r)/	/bɪə/*
bear	/bey(r)/	/beə/*
boor	/bu:(r)/	/bʊə/*

Consonants

as in	*ST*	*IPA*
pet	/pet/	/pet/
bet	/bet/	/bet/
tell	/tel/	/tel/
debt	/det/	/det/
cat	/kaet/	/kæt/
get	/get/	/get/
check	/ček/	/tʃek/
jet	/džet/	/dʒet/
fat	/faet/	/fæt/
vat	/vaet/	/væt/
theft	/theft/	/θeft/
then	/th:en/	/ðen/
self	/self/	/self/
zoo	/zu:/	/zu:/
shoe	/šu:/	/ʃʊ:/
vision	/ˈvižən/	/ˈviʒən/
help	/help/	/help/
men	/men/	/men/
net	/net/	/net/
ring	/ring/	/riŋ/
led	/led/	/led/
yes	/jes/	/jes/
wet	/wet/	/wet/

*Some dictionaries indicate that in RP these vowels precede a ‘dropped-r’ and that in GA they precede an /r/.

A

aback *adv.* taken ~ ("startled") (I was taken ~ at/by his angry words = I was taken ~ when he spoke to me angrily = It took me ~ when he spoke to me angrily)

abacus *n.* 1. to operate, use an ~ 2. with an ~

abandon I *n.* 1. great, reckless, wild ~ 2. with ~ (with reckless ~)

abandon II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (they ~ed us to our fate)

abbreviate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (*Esquire* can be ~d to *Esq.*)

ABC *n.* as easy as ~

abdication *n.* ~ from

abduct *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ a child from its home)

aberration *n.* a mental; sexual; statistical; momentary; temporary ~

abet *v.* (formal) (D; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ smb. in doing smt.; to aid and ~ smb. in doing smt.)

abeyance *n.* in; into ~ (to hold in ~; to fall into ~)

abhor *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she ~s him for smoking) 2. (G) she ~s smoking 3. (K) she ~s his smoking

abhorrence *n.* 1. to show ~ (she showed her ~ of smoking) 2. in, with ~ (of) (she holds smoking in ~ = she regards smoking with ~)

abhorrent *adj.* (formal) 1. to find smt. ~ (she finds smoking ~) 2. ~ to (smoking is ~ to her)

abide *v.* (d; intr.) 1. to ~ by ("to agree to, obey") (we must ~ by her decision) 2. (obsol. and formal) (d; intr.) ("to stay") to ~ with smb. ("In life, in death, O Lord, ~ with me" – H.F. Lyte (1793–1847))

ability *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, exhibit, show ~ 2. to appreciate, recognize ~ 3. creative; leadership ~ 4. exceptional, great, outstanding, remarkable; limited ~ 5. genuine, innate, natural; latent ~ 6. an ounce of ~ (he doesn't have even an ounce of ~) 7. ~ at, in (to display ~ in mathematics) 8. the ~ to + inf. (the ~ to reason) 9. of ~ (a person of great ~; to the best of one's ~)

ablaze *adj.* 1. ~ with (the city was ~ with lights) 2. to set ~

able *adj.* 1. perfectly ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (I'm perfectly ~ to cope on my own; she tried to reach him but she was not ~ to (reach him)) USAGE NOTE: In passive constructions, *able to* is replaced by *can* – X isn't always able to replace Y = Y can't always be replaced by X.

ablutions *n.* (formal or humorous) to perform one's ~

aboard *adv.* 1. to be; climb, come; go ~ 2. all ~!

abode *n.* 1. (legal) of no fixed ~ 2. (formal or humorous) to take up one's ~; welcome to my humble ~

abortion *n.* 1. to do, perform an ~ on 2. to induce an ~ 3. to get, have an ~ 4. a back-street, criminal, illegal; induced; spontaneous; therapeutic ~ 5. legalized ~

abound *v.* (formal) (d; intr.) to ~ in, with (this country ~s in/with opportunities = opportunities abound in this country)

about I *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ["ready"] 1. ~ to + inf. (the performance is ~ to begin) ["willing"] (colloq.) (esp. AE) 2. not ~ to + inf. (we are not ~ to stop now; we are not ~ to be taken in by their campaign promises) ["misc."] 3. to set ~ doing smt.

about II *prep.* 1. be quick ~ it ("do it quickly") 2. how/what ~ us? what ~ your promise? how ~ (having) a drink? (see also **what** 1)

about-face *n.* ["sudden change in attitude"] 1. to do an ~ 2. a complete, dramatic; sudden, unexpected ~ 3. a ~ on (the government did a sudden dramatic ~ on foreign policy)

about-turn *n.* (BE) see **about-face**

above *adv.*, *prep.* way; well; up ~

abrasions *n.* multiple ~

abreast *adj.* (usu. does not stand alone) ~ of (to be, keep, stay ~ of the news; to keep smb. ~ of the latest developments)

abroad *adv.* 1. from ~ (he had to return from ~) 2. to go; live; study; travel; work ~

abscond *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from; with (they ~ed from the country with the funds)

absence *n.* 1. an excused; unexcused ~ 2. a prolonged ~ 3. ~ from (an unexcused ~ from school) 4. during, in smb.'s ~ 5. in the ~ of smt. (in the ~ of concrete evidence, we had to drop the charges) (see also **conspicuous**)

absent I *adj.* ~ from (she was ~ from school)

absent II *v.* (D; refl.) to ~ from (to ~ oneself from a meeting)

absentia *n.* in ~ (to be tried in ~)

absolution *n.* (rel.) 1. to give, grant, pronounce ~ from (to grant ~ from sin) 2. to seek ~

absolve *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from, of (he was ~d from his promise)

absorb *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ drainage from a wound) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ a small firm into a large cartel)

absorbed *adj.* 1. deeply, completely, thoroughly, totally, utterly ~ 2. ~ by, with; in (she was ~ by/with the problem; the children were ~ in their homework; ~ in thought)

absorbent *adj.* highly, very ~

abstain *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from alcohol)

abstention *n.* ~ from (~ from alcohol)

abstinence *n.* 1. to practice ~ 2. complete, total ~ 3. ~ from (~ from alcohol)

abstract I *n.* in the ~

abstract II *v.* (technical) (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ iron from ore)

absurd *adj.* 1. patently; totally, utterly ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ (for us) to leave such a large tip) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that we have to/should have to leave such a large tip)

absurdity *n.* it was the height of ~ (for us) (to leave such a large tip)

abundance *n.* 1. great ~ 2. an ~ of (there was a great ~ of opportunities here) 3. in ~ (we had opportunities in ~) 4. of ~ (a society of ~)

abundant *adj.* (formal) ~ in (~ in opportunities)

abuse *n.* ["insulting language"] 1. to heap, shower ~ on, upon (he showered ~ on her); to hurl, shout ~ at; to shower smb. with ~ (he showered her with ~) 2. to take ~ (she took a lot of ~ from him) 3. verbal ~ 4. a shower, stream, torrent of ~ (she took a torrent of ~ from him) 5. a term of ~ ["rough use"] 6. to take ~ (this car has taken a lot of ~) ["mistreatment"] 7. domestic; emotional; personal; physical; racial; sexual ~ 8. child; elder; spousal ~ 9. human-rights ~s ["improper use, misuse"] 10. alcohol, substance ~ (see also **drug abuse)**

abusive *adj.* ~ to, toward (he became verbally ~ to his guests)

abut *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ against, on, upon

abyss *n.* 1. a gaping, yawning ~ 2. on the brink, edge of an ~

academe *n.* (formal) the groves, halls of ~

academic *adj.* purely ~ (a purely ~ distinction of no practical significance)

academy *n.* 1. a military; naval; police; riding ~ 2. an ~ for (an ~ for boys) 3. at an ~

accede *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to agree") to ~ to (they ~d to our demands) 2. (D; intr.) ("to ascend") to ~ to the throne

accelerator *n.* 1. to depress, put one's foot on, step on an ~ 2. to ease up on, let up on; take one's foot off an ~

accent *n.* ["pronunciation"] 1. to affect, assume, imitate, put on; cultivate; have an ~ 2. to speak with; without an ~ 3. to get rid of, lose an ~ 4. a broad; heavy, noticeable, pronounced, strong, thick; slight ~ 5. a foreign; phony; regional ~ 6. (misc.) a hint, trace of an ~ (to speak English without a trace of a foreign ~) ["stress"] 7. to place, put the ~ on (to place the ~ on a syllable) 8. (ling.) an acute; grave; pitch, tonic ~ (see also **stress**)

accept *v.* 1. to ~ blindly; fully; generally, widely; readily; unreservedly, without reservations 2. to ~ gracefully, graciously; gratefully 3. to ~ grudgingly, reluctantly 4. (D; tr.) to ~ as (they ~ed us as their equals) 5. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she was ~ed for admission) 6. (D; tr.) to ~ from (she ~ed an award from a committee) 7. (formal) (BE) (L) people generally ~ that exercise is beneficial

acceptable *adj.* 1. completely, entirely, fully; mutually; socially ~ 2. ~ to (the conditions proved/were ~ to all concerned) 3. ~ to + inf. (is it socially ~ to behave like that?)

acceptance *n.* 1. to gain, win; meet with ~ 2. to seek ~ 3. blind, unquestioning ~ (blind ~ of dogma) 4. general, universal, widespread; growing, increasing; public ~ (the theory met with universal ~) 5. grudging, reluctant ~ 6. a degree of ~ (the theory gradually met with a certain degree of grudging ~) 7. ~ of (her ~ of an award from a committee)

accepted *adj.* 1. generally, widely ~ 2. ~ that + clause (it is generally/widely ~ that exercise is beneficial)

access I *n.* 1. to gain, get; have ~ 2. to seek ~ 3. to deny, refuse; give, grant ~ 4. direct; easy, free, unlimited, unrestricted; immediate, instant, quick, ready; limited, restricted ~ 5. (computers) random ~ 6. ~ to (we gained/got ~ to the files; ~ to a building by/from/through/via the side entrance; provide wheelchair ~ to the auditorium)

access II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ information from a computer)

accessary (esp. BE) see **accessory** 1, 2

accessibility *n.* ~ to (the professor's ~ to all students)

accessible *adj.* 1. directly; easily, readily; immediately ~ 2. ~ from; to (the stacks are ~ to the public from the main staircase; the director is friendly and ~ to everyone) 3. wheelchair ~ (we pride ourselves on our wheelchair-accessible auditorium!)

accession *n.* 1. on smb.'s ~ (on his ~ to the throne he inherited vast estates) 2. ~ to (her ~ to power; his ~ to the throne) 3. a new ~ (as in a library)

accessory *n.* ["accomplice"] 1. an ~ to (an ~ to a crime) 2. (legal) an ~ before the fact; an ~ after the fact ["optional equipment"] 3. auto (AE); matching; skiing; smoking ~ries

accident *n.* ["unexpected, typically unpleasant event"] ["catastrophe"] 1. to cause an ~ 2. to have, meet with (they had an ~ during their trip) 3. to survive an ~ 4. to prevent ~s 5. an awful, bad, dreadful, frightful, horrible, horrific, nasty, serious, shocking, terrible, tragic; fatal; freak; unavoidable; unfortunate ~ 6. a minor, slight; near ~ 7. an automobile (AE), road, traffic; hit-and-run; railroad (AE), railway (BE), train ~ 8. a boating; hunting ~ 9. an industrial; nuclear ~ 10. an ~ happens, occurs (a bad ~ happened there) 11. in an ~ (he was involved in a hunting ~) 12. (misc.) (fig.) ~-prone; an ~ waiting to happen (that clumsy waiter is just an ~ waiting to happen!) ["chance"] ["luck"] 13. pure, sheer ~ 14. an ~ that + clause (it was pure ~ that we met; it was no ~ that we met) 15. by ~ (we discovered it by ~; it was by pure ~ that we met; did it happen by ~ or (by) design?, did it happen by ~ or on purpose?)

acclaim I *n.* 1. to earn, receive, win ~ 2. critical ~ (the play opened to critical ~) 3. general, public ~ 4. international, universal, wide, worldwide; national ~ 5. ~ as; for; from; to (the play opened to ~ from the critics for her performance = when the play opened she won ~ from the critics for her performance = when the play opened she won ~ from the critics as a great actress)

acclaim II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (the new medication has been ~ed as a miracle drug) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ for (she was ~ed for her performance) 3. (N; used with a noun) the mob ~ed him emperor

acclamation *n.* by ~ (to elect smb. by ~)

acclimate (AE) see **acclimatize**

acclimatize *v.* (D; intr., refl., tr.) to ~ to (we ~d quickly/~d ourselves quickly to the jungle; we became ~d quickly to the new surroundings)

accolade *n.* 1. to bestow an ~ on 2. to receive, win an ~ (from) 3. the supreme, ultimate ~

accommodate *v.* (D; intr. (esp. AE), refl., tr.) to ~ to (they ~d themselves easily to the new conditions = (esp. AE) they ~d easily to the new conditions)

accommodation I *n.* ["agreement"] ["adjustment"] 1. to come to, make; reach, work out an ~ 2. to seek an ~ 3. an ~ between; about/on; to; with (to make an ~ to wartime conditions; to reach an ~ with neighboring countries about/on our common borders)

accommodation II (BE) see **accommodations**

accommodations *n.* (AE) ["place to live"] 1. to secure; seek ~ 2. deluxe; first-class ~ 3. hotel; living ~ 4. student, tourist; travel ~ 5. in ~ (live in student ~)

accompaniment *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. an ~ to (a piano ~ to a song; this dressing makes a good ~ to any salad) 3. to the ~ of (to the ~ of soft piano music)

accompany *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ a singer on the piano) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (I will ~ her to the station)

accomplice *n.* 1. an unwitting ~ 2. an ~ in, to (an ~ in crime, an ~ to a criminal)

accomplished *adj.* 1. highly; technically 2. ~ at, in (technically highly accomplished at the piano especially in 19th-Century music)

accomplishment *n.* 1. see **achievement** 1 for adjective + noun collocations 2. no mean ~ 3. an ~ to + inf. (it was a real ~ (for us) to defeat them) 4. of ~ (a man, woman of many ~s)

accord I *n.* 1. to come to, reach sign an ~ 2. an ~ breaks down 3. complete, full ~ 4. a peace ~ 5. an ~ with smb. about/on smt. (we reached an ~ with the neighboring country about our common border but the ~ eventually broke down) 6. an ~ that + clause (they came to an ~ that profits would be shared equally) 7. in ~ (with) (we are in complete ~ (with each other); our information is not entirely in ~ with his report) 8. (formal) of one's own ~ (he participated of his own ~)

accord II *v.* (formal) 1. to ~ completely, entirely, fully 2. (A) we ~ed a hero's welcome to him; or: we ~ed him a hero's welcome 3. (d; intr.) to ~ with (our information does not entirely ~ with his report)

accordance *n.* in ~ with (we have acted in ~ with your instructions)

account I *n.* ["description"] ["report"] 1. to give, render an ~ 2. an accurate, factual, true; blow-by-blow, detailed, full, graphic; clear; eyewitness; first-hand; running; satisfactory; verbatim ~ (she gave a detailed ~ of the incident) 3. a glowing; lively, vivid ~ 4. a biased, one-sided; unsatisfactory ~ 5. a brief ~ 6. newspaper, press ~s (according to press ~s) 7. in an ~ (she gave a detailed description of the incident in her ~ of it) 8. by all ~s (by all ~s she is a good pianist) ["explanation"] 9. to call smb. to ~ (for) (he was called to ~ for the missing funds) ["consideration"] 10. to take ~ of smt.; to take smt. into ~ ["arrangement with a bank"] 11. to open an ~ (at, in, with) (I opened an ~ at/with that bank) 12. to close, settle an ~ 13. to have, keep an ~ (I keep an ~ in that bank) 14. to overdraw an ~ 15. to audit; credit; debit an ~ 16. a bank; building-society (BE); checking (AE), current (BE); deposit (BE), savings; money-market; individual retirement (AE) ~ 17. an active; blocked; inactive ~ 18. a joint; numbered ~ 19. an overdrawn ~ 20. in an ~ (the funds were in her ~) ["business arrangement"] ["record of a business arrangement"] 21. to open an ~ (with a store) 22. to close an ~ 23. to have an ~ (with) 24. to charge, debit; credit smb.'s ~ 25. to charge smt. to one's/smb.'s ~ 26. to pay smt. on ~ 27. a charge (AE), credit (BE); expense ~ (see also **expense account**) ["dispute"] 28. to settle an ~ (I have an ~ to settle with him) ["sake"] 29. on smb.'s ~ (do not refuse on my ~) 30. on ~ of (he did it on ~ of me) ["showing"] ["performance"] 31. to give a good ~ of oneself ["misc."] 32. on no ~ ("under no circumstances"); of no ~ ("of no importance") (see also **accounts**)

account II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to explain") (he could not ~ satisfactorily for the missing funds; "how do you ~ for the accident?" "it can be partly ~ed for by the bad weather") 2. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to cause the destruction of") (the enemy's guns ~ed for three of our planes) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ (for) to ("to explain") (she has to ~ to her supervisor for time spent in travel) 4. (BE) (N; used with an adjective, noun) ("to consider") we ~ed her guilty; she was ~ed a prodigy

accountable *adj.* 1. directly; strictly ~ 2. ~ for; to (we are ~ to our parents for our actions; she is ~ to her supervisor for time spent in travel) 3. (misc.) to hold smb. ~ for smt.

accountant *n.* a certified public (AE), chartered (BE) ~

accounting *n.* 1. to give, render an ~ 2. a strict ~ 3. cost ~

accounts *n.* ["books, ledgers"] 1. to keep ~ ["record of transactions"] 2. ~ payable; receivable ["disputes"] 3. to settle, square ~ (with)

accredit *v.* (D; tr.) 1. to ~ to (our envoy was ~ed to their new government) 2. (misc.) a fully ~ed university

accreditation *n.* 1. to receive (full) ~ (the university has received full accreditation) 2. to deny ~ (our envoy was denied ~ to their new government)

accrue *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (the interest ~d to our account)

accuracy *n.* 1. deadly; historical; pinpoint; reasonable; scientific; strict, total ~ 2. ~ in

accurate *adj.* 1. completely, deadly; fairly, pretty, reasonably; historically; strictly ~ 2. ~ in 3. ~ to + inf. (it would be ~ to say that he is lazy)

accusation *n.* 1. to bring, make an ~ against (he brought an ~ of theft against Smith; more usu. is: he accused Smith of theft) 2. to level an ~ against, at (he leveled an ~ of theft against Smith) 3. to answer; face an ~ (of) (Smith faced an ~ of theft) 4. to drop, retract, withdraw an ~ 5. to deny, reject; refute an ~ 6. a damaging, grave; baseless, false, groundless, scurrilous, unfounded, unjust; sweeping; veiled ~ 7. an ~ against; of (an ~ of theft) 8. an ~ that + clause (Smith denied the ~ that he was guilty of theft)

accuse *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ of (he ~d Smith of theft)

accused *adj.* 1. falsely ~ 2. to stand ~ (of) (Smith stood ~d of theft)

accustom *v.* (d; refl., tr.) to ~ to (we had to ~ ourselves to the warm climate; more usu. is: we had to get ~ed to the warm climate)

accustomed *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to (~ to hard work; ~ to walking long distances; we got ~ to the warm climate)

ace *n.* ["a serve that an opponent cannot touch"] (tennis) 1. to score an ~ ["expert combat pilot"] 2. an air, flying ~ ["misc."] 3. within an ~ of ("very close to"); an ~ in the hole ("a concealed advantage, a trump card") (to have an ~ in the hole; to play one's ~ in the hole)

ache I *n.* 1. a deep; dull; sharp; nagging, steady; slight ~ (he felt a dull ~ in his shoulder) (see **backache**, **earache**, **headache**, **stomachache**, **toothache**) 2. an ~ gets worse, intensifies; subsides, wears off 3. (misc.) ~s and pains

ache II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for revenge) 2. (E) he is ~ing to get even 3. (misc.) to ~ all over

achievement *n.* 1. a brilliant, crowning, dazzling, epic, glorious, great, lasting, magnificent, major, memorable, monumental, notable, outstanding, phenomenal, remarkable, signal, staggering, superb, wonderful ~ 2. no mean ~ 3. an ~ in (outstanding ~s in science) 4. an ~ to + inf. (it was no mean ~ (for us) to finish on time!) 5. an ~ that + clause (it was a staggering ~ that we finished on time!)

acid *n.* 1. corrosive, strong ~ 2. acetic; boric; carbolic; citric; hydrochloric; sulfuric ~ 3. ~ burns (a hole); corrodes 4. (misc.) (slang) to drop/take ~ (LSD) (see also *acid test* at **test I** *n.*)

acknowledge *v.* 1. to ~ belatedly; frankly, openly, readily; gratefully; grudgingly; officially, publicly; generally, universally (is it universally ~d that men and women need each other?) 2. (B) the author ~d her debt to her research assistants 3. (D; tr.) to ~ as (she ~d him as her heir) 4. (G) she ~d being indebted to her research assistants 5. (K) she ~d my having been the first to think of it 6. (L; to) she ~d (to us) that she was indebted to her research assistants 7. (rare) (M) they ~d us to be the winners of the contest 8. (formal and rare) (N; used with a past participle) she ~ed herself indebted to her research assistants

acknowledgment, acknowledgement *n.* 1. to make an ~ of 2. a belated, frank, open; grateful; public ~ 3. in ~ of

acme *n.* 1. to attain, reach the ~ of 2. at an ~ (at the ~ of their power)

acquaint *v.* 1. to ~ thoroughly 2. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ with (the lawyer ~ed herself thoroughly with the facts of the case)

acquaintance *n.* ["familiarity"] 1. to have an ~ with (he has some ~ with statistics) 2. a slight, superficial ~ 3. on ~ (on closer ~ he proved to be a nice person) 4. an ~ with ["casual friendship"] 5. to make smb.'s ~ 6. to keep up; renew; strike up an ~ with 7. (BE) to scrape ~ with 8. a casual, nodding, passing, slight ~ (to have a nodding ~ with smb.) ["friend"] 9. a casual; intimate; old; personal ~ 10. (misc.) of smb.'s ~ (I introduced her to a lawyer of my ~); friends and ~s

acquaintanceship *n.* 1. to strike up an ~ with 2. a casual; close, intimate ~ 3. an ~ with

acquainted *adj.* 1. casually; closely, intimately, thoroughly; personally ~ 2. ~ with (he got/became ~ with the situation; are you ~ with him?; I introduced her to a lawyer I was ~ with)

acquiesce *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in, to (they ~d in the decision)

acquiescence *n.* 1. complete, total ~ 2. ~ in, to (~ in a decision)

acquisition *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. (BE) an ~ for/to (he is a valuable ~ for our firm) 3. (misc.) language ~ and language learning

acquit *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to exonerate") to ~ of (the jury ~ted her of all charges) 2. (P; refl.) ("to behave") she ~ted herself well; he ~ted himself like a veteran

acquittal *n.* (legal) 1. to bring in, return an ~ (the jury brought in an ~) 2. to win an ~ (the lawyer won an ~ for her client)

acrimony *n.* bitter, sharp ~

acrobatics *n.* 1. to perform ~ 2. (fig.) mental; verbal; vocal ~

acronym *n.* 1. to form an ~ 2. an ~ for

across *adv.* ~ from

act I *n.* ["action"] 1. to commit; consummate; perform an ~ 2. a barbaric, barbarous; despicable, hostile; terroristic; unfriendly ~ 3. a criminal, illegal, illicit ~ 4. a desperate; foolish, irresponsible, rash; impulsive ~ 5. a courageous; heroic, noble; justified ~ (she performed an heroic ~) 6. a friendly, humane, kind; thoughtful ~ 7. an ~ against (that was an ~ against company policy) 8. an ~ of (an ~ of faith; he committed an ~ of folly) 9. in the ~ (Coleridge was interrupted in the ~ of writing Kubla Khan; criminals caught in the ~) ["performance"] 10. a circus; nightclub; variety (BE), vaudeville (AE) ~ 11. (misc.) to put on an ~ ("to pretend"); to do a balancing ~ ("to maneuver skillfully") ["legislation"] 12. by ~ of (Congress) ["misc."] 13. to get into the ~ ("to participate"); to get one's ~ together ("to begin to work effectively"); to do a disappearing ~ ("to vanish from the scene"); a tough ~ to follow ("smb. or smt. difficult to emulate or to equal") (see also **riot act**)

act II *v.* 1. to ~ impulsively; irresponsibly, rashly; responsibly 2. (d; intr.) ("to perform") to ~ against (to ~ against one's own client) 3. (d; intr.) ("to serve") to ~ as (she ~ed as our interpreter) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to replace", and, esp. BE, "to represent as one's lawyer") 5. (d; intr.) ("to behave") to ~ like (the soldier ~ed like a real hero) 6. (D; intr.) ("to take action") to ~ on, upon (to ~ on smb.'s advice; to ~ on a request) 7. (d; intr.) ("to take action") to ~ out of (they ~ed out of fear) 8. (d; intr.) ("to behave") to ~ towards (how did they ~ towards you?) 9. (P; intr.) ("to behave") the soldier ~ed bravely; to ~ guiltily 10. (s) (esp. AE) ("to behave") to ~ guilty 11. (misc.) they ~ed as if they were pleased = (colloq.) (esp. AE) they ~ed like they were pleased; we saw what had to be done and ~ed accordingly

action *n.* ["activity"] ["act"] 1. to initiate; take ~; to go, swing into ~ (we took immediate ~) 2. to put smt. into ~ (we put our plan into ~) 3. to prod, spur smb. into ~ 4. to do, perform an ~ 5. collective, concerted, united; decisive, firm; direct 6. immediate, prompt, swift ~ (we must take immediate ~) 7. drastic; emergency ~ 8. disciplinary; remedial ~ 9. hasty, rash ~ 10. affirmative ~ ("giving preference to members of minority groups, reverse discrimination, positive discrimination") 11. industrial (BE), (a) job (AE); (a) strike ~ ("a protest by workers") 12. congressional; political ~ 13. (a) reflex ~ ["combat; military or police activity"] 14. to go into ~ 15. to see ~ ("to participate in combat") 16. to break off ~ 17. to take evasive ~ ("to maneuver in order to escape enemy fire") 18. enemy ~; a delaying, holding; police; punitive; rearguard ~ (see also **delaying action**) 19. in ~ (killed/missing in ~) 20. out of ~ (two tanks were put out of ~) ["lawsuit"] 21. to bring, institute, take ~ against smb. for smt. (he brought legal ~ against his neighbor) 22. to dismiss an ~ (the judge dismissed the ~) 23. a civil; class; divorce; legal; libel ~ (see also **civil action**) ["initiative"] ["enterprise"] 24. a man, woman of ~ ["plot of a play, novel"] 25. the ~ drags; picks up; takes place (the ~ picks up in the third act) ["misc."] 26. (colloq.) a piece of the ~ ("participation in an activity"; "a share of the profits"); the time for ~ is now ("this is the moment to act") 27. a course of ~ (follow a course of ~)

active *adj.* 1. sexually ~ 2. ~ in 3. to keep, stay ~ (try to keep ~ in old age)

activity *n.* 1. to engage in, participate in, take part in an ~ (all students take part in extracurricular ~ties) 2. to stimulate ~ (to stimulate economic ~) 3. to resume one's ~ties 4. to break off, terminate an ~ 5. to curb; paralyze ~ (business ~ was paralyzed) 6. ~ picks up; dies down 7. bustling, constant, feverish, frenetic, furious, uninterrupted ~ 8. business, economic; cultural; political; scientific ~ 9. extracurricular; leisure, recreational; social ~ 10. intellectual ~ 11. indoor; outdoor; physical ~ 12. behind-the-scenes; subversive; terrorist; undercover ~ 13. union ~ties 14. to buzz, hum with ~ 15. a burst, flurry, whirl of ~ 16. a beehive, hive of ~

actor, actress *n.* 1. to audition; cast; work as an ~ 2. an ~ auditions; learns lines, prepares, rehearses; performs; trains 3. a character; ham ~

actuality *n.* in ~

act up *v.* (D; intr.) ("to function badly") to ~ on (my leg has been ~ing up on me)

acuity *n.* mental; visual ~

acumen *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 2. business, financial; legal; political ~ 3. the ~ to + inf. (she had enough ~ to see through the scheme)

acupuncture *n.* to do, perform ~ (on)

ad *n.* (colloq.) 1. to place an ~ 2. to answer an ~ 3. to follow, read the ~s 4. a classified, small (BE); help-wanted (esp. AE); lonely-hearts; want (AE) ~ (see also **advertisement**)

adage *n.* a familiar; old ~

adamant *adj.* 1. ~ about; in (~ in his insistence about getting fit) 2. ~ that + clause; may have subj. when the subjects of the clauses are different (he was ~ that he was fit to go; she was ~ that he not/should not go)

adapt *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for; from (to ~ a novel for television; to ~ a television program from a novel) 2. (D; intr., refl., tr.) to ~ to (we ~ed quickly to life in Paris; she had to ~ herself to local conditions; we ~ed our schedule to (meet) their requirements)

adaptation *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. an ~ for (an ~ of a novel for television)

add *v.* 1. to ~ considerably, greatly 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to (we ~ed this amount to the bill; these changes ~ed greatly to the confusion) 3. (L) she ~ed that she would not bring the children

addendum *n.* an ~ to

addict *n.* a confirmed; drug ~

addicted *adj.* 1. chronically, hopelessly ~ 2. ~ to (~ to drugs)

addiction *n.* 1. chronic, hopeless ~ 2. drug ~ 3. (an) ~ to (~ to drugs)

addictive *adj.* highly ~

addition *n.* ["adding of numbers"] 1. to do ~ ["part added"] 2. to make an ~ 3. a welcome ~ 4. an ~ to (an ~ to the family; an ~ to a report) 5. in ~ (in ~, she brought some fresh fruit) 6. in ~ to (in ~ to his salary, he earns a lot from royalties)

add on *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a garage on to/onto a house = to ~ on a garage to a house)

address I *n.* ["speech"] 1. to deliver, give an ~ (deliver an ~ to the nation) 2. an eloquent, moving, passionate, stirring ~ 3. a commencement;

inaugural; farewell; keynote ~ 4. in an ~ 5. an ~ about, concerning ["place of residence"] ["place for receiving mail"] 6. to change one's ~ 7. a business; E-mail; forwarding; home; mailing; permanent; return; temporary; (BE) term-time; web-site ~ (let me give you my fax number and my E-mail ~) 8. at an ~ (at what ~ does she live?)

address II *v.* 1. (B) she ~ed her remarks to us; I ~ed the letter to him 2. (d; tr.) to ~ as (you should ~ him as "sir") 3. (d; tr.) to ~ to (~ her mail to this post-office box) 4. (misc.) ~ smb. by name; ~ smb. directly 5. (d; refl.) ("to deal with") to ~ to (the candidates did not ~ themselves to the issues; the book ~es itself to the problem of poverty) USAGE NOTE: While this reflexive form in the meaning of "to deal with" is used as shown in the examples, nowadays the transitive form is more typical – "the candidates did not address the issues" and "the book addresses the problem of poverty".

add up *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (it all ~s up to a hoax; the figures ~ to fifty)

adept *adj.* ~ at, in (~ at solving crossword puzzles)

adequate *adj.* 1. barely, hardly ~ 2. ~ for (the food was not ~ for all of us) 3. ~ to (she was not ~ to the task) 4. ~ to + inf. (it would be ~ to list just the basic objections; the supply is not ~ to meet the demand)

adhere *v.* 1. to ~ closely, doggedly, strictly, stubbornly, tenaciously 2. (d; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to a plan that must be strictly ~d to)

adherence *n.* 1. close, strict ~ 2. ~ to (strict ~ to a plan)

adieu *n.* to bid smb. ~ = to bid ~ to smb.

adjacent *adj.* 1. immediately ~ 2. ~ to (immediately ~ to our building)

adjective *n.* 1. to compare an ~ 2. an attributive; demonstrative; descriptive; gradable; non-gradable; possessive; predicate, predicative ~ 3. ~s modify nouns

adjourn *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to stop") to ~ for (to ~ for lunch = to ~ to have lunch) 2. (d; intr.) ("to move") (to ~ to the living room for brandy)

adjudge *v.* (formal) (M and N; used with an adjective) the court ~d him (to be) guilty; the project was ~d (to be) impractical

adjunct *n.* an ~ to (an adverb is often an ~ to a verb)

adjure *v.* (formal) (H) to ~ smb. to tell the truth

adjust *v.* 1. to ~ downward; upward (our original estimate had to be ~ed upward (to allow) for inflation) 2. (D. intr., refl., tr.) to ~for; to (he had to ~ to the new climate; we ~ed our watches to (show) local time)

adjuster *n.* a claims, insurance ~

adjustment *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. a price; rate ~ 3. an ~ for; in, of (an ~ in/of his salary (to allow) for inflation; an ~ of the brakes) 4. an ~ to (an ~ to a new environment)

adjutant *n.* see **general II**

administer *v.* (B) ("to give") to ~ an oath to smb.

administration *n.* ["management"] 1. business; public ~ ["government"] 2. a centralized; civil; colonial; decentralized; federal ~ ["body of administrators"] 3. a college, university; hospital; school ~ USAGE NOTE: Consider such phrases as the "Clinton Administration" and the "Thatcher Administration" = the government headed by Clinton/Thatcher.

administrator *n.* a civil; health; hospital; nursing; school; university ~

admiral *n.* 1. a rear; vice ~; a fleet ~ (US) = an ~ of the fleet (GB) 2. (misc.) the rank of ~

admiration *n.* 1. to arouse, win; command ~ 2. to express; feel; show ~ 3. (a) blind; deep, great, sincere, strong, undying; grudging; mutual; secret; ungrudging; universal ~ 4. ~ for (he felt great ~ for them/their achievements) 5. in, with ~ (to look at smb. with ~) 6. (misc.) (humorous) a mutual ~ society

admire *v.* 1. to ~ greatly, very much 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (we ~d her as a devoted teacher) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ for (we ~ her for her devotion to teaching) 4. (K) they all ~d his behaving in that manner

admirer *n.* 1. to attract win; have ~s 2. an ardent, devoted, enthusiastic, fervent, great, sincere; secret ~ 3. (misc.) friends and ~s (devoted circles of friends and ~s)

admission *n.* ["access"] 1. to apply for; gain; seek ~ 2. to deny, refuse; grant ~ 3. free, open; restricted, selective ~; rolling (esp. AE) ~s 4. ~ to (she applied for ~ to the university) ["confession"] 5. to make an ~ of (he made an ~ of guilt) 6. a damaging ~ 7. a grudging ~ 8. an ~ that + clause (his ~ that he had been at the scene of the crime led to his conviction) 9. by, on smb.'s own ~ ["admission charge"] 10. general ~

admit *v.* 1. to ~ frankly, freely, openly, publicly, readily 2. to ~ grudgingly, privately 3. (B) ("to confess") the accused ~ted his guilt to the police 4. (D; tr.) ("to allow entry") to ~ into, to (the manager ~ted him to the theater; she was ~ted to the university) 5. (formal) (d; intr.) ("to tolerate") to ~ of (the situation ~s of no delay) 6. (formal) (d; intr.) ("to confess") to ~ to (he ~ted to his complicity in the crime; the boy ~ted to stealing the money; he ~ed to having been bored by the opera) 7. (G) ("to confess") the employee ~ted stealing the money; he ~ed having been bored by the opera 8. (L; to) ("to confess") they ~ privately that their plan has failed but deny it publicly; the clerk ~ted (to the police) that he had stolen the money; I must ~ I was bored by the opera 9. (N) children under the age of five are ~ted free

admittance *n.* 1. to gain ~ to 2. to deny ~ to (he was denied ~ to the concert)

admonish *v.* (formal) 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (the teacher ~ed the child for coming late to school) 2. (H) to ~ smb. to do smt.

ado *n.* 1. to make much ~ about, over 2. without further, much ~

adopt *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ as (they ~ed the child as their heir)

adoption *n.* to give up, put up for ~ (to put a child up for ~)

adore *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (we ~ them for their generosity) 2. (G) she ~s visiting museums 3. (misc.) I ~ it when you look at me like that

adorn *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (the table was ~ed with flowers = flowers ~ed the table)

adrenaline, adrenalin *n.* the ~ was flowing USAGE NOTE: Adrenalin is a US trademark.

adrift *adj.*, *adv.* 1. to cast, set ~ 2. to cut ~ (from)

adroit *adj.* ~ at, in (~ at staying out of trouble)

adroitness *n.* ~ at, in (~ at staying out of trouble)

adultery *n.* to commit ~ (with)

adulthood *n.* to reach ~

adults *n.* consenting ~

advance I *n.* ["forward movement"] 1. (usu. mil.) to make; press an ~ 2. (usu. mil.) an ~ against, on, to, towards (our troops made an ~ against the enemy) 3. an ~ into (our troops made an ~ into enemy territory) ["progress"] 4. a scientific; technological ~ 5. an ~ in; on (an ~ in science; a significant ~ on earlier methods) ["early payment"] 6. to receive an ~ 7. to pay an ~ 8. an ~ against/on (to receive an ~ on royalties) ["misc."] 9. she paid her rent in ~; in ~ of the main party 10. (used as in auctions to solicit a higher bid) an ~ on ("Any ~ on twenty one pounds the lot?" – British National Corpus) (see also **advances**)

advance II *v.* 1. (A) we ~d a month's salary to him; or: we ~d him a month's salary 2. (D; intr.) to ~ against, beyond, on, to, towards (our troops ~d on the next town and even beyond it) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to (he was ~d to the rank of corporal)

advanced *adj.* 1. far; technologically ~ 2. ~ in (far ~ in industrial development; an old man far ~ in years)

advancement *n.* 1. to further, speed smb.'s ~ 2. to block smb.'s ~ 3. personal; professional; social ~ 4. rapid; slow ~ 5. ~ in (~ in one's career)

advances *n.* ["effort to become friendly or to enter into negotiations"] 1. to make ~ to (he made ~ to her) 2. to rebuff, reject smb.'s ~ 3. improper ~ (to rebuff smb.'s improper ~)

advantage *n.* 1. to have an ~ of; over (our team had the ~ of experience; her connections gave her an ~ over the others) 2. to gain; press (home) an ~ 3. to take ~ of ("to exploit") (to take full ~ of one's political connections) 4. to outweigh an ~ 5. an added; big, great; clear, decided, definite, distinct, inestimable, obvious; full; mutual; unfair ~ 6. an ~ for, to (his wealth was an obvious ~ to us) 7. an ~ to + inf. (it was an ~ to have that weak team as our opponent in the first round = it was an ~ having that weak team as our opponent in the first round) 8. the ~ that + clause; may be subj. (it was to his ~ that she not/should not participate; it was to our ~ that they did not participate) 9. to smb.'s ~ (many factors worked to our ~) (see also 8) 10. at an ~ (many factors worked to place/put us at a decided ~) 11. (tennis) ~ in; ~ out 12. (misc.) (BE) you have the ~ of me ("you know more than I do"); their political connections were used/turned to good ~

advantageous *adj.* 1. clearly, obviously ~ 2. ~ for; to (his decision was ~ to us) 3. ~ to + inf. (it would be clearly ~ for us to wait)

advent *n.* 1. since the ~ of (life has changed greatly since the ~ of the computer) 2. with the ~ of (life changed greatly with the ~ of the computer)

adventure *n.* 1. to have, meet with an ~ 2. a bold; breathtaking, exciting, real, thrilling; romantic ~; high ~ 3. an ~ to + inf. (it was an ~ to visit that place = it was an ~ visiting that place) 4. (misc.) a sense/spirit of ~

adventurer *n.* a bold, dauntless, intrepid; unprincipled ~

adverb *n.* 1. an interrogative; negative; sentence ~ 2. an ~ modifies; qualifies

adversary *n.* 1. to come up against an ~ 2. a formidable, powerful; political; worthy ~

adverse *adj.* (formal) ~ to (~ to our interests)

adversity *n.* 1. to face (up to); meet with; overcome ~ 2. (misc.) in (the face of) ~

advert I *n.* (BE) see **advertisement**

advert II *v.* (formal) (d; intr.) ("to refer") to ~ to

advertise *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (the match was ~d as the event of the decade) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for a maid) 3. (L) they ~d that a position as maid was open

advertisement *n.* 1. to place, publish, run an ~ for (to run an ~ for a used car in a newspaper) 2. a classified; full-page; magazine; newspaper ~ 3. an ~ for; in 4. in an ~ (what did it say in the ~?)

advertising *n.* classified; outdoor; word-of-mouth ~

advice *n.* 1. to give, offer ~ 2. to act on, follow, heed, take ~ (take my ~ and remain silent!) 3. to ask for, seek, solicit ~ 4. to disregard, ignore, refuse, turn a deaf ear to ~ 5. good, practical, right, sage, sensible, sound, useful, valuable ~ 6. friendly; parting; unsolicited ~ 7. professional; technical ~ 8. conflicting; misleading; useless; wrong ~ 9. a bit, piece, word of ~ 10. ~ about, on 11. ~ to (my ~ to him was that…) 12. ~ to + inf. (we took his ~ to remain silent) 13. ~ that + clause; subj. (my ~ (to you) is that you remain/should remain silent) 14. against smb.'s ~ 15. on, upon smb.'s ~ (on ~ of counsel; I acted on her ~ to remain silent) 16. (misc.) my ~ fell on deaf ears

advisable *adj.* 1. strongly ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it was not ~ for her to remain silent) 3. ~ that + clause; subj. (it was ~ that she not remain/should not remain/didn't remain (BE) silent)

advise *v.* 1. to ~ strongly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ about, on 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ against (to ~ smb. against a course of action) 4. (formal) (d; tr.) to ~ of (to ~ smb. of the facts) 5. (G) who ~d remaining silent? 6. (H) she ~d us not to say anything 7. (K) who ~d his remaining silent? 8. (L; may take subj.; must have an object in AE) she ~d (us) that we remain/should remain silent 9. (Q; must have an object) he ~d us what to do; they ~d us where to go

advised *adj.* ill; well ~ to + inf. (you would be well ~ to remain silent)

advisement *n.* (often legal) to take smt. under ~

adviser, advisor *n.* 1. an academic; careers (BE); spiritual ~ 2. an economic; financial; foreign-policy; legal; military; political ~ 3. a senior; technical ~ 4. an ~ on; to (an ~ on foreign policy to the president)

advisory *adj.* 1. merely, only, strictly ~ 2. ~ to

advocate I *n.* 1. an aggressive, strong; ardent ~ (of) 2. a client, patient; consumer ~ 3. (the) devil's ~ (to play the devil's ~)

advocate II *v.* 1. to ~ strongly 2. (G) he ~d remaining silent 3. (K) she ~d our remaining silent 4. (formal) (L; subj.) they ~d that we remain/should remain silent

aegis *n.* under smb.'s ~, under the ~ of

aerial *n.* (esp. BE) a television, TV ~ (AE prefers *antenna*)

aerobics *n.* to do, go in for, take up ~

aeroplane (BE) see **airplane**

aether (old-fashioned BE) see **ether**

afar *adv.* from ~

affair *n.* ["romantic liaison"] 1. to carry on, conduct, have an ~ (with) 2. a casual; clandestine, secret; extramarital, illicit; love; passionate, tempestuous, torrid; scandalous ~ (between; with) ["matter"] ["event"] ["situation"] ["scandal"] 3. to investigate an ~ 4. to cover up, hush up an/the (whole) ~; to wash one's hands of an/the (whole) ~ 5. a delicate; embarrassing; private ~ 6. a sinister, sordid, ugly; sorry ~ 7. an ~ of honor ["social event"] 8. a dull; exciting ~ 9. a formal; gala; informal ~ 10. a catered ~ ["misc."] 11. a long-drawn-out ~ (see also **affairs**)

affairs *n.* 1. to administer, conduct ~ (of state) 2. to arrange; manage, run; settle one's ~ 3. to put one's ~ in order 4. to straighten out one's ~ 5. to wind up one's ~ 6. civil; community; cultural ~ 7. domestic, home (BE), internal; external, foreign; international; national ~ 8. legal; military; political; public; veterans' (AE) ~ 9. current ~ 10. (misc.) to interfere, meddle in smb.'s ~; a state of ~ (see also *affairs of state* at **state I** *n.*)

affect *v.* 1. to ~ adversely; deeply, profoundly, strongly 2. (formal) (esp. BE) (E) he ~ed not to hear

affection *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show; return ~ 2. to feel; have ~ 3. to gain, win smb.'s ~ (she won the children's ~) 4. abiding; deep, great, strong, warm; genuine, real; mutual ~ 5. little ~ 6. ~ for (to feel ~ for smb.) 7. with ~ 8. (misc.) a token of smb.'s ~

affectionate *adj.* ~ to, towards, with (~ with children)

affections *n.* 1. to gain, win smb.'s ~ 2. to alienate smb.'s ~ 3. (misc.) the object of smb.'s ~ ("the object of my ~ can change my complexion from white to rosy red" – popular song)

affidavit *n.* (legal) 1. to file, submit; sign an ~ (the lawyer filed an ~ on behalf of her client) 2. a sworn ~

affiliate *v.* (D; intr., refl., tr.) to ~ to, with (to ~ oneself with a national movement; they are ~d with a national movement; to become ~d with)

affiliation *n.* 1. to form, have an ~ 2. business; party, political ~s 3. an ~ to, with

affinity *n.* 1. to demonstrate, show (an) ~ 2. to feel; have (an) ~ 3. (a) close; elective; natural; strong ~ 4. ~ between; for; to; with (he always felt a close ~ with the underdog)

affirm *v.* (L; to) the ministry ~ed (to us) that the visit had been postponed; he did not swear on the Bible, but said "I do solemnly, sincerely and truly declare and ~ that I shall tell the truth" (– adapted from *Quaker Faith and Practice*)

affirmation *n.* ~ that + clause (I believed the ministry's ~ (to us) that the visit had been postponed)

affirmative *n.* to answer, reply in the ~

affix *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ one's signature to a document)

afflicted *adj.* 1. grievously, severely ~ 2. ~ with (~ with a disease)

affluence *n.* in ~ (to live in ~)

afford *v.* 1. to barely, ill; easily, well ~ 2. (formal) (A) it ~ed great pleasure to him; or: it ~ed him great pleasure 3. (E; preceded by the forms: can – cannot – can't – could – couldn't) we cannot ~ to buy a new house; we can ill ~ to lose this contract = we cannot ~ not to keep this contract 4. (formal) (K; preceded by the forms: can – cannot – can't – could – couldn't) we couldn't ~ his signing up for another course

affront *n.* 1. (formal) to suffer an ~ 2. a personal; shocking ~ 3. an ~ to (it was an ~ to common decency)

afloat *adj.* 1. to keep smt. ~ (to try to keep a company ~ in a recession) 2. to set (a ship) ~ 3. to keep, stay ~

aflutter *adj.* (colloq.) 1. all ~ 2. ~ with (~ with excitement)

afoul *adv.* (AE) to fall, run ~ of (to run ~ of the law) (also **foul I**)

afraid *adj.* 1. deathly (formal), terribly, very, very much ~ 2. ~ for (to be ~ for the future; he was ~ for her/for her safety) 3. ~ of (the child was ~ of the dark even though the dark is nothing to be ~ of; he was ~ of diving off the high board) 4. ~ to + inf. (he was ~ to dive off the high board) 5. ~ that + clause (we were ~ that he would find out) 6. (misc.) is it true? I'm ~ so; is she coming? I'm ~ not; "the answer is 41!" "I'm afraid you're wrong: it's 42." USAGE NOTE: You will often hear such expressions as "? I'm afraid to say you're wrong."

That is an unnecessary blend of "I'm afraid you're wrong" with "I'm sorry to say you're wrong." Do not use it.

after I *adv.* 1. immediately; long; shortly, soon; well ~ 2. the day; morning ~ 3. forever ~

after II *prep.* the police were ~ them

afterburners *n.* to activate, go to ~ (our interceptors had to go to ~)

aftereffects *n.* to feel the ~ (of)

afterglow *n.* to bask in the ~ (of)

aftermath *n.* 1. a grim; immediate ~ 2. an ~ of, (AE) to 3. in the ~ (in the ~ of that incident, he had to leave town) 4. to deal with the ~ of

afternoon *n.* 1. all ~; during the ~; in the ~ (they left early/late in the ~ = they left in the early/late ~); ~s (AE), every ~; the next, the following ~; this ~; that ~; tomorrow ~; yesterday ~; a June ~; a summer ~; on any ~; on/during the ~ of (they left on the ~ of July 26); on Wednesday ~ = Wednesday ~ (AE) 2. an ~ of (after an ~ of conversation, they spent the evening together) 3. from ~ (from ~ to evening) 4. (misc.) the ~ drew to a close; (Good) Afternoon (, everybody)!; to have; spend an ~ (we had a pleasant ~ at a museum; we spent the whole ~ working on the report)

aftershave *n.* to apply, put on; use ~

aftertaste *n.* 1. to leave an ~ 2. a bitter, unpleasant; nice, pleasant ~ (it left a pleasant ~)

afterthought *n.* as an ~ (the most important detail came out almost as an ~)

afterward (AE), **afterwards** see **after I**

agape *adj.* (formal) ["gaping"] ~ with (~ with astonishment)

age *n.* ["stage of life"] 1. to live to, reach an ~ 2. an advanced, great, venerable ~ (she lived to a great ~) (see also **old age**) 3. an early, tender, young; impressionable ~ (at an early ~; at a very young ~) 4. middle ~ 5. college; high-school (AE); preschool; school ~ 6. (a) retirement, retiring (BE); voting ~ 7. (a) legal ~; the ~ of consent 8. at an ~ (at a tender ~; at the ~ of six; she died at the age of eighty); between the ~s of X and Y (teenagers between the ~s of 13 and 19); by an ~ (Mozart was composing music by the tender ~ of six!); from an ~ to an ~; over an ~; under an ~ (children under the ~ of five are admitted free) 9. of an ~ (people of all ~s; of childbearing ~) 10. (misc.) to come of ~ ("to reach adulthood"); to act one's ~ ("to behave maturely"); to look, show one's ~ ("to not have a youthful appearance"); to feel one's ~ ("to feel old"); over ~ ("too old"); under ~ ("too young"); in old ~ ("of advanced years") ["era"]["period"] 11. to usher in an ~ (to usher in the computer ~) 12. a golden; heroic ~ 13. the Dark; Middle ~s (during the Middle ~s) 14. the Bronze; Ice; Iron; Stone ~ 15. the atomic, nuclear; computer; space ~ 16. in an ~ (in the nuclear ~) 17. for ~s (and ~s) 18. through the ~s (true down through the ~s) 19. absolutely, simply ~s (it's been simply ~s since we did lunch!) USAGE NOTE: In AE you will often hear such phrases as "She died at age 80." Its equivalents in World English are "She died at the age of 80" or "She died at 80 years of age" or "She died aged 80" or just "She died at 80."

agency *n.* 1. an adoption; health-care; home-health (AE); welfare ~ 2. a private; public; voluntary ~ 3. an advertising; detective; employment; escort; ticket; travel ~ 4. an aid; government; intelligence; law-enforcement; regulatory; watchdog ~ 5. a news ~ 6. at, in an ~; through an ~ (she works at a travel ~; she booked her flight through a travel ~)

agenda *n.* 1. to draw up, make up, put together; set an ~ 2. to place, put smt. on the ~ (to put an item on the ~) 3. a hidden ~ ("a secret plan") 4. an item on the ~ 5. (misc.) high on the ~

agent *n.* ["representative"] 1. an estate (BE), real-estate (AE); insurance ~ 2. a literary; press ~ 3. a purchasing; shipping ~ 4. a ticket; travel ~ (she booked her flight through a travel ~) 5. a free ~ 6. an ~ for (an ~ for a large firm) ["smb. engaged in intelligence activities"] 7. a double; enemy; espionage, secret, undercover; special ~ 8. (misc.) an ~ provocateur ["substance"] 9. an asphyxiating; chemical; toxic ~ 10. a cleaning; cleansing ~

aggrandizement *n.* personal; territorial ~

aggregate *n.* in the ~

aggression *n.* ["attack"] 1. to commit ~ (against) 2. to repel ~ 3. armed; brazen, flagrant, naked, outright, stark, unprovoked ~ ["aggressiveness"] 4. to display, express, manifest, show ~ 5. to channel, direct; control, stifle ~ 6. deep-rooted, deep-seated, hidden ~ 7. an act of ~ (to commit an act of ~)

aggrieved *adj.* ~ at, by

aghast *adj.* 1. ~ at (~ at the very thought of going back to work) 2. ~ to + inf. (they were ~ to learn of the bank's failure)

agitate *v.* 1. to ~ strongly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ against; for (they were ~ing for reform)

agitation *n.* 1. political; student; subversive ~ 2. ~ against; for (their ~ for reform) 3. (misc.) in a state of great ~ ("feeling high anxiety")

agitator *n.* a political ~

aglow *adj.* ~ with (~ with happiness)

ago *adv.* 1. ~ that + clause (it was five years ~ that we met) 2. (misc.) ages (and ages) ~; a week ~; a long time ~, long ~; a while ~; many years ~, years (and years) ~

agog *adj.* 1. all ~ 2. ~ over; with (she was all ~ over her new granddaughter) 3. ~ to + inf. (they were all ~ to hear the news)

agonize *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, over (to ~ over a decision)

agony *n.* 1. to endure, experience, feel, go through ~ 2. to prolong the ~ 3. acute, deep, great, indescribable, untold; unbearable; mortal ~ 4. in ~ (in great ~)

agree *v.* 1. ("to concur") to ~ completely, entirely, fully, totally, wholeheartedly; readily 2. (D; intr.) (“to concur”) to ~ about; on; to; upon; with (to ~ with smb. about smt.; to ~ on/to a plan) 3. (d; intr.) (of food, climate) to ~ with (“to suit”) (the food doesn’t ~ with me) 4. (grammar) (D; intr.) (“to correspond”) to ~ in; with (Latin adjectives ~ with nouns in gender) 5. (E) (“to consent”) they ~d to help 6. (L) (“to concur”) we ~d that everyone would receive an equal share 7. (misc.) I could not ~ more USAGE NOTE: In BE, *agree* can be used as a transitive verb – *to agree a plan*. It can mean both ‘to agree on a common plan’ and ‘to agree to smb. else’s plan.’ In BE, one can say – *Let’s all follow the agreed plan*. In World English, that would be – *Let’s all follow the agreed-on plan* or *Let’s all follow the plan agreed on/agreed to*.

agreeable *adj.* 1. mutually ~ 2. ~ to (they were all ~ to our proposal; is that ~ to you?)

agreement *n.* [“contract, settlement, treaty”] 1. to arrive at, come to, conclude, enter into, negotiate, reach an ~ 2. to draw up, hammer out, make, work out an ~ 3. to seal, sign an ~ 4. to adhere to, be bound by, carry out, honor, live up to, stick to an ~ 5. to break, violate an ~ 6. to cancel, denounce, rescind an ~ 7. a binding; contractual; ironclad; legal; oral, verbal; secret; tacit; tentative; written ~ (we reached a tentative ~) 8. a prenuptial ~ 9. an armistice, ceasefire, peace ~ 10. an arms-control, nonproliferation ~ 11. a sales, trade ~ 12. a bilateral; international; multilateral ~ 13. an ~ about, on; between; with (an ~ was worked out between them on all points) 14. an ~ to + inf. (we reached an ~ with them to cooperate fully at all times) 15. an ~ that + clause (the negotiators came to an ~ that all troops would/should be withdrawn) [“concord, harmony”] 16. to express; reach ~ 17. basic, essential; bipartisan; complete, full, solid, total, unanimous; mutual; tacit ~ (they reached full ~ on all points) 18. ~ about, on, over 19. by ~ (by mutual ~) 20. in ~ (with) (we were in full ~ with them on all points = we were fully in ~ with them on all points; we were in ~ with them that all troops would/should be withdrawn) [“grammatical concord”] 21. grammatical ~ 22. ~ in (~ in case, gender, and number)

aground *adj.*, *adv.* to run ~ (the ship ran ~)

ahead *adj.*, *adv.* 1. comfortably, considerably, far, way, well ~ 2. ~ by (our team was ~ by three points) 3. ~ of (~ of the other competitors; to finish ~ of schedule; to try to reach agreement ~ of the conference) 4. (misc.) dead, straight ~; full speed ~; Danger ~!

aid I *n.* 1. to extend, give, offer, provide, render ~ 2. to come to, go to smb.’s ~ 3. to cut, reduce ~ 4. to cut off, withdraw ~ 5. to increase ~ 6. generous, unstinting ~ 7. audiovisual; teaching; visual ~s (to employ, use visual ~s) 8. first ~ (first ~ to the injured) (see also **first aid**) 9. a hearing ~ 10. economic, financial; emergency; federal (in the US); foreign; government; humanitarian; military; state (in the US) ~ 11. legal ~ (for the poor) 12. (an) ~ for; from; in; to (an ~ to memorization; economic ~ to developing countries from an unlikely source) 13. with; without the ~ of (to walk with the ~ of crutches) 14. (misc.) to enlist smb.’s; to go to smb.’s ~; (BE; colloq.) what’s all this in ~ of? (“what’s all this for?”)

aid II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ in, with (we ~ed them in their work; she ~ed me with the translation) 2. (rare) (H) to ~ smb. to do smt. (we ~ed them to do their work; she ~ed us to move the furniture) (see also *aid and abet* at **abet**)

aide *n.* 1. a home health ~ (AE) (BE has *home help*) 2. a military; presidential; senior ~ 3. an ~ to

AIDS *n.* 1. HIV/~; full-blown ~ 2. to contract, develop, get; have ~ 3. a case of ~

ailment *n.* 1. a chronic; common; minor, slight; physical; serious ~ 2. a back; heart; kidney; skin; stomach ~ (for additional combinations, see **disease**, **illness**)

aim I *n.* [“purpose”] [“goal”] 1. to achieve one’s; set oneself an ~ 2. a chief; immediate; long-range, long-term; short-term ~ 3. an avowed; idealistic, lofty, worthy; unrealistic ~ 4. an ~ to + inf. (it was our ~ to complete the work before the end of the month) 5. with an ~ (the project was launched with the ~ of retraining the unemployed) [“aiming of a weapon”] 6. to take ~ at 7. careful; steady ~ (she took careful ~ at the intruder)

aim II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ at (he ~ed at me; she ~ed the revolver at the intruder) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ for (she ~ed for the heart; he was ~ing for a promotion) 3. (E) we ~ to please 4. (misc.) to ~ high (fig.) (“~ for the highest, expect the least, and you’ll never be disappointed” – proverb); Ready, Aim, Fire!

air I *n.* [“atmosphere”] 1. to clear the ~ 2. to breathe (in), inhale; exhale ~ 3. to pollute the ~ 4. balmy, mild; bracing, brisk, crisp, refreshing; clean; compressed; country; dry; foul; fresh; frigid; humid; moist; open; polluted; sea; stale ~ 5. a breath of (fresh) ~; a blast of hot ~; a puff, whiff of ~ 6. in the ~; through the ~ (the decisive battles were fought in the ~; a political demonstration held in the open ~; how fast does sound travel through the ~?) [“transportation by aircraft”] 7. by ~ (to travel by ~) [“medium through which radio signals are transmitted”] 8. on the ~ (to go on (the) ~; our station is on the ~) 9. off the ~ (that station never goes off the ~) [“appearance”] 10. to assume an ~ (to assume an ~ of innocence) 11. a detached; knowing; nonchalant; superior, triumphant ~ [“tune”] 12. a martial ~ (the band struck up a martial ~) [“misc.”] 13. in the ~ (“current, imminent”); to walk on ~ (“to be elated”); to give smb. the ~ (“to reject smb.”); up in the ~ (“unsettled”); to disappear into thin ~

air II *v.* 1. (B) he is ready to ~ his views to anyone 2. (P) (esp. AE) the program will ~ on Saturday night.

air conditioner *n.* 1. to run; turn on an ~ 2. to turn off an ~ 3. a central; room ~ 4. the ~ was on, was running

air conditioning *n.* 1. central ~ 2. the ~ was on, was running

air raid *n.* to carry out, conduct an ~ against

aircraft *n.* 1. commercial; enemy; friendly; jet; military; private; unidentified ~ 2. (misc.) to shoot down enemy ~; lowflying ~ strafed enemy lines; to ground all ~ (see also **airplane**)

airing *n.* ["public discussion"] 1. to give smt. an ~ (they gave our proposal a good ~ at the conference) ["ventilation"] 2. to give smt. an ~ (we gave the blankets a good ~)

airlift *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (the refugees were ~ed to safety from the flooded areas)

airline *n.* 1. a domestic; feeder; international, overseas; local ~ 2. an ~ flies (an ~ that flies mostly between New York and Puerto Rico)

airmail *n.* by ~ (to send a letter by ~)

airplane (AE), **aeroplane** (BE) *n.* 1. to board, get on; take an ~ 2. to get off an ~ 3. to bring down, land; ditch; fly, pilot; navigate an ~ (a pilot flies an ~) 4. to bring down, shoot down; force down; hijack an ~ (enemy fire brought down our ~) 5. a jet; propeller-driven ~ 6. an ~ banks; crashes; cruises; flies; gains altitude; lands, touches down; levels off; loses altitude; reaches an altitude; takes off; taxis along the runway (see also **aircraft**, **plane**)

airport *n.* 1. an international; local; military ~ 2. at an ~

airs *n.* ["affected manners"] 1. to give oneself, put on ~ 2. (misc.) (BE) ~ and graces

air show *n.* to have, hold, put on, stage an ~

air space *n.* to enter; respect; violate a country's ~

air superiority *n.* 1. to establish; gain ~ 2. complete, overwhelming, total ~

aisle *n.* 1. to clear the ~s 2. in the ~ (don't stand in the ~) 3. on the ~ (to sit on the ~) 4. (misc.) to roll in the ~s ("to laugh heartily"); across the ~ (AE) ("so as to co-operate in a bi-partisan way with smb. from another political party") (unlike the other candidates, I've always been willing to reach across the ~ to win support for a good bill)

ajar *adj.* to leave ~ (she left the door ~)

akin *adj.* (formal) (usu. does not stand alone) ~ to (a feeling somewhat ~ to love)

alarm *n.* ["warning device"]["warning"] 1. to activate; give, raise, set off, sound; set; trigger, trip an ~ (she set the ~ to go off at five) 2. to deactivate, turn off an ~ 3. an air-raid; burglar; fire; silent; smoke ~ 4. a false ~ 5. an ~ goes off, rings, sounds ["apprehension, fear"] 6. to express; feel ~ 7. to cause; spread ~ (the incident caused great ~) 8. ~ at, over (to express ~ at the danger of war) 9. ~ that + clause (she expressed ~ that they would miss the train) 10. in, with ~

alarm clock *n.* 1. to set an ~ (she set the ~ to go off at five) 2. an ~ goes off, rings, sounds (the ~ went off at five)

alarmed *adj.* 1. unduly ~ 2. ~ at, by (we were ~ at the news of the earthquake) USAGE NOTE: Currently *alarmed* is also used in the meaning "provided with an alarm" – *this room is alarmed*.

alarming *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ (for us) to think of the possible danger of war) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ (to us) that there was still a possible danger of war)

album *n.* 1. an autograph; family; photograph; stamp; wedding ~ 2. in an ~

alcohol *n.* 1. to distill, make ~ 2. to abstain from; consume, drink ~ 3. to reek of ~ 4. ethyl, grain; methyl, wood; pure, unadulterated; rubbing (AE; BE has *surgical spirit*) ~ 5. a unit; level of ~ (don't consume more than the recommended number of units of ~ a week; the driver's blood contained high levels of ~)

alcoholic *n.* a chronic ~

alcoholism *n.* acute; chronic ~

ale *n.* see **beer**

alert I *adj.* 1. to keep, stay ~ 2. ~ to (~ to danger)

alert II *n.* 1. to call an ~ 2. to place, put (troops) on ~ 3. to call off, cancel an ~ 4. (a) full; high; preliminary; red ~ (the troops were on full ~) 5. on (the) ~ (for) (to be on the ~ for trouble) 6. (misc.) in a state of ~

alert III *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (we must ~ the public to the danger)

A-levels *n.* ["Advanced-level secondary-school examinations"] (in the UK except Scotland) 1. to do, sit, take one's; to get, obtain; have ~ 2. in one's ~ (to do well in one's French and German ~) 3. ~ in (to have ~ in French and German)

algebra *n.* to do ~

alias *n.* 1. to adopt, use an ~ 2. an ~ for 3. under an ~

alibi *n.* 1. to give; have; provide an ~ (for) 2. to check out, confirm smb.'s ~ 3. to break, disprove an ~ 4. an airtight, cast-iron, foolproof, unassailable ~ 5. his ~ held up; collapsed

alien I *adj.* (formal) completely, totally, utterly ~ to (such ideas are totally ~ to us)

alien II *n.* 1. to deport; intern an ~ 2. an enemy; illegal; resident ~

alienate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (she was ~d from her family)

alienation *n.* ~ from (~ from one's family)

alight *v.* (formal) (D; intr.) to ~ from; on (to ~ from a vehicle; to ~ on a branch)

align *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ along; with (the wheels must be correctly ~ed with the frame along both sides of the vehicle; he ~ed himself with the left wing of the party)

alignment *n.* in; into; out of ~ (the wheels are out of ~ and must be brought back into ~)

alike *adj.* 1. very, very much ~ 2. ~ in (the sisters are very (much) ~ in all respects; "two households, both ~ in dignity" – Shakespeare, *Romeo and Juliet*) 3. (misc.) as ~ as two peas in a pod

alimony *n.* (esp. AE) to award, grant; pay ~ (the judge awarded the ex-wife ~) USAGE NOTE: BE now prefers *maintenance*.

alive *adj.* 1. keenly; very much ~ ("is he still ~?" "yes, indeed: he's (still) very much ~!") 2. (cannot stand alone) ~ to (keenly ~ to the danger of becoming overconfident; ~ to the beauty of nature) 3. ~ with (the campus was ~ with students) 4. (misc.) ~ and kicking, ~ and well ("is he still ~?" "yes, indeed: he's (still) ~ and kicking; in fact, he's ~ and well and living in Argentina!")

all I *n.* to give one's ~

all II *pronoun, determiner* 1. ~ in ~ (there were about 50 of them ~ in ~ = ~ in ~, there were about 50 ot them) (see also *all together* at **together**; *all told* at **told**) 2. ~ of (we saw ~ of them) USAGE NOTE: The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows – *the dean saw all of them* ('the dean saw them all'). When a noun follows, three constructions are possible *the dean saw all of the students (on the list) = the dean saw all the students (on the list) = the dean saw all students (on the list).*

all clear *n.* 1. to give, sound the ~ 2. the ~ sounded

allegation *n.* ["assertion"] 1. to make; substantiate an ~ 2. to drop, retract, withdraw an ~ 3. to deny, reject; rebut, refute an ~ 4. a false; serious; slanderous; unproved, unsubstantiated, unsupported; vague ~ 5. an ~ about; against; of (~s of theft were made against him) 6. an ~ that + clause (their ~ that he had stolen the money proved to be false)

allege *v.* (L) it has been ~d that he stole the money = they have ~d that he stole the money

alleged *adj.* ~ to + inf. (he was ~ to have stolen the money)

allegiance *n.* 1. to give; owe; pledge, swear ~ ("I pledge ~ to the Flag of the United States of America" – U.S. oath) 2. to change, switch one's ~; to change, switch ~s (from; to) 3. to disavow, forsake one's ~ to 4. true, unfailing, unswerving ~ 5. changing, shifting ~s 6. ~ to (~ to a cause)

allergic *adj.* ~ to (~ to dust)

allergy *n.* to acquire, develop; have an ~ to

alliance *n.* 1. to enter into, forge, form; cement an ~ 2. to disband, dissolve an ~ 3. a broad; close; defense, military; political; uneasy; unholy ~ 4. an ~ against; between; of; with (to form an ~ with one's neighbors against the common enemy = to form an ~ of neighbors against a common enemy) 5. an ~ to + inf. (an ~ to defend an area against any invader) 6. in ~ with

allied *adj.* ~ against; to, with (we were ~ with our neighbors against the common enemy)

allocate *v.* 1. (B; more rarely – A) the dean ~d the funds to several students 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (our committee ~d money for the memorial)

allocation *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. a budget ~ 3. an ~ for; to

allot *v.* 1. (A) the city has ~ted space to us; or: the city has ~ted us space 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for/to (to ~ funds for/to the arts)

allow *v.* 1. (A; usu. without the preposition *to*) ("to permit") she did not ~ herself time for relaxation 2. (d; intr.) ("to provide") to ~ for (we ~ed for their difference in age; you must ~ for shrinkage) 3. (D; tr.) ("to give") to ~ for (they ~ed an hour for lunch) 4. (formal) (d; intr.) to ~ of ("to permit") (our financial situation ~s of no unnecessary expenditures) 5. (H) ("to permit") we ~ed the children to go to the park 6. (formal) (L) ("to admit") I must ~ that he is capable 7. (O; can be used with one inanimate object) ("to permit") the doctors ~ two meals a day; the doctors ~ him two meals a day; she ~ed herself one glass of wine USAGE NOTE: In some regional varieties of English, the example *I must allow that he is capable* could become *I'll have to allow as how he knows his stuff.*

allowance *n.* ["taking into account"] 1. to make (an) ~ for (to make ~/~s/an ~ for inexperience; to make ~s for wear and tear) ["sum granted"] 2. to draw; give, grant an ~ 3. to live on an ~ 4. a cost-of-living; depletion; entertainment; housing; mileage; subsistence; trade-in; travel ~ 5. a daily; fixed; weekly ~ 6. an ~ for ["amount allowed"] 7. a baggage; duty-fee ~ USAGE NOTE: Parents may regularly give their children *pocket money*, which in AE is called *an allowance*.

all right *adj.* (colloq.) ~ to + inf. (it's ~ (for us) to take a break) USAGE NOTE: The spelling *alright* is common but should be avoided. Thus the following example is ambiguous – *the answers are all right*. It can mean either 'the answers are all correct' or 'the answers are OK; i.e., just about acceptable.'

allude *v.* 1. to ~ vaguely 2. (d; intr.) to ~ to (she didn't ~ to the incident)

allusion *n.* 1. to make an ~ to (she made no ~ to the incident) 2. to contain an ~ (the statement contains several ~s to the incident) 3. a direct; indirect, oblique; literary; passing; vague, (thinly) veiled ~ (she made a thinly veiled ~ to the incident)

ally I *n.* 1. a close, faithful, staunch; ~ 2. an ~ against; in (in our friends we felt we had natural ~s in our struggle against the common enemy)

ally II *v.* (D; intr., refl.) to ~ against; in; to, with (we ~ied ourselves with our friends in our struggle against the common enemy)

alms *n.* (formal) 1. to dispense, give ~ 2. ~ for; to (~ for the needy)

alone *adj.* 1. very (much) 2. to leave, let smb./smt. ~ 3. to be, stand ~ 4. ~ against; in (to be ~ in one's grief; to stand ~ in one's struggle ~ against the whole world) 5. (misc.) to live ~; she's all ~ (in the world)

aloof *adj.* 1. entirely; largely ~ 2. to hold oneself, keep, remain, stand ~ 3. ~ from (he remained entirely ~ from the others)

alphabet *n.* 1. the Arabic; Cyrillic; Greek; Hebrew; Latin, Roman; Phoenician; Sanskrit ~ 2. a phonetic; runic ~ 3. in an ~ (there are 26 letters in our ~)

altar *n.* 1. at; before; on the ~ (the priest stood at/before the ~ and laid a pinch of incense on it) 2. to lead smb. to the ~ (to marry smb.; typically, to marry a woman)

alteration *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. a major; minor, slight ~ 3. an ~ in, to

altercation *n.* (formal) 1. to have an ~ 2. an ~ about, over; between; with (to have an ~ with smb. about smt.)

alternate *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ between (they ~ between supporting us and opposing us) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in (we ~ in doing the household chores) 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ with (sunny weather ~d with rain; the coach ~d Jones with/and Wilson)

alternative *n.* 1. to propose an ~ 2. to fall back on an ~ 3. a real, realistic, viable ~ 4. an ~ to 5. no ~ (but, except/(formal) save) ("There Is No Alternative" – attributed to Margaret Thatcher; we have no ~ but/except/save persistence) 6. no ~ but/except/(formal) save to + inf. (we have no ~ but/except/save to persist)

altitude *n.* 1. to gain ~; to reach an ~ of 2. to lose ~ 3. a cruising ~ 4. at an ~ (at high ~s)

altogether *n.* ["nude state"] in the ~

amalgamate *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (our firm will be ~d with a Japanese company – unless we ~ (it) with a British one first!)

amateur *n.* 1. a rank ~ 2. an ~ at, in

amaze *v.* (R) it ~d her (to learn) that he had been promoted so quickly

amazed *adj.* 1. ~ at, by (she was ~ at his quick promotion) 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to learn of his quick promotion) 3. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that he had been promoted so quickly)

amazement *n.* 1. complete, sheer, total, utter 2. ~ at (she expressed (her) ~ at his quick promotion) 3. in, with ~ (they stared in ~) 4. to smb.'s ~ (to her utter ~, he was promoted quickly)

amazing *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was (for her) ~ to learn of his quick promotion) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ (to her) that he had been promoted so quickly)

ambassador *n.* 1. to appoint an ~; to exchange ~s 2. to recall an ~ 3. an ~ extraordinary; an ~ plenipotentiary; an ambassador-at-large 4. a goodwill; roving ~ 5. an ~ to (our ~ to Italy)

ambiguity *n.* 1. to clear up, remove an ~; to avoid ~ 2. a certain, a degree of, an element of ~ 3. an ~ about, concerning (a certain ~ about exactly what you want) 4. ~ arises, occurs (a certain ~ can arise in the absence of clarification)

ambition *n.* 1. to achieve, attain, fulfill, realize one's ~; cherish, harbor, have an ~ 2. to spur, stir smb.'s ~ 3. to limit, restrain one's ~ 4. boundless, unbridled; burning, consuming, devouring; driving, overriding ~ 5. frustrated; unrealized ~ 6. personal; political ~ 7. territorial ~s (of an aggressor) 8. an ~ to + inf. (he achieved his ~ to become mayor)

ambitious *adj.* (formal) 1. ~ for (a father ~ for his daughter) 2. (esp. BE) ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to succeed; a father ~ for his daughter to succeed)

ambivalent *adj.* ~ about; toward

amble *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ along the road

ambush *n.* 1. to lay, set an ~ for 2. to draw smb. into an ~ 3. to hide, lie, lurk, wait in ~ (for) 4. to run into, walk into an ~ 5. in; from ~ (to attack from ~; to die in an ~) 6. an ~ takes place (the ~ took place on a deserted country road)

amen *n.* 1. to say ~ 2. (informal) to say ~ to ("to endorse") (I'll say ~ to that any day!)

amenable *adj.* ~ to (~ to compromise)

amendment *n.* 1. to adopt; propose; ratify an ~ 2. a constitutional ~ 3. an ~ to (an ~ to the constitution)

amends *n.* to make ~ (for) (she wanted to make ~ for the damage that she had caused)

amenities *n.* ["comforts"] 1. basic ~ 2. to lack, provide ~ (for) (the house lacks even the most basic ~, such as running water) ["greetings"] (AE) 3. to exchange ~ ["proper manners"] 4. to observe the ~

American *n.* 1. a Native ~ ("an American Indian of the US") 2. General ~ ("the standardized English alleged to be spoken in most of the US")

amiss *adj.*, *adv.* (formal) 1. to take smt. ~ 2. to go ~ (a little courtesy would not go ~)

ammunition *n.* 1. to provide ~ for (also fig.) 2. to issue ~ 3. blank; dummy; live; tracer ~ 4. a round of ~

amnesty *n.* 1. to announce, declare, grant, offer (an) ~ (he was granted ~) 2. a full; general; partial; political ~ 3. an ~ for (the government declared a general ~ for political prisoners)

amok, amuck *adv.* to run ~

amount I *n.* 1. to calculate, figure out an ~ 2. an ample, considerable, enormous, huge, large, tremendous; limited; moderate, modest; negligible, paltry, small ~ 3. the exact; full ~ 4. in ~ (small in ~ but high in quality) 5. (misc.) an equivalent ~ in francs

amount II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (it ~s to fraud; he'll never ~ to anything)

amuse *v.* 1. to ~ greatly, thoroughly, very much 2. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ by, with (she ~d the children with tricks; they ~d themselves by playing games) 3. (R) it ~d us to watch them play; it ~d me that they would never admit to being wrong

amused *adj.* 1. easily; greatly, highly, thoroughly, vastly, very (much) ~ 2. ~ at, by; with (she was ~ at/by that story; children can be easily ~ with tricks) 3. ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to see him playing up to the boss) 4. to keep smb. ~ (he kept the children ~ by reading stories)

amusement *n.* 1. to provide ~ for 2. to find ~ in 3. in, with ~ (to look on in/with ~) 4. to smb.'s ~ (much to my ~, everyone believed her story)

amusing *adj.* 1. highly, very; not in the least ~ 2. ~ to (it was not in the least amusing ~ to anyone)

3. ~ to + inf. (it was (for us) ~ to watch the trained elephants perform)

anaemia (esp. BE) see **anemia**

anaesthesia (esp. BE) see **anesthesia**

anaesthetic (esp. BE) see **anesthetic**

analogous *adj.* 1. roughly ~ 2. ~ to, with

analogy *n.* 1. to draw, make an ~ 2. a close; rough, superficial ~ (there is a close ~ between these two phenomena) 3. an ~ between; to, with 4. by ~ (to reason by ~ with a related phenomenon) 5. on the ~ of (to say *thunk* on the analogy of *sunk*) 6. an ~ holds (good) (upon further analysis the ~ between X and Y just doesn't hold)

analysis *n.* ["examination of component parts"] 1. to carry out, do, make an ~ (of) 2. a careful, detailed, painstaking, thorough, thoroughgoing; critical; in-depth; objective; penetrating; subjective ~ 3. (ling.) discourse ~ 4. (chemistry) qualitative; quantitative ~ 5. (math.) vector ~ (see also *systems analysis* at **system**) 6. on, upon ~ (upon further ~, we concluded that…) 7. in the final, last, ultimate ~ ["psychoanalysis"] 8. to have, undergo (an) ~ (with) (to have (an) ~ with Freud himself!) 9. in ~ (with) (she was in ~ with Freud himself!)

analyst *n.* 1. financial; political ~ (see also *systems analyst* at **system**) ["psychoanalyst"] 2. to see an ~

anarchy *n.* 1. complete, total, utter ~ 2. to descend, slide into 3. ~ reigns

anathema *n.* ~ to (his theories were ~ to his colleagues)

anatomy *n.* comparative; descriptive; human ~

ancestor *n.* a common; remote ~

ancestry *n.* 1. to trace one's ~ (back to) 2. of (a certain) ~ (to be of French ~)

anchor I *n.* 1. to cast, drop ~ 2. to raise, weigh ~ 3. at ~ (to ride at ~)

anchor II *v.* 1. to ~ fast, firmly, securely 2. to ~ to (a boat ~ed securely to a dock)

anecdote *n.* 1. to relate, tell an ~ 2. an amusing, funny, witty; off-color; personal ~ 3. an ~ about

anemia (AE), (esp. BE) **anaemia** *n.* 1. to develop, have ~ 2. pernicious; sickle-cell ~

anesthesia (AE), (esp. BE) **anaesthesia** *n.* 1. to induce, produce ~ 2. to have, undergo ~ 3. general; local ~ 4. the ~ takes effect; wears off 5. under ~

anesthetic (AE), (esp. BE) **anaesthetic** *n.* 1. to administer, give an ~ 2. to have an ~ 3. a general; local ~ 4. to come around, round from an ~ ("The ~ from which none come round" – Philip Larkin, "Aubade" (1977)) 5. an ~ takes effect; wears off 6. under an ~

angel *n.* (lit.) an avenging; fallen; guardian; ministering ~

anger I *n.* 1. to arouse, provoke, stir up ~; to fill smb. with ~ (the new taxes stirred up ~ against the government) 2. to display, express, show; feel ~ 3. to contain, restrain, suppress (one's) ~ 4. to repress, swallow one's ~ 5. to allay, appease, calm, placate; face smb.'s ~ (to face the ~ of one's victims and try to placate it) 6. to vent one's ~ (on) 7. blind, burning, deep, profound, seething, unbridled; mounting, rising ~ 8. righteous ~ 9. ~ blows over; explodes; subsides; wells up; 10. a blaze, explosion, fit, outburst of ~ 11. ~ about, over; at smt. (he could hardly suppress his ~ about/over the matter; we expressed our deep ~ at his refusal to help) 12. ~ at (AE), towards, with smb. (their ~ at/towards/with me was ill-concealed) 13. ~ that + clause (our ~ that he had refused to help) 14. in; with ~ (she struck back in ~; *Look Back in Anger* – John Osborne (1956); burning with ~)

anger II *v.* 1. ~ deeply, greatly 2. (R) it ~ed us greatly (to learn) that he had refused to help

angle I *n.* ["space between two straight lines that meet"] 1. an acute; alternate; complementary; exterior; interior; obtuse; right; solid; supplementary ~ 2. an awkward; sharp; slight ~ (at a sharp ~) 3. the side; vertex of an ~ ["deviation from a straight line"] 4. at an ~ (at an ~ of thirty degrees; at a rakish ~; at a right ~) ["viewpoint"]["aspect"] 5. from an ~ (to examine a question from various ~s) ["motive; scheme"] (colloq.) (esp. AE) 6. to have an ~; what's his ~?

angle II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to try to obtain") (she was ~ing for an invitation)

angry *adj.* 1. to become, get; grow ~ 2. ~ about, at, over smt. (they were ~ about the changes; we were ~ at his refusal to help; they get ~ over every trifle) 3. ~ at (esp. AE), with smb. (he was ~ at his neighbor; we were ~ with him for refusing to help) 4. ~ to + inf. (we were ~ to learn of his refusal to help) 5. ~ that + clause (we were ~ that he refused to help)

anguish *n.* (formal) 1. to cause ~ 2. acute; bitter; deep; inconsolable; mental ~ 3. ~ at, over 4. in ~ (in ~ over smb.'s death)

animadversion *n.* (formal) to make an ~ on, upon

animadvert *v.* (formal) (D; intr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ on corruption)

animal *n.* 1. to domesticate an ~; to tame; train a wild ~ 2. to breed, raise, rear ~s (in captivity) 3. to trap an ~ 4. to hunt wild ~s 5. to butcher, slaughter ~s (for food) 6. to skin an ~ 7. to stuff an ~ 8. to neuter an ~ 9. a carnivorous, flesh-eating; meat-eating; herbivorous, plant-eating; omnivorous ~ 10. a dangerous; predatory; wild ~ 11. a domestic; domesticated; pet; tame ~ 12. a circus; draft; farm; herd; pack, social; zoo ~ 13. (misc.) like a caged ~; human beings are social ~s

animation *n.* computer; suspended ~

animosity *n.* 1. to arouse, stir up ~ 2. to feel, harbor ~ 3. bitter, burning, deep, seething ~ 4. personal ~ 5. racial; religious ~ 6. ~ against, to, towards (she felt a burning ~ towards them) 7. ~ between

ankle *n.* 1. to sprain, turn, twist, wrench one's ~ 2. a well-turned ("shapely") ~ 3. around, round smb.'s ~ (wear smt. around one's ~) 4. by the ~ (prisoners fastened by the ~) 5. (misc.) ~-deep in mud

annals *n.* to go down in the ~ (of history as)

annex I (esp. BE) **annexe** *n.* an ~ to (an ~ to the main building; an ~ to a treaty)

annex II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (they ~ed the conquered territory to their country)

annihilation *n.* 1. nuclear ~ 2. threaten with ~ (does global warming threaten us with ~?)

anniversary *n.* 1. to celebrate, commemorate, mark, reach an ~ 2. a wedding ~ 3. a diamond; golden; silver (wedding) ~ 4. on an ~ (on their tenth wedding ~) 5. be, fall (their tenth ~ falls on a Friday this year) 6. (misc.) (I wish you a) happy ~!

annotation *n.* 1. to make an ~ (to make ~s in/on/to a text) 2. copious ~s

announce *v.* 1. (B) they ~d the news of the bonus to the employees = they ~d to the employees the news of the bonus 2. (L; to) they ~d (to the employees) that there would be a bonus

announcement *n.* 1. to issue, make an ~ 2. a birth; wedding ~ 3. a dramatic; formal, official; public ~ 4. a spot ~ 5. an ~ about, of 6. an ~ that + clause (they made a public (to the employees) ~ that there would be a bonus)

announcer *n.* a radio; sports ~

annoy *v.* 1. to ~ greatly, very much 2. (D; tr.) they ~ed me with their continual questions 3. (R) it ~ed me to be kept waiting so long; it ~ed him that his door was unlocked

annoyance *n.* 1. to express; feel; show ~ 2. (a) great; (a) minor ~ 3. ~ at (esp. AE), with smb. 4. ~ at, over smt. 5. ~ that + clause (his ~ that his door was unlocked was evident) 6. to smb.'s ~ (much to his ~, his door was unlocked)

annoyed *adj.* 1. extremely, greatly, very, very much ~ 2. ~ about, at, by smt. (we were ~ at losing the order; we were ~ by the children's rudeness) 3. ~ at (esp. AE), with smb. (he was ~ at/with the children) 4. ~ to + inf. (he was ~ to find his door unlocked) 5. ~ that + clause (he was ~ that his door was unlocked)

annoying *adj.* 1. extremely, highly, most, terribly, very; mildly, slightly ~ 2. ~ to (the delay was ~ to everyone) 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ (for him) to find his door unlocked) 4. ~ that + clause (it was ~ (for him) that his door was unlocked)

annulment *n.* 1. to grant an ~ 2. to obtain an ~

anoint *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smb. with oil) 2. (N; used with a noun) they ~ed him king

anonymous *adj.* to remain ~

another *determiner, pronoun* one way or ~; one after ~; yet ~; ~ two defeats and the war is lost!; he had ~ crazy idea USAGE NOTE: The preposition *of* is used before the plural – *he had another (one) of his crazy ideas.*

answer I *n.* 1. to call forth, elicit an ~ 2. to give, offer, provide an ~ 3. to come up with; have an ~ 4. to guess; know the ~ 5. to get, receive an ~ (from) 6. a clear, definite, straight, straightforward, unequivocal; definitive; direct ~ 7. a civil; diplomatic; wise ~ 8. a favorable; witty ~ 9. an immediate; ready; simple ~ 10. a glib; impertinent; simplistic; stock ~ 11. an equivocal; evasive, vague ~ 12. a blunt, brusque, curt ~ 13. an affirmative, positive ~ 14. a negative ~ 15. a correct, right ~ 16. an incorrect, wrong ~ 17. (BE) a dusty ("unsatisfactory, vague") ~ 18. a written ~ 19. an ~ to 20. in ~ to (in ~ to your question)

answer II *v.* 1. ("to respond") to ~ brusquely, curtly; clearly, unequivocally; immediately, promptly; vaguely 2. (d; intr.) ("to be responsible") to ~ to smb. for smt. (the politicians had to ~ to the voters for their actions) 3. (d; intr.) ("to respond") to ~ to (to ~ to a name; the child ~s only to its nickname) 4. (d; intr.) ("to correspond") to ~ to (she ~s to the description) 5. (D; intr., tr.) ("to respond") to ~ by; with (she ~ed me by nodding = she ~ed me with a nod) 6. (L; may have a personal object) ("to respond") they ~ed (us) that they would come 7. (misc.) if you're so smart why aren't you rich: can you ~ me that? = ~ me that if you can!

answerable *adj.* ~ for; to (politicians are ~ to the voters for their actions)

answer back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (children should not ~ to their parents = children should not answer their parents back)

ant *n.* 1. army; carpenter; fire; harvester; honey; leafcutter; worker ~s 2. white ~s ("termites") 3. a colony of ~s in an ~hill

antagonism *n.* 1. to arouse, stir up ~ 2. to feel (an) ~ 3. bitter, deep, deep-rooted, deep-seated, profound, strong ~ 4. ~ between; to, towards (to feel a strong ~ towards smb.)

antagonist *n.* a formidable ~

antagonistic *adj.* ~ to, towards (he is very ~ to us)

ante *n.* ["stakes"] (colloq.) to up the ~ (also fig.)

antelope *n.* a herd of ~

antenna *n.* a loop; outside; radio; television, TV ~ (BE typically has *aerial*)

anterior *adj.* (formal) ["before, earlier"] ~ to

anthem *n.* a national ~ (the band played/struck up the national ~ and everybody sang it)

anthropology *n.* 1. cultural; physical; social ~ 2. in ~ (a degree in ~)

antibiotic *n.* 1. to prescribe an ~ 2. to take an ~ 3. a broad-spectrum ~ 4. a course of ~s 5. on ~s (she's still on a course of ~s)

anticipate *v.* 1. to ~ eagerly 2. (G) we ~ winning first prize ourselves 3. (K) we ~d his winning first prize 4. (L) we ~d that he would win first prize 5. (Q) we could not ~ whether he would win first prize

anticipation *n.* 1. eager, keen ~ 2. in ~ of (an exhibit was scheduled in ~ of his winning first prize) 3. with ~ (to look forward with eager ~ to his winning first prize) 4. that + clause (our eager ~ that he would win first prize)

anticlimax *n.* an ~ after, to (everything was an ~ to his winning first prize)

anticlockwise (BE) see **counterclockwise**

antidepressant *n.* 1. to take an ~ 2. to prescribe an ~ (for) 3. (to be) on ~s 4. to come off ~s

antidote *n.* 1. an effective, powerful; perfect; the best ~ 2. to be, constitute, serve as an ~ 3. to administer, give an ~ 4. to take an ~ 5. an ~ against, for, to (he took an ~ for the poison; the truth is the best ~ to complacency)

antifreeze *n.* to add; drain ~

antipathy *n.* 1. to feel (an) ~ 2. (a) deep, strong; natural ~ 3. ~ against, to, towards (he felt strong/a strong ~ towards smb.)

antique *n.* 1. to collect ~s 2. a genuine; priceless, valuable; rare ~

antithesis *n.* 1. the direct, very ~ 2. an ~ between 3. an ~ of, to (the ~ of/to my theory)

antithetical *adj.* ~ to

antlers *n.* 1. (esp. AE = to lock horns) to lock ~ (over; with) (locked ~s with them over foreign policy) 2. to shed ~ 3. a pair of ~

anxiety *n.* 1. to cause, create, generate; aggravate, heighten, increase ~ 2. to cope with, deal with; feel ~ 3. to allay, alleviate, decrease, dispel, ease, lessen, reduce, relieve; control ~ 4. acute; deep, grave, great, high, mounting; gnawing, unrelieved ~ 5. ~ about, at, over; for (~ for smb.'s safety) 6. ~ to + inf. (in his ~ not to offend them, he agreed to concessions) 7. ~ builds up, grows, increases, mounts, rises 8. ~ decreases, eases, subsides 9. in ~ (see 6) 10. an attack; level of ~ (reduce one's level of ~ by meditation)

anxious *adj.* 1. ~ about (~ about the world situation) 2. ~ for (we were ~ for their safety) 3. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to help; we were ~ for them to meet you) 4. ~ that + clause; subj. (we were very ~ that they meet/should meet you)

any I *adv.* (used with the comparative form of adjectives and adverbs and with *good*) ~ better (I wonder if they can work ~ better; will it be ~ better living in the country than in the city?); ~ good (I don't think that this wine is ~ good); ~ (the) easier (that doesn't make my job ~ (the) easier); ~ more easily (the door will not shut ~ more easily now than before); ~ more difficult (do not make my job ~ more difficult than it is now); ~ less difficult (you haven't made my job ~ (the) less difficult); ~ worse (will it be ~ worse living in the city than in the country?)

any II *determiner, pronoun* 1. ~ to + inf. (we don't have ~ books to sell; we don't have ~ to sell) 2. ~ of (I did not see ~ of them) USAGE NOTE: The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows. When a noun follows, the use of *of the* limits the meaning – did you see any students? did you see any of the students whom we had discussed earlier? (see also the Usage Note for **something**)

anybody *pronoun* do you have ~ to talk to? = do you have ~ that you can talk to? (see the Usage Note for **something**)

anyone see **anybody** USAGE NOTE: Note the difference between *anyone can do it* and *any one of you can do it.*

anyplace (AE) see **anywhere**

anything *n.*, *pronoun* 1. do you have ~ to say? 2. ~ else 3. ~ about (do you know ~ about it?) 4. ~ to + inf. (do you have ~ to gain by ignoring the regulations? = is there ~ to be gained by ignoring the regulations?) 5. (misc.) ~ but ("not at all") ("is that enough?" "~ but! I need more!") (see the Usage Note for **something**)

anywhere *adv.* 1. do you have ~ to go? 2. ~ else; ~ near (do you have ~ else to go?; that isn't ~ near enough!) (see the Usage Note for **something**)

apart *adj.*, *adv.* 1. to come, fall; tear ~ 2. to tell ~ 3. far; wide ~ (the two parties are still far ~ on foreign policy) 4. ~ from (~ from everything else) 5. (misc.) to come ~ at the seams (see also *set smt. apart* at **set II** *v.*)

apartment *n.* (esp. AE) 1. to rent an ~ from 2. to rent (out), sublet an ~ to 3. to furnish; redecorate; renovate an ~ 4. a basement; duplex; efficiency; furnished; garden; high-rise; luxury; first-floor; top-floor; one-bedroom; three-bedroom, etc.; one-room; three-room, etc.; penthouse; studio; unfurnished ~ (see also **flat**) USAGE NOTE: When people advertise an en-suite apartment, they mean it has an en-suite bathroom.

apathetic *adj.* ~ about; to, towards (he is ~ about everything)

apathy *n.* 1. growing, increasing 2. to feel; show ~ 3. to cast off, shed, throw off one's ~ 4. ~ about, concerning, towards; ~ among (growing ~ about politics among students)

apes *n.* the anthropoid, great, higher ~

apex *n.* 1. to attain, reach the ~ of 2. at the ~ (at the ~ of their power)

aplomb *n.* 1. the ~ to + inf. (she had the necessary ~ to order the meal in French) 2. with great ~

apologetic *adj.* 1. deeply, profusely; suitably ~ 2. to feel ~ 3. ~ about, for (she was deeply ~ for her blunder) 4. ~ to + inf. (she was deeply ~ to have blundered) 5. ~ that + clause (she was deeply ~ that she had blundered)

apologist *n.* an ~ for

apologize *v.* 1. to ~ humbly; profusely 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for; to (she ~d to us for her blunder) 3. (misc.) to ~ from the bottom of one's heart

apology *n.* 1. to make, offer, present; send an ~; to owe smb. an ~ 2. to demand an ~ 3. to accept an ~ ("I owe you an ~: I'm sorry!" "thank you; ~ accepted!") 4. a full; heartfelt; sincere ~ 5. an official; public; written ~ 6. an abject, humble; belated ~ 7. an ~ for; to (she made an ~ to the teacher her blunder) 8. by way of ~ (for) (I sent her flowers by way of apology for my misbehavior) 9. (misc.) to make no apologies for (I make no ~ for opposing the government's plans)

apostasy *n.* (formal) 1. guilty of ~ 2. to commit ~ 3. (an) ~ from

apostate *n.* (formal) an ~ from (an ~ from the true faith)

apostle *n.* an ~ to

appall (AE), **appal** *v.* (R) it ~ed me to see such sloppy work; it ~ed us that the murderer had been released on parole

appalled *adj.* 1. absolutely, really, truly ~ 2. ~ at, by (we were ~ at/by the news) 3. ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to see that the murderer had been released on parole) 4. ~ that + clause (everyone was ~ that the murderer had been released on parole)

appalling *adj.* 1. absolutely, really, truly ~ 2. ~ to 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ (to us) to see that the murderer had been released on parole) 4. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that the murderer had/should have been released on parole) 5. (misc.) it's ~ how/the way a murderer can be released on parole!

apparel *n.* wearing ~

apparent *adj.* 1. clearly, glaringly; increasingly; painfully ~ 2. ~ to 3. ~ that + clause (it was all too painfully ~ to everyone that he had committed the crime) 4. (misc.) it was clearly ~ to everyone how he'd committed the crime

apparition *n.* 1. a strange ~ 2. an ~ appears; disappears

appeal I *n.* ["request"] ["request for review"] 1. to issue; make an ~ 2. (legal) to file, lodge, make; lose; win an ~ 3. (legal) to take an ~ to a higher court 4. (also legal) to deny, dismiss, reject, throw out an ~ 5. (legal) (BE) an ~ lies against the decision ("there is an appeal pending") 6. a broad; desperate, urgent; eloquent, irresistible, moving, ringing, stirring; emotional; final, last; personal ~ 7. an ~ against, from; for; to (to file an ~ against a decision; to make an ~ to the public for donations; there is no ~ from a verdict of the higher court; to make an ~ against a referee's decision; they made an ~ to us to help them) 8. (legal) under ~ (to) (a case currently under ~ to a higher court) ["attraction"] 9. to have ~ 10. esthetic; strong; universal, wide ~ 11. box-office; sales; sex; snob ~ 12. ~ to (just what is his ~ to you anyway?) ["appeal for funds"] 13. to have, hold, organize; launch an ~ (for) (launch an ~ for children in need)

appeal II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to request a review") to ~ against (to ~ against a decision) 2. (D; intr.) ("to request") to ~ for; to (they ~ed to us for help) 3. (d; intr.) ("to request") to ~ to smb. to + inf. (they ~ed to us to help them) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to resort to") (to ~ to common sense) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to please") (he doesn't ~ to her) 6. (d; intr.) ("to please") to ~ greatly, very much (he doesn't ~ to her very much) USAGE NOTE: In AE you are now likely to hear – *to appeal a decision*. Its CE equivalent is – *to appeal against a decision.*

appear *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ against; for (she ~ed against him in court; she ~ed for the defense) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ as (to ~ on stage as Hamlet) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ before (she had to ~ before the judge) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in a leading role) 5. (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on stage) 6. (D; intr.) to ~ to (she ~ed to him in a dream; how does that ~ to you?) 7. (E) she ~s to be well; she ~ to be a fool 8. (L; to) it ~s (to me) that they will not come 9. (S) to ~ foolish; sad; well (she ~s well/foolish); (esp. BE) to ~ a fool 10. (misc.) to ~ before a committee; to ~ in print; to ~ on the scene; to ~ in person; to ~ live (in concert); to ~ at the door; the story ~ed in the newspaper; suddenly there ~ed a ship on the horizon

appearance *n.* ["appearing"] 1. to make, put in an ~ (the policeman made a timely ~; a lawyer's ~ for the defense) 2. a court; guest; personal; public; stage; TV ~ (the actor made a personal ~ that turned out to be his last stage ~) 3. at smb.'s ~ (the crowd went wild at their first ~ on stage) ["outward impression"] 4. a disheveled; shabby; unkempt, untidy ~ 5. an immaculate, neat ~ 6. general; personal ~ (he was careless in his personal ~) 7. in ~ (neat in ~) 8. at first ~ 9. to give, take on; have an ~ (the marching ants took on the ~ of a great wave moving ever forward) 10. for appearance's sake ("for appearances' sake")

appearances *n.* ["outward looks"] 1. to keep up ~ 2. outward ~ 3. by ~ (to judge by ~) 4. for the sake of ~, for appearances' sake ("for appearance's sake") 5. despite; from, to all ~ (to all ~, the matter is closed) 6. (misc.) ~ can be deceiving (AE)/deceptive (BE)

append *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a translation to a document)

appendage *n.* an ~ to

appendectomy, (BE) **appendicectomy** *n.* 1. to do, perform an ~ (on) 2. to have an ~

appendix *n.* 1. (anatomical) to have one's ~ out/removed/taken out 2. (anatomical) an inflamed; ruptured ~ 3. (anatomical) an ~ bursts, ruptures ["appended material"] 4. an ~ to (an ~ to a textbook)

appertain *v.* (formal) ["pertain"] (d; intr.) to ~ to (these facts ~ to the case)

appertaining *adj.* (formal) ["pertaining"] (cannot stand alone) ~ to (facts ~ to the case)

appetite *n.* 1. to have; work up an ~ 2. to give smb. an ~ 3. to whet smb.'s ~ 4. to satisfy smb.'s ~ 5. to lose one's ~ 6. to curb; spoil, take away smb.'s ~ 7. a good, healthy, hearty; jaded ~ 8. an enormous, gargantuan, huge, ravenous, voracious; insatiable ~ 9. a poor ~ 10. an ~ for (his latest book has given me an ~ for his earlier ones)

applaud *v.* 1. to ~ heartily, loudly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as; for (we ~ed them for their courage = we ~ ed them as courageous) 3. (misc.) a decision that deserves to be ~ed

applause *n.* 1. to draw, get, win ~ (from; for) 2. to burst into ~ 3. to hold the ~ 4. enthusiastic, rapturous; heavy, lengthy, prolonged; loud, thunderous, wild ~ 5. light, polite, weak ~ 6. the ~ builds up, increases; dies down, subsides 7. a burst; ripple; round of ~ 8. to (the) ~ (she appeared on stage to the thunderous ~ of her admirers = she appeared on stage to thunderous ~ from her admirers)

apple *n.* 1. to core; grate; peel an ~ 2. cooking; eating ~s 3. a baked; green; sour ~ 4. (misc.) a rotten ~ ("an undesirable person"); the ~ of smb.'s eye ("smb.'s favorite")

apple cart *n.* (colloq.) ["status quo"] to upset the ~

appliances *n.* ["devices"] domestic, household; electrical; kitchen; major; small ~ (see also **electrical appliance**)

applicable *adj.* 1. generally ~ 2. ~ to (~ to a case)

applicant *n.* 1. a successful ~ (the successful ~ will have had at least five years' experience) 2. an ~ for (an ~ for a position)

application *n.* ["request"] 1. to file; fill in (esp. BE), fill out (esp. AE); make, put in, send in, submit an ~ 2. to process; screen ~s 3. to reject, turn down an ~ 4. to withdraw an ~ 5. a fellowship; membership ~ 6. a formal; written ~ 7. an ~ for; to (an ~ for admission to a university) 8. an ~ to + inf. (he filed an ~ to be admitted to the university) 9. by; on ~ (the leaflet is available on ~ (to the appropriate address)) ["putting to use"] 10. ~ to (the ~ of theory to practice) ["placing"] 11. ~ to (the ~ of ointment to a rash)

application form *n.* 1. to fill in (esp. BE), to fill out (esp. AE), fill up (BE, obsol.) an ~ 2. to file, submit an ~

apply *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to request") to ~ for; to (we ~lied to the authorities for assistance; the captain ~lied to headquarters for a transfer; she ~lied for a fellowship) 2. (D; intr.) ("to seek admission to") to ~ to (she ~lied to three universities) 3. (D; intr.) ("to be relevant") to ~ in, to (the rule does not ~ to this case and the same ~lies in all other cases) 4. (D; refl.) ("to concentrate one's efforts") to ~ to (she ~lied herself to her new duties with great energy) 5. (D; tr.) ("to put on") to ~ to (to ~ paint to a surface; to ~ ointment to a rash) 6. (D; tr.) ("to put to use") to ~ to (to ~ theory to practice) 7. (d; tr.) ("to channel") to ~ towards (to ~ money towards a purchase) 8. (E) ("to request") he ~lied (to the university) to be admitted (to it)

appoint *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (we ~ed her as treasurer) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (we ~ed her to the committee) 3. (H) we ~ed her to serve as treasurer 4. (M and N; used with a noun) we ~ed her (to be) treasurer

appointment *n.* ["agreement to meet"] 1. a follow-up; outpatient ~ 2. to have; keep; give, make, schedule an ~ (with) (the hospital gave me a follow-up outpatient ~ with their cardiologist) 3. to break; cancel; miss an ~ 4. by ~ (she sees patients by ~ only) 5. an ~ to + inf. (she had an ~ to see the dean) ["selection"] 6. to confirm; make an ~ 7. to block an ~ 8. an ~ to (we announced her ~ to the committee) ["position"] 9. an ~ as 10. to offer an ~ (we offered her an ~ as treasurer) 11. to have, hold; receive an ~ 12. an interim; permanent; temporary ~ 13. a political ~ ["designation"] 14. by ~ to Her Majesty

apportion *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ among, between (the funds were ~ed among the various departments)

apposition *n.* (grammar) in ~ to (the second noun is in ~ to the first)

appraisal *n.* 1. to carry out, do, give, make a ~ of 2. a down-to-earth; fair; objective; realistic; thoroughgoing ~

appraise *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ at (the house was ~d at seventy thousand dollars)

appreciate *v.* ["to be grateful for smt."] 1. to ~ deeply, greatly, keenly, sincerely, very much 2. (K) we ~ your helping us 3. (misc.) we ~ the fact that you have helped us ["to understand"] 4. to ~ generally, widely; readily 5. (L) is it generally ~d that climate change is a serious problem? ["to increase"] 6. (D; intr.) to ~ by (to ~ by ten percent) 7. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in value)

appreciation *n.* ["gratitude"] 1. to demonstrate, display, show one's ~ for (let's show him our ~ with a round of applause!) 2. to express; feel ~ 3. deep, great, keen, sincere ~ 4. in ~ of (he did this in ~ of the help that he had received) 5. (misc.) to cultivate an ~ of art and music; as a token of my ~ ["understanding"] 6. general; growing; widespread ~ 7. ~ of (is there growing ~ of just how serious climate change really is?) 8. ~ that + clause (is there growing ~ that climate change is a serious problem?) ["increase"] 9. an ~ of 10. an ~ in (an ~ in value of ten percent)

appreciative *adj.* 1. deeply, greatly, keenly, sincerely, very ~ 2. ~ of (~ of help)

apprehension *n.* ["foreboding"]["fear"] 1. to express; feel; show ~ 2. to allay smb.'s ~(s) 3. grave; growing, increasing ~ 4. ~ about, at; for (we felt ~ for their safety) 5. (misc.) a feeling of ~; a state of ~

apprehensive *adj.* 1. ~ about; for (~ about recent developments; we were ~ for their safety) 2. ~ that + clause (we were ~ that they might be in danger)

apprentice I *n.* an ~ to (he was an ~ to a master craftsman)

apprentice II *v.* (B) at an early age, he was ~d to a master craftsman

apprenticeship *n.* to fill; have, serve an ~ (he served an ~ to a master craftsman)

apprise *v.* (formal) (d; tr.) to ~ of (he was ~d of the decision by his lawyer)

apprised *adj.* to keep smb. ~ of (he was kept ~ of the latest developments by his lawyer)

approach I *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. to take an ~ (to take a judicious ~ to a problem) 3. a creative, innovative; fresh, new, novel; holistic ~ 4. a careful, cautious; conservative; judicious ~ 5. a direct, forthright; down-to-earth, no-nonsense, pragmatic, realistic, straightforward ~ 6. an objective; rational; scholarly; scientific ~ 7. an easygoing; indirect ~ 8. a simplistic; unrealistic ~ 9. a hard-nosed, inflexible, uncompromising ~ 10. (applied linguistics) the audio-visual; oral-aural ~ 11. at, with the ~ (with the ~ of spring, we began to feel better; the gazelles ran away at the ~ of a lion) 12. an ~ from; to (I like her ~ to the problem; the ~es to a stadium; the pilot began her ~ to the runway)

approach II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ about (I was afraid to ~ them about this matter; she ~ed us about a loan) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she ~ed us for a loan) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from (to ~ from the other direction) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smb. with a request for a loan) 5. (H) she ~ed us to lend her some money = we were ~ed by her to lend her some money

appropriate II *v.* 1. (B) Congress ~d the funds to the states 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (the committee ~d money for the memorial)

appropriation *n.* 1. to make an ~ for (our government made an ~ for the project) 2. defense; foreign-aid ~s

approval *n.* 1. to give one's ~ for 2. to nod; show; voice one's ~ 3. to gain, get, meet with, receive, win; need, require ~ 4. complete, full, unqualified, wholehearted ~ 5. universal, widespread ~ 6. official; public; tacit ~ 7. limited, qualified ~ 8. final ~ 9. ~ for, of (we received their ~ for/of our research) 10. ~ to + inf. (we received their ~ to continue our research) 11. on ~ (we bought it on ~) 12. (misc.) a roar of ~; to get, receive smb.'s seal, stamp of ~ (see also *approval rating* at **rating**)

approve *v.* 1. to ~ wholeheartedly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ of (we ~d of his decision)

approximate *v.* (BE) (D; intr.) ("to come near") to ~ to (to ~ to the truth) USAGE NOTE: AE would have – *we approximated the truth.*

approximation *n.* to give, make a first, rough ~ (of, to)

apropos *adv.* ~ of (I have a couple of questions ~ of your last comment) USAGE NOTE: **Apropos** can also be a preposition – *I have a couple of questions apropos your last comment.*

apt *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (he is ~ to exaggerate)

aptitude *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show (an) ~ 2. (a) great, outstanding; inborn, innate, natural; special ~ 3. mechanical; scholastic ~ 4. an ~ for, in (an ~ for painting)

arbitrate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ among, between (to offer to ~ between the warring parties)

arbitration *n.* 1. to conduct; offer ~ 2. to go to; resort to ~ (the union and management went to ~; the dispute went to ~) 3. to take to ~ 4. binding; voluntary ~ 5. ~ between; of 6. (misc.) the dispute between the union and management was taken to ~ and settled by ~

arbitrator *n.* 1. to appoint an ~ 2. a government ~ 3. an ~ between

arcade *n.* an amusement (BE); penny; video-game ~

arch *n.* 1. a triumphal ~ 2. through, under an ~

architecture *n.* 1. classical; contemporary, modern ~ 2. Baroque; Byzantine; Colonial; Georgian; Gothic; Greek; Modern; Renaissance; Roman; Romanesque; vernacular ~

ardor, ardour *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display ~ 2. to cool, dampen smb.'s ~ 3. fervent, intense; patriotic ~ 4. ~ for

area *n.* ["space"] 1. to close off, rope off, seal off an ~ 2. a metropolitan, urban; rural ~ 3. a built-up; catchment; residential; surface; surrounding ~ 4. a no-smoking; service; storage ~ 5. a disaster; distressed ~ 6. an assembly, staging ~ 7. an impacted (AE) ("crowded with federal employees") ~ 8. (soccer) a penalty ~ 9. (meteorology) a high-pressure; low-pressure ~ 10. (misc.) a gray ("unclear") ~ 11. in; into an ~ (a city expanding into the surrounding ~) ["subject, field"] 12. a growth; controversial, problem ~ (AI is a big growth ~ at present; stem-cell research is a problem ~) 13. (misc.) an ~ of interest (my principal ~ of interest is AI)

arena *n.* 1. a sports ~ 2. the international; political ~ (to enter the political ~)

arguable *adj.* 1. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that some unemployment is necessary) 2. (misc.) it's ~ just how much unemployment is necessary

argue *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly, heatedly, passionately, strenuously, vehemently 2. to ~ calmly, logically, plausibly, sensibly 3. (D; intr.) to ~ about, over; with (we ~d with them about the new law) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ against; for, in favor of (to ~ against the amendment; to ~ for the new policy) 5. (d; tr.) to ~ out of (to ~ smb. out of doing smt.) 6. (L) she ~d logically that the new regulations would harm the poor 7. (misc.) to ~ from a position of strength

argument *n.* ["dispute"] 1. to get into, have; start an ~ 2. to lose; win an ~ 3. to break off, end, terminate an ~ 4. to clinch, settle an ~ 5. an angry, bitter, heated, loud, violent ~ 6. an animated, lively ~ 7. an ~ arises, breaks out 8. an ~ about, over; between; with (I had a bitter ~ with him about politics) ["statement"] 9. to drive home, press (home) an ~ 10. to offer, present, put forward an ~ 11. to confute, rebut, refute; reject an ~ 12. an airtight, balanced, brilliant, cogent, compelling, conclusive, convincing, irrefutable, logical, persuasive, powerful, rational, solid, sound, telling, trenchant, unassailable, valid ~ 13. a circular; convoluted ~ 14. a groundless; tenuous, weak ~ 15. a specious, spurious ~ 16. an ~ about, over; against; between; for (she presented a convincing ~ against the proposal) 17. an ~ that + clause (I cannot accept his ~ that war is inevitable) 18. (misc.) the point, thrust of an ~; (legal) to hear ~s (against; for)

arise *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from; out of (to ~ from a deep slumber; "I ~ from dreams of thee" – P.B. Shelley (1792–1822); a conflict ~ing from/out of a difference of opinion)

arithmetic *n.* to do ~

arm I *n.* ["upper limb"] 1. to bend; cross; fold; lift, raise; lower; straighten; stretch; swing; wave one's ~s 2. (misc.) to take smb. by the ~; to fling/put/throw one's ~s around smb.; to carry smt. under one's ~; to greet smb. with open/outstretched

~s; to hold smb./smt. in one's ~s; to walk ~ in ~ with; with ~s akimbo; to take smb. in one's ~s (I took her in my ~s and kissed her) 3. on the ~ (she touched him on the ~; the sun shone on her bare ~s) ["power"] 4. the long ~ of the law ["division"] 5. our naval air ~ ["attachment"] 6. a pickup, tone ~ ["misc."] 7. to greet/welcome smb. with open ~s ("to give smb. an enthusiastic welcome"); to keep smb. at ~'s length ("to keep smb. at bay"); to twist smb.'s ~ ("to exert pressure on smb.") (see also **arms**)

arm II *v.* 1. (D; intr., refl., tr.) to ~ against (to ~ against a potential enemy) 2. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ with (they ~ed the peasants with rifles)

armed *adj.* 1. ~ to the teeth 2. (misc.) ~ and dangerous

armistice *n.* 1. to agree on, work out; declare; sign an ~ 2. to violate an ~ 3. to suspend an ~ 4. an ~ between

armor, armour *n.* 1. heavy; light ~ 2. (misc.) to pierce ~

arms *n.* ["weapons"] 1. to bear; take up ~ 2. to call to ~ 3. (mil.) inspection; left shoulder; order; port; present; right shoulder; trail ~! 4. to lay down one's ~ 5. small ~ 6. under ~ ("armed") ["misc."] 7. up in ~ (about, over; against) ("stirred up") (see also **arm**; **coat of arms**)

arms race *n.* 1. to accelerate, step up the ~ 2. to curb the ~ 3. the nuclear ~ 4. the ~ is accelerating, heating up, hotting up

army *n.* 1. to command, lead; drill, train; rally an ~ 2. to mobilize, raise, recruit an ~ 3. to equip, supply an ~ 4. to array, commit, deploy, field; concentrate, mass an ~ 5. to inspect, muster, review an ~ 6. to encircle, envelop, surround; outfight; outflank; outmaneuver; overrun; surprise an ~ 7. to crush, decimate, defeat, rout an ~; to put an ~ to flight 8. to demobilize, disband an ~ 9. a rebel; regular, standing; territorial; volunteer ~ 10. an advancing; conquering; defeated; occupying; retreating; victorious ~ 11. an ~ advances; attacks; conducts war, engages in combat, fights; pulls back, retreats, withdraws 12. (misc.) an ~ of occupation; to join the ~ 13. in the ~ (you're in the ~ now!)

aroma *n.* 1. to give off; have an ~ 2. a delicate, delightful, fragrant, pleasant, pleasing; pungent; faint; tantalizing ~ 3. to smell an ~ 4. an ~ emanates from 5. (misc.) a pleasant ~ wafted in from the kitchen

around *adv.* 1. ~ here 2. to have been ~ ("to have had considerable experience")

arouse *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ smb. from a deep sleep)

aroused *adj.* easily; sexually ~

arraign *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ on (a certain charge)

arraignment *n.* 1. (legal) to hold an ~ for 2. a public ~

arrange *v.* 1. to ~ neatly; tastefully 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ for a series of lectures (to be given); we ~d for him to give a series of lectures) 3. (E) we ~d to meet early 4. (L) we ~d that he should give a series of lectures 5. (Q) we ~d where we should meet; we ~d where to meet

arrangement *n.* 1. to come to, make, work out; have an ~ (with) 2. to handle (the) ~s 3. a floral, flower; seating; working ~ 4. an ~ for; with 5. an ~ to + inf. (we made an ~/~s to meet secretly; we made ~s with the university for him to give a series of lectures there) 6. by ~ (by special ~) 7. under an ~ (under a special ~) 8. (misc.) to make the ~s (don't worry: she's already made all the ~s!); an ~ whereby (I have an ~ with them whereby I can cash checks there)

array I *n.* ["order"] 1. in battle ~; drawn up in full ~ ["display"] 2. a bewildering; dazzling, glittering; imposing, impressive; vast ~

array II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ against (~ed against the enemy)

arrears *n.* in ~ (he is more than a month in ~ with his rent to the tune of $500; he is $500 in ~ with his rent)

arrest I *n.* ["detention"] 1. to make an ~ 2. to resist ~ 3. a citizen's; false ~ 4. an ~ for (to make an ~ for murder) 5. an ~ on a charge/(esp. AE) charges of (to make an ~ on a charge of murder) 6. under ~ (to be under ~; to place/put smb. under ~ (for murder)) (see also **house arrest**) ["stoppage"] 7. (a) cardiac ~

arrest II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (the police ~ed her for murder) 2. (misc.) to ~ on a charge of, on charges of (esp. AE) (she was ~ed on charges of murder)

arrest warrant *n.* (AE) to issue an ~

arrival *n.* 1. an early; late ~ 2. an ~ at, in; from 3. on; with smb.'s ~ (on our ~ in Chicago we were met by friends; with the ~ of our friends all our problems were solved) 4. (misc.) to announce an ~ (as at an airport)

arrive *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at, in; from (they ~d from Paris) 2. (s) they ~d exhausted; in good spirits; refreshed; safe and sound 3. (misc.) to ~ early; late; on time

arrogance *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, exhibit ~ 2. insufferable, overpowering, overwhelming, unbelievable ~ 3. ~ towards 4. the ~ to + inf. (he actually had the ~ to ask for more money!)

arrogant *adj.* 1. ~ towards 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for/of him to ask for more money = he was ~ to ask for more money)

arrogate *v.* (formal) (B) to ~ a privilege to oneself

arrow *n.* 1. to aim; shoot an ~ at 2. a poisoned; spent ~ 3. (misc.) as straight as an ~

arson *n.* to commit ~

art *n.* 1. to master; practice an ~ (to practice the occult ~ of the alchemist; to master the ~ of making a good omelet) 2. abstract; classical; contemporary; folk; impressionist; modern; primitive; pop; surrealist(ic) ~ 3. commercial ~ 4. an ~ in, to (there is an ~ to making a good omelet) 5. a work of ~ 6. (misc.) to exhibit, hang; produce works of ~; the fine ~ of (to master the fine ~ of keeping friends) (see also **arts**; *state of the art* at **state I** *n.*)

artefacts (BE) see **artifacts**

artery *n.* ["blood vessel"] 1. a blocked, occluded; ruptured ~ 2. a coronary; main; pulmonary ~ 3. (misc.) hardening of the ~ries ["channel"] 4. a major; traffic ~

arthritis *n.* to develop ~

article I *n.* ["essay"] 1. to submit; write an ~ 2. to accept; commission; feature; publish, run; referee; reject an ~ 3. a journal; leading (BE, old-fashioned = leader, editorial); magazine; newspaper; op-ed ~ 4. in an ~ 5. an ~ about, on (she wrote an ~ about her research) 6. an ~ appears, comes out (in) (the ~ came out in *The New Yorker*) 7. a series of ~s ["section"] 8. according to, under an ~ (according to ~ two of our constitution) ["object"] 9. household; secondhand; toilet ~s 10. (misc.) ~s of clothing; ~s of furniture ["in grammar"] 11. to require, take an ~ (certain nouns always take the definite ~) 12. the definite; indefinite ~

article II *v.* (BE) (d; tr.) ("to apprentice") to ~ to, with (to ~ smb. to a firm of solicitors)

articulate *v.* 1. ("to pronounce") ~ clearly 2. (d; intr.) ("to fit together") to ~ with (these bones ~ with each other)

artifacts, artefacts *n.* ancient; cultural ~

artillery *n.* antiaircraft; coast; field; heavy; light; long-range; medium; self-propelled ~

artist *n.* 1. a gifted, great, talented; struggling; well-known ~ 2. a commercial; folk ~ 3. a graffiti; pavement (BE), sidewalk (AE) ~ 4. a con, flimflam, rip-off, scam; escape; quick-change ~ 5. (misc.) an ~ in residence; an exhibition featuring well-known ~s

artistry *n.* brilliant ~

arts *n.* 1. (the) creative; fine; visual ~ 2. (the) decorative; graphic; plastic ~ 3. (the) applied; industrial ~ 4. the healing ~ 5. (the) liberal ~ 6. (the) martial ~ 7. the performing ~ (the High School for the Performing ~ in New York City) 8. (misc.) ~ and crafts; ~ and sciences

ascend *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from; to

ascendancy *n.* 1. to attain, gain ~ over 2. (a) clear-cut; overwhelming ~

ascendant *n.* in the ~ (which faction is in the ~?)

ascent *n.* 1. to make an ~ (to make the ~ of a mountain) 2. a gentle, gradual ~ 3. a steep ~ 4. an ~ from; to

ascertain *v.* 1. (L) she ~ed that fraud had been committed 2. (Q) can she ~ when the fraud was committed?

asceticism *n.* to practice ~

ascribe *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ to (we ~ this saying to Shakespeare; they ~d their success to hard work)

ash *n.* volcanic ~ (see also **ashes**)

ashamed *adj.* 1. deeply, thoroughly ~ 2. ~ about, of (she was ~ about her mistake; she was ~ of herself for having made a mistake) 3. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to admit her mistake) 4. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that she'd made a mistake)

ashes *n.* 1. to rake; scatter, sprinkle, spread ~ (they scattered/sprinkled her ~ in the sea) 2. to reduce to ~ (see also *rise from the ashes* at **rise II** 6)

ashore *adv.* 1. to put, set ~ 2. to come; go ~

aside *adv.* 1. to move; stand; step ~ 2. to brush; draw, take; leave; push, shove; put set, sweep ~ 3. (AE) ~ from ("apart from")

asinine *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was (of them) ~ to behave like that)

ask *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) ("to inquire") to ~ about, after (BE) (they ~ed me about my work; he ~ed about/after her mother) 2. (d; intr., tr.) ("to request") to ~ for (she ~ed me nicely/politely for the book; the guest ~ed for the manager) 3. (D; tr.) ("to request") to ~ smt. of (I have a favor to ~ of you; he is ~ing a great deal of us; working so hard so long is ~ing a lot of us!) 4. (D; tr.) ("to invite") to ~ to (we ~ed them to lunch) 5. (E) ("to request") she ~ed to be excused; we ~ed to see him 6. (H) ("to request") she ~ed us to come to lunch = we were ~ed to come to lunch 7. (L; subj.) ("to request") the family ~ed that the story not be/should not be printed 8. (O; can be used with one object) ("to pose") he ~ed (her) a question (also possible is: he ~ed a question of her) 9. (Q; may have an object) ("to inquire of") he ~ed (his son) point-blank where he was going; she ~ed wistfully how she might help 10. (misc.) to ~ for trouble (wearing those outlandish clothes here is simply ~ing for trouble!); to get ~ed (do beautiful women get ~ed their age a lot?); to mind ~ing (how old are you – if you don't mind me/my ~ing?)

askance *adv.* to look ~ at

asking *n.* (colloq.) for the ~ (it's yours for the ~)

ask out *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ask smb. out to lunch)

asleep *adj.* 1. to be deeply, fast, sound ~ 2. to fall ~ 3. (misc.) ~ at the switch ("negligent, not alert")

aspect *n.* ["view"] ["side"] 1. a frightening; grim; humorous; serious ~ (the humorous ~ of the situation) 2. to assume, take on an ~ (the situation is starting to take on a distinctly humorous ~) 3. from an ~ (from this ~) 4. in an ~ (in all ~s) ["in grammar"] 5. the imperfective; perfective ~ 6. in an ~ (a verb in the perfective ~)

aspersion *n.* to cast ~s on

aspirant *n.* an ~ for; to (an ~ to the throne)

aspiration *n.* (formal) 1. high, lofty, noble ~s 2. an ~ to (~s to independence) 3. to achieve, realize one's ~; to have ~s 4. ~ to + inf. (she has ~s to study medicine: will she achieve her ~s?)

aspire *v.* (formal) 1. (d; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to a career in medicine) 2. (E) she ~s to study medicine

aspirin *n.* 1. to take (an) ~ 2. (misc.) an ~ tablet (he took two ~ tablets; or: he took two ~s) 3. a dose of ~ (what's the maximum recommended dose of ~ for a headache?)

ass *n.* ["fool"] 1. a pompous; stupid ~ 2. to make an

~ of oneself ["donkey"] 3. ~es bray, go heehaw, heehaw

assail *v.* (formal) 1. to ~ bitterly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smb. with questions)

assassin *n.* a hired, paid ~

assassination *n.* 1. to attempt; carry out an ~ 2. character; a political ~

assault *n.* 1. (often mil.) to carry out, launch, make; lead an ~ (against, on) (the enemy carried out an ~ on our position) 2. to come under ~ (our position came under enemy ~) 3. (legal) to commit (an) ~ (when did the assailant commit the ~?) 4. (usu. legal) aggravated; bodily; criminal; indecent, sexual; violent ~ 5. an all-out; armed; military ~ 6. (usu. mil.) by ~ (the enemy took our position by ~) 7. (misc.) (legal) ~ and battery (to commit ~ and battery) 8. (misc.) a series of ~s; an ~ happens, occurs, takes place (when did the ~ occur?)

assembly *n.* 1. to elect; convene; dismiss, dissolve an ~ 2. a constituent; constitutional; deliberative; general; legislative; national; public ~ 3. the Northern Ireland; Welsh ~ 4. an ~ meets, sits 5. (misc.) (the) freedom, the right of ~; unlawful ~ 6. (at a school) (we met at/during ~)

assent I *n.* 1. to give; nod one's; refuse, withhold one's ~ to (she gave her ~ to our plan) 2. by common ~ 3. (BE) (the) royal ~ (the bill has received the royal ~ and will now become law)

assent II *v.* (formal) (D; intr.) to ~ to (we ~ed to his proposal)

assert *v.* 1. to ~ boldly (she ~ed her innocence boldly) 2. (L) she ~ed that she was innocent

assertion *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. to deny, reject; rebut, refute an ~ 3. a bold; sweeping; unfounded, unsubstantiated ~ 4. an ~ about; of (we do not believe her repeated ~s of innocence) 5. an ~ that + clause (we do not believe her ~ that she is innocent)

assess *v.* 1. to ~ carefully (she ~ed the situation carefully) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ at (the value of this property was ~ed at one million dollars)

assessment *n.* 1. to carry out, do, make an ~ (she made a careful ~ of the situation) 2. a careful, critical; preliminary; realistic ~ 3. a risk; tax ~

asset *n.* 1. an invaluable, valuable ~ 2. an economic natural; political ~ 3. an ~ to (she was an invaluable ~ to our firm)

assets *n.* 1. to freeze; have; realize; release, unfreeze ~ 2. to mortgage one's ~ 3. to confiscate smb.'s ~ 4. capital; current; financial; fixed; frozen; hidden; intangible; liquid; personal; tangible; toxic ~ 5. ~ amounting to, of (to have ~ amounting to at least one million dollars) 6. (misc.) ~ and liabilities

asseverate *v.* (formal and rare) 1. to ~ boldly 2. (L) she ~ed that she was innocent

assign *v.* 1. (A) they ~ed a very difficult mission to us; or: they ~ed us a very difficult mission 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (headquarters ~ed the soldiers to a different unit; an experienced detective was ~ed to the case; to ~ a painting to a certain century) 3. (esp. BE) (H) we were ~ed to prepare a meal

assignation *n.* (formal) 1. to keep, make an ~ 2. an ~ with

assignment *n.* ["task"]["mission"] 1. to give smb. an ~ 2. to accept, take on; refuse an ~ 3. to carry out, complete an ~ (the ambassador carried out her ~ brilliantly) 4. a dangerous; difficult, rough, tough ~ 5. an easy ~ 6. an overseas ~ 7. a rush; special ~ 8. an ~ to + inf. (an ~ to guard the president) 9. on ~ ("on a mission") (the correspondent was on ~ in the Far East) ["homework"] (esp. AE) 10. to give, hand out an ~ 11. to do; hand in an ~ (the pupils did their ~(s)) 12. a difficult; easy ~ 13. an ~ about, on ["appointment"] (esp. AE) 14. an ~ to (an ~ to a new job)

assimilate *v.* 1. to ~ completely, fully; easily, readily; rapidly 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ into, to (the newcomers tried to ~ into the American way of life; America has ~d millions of immigrants into its way of life) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (some newcomers did not ~ with the local population)

assimilation *n.* ~ into, to (the immigrants' ~ into the American way of life was swift)

assist I *n.* (colloq.) with an ~ from

assist II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ at, in, with (the young nurse was ~ing at his first operation; we ~ed them in their work; she ~ed me with the translation) 2. (formal, rare) (H) to ~ smb. to do smt. (we ~ed them to do their work; she ~ed us to move the furniture)

assistance *n.* 1. to extend, give, offer, provide, render ~ 2. considerable, great, invaluable ~ 3. clerical; legal; technical ~ 4. economic, financial; material; public ~ 5. (AE) directory ~ (BE has *directory enquiries*) 6. ~ in (they received ~ in launching the project) 7. ~ for; from; to (economic ~ to/for developing countries from an unlikely source) 8. of ~ (he was of considerable ~ to us) 9. with; without (smb.'s) ~ (the project was completed without their ~; my translation was completed with her assistance)

assistant *n.* 1. a personal ~ (BE; AE has *personal secretary*) 2. a research; teaching ~ 3. a sales, shop ~ (BE) (AE has *salesclerk*) 4. an ~ to (an ~ to the president)

associate I *n.* 1. a business ~ 2. a close ~ 3. (AE) an Associate in/of Arts

associate II *v.* 1. to ~ closely; loosely 2. (d; intr., refl., tr.) to ~ with (we ~ with all sorts of people; one usually ~s poverty with misery; I ~ myself with their policies)

association *n.* ["organization"] 1. to form; disband, dissolve an ~ 2. a bar ~ (AE; BE has *law society*) 3. a building and loan ~/savings and loan ~ (AE; BE has *building society*) 4. a parent-teacher ~ 5. an ~ meets (the ~ meets here every Thursday) ["connection"] 6. a close; loose ~ 7. an ~ between; of; with (an ~ between poverty and misery = an ~ of poverty with misery) 8. in ~ with ["connection in the mind"] 9. to bring up, call up, evoke an ~ 10. free ~

assortment *n.* an odd; rich; wide ~ (of)

assume *v.* 1. to ~ automatically, naturally; erroneously, mistakenly 2. (L) after the accident we naturally ~d (that) he was dead 3. (M) after the accident we naturally ~d him to be dead 4. (misc.) let's ~ (let's ~ – just for the sake of argument – that he's dead)

assumed *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (after the accident he was naturally ~ to be dead)

assumption *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. to base an ~ on 3. an erroneous, false mistaken; questionable ~ 4. an automatic, natural; key; reasonable; safe; valid ~ 5. (an) implicit, unspoken; mere; pure ~ 6. an ~ about; of (to make an ~ of guilt) 7. an ~ that + clause (after the accident we all made the natural ~ that he was dead) 8. on an ~ (after the accident we proceeded on the natural ~ that he was dead) 9. an ~ underlies (to challenge smb.'s underlying ~s)

assurance *n.* 1. to give an ~ that + clause (the contractor gave every ~ that the work would be completed on time) 2. (BE) endowment; life ~ (see the Usage Note for **insurance**) 3. categorical, complete, every, unconditional ~

assurances *n.* 1. to give, provide ~ of (the contractor gave ~s of the work's completion on time) 2. ~ that + clause (the contractor gave ~ that the work would be completed on time)

assure *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ about, of (the contractor assured us of the work's completion on time) 2. (L; must have an object) (the contractor assured us that the work would be completed on time) 3. let me ~ you (despite all rumors to the contrary, let me ~ you that he's not dead)

assured *adj.* 1. to rest ~ of (you can rest ~ of the work's completion on time) 2. to rest ~ that + clause (you can rest ~ that the work will be completed on time)

astonish *v.* 1. to ~ greatly, very much 2. (R) it ~ed us (to learn) that he had escaped

astonished *adj.* 1. greatly, very (much) ~ 2. ~ at, by (we were ~ at/by the news of his escape) 3. ~ + inf. (we were ~ to learn of his escape) 4. ~ that + clause (we were ~ that he had escaped)

astonishing *adj.* 1. simply ~ 2. ~ to 3. ~ to + inf. (it was (to us) ~ to learn that he had escaped) 4. ~ that + clause (it was ~ (to us) that he had/should have escaped)

astonishment *n.* 1. to express ~ 2. ~ at (we could not conceal our ~ at the news that he had escaped) 3. ~ that + clause (we expressed ~ that he had escaped) 4. in ~ (we gaped/gasped in ~) 5. to smb.'s ~ (to our ~, he managed to escape)

astound *v.* (R) it ~ed us (to learn) that he had/should have escaped

astounded *adj.* 1. ~ at, by (we were ~ at/by the news of his escape) 2. ~ + inf. (we were ~ to learn of his escape) 3. ~ that + clause (we were ~ that he had/should have escaped)

astounding *adj.* 1. simply ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (her performance was ~ to watch) 3. ~ that + clause (it was simply ~ that he had/should have escaped)

astray *adv.* 1. to lead smb. ~ 2. to go ~

astride *prep.* (formal) to sit ~ (to sit ~ smb.'s knee; to sit ~ a horse or ride sidesaddle)

astute *adj.* (formal) 1. very ~ 2. ~ at (~ at conducting negotiations) 3. ~ to + inf. (it was very ~ of you to notice that = you were very ~ to notice that)

asunder *adv.* (formal) to rend, tear ~

asylum *n.* 1. to give, grant, offer, provide ~ to 2. to ask for, request, seek; find, receive ~ 3. to deny, refuse smb. ~ 4. political ~ (they were granted political ~) 5. ~ for 6. ~ from (they requested ~ from the dictatorship for themselves and their children) (see also *asylum-seeker* at **seeker**)

athlete *n.* an all-around (AE), all-round; amateur; born, natural; professional; weekend; world-class ~

athletics *n.* 1. (esp. BE; AE has *track and field*) to go in for ~ 2. (esp. in the USA) intercollegiate ~ 3. in ~ (to win first prize in ~)

atlas *n.* 1. a dialect, linguistic; geographical; world ~ 2. to look smt. up in an ~

atmosphere n 1. to clear, improve the ~ 2. to poison, pollute the ~ 3. a congenial, convivial; cozy; friendly; informal, relaxed; pleasant ~ 4. a carnival; heady ~ 5. a romantic ~ 6. a formal ~ 7. a gloomy; heavy, highly charged; stifling, stultifying; tense; unpleasant ~ 8. a polluted; rarefied ~ 9. the upper ~ 10. (misc.) that restaurant has lots of ~

atom *n.* to split the ~

atone *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ by, with; for (to ~ for one's sins by doing penance)

atonement *n.* 1. to make ~ for (to make ~ for one's sins by doing penance) 2. (misc.) a day of ~

atrocity *n.* 1. to commit an ~ 2. a dreadful, grisly, gruesome, heinous, horrible, horrid, monstrous, revolting, vile ~ 3. death-camp; wartime atrocities 4. an ~ against (to commit atrocities against non-combatants)

attach *v.* 1. to ~ securely (d; refl.) ("to join") to ~ to (she ~ed herself to our group) 2. (D; tr.) ("to fasten") to ~ to (she ~ed an aerial/antenna to the radio; a tag was ~ed to each article) 3. (d; tr.) ("to assign temporarily") to ~ to (the officer was ~ed to headquarters) 4. (d; tr.) ("to ascribe") to ~ to (we ~ed no significance to her statement)

attaché *n.* an air-force; commercial; cultural; military; naval; press ~

attached *adj.* 1. deeply, strongly; very (much) ~ 2. loosely; securely 3. ~ to

attachment *n.* 1. to feel; form an ~ 2. a close; deep; strong ~ 3. a lasting; lifelong ~ 4. a sentimental ~ 5. an E-mail ~ 6. an ~ to (to form a lasting ~ to smb.) 7. (BE) on ~ to ("assigned to")

attack I *n.* ["assault"] (usu. mil.; also fig.) 1. to carry out, make; launch, mount, unleash; lead, spearhead; press an ~ 2. to provoke an ~ 3. to come under ~ 4. to survive, withstand an ~ 5. to blunt, break up, repel, repulse; resist an ~ 6. an all-out, concerted, full-scale; coordinated; major ~ 7. a pre-emptive; retaliatory ~ 8. a mock; sneak, surprise; unprovoked ~ 9. an air; seaborne ~ 10. an enemy; terrorist ~ 11. a flank; frontal ~ 12. a nuclear; torpedo ~ 13. an ~ occurs, takes place; succeeds 14. an ~ fails; fizzles out 15. an ~ against, on (the enemy launched an all-out ~ against our forces) 16. under ~ ["a belligerent action"] (often verbal) 17. to launch; make an ~ 18. a physical; verbal ~ 19. a bitter, blistering, brutal, concerted, savage, scathing, sharp, vehement, vicious, violent; scurrilous; unprovoked; wanton ~ 20. an ~ on (he made a blistering ~ on his opponent) 21. (misc.) the leaked document left us open to ~ ["onset of an ailment"] 22. to have an ~ (she had an ~ of hiccups) 23. an acute; fatal; light, slight; recurrent; sudden ~ 24. (misc.) a series of ~s (see also **heart attack**)

attack II *v.* 1. to ~ brutally, savagely, viciously; physically 2. (D; tr.) to ~ because of, for; with (the burglar attacked me with a knife; he ~ed his opponent because of her failure to oppose the war)

attempt I *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. to foil, thwart an ~ 3. an all-out, concerted, last-ditch; brave, valiant; deliberate ~ 4. a successful ~ 5. a blatant; bold, brazen, daring ~ 6. a botched; clumsy; crude; feeble, halfhearted, weak; premature ~ 7. an abortive, fruitless, futile, vain; ill-fated, unsuccessful; misguided ~ 8. repeated ~s 9. a rescue; suicide ~ 10. an ~ against, on (an ~ on smb.'s life) 11. an ~ at (an ~ at being funny) 12. an ~ to + inf. (she made an ~ to find a job) 13. in an ~ (in our ~ to finish the job quickly, we ran out of supplies)

attempt II *v.* 1. (E) she ~ed to find a job 2. (rare) (G) he ~ed walking 3. (misc.) to ~ smt. successfully; in vain

attend *v.* 1. (BE) (d; intr.) to ~ on (two nurses ~ed on the patient) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to one's duties; to ~ to a customer)

attendance *n.* ["people present"] ["number of people present"] 1. to check (the) ~; to take (the) ~ (in school) 2. average; daily ~ 3. decreasing, falling, plummeting; low, poor; increasing, rising ~ 4. perfect; regular ~ 5. ~ has gone up, risen; ~ has dropped, fallen, gone down, plummeted ["presence"] 6. ~ at (~ at a ceremony) 7. in ~ (a nurse was in ~) ["misc."] 8. to dance ~ on smb. ("to fawn over smb.")

attendant I *adj.* (formal) (cannot stand alone) ~ on (the problems ~ on growing up)

attendant II *n.* 1. a flight; wedding ~ 2. an ~ to

attention *n.* ["concentration"] ["notice"] 1. to attract, capture, catch, command, draw, get, grab smb.'s ~ 2. to have, hold, retain smb.'s ~ 3. to call, draw smb.'s ~ to 4. to devote one's ~ to; to concentrate, confine, focus (one's) ~ on; to give one's ~ to; to pay ~ (to); to turn one's ~ to 5. to bring smt. to smb.'s ~ 6. to distract, divert smb.'s ~ 7. to escape smb.'s ~ 8. close; meticulous; minute; rapt; studious; undivided ~ (this matter will require your undivided ~) 9. ~ to (meticulous ~ to detail) 10. for, to smb.'s ~ (this package was left here for your ~) 11. (misc.) she gave the matter her undivided ~; it came to/did not escape my ~ that she was very ill; they were the center of ~; smb.'s ~ may wander ["position of attention"] (usu. mil.) 12. to call smb. to ~ (the sergeant called his platoon to ~); to come to, snap to ~; to stand at ~; or: to stand at the position of ~; or: (BE) to stand to ~ ["care"] 13. to give ~ to; to lavish ~ on 14. medical ~ (to receive medical ~) 15. individual; personal ~ (the manager gave me her personal ~; I lavished my individual ~ on him)

attentive *adj.* ~ to (~ to our needs)

attest *v.* (formal) (d; intr.) to ~ to (several witnesses can ~ to her good character)

attire *n.* (formal) 1. casual; civilian; formal ~ 2. in ~ (dressed in formal ~)

attitude *n.* 1. to adopt, assume, strike, take; have an ~ 2. to change an ~ 3. a cheerful; conciliatory; constructive; current, prevailing, widespread; flexible; friendly; positive; realistic ~ 4. a respectful; reverent ~ 5. a casual; devil-may-care; frivolous; hands-off; irreverent; nonchalant; wait-and-see ~ 6. a conservative; liberal ~ 7. a cavalier; condescending, patronizing; holier-than-thou ~ 8. a bad, belligerent, defiant, surly; disrespectful; hostile; inflexible, rigid, uncompromising; negative; scornful ~ 9. an ~ about; of; to, towards (to assume an ~ of defiance towards all authority) 10. an ~ that + clause (I didn't like his ~ that he deserves special treatment)

attorney *n.* (esp. AE) 1. to hire, retain an ~ 2. a defense; district (AE; BE has *public prosecutor*); prosecuting ~ 3. an attorney-at-law 4. (CE) an Attorney General (see also **power of attorney**)

attract *v.* 1. to ~ irresistibly, strongly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (a crowd was ~ed to the scene of the accident)

attracted *adj.* 1. irresistibly, strongly, very ~ 2. ~ to (he was very ~ to her)

attraction *n.* ["charm"] 1. to feel an ~ to 2. to hold an ~ for 3. a fatal; irresistible, strong; physical, sexual ~ (he felt a strong ~ to her) ["something that attracts"] 4. a box-office; chief, main, major; public; scenic; tourist ~ 5. (misc.) an added ~; the center of ~

attractive *adj.* 1. physically; sexually; very ~ 2. ~ to (the offer is very ~ to us)

attributable *adj.* 1. generally, usually 2. ~ to (their success is ~ to hard work)

attribute *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ to (we ~ this saying to Shakespeare; they ~d their success to hard work)

attrition *n.* 1. a rate of ~ 2. by, through ~ (the staff will be reduced by (natural) ~) 3. (misc.) a war of ~

attune *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ to (you will have to ~ your ears to this type of music)

atypical *adj.* ~ of (such behavior was ~ of him)

auction *n.* 1. to have, hold an ~ 2. an ~ takes place 3. to put smt. up for ~ (items that were put up for ~) 4. a public ~ 5. at (an) ~; by ~ (we bought these items at an ~; they sold those items by ~)

audacious *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to ask for an increase in salary = he was ~ enough to ask for an increase in salary)

audacity *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show ~ (he displayed ~ by asking for an increase in salary) 2. sheer ~ 3. the ~ to + inf. (he had the ~ to ask for an increase in salary)

audible *adj.* 1. barely, hardly, scarcely; perfectly ~ 2. ~ above, over; to (his voice was barely ~ to us above the din)

audience *n.* ["interview"] 1. to give, grant an ~ 2. to have, receive an ~ (with) 3. to seek an ~ with 4. a private ~ (with) 5. at an ~ ["group of spectators or listeners"] 6. to attract, draw an ~ 7. to captivate, electrify, grip, move, stir, sway, turn on an ~ (to electrify an ~ = to turn on an ~ = to turn an ~ on) 8. an appreciative, attentive, enthusiastic, receptive, responsive; friendly; sympathetic ~ 9. a cold, passive, unresponsive; hostile; unsympathetic ~ 10. a capacity; large, wide; mass; standing-room-only ~ 11. a captive; select; target ~ 12. a live; studio ~ 13. an ~ applauds, cheers, claps 14. an ~ boos, hisses, hoots, jeers 15. before, in front of an ~ (a program recorded before a studio ~) 16. (misc.) the speaker was being heckled so she turned on the ~ ("she attacked the audience") USAGE NOTE: In formal BE one can have *an ~ of the Queen*; in AE and ordinary BE one has *an ~ with the Queen*: "I sought an ~ of the King this evening…and tendered to him my resignation…" – Neville Chamberlain (May 10, 1940), quoted in Nicholson Baker, *Human Smoke* (2008, p. 175)

audit *n.* 1. to carry out, conduct an ~ 2. an annual, yearly; external; internal; tax ~

audition I *n.* 1. to give smb. an ~ 2. to have, hold ~s 3. to get, have an ~ 4. an ~ for; with (she had an ~ with the Royal Shakespeare Company for the part/role of Juliet = the RSC gave her an ~ for the part/role of Juliet)

audition II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (she ~ed for the part/role of Juliet; they ~ed her for the part/role of Juliet) 2. (E) she ~ed to play Juliet

auditorium *n.* 1. a main ~ 2. to fill, pack an ~ (a pianist like her can easily pack even the largest ~) 3. to empty an ~ 4. an ~ empties; fills 5. an ~ holds, seats (the ~ seats 700 people = it's a 700-seater ~) 6. in, into an ~ (700 people can fit into the ~)

augur *v.* (P) (formal) to ~ ill; well this success ~s well for the future

aunt *n.* a great ~

aura *n.* 1. to have an ~ about 2. a glittering ~ (of) (a charismatic politician with a glittering ~ of success about her)

auspices *n.* under the ~ of smt. (under the ~ of the mayor's office)

austerity *n.* 1. to practice ~ 2. strict; wartime ~ USAGE NOTE: One can also say, in reference to religious discipline, *to practice austerities*.

authenticate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ as (the painting was ~ed as genuine)

authenticity *n.* 1. to establish, prove; vouch for the ~ of smt. (tests established the ~ of the painting) 2. to doubt, question the ~ of smt.

author *n.* 1. to read an ~ (Dickens is a much-loved ~ whom nearly everyone claims to have read) 2. an anonymous; beginning; best-selling; classic; contemporary; established, famous, noted, prize-winning, recognized, well-known; much-loved; prolific; rising; talented; young; unpublished ~ 3. an ~ writes (an ~ of children's books who has written several)

authorities *n.* ["officials"] civil, civilian; government; local; military; occupation ~

authority *n.* ["control"] ["power"] 1. to assert, demonstrate, show; assume; establish; delegate; exercise, exert, use, wield; have; invoke ~ 2. to give up, relinquish, yield ~ 3. to challenge, defy; deny, reject; rebel against; undermine; usurp ~ 4. absolute, complete, full, supreme, unquestioned ~ 5. parental ~ 6. ~ for; over (he assumed ~ for overseas operations; a commanding officer has complete ~ over her personnel) 7. in; with; without ~ (who was in ~?) 8. of ~ (a figure, man, woman of ~; there was an air of ~ about her) 9. under smb.'s ~ (these employees are under my ~) ["legal power"] ["authorization"] 10. to abuse, overstep one's ~ 11. legal; ministerial; presidential; reviewing (mil.); royal ~ 12. by, on smb.'s ~ ("by whose ~ were these funds spent?" "she did it on her own ~") 13. the ~ to + inf. (the police had the ~ to conduct a search; a commanding officer with the ~ to send troops into battle) 14. (misc.) a position of ~ (I am in a position of ~ over these employees) ["expert"] ["source"] 15. to cite, invoke an ~ 16. an acknowledged; appropriate, competent, reliable; indisputable, irrefutable, unimpeachable, unquestioned; leading, respected, world ~; the greatest living ~ 17. an ~ on (an outstanding ~ on chess) 18. on ~ (to have smt. on good ~; we have it on the highest ~ that the meeting has been cancelled) ["government office"] 19. health; local authorities; an airport; a port ~; school authorities

authorization *n.* 1. to give, grant ~ 2. to receive ~ 3. to revoke smb.'s ~ 4. official ~ 5. ~ for; from 6. (the) ~ to + inf. (we received ~ from the local authorities to begin demolition) 7. with; without ~

authorize *v.* 1. (H) the director ~d him to enter the vault 2. (K) the director ~d his entering the vault

authorized *adj.* 1. (usu. does not stand alone) ~ to + inf. (he is not ~ to enter the vault)

authorship *n.* to dispute; establish ~ (to establish the ~ of an ancient manuscript)

automate *v.* to ~ fully

automatic *adj.* fully ~

automatic pilot *n.* 1. to engage, switch on; disengage, switch off the ~ 2. on ~

automobile *n.* (AE) to drive, operate; park an ~ (see **car** 2–11)

autonomy *n.* 1. to grant ~ 2. to enjoy, have ~ 3. to seek ~ 4. full; local ~

autopsy *n.* to do, perform an ~ (on)

autumn *n.* 1. early; last; late; mid-; next ~ 2. during the, in (the) ~ (we met late in the ~ of 1995 = we met in the late ~ of 1995) 3. (misc.) there is a touch of ~ in the air; a harbinger of ~ (see also *autumn equinox, autumnal equinox* at **equinox**)

auxiliary *n.* 1. (grammar) a modal ~ 2. (BE) a nursing ~

avail I *n.* (formal) ["aid"] 1. of little ~ 2. to no ~ (we did what we could but unfortunately it was all to no ~)

avail II *v.* (formal) 1. (d; intr.) ("to help") to ~ against (nothing could ~ against the enemy attack) 2. (d; refl.) ("to make use") to ~ of (she ~ed herself of the offer)

available *adj.* 1. easily, readily ~ 2. to make oneself ~; to make smt. ~ 3. ~ about, on; to 4. ~ for (are you ~ for a meeting tomorrow?) 5. ~ from (information on that subject is readily ~ to anyone from the Internet) 6. ~ to + inf. (is there anyone ~ to replace her?)

avalanche *n.* 1. to set off, trigger an ~ 2. an ~ buries; strikes 3. in an ~ (skiers killed in an ~) 4. (fig.) in, under an ~ of (managers buried under an ~ of memos)

avenge *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ by (she ~d her father's murder by revenging herself on his murderer)

avenue *n.* ["opportunity"] 1. to exhaust, explore, pursue every ~ 2. an ~ to (an ~ to success) ["street"] 3. in (BE), on (AE) an ~

aver *v.* (formal) (L) he ~red that he was innocent

average *n.* 1. to calculate, work out an ~ 2. (misc.) above ~; below ~; on ~/(AE) on the ~ she works seven hours a day; (AE) he finished school with a B ~

average out *v.* (d; intr., tr.) to ~ at, to (snowfall ~s out in this part of the country at/to twenty inches a year)

averse *adj.* (formal) 1. distinctly, markedly, strongly ~; risk-averse (a risk-averse society that won't let children play on their own) 2. ~ to (I wouldn't be ~ to (having) a drink)

aversion *n.* (formal) 1. to develop; feel, have; take an ~ to 2. to overcome an ~ 3. a deep, deep-rooted, distinct, marked, strong; natural; pet ~; risk-aversion 4. an ~ to (to overcome an ~ to animals)

avert *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from (he ~ed his eyes from the scene of the accident) 2. (misc.) the accident was narrowly ~ed

aviation *n.* civil; military ~

avid *adj.* (formal) (usu. does not stand alone) ~ for (~ for fame)

avoid *v.* 1. to ~ narrowly; studiously 2. (G) to studiously ~ volunteering for anything difficult 3. (misc.) to ~ at all costs; to ~ like the plague (to ~ like the plague volunteering for anything difficult)

avoidance *n.* tax ~ (esp. BE) USAGE NOTE: It is legal to avoid taxes but illegal to evade them; thus tax avoidance is legal but tax evasion is not.

avow *v.* (formal) 1. to ~ openly, publicly 2. to ~ solemnly 3. (L) they ~ed that they had been wrong 4. (M or N; used with a noun) he openly ~ed himself (to be) a socialist = he is an openly ~ed socialist

avowal *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. an open, public ~ 3. a solemn ~ 4. an ~ to + inf. (his open ~ to be a socialist was soon forgotten) 5. an ~ that + clause (he made an open ~ that he was a socialist!)

await *v.* to ~ eagerly (an eagerly ~ed and long-awaited event)

awake I *adj.* 1. half; fully, wide ~ 2. ~ to (~ to the danger of inflation) 3. (misc.) to lie ~

awake II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from, out of (she awoke from a deep sleep) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ to (I awoke to bright sunlight) 3. (E) they awoke to find the house in flames 4. (s) I awoke refreshed

awaken *v.* 1. see **awake II** 2. (d; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smb. to a sense of duty)

awakening *n.* 1. a rude, sudden ~ 2. a sexual ~ 3. a spiritual ~

award I *n.* 1. to confer, grant, make, present an ~ 2. to accept an ~ 3. to earn, receive, win an ~ 4. a posthumous ~ 5. (BE) a pay ~ 6. the ~ went to the best student 7. an ~ from; for (she won an ~ from the judges for her research)

award II *v.* 1. (A) the judges ~ed the prize to her; or: the judges ~ed her the prize 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (the judges ~ed her a prize for her research)

aware *adj.* (usu. cannot stand alone) 1. acutely, all too, keenly, only too, painfully, very (much), well ~ 2. dimly, hardly ~ 3. ~ of (they were only too well ~ of the harmfulness of smoking) 4. ~ that + clause (they were only too well ~ that smoking is harmful) USAGE NOTE: The adjective *aware* can be used without a following *of* or *that-clause* when it is preceded by such an adverb as *politically*: a politically aware person who knows what all the candidates stand for.

awareness *n.* 1. growing, heightened ~ 2. public ~ 3. to heighten, increase, raise ~ 4. ~ among 5. ~ that + clause (there is a growing ~ among the general public that smoking is harmful)

awash *adj.* ~ with

away *adv.* 1. far ~ 2. ~ from (he is ~ from home) (see also Usage Notes at **far**)

awe I *n.* 1. to inspire ~ in (he inspired ~ in everyone = he inspired everyone with ~) 2. to hold smb. in ~ 3. deep, great ~ 4. in; with ~ (to contemplate the stars with ~ at their magnificence) 5. ~ at 6. in ~ of (to be/stand in ~ of smb.; to contemplate the stars in ~ of their magnificence) 7. (misc.) shock and ~

awe II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (the stars ~ed me into silence)

awestruck *adj.* 1. ~ at (~ at the sight) 2. ~ to + inf. (they were ~ to see the volcano erupt)

awful *adj.* (colloq.) 1. pretty, really, simply ~ 2. ~ about (I feel ~ about it) 3. ~ for (the situation is ~ for all of us) 4. ~ to + inf. (it was really ~ to work there = it was really ~ working there = working there was really ~; it was ~ of them to do that) 5. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that they ¬were/should have been¬ reprimanded because of my mistake)

awhile *adv.* (see Usage Note at **while**)

awkward *adj.* 1. ~ about, at 2. ~ with (he is ~ with children) 3. (BE) ~ for (Monday is ~ for me) 4. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to discuss such matters in public = it is ~ discussing such matters in public = discussing such matters in public is awkward)

AWOL *adj.* to be; go ~

awry *adj.*, *adv.* to go ~ (our plans have gone ~)

ax, axe *n.* 1. to swing, wield an ~ 2. with an ~ 3. a blow of an ~ 4. an ~ chops, cuts; falls 5. (misc.) to get the ~ ("to be fired; to lose funding") (when projects get the ~ their employees get the ~, too!); to have an ~ to grind ("to have an ulterior motive")

axiom *n.* 1. to lay down an ~ 2. an ~ that + clause (we accept the ~ that a straight line is the shortest distance between two points)

axiomatic *adj.* ~ that + clause (it is ~ that everyone should pay a fair share of taxes; it's ~ that a straight line is the shortest distance between two points)

axis *n.* 1. a horizontal; vertical ~ 2. along; on an ~ (the Earth rotates on its ~ and revolves around the Sun)

B

babble I *n.* childish; confused; incessant ~

babble II *v.* 1. to ~ ceaselessly, incessantly; incoherently 2. (B) he ~d a few words to her about his problems 3. (D; intr.) to ~ about

babe *n.* 1. a ~ in arms ("a small infant; an inexperienced person") 2. a ~ in the woods ("a naive person")

babel *n.* 1. above the ~ (his voice was heard above the ~) 2. a ~ of tongues; voices

baboon *n.* a band, troop of ~s

baby *n.* 1. (of a woman) to give birth to, have a ~; (of a woman, a man, or both) (colloq.) to make a ~ 2. (of a woman) to carry, expect; lose a ~ (a pregnant woman carries a ~ for nine months; to carry a ~ to term; she lost her stillborn ~) 3. (of a mother) to breast-feed, nurse, suckle a ~ 4. (of a midwife, nurse, doctor) to deliver a ~ 5. (of a clergyman) to baptize a ~ 6. to bath (BE), bathe; change a ~ ("to change the baby's diaper/nappy") 7. to calm, comfort, hush a ~ 8. to lull; put; rock a ~ to sleep 9. to diaper (AE); swaddle a ~ 10. to wean a ~ 11. to bubble (AE), burp a ~ 12. a blue; full-term; newborn; premature; stillborn; test-tube ~ 13. a ~ babbles, coos; bawls; cries; is due (to be born) 14. a ~ burps; drools; teethes; throws up 15. a ~ crawls, creeps; toddles 16. (misc.) a bouncing ~ boy; girl

baby buggy *n.* 1. to push, wheel a ~ 2. in a ~ USAGE NOTE: In AE a baby buggy is a baby carriage. In BE a baby buggy is a push-chair (BE) = a stroller (AE).

baby carriage *n.* (AE) 1. to push, wheel a ~ (BE has *pram*) 2. in a ~

baby-sit *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (who ~s for you?)

bachelor *n.* 1. a confirmed; eligible ~ 2. (misc.) a ~ of arts; a ~ of science USAGE NOTE: In some varieties of English, "a confirmed bachelor" can be a euphemism for 'a homosexual man.'

back I *adj.*, *adv.* 1. ~ to (things are ~ to normal) 2. far, way ~ (~ back in the eighteenth century) 3. (misc.) to go ~ on one's promise/word ("to fail to keep one's promise")

back II *n.* ["part of the body opposite to the front"] 1. to turn one's ~ to smb.; (usu. fig.) to turn one's ~ on smb. ("to reject or spurn smb.") 2. to arch one's ~ (the cat arched its ~) 3. a broad ~ 4. on one's, smb.'s ~ (to lie on one's ~; a heavy bag was on his ~) 5. (misc.) the small of the ~; to have a bad ~; to stand ~ to ~; they stood with their ~s to the door; they deceived me when my ~ was turned ["rear part"] 6. at, in; near; towards the ~ (of) (a room at the ~ of the house; we sat in the back of the car) 7. from; (BE) round the ~ (go round the ~ of the house to get into the house from the ~) ["area behind smt."] 8. at the, (AE) in ~ of (BE: a garden at the ~ of the house = AE: a yard in ~ of the house) ["misc."] 9. he did it behind my ~ ("he did it without my knowledge"); at/in the ~ of smb.'s mind ("subconsciously"); to break one's ~ ("to work very hard"); to get one's ~ up ("to balk at smt."); get off my ~ (colloq.) ("leave me alone"); if you scratch my ~, I'll scratch yours (colloq.) ("if you help me, I'll help you"); to have one's ~ to the wall ("to be in a desperate position"); to break the ~ of a job ("to do the hardest part of a job"); to put one's/some (AE) ~ into one's work ("to make a maximum physical effort"); who will sit in ~? (AE); wearing a baseball cap ~ to front (see also *the back of beyond* at **beyond**) USAGE NOTE: Something in back of/behind the house is not in the house itself. Something in the back of the house is. Something at the back of the house can be either in back of/behind the house or in the back part of the house itself. So the expression "at the back of" is ambiguous.

back III *v.* 1. to ~ enthusiastically, wholeheartedly 2. (D; tr.) ("to support") to ~ against (the independents will ~ us against the majority party) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ for (we will ~ her enthusiastically for public office) 4. (d; intr., tr.) ("to move") to ~ into (to ~ into a garage; she ~ed the car into the driveway) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ onto (our building ~s onto the main road) 6. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ out of (he ~ed out of the driveway; to ~ a car out of a garage) 7. (D; intr.) ("to withdraw") to ~ out of (they ~ed out of the deal)

backache *n.* 1. to have ~ (BE)/a ~ (AE) 2. (a) chronic, nagging, persistent ~

back away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from

backbone *n.* ["courage"] 1. ~ for 2. the ~ to + inf. (will he have the ~ to tell the truth?)

backchat *n.* (BE) see **backtalk**

backdate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ an agreement to the beginning of the year)

back door *n.* to get in by, through the ~ (usu. fig.) ("to accomplish smt. by devious means")

back down *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from (they had to ~ from their demands) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on, over (they had to ~ over the issue of money)

backdrop *n.* 1. to provide a ~ for 2. a ~ to (the ~ to the hearings was complex) 3. against a ~ of

backer *n.* 1. to secure ~s (for a project) 2. a financial; powerful ~

back formation *n.* (ling.) a ~ from (*to burgle* is a ~ from *burglar*)

background *n.* ["smb.'s experience, past"] 1. to have a ~ (in) (what sort of ~ does she have?) 2. to check smb.'s ~ 3. a broad; narrow; rich, well-rounded; specialized ~ 4. a deprived, disadvantaged; middle-class; privileged; working-class ~ 5. smb.'s academic, educational; cultural; ethnic; political; religious; social ~ 6. a ~ for (to have the right ~ for a job) ["back part of a picture, scene"] 7. against, on a

~ (against a dark ~) ["surroundings"] 8. an appropriate, fitting ~ 9. a ~ to (the music served as a ~ to the recitation of poetry) ["a less important position"] 10. to relegate smb. to the ~ 11. in the ~ (to keep, remain, stay in the ~) 12. into the ~ (to fade into the ~) ["history, past"] 13. an historical ~ 14. a ~ of, to (do you know the ~ to this case? ; the ~ to the hearings was complex)

backing *n.* 1. to gain, have, secure, win ~ 2. to lose ~ (the project has the enthusiastic ~ of the government) 3. enthusiastic ; financial ; powerful ; wholehearted ~ 4. ~ for ; from ; with ; without (without financial ~ for our project from the government, we're bound to fail)

backlash *n.* 1. to create, provoke, stir up (a) ~ 2. ~ against ; from (let's not provoke a ~ against our project from the voters)

backlog *n.* 1. to accumulate, build up a ~ 2. to clear ; reduce a ~

back off *v.* (D ; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from one's demands)

backpack *v.* (P ; intr.) to ~ across the continent ; to go ~ing through Europe

backseat *n.* to take a ~ to smb. (she will not take a ~ to anyone)

backstroke *n.* to do, swim the ~

backtalk *n.* (AE) (colloq.) don't give me any ~ ! (BE has *backchat*) (see also **talk back**)

backtrack *v.* (D ; intr.) to ~ from

backup *n.* ["substitute ; reinforcement"] a ~ for, to

back up *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) to ~ to (he ~ed up to the loading platform) 2. (D ; tr.) to ~ with (they backed us up with a generous contribution)

backwards *adv.* 1. to go ~ ; to step ~ ; to walk ~ 2. to put smt. in ~ (see also *bend over backwards* at **bend II**)

backwater *n.* a cultural ; provincial ~

bacon *n.* 1. back (esp. BE) = Canadian (US) ; crisp ; lean ; smoked ; streaky (BE) ~ 2. a rasher, slice of ~ 3. (misc.) to bring home the ~ ("to succeed") ; (BE) to save smb.'s ~ ("to rescue smb. from a difficulty")

bacteria *n.* 1. to grow ~ 2. non-pathogenic ; pathogenic ; virulent ~ 3. a colony ; strain, type of ~

bad I *adj.* 1. ~ for (smoking is ~ for your health) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to lie ; it's ~ for your health to smoke) 3. ~ that + clause (it's too ~ that he was not able to attend the meeting) 4. (misc.) the meat went ~ ; to feel ~ about smt. ; not ~ ("quite good") ; not half ~ ("rather good") ; that's (just) too ~ ("nothing can be done about that") (see also *bad form* at **form I**) USAGE NOTE : The expression "to feel badly about smt." is an alternative to "to feel ~ about smt."

bad II *n.* 1. (colloq.) to be in ~ with smb. ("to be on bad terms with smb.") 2. to go from ~ to worse

badge *n.* see **button** 8

badger *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ into (they ~ed me into buying a new car) 2. (D ; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smb. with questions) 3. (H) they ~ed me to buy a new car USAGE NOTE : Note "They kept ~ing me to buy a new car until they finally succeeded in ~ing me into buying one."

badly *adv.* 1. to do ~ (at, in, on) 2. (misc.) are things going ~ for/with you ? ; to think ~ of (I don't want you to think ~ of me)

baffle *v.* 1. to ~ completely 2. (R) it ~d me that they rejected/should have rejected our offer 3. (misc.) it ~d me why they rejected our offer

bag *n.* ["suitcase"] 1. to pack, unpack one's ~s 2. to check ; label one's ~s ["container"] ["pouch"] 3. a ~ bursts ; contains, holds 4. an air ~ (that inflates within a car on impact) 5. a barracks ; duffel ; flight ; garment ; musette (AE) ; overnight ~ (see also *kit bag* at **kit**) 6. a carrier (BE) ; clutch ; shopping ; shoulder ~ 7. a jiffy ("padded bag used for mailing") ; mailbag, postbag (BE) ; paper ; plastic ~ 8. a sleeping ~ 9. a body ~ 10. an ice ~ 11. (BE) a sponge ~ ("bag for toilet articles") 12. a doggy ~ ("bag given to a diner in a restaurant to take home leftover parts of a meal") 13. (AE) a grab ~ (BE has *lucky dip*) 14. (misc.) a ~ of (bought a ~ of potatoes) 15. a tea ~ ["leather ball"] 16. (AE) a punching ~ (BE has *punch ball*) ["misc."] 17. (a) diplomatic ~ (the top-secret letter was sent by diplomatic ~) (BE : AE has *diplomatic pouch*) 18. smt. is in the ~ ("smt. is assured of success")

baggage *n.* 1. to check ; claim one's ~ ; (esp. AE) to check one's ~ through (to the final destination) 2. carry-on, hand ; excess ~ 3. unclaimed ~ 4. a piece of ~ 5. (misc.) (fig.) emotional ; ideological ; intellectual ~

bagpipes *n.* 1. to play the ~ 2. ~ skirl, wail

bail I *n.* 1. to grant, set ~ 2. to post, put up, stand ~ for ; (colloq.) to go ~ for 3. to make, raise ~ 4. to deny, refuse smb. ~ 5. to forfeit, jump, skip ~ 6. on ~ (to free/release smb. on ~ ; to be out on ~ ; to be set free on a thousand dollars' ~)

bail II *v.* 1. (AE) (d ; intr.) ("to parachute") to ~ out of (to ~ out of an airplane) 2. (D ; tr.) ("to remove") to ~ out of (~ water out of a boat) 3. (d ; tr.) ("to help") to ~ out of (to ~ smb. out of trouble)

bailiwick *n.* in one's own ~

bait *n.* (often fig.) 1. to hold out, offer ; put out, set out ~ 2. to nibble at ; swallow, take the ~ 3. to rise to the ~ 4. tempting ~

bake *v.* (C) he ~d a cake/a potato for us ; or : he ~d us a cake/a potato

bakery *n.* at, in a ~ (she works at/in a ~)

balance I *n.* 1. to strike a ~ between 2. to keep, maintain ; recover, regain one's ~ 3. to lose one's ~ 4. to disturb, upset the ~ ; to throw smt./smb. off ~ 5. to shift/tip the ~ in smb.'s favor ; to redress/restore the ~ 6. a delicate ~ 7. (bookkeeping) a trial ~ 8. a bank ; credit ; debit ~ 9. a foreign-trade, trade ~ 10. a favorable ; unfavorable ~ (a favorable ~ of trade) 11. the strategic ~ 12. (misc.) to hang in the ~ ("to be uncertain") ; on ~ ("all in all") ; a work-life ~ (to find a satisfying work-life ~)

balance II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ against; with (to ~ one argument against the other)

balanced *adj.* 1. evenly ~ (between) 2. well-balanced (see also *a balanced diet = a well-balanced diet* at **diet**)

balance of power *n.* 1. to hold the ~ 2. to change; tip; upset the ~

bale (BE) see **bail II** 1

balk, baulk *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (he ~ed at the price)

Balkans *n.* in the ~

ball I *n.* ["game"] 1. (AE) to play ~ 2. (the game of) baseball; basketball; softball ["ball used in a game"] 3. to bat; bounce; bowl; carry; catch; drop; fumble; hit; kick; pass; pitch; throw, toss a ~ 4. a ~ bounces 5. the ~ is dead ("the ball does not bounce") 6. a baseball; basketball; beach; bowling; cricket; cue ~; football; golf; medicine; ping-pong; softball; tennis ~; volleyball (see also **golf ball**) 7. (BE) a punch ~ (AE has *punching bag*) ["rounded mass"] 8. a cannonball; cotton ~ (see also **snowball**) 9. a wrecker's ~ 10. in; into a ~ (to curl/roll up in a ~) ["big glass ball used in fortune telling"] 11. a crystal ~ [(in baseball and softball)] 12. a fly; ground ~ (the batter hit a fly ~ to center field) ["misc."] 13. to get, set, start the ~ rolling ("to begin an activity"); (colloq.) on the ~ ("efficient"); (AE; colloq.) to play ~ (with) ("to cooperate (with)")

ball II *n.* ["formal dance"] 1. to have, organize a ~ 2. a costume; fancy-dress; inaugural; masked ~ 3. at a ~ (to dance at a ~) 4. (misc.) (colloq.) to have a ~ ("to enjoy oneself")

ballad *n.* 1. to compose a ~ 2. to perform a ~ 3. a folk; lewd, ribald ~

ballast *n.* 1. to take on ~ 2. to drop ~

ballet *n.* 1. to dance, perform (in); choreograph, stage a ~ 2. classical; folk ~; (a) water ~

balloon I *n.* 1. to fly; launch a ~ 2. to blow up, inflate; deflate; pop a ~ 3. a ~ bursts 4. a ~ comes down, drops; floats; goes up, rises 5. a barrage; captive; hot-air; observation ~ 6. by ~ (to travel by ~) 7. (fig.) a trial ~ (to ¬float/send up¬ a trial ~ to test people's reactions)

balloon II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into a scandal)

ballot *n.* 1. to cast a ~ 2. to rig; invalidate a ~ 3. an absentee; open; postal; secret; straw; void ~ 4. a ~ against; for 5. by ~ (to vote by secret ~) 6. on a ~ (our candidate's name is on the ~ in every state)

ballot box *n.* 1. to stuff the ~es 2. at the ~ (the issue will be decided at the ~)

balm *n.* 1. to apply (a) ~ 2. a healing, soothing ~

bamboozle *v.* (colloq.) ("to trick") 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into 2. (D; tr.) to ~ out of

ban I *n.* 1. to impose, place, put a ~ on 2. to lift a ~ from 3. a smoking; (nuclear) test ~ 4. a wartime ~ 5. a ~ on 6. a ~ comes into force, takes effect (the ~ on smoking came into force on Monday)

ban II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from (they were ~ned from attending) 2. (K) the police ~ned their demonstrating in the park

banana *n.* 1. to peel a ~ 2. a green; ripe; rotten ~ 3. a bunch of ~s

band I *n.* ["group of musicians"] 1. to conduct, lead; form a ~ 2. a brass; concert; dance; jazz; klezmer; marching; military; ragtime; regimental; rock; school; string ~ 3. a big ~ 4. a ~ member; leader 5. in a ~ 6. a ~ marches; performs, plays 7. (misc.) to strike up the ~; a tribute ~ (they formed a Beatles tribute ~ to perform Beatles songs) ["group"] 8. a predatory; roving ~ 9. an age; income; tax ~ (if you earn more you will fall into a higher tax ~) 10. a ~ of marauders USAGE NOTE: Nowadays "band" can be used colloquially of a symphony orchestra by fans of classical music – under its present conductor the Amsterdam Concertgebouw remains one of the world's greatest ~s.

band II *n.* ["ring"] 1. a wedding ~ ["range of wavelengths"] 2. a wave ~ 3. a citizens' ~ (or: CB) ["circular strip"] 4. a brake; elastic (BE), rubber; watchband (CE; BE also has *watch strap*) ~

bandage *n.* 1. to apply, put on; change a ~ 2. to wrap a ~ (around); to roll a ~ 3. to remove a ~ 4. to loosen; tighten a ~

Band-Aid (T) *n.* (esp. AE; BE has *Elastoplast* (T)) to apply, put on a ~

bandit *n.* a masked ~

band together *v.* 1. (D; intr., refl.) to ~ against (the liberals ~ed together against the new legislation) 2. (E) the liberals ~ed together to oppose the new legislation

bandwagon *n.* ["attractive cause"] to climb aboard/on, jump aboard/on the ~

bandy *v.* to ~ words with smb. (about smt.)

bang I *n.* 1. with a ~ (the door slammed shut with a ~) 2. (misc.) (AE) to go over with a ~ ("to be successful"); "This is the way the world ends/Not with a ~ but a whimper." – T.S. Eliot, "The Hollow Men" (1925)

bang II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against, at; into; on (she ~ed on the door; I ~ed into the wall) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ against, on (he ~ed his head on the low ceiling) 3. (N) the door ~ed shut

bang away *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) ("to shoot") to ~ at (the enemy plane kept ~ing away at us)

bang down *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ on (he ~ed his fist down on the drum; he ~ed down on the table)

banger *n.* ["firecracker"] (BE) 1. to let off (esp. BE), light, set off a ~ 2. a ~ goes off

banish *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (they were ~ed for supporting a free press) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (she was ~ed from one country to another)

banister *n.* to slide down a ~ (BE also has *to slide down the bannisters*)

banjo *n.* to play; pluck; strum a ~

bank I *n.* ["financial establishment"] 1. to charter; establish a ~ 2. a central; commercial; credit; export-import; investment; land; national, people's, state; merchant (BE); reserve; savings ~ 3. a drive-in ~ 4. a ~ closes, collapses, fails 5. at, in;

from, out of a ~ (she works at/in a ~; to deposit money in a ~ and withdraw it from a ~) ["fund held in a gambling game"] 6. to break the ~ ["place of storage"] 7. a blood; corneal, eye; data; organ; soil; sperm; tissue ~ 8. a citation ~ (for dictionaries)

bank II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to rely on") (we were ~ing on your support) (see also **bank on**) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with ("to have a bank account with") ("Who do you ~ with?" "I ~ with my local branch.")

bank III *n.* ["shore esp. of a river or canal"] 1. a rugged; sloping; steep ~ 2. a river ~ 3. on a ~ 4. (misc.) the ~s were flooded; a cloud ~ USAGE NOTE: the bank(s) of a river or canal; the shore of a lake or sea; the coast (of an ocean).

bank IV *n.* ["row"]["tier"] an elevator (AE) ~

banker *n.* an international; investment; merchant (BE) ~

banking *n.* 1. electronic; international ~ 2. (misc.) where do you do your ~?

bank on *v.* 1. (d.; intr.) to ~ for (they are ~ing on the government for funds) 2. (E) we were ~ing on you to support us

bankrupt *adj.* 1. morally ~ 2. to go ~ 3. to declare smb./oneself ~

bankruptcy *n.* to declare, go into, file for, petition for ~

banner *n.* 1. to plant; unfurl; wave a ~ 2. a ~ bears a slogan; flutters, waves 3. a regimental ~ 4. (fig.) under a ~ (to do horrible things under the ~ of reform)

banns *n.* ["declaration of an impending marriage"] to publish, read the ~

banquet *n.* 1. to arrange, give, have, hold a ~ 2. to cater a ~ 3. an elaborate, lavish, real, sumptuous ~ 4. a farewell; formal; state; wedding ~ 5. a ~ for 6. at a ~

banter *n.* 1. to exchange ~ with 2. good-natured, light; witty ~

baptism *n.* 1. to administer ~; to perform a ~ 2. to accept, receive, undergo ~ 3. (misc.) (to undergo) a ~ of fire (my first day in the new job was a real ~ of fire!)

baptize *v.* (N; used with a noun) they ~d him Joseph

bar I *n.* ["counter or place where drinks and sometimes food are sold"] 1. to manage, operate, run a ~ 2. to serve behind a; tend (AE) ~ 3. to stop at a ~ (on the way home); to drink at/in a ~; to drop into a ~ 4. a cash; open ("free") (AE) ~ 5. a cocktail; public (BE); saloon (BE) ~ 6. a coffee (BE); salad; snack ~ 7. a gay; singles ~ ["barrier"] 8. a color ~ (to cross the color ~) 9. a ~ to (a ~ to success) ["barrier in a law court"] 10. at the ~ (the prisoner at the ~; to be tried at the ~) 11. before the ~ (of justice) ["the profession of barrister, trial lawyer"] 12. to be admitted, (esp. BE) called to the ~ 13. (esp. BE) to read for the ~ ["metal strip used as a barrier"] 14. behind ~s ("in prison") (he was put behind ~s) ["strip used in gymnastics"] 15. a horizontal ~ 16. parallel ~s 17. on the ~ (to work out on the ~) ["handrail used by ballet dancers"] 18. at the ~ (to warm up at the ~) ["metal strip used in a suspension system"] 19. a torsion ~ ["lever on a typewriter"] 20. a space ~ (to press the space ~) ["oblong piece"] 21. a candy; chocolate ~ ["musical measure"] 22. to hum; play; sing a few ~s ["misc."] 23. a nail ~ (like a beauty parlor for nails)

bar II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to exclude") to ~ from (he was ~red from the competition) 2. (K) ("to forbid") they ~red his participating in the competition (see also **barred**)

barb *n.* ["critical remark"] 1. to aim, sling ~s at 2. a ~ stings

barbarism, barbarity *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display ~ 2. outright, unmitigated, utter ~ 3. an act of ~ (to commit an act of ~)

barbarous *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to treat prisoners in that manner)

barbecue I *n.* ["party at which barbecued meat is served"] 1. to have a ~ 2. at a ~ 3. a backyard ~

barbecue II *v.* (C) she ~d a steak for me; or: she ~d me a steak

barbed wire, (AE) **barbwire** *n.* to string ~

barbell *n.* 1. to clean; lift; press a ~ 2. an adjustable ~

barber *n.* at the ~'s

barbershop *n.* (esp. AE) at, in a ~ (he is at/in the ~)

bare I *adj.* 1. ~ of (the hills were ~ of vegetation) 2. (misc.) to strip smt. ~ (strip the wall bare before painting it) (see also *lay bare* at **lay**)

bare II *v.* (B) she ~d her soul to us

barefoot *adv.* to go, walk ~

bargain I *n.* ["agreement"] 1. to drive; make, strike; seal a ~ 2. to meet one's end of a ~ 3. a Faustian; hard ~ (she drives a hard ~) 4. a ~ between; with (we struck a ~ with them) 5. a ~ to + inf. (they made a ~ not to cut prices) ["advantageously cheap purchase"] 6. to find, get a ~ 7. to hunt for a ~ 8. to shop for ~s 9. a good, real ~ ["misc."] 10. to make the best of a bad ~ ("to do one's best in a difficult situation"); in (AE), into (BE) the ~ ("in addition, along with")

bargain II *v.* 1. ("to negotiate") to ~ shrewdly 2. (D; intr.) ("to negotiate") to ~ for; over; with (we ~ed with them for the property) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ for, on (AE) ("to count on") (I wasn't ~ing on any trouble; it was more than I had ~ed for)

bargaining *n.* 1. collective; plea ~ 2. (misc.) a ~ position (don't give in: we're in a very strong ~ position)

barge I *n.* 1. to drive; float; tow a ~ 2. to load; unload a ~

barge II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ into (she ~d into the room) 2. (P; intr., tr.) they ~ed out of the restaurant; he ~d his way past the guard; she ~d through the crowd; she just ~d in without permission

barge in *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (she just ~ed in on our conversation without permission)

baritone *n.* 1. to sing ~ 2. a deep, rich ~ 3. a bass ~

bark I *n.* ["– of a tree"] ~ peels

bark II *n.* ["as of a dog"] 1. to give, let out a ~ 2. a furious; loud, noisy ~

bark III *v.* 1. to ~ furiously 2. (B) the sergeant ~ed an order to his squad 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ at (the dog ~ed at the jogger; the general ~ed a command at her staff) 4. (misc.) "Do it!" he ~ed (to his squad)

barn *n.* a car ~ (AE; BE has *waggon shed*)

barnacle *n.* 1. ~s cling (to the bottom of a ship) 2. (misc.) to cling like a ~

barnstorm *v.* 1. (P; intr.) to ~ around the country; to ~ through the whole state 2. (misc.) to go ~ing around the country/through the state

barometer *n.* 1. an aneroid; mercury ~ 2. a ~ is steady; falls; rises

baron *n.* ["magnate"] a cattle; coal; drug; media; oil; press; robber; steel ~

barracks *n.* 1. (AE) to GI the ~ 2. (AE) to police (up) the ~ 3. army; disciplinary; police ~ 4. restricted to ~

barrage *n.* 1. to lay down a ~ 2. to lift a ~ 3. an artillery; rolling ~ 4. an advertising; propaganda ~ 5. (fig.) to face a ~ of questions

barred *adj.* ~ to (esp. AE) (the street was ~ to traffic)

barrel *n.* 1. to tap a ~ 2. a beer ~ 3. (misc.) (colloq.) to have smb. over a ~ ("to have placed smb. in a difficult position")

barricade *n.* 1. to build, erect, place, put up, set up a ~ 2. to storm a ~ 3. to remove, take down a ~ 4. a barbed-wire ~ 5. a ~ across; against

barrier *n.* 1. to erect, place, put up, set up a ~; to form a human ~ 2. to overcome; take a ~ (the horse took the ~ easily) 3. to break down; break through; remove a ~ 4. the sonic, sound ~ (to break the sound ~) 5. a crash (BE); crush (BE), police ~ 6. a cultural; ethnic; language; racial; religious; social ~ (to break a racial ~) 7. a tariff; trade ~ 8. a ~ between 9. a ~ to (old ideas are/constitute/form a ~ to progress and a ~ between peoples) 10. (BE) at a ~ (please show your ticket at the ~ before going on to the platform)

barter I *n.* 1. to engage in ~ (to engage in ~ for furs with the local hunters) 2. ~ between; for; with

barter II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ tobacco for furs with the local hunters) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with

base I *n.* ["center of operations"] 1. to establish, set up a ~ 2. to close (down) a ~; live on a ~; return to (a) ~; shop at a ~ 3. an advanced, forward; home; main ~ 4. an air, air-force; army; military; missile; naval ~ 5. an enemy ~ 6. (misc.) a power ~; a ~ of operations ["goal"] (esp. AE) (baseball and softball) 7. to reach; touch (a) ~ 8. to steal a ~ 9. first; second; third ~ (the batter hit a sacrifice that allowed the runner to score from third (base)) 10. (misc.) (colloq.) she couldn't get to first ~ with them ("she couldn't even begin to achieve any success with them"); (esp. AE; colloq.) to touch ~ with ("to make contact with"); (esp. AE; colloq.) to cover, touch all the ~es ("to discuss everything relevant") (see also *home plate* at **plate** 10) ["collection"] 11. a database ["basic ingredient"] 12. an oil ~ ["foundation"] 13. a firm, solid ~

base II *v.* 1. to ~ largely, mainly; loosely, to some extent 2. (d; tr.) to ~ on, upon (we ~d our conclusions on facts and on certain key assumptions) USAGE NOTE: You will also find such examples as –? our conclusions are ~ed around certain key assumptions. The construction "? based around" is disliked by many people.

base III *n.* 1. to sing ~ 2. a deep, rich ~

baseball *n.* ["game"] 1. to play ~ 2. night ~ 3. the game of ~ 4. (misc.) a ~ game; player ["ball"] 5. to bat, hit; pitch a ~

basement *n.* 1. (AE) a finished; full ~ 2. a bargain ~ (in a department store) 3. in a ~

bash I *n.* (slang) (BE) ["attempt"] 1. to have a ~ at smt. ["lively party"] 2. to give, have, throw a ~

bash II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ against (he ~ed his head against the door)

bashful *adj.* ~ about; with

basic *adj.* ~ to

basics *n.* back to (the) ~

basic training *n.* (mil.) to go through, take ~

basin *n.* 1. a river; tidal; yacht ~ 2. a handbasin (BE), washbasin, wash-hand (BE) ~ (see **sink I** *n.*)

basis *n.* 1. to be, form, provide a ~ for 2. a trial ~ 3. a firm, solid, sound; shaky ~; to have no ~ in fact (my theory has a firm ~; yours has no ~ in fact) 4. a first-name ~ 5. a scientific ~ 6. a ~ for, of 7. on a ~ (on a solid ~; she was promoted on the ~ of her accomplishments; to be paid on an hourly ~; to be on a first-name ~ (with)) USAGE NOTE: Remember the alternatives to "on … basis" when discussing repeated action. "To be paid on an hourly basis" is equivalent to "to be paid by the hour"; "to visit smb. on a regular basis" is equivalent to "to visit smb. regularly"; "to visit smb. on a once-a-week basis" is, of course, equivalent to "to visit smb. once a week."

bask *v.* to ~ in (to ~ in the sunshine; to ~ in the adulation of one's followers)

basket *n.* ["receptacle"] 1. to make, weave a ~ 2. a laundry, linen (BE); picnic; sewing; wastebasket (AE), wastepaper 3. a wicker ~ 4. in, into a ~ 5. from, out of a ~ 6. a ~ of (a ~ of fruit) ["goal in basketball"] 7. to make, score, shoot, sink a ~ 8. to shoot at the ~ 9. to miss the ~

basketball *n.* ["game"] 1. to play ~ ["ball used in the game of basketball"] 2. to dribble; pass a ~

bass *n.* 1. to sing ~ 2. a deep, rich ~

bat I *n.* ["club"] 1. to swing a ~ 2. a baseball; cricket; ping-pong, table-tennis ~ ["smb.'s turn batting"] 3. (AE) at ~ (who's at ~?) ["misc."] 4. (colloq.) (BE) at full ~ ("very fast"); (AE) right off the ~ ("immediately"); to go to ~ for ("to act in support of") (he went to ~ for me when I was in a jam)

bat II *n.* ["flying mammal"] 1. ~s fly at night 2. (misc.) as blind as a ~

batch *n.* 1. a fresh ~ (of dough) 2. in ~es

bath *n.* 1. to give (the baby) a ~ 2. to have (BE), take a ~ 3. to draw (esp. AE), run a ~ 4. (BE) a swimming ~ ("an indoor swimming pool") 5. a cold; hot; warm ~ 6. a sitz; steam, Turkish; whirlpool ~ 7. a sunbath 8. a sunken ~ 9. in a ~ 10. (misc.) a blood ~ ("slaughter") USAGE NOTE: In BE, one meaning of *bath* is "bathtub".

bathe *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in (she ~d her bruises in lukewarm water)

bathed *adj.* ~ in (~ in sunshine)

bather *n.* a sun ~

bathing *n.* sun ~

bathing suit *n.* (esp. AE; old-fashioned in CE) a one-piece; two-piece ~ (see also *bathing suit* at **suit I** *n.*)

bathroom *n.* an en-suite ~ USAGE NOTE: Esp. in AE, "bathroom" can be a euphemism for 'toilet': I need the ~; (I need) to go to, use the ~ (see also the Usage Notes for **apartment**; **room**)

bathtub *n.* (esp. AE; BE prefers *bath*) 1. to fill the ~ (for a bath) 2. to empty the ~ (after a bath) 3. to clean out; scrub (out) a ~

baton *n.* 1. (in a relay race) to pass the ~ 2. (of a drum major or majorette) to twirl a ~ 3. (of an orchestra conductor) to raise a ~ 4. a police ~ 5. (in music) under the ~ of (the Berlin Philharmonic Orchestra under the baton of Wilhelm Furtwängler)

battalion *n.* to command a ~ (a major commands a ~)

batter I *n.* ["mixture for baking"] 1. to mix; pour; stir (a) ~ 2. pancake ~

batter II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ against, on (the wind ~ed the boat against the rocks) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (he ~ed his opponent into submission) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smt. to pieces)

batter III *n.* ["one whose turn it is to bat"] (baseball) a leadoff ~

battering *n.* to take a ~

battery *n.* ["a group of cells that store and furnish current"] 1. to charge; recharge a ~ 2. to discharge, run down a ~ 3. an alkaline; flashlight (AE), torch (BE); storage ~ 4. a ~ charges (itself) 5. a ~ discharges, runs (itself) down 6. a ~ is dead, flat (BE) ["artillery unit"] 7. to command a ~ (a captain commands a ~) 8. an anti-aircraft; missile ~ (see also *assault and battery* at **assault**)

battle I *n.* 1. to do, give, join ~ 2. to fight; lose; win a ~ 3. to break off, terminate a ~ 4. a bloody; decisive; fierce, pitched, raging; ~ 5. a constant; running ~ 6. a decisive; losing; uphill ~ (engaged in a losing ~) 7. a legal ~ 8. an historic ~ 9. a land; naval ~ 10. a political ~ 11. a ~ royal 12. a ~ takes place; rages 13. a ~ against; among, between; for, over; with (they fought a ~ among themselves for domination of the market; the ~ against inflation; to join ~ with smb.; a ~ between two strong adversaries) 14. a ~ to + inf. (it was a real ~ to win the election; it was a ~ against time to get the patient to the hospital) 15. at a ~ (at the ~ of Gettysburg) 16. in ~ (to be killed in ~) (see also *a battle of wits* at **wits**)

battle II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ against, with; for, over 2. (misc.) to ~ it out (two teams ~ling it out for the championship); two teams ~ling (in order) to win the championship; only one team can ~ its way to the championship

battlefield *n.* on the ~ (to die on the ~)

battleship *n.* a pocket ~

battle station *n.* to take up one's ~

batty *adj.* (slang) ["crazy, mad"] 1. to drive smb. ~ 2. to go ~ over

baulk (esp. BE) see **balk**

bay I *n.* 1. to hold, keep at ~ 2. to bring to ~

bay II *n.* ["compartment"] a loading ~

bay III *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at; for (the hounds were ~ing at the fox; the mob was ~ing for blood)

bayonet *n.* 1. to thrust a ~ into (smb.'s body) 2. to fix; unfix ~s

bazaar *n.* 1. a charity; church ~ 2. at a ~

bazooka *n.* to fire; operate a ~

be *v.* 1. (E; usu. in the past) he was never to see his family again; she was to become famous 2. (S) to ~ a teacher; to ~ happy 3. (misc.) you are to appear in court at two o'clock

beach *n.* 1. an isolated; private; public; sandy; shingle ~ 2. across; along; at; on the ~ 3. an expanse, stretch of ~

beachhead *n.* to establish; hold; secure a ~

beacon *n.* 1. a homing; landing; radar; radio; rotating ~ 2. (BE) a Belisha ~ ("a light marking a pedestrian crossing") 3. a ~ to (to serve as a ~ to others)

bead *n.* ["front gunsight"] to draw a ~ on

beads *n.* 1. (rel.) to count, say, tell one's ~ 2. to string; wear ~ 3. (rel.) prayer ~ 4. a string of ~

beam I *n.* ["shaft of light"] 1. to direct, shine a ~ at 2. a high; low ~ (on a car) 3. a ~ from; to ["signal"] 4. a laser; radar; radio ~ 5. (also fig.) off the ~; on the ~ ["piece of wood"] 6. a balance ~ 7. a ~ bears weight, supports smt.

beam II *v.* 1. (B) they ~ed the program to the countries of Central America 2. (AE) (d; tr.) to ~ at (the sales campaign was ~ed at young professionals) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with joy)

beam down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on

bean *n.* 1. broad; French (BE), haricot (BE), kidney; green; lima; navy; pinto; runner (BE), string; soya (AE also has *soybean*); wax ~s 2. coffee ~s 3. baked ~s 4. (misc.) to spill the ~s (slang) ("to reveal a secret"); to use the old ~ (slang) ("to use one's head"); full of ~s (slang) ("mistaken") (AE); ("full of energy") (BE)

bear I *n.* 1. the black; brown; grizzly; koala; Kodiak; polar ~ 2. a teddy ~ 3. ~s growl; hibernate 4. a young ~ is a cub

bear II *v.* 1. (formal) (A; the omission of *to* is rare) ("to carry") the servants were ~ing food to the guests 2. (A; used without *to*) ("to give birth to") she bore him two children 3. (d; intr.) ("to pertain") to ~ on (these facts ~ on the case) 4. (d; intr.) ("to move") to ~ to (we had to ~ to the right; or we had to ~ right) 5. (d; intr.) ("to have patience") to ~ with (please ~ with me for a few minutes) 6. (E; preceded by: can – cannot – can't – couldn't) ("to stand, tolerate") she can't ~ to watch them suffer 7. (G; often used with: can – cannot – can't – couldn't) ("to stand, tolerate") she can't ~ watching them suffer; her words ~ repeating 8. (K) ("to stand, tolerate"; often used with: can – cannot – can't – couldn't) she can't ~ their suffering so much 9. (O; can be used with one inanimate object) ("to feel") she ~s them a grudge; he ~s (us) no ill will 10. (P; refl.) ("to behave") she bore herself with dignity 11. (misc.) to bring to ~ on (she brought her influence to ~ on the legislators; she can't ~ it when they suffer)

beard *n.* 1. to grow; have, sport, wear a ~ (you can't get a job wearing a ~ like that!) 2. to shave off; trim one's ~ (you can't get a job unless you shave off your ~!) 3. to stroke one's ~ 4. a bushy, heavy, rough, thick; scraggly, unkempt; tough ~ 5. a light, sparse; neat, trim ~ 6. a ~ grows 7. with a ~ (you can't get a job with a ~ like that!)

bear down *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on (the enemy's destroyers bore down on our aircraft carrier; the other car bore down on us without slowing up)

bearing *n.* ["relation"] 1. to have a ~ on (that fact has no ~ on the case) 2. a direct ~ ["position"] 3. to take a ~ on (we took a ~ on the hill) ["posture"] ["manner"] 4. a dignified; military; proud, regal, royal ~ ["machine part that supports"] 5. to burn out a ~ 6. a ball; roller; wheel ~ ["emblem on a coat of arms"] 7. a heraldic ~

bearings *n.* ["orientation"] 1. to get one's ~ 2. to lose one's ~

bear up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ against, under (to ~ under pressure)

beast *n.* ["qualities of an animal"] 1. to bring out the ~ in smb. ["animal"] 2. a rare; wild ~ 3. a ~ of burden; a ~ of prey

beat I *n.* ["a regularly traversed round"] 1. to patrol, pound, walk one's ~ 2. to cover one's ~ 3. a police officer's ~ 4. on one's ~ ["rhythm"] 5. to follow the ~ 6. to miss, skip a ~ 7. on a ~ (to come in on the ~ of three) 8. an irregular; regular, steady ~ 9. to a ~ (to dance to the ~ of the music) ["unit of rhythm"] 10. a ~ to (four ~s to a measure/bar)

beat II *v.* 1. ("to hit") to ~ brutally, mercilessly, savagely, severely, viciously 2. (sports) ("to defeat") to ~ comfortably; decisively, easily; narrowly; comprehensively, soundly; by ten points 3. (d; intr., tr.) ("to strike") to ~ against (the bird beat its wings against the bars of its cage; the waves ~ against the rocks) 4. (D; tr.) ("to defeat") to ~ at; into (she easily beat me at chess; they beat our team into second place) 5. (D; tr.) ("to strike") to ~ for (to ~ a prisoner for disobedience) 6. (d; tr.) ("to inculcate") to ~ into (to ~ facts into smb.'s head) 7. (d; tr.) ("to hammer") to ~ into (to ~ swords into plowshares) 8. (d; tr.) ("to strike") to ~ into, to (to ~ smb. into submission; to ~ smb. to death) 9. (d; intr.) ("to strike") to ~ on (smb. was ~ing on the door) 10. (d; tr.) ("to extract") to ~ out of (they beat a confession out of him) 11. (colloq.) (D; tr.) ("to arrive ahead of") to ~ to (I'll ~ you to the car!) 12. (N; used with an adjective) ("to strike") they beat him unconscious 13. (colloq.) (R) ("to astound") it ~s me that they turned down the invitation

beat down *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ on (the sun beat down on us mercilessly) 2. (BE) (D; tr.) ("to persuade to reduce a price") to ~ to (I beat them down to ten pounds)

beating *n.* 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to get, take a ~ 3. a bad, brutal, good, merciless, savage, severe, vicious ~ (he got a good ~)

beat out *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (we beat them out for the title by ten points)

beat up *v.* (AE; slang) (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to beat; beat up") (to ~ on smb.)

beautiful *adj.* 1. breathtakingly ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to watch)

beauty *n.* ["a beautiful person or thing"] 1. a dazzling, great, raving, striking ~ 2. a bathing ~ ["good looks"] 3. to enhance ~ 4. dazzling, striking, wholesome ~ ["attractiveness"] 5. natural; scenic ~ 6. of ~ (a work of great ~)

beaver *n.* 1. a colony of ~s 2. ~s build dams 3. (misc.) an eager ~ ("a zealous person")

beaver away *v.* (colloq.) (BE) (D; intr.) ("to work hard") to ~ at

because *conjunction* 1. just ~ (you don't have to drink whiskey just ~ I do! = just ~ I drink whiskey doesn't mean you have to!) 2. (misc.) ~ of (her absence was ~ of illness)

beck *n.* to be at smb.'s ~ and call

beckon *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ to (she ~ed to me) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (she ~ed me with her finger) 3. (H) she ~ed me to follow her 4. (P; tr.) she ~ed me over 5. (misc.) she ~ed me over with her finger; she ~ed to me with her finger; she ~ed to me to follow her; she ~ed to me for my friends to follow her

become *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ of (what ever became of her?) 2. (formal) (R) it doesn't ~ you to speak like that 3. (S) she became a teacher; to ~ depressed

becoming *adj.* ~ to (that tie is not ~ to you)

bed *n.* ["article of furniture for sleeping"] 1. to make; make up a ~ (I'll make you up a ~ = I'll make a ~ up for you) USAGE NOTE: *to make up a bed* is to put bedclothes on it. *To make a bed* is to re-arrange the bedclothes on it neatly after someone has slept in it. 2. to strip; unmake a ~ 3. to go to ~ with (she went to ~ with a heating pad) USAGE NOTE: *to go to bed with smb.* means "to have sexual intercourse with smb.” 4. to be, lie, stay in ~; to lie; sit on a ~; to wet the ~ (“to urinate in it accidentally”) 5. to get out of ~ 6. to put smb. to ~ (to put the children to ~) 7. to take to one’s ~ (“to remain in bed because of illness”) 8. a double; king-size; queen-size; single; twin ~ 9. a bunk; camp (BE); folding; four-poster; hospital; rollaway; sofa; truckle (BE), trundle (AE) ~ 10. a water ~ 11. an unmade ~ 12. a feather ~ (“a feather mattress”) (see also *bed and breakfast* at **breakfast**) [″ground at the bottom of a body of water″] 13. a river ~ [″plot of ground″] 14. a flower ~

bedeck *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with

bedfellow *n.* odd, strange, unlikely ~s (politics make(s) strange ~s)

bedlam *n.* 1. ~ breaks out 2. absolute, complete, sheer, utter ~

bedridden *adj.* ~ with (~ with the flu)

bedroom *n.* a master; spare ~ (the two of you can share the master ~) USAGE NOTE: The size of a home is often measured by its number of bedrooms: *a three-bedroom apartment.*

bedside *n.* at, by smb.’s ~

bedsore *n.* 1. to develop, get a ~ 2. to prevent a ~

bedtime *n.* it’s past my ~

bee I *n.* [″insect″] 1. to keep ~s 2. a bumblebee; honeybee; killer; queen; worker ~; social; solitary ~s 3. ~s buzz, hum; sting; swarm 4. a cluster; colony; hive; swarm of ~s 5. (misc.) as busy as a ~

bee II *n.* (esp. AE) [″meeting to work or compete″] a quilting; sewing; spelling; spinning ~

beef I *n.* 1. to boil; braise; broil (AE), grill; cook; roast; stew ~ 2. chipped; corned; ground (AE), minced (BE); salt (BE) ~ 3. ~ Wellington 4. baby; prime ~ 5. a piece, slice; side of ~ USAGE NOTE: Corned beef in the US is like salt beef in GB and is not the same as corned beef in GB.

beef II *v.* (D; intr.) (“to complain”) to ~ about

beef up *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ a proposal with concrete data)

beeline *n.* [″shortest route″] to make a ~ for (“to go directly toward”)

beep I *n.* to give a ~

beep II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ at

beer *n.* 1. to down, drink; guzzle, swig, swill ~ 2. to brew ~ 3. cold; light; strong ~ 4. near ~ 5. (soft drinks) ginger; root ~ 6. draft ~ 7. a barrel; bottle; can; glass; keg; mug, stein of ~ 8. ~ on tap

beet *n.* 1. (a) sugar ~ 2. (misc.) as red as a ~ (AE; BE has: as red as a beetroot)

beetle off *v.* (BE; slang) (“to hurry”) (P; intr.) to ~ to London; to ~ home (the variants *beetle, beetle along, beetle away* also occur)

beg *v.* 1. to ~ humbly 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for; from (they ~ged for help/mercy; they ~ged her for help/mercy; they ~ged money from strangers) 3. (formal) (d; tr.) to ~ of (I must ~ a favor of you) 4. (E) they ~ged to be allowed to go; I ~ to differ 5. (H) they ~ged her to help 6. (L; subj.) he ~ged that his family be/should be spared 7. (misc.) please spare my family, I ~ of you! ; to go ~ging (“to be unwanted”) (those jobs went ~ging)

begging *n.* to live by ~

begin *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ as (to ~ as a clerk; to ~ a new career as a teacher) 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ at (prices ~ at five dollars; they began the bidding at fifty dollars) 3. (D; intr.; tr.) to ~ by, with (they began (the meeting) by saying a prayer; or: they began (the meeting) with a prayer; let’s ~ with you) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ on (they began on a new case) 5. (E) she began to work 6. (G) she began working 7. (misc.) to ~ with (to ~ with, let’s consider climate change); “To ~ at the beginning” – Dylan Thomas, *Under Milk Wood* (1954)

beginner *n.* an absolute, complete, rank ~

beginning *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. to mark a ~ 3. an auspicious, promising; fresh, new ~ 4. at, in the ~ (“To begin at the ~” – Dylan Thomas, *Under Milk Wood* (1954); “In the ~ God created the heaven(s) and the earth” – *The Bible*: *Genesis* 1.1) 5. from (the) ~ (from ~ to end; from the very ~)

begrudge *v.* (O; can be used with one inanimate object) he ~s us our success

beguile *v.* (formal) 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (he ~d me into lending him money) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ out of 3. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ children with stories)

behalf *n.* in (AE), on smb.’s ~ USAGE NOTE: Some purists maintain that in AE *in smb.’s behalf* means “for smb.’s benefit”, whereas *on smb.’s behalf* means “as smb.’s representative”.

behave *v.* 1. to ~ appropriately; normally; responsibly; well 2. to ~ badly, poorly; inappropriately; irresponsibly; strangely 3. (d; intr.) to ~ like (he ~d like a gentleman) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ towards (how did they ~ towards you?) 5. (misc.) to behave as if, (colloq.) like (to ~ as if an eclipse were an everyday event; how did they ~ when you were around?; if you behave well towards others will they ~ accordingly?)

behavior, behaviour *n.* 1. to change; display, exhibit ~ (to exhibit strange ~) 2. appropriate; diplomatic; disciplined; exemplary; good; model; modest; normal; responsible ~ 3. inappropriate; inconsiderate; inexcusable; obsequious; unacceptable; unbecoming; undignified; undiplomatic; undisciplined; unethical; unruly; unsportsmanlike ~ 4. abnormal; antisocial; asocial; bad; criminal; delinquent; disruptive ~ 5. infantile; irresponsible; willful ~ 6. irrational; neurotic; odd, strange; unorthodox ~ 7. promiscuous; provocative; scandalous ~ 8. sullen; suspicious ~ 9. ~ towards 10. on one’s ~ (to be on one’s best ~) 11. a code, standard; pattern of ~ 12. (misc.) she got time off for good ~ (in prison) USAGE NOTE: Nowadays *behaviors* is used often, esp. in technical contexts, to mean ‘instances, types, or patterns of behavior’ – “continuing recourse to addictive substances or behaviours.” (British National Corpus)

behest *n.* at smb.'s ~ (at her ~, everyone attended the meeting)

behind *adv.*, *prep.* 1. to fall, lag ~ 2. to remain, stay ~ 3. to leave ~ 4. close ~ 5. ~ by (our team is ~ by two points = our team is two points ~) 6. ~ in, with (he's ~ with his payments) 7. (misc.) to be solidly ~ smb. ("to support smb. wholeheartedly")

beholden *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ for; to (we are ~ to nobody for anything)

behoove (AE), **behove** (BE) *v.* (R) (formal) it ~s them to help the needy; it ill ~s you to speak like that

being *n.* 1. to bring into ~; to come into ~ 2. a celestial; divine; extraterrestrial; human; living; mortal; rational; supernatural ~ 3. the Supreme Being

belch I *n.* 1. to emit, give, let out a ~ 2. to stifle, suppress a ~

belch II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ from (smoke ~ed from the chimney)

belief *n.* 1. to cling to; express; hold a ~ 2. to shake smb.'s ~ 3. to give up, relinquish, renounce one's ~ 4. an ardent, firm, sincere, strong, unshakable; basic; deeply rooted, deep-rooted ~ 5. an erroneous, false, mistaken; fanatical ~ 6. a popular; unpopular ~ 7. a personal; prevalent, widespread ~ 8. political; religious ~s 9. a ~ in (nothing will shake his ~ in ghosts) 10. a ~ that + clause (it is their firm ~ that the earth is flat) 11. beyond ~ 12. in the ~ that… (in the firm but mistaken ~ that the earth is flat) 13. (misc.) against smb.'s ~s; a set of ~s

believe *v.* 1. to ~ firmly, sincerely, strongly; mistakenly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in ghosts) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ of (I can't ~ it of him!) 4. (L) they ~ firmly but mistakenly that the earth is flat 5. (M) they all ~ the story to be true 6. (misc.) I ~ so = so I ~; I ~ not; it is popularly/widely ~d that…; ~ it or not; you would not ~ how much she has improved!

believer *n.* 1. an ardent, firm, great, sincere, staunch, strong; true ~ 2. a ~ in (he's no ~ in miracles)

bell *n.* 1. to cast a ~ 2. to hear; ring, sound a ~ 3. to answer the ~ (in boxing) 4. a church; door ~ (see also **doorbell**) 5. a diving ~ 6. wedding ~s 7. a ~ chimes, clangs, peals, rings, sounds, tolls 8. (misc.) (boxing) to come out for the ~; to ring a ~ ("to remind smb. of smt.")

bellboy, bellhop *n.* (AE) a hotel ~ (BE has *(hotel) page*)

belligerency *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, exhibit ~ 2. a state of ~ 3. ~ towards

belligerent *adj.* ~ towards

bellow *v.* 1. (B) he ~ed a command to his platoon 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ at (the sergeant was ~ing orders at her squad) 3. (L) he ~ed (to us) that he would fight any man at the bar 4. (misc.) he ~ed to his platoon to charge = "charge!" he ~ed to his platoon

bellows *n.* 1. to operate, use ~ 2. a pair of ~

bellyache *v.* (slang) (D; intr.) ("to complain") to ~ about

belong *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to deserve to be") to ~ in (he ~s in jail) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to be owned by") (the book ~s to her) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to be a member of") (to ~ to an organization) 4. (d; intr.) ("to be appropriate") to ~ under (this item ~s under a different heading) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ with (these books ~ with the works on history)

belongings *n.* smb.'s earthly; personal ~

below I *adv.* 1. to go ~ 2. down ~ 3. far, way, well ~

below II *prep.* 1. far, way, well ~ 2. ~ in (to be far ~ smb. in rank)

belt I *n.* ["band"] 1. to buckle, do up, fasten one's ~ 2. (also fig.) to tighten one's ~ 3. to loosen; unbuckle, undo, unfasten one's ~ 4. a lap, safety, seat, shoulder; life; trouser ~ 5. a fan ~ 6. a money ~ 7. a cartridge; Sam Browne ~ 8. a garter (AE), suspender (BE) ~ 9. a conveyor; endless ~ 10. (usu. fig.) below the ~ ("unfairly") ["zone"] (AE) 11. the Bible; corn; cotton; green (BE) ~ ["belt worn as a symbol of expertise in a martial art"] 12. a black; brown; white ~ ["misc."] 13. under one's ~ ("experienced, lived through")

belt II *v.* (colloq.) ["hit"] 1. (d. tr.) to ~ in; on (I ~ed him in the face) 2. (O) I ~ed him one 3. (misc.) I ~ed him one in the face

bench *n.* ["judge's seat"] 1. from the ~ (a reprimand from the ~) 2. on the ~ (who will be on the ~ during her trial?) ["places in Parliament"] 3. (from; on) the backbenches; crossbenches; frontbench(es); government ~es; opposition ~es (there was anger on the government ~es and cheers from the opposition ~es) ["place where reserve players sit"] 4. (esp. AE) on the ~ (he spent ten minutes on the ~) ["table"] 5. a carpenter's; work ~ 6. at one's ~ ["long seat"] 7. a park ~ 8. on a ~

bend I *n.* 1. to make a ~ (the river makes a ~) 2. a horseshoe; sharp; slight ~ (in) (a sharp bend in the river) 3. a knee ~ 4. (misc.) (colloq.) (BE) round the ~ ("mentally unsound")

bend II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into; out of (she bent the bar into the right shape; the steering wheel is bent out of shape) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ at, to (she bent at the waist to pick up the book; the road ~s to the right; she cannot ~ them to her will) 3. (misc.) to ~ double; she bent down and picked up the book; they bent over backwards to please ("they made every effort to be helpful")

bender *n.* (colloq.) ["drunken spree"] to go on a ~

benediction *n.* 1. to give, offer, pronounce the ~ 2. to pronounce a ~ over

beneficial *adj.* 1. mutually ~ 2. ~ for, to (~ to health) 3. ~ to + inf. (it would be ~ (for you) to keep abreast of developments in Asia)

beneficiary *n.* 1. to name a ~; to name smb. (as) (a) ~ 2. a chief, main, principal ~

benefit I *n.* 1. to derive, get, reap (a) ~ from 2. to enjoy, have; provide a ~ (she had the ~ of a good education, which provides many ~s in later life) 3.

a death; sickness (BE); supplementary (BE); tax ~ (see also **fringe benefits**) 4. a mutual; tangible ~ 5. to be of ~ to 6. for, to smb.'s ~ (for our mutual ~) 7. (misc.) with the ~ of; without the ~ of (Shakespeare wrote his plays without the ~ of a computer); without ~ of clergy (see also **benefits**; *with the benefit of hindsight* at **hindsight**; *to give smb. the ~ of the doubt* at **doubt I**)

benefit II *v.* (D; intr.; tr.) to ~ by, from (she ~ed from a good education, which ~ed her in many ways in later life; will the rich ~ by/from the new tax laws? = will the new tax laws ~ the rich?)

benefits *n.* 1. to provide ~ 2. to collect; reap ~ 3. to withhold ~ 4. disability; health-care; old-age; retirement; social-security; strike; survivors' (AE); unemployment; veterans'; welfare; workers' ~ (see also **fringe benefits**)

benevolent *adj.* ~ towards

bent I *adj.* ["determined, hell-bent"] 1. ~ on (he was ~ on getting himself hurt; ~ on mischief) ["curved"] 2. ~ double

bent II *n.* ["propensity"] 1. to have; show a ~ for (from an early age she showed a ~ for music) 2. to follow one's (own) ~ 3. an artistic; decided; natural; peculiar ~ 4. with a ~ (a child with a musical ~ = a child with a ~ for music)

bequeath *v.* (formal) (A) she ~ed her fortune to him; or: she ~ed him her fortune

bequest *n.* 1. to leave, make a ~ 2. a ~ from; of; to (the ~ of her fortune from her to him)

berate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for

bereavement *n.* 1. to have suffered a recent ~ 2. in one's ~

bereft *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ["stripped"] ~ of (~ of all hope; ~ of one's senses) USAGE NOTE: In the meaning "having recently lost a dear one", the form *bereaved* is used – the bereaved parents.

berry *n.* to pick ~ies

berserk *adj.* to go ~

berth *n.* 1. to make up a ~ 2. a lower; sleeping; upper ~ 3. (misc.) to give smb./smt. a wide ~ ("to avoid smb./smt.")

beseech *v.* (formal) 1. (H) to ~ smb. to show mercy 2. (misc.) have mercy, I ~ you!

beset *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ by, with (~ by doubts)

beside *prep.* to be ~ oneself with (he was ~ himself with grief)

besiege *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smb. with questions)

besotted *adj.* ~ with (~ with drink/love)

best I *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ not to speak of it in public) 2. ~ that + clause; subj. (it is ~ that she say/should say nothing to the press) USAGE NOTE: In BE the following construction also occurs – *it is best that she says nothing to the press*. 3. (the) ~ at (she's ~ at some things but I'm ~ at others) 4. ~ for (what's ~ for her isn't necessarily (the) ~ for me) (see also **second best**)

best II *adv.* see **better II** *adv.* 1

best III *n.* 1. to do, give; try one's (level/very) ~ 2. to make the ~ (of smt.) 3. to get the ~ (of smb.) 4. to look one's ~ 5. to bring out the ~ in smb. 6. one's level ~ 7. next, second ~ 8. one's ~ to + inf. (she tried her ~ to finish the job on time) 9. at ~ (at ~, our team may win five matches) 10. at one's ~ (she is not at her ~ in the morning) 11. for the ~ (it turned out for the ~; to hope for the ~; it's all for the ~) 12. in the ~ of (he's not in the ~ of health) 13. in one's Sunday ~ 14. to the ~ of (to the ~ of my ability) 15. (misc.) (colloq.) (AE) give my ~ to your family; ~ of all

bestir *v.* (formal) (d; refl.) we must ~ ourselves (in order/if we want) to get there on time

bestow *v.* (formal) (d; tr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ an honor on smb.)

bestrew *v.* (formal) (d; tr.) to ~ with (the field was bestrewn with bodies)

bet I *n.* 1. to lose; make; win a ~ 2. to have; place a ~ on; with (she placed a ~ with a bookie on her team to win) 3. to accept, take a ~ 4. a good, safe, sure ~ 5. a side ~ 6. a ~ that + clause (she made a ~ that her team would win; it was her ~ that her team would win) 7. as, for, on a ~ (he did it on a ~) 8. (misc.) to hedge one's ~s ("to protect oneself by placing several bets")

bet II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ on (he bet on that horse; he bet a month's salary on that horse) 2. (L; may have an object) he bet (me) that it would rain 3. (O; can be used with one object, two objects, one object + *that*-clause, or two objects + *that*-clause) we bet ten pounds; we bet him ten pounds; we bet ten pounds that it would rain; we bet him ten pounds that it would rain 4. (misc.) (colloq.) to ~ one's bottom dollar (esp. AE), to ~ one's life ("is it going to rain?" "you ~ your life it will!"); you ~! ("is it going to rain?" "you ~!")

betake *v.* (formal and obsol.) (P; refl.) he betook himself to the fair

betray *v.* (B) the informer ~ed them to the police

betroth *v.* (B) they were ~ed to each other at an early age

betrothal *n.* 1. to announce a ~ 2. a ~ to

better I *adj.* 1. any; far, (very) much; a little; a lot; no; somewhat ~ (is she any ~ today?) 2. ~ at (he is ~ at tennis than (he is) at squash) 3. ~ for (the new job is much ~ for me) 4. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to give than to receive; it is ~ for us to leave early) 5. ~ that + clause; subj. (it's ~ that she go/should go alone) USAGE NOTE: In BE, the following constructions also occur: *it's better that she goes/went alone*. 6. (misc.) he is no ~ than a common thief

better II *adv.* 1. he had ~ do it; they had ~ come early 2. to be ~ off

better III *n.* 1. to get the ~ of smb. 2. to expect; think ~ of smt. 3. for the ~ (a change for the ~; to take a turn for the ~)

betting *n.* off-track; parimutuel (AE), totalizator (BE) ~

between *adv.* 1. in ~ 2. few and far ~

beverage *n.* 1. an alcoholic; carbonated; intoxicating; non-alcoholic ~ 2. cold; hot ~s

beware *v.* (D; intr.; only in the imper.) ~ of (~ of the dog!)

bewildered *adj.* 1. ~ at, by (she was ~ by their absence) 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to find them gone) 3. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that they were gone)

bewildering *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for her to find them gone)

bewilderment *n.* 1. in ~ 2. ~ that + clause (she reacted in ~ that they had gone)

beyond *adv.* 1. far, way, well ~ 2. (misc.) above and ~ the call of duty; the back of ~ (colloq.) ("the middle of nowhere")

bias I *n.* ["prejudice"] 1. to demonstrate, display, exhibit, have, show (a) ~ 2. to root out ~ 3. deep-rooted, strong; personal ~ 4. racial; religious; sexual ~ 5. a ~ against; for, in favor of; towards 6. with; without ~ ["diagonal line"] 7. on the ~ (to cut on the ~)

bias II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ against; in favor of (their upbringing ~ed them against all foreigners)

biased *adj.* 1. strongly ~ 2. ~ against; in favor of; towards (they were strongly ~ against all foreigners)

Bible *n.* 1. the Holy ~ 2. in the ~

bibliography *n.* 1. to compile, make up, put together a ~ 2. an annotated; comprehensive; exhaustive; select, selective ~

bicentenary *n.* to celebrate, mark, observe a ~

bicentennial (esp. AE) see **bicentenary**

bicker *v.* (D; intr.) 1. to ~ constantly, incessantly 2. to ~ about, over; with

bickering *n.* 1. constant, incessant ~ 2. ~ about, over 3. ~ between; with

bicycle *n.* 1. to pedal, ride a ~ 2. to get on, mount; get off; push, walk, wheel a ~ 3. an exercise, stationary; racing ~ 4. by ~ (to go somewhere by ~)

bid I *n.* ["bidding of an amount"] 1. to enter, file, make, put in, submit a ~ 2. to call for, invite ~s 3. to raise one's ~ 4. to consider, entertain a ~ 5. to accept; reject, turn down a ~ 6. to recall a ~ 7. an opening; sealed ~ 8. a rescue; (hostile) takeover ~ 9. the highest; lowest ~ 10. a ~ for, on (she made a ~ on the painting) ["attempt"] 11. to make a ~ 12. a desperate ~ 13. a ~ for (they made a ~ for control of the company) 14. a ~ to + inf. (they made a ~ to take over the company; a rescue ~ to bail out an ailing company) 15. in a ~ (in a ~ for power; in their ~ to take over the company, they made many enemies; in a desperate ~ for freedom)

bid II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ against (at the auction, he and she bid against each other for the vase) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she bid twenty pounds for the vase) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ for, on (to ~ on a contract)

bid III *v.* 1. (formal) (A) she bade farewell to them; or: she bade them farewell 2. (obsol.) (H) to ~ smb. to do smt. 3. (obsol.) (I) to ~ smb. do smt. 4. (misc.) "Love bade me welcome; yet my soul drew back" – George Herbert (1593–1633), "Love"

bidder *n.* the highest; lowest ~

bidding *n.* ["offering of bids"] 1. to close; open the ~ 2. competitive; spirited ~ ["request"] 3. to do smb.'s ~ 4. at smb.'s ~

big *adj.* ["kind"] ["good"] (colloq., ironical) 1. ~ of (that's ~ of you) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to do that) ["older"] 3. a ~ boy; brother; girl; sister ["very powerful"] 4. ~ business; government; labor ["misc."] 5. great ~ (I saw a great ~ bear in the woods!)

bigamy *n.* to commit; practice ~

bigot *n.* a fanatical, narrow-minded, vicious; religious ~

bigoted *adj.* 1. strongly ~ 2. ~ against 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to say that)

bigotry *n.* 1. to arouse, stir up ~ 2. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 3. fanatical, ingrained, narrow-minded, vicious; religious ~ 4. ~ against

big time *n.* to get into, reach the ~

bike *n.* 1. to ride a ~ 2. a mountain ~ (see **bicycle**)

bilingual *adj.* 1. completely ~ 2. ~ in (they're completely ~ in Dutch and English)

bilk *v.* (esp. AE) (D; tr.) to ~ out of (they ~ed us out of the money)

bill I *n.* ["proposed law"] 1. to amend; draft; introduce, propose; oppose; pass; support a ~; to sign a ~ into law 2. to move; railroad a ~ through a legislature 3. to quash, reject, vote down; veto a ~ 4. to shelve a ~ 5. an appropriations; revenue, tax ~ ["banknote"] (AE) 6. to break, change; pass a ~ 7. a counterfeit; five-dollar ~ (BE has *note*, as in *a five-pound note*) 8. marked ~s ["statement of money owed"] ["debt"] 9. to run up a ~ 10. to itemize; submit a ~ 11. to foot (colloq.), pay; pick up; settle a ~ 12. a hospital, medical; hotel; telephone; utility (electric; gas; water) ~ 13. a ~ falls due, matures 14. (misc.) to put smt. on smb.'s ~ ["poster"] 15. to post, stick (BE) a ~ (post no ~s!) ["misc."] 16. to fill, fit the ~ ("to meet all requirements") ["restaurant check"] ["bill for a meal"] (BE) 17. (misc.) to ask (the waiter) for the ~ (see also *bill of fare* at **fare**) ["misc."] 18. a double ~ ("a double feature")

bill II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to describe") to ~ as (she was ~ed as a leading expert) 2. (D; tr.) ("to charge") to ~ for (the doctor did not ~ them for the visit) 3. (H) ("to cast"); ("to announce") he was ~ed to appear as Hamlet 4. (O; may be used with one object) the doctor ~ed (them) fifty pounds for the visit

billet I *n.* an officers' ~

billet II *v.* (esp. mil.) (D; tr.) ("to assign to a lodging place") to ~ among; on, upon, with (to ~ troops on the local population)

billiards *n.* 1. to play ~ 2. (BE) bar ~

billing *n.* ["prominence in advertising, promotion"] 1. to get, receive ~ 2. advance; star, top ~ (to get top ~)

bill of health *n.* ["approval"] 1. to give smb. a clean ~ 2. to get, receive; have a clean ~

bill of sale *n.* to make up, prepare a ~

bin *n.* 1. (BE) a dustbin, litter, rubbish; wheelie ~ 2. a storage ~ 3. in; into a ~ 4. (misc.) a ~ liner

("a bag that lines a bin and can be removed from it when full")

bind I *n.* ["trouble"] ["dilemma"] 1. a double ~ 2. in a ~

bind II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to put together") to ~ in (to ~ a book in leather) 2. (D; tr.) ("to tie") to ~ to (they bound him to a post) 3. (D; tr.) ("to require") to ~ to (to ~ smb. to secrecy) 4. (H) ("to require") the contract ~s you to pay interest 5. (misc.) to ~ hand and foot; to ~ together

binder *n.* ["deposit of money"] (esp. AE) 1. to place, put down a ~ on ["holder for sheets of paper"] 2. a loose-leaf; ring ~ ["broad bandage"] (AE) 3. to apply a ~ 4. an abdominal; breast; straight ~

binding I *adj.* 1. legally ~ 2. ~ on, upon (the agreement is ~ on you)

binding II *n.* ["fastening of the sections of a book"] 1. a handsome; leather ~ 2. in a ~ (the book is in a leather ~) ["narrow strip of fabric"] 3. to sew on, tack on a ~

bind over *v.* (legal) 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (she was bound over to the grand jury) 2. (BE) (H) she was bound over to keep the peace

binge I *n.* (colloq.) ["a drunken spree"] 1. to go on a (weekend) ~ ["unrestrained activity"] 2. a shopping ~

binge II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on sweets)

binoculars *n.* 1. to adjust, focus; train ~ on 2. high-powered, powerful ~ 3. a pair of ~ 4. (misc.) to watch smt. through/with ~

biography *n.* an authorized; critical; unauthorized ~

biology *n.* marine; molecular ~

bird *n.* 1. game; land; migratory; tropical; wading; water; woodland ~s 2. ~s of passage; ~s of prey 3. (usu. fig.) a rare ~ 4. ~s chirp, twitter, warble; sing 5. ~s flap their wings; fly; migrate; soar 6. ~s build nests; flock together; molt; peck 7. a covey; flock of ~s 8. (misc.) to ring ~s (for scientific purposes); a ~ in the hand ("smt. already possessed"); ~s of a feather ("people with similar characteristics, tastes, and standards"); as free as a ~ ("absolutely free"); to kill two ~s with one stone ("to accomplish two goals with one action")

bird call *n.* to do, imitate a ~

birdwatching *n.* to go in for, take up ~ (as a hobby)

birth *n.* ["bringing, coming into life"] 1. to give ~ (she gave ~ to twins) 2. to announce; register a ~ 3. a breech; caesarean; live, viable; multiple; normal; premature ~; stillbirth; birthplace = place of ~ 4. at ~ (she weighed seven pounds at ~) ["origin"] 5. by ~ (he's Spanish by ~) 6. of ~ (of noble ~)

birth control *n.* to practice ~

birthday *n.* 1. to attain (formal), have, reach a ~ 2. to celebrate, mark a ~ 3. at, on a ~ (on her tenth ~) 4. happy ~! (to wish smb. a happy ~)

birth pangs *n.* to endure, suffer ~

birthrate *n.* 1. a falling; high; low; rising; stable ~ 2. the crude ~

birthright *n.* a natural ~

biscuit *n.* 1. to bake ~s 2. a sweet ~ (BE; AE has *cookie*) 3. a cream ~ (BE; AE has *sandwich cookie*) 4. baking-powder; soda; tea ~s 5. (misc.) to take the ~ ("to be the best or worst") (BE; CE has *to take the cake*)

bishop *n.* 1. to ordain a ~ 2. an Anglican, Episcopal; Catholic; Orthodox ~ 3. ~ of (the Anglican Bishop of Birmingham)

bison *n.* a herd of ~

bit I *n.* ["share"] 1. to do one's ~ ["small piece, small amount"] 2. a tiny ~ 3. (misc.) every ~ ("all, entirely"); ~ by ~ ("little by little"); he's a ~ of a snob ("he is something of a snob"); she's not the least ~ upset ("she's not at all upset"); wait a ~ ("wait a little"); to blow to ~s ("to destroy completely"); to fall to ~s ("to disintegrate") ["misc."] 4. ~s and bobs (BE), ~s and pieces; two ~s (AE) ("twenty-five cents"); he has a ~ on the side (colloq.) (BE) ("he has a mistress")

bit II *n.* ["mouthpiece on a horse's bridle"] 1. to chafe, champ at the ~ (also fig.) 2. to take the ~ (between one's teeth) (also fig.)

bitch *v.* (slang; vulgar) (D; intr.) to ~ about (they're always ~ing about the food)

bitchy *adj.* (slang; vulgar) ["nasty"] ~ about

bite I *n.* ["act of biting"] ["result of biting"] 1. to have, take a ~ (she took a ~ (out) of the apple) 2. an animal; dog; insect; mosquito; snake ~ ["ability to bite"] 3. a powerful ~ (the large dog has a powerful ~) ["snack"] 4. to grab, have a ~ (to eat) 5. a quick ~ ["request for a loan"] (colloq.) (esp. AE) 6. to put the ~ on smb. ["amount of money deducted"] (colloq.) 7. to take a ~ from, out of (the wage tax takes quite a ~ from his paycheck)

bite II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (also fig.) (to ~ at the bait) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ into, on; through (she bit into the apple)

bitter I *adj.* ~ about, over (he was ~ about his lot)

bitter II *n.* to take the ~ (with the sweet)

bitterness *n.* 1. to feel ~ 2. a touch of ~ 3. ~ about, over; between; towards

bivouac *n.* 1. to go on; set up a ~ 2. to be on ~

bizarre *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ (for us) to have run into each other in such a remote corner of the world) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that we ran/should have run into each other in such a remote corner of the world)

blab *v.* 1. (B) she ~bed smt. to him 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about

blabber *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about

black *adj.*, *n.* ["profit"] 1. in the ~ (to operate in the ~) ["sign of mourning"] 2. to dress in, wear ~ ["dark color"] 3. to go, turn ~ 4. coal, jet, pitch ~ 5. (misc.) as ~ as coal; a shade of ~ ["misc."] 6. to put smt. down in ~ and white ("to write smt. down")

blackboard *n.* 1. to clean, wash; erase (esp. AE) a ~ 2. to write on the ~ 3. at; on the ~ (two pupils were at the ~ writing on the ~) 4. (misc.) to send a pupil to the ~

blacklist *n.* on a ~

black magic *n.* to practice ~

blackmail I *n.* 1. to commit ~ 2. emotional ~ (to use emotional ~ (on smb.))

blackmail II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into doing smt.)

black market *n.* 1. a ~ in (a ~ in rationed goods) 2. on the ~ (to buy rationed goods on the ~)

black-marketing, black-marketeering *n.* to engage in, to go in for ~

blackout *n.* ["extinguishing or concealment of all lights, as during wartime"] 1. to impose, order a ~ 2. to observe a ~ ["suppression of news"] 3. to impose, order a ~ 4. to lift a ~ 5. to violate a ~ 6. a media; news ~ ["period of unconsciousness"] 7. to have a ~

bladder *n.* 1. to empty one's ~ 2. a full ~

blade *n.* 1. to sharpen a ~ 2. a blunt, dull; sharp ~ 3. a rotary ~ 4. a razor; sword ~

blame I *n.* 1. to ascribe, assign, attribute (the) ~ to smb. 2. to lay, pin, place, put the ~ on smb.; to lay the ~ (fairly and squarely) at smb.'s door 3. to assess; fix the ~ 4. to shift the ~ (on) to smb. (else) 5. to assume, bear, take; get; share the ~ for (she took the ~ for my mistake) 6. to absolve smb. of all ~ for 7. the ~ falls on smb., the ~ lies with smb.

blame II *v.* 1. to ~ unfairly, unjustly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (they ~d her for the accident; I don't ~ you for getting angry!) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ on (they ~d the accident on her; they ~d the fire on defective wiring) 4. to be to ~ for (I am not to ~ for the accident)

blanch *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (he ~ed at the sight of the mutilated corpse) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with fear)

blank I *adj.* to go ~ (my mind went completely ~)

blank II *n.* ["empty space"] 1. to fill in the ~s (as on a questionnaire) (see also **entry blank**) 2. (misc.) my mind was a complete ~ ["blank cartridge"] 3. to fire a ~ ["misc."] 4. to draw a ~ ("to achieve no result")

blanket *n.* 1. a bath; electric; receiving; saddle; sheet ~ 2. a security ~ (also fig.) 3. under a ~

blasé *adj.* ~ about (they were very ~ about winning first prize)

blaspheme *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ against (to ~ against God)

blasphemous *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for/of them to speak in that manner)

blasphemy *n.* to commit; utter (a) ~ against

blast I *n.* ["explosion"] 1. to set off a ~ ["gust of wind"] 2. an icy ~ ["verbal attack"] 3. to issue a ~ against 4. a vicious, withering ~ ["misc."] 5. (at) full ~ (the work was proceeding at full ~)

blast II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ through (a tunnel was ~ed through the rock)

blather I *n.* ["nonsense"] 1. sheer, utter ~ 2. ~ about

blather II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ (on) about

blaze I *n.* 1. to control; fight a ~ 2. to extinguish, put out a ~

blaze II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (her eyes ~d with anger)

blaze away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at the enemy)

blazes *n.* go to ~! ("damn you!")

bleach *n.* liquid ~

bleachers *n.* (AE) to sit in the ~ (compare **stands**)

bleed *v.* 1. to ~ profusely, uncontrollably 2. (fig.) (D; intr.) to ~ for (my heart ~s for him) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from the nose) 4. (N; used with an adjective) to ~ smb. white 5. (misc.) to ~ to death

bleeding *n.* 1. to staunch, stem, stop (the) ~ 2. heavy, profuse, uncontrollable ~ 3. internal; menopausal ~ 4. ~ from (~ from the rectum)

blemish *n.* a minor; ugly ~

blench *v.* (D; intr.) ("to flinch") to ~ at (he ~ed at the sight)

blend *v.* 1. to ~ together (their voices ~ together well) 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ into (she ~ed into the crowd) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (water does not ~ with oil)

blend in *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (she ~ed in with the crowd)

bless *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she ~ed me for my help) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (we are ~ed with good health)

blessing *n.* 1. to give, make, pronounce, say a ~ over 2. to chant a ~ 3. to give one's ~ to; to bestow one's ~ on 4. to ask for God's ~ 5. a divine; priestly ~; God's ~ 6. a ~ for, to (it was a ~ for us) 7. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ (for us) not to have to make the trip) 8. a ~ that + clause (it was a ~ that we didn't have to make the trip) 9. (misc.) a mixed ~; a ~ in disguise; to count one's ~s; to ask a ~ (before a meal); to have smb.'s ~, with smb.'s ~ (do it with my ~! = do it! you have my ~!)

blight *n.* 1. to cast, put a ~ on, upon 2. a potato ~ 3. urban ~ 4. a ~ on (a ~ on smb.'s honor)

blind I *adj.* ["sightless"] 1. to become, go ~ 2. legally; totally ~ 3. (misc.) as ~ as a bat; ~ in one eye; the ~ and the partially sighted ["blinded"] (cannot stand alone) 4. ~ to (~ to danger) 5. ~ with (~ with rage)

blind II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (his infatuation ~ed him to her faults)

blind III (BE) see **window shade**

blindness *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. color; congenital; night; snow ~ 3. (misc.) ~ in one eye

blinds *n.* to adjust; draw; lower; raise the ~ (see also **venetian blinds**)

blind spot *n.* to have a ~ when it comes to smt./smb., to have a ~ where smb./smt. is concerned (he has a ~ when it comes to his own faults = he has a ~ where his own faults are concerned)

blink I *n.* (colloq.) to be on the ~ ("to be out of order")

blink II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at ("to show surprise") (she didn't even ~ at his outrageous proposal)

bliss *n.* 1. to enjoy ~ 2. complete, pure, sheer, total, utter ~ 3. connubial, domestic, marital, nuptial, wedded ~ 4. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to be without a telephone = it was ~ being without a telephone; "Bliss was it in that dawn to be alive" – W. Wordsworth (1770–1850), *The Prelude*) 5. a state of ~

blister *n.* 1. to open a ~ 2. a fever ~ (AE; CE has *cold sore*) 3. a ~ bursts; forms

blizzard *n.* 1. a howling, raging; winter ~ 2. a ~ rages; strikes 3. a ~ blows itself out

bloc *n.* 1. (obsolescent) the Communist; Eastern; NATO; Soviet ~ 2. a military; trade, trading; voting ~

block *n.* ["interruption"] ["obstacle"] 1. (Am. football) to throw a ~ at smb. 2. a mental ~ (when it comes to word games, I have a mental ~) 3. (med.) a heart; nerve; saddle ~ 4. a writer's ~ (see also **road block**; **stumbling block**) ["street"] ["city square"] (AE) 5. a city ~ (the building occupies an entire city ~) 6. around the ~; in, on a ~ (they went around the ~; they live in this ~) ["big building"] (BE) 7. a council ~ 8. an office; tower ~ ("a high-rise apartment house") 9. (misc.) a ~ of flats; (CE) a cell ~ (in a prison) ["platform, work surface"] 10. a butcher's; chopping; headsman's ~ ["auctioneer's platform"] 11. the auction ~ 12. on the ~ ("being auctioned") ["group"] ["bloc"] 13. a trade ~ ["rectangular unit used in construction"] 14. a building; cinder; concrete ~ ["support"] ["brace"] 15. a starting ~ (for a runner) ["section of text"] (computers) 16. to copy; delete; end; move a ~ ["misc."] 17. to knock smb.'s ~ off ("to punch smb.") (see also *a chip off the old block* at **chip**)

blockade *n.* 1. to impose; maintain a ~ 2. to break (through); lift; run a ~ 3. an economic; naval ~ 4. a ~ against; of, on

blocks *n.* (esp. AE) to play with ~ (BE has *bricks*)

bloke *n.* (colloq.) (BE) a decent, good, nice ~

blonde *n.* an ash; bottle, peroxide; natural; platinum; strawberry ~

blood *n.* 1. to draw, let ~ 2. to cough (up), spit (up); lose; shed, spill ~ 3. to staunch the flow of ~ 4. to donate, give; type ~ 5. blue; pure; royal ~ 6. whole ~ 7. hot ("fiery") ~ 8. ~ cakes; circulates; clots, coagulates, congeals, curdles; flows, runs; oozes, seeps; spurts (~ spurted from the wound) 9. (fig.) smb.'s ~ boils; freezes; runs cold 10. (fig.) ~ tells 11. by ~ (related by ~) 12. of ~ (of royal ~) 13. (misc.) in a pool of ~; to be, run in the ~ ("to be hereditary"); in cold ~ ("without feeling"); to draw first ~ ("to score the first victory"); fresh, new, (esp. BE) young ~ ("new personnel"); old ~ ("old personnel"); (colloq.) tired ~ ("rundown condition of the body"); there is bad ~ between them ("they are feuding"); ~ is thicker than water ("one's family is more important than anyone else"); to make smb.'s ~ run cold ("to terrify smb."); to make smb.'s ~ boil ("to arouse smb.'s anger"); flesh and ~

blood cell *n.* a red; white ~

blood count *n.* 1. to do a ~ (on) 2. to have a ~ (done)

blood pressure *n.* 1. to monitor; take smb.'s ~ 2. elevated, high; labile; low; normal ~

bloodshed *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. to avert, prevent ~

blood test *n.* 1. to do a ~ (on) 2. to have a ~ (done)

blood transfusion *n.* 1. to administer, do, give a ~ 2. to get, have a ~

blood vessel *n.* 1. a constricted; occluded ~ 2. a ~ bursts

bloom *n.* 1. to come into ~ 2. full ~ 3. in ~ (the tulips are in full ~)

bloomer (BE) see **blooper**

blooper *n.* (colloq.) (AE) ["blunder"] 1. to commit, make a ~ 2. a prize ~

blossom I *n.* 1. ~s appear, come out 2. in ~ (the trees/tulips are in ~)

blossom II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ into (their friendship ~ed into true love)

blot *n.* 1. to leave a ~ 2. an ink ~ 3. a ~ on (his actions left a ~ on our name) (see also *a blot on smb.'s escutcheon* at **escutcheon**)

blotter *n.* ["blotting paper"] 1. a ~ absorbs (ink, water) ["record"] 2. a police ~

blouse *n.* a full; peasant; see-through ~

blow I *n.* 1. to deal, deliver, land, strike a ~ (he dealt us a severe ~) 2. to heap, rain ~s on smb. 3. to come to ~s; to exchange ~s 4. to take a ~ (the boxer took several ~s to the head) 5. to cushion, soften; deflect, parry, ward off; dodge a ~ 6. a crippling, crushing, decisive, hammer, hard, heavy, knockout, powerful, resounding, severe, staggering, telling, terrible ~ 7. a bitter, cruel, devastating ~ 8. a fatal, mortal ~ 9. a glancing, light ~ 10. a body ~ 11. indiscriminate ~s (to rain indiscriminate ~s on one's victims) 12. a low ("illegal") ~ (also fig.) 13. an exchange; hail of ~s 14. a ~ against, at (to strike a ~ against poverty) 15. a ~ for (to strike a ~ for freedom) 16. a ~ on, to (a ~ on the head; he took a ~ to the chin; a ~ to smb.'s hopes) 17. a ~ to + inf. (it was a bitter ~ (for us) to learn of their treachery) 18. under ~s (to reel under crushing ~s) 19. a ~ comes (the ~ to his hopes came out of the blue)

blow II *v.* 1. to ~ hard (the wind was ~ing hard) 2. (A; usu. without *to*) she blew him a kiss 3. (d; tr.) to ~ into (the explosion blew him into the water) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ from; off (the wind was ~ing from the west; the wind blew the papers off the table) 5. (D; intr.) to ~ on (~ on the soup: it's too hot) 6. (N; used with an adjective) the wind blew the door shut 7. (misc.) the tank was blown to bits; the ship was blown off course; (slang) he blew ("came") into town

blowout *n.* ["flat tire"] 1. to have a ~ 2. to fix a ~

blow up *v.* ("to enlarge") (D; tr.) to ~ by (to ~ a photograph by twenty percent)

bludgeon *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to force by beating") to ~ into (to ~ smb. into doing smt.) (also fig.) 2. (misc.) to ~ smb. to death

blue *adj.*, *n.* ["color"] 1. bright; dark; deep; light; navy; royal ~ 2. to dress in, wear ~ 3. to go, turn ~ 4. a shade of ~ ["something colored blue"] 5. a patch of ~ 6. in ~ (dressed in ~) ["symbol of belonging to a team at Oxford or Cambridge"] (BE) 7. to get, win one's ~ (as in rowing) (AE has *letter*) ["misc."] 8. out of the ~ ("unexpectedly"); a bolt from/out of the ~ ("smt. unexpected")

blueprint *n.* 1. to draw up, make; have a ~ 2. a ~ for; of (fig.: a ~ for peace)

blues *n.* 1. to sing the ~ (usu. fig.: "to complain") 2. to have the ~ ("to be sad") 3. to banish the ~ ("to overcome sadness") (banish the ~ by positive thinking)

bluff I *n.* ["false threat"] 1. to call smb.'s ~ ("to challenge smb. to carry out a false threat") 2. to fall for smb.'s ~ ("to be deceived by a false threat")

bluff II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into; out of (they ~ed him into making concessions) 2. to be caught ~ing

blunder I *n.* 1. to commit, make a ~ 2. an awful, colossal, costly, egregious, fatal, glaring, grave, monumental, serious, stupid, terrible ~ 3. a tactical ~ 4. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ (for us) to invite them) 5. a series of ~s

blunder II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon ("to happen on") 2. (P; intr.) ("to wander clumsily") they ~ed into the wrong room; she ~ed across the road

blurt out *v.* 1. (B) she ~ed out to us the news of her engagement. 2. (L; to) she ~ed out (to us) that she was engaged 3. (Q; to) she ~ed out (to us) where she had gotten engaged

blush I *n.* 1. a deep ~ 2. (misc.) at first ~ ("at first sight"); in the first ~ of youth ("in early youth")

blush II *v.* 1. to ~ deeply; readily 2. (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at the very thought of what I said) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ for, with (I ~ed with shame at what I said) 4. (E) I ~ to think of what I said ("I blush when I think of what I said") 5. (N) to ~ crimson, scarlet

boar *n.* a wild ~

board *n.* ["ship's deck"] ["train"] ["airplane"] 1. to be on ~; to come, go on ~ (fig.) (if we can get her on ~, we're bound to succeed) ["commission"] 2. an advisory; draft (AE); editorial; executive; liquor-control (AE); parole; school; zoning ~ 3. on a ~ (to serve/sit on a ~) 4. (misc.) a ~ of directors; a ~ of education; a ~ of governors; a ~ of management; a ~ of trustees; a seat on a ~ ["footboard"] 5. a running ~ (on a car) ["flat surface"] 6. a baseboard (AE), skirting (BE) ~ 7. a bulletin (AE), notice (BE) ~ 8. a cheese ~ (with several kinds of cheese on it); checkerboard (AE), draughtboard (BE); chessboard; dart ~ 9. a cutting; diving; drawing; ironing ~ USAGE NOTE: The phrase "back to the drawing board" can also mean 'back to square one.' 10. an emery ~ ["misc."] 11. an electronic bulletin ~; a sounding ~; across the ~ ("for everyone") (an across-the-board pay rise); to go by the ~ ("to go to waste or be disregarded")

boarder *n.* ["lodger"] to have, keep (AE), take in ~s

boards *n.* (esp. AE) ["qualifying examination"] 1. to pass; take one's ~ 2. college; state ~

boast I *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. an empty, idle, vain; proud ~ 3. ~ that + clause (it was their ~ (to the reporters) that they had seen all of the new plays)

boast II *v.* 1. to ~ idly; openly; proudly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about, of; to (to ~ of one's success) 3. (L; to) they ~ed (to the reporters) that they had seen all of the new plays

boastful *adj.* ~ about, of

boat *n.* 1. to dock, moor; pilot; row; sail; steer a ~ 2. to launch, lower a ~ 3. to board, get into, get on, get onto; take a ~ 4. to disembark from, get off a ~ 5. to capsize, overturn, swamp, upset a ~ 6. an assault ~; gunboat; mosquito, PT (AE; BE has *MTB*); patrol; torpedo ~ (see also **lifeboat**) 7. a fishing ~; rowboat (AE), rowing (BE) ~; sailboat (AE), sailing (BE) ~; steamboat 8. a flying ~ 9. a ~ capsizes, overturns; docks; goes, sails; heaves; leaks; pitches; rolls; sinks 10. a ~ for; from; to 11. by ~ (to cross a river by ~) 12. in; on a ~ (to cross a river in a ~ and sleep on the ~) 13. (misc.) to be in the same ~ ("to be in the same circumstances"); to miss the ~ ("to let an opportunity slip by"); to push the ~ out (BE; colloq.) ("to make a special effort, esp. to celebrate"); to rock the ~ ("to cause a disruption")

bob *v.* to ~ up and down (in the water)

bobsled, bobsleigh *n.* to ride a ~; to race on ~s

bode *v.* (formal) 1. (O) (can be used with one object) this ~s (us) no good 2. (P; intr.) this ~s ill/well for us

body *n.* ["substance"] ["firmness"] 1. to give ~ to ["group"] ["unit"] 2. an advisory; deliberative; elected; governing; legislative; student ~; the ~ politic 3. in a ~ (they presented their petition in a ~) ["physical object"] 4. a foreign ~ (to remove a foreign ~ from one's eye) 5. a gaseous; liquid; solid ~ 6. a celestial, heavenly; the main ~ (a heavenly ~ was found far from the main ~ of the galaxy) ["corpse"] 7. to bury; cremate; embalm; exhume a ~ 8. a bloated; dead; decomposing ~ 9. in; on a ~ (a bullet was found in the ~ and a suicide note was found on the ~) ["physical structure of a person"] 10. to build up, condition, strengthen one's ~ 11. to sell one's ~ (as a prostitute) 12. a healthy; unhealthy ~ 13. (colloq.) the ~ beautiful ["misc."] 14. to keep ~ and soul together ("to have just enough to live on")

bodyguard *n.* a personal ~

bog *n.* a peat ~

bogged down *adj.* to be; get ~ in; with (they got ~ in the swamp; to be ~ with paperwork)

boggle *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ at (the mind ~s at the idea)

boil I *n.* ["state of boiling"] 1. to bring to a (AE)/to the (BE) ~ (bring the milk to a ~) 2. to come to a (AE)/to the (BE) ~ (the water must first come to the ~) 3. to go off the ~ (usu. fig.) (our team went off the ~ in the second half and lost the match)

boil II *v.* 1. to ~ gently; hard; to put a kettle on to ~ 2. (C) he ~ed an egg for her; or: he ~ed her an egg 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to be ~ing with rage)

boil III *n.* (med.) ["furuncle"] 1. to lance a ~ 2. a ~ comes to a head, erupts 3. to apply hot compresses to a ~

boil down *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ to (it all ~s down to one simple fact) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (she ~ed the whole story down to one paragraph)

boiler *n.* a ~ bursts, ruptures; cracks

boiling-point *n.* to be at; reach (the) ~

boil over *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ into (the situation ~ed over into a real crisis)

bold *adj.* (often used humorously) to be so ~ as to + inf. (may I be so ~ as to ask how old you are?), to make ~ to + inf. (I made ~ to ask her how old she was)

boldface *n.* to print, set in ~

bolshy *adj.* (colloq.) (BE) ["rebellious"] ~ about

bolt I *n.* 1. a lightning ~ 2. (misc.) like a ~ from/out of the blue ("unexpectedly"); to shoot one's ~ ("to make a final effort"); to make a ~ for the door ("to run towards the door")

bolt II *v.* 1. to ~ securely 2. ("to attach") (D; tr.) to ~ to (they ~ed the computer to the floor; they ~ted the X and the Y securely together) 3. ("to run") (P; intr.) she ~ed for the door 4. (misc.) to ~ (down) one's food ("to eat too fast")

bomb *n.* 1. to detonate, explode, set off; fuse a ~ 2. to drop a ~ 3. to plant a ~ 4. to deactivate, defuse a ~ 5. to dispose of an unexploded ~ 6. an atom, atomic, fission, nuclear; cobalt; fusion, hydrogen; neutron ~ 7. a clean; dirty ~ 8. a buzz; cluster; fragmentation; high-explosive; incendiary; nail; napalm; petrol (esp. BE); pipe; plastic; smoke; stink ~ 9. a car; letter; parcel (esp. BE) ~ 10. a time ~ (often fig.) (see also **time bomb**) 11. a smart ("guided") ~ 12. a ticking ~ (usu. fig.) (is global warming a ticking time ~ waiting to go off?) 13. (AE) a cherry ~ ("a type of firecracker") 14. a ~ explodes, goes off; drops, falls 15. (misc.) (colloq.) (BE) to go like a ~ ("to be very successful")

bombard *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (we ~ed them with letters of protest)

bombardment *n.* 1. to conduct a ~ 2. aerial, air; artillery; constant; heavy, intensive ~ ("The Fury of Aerial Bombardment" – Richard Eberhart, 1947) 3. under ~ (under constant ~)

bomber *n.* 1. a dive-bomber; fighter; heavy; light; long-range; medium ~ 2. an enemy ~ 3. a suicide ~

bombing *n.* 1. area; around-the-clock; carpet; dive; indiscriminate, random; pin-point, precision; saturation; shuttle; strategic; tactical ~ 2. a terrorist ~ (a wave of terrorist ~s)

bombshell *n.* ["sensation"] to come as; drop a ~ (the news she told us came as a ~ that she hadn't intended to drop)

bomb threat *n.* 1. to get, receive; send a ~ 2. an anonymous ~

bond I *n.* ["certificate"] 1. to issue a ~ 2. to cash (in), redeem a ~ 3. a debenture; development; government; junk; long-term; municipal; negotiable; serial; treasury; war ~ (to invest money in treasury ~s) (see also **savings bond**) ["tie"] ["link"] 4. to create, forge, form; strengthen a ~ (of friendship) with 5. a close, firm, strong; solemn; spiritual ~ (strong family ~s) 6. a ~ between (to strengthen the ~s of friendship between them) 7. a ~ links (a strong spiritual ~ links the two of us (together)) ["fetters"] 8. to break; cast off one's ~s ["guarantee"] ["obligation"] 9. to set ~ (the judge set ~ for him at two thousand dollars) 10. to furnish, post a ~ 11. to forfeit a ~ ["storage under supervision, as of imported goods"] 12. in ~; out of ~ (to place goods in ~; to take goods out of ~)

bond II *v.* (D; tr.) ("to cause to adhere") to ~ to ("to ~ wood to glass")

bondage *n.* 1. to sell into ~ 2. to hold in ~ 3. to deliver from ~ 4. in ~ to

bond issue *n.* to float a ~

bone *n.* ["part of a skeleton"] 1. to set a (broken) ~ 2. to break, fracture a ~ 3. brittle ~s 4. a (broken) ~ knits 5. to the ~ (chilled/frozen to the ~) ["complaint"] (colloq.) 6. to have a ~ to pick with smb. ["misc."] 7. to make no ~s about smt. ("to be frank about smt."); to feel smt. in one's ~s ("to have a premonition about smt.") (see also **funny bone**)

boner *n.* (slang) (AE) ["blunder"] to commit, pull a ~

bone up *v.* (colloq.) (AE) (D; intr.) to ~ on (she had to ~ on her French before the exam)

bonfire *n.* 1. to build, light, make a ~ 2. to sit (a)round a ~ 3. a blazing, roaring ~

bonkers *adj.* (slang) (BE) ("crazy, insane") 1. ~ to + inf. (she must have been ~ to drive without headlights) 2. to drive smb. ~; to go ~

bonnet (BE) see **hood**

bonus *n.* 1. to give, pay a ~ 2. to get, receive a ~ 3. an annual; Christmas; cost-of-living; special ~ 4. (misc.) as an added ~ you get a free gift

boo *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ off (the actor was ~ed off the stage)

booby trap *n.* 1. to set a ~ 2. to set off, trigger a ~ 3. to deactivate a ~ 4. a ~ explodes, goes off

book I *n.* 1. to author, write; co-author; revise a ~ 2. to edit; proofread a ~ 3. to dedicate, inscribe a ~ 4. to bring out, publish, put out; copyright; have (in stock); reprint; translate a ~ 5. to review a ~ 6. to pirate; plagiarize a ~ 7. to ban; censor a ~ 8. to bind a ~ 9. to set a ~ in type 10. to charge, check a ~ out of a library 11. to renew a ~ (borrowed from a library) 12. to shelve; stack ~s (in a library) 13. a children's; comic ~; cookbook (AE), cookery (BE) ~; phrase; prayer; statute ~ (old laws still on the statute ~s) 14. an address ~; autograph ~; guide ~; handbook; illustrated; logbook; picture; reference ~; schoolbook; phone, telephone ~; textbook 15. a bank; check (AE), cheque (BE); pass; ration ~ 16. a library ~ 17. a rare ~ (our library has a rare ~ collection) 18. (colloq.) the Good Book ("the Bible") 19. a ~ appears, comes out, is published 20. a ~ goes out of print; a ~ is sold out, sells out; a ~ goes through several editions/printings 21. a ~ about, on; by; for (a ~ about computers) 22. in a ~ (to be (entered/listed) in the telephone ~) 23. (misc.) to make ~ ("to make or accept bets"); a closed ~ ("an obscure matter, person"); ("a completed event, condition"); an open ~ ("an accessible subject, person"); (slang) to throw the ~ at smb. ("to punish an accused person severely"); to go by the ~ ("to adhere strictly to regulations"); in my ~ ("in my opinion") (see also **books**)

book II *v.* (esp. BE) 1. (C) she ~ed a seat for me; or: she ~ed me a seat 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ through to; with (can we ~ a ticket through to Berlin with your company?) 3. (misc.) (CE) ~ed solid, fully ~ed

bookcase *n.* 1. built-in; free-standing ~s 2. from; in a ~

bookends *n.* a pair of ~

booking *n.* (esp. BE) see **reservation** 1–7

bookkeeping *n.* 1. to do the ~ 2. double-entry; single-entry ~

booklet *n.* a ~ about, on

books *n.* ["financial records"] 1. to keep (the) ~ 2. to audit, go over, inspect; balance the ~

book up *v.* to ~ fully, solid (the hotel is ~ed up solid = the hotel is fully ~ed up)

boom *n.* ["sound"] 1. a sonic ~ (to cause, generate, produce a sonic ~) ["upsurge"] 2. a baby; business, economic; postwar; property, real-estate; wartime ~ 3. during a ~ 4. a ~ in (during the last ~ in property values) ["misc."] 5. to lower the ~ on ("to attack")

boomerang I *n.* 1. to throw a ~ 2. a ~ always returns

boomerang II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (the project ~ed on them)

boon *n.* a ~ to (a ~ to science)

boor *n.* an insufferable ~

boost *n.* 1. to give (smb.) a ~ 2. a big; much-needed ~ 3. a ~ in (a ~ in prices) 4. a ~ to (a ~ to their morale)

boot I *n.* see the Usage Note for **trunk**

boot II *n.* ["dismissal"] (colloq.) 1. to get the ~ (for) (he got the ~ for sloppy work) 2. to give smb. the ~ (for) (they gave him the ~ for sloppy work)

boot III *v.* (P; tr.) she ~ed the ball over the fence

booth *n.* 1. an information; listening; phone, telephone; polling, voting; projection ~ 2. in a ~

boots *n.* 1. to lace up; put on; take off; unlace (one's) ~ 2. bovver (BE; slang; "heavy boots worn by young rowdies"); hip; leather; riding; rubber; walking ~ 3. a pair of ~ 4. (misc.) to lick smb.'s ~ ("to be overly subservient to smb."); to die with one's ~ on ("to die while still active, to die in harness")

bootstraps *n.* to pull oneself up by one's (own) ~ ("to emerge from poverty through one's own efforts") (to become a self-made man by pulling oneself up by one's ~)

booty *n.* 1. to capture, seize, take; divide the ~ 2. war ~

border I *n.* 1. to draw, establish, fix a ~ 2. to cross; slip across a ~ 3. to guard, patrol a ~ 4. a closed; common; disputed; fixed; open; recognized; unguarded ~ 5. a ~ between; with 6. across, over a ~ (to smuggle goods across a ~) 7. along; at, on a ~ 8. as far as, up to the ~ (she drove me as far as the ~) 9. (misc.) north of the ~; south of the ~

border II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ on (the USA ~s on Mexico) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ on the absurd) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ a dress with lace)

borderline *n.* 1. a ~ between 2. on the ~ (a joke on the ~ between offensive and funny)

bore I *n.* 1. a crashing, frightful, insufferable, utter; real ~ 2. a ~ to + inf. (it's a real ~ (for us) to work on this project every day = it's a real ~ working on this project every day)

bore II *n.* (esp. BE) ["wave"] a tidal ~

bore III *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) ("to dig") to ~ into (her eyes ~d into me; they ~d an opening into the mine shaft) 2. (D; intr., tr.) ("to dig") to ~ through (to ~ a hole through a board) 3. (D; tr.) ("to weary") to ~ to (he ~d us to death/to tears) 4. (N) he ~ed us stiff

bored *adj.* 1. ~ to (~ to death/to tears) 2. ~ with; BE also has, esp. in children's language: ~ of (~ with life) 3. (misc.) we were ~ doing nothing; we were ~ stiff

boredom *n.* 1. to relieve (the) ~ 2. complete, sheer, utter; deadly; outright; plain ~ 3. from, out of ~ (he started drinking again out of sheer ~)

boring *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ (for us) to sit there without anything to do)

born *adj.* 1. ~ into (~ into wealth) 2. ~ of (~ of poor parents) 3. ~ to (~ to wealth; ~ to illiterate parents) 4. ~ to + inf. (he was ~ to rule) 5. (misc.) ~ free; ~ lucky; as (if) to the manner ~ ("as if accustomed to smt."); Mark Twain was ~ Samuel Clemens (see also *born to the purple* at **purple III**)

borrow *v.* 1. to ~ freely, heavily (English has ~ed heavily from many languages) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from (she ~ed a book from me; they are always ~ing from us) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ from; into (the word was ~ed from German into English)

borrowing *n.* a ~ from (a ~ from German)

bosom *n.* 1. an ample, full ~ 2. (formal) in the ~ (in the ~ of one's family) 3. a ~ heaves, rises and falls 4. (misc.) to take smb. into/to one's ~ (see also *clutch to one's bosom* at **clutch**)

boss *n.* 1. an absolute, undisputed ~, the big ~ 2. a straw ~ ("one who has little authority; an assistant foreman or forewoman") 3. a party, political ~

both *determiner, pronoun* ~ of (we saw ~ of them) USAGE NOTE: The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows – we saw both of them ('we saw them both'). When a noun follows, two constructions are possible – we saw both of the students = we saw both (the) students.

bother I *n.* 1. a ~ to (he was a ~ to everyone but she was no ~ to anyone) 2. a ~ to + inf. (it was no ~ (for us) to take care of them) 3. (BE) a spot of ~ 4. (esp. BE) he had a lot of ~ finding our house because he wanted to save me the ~ of driving to the station and he didn't want to put me to the ~ of picking him up there – and nor did I want to go to the ~ of fetching him!

bother II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ about, with (she didn't ~ me about/with the details) 2. (E; usu. in neg. sentences) he didn't ~ to shave; don't ~ to get up 3. (G; usu. in neg. sentences) he didn't ~ getting up 4. (R) it ~ed me (to learn) that she had not been promoted

bothered *adj.* 1. not (really) ~ (he's not really ~ (about/by) what other people think of him) 2. ~ to + inf. (he couldn't be ~ed to find out what other people thought of him) (see also *all hot and bothered* at **hot**)

bottle *n.* ["container as for liquids"] 1. to break; cork; empty; fill; open, uncork; rinse a ~ 2. a baby (AE), feeding (BE), nursing (AE); pill ~ 3. a hot-water ~ 4. a Thermos (T) ~ (AE; BE has *Thermos flask*) 5. a disposable, no-deposit, no-return; plastic; returnable, reusable ~ ["alcohol"] 6. to take to the ~ ("to begin to drink to excess") 7. to hit the ~ ("to drink to excess") 8. over a ~ ("while drinking") ["courage"] (slang) (BE) 9. to have a lot of ~ 10. the ~ to + inf. (she hasn't got enough/the ~ to do it)

bottleneck *n.* 1. to form, produce a ~ 2. to be caught, trapped in a ~; to hit a ~ 3. to eliminate a ~ 4. a ~ in

bottom *n.* 1. (usu. fig.) to scrape the ~ of the barrel ("to use one's last resources") 2. (fig.) to hit ("reach") ~ 3. to sink to the ~; to touch ~ 4. a double, false ~ 5. a ~ to (there's a false ~ to the suitcase) 6. along, over; at, on the ~ (at the ~ of the well; we never could find out what was at the ~ of the affair; "There are fairies at the ~ of our garden." – Rose Fyleman (1877–1957), "Fairies") 7. (misc.) from top to ~; to get to the ~ of an affair ("to clear up a matter"); ~s up! ("drink up!"); from the ~ of my heart ("very sincerely"); the ~ has dropped out of the market ("prices have fallen dramatically on the stock market"); to hit, reach rock ~ (prices have reached rock ~) (also fig.) ("to sink into complete failure") (his fortunes have hit rock ~)

bottom out *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (their stock ~ed out at fifty dollars a share)

bough *n.* 1. a slender ~ 2. ~s sway in the breeze

boulevard *n.* 1. a wide ~ 2. along; down, up; on a ~

bounce I *n.* 1. a ~ to (there's a ~ to his walk) 2. on the ~ (to catch a ball on the ~; to hit a ball on the first ~)

bounce II *v.* 1. to ~ high 2. (d; intr.) to ~ against; off; out of (the ball ~ed off the wall; she ~d out of the chair) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ to (he ~d to his feet) 4. (P; intr., tr.) (the ball ~ed across the street; she ~ed the baby on her knee) 5. (misc.) to ~ up and down (she ~d the ball up and down = the ball ~ed up and down)

bounce back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (our team ~d back from its defeat)

bound I *adj.* ["headed"] (cannot stand alone) 1. ~ for (~ for London) 2. homeward; outward ~

bound II *adj.* ["covered"] ~ in (the book was ~ in leather = it was a leather-~ book)

bound III *adj.* ["sure"] (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to find out)

bound IV *adj.* ["required"] 1. (in) duty, honor ~ (she is duty ~ to report the incident to the police) (see also **honor bound**) 2. legally; morally (she feels morally ~ by the oath she swore) 3. ~ to + inf. (she is legally ~ to report the incident to the police)

bound V *n.* ["jump, leap"] in, with a ~ (with one ~ he was out of the room)

bound VI *v.* ("to border") (formal) (D; tr.) to ~ on, to (Germany ~s France on the east)

bound VII *v.* ("to jump; to run") (P; intr.) she ~ed out of the room; he ~ed across the field

boundary *n.* 1. to draw, fix, set; extend; mark; redraw a ~ 2. to form a ~ 3. a common; national ~ 4. a ~ between 5. beyond; on the ~ (to go beyond the ~aries of good taste; a joke on the ~ between wit and offensiveness) 6. (misc.) to overstep the ~aries of good taste; the ~ runs along the river

bounds *n.* 1. to set the ~ 2. out of ~ (to) (the bar was put off limits to all military personnel and has remained out of ~ to them) 3. beyond, outside the ~ (beyond the ~ of good taste) 4. within ~ 5. (misc.) to know no ~ (her generosity knew no ~)

bound up *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ["connected"] ~ in; with (~ in one's work; her future is ~ with this firm)

bounty *n.* 1. to offer; pay a ~ 2. to put a ~ on (smb.'s head) 3. a cash ~ 4. a ~ for

bouquet *n.* 1. a bridal, wedding ~ 2. a ~ of 3. in a ~ (were there any roses in her ~ of flowers?)

bout *n.* ["a period of time"] 1. to have a ~ of (depression, drinking, the flu) (see also *drinking bout* at **drinking**) 2. a nasty, severe ~ ["boxing or wrestling match"] 3. a championship; 12-round ~

bow I /bau/ *n.* ["bending of the head or body"] 1. to give, make; take a ~ (the envoy made a ~ on entering the throne room; the actor took his ~) 2. a courtly; deep, low ~ 3. a ~ to ["debut"] 4. to make one's ~ (he made his ~ as Hamlet) (compare **curtsy**)

bow II *v.* 1. ("to bend the head or body") to ~ politely 2. (D; intr.) ("to bend the head or body") to ~ before; to (to ~ before an emperor; to ~ politely to one's host; to ~ to the inevitable) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ out of ("to abandon") (to ~ out of politics) 4. (misc.) to ~ and scrape ("to be obsequious") (compare **curtsy**)

bow III /bou/ *n.* ["device for shooting arrows"] 1. to draw a ~ (in order to shoot an arrow); to release a ~ ["decorative ribbon"] 2. to wear a ~ (in one's hair) ["knot"] 3. to tie a ~; to tie in a ~

bow down /bau/ *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ before, to

bowels *n.* 1. to move, (BE) (old-fashioned) open one's ~ 2. loose ~

bowl *n.* ["dish, vessel"] 1. a begging, cereal; fruit; goldfish; mixing; punch; salad; soup; sugar (AE); toilet; washing-up (BE) ~ 2. a ~ contains, holds (how much can this ~ hold?) ["championship football game"] (AE) 3. the Cotton; Rose; Sugar; Super (T) ~ ["region"] (esp. AE) 4. a dust; rice ~

bowling *n.* ["(in an alley or on a green)"] 1. (BE) (old-fashioned) tenpin ~ 2. to go in for ~ 3. to go ~ ["(in cricket)"] 4. fast, pace; spin ~

bowling alley *n.* at a ~ (she works at a ~)

bow out *v.* (D; intr.) ("to give up") to ~ as (he had to ~ as a contender) (see also **bow II** 3)

bow tie /bou/ *n.* 1. to tie a ~ 2. to undo, untie a ~

box I *n.* 1. a cardboard; cigar; collection; jewelry; lunch ~; money ~; shoebox; spice ~; toolbox; window ~ 2. a post-office ~ 3. a safe-deposit, safety-deposit ~ 4. a poor ~ (in a church) 5. a ballot ~ (see also **ballot box**) 6. a suggestion ~ 7. a letter (BE) ~, mailbox (AE), pillar (BE) ~ 8. a call (BE), phone (BE) ~ 9. a signal ~ (BE; AE has *signal tower*) 10. a fire-alarm ~ 11. a black ~ ("electronic recording device") 12. (ice hockey) a penalty ~ 13. a witness ~ (to go into the witness ~) (BE; AE has *witness stand*) 14. a music (esp. AE), musical (BE) ~ 15. a prompt (BE), prompter's (AE) ~ 16. a shooting ~ (BE; CE has *hunting lodge*) 17. a jury; press ~ (for journalists) 18. (BE) a Christmas ~ ("a Christmas gift for a tradesman") 19. in; into; out of a ~ 20. (fig.) to think out of the ~ ("to think laterally") 21. (slang) (BE) on the ~ ("on television") 22. a ~ contains, holds (see also *box office* at **office** 15, *box seat* at **seat** 9) 23. (misc.) a sandbox (for children to play in) (AE; BE has *sandpit*)

box II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ against (to ~ against a worthy opponent) 2. (D; intr.; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ for the title; to ~ (against) a worthy opponent for the title = to ~ for the title against a worthy opponent)

boxer *n.* 1. a clean; dirty ~ 2. ~s box; break; clinch 3. (misc.) to knock out a ~

boxing *n.* to go in for ~

boy *n.* 1. an altar; barrow (BE; CE has *street vendor*); chorus; college (esp. AE); delivery; drummer; messenger; office; stock ~ 2. a best ~ ("assistant gaffer on a TV or film set") 3. a ball ~ (who retrieves tennis balls) 4. (AE; southern) a good old (ole) ~ ("a good fellow") 5. a baby; little, small; mere ~ 6. a whipping ~ ("a scapegoat") 7. a blue-eyed (BE), fair-haired (AE) ~ ("a favorite") 8. (BE) a back-room ~ ("a scientist") 9. (esp. AE) a poster ~ (his success made him a poster ~ for early-childhood education) 10. (BE) a rent ~ ("a young male prostitute") 11. a toy ~ ("a younger man dated by an older woman") USAGE NOTE: The meaning "non-white servant", now obsolete, is considered offensive. The AE use of *boy* in the meaning of "black male", now obsolete, is also considered offensive. (See also the Usage Note for **girl**.)

boycott *n.* 1. to declare; impose a ~ 2. to lift a ~ 3. a consumer; economic, trade; secondary ~ 4. a ~ of, on (they imposed a ~ on all imports; they lifted their ~ of/on imports)

boyfriend *n.* 1. have a ~ 2. a live-in; steady ~ 3. a series, string of ~s

brace I *n.* 1. to wear a ~ (on) 2. a back; dental; leg; shoulder ~

brace II *v.* 1. (D; intr., refl.) to ~ for (to ~ for an attack; she ~d herself for what the doctor would say) 2. (E; refl.) she ~d herself to hear what the doctor would say

bracelet *n.* 1. to wear a ~ 2. a chain; charm; diamond; gold; silver; watch ~

braces (BE) see **suspenders**

bracket *n.* ["support"] 1. to put up ~s (on a wall) ["punctuation mark used to enclose"] 2. to enclose (a word) in ~s; to put (a word) in, into ~s 3. to close ~s 4. angle, broken; curly; round; square ~s USAGE NOTE: "Round brackets" are typically called "parentheses" in AE. ["group with similar characteristics"] 5. an age; income; tax; wage ~ (if you earn more you will ¬fall into/be in¬ a higher tax ~)

brag *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, of; to (they ~ged (to us) about how/the way they had outwitted their rivals) 2. (L; to) they ~ged (to us) that they had outwitted their rivals

braid I *n.* ["threads"] 1. gold; silver ~ ["length of hair"] (esp. AE; CE has *plait*) 2. in a ~ (they wore their hair in ~s)

braid II *v.* (D; tr.) (esp. AE) to ~ into (to ~ one's hair into pigtails)

brain *n.* ["mind"] 1. to have a (good) ~ 2. to overtax; tax; use one's ~ 3. to rack one's ~(s) over (she racked her ~ over the problem) 4. to pick smb.'s ~(s) 5. in smb.'s ~; (colloq.) on the ~ (what's going on in that ~ of his?; he has nothing but rock music on the ~)

brains *n.* 1. to blow one's ~ out ("to shoot oneself through the head") 2. the ~ to + inf. (does he have enough ~ to figure it out?)

brainstorm *n.* ["sudden bright idea"] (AE) to have a ~ (see the Usage Note for **wave I**)

brake I *n.* 1. to apply, hit, step on a ~/the ~s; to pump the ~s; to put on the ~s; to jam on/slam on the ~s 2. to ride the ~s ("to use the brakes excessively") 3. (fig.) to put a ~ on (the government put a ~ on plans for expansion) 4. to release, take (one's foot) off a ~/the ~s 5. an air; coaster; disk; electric; emergency; foot; hand; hydraulic; mechanical; power ~ 6. the ~s jammed, locked; faded; failed; held, worked; screeched ["misc."] 7. a shooting ~ (old-fashioned BE; BE now prefers *estate car*; AE has *station wagon*)

brake II *v.* 1. to ~ gently; hard; suddenly 2. to ~ (in order) to (he ~ed to avoid hitting a child)

branch *n.* ["division"] 1. the executive; judicial; legislative ~ (of the government) 2. a local ~ ["limb of a tree"] 3. to trim ~es 4. overhanging ~es (see also **olive branch**)

branch off *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (the spur ~es off here from the main line)

branch out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from; into; to (our firm has ~ed out into various industries) 2. (misc.) to ~ on one's own

brand I *n.* 1. to put a ~ on (an animal) 2. a leading, name, popular ~ (of) 3. (BE) an own ~ (the supermarket's own ~s are cheaper than the name ~s it also stocks)

brand II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (he was ~ed as a traitor) 2. (N; used with a noun) he was ~ed a traitor

brash, (AE) **brassy** *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to demand a raise)

brass *n.* (colloq.) ["officers"] 1. air-force; army; navy; Pentagon ~ 2. the top ~ ["daring; effrontery"] 3. the ~ to + inf. (he had the ~ to ask for a raise)

brass tacks *n.* to get down to ~ ("to get down to business")

brat *n.* (colloq.) 1. a spoiled ~ 2. an Army ~ ("child of an Army family")

bravado *n.* 1. sheer ~ 2. an act of ~ 3. out of ~ (an act done out of sheer ~)

brave *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for/of you to volunteer = you were ~ to volunteer)

bravery *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, exhibit, show; inspire ~ 2. smb.'s ~ in (your ~ in volunteering was amazing!) 3. for ~ (to get a medal for ~)

brawl *n.* 1. a barroom, drunken; street ~ 2. in a ~ 3. a ~ between; about, over (I found myself caught up in a street ~ between two thugs over a woman)

breach *n.* ["violation"] 1. to commit a ~ (of etiquette, of the peace) 2. to be, constitute a ~ 3. an egregious, flagrant ~ 4. a security ~ (your contact with journalists constitutes a flagrant security ~!) 5. in ~ of (your contact with journalists is in ~ of the agreement you signed with us!) 6. (misc.) (a) ~ of contract ["gap"] 7. to effect, make a ~ (in enemy lines) 8. to close, seal off a ~ 9. to fling oneself, throw oneself into the ~ 10. a ~ in (a ~ in the defenses) 11. (misc.) "Once more unto the ~, dear friends, once more; / Or close the wall up with our English dead!" – Shakespeare, *Henry V* ["break in friendly relations"] 12. to cause a ~ (between) 13. to heal a ~ (between)

bread *n.* ["baked food"] 1. to bake, make ~ 2. to butter; slice; toast ~ 3. to break ~ with ("to eat with") 4. crusty; fresh; moldy; stale ~ 5. black; brown; corn; dark; enriched; leavened; pita, pitta (BE), rye; sliced; unleavened; wheat; white; whole meal (BE), whole wheat (AE) ~ 6. a crust; loaf; hunk; piece, slice of ~ 7. on ~ (I like a little butter on my ~) ["living"] 8. to earn one's daily ~ 9. (misc.) to take the ~ out of smb.'s mouth USAGE NOTE: The phrase "bread and" can mean either (1) bread accompanied by (as in "the prisoner had nothing but *bread and* water") or (2) bread spread with (as in "a big hunk of *bread and* butter/jam").

breadth *n.* (formal) 1. ~ of (enormous ~ of experience and insight) 2. in ~ (ten feet in ~) (see also **hair's breadth**)

break I *n.* ["dash"] 1. to make a ~ (for safety) ["escape"] 2. a mass; prison ~ ["interruption"] 3. to make a ~ 4. a clean ~ (see also **clean break**) 5. a ~ in, with (a ~ in the conversation; to make a ~ with tradition) ["rest"] 6. to have (esp. BE), take a ~ 7. a Christmas, coffee; commercial; Easter; lunch; news; station (AE); tea (esp. BE) ~ 8. during, on; over; without a ~ (what are you doing during/over the Christmas ~?; to work many hours without a ~) ["opportunity, chance"] (colloq.) 9. to give smb. a ~ ["good fortune"] 10. to get a ~ 11. a big; lucky; unexpected ~ 12. a tax ~

break II *v.* 1. (B) ("to communicate") I had to ~ the news to them 2. (D; intr.) ("to curl and fall") to ~ against, on (the waves were ~ing against the rock; "Break, ~, ~ On thy cold grey stones, O Sea!" – Tennyson (1809–82)) 3. (d; intr.) ("to dash") to ~ for (to ~ for cover) 4. (d; intr.) ("to take time") to ~ for (they broke for lunch) 5. (d; intr.) ("to enter forcibly") to ~ into (burglars broke into the house) 6. (d; intr.) ("to begin") to ~ into (to ~ into song) 7. (D; intr., tr.) ("to split") to ~ in half, in two; into (to ~ a chair into pieces) 8. (d; tr.) ("to cure") to ~ of (in time he was broken of his drug habit) 9. (D; intr., tr.) ("to split off") to ~ off (to ~ a branch off a tree) 10. (D; tr.) ("to crack") to ~ on (she broke a tooth on a bone) 11. (d; intr.) ("to escape") to ~ out of (two prisoners broke out of jail; the enemy troops broke out of our encirclement) 12. (d; intr.) ("to penetrate") to ~ through (to ~ through enemy lines) 13. (d; intr.) ("to end relations") to ~ with (I broke with them) 14. (D; tr.) ("to cut off") to ~ with (she broke all ties with her friends) (see also **break free**, **break loose**, *break on the wheel* at **wheel I** 6)

break away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (he broke away from his captors; we broke away from the party to form our own break-away group)

breakdown *n.* 1. to have, suffer a ~ (he had a nervous ~; she is on the verge of a nervous ~) 2. a complete, irretrievable; emotional, mental, nervous ~ (of) (she broke down in tears when she thought of the irretrievable ~ of her marriage) 3. a ~ in (a ~ in communications)

break down *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ into (to ~ a substance into its components) 2. (misc.) to ~ in tears; to ~ irretrievably (she broke down in tears when she realised her marriage had broken down irretrievably)

breaker *n.* (see **circuit breaker**)

break even *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

breakfast I *n.* 1. to eat (esp. AE), have ~ 2. to cook; make, prepare; serve ~ 3. a continental; cooked (BE), English (BE), full, Full English (BE), hearty, hot; nutritious, wholesome; substantial; working ~ 4. at ~ (what did you discuss at ~?) 5. for ~ (to eat eggs for ~) 6. (misc.) to have ~ in bed; bed and ~, B&B (as in a tourist home)

breakfast II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on scrambled eggs and toast)

break free *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from

break-in *n.* to commit a ~ (at) (the thieves committed a ~ at the factory from the roof)

break in *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from; through (the thieves broke in (to the factory) from the roof; we broke in through the door) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on (she broke in on their conversation) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (she broke in (on their conversation) with an inane remark)

breaking *n.* (the crime of) ~ and entering

breaking point *n.* 1. to reach ~ (BE)/the ~ (AE) 2. to push smb. to ~ (BE)/the ~ (AE)

break loose *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from

break off *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (they broke off from the main wing of the party)

breakout *n.* 1. to organize a ~ (from prison) 2. to achieve, effect a ~ (from an enemy encirclement) 3. a prison ~ (to organize a prison ~)

break out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ in (he broke out ¬in a rash/in spots¬; to ~ in a cold sweat) 2. (misc.) (Am. football) the back broke out in/into the open

breakthrough *n.* 1. to achieve, effect, make, score; be, constitute, represent a ~ 2. a big, dramatic, major, significant ~ 3. a diplomatic; medical; scientific ~ 4. a ~ for; in (with their initiative they scored a major diplomatic ~ for peace in the Middle East = their initiative represented a major ~ for peace in the Middle East)

break through *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (they broke through to the encircled unit)

breakup *n.* 1. to lead to a ~ 2. a marital ~

break up *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ into (they broke up the estate into small lots = they broke the estate up into small lots; our party broke up into several splinter groups) 2. (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ with (he broke up with his girlfriend) 3. (misc.) ~ it up! ("stop fighting/congregating and separate!")

breast *n.* 1. to beat one's ~ 2. to put a (newborn) infant to (the) ~ 3. (of an infant) to take the ~ 4. a pigeon ~ ("a deformity of the chest") 5. (culinary) chicken; turkey ~(s) 6. (misc.) to make a clean ~ of smt. ("to confess smt.") (see also *clutch to one's breast* at **clutch**) USAGE NOTE: *chicken breast* and *turkey breast* are raw or cooked; *breast of chicken* and *breast of turkey* are cooked.

breaststroke *n.* to do, swim the ~

breath *n.* 1. to draw, take a ~ 2. to catch; hold one's; let out a ~ 3. to get one's ~ back 4. to gasp, struggle for ~ 5. to lose one's ~ 6. a deep; long; short ~ (she took a deep ~) 7. out of, short of ~ ("breathless") 8. bad ~ (smokers often have bad ~) 9. (misc.) to spare, save one's ~ ("to avoid a futile conversation"); to waste one's ~ ("to speak in vain"); to take smb.'s ~ away ("to astonish smb."); in the same ~ ("at the same time"); to one's dying/last ~ ("to the end of one's life"); on smb.'s ~ (I could smell liquor on her ~); under one's ~ ("in a whisper"); with bated ~ ("with the breath held, in suspense") (we waited for the result with bated ~)

breathe *v.* 1. to ~ deeply 2. (d; tr.) to ~ into (she ~d new life into the project) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ through (to ~ through one's nose) 4. (misc.) to ~ in ("to inhale"); to ~ out ("to exhale"); as I live and ~! (colloq.) "well, as I live and ~ if it isn't John! What a surprise!"

breather *n.* ["rest"] to have (BE), take a ~

breathing *n.* 1. deep; heavy, labored, noisy; irregular; regular, steady ~ 2. (ling.) rough; smooth ~

breathtaking *adj.* 1. really, truly ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it was truly ~ to watch the acrobats perform) 3. (misc.) it was truly ~ watching the acrobats perform

breeches *n.* riding ~

breed *n.* 1. a ~ apart 2. a dying; hardy; new; rare ~ (of)

breeder *n.* a cattle, livestock; horse; poultry; sheep ~

breeding *n.* 1. cattle, livestock; horse; poultry; sheep ~ 2. selective ~ (of) 3. of ~ (a person of good ~)

breeding ground *n.* a ~ for (poverty is an ideal ~ for crime)

breeze I *n.* ["light wind"] 1. a ~ blows, comes up 2. a balmy, fresh, gentle, light, soft; cool; sea ~ 3. in a ~ (leaves trembling in the ~) ["easy task"] (colloq.) 4. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ (for us) to get him to agree = it was a ~ getting him to agree) ["misc."] 5. (colloq.) (AE) to bat, shoot the ~ ("to chat")

breeze II *v.* (P; intr.) she ~d through the finals; he ~d into the room; they ~d to an easy victory

brew I *n.* (a) home ~

brew II *v.* (C) she ~ed some tea for us; or: she ~ed us some tea

brew-up *n.* (BE) ["making tea"] to have a ~

bribe I *n.* 1. to give, offer a ~ 2. to accept, take a ~ 3. to refuse, turn down a ~ 4. a ~ of 5. in ~s (they turned down a ~ of $500 but accepted $5000 in ~s later on)

bribe II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into collusion) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (they ~d him with a free vacation) 3. (H) they ~d him to overlook the violation

brick *n.* (colloq.) (BE) ["blunder, clanger"] to drop a ~

brickbats *n.* ["insults"] to hurl ~ at

bricks *n.* 1. to make ~ 2. to burn, fire ~ 3. to lay ~ (a bricklayer lays ~) 4. to point ~ 5. see **blocks**

bride *n.* 1. to take a; to give away a ~ 2. a ~ takes a husband 3. a beautiful, lovely; blushing ~ 4. a child; war ~ 5. a bride-to-be; a future ~ 6. (misc.) ~ and groom

bridge I *n.* ["structure carrying a roadway over smt."] 1. to build, construct, erect a ~ 2. to throw a ~ across a river 3. to cross a ~ 4. an arch; Bailey; bascule; cantilever; covered ~; drawbridge; footbridge;

pontoon; railroad (AE), railway (BE); suspension; toll; truss ~ (see also **drawbridge**; *the bridge of the nose* at **nose I** *n.*) 5. a jet ~ (at an airport) 6. a ~ collapses; spans (the ~ spanning the harbor collapsed in an earthquake) 7. a ~ across, over; between (a ~ across a river) 8. (misc.) the enemy's planes knocked out our ~ ["partial denture"] 9. to make; put in a ~ ["part of a ship"] 10. on the ~ (the captain was on the ~)

bridge II *n.* ["card game"] 1. to play ~ 2. auction; contract; duplicate ~ 3. (misc.) to win a game; rubber; trick (when playing ~)

bridgehead *n.* 1. to establish a ~ (see also **beachhead**) 2. to develop, enlarge a ~

bridle I *n.* to put on a ~, to put a ~ on

bridle II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (she ~d at her friend's nasty remark)

brief I *n.* ["summary of a legal case"] 1. to draw up; file a ~ ["brevity"] 2. in ~ (in ~, it was a disaster) ["misc."] 3. to hold no ~ for ("not to be in favor of")

brief II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ smb. about, concerning, on, with regard to (he had to ~ his lawyer on the case)

briefing *n.* 1. a detailed, full ~ 2. to give smb. a ~ 3. to get, receive a ~ 4. a press ~ 5. a ~ about, concerning, on, with regard to (he gave his lawyer a detailed ~ on the case)

brigade *n.* 1. a bucket; fire ~ (BE; AE has *fire department*) 2. (misc.) a brigadier (BE)/brigadier general (AE) commands a ~

brigadier *n.* (BE) 1. (mil.) a ~ commands a brigade 2. to make smb. a ~, to promote smb. to the rank of ~; to have, hold the rank of ~ 3. (misc.) what's your opinion, Brigadier (Smith)?

brigadier general *n.* (AE) see **brigadier**

brilliant *adj.* 1. ~ at, when it comes to (he's ~ when it comes to finding solutions quickly!) 2. ~ + inf. (it was ~ of him to find a solution so quickly! = he was ~ to find a solution so quickly!)

brim I *n.* (up) to the ~ (to fill smt. (up) to the ~)

brim II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (she was ~ming with enthusiasm)

brim over *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (she was ~ming over with enthusiasm; her eyes ~med over with tears)

bring *v.* 1. (A) ("to carry") she brought word to them; or: she brought them word 2. (C) ("to carry") he brought a book for me; or: he brought me a book 3. (d; tr.) ("to present") to ~ before (to ~ a proposal before a committee) 4. (d; tr.) ("to summon") to ~ before (he was brought before the court) 5. (d; tr.) ("to carry") to ~ from; into (she brought the chairs into the house from the porch) 6. (d; tr.) ("to move") to ~ into (he brought everything into the open) 7. (d; tr.) to ~ on ("to cause") (he brought trouble on himself) 8. (d; tr.) ("to move") to ~ through (excellent nursing care brought him through the crisis) 9. (D; tr.) ("to carry") to ~ to (he brought wine to the party) 10. (d; tr.) to ~ to ("to cause to reach") (to ~ water to a/the boil; her speech brought the crowd to its feet; we must ~ him to his senses; to ~ smb. to life) 11. (d; tr.) to ~ within ("to cause to reach") (another few feet will ~ them within range) 12. (H; no passive) ("to induce") we could not ~ him to share our views; she could not ~ herself to read the letter 13. (J) ("to cause to come") his last-minute appeal brought them rushing to his aid 14. (P; tr.) ("to carry") they brought the sofa down the stairs; we brought the drinks over to the table 15. (misc.) to ~ a child into the world

bring around *v.* (AE) (D; tr.) ("to convince") to ~ to (she brought them around to our point of view)

bring back *v.* 1. (A) she brought the book back to me; or: she brought me back the book 2. (C) bring back a good book for me; or: bring me back a good book 3. (D; tr.) to ~ from (she brought the books back from Europe) 4. (D; tr.) ("to return") to ~ to (to ~ smb. back to life)

bring down *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to carry") to ~ from; to (they brought the computer down from the bedroom to the basement) 2. (D; tr.) ("to cause to come down") to ~ on (the enemy's artillery spotter brought down fire on our tanks; his book brought down the wrath of the authorities on his head) 3. (D; tr.) ("to reduce") to ~ to (they finally brought the price down to a reasonable figure)

bring home *v.* (D; tr.) ("to make known") to ~ to (the bombing brought the war home to the civilian population)

bring in *v.* (D; tr.) ("to include") to ~ on (we must ~ them in on our plans)

bring out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to cause, evoke") to ~ in (the crisis brought out the best in her; tension brought her out in spots) 2. (D; tr.) ("to move") to ~ from; into (to ~ everything into the open; she brought out everything from the closet into the bedroom)

bring over *v.* (D; tr.) ("to move") to ~ to (the incident brought them over to our side)

bring round (CE) see **bring around**

bring together *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to unite") to ~ for (we brought them together for negotiations) 2. (misc.) (we brought them together (in order) to negotiate)

bring up *v.* 1. (B) I didn't want to ~ the subject to her at that time 2. (d; tr.) to ~ against ("to confront with") (the drought brought us up against serious difficulties) 3. (D; tr.) ("to educate, rear, raise") to ~ as (they were brought up as atheists) (see also **upbringing**) 4. (D; tr.) ("to raise") to ~ for (they brought up a question for discussion = they brought a question up for discussion) 5. (D; tr.) to ~ on, with ("to inculcate with") (they brought the children up on stories about the Old West = they brought up the children on stories about the Old West) 6. (D; tr.) ("to lift") to ~ to (we brought their proficiency up to the required level) 7. (H) ("to educate, rear") our parents brought us up to respect others; they were brought up to be atheists

8. (misc.) her scream brought us up short ("her scream startled us"); to bring children up badly/well; she had a good upbringing because she was brought up well

brink *n.* 1. to bring to, drive to; bring/pull back from the ~ (of ruin) 2. at, on; to the ~ (he teetered on the very ~ of disaster; a country poised at/on the ~ of war; our leaders brought us to the ~ of war)

brinkmanship, brinksmanship *n.* to practice ~

bristle *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (he ~d at the remark) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (he ~d with anger at the remark)

broach *v.* 1. (B) I would like to ~ the subject to him 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (I would like to ~ the subject with him)

broadcast I *n.* 1. to carry a ~ 2. to beam a ~ to 3. to record, tape a ~ 4. to jam a ~ 5. a live; local; news; radio ~ (from; to)

broadcast II *v.* 1. to ~ live 2. (B) they ~ the news to the local population every day 3. (N; used with an adjective) they broadcast the interview live from Tirana

broadside *n.* to fire a ~ at

brochure *n.* 1. an advertising; holiday, travel ~ 2. a copy of a ~ (can I please have another copy of your holiday ~ for my wife?)

brogue *n.* 1. to speak (in, with) a ~ 2. a heavy, incomprehensible, thick ~

broil *v.* (AE) (C) he broiled a few steaks for us; or: he broiled us a few steaks (see also **grill II**)

broiled *adj.* (AE) char-, charcoal ~

broke *adj.* (colloq.) ["having no money"] 1. to go ~ 2. flat, stone (AE), stony (BE) ~

broker *n.* 1. to act as a ~ for 2. a commodity; insurance; marriage; real-estate (AE; BE has *estate agent*) ~ 3. (AE) a power ~ 4. an honest ~

bromide *n.* (colloq.) ["platitude"] a (tired, old) ~ about

bronco *n.* 1. to ride a ~ 2. to break a ~ 3. a bucking ~

Bronx cheer *n.* ["raspberry"] (AE) 1. to give, let out a ~ 2. to give smb. a ~

brooch *n.* a gold; silver ~

brood *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, on, over

brook *n.* a babbling ~

broth *n.* beef; chicken; clear ~

brother *n.* 1. a big, elder, older; kid (colloq.), little, younger; twin ~ 2. a foster; half ~; stepbrother 3. a brother-in-law 4. a blood; lay; soul ~ 5. a ~ to (he was like a ~ to us) 6. (misc.) Big Brother ("government that exercises complete control") ("Big Brother is watching you." – George Orwell, *Nineteen Eighty-Four* (1949))

brouhaha *n.* ["fuss, kerfuffle"] a ~ over

brow *n.* 1. to knit, wrinkle one's ~ 2. to mop one's ~

browbeat *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into; out of (they could not ~ him into confessing)

brown *adj.*, *n.* ["color"] 1. dark; deep; golden; light; reddish ~ 2. to dress in, wear ~ 3. to go, turn ~ 4. a shade of ~ ["something colored brown"] 5. a patch of ~ 6. in ~ (dressed in ~)

browse *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to feed as cattle do") to ~ on (to ~ on leaves) 2. (D; intr.) ("to examine in a leisurely way") to ~ through (to ~ through books)

browser *n.* a web ~

bruise I *n.* 1. a minor ~ 2. a ~ fades, forms, heals (a minor ~ formed on her face but soon faded and healed completely) 3. (misc.) cuts and ~s

bruise II *v.* to ~ easily

bruised *adj.* badly; easily ~

bruit about, abroad *v.* (formal) 1. (L) it was ~ed about that she had resigned 2. (misc.) the media bruited it about that she had resigned

brunch *n.* 1. to eat (esp. AE), have ~ 2. to cook; make, prepare; serve ~ 3. a late; substantial; working ~ 4. at, over ~ (what did you discuss at/over ~?) 5. for ~ (to eat eggs benedict for ~)

brunt *n.* to bear, take the ~ (our battalion bore the ~ of the enemy's attack)

brush I *n.* 1. to apply a ~ to 2. a bottle; clothes ~; hairbrush; nailbrush; paintbrush; scrub (AE), scrubbing (BE); shaving ~; toothbrush; upholstery ~

brush II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against (she ~ed against the table) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ by, past (she ~ed by me) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ from, out of (she ~ed the crumbs out of her handbag) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ off (he ~ed the crumbs off the table) 5. (N; used with an adjective) she ~ed her coat clean

brush III *n.* ["brief unpleasant encounter"] 1. to have a ~ with (to have a ~ with the authorities) 2. a close ~ (a close ~ with the law)

brush-off *n.* ["snub"] to give smb. the ~

brush up *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against (to ~ against a wall) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on (she had to ~ on her French before the exam)

brusque *adj.* ~ with

brutal *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to do that)

brutality *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, exhibit, show ~ 2. extreme; great; sheer; unprovoked ~ 3. police ~ 4. an act; degree, level; outburst of ~ 5. ~ to, towards, with 6. with ~ (the police behaved with great ~ towards the demonstrators)

bubble I *n.* 1. to blow ~s 2. to prick a ~ 3. to burst a ~ 4. a ~ bursts; forms (on) 5. air; soap ~s

bubble II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with enthusiasm)

bubble over *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with enthusiasm)

bubbling *adj.* ~ with (~ (over) with enthusiasm)

buck I *n.* (colloq.) ["responsibility"] to pass the ~

buck II *v.* (colloq.) (AE) 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against ("to oppose") (to ~ against the system) 2. (D; intr.) ("to make an all-out effort") to ~ for (to ~ for a promotion)

bucket *n.* 1. a coal; fire; ice; water ~ 2. a metal;

wooden ~ 3. an empty; full ~ 4. (misc.) (colloq.) to kick the ~ ("to die"); the rain came down in ~s ("it was raining very hard") (see also *a drop in the bucket* at **drop I**) USAGE NOTE: British children play at the seaside with their buckets and spades; American children play at the seashore with their pails and shovels.

buckle I *n.* 1. to fasten a ~ 2. to undo, unfasten a ~ 3. a belt; brass ~

buckle II *v.* (D; refl., tr.) ("to fasten") to ~ into (she ~ed the baby into the seat)

buckle III *v.* (D; intr.) ("to collapse") to ~ under (to ~ under severe pressure)

buckle down *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to work)

bud *n.* ["cell embedded in the tongue"] 1. a taste ~ ["early stage"] 2. to come into ~ 3. to nip in the ~ ["the early stage of a flower"] 4. a ~ opens 5. in ~ (the tulips are in ~)

buddy *n.* a bosom, good, great; old ~

budge *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from (she would not ~ from the spot) 2. (misc.) not to ~ an inch (she would not ~ an inch from her position)

budget I *n.* 1. to draw up a ~ 2. to submit a ~ 3. to balance a ~ 4. to adhere to, stick to; keep, remain, stay within a ~ 5. to exceed, go over; stretch a ~ 6. to cut, reduce, slash a ~ (to slash a ~ by ten percent) 7. an annual; defense; family, household; federal (AE), national; itemized; municipal; state; tight ~ 8. an item in, on a ~ 9. below, within; over (a) ~ (to stay within ~)

budget II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (they ~ed for a new copying machine) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (they ~ed a thousand dollars for a new copying machine)

buff *n.* ["the bare skin"] 1. in the ~ 2. (BE) to strip to the ~ ["devotee"] 3. a computer; film, movie; history; jazz; opera, theater ~

buffalo *n.* a herd of ~

buffer *n.* 1. to act as a ~ against; between 2. (misc.) (BE) an old ~ ("an old man") (see also *buffer state* at **state**, *buffer zone* at **zone**)

buffet I *n.* a cold ~

buffet II *v.* to be ~ed from pillar to post ("to be forced to go to many places")

buffoon *n.* to play the ~

bug I *n.* ["listening device"] 1. to install a ~ 2. to remove, tear out a ~ ["illness"] (colloq.) 3. to pick up a ~ 4. a ~ is going around ["defect"] (colloq.) 5. to iron out the ~s

bug II *v.* (colloq.) 1. (D; tr.) ("to annoy") to ~ about (he was ~ging me about the money I owed him) 2. (H) ("to urge") he kept ~ging me to pay him the money I owed him

buggy *n.* (see **baby buggy**)

bugle *n.* 1. to blow, play a ~ 2. a ~ blares, sounds

build I *n.* ["figure"]["physique"] 1. a burly; heavy; medium; powerful; slight; slim; stocky; sturdy ~ 2. the ~ of (he has the ~ of a champion) 3. the (right; wrong) ~ to + inf. (he has the (right) ~ to become a champion) 4. of a certain ~ (he is of heavy ~ = he is heavy of ~)

build II *v.* 1. (C) they built a new library for us; or: they built us a new library 2. (D; tr.) to ~ around (to ~ a plot around a true story) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ from, of, out of (they built a boat out of wood) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ into (he built cupboards into the walls) 5. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ on (to ~ on earlier success; to ~ a relationship on trust) 6. (D; tr.) to ~ onto (the shed was built onto the garage) 7. (d; intr.) to ~ to (the music was ~ing to a climax)

building *n.* 1. to build, erect, put up; renovate a ~ 2. to demolish, raze, tear down a ~ 3. to gut a ~ (fire gutted the ~) 4. a dilapidated, gutted, ramshackle, tumbledown ~ 5. a low; tall (less frequently: *high*) ~ 6. an adjoining ~ 7. an apartment (AE); government; office; parliament; public; school ~ 8. a listed (BE) ~

buildup *n.* 1. an arms, military; gradual ~ 2. (misc.) during the ~ to the invasion

build up *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (they built her up as a contender for the nomination) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (they built him up into a huge success) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ to (the music was ~ing up to a climax)

built *adj.* 1. heavily, powerfully, solidly, strongly ~ 2. ~ around (the whole story was ~ around one character) 3. ~ into (quality was ~ into their products) 4. ~ on (her conclusions were ~ on solid data) 5. (misc.) jerry ("cheaply") ~; purpose ~ (BE)

bulb *n.* ["light bulb"] 1. to change, replace; put in, screw in (US) a ~ 2. to take out, unscrew (US) a ~ 3. a ~ blows out; burns out 4. an electric; frosted; incandescent; light; three-way ~ 5. the glare of a ~ ["tuber"] 6. a crocus; tulip ~

bulge *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (her suitcase was ~ing with presents)

bulk I *n.* in ~ (to sell smt. in ~)

bulk II *v.* to ~ large (the law case ~ed large in his thoughts)

bull I *n.* ["adult male of a bovine animal"] 1. a ~ charges 2. a ~ bellows; gores ["nonsense"] (colloq.) 3. to shoot the ~ (AE) ["misc."] 4. to take the ~ by the horns ("to confront a problem boldly"); like a ~ in a china shop ("in a rough, crude, or clumsy manner")

bull II *n.* ["letter"] a papal ~

bulldoze *v.* to ~ through (they ~d their way through all obstacles)

bulldozer *n.* to operate a ~

bullet *n.* 1. to shoot a ~ (from; at) 2. a plastic; real; rubber; stray; tracer ~ 3. a ~ flies, whistles, whizzes (through the air) 4. a ~ ricochets 5. a ~ lodges somewhere (the ~ lodged in her shoulder) 6. a hail, volley of ~s 7. (misc.) to bite the ~ ("to perform a very unpleasant task")

bulletin *n.* 1. to issue a ~ about/on 2. an all-points ~ 3. a daily; news ~ 4. the ~ that + clause (we heard the ~ that the dam had burst)

bullfight *n.* to hold, stage a ~

bullion *n.* gold; silver ~

bull's eye *n.* to hit; score a ~

bully I *n.* (colloq.) a big ~

bully II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (they ~ied him into doing it)

bulwark *n.* a ~ against

bum *v.* (colloq.) (AE) (D; tr.) to ~ off (he ~med a cigarette off me)

bump I *n.* to hit a ~ (in the road)

bump II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against, into (she ~ed into me) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ against, on (she ~ed her arm against the table) 3. (colloq.) (AE) (D; tr.) ("to remove without warning") to ~ from (he was ~ed from the flight) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to meet by chance") (when she went to town, she ~ed into an old friend)

bumpkin *n.* a country ~

bump up *v.* (d; intr.) (esp. AE) to ~ against (he ~ed up against me)

bum's rush *n.* (AE) (colloq.) to give smb. the ~ ("to eject smb.")

bum steer *n.* (colloq.) (AE) ["poor guidance"] 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to get a ~

bun *n.* ["knot of hair that resembles a bun"] 1. in a ~ (she wore her hair in a ~) ["type of pastry"] 2. a cinnamon, sticky; hamburger ~

bundle I *n.* (slang) ["a large amount of money"] to cost; make a ~

bundle II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ into (they ~d the children into the car and left)

bundle off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (we ~d the children off to school)

bundle up *v.* (D; intr., refl., tr.) to ~ against; in (they ~d up in warm coats against the cold)

bungle *v.* to ~ appallingly, badly, completely (they completely ~d the job; they ~d the job badly)

bunk *n.* (slang) (BE) to do a ~ ("to disappear")

buoy *n.* 1. to anchor a ~ 2. a bell; breeches; life ~

burden I *n.* 1. to bear, carry, shoulder a ~ 2. to impose, place a ~ on smb. 3. to alleviate, ease, lift, lighten, reduce, relieve a ~ 4. to share; shift a ~ 5. to distribute a ~ equitably 6. a crushing, heavy, onerous ~ 7. a financial; tax ~ 8. a ~ on, to (he became a ~ to his family) 9. (misc.) it was a heavy ~ to bear (see also *the burden of proof* at **proof**)

burden II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (he didn't want to ~ his family with his problems)

bureau *n.* a better-business (AE); citizens' advice (BE); credit; farm; information; missing-persons; news; service; speakers'; travel; weather ~ (AE; BE has *the met, meteorological office*)

bureaucracy *n.* a bloated, overgrown, swollen; government ~

burglar *n.* a cat ~

burglar alarm *n.* see **alarm**

burglary *n.* to commit (a) ~

burial *n.* 1. a decent ~ (she didn't even have a decent ~) 2. a ~ takes place (the ~ took place at sea) 3. a ~ in (a ~ in a churchyard)

buried *adj.* 1. ~ underground 2. ~ in, under (~ under a pile of paperwork)

burn I *n.* 1. to get, have, receive a ~ 2. to suffer from a ~ 3. a brush, friction; cigarette ~ 4. a first-degree; second-degree; third-degree ~ 5. a mild, minor, superficial; moderate; severe ~ (see also **slow burn**)

burn II *v.* 1. to ~ brightly; fiercely, furiously 2. (d; refl.) to ~ into (the incident ~ed itself into my memory) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the ground; he ~ed the meat to a crisp; the wood ~ed to ashes; she was ~ed to death) 4. (D; intr.) (often fig.) to ~ with (his cheeks ~ed with shame; they were ~ing with curiosity to hear the latest gossip; he was ~ing with passion) 5. (E) I am ~ing to tell you the news 6. (N; used with an adjective) to ~ smb. alive 7. (misc.) to ~ smb. at the stake; she ~ed her hand on the stove; the fire ~ed out of control

burned, burnt *adj.* badly, severely ~

burner *n.* 1. to light, turn on; turn off a ~ 2. a Bunsen; charcoal; gas; oil ~ 3. (misc.) to put smt. on the back ~ ("to postpone action on smt.")

burnout *n.* (colloq.) ["exhaustion"] to experience, suffer ~

burn up *v.* (slang) (AE) (R) it really ~ed me up that she was not promoted

burp *n.* 1. to let out, make a ~ 2. a loud, noisy ~

burrow *v.* (P; intr., tr.) to ~ (a hole) into the ground; to ~ one's way out of a dungeon; to ~ through a wall; to ~ under a building

bursary *n.* (BE) 1. to award a ~ 2. to receive a ~

burst I *n.* ["series of shots"] 1. to fire a ~ at ["outbreak"] 2. a sudden ~ 3. in ~s ["misc."] 4. she finally finished the job in/with a sudden ~ of energy

burst II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ into (the mob burst into the room; to ~ into flames; to ~ into tears) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ out of (to ~ out of a room) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with pride; the granaries are ~ing with grain) 4. (E) she was ~ing to tell everyone the news

burst in *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on, upon (we burst in on them without warning)

burst out *v.* (G) they burst out laughing

burton *n.* (slang) (BE) to go for a ~ ("to be lost; to be broken; to be killed; to fail")

bury *v.* 1. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ in (he ~ied himself in his work) 2. (N; used with an adjective) they ~ied him alive

bus I *n.* 1. to drive a ~ 2. (as a passenger) to board, get on; catch a ~; get off a ~; to come; go, travel by ~; to miss a ~; to ride a ~; to ride in/on a ~; to take a ~ 3. a city; double-decker; local; long-distance (AE; BE has *coach*); school; sightseeing ~ 4. an airbus (for short-haul flights) 5. the ~es are not running today but normally run every half hour and pick people up from this ~ stop 6. a ~ for, to (is this the ~ to the airport?)

bus II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ children to school)

bush *n.* 1. to prune, trim a ~ 2. a clump of ~es 3. (misc.) to beat about/(AE) around the ~ ("to speak indirectly")

bushel *n.* by the ~ (to sell by the ~)

business *n.* ["commerce"] ["trade"] 1. to conduct, do, transact; drum up ~ (to do ~ with smb.) 2. to lose ~ 3. to go into ~; to go out of ~ 4. big; small ~ 5. a mail-order ~; show ~; the travel ~ 6. retail; wholesale ~ 7. (AE) a land-office ("brisk") ~ (to do a land-office ~ in real estate) 8. ~ drops off; picks up 9. ~ is brisk, booming, flourishing, thriving 10. ~ is bad; slack, slow; ~ is at a standstill 11. in ~ (to be in ~ for oneself; "what (line of) ~ are you in?" "we are in the real-estate ~") 12. on ~ (to travel on ~) ["firm"] 13. to build up; establish, launch, open a ~ 14. to manage, operate, run a ~ 15. to buy into; buy out; take over a ~ ["work"] 16. to get down to ~ 17. to go about one's ~ 18. to talk ~ ["affairs"] 19. to mind one's own ~ 20. bad; dirty; funny; (colloq.) monkey ~ 21. company; personal; unfinished; urgent ~ ["cause"] 22. to have ~ to + inf. (he had no ~ to interfere = he had no ~ interfering) ["misc."] 23. to know one's ~ ("to be competent in one's field"); it was ~ as usual even during the crisis; to state one's ~ ("to explain what one is doing"); to mix ~ with pleasure ("to combine work and recreation"); to mean ~ ("to be serious about achieving one's ends"); to give smb. the ~ (AE) ("to deceive smb."); it's none of your ~ ("the matter doesn't concern you"); the whole ~ strikes me as rather nasty/risky; that's the end of the agenda: (is there) any other ~?

busing *n.* (US) forced; school; voluntary ~

bust *n.* (slang) ["arrest"] 1. to make a ~ 2. a drug, drugs (BE) ~

bustle off *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to (she ~ed the children off to school)

busy I *adj.* 1. ~ at, with (the children were ~ with their homework) 2. to be ~ doing smt. (she was ~ getting dinner ready) 3. to keep ~; to keep smb. ~ (they keep ~ helping out at the crisis center; we kept the children ~ cutting out pictures) 4. (misc.) I'm sorry: the line/number is ~; as ~ as a bee

busy II *v.* 1. (d; refl.) to ~ by, with (she busied herself by doing various jobs = she busied herself with various jobs) 2. (J; refl.) (she busied herself doing various jobs)

butcher *n.* a family ~ (BE) ("a butcher's business run by a single family"); ("a butcher's business that sells retail rather than wholesale")

butt I *n.* a cigarette; rifle ~

butt II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against 2. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into smb.'s business)

butter *n.* 1. to churn; cream; make ~ 2. to spread ~ (on bread) 3. apple (AE); cocoa; peanut; prune; salted; sweet, unsalted; whipped ~ 4. fresh; rancid ~ 5. a knob (BE), lump (BE); pat; stick of ~ 6. in ~ (to fry in ~) (see also *bread and butter* at **bread**)

butterfly *n.* 1. to collect ~flies 2. a ~ flits from flower to flower 3. (misc.) a social ~ ("one who leads an active but superficial social life"); ~flies and moths

butter up *v.* (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ to (he keeps ~ing up to the boss)

butt in *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a conversation)

button *n.* ["fastener"] 1. to sew on a ~ 2. to do up; undo one's ~s 3. to lose a ~ 4. to rip off, tear off a ~ 5. a ~ comes off (my ~ came off) ["push button"] 6. to press, push a ~ 7. the panic ~ (colloq.); a push-button ["badge"] (AE) 8. a campaign ~ ["misc."] 9. right on the ~ ("exactly correct")

buy I *n.* (colloq.) ["purchase"] 1. to be; get, have a ~ 2. a good ~ (that book was a very good ~ at only $20!)

buy II *v.* 1. (C) we bought a book for her; or: we bought her a book 2. (D; refl.; tr.) to ~ for (we bought her a book for twenty dollars; she bought (herself) a hat for twenty dollars) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ from (we bought her a book from a local bookshop) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into a business) (also fig.) (somehow I just don't ~ into that plan of yours!) 5. (misc.) to ~ as is ("to buy with no guarantee of quality"); cheap, cheaply; dear; to ~ retail; to ~ wholesale; to ~ at a reasonable price; to ~ by the dozen; to ~ in bulk

buy back *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

buyer *n.* 1. a first-time (house); prospective ~ 2. a ~ for (they found a ~ for the building)

buying *n.* impulse; panic ~

buzz I *n.* (colloq.) ("telephone call") to give smb. a ~

buzz II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for one's secretary) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with activity) 3. (P; intr.) insects were ~ing through the air; photographers were ~ing around the entrance

buzzer *n.* 1. to press, sound a ~ 2. at the ~ (at the ~, stop work immediately!) 3. a ~ goes off, sounds (when the ~ sounds, stop work immediately!)

by (see *by and large* at **large**)

bye *n.* (sports) to draw a ~

by-election see **election**

bygones *n.* to let ~ be ~

bylaws *n.* 1. to draft, draw up ~s 2. to amend, change; approve (the) ~ 3. city, municipal; local; township (esp. AE) ~

bypass *n.* ["operation"] 1. a coronary, heart, multiple ~ ["road"] 2. to take the ~ 3. a part, section of a ~ (get off this section of the ~ at the next exit) 4. on a ~

byplay *n.* ~ between

bystander *n.* an innocent ~

C

cab *n.* 1. a black; yellow (we hailed a black ~ in London and a yellow ~ in New York) 2. to call for; find; flag down; get; hail; hire; take a ~ 3. to get into; get out of a ~ 4. a ~ picks smb. up 5. to drive a ~ (for a living) 6. a radio ~ 7. by ~; in a ~ (to go somewhere by ~) (see also **minicab**)

cabbage *n.* 1. red; savoy; white ~ 2. boiled ~ 3. a head; leaf of ~ 4. (AE) corned beef and ~

cabin *n.* ["compartment"] 1. a first-class; second-class ~ 2. a pressurized ~ (of an airplane) ["small house"] 3. a log ~ (did Abraham Lincoln really rise from a log ~ to the US Presidency?)

cabinet *n.* ["case"] ["cupboard"] 1. a built-in; china; display; kitchen ~ (several bottles of port in the ~) 2. a file (AE), filing ~ ["body of advisers"] 3. the president's; Prime Minister's ~ 4. a coalition; kitchen ("informal") ~ 5. (UK) a shadow ~ ("members of the opposition party who will form the next cabinet") (she joined/entered the shadow ~ several years ago and left it only last year) 6. a ~ meets 7. (misc.) a ~ minister (not US); a ~ reshuffle ["cabinet meeting"] (BE) 8. to hold a ~ 9. in ~ (to take a decision in ~) USAGE NOTE: In the UK cabinet ministers are nowadays typically elected members of the House of Commons. In the USA members of the cabinet are appointed by the President "with the advice and consent of the Senate" (US Constitution) and are typically not elected by the people.

cable I *n.* ["wire"] 1. to lay, string ~ 2. an overhead; submarine; transatlantic; underground ~ 3. an electric, power; telegraph; telephone ~ 4. a ~ carries information/messages; snaps 5. a coil of ~ ["cablegram"] 6. to send a ~ 7. to get, receive a ~ 8. a ~ from; to

cable II *v.* 1. (A) we ~d the message to them; or: we ~d them the message 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ for (they ~d for immediate delivery) 3. (H) we ~d them to return home immediately 4. (L; may have an object) she ~d (us) that the manuscript had arrived 5. (Q; may have an object) they ~d (us) where to meet

cablegram *n.* 1. to send a ~ 2. to get, receive a ~ 3. a ~ from; to

cache *n.* an arms ~

cadence *n.* (usu. mil.) 1. to count ~ 2. in ~

cadet *n.* 1. an air-force; military; naval; police ~ 2. (slang) (AE) a space ~ ("an absent-minded person")

cadge *v.* (rare) 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for food) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from, off (to ~ meals from friends)

caesarean, caesarean section *n.* 1. to do, perform a ~ on 2. to have a ~ 3. (misc.) to be born/delivered by ~

café *n.* a pavement (BE), sidewalk (AE); transport ~ (BE; AE prefers *truck stop* esp. for one that is by a highway and also sells gas)

cafeteria *n.* a school ~

cage *n.* 1. a birdcage 2. a bank teller's (AE) ~

cagey *adj.* (colloq.) ["sly"] ~ about

cahoots *n.* (esp. AE) in ~ with ("in partnership with") (they were in ~ (with each other) to do smt. bad)

cajole *v.* 1. (d; tr.) (with an inanimate object) to ~ from (she ~d some money from him) 2. (d; tr.) (with an animate object) to ~ into (she ~d him into giving her some money)

cake *n.* 1. to bake, make; cut; frost (esp. AE), ice a ~ 2. a birthday; wedding ~ 3. (a) chocolate; Christmas (BE); coffee ~; fruitcake; honey; Madeira (BE), sponge; marble; pound; white (AE) ~ 4. a layer; upside-down ~ 5. a piece, slice of ~ 6. (misc.) a piece of ~ ("smt. very easy to do"); to take the ~ ("to be the best or worst"; BE has also *to take the biscuit*); to go/sell like hot cakes ("to be bought up very quickly")

caked *adj.* ~ in, with (~ with blood)

calamity *n.* 1. to avert; ward off a ~ 2. to survive a ~ 3. a ~ befalls smb. 4. a crushing, dire, grave, great; national ~ 5. a ~ for (the fire was a ~ for everyone)

calculate *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ on (we ~d on a two-day trip) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as, at (we ~d the length of the trip as two days) 3. (L) we ~d that the trip would take two days 4. (Q) we ~d how long the trip would take

calculated *adj.* 1. ill; well ~ 2. (usu. does not stand alone) ~ to + inf. (his actions were ~ to provoke his opponents)

calculations *n.* 1. to do, make, perform ~ 2. mathematical; precise; rough ~

calculator *n.* 1. to use, operate a ~ 2. an electronic; pocket ~

calculus *n.* ["mathematical method"] 1. differential; integral; vector ~ ["deposit formed in an organ of the body"] 2. a biliary; renal; urinary ~

calendar *n.* ["chart that shows the days and months"] 1. the Chinese; Gregorian; Hindu; Islamic, Muslim; Jewish; Julian; Roman ~ 2. a lunar; solar ~ 3. a perpetual ~ 4. a desk; wall ~ 5. in a ~ (February is the shortest month in the Gregorian ~) ["schedule"] 6. to clear one's ~ 7. a court; school; social ~ 8. a crowded, full ~ 9. on a ~ (what's on your ~ this week?) USAGE NOTE: In BE, a calendar for one's desk or pocket with spaces to write one's appointments in it is called a diary.

calf *n.* 1. a ~ bleats 2. in ~ (the cow was in ~) 3. (misc.) the meat of the ~ is veal

caliber, calibre *n.* ["diameter of the barrel of a weapon"] 1. heavy; light ~ ["quality"] 2. high; low ~ 3. of a certain typically high ~ (there are few workers left of her ~)

calibration *n.* precise ~

calisthenics, callisthenics *n.* 1. to do, perform ~ 2. daily; group, mass ~

call I *n.* ["appeal"] ["summons"] 1. to issue a ~ for (the government issued a ~ to the populace for voluntary contributions) 2. to answer, heed, respond to a ~ (to answer the ~ of duty) 3. a clarion ~ 4. a curtain; last ~ (last ~ for passengers boarding this flight!) (see also **curtain call**) 5. a ~ for (we heard a ~ for help) 6. a ~ to (a ~ to arms) 7. (see also *at smb.'s beck and call* at **beck**) ["visit"] 8. to make, pay a ~ on smb. 9. to make a ~ at a place (the ships made ~s at several ports) 10. a business; courtesy; port; professional ~ 11. a house ~ (my doctor makes house ~s) (esp. AE; BE prefers *home visit*) ["invitation"] 12. to accept, answer a ~ ["telephone call"] 13. to give smb. a ~ 14. to make, place a ~ to smb. 15. to answer; get, receive; return; take; transfer a ~ (who will take her ~?) 16. to put a ~ through (the operator put my ~ right through) 17. a telephone ~ 18. a business; conference; emergency; wake-up ~ 19. a collect (AE), reversed-charge (BE), transferred-charge (BE); dial-direct (AE), direct-dialled (BE); operator-assisted; ordinary (BE), station-to-station (AE); personal (BE, old-fashioned), person-to-person ~ 20. an international; local; long-distance, toll (AE), trunk (BE, old-fashioned); toll-free (AE) ~ 21. an anonymous; crank; nuisance; threatening ~ 22. a ~ from; to ["signal"] 23. a bugle; trumpet ~ ["reading aloud"] 24. a roll ~ ["duty"] 25. on ~ (which nurse is on ~?) ["need"] 26. a ~ for (there is no ~ for such behavior) 27. a ~ to + inf. (there was no ~ to complain) ["formation"] (AE) (usu. mil.) 28. sick ~ (to go on sick ~) ["misc."] 29. a close ~ ("a narrow escape"); a wake-up ~ (also fig.) (was the credit crunch a wake-up ~ to reform the international economic system?) (see also **bird call**)

call II *v.* 1. (C) ("to summon") she ~ed a taxi for me; or: she ~ed me a taxi 2. (d; intr.) ("to visit") to ~ at (the ship will ~ at several ports) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to fetch") (I'll ~ for you at two o'clock) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to require") (the position ~s for an experienced engineer; they ~ed for him to resign) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to seek") (to ~ for help) 6. (d; intr., tr.) ("to order by telephone") to ~ for (they ~ed the pharmacy for aspirin) 7. (d; tr.) ("to summon") to ~ into (she was ~ed into the room) 8. (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to visit") (several friends ~ed on us) 9. (slang) (AE) (d; tr.) to ~ on ("to reprimand") (the boss ~ed me on my sloppy writing) (see also **call on**) 10. (d; tr.) ("to summon") to ~ out of (she was ~ed out of town on business) 11. (D; intr.) ("to shout") to ~ to (she ~ed to me to help her) 12. (d; tr.) ("to summon") to ~ to (to ~ smb. to account; to ~ smt. to mind; the chair ~ed the delegates to order; to be ~ed to the bar) 13. (H) ("to summon") they ~ed her to testify 14. (N; used with a noun or adjective) ("to describe as or name") she ~ed him a stuffed shirt; I would ~ it a disgrace; I ~ that mean; they ~ him Bill; he is ~ed Bill 15. (O) ("to describe as") to ~ smb. a bad name 16. (misc.) (esp. AE) ("to telephone") to ~ collect; long-distance; she ~ed from the office; I always ~ Bill by his first name

call away *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from (she was ~ed away from her desk) 2. (misc.) they were ~ed away on business

call down *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to summon") to ~ on, upon (to ~ the wrath of God on smb.'s head) 2. (D; intr.) ("to shout") to ~ to (he ~ed down to us from the roof)

call in *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to visit") to ~ at, on (she ~ed in at our place this morning; the doctor ~ed in on her patient) 2. (D; intr.) ("to telephone") to ~ to; with (he ~ed in to the chat show/talk show; she ~ed in with a comment = she ~ed in (in order) to comment) 3. (s) ("to report by telephone") to ~ sick

call on *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ a pupil for an answer) 2. (H) the mayor ~ed on the people to remain calm = the people were ~ed on by the mayor to remain calm

callous *adj.* 1. ~ to (~ to suffering) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to say that)

call out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ (to smb.) for help) 2. (D; intr., tr.) ("to shout") to ~ to (he ~ed smt. out to me; he ~ed out to me to help him = "help me!" he ~ed out (to me))

call over *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (I ~ed him over to our table)

call up *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (they were ~ed up for military service) 2. (D; intr.) ("to shout") to ~ from; to (she ~ed up to us from the basement (to come down)) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ smt. on a computer screen) 4. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ on (to ~ smb. on the telephone) 5. (D; tr.) to ~ to (she was ~ed up to the podium) 6. (H) he was ~ed up to serve in the army

call upon *v.* see **call on**

calm I *adj.* to keep, remain, stay ~

calm II *n.* 1. to shatter the ~ 2. (a) dead, perfect; uneasy ~ (an uneasy ~ descended on the city after the riots) 3. (misc.) the mayor appealed to the people for calm; the ~ before the storm

calories *n.* 1. to count ~ 2. to burn ~ 3. empty ~ (in junk food)

calumny *n.* to heap ~ on

camel *n.* an Arabian, one-humped; Bactrian, two-humped ~

camera *n.* [– "apparatus for taking or transmitting pictures"] 1. to load a ~ 2. an automatic; box; miniature ~ 3. a cine (BE), motion-picture (AE), movie (AE); miniature; television, TV; video ~ 4. a security ~ 5. off ~ ("not being filmed") 6. on ~ ("being filmed") 7. (misc.) to face the ~ (in order to be photographed); the ~s are ready to roll (in a film studio); candid ~ ("taking pictures of people without their knowledge") ["judge's chamber"] 8. in ~ (the trial was held in ~; the case was heard in ~)

cameraman, camerawoman *n.* a motion-picture (AE); television ~

camouflage *n.* 1. to use, utilize ~ 2. natural ~ 3. by ~ (to conceal by ~)

camp *n.* 1. to make, pitch, set up ~ 2. to break, strike ~ 3. an army; base; boot; training ~ 4. a prisoner-of-war, POW, PW (AE) ~ 5. a labor; work ~ 6. a displaced-persons, DP; refugee; repatriation ~ 7. a concentration; detention; internment; transit ~ 8. a day; overnight; summer ~ 9. a trailer ~ (AE; BE has *caravan park, caravan site*) 10. (misc.) the enemy; opposing; rival ~

campaign I *n.* 1. to launch, mount, orchestrate, organize a ~ 2. to carry on, conduct, wage a ~ 3. to intensify, step up; spearhead a ~ 4. an active, aggressive, all-out, hard-fought, relentless, vigorous; whirlwind ~ 5. a feeble, lackadaisical, weak ~ 6. an advertising; membership; publicity, public-relations ~ 7. an election, political; whistle-stop; write-in ~ 8. an anti-smoking; educational ~ 9. a local; national, nationwide ~ 10. a smear; whispering ~ 11. a military ~ 12. the ~ got off to a good start; the ~ fizzled (out) 13. a ~ against; for (during the ~ against smoking; a ~ for equal rights) 14. a ~ to + inf. (they launched a ~ to fight smoking)

campaign II *v.* 1. to ~ actively, aggressively, vigorously 2. (D; intr.) to ~ against; for (they were ~ing actively against teenage smoking) 3. (E) they were ~ing actively to reduce teenage smoking

camp bed (BE) see **cot** 1, 2

camper *n.* 1. (esp. AE) a summer ~ (person) 2. (misc.) (fig.) a happy ~ (no more long faces, guys! We want only happy ~s in this office!)

campus *n.* (esp. AE) 1. a college, university ~ 2. off; on ~ (to live on ~) 3. at a ~ (the university has an uptown ~ at which there are good sports facilities)

can I *n.* 1. (AE) an ash, garbage, trash ~ (BE has *dustbin*) 2. a beer; milk; watering ~ 3. a tin ~

can II *v.* (F) she ~ work (see the Usage Notes for **able**; **must**)

Canadian *n.* a French ~ (a French ~ who speaks Canadian French)

canal *n.* 1. to build, construct, dig a ~ 2. to dredge a ~ 3. an irrigation ~ 4. along; on a ~ 5. (anat.) the alimentary ~ (what's in your alimentary ~?)

canard *n.* 1. to circulate, spread a ~ 2. an absurd, preposterous ~

canary *n.* a ~ sings

cancer *n.* 1. to get, develop; have ~ 2. bowel; brain; breast; cervical; colon, colorectal; lung; rectal; skin; stomach ~ 3. inoperable; metastatic; terminal ~ 4. ~ metastasizes, spreads

candid *adj.* 1. less than (entirely) ~ 2. ~ about 3. ~ with

candidacy, candidature *n.* 1. to announce, file (AE) one's ~ 2. to withdraw one's ~

candidate *n.* 1. to nominate; to put up; run (esp. AE) a ~ (for office) 2. to adopt (BE), choose, select; endorse a ~ 3. (BE) to de-select a ~ ("to decline to re-select or retain a party candidate") 4. a handpicked; write-in ~ 5. an independent; party; third-party ~ 6. a leading; prospective; strong; successful; victorious ~ (a successful ~ for admission to the university; a victorious ~ for the party's nomination) 7. a defeated; unsuccessful; weak ~ 8. a ~ for (a ~ for the presidency) 9. a ~ runs for, stands for (BE) office 10. (misc.) (esp. AE) a slate of ~s 11. (misc.) the successful ~ for the job will have had at least five years' experience

candle *n.* 1. to dip ~s 2. to light a ~ 3. to blow out, extinguish, snuff out a ~ 4. the ~ was burning; was flickering; was going out; was sputtering 5. a wax ~ 6. a household; votive ~ 7. the flame of a ~ = a ~ flame 8. (misc.) to burn the ~ at both ends ("to dissipate one's energy by doing too many things both by day and at night"); not to hold a ~ to smb. or smt. ("to be far inferior to smb. or smt.")

candlelight *n.* by ~ (to read by ~)

candlestick *n.* 1. brass; silver ~s 2. a pair of ~s

candor, candour *n.* 1. complete; disarming ~ 2. the ~ to + inf. (she had enough ~ to tell them the truth)

candy *n.* (esp. AE) 1. chocolate; cotton; hard ~ (AE; BE has *boiled sweet*) 2. a box; piece of ~ (BE has *sweet*)

cane *n.* ["walking stick"] 1. to carry; twirl a ~ ["plant"] 2. sugar ~ ["stick used for punishment"] (old-fashioned) 3. to get the ~

cannabis *n.* 1. to grow ~ 2. to smoke ~

cannibalism *n.* to engage in, practice ~

cannon *n.* 1. to fire a ~ 2. to aim a ~ at; to train a ~ on 3. to load a ~ 4. a ~ booms, roars; fires 5. a water ~ (the police trained a water ~ on the mob) 6. (misc.) (colloq.) a loose ~ ("a dangerously unpredictable person") (see also *cannon fodder* at **fodder**)

canoe I *n.* 1. to paddle a ~ 2. in a, by ~ (to cross a river by ~)

canoe II *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ along a river bank; to ~ across a lake

canon *n.* ["dogma"] 1. to establish, lay down a ~ ["round"] (mus.) 2. to sing a ~

canter *n.* ["gait of a horse"] at a ~ (to set off at a ~)

cap *n.* ["container holding an explosive charge"] 1. a percussion ~ ["head covering"] 2. to place, put a ~ on one's head 3. a cloth; peaked; skull ~ 4. a bathing; shower ~ 5. a forage (BE), garrison; overseas; service ~ 6. a baseball ~ 7. (BE) a cricket; rugby ~ (showing that the wearer is a member of a national team) 8. (misc.) to wear (a) ~ and gown (at graduation); (fig.) to put on one's thinking ~ (old-fashioned) (to ponder a problem) ["ceiling, upper limit"] 9. to place/put a ~ on (to place a ~ on public spending) ["lid"] 10. to put on, screw on a ~ 11. to screw off, take off, unscrew a ~ ["misc."] 12. the polar ice-cap

capability *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show one's ~ties 2. a defense; first-strike; military; nuclear ~ 3. the ~ to + inf. (the ~ to win) 4. beyond; within smb.'s ~ties (doing this job is well within my ~ties!)

capable *adj.* 1. perfectly, truly ~ 2. ~ of (he is ~ of anything)

capacity *n.* ["ability to hold"] 1. to ~ (filled/packed to ~) 2. lung ~ 3. seating; storage ~ 4. a ~ of (a ~ of twenty gallons) ["ability"] 5. intellectual, mental ~ 6. smb.'s earning ~ 7. a ~ for (a ~ for making friends) 8. the ~ to + inf. (she has the ~ to make friends) 9. beyond one's ~; within one's ~ (doing this job is well within my ~!) ["ability to produce"] 10. plant; productive ~ (our country's productive ~) 11. full, peak ~ 12. at ~ (to operate at peak ~) ["function"] 13. an administrative; advisory; professional; supervisory ~ 14. an official; unofficial ~ 15. in a ~ (she acted in an advisory ~; in his ~ as legal adviser, he helped us a great deal)

cape *n.* ["piece of land, headland"] 1. to round a ~ 2. on a ~

caper *n.* 1. to cut a ~ 2. a childish ~

capital *n.* ["wealth"] 1. to borrow; raise ~ 2. to invest, put up; tie up ~ (I hope to get a good return on the ~ I've invested) 3. to sink ~ in, into 4. to withdraw ~ (from) 5. borrowed; circulating, working; fixed, permanent; foreign; idle; venture ~ ["gain"] 6. to make ~ out of smt. 7. political ~ (they made political ~ out of the incident) ["official seat of government"] 8. to establish a ~ 9. a national; provincial; state ~ 10. foreign; world ~s ["main center"] 11. a diamond; fashion; film ~ (where is the film ~ of the world?)

capitalize *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on smb.'s mistakes)

capital punishment *n.* 1. to impose; introduce ~ 2. to abolish ~

capitulate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the enemy)

capricious *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to act like that)

capsule *n.* 1. a space; time ~ 2. a seed ~

captain *n.* 1. (AE) a bell ~ 2. a group (BE); ship's; team ~ 3. (AE) a precinct ~ (in the police) 4. (mil.) a ~ commands a company or battery 5. to make smb. a ~, to promote smb. to the rank of ~; to have, hold the rank of ~ 6. (misc.) ~s of industry ("leading industrialists"); what's your opinion, Captain (Smith)?

captive *adj.* to hold smb. ~; to take smb. ~ (they held us ~ for several weeks)

captivity *n.* 1. to hold in ~ 2. to take into ~ 3. to release from ~ 4. (misc.) to breed wild animals in ~

capture *v.* to ~ smt. on film

car *n.* ["automobile, motorcar"] 1. to drive, operate; park; run; start; steer a ~ 2. to bring a ~ to a stop, to stop a ~; to get in, into a ~; to get out of a ~ 3. to back (esp. AE), reverse (esp. BE) a ~ (she backed the ~ into the garage) 4. to ride in a ~ 5. to go, travel by ~ 6. to hire (BE), rent a ~ 7. to break in (AE), run in (BE) a (new) ~ 8. to fix, repair; service; tune up; winterize a ~ 9. to jack up; park; road-test; a ~ 10. to register a ~ 11. to smash up, total, wreck; strip a ~ 12. an antique; veteran (BE); vintage ~ 13. an electric ~ 14. a luxury; passenger; sports ~ 15. a racing; stock ~ 16. an armored; command; scout ~ 17. a Panda (BE), patrol, police, prowl (AE), squad; unmarked (police) ~ 18. a getaway ~ 19. an estate ~ (BE; old-fashioned BE also has *shooting brake*; AE has *station wagon*) 20. a new; secondhand, used ~ 21. a company; hire (esp. BE), rental, rented ~ 22. a ~ overtakes, passes; runs; starts 23. a ~ breaks down; stalls 24. (misc.) to take a ~ in for service; to fill a ~ up with gasoline/petrol ["vehicle that moves on rails"] 25. (on a train) (esp. AE; BE also has *carriage, wagon/waggon, van*) a baggage (AE; BE has *luggage van*); box (AE); cattle; club, lounge, parlor; dining, restaurant (BE); first-class (AE; BE has *first-class carriage*); flat; freight (AE; BE has *goods wagon*); mail (BE has *mail van*); railroad (AE; BE has *railway carriage*); sleeping; tank ~ 26. a streetcar (see also **streetcar**); trolley ~ (AE; BE has *tram*) 27. a cable ~ 28. (misc.) to uncouple railroad/railway ~s

carbon *n.* activated; radioactive ~

card *n.* 1. a business, calling (esp. AE), visiting ~ 2. a filing; index (AE), record (BE) ~ 3. a donor, organ-donor; library –; membership; press; ration ~ 4. a time ~ 5. a banker's (BE), cheque (BE); cash (esp. BE), credit (AE) (used at a cash machine); charge (esp. BE), credit (used for making purchases); debit; loyalty; SIM ~ (see also **credit card**; **debit card**) 6. a boarding ~ (for boarding a plane) 7. a report ~ (AE; BE has *school report*) 8. a boxing; race (BE), racing (AE) ~ 9. a flash ~ (used as a teaching aid) 10. a high; low; playing; trump (also fig.); wild (also fig.); winning ~ 11. an anniversary; birthday; Christmas; confirmation; Easter; get-well; graduation; greeting (esp. AE), greetings (BE); Hanukkah; New Year's; sympathy; thank-you ~ 12. a postcard (CE), postal (AE) ~ 13. (misc.) a drawing ~ ("smb. or smt. that attracts large audiences") (see also **trump card**)

cards *n.* 1. to play ~ 2. to have, play a game of ~ 3. to cut; deal; shuffle the ~ 4. playing ~ 5. a deck (esp. AE), pack of ~ 6. (misc.) to stack the ~ ("to prearrange conditions to one's own advantage") (the ~ were stacked and the dice were loaded against us); to hold all the ~ ("to be in a strong negotiating position"); to be in (AE), on (BE) the ~ ("to be destined by fate") (Carmen thought her death was in the ~s); to lay, put one's ~ on the table ("to reveal one's position"); to play one's ~ right ("to negotiate skillfully")

care I *n.* ["caution"] 1. to exercise, take ~ 2. great, meticulous, painstaking, scrupulous, (the) utmost ~ 3. ~ to + inf. (she took ~ to avoid catching cold) 4. ~ that + clause (take ~ that you don't catch cold!) 5. with ~ (to handle smt. with ~) ["solicitude"]["maintenance"]["keep"] 6. to provide ~ for 7. to take ~ of – 8. to entrust smb./smt. to smb.'s ~; to put smb. in smb.'s ~ 9. (tender) loving; parental ~ ("I thank them for their tender loving ~" – Shakespeare, *Henry VI*, *Part 2*, Act 3, Scene 2) 10. child; day; foster ~ (day ~ for children) 11. in smb.'s ~ (the children were left in my ~) ["health maintenance and medical care"] 12. to provide ~ for 13. to get, receive ~ 14. dental; medical; nursing ~ (see also **health care**) 15. antenatal (BE), antepartal (AE), prenatal (AE); coronary; postnatal, postpartum ~ 16. emergency; extended; intensive; long-term; primary (health); special ~ (this patient requires intensive nursing ~) 17. custodial; domiciliary; hospice; respite ~ 18. in-patient; out-patient ~ 19. managed ~ 20. under smb.'s ~ (under a doctor's ~) 21. (misc.) a coronary-care unit; an intensive-care unit; to take into ~ (BE) ("to take a child from its parents under the authority of a court"); driving without due ~ and attention (BE) ["misc."] 22. in ~ of ("at/to smb.'s address")

care II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to be interested") to ~ about (she doesn't ~ about our opinions) 2. (D; intr.) ("to like") to ~ about, for (he ~s about us; she ~s a lot for you; would you ~ for some more coffee?) 3. (d; intr.) ("to take care of") to ~ for (she ~s for her elderly mother) 4. (E) ("to want") I don't ~ to attend 5. (Q) I don't ~ why she called: I don't want to speak to her!

career *n.* 1. to carve out, make a ~ (for oneself) 2. to enter on; launch a ~ 3. to abandon, give up one's ~ 4. to cut short smb.'s ~ (the accident cut short her ~) 5. a brilliant, distinguished; checkered (AE), chequered (BE); colorful; promising; successful; turbulent ~ 6. an academic; diplomatic; literary; military; musical; political; professional; public; stage ~ 7. a ~ as (to carve out a ~ as a diplomat) 8. a ~ in (she made a ~ for herself in diplomacy) 9. (misc.) her ~ took off (her ~ really took off when she sang Carmen!)

careful *adj.* 1. ~ about, of (a good writer is ~ about details) 2. ~ in (to be ~ in negotiating a new trade agreement) 3. ~ with (we must be ~ with dynamite) 4. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to complete everything on time) 5. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that everything was/would be completed on time) 6. (misc.) be ~ driving home

careless *adj.* 1. ~ about, in, of, with (~ about one's appearance) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to leave the door unlocked)

carelessness *n.* ~ about, in, with

caress I *n.* a gentle, loving ~

caress II *v.* to ~ gently, lovingly

caretaker *n.* see **superintendant**

cargo *n.* 1. to carry, haul (a) ~ 2. to load, take on; stow; transfer ~ 3. to unload ~ 4. contraband; general ~ (see also *cargo plane* at **plane**; *cargo ship* at **ship**)

caricature *n.* ["an ironic representation"] 1. to draw a ~ (of) 2. a bold, striking ~ ["travesty"] 3. a ~ of the truth (the film is/gives/presents only a grotesque ~ of what actually happened)

carnage *n.* senseless, terrible ~

carol I *n.* 1. to sing a ~ 2. a Christmas ~

carol II *v.* to go ~ing

carp *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about; at

carpet *n.* 1. to beat a ~ 2. to lay; weave a ~ 3. to take up a ~ (the ~ must be taken up and cleaned) 4. to clean; shampoo; vacuum a ~ 5. an oriental; Persian; woven ~ 6. (misc.) to ¬put out/roll out¬ the red ~ for smb. ("to give smb. a warm reception"); a flying, magic ~; to call smb. on the ~ (esp. AE) ("to call people to account for their actions") (see also *to sweep under the carpet* at **sweep**)

carpeting *n.* ["floor covering"] 1. fitted (BE), wall-to-wall ~ ["severe reprimand"] (BE) 2. to get; give a ~

carriage *n.* ["vehicle"] 1. see **baby carriage** 2. a railway ~ (BE; AE has *railroad car*) 3. a horse-drawn ~ ["support"] 4. a gun; typewriter ~ ["bearing"] 5. an erect; proud ~

carriageway *n.* (BE) 1. a dual ~ (BE; AE has *divided highway*) 2. on a ~

carried away *adj.* ["enthusiastic"] to get ~ (by, with)

carrier *n.* 1. an aircraft; escort; personnel; troop ~ 2. a letter, mail ~ (AE; CE has *postal worker*) 3. a common, public ~ ("a transport service used by the public") 4. a chronic ~ (of a disease)

carrot *n.* 1. diced ~s 2. a bunch of ~s

carry *v.* 1. (B) she ~ied the books to me 2. (d; tr.) to ~ from; to (we ~ied the table from the door to the center of the room) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ into (~ the chairs into the house) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ on (colloq.), with (I never ~ cash on/with me) 5. (d; tr.) to ~ out of (we ~ied the books out of the room) 6. (d; tr.) to ~ through (her cheerful disposition ~ied her through the crisis) 7. (P; refl.) she ~ies herself well 8. (misc.) to ~ to excess, to an extreme ("to go/take too far")

carry about, around *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (I don't want to carry that thing around with me)

carry back *v.* (B) he ~ied the books back to her; the memory ~ied me back to my youth

carry down *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (they ~ied the chair down from the attic to the basement)

carry forward *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (the figures must be ~ied forward to the next page)

carry on *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to complain") to ~ about (he is always ~ing on about his colleagues) 2. (D; intr.) ("to have an affair") to ~ with (the boss is ~ying on with one of the new employees) 3. (BE) ("to continue, keep on") (G) to ~ talking 4. (P; intr.) ("to continue") (~ with your work; ~ as before; down the road)

carry-over *n.* a ~ from; to (a ~ from the past)

carry over *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (~ these figures over to the next page; to ~ a tradition from one generation to another) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ into (she does not let her personal prejudices ~ into her professional life; she does not ~ her personal prejudices into her professional life)

cart *n.* 1. to draw, pull; load; push; unload a ~ 2. a ~ creaks; lumbers 3. a dustcart (BE: AE has *garbage* *truck*) 4. a shopping ~ (AE; BE has *trolley*) 5. (misc.) to put the ~ before the horse ("to do in the wrong order") (see also **apple cart)**

carte blanche *n.* 1. to give smb. ~ 2. to get, have ~ 3. ~ to + inf. (she gave him ~ to invest her money)

cartel *n.* 1. to form a ~ 2. to break up a ~ 3. a drug (CE), drugs (BE); international, multinational; oil ~

cartilage *n.* (a) torn ~

cart off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (they ~ed him off to jail)

cartoon *n.* 1. to draw a ~ 2. an animated; political ~ 3. a strip ~ (BE; CE has *comic strip*)

cartridge *n.* a blank; practice; ruptured; spent ~

cartwheel *n.* to do, execute, turn a ~

carve *v.* 1. (C) he ~d an ornament for me; or: he ~d me an ornament 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from, out of (to ~ a figure from ivory) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in wood) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ into (he ~ed the ivory into an ornament for me)

carve out *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (she ~d out a new career for herself)

carve up *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (they ~d up the region into three areas = they ~d the region up into three areas)

carving *n.* an ivory; wood ~

case I *n.* ["legal action"] ["argument"] 1. to hear, try a ~ (the court will not hear this ~) 2. to dismiss, throw out a ~ (the judge dismissed the ~) 3. to take; turn down a ~ (the lawyer agreed to take the ~) 4. to build; prepare a ~ (we can build a strong ~ with the available data) 5. to make (out), present, state a ~ (she made out a convincing ~ for her client; he presented a good ~ for the new legislation) 6. to argue, plead a ~ (the lawyer argued the ~ skillfully) 7. to rest one's ~ ("to cease introducing evidence") (the defense lawyer rested her ~) 8. to lose; win a ~ 9. to decide; settle a ~ (they persuaded their client to settle the ~ out of court) 10. an airtight, ironclad, open-and-shut, watertight; clear, convincing, prima facie; strong ~ 11. a benchmark, landmark ~ 12. a borderline; weak ~ 13. a court ~ 14. a pending; test ~ 15. a civil; divorce ~ 16. a criminal; murder ~ 17. a ~ goes to trial 18. a ~ against (we had an airtight ~ against him) 19. (misc.) to strengthen a ~; to weaken a ~; the president took her ~ to the people; the first recorded ~ under the new law; to have a good ~ ("to have a convincing argument"); is there a ~ for capital punishment? ("can capital punishment be justified?") ["crime, felony"] 20. to break, clear up, crack, solve a ~ (the detective broke the ~) 21. to investigate, work on a ~ (the police worked on the ~ for a year) ["instance, occurrence, example"] 22. to cite a ~ 23. an attested; authenticated; clear; open-and-shut ("easily settled") ~ 24. a borderline; doubtful; hypothetical ~ 25. a celebrated; classic, textbook, typical; similar; special; test ~ 26. an extreme, flagrant; isolated, rare ~ 27. (med.) an acute; advanced; bad; chronic; hopeless; lingering; mild; terminal ~ 28. in a certain ~ (in this ~; in any ~; in ~ of emergency) 29. (misc.) to be the ~ ("to be so"); a ~ in point ("a pertinent case") ["inflectional form"] 30. to govern, take a ~ (certain Russian verbs take the dative ~) 31. the ablative; accusative; dative; genitive; instrumental; locative; nominative; oblique; prepositional; vocative ~ ["misc."] 32. as the ~ may be; in ~ it rains/should rain; in ~ of (the alarm will go off in ~ of heavy rain); a basket ~ ("smb. without arms or legs or who is in a completely hopeless situation") (fig.) (unless sales rise, your company will be a basket ~!); ~ by ~ (deal with each applicant ~ by ~ = deal with each applicant on a case-by-case basis); to get off smb.'s ~ (slang) ("to stop criticizing smb."); on the ~ (slang) ("in action about smb./smt.") (don't worry, boss: I'm already on the ~!) (see also **caseload**) USAGE NOTE: "In case of" means 'in the event of': *the alarm will go off in case of heavy rain*. "In case + clause" means 'lest': *I took an umbrella in case it rained/should rain*; *don't lie in case you are/should be found out.* Some Americans may also be able to say *I used to open my umbrella in case it rained*, meaning 'I used to open my umbrella if/when it rained.'

case II *n.* ["container"] ["cover"] an attaché; display; jewelry; packing; pillow ~; suitcase; watch ~

case III *n.* ["type of print"] lower; upper ~

case history *n.* 1. to get, take a ~ (on) 2. a detailed ~

caseload *n.* 1. to carry, have a ~ 2. to increase; reduce smb.'s ~ 3. a heavy; light ~ (the social worker carries/has a heavy ~)

cash I *n.* 1. to pay (in) ~ 2. to run out of ~ 3. out of, short of ~ 4. cold, hard; loose; ready; spare ~ 5. petty ~ 6. (misc.) she never carries ~; ~ on the barrel (head) (esp. AE)/on the nail (BE) ("pay now in cash"); ~ on delivery ("pay when the order is delivered")

cash II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (she ~ed the money order for me)

cash in *v.* (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on one's sudden popularity)

casino *n.* a gambling ~

casserole *n.* 1. to do, make a ~ 2. a meat; vegetable ~

cassette *n.* a blank ~

cast I *n.* ["set of performers"] 1. to head a ~ 2. to select a ~ 3. an all-star, star-studded ~ 4. a supporting ~; a ~ of characters; a ~ of thousands ["rigid dressing of gauze"] (med.) 5. to put a ~ on (to put a ~ on a broken leg = the broken leg was put in a ~) 6. a plaster ~

cast II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to assign to a role") to ~ as (he was cast as Hamlet = he was cast in the role of Hamlet) 2. ("to be chosen for a play") to ~ in (he was cast in *Hamlet*) 3. (d; tr.) ("to throw") to ~ on, over (his actions have cast doubts on our entire campaign) 4. (H) ("to assign to a role") he was cast to play Hamlet

cast about, around *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to seek") (to ~ for a solution)

caste *n.* 1. a high; low; warrior ~ 2. (misc.) a ~ system (to belong to a low ~ in a rigid ~ system)

cast in *v.* to ~ one's lot with smb. ("to join forces with smb.")

casual *adj.* ~ about (she was very ~ about winning the prize)

casualties *n.* 1. to cause ~ to; inflict ~ on 2. to incur, suffer, take ~ 3. to report ~ 4. heavy, serious; light ~ (the enemy inflicted heavy ~ on our troops) 5. civilian; military; traffic ~

cat *n.* 1. to neuter a ~; to spay a (female) ~ 2. an alley; stray ~ 3. an Angora; Burmese; feral; marmalade (BE); Persian; Siamese; tabby ~ 4. ~s arch their backs; meow (AE), miaow (BE); purr; scratch 5. a young ~ is a kitten 6. a male ~ is a tomcat 7. (misc.) ~s have fur or hair and dogs have hair; to let the ~ out of the bag ("to reveal a secret"); to play ~ and mouse with ("to toy with"); to fight like ~ and dog (BE), to fight like ~s and dogs (AE); a fat ~ (derog.) ("a profiteer")

catalog, catalogue *n.* 1. to compile, make up a ~ 2. an author; card; subject ~ 3. a college, school, university ~ (esp. AE; BE has *prospectus*) 4. a mail-order ~ (it was in the mail-order ~ from which we ordered it) 5. a museum ~

catapult *v.* (P; intr., tr.) he was ~ed to fame; she ~ed out of obscurity into the limelight

cataract *n.* (med.) 1. to develop, get, have a ~ 2. to remove a ~

catastrophe *n.* 1. to face; suffer a ~ 2. to avert, prevent a ~ 3. to survive a ~ 4. an environmental; financial; major, overwhelming ~ 5. a ~ for, to (the fire was a ~ to everyone)

catch I *n.* ["hook"] 1. to fasten a ~ 2. a safety ~ ["smt. caught"] 3. to bring in, land a ~ (the fishermen landed a good ~) 4. the ~ of the day; the day's ~ ["act of catching"] 5. to make a one-handed; running; two-handed ~ (as in baseball or cricket) ["children's game"] 6. to play ~ ["disadvantage"] 7. a ~ that + clause ("sounds good. What's the ~?" "the ~ is that the pay is low")

catch II *v.* 1. to ~ red-handed, in the act 2. (C) she caught a small fish for me; or: she caught me a small fish 3. (d; tr.) to ~ by (she caught him by the arm) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ from (she caught a cold from her brother) 5. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ in (the kite caught in a tree) 6. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ on (his shirt caught on a nail = he caught his shirt on a nail) 7. (D; tr.) to ~ with (the police caught them with the stolen goods) 8. (J) we caught him stealing 9. (colloq.) (esp. BE) (O) she caught him one in the eye 10. (misc.) we caught him at a bad time; we caught her unawares

catch on *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ to ("to comprehend") (he caught on to what I said immediately) 2. (D; intr.) ("to become popular") to ~ with (to ~ with the public)

catch up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on one's correspondence) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (AE), with (I'll ~ with you later; BE also has: I'll ~ you up later) USAGE NOTES: (1) With a non-personal subject, only *catch up with* is used: *his past has finally caught up with him.* (2) Esp. in BE, to *catch up with smb.* can also mean to manage to find someone (such as someone you want to speak to): the presenter said, "Before tonight's concert I *caught up with* the conductor and asked him what he thought of the music to be performed."

catechism *n.* (rel.) to learn; recite the ~

categorize *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ according to, by (the books were ~d by language) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~d as a liberal) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ into (the voters were ~d into liberals, conservatives, and undecided)

category *n.* 1. to establish, set up a ~ 2. to assign to, put into a ~ 3. a main, major ~ 4. to fall into, fit into a ~ 5. a separate; special ~; a ~ of its own (such phenomena belong in a ~ of their own)

cater *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ for (BE), to (to ~ to all tastes) USAGE NOTE: In BE *cater to* is rare and typically pejorative, meaning 'to pander to.'

cater-cornered, catty-cornered *adj.*, *adv.* (AE) ~ to

catering *n.* to do (the) ~ (who is going to do the ~ for our party?)

catheter *n.* (med.) to change; insert; irrigate; remove a ~

Catholic *n.* a devout; lapsed; practicing; Roman ~

Catholicism *n.* Anglo-Catholicism; Roman ~

cattle *n.* 1. to breed; raise, rear (BE) ~ 2. to drive; graze; herd; round up ~ 3. to brand; rustle ~ 4. beef; dairy; prize ~ 5. ~ graze 6. several head of ~; a herd of ~ 7. young ~ are calves 8. female ~ are cows 9. male ~ are bulls

catty *adj.* (colloq.) ["malicious"] ~ about

catty-cornered see **cater-cornered**

caucus *n.* 1. to form; (esp. AE) hold a ~ 2. a party; (BE) trade-union ~

caught *adj.* to be, get ~ (we were ~ in the rain; the kite got ~ in the tree)

caught up *adj.* ["involved"] ~ in (~ in radical movements)

cause I *n.* ["movement"] ["objective"] 1. to advance, champion, fight for, further, help, promote a ~ 2. to serve a ~ 3. to advocate, espouse, plead a ~ 4. to take up a ~ 5. a common; good, just, noble, righteous, worthwhile, worthy ~ (to make common ~ with smb.) 6. a lost ~ ["reason"] 7. to give; show ~ for 8. (legal) probable ~ 9. the biggest (single), chief; a deep-rooted, root, underlying; immediate; leading, major; primary; secondary; ultimate ~ (is smoking the biggest single ~ of cancer or just a major ~?) 10. natural ~s (to die of natural ~s) 11. (a) ~ for (there is no ~ for alarm/complaint) 12. ~ to + inf. (to find ~ to rejoice; there is no ~ to complain; she had good ~ to be disappointed)

cause II *v.* 1. (C) we ~d them a lot of trouble; or:

we ~d a lot of trouble for them 2. (rare) (H; no passive) the incident ~d me to reflect

caution I *n.* 1. to exercise, use; to advise, recommend ~ 2. due; extreme, great ~ 3. ~ in (you should exercise ~ in/when dealing with them) 4. with ~ (to proceed with ~) 5. (misc.) to fling/hurl/throw ~ to the winds; to sound a note of ~; a word of ~; to err on the side of ~

caution II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ about, against; (esp. BE) for (she ~ed us against drinking the water; to be ~ed for dangerous driving) 2. (H) she ~ed us not to drink the water 3. (L; must have an object in BE; may have an object in AE) she ~ed (us) that we should not drink the water

cautious *adj.* 1. ~ about, of (he was ~ about committing himself; she was ~ of strangers) 2. ~ in (~ in using firearms) 3. ~ with (she was ~ with strangers)

cavalry *n.* 1. to commit ~ 2. heavy; light ~

cave *n.* 1. to explore a ~ 2. a deep ~

cave in *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (they finally ~d in to our demands)

cavil *v.* (formal) (D; intr.) to ~ at

cavity *n.* 1. to fill a ~ (in a tooth) 2. the abdominal; chest; oral ~

CD *n.* 1. to cut, make; release a ~ 2. to play a ~

cease I *n.* without ~

cease II *v.* 1. (E) the old empire has ~d to exist; it never ~d to amaze her (to learn) that he had been promoted so quickly 2. (G) the company has ~d trading 3. (misc.) (esp. legal) to ~ and desist

cease-fire *n.* 1. to broker, mediate, negotiate a ~ 2. to declare; sign; work out a ~ 3. to honor, observe a ~ 4. to break, violate a ~ 5. a temporary ~ 6. the ~ has gone into effect; the ~ is holding

cede *v.* (A) France ~d the territory to them; or: France ceded them the territory

ceiling *n.* ["upper limit"] 1. to place, put, set a ~ (on prices) 2. to lower; raise a ~ 3. to abolish, lift a ~ (on prices) 4. a high; low ~ 5. a price; rent ~ 6. a glass ~ ("invisible ceiling") (is there a corporate glass ~ that keeps women from getting top jobs?) ["top of a room"] 7. a high; low ~ (a beautiful painting on the high ~ of the council chamber) ["misc."] 8. (colloq.) to hit the ~ (AE; CE has *roof*) ("to lose one's temper") (mom will really hit the ~ if we get back late!)

celebrate *v.* 1. to ~ formally; joyously; noisily; officially; privately; publicly; quietly; solemnly 2. (misc.) to ~ in style

celebrated *adj.* 1. ~ as (~ as a painter) 2. ~ for (~ for scientific research; Marie Curie was rightly ~ for her achievements as a scientist)

celebration *n.* 1. to have, hold a ~ 2. a joyous; noisy ~ 3. a private; quiet ~ 4. a centenary (esp. BE), centennial (esp. AE); formal; official; public; religious; solemn ~ 5. in ~ of (a service in ~ of the life of a great scientist)

celebrity *n.* ["famous person"] 1. a film, Hollywood; international; literary; local; media; national; TV; visiting ~ 2. (misc.) a host of ~ties

celery *n.* 1. crisp ~ 2. a bunch; stalk of ~

celibacy *n.* 1. to practice ~ 2. (misc.) to make/take a vow of ~

cell *n.* ["cubicle, small room"] 1. a jail, prison; monk's; nun's; padded ~ ["small mass of protoplasm"] 2. to form a ~ 3. a cancer; egg; germ; nerve; sperm; stem ~ (see also **blood cell**) ["receptacle containing electrodes and an electrolyte"] 4. a dry; photoelectric; primary; voltaic ~ ["smallest unit of an organization"] 5. to form a ~ 6. a local; party ~

cellar *n.* 1. a cyclone, storm (AE); wine ~ 2. (misc.) a saltcellar (CE; AE also has *saltshaker*)

cello *n.* 1. to play the ~ 2. to string, tune a ~ 3. for; on the ~ (a sonata for unaccompanied ~; a sonata for ~ and piano; to play smt. on the ~) (see also *cello concerto* at **concerto**)

cellophane *n.* to wrap smt. in ~

cement I *n.* 1. to mix; pour ~ 2. Portland ~ 3. ~ sets

cement II *v.* to ~ smt. in, into place; to ~ smt. together

cemetery *n.* 1. a military; national ~ 2. at, in a ~ (she works at/in the ~; to be buried in a ~)

censor I *n.* a government; military ~

censor II *v.* 1. to ~ heavily (the report was heavily ~ed) 2. (D; tr.) ("to remove") (AE) to ~ from (the figures were ~ed from the report)

censorship *n.* 1. to impose, introduce ~ 2. to exercise, practice ~ 3. to abolish, lift ~ 4. rigid, strict ~ 5. film; government(al); military; press ~ 6. ~ of, over

censure I *n.* 1. bitter, strong; public ~ 2. to come under ~ 3. (misc.) a vote of ~

censure II *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly, severely, strongly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (they were ~d as traitors) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ for (the senator was ~d for income-tax evasion)

census *n.* 1. to carry out, conduct, take a ~ 2. a national; traffic (BE) ~ 3. at, in a ~ (at the last ~)

cent *n.* (AE) not to have a red ~ (colloq.) ("to have no money at all")

centenary *n.* to celebrate, mark, observe a ~

centennial (esp. AE) see **centenary**

center I centre *n.* ["middle"] 1. dead ~ 2. at, in the ~ (at the ~ of a circle) ["central point"] 3. a storm ~ (also fig.) 4. at, in a ~ (at the ~ of operations; right in the ~ of activity) ["location where an activity takes place; focus of activity"] 5. an amusement; city, town; leisure (BE); sports ~ 6. a community; senior-citizen; social ~ 7. a cultural; literary; music ~ 8. a civic; conference; convention ~ 9. a service; shopping ~ 10. a birthing (AE), childbearing (AE); crisis; day-care; health; medical ~ 11. a research; science ~ 12. a banking; business, commercial; fashion; financial; industrial; manufacturing; trade; wine-producing ~ (London is a major international financial ~ = London is a major international ~ for/of finance) 13. a communications; information ~

14. a job (BE) ~ 15. a remand (BE) ~ 16. (mil.) a separation ~ 17. (fig.) a nerve; storm ~ 18. a national; world ~ ["group of nerve cells"] 19. a nerve ~ ["political position"] 20. to move (away) from the ~; to move to the ~ 21. left of ~; right of ~

center II centre *v.* (d; intr., tr.) to ~ around, on, round (BE), upon (attention ~ed on their opening statements) USAGE NOTE: Some purists reject *to center around/round* as incorrect or illogical.

center stage *n.* 1. to occupy, take ~ 2. at ~

central *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to (such values are ~ to our way of life)

century *n.* 1. from; to a ~ (from the fifth to the tenth ~/~ries) 2. during, in; throughout a ~ (in the ninth ~; throughout the whole of the ninth ~) 3. over, (down) through the ~ries 4. (misc.) at the beginning of the last/next/past/present ~; at the turn of the ~

cereal *n.* 1. to cook, make (AE), prepare ~ 2. breakfast; cooked, hot (AE); dry ~ 3. a bowl of ~ (see also **porridge**)

ceremony *n.* ["formal act"] 1. to conduct, hold, perform a ~ 2. to participate in a ~ 3. to attend a ~ 4. an award(s); flag-raising; graduation; inaugural; initiation; swearing-in; (Japanese) tea ~; welcoming; wreath-laying ~ 5. a civil; funeral; marriage, wedding; religious (to perform a religious ~) 6. a formal; solemn; special ~ 7. a private; public ~ 8. a closing; opening ~ (the opening ~ took place without incident and the closing ~ went off without a hitch) 9. during; at a ~ ["formality"] 10. to stand on ~ 11. appropriate; great ~ 12. with ~ (with appropriate ~) 13. without ~ (they all pitched in without ~)

certain *adj.* 1. to make ~ 2. absolutely, completely, totally; almost, nearly; quite; very ~ 3. far from ~ 4. for ~ (can you say for ~ where the ceremony will take place?) 5. ~ about, of (we were ~ of his support) 6. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to agree) 7. ~ that; wh-word + clause (it is ~ that they will sign the contract; make ~ that all doors are locked; are you ~ that you turned the gas off?; are you ~ where the ceremony will be held?; are you ~ who will officiate at the ceremony?; are you ~ how long the ceremony will take?)

certainly *adv.* 1. almost ~ 2. (misc.) ~ not

certainty *n.* 1. to express ~ 2. absolute, dead; mathematical; moral; (BE) a racing ~ 3. ~ of (there is no ~ of success) 4. ~ that + clause (there is no ~ that an agreement will be reached) 5. with ~ (to state with ~) 6. (misc.) to know smt. for a ~

certificate *n.* 1. to issue a ~ 2. to cash (in) a ~ 3. a baptismal; birth; death; marriage; medical ~ 4. a money-market; stock; tax-free; treasury ~ (see also **savings certificate**) 5. a gift ~ 6. a teaching ~ (you cannot teach in this state without a teaching ~) 7. (BE) a school ~ 8. (misc.) a ~ of (to issue a ~ of baptism)

certification *n.* 1. to grant ~ 2. to receive ~ 3. ~ as (he was granted ~ as a kindergarten teacher) 4. ~ in (she has her ~ in critical care nursing)

certify *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (he has been ~fied as a critical-care nurse; the psychiatrist ~fied him as insane) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in (he has been ~fied in critical-care nursing) 3. (L) the psychiatrist ~fied that he was insane 4. (M) did the psychiatrist ~ him to be insane? 5. (N; used with an adjective) he was ~fied insane

certitude *n.* 1. absolute, complete, utter ~ (my utter ~ in attesting to her good character) 2. ~ that + clause (it is with ~ that I can attest to her good character)

chafe *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ at, under (to ~ at the delay; to ~ under restrictions)

chaff *n.* to separate the (wheat from the) ~ (by threshing or winnowing) (also fig.)

chagrin *n.* 1. to express; feel ~ 2. deep, great, profound ~ 3. ~ at (to feel ~ at being rejected) 4. ~ that + clause (she expressed her ~ that she had been rejected) 5. to smb.'s ~ (to her great ~, she was rejected)

chagrined *adj.* 1. ~ at (~ at being rejected) 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to have been rejected) 3. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that she had been rejected)

chain I *n.* ["series of links"] 1. to keep (a dog) on a ~ 2. to put ~s on (the tires of a car) 3. to wear a (gold) ~ (around one's neck) 4. a bicycle; tire ~ 5. a ~ clanks, jangles 6. a link in a ~ ["measuring instrument"] 7. an engineer's; surveyor's ~ ["shackles"] 8. in ~s (the prisoners were in ~s) ["group of associated enterprises"] 9. a department-store; hotel; restaurant ~ ["type of locking device"] 10. to put the ~ on the door ["misc."] 11. to form a human ~; to pull the ~ (BE) ("to flush the toilet"); a mountain ~ = a ~ of mountains; the food ~ ("the hierarchy of living beings in which each one feeds on the one below") (are we human beings really at the top of the food ~?)

chain II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a dog to a fence; to ~ one prisoner to another = to ~ prisoners together)

chair *n.* ["piece of furniture for sitting"] 1. an armchair; camp (BE), folding; cane; deck; easy; empty, free, unoccupied, high; occasional; reclining; rocking; swivel ~ (he pulled up an empty ~ and sat down in/on it next to us) (see also **push-chair**) USAGE NOTE: You can sit *in* an armchair but are more likely to sit *on* a chair without arms. ["professorship"] 2. to endow; establish a ~ 3. to be appointed to, get, receive a ~ 4. to have, hold, occupy a ~ (to hold a ~ in biology = to hold the ~ of biology) 5. to give up, relinquish a ~ 6. a personal (BE); university ~ ["position of chairperson"] 7. (esp. BE) to occupy; take the ~ 8. a rotating; temporary ~ ["chairperson"] 9. to address one's questions to the ~ [misc.] 10. an electric ~ ("a chair-like device for electrocuting criminals"); stacking ~s (that can be put away by stacking them atop each other) ("I took my place in the semicircle of stacking ~s" – David Lodge, *Deaf Sentence* (2008, p. 290)) (see also **musical chairs**)

chairman *n.* 1. a department(al) ~ 2. ~ of the board USAGE NOTE: BE also has *department head, head of (the) department* (in an educational institution); in order to promote non-sexist language, the terms *chair* or *chairperson* are used more and more in place of *chairman* or *chairwoman*.

chairperson see **chairman** 1

chairwoman see **chairman** 1

chalet *n.* a Swiss ~

chalk *n.* 1. to write in, with ~ (on a blackboard) 2. a piece, stick (BE) of ~ (see also **long chalk**)

chalkboard *n.* (AE) see **blackboard**

chalk up *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ against (to ~ ten victories against two defeats) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ another victory for our team) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smt. up to experience/lack of experience)

challenge I *n.* ["dare"] 1. to issue, send a ~ 2. to make, mount; pose, present, represent a ~ (for; to) (a fresh candidate mounting a formidable ~ to the party leader; a fresh candidate mounting a formidable ~ for the party leadership) 3. to accept, respond to, take up a ~ (from) 4. to face, meet a ~; rise to a ~ 5. a direct; formidable, real, serious; leadership ~ (a fresh candidate mounting a formidable leadership ~) 6. a ~ to (it was a serious ~ to our very existence) 7. a ~ to + inf. (it was a real ~ just to survive) ["demand for identification"] (usu. mil.) 8. to give the ~ (the sentry gave the ~) ["objection to a prospective juror"] (legal) 9. a peremptory ~ (to use one's peremptory ~)

challenge II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (I ~d her for the party leadership) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ the government on its policies) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smb. to a duel) 4. (H) he ~d me to fight

challenger *n.* 1. to take on a ~ 2. a formidable, strong; serious ~

chamber *n.* ["hall used by a legislative body or the body itself"] 1. the lower; upper ~ 2. an assembly; council; parliamentary; senate ~ ["room"]["compartment"] 3. a gas; torture ~ 4. a combustion; decompression ~ ["misc."] 5. to hold a trial in ~s (without spectators or the press)

chameleon *n.* ~s change their color

champ *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at the bit) 2. (E) they were ~ing to get home

champagne *n.* 1. to drink; (literary or humorous) quaff; sip ~ 2. a bottle; glass of ~

champion *n.* 1. a defending; national; world ~ 2. ~s defend their titles against challengers

championship *n.* ["position of a champion"] 1. to hold; win a ~ 2. to regain; retain a ~ 3. to give up, lose, relinquish a ~ 4. an individual; national; team; world ~

championships *n.* ["contest"] 1. to compete in; hold ~ 2. (the) national; world ~ 3. ~s take place

chance I *n.* ["opportunity"]["possibility"] 1. to be in with, have, stand a ~ of (she has a good ~ of success; "how do you rate his ~s?" "he doesn't have a/the ghost of a ~!") 2. to give smb. a ~ 3. to let a ~ slip by; to miss one's ~; to pass up a ~; to spoil smb.'s ~s 4. a fighting; good; strong ~; every ~ (of) (she has every ~ of winning if she doesn't lose her nerve) 5. an even, fifty-fifty; fair; sporting ~ (he has an even ~ of being elected) 6. a faint, fat (colloq.), outside, poor, slight, slim, small ~ ("I may still win first prize!" "fat ~!") 7. a last; only ~ 8. little; no ~ (there is little ~ of that happening) 9. a ~ against (she doesn't stand a ~ against such strong competitors) 10. a ~ at, for, of (a ~ for success) 11. a ~ to + inf. (she had a ~ to visit her family) 12. a ~ that + clause (there is no ~ that she will win; I came to see you on the off ~ that you might have a screwdriver) ["luck"] 13. to take a ~ on ("to try one's luck at") 14. to leave smt. to ~ 15. pure, sheer ~ 16. a lucky ~ 17. by ~ (it was by pure ~ that we met; would you by any ~ happen to have a screwdriver?) ["misc."] 18. (the) ~s are [= the odds are] that they will not come; I can do it given half a ~!; ("I may still win first prize!" "~ would be a fine thing!") (BE = fat chance, no chance)

chance II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon ("to find by chance") (to ~ upon a rare item) 2. (formal) (E) ("to happen") I ~d to be there when they arrived

chandelier *n.* a crystal ~

change I *n.* ["alteration"]["transition"] 1. to bring about, effect, make a ~ (to make a couple of ~s in/to the text; "how's retirement?" "well, it makes a ~ not having to go to work every morning = well, it makes a ~ not to have to go to work every morning") 2. to propose a ~ 3. to undergo (a) ~ 4. an abrupt, quick, sudden ~ 5. a complete, dramatic, drastic, great, major, marked, momentous, profound, quite a, radical, significant, striking, sweeping; irreversible ~ 6. a discernible, visible; quantitative; qualitative, step ~ 7. a long overdue, (much) needed, welcome ~ 8. (a) little, minor, slight ~ (we noticed a slight ~ in her condition; there was little ~ in his condition) 9. climate; cultural; economic; political; régime; social ~ 10. a ~ occurs, takes place 11. a ~ for (a ~ for the better/the worse) 12. a ~ from; into, to (the ~ from spring to summer) 13. a ~ in, of (a ~ of clothing; a ~ of direction; a ~ of heart; a ~ of pace; a ~ in the weather; ~s in personnel; a ~ of diet; the ~ of (the) seasons) 14. for a ~ (let's eat out for a ~) ["money returned"]["metal coins"] 15. to count out; give; make ~ for (can you give me ~ for a pound?) 16. to count; get one's ~ 17. to keep the ~ (I told the driver to keep the ~) 18. loose; small; spare ~ 19. (misc.) could you spare a little ~, sir?; (slang) (AE) it cost me $35 and change [= '$35 + a little more'] ["change of clothing"] 20. to make a ~ 21. a quick ~ (to make a quick ~)

change II *v.* 1. to ~ beyond/out of all recognition; to ~ completely, drastically, greatly, radically; suddenly 2. (C) ("to exchange") could you ~ a dollar for me? or: could you ~ me a dollar? 3. (D; intr.) ("to transfer") to ~ for (we must ~ at the next station for Chicago) 4. (D; tr.) ("to exchange") to

~ for (to ~ dollars for pounds) 5. (D; intr.) ("to put on different clothes") to ~ for (to ~ for dinner) 6. (D; intr., tr.) ("to be transformed; to transform") to ~ from; into (the disease ~d him from an athlete into an invalid; to ~ dollars into pounds) 7. (D; intr., tr.) ("to transfer") to ~ from; to (we must ~ from the local to an express; she ~d the appointment to Monday) 8. (D; intr.) ("to put on different clothes") to ~ into (to ~ into smt. less formal) 9. (D; intr., tr.) ("to turn into") to ~ to (the light ~d to green; my mood ~d from despair to hope) 10. (D; tr.) ("to exchange") to ~ with (I would not want to ~ places with her)

change back *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ from; to (they ~d back to peacetime production) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into (we ~d back into casual wear)

changeover *n.* 1. a complete, radical, thorough, total ~ 2. a ~ from; to (a ~ from a peacetime to a war economy)

change over *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ from; to (the country ~d over to a war economy; to ~ to the decimal system)

changer *n.* a coin; record ~

channel I *n.* 1. to change ~s 2. a cable; television, TV ~ (a TV ~ that broadcasts/is on the air 24/7) 3. on a ~ (what's on the other ~s?)

channel II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (we had to ~ their energy into useful activities) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ towards (we must ~ our efforts towards worthy goals)

channels *n.* 1. back; diplomatic; military; official; (the) regular, usual ~ 2. through ~ (he sent his request for transfer through (the) regular ~; to go through ~; back-channel negotiations to bypass the official ~s) 3. (misc.) ~ of communication

chaos *n.* 1. to avert, prevent; cause, create ~ 2. complete, total, utter ~ 3. economic; political; social ~ 4. ~ ensues, results 5. a state of ~ 6. (misc.) on the brink/verge of ~

chap *n.* (colloq.) a decent, fine, good, nice ~

chapel *n.* ["place of worship"] 1. (a) hospital; military; prison; ship's ~ 2. interdenominational, nondenominational ~ ["Nonconformist place of worship"] (BE) (used as an adjective) 3. are you church or ~?

chaperon, chaperone I *n.* to serve as a ~ (to serve as a ~ at a dance)

chaperon, chaperone II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (we will ~ the students to the theater)

chaplain *n.* a college, university; hospital; military; prison; school; ship's ~

chapter *n.* 1. a closing ~ 2. an introductory, opening ~ 3. a ~ about, on 4. (misc.) a closed ~ (in one's life) ("smt. that belongs to the past"); to cite/give/quote ~ and verse ("to cite the exact source or give lots of details") ["period"] 5. to close; open a ~ (the event opened a new ~ in her life)

character *n.* ["personality"] ["behavior"] 1. to build, form, mold smb.'s ~ 2. smb.'s moral; true ~ 3. an excellent, fine, good; impeccable, irreproachable, stainless, unblemished; upright ~ 4. a firm, strong ~ 5. a lovable ~ 6. a bad, disreputable, unsavory ~ 7. a weak ~ 8. the national ~ (their recent actions are not in keeping with their national ~) 9. of ~ (a person of good ~) 10. (misc.) defamation of ~ ["person in or as if in a work of fiction"] 11. to play, portray a ~ 12. to create; delineate, depict, draw; develop a ~ 13. to kill off a ~ 14. a cartoon; fictitious; historical ~ 15. a leading, main, major, principal; minor, supporting ~ 16. in ~; out of ~ (his behavior was in ~ with his upbringing; it was completely in ~ for them to answer their correspondence promptly; her actions were out of ~ (for her)) ["person, esp. dubious or eccentric"] 17. a colorful; curious, strange, weird; larger-than-life; reformed; unforgettable ~ 18. a dangerous; disreputable; seedy, shady; suspicious; tough; underworld ~ (he used to be a completely disreputable ~ but now he's a thoroughly reformed ~) ["letter, figure"] 19. to form, trace; write ~s (to write a complete set of Greek ~s) 20. Arabic; Chinese; cuneiform; Cyrillic; Greek; Hebrew; Latin; mathematical; special ~s ["nature, special quality"] 21. to have a ~ of its/one's own 22. an official; political; subversive; unofficial ~ (the statements were of a political ~) 23. (misc.) this is a quaint town with a lot of ~

characteristic I *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ to + inf. (it was completely/very ~ of them to answer their correspondence promptly)

characteristic II *n.* 1. a distinctive, marked; distinguishing, identifying; dominant, outstanding; unique ~ 2. a family; individual; national ~ 3. facial; physical ~s

characterize *v.* (d; tr.) ("to describe") to ~ as (he can be ~d as a fanatic/as fanatical)

charades *n.* to play ~

charcoal *n.* 1. to burn ~ 2. activated ~

charge I *n.* ["accusation"] 1. to bring, file, level, make a ~; to prefer, press ~s 2. to concoct, cook up, fabricate, trump up a ~ (they trumped up various ~s against her) 3. to prove, substantiate a ~ 4. to answer; face a ~ (of) 5. to dismiss, throw out a ~ (the judge dismissed all ~s) 6. to drop, retract, withdraw a ~ 7. to deny; refute; repudiate a ~ 8. a baseless, fabricated, false, trumped-up; frivolous ~ 9. a civil; criminal ~ 10. a ~ against smb. (to bring a ~ of forgery against smb.) 11. a ~ that (he denied the ~ that he had taken bribes) 12. on a ~ of (he was arraigned on a ~ of embezzlement; to be arrested on various ~s) ["attack"] 13. to lead; make a ~ against 14. to sound the ~ 15. to fight off, repel, repulse a ~ 16. a bayonet; baton; cavalry; infantry ~ ["explosive"] 17. to set off a ~ 18. a depth ~ (see also **depth charge**) ["responsibility"] 19. to place, put smb. in ~ of (I was put in sole ~ of the child/department) 20. to take ~ of (I took ~ of the child/department) 21. to be in ~ of (I was in ~ of the child/department) ["custody"] 22. in smb.'s ~ (the child was in my (sole) ~) ["cost"] ["price"] 23. to make; waive a ~ 24.

to reverse, transfer (BE) (the) ~s (when telephoning) 25. an exorbitant, unreasonable; reasonable ~ 26. an admission; carrying; call-out ~ (for going to a customer); cover; minimum; service ~; interest ~s; prescription ~s; shipping ~s 27. a ~ against, to (a ~ to smb.'s account) 28. a ~ for (there will be no ~ for installation) 29. (misc.) free of ~ (the installation is free of ~) ["infusion of stored energy"] 30. to give (a battery) a ~ 31. an electric; quick; slow ~ ["thrill"] (slang) 32. to give smb. a big ~ 33. to get a ~ out of smt. 34. an emotional ~ ["instructions"] 35. to give one's ~ (the judge gave her ~ to the jury) 36. a ~ to (the judge's ~ to the jury)

charge II *v.* 1. ("to ask in payment") to ~ double 2. (D; intr.) ("to rush") to ~ across (they ~d across the field) 3. (D; intr.) ("to rush") to ~ at, towards (the bull ~d at us) 4. (d; intr.) ("to ask payment") to ~ for (they didn't ~ for it) 5. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for ("to ask in payment") (they ~d ten dollars for shipping our books; he ~s by the hour for laying a carpet) 6. (d; intr.) ("to rush") to ~ into; out of (to ~ into a room) 7. (D; tr.) to ~ out of ("to borrow from") (to ~ a book out of a library) 8. (D; tr.) ("to impose as an obligation") to ~ to (~ it to my account) 9. (D; tr.) ("to accuse") to ~ with (he was ~d with murder) 10. (D; tr.) ("to suffuse") to ~ with (the air was ~d with tension) 11. (D; tr.) ("to assign") to ~ with (our agency has been ~d with the responsibility of gathering all pertinent information) 12. (L) ("to accuse") they ~d that he had cheated them 13. (O; may be used with one object) ("to ask payment") she ~d (me) fifty dollars for her services; how much did she ~ (for her services)? did she ~ you (for her services)? they ~d me three hundred dollars (in) rent

chargeable *adj.* ~ to

charge ahead *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (they ~d ahead with the project)

charged *adj.* 1. emotionally; erotically; highly ~ 2. ~ with (tension/emotion)

charisma *n.* 1. to have ~ 2. personal ~ 3. of great ~

charitable *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ towards 3. ~ to + inf. (it was not very ~ of her to say that)

charity *n.* ["quality"] 1. to dispense, distribute, give ~ to 2. to bestow ~ on, upon 3. to accept; receive ~ 4. to ask for, beg for, plead for ~ 5. an act of ~ 6. ~ for (~ for the needy; "With malice toward none; with ~ for all" – Abraham Lincoln, "Second Inaugural Address," 1865) 7. (misc.) (proverb) ~ begins at home ["organization"] 8. to donate, give to ~

charm I *n.* ["amulet"] 1. to wear a ~ 2. a good-luck, lucky ~ ["attractive quality"] 3. to turn on the/one's, use one's ~ 4. to exude, ooze ~ 5. to have, possess ~ 6. to lend ~ to 7. great, irresistible; natural; particular, special; unfailing ~ 8. the ~ to + inf. (she has enough ~ to win anyone over) (see also *to work like a charm* at **work II**, 13)

charm II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (she ~ed him into agreeing)

charmed *adj.* ~ to + inf. (she was ~ed to receive flowers from her grandchildren)

charmer *n.* 1. (to be) a real ~ 2. a snake ~

charming *adj.* 1. ~ to (she is ~ to everyone) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to watch them) USAGE NOTE: "Charming!" is often used ironically: "they left without paying." "(how) charming!"

chart I *n.* 1. to compile a ~ 2. an aeronautical; bar; clinical; eye; flip; flow; genealogical; pie; statistical; wall ~ (the flow ~ shows how our sales have increased) 3. from; in; on a ~ (from the ~ you can see how our sales have increased)

chart II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (he has ~ed a difficult course for us)

charter *n.* 1. to apply for a ~ 2. to take out a ~ 3. to grant a ~ 4. to revoke a ~ 5. a ~ to + inf. (the company was granted a ~ to trade in the occupied territory) USAGE NOTE: "Charter" is sometimes used to mean 'license or permission to do smt. bad': "It turned out to be nothing more than a ~ for busybodies, …." – British National Corpus.

charter flight *n.* to organize a ~

chary *adj.* 1. ~ about (~ about doing smt.) 2. ~ of (~ of strangers)

chase I *n.* 1. to give ~ to 2. to abandon, give up the ~ 3. a car; police ~ 4. a wild-goose ~ 5. in ~ of (in full ~ of the suspect) 6. (misc.) the thrill of the ~; (AE) to lead smb. a merry ~ (BE has *to lead smb. a merry dance*)

chase II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ after (to ~ after fame) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from, out of (~ the dog out of our yard!) 3. (P; intr., tr.) they ~d the children into the barn; the police ~d the suspect through the park; we ~d across the field into the station

chaser *n.* 1. a submarine ~ 2. (misc.) (colloq.) an ambulance ~ (esp. AE) ("a lawyer who seeks clients among accident victims"); whiskey with a beer ~ ("whiskey served with a glass of beer")

chasm *n.* 1. to bridge a ~ 2. a deep; gaping, yawning ~ 3. a ~ between

chat I *n.* 1. to have a ~ 2. a friendly, nice, pleasant; little ~ 3. a ~ about; with (we had a pleasant ~ with them about our new grandchild) 4. a ~ between

chat II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about; to (BE), with

chatter I *n.* constant, endless, idle, incessant ~

chatter II *v.* 1. ("to talk fast") to ~ constantly, endlessly, incessantly 2. (D; intr.) ("to talk fast") to ~ about 3. (D; intr.) ("to click") to ~ from, with (his teeth were ~ing with the cold)

chauvinist *n.* a male ~

cheap *adj.* 1. dirt (colloq.), ridiculously ~ 2. to be going; come ~ (rubber gloves are going ~ in that shop; those new cars don't come ~) 3. ~ to + inf. (it's not ~ to live in the city; it is ~er to live there than here) 4. (misc.) to hold life ~ 5. ~ and cheerful; ~ and nasty; on the ~ (you can get rubber gloves on the ~ in that shop)

cheat I *n.* 1. a downright; notorious ~ 2. a tax ~

cheat II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ at (to ~ at cards) 2.

(D; intr.) to ~ on ("to be unfaithful to") (to ~ on one's wife) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ out of (he ~ed us out of our money) 4. (misc.) to ~ on an examination

check I *n.* ["order to a bank"] (BE has *cheque*) 1. to issue, make out, write (out) a ~ to, make a ~ payable to (write out a ~ for £100 made payable to me) 2. to draw a ~ against one's account; to draw a ~ on a bank 3. to cancel; cash; clear; deposit; honor; present a ~ 4. to cover a ~ (by making a deposit) 5. to endorse; negotiate; sign a ~ 6. to pass a (bad) ~; to kite a ~ ("to write a bad ~"); to raise ("increase fraudulently") a ~ 7. to stop payment of, on a ~ 8. a bad ("not covered"); blank; cashier's; certified; crossed (BE) ~; Eurocheque (obsolescent); negotiable; traveler's ~ 9. a ~ bounces; clears 10. by ~ (to pay by ~) ["verification"]["control"] 11. to carry out, conduct, do, make, run a ~ of, on 12. a background; bed; loyalty; random; safety, security; spot ~ (to run a background ~ on all new employees) (see also **spell check**) ["endangered position of the king"] (chess) 13. to give ~; to put into ~ 14. to discover ~ 15. discovered; perpetual ~ 16. in ~ (your king is in ~) ["bill in a restaurant"] (AE) 17. one ~; separate ~s (give us separate ~s, please, waiter) 18. (misc.) to ask (the waiter) for the ~; to pay the ~, pick up the ~ ["token of ownership, of a right"] (esp. AE) 19. a baggage; claim; hat ~ (see also **rain check**) ["blocking of an opponent"] (ice hockey) 20. a board; body; hook ~ ["restraint"] 21. to hold, keep in ~

check II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ into ("to verify") (to ~ into smb.'s story) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to register at") (to ~ into a hotel) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to verify") (to ~ on smb.'s story) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ out of ("to announce one's departure from") (to ~ out of a hotel) 5. (d; tr.) to ~ out of ("to borrow from") (she ~ed the book out of the library) 6. (D; intr.) to ~ through ("to look through") (to ~ through the files) 7. (esp. AE) (d; tr.) to ~ through to ("to register as far as") (she ~ed her suitcase through to Chicago) 8. (D; intr.) ("to verify") to ~ with (I'll ~ with the porter) 9. (E) I'll ~ to see whether he's in 10. (L) I'll ~ that he's in 11. (Q) I'll ~ whether he's in; I'll ~ where he is

checkbook *n.* (AE) (BE has *chequebook*) 1. to balance a ~ 2. to reconcile a ~ with (a bank statement)

checkers *n.* (AE) (BE has *draughts*) 1. to play ~ 2. Chinese ~ (BE has *Chinese chequers*)

check in *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at a hotel)

checking account *n.* (AE) (BE has *current account*) to balance a ~ (every month)

checklist *n.* 1. to compile, make up a ~ 2. to go down, go through a ~

check out *v.* (D; tr.) ("to borrow") to ~ from (she ~ed out a book from the library)

checkpoint *n.* at; through a ~ (we were stopped at a ~ the army had set up but they let us through (it))

checkup *n.* 1. to do, give a ~ (the doctor gave me a thorough ~) 2. to go for, have a ~ (I had a ~ at the hospital yesterday) 3. an annual; periodic ~ 4. a careful; thorough ~ 5. a general; regular ~

check up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on smb.'s story)

cheek *n.* ["side of the face"] 1. to puff (out) one's ~s 2. burning, flushed; dimpled; chubby, full, rounded; hollow, sunken; pale; rosy, ruddy ~s ["impudence"] (colloq.) 3. the ~ to + inf. (she had the (barefaced) ~ to phone me at home!) ["misc."] 4. to turn the other ~ ("to refuse to respond to an attack or insult"); (with) tongue in ~ ("not seriously, wryly") (a tongue-in-cheek remark that didn't offend anybody)

cheekbones *n.* high, prominent ~

cheeky *adj.* (colloq.) ["impudent"] ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to phone you at home)

cheer I *n.* ["rallying cry"]["cry of approval"] 1. to give, shout a ~ (let's give him three ~s: three ~s for him!) 2. to draw a ~ (from) (her performance drew ~s) 3. to acknowledge the ~s (of the crowd) 4. a jubilant; loud, resounding, ringing, rousing ~ (she left amid/to loud ~s from her admirers) 5. (AE) a school ~ (let's give the school ~!) (see also **Bronx cheer**) 6. a ~ rang out; a ~ went up ["good mood"] 7. Christmas; good ~ 8. of ~ (to be of good ~)

cheer II *v.* 1. to ~ enthusiastically, loudly, wildly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (they ~ed loudly for their team) 3. (misc.) they ~ed themselves hoarse

cheerful *adj.* ~ about (they are ~ about the future)

cheese *n.* 1. to slice ~ 2. cream; full-fat (BE); grated; grilled (AE), toasted (BE); hard; melted; mild; processed; semi-soft; sharp; smoked; soft ~ 3. a piece, slice of ~ (a piece of ~ on toast) 4. (misc.) (colloq.) say ~! ("smile"!)

chemistry *n.* ["science that deals with substances"] 1. analytical; inorganic; organic; physical ~ ["chemical characteristics"] 2. the ~ of (the ~ of carbon; the ~ of blood) ["personal feelings"] (colloq.) 3. personal ~; the right; wrong ~ 4. the ~ between

chemist's *n.* (BE) (see **drugstore**)

cheque (BE) see **check I**, 1–10

chequebook (BE) see **checkbook**

chess *n.* 1. to play ~ 2. (misc.) a ~ game; match; a ~ master

chest *n.* ["thorax"] 1. to beat; throw out one's ~ (with pride) 2. a barrel ~ 3. in; on the ~ (he was stabbed in the ~ and was burned on his ~) 4. smb.'s ~ swells with pride ["box"] 5. a hope (AE; BE has *bottom drawer*); ice; medicine; silver; tool; treasure ~ (see also *chest of drawers* at **drawer**)

chestnuts *n.* 1. to roast ~ 2. (misc.) to pull smb.'s ~ out of the fire ("to extricate smb. from an unpleasant situation")

chew *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on bread) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ through (the mouse ~ed through the wall) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (she had difficulty ~ing the steak with her new dentures)

chewing gum *n.* a piece; stick of ~

chic I *adj.* ["fashionable"] ~ to + inf. (it's very ~ to give up smoking)

chic II *n.* 1. an indefinable ~ 2. designer; radical ~

chick *n.* 1. to hatch ~s 2. ~s cheep 3. a brood, clutch of ~s

chicken I *n.* 1. a battery; free-range ~ 2. ~s cluck; peck; roost 3. a brood of ~s 4. a young ~ is a chick 5. a female ~ is a hen 6. a young female ~ is a pullet 7. a male ~ is a cock (esp. BE)/rooster (esp. AE) 8. a young male ~ is a cockerel (esp. BE); a male castrated ~ is a capon 9. (as food) baked; barbecued; broiled (AE), grilled; fried; roast; stewed ~ (please have another piece/slice of fried ~) 10. (misc.) to count one’s ~s before they are hatched (“to rejoice prematurely”)

chicken II *v.* (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ out of (“to abandon”) (to ~ out of an agreement)

chickenpox *n.* to catch (the) ~, come down with (the) ~, get (the) ~

chide *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for

chief *n.* 1. an Indian, Native American ~ 2. a fire (AE); police (AE) ~ 3. a tribal ~

chieftain *n.* a clan; tribal ~

child *n.* 1. to adopt; bear, give birth to, have a ~ (she had four children) 2. to carry a ~ (a mother carries a ~ for nine months) 3. to beget; conceive a ~ 4. to bring up, raise, rear a ~ 5. to feed; nurse; wean a ~ 6. to indulge, pamper, spoil a ~ 7. to toilet-train; train a ~ 8. to acknowledge a ~ (as one’s own) 9. to marry off one’s ~ 10. an adopted; dependent; foster; illegitimate (old-fashioned); only; unwanted ~ 11. a mischievous; problem (old-fashioned) ~ 12. a pampered, spoiled ~ 13. a good, well-behaved ~ 14. a bright, gifted, intelligent ~ 15. a poster (esp AE); precocious; young ~ (his success made him a poster ~ for early-childhood education) (see also *child prodigy* at **prodigy**) 16. a handicapped (old-fashioned); retarded (old-fashioned) ~ 17. a flower ~ (of the 1960s); a latchkey ~ (who has his own house-key because his parents are out at work) 18. a happy; loving; well-cared for ~ 19. an abused, mistreated; disadvantaged; neglected ~ 20. a ~ develops, grows (into adulthood) 21. (misc.) to be with ~ (old-fashioned) (“to be pregnant”); to bus children (to school) (see also **baby**)

childbirth *n.* 1. natural; prepared ~ 2. in ~ (she died in ~)

childhood *n.* 1. to spend one’s ~ (somewhere) 2. smb.’s second ~ 3. a happy; repressed; unhappy ~ 4. during; throughout; in smb.’s ~ (in smb.’s early ~) 5. since ~

childish *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to do that)

child’s play *n.* (colloq.) ["easy task"] 1. ~ to (that’s ~ to her) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to solve that riddle)

chill I *n.* 1. (fig.) to cast a ~ on, over 2. to catch; feel a ~ 3. to take the ~ off (take the ~ off the milk) 4. (misc.) there was a (sudden) ~ in our relations; her words sent a ~ through me

chill II *v.* 1. (C) ~ a glass for me; or (rare): ~ me a glass 2. (misc.) ~ed to the bone

chills *n.* 1. to have, get the ~ 2. (misc.) to send ~ up and down smb.’s spine (“to frighten smb.”)

chime in *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with one’s opinion)

chimes *n.* 1. to sound ~ 2. organ ~ 3. ~ sound

chimney *n.* 1. smoke goes up a ~ 2. smoke comes out of a ~ 3. ~s belch smoke 4. the ~ draws well 5. a tall ~

chin *n.* 1. a double; receding, weak; smooth ~ 2. a glass (“weak, vulnerable”) ~ (of a boxer) 3. on smb.’s/the ~ 4. (misc.) to keep one’s ~ up (“not to become discouraged”); to take it on the ~ (“to suffer a misfortune courageously”) USAGE NOTE: If you stick your chin out you are perceived to be resolute in the English-speaking world; but in some other places that would be considered a gesture of submission.

china *n.* ["porcelain"] 1. bone; fine ~ 2. a set of ~

chink *n.* a ~ in smb.’s armor (“a weak point”)

chip *n.* ["thin slice"] (AE) 1. a potato ~ (BE has *crisp*; BE *chip* = AE *French fry*) USAGE NOTE: In AE, “chip” in its food sense is rarely if ever used on its own. “Potato chip” is standard in AE. ["semiconductor body"] 2. a computer; integrated-circuit; silicon ~ ["misc."] 3. a bargaining ~ (“smt. that can be used to win concessions”); a ~ off the old block (“a child who resembles its parent”); to have a ~ on one’s shoulder (“to harbor resentment”)

chip away *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at a rock; the police kept ~ping away at their alibi)

chip in *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (they all ~ped in for a present) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (we all ~ped in with our suggestions)

chips n ["gambling tokens"] to cash in one’s ~ (also fig.) (“to die”) (see also *fish and chips* at **fish I**)

chisel *v.* 1. (D; tr.) (“to shape with a chisel”) to ~ from, out of (to ~ smt. from wood) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ wood into smt.) 3. (colloq.) (D; tr.) to ~ out of (“to cheat out of”) (he ~ed me out of my money)

chiseled, chiselled *adj.* ["shaped"] finely ~ (features)

chitchat *n.* idle ~

chivvy *v.* (colloq.) (BE) (“to nag”) 1. (d; tr.) to ~ into (she ~vied me into going) 2. (H) I ~vied them to help

chloroform *n.* to administer, give ~ to

chockablock *adj.* (colloq.) ~ with

chock-full *adj.* (colloq.) ~ of

chocolate *n.* ["candy, sweet food"] 1. bitter; bittersweet; dark (AE), plain (BE); milk; white ~ 2. a bar; piece of ~ ["unit of chocolate"] 3. a box of ~s ["beverage"] 4. drinking; hot ~ 5. a cup; mug of ~

choice *n.* ["act of choosing"] 1. to exercise, make a ~ 2. to have a ~ 3. a good, happy, intelligent, judicious, wise ~ (she made a good ~) 4. first; second ~ (we had first ~) 5. a bad, poor, sorry, unwise, wrong ~ 6. a careful; difficult ~ 7. a wide ~ (you have a wide ~ of colors) 8. (a) free; individual; limited ~ (to exercise individual ~) 9. a ~ among, between; in; of (a ~ between two jobs; did you have any ~ in the matter? a ~ of colors) 10. by; of one’s ~ (we did it by ~; the Pilgrims came to America to worship the God of their ~) 11. (misc.) we have a difficult ~ to make; take your ~; freedom of ~; Hobson's ("no") ~; they had no ~ but to agree; we had little ~ in the matter; there are so many possibilities that we're spoilt for ~! ["result of choosing"] 12. an obvious ~ (she was the obvious ~ as their spokesperson = she was the obvious ~ to be their spokesperson)

choir *n.* 1. to form; lead a ~ 2. to sing in a ~ 3. a church; school ~ (compare **chorus**)

choke I *n.* (on a car) 1. to pull out; push in the ~ 2. an automatic; manual ~

choke II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a bone) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with emotion) 3. (misc.) to ~ to death

choked *adj.* ["blocked"] ~ with (~ with weeds)

choked up *adj.* 1. (all) ~ about (they were all ~ about their friend's loss) 2. (all) ~ with (~ with emotion)

cholera *n.* to contract, get ~

cholesterol *n.* 1. to cut down on ~ 2. high; low in ~

chomp *v.* see **champ**

choose *v.* 1. to ~ carefully, judiciously; to ~ at random 2. (C) ~ a book for me; or: ~ me a book 3. (D; intr.) to ~ among, between, from (to ~ between two jobs) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ as (they chose her as their spokesperson) 5. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ by (to ~ by lot; to ~ by tossing a coin) 6. (D; tr.) to ~ for (~ curtains for a room) 7. (D; tr.) to ~ from (they chose her as their spokesperson from (among) a large number of candidates) 8. (E) she chose to remain at home 9. (H) they chose her to serve as their spokesperson

choosing *n.* of one's own ~

choosy (also **choosey**, AE) *adj.* (colloq.) ~ about

chop I *n.* ["cut of meat"] 1. a chump (BE); lamb; mutton; pork; veal ~ (see also **lamb chops**) ["blow"] 2. a karate ~

chop II *v.* 1. (C) ~ some wood for me; or: ~ me some wood 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smt. into bits) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ off (she ~ped a branch off the tree)

chop off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (she ~ped off a branch from the tree)

chopper *n.* a food; meat ~

chopsticks *n.* to use ~

chop up *v.* 1. (C) ~ some wood for me; or (colloq.): ~ me up some wood 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (he ~ped the log up into firewood)

chord I *n.* ["combination of three or more musical notes"] 1. to play ~s 2. a dominant; major; minor ~

chord II *n.* ["feeling, emotion"] 1. to strike, touch a ~ 2. a popular; responsive, sensitive, sympathetic ~ (to strike a responsive ~)

chores *n.* 1. to do one's/the ~ 2. daily; domestic, household; routine ~

chortle *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, over 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with glee)

chorus *n.* ["group of singers"] 1. a dawn ~ (of birds); female; male; mixed ~ ["simultaneous utterance"] 2. to join in, swell the ~ 3. a ~ of (*A Chorus of Disapproval* – play by Sir Alan Ayckbourn (1984))

chowder *n.* (AE) clam; corn; fish; Manhattan clam ~

christen *v.* (N; used with a noun) they ~ed the child Joseph

christening *n.* 1. to perform a ~ 2. a ~ takes place 3. at a ~

Christian *n.* a born-again; devout; evangelical; fundamentalist; good; practicing ~

Christmas *n.* 1. to celebrate ~ 2. to wish smb. a Merry ~ 3. (a) Happy (BE), Merry ~ (to you)! 4. a white ~ 5. at, for, on, over ~ (we'll get together at ~; where are you going for ~?) 6. on ~ Day; on ~ Eve

Christmas tree *n.* to decorate, trim a ~

chronicle *n.* 1. to keep a ~ 2. a daily; monthly; weekly ~ 3. (misc.) a ~ of events

chuck *v.* (colloq.) 1. (A) ~ the ball to me; or: ~ me the ball 2. (P; tr.) just ~ it away! = (BE) just ~ it!; he ~ed the newspaper into the can 3. (misc.) she ~ed the child under the chin

chuckle I *n.* 1. to give, let out; have a ~ (we had a good ~ about it afterwards) 2. a hearty; throaty ~ 3. a ~ about, over

chuckle II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, at, over (we ~d about it afterwards) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (we ~d to ourselves about it afterwards) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with glee)

chuffed *adj.* (BE) (colloq.) ("happy, pleased") 1. ~ about, at (she was ~ at his prompt arrival) 2. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that he came/arrived on time)

chum *n.* (colloq.) a childhood; old; school ~

chummy *adj.* (colloq.) ["friendly"] ~ with

chum up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

church *n.* 1. to consecrate, dedicate a ~ 2. to attend, go to (a) ~ 3. the Catholic; Christian; (Eastern) Orthodox; Protestant; Uniate ~ 4. the Anglican; Baptist; Christian Science; Congregational; Episcopal; Lutheran; Mennonite; Methodist; Mormon; Presbyterian; Seventh Day Adventist ~ 5. an evangelical; fundamentalist ~ 6. (esp. GB) an established ("official"); free ("Nonconformist") ~ 7. (esp. GB) The Church of England/Ireland; The Church in Wales 8. a parish ~ 9. at, in (a) ~ 10. (misc.) to enter, go into the ~ ("to become a member of the clergy") USAGE NOTES: 1. "A church" is a building, an institution, or a denomination (*there's a big church near here but she goes to a friendly little church around the corner).* "Church" is the religious activity that goes on in a church (*church takes up a lot of her time; she goes to church every Sunday; let's get together after church*). 2. The provinces of the Anglican Communion in the UK and Ireland are the Church of England, the Church of Ireland, the Church in Wales, and the Scottish Episcopal Church. The national Church of Scotland is Presbyterian. The Anglican province in the USA has been the Episcopal Church.

churlish *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it would be ~ (of them) to offer such petty criticism)

cider *n.* hard (AE = 'alcoholic'); sweet (AE = 'non-alcoholic') ~ USAGE NOTE: In GB, cider is typically alcoholic; in the US it is typically non-alcoholic. In both countries non-alcoholic cider is like apple juice.

cigar *n.* 1. to light (up); puff on; smoke a ~ 2. a Havana ~

cigarette *n.* 1. to have; light (up); puff on, smoke a ~ 2. to roll a ~ (he used to roll his own ~s) 3. to extinguish, put out, stub out a ~ 4. a live ~ 5. a filter-tip; king-size; low-tar; mentholated ~ 6. a carton; pack (esp. AE), packet (BE) of ~s

cinch *n.* (colloq.) ["certainty"] 1. (AE) a ~ to + inf. (she's a ~ to win) 2. (esp. AE) ~ that + clause (it's a ~ that she'll win)

cinders *n.* to spread ~ (on a snow-covered road)

cinema *n.* (esp. BE) ["movies"] 1. to go to the ~ 2. at, in the ~ (she was known for her work in the ~) ["movie theater"] 3. to be on at, to be showing at the ~ (what's showing at the local ~ tonight?)

cinematography *n.* slow-motion ~

cipher *n.* ["code"] 1. to break, solve a ~ 2. in ~ (to send a message in ~)

circle *n.* ["circular geometric figure"] 1. to describe, draw a ~ (to draw the ~ that the missile described in flight; to draw concentric or interlocking ~s) 2. to square a ~ (to square a ~ is impossible) 3. the Antarctic; Arctic; polar ~ (at the Arctic ~) 4. the great ~ (on the earth's surface) 5. a traffic ~ (AE; BE has *roundabout*) 6. (sports) the center ~; the winner's ~ (at a racecourse/racetrack) 7. the area; circumference; diameter; radius of a ~ ["group resembling the figure of a circle"] 8. to form; be in a ~ 9. to join a ~ (she joined the ~ of dancers) ["group"] 10. academic; artistic; literary; professional ~s 11. business, financial; court; diplomatic; official; political; ruling ~s 12. exclusive, select; high ~s (to move in the highest ~s) 13. informed, well-informed ~s 14. a charmed ("exclusive"); close, closed, inner, intimate, narrow; wide ~ (a close ~ of friends that no one wanted to widen) 15. a quilting; sewing ~ 16. a family ~ 17. in a ~ (in our ~ of friends; in informed ~s) ["cycle"] 18. to come full ~ ["misc."] 19. a vicious ~ ("an insoluble, never-ending problem"); to go around in ~s ("to keep coming back to the starting point without finding a solution"); a dress ~ ("the first row of raised seats in a theater")

circuit *n.* ["path of an electric current"] 1. to break; close a ~ 2. a closed; electrical; integrated; printed; short ~ ["route traveled by a judge on tour"] 3. to make a ~ (the judge makes a ~ every year) 4. on ~ (the judge was on ~) ["series of similar events"] 5. the chat-show (BE), talk-show (AE); lecture; rodeo ~

circuit breaker *n.* to trip a ~

circular *n.* 1. to send out a ~ 2. to distribute ~s

circulate *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ among (the host ~d among the guests; to ~ the memo among the staff members) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ through (blood ~s through the body) 3. (D; intr., tr.) (to ~ the memo to all staff members)

circulation *n.* ["distribution"] 1. to put into ~ (to put more money into ~) 2. to take out of ~; to withdraw from ~ (to withdraw old banknotes from ~) 3. (an) enormous, large, wide; general, unrestricted ~ (this magazine has attained a wide ~) 4. (a) national, nationwide ~ 5. (a) limited, restricted, small ~ 6. in; out of ~ (this money is no longer in ~) 7. (misc.) this journal has a ~ of one hundred thousand ["movement"] 8. blood ~; or: ~ of the blood 9. good, healthy, normal ~ 10. abnormal, poor ~

circumcision *n.* 1. to do, perform; reverse a ~ (on) 2. to undergo ~ 3. female ~ ('clitoridectomy')

circumference *n.* in ~ (ten feet in ~)

circumspect *adj.* ~ about; in

circumstance *n.* pomp and ~

circumstances *n.* 1. favorable; unfavorable ~ 2. adverse, difficult, trying; desperate; tragic ~ 3. reduced, straitened ~ 4. extenuating, mitigating ~ 5. compelling; exceptional, special ~ 6. mysterious; suspicious ~ (he was apprehended under the very suspicious ~ surrounding the case) 7. unforeseen ~ 8. a combination of ~ 9. due to ~ (our absence was due to ~ beyond our control) 10. in, under ~ (in certain ~, I would agree; she will not go under any ~ = in no ~ will she go; they lived in difficult ~; in these (present) ~ we can't continue; under the ~, we can't continue)

circus *n.* 1. to present, put on a ~ 2. to go to; join the ~ (she liked the ~ she went to so much she decided to join it) 3. a three-ring; traveling ~ 4. at a ~ 5. (misc.) a three-ring ~ ("hectic activity")

citation *n.* ["attestation"] 1. the earliest ~ (of the use of a word) 2. a ~ from ["summons"] 3. to issue a ~ for 4. a contempt ~ 5. a ~ to + inf. (she received a ~ to appear in court) ["mention of meritorious performance"] (AE) (mil.) 6. to write smb. up for a ~ 7. to receive a ~ (for bravery) (BE has *to be mentioned in dispatches*) 8. a unit ~

cite *v.* 1. (B) she ~d an interesting passage to us 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ smt. as an example) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. for bravery) 4. (misc.) to be ~d in divorce proceedings; the example ~d above/below

citizen *n.* 1. a law-abiding; eminent, leading, prominent; respectable, solid, upright, upstanding ~ 2. a senior ~ 3. a private; second-class ~ 4. a native-born (esp. AE); naturalized, new ~

citizenry *n.* an informed ~

citizenship *n.* 1. to grant ~ 2. to apply for ~ 3. to acquire, receive ~ 4. to revoke smb.'s ~ 5. to give up, renounce one's ~ 6. dual ~

city *n.* 1. to govern, manage (AE), run a ~ 2. a big; capital; cosmopolitan; densely populated; garden (BE), planned; great; major; port; provincial ~ 3. twin ~ties 4. (the) central ~ (see also **inner city**) 5. a beleaguered; open ~ (during wartime) 6. in a ~ (to live in the ~) (see the Usage Note for **town**)

civil *adj.* 1. ~ to (he wasn't even ~ to his guests) 2. (formal) ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to offer their help) (see also *civil union* at **union**)

civil action *n.* (legal) to bring a ~ (against)

civil disobedience *n.* 1. (to lead) a campaign of ~ 2. an act of ~

civil disorder *n.* 1. to foment, incite, stir up ~ 2. to put down ~

civilian *n.* an innocent; unarmed ~

civilities *n.* to exchange ~

civilization *n.* 1. to introduce; spread ~ 2. to create a ~ 3. to destroy, stamp out (a) ~ 4. an advanced ~ 5. ancient, early; modern ~ 6. (misc.) the cradle of ~; the end of ~ as we know it

civil unrest *n.* see **civil disorder**

clad *adj.* ["clothed"] 1. fully; lightly, scantily; partially ~ 2. smartly ~ 3. ~ in (~ in brown)

cladding *n.* (CE; AE also has *siding*) 1. to install ~ 2. aluminium (BE), aluminum (AE) ~

claim I *n.* 1. to enter, file, lodge, make, put forward, put in, submit a ~ (she filed a ~ against her employer for compensation arising from her accident at work) 2. to authenticate, back up, establish, press, substantiate a ~ 3. to lay ~ to; to stake, stake out a ~ to 4. (esp. AE) to jump ("steal") smb.'s ~ 5. to allow, uphold; challenge, contest, dispute; deny, disallow, dismiss, reject; discredit a ~ 6. to forfeit; give up, relinquish, renounce, waive, withdraw a ~ 7. to adjudicate; settle a ~ (they settled their ~ out of court) 8. a legal; legitimate; moral; rightful; undisputed ~ 9. an excessive, extravagant, unreasonable ~ 10. an outstanding; prior ~ 11. a fraudulent; specious; unsubstantiated, unsupported ~ 12. competing, conflicting, rival ~s 13. a disability; insurance ~; pay ~ (BE) 14. a ~ against; for; on; to (she submitted a ~ for damages against the other driver; there are many ~s on my time; he has no ~ to the estate; a ~ to fame) 15. a ~ that + clause (the ~ that he could reduce taxes proved to be false)

claim II *v.* 1. (E) she ~s to own this property 2. (L) she ~s that she owns this property

claimant *n.* a ~ to (a ~ to the estate)

claim back *v.* (d; intr., tr.) to ~ from (you can ~ some of the money from your insurance = you can claim some of the money back from your insurance)

clam *n.* baked ~s

clamber *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ into/onto a bus

clamor, clamour I *n.* 1. an insistent; loud; public ~ 2. a ~ against; for (a ~ against new taxes)

clamor, clamour II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for justice) 2. (E) they were ~ing to have justice

clamp *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ controls on interest rates)

clampdown *n.* a ~ on

clamp down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on pickpockets)

clan *n.* a ~ gathers

clang *n.* 1. a metallic ~ 2. to shut with a ~

clang *v.* to ~ shut

clanger *n.* (colloq.) (BE) ("blunder") to drop a ~

clank *v.* to ~ shut

clap I *v.* ("to put") 1. (d; tr.) to ~ in, into (to ~ smb. in jail) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ on; over (to ~ a muzzle on a dog; she ~ped her hand over her mouth) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ to (she ~ped her hand to her mouth)

clap II *v.* ("to applaud") to ~ loudly

clarification *n.* 1. to provide; seek ~ 2. additional, further ~

clash I *n.* 1. an angry; bitter; bloody; violent ~ 2. an armed; border ~ 3. a ~ between (a violent ~ broke out between the two rivals about/over a woman) 4. a ~ with (the rivals ~ed with each other about/over a woman; shot dead in a ~ with the police)

clash II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to argue, struggle") to ~ about/over (the rivals ~ed (with each other) about/over a woman) 2. (D; intr.) ("to struggle") to ~ with (the demonstrators ~ed with the police) 3. (D; intr.) ("not to match") to ~ with (red ~es with green)

clasp I *n.* a tie ~

clasp II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ to (she ~ed the baby to her bosom)

class I *n.* ["lesson"] 1. to conduct, hold, teach a ~; to give, meet one's ~ (having finished teaching the ~, the teacher said, "the time is up and the ~ is over") 2. to schedule; reschedule a ~ 3. to attend, go to (a) ~; to audit a ~ (AE); come top/bottom of the ~; to sit in on a ~; take a ~ (as student or as teacher) 4. to cut (esp. AE); miss a ~ 5. to call off, cancel; dismiss a ~ (~ dismissed!) 6. an advanced; beginners'; intermediate ~ (to sit in on an advanced English ~) 7. a ~ in modern drama 8. in (a) ~ (she was in ~ when the message came). ["group"] 9. to form a ~ 10. the educated; leisure; lower; middle; privileged; professional (esp. BE); ruling ~; underclass; upper; working ~(es) 11. (BE) the chattering ~es 12. a social ~ 13. (misc.) out of one's ~ ("outclassed"); in a ~ of one's/its own ("unsurpassed"); ~ conflict/struggle/war; world-class (world-class scientific research) ["division of travelers"] 14. business; cabin; economy; first; second; third; tourist ~ (to travel first-class) ["group of pupils, students graduating together"] (AE) 15. the freshman; junior; senior; sophomore ~; the ~ of (the ~ of 1968 included hippies who became yuppies)

class II *v.* see **classify** 1–4

classification *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. an arbitrary ~

classify *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ according to (the children were ~fied according to age) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ among, under, with 3. (D; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~fied as fit for service; the documents were ~fied as top-secret) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ by (to ~ books by/according to subject) 5. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ the candidates into groups) 6. (N; used with an adjective) to ~ information confidential

clatter *v.* (P; intr.) the cart ~ed over the cobblestones

clause *n.* ["group of words with a subject and predicate"] 1. a conditional; coordinate; dependent, subordinate; independent, main; nominal, noun; nonrestrictive; relative; restrictive; verbless ~ (the main verb in the main ~) ["provision"] ["article"] 2. (esp. AE) a grandfather ~ ("a clause that exempts those already engaged in an activity prohibited by new legislation") 3. an escalator; penalty ~ 4. a most-favored-nation ~

claw I *n.* 1. to get, sink one's ~s into 2. to retract one's ~s (cats retract their ~s) 3. sharp ~s 4. nonretractile; retractile ~s

claw II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at (the cat ~ed at my hand) 2. (misc.) to ~ one's way to the top

claw back *v.* (BE) (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ some of the payment from the government = to claw some of the payment back from the government)

clay *n.* 1. to knead, model, shape, work ~ 2. to bake; temper ~ 3. modeling; potter's ~ 4. a lump of ~

clean I *adj.*, *adv.* 1. immaculately, spotlessly ~; squeaky-clean (also fig. = 'not corrupt') 2. to keep smt. ~ 3. (misc.) to come ~ ("to confess"); I ~ forgot: we're ~ out of food! ("I completely forgot: we're completely out of food"); ~ of (she scraped the furniture ~ of paint); as ~ as a whistle

clean II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ from, off (she ~ed the dirt off her shoes) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ out of (the store was ~ed out of cigarettes)

clean break *n.* to make a ~ (with)

cleaner *n.* ["device"] 1. a pipe; vacuum ~ ["person"] 2. a street; window ~

cleaning *n.* 1. to do the ~ 2. dry ~ 3. a spring; thorough ~

cleanliness *n.* personal ~

cleanse *v.* 1. to ~ thoroughly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ of (to ~ one's thoughts of sin)

cleansing *n.* 1. a thorough ~ 2. ethnic ~

clean up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ after (he had to ~ after the children, who wouldn't ~ after themselves) 2. (colloq.) (AE) (D; intr.) ("to make a profit") to ~ on (to ~ on a deal)

clear I *adj.* 1. abundantly, perfectly; fairly; painfully ~ 2. (cannot stand alone) ~ about (are you ~ about the situation?; let's get ~ about a few things) 3. ~ from (the answer is ~ from these facts) 4. ~ of (the roads were ~ of snow; to keep ~ of trouble) 5. ~ to (the situation is ~ to everyone; it was ~ to everyone that they would not come) 6. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that they would not come; the teacher made it ~ that discipline would be maintained) 7. (misc.) as ~ as crystal = crystal-clear ("perfectly clear"); as clear as mud (colloq.) ("not clear at all"); it is ~ why she came; it is not ~ how he was able to do it; it is not ~ whether they will attend; (as adv.) the ball went ~ over my head (see also *see one's way (clear)* at **way**)

clear II *n.* ["uncoded language"] 1. in the ~ (to send a message in the ~) ["blameless state"] 2. in the ~ (the investigators decided that she was in the ~)

clear III *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to authorize"); ("to prepare") to ~ for (to ~ an article for export; our plane was ~ed for takeoff; to ~ the decks for action) 2. (D; tr.) ("to remove") to ~ from (to ~ the snow from the driveway) 3. (D; tr.) ("to free") to ~ of (to ~ a harbor of mines; to ~ smb. of guilt; to ~ land of trees; to ~ the driveway of snow) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ off ("to clean") (~ (off) the table so that we can eat) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ off ("to leave") (~ off my land or I'll call the police!) 6. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ out of ("to leave") (to ~ out of town) 7. (d; tr.) ("to remove") to ~ out of (to ~ things out of a cupboard) 8. (D; tr.) ("to get authorization for") to ~ with (to ~ a shipment with the authorities; ~ your plan with headquarters) 9. (H) ("to authorize") our plane was ~ed to take off

clearance *n.* ["act of clearing away"] 1. slum ~ ["authorization"] 2. to get give; receive ~ for 3. customs ~ 4. ~ to + inf. (the control tower gave our plane ~ to take off) ["space between parts"] 5. valve ~ ["certification of eligibility for access to classified material"] 6. to give; receive ~ 7. (a) security ~

clearinghouse *n.* a ~ for (a ~ for information)

clear off *v.* (D; intr.) ("to leave") to ~ of (AE) (~ of my land or I'll call the police!)

clear up *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ after smb. (he had to ~ after the children, who wouldn't ~ after themselves)

cleavage *n.* ["division"] 1. a sharp ~ between (a sharp ~ developed between the two factions) 2. a gown with a deep ~ = a gown with/that shows a lot of ~

cleave *v.* (formal) (d; intr.) ("to cling") to ~ to (to ~ to old customs)

cleaver *n.* a butcher's; meat ~

clemency *n.* 1. to grant; show ~ 2. to beg for, seek ~ 3. to deny ~

clerk I *n.* 1. a booking ~ (BE; AE has *ticket agent*) 2. (AE) (in a hotel) a desk, room ~ 3. a bank (BE); cipher, code; city (AE), town; court; filing; mail, postal ~; salesclerk (AE; BE has *shop assistant*); shipping; stockroom ~ 4. a junior; senior ~

clerk II *v.* (AE) (D; intr.) (legal) to ~ for (the budding lawyer was ~ing for a prominent judge)

clever *adj.* 1. ~ at, in (she is ~ at arranging furniture) 2. ~ with (he is ~ with his hands) 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to think of that)

cliché *n.* 1. to mouth, utter a ~ (he's always mouthing ~s) 2. a well-worn ~ 3. (misc.) in ~s (to speak in well-worn ~s)

click *v.* 1. (on a computer) (D; intr.) to ~ on; onto 2. (colloq.) (D; intr.) ("to be successful") to ~ with (the new show ~ed with the public)

client *n.* to serve a ~

clientele *n.* 1. to build up, establish a ~ 2. an exclusive, fashionable, select; international ~

cliff *n.* 1. to climb, scale a ~ 2. a rugged; sheer, steep; towering ~

climate *n.* 1. a friendly, hospitable; hostile, inhospitable; invigorating ~ 2. an arctic, frigid; cold;

continental; damp; dry; equatorial; hot; humid; maritime; Mediterranean; mild, moderate, temperate; severe; subtropical; tropical; warm; wet ~ (see also *climate change* at **change I**) 3. (fig.) an economic; political; social ~ 4. (misc.) a change of ~; to create a friendly ~

climax I *n.* 1. to come to, reach a ~ 2. to bring smt. to a ~; to work up to a ~ 3. to mark a ~ 4. a dramatic, thrilling ~ (in a dramatic ~, the villain is unmasked) 5. a sexual ~ 6. a ~ to (the ~ to our efforts came/was when we won first prize)

climax II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ in, with (the convention ~ed with the candidate's acceptance speech)

climb I *n.* an arduous, difficult, hard; easy; gradual; rough, rugged; steep; tortuous ~

climb II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ aboard (to ~ aboard a raft) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ down (to ~ down a hill) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ into (the child ~ed into their bed) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ onto, upon (the child ~ed onto her mother's lap) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ out of (to ~ out of a pit) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ over (to ~ over a fence) 7. (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the top) 8. (D; intr.) to ~ up (to ~ up a hill) 9. (misc.) the road ~s from the sea to the mountains

climb-down *n.* (BE) ["retreat"] a ~ from (to be forced into a ~ from an untenable position)

climb down *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from a tree) 2. (BE) (D; intr.) ("to retreat") to ~ from (to ~ from an untenable position)

climber *n.* 1. a mountain ~ 2. a social ~

climb up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (she ~ed up to the top)

clinch *n.* in a ~

cling *v.* 1. to ~ tenaciously 2. (d; intr.) to ~ (on) to (to ~ to one's possessions; to ~ to old customs; they clung to the floating wreckage; he clung to my arm) 3. (misc.) to ~ together

clinic *n.* 1. to hold a ~ 2. an abortion; animal; antenatal, prenatal; dental; diagnostic; family-planning; mental-health; outpatient; postpartum; special; speech; walk-in; well-child (AE); well-woman ~ 3. at, in a ~ (she works at the ~)

clip I *n.* ["device to hold cartridges"] 1. to insert a ~ 2. a cartridge ~ ["device that fastens"] 3. a paper; tie ~ ["excerpt"] 4. a film ~

clip II *n.* (colloq.) ["speed"] at a ~ (to move at a fast ~)

clip III *v.* 1. (esp. AE) (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ articles from a newspaper) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ one page to another = to ~ two pages together) 3. (N; used with an adjective) she ~ped his hair short

clipper *n.* 1. a nail ~ 2. a barber's ~s 3. a coupon ~ ("one whose income is derived from stocks and bonds")

clipping *n.* 1. a newspaper; press ~ (from) (AE; BE has *press cutting*) 2. fingernail; toenail ~s

clique *n.* a military; ruling ~

cloak I *n.* ["cover"] under a ~ (under a ~ of secrecy)

cloak II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ in (~ed in secrecy)

cloakroom see the Usage Note for **room**

clock I *n.* 1. to regulate, set; wind (up) a ~ 2. to advance a ~; or: to put, set, turn a ~ ahead/forward ((by) one hour) 3. to put, set, turn a ~ back ((by) one hour) 4. a digital; cuckoo; electric; grandfather; wall ~ (by/according to my digital ~, it's ten thirty) 5. a time ~ (to punch a time ~ when starting or finishing work) 6. a biological ~ (her biological ~ keeps ticking away) 7. a ~ is fast; right; slow 8. a ~ gains time; goes, runs; keeps time; loses time; runs down; says the time, shows the time, tells the time (BE), tells time (AE); stops; ticks 9. a ~ strikes the hour 10. the dial; face; hands of a ~ 11. (misc.) to watch the ~ ("to wait impatiently for the end of the working day"); to work (a)round the ~ ("to work without rest"); to work against the ~ ("to strive to meet a deadline"); the ~ ran out ("the allotted time expired"); to stop the ~ ("to suspend play in a game so that the clock stops running") (see also **alarm clock**)

clock II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to time") to ~ at (he was ~ed at seventy miles an hour) 2. (J) he was ~ed doing seventy miles an hour

clockwise *adj.*, *adv.* 1. to go ~ 2. to turn (smt.) ~

clockwork *n.* (misc.) to go, work like ~ ("to work perfectly"); as regular as ~ ("completely regular")

clog *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ (up) with (the pipe was ~ged (up) with leaves)

close I *adj.*, *adv.* /klous/ ["near"] 1. ~ to (~ to tears; we live ~ to town; ~ to the truth) ["stingy"] (colloq.) 2. ~ with (~ with one's money) ["secretive"] 3. ~ about (~ about one's past) ["on intimate terms"] 4. ~ to, with (~ with one's parents) ["misc."] 5. to see smt. ~ to (BE), up; they were sitting ~ together (see also **near** *adv.*)

close II *n.* /klouz/ ["finish"] 1. to bring to a ~ 2. to come to, draw to a ~ ["end of a letter"] 3. the complimentary ~ (of/to a letter) (the complimentary ~ appears at or towards the ~ of a letter)

close III *v.* /klouz/ 1. (d; intr.) to ~ about, around, round ("to encircle") (night ~d around us) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ a store for renovations; the store ~d for renovations) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to get near to") (the police were ~ing on the fugitive) 4. (D; tr.) ("to shut") to ~ on (she ~d the door on him) 5. (D; tr.) ("to shut") to ~ to (they ~d their eyes to the truth) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to engage") (to ~ with the enemy) 7. (d; intr., tr.) ("to finish") to ~ with (they ~d the concert with ("by playing") a march) 8. (N; used with an adjective) ("to shut") she ~d the door tight 9. (s) stocks ~d strong; weak

closed *adj.* 1. ~ for (~ for renovations) 2. ~ to (the road was ~ to traffic; the store was ~ to the public for renovations)

close in *v.* /klouz/ 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for ("to approach and prepare for") (to ~ for the kill) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to bring to bay") (the police ~d in on the fugitive)

closer, closest *adj.*, *adv.* ~ to (the park is closer to our hotel than it is to yours; which stop is closest to Times Square?)

closemouthed *adj.* ~ about

closeness *n.* ~ to

close off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from, to (they were completely ~d off from the outside world)

closet *n.* ["cupboard"] (esp. AE) 1. a china; clothes; linen; walk-in ~ ["toilet"] (esp. BE) (old-fashioned) 2. a water ~ ["misc."] 3. to come out of the ~ (about smt.) ("to come out into the open about smt.")

closeted *adj.* ~ with (he was ~ with the mayor for an hour)

closure *n.* ["act of closing"] 1. earmarked for ~ (mines earmarked for ~) 2. the ~ of (the ~ of local mines) ["emotional closure"] 3. to achieve ~ (once she knew that he was really dead she could achieve ~ and move on in her life)

clot *n.* 1. to form a ~ 2. to dissolve; remove a ~ 3. a blood ~ 4. a ~ forms

cloth *n.* 1. to dye; weave ~ 2. homespun ~ 3. a drop ~ 4. a loin ~ 5. a bolt; piece; strip of ~

clothe *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ in (~d in wool/black) 2. (misc.) fully; partially ~d

clothes *n.* 1. to change; put on; wear (one's) ~ 2. to take off (one's) ~ 3. to iron; launder, wash; mend ~ 4. baby; maternity; night; summer; swaddling; warm; winter ~ 5. elegant, fashionable; new; plain; old ~ 6. castoff; secondhand, used; shabby ~ 7. civilian; plain ~ 8. in ~ (the soldier was in civilian ~ rather than in uniform; the policeman was in plain ~ rather than in uniform: he was a plain-clothes policeman/officer)

clothesline *n.* to put up, string; take down a ~

clothing *n.* 1. to put on; wear (one's) ~ 2. to take off (one's) ~ 3. heavy; light; outer; protective; warm ~ 4. summer; winter ~ 5. bespoke (BE), custom-made, made-to-measure, tailor-made; off-the peg (BE), ready-to-wear; trendy ~ 6. castoff; secondhand, used; shabby ~ 7. an article, item of ~ 8. (misc.) to model ~

cloture *n.* (AE) to apply, impose, invoke ~

cloud *n.* 1. to disperse ~s (the strong wind dispersed the ~s) 2. cirrus; cumulus; dark; grey; heavy, thick; high; scattered; threatening; white ~s 3. rain, storm ~s (typically fig.); thunderclouds; war ~s 4. a mushroom; radioactive ~ (storm/war ~s were gathering over Europe in the 1930s) 5. ~s disperse; form; gather (the ~s dispersed in the strong wind) 6. ~s scud across the sky 7. (misc.) under a ~ (of suspicion); the gathering ~s of war; in the ~s ("absorbed in one's fantasies"); to seed ~s (to produce rain); to cast a ~ over ("to cause gloom")

cloudburst *n.* a sudden ~

cloudy *adj.* partly ~ (in weather forecasts)

clout *n.* (colloq.) ["influence"] ["power"] 1. to have, wield ~ 2. political ~ (he has a great deal of political ~) 3. the ~ to + inf. (has he got enough ~ to get his plan through Congress?)

clover *n.* ["plant"] 1. a four-leaf ~ ["prosperity"] 2. in ~ ("in luxury")

clown I *n.* 1. to act, play the ~ 2. a circus ~

clown II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ (around) with

club I *n.* ["association"] 1. to form, organize a ~ 2. to join a ~ 3. to break up, disband a ~ 4. an exclusive; private ~ 5. a book; debating; fan; glee; weight-watchers'; working-men's (BE); youth (esp. BE) ~ (she joined a book ~ to which many members belong and has been in it ever since) 6. an athletic; country; tennis; yachting, yacht ~ 7. a ~ breaks up, disbands 8. a Christmas ~ (esp. AE) ("type of savings account to provide money for the purchase of Christmas presents"); a savings ~ ["implement"] 9. a golf; Indian ~ 10. a set of golf ~s ["misc."] 11. (colloq.) join the ~! ("we are in the same situation!"); (BE) in the ~ ("pregnant") (see the Usage Note for **team**)

club II *v.* ("to beat") to ~ smb. to death

clue *n.* 1. to discover, find, uncover a ~ 2. to follow up a ~ 3. to have a ~ (the police don't have any ~s) 4. to furnish, provide, supply; leave a ~ 5. an important, key, vital ~ 6. a ~ (as) to (the police had no ~ to her identity) 7. (misc.) he doesn't have a ~ ("he's totally ignorant/insensitive")

clue in *v.* (colloq.) (D; tr.) to ~ on ("to inform about")

clumsy *adj.* 1. ~ at (he's ~ at sports) 2. ~ of (spilling the drinks was ~ of you) 3. ~ with (to be ~ with one's hands) 4. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to spill the drinks like that)

cluster I *n.* a consonant ~

cluster II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ around (the crowd ~ed around the entrance) 2. (P; intr.) they ~ed (together) in small groups

clutch I *n.* ["device for engaging and disengaging a transmission"] 1. to engage, (esp. AE) throw in the ~ ("to release the clutch pedal") 2. to work the ~ 3. to disengage the ~ ("to depress the clutch pedal") 4. to ride the ~ ("to keep the clutch pedal partially depressed") 5. the ~ slips ["crisis"] (AE) 6. in a ~ (to count on smb. in a ~)

clutch II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at a branch) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ to (she ~ed her children to her bosom/breast) (see also *to clutch at (any) straws* at **straw** 2)

clutches *n.* ["power"] 1. to fall into smb.'s ~ 2. in smb.'s ~ (in the ~ of the enemy)

cluttered *adj.* ~ (up) with (the room was all ~ (up) with old newspapers)

coach I *n.* ["trainer of an athlete or team"] 1. a basketball; crew; fencing; football; soccer; swimming; tennis; track-and-field; volleyball ~ USAGE NOTE: In AE, a coach can also be the manager of a sports team other than a baseball team. ["trainer of a performer or troupe"] 2. a drama; voice ~ ["personal trainer or counselor"] 3. a life ~ ["long-distance bus"] (esp. BE) 4. to go, travel by ~ ["airplane"] (esp. AE) 5. an air ~

coach II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ a team for a championship match) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in (she ~es us in math) 3. (misc.) she ~ed the team to victory

coal *n.* 1. to mine, produce ~ 2. to burn, use ~ 3. to shovel ~ (into a furnace) 4. anthracite, hard; bituminous, soft; brown ~ 5. hot, live ~s (to cook meat over hot ~s) 6. ~ burns 7. a chunk, lump, piece of ~; a bed of ~s 8. (misc.) to rake smb. over the ~s ("to criticize smb. harshly")

coalesce *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ into

coalition *n.* (pol.) 1. to form a ~ 2. to break up, disband, dissolve a ~ 3. a ~ breaks up, collapses, falls apart 4. a political ~ 5. (esp. AE) a rainbow ~ ("a multiethnic political coalition") 6. a broadly based, umbrella ~ ("a group consisting of many diverse elements") 7. a ~ among, between, of

coast I *n.* 1. a forbidding, inhospitable; rugged ~ (the rugged ~ stretches from here to there) 2. off a ~ (a ship sank right off the ~) 3. along, on the ~ (there are many fishing towns on the stretch of ~ between here and there) 4. (AE) on the (West) Coast ("on the Pacific Coast of the US") (he moved to the Coast and still lives on the Coast) 5. (misc.) the ~ is clear ("there is no danger in sight"); from ~ to ~ USAGE NOTE: the bank(s) of a river or canal; the shore of a lake or sea; the coast (of an ocean).

coast II *v.* (P; intr.) ("to move effortlessly") they ~ed down the hill; they ~ed to an easy victory

coastline *n.* a broken, irregular, jagged; rugged ~

coat *n.* ["sleeved outer garment"] 1. to have a ~ on, wear a ~ 2. to put on; take off one's ~ 3. an all-weather; fur; fur-lined; mink ~; overcoat; raincoat; sheepskin; spring; trench; winter; zip-lined ~ ["layer of paint, varnish, etc."] 4. to apply, put on a ~ (we had to put on a second ~)

coated *adj.* ~ in, with

coating *n.* 1. an outer; protective ~ 2. a thick; thin ~

coat of arms *n.* a family ~

coattails *n.* (to hang/ride) on smb.'s ~ ("(to be) totally dependent on smb. else's success for one's own success")

coax *v.* 1. (H) she ~ed me to go but I didn't 2. (P) she ~ed me into going and I went; the actor tried to ~ some reaction from his audience

cobwebs *n.* (colloq.) ["confusion"] to blow away, clear, sweep (away) the ~ (from one's brain)

cocaine *n.* 1. crack ~ 2. to freebase; shoot; smoke; snort; take; use ~ 3. a line of ~

cock *n.* ["rooster"] (esp. BE) 1. ~s crow, go cock-a-doodle-doo ["valve"] 2. a ball ~

cocktail *n.* 1. to make, mix, prepare; sip a ~ 2. fruit ~; a prawn (BE), shrimp (AE); seafood ~ 3. a champagne ~

cocoon *n.* to make, spin a ~

code *n.* ["cryptographic system"] 1. to design, make up a ~ 2. to break, crack, decipher a ~ 3. a binary; secret ~ 4. (the) Morse ~ (to tap out, use (the) Morse ~ to send (a message) in Morse ~) 5. in ~ (to send a message in ~) ["body of laws, principles"] 6. to establish, formulate, lay down a ~ 7. a civil; criminal, penal ~; a ~ of justice 8. an ethical, moral ~; a ~ of ethics 9. a building; sanitary ~ 10. a dress ~ ["system of symbols"] 11. an area (AE), dialling (BE) ~ 12. a postal ~ (BE), postcode (BE), zip (AE) ~ 13. a bar ~ ("symbols that are read by a computer") 14. the genetic ~

codicil *n.* (legal) 1. to draw up a ~ 2. a ~ to (a will)

coequal *adj.* (formal) ~ with

coerce *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into doing smt.) 2. (H) (rare) he was ~d to sign

coercion *n.* under ~ (to do smt. under ~)

coeval *adj.* (formal) ["contemporary"] ~ with

coexist *v.* 1. to ~ peacefully 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with

coexistence *n.* 1. peaceful ~ 2. ~ with

coffee *n.* 1. to brew; grind; make; percolate; strain ~ 2. to drink, have ~ 3. to stir ~ (with a spoon) 4. to grow ~ 5. strong; weak ~ 6. black; white (BE) ~, ~ with cream/milk 7. decaffeinated; fresh; hot; iced; instant; Irish; Greek; Turkish ~ 8. a cup of ~; one ~; or: one cup of ~; two ~s; or: two cups of ~ (bring us two cups of ~; or: bring us two ~s) 9. (misc.) the ~ is brewing; I had a ~/a cup of ~; a mug of ~ with milk and sugar in it

coffin *n.* to lower a ~ into a grave

cogitate *v.* (formal) (D; intr.) to ~ about, on

cognate *adj.* ~ to (AE), with (Dutch is ~ with English and German)

cognizance *n.* (formal) ["notice"] to take ~ of

cognizant *adj.* (formal) (cannot stand alone) ~ of (~ of the danger)

cohabit *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

coherence *n.* 1. to lack ~ 2. ~ between

cohesion *n.* ~ among, between

coil I *n.* an induction; primary ~

coil II *v.* 1. (d; intr., refl.) to ~ (a)round (the snake ~ed around its victim) 2. (d; intr., refl.) to ~ (up) into (to ~ (up) into a ball)

coin *n.* 1. to mint, strike ~s 2. to jingle ~s 3. to drop, put a ~ (into a slot) 4. to spin a ~; or: to flip, throw, toss a ~ (in order to decide an issue) (they tossed a ~ to decide who would go first) 5. to collect ~s 6. antique; copper; counterfeit; fifty-cent; gold; metal; rare; silver; ten-cent; valuable ~s 7. ~s clink, jingle 8. (misc.) common ~ ("smt. that is widely known"); to pay back in the same ~ ("to treat smb. as he or she has treated others")

coincide *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in; with (they ~ with each other in their views)

coincidence *n.* 1. mere, pure, sheer ~ 2. an amazing; happy; interesting; odd, strange; remarkable ~ 3. a ~ that + clause (it was pure ~ that we were seated together) 4. by ~ (it was by pure ~ that we were seated together; we ended up in the same town by sheer ~)

coincidental *adj.* 1. purely ~ 2. ~ with 3. ~ that + clause (it was purely ~ that we were seated together)

cold I *adj.* ["of a low temperature"] 1. biting, bitter, bitterly, extremely, freezing ~ (it was bitter ~) 2. ~ to (~ to the touch) 3. (misc.) as ~ as ice = ice-cold ["unfriendly"] 4. ~ towards

cold II *n.* ["low temperature"] 1. biting, bitter, extreme, icy, intense, severe ~ (to wrap up warm against the severe ~) 2. the ~ has let up 3. (misc.) to come in out of the ~; to go out into the ~ ["illness"] 4. to catch (a) ~; to come down with, contract, get, (BE) go down with a ~ 5. to have; nurse a ~; to suffer from a ~ 6. to fight off, shake off, throw off a ~ 7. a bad, heavy, severe; lingering; slight; streaming ~ 8. the common ~; a chest; head ~ ["misc."] 9. to be left out in the ~ ("to be slighted or excluded")

cold feet *n.* (colloq.) ["reluctance"] at the last minute he got ~ and withdrew from the deal

cold light *n.* ["clear view"] in the ~ of reality

cold shoulder *n.* (colloq.) ["snub"] to get the ~ from smb.; give smb. the ~

cold turkey *n.* (colloq.) ["abrupt cessation of the use of drugs or other harmful substances"] to go ~

collaborate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in, on; with (to ~ on a project with smb.; Shakespeare may have ~d with John Fletcher on *King Henry VIII* = Shakespeare and John Fletcher may have ~d on *King Henry VIII*)

collaboration *n.* 1. close ~ 2. international ~ 3. between; in ~ with (Shakespeare may have written *King Henry VIII* in ~ with John Fletcher)

collaborator *n.* 1. in, on; with (John Fletcher may have been Shakespeare's ~ on *King Henry VIII*) 2. a wartime ~ (with an occupying power) (historical and pejorative)

collapse I *n.* 1. (an) economic ~ 2. an emotional, mental, nervous ~ 3. a complete, total, utter ~ (he was in a state of total ~)

collapse II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ from, with (to ~ from exhaustion) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ under (the weight of smt.) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ in the face of (our resistance ~d in the face of the enemy's onslaught)

collar *n.* 1. to turn down; turn up a ~ 2. a button-down; clerical; high; stand-up; starched; stiff; turndown ~ 3. (misc.) hot under the ~ ("very angry")

collate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ one edition with another edition)

collateral *n.* 1. to put up ~ for 2. to offer, put up, use smt. as ~ for

collect *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ around (a crowd ~ed around them) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ for charity; to ~ money for a good cause) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ money from one's colleagues for charity) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on one's insurance)

collection *n.* ["of money or things"] 1. to take up a ~ (of money) 2. to amass, assemble; build up; break up; have a ~ (the town has an impressive art ~ that is housed in the municipal museum) 3. an art; coin; private; stamp ~ 4. a priceless ~ ["anthology"] 5. to compile; edit; publish a ~

collective *n.* a workers' ~

collector *n.* 1. an art; coin; rare-book; stamp ~ 2. a tax; ticket; toll ~ 3. (AE) a garbage, trash ~ (BE has *dustman*) 4. an ardent, avid, keen (BE), serious ~

college *n.* 1. to go to ~ 2. to apply for admission to (a) ~ 3. to enroll, matriculate at (a) ~; to enter (a) ~ 4. to finish, graduate from ~ 5. to put smb. through ~ ("to pay for smb.'s college education") 6. to drop out of; fail out of (AE), flunk out of (AE; slang) ~ 7. a bible, theological; business (AE); community (AE); junior (AE); technical (BE); a College of Further Education (BE) 8. a war ~ 9. (US) the Electoral College 10. at, in ~ (she's away at ~; he made many friends when he was in ~) USAGE NOTE: "A college" is a building or an institution (*there's a big prestigious college in another town but she goes to a college near her home).* "College" is the educational activity that goes on in a college (*college takes up a lot of her time; she goes to college near her home; we lost touch with each other after college*). (See also the Usage Notes for **school**; **university**)

collide *v.* 1. to ~ head-on 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (they ~d with another ship; the ships ~d with each other) 3. (misc.) the ships ~d

collision *n.* 1. to cause a ~ 2. to avoid a ~ 3. a head-on; midair ~ 4. a near ~ 5. a ~ between; with (the ~ between the ships was caused by fog = the ~ of the ships (with each other) was caused by fog) 6. (misc.) because of fog, the ships were in collision (with each other)

collocate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (some verbs ~ with certain nouns = some verbs and certain nouns ~ with each other)

collocation *n.* a grammatical; lexical ~ USAGE NOTE: In BBI, at *desirous*, "very desirous" is considered a lexical collocation; "desirous of" and "desirous that + clause" are considered grammatical collocations. Elsewhere, "very desirous" and "desirous of" would both be considered collocations (i.e. combinations of word + word) and "desirous that + clause" would be considered a type of colligation or complementation or construction (i.e. a combination of word + syntactic structure).

colloquy *n.* (formal) a ~ between

collude *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ in; with (to ~ with smb. in doing smt.) 2. (E) to ~ with smb. to do smt. = to ~ to do smt.

collusion *n.* 1. ~ between 2. in ~ with (they were in ~ (with each other) to do smt. bad)

colon I *n.* (in punctuation) to place, put in a ~

colon II *n.* (med.) the ascending; descending; transverse ~

colonel *n.* 1. a chicken (AE; slang), full; lieutenant ~ 2. a ~ commands a regiment 3. to make smb. a ~, to promote smb. to the rank of ~; to have, hold the rank of ~ 4. (misc.) what's your opinion, Colonel (Smith)?

colony *n.* 1. to establish a ~ 2. to disband a ~ 3. a Crown Colony 4. an artists' ; leper ; nudist ; penal ~ 5. an ant ~ (many ants lived in a huge ant ~)

color, colour I *n.* ["hue"] 1. a bright, brilliant ; contrasting ; dark ; dull ; garish, gaudy, loud ; harsh ; light ; matching ; natural ; neutral ; pastel ; rich ; soft ; subdued ; vivid ; warm ~ (I can't remember her hair ~ or her eye ~ but I think they were both a dark ~) 2. (usu. fig.) glowing ~s (to picture smt. in glowing ~s) 3. complementary ; primary ; secondary ~s 4. ~s clash ; fade ; match 5. in ~ (in natural ~) 6. a combination of ~s ; a riot of ~ 7. (misc.) with illustrations in full ~ ["features"] 8. local ~ ["paint"] 9. oil ; water ~s 10. a ~ runs ["vividness"] 11. to add, lend ~ (to a story) ["complexion"] 12. to change, turn ~ ("to become pale ; to blush") 13. (misc.) the fresh air brought the ~ back to his cheeks = in the fresh air the ~ came back to his cheeks ["misc."] 14. off ~ ("not proper, bawdy") (AE) 15. off ~ ("poorly") (BE)

color, colour II *v.* 1. (D ; intr., tr.) to ~ with (she ~ed the pictures (in) with a yellow crayon) 2. (N ; used with an adjective) she ~ed her hair red

coloring, colouring *n.* artificial ; natural ; protective ~

color line, colour line *n.* ["social boundary between races of different color"] to cross the ~

colors, colours *n.* ["banner, flag"] 1. to display, show the ~ 2. to salute ; troop the ~ 3. to dip ; haul down, strike the ~ 4. college ; regimental ; school ~ ["armed forces"] 5. to be called to the ~ ["character"] 6. to reveal, show one's ~ 7. smb.'s true ~ ["misc."] 8. under false ~ ("passing oneself off as another") ; to ride under the ~ of a certain stable (see also **flying colors**)

column *n.* ["series of articles"] 1. to write a ~ 2. a fashion ; gossip ; social, society ; sports ; syndicated ~ (as in a newspaper) 3. a daily ; weekly ~ ["feature of a journal, magazine, or newspaper"] 4. advertising (esp. BE) ~s ; correspondence (esp. BE) ~s ; a personal ~ ["list of numbers"] 5. to add up a ~ ["shaft"] 6. a steering ~ (on a car) 7. (med.) the spinal, vertebral ~ (the spinal ~ supports the whole body) ["row"] 8. a tank ~ = a ~ of tanks ["misc."] 9. a fifth ~ ("enemy supporters behind one's own lines")

columnist *n.* 1. a sports ; syndicated ~ 2. a fifth ~ ("an enemy supporter behind one's own lines")

coma *n.* 1. to fall, go, lapse, slip into a ~ 2. to be in a ~ 3. to come out of a ~ 4. a deep ; irreversible ~

comb *n.* 1. a fine-tooth/(BE) fine-toothed ~ (usu. fig.) (we went through the documents with a fine-tooth ~) 2. she ran a ~ through her hair

combat *n.* 1. to engage in, go into ~ 2. to break off ~ 3. close, hand-to-hand ; deadly, fierce, mortal ~ 4. ~ against ; between ; with (the enemies were locked in mortal ~ with each other) 5. in ~ (killed in ~)

combination *n.* 1. an ideal, perfect ; rare ; strange ; winning ~ (strawberries and cream make a perfect ~ on/for a hot summer's day) 2. (ling.) a fixed, recurrent ; free ~ ; word ~s 3. in ~ with

combine *v.* 1. (D ; intr., tr.) to ~ against (to ~ forces against a common enemy) 2. (D ; intr., tr.) to ~ into (they ~d all the pieces into a whole) 3. (D ; intr., tr.) to ~ with (hydrogen ~s with oxygen ; to ~ initiative with/and caution ; to ~ business with/and pleasure ; should business and pleasure ~ (with each other) ?)

combo *n.* (colloq.) a jazz ~

combustion *n.* 1. to produce ~ 2. internal ; spontaneous ~

come *v.* 1. (d ; intr.) to ~ across ("to meet or find by chance") (I came across an old friend – I came across him working in his garden ; I came across a rare coin – I came across it just lying in the street !) 2. (d ; intr.) to ~ after ("to follow") (the intermission ~s after the first act) 3. (d ; intr.) to ~ after ("to pursue or attack") (the police came after him because he had come after me with a knife) 4. (d ; intr.) to ~ around ("to turn") (to ~ around the corner) 5. (d ; intr.) to ~ around ("to circle") (to ~ around the mountain) 6. (d ; intr.) to ~ as ("to be") (it came as a surprise) 7. (d ; intr.) to ~ at ("to attack") (he came at me with a knife) 8. (d ; intr.) to ~ before ("to appear") (to ~ before the court) 9. (d ; intr.) to ~ between ("to alienate ; to separate") (to ~ between two friends) 10. (d ; intr.) to ~ by, into ("to acquire") (she came by quite a bit of property ; he came into a large inheritance) 11. (d ; intr.) to ~ down ("to descend") (to ~ down the stairs) 12. (d ; intr.) to ~ for ("to pick up") (she came for her book) 13. (d ; intr.) to ~ for ("to participate") (to ~ for lunch ; to ~ for a walk) 14. (d ; intr.) to ~ from ("to originate") (she ~s from another country ; milk ~s from cows) 15. (d ; intr.) to ~ into ("to enter") (to ~ into being ; to ~ into use ; to ~ into focus ; to ~ into the open ; to ~ into view) 16. (d ; intr.) to ~ of ("to result") (this is what ~s of being so careless ; no good can ~ of his meddling !) 17. (d ; intr.) to ~ off ("to fall off") (the knob came off the door) 18. (d ; intr.) to ~ on, upon ("to meet") (to ~ upon a stranger ; to ~ upon a shocking scene) 19. (d ; intr.) to ~ on ("to begin") ; ("to enter") (to ~ on duty ; to ~ on the scene) 20. (d ; intr.) to ~ out of ("to leave") (he came out of the room) 21. (d ; intr.) to ~ over ("to affect") (what has come over you ?) 22. (d ; intr.) to ~ to ("to amount") (the bill came to twenty dollars) 23. (d ; intr.) to ~ to ("to arrive at") ; ("to reach") (the incident came to their attention ; to ~ to grief ; success came to her early ; he came to his senses ; it came to our knowledge that… ; to ~ to terms ; to ~ to the point ; to ~ to a halt) 24. (D ; intr.) to ~ to ("to be due") (he got what was ~ing to him = he had it ~ing to him) 25. (d ; intr.) to ~ to ("to happen") (no harm came to them) 26. (d ; intr.) to ~ to ("to be remembered by") (her name finally came to me) 27. (d ; intr.) to ~ to ("to concern") (when it ~s to politics) 28. (d ; intr.) to ~ under ("to fall") (to ~ under the jurisdiction of a court ; to ~ under suspicion ; to ~ under smb.'s influence ; to

~ under fire) 29. (d; intr.) to ~ up ("to ascend") (to ~ up the stairs) 30. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to be accompanied by") (the car ~s with power brakes) 31. (E) ("to occur") if it came to be known that…; to ~ to pass ("to happen") 32. (E) ("to begin") they finally came to consider me a friend 33. (G) ("to approach") the children came running 34. (P; intr.) ("to occur in a certain order") Tuesday ~s after Monday; Monday ~s before Tuesday 35. (s) to ~ true; everything went wrong at first but came right eventually; the dressing came undone; my horse came third 36. (misc.) what will ~ ("become") of him?; the years to ~; the shape of things to ~; to ~ on strong ("to try to make a very strong impression"); to ~ into a fortune ("to inherit or acquire a fortune"); the case never did ~ before the court; he had it ~ing (to him) ("he deserved his punishment, he got what was coming to him"); (BE) (colloq.) don't ~ the innocent victim with me!

come about *v.* (L) how did it ~ that you were late?

come across *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ as ("to appear") (she came across as (being) hostile) 2. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to make available") (he finally came across with the money)

come along *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (she came along for the ride)

come around *v.* (D; intr.) ("to come to, wake up"); ("to change") to ~ to (she finally came around to our viewpoint)

come away *v.* ("to leave") 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from (I came away from the meeting with a favorable impression) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with (he came away with a favorable impression)

comeback *n.* ["recovery or return to favor"] 1. to attempt, try; make, stage a ~ 2. a successful; unsuccessful ~ ["retort"] 3. a snappy ~

come back *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at ("to react") (to ~ at smb. with a wisecrack) 2. (D; intr.) ("to return") to ~ from (they came back from their honeymoon last week; to ~ from the dead) 3. (D; intr.) ("to return") to ~ to (they came back to their hometown; the details are ~ing back to me)

come by *v.* (D; intr.) ("to drop in") to ~ for (to ~ for a drink)

come clean *v.* (D; intr.) ("to admit") to ~ about (he came clean about the bribe)

comedian *n.* an alternative (BE) ("anti-establishment"); nightclub; radio; stand-up; TV ~

comedown *n.* a ~ to + inf. (it's a great ~ for us to work for such a low salary)

come down *v.* 1. (BE) (D; intr.) to ~ from ("to leave") (to ~ from Oxford) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ from ("to originate from") (this statue has come down to us from the fifteenth century) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to treat") (the teacher came down hard on him for missing class) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to amount to") (it always ~s down to the same old thing in the end) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to catch, develop") (to ~ with a cold)

comedy *n.* alternative (BE); black; gentle; light; musical; romantic; situation; slapstick ~ USAGE NOTE: A romantic comedy can be shortened to a romcom and a situation comedy to a sitcom.

come forth, come forward *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with ("to present") (to ~ with new evidence)

come in *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to enter") to ~ by, through (to ~ by the front door) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to be subjected to") (to ~ for criticism) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to join") (to ~ on a project) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to encounter unexpectedly") (he came in on an ugly scene) 5. (s) to ~ handy; my horse came in third

come on *v.* (colloq.) 1. (d; intr.) to ~ as ("to appear") (he ~s on as a radical) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to show sexual interest in smb.") (he came on to her at the office party) 3. (see also *come on strong* at **come** 36)

come out *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against ("to oppose") (to ~ against a proposal) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ for, in favor of ("to support") (to ~ for a proposal) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to try out for") (are you ~ing out for the team?) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to make known; to publish") (to ~ with a new book; to ~ with the truth) 5. (L) it came out that he had cheated 6. (P; intr.) ("to end up, result") to ~ on top ("to be victorious") 7. (s) the pictures came out fine 8. (misc.) to ~ in spots ("to be covered with spots as a result of illness"); they came out from behind the bushes; she meant it as a compliment, but it came out as an insult; she finally came out openly as a liberal

come over *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to come") to ~ as (she came over as a tourist) 2. (D; intr.) ("to come") to ~ from (they came over from Europe) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ to ("to approach, join") (she came over to our table; they came over to our side) 4. (D; intr.) ("to come") to ~ with (their ancestors came over with the Pilgrims) 5. (BE) (s) ("to begin to feel") to ~ (all) faint; (all) nervous

come round see **come around** ("The anaesthetic from which none ~" – Philip Larkin, "Aubade" (1977) = death)

come through *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with ("to provide") (he finally came through with the money)

come up *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against ("to meet") (to ~ against opposition) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for ("to be brought up for") (the question finally came up for discussion) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to reach") (the water came up to our knees; their proposal did not ~ to our standards) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to approach") ("he came up to me and introduced himself") 5. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to produce") (she came up with a good idea) 6. (misc.) to ~ to expectations; to ~ in the world; to ~ from/through the ranks; the new project came up as a topic for discussion

comeuppance *n.* (colloq.) ["well-deserved misfortune"] to get one's ~

comfort *n.* 1. to bring, give, provide ~ 2. to derive, get ~ from 3. to find, take; seek ~ in (she finds ~ in helping others) 4. to enjoy the ~s (of life) 5. cold, little ~ 6. creature ~s; spiritual ~ 7. a ~ to (they were a great ~ to their parents) 8. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ (to us) to know that they were safe) 9. in ~ (to live in ~)

comfortable *adj.* 1. to feel ~ 2. to make smb. ~ 3. ~ with (are you ~ with this decision?) 4. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to sit here in the shade = it is ~ sitting here in the shade)

comforter *n.* ["duvet"] (AE) a down ~

comforting *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to be sure of their support)

coming *n.* 1. the Second Coming 2. with the ~ (of summer)

comma *n.* 1. to place a ~, put in a ~ 2. inverted ~s (BE; CE has *quotation marks*)

command I *n.* ["authority"] ["control"] 1. to assume, take (over) ~ 2. to exercise ~ 3. to give up, relinquish; lose one's ~ 4. firm ~ 5. ~ of, over (he assumed ~ of the regiment) 6. in ~ (of) (he was put in ~ of the task force; who will be placed in ~ (of the division)?) 7. under smb.'s ~ (we were under her ~) 8. the chain of ~ ["headquarters"] 9. the high, supreme ~ 10. a unified ~ ["order"] 11. to carry out, execute; give, issue a ~ 12. a ~ that + clause; subj. (we obeyed their ~ that prisoners be/should be treated properly) 13. at smb.'s ~ (at his ~ we opened fire) ["military unit"] 14. a combat; military ~ ["mastery"] 15. fluent, perfect ~ (fluent ~ of a language)

command II *v.* 1. (H) the captain ~ed the company to fall in 2. (L; subj.) the captain ~ed that the company fall in/should fall in

commandant *n.* (mil.) the ~ of the Marine Corps; the ~ of a military/service school

commander *n.* 1. a lieutenant; naval ~ 2. a battalion; camp; company; division; regimental; supreme ~; Commander-in-Chief 3. a ~ commands a unit

commandment *n.* (rel.) 1. to keep the ~s 2. to violate a ~ 3. the Ten Commandments

commemoration *n.* in ~ of

commence *v.* (formal) 1. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ as (she ~d her career as a dancer) 2. (d; intr., tr.) ("to begin") to ~ at (prices ~ at five dollars; they ~d the bidding at fifty dollars) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ by, with (we'll ~ (the meeting) by reading/with a reading of the minutes of the last meeting) 4. (G) (mil.) ~ firing!

commend *v.* 1. to ~ highly 2. (formal) (B) I ~ him to you 3. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she ~ed him for his bravery) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ on (she ~ed him on his bravery)

commendable *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is ~ for/of smb. to help others)

commendation *n.* 1. to receive a ~ 2. to present a ~ 3. a ~ for (a ~ for bravery)

commensurable *adj.* ~ with

commensurate *adj.* ~ to, with (a reward ~ with the results achieved)

comment I *n.* ["observation"] ["remark"] 1. to have, make, pass a ~ (on); to have a ~ to make (on); to invite, solicit, welcome a ~ (on) (the government would welcome ~s on its policies from the public) 2. (an) appropriate, fair, fitting; favorable; incisive; perceptive, shrewd; revealing ~ 3. a casual; passing ~ 4. an ironic, wry ~ 5. a cryptic; inappropriate; off-the-record ~ 6. a caustic, critical, derogatory, sarcastic, scathing, unfavorable; nasty, vicious; provocative; trenchant ~ 7. (a) ~ about, on (there was no ~ about the incident in the press) 8. (a) ~ from (there was no ~ from the other party) 9. a ~ that + clause (her ~ that she was very happy to be a guest in their country was greeted with delight) 10. without further ~; no ~! ["gossip"] ["talk"] 11. to arouse, cause, evoke ~ 12. considerable; critical, scathing; favorable; unfavorable ~ (the incident evoked considerable ~ in the capitals of Europe)

comment II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, on 2. (L) she ~ed that she was very happy to be a guest in their country

commentary *n.* 1. to give a ~ 2. a blow-by-blow, play-by-play, running; political ~ 3. a ~ on 4. (misc.) a sad ~ (as on the world situation) (international terrorism is a sad ~ on the world situation)

commentator *n.* 1. a news; radio; sports; TV ~ 2. a ~ on (a ~ on political affairs)

commerce *n.* 1. to carry on, engage in ~ 2. to develop, expand ~ 3. international; interstate; overseas ~ 4. ~ among; between; with (to carry on ~ with the countries of Central America) 5. (misc.) a Chamber of Commerce

commercial *n.* ["paid spoken advertisement"] a radio; TV ~

commiserate *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on; with (I ~d with them on their misfortune)

commissar *n.* a political ~

commission I *n.* ["committee"] ["council"] 1. to appoint, establish, set up a ~ 2. to chair a ~ 3. to disband a ~ 4. a fact-finding; investigating; joint; planning; roving ~ 5. (misc.) (GB) a Royal Commission ["certificate conferring rank"] (usu. mil.) 6. to award, confer a ~ 7. to earn, win a (battlefield) ~ 8. to resign one's ~ 9. a battlefield ~ ["fee"] 10. to charge; pay a ~ 11. to get, earn a ~ 12. to deduct; divide a ~ 13. a ~ for, on 14. in; on ~ (to work on ~ and earn a lot in ~) ["operating condition"] 15. to be; go out of ~ 16. to put out of ~ (the storm put all power lines out of ~) ["task"] (formal) 17. to accept, get, receive a ~ 18. to execute a ~ 19. a ~ to + inf. (a ~ to serve)

commission II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~ed as a captain) 2. (H) she ~ed an artist to paint her portrait 3. (N; used with a noun) she was ~ed a captain

commissioner *n.* 1. a high ~ for (the high ~ for occupied territories) 2. a fire; health; police; water ~ 3. a county; township ~ 4. the Canadian, Ghanaian, etc. High Commissioners in London USAGE NOTE: Commonwealth countries exchange High Commissioners with one another and Ambassadors with other countries.

commit *v.* 1. (D ; refl.) ("to devote") to ~ to (to ~ oneself to a cause) 2. (D ; tr.) ("to assign") to ~ to (to ~ funds to a project) 3. (D ; tr.) ("to confine") to ~ to (to ~ smb. to a mental hospital ; ~ted to prison) 4. (d ; tr.) ("to place") (to ~ a child to a relative's care ; to ~ a poem to memory ; to ~ one's thoughts to paper) 5. (H ; usu. refl. ; no passive) (AE) ("to pledge") he ~ted himself to support her parents 6. (J ; usu. refl.) ("to pledge") he ~ted himself to supporting her parents

commitment *n.* ["promise"] 1. to have ; make a ~ 2. to affirm, honor, meet a ~ 3. a firm ; prior ~ 4. a ~ to + inf. (he made a ~ to support her parents) 5. a ~ that + clause (he made a ~ that he would support her parents) ["devotion"] 6. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 7. an all-out, total ; deep, passionate ~ 8. (a) ~ to (~ to a cause) (he has always displayed a high level of ~ to his principles)

committed *adj.* 1. deeply, firmly, totally, wholeheartedly ~ 2. ~ to (~ to his principles) 3. ~ to + inf. (he is ~ to support her parents (AE) ; or (CE), more usu. : he is ~ to supporting her parents)

committee *n.* 1. to appoint, establish, form, organize, set up a ~ 2. to chair ; sit on a ~ 3. to disband ; leave, resign from a ~ 4. an ad-hoc ; advisory ; budget ; congressional ; credentials ; executive ; finance ; grievance ; legislative ; nominating ; planning ; program ; select ; special ; standing ; steering ; strike ; watchdog ; ways-and-means ~ ; a ~ of the whole 5. a ~ on (a ~ on problems of the elderly) 6. on a ~ (who will be serving on the ~ when it finally meets ?) 7. (misc.) to report a bill out of ~

commodity *n.* 1. to trade in ~ties 2. a basic ; farm ; marketable ; staple ~

common I *adj.* 1. pretty, quite ; very ~ 2. (cannot stand alone after a noun) ~ to (a heritage ~ to both our peoples) 3. ~ to + inf. (it is quite ~ for the trains to be late ; it is ~ to read of strikes ; it is pretty ~ to find people here who know several languages)

common II *n.* 1. in ~ with 2. to have in ~ (both our peoples have a lot in ~) 3. (misc.) the (House of) Commons

commonplace I *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for them to travel abroad)

commonplace II *n.* 1. to state a ~ 2. to exchange ~s (about ; with) 3. a ~ to + inf. (it's a ~ to say that people should work hard)

common sense *n.* 1. to apply, exercise, show, use ; have ~ 2. the ~ to + inf. (he had the ~ to remain silent) 3. (misc.) good ; plain ~ (just plain good old ~)

commotion *n.* 1. to cause, create, make, raise a ~ 2. a great ~ 3. a ~ dies down, subsides 4. a ~ about, over (they escaped in the ~ about the news) 5. in a state of ~

commune *v.* (d ; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with nature)

communicate *v.* 1. to ~ clearly ; officially ; unofficially 2. to ~ on line 3. (B) she tried to ~ her thoughts to her children 4. (D ; intr.) to ~ by, in, through (to ~ by/in code ; to ~ through signals) 5. (D ; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with one's parents)

communication *n.* ["message"] 1. to address, direct, send (all) ~s (to a certain place) 2. to receive a ~ 3. a direct ; official ; personal ; privileged ("confidential") ~ 4. a ~ from ; to ["act, means of communicating"] 5. to establish ; improve ~ 6. to cut off ~s 7. mass ~s 8. online ; radio ; two-way ~ 9. ~ between ; with (to establish ~ with the rescue team ; to cut off all ~s with the mainland) 10. in ~ (with) (she has been in ~ with her family) 11. (misc.) a means of ~ ; open lines of ~ ; a breakdown in ~

communion *n.* ["sharing"] 1. in ~ (with) ["a Christian sacrament, the Eucharist"] 2. to administer, give ~ 3. to receive ; take ~ 4. Holy Communion (how many people were at Holy Communion today ?) 5. smb.'s First Communion

communiqué *n.* 1. to issue a ~ 2. a joint ~ 3. an official ~ 4. a ~ about, on (they issued a ~ on the results of the conference)

communist *n.* an avowed ; card-carrying ~

community *n.* ["group with common interests"] 1. an (the) academic, college, university ; business ; ethnic ; gay ; intelligence ~ ; the international ~ ; a (the) religious ; scientific ~ 2. to divide, polarize, split ; unite a ~ ["group – who live together"] 3. to establish, found, set up ; join a ~ 4. to disband, dissolve ; leave a ~ 5. a closed ; close-knit ~ 6. a life-care (AE) ; retirement ~ 7. (AE) a bedroom ~ (BE has *dormitory town*) 8. (misc.) a pillar of the ~

commute I *n.* (colloq.) ["ride to work"] 1. an easy ; long ~ 2. a ~ from ; to

commute II *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) ("to travel regularly") to ~ between ; from ; to (to ~ between two cities ; to ~ from the suburbs to the city) 2. (D ; tr.) ("to change") to ~ to (the Governor ~d his death sentence to life imprisonment)

commuter *n.* 1. a suburban ~ 2. a ~ between ; from ; to

compact *n.* (formal) ["agreement"] 1. to make a ~ with 2. a ~ between ; with 3. a ~ to + inf. (we made a ~ not to discuss the matter further)

companion *n.* 1. smb.'s boon ; close, constant, inseparable ~ 2. smb.'s life ; traveling ~ 3. a ~ for, to (she worked as a ~ to an elderly woman)

company *n.* ["military unit consisting of several platoons"] 1. to command a ~ (a captain commands a ~) 2. to deploy ; form a ~ 3. a cannon ; headquarters ; infantry ~ ["companionship"] 4. to keep (smb.) ~ ; to seek smb.'s ~ 5. to part ~ with 6. good, pleasant ~ 7. (good) ~ for (the children were good ~ for us) ["guests"] 8. to expect ; have ; invite ~ (for) (we enjoy having ~ ; ~'s coming tonight ! ; (on a formal invitation) Professor and Mrs. Jones request the pleasure of your ~ for dinner tonight) ["associates"] ["association"] ["gathering of people"] 9. to keep ~ with 10. mixed ~ (don't use that word in mixed ~ !) 11. (colloq.) bad, fast ~ ("reckless, wild associates") (he runs around in/with fast ~) 12. present

~ ("those present") (present ~ excepted) 13. in ~ (to behave appropriately in ~; in ~ with others) ["firm; organization"] 14. to manage, operate, run a ~ 15. to establish, form a ~ 16. a finance; holding; insurance; investment; joint-stock; multinational, transnational; private equity; pharmaceutical; reputable; shipping; transport (esp. BE), transportation (esp. AE) ~ 17. a ballet; dance; opera; repertory (esp. BE), stock (AE); theatrical ~ (how many people are there in the ballet ~?) 18. (BE) a limited; public limited ~ (AE prefers *corporation*) 19. a ~ fails, goes bankrupt ["fire-fighting unit"] (esp. AE) 20. an engine, hose; ladder ~ USAGE NOTE: "ABC Ltd" stands for 'ABC Limited'; "ABC plc" stands for 'ABC public limited company.'

comparable *adj.* ~ to, with

compare I *n.* beyond; without ~

compare II *v.* 1. to ~ advantageously, favorably; unfavorably 2. (d; intr.) to ~ to, with (these roads cannot ~ with ours) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ to, with (how would you ~ this wine with a good French wine?) USAGE NOTE: The construction *to compare x to y* typically means "to claim a similarity between x and y" (to compare New York to a beehive). The construction *to compare x with/and y* typically means "to discuss similarities and differences between x and y" (to compare New York with/and London), as does the construction *x compares/cannot compare with y* ("And tell me what street compares with Mott Street in July?" – Lorenz Hart (1895–1943), "Manhattan").

comparison *n.* 1. to draw, make a ~ ("on what basis can you make a ~ between them?" "actually, there are several points of ~ between them!") 2. to bear, stand ~ 3. to defy ~ 4. a favorable; invidious; unfavorable ~ 5. a ~ between; to, with (there is no ~ between them; she made a ~ of our literature to/with theirs; I would like to draw a ~ between recent events and those of the 1930s) 6. beyond ~ 7. by ~ (with) (her works suffer by ~ (with those of other writers)) 8. in ~ to (her works suffer in ~ to those of other writers) USAGE NOTE: Note that there can be a difference in prepositions between *a comparison of New York to/and a beehive* and *a comparison of New York with/and London*. See the Usage Note for **compare II**. The preposition *between* can be used with *and* in both meanings – *a comparison between New York and a beehive* and *a comparison between New York and London*.

compartment *n.* 1. a glove ~ 2. a first-class; second-class; sleeping ~ 3. a watertight ~ 4. (in a refrigerator) a freezer; ice ~ 5. in a ~

compartmentalize *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into

compass *n.* ["device for navigation"] 1. to box the ~ 2. to read a ~ 3. a magnetic; mariner's ~ (see also *the cardinal points of the compass* at **point I** 49) ["limit, range"] 4. beyond; within the ~ (beyond the ~ of the court's jurisdiction)

compassion *n.* 1. to arouse ~ 2. to demonstrate, display, show; feel, have ~ 3. deep, great, profound, strong ~ 4. ~ for, towards 5. out of, with ~ (to act out of ~)

compassionate *adj.* ~ towards

compatibility *n.* ~ between, with

compatible *adj.* 1. mutually, perfectly ~ 2. ~ with

compel *v.* (H) to ~ smb. to do smt.

compelled *adj.* ~ to + inf. (she felt ~ to offer an apology)

compensate *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to make up for") to ~ for (I cannot ~ for my past failings) 2. (D; tr.) ("to reimburse") to ~ for (to ~ smb. for damages)

compensation *n.* 1. to authorize, award, grant; make, pay; offer ~ 2. to deny, refuse ~ 3. to claim; seek ~ 4. to get, obtain, receive ~ 5. adequate, appropriate ~ 6. workmen's (AE) ~ (see also **unemployment compensation**) 7. ~ for (by way of ~ for the damage suffered) 8. as, in ~ for (she received a cash award as/in ~ for the lost suitcase)

compete *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against, with (that store ~s with us (for customers)) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for customers) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in a contest) 4. (misc.) they are ~ting (in order) to attract customers; college chums ~ting (in order) to see who can drink the most beer

competence *n.* ["ability"] 1. to acquire, gain ~ 2. (ling.) communicative; linguistic ~ 3. ~ as (her ~ as an interpreter is well known) 4. ~ for (does she have the necessary ~ for the position?) 5. ~ at, in (~ in English; ~ at/in speaking English) 6. the ~ to + inf. (do they have the ~ to cope with the job of interpreter?) ["jurisdiction"] (legal) 7. beyond, outside; within the ~ (the matter lay within the ~ of the court)

competent *adj.* 1. highly; very ~ 2. ~ as (he is ~ as a teacher) 3. ~ at, in (he is ~ at teaching; he is ~ in English) 4. ~ to + inf. (he is ~ to teach history; ~ to stand trial)

competition *n.* ["rivalry"] ["opposition"] 1. to come up against ~, to face ~ 2. to offer, provide ~ 3. to undercut, undersell the ~ 4. bitter, close, fierce, formidable, heavy, intense, keen, stiff, strong, tough; cutthroat, unfair, unscrupulous ~ 5. fair; free, unfettered; healthy ~ 6. ~ among, between; with (stiff ~ among/between several firms) 7. ~ for (~ for control of the market) 8. ~ to + inf. (there was bitter ~ to control the market) 9. in ~ with ["contest"] ["match"] 10. to hold, stage a ~ 11. to enter; lose; win a ~ 12. a gymnastics; high-diving; speed-skating; violin ~ 13. (an) open ~ 14. a ~ among, between; for (a ~ for the championship) 15. a ~ to + inf. (a ~ between college chums to see who can drink the most beer)

competitive *adj.* 1. fiercely, highly, keenly, very ~ 2. ~ with (to be ~ with the best)

competitor *n.* a formidable, keen, strong; successful; unscrupulous; unsuccessful ~

compilation *n.* 1. to do, make a ~ 2. a ~ from (various sources)

compile *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ a dictionary from various sources)

complacency *n.* ~ about; (AE) towards

complacent *adj.* 1. to become, get, grow ~ 2. ~ about; (AE) towards

complain *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly, loudly, vociferously; constantly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about, of; to (I ~ed to the manager about the service; she ~ed of indigestion) 3. (L; to) she ~ed (to the manager) that the service was bad

complainer *n.* a chronic ~

complaint *n.* 1. to bring, file, lodge, make, register, swear out a ~ 2. to express, voice; have a ~ 3. to get, receive; accept, act on, respond to a ~ 4. to disregard, ignore; reject a ~ 5. a bitter, loud, vociferous; common, frequent ~ 6. a formal, official; justified; legitimate ~ 7. a frivolous; unjustified ~ 8. a ~ about; with (she filed a ~ about the service with the manager) 9. a ~ against (they lodged a ~ against me) 10. a ~ to (our ~ to the dean was ignored) 11. a ~ that + clause (the manager rejected her ~ that the service was bad) 12. (misc.) grounds for/(a) cause for ~; a flood of ~s

complement *n.* 1. a full; perfect ~ 2. (naval) a ship's ~ ("crew") 3. (grammar) a predicate ~ 4. a ~ to (white wine is/makes a perfect ~ to fish)

complementary *adj.* ~ to

complete I *adj.* ~ with (a turkey dinner ~ with all the trimmings)

complete II *v.* (G) she has just ~d writing her second novel

completion *n.* 1. to approach, near ~ 2. on ~ of (on ~ of this dictionary we will need a rest)

complex *n.* ["bad feelings or repressed desires"] 1. to have, suffer from a ~ (about) 2. to give smb. a ~ (about) 3. an Electra; Oedipus ~ 4. a guilt; persecution ~ 5. an inferiority; superiority ~ ["large system"] 6. the military-industrial ~ 7. an apartment (AE); housing; shopping; sports ~

complexion *n.* ["skin, esp. on smb.'s face"] 1. a clear; dark; fair; flawless; florid, ruddy; good; healthy; light, pale; pasty; sallow; smooth ~ ["aspect"] 2. to put a new and more favorable ~ on smt. that had previously taken on an unfavorable ~ 3. a political ~ (the political ~ of the new administration)

complexity *n.* of (great) ~ (a problem of great ~ = a problem of a high degree of ~)

compliance *n.* 1. ~ with (~ with the law) 2. in ~ with (in ~ with regulations)

complication *n.* 1. to cause ~s 2. to avoid; prevent ~s (to prevent the ~s of pregnancy) 3. ~s arise, occur, (esp. AE) set in

complicity *n.* 1. ~ between; with 2. ~ in (~ between gangsters in a crime)

compliment I *n.* ["praise"] 1. to pay smb. a ~ 2. to lavish, shower ~s on 3. to return a ~ 4. to accept a ~; to take smt. as a ~ 5. to angle for, fish for ~s 6. to bandy ~s 7. a backhanded, dubious, left-handed; nice, pretty; sincere ~ 8. a ~ on; to (she paid him a nice ~ on his success; her remarks were meant as a ~ to him on his success = (AE) her remarks were meant as a ~ to his success)

compliment II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ on (I ~ed him on his performance)

complimentary *adj.* 1. highly ~ 2. ~ about

compliments *n.* ["greetings"] 1. to convey, present, send one's/smb.'s ~ 2. (misc.) with the author's ~; with the ~ of the management; my ~ to the chef

comply *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with the law; to ~ with smb.'s request)

component *n.* a basic, essential, key, main, principal ~

comport *v.* (formal) (P; refl.) to ~ oneself with dignity; to ~ oneself well

compose *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ an ode for an emperor; to ~ a symphony for a special concert) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ an ode to an emperor (= 'to compose an ode in honor of an emperor')

composed *adj.* ["consisting"] (cannot stand alone) ~ of (the team was ~ entirely of seasoned players) (see the Usage Note for **comprised**)

composer *n.* a classical; major; minor; popular ~

composition *n.* ["essay"] 1. to do, write a ~ (on) ["piece of music"] 2. to perform, play a ~ (they performed a ~ by Mozart for violin and piano)

composure *n.* 1. to keep, retain; recover, regain one's ~ (despite the insult he managed to retain his ~ unruffled) 2. to lose one's ~ 3. to ruffle smb.'s ~ 4. with great ~

compound I *n.* ["mixture"] a chemical; organic ~

compound II *n.* ["enclosure"] an embassy; factory; prison ~

comprehend *v.* 1. (K) can you ~ his behaving like that? 2. (L) she did not ~ that he would not return 3. (Q) she could not ~ why he would not return USAGE NOTE: In the meaning 'understand,' *comprehend* is not typically used in simple assertions.

comprehensible *adj.* 1. ~ to 2. (misc.) it is not ~ to me why they refused to come

comprehension *n.* 1. to defy, elude ~ 2. listening; reading ~ 3. beyond ~ 4. (misc.) she gaped at me with (a) dawning ~ but he just stared at me with a total lack of ~.

comprehensives *n.* ["comprehensive examination"] (AE) to take one's ~

compress I *n.* 1. to apply a ~ to 2. a cold; dry; hot; wet ~

compress II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ a whole paragraph into two sentences)

comprised *adj.* ["consisting"] (cannot stand alone) ~ of USAGE NOTE: Some purists prefer *composed of* to *comprised of*.

compromise I *n.* 1. to agree (BE), agree on, agree to, arrive at, come to, reach, work out a ~ 2. to reject a ~ 3. an acceptable, reasonable ~ 4. a ~ between; on; with (we reached a ~with them on the payment)

compromise II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on, over; with (they ~d on certain items with us)

comptroller *n.* the Comptroller General (AE)

compulsion *n.* 1. to feel a ~ 2. (a) moral ~ 3. a ~ to + inf. (he felt no ~ to do it) 4. under ~ (to give in under ~)

compulsory *adj.* 1. ~ for 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for voters to register)

compunction *n.* 1. to feel, have; show ~ 2. ~ about (she felt no ~ about making us wait) 3. without ~ (he violated the law without the slightest ~)

computer *n.* 1. to boot up; reboot a ~ 2. to operate, use a ~ 3. to switch on, turn on a ~ 4. to switch off, turn off a ~ 5. to program a ~ 6. an analog; desktop; digital; electronic; general-purpose; handheld; home; laptop; mainframe ~; microcomputer; minicomputer; parallel; personal; serial ~ 7. the ~ is down ("the computer is not functioning") 8. the ~ is up ("the computer is functioning") 9. a ~ bombs (AE), crashes; freezes up 10. by ~ (the book was typeset by ~) 11. in a ~ (to store data in a ~) 12. on a ~ (to run a program on a ~)

comrade *n.* 1. a fallen ~ 2. a ~ in arms 3. an old ~

con *v.* (colloq.) ("to trick") 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into doing smt.) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ out of (he ~ned me out of my money)

conceal *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from 2. (Q) they tried to ~ (from us) how they did it

concede *v.* 1. (B) he finally ~d the election to his opponent 2. (L; to) she reluctantly ~d (to us) that she had been mistaken

conceded *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (this painting is ~ to be her best work)

conceit *n.* insufferable, overwhelming ~

conceivable *adj.* 1. barely, hardly; just (about) ~ 2. ~ that + clause (it is just about ~ that they knew of it beforehand)

conceive *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ of (can you ~ of such cruelty?) 2. (L) I could not ~ that he would do such a thing 3. (Q) I could not ~ how he could have done that 4. (misc.) to ~ of smb./smt. as smb./smt. else (to ~ of life as a struggle)

concentrate *v.* 1. to ~ hard 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ in (to ~ all the government departments in the capital) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ on (to ~ all our efforts on solving the problem; to ~ hard on solving the problem)

concentration *n.* 1. to disrupt, disturb smb.'s ~ 2. deep, intense ~ 3. ~ in (the ~ of all government departments in the capital) 4. ~ on 5. in ~ (in deep ~) 6. (misc.) smb.'s powers of ~

concept *n.* 1. to develop; formulate, frame a ~ 2. to grasp, understand a ~ 3. an abstract ~ 4. the ~ of (the ~ of God) 5. the ~ that + clause (the ~ that trade lessens international tensions is valid)

conception *n.* ["concept"] 1. to have a ~ (you have no ~ of the problems we must face) 2. a clear; vague ~ 3. the ~ that + clause (the ~ that the superpowers must fight is dangerous) ["becoming pregnant or being conceived"] 4. to prevent ~ 5. at ~ (at the moment of ~)

conceptualize *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ as (the author ~d the war as a crusade)

concern I *n.* ["interest"] ["apprehension"] 1. to arouse, cause, give ~ 2. to express, voice; show ~ 3. to feel; share ~ 4. (a) deep, grave, serious; major; paramount; primary ~ (there is grave ~ about the national debt) 5. (a) growing; overriding; widespread ~ 6. (a) common; particular ~ (we have a common ~ over the problems of pollution) 7. (a) national ~ 8. (a) public ~ 9. considerable, utmost ~ (this is a matter of utmost ~ to all of us; they have expressed considerable ~ about the growing crime rate) 10. an object of ~ 11. ~ about, for, over, with (~ about debts; ~ for the children; ~ over the future) 12. ~ to + inf. (~ to know the truth) 13. ~ that + clause (to express ~ that they might fail) 14. of ~ to (the matter was of deep ~ to us; climate change seems of no ~ to him) 15. in one's ~ (in their ~ over the debt) 16. out of ~ (she did it out of ~ for her children) ["firm"] 17. to manage a ~ 18. (misc.) a going ("successful") ~

concern II *v.* 1. (d; refl.) to ~ oneself about, over, with (she ~ed herself with the problem of illiteracy) 2. (R) it ~s her that there is still so much illiteracy 3. (misc.) to whom it may ~

concerned *adj.* 1. deeply, gravely, greatly; very ~ 2. ~ about, for, over; with (~ about safety) 3. (esp. BE) ~ to + inf. (~ to know your decision) 4. ~ that + clause (she is ~ that there is still so much illiteracy; we are ~ that they might have missed the train) 5. (misc.) as far as I'm ~ USAGE NOTE: The phrases *concerned about*, *concerned over*, and, less frequently, *concerned for* mean "worried about" (concerned about your safety). The phrase *concerned with* means "interested in" (concerned with establishing the truth).

concert *n.* ["musical program"] 1. to attend, go to; give, hold, stage a ~ 2. to cancel a ~ 3. a band; benefit, charity; chamber-music; live; orchestral; pop; (BE) prom, promenade; rock; subscription ~ (to hold a series of benefit ~s) (see also *live in concert* at **live I** *adv.*) 4. a ~ by (to attend a ~ by the Berlin Philharmonic) 5. a ~ of (a ~ of Mozart piano concertos) 6. at a ~ (we met at a ~ to raise money for charity) ["harmony, agreement"] 7. in ~ (with) ("together") (to work in ~; voices raised in ~)

concerto *n.* 1. to compose, write a ~ 2. to perform, play a ~ 3. a cello; clarinet; piano; violin ~ 4. a ~ for (a ~ for piano and orchestra)

concession *n.* ["yielding"] 1. to grant, make a ~ 2. a ~ on, to (to make no ~s on foreign policy to the opposition) ["right to conduct business"] 3. to grant; receive a ~ 4. a parking; refreshment ~ 5. a ~ to + inf. (their firm received a ~ to prospect for oil) ["discount"] (BE) 6. a ~ for (are there any ~s for Old-Age Pensioners?)

conclave *n.* ["meeting"] a party ~

conclude *v.* 1. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ by, with (she ~d the meeting by asking us to pray, she ~d the meeting with a prayer) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from (what did they ~ from the evidence?) 3. (L) from the evidence, they ~d that war was inevitable

conclusion *n.* 1. to arrive at, come to, draw, reach a ~ 2. to jump, leap to a ~; point to a ~ 3. to bring to a ~ 4. a correct; logical; reasonable, tenable, valid ~ 5. a foregone; inescapable, inevitable ~ 6. an erroneous, false, invalid, wrong; hasty ~ 7. a ~ that + clause (the evidence pointed to the inescapable ~ that war was inevitable) 8. at the ~ (at the ~ of the meeting she asked us to pray) 9. in ~ (in ~, I repeat that war is wrong)

concoction *n.* (colloq.) to whip up a ~

concomitant *adj.* (formal) ~ with

concord *n.* (formal) in ~ (with)

concordance *n.* ["list of words"] 1. to compile a ~ 2. a ~ to ["harmony"] 3. in ~ with

concordat *n.* (rel.) 1. to conclude, draw up a ~ 2. a ~ between; with

concrete *n.* 1. to pour ~ 2. to set smt. in ~ (also fig.) (don't worry: these rules are not set in ~!) 3. prestressed; ready-mix; reinforced ~ 4. ~ sets 5. a slab of ~

concubine *n.* 1. to have, keep a ~ 2. by one's ~ (he had many children by his ~s)

concur *v.* (formal) ("to agree") 1. to ~ completely, fully, wholeheartedly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ with smb. in supporting a cause) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with an opinion; to ~ with smb.) 4. (L) we ~ with them/with their opinion that the cause should be supported

concurrence *n.* 1. complete, full, unanimous ~ 2. ~ in 3. in ~ with 4. with the ~ of

concurrent *adj.* ~ with

concussion *n.* 1. to get, have, receive, sustain a ~ 2. a mild; severe; slight ~

condemn *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly, harshly, roundly, strongly; unfairly, unjustly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (they were ~ed as traitors) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ for (he was ~ed for stealing a horse) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smb. to death; ~ed to hard labor) 5. (H) he was ~ed to die

condemnation *n.* 1. to issue a ~ 2. (a) bitter, harsh, scathing, strong; sweeping, universal; unfair, unjust ~ (strong ~ of the measure came from all parties)

condense *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; into (you must ~ your paper from a long treatise into a few paragraphs)

condescend *v.* (formal) 1. (d; intr.) to ~ to (don't ~ to your workers: they're people, too!) 2. (E) to ~ to mingle with the workers

condescending *adj.* ~ to, towards (~ to one's employees)

condition I *n.* ["requirement"] 1. to attach, impose, lay down, set (down); state, stipulate a ~ 2. to accept a ~ 3. to fulfill, meet, satisfy; breach a ~ 4. a basic, essential, necessary; sufficient ~ (poverty may be a necessary ~ for crime, but is it a sufficient ~?) 5. a strict ~ 6. a ~ for; on (they imposed strict ~s on the use of the car) 7. on ~ that + clause; subj. (she will join us on ~ that you also be there = (esp. BE) she will join us on ~ that you are also there; she will join us on one ~: that you also be/(esp. BE) also are there) (see also *terms and conditions* at **terms**) ["state of repair"] 8. (a) bad, poor, terrible ~ 9. (an) excellent, good, mint, peak, perfect, tip-top ~ 10. operating, running ~ 11. in ~ (our house is in good ~; his car is in running ~; the roads are in terrible ~) ["good health"] ["fitness"] 12. to get into ~ 13. in ~; out of ~ (he never exercises and is out of ~) ["state of health"] 14. excellent; good ~ 15. fair, satisfactory; stable ~ 16. bad, critical, poor; serious; weakened ~ 17. ~ to + inf. (she is in no ~ to drive) 18. in ~ (the patient was in critical ~) ["ailment"] 19. an acute; chronic; degenerative; disabling; untreatable ~ 20. a heart; lung; skin ~ ["misc."] 21. to endure/ameliorate the human ~ (see also **conditions**)

condition II *v.* 1. (D; refl.) to ~ for 2. (formal) (D; tr.) to ~ on 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to (~ed to life in the jungle) 4. (H) to ~ smb. to do smt.

conditional *adj.* ~ on

conditioned *adj.* ~ to + inf. (the dog was ~ to attack at a certain signal)

conditioner *n.* a hair; skin ~

conditions *n.* ["circumstances"] 1. favorable; normal; optimal; stable ~ 2. abnormal; adverse; appalling; deplorable, pitiful, squalid; difficult; primitive; repressive; unfavorable; unstable ~ 3. driving; housing; living; sanitary; working ~ 4. economic; political; social ~ 5. weather ~ (if weather ~ permit) 6. in ~ (they live in squalid ~) 7. under ~ (to work under difficult ~)

condole *v.* (BE) to ~ with smb. (on smt.) (to ~ with smb. on the death of a parent)

condolences *n.* 1. to convey, extend, express, offer send ~ 2. to accept ~ 3. heartfelt, sincere ~ 4. ~ on (I conveyed our sincere ~ to them on the death of their mother)

condom *n.* to put on; remove, take off; unroll; use, wear a ~

condone *v.* 1. (G) I don't/can't ~ coming late to work 2. (K) I don't/can't ~ his coming late to work

conducive *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to (exercise is ~ to good health)

conduct I *n.* 1. appropriate; chivalrous; ethical; irreproachable; professional; proper ~ 2. disorderly; improper; inappropriate, unbecoming; unethical; unprofessional ~ 3. (mil.) bad; dishonorable (AE); good ~; ~ unbecoming an officer 4. (misc.) a code of ~

conduct II *v.* 1. (d; refl.) to ~ like (he ~ed himself like a good soldier) 2. (P; refl.) to ~ oneself with dignity 3. (formal) (P; tr.) she was ~ed into the conference room; they ~ed us through the museum

conductor *n.* ["smt. that conducts"] 1. a lightning ~ ["person who collects fares"] (BE) 2. a bus ~ ["director"] 3. a guest; orchestra ~

cone *n.* 1. an ice-cream ~ 2. a fir; pine ~

confederacy *n.* 1. to enter, join; form a ~ 2. a ~ among, between; with

confederate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

confederation *n.* 1. to enter, join; form a ~ 2. a loose, weak ~ 3. a ~ breaks up, dissolves; forms 4. a ~ among, between; with 5. in a ~

confer *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to converse") to ~ about; with (we will ~ with them about this matter) 2. (D; tr.) ("to bestow") to ~ on (to ~ an award on smb.)

conference *n.* 1. to give, have, hold; schedule; stage a ~ 2. to convene, organize a ~ 3. to broadcast; televise a ~ 4. to attend a ~ (we attended a ~ that took place in July and met in a big hotel) 5. an annual ~ 6. an international ~ 7. a press; peace; staff (AE); summit ~ (see also **news conference**) 8. a ~ between 9. a ~ on (to hold a ~ on disarmament) 10. at a ~ (you'll see her at the press ~) 11. in ~ (he is in ~ and cannot come to the telephone)

confess *v.* 1. to ~ frankly, honestly; publicly; voluntarily, willingly 2. (B) he ~ed his crime to the police 3. (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to a crime; to ~ to the police; he ~ed to cheating on the exam; he ~ed to having been bored by the opera) 4. (L; to) he ~ed (to the police) that he had committed a crime; I must ~ I was bored by the opera

confession *n.* 1. to make; sign a ~ 2. to extort, extract, force a ~ from; to beat a ~ out of (the police beat a ~ out of him) 3. to repudiate, retract, take back, withdraw a ~ 4. a deathbed; forced; full; public; voluntary ~ 5. (rel.) to hear smb.'s ~ 6. (rel.) to go to ~ 7. a ~ that + clause (he made a ~ to the police that he had committed a crime) 8. (misc.) I have a ~ to make: I was bored by the opera!

confetti *n.* to sprinkle, throw ~

confide *v.* 1. (B) he ~d his secret to us 2. (d; intr.) to ~ in (she ~s in her sister) 3. (L; to) she ~d (to us) that she was about to retire

confidence *n.* ["trust"] ["reliance"] 1. to enjoy, have; gain, win smb.'s ~ 2. to inspire, instill ~ in smb. 3. to have; place one's ~ in smb. 4. to take smb. into one's ~ 5. to shake; undermine smb.'s ~ 6. to betray smb.'s ~ 7. absolute, complete, every, full, implicit, perfect, supreme ~ (I have absolute ~ in her ability) 8. public ~ 9. ~ in (my ~ in him was shaken) 10. (misc.) your ~ in her is misplaced; a vote of ~/of no ~ ["secrecy"] ["secret"] 11. to exchange ~s 12. to violate a ~ 13. strict ~ 14. in ~ (she told it to me in (the) strictest ~) ["belief in one's own ability"] ["firm belief"] 15. to express; gain; have ~ 16. to exude, ooze, radiate ~ (he just oozed ~ but his ~ evaporated in the face of criticism) 17. to bolster, boost smb.'s ~ (she lost ~ in her ability to do the job but got back the ~ she lacked when a timely compliment boosted it) 18. to shake; undermine smb.'s ~ 19. buoyant, unbounded ~ 20. the ~ to + inf. (he doesn't have enough ~ to proceed on his own) 21. ~ that + clause (nothing could shake her ~ that she would succeed) 22. (misc.) a crisis of ~ (see also **self-confidence**)

confident *adj.* 1. supremely, very ~ 2. ~ about, in 3. ~ of (~ of success) 4. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that she would succeed)

confidential *adj.* 1. highly, strictly ~ 2. to keep smt. ~

confidentiality *n.* 1. to maintain ~ 2. to violate ~ 3. strict ~

confine *v.* 1. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ to (~d to bed; ~ to a wheelchair; ~d to quarters; the lecturer ~d herself to one topic; ~ yourself to the facts; please ~ your comments to the topic under discussion) 2. (misc.) the difficulty is not ~d to Plan A: it also affects Plan B

confinement *n.* ["imprisonment"] ["being confined"] 1. solitary ~ (they put him in solitary ~) 2. ~ to (~ to quarters) 3. in ~ (in solitary ~) ["lying-in"] (obsol.) 4. in ~ (before the birth of a child)

confines *n.* beyond; within the ~ (impossible within the ~ of the system)

confirm *v.* 1. (L) the president ~ed that a summit conference would take place 2. (Q) the president did not ~ when the summit conference would take place 3. (misc.) to ~ in writing

confirmation *n.* 1. official; unofficial; written ~ 2. ~ that + clause (we have received ~ that the summit conference will take place) 3. in ~ of

confiscate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

conflagration *n.* a major ~

conflict I *n.* 1. to provoke a ~ 2. to come into ~ with 3. to avert, avoid a ~ 4. to resolve a ~ 5. (an) armed, military; cultural; direct; ethnic; inter-communal; internecine; religious ~ 6. (a) bitter ~ 7. (a) ~ about, over; among, between; with (a ~ between neighboring countries over their common border; a ~ with one's relatives about the terms of a will) (see also *conflict of interests* at **interest I** 14) 8. in (a) ~ with (your version is in ~ with mine)

conflict II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (your version ~s with mine)

confluence *n.* at a ~ (the city lies at the ~ of three rivers)

conform *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to, with (to fail to ~ to specifications)

conformance *n.* in ~ with

conformity *n.* 1. strict ~ 2. ~ to 3. in ~ with

confront *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ about, over; with (to ~ a prisoner with a witness)

confrontation *n.* 1. to have; provoke a ~ 2. to avert, avoid a ~ 3. an armed, military; direct, head-on ~ 4. a bitter ~ 5. a ~ about, over; among, between; with (a ~ between neighboring countries over their common border)

confuse *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ with (I always ~ him with/and his brother) 2. (R) it ~s me that he and his brother look so much alike

confused *adj.* 1. easily; very ~ 2. ~ about, over 3. to become, get ~ 4. ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to learn of his latest decision)

confusing *adj.* 1. ~ for, to (the complicated testimony was ~ to us = the complicated testimony was ~ for us to listen to) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ (for us) to listen to the testimony) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that he and his brother look so much alike)

confusion *n.* 1. to cause, create; lead to ~ 2. to avoid; clear up ~ 3. ~ arises; reigns 4. to throw into ~ (their unexpected arrival threw our plans into ~) 5. complete, general, mass, total, utter 6. ~ about, over; between (let's try to clear up the ~ between us about who does what) 7. in ~ (to withdraw in utter ~; in the ~ they escaped) 8. a scene; state of ~ (it was a scene of utter ~)

congestion *n.* 1. traffic ~ 2. nasal; lung, pulmonary ~

conglomerate *n.* a financial; industrial; international, multinational, transnational ~

congratulate *v.* 1. to ~ heartily, sincerely, warmly 2. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ on, upon (you are to be ~d on your promotion)

congratulations *n.* 1. to extend, offer ~ on 2. deepest, heartfelt, heartiest, hearty, sincere, warm, warmest ~ 3. ~ on, upon (my warmest ~ on your promotion!) 4. ~ to (~ to you on your promotion)

congress *n.* 1. to convene, hold a ~ 2. an annual; biennial; international; party ~ 3. a ~ meets 4. (misc.) an act of Congress

congruence *n.* (formal or technical) (in) ~ with

congruent *adj.* (formal or technical) ~ to, with

congruity *n.* (formal) ~ with

congruous *adj.* (formal) ~ to, with

conjecture I *n.* (formal) ["guess"] 1. to make a ~ 2. pure ~ 3. a ~ about 4. a ~ that + clause (the press's ~ that a summit conference would take place proved to be true) 5. (misc.) it is a matter for/of ~ whether they can still win = it's open to ~ whether they can still win

conjecture II *v.* (formal) (L) ("to guess") the press ~d that a summit conference would take place

conjugation *n.* ["verb forms"] an irregular; regular ~

conjunction *n.* ["connecting word"] 1. a coordinating; subordinating ~ ["cooperation"] ["coincidence"] 2. in ~ with

connect *v.* 1. to ~ closely, intimately; loosely 2. (d; intr.) to ~ to, with (this bus is supposed to ~ with a train) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to, with (are you ~ed with this firm? to ~ a TV set to an antenna)

connection, connexion *n.* ["association"] 1. to establish, make a ~ 2. to break, sever a ~ 3. a close, intimate; direct; loose, tenuous ~ 4. a foreign; international ~ 5. a ~ between; to; with (there was no ~ between the two phenomena; to have a ~ with smb.) 6. in a certain ~ (in this ~; in ~ with the other matter) ["acquaintance"] ["tie"] 7. business; professional; social ~s ["transfer during a trip"] 8. to make; miss a ~ ["linking of two telephones"] 9. to get a ~ ["link, linking"] 10. a faulty; loose ~ ["misc."] 11. to have ~s ("to have influential supporters"); to use one's ~s

connect up *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to, with (to ~ a TV set up to an antenna)

connexion (BE) see **connection**

conniption *n.* ["a strong emotional reaction"] (AE) (colloq.) to have a ~ (mom will have a ~ if we get back late!)

connive *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at; in; with (to ~ in cheating smb.) 2. (E) they ~d (with each other) to cheat her

conquest *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. to consolidate; extend one's ~s 3. military; sexual; world ~ 4. by ~ (what the tyrant gained by ~ he lost by his subjects' rebellion)

conscience *n.* 1. to appeal to; arouse, stir smb.'s ~ 2. to have a ~ 3. to have smt. on one's ~ 4. to ease, salve one's ~; to wrestle with one's ~ 5. a clear; guilty ~ (to have a guilty ~) 6. a matter of ~ 7. (misc.) in all ~ (CE), in good ~ (AE), in all good ~ (AE); pangs of ~

conscientious *adj.* ~ about (she is ~ about her work)

conscious *adj.* 1. fully ~ 2. (cannot stand alone) ~ of (~ of danger) 3. ~ that + clause (she became ~ that everyone was staring at her)

consciousness *n.* ["conscious state"] 1. to lose; recover, regain ~ ["awareness"] 2. to raise smb.'s ~ 3. class; political; social ~ ["misc."] 4. (the) stream of ~

conscript *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ troops for national defense) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ youths into the armed forces)

conscription *n.* 1. to introduce ~ 2. to abolish, end ~ 3. military; universal ~

consecrate *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (he was ~d as archbishop) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ to (she ~d her life to helping the poor) 3. (N; used with a noun) he was ~d archbishop

consecration *n.* ~ as; to (his ~ as archbishop; the ~ of her life to helping the poor)

consensus *n.* 1. to reach a ~ 2. a general ~ 3. (a) ~ among; on (there is a degree of ~ among the experts on what should be done) 4. a ~ that + clause (there is (a) general ~ among the experts that we should abstain) USAGE NOTE: The phrase "* consensus of opinion" is disliked because "consensus" alone will typically do the trick.

consent I *n.* 1. to give one's ~ to 2. to refuse, withhold one's ~ 3. common; general; informed; mutual; parental; tacit; unanimous ~ 4. by ~ (by mutual ~) 5. (misc.) the age of ~

consent II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to a proposal) 2. (E) she ~ed to help

consequence *n.* ["importance"] 1. of ~ (to) (a matter of some/no ~) ["result"] 2. in ~ of

consequences *n.* ["results"] 1. to have ~ for 2. to accept, bear, face, suffer, take the ~ 3. dire, disastrous; grave, serious ~ 4. far-reaching, fateful; inevitable; unforeseeable; unforeseen ~

conservation *n.* 1. energy; forest; soil; water; wildlife ~ 2. (the) ~ of natural resources

conservative I *adj.* 1. deeply, staunchly; politically ~ 2. ~ in (~ in one's views)

conservative II *n.* a diehard, dyed-in-the-wool, staunch, true-blue (BE); political ~

consider *v.* 1. ("to regard") to ~ favorably; seriously 2. (D; tr.) ("to regard"); ("to examine") to ~ as (we ~ed him as a possible candidate) 3. (D; tr.) ("to regard as a candidate") to ~ for (he cannot be ~ed for the job) 4. (G) ("to contemplate") she ~ed resigning 5. (L) ("to take into account") you must ~ that she has been here only one month 6. (M) ("to believe") we ~ed him to be a possible candidate 7. (N; used with an adjective, noun, past participle) ("to believe") we ~ her qualified; we ~ her a genius; we ~ed him a possible candidate 8. (Q) ("to contemplate") they ~ed where to hide the money 9. (misc.) we ~ed it difficult to believe that she had been here only one month USAGE NOTE: Note the contrasts between *consider as* and *consider* in the following text – In her book she considers ("examines") Shakespeare as a playwright and as a poet. She considers ("believes") Shakespeare (to be) both a great playwright and a great poet. However, she considers ("believes") Shakespeare (to be) even greater as a playwright than as a poet.

considerate *adj.* 1. ~ of (he was ~ of everyone) 2. ~ towards 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to do that nice thing)

consideration *n.* ["thought"]["concern"] 1. to give ~ to (to give some ~ to a matter) 2. to show ~ for 3. to take smt. into ~ 4. to deserve; require ~ (the matter requires careful ~) 5. careful, detailed; due; serious ~ 6. a major; minor; overriding ~ 7. financial; humanitarian; personal ~s 8. for smb.'s ~ (I submit the enclosed proposal for your ~) 9. in ~ of (in ~ of past services) 10. on careful ~ (of) 11. out of ~ for smb. 12. under ~ (the matter is under ~) 13. with ~ for (with due ~ for your feelings, we must reject your request) ["fee"] 14. for a ~ (for a modest ~, he'll do anything)

consign *v.* 1. (B) they ~ed the shipment to us 2. (d; tr.) to ~ to (the paintings were ~ed to our care)

consignment *n.* ["a sale allowing the dealer to return unsold merchandise"] to sell; ship on ~

consist *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ of ("to be composed of") (our state ~s of thirty counties) 2. (formal) (d; intr.) to ~ in ("to be equivalent to") (freedom ~s in the absence of oppressive laws and in being able to exercise your rights)

consistent *adj.* 1. ~ in (she is not ~ in her support of our party) 2. ~ with (not ~ with our principles)

consistory *n.* (usu. rel.) to convoke, hold a ~

consolation *n.* 1. to afford, offer ~ 2. (of) ~ to (that will be a great ~ to us; that should be of some ~ to you; that is – no/small ~ to me; no one was actually killed – if that's any ~ to you) 3. a ~ to + inf. (it's a ~ to know that they are safe = it's a ~ knowing that they are safe) 4. a ~ that + clause (our only ~ was that no one was actually killed) 5. (misc.) a word of ~

console *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ smb. on the loss of a loved one) 2. (d; refl.) to ~ with (I ~d myself with the thought that no one was actually killed)

consommé *n.* 1. clear ~ 2. a bowl; cup of ~

consonance *n.* in ~ with

consonant I *adj.* (formal) ~ with

consonant II *n.* 1. to articulate, pronounce a ~ 2. a dental; double, geminate; final; guttural; hard; labial; liquid; palatal; soft; unvoiced, voiceless; velar; voiced ~ (see also *consonant cluster* at **cluster I**; *consonant sound* at **sound II** *n.*)

consort *v.* (formal) (d; intr.) to ~ with

consortium *n.* to form, organize a ~

conspicuous *adj.* 1. ~ for, in 2. (misc.) to be ~ by one's absence

conspiracy *n.* 1. to hatch, organize a ~ 2. to crush; foil; uncover a ~ 3. (a) criminal ~ 4. a ~ against; with 5. a ~ to + inf. (a ~ to overthrow the government) 6. (misc.) a ~ of silence

conspire *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ against; with 2. (E) they ~d to overthrow the government

constable *n.* (BE) ["police officer"] a chief ~

consternation *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. to express; feel ~ 3. in ~ 4. to smb.'s ~ (to our ~, the current was turned off)

constituency *n.* a core ~

constituent *n.* (ling.) an immediate; ultimate ~

constitute *v.* (S; used with a noun) this ~s a problem

constitution *n.* ["basic law"] 1. to adopt, establish; ratify a ~ 2. to draw up, frame, write a ~ 3. to preserve, safeguard a ~ 4. to abrogate; amend, change a ~ 5. to violate a ~ 6. a written; unwritten ~ ["physical makeup"] 7. a feeble, frail; iron, rugged, strong ~

constitutional *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is not ~ to censor the press)

constitutionality *n.* to challenge, question, test; establish the ~ (of a law)

constrain *v.* (formal) (H) to ~ smb. to do smt.

constrained *adj.* (formal) (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (we were ~ to act)

constraint *n.* ["restriction"] 1. to impose, place, put a ~ on, upon 2. financial; legal ~s ["compulsion"] 3. under ~ (to act under ~)

construct I *n.* a theoretical ~

construct II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ of, out of (the house is ~ed of wood)

construction *n.* ["building industry"] 1. in ~ (he is in ~) ["act of building"] 2. shoddy; solid, sturdy ~ 3. commercial; modular; residential ~ 4. of ~ (buildings of shoddy ~) 5. under ~ (the new skyscraper is under ~) ["interpretation"] 6. to put a ~ on (he put the wrong ~ on my statement) ["syntactic phrase"] 7. an absolute; idiomatic ~

construe *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (he ~d the statement as a threat) 2. (M) he ~d the statement to be a threat

consul *n.* a ~ general; an honorary ~

consulate *n.* a ~ general

consult *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, on; with; without (to ~ with smb. about a problem; they solved the problem without ~ing anyone else) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ about, on (to ~ smb. about a problem)

consultant *n.* 1. a business; legal; medical; nursing; political ~ 2. a ~ for, on; to (a ~ to the president on foreign policy) 3. (med.) a ~ in (a ~ in obstetrics and gynecology)

consultation *n.* 1. to have, hold ~s 2. ~s about, on; with 3. in ~ with (they solved the problem in ~ with several experts) 4. (misc.) was there any sort of public ~ before the government went ahead with its plans?

consulting *n.* online ~

consumed *adj.* ~ with (~ with guilt)

consumption *n.* 1. conspicuous; mass ~ 2. fuel ~ 3. to increase; reduce (increase your ~ of vegetables and reduce your ~ of alcohol) 4. (misc.) unfit for human ~

contact *n.* ["being together"] ["connection"] 1. to come in, into ~; to establish, make ~ 2. to maintain, stay in ~ 3. to bring into ~ 4. to avoid; break off; lose ~ 5. (electrical) to break ~ 6. close, intimate; direct; eye; face-to-face; indirect; physical ~ 7. radar; radio; telephone ~ (the control tower was in radar ~ with the plane) 8. ~ between; with (to establish ~ with one's relatives; to stay in ~ with friends) 9. in ~ (have they been in ~?) 10. on ~ (the bomb exploded on ~ with the ground) 11. a point of ~ ["acquaintance"] ["tie"] 12. to have ~ (with) 13. business; cultural; personal; professional; international; social ~s

contagious *adj.* extremely, highly, very ~

container *n.* a metal; plastic ~ (to store smb. in a metal ~)

contaminate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ by, with (to ~ smb. with smt.; a wound ~d by bacteria)

contamination *n.* radioactive ~

contemplate *v.* 1. (G) he ~d resigning 2. (misc.) too awful/horrible to ~ (he seriously ~ed resigning – but the thought of resigning was too awful to ~)

contemplation *n.* 1. deep; quiet; silent ~ 2. lost in ~

contemporaneous *adj.* (formal) ~ with

contemporary *adj.* ~ with

contempt *n.* ["scorn"] 1. to betray; demonstrate, display, show; express; feel; have ~ for 2. bitter, deep, profound, total, unmitigated, utter ~ 3. ~ for (his body language betrayed his utter ~ for the dictator; I feel nothing but ~ for such behavior!) 4. beneath ~ 5. in, with ~ (I looked at them with ~) ["disrespect"] (usu. legal) 6. to hold in ~ (to hold smb. in ~ of court) ("to accuse smb. of disrespect for a court") 7. civil; criminal ~ ["misc."] 8. familiarity breeds ~

contemptible *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to behave like that)

contemptuous *adj.* ~ of (he was ~ of all authority)

contend *v.* (formal) 1. (D; intr.) ("to compete") to ~ for; with (to ~ for a position) 2. (L) ("to claim") he ~ed that he had been cheated

contender *n.* 1. a formidable, leading, main, serious, strong; likely; unlikely ~ 2. a presidential ~ 3. a ~ for (the leading ~ for the heavyweight crown)

content I *adj.* 1. perfectly, very; quite 2. ~ with (they were perfectly ~ with their lot) 3. ~ to + inf. (she was not ~ to remain at home)

content II *n.* to one's heart's ~ ("to one's complete satisfaction")

content III *v.* (formal) (d; refl.) to ~ with (to ~ oneself with a simple life)

contention *n.* ["argument"] 1. to rebut, refute; reject a ~ 2. to substantiate, support a ~ 3. a ~ about 4. a bone of ~ ("something contentious") 5. a ~ that + inf. (it is his ~ that taxes are too low) ["competition"] 6. in ~ (for); (with) (which teams are in ~ for the title?)

contents *n.* 1. to disclose, divulge, reveal the ~ (of a letter) 2. to inspect the ~ (of) 3. a table of ~

contest I *n.* 1. to have, hold, organize, run, stage a ~ 2. to adjudicate, judge a ~ 3. to enter; take part in a ~ 4. to lose; win a ~ (in this ~ only one contestant can win) 5. a bitter, hard-fought; close; one-sided ~ 6. a beauty; public-speaking ~ 7. a ~ among, between; for 8. a ~ to + inf. (a ~ between college chums to see who can drink the most beer)

contest II *v.* to ~ bitterly; successfully; unsuccessfully (the lawyers ~ed the court's decision successfully)

contestant *n.* a ~ for

contested *adj.* bitterly, closely, hotly, vigorously ~

context *n.* 1. a historical; social ~ 2. in; out of ~; within a ~ (to cite a passage out of ~; ideas that must be set within the historical ~ that produced them)

contiguous *adj.* ~ to, with

continent *n.* on a ~

contingency *n.* 1. to provide for every ~ 2. a ~ arises 3. an unforeseen ~

contingent *adj.* (pompous) (cannot stand alone) ~ on, upon (the time of his arrival is ~ on the weather)

continuance *n.* ["adjournment"] (legal) (AE) to grant a ~

continue *v.* 1. to ~ unabated 2. (D; intr.) to ~ as (she will ~ as chairperson) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ by (she ~d by citing more facts) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ with (she ~d with her work) 5. (E) they ~d to write 6. (G) they ~d writing 7. (misc.) to be ~d

continuity *n.* 1. to break the ~ 2. ~ between (there was no ~ between the first and second acts)

continuum *n.* 1. to constitute, form a ~ 2. the health-illness ~ 3. along a ~ 4. a ~ from; to

contorted *adj.* ~ with (her face was ~ with rage)

contraband *n.* 1. to smuggle ~ 2. to seize ~ 3. ~ of war

contraception *n.* 1. to practice, use ~ 2. a method of ~

contraceptive *n.* 1. to use ~s 2. a chemical; oral; vaginal ~

contract I *n.* 1. to conclude, sign; enter into; land (colloq.), secure; negotiate; ratify; tender for a ~ 2. to carry out, execute; honor a ~ 3. to draft, draw up, write (up) a ~ 4. to assign (after bidding), let; award a ~ 5. to abrogate, cancel, repudiate a ~ 6. to breach, break, violate a ~ 7. a binding; exclusive; legal, valid; void ~ 8. an oral, verbal; written ~ 9. (colloq.) (AE) a sweetheart ~ ("an agreement favorable to the employer that was reached without the participation of the union members") 10. (AE) a yellow-dog ~ ("a contract that obligates the workers not to join a union") 11. a marriage ~ 12. a ~ for; with 13. a ~ to + inf. (they landed a ~ to build a bridge) 14. under ~ to, with (that player is under ~ with our team) 15. (misc.) to exchange ~s (with) ("to complete the purchase of a house in England; in Scotland you exchange missives (with)"); to put out a ~ on smb. ("to arrange to have smb. murdered") (see also *(a) breach of contract* at **breach** 6)

contract II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for; with (the city ~ed for a new library with their firm) 2. (E) the firm ~ed to construct the bridge

contract III *v.* ("to shorten") (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to (in spoken English, "it is" often ~s/is often ~ed to "it's")

contractions *n.* to time (labor) ~ (in childbirth)

contractor *n.* a building; defense; electrical; general; plumbing ~; a sub-contractor

contract out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ of (esp. BE) (to ~ of a company pension scheme) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (the work was ~ed out to several local firms)

contradict *v.* to ~ flatly

contradiction *n.* 1. an apparent; basic; direct; flat, outright; glaring; inherent ~ 2. a ~ between 3. in ~ to, with (his words and his deeds are in ~ to/with each other = his words are in ~ to/with his deeds) 4. (misc.) a ~ in terms

contradictory *adj.* ~ to

contradistinction *n.* (formal) in ~ to

contrail *n.* to leave a ~ (high-flying aircraft leave ~s)

contralto *n.* 1. to sing ~ 2. a rich ~

contraption *n.* (colloq.) to build, put together, slap together a ~

contrary I *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to (his actions are ~ to the rules)

contrary II *n.* 1. on the ~ ("does your back feel any better?" "on the ~, it feels much worse") 2. to the ~ (I will come next month unless you write to the ~) USAGE NOTE: AE also allows "does your back feel any better?" "to the ~, it feels much worse."

contrast I *n.* 1. to present a ~ 2. a harsh, sharp, stark, startling; marked, striking, vivid ~ 3. a favorable; unfavorable ~ 4. a ~ between, to, with 5. by ~ (with) (their neighbors live opulently; by ~, they live modestly = they live modestly by ~ with their neighbors, who live opulently) 6. in ~ to (in ~ to their neighbors, they live modestly) 7. (misc.) for (the sake of) ~

contrast II *v.* 1. to ~ sharply 2. to ~ favorably; unfavorably 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (their deeds ~ with their words)

contravention *n.* (formal) in ~ of (to act in ~ of international law)

contribute *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (we ~d clothing for the flood victims through a charity) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to, towards (to ~ generously to charity; we ~d clothing to the flood victims through a direct donation; lack of communication ~d to the breakdown of their marriage)

contribution *n.* ["donation, gift"] 1. to make a ~ (to) 2. to send in a ~ 3. a charitable; in-kind; monetary; voluntary ~ 4. a big, generous, large; small, token ~ (to make a generous ~ to charity) ["accomplishment, presentation"] 5. to make a ~ (to) 6. a brilliant, great, notable, outstanding, remarkable; important; invaluable, key; major, significant, substantial; minor; modest; valuable ~ (she made an outstanding ~ to science) 7. a ~ to, towards

contributor *n.* ["one who gives money"] 1. an anonymous; generous; major; regular ~ 2. a ~ to (a generous ~ to charity) ["one who contributes by writing or drawing"] 3. a prolific; regular ~ 4. a ~ to (a regular ~ to a journal)

contrition *n.* 1. to show ~ 2. to express; feel ~ 3. (often rel.) an act of ~ 4. ~ for

contrive *v.* (E) she somehow ~d to arrange a meeting

control *n.* 1. to establish; exercise, exert, wield; gain, have; retain ~ (over) 2. to assume, take ~ of 3. to bring smt. under ~ (the fire was finally brought under ~) 4. to wrest ~ from 5. to lose; relinquish ~ of (she lost ~ of the car) 6. absolute, complete; close, strict; full ~ (to exert strict ~ over smt.) 7. lax, loose; remote ~ 8. government; parental ~ 9. air-traffic; flight; mission ~ 10. arms; gun ~ 11. communicable-disease; crowd; population; weight ~ (see also **birth control**; **self-control**) 12. cost; quality ~ 13. damage; fire; flood ~ 14. emissions; pest ~ 15. stress; thought ~ 16. price; rent; wage ~ 17. ~ of, over (to establish ~ over prices) 18. in ~ (of) (she was in full ~ of the situation) 19. beyond, out of ~ (the car went out of ~; the fire got out of ~) 20. under ~ (the fire was finally brought under ~; keep them under ~; the area was placed under the ~ of the military) (see also **controls**; *circumstances beyond smb.'s control* at **circumstances** 9)

controlled *adj.* tightly ~

controller *n.* an air-traffic, flight ~

controls *n.* ["restrictions"] 1. to impose, introduce ~ (on) 2. to tighten ~ (on) 3. to lift, remove ~ (from) 4. to relax ~ (on) 5. price; rent; wage ~ ["regulating instruments"] 6. to take over the ~ (the copilot took over the ~) 7. dual ~ 8. at the ~

controversial *adj.* bitterly, extremely, highly, very ~

controversy *n.* 1. to arouse, cause, fuel, generate, spark (off), stir up (a) ~ 2. to settle a ~ 3. a bitter, fierce, furious, heated, lively ~ 4. a ~ dies down; flares up; rages; surrounds smt./smb. 5. a ~ about, over 6. a ~ between, with

convalesce *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from

convalescence *n.* a lengthy, long ~

convenience *n.* ["comfort"] 1. a ~ to + inf. (it's a great ~ to live in town = it's a great ~ living in town) 2. at smb.'s ~ (answer at your earliest ~) ["device that adds to comfort"] 3. modern ~s (often shortened to "mod cons" esp. in the language of British estate agents) 4. the latest ~s 5. (BE) a public ~ ("a public toilet")

convenient *adj.* 1. mutually ~ 2. ~ for (will Tuesday be ~ for you?) 3. ~ to + inf. (it is very ~ to have the bus stop so close = it is very ~ having the bus stop so close) 4. ~ that + clause (it's very ~ that the bus stop is so close)

convent *n.* to enter a ~ ("to become a nun") (she entered a ~ and remained in it for the rest of her life)

convention *n.* ["assembly"] ["conference"] 1. to have, hold a ~ 2. an annual; national; party; political ~ (the ~ met/took place when all the delegates could be at it) ["agreement"] 3. a copyright ~ ["practice, tradition"] 4. to defy, flout ~ 5. a longstanding ~ 6. ~ dictates (that we eat three meals a day) 7. by ~

conventional *adj.* 1. ~ in (one's tastes) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is not ~ to go to work in shorts)

converge *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon; towards (to ~ on the speaker's platform)

conversant *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ["familiar"] 1. fully, thoroughly ~ 2. ~ with (~ with procedure)

conversation *n.* ["talk"] 1. to begin, strike up; carry on, have, hold a ~ 2. to make ~ (we had little in common, and it was difficult to engage him in ~ or make ~ (with him)) 3. to bug, monitor, tap a ~ 4. to hog, monopolize; liven up, stimulate a ~ 5. to break off, end, finish, terminate; interrupt a ~ 6. (an) animated, lively; boring, dull; intimate; light; serious ~ 7. (a) private; telephone ~ 8. (a) ~ lags; picks up 9. fragments, scraps, snatches of (a) ~ (we overheard scraps of their ~ during a lull in our own ~) 10. (a) ~ about; with 11. in ~ (she was in ~ with a friend) ["sexual intercourse"] (legal) 12. criminal ~ ("adultery")

conversations *n.* ["negotiations"] 1. to hold ~ 2. to break off ~ 3. ~ about; with

converse *v.* 1. to ~ fluently (to ~ fluently in a foreign language) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about; with

conversion *n.* ["change"] 1. condo; loft ~ 2. a ~ from; into, to ["a score made by a kick or pass after a goal has been scored"] (Am. football, rugby) 3. to make a ~ ["adoption of a new religion"] 4. to undergo ~ 5. a religious ~ 6. a ~ from; to

convert I *n.* 1. to gain a ~ 2. a ~ to (a ~ to Buddhism)

convert II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to change one's religion") to ~ from; to (they ~ed from Hinduism to Buddhism) 2. (D; intr., tr.) ("to change"); ("to change smb.'s religion") to ~ from; into, to (to ~ smb. to Islam; the plant ~ed to microchip production; they ~ed their money from euros into pounds; to ~ a barn into a garage)

converter *n.* a catalytic ~

convertible *adj.* 1. freely ~ 2. ~ into, to (~ into hard currency)

convey *v.* 1. (B) ("to give") ~ my best wishes to them 2. (D; tr.) ("to transfer") to ~ from; to (the title to the property was ~ed from them to you) 3. (Q) ("to explain") she tried to ~ how she felt

conveyance *n.* ["vehicle"] a public ~

convict I *n.* an escaped ~

convict II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ of (he was ~ed of murder)

conviction *n.* ["strong belief"] 1. to carry; lack ~ (his story carries ~; "The best lack all ~" – W.B. Yeats, "The Second Coming" (1921)) 2. a burning, deep, firm, great; strong, unshakeable; lifelong; personal; religious ~ 3. a ~ about 4. a ~ that + clause (she expressed her firm ~, shared by many others, that television was harmful to children) 5. by; with; without ~ (a pacifist by ~ who defended pacifism with great ~) 6. (misc.) to have the courage of one's ~s ["guilty verdict"] 7. to get, win a ~ (the prosecutor got ten ~s last year) 8. to overturn a ~ (the appeals court overturned the ~) 9. a previous ~ 10. a ~ for (a previous ~ for embezzlement)

convince *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ of (he ~d me of his sincerity) 2. (esp. AE) (H) we ~ed ("persuaded") her to stay home 3. (L; must have an object) we ~d her that she should stay home

convinced *adj.* 1. absolutely, completely, firmly, thoroughly; not entirely ~ 2. ~ of (they're still not entirely ~ of the feasibility of our project) 3. ~ that + clause (they are not ~ that our project will succeed)

convocation *n.* ["assembly"] 1. to hold a ~ ["assembly of graduates of a university"] (GB) 2. a member of ~

convoy *n.* 1. to form a ~ 2. a naval; relief ~ 3. in; under ~ (to travel in ~)

convulsed *adj.* ~ in, with (~ in/with laughter)

convulsions *n.* to go into, have ~

cook I *n.* 1. the chief, head; a good ~ 2. (AE) a short-order ~

cook II *v.* (C) ~ some vegetables for us; or ~ us some vegetables

cooker *n.* ["pot"] 1. a pressure ~ (also fig.) ["stove"] (BE) 2. an electric; gas ~

cookie *n.* AE; BE has *(sweet) biscuit* 1. to bake ~s 2. a chocolate-chip; homemade; sandwich ~ USAGE NOTE: AE sandwich cookie = BE cream (biscuit). 3. (CE) a fortune ~

cooking *n.* 1. to do the ~ 2. home; home-style ~ 3. (BE) good plain (English) ~

cookout *n.* (esp. AE; CE has *barbecue*) 1. to have a ~ 2. at a ~

cool I *adj.* ["calm"] 1. to keep, remain, stay ~ 2. (misc.) (as) ~ as a cucumber ["indifferent"] ["unfriendly"] 3. ~ to, towards (she was ~ to the idea)

cool II *n.* (slang) ["composure"] to blow, lose keep one's ~

cool III *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (boil the mixture and then ~ it to room temperature)

coolant *n.* to add ~

coolness *n.* ["indifference"] ~ to, towards

coop *n.* 1. a chicken ~ 2. (misc.) (colloq.) to fly the ~ ("to escape")

cooperate *v.* 1. to ~ closely; fully 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in, on; with (to ~ in/on a project with smb.)

cooperation *n.* 1. close; wholehearted ~ 2. ~ between; in, on; with (~ on a project with another university) 3. in ~ with (their dictionary was published in ~ with the Ministry of Education; the two research teams are working in close ~ (with each other)) 4. with smb.'s ~ 5. (misc.) to enlist smb.'s ~

cooperative, co-op, coop *n.* 1. to form, set up a ~ 2. a consumers'; farmers'; housing; producers'; workers' ~

coop up *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in; with (we were ~ed up in a small room)

coordinate *v.* 1. to ~ carefully; closely 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (we must ~ our operations with theirs)

coordination *n.* 1. close ~ 2. ~ among, between; with 3. in ~ (with) (the two research teams are working in close ~ (with each other))

cop *v.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) (D; intr.) to ~ out of ("to renege on") (to ~ out of a responsibility)

cope *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with difficulties)

cop out *v.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) (D; intr.) ("to renege") to ~ on (to ~ on a responsibility)

copulate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

copy I *n.* ["reproduction"] 1. to make, run off a ~ 2. to Xerox (T) a ~ 3. to print ~pies (the publisher decided to print ten thousand ~pies of the book) 4. to inscribe a ~ (the author inscribed a ~ of her book for him) 5. (a) clean, fair ~; hard ("printed out") ~ (from a computer); a rough; true ~ 6. a backup; blind; carbon; extra; master ~; photocopy; top (BE) ("original"); Xerox (T) ~ ["manuscript"]["draft of material to be printed"] 7. to edit, (BE) sub-edit, (BE) sub ~ ["issue, publication"] 8. an advance; back; complimentary, presentation ~ ["news"] 9. to make good ~ ("to be newsworthy")

copy II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ~ for (please ~ the article for me) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from, out of (she ~ied the paragraph from the encyclopedia)

copybook *n.* (BE) to blot one's ~ ("to ruin one's reputation")

copyright *n.* 1. (for a copyright office) to grant, register a ~ 2. (for an author, publisher) to apply for; claim; have, hold, own; secure a ~ 3. to breach, infringe a ~ 4. an ad-interim; full-term; statutory ~ 5. a ~ expires, runs out 6. a ~ on (a book) 7. in, (AE) under; out of ~

cord *n.* 1. to pull (on) a ~ 2. to tie a ~ (around smt.) 3. a telephone ~ 4. a communication (BE), emergency (AE); electric (AE; BE has *flex*); extension ~ 5. a spinal ~ (see also **umbilical cord**) 6. a length, piece of ~

cordial *adj.* ~ to, towards

cordon *n.* ["protective ring of police, soldiers"] 1. to form a ~ 2. to throw a ~ around (an area)

cords *n.* the vocal ~

core *n.* 1. the hard ~ 2. at the ~ (at the ~ of the problem) 3. (misc.) to get to the ~ of a matter (see also *rotten to the core* at **rotten** 3)

cork *n.* to pop, remove a ~

corn *n.* ["maize"] (esp. AE) 1. to grow, raise; husk, shuck (AE) ~ 2. hybrid; Indian; sweet; young ~ 3. an ear; kernel of ~ 4. (misc.) (CE) ~ on the cob USAGE NOTE: Nowadays BE seems to prefer "sweetcorn" to "maize" as the name for what Americans call "corn." In AE and technical BE, "sweet corn" is a *type* of corn/maize.

corner *n.* 1. to round, turn; take a ~ 2. a blind; tight ~ 3. (also fig.) around the ~ (they live around the ~; to go around the ~; prosperity is just around the ~) 4. at, on a ~ (of a street) 5. in the ~ (as of a room or page) in the upper right-hand ~ 6. (misc.) the four ~s of the earth; I could see her out of the ~ of my eye; (boxing) a neutral ~; to cut ~s ("to do something the easiest and quickest way"); forced into a ~ ("crowded into a difficult position"); to establish a ~ on the market ("to monopolize the market")

cornerstone *n.* to lay a ~

corollary *n.* a ~ to

coronary *n.* 1. to have a ~ 2. a massive ~

coronation *n.* 1. to have, hold a ~ 2. a ~ takes place

corporal *n.* 1. a lance ~ (BE: AE has *private first class*) 2. to make smb. a ~, to promote smb. to the rank of ~; to have, hold the rank of ~ 3. (misc.) what's your opinion, Corporal (Smith)?

corporation *n.* 1. to establish, form, set up a ~ 2. to manage, run a ~ 3. to dissolve a ~ 4. (BE) a public ~ 5. an international, multinational, transnational ~

corps *n.* 1. the diplomatic; officer; press ~ (a post in the diplomatic ~) 2. an army ~ 3. the Air Corps; the Marine Corps; the Signal Corps (AE), the Corps of Signals (BE)

corpse *n.* 1. to bury, inter; lay out a ~ 2. to dig up, exhume a ~ 3. a ~ decays, decomposes, rots

corpus *n.* (ling.) 1. to collect, gather a ~ 2. a closed; spoken; written ~

corpuscle *n.* a red; white ~

correct *adj.* ["true"] 1. ~ in (you are ~ in thinking that he is foolish) 2. ~ to + inf. (it would be ~ to say that we have committed a blunder; you are ~ to think that he is foolish) 3. ~ that + clause (is it ~ that he has resigned?) 4. (misc.) grammatically ~; politically ~ (also PC); substantially ~; ~ in all respects

correction *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. to mark ~s (in a text)

correctness *n.* political ~ (also PC)

correlate *v.* (d; intr., tr.) to ~ with (to ~ one set of data with another set)

correlation *n.* 1. (a) close, high, strong ~ 2. a ~ between; with

correspond *v.* 1. ("to be similar") to ~ approximately, roughly; closely; exactly 2. (D; intr.) ("to be equal") to ~ to (what German word ~s to *hound*?) 3. (BE) (D; intr.) ("to be in harmony") to ~ with (his actions do not ~ with his words) 4. (D; intr.) ("to write") to ~ about; with (they have been ~ing with each other about this matter for years)

correspondence *n.* ["exchange of letters"] 1. to carry on, conduct; enter into (a) ~ 2. to break off, end (a) ~ 3. business, commercial; personal ~ 4. ~ about; between; from; with 5. in ~ with (to be in ~ with smb. about smt.) ["conformity"] 6. close ~ 7. ~ between (~ between theory and practice)

correspondent *n.* a diplomatic; foreign; special; war ~

corresponding *adj.* ~ to

corridor *n.* 1. an air; long; narrow; winding ~ (a long ~ leads to the living-room) 2. a ~ across; between; through (see also *the corridors of power* at **power** 9)

corruption *n.* 1. to expose ~ 2. moral; political ~ 3. (misc.) bribery and ~; graft and ~ (AE) (there have been many cases of bribery and ~ among top politicians)

corsage *n.* to pin a ~ on

cortex *n.* the cerebral ~

cosigner *n.* a ~ for, of (a ~ for a promissory note)

cosmetics *n.* to apply, put on; use ~

cost I *n.* 1. to bear the ~ 2. to defray the ~ 3. to drive up the ~ 4. to incur; pay ~s 5. to spare no ~ 6. to cut, reduce ~s 7. to estimate; put, set a ~ at (he put the ~ at one hundred dollars) 8. to cover, meet; divide, share, split the ~ 9. advertising; court; direct; fixed; indirect; overhead; production ~s (who will pay the court ~s?) 10. a high ~ (the high ~ of energy) 11. a unit ~ 12. at a certain ~ (at any ~; at all ~s; at the ~ of his health; at a terrible ~; at no ~ to the taxpayer) 13. the ~ in (the ~ in time was considerable) 14. (misc.) the whole community is counting the ~ to it of juvenile delinquency; living ~s; a high ~ of living can mean a low standard of living (see also **cost of living**)

cost II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ at (they've ~ed the whole project at $50,000) 2. (O; may be used with one inanimate object) "¬how much/what¬ did it cost (you)?" "it cost us ten dollars; it cost ten dollars" 3. (P; with an animate object) his blunder cost us dearly/dear 4. (misc.) it ~s (us) fifty thousand dollars a year to maintain this house

co-star *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in; with (Vivien Leigh ~ed with Clark Gable in *Gone With The Wind* = Vivien Leigh and Clark Gable ~ed in *Gone With The Wind)*

cost-effective *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it would not be ~ to hire temporary workers)

costly *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to run an air conditioner all day)

cost of living *n.* 1. to raise the ~ 2. a high; low ~ 3. a ~ falls, goes down; goes up, rises

costume *n.* 1. an academic; bathing (BE), swimming (BE) ~ 2. (a) folk, national, traditional; Halloween; period ~ (they were all in national ~)

cot *n.* ["folding bed"] (AE; BE has *camp bed*) 1. to open up, unfold a ~ 2. a folding ~ ["child's bed"] (BE) 3. see **crib I**

cottage *n.* a country; summer; thatched; weekend ~

cotton I *n.* 1. to gin; grow; pick; plant ~ 2. (AE) absorbent ~ (CE has *cotton wool*) 3. pure, one hundred percent ~ 4. a bale; reel (BE); wad of ~

cotton II *v.* (colloq.) (d; intr.) ("to take a liking") to ~ to

cotton on *v.* (colloq.) (BE) (D; intr.) ("to understand") to ~ to

cotton up *v.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) (d; intr.) ("to try to ingratiate oneself") to ~ to

couch I *n.* 1. to lie; sit on a ~ (do psychoanalysts still ask patients to lie on a ~?) 2. a studio ~ (see also *couch potato* at **potato** 6)

couch II *v.* (formal) (D; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ a request in tactful language)

cough I *n.* 1. to develop a ~ 2. to give; have a ~ 3. to suppress a ~ 4. a bad, heavy, nasty; chesty; croupy; dry; hacking, persistent; smoker's ~ (see also **whooping cough**)

cough II *v.* to ~ loudly

coughing *n.* a fit of ~

could *v.* (F) he ~ not attend the meeting

council *n.* 1. to convene, convoke a ~ 2. a city (AE), local (BE); county; district; executive; student; township (AE) ~ 3. The Privy Council (GB) USAGE NOTE: In AE a member of a city council is a "councilman" or a "councilwoman." In BE a member of a local council is a "councillor."

counsel I *n.* ["advice"] 1. to give, offer, provide ~ 2. to take ~ (from) 3. sage, wise ~ 4. ~ about, concerning ["lawyer"] 5. (a) legal ~ 6. ~ for (~ for the defense; ~ for the prosecution) ["misc."] 7. to keep one's own ~ ("to keep one's plans secret")

counsel II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ about, in, on 2. (D; tr.) to ~ against (I ~ed him against going) 3. (H) I ~ed him not to go

counseling, counselling *n.* bereavement; family; guidance; marriage; pastoral; vocational ~ (they sought family ~ for their problems and are getting it every week)

counselor, counsellor *n.* ["adviser"] 1. a bereavement; family; guidance; marriage; pastoral; vocational ~ 2. a ~ to (a ~ to the ambassador)

count I *n.* ["act of counting"] ["total, tally"] 1. to do, have, make, take a ~ 2. to keep ~ of 3. to lose ~ of 4. (boxing) to go down for the ~ ("to be counted out"); to take a ~ of ten; to get up at/on the ~ of nine 5. an accurate, correct ~ 6. a final, last ~; the latest ~ 7. a – cell; pollen ~ (see also **blood count**; **sperm count**) 8. a body ~ (see also **head**

count) 9. the ~ stands at… 10. at a certain ~ (there were fifty at the latest ~) 11. by smb.'s ~ (by my ~) ["issue"] 12. on a certain ~ (on all ~s) ["charge, accusation"] 13. on a certain ~ (he was guilty on all ~s)

count II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to be taken into account") to ~ against (your previous convictions will ~ against you) 2. (d; tr.) ("to consider") to ~ among (I always ~ed her among my friends) 3. (d; intr., tr.) ("to be regarded; to regard") to ~ as (the draw ~s as a victory; we ~ed the draw as a victory) 4. (d; intr.) ("to be valued") to ~ for (his opinion ~s for very little) 5. (d; intr.) ("to rely") to ~ for; on, upon (she ~ed on us for help; she ~ed on us to help her) 6. (D; intr.) ("to name numbers") to ~ from; to (to ~ from one to ten) 7. (D; intr.) ("to be taken into account") to ~ towards (do associate members ~ towards a quorum?) 8. (N; refl., tr.; used with an adjective) ("to consider") we must ~ ourselves lucky (to have escaped)

countdown *n.* 1. a final ~ 2. a ~ from; to (the ~from 10 to zero has begun)

count down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ from 10 to zero)

countenance I *n.* (biblical) a forbidding, stern: radiant, shining ~

countenance II *v.* 1. (G) they will not ~ cheating on the exam 2. (J) they will not ~ anyone cheating on the exam 3. (K) they will not ~ anyone's cheating on the exam

counter I *adj.*, *adv.* to act, be, go, run ~ to (that runs ~ to all our traditions)

counter II *n.* ["surface, table over which business is conducted"] 1. a bargain; notions (AE) ~ 2. a check-in; check-out; ticket ~ 3. a lunch ~ 4. at a ~ ["misc."] 5. over the ~ ("through a broker's office"); ("without a prescription"); under the ~ ("illicitly")

counter III *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ by (she ~ed by advancing an even stronger argument) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (she ~ed with an even stronger argument; she ~ed our argument with an even stronger one of her own) 3. (L) she ~ed that her argument had not been heeded

counter IV *n.* ["instrument"] 1. to set a ~ 2. a crystal; Geiger ~

counterattack *n.* 1. to launch, make, mount a ~ 2. a ~ against (see also **attack I**, 1)

counterbalance *n.* a ~ to

counterblow *n.* 1. to deal, deliver a ~ 2. a ~ against, to

countercharge *n.* 1. to bring, file, make a ~ 2. a ~ against (see also **charge I**, 1)

counterclaim *n.* 1. to bring, enter, make a ~ 2. a ~ against (see also **claim I**, 1–2)

counterclockwise *adj.*, *adv.* (AE) to go ~; to turn (smt.) ~ (BE has *anticlockwise*)

counterespionage *n.* 1. to conduct ~ 2. ~ against (see also **espionage**)

counterfeit *n.* a crude; skillful ~

counterfoil *n.* (BE) a cheque ~

counterintelligence *n.* to conduct ~

countermeasures *n.* 1. to take ~ 2. ~ against

counteroffensive *n.* 1. to launch, mount, undertake a ~ 2. to go over to the ~ 3. a ~ against 4. on the ~ (the candidate went on the ~ against his opponent)

counteroffer *n.* to make a ~ (see also **offer I**, 2–3)

counterpart *n.* 1. a direct, exact ~ 2. to have a ~ in (British diplomats are negotiating with the ~s they have in Russia) 3. a ~ of, to

counterplot *n.* 1. to hatch a ~ 2. a ~ against (see also **plot I**, 1–6)

counterpoint *n.* ["accompanying melody"] 1. double; single; triple ~ 2. in ~ to ["contrasting element"] 3. to provide a ~ to; to serve as a ~ to

counterproductive *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to raise so many objections)

counterproposal *n.* to make, offer a ~ to (see also **proposal** 1–3, 8–9)

counterpunch *n.* to deliver, throw a ~ (see also **punch I**, 1)

counterrevolution *n.* 1. to foment, stir up a ~ 2. to carry out; organize a ~ 3. a ~ against (see also **revolution** 1–4, 6)

countersign *n.* to give the ~

countersuit *n.* (legal) 1. to bring a ~ 2. a ~ against (see also **suit I**, 1–4)

counterweight *n.* a ~ to (her realism serves as a ~ to his hysteria)

country *n.* ["nation"] 1. to govern, lead, rule, run a ~ 2. a civilized ~ 3. smb.'s adopted ~; smb.'s mother ~; smb.'s native ~ 4. a host; neighboring ~ 5. a democratic; developing; foreign; free; industrialized; occupied; third-world; underdeveloped ~ ["rural area"] 6. the back ~ 7. open; rough, rugged ~ (in open ~) 8. in the ~ (to live in the ~) ["misc."] 9. (BE) to go to the ~ ("to call a general election")

count up *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (the child could ~ to twenty)

coup *n.* ["successful action"] 1. to pull off, score a ~ 2. an attempted; bloodless; military ~ (see also **coup d'état**)

coup de grâce *n.* ["finishing blow"] to administer, deliver, give the ~ (to)

coup d'état *n.* ["sudden overthrow of a government"] 1. to carry out, mount, stage a ~ 2. an attempted ~ 3. a bloodless; bloody; military ~ (against)

couple I *n.* 1. a childless; courting; elderly; engaged; loving; married; newlywed; odd; unmarried; young ~ 2. (misc.) at their wedding we toasted the happy ~ by saying "(Here's) To The Happy Couple!"

couple II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to, with (to ~ a dining car to a train)

coupled *adj.* ~ with (poverty ~ with unemployment can lead to crime)

couplet *n.* a heroic; rhyming ~

coupon *n.* 1. to detach; redeem a ~ 2. (misc.) to clip ~s ("to profit from stocks and bonds")

courage *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show; have (the) ~ 2. to gather (up), get up, muster, pluck up, screw up, summon up, work up (the) ~ 3. to draw, take ~ (from) 4. to take ~ to + inf. (it takes ~ to tell the truth) 5. dauntless, great, immense, indomitable, sheer; moral; physical ~ 6. an act of ~ 7. the ~ to + inf. (she lacked the ~ to tell the truth) 8. for ~ (to get a medal for ~) 9. of ~ (a person of great ~) 10. (misc.) to have the ~ of one's convictions; take ~ and press on

courageous *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to tell the truth)

courier *n.* 1. to dispatch a ~ 2. a diplomatic; motorcycle ~ 3. a ~ to 4. by ~ (the message came by ~)

course I *n.* ["organized program of study"] 1. to conduct, do (esp. BE), give, offer, teach a ~ 2. to do (esp. BE), take a ~ 3. to audit (AE), sit in on a ~ 4. to enroll for, join, register for, sign up for a ~ 5. to fail; pass a ~; to take a ~ pass-fail (AE) 6. to complete; drop; drop out of; withdraw from a ~ 7. to introduce; organize, plan a ~ 8. to cancel a ~ 9. a demanding, difficult, rigorous; easy, gut (AE; colloq.) ~ 10. an advanced; beginning, elementary, introductory; intermediate ~ 11. (at a university) a core; crash; elective; graduate, postgraduate (esp. BE); intensive; interdisciplinary; laboratory; lecture; noncredit; pass-fail; remedial; required; survey; undergraduate ~ (see also *coursework* at **work I** *n.*) 12. a correspondence; day-release (BE); extension; makeup; modular; refresher ~ 13. a ~ covers, deals with, treats a subject; lasts, runs (our history ~ covered the nineteenth century and lasted for three terms) 14. a ~ in, on (she took a ~ in mathematics; they offered a ~ on lexicography) ["itinerary"] ["path"] 15. to chart, map out, mark out, plot a ~ 16. to follow, pursue, take a ~ (the law must take its ~) 17. to set ~ for (we set ~ for the nearest port) 18. to alter, change ~ (it's not good to change ~ in midstream) 19. to stay the ~ ("to persist until the end") 20. to run, take its ~ (the disease ran its expected ~; you have to let things take their natural ~) 21. a collision; middle; natural; zigzag ~ (events took their natural ~; to steer a middle ~ between extremes) 22. a ~ of action (to pursue a ~ of action) 23. off ~; on ~ (our ship was right on ~; to be on a collision ~; the plane was off ~; the sailboat was blown off ~) ["playing area"] 24. a golf ~; racecourse (esp. BE) ["training area"] 25. an obstacle ~ ["period"] 26. in the ~ of (in the ~ of an investigation; in the ~ of time; in due ~; in the ordinary ~ of events) ["training area, race"] 27. to do, run a ~ 28. an assault (BE), obstacle; training ~ (the trainees ran the obstacle ~) ["part of a meal"] 29. a first; main ~ ["misc."] 30. of ~ ("naturally") (see the Usage Note for **track**)

course II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ through (the blood ~d through her veins)

court *n.* ["place where justice is administered"] 1. to adjourn; dismiss (a) ~ 2. to go to ~ (over); take smb. to ~ (over) 3. to clog the ~s (with frivolous litigation) 4. an appeals (esp. BE), appellate; circuit; city, municipal; county; crown (BE); district (AE); federal (US); high; higher; lower; magistrate's; superior; supreme ~; a law ~ = a ~ of law 5. a criminal; domestic-relations, family; juvenile; orphans'; probate; small-claims; traffic; trial ~ 6. a night; police ~ 7. a kangaroo ("irregular"); moot ~ 8. a ~ of appeal(s); a ~ of common pleas; a ~ of domestic relations; a ~ of law; a ~ of original jurisdiction; a ~ of inquiry (BE) 9. a ~ adjourns; convenes 10. a ~ holds (that), rules (that) 11. before a ~ (when will the case come before the ~?); in ~ (to appear in ~; to testify in ~; in open ~) 12. out of ~ (to settle a case out of ~) ["sovereign's residence"] 13. to hold ~ (now usu. fig.) 14. at ~ (at the ~ of Louis XIV) ["homage"] 15. to pay ~ to smb. ["sports arena"] 16. a badminton; basketball; clay (for tennis); grass (for tennis); handball; indoor; outdoor; squash; tennis; volleyball ~ ["motel"] (obsol.) (AE) 17. a motor, tourist ~

courteous *adj.* 1. ~ to, towards, with (she is ~ to everyone) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to do that) (see also *kind and courteous* at **kind I**, 4)

courtesy *n.* 1. to display, extend, show ~ (they showed us every ~) 2. common; unfailing ~ 3. professional; senatorial (US) ~ 4. an act of ~ 5. ~ to, towards (it was done as a ~ to you) 6. the ~ to + inf. (he didn't have the ~ to answer my letter) 7. by ~ of 8. (misc.) she did me the ~ of remaining silent; a basket of fruit was delivered to our door ~ of the management

courthouse *n.* (esp. AE; CE has *court*) a county; federal; state ~

court martial I *n.* 1. to hold a ~ 2. to try smb. by ~ 3. a drumhead; general; special; summary ~

court-martial II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (he was ~ed for desertion)

courtship *n.* a whirlwind ~

cousin *n.* 1. a distant; first; second ~; a first ~ once removed 2. a ~ of, to (she is a first ~ to the countess) 3. (colloq.) kissing ("friendly") ~s

covenant I *n.* a ~ between

covenant II *v.* (BE) 1. (E) she ~ed to pay the interest 2. (L) she ~ed that she would pay the interest

Coventry *n.* (esp. BE) to send to ~ ("to ostracize")

cover I *n.* ["shelter"] ["concealment"] 1. to run for; seek; take ~ 2. to break ~ 3. (colloq.) to blow smb.'s ~ ("to give smb. away") 4. ~ from (~ from enemy fire) 5. under ~ (under ~ of darkness) ["covering"] 6. cloud ~ (under a thick cloud ~) 7. a dust; mattress; pillow ~ 8. between, under the ~s (the children were huddled under the (bed) ~s) ["defense"] 9. air; protective ~ ["front"] 10. a ~ for (the whole operation was a ~ for foreign agents) ["envelope"] 11. under separate ~ ["binding"] 12. a back; front ~ 13. a book; magazine ~ 14. from ~ to ~ (to read a book from ~ to ~) 15. on the ~ (her picture was on the ~ of the magazine)

cover II *v.* 1. ("to report on") to ~ live (the event will be ~ed live by/on TV) 2. (D; refl., tr.) ("to protect") to ~ against (this policy will ~ you against flood damage) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to substitute for; to protect") (to ~ for a friend) 4. (D; tr.) ("to place over") to ~ with (to ~ a child with a blanket)

coverage *n.* ["insurance"] 1. to provide ~ against, for 2. comprehensive, full ~ ["reporting"] 3. to give; receive ~ 4. complete, extensive, full, wide; front-page ~ (the story received wide ~) 5. live; media; newspaper; television ~

covered *adj.* ~ in, with (~ in blood)

covering *n.* a light ~ of (snow)

cover-up *n.* a ~ by; for

cover up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for ("to protect") (she ~ed up for me when I made that blunder) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with ("to place over") (she ~ed up the child with a blanket)

covetous *adj.* ~ of

cow I *n.* 1. to milk a ~ 2. a beef; dairy, milch (old-fashioned) ~ 3. ~s calve; low, moo 4. a ~ chews its cud 5. a herd of ~s 6. the meat of the ~ is beef 7. a male ~ is a bull 8. a young ~ is a calf; its meat is veal 9. (misc.) (colloq.) holy ~! (AE); silly ~! (BE)

cow II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into making concessions)

coward *n.* an abject, dirty ~

cowardice *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. abject, rank; moral ~ 3. (misc.) an act of ~; a streak of ~

cowardly *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to behave like that)

coy *adj.* ~ about; with (don't be ~ with me about your past record!)

cozen *v.* (formal) 1. (d; tr.) to ~ into 2. (d; tr.) to ~ from, out of (to ~ smb. out of his money)

cozy up *v.* (colloq.) (AE) (D; intr.) to ~ to

CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation) *n.* to do ~ on smb.

crab I *n.* ["rower's defective stroke"] to catch a ~

crab II *v.* (colloq.) ("to complain") (D; intr.) to ~ about

crack I *n.* ["remark"] (colloq.) 1. to make a ~ (about) 2. a dirty, nasty ~ 3. a ~ that (her ~ that you are always late was unjustified) ["moment"] 4. at the ~ of dawn ["attempt"] 5. to have a ~ at (let's have a ~ at it) ["hole"] 6. to peer through a ~ in a fence ["misc."] 7. she opened the window just a ~; the slaves cowered at the ~ of their master's whip

crack II *v.* 1. (N; used with an adjective) she ~ed it open 2. (P; intr., tr.) she ~ed the eggs into a bowl; to ~ under the strain; his voice ~ed with emotion; she ~ed her head against the wall

crackdown *n.* 1. to launch a ~ 2. a ~ on (a ~ on drug dealers)

crack down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on drug dealers)

cracked up *adj.* (colloq.) (cannot stand alone) ["reputed"] ~ to be (this hotel is not all (that)/what it's ~ to be)

cracker *n.* ["dry biscuit"] 1. (esp. AE) a graham; soda; unsalted ~ 2. (BE) a cream ~

cracking *adj.* (colloq.) to get ~ (on) ("to start working on smt.")

crackpot *n.* (colloq.) a ~ to + inf. (he was a ~ to do it)

cradle *n.* 1. to rock a ~ 2. (misc.) from the ~ to the grave ("during smb.'s whole life")

craft *n.* ["occupation"] 1. to ply one's, practice a ~ 2. to learn, master a ~ (see also *arts and crafts* at **arts** 8) ["boat"] 3. a landing ~ 4. (in plural) pleasure; small ~

crafted *adj.* artfully, beautifully; carefully, skillfully ~

craftsman, craftswoman *n.* a master ~ USAGE NOTE: Note also the term *craftsperson.*

cram *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to study hastily") to ~ for (to ~ for an exam) 2. (d; tr.) ("to jam") to ~ into (to ~ one's things into a suitcase) 3. (D; tr.) ~ with (the basement was ~med with debris) 4. (misc.) to ~ a suitcase full of clothes

cramp *n.* 1. to get a ~ (esp. AE)/get ~ (BE) 2. stomach ~(s); writer's ~ 3. (BE) seized with ~

cramped *adj.* ~ for (space)

cranberry *n.* to pick ~ries

crane I *n.* ["machine"] to operate a ~

crane II *n.* ["bird"] 1. ~s dance (before mating) 2. a flock, kettle of ~s 3. (misc.) a young ~ is a chick or colt

crank *n.* ["handle"] to turn, use a ~

crap game *n.* (AE) a floating ~

craps *n.* (AE) to play, shoot ~

crash I *n.* ["sudden noise"] 1. a loud, resounding ~ (the plates fell on the floor with a resounding ~) ["violent accident"] 2. a plane ~ (to be killed in a plane ~) ["sudden collapse"] 3. a stockmarket ~ (to lose everything in a stockmarket ~)

crash II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against (waves ~ against the rocks) 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ into (the car ~ed into a pole) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ through (the car ~ed through the barrier) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the floor) 5. (misc.) the plane ~ed in flames

crass *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to ask how much you earn)

crater *n.* a bomb ~ (to see smb. in a bomb ~)

crave *v.* 1. to ~ strongly 2. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for peace and quiet) USAGE NOTE: The phrase *to crave for smt.* is synonymous with *to crave smt.*

craving *n.* 1. to feel, have; satisfy a ~ 2. an irresistible; powerful, strong ~ 3. a ~ for 4. a ~ to + inf. (a strong ~ to be free)

craw *n.* ["crop of a bird or insect"] to stick in smb.'s ~ ("to be distasteful to smb.")

crawl I *n.* ["swimming stroke"] 1. to do, swim the ~ ["act of crawling"] (also fig.) 2. at a ~ (traffic moved at a ~) 3. to a ~ (traffic slowed to a ~)

crawl II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into a hole)

2. (d ; intr.) to ~ out of (to ~ out of the ruins) 3. (d ; intr.) to ~ with (the city is ~ing with reporters) 4. (P ; intr.) to ~ under the bed ; she managed to ~ across the floor on her hands and knees ; they ~ed from under the ruins

crawl out *v.* (D ; intr.) to ~ from under (they ~ed out from under the ruins)

crayon *n.* 1. colored ; wax ~s (a box of colored ~s) 2. in ~, with a ~ (to draw a picture with a/in ~ ; to color a picture in with/using a ~)

craze *n.* 1. the current, latest, newest ~ 2. the ~ swept the country 3. a ~ for

crazed *adj.* 1. drug-~ 2. ~ with (anger)

crazy *adj.* (colloq.) ["infatuated"] 1. (cannot stand alone) ~ about (he is ~ about her) ["foolish"] 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to drive without headlights = she was ~ to drive without headlights) ["insane"] 3. to drive/make (AE) smb. ~ ; to go ~

cream *n.* ["component of milk"] 1. to whip ~ 2. clotted (BE) ; double (BE), whipping ; single (BE) ; sour, soured (BE) ; whipped ~ (see also **ice cream**) ["cosmetic"] 3. to apply ~ 4. cleansing ; cold ; face ; hand ; moisturizing ; shaving ; skin ; vanishing ~ ["misc."] the ~ of the crop ("the very best")

crease *n.* 1. to iron out, remove, smooth down the ~s 2. a sharp ~

create *v.* ("to appoint") (BE) (N ; used with a noun) he was ~d duke

creature *n.* 1. living ~s 2. a ~ of habit

credence *n.* 1. to attach, give, lend ~ to 2. to gain ~

credentials *n.* 1. to establish ; present one's ~ (as) 2. to evaluate ; examine smb.'s ~ 3. excellent, impeccable, sound ~

credibility *n.* 1. to establish ; restore ~ (one's) (as) 2. to lack ~ ; to lose one's ~ 3. to damage, undermine smb.'s ~ (see also *a credibility gap* at **gap** 5)

credit I *n.* ["time given for payment ; deferred payment"] 1. to allow, give, extend, offer ~ (this store does not give ~) 2. to deny, refuse smb. ~ 3. consumer ; interest-free ~ 4. on ~ (to buy smt. on ~) 5. (misc.) a line of ~ = a credit ~ (see also *credit crunch* at **crunch** n = *credit squeeze* at **squeeze** n) ["recognition"] ["honor"] 6. to do ~ to ; to reflect ~ on (her work does (great) ~ to her teachers = her work does her teachers (great) ~) 7. to claim (the) ~ for ; to get, take (the) ~ for (he took ~ for my work) 8. to deserve ~ (for) 9. to give smb. ~ for (I give her full ~ for being so sensible) 10. a ~ to (they are a ~ to their parents) 11. ~ that + clause (it was to her ~ that she never gave up) 12. to smb.'s ~ (to her ~, she never gave up ; she has a dozen publications to her ~) 13. (misc.) (give) ~ where ~ is due (I don't like her but, to give ~ where ~ is due, at least she never gave up !) ["sum allowed, deducted"] 14. an energy (AE) ; tax ~ ["recognition that a student has completed a course or unit of study"] 15. to earn, get, receive ; transfer ~ (for a course) 16. advanced ~

credit II *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ fifty dollars to smb.'s account) 2. (d ; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smb. with common sense ; she is ~ed with that discovery ; to ~ an account with fifty dollars)

credit card *n.* 1. to accept ; issue a ~ 2. a ~ expires (your ~ is no longer valid : it expired last week) 3. by ~ (can I pay by ~ ?) 4. (misc.) to put a purchase on one's/smb.'s ~

creditor *n.* to pay off one's ~s

credo *n.* a ~ that + clause (it is our ~ that everyone is equal)

credulity *n.* to strain, stretch smb.'s ~ (to the breaking point)

creed *n.* 1. to adhere to ; embrace a ~ 2. a political ; religious ~ 3. a ~ that + clause (it is our ~ that everyone is equal) 4. (misc.) all races and ~s

creep *v.* 1. (d ; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into a hole) 2. (d ; intr.) to ~ out of (an insect crept out of the pipe) 3. (P ; intr.) to ~ across the floor ; the baby crept around the room 4. (misc.) to ~ on all fours ; to ~ out from under a bush

creeps *n.* (colloq.) ["fear"] it gives me the ~

creep up *v.* (D ; intr.) to ~ on (he crept up on me in the dark)

creepy *adj.* (colloq.) ["weird"] ~ about (there is smt. ~ about him)

crescendo *n.* 1. to reach a ~, rise to a ~ 2. a deafening ; rising ~ USAGE NOTE : Except for "a deafening crescendo," all the other expressions given above are disliked by those who know that a crescendo (as in music) is an increase in loudness, not a peak of loudness. So the following are preferable : to reach a climax ; to rise in a crescendo. As for "a rising crescendo," crescendos rise by definition. So "crescendo" will suffice here without "rising."

crest *n.* ["top"] 1. to ride (on) the ~ of a wave (to ride the ~ of a wave of popularity) 2. at the ~ ["heraldic device"] 3. a family ~

crew *n.* ["group working together"] 1. a camera ; film ; ground ; gun ; road ; skeleton ; stage ; tank ; TV ; work ; wrecking ~ ["ship's personnel"] 2. a ship's ~ 3. a ~ mutinies 4. in a ~ ["rowing team"] (AE) 5. a varsity ~ 6. to go out for ~ [misc.] 7. a motley ~ ("a disparate group")

crib I *n.* (AE) 1. to assemble, put up a ~ 2. to dismantle a ~ (BE has *cot*)

crib II *v.* (colloq.) (D ; intr., tr.) ("to plagiarize") to ~ from

cricket I *n.* ["game"] 1. to play ~ 2. the game of ~ 3. (misc.) a ~ game, match ["fair play"] (colloq.) 4. ~ to + inf. (it's not ~ to cheat at cards)

cricket II *n.* ["insect"] ~s chirp

crier *n.* a town ~

crime *n.* 1. to commit, perpetrate a ~ 2. to combat ; deter ; eradicate, stamp out, wipe out ; prevent ~ 3. to prosecute ; solve a ~ 4. an atrocious, brutal, heinous, horrendous, horrible, infamous, outrageous, unspeakable, vicious, violent ~ 5. a copycat ~ ; (a) white-collar ~ 6. (an) economic ~ ; (a) hate ~ (esp. AE) ; a victimless ~ ; a war ~ (see also *war-crimes trial* at **trial**) 7. a daring ; major, serious ; minor, petty; perfect ~ 8. gun; inner-city; juvenile; knife ~; street ~ (does inner-city ~ often involve drugs?) 9. a ~ of passion 10. organized ~ 11. a ~ against (a ~ against humanity; ~s against the person; ~s against property) 12. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ to butcher French like that) 13. a ~ that + clause (it is a ~ that so many people go to bed hungry) 14. (misc.) to investigate a ~; to report a ~ (to the police); many ~s go unreported; it's a ~ how/the way he behaves! (see also *at the scene of the crime* at **scene** 9; *a crime wave* at **wave I**, 5)

criminal I *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to do that) 2. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that he is/should be allowed to remain in this country)

criminal II *n.* 1. to apprehend, arrest, catch a ~; to bring a ~ to justice; to punish a ~ 2. to pardon; parole; release a ~ 3. to rehabilitate a ~ 4. a born; common; dangerous; desperate; habitual, hardened, inveterate, vicious; infamous, notorious; master; petty; war ~ 5. a band, gang of ~s

crimp *n.* (colloq.) (AE) ["obstacle"] to put a ~ in

cringe *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at one's mistake) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ before (to ~ before one's superiors) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with embarrassment)

crisis *n.* 1. to cause, lead to, precipitate, provoke, stir up a ~ 2. to aggravate, worsen a ~ 3. to avert, forestall a ~ 4. to deal with, defuse, overcome, resolve, settle, tackle a ~; to face a ~; to ride out, weather a ~ 5. an acute, grave, serious; impending, looming; mounting ~ 6. a cabinet; constitutional; humanitarian; international; national ~ 7. an economic, financial, fiscal; energy; political ~ 8. a family; food; housing; identity; mid-life; personal ~ 9. a ~ arises; deepens, worsens; looms; eases 10. a ~ over (there was a ~ over the budget deficit) 11. a ~ in (the ~ in health care) 12. in a ~ (see also *a crisis of confidence* at **confidence** 22)

crisp *n.* burned to a ~

criterion *n.* 1. to adopt, establish, lay down; apply a ~ 2. to fulfill, meet, satisfy criteria 3. a reliable, valid ~ 4. a set of criteria 5. a ~ for; of (what are the criteria of effectiveness for a new drug to meet?) 6. according to, by a ~ (by which criteria should the effectiveness of a new drug be assessed?)

critic *n.* 1. a harsh, severe, unkind; impartial, unbiased; outspoken ~ (of) 2. an art; drama, theater; film; literary; music; social ~ 3. (misc.) an armchair ~; to be one's own worst/most severe ~

critical *adj.* ["criticizing"] 1. sharply, very ~ 2. ~ of (he was not ~ of my work) ["indispensable"] (AE) 3. ~ for, to (~ to our work) 4. ~ that + clause; subj. (it is ~ that the work ¬be/should be/(BE) is¬ completed on time)

criticism *n.* 1. to arouse, provoke, stir up ~ 2. to come in for; draw ~ 3. to express, offer ~; to level ~ at 4. to accept, take, tolerate ~ 5. to react to, respond to ~ 6. to deflect; reject ~ 7. to temper one's ~ 8. to subject smb./smt. to ~ 9. constructive; fair; mild; sober; valid ~ 10. nitpicking, petty; unfair ~ 11. adverse, barbed, biting, damaging, devastating, harsh, hostile, scathing, severe, sharp, strong, sweeping, swingeing (BE), telling, unsparing, withering; fresh, new ~ 12. literary; textual ~ 13. (the) higher; lower ~ (of the Bible) 14. a barrage, storm of ~ (by promising reform, the government tried to deflect a storm of fresh ~ of its policies) 15. (misc.) the barbs of ~; beneath ~

criticize *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly, harshly, severely, sharply, strongly; fairly; unfairly; widely 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ smb. as a sloppy worker) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. for sloppy work)

critique *n.* to give, present a ~ (of)

crop I *n.* ["produce grown by farmers"] 1. to grow; plant a ~ 2. to gather, harvest, reap a ~ 3. to bear, yield a ~ 4. to rotate ~s 5. to dust, spray ~s 6. a bountiful, bumper, fine, record ~ 7. a poor; subsistence ~ 8. a cash; fodder; staple ~ 9. a ~ fails ["stick"] 10. a riding ~

crop II *v.* (N; used with an adjective) they ~ped the grass short

cropper *n.* (colloq.) ["failure"] to come a ~ ("to fail")

croquet *n.* to play ~

croquettes *n.* chicken; salmon ~s

cross I *adj.* ["irritable"] ~ about, for; at, with (~ at smt.; are you still ~ with me about what happened?)

cross II *n.* ["symbol of the Christian religion"] 1. to die on the ~ (said of Jesus Christ) 2. to make the sign of the ~ 3. (misc.) to bear one's ~ ("to bear a heavy burden") ["the figure + or x"] 4. to make one's ~ (in place of a signature) ["mixture"] 5. a ~ between (a ~ between a peach and a plum)

cross III *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) ("to go") to ~ from; to (they ~ed from one bank of the river to the other; we ~ed the valley from one ridge to the other) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ off (to ~ a name off a list) 3. (D; tr.) ("to crossbreed") to ~ with (can you ~ a peach with/and a plum?)

cross-country *adv.* to go, travel ~

cross-examination *n.* 1. to conduct, do a ~ 2. to subject smb. to ~ 3. a rapid-fire ~ 4. during, under ~

cross-examine *v.* 1. to ~ sharply; unmercifully 2. (D; tr.) to ~ about, on

cross-fire *n.* 1. to be caught in a/the ~ 2. to subject to ~ 3. exposed to ~

crossing *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. a rough; smooth ~ 3. a border ~ 4. a grade (AE), level (BE); pedestrian, pelican (BE), zebra (BE); railroad (AE), railway (esp. BE) ~ 5. a transoceanic ~ 6. at a ~ (at the border ~) 7. on a ~ (hit by a car on a pedestrian ~)

cross over *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from; into, to (she ~ed over from one lane to the other –)

cross-purposes *n.* at ~ (to work at ~)

cross-refer *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ between; from; to

cross-reference *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. a ~ from; to

crossroads *n.* 1. come to, reach a ~ 2. a ~ in (Britain has reached a ~ in her history) 3. at a ~ (also fig.) (a book called *Britain at the Crossroads*)

crossword (BE) see **crossword puzzle**

crossword puzzle *n.* (esp. AE) to do, work (out) a ~

crow I *n.* 1. ~s caw 2. a flock of ~s 3. (misc.) as the ~ flies ("in a straight line"); (forced) to eat ~ (AE) ("(forced) into a humiliating position, (forced) to eat humble pie")

crow II *v.* (colloq.) ("to exult") (d; intr.) to ~ about, over (to ~ about one's success; to ~ over an enemy's misfortune)

crowd I *n.* ["throng"] 1. to attract, draw, (colloq.) pull; join; stand out from a ~ 2. to control; disperse a ~ (see also *crowd control* at **control**) 3. an angry, hostile, unfriendly; cheering, friendly; enormous, huge, tremendous; lonely; overflow ~ (*The Lonely Crowd* (1950), David Riesman et al.) 4. a ~ collects, gathers; disperses, melts away, thins out; roars 5. a ~ flocks, mills, swarms, throngs (around an entrance); ~s line the streets (~s milled around the entrance and lined the streets nearby) 6. among; in; through a ~ (just one more face in the ~) ["audience"] 7. a capacity ~ ["group"] 8. a bad; fast, wild ~; the wrong ~ (to run around with a fast ~; she got in with the wrong ~)

crowd II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ around (to ~ around the entrance) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into, to (to ~ into a small room) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ off, out of (they ~ed me off the road) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ through (they ~ed through the turnstiles) 5. (misc.) to ~ together

crowded *adj.* 1. densely ~ 2. ~ with (the streets were ~ with tourists)

crown I *n.* ["part of a tooth"] 1. to put a ~ on (a tooth) ["monarch's headdress; monarchy"] 2. to offer smb. the ~; succeed to the ~; wear a ~ ["boxing title"] 3. to lose; win the (heavyweight) ~

crown II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ with (their efforts were ~ed with success) 2. (N; used with a noun) they ~ed him king

crucial *adj.* 1. ~ for, to (these negotiations are ~ for/to the future of our firm) 2. ~ that + clause; subj. (it is ~ that this matter remain/should remain secret; BE also has *remains secret*)

crude *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to say that)

cruel *adj.* 1. ~ to, towards (~ to animals) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to say that)

cruelty *n.* 1. to display, show ~; to inflict ~ on 2. consummate, deliberate, wanton ~ 3. mental ~ 4. an act of ~ 5. ~ to, towards (~ to animals)

cruise I *n.* 1. to go on, set off on, take a ~ 2. an extended, long; pleasure; round-the-world, world; shakedown; short ~ 3. a ~ along; around (to take a ~ around the world) 4. a ~ from; to 5. a ~ through 6. on a ~

cruise II *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ along the coast; to ~ around the world; to ~ through the coastal waters

cruiser *n.* 1. a battle; cabin; converted; guided-missile; heavy; light; medium ~ 2. in; on a ~

crumble *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ into

crunch *n.* (colloq.) ["shortage"] 1. a credit; energy; financial ~ ["showdown"] (colloq.) 2. if/when it comes to the ~

crusade I *n.* 1. to conduct; launch a ~ 2. to embark on; engage in; go on; join a ~ 3. a one-man, one-woman ~ 4. a great; holy; moral ~ 5. a ~ against; for (a ~ against smoking) 6. on a ~ 7. a ~ to + inf. (they launched a ~ to ban smoking)

crusade II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ against; for (to ~ against smoking) 2. (E) they ~d to ban smoking USAGE NOTE: Because the medieval crusades were by Christians against Muslims, the word "crusade" is used sparingly nowadays.

crush I *n.* ["infatuation"] (colloq.) 1. a schoolboy; schoolgirl; youthful ~ 2. a ~ on (to develop/have a ~ on smb.)

crush II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against (the mob ~ed against the barriers 2. (D; tr.) to get ~ed between two slabs of concrete 3. (D; tr.) to ~ a substance into powder) 4. (misc.) to ~ smb. to death; to ~ smt. underfoot

crust *n.* ["impudence"] (colloq.) the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to ask for a raise!)

crutch *n.* 1. to walk on, with ~es 2. a pair of ~es

cry I *n.* 1. to give, raise (formal), utter a ~ 2. an anguished, plaintive; bloodcurdling; great; heart-rending; loud, lusty; piercing; rallying; shrill ~ 3. a battle, war ~ 4. a ~ goes up (a ~ went up from the crowd when their leader appeared); a ~ for (a ~ for help) 5. (misc.) a far ~ from ("very far from"); to have a good ~

cry II *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly; loudly 2. (D; intr.) ("to weep") to ~ at (they cried bitterly at the sad news) 3. (d; intr.) ("to appeal") to ~ for (to ~ for justice) 4. (d; intr.) ("to weep") to ~ for, with (to ~ for joy; to ~ with grief) 5. (d; intr.) ("to weep") to ~ over (to ~ over one's bad luck) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to complain to") (don't come ~ing to me) 7. (L; to) ("to shout") she cried loudly (to us) that the house was on fire 8. (misc.) to ~ wolf ("to give a false alarm"); to ~ one's eyes out; to ~ over spilled (AE)/spilt milk ("to complain in vain"); she cried herself to sleep; to ~ on smb.'s shoulder ("to seek sympathy from smb."); to raise a hue and ~

cry out *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to appeal") to ~ against; for (to ~ against injustice; to ~ for equal rights) 2. (D; intr.) ("to scream") to ~ in (to ~ in pain) 3. (d; intr., tr.) ("to shout") to ~ to (he cried out to us to stop) 4. (L; to) ("to shout") she cried out (to us) that the rain was coming through the roof

crystal *n.* 1. ~ glitters, sparkles 2. fine ~

crystallize *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ into (their ideas finally ~d into a feasible project)

cube *n.* a bouillon (AE), stock (BE); ice; sugar ~

cube root *n.* to calculate, find, extract the ~

cucumber *n.* 1. to peel; slice a ~ 2. (misc.) (as) cool as a ~

cud *n.* a cow chews its ~

cuddle up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ to (the twins ~d up to each other) 2. (misc.) to ~ together

cudgels *n.* ["support"] to take up the ~ for

cue *n.* ["signal"] 1. to give the ~ 2. to take one's ~ from smb. 3. to miss the ~ 4. a ~ to + inf. (the applause was my ~ to enter the room) 5. a ~ for (the applause was the ~ for me to enter the room) 6. on ~

cuff *n.* 1. a French; trouser (AE) ~ 2. (misc.) (esp. AE) on the ~ ("on credit")

cull *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

culminate *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ in; with (to ~ in victory; to ~ with an appeal for unity)

cult *n.* 1. to join a ~ 2. a cargo; fertility; religious ~ 3. a personality ~ = a ~ of personality (Khrushchev denounced the cult of ~ surrounding Stalin)

cultivation *n.* under ~

culture *n.* ["pattern of activities, values, and artifacts of a society"] 1. to develop a ~ 2. (an) ancient; counterculture; dependency; enterprise; ethnic; human; material; modern; pop; primitive; tribal; youth ~ (see also *culture shock* at **shock I**) 3. a ~ arises, develops; declines 4. in a ~ (different customs in tribal ~s and modern ~) ["enlightenment"] ["good taste"] 5. to bring ~ to 6. to disseminate, foster, spread ~ 7. high ~ ["vocational training"] (AE) 8. beauty ~ ["cultivation of living material in a media"] 9. to do, grow a ~ 10. a tissue ~

cunning I *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to do that)

cunning II *n.* 1. to show ~ 2. a certain low ~

cup *n.* ["prize"] 1. to lose; win a ~ 2. a challenge ~; the World Cup (the final round of the challenge ~) (see also *cup final* at **final**) ["small drinking vessel"] 3. to drain, empty one's ~ 4. a china; coffee; drinking; paper; plastic ~; teacup 5. a set of (matching) ~s 6. (misc.) to be in one's cups ("to be drunk")

cupboard *n.* 1. an airing (BE); built-in; kitchen ~ 2. (usu. fig.) a bare ~

cupid *n.* to play ~ (to)

curb *n.* ["restraint"] a ~ on

curd *n.* soybean (AE), soya bean (BE) ~

cure I *n.* 1. to bring about, effect, provide, work a ~ 2. a certain, known, sure; complete; magical; miraculous; spontaneous ~ 3. a rest; water ~ 4. a ~ for (there is no known ~ for this disease)

cure II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ of (to ~ smb. of a disease)

curfew *n.* 1. to clamp a ~ on; impose a ~ (they imposed a ~; the military government clamped a ~ on the town) 2. to lift a ~ 3. to observe a ~ 4. to violate a ~ 5. a midnight ~ 6. a ~ on 7. under (a) ~ (the town is no longer under ~)

curiosity *n.* 1. to arouse, excite, pique, whet (smb.'s) ~ 2. to satisfy one's ~ 3. (a) healthy; idle; insatiable, unquenchable; intellectual; morbid, unhealthy; natural ~ 4. ~ about 5. out of ~ (he did it out of ~)

curious *adj.* ["eager to know"] 1. ~ about (~ about smb.'s past) 2. ~ to + inf. (I would be ~ to know what really happened) ["odd"] 3. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that she didn't remember the incident)

curl *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ around (the roots ~ed around the water pipes; she ~ed her finger around the doorknob)

curls *n.* 1. natural; tight ~ 2. in ~ (she wears her hair in ~)

curl up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ in, into (to ~ into a ball) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (she ~ed up with a good book)

currency *n.* [–"money"] 1. to issue; print ~ 2. to call in, withdraw ~ 3. to devalue (a) ~ 4. (a) blocked; convertible, hard; foreign; local; non-convertible, soft, weak; stable, strong ~ 5. (misc.) they were paid in local ~ ["general use"] 6. to enjoy, have; gain ~ (to enjoy wide ~)

current *n.* ["flow of electricity"] 1. to switch on, turn on the ~ 2. to switch off, turn off the ~ 3. alternating; direct; electric; high-tension; low-tension; oscillating ~ ["flow"] 4. an air; underwater ~ 5. a powerful, strong; treacherous ~ 6. against; with the ~

curriculum *n.* 1. to draw up, design a ~ 2. a college, university; school ~ 3. a basic, core; national (BE) ~ 4. a ~ in (the ~ in engineering) 5. in, on the ~ (which subjects are in/on the ~?)

curry *n.* 1. (a) hot, mild ~ 2. (a) fish; meat; vegetable ~

curse I *n.* 1. to pronounce, put a ~ on, upon smb. 2. to utter a ~ 3. to lift a ~ 4. a bitter ~ 5. under a ~

curse II *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she ~d him for his clumsiness) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ with (he has been ~d with poor health)

cursor *n.* to move a ~ (on a computer)

curt *adj.* ~ with (the hotel clerk was ~ with the guests)

curtain *n.* 1. to draw; lower; raise a ~ 2. (in the theater) to ring down; ring up the ~ 3. a drop; shower; stage, theater ~ 4. a billowing; lace; net ~ 5. (fig.) a bamboo; iron ~ 6. (in the theater) the ~ goes up, rises; comes down, drops, falls (the ~ rises to reveal the two main characters) (see also **curtains**) USAGE NOTES: 1. Remember that to draw a curtain is either to open it or to close it! 2. What happened to the Iron Curtain in 1989–91? Some people say that it came down. But in 1946 Winston Churchill said "An iron curtain has descended across the continent": a curtain descends or comes down or falls to block or separate and rises or goes up to unblock or remove separation. So it's probably clearer to say simply that in 1989–91 the Iron Curtain ceased to exist.

curtain call *n.* to get, have; take a ~ (the actor had five curtain ~s!)

curtains *n.* ["drapes"] 1. to hang, put up ~ 2. to close, draw; draw, open the ~ 3. window ~ 4. a pair of ~ ["ruin"] (colloq.) 5. ~ for (it will be ~ for him if he loses his job)

curtsy, curtsey I *n.* 1. to bob, give, make a ~ 2. a deep ~

curtsy, curtsey II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the Queen)

curve I *n.* ["bend, esp. in a road"] 1. to make a ~ (the road makes a ~ to the right) 2. to take a ~ (in a car) 3. a hairpin, horseshoe; sharp ~ 4. a ~ in (there was a ~ in the road) ["distribution indicated by a line, used in mathematics and statistics"] 5. to plot a ~ ("to locate a curve by plotted points") 6. (teaching) to grade (AE), mark on a ~ 7. a bell, bell-shaped, normal distribution; learning ~ (this new job has been a very steep learning ~ for me) ["misc."] 8. (baseball and fig; AE) to throw smb. a ~ (= (cricket and fig.; BE) *to bowl smb. a googly*: now rare in fig. use)

curve II *v.* 1. to ~ gently; sharply 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the right) 3. (P; intr.) the missile ~d through the air

cuss *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (he ~ed at the other drivers)

custody *n.* ["guardianship"] 1. to award, grant ~ 2. to gain, get, receive, win; have; take ~ (of) 3. to lose ~ (of) 4. joint ~ ["arrest"] 5. to take smb. into ~ 6. remanded in ~ 7. police; protective ~ 8. in ~ ("under arrest") (held in ~)

custom *n.* 1. to establish a ~ 2. to cherish, observe, practice; preserve a ~ 3. to defy ~ 4. (a) local ~ 5. an ancient, old; barbaric; native; pagan; quaint; religious; social; time-honored, traditional; tribal ~ 6. a ~ dies out, disappears; lives on, survives 7. a ~ to + inf. (it is an old ~ for men to tip their hats when greeting smb.) 8. a ~ that + clause (it is an old ~ that men tip their hats when greeting smb.) 9. by ~ 10. (misc.) (BE) old Spanish ~s ("restrictive working practices")

customary *adj.* 1. ~ for 2. ~ to + inf. (is it still ~ for men to tip their hats when greeting smb.?)

customer *n.* 1. to attract ~s 2. to serve, wait on a ~ 3. an irate; prospective; regular, steady; satisfied ~ 4. a cash ~ 5. (misc.) an odd, tricky ("a strange person"); an ugly ~ ("a violent person") USAGE NOTE: Because passengers are increasingly being called customers, see also **passenger** for relevant phraseology.

customs *n.* 1. to clear, get through, go through, pass through ~ (we got through ~ very quickly) 2. to clear, get smt. through ~ (we got the toys through ~ without difficulty) 3. to declare smt. at ~ 4. to get stopped at ~

cut I *n.* ["wound made by smt. sharp"] 1. to bandage a ~ 2. a clean; deep; nasty; superficial ~ (superficial ~s and bruises that healed quickly) ["reduction"] 3. to make; take a ~ 4. a budget; pay; personnel, staff; spending; tax ~ (we had to take a pay ~) 5. a ~ in (we had to take a ~ in pay) ["haircut"] 6. a crew ~

cut II *v.* 1. ("to gash") to ~ deeply 2. ("to slice") to ~ easily (the meat ~s easily) 3. (C) ("to slice") ~ a piece of cake for me; or: ~ me a piece of cake 4. (d; intr.) ("to go") to ~ across (to ~ across a field) 5. (D; tr.) ("to reduce") to ~ by; from; to (they cut taxes by three percent from eight percent to five percent) 6. (D; tr.) ("to sever") to ~ from, off (to ~ a branch from a tree; he was cut from the team (AE); she cut a thin slice from the loaf; ~ the crust off the bread) 7. (d; intr.) ("to slice") to ~ into (she cut into the cake) 8. (D; tr.) ("to slice") to ~ into (he cut the meat into small pieces) 9. (D; intr.) ("to break into, interrupt") to ~ into (to ~ into a conversation; work ~s into my leisure time) 10. (D; refl.) ("to gash") to ~ on (she cut herself on a knife) 11. (D; tr.) ("to remove") to ~ out of (she was cut out of the will) 12. (d; intr.) ("to go") to ~ through (they cut through the woods; let's ~ through this building) 13. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ meat with a knife) 14. (N; used with an adjective) ("to trim") she cut her hair short; she cut the bread thin; to ~ smt. open 15. (misc.) to ~ smb. short ("to interrupt smb."); to ~ smb. to the quick ("to insult smb. deeply"); to ~ smt. to pieces; to ~ smt. in half; to ~ and paste

cut ahead, cut in front *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ of ("to cut off") (the other runner cut ahead of her; they cut in front of us)

cut away *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

cutback *n.* a ~ in (a ~ in production)

cut back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on smoking)

cut down *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on smoking) 2. (misc.) to ~ smb. down to size ("to deflate smb.'s ego")

cut in *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ on (he cut in on me when I was dancing) 2. (slang) (D; tr.) to ~ on (he cut me in on the deal)

cutlet *n.* a lamb (BE); mutton (BE); veal; vegetarian ~ (a breaded veal ~ or Wiener schnitzel)

cut off *v.* 1. (C) ("to slice") he cut off a slice for me; or: he cut me off a slice 2. (D; tr.) ("to separate") to ~ from (we were cut off from civilization)

cut out I *adj.* ["suited"] 1. ~ for (she wasn't ~ for this job) 2. ~ to + inf. (she wasn't ~ to do this job; she wasn't ~ to be an administrator)

cut out II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from, of (to ~ an article out from the newspaper) 2. (G) she had to ~ driving after dark

cutter *n.* 1. a cookie (AE); paper ~ 2. (a pair of) wire ~s

cutting *n.* a newspaper; press ~ (from) (BE; AE has *press clipping*)

cutting edge *n.* ["leading edge"] at the ~ (of)

cut up *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smt. up into pieces) 2. (misc.) (BE) to ~ rough ("to cause trouble")

cyberspace *n.* 1. in ~ 2. welcome to ~!

cycle *n.* ["repeating pattern"] 1. to complete a (full) ~ 2. to go through, pass through a ~ 3. a boom-and-bust, boom-bust, business; economic; estrous (AE), oestrous (BE); life; menstrual; vicious ~ 4. (as on a washing machine) a delicate; normal; permanent-press; spin ~ 5. in a ~, in ~s (some epidemics occur in ~s) ["bicycle"] (see **bicycle**)

cyclone *n.* 1. a severe, violent; tropical ~ 2. a ~ comes up; hits, strikes; rages (the ~ struck several cities) 3. a ~ blows itself out, blows over, dies down, subsides 4. (in) the eye of a ~

cynical *adj.* ~ about (~ about smb.'s motives)
cynicism *n.* 1. bitter ~ 2. with ~ (she received his promises with a certain degree of ~)
cypher (esp. BE) see **cipher**
cyst *n.* to remove a ~
czar *n.* (colloq.) (AE) ["a person with great power"] a drug; financial; gambling; shipbuilding ~ (BE spelling is *tsar*; for this meaning BE has *supremo*)

D

dab *v.* 1. (d ; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at one's eyes with a handkerchief) 2. (d ; tr.) to ~ on (she dabbed some lotion on her face)

dabble *v.* (d ; intr.) to ~ at, in, with (to ~ in politics ; to ~ at painting)

dagger *n.* 1. to draw, unsheathe ; sheathe a ~ 2. to plunge a ~ into (smb.), to stab (smb.) with a ~ 3. (misc.) to look ~s at ("to look angrily at")

dais *n.* 1. to get up on, mount the ~ 2. to stand on the ~ 3. from ; on the ~

daisy *n.* 1. to pick ~sies 2. (misc.) as fresh as a ~

dally *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) ("to be slow") to ~ over (to ~ over one's work) 2. (d ; intr.) ("to play") to ~ with (to ~ with the idea of studying abroad)

dam *n.* 1. to build, construct, erect a ~ 2. a hydroelectric ; storage ~ 3. a ~ bursts 4. a ~ across (to build a ~ across a river)

damage I *n.* ["harm"] 1. to cause, do ~ to ; to inflict ~ on 2. to suffer, sustain ~ 3. to repair, undo ~ 4. to assess the ~ (trying to assess (the extent of) the ~) 5. grave, great, extensive, heavy, incalculable, irreparable, serious, severe ; lasting, permanent ; widespread ~ 6. light, slight ~ 7. environmental ; fire ; flood ; material ; property ; structural ~ 8. brain ~ (irreversible brain ~) 9. ~ from (~ from the fire) 10. ~ to (was there much ~ to the car ? the ~ done to the house was extensive ; to do grave ~ to smb.'s reputation) (see USAGE NOTE at **damage II**)

damage II *v.* 1. to ~ badly, irreparably, severely 2. easily ~d USAGE NOTE : Typically, inanimate objects (such as cars, houses) or abstractions (such as reputations, credibility) are damaged whereas animate objects (such as people, animals, body parts) are injured (in the accident my car was damaged and I was injured ; the accident damaged my reputation as a good driver ; his head injury resulted in brain damage). In the last example, the head is regarded as a body part but the brain is used to mean the mind, an abstraction.

damages *n.* ["compensation"] 1. to award ~ (the court awarded ~) 2. to claim ; sue for ~ 3. to pay ; receive, recover ~ 4. compensatory ; exemplary, punitive ; nominal ~ 5. ~ for 6. in ~ (to award one thousand dollars in ~ for injuries sustained in the accident)

damn I *n.* (colloq.) ["small amount"] it isn't worth a ~ ; not to give a (tinker's) ~ (CE ; BE also has *tinker's curse* or *tinker's cuss*) ; (I don't give a ~ for their opinions ! ; "Frankly, my dear, I don't give a ~." – Clark Gable as Rhett Butler, *Gone with the Wind* (1939))

damn II *v.* (D ; tr.) to ~ for (they were ~ed for their sins)

damnation *n.* eternal ~ (to suffer eternal ~ to hell for one's sins)

damnedest, damndest *n.* (colloq.) ["utmost"] to do, try one's ~ (to do smt.)

damper *n.* ["deadening influence"] to put a ~ on

dance I *n.* 1. to do, perform a ~ (with) 2. to have a ~ with (may I have the next ~ ?) 3. to sit out a ~ 4. to give, hold a ~ (they held a dinner ~) 5. (the) classical ~ ; modern ~ 6. a barn ; dinner ; formal ; school ~ 7. a circle, round ; country ; folk ; line ; square ; sword ; tap ; tribal ; war ~ 8. to go to a ~ 9. at a ~ (they met at a ~) 10. (misc.) (BE) to lead smb. a merry ~ (AE has *to lead smb. a merry chase*)

dance II *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the music of a rock group) 2. (D ; intr.) to ~ with 3. (D ; intr.) to ~ through (they were ~cing through the park) 4. (P ; tr.) he ~d her around the room 5. (misc.) to ~ for, with joy ; to ~ to smb.'s tune ("to conform to smb.'s wishes") ; to go ~ing (see also *to dance attendance on* at **attendance**)

dancer *n.* a ballet ; ballroom ; belly ; exotic ; folk ; lap ; pole ; tap ; taxi ~

dancing *n.* aerobic ; ballet ; ballroom, social ; belly ; break ; circle, round ; country ; folk ; line ; square ; tap ~

dander *n.* ["temper"] (colloq.) (esp. AE) to get one's / smb.'s ~ up

dandruff *n.* a flake of ~ (there were a few ~s of dandruff on his collar)

danger *n.* 1. to constitute, pose, represent ; create (a) ~ 2. to expose to ~ 3. to confront ; court ; face ; sense (a) ~ 4. to flirt with ~ 5. to avert (a) ~ 6. (an) acute, deadly, extreme, grave, mortal ; immediate, imminent, impending ; real ~ (a situation fraught with real ~ to us all) 7. (legal) a clear and present ~ 8. a ~ from ; of ; to (~ from wild animals ; a ~ to national security ; there was a real ~ of fire breaking out) 9. a ~ that + clause (there was a real ~ that a fire might break out) 10. in ~ (of) (our lives were in ~ ; the building is in imminent ~ of collapsing / collapse) 11. out of ~ (the patient is now out of ~)

dangerous *adj.* 1. extremely ~ 2. ~ for 3. ~ to (it's ~ to your health) 4. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ for children to play in the street) 5. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that so many children play in the street) (see also *armed and dangerous* at **armed**)

dangle *v.* 1. (d ; intr.) to ~ from (his keys ~d from a chain) 2. (d ; tr.) to ~ before, in front of (to ~ bait in front of smb.)

dare I *n.* 1. to take a ~ 2. on a ~ (she did it on a ~)

dare II *v.* 1. (E) I don't ~ to protest ; she didn't ~ to open her mouth 2. (F) I ~ not protest (formal) ; I don't ~ protest ; she didn't ~ open her mouth ; how ~ you speak to me like that ? 3. (H) he ~d me to sue him 4. (misc.) she was so shy she hardly dared (to) open her mouth ! USAGE NOTE : Some purists believe that *I don't dare protest* is an incorrect blend of *I don't dare to protest* and *I dare not protest*.

daring *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ (for them) to attempt the climb at night)

dark I *adj.* 1. pitch ("completely"); very ~ 2. to get, grow ~ 3. (misc.) as ~ as night

dark II *n.* ["darkness"] 1. after; before ~ 2. in the ~ (to grope for the door in the ~) 3. (misc.) the child is afraid of the ~ ["ignorance"] 4. to keep smb. in the ~

darkness *n.* 1. complete, pitch, total ~ 2. ~ falls; gathers; lifts 3. in (the) ~ (see also *under cover of darkness* at **cover I**)

darn *n.* (colloq.) ["small amount"] not to give a ~ (I don't give a ~!)

dart I *n.* ["pointed object"] 1. to throw a ~ (at) 2. a poisoned ~ ["rush"] 3. to make a ~ (for) (she made a sudden ~ for the door)

dart II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ at (to ~ a glance at smb.) 2. (P; intr.) she suddenly ~ed for the door; the hare ~ed along the edge of the clearing

darts *n.* to play ~ USAGE NOTE: A singular verb is used with this noun – *darts is a popular game*.

dash I *n.* ["rush"] 1. to make a ~ for (we made a ~ for cover) 2. a frantic, mad ~ 3. in a ~ (I'm in a ~ to catch the next train)

dash II *v.* 1. (P; intr., tr.) when the rain started, we ~ed for cover 2. (misc.) (informal) sorry, must ~: I'm late for an appointment

data *n.* 1. to access; feed in, input, key in; process; retrieve; store ~ 2. to analyze, evaluate; cite; collect, gather; transfer ~ 3. to plot ~ (on a map or graph) 4. biographical; census; scientific; statistical ~ 5. comparative; concrete; raw; solid ~ USAGE NOTE: Purists insist on *these data are available* and consider *this data is available* to be incorrect.

database *n.* 1. to access; compile, create a ~ 2. to link ~s 3. a central; incomplete; online ~ 4. a ~ contains, holds 5. a ~ of (a ~ of useful information) 6. in, on a ~ (how much information is held on this ~?)

date I *n.* ["time"] 1. to announce; fix, set a ~ (to set a ~ for a wedding = to set a wedding ~) 2. to bring (smb.) up to ~ 3. to bear a ~ (the letter bears no ~) 4. a significant ~ (in history) 5. a closing; cutoff; due; expiration, expiry (BE); opening; sell-by; target ~ 6. at a certain ~ (the meeting will be held at a later ~; at a/some future ~) 7. on a certain ~ (on this ~ in history) 8. to ~ (how many have returned their invitations to ~?) ["rendezvous, meeting"] 9. to have; make a ~ (I made a ~ to see them) 10. to go out on a ~ 11. to break; keep a ~ 12. a blind; double ~ 13. a ~ with (a ~ with a girl; a ~ with destiny) ["misc."] 14. out of ~; to go out of ~; up to ~; to be up to ~ on an issue; to bring smb. up to ~ on smt.; to bring a dictionary up to ~ so as to make it an up-to-date dictionary

date II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ from (the temple ~s from the tenth century)

date back *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (the temple ~s back to the tenth century)

dateline *n.* the international ~ (to cross the international ~)

dating *n.* carbon ~

daub *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ on, onto (to ~ paint on a wall) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ a wall with paint)

daughter *n.* 1. to adopt a ~ 2. to marry off a ~ 3. an older; only; younger ~ 4. an adopted; foster ~; stepdaughter 5. a daughter-in-law 6. a ~ to (she was like a ~ to them)

dauntless *adj.* ~ in (~ in one's resolve)

dawdle *v.* (D; intr.) ("to waste time") to ~ over

dawn I *n.* 1. (formal) ~ breaks 2. at (the crack of); before ~ 3. (misc.) a false ~ (the temporary improvement was a false ~ and we ended up disappointed); from ~ till/to dusk (see also *dawn chorus* at **chorus**)

dawn II *v.* 1. (s) the day ~ed cloudy 2. (misc.) it ~ed on me that the following day would be her birthday; it finally ~ed on us what must be done

day *n.* 1. to spend a ~ (somewhere) 2. a bright, sunny; chilly, cool; clear, fine, nice; cloudy; cold; dreary, gloomy; foggy; hot, stifling; rainy; warm; an eventful, field, memorable, red-letter ~ (we had a field ~ with/criticizing their report) 3. the appointed ~; election (AE), polling (BE); a bad, bad-hair (colloq.); dark; fast; good; holy; opening; visiting; wedding; working ~ (opening ~ of the baseball season) 4. ~ breaks, dawns 5. by ~ (London by ~) 6. by the ~ (to be paid by the ~) 7. during the ~ (the store was open during the ~) 8. for a ~ (we are going to town for the ~) 9. from ~ to ~ (from one ~ to the next) 10. in a ~ (we cannot do the whole job in a ~; back in the old ~s) 11. on a certain ~ (on the following ~; on New Year's Day; on Friday; on our wedding ~) 12. within several ~s (within ten ~s) 13. (misc.) ~ after ~; ~ and night ("all the time"); by ~; all ~ (long); D-day, Day One ("a day on which a significant event is scheduled to begin or take place"); to spend the whole ~ working; to take a ~ off; ~ in, ~ out; to carry, save, win the ~ ("to be victorious"); (just/only) the other ~ ("recently"); his ~s are numbered ("he will die soon"); the dog ~s ("the hot days of July and August"); halcyon ~s; the good old ~s; it was a big ("successful"; "important") ~ for our team; to take one ~ at a time; judgment ~; on the ~ (BE; colloq.) ("when the time comes"); on the ~ of (on the ~ of the concert); it's early ~s yet (BE) ("it is too soon to tell what will develop") 14. (misc.) at the end of the ~ ("when all is said and done"); in this ~ and age ("nowadays"); happy ~s; things were very different in my ~/in my young ~s from how they are these ~s!; as plain as ~ (see also *the day of reckoning* at **reckoning**) USAGE NOTE: The collocation *by day* contrasts with *by night*: London by day is very different from London by night. (See also the Usage Note for **night**.)

daybreak *n.* at ~

daydream I *n.* a ~ about, of

daydream II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about 2. (L) she was always ~ing that she would get rich

daylight *n.* 1. in broad ~ 2. before ~

daylights *n.* (colloq.) ["insides"] 1. to beat, knock the (living) ~ out of smb. ["wits"] 2. to scare the (living) ~ out of smb.

daytime *n.* in the ~

daze *n.* in a ~ (he's always in a ~)

dazed *adj.* ~ at, by (~ at the sight of the carnage)

dead I *adj.* ["not alive"] 1. to drop ~ (of a heart attack) 2. brain; clinically; as ~ as a doornail, stone ~ 3. ~ on arrival (also (DOA)) 4. (fig.) ~ and buried (our hopes are now ~ and buried); ~ and gone (our hopes are now ~ and gone) 5. (misc.) ~ or alive (a dangerous criminal wanted ~ or alive); more ~ than alive (she was shivering and seemed more ~ than alive); to not be seen dead in (I wouldn't be seen ~ in such cheap clothes!) (see also *given up for dead* at **give up**; *left for dead* at **leave**; *play dead* at **play**) ["unresponsive"] 6. (cannot stand alone) ~ to (sound asleep and ~ to the world) 7. (misc.) to go ~ (the telephone suddenly went ~; after the injury my arm went ~ and I couldn't move it)

dead II *n.* ["dead people"] 1. to bury the ~ 2. to honor the ~ 3. the war ~ (the war ~ were honored with a monument) 4. the living and the ~ (see also *the quick and the dead* at **quick II**, *rise from the dead* at **rise II**)

dead III *n.* (see *in the dead of (the) night* at **night II**; *in the dead of winter* at **winter II**)

dead end *n.* to arrive at, come to, reach a ~

deadline *n.* 1. to establish, set a ~ 2. to meet a ~ 3. to extend a ~ 4. to miss a ~ 5. to work against/to (BE) a ~ 6. a ~ approaches; passes 7. a tight ~ 8. a ~ for (the ~ for this job is tomorrow)

deadlock *n.* 1. to end in (a) ~, reach a ~ 2. to break, end a ~ 3. a continuing ~ 4. a ~ between; in; over (we tried to break the continuing ~ in the negotiations between them over pay)

deadlocked *adj.* ~ over

deadwood *n.* (also fig.) 1. to cut away, cut out the ~ 2. to get rid of, remove the ~

deaf *adj.* ["unable to hear"] 1. to become, go ~ 2. partially, slightly; profoundly, stone, very ~ 3. (misc.) (as) ~ as a post; ~ in one ear; the ~ and the hard of hearing ["insensitive"] 4. (cannot stand alone) ~ to (they were ~ to all our pleas = our pleas fell on ~ ears)

deafness *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. congenital ~ 3. partial; profound ~ 4. (misc.) ~ in one ear

deal I *n.* ["transaction"] 1. to close, wrap up (colloq.); to cut (colloq.), do (BE), make (AE), strike a ~ with (we closed the ~ with them yesterday) 2. to accept; offer; reject a ~ 3. a business; done; shady ~ ["treatment"] 4. a fair, square; raw (colloq.), rotten (colloq.), rough (colloq.) ~ (she got a raw ~ from her boss) 5. a ~ goes ahead; falls through 6. a ~ on (I can get you a good ~ on insurance) ["arrangement"] 7. a package ~ ["amount"] 8. a good, great ~ (of) we had a great ~ to talk about; we have a good ~ of work to do; a very great ~ of money [misc.] 9. (colloq.) a big ~ ("an impressive matter"); it means a good/great/very great ~ to her ("it is very important to her"); it's no big ~ ("it's not so important")

deal II *v.* 1. (A) he dealt a deathblow to the enemy; or: he dealt the enemy a deathblow (formal); she dealt the cards to the other players; or: she dealt the other players their cards 2. (d; intr.) to ~ in (they ~ in furs) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ with (we ~ with many customers; we ~ directly with the wholesalers and bypass the middlemen; to ~ with complaints; I'll ~ with the children later; this chapter ~s with the problem of inflation; they dealt with me as an equal)

dealer *n.* 1. an antique(s); art; book; car; drug; junk ~ 2. a reputable ~ 3. a ~ in (a ~ in rare books)

dealership *n.* an automobile (AE), car ~

dealing *n.* insider ~

dealings *n.* ["business"] 1. business; straight; underhanded ~ 2. ~ with (I have had ~ with them)

deal out *v.* (B) she dealt out the cards to the other players

dear *adj.* ["emotionally important"] 1. (cannot stand alone) ~ to (this project is ~ to my heart) 2. (misc.) to hold (smb.) ~

death *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. to face ~; to meet one's ~ 3. to feign ~ 4. to cheat, escape ~ 5. to mourn smb.'s ~ 6. to announce; register smb.'s ~ 7. (an) accidental; agonizing; certain, sure; heroic; instant, instantaneous; lingering; living; natural; painful; sudden, unexpected; tragic; untimely; violent; wrongful ~ (to die a natural ~; to meet a violent ~) 8. brain ~ 9. (a) cot (BE), crib (AE) ~ 10. ~ by (~ by drowning; fire; firing squad; hanging; lethal injection) 11. at, upon smb.'s ~ (at her ~ the estate was broken up) 12. to ~ (beaten; bludgeoned; burnt; choked; frozen; put; shot; stabbed; starved; stoned; trampled to ~) 13. (fig.) bored; frightened; sick to ~ 14. (misc.) a fight to the ~; a ~ in the family; (sports) sudden ~ ("an overtime period that ends when the first point or goal is scored"); ~ to tyrants!; in ~ as in life; "till ~ us do part" – from the marriage service in *The (Anglican) Book of Common Prayer* (1662) (see also *life after death* at **life**)

deathbed *n.* on one's ~

deathblow *n.* 1. (formal) to deal a ~ (he dealt a ~ to the enemy; or: he dealt the enemy a ~) 2. a ~ to (the government's decision has proved/dealt a ~ to heavy industry in this country)

death penalty *n.* 1. to impose; introduce the ~ 2. to abolish the ~

deathwatch *n.* to maintain a ~

debar *v.* (formal) (d; tr.) to ~ from (he was ~red from practice)

debatable *adj.* ~ whether + clause (it is ~ whether smoking should be officially banned)

debate I *n.* 1. to chair, moderate; close; conduct, have, hold; open a ~ 2. to encourage; provoke, spark (AE)/spark off (BE); stifle, suppress (a) ~

3. an acrimonious, bitter, heated, sharp, stormy ~ 4. a lively, spirited ~ 5. a campaign; national; parliamentary; public ~ 6. (a) formal ~ (informal ~) 7. a ~ about, on, over; between; with 8. in, during a ~; under ~ (the matter is still under ~) 9. (misc.) a matter for ~

debate II *v.* 1. to ~ heatedly, hotly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about, on (to ~ about disarmament) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with 4. (G) (esp. BE) Parliament ~d disarming 5. (Q) we ~d (with ourselves) how to do it

debit I *n.* (BE) direct ~ (to pay by direct ~)

debit II *v.* ("to charge") 1. (D; tr.) to ~ against, to (to ~ a purchase against smb.'s account; to ~ an amount to smb.'s account) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (~ her account with the entire amount)

debit card *n.* 1. to accept; issue a ~ 2. a ~ expires (your ~ is no longer valid: it expired last week) 3. by ~ (can I pay by ~?) 4. (misc.) to put a purchase on one's/smb.'s ~

debris *n.* to clear ~

debt *n.* 1. to contract, incur, run up; owe a ~; to get into, go into ~ 2. to collect, recover a ~ 3. to discharge, pay (off), settle; wipe out; work off; write off a ~ 4. to cancel; repudiate a ~ 5. a bad; outstanding, unsettled; toxic, unrecoverable ~; mounting ~s (to write off a bad ~) 6. a business; foreign; gambling; personal, private ~ 7. the national ~ 8. in ~ for; to (he is in ~ to me for a large sum, he is deeply in ~ to me; I'm in ~ to my colleagues for their excellent advice) 9. out of ~ (to stay out of ~) 10. (misc.) a ~ of honor; a ~ of gratitude; deep(ly) in ~ (I owe a ~ of gratitude to my colleagues for their excellent advice)

debut *n.* 1. to make one's ~ (to make one's ~ in society) 2. a professional; stage ~ 3. a ~ as (to make one's ~ as an actor)

decadence *n.* 1. to fall into ~ 2. moral ~

decant *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to pour") to ~ from; into, to 2. (fig.) (BE) the staff were ~ed from the old building to the new one

decay *n.* 1. to fall into; prevent; stop ~ 2. dental, tooth ~ 3. radioactive ~ 4. environmental; inner-city, urban ~ 5. moral ~

decease *n.* (formal and legal) upon smb.'s ~

deceit *n.* 1. to practice ~ 2. to expose, see through ~ 3. a web of ~ 4. by, through ~ (to obtain smt. by ~)

deceitful *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to say such things behind her back)

deceive *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ about (she ~d them about her intentions) 2. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into doing smt.)

decency *n.* 1. common; human ~ 2. the ~ to + inf. (he didn't even have the ~ to call) 3. (misc.) to observe the ~cies; a spark of ~

decent *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to help us)

deception *n.* 1. to practice ~ 2. to see through (a) ~ 3. (a) cruel; deliberate ~ 4. by, through ~ (to obtain smt. by ~)

decide *v.* 1. to ~ unanimously 2. (d; intr.) ("to make a decision") to ~ against (to ~ against buying a car) 3. (legal) (d; intr.) to ~ against; for, in favor of ("to find for") (the jury ~d for the plaintiff) 4. (D; intr.) ("to choose") to ~ between (it was difficult to ~ between the two of them) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to choose in favor of") (we have ~d on a new computer) 6. (E) ("to choose") we ~d to stay home 7. (H) (BE) what finally ~d you to stay home? 8. (L) ("to make a decision") she ~d that the children would stay home 9. (Q) ("to make a decision") we could not ~ whether to go out or stay home 10. (misc.) to ~ for oneself (I can't advise you: you'll have to ~ for yourself)

decision *n.* ["act of deciding"] 1. to arrive at, come to, make, reach, take (BE) a ~ 2. (esp. legal) to affirm, uphold; appeal (AE), appeal against; hand down (AE), render a ~ 3. (esp. legal) to overrule, reverse a ~ 4. to defer; reconsider a ~ 5. a big, momentous; crucial; fateful; landmark (esp. legal); weighty ~ 6. a clear-cut; ethical; fair; favorable; good, sensible, wise; popular; just ~ 7. a collective, joint; unanimous ~ 8. a final; firm; irreversible, irrevocable ~ 9. an agonizing, difficult; arbitrary; hasty, rash, snap ~ 10. a bad, poor, unwise; unfair, unjust; unfavorable; unpopular ~ 11. a court; majority; split ("divided") ~ 12. a ~ about, on 13. a ~ to + inf. (the government made the ~ to cut taxes) 14. the ~ that + clause (the government made the ~ that it would cut taxes) 15. (misc.) early ~ (AE; used in the process of admitting students to universities) ["decisiveness"]["firmness"] 16. to lack ~ 17. of ~ (a man, woman of ~)

deck *n.* ["pack of playing cards"] (AE) 1. to cut; shuffle a ~ 2. to stack a ~ ("to arrange cards dishonestly") (also fig.) ["floor as on a ship"] 3. to swab a ~ 4. an aft, after; flight; lower; main; poop; promenade ~; sundeck; upper ~ 5. below; on ~ (she was on the lower ~; I went up on ~; is standing allowed on the upper ~ of the bus?) 6. (misc.) (usu. fig.) clear the ~s for action! ["device for tape recordings"] 7. a tape ~

deck out *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ in (~ed out in their Sunday best)

declaration *n.* 1. to issue, make a ~ 2. a solemn; unilateral; written ~ 3. a currency; customs ~ 4. a ~ of (a ~ of war; the court's ~ of the law to be unconstitutional) 5. a ~ that + clause (the court's ~ that the law was unconstitutional)

declare *v.* 1. (B) he ~d his love to her 2. (D; tr.) to ~ against, on (to ~ war on another country) 3. (L; to) the court ~d that the law was unconstitutional 4. (M) the court ~d the law to be unconstitutional 5. (N; used with a noun, adjective, past participle) the court ~d the law unconstitutional; the government ~d him persona non grata

declension *n.* an adjective; noun; strong; weak ~

decline I *n.* 1. to go into, sink into, suffer a ~ 2. a gradual, slow; quick, sharp; steady; steep ~ 3. a ~

from; in; to (a ~ in profits of 10%, from $100,000 to $90,000) 4. in (a) ~ (profits are in ~) 5. into (a) ~ (profits fell/went into ~) 6. on the ~ (profits are on the ~) 7. (misc.) *The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire* (1776–88) – Edward Gibbon

decline II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ by (profits have ~d by 10%) 2. (grammar) to ~ for (to ~ a noun for case) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ by; from; to (profits have ~d by 10%, from $100,000 to $90,000) 4. (E) she ~d to address the delegates

decorate *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to give a medal to") to ~ for (to ~ a soldier for valor) 2. (D; tr.) ("to adorn") to ~ with (to ~ a room with flowers) 3. (D; tr.) ("to paint or paper") (BE) (the room was tastefully ~d in green) 4. (misc.) tastefully ~d

decoration *n.* ["medal"] 1. to award a ~ 2. (AE) to write smb. up for a ~ 3. a ~ for (the soldier was awarded a ~ for valor)

decorations *n.* ["ornaments"] 1. to put up ~ 2. Christmas ~ 3. elaborate; festive; party ~

decorator *n.* 1. an interior ~ 2. (misc.) (BE) a painter and ~

decorum *n.* 1. to display ~ 2. proper; strict ~ 3. (misc.) to behave with ~

decouple *v.* (D; tr.) ("to separate") to ~ from (should the government ~ its tax policy from its inflation policy?)

decoy *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (they ~ed us into a corner)

decrease I *n.* 1. a considerable, dramatic, large, sharp, significant, sizable, substantial; gradual; moderate; slight, small; steady ~ 2. a ~ in (a ~ in profits of 10%, from $100,000 to $90,000) 3. on the ~ (profits are on the ~)

decrease II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ by (profits ~d by 10 %) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; to (profits ~d from $100,000 to $90,000) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ in (the guards were ~d in number)

decree I *n.* 1. to issue a ~ 2. to rescind, revoke a ~ 3. a consent (legal); divorce; executive; government; royal ~ 4. (GB) a ~ absolute; a ~ nisi 5. a ~ on 6. a ~ that + clause; subj. (we had to obey the ~ that beards be/should be shaved off) 7. by ~ (by royal ~) 8. in a ~ (what was in the royal ~ on beards?)

decree II *v.* (formal) 1. (L; may be subj.) the king ~d that beards be/should be shaved off; the government ~d that it was illegal to traffic in furs 2. (N) the court ~d the law unconstitutional

decry *v.* (formal) 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ drunkenness as sinful) 2. (G) to ~ drinking (as sinful) 3. (K) to ~ their drinking (as sinful)

dedicate *v.* 1. (B) the book was ~d to her husband 2. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ to (she ~d her life to science; they ~d themselves to helping the poor)

dedication *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 2. complete, great, total ~ 3. ~ to (~ to the cause of freedom; the book's ~ to the author's husband) 4. ~ to + inf. (they had the ~ to continue their research in spite of the obstacles)

deduce *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from (what can we ~ from these figures?) 2. (L) on the basis of the evidence we ~d that he was guilty; if all men are mortal and Socrates is a man, then I ~ that Socrates is mortal 3. (Q) the police were able to ~ where the fugitive was hiding

deduct *v.* 1. (D; tr.) (BE) to ~ at source (tax ~ed at source) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ a tax from one's wages)

deductible *adj.* 1. tax-~ 2. ~ from

deduction *n.* ["subtracting"]["deducting"] 1. to make a ~ (from) 2. to make; take a ~ for (income-tax purposes) 3. a ~ for; from (our employer makes a ~ from our salary for the income tax) ["conclusion"] 4. to make a ~ 5. an illogical; logical ~ 6. a ~ about 7. the ~ that + clause (the evidence confirmed our ~ that he was guilty; if all men are mortal and Socrates is a man, then I can make the ~ that Socrates is mortal)

deed I *n.* ["something done"] 1. to do, perform a ~ 2. a dirty (colloq.); evil, foul, wicked ~ 3. in word and ~ ["legal instrument of transfer"] 4. to transfer a ~ 5. a title ~ 6. a ~ to (to hold a ~ to property) 7. by ~ (to transfer property by ~)

deed II *v.* (AE) (B) ("to transfer") he ~ed the property to his daughter

deem *v.* (formal) 1. (M) we ~ed her to be worthy of support 2. (N; used with an adjective, noun) we ~ her worthy of support 3. (misc.) we ~ed it proper that she be/should be supported

deep *adj.* 1. ~ in (~ in thought; ~ in the forest) 2. (misc.) the well was forty feet ~; ~ down she is a good person; I was knee-~ in mud ("I was in mud up to my knees")

deep water *n.* ["trouble"] (colloq.) in ~

deer *n.* 1. a herd of ~ 2. a young ~ is a fawn 3. a female ~ is a doe 4. a male ~ is a buck, stag 5. the meat of a ~ is venison

default I *n.* 1. a ~ on (a ~ on one's mortgage payments) 2. by ~ (to win by ~) 3. in ~ of (anything better) ("in the absence of (anything better)")

default II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on one's mortgage payments)

defeat I *n.* 1. to inflict (formal) a ~ on 2. to meet, suffer (a) ~ (at smb.'s hands) 3. to go down in, to ~ 4. to invite ~ 5. to accept, admit, concede ~ 6. a crushing, decisive, disastrous, humiliating, lopsided (AE), overwhelming, resounding, total, utter; ignominious, shameful ~ 7. in ~ (they were resourceful in ~) 8. (misc.) to stare ~ in the face (the former champion is now staring ~ in the face)

defeat II *v.* 1. to ~ decisively, roundly, resoundingly, soundly 2. to ~ narrowly 3. (D; tr.) to ~ by (they were ~ed by three goals to one)

defect I *n.* 1. to correct a ~ 2. a glaring ~ 3. a minor ~ 4. a birth, congenital; character; hearing; mechanical; mental; physical; speech; structural ~ 5. a ~ in (there was a ~ in the transmission)

defect II *v.* ("to desert") 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from the party) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the West)

defection *n.* 1. a ~ from (a ~ from the party) 2. a ~ to (a ~ to the West)

defective *adj.* ~ in

defence (BE) see **defense**

defenceless (BE) see **defenseless**

defend *v.* 1. to ~ staunchly, strongly, vigorously; successfully 2. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ against, from (she ~ed herself against the attack) 3. (G) we cannot ~ drinking on the job 4. (K) I cannot ~ his drinking on the job

defendant *n.* to acquit, find for; arraign; charge; convict a ~

defender *n.* 1. a public ~ (US) ("a lawyer who represents poor people at public expense") 2. a staunch ~ (of smt.)

defense, defence *n.* 1. to conduct, organize, put up a ~ 2. to breach, overwhelm smb.'s ~s 3. an adequate; airtight, impenetrable; heroic; inadequate, weak; strong, vigorous; stubborn ~ 4. civil; national ~ 5. military ~s 6. (sports) a one-on-one; zone ~ 7. a legal ~ 8. a ~ against 9. a ~ that + clause (her ~ that she was provoked was not accepted) 10. in ~ of 11. (misc.) (sports) in (BE), on (AE) ~; (legal) the ~ rests its case, the ~ rests (AE); to spring to smb.'s ~ (see also *defense mechanism* at **mechanism**)

defenseless, defenceless *adj.* ~ against (~ against any attack)

defense pact, defence pact *n.* a mutual ~

defensive I *adj.* ~ about (they were very ~ about their party's record on tax reform)

defensive II *n.* on the ~ (to put smb. on the ~)

defer *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ in; to (he ~red to his partner in everything) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (the trial was ~red for another month) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ pending (the trial was ~red pending the arrival of the new evidence) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ until (the trial was ~red until the prisoner's recovery) 5. (formal) (G) we ~red going 6. (formal) (K) we ~red our going

deference *n.* 1. to accord, show ~ to 2. blind; due; great ~ (with due ~) 3. in, out of ~ to 4. with all ~ to (with all ~ to you, I think you are wrong)

deferential *adj.* ["respectful"] ~ to

defiance *n.* ["resistance"] 1. to show ~ 2. to glare in ~ 3. ~ against, towards (~ towards all authority) 4. in ~ of (to act in ~ of one's parents) 5. an act of ~

defiant *adj.* ~ towards

deficiency *n.* ["defect"] ["inadequacy"] 1. a hearing; hormone; iron; mental; mineral; vitamin ~ 2. a major, serious; minor, slight ~ (he suffers from/has a slight vitamin ~ that he hopes to remedy by taking supplements) 3. (a) ~ in ["incomplete work"] (as in school) (AE) 4. to make up a ~

deficient *adj.* ~ in

deficit *n.* 1. to run, show a ~ 2. to make up; reduce a ~ 3. a budget; operating; trade ~ 4. a ~ in

define *v.* 1. to ~ clearly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (we can ~ *burnout* as *exhaustion*)

defined *adj.* ["outlined, delineated"] 1. clearly, sharply ~; well-defined 2. ~ against (sharply ~ against a light background)

definite *adj.* 1. ~ about (she was ~ about it) 2. ~ that + clause (is it ~ that they will sign the contract?)

definition *n.* 1. to formulate, give, provide, write a ~ 2. a dictionary; formulaic; referential; synonym ~ 3. a clear ~ 4. according to a ~ (according to your ~ of guilt, we are all guilty!) 5. by ~ (isn't murder illegal by ~?)

deflect *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; into; onto

defraud *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ of (he ~ed them of their money)

deft *adj.* ~ at (she is ~ at dealing with administrators)

defy *v.* 1. to ~ openly 2. (H; passive is rare) she ~fied them to prove her guilty

degenerate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from; into (the discussion quickly ~d from a debate into an argument)

degradation *n.* in ~ (to live in ~)

degrading *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was very ~ to work in such conditions)

degree *n.* ["academic title"] 1. to award a ~ to; to confer a ~ on 2. to do (BE), earn, get, receive, take a ~ 3. an academic; college (AE), university ~ 4. an advanced, graduate, postgraduate (esp. BE); first (BE), undergraduate ~ 5. an earned ("completed and awarded") (AE); honorary ~ 6. an associate; bachelor's; doctoral, doctor's; honours (BE); master's ~ 7. (BE) a good ~ ("a first or upper second at a British university") 8. a ~ from; in (to take a ~ in history; she got her ~ from Cambridge) ["extent"] ["level"] 9. to achieve a ~ (to achieve a high ~ of proficiency) 10. a great, high, large; greater, higher; lesser, lower; low, slight; certain ~ 11. to a ~ (to a greater or lesser ~; to a high ~) ["form of an adjective or adverb"] 12. the comparative; positive; superlative ~ ["of temperature"] 13. to fall to, get as low as; get as high as, reach, soar to a ~ (in the winter the temperature can fall to minus 20 ~s and in the summer it can soar to more than 30 ~s (centigrade)) 14. ~s of frost (BE) (see also *degrees of frost* at **frost**) 15. at ~s (at sea level, water freezes at 0 ~s centigrade and boils at 100 ~s centigrade) ["misc."] 16. by ~s ("gradually"); (BE; colloq.) to a ~ ("to a very high degree"); to the nth ~ (carried to the nth ~); with a certain/considerable ~ of (he strove to become famous, with a certain/considerable ~ of success)

deign *v.* (formal or humorous) (E) she ~ed to mingle with her employees

dejected *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (he was ~ to learn that he had failed the examination)

dekko *n.* (slang) (BE) ["look"] to have a ~ at

delay I *n.* 1. to brook no ~ 2. an agonizing; interminable, long; unavoidable; unexpected, unforeseen ~; minor ~s 3. a ~ occurs 4. a series of ~s (a series of minor ~s of up to 5 minutes) 5. a ~ in (she apologized for the ~ in answering) 6. without ~ (to want a job finished without ~)

delay II *v.* 1. (G) he ~ed calling the police 2. (K) he ~ed my calling the police

delaying action *n.* to fight a ~

delegate I *n.* 1. a party; pledged; super-delegate (US), unpledged ~ 2. a ~ at large 3. a ~ attends (a convention or party congress) 4. a ~ from; to (a ~ from the south to the convention)

delegate II *v.* 1. (B) he ~d his responsibilities to a deputy 2. (H) she was ~d to represent us

delegation *n.* 1. to head a ~ 2. an official; unofficial ~ 3. a member of a ~ 4. a ~ from; to 5. in a ~

delete *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ smt. from a dossier)

deleterious *adj.* ~ to

deletion *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. a ~ from (she made a ~ from the text)

deliberate I *adj.* ~ in (~ in one's speech)

deliberate II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, on, over (we ~d about where to meet) 2. (rare) (Q) we ~d where to meet

deliberations *n.* ~ about (our ~ about where to meet)

delicacy *n.* 1. extreme, great ~ 2. a matter of extreme ~

delicatessen *n.* 1. a kosher ~ 2. at; in a ~ (to eat in a kosher ~; to buy something at a kosher ~)

delight I *n.* 1. to feel ~; to take ~ in (they took ~ in watching the children play) 2. great, intense, sheer; perverse ~ 3. ~ at (my ~ at hearing such lovely songs) 4. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ to hear such lovely songs = such lovely songs were a ~ to hear) 5. ~ that + clause (they expressed their ~ that they had been invited) 6. to smb.'s ~ (to my great ~, I was invited) 7. with ~ (they accepted our invitation with great ~)

delight II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in the beauties of nature) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ by; with (they ~ed the children with their funny stories = they ~ed the children by telling them funny stories) 3. (R) it ~ed me (to learn) that you can attend

delighted *adj.* 1. ~ at, by, with 2. ~ to + inf. (we'll be ~ to come) 3. ~ that + clause (I'm ~ that you can attend)

delightful *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to swim in the heated pool)

delinquency *n.* 1. juvenile ~ 2. (AE) ~ in

delinquent I *adj.* (AE) ~ in (~ in paying one's rent)

delinquent II *n.* a juvenile; tax (AE) ~

delirious *adj.* ~ with

delirium *n.* in a ~ (of)

deliver *v.* 1. (B) they ~ed the merchandise to us 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from; into (they ~ed us into enemy hands; "lead us not into temptation, but ~ us from evil" – "The Lord's Prayer", *The Bible: St. Matthew*) 3. (pompous) (D; refl.) to ~ of (to ~ oneself of an opinion) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ to (they ~ed the circular to each house; the limousine ~s you to your door) 5. (misc.) to ~ on a promise (esp. AE); to ~ by hand; she was ~ed of a baby girl (formal) ("she gave birth to a baby girl")

deliverance *n.* (formal) ~ from (~ from captivity)

delivery *n.* ["act of delivering"] ["bringing"] 1. to make a ~ (to) 2. to accept, take ~ (of) 3. an emergency ~; (an) overnight; prompt ~ (we guarantee prompt ~) 4. general (AE) ~ (BE has *poste restante*); mail (esp. AE), postal (AE); recorded (BE); rural-free (AE); special ~ 5. a ~ to 6. on ~ (payment on ~) 7. (misc.) door-to-door ~ (they offer door-to-door ~) ["childbirth"] 8. a breech; caesarean; normal ~ ["manner of speaking or throwing"] 9. an effective ~

delude *v.* 1. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ into (don't ~ yourself into thinking that she loves you) 2. (L; refl.) don't ~ yourself that she loves you

deluge *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ with (we were ~d with offers)

delusion *n.* 1. to cherish, cling to a ~ 2. a ~ that + clause (he was under the ~ that she loved him) 3. under a ~ (to labor under a ~) (see also *delusions of grandeur* at **grandeur**)

delve *v.* 1. to ~ deeply 2. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for information) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into the background of a case)

demand I *n.* ["urgent request"] 1. to make a ~; to state one's ~s 2. to meet, respond to, satisfy a ~; to give in to, yield to a ~ 3. to ignore; reject a ~ 4. to drop, give up a ~ 5. an excessive, exorbitant, unrealistic; final; moderate, modest, reasonable; non-negotiable ~ 6. union; wage ~s 7. a ~ for; from; on (a ~ from the victims for compensation; to make ~s on smb.'s time) 8. a ~ that + clause; subj. (they rejected our demand that no one be/should be punished) 9. at, on ~ (payment on ~) ["desire for a commodity"] 10. to create a ~ 11. to meet, satisfy a ~ 12. (a) brisk, enormous, great, heavy, strong; growing, increased, increasing; inelastic ~ 13. (a) limited, little ~ 14. consumer; popular; public ~ 15. ~ drops off, falls off; increases, rises 16. a ~ for (there is a brisk ~ for home computers) 17. by ~ (by popular ~) 18. in ~ (small cars are in great ~) ["misc."] 19. the law of supply and ~

demand II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from, of (to ~ an apology from smb.) 2. (E) she ~s to be kept informed of everything 3. (L; subj.) she ~s that she be/should be kept informed of everything

demanding *adj.* 1. emotionally; physically; technically; very ~ (to play a technically very ~ sonata) 2. ~ of (she is very ~ of her employees)

demarcation *n.* a ~ between (lines of ~ between the two zones)

démarche *n.* 1. to make, present a ~ to 2. a diplomatic ~

demean I *v.* (formal) (D; refl.) ("to degrade") to ~ by (I will not ~ myself by cheating on the examination)

demean II *v.* (formal) (d; refl.) ("to behave") (he ~ed himself like a gentleman)

demeaning *adj.* 1. ~ to (is charity ~ to its recipients ?) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to be kept waiting so long)

demeanor, demeanour *n.* a cheerful, friendly; unfriendly ~

demerit *n.* a ~ for (to get/receive a ~ for being late)

demise *n.* 1. ["death"] on, upon smb.'s ~ 2. (fig.) what has led to the virtual ~ of gloves for women in the west ?

demobilization *n.* on, upon ~

democracy *n.* 1. a constitutional; multi-party; parliamentary; representative ~ 2. in a ~ (in a ~ the people vote for their leaders)

Democrat *n.* (US) a registered ~

demon *n.* to exorcise a ~

demonstrable *adj.* clearly ~

demonstrate *v.* 1. to ~ convincingly 2. (B) ("to explain by showing") they ~d the new computer to us 3. (D; intr.) ("to protest by marching") to ~ against (the students ~d against the government) 4. (D; intr.) ("to display support by marching") to ~ for, in favor of (to ~ for lower taxes) 5. (L; to) ("to prove by showing") we ~d (to them) that a new computer would save considerable time 6. (Q; to) ("to explain by showing") she ~d (to him) how the computer works

demonstration *n.* ["explanation"] 1. to attend; give, put on a ~ 2. a practical ~ ["protest"] 3. to go on, join, take part in; mount, organize, stage a ~ 4. to ban; break up, quell; call off a ~ 5. an antinuclear; antiwar, peace; civil-rights; political ~ 6. a disorderly, violent; non-violent, orderly, peaceful ~ 7. a mass; organized; spontaneous; staged ~ 8. a public; student ~ 9. a ~ calls for, demands; takes place 10. a ~ against (we met at/on a student ~ against the wars) ["expression of support"] 11. to mount, organize, stage a ~ 12. a ~ for, in favor of, in support of 13. (misc.) they marched as/in a ~ of support

demote *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (she was ~d from major to captain)

demur I *n.* (formal) without ~ (they accepted the proposal without ~)

demur II *v.* (formal) (D; intr.) ("to object") to ~ at, to (AE) (to ~ at a proposal)

den *n.* 1. a lion's ~ 2. a gambling; opium ~; a ~ of iniquity; a ~ of thieves

denial *n.* ["refusal, rejection"] 1. to issue a ~ 2. a categorical, emphatic; flat; outright; strenuous, strong, vehement; unqualified ~ 3. a ~ that + clause (they issued a ~ that their firm had been involved) ["a psychological process"] 4. in (a state of) ~ (about) (she was in ~ about the abuse she had suffered as a child)

denomination *n.* ["group"] 1. a religious ~ (to belong to a religious ~) ["unit of money"] 2. large; small ~s (the store did not accept currency in large ~s)

denominator *n.* 1. to find the least (math.)/lowest (math. or fig.) common ~ 2. a common ~

denounce *v.* 1. to ~ angrily, bitterly; openly, publicly; roundly, strongly 2. (B) to ~ smb. to the police 3. (D; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ smb. as a drunkard) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. for drinking too much) 5. (G) she ~d drinking in the strongest possible terms 6. (K) she ~d his drinking

density *n.* 1. population; traffic ~ 2. high; low ~

dent *n.* 1. to make, put a ~ in (he made a ~ in the door; to make a ~ in the backlog of work) 2. to hammer out, remove, straighten out a ~

denture *n.* 1. to put in; remove, take out; wear a ~ 2. a lower; partial; upper ~ 3. complete, full ~s 4. a set of ~s

denude *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ of (the hillside was ~d of trees)

denunciation *n.* 1. to issue, make a ~ 2. an angry, bitter, scathing, strong, vehement; sweeping ~ 3. (misc.) her ~ of him to the police as a drunkard/for being a drunkard

deny *v.* 1. to ~ angrily; categorically, emphatically, fervently, flatly, hotly, strenuously, strongly, vehemently 2. (A; typically used without *to*) he ~ies himself nothing; they were ~ied admittance; to ~ smb. bail; Everton's defence ~ied Liverpool the winning goal; he ~ies nothing to his family; or: he ~ies his family nothing 3. (G) she ~ied knowing anything 4. (L; to) she ~ied that she had been there; there's no ~ing that she must have been there; you can't ~ you were there, so don't even try to ! 5. (rare) (M) he ~ied it to be the case

deodorant *n.* 1. to apply, put on (a) ~ 2. to use (a) ~ 3. (a) cream; roll-on; spray; stick; underarm ~

depart *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for London) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from (our train is due to ~ in five minutes from platform (BE)/track (AE) seven)

department *n.* ["division of a school, of a university"] 1. to chair (esp. AE), head (esp. BE), run a ~ 2. a strong; weak ~ 3. an accounting; anthropology; astronomy; biology; chemistry; classics; economics; English; French; geology; German; history; Italian; linguistics; mathematics; music; nursing; philosophy; physics; political science; psychology; Slavic, Slavonic; sociology; Spanish ~ 4. the chair (esp. AE), head (esp. BE) of a ~; a member of a ~ USAGE NOTE: You can say both "the English Department" and "the Department of English." ["division of a company or government"] 5. an accounting; finance; fire (AE) (BE has *fire brigade*); health; housing; human-resources, personnel; police; recreation; sanitation; service ~ ["division of a hospital"] 6. an A & E, Accident and Emergency (BE), casualty (BE), emergency (AE) ~ (the victim was taken to the emergency ~ but had to wait to be seen in the ~) ["area, category"] 7. in a certain ~ (he's a bit lacking in the common-sense ~ ("he lacks common sense")) ["smb.'s area of concern or responsibility"] 8. smb.'s ~ (cooking is not my ~: I leave it to the wife)

departure *n.* 1. to be, constitute, mark, represent a ~

from (this marks a ~ from established procedures) 2. a new; sudden ~ 3. a ~ for 4. a ~ from; to 5. (misc.) a point of ~

depend *v.* 1. to ~ crucially, entirely, heavily, solely; partly; to some extent; in the last analysis, ultimately (on) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (she ~s on her parents; the future ~s on what we decide now) 3. (misc.) she ~s on her parents for support = she ~s on her parents to support her; you can ~ on her to do the exact opposite of what you think she will!

dependence *n.* 1. alcohol; drug; physical; psychological ~ 2. ~ on, upon (his ~ on alcohol; her ~ on her parents for support = her ~ on her parents to support her)

dependency *n.* 1. a colonial ~ 2. alcohol; drug ~

dependent *adj.* 1. crucially, entirely, heavily, solely; partly; to some extent; in the last analysis, ultimately ~ 2. for; on, upon (she is ~ on her parents for support = she is ~ on her parents to support her)

depict *v.* 1. (B) they ~ed the situation to us vividly and in great detail 2. (d; tr.) to ~ as (he was ~ed as a traitor) 3. (J) the artist ~ed him strolling through a garden

deplete *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ of

deplorable *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to live in such conditions = it was ~ living in such conditions) 2. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that some people live/should live in such conditions)

deplore *v.* 1. to ~ deeply, strongly, thoroughly 2. (G) we ~ taking drugs 3. (K) we ~ their taking drugs

deploy *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (troops were being ~ed from Europe to Asia)

deployment *n.* 1. large-scale ~ (the large-scale ~ of troops) 2. ~ from; to

deport I *v.* (formal) ("to behave") 1. (d; refl.) to ~ like (he ~ed himself like a gentleman) 2. (P; refl.) to ~ oneself well

deport II *v.* (D; tr.) ("to send out of the country") to ~ from; to

deportation *n.* 1. (a) mass ~ 2. ~ from; to

depose *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

deposit I *n.* ["money put into a bank account"] 1. to make a ~ 2. a demand; direct; minimum; time ~ 3. on ~ (the money was on ~ in a bank) ["down payment; security payment"] 4. to give, leave a ~; to put a ~ down on 5. to recover, get back one's ~ 6. to forfeit, lose one's ~ 7. a non-refundable; refundable ~

deposit II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ money in a bank) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (she ~ed the funds with her lawyer)

deposition *n.* (legal) 1. (of a witness) to make a ~ 2. (of a lawyer) to defend; notice; take a ~ 3. a sworn ~ 4. a ~ that (he made a ~ that he had witnessed the accident)

deposits *n.* 1. rich ~ 2. coal; mineral; oil; ore ~ (rich ~ of ore)

depot *n.* an ammunition; arms; bus; freight (AE), goods (BE); fuel; supply ~

depreciate *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ by (to ~ by ten percent) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in value)

depress *v.* (R) it ~ed everyone (to realize) that no progress was made during the negotiations

depressed *adj.* 1. clinically; deeply, very ~ 2. ~ about, at, over; by (~ at the bad news) 3. ~ to + inf. (everyone was ~ to realize that no progress was made during the negotiations) 4. ~ that + clause (everyone was ~ that no progress was made during the negotiations)

depressing *adj.* 1. deeply, profoundly, very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to realize that no progress was made during the negotiations) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that no progress was made during the negotiations)

depression *n.* ["low economic activity"] 1. to cause; come out of a ~; go into a ~ 2. a major, severe; minor ~ 3. an economic ~ (the country has gone into a major economic ~) 4. (misc.) the Great Depression (of the 1930s) ["dejection"] 5. to cause, lead to; treat ~ 6. to get over; succumb to; suffer from ~ 7. (an) acute; chronic; clinical; deep, severe, total; manic; postnatal, postpartum ~ (he was in a state of total ~) 8. ~ deepens, worsens; lifts 9. an attack, bout, episode; period of ~ (the loss of his job led to the onset of a period of severe ~) 10. in; with ~ (hospitalized with ~)

depressor *n.* a tongue ~

deprivation *n.* to suffer ~

deprive *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ of (to ~ smb. of everything)

depth *n.* ["distance from top to bottom"] ["distance from front to back"] 1. in ~ (the river is thirty feet in ~) ["place at the bottom of a body of water"] 2. at; to a ~ (the water froze to a ~ of two feet; there was ice even at a ~ of two feet!) 3. to reach; sink to a ~ (the divers reached great ~s) ["capability"] 4. beyond, out of one's ~ ["worst part"] 5. in the ~s (in the ~s of the Depression) ["misc."] 6. in ~ ("thoroughly") (to analyze smt. in ~ is to make an in-depth analysis of it); to plumb the ~s of smt. ("to get to the root of smt."); in the ~s of despair; to lack ~ ("to be superficial")

depth charge *n.* to drop a ~

depute *v.* (formal) (esp. BE) 1. (B) ("to assign") (he ~d the bookkeeping to me while he was away) 2. (H) ("to appoint as deputy, to delegate") he ~d me to do the bookkeeping while he was away

deputize *v.* 1. (esp. AE) (D; tr.) ("to appoint") to ~ as (he ~d me as his assistant) 2. (esp. BE) (D; intr.) to ~ for ("to replace") (to ~ for smb. as secretary) 3. (AE) (H) ("to appoint as deputy") he ~d me to do the bookkeeping while he was away

deputy *n.* 1. to swear in a ~ 2. to act as (a) ~ 3. a special ~ 4. a ~ for

deranged *adj.* mentally ~

derelict *adj.* ~ in (~ in one's duty)

derision *n.* 1. to arouse, provoke ~ 2. an object of ~ 3. ~ for (to show one's ~ for smb. or smt. ridiculous) 4. (misc.) hoots of ~

derivation *n.* of a certain ~ (words of Latin ~)

derive *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to come") to ~ from (many words ~ from Latin) 2. (D; tr.) ("to trace") to ~ from (to ~ a word from a Latin root) 3. (D; tr.) ("to receive") to ~ from (to ~ pleasure from music)

derogation *n.* ["permission to bypass typically an EU regulation"] (legal) (BE; AE has *variance*) 1. to grant a ~ 2. to apply for a ~

derogatory *adj.* ~ of, to, towards

descend *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ from; to ("to come down from") (do you know from whom you are ~ed?; to ~ from the heights to the depths) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ into ("to go into") (to ~ into a cave) 3. (d; intr.) ("to swoop down") to ~ on, upon (the tourists ~ed on the resort) 4. (d; intr.) ("to stoop") to ~ to (to ~ to a life of petty crime)

descendant *n.* a direct, lineal ~

descended *adj.* (cannot stand alone) 1. directly ~ 2. ~ from (~ from a royal family)

descent *n.* ["origin"] 1. to trace smb.'s/one's ~ 2. direct ~ 3. ~ from 4. of a certain ~ (of mixed ~) ["decline"] 5. a gradual, steep ~ ["visit, influx"] 6. a ~ on, upon (a sudden ~ of tourists on a resort) ["coming down"] 7. to make a ~ from; into; to (to make a ~ into a cave; to make a ~ from the heights to the depths)

describe *v.* 1. to ~ graphically; minutely; vividly; in detail 2. (B) she ~d the scene to us 3. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ as (he was ~d as (being) very cruel) 4. (G) she ~d living under the occupation 5. (K) she ~d in detail their living under the occupation 6. (Q; to) she ~d (to us) how they lived under the occupation 7. (misc.) words cannot ~ how awful it was to live under the occupation!

description *n.* 1. to give, provide a ~ 2. to answer to a, fit a ~ (he answers to the ~ of the escaped convict) 3. to beggar, defy ~ 4. an accurate, correct, exact; clear, graphic; matter-of-fact, objective ~ 5. a glowing; lively, picturesque, vivid ~ 6. a blow-by-blow; detailed, full, lengthy, thorough; firsthand ~ 7. a brief, short; superficial ~ 8. a job ~ 9. of a certain ~ (a person of that ~ was seen here yesterday) 10. (misc.) beyond ~

desensitize *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smb. to suffering)

desert I *n.* 1. to cross, traverse; reclaim a ~ 2. a trackless ~ 3. (fig.) a cultural; intellectual ~ 4. across, through; in a ~

desert II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ the stage for Hollywood) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from (he ~ed from his regiment) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the enemy)

desertion *n.* a ~ from (~s from the army have increased)

deserts *n.* ["reward"] ["punishment"] to get one's just ~

deserve *v.* 1. to ~ richly 2. (E) she ~d to win; she ~d to be honored (for her work) 3. (G) she ~d being honored (for her work), she ~d honoring (for her work) 4. (misc.) to ~ better (of); to ~ ill of; to ~ well of; I hardly ~ all this bad luck: what have I done to ~ it?; richly ~d, well ~d (she got a well-deserved award for her work)

deserving *adj.* 1. richly ~ 2. ~ of (~ of help)

design I *n.* ["plan"] 1. a creative ~ 2. software ~ 3. intelligent ~ (to defend intelligent ~ against natural selection) 4. a ~ for (a ~ for a new library) 5. in; to ~ (clothes that are simple but elegant in (their) ~; a house built to a ~ by Frank Lloyd Wright) ["intention"] 6. by ~ (did it happen by accident or (by) ~?) (see also **designs**)

design II *v.* 1. (C) he ~ed a beautiful house for us; or: he ~ed us a beautiful house 2. (d; tr.) to ~ as 3. (d; tr.) to ~ for (~ed for recreational purposes)

designate I *adj.* (placed after a noun) a minister ~ (the minister ~ met the president elect)

designate II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (the state was ~d as a disaster area) 2. (H) we ~d him to serve as our delegate 3. (N; used with a noun) the state was ~d a disaster area

designation *n.* a ~ as

designed *adj.* (cannot stand alone) 1. ~ for (~ for operation at high altitudes) 2. ~ to + inf. (the machine was ~ to operate at high altitudes)

designer *n.* an aircraft; dress; fashion; graphic; interior; software ~

designs *n.* ["evil intentions"] 1. to have, harbor ~ against, on, upon (to have ~ on smb.'s money) 2. sinister ~

desirable *adj.* 1. highly, very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ (for you) to be there by two o'clock) 3. ~ that + clause; subj. (it is ~ that you ¬be/should be/(BE) are¬ there by two o'clock)

desire I *n.* 1. to arouse, create, whet (a) ~ 2. to evince, express, voice a ~ 3. to feel, have a ~ 4. to satisfy a ~ 5. to repress, stifle, suppress a ~ 6. (an) ardent, blind, burning, deep, earnest, fervent, insatiable, intense, keen, overwhelming, passionate, strong; sincere; unfulfilled ~ 7. animal; sexual ~s 8. a ~ for 9. a ~ to + inf. (a ~ to excel; her ~ for the estate to be divided equally) 10. a ~ that + clause; subj. (it was her ~ that the estate be/should be/was divided evenly)

desire II *v.* 1. to deeply, fervently, strongly ~ 2. (E) she ~s to remain neutral in the dispute 3. (formal) (H) she ~d the estate to be divided equally 4. (formal) (L; subj.) she ~d that the estate be/should be/(BE) was divided equally

desirous *adj.* (formal) (cannot stand alone) 1. very ~ 2. ~ of (~ of fame) 3. ~ that; subj. (she was ~ that the estate be/should be/(BE) was divided equally)

desist *v.* 1. (formal) (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from further litigation) 2. (misc.) (esp. legal) to cease and ~

desk *n.* ["counter"] 1. (in a hotel) a front (AE), reception (BE) ~ 2. at the ~ (I'll meet you at the front ~) ["department"] 3. an information ~ 4. (at a newspaper) a city; copy ~ ["table for writing"] 5. to clear; leave one's ~ 6. a cluttered ~ 7. a rolltop;

writing ~ 8. at, behind; in; on a ~ (she was at her ~ at nine, sat behind/at it all day, read the papers on it, found some pens in it, and left it at five) USAGE NOTE: In AE *city desk* means "local news desk" (i.e., news about the city in which a newspaper is published); in BE it means "financial news desk" (perhaps by reference to the City of London, traditionally London's financial district).

desolation *n.* complete, utter ~ (in a state of complete and utter ~)

despair I *n.* 1. to overcome ~ 2. bitter, black, deep, sheer, total, utter ~ 3. the depths of ~ 4. in ~ (in utter ~) 5. out of ~ (to do smt. out of ~) 6. (misc.) to drive smb. to ~ (his untidiness is driving me to ~!)

despair II *v.* 1. to ~ deeply 2. (D; intr.) to ~ of (to ~ of success; he's so untidy sometimes I really ~ of him!)

despatch (BE) see **dispatch I, II**

desperate *adj.* 1. ~ for (~ for help) 2. ~ to + inf. (~ to get help)

desperation *n.* 1. an act of ~ 2. in ~ 3. out of ~ (to do smt. out of sheer ~)

despicable *adj.* 1. utterly ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it was utterly ~ of him to desert his family!) 3. ~ that + clause (it was utterly ~ that he deserted/should have deserted his family!)

despise *v.* 1. to ~ utterly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (I ~d him for his cowardice) 3. (K) I ~ his refusing to accept responsibility 4. (misc.) I hate him, I loathe him, I ~ him!

despoil *v.* (formal) (D; tr.) to ~ of

despondent *adj.* 1. ~ about, over (I grew very despondent about her abandonment of me) 2. ~ to + inf. (I was despondent to hear that she had abandoned me) 3. ~ that + clause (I was despondent that she had abandoned me)

despot *n.* an absolute; benevolent; enlightened ~

destination *n.* 1. to arrive at, reach one's ~ 2. smb.'s final, ultimate ~

destine *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ for (fate ~d her for greatness) 2. (H) fate ~d her to go far in life

destined *adj.* (cannot stand alone) 1. ~ for (the shipment is ~ for New York; she was ~ for greatness) 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ by fate to go far in life)

destiny *n.* 1. to achieve, fulfill one's ~ 2. to decide, shape smb.'s ~ 3. (historical) Manifest Destiny 4. ~ to + inf. (it was her ~ to go far in life) 5. ~ that + clause (it was her ~ that she would go far in life)

destitute *adj.* ~ of (~ of feeling)

destitution *n.* in ~ (to die in ~)

destroyer *n.* a tank ~

destruction *n.* 1. to carry out ~ (with a human subject: the soldiers carried out the total ~ of the village) 2. to cause ~ (with any subject: the flood caused great ~) 3. complete, mass, total, utter; wanton; widespread ~ (weapons of mass ~ = WMDs) 4. (misc.) the soldiers left a trail of wanton ~ behind them

destructive *adj.* ~ of

detach *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (the officer was ~ed temporarily from her unit)

detail I *n.* ["small part"] ["minute treatment"] 1. to bring up, cite; disclose; fill in; furnish, give; go into (the) ~s 2. to go into ~ (you don't need to go into great ~) 3. to work out (the) ~s 4. an essential, important; mere, minor; technical ~ (can you fill in the technical ~s?) 5. (a) gory, graphic, grisly, gruesome, harrowing, lurid, revolting, sordid, unsavory; great, meticulous, microscopic, minute; petty; precise ~ (they went into lurid ~; they brought up petty ~s; the newspapers reported the gruesome ~s; he described the event in graphic ~; only the police knew the sordid ~s of the crime) 6. a wealth of ~ 7. (a) ~ about (the book gives a wealth of ~ about the campaign; they discussed the important ~s about the campaign) 8. for ~s; in ~ (turn to page 26 for further ~s; to treat a topic in minute ~) 9. (misc.) spare me the ~s! (see also **spare** 2); contact ~s (give us your contact ~s if you want to be on our mailing list) ["detachment"] (usu. mil.) 10. to form a ~ 11. a fatigue, work ~

detail II *v.* ("to assign") 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ a unit for fatigue duty) 2. (H) they ~ed the unit to do fatigue duty

detain *v.* 1. to ~ forcibly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (he was ~ed for questioning) 3. (misc.) the precise details needn't ~ us further

detained *adj.* unavoidably ~

detection *n.* 1. to avoid, escape ~ 2. early ~ (can early ~ of a disease increase its cure rate?)

detective *n.* 1. an amateur; house (obsol.); private ~ 2. a ~ investigates (the ~s assigned to the case are investigating it)

detector *n.* a lie; metal; mine; smoke ~

detention *n.* in ~ (he was kept in ~ for two hours)

deter *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

detergent *n.* (a) biodegradable; laundry; liquid; synthetic ~

deterioration *n.* 1. continuing; marked; steady ~ 2. a ~ in (I noted a ~ in her condition)

determination *n.* ["decisiveness"] 1. to show ~ 2. dogged, fierce, firm, great, grim, iron, sheer, strong, unflinching, unyielding ~ ["firm intention"] 3. to express one's ~ 4. to shake smb.'s ~ 5. ~ to + inf. (she expressed her strong ~ to succeed) 6. with ~ (she struggled to succeed with great ~) ["judicial decision"] 7. to come to a ~ (of a case) 8. the final ~ (of a case)

determine *v.* 1. (E) she ~d to succeed (more usu. is: she is ~d to succeed) 2. (L) the police ~d that no crime had been committed 3. (Q) we must ~ where the conference will take place

determined *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to succeed) 3. ~ that + clause (she is ~d that she will succeed)

deterrent *n.* 1. an effective, powerful ~ 2. a nuclear ~; the ultimate ~ 3. a ~ against, to 4. as a ~ (is it true that weapons of mass destruction serve as a ~ to war?)

detest *v.* 1. to ~ cordially 2. (G) he ~s working 3. (K) we ~ his constantly lying

detestable *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to speak like that; it was ~ of them to do that) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that they did/should have done that!)

detour *n.* 1. to set up a ~ 2. to follow, make, take a ~ 3. a ~ around

detract *v.* (d; intr., tr.) to ~ from (the scandal will not ~ from his fame)

detriment *n.* 1. a ~ to 2. to the ~ of

detrimental *adj.* ~ to (smoking is ~ to health)

devastation *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. complete, total, utter, widespread ~ 3. (misc.) the cyclone left a trail of ~ (behind it)

develop *v.* 1. to ~ fully; rapidly; slowly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from; into (to ~ from a child into an adult)

developed *adj.* highly; well ~

developer *n.* a property (BE); real-estate (AE) ~

development *n.* ["advancement, change, maturation"] 1. arrested; economic; historical; intellectual; physical ~ 2. the latest ~s; recent ~s; technological ~s 3. a dramatic, exciting; interesting; new, recent; surprising ~ 4. a ~ in (recent ~s in physics) 5. (misc.) a stage of ~; a stage in the ~ of ["large housing project"] 6. a housing ~ 7. (BE) a ribbon ~ ("line of similar buildings constructed typically along roads leading out of a town")

deviate *v.* 1. to ~ sharply; slightly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from

deviation *n.* 1. a marked, sharp; slight ~ 2. (statistics) a standard ~ 3. a ~ from

device *n.* 1. a contraceptive; intrauterine (IUD) ~ 2. a laborsaving; timesaving ~ 3. a detonating; explosive; incendiary; thermonuclear ~; an improvised explosive ~ (IED) 4. a literary; mnemonic; rhetorical; stylistic ~ 5. a flotation; listening ~ 6. a ~ for 7. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ to mislead the voters) 8. (misc.) left to one's own ~s ("on one's own; unaided; left to one's own resources")

devil *n.* ["spirit of evil"] 1. go to the ~! ("damn you!") 2. the ~ incarnate ["severe reprimand"] (esp. AE) 3. to catch the ~ ["fellow"] (colloq.) 4. a lucky; poor ~ ["disturbed state"] 5. (in) a ~ of a mess ["misc."] 6. what the ~ is that?! where the ~ did she go?! speak of the ~! there'll be the ~ to pay! he's a little ~!

devoid *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ of (completely ~ of any redeeming features)

devolution *n.* ~ from; to (the ~ of power from central government to local government)

devolve *v.* (formal) 1. (d; intr.) ("to be transferred") to ~ on, upon (his duties ~d on his deputy) 2. (D; tr.) ("to transfer") to ~ from (to ~ power from central government) 3. (D; tr.) ("to transfer") to ~ to (to ~ power from central government to local government)

devote *v.* 1. to ~ oneself completely, entirely 2. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ to (she ~d herself to her work; we must ~ a lot of time to this project)

devoted *adj.* 1. blindly, completely, deeply, entirely, thoroughly, utterly, very ~ 2. ~ to (~ to one's family)

devotee *n.* a ~ of (a ~ of the theater)

devotion *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 2. to inspire ~ (from) 3. absolute, blind, complete, deep, great, selfless, slavish, thorough, undying, unflagging, unstinting, unswerving, utter ~ 4. religious ~ 5. ~ to (blind ~ to the cause; ~ to one's duty) 6. with ~ (to serve with ~)

devour *v.* to ~ eagerly, ravenously

dexterity *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 2. great; intellectual; political; manual ~ 3. ~ in (she showed great political ~ in handling the problem) 4. with ~ (she handled the problem with great political ~)

dexterous, dextrous *adj.* ~ with (~ with one's hands)

diabetes *n.* to develop; have ~

diagnose *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ as (they ~d her illness as diabetes)

diagnosis *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. to confirm a ~ (of) (further tests confirmed the initial ~ of diabetes) 3. (med.) (a) differential ~ 4. a ~ that + clause (further tests confirmed the initial ~ that she had diabetes)

diagonal I *adj.* ~ to

diagonal II *n.* on the ~ (to cut on the ~)

diagram *n.* 1. to draw a ~ 2. a ~ shows 3. in, on a ~

dial I *n.* to turn a ~ (turn the ~ to the correct position and then press the "ON" button)

dial II *v.* to ~ direct, directly (she ~(l)ed London direct)

dialect *n.* 1. to speak (in) a ~ 2. a local, regional; non-standard; social; standard ~ 3. in ~ (the stories were written in ~)

dialing, dialling *n.* direct ~

dialogue *n.* 1. to enter into a ~ (with); to have a ~ with 2. a constructive, fruitful, meaningful ~ 3. a ~ about, on; between; with

diameter *n.* in ~ (the circle is ten inches in ~ ("the circle has a ~ of ten inches"))

diamond *n.* 1. to cut; grind; polish; set a ~ 2. a cut; flawless, perfect; industrial; rare; rough, uncut ~ 3. a ~ sparkles 4. (misc.) a baseball ~; a ~ in the rough (AE), a rough ~ (BE) ("a person who is kinder and/or more intelligent than he/she appears to be")

diaper *n.* (AE) 1. to change, put on a ~ 2. cloth; disposable ~s (BE has *nappy*)

diaphragm *n.* ["contraceptive device"] to insert, put in; remove, take out a ~

diarrhea, diarrhoea *n.* 1. to come down with, get; have ~ 2. severe ~ 3. an attack of ~

diary *n.* ["personal journal"] 1. to keep a ~ 2. a personal ~ 3. an entry in a ~ ["personal appointments book"] (esp. BE) 4. a desk; pocket ~ 5. in a ~ (put the concert in your ~)

diatribe *n.* 1. to utter a ~ 2. to launch into a (long) ~ 3. a bitter ~ 4. a ~ against

dice *n.* 1. to play ~ 2. to roll, throw (the) ~ 3. loaded ~ (the cards were stacked and the ~ were loaded against us) 4. a roll; throw of the ~ 5. a pair of ~ 6. (misc.) (esp. AE; colloq.) no dice! (“I do not agree!; nothing doing!; no way!”) USAGE NOTE: In AE one can say “one die, two dice.” In BE one says “one dice, two dice.” But the expression “The die is cast (and there’s no turning back)” is CE.

dichotomy *n.* 1. an absolute; growing ~ 2. a ~ between

dicker *v.* (esp. AE) to ~ about, over; for; with

dictate *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to (she was ~ing to her secretary; the conqueror ~s terms to the conquered) 2. (L; can be subj.) the financial crisis ~d that he not begin/should not begin immediately 3. (Q; to) they ~d (to us) how everything would be done

dictation *n.* [“dictated material”] 1. to give ~ 2. to take ~ 3. to transcribe ~ [“dictation exercise”] 4. to give a ~ 5. to do, have a ~

dictator *n.* an absolute; benevolent; brutal; military; ruthless ~

dictatorship *n.* 1. to establish, set up a ~ 2. to overthrow a ~ 3. an absolute; benevolent; brutal; military; ruthless ~ 4. during a ~ 5. (to live) under a ~

diction *n.* clear ~

dictionary *n.* 1. to compile, write a ~ 2. to expand; revise; update a ~ 3. to consult, look smt. up in, use a ~ 4. an abridged, desk; bilingual; biographical; college (AE), collegiate (T); combinatorial, combinatory; concise; dialect; encyclopedic; etymological; general-use, general-purpose; historical; learner’s, learners’; medical; monolingual; multilingual; multivolume; names; orthographic, spelling; pronouncing; pocket; reverse; technical; unabridged ~ 5. a ~ of abbreviations; collocations; foreign words; personal names; place names; quotations; synonyms 6. an entry in a ~ 7. in a ~ (is that word (entered/listed) in any ~?)

diddle *v.* 1. (esp. BE) (colloq.) (D; intr.) (“to cheat”) to ~ out of 2. (AE) (D; intr.) (“to fool around”) to ~ with

die I *n.* the ~ is cast (fig.) (see Usage Note at **dice**)

die II *v.* 1. to ~ heroically; instantly; suddenly (he ~d heroically at the front) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ by (to ~ by the sword; to ~ by one’s own hand) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for one’s beliefs) 4. (colloq.) (D; intr.) (only in the progressive) to ~ for (“to want”) (she’s dying for a cup of coffee) 5. (D; intr.) to ~ from, of (he died of tuberculosis; to ~ of natural causes) 6. (colloq.) (E) (only in the progressive) (“to want”) she’s dying to find out 7. (S) she ~d happy; she ~d young; he ~d a poor man; (legal) to ~ intestate 8. (misc.) to ~ a horrible death; to ~ in action/battle; to ~ in one’s sleep; (fig.) to ~ laughing; rumors ~ hard; to ~ for (slang) (“to be desired very much”) (she has cheekbones to ~ for!)

diet *n.* 1. to be on, follow, have, stick to a ~ 2. to go on a ~ 3. to prescribe a ~; to put smb. on a ~ 4. a balanced, healthy, well-balanced; unhealthy ~ 5. a crash; special; starvation; therapeutic ~ 6. a bland; high-calorie; high-carbohydrate; high-fiber, high-fibre; high-protein; liquid; low-calorie; low-carbohydrate; low-cholesterol; low-fat; low-residue; low-salt, low-sodium; salt-free; soft ~ 7. a reducing, slimming (esp. BE) ~ 8. a macrobiotic; vegan; vegetarian ~ 9. in a ~ (there should be more vegetables in your ~) 10. (misc.) a steady ~ (she was on a steady ~ of parties)

differ *v.* 1. to ~ considerably, greatly, markedly, radically, sharply, widely; slightly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about, in, on, over 3. (D; intr.) to ~ from (this arrangement ~s from the one I had in mind) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ with (I ~ with you on that point) 5. (misc.) we must agree to ~ (because I can’t persuade you and you can’t persuade me); I beg to ~ (because I disagree with you) (formal; polite)

difference *n.* 1. to make a ~ (“I took the [road] less traveled by, And that has made all the ~” – “The Road Not Taken,” Robert Frost (1874–1963)) 2. to tell the ~ 3. to have; patch up, reconcile, resolve, settle, thrash out ~s 4. to set aside ~s 5. to air ~s 6. to split the ~ (“to take an average”) 7. a considerable, great, huge, marked, striking, vast ~ 8. a basic, essential, fundamental; noticeable, perceptible, real; significant ~ 9. an irreconcilable; radical ~ 10. an insignificant, little, minor, slight; subtle; superficial ~ 11. ~s among; a ~ between; from 12. a ~ in (a ~ in age) 13. a ~ to (that makes no ~ to me) 14. (misc.) a world of ~ (“a considerable difference”), with a ~ (for a sport with a ~, try bungee-jumping)

different *adj.* 1. basically, completely, entirely, totally, widely; quite; radically; very ~ 2. ~ in (they are quite ~ in outlook (“their outlooks are quite different”)) 3. ~ from, than (esp. AE), to (BE) USAGE NOTE: Some purists consider only *different from* to be correct. Note that, as prepositions, *from*, *than*, *to* can all introduce full clauses (different from/than/to what we thought), but only *than* can, as a conjunction, become part of a clause (different than we thought).

differential *n.* 1. a pay; price ~ 2. a ~ between

differentiate *v.* 1. to ~ clearly 2. (d; intr.) to ~ between 3. (d; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ right from/and wrong)

differentiation *n.* to make a ~ between

differing *adj.* widely ~

difficult *adj.* 1. ~ for (typing is ~ for me) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to please him = he is ~ to please = he is a ~ person to please = pleasing him is ~; it is ~ to translate this book = this book is ~ to translate = this is a ~ book to translate; it is ~ for me to translate such material = such material is ~ for me to translate) 3. (misc.) notoriously ~ (weather conditions are notoriously ~ to predict)

difficulty *n.* 1. to cause, create, make, present ~ties (for) 2. to come across, encounter, experience, face, get into, have, meet, run into ~ties 3. to clear up, overcome, resolve, surmount a ~ 4. (a) grave, great, insurmountable, serious, severe ~ 5. economic, financial; learning; personal; technical ~ties 6. a ~ arises; lies in 7. ~ in (she has ~ in breathing = she has ~ breathing) 8. ~ties about, over; with (we had ~ties with them about the price) 9. in ~ (he is in serious ~) 10. with; without ~ (he got here only with some ~) 11. (misc.) many ~ties face us

diffident *adj.* ~ about

diffuse *v.* (formal) (D; tr.) to ~ through, throughout (~d through the air)

dig I *n.* (colloq.) ["excavation"] 1. to go on a ~ 2. an archeological ~ ["poke"] 3. to give smb. a ~ in (the ribs) ["critical remark"] 4. (colloq.) to get in, have, take (AE) a ~ at smb.

dig II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for ("to search for") (to ~ for gold) 2. (d; intr.) ("to delve, search") to ~ into (to ~ into a report; he dug deep into his own pocket) 3. (d; intr., tr.) ("to jab") to ~ into (his elbow was ~ging into my ribs; he dug his spurs into the sides of the horse) 4. (D; intr., refl., tr.) ("to move earth" and fig.) to ~ into (they dug themselves into a hole) 5. (D; intr., refl., tr.) ("to free, liberate" and fig.) to ~ out of (they dug themselves out of a hole) 6. (D; intr., tr.) ("to move, move earth" and fig.) to ~ through, under (to ~ a tunnel through a mountain; they had to ~ through a lot of red tape; they dug under the street)

dignified *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was not ~ to behave like that)

dignify *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ by, with (I would not ~ that shack by calling it a hotel; she did not ~ his comment by responding to it; she did not ~ his comment with a response)

dignitary *n.* a local; visiting ~

dignity *n.* 1. to have, possess ~ 2. to maintain one's ~ 3. the ~ to + inf. (does he have enough ~ to cope with a hostile press?) 4. (misc.) to live in ~; to die in/with ~; to behave with ~; beneath smb.'s ~; a person of great ~

digress *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from 2. (misc.) but I ~ (used esp. in BE to apologize for straying from the main point)

digression *n.* ["act of digressing"] 1. a ~ from ["digressive remarks"] 2. a ~ on (he launched into a ~ on the need for more power plants)

digs *n.* (BE) in ~ (at a university) (do you live in ~ or in hall?)

dilate *v.* (d; intr.) ("to speak or write in detail") (formal) to ~ on, upon (to ~ upon a subject)

dilatory *adj.* (formal) ~ in (they were ~ in acting on your complaint)

dilemma *n.* 1. to confront; face; have a ~ 2. to resolve a ~ 3. an ethical, moral ~ (trying to resolve the ethical ~s posed by stem-cell research) 4. a ~ about, over 5. in a ~ 6. (misc.) on the horns of a ~

diligence *n.* 1. (legal) due ~ 2. the ~ to + inf. (does she have enough ~ to finish the job on time?)

diligent *adj.* ~ about; in (~ in one's work)

dillydally *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ over; with

dilute *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ the punch with water)

dimension *n.* ["importance"] 1. to add, introduce; assume, take on a ~ (the issue assumed serious ~s and the invasion added a whole new ~ to the problem) 2. (misc.) a problem of international ~s ["measurement"] (can be fig.) 3. a third ~ 4. in a ~ (in two ~s) 5. (misc.) time has been referred to as the fourth ~

diminish *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ by (to ~ by ten percent) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in value)

din *n.* ["noise"] 1. to make a ~ 2. an infernal ~ 3. above, over the ~

dine *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to eat") (to ~ on steak) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with 3. (misc.) to ~ at home, to ~ in; to ~ out

dining *n.* congregate ~ (AE)

dinner *n.* 1. to eat (esp. AE), have ~ 2. to cook, make, prepare; serve ~ 3. to give a ~ 4. a cold; formal; hot; light; nutritious, wholesome; substantial; TV ~ 5. at, during; over ~ (they were all at ~; what did you discuss at/during/over ~?) 6. for ~ (what are we having for ~?) 7. (misc.) to give smb. ~ (esp. BE); to take smb. to ~

dint *n.* by ~ of (by ~ of hard work)

dioxide *n.* carbon ~

dip I *n.* ["short swim"] 1. to have (BE), take (esp. AE) a ~ ["a soft food"] 2. a cheese ~ ["drop"] 3. to make a ~ (the road makes a ~) 4. a sharp ~ 5. (misc.) there is a sharp ~ in the road up ahead; a ~ in share prices

dip II *v.* 1. ("to drop") to ~ sharply (the road ~s sharply; the news made share prices ~ sharply) 2. (d; intr.) ("to drop, fall") to ~ below (the sun ~ped (down) below the horizon) 3. (d; tr.) ("to lower") to ~ in, into (she ~ped her pen into the ink) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to withdraw from") (to ~ into one's savings)

diphtheria *n.* to come down with, contract, get; have; prevent ~

diploma *n.* 1. to award, confer, present a ~ 2. to earn; receive a ~ 3. a college; high-school (AE) ~ 4. a ~ in (a ~ in Applied Linguistics)

diplomacy *n.* 1. to rely on, resort to ~ 2. dollar; gunboat; high-level; media; public; quiet; shuttle ~ 3. (misc.) with tact and ~ (to resolve a problem with tact and ~)

diplomat *n.* a career, professional; foreign ~

diplomatic *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was not ~ to make such demands)

diplomatic immunity *n.* 1. to grant ~ 2. to claim; have ~ 3. to withdraw ~

direct *v.* 1. to ~ mainly, principally; specifically 2. (d; tr.) ("to point") to ~ against, at (the enemy ~ed their attacks mainly against our seaports) 3. (d; tr.) ("to address") to ~ at, to (the remark was ~ed specifically at you) 4. (D; tr.) ("to guide") to ~ to (can you ~ me to the palace?) 5. (d; tr.) ("to aim") to ~ to, towards (our efforts were ~ed towards the elimination of poverty and away from lesser problems) 6. (H) ("to order") the government ~ed us to send supplies to the flooded areas 7. (L; subj.) ("to order") the government ~ed that supplies be/should be/were (BE) sent to the flooded areas

direction *n.* ["course"] 1. to change ~ 2. the general; opposite; right; same; wrong ~ 3. an anticlockwise (BE), counterclockwise (AE); clockwise ~ 4. from; in a ~ (from the opposite ~; in my ~; in the general ~ of London; in a clockwise ~; a step in the right ~) 5. a sense of ~ ["supervision"] 6. under smb.'s ~ ["guidance"] 7. to give ~ to (beginners need ~ from someone qualified to give ~ to them)

directions *n.* ["instructions"] 1. to ask for; give, issue ~ 2. to follow; read (the) ~ 3. clear; explicit, precise, specific; stage ~ 4. ~ for; to (~ for using the printer; they gave us ~ to the palace) 5. ~ that + clause; subj. (she gave ~ that her estate be given/should be given to charity) ["courses"] 6. all; both (shots came from both ~ and people were running in all ~)

directive *n.* 1. to issue a ~ 2. a ~ requires smt.; takes effect 3. a ~ about, on; against (the latest EU ~ requiring stricter standards takes effect from next Monday) 4. a ~ that + clause; may be used with the subj. (the government issued a ~ that all firearms be/must be/should be handed in) 5. in accordance with, under the terms of a ~ (under the terms of the latest EU ~, stricter standards will be required) 6. an advance ~ (a living will giving smb.'s wishes in case of terminal illness)

director *n.* 1. an acting; deputy; managing ~ 2. an athletic (AE); funeral; music; program ~ 3. a casting; film, movie (esp. AE) ~ 4. a board of ~s; the post/position of ~

directorate *n.* interlocking ~s

directory *n.* 1. to consult, look smt. up in, use a ~ 2. a business; city; classified; telephone ~ 3. in a ~ (is that name (entered/listed) in the ~?)

dirge *n.* a funeral; mournful ~

dirt *n.* 1. in the ~ (to play in the ~) 2. a speck of ~ 3. (misc.) to hit the ~ ("to fall to the ground") (AE); to dig up ~ about smb. ("to seek and find negative information about smb."); to dish the ~ about smb. (BE) ("to say or write bad things about smb.") (see also **pay dirt**)

dirty linen *n.* to wash one's ~ in public ("to air one's problems in public")

disability *n.* 1. to have a ~ 2. a learning; mild; moderate; physical; serious, severe ~ (children with learning ~ties)

disabled *adj.*, *n.* learning; physically ~ (learning-disabled children; help for the learning ~)

disabuse *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ of

disadvantage *n.* 1. to have, suffer a ~ 2. to offset, outweigh a ~ 3. an added; clear, decided, definite, distinct, obvious ~ 4. a ~ for, to (his poverty was an obvious ~ to him) 5. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ not to have a car available = it was a ~ not having a car available) 6. at a ~ (many factors worked to place/put us at a decided ~) 7. to smb.'s ~ (many factors worked to our ~)

disadvantaged *adj.* culturally; economically; educationally; physically ~

disadvantageous *adj.* 1. clearly, obviously ~ 2. ~ for; to (his decision was ~ to us) 3. ~ to + inf. (it would be clearly ~ for us to delay)

disagree *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly, profoundly, sharply; completely, entirely, totally, utterly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about, on, over; with (to ~ with smb. about smt.; to ~ on a plan) 3. (of food) to ~ with (the sauce ~d with me) 4. (misc.) I could not ~ more

disagreeable *adj.* ~ to

disagreement *n.* 1. to express (a) ~ 2. to have a ~ (with) 3. to resolve, settle a ~ 4. a bitter, marked, serious, sharp; slight; total ~ 5. a ~ among, between, with 6. a ~ about, on, over 7. in ~ (with) (we were in bitter ~ with them on all points = we were bitterly in ~ with them on all points) 8. (misc.) both sides are (locked) in total ~ over the terms of a settlement

disappear *v.* 1. to ~ completely 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from view; the story has ~ed completely from the media) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ in, into (they ~ed into the darkness)

disappearance *n.* 1. a mysterious; sudden ~ 2. a ~ from (the story's mysterious ~ from the media)

disappoint *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly, deeply 2. (R) it ~ed everyone (to learn) that she had failed the course

disappointed *adj.* 1. bitterly, deeply, greatly, very; obviously, visibly ~ 2. ~ about, at, in, with (~ at/with the results; I was deeply ~ in/with him) 3. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to learn that she had failed the course) 4. ~ that + clause (everyone was ~ that she had failed the course)

disappointing *adj.* 1. deeply, very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to analyze the results) 3. ~ that + inf. (it was ~ that she had failed the course)

disappointment *n.* 1. to express; feel ~ 2. (a) bitter, cruel, deep, great, keen, profound, terrible ~ 3. ~ about, at, over (she felt deep ~ at having failed the course) 4. a ~ for, to (her failure was a bitter ~ to everyone) 5. ~ that + clause (everyone expressed keen ~ that she had failed the course) 6. to smb.'s ~ (to everyone's great ~, she failed the course)

disapproval *n.* 1. to express; indicate, show, voice (one's) ~ 2. complete, total; public; strong ~ 3. in; of; with ~ (she reacted to his plan with ~ and sneered in ~ of it) 4. (misc.) a chorus of ~; a note of ~; a show of ~

disapprove *v.* 1. to ~ completely, strongly, thoroughly, utterly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ of (we ~d strongly of his decision)

disarmament *n.* general, universal; multilateral; nuclear; phased; unilateral ~

disarray *n.* 1. complete, sheer, total, utter ~ 2. in ~ (to break up in total ~) 3. (misc.) a state of ~; to throw a meeting into ~

disassociate, dissociate *v.* (D; refl.) to ~ from USAGE NOTE: Some purists prefer *dissociate*, which is also the prevailing variant.

disaster *n.* 1. to bring ~ in its wake; cause (a); to invite ~ 2. to experience, face, meet, suffer (a) ~ 3. to court, risk ~ 4. to spell ~ (for) 5. to cope with; recover from (a) ~ 6. to avert, prevent (a) ~ 7. a major, terrible, tragic, unmitigated, unqualified ~ 8. a near ~ 9. an ecological; environmental; impending; national; natural ~ 10. (a) ~ looms, strikes

disastrous *adj.* 1. ~ for, to 2. ~ to + inf. (it would be ~ for us not to wait)

disbar *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ from practice)

disbelief *n.* 1. complete, total, utter; mock ~ 2. in (~ in astrology) 3. in ~ (to shake one's head in ~)

disburse *v.* (B) to ~ funds to the states

disc *n.* ["tag"] (BE) (mil.) 1. an identification; tax ~ ["recording"] 2. to cut a ~ (see **disk**) 3. a compact ~ (also CD); laser ~ (see also **disk**)

discern *v.* (formal) 1. (L) they soon ~ed that he was lying 2. (Q) they could not ~ who was telling the truth

discharge I *n.* 1. a dishonorable; general; honorable; medical; undesirable ~ (from the armed forces) 2. a ~ from (a ~ from a hospital)

discharge II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ an employe for stealing) 2. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ from (to ~ smb. from hospital/from a hospital) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ waste into a river)

disciple *n.* an ardent, devoted; fanatical ~

discipline I *n.* ["control; training"] 1. to enforce, keep; establish; maintain ~ 2. to crack down on violations of ~ 3. to ease up on, relax ~ 4. to undermine ~ 5. to violate ~ 6. firm, harsh, iron, rigid, severe, stern, strict ~ 7. lax, loose, slack ~ 8. military; party ~ 9. ~ breaks down 10. the ~ to + inf. (they didn't have enough ~ to cope with the job) (see also **self-discipline**) ["branch of learning"] 11. an academic ~ 12. across ~s (similar problems can be found across a whole range of academic ~s)

discipline II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for 2. (H; usu. refl.) (she ~d herself to exercise every day)

disciplined *adj.* highly, very ~

disclaimer *n.* 1. to bear a ~ 2. to issue, publish a ~ 3. a ~ about

disclose *v.* 1. (B) the authorities finally ~d the facts to the press 2. (L; to) the authorities finally ~d (to the press) that she had served time in prison

disclosure *n.* 1. to make a ~ (to) 2. a financial; full; public; sensational, startling ~ 3. a ~ that + clause (the ~ that she had served time in prison ruined her chances for public office)

discomfort *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. to bear; experience; put up with ~ 3. to alleviate ~ 4. acute; physical ~ 5. an amount, degree; level of ~ 6. in ~ (patients may experience a certain degree of ~ but should not be left in ~ too long)

disconcert *v.* (formal) (R) it ~ed us (to learn) that they had refused our offer

disconcerting *adj.* 1. highly, profoundly, very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ (for us) to learn that they had refused our offer) 3. ~ that + clause (it was ~ (to us) that they had refused our offer)

disconnect *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

disconsolate *adj.* ~ about, at, over

discontent *n.* 1. to cause, fuel, stir up ~ 2. deep; outspoken; public; simmering; widespread ~ 3. ~ about, at, over, with; ~ among 4. (misc.) to fan the flames of ~; murmurs of ~; rumblings of ~ (the government's announcement fanned the flames of ~ among consumers over price increases)

discontinue *v.* (G) she ~d paying rent

discord *n.* 1. to arouse, foment, generate, stir up; spread ~ 2. domestic, family, marital ~ 3. bitter; widespread ~ 4. ~ among, between 5. ~ in (~ in smb.'s family relationships) 6. (misc.) a note of ~

discount *n.* 1. to give a ~ 2. a cash ~ 3. a ~ of; on (to give a ~ of 10% on all purchases over £30) 4. at a ~ (she sold it at a ~)

discourage *v.* 1. to ~ actively; strongly 2. to ~ greatly, no end, very much 3. (D.; tr.) to ~ from (she strongly ~d me from loving her) 4. (P.; intr.) ("to get discouraged") (I don't ~ easily!) 5. (R) it ~d us no end (to learn) that so many had/should have failed 6. (misc.) it ~s us no end when so many have failed

discouraged *adj.* 1. deeply, very ~ 2. ~ about, at, over (we were deeply ~ at the failure of so many) 3. ~ to + inf. (we were very ~ to learn that so many had/should have failed) 4. ~ that + clause (we were very ~ that so many had/should have failed)

discouragement *n.* 1. deep ~ 2. ~ at, on, upon (our deep discouragement upon learning that so many had/should have failed) 3. ~ to + inf. (our deep discouragement to learn that so many had/should have failed) 4. ~ that + clause (our deep discouragement that so many had/should have failed)

discouraging *adj.* 1. deeply, very ~ 2. ~ for; ~ to 3. ~ to + inf. (it's deeply ~ (for/to us) to learn that so many had/should have failed) 4. ~ that + clause (it's deeply ~ (for/to us) that so many had/should have failed)

discourse I *n.* ["connected speech"] 1. (grammar) direct; indirect ~ ["speech, talk"] (formal) 2. to deliver a ~ (on, upon)

discourse II *v.* (formal) (D; intr.) to ~ on, upon

discourteous *adj.* 1. ~ to 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to say that)

discourtesy *n.* 1. to show ~ 2. (a) grave ~

discover *v.* 1. (J) we ~ed him cooking in our kitchen 2. (L) we ~ed that he could cook 3. (rare) (M) we were surprised to ~ him to be a good cook 4. (Q) I never have ~ed how to cook

discovery *n.* ["finding"] 1. to make a ~ 2. a dramatic; exciting, startling, surprising, world-shaking 3. a scientific ~ 4. a ~ that + clause (we made the surprising ~ that he was a really good cook) ["pretrial disclosure of facts"] (legal) 5. to conduct ~

discredit *n.* 1. to bring ~ on, to 2. a ~ to (they are a ~ to our family) 3. to smb.'s ~

discreet *adj.* 1. ~ in 2. ~ to + inf. (it was not ~ of her to say that)

discrepancy *n.* 1. a glaring, striking, wide ~ 2. a ~ between ; in

discretion *n.* 1. to exercise, show, use ~ in (remember to exercise in this matter all the ~ it requires) 2. complete, full, wide ~ 3. parental ; viewer ~ 4. ~ to + inf. (she has full ~ to make decisions) 5. at one's ~ (to act at one's own ~) 6. with ; without ~ (to proceed with ~) 7. (misc.) the soul of ~

discriminate *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) to ~ against ; in favor of (to ~ against minorities on specious grounds) 2. (d ; intr.) to ~ among, between (to ~ between right and wrong) 3. (d ; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ right from wrong)

discrimination *n.* 1. to practice ~ 2. to subject smb. to ~ (I was subjected to the worst ~ I have ever experienced) 3. age ; racial ; religious ; reverse ; sex ~ 4. blatant ; outright ~ 5. ~ occurs 6. instances ; levels of ~ 7. ~ against ; in favor of (instances of blatant ~ against minorities have been known to occur) 8. ~ among, between (~ between right and wrong)

discus *n.* to throw the ~

discuss *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ with (to refuse to ~ smt. with smb.) 2. (Q) we ~ed how we would do it

discussion *n.* 1. to arouse, provoke, stir up (a) ~ 2. to conduct ; have ; hold ; lead ; moderate a ~ 3. to be up for ; bring smt. up for ~ ; to come up for ~ 4. an animated, brisk, heated, lively, spirited ; brief ; candid, frank, open ; lengthy, long ; quiet, peaceful ; serious ; wide-ranging ~ 5. a group ; panel ; round-table ~ (to lead a panel ~) 6. a ~ about, of 7. open for, open to ~ 8. under ~ (their case is now under ~) 9. (misc.) the point of a ~

discussions *n.* 1. to have, hold ; schedule ~ 2. to curtail, end, terminate ~ 3. high-level ; preliminary ~ 4. ~ among, between ; with 5. ~ about

disdain I *n.* 1. to have ; show ~ 2. ~ for (to have the greatest ~ for smt.) 3. with ~

disdain II *v.* (esp. BE) (formal) 1. (E) she ~ed to speak to them 2. (G) they ~ed watching TV

disdainful *adj.* ~ of ; towards

disease *n.* 1. to come down with, contract, get, (BE colloq.) go down with ; have a ~ 2. to carry ; spread, transmit (a) ~ 3. to cure ; prevent (a) ~ 4. to combat, fight ; conquer, eradicate, stamp out, wipe out (a) ~ ; to bring a ~ under control 5. a common ; rare ~ 6. a mild ; serious ~ 7. a deadly ; debilitating, wasting ; degenerative ; fatal ; incurable, untreatable ~ 8. an acute ; chronic ~ 9. an acquired ; congenital ; hereditary ~ 10. a childhood ; communicable, contagious, infectious ; sexually transmitted, social, venereal ; tropical ~ 11. caisson ; (a) deficiency ; heart ; (an) industrial, occupational ; kidney ; (a) skin ~ 12. Addison's ; Alzheimer's ; Hodgkin's ; Legionnaire's ~ 13. foot-and-mouth, hoof-and-mouth ~ 14. a ~ spreads 15. the outbreak of a ~ (for additional combinations, see **ailment**, **illness**)

disembark *v.* (D ; intr.) to ~ from

disengage *v.* (D ; refl., intr., tr.) to ~ from

disentangle *v.* (D ; refl., tr.) to ~ from

disfavor, disfavour *n.* 1. to fall into ~ with 2. in ~ 3. (misc.) to look with ~ on

disfigured *adj.* badly ~

disgorge *v.* (D ; tr.) to ~ into (the sewer ~d waste material into the river)

disgrace I *n.* 1. to bring ; suffer ~ (their whole family has suffered the ~ they brought on it !) 2. (a) deep ; public ~ 3. a ~ to (they are a ~ to their family) 4. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ to behave like that = it was a ~ behaving like that) 5. a ~ that + clause (it's a ~ that they behaved like that) 6. in ~ (he quit in ~ over the bribe)

disgrace II *v.* (D ; refl., tr.) to ~ by (he ~d himself by accepting a bribe)

disgraceful *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was absolutely ~ to behave like that = it was ~ behaving like that) 2. ~ that + clause (it was utterly ~ that he accepted/should have accepted a bribe)

disgruntled *adj.* 1. ~ at, over, with ("~ at being dragged out of his dream" – British National Corpus ; "more than 330,000 East Germans ~ with Communism" – British National Corpus) 2. ~ that + clause ("at first she seemed ~ that she had been proved wrong" – British National Corpus)

disguise I *n.* 1. to adopt, assume a ~ 2. to shed, throw off a ~ 3. a clever ~ (when she saw through the clever ~ he had assumed, he shed it at once) 4. in ~

disguise II *v.* 1. heavily ; thinly ~d 2. (D ; refl., tr.) to ~ as (he was ~d as a waiter) 3. (D ; tr.) to ~ from (you can't ~ your plans from us !)

disgust I *n.* 1. to express ; feel ~ 2. complete, deep, great, utter ; obvious ~ (he expressed the utter ~ her behavior inspired in him) 3. ~ at, with (he expressed his utter ~ at her behavior) 4. in ~ (he left in great ~) 5. to smb.'s ~ (to my ~ I discovered that…)

disgust II *v.* 1. to ~ completely, thoroughly 2. (R) it ~ed everyone (to learn) that they had taken bribes

disgusted *adj.* 1. completely, thoroughly, totally, utterly, very ~ 2. ~ at, with 3. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to learn that they had taken bribes) 4. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that they had taken bribes)

disgusting *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to watch him = he was ~ to watch = he was a ~ person to watch = watching him was ~) 2. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that they took/should have taken bribes)

dish *n.* ["food served in a dish"] 1. a favorite ; main ; side ~ (I've made/cooked/prepared your favorite ~ !) 2. in a ~ ["container typically for food"] 3. to do, wash ; dry the ~es 4. a chafing ; serving ~ 5. in a ~ (see also **dishes** ; Usage Note at **wash up**) ["antenna"] 6. a satellite ~

disharmony *n.* 1. to stir up ~ 2. ethnic ; racial ; religious ~

dishearten *v.* (formal) 1. to ~ greatly, no end, very much 2. (R) it ~d us no end (to learn) that so many had/should have failed 3. (misc.) it ~s us no end when so many have failed

disheartened *adj.* (formal) 1. deeply, very ~ 2. ~ about, at, over (we were deeply ~ at the failure of so many) 3. ~ to + inf. (we were very ~ to learn that so many had/should have failed) 4. ~ that + clause (we were very ~ that so many had/should have failed)

disheartening *adj.* (formal) 1. deeply, very ~ 2. ~ for; ~ to 3. ~ to + inf. (it's deeply ~ (for/to us) to learn that so many had/should have failed) 4. ~ that + clause (it's deeply ~ (for/to us) that so many had/should have failed)

dishes *n.* ["dirty containers, cutlery, and utensils left after a meal"] 1. to do, wash; dry; rinse; stack the ~ 2. dirty ~ ["containers for holding food"] 3. plastic ~ 4. a set of ~ USAGE NOTE: BE uses *to wash up* more typically than *to do, wash the dishes*.

dishonest *adj.* 1. intellectually; morally ~ 2. ~ in (~ about; in; with) (don't be ~ about this matter with us!; to be ~ in one's dealings) 3. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to lie about one's age)

dishonor, dishonour *n.* 1. to bring ~ on, to 2. a ~ to (they are a ~ to their country)

dishonorable, dishonourable *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to deceive them with false promises)

dish out *v.* (B) he was ~ing out food and advice to the women

dish up *v.* (B) he was ~ing up food to the women

dishwasher *n.* (CE; colloq. BE also has *washing-up machine*) 1. to run, use a ~ 2. to load, stack; empty, unload a ~ 3. an automatic ~

disillusioned *adj.* ~ about, at; with

disinclined *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (he seems ~ to put up resistance)

disk *n.* ["structure in a spinal column"] 1. to slip ("dislocate") a ~ 2. a slipped ~ ["flat plate for computer storage"] 3. to back up; format; insert a ~; to copy onto a ~; to save on/to (a) ~ 4. a back-up; fixed, hard; floppy; magnetic; optical ~ USAGE NOTE: BE prefers the spelling *disc* for 1 and 2. See **disc**

diskette *n.* see **disk** 3

dislike I *n.* 1. to take a ~ to 2. to have; show a ~ for, of 3. an active, cordial, deep, hearty, strong, violent; instant; instinctive; mutual ~ 4. (misc.) smb.'s likes and ~s

dislike II *v.* 1. to ~ deeply, very much 2. (G) he ~s reading 3. (K) we ~ his hanging around with that crowd; I ~ your frowning USAGE NOTE: The verb *dislike* can be used with *it* + clause – I dislike it when you frown.

dislodge *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (the doctor ~d the bone from her throat)

disloyal *adj.* 1. ~ to 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ not to help a friend in need)

disloyalty *n.* to demonstrate, show ~ to

dismay I *n.* 1. to express; feel ~ 2. ~ at, over, (AE) with 3. in, with ~ (to moan in ~ over what had happened) 4. to smb.'s ~ (to my great ~, she was absent again = much to my dismay, she was absent again)

dismay II *v.* (formal) (R) it ~ed him (to learn) that the project had been canceled

dismayed *adj.* 1. ~ at, over, (AE) with 2. ~ to + inf. (he was ~ to learn that the project had been canceled) 3. ~ that + clause (he was ~ that the project had been canceled)

dismaying *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to learn that the project had been canceled)

dismiss *v.* 1. to ~ curtly, summarily; lightly; out of hand 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (he was ~ed as incompetent) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ for (I was ~ed for being late) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ from (she was ~ed from her job) 5. (misc.) (BE; cricket) the bowler ~ed the next batsman for six runs

dismissal *n.* 1. an abrupt, curt; constructive (BE), summary ~ 2. a ~ from

dismount *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from

disobedience *n.* 1. blatant; willful ~ 2. civil ~ (see also **civil disobedience**) 3. ~ to (~ to orders)

disobedient *adj.* ~ to

disorder *n.* ["lack of order"] 1. to throw into ~ 2. in ~ (to retreat in ~) ["riot"] 3. violent ~s 4. ~s break out (the army put down the violent ~s that had broken out) 5. civil; public ~ (an outbreak of public ~) (see also **civil disorder**) ["illness"] 6. a brain; circulatory; digestive; eating; emotional; mental; minor; nervous; personality; post-traumatic stress ~ (PTSD); respiratory; stomach ~ (doctors treating the respiratory ~s that principally affect the young)

disoriented, disorientated *adj.* ~ about, as to (~ as to time and place)

disparity *n.* 1. a considerable, great, wide; growing ~ 2. a ~ between, in (a considerable ~ in wealth is opening up between different parts of the country)

dispatch I *n.* ["news item"]["message"] 1. to file; send a ~ 2. to dateline a ~ 3. a ~ from; to 4. a ~ that + clause (we read her ~ that war had been declared) 5. (misc.) (BE; mil.) to be mentioned in ~es (for bravery in combat) (AE has *to receive a citation*) ["promptness"] 6. with great ~

dispatch II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (the message was ~ed from battalion headquarters to each company) 2. (rare) (H) he was ~ed to carry the message

dispensation *n.* 1. to give, grant (a) ~ 2. to obtain; request (a) ~ (from) 3. (a) papal; royal; special ~ 4. a ~ to + inf. (they obtained a ~ to travel abroad)

dispense *v.* 1. (B) to ~ charity to the needy; to ~ equal justice to all 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with the formalities)

dispenser *n.* a cash; coffee; drinks (BE); soap ~

dispersed *adj.* widely ~

displace *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~d as champion)

display I *n.* 1. to make, put on a ~ (to make a vulgar ~ of one's wealth; to make a public ~ of one's ignorance to everyone) 2. to put smt. on ~ 3. a dazzling, imposing, impressive; lavish, ostentatious, spectacular; modest; public; vulgar ~ (to make a public ~ of grief; to put on a dazzling ~ of one's skill) 4. a firework (BE), fireworks (AE) ~ 5. a graphic ~ (of a computer) 6. on ~ (the new models were on ~)

display II *v.* (B) he ~ed his ignorance to everyone

displeased *adj.* 1. greatly, highly, very ~ 2. ~ about, at, by, with 3. ~ to + inf. (we are ~ not to have been there) 4. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that the proposal had not been accepted)

displeasure *n.* 1. to incur smb.'s ~ 2. to feel; show; voice one's ~ with 3. to smb.'s ~ (much to her ~, the proposal was not accepted)

disposal *n.* ["availability"] 1. to have at one's ~ (I had a huge car at my ~) 2. to place, put smt. at smb.'s ~ 3. at smb.'s ~ (if I can be of help in any way, remember that I'm always at your ~) ["elimination"] 4. bomb; garbage (esp. AE), rubbish (esp. BE); sewage; waste ~ ["device used to grind up garbage"] (esp. AE) 5. a garbage ~; or: a garbage-disposal unit

dispose *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ of ("to deal with") (to ~ of the opposition) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ of ("to get rid of") (to ~ of the rubbish) 3. (formal) (H) ("to incline") what ~d him to do it?

disposed *adj.* (formal) ["inclined"] (cannot stand alone) 1. ~ to, towards (he seems favorably/well ~ towards us) 2. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to accept our offer)

disposition *n.* ["inclination"] 1. a ~ to + inf. (a ~ to argue) ["personality"] 2. a bland; buoyant, cheerful, genial, happy, lively, pleasant, sunny; mild; nervous; sour, unpleasant ~ (people of a nervous ~ should not watch this program)

dispossess *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ of (they were ~ed of their wealth)

disproportionate *adj.* ~ to (the punishment was ~ to the crime)

dispute I *n.* 1. to stir up a ~ about 2. to adjudicate; arbitrate; resolve, settle a ~ (to settle a ~ out of court) 3. an acrimonious, bitter, heated, sharp ~ 4. a public ~ 5. a border; demarcation; industrial, labor; international; jurisdictional; legal; pay; territorial ~ (a long-simmering territorial ~ between two countries that finally erupted into open warfare) 6. a ~ about, over; with 7. in ~ (this point is in ~; labor is in ~ with management) 8. in a ~ (he is in a ~ with his insurance company)

dispute II *v.* 1. to ~ fiercely, hotly (a fiercely ~d point) 2. (D; intr.) (esp. BE) to ~ about, over; with (they are always ~ting with each other over politics) 3. (L) I do not ~ that he was there: no one can!

disqualification *n.* 1. to lead to, result in ~ 2. ~ for (the incident led to her ~ for cheating) 3. ~ from (it resulted in his ~ from the contest)

disqualify *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (the athlete was ~fied for taking drugs) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from (the athlete was ~fied from the competition for taking drugs)

disregard I *n.* 1. to show ~ 2. (a) blatant, callous, complete, flagrant, total; reckless; willful ~ 3. ~ for, of 4. in ~ of (in total ~ of the regulations)

disregard II *v.* 1. to ~ completely 2. (K) we cannot ~ his coming late to work so often

disrepair *n.* 1. a state of ~ 2. in ~ (the building is in ~) 3. to fall into ~

disrepute *n.* 1. to fall into ~ 2. to bring smt. into ~ 3. to hold smb. in ~

disrespect *n.* 1. to show ~ 2. to intend, mean no ~ 3. deep, profound; healthy ~ 4. ~ for (I meant no ~ for your traditions; to show a healthy ~ for bureaucracy)

disrespectful *adj.* 1. ~ of, to (~ of/to one's elders) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to say that)

disruption *n.* 1. to cause (a) ~ 2. (a) complete, total; widespread ~ 3. ~ in, of, to (some ~ to services is likely to occur)

dissatisfaction *n.* 1. to express, voice; feel ~ 2. deep, keen, profound; growing; widespread ~ 3. ~ about, at, over, with (they expressed deep ~ with working conditions) 4. ~ among (~ among the workers) 5. rumblings of ~

dissatisfied *adj.* ~ with (we are ~ with the poor results)

dissension *n.* 1. to cause, sow, stir up; introduce 2. (a) deep; growing; widespread ~ 3. ~ among, between 4. rumblings of ~

dissent I *n.* 1. to express ~ 2. to brook (formal), tolerate no ~ 3. to squash, stifle ~ 4. political; strong ~ 5. ~ from 6. (misc.) rumblings of ~; voices of ~

dissent II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from

dissertation *n.* 1. to defend; do, write a ~ (to write a ~ under smb.'s supervision) 2. to supervise a ~ 3. (esp. AE) a doctoral ~ 4. a ~ about, on USAGE NOTE: AE prefers a *doctoral dissertation, master's thesis*; BE prefers a *doctoral thesis, master's dissertation/master's essay*.

disservice *n.* 1. to do smb. a ~ 2. a ~ to (you're doing a great ~ to your employers by saying their products are no good)

dissident *n.* a political ~

dissimilar *adj.* 1. ~ in (~ in outlook) 2. ~ to

dissimilarity *n.* 1. a ~ between; in (there is a marked ~ between them in outlook)

dissociate *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ from (we ~d ourselves from his views) (see the Usage Note for **disassociate**)

dissolve *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ in (to ~ sugar in water) 2. (misc.) to ~ in/into laughter

dissonance *n.* cognitive ~ ("the holding of incompatible beliefs simultaneously")

dissuade *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

distance I *n.* 1. to cover; run; travel; walk a ~ 2. to keep a ~ (to keep a safe ~ between cars) 3. to close the ~ between 4. a discreet; good, great, long, vast; safe; short ~ (we traveled a short ~) 5. commuting; driving; hailing; shouting; striking; walking ~ (it's within easy walking ~ (of here); targets within striking ~ of our missiles) 6. (a) braking, stopping ~ 7. a ~ between; from; to (the ~ between New York and London is about three thousand miles; the ~ from Philadelphia to Chicago is less than eight hundred miles) 8. at a ~ (at a discreet ~; we spotted them at a ~ of two hundred yards) 9. from a ~ (I spotted her from a ~) 10. in the ~ (the city was visible in the ~) 11. (misc.) to keep one's ~ ("to not allow familiarity"); a short ~ away; quite a ~; some ~ (they are still some ~ apart); the middle ~ (disappeared into the middle ~)

distance II *v.* (D; refl.) to ~ from

distant *adj.* ~ from

distaste *n.* 1. to develop; express; feel; show (a) ~ 2. (a) strong ~ 3. (a) ~ for 4. with ~

distasteful *adj.* 1. ~ to (his behavior was ~ to everyone) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for me to have to enforce discipline)

distil, distill *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ whiskey from grain)

distinct *adj.* ~ from (man is ~ from the apes and, as ~ from the apes, can create language)

distinction *n.* ["differentiation"] 1. to draw, make a ~ 2. to blur a ~ 3. a clear-cut; essential, fundamental; fine; obvious; subtle; valid ~ 4. a class ~ (class ~s lie at the heart of many social problems) 5. a ~ between (we must treat all classes alike, without any ~ between them) ["eminence"] ["superiority"] 6. to enjoy, have, hold a ~ (he holds the dubious ~ of being the first person to break the new speed limit) 7. an academic, doubtful, dubious ~ 8. of ~ (an artist of ~) 9. with ~ (to serve with ~)

distinctive *adj.* ~ of

distinguish *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ among, between (the twins are so much alike I can't ~ between them; to ~ between good and evil) 2. (d; refl.) to ~ as (she ~ed herself as a painter) 3. (d; refl.) to ~ by (he ~ed himself by running five marathons) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ good from/and evil) 5. (d; refl.) to ~ in (they ~ed themselves in the fine arts)

distinguishable *adj.* 1. clearly, easily, plainly; barely, hardly ~ 2. ~ from

distinguished *adj.* ~ for

distortion *n.* a crude, gross, grotesque; deliberate; malicious; willful ~

distract *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (the music ~ed them/their attention from their studies)

distraction *n.* 1. to drive smb. to ~ 2. a ~ from (the music was a ~ from their studies)

distraught *adj.* ~ about, at, over; with (~ with grief at her death)

distress I *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. to feel; suffer ~ 3. to alleviate, ease ~ 4. deep, great, profound ~ 5. economic, financial ~ 6. emotional, mental, psychological; physical ~ 7. ~ at, over, with 8. in ~ (they were in deep ~ over their loss) 9. to smb.'s ~ (to our ~, her condition did not improve)

distress II *v.* 1. to ~ deeply 2. (R) it ~ed me (to read) that a new epidemic had broken out

distressed *adj.* 1. deeply ~ 2. ~ about, at, by, over, with (~ at the news) 3. ~ to + inf.; ~ that + clause (I was deeply ~ (to read) that a new epidemic had broken out)

distressing *adj.* 1. deeply, very ~ 2. ~ for, to 3. ~ to + inf.; ~ that + clause (it was ~ to me (to read) that a new epidemic had broken out)

distribute *v.* 1. to ~ equitably, fairly; evenly; inequitably, unfairly; unevenly; widely 2. (B) the instructor ~d the test papers to the students; to ~ food free of charge to the poor 3. (D; tr.) to ~ among (to ~ food free of charge among the poor)

distribution *n.* 1. (an) equitable, fair; even; inequitable, unfair; uneven; wide ~ 2. (math.) normal ~ 3. (ling.) complementary ~ 4. ~ among; to (the ~ of surplus food free of charge among/to the poor)

district *n.* 1. the business (esp. AE); financial; red-light; tenderloin (AE); theater ~ 2. a congressional; health; postal; school; voting ~ (a postal ~ whose boundaries extend a long way and in/within which many people live)

distrustful *adj.* ~ of

disturb *v.* (R) it ~ed me (to read) that a new epidemic had broken out

disturbance *n.* 1. to cause, create, make a ~ 2. to quell, put down a ~ 3. a minor ~ (a minor ~ of the peace involving only a few people)

disturbed *adj.* 1. emotionally, mentally, psychologically ~ 2. seriously, severely ~ 3. ~ about, at, by, over 4. ~ to + inf.; ~ that + clause (I was ~ (to read) that a new epidemic had broken out)

disturbing *adj.* ~ to + inf.; ~ that + clause (it was deeply ~ to me (to read) that a new epidemic had broken out)

disuse *n.* to fall into ~

ditch *n.* 1. to dig a ~ 2. a deep; shallow ~ 3. an anti-tank; drainage ~ (to fall into a deep drainage ~)

dither I *n.* in a ~ (about, over)

dither II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, over

ditty *n.* 1. to sing a ~ 2. a popular ~

dive I *n.* 1. to make a ~ (at) 2. to go into a ~ (the plane went into a ~) 3. a swallow (BE), swan (AE) ~ 4. a back; headfirst; high ~ 5. a crash ~ (of a submarine) 6. a power ~ (of a plane) (see also **nose dive**) 7. a ~ for (they made a ~ for the ditch) 8. a ~ from; into 9. (misc.) (colloq.) to take a ~ ("to lose a boxing match deliberately")

dive II *v.* 1. to ~ headfirst 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for pearls; to ~ for cover) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ from; into (she ~d into the pool from the high diving board) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ off (he ~d off the boat) 5. (P; intr.) he ~d under the bed; she ~d to a depth of thirty feet; they ~d over the side of the boat

diverge *v.* 1. to ~ markedly, sharply, widely 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from

divergence *n.* 1. (a) marked, sharp, wide ~ 2. a ~ between (there was a sharp ~ between their views) 3. a ~ from (they found a wide ~ from the norm)

diversion *n.* ["amusement"] 1. a favorite; popular ~ ["turning"] 2. a ~ from; to (a ~ of traffic from the damaged bridge to an alternative route; the sign said "Bridge Damaged: Buses on Diversion" (BE)) ["distraction"] 3. to create a ~ 4. a welcome ~

diversity *n.* 1. cultural; ethnic; multicultural; religious ~ 2. (misc.) the USA's motto "E Pluribus Unum" expresses its commitment to unity in or from ~

divert *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to

divest *v.* (formal) (d; refl., tr.) to ~ of (they ~ed themselves of all stocks and bonds)

divide I *n.* 1. a continental ~; (in North America) the Great Divide 2. (fig.) the great ~ ("death") (to cross the great ~) 3. a ~ between

divide II *v.* 1. to ~ equally, evenly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ among, between; with (to ~ profits among the partners) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ by (to ~ six by three and get two) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ from (the channel ~s the island from the mainland) 5. (D; intr., refl., tr.) to ~ into (they ~d the loot into equal shares; to ~ three into six and get two) 6. (misc.) to ~ in half; to ~ in two

divided *adj.* 1. deeply, sharply; hopelessly ~ 2. ~ on, over (they are sharply ~ over the choice of a new chairperson)

dividend *n.* ["sum divided among stockholders"] 1. to declare a ~ 2. (also fig.) to pay a ~ (healthy living pays ~s!) 3. a share, stock (esp. AE) ~ 4. a handsome, large ~

divide off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (the room was ~d off into three alcoves by a partition)

divide up *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ among, between; into (they ~d up the profits into equal shares)

dividing line *n.* 1. to draw a ~ between 2. to cross the ~ 3. a thin ~ (how thin is the ~ between genius and madness?)

divisible *adj.* ~ by; into

division *n.* ["mathematical operation of dividing"] 1. to do ~ 2. long; short ~ ["major military unit"] 3. an airborne; armored; infantry; motorized ~ ["classification"] 4. to make a ~ 5. an arbitrary ~ 6. (BE; sports) first ~; premier; second ~; etc. (our club is in the second ~ of the league) ["dividing"] 7. a deep; equal; equitable; sharp; unequal ~ 8. cell ~ 9. ~ among; between; within (deep ~s within the party as well as between the parties) ["type of voting, vote"] (BE) 10. to force a ~

divisor *n.* a common ~

divorce *n.* 1. to file for, sue for ~ 2. to get, receive a ~ 3. to grant a ~ 4. a messy ~; (a) no-fault ~; an uncontested ~; (a) ~ by mutual consent 5. a ~ comes through (when did your ~ finally come through?) (see also *divorce settlement* at **settlement**)

divorced *adj.* ~ from (he got/was ~d from his wife)

divulge *v.* 1. (B) to ~ information to the press 2. (L; to) they ~d (to us) that the stock had already been sold 3. (Q; to) they did not ~ (to us) when the stock was sold

dizzy *adj.* 1. ~ from (~ from the rays of the sun) 2. ~ with (~ with success)

do *v.* 1. (C) ("to perform") she did a favor for me; or: she did me a favor 2. (d; tr.) to ~ about ("to help improve") (what can we ~ about his schoolwork?) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ about, with ("to deal with, treat") (what should we ~ about/with students who fail?) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ by ("to treat") (the firm did very well by her when she retired) 5. (colloq.) (BE) (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to act as housekeeper for") (she does for me twice a week) 6. (colloq.) (BE) (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to ruin") (that long hike nearly did for me!) 7. (d; tr.) to ~ for ("to make arrangements for") (what did you ~ for light when the electricity was turned off?) 8. (D; tr.) to ~ for ("to help") (what can I ~ for you?) 9. (d; tr.) to ~ out of ("to cheat out of") (they did him out of his inheritance) 10. (d; tr.) to ~ to ("to inflict on") (what did they ~ to her?) 11. (d; tr.) to ~ to, with ("to change") (what have they done to the center of the city? what have you done with your hair?) 12. (d; tr.) to ~ with ("to use for") (what should we ~ with this old typewriter?) 13. (d; tr.) to ~ with ("to concern") (their suggestion has/is nothing to ~ with the problem) 14. (d; intr.) to ~ without ("to manage without") (we had to ~ without fresh fruit) 15. (G; only in the perfect) he is (AE)/has (CE) done talking 16. (P; intr.) ("to fare") she is ~ing very well; he is ~ing nicely; our business is ~ing very well financially 17. (misc.) you did well to tell me; she could ~ with a long vacation (see also **doing**, **done**) USAGE NOTE: In the meaning "to fare", the verb *do* can have a medical meaning – the patient is doing well after the operation; mother and child are doing well after a difficult delivery.

do away *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to eliminate") (they did away with that department several years ago)

dock I *n.* ["basin for ships"] 1. to go into ~ 2. a dry, floating ~ 3. at, on a ~; in (a) ~ (there was labor trouble down at the ~s; the ship was in ~) ["wharf; jetty"] (AE) 4. at, on a ~ (there was labor trouble down at/on the ~s)

dock II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (the ship ~ed at Portsmouth) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (the spaceship ~ed with the satellite)

dock III *n.* ["place for the accused in a court"] to put smb. in the ~

dock IV *v.* (D; tr.) ("to deduct, take") to ~ by; for; from (they ~ed ten dollars from her wages for being late = they ~ed her wages by ten dollars for being late)

docket *n.* ["agenda"] on the ~

doctor *n.* 1. a family; NHS; private ~ (you should register with an NHS ~ if you move to a new area) 2. a witch ~ 3. a barefoot ~ ("an auxiliary medical worker in a rural area, esp. in China") 4. ~s prescribe medication 5. ~s examine; see; treat (their) patients 6. (misc.) to see ("consult") a ~; a spin ~ ("one who puts a special interpretation on events")

doctorate *n.* 1. to award, grant a ~ 2. to earn; get, obtain, receive; have, hold a ~ 3. an earned (AE = "completed and awarded"); honorary ~ 4. a ~ from; in (a ~ in physics from Cambridge)

doctrine *n.* 1. to apply; preach a ~ 2. to establish a ~ 3. to disprove a ~ 4. (a) sound ~ 5. a basic; defense; religious ~ 6. a point of; body of ~ (there are only a few disputed points of ~ in that whole vast body of ~) 7. a ~ that + clause (it was their basic ~ that nothing was better than free trade)

document *n.* ["general sense"] 1. to draw up; issue; sign a ~ 2. to file; store ~s 3. (esp. AE) to notarize a ~ 4. to classify; declassify a ~ 5. to falsify; forge a ~ 6. to shred ~s 7. a classified; confidential; historic; legal; official; restricted; secret; top-secret ~ 8. an authentic ~ 9. a ~ about, concerning ["computers"] 10. to create; display; edit; retrieve a ~

documentary *n.* 1. to film; make a ~ 2. to show a ~ 3. a ~ about, on 4. in a ~ (there were real revelations in the fly-on-the-wall ~ she made about the organization)

documentation *n.* 1. to provide ~ for 2. adequate, appropriate, proper; inadequate, insufficient, weak; strong ~

dodge I *n.* a tax ~

dodge II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ behind (to ~ behind a door) 2. (rare) (G) he ~d serving in the armed forces

dodger *n.* ["evader"] a draft; tax ~

dog *n.* 1. to breed; keep; train ~s 2. to walk a ~ (on a leash) 3. to muzzle a ~ 4. (AE) to curb one's ~ 5. a mad, rabid; stray; vicious; wild ~ 6. a bird (AE), gun (BE); Eskimo; guard (BE), watchdog; guide, seeing-eye (AE); hunting ~; lapdog (also fig.); pet; police; sheep; sniffer (esp. BE); toy ~; working ~ 7. ~s bark; bite; growl; howl; salivate; snap; snarl; wag their tails; whine; yelp 8. a pack of (wild) ~s 9. a young ~ is a pup(py) 10. a female ~ is a bitch 11. (misc.) ~s have hair and cats have hair or fur; a lucky ~ ("a lucky person"); a running ~ ("a lackey"); a ~'s life ("a wretched existence"); to fight like cat and ~ (BE), to fight like cats and ~s (AE); to work like a ~ ("to work very hard") USAGE NOTES: 1. In CE a *police dog* is one used by the police; in AE it can also mean a breed of dog called a *German shepherd* in AE and an *Alsatian* in BE. 2. You can praise a dog by saying "Good dog!" and scold it by saying "Bad dog!"

dogfight *n.* ["aerial combat"] (also fig.) to engage in a ~

doghouse *n.* (AE) ["disfavor"] (colloq.) in the ~

dogma *n.* (an) economic; political; religious ~ (are people beginning to question or even to reject the economic ~s of the past?)

dogmatic *adj.* ~ about

doily *n.* a lace; linen; paper ~

doing *n.* 1. that took some ~! ("that required great effort") 2. that's none/not of my ~!

doldrums *n.* (colloq.) ["stagnation"] in the ~

dole *n.* (colloq.) (BE) ["unemployment insurance"] off; on the ~ (to be on the ~; to go on/sign on the ~ until you find paid employment and can come off the ~)

dole out *v.* (B) she ~d out some food to the children = she ~d some food out to the children

doll *n.* 1. a baby, Barbie (T); china; Kewpie (T); paper; rag ~ 2. (misc.) a dollhouse (AE), doll's ~ (BE) (to play with ~s in a dollhouse)

dollar *n.* 1. a half; silver ~ 2. a falling; rising; strong; weak ~ (the international markets experienced difficulties with the falling ~) 3. (misc.) the ~ was strong against the euro

doll up *v.* (colloq.) (D; refl., tr.) to ~ for (she ~ed herself up for the party)

dolphin *n.* 1. a school of ~s 2. a young ~ is a calf 3. a female ~ is a cow 4. a male ~ is a bull

domain *n.* ["sector"] the public ~ (in the public ~)

dominance *n.* 1. ~ in 2. ~ over (their ~ over everyone else in the arts and sciences)

domination *n.* 1. world ~ 2. ~ over 3. under smb.'s ~

dominion *n.* ~ over ("we hold Dominion over palm and pine" – "Recessional," Rudyard Kipling (1865–1936))

donate *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ money for a charity) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to, towards (to ~ money to a charity towards the funding of a helpline)

donation *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. to send in a ~ 3. a charitable; voluntary ~ 4. a big, generous, large, sizable; small ~ 5. a ~ to (to make a ~ to a charity) 6. in ~s (to receive vast sums in ~s)

done *adj.* 1. ~ with (we're ~ with the chores) 2. (BE) to have ~ with (we've ~ with the plates) 3. (misc.) after that hike, I'm ~ for ("I'm completely exhausted")

donkey *n.* 1. to ride (on) a ~ 2. ~s bray, go heehaw, heehaw

donor *n.* 1. an anonymous; generous ~ 2. a blood; organ ~

doom I *n.* 1. to seal smb.'s ~ 2. to go to, meet one's ~ 3. impending ~ 4. (misc.) the crack of ~; a sense of ~ hung over us

doom II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (that will ~ him to oblivion)

doomed *adj.* 1. ~ to (~ to disappointment; ~ to failure) 2. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to eke out a miserable existence)

door *n.* 1. to hang a ~ 2. to bar, bolt; close, shut; lock; open; slam; unlock a ~ 3. to break down, force a ~ 4. to knock at, on a ~ 5. to answer the ~ 6. the ~ is ajar; bolted; closed; locked; open; unlocked 7. a back; double; French (AE; BE has *French window*); front, main; revolving; screen; side; sliding; stage; storm (esp. AE) ~ (see also **back door**) 8. a ~ closes, shuts; creaks, squeaks; jams; opens; slams shut 9. a ~ to (the ~ to this room is never locked) 10. at the ~ (who is at the ~ ?) 11. (misc.) behind closed ~s ("in secret"); they live next ~ to us; to sell from ~ to ~; to close the ~ on any compromise ("to rule out the possibility of any compromise"); at death's ~ ("almost dead"); to show smb. the ~ ("to ask smb. to leave") (see also *show smb. to the door* at **show II**)

doorbell *n.* 1. to ring a ~ 2. to answer a ~ 3. a ~ rings

doornail *n.* (misc.) as dead as a ~

doorstep *n.* at, on smb.'s ~ ("very close")

doorway *n.* 1. (fig.) the ~ to (the ~ to freedom) 2. in; through the ~ (she stood in the ~ and then stepped through it)

dope *n.* ["drugs"] (colloq.) to take ~

doped up *adj.* (colloq.) 1. ~ on (~ on pills) 2. ~ with (~ with medication)

dormancy *n.* (in) a state of ~

dormant *adj.* to lie, remain, stay ~

dose *n.* 1. to administer, give a ~ 2. to measure out a ~ 3. to receive; take a ~ 4. a fatal, lethal ~ (see also **overdose**) 5. a heavy, massive, strong ~ 6. a light, small, weak ~ 7. (misc.) she received a massive ~ of radiation; in small ~s (also fig.) (your brother-in-law is all right – in small ~s!)

dosed up *adj.* ~ with (she was ~ with cough medicine)

dossier *n.* to have; keep a ~ on smb.

dot *n.* 1. a tiny ~ 2. (misc.) on the ~ ("precisely") (see also *from the year dot* at **year**)

dotage *n.* to be in one's ~

dote *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (she ~s on her grandchildren)

dotted *adj.* ~ with

dotted line *n.* to sign on the ~ ("to agree to smt. by signing a document")

double I *n.* ["accelerated pace"] 1. at, on (esp. AE) the ~ ["betting"] 2. the daily ~ ["misc."] 3. more than ~ (here it costs more than ~ its price abroad!)

double II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to do smt. additional") to ~ as (the gardener ~d as the chauffeur) 2. to more than ~ (its price has more than ~d in only a few short years!)

double back *v.* (P; intr.) she ~d back towards the park

double-date *v.* (colloq.; esp. AE) (D; intr.) to ~ with

double fault *n.* (tennis) to commit a ~

double figures *n.* in ~ (inflation was in ~)

doubles *n.* (tennis) 1. to play ~ but not singles 2. ladies' (BE), women's; men's; mixed ~ 3. (misc.) to play in the ~ but not in the singles

double up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to share living accommodations") to ~ with 2. (misc.) to ~ in pain

doubt I *n.* 1. to plant; raise (a) ~ (her proposal raised serious ~s in my mind) 2. to cast ~ on 3. to feel ~; to entertain, harbor, have ~s about 4. to express, voice (a) ~ 5. to allay, clear up, dispel, resolve a ~ 6. (a) deep, serious, strong; gnawing; lingering; reasonable; slight ~ 7. ~s appear, arise; exist; persist 8. a ~ about, of 9. (a) ~ that + clause (he expressed serious ~ that he could finish the job on time) 10. beyond (a shadow of) (a) ~; without a ~ 11. in ~ (the result was never in serious ~) 12. (misc.) to give smb. the benefit of the ~; (colloq.) there is no ~ about it: she's the best; you say she's the best – but I have my ~s (about that) USAGE NOTE: Some purists recommend that *whether* or the more informal *if* be used with the noun *doubt*, especially in the meaning "uncertainty" – she expressed doubt (about/as to) whether they would finish on time ("she was not certain whether they would finish on time"). In the meaning of "disbelief", the conjunction *that* is common – she expressed doubt that they would finish on time ("she did not believe that they would finish on time"). Note that in interrogative sentences the use of *that* prevails – is there any doubt that they will finish on time? In negative sentences the conjunction *that* must be used – there is no doubt that they will finish on time.

doubt II *v.* 1. to ~ strongly, very much 2. (L, Q) I ~ that/if/whether she will want to participate USAGE NOTE: See the Usage Note for **doubt I**. Thus, to express "uncertainty", one can say – she doubted whether they would finish on time. To express "disbelief", one can say – she doubted that they would finish on time. In negative sentences, only *that* is used – she doesn't doubt that they will finish on time.

doubtful *adj.* 1. ~ about, of 2. ~ that/if/whether + clause (it's ~ that she will be present) USAGE NOTE: See the Usage Note for **doubt I**. Thus, to express "uncertainty", one can say – it is/I am doubtful whether they will finish on time. To express "disbelief", one can say – it is/I am doubtful that they will finish on time.

dough *n.* 1. to knead, mix, roll (out), work ~ 2. flaky; firm; stiff ~ 3. ~ rises 4. a lump, piece of ~

doughnuts, donuts *n.* 1. to make ~ 2. glazed; jelly ~

dove *n.* 1. a gentle ~ 2. ~s coo

dovetail *v.* (D; tr., intr.) ("to fit") to ~ into, with

down I *adj.* (colloq.) ["angry"] ~ on (he's ~ on us)

down II *adv.* 1. ~ against (the dollar was ~ against the yen) ["dependent"] (BE) 2. ~ to (the fault is ~ to you; the decision is ~ to you; it's ~ to you to decide; it's ~ to you whether we go) ["misc."] 3. ~ on one's luck; we were ~ to our last five dollars; ~ with tyranny!; inflation is ~ by ten percent; that topic was ~ for discussion (see also **upside down**)

downfall *n.* 1. to bring about smb.'s ~; to hasten smb.'s ~; to lead to smb.'s ~ 2. to head for a ~

downgrade *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (our embassy was ~d to a legation)

downhill *adv.* to go ~ (also fig.)

download *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a program to a computer)

down payment *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. a ~ on

downpour *n.* 1. a brief; steady; sudden; torrential ~ 2. caught in a ~

downsizing *n.* corporate ~

downstairs *adv.* to come; go; run; walk ~

downturn *n.* 1. a modest, slight ~ 2. a sharp ~ 3. a ~ in (there was a sharp ~ in the economy = there was a sharp economic ~) 4. (misc.) the economy took a slight ~

dowry *n.* to provide a ~ for

dozen *n.* 1. a baker's; a half ~, half a ~; a round ~ 2. by the ~ (they're cheaper by the ~)

draft I *n.* ["rough copy"] 1. to make, prepare a ~ 2. a final, polished; first, preliminary, rough; working ~ ["conscription"] (AE) 3. to abolish, end; introduce the ~ 4. to avoid; dodge, evade; resist the ~ ["current of air"] 5. to feel; sit in a ~ (I felt a cold ~ of air blowing on my neck) ["order for payment"] 6. to honor a ~ 7. a bank ~ 8. a ~ for; on (a ~ on the Paris branch of our bank for one thousand pounds) ["drawing of liquid"] 9. on ~ (beer on ~) USAGE NOTE: BE prefers the spelling *draught* in senses 5 and 9.

draft II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to conscript") (AE) to ~ into (to ~ young people into the army) 2. (H) they ~ed her to serve as their delegate

draft in *v.* (BE) (H) they ~ed her in to serve as their delegate (see **draft II**, 2)

drag I *n.* ["puff"] 1. to have, take a ~ (at/on a cigarette) ["obstacle"] (colloq.) 2. a ~ on (a ~ on the economy) ["street"] (colloq.) 3. the main ~ ["women's clothing worn by a male transvestite"] (slang) 4. in ~ (see also *drag queen* at **queen**)

drag II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to search at the bottom of a lake, river, sea") to ~ for (to ~ for a body) 2. (D; tr.) ("to search") to ~ for (they ~ged the lake for the body) 3. (d; intr.) ("to draw deeply") to ~ on (to ~ on a pipe) 4. (P; tr.) ("to pull, tug") they ~ged the tables into the garden; to be ~ged into a war; we ~ged the old sofa out of the house; they ~ged the logs through the forest; they ~ged him (over) to the door

drag down *v.* (usu. fig.) 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. down into the gutter) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (If you ruin my life I'll ~ you down with me!)

dragnet *n.* 1. to cast a ~ (to apprehend a criminal) 2. a police ~

dragoon *v.* (d; intr.) ("to coerce") to ~ into

drain I *n.* 1. to clean out, clear, unblock, unclog a ~ 2. to block, clog a ~ 3. (misc.) a brain ~; supporting them is a ~ on our resources; to go down the ~ ("to be lost")

drain II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ from (the blood ~ed from his face when he heard the news) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ of (~ the tank of all water) 3. (N; used with an adjective) they ~ed the swamps dry 4. (P; intr., tr.) they ~ed all the water from/out of the tank; they ~ed the liquid into the basin; they ~ed the water out of the basement; the liquid ~ed through a porous layer 5. (s) the swamp eventually ~ed dry

drama *n.* 1. a courtroom ~; docudrama; epic; historical; television ~ 2. high ~ 3. a ~ unfolds 4. a ~ about 5. in a ~ (see also *drama queen* at **queen**)

dramatics *n.* 1. to study ~ 2. amateur ~

drape *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ around, over (she ~d her scarf around her shoulders) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in, with (he was ~d in a sheet)

drapes *n.* (AE; CE has *curtains*) 1. to hang, put up ~ 2. to close, draw; draw, open the ~ 3. window ~ 4. a pair of ~

draught (BE) see **draft I** 5, 9

draughts *n.* (BE) see **checkers**

draw I *n.* ["act of drawing a weapon"] 1. on the ~ (quick on the ~) (also fig.) 2. (misc.) to beat smb. to the ~ ["lottery"] (esp. BE) 3. to hold a ~ (AE has *drawing*) 4. a prize ~ ["misc."] 5. the luck of the ~ ("pure chance") ["tied game"] 6. to end in a ~ 7. a ~ against, with (the match against Liverpool ended in a goalless ~)

draw II *v.* 1. (C) ("to sketch") ~ a picture for me; or: ~ me a picture 2. (misc.) to ~ freehand 3. (D; tr.) to ~ against, on ("to take from") (to ~ a check/cheque against an account) 4. (D; intr.) ("to pick a number at random") to ~ for (to ~ for a prize) 5. (D; tr.) ("to remove") to ~ from, out of (to ~ money from an account; to ~ water from a well) 6. (D; tr.) ("to elicit") to ~ from (to ~ applause from an audience) 7. (d; tr.) ("to bring") to ~ into (they were drawn into the family quarrel) 8. (d; intr.) ("to move") to ~ into (the train was ~ing into the station) 9. (d; intr.) ("to puff") to ~ on (to ~ on a pipe) 10. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon ("to take from") (to ~ on one's reserves; to ~ on an account) 11. (D; tr.) ("to attract") to ~ to (to ~ smb.'s attention to smt.; what drew you to her in the first place?) 12. (d; intr., tr.) ("to move, to pull") to ~ to, towards (to ~ to a close; she drew me towards her) 13. (D; intr., tr.) ("to tie") to ~ with (our team drew (3–3, 3-all) with the visitors) 14. (J) ("to sketch") the artist drew them looking out at the sea 15. (N; used with an adjective) ("to pull") ~ the rope tight 16. (misc.) he drew a gun on his opponent

draw ahead *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ of (she drew ahead of the other runners)

draw alongside *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ of (he drew alongside of our car) (esp. AE: CE has *he drew alongside our car*)

draw away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from ("to increase the distance from") (the leader drew away from the pack)

drawback *n.* 1. a major ~ 2. a ~ to

draw back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (she drew back from the edge of the cliff; she drew back from resigning from the government)

drawbridge *n.* to lower; raise a ~

drawer *n.* 1. to close, push in a ~ 2. to open, pull out a ~ 3. a bottom; top ~ (he pulled out the top ~ and took out of it what was in it) (see also *bottom drawer* at **chest**) 4. (misc.) a chest of ~s

draw up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ to (he drew up to the entrance) 2. (misc.) he drew himself up to his full height; she drew up even with us

drawing *n.* ["picture"] 1. to do, make a ~ (can you do me a ~ with an animal in it? = can you do me a ~ that includes/shows an animal?) 2. a rough ~ ["representation by lines"] 3. mechanical ~ 4. (a) freehand; line ~ ["lottery"] (esp. AE) 5. to hold a ~ (BE has *draw*)

drawing board *n.* ["planning stage"] 1. on the ~ 2. (misc.) back to the ~ (see also *drawing board* at **board**)

drawl *n.* 1. a Southern; upper-class ~ 2. (to speak) in, with a ~

drawn *adj.* pale and ~

draw off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (they drew off some coolant from the radiator = they drew some coolant off from the radiator)

dread I *n.* 1. to have a ~ of smt. 2. to fill smb. with ~; to strike ~ into smb. 3. to live in ~ of smt.

dread II *v.* 1. (rare) (E) I ~ to think what lies ahead!; she ~s to go to the dentist 2. (G) she ~s going to the dentist

dreadful *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to contemplate the possibility that there may be another war) 2. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that there may be another war)

dream I *n.* ["images seen while sleeping"] 1. to have a ~ 2. to interpret ~s 3. a bad; odd; recurring; wet; wild ~ 4. a ~ about, of ["hope"]["goal"] 5. to achieve, realize one's ~s 6. a childhood; visionary; wild ~ 7. a ~ comes true (getting that job was like a ~ come true!) 8. a ~ of 9. a ~ to + inf. (it was his ~ to become a teacher) 10. a ~ that + clause (it was only a ~ that she might be elected) 11. beyond smb.'s wildest ~s 12. (misc.) never in my wildest ~s did I imagine becoming President!; now I've got the job of my ~s!; "I want to become President!" "in your ~s, mate: you haven't a hope!"

dream II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, of 2. (L) she never ~ed that she would some day write dictionaries; "What made us ~ that he could comb grey hair?" – "In Memory of Major Robert Gregory" (1919), W.B. Yeats 3. (misc.) "I want to become President!" "dream on, mate: you haven't a hope!"

dreary *adj.* it was very ~ to do the same job every day = it was very ~ doing the same job every day

dredge *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ a river for a missing swimmer)

dregs *n.* the ~ of society

drenched *adj.* 1. thoroughly ~ 2. ~ in, with (they were ~ in sweat) 3. ~ to (we were ~ed to the skin)

dress I *n.* ["attire"] 1. casual, informal; evening, formal; fancy (esp. BE); national, traditional ~ 2. improper; proper ~ 3. in ~ (in informal ~) ["woman's frock"] 4. a casual; cocktail; evening (esp. BE = esp. AE *evening gown*); low-cut; maternity; party; summer ~ 5. a ~ is long; short; tight 6. a ~ fits (well) 7. in a ~ (she was in a summer ~) ["women's garment for sleeping"] (BE) 8. a nightdress (= esp. AE *nightgown*)

dress II *v.* 1. to ~ casually, informally; conservatively; elegantly, smartly; lightly; neatly; warmly 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ as (he was ~ed as a sailor) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for dinner) 4. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ in (to ~ in black) 5. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ a salad with oil and vinegar) 6. (misc.) to get ~ed; fully ~ed; poorly ~ed; provocatively, scantily ~ed; well ~ed; (mil.) ~ right!; ~ed to kill (in one's best and showiest frock)

dressing *n.* ["bandage"] 1. to apply, put on a ~ (to apply a ~ to a wound) 2. to change, replace; remove a ~ 3. a sterile ~ 4. a ~ comes off ["sauce"] 5. (a) salad ~ (who will make the salad ~?; this will make an excellent salad ~) 6. a ~ for (this will make an excellent ~ for any salad) 7. a ~ of (to make an excellent salad ~ of oil and vinegar) 8. in, with (salad in/with an oil-and-vinegar ~) ["misc."] 9. window ~ ("smt. presented to show only the favorable aspects") 10. power ~ (as when a female executive wears tailored suits and big shoulder pads)

dressing down *n.* ["scolding"] 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to get, receive a ~

dress up *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ as (he ~ed up as a sailor; they ~ed her up as a ballerina) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (she got ~ed up for the party)

dribble I *n.* (basketball) a double ~

dribble II *v.* (P; intr., tr.) she ~d the ball across the court; the milk ~d down my shirt

drier see **dryer**

drift I *n.* ["pile"] 1. a deep ~; a snowdrift ["movement"] 2. a ~ to, towards (a ~ to the right) ["meaning"] (colloq.) 3. to catch, get; lose the ~

drift II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into a life of crime) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with the current) 3. (P; intr.) the boat ~ed down the river; we ~ed from town to town; to ~ out to sea; to ~ towards shore 4. (misc.) to ~ apart; to ~ aimlessly

drift away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from shore)

drift back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (the strikers gradually ~ed back to work)

drill I *n.* ["boring tool"] 1. to operate, use a ~ 2. a dentist's; electric, power; hand; pneumatic; rotary ~ ["exercise"] 3. to conduct a ~ 4. (mil.) close-order; rifle ~ 5. an air-raid; civil-defense; evacuation; ~ (see also **fire drill**) ["procedure"] (BE) 6. (misc.) what's the ~? I don't know the ~

drill II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to prospect") to ~ for (to ~ for oil) 2. (D; tr.) ("to train") to ~ in (to ~ students in pronunciation) 3. (d; tr.) ("to instill") to ~ into (to ~ discipline into cadets)

drink I *n.* 1. to fix (esp. AE), make, mix a ~ 2. to pour a ~ 3. to down; have, knock back (colloq.*),* take; nurse a ~ 4. a cold, cool; fizzy (BE) ("sparkling"); hot; potent, stiff, strong; quick; still (BE) ("not sparkling"); warm; weak ~ 5. a mixed; soft ~ 6. over a ~ (we had a nice chat over a ~) 7. (misc.) to drown one's sorrows in ~; to buy a round of

~s; he took to ~ in his old age; a ~ of milk/water; food and ~

drink II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ from, out of (I always ~ tea from a glass) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ to (let's ~ to his success) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a toast to his success) 4. (misc.) to drink heavily; to ~ one's whiskey neat/straight; to ~ oneself to death; to ~ smb. under the table; don't ~ and drive

drinker *n.* a binge, hard, heavy; light, moderate; social ~

drinking *n.* 1. excessive; binge, hard, heavy; social ~ 2. (misc.) a ~ bout

drip I *n.* 1. a steady ~ 2. an intravenous; saline ~ 3. on a ~ (they put her on a saline ~ but took her off it the next day)

drip II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from (the water was ~ping from the tap) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (fig.) (she was literally ~ping with diamonds!) 3. (P; intr., tr.) water ~ped over me; oil ~ped onto the road; she was ~ping the juice all over the floor

drive I *n.* ["trip in a vehicle"] 1. to go for, go on, take (AE) a ~ 2. an easy ~ (it's an easy half-hour ~ (over) to their place: their place is an easy half-hour drive ¬away/from here¬; they live within half-an-hour's drive (from here)) 3. a test ~ ["campaign"] 4. to initiate, launch a ~ (for) (to launch a ~ for flood relief = to launch a flood-relief ~) 5. a charity; economy; fund-raising; membership; recruiting ~ 6. a ~ to + inf. (they launched a ~ to raise funds for flood relief) ["energy"] 7. the ~ to + inf. (does she have enough ~ to finish the job?) ["impulse"] 8. a basic; sex ~ ["type of propulsion"] 9. a chain; disk; fluid; four-wheel; front-wheel; rear-wheel ~ (see also **driveway**) [(in baseball)] 10. a line ~ (the batter hit a line ~ to center field)

drive II *v.* 1. to ~ fast; slow 2. (d; intr.; used with *-ing* forms) to ~ at ("to suggest") (what is she ~ving at?) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ from, out of ("to force") (to ~ an invader out of a country; they drove her out of office; the noise drove me out of my mind) 4. (d; tr.) ("to direct") to ~ through; with (to ~ a nail through a wall with a hammer) 5. (d; tr.) to ~ to ("to bring to") (to ~ smb. to despair/drink/distraction) 6. (H) ("to force") he was driven by necessity to steal 7. (N; used with an adjective) ("to make") he drove me crazy 8. (P; intr., tr.) ("to go; transport") I drove across town; she drove me past the station; who ~s the children to school? we drove through the park 9. (misc.) don't drink and ~

drive away *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from (we drove away from their house)

drive down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (we drove down to their house)

drive home *v.* 1. (B) to ~ a point home to smb. 2. (L; to) we could not ~ (to her) that we couldn't afford a new car 3. (Q; to) we must ~ (to her) how much a new car costs

drive over *v.* (d; intr., tr.) ~ to (we drove over to their house)

driver *n.* 1. a bus; cab, taxi; limousine; lorry (BE), truck; mule; tractor ~ 2. (BE) an engine ~ (AE has *engineer*) 3. a learner (BE), student (AE) ~ 4. a drunk, drunken; hit-and-run; reckless ~ 5. a careful, cautious, defensive, safe; designated ~ 6. a backseat ~

driver's license *n.* (AE) 1. to issue; revoke; suspend a ~ 2. to apply for; get, obtain; lose a ~ (BE has *driving licence*)

driveway *n.* (esp. AE; BE prefers *drive*) 1. to pave, surface a ~ 2. to share a ~ 3. a ~ between (a ~ between two houses)

driving *n.* 1. to do; share the ~ 2. careful, defensive, safe; careless, reckless ~ 3. city; highway (AE), motorway (BE); turnpike (AE) ~ 4. rush-hour; stop-and-go ~ 5. drink-driving (BE), drunk (esp. AE), drunken (esp. AE) ~ 6. (misc.) ~ under the influence (also DUI); (BE) he was fined for driving without due care and attention

driving licence *n.* (BE) (see **driver's license**)

drool *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) ("to show pleasure") to ~ over (they were ~ing over their new grandchild)

drop I *n.* ["fall"] 1. an abrupt, sudden; sharp; sheer ~ 2. a ~ in (a sharp ~ in the interest rate) ["depository"] 3. a mail ~ ["an insignificant amount"] 4. a ~ in the bucket (AE) = a ~ in the ocean (BE) (see also **drops**; *teardrop* at **tear I** *n.*)

drop II *v.* 1. (A; used without *to*) ("to communicate") ~ me a line when you get there; I ~ped her a hint 2. (d; intr.) ("to lag") to ~ behind (he ~ped behind the other runners) 3. (D; intr., tr.) ("to fall; to let fall") to ~ from (the book ~ped from her hand; his name was ~ped from the list) 4. (d; intr., tr.) ("to fall; to let fall") to ~ into (the stone ~ped into the water; I ~ped a coin in(to) the slot) 5. (D; tr.) ("to let fall") to ~ on (she ~ped a book on the floor) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ out of ("to abandon") (to ~ out of school) 7. (d; intr.) to ~ out of ("to disappear") (to ~ out of sight) 8. (D; intr.) ("to fall") to ~ to (prices ~ped to the lowest point in a year; everyone ~ped to the ground) 9. (misc.) prices ~ped by 15% from their level last year to their level this year; prices ~ped below last year's levels; to ~ dead

drop behind *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in one's work)

drop by *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for a drink)

drop down *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from (the apples ~ped down from the tree; she ~ped the apples down from the tree) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (I'll ~ this down to you)

drop in *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (I'll ~ for a visit) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on (~ on me at any time)

drop off *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to leave") to ~ at (could you ~ the books at the library? = could you drop the books off at the library?; could you ~ me off at the station?) 2. (misc.) to ~ (to sleep)

droppings *n.* animal ~

drops *n.* (med.) 1. to instill (technical), put in ~ 2. cough; ear; eye; knockout; nose ~ (see also **raindrops**)

drought *n.* 1. to experience (a) ~ 2. a prolonged; severe ~ 3. during, in a ~

droves *n.* in ~ (the tourists came in ~)

drown *v.* 1. (“to drench”) (D; tr.) to ~ in, with (to ~ the meat in ketchup) 2. (misc.) to ~ one’s sorrows in drink

drowsiness *n.* to induce ~

drubbing *n.* [“beating”] 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to get, take a ~ (our team took a ~) 3. a severe ~

drudgery *n.* sheer ~

drug *n.* 1. to administer, give; discontinue; inject; prescribe a ~ 2. to take a ~ (for) 3. to ban; test a ~ 4. a dangerous, toxic; mild; potent, powerful, strong; weak ~ 5. an addictive; habit-forming; hallucinogenic; non-addictive ~ 6. an ethical, prescription; generic; nonprescription, over-the-counter; proprietary ~ 7. an anti-inflammatory; miracle, wonder; sulfa (AE), sulpha (BE) ~ 8. a ~ wears off 9. (misc.) a ~ addict; a ~ dealer/peddler/pusher (see also **drugs**; *a drug on the market* at **market**)

drug abuse *n.* to combat ~

drugs *n.* 1. to do (colloq.), take, use ~ 2. to deal, peddle, push, sell, traffic in (illicit) ~ 3. hard; soft ~ 4. illegal, illicit ~ 5. on ~ (to be on ~)

drugstore *n.* (esp. AE; BE has *chemist’s*) at, in a ~ (he works at/in a ~)

drum I *n.* [“percussion instrument”] 1. to beat (also fig.), play a ~ 2. a bass ~; kettledrum; side; snare ~ 3. muffled ~s 4. the ~s roll [“cylinder”] 5. a brake ~ [“container”] 6. an oil ~

drum II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smt. into smb.’s head) 2. (P; intr.; tr.) the rain was ~ming against the windows; she was ~ming on the table with her fingers = she was ~ming her fingers on the table

drumfire *n.* [“barrage”] to keep up an incessant ~

drum up *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (he ~med up some business for us)

drunk I *adj.* 1. blind, dead, roaring, stinking ~ 2. to get ~ on (he got ~ on cheap wine) 3. ~ with (~ with power)

drunk II *n.* to roll (“rob”) a ~ (colloq.)

drunkard *n.* a habitual ~

dry I *adj.* 1. bone ~, as ~ as a bone 2. to go, run ~ (the well ran ~)

dry II *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ with (he dried himself and his children with a towel)

dryer *n.* 1. to turn on a ~ 2. to turn off a ~ 3. to load; unload a ~ 4. a clothes; spin (esp. BE); tumble (BE) ~ 5. a hair ~ 6. (misc.) is the ~ running? the ~ is off/on

dry off *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ with (he dried himself and his children off with a towel)

dub I *v.* (N; used with a noun) (“to name”) they ~bed him *Bud*

dub II *v.* (D; tr.) (“to provide with a new soundtrack”) to ~ into (to ~ a film into English)

dubious *adj.* 1. ~ about, of (AE) 2. ~ if (esp. AE), that (esp. AE), whether + clause (it’s ~ if they’ll come)

duck I *n.* 1. ~s quack; waddle 2. a young ~ is a duckling 3. a male ~ is a drake 4. (misc.) to take to smt. like a ~ (takes) to water (“to adapt to smt. quickly and easily”) (see also **sitting duck**)

duck II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ out of (“to evade”) (to ~ out of an obligation) 2. (P; intr.) (“to move”) we ~ed into the nearest building; she ~ed behind the partition; the children ~ed under the table

ducking *n.* 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to get a ~

dudgeon *n.* [“indignation”] in high ~

due I *adj.* 1. (cannot stand alone) ~ for (~ for a promotion) 2. (cannot stand alone) ~ to (her absence was ~ to illness) 3. to come, fall ~ (the note has fallen ~) 4. ~ to + inf. (the train is ~ to arrive at ten o’clock) USAGE NOTE: Purists prefer to use *due to* as an adjectival predicate phrase modifying the subject – her absence was due to illness. Otherwise, *because of* or *owing to* is preferred – she was absent because of illness; owing to illness she was absent

due II *n.* [“recognition, due credit”] to give people their ~ (I don’t like her but, to give her her ~, at least she never gave up!)

duel I *n.* 1. to have, fight a ~ (over) 2. to challenge smb. to a ~ 3. a ~ between; with (I fought a ~ with him over her = he and I fought a ~ over her) 4. a ~ to the death

duel II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ over 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (I ~ed with him over her = he and I ~ed over her)

due process *n.* (legal) 1. to deprive of; observe ~ (she was deprived of due ~) 2. (misc.) by; without ~ of law

dues *n.* 1. to pay ~ 2. annual; membership ~ (CE also has *membership fees*)

duet *n.* 1. to play; perform; sing a ~ 2. a piano ~

dukes *n.* (colloq.) [“fists”] to put up one’s ~

dumb *adj.* [“stupid”] (colloq.) (esp. AE) 1. to play ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to say that) [“mute”] 3. to strike smb. ~

dumbfounded *adj.* 1. completely ~ 2. ~ at, by (~ at the news) 3. ~ to + inf. (he was ~ to learn that his wife had left him) 4. ~ that + clause (he was ~ that his wife had left him)

dumbstruck see **dumbfounded**

dummy *n.* (BE) see **pacifier**

dump I *n.* [“place for dumping”] (esp. AE) 1. a garbage, trash ~; the town ~ (BE prefers *refuse tip*) [“dilapidated place”] (colloq.) 2. a real ~ (this town is a real ~) [“storage area”] 3. an ammunition; supply ~ (see also **dumps**)

dump II *v.* 1. (slang) (esp. AE) to ~ on (“to project bad experiences or feelings on”) (I have enough troubles of my own – don’t ~ on me!) 2. (P; tr.) they ~ed their bags unceremoniously (down) on the floor; the company was ~ing waste products in/into the river

dumping ground *n.* a ~ for

dumps *n.* down in the ~ (“dejected”)

dun *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. for payment)

dune *n.* a sand ~

dungarees *n.* a pair of ~

dunk *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ doughnuts in coffee)

dupe I *n.* an innocent ~

dupe II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (he was ~d into signing)

duplicate *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. in ~ (to prepare all documents in ~)

duplicity *n.* ~ in

duration *n.* 1. (a) long; moderate; short ~ 2. of a certain ~ (of short ~) 3. for the ~ (of the war)

duress *n.* under ~ (to sign a confession under ~)

dusk *n.* 1. at; before ~ 2. (misc.); from dawn till/to ~

dust I *n.* 1. to collect, gather; raise ~ 2. fine, powdery ~ 3. chalk; coal; cosmic; gold; radioactive; volcanic ~ 4. a cloud; layer; particle, speck of ~ 5. ~ collects; lies; settles (a thick layer of ~ had settled on the furniture) 6. (misc.) from ~ to ~

dust II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smt. for fingerprints) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smt. with insecticide)

dustbin *n.* (BE) (see **can I**, 1)

duster *n.* (see the Usage Note for **eraser**)

dusting *n.* a light ~ (of snow)

duty *n.* ["obligation"] ["service"] 1. to assume, take on a; report for ~ 2. to carry out, discharge, do, perform one's ~ 3. to relieve people of their ~ties; to suspend people from their ~ties 4. to shirk one's ~ 5. an ethical, moral; legal; professional ~ 6. a painful, unpleasant; pleasant ~ 7. a ceremonial; civic; official; patriotic; public ~ 8. supervisory ~ties 9. (esp. mil.) active; combat; detached; fatigue; guard; light; noncombatant; overseas; sea; special; temporary ~ (to see active ~) 10. a ~ to (a ~ to one's country) 11. a ~ to + inf. (physicians have a ~ to report such cases) 12. on ~; off ~ (who was on ~ yesterday? when do you get/go off ~? she was never on active ~) 13. (misc.) (a) dereliction of ~; a sense of ~; in (the) line of ~; ~ calls; (BE) a ~ of care to (to have a ~ of care to those in one's charge); smb.'s bounden ~ (formal) (it's her bounden ~ to report the incident to the police) (see also *(in) duty bound* at **bound IV** adj.; **tour of duty**) ["tariff"] ["tax"] 14. to impose a ~ on 15. to pay (a) ~ on 16. to lift a ~ from 17. to exempt smt. from ~ 18. customs; excise ~ties 19. (BE) (obsol.) (a) death ~ (CE has *inheritance tax*)

dwell *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a question; to ~ on one's personal problems; don't ~ on the past)

dweller *n.* a cave-; city-; cliff-; country-; lake-; town-~

dwindle *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ (away) to (to ~ to nothing)

dye I *n.* 1. to apply ~ to 2. natural; synthetic; vegetable ~s 3. (a) ~ fades; takes

dye II *v.* (N; used with an adjective, noun) she ~d the dress (a lovely shade of) blue

dynamite *n.* 1. ~ explodes 2. a stick of ~ (the stick of ~ she detonated exploded) 3. (misc.) (fig.) political ~

dynasty *n.* 1. to establish, found a ~ 2. to overthrow a ~ 3. a ~ begins; ends; lasts; rules

dysentery *n.* 1. to come down, go down (BE) with, get ~; have ~ 2. an attack; epidemic; outbreak of ~ 3. amebic ~

E

each *determiner, pronoun* ~ of (~ of them) USAGE NOTE: The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows. When a noun follows, two constructions are possible – we saw each student; we saw each of the students

eager *adj.* 1. ~ for (~ for success) 2. ~ to + inf. (she's ~ to help) 3. (formal; esp. BE) ~ that + clause (we were ~ that she should help)

eagerness *n.* 1. ~ to + inf. (we appreciate her ~ to help) 2. (misc.) in their ~ to please, they went too far

eagle *n.* 1. a bald; golden ~ 2. ~s scream; soar 3. a young ~ is an eaglet (see also *eagle eye* at **eye**)

ear *n.* 1. to perk up (AE), prick up; wiggle one's ~s 2. to pierce smb.'s ~s 3. a musical ~ 4. the inner; middle; outer ~ 5. smb.'s ~s perk up (AE), prick up; pop; ring 6. an ~ for (to have an ~ for music) 7. by; in; on ~ (to play music by ~; wear earrings in your ~s; wear a hearing-aid in your ~; I hit him on the ~) 8. (misc.) to be all ~s ("to listen attentively"); to lend an ~ to ("to pay attention to") ("Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ~s" – Shakespeare, *Julius Caesar*); to turn a deaf ~ to ("to pay no attention to"); to fall on deaf ~s ("to be disregarded") (our pleas fell on deaf ears = they were deaf to all our pleas); a cauliflower ~ ("an ear deformed by repeated blows"); to have smb.'s ~ ("to have access to smb. who is superior in rank"); to box smb.'s ~s ("to strike smb. on the ears"); the loud music grated on our ~s; up to one's ~s in debt ("heavily in debt"); to play it by ~ ("to improvise"); her ~s were burning ("she felt that others were talking about her"); to have a word in smb.'s ~

earache *n.* to have an ~ (esp. AE), to have ~ (BE)

eardrum *n.* a perforated ~

earful *n.* 1. to give smb. an ~ 2. to get an ~ (from)

earliest *n.* at the ~ (they will not arrive before tomorrow at the ~) (see also *at your earliest convenience* at **convenience**)

early *adj.* the train was five minutes ~

earmark *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ for (money has been ~ed for the new library) 2. (H) money has been ~ed to go to the new library

earmarks *n.* ["characteristics"] to have all the ~ of

earmuffs *n.* 1. to put on; take off; wear ~ 2. a pair of ~

earn *v.* 1. (C) his accomplishments ~ed respect for him; or: his accomplishments ~ed him respect 2. (misc.) well ~d (he got a lot of well-earned respect for his accomplishments and then took a well-earned vacation)

earnest I *adj.* ~ about

earnest II *n.* 1. in (deadly) ~ 2. in ~ about

earnings *n.* 1. annual, yearly; average; export, overseas; gross, pre-tax; invisible; net, take-home ~ 2. ~ from (average ~ from overtime rose significantly) 3. (misc.) earnings-related (an earnings-related pension)

earphones *n.* 1. to put on; take off; wear ~ 2. to plug in; unplug ~ 3. a pair, set of ~

earplug *n.* 1. to insert, put in an ~ 2. to remove, take out an ~ 3. a pair of ~s

earrings *n.* 1. to wear ~ 2. to put on; take off ~ 3. a pair of ~

earshot *n.* in, within; out of ~

earth *n.* ["our planet"] 1. to circle; orbit the ~ 2. the ~ revolves around the sun; rotates on its axis 3. above the (surface of the) ~; on (the) ~ (is there more land or more water on ~?) 4. (misc.) down to ~ ("practical"); who on ~ would ever do that?; what on ~ is that? (see also *the four corners of the earth* at **corner**) ["soil"] 5. a clod, clump, lump of ~ 6. above the; in the; under the ~ (to dig for gold under the ~)

earthquake *n.* 1. to record an ~ 2. a devastating, destructive; light; strong, severe ~ 3. an ~ strikes (a severe ~ struck the area) 4. the magnitude of an ~ 5. an ~ measures six on the Richter scale 6. in an ~

earwax *n.* to remove ~

ease I *n.* 1. at ~ (to put smb. at ~) (see also *ill at ease* at **ill**) 2. at ~ with (she feels at ~ with us) 3. (formal) for ~ in; for ~ of (for (greater) ~ in sleeping; for (greater) ~ of use) 4. with ~ (he can lift a hundred pounds with great ~; "O, he flies through the air with the greatest of ~, This daring young man on the flying trapeze." – George Leybourne (died 1884), "The Man on the Flying Trapeze" (song)) 5. (misc.) (mil.) (to stand) at ~

ease II *v.* 1. (N; used with an adj.) they ~d the door shut/open 2. (P; refl., tr.) they ~d the piano through the window; they ~d their way toward the exit; he ~ed himself into an armchair

easement *n.* ["right of way"] (legal) to grant an ~

ease up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (you should ~ on your workers: you've been pushing them too hard)

east I *adj.*, *adv.* 1. directly, due, straight ~ 2. ~ of (~ of the city) 3. (misc.) to face; go, head ~; northeast by ~; southeast by ~

east II *n.* 1. from the ~; in the ~; to the ~ 2. (AE) back ~ ("in the eastern part of the US") 3. (BE) out ~ ("in, to Asia") 4. the Far East; the Middle East, the Mideast (esp. AE); the Near East USAGE NOTE: The *Far East* refers to the countries of eastern Asia. The *Middle East* = (esp. AE) the *Mideast* refers to the countries of the eastern Mediterranean. The *Near East* is now generally an old-fashioned synonym of the preceding term; formerly it referred to the Balkans and the Ottoman Empire.

Easter *n.* at; for ~ (all the children came home for ~)

easy *adj.* ["not difficult"] 1. fairly; very ~ 2. ~ for (that job was ~ for her) ["lenient"] 3. (cannot stand alone) ~ on (you are too ~ on the children; go ~ on him: he's been sick) ["showing moderation"] 4. (cannot stand alone) ~ on (go ~ on the hot peppers) ["not difficult"] 5. (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (this book is ~ to translate = it is ~ to translate this book = this is an ~ book to translate; Bob is ~ to please = it is ~ to please Bob = Bob is an ~ person to please; it is not ~ to be a parent = it is not ~ being a parent; it is ~ for you to say that) 6. (misc.) as ~ as ABC, as ~ as falling off a log, as ~ as pie (there's nothing to it: it's as ~ as falling off a log!) ["misc."] 7. (colloq.) ~-peasy (there's nothing to it: it's ~-peasy!), (colloq.) (BE) ~-peasy Japaneesee; free and ~; "shall we eat in or out tonight?" "I'm ~." (colloq.) (BE); rest ~ – everything will be all right!

easy street *n.* on ~ (to be on ~) ("to be well off")

eat *v.* 1. to ~ heartily, like a horse, voraciously 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into, through (acid ~s into metal) 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ out of (our cat ~s out of its own dish) 4. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ with (to ~ with one's fingers) 5. (misc.) let's ~ in/out this evening; to ~ (up) everything on one's plate

eat away *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ at (the waves ate away at the shore)

eater *n.* a big, heavy; compulsive; fussy, picky; light ~

eavesdrop *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a conversation)

ebb *n.* 1. at a low ~ 2. on the ~ (the tide is on the ~) 3. (misc.) ~ and flow

eccentric *adj.* 1. ~ in (~ in one's habits) 2. ~ to + inf. (she thought it was ~ to go swimming at night) 3. (misc.) he was ~ enough to go swimming at night

echelon *n.* 1. (mil.) the forward; rear ~ 2. the higher, top, upper; lower ~s of society

echo I *n.* 1. to produce an ~ 2. to find; hear an ~ (her campaign for equal rights found an ~ in many hearts) 3. an ~ dies away; sounds (the faint distant ~ gradually died away)

echo II *v.* (P; intr.) the news ~ed around the world; the park ~ed to the sounds of the children; the courtroom ~ed with the shouts of the spectators; their screams ~ed through the corridors

eclipse *n.* ["obscuring of the moon or sun"] 1. a full, total; lunar; partial; solar ~ ["dimming of smb.'s influence"] 2. to go into ~ 3. in ~

ecology *n.* deep; human, social ~

economical *adj.* ["inexpensive"] ~ to + inf. (it's more ~ to go by bus = it's more ~ going by bus)

economics *n.* micro-economics; supply-side; trickle-down ~

economize *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on fuel)

economy *n.* ["frugality"] 1. to practice ~ 2. strict ~ ["economic structure"] 3. a capitalist, free-market, market; command; mixed; national; peacetime; planned; socialist; wartime ~ 4. the real ~ ("the production of goods and services by contrast with the financial and banking sectors") (has the credit crunch begun to affect the real ~ yet?) 5. an ailing, shaky, weak; sluggish; sound, stable, strong ~ ["the science of economics"] 6. political ~

ecstasy *n.* 1. pure, sheer; religious ~ 2. in ~ about, at, over 3. (misc.) a look of ~; they went into ~sies over the new furniture/at the thought of getting new furniture

ecstatic *adj.* ~ about, at, over (~ at being selected)

edge I *n.* ["margin, border"] (also fig.) 1. a cutting; jagged, ragged; sharp ~ (see also **cutting edge**) 2. at, by, near, on an ~ (she stood at the very ~ of the crater) ["advantage"] (colloq.) 3. to have, hold an ~ on, over 4. an ~ on (to gain a competitive ~ on smb.; what gives us an ~ on the competition?) ["misc."] 5. to take the ~ off smb.'s appetite ("to satisfy smb.'s appetite partially"); to be on ~ ("to be tense")

edge II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ out of (to ~ smb. out of a job) 2. (P; intr., tr.) to ~ one's way through a crowd; she ~d towards the door; to ~ gingerly along a narrow path

edge up *v.* ~ (D; intr.) to ~ to (she ~d up to the door)

edgy *adj.* (colloq.) ["nervous"] ~ about

edict *n.* 1. to issue an ~ 2. to recall, rescind, withdraw an ~ 3. a royal; solemn ~ 4. an ~ that + clause; subj. (the government issued an ~ that all prisoners ¬be/should be¬ released)

edification *n.* for smb.'s ~ (I said that for your ~)

edition *n.* 1. to bring out, publish an ~ (to bring out a new ~) 2. (of a book, dictionary) an abridged; annotated; corrected; critical; deluxe; enlarged, expanded; first; hardback; limited; paperback; revised; thumb-indexed; unabridged; unexpurgated; variorum ~ 3. (of a newspaper) a city, home; evening; final; morning; special ~ 4. (misc.) (BE) an omnibus ~ ("the rebroadcast of all the week's episodes of a soap opera or of a series"); the ~ went through three printings

editor *n.* 1. a city ~ 2. a copy (esp. AE) ~ (AE also has *copy reader*), subeditor (esp. BE); fashion; managing; news; political; senior; society; technical ~; editor-in-chief USAGE NOTE: In AE, *city editor* means "local news editor"; in BE it means "London financial editor". (See also the Usage Note at **desk**)

editorial *n.* 1. to write an ~ 2. to carry, publish, run an ~ 3. an ~ about, on (the paper ran a hard-hitting ~ on juvenile knife crime) (old-fashioned BE has *leader, leading article*)

editorship *n.* under the ~ of

educate *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ about, in, on; for, to (~d to one's responsibilities) 2. (H) to ~ smb. to do smt.

educated *adj.* highly, well; poorly; privately ~

education *n.* 1. to give, provide an ~ 2. to get, obtain, receive an ~ 3. to complete one's ~ 4. compulsory; formal; free ~ 5. private; public (AE), state (BE) ~ (private ~ is costly; funds for public ~ are scarce)

6. (BE) a public-school ~ 7. elementary (esp. AE), primary; higher, tertiary (BE); secondary ~; a college (AE), university ~ 8. adult (AE), continuing, further (BE) ~ 9. health; physical; religious; sex ~ 10. in-service; pre-professional; professional; vocational ~ 11. remedial; special ~ 12. a broad, general; classical; liberal ~; (a) progressive ~ 13. the ~ to + inf. (does she have enough ~ to cope with the job?)

eel *n.* 1. a conger; electric ~ 2. (misc.) as slippery as an ~

effect *n.* ["result"]["influence"] 1. to have, produce an ~ on 2. to heighten an ~ 3. to take ~ (the drug took ~) 4. to feel an ~ (I feel the ~ of the narcotic) 5. to mar; negate, nullify; sleep off the ~ (of smt.) 6. a beneficial, good, salutary; desired ~ (her calm manner had a salutary ~ on the children) 7. a dramatic; exhilarating; hypnotic ~ 8. a calculated; cumulative; deterrent; far-reaching; full; long-term; net, overall; practical; profound ~ 9. a limited, marginal; minimal; short-term ~ 10. an adverse, bad, deleterious, harmful; chilling; crippling, damaging, deadening, disastrous ~ 11. a domino; retroactive; ripple ("gradually spreading") ~ 12. an environmental; greenhouse ("warming of the earth's surface") ~ 13. a halo ("overly favorable judgment based on irrelevant factors"); knock-on (BE) ("additional") ~ 14. a placebo; side ~ 15. an ~ lasts; wears off 16. to good; little; no; some ~ ["operation"] 17. to put into ~ (to put new regulations into ~) 18. to come into, go into, take ~ (when does the new law take ~?) 19. in ~; with ~ (from) (the ordinance is still in ~; with ~ from tomorrow, the ordinance must be obeyed; the ordinance bans smoking with immediate ~) ["desired impression"] 20. for ~ (she said that purely for ~) ["meaning"] 21. to the ~ (he said smt. to the ~ that he might be late; words to that ~) ["reality"]["practice"] 22. in ~ (the ordinance is still, in ~, a denial of freedom of speech; their claim is, in ~, that they have been mistreated) (see also **effects**)

effective *adj.* 1. ~ against (~ against the common cold) 2. ~ in (~ in fighting forest fires) 3. ~ to + inf. (it would be more ~ (for you) not to respond to the charges)

effects *n.* ["belongings"] 1. household; personal ~ ["impressions"] 2. sound; special ~ ["results"] 3. to counteract the ~ (of) 4. ill; side ~ (they experienced no ill ~)

efficiency *n.* 1. to improve, increase, promote ~ 2. to impair ~ 3. fighting; maximum, peak ~ 4. ~ in (~ in combating absenteeism) 5. with ~ (to work with improved ~) 6. (misc.) (at peak ~)

efficient *adj.* 1. ~ at, in (she was very ~ at getting things done; they were very ~ in reducing waste) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is not ~ to set up two offices)

effigy *n.* to burn; hang smb. in ~

effort *n.* 1. to make, put forth an ~; to put ~ into 2. to concentrate; intensify; redouble one's ~s 3. to devote one's ~s to 4. to spare no ~; to make every ~ 5. to foil, stymie, thwart smb.'s ~s 6. an all-out, bold, concerted, conscious, furious, gallant, great, Herculean, heroic, massive, maximum, painstaking, sincere, strenuous, studious, superhuman, valiant ~ 7. a collaborative, joint, united ~ 8. an abortive; desperate; frantic; minimal; useless, vain ~ 9. best, ceaseless, unceasing; unsparing, untiring; wasted ~s (despite our best ~s, they failed to thrive) 10. a team ~; the war ~ 11. an ~ to + inf. (they made an all-out ~ to finish the work on time: the amount of ~ they put into finishing the work was unbelievable!; they made every ~ to finish on time) 12. with a certain ~ (it was only with great ~ that we could do the job)

effrontery *n.* the ~ to + inf. (he had the ~ to demand more money)

egg *n.* 1. to fertilize; hatch; incubate; lay ~s 2. to beat, whisk (BE); boil; crack; fry; poach an ~ 3. to candle ~s 4. an addled, bad, rotten ~; free-range; fresh ~ 5. a boiled; coddled; deviled; fried; hard-boiled; poached; raw; Scotch (BE); shirred (AE); medium-boiled; soft-boiled ~s 6. scrambled ~s, scrambled ~ (esp. BE) 7. a box; clutch of ~s 8. the white of an ~; the yolk of an ~ (see also **egg whites**) 9. (misc.) a bad/rotten ~ ("a bad person"); a good ~ ("a good person"); to have ~ on one's face ("to be in an embarrassing position"); (BE) to teach one's grandmother to suck ~s ("to try to tell smb. smt. that they already know") (see also **nest egg**)

egg on *v.* (H) to ~ smb. on to do smt. = to egg on smb. to do smt.

egg whites *n.* to beat, whip, whisk ~

ego *n.* 1. to bolster, boost, flatter smb.'s ~ 2. to bruise, deflate smb.'s ~ 3. an enormous, inflated, overbearing 4. an alter ~

either *determiner, pronoun* ~ of (~ of the two; ~ of them) USAGE NOTE: The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when *two* or a pronoun follows. When a noun follows, the following constructions are used – either student will know the answer; either of the students will know the answer.

eject *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from (to ~ from a disabled plane; they were ~ed from the room for disorderly conduct)

eke out *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to supplement or make last longer") to ~ by, with (he ~d out his meager pension (by) doing odd jobs) 2. (d; tr.) ("to get or earn with difficulty") (he ~d out his meager livelihood (by) doing odd jobs)

elaborate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on

Elastoplast (T) *n.* (BE) see **Band-Aid**

elated *adj.* 1. ~ about, at, over (~ at the good news) 2. ~ to + inf. (they were ~ to hear the good news)

elbow I *n.* 1. tennis ~ ("an elbow that hurts because of excessive exercise") 2. above; below; by the ~ (to take smb. by the ~; to amputate an arm below the ~) 3. at smb.'s ~ ("close to smb.") 4. (misc.) to rub ~s with smb. ("to have contact with smb."); (BE, colloq.) to give smb. the ~ ("to end a relationship with smb.")

elbow II *v.* (P; tr.) they ~ed me out of the way; he ~ed his way up to the front; she ~ed her way through the crowd

elbow grease *n.* ["great effort"] 1. to use ~ 2. to put ~ into smt.

elbowroom *n.* 1. to give smb. ~ 2. to have ~ 3. ~ for

elders *n.* 1. to respect one's ~ 2. the church; village ~

elect I *adj.* (placed after a noun) the president ~ (the minister designate met the president ~)

elect II *v.* 1. to ~ unanimously 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~ed as vice-president) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to (she was ~ed to the vice-presidency) 4. (formal) (E) he ~ed to become a physician 5. (H) she was ~ed to represent us 6. (M) the nation ~ed her to be vice-president 7. (N; used with a noun) the nation ~ed her vice-president

elected *adj.* democratically; popularly; unanimously ~

election *n.* 1. to hold, schedule an ~ 2. to call for ~s 3. to carry, win an ~ 4. to run for (esp. AE), seek, stand for (BE); win ~ 5. to decide, swing an ~ (her last speech swung the ~ in her favor) 6. to concede; lose an ~ 7. to fix, rig an ~ 8. a close, hotly contested; rigged ~ 9. a free (and fair); general; local; national; primary; runoff ~ 10. smb.'s ~ to (her ~ to the senate was welcome news) 11. at, in an ~ (she was defeated in the last ~) 12. (misc.) ~ fever ("excitement before an election"); (BE) the runup to an ~ ("the pre-election period") (there was a lot of excitement in/during the runup to the ~)

electrical appliance *n.* 1. to plug in an ~ 2. to unplug an ~

electrician *n.* to call (in) an ~

electricity *n.* 1. to generate; induce ~ 2. to conduct ~ 3. to hook up, turn on the ~ 4. to cut off, disconnect, turn off the ~ 5. mains (BE); static ~ 6. ~ flows 7. (misc.) the ~ is off; the ~ is on; the ~ went off; the ~ came on/went on

electrocardiogram *n.* 1. to do; have an ~ 2. to interpret, read an ~

elegance *n.* 1. faded; sheer ~ 2. sartorial ~

element *n.* ["component"] 1. a basic, essential, key, vital ~ ["group"] 2. a foreign ~ 3. diverse; extremist; radical ~s 4. criminal; rowdy, unruly; subversive; undesirable ~s ["substance"] 5. ~s combine 6. chemical ~s ["natural environment"] 7. in one's ~; out of one's ~ ["factor"] 8. the human ~ ["misc."] 9. to brave the ~s ("to go out in bad weather")

elephant *n.* 1. a rogue ("wild") ~ 2. ~s trumpet 3. a herd of ~s 4. a young ~ is a calf 5. a female ~ is a cow 6. a male ~ is a bull 7. ~s have trunks and may have tusks

elevate *v.* (formal) (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smb. to the peerage)

elevation *n.* ["height"] 1. at a certain ~ (at an ~ of two thousand meters) ["raising"] 2. smb.'s ~ to (her ~ to the vice-presidency)

elevator *n.* ["device for raising and lowering people and freight"] (AE for 1–6; BE has *lift*) 1. to operate an ~ (an ~ operator operates an ~) 2. to call; take an ~ (we took the ~ to the tenth floor) 3. a down; express; self-service; up ~ 4. a freight (AE) ~ 5. a service ~ 6. a bank of ~s ["storage building"] 7. a grain ~

elicit *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

eligibility *n.* 1. ~ for 2. ~ to + inf. (~ to vote)

eligible *adj.* 1. ~ for (~ for promotion) 2. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to vote)

eliminate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

elimination *n.* 1. ~ from 2. (misc.) by the process of ~

elite *n.* a cultural; intellectual; party; power; social ~

elixir *n.* the ~ of life; the ~ of youth

elk *n.* 1. a herd of ~ 2. a female ~ is a cow 3. a male ~ is a bull USAGE NOTE: The European *elk* is the North American *moose* – though *moose* is now coming into use as an alternative name for the European *elk*, too. The North American *elk*, or *wapiti*, resembles the European *red deer*, but is larger.

elope *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (she ~d with her childhood sweetheart)

eloquence *n.* 1. flowery ~ 2. ~ about

eloquent *adj.* 1. to wax ~ 2. ~ about

E-mail, e-mail I *n.* 1. to send (an) ~ (to) 2. to get, receive; delete; print out (an) ~ (from) 3. by ~ (to send a message by ~) 4. to be on ~, to have ~

E-mail, e-mail II *v.* (A) they ~ed a message to me; or: they ~ed me a message (see also **fax II**)

emanate *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ from

emancipate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ serfs from bondage)

emancipation *n.* 1. political ~ 2. ~ from

embankment *n.* 1. a high, steep ~ 2. a railroad, railway ~

embargo *n.* 1. to enforce; impose an ~ 2. to place, put an ~ on 3. to lift, remove an ~ from 4. an arms; trade ~ 5. an ~ against, on 6. under ~

embark *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for France) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ on a new career)

embarrass *v.* 1. to ~ deeply 2. (R) it ~ed him to be caught cheating

embarrassed *adj.* 1. deeply, very ~ 2. financially ~ 3. ~ about, at, over 4. ~ to + inf. (he was ~ to be caught cheating) 5. ~ that + clause (he was ~ that he was caught cheating)

embarrassing *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for him to be caught cheating) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ for him that he was caught cheating)

embarrassment *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. to feel ~ 3. acute; deep ~ 4. ~ about, at, over (we felt ~ about the disclosure; his ~ at having been caught cheating) 5. an ~ to (his outburst was an ~ to his family) 6.

~ that + clause (his ~ that he was caught cheating) 7. to smb.'s ~ ((much) to his ~, he was caught cheating)

embassy *n.* 1. a foreign ~ 2. at, in an ~ (she works at/in the ~)

embed *v.* 1. to ~ deeply; firmly 2. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ in 3. (D; tr.) to ~ with (journalists ~ded with the invading troops)

embellish *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (she ~ed her story with a few lurid details)

embers *n.* 1. burning; hot; live ~ 2. dying ~ 3. the glow of (burning) ~

embezzle *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from

embezzlement *n.* 1. to commit (an act of) ~ 2. ~ from

emblazoned *adj.* 1. ~ across, on 2. ~ with

emblem *n.* a national ~

emblematic *adj.* ~ of

embodiment *n.* a living ~ (of an ideal)

embody *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in

embolden *v.* (formal) (H) what ~ed him to make the attempt?

embolism *n.* an air; cerebral; coronary; pulmonary ~

emboss *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ designs on wall paper) 2. to ~ with (to ~ wall paper with designs)

embrace I *n.* 1. a loving, tender, warm; passionate; tight ~ 2. in an ~ (clasped in a tight ~)

embrace II *v.* 1. to ~ passionately; tenderly, warmly 2. to ~ wholeheartedly (our party has ~d reform wholeheartedly = our party has wholeheartedly ~d reform)

embroider *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she ~ed a towel for me) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ on; with (she ~ed designs on the towel; she ~ed the towel with designs)

embroil *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ in

embroiled *adj.* ~ in; with

embryo *n.* 1. to implant an ~ 2. a human ~ 3. an ~ develops

emerge *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ as (he ~d as the leading contender) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from; out of (the sun ~d from behind the clouds; to ~ from the shadows) 3. (L) it ~d that she was an heiress 4. (s) they ~d unscathed

emergency *n.* 1. to cause, create; declare an ~ 2. a grave, serious; life-and-death; life-threatening; national ~ 3. a state of ~ 4. in case of an ~ (esp. AE); in (the event of) an ~

emigrate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from; to

eminence *n.* 1. to achieve, win ~ 2. ~ as (she achieved ~ as a painter) 3. ~ in (their ~ in the arts and sciences) 4. of ~ (a person of great ~)

eminent *adj.* 1. ~ as (she was ~ as a painter) 2. ~ in

emissary *n.* 1. a peace; personal ~ 2. an ~ to

emission *n.* 1. to control; reduce; test ~s (to try to reduce the level of harmful ~s) 2. sulfur (AE), sulphur ~s 3. a nocturnal ~ 4. the sun's ~s

emit *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smoke into the air)

emotion *n.* 1. to stir up, whip up ~(s) 2. to display, show; express ~ 3. to contain, control, curb, suppress ~ 4. bottled-up, pent-up, repressed; deep, sincere; strong ~(s) 5. conflicting, mixed ~s 6. a flood of ~; a wide range of ~s 7. with ~ (to speak with deep ~) 8. (misc.) her voice broke with ~

empathize *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

empathy *n.* 1. to feel; show ~ 2. ~ with

emphasis *n.* 1. to lay, place, put ~ on 2. great, particular, special ~

emphasize *v.* 1. (B) she ~d its importance to me 2. (L) she ~d to me that it was very important that everyone should come on time

emphatic *adj.* ~ about, in

empire *n.* 1. to govern, rule an ~ 2. to build, build up; consolidate an ~ 3. to break up an ~ 4. a business; colonial; commercial; industrial; publishing ~ 5. (misc.) *The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire* (1776–88) – Edward Gibbon; "[Britain] has lost an ~ but has not found a role." – Dean Acheson (1893–1971)

emplacement *n.* an antiaircraft; concealed; gun ~

employ I *n.* (to be) in smb.'s ~

employ II *v.* 1. to ~ gainfully 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as; (she was ~ed as a programmer in an IT company) 3. (H) to ~ smb. to solve a problem 4. (misc.) you'd be better ~ed looking after your children than chasing other women!

employee *n.* 1. to engage (esp. BE), hire (esp. AE), take on an ~ 2. to dismiss, fire, lay off, sack (colloq.) an ~; (BE) to make an ~ redundant 3. a government; white-collar ~ 4. a full-time; part-time ~ 5. a fellow ~

employer *n.* an equal-opportunities (BE), equal-opportunity (AE) ~

employment *n.* 1. to give, provide ~ 2. to find; look for, seek ~ 3. casual (BE); full; full-time; paid; part-time; seasonal; steady ~ (falling levels of ~ led to government policies aimed at restoring full ~) 4. ~ falls; peaks; rises 5. ~ is down; up (~ is way down over last year) 6. ~ as (to find ~ as a mechanic)

empower *v.* (H) to ~ smb. to do smt.

empty I *adj.* 1. half ~ (optimists say that the glass is half full; pessimists, that it's half ~) 2. ~ of (~ of meaning)

empty II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to remove from") to ~ from, out of (she ~tied the grain from the sacks) 2. (d; intr.) ("to flow") to ~ into (the Danube ~ties into the Black Sea) 3. (D; tr.) ("to make empty") to ~ of (she ~tied the briefcase of its contents) 4. (P; tr.) ("to put") she ~tied the cakes onto the plate; I ~tied all the toys into the bin

enable *v.* (H) to ~ smb. to do smt.

enamored, enamoured *adj.* 1. deeply ~ 2. ~ of, with (AE)

encase *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in

enclose *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in; with (to ~ a check in an envelope; to ~ a check with a letter; please find ~d with this letter a check for $25)

encore *n.* 1. to do; play; sing an ~ 2. an ~ to 3. as, for (as an ~ he played a short piano piece; that was great – but what will you do for an ~?)

encounter *n.* 1. to have an ~ (with) 2. a brief, fleeting; casual; chance; close ~ 3. an ~ between; with

encourage *v.* 1. ~ actively; strongly; warmly 2. to ~ greatly, no end, very much 3. (D.; tr.) to ~ in (she actively ~d us in our work) 4. (H) she actively ~d us to work harder 5. (K) she strongly ~d our working harder 6. (R) it ~d us greatly (to learn) that so many had/should have succeeded 7. (misc.) it ~s us no end when so many have succeeded

encouraged *adj.* 1. actively; strongly ~ 2. to ~ greatly, very 3. ~ at, by (we were very ~ at/by the success of so many) 4. ~ to + inf. (we were very ~ to learn that so many had/should have succeeded) 5. ~ that + clause (we were greatly ~ that so many had/should have succeeded)

encouragement *n.* 1. to give, offer, provide ~ 2. to find ~ in 3. warm ~ 4. ~ to

encouraging *adj.* 1. very; warmly ~ (warmly ~ remarks) 2. ~ for; ~ to 3. ~ to + inf. (it's very ~ (for/to us) to learn that so many had/should have succeeded) 4. ~ that + clause (it's very ~ (for/to us) that so many had/should have succeeded)

encroach *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ on smb.'s territory)

encrusted *adj.* ~ in, with

encumber *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with

encyclopedia, encyclopaedia *n.* 1. to compile, write an ~ 2. to expand; revise; update an ~ 3. to consult, look smt. up in, use an ~ 4. (humorous) a walking ~ 5. an article, entry in an ~ 6. in an ~ (is that name/subject (entered) in any ~?)

end I *n.* ["finish"] 1. to bring smt. to an ~; to come to the ~ of smt.; put an ~ to smt.; to reach the ~ of (a story) (we all want an ~ to violence – but how do we put an ~ to it?) 2. a violent ~ (she met (with) a violent ~) 3. at an ~ (her career was at an ~) 4. at the ~ (at the ~ of the word) 5. by the ~ (by the ~ of the year) 6. to the ~ (to the bitter ~) 7. (misc.) he met his ~ in a shootout with the police ["side"] 8. the deep; shallow ~ (of a pool) 9. the far, opposite; other ~ 10. from ~ to ~; from (the) beginning to (the) ~; on (its) end (to stand a box on its ~) ["purpose"] 11. to accomplish, achieve one's ~s 12. (misc.) an ~ in itself (should money be an ~ in itself or only a means to an ~?); to what ~? ["misc."] 13. to be on the receiving ~ (of) ("to be a recipient"); to make ~s meet ("to manage to get along on one's income"); to change ~s; to the ~s of the earth ("to the most remote parts of the earth"); in the ~ ("finally"); for hours on ~ ("for long periods of time") (see also *at the end of the day* at **day**; **dead end**; **loose end**; **fag end**; **loose ends**; **means** 5; *the end of the road* at **road**; *both ends of the spectrum* at **spectrum**; **tag end**; **tail end**; *the wrong end of a telescope* at **telescope I** *n.*)

end II *v.* 1. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ by (he ~ed his remarks by quoting Lincoln) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ in (the word ~s in a consonant; to ~ in a draw; to ~ badly/in disaster/in tears) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (he ~ed his remarks with a quotation from Lincoln)

endear *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ to (she ~ed herself to everyone by singing a song; his snide remarks didn't exactly ~ him to anyone)

endeavor, endeavour *v.* (formal) (E) he ~ed to remain calm

endemic *adj.* ~ among, in, to

ending *n.* 1. a happy; perfect; sad; storybook; surprise ~ (to have a happy ~; our dinner together was the perfect ~ to a wonderful week-end) 2. (grammar) a case; feminine; grammatical; inflectional; masculine; neuter; plural ~

endorsement *n.* ["approval"] 1. to give one's ~ 2. to get, receive smb.'s ~ 3. to seek smb.'s ~ 4. to withdraw; withhold one's ~ 5. a full; official; strong; qualified; ringing; unqualified; wholehearted ~ (there was wholehearted ~ for/of the plan from both ends of the political spectrum)

endow *v.* 1. to ~ richly 2. (d; tr.) to ~ with ("all men … are ~ed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights …" – the U.S. Declaration of Independence (signed July 4th, 1776))

endowment *n.* to provide an ~ for

end up *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ as (she ~ed up as governor of the state) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ by (she ~ed up by becoming governor of the state) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in a draw; to ~ in a free-for-all) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ with (I ~ed up with the estate) 5. (G) she ~ed up becoming governor of the state 6. (S) she ~ed up governor of the state; to start off/out poor and ~ rich

endurance *n.* 1. to test smb.'s ~ 2. physical ~ (astounding feats of physical ~) 3. the ~ to + inf. (does she have enough ~ to run the entire distance?) 4. beyond ~ 5. (misc.) smb.'s powers of ~

endure *v.* 1. (E) "he would not ~ to be defeated" – British National Corpus 2. (G) he couldn't ~ being defeated 3. (K) I cannot ~ his constant complaining! 4. (misc.) to ~ to the bitter end

enema *n.* 1. to administer, give an ~ 2. to get, have an ~

enemy *n.* 1. to conquer, overcome, rout an ~ 2. to confront, engage, face an ~ 3. to have an ~; to make an ~ (of) 4. an arch, avowed, bitter, deadly, implacable, insidious, irreconcilable, mortal, relentless, sworn, vicious; formidable, powerful ~ 5. a common, mutual; natural; political; secret ~ (are dogs and cats natural ~mies?) 6. a public ~ (public ~ number one) 7. (misc.) to be one's own worst ~

energy *n.* ["capacity"] 1. to apply one's ~ (to); to expend one's ~ (on) 2. to devote one's ~ to 3. to direct (one's) ~ to, towards; redirect one's ~ (to, towards) 4. to dissipate; sap smb.'s ~ 5. boundless, limitless, unflagging; latent; misguided ~ 6. an amount; burst; level of ~ 7. the ~ to + inf. (does she have the ~ to get all of these jobs done?) ["usable power"] 8. to provide ~ for 9. to consume; waste ~ 10. to conserve ~ 11. to harness ~ (to harness solar ~) 12. atomic, nuclear; electric; geothermal; hydroelectric; kinetic; renewable; solar ~ 13. sources of ~ (see also *energy crisis* at **crisis**)

enforce *v.* to ~ rigidly, strictly, stringently

enforcement *n.* 1. rigid, strict, stringent ~ 2. law ~

engage *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ smb. as a guide) 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ in (to ~ in sports; to ~ smb. in conversation) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ with (the first gear ~s with the second) 4. (esp. BE) (H) we ~d him to drive us round the city

engaged *adj.* ["busy"] 1. actively; directly; otherwise ~ (he couldn't come because he was otherwise ~) 2. ~ in, on (esp. BE) (we are ~ in conversation; we are ~ in/on (the project of) compiling a dictionary) USAGE NOTE: Consider the use of *engaged in* and *engaged on* in the following examples: two of the guests were *engaged* in (making) small talk/conversation.; he is *engaged* in writing a dictionary. = (*Brit*) he is *engaged* on a dictionary (project). = he is working on a dictionary (project).; he is *engaged* in/(*Brit*) on research. = he is *engaged* in (esp. AE)/(BE) on a research project. BE prefers *engaged on* before a noun or noun phrase, especially one that is countable (such as *dictionary* or *project*) rather than typically not countable (such as *research* or *small talk*). ["betrothed"] 3. to get ~ 4. ~ to (Bill is ~ to Betty) ["hired"] 5. (esp. BE) ~ to + inf. (he was ~ to drive us round the city)

engagement *n.* ["betrothal"] 1. to announce an ~ 2. to break (off) an ~ 3. an ~ to (her ~ to him was announced in the local paper) ["appointment"] ["obligation"] 4. to cancel an ~ 5. a luncheon; previous, prior; social; speaking ~ (he couldn't come because he had a previous ~) ["battle"] 6. to break off an ~ 7. a naval ~

engine *n.* ["motor"] 1. to crank, start; gun, race; jump-start; operate, run; rev up an ~ 2. to lubricate; repair; service; tune (up) an ~ 3. to cut, kill, switch off, turn off; start (up), switch on; warm up an ~ 4. an air-cooled; aircraft; diesel; donkey; electric; internal-combustion; jet; radial; reciprocating; rocket; rotary; (computer) search; steam; two-hundred horsepower; turbojet; V-8; valve-in-head ~ 5. a cold ~ (don't drive fast on a cold ~) 6. an ~ functions, runs, works; idles; starts; warms up 7. an ~ backfires; breaks down; dies, fails, stalls; floods; gets overheated; knocks, pinks (BE), sputters (the ~ died because there was no gas in it) 8. an ~ burns gasoline (AE), petrol (BE) 9. an ~ runs on gas (AE), gasoline (AE), petrol (BE), electric power; solar energy ["vehicle"] 10. a fire ~

engineer *n.* ["skilled specialist in a branch of engineering"] 1. a chemical; civil; electrical; flight; graduate; highway; marine; mechanical; metallurgical; mining; operating; sanitary; systems; transportation (esp. AE) ~ ["driver"] 2. a locomotive ~ (AE; BE has *engine driver*) ["technician"] 3. an operating; radio; sound ~

engineered *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (~ to last for a century)

engineering *n.* aeronautical; chemical; civil; electrical; genetic; highway; human; hydraulic; light; marine; mechanical; metallurgical; sanitary; systems; traffic; transportation (esp. AE) ~

English *n.* 1. American; Australian; Basic; Black; British; Canadian; Common, World; Indian; Irish; Malaysian; Middle; Modern; New Zealand; North American; Old; Scottish; South African; Singaporean; Welsh; West Indian, etc., etc. ~ 2. BBC; colloquial; current; idiomatic; the King's, the Queen's; Shakespearean; standard ~ 3. spoken; written ~ 4. broken, fractured; nonstandard; pidgin; substandard ~ 5. in fluent; good; plain ~

engrave *v.* 1. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ on (the events ~d themselves on my memory; a design was ~d on the dishes) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (the dishes were ~d with a design)

engrossed *adj.* 1. deeply, very ~ 2. ~ in, with (AE) (~ in one's work)

engulf *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in

enigma *n.* an ~ to

enjoin *v.* (formal) 1. (d; tr.) ("to forbid") to ~ from 2. (d; tr.) ("to order") to ~ on (to ~ a duty on smb.) 3. (H) ("to order") to ~ smb. to obey the law

enjoy *v.* 1. to ~ enormously, greatly, immensely, very much 2. (G) she ~s singing and swimming 3. (K) they ~ her singing 4. (misc.) to ~ oneself

enjoyable *adj.* 1. highly, very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to swim in the ocean)

enjoyment *n.* 1. to give, provide ~ 2. to derive, get ~ from 3. full, great; sheer ~ 4. for ~ (she's an amateur who sings purely for the sheer ~ of it)

enlarge *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to make larger") to ~ by (to ~ a photograph by ten percent) 2. (D; tr.) ("to make larger") to ~ into, to (to enlarge an office into a conference room) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon ("to discuss in more detail")

enlargement *n.* to make an ~ (of a photograph)

enlighten *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ about, on (can you ~ me on this subject?)

enlightening *adj.* 1. thoroughly, very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to read the old newspaper accounts of the incident)

enlist *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for three years) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in the army) 3. (H) we ~ed them to help

enlistment *n.* 1. to extend one's ~ 2. ~ in (~ in the Peace Corps)

enmeshed *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ in, with (esp. AE) (~ in legal details)

enmity *n.* 1. to arouse, stir up ~ 2. to feel ~ 3. to incur smb.'s ~ 4. (a) bitter; deep; longstanding; seething ~ 5. ~ against (AE), towards; among, between (she felt (a) deep ~ towards them; there was (a) deep ~ between her and them)

enough *adj., determiner, pronoun* 1. ~ for (that's ~ for me) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to know that they are safe; we've had ~ excitement to last a lifetime) 3. ~ of (~ of them) 4. (misc.) ~ and to spare = more than ~ USAGE NOTE: 1. The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows. When a noun follows, the use of *of the* limits the meaning – we have seen enough documentaries; we have seen enough of the documentaries/documentary that we discussed earlier. 2. *Enough money* is more common than *money enough* – he has enough money to retire = he has enough money (so) that he can retire.

enquire (BE) see **inquire**

enquiries *n.* (BE) (to assist in finding telephone numbers) 1. directory ~ (AE has *directory assistance* or *information*) 2. international ~ (AE has *international information*)

enquiry (BE) see **inquiry**

enrage *v.* (R) it ~ed us (to learn) that he had refused to help

enraged *adj.* 1. ~ at, by, over (we were ~ at his refusal to help) 2. ~ to + inf. (we were ~ to learn that he had refused to help) 3. ~ that + clause (we were ~ that he had refused to help)

enroll, enrol *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ as (she ~ed as a special student) 2. (D; intr., refl., tr.) to ~ for, in (to ~ for a course; to ~ students in a course)

enrollment, enrolment *n.* 1. (a) heavy, large; light, small ~ 2. open ("unrestricted") ~ 3. ~ for, in (the ~ in several courses went up)

en route *adv.* ~ from; to (they are ~ from Edinburgh to London)

ensconced *adj.* (cannot stand alone) 1. comfortably; firmly; safely; snugly ~ 2. ~ in (snugly ~ in an easy chair)

ensemble *n.* a brass; string; woodwind ~

enshrined *adj.* ~ in (these rights are ~ in the constitution)

ensnare *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in (~d in red tape)

ensue *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from

ensure *v.* (formal) 1. (A; usu. used without *to*) the present contract cannot ~ you a job 2. (K) I cannot ~ your getting a job 3. (L) no one can ~ that you'll get a job

entail *v.* 1. (G) this job ~s moving to another city 2. (K) this job would ~ your moving to another city

entangle *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in, with

entanglement *n.* 1. a barbed-wire ~ 2. ~ in, with

enter *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to come in") to ~ by (to ~ by the rear door) 2. (D; intr., tr.) ("to enroll") to ~ for (BE), in (to ~ smb. for/in a contest; they ~ed their horse for/in the race; I've ~ed for/in the mile run) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to participate in") (to ~ into negotiations) 4. (D; tr.) ("to put into") to ~ in; into; on (to ~ data into/in a computer; to enter data in/on a database) 5. (D; intr.) to ~ on, upon ("to begin") (to ~ on a new career)

enterprise *n.* ["ownership"] 1. free; private ~ ["undertaking"] 2. to embark on, start an ~ 3. a joint ~ 4. a commercial ~ 5. in an ~ (who is the most important person in this ~?) ["initiative"] 6. of ~ (a person of great ~ who shows ~ in everything she does)

entertain *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ by, with (to ~ children by telling them funny stories; to ~ children with funny stories)

entertaining I *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's ~ (for us) to watch people dancing)

entertaining II *n.* ["acting as a host"] to do ~ (they do very little ~)

entertainment *n.* 1. to provide ~ 2. adult; family; live; private; public ~ 3. ~ to + inf. (it was pure ~ to watch them dance) 4. to smb.'s ~ (to everyone's ~, she showed up in a clown's costume) 5. ~ for 6. for smb.'s ~

enthralling *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to watch them dance)

enthuse *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ about, over

enthusiasm *n.* 1. to arouse, drum up, kindle, stir up, whip up ~ 2. to demonstrate, display, show; radiate ~ 3. to blunt, dampen smb.'s ~ 4. to feel ~ 5. to lose ~ 6. boundless, contagious, great, infectious, unbounded, unbridled, unflagging, wild ~ 7. ~ grows, mounts, rises 8. ~ wanes 9. a burst of ~ 10. ~ for 11. the ~ to + inf. (they had enough ~ to continue the campaign in spite of the difficulties)

enthusiastic *adj.* 1. very, wildly; less than ~ 2. ~ about, at, over (she was less than ~ about my plan)

entice *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into a life of crime) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (they ~d the children with candy) 3. (H) the display ~d them to enter the shop

entice away *v.* (D; tr.) we could not ~ the children away from the cakes

entirety *n.* in its ~

entitle *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ to (your years of service ~ you to a pension) 2. (H) your years of service ~ you to receive a pension 3. (N) ("to call, name") they ~d their dictionary *The BBI* = their dictionary is ~d *The BBI*

entitled *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ["having the right"] 1. ~ to (you are fully ~ to a pension) 2. ~ to + inf. (you are fully ~ to receive a pension)

entrance *n.* 1. to gain ~ (to) (they gained ~ to his apartment) 2. to make an/one's ~ 3. a back, rear; front, main; service; side ~ 4. a dramatic, grand, triumphal ~ (to make a grand ~) 5. an ~ from; into, to (the ~ to this building) 6. at; through an ~ (go through the front ~ and wait for me at the rear ~) 7. (misc.) we were refused ~ into the country; she always makes a late ~; the police sealed off the ~ to the building

entranced *adj.* ~ at, by, over, with

entrap *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in, into

entreat *v.* (formal) (H) to ~ smb. to do smt.

entree *n.* ["access"] to gain; have ~ into, to

entrenched *adj.* 1. deeply, firmly ~ 2. ~ in

entrepreneur *n.* an independent; private ~

entrust *v.* 1. (B) he ~ed his money to me 2. (d; tr.) to ~ with (he ~ed me with his money)

entrusted *adj.* (cannot stand alone) 1. ~ with (I was ~with his money) 2. ~ to + inf (can he be ~ to be alone with little children ?)

entry *n.* ["headword and definition"] (in a dictionary) 1. to give, include an ~ 2. a main; run-on ~; subentry 3. at, in, under an ~ ["act of entering"] 4. to make an ~ (to make a triumphal ~; to make an ~ in a diary) 5. to gain ~ to (they gained ~ to his apartment) 6. to allow, grant; refuse ~ (they refused us ~ into the country) 7. forced, illegal ~ (of a burglar) 8. an ~ into (she announced her ~ into the presidential race; our ~ into the war) ["bookkeeping procedure"] 9. to make an ~ for 10. double; single ~ ["participation in a contest"] 11. to submit an ~ (to) 12. a winning ~

entry blank, entry form *n.* 1. to fill in, fill out (esp. AE) an ~ 2. to send in, submit an ~ for

entwine *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ around (the vines ~d themselves around the tree)

enumerate *v.* (B) to ~ the facts to smb.

enunciate *v.* 1. to ~ clearly 2. (B) she ~d her theory to her colleagues

envelop *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in

envelope *n.* 1. to address; open; seal an ~ 2. a pay ~ (AE; BE has *pay packet*) 3. an air-mail; manila; self-addressed; stamped; window ~ (the manila ~ contained an official document) USAGE NOTE: AE has *stamped self-addressed envelope*; BE has *stamped addressed envelope (SAE).*

envious *adj.* ~ of

environment *n.* 1. to clean up the ~ 2. to preserve, protect the ~ 3. to pollute the ~ 4. a clean, healthy ~ 5. a polluted, unhealthy ~ 6. a friendly, pleasant ~ 7. a hostile, unfriendly ~ 8. a social; working ~ 9. in an ~ (we try to create a friendly working ~ in which our staff can feel at home)

envisage *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (we ~ this dictionary as a handbook for serious students) 2. (G) she had not ~d marrying him 3. (J) we could not ~ them getting married 4. (K) we hadn't ~d her marrying him 5. (L) she had not ~d that she would marry him 6. (Q) we could not ~ why on earth she married him !

envision *v.* (AE) see **envisage**

envious *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ of

envoy *n.* 1. to dispatch, send an ~ 2. a peace; personal; special ~ 3. an ~ to (our ~ to Paris)

envy I *n.* 1. to arouse, cause; stir up ~ (of) 2. to feel ~ 3. to show ~ 4. out of ~ (she did it out of ~) 5. ~ at, of, towards 6. (misc.) an object of ~; consumed/green with ~

envy II *v.* (O) they ~ us our new house

epic *n.* 1. a folk; historical; Hollywood ~ 2. an ~ about

epicenter, epicentre *n.* at the ~ (of)

epidemic *n.* 1. to touch off, trigger an ~ 2. to contain, control an ~ 3. an ~ breaks out, strikes; rages; spreads 4. an AIDS; cholera; flu; measles; typhoid; typhus ~ 5. during, in an ~ (how many people died in the last flu ~ ?)

epigram *n.* to compose; deliver an ~

epilepsy *n.* to have ~

epilogue *n.* an ~ to

episode *n.* 1. a dramatic; funny, humorous; thrilling; touching; tragic ~ 2. during, in an ~

epitaph *n.* 1. a fitting, perfect ~ 2. an ~ for; on (lines that make a fitting ~ for a national hero)

epithet *n.* 1. to hurl ~s at 2. a harsh, offensive, vicious, vile ~

epoch *n.* 1. to mark; usher in an ~ 2. a glacial; revolutionary ~ 3. during, in an ~

equal I *adj.* 1. ~ in (~ in price) 2. ~ to, with (one kilometer is ~ to five eighths of a mile; ~ to the occasion; she felt fully – indeed more than – ~ to the task) 3. (misc.) all other things being ~ ("ceteris paribus") (all other things being ~, we might as well get the cheapest of the three)

equal II *n.* an ~ in (to have no ~ in political cunning)

equal III *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (no one could ~ her as a dancer) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in (no one could ~ her in dancing)

equality *n.* 1. to achieve, attain ~ 2. racial; religious; sexual; social; total ~ 3. ~ among, between; with (~ between the sexes) 4. ~ in (~ in pay) 5. ~ of (~ of opportunity)

equanimity *n.* 1. to maintain; regain one's ~ 2. to disturb, upset smb.'s ~ 3. with ~ (to react with ~ to upsetting news)

equate *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to, with (one should not ~ wealth with happiness; your likely royalties ~ to an annual salary of $5,000)

equation *n.* 1. to formulate, state an ~ 2. to reduce; solve, work (esp. AE), work out an ~ 3. a differential; first-degree; identical; integral; linear; quadratic; simple ~; an ~ in one unknown; an ~ in two unknowns 4. (misc.) the human ~

equator *n.* above; at, on; below the ~

equidistant *adj.* ~ between; from (the Equator is ~ from the North Pole and the South Pole, which means that it's ~ between the Poles)

equilibrium *n.* 1. to establish; maintain; regain; restore smb.'s ~ 2. to lose one's ~ 3. to disrupt, disturb, upset the ~ 4. in (a state of) ~

equinox *n.* the autumn, autumnal; spring, vernal ~

equip *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ for; with (her training ~ped her with the skills needed for her new job) 2. (H) her training ~ped her to cope with her new job

equipment *n.* 1. to install, set up; operate; test ~ 2. to maintain; repair ~ 3. audiovisual; camping; electronic; firefighting; military; office; sports ~ 4. heavy; light ~ 5. (the) ~ for (~ for road construction) 6. the ~ to + inf. (do you have enough ~ to do the job ?)

equipped *adj.* 1. badly, ill; well ~ 2. ~ for; with 3. ~ to + inf. (our hospital is ~ to handle emergency cases) 4. (misc.) to come ~ with (the flashlight comes ~ with batteries)

equity *n.* ["supplementary system of justice"] 1. in ~ (a suit in ~) ["value net of debts"] 2. negative ~ (the fall in house prices means some mortgage-holders are faced with negative ~) ["misc."] 3. private ~ (an old firm bought by a private-equity company)

equivalent I *adj.* ~ in; to (your likely royalties are ~ in real terms to an annual salary of $5,000)

equivalent II *n.* an approximate; exact ~

equivocal *adj.* ~ about

era *n.* 1. to introduce, usher in an ~ 2. the Christian, Common; Roman ~ 3. a bygone ~; the horse-and-buggy ~ 4. an ~ in (the automobile ushered in a whole new ~ in transportation) 5. in an ~ (in the Roman ~; in the ~ of the horse and buggy) 6. (misc.) the beginning of a new ~; the end of an ~ (her farewell performance marked the end of an ~) USAGE NOTE: The abbreviation CE (*Common Era*) is used by some non-Christians instead of AD. Thus, 1920 CE equals 1920 AD or AD 1920, and 100 BCE equals 100 BC. Likewise, the fourth century CE equals the fourth century AD and the fourth century BCE equals the fourth century BC.

erase *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

eraser *n.* a blackboard; ink ~ USAGE NOTE: In BE an *eraser* is usu. called a *rubber*; a *blackboard eraser* may be called a *duster*.

erect *adj.* to hold oneself ~; to stand ~

erosion *n.* 1. gradual, slow; severe ~ 2. beach; glacial; soil; wind ~

errand *n.* 1. to do, run an ~; to go on an ~ 2. personal ~s 3. a fool's ("useless") ~ 4. an ~ for (could you run an ~ for me?) 5. on an ~ 6. (misc.) an ~ of mercy

erroneous *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to assume that the press always prints the truth)

error *n.* 1. to commit, make an ~ 2. to compound an ~ 3. to correct, rectify an ~ 4. to admit to (making) an ~ 5. a cardinal, costly, egregious, flagrant, glaring, grievous, gross, major, serious; tragic ~ 6. a fatal; foolish; minor, slight ~ 7. a clerical; grammatical; printer's, typographical; programming; textual; typing ~ 8. a human; tactical ~ 9. (statistics) (a) random ~ 10. ~s abound; occur (~s abound on every page) 11. an ~ in (an ~ in judgment) 12. an ~ to + inf. (it was an ~ to appoint her = it was an ~ appointing her) 13. by, through ~ (her name was omitted by ~) 14. in ~ (her name was omitted in ~; she was in ~ in saying that) 15. (misc.) a margin of ~; by trial and ~

erudition *n.* 1. to display; flaunt one's ~ 2. great ~

erupt *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in, into (to ~ in a frenzied demonstration that ~ed into violence)

eruption *n.* 1. a volcanic ~ 2. a skin ~

escalate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ into (the local war threatened to ~ into a major conflict)

escalator *n.* 1. to take an ~ 2. a down; up ~ 3. an ~ carries its passengers

escapade *n.* a childish, schoolboy; wild ~

escape I *n.* ["act of escaping"] 1. to organize, plan, plot an ~ 2. to make an ~; to make good one's ~ 3. to foil, thwart an ~ 4. a daring, dramatic; hairbreadth, narrow ~ 5. an ~ from (an ~ from prison) 6. (misc.) they had a narrow ~ ["misc."] 7. a fire ~ ("an emergency staircase")

escape II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ from the police) 2. (G) a famous actor cannot ~ being recognized 3. (s) to ~ unhurt USAGE NOTE: *To escape from the police* means "to escape from police custody". *To escape the police* means "to elude the police without being caught".

escort I *n.* 1. to provide an ~ for 2. an armed; fighter; motorcycle; police ~ 3. an ~ for 4. under ~

escort II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from; to 2. (P; tr.) the president was ~ed through the city; they were ~ed out of the building

escrow *n.* 1. to place, put in ~ 2. to hold, keep in ~

escutcheon *n.* 1. an armorial ~ 2. (misc.) (humorous) a blot on smb.'s ~

espionage *n.* 1. to conduct, engage in ~ 2. industrial; military ~

esprit de corps *n.* 1. to develop (an) ~ 2. (a) strong ~

essay *n.* 1. to write an ~ about, on 2. a critical; literary ~ 3. a collection of ~s 4. in an ~ (see the Usage Note for **dissertation**)

essence *n.* 1. the very ~ of smt. 2. in ~ (their claim is, in ~, that they have been mistreated) 3. of the ~ (time is of the ~)

essential *adj.* 1. ~ for; to 2. ~ to + inf. (it is not ~ for all students to be present) 3. ~ that + clause; subj. (it is not ~ that all students ¬be/should be/are (BE)¬ present)

essentials *n.* the bare, basic ~

establish *v.* 1. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ as (the press ~ed him as the leading contender) 2. (L) the police ~ed conclusively that she was innocent of the crime 3. (Q) the police ~ed how the crime was committed

establishment *n.* 1. an educational; financial; political; research ~ 2. (misc.) to fight the Establishment ("to struggle against the established order")

estate *n.* 1. to administer, manage an ~ 2. a country ~ 3. (BE) a council, housing ~ 4. (BE) an industrial ~ 5. on an ~ 6. (misc.) to come into an ~ ("to inherit smt.")

esteem I *n.* 1. to hold smb. in high ~ 2. to fall; rise in smb.'s ~ 3. high ~ 4. self-esteem

esteem II *v.* to ~ greatly, highly

estimate I *n.* 1. to give, make; submit an ~ (the contractors had to submit ~s for the work/of the cost of the work) 2. (colloq.) (esp. AE) a ballpark ("approximate, rough") ~ 3. an approximate, rough; conservative; long-range; preliminary; realistic; short-range; written ~ 4. an ~ that + clause (it's my ~ that the interest rate will drop by two percent) 5. at an ~ (at a rough ~, the interest rate will drop by two percent) 6. by smb.'s ~ (by my ~, the interest rate will drop by two percent)

estimate II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ at (we ~d the cost at five hundred dollars) 2. (BE) (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for the repairs) 3. (L) we ~ that the cost will be $500 4. (M) we ~ the cost to be $500 5. (Q) we could not ~ how much the repairs would cost

estimation *n.* 1. to fall; rise in smb.'s ~ 2. in smb.'s ~ (in my ~ the situation is not critical)

estranged *adj.* ~ from (he was ~ from his wife)

estrangement *n.* (an) ~ between; from

etch *v.* 1. to ~ sharply 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in, into, on, onto (sharply ~ed into/in my memory; his name was ~ed into/on the glass) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ with (the glass was ~ed with his name)

ether *n.* under ~

ethic *n.* the (Protestant) work ~

ethical *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is not ~ to plagiarize)

ethics *n.* 1. business; medical; professional ~ 2. a code of ~

etiquette *n.* 1. to prescribe ~ 2. courtroom; diplomatic; legal; medical; military; professional; social ~ 3. the rules of ~ 4. (misc.) a breach of ~

etymology *n.* 1. to ascertain, determine, trace an ~ 2. (a) folk ~ (the professor explained the origin of the word as a/by folk ~)

Eucharist *n.* to celebrate; give; receive, take the ~

eulogy *n.* 1. to deliver a ~ (for) 2. a touching ~

euphemism *n.* a ~ for

euphoria *n.* a feeling; state; wave of ~ (about, at, over)

euro *n.* 1. a falling; rising; strong; weak ~ (the international markets experienced difficulties with the falling ~) 2. (misc.) the dollar was strong against the ~

evacuate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (the civilians were ~d from the city to the country) USAGE NOTE: Nowadays one can also have "the city was evacuated."

evacuation *n.* 1. to carry out an ~ (to carry out the ~ of civilians/of a city) 2. a mass ~ 3. an ~ from; to (the mass ~ of civilians from the city to the country)

evade *v.* (G) they ~ paying taxes by subterfuge

evaluate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ as (he was ~d as unfit for military service)

evaluation *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. a critical; fair, objective; realistic ~

evasion *n.* draft (AE); tax ~ (see also Usage Note at **avoidance**)

eve *n.* 1. Christmas Eve; New Year's Eve (on New Year's Eve) 2. on the ~ (on the ~ of the revolution) USAGE NOTE: In AE *Christmas Eve* means "the night before Christmas"; in BE it can also mean "the entire day before Christmas".

even *adj.* 1. to get ~ (with smb.) ("to avenge oneself by taking revenge on smb.") (don't get mad, get ~!) 2. (misc.) to break ~ (when betting)

evening *n.* 1. all ~; during the ~; in the ~ (they left early/late in the ~; they left in the early ~); ~s (AE), every ~; the next, the following ~; this ~; that ~; tomorrow ~; yesterday ~; a June ~; a summer ~; on any ~; on/during the ~ of (they left on the ~ of July 26); on Wednesday ~ = Wednesday ~ (AE) 2. an ~ of (after an ~ of conversation, they went home for the night) 3. from ~ (from ~ to night) 4. (misc.) the ~ drew to a close; (Good) Evening (, everybody)!; to have; spend an ~ (we had a pleasant ~ at the theater; we spent the whole ~ working on the report!)

event *n.* 1. an auspicious; major; outstanding; significant ~ (a ceremony to celebrate/commemorate/mark such a major ~) 2. a dramatic; earth-shaking, earth-shattering; sensational; spectacular; world-shaking ~ 3. a disastrous; tragic ~ 4. a historical; literary ~ 5. a gala; social; solemn ~ 6. a sporting ~ 7. a media ~ (to stage a media ~) 8. a blesséd ~ ("a birth") (old-fashioned) 9. the main ~ 10. current ~s 11. (sports) athletics, track-and-field (esp. AE) ~s 12. an ~ occurs, takes place 13. in the ~ that + clause (in the ~ that he comes/should come) 14. in an ~ (in the ~ of fire; in any ~) 15. (misc.) the media sometimes manipulate ~s; a chain of ~s, a sequence of ~s; a turn of ~s (a dramatic and unexpected turn of ~s); in the normal course of ~s; in either ~; at/in (AE) all ~s; in the ~ ("as it turns out") (I thought I'd win, but in the ~ I lost)

ever *adv.* 1. ~ so (much/many) (I feel ~ so much better now!; I saw ~ so many elephants!; Thank you ~ so much! = (BE) (colloq.) Ta, ~ so!) 2. hardly ~; if ~; rarely/seldom if ~ ("What, *never*?" "Hardly ~! He's hardly ~ sick at sea!" – *H.M.S. Pinafore* (1878), Gilbert & Sullivan) 3. (misc.) who ~ would do smt. like that?; what ~ is that?; why ~ not?

evict *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

eviction *n.* 1. to face ~ 2. (an) ~ from

evidence *n.* 1. to furnish, give, introduce, produce, provide ~ 2. to collect, gather ~ 3. to dig up, find, turn up, unearth ~ 4. to piece together ~ 5. to fabricate, falsify, trump up ~ 6. to plant ~ (on smb.) 7. to tamper with ~ 8. to conceal; destroy; suppress; withhold ~ 9. to corroborate (the) ~ 10. to turn King's (BE), Queen's (BE), state's (AE) ~ 11. ample, overwhelming, strong, substantial; clear, cogent, compelling, convincing; conclusive; concrete, hard; incontestable, indisputable, irrefutable, undeniable, unquestionable; reliable, trustworthy; satisfactory ~ 12. direct; documentary; fresh, new; material; prima facie; statistical ~ 13. admissible; anecdotal; circumstantial; forensic; hearsay; inadmissible; scientific ~ 14. conflicting; damaging; inconclusive; telltale ~ 15. (the) ~ indicates, points to, suggests 16. a body of ~ 17. a piece; scrap, shred of ~ 18. ~ against; for, in favor of 19. ~ that + clause (the defendant's lawyer produced conclusive ~ that the accused could not have been at the scene of the crime) 20. as, in ~ (they were very much in ~ throughout the proceedings) 21. on the ~ of (on the ~ of this music, your son Wolfgang will become a fine composer!) 22. (misc.) the bulk of the ~

evident *adj.* 1. ~ from; to 2. ~ that + clause (from the vote so far, it is ~ to us all that she will be elected)

evil I *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to kill)

evil II *n.* 1. to do ~ 2. to root out ~ 3. an unmitigated ~ 4. a necessary ~ 5. (misc.) the lesser of two ~s; ~ incarnate

evocative *adj.* (formal) (cannot stand alone) ~ of

evolution *n.* 1. a gradual; historical ~ 2. an ~ from; into, to

evolve *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ from, out of; into

exact I *adj.* ~ in; with

exact II *v.* (formal) (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ tribute from the population)

exaggerate *v.* to ~ greatly, grossly

exaggerated *adj.* greatly, grossly, highly ~

exaggeration *n.* 1. a gross ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it is an ~ to claim that inflation has been controlled)

exam *n.* ["test"] 1. see **examination** 2. (colloq.) (AE) to ace an ~

examination *n.* ["test"]["set of questions"] 1. to administer, conduct, give an ~ 2. to draw up, make up, prepare, set (BE) an ~ 3. to invigilate (BE), monitor, proctor (AE), supervise an ~ 4. to do (BE), sit (BE), take an ~ 5. to fail, flunk (AE; colloq.); pass an ~ 6. a difficult, stiff; easy ~ 7. a bar; civil-service; state-board (AE) ~ 8. a comprehensive; doctoral; master's ~ 9. an end-of-term (BE); final; makeup ~ 10. an essay; multiple-choice; open-book; pass-fail; true-false ~ 11. an oral; written ~ 12. a competitive; entrance; external (BE); placement; qualifying ~ 13. an ~ in, on (an ~ in physics; an ~ on irregular verbs) ["inspection"]["scrutiny"] 14. to do, give, make an ~ 15. to fail; get, have, undergo; pass a (physical) ~ 16. a careful, close, complete, in-depth, thorough; cursory, perfunctory, superficial ~ 17. a physical ~ (the doctor did a thorough physical ~ of/on the patient, which revealed no signs of disease) 18. an ~ in, of, on (an ~ in mathematics; an ~ on new material) 19. on ~ (on closer ~ of the facts, she discovered that…) 20. under ~

examine *v.* 1. to ~ carefully, closely, thoroughly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ a car for defects) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ in, on (to ~ students in physics = to ~ students on their knowledge of physics; I was ~d on irregular verbs)

examiner *n.* 1. a bank; medical ~ 2. an external; internal ~

example *n.* 1. to cite, give, provide an ~ 2. to be, serve as, set an ~ (for) 3. to make an ~ of 4. to follow smb.'s ~ 5. a classic; concrete; extreme; glaring, striking; illustrative; impressive; inspiring; perfect; prime, shining; textbook; typical ~ 6. an ~ for, to 7. for ~ 8. (misc.) to lead by (personal) ~

exasperate *v.* (R) it ~d her that they never kept their promises

exasperated *adj.* 1. ~ about, at, by, over, with 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to find that they never kept their promises) 3. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that they never kept their promises)

exasperating *adj.* 1. ~ to 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for/to her to find that they never kept their promises) 3. ~ that + clause (it was ~ for/to her that they never kept their promises)

exasperation *n.* 1. ~ at (~ at bureaucrats) 2. in ~ (in her ~, she slammed the door)

ex cathedra *adv.* to speak ~

excavations *n.* to carry out archeological ~ (that reveal a lot about the past)

exceed *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ smb. in productivity by at least 10%)

excel *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at, in (to ~ at sports)

excellence *n.* 1. a center of ~ 2. ~ at, in (we intend to make this new school a center of ~ in medical research!)

exception *n.* ["exclusion"] 1. to make an ~ for 2. to grant an ~ 3. an ~ to (an ~ to the rule) 4. with an ~ (everything is fine with the notable ~ of one major item; with few ~s) 5. (misc.) without ~ ["objection"] 6. to take ~ to (she took strong ~ to what he said)

excerpt I *n.* 1. to play, quote, show, use an ~ 2. an ~ from

excerpt II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ a passage from a work)

excess *n.* 1. in ~ of 2. to ~ (to drink to ~)

exchange I *n.* ["act of exchanging"] 1. to agree to; make an ~ 2. a cultural ~; an ~ of ideas/views 3. a hostage; prisoner-of-war ~ 4. in ~ (for) 5. an ~ between ["place where items are bought or sold"] 6. a commodity; corn (BE), grain (AE); farmers'; post (AE); stock ~ (see also **stock market**) ["central office"] 7. an employment (BE), labour (BE); telephone ~ ["argument"] 8. to have an ~ (about) 9. an angry, heated ~ (of words) (they had an angry ~ with the other party about the new proposal) ["currency"] 10. foreign ~ 11. a rate of ~ (see also **exchange rate**) USAGE NOTE: The BE terms *employment exchange* and *labour exchange* have been largely superseded by *employment office* and *Job Centre/Jobcentre*.

exchange II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (I ~d the defective tire for a good one; I bought this hat here: will you ~ it for me?) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ places with smb.)

exchange rate *n.* 1. to set an ~ 2. to apply an ~ 3. a fixed; floating ~ 4. (misc.) what's the current ~ of the dollar against the euro?

excited *adj.* 1. ~ about, at, by, over (she got ~ about the news that they were coming) 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to learn that they were coming) 3. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that they were coming)

excitement *n.* 1. to arouse, cause, create, stir up ~ 2. to feel ~ 3. to buzz, throb with ~ 4. considerable, great, intense; mounting ~ (the news has caused considerable ~ among members of the public) 5. ~ builds (to a climax); dies down; mounts, rises 6. ~ about, at, over 7. in ~ 8. (misc.) a tingle, tremor of ~

exciting *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for her to learn that they were coming) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ for her that they were coming)

exclaim *v.* (formal) 1. (BE) (D; intr.) to ~ at; in (she ~ed in amazement at his appearance in shorts) 2. (L) he ~ed that he was innocent

exclude *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (do certain members of the public feel ~d from real political power?)

exclusion *n.* 1. ~ from 2. to the ~ of (they watched her to the ~ of everyone else)

exclusive *adj.* 1. mutually ~ 2. ~ of (the price is ~ of sales tax)

excommunication *n.* to decree, order, pronounce (an) ~

exculpate *v.* (formal) (D; tr.) to ~ from

excursion *n.* 1. to go on, make an ~ 2. an ~ to

excursus *n.* (formal) 1. to make an ~ 2. an ~ into

excuse I *n.* 1. to find; have; make; make up an ~ for 2. to accept an ~ 3. to reject an ~ 4. an acceptable, good, satisfactory, valid; convincing; perfect; plausible ~ 5. a feeble, flimsy, lame, poor, unacceptable, unsatisfactory, weak ~ 6. a convenient; glib; ready-made ~ 7. an ~ for (an ~ for being late) 8. an ~ to + inf. (it was just an ~ (for him) to leave early) 9. an ~ that + clause (they accepted the ~ that I had been ill) 10. (misc.) the slightest ~ (he'll stay home from work at the slightest ~); a poor ~ for smt. (what you've got there is a pretty poor ~ for a dictionary, if you ask me!); to make one's ~s (he made his ~s and left)

excuse II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (he was ~d as physically unfit for duty) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. for coming late) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ from (he was ~d from drill; BE also has: he was ~d drill) 4. (G) we will never ~ taking innocent hostages 5. (K) please ~ my arriving late

ex-directory *adj.* (BE) to go ~ ("to have one's number removed from the telephone book so as to have an unlisted number")

execute *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (he was ~d as a deserter) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (he was ~d for desertion)

execution *n.* 1. to carry out an ~ (the ~ that was going to take place was about to be carried out when there was a last-minute stay of ~) 2. a mass; public; summary ~ 3. ~ by (~ by firing squad) (see also *stay of execution* at **stay I** *n.*)

executive *n.* a business; chief; corporate; junior; senior ~

exempt I *adj.* ~ from (~ from the draft)

exempt II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ smb. from the draft)

exemption *n.* 1. to claim an ~ 2. to grant an ~ 3. a draft (AE); tax ~ 4. an ~ for (he received the ~ for his elderly parents which they had claimed and to which they were entitled) 5. (an) ~ from (to grant smb. an ~ from the draft)

exercise I *n.* ["bodily exertion"] 1. to engage in, go in for ~; to take (BE) ~ 2. to get ~ (she gets plenty of ~ at her job) 3. to do ~s 4. (a) hard, strenuous, vigorous; regular ~ 5. (an) aerobic; body-building; flexibility; isometric; relaxation; remedial; setting-up; warming-up ~ 6. physical ~ 7. a form of ~ (brisk walking is an excellent form of aerobic ~, during which you will feel better) ["practice drill"] 8. oral; written ~s (as in a language textbook) ["effort to achieve smt."] 9. to conduct an ~ 10. a marketing; public-relations ~ (the government has conducted a cynical public-relations ~ to justify its policies) 11. what is the object/purpose of the ~? ["misc."] 12. an ~ in futility ("an unsuccessful attempt") (see also **exercises**)

exercise II *v.* to ~ hard, strenuously, vigorously; regularly

exercised *adj.* ["upset"] 1. very ~ 2. to be; get ~ 3. ~ about, over (they got very ~ over the plan to close their local post-office)

exercises *n.* ["ceremony"] (esp. AE) 1. to attend; hold ~ 2. commencement, graduation ~

exertion *n.* physical; strenuous ~

exhausted *adj.* completely, totally; very ~ (from)

exhaustion *n.* 1. heat; nervous; total ~ 2. a state of ~

exhibit I *n.* ["exhibition"] (AE) 1. to have, hold, mount, organize, put on an ~ 2. to close; open an ~ 3. an art; photo; traveling ~ 4. on ~ ["piece of evidence shown in court"] (legal) 5. ~ A

exhibit II *v.* (B) she ~ed her paintings to the public

exhibition *n.* 1. to have, hold, mount, organize, put on an ~ 2. to close; launch, open an ~ 3. an art; international; photo; trade; traveling ~ (the ~ of contemporary art will run from June to October) 4. (esp. BE) on ~ 5. (misc.) to make an ~ of oneself (by behaving badly)

exhilarating *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to climb mountains)

exhort *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smb. to action) 2. (H) to ~ students to work harder

exile I *n.* ["forced absence"] 1. to send smb. into ~ 2. to go into ~ 3. ~ from (her ~ from her homeland lasted many years) 4. from ~ (they have returned from ~) 5. in ~ (to live in ~) ["person forced to leave"] 6. a political; tax ~

exile II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to

exist *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on bread and water)

existence *n.* 1. to have, lead a certain ~ (to lead a drab ~) 2. to eke out a (miserable) ~ 3. a drab, miserable; hand-to-mouth, precarious ~ 4. in; into; out of ~ (a way of life that came into ~ long ago but is rapidly going out of ~ now)

exit I *n.* 1. to make an/one's (she made a hasty ~) 2. (in a plane) an emergency; tail; window; wing ~ 3. an emergency; fire ~ 4. an ~ from; to 5. at an ~ (she waited for me at the ~) 6. (misc.) the police sealed off the ~; no ~! USAGE NOTE: *Exit* is CE; however, BE often uses the notice *Way Out* to indicate the way to the exit.

exit II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ (from) the system on a computer)

exodus *n.* 1. a mass ~ (there is a mass ~ from Paris every August) 2. an ~ from; to

exonerate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

exorcise *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

expand *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to make larger") to ~ by (they ~ed the dictionary by twenty percent) 2. (D; intr., tr.) ("to become larger") ("to make larger") to ~ into (to ~ an idea from an article into a book) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon ("to explain in detail") (to ~ on a topic)

expanse *n.* a broad, vast, wide; open ~ (of) (a broad ~ of grassland stretched into the distance)

expatiate *v.* (formal) (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon ("to discuss in detail")

expatriate *v.* (formal) (D; tr.) to ~ from; to

expect *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from, of (we ~ed more from him) 2. (E) "does every man ~ to do his duty?" "yes, every man ~s to" 3. (H) England ~s every man to do his duty 4. (L) "England ~s every man will do his duty." – Lord Nelson at Trafalgar (1805) 5. (misc.) I ~ not; I ~ so; behavior that was only to be ~ed in the circumstances; such things happen when you least ~ them to

expectancy *n.* life ~

expectation *n.* 1. in ~ of 2. an ~ that + clause (it was our ~ that they would come early)

expectations *n.* 1. to come up to, live up to, meet ~ 2. to exceed, surpass ~ 3. to fall short of ~ 4. great, high ~ 5. ~ for (they had great ~ for their daughter) 6. beyond ~ (to succeed beyond all ~) 7. (misc.) contrary to ~ (contrary to all ~, she did not come); a revolution of rising ~

expedient *adj.* ~ to + inf. (sometimes it is ~ to make concessions)

expedition *n.* 1. to launch, mount, organize; lead; send an ~ 2. to go on an ~ 3. an archeological; scientific ~ 4. a hunting; mountain-climbing ~ 5. a military; punitive ~ 6. an ~ into, to (to lead an ~ to the Amazon) 7. (misc.) a fishing ~ ("an attempt to obtain information")

expel *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from, for (to ~ a child from school for misbehavior)

expend *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for, on (to ~ considerable funds on a new skating rink)

expenditure *n.* 1. to curb, curtail, cut down (on), reduce ~s 2. a capital ~ 3. public ~s 4. an item; level of ~ 5. an ~ for, on

expense *n.* 1. to incur, run up an ~ 2. to go to great ~; to put smb. to great ~ 3. to curb, curtail, cut down (on), reduce ~s 4. to spare no ~ (we spared no ~ to make the event a success) 5. to cover, defray ~s 6. to reimburse ~s 7. to share ~s 8. (a) business; entertainment; funeral; household; incidental; legal; living; operating; out-of-pocket; overhead; personal; tax-deductible; traveling ~(s) 9. at smb.'s ~ (at my ~; at government ~; at great ~, they sent their children to college) 10. (misc.) please take part in our conference – all ~s paid!

expense account *n.* 1. to be on, have an ~ 2. to pad an ~

expensive *adj.* ~ to + inf. (is it more ~ to live in the city than in the country?)

experience *n.* ["practice"] ["participation"] 1. to acquire, gain, gather, get ~ (from) 2. to have ~ (in) 3. broad, extensive, wide; direct, firsthand; hands-on; past, previous; practical; relevant ~ 4. an educational, learning ~ 5. the ~ to + inf. (they don't have enough ~ to do the job) 6. by, from ~ (to know from previous ~) ["adventure"] ["event"] 7. to have; share an ~ (I had quite an ~!) 8. a bitter, painful, terrible, traumatic, unpleasant ~ 9. a frightening, hair-raising, harrowing, terrifying, unnerving ~ 10. an enlightening, ennobling, rewarding; interesting; memorable, unforgettable; pleasant ~ 11. a common ~

experienced *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ at, in

experiment I *n.* 1. to carry out, conduct, do, perform, run; replicate an ~ (on) 2. a control; controlled ~ 3. a chemistry; laboratory; physics; thought ~ 4. an ~ fails; succeeds; works 5. an ~ in (an ~ in communal living) 6. during; in an ~ 7. (misc.) *The Story of my Experiments with Truth* (1927) – M. K. Gandhi

experiment II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on, upon, with

expert I *adj.* ~ at, in

expert II *n.* 1. to call in, consult an ~ 2. an acknowledged, recognized ~ 3. a demolition; efficiency; foreign-policy; legal; self-styled; technical ~ 4. an ~ at, in, on (an ~ at troubleshooting; an ~ in computer science)

expertise *n.* 1. to display ~ 2. technical ~ 3. ~ in 4. the ~ to + inf. (does she have the ~ to do the job?)

expiration *n.* at, on the ~ (what will she do at the ~ of her term in office?)

explain *v.* 1. to ~ briefly; clearly; fully; satisfactorily 2. (B) she ~ed the problem to me 3. (L; to) he ~ed (to us) that the examination would take place later 4. (Q; to) he ~ed (to us) why the examination would take place later 5. (misc.) I can ~ (everything)!; let me ~

explanation *n.* 1. to give, offer, provide an ~ 2. to accept an ~ 3. to demand an ~ 4. to owe smb. an ~ 5. a brief, concise, simple, succinct; clear, lucid; convincing; rational; satisfactory; unsatisfactory ~ 6. an ~ for; of 7. an ~ that + clause (they accepted her ~ that she had been unavoidably detained) 8. (misc.) inconsistencies in your story that are in need of an ~

expletive *n.* ~ deleted

explicit *adj.* 1. sexually ~ 2. ~ about

explode *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in, into; with (to ~ with rage)

exploit I *n.* 1. to perform an ~ 2. a daring; fantastic; heroic ~

exploit II *v.* to ~ ruthlessly

exploitation *n.* 1. commercial ~ 2. ruthless ~

exploration *n.* space; underwater ~ (we continued to carry out the underwater ~s that had been taking place here for several years)

explore *v.* 1. to ~ carefully, gingerly (they had to ~ this possibility very gingerly) 2. (D; intr., tr.)

to ~ for (we're ~ing this whole area for natural resources)

explorer *n.* a brave; intrepid ~

explosion *n.* 1. to set off, touch off, trigger an ~ 2. a deafening, loud; powerful; tremendous ~ 3. a nuclear ~ 4. a population ~ 5. an ~ ripped through the laboratory

explosive *n.* 1. to detonate; set off an ~ 2. to plant an ~ 3. to sniff out ~s 4. (a) high; plastic ~

exponent *n.* ["champion"] a leading ~ (a leading ~ of reform)

export I *n.* 1. a chief, leading, major ~ 2. an ~ from, to

export II *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; to (we ~ to many countries; they ~ tractors from the West Coast to several Asian countries)

expose *v.* 1. (B) she ~d the plot to journalists 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~d as an impostor) 3. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smb. to danger; ~d to the elements)

exposition *n.* 1. to hold an ~ 2. an international, world ~

expostulate *v.* (formal) (D; intr.) ("to argue, expound") to ~ about, on; with

exposure *n.* ["being exposed"] 1. ~ to (~ to the elements) 2. of ~ (to die of ~) ["time during which film is exposed"] 3. a double; time ~ ["baring one's private parts"] 4. indecent ~ ["location in relation to the sun"] 5. a southern ~ (a house with a southern ~) ["publicity"] 6. media; wide ~

expound *v.* (formal) 1. (B) she ~ed her theory to her colleagues 2. (d; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on one's favorite subject (to one's colleagues))

express I *n.* ["fast train"] 1. see **train I**, 3 ["special postal service"] (BE) 2. by ~ (to send a letter by ~)

express II *v.* 1. to ~ clearly; forcefully 2. (B) he ~ed his sympathy to the bereaved family 3. (BE) (D; tr.) ("to squeeze") (formal) to ~ from, out of (to ~ juice from an orange) 4. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ in (to ~ oneself in good English) 5. (Q) I/words cannot ~ (to you) how grateful I am!

expression *n.* ["making known"]["showing"] 1. to give ~ to (she tried to give ~ to her feelings) 2. to find ~ in (he finds ~ in his painting) ["phrase"] 3. a colloquial; common; elliptical; figurative; fixed; hackneyed, trite; idiomatic; old-fashioned; technical ~ ["look"] 4. an amused; happy; pleasant ~ 5. a blank; bored; deadpan ~ 6. a silly, vacuous ~ 7. a puzzled, quizzical ~ 8. a grim; grave, serious; intense ~ 9. an angry; pained ~ (she had a pained ~ on her face)

expressive *adj.* ~ of

expropriate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ land from the absentee owners)

expulsion *n.* ~ for; from (he faces ~ from college for cheating)

expunge *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

expurgate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

extend *v.* 1. (A) ("to convey") they ~ed a warm welcome to us; or: (esp. AE) they ~ed us a warm welcome 2. (d; intr.) ("to reach") to ~ beyond (the forest ~s beyond the border) 3. (d; intr.) ("to reach") to ~ from; to (the border ~s to the river) 4. (D; tr.) ("to prolong") to ~ from; to (we ~ed the fence to the edge of our property) 5. (d; intr.) ("to continue") to ~ into (the cold wave ~ed into March) 6. (d; intr., tr.) ("to spread") to ~ over (their power ~s over the whole country) 7. (d; tr.) (she ~ed her hand to us in friendship) 8. (P; intr.) ("to stretch") the plateau ~s (for) many miles

extension *n.* ["increase in time allowed"] 1. to grant an ~ 2. to ask for, request; get, receive an ~ ["branch"] (AE) 3. a university ~ ["misc."] 4. by ~ ("consequently")

extent *n.* 1. the full ~ (the full ~ of the damage) 2. to a certain ~ (to a greater or lesser ~; when did the Roman Empire reach its greatest ~?; they were emaciated to such an ~ that they required special treatment)

exterior *n.* a calm; forbidding, stern ~ (a soft heart under a stern ~)

extermination *n.* complete, total ~

external *adj.* ~ to (formal)

extinction *n.* to threaten with ~ (is the red squirrel threatened with ~?)

extinguisher *n.* (see **fire extinguisher**)

extol, extoll *v.* 1. to ~ to the skies 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (they were ~ed as heroes)

extort *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ money from merchants)

extortion *n.* 1. to commit; practice ~ 2. to pay ~

extract I *n.* ["substance extracted"] 1. almond; lemon; vanilla ~ ["excerpt"] 2. an ~ from (an ~ from a book)

extract II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ information from smb.)

extraction *n.* ["origin"] of a certain ~ (a family of Irish ~)

extradite *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to

extradition *n.* 1. to ask for, request, seek (smb.'s) ~ (from; to) 2. to grant (smb.'s) ~ 3. to deny (smb.'s) ~ 4. to contest, fight, oppose ~ 5. to waive ~ ("to agree to be extradited")

extraneous *adj.* ~ to

extraordinary *adj.* ~ that + clause (it was ~ that no one reported the incident to the police)

extrapolate *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from, on the basis of

extravagance *n.* ~ in

extravagant *adj.* ~ in, with (~ in spending their father's money)

extreme *n.* 1. to go to an ~ (to go from one ~ to the other) 2. at an ~ (at the other/opposite ~) 3. in the ~ ("extremely") ("perplexed in the ~" – *Othello*, Shakespeare) 4. (misc.) to carry to an ~

extremist *n.* a political; religious ~

extremities *n.* ["limbs"] the lower; upper ~

extricate *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ from (she ~d herself from a difficult situation)

extrinsic *adj.* (formal) ~ to

exuberance *n.* 1. sheer ~ 2. in; out of; with ~

exude *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ from

exult *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at, in, over

exultation *n.* ~ at, in, over

eye *n.* ["organ of sight"] 1. to blink; close, shut; open; roll; squint one's ~s 2. to avert; drop, lower; lift, raise one's ~s 3. to rest; strain one's ~s 4. to clap (BE; colloq.), lay, set one's ~s on smt. ("to see smt.") 5. to keep one's ~s open, peeled, skinned (BE) ("to be watchful") 6. the naked ~ (the meteor could be seen with the naked ~ because it was visible to the naked ~) 7. bloodshot; bulging; glassy; sunken ~s 8. bright, clear ~s 9. ~s blaze; blink; dilate, widen; shine, sparkle; tear, water; twinkle 10. a pair of ~s 11. in smb.'s ~s (tears were in his ~s; fear could be seen in their ~s) ["vision, sight"] 12. good, strong; weak ~s 13. an eagle ~ ("keen sight") ["area around the eyes"] 14. (also fig.) a black ~ (to give smb. a black ~) ["look, glance"] 15. to cast an ~ on smt. ("Cast a cold ~ On life, on death." – W. B. Yeats, "Under Ben Bulben", 1938); to run one's ~ over smt.; to fix one's ~ on smt. 16. to take one's ~s off (they could not take their ~s off Hannah) 17. an anxious; critical; sharp, watchful, weather; suspicious ~ 18. a jaundiced ~ ("an envious, hostile look") 19. (of one who flirts) bedroom ("seductive") ~s; a roving, wandering ~ (he has a roving ~) 20. curious, prying; piercing ~s ["attention"] ["interest"] ["observation"] 21. to catch smb.'s ~ (we couldn't catch the waiter's ~ to order our meal) 22. to open smb.'s ~s (to the truth) 23. to close, shut one's ~s (to the truth); to turn a blind ~ to smt. ("to let smt. pass as if unnoticed") (the police turned a blind ~ to illegal gambling) 24. to have, keep an ~ on smt./smb. ("to keep smt./smb. under observation") 25. to have, keep an ~ out for smt. ("to watch for smt./smb. attentively") 26. the public ~ (to be constantly in the public ~) 27. with an ~ to (with an ~ to public opinion) ["judgment"] ["viewpoint"] 28. a good, keen ~ 29. an ~ for (she has a good ~ for distances) 30. to the trained/untrained ~ 31. in smb.'s ~s (in the ~s of the law, she is innocent until proved guilty) ["perception"] ["appreciation"] 32. to open smb.'s ~s to smt. 33. an ~ for (an ~ for beauty; to have an ~ for a good bargain) ["device that detects"] 34. an electric ~ ["detective"] (colloq.) 35. a private ~ ["prosthesis for an eye"] 36. an artificial, glass ~ ["misc."] 37. an ~ for an ~ ("an equivalent retaliation"); to feast one's ~s on smt. ("to look at smt. with great pleasure"); to give smb. the ~ ("to flirt with smb.") or ("to give smb. a visual signal"); to make ~s at smb. ("to look lovingly at smb."); to see ~ to ~ with ("to agree with"); in one's mind's ~ ("in one's imagination or memory"); the evil ~ ("a look intended to inflict harm"); his ~ fell on a bargain ("he discovered a bargain"); under the teacher's watchful ~; easy on the ~s ("pretty"); more than meets the ~ ("more than is seen"); to look someone in the ~ ("to look at someone directly"); before one's very ~s; through smb. else's ~s; with one's own ~s (you have to believe me: I saw it with my own ~s!); without batting an ~ (AE) ("while remaining calm") (see also **eyelash**, **eyelid**; *as far as the eye can see* at **far**; *(in) the eye of a storm* at **storm I** *n.*)

eyebrow *n.* 1. to pluck, tweeze one's ~s 2. bushy, thick ~s 3. (misc.) to lift, raise an ~ ("to express one's surprise")

eyeglasses *n.* (AE: CE has *glasses*) a pair of ~

eyelash *n.* 1. to flutter one's ~s ("to flirt") 2. the lower; upper ~es 3. (misc.) without batting an ~ (AE) ("while remaining calm") (see **eye**, **eyelid** 3)

eyelid *n.* 1. drooping ~s 2. the lower; upper ~ 3. (misc.) without batting an ~ (esp. BE) ("while remaining calm") (see **eye**, **eyelash** 3)

eye shadow *n.* to apply, put on ~

eyesight *n.* deteriorating, failing, poor, weak; keen; perfect ~

eyeteeth *n.* to cut one's ~ on smt. ("to learn about smt. when young")

eyewitness *n.* an ~ to (there was an ~ to the crime)

F

fable *n.* a ~ about

fabric *n.* ["material"] 1. to weave a ~ 2. a cotton; rayon; silk; synthetic; woolen; wrinkle-free ~ 3. a length, piece, strip of ~ ["structure"] 4. a basic; social ~ (the basic ~ of the country)

fabrication *n.* a complete, outright, total ~; (a) pure ~

face I *n.* ["grimace"] 1. to make, pull (BE) a ~ (at) ["prestige"] 2. to save ~ 3. to lose ~ ["front part of the head"] 4. to press one's ~ (against a window) 5. (fig.) to show one's ~ (he didn't dare to show his ~) 6. to powder one's ~ 7. a beautiful, lovely, pretty; handsome; ruddy; ugly ~ 8. a hatchet; oval; round ~ 9. a familiar; strange ~ 10. (misc.) with a smile on one's ~; to come/meet ~ to ~; to bring ~ to ~; to look smb. in the ~; I would never say that to her ~; to laugh in smb.'s ~; ~ down ["expression"] 11. an angry; long; sad; serious ~ 12. a happy; funny ~ (to make a funny ~; to make, pull (BE) a long ~) 13. a poker, straight ~ (to keep a straight ~) 14. a ~ lights up (her face lit up) ["makeup"] (colloq.) 15. to put one's ~ on ["character"] 16. the changing ~ of the contemporary world ["misc."] 17. in the ~ of serious difficulties ("facing serious difficulties"); on the ~ of it ("judging by appearances"); to disappear from/off the ~ of the earth; to fly in the ~ of smt. ("to disregard, contradict"); to fall flat on one's ~ (usu. fig.); as plain as the nose on your ~ (see also *to stare smb. in the face* at **stare II** *v.*)

face II *v.* 1. to ~ squarely 2. (d; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smb. with irrefutable evidence) 3. (G) I could not ~ going there alone 4. (P; intr.) to ~ east; to ~ towards the back of the room

face up *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to reality)

facial *n.* 1. to do a ~ 2. to get, have a ~

facilitate *v.* (formal) 1. to ~ greatly 2. (K) their help will ~ our finishing the job on time

facilities *n.* ["installations"] 1. to provide ~ for 2. ample; excellent; modern; support ~ 3. outmoded; poor; run-down ~ 4. airport; port; public; storage; transportation (esp. AE), transport (esp. BE) ~ (our city has excellent port ~) 5. dining, eating; hotel; recreational ~ 6. daycare; educational; medical; public health; research ~ 7. ~ for

facility *n.* ["skill"] 1. a ~ for, in, with (to have a ~ for languages) ["installation"] 2. to operate a ~ 3. (AE) a correctional ~ ("a prison")

facsimile *n.* in ~

fact *n.* ["something that is true"] 1. to ascertain, establish a ~ 2. to check, confirm, verify a ~ 3. to cite, present; collect, gather, get, marshal (the) ~s 4. to classify; evaluate, explain, interpret (the) ~s 5. to face (the) ~s 6. to get one's ~s right/wrong; stick to the ~s 7. to distort, twist; embellish, embroider, put a spin on (the) ~s 8. to ignore a ~ 9. an accepted, demonstrable, established; cold, dry, hard, incontestable, incontrovertible, indisputable, irrefutable, proven, undeniable, unquestionable; inconvenient, uncomfortable ~ 10. a basic, essential, pertinent; historical; little-known; statistical; (well-)known ~ 11. the bare ~s 12. a ~ that + clause ("the mere ~ that some officials are corrupt doesn't mean they all are!" "nevertheless, the ~ remains that some officials ARE corrupt!"; you have to face the ~ that he isn't coming) ["reality"] 13. to distinguish ~ from fiction 14. in ~, in actual ~, in point of ~ ["misc."] 15. a question of ~; the ~s of the case; the ~s of life; as a matter of ~; oh wow, is that a ~?! USAGE NOTES: 1. "The fact (that)" is often used between a preposition and a clause: "Besides the fact that they had been lovers, what else connects the defendant with the victim?" "Despite the fact that they'd been lovers, there had been no contact between them for several years." "She's interested in the fact that he writes poetry." 2. "The fact that" is also used before a that-clause after a verb (such as *to face*) that doesn't occur in our pattern L: you have to face the fact that he isn't coming. 3. "In the fact that" is often heard nowadays where "in that" ("because") could be used: "*I'm lucky in the fact that I have a good job." That construction is wrong. The right construction is: "I'm lucky in that I have a good job."

faction *n.* a contending; extremist; opposing; rebel ~; warring ~s (within the country/party)

factor I *n.* 1. a contributing; critical, crucial, deciding, determining, essential, important, key, major; risk ~ (we must take account of several essential ~s) 2. (math. and fig.) a common ~ 3. (meteorology) a wind-chill ~ 4. a safety ~ (see also **safety factor**) 5. a genetic ~ 6. a ~ in

factor II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ into (they ~ed the effects of taxation into their policy recommendations)

factory *n.* 1. to manage, operate, run a ~ 2. to open a ~ 3. to close, shut down a ~ 4. an automobile (AE) car; clothing; munitions; shoe; textile ~ 5. at, in a ~ (she works at/in a ~)

faculties *n.* ["capacities"] 1. smb.'s mental ~ 2. her ~ were failing 3. (misc.) in (full) possession of one's ~

faculty *n.* ["division of a university"] (esp. BE; CE has *school*) 1. a ~ of arts and sciences; education; law; medicine; science ["teaching staff"] (esp. AE; BE prefers *staff*) 2. on the ~ (she is on the ~) 3. a college, university; school ~ 4. the standing (AE), tenured ("permanent") ~ ["ability"] 5. a ~ for (a ~ for learning languages)

fad *n.* 1. the latest, newest ~ 2. a passing ~ 3. a ~ for

faddism *n.* food ~

fade *v.* 1. (d; intr.) (usu. fig.) to ~ from, out of (to ~ from the picture) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into obscurity) 3. (misc.) (AE) to ~ in the stretch ("to drop out of contention near the end of a contest")

fag end *n.* (BE) (colloq.) ["tag end, tail end"] at the ~ (of smt.)

fail I *n.* without ~

fail II *v.* 1. to ~ completely; dismally, miserably 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in business) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ in, on (to ~ a student in/on an examination) 4. (E) she ~ed to comprehend the seriousness of the situation that the rest of us couldn't ~ to notice

failing *n.* 1. to have a ~ 2. a common ~ 3. smb.'s worst ~

failure *n.* 1. to experience ~ 2. an abject, complete, dismal, hopeless, ignominious, miserable, outright ~ 3. a box-office; business; crop ~ 4. kidney; respiratory ~ (see also **heart failure**) 5. an engine; mechanical; power ~ 6. a ~ to + inf. (her ~ to comprehend the seriousness of the situation; the ~ of the patient to respond to treatment was discouraging) 7. (misc.) doomed to ~; to end in ~

faint I *adj.* to feel ~ from (she felt ~ from lack of air)

faint II *n.* 1. to fall into a ~ 2. a dead ~ (to fall into a dead ~)

faint III *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from loss of blood)

fair I *adj.* ["just"] 1. perfectly, scrupulously ~ 2. ~ to, with (he's ~ to his employees) 3. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to say that she deserved the promotion; it was not ~ to take advantage of the situation) 4. ~ that + clause (it's only ~ that she got the promotion; it's not ~ that she has to work so hard) ["of medium quality"] 5. ~ at, in (she's ~ at mathematics) 6. (misc.) ~ to middling ("not too bad"); to be ~ (to be ~ (to her), we should give her another chance)

fair II *n.* 1. to hold, host; organize; stage a ~ 2. an annual; book; county ~; funfair (BE); health; livestock; state (US); trade; world's ~ (the annual ~ takes place in July) (see also **funfair**)

fairness *n.* 1. ~ in (we expect ~ in their judgment to be guaranteed) 2. in ~ to (in (all) ~ to her, we should give her another chance)

faith *n.* ["firm belief, trust"] 1. to have ~ (in); to place, put one's ~ in 2. to lose ~ (in) 3. to shake; test smb.'s ~ (in) 4. (an) abiding, enduring, steadfast; blind; deep, strong, unshakable; implicit; saving; simple ~ 5. on ~ (to accept on ~) ["fidelity to one's promises"] 6. to break; keep ~ with 7. to demonstrate, show good ~ 8. in good ~; in bad ~ (she acted in good ~) ["religion"] 9. to adhere to, practice a ~ 10. to abjure, recant, renounce one's ~ 11. the true ~ (brought up in the true ~) 12. by ~ (she is a Buddhist by ~) 13. (misc.) an article of ~; a leap of ~ (it's an article of ~ for her that if you are nice to people they'll be nice to you – but for me that belief would require a leap of ~)

faithful I *adj.* ~ in; to ("I have been ~ to thee, Cynara! in my fashion" – Ernest Dowson (1867–1900), "Non Sum Qualis Eram …")

faithful II *n.* (plural) the party ~

faithfulness *n.* ~ to

fake *v.* (esp. AE) (usu. sports) (d; tr.) to ~ out of (to ~ an opposing player out of position)

fall I *n.* ["dropping, coming down"] 1. to have, take a ~ 2. to break a ~ 3. a bad, nasty ~ (she had a bad ~ and broke her ankle) 4. a free ~ (of a parachutist) 5. a sharp, steep; sudden ~ 6. a ~ from (a ~ from a horse; a ~ from grace) 7. a ~ in, of (a sudden ~ in prices; a sudden ~ of snow = a sudden snowfall) 8. (misc.) *The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire* (1776–88) – Edward Gibbon ["autumn"] (AE) 9. early; last; late; next ~ 10. during the, in (the) ~ (we met late in the ~ of 1995 = we met in the late ~ of 1995) 11. (misc.) there is a touch of ~ in the air; a harbinger of ~

fall II *v.* 1. ("to drop") to ~ flat, headlong; short 2. (d; intr.) to ~ behind ("to lag") (to ~ behind the others) 3. (D; intr.) ("to drop") to ~ down (to ~ down the stairs) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to be tricked") (we fell for their sales pitch) 5. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to become infatuated with") (he fell for her) 6. (D; intr.) ("to drop") to ~ from (to ~ from a tree; to ~ from grace) 7. (d; intr.) ("to come"); ("to drop") to ~ into (to ~ into disfavor; to ~ into disrepute; to ~ into place; to ~ into a trap) 8. (d; intr.) ("to be divided") to ~ into (to ~ into three categories) 9. (D; intr.) ("to drop") to ~ off (to ~ off a table) 10. (D; intr.) ("to drop") to ~ on (to ~ on one's back; the stress ~s on the last syllable) (also fig,) (formal) (the responsibility fell on us; it fell on me to break the news) 11. (d; intr.) ("to come") to ~ on (the holiday fell on a Monday) 12. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to attack") (the soldiers fell on the refugees and killed them) 13. (d; intr.) ("to drop") to ~ out of (to ~ out of bed; to ~ out of favor) 14. (d; intr.) ("to drop") to ~ over (she fell over the side of the ship) 15. (D; intr.) ("to drop") to ~ through (to ~ through a hole in the ice) 16. (formal) (d; intr.) ("to devolve") to ~ to (the responsibility fell to us; it fell to me to break the news) 17. (D; intr.) ("to drop") to ~ to (he fell to his knees; the book fell to the floor; her voice fell to a whisper) (also fig.) (formal) (he fell to brooding) 18. (D; intr.) ("to be defeated") to ~ to (the city fell to the enemy) 19. (d; intr.) ("to drop") ("to come") to ~ under (to ~ under a train; to ~ under smb.'s influence; facts that ~ under three categories) 20. (S) to ~ due; to ~ silent; she fell ill; she fell pregnant (BE); we fell victim to their sales pitch 21. (misc.) to ~ afoul (AE)/foul of the law; to ~ apart; to ~ asleep; to ~ below (temperatures that can ~ below zero); to ~ in love with smb.; to ~ in battle; to ~ on hard times; to ~ outside (matters that ~ outside (of) our jurisdiction); to ~ to pieces; to ~ into step; to ~ through the cracks ("to be neglected through error or omission") (see also *fall on deaf ears* at **deaf** and at **ear**)

fallacious *adj.* (formal) ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to assume that all politicians are corrupt)

fallacy *n.* 1. a ~ to + inf. (it's a ~ to assume that all politicians are corrupt) 2. a ~ that (it's a ~ that all politicians are corrupt)

fall back *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into an easy chair) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on, to (the troops fell back to their defensive positions; when challenged, he fell back on the same old excuses)

fall behind *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in, with (to ~ with the rent)

fall down *v.* to ~ on the job

fall in *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to join") (to ~ with the wrong crowd) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to agree") (she fell in with their suggestion)

falling out *n.* (colloq.) ["quarrel"] to have a ~ with

fallout *n.* 1. radioactive ~ 2. ~ from (also fig.)

fall out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to quarrel") to ~ with (to ~ with smb.) 2. (misc.) the platoon fell out on the company street

fallow *adj.* ["uncultivated"] to lie ~ (the field lay ~)

false *adj.* 1. to ring ~ 2. a ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to assume that all politicians are corrupt) 3. a ~ that (it's just plain ~ that all politicians are corrupt!)

false front *n.* ["deceptive manner"] to put up a ~

falsehood *n.* 1. to tell, utter a ~ 2. an absolute, downright, utter ~

falsetto *n.* to sing ~

falter *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in one's determination)

fame *n.* 1. to achieve, attain, win; enjoy ~ 2. to seek ~ 3. international; national; undying ~ (Shakespeare's undying ~ rests on his plays) 4. (misc.) a claim to ~; at the height of one's ~; ~ and fortune

familiar *adj.* ["known"] 1. ~ to (is this area ~ to you?) 2. (misc.) all too; eerily; strangely ~ (the area seemed strangely ~ to me even though I'd never been there before) ["acquainted"] 3. thoroughly ~ 4. ~ with (are you ~ with this area?; are you ~ with the details?)

familiarity *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show ~ (with) 2. thorough ~ 3. ~ to; with (the area's ~ to me = my ~ with the area) 4. (misc.) ~ breeds contempt

familiarize *v.* (d; refl., tr.) to ~ with (she had to ~ herself with the facts of the case)

family *n.* ["social unit traditionally consisting of parents and children"] 1. to start a ~ 2. to bring up, raise, rear; clothe; feed; support a ~ 3. the close, immediate; extended; nuclear ~ 4. a good ("respected") ~ (she comes from a good ~) 5. a blended; dysfunctional; single-parent; two-income ~ 6. the royal ~ 7. the head of a ~; a member of a ~ 8. in the ~ (poor vision runs in the ~) 9. (misc.) ~ planning ("birth control"); (old-fashioned) in the ~ way ("pregnant") ["group of related languages"] 10. a language ~

family style *adv.* (esp. AE) to serve (a meal) ~

famine *n.* 1. widespread ~ 2. ~ strikes (~ struck several provinces) 3. (misc.) a potato ~

famous *adj.* 1. ~ as (he is ~ internationally as an actor) 2. ~ for (the city is world ~ for its museums) 3. (misc.) some celebrities are ~ just for being ~; gossip about the rich and ~

fan I *n.* ["electrical device for cooling"] 1. to turn on; turn off a ~ 2. a ceiling; electric; exhaust (AE), extractor (BE) ~ ["paper or cloth fan"] 3. to wave a ~

fan II *n.* ["admirer"] ["supporter"] 1. an ardent, avid ~ 2. (AE) a ~ roots (for a team) USAGE NOTE: In CE one can be a *fan* of a certain sport – a football fan. In CE one can also be a fan of a certain team – a Dodger fan, Manchester United fan. In BE, however, one would typically be called a *supporter* of a club and would be more likely to *support* one's favourite club than *root for* it.

fanatic *n.* 1. a dangerous; real ~ 2. a fitness, keep-fit; religious; sports ~ 3. (misc.) he had to be a ~ (in order) to do that!

fancy I *n.* 1. to take a ~ to 2. to catch, strike, take (BE), tickle smb.'s ~ 3. a passing ~ 4. a flight of ~

fancy II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to like") to ~ as (I don't ~ him as an actor) 2. (G) ("to like") I don't ~ going there 3. (G) ("to imagine") just ~ winning first prize! 4. (L) ("to imagine") she ~cied that she heard footsteps 5. (N) (BE) ("to imagine") when she was young she ~cied herself a great actress

fanfare *n.* 1. to sound a ~ 2. with great ~

fangs *n.* an animal bares its ~

fan out *v.* to ~ in all directions

fantasize *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about (when young she would ~ about becoming a great actress) 2. (L) when young she would ~ that some day she would become a great actress

fantastic *adj.* ["very good"] (colloq.) ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to work with them = it's ~ working with them = they're absolutely the most ~ people to work with!)

fantasy *n.* 1. to act out a ~ 2. to indulge in ~ 3. a childhood; sexual ~ 4. a ~ about (when young she had/harbored a ~ about becoming a great actress) 5. a ~ that + clause (when young she had/harbored the ~ that some day she would become a great actress) 6. (misc.) (to live in) a world of ~/a ~ world

far *adj.*, *adv.* 1. ~ from (~ from the city; the problem is ~ from being solved) 2. by ~, ~ and away (she is by ~ the better player) 3. (misc.) as ~ as the eye can see; ~ away; ~ beyond; ~ into (the future); ~ and wide; so ~ so good; to go ~ on one's connections; ~ be it from me to criticize, but… USAGE NOTES: 1. The phrases *by far* and *far and away* mean "very much" – she is by far/far and away the better player. In nonstandard BE the two phrases can be blended to produce *by far and away* – ?? she is by far and away the better player. 2. *By far* can go either before or after the phrase it modifies – she is by far the better player = she is the better player by far. *Far and away* and the BE nonstandard ?? *by far and away* can go only before the phrase they modify – she is far and away the better player.

farce *n.* 1. a ~ about 2. a ~ to + inf. (it was a complete ~ to conduct a trial in such conditions! = it was a complete ~ conducting a trial in such conditions!)

farcical *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was completely ~ to conduct a trial in such conditions ! = it was completely ~ conducting a trial in such conditions !)

fare I *n.* ["payment for transportation"] 1. to charge; pay a ~ 2. a full; half; reduced ~ 3. (AE) carfare (she gambled away most of her money and was left with just the/her ~ home) 4. at a ~ (at a reduced ~) ["food"] 5. simple, wholesome ~ 6. a bill of ~ ("a menu")

fare II *v.* (formal) (P; intr.) she ~d well in the big city

farewell *n.* 1. to make one's ~s 2. an emotional; fond; sad; tearful ~ 3. a ~ to (she blew them a kiss in ~; to say/wave ~ to one's friends and neighbors) (see also *to bid smb. farewell* at **bid III**) USAGE NOTE: As a formula of leave-taking, *Farewell* has been more or less replaced by *Goodbye*.

farm *n.* 1. to manage, operate, run, work a ~ 2. a chicken, dairy; fish; poultry; sheep; stock; stud; truck (AE) ~ (BE has *market garden* where AE has *truck farm*) 3. a city; collective; cooperative; private; working ~ 4. on a ~ (to work on a ~) 5. (misc.) "How you gonna keep them down on the ~, after they've seen Paree [?]" – song by Young, Lewis, & Donaldson

farmer *n.* a dirt (AE); gentleman; tenant ~

farming *n.* 1. to be engaged in, to be in; to work in ~ 2. chicken; dairy; fish; poultry; sheep; stock ~; truck ~ (AE; BE has *market gardening*) 3. collective; cooperative ~ 4. subsistence ~

farmland *n.* to cultivate, work ~

farm out *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (the work was ~ed out to several sub-contractors)

farsighted *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to provide for their old age)

farsightedness *n.* the ~ to + inf. (they had enough ~ to provide for their old age)

fascinated *adj.* 1. ~ at, by, with (~ at the spectacle of a rocket launching; ~ by the work they do) 2. ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to learn of their work)

fascinating *adj.* 1. endlessly ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to work with them = it's ~ working with them = they're absolutely the most ~ people to work with !) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ (to me) that migratory birds never get lost)

fascination *n.* 1. to have, hold a ~ for (the Himalayas have/hold a special ~ for climbers) 2. a morbid; special ~ 3. ~ at, over, with (climbers have a special ~ with the Himalayas)

fashion I *n.* ["vogue"] 1. to set a ~ 2. to come into ~; to go out of ~ (big hats have gone out of ~) 3. contemporary, current ~(s); the height of ~; the latest ~(s) (big hats are no longer the height of ~) 4. high ~ 5. a ~ in (~s in hats change constantly) 6. in ~ (big hats are no longer in ~) 7. out of ~ 8. a (dedicated) follower of, a slave of ~ ["manner"] 9. after a ~ ("in a way, up to a point") (though they'd quarreled they stayed friends after a ~ – but were no longer close friends) 10. in a ~ (she behaved in a strange ~; "I have been faithful to thee, Cynara ! in my ~" – Ernest Dowson (1867–1900), "Non Sum Qualis Eram …")

fashion II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from, out of (to ~ a pipe out of clay) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ clay into a pipe)

fashionable *adj.* 1. among, with (is recycling now very ~ among the young ?) 2. ~ to + inf. (is it now very ~ (for young people) to recycle ?)

fast I *adv.*, *adj.* 1. to hold ~ to (they held ~ to their beliefs) 2. to stand ~

fast II *n.* 1. to go on; keep, observe a ~ 2. to break a ~

fasten *v.* 1. to ~ loosely; securely; tightly; together (to ~ two signs together securely) 2. (N; used with an adjective) to ~ a box shut; to ~ smt. tight 3. (P) to ~ a sign on/onto/to a wall with tape/by taping it there; to ~ a corsage to a lapel; to ~ one's hair (with a clip)

fastidious *adj.* ~ about, when it comes to (~ about one's appearance)

fast one *n.* (colloq.) ["trick"] to pull a ~ (on)

fast-talk *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr. tr.) to ~ into; out of (to ~ smb. into doing smt.; to ~ one's way oit of trouble)

fat I *adj.* (misc.) as ~ as a pig

fat II *n.* 1. to skim off; trim (away) the ~ 2. animal; vegetable ~ 3. polyunsaturated; saturated ~ 4. deep; excess ~ (to fry in deep ~) 5. subcutaneous ~ 6. (misc.) (colloq.) to live off the ~ of the land ("to live very well"); to chew the ~ ("to chat")

fatal *adj.* 1. ~ for, to (that hesitation was ~ to his career) 2. ~ to + inf. (it proved ~ for him to hesitate)

fatalities *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. highway (AE), motorway (BE), traffic ~

fate *n.* 1. to decide, seal smb.'s ~ 2. to tempt ~ 3. to meet; share, suffer a ~ (they both shared/suffered a similar ~) 4. (a) bitter, cruel ~ (abandoned to a cruel ~) 5. blind, inexorable ~ 6. a quirk, stroke, twist of ~ 7. ~ to + inf. (it was our ~ never to meet again) 8. (misc.) ~ decreed that we would win the lottery; a cruel ~ befell them; would it be a ~ worse than death not to wear the latest fashions ?

fated *adj.* (formal) 1. ~ to + inf. (they were ~ never to meet) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that they should/would never meet again)

father *n.* 1. an expectant (AE); proud ~ 2. an adoptive; biological; foster; grandfather; lone (BE), single ~; stepfather 3. a father-in-law 4. a ~ to (he was like a ~ to them) 5. (misc.) the city ~s; a founding ~; the Founding Fathers; the Pilgrim Fathers (see also *father figure* at **figure**)

fatigue *n.* 1. to feel ~ 2. battle, combat; mental ~ 3. metal ~ 4. ~ dissipates, lifts; sets in 5. a state of ~ (she was in a state of complete ~)

faucet *n.* (AE) 1. to turn on a ~ 2. to turn off a ~ 3. a ~ drips, leaks 4. a leaky ~ 5. a cold-water; hot-water ~ (CE has *tap*)

fault I *n.* 1. to find ~ with 2. to correct a ~ (to correct a ~ in the system) 3. to overlook smb.'s ~s 4.

a grievous; human ~ (see also **double fault**; **foot fault**) 5. a ~ that + clause (it was not my ~ that he was late; don't blame me: it was your own ~ that you failed) 6. at ~ (we were all at ~) 7. through smb.'s ~ (let us help those who through no ~ of their own cannot help themselves) 8. to a ~ (she is fastidious to a ~) 9. (misc.) for, with all smb.'s ~s ("With all your ~s, I love you still" – "It Had To Be You" (1924), song by Jones & Kahn)

fault II *v.* (D; tr.) ("to blame") to ~ for

fauna *n.* flora and ~ ("plants and animals")

faux pas *n.* 1. to commit, make a ~ 2. a grave, serious ~

favor I favour *n.* ["friendly act, service"] 1. to do, grant (smb.) a ~ 2. to perform a ~ (for smb.) 3. to owe; return a ~ 4. a special ~ ["approval"] ["liking"] 5. to win smb.'s ~ 6. to curry ~ with 7. to vie for smb.'s ~ 8. to find, gain ~ with; to find ~ in smb.'s eyes 9. to lose ~ 10. universal ~ 11. in ~ with 12. out of ~ (with) (to fall out of ~) 13. to look with ~ on smt. ["support"] 14. to come out in ~ of 15. in ~ of (these facts speak in ~ of his acquittal; he is strongly in ~ of raising taxes) 16. in smb.'s ~ (the odds are in her ~) (see also **favors**)

favor II favour *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ smb. over smb. else 2. (formal) (D; tr.) to ~ with (she will now ~ us with a song) 3. (G) he strongly ~s raising taxes

favorable, favourable *adj.* ~ for, to

favored, favoured *adj.* 1. heavily ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (our team is heavily ~ to win)

favorite, favourite *n.* 1. a heavy, hot, strong; odds-on ~ 2. a ~ with 3. to play ~s

favoritism, favouritism *n.* 1. to show ~ 2. strong ~

favors, favours *n.* ["small gifts"] 1. party ~ ["sexual privileges"] 2. to grant one's ~ to smb.; to bestow one's ~s on

fawn *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on, over

fax I *n.* 1. to send a ~ (to) 2. to get, receive a ~ (from) 3. by ~ (to send a document by ~)

fax II *v.* 1. (A) they ~ed the document to us; or: they ~ed us the document 2. (D; tr.) to ~ about (they ~ed us about the meeting) 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ for (we ~ed for immediate delivery) 4. (H) we ~ed them to return home immediately 5. (L; may have an object) she ~ed (us) that the manuscript had been received 6. (Q; may have an object) they ~ed (us) where to meet

faze *v.* (L; must have an object) it did not ~ me at all that she declined the offer

fear I *n.* 1. to arouse, instill, kindle ~ 2. to express; feel; show ~ (she felt ~ for their safety) 3. to confirm smb.'s (worst) ~s 4. to allay, calm, dispel ~ 5. to overcome ~ (he finally overcame his ~ of snakes) 6. (a) grave, mortal, strong; groundless; growing, increasing, mounting; idle; inarticulate; lingering; morbid; sudden; well-founded ~ (he was paralysed with groundless ~s; the news came amid mounting ~s that the pound was weakening against the euro) 7. ~ that + clause (there are ~s that no compromise can be worked out) 8. for ~ of (he lied for ~ of being punished) 9. in ~ of (he is in ~ of his life) 10. out of ~ (he did it out of ~) 11. (misc.) to strike ~ into smb.'s heart; ~ and loathing (the very idea of work fills him with ~ and loathing); ~ and trepidation (the very idea of work fills him with ~ and trepidation); a cry of ~

fear II *v.* 1. to ~ greatly, very much; rightly 2. (d; intr.) to ~ for (she ~ed for their safety) 3. (E) I ~ to think what may happen 4. (K) he ~s my getting involved 5. (L) we ~ that we will not be able to attend

fearful *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ that + clause (they were ~ that the river would flood)

feasibility *n.* 1. commercial, financial; technical ~ 2. the ~ of (we're looking into the technical ~ of building a bridge at that point)

feasible *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was not technically ~ to build a bridge at that point)

feast I *n.* 1. to give; have a ~ 2. a royal, sumptuous; wedding ~

feast II *v.* (formal) (D; intr., tr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ on steak and potatoes; to ~ one's eyes on beautiful scenery)

feat *n.* 1. to accomplish, perform, pull off (colloq.) a ~ 2. a brave, heroic; brilliant, notable, noteworthy, outstanding, remarkable ~ (to perform a remarkable ~) 3. no mean, no small ~ (it was no mean ~ to get him to agree = it was no mean ~ getting him to agree)

feather *n.* 1. to pluck ~s (from a chicken) 2. (misc.) as light as a ~ ("very light"); a ~ in smb.'s cap ("a symbol of accomplishment"); to smooth smb.'s ruffled ~s ("to calm smb.") (see also **white feather**)

feature I *n.* ["quality"] 1. a characteristic, distinctive, distinguishing; notable; noteworthy, salient; special; typical ~ 2. a redeeming ~ ["contour"] ["line"] 3. aquiline; coarse; facial; physical; prominent; sharp; striking ~s 4. delicate, fine; regular; soft ~s ["main film"] 5. a double ~ ("a program consisting of two films in a movie theater") ["special item"] 6. an optional ~ (we chose several optional ~s for our new car)

feature II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~d as a dancer)

federate *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ into; with

federation *n.* 1. to enter, join; form a ~ 2. a loose, weak ~ 3. a ~ breaks up, dissolves; forms 4. a ~ among, between; with 5. in a ~

fed up *adj.* ~ about, of (BE), with

fee *n.* 1. to charge a ~ 2. to accept; offer; pay; receive a ~ 3. to split ~s (as of lawyers, doctors) 4. to waive one's ~ 5. a fat, large; flat; nominal ~ 6. an administrative; admission, entrance; contingency; laboratory; membership; registration ~ 7. a ~ for (a ~ for service) 8. for a ~ (for a nominal ~) 9. (misc.) fee-paying (esp. BE) (go to a private ~ school rather than a state school)

feed *v.* 1. (A) they fed erroneous information to us; or: they fed us erroneous information 2. (d; tr.) to ~ into, to (to ~ data into a computer) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ on (horses ~ on oats and hay; farmers ~ horses on oats and hay) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ with (they fed us with erroneous information)

feedback *n.* 1. to give, provide ~ 2. to get, receive ~ 3. ~ from (we welcome ~ from our customers) 4. negative; positive ~ 5. ~ concerning, on

feeding *n.* breast; communal; forced; intravenous ~

feel I *n.* 1. (colloq.) to have a (good) ~ for (she has a good ~ for sincerity in other people) 2. to have a ~ of (just have a ~ of this fabric!) 3. to get the ~ of (the new car) 4. I like the ~ of (this fabric)

feel II *v.* 1. ("to believe") ("to experience") to ~ deeply, keenly, strongly 2. (D; intr.) ("to have an opinion") to ~ about (how do you ~ about this problem?) 3. (d; intr.) ("to grope") to ~ (around) for (he felt around in his pockets for his keys) 4. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to sympathize with") (I really ~ for them) 5. (D; tr.) ("to experience") to ~ for (to ~ pity for smb.) 6. (I) ("to sense") he could ~ his heart beat = his heart could be felt to beat 7. (J) ("to sense") he could ~ his heart beating = his heart could be felt beating 8. (L) ("to believe") we ~ that you should return home 9. (Q) I could not ~ where the swelling was 10. (s) to ~ comfortable; I ~ cheated; I ~ foolish; to ~ sorry about smt.; to ~ good ("happy"); to ~ fine/well ("healthy"); to ~ happy; to ~ bad ("unwell") or ("sad"); to ~ unhappy 11. (BE) (S) I ~ such a fool 12. (misc.) it ~s good to be on vacation; it felt nice to swim in the heated pool; she felt proud of her children; to ~ bad/badly ("sad") or ("guilty") about smt.; (esp. BE) I ~ rather poorly today; to ~ up to ("to feel capable of") (do you ~ up to a drive to town?) (see also **feel like**)

feeler *n.* ["probe"] to put out, throw out a ~ (to)

feeling *n.* ["emotional reaction"] 1. to arouse, inspire, stir up ~ (he aroused deep ~s in his audience when he played the music with such great ~) ["appreciation"] 2. to develop; have a ~ for (to develop a ~ for classical music) ["sentiment"] ["sensation"] 3. to express; show; vent one's ~s 4. to experience, have a ~ (some music gives me a ~ of peace that I experience every time I hear it) 5. to harbor, have ~s (to harbor warm ~s of friendship towards smb.; although they've split up, he still has ~s for her) 6. to bottle up, repress, suppress; conceal, hide, mask one's ~s 7. to lose ~ (he lost all ~ in his foot) 8. a deep, strong; eery, strange; friendly, tender, warm; gloomy, sad; hostile; indescribable; intangible; intense; gnawing; pleasant; queasy; satisfied; sick; sinking; sneaking; uneasy; unpleasant ~ (I had an unpleasant ~ in my foot) 9. (colloq.) a gut ("instinctive") ~ 10. smb.'s innermost, intimate; pent-up ~s 11. bad, hard, ill ~s ("feelings of anger or resentment") (we have no hard ~s towards you about it: there are no hard ~s between us) (see also **ill feeling**) 12. a ~ that + clause (I had an eery ~ that I had been there before) ["attitude"] ["opinion"] 13. definite; strong ~s (we have strong ~s about this matter) 14. popular ~ (popular ~ was running (high) against the president) 15. ~s about, on (to have definite ~s on a subject) ["sensitivity"] 16. to hurt; spare smb.'s ~s 17. delicate, sensitive ~s ["premonition"] 18. a ~ that + clause (I had an eery ~ that I would be there again)

feel like *v.* 1. (G) she ~s like resting 2. (S; used only with nouns) to ~ a fool; it ~s like satin; it ~s like rain 3. (misc.) (esp. AE) it ~s like it's going to rain (= it feels as if/as though it's going to rain); we ~ like you should return home

feint *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. a ~ to (the right)

fellow *n.* ["scholar"] ["fellowship holder"] 1. an honorary; research; senior; teaching ~ ["man"] 2. a fine, good; honest; nice, regular (AE); young ~

fellowship *n.* ["stipend; support for studies"] 1. to award, grant; establish a ~ 2. to apply for; to receive, win a ~ 3. a graduate, postgraduate (esp. BE); postdoctoral ~ ["community of interest"] 4. to foster, promote (good) ~ 5. to enjoy good ~ 6. close, strong, warm ~ 7. ~ with 8. a sense of ~

felony *n.* 1. to commit, perpetrate a ~ 2. to compound a ~ ("to waive prosecution in return for compensation")

feminist *n.* an ardent, dedicated; militant; moderate; radical ~

fence I *n.* 1. to build, erect, put up a ~ 2. a high; low ~ 3. a barbed-wire; chain-link; picket; rail; snow; wooden; wrought-iron ~ (we spoke over/across the picket ~ between our properties) (see also **political fences**) 4. a ~ around; between 5. (misc.) to mend ~s ("to set things right"); on the ~ ("uncommitted"); to straddle the ~ ("to be uncommitted")

fence II *v.* (d; intr.) ("to vie") to ~ for (the drivers were ~cing (with each other) for position)

fence off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (the yard was ~d off from the street)

fend *v.* to ~ for oneself (when she walked out he was left to ~ for himself)

fender *n.* (AE) a dented ~ (BE has *wing*)

ferment *n.* 1. intellectual; political; social ~ 2. in ~ (the country was in (a state of) ~)

ferry I *n.* 1. to board; take a ~ 2. by ~ (to cross a river by ~)

ferry II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ across (to ~ troops across a river) 2. (P; tr.) we have to ~ the children to and from school

fertilization *n.* in-vitro ~

fertilizer *n.* 1. to spread ~ 2. artificial; chemical; natural ~

fervor, fervour *n.* 1. great ~ 2. evangelical; messianic; patriotic; religious ~ 3. for; with ~ (she spoke with the great ~ for the cause that she always showed)

festival *n.* 1. to hold a ~ 2. a dance; drama; film; folk; harvest; music; religious ~ (we met at/during the music ~ that takes place every summer)

festoon *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (the hall was ~ed with lights)

fetch *v.* (C) please ~ my pipe for me; or: please ~ me my pipe

fete *n.* (esp. BE) 1. to hold a ~ 2. a church; village ~ (we met at/during the village ~ that takes place every summer)

fetish *n.* 1. to make a ~ of smt. (they made a ~ of good grooming) 2. (esp. BE) to have a ~ about (smt.)

fettle *n.* they were in fine ~

fetus, foetus *n.* 1. to abort a ~ 2. a human; viable ~ 3. a ~ develops

feud I *n.* 1. to stir up a ~ 2. a bitter, deadly, internecine ~ 3. a blood; family; personal ~ 4. a ~ between, with 5. a ~ about, over

feud II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, over; with (the Montagues and the Capulets finally agreed to settle their ~ with each other)

fever *n.* ["elevated temperature of the body"] 1. to catch, contract, come down with, develop, get; go down with (BE) a ~ (he's in bed with a bout of the recurrent ~ he developed some time ago) 2. to have, run a ~ 3. a burning; constant; high; intermittent; mild, slight; recurrent; remittent, remitting ~ 4. a ~ breaks, subsides ["disease or condition"] 5. glandular (CE also has *mononucleosis*); hay; relapsing; rheumatic; Rocky Mountain spotted; trench; typhoid; undulant; yellow ~ (see also **scarlet fever**)

few I *determiner*, *pronoun* 1. comparatively, relatively ~ (we saw relatively ~ of them) 2. ~ in number 3. a ~, a fair ~ (BE), a good ~, quite a ~ of (we saw a ~ of them) 4. (misc.) ~ if any of (many people came of whom we knew ~ if any) USAGE NOTE: The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows: we saw few of them – and the ~ (of them) that we saw we didn't recognize! As for nouns, compare the following constructions – we saw very few (of the) students ("we didn't see many students"); we saw (only) a few ("several") (of the) students; we saw quite a few students; we saw quite a few of the students.

few II *n.* 1. (a) precious, very ~ 2. a fair ~ (BE), a good ~, quite a ~ 3. (misc.) to have a ~ too many ("to drink too much"); ~ and far between ("rare"); just a ~, only a ~; ~ if any (many people came: we knew ~ if any)

fewer I *determiner*, *pronoun* 1. ~ in number 2. ~ of (we saw ~ of them than we expected to)

fewer II *n., adv.* no ~ than (we saw no ~ than 80% of them)

fiasco *n.* 1. to end in a ~ 2. a complete, total, utter ~

fib *n.* to tell a ~

fiber, fibre *n.* 1. artificial, synthetic; coarse; cotton; dietary; rayon; wool ~ 2. optical ~ (for the electronic transmission of information) 3. nerve ~ (see also **moral fiber**)

fiction *n.* 1. pure ~ (her story was pure ~) 2. light; popular; romantic; science ~ 3. a work of ~ (a novel is a work of ~) 4. (misc.) to distinguish fact from ~

fiddle I *n.* 1. to play the ~ 2. (AE; colloq.) a bass ~ (CE has *double bass*) 3. (BE; colloq.) on the ~ ("cheating") 4. (misc.) as fit as a ~ ("very healthy") (see also **second fiddle**)

fiddle II *v.* (d; intr.) ("to fool around") to ~ with (he kept ~ling with his computer)

fiddle around *v.* (D; intr.) ("to fool around") to ~ with (he kept ~ling around with his computer)

fidelity *n.* ["loyalty"] 1. to pledge, swear ~ 2. ~ to ["quality of electronic reproduction"] 3. high ~

fidget *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (he kept ~ing with his computer)

field *n.* ["cultivated area"] 1. to cultivate; plow; till, work a ~ 2. a corn; rice; wheat ~ = a ~ of corn; rice; wheat 3. in a ~ (farmers were working in the ~s) ["area used for athletic events"] 4. to take the ~ 5. a baseball; cricket; football, soccer; hockey; rugby ~ (BE often has *pitch*); playing ~ 6. off; on the ~ (how many players were on the football ~ and how many were sent off it?) ["area used as a landing strip"] 7. a flying, landing ~ 8. on the ~ ["area used for practical work"] 9. to work (out) in the ~ (to work (out) in the ~ doing fieldwork) ["unbroken expanse"] ["space"] 10. an open ~ 11. a battlefield 12. a visual ~ = a ~ of vision ["area producing a natural resource"] 13. a coal; gold; oil ~ ["space in which electric lines of force are present"] (physics) 14. an electromagnetic, magnetic; gravitational ~ ["area of activity"] 15. in a ~ (in the ~ of science) 16. in smb.'s ~; outside (of) smb.'s ~ (her works are outside of my ~ (of interest)) ["group of competitors"] 17. to lead the ~ (our dictionary leads a strong ~ of rivals) ["baseball or softball playing area"] 18. center ~; infield; left ~; outfield; right ~ (hit a line drive to center ~) ["misc."] 19. on the ~ of honor; (esp. AE) to play the ~ ("to avoid committing oneself, esp. romantically")

fieldwork *n.* to conduct, do ~ (to work (out) in the field doing ~ with the local population; to do ~ on the local flora and fauna)

fiend *n.* a coke; dope; sex ~

Fifth *n.* (colloq.) (US) ["the Fifth Amendment to the U.S. Constitution, protecting witnesses against self-incrimination"] to invoke, plead, take the ~ (also fig.) ("are you dating smb. else?" "I'm afraid I'll have to take the ~ on that")

fight I *n.* ["struggle"] 1. to pick, provoke, start a ~ (he picked a ~ with me) 2. to put up, wage a ~ (to wage a ~ against corruption) 3. to get into; have a ~ (to get into a ~ with a neighbor about the property line) 4. to lose; win a ~ 5. to break up, stop a ~ 6. a bitter, desperate, fierce, hard, stubborn; last-ditch ~ (to put up a last-ditch ~; to put up a stubborn ~ against terminal illness) 7. a clean, fair; dirty, unfair ~ 8.

a ~ to the death; a ~ to the finish 9. a fist; gunfight; knife fight; snowball ~ (see also **bullfight**; **dogfight**) 10. a ~ breaks out, starts; rages 11. a ~ about, over; against; among, between; for; with (a ~ for justice; a ~ between local politicians) 12. a ~ to + inf. (we joined the ~ to reduce waste) ["boxing match"] 13. to hold, stage; promote a ~ 14. to fix a ~ ("to influence the results of a ~ illegally") 15. a clean; dirty; grudge ~ 16. a championship, title ~ 17. (misc.) the big ~ (everyone was talking about the big ~)

fight II *v.* 1. to ~ bravely, heroically; clean; desperately, hard, stubbornly; dirty, unfairly; fair, fairly 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ about, over; against; among; for; with (he was always ~ing with his neighbors about the noise; Great Britain fought with Turkey against Russia; they are always ~ing among themselves; the United States fought (a war) with Mexico over their common border; the war was fought for a just cause; the dogs were ~ing over a bone) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ like (they fought like heroes) 4. (E) they fought to remain alive 5. (misc.) to ~ (in order) to win; to ~ like cat and dog (BE), to ~ like cats and dogs (AE); to ~ to the finish; to ~ with one's fists; to ~ tooth and nail; to ~ it out (two teams ~ing it out for the championship); two teams ~ing (in order) to win the championship; only one team can ~ its way to the championship USAGE NOTE: "X fought with Y" is possible if and only if it is also possible to say "X and Y fought": *he often fought with his wife until their divorce = he and his wife often fought (with each other) until their divorce; Flatland fought with Ruritania over oil = Flatland and Ruritania fought (with each other) over oil.* In those examples "fight with" means 'fight against.' But *fight with* can also mean 'fight on the same side as' when another opponent is specified: *Flatland fought with Ruritania against Nastiland = Flatland and Ruritania fought (together) against Nastiland.* Otherwise, use *fight against* or *fight: let's all fight (against) poverty.*

fight back *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ against, at (AE) (to ~ at terrorism) 2. (misc.) to ~ in self-defense USAGE NOTE: To *fight back at terrorism* seems to be an AE blend of *fight back against terrorism* + *strike back at terrorism.*

fighter *n.* ["pugilist"] 1. a clean; dirty ~ 2. a street ~ ["fighting aircraft"] 3. a long-range; medium-range ~ ["misc."] 4. a firefighter

fighting *n.* 1. to step up the ~ 2. bitter, fierce, hard, heavy; hand-to-hand ~ 3. clean; dirty ~ 4. street ~ 5. (the) ~ breaks out; escalates; rages 6. (the) ~ dies down 7. ~ about, over; among, between

fight on *v.* to ~ to the bitter/very end

figure I *n.* ["impression"] ["appearance"] 1. to cut a (fine) ~ ("to make a strong impression") 2. a conspicuous, dashing, fine, handsome, imposing, striking, trim ~ (to cut a dashing ~; she has a curvaceous; full; slim ~) 3. a ridiculous, sorry ~ ["person"] ["personage"] 4. a familiar; key, leading; national; prominent, well-known; public ~ 5. a political; religious; underworld ~ 6. an authority; father; mother; parental ~ ["number"] 7. to bandy ~s 8. to round down (esp. BE); to round off (esp. AE); to round up (esp. BE) ~s 9. approximate, ball-park (esp. AE; colloq.), round; available; census; exact; government; official; reliable ~s 10. in ~s (in round ~s) 11. (misc.) she earns a six-figure salary (between 100,000 and 1,000,000) (see also **double figures**) ["form"] 12. a symmetrical ~ 13. (misc.) to do a ~ eight/a ~ of eight (BE) (as in ice skating)

figure II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to play a role") to ~ in (she ~d prominently (among the most important people) in history) 2. (colloq.) (esp. AE) ("to estimate") (L) we ~d that we would stay a few days 3. (colloq.) (esp. AE) (M) ("to estimate") I ~d him to be worth a few hundred thousand 4. (misc.) (esp. AE) (slang) "How could she betray me like that?" "Go ~! (= Search me!)"

figure on *v.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) (G) ("to intend") we ~d on staying a few days

figure out *v.* (colloq.) 1. (L) he ~d out that we could not possibly get there on time 2. (Q) she could not ~ how to do it

filch *v.* (D; tr.) (colloq.) ("to steal") to ~ from

file I *n.* ["dossier"] ["folder"] 1. to make up, open, start a ~ 2. to keep a ~ 3. to close a ~ 4. official ~s 5. a circular (esp. AE) (colloq.); confidential ~ (if it's not important, it goes in the circular ~ (= the wastebasket)) 6. a vertical ~ 7. a ~ on (to keep a ~ on smb.) 8. on ~ (these documents are kept on ~ (with/by the police)) ["collection of data in a computer"] 9. to access; copy; create, open; delete, erase; download; edit; print; save a ~ 10. a batch; data; text ~

file II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to apply") to ~ for (to ~ for divorce) 2. (D; tr.) ("to classify") to ~ under (material about the weather is filed under W) 3. (D; tr.) ("to submit") to ~ with (she ~d an application with several employment agencies)

file III *n.* ["row"] 1. single ~ 2. in single ~ 3. (misc.) to form a single ~ and then walk in single ~

file IV *v.* ("to move in a line") 1. (d; intr.) to ~ by, past (to ~ past a coffin) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into; out of (to ~ into an auditorium; the jury ~d out of the courtroom) 3. (P) to ~ across; along; through

file V *n.* ["tool for smoothing surfaces"] a nail ~

file VI *v.* ("to smooth or shape") (N) she ~d her nails smooth

filibuster I *n.* to carry on, conduct, engage in a ~ (against)

filibuster II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ against

filing *n.* ["storage of data"] to do typing and ~

fill I *n.* ["what is necessary to satisfy"] to drink; eat; have one's ~ (to have one's ~ of trouble)

fill II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (the auditorium was ~ed to capacity; to ~ to overflowing; to ~ to the brim/

top) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (the lecture hall ~ed with people; to ~ a hole with sand; her eyes ~ed with tears)

fill-in *n.* ["replacement or substitute"] a ~ for (she is a ~ today for the regular announcer)

fill in *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for ("to replace") (to ~ for a friend) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ on ("to inform") (to ~ smb. in on the details) 3. (D; tr.) ("to make full") to ~ with (to ~ a hole with dirt = to ~ a hole in with dirt)

filling *n.* (dental) 1. to have; need; put in; replace a ~ 2. to cement a ~ 3. to lose a ~ 4. a broken, cracked ~ 5. a permanent; temporary ~ 6. a ~ breaks, cracks; chips; falls out; lasts

fill up *v.* ("to make full") (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ the car with gas/petrol = to ~ the car up with gas/petrol)

film *n.* ["cinema picture, motion picture"] 1. to cut, edit; direct; make, produce, shoot a ~ (the ~ of the book was shot on location) 2. to distribute; promote; release; show a ~ 3. to ban; censor a ~ 4. to rate; review a ~ 5. to see, take in, watch a ~ 6. an action; gangster; travel ~ 7. a documentary; educational; instructional; propaganda; training ~ 8. a children's ~ 9. an adult, blue (BE), erotic, pornographic, X-rated ~ 10. a black-and-white; color; colorized ~ (there's one color scene in this black-and-white ~) 11. a feature; silent; sound; made-for-television, television, TV ~ 12. (misc.) (BE) to work in ~s ("to work in the film industry"); to act in a ~ USAGE NOTE: In a theater, one *sees a film*; on a home TV, one *watches a film* or *sees a film*. ["roll of material used to take photographs"] 13. to insert, load; remove; rewind; wind ~ 14. to develop; expose ~ 15. to splice ~ 16. black-and-white; color; fast ~ 17. 8-millimeter; 16-millimeter; 35-millimeter ~ 18. a roll of ~ 19. (misc.) to capture smt. on ~; ~ footage

filter I *n.* 1. to pass smt. through a ~ 2. a cloth; dust; oil; sand ~

filter II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ into (foreign influence began to ~ into the country) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ out of (they slowly ~ed out of the room) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ through (sunlight ~ed through the drapes)

filter down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (news slowly ~ed down to us)

filter through *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (reports have started to ~ to headquarters)

filth *n.* in ~ (to live in ~)

fin *n.* a caudal; dorsal; pectoral; pelvic ~

final *n.* a cup ~ (two sides that clashed in an exciting cup ~) (see also **finals**)

finale *n.* the grand ~

finals *n.* ["final examinations"] 1. to sit (BE), take one's ~ ["last competition"] 2. to get/go through to the; get into, get to, reach the ~

finance *n.* high; public ~

financing *n.* deficit; private; public ~

find I *n.* 1. an archeological ~ 2. an important; lucky; rare ~ (we made an important archeological ~ in/on a site that had already produced/yielded several others)

find II *v.* 1. (C) ~ an interesting book for me; or: ~ me an interesting book 2. (legal) (d; intr.) ("to decide") to ~ against; for (to ~ for the plaintiff) 3. (D; tr.) ("to discover") to ~ for (have you found a suitable candidate for the job?) 4. (J) ("to discover") we found him working on his book 5. (L) ("to discover") we found that he was working on his book 6. (M) ("to discover") we found London and Paris to be fascinating cities 7. (N; used with an adjective, noun, past participle) we found London and Paris fascinating cities; to ~ smb. wanting; the soldiers found the village destroyed; she was found guilty by the jury 8. (Q) we could not ~ where the money was hidden 9. (misc.) we found it difficult to believe

finding *n.* 1. a preliminary ~ (a preliminary ~ about/on drug use for one small group cannot be generalized across the whole population) 2. a ~ against; for (the court's ~ for the plaintiff) 3. (a) ~ that + clause (it was the court's ~ that no crime had been committed) 4. (misc.) to rubber-stamp a committee's ~s; research ~s

find out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about (we found out about the concert only yesterday) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (she found out about the concert for me) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from (we found it out from a reporter) 4. (L) we found out (from the timetable) that the train would be late 5. (Q) I finally found out how to operate the new computer

fine I *adj.* 1. ~ for (that restaurant is ~ for a special occasion but too expensive to eat at all the time) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ for the government to reduce taxes, but the deficit will be increased) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that the government is to reduce taxes, but the deficit will be increased)

fine II *n.* 1. to impose, issue, levy a ~ on smb. 2. (colloq.) to slap a ~ on smb. 3. to draw, receive; pay a ~ 4. a big, heavy, hefty, stiff ~ 5. a small ~ 6. a mandatory ~ 7. a ~ for (I got a ~ for illegal parking, which I had to pay; to owe a lot of money in unpaid ~s for illegal parking)

fine III *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. for illegal parking; to get ~d heavily for smoking) 2. (O; can be used with one animate object) the police ~d him twenty dollars (for illegal parking); the police ~d him (for illegal parking)

finery *n.* ["showy clothing"] in all one's ~ (dressed up in all their ~)

finger I *n.* 1. to drum, tap one's ~s 2. to point a ~ at 3. (usu. fig.) to snap one's ~s (I jump when she snaps her ~s) ("I obey her commands without question") 4. an accusing; warning ~ (to point an accusing ~ at smb.) 5. a forefinger, index ~; little ~ (AE and Scottish also have *pinkie*); middle; ring; trigger ~ 6. (misc.) to eat with one's ~s; to eat chicken ~s ("chicken ~s were another meal they never argued about" – Michael Crichton, *Prey*, London, Harper, 2006 [2002], p. 101); to eat fish ~s (esp. BE = AE *fish sticks*); she ran her ~s through her hair; to get one's ~s burned ("to bear unpleasant consequences"); to prick a ~; she jammed her ~ in the door; to lay a ~ on smb. ("to harm smb."); I can't quite lay (esp. AE)/put my ~ on what is wrong ("I cannot discover what is wrong"); to count on one's ~s (I can do simple calculations by counting on my ~s; I can count on the ~s of one hand the people I really respect); to keep one's ~s crossed ("to hope for smt."); to not lift a ~ ("to make no effort") (she didn't lift a ~ to help us!); to have one's ~ in smt. ("to be involved in smt."); the ~ of suspicion points at/to you ("you are under suspicion"); to have smb. wrapped around one's little ~ ("to have smb.'s complete devotion")

finger II *v.* (colloq.) (D; tr.) ("to identify") to ~ as (he was ~ed as one of the escaped convicts)

fingernails *n.* 1. to cut, trim; file; manicure smb.'s ~ 2. to bite, chew one's ~

fingerprints *n.* 1. to leave ~ 2. to take smb.'s ~ 3. telltale ~ 4. a set of ~ (the police got a clean set of ~) 5. (misc.) to dust for ~; the ~ had been carefully wiped off

fingertips *n.* 1. at one's ~ (to have information at one's ~) 2. to one's ~ (he's a gentleman to his ~!)

finicky *adj.* ~ about

finish I *n.* ["end"] 1. a close; photo ~ (there was a very close ~ to the race) 2. at the ~ 3. to the ~ (to fight to the ~) 4. (misc.) from start to ~ ["polish"] 5. a dull; glazed; glossy; matte ~

finish II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ by, with (they ~ed their performance by singing a song/with a song; are/have you ~ed with your work?) 2. (G) they ~ed working at four o'clock; she has just ~d writing her second novel 3. (s) to ~ last

finish line, (BE) **finishing line** *n.* to cross; reach the ~

finish up *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ by, with (we ~ed up the year with no profit; they ~ed up by scrubbing the floor) 2. (G) she ~ed up buying two suits instead of one 3. (s) to start off/out poor and ~ rich

fire I *n.* ["destructive burning"] 1. to set (AE), start a ~ 2. to set ~ to (they set ~ to the barn = they set the barn on ~) 3. to catch ~ (the barn caught ~) 4. to contain; douse, extinguish, put out; fight; stamp out a ~ 5. to bring a ~ under control 6. a raging, roaring ~ 7. a brush; chemical; electrical; forest ~ 8. a ~ breaks out; burns; rages (out of control); smoulders; spreads (the ~ burned out of control for two hours) 9. a ~ goes out 10. on ~ (the house was on ~) ["burning, combustion"] 11. to build, kindle a ~, lay the (BE) ~; light, make a ~ 12. to add fuel to, fuel; poke, stir; stoke a ~ 13. to bank; douse, extinguish, put out a ~ 14. a ~ burns; goes out; smoulders 15. (misc.) the ~ is out; the glow of a ~; cook it over a low or an open ~ ["shooting"] 16. to commence, open ~ (the enemy opened ~ on us) 17. to exchange ~ (with the enemy) 18. to call down ~ on 19. to attract, draw ~ 20. to return ~ 21. to cease ~ (cease ~!) 22. to hold one's ~ 23. concentrated, fierce, heavy, murderous; rapid ~ 24. cross; friendly; harassing; hostile; incoming; interdictory ~ 25. artillery; automatic; machine-gun; rifle; semiautomatic; small-arms ~ 26. under ~ (we came under heavy enemy ~ as we tried to advance) (also fig.) (the Prime Minister is coming under heavy media ~) 27. (misc.) (directly) in the line of ~; a baptism of ~ ["misc."] 28. to play with ~ ("to take a risk"); to fight ~ with ~ ("to use extreme measures as countermeasures"); to set the Thames (BE)/the world on ~ ("to be very successful") ["heater"] (BE) 29. to switch/turn on a ~ 30. to switch/turn off a ~ 31. an electric; gas ~

fire II *v.* 1. to ~ point-blank 2. (B) the quarterback ~d a pass to an end 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ at (he ~d at me; he ~d his pistol at me) 4. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ into (he ~ed his pistol into the air; the troops ~d into the crowd) 5. (D; intr.) to ~ on (the troops ~d on the crowd) (D; tr.) to ~ with (they ~d me with enthusiasm) 6. Ready, Aim, Fire!

firearms *n.* to carry ~s (in Britain the police don't usually carry ~)

fire away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at the enemy)

fire back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at the enemy)

firecracker *n.* (esp. AE = BE often prefers *banger*) 1. to let off (esp. BE), light, set off a ~ 2. (esp. AE) to shoot off ~s 3. a ~ goes off

fire drill *n.* 1. to conduct, hold a ~ 2. at a ~

fire extinguisher *n.* 1. to train a ~ (on a fire) 2. to operate a ~ 3. to recharge a ~

fired up *adj.* ["excited"] (all) ~ about, with

fireside *n.* by the ~ (to sit by the ~)

fireworks *n.* 1. to let off (esp. BE), set off, shoot off (esp. AE) ~ 2. a spectacular display of ~ = a spectacular ~ display

firing line *n.* ["line from which soldiers fire their weapons"] in (BE), on (AE) the ~ (also fig.) USAGE NOTE: The *firing line* can also be called *the line of fire*, esp. when used literally.

firing squad *n.* to face, stand before a ~ for one's crimes

firm I *adj.* ["competitive, strong"] 1. ~ against (the pound was ~ against the dollar) ["strict"] 2. ~ with (~ with the children)

firm II *n.* ["company"] 1. to establish; manage, operate, run a ~ 2. an advertising; business; law, legal; manufacturing; shipping ~ 3. a reputable ~ 4. in a ~ (she works in a reputable ~)

first *adj.*, *adv.*, *n.* 1. to come (in), finish ~ (in a race) 2. the ~ to + inf. (she was the ~ to arrive and the last to leave) 3. among the ~ (she was among the ~ to arrive and among the last to leave) 4. at ~ (see also *put first things first* at **thing**) ["first gear"] 5. to put (a vehicle) into ~ 6. in ~ (the car's in ~) ["undergraduate first-class honours degree at a British university"] 7. to get a ~ 8. a double; starred ~ 9. a ~ in (to get a ~ in English)

first aid *n.* 1. to administer, give ~ (to give ~ to the injured) 2. to get, receive ~

first-class *adv.* to travel ~

fish I *n.* 1. to catch (a) ~; to farm ~ (farmed or wild ~) 2. baked; broiled (AE), grilled; dried; filleted; fresh; freshwater; fried; frozen; saltwater; smoked ~ 3. tropical ~ 4. ~ bite at bait; breathe through gills; hatch; swim 5. a school, shoal of ~ 6. (misc.) to drink like a ~ ("to drink excessive amounts of alcohol"); an odd, queer ~ ("a strange person"); a cold ~ ("an unfriendly person"); fish and chips, fish'n'chips (fish and chips is my favorite dish) USAGE NOTE: Although "chips" 'French fries' is generally BE, the expression above is CE.

fish II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for trout; to ~ for compliments) (see also **fishing**)

fish around *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for information; to ~ in one's pockets for one's keys)

fish fry *n.* to have a ~

fishing *n.* 1. to go ~ 2. to go in for ~ 3. to do some ~ 4. deep-sea ~ USAGE NOTES: 1. to go trout-fishing = to go fishing for trout. 2. Compare *to go in for fishing* with *to go fishing*: "I like going fishing." "Me, I don't go in for fishing much: I hardly ever do it. I'd rather go hunting."

fishy *adj.* (colloq.) ~ about (there is smt. (very) ~ about them)

fission *n.* binary; nuclear ~

fist *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. to clench; raise; shake one's ~ 3. a tight ~ 4. (misc.) an iron ~ ("a harsh policy"); a mailed ~ ("a threat of armed force")

fisticuffs *n.* (formal) to engage in ~

fit I *n.* ["strong emotional reaction"] 1. to have, throw a ~ (colloq.) (mom will throw a ~ if we get back late!) 2. during, in a ~ (she threw things at him in a ~ of rage; the comedian had them rolling in the aisles in ~s of laughter) ["misc."] 3. by ~s and starts ("in irregular bursts of activity")

fit II *adj.* ["qualified"] ["physically capable"] 1. physically ~ 2. ~ for (~ for duty; ~ for human consumption; ~ for purpose (BE)) 3. ~ to + inf. (he is not ~ to work) 4. to keep ~ 5. (misc.) as ~ as a fiddle/flea (BE) ("very fit and healthy"); ~ and well ["suitable"] 6. to see, think ~ to + inf. (they saw ~ to employ smb. else) 7. (misc.) ~ for a king/queen (see also *survival of the fittest* at **survival**)

fit III *n.* ["manner of fitting"] 1. a good; loose; perfect; snug, tight ~ 2. goodness of ~ (is there goodness of ~ between our theory and the data?)

fit IV *v.* 1. to ~ together 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ a customer for a new suit; to ~ smb. for glasses) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ in, into (everything fit into the suitcase) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ in, into (she was able to ~ all the books into one carton) USAGE NOTE: In BE the past and past participle of *fit* are usu. *fitted*. AE usu. has *fit* when the verb cannot be used in the passive form – the tailor fitted the customer carefully (CE); the suit was fitted carefully by the tailor (CE); the suit fit me a year ago (AE) = (BE) the suit fitted me a year ago.

fit in *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with ("to blend in") (she fit (AE) = fitted (BE) right in with our crowd)

fitness *n.* 1. physical ~ 2. a certain level of ~ 3. ~ for

fit out *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (the ship was ~ted out as a tender) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ for (the expedition was ~ted out for a long trip) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ with (the bus was ~ted out with new air conditioning)

fitting I *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to pay tribute to the early pioneers) 2. ~ that + clause; may take subj. (it is ~ that she be/should be honored; it is ~ that she was honored; "It is altogether ~ and proper that we should do this." – Abraham Lincoln, The Gettysburg Address (Nov. 19, 1863))

fitting II *n.* ["small part"] 1. an electrical; female; gas; male ~ ["trying on of a garment"] 2. to go for a ~ 3. (misc.) a ~ room ["misc."] (BE) 4. fixtures and ~s (when we moved in, we had to pay extra for the ~s and fittings)

fix I *n.* (colloq.) ["difficult situation"] 1. to be in a ~ 2. a fine, nice, pretty ~ ["injection of a narcotic"] (slang) 3. to get; need a ~ ["solution"] 4. a quick ~ (there's no quick ~ for/to such a complex problem)

fix II *v.* 1. (AE) (C) ("to prepare") ~ a drink for me; or: ~ me a drink 2. (d; tr.) to ~ on (she ~ed her gaze on him) 3. (colloq.) (esp. AE) (E: used only as *fixing*) ("to be getting ready") they're ~ing to eat

fixation *n.* ["obsession"] a ~ about, on, with (to have a ~ on smt.)

fixing *n.* 1. price ~

fixings *n.* ["trimmings"] (esp. AE) (colloq.) (roast turkey with all the ~)

fixture *n.* 1. a lighting; plumbing; shop (esp. BE), store (esp. AE) ~ 2. (misc.) (BE) ~s and fittings (when we moved in, we had to pay extra for the ~s and fittings)

fix up *v.* (D; tr.) (colloq.) to ~ with ("to match with") (to ~ smb. up with a good job; my friends ~ed me up with her)

flag *n.* 1. to display, fly, show; hang out; hoist, raise, run up, unfurl; wave a ~ 2. to dip, lower a ~; to strike the ~ 3. a garrison; national ~ 4. the black; red; white ~ ("symbol of surrender") 5. a ~ flaps, flies, flutters, waves (the ~ was flying at half-mast) 6. under a ~ (the ship sailed under the Panamanian ~) 7. (misc.) to show/wave the ~ ("to demonstrate one's patriotism"); (under) a ~ of truce; to register a ship under a ~ of convenience

flair *n.* 1. to develop; have; show a ~ for 2. a distinctive ~ (a pianist with a distinctive ~ for the music of Chopin)

flak *n.* ["criticism"] (colloq.) to catch; come in for, run into; take ~ (he took a lot of ~ for that one!)

flake *n.* a ~ of dandruff; a ~ of snow = a snowflake; a ~ of soap = a soapflake (a few ~s of snow began to fall)

flammable *adj.* (esp. AE) highly, very ~

flame *n.* 1. (also fig.) to douse, extinguish, put out, snuff out; kindle a ~ 2. (fig.) to fan, stir, stoke the ~s (of racism) 3. to burst into ~(s) 4. a clear; open ~ 5. a ~ burns; goes out; shoots out/up; smoulders 6. in ~s (to go up in ~s; the house was in ~s) 7. (misc.) an (the) eternal ~; the Olympic ~; an old ~ ("an old love"); a wall of ~

flank *n.* 1. to turn ("go around") a ~ (to turn the enemy's ~) 2. on a ~ (on the left ~) (see also *flank attack* at **attack I**)

flap *n.* (slang) ["commotion"] 1. a political ~ 2. be/get in a ~ about, over

flare I *n.* 1. to light; shoot up a ~ 2. to set out, set up a ~ (they set up ~s along the runway) 3. a parachute ~

flare II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into violence)

flare up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at the slightest provocation) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in anger)

flash I *n.* 1. a blinding ~ 2. an electronic ~ (for a camera) 3. a hot ~ (AE; BE has *hot flush*) 4. a news ~ (about; from) 5. in a ~; as quick as a ~ ("very quick")

flash II *v.* 1. (usu. B; rarely A) ("to convey by light") they ~ed a signal to the crew 2. (d; intr.) ("to pass") to ~ across, through (an old memory ~ed across my mind; a thought ~ed through my mind) 3. (D; tr.) ("to shine") to ~ at (the driver ~ed his lights at us) 4. (d; intr.) ("to come suddenly") to ~ into (a brilliant idea ~ed into her mind) 5. (D; intr.) ("to glow") to ~ with (her eyes ~ed with anger)

flashback *n.* 1. to experience, have a ~ 2. a ~ to (a ~ to smb.'s childhood)

flashlight *n.* (AE; BE has *torch*) 1. to turn on a ~ 2. to shine, train a ~ on 3. to turn off a ~

flask *n.* 1. a Thermos (T) (BE), vacuum (BE) ~; AE has *Thermos* (T) *bottle* 2. a hip ~ 3. a ~ of

flat I *adj.* ["flavorless, stale"] 1. to go ~ (the beer has gone ~) ["extended at full length"] 2. (also fig.) to fall ~ (as an actor he fell ~) 3. (also fig.) she fell ~ on her face 4. (misc.) to lie ~; as ~ as a pancake

flat II *adv.* ["exactly": used after an expression of lengthy of time] 1. she ran a mile in seven minutes ~ 2. (misc.) in nothing ~ ("very quickly") (don't worry: I can do it in nothing ~!)

flat II *n.* ["deflated tire"] (esp. AE; BE prefers *flat tyre* or *puncture*) 1. to get; have a ~ 2. to change; fix, repair a ~ ["apartment"] (esp. BE) 3. to rent a ~ from 4. to let, rent out; sublet a ~ to 5. to furnish; redecorate; renovate a ~ 6. a basement; council; furnished; garden; high-rise; penthouse; service; studio; unfurnished ~ (AE has *apartment*) 7. converted; purpose-built ~s 8. a block of ~s (AE has *apartment building/apartment house*) 9. (misc.) a ground-floor; top-floor, etc.; one-bedroom; two-bedroom, etc.; one-room; two-room, etc. ~

flatter *v.* 1. (D; refl.) to ~ on (to ~ oneself on one's knowledge of history) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ smb. about, on

flattered *adj.* 1. ~ at, by (she was ~ at the invitation) 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to have been invited) 3. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that she had been invited)

flattering *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for her to have been invited) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ for her that she'd been invited)

flattery *n.* 1. to resort to, use ~ 2. to see through ~ 3. to succumb to ~

flaunt *v.* 1. to ~ openly, shamelessly (she ~ed her power openly by publicly flouting the rules) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ in front of, to (she shamelessly ~ed her wealth in front of all the guests!) 3. (misc.) "if you've got it, ~ it!" (saying)

flavor, flavour I *n.* ["characteristic quality"] 1. to give, impart a ~ to 2. a colloquial; foreign; old-world ~ ["taste"] 3. to bring out, enhance a ~ 4. a bitter; delicate; pleasant; strong; tart ~ 5. an artificial; natural ~ 6. (misc.) (the) ~ of the month (also fig.) (misery memoirs seem to be ~ of the month just now)

flavor, flavour II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ the punch with orange syrup)

flavoring, flavouring *n.* 1. artificial; natural ~ (we use no artificial ~s or colorings in our home-made jam!) 2. a drop; spoonful of ~

flaw *n.* 1. a fatal; fundamental ~ 2. a ~ in (there's a fatal ~ in your reasoning)

flea *n.* 1. to get; have ~s 2. ~s bite; jump

flee *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from; to

fleece *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ of

fleet I *adj.* ~ of foot

fleet II *n.* ["group of vehicles, typically ships"] 1. a fishing ~ 2. a ~ sails 3. (misc.) a ~ calls at a port; the ~ is in

flesh *n.* 1. to mortify the ~ 2. proud ~ 3. in the ~ ("live, in person") (we've seen her on TV – now here she is in the ~!) 4. (misc.) ~ tones (a painter renowned for his ~ tones); ~ and blood; that dreadful story is enough to make your ~ crawl/creep!; to go the way of all ~ ("to be mortal")

flesh out *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ a report with greater detail)

flexibility *n.* 1. to demonstrate, show ~ 2. ~ in; towards 3. the ~ to + inf. (she has enough ~ to cope with the job)

flexible *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ about, as regards, when it comes to 3. ~ in; towards, with 4. (misc.) she is ~ enough to cope with the job

flick I *n.* at; with a ~ (at the ~ of a switch, the whole room was flooded with light; with a ~ of his wrist he sent the ball over the net)

flick II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ through ("to go through quickly, to flip through") (to ~ quickly through a report)

flier *n.* see **flyer**

flies (BE) see **fly III**

flight I *n.* ["flying"] ["airplane"] 1. to catch, take; miss a ~ 2. to cancel; delay; overbook a ~ 3. a chartered; coast-to-coast; connecting; cross-country; direct; domestic; international; long-haul; maiden; manned; nonstop; reconnaissance; round-the-world; scheduled; shakedown; short-haul; solo; suborbital; supersonic; unmanned ~ (see also **charter flight**; **space flight**; **test flight**) 4. a bumpy, rough; smooth ~ 5. a ~ from; to (~ number 10 from Philadelphia to Frankfurt is now boarding at/from gate 33, will take off in about 15 minutes, and is due to arrive/land this evening) 6. a ~ over (a ~ over the South Pole) 7. in ~ (at that moment the plane was in ~ over the Mediterranean) 8. during; on a ~ (she was on a ~ to Chicago during which she experienced air turbulence) 9. (misc.) the ~ out/there; the ~ back = the return ~ (see also *flight attendant* at **attendant**)

flight II *n.* ["fleeing"] 1. to take ~ 2. to put to ~ (their army was put to ~) 3. full, headlong ~ (we were in full ~ from the enemy to what we hoped would be safety)

flinch *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at; from (sensitive people may ~ from blood/at the sight of blood)

fling I *n.* (colloq.) ["attempt"] 1. to have a ~ at smt. ["period of self-indulgence"] 2. to have a last ~

fling II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ at (to ~ a stone at smb.) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ to (they flung their rifles to the ground) 3. (N; used with an adjective) we flung the doors open 4. (P; tr.) they flung their hats into the air; she flung her coat across the room (see also *fling/hurl/throw caution to the winds* at **caution**)

flip *v.* 1. (slang) (D; intr.) ("to lose one's mind") to ~ over (he ~ped over her) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ through ("to go through quickly, to flick through") (to ~ quickly through a report)

flirt I *n.* an incorrigible; terrible ~

flirt II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

flirtation *n.* to carry on, engage in, have a ~ with

flit *v.* (P; intr.) bees ~ from flower to flower; the idea ~ted into her brain (see also **moonlight flit**)

float *v.* (P; intr., tr.) they ~ed the logs downstream; we ~ed across the lake; she ~ed to the surface

flock I *n.* to tend a ~ (of sheep)

flock II *v.* (P; intr.) the crowd ~ed around the speaker; customers ~ed into the store; to ~ together ("birds of a feather ~ together" – proverb)

floe *n.* an ice ~

flood I *n.* 1. a flash; raging ~ 2. the ~ inundated; struck (several cities) 3. a ~ subsides 4. (misc.) she collapsed in ~s of tears

flood II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ into (refugees ~ed into the city) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ the market with cheap goods)

flood level *n.* to reach, rise to ~

floodlight *n.* to focus; shine a ~ on

floor *n.* ["story"] 1. the bottom; first; ground; lower; main; second; top; upper ~ (see also **ground floor**) 2. on a ~ (on the second ~) ["lower surface of a room"] 3. to mop; scrub; sweep; wash; wipe a ~ 4. to buff; polish; wax a ~ 5. a dirt (AE), earth (BE); inlaid; parquet; tile; wooden ~ (old wooden ~s sometimes creak) 6. all over; on a ~ (he was sleeping on the ~; there were papers on the ~; in fact, they were all over the ~!) ["right to speak"] 7. to ask for; get, take the ~ 8. to give smb. the ~ 9. (AE) to yield the ~ ["place where members sit"] 10. to clear the ~ 11. on; from the ~ (a motion was made from the ~ which was then debated on the ~) ["misc."] 12. the ocean ~ USAGE NOTE: In AE the *first floor* and the *ground floor* are usually the same. In BE, the *first floor* is the floor above the *ground floor*.

flop I *n.* 1. a commercial; complete, total ~ 2. a ~ as (she was a complete ~ as a stage actress)

flop II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ as (she ~ped completely as a stage actress) 2. (P; intr.) his head ~ped to the side

flora *n.* 1. intestinal ~ 2. (misc.) ~ and fauna ("plants and animals")

floss *n.* 1. dental ~ 2. candy ~ (BE; AE has *cotton candy*)

flour *n.* 1. to mix ~ with 2. to sift ~ 3. bleached; cake; enriched; self-rising (AE), self-raising (BE); unbleached; white ~ 4. (BE) corn ~ (AE has *cornstarch*) 5. a bag, sack of ~

flout *v.* to ~ openly, publicly; shamelessly (she flaunted her power openly by publicly ~ing the rules)

flow I *n.* 1. to regulate a ~ 2. to cut off; staunch, stem, stop the ~ (of blood) 3. a smooth; steady ~ 4. a cash ~ 5. a lava ~ 6. a ~ from; through; to (the (rate of) ~ of traffic from the country through the suburbs to/into the city) 7. (misc.) ebb and ~

flow II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from, out of (water ~ed from the pipe) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from; to (the river ~s from east to west) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ into, to (rivers ~ into the sea) 4. (P; intr.) traffic ~ed across town; traffic ~ed from the country through the suburbs to/into the city; blood ~s through the body; tears ~ed down her cheeks; the river ~s east

flower *n.* ["plant"] 1. to grow; plant ~s 2. to pick, pluck; water ~s 3. to arrange ~s 4. a fragrant ~ 5. artificial; cut; dried; pressed ~s 6. (US) a state ~ 7. ~s bloom; fade, wither, wilt; grow 8. in; into ~ (the tulips have come into ~ and are in full ~ now) 9. (misc.) a bouquet; bunch; spray of ~s

flu *n.* 1. to catch, come down with, get, go down with (BE) (the) ~; have (the) ~ 2. Asian; avian, bird; gastric, stomach; intestinal; swine ~ 3. a strain of ~ (virus) 4. an attack, bout; outbreak; touch of (the) ~

fluctuate *v.* 1. to ~ widely; wildly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ between 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (his mood ~s with the weather)

fluctuation *n.* 1. wide; wild ~s 2. ~ of, in (the daily ~ of/in commodity prices) 3. ~ according to (the ~ of/in his mood according to the weather)

fluency *n.* 1. to acquire ~ 2. to demonstrate, display ~ 3. ~ in (~ in a foreign language) 4. ~ to + inf. (she has enough ~ to order a meal in English)

fluent *adj.* ~ in (~ in English)

fluids *n.* 1. (med.) to force, push; measure; restrict; withhold ~ 2. to drink, take ~ 3. to replace; retain ~ 4. body; clear; cold; hot ~

fluke *n.* (colloq.) ["stroke of luck"] 1. a pure ~ 2. by a ~ (he won by a ~ (of luck))

flunk *v.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) (D; intr.) to ~ out of (he ~d out of school, went back, and ~ed out again!)

flurry *n.* 1. a brief; sudden ~ 2. a snow ~ = a ~ of snow 3. a ~ of activity

flush I *adj.* ["even"] 1. ~ with (~ with the ground) ["rich in"] 2. ~ with (~ with cash)

flush II *n.* ["a rush of blood"] 1. a hot ~ (BE; AE has *hot flash*) ["excitement"] 2. the first ~ (of success)

flush III *v.* (D; intr.) ("to become red, blush") to ~ with (to ~ with pride)

flush IV *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to get rid of") to ~ down (she ~ed the poison down the toilet) 2. (d; tr.) ("to chase") to ~ from, out of (they were ~ed from their hiding place) 3. (d; tr.) ("to remove") to ~ out of (to ~ the waste products out of one's body)

flute *n.* to play the ~

flutter *n.* ["confused state"] in a ~

flux *n.* ["constant change"] 1. in ~ 2. a state of ~ (the market is in a state of ~)

fly I *n.* 1. to shoo away the flies 2. to swat a ~ 3. a fruit; tsetse ~ 4. flies buzz; fly; land, settle (see also *a fly in the ointment* at **ointment**)

fly II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ across, over (to ~ across the ocean) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ at ("to attack") 3. (D; intr., tr.) ("to travel by plane") ("to pilot") to ~ from; to (she flew from New York to London; he flew his private plane to Florida) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to arrive by plane") (to ~ into Chicago) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to go into") (to ~ into a rage) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ out of ("to depart by plane") (to ~ out of Chicago) 7. (P; intr., tr.) to ~ south; they flew the equipment over to Tokyo; to ~ high/low over the ground 8. (misc.) to ~ blind ("to ~ a plane solely with the help of instruments"); to ~ high ("to be elated or successful"); to ~ nonstop; to ~ in the face of tradition ("to defy tradition"); to ~ off the handle ("to become angry"); (misc.) (informal) sorry, must ~: I'm late for an appointment

fly III *n.* (esp. AE; BE has *flies*) ["opening on trousers"] 1. to button (up), close, do up (BE), zip (up) one's ~ 2. to open, unbutton, undo, unzip one's ~ ["fly ball in baseball and softball"] 3. a sacrifice ~ (the batter hit a sacrifice ~ that allowed the runner to score from third (base))

fly down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to the islands

flyer *n.* ["small advertising circular"] to distribute ~s (in the neighborhood) (also *flier*)

fly in *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (they flew in from London)

flying *n.* blind; formation; instrument; stunt ~

flying colors, flying colours *n.* ["success"] to come through with ~

flying saucer *n.* ["unidentified flying object, UFO"] 1. to sight a ~ 2. (misc.) a ~ abduction; sighting

fly out *v.* (in baseball and softball) (D; intr.) to ~ to (the batter flied out to center field)

flyover (BE) see **overpass**

foam *v.* to ~ at the mouth

fob off *v.* (colloq.) 1. (D; tr.) ("to get rid of by deceit") to ~ as (he ~ed off the copy as an original = he ~ed the copy off as an original) 2. (D; tr.) ("to get rid of by deceit") to ~ on (to ~ inferior merchandise on customers = to ~ inferior merchandise off on customers) 3. (BE) (D; tr.) ("to deceive") to ~ with (to ~ customers with inferior merchandise = to ~ customers off with inferior merchandise)

focus I *n.* 1. to bring smt. into ~ (we must bring two other major problems into sharper ~) 2. a ~ shifts (the ~ of our attention must shift to two other major problems) 3. in ~; out of ~

focus II *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ on (we must ~ (our attention) on two other major problems)

fodder *n.* 1. cannon ~ 2. ~ for

foe *n.* 1. a bitter, implacable; formidable ~ 2. a political ~ 3. (misc.) to vanquish a ~; friend and/or ~

foetus (esp. BE) see **fetus**

fog *n.* 1. (a) dense, heavy, thick; light; patchy ~ 2. a ground ~ 3. a ~ burns off, clears, dissipates, lifts; shrouds smt. 4. a blanket of ~; a patch of ~ = a ~ patch 5. (misc.) in a ~ ("bewildered")

foible *n.* 1. have a ~ 2. a human ~

foil I *n.* ["thin metallic covering"] aluminium (BE), aluminum (AE); gold; silver ~; tinfoil

foil II *n.* ["comparison"] to act as a ~ for, to

foist *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ on (they ~ed their problems on us; to ~ inferior merchandise on customers)

foist off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ inferior merchandise on customers = to ~ inferior merchandise off on customers)

fold I *n.* ["group"] 1. in the ~ (they are all back in the ~ now) 2. to return to the ~ 3. to welcome smb. back into the ~

fold II *v.* 1. to ~ double, in half 2. to ~ neatly 3. (D; tr.) to ~ into (she ~ed the newspaper into a hat) 4. (N; used with adj.) to ~ a map flat 5. (s) this map can ~ flat

folder *n.* a manila ~

fold up *v.* 1. to ~ neatly 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ into (the bed ~s up into the wall) 3. (N; used with adj.) to ~ a map up flat 4. (s) this map can ~ flat

foliage *n.* 1. dense ~ 2. autumn ~

follow *v.* 1. to ~ blindly; faithfully 2. to ~ close behind, closely 3. (d; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in smb.'s footsteps) 4. (L) it ~s necessarily from what has been said that he cannot be considered for the job 5. (P; tr.) she ~ed me out of the room; they ~ed us through town

follower *n.* 1. to attract a ~ 2. a devoted, faithful ~ 3. a band, group of ~s

following *n.* ["followers"] 1. to attract a ~ 2. a devoted, faithful, loyal; large ~

follow through *v.* (D; intr.) ("to continue") to ~ with

follow-up *n.* 1. to do a ~ on (the reporter did a ~ on her first story) 2. a ~ to (this letter is a ~ to our telephone conversation)

follow up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ on (the reporter ~ed up on her first story) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (we should ~ our telephone conversation with a letter)

folly *n.* 1. sheer ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it was sheer ~ for him even to try; "where ignorance is bliss, 'Tis ~ to be wise" – Thomas Gray (1716–71), "Ode on… Eton College")

fond *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ of (she is very ~ of him)

fondness *n.* 1. to display, show (a) ~ for 2. (a) great ~ 3. (a) ~ for (her great ~ for him)

font *n.* ["bowl"] a baptismal ~

food *n.* 1. to cook, prepare; heat; reheat ~ 2. to bolt, gulp (down); chew; digest; eat; swallow; taste ~ 3. appetizing, delicious, tasty; exotic; gourmet; plain; spicy ~ 4. nourishing, nutritious, wholesome ~ 5. coarse; fine; heavy; light; rich; simple ~ 6. canned (AE), tinned (BE); catfood; dogfood; frozen ~ 7. halal; kosher; soul (AE) ~ 8. comfort; health; junk ~ 9. ~ keeps; goes bad, goes off, spoils 10. morsels; scraps of ~ 11. (misc.) ~ for thought; ~ and drink

fool I *n.* 1. to play the ~ 2. to make a ~ of smb./oneself 3. a big; complete; doddering (old); poor; silly; stupid; utter; young ~ 4. a ~ to + inf. (he was a ~ even to try)

fool II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (she ~ed them into investing their money) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with

fool about (BE) see **fool around**

fool around *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (don't ~ with fire)

foolhardy *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him even to try = he was ~ even to try)

foolish *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to take the test without preparation; it was ~ of him even to try = he was ~ even to try)

foolishness *n.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for him even to try)

fool's paradise *n.* to live in a ~

foot *n.* ["lower extremity of a leg"] 1. to stamp; tap one's (left; right) ~ 2. to shuffle one's feet 3. to get to, rise to one's feet; to pull oneself to one's feet 4. to set ~ on (she has never set ~ on foreign soil) 5. bare feet; flat feet 6. in one's stocking feet 7. at smb.'s feet (the dog lay at their feet) 8. on ~ (they came on ~) 9. (misc.) to drag one's feet ("to move very slowly") or ("to refuse to act"); fast/light/quick on one's feet; to put one's best ~ forward ("to attempt to make a good impression"); to put one's ~ down ("to say 'no' firmly"); to get a ~ in the door ("to make an initial step"); underfoot ("beneath one's feet"); to put one's ~ in one's mouth ("to make an inappropriate statement"); she always lands on her feet ("she always manages to get out of difficulty"); to stand on one's own two feet ("to show independence"); to have a ~ in both camps (by being on good terms with both sides); the ball of one's ~; the sole of one's ~; from head to ~; feet first ["bottom, end"] 10. at the ~ of (at the ~ of the bed) ["unit of measurement equaling twelve inches"] 11. a cubic; square ~ 12. by the ~ (to sell carpeting by the square ~)

football *n.* 1. to play ~ 2. association ~ ("soccer") 3. the game of ~ 4. a political ~ ("an issue debated by politicians") 5. (misc.) a ~ field (AE), pitch (BE); a ~ game (esp. AE), match (BE); player (esp. AE; BE has *footballer*)

foot fault *n.* (tennis) to commit a ~

foothold *n.* 1. to establish, gain, get, secure, win a ~ 2. a firm; precarious ~

footing *n.* 1. to keep one's ~ 2. to lose one's ~ 3. an equal; firm, secure, solid, sure; unequal ~ 4. a friendly; war ~ 5. on a certain ~ (to be on a friendly ~ with smb.; to place a country on a war ~)

footnote *n.* a ~ to (the ~s to a chapter)

footprint *n.* to leave a ~ (in the snow, "leave behind us Footprints on the sands of time" – H.W. Longfellow (1807–82), "A Psalm of Life")

footrace *n.* to run a ~

footsie *n.* (slang) ["collusion" (AE)] ["footplay"] to play ~ with

footstep *n.* 1. to dog smb.'s ~s 2. to follow in smb.'s ~s 3. heavy; light ~s

footwork *n.* fancy ~ (as of a boxer)

forage *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for food)

foray *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. a bold ~ 3. a ~ into

forbear *v.* (formal, rare) 1. (d; intr.) to ~ from (she forbore ~ from (making) any predictions) 2. (E) she forbore to make any predictions

forbid *v.* 1. to ~ categorically, expressly, outright 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from (she has forbidden him from smoking in her presence) 3. (H) she has forbidden him to smoke in her presence; I ~ you to take the car! 4. (misc.) God ~!, heaven ~! (God ~ anyone should commit such a horrible crime!)

force I *n.* ["compulsion"] ["violence"] 1. to apply, resort to, use ~ 2. to renounce (the use of) ~ 3. armed; brute; deadly; lethal; physical ~ 4. moral; spiritual ~ 5. by ~ ["military power"] 6. to marshal, muster, rally one's ~s 7. to join ~s against; with 8. allied, friendly ~s 9. enemy, hostile ~s 10. armed, military; ground; naval; nuclear; security ~s (the enemy's strong naval ~s began to shell our positions) 11. an air ~ 12. an expeditionary; guerrilla; occupation; peacekeeping ~ (a U.N. peacekeeping ~) (see also **task force**) 13. a show of ~ ["organized body, group"] 14. a labor; police; sales; task ~ (see also **workforce**) 15. in full ~ (the police were out in full ~) ["energy"] ["power"] 16. to spend its/one's ~ (the storm has spent its ~) 17. centrifugal; centripetal ~ 18. a driving; explosive; irresistible; magnetic; motivating ~ (what happens when an irresistible ~ meets an immovable object?) 19. the vital ~ ("basic force") 20. a ~ for (can self-interest ever be a ~ for good?) ["effect"] 21. in ~ (the regulation is still in ~) ["misc."] 22. ~ of circumstance (we were compelled to leave by/through ~ of circumstance = we had to leave through ~ of circumstance); gale-force winds; market ~s (market ~s drive prices up and down) (see also *force of nature* at **nature**)

force II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ into (they ~d their way into the building and then out of it again) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ off (we were ~d off the road) 3. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ on (she tried to ~ her views on us) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ through (to ~ one's way through a crowd) 5. (H) they ~d her to sign 6. (N; used with an adjective) he ~d the door open

foreboding *n.* 1. to have a ~ 2. a gloomy ~ 3. a ~ that + clause (she had a (feeling/sense of) ~ that an accident would happen)

forecast I *n.* 1. to do, give, make a ~ 2. an economic; long-range; political; short-range; weather ~ (to give the weather ~)

forecast II *v.* (L) she forecast that an earthquake would occur

foreclose *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (they will ~ on us) ("they will foreclose our mortgage")

foredoomed *adj.* ~ to (~ to failure)

forefront *n.* in the ~

foreground *n.* at/in the ~

forehead *n.* a high; low ~

foreign *adj.* ~ to

forerunner *n.* ["precursor"] a ~ of, to

foresee *v.* 1. (K) nobody could have ~n his running away 2. (L) nobody could have ~n that he would run away 3. (Q) who can ~ how the elections will turn out?

foresight *n.* the ~ to + inf. (he had the ~ to provide for the education of his children)

forest *n.* 1. to clear, cut down; denude a ~ 2. a dense, thick; impenetrable; luxuriant; primeval; virgin ~ 3. a broadleaf; coniferous; deciduous; evergreen; (tropical) rain ~ 4. a national; state (US) ~ 5. the huge expanse of ~ stretches for miles

foretell *v.* 1. (L) nobody could have foretold that he would run away 2. (Q) who can ~ how the elections will turn out?

forethought *n.* the ~ to + inf. (he had enough ~ to provide for the education of his children)

forewarn *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ about, of 2. (L) we were ~ed that there would be a hurricane 3. "~ed is forearmed" – proverb

foreword *n.* a ~ to (a ~ to a book)

forfeit *v.* (B) he ~ed the game to his opponent

forge *v.* (d; intr.) ("to move ahead") to ~ into the lead

forge ahead *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (they were ~ing ahead with their grandiose plans)

forgery *n.* 1. to commit ~ 2. a clever; crude; skillful ~ 3. the crime of ~

forget *v.* 1. to clean (colloq.), completely, quite (esp. BE); conveniently ~ 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about (she forgot about the concert) 3. (E) I forgot to call 4. (G; usu. in neg. and interrogative constructions) the children will never ~ visiting this park 5. (K) the audience will not ~ your singing this role 6. (L) don't ~ that we are going out this evening! 7. (Q) a person never ~s how to swim 8. (misc.) I'll ~ you said that! ("I'll pretend I didn't hear what you've just said"); ~ about it! ("don't even think about it!") (AE) (slang) "You want to date the boss's daughter? Forget about it!"; forgive and ~ USAGE NOTE: The sentence *she forgot to buy a newspaper* means that she did not buy a newspaper. The sentence *she forgot about buying a newspaper* may mean either that she did not buy a newspaper or that she bought a newspaper but does not remember buying it.

forgetful *adj.* ~ of (he has become ~ of things)

forgive *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. for a mistake; ~ me for saying this, but I think you're completely wrong!) 2. (biblical) (O; may be used with one object) ~ us our sins 3. (misc.) ~ and forget

forgiveness *n.* 1. to ask for, beg, seek smb.'s ~ 2. ~ for

fork *n.* ["pronged device"] 1. a tuning ~ ["division into branches"] 2. at a ~ in the road ["implement for eating"] 3. a carving; dinner; salad; toasting ~ 4. (misc.) a knife and ~ (some people prefer chopsticks to a knife and ~)

fork over *v.* (colloq.) (B) we had to ~ our savings to our creditors = we had to ~ our savings over to our creditors

form I *n.* ["printed document"] 1. to fill in (esp. BE), fill out (esp. AE), fill up (obsol. BE) a ~ 2. to file, hand in, submit a ~ 3. an application; booking (esp. BE); entry; order; requisition; tax ~ (see also **application form**, **entry blank**, **entry form**) ["shape"] ["manner"] 4. to assume, take (on) a ~ (to assume human ~) 5. an abridged, condensed; comprehensive; concise; convenient, handy; revised ~ (sometimes it's hard to find a convenient concise ~ of words) 6. in a ~ (the book came out in abridged ~; we reject fraud in any (shape or) ~; a fiend in human ~) ["grammatical element"] 7. a bound; colloquial; combining; diminutive; free; inflectional; negative; obsolete; plural; positive; singular; surface; underlying; verbal ~ ["behavior"] 8. bad; good, proper ~ (it's bad ~ for guests to come late to a formal reception) ["condition"] 9. bad; excellent, good, superb ~ 10. in (certain) ~ (she was in superb ~ today – she didn't lose a single game) ["good condition"] 11. in (AE), on (BE) ~ (I'm not in ~ today) 12. off ~ ["table giving information"] 13. a racing ~ ["secondary school class"] (BE) 14. in a ~ (in the fourth ~) 15. (misc.) an art ~ (is cinema/jazz now considered an art ~?); a life ~ (a carbon-based life ~ like those on Earth); a verse ~ (a sonnet is a verse ~)

form II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from, out of (they ~ed patties out of chopped beef) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ into (they ~ed chopped beef into patties)

formal *adj.* ~ with (he is always ~ with his colleagues)

formalities *n.* 1. to complete, go through the ~ 2. bureaucratic; legal ~ 3. the usual ~

format *n.* 1. a set; suitable ~ 2. in a ~

formation *n.* ["arrangement of troops, ships, aircraft"] 1. to break ~ 2. close; tight ~ 3. battle ~ (drawn up in battle ~) 4. in ~ (to fly in close ~) ["structure"] ["grouping"] 5. a cloud; rock ~ (see also **back formation**)

formula *n.* ["milk mixture for infant feeding"] (AE) 1. to make up, prepare ~ ["symbolic representation"] ["method"] 2. to come up with, devise, hit on a ~ 3. a chemical; mathematical; scientific; winning ~ 4. a ~ for (to come up with a ~ for settling the strike) 5. a ~ to + inf. (to come up with a ~ to settle the strike)

form up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in three ranks)

fort *n.* 1. a strong ~ 2. a ~ falls; holds out 3. (misc.) to hold, hold down (AE) the ~ ("to bear responsibility in the absence of others")

fortify *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ against 2. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ by, with (he ~ied himself with/by having a shot of whiskey)

fortitude *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 2. (humorous) intestinal ~ ("great courage, guts") 3. moral ~ 4. the ~ to + inf. (they had enough ~ to finish the job) 5. with ~ (they underwent their ordeal with great ~)

fortnight *n.* (BE) 1. to spend a ~ (somewhere) 2. (the) last, past, the previous; next; an/the entire, whole ~ 3. for a ~ (they came here for a ~) 4. in a ~, in a ~'s time (they'll be here in a ~) 5. (misc.) a ~ ago; every ~; once/twice a ~; a ~'s holiday; a whole ~ has gone by and we've still heard nothing!

fortress *n.* 1. to besiege; storm, take a ~ 2. an impenetrable, impregnable; strong ~ 3. a ~ falls, surrenders; holds out

fortunate *adj.* 1. ~ for 2. ~ in (we consider ourselves ~ in having such a nice house) 3. ~ to + inf. (we consider ourselves ~ to have such a nice house) 4. ~ that + clause (we are ~ that we have such a nice house = it is fortunate (for us) that we have such a nice house)

fortune *n.* ["wealth"] 1. to accumulate, amass, make a ~ (to make a ~ from/out of property speculation and amass a ~ in property) 2. to come into, inherit a ~ 3. to seek one's ~ 4. to dissipate, run through, spend, squander; lose a ~ 5. an enormous, large, vast ~ 6. a family ~ 7. (misc.) it cost me a small ~ to repair our car; fame and ~ ["luck"] 8. to try one's ~ 9. the (good) ~ to + inf. (we had the good ~ to get there at the right time) 10. (good) ~ that + clause (it was our good ~ that we got there at the right time) 11. ~ smiled on us 12. a stroke of good ~ (see also *a reversal of fortune* at **reversal**) ["fate"] 13. to improve the ~s of (is it too late to improve the ~s of the party?) 14. to tell smb.'s ~

forum *n.* 1. to conduct, hold a ~ 2. to provide, serve as a ~ for (discussions that served as a ~ for debate on many issues) 3. an open, public ~ 4. a ~ about, on

forward *v.* 1. (usu. B; occasionally A) they always ~ my mail to me 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ letters to a new address; the books were ~ed from Amsterdam to Tokyo)

foul I *adv.* 1. see **afoul** 2. to fall ~ of (to fall ~ of the law)

foul II *n.* 1. to commit a ~ 2. an intentional, professional (BE); personal; team; technical ~ 3. a ~ against, on (BE) (she committed a ~ against the other guard)

foul III *v.* (esp. basketball) (D; intr.) to ~ out of (to ~ out of a game)

foul out *v.* (esp. basketball) (D; intr.) to ~ on (he ~ed out on five personals)

foul play *n.* ["violence"] 1. to meet with ~ 2. to rule out; suspect ~

found *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ on (our country was ~ed on certain principles)

foundation *n.* ["underlying base"] 1. to lay; shore up a ~ 2. to shake, subvert, undermine a ~ (revelations that shook our society to its ~s) 3. a firm, secure, solid, sound, strong ~ (hopes built on a firm ~) 4. a shaky; weak ~ 5. the ~ (of a building) settles 6. without ~ (rumors completely without ~) ["an endowed institution"] 7. a charitable, philanthropic; educational ~ 8. a ~ for (a ~ for cancer research) 9. a ~ to + inf. (a ~ to conduct cancer research)

fountain *n.* 1. a drinking, water ~ 2. (esp. AE) a soda ~

fours *n.* ["two hands and two feet"] on all ~

fox *n.* 1. an arctic, white; desert; red; silver; city, urban ~ 2. a ~ barks; yelps 3. a young ~ is a cub, pup 4. a female ~ is a vixen 5. ~es live in dens or lairs 6. (misc.) (esp. AE) as sly/wily as a ~; a wily ~ (usu. fig.)

foyer *n.* 1. a hotel; theater ~ 2. in the ~ (let's meet in the ~)

fraction *n.* 1. to reduce a ~ 2. a common; complex, compound; decimal; improper; irreducible; partial; proper; simple, vulgar ~ (to express a decimal as a ~)

fracture *n.* 1. to get, sustain; have a ~ 2. to reduce, set a ~ 3. a compound; compression; greenstick; hairline; simple; stress ~ 4. multiple ~s

frailty *n.* human ~

frame I *n.* a bicycle; mirror; picture; window ~

frame II *v.* (D; tr.) ("to incriminate wrongly") to ~ for (she was ~d for murder)

framework *n.* 1. a conceptual; theoretical ~ (does their theory provide a valid conceptual ~ for the discussion of social problems?) 2. within a ~

franchise *n.* ["the right to vote"] 1. a restricted; universal ~ 2. to exercise one's ~ (should women exercise the ~ that has been extended to them?) ["the license to sell a product or services in a certain area"] 3. to grant a ~ 4. to get; have, hold a ~ 5. to withdraw a ~ (from)

frank *adj.* 1. brutally, perfectly ~ (let's be perfectly ~, to be perfectly ~; to be ~ with you, I don't think your plan will work) 2. ~ about; with (she was ~ with us about everything)

frankness *n.* 1. disarming ~ 2. ~ about; with

frantic *adj.* ~ about, over; with (~ with worry over the child's whereabouts)

fraternity *n.* (US) 1. to pledge a ~ ("to agree to join a fraternity") 2. a college ~ (see also **sorority**)

fraternize *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

fratricide *n.* to commit ~

fraud *n.* 1. to commit ~; to perpetrate (a) ~ 2. to expose (a) ~ 3. computer; mail; vote ~

fraudulent *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ (for/of them) to claim an exemption of that type)

fraught *adj.* (cannot stand alone in AE) ~ with (the situation was ~ with danger)

fray *n.* to enter, join the ~

frayed *adj.* ~ at the edges

frazzle *n.* burnt to a ~ ("completely burnt"); worn to a ~ ("completely worn out or exhausted")

freak *n.* a ~ of nature

freak out *v.* (slang) (D; intr., tr.) to ~ on (to ~ on drugs)

free I *adj.* 1. ~ from, of (~ from pain; ~ of charge; ~ of debt) 2. ~ for (are you ~ for dinner?) 3. ~ with (~ with advice) 4. ~ to + inf. (are you ~ to come to dinner with me?) 5. (misc.) as ~ as a bird; as ~ as the wind; to set smb. ~; I got it for ~! = I got it ~ of charge; ~ and easy; "can I have some more cake?" "feel ~ (to)!"

free II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for; from, of (the new schedule ~d me from many burdens and so ~d me for new activities) 2. (H) the new schedule ~d me to undertake new activities

freedom *n.* 1. to gain, secure, win ~ 2. to give, grant ~ (to) 3. to abridge, curtail; deny (a) ~ 4. academic; individual, personal; political; press; religious ~ (they moved to a place where they could enjoy religious ~) 5. ~ of action; of assembly; of information; of inquiry; of movement; of choice; of the press; of religion, worship; of speech 6. an amount, degree, level of ~ (a country that enjoys a considerable degree of political ~) 7. ~ from (~ from want; does ~ of the press imply ~ from censorship?) 8. the ~ to + inf. (the new schedule gave me the ~ to undertake new activities)

free-for-all *n.* to join in a ~

free hand *n.* ["freedom of action, carte blanche"] 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to get; have a ~ 3. a ~ to + inf. (she had a ~ to do whatever she wanted)

free throw *n.* (basketball) to get, be awarded, be given; make a ~

free will *n.* 1. to exercise one's ~ 2. of one's own ~

freeze I *n.* ["frost"] ["freezing"] 1. a deep, hard ~ ["freezer"] (BE) 2. a deep ~ ["fixing at a certain level"] 3. to impose; lift a ~ 4. a nuclear; price; wage ~ 5. a ~ on (to impose a ~ on wages)

freeze II *v.* 1. to ~ hard, solid (it froze hard last night) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ out of (to ~ smb. out of a conversation) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ to (his exposed skin froze to the metal; to ~ to death)

freezer *n.* 1. to defrost a ~ 2. a home ~ (see also *freezer compartment* at **compartment**)

freezing-point *n.* to be at; reach (the) ~

freight *n.* ["goods, cargo"] 1. to carry; handle; load; ship ~ ["freight train"] (colloq.) (AE) 2. to hop, jump ("board") a ~

French *n.* Canadian ~ (natives of Quebec speak Canadian ~; a French Canadian who speaks Canadian ~)

frenzy *n.* 1. a wild ~ 2. in a ~ (in a ~ of despair) 3. (misc.) to work oneself (up) into a ~

frequency *n.* ["number of repetitions"] 1. alarming; decreasing; great, high; increasing; low ~ 2. with ~ (with alarming ~) ["number of periodic waves per unit of time"] (physics) 3. high; low; medium; ultrahigh ~ 4. a radio ~ 5. a band, range of ~cies 6. on a ~

fresco *n.* to paint a ~

fresh I *adj.* ["recent"] ["new"] 1. ~ from, out of (~ out of school) 2. (misc.) (as) ~ as a daisy/(BE) as paint

fresh II *adj.* (colloq.) (AE) ["bold"] ["impudent"] ~ with (don't get ~ with me!)

freshener *n.* an air, room ~

freshman *n.* 1. (AE) a college; high-school ~ 2. a university ~

fret *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, over 2. (misc.) to ~ and fume = to fume and ~

friction *n.* 1. to create, generate, produce; ease; eliminate; reduce ~ 2. ~ among, between; with (there has been some ~ between the union and management)

friend *n.* 1. to be; make a ~ 2. to be; make ~s (with smb.) (he and I are ~s = he's ~s with me and I'm ~s with him) 3. a bosom, close, good, intimate, old; faithful, fast, loyal, staunch, strong, true; lifelong ~ 4. a mutual; personal; special ~ 5. a fair-weather; false ~ 6. inseparable ~s 7. a pen ~ (BE; CE has *pen pal*) 8. a ~ to (she was a good ~ to us) 9. (misc.) my good ~; ~ and/or foe; smb.'s best ~ (she's my best ~ and I'm her best ~ = she and I are best ~s = she's best ~s with me and I'm best ~s with her)

friendliness *n.* 1. to show ~ 2. ~ to, towards, with

friendly *adj.* 1. ~ of (that was ~ of you) 2. ~ to, towards, with 3. ~ to + inf. (it was not very ~ of you to refuse to help) 4. (misc.) user-friendly

friendship *n.* 1. to cement, develop, form, make, strike up a ~ 2. to cherish, cultivate a ~ 3. to promote (international) ~ 4. to break up, destroy a ~ 5. a close, firm, intimate, lasting, strong, warm; lifelong; long; special ~ 6. the bonds of; the hand of ~ 7. (a) ~ among, between; with (a lasting ~ developed between them)

fright *n.* 1. to get; have; give smb. a ~ 2. (esp. BE) to take ~ at smt. 3. a nasty; sudden ~ 4. in, with ~ (to scream with ~) (see also **stagefright**)

frighten *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into doing smt.) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ out of (to ~ smb. out of doing smt.) 3. (R) it ~d us that no one answered the doorbell 4. (misc.) to ~ smb. (half) to death = to ~ the life out of smb.

frightened *adj.* 1. ~ about, at, by, of (~ at the very thought; ~ of the dark; they are ~ed of saying anything) 2. ~ to + inf. (they are ~ to say anything) 3. ~ that + clause (we were ~ that the roof would collapse) 4. (misc.) to be ~ (half) out of one's wits; to be ~ (half) to death

frighteners *n.* (slang) (BE) to put the ~ on smb. ("to intimidate smb.") (if he won't pay up I'll put the ~ on him!)

frightening *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to contemplate that possibility = that possibility is ~ to contemplate = it's a ~ possibility to contemplate) 2. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that a war could break out at any time)

frightful *adj.* see **frightening**

fringe *n.* 1. the lunatic ~ 2. on the ~s (of society)

fringe benefits *n.* to get; provide ~

fritter away *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ one's time away on unimportant things = to ~ one's time on unimportant things) 2. (misc.) to ~ one's time doing unimportant things

frivolous *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to make such a silly accusation)

frog *n.* 1. a bullfrog; grass; green; wood ~ 2. ~s croak; hop, jump 3. an immature ~ is a tadpole 4. (misc.) to have a ~ in one's throat ("to be hoarse"); ~s and toads

front I *adv.* to face ~

front II *n.* ["front line"] (mil.) 1. at, on the ~ (the war correspondents spent two days at the ~; there has been no activity on this ~) ["area of activity"] 2. the home; political ~ 3. on a ~ (on a broad ~; on the home ~) ["advanced part"] 4. at the ~ of; in ~ of; wearing a baseball cap back to ~ ["movement"] ["campaign"] 5. a popular; united ~ (to present a united ~) ["boundary"] (meteorology) 6. a cold; occluded; stationary; warm ~ (a warm ~ is forming and will probably soon approach) ["walk, road along a body of water"] (BE) 7. a river; sea ~ 8. along a ~ (to walk along the sea ~) 9. on a ~ (is there a hotel on the sea ~?) ["behavior"] 10. to put on, put up a ~ 11. a bold, brave, brazen ~ (to put on a bold ~) (see also **false front**) ["facade"] 12. a ~ for (the store was a ~ for illegal drug sales) ["misc."] 13. up ~ (colloq.) ("in advance") (I want €5 000 up ~ before I do a stroke of work!); ("frank, candid") (to be absolutely up ~ with you, I think you're completely wrong!) USAGE NOTE: Something in front of the house is not in the house itself. Something in the front of the house is. Something at the front of the house can be either in front of the house or in the front part of the house itself. So the expression "at the front of" is ambiguous.

front III *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for the mob) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ on, onto (our building ~s on the main road)

frontage *n.* 1. lake; ocean; river ~ 2. ~ on

frontier *n.* 1. to advance, extend, push back, roll back a ~ (to extend/roll back the ~s of knowledge) 2. to cross a ~ 3. the final ~ (Space: the final ~!) 4. a ~ between 5. across, over a ~ (to smuggle goods across a ~) 6. along; at, on a ~

front line *n.* at, in, on the ~

frost *n.* 1. a bitter, hard, heavy, severe; ground; light, slight ~ 2. eternal ~, permafrost 3. ~ forms, sets in 4. a touch of ~ 5. degrees of ~ (BE) ("degrees below zero") (five degrees of ~ were reported last night)

froth *v.* to ~ at the mouth

frown I *n.* 1. to wear a ~ (to wear a ~ when answering) 2. an angry; perpetual ~ 3. with a ~ (to answer with a ~ on one's face)

frown II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at ("to look with displeasure at") (the teacher ~ed at the noisy children) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon ("to disapprove of") (they ~ on all forms of affection in public) 3. (misc.) to ~ with displeasure/dissatisfaction

frozen *adj.* ~ hard, solid, stiff

frugal *adj.* (formal) 1. ~ of (esp. BE) (old-fashioned), with (~ with one's money) 2. ~ in ("Both were ~ in their use of energy and time." – British National Corpus)

frugality *n.* (formal) to practice ~ (to practice ~ with one's money)

fruit *n.* 1. to grow ~ 2. (also fig.) to bear ~ (not all trees bear ~) 3. to pick, pluck ~ (off a tree) 4. ripe; unripe ~ 5. fresh; luscious; young ~ 6. citrus; tropical ~ (our country exports citrus ~) 7. (fig.) forbidden ~ 8. candied, glazed; canned (AE), tinned (BE); dried; fresh; frozen ~ 9. a piece of ~ 10. (misc.) (fig.) the ~s of one's labor; the first ~s of the government's recovery program should become apparent very soon

fruitcake *n.* (misc.) (colloq.) as nutty as a ~ ("completely insane")

fruition *n.* 1. to bring smt. to ~ 2. to come to, reach ~

fruitless *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is ~ even to try)

frustrated *adj.* 1. ~ about, at, by, with; in (he was ~ in his attempts to find support among his friends) 2. ~ to + inf. (he was ~ to find no support among his friends) 3. ~ that + clause (he was ~ that he found no support among his friends)

frustrating *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for him to find no support among his friends) 2. ~ that + clause (it was for him ~ that he found no support among his friends)

frustration *n.* 1. to express one's ~ 2. to vent one's ~ on 3. deep, great; growing, mounting ~ 4. ~ builds up, mounts 5. ~ about, at, over, with (his ~ at finding no support among his friends) 6. ~ that + clause (his ~ that he found no support among his friends)

fry *v.* (C) ~ an egg for me; or: ~ me an egg

fry-up *n.* (colloq.) (BE) ["frying of foods"] 1. to do, have a ~ ["dish of fried foods"] 2. to do, make, prepare a ~

fudge *v.* (D; intr.) ("to hedge") to ~ on (to ~ (on) an issue)

fuel *n.* 1. to take on ~ 2. to run out of ~ 3. to conserve, save ~ 4. aviation; high-octane; jet; leaded; liquid; nuclear; solid; unleaded ~ 5. fossil; synthetic ~s (do all cars run on fossil ~s like gasoline?) 6. (misc.) (usu. fig.) to add ~ to the fire

fugitive *n.* 1. to track down a ~ 2. a ~ from (a ~ from justice)

fulfillment, fulfilment *n.* 1. to find; seek ~ (in) 2. personal; wish ~ (a sense of personal ~; a theory based on nothing more than wish ~) 3. partial ~ (of the requirements for a doctoral degree)

full *adj.* 1. half ~ 2. ~ of (the tank was ~ of water) 3. ~ to the brim; ~ to overflowing (the tank was ~ to the brim with water = the tank was ~ of water to the brim)

fulminate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ against

fumble I *n.* to make a ~

fumble II *v.* 1. to ~ blindly 2. (d; intr.) ("to grope") to ~ for (he was ~ling in his pocket for the key) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to handle clumsily") (she was ~ling with the lock)

fumble about, fumble around *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (he was ~ling around in his pocket for the key)

fume *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, at, over (to ~ at the delay) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (she was ~ming with annoyance) 3. (misc.) to fret and ~ = to ~ and fret

fumes *n.* 1. to emit, give off ~ 2. to inhale, be overcome by ~ 3. cigar; cigarette; gas ~ 4. noxious, toxic ~ 5. clouds of ~

fun *n.* 1. to have ~ (we had a lot of ~) 2. to make ~ of smb., to poke ~ at smb. 3. to spoil the ~ 4. clean, good, great, harmless ~ 5. a bit of ~ 6. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to go on the roller coaster = it was ~ going on the roller coaster) 7. for, in ~ (to play for ~) 8. (misc.) let's go just for the ~ of it; it was so much ~/such ~!; no ~ (it's no ~ to get up early! = it's no ~ getting up early!) (see also *poke fun at smb.* at **poke II** *v.*)

function I *n.* ["characteristic action"] 1. to fulfill, perform a ~ 2. a grammatical ~ 3. the bodily ~s ["mathematical correspondence"] 4. an exponential; inverse; linear; trigonometric ~ ["social event"] 5. to attend a ~ 6. an annual; official; public; social ~

function II *v.* 1. to ~ properly 2. (d; intr.) to ~ as (this valve ~s as a safety device)

fund *n.* 1. to establish, set up a ~ 2. to administer, manage a ~ 3. an inexhaustible ~ 4. a consolidated (BE); contingency, emergency; hedge; investment; pension; relief; secret; sinking; sovereign wealth (SWF); slush (colloq.); strike; trust ~ 5. a mutual ~ (AE; BE has *unit trust*) 6. a ~ for (to set up a trust ~ for a child) 7. a ~ to + inf. (to set up a trust ~ to pay for a child's education) (see also **funds**)

fundamental *adj.* ~ to

funded *adj.* federally; government-; locally; poorly; privately; publicly; state -; well-~

funding *n.* 1. to approve ~ 2. to cut off, terminate, withdraw ~ 3. federal; government; local; private; public; state ~ 4. the ~ to + inf. (we have the ~ to complete the work)

funds *n.* 1. to allocate, allot ~ 2. to disburse, pay out ~ 3. to raise ~ 4. federal; government; local; public; state ~ 5. matching ~ 6. private ~ 7. limited; unlimited ~ 8. (stamped on a check) insufficient ~ (AE; BE has *refer to drawer*) 9. ~ dry up, run out 10. the ~ to + inf. (we have the ~ to complete the work) (see also **fund**)

funeral *n.* 1. to conduct; hold a ~ 2. to attend a ~ 3. a military; state ~ 4. a ~ takes place 5. at a ~

funfair *n.* (BE) at a ~

funk *n.* ["depressed state"] (colloq.) a blue ~ (in a blue ~)

funnel I *n.* to pour smt. through a ~

funnel II *v.* (B) to ~ arms to the partisans

funny *adj.* (colloq.) ["strange"] ["interesting"] 1. ~ about (there's smt. ~ about that affair) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to watch how people order in a restaurant = it's ~ watching how people order in a restaurant) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that people keep changing their orders in restaurants) 4. (misc.) it's ~ how/the way people keep changing their orders in restaurants

funny bone *n.* to tickle smb.'s ~

fur *n.* 1. to wear (a) ~ 2. artificial, fake; genuine, real ~ 3. (misc.) the ~ started to fly ("a violent discussion began")

furious *adj.* 1. ~ about, at, over smt. (he was ~ about the loss of his pay check) 2. ~ at (esp. AE), with smb. 3. ~ to + inf. (he was ~ to learn that his pay check had been lost) 4. ~ that + clause (he was ~ that his pay check had been lost)

furlough *n.* (esp. AE) on ~

furnace *n.* 1. to stoke a ~ 2. a blast; coal; coke; gas; hot-air; oil; open-hearth ~ 3. a glowing; roaring ~

furnish *v.* 1. to ~ elegantly; luxuriously; plainly, sparsely; tastefully 2. (B) to ~ supplies to the refugees 3. (D; tr.) ("to provide") to ~ for (to ~ supplies for the refugees) 4. (D; tr.) ("to provide") to ~ with (can you ~ the refugees with the necessary supplies?) 5. (D; tr.) ("to supply with furniture") to ~ with (they ~ed the room with very expensive tables, chairs, and drapes)

furniture *n.* 1. to arrange ~ 2. to upholster ~ 3. antique; colonial; modern; period ~ 4. garden, lawn, outdoor, patio; office; street (BE) ~ 5. secondhand, used; unfinished (esp. AE) ~ 6. an article, piece, stick (colloq.) of ~

furor, furore *n.* 1. to create a ~ 2. a ~ over (the ~ created by/over his statement has begun to die down)

furrow *n.* 1. to make, turn a ~ 2. an even, straight ~

further *adv.* ~ to (~ to your letter of last week, enclosed please find the goods you requested)

furtherance *n.* in ~ of (in ~ of one's aims)

fury *n.* 1. to turn, vent one's ~ on, upon 2. to fly into a ~ 3. to fill smb. with ~; to provoke smb.'s ~ 4. to contain, restrain, suppress (one's) ~ 5. to allay, appease, calm smb.'s ~ 6. blind; elemental; pent-up; mounting, rising; savage, unbridled ~ 7. ~ explodes; wells up; blows over; subsides 8. a blaze, explosion, fit, outburst of ~ 9. ~ about, over; at smt. (he could hardly suppress his ~ about/over the matter) 10. ~ that + clause (our ~ that he had refused to help) 11. in; with ~ (she struck back in ~; burning with ~)

fuse I *n.* ["safety device"] 1. to blow, blow out (esp. AE) a ~ 2. to change a ~ 3. a safety ~ 4. a ~ blows, blows out (esp. AE) 5. (misc.) to blow a ~ ("to get very angry")

fuse II *n.* ["tube, wick used to set off an explosive charge"] 1. to light a ~ 2. a slow ~ (also fig.)

fuse III *n.* (AE) ["detonating device"] 1. to arm, set a ~ 2. a contact; delayed; percussion; proximity; time ~ (AE also has **fuze**)

fuse IV *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ X with Y = to ~ X and Y (together))

fusion *n.* nuclear ~

fuss I *n.* 1. to kick up, make, put up, raise a ~ 2. a ~ blows over, dies down, subsides 3. a ~ about, over (the ~ they kicked up over the new plan soon blew over) 4. (misc.) (BE) to make a ~ of smb.

fuss II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, over 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with

fussy *adj.* ~ about

futile *adj.* 1. completely, utterly ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to speculate about what might have been = it's ~ speculating about what might have been)

futility *n.* 1. complete, utter 2. an exercise in ~

future *n.* ["future time"] 1. to foretell, predict the ~ 2. to plan (out) the ~ 3. to face the ~; to look forward to the ~; to look into the ~ 4. a bleak; dismal; uncertain ~ 5. a bright, glorious, promising, rosy ~ 6. the distant; unforeseeable ~ 7. the foreseeable; immediate, near ~ 8. a ~ for (there is no ~ for them here) 9. for; in the ~ (in the near ~) 10. (BE) in ~ ("from now/then on") (be more careful in ~) 11. (misc.) what does the ~ hold?; what will the ~ bring? ["future form of a verb"] 12. in the ~

fuze (AE) see **fuse III**

G

gadfly *n.* ["annoying person"] a ~ to (the reporter was a constant ~ to the government)

gadget *n.* 1. a ~ for (they have a ~ for cleaning windows) 2. a ~ to + inf. (a ~ to clean windows)

gaff *n.* (slang) (BE) to blow the ~ ("to reveal a secret")

gaffe *n.* ["blunder"] to commit, make a ~

gag I *n.* (colloq.) ["joke"] as, for a ~ (she did it as/for a ~)

gag II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on food)

gaga *adv.* (colloq.) ["enthusiastic"] to go ~ over smt./smb.

gage see **gauge**

gain I *n.* 1. to make ~s (in recent years minority groups have made considerable political ~s) 2. to consolidate one's ~s (from successful trading) 3. to nullify a ~ 4. a considerable, enormous, notable, substantial, tremendous ~ 5. a personal; tangible ~ 6. (an) economic, financial; electoral, political; weight ~ 7. ill-gotten ~s 8. (economics) capital ~s

gain II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ by; from (to ~ independence from a colonial power; she stood to ~ a great deal from/by going to college; what do you hope to ~ by betraying me?) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in ("to acquire") (to ~ in experience) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to move faster than and get closer to") (the police were ~ing on the fugitive; to ~ on one's prey)

gait *n.* 1. a shambling; steady; unsteady ~ 2. at/with a certain ~ (at/with a steady ~)

gale *n.* 1. a heavy, raging, severe, strong ~ 2. a sudden ~ (we got caught in a sudden heavy ~) 3. a ~ blows itself out, blows over; blows up; dies down, subsides; rages

gall I *n.* (colloq.) ["impudence"] 1. unmitigated ~ 2. the ~ to + inf. (he had the ~ to sue for damages when he was at fault!)

gall II *v.* (R) it ~ed them (to learn) that they were not invited

gallant *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to say that)

gallantry *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. outstanding ~ 3. for ~ (to receive a medal for displaying outstanding ~ in battle)

gallery *n.* 1. an art; fresco ~ 2. a press; public; visitors' ~ 3. a shooting ~ (for target practice or, in slang, for addicts to inject drugs) 4. at, in a ~ 5. (misc.) to play to the ~ ("to attempt to attract public attention")

galling *adj.* 1. ~ to 2. ~ to + inf. it was ~ (to them) to learn that they were not invited

gallon *n.* 1. an imperial ~ 2. by the ~ (to sell fuel by the ~)

gallop *n.* 1. to break into a ~ 2. at a ~ (at full ~)

gallows *n.* to be sent to the ~

galoshes *n.* ["rubber overshoes"] 1. to put on; wear ~ 2. a pair of ~

galvanize *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into action)

gambit *n.* (chess) 1. to play a ~ 2. to accept; decline a ~ 3. an opening ~

gamble *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at cards) 2. (D; intr.) ("to risk") to ~ on (to ~ on smb.'s cooperation/cooperating) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with smb.'s future) 4. (L) to ~ that smb. will cooperate

gambler *n.* a compulsive, inveterate; professional ~

gambling *n.* 1. to ban; legalize ~ 2. compulsive; illegal; legal; offshore; organized ~

game I *adj.* ["ready, willing"] 1. ~ for (are you ~ for a swim?) 2. ~ to + inf. (are you ~ to go for a swim?)

game II *n.* ["contest, match"] 1. to have, play a ~ 2. to draw; lose; win a ~ 3. (AE) to call ("cancel") a (baseball) ~ 4. to throw ("purposely lose") a ~ 5. a close; crucial; fair ~ 6. a bowl (Am. football); championship; home; practice; wild-card (Am. professional football) ~ ["form of recreation"] 7. to play a ~ (to play a ~ of chess with the chess champion) 8. a ball; board; card; chess; children's; computer; numbers; parlor; party; team; video; word ~ 9. a ~ of cards; a ~ of chance; a ~ of chess; a ~ of skill (see also **crap game**; **games**) ["deception"] 10. to see through smb.'s (little) ~ 11. a con, confidence ~ (AE; BE has *con trick*, *confidence trick*) ["tactic, strategy"] 12. a long (esp. BE); waiting ~ (to play a waiting ~ and not say Yes too quickly) 13. a cat-and-mouse ~ (to play a cat-and-mouse-game with people and leave them in suspense) ["hunted animals"] 14. to bag; hunt; stalk ~ 15. big; small ~ 16. (fig.) fair ~ ("a legitimate object of attack") (to be fair ~ for smb.) 17. (misc.) a ~ preserve, refuge ["prostitution"] (colloq.) (BE) 18. on the ~ ["misc."] 19. the mating ~; to raise one's ~ (under pressure, true champions can raise their ~ to meet the challenge) (see the Usage Note for **match**)

games *n.* ["competition"] ["maneuvers"] 1. to hold, host, organize, stage; participate in, take part in ~ 2. war ~ 3. the Commonwealth; Olympic; summer; winter ~

gamut *n.* 1. to run the ~ from; to 2. the whole ~ (her performances ran the whole ~ from outstanding to terrible)

gander *n.* (colloq.) ["look"] to have, take (esp. AE) a ~ at

gang *n.* 1. to form a ~ 2. to join a ~ 3. to break up, bust (up) a ~ 4. a chain; section; street; work ~ 5. an inner-city; juvenile ~

gangrene *n.* ~ sets in

gangster *n.* a big-time, notorious ~

gang up *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against, on 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with

gaol (BE) see **jail I, II**

gap *n.* 1. to leave a ~ 2. to bridge, close, fill, narrow a ~ 3. to widen a ~ 4. an unbridgeable, wide, yawning ~ 5. a communications; credibility; culture; generation; gender; trade ~ 6. a ~ between 7. a ~ in 8. (BE) a ~ year ("a year off between secondary school and university")

gape *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at

garage *n.* 1. a parking ~ (AE; BE has *multi-storey car park*) 2. (misc.) to park a car in a ~

garage sale *n.* (AE) to have, hold a ~

garb I *n.* 1. ceremonial; everyday; formal, official ~ 2. in (formal) ~

garb II *v.* (formal) (d; refl.) to ~ in (they ~ed themselves in colorful costumes)

garbage *n.* (esp. AE) 1. to collect, pick up the ~ 2. to dispose of; dump ~ (BE prefers *rubbish*) (see also **refuse**, **trash**)

garden *n.* 1. to lay out; plant a ~ 2. to maintain a ~ 3. to water; weed a ~ 4. a botanical; formal; herb; market garden (BE; AE has *truck farm*); rock; rose; sunken; terraced; vegetable; zoological ~ (see the Usage Note for **yard I**) ["misc."] 5. I never promised you a rose ~! ("I never said things would be easy or ideal!")

gardening *n.* 1. to do, go in for ~ 2. landscape ~; market ~ (BE; AE has *truck farming*)

garlic *n.* 1. to crush; peel; sprinkle ~ 2. to smell of ~ 3. a clove of ~ 4. a whiff of ~

garment *n.* a foundation ~

garnish *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ a salad with parsley)

gas *n.* ["accelerator"] 1. to step on the ~ ["combustible gaseous mixture"] 2. to connect; cook with; light, turn on the ~ 3. to cut off, disconnect; turn off the ~ 4. butane; Calor (T) (BE); coal; greenhouse; natural ~ ["substance dispersed through the air to disable the enemy"] 5. mustard; nerve; toxic ~ (see also **poison gas**; **tear gas**) ["misc."] 6. laughing ~ ("nitrous oxide") (see also **gasoline**)

gash *n.* 1. to get; have; make a ~ 2. a deep, nasty; long ~ 3. a ~ on (to have a nasty ~ on one's leg)

gasket *n.* to blow a ~ (colloq.) ("to lose one's temper")

gasoline *n.* (AE) high-octane; leaded; lead-free, unleaded; premium; regular ~ (BE has *petrol*)

gasp I *n.* 1. to emit, give, let out a ~ 2. an audible ~ 3. a ~ for (a ~ for breath) 4. (misc.) the last ~ ("the last effort")

gasp II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at, in, with ("to express surprise at") (they ~ed at our offer; she ~ed in amazement) 2. (D; intr.) ("to breathe with difficulty") to ~ for (to ~ for breath)

gas range *n.* 1. to light, turn on a ~ 2. to turn off a ~

gate *n.* 1. to close, shut; open a ~ 2. the back; front; main ~ 3. a ~ closes, shuts; opens 4. a starting ~ (at a racetrack) 5. at; through a ~ 6. (misc.) passengers for flight ten proceed to (departure) ~ five; (AE) (colloq.) to give smb. the ~ ("to reject smb."); (AE) (colloq.) to get the ~ ("to be dismissed")

gateway *n.* a ~ to (the ~ to the west)

gather *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to assemble") to ~ around (they ~ed around the speaker) 2. (d; tr.) ("to conclude") to ~ from (I ~ed as much from the expression on your face) 3. (L) ("to conclude") I ~ (from the expression on your face) that you don't like him 4. (misc.) so I ~ ("she seems not to like him." "so I ~")

gathering *n.* 1. to attend a ~ 2. a family; public; social ~

gauge *n.* ["measuring device"] 1. a fuel; oil; pressure; rain; tire-pressure; water; wind ~ ["distance between rails"] 2. broad, wide; narrow; standard ~

gauntlet I *n.* ["challenge"] 1. to throw down the ~ 2. to pick up, take up the ~

gauntlet II *n.* ["ordeal"] to run a ~ (to run the ~ of reporters)

gavel I *n.* 1. to rap a ~ 2. a rap of the ~

gavel II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ into (he ~ed the protesters into silence)

gawk *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ at

gawp *v.* (BE) (D; intr.) to ~ at

gaze I *n.* 1. to avert; fix; lower one's ~ 2. an admiring; intense, rapt, steady, unblinking; lingering; penetrating, piercing; wistful ~ 3. under smb.'s ~ (he wilted under her penetrating ~)

gaze II *v.* 1. to ~ intently 2. (d; intr.) to ~ at 3. (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into the distance; she ~d into my eyes)

GCSEs n ["General Certificates of Secondary Education"] (GB) 1. to do, sit, take 'one's' ~ 2. in one's ~ (to do well in one's French and German ~) 3. ~ in (to have ~ in French and German)

gear I *n.* ["toothed wheel as part of a transmission"] 1. to change (BE), shift ~(s) 2. to reverse ~s 3. to strip ~s 4. bottom (BE), low; high (AE), top (BE); reverse ~ 5. a worm ~ 6. ~s clash, grind; jam, lock, stick; mesh 7. in ~; out of ~ ["equipment"] 8. fishing; hunting; riot; skiing ~ (see also **landing gear**) ["clothing"] (colloq.) (esp. BE) 9. trendy ~ (kids in/wearing trendy ~)

gear II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ to (the whole economy is ~ed to the tourist trade)

gear up *v.* (d; intr., tr.) to ~ for (the whole economy is ~ing up for the tourist trade)

gem *n.* (colloq., fig.) 1. an absolute ~ ("smb. or smt. extraordinary") 2. a ~ of an idea ("an excellent idea")

gender *n.* 1. grammatical ~ 2. (the) feminine; masculine; neuter ~ (many languages have no neuter ~) 3. (misc.) ~ neutral (to use gender-neutral terms in advertising a job vacancy)

gene *n.* 1. to carry; transfer, transplant ~s 2. to cut; splice ~s 3. a defective; dominant; recessive ~ 4. a ~ for (a ~ for a trait)

general I *adj.* in ~ ("generally")

general II *n.* 1. an adjutant; brigadier general (US; UK has *brigadier*); commanding; four-star; lieutenant; major ~ 2. (US) a five-star ~ = a ~ of the

Army 3. to make smb. a ~, to promote smb. to the rank of ~; to have, hold the rank of ~ 4. (misc.) what's your opinion, General (Smith)?

generality *n.* 1. a broad, sweeping; vague ~ 2. (to speak) in ~ties

generalization *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. a broad, sweeping; valid ~ 3. a ~ about 4. a ~ that + clause (it is a valid ~ that exercise promotes good health)

generalize *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from several specific cases)

general quarters *n.* to sound ~

generation *n.* 1. the baby boom/baby boomer; coming, future, next; new; older; present; younger ~ 2. future; past ~s 3. the greatest; a lost ~ 4. for ~s; in a ~ (the result won't be known in this ~ and perhaps not for several ~s to come) 5. (misc.) from ~ to ~ (see also *generation gap* at **gap**)

generosity *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 2. great, lavish, magnanimous, unstinting ~ 3. ~ in; to, towards; with (~ with money) 4. (misc.) to abuse, take advantage of smb.'s ~

generous *adj.* 1. ~ in; to, towards; with (~ with money) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to contribute such a large sum)

genial *adj.* ~ towards

genitalia *n.* (plural) female; male ~

genius *n.* ["great mental capacity, ability"] 1. to demonstrate, show ~ 2. an inventive; rare ~ (she is a mathematician an of rare ~) 3. a flash, spark, stroke; work of ~ ["ability"] 4. a ~ for (he has a ~ for getting into trouble) ["person of great mental capacity, ability"] 5. an artistic; budding; inventive; mathematical; mechanical; military; musical ~ 6. a rare; real ~ 7. a ~ at (she is a ~ at mathematics) 8. a ~ to + inf. (she was a ~ to have thought of that!)

genocide *n.* to commit, perpetrate ~

gentle *adj.* 1. ~ on; with (be ~ with yourself by using a soap that's ~ on your skin!) 2. (misc.) as ~ as a lamb

gentleman *n.* 1. a complete, perfect, real, true ~ 2. a country ~ 3. (misc.) every inch a ~; a ~ of the old school; (my lords,) ladies and gentlemen….

gentry *n.* the landed; local ~

gen up *v.* (slang) (BE) (D; intr., refl., tr.) ("to inform") to ~ about, on (they ~ned me up on the situation)

geography *n.* biogeography; dialect, linguistic; economic; physical; political ~

geometry *n.* analytic (AE), analytical; descriptive; Euclidean; non-Euclidean; plane; projective; solid ~

germ *n.* ["microorganism"] 1. ~s multiply 2. (some) ~s cause disease

germane *adj.* ~ to (~ to the discussion)

gestation *n.* 1. (a) period of ~ = a ~ period 2. in ~

gesticulate *v.* 1. to ~ angrily, frantically, wildly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with one's hands at a taxi (in order) to attract the driver's attention)

gesture I *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. to use ~s to communicate = to communicate by using ~s = to communicate with ~s 3. an angry; derogatory; obscene; rude ~ 4. an empty, meaningless; frantic; habitual; symbolic; token ~ 5. a bold; defiant ~ 6. a haughty, imperious ~ 7. a conciliatory; friendly; humane, kind ~ 8. a glorious, grand, grandiose, magnificent, noble ~ (in a magnificent ~ of renunciation, the Emperor Charles V abdicated and entered a monastery) 9. (misc.) to eke out one's meaning with ~s

gesture II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at; to (the teacher ~d at/to the pupil to stop talking) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with one's hand) 3. (misc.) the teacher ~d for the pupil to stop talking

get *v.* 1. (B) ("to deliver") I have to ~ a message to her 2. (C) ("to obtain") she got a newspaper for me (for $1); or: she got me a newspaper (for $1); is $1 really enough to ~ you a newspaper these days? 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ across, over ("to cross"); ("to cause to cross") (to ~ across a bridge; the general finally got his troops across the river) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ after ("to exert pressure on") (you'll have to ~ after them if they keep making noise) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ around ("to evade") (we cannot ~ around the regulations) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ at ("to suggest") (what are you ~ting at?) 7. (d; intr.) to ~ at ("to reach") (I hope that the children cannot ~ at the medicine; you're safe here: your enemies cannot ~ at you; to ~ at the truth) 8. (esp. AE) (d; intr.) to ~ behind ("to support") (we must ~ behind her campaign) 9. (d; intr.) to ~ between ("to try to separate") (never ~ between fighting dogs) 10. (D; tr.) ("to receive") to ~ for (what did you ~ for your birthday? she got one hundred dollars for her sewing machine; he got five years for larceny) 11. (d; tr.) ("to obtain, receive") to ~ from, out of (is $1 really enough to ~ you a newspaper from a shop these days?; she got the truth out of him; he ~s pleasure from smoking) 12. (d; intr., refl., tr.) to ~ in, into ("to enter"); ("to cause to enter") (to ~ into trouble; to ~ oneself into trouble; to ~ smb. into trouble; to ~ into a car; to ~ into a fight) 13. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to affect") (what got into him?) 14. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ off ("to leave"); ("to cause to leave") (to ~ off a train) (to ~ smt./smb. off a train) 15. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to enter") (to ~ on a train) 16. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to affect") (to ~ on smb.'s nerves) 17. (d; tr.) to ~ on ("to cause to enter") (he finally got the whole group on the train) 18. (d; intr.) to ~ onto ("to enter") (she could not ~ onto the train) 19. (d; intr.) to ~ onto ("to take up for discussion") (we got onto a very interesting topic) 20. (colloq.) (esp. AE) (d; intr.) to ~ onto ("to become aware of") (we finally got onto her schemes) 21. (d; intr., refl., tr.) to ~ out of ("to leave"); ("to extricate"); ("to extricate oneself from") (to ~ out of a car; I got him out of trouble; to ~ (oneself) out of trouble; when did he ~ out of prison?) 22. (d; intr.) to ~ over ("to overcome") (you'll have to ~ over your fear of speaking in public) 23. (d; intr.) to ~ over ("to recover from") (has she got/gotten over the shock?) 24. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ past ("to slip by") (we got past the guard; we got it past the guard) 25. (d; intr.) ("to be unnoticed") to ~ past (the error got past him) 26. (d; intr., tr.) ("to pass") ("to cause to pass") to ~ through (to ~ through a door; we could not ~ the piano through the window) 27. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to reach") (to ~ to a telephone; to ~ to the point; we got to the theater late) 28. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to affect") (her pleas got to me) 29. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to bribe") (they got to the mayor himself) 30. (d; tr.) ("to deliver") to ~ to (to ~ smb. to a hospital) 31. (d; intr.) to ~ within ("to come") (don't ~ within range of the enemy artillery) 32. (E) ("to succeed in") if you can ~ to see her, you may receive some help; if you ~ to know her, you'll like her 33. (colloq.) (E; used in the perfect tenses) ("to be obliged to, to have to") she's got to finish the work by tomorrow; (BE) I'd got to finish the work by yesterday! 34. (G) ("to begin") he finally got going 35. (H; no passive) ("to bring about") she finally got the television to work; I got a gardener to cut the grass 36. (J; more usu. is H) ("to bring about") she finally got the television working 37. (N; used with an adjective, past participle) ("to make") we got our tools ready; he got us involved; try to ~ them interested 38. (P; intr.) ("to arrive") he finally got home 39. (s) ("to become") to ~ angry; to ~ drunk; to ~ loose; to ~ rid of; to ~ even with smb. 40. (S) (BE) you are ~ting a big girl now! 41. (misc.) to ~ clear of (to ~ clear of all obstacles); to ~ cracking ("to start moving"); to ~ in touch with smb.; to ~ nowhere ("to be unsuccessful"); to ~ somewhere ("to score a success") (see also *get-up-and-go* at **go I**; *don't get me wrong* at **wrong I** *adj.*) USAGE NOTE: In AE, the past participle of *to get* is usu. *gotten* – they'd gotten everything ready. In BE, it is *got* – they'd got everything ready. (Note that *ill-gotten gains* is CE.) However, CE does use *have got*: *he's got work*; *I've got to go*. Only BE uses *had got* to form the past tense of this construction – *I'd got to do it yesterday* "I had to do it yesterday". BE also has *he'd got work* "he had work".

get across *v.* (B) ("to make clear") she tried to ~ her ideas across to us

get after *v.* (H) ("to induce") you'll have to ~ him to trim the bushes

get ahead *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ of ("to occupy a position in front of") (try to ~ of him)

get along *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to manage") to ~ on (we cannot ~ on his salary) 2. (D; intr.) ("to relate") to ~ with (how does she ~ with her brother?)

get around *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to find time") to ~ to (we finally got around to answering our correspondence) 2. (L) it got around that she was resigning

getaway *n.* 1. to make (good) one's ~ 2. a quick ~

get away *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to escape") to ~ from (to ~ from one's pursuers) 2. (D; intr.) ("to escape") to ~ with (the thieves got away with the loot) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to succeed in") (they didn't ~ with their scheme)

get back *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to get revenge") to ~ at; for (we got back at him for his insult) 2. (D; intr.) ("to return") to ~ from (we got back from our trip early) 3. (D; tr.) ("to receive") to ~ from (we got the money back from him; they got back a lot of money from their investment = they got a lot of money back from their investment) 4. (D; intr.) ("to come back, return") to ~ to (I got back to New York yesterday; I'll ~ to you) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to resume") (to ~ to work)

get behind *v.* (D; intr.) ("to be late") to ~ in, with (to ~ with one's payments)

get by *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to manage") to ~ on (to ~ on very little) 2. (D; intr.) ("to manage") to ~ with (we'll have to ~ with one car)

get down *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to dismount") to ~ from (to ~ from a horse) 2. (D; tr.) ("to bring down") to ~ from (she got the book down from the shelf) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to begin"); ("to take up") (to ~ to work; to ~ to details) USAGE NOTE: In BE children may ask to get down (from the table) when they have finished their meal and want to leave.

get in *v.* ("to join") 1. (d; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on the act) ("to participate in"); (to ~ on the ground floor) ("to join at the very beginning") 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with the wrong crowd) 3. (misc.) to ~ out of the rain; to ~ a word in edgeways/(esp. AE) edgewise

get off *v.* 1. to ~ lightly 2. (B) we got a letter off to them yesterday 3. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to begin with") (to ~ to a good start) 4. (D; intr.) ("to escape") to ~ with (he got off with a light sentence; to ~ with a few scratches)

get on *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to fare") to ~ at (she is ~ting on well at her job) 2. (d; intr.) ("to advance") to ~ in (to be ~ting on in years) 3. (d; intr.) ("to continue") to ~ with (to ~ with one's work) 4. (esp. BE) (d; intr.) ("to get along") to ~ with (how does she ~ with her brother?)

get out of *v.* (G) I couldn't ~ doing it

get over *v.* (D; intr.) ("to pass") to ~ to (to ~ to the other side)

get round (BE) see **get around**

get through *v.* 1. (B) ("to deliver") (she finally got the message through to them) 2. (D; intr.) ("to reach") to ~ to (we could not ~ to her) 3. (D; intr.) ("to finish") (esp. AE) to ~ with (we must ~ with our work)

get-together *n.* to have a ~

get together *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to agree on") (we finally got together on a compromise) 2. (D; intr.) ("to meet") to ~ with (we got together with some friends last night)

get-up *n.* ["outfit"] an elaborate ~

get up *v.* 1. (colloq.) (BE) (d; refl., tr.) ("to dress up") to ~ as, like (she got herself up as a ballerina for the party) 2. (D; intr.) ("to rise") to ~ from (to ~ from the table)

ghastly *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to say that)

ghetto *n.* a golden; inner-city, urban ~ (a golden ~ where only rich people lived)

ghost *n.* ["apparition"] 1. to see a ~ 2. to exorcise a ~ 3. a ~ appears; haunts (the ~ of Hamlet's father haunted Elsinore) 4. to believe in ~s 5. (misc.) as pale/white as a ~; to look as if one has seen a ~

gibe I *n.* 1. make a ~ 2. a ~ about; at

gibe II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at

gift *n.* ["present"] 1. to give, present a ~ to; to make smb. a ~ of smt. 2. to bear ~s for, to 3. to heap, lavish, rain ~s on 4. to exchange ~s with 5. an extravagant, lavish; generous; outright ~ (for) 6. a farewell; graduation; shower (AE); wedding ~ 7. to unwrap; wrap a ~ ["talent"] 8. to have a ~ for 9. a ~ for (a ~ for languages)

gifted *adj.* 1. academically; highly, very; intellectually; musically; physically ~ 2. ~ at; in; with

giggle I *n.* 1. to get, have the ~s 2. an infectious; nervous; silly ~ 3. an attack of the ~s 4. a ~ about (the girls had quite a ~ about what had happened) 5. (misc.) (colloq.) (BE) as/for a ~ ("as a prank")

giggle II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, at (the girls ~d about what had happened)

gimmick *n.* an advertising, promotional; election; sales ~ (the latest promotional ~)

girder *n.* a steel ~

girdle *n.* 1. a tight ~ 2. a panty ~

girl *n.* 1. a career; chorus; college (esp. AE); dancing; flower; office; pinup; stock; working ~ 2. a ball ~ (who retrieves tennis balls) 3. a call ~ ("prostitute who can be summoned by telephone") 4. a baby; little, small; mere ~; a slip of a ~ 5. (esp. AE) a poster ~ (her success made her a poster ~ for early-childhood education) USAGE NOTE: It can be offensive to call a woman a *girl*. Thus, *career woman* and *working woman* are considered by many to be more acceptable than *career girl* and *working girl*. (See the Usage Note for **woman**.) Besides, in some circles *working girl* can be a euphemism for *prostitute*. In addition, the former use of *girl* in the meaning of "black female" is considered offensive. (See also the Usage Note for **boy**.)

girlfriend *n.* 1. have a ~ 2. a live-in; long-suffering; steady ~ 3. a series, string of ~s

giro *n.* ["system of transferring money"] (BE) by ~ (to transfer money by ~)

girth *n.* to measure the ~ of

gist *n.* (colloq.) ["main meaning"] to get; give the ~ of

give *v.* 1. (A) she gave the book to me; or: she gave me the book 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she gave money for a new health center) 3. (misc.) they gave generously of their time (see also *give smb. to understand* at **understand**)

giveaway *n.* (colloq.) ["unintentional revelation"] a dead ~ (of)

give away *v.* 1. (B) ("to donate") she gave all her money away to the poor = she gave away all her money to the poor 2. (D; tr.) ("to betray") to ~ to (they gave him away to the police) 3. (Q) ("to betray") they did not ~ where the money was hidden

give back *v.* (usu. B; sometimes A) she gave the money back to us = she gave back the money to us = (sometimes) she gave us back the money

give in *v.* (D; intr.) ("to yield") to ~ to (we had to ~ to their demands)

given *adj.* (cannot stand alone) 1. ~ to (~ to exaggeration) 2. ~ that + clause (given that he exaggerates, can we trust him?) 3. ~ + wh-word + clause (given how often he exaggerates, can we trust him?)

give out *v.* (B) we gave the food out to those who needed it = we gave out the food to those who needed it

give over *v.* 1. (D; refl.) ("to abandon oneself") to ~ to (to ~ oneself over to grief) 2. (esp. BE) (D; tr.) ("to turn over") to ~ to (the building was given over to the youth club) 3. (colloq.) (BE) (used in the imper.) (G) ("to stop") ~ hitting the child

give up *v.* 1. (B) ("to yield") he gave up his seat to a man on crutches 2. (D; intr.) ("to lose hope") to ~ on (we have given up on her) 3. (D; refl., tr.) ("to turn over") to ~ to (the murderer gave himself up to the police) 4. (G) ("to stop") she gave up attempting to influence them 5. (misc.) they were given up for dead

give way *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to yield") to ~ to (reason gave way to hysteria) 2. (d; intr.) ("to collapse") to ~ under (the table gave way under the sheer ~ of the food)

glad *adj.* 1. only too; very ~ 2. ~ about, of 3. for (we are very ~ for them both) 4. ~ to + inf. (I'm very ~ to have been invited to the meeting) 5. ~ that + clause (I'm very ~ that I've been invited to the meeting)

glance I *n.* 1. to cast, dart, shoot; have; sneak, steal a ~ at 2. to exchange ~s 3. an admiring; amused; imploring; shy; wistful ~ 4. a casual, cursory, fleeting, passing ~ 5. a knowing; meaningful, significant; penetrating, probing, searching ~ 6. a backward; conspiratorial; furtive; quizzical; sidelong; stolen, surreptitious; suspicious ~ 7. a disapproving, indignant; hostile; withering ~ 8. at a ~ (I recognized her at a ~; I could see at a ~ that she was glad/how glad she was)

glance II *v.* 1. ("to look") to ~ admiringly; casually; furtively, surreptitiously; imploringly; indignantly; knowingly; meaningfully; quizzically; shyly; suspiciously 2. (d; intr.) ("to look") to ~ at 3. (d; intr.) ("to look") to ~ down (she ~d down the list) 4. (d; intr.) ("to ricochet") to ~ off (the rock ~d off the window)

gland *n.* 1. the pituitary; prostate; thyroid ~ 2. the adrenal; ductless, endocrine; eccrine, sweat; lachrymal; lymph; mammary; salivary ~s (endocrine ~s secrete hormones) 3. swollen ~s

glare I *n.* 1. in the ~ (in the ~ of publicity) 2. the ~ of headlights = the ~ from the headlights

glare II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to stare angrily") to ~ at 2. (d; intr.) ("to shine") to ~ into (the sun ~d into my eyes)

glass *n.* ["transparent substance"] 1. to blow, make; break, shatter ~ 2. clear, translucent; colored; cut; ground; plate; safety; sheet; stained ~ 3. a pane, sheet; piece, sliver, splinter of ~ ["tumbler"] ["container"] 4. to drink a ~ (of water) 5. to drain; fill a ~ 6. to raise one's ~ (to give a toast) (to) 7. to clink, touch ~es (when giving a toast) 8. a champagne; cocktail; drinking; shot; water; wine ~ 9. a measuring ~ ["optical instrument"] 10. a magnifying ~

glasses *n.* ["spectacles"] 1. to need; put on; take off; wear ~ 2. to be fitted for ~ 3. dark, sun; horn-rimmed; reading ~ 4. a pair of ~ ["binoculars"] 5. to focus, train ~ on 6. field; opera ~ ["misc."] 7. to see life through rose-colored, rose-tinted (BE) ~ ("to see only the good in life")

gleam I *n.* 1. a faint ~ 2. a wild ~ (there was a wild ~ in his eyes)

gleam II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ with 2. (s) the coin ~ed gold in the sunlight

glean *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (I ~ed from the government statement that nothing would change)

glee *n.* 1. to express ~ 2. with ~ (to dance with ~)

glide *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ across enemy lines; to ~ through the air

glider *n.* 1. to fly a ~ 2. to launch; tow a ~ 3. a ~ flies; glides; soars

glimmer I *n.* a faint, pale, slight, tiny, weak ~ (there remained just the faintest ~ of hope)

glimmer II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (the heavens ~ed with stars)

glimpse *n.* 1. to catch a ~ of 2. a brief, fleeting; tantalizing ~ 3. a ~ into (a book that gives you a ~ into the life of a coal miner)

glint *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

glisten *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

glitch *n.* (slang) ["mishap"] an unexpected ~ (in)

glitter *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in the sunlight) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with

gloat *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ over

globe *n.* 1. to circle, girdle; span the ~ 2. all over; (all) around the ~ (people came to the event from all over the ~!)

gloom *n.* 1. to express ~ 2. (an) all-pervading, deep, deepening, unrelieved ~ 3. a pall of ~ 4. ~ about, over (to express ~ over the situation; the earlier statistics cast a pall of deep ~ over everyone, which lifted when the later statistics were released)

gloomy *adj.* ~ about, over

glorious *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it would be ~ to live in a peaceful world)

glory I *n.* 1. to achieve, win ~ 2. to bring ~ to 3. to reflect ~ on 4. crowning; eternal, everlasting; reflected ~ 5. military ~ 6. a blaze of ~ 7. ~ to (eternal ~ to our heroes!) 8. in (one's/smb.'s) ~ (to bask in smb.'s ~; to be in one's ~) 9. (misc.) to restore smt. to its former ~; covered in, with ~

glory II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in one's triumph)

gloss I *n.* ["luster"] 1. to give smt. a ~ 2. a high ~

gloss II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ over ("to cover up") (to ~ over one's mistakes and then ~ over them again = to ~ over one's mistakes and then ~ them over again)

glove *n.* 1. boxing; lace; leather; rubber; suede; work ~s (see also **kid gloves**) 2. an oven ~ (esp. BE; AE has *oven mitt*, *pot holder*) 3. a pair of ~s 4. (misc.) to fit like a ~ ("to fit perfectly")

glow I *n.* 1. to cast, emit a ~ 2. an eerie ~ 3. a bright; dim; soft; warm ~ 4. (misc.) the award brought a warm ~ of pride to her cheeks

glow II *v.* 1. to ~ brightly; dimly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (the award made her positively ~ with pride!) 3. (s) the sun ~ed red as it set

glower *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at

glued *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to (he was ~ to his TV set; her eyes were ~ to the door)

glum *adj.* ~ about

glut I *n.* a ~ on the market

glut II *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ with (to ~ the market with cheap goods)

glutton *n.* a ~ for punishment

gnaw *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ (away) at 2. (D; intr.) to ~ through (the rodents ~ed through the wood)

go I *n.* (colloq.) ["attempt"] 1. a ~ at (let's have a ~ at it) ["misc."] 2. to make a ~ of it ("to make it succeed"); always on the ~; it's all ~ here from morning till night!; get-up-and-go ("energy and initiative") (have you got the get-up-and-go to make a success of this shop?)

go II *v.* 1. to ~ badly; fast, quickly; slow; slowly; well 2. (d; intr.) ("to proceed") to ~ about (to ~ about one's business) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ across ("to cross") (to ~ across a river) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ after ("to follow") (this piece of the puzzle ~es after that one) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ after, at ("to seek to reach") (the dog went after/at the intruder; she went after the job and then went at it energetically) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ against ("to be opposed to"); ("to be unfavorable to") (this ~es against my principles; to ~ against the grain; the war began to ~ against them) 7. (d; intr.) to ~ around ("to circle") (they went around the block) 8. (d; intr.) to ~ before ("to precede") (this piece of the puzzle ~es before that one) 9. (d; intr.) to ~ beyond ("to exceed") (to ~ (above and) beyond the call of duty) 10. (d; intr.) to ~ by ("to travel") (to ~ by car) 11. (d; intr.) ("to pass") to ~ by (to ~ by smb.'s house) 12. (d; intr.) to ~ by ("to follow") (to ~ by the rules) 13. (d; intr.) ("to be known") to ~ by (he used to ~ by another name) 14. (d; intr.) to ~ down ("to descend") (to ~ down a hill) 15. (d; intr.) ("to leave") to ~ for (to ~ for a drive; to ~ for a walk; to ~ for the doctor) 16. (d; intr.) ("to be spent") to ~ for (half our money ~es for food) (see also 27) 17. (d; intr.) ("to be sold”) to ~ for (the painting went for a hundred dollars) 18. (d; intr.) to ~ for (“to attack”) (he went straight for me; to ~ for the jugular) 19. (d; intr.) (“to try”) to ~ for (she went for first prize) 20. (d; intr.) to ~ for (“to concern”) (what he said ~es for you too) 21. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ for (“to like”) (I could ~ for her; we could really ~ for a drink!) 22. (d; intr.) (“to move”) to ~ from; to (to ~ from the sublime to the ridiculous) 23. (d; intr.) to ~ into (“to enter”) (to ~ into town; to ~ into the army; to ~ into detail; five ~es into ten twice = five ~es twice into ten) 24. (d; intr.) to ~ off (“to leave”) (to ~ off duty; the train went off the tracks; to ~ off the air) 25. (d; intr.) to ~ on (“to leave”) (to ~ on a trip) 26. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ on (“to judge by”); (“to rely on”) (we must ~ on the assumption that he’ll agree; we don’t have much to ~ on) 27. (esp. BE) (d; intr.) to ~ on (“to be spent for”) (half our money ~es on food) (see also 16) 28. (d; intr.) to ~ out of (“to leave”) (to ~ out of the house; to ~ out of business) 29. (d; intr.) to ~ over (“to examine”) (to ~ over the books) 30. (d; intr.) to ~ over (“to cross”) (they went over the mountain) 31. (d; intr.) to ~ through (“to be sold out in”) (the dictionary went through three printings) 32. (d; intr.) (“to pass”) to ~ through (to ~ through a red light; to ~ through a door; to ~ through channels) 33. (d; intr.) to ~ through (“to endure”) (she went through a lot) 34. (d; intr.) to ~ through (“to spend, squander”) (he went through his inheritance in six months) 35. (d; intr.) to ~ through (“to repeat”) (to ~ through the main points again) 36. (d; intr.) to ~ through (“to conduct”) (to ~ through a ceremony) 37. (d; intr.) to ~ through (“to examine”) (to ~ through the books) 38. (d; intr.) (“to travel”) to ~ to (we went to Alaska) 39. (d; intr.) (“to move”) to ~ to (she went to the door) 40. (d; intr.) to ~ to (“to attend”) (to ~ to school; to ~ to college) 41. (d; intr.) to ~ to (“to be received by”) (the estate went to her; first prize went to my cousin) 42. (d; intr.) to ~ to (“to reach”) (this road ~es to town; the railway ~es to the border) 43. (d; intr.) (“to move”) to ~ towards (she went towards the exit) 44. (d; intr.) to ~ towards (“to be designated for”) (our contributions went towards setting up a shelter for the homeless) 45. (d; intr.) to ~ up (“to ascend”) (to ~ up a hill) 46. (d; intr.) to ~ with (“to date”); (“to be a companion to”) (Jim ~es with Nancy) 47. (d; intr.) (“to combine”) (“to match”) to ~ with (which verb ~es with that noun? “does this blouse ~ (together) with that skirt?” “the blouse ~s well with the skirt: the blouse and the skirt ~ well together”) 48. (d; intr.) to ~ without (“to get along without”) (to ~ without water) 49. (E) (“to serve”) that just ~es to show you that I’m right; (usu. in progressive tenses to show subsequent time) we are ~ing to see them tomorrow but we had been ~ing to see them yesterday 50. (F) she told me to go (and) see who was at the door, so ¬I went and saw/I went to see¬ who was there 51. (G) to ~ shopping 52. (s) to ~ unnoticed; everything went wrong at first but came right eventually 53. (misc.) to ~ abroad; to ~ the bad (“to be corrupted”); (“to turn sour”); to ~ bankrupt; to ~ to bed; to ~ begging (“to be in little demand”); to ~ broke (“to run out of money”); (BE) to ~ to the country (“to call a general election”); to ~ easy on smb. (“to treat smb. leniently”); to ~ to great expense (“to spend a great deal”) (they went to great expense to make things nice); to ~ to extremes; to ~ out of one’s mind; to ~ native (“to behave like the natives”); to ~ overboard (“to exaggerate”); to ~ to pieces (“to disintegrate”); to ~ to press (“to be printed as a periodical”); to ~ to sea (“to become a sailor”); to ~ steady (with) (esp. AE) (“to be a boyfriend or girlfriend of”); to ~ to trial (the case went to trial); to ~ to waste (“to be wasted”); to ~ wrong (“to be corrupted”); to ~ from bad to worse (“to become much worse”); she has a lot ~ing for her (“she has many advantages”); cows ~ “moo”; (slang) so I went “well, I never!”

go about *v.* (G) they went about seeking new customers

goad *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into doing smt.) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (she kept ~ing him with insults) 3. (H) he kept ~ing me to fight

go-ahead *n.* 1. to give smb. the ~ 2. to get the ~ 3. the ~ to + inf. (we got the ~ to proceed with the investigation)

go ahead *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ of (she went ahead of me) 2. (D; intr.) (“to proceed”) to ~ with (to ~ with one’s plans)

goal *n.* 1. to set a ~ 2. to achieve, attain, reach, realize a ~ 3. (sports) to allow, concede (esp. BE); deny (esp. BE); kick, make, score a ~ 4. (sports) to nullify a ~ 5. a clear; immediate; realistic; ultimate ~ 6. a long-range, long-term ~ (we have the immediate ~ of making things better and the ultimate ~ of changing society) 7. a short-range, short-term ~ 8. (sports) a disputed; field; winning ~ 9. (BE) (soccer) an own ~ (“a goal scored by a player against his own team”) (also fig.) 10. (soccer) in ~ (who’s (playing) in ~ for Spurs?)

goal line *n.* to cross; reach the ~

go along *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (“to participate”) (to ~ for the ride) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (“to agree to”) (to ~ with a compromise)

go around *v.* 1. (d; intr.) (“to keep company”) to ~ with (they were ~ing around with undesirable characters) 2. (G) they went around seeking new customers

goat *n.* 1. to keep (BE), raise (esp. AE) ~s 2. a mountain ~ 3. ~s bleat 4. a flock, herd of ~s 5. a young ~ is a kid 6. a female ~ is a doe or nanny goat 7. a male ~ is a buck or billy goat 8. (misc.) to get smb.’s ~ (“to irritate smb.”)

go away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for a rest)

go back *v.* 1. (d; intr.) (“to renege”) to ~ on (to ~ on one’s promise) 2. (D; intr.) (“to return”) to ~ to (he went back to his home) 3. (d; intr.) ("to date back") to ~ to (this painting ~es back to the seventeenth century)

God *n.* 1. to bless; praise; pray to; worship ~ 2. to believe in ~ 3. (misc.) in praise of ~; thank ~!; ~ forbid!; for ~'s sake! = (AE) for God sakes!; almighty ~/~ almighty; good ~!; the god of war; to believe that ~ exists = to believe that there is a ~

go down *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to become known") to ~ as; in (to ~ in history as a great ruler) 2. (D; intr.) ("to descend") to ~ into (to ~ into a mine) 3. (d; intr.) ("to descend") to ~ to (to ~ to the river) 4. (BE) (d; intr.) ~ with ("to catch, develop, come down with") (to ~ with a cold) 5. (misc.) to ~ to defeat; they went down with their ship; (BE) last year he went down from Cambridge ("he left Cambridge last year"); (esp. BE) her speech went down well/badly with them

godsend *n.* 1. a real ~ 2. a ~ to

godspeed *n.* (old-fashioned) to bid, wish smb. ~

go forward *v.* (d; intr.) ("to proceed") to ~ with (to ~ with one's plans)

goggle *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at

goggles *n.* 1. to put on; take off; wear ~ 2. a pair of ~

go in *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to occupy oneself") to ~ for (to ~ for gardening) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to join") (he agreed to ~ with them)

going *n.* ["progress"] rough, slow ~ (to face rough ~)

going-over *n.* ["beating"]["inspection"] 1. to give smb./smt. a ~ 2. to get a ~ 3. a good ~ (to get a good ~)

gold *n.* 1. to mine; pan, pan for; prospect for ~ 2. to strike ~ (also fig.) ("to discover smt. valuable") 3. pure, solid ~ 4. a (rich) vein of ~ 5. a bar of ~ 6. (misc.) as good as ~

golf *n.* 1. to play ~ 2. clock (BE); miniature ~ 3. a round of ~ (to play a round of ~)

golf ball *n.* to drive; putt a ~

gong *n.* to sound a ~

gonorrhea *n.* 1. to catch, contract, get; have ~ 2. a case of ~

good I *adj.* 1. any; no; very ~ ("is he any ~ at chess?" "I'm afraid he's no ~ at chess at all!"; it's no ~ (you/your) protesting your innocence: no one believes you!) 2. ~ at, in (she is ~ at/in mathematics) 3. ~ for (exercise is ~ for you; this ticket is ~ for a month) 4. ~ to (he is ~ to his parents) 5. ~ with (he is ~ with his hands) 6. ~ to + inf. (it's no ~ (for you) to protest your innocence: no one believes you!; it's ~ to be home again; it was ~ of you to come) 7. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that we're home again; it was that you came) 8. (misc.) for ~ ("for ever"); she is ~ about baby-sitting ("she doesn't mind baby-sitting"); they made ~ their escape ("they succeeded in escaping"); so far so ~; as ~ as gold ("very good and esp. very obedient") (the baby's been as ~ as gold!); would you be ~ enough to help us? = would you be so ~ as to help us?; she said she'd help us and she was as ~ as her word ("...and she kept her word")

good II *n.* ["something useful"] 1. to do ~ 2. the common; highest ~ ["positive qualities"] 3. to bring out the ~ in smb. ["favor"] 4. in ~ with smb. ["favorable result"] 5. to come to no ~ ["restitution"] 6. to make ~ (for) ["benefit, help"] 7. to do smb. ~ (a vacation will do you a/the world of ~/a power of ~; it will do you ~ to take a vacation) ["misc."] 8. to be up to no ~ ("to be plotting mischief"); for smb.'s own ~ (I'm punishing you – but it's for your own ~!); the greatest ~ for the greatest number

goodbye *n.* to say; wave ~ (to)

goods *n.* 1. to order ~ 2. to send, ship ~ 3. to sell; stock ~ 4. capital; consumer; dry (esp. AE), soft (esp. BE); durable; manufactured; piece, yard (AE) ~ 5. damaged; shoddy; stolen ~ 6. (misc.) to have the ~ on (colloq.) ("to have evidence against"); smb.'s worldly ~; to deliver the ~ ("to keep one's word"); ~s and services

goodwill *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. to promote ~ 3. international ~ 4. a gesture, sign, token of ~ 5. ~ to, towards

go off *v.* (D; intr.) ("to leave") to ~ with (she went off with my pen)

go on *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to continue") to ~ about (to ~ (and on endlessly) about one's own problems) 2. (d; intr.) ("to continue") to ~ as (he went on as chairman) 3. (D; intr.) ("to perform") to ~ as (he went on as Hamlet) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ at ("to nag") (stop ~ing on at me all the time about my mistakes!) 5. (d; intr.) ("to advance") to ~ to (she went on to fame and fortune) 6. (D; intr.) ("to continue") to ~ with (they went on with their work) 7. (E) ("to advance") she went on to become rich and famous 8. (G) ("to continue") he went right on typing

goose *n.* 1. geese cackle, honk; waddle 2. a flock of geese, a gaggle of geese (on the ground) (literary), a skein of geese (in flight) (literary) 3. a young ~ is a gosling 4. a male ~ is a gander

goose bumps, gooseflesh, goose pimples *n.* 1. to give (smb.) ~ 2. to get; have ~

go out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to leave") to ~ for (to ~ for a walk) 2. (esp. AE) (D; intr.) ("to try out") to ~ for (to ~ for a team) 3. (BE) (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to emigrate") (she went out to New Zealand) 4. (D; intr.) ("to go steady") to ~ with (Olga has been ~ing out with Joe) 5. (G) they went out drinking every night 6. (misc.) our hearts ~ to the bereaved ("we have deep sympathy for the bereaved"); to ~ into the world ("to become independent")

go over *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to pass") to ~ from; to (let's ~ from this side of the room to the other side of the room = let's ~ from this side of the room over to the other side of the room; to ~ to the attack) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to desert to") (to ~ to the enemy) 3. (misc.) her speech went over well/badly (with the audience) ("her speech was a success/failure")

gorge *v.* (D; refl.) to ~ on, with (to ~ oneself on sweets)

gorilla *n.* a band, troop of ~s

gospel, Gospel *n.* 1. to preach, proclaim; spread the ~ 2. to believe in the ~ (see also *the gospel truth* at **truth**)

gossip I *n.* 1. to spread ~ 2. (BE) to have a ~ (with) 3. common; idle; juicy; malicious, vicious; silly ~ 4. a bit, piece, tidbit (AE), titbit (BE) of ~ 5. ~ about (have you heard the ~ about his intention to resign?) 6. ~ that + clause (have you heard the ~ that he intends to resign?)

gossip II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about; with

go through *v.* (d; intr.) ("to proceed") to ~ with (to ~ with one's plans)

goulash *n.* Hungarian ~

go up *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against ("to oppose") (to ~ against a formidable foe) 2. (D; intr.) ("to rise") to ~ by (prices went up (by) ten percent) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to approach") (she went up to him and introduced herself) 4. (D; intr.) ("to ascend") to ~ to (to ~ to the top) 5. (BE) to ~ to (to ~ to London; to ~ to university) 6. (misc.) to ~ north

governess *n.* a ~ for, to (she served as a ~ to three small children)

government *n.* 1. to form a ~ 2. to head; operate, run a ~ 3. to recognize a (new) ~ 4. to bring down, overthrow, topple; destabilize, subvert; dissolve; seize a ~ 5. (a) clean; corrupt; stable; strong; unstable; weak ~ 6. a caretaker; civil; coalition; interim; military; provisional; puppet; shadow ~ 7. an authoritarian, autocratic; communist; conservative; democratic; dictatorial, totalitarian; liberal; parliamentary; reactionary; socialist ~ 8. (a) central; federal; local; municipal; national; provincial ~ 9. a student ~ 10. a ~ comes to power, takes office; falls; resigns 11. a member of a ~ (a back-bencher who became a member of the ~) 12. in; under a ~ (which people are in the ~?; which party is in ~?; to live under a democratic ~) 13. (misc.) (BE) ~ and opposition; the ~ benches; a ~ of national unity USAGE NOTE: In BE, the noun *government* may be used with either a singular or a plural verb. In AE, this noun is always used with a singular verb.

governor *n.* 1. to appoint; elect smb. ~ 2. a deputy, lieutenant; military; prison (BE); school (BE) ~ 3. a ~ general 4. a board of ~s

gown *n.* an academic; dressing; evening (AE), ball; formal; hospital ~; nightgown (esp. AE); wedding ~ USAGE NOTES: (1) Both *dressing gown* and *bathrobe* are CE. But BE uses *dressing gown* for any such garment not made of toweling, whereas AE can use *bathrobe* for all but the most luxurious *dressing gowns*. (2) BE prefers *evening dress* and *night dress* to *evening gown* and *nightgown*.

GP *n.* 1. a family; local; NHS; private ~ (you should register with an NHS ~ if you move to a new area) 2. ~s prescribe medication 3. ~s examine; see; treat (their) patients 4. ~s refer (their) patients to consultants/hospitals/specialists 5. (misc.) to see ("consult") a ~

grab *v.* 1. (C) ~ a few for me (from the table); or: ~ me a few (from the table) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ at (she ~bed at my arm) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ by (he ~bed me by the shoulder) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ for (she ~bed for his pistol)

grabs *n.* (colloq.) up for ~ ("readily available to anyone")

grace I *n.* ["short prayer"] 1. to say ~ ["sense"] ["decency"] 2. the ~ to + inf. (she had the good ~ to concede defeat) ["favor"] 3. divine ~ 4. to fall from ~ 5. by the ~ of God 6. in smb.'s good ~s 7. (rel.) a state of ~ ["willingness"] 8. with (a) bad; good ~ ["attractiveness or movement"] 9. effortless ~ (she moves with effortless ~) ["feature"] 10. a saving ~ (her saving ~ is her sense of humor)

grace II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ with (she ~d us with her presence)

graceful *adj.* as ~ as a swan

gracious *adj.* 1. ~ to, towards (she is ~ to all) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to make the offer)

gradation *n.* 1. (ling.) vowel ~ 2. a ~ in

grade I *n.* ["mark, rating"] (esp. AE) 1. to make out ~s; to give a ~ 2. to get, receive a ~ 3. an excellent, high; failing; fair, mediocre; low; final; passing ~ 4. (a student's) average; top ~s (she got top ~s in all her exams) ["standard"] 5. to make the ~ 6. a high; low; medium; prime ~ 7. at, on a certain ~ (people on the highest ~s need to set an example for others) ["degree of descent, rise, gradient, slope"] 8. a gentle, gradual; slight; steep ~ ["school year"] (AE) 9. to fail; skip a ~ (the worst students failed Fourth Grade but the best students skipped it and went on to Fifth Grade)

grade II *v.* 1. to ~ high; low 2. to ~ on a curve

gradient *n.* a gentle, gradual; slight; steep ~

graduate I *n.* 1. a college (esp. AE), university; high-school (AE) ~ 2. a ~ in (a ~ in medicine) 3. a ~ of (a ~ of Harvard = a Harvard ~)

graduate II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from (to ~ from Harvard) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in medicine) 3. (misc.) to ~ with honors, cum laude USAGE NOTE: CE has *to graduate from Harvard* or, formally, *to be graduated from Harvard*. AE has also *to graduate Harvard/college/high school*.

graduate work *n.* to do ~

graduation *n.* 1. a college; university; high-school (AE) ~ 2. ~ from (~ from college/Harvard)

graduation ceremonies, **graduation exercises** *n.* to attend; hold ~

graffiti *n.* 1. to daub/deface walls with ~ = to daub ~ on walls 2. to remove ~ 3. a piece of ~

graft I *n.* ["act of grafting, inserting"] 1. to do a ~ 2. a bone; skin ~ 3. a (skin) ~ takes (the first skin ~ was rejected but the second one took) ["bribes"] (AE) 4. ~ and corruption ["work"] (colloq.) (BE) 5. hard ~

graft II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ on to, onto

grain *n.* ["food plants"] 1. to grow ~ 2. to store ~ ["texture"] 3. a fine; rough; smooth ~ 4. (to go) against the ~; with the ~ ["misc."] 5. to take smt. with a ~ of salt ("to regard smt. with skepticism")

grammar *n.* 1. comparative; descriptive; functional; generative; historical; normative; prescriptive; structuralist; systemic; transformational ~ 2. a rule of ~ (to learn the ~s of English grammar) 3. (misc.) it's bad ~ to say *ain't*

grand *adj.* see **great**

grandeur *n.* delusions of ~

grant I *n.* 1. to award, give; refuse a ~ 2. to apply for a ~ 3. to get, receive; have a ~ (from) 4. a block; cash; categorical (AE); federal (AE); government; matching; research ~ 5. a ~ for (a ~ from a government body for research on folklore) 6. a ~ to + inf. (we received a ~ to attend the conference)

grant II *v.* 1. (A) the government ~ed a pension to her; or: the government ~ed her a pension 2. (L; may have an object) I ~ (you) that this is true 3. (formal) (M) I ~ this to be true 4. (misc.) (even) ~ing (that) it's true, so what?

granted *adj.* 1. to take smb. for ~ ("to assume that smb. will agree, cooperate") 2. to take smt. for ~ ("to assume that smt. is certain to happen") 3. (misc.) (even) ~ (that) it's true, so what?

grapefruit *n.* 1. pink; seedless; white ~ 2. (misc.) half a ~; a ~ section

grapes *n.* 1. to pick ~ 2. to press ~ 3. seedless; sweet ~ 4. a bunch of ~ 5. (usu. fig.) sour ~

grapevine *n.* ["circulation of rumors, gossip"] by, on, through the ~ (to hear news through the ~)

graph *n.* 1. to draw a ~ 2. a bar ~ 3. in, on a ~ (to draw a ~ showing useful information on it)

graphics *n.* computer; media ~

grapple *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (they ~d for the key) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with a problem; they ~d with each other for the key)

grasp I *n.* ["comprehension"] 1. to have a good ~ (of a subject) 2. a firm; thorough ~ 3. an intuitive ~ ["reach"] 4. to slip from smb.'s ~ 5. beyond smb.'s ~ 6. within smb.'s ~

grasp II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at, for 2. (D; tr.) to ~ by (to ~ smb. by the arm) 3. (L) they finally ~ed that it was true 4. (Q) they could never quite ~ how to do it

grass I *n.* 1. to cut, mow; water the ~ 2. high, tall; short ~ 3. a blade; clump, tuft of 4. across; through; in; on the ~ (to run across/through the ~; to find a coin in the tall ~; to spread a blanket on the short ~) 5. (misc.) keep off the ~!; to put smb. out to ~ (usu. fig.)

grass II *v.* (slang) (BE) ("to inform against smb.") 1. (d; intr.) to ~ on (the criminal ~ed on his accomplices (to the police)) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ to (the criminal ~ed (on his accomplices) to the police)

grasshopper *n.* 1. ~s jump, leap 2. ~s chirp

grass up *v.* (slang) (BE) (D; tr.) ("to grass on smb.") to ~ to (he ~ed his accomplices up to the police = he ~ed up his accomplices to the police)

grate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (the noise ~s on my ears)

grateful *adj.* 1. deeply, profoundly; everlastingly; very ~ 2. ~ for; to (I am ~ to you for your help) 3. ~ to + inf. (we were ~ to be alive) 4. ~ that + clause (I'm ~ that you can help)

gratification *n.* 1. to express ~ 2. deep, profound ~ 3. instant ~ 4. smb.'s ~ at (we expressed our profound ~ at the acceptance of our proposal) 5. ~ that + clause (we expressed our profound ~ that our proposal had been accepted)

gratified *adj.* 1. ~ at, by, over, with (~ at the outcome) 2. ~ to + inf. (we were very ~ to learn that our proposal had been accepted) 3. ~ that + clause (we were very ~ that our proposal had been accepted)

gratifying *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was profoundly/very ~ (for us) to learn that our proposal had been accepted) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ profoundly/very (for us) that our proposal had been accepted)

gratitude *n.* 1. to express; feel; show ~ 2. deep, profound, sincere, undying; eternal, everlasting ~ 3. ~ at; for (we expressed our profound ~ at/for the acceptance of our proposal) 4. ~ to (we expressed our profound ~ to him for the acceptance of our proposal) 5. ~ that + clause (we expressed (to him) our profound ~ that our proposal had been accepted) 6. in, with ~ to (we are making this contribution in ~ to all of you)

grave *n.* 1. to dig a ~ 2. to desecrate a ~ 3. a common, mass; pauper's; unmarked; watery ~ 4. at; in; on a ~ (to pray at and put a wreath on a ~ while thinking of the person (lying) in it) 5. beyond the ~ (is there anything beyond the ~?) 6. (misc.) a gravedigger; from (the) cradle to (the) ~

graveside *n.* at a ~ (to pray at a ~) (see also *graveside service* at **service**)

gravitate *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to, towards

gravity *n.* ["seriousness"] 1. to grasp the extreme/great ~ (of a situation) ["weight"] 2. to defy ~ 3. specific; zero ~ 4. the center; force of ~ (the dancer's leaps seemed to defy the force of ~!)

gravy *n.* 1. to make; pass; pour; serve ~ 2. thick; watery ~ (to pour more thick ~ on the meat)

gray (AE) see **grey**

graze *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ against (he ~d against the table)

grease *n.* 1. to cut, dissolve ~ 2. axle ~ 3. a smear; spot of ~ (see also **elbow grease**)

great *adj.* (colloq.) 1. ~ at (she's ~ at improvising) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to help; it was ~ to see everyone again = it was ~ seeing everyone again) 3. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that we could see everyone again) 4. (misc.) huge ~ (BE) (I saw a huge ~ bear in the woods!); "I think continually of those who were truly ~" – Sir Stephen Spender (1909–95)

great guns *n.* (colloq.) to go ~ ("to have great energy")

greatness *n.* to achieve ~

great one *n.* (colloq.) ["enthusiast"] a ~ for (he's a ~ for telling fibs)

greed *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display ~ 2. insatiable ~ 3. ~ for 4. consumed with ~

greedy *adj.* 1. ~ for 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to eat up all the candy)

Greek *n.* (colloq.) it was (all) ~ to me ("it was incomprehensible to me")

green I *adj.* 1. (of a traffic light) to go, turn ~ 2. (cannot stand alone) to be; go, turn ~ with (envy) 3. as ~ as grass

green II *n.* ["color"] 1. (a) bright; dark; light; pale ~ 2. to dress in, wear ~ 3. to go, turn ~ 4. a shade of ~ ["something green"] 5. a patch of ~ 6. in ~ (dressed in ~) ["green light"] 7. on ~ (turn on ~ only)

green light *n.* ["permission to continue"] 1. to give smb. the ~ 2. to get the ~ 3. the ~ to + inf. (we got the ~ to proceed with the investigation)

greet *v.* 1. to ~ warmly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (they were ~ed with cheers; the news was ~ed with alarm) 3. (misc.) to ~ with open arms ("to welcome warmly")

greeting *n.* 1. to extend a ~ 2. to respond to a ~ 3. a cordial, friendly, sincere, warm; enthusiastic ~ 4. an official ~

greetings *n.* 1. to exchange ~ 2. to extend, send ~ 3. to receive ~ 4. to return ~ 5. cordial, friendly, sincere, warm, warmest; enthusiastic ~ 6. official ~ 7. holiday, season's ~ (see also **regards**)

grenade *n.* 1. to launch; lob, throw a ~ 2. a hand; percussion; rifle ~ 3. (misc.) to pull the pin on a ~

grey *n.* 1. to go, turn ~ ('he's/his hair is' starting to go a bit ~ at the temples) 2. dark; light; pale ~

gridlock *n.* (esp. AE) 1. to cause ~ 2. (misc.) ~ paralyzed the western end of the city

gridlocked *adj.* (AE) hopelessly ~ (traffic was hopelessly ~)

grief *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. to express; feel, suffer ~ (at, for, over) 3. to come to ~ 4. to ease smb.'s ~ 5. (slang) (BE) to give smb. ~ ("to criticize or make trouble for smb.") (don't give me any more ~ about it!) 6. bitter, deep, inconsolable, overwhelming, profound ~ 7. ~ at, over 8. of ~ (to die of ~) 9. (misc.) good ~! ("exclamation expressing mild dismay")

grievance *n.* 1. to air, vent a ~ 2. to file, submit a (formal/official) ~ 3. to hear a ~ (the committee heard the ~) 4. to harbor, nurse a ~ 5. to redress; settle a ~ 6. a genuine, justified, legitimate, valid; unjustified ~ 7. a ~ against

grieve *v.* 1. to ~ deeply 2. (D; intr.) to ~ at, for, over 3. (R) it ~d me (to learn) that she had been severely injured

grill I *n.* 1. a charcoal ~ 2. (a) mixed ~

grill II *v.* ("to broil") (C) ~ a hamburger for me; or: ~ me a hamburger

grill III *v.* ("to question") 1. to ~ mercilessly, relentlessly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ about (he was ~ed about his role in the swindle)

grimace I *n.* to give, make a ~ (he gave a ~ of disgust at the thought of eating it)

grimace II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in, with (to ~ with pain) (he ~d in/with disgust at the thought of eating it)

grime *n.* a layer of ~

grin I *n.* 1. to break into, give, flash a ~ 2. a broad; contagious, infectious; foolish, silly; sardonic; sheepish ~ 3. (misc.) wipe that silly ~ off your face!

grin II *v.* 1. to ~ broadly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ at 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with pleasure) 4. to ~ from ear to ear

grind I *n.* ["boring activity"] the daily ~

grind II *v.* 1. (C) ~ a pound of coffee for me; or: ~ me a pound of coffee 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ wheat into flour) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ from, out of (to ~ flour from wheat) 4. (N: used with an adjective) I ground the coffee very fine 5. (misc.) to ~ to a halt; she ground her heel into the dirt

grind away *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) ("to work hard") (esp. AE) to ~ at (to ~ at one's studies)

grinder *n.* 1. a coffee ~ 2. (AE) a meat ~ (to pass meat through a meat ~) (BE has *mincing machine, mincer*)

grip *n.* ["grasp"]["hold"] 1. to get a ~ on; to strengthen one's ~ on 2. to lose one's ~ 3. to loosen, relax, release; tighten one's ~ (he had a firm grip that he refused to loosen) 4. a firm, iron, strong, tight, vise-like; loose, weak ~ ["control"] 5. to get a ~ on oneself 6. to lose one's ~ 7. in the ~ of (in the ~ of a general strike; do you remember when young people were in the ~ of Beatlemania?) ["device that grips"] 8. a hair ~ (BE; AE has *bobby pin*) ["stagehand"] 9. a first, key ~ (see also **grips**)

gripe I *n.* (colloq.) ["complaint"] 1. a legitimate ~ (she has a legitimate ~) 2. a ~ about (she has a ~ about not being treated fairly) 3. a ~ that + clause (her ~ is that she is not treated fairly)

gripe II *v.* (colloq.) 1. (D; intr.) ("to complain") to ~ about, at (she kept ~ping to everyone about not being treated fairly) 2. (L; to) (she kept ~ping to everyone that she was not being treated fairly)

grips *n.* to come to, get to (esp. BE) ~ with smt. ("to confront, deal with")

grist *n.* ~ for (AE), to (BE) smb.'s mill ("smt. used to good advantage")

grit *n.* ["courage, perseverance"] (colloq.) 1. to display, show ~ 2. true ~ 3. the ~ to + inf. (they had enough ~ to hold out in the face of real hardship)

groan I *n.* 1. to emit, give, heave, let out, utter a ~ 2. a loud; muffled ~

groan II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, over (to ~ over new taxes) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in, with (to ~ with frustration) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ under (the table ~ed under the weight of the food) 4. (L) he ~ed (to us) that he had been shot = "I've been shot!" he ~ed (to us) 5. (misc.) to ~ under the weight of oppression; to grunt and ~; to moan and ~

groom *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~ed as our next candidate) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. for the presidency) 3. (H) they were ~ing her to assume the presidency

grooming *n.* good; immaculate ~

groove *n.* 1. (stuck) in a ~ 2. to fit into a ~ 3. to slide along a ~ 4. a ~ in (to cut a ~ in a piece of wood)

grope *v.* 1. to ~ blindly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for one's keys) 3. (P; intr.) to ~ around (in the dark); they ~d their way along the corridor

grotesque *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of/for him to come dressed like that)

ground *n.* ["contested area"] 1. to gain ~ on 2. to hold, stand one's ~ 3. to give ~ 4. to lose, yield ~ ["soil"] ["terrain"] 5. firm, hard, solid; frozen; high; soft; swampy ~ (a patch/piece of solid ~) 6. hallowed, holy ~ 7. on the ~ ["interest"] 8. common ~ (to find common ~ with smb.) ["area used for a specific purpose"] 9. a burial; camping; dumping ~; fairground; hunting; parade; picnic ~; playground; recreation (BE) ~ (what did you do at the fairground?) (see also **breeding ground**; **dumping ground**; **proving ground**) ["area of knowledge"] 10. to cover, go over ~ (we covered the same ~ yesterday) ["misc."] 11. to break ~ ("to begin building"); to break new ~ ("to explore smt. new"); from the ~ up ("from the very beginning"); on delicate ~ ("in a situation that demands great tact"); to get off the ~ ("to get started"); on dangerous ~ ("exposed to danger"); on safe ~ ("in safety"); on shaky ~ ("without a firm basis"); smb.'s favorite stamping ~ ("smb.'s favorite spot"); (to occupy) the center, middle ~ in politics; (to occupy) the moral high ~ ["basis, foundation"] 12. on ~ (on what ~ do you base your charge?) (see also **grounds**; **middle ground**)

grounded *adj.* (usu. does not stand alone) ~ in (she is well ~ in grammar)

ground floor *n.* to be in on/get in on the ~ ("to be part of an undertaking from the beginning")

ground rules *n.* to establish, lay down the ~

ground zero *n.* at ~ (a camp was set up at ~)

grounding *n.* ["training"] 1. to get, receive a (good) ~ (in) 2. a ~ in (she got a good ~ in grammar)

grounds *n.* ["basis, foundation"] 1. to give smb. ~ 2. ample; solid ~ 3. moral ~ 4. ~ for (~ for denying bail) 5. ~ to + inf. (we had sufficient ~ to sue; there were no ~ to deny bail) 6. on ~ (on what ~ do you base your charge?) ["sediment"] 7. coffee ~ ["area used for a specific purpose"] 8. hospital ~ 9. in, on (AE) the (hospital) ~

groundwork *n.* to do, lay the ~ (basic) for

group I *n.* 1. an affinity; age; family; social ~ 2. an ethnic, minority; special-interest; splinter ~ 3. a peer; pressure ~ 4. a control; discussion; encounter; focus; self-help; therapy; working ~ 5. (music) a pop; rock ~ 6. (BE) a ginger ~ ("a group of activists") 7. (medical) a blood ~ 8. a member of a ~ = a ~ member

group II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ around (the scouts ~ed around their leader) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ by (the children were ~ed by age) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ into (the teams were ~ed into two leagues) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ under (to ~ several types under one heading)

grouse I *n.* (colloq.) ["complaint"] 1. a ~ about (she has a ~ about not being treated fairly) 2. a ~ that + clause (her ~ is that she is not treated fairly)

grouse II *v.* (colloq.) 1. (D; intr.) ("to complain") to ~ about, at (she kept ~sing to everyone about not being treated fairly) 2. (L; to) (she kept ~sing to everyone that she was not being treated fairly)

grove *n.* a lemon; olive; orange ~ (compare **orchard**)

grovel *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ to (she will not ~ to anyone) 2. (misc.) to ~ at smb.'s feet; to ~ in the dirt

grow *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ by (the city grew (by) ten percent) 2. (d; intr.) ("to develop") to ~ from (oaks ~ from acorns) 3. (d; intr.) ("to develop") to ~ into (acorns ~ into oaks) 4. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to become likable") (the strange new sculpture just ~s on you) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ out of ("to become too large for, outgrow") (the children grew out of their clothes) 6. (d; intr.) ("to develop") to ~ out of (the city grew out of a small village) 7. (d; intr.) ("to develop") to ~ to (to ~ to adulthood; to ~ to one's full height) 8. (E) ("to begin") we grew to love them 9. (s) ("to become") to ~ longer; old; older; taller (in the autumn/fall the days ~ longer) USAGE NOTE: The verb *grow* "to become" often suggests a gradual process rather than a sudden change. Compare *it grew cold* (gradually) and *it turned cold* (suddenly).

growl *v.* 1. (B) he ~ed a few words to us 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ at (the dog ~ed at the jogger; he ~ed a few words at us) 3. (L; to) he ~ed (at/to us) that he would be late = "I'm going to be late!" he ~ed (at/to) us 4. (misc.) he ~ed at/for/to us to wait for him

growth *n.* 1. to foster, promote, stimulate ~ 2. to arrest, inhibit, retard, stifle, stunt ~ 3. rapid; untrammeled; zero ~ 4. economic; population ~ (zero population ~) 5. (med.) a benign, non-cancerous, non-malignant; cancerous, malignant; inoperable ~ (to remove a malignant ~) 6. (biology) cell ~ 7. ~ in 8. (misc.) a scraggly ~ (of beard)

grow up *v.* (E) she grew up to be an able politician

grub I *n.* (colloq.) pub ~ (BE) ("pub food")

grub II *v.* (d; intr.) ("to rummage") to ~ for (to ~ in the garbage for food)

grudge I *n.* 1. to bear, harbor, have, hold, nurse a ~ 2. a bitter; deep-seated ~ 3. a ~ against

grudge II *v.* (O) he ~s us our success

grumble I *n.* 1. to have a ~ 2. a ~ about, at, over; to (to have a ~ to us about the new taxes)

grumble II *v.* 1. to ~ constantly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about, at, over; to (to ~ at the new taxes) 3. (L; to) they ~ed (to us) that the new taxes were too high

grumbler *n.* a chronic, constant ~

grumbling *n.* chronic, constant ~

grumpy *adj.* (colloq.) ~ about

grunt I *n.* 1. to give, let out, utter a ~ (of) 2. with a ~ (he lifted the box with a loud ~ of effort)

grunt II *v.* 1. (B) she ~ed a few words to them 2. (L; to) he ~ed (to her) that he would get up later 3. (misc.) to ~ and groan

guarantee I *n.* ["assurance of quality"] ["warranty"] 1. to give, offer, provide a ~ 2. a cast-iron; lifetime, money-back; written ~ 3. a ~ expires, runs out; lasts 4. a ~ against; on (a ~ against mechanical defects; a two-year ~ on a new car) 5. under ~ (the new car is still under ~) ["assurance, pledge"] 6. to give a ~ 7. a cast-iron, firm ~ (we gave a firm ~ of our willingness to abide by the rules) 8. a ~ that + clause (we have a firm ~ that the work will be finished on time)

guarantee II *v.* 1. to ~ fully 2. (A; usu. without *to*) we cannot ~ you regular hours 3. (D; tr.) to ~ against (to ~ a new car against mechanical defects) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ a new car for one year) 5. (H) it's ~d to last five years 6. (L) we can ~ (to you) that the work will be finished on time 7. (formal) (M) the owner ~d the coins to be genuine 8. (misc.) satisfaction ~d or your money back!

guard I *n.* ["group of sentries"] ["sentry"] 1. to call out the ~ 2. to mount, post the ~ 3. to change, relieve the ~ 4. an advance; armed; color; honor ~ = ~ of honor; palace; police; rear; security ~ (they slipped past the palace ~) 5. under ~ ["guard duty"] 6. to stand ~ over 7. on ~ (to go on ~) ["militia"] 8. a home ~ ["police officer"] ["auxiliary police officer"] 9. a crossing ~ (AE); a school-crossing ~ (BE) 10. a prison ~ (AE; BE has *warder, wardress*) (see also **National Guard** and the Usage Note for **warden**) ["alertness"] ["readiness to fight"] 11. off ~; on ~ (to be caught off ~) 12. to put smb. on their ~ 13. to keep one's ~ up 14. to let one's ~ down ["protective article of clothing"] 15. a knee; nose; shin ~

guard II *v.* 1. to ~ closely (the player was ~ed closely by her opponent) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ against (to ~ against catching cold) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ against (to ~ an embassy against intruders) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ smb. from harm)

guardian *n.* 1. to appoint smb. ~ 2. (often fig.) a self-appointed ~ 3. a legal ~

guerrilla *n.* 1. an armed; urban ~ 2. (misc.) a ~ band = a band of ~s

guess I *n.* 1. to have (esp. BE), hazard, make, take (AE), venture a ~ 2. an educated, informed, shrewd; inspired; lucky; random, wild; rough ~ 3. a ~ that + clause (it is only a ~ that she will be appointed) 4. at a ~ (at a ~, I'd say she'll be appointed)

guess II *v.* 1. to ~ shrewdly; wildly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at smb.'s age from their appearance) 3. (L) "I could never have ~ed that she would be late" "but knowing her, you might have ~ed she'd be late!" 4. (Q) ~ where the money is 5. (misc.) to keep smb. ~ing; (AE) I ~ she's late; I ~ not; I ~ so

guesswork *n.* (I got the answer) by pure ~

guest *n.* 1. to greet, welcome; introduce a ~ 2. to have ~s (for dinner) 3. a dinner; wedding; weekend ~ 4. an invited; welcome ~ 5. an unexpected; uninvited; unwelcome ~ 6. a paying; regular ~ (at a hotel) 7. (misc.) "can I have some more cake?" "be my ~!" (see also *guest of honor* at **honor**)

guff *n.* (colloq.) ["back talk"] to take ~ (I will not take any of your ~!)

guffaw *n.* 1. to emit, give, let out a ~ 2. a loud ~

guidance *n.* 1. to offer ~ to; to provide ~ for 2. to seek ~ (about) 3. friendly; parental; spiritual; vocational ~ 4. under smb.'s ~

guide I *n.* ["guidebook"] 1. a handy; pocket ~ 2. a ~ to (this handbook is a good ~ to London) ["person who guides"] 3. a tour ~

guide II *v.* (P; tr.) to ~ smb. around a city; she ~ed us out of the congested area

guidelines *n.* 1. to draw up, establish ~ for 2. to adhere to, follow ~ 3. to ignore; violate ~ 4. clear; flexible; rigid ~ 5. a set of ~ (a set of clear ~s from the EU about standards of hygiene)

guilt *n.* 1. to establish, prove smb.'s ~ 2. to bear (the) ~ for 3. to admit; expiate one's ~ 4. collective ~ 5. a pang, twinge of ~ (I felt a twinge of ~ about/for what I'd done) 6. (misc.) ~ by association; the burden of ~

guiltless *adj.* ~ of

guilt trip *n.* (slang) to lay a ~ on smb.

guilty *adj.* 1. to find; pronounce ~ of (the jury found him ~ of murder) 2. to feel ~ about smt. 3. ~ of 4. (misc.) to plead ~; to plead not ~; ~ as charged

guinea pig *n.* to serve as a ~; to be used as a ~

guise *n.* in, under the ~ of (under the ~ of friendship)

guitar *n.* 1. to play a/the ~; to play ~ (esp. AE) 2. to pluck, strum a ~ 3. an acoustic; electric, steel; Hawaiian ~

gulf *n.* 1. a wide, yawning ~ 2. a ~ between (a wide ~ between generations)

gull *v.* (old-fashioned) ("to trick") 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into 2. (D; tr.) to ~ out of

gulp *n.* 1. to take a ~ 2. at, in a ~ (she swallowed the whole spoonful at one ~) 3. (misc.) she gave a ~ of surprise when she heard the news = she heard the news with a ~ of surprise

gum *n.* 1. to chew ~ 2. bubble ~ (see also **chewing gum**) 3. a stick, wad of ~

gumption *n.* (colloq.) ["courage"] 1. to show ~ 2. the ~ to + inf. (will she have enough ~ to refuse?)

gun I *n.* 1. to aim; fire; point a ~ at 2. to turn a ~ on smb. 3. to draw a ~ (on) 4. to hold a ~ on smb. 5. to hold a ~ to smb.'s head 6. to load; unload a ~ 7. (artillery) to lay ("adjust") a ~ 8. to carry, pack (AE, colloq.) a ~ 9. to silence an enemy ~ 10. to spike ("make unusable") a ~ 11. an antiaircraft; antitank; BB; burp (colloq.), submachine, Tommy (colloq.); field; heavy; ray; riot ~; shotgun; starter's; stun; toy; zip (AE) ~ (see also **machine gun**) 12. a grease; spray ~ 13. a ~ fires, goes off; jams; misfires 14. (misc.) to jump the ~ ("to start too early"); to stick to one's ~s ("to defend one's position staunchly"); a smoking ~ ("dramatic proof") (see also **great guns**; *at gunpoint* at **point I** *n.*)

gun II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to search for with a gun") (also fig.) (the media are ~ning for the Prime Minister)

gunfire *n.* 1. concentrated, fierce, heavy, murderous ~ 2. a burst of ~ 3. under ~ (we came under heavy enemy ~ as we tried to advance)

gung ho *adj.* (slang) ["enthusiastic"] ~ about

gunpoint *n.* to hold smb. at ~

gunpowder *n.* 1. smokeless ~ 2. a grain of ~

gurgle *v.* (B) the baby ~d a few sounds to us

gush *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ from (a column of oil ~ed from the ground) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ over (they were ~ing over their new grandchild)

gusher *n.* ["oil well from which oil gushes"] to hit a ~

gush forth *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (a column of oil ~ed forth from the ground)

gust *n.* 1. fitful; strong ~s (the wind was blowing in fitful ~s) 2. a ~ of wind

gusto *n.* with ~ (with great ~)

gutless *adj.* (colloq.) ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to lie)

guts *n.* (colloq.) 1. the ~ to + inf. (he doesn't have the ~ to do it) 2. (misc.) to hate smb.'s ~ ("to hate smb. very much")

gutter *n.* (fig.) 1. to get down into the ~ 2. to drag smb. down into the ~

guy *n.* (colloq.) 1. a great, nice, regular (AE); an ordinary ~ 2. a bad; good ~ USAGE NOTE: In AE *you guys* (colloq.) can now be used in speaking not only to a group of men, but also to a group of men and women, and even to a group of women only (it's time for *you guys* to get ready); *guys* (colloq.) can be used vocatively to the same groups (it's time to get ready, *guys*!).

gymnastics *n.* 1. to do ~ 2. at; for; in ~ (she's very good at ~ and has won several prizes for/in it)

gyp *v.* (slang) (D; tr.) to ~ out of (he ~ped me out of my share)

gyrate *v.* 1. ~ wildly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (the young people were ~ting wildly to the music)

H

habeas corpus *n.* (to obtain; seek) a writ of ~

habit *n.* ["custom"] ["usual manner"] 1. to acquire, develop, form, pick up; have a ~ 2. to make a ~ of smt. (she makes a ~ of getting up early) 3. to fall into, get into a ~ (she got into the ~ of getting up late) 4. to break, shake a ~; to get out of a ~; (slang) to kick the ~ (she broke the ~ of a lifetime when she started getting up early) 5. to break smb. of a ~ 6. an annoying; bad; deplorable; strange ~ 7. an entrenched, fixed, ingrained; incurable ~ 8. a filthy; nasty; repulsive ~ 9. a good ~ 10. irregular; regular ~s 11. a ~ of (he has a bad ~ of interrupting people) 12. by force of ~ 13. in the ~ of (she is in the ~ of getting up early) 14. out of ~ (I did it out of ~) (see also *a creature of habit* at **creature** 2; **habits**) ["costume"] 15. a monk's; nun's; riding ~

habitat *n.* 1. to provide a ~ for 2. a natural ~ (these marshes provide a ~ for many creatures whose natural ~ is threatened elsewhere)

habits *n.* ["customs"] drinking; eating; sleeping; work ~

habituated *adj.* ~ to (they became ~ to drugs early in life)

hack I *n.* ["hireling"] a party ~

hack II *v.* 1. ("to chop") (d; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at the dense undergrowth) 2. (computers) (d; intr.) ("to penetrate") to ~ into (to ~ into secret files) 3. (misc.) they ~ed their way through the forest; to ~ (a body) to pieces

hack away *v.* (D; intr.) ("to chop away, reduce") to ~ at (to ~ at the dense undergrowth; to ~ at the work force)

hacking *n.* computer ~

hackles *n.* ["anger"] to raise smb.'s ~

haemorrhage (BE) see **hemorrhage**

haggle *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, over; with

hail I *n.* 1. to have ~ (we had ~ yesterday) 2. ~ falls; melts 3. in the ~ (to get caught in the ~) 4. through the ~ (to run through the ~)

hail II *v.* 1. (C) ("to summon") ~ a taxi for me; or: ~ me a taxi 2. (esp. AE) (d; intr.) to ~ from ("to be from") (where do you ~ from?) 3. (D; tr.) ("to proclaim") to ~ as (she was ~ed as a heroine) 4. (rare) (N; used with a noun) ("to name") to ~ smb. emperor

hailstones *n.* ~ fall

hair *n.* 1. to brush; comb; curl ~ 2. to backcomb (BE), tease (AE); braid, plait; do; set; style ~ 3. to cut; trim ~ 4. to blowdry, dry; shampoo, wash ~ 5. to color, dye, tint ~ 6. to part one's ~ (he parts his ~ in the middle, and I part mine on the side) 7. to stroke smb.'s ~ 8. to lose, shed one's ~ (people lose their ~; animals shed their ~) 9. braided, plaited; curly; dry; kinky; normal; oily; straight; wavy ~ 10. bobbed, short; long; thick; thinning ~ 11. unmanageable, unruly ~ 12. dark; light ~ 13. black; blond; brown; dark; grey; light; red; silver (literary), white ~ 14. body; facial; pubic ~ 15. ~ falls out; grows 16. a single ~ 17. a curl, lock; strand; wisp of ~ 18. a head; shock of ~ (he has a thick head of ~) 19. (misc.) how does she wear her ~? to tear one's ~ out ("to become extremely agitated"); to split ~s ("to nitpick"); to get in smb.'s ~ ("to annoy smb."); to let one's ~ down ("to lose one's inhibitions"); by a ~ ("by a small margin")

haircut *n.* 1. to get; have a ~ 2. to give smb. a ~ 3. a short ~

hairline *n.* a receding ~

hair's breadth *n.* 1. (to miss) by a ~ 2. (to come) within a ~ (of)

half *determiner, pronoun* 1. (in telling time) ~ past the hour (it's ~ past four) 2. ~ of (~ of them) 3. (misc.) it's not ~ bad ("it's fairly good"); to go halves (on smt.) ("to divide smt. evenly, esp. a bill"); you have a lot and I have only ~ as much; you have very little and I have ~ again as much/ ~ as much again (AE)! USAGE NOTE: The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows. When a noun follows, the *of* may be omitted – half (of) the students; half (of) the audience. However, compare – she spent half (of) the money; she spent her half of the money. Note the constructions – a half hour, half an hour.

half-mast *n.* at ~ (the flags were flying at ~)

half price *n.* at ~ (to admit children at ~)

halftime *n.* at ~ (the band performed at ~)

halfway *adj., adv.* 1. ~ between; through 2. (misc.) to meet smb. ~ ("to compromise with smb.")

hall *n.* 1. a city, town, village; concert; dance; entrance; lecture; mess; music; pool; study ~ 2. (esp. BE) a ~ of residence 3. (BE) in ~ (at a university) (to dine; live in ~)

hallmarks *n.* ["characteristics"] to have all the ~ of

hallucination *n.* 1. to have ~s 2. a drug-induced ~

halo *n.* a ~ (a)round (the sun, moon)

halt *n.* 1. to call a ~ (to smt.) 2. to bring smt. to a ~ 3. to come; grind, screech to a ~ 4. an abrupt; complete; grinding, screeching ~

halter *n.* to put a ~ on an animal

ham *n.* 1. baked; cured; honey-roast (BE), sugar-cured (AE); smoked ~ 2. a piece; slice of ~ 3. (misc.) ~ on the bone

hamburger *n.* to grill a ~

hammer I *n.* 1. to swing a ~ 2. (sports) to throw the ~ 3. a drop ~ 4. to come under the (auctioneer's) ~ ("to be sold at auction") 5. with a ~ (to hit a nail with a ~)

hammer II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at (the enemy ~ed at our positions) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ a nail into a wall; to ~ an idea into smb.'s head) 3. (N) to ~ smt. shut

hammer and tongs *adv.* to go at smb.; smt.; it ~ ("to go at with great energy")

hammer away *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at a compromise; the enemy ~ed away at our positions)

hamper *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in

hand I *n.* ["part of the arm below the wrist"] 1. to shake smb.'s ~; to shake ~s (with smb.) 2. to clasp, grab, grasp; press; pump; seize, take smb.'s ~ 3. to hold; join ~s 4. to lay one's ~s on 5. to cup; fold one's ~s 6. to clap one's ~s 7. to wring one's ~s 8. to lower; raise one's ~ 9. bare; delicate; dishpan (esp. AE); gentle ~s (he grasped the hot metal with his bare ~s); a free ~ (he waved to me with his free ~; if you wear a rucksack you can keep your ~s free) 10. a pair of ~s 11. by ~ (to do smt. by ~); in smb.'s ~ (to hold smt. in one's ~); on smb.'s ~ (he has a tattoo on his left ~) 12. by the ~ (to lead smb. by the ~; to grab, grasp, seize, take smb. by the ~) 13. ~s off; ~s up ["help"] ["active participation"] 14. to give, lend smb. a ~ 15. to lift a ~ (he would not lift a ~ to help) 16. to have a ~ in 17. a guiding ~ (see also **helping hand**) 18. a ~ at, in, with (give me a ~ with the dishes) ["worker"] 19. a factory, mill (BE); hired; ranch ~ ["smb. experienced"] 20. an old ~ (at smt.) ["pointer on a clock"] 21. an hour; minute; second, sweep-second ~ ["ability"] 22. to try one's ~ at smt. ["control"] 23. to get out of ~ 24. to take smb. in ~ 25. a firm; iron ~ (see also **upper hand**) ["pledge of betrothal"] (formal) 26. to ask for smb.'s ~ ["cards held by a player"] (also fig.) 27. to show, tip one's ~ 28. to have, hold a ~ 29. a good, strong; losing; weak; winning ~ (she held a strong ~) ["possession"] ["ownership"] 30. to fall into smb.'s ~s 31. to change ~s 32. enemy; private; safe ~s (the documents fell into enemy ~s; the files were in safe ~s) ["source"] 33. at first ~ ("directly") 34. at second ~ ("indirectly") ["viewpoint"] 35. on one (AE), on the one ~ ("from one viewpoint"); on the other ~ ("from the other viewpoint") ["closeness"] 36. at, on ~ (near at ~) ["applause"] 37. to give smb. a ~ 38. to get, receive a ~ 39. a big ~ (they got a big ~ after their performance) ["misc."] 40. do you have a free ~? ("are you free to help?") ("can you function without restrictions?"); she is good with her ~s ("she has great manual dexterity"); a show of ~s ("a vote taken by raising hands"); to lay a ~ on smb. ("to harm smb.") (I never laid a ~ on her, officer!); from ~ to mouth ("barely existing"); to have one's ~s full ("to be very busy"); to eat out of smb.'s ~ ("to be subservient to smb."); to force smb.'s ~ ("to compel smb. to act"); to throw up one's ~s ("to give up"); to wash one's ~s of smt. ("to shed all responsibility for smt."); with a heavy ~ ("crudely"); to suffer at smb.'s ~s; with clean ~s ("innocent"); to go ~ in ~ ("to go together"); to dismiss/reject out of ~ ("to dismiss/reject unreservedly"); to win ~s down ("to win easily"); all ~s on deck! ("all sailors on deck"); to have time on one's ~s ("to have free time"); to have worthless property on one's ~s ("to be burdened by worthless property"); ~ in glove with ("conspiring with"); a dab ~ at doing smt. (BE) (colloq.); a safe pair of ~s ("smb. reliable") (see also **free hand**; **old hand**; **second hand**; **whip hand**)

hand II *v.* 1. (A) ~ the salt to me; or: ~ me the salt 2. (misc.) you have to ~ it to her! ("you must give her credit!")

hand back *v.* (usu. B; occ. A) she ~ed the documents back to me = she ~ed back the documents to me = she ~ed me back the documents

handball *n.* 1. to play ~ 2. team ~

handbook *n.* a ~ for (a ~ for beginners)

handcuff *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (the prisoner was ~ed to the bars; the prisoner was ~ed to another prisoner = the prisoners were ~ed to each other) 2. (misc.) the prisoners were ~ed together

handcuffs *n.* 1. to put (the) ~ on smb. 2. to remove ~ 3. a pair of ~ 4. in ~ (the prisoner was led away in ~)

hand down *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ a tradition to the next generation = to ~ a tradition down to the next generation; to ~ old clothes from one child to the next = to ~ old clothes down from one child to the next) 2. (misc.) she ~ed it down to me from the shelf

handicap *n.* ["assigned advantage or disadvantage, as in golf"] 1. to assign, give; have a ~ ["hindrance"] 2. to overcome a ~ 3. a mental, physical ~ 4. a ~ to (lack of experience can prove a serious ~ to the beginner) 5. under a ~

hand in *v.* (B) to ~ homework to the teacher = to ~ homework in to the teacher

handle I *n.* ["part grasped by the hand"] 1. to turn a ~ 2. (BE) a starting ~ 3. (to pick up smt.) by the ~ ["misc."] (colloq.) 4. to fly off the ~ ("to lose one's temper"); to get a ~ on smt. ("to comprehend smt.")

handle II *v.* to ~ carefully; to ~ with care

handler *n.* a baggage; food ~

handling *n.* 1. delicate; gentle; sensitive; tactful ~ (the matter requires delicate ~) 2. careless, inept; rough ~ 3. special ~ (by the post office)

hand on *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a tradition to the next generation = to ~ a tradition on to the next generation)

hand organ *n.* to grind, play a ~

handout *n.* (colloq.) ["alms"] ["leaflet"] 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to ask for a ~

hand out *v.* (B) to ~ food to the needy = to ~ food out to the needy

hand over *v.* (B) to ~ a criminal to the police = to ~ a criminal over to the police

handpicked *adj.* 1. ~ for (she was ~ for the job) 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to do the job)

handrail *n.* 1. to grasp a ~ 2. to hold on to a ~

handshake *n.* 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. a cordial, hearty; warm; firm; limp ~ 3. (misc.) a golden ~ ("a gift presented to smb. who is retiring or leaving a firm")

handspring *n.* to do, execute, perform, turn a ~

handstand *n.* to do, execute, perform a ~

handwriting *n.* 1. to decipher smb.’s ~ 2. clear, legible; illegible ~ 3. in smb.’s ~ (the letter was in her own clear ~) 4. (misc.) (AE) to see the ~ on the wall (for CE, see **writing** *n.* 5) (“to foresee impending doom”) (we saw the ~ on the wall for the international monetary system = the ~ was on the wall for the international monetary system)

handy *adj.* 1. to have, keep smt. ~ 2. ~ at; with (she’s ~ at using tools = she’s ~ with tools) 3. ~ for (this tool is ~ for (doing) various jobs; this house is ~ for the local pharmacy) 4. ~ to + inf. (it’s ~ to have a pharmacy so close = it’s ~ having a pharmacy so close) 5. (misc.) to come in ~ (this tool may come in ~ for (doing) various jobs)

hang I *n.* (colloq.) ["knack"] to get the ~ of smt.

hang II *v.* 1. (“to be suspended”) to ~ limp; loose, loosely 2. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ around (“to frequent”) (to ~ around a bar) 3. (D; intr.) (“to be suspended”) to ~ by (to ~ by a thread; to ~ by a rope (from a spike)) (see also 16) 4. (D; tr.) (“to execute by hanging”) to ~ for (he was ~ed for murder) 5. (d; intr.; tr.) (“to be suspended; to suspend”) to ~ from (flags hung from the windows; to ~ a flag from a window; to ~ (by a rope) from a spike) 6. (d; intr.) (“to cling”) to ~ on (to ~ on smb.’s arm) 7. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (“to listen closely to”) (to ~ on smb.’s every word) 8. (d; intr.) to ~ on (“to depend on”) (the outcome ~s on the results of the election) 9. (d; intr.) to ~ on (“to be oppressive”) (time ~s (heavy) on their hands) 10. (d; intr., tr.) (“to be suspended”); (“to suspend”) to ~ on (she hung the picture on the wall) 11. (d; intr.) (“to cling”) to ~ onto (he hung onto my arm) 12. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ onto (“to keep, retain”) (we intend to ~ onto this property; they hung onto their privileges) 13. (d; intr.) (“to lean”) to ~ out of (to ~ out of a window) 14. (d; intr.) (“to be suspended”) to ~ over (the coat was ~ing over the chair; the threat of war hung over the country) 15. (d; tr.) (“to drape, suspend”) to ~ over (she hung the wet towel over the tub) 16. (misc.) her paintings were ~ing in the museum; to ~ by a thread (“to be in a critical situation”); to ~ in the balance (“to be undecided”) (see also *hang loose* at **loose I** *adj.*; *hang tough* at **tough**) USAGE NOTE: The past and past participle of *hang* are *hung* or *hanged*. The form *hanged* is more usual in the sense “killed by hanging”. In other senses the form *hung* is usual.

hang around *v.* (colloq.) (“to spend time”) 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (they ~ at the senior citizens’ club) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with (he likes to ~ with the boys down at the bar)

hang back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from giving information)

hang down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ from a branch)

hanger *n.* a coat ~

hang on *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ to (“to grasp”) (to ~ to the rail; he hung on to my arm) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (“to keep”) (we intend to ~ on to this property; they hung on to their privileges) 3. (misc.) to ~ for dear life; (BE) to ~ like grim death

hangout *n.* (colloq.) ["gathering place to hang out in"] a ~ for (a ~ for me and my friends)

hang out *v.* (slang) (D; intr.) (“to spend time”) to ~ with (to ~ with one’s friends)

hangover *n.* 1. to have a ~ 2. to sleep off a ~

hang-up *n.* (colloq.) ["worry"] to have a ~ about

hang up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (she hung up on me) (“she broke off her telephone conversation with me”)

hanker *v.* (colloq.) 1. (d; intr.) to ~ after, for (“to want”) (to ~ for a good steak) 2. (E) (“to want”) she ~ed to have a good steak

hankering *n.* (colloq.) 1. a ~ after, for (a ~ for a good steak) 2. a ~ to + inf. (a ~ to have a good steak)

happen *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (“to find by chance”) (to ~ upon a rare item) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (what ~ed to you?) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (what’s ~ing with your new project?) 4. (E) I ~ed to be there when they arrived 5. (L) it (so) ~ed that I was there when they arrived

happiness *n.* 1. to bring ~ (to) 2. to find; seek ~ 3. to wish smb. ~ 4. personal ~ 5. a feeling, glow of ~

happy *adj.* 1. blissfully, deliriously, perfectly; very ~; as ~ as a lark; not entirely ~ 2. ~ about; at; in; with (she was ~ about/at the good news; he was ~ in his interesting work; they were ~ with the good results) 3. ~ for (we are ~ for them both) 4. ~ to + inf. (we felt ~ to be together; I’m ~ to have been invited to the meeting; she’ll be ~ to work here) 5. ~ that + clause (we felt ~ that we were together; I’m very ~ that I’ve been invited to the meeting) 6. (misc.) she’ll be ~ working here

harakiri *n.* to commit, perform ~

harangue I *n.* to deliver, launch into a ~

harangue II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ about (she always ~s the children about their untidy rooms)

harassment *n.* 1. to engage in ~ 2. to subject to ~ 3. police; sexual ~

harbor, harbour *n.* 1. to clear; dredge a ~ 2. to blockade; mine a ~ 3. an artificial; natural ~ 4. a safe ~ (also fig.)

hard I *adj.* ["demanding"] 1. (cannot stand alone) ~ on (she’s very ~ on herself) ["difficult"] 2. ~ to + inf. (this book is ~ to translate = it is ~ to translate this book = it is a ~ book to translate; she is ~ to understand = it is ~ to understand her; it is ~ to get them to participate = it is ~ getting them to participate) 3. ~ for (this job will be ~ for me; it is ~ for us to concentrate) ["misc."] 4. to play ~ to get (“to pretend to be uninterested in an invitation or proposal”); ~ of hearing; as ~ as a rock; as ~ as nails (see also *the hard way* at **way**)

hard II *adv.* 1. ~ at (~ at work) 2. (misc.) they’ve been ~ at it all day long!

hardback *n.* in ~ (the book came out in ~)

hardened *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to (~ to suffering)

hard-pressed *adj.* 1. ~ for (~ for time; ~ for money) 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to find the money to pay her rent)

hard put *adj.* ["facing difficulties"] 1. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to pay her rent) 2. (misc.) she was ~ (to it) to pay her rent

hardship *n.* 1. to bear, endure, face, suffer, undergo ~ 2. to overcome (a) ~ 3. severe, unrelieved ~ (to live in unrelieved ~) 4. a ~ to + inf. (it was a real ~ for her to pay her rent)

hard time *n.* (colloq.) 1. to give smb. a ~ ("to make things difficult for smb.") 2. (misc.) she had a hard ~ paying her rent; to fall on ~s; "A hard ~ we had of it." – T.S. Eliot (1888–1965), "Journey of the Magi"

hard up *adj.* (colloq.) ("in need of") ~ for (she's ~ for money to pay her rent)

hardware *n.* 1. computer ~ 2. military ~

hark back *v.* (d; intr.) ("to revert") to ~ to (to ~ to the old days)

harm *n.* 1. to cause, do ~ 2. to undo ~ 3. to come to ~ 4. considerable, grave, great, immeasurable, irreparable, severe ~ 5. actual (BE) bodily; bodily; grievous bodily ~ 6. ~ in; to (there is no ~ (in) doing that; was any ~ done to the children?) 7. ~ to + inf. (it will not do you any ~ to try again) 8. (misc.) to come to ~ (I don't want them to come to (any) ~ = I don't want any harm to come to them); to mean no ~ (I'm sorry: I meant (you) no harm!); out of ~'s way; (esp. AE) in/into ~'s way

harmful *adj.* 1. ~ to (smoking is ~ to one's health) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ (to your health) to smoke)

harmless *adj.* 1. ~ to 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to daydream)

harmonica *n.* to play a/the ~

harmonize *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

harmony *n.* ["concord, agreement"] 1. to achieve; maintain ~ 2. close; perfect ~ 3. ethnic; marital; racial; religious ~ 4. in ~ (with) ["congruity"] (ling.) 5. vowel ~

harness I *n.* in ~ ("at work")

harness II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ horses to a coach)

harp I *n.* to play the ~

harp II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (about) (to keep ~ing on the same old theme)

harpoon *n.* to hurl, throw; shoot a ~

harsh *adj.* ~ to, with (he's too ~ with the children)

harvest *n.* 1. to bring in, reap a ~ 2. an abundant, bountiful, bumper, rich; poor ~ 3. (fig.) a bitter ~ (a bitter ~ of resentment)

hash I *n.* ["failure, mess"] to make a ~ of smt.

hash II *v.* (colloq.) (AE) (d; intr.) to ~ over ("to discuss") (we ~ed over the problem and then we ~ed over it again = we ~ed over the problem and then we ~ed it over again)

hassle I *n.* ["struggle"] a ~ to + inf. (it was a real ~ to get a visa! = it was a real ~ getting a visa!)

hassle II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ about, over; with

haste *n.* 1. to make ~ ("to hurry") 2. with great, excessive, indecent, unseemly ~ 3. in ~ (they acted in great ~) 4. (misc.) in their ~ to leave, they forgot their keys

hasten *v.* (E) he ~ed to apologize

hat *n.* 1. to don, put on a ~; to place, put a ~ on one's head 2. to doff, take off; tip a ~ 3. to have a ~ on, to wear a ~ 4. a bowler, derby (AE); cowboy, stetson, ten-gallon; top ~ 5. a broad-brimmed; fur; panama; straw ~ 6. a cardinal's ~ 7. (misc.) to pass the ~ ("to collect money"); to hang up one's ~ ("to retire"); to take one's ~ off to smb. ("to congratulate smb.; to feel respect for smb."); to talk through one's ~ ("to say foolish things"); to throw one's ~ in/into (esp. AE) the ring ("to enter a political campaign"); to keep smt. under one's ~ ("to keep smt. confidential"); at the drop of a ~ ("without hesitation") (see also *hat trick* at **trick I** *n.*)

hatch *n.* 1. to batten down the ~es 2. an escape ~ 3. (misc.) down the ~! (colloq.) (used when about to raise a drink to one's mouth)

hatchet *n.* to bury the ~ ("to make peace")

hate I see **hatred**

hate II *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly, deeply, intensely, passionately, profoundly, utterly, very much 2. (E) he ~s to work 3. (G) he ~s working 4. (J) he ~s them watching when he works 5. (K) he ~s their watching when he works 6. (misc.) (colloq.) I'd really ~ you/for you (AE) to think that my mistake was intentional = what I'd really ~ is for you to think that my mistake was intentional; he ~s it when/if they watch when he works

hateful *adj.* 1. ~ to 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to say that)

hatred *n.* 1. to arouse, incite, stir up ~ 2. to instill ~ 3. to incur ~ 4. to develop; express; feel; show ~ 5. abiding, bitter, blind, deep, deep-rooted, great, implacable, intense, profound, violent, virulent ~ 6. ~ for, of, towards 7. out of ~ 8. consumed with, filled with ~

haul I *n.* ["distance"] a long; short ~ (also fig.) (see also **longhaul**; **shorthaul**)

haul II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ coal from the mines to the city)

haul off *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (they were all ~ed off to jail) 2. (misc.) (colloq.) she ~ed off and hit him

haul up *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ before (to ~ smb. up before a magistrate)

haunt *n.* a favorite; old; quiet ~ (to revisit one's old ~s)

have *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to keep") to ~ about (BE), around (it's dangerous to ~ a gun around the house) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ against ("to consider as grounds for rejection, dislike") (I ~ nothing against him) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ for ("to consume") (what are we ~ing for dinner?) 4. (colloq.) (d; tr.) to ~ on ("to possess evidence against") (you ~ nothing on me) 5. (E) ("to be obligated") we ~ to leave 6. (H) I ~ a great deal/nothing/something to say to her; I ~ nothing to wear; we ~ smt. to tell you; I ~ a job to do 7. (esp. AE) (I) ("to cause") he had a gardener cut the grass (CE also has: he got a gardener to cut the grass); she had her research assistant look up the information; (CE) what would you have me do? 8. (J) we soon had them all laughing 9. (N; used with an adjective; past participle) ("to consume"); ("to cause") he had the grass cut by a gardener; she had the information looked up by her research assistant; we had a meal sent up to our room; they had the building torn down; she had her tonsils removed; I'll have my martini dry; I ~ my coffee black 10. (misc.) he had two children by his first wife; to ~ one's tonsils out; to ~ it in for smb. ("to have a grudge against smb."); she had a strange thing happen to her ("a strange thing happened to her"); he had it coming (to him) ("he deserved it"); I had it out with them ("we had a very frank discussion"); she had her handbag stolen ("her handbag was stolen"); she had a hat on (her head); "do you ~ anything on (for) tonight?" "no, I'm free" USAGE NOTE: *Have got* can be used except in 3, 7, and 9 above. As for 10, the following are possible: *he'd got two children by his first wife; to have got it in for smb.; he'd got it coming to him; she'd got a hat on her head; have you got anything on for tonight?* Bear in mind that whereas *have got* is CE, *had got* is esp. BE.

haven *n.* 1. a safe; tax ~ 2. a ~ for (the woods are a ~ of peace for wildlife)

havoc *n.* 1. to play, raise, wreak ~ with 2. to cause, create ~ for

hay *n.* 1. to make ~ 2. to bundle, gather, stack ~ 3. a haystack 4. a bale of ~; a wisp of ~ 5. (misc.) (AE; colloq.) to hit the ~ ("to go to sleep")

haymaker *n.* (colloq.) ["punch"] to throw a ~

hayride *n.* to go on a ~

haywire *adj.* (colloq.) to go ~ ("to be ruined") ("to go crazy")

hazard *n.* 1. a health; fire; moral; occupational; safety ~ 2. a ~ to (a ~ to health)

hazardous *adj.* 1. ~ to (~ to one's health) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to work at that height = it is ~ working at that height)

haze *n.* 1. a light ~ 2. the ~ lifts 3. in; through a ~

hazy *adj.* ~ about (she's ~ about the details)

head I *n.* ["upper part of the body"] 1. to nod; shake one's ~ (he nodded his ~ Yes; she shook her ~ No) 2. to bare; bow; drop, duck, hang, lower; lift, raise; move; poke, stick; scratch; toss; turn one's ~ (to scratch one's ~ in amazement; to poke one's ~ around the corner) 3. to hold one's ~ high ("to be proud") 4. from ~ to foot/toe ["length of a horse's head"] 5. by a ~ (our horse won by a ~) ["poise"] 6. to keep; lose one's ~ ("If you can keep your ~ when all about you Are losing theirs and blaming it on you …" – Rudyard Kipling (1865–1936), "If") 7. a cool, level ~ (to keep a level ~) ["person"] 8. to count ~s 9. per ~ (to charge two dollars per/a ~) ["brain"] 10. to use one's ~ 11. to cram, fill, stuff smb.'s ~ (with nonsense) 12. a clear ~ 13. to have a ~ for (figures) 14. (misc.) it never entered my ~ that they would not support the proposal! ["climax"] 15. to bring smt. to a ~ 16. to come to a ~ (the boil came to a ~; when will the crisis come to a ~?) ["front part"] 17. at the ~ (of a column) ["leader"] 18. a titular ~ 19. (misc.) crowned ~s (of state) (see also *head of state* at **state I** *n.*) ["chairperson"] (esp. BE) 20. (the) department ~, (the) ~ of (the) department (AE usu. has *chair*, *chairman, chairperson*) ["misc."] 21. a thick ~ of hair; success went to his ~ ("his success made him conceited"); ~ first; ~ over heels ("completely") (they're ~ over heels in love); ~s up! ("watch out!"); to get smt. through one's ~ ("to finally comprehend smt."); to hang one's ~ in shame ("to be greatly embarrassed"); to be ~ and shoulders above smb. ("to be greatly superior to smb."); to keep one's ~ above water ("to manage to survive"); over smb.'s ~ ("incomprehensible"); out of one's ~ ("delirious"); ~s or tails?; to make ~ or tail of ("to comprehend") (I can't make ~ or tail of these equations!); to put ~s together ("to collaborate") (they put their ~s together and came up with a solution); prejudice reared its ugly ~ ("prejudice appeared"); he took it into his ~ to leave ("he suddenly decided to leave"); success turned her ~ ("she was spoiled by success"); to bury one's ~ in the sand ("to isolate oneself from reality"); to have a swelled, swollen (BE) ~ ("to be conceited"); to bang/beat/knock one's ~ against a stone wall ("to be cruelly frustrated") (see also *head and shoulders above* at **shoulder I** *n.*; *head of steam* at **steam I** *n.*)

head II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to go") to ~ for (to ~ for the city; to ~ for a downfall) 2. (P; intr., tr.) they ~ed (their boat) east; to ~ out of town; to ~ for the west coast; they were ~ing towards the city

headache *n.* 1. to get; have a ~ 2. a bad, racking, severe, splitting; migraine; sick; slight; tension ~ 3. the noise gave her a ~

head back *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from the theater) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to, towards (to ~ towards home)

head count *n.* to do, have, make, take a ~

heading *n.* 1. a chapter ~ 2. under a ~ (which heading does this topic come under?)

headlights *n.* 1. to turn on the ~ 2. to turn off the ~ 3. to dim, dip (BE) the ~ 4. (misc.) (in) the glare of the ~

headline *n.* 1. to carry a ~ 2. banner; front-page; screaming ~s 3. the ~s say … 4. in (banner) ~s 5. the story made the ~s

headlock *n.* ["wrestling hold"] to get, put; have a ~ on smb.

headquarters *n.* 1. to set up ~ 2. supreme ~ 3. an army; corps; military; police ~ 4. at ~

headstand *n.* to do, execute, perform a ~

headstart *n.* to have a ~ on, over

headway *n.* to gain, make ~ against; with

heal *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ of (she was ~ed of her illness)

healer *n.* a faith ~

healing *n.* faith ~

health *n.* ["condition of the body and mind"] 1. to enjoy good ~ 2. to look after, maintain; promote (good) ~ 3. to recover, regain one's ~ 4. to risk; ruin, undermine smb.'s ~ 5. bad, broken, delicate, deteriorating, failing, feeble, fragile, frail, ill, poor ~ 6. (rude) good; robust; excellent ~ 7. holistic; mental; physical ~ 8. for one's ~ (she swims for her ~; smoking is bad for one's ~) 9. in a certain ~ (they are in (rude) good ~ = they are in the best of ~) 10. (misc.) the state of smb.'s ~ ["science of protecting the health of the community"] 11. community, public; occupational ~ ["misc."] 12. (here's) to your (good) ~!

health care *n.* 1. to deliver, provide ~ 2. holistic ~

health insurance *n.* 1. to have ~ 2. national ~ 3. compulsory; voluntary ~

healthy *adj.* ["promoting health"] 1. ~ for (smoking is not ~ for you) ["safe"] (colloq.) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's not ~ for you to smoke; it's not ~ to walk there at night = it's not ~ walking there at night)

heap I *n.* 1. a compost; dump; scrap ~ 2. in; on a ~ (everything was piled up in a ~ on which more things were thrown constantly)

heap II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ on, on to, onto, upon (she ~ed food on my plate) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (she ~ed my plate with food) 3. (misc.) a ~ed spoonful (BE) = a ~ing spoonful (AE)

hear *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to learn") to ~ about, of (we have heard of her; have you heard about the earthquake?) 2. (d; intr.) ("to receive word") to ~ from (I have not heard from him about this matter) 3. (I) ("to perceive by ear") I heard them go out = they were heard to go out 4. (J) ("to perceive by ear") I heard them going out = they were heard going out; we heard the aria being sung in Italian = the aria was heard being sung in Italian 5. (L) ("to learn") we have heard that he is in town 6. (N; used with a past participle) ("to listen to") we heard the aria sung in Italian 7. (Q) ("to learn") we heard why she left

hearing *n.* ["perception of sounds"] 1. acute, good, keen ~ 2. bad, defective, impaired ~ 3. hard of ~ (help for the hard of ~) 4. hearing-impaired (help for the hearing-impaired) ["session of a committee, court"] 5. to conduct, hold a ~ 6. a fair, impartial; open ~ (he got a fair ~) 7. Congressional ~s 8. an administrative; court; judicial; pre-trial; public ~ 9. at a ~ (to testify at a ~)

heart *n.* ["organ that circulates the blood"] 1. to transplant a ~ 2. a bad, weak; good, healthy, strong ~ 3. an artificial ~ 4. a ~ beats; fails, stops; palpitates, throbs; pounds, thumps; pumps blood ["the heart as the center of emotion"] 5. to gladden; harden smb.'s ~ 6. to break; steal, win smb.'s ~ 7. my ~ aches, bleeds (for her); my ~ goes out to the homeless; my ~ is broken; my ~ leaps up ("My ~ leaps up when I behold A rainbow in the sky" – W Wordsworth (1770–1850), "My Heart Leaps Up"); my ~ skips a beat 8. from the ~ (to speak from the ~) (see also *from the bottom of my heart* at **bottom**) 9. in one's ~ (of ~s) (in my ~ (of ~s) I know that she is right) ["disposition"] 10. a cold, cruel, hard; good, kind, soft, tender, warm; stout ~ (she has a kind ~); a ~ of gold/stone ["liking"] 11. to have no ~ for (she has no ~ for this type of work) 12. after smb.'s own ~ (he's a man after my own ~) ["sympathy"] 13. to have a ~ (have a ~ and lend me some money) ["essence"] 14. to get to the ~ of smt. 15. at ~ (he's not bad at ~; to be young at ~) ["feeling"] 16. to have a change of ~ 17. a heavy; light ~ 18. with a (heavy) ~ ["courage"] 19. to take ~ from (he took ~ from her example) 20. to lose ~ 21. a brave; faint ~ ("Faint ~ never won fair lady!" – Sir W.S. Gilbert (1836–1911), *Iolanthe*) 22. my ~ sank 23. the ~ to + inf. (I didn't have the ~ to tell her) ["memory"] 24. by ~ (to know a poem by ~) ["resolve"] 25. to set one's ~ (on doing smt.) 26. a change of ~ ["misc."] 27. a bleeding ~ ("one who always supports the underdog"); to eat one's ~ out ("to brood"); to lose one's ~ to ("to fall in love with"); to have one's ~ in the right place ("to have good intentions"); to do smb.'s ~ good ("to make smb. happy"); with all one's ~ ("wholeheartedly"); to take smt. to ~ ("to take smt. seriously"); the way to smb.'s ~ ("how to please smb."); my ~ was not in it ("I did not really want to do it"); I gave her everything her ~ could want!; ~ to ~ ("intimately") (we finally began to speak ~ to ~); could you put your hand on your ~ and swear she's the culprit?; we must strive to win the ~s and minds of the people!; ~ and soul (I'll support you ~ and soul!); she poured out her ~ to me and told me everything

heart attack *n.* 1. to have a ~ 2. a fatal; massive; mild; severe; sudden ~

heartbroken *adj.* 1. ~ about, at, over (~ over a friend's death) 2. ~ to + inf. (I'm ~ to hear that he cannot come) 3. ~ that + clause (I'm ~ that he cannot come)

heart failure *n.* 1. to experience, have, suffer ~ 2. congestive; massive ~

heartless *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to say that)

heartstrings *n.* ["deep feelings"] to tug at smb.'s ~ (the sentimental song really tugged at my heartstrings!)

heat I *n.* ["warmth"] 1. to conduct; generate, produce; radiate ~ 2. to absorb (the) ~ 3. to alleviate the ~ 4. blistering, extreme, great, intense, oppressive, scorching, stifling, sweltering, unbearable ~ 5. dry; latent (technical); penetrating; radiant; red; white ~ 6. animal; body ~ 7. ~ builds up, increases;

dissipates ; emanates from (an oven) 8. (misc.) the body loses ~ [″excitement″] 9. in the ~ (of battle ; of the moment) [″estrus, sexual excitement″] 10. in (AE), on (BE) ~ (the bitch was in ~) [″heating system″] 11. to raise, turn up ; turn on the ~ 12. to lower, turn down ; turn off the ~ 13. electric ; gas ; steam ~ [″preliminary race, race″] 14. to end in, run a dead ~ 15. a qualifying ~ [″pressure″] (colloq.) 16. to put the ~ on (the police were putting the ~ on him)

heat II *v.* 1. (C) ~ some water for me ; or : ~ me some water 2. (D ; tr.) to ~ to (she ~ed the oven to two hundred degrees ; to gas mark 4 (BE))

heater *n.* 1. to turn on ; turn up the ~ 2. to turn down ; turn off the ~ 3. an electric ; gas ; hot-water, immersion (BE) ; kerosene (AE), paraffin (BE) ; oil ; radiant ; space ; storage (BE) ~

heating *n.* 1. to turn on ; turn up the ~ 2. to turn down ; turn off the ~ 3. central ; forced-air ; space ~

heave I *n.* to give a ~

heave II *v.* 1. (P ; tr.) (“to throw”) they ~d the trash into the pit 2. (misc.) as we were ready to leave, our friends hove into view USAGE NOTE : As the past of heave, *hove* is nowadays virtually limited to the expression above.

heave-ho *n.* (colloq.) [″ejection″] to give smb. the (old) ~

heaven *n.* 1. to go to ~ 2. in ~ 3. (misc.) in seventh ~ (“in a state of bliss”) ; to move ~ and earth (“to make a maximum effort”) (we moved ~ and earth to help them !) ; for ~’s sake ; smb.’s idea of ~ ; can we create the kingdom of ~ here on earth ?

hedge *n.* [″row of shrubs″] 1. to crop, trim a ~ [″protection against loss″] 2. a ~ against (a ~ against inflation)

hedged *adj.* (esp. BE) ~ about/round with (the project was ~ round with many restrictions)

heed *n.* to pay ~ to ; to take ~ of

heedful *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ of (~ of advice)

heedless *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ of (~ of danger)

heel *n.* [″tyrannical oppression″] 1. under the (iron) ~ (under the ~ of the occupier) [″misc.″] 2. to turn on one’s ~ (“to turn away abruptly”) ; smb.’s Achilles’ ~ (“smb.’s vulnerable point”) ; down at ~, down at the ~ (AE) (“shabby”) (see also **heels**)

heels *n.* 1. to click one’s ~ 2. built-up ; high, stiletto ; low ~ 3. to be at/on smb.’s ~ (“to follow smb. closely”) 4. (misc.) to cool/kick (BE) one’s ~ (“to be kept waiting”) ; to dig in one’s ~ (“to be stubborn ; to resist”) ; (esp. AE) down at the ~ (“shabby”) ; to drag one’s ~ (“to move slowly”) ; to kick up one’s ~ (“to be very lively”) ; to show one’s ~ (“to flee”) ; to take to one’s ~ (“to flee”) ; hard/hot on smb.’s ~ (“close to smb.”) (also fig.) (another disaster came hot on the ~ of the first one !)

hegemony *n.* 1. to have ~ over 2. under smb.’s ~

height *n.* 1. to attain, reach a ~ ; to rise to a ~ 2. to clear ; scale a ~ 3. a dizzy, precipitous, vertiginous ~ 4. dizzying ~s 5. one’s full ~ (she rose to her full ~) 6. a ~ above ; below (to fly at a ~ of ten thousand feet above sea level) 7. at ; to a ~ (at the ~ of one’s success ; to fly at a ~ of ten thousand feet ; to rise to a ~ of 10,000 feet) 8. in ~ (ten feet in ~) 9. (misc.) to adjust the ~ of a table ; to achieve new ~s

heir *n.* 1. to fall ~ (they fell ~ to a large estate) 2. an ~ apparent ; an ~ presumptive 3. an immediate ; rightful ~ 4. ~ to USAGE NOTE : The form *heiress* is used in some combinations as, for example, in *heiress to a large fortune* (she fell heir to a large fortune and so became heiress to a large fortune).

heirloom *n.* a family ; priceless ~

helicopter *n.* 1. to fly, pilot a ~ 2. an attack ~ = a ~ gunship (see also **airplane**)

hell *n.* (colloq.) [″the netherworld″] 1. go to ~ ! 2. to be in ~ [″scolding″] 3. to catch, get ~ 4. to give smb. ~ [″great suffering″] 5. to go through ~ 6. sheer, unmitigated, unspeakable ~ 7. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to work there = it was ~ working there) [″misc.″] 8. to beat (the) ~ out of smb. (“to give smb. a good thrashing”) ; to raise ~ (“to make trouble”) (he’s going to raise ~ if we’re late !) ; to wait till ~ freezes over (“to wait for ever”) ; living there was ~ on earth (“it was terrible to live there”) ; a/one ~ of a team (“an excellent team”) ; for the ~ of it (“for no real reason”) ; to be ~ on (“to be harmful to”) ; bloody ~ ! (BE ; slang) ; what the/in ~ is that ?! ; where the/in ~ did she go ?! ; why the/in ~ not ? ; from ~ (colloq.) (it was the vacation from ~ : it rained all the time and the food was awful !)

hell-bent *adj.* (cannot stand alone) [″determined″] 1. ~ for, on (~ on balancing the budget) 2. ~ to + inf. (~ to balance the budget)

hello *n.* 1. to say ~ (to) 2. a big ~ (they gave me a big ~)

helm *n.* 1. to take (over) the ~ 2. at the ~

helmet *n.* 1. to put on ; take off ; wear a ~ 2. to have a ~ on 3. a crash, safety ; football ; pith, sun ~ 4. a steel ~

help I *n.* 1. to extend, give, offer, provide ~ 2. to call for, seek ~ 3. to cry for, plead for ~ 4. a big ~ (to) (they were a big ~ to us) 5. (a) great, invaluable, tremendous ; little ~ 6. of ~ (to) (she was of great ~ to us ; they were of little ~ to me) 7. (misc.) ~ wanted (as in a newspaper advertisement) ; domestic ~ ; (BE) a home ~ (AE has *home health aide*) ; will the new legislation be a ~ or a hindrance to us ?

help II *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) (“to assist”) to ~ across (we ~ed them across the street) 2. (D ; tr.) (“to assist”) to ~ in, with (we ~ed them in their work ; she ~ed me with the translation) 3. (D ; tr.) (“to assist in moving”) to ~ into ; off ; out of (~ them into the house ; ~ her off the train ; ~ him out of the car) 4. (D ; tr.) (“to assist”) to ~ through (they ~ed us through the crisis) 5. (D ; refl.) (“to serve oneself”) to ~ to (she ~ed herself to the cake) 6. (D ; tr.) (“to serve”) to ~ to (can I ~ you to some cake ?) 7. (E) they ~ed to cook the meal 8. (F) (“to assist”) they ~ed cook the meal 9. (G ; often used with : cannot

– can't – couldn't) ("to keep from") we couldn't ~ laughing 10. (H) they ~ed us to cook the meal = we were ~ed to cook the meal 11. (I) they ~ed us cook the meal = we were ~ed to cook the meal 12. (misc.) I couldn't ~ but laugh; "can I have some more cake?" "(please) ~ yourself!"; will the new legislation ~ or hinder us?

helpful *adj.* 1. ~ in; to (she's been very ~ to us) 2. ~ of (that was very ~ of you) 3. ~ to + inf. (it's always ~ to be well-informed; it was ~ of you to do that)

helping *n.* a generous; second ~ (of)

helping hand *n.* to give, lend (smb.) a ~

helpless *adj.* 1. to leave, render smb. ~ (the stroke left him ~) 2. ~ against (we were ~ against the invasion) 3. ~ to + inf. (we were ~ to resist the invasion)

helplessness *n.* 1. complete, utter ~ 2. learned ~ (to overcome learned ~ by changing one's behavior)

help off *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ with (he ~ed me off with my coat)

help on *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ with (he ~ed me on with my coat)

help out *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ by (she ~ed me out by giving me some good advice) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (she ~ed me out with some good advice) 3. (misc.) she ~s them out in her own way

helter-skelter *adv.* to flee ~

hem *n.* 1. to let down, let out, lower a ~ 2. to raise, take up a ~ 3. to pin up a ~ 4. to straighten a ~

hemisphere *n.* 1. the eastern; northern; southern; western ~ 2. the left; right ~ (of the brain)

hemline *n.* to lower; raise a ~

hemmed in *adj.* ~ on all sides

hemorrhage *n.* 1. a brain, cerebral; internal ~ 2. a massive ~

hen *n.* 1. ~s cackle, cluck 2. ~s lay eggs

hepatitis *n.* infectious; serum ~

herbs *n.* 1. dried; fresh; medicinal ~ (to garnish food with fresh ~) 2. a bunch of ~

herd I *n.* 1. to drive; round up a ~ 2. to tend a ~ 3. a dairy ~ 4. (misc.) to ride ~ on ("to control"); to follow the ~ ("to go along with the crowd"); the common ~ ("the great mass of people")

herd II *v.* (P; tr.) the prisoners were ~ed into the compound; the children were ~ed out of the classroom; the tourists were ~ed through the exhibition

here *adv.* 1. from; (up) to ~ 2. down; over; up ~ 3. from ~ on 4. (misc.) I've had it up to ~ with your constant complaining! ("I've had more than enough of your constant complaining")

hereafter *n.* in the ~

heresy *n.* 1. to be guilty of ~; to commit ~ 2. to preach ~ 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to talk like that)

heritage *n.* 1. to cherish one's ~ 2. to repudiate one's ~ 3. a priceless, proud, rich ~ (we must preserve and protect our priceless ~ of art and culture!) 4. a cultural; family; national; religious ~

hernia *n.* a hiatal; hiatus; inguinal ~

hero *n.* 1. a conquering; folk; local; military, war; national; popular; unsung ~ 2. a ~ to (when she returned, she was a ~ to her followers)

heroic *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to oppose the invader)

heroin *n.* 1. to do (colloq.), inject, shoot (colloq.), shoot up (with) (colloq.), smoke ~ 2. a shot of ~

heroine *n.* see **hero**

heroism *n.* to demonstrate, display ~

herpes *n.* 1. to come down with, contract, get ~ 2. genital ~

hesitancy *n.* 1. to show ~ 2. ~ about, in (I have no ~ about throwing him out)

hesitant *adj.* 1. ~ about (they are ~ about signing a contract) 2. ~ to + inf. (they were ~ to sign the contract)

hesitate *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ over (to ~ over a choice) 2. (E) they ~ed to sign the contract; do not ~ to call me

hesitation *n.* 1. to show ~ 2. (a) momentary, slight ~ 3. ~ about, in (I have no ~ about throwing him out)

het up *adj.* (slang) ["excited"] to get (all) ~ about, over

hew *v.* (d; intr.) ("to adhere") (AE) to ~ to (to ~ to the party line)

hex *n.* (AE) to put a ~ on smb.

heyday *n.* ["most successful period"] 1. to have one's ~ 2. in smb.'s ~

hiatus *n.* a brief ~

hiccup *n.* 1. to give, let out a ~ 2. to get; have the ~s 3. to get rid of the ~s 4. an attack of (the) ~s

hide I *n.* 1. to tan a ~ 2. (misc.) to save smb.'s ~ ("to rescue smb."); to tan smb.'s ~ ("to spank smb.")

hide II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ behind (to ~ behind a legal technicality) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from

hide-and-seek *n.* to play ~

hideaway *n.* a secret ~

hideous *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to watch the massacre = the massacre was ~ to watch = it was a ~ massacre to watch = it was ~ watching the massacre = watching the massacre was ~)

hideout *n.* a secret ~

hide out *v.* to ~ from (to ~ from the police)

hiding I *n.* ["concealment"] 1. to go into ~ 2. to come out of ~ 3. in ~

hiding II *n.* (colloq.) ["a beating"] 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to get a ~ (he got a good ~ for his misbehavior) 3. a good, sound ~ 4. (misc.) to deserve a good ~

hierarchy *n.* 1. to rise in the ~ 2. an academic; church; corporate; military; ruling ~

high I *adj.* 1. ~ in (~ in iron) 2. (misc.) ~ up; (colloq.) to get ~ on (a drug); as ~ as the sky = sky-high; the building is 200 feet ~ = it is a 200-foot-high building; shoulder-high; waist-high

high II *n.* ["acme"] 1. to reach a ~ 2. an all-time ~ ["state of euphoria"] (slang) 3. to reach a ~ 4. to be on a (perpetual) ~

highball *n.* ["type of drink"] to make, mix a ~

highhanded *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to remove the equipment without permission)

high horse *n.* (colloq.) ["arrogance"] to get on one's ~ ("to start to show arrogance")

highness *n.* (her, his, your) royal ~; their royal ~es

high-pressure *v.* (AE) 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (she was ~d into signing) 2. (H) she was ~d to sign

high road *n.* ["direct route"] 1. to take the ~ (to) 2. (misc.) (fig.) the ~ to success

high sign *n.* (esp. AE) ["signal"] 1. to give smb. the ~ 2. to get the ~

highway *n.* 1. (AE) a divided ~ (BE has *dual carriageway*) 2. a limited-access ~ (BE prefers *motorway*) 3. (to drive) on the ~ 4. the ~ to 5. (misc.) the Information Highway; the public ~ (BE)

hijack *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (they were ~ed to an unknown country)

hijacking *n.* 1. to carry out, commit a ~ 2. to foil, thwart a ~

hike I *n.* 1. to go on; organize a ~ 2. a long; short ~ (they went on a long ~ from one place to another) 3. an overnight ~ (as of Boy Scouts)

hike II *v.* (P; intr.) they ~d to town on foot; we ~d around the village; the scouts ~d over the mountain; they ~d from one place to another

hike III *n.* (colloq.) 1. a pay; tax ~ 2. an across-the-board; annual (pay) ~

hill *n.* 1. to climb up, go up; come down a ~ 2. rolling ~s; a steep ~ 3. in the ~s (to live in the ~s) 4. on a ~ (the house stood on a ~) 5. (lit.) the brow of a ~ 6. the bottom, foot of a ~ 7. the top of a ~ 8. a ~ rises 9. a chain, group of ~s 10. down; over; up a ~ 11. (misc.) the height of a ~; (colloq.) to take to the ~s ("to take refuge in or escape to the hills")

hilt *n.* ["limit"] to the ~ (he plunged the dagger in up to the ~; we were mortgaged (up) to the ~ and couldn't afford any more)

hinder *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in 3. (misc.) will the new legislation help or ~ us?

hindrance *n.* a ~ to (will the new legislation be a help or a ~ to us?)

hindsight *n.* with (the benefit/wisdom of) ~ (with the benefit of ~, we could see that the plan was doomed from the start!)

hinge *v.* (d; intr.) ("to depend") to ~ on, upon (the future ~s on what we decide now)

hint I *n.* 1. to drop, give a ~ 2. to take a ~ 3. a broad, heavy, obvious; delicate, gentle, subtle; helpful ~ 4. the merest, slightest ~ 5. a ~ about, on; of (a ~ about the answer; a ~ of suspicion; a book that gives helpful ~s on child care) (also fig.) (there's just a ~ of garlic in the sauce) 6. a ~ that + clause (she dropped a ~ that she would retire soon) 7. at a ~ (they fled at the first ~ of trouble)

hint II *v.* 1. (d. intr.) to ~ at 2. (L; to) she ~ed (to us) that she would retire soon

hip *n.* 1. to shake, sway, wiggle one's ~s 2. (misc.) they stood with their hands on their ~s

hire I *n.* for ~

hire II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ smb. as a guide) 2. (esp. BE) (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ a car from an agency) (AE usu. uses *to rent*) 3. (H) we ~d her to mow our lawn

hired *adj.* ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to mow our lawn)

hire out *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ as; to (he ~d himself out as a mercenary to the highest bidder)

hire purchase *n.* (BE) on ~ (to buy smt. on ~) (AE has *the installment plan*)

hiss *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (the crowd ~ed at the delay) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ off (the actor was ~ed off the stage) 3. (misc.) "be quiet!" she ~ed (at us)

history *n.* 1. to make ~ 2. to record, take down; trace the ~ of smt./smb. 3. to distort; revise, rewrite ~ 4. to go down in ~ as (he went down in ~ as a tyrant) 5. ancient; art; medieval; modern; past; recorded ~ 6. cultural; military; natural ~ 7. a case; family; life; medical; personal; social ~ (I recorded his personal ~) (see also **case history**) 8. (an) oral ~ 9. a ~ of (she had a long ~ of drug abuse/violence) 10. in, throughout ~ (people have struggled for freedom throughout recorded ~) 11. (misc.) ~ repeats itself; ~ shows that …, ~ tells us that …; a page in ~; the nurse did/got/took the patient's ~; she was a mere extra – but that's all past ~ now because she finally got a chance to replace the star – and the rest is ~!

hit I *n.* ["blow that strikes the target"] 1. to score a ~ 2. to take a ~ (our ship took several direct ~s) 3. a direct ~ ["success"] (colloq.) 4. to make a ~ with (she made quite a ~ with the audience) 5. a big, smash ~

hit II *v.* 1. ("to strike") to ~ hard 2. (d; tr.) ("to strike") to ~ against, on (he hit his head on the ceiling) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ at ("to attack") (the press hit hard at government corruption) 4. (slang) (AE) (d; tr.) to ~ for ("to request") (he hit me for twenty dollars) 5. (D; tr.) ("to strike") to ~ in, on, over (to ~ smb. in the face; she hit me on the hand) 6. (slang) (AE) ("to make sexual overtures to") to ~ on smb. 7. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon ("to discover") (they finally hit on an acceptable compromise) 8. (BE) (O; can be used with one animate object) ("to strike") he hit me a hard blow 9. (P; tr.) she hit the ball over the net; the batter hit the ball into the bleachers

hit back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (President Hits Back At Critics – headline)

hitch I *n.* (colloq.) ["obstacle"] ["stoppage"] 1. a slight; technical ~ 2. a ~ in (there's been a slight ~ in our plans) 3. without a ~ (it went off without a ~) ["period of military service"] (esp. AE) 4. to do a ~ 5. to sign up for another ~

hitch II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ horses to a cart)

hitch up *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ horses to a cart)

hit off *v.* to ~ it off with smb. ("to get along well with smb.")

hit out *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ against, at (they ~ against their political rivals)

hitter *n.* (esp. AE; baseball and fig.) 1. a designated ~ 2. a leadoff; pinch ~

hit up *v.* (slang) (AE) (d; tr.) ("to request") to ~ for (he hit me up for a loan)

hoax *n.* 1. to perpetrate a ~ 2. to play a ~ on smb. 3. a literary ~

hobble *v.* (P; intr.) she ~d across the street; they ~d into the room

hobby *n.* to have, pursue; take up a ~

hobnob *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ with

hock *n.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) 1. in ~ ("pawned"); out of ~ (my watch is in ~ but I'll soon get it out of ~ again) 2. in ~ to ("in debt to") (I'm in ~ to a loan shark to the tune of $30,000!)

hockey *n.* 1. to play ~ 2. field (AE); ice ~

hoist *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ onto, to (the workers were ~ed onto the roof)

hold I *n.* ["grip"] 1. to catch, get, grab, lay, seize, take ~ of 2. to keep ~ of 3. to loosen, relax; lose, relinquish one's ~ (of) 4. to tighten one's ~ 5. a firm, strong, tight ~ 6. a ~ on ["type of wrestling grip"] 7. to break a ~; to get smb. in a ~ ["control, domination"] 8. to consolidate; have; maintain; tighten a ~ 9. to loosen; relinquish one's ~ 10. a firm, strong, tight ~ 11. a ~ on, over (they refused to relinquish their ~ over this area; they thought they had a ~ on us) ["waiting"] 12. on ~ (the plan is on ~ until next year; when I called him, he put me on ~; I cannot leave the phone because I'm still on ~)

hold II *v.* 1. ("to keep") to ~ high (to ~ one's head high; also fig.) 2. ("to keep, support") to ~ tight, tightly (~ tight and don't fall off!) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ against ("to take into account") (we will not ~ your past blunders against you; they held his criminal record against him) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ by ("to keep, support") (to ~ smb. by the hand) 5. (d; tr.) to ~ in ("to regard") (to ~ smb. in contempt; to ~ smb. in high esteem) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ onto ("to seize and cling to") (~ onto my arm) 7. (d; intr.) ("to adhere") to ~ to (to ~ to the terms of a contract) 8. (d; tr.) ("to make smb. comply") to ~ to (they held us to the terms of the contract) 9. (d; tr.) ("to restrict") to ~ to (we held the visiting team to a tie) 10. (d; intr.) ("to agree") to ~ with (I don't ~ with his ideas) 11. (L) (formal) ("to assert") we ~ that these truths are self-evident 12. (M) ("to consider") we ~ him to be responsible; "We ~ these truths to be self-evident" – U.S. Declaration of Independence, July 4, 1776 13. (N; used with an adjective) ("to consider"); ("to keep") to ~ smb. responsible; she held the ladder steady; they ~ life cheap; we ~ these truths self-evident

hold III *n.* ["interior of a ship below decks"] in the ~

hold back *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to keep") to ~ from (lack of education held him back from promotion) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with one's reserves)

holder *n.* 1. a candle; cigarette; napkin ~ 2. a leaseholder; license-holder, permit-holder; office-holder; passport-holder; policy-holder; record-holder 3. (AE) a pot ~ (AE also has *oven mitt*; BE has *oven glove*)

hold forth *v.* (D; intr.) ("to give an opinion") to ~ about, on (to ~ about various matters)

holdings *n.* ["investments"] 1. to diversify one's ~ 2. far-flung ~

hold off *v.* (G) to ~ making a decision

hold on *v.* to ~ tight, tightly (~ tight and don't fall off!)

hold out *v.* 1. (B) ("to offer") they didn't ~ much hope to us; to ~ a helping hand to smb. = to ~ a helping hand out to smb.; she held her hand out to us in friendship = she ~ed out her hand to us in friendship 2. (D; intr.) to ~ against ("to resist") (they held out against the enemy for a month) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ for ("to demand") (they held out for better terms) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to keep information from") (don't ~ on me) 5. (D; intr.) ("to persevere") to ~ to (to ~ to the end)

holdover *n.* a ~ from (a ~ from the old days)

hold up *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ as an example) 2. (esp. AE) (D; intr.) to ~ on (they had to ~ on their travel plans) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smt. up to ridicule)

hole *n.* 1. to bore; burrow; dig; drill; make a ~ 2. to fill (in), plug a ~ 3. a deep; gaping, yawning ~ 4. a plug (esp. BE); rabbit; watering ~ (pull the plug out of the plug ~ and let the water out) 5. a bullet ~ 6. (misc.) to pick ~s in smt. ("to find flaws in smt."); to poke a ~ in smb.'s argument; (golf) to shoot a ~ in one; we're five hundred dollars in the ~ ("we owe five hundred dollars that we cannot pay")

holed up adj (colloq.) ~ in (they were ~ in an old farmhouse)

hole up *v.* (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ in (they ~d up in an old farmhouse)

holiday *n.* ["day set aside for the suspension of business, labor"] 1. to celebrate, observe a ~ 2. a bank (BE), legal (AE), public; national; religious ~ ["period of rest"] (esp. BE; AE prefers *vacation*) 3. to have, take a ~ 4. to be on; go on ~ 5. a summer ~ 6. a ~ from 7. on ~ (she was away on ~) ["misc."] 8. a busman's ~ ("a holiday spent in doing one's usual work") (see the Usage Note at **vacation**)

holler *v.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) 1. (B) she ~ed a few words to him 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ at (they ~ed at the children) 3. (misc.) "Be careful!" she ~ed; they ~ed at the children to stop shouting; they ~ed to the children to be careful

hollow *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ out of (to ~ a canoe out of a log)

holocaust *n.* a nuclear ~

holster *n.* a shoulder ~

holy orders *n.* ["ordination"] to receive, take ~

homage *n.* 1. to pay ~ to 2. in ~ to

home *n.* ["establishment providing care or service"] 1. to manage, operate, run a ~ 2. a convalescent; funeral (AE); nursing; remand (BE); rest; retirement ~ ["residence"] 3. to build; establish a ~ 4. to provide a ~ for 5. to make one's ~ at, in 6. an ancestral;

childhood; country; mobile; summer; winter ~ 7. (a) ~ for, to (San Francisco was ~ to them for years) 8. at ~ (make yourself at ~; she is never at ~; AE also has: she is never ~) ["family"] 9. a broken; foster; good; happy ~ [misc.] 10. to romp ~ ("to score an easy victory"); she is at ~ in/with Greek literature; to go ~; a ~ away from ~ (AE) = (BE) a ~ from ~ USAGE NOTE: In many instances *home* is used as an adverb – to go home, to get home from work, etc.

home in *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a target) USAGE NOTE: The incorrect variant **hone in on* is sometimes encountered.

home page *n.* (computers) to create; view; visit a ~

home run *n.* (AE; baseball and fig.) ["hit that allows the batter to score a run"] to hit a ~

homesick *adj.* 1. to get ~ 2. ~ for

home straight (BE), **homestretch** *n.* to come into the ~

homework *n.* 1. to do, prepare ~ 2. to assign, set (BE) ~ 3. to hand in ~ 4. to correct; grade, mark ~ (a teacher corrects ~)

homicide *n.* 1. to commit ~ 2. justifiable ~

homily *n.* 1. to deliver a ~ 2. a ~ about, on

hone *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smt. to a point) 2. (misc.) finely ~d

honest *adj.* 1. ~ about; in; with (be ~ about this matter with us; to be ~ in one's dealings; to be ~ with you, I don't think your plan will work) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's not ~ to lie about one's age)

honesty *n.* 1. to impugn smb.'s ~ 2. ~ about; in; with 3. in all ~ (in all ~, do you believe him?) 4. the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to report the bribe)

honey *n.* 1. to gather ~ 2. (BE) runny ~ 3. (misc.) as sweet as ~

honeycombed *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ with

honeymoon *n.* 1. to go for/on one's ~ (they went to Hawaii on/for their ~) 2. to spend one's ~ (they spent their ~ in Hawaii) 3. a second ~ 4. (misc.) the ~ is over (usu. fig.)

honk *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at

honor I honour *n.* ["respect"] ["credit"] 1. to bring, do ~ to (she brought ~ to her family) 2. an ~ to (they are an ~ to their country) 3. in smb.'s ~; in ~ of (to give a reception in smb.'s ~) ["distinction"] ["recognition"] 4. to win (an) ~ 5. to bestow, confer an ~ on 6. a dubious; great, high, signal ~ 7. an ~ that + clause (it was a great ~ that we were chosen) 8. (to graduate) with ~s 9. (misc.) she did us the ~ of attending our party ["privilege"] 10. to have the ~ (may I have the ~ of your company?) 11. an ~ to + inf. (it was an ~ to serve with you; it was a great ~ for us to have been chosen) ["integrity"] ["reputation"] 12. to stake one's ~ on smt. 13. one's word of ~; an affair of ~ 14. on one's (word of) ~ ["rite"] 15. to do the ~s ("to serve as host") 16. military ~s (to be buried with full military ~s) ["misc."] 17. a (military) guard of ~; the guest of ~

honor II honour *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as, for (she was ~ed as a community leader = she was ~ed for being a community leader) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ by; with (he was ~ed by being invited)

honor bound, honour bound *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (we were ~ to get the job done on time) 2. (formal) in ~ (we were in ~ to get the job done on time)

honorable, honourable *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is not ~ to deceive them with false promises)

honorarium *n.* to accept; offer; pay; receive an ~

honored, honoured *adj.* 1. deeply, greatly, highly, very 2. ~ to + inf. (he was ~ to be invited) 3. ~ that + clause (he was ~ that you invited him)

hood *n.* (AE) ["cover over a front car engine"] to check under the ~ (of a car) (BE has *bonnet*)

hoodwink *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into 2. (D; tr.) to ~ out of

hoof *n.* 1. a cloven ~ 2. hoofs/hooves clatter 3. on the ~ (to buy cattle on the ~)

hook *n.* ["curved implement"] 1. a crochet; meat; pruning ~ 2. (misc.) to hang a coat on a ~; to leave the phone off the ~ ["blow delivered with bent arm"] 3. to deliver a ~ (he delivered a right ~ to his opponent's jaw) ["implement used to catch fish"] 4. to bait a ~ ["misc."] (slang) 5. off the ~ ("relieved of responsibility")

hooked *adj.* (slang) ["addicted"] ~ on (~ on drugs)

hookey, hooky *n.* (colloq.) (AE) to play ~ ("to play truant")

hooks and eyes *n.* ["type of fastening"] 1. to fasten; unfasten ~ 2. to sew on ~

hookup *n.* 1. a satellite ~ 2. a ~ with

hook up *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a telephone up to the cable = to ~ a telephone to the cable) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with ("to join")

hoop *n.* to roll a ~

hoopla *n.* (slang) (AE) ["bustle, noise, fuss"] the ~ subsides

hoot I *n.* (colloq.) ["slightest care"] not to give a ~ (see also *hoots of derision* at **derision**)

hoot II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to shout") to ~ at (they ~ed at me to get moving) 2. (misc.) the actor was ~ed off the stage

hop I *n.* ["short flight"] 1. a short ~ 2. a ~ from; to (it's a short ~ from Detroit to Cleveland)

hop II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ into (the children ~ped into their nice warm beds) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ out of (to ~ out of a chair) 3. (P; intr.) the children ~ped across the puddle; to ~ (onto) a bus

hope I *n.* 1. to arouse, inspire, stir up ~ 2. to build up, raise smb.'s ~s 3. to get smb.'s ~s up 4. to express, voice a ~ 5. to cherish, entertain, nurse a ~ 6. to cling to a ~ 7. to pin, place, put one's ~s on 8. to crush, dash, deflate, shatter; thwart smb.'s ~s 9. to abandon, give up, lose ~ 10. an ardent, fervent, fond; devout; pious; sincere ~ 11. a real; realistic, reasonable ~ 12. a dim, faint, slender, slight; false, idle, illusory, vain; unrealistic, unreasonable ~ 13. high ~s 14. ~s are fulfilled, are realized, come to fruition 15. ~s crumble, are dashed, fade 16. a flicker, glimmer, ray, spark of ~ 17. ~ for; in; of (~ for better times; we had high ~s for her) 18. a ~ that + clause (it was our ~ that they would settle near us; there was little ~ that she would be elected) 19. in, with the ~ (we returned to the park in the ~ of finding her wallet) 20. beyond, past (all) ~ 21. (misc.) they are our best ~ for a medal in/at the games; "We shall nobly save, or meanly lose, the last best ~ of earth." – Abraham Lincoln (December 1, 1862)

hope II *v.* 1. to ~ fervently, sincerely, very much 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for an improvement) 3. (E) she ~s to see them soon 4. (L) she ~s that she will see them soon 5. (misc.) I ~ so; I ~ not; here's ~ing!; we ~ and pray that she will be forgiven

hopeful I *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ that + clause (she's ~ that she will see them soon)

hopeful II *n.* a presidential; young ~

hopeless *adj.* 1. ~ at, with (he's ~ with figures; he's ~ at balancing his checkbook) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to expect her to help)

hopper *n.* (AE) ["container for bills that are being considered"] 1. a legislative ~ 2. in a ~

hopscotch *n.* to play ~

horizon *n.* 1. (fig.) to broaden, expand one's ~s 2. above; below; beyond the ~ 3. on the ~ (to appear on the ~)

hormone *n.* a female; growth; male; sex ~

horn *n.* ["device on a car"] 1. to blow, honk, sound, toot a ~ 2. ~s blare, blow 3. a ~ gets stuck ["musical instrument"] 4. to play a ~ 5. an English (esp. AE; BE prefers *cor anglais*); French ~ ["misc."] 6. on the ~s of a dilemma ("in a dilemma"); to lock ~s ("to come into conflict") ~ (over; with) (locked ~s with them over foreign policy); to take the bull by the ~s ("to confront a problem boldly"); (AE) to blow/toot one's own ~ ("to boast") (BE has *to blow one's own trumpet*)

hornet *n.* ~s sting

hornets' nest *n.* ["angry reaction"] to stir up a ~

horn in *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to interrupt") (to ~ on smb. else's conversation)

Horn of Africa *n.* in, (esp. AE) on the ~

horoscope *n.* 1. to read smb.'s ~ 2. smb.'s ~ says

horrible *adj.* 1. ~ to (she was ~ to her workers) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to work there = it is ~ working there) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that he has to work there)

horrid *adj.* 1. ~ to (she was simply ~ to her children!) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to tease her children like that = she was ~ to tease her children like that)

horrified *adj.* 1. ~ at, by (we were ~ at/by the news that their house had burned down) 2. ~ to + inf. (we were ~ to learn that their house had burned down) 3. ~ that + clause (we were ~ that their house had burned down)

horrify *v.* (R) it ~fied us (to learn) that their house had burned down

horrifying *adj.* ~ to + inf.; that + clause (it was ~ (to learn) that their house had burned down!)

horror *n.* 1. to express; feel ~ 2. to have a ~ of 3. indescribable, unspeakable, sheer ~ 4. ~ at (we expressed our ~ at the news that their house had burned down) 5. in ~ (to scream in ~) (see also *to recoil in horror* at **recoil**) 6. to smb.'s ~ (to our ~, their house burned down!) 7. (misc.) a scream, shriek of ~

horror-stricken, horror-struck *adj.* 1. ~ at 2. ~ + inf. (we were ~ to learn that their house had burned down)

horse *n.* ["animal"] 1. to mount; ride; spur (on); walk a ~ 2. to lead a ~ by the bridle 3. to dismount, get off a ~ 4. to bridle; curry; groom; harness; hobble; saddle; shoe a ~ 5. to break (in) a ~ 6. to breed, raise; train a ~ 7. a cart (BE), draft (AE), dray; race; saddle; thoroughbred; wild ~; a workhorse (usu. fig.) 8. ~s bolt; canter; gallop; rear; shy; trot; walk 9. ~s neigh; nicker (BE), snicker (AE), whicker; whinny 10. an unbroken ~ bucks (the ~ bucked and threw its rider) 11. a herd of (wild) ~s; a pair; team of ~s 12. a young ~ is a foal 13. a female ~ is a mare 14. a male ~ is a stallion; a castrated male ~ is a gelding 15. a young female ~ is a filly 16. a young male ~ is a colt ["padded block"] (gymnastics) 17. a pommel, side (AE); vaulting ~ ["misc."] 18. to back the wrong ~ ("to support the losing side"); to beat/flog a dead ~ ("to discuss an issue that has already been settled"); from the ~'s mouth ("from an original or authoritative source"); to hold one's ~s ("to behave more carefully"); a ~ of a different color ("an entirely different matter"); to eat like a ~ ("to eat a great deal"); to work like a ~ ("to work very hard"); to play the ~s ("to bet on horse races"); to look a gift ~ in the mouth ("to be very critical of a gift") (see also **high horse**; **pony**)

horse around *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ with

horseback *n.* 1. to ride ~ 2. on ~

hose *n.* ["flexible tube"] 1. to play, train a ~ on 2. a fire; garden; rubber; water ~ ["stockings"] 3. mesh ~; stretch; support ~ (see also **pantyhose**)

hosiery *n.* support ~

hospitable *adj.* 1. ~ to, towards (~ to strangers) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is not ~ to turn a stranger away)

hospital *n.* 1. to establish, found a ~ 2. to manage, run a ~ 3. to be admitted to ~ (BE)/to be admitted to the/a ~ (AE), to enter ~ (BE)/to enter the/a ~ (AE), to go into, to ~ (BE)/to go into, to the/a ~ (AE) 4. to be discharged from ~ (BE), to leave ~ (BE)/to be discharged from the/a ~ (AE), to leave the/a ~ (AE) 5. a base; evacuation; field; military; station; veterans' ~ 6. a children's; general; mental ~ 7. a city, municipal; community, non-profit; cottage (BE); private, proprietary (AE); state; teaching ~ 8. at, in a ~ (she works at/in a ~) 9. in ~ (BE)/in the/a ~ (AE) (she's ill and has been in/in the ~ for a week) USAGE NOTE: In BE, the phrases *to go to hospital, to be in hospital* mean "to be hospitalized"; in AE one says *to go to the/a hospital, to be in the/a hospital*. But: *she went to the hospital to visit her mother* is CE.

hospitality *n.* 1. to extend, offer, show ~ 2. to enjoy; repay smb.'s ~ 3. to abuse smb.'s ~ 4. cordial, warm; lavish ~

host *n.* 1. to play ~ to (who will play ~ to our foreign guests?) 2. to act as ~ 3. a congenial, gracious, perfect ~ (he was a perfect ~ to all his guests) 4. a chat-show (BE), talk-show (AE); game-show ~ 5. ~ to (which city will be ~ to the next Olympics?)

hostage *n.* 1. to take smb. ~ 2. to seize, take ~s 3. to hold smb. (as a) ~ (they were held ~) 4. to exchange ~s 5. to free, liberate ~s

hostel *n.* a youth ~

hostess *n.* 1. see **host** (1, 2, 3, and sometimes 4) (at home she ia always a perfect hostess; at work, she is a well-known game-show host/hostess) 2. an air (BE), airline (AE) ~ 3. a dance-hall; nightclub ~ USAGE NOTE: In AE, the phrase *flight attendant* has almost completely replaced *airline hostess*.

hostile *adj.* 1. openly ~ 2. ~ to, towards

hostilities *n.* ["war"] 1. to begin, open ~ 2. to end; suspend ~ 3. impending ~ 4. ~ begin, break out, erupt; cease, end 5. an outbreak of ~ 6. ~ between

hostility *n.* 1. to arouse, stir up ~ 2. to display, show ~ 3. to express; feel ~ 4. (a) bitter, deep, profound; open; veiled ~ 5. ~ against, to, towards 6. ~ between

hot *adj.* 1. boiling, burning, piping, red-hot, scalding, steaming; unbearably; uncomfortably ~, white-hot 2. (misc.) ~ on smb.'s heels/trail ("close behind smb. being pursued"); all ~ and bothered ("disturbed or excited") (see also *hot under the collar* at **collar** 3)

hotel *n.* 1. to manage, operate, run a ~ 2. a deluxe, five-star, luxury; first-class; four-star; posh, swanky (colloq.); three-star ~ 3. a run-down, seedy ~ 4. at, in a ~ (she works at/in a ~) 5. (misc.) to check in at, check into, register at a ~; to check out of a ~; to go to a ~; to stay at a ~

hound I *n.* ["hunting dog"] 1. a pack of ~s 2. (esp. BE) to ride to ~s, to follow the ~s, to hunt with ~s ("to hunt on horseback with dogs") 3. ~s bay ["enthusiast"] 4. autograph ~s

hound II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ from, out of (they ~ed her out of office) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ into (they finally ~ed me into getting a haircut) 3. (H) they kept ~ing me to get a haircut

hour *n.* 1. to show, tell the ~ (my watch shows the minute and ~) 2. a solid ("full") ~ (the police grilled him for three solid ~s) 3. an ungodly ("very early"); ("very late") ~ (she called at an ungodly ~) 4. the decisive ~; or: the ~ of decision 5. the cocktail ~ 6. business, peak; unsocial (BE); visiting ~s (during peak ~s more trains run; to get extra pay for working unsocial ~s) (see also **office hours**; **working hours**) 7. flexible; irregular; regular ~s (she keeps regular ~s) 8. the rush ~ (traffic is very heavy during the rush ~) 9. at a certain ~ (at the appointed ~; we had to get up at an ungodly ~) 10. by the ~ (to pay workers by the ~) 11. during, in, on a certain ~ (during the lunch ~; in smb.'s ~ of need) 12. in, inside, within an ~ (she'll be here in an ~; or BE: in an ~'s time) 13. on the ~ ("hourly") (coaches for Birmingham leave (every ~) on the ~; coaches for Bradford leave (every ~) on the half-hour; coaches for Bolton leave (every ~) at 20 minutes past the ~) 14. (BE) out of ~s (I cannot see you out of (normal working) ~s, which are between (the ~s of) nine and five) 15. (misc.) they spent many happy ~s playing cards; to keep late ~s ("to go to bed late"); smb.'s darkest/finest ~ ("the worst/noblest period in smb.'s life or history"); in the wee ~s of the morning ("late at night"); after ~s ("after work"); (a) happy ~ ("period in which a bar sells alcoholic drinks at a reduced price"); H-hour/zero hour ("time at which a significant event is scheduled to begin")

house *n.* ["building"] ["home"] 1. to build, put up a ~ 2. to redecorate, refurbish, remodel, renovate a ~ 3. to demolish, raze, tear down a ~ 4. to rent a ~ from smb. 5. to let (BE), rent (out) a ~ to smb. 6. (BE) to move ~ (AE has: *to move*) 7. a dilapidated, ramshackle 8. an apartment (AE); council (BE) ~ 9. a detached; one-family, single; ranch (AE); row (AE), terrace (BE), terraced (BE); semidetached; town; tract (AE) ~ 10. a country; doll's house (esp. BE), dollhouse (AE); manor (esp. BE); summer; tree; Wendy (BE) ~ 11. a brick; clapboard (AE), weatherboard; frame; prefabricated ~ 12. a lodging (esp. BE), rooming (AE) ~ 13. a haunted ~ 14. (AE) a fraternity; sorority ~ ["housekeeping"] 15. to clean ~ 16. to keep ~ for smb. ["theater"] 17. to bring the ~ down ("to win thunderous applause") 18. an empty; full, packed ~ (to play to a packed ~) 19. an opera ~ ["chamber of a legislative body"] 20. a lower; upper ~; both ~s of Congress (see also *the House of Commons* at **common**; *the House of Lords* at **lord**; *a house of worship* at **worship I** *n.*) ["firm"] 21. a banking; clearing ~ (see also **clearinghouse**) 22. a discount; mail-order; pharmaceutical; publishing ~ 23. a gambling ~ 24. a slaughterhouse (literal or fig.) (BE prefers *abattoir* in literal sense) ["place providing a public service"] 25. a boarding; halfway; safe; settlement ~ ["bar"] (BE) 26. a free; public; tied ~ ["shelter"] 27. a reptile ~ (at a zoo) ["misc."] 28. a ~ of correction/detention ("a prison"); a disorderly ~ ("a brothel"); (AE) a station ~ ("a police station"); drinks are on the ~ ("drinks are served free") (see also *(the) drinks are on me* at **on**); an open ~ (AE)/show ~ (BE) ("a residence being sold or rented out that is open for inspection") (see also **open house**)

house arrest *n.* to place, put smb. under ~

household *n.* 1. to establish, set up a ~ 2. to run a ~ 3. (the) head of (a) ~

housekeeping *n.* 1. to set up ~ 2. to do ~ 3. light ~

housewarming *n.* to have a ~

housework *n.* 1. to do ~ 2. light ~

housing *n.* affordable, low-cost, low-income, social (BE); council (BE), public (AE); fair (AE), open (AE); off-campus; rent-controlled; student; subsidized; substandard ~

hovel *n.* a miserable, wretched ~

hover *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ around (we ~ed around our guide) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ between (to ~ between life and death) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ over (the fear of a new war ~ed over us)

how *determiner, adv.* 1. ~ about (~ about them?) 2. (used in exclamatory sentences) ~ wonderful! 3. (misc.) ~ ¬on earth/ever¬ can she do it?; ~ else?; ~much/many/often?

howl I *n.* to give, let out a ~ (of)

howl II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in, with (to ~ with pain)

howler *n.* ["blunder"] to make a ~

Hoyle *n.* according to ~ ("according to the rules")

hub *n.* ["focal point"] at the ~ (at the ~ of activity)

huddle I *n.* 1. to go into a ~ 2. in a ~

huddle II *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ around a fire; to ~ together

hue *n.* to raise a ~ and cry

huff *n.* (to leave) in a ~

hug I *n.* 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. an affectionate, loving; bear; big; tight ~ (she gave him a big bear ~) 3. a ~ and a kiss

hug II *v.* 1. to ~ tightly 2. (misc.) to ~ smb. to one (he hugged her tightly to him)

hum *v.* 1. (usu. B; occ. A) ~ the tune to me 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ a tune for smb.) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (the town was ~ming with activity)

human *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's only ~ to seek a better life)

humane *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's not ~ to treat people like that)

humanism *n.* secular ~

humanity *n.* ["quality of being humane"] 1. to display ~ 2. common ~ ["the human race"] 3. a crime against ~

humble *v.* (D; refl.) to ~ before (to ~ oneself before God)

humble pie *n.* (forced) to eat ~ ("(forced) into a humiliating position, (forced) to eat crow")

humiliate *v.* to ~ deeply

humiliating *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ (for us) to take orders from him) 2. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that we have to take orders from him)

humiliation *n.* 1. to suffer ~ 2. abject; bitter; deep; public ~

humility *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 2. in, with ~ (she recognized her responsibility with deep ~)

humor, humour *n.* ["something funny"] 1. bitter, caustic; black; gallows; gentle ~ 2. deadpan, dry, straight; sly, wry; subtle ~ 3. earthy; infectious; irrepressible; slapstick ~ 4. a sense of ~ (see also **sense of humor**) 5. a dash, trace, vein of ~ ["mood"] 6. (a) bad, ill (esp. BE); good ~ (she's in good ~ today) 7. a ~ to + inf. (he's in no ~ to be fooled with!) 8. in a certain ~ (in bad ~)

hump *n.* ["fit of depression"] (colloq.) (BE) 1. it gives me the ~ ("it depresses me") 2. I got; had the ~ ["worst part"] (colloq.) 3. over the ~

hunch *n.* (colloq.) ["feeling"] ["suspicion"] 1. to back, play a ~ ("to act on the basis of a hunch") 2. a ~ that +clause (I have a ~ that she will not come) 3. on a ~ (she did it on a ~)

hundred *n.* by the ~s, in the ~, in their (BE) ~s (the crowd streamed into the studio by the ~s)

hunger I *n.* 1. (formal) to allay, alleviate, appease one's ~; to experience ~; more usu. is: to be hungry 2. to satisfy smb.'s ~; to gratify one's ~ (fig.) 3. (a) gnawing, ravenous ~ 4. (to have) a ~ for (~ for knowledge) 5. of ~ (to die of ~)

hunger II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ after (formal), for (to ~ for the truth; "Blessed are they which do ~ and thirst after righteousness" – "The Sermon on the Mount," *The Bible: St. Matthew*) 2. (E) (formal) to ~ to know the truth

hungry *adj.* 1. ravenously ~ 2. (cannot stand alone) ~ for (~ for the truth) 3. to be, feel; get; go ~

hunker down *v.* (D; intr.) ("to settle down") to ~ for (to ~ for the night)

hunt I *n.* 1. to organize, stage a ~ 2. to go on a ~ 3. a ~ for (a ~ for big game; the ~ for a new director) (see also **witch-hunt**)

hunt II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for big game; to ~ for a new director) 2. (misc.) to ~ high and low (for smt. lost)

hunter *n.* a bargain; big-game; bounty; fortune; head; souvenir ~

hurdle *n.* 1. to clear, overcome, take a ~ 2. to hit, knock down a ~ 3. (the) high; low ~s 4. (misc.) to fall at the last ~ (usu. fig.) ("to fail at the last minute")

hurl *v.* 1. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ at (the enemy troops ~ed themselves at us; to ~ insults at smb.) 2. (misc.) to ~ oneself into the fray

hurrah *n.* the last ~ ("a last attempt")

hurricane *n.* 1. a severe, violent ~ 2. a ~ comes up; hits, strikes; rages (the ~ struck several cities) 3. a ~ blows itself out, blows over, dies down, subsides 4. (in) the eye of a ~

hurry I *n.* 1. in a ~ (in their ~ to leave, they forgot their keys) 2. a ~ to + inf. (we were in a ~ to finish; they were in no ~ to leave the party)

hurry II *v.* 1. (E) we ~ried to finish 2. (P; intr.) to ~ across the road; to ~ towards the school; to ~ to the scene

hurry back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (she ~ried back from her lunch break to her desk)

hurt I *adj.* ["insulted"] 1. deeply, very ~ ["injured"] 2. badly, seriously; slightly ~

hurt II *v.* 1. to ~ badly, seriously; deeply; slightly 2. (R) it ~s (me) to cough = it ~s when I cough; it ~s me to see her ruin her life

hurtful *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. (formal) ~ to

hurtle *v.* (d ; intr.) to ~ through the air (a large rock came ~ling through the air)

husband *n.* 1. to beat ; desert, leave ; divorce one's ~ 2. a common-law ; cuckolded ; estranged ~ ; ex-husband, former ; faithful ; future ; henpecked ; jealous ; late ; philandering, unfaithful ~ 3. (misc.) she had two children by her first ~ ; ~ and wife

husbandry *n.* animal ~

hush *n.* 1. a ~ fell (over/on the crowd) 2. a breathless, deathly ~ ("There's a breathless ~ in the Close to-night" – Sir Henry Newbolt (1862–1938), "Vitaï Lampada")

hustings *n.* ["route of an election campaign"] to go out on the ~

hustle I *n.* (slang) ["quick movement"] to get a ~ on (AE)

hustle II *v.* (P ; tr.) the police ~d the prisoner into a cell

hut *n.* 1. a bamboo ; thatched ~ 2. a Nissen (BE), Quonset (AE) ~

hutch *n.* a rabbit ~

hydrant *n.* 1. to open, turn on a ~ 2. to turn off a ~ 3. a fire ~

hyena *n.* 1. a brown ; laughing ; spotted ; striped ~ 2. a ~ howls 3. a clan, pack of ~s

hygiene *n.* 1. to practice (good) ~ 2. dental, oral ; feminine ; field ; industrial ; mental ; personal ; sexual ; social ~

hygienist *n.* a dental, oral ~

hymen *n.* 1. to rupture a ~ 2. an intact ~

hymn *n.* 1. to chant, sing a ~ 2. a rousing ; solemn ~ 3. a ~ to (a ~ to freedom)

hype *n.* 1. to fall for ; see through ~ 2. media ~ 3. ~ surrounds (the media ~ surrounding their romance) 4. ~ about (I hope you haven't fallen for all the media ~ about their romance !)

hypersensitive *adj.* 1. ~ about (~ about charges of corruption) 2. ~ to (~ to criticism)

hypertension *n.* essential ; malignant ; mild ; severe ~

hypnosis *n.* 1. to induce, produce ~ 2. to put smb. under ~ 3. to experience, have, undergo ~ 4. during, under ~

hypnotism *n.* to practice ~

hypocrisy *n.* 1. to display ~ 2. sheer ~ 3. ~ about (her ~ about the other political party's tax policy) 4. ~ to + inf. (it was sheer ~ to criticize the other political party for its tax policy)

hypocritical *adj.* 1. ~ about (she was being ~ about the other political party's tax policy) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to criticize the other political party for its tax policy)

hypothesis *n.* 1. to advance, formulate, propose, put forth/forward a ~ 2. to confirm, vindicate ; disconfirm ; support ; test a ~ 3. to accept ; refute ; reject a ~ 4. a null ; working ~ 5. a ~ about, on (her working ~ about the role of rodents in spreading the disease) 6. that + clause (she advanced the ~ that the disease was spread by rodents) 7. on the ~ (on the ~ that the disease is spread by rodents, we should acquire some cats)

hypothesize *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) to ~ about (she ~d about the role of rodents in spreading the disease) 2. (L) she ~d that the disease was spread by rodents

hysterectomy *n.* 1. to do, perform a ~ (on) 2. to have, undergo a ~

hysteria *n.* 1. to produce ~ 2. mass ~ 3. an attack, fit ; note of ~ 4. ~ about, over (~ about imaginary threats)

hysterical *adj.* ~ about, over (~ about imaginary threats)

hysterics *n.* 1. to have ~ 2. a fit of ~ (to have a fit of ~) 3. in ~ (about, over) (her jokes had us in ~)

I

ice *n.* 1. to form, make, produce ~ 2. to melt ~ 3. hard; thick ~ 4. cracked; crushed; ~ 5. dry ~ 6. black; pack ~ 7. ~ forms; melts 8. a block; patch; sheet of ~ 9. on the ~ (to slip on the ~) 10. (misc.) to break the ~ ("to create a more relaxed atmosphere"); to cut no ~ (with) ("to have no effect 'on'"); on thin ~ ("in a dangerous situation"); on ~ ("in reserve"); (a) water ~

iceberg *n.* 1. to hit, strike an ~ (the ship struck an ~) 2. (misc.) (fig.) the tip of the ~

icebox *n.* (colloq.) (AE) to raid the ~ ("to eat heartily esp. during the night")

ice cream *n.* 1. to make ~ 2. hand-dipped ~ 3. chocolate; French (AE); Italian (esp. BE); strawberry; vanilla ~ 4. a portion; scoop; tub (esp. BE) of ~

icicle *n.* an ~ forms; hangs down

icon *n.* ["religious"] 1. to paint an ~ ["computers"] 2. to click on an ~ ["celebrity"] 3. a cultural ~

I. D. see **identification** 4

idea *n.* 1. to come up with, conceive, get, hit upon; develop; have an ~ 2. to consider, explore, entertain, toy with an ~ 3. to communicate, disseminate ~s 4. to market, package an ~ 5. to implement an ~ 6. to endorse, espouse, favor an ~ 7. to dismiss, drop, reject an ~ 8. a bright, brilliant, clever, good, great, ingenious; logical ~ 9. a fresh, new, novel ~ 10. a clear; fixed; general; main ~ 11. a daring; grandiose ~ (the glimmering of a daring new ~ came into my head – and then another one occurred to me!) 12. an approximate, rough; vague ~ 13. any, no; the faintest, foggiest, slightest ~ (she didn't have any ~ (of) what I meant, she had no ~ what I meant, she didn't have the faintest ~ of what I meant) 14. an old, outmoded, stale, warmed-over (AE) ~ 15. an absurd, bad, crackpot, crazy, fantastic, far-fetched, foolish, wild; desperate; silly, simplistic, stupid; strange ~ (such a foolish ~ will never catch on!) 16. an ~ about, of; behind (what's your ~ of a good night out?; *The Idea of a University* (1852, 1858)– John Henry, Cardinal Newman; the ~ behind our advertising campaign is to appeal to young people) 17. an ~ to + inf. (it was her ~ to attend the meeting; was it really such a good ~ for her to attend the meeting?) 18. the ~ that + clause (I had no ~ that she would attend the meeting) 19. (misc.) "have you any ~ why she attended the meeting?" "No, I have absolutely no ~ why!"; he didn't get the ~ ("he did not understand"); an association of ~s; what's the big ~?

ideal I *adj.* 1. ~ for 2. (misc.) less than ~ (lots of stress is less than ~ for mental health)

ideal II *n.* 1. to attain; realize an ~ 2. a lofty, noble ~; high ~s

idealistic *adj.* ~ about

identical *adj.* ~ to, with (his hat is ~ to mine)

identification *n.* ["process of identifying"] 1. to make an ~ 2. (a) positive ~ 3. a means of ~ ["document"] 4. to carry; show ~ (see also *identification parade* at **parade**)

identify *v.* 1. to ~ positively 2. (B) she ~fied the intruder to the police 3. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ as; to (he ~fied himself as an old friend of the family; she ~fied him to the police as the intruder) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ by (the police ~fied her by her fingerprints) 5. (d.; intr., refl., tr.) to ~ with (she always ~fies (herself) with the underdog; he didn't want to be ~fied with the liberals)

identity *n.* 1. to establish smb.'s ~ 2. to conceal; reveal one's ~ 3. to assume smb.'s ~ 4. mistaken ~ (it was a case of mistaken ~) (see also *identity parade* at **parade**)

ideology *n.* 1. to embrace; espouse; reject an ~ 2. the dominant, prevailing ~ (to reject the prevailing ~)

idiocy *n.* 1. congenital ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it was sheer ~ for him to arrive late!)

idiot *n.* 1. a blithering, blooming, blundering, confounded, driveling, gibbering; prize, proper (BE), real, right (BE) ~ 2. the local, village ~ 3. an ~ to + inf. (he was a real ~ to have arrived late!)

idiotic *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for/of him to arrive late = he was ~ to arrive late! = to arrive late was an ~ thing for him to do!)

idle *adj.* 1. to lie, remain, stand ~ (the machinery stood ~ for a month) 2. to be left ~ 3. bone ~ (don't ask her to help: she's bone ~!)

idol *n.* 1. to worship an ~ 2. (fig.) a fallen; matinee; national; pop; popular ~; an ~ with feet of clay

idolize *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~d as a movie star)

ignition *n.* (in a car) 1. to switch on, turn on the ~ 2. to switch off, turn off the ~ 3. in the ~ (the key is already in the ~)

ignorance *n.* 1. to betray, demonstrate, display, show ~ 2. blissful ~ 3. abysmal, appalling, blatant, complete, crass, profound, total ~ 4. ~ about; of (I had to admit my complete ~ of the facts) 5. in ~ (of) (I was in complete ~ of the facts; in my ~, I believed that there were tigers in Africa)

ignorant *adj.* 1. blissfully ~ 2. abysmally, appallingly, blatantly, completely, crassly, profoundly, totally ~ 3. ~ in; of (~ of the facts)

ignore *v.* 1. to ~ completely, totally; conveniently (they conveniently ~d some uncomfortable facts) 2. (K) you'll have to ~ their talking so loud 3. (misc.) to ~ at one's peril (we ~ these inconvenient facts at our peril!)

ilk *n.* ["kind"] of a certain ~ (people of that/his ~ are not to be trusted!)

ill *adj.* 1. to be taken ~ 2. to become, fall, get; feel ~ 3. chronically; critically, dangerously, desperately, gravely, seriously; incurably, terminally ~ 4. emotionally; mentally; physically ~ 5. ~ with (she is ~ with a tropical disease) 6. (misc.) ~ at ease (“uncomfortable”) ; the situation bodes ~ for the future ; it makes me ~ to smell that sewage ; it ~ becomes / behoves (BE) / behooves (AE) you to say such things

ill-advised *adj.* ~ to + inf. (you would be ~ to come late)

ill-disposed *adj.* (formal) (cannot stand alone) ~ to, towards (they are ~ towards me)

illegal *adj.* 1. ~ for (smoking is ~ for minors) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to for minors to smoke)

illegitimate *adj.* ~ to + inf. (is it really ~ to pose such questions ?)

ill feeling *n.* 1. to foment, stir up ~ 2. to bear, harbor ~ 3. ~ against 4. ~ over (there was a great deal of ~ stirred up over the appointment)

ill-informed *adj.* ~ about, on

illiteracy *n.* 1. to eliminate, stamp out ~ 2. adult ; computer ; functional ; widespread ~ 3. ~ in (~ even in one’s native language)

illiterate *adj.* 1. completely ; functionally ~ 2. computationally, computer ~ 3. ~ in (~ even in one’s native language)

illness *n.* 1. to get over an ~ 2. to come down with, go down with (BE), develop an ~ 3. to die of an ; succumb to an ~ 4. (an) acute ; sudden ~ 5. (a) chronic ; lingering 6. (a) minor ; slight ~ 7. (a) catastrophic ; grave, major, serious ~ 8. (a) fatal ; incurable, untreatable ; terminal ~ 9. mental ; organic ; psychosomatic ~ 10. (misc.) the management ; treatment of an ~ (for additional combinations, see **ailment**, **disease**)

illogical *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ to + inf. (it’s ~ of / for us to assume that they won’t attend)

ills *n.* economic ; social ~

illuminating *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to read the candidate’s earlier speeches)

illusion *n.* 1. to create, give, produce an ~ 2. to cherish, harbor, have an ~ 3. to dispel, shatter an ~ 4. an optical ~ 5. an ~ about 6. an ~ to + inf. (it’s an ~ for him to think that she really loves him) 7. an ~ that + clause (he has no ~s that she really loves him) 8. under an ~ (he’s under no ~s that she really loves him)

illustrate *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ by, with (she ~d her lectures by showing slides / with slides) 2. (L) their report ~d that we had gone wrong 3. (Q ; to) the incident ~d (to us) where we had gone wrong

illustration *n.* [“example”] 1. to give, offer, provide an ~ 2. a powerful ; verbal ~ 3. by way of ~ [“picture”] 4. to draw an ~ 5. a graphic ~ 6. an ~ reveals, shows (the ~ showed exactly where we’d gone wrong)

illustrative *adj.* ~ of (~ of smb.’s views)

ill will *n.* 1. to stir up ~ 2. to bear, feel, harbor ~ towards smb. (despite everything, I bear no ~ towards him = despite everything, I bear him no ~) 3. ~ about, over ; between (there’s no ~ between us about what happened)

image *n.* [“position, standing”] 1. to conjure up ; project an ~ 2. to bolster, improve ; change smb.’s ~ 3. a corporate ; cultural ; negative ; positive ; public ; tarnished ~ (~ consultants will help us to change our somewhat negative corporate ~ and project a more positive one) [“picture”] 4. (computers) to digitize an ~ 5. a clear ~ 6. a mental ~ (I have a clear mental ~ of that place, conjured up by my memories of it and reinforced by photographs) 7. a mirror ~ [“misc.”] 8. a spitting ~ (he’s the spitting ~ of George Washington !) ; to be created in the ~ of God ; a graven ~ ; a virtual ~ (computers)

imagery *n.* poetic ; vivid ~

imagination *n.* 1. to capture, excite, fire smb.’s ~ 2. to have (an) ~ 3. to show, use one’s ~ 4. to lack ~ 5. to defy, stagger, stir smb.’s ~ 6. an active, fertile, lively, vivid ; creative ~ 7. a feeble ; wild ~ 8. a figment of smb.’s ~ 9. the ~ to + inf. (does she have the ~ to figure out what happened ?) 10. in smb.’s ~ 11. (misc.) by no stretch of the ~ (by no stretch of the ~ can he be called a genius !) ; it is pure ~ on your part ; to leave nothing to the ~

imagine *v.* 1. (d ; tr.) to ~ as (can you ~ him as an actor ?) 2. (G) he can’t ~ becoming an actor without strong motivation 3. (J) can you ~him becoming an actor ? 4. (K) it is difficult to ~ his becoming an actor 5. (L) I don’t ~ that he will become an actor 6. (N ; used with an adjective, noun, past participle) can you ~ him an actor ? 7. (Q) can you ~ how thrilled he must have been to become an actor ?! 8. (misc.) has he really become an actor – or am I just ~ning things ?

imbalance *n.* 1. to correct, redress an ~ 2. a trade ~ 3. an ~ between, in (a trade ~ in imports and exports between two countries)

imbecile *n.* an ~ to + inf. (he was a real ~ to have arrived late !)

imbecilic *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for / of him to arrive late = he was ~ to arrive late ! = to arrive late was an ~ thing for him to do !)

imbed see **embed**

imbued *adj.* (cannot stand alone) 1. deeply, profoundly, thoroughly ~ 2. ~ with (~ with fighting spirit)

imitation *n.* 1. to do, give an ~ of 2. a pale ~ 3. in ~ of

imitative *adj.* (formal) ~ of

immaterial *adj.* 1. wholly ~ 2. ~ to 3. (misc.) it is ~ whether she attends or not ; it is ~ how or when they get here

immature *adj.* 1. emotionally ; mentally ; physically ~ 2. ~ for (she is ~ for her age) 3. to + inf. (it was ~ of her to do that)

immaturity *n.* to display ~

immerse *v.* 1. to ~ deeply 2. (D ; refl., tr.) to ~ in (she ~d herself in the water ; ~d in one’s work)

immersion *n.* 1. total ~ 2. ~ in (total ~ in one’s work)

immigrant *n.* 1. an illegal ; legal ~ 2. an ~ from ; to (~s to Canada)

immigrate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from; into, to (to ~ into a country)

immigration *n.* 1. illegal; legal ~ 2. a flood; wave of ~ 3. ~ from; into, to

immodest *adj.* 1. ~ about (she was ~ about her achievements) 2. ~ in (she was ~ in boasting about her achievements) 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to boast about her achievements)

immoral *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to steal)

immune *adj.* ["exempt"] 1. ~ from (~ from prosecution; her prestige made her ~ from criticism) ["unaffected"] 2. ~ to (~ to a disease; her self-confidence made her ~ to criticism)

immunity *n.* ["resistance to disease"] 1. to acquire, develop; have ~ 2. to confer, give ~ (this shot will give you ~ for about twelve months; that vaccine will confer lifelong ~) 3. acquired; natural ~ 4. active; passive ~ 5. ~ against ["exemption; special status"] 6. to grant ~ to 7. to have ~ 8. ~ from, to (~ from prosecution; ~ to a disease) (see also **diplomatic immunity**)

immunization *n.* 1. to carry out a (mass) ~ against 2. active; passive ~

immunize *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ against (the children have been ~d against polio)

impact I *n.* 1. to have, make an ~ on, upon 2. to lessen, soften; sustain, take, withstand the ~ 3. (a) considerable, strong; cumulative; great; lasting; profound ~ 4. (a) dramatic; emotional; favorable ~ 5. (an) environmental ~ 6. on ~ (the pole collapses on ~)

impact II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (global warming ~ing on the environment) USAGE NOTE: Those who use *impact* as a verb can also use it as a transitive verb: *global warming ~ing the environment.*

impaired *adj.* hearing-impaired; visually ~

impairment *n.* (a) hearing; memory; mental; physical; speech; visual ~

impale *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ on, upon (the driver was thrown from the car and ~d on a fence)

impart *v.* (B) to ~ knowledge to students

impartiality *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 2. ~ in

impasse *n.* 1. to reach an ~ 2. to break an ~ 3. at an ~ (negotiations were at an ~)

impatience *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. ~ at; with (we noted their ~ at the delay and their ~ with the organizers of the conference) 3. ~ to + inf. (we noted their ~ for the conference to start)

impatient *adj.* 1. ~ at, with (~ at the delay; ~ with the organizers of the conference) 2. ~ for (I was ~ for the conference to start) 3. ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to start)

impeach *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. for taking bribes)

impediment *n.* 1. a speech ~ 2. an ~ to (an ~ to progress)

impel *v.* (formal) 1. (d; tr.) to ~ into, to 2. (H) her conscience ~led her to intervene

impelled *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (she felt ~ to intervene)

imperative I *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to act now) 2. ~ that + clause; subj. (it is ~ that you be/should be/are (esp. BE) present)

imperative II *n.* 1. a moral ~ 2. an ~ that + clause; subj. (it is a moral ~ that you be/should be/are (esp. BE) present)

imperceptible *adj.* ~ to (~ to the touch)

imperfect *n.* (grammar) the future; past; present ~

imperfection *n.* a slight ~ (in)

impersonation *n.* to do, give an ~

impertinence *n.* the ~ to + inf. (he had the ~ to demand a raise!)

impertinent *adj.* 1. ~ to 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to demand a raise = he was ~ to demand a raise)

impervious *adj.* ~ to (~ to criticism)

impetuous *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to do that)

impetus *n.* 1. to give, provide an ~ 2. to gain ~ 3. an extra added; fresh ~ 4. a powerful, strong ~ 5. an ~ to (there was no ~ to hard work) 6. an ~ to + inf. (there was no ~ to work harder)

impinge *v.* (formal) (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ on smb.'s rights)

impingement *n.* an ~ on, upon

implant I *n.* a breast; dental; heart; kidney ~

implant II *v.* 1. to ~ deeply 2. (d; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ respect for democracy in the younger generation)

implicate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ smb. in a scandal)

implication *n.* 1. to have an ~ 2. a derogatory, negative; serious; significant; subtle ~ 3. an ~ for 4. an ~ that + clause (I resent your ~ that my work is unsatisfactory!) 5. by ~ (he attacked our organization and, by ~, the whole concept behind our work!) 6. (misc.) to realize the full ~s of smt.

implicit *adj.* 1. ~ in (~ in the contract) 2. ~ that + clause (it is ~ in the contract that she will be a partner)

implore *v.* (formal) (H) they ~d her to help

imply *v.* (L; to) she ~lied (to us) that she knew more than she had told the reporters

impolite *adj.* 1. ~ to (interrupting people who are speaking is ~ to them) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to interrupt someone who is speaking; it was ~ of them not to respond)

impoliteness *n.* 1. ~ to

impolitic *adj.* ["inexpedient"] ~ to + inf. (it would be ~ to get involved in their affairs)

import I *n.* 1. a chief, leading, major ~ 2. an ~ from; into, to (~s from abroad)

import II *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; into (we ~ from abroad)

importance *n.* 1. to acquire, assume ~ 2. to attach, attribute ~ to 3. (a) considerable, great, overriding, paramount, primary, prime, utmost, vital ~ (the matter assumed paramount ~) 4. minor, secondary ~ 5. ~ arises from; lies in, resides in (it was a question whose great ~ to us arose from its possible consequences) 6. ~ for, to 7. of ~ (it was a question of great ~ to us)

important *adj.* 1. vitally ~ 2. ~ for (irrigation is ~ for farming) 3. ~ to (attending the meeting was very ~ to her) 4. ~ to + inf. (it is ~for everyone to attend) 5. ~ that + clause; subj. (it is ~ that everyone attend/should attend/attends (BE))

importune *v.* (formal) 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (he ~d us for help) 2. (H) he ~d us to help him

impose *v.* 1. (D; intr., refl.) to ~ on, upon ("to take advantage of") (to ~ on smb.'s good nature; don't ~ yourself on them) 2. (D; tr.) ("to levy") to ~ on (to ~ a new tax on cigarettes)

imposition *n.* an ~ on

impossible I *adj.* 1. almost, next to, practically, quite, virtually, well-nigh ~ 2. physically ~ 3. ~ for (nothing is ~ for them) 4. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ for them to predict the future; that child is ~ to control = it is ~ to control that child = he's an ~ child to control) 5. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that we will be able to attend)

impossible II *n.* 1. to attempt the ~ 2. to do the ~

impracticable *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to put up a new building there)

impractical *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to live in one city and work in another)

imprecation *n.* (formal) 1. to hurl, utter an ~ 2. an ~ against

impregnate *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ with

impress *v.* 1. to ~ deeply; favorably 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (she ~ed me as a scholar) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ on, upon (he tried to ~ on them the importance of being punctual) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ with (she ~ed me with her grasp of the subject) 5. (R) it ~ed me (to learn) that they had cooperated so willingly

impressed *adj.* 1. easily ~ 2. deeply, favorably, greatly, highly, strongly, very; none too; unfavorably ~ 3. ~ by, with (I was ~ by/with their willingness to cooperate) 4. ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to learn that they had cooperated so willingly) 5. ~ that + clause (I was ~ that they had cooperated so willingly)

impression *n.* ["effect"] 1. to convey, create, give an ~ 2. to make an ~ on, upon 3. a deep, indelible, lasting, profound, strong, vivid ~ (they made a lasting ~ on the visitors) 4. an excellent, favorable, good ~ 5. an erroneous, false, inaccurate, wrong ~ (they created an erroneous ~ of their capabilities) 6. a bad, unfavorable ~ 7. a first ~ 8. an ~ that + clause (she conveyed the false ~ that her family was wealthy) ["opinion"] 9. to form, get, gain, have an ~ 10. an accurate; fleeting; general; personal ~ (I got only a fleeting ~ of her performance) 11. an excellent, favorable, good ~ 12. an erroneous, false, inaccurate, wrong ~ (we formed an erroneous ~ of their abilities) 13. a bad, unfavorable ~ 14. a first ~ 15. an ~ that + clause (we had the false ~ that her family was wealthy) 16. under an ~ (we were under the ~ that her family was wealthy) ["mark"] 17. to make, take an ~ of a key ["imitation"] 18. to do an ~ (the comedian does humorous ~s)

imprimatur *n.* 1. to get, receive an ~ 2. the official ~

imprint I *n.* 1. to bear an ~ (to bear the ~ of genius) 2. to leave one's ~ on 3. an indelible ~ 4. (misc.) published under the ~ of a vanity press

imprint II *v.* (d; refl., tr.) to ~ in, on, upon (the scene ~ed itself on their minds)

imprison *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. for fraud; to be ~ed for life)

imprisonment *n.* life ~

improbable *adj.* 1. equally; highly, very ~ 2. ~ that + clause (it's highly ~ that she will show up)

improper *adj.* 1. ~ for (their attire is ~ for this occasion) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to enter that restaurant without a jacket) 3. ~ that + clause; subj. (it is ~ that she state/should state/states (BE) her own opinion)

impropriety *n.* 1. crass ~ 2. the ~ of (we condemned the crass ~ of passing off smb. else's work as one's own) 3. with ~ (to behave with crass ~)

improve *v.* 1. to ~ beyond all recognition, dramatically, greatly, noticeably, significantly, very much; gradually, slowly; rapidly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in (she has ~d in English) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (I cannot ~ on her performance) 4. (misc.) to ~ with age; your work is much ~d!

improvement *n.* 1. to bring about an ~ 2. to show (an) ~ 3. a considerable, decided, definite, distinct, dramatic, great, marked, noticeable, significant, substantial; gradual, slow; minor, slight; rapid ~ 4. an ~ in, of (an ~ in her work; an ~ of service) 5. an ~ on, over, upon (this edition is an ~ over the previous one)

improvisation *n.* to do an ~

improvise *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a given theme)

imprudent *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to sell that property so soon = you were ~ to sell that property so soon)

impudence *n.* 1. brazen ~ 2. the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to answer back like that!)

impudent *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to answer back like that! = she was ~ to answer back like that!)

impulse *n.* ["driving force"] 1. to feel an ~ 2. to curb, repress, resist an ~ 3. an irresistible; sudden ~ 4. an ~ to + inf. (she felt an irresistible ~ to intervene) 5. the ~ behind (what was the ~ behind her intervention?) 6. on, under (an) ~ (to act on ~) ["stimulus"] 7. to convey, transmit an ~ 8. an electrical; nerve ~

impunity *n.* with ~ (to act with ~)

impute *v.* (formal) (d; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ base motives to smb.)

in I *adv.* (colloq.) 1. ~ for ("facing") (they are ~ for trouble) 2. ~ with ("on intimate terms with") (they are ~ with highly influential people)

in II *n.* (colloq.) ["influence"] to have an ~ with smb.

in III *prep.* 1. ~ smb. to + inf. (it's not ~ me to lie; she doesn't have it ~ her to break her word) 2. ~ that + clause (I'm lucky ~ that I have a good job) (see also Usage Note 3 at **fact**)

inability *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, exhibit, show ~ 2. ~ at, in (to display ~ in mathematics) 3. ~ to + inf. (her ~ to pay caused trouble)

inaccessible *adj.* ~ to ~ from; to (unfortunately, the stacks are ~ to the public from the main staircase; the director is remote and ~ to anyone!)

inaccuracy *n.* 1. (a) glaring; total ~ 2. ~ in

inaccurate *adj.* 1. completely; somewhat; strictly, totally ~ 2. ~ in 3. ~ to + inf. (it would be ~ to say that he is lazy)

inadequate *adj.* 1. completely, grossly, totally, woefully ~ 2. ~ for; to (the food was ~ for all of us) 3. ~ to (she was ~ to the task; ~ to the occasion) 4. ~ to + inf. (the supply is ~ to meet the demand)

inadvisable *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for her to remain silent) 2. ~ that + clause; subj. (it was ~ that she remain/should remain/remained (BE) silent)

inapplicable *adj.* ~ to (~ to this particular case)

inappropriate I *adj.* 1. entirely, highly, wholly ~ 2. ~ for; to (~ for us; ~ to the occasion) 3. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ (for passengers) to tip a bus driver) 4. ~ that + clause; may be subj. (it is wholly ~ that passengers tip/should tip a bus driver; it is entirely ~ that he is/should be present)

inattention *n.* ~ to (~ to our needs; ~ to detail)

inattentive *adj.* ~ to (~ to our needs; ~ to detail)

inaudible *adj.* 1. almost, completely, nearly ~ 2. ~ above, over; to (his voice was almost completely ~ to us above the din)

inaugurate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ as (to be ~d as president)

inauguration *n.* 1. to have, hold an ~ (for) 2. the presidential ~ 3. ~ as (his ~ as president)

incantation *n.* to chant, intone, utter an ~

incapable *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ of (she is ~ of cheating)

incarnation *n.* (in) a previous ~

incense *n.* 1. to burn ~ 2. a stick of ~ (the smell of a stick of burning ~)

incensed *adj.* 1. greatly, highly, very ~ 2. ~ about, at, over (she was very ~ over their failure to invite her) 3. ~ to + inf. (she was greatly ~ to learn that they had failed to invite her) 4. ~ that + clause (she was highly ~ that they had failed to invite her)

incentive *n.* 1. to give, offer, provide an ~ 2. to have an ~ 3. a powerful, strong ~ 4. a tax ~ 5. an ~ for 6. an ~ to (an ~ to harder work) 7. an ~ to + inf. (they have no ~ to work harder)

inception *n.* at; from; since smt.'s ~

incest *n.* 1. to commit ~ (with) 2. the crime of ~ 3. ~ between

inch I *n.* 1. to contest, fight for every ~ of one's land 2. a cubic; square ~ 3. every ~ ("to the utmost degree") ("every ~ a king" – Shakespeare, *King Lear*) 4. (to) within an ~ ("almost") (he was beaten (to) within an ~ of his life) 5. (misc.) ~ by ~; to miss smt. by ~es

inch II *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ forward slowly; to ~ towards the goal; to ~ along a corridor

incidence *n.* a high; low ~ (a high ~ of crime in the population, especially among young people)

incident I *adj.* (formal) (cannot stand alone) ~ to (the problems ~ to growing up)

incident II *n.* 1. to cause, give rise to, provoke an ~ 2. to cover up, suppress an ~ 3. an amusing, funny, humorous; curious; nasty, painful, ugly, unpleasant; pleasant; strange; touching ~ 4. a border; diplomatic; international ~ 5. an ~ occurs, takes place 6. without ~ (the ceremony went off without ~)

incidental *adj.* ~ to (the problems ~ to growing up)

incision *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. a deep ~ 3. an ~ into

incisors *n.* central; lateral ~

incite *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ workers to rebellion) 2. (H) to ~ workers to rebel

incitement *n.* ~ to (~ to riot/rebellion)

inclination *n.* 1. to feel an ~ 2. a natural; strong ~ 3. an ~ for, to, towards 4. an ~ to + inf. (the carburetor has an ~ to flood)

incline *v.* (esp. BE) 1. (d; intr.) to ~ to, towards (he ~s to laziness; I ~ to the belief that she is innocent) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ to (the evidence ~s me to the belief that she is innocent) 3. (E) I ~ to believe that she is innocent 4. (H) the evidence ~s me to believe that she is innocent

inclined *adj.* (cannot stand alone) 1. academically; artistically; intellectually; mechanically; musically; romantically; favorably; strongly; very ~ 2. ~ to; towards (I am favorably ~ towards them; I am ~ to the belief that she is innocent) 3. ~ to + inf. (I am ~ to agree; I am ~ to believe that she is innocent) 4. (misc.) I never suspected that he liked dancing: who would have thought he was that way ~?

include *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ among, in (to ~ smb. in a list of candidates; who was ~d among the guests?)

inclusive *adj.* ~ of (is the price ~ of sales tax?)

incognito *adj.*, *adv.* to go, travel; remain ~

incognizant *adj.* (formal) ~ of (~ of the risks involved)

income *n.* 1. to earn an ~ 2. to have an ~ 3. to generate (an) ~ 4. an annual, yearly; monthly; weekly ~ 5. a gross; net; taxable ~ 6. an earned; unearned ~ 7. a fixed; independent ~ 8. a good, high, sizeable ~ 9. a limited, low ~ 10. (an) ~ from (~ from investments) 11. per capita ~ 12. beyond one's ~ (they live beyond their ~) 13. on a certain ~ (to live on a fixed ~) 14. within one's ~ (they live within their ~) 15. (misc.) a source of ~ (what is your principal source of ~?)

incommensurable *adj.* ~ with

incommensurate *adj.* ~ to, with (a reward ~ with the results achieved)

incommunicado *adv.* to hold smb. ~

incompatibility *n.* ~ between, with

incompatible *adj.* 1. mutually ~ 2. ~ with

incompetence *n.* 1. ~ as (her ~ as an interpreter is well known) 2. ~ at, in (~ in English; ~ at/in speaking English)

incompetent *adj.* 1. grossly, hopelessly, totally; very ~ 2. as ~ (he is hopelessly ~ as a teacher) 3. ~ at, in (he is hopelessly ~ at teaching) 4. ~ to + inf. (he is ~ to judge)

incomplete *n.* ["academic deficiency"] (esp. AE) to make up an ~ (the student had to make up three ~s)

incomprehensible *adj.* 1. ~ to 2. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that they refused to come) 3. (misc.) it is ~ to me why they refused to come

inconceivable *adj.* 1. ~ to 2. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that she could be considered for the job)

incongruous *adj.* 1. ~ with 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that those two bitter rivals should be playing on the same team)

inconsiderate *adj.* 1. ~ of (he's ~ of anyone's feelings) 2. towards ~ 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to do that nasty thing)

inconsistency *n.* ~ in

inconsistent *adj.* 1. ~ in (she is ~ in her support of our party) 2. ~ with (~ with our principles)

inconvenience I *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. to put up with (an) ~ 3. (a) considerable, great; minor, slight; temporary ~ 4. an ~ for 5. an ~ to + inf. (it's an ~ to have to shop so far from home)

inconvenience II *v.* (H) I hope that it will not ~ you to stop by tomorrow

inconvenient *adj.* 1. ~ for (will Tuesday be ~ for you?) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is very ~ to have the bus stop so far away = it is very ~ having the bus stop so far away) 3. ~ that + clause (it's very ~ that the bus stop is so far away)

incorporate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into

incorrect *adj.* 1. ~ in (you are ~ in thinking that he is wise) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to say that she is a good administrator; you are ~ to think that he is wise) 3. (misc.) grammatically ~; politically ~; completely ~ in all respects

increase I *n.* 1. a considerable, dramatic, large, sharp, significant, sizable, substantial; gradual; moderate; slight, small; steady ~ 2. a cost-of-living; pay; rate ~ 3. an ~ in (to get a cost-of-living ~ in one's salary; an ~ in coal consumption) 4. on the ~

increase II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ by (production ~d by ten percent) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; to (the physician ~d the dosage from one to four) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ in (the guards were ~d in number)

incredible *adj.* 1. absolutely ~ 2. ~ to 3. ~ that + clause (it was absolutely ~ to me that nobody ¬paid/should have paid¬ attention to the new invention = I find it absolutely ~ that nobody ¬paid/should have paid¬ attention to the new invention)

increment *n.* an ~ in (an ~ in salary)

incriminate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in

inculcate *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ in, into (to ~ ideas in (the minds of) young people) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ (the minds of) young people with ideas)

incumbent I *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ on, upon + to + inf. (it's ~ on you to warn them = warning them is ~ on you)

incumbent II *n.* to unseat an ~

incursion *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. an armed ~ 3. an ~ into (to make an armed ~ into neutral territory)

indebted *adj.* 1. deeply, heavily; (very) much ~ 2. (cannot stand alone) ~ for; to (we are ~ to her for her help)

indecent *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to refuse to help us!)

indecision *n.* ~ about, over

indecisive *adj.* ~ about

indefinite *adj.* ~ about

indelicate *adj.* 1. highly, very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it was highly ~ of her to raise that matter in public)

indemnification *n.* ["compensation, damages"] 1. to award ~ (the court awarded ~) 2. to claim; sue for ~ 3. to pay; receive ~ 4. ~ for 5. in ~ (to award one thousand dollars in ~ for injuries sustained in the accident)

indemnify *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. for injuries sustained in an accident)

indemnity *n.* 1. to pay an ~ 2. double ~ 3. an ~ against, for, from

indent *v.* (d; intr.) ("to request officially") (BE) to ~ for; on (we had to ~ on the company for new computers)

indentation *n.* to make an ~

independence *n.* 1. to achieve, gain, win ~ from (when did the state gain its ~ from the church in your country?) 2. to assert, declare one's ~ from, of (the state's ~ of the church) 3. to grant ~ 4. to lose one's ~ 5. financial; political ~

independent *adj.* 1. fiercely, very ~ 2. financially ~ 3. ~ from, of (when did you become financially ~ of/from your parents?; in our country church and state are ~ of each other)

independently *adv.* ~ of (scientists working ~ of one another)

index *n.* ["alphabetical list"] 1. to compile, do, make an ~ 2. an author; card; cumulative; subject ~ 3. an ~ to (an ~ to a book) ["indicator"] 4. a consumer-price, cost-of-living; price; retail-price ~ 5. an ~ to (an ~ to economic progress) ["ratio of one dimension to another"] 6. a cephalic; cranial; facial ~

indexed *adj.* ~ to (pensions ~ to the cost-of-living index are index-linked pensions)

Indian *n.* an American ~ USAGE NOTE: To somebody from Canada or the United States, a primary meaning of *Indian* is "American Indian". To somebody from other English-speaking countries, the primary meaning is "somebody from India." Note that a *West Indian* is always somebody from the West Indies. In contemporary usage, *American Indian* is being replaced by *Native American* in the USA and by *First-Nation person* in Canada.

indicate *v.* 1. to ~ clearly 2. (B) she ~d her reasons to us 3. (L; to) they ~d (to us) that they would sign the contract 4. (Q; to) they ~d (to us) why they would sign

indication *n.* 1. to give an ~ 2. a clear ~ 3. every; no ~ 4. an ~ that + clause (there is every ~ that she will recover)

indicative I *adj.* ~ of

indicative II *n.* (grammar) in the ~ (the verb was in the ~)

indict *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. for murder)

indictment *n.* (usu. legal) 1. to hand up (AE), issue, present, return an ~ 2. to waive (the) ~ 3. to quash an ~ 4. (fig.) a damning, stinging, swingeing (BE); sweeping ~ (of) (a book that is a damning ~ of modern materialism) 5. an ~ against 6. an ~ for (there was an ~ against him for a crime) 7. on ~ (to try a case on ~)

indifference *n.* 1. to affect, feign ~ 2. to display, show ~ 3. complete; marked; studied ~ 4. ~ about, concerning 5. ~ to, towards 6. with ~ 7. (misc.) it's a matter of complete ~ to me whether or not she comes

indifferent *adj.* 1. to remain ~ 2. ~ about, concerning 3. ~ to, towards

indigenous *adj.* ~ to

indigestion *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. to give smb. ~ (pickles give me ~) 3. to get; have; suffer from ~ 4. acute, severe; chronic ~ 5. an attack; touch of ~

indignant *adj.* 1. ~ about, at, over 2. ~ that + clause (we were ~ that the performance was canceled) 3. (misc.) to wax ~ (over smt.)

indignation *n.* 1. to arouse ~ (in smb.); to fill smb. with ~ 2. to express; feel, show ~ 3. burning; deep; growing, rising; helpless; public; righteous ~ 4. ~ about, at, over (to feel ~ at gross injustice) 5. to smb.'s ~ (to our ~, the performance was canceled) 6. ~ that + clause (our ~ that the performance was canceled)

indignity *n.* 1. to inflict an ~ on 2. to suffer ~ties

indiscreet *adj.* 1. ~ in 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to say that)

indiscretion *n.* 1. to commit an ~ 2. a youthful ~

indiscriminate *adj.* ~ in

indispensable *adj.* ~ for, to (~ to life)

indisposed *adj.* (formal) ~ to + inf. (she appears ~ to go)

indisputable *adj.* ~ that + clause (it is ~ that the evidence was tampered with)

indistinguishable *adj.* ~ from

individualism *n.* rugged ~

individuality *n.* to express one's ~

indoctrinate *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ against; in; with 2. (H) their leaders ~d them to believe that their culture was superior

indoctrinated *adj.* ~ to + inf. (they were ~ to believe that their culture was superior)

indoctrination *n.* ~ against; in; with

indoors *adv.* to be; come; go; stay ~

induce *v.* (H) she could not ~ us to work harder

inducement *n.* 1. to give, offer, provide; have an ~ 2. a powerful, strong ~ 3. a financial, monetary ~ 4. an ~ to (money can be a powerful ~ to harder work) 5. an ~ to + inf. (we had no ~ to work harder)

induct *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into an official position); (esp. AE: to ~ smb. into the armed forces)

induction *n.* ~ into

indulge *v.* (d; intr., refl., tr.) to ~ in (to ~ in the luxury of a nice warm bath; he ~s her in everything)

indulgence *n.* 1. to grant an ~ 2. to ask for smb.'s ~ 3. ~ to, towards

indulgent *adj.* ~ to, towards

industry *n.* 1. to build up, develop (an) ~ 2. (an) ~ springs up 3. a basic, key; fledgling ~ 4. a cottage; defense; service; high-tech ~ 5. heavy; light; manufacturing ~ 6. the aerospace; aircraft; automobile (esp. AE), car, motor-manufacturing (BE); building, construction; coal; computer; cosmetics; dairy; film; food; leisure; machine-tool; meat-packing; music; pharmaceutical; shipbuilding; steel; textile; tourist, travel; trucking (esp. AE) ~ 7. a smokestack ("old, obsolete") ~ 8. (misc.) government often regulates ~; a branch of ~ USAGE NOTE: Such phrases as "the Shakespeare industry" or "the race-relations industry" describe and denigrate activity in a named area whose practitioners seem more interested in the quantity of their work than in its quality and may even do more harm than good: "another mediocre production of *Hamlet* from the Shakespeare ~."

ineffective *adj.* 1. ~ against (~ against the common cold) 2. ~ in (~ in fighting crime) 3. ~ to + inf. (it would be ~ (for you) to respond to the charges)

inefficiency *n.* 1. gross ~ 2. ~ in (gross ~ in fighting crime)

inefficient *adj.* 1. grossly, hopelessly, very ~ 2. ~ at, in (she was very ~ at getting things done; they were very ~ in reducing waste) 3. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to set up two offices)

inelegant *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to phrase the request in that manner)

ineligibility *n.* 1. ~ for 2. ~ to + inf. (~ to vote)

ineligible *adj.* 1. ~ for 2. ~ to + inf. (she is still ~ to vote)

inept *adj.* ~ at, in

ineptitude *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display ~ 2. ~ at, in

inequality *n.* 1. to increase; maintain; reduce ~ 2. gross; racial; religious; sexual; social ~ 3. ~ among, between (~ between the sexes) 4. ~ in (~ in pay) 5. ~ of (~ of opportunity)

inertia *n.* 1. sheer ~ 2. through ~

inessential *adj.* 1. ~ for; to 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ for all students to be present) 3. ~ that + clause; subj. (it is ~ that all students ¬be/should be/are (BE)¬ present)

inevitable *adj.* ~ that + clause (it was ~ that she would find out)

inexcusable *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to blurt it out) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that he blurted it out)

inexperienced *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ at, in, with (very ~ at using computers = very ~ with computers)

infallibility *n.* 1. papal ~ 2. ~ in

infallible *adj.* ~ in

infancy *n.* ["first stage"] in one's/its ~ (the industry was still in its ~)

infant *n.* 1. to breast-feed, nurse, suckle an ~ 2. to bubble (esp. AE), burp an ~ 3. to wean an ~ 4. a newborn; premature ~ (see also **baby** 7–9, 13–15, *infant mortality* at **mortality)**

infanticide *n.* to commit ~

infantile *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of/for you to behave like that = you were ~ to behave like that)

infantry *n.* light; motorized; mountain ~

infatuated *adj.* ~ with

infatuation *n.* ~ with

infect *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (they were ~ed with an unidentified virus)

infection *n.* 1. to cause; pass on, spread, transmit (an) ~ 2. to prevent (an) ~ 3. to treat an ~ 4. ~ an acute; chronic; deep; latent; localized; minor, slight, superficial; primary; secondary; serious, severe; systemic ~ 5. (an) ~ sets in; spreads

infer *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ a conclusion from the facts) 2. (L) I ~ that my proposal has been accepted 3. (Q) we had to ~ why she had done it

inference *n.* 1. to draw, make an ~ from 2. an invalid; valid ~ 3. an ~ that + clause (I drew the ~ that my proposal had been accepted) 4. by ~

inferior *adj.* 1. clearly, decidedly, definitely, far, (very) much, vastly ~ 2. ~ in (~ in numbers; ~ in rank) 3. ~ to (he felt ~ to all the other competitors)

inferiority *n.* 1. intellectual; social ~ 2. a feeling of ~ 3. ~ in; to (a feeling of ~ in skill to the other competitors)

inferno *n.* a blazing, raging, roaring ~

infested *adj.* ~ with (their clothing was ~ed with lice)

infidelity *n.* 1. conjugal, marital ~ 2. ~ to (~ to one's ideals)

infighting *n.* 1. political ~ 2. ~ among, between

infiltrate *v.* (D; intr., refl., trans.) to ~ into

infiltration *n.* ~ into; through (enemy ~ into our lines)

infinitive *n.* 1. to split an ~ 2. a split ~

infinity *n.* to ~

inflamed *adj.* ~ with (they were ~d with enthusiasm for their cause)

inflammable *adj.* highly, very ~

inflammation *n.* 1. to cause; reduce (an) ~ 2. a mild; severe ~ 3. (an) ~ subsides 4. (an) ~ in (an ~ in the throat)

inflation *n.* 1. to cause; fuel, increase ~ 2. to bring down, control, curb, reduce ~ 3. creeping; double-digit ("10% or more"); galloping, high, rampant, runaway, uncontrolled; single-digit ("less than 10%") ~ 4. the rate of ~ (the rate of ~ stands at three percent)

inflection, inflexion *n.* a falling; rising ~

inflexibility *n.* 1. to demonstrate, show ~ 2. ~ in; towards 3. the ~ to + inf. (she has too much ~ to cope with the job)

inflexible *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ about, as regards, when it comes to 3. ~ in; towards, with 4. (misc.) (she is too ~ to cope with the job)

inflict *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ on, upon (the enemy ~ed heavy losses on us)

influence I *n.* 1. to exert, have ~ on; to exercise ~ over 2. to use one's ~ 3. to wield ~ 4. to bring ~ to bear 5. to flaunt one's ~ 6. (colloq.) to peddle ~ 7. to consolidate, strengthen one's ~ 8. to counteract, curb, neutralize smb.'s ~ 9. (a) bad, baneful, negative; pernicious; undue; unwholesome ~ 10. (a) beneficial, good, positive, salutary; calming; civilizing; leavening; moderating ~ 11. (a) considerable; far-reaching; lasting; major; powerful, profound, strong ~ 12. (a) direct; indirect ~ 13. (a) cultural; moral ~ 14. an ~ for (an ~ for good) 15. ~ on; with 16. the ~ to + inf. (they have enough ~ to get the bill passed) 17. under smb.'s ~; under the ~ of (to come under smb.'s ~; to drive under the ~ (of alcohol)) 18. (misc.) outside ~s = ~s from outside; a sphere of ~; an ~ peddler (AE), pedlar

influence II *v.* 1. to ~ deeply, profoundly, strongly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in (who ~d her in her decision to do that?) 3. (H) who ~d her to do that?

influential *adj.* ~ in

influx *n.* an ~ from; into

inform *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ about, of (we ~ed them of the incident) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ against, on (the criminal ~ed on his accomplices (to the police)) 3. (L; must have an object) she ~ed them that she would come = "I'll come," she ~ed them. 4. (Q; must have an object) the thief ~ed the police where the money was hidden

informal *adj.* ~ with (she's ~ with everyone)

informant *n.* a native ~

information *n.* 1. to disseminate, furnish, give, offer, provide ~ 2. to collect, dig up, find, gather; extract ~ 3. to classify ~ 4. to disclose, divulge, leak ~ 5. to declassify ~ 6. to feed ~ (into a computer) 7. to access; retrieve ~ (from a computer) 8. to save; store ~ (in a computer) 9. to cover up, suppress, withhold ~ 10. classified, confidential; detailed; firsthand; inside; misleading; reliable; secondhand; secret; useful ~ 11. (AE) long-distance ~ (BE has *long-distance enquiries, trunk enquiries*) 12. ~ relates to (we have ~ relating to her return to this country) 13. an item, piece of ~ 14. ~ about, on (statistics that provide reliable ~ about poverty) 15. ~ that + clause (we have ~ (to the effect) that she has returned to this country) 16. for smb.'s ~ (for your ~, she has already returned to this country!) USAGE NOTE: *For Your Information* can be abbreviated to *FYI.*

informative *adj.* 1. ~ about (the statistics were very ~ about poverty) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to read the latest statistics about poverty)

informed *adj.* 1. officially; reliably; unofficially 2. to keep smb. ~ 3. ~ about, of (we were reliably ~ of her return to this country) 4. ~ that + clause (we were reliably ~ that she had returned to this country)

informer *n.* 1. to turn ("become") ~ 2. a police ~

infraction *n.* 1. to commit an ~ 2. a major; minor ~ (to commit a minor ~ of the law)

infringe *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ on smb.'s rights)

infringement *n.* an ~ of, on (does wire-tapping constitute an ~ of people's rights?)

infuriate *v.* (R) it ~d me (to read) that he had been indicted

infuriated *adj.* 1. ~ about, at, over; with (I was ~ at the news of his indictment = I was ~ about his indictment) 2. ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to read that he had been indicted) 3. ~ that + clause (I was ~ that he had been indicted)

infuriating *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to read that he had been indicted) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that he had been indicted)

infuse *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ new life into the troops) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ the troops with new life)

infusion *n.* 1. an herbal ~ 2. an intravenous ~ 3. an ~ into (an ~ of new resources into a project; an ~ of new life into the troops)

ingenious *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to solve the problem so quickly)

ingenuity *n.* 1. to exercise; show ~ 2. human ~ 3. the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to solve the problem quickly when everyone else had failed)

ingot *n.* a gold ~

ingrained *adj.* 1. deeply ~ 2. ~ in

ingratiate *v.* (D; refl.) to ~ with (she ~d herself with the boss)

ingratitude *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 2. base, rank ~ 3. ~ to, towards

ingredients *n.* 1. to combine ~ (in baking) 2. basic, essential; principal ~ 3. the ~ for, of 4. (misc.) the book has all the ~ of a best-seller = the book has all the ~ to become a best-seller

inhale *v.* to ~ deeply

inhere *v.* (formal) to ~ in

inherent *adj.* ~ in, to

inherit *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (she stands to ~ a fortune from an uncle of hers)

inheritance *n.* 1. to claim one's ~ 2. to come into an ~ (she claimed the ~ from her uncle that she had come into when her uncle died)

inhibit *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (shyness ~ed him from talking to women)

inhibited *adj.* ~ about, from, in (he felt ~ from/in talking to women = he felt ~ about talking to women)

inhibitions *n.* 1. to have ~ (about) (some men seem to have no ~ about talking to women) 2. to lose one's ~ (he lost his ~ after a few drinks)

inhospitable *adj.* 1. ~ to, towards (~ to strangers) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to turn a stranger away)

inhumanity *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. (misc.) man's ~ to man

inimical *adj.* (formal) ~ to (actions ~ to the maintenance of friendly relations between our countries)

iniquity *n.* a den of ~

initiate *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ students into the mysteries of linguistics)

initiation *n.* 1. to conduct, hold; offer, provide an ~ 2. an ~ into (conduct an ~ into a fraternity; provide an ~ into the mysteries of linguistics)

initiative *n.* ["decisiveness"] 1. to demonstrate, display, exercise, show ~ 2. to take the ~ (in) 3. to stifle ~ 4. to lose the ~ 5. private ~ 6. the ~ to + inf. (does she have enough ~ to get this job done?) 7. on one's (own) ~ (she made the decision on her own ~) ["plan of action"] 8. to undertake an ~ 9. a fresh, new ~ 10. a series of ~s 11. an ~ against 12. an ~ to + inf. (the government decided to undertake a series of new ~s to prevent further bloodshed)

inject *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ a note of humor into the proceedings; to ~ new money into a business) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (they were ~ed with a new drug)

injection *n.* 1. to administer, give an ~ 2. to get, have an ~ 3. a lethal ~ 4. a hypodermic; intradermal; intramuscular; intravenous; subcutaneous ~ 5. an ~ against, for 6. by ~ (to take a drug by ~) 7. (misc.) an ~ of new money into a business from rich investors

injudicious *adj.* (formal) ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to speak to the press)

injunction *n.* 1. to grant, hand down (AE), issue an ~ 2. to deliver an ~ 3. to get; seek an ~ 4. an ~ against (an ~ against picketing) 5. a permanent; temporary ~ 6. an ~ to + inf. (an ~ to prevent picketing) 7. an ~ that + clause; subj. (the court issued an ~ that picketing not take/should not take place)

injure *v.* to ~ badly, critically, seriously, severely; slightly (see USAGE NOTE at **damage II**)

injurious *adj.* ~ to

injury *n.* 1. to inflict (an) ~ on 2. to receive, suffer, sustain an ~ 3. to escape ~ 4. a fatal; minor, slight; serious, severe ~ 5. bodily ~; an internal ~; multiple ~ries 6. an ~ to (an ~ to the head) 7. (misc.) to add insult to ~ (see USAGE NOTE at **damage II**)

injustice *n.* 1. to do smb. an ~ 2. to commit; perpetrate an ~ 3. to redress, remedy an ~ 4. (a) blatant, festering, gross, monstrous, rank ~ 5. an ~ to

ink *n.* 1. indelible; India (AE), Indian (BE); invisible; marking; permanent; printer's; secret; washable ~ 2. ~ smudges 3. a blob, blot, drop, spot of ~ 4. (misc.) pen and ~

inkling *n.* 1. to give smb. an ~ 2. to have an ~ 3. the faintest, slightest; first ~ 4. an ~ about, of 5. an ~

that + clause (I didn't have the slightest ~ that he was ill: the first ~ I had (of it) was when he didn't answer the phone)

inlaid *adj.* ~ with (~ with silver)

inland *adv.* to go, travel ~

inmate *n.* a prison ~

inn *n.* a country; roadside, wayside ~

innate *adj.* ~ in

inner city *n.* to redevelop, revitalize the ~

innocence *n.* 1. to establish, prove, show smb.'s ~ 2. to assert, declare; maintain, protest one's ~ 3. (misc.) an air of (injured) ~; (in) wide-eyed ~; in one's ~ (in their ~ they really believed I would sell them Brooklyn Bridge!)

innocent *adj.* ~ of

innovation *n.* 1. a daring; major; radical ~ 2. to come up with, make; encourage; stifle ~ 3. an ~ happens, occurs 4. an ~ in (radical ~s in science and technology occurred in the 19th Century)

innuendo *n.* 1. to cast, make an ~ 2. a snide; veiled ~ 3. an ~ about 4. an ~ that + clause (she made an ~ that he had a prison record)

inoculate *v.* (D; tr.) 1. to ~ against (to ~ a dog against rabies) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (they were ~d with a vaccine)

inoculation *n.* 1. to give an ~ 2. to get, have, receive an ~ 3. an ~ against (an ~ against tetanus)

input I *n.* 1. ~ into, to 2. (misc.) the ~ of our customers is welcome

input II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (we ~ted data into our computer)

inquest *n.* 1. to conduct, hold an ~ 2. a coroner's; formal, official ~ 3. the findings of an ~ 4. an ~ into

inquire *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, after; into 2. (formal) (D; intr.) to ~ of (may I ~ of you where the meeting is?) 3. (Q) he ~d where we were to meet = "where are we to meet?" he ~d USAGE NOTE: In BE, the spelling *enquire* is also used – we enquired about her health.

inquiry *n.* 1. to conduct, hold, make; launch an ~ 2. a discreet; exhaustive, thorough; official; private; public ~ 3. an ~ about (to make ~ries about a matter) 4. an ~ about, into (an official ~ into the incident was launched, which found that no one was to blame) USAGE NOTE: The noun *inquiry* can mean "question" or "investigation". In BE, the spelling *enquiry* has been recommended for the meaning "question" – an enquiry about her health. Compare – an official inquiry into the incident.

inquisition *n.* 1. to carry out, conduct an ~ 2. a cruel, senseless ~

inquisitive *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ about

inroads *n.* 1. to make ~ 2. deep ~ 3. ~ in, into, on, upon (to make ~ on the freedom of the press)

insane *adj.* 1. criminally ~ 2. to go ~ 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to risk everything)

insanity *n.* 1. (legal) to plead ~ 2. outright, pure, sheer ~ 3. (legal) temporary ~ 4. ~ to + inf. (it was sheer ~ on his part to risk everything!)

inscribe *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ a book for smb.) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in; on (to ~ one's name in a book on the very first page) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ a book with one's name)

inscription *n.* 1. to bear, have an ~ 2. to decipher an ~ 3. an ~ in; on

insecticide *n.* to spray, spread, use an ~

insects *n.* 1. ~ bite; crawl, creep; fly 2. a swarm of (flying) ~

insecure *adj.* ~ about; in

insecurity *n.* 1. growing, increasing, mounting ~ 2. financial; job ~ 3. a feeling, sense of ~ (a sense of mounting financial ~)

insemination *n.* artificial ~

insensibility *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. ~ to (to display ~ to pain)

insensible *adj.* 1. (formal) (BE) ~ of (they seemed totally ~ of the danger that they faced) 2. ~ to (~ to pain)

insensitive *adj.* 1. highly, very ~ 2. ~ to (~ to criticism; ~ to the feelings of others) 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of/for her to bring that up = bringing that up was an ~ thing for her to do)

insensitivity *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. complete, total ~ 3. ~ to (to display total ~ to criticism)

inseparable *adj.* ~ from

insert *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ between; in, into (to ~ a new paragraph between two others; to ~ a new sentence into a paragraph; to ~ a key into a lock)

inside I *adv.* ~ out ("with the inner surface facing out"); ("thoroughly") (to know a subject ~ out) USAGE NOTE: The compound preposition *inside of* can refer to time or space. Referring to time, it is colloq. CE – to finish a job inside (of) an hour; referring to space, it is colloq. AE – inside (of) a building.

inside II *n.* (colloq.) ["confidential information"] (AE) 1. to have the ~ on ["position of trust"] 2. to be on the ~

insight *n.* 1. to gain; have (an) ~ into 2. to give, offer, provide (an) ~ 3. a deep, profound; new; sudden ~ 4. a flash of ~ 5. the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to predict what would happen) 6. the ~ that + clause (she had the sudden ~ that something bad was about to happen) 7. (misc.) a person of great ~

insignia *n.* military; royal ~

insignificance *n.* to fade, pale into ~

insinuate *v.* 1. (d; refl.) ("to ingratiate") to ~ into (to ~ oneself into smb.'s good graces) 2. (L; to) ("to suggest") she ~ (to us) that her partner had embezzled funds

insinuation *n.* 1. to make an ~ (to) 2. an ~ about 3. an ~ that + clause (we didn't like her ~ (to us) that her partner had embezzled funds)

insist *v.* 1. to ~ absolutely, definitely, positively; strongly; stubbornly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on (they ~ on more money; she ~ed on coming with us; she ~ed on everyone('s) attending the meeting) 3. (L;

can be used with the subj.) she ~ed that everyone attend/should attend/(esp. BE) attended the meeting, and after the meeting she ~ed that everyone had actually attended it

insistence *n.* 1. dogged, firm, stubborn ~ 2. ~ on (her ~ on everyone('s) attending the meeting) 3. ~ that + clause; can be subj. (we resented her ~ that everyone attend/should attend/(BE) attended the meeting, though we understood her ~ afterward that everyone had actually attended it) 4. at smb.'s ~ (at her ~, everyone actually attended the meeting)

insistent *adj.* 1. ~ on, upon (she was ~ on everyone('s) attending the meeting) 2. ~ that + clause; can be subj. (she was ~ that everyone attend/should attend/(esp. BE) attended the meeting, and after the meeting she was ~ that everyone had actually attended it)

insolence *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. gross ~ 3. the ~ to + inf. (they had the ~ to demand special treatment)

insolent *adj.* 1. ~ in (~ in their manner) 2. ~ to, towards 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to demand special treatment)

insoluble *adj.* ~ in (water) = water-insoluble

insolvency *n.* to force into ~

insomnia *n.* to suffer from ~

inspect *v.* to ~ carefully, closely, thoroughly; perfunctorily; visually (we ~ed the pipes closely for leaks)

inspection *n.* 1. to carry out, conduct, make an ~ 2. a careful, close, thorough; cursory, perfunctory, superficial; on-site; visual ~ (we carried out a close ~ of the pipes for any leaks) 3. a technical ~ 4. on ~ (on closer ~ the money turned out to be counterfeit) 5. (misc.) the troops were getting ready for ~

inspector *n.* 1. a customs; fire; health; mine; police; safety ~ 2. the ~ general

inspiration *n.* 1. a great ~ 2. to give, offer, provide ~ 3. to derive, draw ~ from 4. to find ~ in 5. divine ~ 6. ~ comes (from many sources) 7. a flash, spark; source of ~ 8. an ~ for (what provided the ~ for the statue?) 9. an ~ to (their lives were an ~ to young people) 10. the ~ to + inf. (what gave him the ~ to do it?)

inspire *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ in; with (the latest consumer reports do not ~ confidence in that product; her recent speeches ~d hope in her followers = her recent speeches ~d her followers with hope) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (the leaders set out to ~ the rank and file to greater productivity) 3. (H) the leaders set out to ~ the rank and file to produce more 4. (misc.) divinely ~d (our leader is wonderful – but she isn't divinely ~ by any means!)

inspiring *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to hear her recent speeches = it was ~ hearing her recent speeches = her recent speeches were ~ to hear)

instability *n.* economic; emotional; political ~

install *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ smb. as president) 2. (P; refl.) they ~ed themselves in front of the TV; the protesters ~ed themselves at the entrance

installations *n.* military; naval; port ~

installment, instalment *n.* 1. to pay an ~ 2. monthly; quarterly ~s 3. in ~s (the book came out in ~s; to pay in ~s)

installment plan *n.* (AE) on the ~ (to buy smt. on the ~) (BE has *hire purchase*)

instance *n.* ["example"] 1. to cite, give an ~ 2. an isolated, rare ~ 3. for ~ 4. in an ~ (in rare ~s; in a few isolated ~s)

instant *n.* 1. at a certain ~ (at that ~ I realized who had planned the whole scheme) 2. (misc.) for an ~; in an ~

instigate *v.* (H) (esp. BE) to ~ smb. to do smt.

instigation *n.* at smb.'s ~ (at her ~, everyone who attended the meeting heckled the speakers)

instill, instil *v.* 1. to ~ deeply, firmly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in, into (to ~ respect for the law in the younger generation)

instinct *n.* 1. to arouse an ~ 2. to follow one's (own) ~s 3. a basic, gut; destructive; herd; human; killer; maternal; natural ~ 4. animal; predatory ~s 5. an unerring ~ 6. an ~ for (he has an unerring ~ for saying just the wrong thing!) 7. the ~ to + inf. (nothing can destroy the ~ to survive) 8. by, on ~

institute *n.* 1. a research ~ 2. an ~ for (an ~ for theoretical research) 3. at, in an ~ (to work at/in an ~)

institution *n.* 1. to endow; support an ~ 2. a charitable; educational; financial; penal; philanthropic; political; private; social; state-supported ~ 3. a heavily endowed ~ 4. (misc.) an ~ of higher learning; the ~ of marriage; visiting your parents at Thanksgiving is a national ~ in the USA

instruct *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to teach") to ~ in (to ~ soldiers in field hygiene) 2. (H) ("to order") she ~ed us to begin work at once 3. (L; must have an object) ("to inform") we have been ~ed that the matter has been settled by our lawyers 4. (Q; must have an object) ("to order") we were ~ed where to meet

instruction *n.* 1. to conduct, give, provide ~ 2. to take ~ (before converting to a religion) 3. advanced; beginning, elementary; bilingual; intermediate; remedial ~ 4. computer-assisted ~ 5. ~ in (to provide advanced ~ in mathematics)

instructions *n.* 1. to give, issue ~ 2. to leave ~ (for smb.) 3. to get, receive; have ~ 4. to carry out, follow ~ (to the letter) 5. to await (further) ~ 6. oral; verbal; written ~ 7. clear, explicit, precise ~ 8. specific ~ 9. a list, set of ~ 10. ~ for 11. ~ to + inf. (we had ~ to report to her) 12. ~ that + clause; subj. (she left ~ that her estate be/should be divided evenly) 13. according to, in accordance with, on ~ (we acted on your ~)

instructive *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it will be ~ to analyze the results)

instructor *n.* an ~ in, of (an ~ in physics)

instrument *n.* ["implement"] 1. a blunt; delicate; sharp ~ 2. surgical ~s 3. ~s of torture 4. an ~ for (an ~ for good) ["musical instrument"] 5. to tune, tune up an ~ 6. to play an ~ 7. a brass; keyboard; musical;

percussion; stringed; wind; woodwind ~ ["misc."] 8. pilots study their ~s before taking off

instrumental *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ in (her help was ~ in tracking down the criminal)

insubordinate *adj.* ~ to

insubordination *n.* 1. gross, rank ~ 2. ~ to (~ to authority)

insufficient *adj.* 1. ~ for; in 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to cite only one example)

insulate *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ against, from

insulation *n.* ~ against, from

insult *n.* 1. to fling, hurl, shout an ~ at 2. to swallow, take an ~ 3. to avenge an ~ 4. a gratuitous; imaginary; nasty, vicious ~ 5. an ~ to (an ~ to smb.'s intelligence) 6. (misc.) to trade ~s; a stream of ~s; to add ~ to injury

insulted *adj.* 1. deeply ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (I was deeply ~ to have been overlooked)

insurance *n.* 1. to provide ~ for 2. to sell, write ~ 3. to underwrite ~ 4. to carry; take out ~ (our firm carries fire ~ ; to take out life ~ on a relative) 5. to cancel; renew ~ 6. accident; automobile (AE), motor (BE), motor-car (BE); collision; flight; marine; travel ~ 7. disability; hospitalization; life, whole life (esp. AE); major-medical (AE); medical ~ (see also **health insurance**) 8. fire; flood; hurricane; terrorism ~ 9. homeowner's; property; title ~ 10. group; liability (AE), third-party (BE); no-fault; term (esp. AE) ~ 11. comprehensive; compulsory; voluntary ~ 12. (GB) National Insurance 13. social ~ (see also **unemployment insurance**) 14. ~ against; for, on (~ against loss from flood; ~ on one's personal effects) (see also *insurance policy* at **policy II**; *insurance premium* at **premium**) USAGE NOTE: BE has traditionally distinguished between *insurance* (to provide compensation for what may happen) and *assurance* (to provide compensation for what will happen); thus – *fire insurance* and *life assurance*. However, nowadays, *life insurance* is also used in BE.

insure *v.* 1. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ against; for (to ~ one's home against loss from fire; to ~ one's life for fifty thousand dollars) 2. (L) ("to ensure") (esp. AE) their support ~d that the project would receive financial backing; no one can ~ that you'll get a job USAGE NOTE: In AE, the verb *insure* may be used as a synonym of *ensure*.

insured *adj.* 1. fully; heavily ~ 2. against; for (my home is fully ~ against loss from fire and my life is ~ for $50,000)

insurrection *n.* 1. to foment, stir up an ~ 2. to crush, put down, quell, suppress an ~

insusceptible *adj.* ~ to

integrate *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ into; with

integration *n.* 1. economic; racial; school; token ~ 2. ~ into

integrity *n.* 1. to display, show; have ~ 2. great ~ 3. territorial ~ 4. the ~ to + inf. (he had the ~ not to accept bribes) 5. (misc.) a person of ~ who always behaves with ~

intellect *n.* 1. to appeal to the ~ 2. (a) keen, sharp, superior ~ 3. of ~ (a person of keen ~ who exercises her intellect by solving puzzles)

intelligence *n.* ["ability to comprehend, learn"] 1. to demonstrate, exhibit, show; have, possess ~ 2. acute, great, high, keen; limited; low; normal; outstanding, remarkable ~ 3. native, natural ~ 4. (computers) artificial ~ 5. the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to see through their scheme) 6. of a certain ~ (she is a person of considerable ~, so don't insult her ~ by talking down to her!) (see also **IQ**; *intelligence quotient (IQ)* at **quotient**; *intelligence test* at **test I**) ["information"] 7. to collect, gather ~ 8. classified; combat, military; industrial; (top) secret ~ 9. ~ that + clause (we have ~ (to the effect) that there will be an attack soon)

intelligent *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it would not be ~ to provoke her) (see also *intelligent design* at **design I**)

intelligible *adj.* ~ to

intend *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to design") to ~ as (it was ~ed as a joke) 2. (d; tr.) ("to design") to ~ for (we've ~ed this dictionary for serious students) 3. (E) ("to plan") she ~s to file suit; she left the office yesterday fully ~ing to resign 4. (G) ("to plan") what do you ~ doing? 5. (H) ("to want") we never ~ed her to get involved 6. (L; subj.) ("to want") we never ~ed that she get/should get involved

intended *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ for (this dictionary is ~ for serious students)

intent I *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ on, upon (she is ~ on getting the job done quickly)

intent II *n.* 1. criminal ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (with ~ to kill) 3. by ~ 4. (misc.) for (esp. AE), to all ~s and purposes ("practically, for all practical purposes"); (legal) loitering with ~ (to commit a crime)

intention *n.* 1. to announce, declare, state one's ~ 2. to make one's ~s clear/known 3. every; no ~ (she has every ~ of accepting the invitation; she has no ~ of resigning) 4. bad, evil; good; honorable ~s 5. the ~ to + inf. (have you heard of her ~ to resign?) 6. with the ~ of (she left the office yesterday with the ~ of resigning)

interact *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ with

interaction *n.* ~ among, between; with

interactive *adj.* ~ with

interbreed *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

intercede *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for; with (to ~ with the authorities for smb.) 2. (misc.) to ~ on smb.'s behalf (to ~ (with the authorities) on smb.'s behalf)

interchangeable *adj.* 1. freely ~ 2. ~ with

intercom *n.* on, over, through, via the ~

interconnect *v.* 1. to ~ closely; inextricably 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (these events are inextricably ~ed with each other)

intercourse *n.* 1. to have ~ with 2. anal; oral; sexual ~ 3. social ~ 4. ~ occurs, takes place 5. ~ among, between; with

interest I *n.* ["concern"]["curiosity"] 1. to arouse, drum up, excite, generate, kindle, pique, spark, stimulate, stir up; maintain, sustain; revive ~ (in) 2. to hold smb.'s ~ 3. to demonstrate, display, evince, exhibit, express, have, manifest, show ~ 4. to pursue an ~ (he pursued his ~ in historical research) 5. to take an ~ in (she took a keen ~ in the project) 6. to lose ~ (in) (they lost all ~ in sports) 7. an academic; active; lifelong; passing; vested ~ 8. a burning, consuming, deep, great, intense, keen, lively, profound, serious, strong ~ 9. broad, wide; common, mutual; general; narrow; universal, widespread ~s 10. human ~ (this story has a lot of human ~) 11. personal; popular ~ 12. the national; (the) public ~ 13. ~ drops off, flags, wanes; grows, increases; peaks; picks up 14. a conflict of ~(s) 15. ~ in (to show no ~ in financial matters) 16. ~ to + inf. (it's in/to our ~ to have stable prices) 17. in smb.'s ~ (to act in one's own best ~; whose ~ is this new policy in anyway?) 18. in a certain ~ (in the national ~; in the public ~; this new policy is not in the ~ of small businesses!) 19. in the ~(s) of (in the ~s of safety; in the ~s of our organization) 20. of ~ (to) (this story will be of ~ to us; these new developments are of local ~ only) 21. to smb.'s ~ (see 16) ["money paid for the use of money"] 22. to bear, earn, pay, yield ~ 23. to draw; receive ~ 24. to lose ~ 25. to add; calculate; charge; compound ~ 26. compound; simple ~ 27. ~ accrues (to an account) 28. ~ on (~ on a loan; six percent ~ is paid on all accounts) 29. at a certain (rate of) ~ (at six percent ~) 30. (misc.) to return a high rate of ~ ["share"] 31. to own a controlling ~ (in a business) 32. a half ~ (see also **interests**)

interest II *v.* 1. to ~ greatly, very much 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in (could I ~ you in this project?)

interested *adj.* 1. deeply, greatly, highly, keenly, very (much) ~ 2. ~ in (we are not very ~ in politics; would you be ~ in this project?; will you be ~ in knowing when an agreement has been reached?) 3. ~ to + inf. (you will be ~ to know that an agreement has been reached)

interesting *adj.* 1. highly, very ~ 2. ~ for; to 3. ~ to + inf. (he's ~ to watch = it's ~ to watch him = he's an ~ person to watch) 4. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that the incident was not reported in the newspapers)

interests *n.* ["stakes, investments"] 1. to have ~ (to have ~ throughout the world) 2. to advance, further, promote smb.'s ~ 3. to defend, guard, look after, protect smb.'s ~ 4. to serve smb.'s ~ (it serves their ~ to have stability in the area) 5. far-flung; international; worldwide ~ 6. ~ clash; coincide ["groups having a common concern"] 7. banking; business, commercial; shipping ~ 8. competing; controlling; special; vested ~

interface I *n.* 1. an ~ between; with 2. at an ~

interface II *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (to ~ a machine with a computer)

interfere *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ between (BE), with; in USAGE NOTE: In BE, *to interfere with smb.* often means "to molest smb. sexually".

interference *n.* 1. to brook, stand for, tolerate no ~ 2. unwarranted ~ 3. military; outside ~ 4. ~ in, with 5. (misc.) (esp. Am. football) to run ~ for

interim *n.* in the ~

interior *n.* in the ~ (the situation in the ~ of the country was critical)

interject *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ new issues into a campaign)

interjection *n.* an ~ into (the ~ of new issues into a campaign)

interlace *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ with

interlard *v.* (formal) (d; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ a speech with Biblical references)

interlink *v.* 1. to ~ closely; inextricably 2. to ~ electronically 3. (D; tr.) to ~ with (these events are inextricably ~ed with each other)

interlude *n.* 1. a romantic ~ 2. a musical ~ 3. a brief ~

intermarriage *n.* ~ between, with

intermarry *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with the local population)

intermediary *n.* 1. an ~ between (an ~ between the warring groups) 2. through an ~

intermingle *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with the crowd)

intermission *n.* an ~ between USAGE NOTE: In AE, *intermission* has the meaning "pause between parts of a theatrical performance". In BE, *interval* is used in this meaning.

Internet *n.* 1. to browse; cruise; surf the ~ 2. to join the ~ 3. on the ~ (to find smt. on the ~)

internship *n.* (AE) to serve one's ~

interplay *n.* ~ among, between

interpolate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ Biblical references into a speech)

interpose *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ among, between

interpret *v.* 1. (B) I had to ~ the passage to them 2. (d; tr.) to ~ as (they ~ed his response as an admission of guilt) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ for foreign visitors) 4. (H) they ~ed his response to be an admission of guilt

interpretation *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. to put a certain ~ on (they put a completely different ~ on his behavior) 3. a broad, free, liberal, loose; strict ~ (of the law)

interpreter *n.* 1. to serve (smb.) as an ~ 2. to communicate, speak through an ~ 3. a conference; court; simultaneous ~

interpreting *n.* conference; simultaneous ~

interrelate *v.* 1. to ~ closely; inextricably 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (these events are inextricably ~ed with each other)

interrogation *n.* 1. to conduct an ~ 2. a police ~ 3. under ~

interrogator *n.* 1. to serve as an ~ 2. a prisoner-of-war ~

interrogatory *n.* (legal) to file; serve an ~

intersect *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ with (this street ~s with the main road)

intersection *n.* 1. a busy; dangerous ~ 2. at an ~

intersperse *v.* (P; tr.) to ~ Biblical references throughout a speech

intertwine *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

interval *n.* ["space of time between events"] 1. a brief, short; irregular; regular ~ 2. a lucid ~ 3. at a certain ~ (at regular ~s) ["distance"] ["gap"] 4. to maintain an ~ (the proper ~ should be maintained between vehicles) 5. an ~ between (see the Usage Note for **intermission**)

intervene *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ between 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in; with (to ~ in smb.'s affairs; to ~ with the authorities on behalf of a political prisoner)

intervention *n.* 1. armed, military; government ~ 2. medical; nursing; surgical ~ 3. divine ~ 4. ~ from, on the part of

interview I *n.* 1. to conduct an ~ (a reporter conducted an ~ with the celebrity) 2. to give, grant an ~ (the celebrity gave an ~ to a reporter) 3. to have, hold an ~ (a reporter had an ~ with the celebrity = the celebrity had an ~ with a reporter; the dean of admissions had/held ~s with prospective students; the prospective students had ~s with the dean of admissions after they toured the campus) 4. an exclusive; job; personal; taped; telephone; television, TV ~ 5. an ~ for; with (to have an ~ with the personnel director for a job)

interview II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ about; for (a reporter ~ed the celebrity about his love-life; to ~ smb. for a job)

interwoven *adj.* ~ with

intestate *adj.* to die ~

intestine *n.* the large; small ~

intimacy *n.* ~ between; with

intimate I *adj.* ~ with

intimate II *v.* 1. (B) (formal) she ~d her wishes to us 2. (L; to) they ~d (to us) that an agreement would be worked out soon = "an agreement will be worked out soon," they ~d (to us) 3. (Q; to) they would not ~ (to us) how the agreement would be worked out

intimation *n.* 1. to give an ~ 2. ~ that + clause (there was no ~ that she would retire; they gave us absolutely no ~ that an agreement would be worked out soon) 3. (misc.) "Ode: Intimations of Immortality from Recollections of Early Childhood" – William Wordsworth (1770–1850)

intimidate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into doing smt.)

into *prep.* (colloq.) ["interested in; involved in"] she is ~ classical music; when did you get ~ relaxation?

intolerable *adj.* 1. ~ to 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to allow hardened criminals to roam our streets) 3. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that hardened criminals are allowed to roam our streets)

intolerance *n.* ["lack of tolerance"] 1. to display, show ~ 2. to stir up ~ against 3. racial; religious ~ ["sensitivity"] 4. ~ to (drugs)

intolerant *adj.* ~ of

intonation *n.* a falling; rising ~

intoxication *n.* a state of ~

intransigence *n.* ~ about

intransigent *adj.* ~ about

intricacy *n.* labyrinthine ~

intrigue I *n.* 1. to carry on, engage in (an) ~ 2. petty; political ~ 3. a hotbed; web of ~ 4. an ~ against

intrigue II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against; with (to ~ against the government) 2. (R) it ~d me (to learn) that she had resigned

intrigued *adj.* ~ to + inf. (I was very ~ to learn that she had resigned)

intriguing *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was very ~ to learn that she had resigned)

intrinsic *adj.* ~ in, to

introduce *v.* 1. (B) she ~d me to her friends as her husband = she ~d me to her friends by saying, "May I ~ you all to my husband John?" = she ~d me to her friends by saying, "I'd like you all to meet my husband John" 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ new methods into an industry) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ students to the elements of computer science)

introduction *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. to serve as an ~ 3. a formal ~ 4. an ~ into, to (an ~ to a book) 5. (misc.) a letter of ~

introductory *adj.* (formal) ~ to

intrude *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ into 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ on smb.'s privacy)

intrusion *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. an unwarranted; unwelcome ~ 3. an ~ into (to make an ~ into enemy territory) 4. an ~ on, upon (an ~ on my time) 5. (misc.) pardon my ~

intuit *v.* (esp. BE) (L) she ~ed that something was wrong

intuition *n.* 1. an ~ that + clause (she had an ~ that something was wrong) 2. by ~ (by ~, she sensed that something was wrong)

inundate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (we were ~d with requests)

inure *v.* (formal) (d; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smb. to hardship; ~d to danger)

invalid *v.* (BE) 1. (d; tr.) to ~ home 2. (d; tr.) to ~ out of (to be ~ed out of the army)

invaluable *adj.* ~ for, to

invasion *n.* 1. to carry out; launch, mount an ~ 2. to repel, repulse an ~ 3. an enemy ~

invective *n.* 1. to hurl ~ (CE)/~s (AE) at 2. bitter; coarse, vulgar ~ 3. a stream, torrent of ~ (CE)/~s (AE) 4. ~ against (to hurl a stream of ~ against the government)

inveigh *v.* (formal) (d; intr.) to ~ against (to ~ against the government)

inveigle *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ into; out of (to ~ smb. into doing smt.)

invention *n.* 1. to come up with, make an ~ 2. to patent, register an ~ 3. to market, promote an ~ 4. a brilliant, ingenious ~

inventory *n.* 1. to make an ~ (of); to take (an) ~ (of)

2. (AE) to reduce (an) ~ (by having a sale) 3. an annual ~ 4. closed for ~ 5. in, on an ~

invest *v.* 1. ("to place money or resources") to ~ heavily 2. (D; intr., tr.) ("to place money or resources") to ~ in (to ~ heavily in municipal bonds; to ~ surplus funds in stocks) 3. (formal) (d; tr.) ("to entrust") to ~ with (to ~ smb. with authority)

invested *adj.* (formal) (cannot stand alone) ~ with (~ with authority)

investigation *n.* 1. to carry out, conduct, make; launch an ~ 2. a cursory, perfunctory; full, painstaking, thorough; impartial; ongoing; pending ~ 3. a criminal; internal; police ~ 4. an ~ discovers, reveals (the ~ revealed the cause of the fire) 5. an ~ into, of (to launch an ~ into the cause of the fire) 6. on, upon ~ (on closer ~ we discovered the cause of the fire) 7. under ~ (the cause of the fire is under ~)

investigator *n.* a government; private ~

investment *n.* 1. to make an ~; to diversity one's ~s 2. a good, lucrative, profitable; safe; solid, sound ~ 3. a bad, poor; risky ~ 4. capital; heavy; inward; long-term; overseas ~s 5. an ~ in (~s in oil stocks) (see also *investment portfolio* at **portfolio**)

investor *n.* a heavy; large; small; speculative ~

invidious *adj.* (formal) ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to deprive workers of health insurance) (see also *invidious comparison* at **comparison**)

invigorating *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to swim in the sea = swimming in the sea is ~)

invisible *adj.* 1. ~ from (the house was ~ from the road) 2. to (~ to the naked eye)

invitation *n.* 1. to extend, issue, send an ~ 2. to send out ~s 3. to get, receive an ~ 4. to accept an ~ 5. to decline, refuse, spurn, turn down an ~ 6. a cordial, kind; formal; informal; open, standing; personal ~ (thank you for your kind ~, which we must unfortunately decline because of a previous engagement) 7. an ~ from; to (an ~ to a party from some friends) 8. an ~ to + inf. (she has received an ~ from friends to attend the party) 9. at smb.'s ~ (they came at my ~) 10. by ~ (participation is by ~ only) 11. (misc.) in that dormitory an unlocked drawer is an open ~ to theft

invite *v.* 1. to ~ cordially (everyone is cordially ~d) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (we ~d them to our party) 3. (H) we ~d them to come to our party

invite out *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for, to (they ~d us out (to a restaurant) for dinner)

invite over *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for; to (we ~d them over to our place for a drink)

invocation *n.* to offer, pronounce the/an ~

invoice I *n.* 1. to issue; make out; pay; process; send, submit an ~ 2. a duplicate; original ~ 3. a final ~ 4. an ~ for (we sent them an ~ for the full amount)

invoice II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (we ~d them for the full amount)

involve *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ in; with (to ~ smb. in a project; we were ~d with the technical details) 2. (G) that job would ~ traveling a great deal 3. (K) that job would ~ my traveling a great deal

involved *adj.* 1. deeply; directly; emotionally ~ (with) 2. ~ in; with (I got her ~ in the project; to become (emotionally) ~ with smb.)

involvement *n.* 1. an emotional ~ 2. (a) direct ~ 3. ~ in; with

invulnerable *adj.* ~ to

inward *adv.* ~ bound

IQ *n.* 1. to test smb.'s ~ 2. to have a certain ~ (she has an ~ of 130) 3. an average, normal; high; low ~ 4. an ~ of (an ~ of one hundred; the ~ of a genius) (see also *IQ test* at **test I**)

irate *adj.* ~ about

ire *n.* 1. to arouse, draw, incur, provoke, raise, rouse smb.'s ~ 2. (formal) to visit one's ~ upon smb.

irk *v.* (R) it ~s her to have to get up so early; it ~s her that she has to get up so early

irksome *adj.* (formal) 1. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ for her to have to get up so early) 2. ~ that + clause (she finds it ~ that she has to get up so early)

iron *n.* ["type of metal"] 1. to mine; smelt ~ 2. cast; corrugated; crude; pig; scrap; wrought ~ ["device for pressing clothes"] 3. to plug in an ~ 4. to unplug an ~ 5. to pass, run an ~ over a shirt 6. a cool; hot ~ 7. an electric; steam ~ ["rodlike device used for branding"] 8. a branding ~ ["tool used to apply solder"] 9. a soldering ~ ["instrument used to curl hair"] 10. a curling ~ ["hook"] 11. a climbing; grappling ~ ["utensil for making waffles"] 12. a waffle ~ ["misc."] 13. to have several ~s in the fire ("to be involved in several activities at the same time"); to strike while the ~ is hot ("to act at the proper moment") (see also **irons**)

ironic, ironical *adj.* ~ that + clause (it's ~ that the weakest student in mathematics was/should have been elected class treasurer)

ironing *n.* 1. to do the ~ 2. a heap, pile of ~ (see also *ironing board* at **board**)

irons *n.* ["shackles"] 1. to clap, put smb. into ~ 2. in ~

irony *n.* 1. bitter ~ 2. dramatic; tragic ~ 3. a touch of ~ 4. an ~ that + clause (it was a tragic ~ that he was killed in a traffic accident after the war) 5. (misc.) the ~ (of it) was that he was killed in a traffic accident after surviving the war!

irrational *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to expect miracles)

irreconcilable *adj.* ~ with

irregular *adj.* grossly, highly, very ~

irregularity *n.* 1. a gross ~ 2. voting ~ties 3. ~ in (an ~ in the accounts; ~ties in voting)

irrelevant *adj.* 1. ~ to (the evidence is ~ to the case) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to cite such outdated evidence) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that she was out of town) 4. (misc.) is it ~ whether she was present at the scene of the crime?

irrespective *adj.* ~ of

irresponsibility *n.* 1. the height of ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it was the height of ~ for him to speak to reporters that way!)

irresponsible *adj.* 1. highly, very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it was highly ~ for/of him to speak to reporters that way!)

irreverent *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ to + inf. (it would be ~ to whistle during a religious ceremony)

irritant *n.* an ~ to

irritate *v.* 1. to ~ greatly, very much 2. (R) it ~d me (to learn) that she had been promoted behind my back

irritated *adj.* 1. ~ at (~ at being awakened so early) 2. ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to learn that she had been promoted behind my back) 3. ~ that + clause (I was ~ that she had been/should have been promoted behind my back)

irritating *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to learn that she had been promoted behind my back) 2. ~ that + (it was ~ that she had been/should have been promoted behind my back)

irritation *n.* ["anger"] 1. to express, show; feel ~ 2. to conceal, hide one's ~ 3. ~ at, with 4. ~ that + clause (I could not hide my ~ that she had been/should have been promoted behind my back) ["sore"] 5. to exacerbate, worsen an ~ 6. to relieve, soothe an ~

irrupt *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ into ("to enter suddenly") (the demonstrators ~ed into the palace) 2. (D; intr.) ("to erupt") (AE) to ~ in; into (to ~ in a frenzied demonstration that ~ed into violence)

irruption *n.* ["act of entering suddenly"] 1. an ~ into (the ~ of the demonstrators into the palace) ["eruption"] (AE) 2. an ~ in; into (the students' ~ in a frenzied demonstration and its ~ into violence)

island *n.* 1. a desert, deserted, uninhabited; tropical ~ 2. a safety (AE), traffic ~ 3. a chain, group of ~s 4. on an ~

isolate *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ from

isolated *adj.* ~ from

isolation *n.* in ~ (from) (to live in ~ (from))

isotope *n.* a radioactive ~

issue I *n.* ["number of a journal"] 1. to bring out, publish an ~ 2. a back; current; special; thematic ~ 3. an ~ comes out, is published (your poem is in the next ~, which will come out on Thursday) ["question"] ["problem"] 4. to bring up, raise an ~ 5. to address; confront; deal with, face; debate; discuss; explore; straddle an ~ 6. to settle an ~ 7. to avoid, evade, sidestep; skirt an ~ 8. a basic; collateral, side ~ 9. a burning, important; dead; hot-button (colloq.); sensitive; substantive ~; the real ~ 10. a contentious, controversial, debatable, thorny; divisive ~ 11. a complex, complicated, involved, knotty, perplexing, thorny ~ 12. a delicate, ticklish ~ 13. a minor, petty ~ 14. an environmental; moral; political; social ~ 15. a global; local; national ~ (there are a number of important ~s about climate change that have arisen in our discussions) 16. an ~ arises, comes up 17. at ~ (the point at ~) 18. (misc.) to confuse the ~; to force the ~; to make an ~ of smt.; to take ~ with smb. on smt. ("to disagree with smb. about smt."); to have ~s about/with ("to have problems with/about") (colloq.) (we're having meat for dinner – do you have an ~ about/with that?) ["children"] (formal) 19. without ~ (to die without ~) (see also **bond issue**)

issue II *v.* 1. (B) ("to distribute") the school ~d new textbooks to the pupils 2. (formal) (d; intr.) ("to come") to ~ from (blood ~d from the wound; smoke ~d from the chimneys) 3. (BE) (d; tr.) to ~ with (the pupils were ~d with new textbooks)

it *pronoun* of ~ (they made a mess of ~; to have had a hard time of ~)

italics *n.* to put smt. into ~ and keep smt. in ~

itch *n.* ["itchy feeling"] 1. to relieve; scratch an ~ 2. ["wish, yen"] (colloq.) an ~ to + inf. (she had an ~ to go bowling)

itching I *adj.* (colloq.) (cannot stand alone) 1. ~ for (he's ~ for a fight) 2. ~ to + inf. (he's ~ to start fighting)

itching II *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. to alleviate, relieve (the) ~

itchy *adj.* to feel ~ all over

item *n.* 1. a luxury ~ 2. a budget ~ 3. a collector's ~ (BE also has *collector's piece*) 4. a news ~ 5. a vocabulary ~ 6. ~ by ~ (she answered all their objections ~ by ~) 7. (misc.) an ~ of clothing/food/furniture/vocabulary …; an ~ of considerable importance/interest; an ~ on an agenda (what's the next ~ on the agenda?)

itinerary *n.* 1. to plan (out), prepare an ~ 2. a tentative ~ (we followed the tentative ~ she had prepared, which included various items of interest) 3. according to an ~

ivy *n.* 1. ~ climbs 2. (misc.) the ivy-covered walls of an ancient university; (US) poison ~

J

jab I *n.* ["short punch"] 1. to throw a ~ 2. a left; right ~ 3. a ~ to (a left ~ to the head) ["injection"] (BE) 4. to give smb. a ~ 5. to get; have a ~ 6. a booster; flu ~

jab II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (he ~bed at the other boxer with his left) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in (she ~bed me in the ribs) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ into (she ~bed a knife into the roast) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ with (she ~bed the roast with a knife)

jabber *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about

jack *n.* ["human being"] (esp. BE) (colloq.) every man ~ (see also *jack-of-all-trades* at **trade I** *n.*)

jackal *n.* a pack of ~s

jackass *n.* a damned; stupid ~

jacket *n.* ["garment for the upper body"] 1. a battle (AE); bulletproof (BE); dinner; donkey (BE); field; flak; pea; smoking; sport (AE), sports ~ (see also **life jacket**) ["cover"] 2. (AE) a record ~ 3. a dust ~ ("cover for a book") ["potato skin"] 4. to bake potatoes in their ~s

jackpot *n.* 1. to win the ~ 2. to hit the ~ (also fig.)

jacks *n.* to play (a game of) ~

jag *n.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) ["state of intoxication"] 1. to have a ~ on ["spell"] 2. a crying ~

jail I *n.* 1. to go to, be sent to ~ (he went to ~ for his crime; she was sent to ~ for shoplifting) 2. to keep smb. in ~ 3. to serve/spend time in ~ 4. to release smb. from ~ 5. to be released from ~ 6. to break ~; to break out of, escape from ~

jail II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (to be ~ed for fraud; to be ~ed for life)

jailbreak *n.* 1. to attempt; make a ~ 2. a daring; mass ~

jam I *n.* ["food made by boiling fruit with sugar"] 1. to spread ~ (on bread) = to spread (bread) with ~ 2. apricot; blackberry, blueberry; cherry; gooseberry; grape; peach; plum; quince; (red) raspberry; strawberry ~

jam II *n.* ["blockage"] 1. a log; traffic ~ ["difficult situation"] 2. (to be/get) in a ~

jam III *v.* 1. to ~ solidly; tightly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in (she ~med her fingers in the door; or: she got her fingers ~med in the door) 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ into (they all tried to ~ (themselves) into the small room; he ~med everything into one suitcase) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ on (he ~med a hat on his head) 5. (D; tr.) to ~ with (the street was ~med with traffic) 6. (N; used with an adjective) to ~ smt. full; solid; tight

jamboree *n.* a boy scout; girl scout ~

jam-packed *adj.* ~ with (the street was ~ with traffic)

jangle *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to irritate") (to ~ on smb.'s nerves)

janitor *n.* see **superintendant**

jar I *n.* ["jolt"] 1. to feel a ~ 2. a slight ~

jar II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against ("to strike") (I ~red against the table) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to irritate") (the noise ~red on my nerves) 3. (d; intr.) ("to clash") to ~ with 4. (N; used with an adjective) to ~ a tooth loose

jar III *n.* ["container"] 1. a biscuit (BE), cookie (AE) ~ 2. an earthenware; glass; Mason (esp. AE); plastic; stone ~

jargon *n.* 1. to speak in, use ~ 2. computer; legal; medical; military; professional, technical, trade ~ 3. a piece of ~ (to use a piece of ~ that no one else can understand)

jaunt *n.* ["pleasure trip"] 1. to go on a ~ 2. a ~ through; to

javelin *n.* to hurl, throw the ~

jaw I *n.* 1. to move one's ~ (his ~ was broken and he could not move it) 2. to set one's ~ (she set her ~ in determination) 3. to dislocate one's ~ 4. the lower; upper ~ 5. (misc.) to snatch victory from the ~s of defeat

jaw II *v.* (colloq.) 1. (AE) (D; intr.) ("to speak angrily") to ~ about; at 2. (BE) (D; intr.) ("to chat") to ~ about

jealous *adj.* 1. bitterly, blindly, violently ~ 2. ~ of

jealousy *n.* 1. to arouse, cause, stir up ~ (of) 2. to feel ~ 3. to show ~ 4. bitter, blind; fierce; groundless, unfounded; petty; pure, sheer ~ 5. professional ~ 6. a fit of ~ 7. out of ~ 8. ~ at, of, towards (she did it out of sheer ~ of his success)

jeans *n.* 1. to have ~ on, to wear ~ 2. to put on ~ 3. to take off ~ 4. to button up; unbutton; unzip; zip up one's ~ 5. baggy; blue (AE); cut-off; designer; long; skinny; tight ~ 6. a pair of ~

jeer *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at

jelly *n.* ["food made with boiled fruit juice"] apple; blackberry; cherry; red-currant; grape; mint; peach; plum; quince; (red) raspberry; strawberry ~

jeopardy *n.* 1. to place, put (smb.) in ~ 2. (legal) double ~ 3. in ~ (our lives were in ~)

jerk *n.* ["sudden movement"] with a ~ (the train started with a ~)

jest I *n.* (formal) 1. an idle ~ 2. in ~ (that was said in ~)

jest II *v.* (formal) (D; intr.) to ~ about; with

jester *n.* a court ~

jet I *n.* 1. to fly, pilot a ~ 2. to travel by ~ 3. a jumbo ~ (see also **airplane** 1, 2)

jet II *v.* (P; intr.) ("to fly by jet") to ~ around the world; to ~ across the country; to ~ from New York to London

jewel *n.* 1. to mount a ~ 2. crown; precious; priceless ~s

jewelry, jewellery *n.* 1. antique; costume; imitation; junk ~ 2. a piece of ~

jibe I *n.* see **gibe I**

jibe II *v.* see **gibe II**

jibe III *v.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) (D; intr.) ("to agree") to ~ with (her story doesn't ~ with yours)

jiffy *n.* (colloq.) ["short time"] in a ~

jig *n.* to dance, do; play a ~

jigsaw (BE) see **jigsaw puzzle**

jigsaw puzzle *n.* (AE) to do, put together a ~

jingle *n.* 1. to compose, make up a ~ 2. to hum a ~ 3. an advertising; rhyming ~

jinx *n.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) to put a ~ on smb.

jitters *n.* (colloq.) ["panic"] 1. to get; have the ~ 2. to give smb. the ~ 3. a case of the ~ (she had a bad case of the ~)

job *n.* ["task"] 1. to do; finish a ~ 2. to take on a ~ 3. a backbreaking; difficult, hard; dirty; time-consuming ~ 4. odd ~s (he does odd ~s) 5. a ~ to + inf. (it was quite a ~ to find him = it was quite a ~ finding him) ["employment"] 6. to create; find, get, land, take; have a ~ (she got a ~ addressing envelopes; I have a ~ as a receptionist) 7. to apply for a ~ 8. to hunt for, look for a ~ 9. to fill; hold, hold down a ~ (she holds a responsible ~ as an executive secretary in/with a law firm) 10. to give up, quit; resign from a ~ 11. to lose; shed (esp. BE) a ~ (the company is shedding hundreds of ~s!) 12. a cushy, easy, soft; desk ~ 13. a demanding ~ 14. a dead-end; menial ~ 15. a full-time; part-time; permanent; proper (esp. BE); responsible; steady; summer; temporary ~ 16. a ~ as; in; with (he took a ~ in construction; he got a ~ as an announcer with a radio station) 17. at ~ (she was working at two ~s) 18. on the ~ (he is always on the ~) (also fig.) 19. (misc.) to be between ~s; my ~ pays well; right now she is out of a ~; they all walked off the ~ in protest ["criminal act"] (colloq.) 20. to do, pull a ~ 21. an inside ~ ["misc."] 22. the job of ~ (does the ~ of radio announcer require a deep voice?) ["misc."] 23. a snow ~ (AE) ("deceit") (to do a snow ~ on smb. = to give smb. a snow ~); to do a hatchet ~ on smb. ("to criticize smb. harshly"); a put-up ~ ("a prearranged deceitful scheme"); he really did a ~ on his opponent (colloq.) (esp. AE) ("he inflicted a crushing defeat on his opponent") (see also *a job of work* at **work I** *n.*) USAGE NOTE: In colloq. BE, *on the job* can also mean "having sex."

jockey I *n.* a disc (BE), disk (AE) ~

jockey II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for position) 2. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into position)

jog *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ across the park; we ~ged around the track

jogging *n.* 1. to go in for ~ 2. (misc.) to go ~

join *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (would you ~ us for a drink?) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ in (they all ~ed in singing the national anthem) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ smb. in a drink; they all ~ed us in singing the national anthem) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ to, with (to ~ one wire to another; they all ~ed hands with one another; to ~ forces with one's allies) 5. (D; intr.) to ~ with (we must ~ with them in fighting tyranny) 6. (misc.) to ~ together (to ~ two wires together) (see also **join together**)

join in *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ as (she ~ed in as a volunteer) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (they all ~ed in with us in singing the national anthem)

joint *n.* 1. (med.) to dislocate a ~ 2. (anatomical) an elbow; hip; knee; shoulder ~ (I tripped and dislocated my shoulder ~) 3. (med.) an arthritic; painful ~ 4. (technical) a ball-and-socket; mortise; riveted; toggle; universal; welded ~ 5. (misc.) (slang) to case a ~ ("to inspect a place before robbing it") (also fig.); to put smt. out of ~ (I tripped and put my shoulder out of ~)

join together *v.* (D; intr.) ~ in; with (to ~ in worship)

join up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (we'll ~ with you in the next town)

joke I *n.* 1. to crack, make, tell a ~ (about) 2. to ad-lib a ~ 3. to play a ~ on 4. to carry a ~ too far 5. to take a ~ (he can't take a ~) 6. to make a ~ of smt. 7. to get ("understand") a ~ 8. a clean; funny; harmless ~ 9. an old, stale; private; standing ~ 10. a practical; sick ~ 11. a blue (BE), coarse, crude, dirty; obscene, off-color, smutty ~ 12. a ~ comes off; falls flat 13. the butt, object of a ~ 14. the point of a ~ 15. a ~ about (she ~d about a woman needing a man like a fish needs a bicycle) 16. (colloq.) no ~ to + inf. (it's no ~ to oppose smb. like her = it's no ~ opposing smb. like her) 17. (misc.) as a ~; to turn smt. into a ~; the ~ was on me

joke II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about; with (I was ~king with her about her latest escapade) 2. (L) she ~d that a woman needs a man like a fish needs a bicycle = "a woman needs a man like a fish needs a bicycle," she ~d 3. (misc.) "that can't be true – you must be ~king! = that can't be true – you've got to be ~king!" "you're right – I was only/just ~king."

joker *n.* 1. a practical ~ 2. (cards) ~s wild; a ~ in the pack (also fig.)

joking *n.* 1. ~ apart, aside 2. (misc.) "you've just won the Nobel Prize!" "no ~?!"

jolt I *n.* ["shock"] 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to get, receive a ~ 3. to feel a ~ 4. a severe ~ 5. a ~ to (it was quite a ~ to her pride) 6. with a ~ (I woke up with a ~)

jolt II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (they were ~ed into action by the shocking news) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ out of (she was finally ~ed out of her depression)

josh *v.* (colloq.) (D; tr.) to ~ about (I was ~ing her about her latest escapade)

jostle *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for position) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with (the children were ~ling with each other)

journal *n.* ["diary"] 1. to keep a ~ ["magazine"] 2. to publish, put out a ~ 3. to edit a ~ 4. to subscribe to, take (old-fashioned; esp. BE) a ~ 5. a learned, professional, scholarly; trade ~ 6. a ~ appears, comes out, is published (the ~ comes out quarterly)

journalism *n.* 1. broadcast; print ~ 2. advocacy; check-book; gutter, yellow; investigative, muck-raking ~ 3. a piece of ~ (the article was nothing but a piece of cheap gutter ~!)

journey I *n.* 1. to begin, embark on, go on, set off on, start on a ~ 2. to make, undertake a ~ 3. to break, interrupt a ~ (we broke our ~ to Nairobi at Cairo) 4. an arduous; long; perilous; pleasant; safe; sentimental; short; tiring ~ (we had a pleasant ~) 5. a round-the-world ~ 6. a leg, stretch of a ~ 7. a ~ across; around; from; into; through; to 8. during; throughout a ~ 9. on a ~ (they were on a ~ to Europe) 10. (misc.) the ~ out; the ~ back/home; (have a) safe ~! ("bon voyage!")

journey II *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ across the desert; to ~ around the world

joust *v.* (D; intr.) ("to compete") 1. to ~ for (to ~ for position) 2. to ~ with

jowls *n.* heavy ~

joy *n.* 1. to express; feel ~ 2. to find, take ~ 3. to be bursting with; radiate ~ 4. boundless, deep, great, indescribable, ineffable, overwhelming, pure, sheer, unbounded ~ 5. ~ at, in (they found ~ in helping others) 6. a ~ to (such children are a ~ to their parents) 7. a ~ to + inf. (such children are a ~ to behold = it's a ~ to behold such children) 8. (a) ~ that + clause (she could not hide her ~ that everyone was safe) 9. for, with ~ (to dance with ~; to jump for ~ at such good news) 10. to smb.'s ~ (to our great ~, our friends will be able to come)

joyful *adj.* ~ about, over

joyride *n.* to go for, on a ~

jubilant *adj.* ~ about, at, over (they were ~ over their victory)

jubilation *n.* 1. to express; feel ~ 2. ~ about, at, over (~ over a victory)

jubilee *n.* 1. to celebrate a ~ 2. a diamond; golden; silver ~

Judaism *n.* Ashkenazi; Conservative; Hasidic; Liberal (BE), Progressive (BE); Orthodox; Reform; Sephardic ~ USAGE NOTE: *Liberal Judaism* and *Progressive Judaism* in Great Britain are approximately equivalent to *Reform Judaism* in North America. *Reform Judaism* in Great Britain is approximately equivalent to *Conservative Judaism* in North America.

judge I *n.* 1. a fair, impartial; harsh, severe; lenient ~ 2. a hanging ("severe") ~ 3. a circuit; district; itinerant; trial ~ 4. (sports) a field ~ (the field judges' decision is final!) 5. (mil.) a ~ advocate; a ~ advocate general 6. a panel of ~s 7. (misc.) the ~ directed the jury to find for the defendant; a good ~ of character

judge II *v.* 1. to ~ fairly, impartially; harshly, severely, sternly; leniently 2. (d; intr.) to ~ by, from (~ging by appearances; to ~ from the facts) 3. (colloq.) (L) I ~ed that the project was impractical 4. (M) I ~ed the project to be impractical 5. (N; used with an adj.) the project was ~d impractical 6. (Q) I cannot ~ whether the project is practical or impractical

judgment, judgement *n.* 1. to display, exercise, show ~ (she always exercises good ~) 2. to form, make a ~ 3. to hand down (AE), pass, pronounce, render ~ on 4. to sit in ~ on (how dare you sit in ~ on me!) 5. to defer, reserve, suspend ~ 6. bad, poor; good, sound; impaired; sober ~ (to display poor ~) 7. a moral; snap; value ~ 8. a ~ against; for 9. a ~ that + clause (I repeat my ~ that the project is impractical) 10. in smb.'s ~ (in my ~, the project is impractical) 11. (misc.) an error of ~; use your own ~; I agreed against my better ~ (see also *rush to judgment* at **rush I**)

judiciary *n.* the federal (US) ~

judicious *adj.* (formal) ~ to + inf. (it was hardly ~ of you to speak to the press like that!)

juggle *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (they shouldn't be ~ling with the figures)

jugular *n.* ["jugular vein"] to go for the ~ (colloq.) ("to attempt to finish off")

juice *n.* 1. digestive, gastric ~s 2. apple; fruit; grape; grapefruit; lemon; orange; pineapple; tomato; vegetable ~

jump I *n.* 1. to clear, take a ~ (on horseback) 2. to make a ~ (with a parachute), to make a parachute ~ 3. (sports) the broad (AE), long; high; ski; triple ~ 4. (sports) a water ~ 5. a delayed (parachute) ~ 6. (basketball) the center ~ 7. a quantum ~ 8. a ~ from; to 9. a ~ in (a ~ in profits) 10. (misc.) to get the ~ on smb. ("to anticipate smb."); to give a ~ (the sound of the bell made me give a ~); with a ~ (I woke up with a ~)

jump II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ across (to ~ across a stream) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ at ("to be eager for") (to ~ at an opportunity) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ for, with (to ~ for joy) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ from, off (she ~ed from her chair; he ~ed off the roof) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ from one topic to another) 6. (d; intr.) ("to leap") to ~ into; onto (the child ~ed into bed; the dog ~ed onto the sofa) 7. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to attack") (he ~ed on his opponent) 8. (d; intr.) to ~ out of (to ~ out of a window) 9. (d; intr.) to ~ over (to ~ over a fence) 10. (d; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to one's feet) 11. (d; intr.) ("to rush") to ~ to (to ~ to conclusions; to ~ to smb.'s defense) 12. (misc.) to ~ down smb.'s throat ("to berate smb."); to ~ up and down (for joy); to ~ clear of the wreckage; she ~ed out of her chair

jump down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from, off; to (he ~ed down from/off the roof to the ground)

jump off *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ from; to (he ~ed off from the roof to the ground; she ~ed off to a good start)

jump up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from (she ~ed up from her chair) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on, onto, to (to ~ onto the table; he ~ed up from the ground onto/to the roof) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ out of (she ~ed up out of her chair)

jumpy *adj.* (colloq.) ["nervous"] ~ about

junction *n.* at a ~

juncture *n.* ["transition"] 1. (ling.) close; open; terminal ~ ["situation"] 2. a critical ~ (we had reached a critical ~) 3. at a certain ~ (we were at a critical ~)

jungle *n.* ["tropical forest"] ["rain forest"] 1. a dense;

teeming; tropical ~ 2. in a ~ ["dangerous place"] 3. an asphalt, concrete; blackboard ~ 4. in a ~

junior I *adj.* 1. ~ in (~ in rank) 2. ~ to (he is ~ to me by three years; "'Dockery was ~ to you, Wasn't he?' said the Dean." – Philip Larkin, "Dockery and Son," 1963)

junior II *n.* 1. ~ by (he is my ~ by three years) 2. (AE) a college; high-school ~

junket *n.* (esp. AE) ["pleasure trip"] 1. to go on a ~ 2. a fact-finding ~ 3. a ~ to (the legislators went on a ~ to Hawaii)

junta *n.* 1. a military; revolutionary; ruling ~ 2. a member of a ~ 3. by ~ (government by ~)

jurisdiction *n.* 1. to claim; exercise; have; obtain ~ 2. local ~ 3. original; primary ~ (a court of original ~) 4. ~ over (to have ~ over a case) 5. outside; under, within a ~ (that case is under the ~ of this court) 6. (misc.) to fall within the ~ of a court; to accept (or reject) the ~ of a court

jurisprudence *n.* analytical; medical ~

juror *n.* 1. to challenge; dismiss a (prospective) ~ 2. to suborn a ~ 3. an alternate (AE); prospective ~

jury *n.* 1. to convene, empanel, swear in a ~ 2. to charge, instruct; sequester a ~ (the judge charged the ~) 3. to dismiss a ~ 4. to fix ("corrupt"), tamper with a ~ 5. to serve on a ~ 6. a hung ("deadlocked") ~ 7. a grand (US); petit; trial ~ 8. a blue-ribbon (AE) ("special") ~ 9. a ~ deliberates 10. a ~ arrives at, comes to, reaches a verdict 11. (misc.) the ~ is still out ("the jury is still deliberating"); the ~ is still out on him ("a final decision has still not been reached concerning him"); (a) trial by ~; a ~ of one's peers

just *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ to, towards 3. ~ to + inf. (was it ~ of/for you to accuse me without proof?) 4. ~ that + clause (was it ~ that I was/should be accused without proof?)

justice *n.* ["rules of law"] ["administration of law"] 1. to administer, dispense, mete out, render ~ 2. to obstruct ~ 3. to deny; pervert (the course of) ~ 4. to temper ~ with mercy 5. divine; poetic ~ 6. frontier (AE); rough; summary ~ 7. ~ prevails 8. a miscarriage; parody, travesty of ~ 9. to bring (a criminal) to ~ 10. (misc.) the scales of ~; ~ is blind (fig.) ["recognition, appreciation"] 11. to do ~ to (her portrait does not do ~ to her/her portrait does not do her ~; she's strict – but, to do her ~, she's fair) 12. in ~ to (she's strict – but, in ~ to her, she's fair) ["judge"] 13. an associate (esp. US); chief (esp. US) ~; Lord Chief Justice (GB); Supreme Court ~ (esp. US) ["magistrate"] 14. a traffic-court ~; a ~ of the peace USAGE NOTE: The plural of *Lord Chief Justice* is *Lords Chief Justice*.

justification *n.* 1. to find ~ for 2. in ~ of

justified *adj.* 1. completely, fully, totally ~ 2. ~ in (are we ~ in assuming that she will attend?)

justify *v.* 1. (B) can you ~ your actions to me? 2. (G) nothing ~fies cheating on an exam 3. (K) what ~fied his being late?; desperation can hardly ~ his cheating on the exam!

jut out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from; over (the balcony ~s out from the hotel over the swimming pool) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ into (the cliff ~s out into the sea)

juxtapose *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ one idea with another = to ~ two ideas (with each other))

juxtaposed *adj.* ~ with (one idea ~ with another = two ideas ~ (with each other))

juxtaposition *n.* in ~ with (one idea in ~ with another = two ideas in ~ (with each other))

K

kangaroo *n.* 1. ~s hop, jump, leap 2. (Australian) a mob of ~s 3. a young ~ is a joey

kayak *n.* to paddle a ~

keel *n.* on an even ~ ("well-balanced")

keel over *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from the heat)

keen *adj.* ["very interested"] (esp. BE) 1. ~ on (he's ~ on her; she's ~ on music; she's ~ on passing the examination) ["eager"] (BE) 2. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to pass the examination) 3. (misc.) as ~ as mustard (BE); mad ~ = very ~ (she's mad ~ on passing the examination = she's mad ~ to pass the examination)

keep I *n.* ["maintenance"] to earn one's ~

keep II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to have") to ~ about (esp. BE), around (do you ~ a screwdriver around the house?) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ after ("to keep persuading") (~ after the children to clean up after themselves; they kept after me to buy a new car) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ at ("to hold") (she kept them at their studies) 4. (d; tr.) ("to hold") to ~ for (the librarian will ~ the book for you) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ from ("to refrain") (she could not ~ from talking) 6. (d; tr.) ("to conceal") to ~ from (to ~ a secret from smb.) 7. (d; refl., tr.) ("to hold back"); ("to prevent") to ~ from (the rain kept us from going; don't ~ her from her work; you cannot ~ Romeo and Juliet from getting married; she could not ~ herself from talking) 8. (d; tr.) ("to hold") to ~ in (to ~ smb. in ignorance; to ~ a car in a garage) 9. (d; intr.) ("to remain") to ~ off (~ off the grass) 10. (d; tr.) ("to hold") to ~ off (~ the children off the street) 11. (d; intr.) ("to remain") to ~ out of (~ out of my way; I kept out of their quarrel) 12. (d; tr.) ("to hold") to ~ out of (~ the guests out of the house) 13. (d; intr.) ("to be confined") to ~ to (she kept to her room) 14. (d; intr.) ("to continue") to ~ to (to ~ to the right) 15. (D; tr.) ("to reserve") to ~ to (to ~ a secret to oneself) 16. (G) ("to continue") she kept reading; she kept repeating the same thing 17. (J) ("to cause") he kept us waiting 18. (N; used with an adjective, noun, past participle) ("to maintain"); ("to hold") she kept us busy; they kept us prisoner; the fire kept us warm; we kept ourselves warm by the fire; she kept the children amused with her stories 19. (s) ("to remain") to ~ quiet; we kept warm by the fire (see also *to keep kosher* at **kosher**) 20. ("misc.") to ~ (to the) right; does butter ~ well in a refrigerator?

keep abreast *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to be informed") to ~ of (she kept abreast of the news) 2. (D; refl., tr.) ("to inform") to ~ of (she kept herself abreast of the news)

keep ahead *v.* (D; intr.) ("to remain in front") to ~ of (he kept (well) ahead of his rivals)

keep aloof *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from ("to remain at a distance from") (she kept aloof from the others)

keep away *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from (he kept away from us; she kept the dogs (well) away from the children)

keep back *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (they kept her back from the crowd)

keep clear *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ of (to ~ (well) clear of him; they kept the roads clear of snow)

keeping *n.* ["care"] 1. in ~ (in safe ~; to leave smt. in smb.'s ~) ["conformity"] 2. in ~ with (in ~ with regulations) 3. out of ~ with

keep on *v.* (G) ("to continue") she kept on reading; she kept on repeating the same thing

keep up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ with ("to remain on the same level with") (I ran to ~ with the others; she worked hard to ~ with the other students) 2. (misc.) to ~ with the Joneses ("to strive to have as much and be as successful as other people")

keg *n.* a powder ~

kelter (BE) see **kilter**

ken *n.* ["understanding"] beyond; within smb.'s ~

kettle *n.* 1. to put a ~ up to boil 2. (esp. BE) to put a ~ on ("to prepare tea or coffee") 3. a teakettle 4. a ~ boils; whistles 5. (misc.) (colloq.) a fine ~ of fish ("a mess"); a different ~ of fish ("smb. very different")

kettledrum *n.* to play a ~

key I *n.* ["device for turning the bolt of a door"] 1. to duplicate; make a ~ 2. to insert, put in a ~ 3. to turn a ~ (in a lock) 4. to fit, match a ~ 5. a duplicate; master; passkey; skeleton ~ 6. ~s dangle (on a chain); fit (into locks); open (doors) 7. a bunch of ~s 8. a ~ to (a ~ to a door) (see also *under lock and key* at **lock I** *n.*) ["solution"] 9. a ~ to (to hold the ~ to a mystery; a ~ to the exercises in a textbook; the ~ to the diagram explains everything in it; is hard work the ~ to success?) ["system of notes"] (mus.) 10. a high; low; major; minor ~ 11. in a (certain) ~ (played in the ~ of C) 12. off ~ (to sing off ~) ["button on a keyboard"] 13. to press, strike a ~ 14. to jam a ~ 15. (on a typewriter) a backspace; dead; shift ~ 16. (on a computer) a control; escape; function, soft; return ~ ["device for turning on the ignition in a car"] 17. an ignition ~

key II *v.* see **keyed**

keyboard *n.* 1. a computer; typewriter ~ 2. a piano ~ 3. a standard ~

keyed *adj.* (esp. BE) (cannot stand alone) ~ to (~ to the needs of our armed forces; our plants are ~ to producing civilian aircraft)

keyed up *adj.* ["psychologically ready"] ["tense"] ~ about; for, over ((all) ~ for the big game)

keyhole *n.* to look through, peep through a ~

keypunch *n.* to operate a ~

keystone *n.* a ~ of, to (AE) (is hard work the ~ of success?)

kibosh *n.* (colloq.) ["end"] to put the ~ on smt.

kick I *n.* ["blow delivered with the foot"] 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. a nasty, vicious ~ 3. a ~ in (a ~ in the groin) 4. (football, rugby) a drop ~ 5. (soccer) a free; penalty ~ ["thrill"] (slang) 6. to get a ~ out of smt. ["strong effect"] (slang) 7. to have a ~ (this vodka has a ~ to it)

kick II *v.* 1. (colloq.) (d; tr.) to ~ out of ("to expel") (he was ~ed out of school) 2. (P; tr.) they ~ed sand in my face; she ~ed the ball over the fence

kick off *v.* (slang) (d; intr.) to ~ by; with ("to begin") (they ~ed off the conference with a cocktail party = they ~ed off the conference by having a cocktail party)

kick out *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ at (the mule ~ed out at the farmer)

kicks *n.* (colloq.) ["thrill"] (just) for ~ (they did it for ~)

kid *v.* (colloq.) (D; tr.) ("to tease good-naturedly") to ~ about (they ~ded him about his paunch)

kid around *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) ("to fool") to ~ with

kid gloves *n.* to treat smb. with ~ ("to treat smb. with great deference or mildness")

kidney *n.* ["organ"] 1. to transplant a ~ 2. an artificial; floating ~ ["sort"] (formal) 3. of a certain ~ (people of that/his ~ are not to be trusted!)

kill I *n.* 1. to make a ~ (the lion made the ~) 2. at the ~ (to be in at the ~) 3. (misc.) to close in/go in/move in for the ~

kill II *v.* 1. to ~ (smb.) outright 2. (usu. mil.) ~ed in action 3. (colloq.) (R) it just ~s me to think about the money we lost (see also *to kill smb. with kindness* at **kindness**)

killer *n.* ["murderer"] 1. a copycat; multiple, serial; psychopathic ~ 2. a ~ strikes 3. (misc.) a giant-killer ("one that defeats a more powerful opponent, as David killed Goliath")

killing *n.* ["putting to death"] 1. (a) mercy ~ ["large profit"] (colloq.) 2. to make a ~

kilter *n.* ["order"] out of ~

kin *n.* 1. next of ~ (to notify the next of ~) 2. (misc.) kith and ~ ("friends and relations")

kind I *adj.* 1. ~ of (that was very/most ~ of you) 2. ~ to (~ to animals) 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to help us) 4. (misc.) ~ and courteous; would you be ~ enough to help us? = would you be so ~ as to help us?

kind II *n.* ["sort"] 1. of a ~ (of all ~s; of several ~s; two of a ~; a person of that ~ = that ~ of person) 2. (misc.) ~ of thing (always going on about his enemies, his problems – that ~ of thing); to like all ~s of music; "was it satisfactory?" "it was nothing of the ~ – it was awful!" ["same manner"] 3. in ~ (to be paid (back) in ~; to respond in ~) ["goods"] 4. in ~ (to pay smb. back in ~ rather than in cash)

kindergarten *n.* to attend, go to (a) ~

kind of *adv.* (colloq.) ["more or less, rather"] I ~ expected it (to happen); it was ~ nice, actually

kindly *adv.* ["readily"] not to take ~ to ("not to accept readily") (I don't take ~ to being called a fool!)

kindness *n.* ["quality of being good, kind"] 1. to display, show ~ 2. elementary; human ~ 3. ~ to, towards 4. out of ~ (she did it out of elementary human ~) 5. an act of ~ 6. (misc.) the milk of human ~; to kill smb. with ~ ["good, kind act"] 7. to do smb. a ~ 8. to repay, return a ~

king *n.* 1. to crown a ~ 2. to crown; proclaim smb. ~ 3. to depose, dethrone a ~ 4. (chess) to checkmate a ~ 5. a despotic; popular; strong; weak ~ 6. a ~ ascends, mounts, succeeds to the throne 7. a ~ reigns; rules 8. a ~ abdicates 9. (misc.) to toast the ~; how was life under the old ~?

kingdom *n.* the animal; mineral; plant, vegetable ~

king's evidence *n.* (BE) to turn ~ (see also **queen's evidence**, **state's evidence**)

kink *n.* ["imperfection"] to iron out the ~s

kinship *n.* 1. to feel (a) ~ with smb. 2. (a) ~ between, with

kiosk *n.* a telephone ~ (BE; CE has *telephone booth*)

kiss I *n.* 1. to blow, throw; give (smb.) a ~ 2. to steal a ~ 3. an affectionate; fervent, passionate; French; goodnight; loving, tender ~ 4. a ~ on (to plant a ~ on smb.'s cheek) 5. (misc.) the ~ of death; (BE) the ~ of life ("mouth-to-mouth resuscitation") (AE has *cardiopulmonary resuscitation* or *CPR*); to give smb. a hug and a ~

kiss II *v.* 1. to ~ passionately; tenderly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ on (she ~ed the baby on the cheek) 3. (O; can be used with one object) (she ~ed him goodnight; they ~ed goodnight)

kit *n.* ["equipment"] 1. a drum; first-aid; instruction; mess; sewing; shaving; survival; tool ~ ["clothing and equipment"] (BE) 2. camping; travelling ~ 3. (misc.) (mil.) (BE) a ~ bag

kitchen *n.* a communal; field; fitted (BE); soup ~

kite *n.* 1. to fly a ~ 2. (misc.) (AE; colloq.) go fly a ~! ("go away")

kith *n.* ~ and kin ("friends and relations")

kitty *n.* ["fund, pool"] in the ~ (how much is in the ~?)

knack *n.* ["skill"] 1. to get; have; lose the ~ of smt. 2. an uncanny ~ 3. a ~ for, of (she has a ~ for getting into trouble; she has the ~ of getting what she wants) 4. a ~ to (there's a ~ to baking a good cake)

knee I *n.* 1. to bend one's ~s 2. to dislocate; wrench one's ~ 3. a trick ("defective") ~ 4. ~s buckle 5. (fig.) at smb.'s ~ (she learned the language at her mother's ~) 6. (usu. fig.) on bended ~ (s) (I beg you for mercy on bended ~!) 7. (misc.) to drop/fall to one's ~s; to get down on one's ~s; to get down on one ~ (as when proposing marriage); will the credit crunch bring the economy to its ~s?; I go all weak at the ~s whenever she smiles at me

knee II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in (she ~d her attacker in the groin)

kneel *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ before 2. (misc.) to ~ in prayer

knell *n.* 1. to sound, toll the ~ 2. the death ~ (for, of) (the government's decision has sounded the death ~ for heavy industry in this country)

knife *n.* ["instrument for cutting"] 1. to draw, pull a ~ (on smb.) 2. to brandish, wield a ~ 3. to plunge a ~ into smb. 4. to put a ~ to smb.'s throat 5. to stab smb. with a ~ 6. to sharpen, whet a ~ 7. a blunt, dull; sharp ~ 8. a bowie; boy-scout; clasp; hunting ~; penknife, pocketknife; Swiss Army (T) ~ 9. a bread; butcher (esp. AE), butcher's (esp. BE); butter; carving; electric; fish; kitchen; paring; steak; table ~ 10. a flick (BE; AE has *switchblade*); sheath; trench ~ 11. a paper ~ (BE; AE has *letter opener*) 12. (misc.) a ~ and fork (some people prefer chopsticks to a ~ and fork); to go through smt. like a ~ through butter ("very easily and quickly, without meeting resistance") (see also *knife crime* at **crime**) ["surgery"] (old-fashioned) 13. under the ~ (she went under the ~ yesterday and was under the ~ for two hours)

knight *n.* 1. to dub, make smb. a ~ 2. a ~ errant; a ~ in shining armor (fig.) 3. a ~'s wife is a lady

knighthood *n.* to bestow, confer a ~ on, upon

knit *v.* (C) ~ a scarf for me; or: ~ me a scarf

knitting *n.* ["action of knitting"] 1. to do ~ 2. a piece of ~ ["one's own business"] (colloq.) (esp. AE) 3. to mind, stick to, tend to one's (own) ~

knob *n.* 1. to turn, twist a ~ 2. a control ~

knock I *n.* ["thumping noise"] 1. engine ~ 2. a gentle; loud ~ 3. a ~ at, on (a ~ at/on the door) ["blow"] (colloq.) 4. hard ~s (she has taken some hard ~s in her life)

knock II *v.* 1. ("to rap") to ~ gently; loudly 2. (colloq.) (d; intr.) ("to wander") to ~ about, around (he ~ed around the western part of the state for a few months) 3. (d; intr., tr.) ("to strike") to ~ against (she ~ed her head against the ceiling; she ~ed a stick against the ceiling) 4. (D; intr.) ("to rap") to ~ at, on (to ~ at/on the door) 5. (d; tr.) ("to pound") to ~ into (to ~ some sense into smb.'s head) 6. (d; tr.) ("to fell") to ~ off (he ~ed me off my feet) 7. (d; tr.) ("to remove") to ~ out of (the impact ~ed two teeth out of his mouth) 8. (d; tr.) to ~ to (she ~ed him to the ground) 9. (N; used with an adjective) ("to render by striking") to ~ smb. cold/unconscious 10. (P; tr.) ("to render by striking") she ~ed me down; she ~ed me out; she accidentally ~ed the vase off the table 11. (misc.) ~ it off! (slang) ("stop!")

knock down *v.* (colloq.) (BE) (D; tr.) ("to persuade to reduce a price or to get a reduced price") to ~ by; from; to (I ~ed him/his price down from £20 to £10 – so the price was ~ed down by £10!)

knockout *n.* 1. to score a ~ 2. a technical ~

knot *n.* 1. to tie; tighten a ~ 2. to loosen; undo, untie a ~ 3. the Gordian ~ (to cut the Gordian ~) 4. a loose; tight ~ 5. a bowline; granny; reef, square ~ 6. (misc.) (all) tied up in ~s

know I *n.* in the ~ (about)

know *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, of (we knew about the incident) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (I knew her as a colleague) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ by (to ~ smb. by name; I knew her by sight only) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ from ("to be able to differentiate") (the little child doesn't ~ a dog from a cat) 5. (E) (esp. AE) does he ~ to call you if he gets lost? 6. (H; only in the past and perfect) I've never known him to lose his temper 7. (BE) (I; only in the past and perfect) I've never known him lose his temper 8. (L) we ~ that they will come; she employed him even ~ing full well that he had spent time in prison!; does he ~ that he should call you if he gets lost? 9. (formal) (M) I ~ him to be a fool 10. (Q) she ~s how to drive 11. (misc.) to ~ smt. for a fact ("to know smt. to be true"); to ~ smt. by heart; to ~ smt. inside out, to ~ smt. backwards and forwards, to ~ smt. like the back of one's hand; you should ~ enough not to have stayed out late; you should ~ better; you should have ~n better than to stay out late; she always ~s best; to ~ for certain/for sure; "how well do you ~him?" "I ~ him intimately but she hardly ~s him at all." (see also **known**)

know-how *n.* 1. the necessary ~ (he doesn't have the necessary ~ for the job) 2. technical ~ 3. the ~ to + inf. (he doesn't have the necessary ~ to do the job)

knowing *n.* there's no ~ (what they'll do)

knowledge *n.* 1. to acquire, accumulate, gain ~ 2. to absorb, assimilate, soak up ~ 3. to have ~ (of a subject) 4. to broaden, deepen one's ~ 5. to brush up (on) one's ~ (of a subject) 6. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 7. to communicate, disseminate; impart ~ 8. to flaunt, parade one's ~ (of a subject) 9. to deny (all) ~ (of smt.) 10. detailed; extensive; profound, thorough ~ 11. rudimentary; slight, superficial ~ 12. direct; inside, intimate; intuitive; practical ~ 13. (a) fluent; reading; speaking; working ~ (to have fluent/a fluent ~ of English; to have reading/a reading ~ of several languages) 14. common ~ 15. (formal) carnal ~ (to have carnal ~ of) 16. ~ about, of 17. the ~ to + inf. (she has enough ~ about the subject to write a good book) 18. the ~ that + clause (it is common ~ that he has spent time in prison; she employed him (even) in the ~ that he had spent time in prison!) 19. to smb.'s ~ (to my ~, she has never been here) 20. to come to smb.'s ~ (it came to our ~ that she had left town) 21. (misc.) to the best of smb.'s ~ (to the best of my ~, she has never been here); a person of great ~

knowledgeable *adj.* ~ about

known *adj.* 1. internationally; nationally; well; widely ~ 2. ~ as (she is ~ as a patron of the arts) 3. ~ for (~ for being witty) 4. ~ to (~ to everyone) 5. (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to frequent that bar; she is ~ to be a patron of the arts; he is ~ to have spent time in prison) 6. ~ that + clause (it is well ~ (to everyone) that he has spent time in prison) 7. (misc.) better/otherwise ~ as (Samuel Clemens, better ~ as Mark Twain)

knuckle *n.* 1. to rap smb. on, over the ~s ("to reprimand") (he was rapped over the ~s for being late) 2. to bruise; scrape one's ~ 3. to crack one's ~s 4. brass ~s (AE; CE has *knuckle duster*)

knuckle down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to work)

knuckle under *v.* (D; intr.) ("to submit") to ~ to (to ~ to an aggressor)

kosher *adj.* to keep ~ (they keep ~ in their household)

kowtow *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to fawn over") (to ~ to the boss)

kudos *n.* (colloq.) ["praise"] (AE) 1. to earn, win ~ 2. ~ to smb. for smt. (~ to our mayor for reducing taxes!) ["glory, prestige"] (esp. BE) 3. to get ~ for (to get (a lot of) ~ for reducing taxes) 4. (misc.) the ~ 'of/attached to' being Poet Laureate

L

label I *n.* ["sticker"] 1. to affix, attach, put on, stick on; sew on a ~ 2. to bear, carry, have a ~ 3. to remove, take off a ~ 4. an adhesive, gummed ~ 5. a brand; designer; manufacturers'; union ~ (on a garment) ["descriptive phrase in a dictionary entry"] 6. to apply, use a ~ 7. a field; regional; stylistic; temporal; usage ~ ["recording company"] 8. for, on, under a ~ (on which ~ was the song recorded?) ["misc."] 9. to pin a ~ on smb. ("to assign smb. to a category"); a warning ~; a product that does just what it says on the ~ (and does not mislead users)

label II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (he was ~ed as a delinquent) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (all items should be ~ed with a price) 3. (N; used with an adjective, noun) her story was ~ed false/a hoax; he was ~ed a delinquent

labeled, labelled *adj.* clearly, correctly ~

labor I labour *n.* ["work"] 1. to do, perform; withdraw ~ (the workers who perform the ~ are threatenting to withdraw their ~ and go on strike.) 2. backbreaking; manual, physical; menial; painstaking; productive; sweated (BE), sweatshop; skilled; unskilled ~ 3. a division of ~ 4. (misc.) a ~ of love ["servitude"] 5. forced; hard; slave ~ (he got ten years at hard ~ = he got ten years' hard ~; democratic countries forbid forced ~; slave ~ has been outlawed) ["work force"] 6. casual (BE); child; migrant; organized; seasonal; skilled; unskilled ~ ["giving birth"] 7. to induce ~ 8. to go into ~ 9. a difficult, prolonged, protracted; easy; false ~ 10. in ~ (she was in ~ for five hours)

labor II labour *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ as (to ~ as a migrant worker) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ under (to ~ under a misapprehension/ misconception) 3. (misc.) "we must ~ to be beautiful" – W.B. Yeats (1865–1939), "Adam's Curse"

laboratory *n.* 1. a chemistry; crime; experimental; language; physics; research ~ 2. at, in a ~

laborer, labourer *n.* 1. a common; day; immigrant; itinerant; skilled; unskilled ~ 2. (BE) an agricultural labourer (CE has *farm worker*) 3. (BE) a casual labourer (AE has *transient worker*)

lace I *n.* delicate; exquisite; fine ~ (see also **shoelace**)

lace II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to attack verbally") (they ~d into her for being late) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with ("to add to") (they ~d the punch with rum)

laceration *n.* 1. a deep; minor, superficial; severe 2. multiple ~s 3. to sustain a ~ 4. a ~ to (he sustained multiple ~s to his left arm)

lack I *n.* 1. for ~ of (for ~ of fuel, their planes were grounded) 2. (misc.) no ~ of (there's never any ~ of reasons to be/for being idle!)

lack II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (formal) (we don't ~ for anything)

lacking *adj.* 1. badly, completely, sadly, totally, utterly ~ 2. ~ in (~ in common sense)

lacquer *n.* to apply ~

lad *n.* 1. a young ~ 2. a bunch, group of ~s (a group of ~s and lasses) 3. (BE) a bit of a ~, a bit of a Jack the Lad (who gets into trouble from time to time)

ladder *n.* ["framework with rungs for climbing"] 1. to put up a ~ 2. to steady a ~ 3. to lean a ~ (against a wall) 4. to climb, go up, mount a ~ (he mounted his ~ and is still up/on it) 5. to come down, descend a ~ 6. an aerial; extension; rope ~ 7. an accommodation ~ (over the side of a ship) ["unraveled stitches in a stocking"] (BE; CE has *run*) 8. to get, have a ~ (in) ["path"] 9. the ~ to success ["hierarchy"] 10. a career ~; the social ~ (climbing the career ~)

laden *adj.* 1. fully, heavily ~ 2. ~ with

lady *n.* 1. a leading; young ~ 2. the first ~ ("wife of the President or of a state governor") 3. a bag ~ ("a destitute woman living on the streets") 4. a cleaning; a dinner (BE) ~ (in a school) 5. (misc.) the first ~ of the American theater; (my lords,) ladies and gentlemen…; smb.'s good ~ ("smb.'s wife") (BE) (considered somewhat condescending to women) (and how's your good ~?) (see also *smb.'s lady wife* at **wife**)

lag I *n.* 1. a cultural; time ~ 2. jet ~

lag II *v.* 1. to ~ badly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ behind; in (she ~ged far behind the others in the race) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ by (their party was ~ging by ten points in the polls)

lag behind *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ by (their party was ~ging behind by ten points in the polls = their party was ~ging ten points behind in the polls) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in one's work)

laid up *adj.* ~ with (~ with the flu)

lake *n.* 1. a deep; dry ~ 2. an artificial ~ 3. the shore of a ~ = a lake ~ 4. across; at, on a ~ (they have a summer bungalow at/on a ~)

lam I *n.* (slang) (esp. AE) ["flight"] on the ~ (she took it on the ~ and was on the ~ for several years) ("she fled and remained in flight")

lam II *v.* (slang) (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to attack physically or verbally")

lamb *n.* ["animal"] 1. a sacrificial ~ 2. ~s bleat 3. (misc.) as gentle as a ~; like a ~ to (the) slaughter ["meat"] 4. to roast; stew ~ 5. roast; stewed ~ (see also *lamb stew* at **stew**) 6. a leg; piece, slice; rack; shoulder of ~ 7. (misc.) a ~ shank

lamb chops *n.* 1. to broil (AE), grill ~ 2. a rack of ~

lame *adj.* 1. ~ in (~ in one leg) 2. to go ~

lament I *n.* 1. a bitter ~ 2. a ~ for

lament II *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly, deeply 2. (D; intr.) to ~ over

lamented *adj.* the late ~ (smb.) (to mourn the passing of the late ~ (John Smith))

lamp *n.* 1. to plug in a ~ 2. to turn on a ~ 3. to light a ~ 4. to unplug a ~ 5. to turn off a ~ 6. an Anglepoise

(T) (BE), arc; bedside; floor (AE), standard (BE); gooseneck; table; wall ~ 7. a blowlamp (BE; CE has *blowtorch*); reading; safety ~; sunlamp; ultraviolet ~ 8. an electric; fluorescent; halogen; incandescent; neon ~ 9. a kerosene (AE), paraffin (BE); oil; spirit ~

lance *n.* to throw a ~

land I *n.* ["soil"]["ground"] 1. to clear ~ (to clear ~ of trees and brush) 2. to cultivate (the), work the ~; irrigate; reclaim (the) ~ 3. to redistribute (the) ~ 4. arable; barren; fertile; grazing, pasture; marginal ~ 5. private; public ~ 6. a plot of ~ ["solid surface of the earth"] 7. to raise, sight ~ (from a ship) 8. to reach ~ 9. dry ~ 10. a body of ~ 11. by ~ (to travel by ~) 12. on (the) ~ ["rural area"] 13. to go back to the ~ ["country"]["domain"] 14. smb.'s native ~ ("This is my own, my native ~!" – Sir Walter Scott (1771–1832)) 15. a promised ~ (we were in the promised ~) ["area"] 16. no man's ~ (in no man's ~; shot while crossing no man's ~) ["misc."] 17. Cloud-Cuckoo Land, Never-Never Land; the Holy Land; the lay (AE)/lie (BE) of the ~

land II *v.* 1. (d; intr., tr.) ("to arrive by air; to cause to land") to ~ at (when do we ~ at Heathrow?) 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ in ("to get involved in"; "to involve in") (he ~ed in trouble; such behavior ~ed her in trouble) 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ on ("to fall on") (she tripped and ~ed on her back) 4. (colloq.) (O) ("to punch") she ~ed him one in the eye

landfill *n.* a sanitary ~

landing *n.* ["coming down to earth"] 1. to make a ~ 2. a belly; blind; bumpy; crash; emergency; forced; hard; instrument; pancake; three-point ~ 3. a safe; smooth; soft ~ 4. a parachute ~ 5. (misc.) (fig.) after years of boom, is the economy due for a hard uncomfortable ~ or a soft easy one? ["level part of a staircase"] 6. off; on a ~

landing gear *n.* 1. to raise, retract a/the ~ 2. to let down, lower a/the ~ 3. (a) retractable ~

landlord *n.* 1. an absentee; slum ~ 2. (BE) a pub ~

landowner *n.* a big, large ~

landscape *n.* 1. a beautiful, magnificent, picturesque ~ 2. a bleak, gloomy ~ 3. a desert; lunar ~ 4. to dominate the ~ (a nuclear-power station dominated the ~) 5. (misc.) the political ~ (Winston Churchill dominated the British political ~ during World War II)

land up *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ in (he ~ed up in Moscow; he ~ed up in trouble) 2. (s) they ~ed up penniless; she ~ed up drifting from job to job

lane *n.* 1. to change, shift ~s 2. to cross over into, get over into the other ~ 3. the fast (also fig.); inside; outside; overtaking (esp. BE), passing; slow (also fig.) ~ 4. a bicycle, cycle; bus ~ 5. a four-lane highway (AE)/motorway (BE) 6. (BE) the nearside ("left"); offside ("right") ~ 7. an air; sea; shipping ~ 8. in a ~ (you youngsters like life in the fast ~; we oldsters prefer life in the slow ~!)

language *n.* ["linguistic system of communication"] 1. to use a ~ 2. to plan; standardize a ~ 3. to acquire, master; learn, study a ~ 4. to speak (in) a ~ 5. to butcher, murder a ~ 6. to enrich; purify a ~ 7. (the) spoken; written ~ 8. smb.'s first, native; second ~ 9. a cognate; foreign; international, world; national; official; universal; vehicular; vernacular ~ 10. colloquial, informal; formal; idiomatic; (a) literary, (a) standard; (a) nonstandard; nontechnical; substandard; technical ~ 11. an ancient; artificial; classical; creolized; dead, extinct; living; modern; natural; trade ~ 12. an agglutinative; inflecting; isolating; synthetic; tone ~ 13. an object, target; source; working ~ 14. sign ~ (to communicate in sign ~) ["style of speaking or writing"] 15. to use (a) ~ 16. biblical; elegant; flowery; rich ~ 17. everyday, plain, simple, vernacular; polite ~ 18. abusive; bad, coarse, crude, dirty, foul, nasty, obscene, offensive, street, unprintable, vile, vulgar; blunt, explicit; rough, strong, vituperative ~ 19. children's; diplomatic; men's; PC, politically correct; nonsexist; sexist; women's ~ ["system of signs, symbols used by a computer"] 20. an assembly; computer, machine, programming; high-level ~ ["misc."] 21. ~ acquisition; ~ learning; ~ maintenance; ~ teaching; body ~; to reduce a ~ to writing

languish *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in prison)

lantern *n.* 1. to light; put out a ~ 2. to shine a ~ on 3. a battery-operated; kerosene (AE), paraffin (BE); propane ~ 4. a ~ flashes; gleams; shines

lap I *n.* ["complete circuit around a track"] 1. to complete, do, finish; drive; run a ~ (they are running the last ~ of the race) 2. on a ~ (they are on the last ~) 3. (misc.) a (BE) ~ of honour/(AE) victory ~; how many ~s do they have to go? ["part of the body from the knees to the waist of a sitting person"] 4. in, on smb.'s ~ (the little girl sat in her mother's ~) 5. (misc.) in the ~ of the gods ("with an uncertain future") (see also *in the lap of luxury* at **luxury**)

lap II *v.* 1. to ~ gently 2. (P) the waves ~ped against the sides of the boat and around and over the people in it

lapse I *n.* 1. a momentary, temporary; occasional ~ (of memory) 2. a linguistic ~ 3. a ~ in, of (a ~ in judgment; we met again after a ~ of several months)

lapse II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into a coma)

larceny *n.* 1. to commit ~ 2. aggravated; grand; petty; simple ~

lard I *n.* to render ~

lard II *v.* (formal) (d; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ a speech with biblical references)

larder *n.* a full, well-stocked ~

large *n.* 1. at ~ ("uncaptured") (the prisoner was still at ~) 2. an assemblywoman at ~ ("an assemblywoman who represents several or all districts") 3. by and ~ ("in general")

lark I *n.* ["prank"] 1. as a ~ 2. for a ~ (he did it just for a ~)

lark II *n.* ["type of bird"] 1. ~s sing, warble 2. a bevy of ~s 3. (misc.) as happy as a ~

lash *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against (the rain ~ed against the roof) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ at, into (the speakers ~ed into the government) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ a crowd into a fury) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ the cargo to the deck)

lash back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ against, at (to ~ at one's critics after their last attacks)

lash out *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ against, at (to ~ at one's critics before their next attacks)

lass *n.* 1. a young ~ 2. a bunch, group of ~s (a group of lads and ~es)

lasso *n.* 1. to throw a ~ 2. to catch with a ~

last I *adj.*, *adv.* 1. to come (in) ~ (in a race) 2. the ~ to + inf. (she was the first to arrive and the ~ to leave) 3. among the ~ (she was among the first to arrive and among the ~ to leave) 4. at ~; at long ~

last II *n.* 1. to breathe one's ~ 2. (misc.) to see the ~ of smb.

last III *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ from; to, till, until (the meeting ~ed from one to three) 2. (P; intr.) the examination ~ed (for) two hours; the food will ~ (us) (for) a week; the meeting ~ed (for) an hour

last post *n.* ["bugle call"] (BE) the last ~ (see **taps**)

last rites *n.* 1. to administer, give, perform (the) ~ 2. to receive (the) ~

last word *n.* 1. to get in, have the ~ (she had the ~ in the argument) 2. to be the ~ (this car is the ~ in speed and style!)

latch *v.* (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ onto (since he didn't know anyone else, he ~ed onto us)

late *adj.* 1. ~ for (she was ~ for class) 2. ~ in (we were ~ in filing our tax return; I was ~ in getting up) 3. ~ with (they are ~ with the rent) 4. of ~ ("recently") 5. (misc.) the train was five minutes ~

later *adv.* ~ on

latest *n.* 1. the ~ about (have you heard the ~ about the elections?) 2. at the ~ (they will arrive tomorrow at the very ~)

lathe *n.* 1. to operate a ~ 2. a turret; vertical ~

lather *n.* ["sweating"] 1. to work oneself into a ~ ["foam"] 2. to work up a ~

latitude *n.* ["freedom of action"] 1. to allow smb. ~ in (we are allowed quite a bit of ~ in selecting our subjects) ["distance measured in degrees north or south of the equator"] 2. high; low ~s 3. at a ~ (at a ~ of ten degrees north)

laudable *adj.* (formal) ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to help them)

laugh I *n.* 1. to get, raise a ~ (the joke got a big ~) 2. to stifle, suppress a ~ 3. a belly; derisive; forced; hearty, loud; infectious; sardonic; scornful; subdued ~ 4. (misc.) to have the last ~ on smb.; to do smt. for a (bit of a) ~, to do smt. for ~s

laugh II *v.* 1. to ~ aloud, out loud; hard; loud; uproariously 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about ("to show one's amusement by laughing") (everyone ~ed about the incident) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ at ("to respond to smt. funny by laughter") (to ~ at a joke) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ at ("to show one's derision for") (they ~ed at our efforts; she ~ed at us and our warnings) 5. (d; tr.) to ~ out of ("to drive out by laughter") (he was ~ed out of court) 6. (D; intr.) to ~ with ("to join with smb. else in laughter") (I'm not ~ing *at* you – I'm ~ing *with* you!) 7. (D; intr.) to ~ with (a certain feeling) ("to laugh because of a certain feeling") (I ~ed with relief when I realized I was safe.) 8. (N; used with an adjective) he ~ed himself hoarse 9. (misc.) to ~ up one's sleeve ("to laugh secretly"); to burst out ~ing; sometimes the world seems so absurd you (just) have to ~!; sometimes the world seems so absurd you have to ~ to keep (yourself) from crying! (see also *no laughing matter* at **matter I**)

laughingstock *n.* 1. to make a ~ of smb. 2. to be; become a ~

laughter *n.* 1. to cause, provoke ~ 2. to burst into; dissolve into ~ 3. contagious, infectious; convulsive; derisive; forced; hearty, loud, raucous, uproarious; hysterical; sardonic; scornful; subdued ~ 4. a burst, fit, gale, roar; ripple of ~; peals of ~ 5. (misc.) to double up with ~; to roar with ~; canned ~

launch *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to fire") to ~ against, at (the missiles were ~ed against enemy targets) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to begin") (to ~ into a tirade)

launcher *n.* a missile; rocket ~

laundry *n.* ["clothes, linens that are to be washed or have been washed"] 1. to do (the) ~ 2. to dry; fold; iron; sprinkle the ~ 3. clean; dirty ~ (see also **wash I** *n.* 1–3) ["establishment for washing clothes, linens"] 4. a self-service ~ 5. at, in a ~ (they work at a ~)

laurels *n.* 1. to gain, reap, win ~ 2. to rest on one's ~

lava *n.* 1. to spew ~ (volcanoes spew ~) 2. molten ~ 3. ~ flows

lavatory *n.* (BE) 1. to go to, need, use the ~ 2. to flush a ~ 3. a gents'; ladies'; public ~ 4. down the ~ (to flush smt. down the ~)

lavish I *adj.* ~ in, with (~ with donations and praise; ~ in donating money to charity)

lavish II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ praise and gifts on smb.)

law *n.* ["statute, regulation"] 1. to administer, apply, enforce, uphold a ~ 2. to adopt, enact, pass; draft; introduce; promulgate a ~ 3. to obey, observe a ~ 4. to interpret a ~ (courts interpret ~s) 5. to block; veto; vote down a ~ 6. to abrogate, repeal; rescind ~ 7. to annul, repeal, revoke a ~; to declare a ~ unconstitutional (US) 8. to break, flout, violate a ~ 9. to challenge, test; cite; strike down a ~ (in the courts) 10. a fair, just; stringent; unfair ~ 11. a blue (US); ex-post-facto; federal (US); lemon (US); shield (US); state (US); sunset (US); sunshine (US); sus (GB); unwritten; zoning ~; the licensing ~s (GB) 12. a ~ allows; decrees, says; comes into effect, takes effect; forbids, prohibits; requires (the new ~ takes effect next week) 13. ~ about, on; against; for (there is no ~ against fishing) 14. ~ to

+ inf. (they introduced a ~ to rescind the new tax) 15. ~ that + clause (they introduced a ~ that would rescind the new tax; there is a ~ that (says that) all income must be reported) 16. according to, under a ~ (they introduced a ~ under which the new tax would be rescinded; there is a ~ under which all income must be reported) 17. (misc.) dietary ~s; Congress makes ~s ["body of statutes, regulations"] 18. to administer, apply, enforce, uphold the ~ 19. to obey the ~ 20. to interpret the ~ (courts interpret the ~) 21. to break; flout the ~ 22. case; common; constitutional; parliamentary; statutory ~ 23. civil; criminal; military ~ (see also **martial law**) 24. administrative; antitrust; business, commercial; contract; corporate ~ 25. copyright; environmental; family, marriage; immigration; international; labor; maritime; patent; tax ~ 26. canon; Islamic, Sharia; Mosaic; Roman ~ (does canon ~ require it, allow it, or forbid it?) 27. the supreme ~ (of the land) 28. according to the ~ 29. against; outside; within the ~ (it is against the ~ to smoke in an elevator) 30. as the ~ stands, by ~ (by ~ you are not allowed to smoke in an elevator) ["jurisprudence"] ["lawyer's profession"] 31. to practice ~ 32. to study ~ ["principle"] 33. Mendel's; Newton's; Parkinson's; the periodic; Sod's (colloq.) (BE) ~ 34. the ~ of diminishing returns; the ~ of gravity; the ~s of motion; the ~ of supply and demand; the ~ of the jungle (also fig.) ["misc."] 35. to take the ~ into one's own hands; to lay down the ~; (BE) to go to ~; in the eyes of the ~; (AE) an attorney at ~; everyone is equal under the ~; the letter of the ~; the spirit of the ~; a higher ("divine") ~; natural ~; above the ~ (bureaucrats who think they are above the ~ and unaccountable for their actions to anybody)

law and order *n.* 1. to establish; keep, maintain; restore ~ 2. a breakdown in/of ~

lawful *adj.* 1. ~ for (is smoking ~ for minors?) 2. ~ to + inf. (is it ~ for minors to smoke?)

lawn *n.* 1. to mow, trim a ~ 2. to sprinkle, water a ~

lawn mower *n.* to operate, work a ~

lawsuit *n.* 1. to bring, file, institute; lose; settle; win a ~ (to settle a ~ out of court) 2. to dismiss a ~ 3. a civil; class-action; frivolous; libel; malpractice; pending ~ 4. a ~ against; over (to bring a class-action ~ against the government over civil liberties)

lawyer *n.* 1. to hire, retain a ~ 2. a practicing ~ 3. a civil-rights; corporation; criminal; defense ~; divorce; (esp. AE) trial ~ (BE prefers *barrister*) 4. (AE) a Philadelphia ("shrewd") ~ 5. (humorous; often mil.) a barrack-room (esp. BE), guardhouse (esp. AE) ~ ("a soldier who claims to know all about military law"); a jailhouse ~ (AE)

lax *adj.* 1. ~ about (they are very ~ about their appearance; the police were ~ about law-enforcement) 2. ~ in (the police were ~ in enforcing the law)

laxative *n.* 1. to take a ~ 2. to prescribe a ~ 3. an effective; mild; strong ~ 4. a ~ works

lay *v.* 1. (N; used with an adjective) ("to render"); ("to place") she laid her soul bare; they laid the boards flat (see also *lay waste* at **waste I** *n.*) 2. (colloq.) (O; can be used with two objects + *that*-clause) ("to bet") he laid me ten dollars that it would not rain; he laid me (odds of) two to one that it would not rain 3. (P; tr.) ("to place") we laid the books on the table 4. (misc.) to ~ oneself open to criticism/ridicule; the system ~s itself open to abuse; to ~ ten dollars on a horse to win

layer *n.* 1. the bottom; outer; top ~ 2. an even; thick; thin; uneven ~ 3. a protective ~ 4. the ozone ~ 5. in ~s (to dress in ~s)

lay off *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from (she was laid off from her job at the factory) 2. (G) he laid off smoking

layout *n.* ["design"] 1. an artist's; typographer's ~ 2. page ~

layover *n.* a ~ between (a ~ between planes)

leach out *v.* (D; tr.) ("to separate") to ~ from

lead I /liyd/ *n.* ["position in front"] ["leading position"] 1. to assume, take a/the ~ in; to go into the ~ 2. to build up, increase one's ~ 3. to hold, maintain a/the ~ 4. to follow smb.'s ~ 5. to give up, lose, relinquish the ~ 6. a comfortable, commanding; overall ~ 7. a ~ over (she built up a commanding ~ over her closest rivals) 8. in the ~ ["principal role"] 9. to play the ~ (in a play) 10. the female; male ~ ["clue"] 11. to run down, track down a ~ 12. the police have no ~s on/to/as to who is guilty 13. a good, promising ~ ["leash"] (BE) 14. see **leash** 1, 2 ["cord"] (BE) 15. an extension; television ~

lead II /liyd/ *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to guide") to ~ against (to ~ troops against the enemy) 2. (D; tr.) ("to guide") to ~ by (to ~ smb. by the hand; to ~ a horse by the bridle; to ~ by example) 3. (d; intr.) ("to go") to ~ from; to (the path ~s from the house to the river; all roads ~ to Rome) 4. (d; tr.) ("to guide") to ~ from; to (she led the group from the bus to the auditorium) 5. (D; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ the students in a cheer) 6. (d; intr.) ("to guide") to ~ into (the prisoners were led into the courtroom) 7. (d; tr.) ("to guide") to ~ off; onto (she led the team onto the field and then off the field) 8. (d; tr.) ("to guide") to ~ out of (the fire fighters led them out of the burning building) 9. (d; tr.) ("to guide") to ~ through (to ~ smb. through the fog) 10. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to result in") (the infection led directly to gangrene; these evening courses will ~ eventually to an academic degree; can you describe the events that led to your decision?) 11. (d; intr.) ("to begin") to ~ with (the boxer led with a left jab) 12. (H) ("to induce") what led her to resign?; I was led to believe that she would accept our offer 13. (P; intr., tr.) ("to go") ("to guide") the road ~s nowhere; she led them over the mountain across the border 14. (misc.) to ~ smb. a merry chase (AE) = to ~ smb. a merry/pretty dance (BE)

lead back *v.* (D; intr., tr.) ("to return") to ~ from; to (the road ~s back to town; she led us back from the road to the starting point)

lead down *v.* 1. (d ; intr.) ("to go") to ~ from ; to (the path ~s down from the top of the hill to the beach) 2. (d ; tr.) ("to guide") to ~ from ; to (she led us down from the top of the hill to the beach)

leader *n.* 1. a born, natural ; decisive, strong ; undisputed ; weak ~ 2. (in a legislature) a floor ; majority ; minority ; opposition ; party ~ 3. a cheerleader ; labor ; military ; political ; troop ; world ~ (a summit of world ~s in Cairo) 4. a squadron ~ 5. a ~ in 6. (misc.) (BE) the Leader of the Opposition

leadership *n.* 1. to assume, take on, take over the ~ 2. to exercise, provide ~ 3. to relinquish, surrender ~ 4. firm, strong ~ (the party won several elections with firm ~ from her) 5. collective ; party ; political ~ 6. ~ in 7. under ~ (the party won several elections under her ~)

lead off *v.* (D ; intr.) ("to begin") to ~ by ; with (she led off by singing a lively song = she led off with a lively song)

lead up *v.* 1. (d ; intr.) ("to go up") to ~ from ; to (the path ~s up from the beach to the top of the hill) 2. (d ; intr.) to ~ to ("to precede and cause") (can you describe the events that led up to your decision ?) 3. (D ; tr.) ("to guide") to ~ from ; to (she led us up from the beach to the top of the hill)

leaf I *n.* 1. a bay ; lettuce ; tea ~ 2. gold ~ 3. autumn ; deciduous leaves 4. leaves fall ; rustle ; turn (the leaves were turning yellow) 5. (misc.) to turn over a new ~ ("to make a fresh start") ; to take a ~ from/out of smb.'s book ("to follow smb.'s example")

leaf II *v.* (d ; intr.) to ~ through ("to look through superficially") (to ~ through a book)

leaflet *n.* propaganda ~s (to drop propaganda ~s over enemy lines)

league *n.* ["alliance"] 1. to form a ~ 2. in ~ with ["group of teams"] 3. to form a ~ 4. (esp. Am. baseball) a big, major ; bush (colloq.), minor ~ ; (soccer) the premier ~ ["level"] 5. in the same ~ ; out of one's/smb.'s ~ (I'm out of my ~ trying to argue with an expert like you ! ; don't even think of dating her – she's way out of your ~ !)

leak I *n.* 1. to spring a ~ 2. to plug, stop a ~ 3. a ~ from ; in (to stop a ~ from a hole in a pipe) 4. (misc.) a security ~ (there appears to have been a security ~ from headquarters, Sir !)

leak II *v.* 1. (B) ("to divulge") they ~ed the news to the press 2. (d ; intr.) ("to enter by flowing") to ~ into (water ~ed into the basement) 3. (D ; intr.) ("to escape by flowing") to ~ out of (the oil ~ed out of the tank) 4. (D ; intr.) ("to be divulged") to ~ to (the news ~ed to the press)

leak out *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) to ~ to (the news ~ed out to the press) 2. (L ; to) it ~ed out (to the press) that the president's trip had been canceled

lean *v.* 1. (d ; intr.) to ~ across, over (to ~ across a table) 2. (d ; intr., tr.) to ~ against, on (to ~ against a wall ; to ~ on a desk) 3. (d ; intr.) to ~ on ("to rely on") (they had to ~ on their friends for help) 4. (colloq.) (d ; intr.) to ~ on ("to exert pressure on") in the end we had to ~ on them ("we finally had to exert pressure on them") ; we had to ~ them to pay 5. (d ; intr.) to ~ out of (to ~ out of a window) 6. (d ; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to one side) 7. (d ; intr.) ("to tend") to ~ to, towards (they are now ~ing to our position) 8. (misc.) to ~ over backwards to help smb. ("to make a maximum effort to help smb.")

leaning *n.* 1. a strong ~ 2. a ~ towards (to have a strong ~ towards political conservatism)

leap I *n.* 1. to give, make, take a ~ 2. a giant, great ; quantum ~ 3. a ~ ahead, forward (to make a great ~ forward) 4. a ~ from ; to 5. (misc.) by ~s and bounds

leap II *v.* 1. (d ; intr.) to ~ at ("to be eager for") (to ~ at an opportunity) 2. (d ; intr.) to ~ to ("to rush to") (to ~ to conclusions ; to ~ to smb.'s defense) 3. (P ; intr.) ("to jump") to ~ across a barrier ; to ~ over a fence ; to ~ into the bus ; to ~ to one's feet

leap down *v.* (D ; intr.) to ~ from, off ; to (he ~ed down from/off the roof to the ground)

leapfrog I *n.* to play ~

leapfrog II *v.* (d ; intr.) to ~ from ; to (American forces ~ged from one island to another)

leap up *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) to ~ from (she ~ed up from her chair) 2. (D ; intr.) to ~ on, onto, to (to ~ onto the table ; he ~ed up from the ground onto/to the roof) 3. (D ; intr.) to ~ out of (she ~ed up out of her chair)

learn *v.* 1. (d ; intr.) to ~ about, of 2. (d ; intr.) to ~ by, through (to ~ by experience) 3. (D ; intr., tr.) to ~ from (to ~ from experience ; she ~ed everything from me) 4. (E) she is ~ing to drive 5. (L) we have ~ed from them that he has found a job 6. (Q) she is ~ing how to drive 7. (misc.) to ~ by heart ; to ~ by rote

learning *n.* 1. book (colloq.) ; cognitive ; distance ; higher ; language ; programmed ; rote ~ 2. (misc.) a seat of ~

lease I *n.* 1. to hold a ~ (on) 2. to take (out) a ~ (on) 3. to extend ; lose ; renew a ~ 4. to cancel a ~ 5. mining ; (off-shore) oil ~s 6. a long ; short ~ 7. a ~ expires, runs out ; is due for renewal 8. a clause in a ~ ; the terms of a ~ 9. a ~ on 10. by ~, on, under (a) ~ (to hold land under (the terms of) a ~) 11. (misc.) a new ~ of (BE), on (AE) life ("a new chance to lead a happy life")

lease II *v.* 1. (usu. B ; occ. A) to ~ property to smb. 2. (D ; tr.) to ~ as (they ~d the building as a warehouse) 3. (D ; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ property from smb.)

lease out *v.* (B) to ~ property to smb. = to ~ property out to smb.

leash *n.* ["strap"] 1. to slip ("get free of") a ~ 2. on a ~ (to walk a dog on a ~) ["control"]["restraint"] 3. to hold in ~ 4. to strain at the ~ ("to attempt to cast off controls")

least *n.* 1. the ~ of (that's the ~ of my worries !) 2. by far the, far and away the, much the ~ (it was much the ~ interesting film I've seen lately : I hated it !) 3. at ; at the ; at the very ; in the ; not in the ~

leather *n.* composition; genuine; imitation; patent; saddle ~

leave I *n.* ["period of absence from duty, work"] 1. to give, grant a ~ 2. to extend smb.'s ~ 3. to go on ~; to take a ~ 4. to overstay one's ~ 5. to cancel smb.'s ~ 6. (an) annual; compassionate; maternity; paternity; research; sabbatical; shore; sick; terminal ~ 7. (a) ~ of absence 8. on ~ (she was on maternity ~) (see the Usage Note for **vacation**) ["permission"] (formal) 9. to ask, beg (literary) ~ (to do smt.) 10. to give ~ (to do smt.) (he was given ~ to appeal against the verdict) 11. by smb.'s ~ 12. without so much as a by-your-leave ("without asking permission") (he took my coat without so much as a by-you-leave!) ["departure"] (formal) 13. to take (one's) ~ of ["misc."] 14. to take ~ of one's senses ("to act irrationally")

leave II *v.* 1. (A) ("to bequeath") he left his estate to her; or: he left her his estate 2. (C) ("to entrust") she left the report for me; or: she left me the report 3. (D; intr.) ("to depart") to ~ for (they have left for London) 4. (D; tr.) ("to abandon") to ~ for (she left her comfortable home for a rugged life in the desert; he left his wife for another woman; he was left for dead on the battlefield; to ~ Paris for London) 5. (D; intr.) ("to depart") to ~ from (they left from the main station) 6. (d; tr.) ("to omit") to ~ out of (we had to ~ this paragraph out of the text) 7. (d; tr.) ("to abandon") to ~ to (I ~ the decision to your judgment; to ~ nothing to the imagination) (see also *left to one's own devices* at **device**) 8. (d; tr.) ("to cause to remain") to ~ with (they left the children with her mother; she left her books with us) 9. (H) ("to take leave of") we left them to muddle through on their own; they were left to fend for themselves 10. (J) ("to abandon") I left him working in the garden 11. (N; used with an adjective, past participle, noun) ("to cause to be in a certain state or condition") they left the fields fallow; the film left me cold; the flood left them homeless; ~ me alone!; the enemy left the countryside devastated; the war left her an orphan 12. (P; tr.) ("to forget") I left my books at home 13. (misc.) it ~s nothing to be desired; we left this decision up to her (see also *leave smb. in the lurch* at **lurch III** *n.*)

lectern *n.* at; on a ~ (to stand at a ~; a book on a ~)

lecture I *n.* ["formal talk"] 1. to deliver, give a ~ 2. to attend; follow ("understand") a ~ 3. a public ~ 4. a series of ~s 5. a ~ about, on; to (to deliver a ~ about climate change in German to a large audience) 6. at; during; in a ~ (there was a lot of applause during the ~ and there were a lot of good points in it) ["reprimand"] 7. to give smb. a ~ (about smt.)

lecture II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to discuss formally") to ~ about, on; in (to ~ on climate change in German to a large audience) 2. (D; tr.) ("to reprimand") to ~ for (she ~d the boys for being late) 3. (d; intr.) ("to discuss formally") to ~ to (to ~ to advanced students)

lecturer *n.* 1. a senior ~ (BE) 2. a ~ in, on (a ~ in English) (see the Usage Note for **professor**)

lectureship *n.* a ~ in

leech *n.* to apply ~es to

leer *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at

leery *adj.* ~ about, of

leeway *n.* to allow, give, provide ~ (they gave him more ~)

left I *adv.* to bear, go, turn ~

left II *n.* ["left side"] 1. to keep to the ~ 2. on the ~; to the ~ ["radical, leftist groups"] 3. the extreme, far, radical ~; left-leaning (a left-leaning think tank) ["punch delivered with the left hand"] 4. to deliver, throw a ~ 5. a hard, stiff ~ 6. a ~ to (a ~ to the head) ["turn to the left"] (colloq.) 7. to hang (slang), make, take a ~ 8. to make a sharp ~

leftovers *n.* 1. to eat up; use up ~ 2. to warm up, warm over (AE) ~

left-winger *n.* an extreme ~

leg I *n.* ["lower limb"] 1. to bend; cross; kick; lift, raise; lower; spread; straighten; stretch one's ~s 2. a game, gammy (BE) ("lame") ~ 3. an artificial, wooden ~ 4. (an animal's) front; hind ~s 5. (misc.) he doesn't have a ~ to stand on ("he has no defense"); to pull smb.'s ~ ("to deceive smb. playfully"); on one's last ~s ("near collapse"); to get a ~ up on smt. (AE; slang) ("to be in command of a situation"); to stretch one's ~s ("to exercise one's legs") ["part"] 6. the last ~ (of a race)

leg II *v.* (colloq.) to ~ it ("to run") (when the police arrived we ~ged it out of there pretty fast, I can tell you!)

legacy *n.* 1. to bequeath, leave; hand down a ~ 2. an enduring, lasting; rich ~ 3. a ~ from; to (the enduring ~ of freedom handed down from the Founding Fathers to us)

legal *adj.* 1. ~ for (is smoking ~ for minors?) 2. ~ to + inf. (is it ~ for minors to smoke?)

legend *n.* ["inscription"] ["wording"] 1. to bear a ~ ["myth, story"] 2. to pass into ~ (Babe Ruth's batting exploits have passed into ~) 3. a ~ arises; endures, lives on 4. a living; local; popular ~ 5. ~ has it (~ has it that George Washington couldn't tell a lie) 6. the stuff of ~ (Babe Ruth's batting exploits have become the stuff of ~) 7. a ~ to (her exploits were a ~ to millions) 8. a ~ that + clause (the ~ that George Washington couldn't tell a lie) 9. (misc.) myths and ~s ["notable person"] 10. to be, become a ~ (in one's own lifetime)

legislation *n.* ["statutes, laws"] 1. to administer, apply, enforce, uphold; to adopt, enact, pass; draft; introduce ~ 2. to block; veto; vote down ~ 3. to abrogate, repeal; rescind ~ 4. current, existing; emergency; enabling; progressive; remedial; social ~ 5. ~ comes into effect, takes effect (the emergency ~ takes effect next week) 6. a piece of ~ 7. ~ about, on; against; for (they introduced a piece of ~ against the new tax) 8. ~ to + inf. (they introduced a piece of ~ to rescind the new tax) 9.

~ that + clause (they introduced a piece of ~ that would rescind the new tax) 10. under ~ (they introduced a piece of ~ under which the new tax would be rescinded; under current/existing ~, you cannot smoke in an elevator)

legislature *n.* 1. to convene a ~ 2. to disband, dismiss, dissolve a ~ 3. a bicameral ~ 4. a state ~ (US) 5. a ~ debates; votes 6. before a ~ (new proposals coming before the ~)

legitimacy *n.* 1. to confirm; establish the ~ (of smt.) 2. to challenge, question the ~ (of smt.)

legitimate *adj.* ~ to + inf. (is it ~ to pose such questions?)

legwork *n.* (colloq.) to do the ~

leisure *n.* at (one's) ~

lemon *n.* 1. to slice, squeeze a ~ 2. a slice of ~

lend *v.* 1. (A) she lent the money to him; or: she lent him the money 2. (d; refl.) to ~ to ("to be suitable for") (it ~s itself to satire) (see the Usage Note for **loan II**)

length *n.* 1. full ~ 2. at ~ (she described each event at great – indeed inordinate – ~) 3. in ~ (snakes that can grow to be ten feet in ~) 4. (misc.) to keep smb. at arm's ~ ("to keep smb. at a certain distance"); to go to any/great ~s to do smt. ("to make a great effort to do smt."); the horse won by two ~s; to travel the ~ and breadth of the country

lengthen *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ by (to ~ trousers (by) two inches) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a short manuscript to book size)

leniency *n.* 1. to show ~ 2. ~ to, towards, with

lenient *adj.* ~ to, towards, with

lens *n.* 1. to grind a ~ 2. a concave; convex; crystalline; telephoto, telescopic; wide-angle; zoom ~ 3. contact; corrective ~es 4. plastic ~es; thick ~es

leopard *n.* 1. a snow ~ 2. a young ~ is a cub 3. a female ~ is a leopardess

leprosy *n.* 1. to develop, get ~ 2. to have, suffer from ~

lesion *n.* an open ~

less I *determiner, pronoun* 1. ~ to + inf. (we have ~ to do) 2. ~ of (we see ~ of them than we used to; I wanted to read it all but I read ~ of it than I wanted to) USAGE NOTE: The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows – less of them/it. When a noun follows, the use of *of the* limits the meaning – we drank less wine; we drank less of the wine that you brought yesterday.

less II *adv.*, *n.* 1. a bit, little ~ 2. no ~ than (we drank no ~ than 80% of it) 3. much ~ (we drank much ~ of it than they did) 4. much, still ~ (we don't even like them – much ~ love them!)

lesson *n.* ["instruction"] 1. to give ~s 2. to have, take ~s (to take ~s in English from a native speaker; I have three ~s a week with Professor Brown, during which I learn a lot) 3. to study one's ~s ["something that should be known"] 4. to learn a ~ (she learned a ~ from that experience) 5. to teach smb. a ~ 6. a moral; object; valuable ~ 7. a ~ about, in (to teach smb. a ~ in good manners) 8. a ~ to (let that be a ~ to you, young man!)

let *v.* 1. (esp. BE; CE has *to rent out*) (B) ("to give the use of in return for payment") to ~ rooms to students 2. (I) ("to allow") we cannot ~ them go without a struggle = they cannot be ~ go without a struggle 3. (misc.) to ~ smb. alone; ~ us continue for a while; to ~ smb. off a bus; to ~ smb. on a bus; I was let on (the bus) when I signaled the bus to stop and ~ me on and I was let off (it) where I wanted to get off (it); to ~ the air out of a tire; I don't have five dollars, ~ alone ten dollars!; to ~ oneself go ("to relax"; "to neglect oneself"); she let drop her plan to retire = she let drop that she planned to retire

lethargy *n.* (in) a state of ~

let in *v.* 1. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ for ("to cause") (you'll be ~ting yourself in for a lot of trouble if you take her in as a partner) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ on ("to share") (to smb. in on a secret)

let off *v.* 1. to ~ lightly 2. (D; tr.) ("to release") to ~ with (he was let off with a small fine)

let on *v.* (colloq.) 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about ("to reveal") (she did not ~ about her promotion; he didn't ~ about the fact that/the way that/how the judge could be bribed) 2. (L) ("to pretend, make out") (AE) she let on that she was more surprised than she really was 3. (L; to) ("to indicate") he let on (to the accused) that the judge could be bribed 4. (Q; to) ("to indicate") he let on (to the accused) how to bribe the judge

let out *v.* (esp. BE) (B) to ~ rooms to students = to ~ rooms out to students (see also **let I** 1; **rent II**; **rent out**)

let's (verbal form) (F) ~ continue; ~ go; ~ see ("~ go to the movies, shall we?" "yes, ~!; no, ~ not.") USAGE NOTE: The emphatic form *do let's* may be used more by women than by men. The negatives of *let's* are *let's not* (CE), *don't let's* (esp. BE), and *let's don't* (esp. AE) (sometimes considered non-standard).

letter *n.* ["written message"] 1. to compose, write; type a ~ 2. to mail, post (BE), send; seal a ~ 3. to get, receive; open, unseal a ~ (I received a ~ enclosing/containing a check) 4. to acknowledge; answer, reply to, respond to a ~ 5. to drop, put a ~ in a mailbox (AE), letter box (BE) 6. to certify; register; trace a ~ 7. to take (down), transcribe a ~ 8. to dictate a ~ 9. to address; deliver; forward a ~ 10. a brief; detailed; long; rambling ~ 11. an anonymous; bread-and-butter, thank-you; business; chain; cover; fan; follow-up; form; friendly; hand-written; love; open; pastoral; personal; poison-pen; threatening; typed ~ 12. an airmail; certified; dead; express; registered; special-delivery ~ 13. the ~s crossed in the mail (esp. AE), post (BE) 14. a ~ about 15. a ~ from; to (we received a ~ from her about the incident; the newspaper publishes lots of ~s to the editor)

16. in a ~ ["unit of an alphabet"] 17. a block; capital, large, upper-case; lower-case, small ~ (to write in capital ~s) ["first letter of the name of a school, college denoting membership in a sports team"] (AE) 18. to earn, win one's ~ (as for rowing) (BE has *blue*) 19. a school ~ ["misc."] 20. to follow instructions to the ~; to follow the ~ of the law

lettuce *n.* 1. to shred ~ 2. crisp; limp ~ 3. bib; cos (BE), romaine (AE); iceberg; leaf ~ 4. a head; leaf of ~

letup *n.* a ~ in (there was no ~ in the bickering)

let up *v.* (D; intr.) ("to ease up") to ~ on (she should ~ on the children)

leukemia, leukaemia *n.* 1. to develop, get ~ 2. to have ~ 3. to suffer from ~ 4. acute ~

level I *adj.* ~ with (~ with the street; I drew ~ with him; he and I were ~ with each other)

level II *n.* ["height"]["plane"]["degree"] 1. to achieve, attain; exceed; reach a ~ 2. a high; low; record ~ 3. (a) crime; energy; population; poverty; subsistence ~ (are crime ~s rising or falling?) 4. eye; floor; ground; sea; water ~ (see also **flood level**) 5. the federal (US), national; international; local; state (US) ~ 6. above; at, on; below a ~ (at sea ~; at the highest ~s; on the international ~) 7. (misc.) all vehicles leave from Level Six ["instrument for determining a horizontal plane"] 8. a spirit ~

level III *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ against (to ~ charges against smb.) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (the village was ~ed to the ground) 3. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to tell the truth to") (she ~ed with me)

lever *n.* 1. to operate; pull; push; use a ~ 2. a gear ~ (BE; AE has *gearshift*)

leverage *n.* 1. to apply; wield; have ~ 2. political ~ (they have no political ~) 3. the ~ to + inf. (has he got enough ~ to get his plan through Congress?)

levy I *n.* to impose a ~ (to impose a ~ on rum)

levy II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ a tax on rum)

lexicon *n.* to compile a ~

liability *n.* 1. to accept, acknowledge, assume, incur, take on a ~ 2. to exempt smb. from ~ 3. full; limited ~ 4. a ~ for (we assumed full ~ for our children's debts) 5. (misc.) assets and ~ties USAGE NOTE: The *Ltd* in the name of a firm (such as *Smith and Jones Ltd*) stands for "Limited."

liable *adj.* ["legally obligated"] 1. fully ~ 2. ~ for; to (we are fully ~ to them for our children's debts) ["likely"] 3. (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to show up at any time)

liaise *v.* (BE) (D; intr.) ("to keep in touch") to ~ between; with (government departments sometimes fail to ~ closely with each other)

liaison *n.* ["communication"] 1. to establish; maintain ~ 2. a ~ between; with (government departments sometimes fail to maintain a close ~ with each other) ["love affair"] 3. to enter into a ~ with 4. to have a ~ with

liar *n.* an abject, compulsive, congenital, incorrigible, inveterate, outright, pathological; accomplished, consummate, convincing, good; bad, poor, unconvincing ~

lib *n.* (colloq.) gay; women's ~ (see **liberation** 1)

libel *n.* 1. to commit ~ 2. (a) ~ against, on

liberal I *adj.* 1. politically; staunchly ~ 2. ~ in; with (~ in one's views; ~ with one's donations to charity)

liberal II *n.* a bleeding-heart; knee-jerk; political; staunch ~

liberate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

liberation *n.* 1. animal; gay; women's ~ 2. ~ from

liberties *n.* ["undue familiarity"] to take ~ with

liberty *n.* ["freedom"] 1. to gain ~ 2. individual, personal; political; religious ~ 3. civil rights and civil ~ties ["permission"] 4. to take the ~ (of doing smt.) (may I take the ~ of reminding you of your promise?; I took the ~ of opening your package) ["authorized absence"] (AE) (naval) 5. on ~ [misc.] 6. are you at ~ to give us any information?; unfortunately, I'm not at ~ to say any more

library *n.* 1. to accumulate, build up a ~ 2. to computerize a ~ 3. a children's; circulating, lending; free, municipal, public; law; mobile; music; reference; rental; research; school; university ~ 4. at, in (she works at/in the ~) 5. to borrow smt. from a ~ and then return it

license I licence *n.* 1. to grant, issue a ~ 2. to apply for; receive; renew a ~ 3. to revoke; suspend a ~ 4. a driver's (AE), driving (BE); dog; export; gun; hunting; liquor (esp. AE); marriage; state (esp. US) ~ 5. poetic ~ 6. a ~ to + inf. (we had a ~ to sell beer) 7. under ~ (the product is made under foreign ~)

license II licence *v.* (H) she is ~d to practice nursing

lick *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against, at (the flames ~ed at the roof of the next house) 2. (N; used with an adjective) she ~ed the plate clean

licking *n.* ["a beating"] (colloq.) 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to get a ~ 3. a good ~

lid *n.* ["cover"] 1. to cover smt. with a ~ 2. to keep; put a ~ on smb. 3. to take off a ~ ["curb"] 4. to clamp, clap, put a ~ on smt. ["eyelid"] 5. drooping ~s 6. the lower; upper ~

lie I *n.* ["falsehood"] 1. to tell a ~ 2. to give the ~ to ("to prove to be false") 3. a bald-faced, barefaced, blatant, brazen, deliberate, downright, monstrous, outright, transparent, whopping; obvious, unconvincing ~ 4. a white ~ 5. a pack, tissue, web of ~s 6. (misc.) to live a ~ ("to conceal the truth about oneself")

lie II *v.* ("to tell a lie") 1. to ~ flatly, outright 2. to be obviously lying 3. (D; intr.) to ~ about; to (he lied to the judge about the accident)

lie III *v.* 1. ("to be") to ~ ahead 2. (d; intr.) ("to be") to ~ with (responsibility lies with the president) 3. (P; intr.) ("to be located") to ~ in bed; Mexico ~s to the south 4. (s) ("to be in a reclining position") to ~ flat; still 5. (s) ("to remain") to ~ fallow (the field lay fallow) 6. (misc.) to ~ on one's back/side/stomach (in bed); to ~ low (see also *lie in ambush* at **ambush**; *lie awake* at **awake**; *lie in wait for* at **wait I**)

lie-detector test *n.* 1. to administer, give a ~ 2. to subject smb. to a ~ 3. to take, undergo a ~ 4. to fail; pass a ~

lie down *v.* (misc.) to take smt. lying down ("to accept smt. without protest"); to ~ on the job ("to work very little")

lien *n.* ["legal claim"] 1. to put, slap (esp. AE; colloq.) a ~ on smt. 2. to have a ~ on smt.

lieutenant *n.* 1. a first; flight (GB); second ~ 2. a ~ junior grade (US)

life *n.* 1. to have, lead, live a ~ (to lead a busy ~, not a ~ of idleness) 2. to prolong; save; spare a ~ 3. to dedicate/devote one's (entire/whole) ~ (to smt.) 4. to go through, live, spend one's ~ (doing smt.) 5. to give, lay down, sacrifice; lose; risk one's ~ 6. to claim, cost, snuff out, take a ~ (she took her own ~; the accident claimed many lives) 7. to ruin smb.'s ~ 8. to bring; restore smb. to ~ 9. to come to; to take on ~ (the statue took on ~ in the sculptor's skilled hands) 10. an active; busy, hectic; exciting ~ 11. a charmed; full; good; happy; idyllic ~ 12. an easy; peaceful, quiet, serene; sheltered; simple ~ 13. an ascetic, austere; cloistered; monastic ~ 14. a difficult, hard, miserable, tough; dull; lonely, solitary; unhappy ~ 15. a dissipated, dissolute; stormy, turbulent ~ 16. a long; short ~ 17. daily, everyday; modern; real ~ 18. campus (esp. AE), college, university; city; country, rural; suburban; village ~ 19. army; civilian; political; public ~ (in civilian ~ the sergeant was a teacher) 20. (a) nomadic ~ (the hunters led a nomadic ~) 21. smb.'s family; home; love; married; personal; private; sex; social ~ (to lead a hectic social ~; married ~ seemed to agree with them; in private ~ she was very easygoing) 22. animal; bird; human; intelligent; marine; plant ~ (has there ever been plant ~ on Mars?) 23. (in) adult; early; later ~ (in early ~ he was happy but in later ~ he was sad) 24. the shelf ~ (of smt. being sold in a store) 25. in ~ (early in ~ he was happy but later (on) in ~ he was sad; the actor played villains but in real ~ he was a nice guy; is there a new woman in his ~?) 26. (misc.) in the prime of ~; the facts of ~; the accused got ~ ("the accused was sentenced to life imprisonment"); to show signs of ~; (to hang on) for dear ~ ("with all one's energy"); not on your ~! ("not for anything in the world"); to start a new ~; to make a new ~ for oneself; to breathe/infuse (new) ~ into smt.; to bring back to ~; to stake one's ~ on smt.; a mode, style, way of ~; to pester the ~ out of smb.; a matter of ~ and death; a ~ of ease; a ~ of luxury; full of ~; (slang) get a ~! ("don't be so obsessive!"); ("do smt. new, useful, constructive!"); the bright, sunny; seamy side of ~; the idea seemed to take on a ~ of its own; I've never seen the like in all my ~!; do you believe in ~ after death? (see also *life form* at **form I**; *the (great) love of smb.'s life* at **love I**; *the quality of life* at **quality**; *the right to life* at **right III**; *within an inch of one's life* at **inch**; *a slice of life* at **slice I** *n.)*

lifeboat *n.* 1. to launch, lower a ~ 2. to swamp a ~ (the ~ was swamped in the surf) 3. (misc.) to take to the ~s

life jacket *n.* 1. to inflate a ~ 2. to put on a ~

lifeline *n.* ["rope used to save a life"] 1. to throw smb. a ~ ["vital route"] 2. to hold out, offer, throw a ~ (to hold a ~ out to a company in financial trouble) 3. to cut a ~ 4. a ~ to

lifestyle *n.* 1. to have, lead a certain ~ 2. an alternate (AE), alternative; luxurious; ostentatious; sedentary; simple ~ 3. (misc.) you should change your ~ because a change of/in ~ would benefit you. USAGE NOTE: The collocation *live a lifestyle* is found but considered non-standard by some.

life support *n.* on ~ (the patient was put on ~ but eventually taken off (it) when his condition became hopeless) (see also *life-support system* at **system**)

lifetime *n.* 1. to dedicate, devote a ~ (to smt.) (one can dedicate an entire/a whole ~ to promoting peace) 2. during, in one's ~ 3. (misc.) to last a ~; it seems a ~ ago now!; once in a ~ (seize a once-in-a-lifetime opportunity); the chance, opportunity of a ~; a (single) ~ wouldn't be long enough to tell you everything! (see also *a legend in one's own lifetime* at **legend**)

lift I *n.* ["device for raising and lowering people and freight"] (BE; AE has *elevator*) 1. to operate a ~ (a liftboy or liftman operates a ~) 2. to take a ~ (we took the ~ to the tenth floor) 3. a freight; service ~ (see also **elevator** 1–6) ["conveyor suspended from a cable"] 4. a chair, ski ~ ["ride"] (colloq.) 5. to bum (AE); get a ~ (from smb.) 6. to give smb. a ~ ["boost, inspiration"] (colloq.) 7. to get a ~ (from smb. or smt.) 8. to give smb. a ~ (your words of encouragement gave us a real ~)

lift II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to raise") to ~ from (she did not ~ her eyes from the TV set) 2. (d; tr.) ("to steal") to ~ from (the material was ~ed from smb.'s dissertation) 3. (D; tr.) ("to raise") to ~ out of (they ~ed the crates out of the hold) 4. (misc.) the jet ~ed off the runway

lift down *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (they ~ed the trunk down from the shelf to the floor)

lift up *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (they ~ed the trunk up from the floor to the shelf)

ligament *n.* to strain; tear a ~

light I *adj.* 1. to make ~ of ("to attach little importance to") 2. ~ of foot, light on one's feet, light-footed 3. (misc.) as ~ as a feather = feather-light ("very light")

light II *n.* ["illumination"] ["source of brightness"] 1. to put on, switch on, turn on a ~ 2. to shine, throw a ~ on smt. 3. to cast, shed ~ on smt. (can you shed any ~ on this mystery?) 4. to dim; extinguish, switch off, turn off, turn out a ~ 5. to dim the ~s, turn the ~s down; to turn the ~s up 6. a blinding; bright, strong; harsh ~ (we brought the strange object into the bright ~ of an open bulb – the ~ from the bulb helped us to identify the object) 7. a dim, dull, faint; soft ~ 8. moonlight; sunlight (see also **daylight**; **daylights**) 9. an electric; firelight; klieg; landing; neon; night; overhead; pilot; strobe; torchlight; traffic; warning ~ (see also *torchlight parade* at **parade**) 10. (on a car) a backup (AE), reversing (BE); brake; dome; instrument; parking ~; taillight 11. a ~ flashes; flickers; gleams; glimmers; glows, shines; goes on; the ~s are on (the gold ring caught the gleaming ~ of our lamp and in the ~ we could see it clearly) 12. a ~ goes off; goes out; the ~s are off; out 13. ~ travels (very fast) (~ travels at the speed of ~) 14. (BE) the ~s have fused ("a fuse has blown") 15. by the ~ of (to read by the ~ of a candle) ["traffic light"] 16. to go through a (red) ~ 17. the ~ changes, switches (to green/red) (esp. AE), the ~s change, switch (to green/red) 18. against a ~ (to cross against the ~ (esp. AE), to cross against the ~s) 19. at a ~ (to stop at a ~ (esp. AE), to stop at the ~s) (see also Usage Note at **traffic light**) ["flame used to light a cigarette"] 20. to give smb. a ~ ["flame on a stove, fire"] (AE) 21. a low ~ (cook it on/over a low ~) ["misc."] 22. in ~ of (esp. AE), in the ~ of ("in view of"); in the harsh ~ of reality; a guiding ~ ("one who sets an example"); to see the ~ ("to comprehend the truth"); to bring smt. to ~ ("to make smt. known"); to come to ~, to see the ~ of day ("to become known"); she wanted to see her name in ~s ("she wanted to succeed on the stage and become famous"); the northern ~s; the southern ~s (see also **cold light**; **green light**; *light at the end of the tunnel* at **tunnel I** *n.*)

light III *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to attack") (he really lit into his opponent) 2. (C) he ~ed/lit a cigarette for me; or: he ~ed/lit me a cigarette 3. (D; intr.) to ~ on, upon ("to come across") (he ~ed on a rare dictionary) 4. (misc.) a brightly; dimly ~ed/lit street

light bulb see **bulb** 1–5

lighter *n.* a cigarette ~

light out *v.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) (D; intr.) to ~ for ("to leave for") USAGE NOTE: The past and past participle of this verb are usu. *lit out* – she lit out for home.

light up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (her face ~ed/lit up with pleasure)

lighting *n.* 1. dim; good; poor; soft ~ 2. artificial; electric; fluorescent ~ 3. diffused; direct; indirect ~

lightning *n.* 1. ball; forked; heat, sheet ~ 2. ~ flashes; strikes 3. a bolt, flash, streak, stroke of ~ 4. thunder and ~

like I *prep.* (colloq.) ~ smt. to + inf. (it was not ~ them to be late)

like II *v.* 1. to ~ a great deal, a lot, very much 2. (E) he ~s to read 3. (G) he doesn't ~ reading 4. (H; no passive) (often with the conditional); I ~ people to tell me the truth; I'd ~ you to go; AE also has, slightly colloq.: I'd ~ for you to go; CE has: what I'd ~ is for you to go 5. (M) we ~ our friends to be honest 6. (N; used with an adjective) I ~ my steak rare 7. (misc.) do what/whatever you ~: I don't care!; leave if you ~: I don't care USAGE NOTE: The verb *like* can be used with *it* + clause – I like it when you smile; I'd like it if you smiled.

likelihood *n.* 1. every; great; little ~ (there is every ~ of her coming) 2. a good, strong ~ 3. ~ that + inf. (there is every ~ that she'll come) 4. in all ~ (in all ~ she'll come)

likely *adj.* 1. equally; hardly; highly, very ~ 2. (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (she is not ~ to show up; she's hardly ~ to show up after being insulted last time!; it is not ~ to snow) 3. ~ that + clause (it is not ~ that she will show up; it is not ~ that it will snow)

liken *v.* (d; tr.) ("to compare") to ~ to (her estate could be ~ed to a fortress)

likeness *n.* 1. to catch a ~ (the artist caught the sitter's ~) 2. to bear a ~ 3. a living; striking, uncanny; strong; true ~ 4. a family ~ 5. a ~ between; to

likewise *adv.* to do ~ (go and do ~)

liking *n.* 1. to take a ~ to 2. to develop; have a ~ for 3. to smb.'s ~ (that is not to my ~)

limb *n.* 1. a lower; upper ~ 2. to stretch one's ~s 3. an artificial ~ (he got an artificial ~ when one of his ~s had to be amputated) 4. (misc.) out on a ~ ("in a precarious position")

limbo *n.* in ~ (in political ~)

limelight *n.* 1. to get, have, hold the ~ 2. to grab; hog the ~ 3. to be in the ~ ("to have high public visibility") (he was thrust into the ~ after the scandal, stayed in the ~ for a while, and then dropped out of the ~)

limit I *n.* 1. to impose, place, put, set a ~ on 2. to disregard, exceed a ~ 3. to reach a ~ (she reached the ~ of her endurance) 4. an age; credit; term; time; weight ~ (see also **speed limit**) 5. a ~ for; on; to 6. above, over; below; beyond a ~ 7. within ~s 8. (misc.) to push smb. to the ~ (I'll have to push myself to the very ~ to finish on time!); over the ~ ("having drunk too much alcohol") (he was fined for driving while over the ~) (see also **limits**)

limit II *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ to (she had to ~ herself to twenty minutes)

limitations *n.* 1. to put ~ on 2. budgetary, financial ~ 3. within certain ~ (see also **statute of limitations**)

limited *adj.* 1. (very) strictly ~ 2. ~ in (~ in resources) 3. ~ to

limits *n.* 1. (AE) city ~ 2. (AE) (esp. mil.) off ~ (to); on ~ (to) (the bar was put off ~ to all military personnel and has remained out of bounds to them) 3. beyond; within (reasonable) ~

limo *n.* ["limousine"] (colloq.) a stretch ~

limousine *n.* 1. to hire; take a ~ 2. an airport; bulletproof; chauffeur-driven ~

limp *n.* 1. to have a ~ 2. a decided, marked, pronounced; slight ~ 3. with a ~

line I *n.* ["long thin mark"] 1. to draw a ~ 2. a broken; solid, unbroken ~ (see also **dotted line**) 3. a contour; crooked; curved; diagonal; straight; wavy; zigzag ~ 4. a fine, thin; heavy, thick ~ 5. a horizontal; parallel; perpendicular; vertical ~ ["row of people waiting; queue"] 6. to form a ~ 7. (AE) to buck ("push into") a ~ (BE has *jump a queue*) 8. to get in; into ~; to stand, wait in ~ 9. a bread; check-in; checkout; chow ~ (see also **poverty line**) 10. a ~ forms ["row"] 11. to form a ~ 12. a police; receiving ~ (see also **picket line**) ["row of characters"] 13. to indent; insert a ~ 14. (fig.) to read between the ~s ["unit of text"] 15. to deliver a ~ (as an actor) 16. to go over, rehearse; memorize one's ~s (the actors had to rehearse their ~s several times) 17. to fluff one's ~s 18. a dull; witty ~ (there isn't a dull ~ in the whole play) ["route"] 19. to change from/to; introduce a (new); to take, use a ~ 20. to discontinue a ~ 21. a branch; feeder; main ~ 22. (on) a bus; commuter; high-speed; steamship; streetcar (AE), tram (BE); subway (AE), underground (BE) ~ (took the Northern ~ to Euston and changed to the Victoria ~ there = changed at Euston from the Northern ~ to the Victoria ~; Euston is on both the Northern ~ and the Victoria ~) 23. supply ~s (to cut enemy supply ~s) ["path"] 24. to follow a ~ (to follow a ~ of reasoning; to follow the ~ of least resistance; a tree is blocking my ~ of sight) ["telephone connection"] 25. to get a ~; to give smb. a ~ 26. the ~ is busy (esp. AE), engaged (BE), tied up (esp. AE) 27. the ~ is free, open 28. the ~ goes dead 29. an outside; party ("shared"); private ~ 30. a helpline, hot ~ (a helpline for desperate people; a hot ~ for missing children; to establish/set up a hot ~ between Washington and Moscow to link heads of state) 31. on the ~ (to stay on the ~) ["note"] 32. to drop smb. a ~ ["information"] 33. to get a ~ on smb. ["type of merchandise"] 34. to carry; handle; introduce a ~ 35. to discontinue, drop a ~ 36. a complete, full ~ ["policy"] 37. to adopt, take; adhere to, follow, hew to (AE), pursue a ~ (on) 38. a firm, hard, tough; official ~ (to hew to the official ~; take a tough ~ on terrorism) (see also **party line**) ["flattering talk"] (colloq.) 39. to feed, give, hand smb. a ~ ["wire"] ["pipe"] ["conduit"] 40. a fuel; oil; sewage; steam; telegraph; telephone ~ 41. high-voltage; power ~s (the power ~s are down; several power ~s were downed during the storm) (see also **supply lines**) ["boundary"] 42. (AE) a city; county; state; township ~ 43. a boundary, snow; squall; tree ~ (see also **dividing line**) 44. (sports) a base; end; foul; goal; service ~; sideline 45. at, on a ~ (at the goal ~; on the base ~; on the sidelines) ["established position along a front"] ["boundary"] (mil.) 46. to hold a ~ 47. a battle; cease-fire; ~ (see also **firing line**; **front line**) 48. (the) enemy ~s (behind enemy ~s) 49. at, on a ~ (on the cease-fire ~) ["conveyor belt"] 50. an assembly, production ~ (to work on an assembly ~; to automate a production ~) ["occupation"] ["field of interest"] 51. what ~ are you in? ["contour"] 52. the ~s of a ship ["limit"] 53. to hold the ~ (on prices) 54. to draw the ~ ("to set a limit") ["turn"] ["order"] 55. in ~ for (she is next in ~ for promotion; who is third in the ~ of succession to the throne?) ["alignment"] 56. in ~; out of ~ (the wheels are out of ~) ["conformity"] 57. to toe the ~ 58. to bring smb. into ~; to keep smb. in ~ 59. to get into ~; to get out of ~ 60. in ~ with (in ~ with your stated policy) ["cord, device for catching fish"] 61. to cast a ~ 62. to reel in; reel out a ~ 63. a fishing ~ ["rope"] 64. to throw a ~ to smb. (who is in the water) 65. a plumb ~ ["division"] 66. to cross a ~ 67. a color ~ (see also **color line**; **poverty line**) ["tendency"] 68. along, on certain ~s (along modern ~s) ["dynasty"] 69. to establish, found a ~ 70. an unbroken ~ (of succession) ["distinction"] 71. a fine, nebulous, thin ~ between (is there really only a fine ~ between genius and madness?) ["misc."] 72. the bottom ~ ("the final result"); to be on the firing ~ ("to be at the center of activity"); a plot, story ~ (they're working on the story ~s of the series for the next six months); to walk a straight ~; to put smt. on the ~ ("to risk smt."); to lay it on the ~ ("to speak candidly"); in the ~ of duty; top of the ~ ("best quality"); on ~ ("in operation"); is this the end of the ~ for typewriters?; to go online ("to become linked to a computer network"; see also **online**) (see also *a line of credit = a credit line* at **credit I** *n.*)

line II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (she ~d the shelf with paper)

lineage *n.* 1. to trace smb.'s ~ (she could trace her ~ back to the Pilgrim Fathers!) 2. an ancient; royal ~

lined up *adj.* 1. ~ for (~ for roll call) 2. ~ in (~ in three columns; ~ in a row) 3. ~ with (~ with each other = ~ together)

linen *n.* 1. to change the (bed) ~ 2. fresh ~ 3. bed; fine; pure; table ~ (see also **dirty linen**)

line out *v.* (in baseball and softball) (D; intr.) to ~ to (the batter ~d out to center field)

liner I *n.* ["steamship"] a cruise; luxury; ocean; passenger; transatlantic ~ (a job on a luxury cruise ~)

liner II *n.* ["lining"] a helmet ~

lineup *n.* 1. a police ~ (AE: BE has *identity parade, identification parade*) (she picked out the criminal in the police ~) 2. (AE) to be in a ~ (as a suspect) 3. (sports) a starting ~

line up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ behind (to ~ behind the table) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (the teacher ~d the pupils up for roll call = the teacher ~d up the pupils for roll call) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ in (to ~ in three columns; to ~ in a row) 4. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (to ~ one thing up with another = to ~ one thing with another = to ~ two things up together)

linger *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ over ("to take one's time with") (don't ~ over your coffee)

lingo *n.* (colloq.) ["language, dialect"] 1. to speak the ~ 2. to understand the ~ 3. the local ~

linguistics *n.* applied; comparative; computational; contrastive; descriptive; general; generative; historical ~; psycholinguistics; sociolinguistics; structural; transformational ~

liniment *n.* to apply, rub in, rub on ~

lining *n.* 1. a brake; coat ~ 2. a zip-in ~ 3. (misc.) a silver ~ ("the bright side of a problem") (don't despair – every cloud has a silver ~!)

link I *n.* 1. to establish, forge, form a ~ 2. to sever a ~ 3. a causal; direct ~ (there may well be a ~ between the two phenomena – but is it a direct causal ~?) 4. a close; strong; weak ~; the weakest ~ (as in a chain) 5. a connecting; rail; road ~ 6. the missing ~ (the missing ~ between apes and man) 7. a cuff ~ 8. a ~ between; to, with (he has ~s to the underworld)

link II *v.* 1. to ~ causally; closely; directly; inextricably 2. to ~ electronically 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to, with (these events are inextricably ~ed with each other = this event and that event are inextricably linked (together/with each other))

linkage *n.* (a) ~ between, to, with (there may well be a ~ between the two phenomena – but is it a direct causal ~?)

links *n.* ["golf course"] (out) on the ~

link-up *n.* a ~ between; to; with (there was a ~ between our forces and theirs on the Danube = there was a ~ of our forces with/and theirs on the Danube)

link up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to, with (we ~ed up with their forces on the Danube = our forces and theirs ~ed up on the Danube)

linoleum *n.* inlaid ~

lion *n.* 1. a mountain ~ 2. ~s prowl; roar 3. a group, pride of ~s 4. a young ~ is a cub 5. a female ~ is a lioness 6. a male lion has a mane 7. the lion's color is tawny 8. (misc.) the ~ is the king of beasts (see also **sea lion**)

lip *n.* 1. to curl; lick; move; part; pucker (up); purse; round one's ~s 2. to press one's ~s to (she pressed her ~s to the baby's forehead) 3. chapped; dry; moist ~s 4. thick; thin ~s (his thick ~s quivered/trembled in anticipation) 5. the lower; upper ~ 6. from smb.'s (own) ~s (I heard it from her own ~s) 7. on one's ~s (she died with a prayer on her ~s) 8. on everyone's ~s (her name was on everyone's ~s) 9. (misc.) to bite one's ~ ("to restrain oneself"); to moisten one's ~s; to lick/smack one's ~s ("to anticipate or remember with pleasure"); to keep a stiff upper ~ ("to refuse to become discouraged"); don't give me any of your ~! ("don't be impudent with me"); to seal smb.'s ~s ("to induce smb. to remain silent") (don't worry – your secret is safe with me – my ~s are sealed!); to read ~s and be a lip-reader; "Will you raise taxes?" "Read my ~s: I said No New Taxes!"

lip service *n.* ["meaningless promise"] to pay ~ to

lipstick *n.* 1. to apply, put on; remove, wipe off ~ 2. to have ~ on = to wear ~ 3. ~ smudges

liquid *n.* 1. (a) clear; cloudy; thick ~ 2. (a) dishwashing (AE), washing-up (BE) ~ 3. ~ evaporates; coagulates 4. a drop; pool of ~ 5. (misc.) in ~ or in solid form

liquor *n.* ["alcoholic drinks, esp. spirits"] (esp. AE) 1. to ply smb. with ~ 2. to hold one's ~ 3. hard, strong; intoxicating ~ 4. malt ~

list I *n.* ["catalog, roll"] 1. to compile, draw up, make (up), put smb./smt. on a ~ 2. to head a ~ 3. to go down, read down a ~ 4. the dean's ~ (AE); a reading ~ 5. an alphabetical ~; checklist; shopping ~ (to go down a checklist) 6. a cast; guest; mailing; waiting ~ (a cast ~ for tonight's performance) 7. the honours ~ (GB) (she hoped that her name would be in the honours ~) 8. a long; short ~ (of candidates) 9. a casualty ~ (a daily casualty ~ was posted) 10. a danger ~ (esp. BE) (she rang the hospital to find out if her mother was still on the danger ~) 11. a hit; wish ~ (we were asked to draw up a wish ~ for the new project and a hit ~ of those opposed to it) 12. a wine ~ (asked the waiter to bring the wine ~) 13. in, on a ~ (she was third on the ~; high on the ~ of priorities) 14. (misc.) at the bottom of a ~; at the top of a ~ (see also **voting lists**)

list II *v.* ("to include") 1. (d; intr.) to ~ among (to be ~ed among the casualties) 2. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ as (she ~ed herself as an independent voter; he was ~ed as missing) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ under (the new journals are ~ed under acquisitions)

list III *n.* ["tilt"] a ~ to (the ship has developed a ~ to starboard)

list IV *v.* (D; intr.) ("to tilt") to ~ to (the ship ~s to starboard)

listen *v.* 1. to ~ attentively, carefully, closely, intently 2. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for a signal) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to their advice; to ~ to their singing; to ~ to them singing; to ~ to them sing (esp. AE)) 4. (misc.) "I kept telling her not to do it – but would she ~ (to me)? No way!"

listener *n.* 1. a good, sympathetic ~ (a sympathetic ~ to your problems) 2. a regular ~ (regular ~s to the station will note some changes) 3. younger ~s (a radio program unsuitable for younger ~s)

listen in *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on, to (to ~ on smb.'s conversation)

listen out *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for a signal)

listing *n.* an exclusive ~ (of a property being sold)

lists *n.* ["combat arena"] (also fig.) to enter the ~ (decided to enter the (political) ~ by running for election)

lit *adj.* brightly; dimly ~ (a dimly ~ street = a dimly lighted street)

litany *n.* 1. a boring; long ~ 2. (misc.) a ~ of complaints (we had to listen to their long boring ~ of complaints)

literacy *n.* 1. to promote; spread ~ 2. adult; computer; functional; widespread ~ 3. ~ in (~in more than one language)

literate *adj.* 1. completely; fully; functionally; highly ~ 2. computationally, computer ~ 3. ~ in (~ in more than one language)

literature *n.* 1. to produce (a) ~ 2. (an) extensive, voluminous ~ 3. belletristic; classical; contemporary; great; modern; professional; promotional; pulp ~ 4. comparative ~ 5. a piece, work; body of ~ (a considerable body of ~) 6. ~ about, on (there was (an) extensive ~ on the topic) 7. (misc.) to keep abreast of the ~ (in one's field); to review the ~ (when beginning a research project)

litigation *n.* 1. to initiate, start ~ 2. ~ against; over; with 3. in ~ (the case was in ~)

litter *n.* 1. to drop, leave; strew ~ 2. to clear up, pick up ~ (see also *litter bin* at **bin** n; *litter lout* at **lout** n)

littered *adj.* ~ with (the streets were ~ with old newspapers)

little I *determiner, pronoun* 1. ~ to + inf. (we have ~ to do) 2. ~ of (we see ~ of them nowadays; I wanted to read it all but I read comparatively ~ of it) USAGE NOTE: The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows – little of them/it. When a noun follows, the use of *of the* limits the meaning – we drank very little wine; we drank very little of the wine that you brought yesterday.

little II *n., adv.* 1. precious ~ 2. ~ by ~ ("gradually") 3. (misc.) a ~ bit; a ~ closer; a ~ further; a ~ longer; a ~ shorter

liturgy *n.* to chant; offer; recite the ~

live I /layv/ *adv.* ["directly"] to come ~ (this telecast is coming to you ~ from Wimbledon; you can catch her ~ in concert this evening) (also fig.) (colloq.) (the government's tax reforms will go ~ this fall)

live II /liv/ *v.* 1. to ~ comfortably; dangerously; high; simply 2. to ~ long; as long as I ~ I'll never forget the end of the war! 3. (d; intr.) to ~ by ("to adhere to") (to ~ by certain principles) 4. (d; intr.) ("to exist") to ~ for (they ~ only for their children) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in fear; to ~ in luxury; to ~ in poverty) 6. (d; intr.) ("to subsist") to ~ off, on (they ~ on her salary; you cannot ~ on love alone; to ~ off one's parents) 7. (D; intr.) ("to survive") to ~ to (she ~d to ninety; she lived to a great age) 8. (d; intr.) ("to cohabit or live under the same roof") to ~ with (John and Mary ~ with each other; he's 30 but he still ~s with his parents) 9. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to tolerate") (can you ~ with this arrangement?; we can't cure your pain: you'll just have to learn to ~ with it!) 10. (E) she ~d to regret her decision; she ~d to be ninety; she ~d to be very old; I thought I'd never ~ to see the day when people stood on the Moon! 11. (P; intr.) ("to reside") to ~ in the country 12. (misc.) they ~ beyond their means ("they spend more than they earn"); to ~ from hand to mouth ("to eke out a bare living"); to ~ from day to day ("to be concerned only with the present"); John and Mary are ~ving together ("to cohabit"); long ~ the King/Queen!; to have ~d through almost the whole of the 20th Century (see also *as I live and breathe* at **breathe**; *live a life* at **life**)

livelihood *n.* 1. to earn, eke out a/one's ~ (to eke out a precarious ~ (by) doing odd jobs) 2. to lose one's ~ 3. a source of ~ 4. (misc.) to depend on smt. for one's ~

live up *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to satisfy") (to ~ to expectations) 2. (misc.) (colloq.) to ~ it up ("to enjoy oneself ostentatiously")

livestock *n.* to graze; keep ~

livid *adj.* ~ with (~ with rage)

living *n.* ["livelihood"] 1. to earn, get (BE), make a ~ (she makes a good ~ by selling cars) 2. to eke out, scrape (esp. BE) a ~ (to eke out a precarious ~ (by) doing odd jobs) 3. a comfortable, decent, good; honest ~ (to earn a comfortable ~) 4. (misc.) what do you do for a ~? ["manner of existence"] 5. communal; gracious; high; suburban ~ 6. a cost; standard of ~ (a high cost of ~ can mean a low standard of ~)

living room *n.* a sunken ~

load I *n.* 1. to bear, carry, transport a ~ 2. to lessen, lighten a ~ (also fig.) 3. to dump, shed; shift a ~ 4. a heavy; light ~ (the central beam must bear a very heavy ~) 5. a capacity, full, maximum, peak ~ 6. a teaching ~; workload (have/carry a heavy workload) (see also **caseload**) 7. under a ~ (the table collapsed under its heavy ~ of food) 8. (misc.) to take a (great) ~ off smb.'s mind ("to ease or relieve one's mind"); it was a (great) ~ off my mind ("I felt relieved") (see also **loads**)

load II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into, onto (to ~ cargo into/onto/on a ship) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a ship to full capacity) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ a ship with cargo)

load down *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (the poor mule was ~ed down with heavy bales)

loads *n.* ["lots, a great deal"] we had ~ to talk about; we have ~ of work to do; ~ of money

load up *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (they ~ed up the ship with cargo = they ~ed the ship up with cargo)

loaf *n.* 1. a fish; meat; sliced ~ 2. a ~ of bread 3. (misc.) (slang) (BE) use your ~! ("use your head/brains!") USAGE NOTE: Note the plurals in "They baked two *loaves* of bread and two meat *loaves/loafs*."

loan I *n.* 1. to float, negotiate, raise a ~ 2. to give, make; offer a ~ 3. to apply for, ask for; get, receive, take out a ~ 4. to secure; underwrite a ~ 5. to pay off, repay a ~ 6. to call in a ~ 7. a bank; bridge (AE), bridging (BE); interest-free; long-term; low-interest; short-term ~ 8. interlibrary ~ (she got the book on/through interlibrary ~ – could have borrowed it on/through interlibrary ~?) 9. a ~ to 10. on ~ from; to (the painting was on ~ to the National Gallery from the Louvre) 11. (misc.) could I have the ~ of a few dollars till payday?

loan II *v.* (A) she ~ed the money to me; or: she ~ed me the money USAGE NOTE: When *to loan* means "to lend officially", it is CE – the Louvre has loaned a painting to the National Gallery. When it means "to lend", it is esp. AE – she loaned me the money.

loanword *n.* 1. to adopt a ~ 2. a ~ from (a ~ from German)

loath, loth *adj.* (pompous or lit.) (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (we are ~ to summon the authorities)

loathe *v.* 1. to ~ deeply, intensely 2. (G) he ~s working

loathing *n.* 1. deep, intense ~ (the very idea of work fills him with deep ~) 2. ~ for, of (he has a deep ~ of work) 3. with ~ (he regards work with deep ~) 4. fear and ~ (the very idea of work fills him with fear and ~)

lob *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ at, to (to ~ a ball at smt.) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ over (she ~bed the ball over the net)

lobby I *n.* ["pressure group"] 1. an education; environmental; farm; labor; oil ~ (a powerful farm ~ has been organized) ["large hall"] 2. a hotel; theater ~ 3. in the ~ (let's meet in the ~)

lobby II *v.* 1. to ~ actively; hard 2. (D; intr.) to ~ against; for, on behalf of (to ~ against higher taxes; to ~ for a bill; to ~ on behalf of farmers) 3. (H) we ~bied our delegate to support the proposal

locate *v.* 1. (P; tr.) ("to place") we ~d our firm in Florida 2. (P; intr.) (esp. AE) ("to move") our firm is going to ~ in Florida

location *n.* 1. to find; give, pinpoint, show a ~ 2. a central; exact ~ 3. at a ~ (at an undisclosed ~) 4. on ~ (to shoot a film on ~ rather than in a studio)

lock I *n.* 1. to force; pick a ~ 2. a combination; deadbolt; double; mortise; safety; secure; time ~ 3. a Chubb (T); Yale (T) ~ 4. under ~ and key ("locked up securely")

lock II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ on, onto ("to sight and track") (to ~ onto a target) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ out of (they were ~ed out of their room and couldn't get in) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ in (they were ~ed in their room and couldn't get out) (see also *lock antlers* at **antler**; *lock horns* at **horn**)

locked *adj.* ["bound"] (cannot stand alone) ~ in (~ in mortal combat; they were ~ in a fierce struggle with the government over pension rights)

locket *n.* a gold; silver ~

lockjaw *n.* to develop ~

locomotive *n.* 1. to drive a ~ 2. a diesel; electric; steam ~

locusts *n.* 1. ~ swarm 2. a swarm of ~

lodge I *n.* ["house"] 1. a hunting; ski ~ ["organization, society"] 2. a fraternal; Masonic ~ ["motel"] (AE) 3. a motor ~

lodge II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ against; with (to ~ a complaint against a neighbor with the police) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ in (the bullet ~d in his shoulder)

lodger *n.* to have, keep (AE), take in ~s

lodgings *n.* to find; look for, seek ~

log I *n.* ["record"]["diary"] 1. to keep a ~ 2. a captain's; ship's ~ (see also *logbook* at **book I** *n.*) ["piece of timber"] 3. to float ~s (down a river) 4. to put a ~ on a fire; to split a ~; to saw a ~ in two 5. a ~ burns (in a fire) ["misc."] 6. to sleep like a ~ ("to sleep very soundly")

log II *v.* (d. intr.) to ~ into, onto (to ~ onto a computer system)

logarithm *n.* a common; natural ~

loggerheads *n.* at ~ with ("in disagreement with") (we were at ~ with each other about/over which course to take)

logic *n.* 1. to apply, use ~ 2. clear; cold; incontrovertible; irrefutable; simple ~ 3. false, specious, spurious ~ 4. deductive; formal; inductive; symbolic ~ 5. ~ suggests (~ suggests that we should all go in one car) 6. ~ behind, in, to (there is no ~ in their policy)

logical *adj.* 1. only; perfectly, very 2. ~ to + inf. (it is only ~ for us all to go in one car) 3. ~ that + clause (it's only ~ that we should go in one car)

logjam *n.* 1. to break (up), clear a ~ 2. (fig.) (esp. AE) a legislative ~

logo *n.* 1. a characteristic; distinctive; identifying; well-known, well-recognized ~ 2. a company, corporate ~ 3. to display; feature a ~ (the company's ad displays the distinctive company ~)

loins *n.* ["power"] to gird one's ~ ("to prepare oneself for conflict or a difficult task") (to ~ one's loins for a struggle)

lollipop *n.* to lick, suck a ~

lolly *n.* ("frozen desert on a stick") (BE) 1. to lick, suck a ~ 2. an ice, iced ~

lonely *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ for

lonesome *adj.* (AE) 1. very ~ 2. ~ for

long I *adj.* (colloq.) ["strong"] ~ on (~ on common sense)

long II *adv.* 1. ~ after; ago 2. ~ before

long III *n.* 1. before ~ (our guests will arrive before ~) 2. for ~ (they will not be here for ~)

long IV *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for the return of peace) 2. (E) she ~ed to return home; I ~ed for peace to return

long chalk (BE) see **long shot**

long-distance *adv.* to call, telephone ~

long haul (esp. AE) see **long run** (see also *long-haul flight* at **flight I**)

longing *n.* 1. to express; feel, have a ~ ("I have Immortal ~s in me." – Shakespeare, *Antony and Cleopatra*) 2. a secret; strong ~ 3. a ~ for (I had a ~ for the return of peace) 4. a ~ to + inf. (I had a ~ for peace to return; she has a ~ to visit the village where she was born)

longitude *n.* at a ~ (at a ~ of ten degrees west)

long run *n.* ["long-range outlook"] in, over the ~ ("In the ~, we are all dead." – John Maynard, Lord Keynes (1923))

long shot *n.* ["slight chance"] not by a ~ (AE) ("absolutely not")

long term see **long run**

long way *n.* 1. we took the ~ home 2. a ~ from; to (it's a ~ from our house to the station; "It's a long, long way to Tipperary" -- H. Williams & J. Judge, song, 1907-8)

loo *n.* (colloq.) (BE) 1. to go to, need, use the ~ 2. to flush a ~ 3. a gents'; ladies'; public 4. down the ~ (to flush smt. down the ~)

look I *n.* ["glance"]["expression"] 1. to get, have, take a ~ (at) (we got a good ~ at their new car) 2. to dart, shoot, throw a ~ (at) 3. to sneak, steal a ~ (at) 4. to give smb. a ~ 5. to get, receive a ~ (from) 6. an adoring, loving, tender ~ (she got an adoring ~ from her mother) 7. an admiring; close, hard, long hard; curious, inquiring, searching; cursory, perfunctory; eloquent, meaningful; initial; knowing; penetrating; pensive, thoughtful; piercing; rapt; significant; steady; ~ (we must take a closer ~ at their proposal even though we have already had a cursory initial ~ through it) 8. a come-hither, inviting; provocative ~ 9. a blank, distant, faraway, vacant; strange ~ (she had a faraway ~ in her eyes) 10. an anxious, worried; pleading ~ (he shot a pleading ~ at the teacher) 11. a bemused, puzzled, quizzical; bewildered; skeptical; troubled ~ (she gave the instructor a bewildered ~) 12. a disapproving, stern; grim; icy; scathing; sharp; withering ~ 13. an angry; baleful; belligerent; dirty, nasty, vicious; furtive, shifty, sinister; hostile; resentful; sour; sullen; suspicious ~ (she gave us a dirty ~) 14. a second ~ (to take a second ~ at smt.) ["appearance"] 15. a tailored ~ 16. a haggard; hungry; lean ~ 17. a curious, strange; different; new ~ 18. a guilty; innocent ~ ["misc."] 19. by, from the ~(s) of it, the situation is serious

look II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ after ("to watch") ("to take care of") (to ~ after the children) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ around ("to watch") (to ~ around the corner; I ~ed around me for something to eat) 3. (D; intr.) to ~at ("to examine") (to ~ carefully but admiringly at a painting; to ~ at a child tenderly and lovingly; to ~ at one's enemies hostilely or at least icily; we must ~ more closely at their proposal even though we have already looked through it cursorily; just ~ at him jump, will you! (AE) = just ~ at him jumping, will you!) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ for ("to seek") (to ~ for a job) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to investigate") (to ~ into a complaint) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ like ("to resemble") (this horse ~s like a winner; BE also has: this horse ~s a winner) 7. (d; intr.) ("to appear") to ~ like (it ~s like being another fine day!; it ~s like rain = it ~s like it's going to rain (esp. AE) = it ~s as if/as though it will rain) 8. (D; intr.) ("to watch") to ~ out (AE), out of (to ~ out of a window) 9. (d; intr.) to ~ over ("to watch") (to ~ over a wall) 10. (d; intr.) to ~ through ("to direct one's gaze through") (to ~ through a telescope) 11. (d; intr.) to ~ through ("to examine") (to ~ through one's files) 12. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to turn to") (to ~ to one's parents for help) 13. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to appear") (how does this ~ to you?) 14. (S) she ~s terrible; this horse ~s a winner (BE) 15. (misc.) to ~ smb. squarely in the eye; to ~ from one to the other; to ~ one's age; to ~ everywhere; to ~ all over; to ~ high and low (for smt.) = to ~ everywhere (for smt.) = to ~ all over (for smt.); to ~ under the bed (see also **looks**) USAGE NOTE: When *look over* and *look through* are used literally, they are construed as *v + prep*: I looked over the wall and then I looked over it again; I looked through the telescope and then I looked through it again. When *look over* and *look through* mean 'examine,' they can also be construed as *v + prep* (I looked over/through their proposal and then I looked over/through it again). However, *look over* can also be construed as *v + adv* (I looked their proposal over and then I looked it/the proposal over again), and in this meaning *look through* can be construed as *v + adv* with a short pronoun (I looked through their proposal and then I looked it through again).

look about (BE) see **look around**

look ahead *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to a bright future)

look around *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to seek") (to ~ for something to eat)

look away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (I ~ed away from the stage)

look back *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at, on (to ~ at the past year) 2. (misc.) *Look Back in Anger* – play by John Osborne (1956)

look down *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at; from ("to direct one's gaze down at") (to ~ at the beach from the balcony of the hotel) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to despise") (to ~ on all forms of corruption; to ~ on the working class) 3. (misc.) to ~ one's nose at ("to look down on smb.") (to ~ one's nose at the working class) (see also **look up**)

look forward *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to spring; to ~ to a meeting with eager anticipation; I ~ to going)

look in *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on the children)

look on *v.* 1. to ~ favorably; unfavorably (they ~ed on the new project favorably = they ~ed favorably on the new project) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (we ~ her as a friend) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (they ~ed on the new project with favor)

lookout *n.* 1. to post a ~ 2. to keep a (sharp) ~ for (to keep a sharp ~ for burglars) 3. on the ~ (to be on the ~ for burglars)

look out *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to watch for") (the police were ~ing out for burglars) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to protect") (to ~ for one's own interests) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ on, onto, over ("to face") (our windows ~ onto the square)

look round (BE) see **look around**

looks *n.* ["appearance"] 1. to lose one's ~ (a former movie star who'd lost her ~) 2. boyish; good ~ (an unemployed actor who'd lost his boyish good ~)

look up *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to stare") to ~ at (we ~ed up at the skyscraper) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to respect") (children ~ to their parents) (see also **look down**)

look upon see **look on**

loom I *n.* 1. to weave with a ~ 2. a hand; power ~

loom II *v.* 1. (P; intr.) a ship ~ed (up) out of the fog 2. (misc.) to ~ large (the law case ~ed large in his thoughts)

loop *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. to loop the ~ (in an airplane) 3. (misc.) to throw smb. for a ~ ("to shock smb.")

loophole *n.* 1. to find a ~ 2. to close, plug a ~ 3. a legal; tax ~ 4. a ~ in

loose I *adj.* 1. to cut (smb.) ~ 2. to let, set, turn (smb.) ~ 3. to break; come; get; hang; work ~

loose II *n.* on the ~

loose end *n.* (BE) at a ~ (let's get together if you're at a ~) (see **loose ends** 2)

loose ends *n.* 1. to clear up the ~ 2. (AE) at ~ ("with no definite obligations")

looting *n.* 1. to engage in ~ 2. widespread ~ 3. an outbreak of ~

lope *v.* (P; intr.) she ~d through the park

lord I *n.* 1. to worship the Lord 2. a feudal ~; a warlord 3. (misc.) a Law Lord (GB); Good Lord!; (my ~s,) ladies and gentlemen....; the (House of) Lords

lord II *v.* to ~ it over smb. ("to flaunt one's superiority over smb.")

lorry *n.* (BE) 1. to drive, operate; steer a ~ (CE has *truck*) 2. to load; unload a ~ 3. an articulated ~ (AE has *semi, semi-trailer, tractor-trailer, trailer truck*) 4. a breakdown ~ (AE has *tow truck*) 5. a tipper ~ (AE has *dump truck*) 6. a dustbin ~ (AE has *garbage truck*) 7. a ~ jackknifes

lose *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to (our team lost to them by three points; we lost the match to them) 2. (O) his errors lost him the match 3. (misc.) to ~ by a mile; to ~ by three points; to ~ (by) 5-2

lose out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a deal) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (she lost out to her rival)

loser *n.* 1. a bad, poor, sore; born; good ~ 2. the real ~ (the poor will be the real ~s under the government's tax policy)

loss *n.* 1. to inflict ~es on (the enemy inflicted heavy ~es on our forces) 2. (sports) to hand smb. a ~ (they handed our team its first ~ of the season) 3. to incur, suffer, sustain, take ~es (our forces sustained heavy ~es at the hands of the enemy) 4. to cut; make up, offset, recoup, replace a ~ (to recoup one's gambling ~es; retreat and cut your ~es) 5. to make good a ~ 6. to report a ~ (to the police) 7. heavy; light ~es 8. a great; irredeemable, irreparable, irreplaceable, irretrievable; sad; total ~ (we are here to mourn the sad ~ of our best friend) 9. a hearing; heat; memory; weight ~ 10. a net ~ 11. a ~ in, of; on (a ~ in weight; to make a ~ on a deal) 12. a ~ to (an irreplaceable ~ to our nation) 13. at a ~ (to be at a ~ for words; to operate a business at a ~) 14. (misc.) ~es in dead and wounded; it was no great ~ to the nation that such a fool was not elected; ~s increase, rise; maximize your profits and minimize your ~es

lost *adj.* 1. irretrievably; totally ~ 2. to get ~ (the small child got ~) 3. ~ to (~ to the world) 4. (misc.) (slang) get ~! ("go away!"); ~ at sea; ~ in thought

lot *n.* ["one's fate, destiny"] 1. to cast, throw in one's ~ with 2. a happy; hard, sorry, unhappy ~ 3. smb.'s ~ to + inf. (it fell to her ~ to break the sad news) ["object used in deciding by chance"] 4. by ~ (to choose by ~) (see also **lots**) ["plot of ground"] (esp. AE) 5. an empty, vacant ~ 6. a parking ~ (AE; BE has *car park*) 7. a used-car ~ ["large amount"] 8. an awful, whole ~ (of) 9. (misc.) we had a ~ to talk about; we have a ~ of work to do and we're going to have a ~ more!; a ~ of money; a fat ~ (derog.) (colloq.) (a fat ~ of good you've done!; (a) fat ~ you care!)

loth *adj.* see **loth**

lotion *n.* 1. to apply, rub in, rub on (a) ~ 2. an aftershave; body; hand; skin; suntan ~

lots *n.* 1. to cast, draw ~ (to see who wins) ["a lot, a great deal, loads"] 2. we had ~ to talk about; we have ~ of work to do and we're going to have ~ more!; ~ of money, ~ and ~ of money

lottery *n.* 1. to hold a ~ 2. to win a ~ 3. a daily; weekly ~ 4. a national; state ~ 5. a ~ raises money (a ~ that raises lots of money for good causes) 6. in, on a ~

loud *adv.* to count out ~

loudspeaker *n.* (to speak) over, through a ~

lounge I *n.* 1. a cocktail ~ 2. a sun ~ (BE; AE has *sun parlor*, *sun porch*) 3. a departure; transit ~ (at an airport) 4. a VIP ~ (at an airport) 5. in a ~ USAGE NOTE: In BE, *lounge* can also mean 'living room.' But this meaning of *lounge* is disliked by many.

lounge II *v.* (P; intr.) she enjoys ~ging around the pool; she enjoys just ~ging around doing nothing

lour see **lower I**

louse *n.* a plant; wood ~

lousy *adj.* (slang) ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to be without work = it's ~ being without work)

lout *n.* (derog.) 1. a drunken; stupid ~ 2. (BE) (colloq.) a lager; litter ~

love I *n.* ["deep affection"] 1. to inspire ~ for 2. to declare, express one's ~ for smb. 3. blind; brotherly; calf (esp. BE), puppy; cupboard (BE); deep, profound, sincere, true; platonic; romantic; undying; unrequited ~ 4. ~ for, of (~ for/of one's country; smb.'s ~ of music; to have no ~ for smb.) 5. for, out of ~ (to do smt. for ~) 6. to be in ~ (with smb.) (to be head over heels in ~ with smb.; deeply/hopelessly/madly in ~) 7. to fall in; out of ~ (with smb.) 8. ~ between (the undying ~ between us) 9. ~ from (the letter ended "(With) Love from mom and dad") 10. (misc.) ~ at first sight; she's the (great) ~ of his life ["expression of deep affection"] 11. to give; send one's ~ (give them our ~; the letter ended "With all my ~, John") ["sexual activity"] 12. to make ~ (to, with) ("to have intercourse") 13. free ~ ["misc."] 14. I wouldn't do it for ~ or money!

love II *v.* 1. to ~ blindly; dearly; deeply; madly; passionately; really, very much (I would dearly ~ to see them again) 2. (E) she ~s to swim 3. (G) she ~s swimming 4. (N; used with an adjective) she ~s her steak rare 5. (misc.) (colloq.) I ~ it when you smile; I'd ~ you/for you (AE) to come over and see our new TV = what I'd ~ is for you to come over and see our new TV

lovely *adj.* (colloq.) 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to arrange this party; it was ~ to see you again = it was ~ seeing you again) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that we could see each other again)

lover *n.* 1. (for a woman) to take a ~ 2. to jilt, reject a ~ 3. to become ~s 4. a great; live-in (colloq.); lousy (colloq.) ~ 5. (misc.) an art; music; nature ~

low I *adj.* ["lacking"] (cannot stand alone) ~ in, on (she is ~ in funds; they were ~ on ammunition; food ~ in salt = low-salt food) (see also *to lie low* at **lie III**)

low II *n.* 1. to hit, reach an all-time ~ 2. an all-time; new ~

lowdown *n.* to get; have the ~ on smb.

lower I /lau-/ *v.* (D; intr.) ("to frown") to ~ at

lower II /lou-/ *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ by (he ~ed the bar (by) ten inches) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (they ~ed supplies from the surface to the stranded miners; she ~ed her voice from a shout to a whisper; they ~ed the flag to half-mast) 3. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ into; onto (she gently ~ed herself into the armchair; she ~ed the baby onto the mat)

loyal *adj.* 1. steadfastly ~ 2. ~ to

loyalty *n.* 1. to command, inspire ~ 2. to demonstrate, show ~ 3. to pledge, swear ~ 4. blind; deeprooted, steadfast, strong, unquestioned, unshakable, unswerving ~ 5. party ~ 6. divided; shifting ~ties 7. ~ to (to show unswerving ~ to one's friends)

lozenge *n.* a cough; fruit; throat ~

luck *n.* ["success"] ["good fortune"] 1. to bring ~ 2. to try one's ~ (at smt.) 3. to press, push one's ~ 4. pure, sheer ~ 5. to wish smb. ~ 6. beginner's; dumb ~ 7. smb.'s ~ holds; improves, turns; runs out 8. a bit, stroke of ~ 9. ~ at, in, with (~ at gambling) 10. the ~ to + inf. (she had the good ~ to hold the winning ticket; it was pure ~ to find him = it was pure ~ finding him; we had the good ~ to find him at home) 11. ~ that + clause (it was sheer ~ that we found him) 12. in; with ~ (we were in ~ to have found him at home) 13. down on one's ~; out of ~ ["fate"] ["chance"] 14. to trust to ~ 15. bad, hard, tough ~ 16. good; pure, sheer ~ (we had bad ~) 17. the ~ to + inf. (we had the bad ~ not to find him at home) 18. ~ that + clause (it was bad ~ that he wasn't at home when we tried to find him) 19. (misc.) she has had a run of bad ~

lucky *adj.* 1. ~ at, in, with (~ at cards; ~ in love; they were ~ with their new car) 2. ~ for (that was ~ for you) 3. ~ to + inf. (you are ~ to be alive!; we were ~ to have gotten here early) 4. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that we got here early = we were ~ that we got here early; you are ~ that you didn't die in the accident!)

ludicrous *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to have to show our pass each time we come here!) 2. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that we have to show our pass each time we come here!)

lug *v.* (P; tr.) she ~ged the boxes into the other room; we will have to ~ the equipment upstairs

luggage *n.* 1. to check, register (esp. BE) one's ~ 2. (esp. AE) to check one's ~ through (to the final destination) 3. to claim one's ~ 4. carry-on, hand ~ 5. personalized ~ 6. unclaimed ~ 7. a piece of ~

lukewarm *adj.* ["halfhearted"] 1. ~ about, to (~ about a proposal; ~ to an idea) ["tepid"] 2. ~ to (~ to the touch)

lull I *n.* 1. a momentary, temporary ~ 2. a ~ in 3. during a ~ (we escaped during a momentary ~ in the fighting)

lull II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into a false sense of security) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a child to sleep)

lullaby *n.* to hum; sing a ~ to

lumbar puncture *n.* to do, perform a ~ (on)

lumber I *n.* (AE) 1. to float, raft ~ (down a river) 2. green, unseasoned; seasoned ~ (CE has *timber*)

lumber II *v.* (P; intr.) the bear ~ed through the forest

lumber III *v.* (colloq.) (BE) (D; tr.) ("to burden") to ~ with (I've been ~ed with all their problems)

lump *n.* 1. to bring a ~ to smb.'s throat ("to cause to be overcome with emotion"); to have a ~ in one's throat ("to be overcome with emotion") 2. the doctor discovered a ~ in her breast that had probably formed some time ago

lumps *n.* (colloq.) ["punishment"] to take one's ~

lump together *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (they ~ed all of the workers together with the managers)

lunacy *n.* 1. sheer ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to climb that mountain)

lunatic *n.* 1. a raving ~ 2. a ~ to + inf. (he was a ~ to try that)

lunch I *n.* 1. to eat (esp. AE), have ~ 2. to cook; make, prepare; serve ~ 3. a cold; hot; light; nutritious, wholesome; substantial ~ 4. a brown-bag (AE); business, working; expense-account; liquid ("alcoholic"), three-martini; school; set (esp. BE) ~ 5. a box; picnic ~ 6. at, during; over ~ (they were all at ~; what did you discuss at/over ~?) 7. for ~ (we had a salad for ~) 8. (misc.) to give smb. ~ (esp. BE); to take smb. to ~

lunch II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to eat") (to ~ on a sandwich) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with 3. (misc.) to ~ at home; to ~ out

lunchtime *n.* at ~ (we'll meet at ~)

lung *n.* 1. an iron ~ 2. congested ~s 3. a collapsed ~ 4. in, into smb.'s ~s 5. on one's ~ (a spot on one's ~) 6. (misc.) they were screaming at the top of their ~s

lunge I *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. a ~ at, for, towards (he made a ~ at me with a knife)

lunge II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at, for, towards (he ~d at me with a knife)

lurch I *n.* ["sudden movement"] to give a ~ (the stricken ship gave a ~)

lurch II *v.* (P; intr.) he ~ed towards me; the stricken ship ~ed to starboard

lurch III *n.* ["vulnerable position"] in the ~ (to leave smb. in the ~)

lure *v.* (P; tr.) to ~ smb. into a trap; he was ~d to his death

lure away *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (she was ~d away from her comfortable rural home to the big city)

lurk *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ in the shadows

lust I *n.* 1. to arouse, rouse ~ 2. to feel, have ~ 3. to gratify, satisfy one's ~ 4. blood; insatiable, unquenchable; pure; unbridled ~ 5. ~ for (a ~ for power; an insatiable ~ for life) 6. (humorous) in ~ with; out of ~ with (he's not in love with her but he certainly seems to have fallen in ~ with her!)

lust II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ after, for (to ~ for power)

luster, lustre *n.* ["glory"] 1. to add ~ to (his success added ~ to his home town) 2. to take on a new ~, to take on (an) added ~ (because of, from) (his home town took on an added ~ because of his success)

luxuriate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in newly acquired wealth)

luxury *n.* 1. to enjoy (a) ~ (to enjoy the ~ of a hot bath) 2. to afford a ~ (can we afford the ~ of a second car?) 3. pure, sheer; unaccustomed ~ 4. ~ to + inf. (it was sheer ~ to relax on the beach = it was sheer ~ relaxing on the beach) 5. in ~ (they lived in ~; to wallow in the ~ of a hot bath) 6. (misc.) in the lap of ~; what is a ~ for some is a necessity for others (see also *a life of luxury* at **life**)

lyre *n.* to play the ~

lyrical *adj.* ~ about, over (to wax ~ about the scenery)

lyrics *n.* 1. ~ by (a song with music by Richard Rodgers and ~ by Oscar Hammerstein) 2. ~ for (Richard Rodgers wrote the music for the song and Oscar Hammerstein wrote the ~ (for it))

M

mace *n.* ["staff used as a symbol of authority"] a ceremonial ~ = the ~ of office

machete *n.* to brandish, wield a ~

machine *n.* 1. to operate, run, use, work a ~ 2. to shut down a ~ 3. an adding, calculating ~ 4. an answering; video-game ~ 5. a cash, money-access (AE); cigarette; slot (BE), vending ~ 6. a composing, linotype, typesetting; copy, copying, duplicating; fax ~ 7. a heart-lung; X-ray ~ 8. an earth-moving; milking; milling; sanding; sewing; threshing ~ (see also **washing machine**; **washing-up machine**) 9. a voting ~ 10. a mincing ~ (BE; AE has *meat grinder*) 11. a fruit (BE), slot (AE); pinball ~ (to play a pinball ~) (BE also has *pintable*) 12. a party; political ~ (I felt I was just a small cog in a well-oiled political ~) 13. a ~ functions, runs; breaks down (see also *machine tool* at **tool**)

machine gun *n.* 1. to fire, operate a ~ 2. a heavy; light; medium ~ 3. an air-cooled; water-cooled ~ 4. a ~ jams

machine-gun nest *n.* to clean out, wipe out a ~

machinery *n.* ["machines"] 1. to install; operate, run ~ 2. to maintain; repair ~ 3. farm; heavy ~ 4. a piece of ~ ["apparatus"] 5. administrative; law-enforcement; propaganda ~ 6. ~ for (~ for negotiations)

mad *adj.* ["infatuated"] (colloq.) 1. (cannot stand alone) ~ about (they are ~ about each other) ["angry"] (colloq.) 2. hopping ~ 3. to get ~ 4. ~ at (she's ~ at him; to get ~ at smb.) ["insane"] 5. stark raving ~ 6. to go ~ 7. to drive smb. ~ 8. ~ with (~ with pain) 9. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to drive without headlights)

maddening *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to have to wait here) 2. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that we have to wait here)

made *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ from, of, out of; with USAGE NOTE: Compare these examples, which illustrate general tendencies – 1. *a stew can be made with vegetables* (vegetables are not the only ingredient). 2. *a stew can be made of/out of vegetables; a chair can be made of/out of wood; shoes are usually made of/out of leather* (only one major substance or ingredient is used). 3. *synthetic rubber can be made from petroleum; paper can be made from wood* (the basic substance has been greatly changed). (see **make II**)

made-to-order *adj.* ~ for (they were ~ for each other!)

madness *n.* 1. sheer, utter ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it was sheer ~ for her to drive without headlights) (see also *there's method in smb.'s madness* at **method**)

magazine *n.* ["supply depot"] 1. a powder ~ ["journal, periodical"] 2. to publish, put out a ~ 3. to subscribe to, take (BE) a ~ 4. an alumni (esp. AE); fashion; glossy (esp. BE), slick (AE); illustrated; men's; women's; popular ~ 5. a copy; issue of a ~

maggots *n.* crawling with ~

magic *n.* 1. to perform; work ~ (on) 2. black; white ~ 3. pure, sheer ~ 4. by ~ (the medicine worked as if by ~)

magistrate *n.* a police (esp. AE); stipendiary (BE) ~

magnanimity *n.* 1. to display, show ~ towards 2. great ~

magnanimous *adj.* 1. ~ towards 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to make the offer = you were ~ to make the offer)

magnate *n.* a coal; industrial; shipping; steel; tobacco ~

magnet *n.* a ~ attracts iron

magnetism *n.* animal; personal; physical; sheer ~

magnitude *n.* 1. considerable, great ~ 2. of a certain ~ (of considerable ~)

magpie *n.* ~s chatter

maid *n.* ["female servant"] a chambermaid; housemaid; kitchen ~; lady's ~; parlormaid (who waits at table)

mail I *n.* (esp. AE; BE usu. has *post* for 1–5, 8–10) ["letters"] ["postal system"] 1. to address; send out (the) ~ 2. to collect; deliver; redirect ~ 3. to forward; get, receive; open; sort (the) ~ 4. incoming; internal; outgoing; return ~ 5. airmail; certified; domestic; express; first-class; foreign; franked; registered; second-class; special-delivery; surface; third-class ~ 6. fan; hate; junk ~ 7. an item, piece (esp. AE) of ~ 8. the ~ comes (has the ~ come yet?) 9. by return ~ (BE has *by return of post*) 10. in the ~ (our letters crossed in the ~) 11. (misc.) electronic ~, E-mail; voice ~

mail II *v.* (esp. AE; BE usu. has *post*) 1. (A) she ~ed the package to me; or: she ~ed me the package 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (the letter was ~ed from Oregon to Pennsylvania) (see also *mailing list* at **list**; for BE see **post II**)

mail III *n.* ["armor"] chain ~

main *n.* ["main pipe, duct"] 1. an electric; gas; sewer; water ~ 2. the water ~ burst

mainland *n.* 1. from; to the ~ 2. on the ~

mains *n.* (BE) to turn smt. off at the ~ (stop the leak by turning the water off at the ~)

mainstream *n.* 1. in the ~ (of politics) 2. outside the ~

maintain *v.* (L) she ~s that the accusation is groundless

maintenance *n.* 1. preventive; routine ~ 2. building; child; health; road ~ (the children's mother was entitled to child ~ from their absent father)

majesty *n.* ["sovereign"] 1. Her; His; Your Majesty; Their Majesties ["grandeur"] 2. in all its ~

major I *n.* ["academic specialization"] (AE) 1. to give, offer a ~ (our department gives an English ~) 2. a ~ in (our department offers a ~ in English) ["student who is specializing"] (AE) 3. a ~ in (she is a ~ in English; or: she is an English ~) ["officer"] 4. a ~ commands a battalion; your battalion is ready, Major (Smith)! 5. to make smb. a ~, to promote smb. to the rank of ~; to have, hold the rank of ~

major II *v.* (AE) (d; intr.) ("to specialize") to ~ in (to ~ in English) (BE has *to read English*)

majority *n.* ["number of votes greater than half or greater than anyone else gets"] (CE); ["greater number of votes"] (BE) 1. to get, receive a ~ 2. to have, hold a ~ (the Democrats have a slim ~ in the House) 3. a clear; great, large; overwhelming, vast ~ 4. a bare, narrow, slender, slim, small ~ 5. an absolute ~ (BE; AE has *majority*) 6. a (relative) ~ (BE; AE has *plurality*) 7. a simple; two-thirds; working ~ 8. by a ~ (to win the election by an overwhelming ~) 9. (misc.) the silent ~ (i.e., those who have moderate or conservative views but do not voice them); in a ~ (we were in the ~; in the ~ of cases) ["full legal age"] 10. to attain, reach one's ~ USAGE NOTE: Compare the verbs in the following constructions – the majority of the (two hundred) votes *were* for peace; a majority of two hundred votes *was* enough to win.

make I *n.* (colloq.) ["search for gain or sexual favors"] 1. on the ~ (he's always on the ~) ["brand"] 2. a ~ of (my favorite ~ of car = a car of my favorite ~)

make II *v.* 1. (A) ("to propose") she made an offer to us; or: she made us an offer 2. (C) ("to prepare") ~ an omelet for me; or: ~ me an omelet 3. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to head for") (she made for the exit; the ship made for the open sea) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to lead to") (willingness to compromise ~s for success in negotiations) 5. (D; tr.) ("to provide") to ~ for (to ~ room for smb.) 6. (D; tr.) ("to create") to ~ from, of, out of, with (to ~ butter from cream; to ~ a film out of a novel; she made a table out of wood; tires can be made from/of/out of synthetic rubber; to ~ a stew with vegetables) 7. (d; tr.) ("to transform") to ~ into (to ~ cream into butter; to ~ a novel into a film; she took the wood and made it into a table; the experience made her into a skeptic; she made him into a good husband) 8. (slang) (AE) (d; intr.) to ~ like ("to imitate") (to ~ like a clown) 9. (d; tr.) to ~ of ("to interpret") (what do you ~ of their offer?) 10. (d; tr.) ("to create") to ~ of, out of (to ~ a fool of smb.; the army made a man out of him; she made a good husband out of him) 11. (D; tr.) ("to create") to ~ with (you ~ a stew with meat and vegetables) 12. (I) ("to cause"); ("to force") she made the children clean their room = the children were made to clean their room; we made them wait = they were made to wait; the police could not ~ him talk = he could not be made to talk by the police; your problems ~ mine seem unimportant = my problems are made to seem unimportant by comparison with yours 13. (N; used with an adjective, noun, past participle) ("to cause to become") the news made us happy; the rough sea made them seasick; we made our position clear; he made me his deputy; she could not ~ herself understood; she made him a good husband 14. (S; used with nouns) ("to prove to be") she made a good deputy 15. (misc.) (AE; colloq.) he finally made colonel ("he was finally promoted to the rank of colonel"); the story made all the papers; we made the station just in time; we made it to the party on time; the ship barely made it to port; she made it to the top; to ~ good one's escape; smt. made to last; he made (as if) to leave USAGE NOTES: (1) When pattern I is put into the passive, *to* is inserted – we were made *to* wait. (2) Note that it is possible to have both "She made him a good wife" [= 'she made a good wife for him'] and "She made him a good husband" [= "she made him into a good husband"]. (See also Usage Note at **made**)

make away see **make off** (the thieves made away with the silverware)

make believe *v.* (L) let's ~ that we are on a space ship

make do *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with ("to manage with") (we'll have to ~ with this stove; we'll have to ~ with this old car)

make off *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to steal and take away") (the thieves made off with the silverware)

make out *v.* 1. (colloq.) ("to have success") (D; intr.) to ~ with (how did you ~ with the new boss?) 2. (colloq.) (esp. AE) ("to have sexual success") (D; intr.) to ~ with (he's tried to ~ with every woman who works here!) 3. (misc.) he ~s himself out to be very important; she is not so bad as she is made out to be

makeover *n.* 1. to get; have a ~ (she had a complete ~ from a health-and-beauty consultant) 2. to give smb. a ~ (a health-and-beauty consultant gave her a complete ~)

make over *v.* 1. (B) ("to transfer legally") she made the bonds over to me 2. (D; tr.) ("to create") to ~ from; into (she made the boy's jacket over from her father's coat = she took her father's coat and made it over into the boy's jacket; a health-and-beauty consultant made her over completely)

maker *n.* 1. an auto ~ (esp. AE); filmmaker; marketmaker; policymaker 2. (misc.) to meet one's ~ ("to die and go to heaven")

makeup *n.* ["cosmetics"] 1. to apply, put on; use ~ 2. to remove ~

make up *v.* 1. (D; refl., tr.) ("to change one's appearance") to ~ as (he made himself up as an old man) 2. (D; tr.) ("to create") to ~ into (she took her father's coat and made it up into the boy's jacket) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to recoup") (to ~ for lost time) 4. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to gain favor with") (you should try to ~ to your boss) 5. (D; intr.) ("to become reconciled") to ~ with (she made up with her sister) 6. (H) he made himself up to look like an old man 7. (misc.) I couldn't take the children for a treat today, but I promised to ~ it up to them next week

making *n.* ["evolution"] 1. in the ~ (a revolution in the ~) ["creation"] 2. not of smb.'s ~ (the problem is not of my ~)

makings *n.* ["potential"] to have the ~ of (she has all the ~ of a good orator)

maladjustment *n.* an emotional ~

malady *n.* (lit.) a fatal; serious; strange ~

malaise *n.* a general; spiritual ~

malaria *n.* 1. to catch, get, come down with, go diwn with (BE), develop ~ 2. to eradicate, stamp out; treat ~

malarkey *n.* (slang) ["nonsense"] (just) plain; pure, sheer ~

malevolence *n.* 1. pure, sheer ~ 2. out of ~ (he did it out of sheer ~)

malformation *n.* a congenital ~ (of) (suffers from a congenital ~ of the spine)

malice *n.* 1. to bear ~ towards 2. (legal) with ~ aforethought 3. (misc.) "With ~ toward none; with charity for all" – Abraham Lincoln, "Second Inaugural Address" (1865)

malicious *adj.* ~ towards

mall *n.* 1. a pedestrian; shopping ~ 2. at a ~ (she works at a shopping ~)

malpractice *n.* legal; medical; professional ~

mammals *n.* 1. the higher; lower ~ 2. among ~ (sexual rivalry among ~)

man *n.* 1. an attractive; average; fat; grown; handsome; mere; middle-aged; old; short; tall; thin; ugly; wise; young ~ 2. Cro-Magnon; Heidelberg; Java; Neanderthal; Peking; Piltdown ~; primitive ~ 3. a divorced; family; married; single ~ 4. a betting, gambling; con, confidence; fancy (esp. BE); hatchet; hit (esp. AE); ideas; ladies'; marked; organization; party (pol.); professional; Renaissance; right-hand; self-made; straight; straw ~ (AE; BE has *man of straw*); yes-man 5. an anchorman; businessman; leading ~; liftman (BE); maintenance ~; newspaperman; rewrite; stunt ~; weatherman 6. a moving (AE), removal (BE) ~ 7. a second-story ~ (AE; CE has *cat burglar*) 8. (pol.) (AE) an advance ~ 9. enlisted men (AE; BE has *other ranks*) 10. a university ~ (BE; AE has *college graduate*) 11. a lollipop ~ (BE; CE has *crossing guard*) 12. a best ~ (at a wedding) 13. the common ~, the ~ in the street, the ~ on the Clapham ominibus (BE) 14. a ~ on horseback ("a potential dictator") 15. in ~ (pregnancy lasts typically nine months in ~) 16. to a ~ ("everyone") (they stood up and applauded him to a ~) 17. (misc.) as one ~ (they stood up and applauded him as one ~); he's a ~ of his word; ~ is mortal; a dirty old ~ (pejor.) ("an immoral old man"); a medicine ~; the ~ of the year; a ~ of letters; a ~ of action; a ~ of the world; a ~ Friday (see also *every man jack* at **jack**; *men's magazine* at **magazine**)

manacle *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (the prisoner was ~d to the bars; the prisoner was ~d to another prisoner = the prisoners were ~d to each other) 2. (misc.) the prisoners were ~d together

manacles *n.* to cast off, throw off one's ~

manage *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to cope") to ~ on (we cannot ~ on our present income) 2. (colloq.) (D; intr.) ("to cope") to ~ with (we cannot ~ with our present income) 3. (D; intr.) ("to cope") to ~ without (we cannot ~ without a car) 4. (E) ("to succeed") she somehow ~d to see him 5. (misc.) we simply cannot ~ on our own any longer!

management *n.* 1. efficient; poor ~ 2. middle; senior, top ~ 3. anger, stress ~ 4. under ~ (under new ~)

manager *n.* 1. an assistant; bank; area, branch; business; campaign; city; credit; general; hotel; office; sales; service; stage ~ 2. a baseball ~ USAGE NOTE: For other sports *coach* is used.

mandate I *n.* ["order"] 1. to seek; win a ~ 2. to have a ~ 3. to carry out a ~ 4. a clear ~ 5. a ~ to + inf. (we had a clear ~ to eliminate illiteracy) 6. under a ~ (to do smt.) 7. with; without a ~ (we were elected with a clear ~ to eliminate illiteracy) ["assignment to administer an area"] 8. a ~ over 9. under (a) ~

mandate II *v.* (formal) 1. (H) the president is ~d to carry out the laws 2. (esp. AE) (L; subj.) the constitution ~s that the president carry out the laws

mandated *adj.* federally ~ (US)

mandatory *adj.* 1. ~ for 2. ~ to + inf. (in certain countries it is ~ for all citizens to vote)

mane *n.* a horse's; lion's ~

maneuver I manoeuvre *n.* 1. to carry out, conduct, execute a ~ 2. (mil.) to conduct, hold ~s 3. a brilliant, clever; military; political; tactical ~ 4. on ~s (they were on ~s for two weeks)

maneuver II manoeuvre *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (the players ~ed for position) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ into (we ~ed the players into position) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ out of (the players were ~ed out of position)

mangle *v.* to ~ beyond recognition

manhole *n.* an open ~

manhood *n.* to reach ~

manhunt *n.* 1. to carry out, conduct; launch, organize a ~ 2. a ~ for

mania *n.* 1. to have a ~ 2. a ~ for (do you remember when young people had a ~ for the Beatles?) USAGE NOTE: One can also use *-mania* to form words: *do you remember when young people were in the grip of Beatlemania?*

maniac *n.* a homicidal; raving ~

manicure *n.* 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to get a ~

manifest *n.* 1. a plane's; ship's ~ 2. on a ~

manifestation *n.* a clear ~ (the protests were a clear ~ of the workers' discontent = the protests were a clear ~ that the workers were discontented)

manifesto *n.* 1. to draft, draw up; issue a ~ 2. to adopt a ~ 3. an election (BE); party (esp. BE); political ~ 4. an item in a ~ (see also **platform)**

manner *n.* 1. a charming; cheerful, lively; friendly; gentle, mild; gracious ~ 2. a courteous, polite; debonair; elegant, grand, polished, suave ~ 3. a casual, hit-or-miss, offhand, relaxed; intriguing

~ 4. a businesslike; dignified; forthcoming; matter-of-fact; professional; statesmanlike ~ 5. a stern, unsmiling ~ 6. an awkward; sheepish ~ 7. a cursory; flippant; slipshod, sloppy; supercilious ~ 8. an affected; cloying; ingratiating, servile, unctuous; pretentious; prim ~ 9. an abrupt, brusque; aggressive; arrogant, cavalier, imperious, overbearing; hostile ~ 10. a boorish; coarse, crude, rude, uncouth; obnoxious; rude; sullen, surly; taciturn ~ 11. bad; good ~s (it's bad ~s for a host to keep his guests waiting!) 12. table ~s 13. (a doctor's) bedside ~ 14. in a certain ~ (they behaved in a statesmanlike ~ = they were statesmanlike in their ~; in the grand ~; in an awkward ~; everything was done in a well-organized ~) 15. (misc.) to the ~ born ("as if so from birth"); in a ~ of speaking ("as it were"); to mind one's ~s ("to behave properly")

manoeuvre (BE) see **maneuver**

mansion *n.* (US) a governor's ~

manslaughter *n.* 1. to commit ~ 2. involuntary; voluntary ~

mantle *n.* ["symbol of authority"] to assume; inherit; wear the ~ (of authority)

manual *n.* 1. an instruction(al); laboratory; owner's; teacher's ~ 2. a ~ (a ~ for beginners = a beginners' ~)

manufacturer *n.* an aircraft; automobile (AE), car, motorcar (BE); clothing; computer; drug; furniture; radio; shoe; television ~

manure *n.* 1. to spread ~ 2. a heap, pile of ~

manuscript *n.* 1. to edit; proofread; revise a ~ 2. to submit a ~ (for publication) 3. to accept; reject a ~ 4. an authentic; unpublished ~ 5. an illuminated ~ 6. (misc.) the original ~ dates back/goes back to the fifteenth century

many *determiner, pronoun* 1. a good, great ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (we have ~ to sell; we have ~ books to sell) 3. ~ of (~ of them) USAGE NOTE: The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows. When a noun follows, the use of *of the* limits the meaning – we saw many students; we saw many of the students whom we had met earlier.

map *n.* 1. to draw; trace a ~ 2. to consult; read a ~ 3. a large-scale; small-scale ~ 4. a contour; dialect; military; Ordnance-Survey (GB); relief; road; street; strip; weather ~ 5. off; on a ~ (to find a village on a ~) 6. (misc.) to put a place on the ~ ("to make a place well known"); to wipe smt. off the ~ ("to destroy smt.")

map out *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ a future for one's children)

marathon *n.* 1. to organize, stage a ~ 2. to run a ~ 3. a dance ~

marauder *n.* a band of ~s

marble *n.* a block; slab of ~

marbles *n.* 1. to play ~ 2. a game of ~ 3. (misc.) (colloq.) to lose one's ~ ("to lose one's mind")

march I *n.* ["procession"] 1. to go on, join, take part in; lead; organize a ~ 2. to ban; break up; call off a ~ 3. a death; forced; hunger ~ 4. an antinuclear; antiwar, peace; civil-rights; political ~ protest; a ~ past (BE) (the Queen reviewed the ~ past of the troops) 5. a ~ against; for, in favor of, in support of; from; into; on; to (a ~ for peace and against war; the 1963 March On Washington) 6. on the ~ (science is on the ~) ["music that accompanies marching"] 7. to compose; play; strike up a ~ 8. a funeral; military; wedding ~ 9. a lively, rousing, stirring ~ ["misc."] 10. to steal a ~ on smb. ("to do smt. before smb. else")

march II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against; for, in favor of, in support of (to ~ for peace and against war; to ~ against the enemy) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; into; on; to; towards (the battalion ~ed from the barracks to the parade ground) 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ into (the troops ~ed into town) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ on (the troops ~ed on the next town; to ~ on Washington to demand civil rights) 5. (P; intr., tr.) to ~ along the road; ~ing through Georgia; the teacher ~ed the students out of the room; the students ~ed out of the room

march down *v.* (d; intr., tr.) to ~ to (the teacher said that if we didn't behave, she would ~ us down to the principal's office)

marching orders *n.* ["notice of dismissal"] (colloq.) (BE) to give people their ~ (also fig.) (she gave her lover his ~ when he cheated on her) (AE has *walking papers*)

march off *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to (they were ~ed off to prison)

march on *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (the troops ~ed on to the next town)

mare *n.* a brood, stock ~

margarine *n.* 1. to spread ~ 2. soft; vegetable ~ 3. a pat; tub of ~ 4. in ~ (to fry in ~)

margin *n.* 1. to adjust; set a ~ (when typing) 2. to justify a ~ (in setting type, in word processing) 3. a close, narrow, slender, slim, small ~ 4. a comfortable, decisive, handsome, large, wide; safe ~ 5. by a ~ (they won by a slim ~ over the opposition) 6. in, on a ~ (to make notes in the ~s) 7. (misc.) a ~ of error; a ~ of safety; a ~ of victory; a profit ~; on the ~s (of society)

marihuana, marijuana *n.* 1. to grow ~ 2. to smoke ~

marina *n.* a municipal, public ~

marine *n.* a mercantile (BE), merchant (AE) ~ (see also **navy**)

marionette *n.* to manipulate, move, pull the strings of a ~

mark I *n.* ["sign, symbol"] 1. to make one's ~ ("to make a cross in place of a signature") 2. an accent, stress; diacritical; exclamation (BE; AE has *exclamation point*); question; quotation, quote ~ (see also **punctuation mark**; **question mark**; *a mark of respect* at **respect**) 3. a hash ~ 4. a laundry ~ ["impression, imprint"] 5. to get; have a ~; leave, make one's ~ (you've got a black ~ on your collar;

they have made their ~ in politics and they will leave their ~ on history) 6. a distinguishing; high-water; indelible ~; a check ~ (AE; BE has *tick*) (to make/put a check ~ beside/by the right answer) ["target"] 7. to find, hit the ~ (the bullet found its ~) 8. to miss; overshoot the ~ 9. to fall short of the ~ 10. off the ~, wide of the ~ ["skin blemish"] 11. a birthmark, strawberry (esp. BE) ~ ["victim"] 12. an easy ~ ["starting line of a race"] 13. on your ~s! ["misc."] 14. to toe the ~ ("to adhere to the rules"); to bear the ~ of Cain; the actress won high ~s for her performance; she managed to get a pass ~ in French at A-level (BE) (see also **grade I** 1–4; **marks**)

mark II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (these items were ~ed as acceptable) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ for (~ed for death) 3. (K) this birthday ~s his coming of age 4. (N; used with an adjective) these items were ~ed acceptable (see also **grade II**)

mark down *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ by; from; to (the instructor ~ed her down from A to B; these items have been ~ed down from $12 to $11.95 – and these others by 50%!)

marker *n.* ["IOU"] (colloq.) (AE) to call in a ~

market *n.* ["store, shop"] ["group of shops or stalls"] 1. a fish; food ~; hypermarket (BE); meat ~; supermarket 2. a farmers'; flea; open-air ~ 3. at, in a ~ (to shop at the ~) ["place where trade is conducted"] 4. to open a new ~ 5. a commodity; money; stock ~ 6. a free, open; overseas; spot ~ 7. on; onto a ~ (to buy oil on the spot ~; to put a new product on the ~; a new computer has just come (out) on the ~) ["stock market"] 8. to gamble on, play, speculate on the ~ ("to speculate") 9. to depress the ~ 10. a bear ("falling"); bull ("rising") ~ 11. the ~ is active; volatile; sluggish 12. the ~ is firm, steady; rising; up 13. the ~ is depressed; down; falling 14. the ~ rallies; slumps 15. the ~ closes strong; weak 16. the ~ opens strong; weak (see also **stock market**) ["supply of goods, services"] 17. to capture, corner, monopolize a ~ 18. to flood, glut a ~ 19. the housing; labor ~ 20. a buyer's; seller's; niche, specialized; social ~ ["demand"] 21. to create a ~ 22. to study the ~ 23. to depress a ~ 24. a ~ for (there is no ~ for large cars – except perhaps at the upper end of the ~) 25. in the ~ for (we're in the ~ for a new house) 26. a drug on the ~ ("smt. for which there is little demand") ["trade"] 27. the bond; commodities; second-hand-car, used-car; securities; wheat ~ (see also *market economy* at **economy**; *market forces* at **force**)

marketplace *n.* in the ~

marks *n.* (esp. BE) 1. to get; give ~ 2. full, top ~ 3. ~ out of (the teacher gave me 10 out of 10 ~s on the English exam and my parents were delighted that I'd got full ~ in English!) 4. (fig.) full ~ (full ~ to Sherlock Holmes for catching the villain!)

marksman, markswoman *n.* a crack, expert, skilled ~

markup *n.* a ~ on (their ~ on merchandise was small)

marmalade *n.* orange ~

marriage *n.* 1. to enter into a ~ 2. to announce a ~ 3. to consummate a ~ 4. to arrange a ~ 5. to solemnize a ~ 6. to propose ~ 7. to annul a ~ 8. to break up, dissolve a ~ 9. a good, happy, stable ~ 10. a bad, unhappy; broken ~ 11. an arranged; civil; common-law; communal; first; group; morganatic; open; previous; proxy; secret; trial ~ (she has several children from a previous ~) 12. an interfaith; interracial; mixed ~ 13. a ~ breaks up, collapses, dissolves 14. a ~ of convenience 15. a ~ into (a family) 16. a ~ to (smb.) 17. by ~ (we're related by ~) 18. (misc.) to give (one's child) in ~ (Brabantio was reluctant to give Desdemona in ~ to Othello)

married *adj.* 1. happily ~ 2. to get ~ (to) (Othello and Desdemona got ~ (to each other))

marrow *n.* 1. bone ~ 2. vegetable ~ (BE; AE has *squash*)

marry *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for love) (Othello married Desdemona for love) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into a good family) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ (to) ("to perform a marriage ceremony for") (Friar Laurence married Romeo and Juliet (to each other) = Friar Laurence married Romeo to Juliet)

marry off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (Brabantio was reluctant to ~ off Desdemona to Othello = Brabantio was reluctant to ~ Desdemona off to Othello)

marshal *n.* an air; field ~

marshmallow *n.* to roast, toast ~s

martial law *n.* 1. to declare, impose, invoke ~ 2. to lift, rescind; suspend ~ 3. under ~ (the area was placed under ~)

martini *n.* ("type of cocktail") 1. to fix (esp. AE), make, mix a ~ 2. a dry ~

martyr *n.* 1. to make a ~ (of smb.) 2. a ~ to (a ~ to tyranny) 3. (misc.) to burn a ~ at the stake; to play the ~

martyrdom *n.* to face; suffer, undergo ~ (to suffer ~ for one's beliefs)

marvel I *n.* 1. to achieve, do, work ~s 2. a ~ to 3. a ~ that + clause (it's a ~ to me that we didn't get lost)

marvel II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at smb.'s skill) 2. (L) (esp. BE) I can but ~ that we didn't get lost!

marvelous, marvellous *adj.* 1. absolutely, quite (esp. BE) ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to have a day off = it's ~ having a day off; it was ~ of you to help) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that we had the day off; it was ~ that you decided to help!)

mascara *n.* 1. to apply, put on ~ 2. to remove, wipe off ~ 3. ~ runs

mask *n.* 1. to put on; wear a ~ 2. to take off a ~ 3. a death; gas; oxygen; ski; stocking; surgical ~

masochism *n.* to display ~

masonry *n.* 1. crumbling, falling ~ 2. ~ comes off, falls off

masquerade *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ as (to ~ as a policeman)

mass I *n.* ["body of matter"] 1. a shapeless; sticky; tangled ~ (a tangled ~ of hair) 2. a land ~ 3. a critical ~ 4. a dense ~ (of smoke) 5. (med.) a fixed; hard; irregular; movable; nodular; palpable ~

mass II *n.* ["religious celebration of the Eucharist"] 1. to celebrate, offer, say (a, the) ~ 2. to attend, go to, hear ~ 3. (a) high; low; nuptial; pontifical; requiem; solemn; votive ~ 4. a ~ for (a requiem ~ is a ~ for the dead)

massacre *n.* 1. to carry out, perpetrate a ~ 2. a brutal ~ 3. a ~ happens, takes place

massage *n.* 1. to give (smb.) a ~ 2. to get a ~ 3. a back; body; facial; therapeutic ~

mast *n.* 1. a tall ~ 2. (to fly) at half ~ 3. (misc.) (lit.) before the ~ ("at sea as a sailor")

master I *n.* 1. to find, meet one's ~ ("to find one who is superior") 2. a question ~ (BE; AE has *quizmaster*) 3. (chess) a chess; grand ~ 4. a past ~ 5. a ~ at, of (a past ~ of deceit)

master II *v.* to ~ completely, thoroughly (a scoundrel who has thoroughly ~ed the art of deceit)

masterpiece *n.* 1. to create a ~ 2. an enduring ~ 3. a literary ~

mastery *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 2. to achieve, acquire ~ 3. (a) complete; thorough ~ 4. ~ of; over (~ of one's subject; ~ over other people; a scoundrel who has achieved thorough ~ of the art of deceit)

mat *n.* 1. to weave a ~ 2. a bath; beer; exercise; place; prayer; ~ (see also **welcome mat**)

match I *n.* ["that catches fire when struck"] 1. to blow out, extinguish; light, strike a ~ 2. to light, put, set a ~ to 3. a safety ~ 4. a book; box of ~es 5. (misc.) children should not play with ~es

match II *n.* ["marriage"] ["marriage partner"] 1. to make a ~ 2. a good ~ 3. a ~ for ["contest"] 4. to promote, stage a ~ 5. a championship; crucial; play-off; return; test (BE) ("international cricket or rugby") ~ 6. a football ~ (esp. BE; AE has *football game*) 7. a boxing; chess; cricket; fencing; golf; hockey; polo; tennis; wrestling ~ 8. a ~ between; with (a wrestling ~ between two strong competitors took place last week, during which one was injured) ["equal competitor"] 9. to meet one's ~ 10. no ~ for (she proved to be no ~ for me; I was no ~ for her) 11. smb.'s ~ in (she was more than my ~ in ability = she was more than a ~ for me in ability; no one is his ~ in speed and agility) ["pair"] 12. a good; perfect ~ 13. a ~ for USAGE NOTE: When two teams compete before spectators, BE typically has *match* (a football match); AE typically has *game* (a football game). However, when the team game is of North American origin, BE often uses *game* too (a basketball game). Moreover, *game* is starting to become more frequent in BE generally. A *chess match* is CE.

match III *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ against, with ("to pit against") (she was ~ed against/with a formidable opponent) 2. (D; tr.) ("to equal") to ~ for, in (no one can ~ him in speed and agility) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ with ("to find the equivalent of") (she wants to ~ this candlestick with a similar one)

matched *adj.* evenly; ideally ~

matchmaker *n.* a professional ~

match up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to, with (he doesn't ~ to his opponent)

mate I *n.* ["petty officer"] (naval) 1. a boatswain's; first; machinist's ~ ["junior partner"] 2. (BE) a plumber's ~ 3. (US; pol.) smb.'s running ~

mate II *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (cats and dogs can't ~ (with each other); zebras don't ~ with donkeys; to ~ a donkey with a mare)

material I *adj.* ~ to (this evidence is ~ to our case)

material II *n.* ["data"] 1. to collect, gather ~ 2. source ~ 3. ~ about, on (to gather ~ about the case) 4. ~ for (to gather ~ for a dictionary) ["matter"] 5. building ~ 6. radioactive; raw; synthetic ~ 7. promotional; reading; reference ~ 8. writing ~s 9. packing ~ ["cloth"] 10. a piece, swatch of ~

materialism *n.* dialectical; historical ~

materialize *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ out of (the apparition we expected failed to ~ out of the shadows)

mathematics *n.* applied; elementary; higher; pure ~

matrimony *n.* 1. holy ~ (they were joined/united in holy ~) 2. the state of ~

matron *n.* 1. a dignified ~ 2. a ~ of honor (at a wedding)

matter I *n.* ["affair"] 1. to deal with, pursue, take up a ~ 2. to bring up, broach, raise; discuss, go into a ~ 3. to arrange a ~ 4. to clear up, settle, straighten out a ~ 5. to complicate; simplify a ~ 6. to give a ~ (attention, thought) (we have given this ~ considerable thought) 7. to not mince ~s ("to express oneself candidly") 8. to drop a ~, to let a ~ drop 9. a business; personal, private ~ 10. a complex, complicated; delicate ~ 11. an important, pressing, serious, weighty ~ 12. a petty, trifling, trivial; simple ~ 13. no easy, no laughing ~ (it's no easy ~ to find a house in this city = it's no easy ~ finding a house in this city; being accused of assault is no laughing ~) 14. ~s came to a head (when he tendered his resignation) 15. a ~ for (a ~ for conjecture; a ~ for speculation) 16. a ~ of (a ~ of grave importance) 17. in ~s of (in ~s of finance) 18. (misc.) as a ~ of fact ("really"); to take ~s into one's own hands; the fact of the ~ is that...; a ~ of record (legal); for that ~ ("concerning that"); a ~ of a few minutes; a ~ of (personal) opinion/taste; a ~ of some urgency; a ~ of life and death; the crux/heart of the ~; no ~ how she tries, she gets no credit; you look so sad – what's the ~? you haven't done this properly – what's the ~ with you? ["material"] ["substance"] 19. printed; reading ~ (see also **subject matter**) 20. gaseous; inorganic; liquid; organic; solid; vegetable ~ 21. gray ~ ("brains") 22. the back; front ~ (of a book) USAGE NOTE: The expression *what's the matter?* can express sympathy; *what's the matter with you/him etc ?* is often critical.

matter II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ to (her financial status hardly ~s to us – but it ~s a great deal to her!) 2. (R; to) it doesn't ~ (to us) that we are not rich 3. (misc.) it doesn't ~ (to us) whether or not we are rich = what does it ~ (to us) whether or not we are rich?

mattress *n.* 1. a firm; lumpy; orthopedic; soft ~ 2. a double, full; king-size; queen-size; single, twin ~ 3. an air ~ 4. on; under a ~

mature *adj.* 1. emotionally; mentally; physically; sexually ~ 2. ~ for (she is ~ for her age)

maturity *n.* 1. to reach ~ 2. full ~ 3. emotional; mental; physical; sexual ~

maxim *n.* a ~ that + clause (is it a valid ~ that competition increases productivity?)

maximum *n.* 1. to fall below; reach; set a ~ 2. at a ~ (excitement was at its ~)

may *v.* 1. (F) she ~ (well) still show up 2. (misc.) we ~ as well give in; they ~ or ~ not have been here earlier; ~ we wish you a Happy New Year! (see also **might II**) USAGE NOTE: In today's English and esp. BE, *may* is often used wrongly for *might.* It is correct to say "the ambulance arrived so quickly that the victim may/might have survived – we don't know yet" but incorrect to say "if the ambulance had arrived in time, the victim *may [= might] have survived – but unfortunately didn't."

mayhem *n.* to commit ~

meadow *n.* in a ~

meal I *n.* ["repast"] 1. to cook, fix (esp. AE; colloq.), prepare a ~ 2. to put together, slap together, whip together a ~ 3. to eat, have; enjoy a ~ 4. to make a ~ of (to make a ~ of soup) 5. to order; serve a ~ 6. to skip a ~ 7. a big, heavy; decent, hearty, solid, square; hot; slap-up (BE colloq.), sumptuous ~ (to have a square ~) 8. a light, small; simple; skimpy ~ 9. an evening (BE); main; mid-day; set (esp. BE) ~ (the main ~ of the day) ["misc."] 10. (BE; colloq.) to make a ~ of smt. ("to behave as if smt. easy were difficult") USAGE NOTE: Because of the confusion in BE about *dinner*, *supper*, and *tea*, BE tends increasingly to use *evening meal* to avoid ambiguity. That is particularly true in official notices: "we offer tourists bed, breakfast and an evening meal." BE also to some extent uses *mid-day meal* to avoid the potential ambiguity of *lunch* and *dinner.*

meal II *n.* ["ground seeds"] Indian ~ (BE; CE has *cornmeal*)

mean I *adj.* 1. ~ about (he was very ~ about the loan) 2. ~ with (esp. BE) 3. ~ to (he's ~ to everyone) 4. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to say that) USAGE NOTE: *Mean* can be both 'stingy' (esp. BE) and 'nasty' (esp. AE). Real ambiguity is possible but sometimes prevented in context: In *mean with*, *mean* is probably 'stingy'; in *mean to*, probably 'nasty.'

mean II *n.* ["mathematical value"] 1. to find a ~ 2. an arithmetic; harmonic ~ ["middle point"] 3. a golden ~

mean III *v.* 1. (A; usu. used without *to*) she meant them no harm 2. (d; tr.) to ~ as (her remark was meant as a compliment) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ for (his remark was meant for you) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ to (her words meant nothing to me) 5. (E) I meant to write; she never meant to harm them 6. (H) we never meant you to go without us; she meant her remark to be a compliment = her remark was meant to be a compliment 7. (L) though she said, "it's getting late," she really meant that she wanted us to leave 8. (S) *Hund* ~s "dog"; waiting longer ~s driving after dark 9. (misc.) they never knew what it meant to be hungry; she ~s what she says, but I'm not sure she always says what she really ~s

meander *v.* (P; intr.) the brook ~s through the valley

meaning *n.* 1. to acquire, take on; distort, twist; have; misconstrue a ~ 2. an accepted; basic; clear; connotative; double, equivocal; figurative; hidden, obscure; literal 3. grammatical; lexical; referential ~ 4. a shade of ~ 5. in a ~ (in the accepted ~ of the word)

meaningful *adj.* ~ to (the ceremony was very ~ to all those who came)

meaningless *adj.* ~ to (the lecture was ~ to all those who did not understand the language)

meanness *n.* 1. ~ to 2. out of ~ (she did it out of ~) (see also Usage Note at **mean I** *adj.*)

means *n.* ["method"] 1. fair; foul ~ (by fair ~ or foul) 2. an effective ~ 3. by any ~ (by any ~ necessary) 4. by ~ of (the roof is held in place by ~ of steel cables) 5. (misc.) the end does not justify the ~; a ~ to an end ["resources"] ["wealth"] 6. independent, private; moderate ~ 7. the ~ to + inf. (do they have the ~ to buy such a large house?) 8. according to, within one's ~ (to live within one's ~) 9. beyond one's ~ (to live beyond one's ~) 10. of ~ (a person of moderate ~) ["misc."] 11. by all ~ ("yes, of course"); by no ~ ("in no way"); ways and ~; a vagrant with no visible ~ of support

meant *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ["destined"] 1. ~ for (they were ~ for each other) ["intended"] 2. ~ as (her remark was ~ as a compliment) 3. ~ to + inf. (her remark was ~ to be a compliment) ["supposed"] (colloq.) (BE) 4. ~ to + inf. (Brighton is ~ to be lovely in summer)

meantime, meanwhile *n.* in the ~

measles *n.* 1. to catch, come down with, get, go down with (BE) (the) ~ 2. German ~ ("rubella") 3. an epidemic; outbreak of ~ 4. a case of ~

measure I *n.* 1. (a) cubic; dry; liquid; metric; square ~ 2. a tape ~ 3. in a certain ~ (in large ~ = in no small ~; "that cause for which they here gave the last full ~ of devotion" – A. Lincoln, "The Gettysburg Address," 1863) 4. (misc.) for good ~ ("as smt. extra"); made to ~ ("custom-made"); to take smb.'s ~ ("to evaluate smb."); it's early days yet to get the full ~ of the man (see also **measures**)

measure II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ against (to ~ one's accomplishments against smb. else's) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. for new shoes) 3. (P; intr.) the room ~s twenty feet by ten

measurement *n.* 1. to take a ~; to take smb.'s ~s 2. exact ~s 3. a metric ~ 4. a scientific ~ 5. bust, chest; hip; inside leg; waist ~s 6. a system; unit of ~

measures *n.* 1. to carry out, take ~ 2. farsighted; interim; stopgap, temporary ~ 3. corrective; precautionary, preventive, prophylactic; safety, security ~ 4. emergency; extraordinary ~ 5. austerity, draconian; drastic, harsh, stern, stringent, tough; extreme, radical ~ 6. coercive; compulsory; punitive ~ 7. ~ to + inf. (we took ~ (in order) to ensure their safety) 8. ~ against (to take ~ against smuggling)

measure up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (how did he ~ to his opponent?)

meat *n.* 1. to barbecue; braise; broil (AE), grill; cook; cure; fry; marinate; roast; sear; stew ~ 2. to carve, cut; slice ~ 3. dark; red; white ~ 4. fatty; lean ~ 5. raw; tender; tough ~ 6. halal; kosher ~ 7. canned (AE), tinned (BE); fresh; frozen ~ 8. boned; chopped (AE), ground (AE), minced (BE); soup ~ 9. ~ goes bad, spoils 10. a cut; joint; piece; slice of ~ (I'd like a couple of slices of your best cut of ~, please) 11. (misc.) ~ off the bone; ~ on the bone

mecca *n.* 1. a tourist ~ 2. a ~ for (the mall was a ~ for shoppers)

mechanic *n.* an automobile (AE), car, motorcar (BE); master ~

mechanics *n.* celestial; fluid; quantum ~

mechanism *n.* 1. to activate, actuate, set off, trigger a ~ 2. a defense; escape; fail-safe; survival ~

medal *n.* 1. to award, give a ~ 2. to earn, get, win a ~ 3. to strike ("make") a ~ 4. a bronze; gold; silver ~ (as a prize) 5. a ~ for (to earn a ~ for bravery)

meddle *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in; with (don't ~ in their affairs)

media *n.* 1. the electronic; local; mass; national; news; print ~ 2. in the ~ (the elections were covered in the local ~) USAGE NOTE: Purists insist on *are the media reliable?* and consider *is the media reliable?* to be incorrect.

mediate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ among, between (to offer to ~ between the warring parties)

mediation *n.* 1. to conduct; offer ~ 2. to go to ~ (the dispute went to ~) 3. ~ among, between (to offer ~ between the warring parties)

mediator *n.* 1. to appoint a ~ 2. a government ~ 3. a ~ between

Medicaid *n.* (US) on ~ (is that treatment available on ~?)

Medicare *n.* (US) on ~ (we will be on ~ next year)

medication *n.* 1. to take (a) ~ (for) 2. to administer, dispense, give (a) ~ 3. to order; prescribe (a) ~ 4. to put smb. on ~ 5. to discontinue (a) ~ 6. to take smb. off ~ 7. (an) effective; mild; potent, strong ~ 8. a nonprescription, over-the-counter; proprietary ~ 9. (an) intramuscular; intravenous; oral; parenteral; topical ~ 10. to be on ~ for (she is now on ~ for high blood pressure)

medicine *n.* ["method, science of treating disease"] 1. to practice ~ 2. to study ~ 3. aerospace, space; aviation; military; sports; tropical ~ 4. community, social; industrial, occupational; preventive ~ 5. family; internal; physical ~ 6. clinical; forensic, legal ~ 7. molecular; nuclear ~ 8. allopathic; ayurvedic; holistic; homeopathic; osteopathic ~ 9. alternative, complementary (BE), fringe (BE); folk; traditional ~ 10. defensive ~ 11. socialized (esp. AE) ~ 12. veterinary ~ ["remedy"] 13. to take (a) ~ (to take ~ for a cold) 14. to prescribe (a) ~ 15. a cough; nonprescription, over-the-counter; patent; proprietary ~ 16. strong ~ (also fig.) 17. a dose; course of ~ 18. ~ for ["punishment"] (colloq.) 19. to take one's ~ ("to accept one's punishment")

meditate *v.* 1. to ~ deeply 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ deeply on impermanence)

meditation *n.* 1. to do, go in for, practice ~ 2. insight; transcendental ~ 3. deep, profound ~ (on, upon) 4. (deep) in ~ (to be deep in ~ on impermanence)

medium *n.* ["middle degree"] 1. a happy ~ 2. a ~ between (a ~ between two extremes) ["system"] 3. a ~ of instruction ["means"] 4. by, through a ~ (to be transmitted through the ~ of air; to be broadcast through the ~ of radio)

meet I *n.* (esp. AE) (sports) 1. to hold, organize a ~ 2. a dual; swim, swimming; track; track-and-field ~

meet II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (we met them for dinner) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to encounter") (to ~ with approval; they met with an accident) 3. (esp. AE) (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to have a meeting with") (our negotiators will ~ with them tomorrow) 4. (misc.) to ~ smb. halfway ("to compromise with smb."); to ~ face to face; to ~ head-on; smt. strange is going on – there's more to this than ~s the eye!; "Mr. Smith, this is Mr. Jones." "Pleased to ~ you, Mr. Jones!"

meeting *n.* 1. to call, convene; open a ~ 2. to attend a ~ 3. to arrange, organize, schedule a ~ 4. to have, hold a ~ 5. to chair, conduct, preside over a ~ 6. to adjourn; break up; close a ~ (they close their ~s with a prayer) 7. to call off, cancel; postpone; reschedule a ~ 8. to disrupt a ~ (the protesters disrupted the ~ by shouting slogans) 9. a clandestine, secret; closed; emergency; mass; open; private; protest; public ~ 10. a board; business; cabinet; committee; departmental; faculty (esp. AE); prayer; revival; staff; town (US) ~ 11. an athletics ~ (BE; AE has *track meet*) 12. a race ~ (BE; AE has *racing card*) 13. a series of ~s (they held a series of ~s to resolve their differences) 14. a ~ between, of; about 15. at; in a ~ (I saw her at the ~; she's in a ~ and cannot be disturbed) 16. (misc.) to call a ~ to order; a chance ~; at the Annual General

Meeting (at the AGM) of an association (esp. BE); a ~ of minds (after our discussions we seemed to have reached a ~ of minds that made co-operation possible between us)

meet up *v.* (AE) (D; intr.) to ~ with (our negotiators will ~ with them tomorrow)

megaphone *n.* (to speak) through a ~

melody *n.* 1. to hum; play; sing; whistle; write a ~ 2. a catchy; haunting; lilting ~

melon *n.* 1. a juicy; ripe; tasty ~ 2. a honeydew ~; watermelon 3. a slice of ~

melt *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into the crowd)

melting-point *n.* to be at; reach (the) ~

member *n.* 1. to recruit new ~s 2. an active; associate; card-carrying; charter (AE), founder (BE); full; honorary; individual; institutional; life; paid-up; ranking; staff; sustaining ~ 3. a corresponding; overseas ~ (of an academy) 4. a board; group ~ 5. (misc.) to admit new ~s into an organization 6. a ~ of

membership *n.* 1. to apply for ~ 2. to renew one's ~ 3. to grant ~ 4. to deny, refuse ~ (to smb.) 5. to drop, resign one's ~ 6. closed; open ~ 7. (an) agency, institutional; associate; full; honorary; individual; life; permanent; temporary ~ 8. a ~ lapses 9. ~ in (AE), of (BE) (~ in/of an organization)

membrane *n.* 1. a mucous ~ 2. ~s rupture (her ~s ruptured too early in labor)

memo *n.* 1. to write out, write up a ~ 2. an interoffice; office ~ 3. a ~ from; to (see also **memorandum**)

memoirs *n.* 1. to publish; write one's ~ 2. misery ~ (about people's unhappy lives)

memorandum *n.* 1. to draw up, prepare a ~ 2. to send around a ~ (in an office) 3. to initial a ~ 4. a confidential, secret; diplomatic; interoffice; official; private ~ 5. a ~ about, on 6. a ~ from; to

memorial *n.* 1. to build, erect, put up a ~ 2. to unveil a ~ 3. a war ~ 4. a ~ to

memory *n.* ["power of recalling"] 1. to jog, refresh smb.'s ~ 2. to commit smt. to ~ 3. to slip smb.'s ~ (the date has slipped my ~) 4. to lose one's ~ 5. a bad, poor; good; infallible; long; photographic; powerful; retentive; short ~ 6. (med.) long-term; short-term; visual ~ 7. a ~ for (a good ~ for names) 8. (to speak) from ~ 9. (misc.) a lapse of ~; a ~ like a sieve (my cousin has a very poor ~; in fact, he has a ~ like a sieve!); if ~ serves (we met in 1966, if ~ serves) ["something recalled, recollection"] 10. to bring back, call up, conjure up, dredge up, evoke, revive, stir up a ~ (the incident evoked painful ~ies that came back after they'd started to fade) 11. to blot out, bury, suppress a ~ (I have no ~ of meeting him in 1966 even though he has a very clear ~ of it: I must have suppressed the ~ of our meeting!) 12. bitter; bittersweet; dim, vague; enduring; fond, happy, pleasant; haunting, poignant; painful, sad, unpleasant ~ries ["collective remembrance"] 13. to honor, perpetuate, revere, venerate smb.'s ~ 14. a blessed, sacred ~ 15. in ~ of (to erect a monument in smb.'s ~) 16. in living ~ (nothing like it had happened in/within living ~!) 17. of blessed, sacred ~ 18. (misc.) dedicated to smb.'s ~ ["capacity for storing information in a computer"] 19. (a) random-access; read-only; virtual ~

menace I *n.* 1. to be, constitute, pose, represent a ~ 2. a ~ to

menace II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smb. with reprisals)

mend *n.* on the ~ ("improving")

mending *n.* invisible ~

menopause *n.* 1. to go through (AE), go through the ~ 2. the male ~ (is there really such a thing as a/the male ~?)

mentality *n.* a bunker, siege ~

mention I *n.* 1. to make ~ of 2. to deserve ~ 3. honorable ~ (conferred in a contest for an accomplishment of merit that does not win a prize) 4. special ~ (her work deserves special ~ at this time) 5. at the ~ (at the very ~ of his name I shuddered)

mention II *v.* 1. (B) he ~ed my lateness to her 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~ed as a possible candidate) 3. (K) he failed to ~ (to her) my being late twice last week 4. (L; to) he ~ed (to her) that I had been late twice last week 5. (Q; to) he forgot to ~ (to her) how often I had been late last week 6. (misc.) to ~ smb. by name; not to ~ (I was late twice last week – not to ~ all the times I'd been late previously!); now you come to ~ it (Oh, now you come to ~ it, I suppose you HAVE been late quite often recently); "Thank you!" "Don't ~ it!" (esp. BE) (see also *mentioned in dispatches* at **dispatch**)

mentor *n.* a ~ to (who is the ~ to the young prince?)

menu *n.* ["bill of fare"] 1. to bring a ~ (the waiter brought the ~) 2. a certain ~ (besides its regular ~ the restaurant has/offers a special children's ~ and a vegetarian ~, too, so that all the family can choose/order what they like from the ~!) 3. on a ~ (what's on the ~?) ["list of commands for a computer program"] 4. an edit; main; print ~

mercenary *n.* a foreign ~

merchandise *n.* 1. to buy, purchase; order ~ 2. to flog (BE, colloq.), hawk, sell ~ 3. to ship ~ 4. to carry (a line of) ~ 5. first-class, high-quality ~ 6. assorted; general ~ 7. defective, inferior, shoddy ~ 8. a line; piece; range of ~ (the American Flag should never be treated as just a piece of ~!)

merciful *adj.* 1. ~ to, towards 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to offer help)

merciless *adj.* ~ to, towards

mercy *n.* 1. to have ~ on 2. to show ~ to, towards 3. to beg for, implore (smb.'s) ~ 4. to throw oneself on smb.'s ~ 5. divine; infinite ~; smb.'s tender ~cies (ironic) (we turned him over to the tender ~cies of the student court) 6. at smb.'s ~ 7. (misc.) and may God have ~ on your soul!; well, ~ me! (used esp. by women as an expression of mild surprise); "we missed the train but at least it's stopped raining" "well, let's be thankful/grateful for small mercies!"

merely *adv.* see **only** *adv.*, *adj.*

merge *v.* 1. to ~ gradually; imperceptibly 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ into (to ~ several small companies into one large one) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (several small companies ~d with theirs to form one large one)

merger *n.* 1. to carry out, effect a ~ 2. a ~ between, of; into; with (to carry out the ~ of several small companies into one large one) 3. a ~ is approved, goes through; is blocked, is opposed

merit *n.* 1. intrinsic ~ 2. relative ~s 3. according to, on (the basis of) ~ (to decide a case on its ~s) 4. of ~ (their case is of dubious ~)

merry *adj.* to make ~ (lit.)

merry-go-round *n.* 1. to ride (on) a ~ 2. to get on a ~ 3. to get off a ~ (CE; BE has *roundabout*)

mesh *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (the gears ~ with each other)

mess I *n.* ["untidy condition"] (may be fig.) 1. to make a ~ (they made a ~ of the project; the dog's made a ~ on the carpet) 2. to leave a ~ 3. to clean away, clean up, clear away, clear up, straighten out, straighten up, sweep out, sweep up; deal with, sort out (esp. BE) a ~ 4. a complete, terrible, unsightly, utter ~ 5. in a ~ (to leave things in an utter ~) ["dining hall"] (mil.) 6. an enlisted (AE); officers' ~ 7. at, in a ~ (they always eat at the company ~)

mess II *v.* (colloq.) 1. (d; intr.) to ~ in (esp. AE) (don't ~ in their affairs) 2. to ~ with (don't ~ with him)

mess about (BE) 1. ~ in ("simply ~sing about in boats" – Kenneth Grahame (1859–1932), *The Wind in the Willows*) 2. see **mess around** USAGE NOTE: BE can also use *mess smb. about* to mean 'make trouble for smb., confuse smb.': *stop ~ing me about!*

message *n.* 1. to convey; relay; send, transmit a ~ 2. to deliver; leave a ~ 3. to get, receive a ~ 4. to intercept a ~ 5. to garble; scramble; unscramble a ~ 6. a clear; coded; cryptic, secret; garbled; urgent ~ 7. an E-mail ~ (she sent me an E-mail ~) 8. (on a computer) an error ~ 9. a ~ from; to (they received an urgent ~ from their partner) 10. a ~ to + inf. (we got a ~ to meet them at the restaurant) 11. a ~ that + clause (we got a ~ that we were to meet them at the restaurant) 12. in a ~ 13. (misc.) to get the ~ ("to grasp the situation, to get the point"); to send mixed ~s ("to be ambiguous or vague about one's intentions"); a divine ~ (from God)

mess around *v.* (colloq.) (AE) (D; intr.) to ~ with (don't ~ with him)

messenger *n.* to dispatch a ~

Messiah *n.* to await, wait for the ~

metabolism *n.* 1. to disturb, upset smb.'s ~ 2. basal ~

metal *n.* 1. to pour ~ 2. scrap ~ (to recycle scrap ~) 3. (a) base; ferrous; heavy; nonferrous; precious ~ (to transmute base ~ into gold) 4. molten; sheet ~ 5. ~ may conduct electricity; corrodes, rusts 6. a bar; lump; piece of ~ 7. in ~ (a design worked in ~)

metamorphose *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; into (the creature ~d from a frog into a handsome prince)

metamorphosis *n.* 1. to undergo ~ 2. a complete, radical, total ~ 3. a ~ from; into (the creature underwent a complete ~ from a frog into a handsome prince)

metaphor *n.* 1. a dead; mixed ~ 2. a ~ for ("Just how good is the Internet as a ~ for God?" – Charles Henderson, *Cross Currents*, Spring/Summer 2000, Vol. 50, Issues 1/2.)

mete out *v.* (B) to ~ justice to everyone = to ~ justice out to everyone

meter I metre *n.* ["verse rhythm"] ["arrangement of syllables"] 1. anapaestic, anapestic; dactylic; heroic; iambic; trochaic ~ ["unit of length"] 2. a cubic; square ~ 3. by the ~ (to sell carpeting by the square ~)

meter II *n.* ["instrument for measuring"] 1. to read a ~ (she came to read the gas ~) 2. an electric; exposure; gas; parking; postage; water ~ (she parked her car at a parking ~)

method *n.* 1. to apply, employ, use a ~ 2. to adopt; devise a ~ 3. to give up, scrap a ~ 4. an antiquated, obsolete; crude; devious; infallible, sure; modern, up-to-date; orthodox, traditional; refined, sophisticated; sound; unorthodox ~ 5. the case; deductive; empirical; inductive; scientific; Socratic ~ 6. unscrupulous (business) ~s 7. the audiovisual; direct, oral; grammar-translation ~ (of foreign language instruction); the tutorial ~ (of instruction) 8. teaching ~s 9. the rhythm ~ (of contraception) 10. a ~ for; in, to (a ~ for learning languages; they devised a ~ for extracting the ore; there is a definite ~ in her manner of interrogation; her plan's unusual, but there's ~ in her madness: she knows what she's doing) 11. a ~ to + inf. (esp. AE) (they devised a ~ to extract the ore)

methodical *adj.* ~ in (~ in one's work)

methodology *n.* (a) teaching ~

meticulous *adj.* ~ about, in (she is ~ in her dress)

mettle *n.* 1. to prove, show one's ~ 2. to put people on their ~

mezzanine *n.* (AE) ["first rows of a balcony in a theater"] in the ~

mickey, Mickey Finn *n.* (slang) ["a drink to which a strong drug or narcotic has been added"] to slip smb. a ~

microcosm *n.* in ~ (is New York City the whole USA in ~?)

microphone *n.* 1. to hook up, set up a ~ 2. to speak into, through a ~ 3. a concealed, hidden; throat ~ 4. a ~ picks up sound

microscope *n.* 1. a compound; electron; optical ~ 2. under a ~ (they examined the tissue under the ~) (also fig.) (our panel of experts will put/examine the EU under the ~; in tonight's panel discussion the EU will come under the ~)

midair *n.* in ~ (the planes collided in ~ = the planes had a ~ collision)

midday *n.* 1. at ~ 2. from ~ (to midnight)

middle *n.* 1. in the ~ (in the ~ of the last century; in the ~ of the room) 2. (misc.) to split smt. down the ~ (into two equal parts) (see also *middle of the road* at **road**)

middle ground *n.* 1. to find (a) ~ 2. (a) ~ between (they could find no ~ between the opposing sides)

midmorning *n.* 1. at ~ 2. from ~ (to early evening)

midnight *n.* 1. at ~ 2. from ~ (to early morning)

midpoint *n.* 1. to reach a ~ 2. at (the) ~

midriff *n.* 1. to expose one's ~ 2. a bare ~

midsemester *n.* (AE) at ~

midst *n.* in the ~ of

midstream *n.* 1. to reach ~ 2. in ~ (also fig.)

midway *adj.*, *adv.* ~ between; through

midyear *n.* at ~

mien *n.* (lit.) an impassive; proud ~

miffed *adj.* (colloq.) 1. ~ about, at (she was ~ at his late arrival) 2. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that he came/arrived so late)

might I *n.* 1. armed, military ~ 2. with all one's ~ 3. (misc.) ~ is right (BE) = ~ makes right (AE) ("you can't fight City Hall")

might II *v.* 1. (F) she ~ (well) still show up 2. (misc.) we ~ as well go; they ~ or ~ not have been here earlier (see also **may**)

migraine *n.* 1. a severe ~ 2. an attack of ~

migrate *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ between 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from; to

migration *n.* 1. internal; mass ~ 2. annual ~ (the annual ~ of birds) 3. ~ from; to

mildew *n.* ~ forms

mile *n.* 1. a land, statute; nautical, sea ~ 2. (misc.) to miss by a ~ ("to miss by a great deal")

mileage *n.* 1. to get ~ (I get good ~ with this small car; to get good ~ out of tires) 2. (misc.) the press got a lot of ~ out of the scandal

mileometer (BE) see **odometer**

milestone *n.* 1. to reach a ~ (usu. fig.) 2. (misc.) a ~ in human history

military *n.* 1. to call in the ~ 2. to serve in the ~

military service *n.* compulsory, universal; voluntary ~

militate *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ against (see also **mitigate**)

militia *n.* 1. to call out, mobilize the ~ 2. to serve in the ~ 3. a citizen ~

milk I *n.* 1. to boil; drink ~ 2. to express (breast) ~ 3. curdled, sour; fresh ~ 4. attested (BE), certified; chocolate; condensed; evaporated; fermented; fortified; fresh; homogenized; long-life (BE); low-fat; non-fat; pasteurized; powdered; raw; reconstituted; skim (AE), skimmed (esp. BE); UHT (BE); whole ~ 5. breast; cow's; ewe's, sheep's; goat's ~ 6. coconut ~ 7. ~ curdles, turns sour 8. a gallon; half-gallon; half-pint; pint; quart of ~ 9. a bottle; carton; cup; glass of ~ (see also *the milk of human kindness* at **kindness**)

milk II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from, of, out of (to ~ information from smb. = to ~ smb. of information; to ~ a company of thousands of dollars = to ~ thousands of dollars from a company) 2. (N; used with an adjective) to ~ smt. dry

mill I *n.* ["machine for grinding"] 1. a coffee; pepper ~ ["factory"] 2. a flour; lumber; paper; rolling; steel; textile ~ ["place where results are achieved in a quick, routine way"] 3. a diploma; divorce; marriage; propaganda; rumor ~ ["misc."] 4. to go through the ~ ("to acquire experience under difficult conditions")

mill II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ about, (a)round (to ~ around the entrance)

million *n.* by the ~s, in the ~s, in their (BE) ~s (some dictionaries sell in the ~s)

millstone *n.* ["heavy burden"] to have a ~ around one's neck

mime *n.* 1. to act a play in ~ 2. (misc.) the art of ~

mincemeat *n.* to make ~ of ("to defeat decisively")

mincer *n.* (BE) AE has *meat grinder*

mind I *n.* 1. to make up one's ~ 2. to make up one's ~ to do smt. 3. to broaden, cultivate, develop one's ~ 4. to speak one's ~ 5. to change one's ~ 6. to bear, have, keep (smt.) in ~ (please bear this request in ~; they had (it) in ~ to leave before dawn; keep in ~ that you have to leave early in the morning; bear in ~ that the deadline is tomorrow) 7. to bring, call smt. to ~ 8. to keep one's ~ on smt. 9. to put, set one's ~ to smt. (I set my ~ to finish/finishing my assignment quickly) 10. to ease one's ~, to set one's ~ at ease 11. to take one's ~ off smt. 12. to cross, enter one's ~ (it never crossed my ~ to telephone; it crossed my ~ that the store would be closed at five o'clock; that possibility never (even) entered my ~) 13. to come, spring to ~ (some names come readily to ~) 14. to know one's own ~ 15. to slip one's ~ (it slipped my ~ that I had an appointment) 16. to lose one's ~ 17. an analytical, brilliant, disciplined, keen, logical, nimble, quick, sharp ~ 18. a clear, sound, uncluttered ~ 19. an inquiring, inquisitive, open, scientific ~ (to keep an open ~; to have an inquiring ~) 20. a closed, narrow, one-track ~ 21. a deranged, dirty, sick, twisted, unbalanced, unsound, warped ~ 22. in one's ~ (in one's right ~; in one's subconscious ~) 23. on smb.'s ~ (what's on your ~?) 24. out of one's ~ (to go out of one's ~) 25. (misc.) I have half a ~ to vote for smb. else ("I may well vote for smb. else"); to give smb. a piece of one's ~ ("to state one's views to smb. very bluntly"); we were all of the same ~, we were all of one ~ ("we all had the same opinion"); a state of ~; it was a load off my ~ ("I felt relieved"); to be of sound ~; the noise drove me out of my ~; at the back of smb.'s ~; smb.'s ~ is wandering (see also *at/in the back of smb.'s mind* at **back II**; *a meeting of minds* at **meeting**; **presence of mind**)

mind II *v.* 1. (G) I don't ~ waiting; would you ~

opening the window?; I don't ~ admitting that the noise really scared me! 2. (J) would you ~ me opening the window? 3. (K) he didn't ~ their smoking; would you ~ my opening the window? 4. (L) do you ~ (it) that he is late? 5. (Q) would you ~ (it) if I opened the window?; ~ how you go! (esp. BE) 6. (misc.) never ~ about that – I don't ~ about it in the slightest!; "shall we eat in or out tonight?" "I don't ~ (either way)."

minded *adj.* (BE) ~ to + inf. (the Prime Minister is ~ to ask for a vote of confidence)

mindful *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ of (~ of one's responsibilities)

mindless *adj.* ~ of (~ of any danger)

mine I *n.* ["excavation from which minerals are taken"] 1. to open (up); operate, run, work a ~ 2. to close down a ~ 3. a coal; copper; diamond; gold; iron; lead; salt; silver; tin; zinc ~ 4. an abandoned; open-cast (BE), open-pit (AE), strip (AE) ~ 5. (misc.) the ~ was worked out ["explosive charge"] 6. to arm; lay a ~ 7. to hit, strike a ~ 8. to detonate, set off a ~ 9. to clear, remove, sweep ~s 10. to defuse; detect; disarm a ~ 11. a ~ blows up, explodes 12. an antipersonnel; antitank; contact; drifting, floating; land; magnetic; pressure; submarine ~

mine II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for coal)

minerals *n.* metallic; nonmetallic; rock ~ (see also *mineral deficiency* at **deficiency**)

mingle *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with the crowd)

mini-cab *n.* (in the UK) 1. to call for, telephone for; get; take a ~ 2. to get into; get out of a ~ 3. a ~ picks smb. up; takes smb. somewhere (I phoned for a ~ to pick me up in the morning and take me to the airport) 4. to drive a ~ (for a living) 5. by ~; in a ~ (to go somewhere by ~)

miniature *n.* in ~

minimal pair *n.* (ling.) to be, constitute, represent; produce a ~

minimum *n.* 1. to exceed; set a ~ 2. a bare; irreducible ~ 3. at a ~ (sales were at a ~)

mining *n.* open-cast (BE), open-pit (AE), strip (AE); shaft ~

minister I *n.* 1. to accredit a ~ 2. a ~ plenipotentiary; a ~ without portfolio 3. a cabinet; chief; deputy prime; first; foreign; junior; prime ~ (the Prime Minister of the UK; the Chief Minister of Singapore; the First Minister of Scotland) 4. a ~ from; to 5. (misc.) (formal) a ~ of religion

minister II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to smb.'s needs)

ministry *n.* ["organized religion"] 1. to enter the ~ 2. a lay ~ ["a government department"] (UK) 3. a defence; foreign; health ~, etc. (or: a ~ of defence; foreign affairs; health, etc.)

minor I *n.* 1. to serve ~s (this bar does not serve ~s) 2. an emancipated ~

minor II *v.* (AE) (d; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in French) ("to have French as a secondary subject")

minority *n.* 1. an ethnic; religious ~ 2. in a ~ (we were in the ~; in a ~ of cases)

minuet *n.* to dance; play a ~

minus see **plus** 2

minute *n.* ["sixtieth part of an hour"] 1. in a ~ (she'll be here in a ~) ["instant"] 2. the last ~ (at the last ~) ["present time"] 3. this ~ 4. (esp. BE) at the ~ (she's not here at the ~) 5. up to the ~ (see also *minute hand* at **hand**)

minutes *n.* ["official record"] 1. to keep, take ~ 2. to accept, approve; correct; read the ~ 3. to reject the ~

miracle *n.* 1. to accomplish, perform, work a ~ 2. a ~ to + inf. (it will take a ~ to save them) 3. a ~ that + clause (it's a ~ that she survived) 4. by a ~ (she survived by a/some ~) 5. (misc.) a miracle- worker

miraculous *adj.* ~ that + clause (it's ~ that she survived/should have survived)

mirage *n.* 1. to see a ~ 2. a ~ appears; disappears

mire *n.* (to be stuck) in the ~

mired *adj.* to get ~ (in the mud)

mired down (esp. AE) to get ~ (in the mud)

mirror *n.* 1. to hang; look at one's reflection in; look in a ~ 2. a full-length; hand; pocket; rearview; sideview (AE), wing (BE); two-way ~

mirth *n.* 1. to provoke ~ 2. general ~

misapprehension *n.* 1. (to labor) under a ~ 2. a ~ that + clause (we were laboring under the ~ that we would receive help)

miscalculate *v.* to ~ badly

miscalculation *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. to correct a ~ 3. a bad, glaring, grave, serious ~ 4. a ~ about

miscarriage *n.* ["abortion"] 1. to have a ~ ["failure"] 2. a gross ~ (of justice)

mischief *n.* 1. to cause, do, make; mean; plot, stir up ~ 2. to be up to, get into ~ 3. malicious ~ 4. out of ~ (to stay out of ~; to keep children out of ~) 5. full of ~ 6. up to ~ 7. (misc.) there was ~ brewing

misconception *n.* 1. a common; general, popular ~ 2. a ~ that + clause (it's a common ~ that one can lose weight by exercise alone)

misconduct *n.* gross; professional; serious; sexual ~

miscount *n.* to make a ~

misdeed *n.* 1. to commit a ~ 2. to rectify a ~ 3. a glaring ~

misdemeanor, misdemeanour *n.* to commit a ~

miserable *adj.* 1. ~ about, over (I feel ~ about working there) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to work there = it is ~ working there)

misery *n.* 1. to cause; prolong ~ (working there causes me ~!) 2. to alleviate, relieve ~ 3. abject, acute, deep; sheer, untold ~ 4. ~ to + inf. (it is sheer ~ to work there = it is sheer ~ working there) 5. in ~ (to live in ~)

misfit *n.* a social ~

misfortune *n.* 1. to have, suffer (a); be dogged by ~ 2. ~ strikes (~ can strike just when you least expect it to) 3. the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to get there at the wrong moment)

misgivings *n.* 1. to harbor, have ~ about (we had ~ about his backing out of the agreement) 2. to express one's ~ 3. to allay smb.'s ~ 4. initial; serious, strong ~ 5. ~ arise; persist 6. ~ about (he tried to allay the ~ that had arisen about whether he would back out of the agreement) 7. ~ that + clause (he tried to allay our ~ that he would back out of the agreement)

mishap *n.* (formal) 1. to have a ~ 2. a ~ befell us 3. without ~ (we completed the project without ~)

misinformation *n.* 1. to give, peddle, plant, spread ~ 2. to correct ~ 3. ~ about

misinformed *adj.* 1. badly, grossly ~ 2. ~ about

misinterpret *v.* 1. (B) the teacher ~ed the passage to the students 2. (d; tr.) to ~ as (they ~ed his response as an admission of guilt) 3. (H) they ~ed his response to be an admission of guilt

misjudge *v.* to ~ badly, completely

mislead *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ about (we were seriously misled about this matter) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (he was misled into a life of crime)

misleading *adj.* 1. grossly, seriously, very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to cite only certain sources)

mismanagement *n.* gross ~

misnomer *n.* a ~ to + inf. (it's a ~ to call this village a city)

mispronounced *adj.* commonly, frequently ~

misread *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ as (they misread me as a liberal)

misrepresent *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ as (the press ~ed them as revolutionaries)

misrepresentation *n.* gross ~

miss I *n.* 1. a clean; near ~ 2. (colloq.) (BE) to give smt. a ~ ("not to do smt.") (the play doesn't sound very interesting – I think I'll give it a ~)

miss II *v.* 1. to ~ terribly, very much (she ~es her family very much) 2. to ~ narrowly (he narrowly ~ed being hit by a car) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ about (what do you ~ most about home?) 4. (G) I ~ walking in the park; we ~ going to church every week 5. (misc.) to ~ by a mile ("to miss by a great deal")

missed *adj.* deeply, sorely ~

missile *n.* 1. to fire, launch; guide a ~ 2. to intercept a ~ 3. an air-to-air; air-to-ground, air-to-surface; antiaircraft, ground-to-air, surface-to-air; antimissile; ballistic; cruise; ground-to-ground, surface-to-surface; guided; intercontinental ballistic; intermediate-range, medium-range; long-range, strategic; nuclear; short-range, tactical; submarine-launched ~

missing *adj.* 1. to go ~ (esp. BE) (they went ~ for three whole days!) 2. ~ from (~ from a group) 3. (misc.) ~ in action (mil.); to turn up ~

mission *n.* ["task"] 1. to accomplish, carry out, perform a ~ 2. to undertake a ~ 3. (mil.) to fly a ~ 4. (usu. mil.) to abort, cancel, scratch, scrub a ~ 5. a bombing; combat; dangerous; military; reconnaissance; search-and-destroy; space; suicide ~ 6. a rescue ~ 7. a training ~ 8. a diplomatic; fact-finding; goodwill; pioneering; trade ~ 9. on a ~ (they went on a goodwill ~ to Asia; to go on a manned space ~ to Mars) 10. a ~ to + inf. (our ~ was to work out a trade agreement) 11. (misc.) ~ impossible (often humorous) (see also *mission statement* at **statement**) ["group sent to perform a task"] 12. a diplomatic; military; trade ~ 13. a ~ from; to (a trade ~ to Africa)

missionary *n.* 1. a foreign; medical ~ 2. a ~ from; to

miss out *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a profitable deal)

misstatement *n.* 1. to make a ~ (to make a ~ of fact) 2. a ~ about (to make a ~ about the facts)

mist *n.* 1. (a) dense, heavy, thick ~ 2. (a) fine, thin ~ 3. (a) ~ clears, dissipates, lets up, lifts, rises 4. a covering, curtain, layer, veil of ~ (nothing was visible through the thick curtain of ~)

mistake I *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. to correct, rectify a ~ 3. to excuse, forgive a ~ 4. to admit; learn from one's ~ (s) 5. a bad, big, costly, dreadful, ghastly, glaring, serious, terrible, tragic ~ 6. a fatal; foolish; honest; minor, slight ~ 7. ~s happen, occur 8. ~s abound (on every page) 9. a ~ about; in (we made a ~ about that; she made a ~ in counting on their help) 10. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ to count on their help = it was a ~ counting on their help) 11. by ~ (to do smt. by ~)

mistake II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (they mistook his response as an admission of guilt) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ for (he mistook me for my brother) 3. (H) they mistook his response to be an admission of guilt 4. (misc.) there's no ~ me for my brother – we're completely different!; there was no ~ the love for him in her eyes

mistaken *adj.* 1. gravely; (very) much; profoundly; sadly; very ~ 2. ~ about; in (they were very ~ in interpreting his response as an admission of guilt) 3. ~ for (I was ~ for my brother)

mistletoe *n.* ["Christmas decoration"] 1. to hang the ~ 2. to stand under the ~ (in order to indicate one's willingness to be kissed, during the Christmas season) 3. a sprig of ~

mistress *n.* 1. to have; take a ~ 2. a string of ~es (King Charles II had a string of royal ~es)

mistrial *n.* (legal) to declare a ~

mistrust *n.* 1. to arouse, cause, create, evoke, give rise to, sow, stir up ~ 2. to harbor ~ 3. to allay, dispel ~ 4. groundless, unfounded ~ 5. deep, profound; slight, vague; well-founded ~ 6. ~ between; of; towards (there was some ~ of her motives)

mistrustful *adj.* ~ of

misunderstanding *n.* 1. to cause, give rise to, lead to a ~ 2. to have a ~ (with) 3. to clear up, resolve a ~ 4. a complete, fundamental, total; simple, slight ~ 5. a ~ arises 6. a ~ about, over; between (a slight ~ had arisen between us that was easy to clear up)

mitigate *v.* (d; intr.) (substandard) to ~ against ("to militate against")

mitt *n.* ["glove"] 1. an oven ~ (AE; AE also has *pot holder;* BE has *oven glove*) 2. (baseball) a catcher's; first-baseman's ~

mix I *n.* ["mixture"] 1. a cake; cement; pancake; soup ~ 2. a curious, strange; fascinating ~ (of) (a curious ~ of people at the party)

mix II *v.* 1. (C) ~ a nice drink for me; or: ~ me a nice drink 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (he doesn't ~ with people like that; she ~ed the brandy with wine = she ~ed the brandy and the wine together)

mixed up *adj.* 1. ~ in (~ in a scandal) 2. ~ with (she got herself ~ with criminals)

mixer *n.* ["informal dance, party"] (AE) 1. to give, hold a ~ ["device for mixing"] 2. a cement, concrete; electric ~ ["person who mixes socially"] 3. a good; poor ~

mixture *n.* 1. a cake ~ 2. a curious, strange; fascinating ~ (of) (a curious ~ of people at the party) 3. with a ~ of X and Y (he viewed me with a curious ~ of envy and disdain)

mix-up *n.* 1. to cause a ~ 2. a ~ about, in, over

mix up *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (I always ~ him up with his brother = I always ~ him and his brother up)

moan I *n.* 1. to emit, give, let out; have a ~ 2. a barely audible, feeble, weak; loud ~ (to let out a loud ~ of ecstasy) 3. a ~ about, over; at, to (they had a bit of a ~ to us about the new taxes) 4. with a ~ (of)

moan II *v.* 1. to ~ constantly; feebly; loudly 2. (D: intr.) to ~ about, over; to (to ~ over the new taxes) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ in, with (to ~ with pain/ecstasy) 4. (L; to) they ~ed (to us) that the new taxes were too high 5. to ~ and groan (they're constantly ~ing and groaning to us about the new taxes)

mob I *n.* 1. to inflame, stir up a ~ 2. to control, subdue a ~ 3. to disperse a ~ 4. an angry; undisciplined, unruly, wild ~ 5. a ~ disperses; gathers; runs amok, runs wild

mob II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (fans were ~bing her for her autograph)

mobile *adj.* highly; very; socially; upwardly ~

mobility *n.* social; upward ~

mobilization *n.* 1. to order (a) ~ 2. to carry out ~ 3. full, general; partial ~

mobilize *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (we are ~zing our party for the campaign) 2. (H) we are ~zing our party to participate in the campaign

mobster *n.* a big-time, notorious ~

mockery *n.* 1. to make a ~ of (to make a mere ~ of justice) 2. a mere; shocking ~

mock-up *n.* ["model"] to do, prepare a ~ (of)

mode *n.* ["fashion"] 1. the latest ~ ["the setting of equipment"] 2. (a tape recorder) in play-back; recording ~ 3. (a space craft) in re-entry ~ 4. an access; insert ~ (on a computer)

model I *n.* 1. to take as a ~ 2. to pose; serve as a ~ 3. a role ~ 4. an artist's; fashion; male; photographer's ~ 5. a full-scale; scale; working ~ (not just a toy but a full-scale working ~) 6. (of a car) a deluxe; economy; late ~ 7. a ~ for (she can serve as a role ~ for us all!)

model II *v.* 1. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ after, on (the academy was ~ed after a British public school) 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ in (to ~ in clay) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ into; out of (the children ~ed toys out of clay) USAGE NOTE: Some people can also say *the children ~ed clay into toys*. Other people can't.

moderate *adj.* ~ in (they were ~ in their consumption of alcohol)

moderation *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. ~ in (~ in the consumption of alcohol) 3. in ~ (to drink in ~)

modest *adj.* 1. ~ about (she was ~ about her achievements) 2. ~ in (she was ~ in not boasting about her achievements) 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her not to boast about her achievements)

modesty *n.* 1. to affect; display, show ~ 2. false ~ (without false ~, I think I am entitled to at least *some* of the credit!) 3. ~ forbids (~ forbids me to speak of my part in the achievement) 4. ~ about; in (her ~ in not boasting about her achievements) 5. in all ~ (in all ~, I think I am entitled to at least *some* of the credit!)

modification *n.* 1. to make a ~ in 2. to undergo ~s 3. extensive; slight ~s 4. behavior ~ 5. a ~ in, to (there will be several ~s to the plan before it goes into effect)

modifier *n.* a dangling (esp. AE), misrelated; noun ~

modulation *n.* frequency ~ (FM)

module *n.* 1. a command; lunar; service ~ 2. a ~ counts (each of the four ~s into which the course is divided counts 25% towards the final grade)

modus operandi *n.* to establish, work out a ~

modus vivendi *n.* to establish, reach, work out a ~

mogul *n.* a media; movie; television ~

moisture *n.* 1. to absorb, soak up ~ 2. a drop of ~

molar *n.* 1. to cut a ~ 2. an impacted ~ 3. a first; second ~; third ~ ("wisdom tooth")

mold I mould *n.* ["furry growth"] 1. to gather ~ 2. ~ forms, gathers

mold II mould *n.* 1. a jello (AE), jelly (BE); plaster ~ 2. in a ~ (to be cast in a ~) 3. (misc.) to break out of a ~ = to break a ~ USAGE NOTE: The phrase *break the mold* has two different but related meanings, as in "After the gods made you, darling, they broke the mold" (i.e. 'You, darling, are unique') and "Our new party seeks to break the out-of-date mold of traditional politics!" (i.e. 'our party wants to do smt. new'). Both meanings stress newness and originality. Nowadays the second meaning is by far the more likely.

mold III mould *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from, in, out of (she ~ed a figure in/out of clay) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (she ~ed clay into a figure)

mole *n.* ["burrowing animal"] 1. ~s burrow, dig, tunnel their way ["spy"] 2. to plant a ~ ["on skin"] 3. to remove a ~ 4. a hairy ~

molestation *n.* child; sexual ~

mom *n.* (AE) a hockey; soccer ~ USAGE NOTE: Both hockey moms and soccer moms are so interested in their children as to take the time to attend their sons' sports matches. Indeed, it is possible that the two phrases are synonymous. However, the phrase *hockey mom*, probably of Canadian origin but popularized by Sarah Palin, Governor of Alaska and Republican Vice-Presidential candidate in 2008, may well suggest a tough working-class mom rather than an upper-middle-class soccer mom. The latter, but not the former, may also shepherd her daughter to ballet classes. If so, the difference is attributable in large measure to the difference in connotation for North Americans between (ice) hockey (a game of North American origin and therefore manly) and soccer (a game of British origin considered less manly than North American football).

moment *n.* 1. to choose, pick; savor the ~ 2. an appropriate, suitable; auspicious, opportune; critical, crucial; embarrassing, inappropriate, inopportune; propitious; solemn ~ 3. a rash, unguarded ~ (in a rash ~) 4. the psychological, right ~ ("the most favorable time") (you've got to know how to pick the right ~ to say or do smt.) 5. a ~ for (this is a ~ for action) 6. a ~ to + inf. (this is the ~ to act) 7. at a ~ (at that (very) ~) ("then"); (at the/this (very) ~) ("now") 8. for the ~ (for the ~ let us drop this subject) 9. in a ~ (she'll be here in a ~; in a crucial ~ of smb.'s life) 10. (misc.) there's never a dull ~; is this a good ~ to have a word with you?; a ~ or two more – and it would have been impossible!; from that ~ on, we knew we'd win!; at this ~ in time (considered a cliché) (see also *at a moment's notice* at **notice I** *n.*)

momentum *n.* 1. to gain, gather ~ 2. to lose ~ 3. ~ decreases; increases (the increasing ~ of social change)

monarch *n.* an absolute; constitutional ~

monarchy *n.* 1. to establish, set up a ~ 2. to overthrow a ~ 3. an absolute; constitutional; hereditary; limited ~

money *n.* 1. to coin; make, produce; print ~ 2. to counterfeit ~ 3. to circulate ~ 4. to earn, make ~ 5. to bank; change; deposit; draw, withdraw ~ (to deposit ~ in a bank; to withdraw ~ from a bank) 6. to contribute, donate; put up ~ (to donate ~ to a worthy cause) 7. to collect, raise; refund, return ~ 8. to owe; save; spend; tie up ~ 9. to lose; squander, throw away, waste ~ (they threw away their ~ on worthless investments) 10. to borrow; lend, (esp. AE) loan ~ 11. to invest ~ in; to put ~ into (they invested their ~ in stocks and bonds; she put her ~ into municipal bonds) 12. (colloq.) to sink (a lot of) ~ into (a venture) 13. to launder (illegally acquired) ~ 14. counterfeit; earnest; easy; hush; marked; paper; pin, pocket, spending; prize; seed; tight ~ 15. blood; danger; conscience ~ 16. tax ~ (politicians should not waste tax ~) 17. (esp. AE) mad ~ ("a small amount of money carried formerly for emergency use or now for impulse buying") 18. ~ for (I have the ~ for the rent) 19. for ~ (to do smt. for the ~) 20. out of ~ (we have run out of ~ and are now out of ~) 21. (misc.) to have ~ to burn ("to have a great deal of money"); that was ~ well spent!; I wouldn't do it for love or ~!

monitor I *n.* 1. an electronic; heart ~ 2. a video ~ (for a computer) 3. on a ~

monitor II *v.* to ~ closely

monkey *n.* 1. a howler; rhesus; ring-tailed; spider ~ 2. a band, horde, troop of ~s 3. (misc.) (colloq.) to make a ~ (out) of smb. ("to make a fool of smb.")

monkey about (BE) see **monkey around**

monkey around *v.* (colloq.) (AE) (D; intr.) to ~ with

monkey wrench *n.* ["disruption"] (colloq.) (esp. AE) to throw a ~ into smt. ("to disrupt smt.")

monogamy *n.* to practice ~

monologue, monolog *n.* to recite a ~

mononucleosis *n.* infectious ~ (CE also has *glandular fever*)

monopoly *n.* 1. to establish, gain a ~ 2. to enjoy, exercise; have, hold a ~ 3. to break (up) a ~ 4. a government, state; virtual ~ 5. a ~ of, on, over 6. (misc.) to play Monopoly (T)

monotone *n.* in a ~

monotonous *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to watch television every day = it is ~ watching television every day)

monotony *n.* to break, relieve the ~

monoxide *n.* carbon ~

monstrous *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to preach hatred) 2. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that some people (should) still preach hatred)

month *n.* 1. to spend a ~ (somewhere) 2. a calendar; lunar ~ 3. every; last; next; this ~ 4. the coming; current; past ~ 5. future; past; recent ~s 6. a ~ from (Tuesday) 7. by the ~ (she is paid by the ~) 8. by ("before or in") a ~ (by next ~, prices may have doubled) 9. during the ~ 10. for a ~ (he'll be here for a ~) 11. for, in (esp. AE) ~s (they have not been here for/in ~s) 12. in a ~ (we can't finish the whole job in just one ~; they will get here in a ~, (esp. BE) they will get here in a ~'s time) 13. in a certain ~ (in the ~ month of May; in past ~s) 14. in, to (colloq.) a ~ (there are four weeks in a ~) 15. (misc.) a ~ ago; once a ~; ~ after ~; ~ by ~; ~ in, ~ out; from ~ to ~; to take a ~ off; all ~ (long); the first time in (esp. AE), for (BE) a ~; she is five ~s old; up to last ~

monument *n.* 1. to build, erect, put up; unveil a ~ 2. an ancient; historic; historical; literary; national ~ 3. a ~ to

mooch *v.* (slang) (AE) 1. (D; tr.) ("to beg for") to ~ from, off (he ~ed a cigarette from me) 2. (d; intr.) ("to sponge") to ~ off of, on (to ~ on one's friends)

mood I *n.* ["state of mind"] 1. a cheerful; ebullient; festive, holiday; genial, good, happy, jovial, joyful ~ 2. a mellow; nostalgic; pensive; tranquil ~ 3. a melancholy; solemn, somber ~ 4. an angry; bad, foul; bellicose; bilious; defiant; resentful; sullen ~ 5. in a ~ (in a good ~) 6. a ~ changes 7. a ~ for (I'm not in the ~ for TV; he's in no ~ for fooling with!) 8. a ~ to + inf. (I'm not in a ~ to read; he's in no ~ to be fooled with!) USAGE NOTE: CE has "in a good ~; in an ebullient ~; in a defiant ~; in a confrontational ~; in an unrepentant ~." BE has also "in defiant ~; in confrontational ~; in unrepentant ~." When can BE drop *a/an*? Perhaps when *mood* is related in meaning to *mode*, and implies readiness to act. But when *mood* is related in meaning to *moodiness*, and implies a state of feeling merely, BE retains *a/an*.

mood II *n.* ["verb form"] the conditional; imperative; indicative; subjunctive ~

moon I *n.* 1. the ~ revolves around the earth 2. a crescent; full; gibbous; half; harvest; new; quarter ~ 3. the ~ wanes; waxes 4. the ~ climbs (higher in the sky); comes out; rises; goes down; goes in (behind a cloud); shines 5. an eclipse of the ~ = a lunar eclipse 6. the light; rays of the ~ (= moonlight; the moon's rays) 7. on the ~ (astronauts have walked on (the surface of) the ~)

moon II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ over

moonlight *n.* 1. by ~ 2. in the ~

moonlight flit *n.* (colloq.) (BE) ["a move without paying one's rent, debts"] to do a ~

moor *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a boat to a pier)

moose *n.* 1. a band, herd of ~ 2. a young ~ is a calf 3. a female ~ is a cow 4. a male ~ is a bull (see the Usage Note for **elk**)

mooted *adj.* 1. ~ as (she has been ~ as his successor) 2. ~ that + clause (it has been ~ (about) that she will be his successor)

mop I *n.* a dry, dust, wet ~

mop II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from, off (to ~ the sweat from one's brow; to mop the dirt off the floor) 2. to ~ with (to ~ a floor with a cloth) 3. (N; used with an adjective) we ~ped the floor clean (of dirt)

moped *n.* to ride a ~

moral *n.* a ~ to; the ~ of (there's a ~ to the story; what's the ~ of the story?)

morale *n.* 1. to boost, lift, raise ~ 2. to keep up ~ 3. to destroy, undermine ~ 4. high; low ~ 5. ~ rises; sinks

moral fiber, moral fibre *n.* the ~ to + inf. (does she have the ~ to adhere to principle?)

morality *n.* private; public; sexual ~

moralize *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, on, over, upon

morals *n.* 1. to protect, safeguard (public) ~ 2. to corrupt smb.'s ~ 3. lax, loose; strict ~ 4. public ~

morass *n.* to get bogged down in a ~

moratorium *n.* 1. to declare a ~ 2. to lift a ~ 3. a ~ on

morbid *adj.* ~ about (don't be ~ about the future)

more I *determiner, pronoun* 1. ~ to + inf. (we have ~ to do) 2. ~ of (~ of them) USAGE NOTE: The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows. When a noun follows, the use of *of the* limits the meaning – we drank more wine; we drank more of the wine that you brought yesterday.

more II *n., adv.* 1. a bit, little ~ 2. no ~ than 3. many; much, plenty ~

mores *n.* cultural; sexual; social ~

morgue *n.* 1. a city (esp. AE); newspaper ~ 2. at, in a ~ (to work in a ~)

morning *n.* 1. all ~; during the ~; in the ~ (they left early/late in the ~ = they left in the early/late ~; she works in the ~); ~s (AE) (she works ~s), every ~; the next, the following ~; this ~; that ~; tomorrow ~; yesterday ~; a June ~; a summer ~; on any ~; on/during the ~ of (they left on the ~ of July 26); on Wednesday ~ = Wednesday ~ (AE) 2. a ~ of (after a ~ of conversation, they spent the afternoon and evening together) 3. from ~ (from ~ to night) 4. (misc.) the ~ drew to a close; (Good) Morning (, everybody)!; to have; spend a ~ (we had a pleasant ~ at a museum; we spent the whole ~ working on the report)

moron *n.* (colloq.) 1. an utter ~ 2. a ~ to + inf. (he must have been an utter ~ to have arrived late!)

moronic *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ for/of him to arrive late = he was ~ to arrive late! = to arrive late was a ~ thing for him to do!)

morsel *n.* a choice, juicy, tasty ~ (of)

mortal *n.* a mere, ordinary ~

mortality *n.* 1. infant; maternal ~ 2. the incidence, rate of ~ 3. ~ from (the incidence of infant ~ from pneumonia)

mortar *n.* ["type of cannon"] 1. a trench ~ ["bowl"] 2. a ~ and pestle

mortgage *n.* 1. to give; hold a ~ (the local bank gave us a twenty-year ~; the bank holds our ~) 2. to get, receive; take out a ~ on (we got a twenty-year ~ from the bank) 3. to pay off a ~ 4. to finance; foreclose; refinance a ~ 5. a chattel; conventional; endowment (esp. BE); first; second; sub-prime ~ 6. a ~ on (do you have a ~ on your house?)

mortgaged *adj.* ~ to the hilt ("to the limit") (we were ~ (up) to the hilt and couldn't afford any more)

mortification *n.* 1. deep, everlasting ~ 2. to smb.'s ~ (to my everlasting ~, I got the answer wrong!)

mortified *adj.* ["embarrassed"] 1. deeply ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (we were ~ to learn that our manuscript had been rejected) 3. ~ that + clause (we were ~ that our manuscript had been rejected)

mortuary *n.* at, in a ~ (to work in a ~)

Moses *n.* holy ~! (esp. AE; colloq.)

Moslem see **Muslim**

mosquito *n.* 1. ~s bite; fly; hum 2. ~s carry, spread disease 3. a swarm of ~es

most *determiner*, *n.*, *pronoun* 1. ~ to + inf. (we have ~ to do when our clients call after lunch) 2. to get the ~ (out of life) 3. to make the ~ (of one's opportunities) 4. by far the, far and away the, much the ~ (it was much the ~ interesting film I've seen lately: I loved it!) 5. ~ of (~ of them) 6. at, at the; at the very ~ USAGE NOTE: The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows. When a noun follows, the following constructions are used – most American wine comes from California; most of the wines that we import come from Europe; we like most students; we like most of the students who study in this department.

motel *n.* 1. to manage, operate, run a ~ 2. at, in a ~ (she works at/in a ~) 3. (misc.) to check in at, check into, register at a ~; to check out of a ~; to go to a ~; to stay at a ~

mothballs *n.* ["protective storage"] 1. to put into ~ (to put ships into ~) 2. to take out of ~

mother *n.* 1. an expectant; nursing 2. a lone (BE); single; unwed; welfare; working ~ 3. an adoptive; biological, birth, natural; foster ~; grandmother; stepmother; surrogate ~ 4. a mother-in-law 5. a ~ to (she was like a ~ to them) 6. (misc.) a den ~; a ~ superior

motif *n.* 1. a guiding, leading ~ 2. a ~ runs through a work

motion I *n.* ["proposal"] 1. to make a ~ 2. to second a ~ 3. to accept; adopt, carry, pass a ~ 4. to defeat, reject, vote down a ~ 5. to consider, entertain, vote on a ~ 6. (AE) to table a ~ ("to postpone voting on a motion") 7. (BE) to table a ~ ("to call for a vote on a motion") 8. to withdraw a ~ 9. the ~ carried, passed, was carried, was passed; was defeated, was lost, was rejected 10. a ~ to + inf. (she made a ~ to stop debate) 11. a ~ that + clause; subj. (she made a ~ that debate be/should be stopped) 12. on a ~ (on my ~ they debated admitting new members) ["movement"] 13. to make a ~; set smt. in ~ 14. harmonic; perpetual ~ (see also **slow motion**) ["misc."] 15. to go through the ~s ("to pretend to do smt.")

motion II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ into; out of (she ~ed us into the room) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (she ~ed to us) 3. (H) she ~ed (to/for) us to come into the room

motivate *v.* (H) what ~d her to master English?

motivated *adj.* highly, strongly ~ (she is strongly ~ to master English)

motivation *n.* 1. strong ~ 2. the ~ to + inf. (she has a strong ~ to master English)

motive *n.* 1. to establish, find a ~ 2. to doubt, question, suspect smb.'s ~s 3. altruistic; honorable; noble ~s; the highest ~s (to have nothing but the highest ~s) 4. base, dishonorable, sinister; selfish; ulterior ~s 5. the profit ~ 6. an underlying ~ 7. a ~ behind, for; in (the police could not find a ~ for the murder; what was her ~ in committing the crime?; she had no ~ for committing the crime) 8. a ~ to + inf. (she had no ~ to commit the crime)

motor I *n.* 1. to start a ~ 2. to turn off a ~ 3. an outboard ~ 4. a ~ runs, works; stalls (see also **engine** 1–9)

motor II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (they ~ed to town)

motorbike *n.* 1. to get off; get on; ride a ~ 2. to ride on a ~ (as a passenger)

motorcar *n.* (BE) to drive; park a ~ (see **car** 1–12)

motorcycle *n.* 1. to drive, ride; get off; get on a ~ 2. to ride on a ~ (as a passenger)

motor scooter *n.* to drive, ride a ~

motorway (BE) see **highway**

motto *n.* 1. to coin, devise a ~ 2. a school; state ~

mound *n.* 1. a burial; pitcher's ~ 2. (baseball) (AE) to take the (pitcher's) ~

mount *n.* an engine ~

mountain *n.* 1. to climb, go up, scale a ~ 2. to come down, go down a ~ 3. high; rugged; snow-capped, snow-clad, snow-covered ~s 4. block; folded; volcanic ~s 5. a ~ rises 6. a chain, range of ~s 7. down; over; up a ~ 8. on a ~ (the flag was planted on a ~) 9. (misc.) the elevation, height of a ~; to make a ~ out of a molehill ("to exaggerate"); the peak, top of a ~; what shall we do with our ~ of surplus food?

mounted *adj.* ["astride"] 1. ~ on (~ on a fine horse) ["fixed"] 2. ~ on (the specimens were ~ed on a poster)

mourn *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for, over

mourning *n.* ["for smb.'s death"] 1. to declare, proclaim (a period of) ~ 2. to go into ~ 3. deep ~ 4. national ~ 5. in ~ for 6. a sign of ~ ["clothes for mourning"] 7. to wear ~ 8. (to be dressed) in ~

mouse I *n.* ["a small rodent"] 1. to catch mice 2. a field; house; meadow; white ~ 3. mice gnaw; scamper; squeak 4. (misc.) as quiet as a ~

mouse II *n.* ["a device on a computer"] to click; move; use a ~

moustache, mustache *n.* 1. to grow a ~ 2. to shave off; trim a ~ 3. to finger, twist one's ~ 4. a drooping; handlebar; walrus ~

mouth *n.* 1. to close, shut; open one's ~ 2. to cram, stuff one's ~ (with food) 3. to rinse one's ~ (out); wipe one's ~ 4. a ~ opens 5. the back; front; roof; side of the ~ 6. at the ~ (of a cave; river) 7. in smb.'s ~ (don't talk with food in your ~! = don't talk with your ~ full!) 8. (misc.) (colloq.) a big ~ ("a gossip"); to shoot off one's ~ ("to talk too much"); to make smb.'s ~ water ("to create a desire or appetite in smb."); to keep one's ~ shut ("to remain silent"); by word of ~ ("orally")

mouthful *n.* (colloq.) ["something true"] 1. to say a ~ ["enough food to fill a mouth"] 2. to swallow a ~

mouth off *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ about; at; to (he kept ~ing off (at/to me) about his troubles)

mouth organ *n.* to play a/the ~

mouthpiece *n.* ["spokesperson"] (derog.) 1. to act, serve as a ~ for 2. smb.'s official ~

move I *n.* ["act"] 1. to back, support; make; oppose a ~ (who will make the first ~?) 2. a false ~ (one false ~ would be costly; (make) one false ~ and I'll shoot!) 3. a bold; brilliant, clever, good; shrewd, smart, wise; decisive; bad ~ 4. a ~ to + inf. (they made a ~ to settle the dispute and their ~ to settle it was backed by nearly everyone) ["moving of a piece as in chess, checkers"] 5. to make; take back a ~ 6. a brilliant; stupid, wrong ~ 7. an opening ~ (he tried to take back his stupid opening ~) (also fig.) 8. a ~ in (the opening ~ in a courtship) ["act of moving"] 9. a ~ from; to (our firm's ~ from here to the Coast) 10. (misc.) (colloq.) to get a ~ on ("to go faster"); to make a ~ on smb. ("to approach smb. sexually") (colloq.) (he made a ~ on her at the office Christmas party); on the ~; a ~ in the right direction

move II *v.* 1. ("to stir") to ~ deeply, profoundly 2. ("to change the position of") to ~ bodily 3. (d; intr.) ("to request") to ~ for (to ~ for a new trial) 4. (D; intr., tr.) ("to change or cause to change one's position, place of residence, place of work") to ~ from; into, to; out of (let's ~ from this table to that one; they ~d from the city to the suburbs; our firm's moving from here to the Coast; let's ~ the chair from/out of this room to that one; he ~d his family from/out of an old house into a new apartment; we are ~ving our main office from/out of the city to a small town) 5. (D; intr.) ("to act") to ~ on (to ~ on a matter) 6. (D; tr.) ("to stir") to ~ to (she was ~d to tears) 7. (d; intr.) ("to change one's position") to ~ towards (to ~ towards the exit) 8. (E) ("to propose") the committee ~d to block her nomination 9. (H) ("to induce") what ~d the committee to block her nomination? 10. (L; subj.) ("to propose") the committee ~d that her nomination not be/should not be approved 11. (P; intr.) ("to circulate") she ~s in the best society; to ~ among the elite; to ~ near the very top of power

move ahead *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ of (to ~ of the pack)

move away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ from the city to the country)

move down *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ into, to (he has ~d down to the position of office boy from the position of general manager) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ through (to ~ through the ranks from general to private)

move in *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to close in") to ~ for (to ~ for the kill) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to close in on") (the police ~d in on the fugitives) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to establish control of") (organized crime was moving in on the industry) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ on (AE), with ("to take up residence with") (her lover wanted to ~ with her, so they decided to ~ together)

movement *n.* ["organized effort to attain a goal"] 1. to launch a ~ 2. to support a ~ 3. to ban; oppose; suppress a ~ 4. a civil-rights; consumer; feminist, women's; labor; mass; peace; political; radical, revolutionary; resistance; social ~ 5. a ~ against; for; towards (the ~ for equal pay) ["division of a musical composition"] 6. to perform; play a ~ (there is a fugue in the ~ that they have just played) ["military maneuver"] 7. a pincer, pincers (AE) ~ ["move"] 8. a downward; upward ~ 9. deft, dext(e)rous; graceful; rhythmic ~ 10. awkward; erratic; jerky; uncoordinated ~s 11. a ~ towards ["evacuation"] 12. a bowel ~ (to have a bowel ~)

move on *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the next town)

move up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ into, to (he has ~d up from office boy to general manager) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ through (to ~ through the ranks from private to general)

movie *n.* (esp. AE) ["film"] 1. to make, produce a ~ 2. to direct a ~ 3. to see, watch a ~ 4. (CE) a home ~ USAGE NOTE: In a theater, one *sees a movie*; on a home TV, one *watches a movie* or *sees a movie*. See also **film** 1–12

movies *n.* (AE) ["cinema"] 1. to go to the; to work in the ~ 2. silent ~ 3. at the ~ (what's on at the ~ this week?)

mower *n.* 1. to operate, work a ~ 2. a hand; power ~ (see also **lawn mower**)

much I *determiner*, *n., pronoun* 1. to make ~ of smt./smb. 2. ~ of (we did not believe ~ of what we heard; he isn't ~ of an artist) 3. ~ to + inf. (she has ~ to say; we have ~ to learn) 4. (misc.) ~ as we want to help, we are unable to USAGE NOTE: The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows – we did not believe much of what [= that which] we heard. When a noun follows, the use of *of the* limits the meaning – much sorrow is caused by drug abuse; much of the sorrow that is caused by drug abuse could be avoided.

much II *adv.* 1. ~ closer; ~ further; ~ longer; ~ shorter; ~ less interesting; ~ more interesting 2. ~ the best; ~ the worst; ~ the least interesting; ~ the most interesting (it was ~ the most interesting movie I'd seen for ages!)

muck *n.* ["mess"] (colloq.) (BE) to make a ~ of smt.

muck about *v.* (colloq.) (BE) to ~ with ("to mess around with")

mucus *n.* 1. to cough up 2. to discharge; secrete ~ 3. nasal ~

mud *n.* ["wet earth"] 1. to spatter ~ 2. ~ cakes; dries; oozes, squishes 3. a layer of ~ 4. (misc.) to spatter smb. with ~; to wallow in the ~ ["malicious charges"] 5. to sling, throw ~ at smb. (see also **sling II** 3)

muddle *n.* ["confusion"] 1. to make a ~ of smt. 2. in a ~

mufti *n.* ["civilian clothes"] in ~

mug *n.* a beer; shaving ~

mulct *v.* (D; tr.) ("to defraud") to ~ of (to ~ people of their money)

mule *n.* 1. to drive; ride a ~ 2. ~s bray 3. a team of ~s 4. (misc.) as stubborn as a ~

mull over *v.* (Q) we ~ed over whether to accept the proposal

multiplication *n.* to do ~

multiply *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ by (to ~ six by three and get 18 = to ~ three by six and get 18)

mum *adj.* 1. to keep, remain ~ 2. ~ about 3. (misc.) ~'s the word

mumble *v.* 1. (B) she ~d smt. to me 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ about (she ~d smt. (to me) about her job) 3. (L; to) she ~d (to us) that she had a new job

mumps *n.* to catch, come down with, get, go down with (BE) (the) ~

munch *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (they were ~ing on their sandwiches)

munch away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (they were ~ing away at their sandwiches)

murder *n.* ["homicide"] 1. to commit ~ 2. a brutal, cold-blooded, grisly, heinous, savage, vicious, wanton ~ 3. an attempted; premeditated; ritual ~ 4. (AE) (a) first-degree; second-degree ~ 5. mass ~ 6. multiple, serial ~s 7. a ~ takes place ["ruinous influence"] (colloq.) 8. ~ on (the rainy weather has been ~ on business) ["great hardship"] 9. it was ~ standing out in the cold ["misc."] 10. to get away with ~ (typically fig.) (he ruins everything and gets away with it – people really let him get away with ~!)

murderer *n.* a cold-blooded, vicious; mass ~

murmur I *n.* ["complaint"] 1. to let out a ~ (she didn't let out a ~) 2. without a ~ (of protest) ["abnormal sound"] (med.) 3. a heart ~ ["low noise"] 4. a gentle, low, soft ~ 5. in; with a ~ (to speak in a low ~)

murmur II *v.* 1. to ~ gently; softly 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to (he ~ed a few words to her and kept on ~ing to her) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ about (what were they ~ing about?) 4. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ into (he ~ed a few words into her ear) 5. (E) he ~ed to her to stay with him 6. (L; to) he ~ed (to her) that he wanted her to stay with him = "Please stay with me," he ~ed (to her)

muscle *n.* 1. to contract; flex, tense; move; pull, strain; relax; wrench a ~ (to flex the ~s in/of one's arm) 2. to develop one's ~s 3. bulging ~s 4. involuntary; smooth; striated; voluntary ~s 5. ~s ache; contract

muscle in *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on smb.'s territory)

muse *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, over, upon

museum *n.* 1. to go to, visit a ~ 2. an art (esp. AE; BE prefers *art gallery*); children's; ethnographic; public; science; wax ~ 3. a ~ contains, houses; displays, shows 4. at, in a ~ (to work at a ~)

mushroom I *n.* 1. to pick ~s 2. an edible ~

mushroom II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from; into, to

music *n.* 1. to compose, write ~ 2. to arrange ~ (for) (to arrange organ ~ for (the) piano) 3. to perform, play ~ 4. to put, set smt. to ~ 5. to read ~ 6. background; canned, piped; incidental; light; recorded; soft, sweet ~ 7. bluegrass; country, hillbilly; folk; western; world ~ 8. ballet; band; chamber; classical; dance; instrumental; klezmer; orchestral; organ ~ 9. funky; gospel; march, martial; modern; pop; popular; rock; sacred; serious; soul ~ 10. choral; vocal ~ 11. sheet ~ 12. a note; piece of ~ 13. (fig.) ~ to (what she said was ~ to my ears) 14. to ~ (to dance (in time) to the ~ of a big band) 15. (misc.) to face the ~ ("to accept one's punishment")

musical *n.* 1. to produce, stage a ~ 2. a Broadway ~

musical chairs *n.* to play ~

musician *n.* 1. an accomplished; natural; strolling ~ 2. a ~ performs; practices; rehearses

Muslim *n.* a Black; Shiite; Sunni ~

muslin *n.* bleached; unbleached ~

must *v.* 1. (F) we ~ go 2. (misc.) I really ~ go; you surely ~ know; they ~ have left USAGE NOTE: AE has "their coats are still here so they ~ not have left yet." BE prefers "their coats are still here so they can't have left yet."

mustache see **moustache**

mustard *n.* 1. Dijon; French; English; hot ~ 2. (misc.) (BE) as keen as ~

muster I *n.* to pass ~

muster II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into the army) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ out of ("to discharge from") (to be ~ed out of the army)

mutation *n.* 1. to induce a ~ 2. a gene, genetic; random ~

mute *adj.* to stand ~ ("to remain silent during an arraignment")

mutiny I *n.* 1. to foment, incite, stir up; organize a ~ 2. to crush, put down, quell a ~ 3. a ~ breaks out 4. a ~ against (Fletcher Christian incited the mutiny that broke out against Captain Bligh of HMS Bounty)

mutiny II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ against (the crew of HMS Bounty ~nied against Captain Bligh)

mutter *v.* 1. (B) she ~ed smt. to me 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ about (she ~ed smt. (to me) about her job) 3. (L; to) she ~ed (to me) that she might get a new job

mysterious *adj.* ~ about (~ about one's past)

mystery *n.* 1. to be, pose a ~ (her disappearance poses a real ~) 2. to clear up; solve, unravel a ~ 3. an unsolved ~ 4. a murder ~ 5. a ~ deepens (the ever-deepening mystery of/surrounding her disappearance) 6. a ~ to (it was a ~ to me) 7. (misc.) an air of ~; cloaked, shrouded, wrapped in ~; a veil of ~

mystified *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to find that her watch was gone) 2. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that her watch was gone)

mystifying *adj.* 1. ~ to 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ (to her) to find that her watch was gone) 3. ~ that + clause (it was ~ (to her) that her watch was gone)

myth *n.* 1. to create; perpetuate a ~ 2. to debunk, dispel; explode a ~ 3. a popular ~ 4. a ~ about (we dispelled the ~ about the invincibility of their army) 5. a ~ that + clause (we dispelled the ~ that their army was invincible) 6. (misc.) ~s and legends

N

nadir *n.* 1. to fall to, reach a ~ 2. at a ~ (at the ~ of their power)

nag *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (he kept ~ging at her (to buy a new car)) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (he ~ged her into buying a new car) 3. (H) he kept ~ging her to buy a new car

nail I *n.* ["to be hammered into smt."] 1. to drive, hammer a ~ (he drove a ~ into the board) 2. to remove a ~ 3. a loose ~ 4. (misc.) as hard/tough as ~s; to hit the ~ on the head ("to describe smt. succinctly and correctly") ["of fingers and toes"] 5. to cut, pare, trim; do; file; manicure; paint, polish one's ~s 6. to break, split a ~ 7. to bite; chew one's ~s 8. a fingernail; toenail ["misc."] 9. to fight tooth and ~

nail II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (she ~ed the plaque to the wall) 2. (P; tr.) she ~ed the boards together

naive *adj.* 1. ~ of (that was ~ of you) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ (of you) to trust everyone; you are ~ to trust everyone)

naked *adj.* 1. stark ~ 2. (misc.) to walk around ~

name I *n.* ["appellation"] 1. to adopt, assume, take; bear, have; go by, go under; change; use a ~ 2. to give smb. a ~ 3. to call smb. a (bad) ~; to call smb. ~s 4. to immortalize smb.'s ~ 5. to invoke God's ~ 6. to sign one's ~ 7. an assumed; code; double-barrelled (BE); legal; pen-name; personal; professional; proper; stage ~ (she took a stage ~ when she began her acting career; I asked Peregrine Chimp-Gibbon about his double-barrelled ~; Samuel Clemens adopted the pen-name (of) Mark Twain) 8. a Christian (esp. BE), first, given (AE); family; last; maiden; married; middle ~ (she still uses her middle ~; Virginia Woolf's maiden ~ was Virgina Stephen; please call me by my first ~) (see also **surname**) 9. a bad, dirty; fancy; pet ~ 10. a geographic(al) ~ 11. a brand, proprietary, trade ~ 12. a file ~ 13. a common, vernacular ("not technical") ~ 14. a ~ for (there is no ~ for such conduct!) 15. by ~ (to know smb. by ~ only) 16. in ~ (she is the chairperson in ~ only: smb. else is really in charge) 17. in smb.'s ~ (the book was charged out in your ~) 18. under a ~ (under an assumed ~; Samuel Clemens wrote under the pen-name (of) Mark Twain) ["reputation"] 19. to make a ~ (for oneself) 20. to clear one's ~ 21. to besmirch, smear smb.'s (good) ~ 22. to give smb. a bad ~ 23. a bad; big; good; great ~ (she is a big ~ in fashion and one of the greatest ~s in fashion now) ["misc."] 24. to drop ~s ("to boast of one's connections or acquaintances"); to name ~s; in the ~ of the law; who in God's ~ would do smt. like that?; what in God's ~ is that?; why not, in God's ~?; to lend one's ~ to (a good cause)

name II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ after, for (AE) (Hannah was ~d after her great-grandmother) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~d as the winner of the contest) 3. (H) (esp. AE) they ~d me to head the commission 4. (N) she was ~d (the) winner of the contest; the file that had been ~d "urgent" has now been renamed "miscellaneous"

name-calling *n.* to engage in, go in for, resort to ~

nameless *adj.* to remain ~

nanny *n.* (esp. BE) a ~ for, to (she served as a ~ to three small children)

nap *n.* 1. to have, take a ~ 2. an afternoon; morning ~

napkin *n.* 1. to fold a ~ 2. to tuck a ~ (under one's chin) 3. a cocktail; dinner; linen; paper ~ 4. a sanitary ~ (AE; BE has *sanitary towel*; CE has *sanitary pad*)

nappy (BE) see **diaper**

narcosis *n.* 1. to produce (a state of) ~ 2. (a) ~ wears off 3. under ~

narcotics *n.* to smuggle ~ (into a country)

narrate *v.* (B) she ~d her story to us

narration *n.* 1. a graphic; gripping ~ 2. (misc.) the ~ of her story to us

narrow down *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (the choice was ~ed down to a few candidates = they ~ed the choice down to a few candidates = they ~ed down the choice to a few candidates)

narrow-minded *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to say that)

nasty *adj.* 1. ~ about (they were very ~ (to everyone) about the whole incident) 2. ~ to (they were ~ to everyone) 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to go on about the whole incident)

nation *n.* 1. to build, create; establish a ~ 2. a civilized; developing; friendly; independent; industrial; peace-loving; sovereign ~ 3. belligerent, warring ~s 4. across the ~ (there were strikes across the ~) 5. (misc.) a member ~ (of the UN) (see also *nation state* at **state**; Usage Note at **tribe**)

national *n.* ["citizen"] a foreign ~

National Guard *n.* (US) to call out; federalize the ~

nationalism *n.* 1. to foster ~ 2. extreme; rampant ~

nationhood *n.* to achieve ~

native *adj.* 1. ~ to (this flower is ~ to our state) 2. (misc.) to go ~ ("to behave like the local population when in a foreign country")

natter *v.* (colloq.) (BE) (D; intr.) ("to chatter") to ~ about; to (to ~ (on) to smb. about smt.)

natural I *adj.* 1. (AE) ~ to (that comes ~ to me) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's only ~ for children to love ice cream) 3. ~ that + clause (it's perfectly ~ that children love/should love ice cream)

natural II *n.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) ["person who seems to be destined for success"] 1. a ~ for (she is a ~ for this kind of job) 2. a ~ to + inf. (she's a ~ to win the election)

nature *n.* ["character, quality"] 1. an impetuous; placid ~ 2. human ~ (it's only human ~ to want to live well) 3. second ~ (that is almost second ~ to me; it was second ~ for her to help) 4. smb.'s true ~ 5. by ~ (she is friendly by ~) 6. in (smb.'s) ~ (it was not in her ~ to complain; behavior that is friendly in ~) 7. of a certain ~ (wounds of a serious ~) ["physical universe"] 8. to harness (the forces of) ~ 9. (misc.) mother ~; a freak of ~; back to ~; let ~ take its course; to appeal to smb.'s better ~; don't stand in her way – she's like a force of ~!

naught *n.* (lit.) 1. to come to ~ 2. all for ~

naughty *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ to + inf. (it was (of them) ~ to do that = they were ~ to have done that = it was a ~ thing for them to do)

nausea *n.* 1. to bring on, cause ~ 2. to experience ~ (he experiences ~ when he rides in a car) 3. a wave of ~ (she felt a wave of ~ come over her; a wave of ~ came over her)

nauseated *adj.* 1. to become, feel ~ (he feels ~ when he rides in a car) 2. to make smb. ~

nauseating *adj.* 1. ~ to 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ (to/for us) to watch them)

nauseous *adj.* 1. to become, feel ~ 2. to make smb. ~ USAGE NOTE: Some purists still claim that *nauseous* means only "nauseating". In fact, most speakers now use it as a synonym of *nauseated*.

navigate *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ by (to ~ by the stars)

navigation *n.* celestial; electronic ~

navy *n.* 1. a merchant ~ (BE; AE has *merchant marine*) 2. the Royal Navy; the US Navy 3. in the ~ (to serve in the ~)

near *adv.* ~ to (~ to tears; we live ~ to town; ~ to the truth; she came ~ to winning the title) USAGE NOTE: When *near* is a preposition, it is not used in the collocation **near to*. Compare *close to*: the golf links are close to/near the station.

nearer, nearest *adj.*, *adv.*; *prep.* ~ to (the park is nearer to our hotel than it is to yours; which stop is nearest (to) Times Square?)

nearness *n.* ~ to

neat *adj.* ~ in (~ in one's habits)

necessary *adj.* 1. absolutely ~ 2. ~ for; to 3. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ (for us) to sleep) 4. ~ that + clause; subj. (it is ~ that we all get/should get enough sleep)

necessitate *v.* 1. (G) the promotion would ~ living abroad 2. (K) the promotion would ~ his living abroad

necessity *n.* 1. to obviate a ~ 2. an absolute, dire; military ~ 3. the bare; daily ~ties 4. a ~ arises 5. a ~ for 6. a ~ to + inf. (there is no ~ (for us) to leave so early) 7. of ~ (you will of ~ remain silent) 8. (misc.) the (bare) ~ties of life; what is a luxury for some is a ~ for others

neck I *n.* ["of body"] 1. to crane; crick one's ~ 2. to twist, wring smb.'s ~ 3. (to have) a stiff ~ 4. the back, nape of smb.'s ~ 5. (misc.) to save one's ~; it's a pain in the ~ (to go/going there); what are you doing in this ~ of the woods?; the two leading competitors are ~ and ~ ("even"); to risk one's ~ ("to risk one's life"); to break one's ~ trying to do smt. ("to make a maximum effort to get smt. done"); to stick one's ~ out ("to expose oneself to danger"); by a ~ ("by a close margin"); up to one's ~ in work ("swamped with work")

neck II *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) ("to hug and kiss") to ~ with

neckline *n.* a high; low, plunging; sweetheart ~

necktie *n.* (AE) 1. to knot, tie; put on; wear; loosen; tighten a ~ 2. a garish, loud ~ (CE has *tie*) (see also **bow tie**)

need I *n.* 1. to create a ~ 2. to feel, have a ~ 3. to fill, meet; obviate a ~ 4. to satisfy a ~ 5. to minister, tend to smb.'s ~s 6. an acute, compulsive, crying, desperate, dire, great, overriding, pressing, urgent; growing; special ~ 7. a basic, fundamental; personal; unfulfilled, unmet; universal ~ 8. a biological; emotional, psychological; physical; physiological; spiritual ~ 9. bodily; emergency; material ~s 10. a ~ arises; exists 11. a ~ for (a crying ~ for food for the refugees; there is no ~ for violence) 12. a ~ to + inf. (there was a pressing ~ to act immediately; there was no ~ for you to be violent) 13. in ~ (to live in dire ~; badly in ~) 14. in ~ of (the refugees are badly in ~ of food = the refugees are in urgent ~ of food)

need II *v.* 1. to ~ badly, desperately, sorely, urgently 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (we ~ you for this job) 3. (E) we all ~ to work; my coat badly ~s to be mended 4. (F; in neg. and occ. in interrogative sentences) she ~ not work; or: she doesn't ~ to work; ~ she go? or: does she ~ to go? 5. (G) my coat ~s mending badly 6. (H) I badly need smb. to mend my coat 7. (N; used with a past participle) I badly ~ my coat mended 8. (s; used with a past participle) (BE) (nonstandard) my coat badly ~s mended USAGE NOTE: The sentence *she needn't have gone* implies that she did go (though there was no need for her to go). The sentence *she didn't need to go* does not indicate if she went or not.

needed *adj.* badly, much ~ (to take a much-needed vacation)

needle I *n.* 1. to thread a ~ 2. a darning; hooked; knitting; sewing ~ 3. a gramophone (BE), phonograph (AE) ~ 4. an acupuncture; hypodermic ~ 5. a pine ~ 6. the eye; point; prick of a ~ 7. (misc.) a ~ in a haystack ("smt. that is impossible to find"); to mend your coat you need ~ and thread; a sensation of pins and ~s; on pins and ~s ("extremely anxious")

needle II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ about (she was ~ling him about his blunder) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (~d me into losing my temper)

needlepoint *n.* to do ~

needless *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is ~ (for you) to worry) (see also *needless to say* at **say II** *v.*)

needlework *n.* to do ~

negative *n.* ["exposed film"] 1. to develop; make a ~ ["phrase that rejects"] 2. in the ~ (to answer/reply in the ~) (see also *test negative* at **test II** *v.*) ["expression that contains negation"] 3. a double ~

neglect I *n.* 1. benign; complete, gross, total; willful ~ 2. child, parental ~ 3. a state of ~ 4. to the ~ of (he concentrated on his work to the neglect of his family)

neglect II *v.* 1. to ~ completely, totally; willfully 2. (E) she ~ed to pay the fine

neglectful *adj.* 1. completely, totally ~ 2. ~ of (he concentrated on his work and became ~ of his family)

negligence *n.* 1. contributory; criminal; gross; rank; willful ~ 2. (legal) gross; ordinary; slight ~ 3. ~ in; towards 4. through ~ (he did harm through ~ in looking after his family)

negligent *adj.* 1. grossly ~ 2. ~ about; in (he did harm through being ~ in looking after his family)

negotiate *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, over 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (we ~d with them for (the) release of the hostages; to ~ with smb. about a common border) 4. (E) we ~d with them to release the hostages 5. (misc.) to ~ from a position of strength

negotiation *n.* under ~ (the release of the hostages is still under ~)

negotiations *n.* 1. to conduct, hold; enter into, open ~ 2. to renew, resume ~ 3. to break off ~ 4. delicate; direct; exploratory, preliminary; formal; high-level, top-level; informal; marathon, round-the-clock; private, secret ~ 5. arms-control, arms-limitation; contract; diplomatic; peace ~ 6. successful ~ 7. fruitless, unsuccessful ~ 8. ~ succeed 9. ~ break down, collapse 10. ~ between, with 11. ~ for (we've opened ~ with the rebels for the release of the hostages) 12. ~ to + inf. (we've opened ~ with the rebels to release the hostages) 13. (misc.) ~ to release the hostages are deadlocked over several points; the next round of ~ will be held in the summer

negotiator *n.* a management; union ~

neighbor I neighbour *n.* 1. a next-door ~ 2. a ~ to (she was a good ~ to us) 3. (misc.) we have lots of friends and ~s here

neighbor II neighbour *v.* (esp. BE) (D; intr.) to ~ on (the USA ~s on Mexico)

neighborhood, neighbourhood *n.* 1. a friendly; good, nice, pleasant ~ 2. a changing ~ 3. a bad, rough, tough ~ 4. an ethnic; residential ~ 5. the immediate ~ (all of our friends live in the immediate ~) 6. in a ~ (we live in a nice ~) 7. in the ~ of (to earn (something/somewhere) in the ~ of $50,000 a year)

neighborly, neighbourly *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to do that)

neither *determiner, pronoun* ~ of (~ of the two; ~ of them) USAGE NOTE: The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when *two* or a pronoun follows. When a noun follows, two constructions are possible – neither student knew the answer; neither of the students knew the answer.

nelson *n.* ["type of wrestling hold"] a full; half ~

nemesis *n.* to meet one's ~

neologism *n.* to coin a ~

nerve *n.* ["assurance"] ["gall"] (colloq.) 1. to display, have ~ 2. the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to ask for another day off) ["self-confidence"] 3. to lose one's ~ ["sensitivity"] 4. a raw ~ (his remark hit a raw ~) ["band of nervous tissue"] 5. the cranial ~s

nerves *n.* ["nervousness"] 1. an attack; bundle of ~ ["mental state"] 2. to fray, frazzle smb.'s ~; to get on smb.'s ~ 3. to calm, settle, steady one's ~ 4. frayed, frazzled, jangled; steady; strong; taut; weak ~ ["misc."] 5. to have ~ of steel ("to be very strong emotionally"); my ~ are shot; a war of ~

nervous *adj.* 1. to make smb. ~ 2. ~ about, of (BE) (we were ~ about the recent reports of local violence)

nest *n.* 1. to build, make a ~ 2. (misc.) to feather one's ~ ("to enrich oneself") (see also **machine-gun nest**; **hornets' nest**)

nest egg *n.* ["money set aside as a reserve"] to accumulate; set aside a (little) ~

nestle *v.* 1. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ against, next to (the children ~d against their mother) 2. (P; intr.) the small village ~d in the green hills

nestle up *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ against, next to, to (the children ~d up against/to their mother)

net *n.* 1. to weave a ~ 2. to cast, spread a ~ (we try to spread our ~ as wide(ly) as possible to attract a wide range of customers) 3. (computers) to surf the ~ (see also **Internet**) 4. a butterfly; fishing; mosquito ~ 5. a life (AE), safety (also fig.) ~ 6. in, with a ~ (to catch fish in a ~)

netting *n.* mosquito; wire ~

nettles *n.* ~ sting

network I *n.* 1. an old-boy; old-girl ~ 2. a communications; computer; road; support ~ (after a bereavement it's important to have a support ~ of close friends) 3. (computers) a local area ~ (LAN) 4. a national ~ (of radio, TV stations) 5. over a ~ (over a national ~)

network II *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (the computers were ~ed with each other; to ~ with the right people)

neurosis *n.* mild; severe ~

neurotic *adj.* 1. mildly; severely, very ~ 2. ~ about

neutral I *adj.* ~ in (~ in a dispute)

neutral II *n.* ["position of disengaged gears"] in ~ (to run an engine while in ~)

neutrality *n.* 1. to maintain, observe ~ 2. to declare one's ~ 3. armed; strict ~

new *adj.* 1. brand ~ 2. ~ at; in (I'm ~ at this) 3. ~ to (this procedure is ~ to us)

newcomer *n.* a ~ to

news *n.* ["new information"] 1. to announce, give, report; break, spring; cover the ~ 2. to spread (the) ~ 3. to censor; control; cover up, suppress (the) ~ 4. to color, distort, twist (the) ~ 5. good, welcome, wonderful; interesting ~ (at the good ~ of her victory, everyone cheered) 6. unexpected

~ 7. earthshaking, earth-shattering, headline, sensational, shocking, startling, worldshaking ~ 8. bad, devastating, grim ~ 9. international; local; national; political ~ 10. the latest ~ (have you heard the latest ~?) 11. ~ spreads, travels 12. a bit, item, piece of ~; a ~ item 13. ~ about, of; from (~ about the earthquake; is there any news of them?; have you heard the ~ about the closure of the border?; *News from Nowhere* – William Morris, 1890) 14. the ~ that + clause (have you heard (the ~) that the border has been closed?) ["newscast"] 15. to hear, listen to; turn on; watch the ~ 16. the late; morning; nightly ~ (on TV) 17. on the ~ (we heard that item on the late ~) 18. (misc.) to make (the) ~ ("to be newsworthy")

news conference *n.* to broadcast; hold; schedule; televise a ~

newspaper *n.* 1. to edit; get out, publish, put out; print a ~ 2. to deliver ~s 3. to subscribe to a ~ 4. a local; national (esp. BE) 5. a daily; evening; morning; Sunday; weekly ~ 6. a school ~ 7. a ~ comes out, is published 8. (misc.) to make the ~s ("to be printed in the newspapers"); a ~ proprietor (BE), publisher (AE)

New Year *n.* 1. to greet, ring in, usher in the ~ 2. to wish smb. a Happy New Year by saying "Happy New Year!"

next *adj.*, *adv.* 1. (cannot stand alone) ~ to (there's a newsstand ~ to the hotel) 2. (misc.) ~ of kin; ~ in line

nibble *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at, on (the children were ~ling at pretzels; to ~ on cheese)

nibble away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at, on (the children were ~ling away at pretzels)

nice *adj.* 1. ~ about; to, with (she's very ~ to the children about their mistakes) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ just to sit and relax = it's ~ just sitting and relaxing; she is ~ to work with = it is ~ to work with her = it is ~ working with her = she is a ~ person to work with; it was ~ of you to come) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that you could come) 4. (misc.) it's ~ and hot; we have a ~ little house in the country

niche *n.* ["position"] 1. to carve out a ~ (she has carved out a ~ for herself in her field) 2. to occupy a ~ (she occupies a special ~ in her field)

nick *n.* (misc.) (just) in the ~ of time ("precisely when needed but almost too late")

nickname *v.* (N; used with a noun) he was ~d *Butch*

niggardly *adj.* (lit.) ~ in; with (a miser who's ~ with his money and ~ in tipping waiters)

niggle *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, over (to ~ over every sentence)

nigh *adv.* ["near"] 1. well-nigh (it was well-nigh midnight before we left!) 2. (old-fashioned) ~ on, onto, unto (we hadn't seen each other for/in ~ onto ten years!)

night *n.* 1. to have; spend a ~ (we had a restless ~ waiting for news; we spent the whole ~ working on the report) 2. a clear; moonlit; starlit ~ 3. a dark, murky; moonless; overcast; stormy ~ 4. a restless, sleepless ~ 5. an early; late ~ 6. a first, opening ~ (of a play) 7. a wedding ~ 8. all ~ (long) (to work all ~ long); during the ~; in the ~ (they left late in the ~); every ~; last ~; the next, the following ~; that ~; tomorrow ~; tonight; a June ~; a summer ~; on any ~; on/during the ~ of (they left on the ~ of July 26; on that ~ they were ready to leave!); on Wednesday ~ = Wednesday ~ (AE) 9. ~ falls 10. a ~ of (after a day of work, they were looking forward to a ~ of revelry!) 11. at ~ (to work at ~; late at ~) 12. by ~ (London by ~) 13. for a ~ (to put smb. up for the ~) 14. from ~ to (from ~ to ~); after ~; a ~ in; a ~ off; a ~ out; ~ and day 15. all through, throughout the ~ (to work all through the ~) 16. (misc.) to bid, wish smb. good ~; to say good ~ to smb.; (Good) Night (, everybody)!; (AE) to work ~s (to work ~s and sleep days); in the dead of (the) ~; on the ~ (BE; colloq.) ("when the time comes") (don't worry – it'll be all right on the ~!) USAGE NOTE: The collocation *at night* is typically used with verbs (she works at night) and contrasts with *during the day*. The collocation *by night* is typically used with nouns (London by night) and contrasts with *by day*. However, *at night* can also contrast with *by day*: "London at night was more obviously changed than London by day." – Pat Barker, *Life Class*, London, Hamish Hamilton, 2007, *Part One*, *Chap. Sixteen*, p. 123 (see also the Usage Note for **day**)

nightcap *n.* ["last drink of the night"] 1. to have a ~ 2. (misc.) to invite smb. in for a ~; to join smb. in a ~

nightclub *n.* at, in a ~ (to work at/in a ~)

nightfall *n.* at ~

nightingale *n.* ~s sing, warble

nightlight *n.* a ~ glows dimly

nightmare *n.* 1. to have a ~ 2. a horrible, terrible ~ 3. a ~ about

nightshift *n.* 1. to work the ~ 2. (to work) on the ~

nighttime *n.* in the ~

nip I *n.* ["stinging cold"] (there is) a ~ in the air

nip II *v.* (colloq.) (BE) (P; intr.) ("to move quickly") she ~ped out and bought some bread

nipples *n.* cracked; sore, tender ~

nitpick *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ at

nitty-gritty *n.* (colloq.) ["essence"] to get down to the ~

no *n.* ["negative response"] 1. they would not take ~ for an answer 2. to answer; say; vote No 3. a definite, emphatic, resounding ~ 4. (a) ~ to (a request) 5. (misc.) all I want is a simple Yes or No; to say No but (really) mean Yes (see also *a No vote* at **vote I** *n.*; *no way* at **way**)

noble *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to make the sacrifice)

nobody *pronoun* we had ~ to talk to = we had ~ that we could talk to

nod I *n.* ["movement of the head"] 1. to give a ~ 2. an affirmative, approving ~ 3. a ~ to (she passed on to her own work with the merest ~ to her predecessors' contributions!) 4. (misc.) a ~ of approval; (BE) the proposal was approved/passed on the ~ (without the need for a vote) ["awarding of a decision"] (usu. sports) 5. to get the ~

nod II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ at, to (when she entered the room, she ~ded (a greeting) to us) 2. (misc.) to ~ in agreement

node *n.* a lymph ~

noise *n.* 1. to make, produce (a) ~ 2. to cut (AE; colloq.), cut down (on), reduce the ~ 3. (a) background; extraneous ~ 4. (a) constant, persistent; deafening; loud; shrill; strange ~ 5. a ~ abates, dies down; increases 6. the ~ from, of 7. above, over the ~ (we could barely make ourselves heard over the ~ from/of the sound system!)

noise about, noise abroad *v.* (L) it was ~d about that she had resigned

noises *n.* ["signs, indications"] (colloq.) to make all the right ~ and send all the right signals

nominate *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~d as our candidate) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she was ~d for the presidency) 3. (H) (she was ~d to run for the presidency)

nomination *n.* 1. to place, put smb. (smb.'s name) in ~ 2. to get, win a ~ (she got our party's ~ as our candidate to run for the presidency) 3. to accept; reject a ~ 4. a ~ for; to (she got our party's ~ for the presidency; a ~ to a committee)

nominative *n.* (grammar) the ~ absolute

nonconformity *n.* ~ in; to; with

none *determiner*, *n., pronoun* ~ of (~ of them) (see also *none the worse* at **worse**) USAGE NOTES: (1) The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows. When a noun follows, the use of *of the* limits the meaning; *no* replaces *none* when the meaning is not limited – we saw none of the students whom we had discussed earlier; we drank none of the wine that you brought; we saw no students; we drank no wine. (2) Everyone says "none of the wine is good." But some people prefer "none of the students *is* good"; others (perhaps the majority) prefer "none of the students *are* good."

nonexistent *adj.* virtually ~

nonsense *n.* 1. to speak, talk ~ 2. to brook, put up with, tolerate no ~ 3. (colloq.) (AE) to cut (out) the ~ 4. arrant (lit.), complete, outright, perfect, pure, sheer, total, utter ~ 5. a load, lot of ~ 6. ~ to + inf. (it was sheer ~ to trust them) 7. (misc.) (BE) to make ~ (a) of ("to spoil") (the recession made a ~ of our plans for expansion)

nonsensical *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to trust them)

nook *n.* 1. a cozy ~ 2. a breakfast ~ 3. (misc.) every ~ and cranny

noon *n.* 1. high ~ 2. at ~ 3. from ~ (to evening)

no one *pronoun* we had ~ to talk to = we had ~ that we could talk to USAGE NOTE: Note the difference between *no one can do it* and *no one of you can do it.*

noose *n.* 1. to tighten a ~ around (they tightened the ~ around his neck) 2. a hangman's ~ 3. a ~ tightens (the ~ tightened around his neck) 4. (misc.) to put one's head into the ~ (also fig.)

noplace (AE) see **nowhere**

norm *n.* ["standard"] 1. to establish, set a ~ 2. to deviate from the ~ (his behavior deviated from the very ~ he had helped to establish!) ["average"] 3. above; below the ~

normal *adj.* 1. above; below ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it's only ~ to expect equal pay for equal work) 3. ~ that + clause (it's only ~ that we should expect equal pay for equal work) 4. (misc.) back to ~

north I *adj.*, *adv.* 1. directly, due, straight ~ 2. ~ of (~ of the city) 3. up ~ 4. (misc.) to face; go, head ~; northeast by ~; northwest by ~

north II *n.* 1. magnetic; true ~ 2. from the ~; in the ~; to the ~

northeast I *adj.*, *adv.* 1. ~ of (to be ~ of the city) 2. (misc.) to go, head ~; north by ~

northeast II *n.* from; in; to the ~

North Pole *n.* at the ~

northwest I *adj.*, *adv.* 1. ~ of (to be ~ of the city) 2. (misc.) to go, head ~; north by ~

northwest II *n.* from; in; to the ~

nose I *n.* 1. to blow; powder; wipe one's ~ 2. to pick one's ~ 3. an aquiline, Roman; bulbous; pug, snub, turned-up ~ 4. a blocked-up, stuffed-up; bloody; running, runny ~ (the child has a runny ~) 5. through the ~ (to breathe through the ~) 6. a ~ bleeds; points down; points up; runs; twitches 7. (misc.) the bridge of the ~; the traffic was ~ to tail! (BE) ("bumper to bumper"); to bury one's ~ in a book ("to become absorbed in a book"); to count ~s ("to count those present"); to cut off one's ~ to spite one's face ("to harm one's own interests"); to lead smb. by the ~ ("to order smb. around"); to pay through the ~ ("to pay an exorbitant price"); to keep one's ~ out of smb. else's business; to poke, stick one's ~ into smb. else's business; to thumb one's ~ at smb./smt. ("to defy smb./smt."); to keep one's ~ to the grindstone ("to work long and hard"); under smb.'s (very) ~ ("in smb.'s plain sight"); to turn up one's ~ at ("to sneer at"); on the ~ (AE; colloq.) ("exactly"); a ~ for scandal ("an ability to ferret out scandal"); by a ~ ("by a small margin"); to follow one's ~ ("to go straight forward"); to tweak ("pinch") smb.'s ~; to keep one's ~ clean ("to stay out of trouble"); to follow one's ~ ("to go straight ahead"); as plain as the ~ on your face (see also *look down one's nose at* at **look down**)

nose II *v.* 1. (colloq.) (D: intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into smb.'s affairs) 2. (P; intr., tr.) she ~d the car into the street

nosebleed *n.* 1. to get; have a ~ 2. to stop a ~ 3. a light; severe ~

nose dive *n.* 1. (also fig.) to go into, take a ~ (stocks took a ~) 2. to come out of, pull out of a ~

nostalgia *n.* 1. to evoke; feel ~ 2. a wave of ~ 3. ~ for (the taste of the cake evoked a wave of ~ for the past that I could not but feel)

nostrils *n.* flaring, wide ~

nosy, nosey *adj.* (colloq.) ~ about

notable *adj.* ~ for

notch *n.* ["cut"] 1. to make a ~ 2. a ~ in

notch up *v.* (esp. BE) (d; tr.) ("to score") to ~ against (our team has ~ed up seven victories against them)

note I *n.* ["memorandum"] ["record"] 1. to make a ~ of (she made a ~ of the exact time) 2. to take ~ of 3. (BE) a credit ~ (for returned merchandise; AE has *credit slip*) 4. a mental ~ (she made a mental ~ of the exact time) ["short letter"] ["official letter"] 5. to compose, write; type a ~ 6. to address; deliver a ~ 7. to drop, send smb. a ~; to get, receive; open a ~; to acknowledge; answer, reply to, respond to a ~ 8. a diplomatic; protest ~ 9. a suicide; thank-you ~ (did the deceased leave a suicide ~?) 10. a ~ from; to (what was in the ~ you got from him yesterday?) ["musical tone"] 11. to hit, strike; hold a ~ (she hit the high ~ beautifully) 12. a false ~ (also fig.) 13. a high; low ~ 14. (AE) an eighth; half; quarter; whole ~ ["characteristic feature"] 15. to strike a ~ (to strike a sour ~) 16. a festive; fresh; lighter; optimistic; positive; triumphant ~ 17. a personal ~ 18. a discordant; false; jarring; negative; pessimistic; sour; warning ~ 19. on a ~ (the meeting ended on an optimistic ~; on a lighter ~, here's a joke I've just heard) ["comment"] 20. a usage ~ (as in a dictionary) ["document relating to a debt"] 21. to discount a ~ 22. to hold a ~ 23. to call in a ~ 24. a demand; promissory; treasury ~ 25. a ~ matures ["paper money"] 26. a banknote; five-pound ~ (esp. BE: AE prefers *bill*, as in a *five-dollar bill*) ["importance"] 27. of ~ (several people of ~ were present; nothing of ~; worthy of ~) (see also **notes**)

note II *v.* 1. (L) we ~d that she was late again; please ~ that the example is on page 3 2. (Q) ~ how it is done 3. (misc.) please ~ the example on page 3

notebook *n.* a loose-leaf ~ (AE)

noted *adj.* 1. duly ~ 2. (cannot stand alone) ~ for (our city is ~ for its fine restaurants)

notes *n.* ["condensed record"] 1. to make, take ~ (on) (our students always take copious ~ on the lectures they hear) 2. (usu. fig.) to compare ~ 3. copious, detailed ~

nothing *n., pronoun* 1. to ask (for) ~ (to ask ~ in return) 2. to gain ~ by (we will gain ~ by ignoring the regulations) 3. ~ about (we know ~ about it) 4. ~ to (they are ~ to us) 5. ~ to + inf. (we have ~ to lose) 6. (misc.) to leave ~ to chance; to make ~ of being awarded an honor; we expect ~ of him; you can expect ~ from them; good for ~; ~ doing ("definitely not"); we have ~ that we can discuss; there is ~ between them; it cost next to ~; I got it for next to ~; ~ else but that blouse will do!; lovers whispering sweet ~s into each other's ears

notice I *n.* ["heed"] ["attention"] 1. to take ~ of 2. to attract; to come to ~ 3. to escape ~ 4. scant ~ (to attract scant ~) 5. ~ that + clause (it came to our ~ that she would be retiring) ["sign"] 6. to place, post, put up a ~ ["announcement"] ["notification"] 7. to bring smt. to smb.'s ~ 8. to serve ~ on 9. advance, warning ~ 10. a ~ that + clause (we read the ~ (saying) that the water would be turned off for two hours) 11. at, on (AE) a moment's, short ~ (she can be ready at a moment's ~!) 12. until further ~ ["warning of one's intention to end an agreement"] 13. to give ~ 14. to put smb. on ~ 15. a month's; week's ~ 16. (colloq.) ~ to + inf. (the landlady gave him ~ to move) 17. subject to ~ ["review"] 18. to get, have, receive; give rave ~s (the play got rave ~s from the critics = the critics gave the play rave ~s) ["mention"] 19. a brief ~ 20. a book ~

notice II *v.* 1. (esp. AE) (I) we ~d him leave the house 2. (J) we ~d him leaving the house 3. (L) we ~d that he was leaving the house 4. (Q) did you ~ where he went after leaving the house?

noticeable *adj.* 1. barely, hardly; very ~ (a hardly ~ blemish) 2. ~ to 3. ~ that + clause (it was ~ to the neighbours that he had left the house)

notification *n.* 1. to send ~ 2. to get, receive ~ 3. ~ that + clause (we read the ~ that our building had been sold) 4. pending (further) ~

notify *v.* 1. (BE) (B) to ~ a crime to the police 2. (D; tr.) to ~ about, of (we ~fied the police of the crime; she ~fied us of her acceptance of the job; we will ~ her about/of when the job begins) 3. (BE) (H) we'll ~ her to draw up a contract 4. (L; must have an object) she ~fied us that she would accept the job 5. (formal) (Q) we will ~ her when the job begins

notion *n.* 1. to entertain, have a ~ 2. to dispel a ~ 3. an abstract, concrete; foggy, hazy, vague; ludicrous; odd, strange; preconceived; widespread ~ 4. a ~ about, of (she didn't have the foggiest/slightest ~ of what I meant) 5. a ~ that + clause (we tried to dispel the ~ that benefits would be curtailed)

notoriety *n.* 1. to achieve, gain ~ 2. ~ for (~ for being corrupt) 3. ~ surrounding (the ~ surrounding the published accounts of corruption in high places)

notorious *adj.* 1. ~ as (he was ~ as an outlaw) 2. ~ for (~ for being corrupt)

nought *n.* (esp. BE) see **naught**

noun *n.* 1. to decline, inflect a ~ 2. an abstract; attributive; collective; common; compound; count; mass, uncountable; plural; predicate; proper; singular; verbal ~ 3. a feminine; masculine; neuter ~ 4. a ~ may decline; inflect

nourishment *n.* 1. to get, take ~ 2. to give ~ 3. adequate; inadequate ~ 4. ~ for

novel *n.* 1. to publish; write a ~ 2. an autobiographical; best-selling; detective, mystery; historical; prize-winning; romantic; science-fiction ~ 3.

a ~ is set; takes place 4. a ~ about (she wrote a prize-winning autobiographical ~ about coming of age that was set in the Welsh valleys) 5. (misc.) to make a ~ into a film

novelty *n.* 1. to outgrow smt.'s ~ (it soon outgrew its ~) 2. a ~ wears off (its ~ soon wore off) 3. a ~ for, to 4. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ (for us) to sleep so late)

novice *n.* 1. a rank ~ 2. a ~ at, in

now *adv.*, *n.* 1. just; right ~ 2. before; by ~ 3. for ~ (good-bye for ~ = good-bye just ~ (Scottish)) 4. from ~ on 5. until, up to ~

nowhere *adv.* 1. to get, go; lead ~ (with) ("to fail to produce a result") 2. ~ to + inf. (we had ~ to go) 3. ~ else; ~ near (we had ~ else to go; that's ~ near enough!) 4. (misc.) from, out of ~ (she came from/out of ~ to win the race); the middle of ~ ("the back of beyond")

nuance *n.* a delicate, fine, slight, subtle ~

nuclear weapons *n.* to ban; dismantle, scrap ~

nucleus *n.* ["core"] to form a ~

nude *n.* in the ~ (to pose in the ~)

nudge I *n.* 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. a little ~ 3. (misc.) a ~ in the ribs

nudge II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ into, towards (they ~d us into a compromise) 2. (H) she ~d me to finish quickly 3. (misc.) to ~ smb. in the ribs

nugget *n.* a gold ~

nuisance *n.* 1. to cause, create a ~ 2. to make a ~ of oneself (those noisy children can make a confounded ~ of themselves when I want to work!) 3. a confounded, damned, dreadful ~ (those noisy children can be a confounded ~ when you want to work!) 4. a public ~ 5. a ~ to 6. a ~ to + inf. (it was quite a ~ to move during the semester = it was quite a ~ moving during the semester) 7. a ~ that + clause (it was a real ~ that we had to move during the semester)

null *adj.* (misc.) ~ and void

numb *adj.* 1. to go ~ (my arm went completely ~) 2. ~ from; with (my arm went completely ~ from the cold/with cold)

number I *n.* ["symbol indicating quantity"] 1. to round down (esp. BE); to round off (esp. AE); to round up (esp. BE) ~s 2. to square a ~ = to raise a ~ to the second power 3. an even; odd ~ 4. a high; low ~ 5. an algebraic; binary; cardinal; complex; compound; decimal; imaginary; infinite; irrational; mass; mixed; natural; negative; ordinal; positive; prime; quantum; random; round; whole ~ ["symbol serving to identify smt."] 6. the daily; lucky; winning ~ (of a lottery) (I hope I'll draw this week's winning ~!) 7. a box ~ (as at a post office) 8. the call ~ (of a book) 9. a serial ~ (of a product; of a soldier) (don't tell them anything but your name, rank, and serial ~!) 10. a fax; telephone ~ (let me give you my fax ~ and my E-mail address) 11. a registration ~ ["quantity"] 12. to decrease, reduce; increase a ~ (to reduce the ~ of traffic accidents) 13. a considerable, goodly, large; enormous, great, untold ~; any ~ (any ~ of people have played this game and a great ~ of them have liked it!) 14. an approximate, average, round; certain; exact, precise; decreasing, falling; growing, increasing; small; total ~ 15. in ~ (few in ~) ["telephone number"] 16. to call; dial a ~ 17. an unlisted ~ (AE; BE has *an ex-directory listing/number*) ["issue"] 18. a back ~ ["single selection in a program of entertainment"] 19. the eleven o'clock ~ (the audience left humming the hit eleven o'clock ~); a (big) production ~ (also fig.) (slang) (to make a big production ~ out of smt.) ("to make a big fuss over smt.") 20. to do, perform a ~ ["misc."] 21. to do a ~ on smb. (slang) ("to bamboozle or hoodwink smb."); to carry a ~ (when adding) USAGE NOTE: Note the difference between "*a* number of people *were* present" and "*the* number of people present *was* high." (see also **numbers**)

number II *v.* 1. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ among (I ~ her among my friends) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (we ~ed the tickets from one to five hundred) 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ in (our books ~ in the thousands) 4. (S) (esp. BE) our books ~ thousands

numbers *n.* ["form of gambling"] (US) 1. to play the ~ ["large group"] 2. in ~ (there is safety in ~) ["misc."] 3. by ~ (BE), by the ~ (AE) ("done according to specific directions and typically in a mechanical way") (it's no good trying to make love by the ~!)

numeral *n.* an Arabic; Roman ~

numerous *adj.* too ~ to mention (the people who have helped me are too ~ to mention)

nuptials *n.* (formal or humorous) to officiate at, perform (the) ~

nurse I *n.* 1. a community-health (AE), public-health (AE) ~ (BE is approximately *health visitor*) 2. a community (BE), district (BE), visiting (AE) 3. a geriatric, gerontological; home-health; industrial-health, occupational-health; maternal-child health; medical-surgical; nursery; obstetric; operating-room (AE), operating-theatre/theatre (BE); pediatric; psychiatric-mental health; school; veterinary ~ 4. a graduate (AE); Licensed Practical (AE), State Enrolled (BE); practical; professional; Registered (AE), State Registered (BE) ~ 5. a general-duty; private-duty ~ 6. a charge (BE); head; supervising ~ 7. (misc.) an advanced practice ~; a ~ practitioner; a nurse-midwife; a male ~

nurse II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ back to (to ~ smb. back to health) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ through (to ~ a patient through an illness)

nursery *n.* 1. a day ~ 2. at, in a ~

nursing *n.* 1. to practice; study ~ 2. community-health, public-health ~ (AE; BE has *health-visitor service*) 3. geriatric, gerontological; home-health; industrial-health, occupational-health; maternal-child health; medical-surgical; nursery; obstetric; operating-room (AE), operating-theatre/theatre (BE); pediatric; psychiatric-mental health; school; veterinary ~ 4. practical; professional ~ 5. general-duty; holistic; primary; private-duty ~ 6. (misc.) advanced practice ~

nut *n.* 1. to crack a ~ 2. to shell ~s 3. (misc.) a hard/tough ~ to crack ("a difficult problem to deal with")

nutrients *n.* basic, essential ~

nuts *adj.* (colloq.) ["infatuated"] 1. ~ about (he's ~ about her) ["crazy"] 2. to go ~

nutshell *n.* (colloq.) ["brief form"] in a ~ (to put smt. in a ~) ("to state smt. very succinctly")

nutty *adj.* (slang) 1. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to behave like that! = you must have been ~ to behave like that!) 2. (misc.) as ~ as a fruitcake

nuzzle *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ against (the dog ~d against her)

nuzzle up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ against; to (the dog ~d up against her)

nylon *n.* 1. sheer ~ 2. a pair of ~s ("a pair of nylon stockings")

O

oaf *n.* a clumsy; stupid ~

oar *n.* to feather; peak; pull on; ship ~s

oath *n.* ["solemn promise; solemn promise to tell the truth"] 1. to administer an ~ to smb. 2. to put smb. under ~ 3. to swear, take an ~ (of office) 4. to break, violate an ~ 5. a sacred, solemn ~ 6. a loyalty ~ 7. an ~ to + inf. (she took an ~ to do her duty) 8. an ~ that + clause (she took an ~ that she would do her duty) 9. on (BE), under ~ (to testify under ~ to tell the truth) 10. (misc.) to take the Hippocratic ~ ["swearword"] 11. to mutter, utter an ~ 12. a mild; strong ~ 13. a string of ~s

oatmeal *n.* ["porridge"] (esp. AE) 1. to cook, make, prepare ~ 2. a bowl of ~

oats *n.* porridge ~ (BE) ("oats used for oatmeal/porridge") (see also **wild oats**) USAGE NOTE: In AE, oatmeal can be eaten raw or cooked. In BE, (porridge) oats can be eaten raw or cooked into porridge.

obedience *n.* 1. to demand, exact ~ from 2. to instill ~ in 3. to pledge, swear ~ to 4. blind, strict, unquestioning ~ 5. ~ to

obedient *adj.* ~ to

obeisance *n.* (formal) ["curtsy"] ["bow"] 1. to make (an) ~ (to) 2. a deep ~

obituary *n.* 1. to send in; write an ~ 2. to print, publish an ~ 3. an ~ for 4. (misc.) to read the ~ries

object I *n.* 1. an immovable; inanimate; material, physical; solid ~ (what happens when an irresistible force meets an immovable ~?) 2. a sex ~ 3. (grammar) a direct; indirect ~ 4. (misc.) an ~ of derision; an unidentified flying ~ (= UFO) (see **UFO**)

object II *v.* 1. to ~ strenuously, strongly, violently 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ strongly to new taxes) 3. (L; to) she ~ed (to us) that the new taxes were too high

objection *n.* 1. to have; lodge, make, raise an ~ (we lodged our ~s with the relevant authority; they made their ~s to the relevant authority) 2. to brush aside; deal with, meet an ~ 3. to overrule; sustain an ~ 4. to withdraw an ~ 5. a valid ~ 6. a serious, strenuous, strong, violent, vociferous ~; conscientious ~ (to military service) 7. (legal) ~ overruled!; ~ sustained! 8. an ~ against, to (to raise an ~ to a proposal; we have no ~s to your going) 9. an ~ that + clause (the judge overruled their ~ that illegal evidence had been introduced) 10. over smb.'s ~s (the resolution was adopted over the vociferous ~s of the opposition)

objectionable *adj.* ~ to

objective *n.* 1. to achieve, attain, gain, meet, an ~ 2. to formulate, set, state an ~ 3. (mil.) to take an ~ 4. a major, primary; realistic; worthy ~ 5. an economic; military; political ~ 6. a long-range; short-range ~ 7. the ultimate ~

objectivity *n.* in all ~

objector *n.* a conscientious ~ (to military service)

obligate *v.* (H) what does the agreement ~ us to do?

obligated *adj.* 1. ~ to (I'm ~ to you) 2. ~ to + inf. (what are we ~ to by the agreement?)

obligation *n.* 1. to assume, take on an ~ 2. to feel an ~ 3. to discharge, fulfill, meet an ~ 4. to default on an ~ 5. a contractual; family; legal; moral; social; solemn ~ 6. a military ~ ("required military service") 7. an ~ to (an ~ to one's parents) 8. an ~ to + inf. (we have an ~ to help them) 9. under (an) ~ (she was under no ~ to help them) 10. without ~ (you can take advantage of our free offer without any further ~!)

obligatory *adj.* 1. ~ for (doing his duty is ~ for a soldier) 2. (formal) ~ on, upon (doing his duty is ~ on a soldier) 3. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ for a soldier to do his duty)

oblige *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ by (would you ~ me by not smoking?) 2. (H) what does the agreement ~ us to do?

obliged *adj.* 1. ~ to (I'm much ~ to you for not smoking!) 2. ~ to + inf. (what are we ~ to (do) by the agreement?)

obliterate *v.* 1. to ~ completely, entirely, totally, utterly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from

oblivion *n.* 1. to fall, sink into ~ 2. consigned to ~

oblivious *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ of, to (~ of one's surroundings; she was ~ to what was going on)

obnoxious *adj.* 1. ~ to 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to do that)

oboe *n.* to play the ~

obscene *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ for the abuse of women to be tolerated in many parts of the world) 2. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that the abuse of women is still/should still be tolerated in many parts of the world)

obscenity *n.* 1. to shout ~ties 2. (misc.) the ~ of tolerating the abuse of women in many parts of the world

obscure *adj.* ~ to (the meaning was ~ to me)

obscurity *n.* 1. to emerge from ~ 2. to sink into ~ and remain in ~

observance *n.* 1. a religious ~ 2. solemn, strict ~ (of the rules) 3. in ~ (of a holiday)

observant *adj.* ~ of (strictly ~ of the rules)

observation *n.* ["comment"] 1. to make an ~ 2. an astute, keen, penetrating, shrewd ~ 3. a personal ~ 4. an ~ about, on 5. an ~ that + clause (she made the astute ~ (to us) that the whole matter had been exaggerated) ["condition of being observed"] 6. to keep; place smb. under ~ 7. close ~ 8. to be under ~ (they were kept under close ~ for any problems that might develop) ["act of observing"] 9. to make ~s 10. (an) empirical; scientific ~ 11. (misc.) powers of ~ (Sherlock Holmes's remarkable powers of ~)

observe *v.* 1. to ~ attentively, carefully, closely 2. (I) we ~d them enter the building = they were ~d to enter the building 3. (J) we ~d them entering the building 4. (L ; to) ("to comment") she astutely ~d (to us) that the whole matter had been exaggerated = "the whole matter has been exaggerated," she astutely ~d (to us) 5. (Q) we ~d how they had entered the building

observer *n.* 1. a casual ; impartial ; keen, perceptive ; outside ; participant ; shrewd ; skilled ~ 2. a military ~ 3. a team of ~s

obsess *v.* (D ; intr.) (colloq.) to ~ about, over (don't ~ about your appearance)

obsessed *adj.* ~ by, with (~ by greed ; ~ with one's appearance)

obsession *n.* an ~ about, with (an ~ about/with one's appearance)

obsolescence *n.* built-in ; planned ~

obstacle *n.* 1. to constitute, pose, present, represent an ~ 2. to place, put an ~ in the way of smb. 3. to come across, confront, encounter an ~ 4. to clear, overcome, surmount an ~ 5. (of a horse) to take an ~ 6. to remove an ~ 7. a formidable, great, huge ; insurmountable ~ 8. an artificial ; natural ~ 9. an ~ to (an ~ to progress)

obstinate *adj.* ~ about ; in

obstruction *n.* 1. to remove an ~ 2. an intestinal ; respiratory ~ 3. an ~ to

obtrude *v.* (formal) (d ; intr.) ("to intrude") to ~ on, upon

obvious I *adj.* 1. ~ from ; to 2. ~ that + clause (from the vote so far, it is ~ to us all that she will be elected)

obvious II *n.* to state the ~

occasion I *n.* ["opportunity"] 1. to have ; take an ~ (to do smt.) 2. a propitious, suitable ~ 3. an ~ for 4. an ~ to + inf. (I had no ~ to speak with them ; there was no ~ for me to tell her) 5. an ~ arises ["happening"] ["event"] 6. to celebrate ; mark, observe an ~ 7. a festive, gala ; happy, joyful, joyous ~ 8. an auspicious ; fitting ; special ~ 9. a memorable ; momentous ; unforgettable ~ 10. an official ; state ~ 11. a sober ; solemn ~ 12. on an ~ (on this ~ ; on numerous ~s ; on many similar previous ~s) ["challenge"] 13. to rise to the ~ ["reason"] 14. an ~ for (there is no ~ for alarm) ["misc."] 15. on ~ ("sometimes") (see also *a sense of occasion* at **sense I** *n.*)

occasion II *v.* (rare) (O ; can be used with one object) your actions have ~ed (us) a great deal of expense

Occident *n.* in the ~

occlusion *n.* a coronary ~

occupation *n.* ["profession"] 1. to have an ~ 2. a hazardous ; profitable, rewarding ~ 3. by ~ (she is a waitress by ~) ["act of occupying"] 4. a military ~ 5. under ~ 6. (misc.) a zone of ~

occupied *adj.* 1. deeply ; exclusively, solely ~ 2. ~ in ; with (they are ~ in dealing with their own concerns ; they are ~ with their own concerns)

occupy *v.* (d ; refl., tr.) to ~ with (she ~pied them with minor chores ; they ~pied themselves with their own concerns)

occur *v.* (d ; intr.) ("to come to mind") to ~ to (an idea ~red to her ; it never ~red to me to ask ; it suddenly ~red to me that we could ask her for help)

occurrence *n.* a common, daily, everyday, regular, usual ; frequent ; infrequent ; rare, unusual ~

ocean *n.* 1. to cross the ~ (by ship) 2. across the ~ (to fly across the ~) 3. in the ~ 4. (misc.) a drop in the ~ (BE : AE has "a drop in the bucket")

o'clock *adv.* at (ten) ~

odd *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (how ~ of her to have done that !) 3. ~ that + clause (how ~ that she did/should have done that !)

odds *n.* ["allowance designed to equalize a bettor's chances"] 1. to give, lay ~ (he laid me (~ of) two to one that it would not rain) 2. to accept, take ~ 3. to buck ("oppose") the ~ ["disadvantages"] 4. to beat the ~ 5. considerable, formidable, great, heavy, hopeless, insurmountable, long, overwhelming ~ 6. ~ against (all the ~ were against David and in favor of Goliath) 7. against ~ (to struggle against formidable ~ ; David succeeded against all (the) ~) ["advantages"] 8. ~ in favor of (all the ~ were in Goliath's favor and against David = all the ~ were in favor of Goliath and against David) ["disagreement"] 9. at ~ about, over ; with (we were at ~s with the government about/over taxation) ["possibility"] 10. the ~ that + clause (what were the ~ that David would beat Goliath ?) ["misc."] 11. by all ~ ("without question")

ode *n.* 1. to compose an ~ 2. an ~ to (an ~ to joy)

odious *adj.* ~ to

odometer *n.* (AE) to turn back an ~ (BE has *mileometer*)

odor, odour *n.* ["smell"] 1. to emit, exude, give off, have, produce an ~ 2. to perceive ; recognize an ~ 3. a good ; pleasant ~ 4. a faint, slight ~ 5. a heavy ; persistent ; pungent, strong ~ 6. a bad, disagreeable, fetid, foul, rank, unpleasant ; musty ~ 7. an ~ emanates from 8. an ~ permeates smt. (an unpleasant ~ permeated the entire room) 9. an ~ of (the unpleasant ~ of rotting flesh) ["repute"] (BE) 10. in bad ; good ~ (with)

off *adv.* ["situated, esp. with respect to money"] 1. badly, poorly ; worse ~ 2. better ; comfortably ; well ~ ["not exact"] 3. far, way ~ 4. ~ in (he's way ~ in his calculations) 5. ~ out (BE) ("where's the wife ?" "she's ~ out (somewhere)") ["misc."] 6. to have, take a day ~ ("to have, take a day free from work") USAGE NOTE : Since *off* is also a preposition, one can say : to have, take a day off work.

off-balance *adj.*, *adv.* caught ~

offend *v.* 1. to ~ deeply, gravely, terribly 2. (D ; intr.) to ~ against (to ~ against common decency/public morals) 3. (R) it ~ed me deeply that you did not come

offender *n.* a chronic ; first ; juvenile, young ; sex ~

offense, offence *n.* ["infraction"] 1. to commit an ~

2. a first; minor, petty, trivial ~ 3. a serious ~ 4. a capital; civil; criminal; impeachable; indictable ~ 5. an ~ against (an ~ against common decency/public morals) ["feeling of outrage"] 6. to take ~ at (she takes ~ at every remark) ["insult"] (formal) 7. to cause, give ~ 8. an ~ to

offensive I *adj.* 1. ~ to (his actions were ~ to everyone) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to read such things in the newspaper)

offensive II *n.* 1. to assume, go on, go over to, start (up), take the ~ 2. to launch, mount an ~ 3. to carry out, conduct, undertake an ~ 4. to break off an ~ 5. an all-out; economic; military; peace ~ 6. (usu. mil.) an air; ground; full-scale ~ (their forces launched a full-scale ground ~) 7. an ~ against (they mounted an economic ~ against the neighboring countries) 8. on the ~ (the candidate went on the ~)

offer I *n.* 1. to make an ~ (she made me an attractive ~ I couldn't refuse) 2. to consider an ~ (I considered ~s of employment from several firms) 3. to accept, agree to an ~ 4. to decline, refuse, reject, spurn, turn down an ~ 5. to withdraw an ~ 6. an attractive, generous; firm; kind; reasonable; tempting ~ (her kind ~ of help was accepted gratefully) 7. a tentative ~ 8. an introductory; job; trial ~ 9. an ~ to + inf. (her kind ~ to help was accepted gratefully) 10. (BE) on ~ ("available")

offer II *v.* 1. (A) she ~ed the job to me; or: she ~ed me the job 2. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ as (the money was ~ed (me/to me) as an inducement) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ a reward for information; we ~ed them one hundred thousand dollars for the house) 4. (E) she kindly ~ed to help

offering *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. a burnt; peace; sacrificial; votive ~ 3. an ~ to

offer up *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ smt. as a sacrifice = to ~ smt. up as a sacrifice) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (they ~ed up the child for adoption = they ~ed the child up for adoption) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ prayers to God = to ~ prayers up to God)

office *n.* ["function"] 1. to assume (an) ~ 2. to seek (public) ~ 3. (pol.) to run for (esp. AE), stand for (BE) ~ 4. to hold; take ~ 5. to resign from (an) ~ 6. (pol.) (an) appointive; elective; high; public ~ 7. (pol.) in; out of ~ (our party is out of ~) 8. a term of ~ 9. (misc.) smb.'s good ~s ("smb.'s services as a mediator") (the deal was arranged through the good ~s of the Minister responsible) ["ministry"] (BE) 10. the Foreign (and Commonwealth); Home ~ ["place where a function is performed"] 11. to open; set up an ~ 12. to lease; rent an ~ 13. to manage, run an ~ 14. a branch; head, home, main ~ 15. a booking; box, ticket ~ 16. a business; dentist's (AE); doctor's (AE); lawyer's ~ 17. a left-luggage (BE); lost-and-found (AE), lost property (BE) ~ 18. a customs; dead-letter; Met (BE), Meteorological (BE); patent; post; registry (BE) ~ 19. at, in an ~ (she works at our ~) USAGE NOTE: In North America, doctors and dentists have *offices*; in Great Britain, they have *surgeries*. (See also *office-holder* at **holder**)

office hours *n.* 1. to have, keep ~ 2. after; during; (BE) out of, outside ~

officer *n.* ["person holding a certain rank in the armed forces"] 1. to commission an ~ 2. to promote an ~ 3. to break, demote; cashier, dismiss an ~ 4. a commissioned; non-commissioned; petty; warrant ~ 5. a company-grade (AE); field-grade (AE); junior ~ 6. a commanding; flag; general; high-ranking; ranking; senior; superior; top-ranking ~ (which military unit does a general ~ command?) 7. a line; staff ~ 8. an air-force; army; military; naval ~ 9. a duty; executive; gunnery; intelligence; liaison ~ 10. ~ of the day; ~ of the deck ["person holding a position of authority"] 11. a case; correctional (AE); court; juvenile (AE); law-enforcement; peace; probation; truant (AE) ~ (see also **police officer**) 12. a customs; revenue (BE) ~ 13. a health; medical; senior nursing (BE) ~ 14. an executive; personnel; public-relations ~ 15. (misc.) a chief executive ~ (CEO); to install newly elected ~s; (GB) a returning ~ (at an election); an ~ of the law; please don't arrest us, Officer (Krupke)!

official *n.* 1. a high, high-ranking, senior, top-ranking; responsible ~ 2. an appointed; elected ~ 3. a church; public ~ 4. a city; county; federal (US); government; local; state ~ 5. a customs; health; law-enforcement, police; postal; union ~ 6. (misc.) to bribe an ~

officiate *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ as (she ~d as the chairperson) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at a ceremony)

offing *n.* in the ~ ("forthcoming")

off-putting *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. to find smt. ~ (I find it very ~ to be lied to = I find it very ~ when smb. lies to me)

offspring *n.* to produce ~

ogle *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ at

oik *n.* (BE) (slang) (derog.) a jumped-up ~

oil *n.* ["petroleum"] 1. to drill for; hit, strike ~ 2. to pump ~ 3. to produce; refine ~ 4. crude; refined ~ 5. offshore ~ 6. ~ gushes from a well ["lubricant"] 7. to change; check the ~ 8. household; linseed; lubricating; machine; motor ~ ["fatty liquid"] 9. canola (esp. US); coconut; cooking; corn; cottonseed; olive; palm; peanut; safflower; salad; sesame (-seed); salad; sunflower; vegetable ~ (pour/drizzle a little olive ~ over everything and fry it in ~) 10. castor; cod-liver; mineral; suntan ~ 11. a film of ~ ["misc."] 12. to burn the midnight ~ (colloq.) ("to work or study until very late at night"); ~ and water do not mix (see also **oils**)

oils *n.* to paint in ~

ointment *n.* 1. to apply, put on, rub in, rub on (an) ~ 2. a soothing ~ 3. a skin ~ 4. a tube of ~ 5. (misc.) a fly in the ~ ("smt. that irritates or causes harm")

OK I *adj.*, *adv.* (colloq.) 1. to do; go ~ (the exam went ~ and I think I did ~ on it) 2. ~ by, for; with (is that ~ with you ? is that ~ for you ?) 3. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to bring your lunch with you)

OK II *n.* (colloq.) ["approval"] 1. to give one's ~ 2. to get the ~ 3. the ~ to + inf. (we got the ~ to bring our lunch with us)

old *adj.* (misc.) how ~ is she ? ; she's ten years ~ ; to grow ~ gracefully ; any ~ thing ; good ~ ; poor ~ ; same ~ (good ~ dad has to put up with poor ~ mom complaining of the same ~ arthritis year after year !) ; she looks (too) ~ to be his daughter ; in fact, she looks ~ enough to be his mother !

old age *n.* 1. to live to, reach a ripe ~ 2. to spend one's ~ (she spent her ~ learning new skills) 3. extreme ; ripe ~ 4. in ~ (in her ~ she took up painting)

old hand *n.* 1. an ~ at (she's an ~ at politics) 2. an ~ of a certain type (he's an old China hand who lived out East for many years)

O-levels *n.* ["ordinary-level secondary school examinations"] (GB) 1. to do, sit, take (one's) ~ 2. in one's ~ (to do well in one's French and German ~) 3. ~ in (to have ~ in French and German) USAGE NOTE : O-levels have been largely replaced by GCSEs.

olive branch *n.* ["symbol of peace"] 1. to extend, hold out, offer the ~ 2. to accept ; decline, reject the ~

omelet, omelette *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. a cheese, cheesy ; mushroom ; plain ; Spanish ; Western ~

omen *n.* 1. a bad ; good ~ 2. an ~ for (we took the rain as a good ~ for the harvest)

omission *n.* 1. to correct, rectify an ~ 2. a glaring ~ 3. an ~ from (an ~ from a list)

omit *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ from (she ~ted his name from the list) 2. (E) (esp. BE) he ~ted to explain why he had been late

on *prep.*, *adv.* 1. to have smt. ~ smb. ("to have evidence against smb.") 2. the fire went out ~ me ("the fire went out through no fault of mine") 3. we were ~ to what was happening ("we were aware of what was happening") 4. well ~ in years ("rather old") 5. (misc.) (the) drinks are ~ me ("I will pay for the drinks") (see also *drinks are on the house* at **house**)

once *adv.* 1. at ~ 2. ~ again, more 3. (misc.) ~ upon a time

once-over *n.* (colloq.) ["a look"] to give smb. / smt. the ~ (lightly)

one *pronoun* 1. ~ by ~ 2. ~ of (~ of them ; ~ of the students) USAGE NOTE : CE has "one must do one's best to make people respect one." AE prefers "one must do his best to make people respect him."

online, on line *adv.* ["linked by computer"] 1. to be ~ 2. to get, go ~ 3. to communicate ~

only *adv.*, *adj.* (misc.) not ~ (¬but / but also¬) USAGE NOTE : *Only adv.* has a unique syntactic property that can be seen by considering the following example and its transformations : (1) "With this he did not merely gain control of himself ; he gained control over everything." – Philip K. Dick, "The Electric Ant" (1969) = (2) with this he did not just gain control of himself ; he gained control over everything.= (3) ? with this he did not only gain control of himself ; he gained control over everything. = (4) with this he not only gained control of himself ; (¬but / but also¬) he gained control over everything. = (5) with this he not only gained control of himself ¬but / but also¬ gained control over everything. The replacement of "did not X gain" by "not X gained" is possible when X = *only* but not when X = *merely* or *just*. In fact, some people actually consider (3) wrong by contrast with (4) or (5) ! However, if an inverted word-order is used this property of *only adv* vanishes and it functions like *merely* : with this not only / merely / *just did he gain control of himself … The adverb *just* cannot be used in that way.

onslaught *n.* 1. to face ; resist an ~ 2. an enemy ; sudden ~

onus *n.* 1. the ~ is on smb. to do smt. (the ~ is on you to get the job done) 2. the ~ lies, rests with smb. (the ~ of proof lies with the police) 3. to put the ~ on smb.

ooze *v.* 1. (d ; intr.) to ~ from, out of ; into (blood was ~ing from the wound) 2. (d ; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with charm)

open I *adj.* 1. wide ~ (he threw the door wide ~ and strode into the house) 2. ~ about ; for (~ about one's awful childhood ; ~ for business) 3. (cannot stand alone) ~ to (~ to the public ; I'm ~ to suggestions ; a system ~ to abuse) 4. (misc.) to lay oneself ~ to criticism ; the system lays itself ~ to abuse

open II *n.* 1. in, into the ~ (to bring smt. out into the ~) 2. (misc.) it is all out in the ~ now ("everything has been revealed")

open III *v.* 1. (D ; intr., tr.) to ~ by, with (we ~ed our meeting by singing a song ; we ~ed our meeting with a song) 2. (D ; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ new land for development) 3. (d ; intr.) to ~ into, onto, to (the gate ~s into the garden ; to ~ onto the terrace ; the door ~s to the street ; the government has ~ed the files to the public) 4. (D ; tr.) to ~ to (they ~ed their meetings to the public) 5. (N ; used with an adjective) ~ your mouth wide 6. (misc.) does the door ~ in or out ? ; ~ your books at / to (AE) page three

opener *n.* ["device that opens"] 1. a bottle ; can (AE), tin (BE) ~ 2. a letter ~ (AE ; BE has *paper knife*)

open house *n.* to have, hold, keep (an) ~

opening *n.* ["vacancy"] 1. an ~ for (we have an ~ for an engineer) ["putting into operation"] 2. a grand ~ (the grand ~ of a new supermarket)

open up *v.* (D ; intr., tr.) to ~ to (the government has ~ed up the files to the public ; he finally ~ed up to the press)

opera *n.* 1. to perform, stage an ~ 2. (a) comic ; grand ; light ~ 3. a soap ~ (now called typically just *a soap*) 4. a horse ~ ("western film") 5. at the ~ (*A Night at the Opera* – the Marx Brothers, 1935)

operate *v.* 1. (d ; intr.) to ~ against (the enemy troops were ~ing against our guerrillas) 2. (med.) (D; intr.) to ~ for; on (the surgeon ~d on her for appendicitis = she was ~d on for appendicitis)

operation *n.* ["surgical procedure"] 1. to perform an ~ 2. to have, undergo an ~ 3. to come through, go through, survive an ~ 4. a delicate; emergency; exploratory; major; minor ~ 5. an ~ for; on (an ~ for the removal of gallstones) ["military or police activity"] 6. to conduct; launch, mount, undertake an ~ 7. covert; guerrilla; joint; large-scale; mine-sweeping; mopping-up ~s ["state of being functional"] 8. to put into ~ (the plant has been put into ~) 9. in ~ (the factory is in ~) ["project"] 10. a cloak-and-dagger, covert, secret; rescue ~ ["misc."] 11. during an ~ (there were no complications during the ~) (see also **operations**)

operations *n.* 1. to conduct ~ 2. combined, joint; drilling; military; mining; mopping-up; naval; offensive; salvage ~ 3. (mil.) a theater of ~ 4. during the ~ (there were no complications during the ~)

operator *n.* 1. a computer; crane; elevator (AE: BE has *liftman*); ham, radio; machine (AE); radar; switchboard; telephone; tour ~ 2. (colloq.) a slick, smooth ~

opine *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, on (he'll ~ for hours on just about anything!) 2. (L; to) he ~d (to us) that things were better in the old days

opinion *n.* 1. to air, express, give, offer, pass, state, venture, voice an ~ 2. to form an ~ about (I still have not formed an ~ about the candidates) 3. to mold (public) ~ 4. to entertain, have, hold an ~ 5. (legal) (AE) to hand down an ~ (the court handed down an ~ on the case) 6. to ask for, seek smb.'s ~ 7. a candid, frank, honest ~ 8. a considered; informed; objective; strong ~ (she has strong ~s about everything) 9. a personal; prevailing, prevalent ~ 10. a negative; positive ~ 11. a contrary, dissenting; opposing ~ 12. a high; low ~ of (he has a high ~ of himself) 13. (an) expert; lay; legal; medical ~ 14. political; popular ~ (see also **public opinion**) 15. a second ~ (as given by a doctor) (to ask for and get a second ~ from a specialist before making a decision) 16. shades of ~ 17. an ~ about, on 18. the ~ that + clause (she expressed her ~ that a compromise would be reached) 19. in smb.'s ~ (in my humble ~) 20. of an ~ (she is of the ~ that nothing will help) 21. (misc.) a clash of ~s; a difference of ~; a matter of ~ (it's a matter of ~ whether the drug is effective); ~s differ ¬about/as to¬ whether the drug is effective

opponent *n.* 1. a formidable, strong; weak ~ 2. (ironic) my worthy ~

opportunity *n.* 1. to grab, seize, take an ~ 2. to afford, give, offer an ~ 3. to find; have an ~ 4. to lose, miss; pass up an ~ 5. a fleeting; lost, missed ~ 6. a golden, once-in-a-lifetime; great ~ 7. ample ~ 8. (an) equal ~ ("government policy of giving all citizens an equal chance") 9. (an) ~ arises 10. an ~ for (they had a once-in-a-lifetime ~ for a visit to Europe) 11. an ~ to + inf. (they had a once-in-a-lifetime ~ to visit Europe) 12. at the first available ~; at smb.'s earliest ~ 13. (misc.) ~ knocks ("appears"); a window of ~ USAGE NOTE: The US has *equal-opportunity employers*. The UK has *equal-opportunities employers*.

oppose *v.* 1. to ~ adamantly, bitterly, implacably, resolutely, strongly, vehemently, vigorously 2. (G) they ~d dropping out of college 3. (K) they ~d his dropping out of college

opposed *adj.* 1. adamantly, implacably; diametrically; ideologically; strongly, vehemently ~ 2. ~ to (they are adamantly ~ to his dropping out of college)

opposite I *adj.* (BE) ~ to USAGE NOTE: When *opposite* means 'facing,' it can be an adjective in BE – her house is opposite to ours. More typically, *opposite* is used as a preposition in both BE and AE – her house is opposite ours. When *opposite* means "diametrically opposed", it is used only in BE as an adjective – her opinions are opposite to ours.

opposite II *n.* 1. a direct, exact, polar ~ 2. an ~ of, to (her opinions are the exact ~ of ours = her opinions are exactly the ~ of ours) 3. (misc.) ~s attract

opposition *n.* 1. to arouse, give rise to, stir up ~ 2. to offer, put up ~ 3. to crush, overcome, overpower, smash, wear down ~ 4. to come across, encounter, face, meet, meet with, run into, run up against ~ 5. to brook no ~ 6. (ling.) to neutralize an ~ 7. bitter, determined, fierce, stiff, strong, stubborn, unbending, unyielding, vehement ~ 8. growing, mounting; sporadic; token ~ 9. ~ hardens, stiffens; crumbles; wanes, weakens 10. ~ to (~ to new taxes) 11. against, despite, in spite of, over (the) ~ (we adopted the resolution over the ~ of the other party) 12. in ~ to

oppression *n.* under ~ (to live/suffer under (the yoke of) ~)

opt *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (they decided to ~ for the company pension plan) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ out of (to ~ out of the conflict; they decided to ~ out of the company pension plan) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ into (esp. BE) (they decided to ~ into the company pension scheme) 4. (E) they ~ed to decline the invitation

optimism *n.* 1. to display, radiate, show; express ~ 2. cautious, guarded; eternal, incurable, inveterate, unflagging ~ 3. ~ about, at, over (we expressed ~ about the eventual results)

optimist *n.* an eternal, incurable, inveterate ~

optimistic *adj.* 1. cautiously, guardedly; incurably ~ 2. ~ about, at, over (we are ~ about the eventual results) 3. ~ that + clause (we are ~ that the results will be favorable)

option *n.* 1. to exercise an ~ 2. to give; take an ~ on (they gave me the ~ of joining them or not joining them) 3. an exclusive; feasible, viable; first ~ (CE; BE also has *first refusal*) 4. (AE) a local ~ (of a political subdivision) 5. a share; stock ~ 6. an ~ on (they took an ~ on the shares) 7. an ~ to + inf. (they had an ~ to buy the shares) 8. (misc.) to have no ~ but to…; to keep one's ~s open

oracle *n.* ["authority"] to consult an ~

orange *n.* 1. to peel; squeeze an ~ 2. a mandarin; navel ~ 3. a segment of an ~ = an ~ segment (see also *orange juice* at **juice**; *orange peel* at **peel**)

oration *n.* 1. to deliver an ~ 2. a funeral ~

oratory *n.* 1. eloquent, persuasive, powerful ~ 2. inflammatory; rabble-rousing ~ 3. campaign ~

orbit *n.* 1. to make an ~ around, of, round (the spaceship made five ~s of the moon) 2. to be in; go into ~ 3. a geostationary ~ 4. in; into ~ (to put a satellite into ~)

orchard *n.* an apple; cherry; peach ~ (compare **grove**)

orchestra *n.* 1. to conduct, direct (esp. AE), lead (esp. AE) an ~ 2. a chamber; dance; philharmonic, symphony; pops; string ~ 3. an ~ performs, plays; tunes up 4. an ~ under (the Berlin Philharmonic Orchestra under (the baton of) Wilhelm Furtwängler) USAGE NOTE: The chief of the first violins in an orchestra is called the *concertmaster* in AE and the *leader* in BE. In AE, *leader* sometimes means 'conductor.'

ordain *v.* 1. (D; tr.) he was ~ed as a priest 2. (D; tr.) he was ~ed to the priesthood 3. (L; subj.) (formal) the emperor ~ed that all foreigners be/should be expelled 4. (N; used with a noun) he was ~ed (a) priest

ordeal *n.* 1. to go through, undergo; survive an ~ 2. a dreadful, terrible, terrifying, trying ~ 3. (an) ~ by fire; water 4. (misc.) fortunately I was spared the ~ of having to listen to any more boring speeches!

order I *n.* ["request for goods or services"] 1. to give, place, put in an ~ 2. to make out, write out an ~ 3. to fill; receive, take an ~ (has the waiter taken your ~?) 4. to cancel an ~ 5. a back; mail; prepublication; rush; shipping; standing ~ 6. a side (in a restaurant) ~ (a hamburger with a side ~ of fries) 7. (new) ~s are falling off; are picking up 8. on ~ (the merchandise is on ~) 9. to ~ (made to ~) 10. (misc.) a tall ~ to fill ("a difficult task to carry out") ["command"] 11. to give, hand down (AE), issue an ~ 12. to carry out, execute; obey, take an ~ 13. to cancel, countermand, rescind, revoke; violate an ~ 14. a direct; executive; preservation (BE); specific ~ (see also *slap a preservation order on* at **slap II** *v.*) 15. doctor's; marching; sealed; standing; verbal; written ~s 16. an ~ to + inf. (we received an ~ to attack) 17. an ~ that + clause; subj. (headquarters issued an ~ that the attack be/should be resumed) 18. at, by, on smb.'s ~ (by whose ~ was this done?; these premises have been closed by ~ (of some authority)) 19. under ~s (we were under ~s to remain indoors) ["court decree"] 20. to issue an ~ 21. an affiliation (BE); cease-and-desist; court; deportation; gag; maintenance (BE), support (AE); restraining ~ ["association, group"] 22. a cloistered; Masonic; mendicant; monastic; religious; secret ~ ["system"] 23. an economic; pecking; social ~ (he's at the bottom of the pecking ~) ["proper procedure"] 24. (a) point of ~ 25. in ~; out of ~ (the senator was out of ~) 26. to call a meeting to ~ ("to begin a meeting"; "to reestablish proper procedure at a meeting") ["state of peace"] 27. to establish; keep, maintain; restore ~ 28. good; public ~ (see also **law and order**) ["state in which everything is in its proper place or condition"] 29. to put smt. in/into ~ 30. apple-pie, good, shipshape ~ 31. in; out of ~ (everything is in good ~; this machine is out of ~ again) ["condition"] 32. working ~ (in working ~) ["sequence"] 33. alphabetical; chronological; correct; logical; numerical ~ (see also **word order**) 34. ascending; descending ~ 35. in; out of ~ (in ~ of importance; in alphabetical ~; these entries are out of ~; that rude remark was completely out of ~!) ["military formation"] 36. close; extended; open ~ ["instructions to pay"] 37. a money (esp. AE), postal (BE) ~ (he made out and sent a money ~, which I received and cashed) ["misc."] 38. a new ~; a new world ~; an old ~; of the ~ of (BE)/on the ~ of (AE) ("approximately"); research of the highest ~ (see also **holy orders**; **law and order**; **marching orders**)

order II *v.* 1. (C) ~ a copy for me; or: ~ me a copy 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from (~ me a copy from the publisher = ~ a copy for me from the publisher = ~ a copy from the publisher for me) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ from, out of (she ~ed him out of the house) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ off (the referee ~ed the player off the field) 5. (H) the referee ~ed the player to go off the field 6. (L; subj.) the referee ~ed that the player go/should go off the field 7. (M) the referee ~ed the player to be sent off the field 8. (esp. AE) (N; used with a past participle) the referee ~ed the player sent off the field 9. (misc.) the doctor ~ed her to bed

orders *n.* ["ordination"] see **holy orders**

ordinance *n.* ["local law"] 1. to adopt, enact, pass; draft, draw up an ~ 2. to issue an ~ 3. to apply, enforce an ~ 4. to amend, change; approve; repeal, rescind, revoke an ~ 5. to obey, observe an ~ 6. to violate an ~ 7. a city, municipal; local; township (esp. AE) ~ 8. an ~ that + clause; subj. (the town issued an ~ (to the effect) that all dogs be/should be muzzled)

ordinary *n.* out of the ~

ordnance *n.* naval ~

ore *n.* 1. copper; iron ~ 2. a vein of ~

organ *n.* ["part of the body"] 1. body; genital, reproductive, sexual; internal; major; sense, sensory; speech; vital; vocal ~s (see also **sex organs**) ["large wind instrument"] 2. to play the ~ 3. a barrel; electronic; pipe; reed ~ (see also **hand organ**; **mouth organ**) ["publication"] 4. a government; house (esp. BE); official; party ~

organism *n.* 1. a dead; healthy; living ~ 2. a deadly; harmful; infectious ~ 3. microorganisms; minute ~s

organization *n.* 1. to establish, form an ~ 2. to run an ~ 3. to disband, dissolve an ~ 4. a charitable, philanthropic; relief ~ 5. a civic, community; nongovernmental (NGO); nonprofit, not-for-profit (esp. AE); professional; religious; voluntary ~ 6. a student; women's; youth ~ 7. an international; local; national; state; UN ~ 8. a central; umbrella ~ 9. a government; official ~ 10. a health-maintenance (HMO) (AE) ~ 11. a profit-making, proprietary (AE) ~ 12. a front ~ for (accused of having belonged to a Communist front ~; an ~ that was a front for organized crime)

orgasm *n.* 1. to achieve, reach; have an ~ 2. to fake an ~ 3. a simultaneous ~

orgy *n.* 1. to engage in, stage an ~ 2. a drunken ~

orient, orientate *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ to (to ~ oneself to one's surroundings)

Orient *n.* in the ~

orientated, oriented *adj.* ~ towards (~ towards the needs of young consumers; ~ to one's surroundings)

orientation *n.* ["introduction"] 1. to give, offer smb. (an) ~ to 2. to get, go through, receive (an) ~

origin *n.* 1. to have an ~ in (the problem has its ~s in the nineteenth century) 2. in ~ (the documents were Norse in ~) 3. of ~ (she is of Norwegian ~; the fire was of undetermined ~)

original *n.* in the ~ (to read a text in the ~ (language))

originality *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. ~ in

originate *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ from; in; with (the idea ~d with her; the problem ~d in the nineteenth century)

orphan *n.* 1. to be left an ~ 2. a war ~

orthodoxy *n.* (a) rigid, strict ~

Oscar (T) *n.* 1. to get, receive, win; have an ~ 2. (misc.) to be nominated for an ~; to be an Oscar-winner

oscillate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ between

osmosis *n.* by ~ (to absorb by ~)

ossify *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ into (their ideas ~fied into a rigid orthodoxy)

other *adj.* ["second"] 1. every ~ (I go jogging every ~ day) ["misc."] 2. each ~ (we ought to help each ~)

ought *v.* (E) we ~ to help each other, oughtn't we?; we don't always do what we ~ (to)

oust *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

out *adj.*, *adv.* ["unconscious"] 1. ~ cold ("completely unconscious") ["intent on"] 2. ~ for (she is ~ for revenge) 3. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to get revenge) ["gone"] 4. ~ to (~ to lunch) ["misc."] 5. over and ~ (used at the end of a radio message); to turn smt. inside ~; down and ~ ("destitute"); they are ~ for a walk; he is ~ for your money ("he is attempting to get your money") (see also *off out* at **off**)

outbreak *n.* sporadic ~s

outburst *n.* an angry; furious; spontaneous; sudden; violent ~

outcome *n.* 1. to decide the (final) ~ of 2. a favorable, successful; probable; unfavorable, unsuccessful ~ 3. to evaluate, measure ~s ("to evaluate results") 4. (misc.) whatever the ~ of the election (may be), we shall abide by it!

outcry *n.* 1. to cause, spark (off); make, raise an ~ 2. an international; public ~ 3. an ~ against; about; for; over; from (the incident sparked off an international ~ about it from many countries)

outdo *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ in (she outdid them in every field) 2. (misc.) not to be outdone

outdoors I out of doors *adv.* to be; go ~

outdoors II *n.* in the great ~

outgrowth *n.* a direct; indirect ~ (of)

outing *n.* to go on an ~ (to)

outlay *n.* ["spending of money"] 1. to make ~s for, on 2. a capital; huge; large; modest; small ~ (you will be able to recoup/recover/get back with interest the modest ~s you make on the project now)

outlet *n.* ["passage"] 1. an ~ to (an ~ to the sea) ["means of expression"] 2. to find an ~ for (to find an ~ for one's emotions) 3. to provide an ~ for ["retail store"] 4. a factory; retail; sales ~ ["socket"] (AE) 5. an electrical ~ (to plug an appliance into an electrical ~)

outline I *n.* 1. to draw up, make; give, provide an ~ 2. a bare; broad, general; dim; rough ~ (can you give us a rough ~ of how the project will proceed?) 3. in ~ (to draw in ~; to present a project in broad ~)

outline II *v.* 1. (B) they ~d the project to us 2. (d; tr.) to ~ against (the ship was ~d against the horizon)

outlook *n.* ["viewpoint"] 1. to have an ~ on (she has a healthy ~ on life) 2. a cheerful, optimistic, positive; healthy ~ 3. a negative, pessimistic ~ 4. in ~ (we are quite similar in (our) ~ = we are people of quite similar ~) ["prospects"] 5. a bright, promising ~ 6. a bleak, dark, dim, dismal, dreary, gloomy, unpromising ~ 7. the long-range, long-term; short-range, short-term ~ 8. an ~ for (the ~ for the future is bright)

outnumber *v.* 1. to ~ heavily; hopelessly (we were heavily ~ed) 2. to ~ by (we were ~ed (by) at least ten to one!)

outpost *n.* a military ~

output *n.* 1. to increase, step up ~ 2. to curtail, cut back, reduce ~ 3. annual; daily; industrial; monthly ~ 4. a level of ~ (falling levels of ~ are causing concern in government circles)

outrage I *n.* ["anger"] 1. to express; feel ~ (we all expressed our ~ at the crime) 2. to provoke, spark (esp. AE), spark off (BE), stir up ~ 3. (misc.) a sense of ~ ["offensive act"] 4. to commit an ~ 5. an ~ against (an ~ against public morality) 6. an ~ to + inf. (it was an ~ to take innocent civilians hostage!) 7. an ~ that + clause (it was an ~ that innocent civilians were/should be taken hostage!)

outrage II *v.* we were ~d (to learn) that she had been arrested = (R) it ~d us (to learn) that she had been arrested

outrageous *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to permit such behavior) 2. ~ that + clause (it's positively/absolutely ~ that she has been/should have been arrested!)

outs *n.* (colloq.) (AE) to be on the ~ with smb. ("to be on bad terms with smb.")

outset *n.* at; from the (very) ~

outside *n.* 1. from the ~ 2. on the ~

outsider *n.* a complete, rank ~ (how could a rank ~ in the race win first prize?)

outskirts *n.* on, through the ~ (of a city)

outsource *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (the work was ~d to several sub-contractors)

outspoken *adj.* ~ in (~ in their opposition to new taxes)

outstanding *adj.* 1. to leave ~ (at the end of the meeting we left several matters still ~ and unresolved) 2. ~ in (~ and excellent in scientific achievement)

outward *adv.* ~ bound

outweigh *v.* to far, more than ~ (the benefits of this new treatment more than ~ any possible side-effects involved!)

ovation *n.* 1. to get, receive an ~ 2. to give smb. an ~ (the audience gave them a thunderous ~) 3. a standing; thunderous, tremendous ~ 4. to an ~ (they walked out on the stage to a thunderous ~ from the audience)

oven *n.* 1. to light, turn on an ~ 2. to turn off an ~ 3. an electric; gas; microwave; self-cleaning ~ 4. a hot; pre-heated ~ 5. in an ~ USAGE NOTE: A microwave oven is nowadays called typically a microwave.

over *adj.* ["finished"] 1. ~ between; with (it's all ~ between them) 2. (misc.) ~ and done with; ~ and ~; ~ and out; ~ to (I've done all I can – it's ~ to you now!)

overboard *adv.* 1. to fall ~ 2. (misc.) man ~! to go ~ over smt./smb. ("to show excessive enthusiasm for smt./smb.") (see also *to be washed overboard* at **wash II** *v.*)

overcharge *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ by (they ~d us (by) twenty percent) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (they ~d us for the book; we were ~d for it by twenty percent)

overcome *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to be ~ by (they were overcome by smoke) 2. (D; tr.) to be ~ with (I was overcome with emotion)

overcompensate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (he ~s for his poor performance in class by doing extra assignments for the teacher)

overdose I *n.* 1. to give; take an ~ 2. a fatal, lethal; massive ~ 3. a drug ~ = an ~ of a drug

overdose II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a medication)

overdue *adj.* 1. long; several years ~ 2. ~ for (we are long ~ for change)

overflow I *n.* 1. to catch the ~ 2. the ~ from

overflow II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ into (the mob ~ed into the street) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with (the stadium was ~ing with spectators)

overground *n.* ["transportation"] (esp. BE) by ~ (I often travel by ~)

overgrown *adj.* ~ with

overhaul I *n.* ["repairs"] a complete; major; thorough ~ (our car needs a major ~)

overhaul II *v.* to ~ completely; thoroughly

overhear *v.* 1. (I) we overheard him say it = he was overheard to say it 2. (J) we overheard him saying it

overindulge *v.* (D; intr., refl., tr.) to ~ in (we ~d ourselves in the rich pastries)

overindulgence *n.* ~ in (our ~ in the rich pastries)

overjoyed *adj.* 1. ~ about, at (we were ~ at your success) 2. ~ to + inf. (we were ~ to hear that you'd succeeded) 3. ~ that + clause (we were ~ that you'd succeeded) 4. (misc.) we were not exactly ~ at the news that we'd failed!

overlap *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in; with (our role ~s with theirs in jurisdiction; their territory ~s with ours = their territory and ours ~ with each other)

overload I *n.* circuit; sensory ~

overload II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (the ship was ~ed with cargo)

overpass *n.* (esp. AE) 1. an ~ over (an ~ over a road) 2. in; into; through an ~ (BE has *flyover*)

overqualified *adj.* 1. clearly ~ 2. ~ for (she is clearly ~ for such a lowly job) 3. ~ to + inf. (she is clearly ~ to work at such a lowly job)

overrated *adj.* vastly, very (much) ~

overreact *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (they ~ed to the news)

overrun *adj.* ~ with (~ with weeds)

overseas *adv.*, *n.* 1. to go, travel ~ 2. (misc.) to return from ~

oversight *n.* 1. an ~ that + clause (it was through an ~ that her name was omitted) 2. by, through an ~ (her name was omitted through an ~)

overstocked *adj.* ~ with (~ with merchandise)

overtime *n.* ["extra time worked"] 1. to do, put in, work (five hours) ~ ["extra wage"] 2. to earn ~ 3. to pay ~ 4. on ~ (I was on ~ all week) ["extra period"] (sports) (AE; BE has *extra time*) 5. in ~ 6. a sudden-death ~

overtones *n.* 1. to develop, take on; have ~ 2. nasty; political; racial ~ (the dispute took on political ~)

overture *n.* ["musical introduction"] 1. to compose; perform, play an ~ 2. an ~ to (to play the ~ to an opera) ["introductory proposal"] 3. to make an ~; to make ~s to 4. to spurn smb.'s ~s 5. diplomatic; friendly ~s (Flatland spurned Ruritania's diplomatic ~s)

overview *n.* to get; give; have an ~ of

owe *v.* 1. (A) she ~s ten dollars to her sister; or: she ~s her sister ten dollars (the *to* is usu. not used when the indirect object is a pronoun: she owes her ten dollars) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for, on (we still ~ one hundred dollars for the car) 3. (misc.) we ~ it to our students to grade their papers promptly

owing *adj.* ~ to (her absence was ~ to illness)

owl *n.* ~s hoot

own *determiner, pronoun* 1. to hold one's ~ ("to continue to survive") 2. to come into one's ~ ("to receive recognition") 3. on one's ~ ("independently") 4. of one's ~ (for reasons of one's ~) ("for one's own reasons")

owner *n.* 1. a part ~ 2. the lawful, rightful; lucky, proud ~ (congratulations ! you are now the lucky ~ of a lovely puppy !)

ownership *n.* 1. collective; communal; joint; part; private; public; state ~ 2. under ~ (the restaurant has improved now that it's under new ~)

own up *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) ("to confess") to ~ to (she ~ed up to stealing the watch)

ox *n.* 1. oxen bellow 2. a pair; team; yoke of oxen 3. (misc.) as strong as an ~

oxygen *n.* 1. to administer ~; to give smb. ~ 2. to get, receive ~ 3. liquid ~

P

pace I *n.* ["rate of movement"] 1. to set the ~ 2. to keep ~ with 3. to change ~; to slacken the ~ 4. an even, steady ~ 5. a blistering, brisk, cracking, fast, rapid; dizzy, frantic, hectic; grueling, killing ~ 6. a faltering, slack, slow, slowing, sluggish; snail's ("extremely slow"); walking ~ 7. a ~ picks up, quickens; slows, slows down 8. at a certain ~ (at a fast ~) 9. (misc.) at one's own ~ (don't hurry – do the work at your own ~!); a change of ~ (also fig.) ["step"] (esp. mil.) 10. to take a ~ (to take three ~s forward) ["misc."] 11. to put smb. through their ~s ("to subject smb. to a test of skill")

pace II *v.* (P; intr.) she was ~ing back and forth, up and down

pacemaker *n.* (med.) 1. to fit smb. with a ~ 2. to insert, put in a ~

pacifier *n.* (AE) to suck on a ~ (BE has *dummy*)

pack I *n.* ["deck of playing cards"] 1. to cut; shuffle a ~ (of cards) ["load, bundle"] 2. a backpack; full field (mil.); parachute ~ ["mass"] 3. an ice ~ ["misc."] (AE: BE prefers *packet* here) 4. a ~ of cigarettes

pack II *v.* 1. (C) ~ a sandwich for me; or: ~ me a sandwich 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into (they all ~ed into the auditorium) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ into (I ~ed everything into one suitcase; the organizers ~ed everyone into the auditorium) 4. (N; used with an adjective) ~ everything tight

package *n.* 1. to deliver a ~ 2. to address; insure; mail (esp. AE), post (BE); send a ~ 3. to get, receive a ~ 4. to open, unwrap; seal; wrap a ~ 5. a bulky; neat ~ 6. (computers) a software ~ (see also *package deal* at **deal I** n.)

packaging *n.* tamper-proof; tamper-resistant ~

packed *adj.* 1. densely, tightly ~ 2. loosely ~ 3. vacuum ~ 4. ~ with (streets ~ with people)

packet *n.* 1. a pay ~ (BE; AE has *pay envelope*) ["a large amount of money"] 2. (slang) (BE) to cost; make a ~ ["misc."] (BE: AE prefers *pack* here) 3. a ~ of cigarettes; a ~ of crisps

packing *n.* ["act of packing"] 1. to do the ~ 2. (misc.) postage and ~

pack off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ the children off to camp = to ~ the children to camp)

pact *n.* 1. to agree to, have; make; sign a ~ 2. to abrogate, denounce a ~ 3. a formal; informal; official ~ 4. a mutual-assistance; nonaggression; suicide; trade ~ (see also **defense pact**) 5. a ~ between 6. a ~ to + inf. (we had a ~ not to reveal the facts of the case; the two governments signed a ~ to defend their borders jointly) 7. a ~ that + clause (the two governments signed a ~ that they would jointly defend their borders)

pad *n.* ["cushion"] 1. a heating; heel; knee; shoulder ~ ["piece of material"] 2. a gauze; quilted; scouring ~; a sanitary ~ (CE; AE has *sanitary napkin*; BE has *sanitary towel*) (see also **tampon**) ["connected sheets of paper"] 3. a note; scratch (esp. AE); writing ~ (to write smt. in/on a note ~) ["airstrip"] 4. a helicopter; launch, launching ~ ["smb.'s residence"] (slang) 5. at smb.'s ~

paddle I *n.* a ping-pong, table-tennis ~

paddle II *v.* (P; intr., tr.) I ~d the canoe across the lake; we ~d down the river

paean *n.* (lit.) ["hymn of praise"] 1. to sing a ~ (of praise) 2. a ~ to (to sing a ~ to smb.'s glory)

page I *n.* ["leaf of a book, journal, newspaper"] 1. to turn a ~ 2. to turn down a ~ 3. to turn to a certain ~ 4. to cite a (volume and) ~ 5. to set a ~ (in type) 6. a title ~ (in a book) 7. the amusement; back; editorial; front; society; sports ~ (in a newspaper) 8. on ~ one; turn to ~ five; open your books at (BE)/to (AE) ~ five 9. (misc.) you will not find a dull ~ in the whole book; a glorious ~ in our history; it reads like a ~ from real life ["one side of a sheet of paper"] 10. a blank; a facing; the opposite ~ (see also **home page**)

page II *n.* ["youth who serves"] 1. (BE) a hotel ~ (AE has *bellboy*, *bellhop*) 2. (US) a congressional ~

page III *v.* to ~ smb. on, over a loudspeaker or a pager

pageant *n.* 1. to put on, stage a ~ 2. a beauty; colorful ~

paid *adj.* badly, poorly; highly, well ~ USAGE NOTE: It is correct to talk of "high-paid workers," "highly paid workers," or "low-paid workers." It is incorrect, though common, to talk of "*lowly paid workers."

pail *n.* (esp. AE or old-fashioned BE) 1. a garbage (AE); ice; lunch; milk ~ 2. a metal; wooden ~ 3. an empty; full ~ (see also Usage Note at **bucket**)

pain I *n.* ["sensation of suffering"] 1. to cause ~ 2. to inflict ~ (on) 3. to exacerbate the ~ 4. to bear, endure, stand, take ~ (she cannot stand ~) 5. to experience, feel, have, suffer ~ (she experienced constant ~) 6. to allay, alleviate, control, deaden, dull, ease, kill, manage, relieve, soothe ~ 7. (an) acute, agonizing, excruciating, great, intense, severe, sharp, unbearable ~ 8. (a) burning, searing; piercing; shooting; stabbing; throbbing ~ 9. a dull; slight ~ 10. (a) chronic, constant, gnawing, intractable, lingering, nagging, persistent, steady ~ 11. (a) recurrent; referred; sudden ~ 12. (an) abdominal, stomach; back; chest; phantom limb; physical ~ (he felt sharp chest ~s and went to see the doctor) 13. ~ appears; disappears, wears off; intensifies 14. a spasm; stab; twinge of ~ 15. a ~ in (she has severe ~s in her back) 16. in ~ (to be in chronic ~) 17. (misc.) the ~ shot through her arm; a high (or low) threshold of ~ = a high (or low) ~ threshold ["penalty"] 18. on, under, upon ~ of (mass meetings were forbidden on ~ of death) ["bother"] 19. (colloq.) a ~ to + inf. (it's a ~ to get up so early in the morning = it's a ~ getting up so early in the morning) 20. (misc.) he's a ~ in the neck ("he's a bothersome person"); what a ~!

pain II *v.* 1. to ~ badly, deeply 2. (R) it ~ed me to watch them quarrel; it ~ed me that I had to watch them quarrel 3. (misc.) it ~ed me when I had to watch them quarrel

pained *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to watch them quarrel)

painful *adj.* 1. ~ for (watching them quarrel was very ~ for me) 2. ~ to (watching them quarrel was very ~ to me) 3. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to watch them quarrel; it's ~ to cough = it's ~ coughing) 4. (misc.) it's ~ when I watch them quarrel; it's ~ when I cough

pains *n.* ["trouble"] 1. to go to, spare no, take ~ to + inf. (she took great ~ to get her message across; the Prime Minister went to great ~ to deny the charges) ["physical suffering"] 2. (med.) aches and ~; chest; labor ~ 3. (usu. fig.) growing ~ ["misc."] 4. (esp. BE) at ~ to + inf. (the Prime Minister was at ~ to deny the charges)

paint I *n.* 1. to apply, spread ~ (to apply ~ to a surface; to spread ~ evenly) 2. to spray ~ (to spray ~ on a wall; to spray a wall with ~) 3. to daub ~ (to daub ~ on a wall; to daub a wall with ~) 4. to dilute, thin ~ 5. to mix ~s 6. to remove; scrape ~ 7. exterior; flat; floor; gloss; house; latex; lead-based; metallic; oil-based; wall ~ 8. grease; war ~ 9. wet ~! 10. ~ chips; dries; peels; smears 11. a blob, dab, daub, lick, speck, spot; splash of ~ 12. a coat of ~ (to apply a second coat of ~) 13. a set of (oil) ~s

paint II *v.* 1. (usu. D; tr.; C occurs occ.) to ~ for (she ~ed a beautiful portrait for us) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ a scene from life) 3. (d; intr. tr.) to ~ in (to ~ in oils) 4. (J) the artist ~ed them strolling through their garden 5. (N: used with an adjective) to ~ a house white 6. (misc.) to ~ the town red ("to go on a binge or spree")

painter *n.* 1. a house; sign ~ 2. a landscape; portrait ~ 3. (misc.) (BE) a ~ and decorator

painting *n.* 1. to do; restore a ~ 2. to exhibit ~s 3. to authenticate a ~ 4. (a) finger; oil; water-color ~ 5. (an) abstract, non-representational; representational ~ 6. an original ~ 7. a ~ depicts, portrays, shows (smt.)

pair *n.* (ling.) see **minimal pair**

pair off, pair up *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with

pajamas, pyjamas *n.* a pair of ~

pal *n.* a pen ~ (BE also has *pen friend*)

palace *n.* 1. a bishop's (BE); imperial; presidential (not US); royal ~ 2. at; in a ~ (a ceremony at the ~; to live in a ~)

pal around *v.* (AE) (d; intr.) to ~ with

palatable *adj.* ~ to

palate *n.* 1. a cleft; perforated ~ 2. the hard; soft ~ 3. (misc.) to tickle the ~ ("to be very tasty") (food to tickle even the most sophisticated or jaded ~s!)

pale I *adj.* ["devoid of color"] 1. deathly; very ~ 2. to go, turn ~ 3. ~ with (rage) 4. (misc.) as ~ as a ghost; ~ and drawn; ~ and wan ("Why so ~ and wan, fond lover?" – Sir John Suckling, 1609–42)

pale II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to become devoid of color") to ~ at ("to ~ at the sight of blood") 2. (d; intr.) ("to become less important") to ~ before, beside (everything ~d before the possibility of war) 3. (d; intr.) ("to fade") to ~ into (to ~ into insignificance)

pale III *n.* ["prescribed area"] beyond, outside the ~

pall I *n.* ["blanket of gloom"] to cast a ~ over

pall II *v.* (D; intr.) ("to become less attractive") to ~ on, upon (her constant preaching began to ~ on everyone)

palm I *n.* ["part of the hand"] 1. to read smb.'s ~ ("to tell smb.'s fortune") 2. (misc.) to have an itchy ~ ("to have a great desire for money, bribes"); to grease smb.'s ~ ("to bribe smb."); to have in the ~ of one's hand ("to seem able to control completely")

palm II *n.* a potted; royal ~

palm off *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (he ~ed off the copy as an original = he ~ed the copy off as an original) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ inferior merchandise on customers = to ~ inferior merchandise off on customers)

palpable *adj.* ~ to

palsy *n.* cerebral ~

pal up *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ with

pan I *n.* 1. to grease a ~ 2. (AE) a baking; cake ~ (BE has *baking tin; cake tin*) 3. a chip ~ (BE) (for deep-frying potatoes) 4. a frying, fry (AE) ~ 5. (misc.) to scour (the) pots and ~s

pan II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for gold)

panacea *n.* 1. to find a ~ 2. a universal ~ 3. a ~ for

panache *n.* (with) great ~

pancake *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. (misc.) as flat as a ~

pandemic *n.* see **epidemic**

pandemonium *n.* 1. to cause, create, stir up ~ 2. sheer ~ 3. ~ breaks out; reigns; subsides

pander *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the worst elements in society)

panegyric *n.* 1. to deliver a ~ 2. a ~ on

panel *n.* ["board"] 1. a control, instrument ~ ["group that discusses or investigates a topic"] 2. to select a ~ 3. to be, serve on a ~ 4. an impartial ~ 5. an advisory; blue-ribbon (esp. AE), expert; consumer; fact-finding; government ~ 6. a member of a ~ 7. a ~ on (a ~ on drug addiction) 8. (misc.) to convene a ~ of judges

paneling, panelling *n.* wood ~

pangs *n.* ~ of conscience; hunger; jealousy (she felt (the) ~ of conscience) (see also **birth pangs**)

panic I *n.* 1. to cause, create ~ 2. to spread ~ 3. to feel ~ at (they felt ~ at the thought of leaving their family) 4. to avert, prevent ~ 5. sheer, total, utter ~ 6. ~ spreads; subsides 7. in a ~ over (they were/got in a ~ over the news) 8. in ~ (they fled the city in ~) 9. (misc.) a state of ~

panic II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, at, over (they panicked ~ over the news) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ into (the bad news panicked many people into fleeing the city)

panicky *adj.* to get (very) ~ over (they got (very) ~ over the news)

pant *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for breath)

pants *n.* 1. (esp. AE) see **trousers** 2. ski; sweat ~ 3. a pair of ~

pantyhose *n.* (AE; BE has *tights*) she got a run in her ~

paper I *n.* ["lecture, treatise; manuscript for publication"] 1. to deliver, give, offer, present, read a ~ 2. to publish; write a ~ 3. a discussion; invited; working ~ 4. a ~ about, on ["essay; written assignment"] 5. (in a school, at a university) to do, write; grade, mark; hand in, submit a ~ (the pupils did a ~ on the problem of air pollution; the students were required to hand in their ~s by the end of the semester) 6. an exam, examination, test; term; written ~ (the course requires an oral exam as well as a written ~ prepared/set (BE) by Prof. Smith) 7. a ~ about, on 8. a ~ for (I had to do a ~ for my history course) ["document"] 9. a green (BE) ~ (see also **white paper**) 10. a position ~ ["negotiable instruments"] 11. commercial; negotiable ~ ["material made from wood pulp"] 12. to recycle (scrap) ~ 13. blank; graph; lined; unlined ~ 14. bog (BE, slang), lavatory (BE), loo (BE, colloq.), toilet; cigarette; filter; litmus; wrapping ~ 15. crepe; glossy; manila; tar; tissue; wax, waxed ~ 16. bond; carbon; scrap; scratch (esp. AE); tracing; typing ~ (see also **writing paper**) 17. a quire; ream; roll of ~ ["sheet of writing material"] 18. to line ~ 19. a piece, sheet; scrap; slip; side of ~ 20. on ~ ("in written form") (we got it down on ~ when we finally managed to put pen to ~) ["newspaper"] 21. to get a ~ out, publish a ~ 22. a daily; school; Sunday; trade ~ (see also **newspaper**; **papers**)

paper II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ with (she ~ed the walls with wallpaper) 2. (N) she ~ed the ceiling white

paperback *n.* in ~ (the book came out in ~)

papers *n.* ["documents"] 1. to draw up ~ 2. to show one's ~ 3. (US) to take out first ~ ("to begin the process of becoming a naturalized citizen") 4. first (US); naturalization; second (US); ship's; working ~ 5. forged ~ ["schoolwork"] 6. to correct, grade (esp. AE), mark ~ ["articles sent by mail"] 7. printed ~ (BE; CE has *printed matter*)

par *n.* ["nominal value"] 1. at ~ ["common level"] 2. on a ~ with ["average"] 3. above, over; below, under ~ (the golfer was feeling a bit below ~ and so he finished the round of golf five over ~) 4. up to ~ (to feel up to ~)

parachute I *n.* 1. to pack a ~ 2. a ~ opens; fails to open

parachute II *v.* 1. (B) we ~d supplies to the stranded climbers 2. (P; intr., tr.) they ~d behind enemy lines; we ~d to safety

parade I *n.* 1. to have, hold, stage a ~ 2. to review a ~ 3. a church (BE); identification (BE), identity (BE; AE has *police lineup*); inaugural; military; sick (BE; AE has *sick call*); ticker-tape; torchlight ~ (she picked out the criminal in the identification ~) 4. a ~ takes place 5. at a ~ (we met them at the ~) 6. on ~ (the regiment was on ~) 7. (misc.) to rain on smb.'s ~ (colloq.) ("to spoil smb.'s triumph") (I don't want to rain on your ~ – but you're under arrest!)

parade II *v.* (P; intr., tr.) to ~ in front of an audience; to ~ around the room

paradise *n.* 1. an earthly ~ = a ~ on earth 2. sheer ~ 3. ~ to + inf. (it is sheer ~ to relax in the sun)

paradox *n.* 1. to resolve a ~ 2. a ~ that + clause (it's a ~ that such good friends cannot work together)

paradoxical *adj.* ~ that + clause (it's ~ that such good friends cannot work together)

paragraph *n.* 1. to indent; write a ~ (to ~ each new paragraph several spaces) 2. to divide smt. into ~s 3. a ~ about, on (she wrote a few short ~s on that subject) 4. in a ~ (she drew some conclusions in the final ~)

parallel I *adj.* ~ to, with

parallel II *n.* 1. to draw a ~ between; with 2. to find ~s among, between 3. a striking ~ 4. (misc.) without ~ (in history); their accomplishment has no ~ (in history); (esp. BE) her career developed in ~ with his

paralysis *n.* 1. to cause, induce ~ 2. to contract, develop, get; have ~ 3. to prevent ~ 4. complete; creeping; partial; temporary; total ~ 5. infantile ~

paramount *adj.* ~ over

paranoid *adj.* ~ about (don't get/go all ~ about them!)

paraphernalia *n.* drug ~

paratroops *n.* to commit, deploy; drop ~

parcel *n.* 1. to deliver a ~ 2. to address; insure; mail (esp. AE), post (BE); send a ~ 3. to get, receive a ~ 4. to open, unwrap; seal; wrap a ~ 5. a bulky; neat ~

parcel out *v.* 1. (B) she ~ed out the work to us = she ~ed the work out to us 2. (D; tr.) to ~ among (she ~ed out the assignments among us = she ~ed the assignments out among us)

pardon I *n.* 1. to grant a ~ 2. to ask, beg smb.'s ~ 3. a full; royal ~

pardon II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ smb. for

pare down *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ expenses to the minimum = to ~ expenses down to the minimum)

parent *n.* 1. to obey one's ~s 2. a loving; permissive; strict; unfit ~ 3. an adoptive; biological, natural; foster; grandparent; lone (BE), single ~; stepparent

parentheses *n.* (esp. AE; BE prefers *brackets)* 1. to put smt. in, into ~ 2. between, in ~

parenthood *n.* planned ~

parity *n.* ["equality"] 1. to achieve, attain, establish ~ 2. ~ among, between; with ["equivalence in value"] 3. at ~

park I *n.* 1. to lay out a ~ 2. an amusement; safari (BE); theme ~ 3. a city; national; public; state ~ 4. a caravan (BE), trailer (AE) ~ 5. a car ~ (BE; AE has *parking lot*); a multi-storey car ~ (BE; AE has *parking garage*) 6. (BE) a coach; lorry ~ 7. an industrial ~ (AE; BE has *industrial estate*); a science ~ (BE) 8. at, in a ~

park II *v.* (colloq.) ("to deposit with") (d; tr.) to ~ on (AE), with (they ~ed their children on us and went to the theater)

parking *n.* 1. to allow; ban, restrict ~ 2. illegal; legal ~ 3. long-term; short-term ~ 4. (misc.) no ~!

parlance *n.* common; legal ~ (in common ~)

parlay *v.* (esp. AE) (d; tr.) ("to convert") to ~ into (to ~ a small investment into a fortune)

parley I *n.* to hold a ~ with

parley II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

parliament *n.* 1. to convene (a) ~ 2. to adjourn; disband, dismiss, dissolve (a) ~ 3. a bicameral; national; provincial; unicameral ~ 4. the British, UK; European; Scottish ~ 5. a hung; rump ~ 6. a ~ adjourns; convenes, meets; disbands 7. a house of ~ 8. in ~ (to sit in ~) 9. (misc.) an act of ~; to stand for (BE) ~; a member of ~ (in GB abbreviated as MP) USAGE NOTE: In Great Britain, the Queen or King *opens* (a *session* of) Parliament. After the *State Opening*, Parliament is *in session*. Parliament *sits* until the session is over and then it *rises*.

parlor, parlour *n.* 1. a beauty; funeral (AE); ice-cream (AE); massage ~ 2. a sun ~ (AE; BE has *sun lounge*) USAGE NOTE: The services offered by a *massage parlor* are often sexual rather than therapeutic.

parody *n.* 1. to compose, write a ~ 2. a ~ of, on

parole I *n.* ["conditional release from prison"] 1. to grant a ~ 2. to violate (one's) ~ 3. early ~ 4. on ~ (to release smb. on ~)

parole II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ smb. from prison)

part I *n.* ["share"] 1. to do one's ~ ["viewpoint, position"] 2. for, on one's ~ (for my ~, I will say no more; it was sheer madness on his ~ to risk everything!) ["participation"] 3. to take ~ (in) (to take ~ in an activity) 4. an active ~ ["role"] 5. to play a ~ (to play the ~ of Hamlet) 6. to act; dress; look the ~ 7. to learn, memorize, study one's ~; to understudy a ~ 8. a bit; cameo; leading, major; minor; speaking; walk-on ~ (she had a bit ~ in the play) ["element, portion"] 9. to spend a ~ of (they spent the major ~ of their life in England) 10. an essential, intrinsic; important, significant, vital; large, major ~ 11. an equal; insignificant, minor, small ~ 12. the (a) better ("greater"); good ("large") ~ (the better ~ of an hour) 13. a component, constituent, integral ~ 14. for the most ~ ("mostly") 15. in ~ ("partly") (in great ~) ["component of a machine"] 16. a defective; spare ~ 17. a moving ~ 18. automobile (AE), (motor)car (BE); spare ~s ["division"] 19. in ~s (a story in five ~s) 20. the best; difficult, hard; early; easy; first; last; latter; tricky; worst ~ (in the latter ~ of the 19th Century; the worst ~ (of it) is having to get up so early!) ["side"] 21. to take smb.'s ~ (in a dispute) 22. (legal) of a ~ (the party of the first ~) ["dividing line in hair"] (AE; BE has *parting*) 23. to have; make a ~ (in one's hair) ["component of body"] 24. body ~s ["sexual organs"] 25. the private ~s ["area"] 26. a remote ~ (in a remote ~ of the country)

part II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ as (to ~ as friends) 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ from (the children were ~ed from their parents) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ with (she hates to ~ with her money)

partake *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ of (to ~ of food and drink)

partial *adj.* ["fond of"] (colloq.) (cannot stand alone) ~ to (she's ~ to expensive clothes)

partiality *n.* ["bias"] 1. to show ~ in ["liking"] 2. a ~ for (she shows a ~ for expensive clothes)

participant *n.* 1. an active; reluctant, unwilling; willing ~ 2. a ~ in (a ~ in an activity)

participate *v.* 1. to ~ actively; fully; reluctantly, unwillingly; willingly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in an activity)

participation *n.* 1. active ~ 2. reluctant, unwilling; willing ~ 3. audience ~ 4. ~ in (~ in an activity)

participle *n.* (grammar) an active; dangling (esp. AE), misrelated (BE); passive; past; perfect; present ~

particle *n.* 1. a dust; minute ~ 2. (physics) an alpha; elementary; subatomic ~

particular I *adj.* 1. ~ about (~ about one's appearance) ["misc."] 2. in ~ ("especially")

particular II *n.* ["detail"] in every ~; in all ~s –

parting *n.* (BE) see **part I**, *n.* 23

partition I *n.* 1. to build, erect, put up a ~ 2. to dismantle, take down a ~ 3. a movable ~ 4. a ~ between; into (the ~ of the area between the two countries that bordered on it; the ~ of the area into two countries)

partition II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ between; into (the area was ~ed between the two countries that bordered on it; the area was ~ed into two countries)

partner *n.* 1. an active; full; junior; senior ~ (after several years she was made a (full) ~ in her law firm) 2. a business; trading ~ (some of Britain's principal trading ~s are in the EU) 3. a silent (AE), sleeping (BE) ~ 4. (boxing) a sparring ~ 5. (misc.) a ~ in (~s in crime) USAGE NOTE: Nowadays *partner* is perhaps the most popular name for the person you live with: John and Mary got divorced and now have new ~s.

partnership *n.* 1. to form; go into a ~ 2. to break up, dissolve a ~ 3. a ~ between 4. a ~ in 5. in ~ (with)

partner up *v.* (BE) (D; tr.) to ~ with

partridge *n.* a covey of ~s

party I *adj.* ["participating"] ~ to (don't blame me! I wasn't ~ to the arrangement/ agreement!)

party II *n.* ["social gathering"] 1. to arrange, give, have, throw; host a ~ (for) 2. to attend, go to; crash a ~ 3. to liven up a ~ 4. a birthday; Christmas; New

Year's Eve ~ 5. a cocktail; dinner; garden, lawn (AE); tea ~ 6. a coming-out; farewell; housewarming; going-away ~ 7. a pajama, slumber; surprise ~ 8. a lavish; wild ~ 9. a hen; singles; stag ~ 10. a ~ breaks up (the ~ broke up at midnight) 11. at a ~ (we had a good time at the ~) ["political organization"] 12. to establish, form a ~ 13. to break up, disband, dissolve a ~ 14. a centrist; conservative; fascist; liberal; populist; progressive; radical; reactionary ~ 15. a communist; labor; social-democratic; socialist ~ 16. a left-wing; right-wing ~ 17. a majority; minority; opposition; political; ruling; splinter ~ 18. (misc.) the ~ in power; the ~ in opposition; the parliamentary ~ (BE); a constituency ~ (BE) (the parliamentary ~ required a local constituency ~ to de-select a militant candidate) ["litigant"] (legal) 19. an aggrieved; disinterested; guilty; innocent; third ~ 20. the interested ~ties 21. a ~ to (a lawsuit) 22. (misc.) the ~ of the first, second part ["group sent on a mission"] 23. a boarding; landing; raiding; rescue; scouting; stretcher; surveying ~ (see also **search party**) ["participant"] 24. a ~ to (don't blame me! I wasn't a ~ to the arrangement/agreement!)

party line *n.* 1. to follow, hew to (AE) the ~ 2. to deviate from, veer from the ~

pass I *n.* ["permission; permit"] ["leave of absence"] 1. to issue a ~ 2. to cancel, revoke; show a ~ 3. a boarding; bus (BE); Freedom (BE); rail (BE); safe-conduct ~ 4. a ~ to (we got a ~ to town) 5. on (a) ~ (they are in the city on ~) ["flight"] 6. to make a ~ (over a target) ["sexual approach"] 7. to make a ~ (at smb.) ["transfer of a ball, puck"] 8. to complete; throw a ~ (to) 9. to block; intercept a ~ (from) 10. (Am. football) a forward; Hail-Mary ("desperate"); incomplete; lateral; touchdown ~ ["ticket"] 11. a free ~ 12. a ~ to (we got free ~es to the concert) ["passing grade"] (BE) 13. to get a ~ (at; in) (she managed to get a ~ in French at A-level) ["misc."] 14. things came to a pretty ~ ("the situation became very complicated") (see also **pass III** *n.*)

pass II *v.* 1. (A) ("to hand"); ("to throw") ~ the sugar to me; or: ~ me the sugar; my teammate ~ed the ball to me; or: my teammate ~ed me the ball; ~ the message to the others; or: ~ the others the message 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ as, for; by ("to be accepted") (she can ~ as/for a Russian; the bill (was) ~ed by a large majority) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ between ("to be exchanged") (a significant look ~ed between them) 4. (D; intr.) ("to go past") to ~ by (they ~ed by my house) 5. (d; intr.) ("to shift") to ~ from; to (to ~ from one subject to another) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon ("to judge") (to ~ on the merits of a case) 7. (D; tr.) ("to deliver") to ~ on, upon (the judge ~ed sentence on the accused; to ~ judgment on smb.) 8. (d; intr.) ("to go"); ("to fly") to ~ over (several planes ~ed over our house; to ~ over a bridge) 9. (d; intr.) to ~ over ("to disregard") (they ~ed over her for promotion when promotions were handed out) (see also **pass over**) 10. (d; intr.) ("to go") to ~ through (she was just ~ing through town) 11. (d; tr.) ("to insert") to ~ through (he ~ed the cable through the loop; to ~ meat through a grinder) 12. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to be handed down to") the estate ~ed to the daughter 13. (P; intr.) ("to move") to ~ into history; rumors ~ed around town 14. (s) to ~ unnoticed 15. (misc.) (BE) to be ~ed fit for (service) (see also *come to pass* at **come**)

pass III *n.* ["passage"] 1. to clear; cross a ~ 2. to block a ~ 3. a mountain ~ 4. a ~ between; over; through (a ~ through the mountains)

passage *n.* ["transit"] 1. to book ~ (on a ship) 2. free ~ ["section"] 3. an obscure; purple ("ornate, flowery") ~ (in a text or piece of music) ["way, channel"] 4. to clear; force a ~ 5. a secret ~ ["channel in the body"] 6. nasal ~s (blocked, congested nasal ~s) 7. (BE) the back ~ ("the rectum") ["transition"] 8. a ~ from; through; to 9. (misc.) a rite of ~ (getting a driver's license can be a rite of passage ~ from childhood to adulthood); the ~ of time (with the ~ of time everything is bound to look different) ["trip"] 10. an outward ~

passageway *n.* a ~ between

pass along *v.* (B) ~ the message along to the others = ~ the message to the others

pass around *v.* (B) ~ the chocolate around to the children

pass down *v.* 1. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ a tradition to the next generation = to ~ a tradition down to the next generation; to ~ old clothes from one child to the next = to ~ old clothes down from one child to the next) 2. (misc.) she ~ed it down to me from the shelf

passenger *n.* 1. to carry ~s (trains carry many ~s every day) 2. to pick up, take on ~s 3. to drop (off), let off ~s 4. a business-class; economy-class; first-class; second-class; standard-class (BE); steerage; tourist-class; transit ~ 5. a ~ for (~s for the next flight should go to the last gate) USAGE NOTE: Passengers are increasingly being called customers.

passing *n.* ["death"] 1. to commemorate, mark; mourn smb.'s ~ ["misc."] 2. in ~ ("incidentally")

passion *n.* 1. to arouse, excite, inflame, stir up ~ 2. to gratify, satisfy one's ~ 3. to control, curb, restrain one's ~ 4. (an) all-consuming, burning, deep, smoldering; animal, frenzied, wild ~ 5. ~s run high 6. a burst, surge of ~ 7. a ~ for (a ~ for gambling) 8. (misc.) to fly into a ~; his eyes blazed with ~ (see also *a crime of passion* at **crime**)

pass off *v.* (d; refl., tr.) to ~ as (he ~ed himself off as a doctor; she can ~ herself off as a Russian)

pass on *v.* 1. (B) they ~ed the information on to us 2. (d; intr.) to ~ from; to (let's ~ to another topic)

pass out *v.* (B) they ~ed the food out to all who came = they ~ed out the food to all who came

pass over *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (they ~ed her over for promotion when promotions were handed out) (see also *pass over* at **pass II** *v.*)

passport *n.* 1. to issue; renew a ~ 2. to have, hold a ~ 3. to apply for a ~ 4. to falsify, forge a ~ 5. to stamp, validate a ~ 6. to revoke a ~ 7. a diplomatic; Nansen ~ 8. a false; valid ~ 9. a ~ expires, runs out 10. (fig.) a ~ to (a ~ to happiness) 11. in a ~ (what's stamped in your ~?) 12. on a ~ (to travel on a U.S. ~)

pass round (BE) see **pass around**

password *n.* 1. to give the ~ 2. (computers) to enter, key in the ~

past *n.* ["past time"] 1. to glorify; recall, recapture the ~ 2. to forget the ~ 3. the distant ~ 4. a colorful, glorious ~ 5. (to have) a checkered (AE), chequered (BE); dark, lurid, murky ~ 6. in the ~ ["past tense of a verb"] 7. in the ~

paste I *n.* to make, mix a ~

paste II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ on, to (to ~ a piece of paper on/to the wall) (see also *cut and paste* at **cut II**)

pastiche *n.* 1. to compose, write a ~ 2. a ~ of

pastime *n.* 1. a popular; the national ~ (in America the national ~ is baseball) 2. a ~ among; for (is fishing a ~ popular among all classes of the population?)

pastry *n.* 1. to bake, make ~ 2. light; puff (BE) ~ 3. (a) Danish ~

pasture *n.* 1. to put smb. out to ~ (fig.) 2. (misc.) to leave for greener ~s

pasty *n.* (BE) a Cornish ~

pat I *adj.*, *adv.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) to stand ~ ("to refuse to change")

pat II *n.* to give smb. a ~ (on the back)

pat III *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ smb. on the back)

patch *n.* ["piece of material used to cover a hole"] 1. to have; sew on a ~ (to have a ~ on one's shirt) ["insignia"] 2. a shoulder ~ ["area"] 3. a brier; cabbage; fog; potato ~ ["period"] 1. to go through, have a ~ 2. a bad; purple ~

patch through *v.* (D; tr.) ("to connect") to ~ to (she ~ed me through to headquarters)

patent *n.* 1. to grant, issue a ~ 2. to apply for; obtain, take out a ~ 3. to hold a ~ 4. to infringe a ~ 5. ~ applied for; pending 6. a ~ expires, runs out 7. a ~ for, on (she took out a ~ on her invention)

paternity *n.* 1. to establish ~ 2. to acknowledge (one's) ~

path *n.* 1. to beat, blaze, clear, make a ~ (to clear a ~ through a jungle) 2. to cross smb.'s ~ 3. to follow a ~ (to follow a ~ along a river) 4. a beaten, well-worn ~ 5. a bridle ~; a towpath 6. a ~ goes, leads somewhere 7. a ~ from; to (on the ~ to success) 8. (misc.) to lead smb. up the garden ~ ("to deceive smb."); to lead smb. down the primrose ~ ("to lead smb. in an ill-advised search for pleasure"); off the beaten ~ ("in an unfamiliar or unusual place") ("off the beaten track"); he found many obstacles in his ~

pathetic *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to watch her condition deteriorate day by day) 2. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that her condition is deteriorating day by day)

pathway *n.* a ~ to (on the ~ to success)

patience *n.* ["quality of being patient"] 1. to display, show ~ 2. to tax, test, try smb.'s ~ (these delays are enough to try the ~ of a saint!) 3. to lose one's ~ 4. to run out of ~ 5. endless, inexhaustible, infinite ~ 6. smb.'s ~ runs out; wears thin 7. ~ for; with (she has endless ~ with the children that he has lost ~ with) 8. the ~ to + inf. (do you have the ~ to do this job?) 9. out of ~ with ["card game"] (BE) 10. to play ~ (AE has *solitaire*)

patient I *adj.* ~ about; in; with (up to now I've been very ~ about all these delays; she is endlessly ~ with the children that he has lost patience with)

patient II *n.* 1. to cure; handle; treat a ~ 2. to admit a ~ (to a hospital) 3. to discharge a ~ (from a hospital) 4. an ambulatory; hospital ~; inpatient; outpatient; private ~ 5. a cardiac; comatose; mental ~ 6. a ~ admits himself; discharges himself; responds to treatment

patio *n.* on a ~ (let's have a drink on the ~)

patriot *n.* an ardent, fervent, staunch; sincere ~

patriotism *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. (an) ardent, fervent, staunch, strong; sincere ~

patrol *n.* 1. a border; highway (AE), motorway (BE); military; police; reconnaissance ~ 2. (naval) (a) shore ~ 3. on ~ (they are out on ~)

patron *n.* 1. a regular, steady ~ 2. (misc.) a ~ of the arts

patronage *n.* 1. political ~ 2. under smb.'s ~

patronizing *adj.* ~ to, towards (~ towards people with poor taste)

patter *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ against, on (the rain was ~ing on the windows)

pattern I *n.* 1. to establish, set a ~ 2. to follow a ~ 3. an intricate; overall; set; strange; underlying ~ 4. a holding; traffic ~ (our plane was in a holding ~) 5. (ling.) an intonation; speech ~ 6. a behavior; personality ~ 7. a sewing ~ 8. a floral ~

pattern II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ after, on (the academy was ~ed after a British public school)

patty *n.* (esp. AE) a beef; lamb; meat ~

pause *n.* ["temporary stop"] 1. an awkward; long, prolonged; pregnant; short ~ 2. a ~ after; before; between; for; in ["reason or cause for hesitating"] 3. to give smb. ~

pavement *n.* ["paved surface"] 1. to tear up the ~ (in order to lay pipes) 2. the ~ buckles 3. (misc.) to pound the ~ ("to walk about aimlessly or with determination") USAGE NOTE: In BE, *pavement* also means "sidewalk".

pawn *n.* a helpless ~ (in someone else's game)

pay I *n.* 1. to boost, raise smb.'s ~ 2. to cut; dock; withhold smb.'s ~ 3. to draw, receive ~ 4. back; disability; equal; full; half; incentive; mustering-out (mil.); overtime; severance (AE; BE has *redundancy payment*); retroactive; sick; strike; take-home ~ 5. annual, yearly; daily; hourly; monthly; weekly ~ 6. a level, rate of ~ (high rates of ~ for the bosses; low rates of ~ for the workers;

equal rates of ~ for equal work) 7. ~ for (equal ~ for equal work) 8. in smb.'s ~ (he was in the ~ of the enemy) 9. on; with; without ~ (he's been on sick ~ since the accident; to take time off without ~)

pay II *v.* 1. to ~ dearly; handsomely, highly, well 2. (A) she paid the money to me; or: she paid me the money 3. (D; intr.) to ~ by, in (to ~ by check; to ~ in cash; to ~ by the hour) 4. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (have you paid for the book?; I paid ten dollars for this shirt; he paid us for watching his house) 5. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ into (we have been ~ing into a pension fund; the money was paid into her account) 6. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ out of (she paid out of her own pocket) 7. (E) it doesn't ~ to economize on essentials 8. (H) he paid us to watch his house

payable *adj.* 1. ~ to (make the check ~ to me) 2. (misc.) ~ at sight; ~ in advance; ~ on (is any tax ~ on this investment?); ~ on demand

pay back *v.* 1. (A) we must pay the money back to her for the tickets = we must ~ the money to her for the tickets; or we must pay her back the money for the tickets 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (we must ~ her back for the tickets)

paycheck, pay envelope, pay packet *n.* a monthly; weekly ~

pay dirt *n.* (colloq.) (AE) ["success"] to hit, strike ~

payment *n.* 1. to accept, receive ~ (for) 2. to make (a) ~ (to) 3. to stop ~ (of, on a check) 4. to suspend ~s 5. a cash; redundancy (BE; AE has *severance pay*); mortgage; token; transfer ~ (to fail to keep up one's mortgage ~s and lose one's home) (see also **down payment**) 6. (an) advance; part, partial; prompt ~ 7. (a) ~ from; for, on 8. in full ~ (of a bill) 9. (misc.) the balance of ~s

payoff *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. to get, receive a ~ 3. a political ~ 4. a ~ for

pay out *v.* (B) the benefits have been paid out to the workers = they paid out the benefits to the workers = they paid the benefits out to the workers

payroll *n.* 1. to meet (esp. AE) a ~ 2. a monthly; weekly ~ 3. on the ~ (how many workers are on the ~?)

peace *n.* 1. to achieve, bring about; promote ~ 2. to make ~ (with) 3. to negotiate (a) ~ with 4. to sue for ~ (with) 5. to impose (a) ~ on 6. to keep, maintain the ~ 7. to break, disturb, shatter, undermine the ~ 8. a durable, lasting, permanent ~ 9. a fragile, uneasy ~ 10. ~ reigns (between us and our neighbors) 11. at ~ (with) (we were at ~ with our neighbors) 12. in ~ (to live in ~ with our neighbors) 13. (misc.) a breach of the ~; ~ and quiet; ~ of mind (see also *peace march* at **march I** *n.*)

peacetime *n.* during, in ~

peacock *n.* 1. a ~ struts 2. (misc.) as proud as a ~

peak *n.* 1. to reach a ~ 2. to scale the ~ (of a mountain) 3. mountain; snow-capped; towering ~s 4. at the ~ (at the ~ of her career)

pearls *n.* 1. to string ~ 2. cultured; imitation; natural ~ 3. a string of ~

peas *n.* 1. to shell, shuck (AE) ~ 2. split ~ 3. (misc.) as alike as two ~ in a pod

peck I *n.* (colloq.) ["kiss"] to give smb. a ~ on the cheek

peck II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at one's food)

pecker *n.* ["spirits"] ["courage"] (colloq.) (BE) to keep one's ~ up

peculiar *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ to (habits ~ to the very rich) 3. ~ to + inf. (how ~ of her to have done that!) 4. ~ that + clause (how ~ that she did/should have done that!)

pedal I *n.* 1. to depress, put one's foot on, step on a ~ 2. to ease up on, let up on; take one's foot off a ~ 3. an accelerator (BE), gas (AE); brake; clutch ~

pedal II *v.* (P; intr., tr.) she ~ed the bicycle down the hill; they ~ed their way across the state; we were ~ing through town

peddler, pedlar *n.* a drug; influence; itinerant; smut ~

pedestal *n.* 1. to put smb./smt. on a ~ ("to hold smb./smt. in high esteem") 2. on a ~ ("held in high esteem")

pedigree *n.* of (a) certain ~ (of unknown ~)

pee *n.* (colloq.) to have, take; need a ~

peek I *n.* to have, take a ~ (at; through)

peek II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at smb. in the next room) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into smb.'s dossier) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ under (to ~ under the bed) 4. (P; intr.) to ~ over the bushes; to ~ through the window

peek in *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (we ~ed in at the dress rehearsal) 2. (misc.) she ~ed in from behind the bushes

peek out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (we ~ed out at the dress rehearsal) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from behind (she ~ed out from behind the bushes) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ from under (to ~ from under the bed)

peel I *n.* (an) apple; banana (esp. AE; CE prefers *a banana skin*); lemon; orange; potato ~ (see the Usage Note for **rind**)

peel II *v.* 1. (C) ~ a banana for me; or: ~ me a banana 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from, off, off of (AE) (he ~ed the bark from the tree; the paper was ~ing from the wall)

peep I *n.* ["sound"] 1. to let out a ~ 2. a ~ out of (we didn't hear a ~ out of her; we haven't had a ~ out of them all day)

peep II *n.* ["look"] to have, take a ~ (at; through)

peep III *v.* ("to look") 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at smb. in the next room) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into smb.'s dossier) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ under (to ~ under the bed) 4. (P; intr.) to ~ over the bushes; to ~ through the window

peep in *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (we ~ed in at the dress rehearsal) 2. (misc.) she ~ed in from behind the bushes

peep out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (we ~ed out at the dress rehearsal) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from behind (she ~ed out from behind the bushes) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ from under (to ~ from under the bed)

peer I *n.* (GB) 1. to create, make smb. a ~ 2. a hereditary; life ~ 3. a ~ of the realm (see also *peer group* at **group I** *n.*; *peer pressure* at **pressure I** *n.*)

peer II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at; through (to ~ at smb. through a window) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into smb.'s eyes)

peerage *n.* (GB) 1. to elevate, raise smb. to the ~ 2. to bestow, confer a ~ on (a ~ was conferred on John Buchan) 3. to accept; refuse; renounce a ~ (John Buchan accepted a ~; Sir Winston Churchill refused and Tony Benn renounced a ~ so that they could continue to sit in the House of Commons) 4. a hereditary; life ~

peer out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at smb. through a window) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from behind (she ~ed out from behind the bushes) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ from under (to ~ from under the bed)

peeve *n.* smb.'s pet ~

peevish *adj.* ["irritable"] ~ about

peg *n.* ["degree, step"] (fig.) 1. to come down a ~ 2. to bring, take smb. down a ~ ["misc."] (BE) 3. (to buy clothing) off the ~ ("ready-made")

peg away *v.* (BE) (D; intr.) ("to work hard") to ~ at (to ~ at one's job)

pelt *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smb. with rocks)

pelt down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ against, on (the rain was ~ing down on the roof)

pen I *n.* ["enclosure"] 1. a pig; sheep ~ ["dock"] 2. a submarine ~

pen II *n.* ["device for writing"] 1. a ballpoint; felt-tip (AE), fibre-tip (BE); fountain ~ 2. (misc.) with a stroke of the ~, the new law was enacted; ~ and ink (to write in pencil rather than in/with ~ and ink)

penalize *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ by; for; with (he ~d me for coming late by imposing a fine = he ~d me with a fine for coming late)

penalty *n.* 1. to impose a ~ (he ~d a penalty on me for coming late) 2. to pay a ~ (to pay the full ~ for one's mistakes) 3. to rescind a ~ 4. a heavy, severe, stiff, strict; light, mild; maximum; minimum ~ 5. the death ~ (see also **death penalty**) 6. a ~ for 7. on, under ~ (of death)

penance *n.* to do, perform ~ for

penchant *n.* a ~ for

pencil *n.* 1. to sharpen a ~ 2. a colored; graphite, lead; indelible; mechanical (AE), propelling (BE) ~ 3. a cosmetic, eyebrow ~ 4. a styptic ~ 5. in ~ (to write in ~ rather than in/with pen and ink)

pendulum *n.* 1. to swing a ~ 2. a ~ swings 3. a swing of the ~

penetrate *v.* 1. to ~ deeply 2. (D; intr.) to ~ behind; into (enemy troops ~d deeply behind our lines)

penetration *n.* 1. (a) deep ~ 2. (mil.) (a) ~ in depth

penicillin *n.* 1. oral ~ 2. an injection, jab (BE; colloq.), shot of ~ 3. (misc.) a course of ~

penitence *n.* 1. to show ~ (for) 2. true ~ (for)

penitent *adj.* ~ for

pennant *n.* ["baseball championship"] (AE) to lose; win the ~

penny *n.* 1. to pinch ~nies ("to be frugal") 2. (misc.) a new (BE; old-fashioned); pretty ~ ("a large sum of money"); (BE; colloq.) the ~ drops ("somebody finally understands"); (BE; colloq.) to spend a ~ ("to use a toilet") USAGE NOTE: Seven US *pennies* are worth seven *cents*. Seven UK *pennies* are worth seven *pence*.

pension *n.* 1. to award, grant a ~ 2. to draw, receive a ~ 3. to revoke a ~ 4. a disability; index-linked; old-age; survivor's ~ 5. on a ~ (to live on a ~; to retire on a ~) (see also *pension plan* at **plan I** *n.*)

people *n.* 1. common, little, ordinary, plain ~ 2. business; city; country; local; professional; working ~ 3. old; young ~ 4. the chosen ~ 5. the right; wrong ~ 6. boat ~ ("refugees escaping in boats") 7. (misc.) of all ~! (I was just walking along when who should I see but John of all ~!) (see also Usage Note at **tribe**)

peopled *adj.* ~ by, with (an imaginary landscape ~ with unforgettable characters)

pepper I *n.* ["spice"] 1. ground ~ (season with salt and freshly ground ~) 2. black; hot; red; white ~ 3. a dash of ~ 4. (misc.) salt and ~ ["vegetable"] 5. (a) green; red; sweet; yellow ~ 6. stuffed ~s

pepper II *v.* (d; tr.) ("to shower") to ~ with (she was ~ed with questions)

pep up *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ a dish with unusual spices = to ~ a dish up with unusual spices)

perceive *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (we ~d the situation as critical) 2. (L) we ~d that the situation was critical 3. (M) we ~d the situation to be critical 4. (Q) they could not ~ how critical the situation was USAGE NOTE: *Perceive* can mean 'realize, understand': they finally perceived that the government was lying to them. But *perceive* can also mean 'believe (perhaps incorrectly)': the government is worried that it is perceived to be lying.

percentage *n.* ["profit"]["advantage"] (colloq.) (a) ~ in (there is no ~ in investing more money) (see also *percentage point* at **point I** *n.*)

perceptible *adj.* 1. barely ~ 2. ~ to (not ~ to the touch)

perception *n.* 1. to gain; have a ~ 2. (a) clear; keen; widespread ~ 3. color; depth; extrasensory ~ (ESP) 4. a ~ of (events confirmed our ~ of the situation as critical) 5. the ~ that + clause (events confirmed our ~ that the situation was critical) USAGE NOTE: *Perception* can refer to a correct realization or understanding: finally, events confirmed the widespread perception that the government was lying. But *perception* can also refer to a belief that may be incorrect: the government is worried about the widespread perception that it is lying.

perceptive *adj.* 1. ~ of (that observation was very ~ of her) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to make that observation)

perceptiveness *n.* the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to make that observation)

perch I *n.* 1. a high ~ 2. from one's ~ 3. (misc.) (colloq.; BE) to fall off one's ~ ("to die")

perch II *v.* (P; intr.) the birds ~ed on the wire

percolate *v.* (P; intr.) ("to pass slowly") the news ~d down to the troops; the water ~d through the sand; ideas that ~ throughout society

per diem *n.* ["daily allowance for expenses"] 1. to pay (a) ~ 2. to get, receive a ~

perennial *n.* ["flower"] a hardy ~

perfect I *adj.* ~ for (she would be ~ for the job)

perfect II *n.* (grammar) the future; past; present ~

perfection *n.* 1. to achieve, attain, reach ~ 2. sheer ~ 3. the acme, point of ~ 4. to ~ (cooked to ~)

perfidy *n.* (formal) an act of ~

perform *v.* 1. to ~ in concert; live 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in a play) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ for a live audience; to ~ a concerto for a live audience) 4. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ on (to ~ on the piano; to ~ a concerto on the piano before a live audience)

performance *n.* ["act of performing"] 1. to deliver, give, put on a ~ 2. to arrange, schedule a ~ 3. to cancel; postpone; reschedule a ~ 4. a breathtaking, brilliant, electrifying, inspired, outstanding, remarkable, spellbinding, superb, wonderful ~ 5. a listless, mediocre, run-of-the-mill; uneven ~ 6. a benefit; cameo; command; farewell; gala; live; premier; public; repeat; request; solo ~ 7. a ~ as, in; before, for (her ~ as the mother was inspired; her ~ in the play was inspired; her ~ of the concerto before a live audience was inspired; her ~ on the piano before a live audience was inspired) 8. on smb.'s ~ (on (the basis of) her past ~, we can expect something memorable tonight) ["functioning of a machine"] 9. (high) engine ~

performer *n.* a polished; star ~

perfume *n.* 1. to dab on, daub on, put on, spray on ~ 2. to apply, use, wear ~ 3. to reek of (derog.); smell of ~ 4. (a) heady, strong ~ 5. a bottle of ~ 6. a whiff of ~

perfumed *adj.* ~ with (the air was ~d with the scent of honeysuckle)

peril *n.* 1. to confront, face a ~ 2. to avert a ~ 3. at one's ~ 4. in ~ (our lives were in ~ from wild animals)

perimeter *n.* ["boundary"] 1. (mil.) to guard, protect a ~ 2. beyond, outside; inside; on a ~

period *n.* ["portion of time"] 1. a cooling-off; honeymoon (fig.); rest; set; trial; waiting ~ 2. an off-peak; peak; study; transition, transitional; trial ~ 3. an incubation ~ 4. a question-and-answer ~ 5. (sports) an extra ~ 6. a ~ begins; comprises, includes; covers; ends 7. a ~ from; to 8. for a ~ 9. in; throughout; within a certain ~ (in that ~ of history) ["menstruation"] 10. to have a ~ 11. a monthly ~ ["punctuation mark"] (esp. AE; BE prefers *full stop*) 12. to place, put a ~ (at the end of a sentence)

periodical *n.* 1. to publish, put out a ~ 2. to subscribe to, take (BE) a ~ 3. a current ~ (where does the library keep current ~s?) 4. bound ~s 5. a copy; issue of a ~

peripheral *adj.* ~ to

periphery *n.* on the ~ (of)

periscope *n.* 1. to lower; raise a ~ 2. (as commands) ~ down! ~ up!

perish *v.* (formal) 1. (D; intr.) to ~ by (to ~ by the sword) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from, of (to ~ from disease) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in a disaster) 4. (misc.) ~ the thought!

perjury *n.* to commit ~

perm *n.* ["permanent wave"] 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to get a ~

permeated *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ with (~ with idealism)

permissible *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is not ~ to smoke in the library)

permission *n.* 1. to give, grant ~ 2. to deny, refuse ~ 3. to apply for, ask, ask for, request, seek ~ 4. to get; have ~ 5. planning ~ (BE; AE has *building permit*) 6. official; oral, verbal; written ~ 7. ~ for (we applied for and got planning ~ for a new garage) 8. with; without ~ (I can't go out without my father's ~) 9. ~ to + inf. (we applied for and got planning ~ to erect a new garage)

permit I *n.* 1. to give, grant a ~ 2. to cancel, rescind, revoke a ~ 3. to apply for, request, seek a ~ 4. to get; have a ~ 5. a building (AE; BE has *planning permission*); work ~ 6. an export; import; travel ~ 7. a ~ for (we applied for and got a building ~ for a new garage; have you got a ~ for your gun?) 8. a ~ to + inf. (we applied for and got a building ~ to erect a new garage; have you got a ~ to carry a gun?)

permit II *v.* 1. (A; usu. without the preposition *to*) she did not ~ herself time for relaxation 2. (formal) (d; intr.) to ~ of (our financial situation ~s of no unnecessary expenditures) 3. (H) we ~ted the children to go to the park 4. (O; can be used with one inanimate object) the doctors ~ two meals a day; the doctors ~ him two meals a day; she ~ted herself one glass of wine (see also *weather permitting* at **weather**)

pernickety (esp. BE) see **persnickety**

perpendicular *adj.* ~ to

perpetuity *n.* in ~ ("forever")

perplex *v.* (R) it ~ed me to learn that they had refused the offer; it ~ed me that they had refused the offer

perplexed *adj.* 1. ~ about, at, by, over (I was ~ at their refusal of the offer) 2. ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to learn that they had refused the offer) 3. ~ that + clause (I was ~ that they had refused the offer)

perplexing *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to learn that they had refused the offer) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that they had refused the offer)

persecute *v.* 1. to ~ relentlessly; ruthlessly 2. (D;

tr.) to ~ for (they were ~d relentlessly for their religious beliefs)

persecution *n.* 1. to suffer ~ 2. relentless; ruthless ~ 3. political; racial; religious ~ 4. ~ for (they suffered relentless ~ for their religious beliefs)

perseverance *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. dogged; sheer ~ 3. ~ at, in (~ in doing smt.) 4. the ~ to + inf. (she displayed enough sheer ~ to finish)

persevere *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at, in (to ~ in doing smt.)

persist *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in, with (to ~ in doing smt.)

persistence *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. dogged, sheer ~ 3. ~ in (~ in doing smt.) 4. the ~ to + inf. (she displayed enough sheer ~ to finish)

persistent *adj.* 1. doggedly ~ 2. ~ in (doggedly ~ in doing smt.)

persnickety *adj.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) ["fussy"] ~ about

person *n.* 1. a juridical; private; real ~ 2. a displaced; missing ~ 3. (legal) a ~ aggrieved; concerned 4. (grammar) the first; second; third ~ 5. as a ~ (she is warm as an actress but cold as a ~) 6. in ~ (to appear in ~) 7. on one's ~ (can you be arrested for having a gun on your ~?)

personality *n.* ["famous person"] ["celebrity"] 1. a celebrated; media; TV ~ ["behavioral characteristics"] 2. a charismatic, charming, dynamic, forceful, magnetic, striking ~ 3. a domineering; strong ~ (her strong ~ was expressed in the way she spoke) 4. a dual, split; multiple ~ ["misc."] 5. to indulge in ~ties ("to make impolite remarks about people") (see also *personality cult* = *cult of personality* at **cult**)

personnel *n.* enlisted (AE; BE has *other ranks*); government; indigenous; military; qualified, skilled; support ~ (our highly qualified ~ are available to help you)

perspective *n.* 1. to put smt. in/into ~ 2. to put a new ~ on smt. 3. a distorted ~ 4. the proper, right, true; wrong ~ 5. from a ~ (to view a situation from a new ~) 6. in ~ (to look at, see smt. in ~)

perspicacity *n.* (formal) the ~ to + inf. (she had enough ~ to see through their schemes)

perspiration *n.* 1. excessive, profuse ~ 2. beads, drops of ~ (ran down my face) 3. (misc.) to be dripping with ~

perspire *v.* to ~ freely, profusely

persuade *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ of (he ~d me of his sincerity) 2. (H) we ~ed her to stay home 3. (L; must have an object) we ~d her that she should stay home

persuaded *adj.* 1. not entirely ~ (I'm still not entirely ~ of his sincerity) 2. ~ that + clause (we are ~ that our project will succeed)

persuasion *n.* 1. political ~ 2. religious ~ (what is their religious ~?) (sometimes humorous) (your friend seems to be of the vegetarian ~) 3. powers of ~ (her powers of ~ are (good) enough to convince anyone)

persuasiveness *n.* the ~ to + inf. (she has enough ~ to convince anyone)

pertain *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (these facts ~ to the case)

pertaining *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to (facts ~ to the case)

pertinent *adj.* 1. ~ to (the evidence is not ~ to the case) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's not ~ to cite such outdated evidence) 3. ~ that + clause (it's not ~ that she was out of town) 4. (misc.) is it ~ whether she was present at the scene of the crime?

perturb *v.* (R) it ~ed me (to learn) that she was late again

perturbed *adj.* 1. ~ about, at, by, over (I was ~ over her repeated lateness) 2. ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to learn that she was late again) 3. ~ that + clause (I was ~ that she was late again)

perturbing *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to learn that she was late again) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that she was late again)

perusal *n.* 1. a casual, quick; detailed ~ (of smt.) 2. to do; give a ~ (I gave the document a casual ~ and filed it away again until I had the time to give it a detailed ~) (see also Usage Note at **peruse**)

peruse *v.* to ~ carefully; casually; quickly (I ~d the document casually and filed it away again until I had the time to ~ it more carefully) USAGE NOTE: *Peruse* can nowadays mean both 'read hastily and perhaps not completely' and 'read thoroughly from beginning to end.'

pervaded *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ with (~ with cynicism)

perverse *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to behave like that)

perversion *n.* sexual ~

pessimism *n.* 1. to display, show; express ~ 2. incurable, inveterate ~ 3. to overcome ~ 4. ~ about, at, over (we expressed ~ about the eventual results)

pessimist *n.* an inveterate ~

pessimistic *adj.* ~ about, at, over (we are ~ about the eventual results)

pest *n.* 1. a garden ~ 2. (misc.) he can be a real ~

pester *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ about, for (she kept ~ing me for a new car) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (she ~ed me into buying a new car) 3. (H) she kept ~ing me to buy a new car

pet *n.* 1. to have, keep a ~ 2. a household ~ 3. a teacher's ~ (see also *pet animal* at **animal**)

petition I *n.* 1. to circulate, get up a ~ 2. to file, present, submit a ~ 3. to sign a ~ 4. to grant a ~ 5. to withdraw a ~ 6. to deny, reject a ~ 7. a ~ about; against; for; to (they submitted a ~ to the city council for more teachers to be provided = they submitted a ~ for more teachers) 8. a ~ to + inf. (they submitted a ~ (to the city council) to provide more teachers) 9. a ~ that + clause; subj. (they submitted a ~ (to the city council) that more teachers be/should be provided)

petition II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ about; against; for (they ~ed for more teachers = they ~ed the city council for more teachers to be provided) 2. (E) they ~ed to have more teachers provided 3. (H) they ~ed the city council to provide more teachers 4. (formal) (L; subj.) they ~ed the city council that more teachers be/should be provided

petrol (BE) see **gasoline**

petty *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to do that = it was a ~ thing for him to do)

phalanx *n.* ["formation"] to form a (solid) ~

pharmacy *n.* 1. a hospital ~ 2. at, in a ~ (she works down at the ~)

phase *n.* 1. to begin, enter; reach a ~ 2. to go through a ~ (it's just a passing ~ he's going through) 3. a closing, final, last ~ 4. a critical, crucial ~ 5. an early; first, initial, new, opening; passing ~ (the war was entering its final ~) 6. during, in a ~

pheasant *n.* 1. a brace of ~s 2. a male ~ is a cock 3. a female ~ is a hen 4. a young ~ is a chick

phenomenon *n.* 1. an isolated, rare ~ 2. a natural ~ 3. a common ~ 4. a new ~ 5. a ~ occurs

philosophical *adj.* ~ about

philosophize *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about

philosophy *n.* ["belief"] 1. to espouse, have a ~ 2. a homespun; moral; political ~ 3. a ~ underpins smt. (the ~ underpinning his actions) 4. the ~ behind; of (the ~ behind his actions; the ~ of science) 5. ~ that + clause (it was her ~ that people should help each other) 6. (misc.) smb.'s ~ of life

phlegm *n.* to cough up ~

phobia *n.* to have a ~ (about)

phone I *n.* 1. to answer, pick up the ~ 2. to hang up; put down; slam down the ~ 3. a cell, cellular, mobile (esp. BE); cordless ~ 4. a ~ rings; is busy, is engaged (BE); the ~ died on me 5. (misc.) to be wanted on the ~; to call smb. on the ~; to call smb. to the ~ (see also **telephone I**)

phone II *v.* see **telephone II**

phone book *n.* see **telephone directory**

phoneme *n.* (ling.) an independent, separate ~

photo see **photograph I**

photocopy *n.* to make a ~

photofinish *n.* (to end) in a ~

photograph I *n.* 1. to snap, take a ~ 2. to develop; touch up a ~ 3. to blow up, enlarge a ~ 4. to crop a ~ 5. to mount a ~ 6. an aerial; black-and-white; color; family; group; still ~ 7. (misc.) to pose for a ~

photograph II *v.* 1. (J) I ~ed him posing for me 2. (P; intr.) he ~s well

photographer *n.* an amateur; court; fashion; press; professional ~

photography *n.* color; still; trick ~

phrase *n.* 1. to coin; turn a ~ (a good writer knows how to turn a ~ neatly) 2. a choice; well-turned ~ 3. a colloquial; illustrative ~ 4. an empty; glib; hackneyed, stock, trite ~ 5. (grammar) an adjectival, adjective; adverbial, adverb; nominal, noun; participial; prepositional; verb ~ 6. (misc.) a turn of ~ (a good writer with a neat turn of ~)

physical, physical examination *n.* 1. to do, give a ~ 2. to get, have a ~ 3. to fail; pass a ~ 4. a complete, thorough ~ (the doctor did a thorough physical ~ of/on the patient, which revealed no signs of disease)

physician *n.* (esp. AE) 1. an attending; family; house; personal; practicing ~ 2. an allopathic; homeopathic; osteopathic ~ (CE has *doctor*)

physics *n.* 1. applied; classical, Newtonian; high-energy, particle; nuclear; quantum; solid-state; theoretical ~ 2. a law of ~ (do all miracles violate the laws of ~?)

physique *n.* 1. a burly, magnificent, muscular, powerful; slim; stocky; sturdy ~ 2. the ~ of (he has the ~ of a champion) 3. the (right; wrong) ~ to + inf. (he has the (right) ~ to become a champion)

pianist *n.* a concert; jazz ~

piano *n.* 1. to play the ~ 2. to tune a ~ 3. a baby grand; (concert) grand; modern; prepared; upright ~ 4. at the, on (the); from the ~ (a concerto with Alfred Brendel at the ~; a jazz number with Thelonius Monk on ~; a Mozart concerto with András Schiff conducting from the ~) 5. (misc.) to sit at the ~; a ~ is in tune or out of tune

piazza *n.* ["open square"] in, on a ~

pick I *n.* ["tool for breaking"] an ice ~

pick II *n.* (colloq.) ["selection, choice"] 1. to take one's ~ 2. to have one's ~ (of)

pick III *v.* 1. (C) ("to select") ~ a nice melon for me; or: ~ me a nice melon 2. (D; tr.) ("to select") to ~ as (they ~ed me as secretary) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ at ("to eat sparingly") (to ~ at one's food) 4. (d; intr.) ("to scratch") to ~ at (to ~ at a scab) 5. (D; tr.) ("to select") to ~ for (she was ~ed for the team) 6. (D; tr.) ("to select") to ~ from, out of (she ~ed this album from our record library) 7. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to find fault with") (she's always ~ing on me!) 8. (H) ("to select") they ~ed me to serve as secretary 9. (M) ("to select") they ~ed me to be secretary 10. (N; used with an adjective) the animals ~ed the carcass clean

picketing *n.* 1. informational; mass ~ 2. to organize ~ (the union organized mass ~ around the factory)

picket line *n.* 1. to form, organize a ~ 2. (esp. AE) to join, walk a ~ 3. to honor a ~ 4. to cross a ~ 5. in, on (AE) a ~

pickings *n.* (colloq.) ["choice"] easy; lean (AE), slim ~

pickle *n.* 1. a dill; sour; sweet ~ 2. (BE) mustard ~; ~s and chutney 3. (misc.) in a ~ ("in trouble") USAGE NOTE: In the United States, a pickle is a pickled cucumber. In Great Britain, the typical pickle is a thick sauce of pickled vegetables.

pick out *v.* 1. (C) ~ a nice melon for me, ~ a nice melon out for me; or: ~ me out a nice melon 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (they ~ed me out as secretary) 3. (D; tr.) ("to select") to ~ for (she was ~ed out for the team) 4. (D; tr.) ("to select") to ~ from (she ~ed out this album from our record library = she ~ed this album out from our record library) 5. (H) they ~ed me out to serve as secretary 6. (M) they ~ed me out to be secretary

pick up *v.* 1. (C) ~ a nice melon for me at the supermarket, ~ a nice melon up for me at the supermarket; or: ~ me up a nice melon at the supermarket 2. (d; intr.) to ~ after ("to clean up for") (I was always ~ing up after them) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ by (I ~ed the knife up by the handle = I ~ed up the knife by the handle) 4. (slang) (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to continue"); ("to become aware of")

picnic *n.* ["outing with a meal"] 1. to go on, have a ~ ["picnic meal"] (BE) 2. to make; pack a ~ ["pleasure"] ["easy task, piece of cake"] (colloq.) 3. a ~ to + inf. (it's no ~ to work there = it's no ~ working there)

picture I *n.* ["photograph"] 1. to enlarge; pose for; snap, take a ~ 2. in, on a ~ ["drawing, image, painting"] 3. to draw; paint; retouch a ~ 4. to frame; hang; mount a ~ 5. (BE) an Identikit (T) ~ 6. in a ~ (did you see the animals in the ~?) 7. (misc.) to pose, sit for a ~; as pretty as a ~ ["film"] 8. a motion (AE), moving (esp. AE) ~ 9. in a ~ (who played in that ~?) 10. (esp. BE) to go to the ~s ["description"] 11. to draw, paint a ~ 12. a clear; detailed; gloomy, grim; realistic; rosy; vivid ~ 13. a mental ~ 14. (misc.) (colloq.) to get the ~ ("to comprehend the situation"); to get the big ~ ("to comprehend the essence of smt. by contrast with its details"); to keep/put smb. in the ~ ("to keep smb. informed"); the big, larger ~ ("the overall view")

picture II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (can you ~ him as an actor?) 2. (J) can you ~him becoming an actor? 3. (Q) can you ~ (to yourself) how thrilled he must have been to become an actor?!

pie *n.* 1. to bake, make a ~ 2. an apple; blueberry; cherry; deep-dish; lemon-meringue; mince; pecan; pumpkin ~ 3. (AE) ~ a la mode 4. a cottage, shepherd's (BE); gala (BE); meat; pork; steak-and-kidney ~ 5. a piece, slice, wedge of ~ 6. (misc.) as easy as ~

piece *n.* ["(in a game)"] 1. chess ~s ["coin"] 2. a fifty-pence, fifty-penny, fifty-p; gold; ten-pence, ten-penny, ten-p ~ ["an artistic work"] 3. a collector's ~ (BE; CE has *collector's item*) 4. a conversation ~ 5. a ~ of music ["unit"] 6. by the ~ ["fragment"] 7. to cut, slice smt. into ~s 8. to slice off a ~ of smt. 9. to break into ~s (the vase fell and broke into small ~s; she broke the dish into ~s and it lay in ~s on the ground) 10. ~ by ~ ["misc."] 11. to go to ~s ("to fall apart"); a solid ~ of work ("high-quality work"); to give smb. a ~ of one's mind ("to tell smb. brusquely what one thinks"); to speak one's ~ ("to state one's opinion frankly"); a ~ of news; (BE; colloq.) a nasty ~ of work ("a nasty person"); to pick a theory to ~s ("to disprove a theory"); bits and ~s; my party ~ is to recite lots of Shakespeare from memory

piecemeal *adv.* to do smt. ~

piecework *n.* to do ~

pier *n.* 1. a loading ~ 2. at, on a ~ (to meet smb. at the ~)

pig *n.* ["hog, swine"] 1. a sucking (BE), suckling (AE) ~ 2. ~s grunt, oink, squeal 3. a young ~ is a piglet, shoat (AE) 4. a female ~ is a sow 5. a male ~ is a boar ["glutton"] (colloq.) 6. to make a ~ of oneself ["misc."] 7. as fat as a ~; to buy a ~ in a poke ("to buy, accept smt. with no previous inspection") (see also **guinea pig**)

pigeon *n.* 1. a carrier, homing ~ 2. a clay ~ 3. ~s coo; strut 4. a flight, flock of ~s

piggyback *adv.* to carry smb. ~ ("to carry smb. on one's shoulders")

pigheaded *adj.* 1. ~ of (that was ~ of him) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to do that = he was ~ to have done that)

pig out *v.* (slang) (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on ice cream)

pile I *n.* ["concrete post"] to sink a ~

pile II *n.* ["soft raised surface on a rug"] (a) shaggy; smooth; soft; thick ~

pile III *n.* ["fortune"] (colloq.) 1. to make a ~ ["reactor"] 2. an atomic ~ ["building"] (BE) 3. a stately ~ ["stack"] 4. to put things in/into a ~ ["mass"] 5. a ~ of rubble/rubbish

pile IV *v.* 1. (P; intr.) ("to crowd") the children ~d into the car 2. (P; tr.) ("to stack") to ~ wood on the fire 3. (misc.) to ~ books in a stack 4. (misc.) to ~ high (the shelves were ~d high with books)

pileup *n.* (colloq.) a traffic ~ (AE)

pilfer *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from

pilgrimage *n.* 1. to go on, make a ~ 2. a ~ to (they went on a ~ to Jerusalem) 3. on a ~

pill *n.* ["tablet of medicine"] 1. to prescribe a ~ 2. to swallow, take a ~ 3. (colloq.) to pop ~s 4. a headache; sleeping ~ ["oral contraceptive"] 5. to take the ~ 6. the morning-after ~ 7. to be on the; to come off the ~ ["misc."] 8. it was a bitter ~ to swallow ("it was very difficult to experience failure")

pillar *n.* from ~ to post

pillbox *n.* to storm; take a ~

pillow *n.* to fluff up, plump up a ~ (see also *pillow case* at **case I** *n.*; *pillow slip* at **slip I n.**; *pillow talk* at **talk I n.**)

pilot I *n.* ["person who flies aircraft"] 1. an air-force; airline, commercial; bomber; fighter; glider; helicopter; kamikaze; licensed; test ~ ["person who guides ships into and out of a port"] 2. to drop; take on the ~ 3. a harbor ~ (see also **automatic pilot**)

pilot II *v.* (P; tr.) ("to guide") the bill was skillfully ~ed through the Senate; they ~ed the refugees to safety

pin I *n.* ["metal fastener"] 1. to stick a ~ into smt. 2. a safety; straight ~ 3. a bobby ~ (AE; BE has *hair grip*) 4. a drawing ~ (BE; AE has *thumbtack*) 5. a ~ pricks (see also *pin-prick* at **prick I** *n.*) 6. (misc.) the head of a ~ ["tube-shaped implement"] 7. a rolling ~ ["target in bowling"] 8. to spot ("place") ~s ["support"] 9. to insert, put in a ~ (as in hip surgery) ["misc."] 10. a sensation of ~s and needles; on ~s and needles (“extremely anxious”); it was so quiet you could have heard a ~ drop

pin II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) (“to trap”) to ~ against (~ned against the wall) 2. (D; tr.) (“to trap”) to ~ beneath, underneath (he was ~ned beneath the car) 3. (d; tr.) (“to place”) to ~ on (we ~ned our hopes on her; to ~ the blame on smb.) 4. (d; tr.) (“to secure”) to ~ to (her arms were ~ned to her sides; to ~ a notice to the wall)

pincers *n.* a pair of ~

pinch I *n.* ["painful squeeze"] 1. to give smb. a ~ ["emergency"] (colloq.) 2. at (BE), in (esp. AE) a ~ ["arrest"] (colloq.) 3. to make a ~ ["suffering"] 4. to feel the ~ ["misc."] 5. to take smt. with a ~ of salt (“to regard smt. with skepticism”)

pinch II *v.* 1. (colloq.) (D; tr.) (“to arrest”) to ~ for (~ed for speeding) 2. (D; tr.) (“to squeeze”) to ~ in (she ~ed her finger in the door) 3. (D; tr.) (“to squeeze”) to ~ in; on (she ~ed my finger in the door; he ~ed me on the cheek)

pinch-hit *v.* (AE) (from baseball) (D; intr.) to ~ for (“to replace”)

pin down *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smb. down to a specific time)

pine *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ after, for (to ~ for home) 2. (E) they were ~ing to return home

pink I *adj.* tickled ~

pink II *n.* (colloq.) ["good health"] in the ~ (of condition)

pinnacle *n.* 1. to reach a ~ (to reach the ~ of one’s power) 2. at a ~ (at the ~ of one’s power)

pint *n.* 1. an imperial ~ 2. by the ~ (to sell milk by the ~)

pintable (BE) see **machine** 11

pip *v.* (see *pip smb. at the post* at **post V** *n.*)

pipe I *n.* ["device for smoking"] 1. to light a ~ 2. to puff on, smoke a ~ 3. to fill one’s ~ 4. a peace ~ ["long tube"] 5. to install, lay ~s 6. a drain; exhaust; gas; overflow; sewage; steam; water ~ 7. a length, piece of ~ 8. a ~ bursts; gets blocked; leaks

pipe II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from; into, to (to ~ water from a stream to a house) 2. (misc.) to ~ all hands on deck; to ~ an admiral aboard/on board

pipeline *n.* 1. a gas; oil ~ 2. in a ~ (also fig.) (there are several projects in the ~)

pipe up *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ with (she ~d up with the correct answer)

piping *n.* 1. copper; lead; plastic ~ 2. a length, piece of ~

pique *n.* (in) a fit of ~

piracy *n.* 1. to commit ~ 2. air; literary ~; ~ on the high seas 3. an act of ~

pistol *n.* 1. to cock a ~ 2. to aim, point; level a ~ at 3. to fire a ~ (at) 4. to load; unload a ~ 5. to draw, whip out a ~ 6. an air; automatic; dueling; starting; toy; water ~ 7. the ~ fired, went off; jammed; misfired

pit I *n.* 1. to dig a ~ 2. a bottomless ~ 3. a gravel ~ 4. a sandpit (for children to play in) (BE; AE has *sandbox*) 5. (misc.) an orchestra ~

pit II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ against (we were ~ted against a formidable opponent)

pitch I *n.* ["high-pressure sales talk"] (colloq.) 1. to deliver a ~ 2. a sales ~ (see also *queer smb.’s pitch* at **queer II** *v.*) ["blade angle"] 3. a propeller ~ 4. reverse ~ ["intensity"] 5. a fever; high; low ~ (to reach (a) fever ~) 6. at a certain ~ (during the last weeks of the campaign, activity was at a high ~) ["throw of a baseball or softball"] 7. to throw a ~ 8. an underhand ~ 9. a wild ~ (to uncork a wild ~) ["playing field"] (BE) 10. a cricket; football ~ (fans invaded/rushed onto the ~) 11. off; on the ~ ["musical tone"] 12. to give the ~ 13. a high; low; musical ~ 14. absolute, perfect ~ (she has perfect ~)

pitch II *v.* 1. (A) (“to throw”) ~ the ball to me; or: ~ me the ball 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into (“to begin to work together enthusiastically”) (let’s all ~ into this job)

pitch in *v.* (D; intr.) (“to contribute”) to ~ by; with (they ~ed in by contributing a hundred dollars each; they ~ed in with a hundred dollars each)

pitfall *n.* 1. to avoid a ~ 2. a hidden ~ 3. a ~ waits for smb., awaits smb. (try to avoid the hidden ~s awaiting first-time house-buyers)

pitiful *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it’s ~ to see what has happened)

pittance *n.* a mere ~

pity *n.* 1. to arouse ~ (in) 2. to feel; show ~ 3. to have, take ~ on smb. 4. ~ about; for 5. a ~ to + inf. (it’s a real ~ to see what has happened) 6. a ~ that + clause (it’s a real ~ that smt. so bad has happened = what a ~ that smt. so bad has happened!) 7. out of ~ (he agreed out of ~ for her children) 8. (misc.) for ~’s sake; a sense of ~; a beautiful spot – (what a) ~ about the weather, though!

pivot *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on (the dancer ~ed on the ball of her foot; the future ~s on what we decide now)

placard *n.* to carry a ~ (as in a demonstration)

place I *n.* ["space occupied at a table"] 1. to lay (BE), set (esp. AE) a ~ for smb. ["position"] 2. to take smb.’s ~ 3. to change, swap, switch, trade ~s (with) 4. to keep, save smb.’s ~ 5. to give up, relinquish one’s ~ (as to smb. else) 6. to lose one’s ~ 7. to fall into ~ 8. (misc.) to know one’s ~ (in life); to give up one’s ~ in line/in a queue (to smb. else); to occupy a prominent ~ in world literature; to put people in their ~ (he thought he was as good as me – but I soon put him in his ~!); please let me show you to your ~ ["point in space"] 9. a meeting ~ 10. at, in a ~ (at the same old ~) ["dwelling"] 11. at smb.’s ~ (let’s meet at your ~) ["appropriate position"] 12. in; out of ~ (everything was in ~) ["seat"] 13. to take one’s ~ (they took their ~s) ["standing in a competition"] 14. to take a ~ (she took second ~ in the competition) (see also **second place**) 15. a ~ goes to (first ~ went to Smith) ["duty, function"] 16. smb.’s ~ to + inf. (it’s not my ~ to criticize them) ["stage"] ["step"] 17. in a ~ (in the first ~) ["(as at an institution or in a team)"] 18. to apply for, try for; get; have; turn down; turn smb. down for a ~ (she got a ~ at the university of her choice and turned down a ~ at another one) ["misc."] 19. to take ~ ("to happen – used typically of a planned occurrence"); to go ~s ("to be successful"); all over the ~ ("everywhere"); in ~ of ("instead of") (see also *birthplace = place of birth* at **birth**; *place of worship* at **worship I** *n.*; **workplace**)

place II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to put") to ~ above (to ~ one's family above all other concerns) 2. (d; tr.) ("to put") to ~ at (she ~d her car at our disposal) 3. (d; tr.) ("to present") to ~ before (to ~ evidence before a grand jury; to ~ a proposal before a committee) 4. (d; tr.) ("to put") to ~ in (to ~ one's confidence in smb.) 5. (D; tr.) to ~ with ("to find a home for") (to ~ a child with a family) 6. (P; tr.) ("to put") to ~ books on a table 7. (s) she ~d first in the race

placebo *n.* 1. to administer, give a ~ 2. (misc.) a ~ effect

placed *adj.* highly ~

plagiarism *n.* to be guilty of ~

plagiarize *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (she ~d the paragraph from a book)

plague I *n.* 1. bubonic ~ 2. a ~ spreads 3. an outbreak of (the) ~ 4. (misc.) to avoid smb. like the ~; a ~ on (a ~ on you both! you're as bad as each other!)

plague II *v.* (D; tr.) ("to bother") to ~ with (to ~ smb. with repeated requests)

plain I *adj.* 1. ~ to (the truth is ~ to everybody) 2. ~ to + inf. (the facts are ~ to see; it's ~ to see that she will never return) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ to everyone that she will never return) 4. (misc.) as ~ as day; or: as ~ as the nose on your face; to make smt. ~ (see also *plain vanilla* at **vanilla**)

plain II *n.* 1. a broad, vast; coastal ~ 2. on a ~

plaintiff *n.* to find for the ~

plait I *n.* ["braid"] in a ~ (they wore their hair in ~s)

plait II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ one's hair into pigtails)

plan I *n.* 1. to come up with, conceive, concoct, devise, lay, make a ~ 2. to cobble together, draw up, formulate, map out, work out a ~ 3. to outline, sketch out a ~ 4. to announce, unveil a ~ 5. to present, propose a ~ 6. to accept, approve a ~ 7. to carry out, execute, go ahead with, implement a ~ 8. to put a ~ into effect/operation 9. to abandon, drop, scrub; shelve a ~ 10. to reject, turn down a ~ 11. to foil, frustrate, thwart a ~ 12. a brilliant, ingenious; well-thought-out ~ 13. a feasible; realistic ~ 14. a complicated, elaborate; detailed; grandiose, sweeping ~ 15. an impracticable; impractical; unrealistic ~ 16. a contingency; master; tentative ~ 17. a secret; security ~ 18. a five-year; long-term; short-term ~ 19. (see **installment plan**) 20. a flight ~ 21. a floor, seating ~ 22. a health ~ ("health insurance"); a pension, retirement ~ 23. an easy-payment ~ 24. retirement; travel; wedding ~s (they have announced their wedding ~s) 25. a ~ calls for (smt.) 26. ~s materialize; succeed, work; go ahead 27. ~s fail 28. a ~ for (the mayor had a ~ for reducing traffic congestion) 29. a ~ to + inf. (the mayor had a ~ to reduce traffic congestion) 30. (misc.) to go according to ~ (things didn't quite go according to ~); to make ~s (for a wedding; for early retirement); the best-laid ~s (don't always succeed); a backup ~; ~ A and ~ B (if Plan A doesn't work we can always go to Plan B, our backup ~) (see also *keep a plan under wraps* at **wraps**)

plan II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for one's old age; to ~ for early retirement) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on early retirement; we ~ned on spending a month in Europe) 3. (E) we ~ to take early retirement; we ~ned to spend a month in Europe 4. (Q) we ~ned very carefully how we would budget for early retirement 5. (misc.) as ~ned (things didn't quite go as ~ned)

plan ahead *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for one's old age; for retirement)

plane I *n.* ["airplane"] 1. to board, get on, hop, take; get off a ~ 2. to charter a ~ 3. to go by, travel by ~ 4. to catch; miss a ~ 5. to change ~s (we changed ~s in Chicago) 6. to clear a ~ (for landing or takeoff) 7. a cargo; fighter ~ (see also entry for **airplane**)

plane II *n.* ["level surface"] 1. an inclined ~ 2. on a lofty ~

plane III *v.* (N; used with an adjective) to ~ a board smooth

plank *n.* ["board extending from a ship"] to walk the ~ ("to go to one's death") (see the Usage Note for **platform**)

planning *n.* 1. advance; careful; grandiose; long-range, long-term; short-range, short-term ~ 2. central; city; discharge; estate; family; financial; language; town (BE) ~ (see also *family planning* at **family**) 3. ~ for (~ for early retirement) 4. ~ to + inf. (~ to retire early)

plant I *n.* ["shrub, bush"] 1. to grow ~s 2. to water a ~ 3. an annual; biennial; climbing; decorative; exotic; perennial; pot; tropical ~ (see also *plant life* at **life**) 4. a ~ dies; grows ["factory"] ["utility"] 5. to manage, operate, run a ~ 6. to open a ~ 7. to close, shut down a ~ 8. a nuclear; power; waste-disposal ~ 9. at, in a ~ (she works at/in a waste-disposal ~) ["buildings"] ["equipment"] 10. (the) physical ~ (of an institution)

plant II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to place secretly") to ~on (the police ~ed evidence on her) 2. ("to sow") (D; tr.) to ~ in; with (to ~ a field with rye = to ~ rye in a field) 3. (misc.) to ~ an idea in smb.'s head; to ~ a kiss on smb.'s cheek

plantation *n.* a coffee; cotton; rubber; sugar; tea ~

planter *n.* a coffee; cotton; rubber; sugar; tea ~

plaque *n.* ["filmy deposit on teeth"] 1. to remove ~ (from teeth) 2. dental ~ 3. ~ accumulates, builds up, forms ["tablet"] 4. to put up; unveil a ~ (in smb.'s honor) 5. a commemorative, memorial ~

plaster I *n.* ["pasty composition"] 1. to apply ~ (to apply ~ to a wall) 2. to daub ~ (to daub ~ on a wall = to daub a wall with ~) 3. crumbling, falling ~ 4.

~ comes off, falls off, peels; sets [“pastelike mixture used for healing purposes”] 5. a mustard ~ [“tape”] 6. (BE) (a) sticking ~

plaster II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) (“to cover”) to ~ with (they ~ed the walls with notices) 2. (P; tr.) (“to put up”) to ~ notices all over the walls; they ~ed notices on every bulletin board

plastic *n.* laminated ~

plate *n.* [“dish”] 1. a cake; dinner; paper; salad; soup ~ 2. on a ~ (they ate all the rice on their ~s) [“plateful”] 3. a ~ of (they ate several ~s of rice) [“denture”] 4. a dental; lower; partial; upper ~ [“tag”] 5. a license (esp. AE), number (BE) ~ [“thin layer”] 6. armor; silver ~ [“container passed around for donations of money”] 7. to pass the ~ 8. a collection ~ [“geological feature”] 9. a tectonic ~ [“goal”] (esp. AE) 10. (baseball) home ~ USAGE NOTE: British black taxis bear both a licence plate (as a taxi) and a number plate (as a vehicle).

plateau *n.* 1. a high ~ 2. (misc.) to reach a ~ (“to cease making progress”)

platform *n.* [“raised stage”] 1. to get up on, mount (“ascend”); stand on a ~ 2. from; on a ~ (to speak from a ~) 3. a launching ~ [“flat surface”] 4. from a ~ (trains leave from that ~) [“statement of policies”] (esp. AE; BE prefers *manifesto*) 5. to draft, draw up a ~ 6. to adopt a ~ 7. a party; political ~ USAGE NOTES: (1) A political platform consists of various statements that are called planks. (2) In BE, the train for Birmingham leaves from platform 29. In AE, the train for Birmingham leaves from track 29.

platitude *n.* 1. to mouth, utter a ~ (he’s always mouthing ~s) 2. a well-worn ~ 3. (misc.) in ~s (to speak in well-worn ~s)

platoon *n.* 1. to form a ~ 2. to deploy a ~ 3. to command a ~ (a lieutenant commands a ~)

plaudits *n.* to earn, receive, win ~ (for) (to get (a lot of) ~ for reducing taxes)

plausible *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to assume that they will not accept our invitation) 2. ~ that + clause (it’s ~ that they will not accept our invitation)

play I *n.* [“stage presentation”] 1. to direct; do, present, produce, put on, stage; revive; write a ~ 2. to perform; rehearse a ~ 3. to see a ~ 4. to criticize, pan (colloq.); review a ~ 5. an historical; miracle; morality; mystery; nativity; one-act; passion; radio; TV ~; screenplay 6. a ~ closes; flops; opens; runs (the ~ ran for two years on Broadway) 7. (misc.) the ~ about the War got rave reviews; the ~ was a (smash) hit [“action, activity”] 8. to bring into ~ (to bring various forces into ~) 9. to come into ~ [“competition, playing”] 10. fair; rough; team ~ (see also **foul play**) 11. at; in; into; out of ~ (to put the ball into ~; the children were at ~) [“attempt to attract”] (colloq.) 12. to make a ~ for (he made a ~ for her) [“misc.”] 13. a ~ on words (“a pun”); rain stopped ~ (esp. BE); England were in the lead at close of ~ (see also **child’s play**)

play II *v.* 1. (“to compete”) to ~ fair; foul; rough 2. (C) (“to perform”) ~ a nice song for me; or: ~ me a nice song 3. (d; intr.) (“to compete”) to ~ against (to ~ against a strong opponent = to ~ with a strong opponent = to ~ a strong opponent; they ~ed (against) each other in the final) 4. (D; intr.) (“to amuse oneself”) to ~ at (she ~s at being a writer) 5. (d; intr.) (“to gamble”) to ~ for (to ~ for money) 6. (d; intr.) (“to perform”) to ~ for (she ~s for our team) 7. (d; intr.) to ~ for (“to attempt to obtain”) (to ~ for time) 8. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (“to exploit”) (to ~ on smb.’s fears) 9. (d; intr.) to ~ on (“to pun”) (to ~ on words) 10. (D; tr.) (“to do, make”) to ~ on (they ~ed a joke on us; she ~ed a trick on me) 11. (d; intr.) (“to perform”) to ~ to (to ~ to a full house) 12. (esp. tennis) (d; intr.) (“to direct one’s strokes”) to ~ to (to ~ to an opponent’s forehand) 13. (D; intr., tr.) (“to amuse oneself (with)”) to ~ with (to ~ with the children; to ~ a game with the children) 14. (L) (esp. in children’s language) (“to pretend”) let’s ~ that I’m the teacher and you’re the pupil 15. (O; can be used with one object) (“to oppose in”) I’ll ~ you a game of cards = I’ll ~ a game of cards with you 16. (s) (“to feign”) they ~ed dead 17. (misc.) to ~ smb. for a fool (“to ridicule smb.”); to ~ (it) by ear (“to improvise”); to ~ into smb.’s hands (“to come under smb.’s control”)

play about (BE) see **play around**

play along *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (we had to ~ with their various proposals)

play around *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

play back *v.* (B) she ~ed the tape back to us = she ~ed back the tape to us

player *n.* [“athlete”] 1. a clean; dirty ~ 2. a key ~ [“electronic instrument”] 3. a cassette; compact disc; record ~ [“participant”] 4. a key; major ~ (a major ~ in the international futures market) (see also ¬*football player/footballer*¬ at **football**; *tennis player* at **tennis**)

playground *n.* 1. (BE) an adventure ~ (“children’s playground designed for spontaneous play”) 2. a city, municipal, public; school ~ 3. in, on a ~

playing *n.* clean; dirty ~

play off *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ against (“to set against”) (she ~ed one side off against the other = she ~ed off one side against the other)

playoffs *n.* to get/go through to the; get into, get to, reach the ~

play up *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (“to flatter”) (to ~ to the boss)

plea *n.* 1. to enter, make, put forward a ~ 2. to answer, respond to a ~ 3. to deny, reject a ~ 4. (slang) (esp. AE) to cop a ~ (“to plead guilty to a lesser charge”) 5. an ardent, emotional, fervent, impassioned, moving, passionate, tearful; urgent ~ 6. (to enter) a guilty ~; (to enter) a ~ of not guilty; more usu. is: to plead guilty; to plead not guilty 7. a ~ of insanity 8. a ~ for (a ~ for mercy) (see also *plea bargaining* at **bargaining**)

plead *v.* 1. to ~ fervently 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for; with (to ~ with the judge for mercy; she ~ed with the judge to show mercy for her crime) 3. (E) she ~ed to be shown mercy for her crime 4. (legal) (s) to ~ guilty (to a charge) 5. (legal) (s) to ~ not guilty (to a charge)

pleasant *adj.* 1. ~ to (she is ~ to everyone) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to lie in the sun = it's ~ lying in the sun; she is ~ to work with = it is ~ to work with her = it is ~ working with her = she is a ~ person to work with)

pleasantry *n.* to exchange ~tries

please *v.* 1. to ~ greatly, highly, very much 2. (R) it ~d us greatly to learn that you could accept our invitation; it ~d us greatly that you could accept our invitation 3. (misc.) ~ be seated

pleased *adj.* 1. greatly, highly, very ~ 2. ~ about, at, by, with (we were very ~ by your acceptance of our invitation) 3. ~ to + inf. (we were very ~ to learn of your acceptance of our invitation; we are ~ to be here; (I'm) ~ to meet you) 4. ~ that + clause (we were very ~ that you could accept our invitation) 5. (misc.) as ~ as Punch ("very pleased")

pleasing *adj.* ~ to

pleasure *n.* 1. to afford, give, provide ~ (it gives me great ~ to present the next speaker) 2. to feel; find, have, take ~ in 3. to derive, get ~ from 4. to forgo a ~ 5. (a) genuine, great, real; rare ~ 6. a dubious; perverse; vicarious ~ 7. a ~ for (working here is a ~ for me) 8. a ~ to + inf. (it's a ~ to work with them = it's a ~ working with them = they are a ~ to work with; it is a ~ to teach these children = it is a ~ teaching these children = these children are a ~ to teach; it was a ~ for me to teach these children) 9. at smb.'s ~ (to serve at the president's ~) 10. for ~ (she reads history for ~) 11. with ~ (I accept with ~) 12. (misc.) may I have the ~ of your company a little while longer?

plebiscite *n.* 1. to conduct, have, hold a ~ on (to hold a ~ on the status of a territory) 2. a ~ to + inf. (to hold a ~ to determine the status of a territory) 3. (misc.) to decide (the status of a territory) by ~

pledge I *n.* 1. to make, take a ~ 2. to give smb. a/one's ~ 3. to fulfill, honor, redeem one's ~ 4. to break, renege on, repudiate, violate a ~ 5. a broken ~ 6. a firm; sacred, solemn ~ 7. a campaign, election ~ (politicians sometimes break their campaign ~s) 8. a ~ to + inf. (she made a solemn ~ not to drink again) 9. a ~ that + clause (she made a solemn ~ that she would not drink again) 10. (misc.) to take the ~ ("to vow to stop drinking")

pledge II *v.* 1. (A) she ~d her support to us; or: she ~d us her support 2. (d; tr.) to ~ as (they ~d their assets as collateral/security for the loan) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to (she was ~d to secrecy) 4. (E) she ~ed not to drink again 5. (H; refl.) she ~ed herself not to drink again 6. (L; to) she ~d (to them) that she would not drink again

plenty *determiner*, *n., pronoun* 1. ~ of (~ of money) 2. ~ to + inf. (she gave us ~ to do) 3. (formal) in ~ (to live in ~) 4. (formal) of ~ (a time of ~) (see also *plenty more* at **more II**)

pliers *n.* a pair of ~

plod *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ through ("to go through laboriously") (to ~ through a long reading list) 2. (P; intr.) ("to move") they ~ded slowly along the road

plod away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at one's job)

plot I *n.* ["conspiracy"] 1. to devise, hatch; weave a ~ 2. to foil, thwart a ~ 3. to expose, uncover a ~ 4. a cunning, diabolic(al); sinister ~ 5. a ~ against (to expose a ~ against the government) 6. a ~ to + inf. (to expose a ~ to overthrow the government) ["story"] 7. to build, construct the ~ (of a novel) 8. a contrived; intricate ~ 9. a simple ~ 10. the ~ develops; thickens 11. (misc.) a twist, wrinkle in the ~ (there was an unexpected wrinkle in the ~) (see also *plot line* at **line I** *n.*) ["piece of ground"] 12. a burial, cemetery; garden ~; a ~ of land

plot II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ against, with (to ~ against the government with other conspirators) 2. (E) they ~ted to overthrow the government 3. (Q) they were ~ting how to overthrow the government

plow, plough I *n.* to pull a ~

plow, plough II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to strike") (the racing car skidded and ~ed into the crowd) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ through ("to go through laboriously") (to ~ through a long reading list; to ~ through a crowd; to ~ through deep snow)

plow back, plough back *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ all profits into the firm)

ploy *n.* 1. to resort to, use a ~ 2. a clever, ingenious; cynical ~ 3. a ~ fails; works 4. a ~ for (it was a clever ~ for getting money) 5. a ~ to + inf. (it was a clever ~ to get money)

pluck I *n.* ["courage"] 1. to display, show ~ 2. to require, take ~ (standing up to the boss took a lot of ~) 3. the ~ to + inf. (he had enough ~ to stand up to the boss)

pluck II *v.* 1. (C) ("to pull") ~ a nice flower for me; or: ~ me a nice flower 2. (d; intr.) ("to tug") to ~ at 3. (D; tr.) ("to pull") to ~ from, off (to ~ a flower from a bush; to ~ feathers from a chicken = to ~ a chicken)

plug I *n.* ["electrical fitting"] 1. to insert, put a ~ into a socket 2. a ~ fits into a socket ["device carrying an electric current"] 3. a spark, sparking (BE) ~ ["word of praise"] (colloq.) 4. to put in a ~ for ["misc."] (colloq.) 5. to pull the ~ ("to cut off a life-support system"); to pull the ~ on smt. ("to put an end to smt.") (see also *plug hole* at **hole**)

plug II *v.* (d; intr., tr.) to ~ into (the lamp ~s into this socket so ~ it into the socket now!; to ~ into a computer network; (also fig.) how can young people ~ into the world of work?)

plug away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at ("to work at laboriously") (to ~ at a job)

plumber *n.* 1. to call (in) a ~ 2. a master ~

plumbing *n.* 1. to install, put in ~ 2. indoor ~ 3. ~ can leak

plummet *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to; towards (to ~ to earth)

plump I *adj.* pleasingly ~

plump II *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ for ("to support")

plump down *v.* (colloq.) (D; refl., intr., tr.) to ~ in, into, on (she ~ed herself down into the chair)

plunge I *n.* ["risk"] (colloq.) 1. to take the ~ ["act of plunging"] 2. to take a ~ 3. a ~ into (to take a ~ into the water)

plunge II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to throw oneself") to ~ from, off; to (to ~ to one's death from a cliff) 2. (d; intr.) ("to dive"); ("to rush") to ~ into (to ~ into the water; to ~ into war) 3. (d; tr.) ("to throw"); ("to thrust") to ~ into (the room was ~ed into darkness; to ~ a dagger into smb.'s heart) 4. (d; intr., tr.) ("to throw oneself"; "to thrust") to ~ through (she ~d through the ice; he ~d the spear through the barrier)

plural *n.* in the ~

plurality *n.* by a ~ (AE: to win the election by a ~)

plus *n.* 1. a big ~ (it was a big ~ in her favor) 2. (misc.) to weigh the ~es and the minuses

ply *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to travel") to ~ between (these ships ~ between the two cities) 2. (d; tr.) ("to provide") to ~ with (they plied him with liquor)

pneumonia *n.* 1. to come down with, contract, develop, get, go down with (BE); have ~ 2. bronchial; viral ~

poach *v.* (D; intr., tr.) ("to hunt illegally on smb.'s property") to ~ on, upon (to ~ on smb.'s land)

pocket *n.* 1. to empty; fill one's ~s 2. to turn out one's ~s 3. to pick smb.'s ~ 4. a back; breast; coat; hip; inside; jacket; pants (AE), trouser; shirt; side; vest (AE), waistcoat; watch ~ 5. an air ~ 6. (misc.) (BE) in ~ ("with a profit"); out of ~ ("with a loss") USAGE NOTE: In AE, *vest-pocket* can be used of something small and compact: *a vest-pocket dictionary*.

pocketbook *n.* ["handbag"] (AE) to carry a ~

podium *n.* 1. to get up on, mount a ~ 2. to stand at/on a ~ 3. from; on a ~

poem *n.* 1. to compose, write a ~ 2. to memorize; read; recite; scan a ~ 3. a dramatic; epic, heroic; lyric; narrative; prose ~ 4. an anthology; collection of ~s

poet *n.* 1. the ~ laureate (how many ~s laureate have there been? = how many ~ laureates have there been?) 2. a poet-in-residence (how many poets-in-residence have there been at this university?) 3. a published ~

poetry *n.* 1. to compose, write ~ 2. to memorize; read; recite; scan ~ 3. dramatic; epic, heroic; lyric; narrative; romantic ~ 4. an anthology; collection of ~

pogrom *n.* to carry out; instigate; organize a ~

point I *n.* ["location, position, place, spot"] 1. to arrive at, reach a ~ 2. an assembly; rallying ~ 3. a central; focal; salient; vantage ~ 4. an entry; crisis; flash; jumping-off; starting; turning ~ 5. a cutoff; fixed ~ 6. an acupuncture; pressure ~ 7. a vanishing ~ 8. the ~ of no return 9. at a ~ (at that ~ in history; at this ~ in time (considered a cliché)) 10. for a ~ (for all ~s east) 11. from; to a ~ (from this ~ to that ~) ["level"] ["degree"] 12. to arrive at, reach a ~ 13. a high; low ~ (she has reached the high ~ in/of her career) 14. the boiling; freezing; melting ~ (see also **boiling-point**; **freezing-point**; **melting-point**; **turning point**) 15. the breaking; saturation ~ 16. up to a ~, to a ~ (AE) (to a certain ~ they are right) ["step, stage"] 17. at, on the ~ (they were on the ~ of leaving; the commissioners were at a delicate ~ in the negotiations) ["argument"] ["topic"] 18. to bring up, make, raise a ~ 19. to argue, debate; cover, discuss; emphasize, stress, underscore; explain; illustrate; keep to; prove, win; review a ~ 20. to belabor, labor; strain, stretch a ~ 21. to drive, hammer, press a ~ home = press home a ~; to make one's ~; to get a ~ across 22. to concede, yield a ~ 23. a controversial; crucial; debating; fine; major; minor; moot; (unique) selling; sore; sticking; subtle; talking; telling ~ 24. a ~ comes up (the same ~ has come up several times) 25. the ~ that + clause (she made the ~ that further resistance was useless) 26. beside the ~ (her remarks were beside the ~) 27. on a ~ (on that ~ we disagree) 28. to the ~ (to speak to the ~; she was brief and to the ~) 29. (misc.) to come to the ~; ~ by ~; a good ("convincing") ~; to have a ~ ("to have a convincing argument") ["core, essence"] 30. to get, see the ~ (she never did see the ~ of the joke) 31. to come to, to get to the ~ 32. to miss the ~ (we missed the ~ of the story) ["emphasis"] 33. to make a ~ of (he made a ~ of repeating her name several times = he made it a ~ to repeat her name several times) ["distinguishing feature"] 34. smb.'s bad, weak; good, strong ~s ["punctuation mark"] 35. a decimal; exclamation (AE) ~ ["scoring unit"] 36. to score a ~ (also fig.); to rack up ~s 37. to shave ~s ("to manipulate the results of a contest for illegal purposes") 38. (esp. tennis) a game; match; set ~ 39. by ~s (to lead by five ~s) 40. (boxing) on ~s (to win on ~s) ["regard"] 41. in ~ of (in ~ of law; in ~ of fact) ["aim, object, purpose, reason"] 42. to get, see the ~ 43. to have a ~ 44. a ~ in (there is no ~ in complaining = there is no ~ complaining) 45. a ~ to (there is no ~ to your complaining) 46. (misc.) "what's the ~?" "the (whole) ~ is that our party cannot win the election" ["tapered end"] 47. a sharp ~ (this pencil has a sharp ~) ["socket"] (BE) 48. a cooker; mains; power ~ ["misc."] 49. at the ~ of a gun = at gunpoint; a Brownie ~ (colloq.) ("ingratiation in the eyes of a superior") (to get/make Brownie ~s); a case in ~ ("a pertinent case"); a ~ of order; the cardinal ~s of the compass; the speaker kept wandering off the ~; stocks have risen (by) several (percentage) ~s (see also **point of view**; **standpoint**; **vantage point**; **viewpoint**)

point II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at, to, towards (“to draw attention to”) (she ~ed at me) 2. (d; tr.) (“to aim”) to ~ at (to ~ a gun at smb.) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ to (“to cite”) (they ~ed to poverty as a major problem; the evidence ~s to him as the criminal) 4. (P; intr., tr.) (“to aim, direct”) the needle ~s north; to ~ a boat downstream; she ~ed the muzzle towards the door (see also *point the way to smt.* at **way**)

pointers *n.* ["advice"] 1. to give smb. ~ on 2. to ask for; get ~ on

pointless *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it’s ~ (for you) to complain = it’s ~ (your) complaining)

point of view *n.* 1. to have, hold a ~ 2. a fresh; optimistic, positive ~ 3. a negative, pessimistic ~ 4. a ~ that + clause (he explained his ~ that taxes should be increased) 5. from smb.’s ~ (from his ~, taxes should be increased) (see also **view I** *n.*; **viewpoint**)

point out *v.* 1. (B) she ~ed out the sights to us = she ~ed the sights out to us 2. (L; to) they were at pains to ~ out (to us) that such investments would be risky 3. (Q; to) I ~ed out to them where I work

poise I *n.* 1. to keep, maintain one’s ~ 2. to lose; recover, regain one’s ~ 3. the ~ to + inf. (do you have enough ~ to speak without notes?)

poise II *v.* (D; refl.) (“to brace oneself”) to ~ for (she ~d herself for the ordeal)

poised *adj.* ["ready"] 1. ~ for; on the brink of (~ for action; ~ on the brink of action/acting) 2. ~ to + inf. (they were ~ to act) (see also *poised to spring* at **spring II** *v.*)

poison I *n.* 1. to administer, give (a) ~ 2. to swallow, take ~ 3. (a) deadly, lethal; slow; strong ~ 4. rat ~ (to spread rat ~)

poison II *v.* to ~ smb.’s mind against smb.

poison gas *n.* to use ~ against

poisoning *n.* blood; food; lead; ptomaine ~

poke I *n.* ["punch"] (colloq.) to give smb. a ~ (in the eye)

poke II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at (“to jab”) (he kept ~ing at me) 2. (D; tr.) (“to jab”) to ~ in (to ~ smb. in the ribs) 3. (d; intr., tr.) (“to make by poking”) to ~ in (to ~ a hole in a wall) 4. (d; tr.) (“to extend”) to ~ out of (to ~ one’s head out of the window) 5. (d; intr., tr.) (“to make by poking”) to ~ through (to ~ a hole through a wall) 6. (P; tr.) (“to thrust”) to ~ one’s head through a window 7. (misc.) to ~ fun at smb.

poke about see **poke around**

poke around *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ in (“to look through”) (stop ~ing around in my desk)

poker *n.* to play ~

polarization *n.* ~ between (there is increasing ~ of the two ethnic communities into opposing camps)

polarize *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ into (the two ethnic communities have increasingly been ~d into opposing camps)

pole I *n.* ["long slender shaft"] 1. to put up a ~ 2. a breakaway; fishing; ski; tent; totem ~ 3. a flagpole; telegraph; telephone (AE); utility (AE) ~

pole II *n.* ["end of the earth’s axis"] 1. the North; South Pole (a camp was set up at the North Pole) 2. a celestial; magnetic ~ ["terminal of a battery"] 3. a negative; positive ~ ["misc."] 4. ~s apart; or: at opposite ~s (“diametrically opposed”); from ~ to ~ (“Out of the night that covers me, Black as the Pit from ~ to ~” – W.E. Henley (1849–1930), “Invictus”)

police *n.* 1. to call the ~ 2. border; campus (US); city, municipal; local; military; mounted; riot; secret; security; state ~ 3. (misc.) the ~ are investigating the crime, have detained and are questioning several suspects, have made no arrests, but are appealing for witnesses; however, a man is helping ~ with their enquiries (BE) (see also *police brutality* at **brutality**; *police chief* at **chief**; *police department* at **department**; *police presence* at **presence**)

policeman *n.* 1. a military ~ (abbreviated as *MP*) 2. see **police officer**

police officer *n.* an off-duty; plainclothes; uniformed ~

policewoman see **police officer**

policy I *n.* ["plan"] ["principle"] 1. to adopt, establish, formulate, set a ~ 2. to adhere to, follow, pursue a ~ 3. to carry out, implement a ~ 4. to develop, form, frame, make, shape (a) ~ (see also *policymaker* at **maker**) 5. to change, modify, revise (a) ~ 6. to violate (a) ~ 7. a clear, clear-cut; prudent; sound, wise ~ 8. a friendly; open-door ~ 9. a conciliatory; flexible ~ 10. a cautious; deliberate; established, firm, set ~ 11. a controversial; divisive; foolish; ill-conceived; rigid; wait-and-see ~ 12. a scorched-earth ~ 13. a long-range, long-term; short-range, short-term ~ 14. an official; standard ~ 15. an established; written ~ 16. (a) company; personnel ~ 17. (a) domestic; economic; educational; financial, fiscal, monetary; foreign; government, public; military; national; population; social; tax ~ 18. a ~ on, towards 19. a ~ to + inf. (it is our established ~ to treat everyone fairly) 20. a ~ that + clause; subj. (it is our established ~ that everyone be/should be/is (BE) treated fairly)

policy II *n.* ["contract for insurance"] 1. to take out a ~ 2. to issue, write up a ~ 3. to reinstate a ~ 4. to cancel a ~ 5. an endowment; homeowner’s; insurance; lifetime; straight life; term ~ 6. a ~ matures (see also *policy-holder* at **holder**) ["contract"] 7. a service ~ (we have a service ~ for all of our major appliances)

polio, poliomyelitis *n.* ["infantile paralysis"] 1. to contract, develop, get; have ~ 2. to prevent ~

polish *n.* ["gloss"] 1. to apply ~ 2. floor; French (BE); furniture; shoe; silver ~ 3. nail ~ (BE also has *nail varnish*)

polite *adj.* 1. ~ to (interrupting people who are speaking is not ~ to them) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is not ~ to interrupt someone who is speaking; it was not ~ of them not to respond)

politeness *n.* 1. studied ~ 2. ~ to 3. out of ~ (he did it out of ~ to her)

politic *adj.* ["expedient"] ~ to + inf. (it would not be ~ to get involved in their affairs)

political fences *n.* ["political standing"] to mend one's ~

politician *n.* an astute, shrewd; crafty, crooked, cunning, scheming, wily; glib; great; hack; honest; prominent; senior ~

politics *n.* 1. to go into ~ 2. to play ~ 3. to talk ~ 4. consensus; electoral; identity; local, parish-pump (BE); national; partisan, party; pork-barrel; power; practical; sexual ~

poll *n.* 1. to carry out, conduct, take a ~ 2. an exit ~ (taken of voters leaving the voting booths) 3. a straw ("unofficial") ~ 4. a public-opinion ~ 5. a national, nationwide ~ 6. a ~ among, of (to conduct a ~ among students) 7. in a ~ (their strong feelings came out in several ~s; he's leading in all the ~s) (see also **polls**; *poll rating* at **rating**)

pollination *n.* cross ~

polls *n.* 1. to go to the ~ (in order to vote) 2. the ~ close; open (at a certain time) 3. at the ~ (to be defeated at the ~) (see also **poll**)

pollution *n.* 1. to cause; control ~ 2. air; environmental; light; noise, sound; water ~

polo *n.* 1. to play ~ 2. water ~

polyandry *n.* to practice ~

polygamy *n.* to practice ~

polygraph test *n.* 1. to administer, give a ~ 2. to subject smb. to a ~ 3. to take, undergo a ~ 4. to fail; pass a ~

polyp *n.* 1. to remove a ~ 2. a benign; malignant ~

pomp *n.* 1. ceremonial ~ 2. ~ and circumstance

pond *n.* 1. to drain a ~ 2. a deep; shallow; stagnant ~ 3. a duck; fish ~

ponder *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ on, over, upon (to ~ over a problem) 2. (Q) I ~ed how we could finish on time

pontificate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, on (he'll ~ for hours on just about anything!)

pony *n.* 1. to ride a ~ 2. a pit; polo; Shetland; wild ~ (see also **horse**)

pool I *n.* ["joint enterprise"] 1. to form a ~ 2. a car; stenographic (AE), typing ~ ["group of vehicles"] 3. a motor ~ ["total of money bet by gamblers"] 4. a football ~ (BE has *the pools*) ["billiards"] 5. to play, shoot ~ ["stock, supply"] 6. a gene ~

pool II *n.* ["basin"] 1. an indoor; outdoor; paddling (BE), wading (AE); swimming ~ ["small body of water"] 2. a deep; empty; shallow; stagnant ~ (see also *in a pool of blood* at **blood**)

pools see **pool I** *n.*

poor *adj.* 1. ~ at (the country is ~ at exploiting its natural resources) 2. ~ in (the country is ~ in natural resources) 3. (misc.) rich and ~ (alike)

pop I *adv.* (colloq.) to go ~ ("to make a short explosive sound")

pop II *v.* (P; intr., tr.) we have to ~ into the store for a minute; ~ your head out of the window and see if it's raining; to ~ (a)round the corner; could you ~ this thermometer in your mouth for me, please?

popular *adj.* 1. ~ as (she was ~ as a nightclub singer) 2. ~ among, with (she was ~ with teenagers) 3. ~ for (she was ~ for her singing)

popularity *n.* 1. to acquire, gain, win ~ 2. to enjoy ~ 3. to lose ~ 4. declining; great; growing, increasing ~ 5. ~ declines, slips; grows, increases 6. ~ among, with; as; for (she enjoyed great ~ with teenagers as a singer)

populated *adj.* 1. densely, heavily; sparsely, thinly ~ 2. by, with (an area densely ~ with both people and wildlife)

population *n.* 1. a decreasing, shrinking; dense; excess, overflow; expanding, growing, increasing, rising; sparse; stable; transient ~ 2. an aging; civilian; foreign-born; indigenous; local; native-born; rural; urban ~ (see also *population control* at **control**; *a population explosion* at **explosion**; *population level(s)* at **level**)

porch *n.* 1. (AE) a back; front ~ (BE uses *veranda*) 2. (AE) a sun ~ (BE has *sun lounge*) 3. (AE) a screened, screened-in ~ (BE uses *veranda*) 4. (BE) a church ~ 5. in, on a ~

pore *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ over ("to examine") (to ~ over a document)

pores *n.* blocked, clogged, closed; open ~

pork *n.* 1. to roast ~ 2. roast ~ 3. a loin; piece, slice of ~

pornography, porn *n.* 1. to peddle ~ 2. explicit, hard-core; soft, soft-core ~

porpoise *n.* 1. a school of ~s 2. a young ~ is a calf 3. a female ~ is a cow 4. a male ~ is a bull

porridge *n.* (esp. BE) 1. to cook, make, prepare ~ 2. a bowl of ~ 3. (misc.) (BE; slang) to do ~ ("to spend time in prison")

port I *n.* ["harbor"] 1. to clear, leave ~ 2. to come into, make, reach ~ ("to arrive at a port") 3. to call at a ~ 4. a fishing; free; home ~ 5. in; into ~ (to put into ~) 6. (misc.) a ~ of call; a ~ of entry; any ~ in a storm! ("(take) whatever help is available in an emergency")

port II *n.* ["type of wine"] ruby; tawny; vintage ~

portfolio *n.* ["a set of shares"] 1. an investment ~ ["area of responsibility of a government minister"] 2. a minister without ~

portion *n.* 1. a generous; individual; small ~ (of) 2. equal ~s (of)

portion out *v.* (B) they ~ed the food out to the needy = they ~ed out the food to the needy

portrait *n.* 1. to do; draw; paint; retouch a ~ 2. to commission a ~ 3. to frame; hang; mount a ~ 4. a composite; family; full-length; group; idealized; realistic, warts-and-all ~ 5. (misc.) to pose for, sit for one's ~

portray *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ smb. as a hero) 2. (J) the artist ~ed them looking out at the sea

pose I *n.* to assume, strike; hold a ~

pose II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ as ("to pretend to be") (to ~ as an expert) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for ("to serve as a model for") (to ~ for an artist) (see also *to ~ a threat to smb./smt.* at **threat**)

posit *v.* (formal) (L) her book ~s that the soul and the spirit are distinct

position I *n.* ["posture"] 1. to assume, take; change a ~ 2. an awkward, uncomfortable; comfortable ~ (standing in an uncomfortable ~) 3. a kneeling; lotus; lying; prone; reclining; sitting; squatting; standing; straddle, straddling; supine; upright ~ 4. the fetal, foetal ~ ["attitude"] 5. to adopt, assume, take a ~ 6. a controversial; extreme, extremist; firm; flexible; hostile; middle-of-the-road, moderate; radical; strong; uncompromising; untenable; weak ~ 7. an official; unofficial ~ 8. a ~ on (to take a ~ on foreign aid) 9. a ~ that + clause (they took the ~ that further aid would be useless) ["site"] ["military site"] 10. to attack, overrun, storm a ~ 11. to consolidate; hold, maintain; occupy, take up; regain a ~ 12. to give up, lose, relinquish, surrender, yield a ~ 13. a defensive; dominant; enemy; favorable; fortified; impregnable; key; powerful, strong; unfortified; untenable, vulnerable, weak ~ ["place"] ["situation"] 14. to occupy, take a ~ 15. to jockey for, maneuver for ~ 16. an embarrassing; ludicrous; unenviable ~ 17. a dominant; enviable; high, leading, pre-eminent; prominent; monopoly; responsible; unique ~ (to occupy a prominent ~) 18. a legal; political; social ~ 19. a ~ to + inf. (we may be in a ~ to help you) 20. from a certain ~ (they negotiated from a ~ of strength) 21. in a ~ (she is in a ~ to know) 22. (misc.) a ~ of power; a ~ of strength; a ~ of weakness ["proper place"] 23. in ~ (the players were in ~) 24. out of ~ ["job"] 25. to create a (new) ~ 26. to apply for, look for, seek a ~ 27. to find, get, land, take; have a ~ 28. to fill a ~ 29. to hold, hold down a ~ 30. to give up, quit; resign from a ~ 31. to lose a ~ 32. a demanding ~ 33. a permanent; temporary ~ 34. a teaching; tenured; tenure-track ~ 35. a government; official ~ 36. a managerial; senior ~ 37. a ~ as; in; with (she holds a responsible ~ as an executive secretary in/with a law firm) ["misc."] 38. "which ~ does he play?" "shortstop"; (as in chess) a drawn; losing; winning ~ (see also *position paper* at **paper**)

position II *v.* 1. (H) they ~ed the bomb to go off when the first car reached the gate 2. (P; refl., tr.) I ~ed myself near the entrance; observers were ~ed along the ridges

positive *adj.* 1. ~ about, of (they were ~ of the outcome) 2. ~ that + clause (they were ~ that their party would win) (see also *test positive* at **test II** *v.*)

possess *v.* (H) what ever ~ed you to do it?

possession *n.* 1. to gain, get, take ~ of (to take ~ of many priceless antiques) 2. to come into ~ of many priceless antiques 3. in ~ of (they are in ~ of many priceless antiques) 4. in smb.'s ~ (they have in their ~ many priceless antiques)

possessions *n.* 1. smb.'s earthly; material; personal ~ 2. smb.'s cherished; priceless; valuable ~ 3. a country's overseas/colonial ~

possibility *n.* 1. to consider, entertain; face; raise a ~ 2. to discount, dismiss, eliminate, exclude, rule out a ~ 3. a distinct, good, real, strong ~ 4. a remote, slim ~ 5. little; no ~ 6. a ~ of (there is a strong ~ of snow but no ~ of sunshine) 7. a ~ that + clause (there's a strong ~ that it will snow) 8. (misc.) within the realm of ~; to reject a ~ out of hand

possible *adj.* 1. easily, perfectly, very; humanly ~ 2. ~ for (anything is ~ for them) 3. ~ to + inf. (it is not ~ for them to predict the future; it is not ~ to control that child) 4. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that we will be able to attend)

possum *n.* (colloq.) to play ~ ("to pretend to be asleep")

post I *n.* ["mail"] 1. (BE) see **mail I** 2. (UK) first-class; free; second-class ~ 3. (CE) parcel ~ 4. (BE) by return of ~ (AE has *by return mail*)

post II *v.* (BE) 1. (A) she ~ed the book to me; or: she ~ed me the book 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (the letter was ~ed from London to Edinburgh) (AE has **mail II**)

post III *n.* ["station"] 1. a command; listening; observation; trading ~ ["place of duty"] ["job, position"] 2. to leave; quit; take (up) a ~ (he left his ~ as CEO of a multinational to take up one with an NGO) 3. at one's ~ (he remained at his ~ until the end; to be asleep at one's ~)

post IV *v.* 1. (esp. BE) (d; tr.) ("to assign") to ~ to (she was ~ed to Berlin) 2. (P; tr.) ("to place, position") they ~ed him at the gate; I was ~ed near the door

post V *n.* ["pole"] 1. a starting ~ (at a horse race) 2. (misc.) from pillar to ~ ("from one situation to another without letup"); (BE) to pip at the ~ ("to overtake and defeat at the very end") (see also **last post**)

postage *n.* 1. to pay the ~ 2. the return ~ 3. ~ due; ~ for; ~ paid 4. (misc.) ~ and packing

postcard *n.* 1. to send a ~ 2. to drop smb. a ~ 3. a picture ~ 4. on a ~

posted *adj.* to keep smb. ~

poster *n.* 1. to mount, put up a ~ 2. to take down a ~ 3. a campaign ~ 4. on a ~

posterior *adj.* (formal) ["after, later"] ~ to

posterity *n.* preserved for ~

postgraduate work *n.* to do ~

posting *n.* (esp. BE) 1. to accept, get; refuse, turn down; take up a ~ 2. a ~ to (she managed to get a ~ to Berlin)

postmaster *n.* the ~ general

postmortem *n.* to do, hold, perform a ~ (on) (to perform a ~ on the murder victim) (also fig.) (to do a ~ on the failed project)

postpone *v.* 1. to ~ indefinitely 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to, until (the concert has been ~d (from Monday) to

Wednesday) 3. (G) they ~d holding the concert because of the weather 4. (misc.) the concert has been ~d (for) two days because of the weather

postscript *n.* 1. to add a ~ 2. a ~ to

postulate I *n.* (formal) a ~ that + clause (their ~ that the collision had been caused by fog proved to be true)

postulate II *v.* (formal) (L) they ~d that the collision had been caused by fog

posture I *n.* 1. to adopt, assume; maintain a ~ 2. a bad; erect, upright; good; slouching ~ 3. a defense; political ~

posture II *v.* (D; intr.) (“to pretend”) to ~ as

pot I *n.* 1. (fig.) a melting ~ 2. a pepper ~ (BE; AE has *pepper shaker*) 3. a chamber ~ 4. a coffeepot; teapot (is there any more coffee in the coffeepot?) 5. (misc.) to scour (the) ~s and pans; to go to ~ (“to be ruined”)

pot II *n.* (colloq.) [″marijuana″] to smoke ~

potato *n.* 1. to bake; boil; fry; mash; peel; roast; sauté ~es 2. a baked, jacket (esp. BE) ~ 3. a baking; sweet ~ 4. chipped (BE), French-fried (AE); scalloped ~es 5. mashed ~es, mashed ~ (esp. BE) 6. (misc.) a couch ~ (who sits around all the time watching TV)

potential *n.* 1. to develop; realize, reach one’s (full) ~ 2. to have (great) ~ 3. a ~ as; for (to reach one’s full ~ as a musician; to have the ~ for true greatness) 4. ~ to + inf. (to have the ~ to achieve true greatness)

potion *n.* a love; magic; sleeping ~

potluck *n.* [″whatever is offered (esp. to eat)″] to take ~

potshot *n.* (colloq.) [″critical remark″] to take a ~ at

potter *v.* (BE; AE has *putter*) 1. (d; intr.) to ~ about (to ~ about the house) 2. (misc.) he loves ~ing about in his garden

pottery *n.* to glaze ~

potty *adj.* (colloq.) (esp. BE) [″crazy″] ~ about

pouch *n.* 1. an ammunition; tobacco ~ 2. (a) diplomatic ~ (the top-secret letter was sent by diplomatic ~) (AE; BE has *diplomatic bag*)

poultice *n.* to apply a ~ (to)

pounce *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (the cat ~d on the mouse)

pound I *n.* [″enclosure″] a dog ~

pound II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against, at (to ~ at the door; the enemy’s artillery was ~ing (away) at our positions) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ into (I’ve been trying to ~ some facts into their heads) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a table)

pound III *n.* 1. a ~ sterling 2. a falling; rising; strong; weak ~ (the international markets experienced difficulties with the falling ~) 3. (misc.) the dollar was strong against the ~ (see also *pound sign* at **sign I** *n.*)

pour *v.* 1. (C) she ~ed (out) a cool drink for me; or: she ~ed me (out) a cool drink 2. (d; intr.) to ~ down (tears ~ed down her cheeks) 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ from (blood ~ed (out) from the gaping wound; she ~ed (out) the solution from the large flask into the even larger one = she ~ed the solution (out) from the large flask into the even larger one) 4. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ into (water ~ed (out) into the pit) 5. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ out of (blood ~ed out of the gaping wound; the water ~ed out of the tank into the street; the spectators ~ed out of the stadium onto the parking lot) 6. (d; tr.) to ~ over (to ~ gravy over meat) (see also *pour out one’s heart to smb.* at **heart**)

pout *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, at

poverty *n.* 1. to breed ~ (illiteracy breeds ~) 2. to alleviate; eliminate, eradicate, wipe out ~ 3. abject, dire, extreme, grinding, severe ~ 4. ~ of (his work exhibits a certain ~ of invention) 5. in ~ (to live in grinding ~)

poverty line *n.* above; below the ~ (many people live below the ~)

powder *n.* 1. to put on ~ 2. baby; dusting; face; talcum ~ 3. baking; curry; garlic ~ 4. bleaching; scouring ~ 5. tooth ~ 6. gunpowder; smokeless ~ 7. (misc.) (slang) to take a ~ (“to run off unexpectedly”); (colloq.) to keep one’s ~ dry (“to remain calm”)

power *n.* [″authority″] 1. to assume, gain, take; concentrate, consolidate; exercise, have, hold, wield; share ~ 2. to abuse; seize usurp ~ 3. to delegate; give up, relinquish; lose; transfer ~ 4. emergency; executive; political ~ 5. discretionary ~s 6. ~ over (they seized ~ over several provinces) 7. the ~ to + inf. (the prime minister has the ~ to dissolve parliament) 8. in; into; out of ~ (the government in ~; to come into ~ and go out of ~ again) 9. (misc.) the ~ behind the throne; the corridors of ~ (where the real decisions are made); does ~ really rest with/reside in the people? [″dominance″] 10. the balance of ~ (see also **balance of power**) 11. to have smb. in one’s ~ 12. absolute ~ 13. ~ corrupts (“Power tends to corrupt and absolute ~ corrupts absolutely.” – Lord Acton, 1834–1902) [″nation″] 14. the great, world ~s; a superpower 15. (the) warring ~s 16. a colonial; foreign; industrial; occupying ~ [″capability″] 17. to develop one’s ~s (of observation) 18. bargaining; earning; purchasing ~ 19. curative, healing; recuperative ~s 20. psychic; supernatural ~s 21. in, within smb.’s ~ (I tried to do everything in my ~ for her but unfortunately it was not within my ~ to help) (see also **staying power**) [″military force, police force″] 22. air; military; naval, sea; police ~ 23. fire ~ [″source of energy″] 24. to provide ~ for; turn on the ~ 25. to cut off, turn off the ~ 26. to consume; lose; waste ~ 27. to conserve ~ 28. to harness ~ (to harness solar ~) 29. atomic, nuclear; electric; geothermal; hydroelectric; kinetic; renewable; solar; steam; water; wind ~ 30. sources of ~ 31. (misc.) (AE) a ~ outage (“failure”) [″motive force″] 32. under one’s own ~ [″exponent″] (math.) 33. to raise to a ~ (to raise five to the third ~ and get 125) (see also *power dressing* at **dressing**; *power walking* at **walking**)

powerless *adj.* ~ to + inf. (I tried to do everything in my power for her but unfortunately I was ~ to help)

power of attorney *n.* 1. to give, grant a ~ 2. to notarize a ~ 3. to hold a ~ 4. a ~ to + inf. (we had a ~ to conduct her business)

powwow *n.* (colloq.) ["conference"] to hold a ~ (with)

pox *n.* ["plague"] a ~ on

practicable *adj.* ["feasible"] ~ to + inf. (it was not ~ to put up a new building there)

practical *adj.* ["realistic"] 1. ~ about; in ["sensible"] 2. ~ to + inf. (it is not ~ to live in one city and work in another)

practice I practise *n.* ["habit"] 1. to make a ~ of smt. 2. a common, normal, standard, usual ~ 3. a local; universal, widespread ~ 4. a ~ to + inf. (it was her ~ to drink a glass of wine every evening) ["exercise"] 5. to get; have; need ~ (we have ~ today at four o'clock) 6. target ~ 7. ~ at, in (~ at tying knots) 8. the ~ to + inf. (I've had enough ~ to pass the test) 9. in; out of; with ~ (since they closed the gym, I've been out of ~ but I hope to improve with more ~) ["professional activity"] 10. to have one's own; join; leave, resign from; start a ~ 11. (a) law, legal; medical; nursing; professional ~ (she joined their legal ~ and became a partner before leaving that ~ to start one of her own) 12. (of doctors) (a) family, general ~ 13. (of doctors) (a) group; private ~ (they went into private ~) 14. a lucrative ~ ["application"] 15. in; into ~ (to put a theory into ~; in theory and in ~) ["method of conducting business"] 16. best ~ (adopt/generalize best ~ throughout the whole industry) 17. sharp, unethical, unfair, unscrupulous ~s 18. (esp. AE) fair-trade ~s USAGE NOTE: In Great Britain, *private practice* refers to a practice that is not under the National Health Service.

practice II practise *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to work") to ~ as (to ~ as a lawyer) 2. (D; intr.) ("to train") to ~ at; for (to ~ at batting the ball for the major-league try-outs) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ on (you can ~ mouth-to-mouth resuscitation on me) 4. (G) the boy ~d batting the ball

practitioner *n.* a family, general; nurse; private ~

prairie *n.* 1. a rolling; treeless; windswept ~ 2. across; on the ~

praise I *n.* 1. to earn, merit; get, receive, win ~ 2. to bestow, heap, lavish ~ on smb. 3. to give ~ to smb. 4. to sing smb.'s ~s 5. faint; fulsome, unctuous; glowing, high, lavish, strong, unrestrained, unstinting; universal ~ 6. ~ as; from; for (she got ~ for her work from everyone; she got ~ from everyone as an outstanding worker) 7. beyond ~ (are Shakespeare's plays so good as to be beyond ~?) 8. in ~ of 9. (misc.) a chorus; paean of ~

praise II *v.* 1. to ~ highly, strongly, to the skies 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as; for (everyone ~ed her for her work; everyone ~ed her work as outstanding; everyone ~d her as an outstanding worker)

praiseworthy *adj.* (formal) ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to do volunteer work)

pram *n.* (BE) 1. to push, wheel a ~ (AE has *baby carriage, carriage*) 2. in a ~

prance *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ around the room

prank *n.* 1. to play a ~ on smb. 2. a childish; cruel, mean, wanton; foolish; harmless; innocent; mischievous ~

prate see **prattle**

pratfall *n.* ["an embarrassing failure"] to take a ~

prattle *v.* 1. to ~ endlessly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ (on) about (he ~d on endlessly about his operation)

pray *v.* 1. to ~ aloud; devoutly, fervently; silently 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for; to (she ~ to God for pardon for her transgressions) 3. (E) she ~ed (to God) to be pardoned for her transgressions 4. (H) she ~ed God to be pardoned for her transgressions 5. (L; to) she ~ed (to God) that she would be pardoned for her transgressions 6. (L; may have an object) she ~ed (God) that she would be pardoned for her transgressions 7. (misc.) we hope and ~ that she will be forgiven (see also *pray tell* at **tell II** *v.*)

prayer *n.* 1. to chant; offer; say; utter a ~ 2. to answer; hear a ~ 3. a devout, fervent, solemn ~ 4. a silent ~ 5. (a) communal; daily; evening; morning ~ 6. a ~ for, of (she offered a ~ (to God) for pardon for her transgressions; a ~ of repentance) 7. a ~ that + clause; subj. (she offered a prayer (to God) that she be/would be pardoned for her transgressions) 8. in ~ (the group was deep in ~ when we entered) 9. (misc.) the answer to all our ~s (see also *prayer meeting* at **meeting**)

preach *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about (he's always ~ing (to us) about one thing or another) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ against (to ~ against sin) 3. (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ at (stop ~ing at me!) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to one's congregation) 5. (L; to) to ~ (to us) that the end of the world is near 6. (misc.) to ~ to the converted

preacher *n.* an itinerant; lay ~

preamble *n.* a ~ to

precaution *n.* 1. to take ~s 2. elaborate ~s 3. a wise ~ (you should take the wise ~ of consulting a lawyer) 4. health; safety; security ~s 5. a ~ against 6. a ~ to + inf. (it would be a wise ~ (for you) to consult a lawyer) 7. as a ~ (it would be wise (for you) to consult a lawyer just as a precaution)

precedence *n.* 1. to have, take ~ over 2. to give ~ to

precedent *n.* 1. to create, establish, set a ~ 2. to cite a ~ 3. to break (a) ~ 4. a dangerous ~ 5. a ~ for 6. without ~

precept *n.* a ~ that + clause (we adhere to the ~ that all criminals can be rehabilitated)

preceptor *n.* a ~ to

precinct *n.* a pedestrian (BE); police (AE); shopping (BE); voting ~

precious *adj.* ~ to

precipitate *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ a country into war)

precipitation *n.* heavy; light ~

precise *adj.* ~ about; in

precision *n.* 1. great, utmost; military; surgical; unerring, unfailing ~ 2. ~ in (unfailing ~ in handling the instruments is required for this task) 3. with ~ (it must be done with the utmost ~)

preclude *v.* (formal) 1. (d; tr.) to ~ from (that will ~ us from having to do it again) 2. (K) that will ~ our having to do it again

precondition *n.* to set ~s (for)

precursor *n.* a ~ of, to

predecessor *n.* smb.'s immediate ~

predestine *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ for (fate ~d her for greatness) 2. (H) fate ~d her to go far in life

predestined *adj.* (cannot stand alone) 1. ~ for, to (~ for greatness; ~ to glory) 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to go far in life) 3. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that she was to go far in life)

predicament *n.* 1. an awkward; dire ~ (to get into an awkward ~) 2. in a ~

predicate *v.* (d; tr.) ("to base") to ~ on, upon (to ~ a theory on certain facts)

predict *v.* 1. (K) nobody could have ~ed his running away 2. (L) nobody could have ~ed that he would run away 3. (Q) who can ~ from the available evidence how the elections will turn out?

predictable *adj.* ~ that + clause (it was ~ that their party would win the election)

prediction *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. a dire, gloomy, unfavorable ~ 3. a favorable ~ 4. a ~ that + clause (she made a ~ that their party would win the election) 5. a ~ comes true

predilection *n.* a ~ for

predispose *v.* (formal) 1. (d; tr.) to ~ to (what ~d them to violent behavior?) 2. (H) what ~d them to behave violently?

predisposed *adj.* (cannot stand alone) 1. ~ to (~ to violent behavior) 2. ~ to + inf. (~ to behave violently)

predisposition *n.* 1. a ~ to, towards (a ~ to violent behavior) 2. a ~ to + inf. (a ~ to behave violently)

predominance *n.* 1. ~ in 2. ~ over (their ~ over everyone else in the arts and sciences)

predominant *adj.* 1. ~ in 2. ~ over (they're ~ over everyone else in the arts and sciences)

predominate I *adj.* ~ over

predominate II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ~ in 2. (D; intr.) ~ over (they ~ over everyone else in the arts and sciences)

preeminence *n.* 1. to achieve, win ~ 2. ~as (she achieved ~ as a painter) 3. ~ in (their ~ in the arts and sciences)

preeminent *adj.* 1. ~ as (she was ~ as a painter) 2. ~ in (they're ~ in the arts and sciences)

preen *v.* (formal) (d; refl.) to ~ oneself on ("to pride oneself on") (she ~ed herself on her preeminence as a painter)

preface I *n.* a ~ to (a ~ to a book)

preface II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ by; with (she ~d her remarks with a personal anecdote = she ~d her remarks by telling a personal anecdote)

prefer *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to bring") to ~ against (to ~ charges against smb.) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (she ~s fish to meat) 3. (E) we ~ to remain at home 4. (G) we ~ remaining at home 5. (H; no passive) I'd ~ you to remain at home (esp. BE); I'd ~ for you to remain at home (esp. AE) = what I'd ~ is for you to remain at home = I'd ~ it if you remained at home 6. (K) I would ~ your remaining at home 7. (L; subj.) I ~ that you not go out/should not go out/don't go out (esp. BE) 8. (M) I ~ my coffee to be hot 9. (N) I ~ my coffee hot 10. (misc.) we (very) much ~ remaining at home and not going out; remaining at home is (very) much to be ~red to/over going out USAGE NOTE: This verb can be used in several ways to express preference – I prefer walking to riding; I prefer to walk rather than (to) ride; I prefer not to ride.

preferable *adj.* 1. ~ to (remaining at home is ~ to going out) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to remain at home) 3. ~ that + clause; subj. (it is ~ that you not go out/should not go out/don't go out (esp. BE)) 4. (misc.) remaining at home is far ~ to going out USAGE NOTE: This adjective can be used in several ways – walking is preferable to riding; it's preferable to walk rather than (to) ride; it's preferable not to ride.

preference *n.* 1. to give ~ to (they gave ~ to veterans over non-veterans) 2. to demonstrate, display, show; express; have a ~ 3. a decided; individual, personal; marked; strong ~ 4. (US) (a) veterans' ~ 5. a ~ for (she showed a decided ~ for classical music over pop music) 6. in ~ to (she listened to classical music in ~ to pop music)

prefix *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a title to a name)

pregnancy *n.* 1. to terminate a ~ 2. an ectopic; false; full-term; normal; teenage ~ 3. all through, throughout; during, in a ~

pregnant a. 1. to become, fall (BE), get ~ 2. heavily, very 3. ~ by (she got ~ by her husband before he was sent to the front) 4. ~ with (at that time she was six months ~ with her first child)

prejudice I *n.* ["bias"] 1. to arouse, stir up ~ (against, towards) (to stir up ~ among poor people against immigrants) 2. to have, hold (a) ~ 3. to display, show ~ (towards) 4. to break down, eliminate; confirm; strengthen ~ 5. (a) blind, deep, deep-rooted, deep-seated, ingrained, strong; vulgar ~ 6. race, racial; religious ~ 7. ~ against, towards; among ["harm"] 8. without ~ (to) (without ~ to our claims)

prejudice II *v.* 1. to ~ strongly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ against (to be strongly ~d against immigrants) 3. (misc.) her reputation for honesty ~d me strongly in her favor

prejudicial *adj.* ~ to

preliminary I *adj.* ~ to

preliminary II *n.* a ~ to

prelude *n.* a ~ to

premature *adj.* 1. ~ in (they were ~ in their celebrations) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ (for them) to celebrate)

premiere, première *n.* 1. to give, have, hold, perform, stage a ~ 2. to attend a ~ 3. a film; lavish; UK; world ~

premise *n.* ["proposition"] (logic) 1. the major; minor ~ ["assumption"] 2. the ~ that + clause (their ~ that unemployment would rise proved to be true)

premised *adj.* ~ on, upon (their fiscal policy was ~ on the assumption of rising unemployment)

premises *n.* ["property"] on the ~ (to be consumed on the ~)

premiss *n.* (BE) (see **premise** 1)

premium *n.* ["high value"] 1. to place, put a (high) ~ on (she puts a high ~ on punctuality) ["additional sum or value"] 2. to pay a ~ (of) 3. at a ~ (to sell at a ~) ["fee paid to an insurance company"] 4. an insurance ~ 5. a ~ on a policy (I pay the ~ on my policy every six months whether the ~ rises or falls)

premonition *n.* 1. to have a ~ 2. a ~ that + clause (she had a ~ that an accident would happen)

preoccupation *n.* a ~ with

preoccupied *adj.* ~ with

preordained *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (they were ~ to meet) 2. ~ that + clause; subj. (it was ~ that they meet/should meet/would meet)

preparation *n.* in ~ for (we are resting in ~ for the strenuous journey)

preparations *n.* 1. to make ~ 2. careful, elaborate, thorough ~ 3. ~ for

preparatory *adj.* ~ to

prepare *v.* 1. to ~ carefully, thoroughly 2. (C) I'll ~ a nice supper for you; or: I'll ~ you a nice supper 3. (D; intr., refl., tr.) to ~ for (she was ~ing for the examination; they ~d themselves for unpleasant news; she is ~ing a paper for presentation at the national meeting; "if you want peace, ~ for war" – *proverb*) 4. (E) they were ~ing to leave 5. (H) parents should ~ children to cope with life

prepared *adj.* 1. ~ for (they were ~ for their departure; I am not ~ for such a responsibility) 2. ~ to + inf. (they were ~ to leave; I am not ~ to take on such a responsibility) USAGE NOTE: The sentence "I am not prepared to take on such a responsibility" is ambiguous. It can mean 'I am not ready to take on such a responsibility = I am unprepared for such a responsibility' or 'I am not willing to take on such a responsibility = I am unwilling to take on such a responsibility.'

preparedness *n.* 1. military ~ 2. ~ for 3. (misc.) a state of ~ (for)

preposition *n.* 1. a compound; simple ~ 2. (misc.) a preposition-noun-preposition combination such as "in readiness for."

preposterous *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to have to show our pass each time we come here!) 2. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that we have to show our pass each time we come here!)

prequel *n.* (colloq.) a ~ to (*Henry IV*, *Part 1* is the ~ to *Henry IV*, *Part 2*)

prerequisite I *adj.* (usu. does not stand alone) ~ to

prerequisite II *n.* a ~ for, to (Sociology 101 is a ~ for Sociology 102)

prerogative *n.* 1. to exercise one's ~ 2. the exclusive; royal ~ 3. smb.'s ~ to + inf. (it's our ~ to order an investigation)

prescribe *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ a remedy for the common cold) 2. (formal) (L; subj.) regulations ~ that a lawyer draw up/should draw up/draws up (esp. BE) the papers 3. (Q) the court ~d how the papers should be drawn up

prescription *n.* 1. to fill (AE), make up a ~ 2. a free; NHS ~ (are you entitled to a free NHS ~?) 3. a ~ for (a ~ for a remedy for the common cold) 4. by ~; on (a) ~ (to obtain a drug on (a) doctor's ~; by ~ only)

presence *n.* 1. to make one's ~ felt, known ("to make others notice one's presence") 2. a commanding ~ 3. a police ~ (there was a strong police ~ at the demonstration) 4. in smb.'s ~ (don't do that in the ~ of royalty)

presence of mind *n.* 1. to display; show (great) ~ 2. the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to call the police)

present I *n.* ["present time"] 1. at ~ 2. for the ~ ["present tense of a verb"] 3. in the ~

present II *n.* ["gift"] 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to unwrap; wrap a ~ 3. to make smb. a ~ of smt. 4. an anniversary; birthday; Christmas; graduation; wedding ~ 5. a ~ for

present III *v.* 1. (B) ("to give") they ~ed an award to her 2. (d; tr.) ("to introduce") to ~ as (she was ~ed as a computer expert) 3. (D; tr.) ("to introduce") to ~ to (the new employees were ~ed to the rest of the staff) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ with ("to give a gift to") (they ~ed her with an award) 5. (d; tr.) to ~ with (med.) (the patient ~ed with ("complained of") severe pains)

presentable *adj.* to make oneself ~

presentation *n.* ["position of a fetus"] (med.) 1. a breech; face ~ ["act of presenting"] 2. to deliver, make a ~ (who will make the ~ at the awards ceremony?) ["report"] 3. to give a ~ 4. an oral; written ~ 5. a ~ of, on (she gave an oral ~ of/on her current research)

presenter *n.* (BE) a chat-show; game-show ~

presentiment *n.* (formal) ["foreboding"] 1. to have a ~ 2. a ~ that + clause (she had a ~ that an accident would happen)

preservative *n.* 1. a food ~ 2. an artificial ~

preserve I *n.* 1. a forest; game, wild-life ~ 2. (BE) see **preserves**

preserve II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ against, from (to ~ the environment from the ravages of pollution) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (we wish to ~ this tradition for our grandchildren)

preserver *n.* a life ~ USAGE NOTE: Especially in AE, *life preserver* means "life belt", "life jacket"; in BE, it means "club used for self-defence".

preserves *n.* ["fruit preserved by cooking with sugar"] 1. to spread ~ (on bread) = to spread (bread) with ~ 2. apricot; blackberry, blueberry; cherry; gooseberry; grape; peach; plum; quince; (red) raspberry; strawberry ~

preside *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at; over

presidency *n.* 1. to gain the ~ 2. to assume the ~ 3. a rotating ~ 4. during, under a ~ (under Britain's ~ of the EU)

president *n.* 1. to elect; inaugurate a ~ 2. a vice ~ 3. a college (esp AE); former, past; incoming; incumbent; outgoing ~ 4. an ex-president 5. a ~ elect 6. (misc.) what do you think of that, Mister/Madam President?

press I *n.* ["instrument for crushing, shaping, squeezing"] 1. a cider; cookie (AE); hydraulic; wine ~ ["publishing house"] 2. a university; vanity ~ ["device for printing"] 3. a printing ~ 4. the ~es roll 5. (misc.) to go to ~; hot off the ~; stop the ~es! 6. in ~ (our book is now in ~) ["newspapers, magazines"] ["reporters"] 7. to censor; control; muzzle the ~ 8. a free ~ 9. the foreign; gutter, yellow; local; popular; tabloid ~ (see also *press clipping* at **clipping**; *press cutting* at **cutting**; *press release* at **release I** *n.*) ["publicity"] 10. a bad; good ~ (we got a bad ~) ["smoothness of a fabric"] 11. (a) permanent ~ ["aggressive defense used in basketball"] 12. a full-court ~ ["type of lift used by weight lifters"] 13. to do a ~ 14. a bench; military ~

press II *v.* 1. to ~ hard (see also **hard-pressed**) 2. (d; intr., tr.) ("to push") to ~ against (to ~ against a door) 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ for ("to urge") (to ~ for tax reform; to ~ the authorities for information) 4. (D; tr.) ("to shape") to ~ into (to ~ clay into various forms) 5. (d; tr.) ("to place") to ~ into (to ~ all equipment into service) 6. (D; intr.) ("to squeeze") to ~ on (to ~ on a button) 7. (H) ("to urge") to ~ the authorities to give them information; they were ~ing me to agree to the compromise 8. (P; intr.) ("to push") the crowd ~ed around the candidate; the fans ~ed into the stadium

press on *v.* 1. to ~ regardless; relentlessly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (the troops ~ed on to the next town) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (the police ~ed on with the investigation)

press-up *n.* (BE) to do ~s (see also **push-up**)

pressure I *n.* 1. to exert, place, put ~ on smb. 2. to bring ~ to bear on smb. 3. to keep up, maintain the ~ on 4. to build up, increase (the) ~ 5. to feel (the) ~ 6. to bear up under, withstand (the) ~ 7. to ease, relieve (the) ~ 8. to face; resist (the) ~ (to resist ~ from extremist groups) 9. enormous, great, heavy, inexorable, intense, maximum, relentless, severe, strong, unrelieved ~ 10. firm; light ~ 11. financial; outside; parental; peer; population; public ~ (to resist public ~) 12. air; oil; water ~ (see also **blood pressure**) 13. (esp. meteorology) atmospheric; barometric ~ 14. high; low ~ 15. ~ builds up, increases, rises 16. ~ eases, falls 17. ~ for (~ for tax reform) 18. ~ from (to face inexorable ~ from the media) 19. ~ on (there is ~ on the authorities for tax reform) 20. ~ to + inf. (they are putting ~ on the authorities to reform taxation) 21. under ~ (the authorities are under relentless ~ for tax reform/to reform taxation)

pressure II *v.* (AE) 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (the authorities were ~d into tax reform) 2. (H) the authorities were ~d to reform taxation

pressurize *v.* (BE) see **pressure II**

prestige *n.* 1. to enjoy, have ~ 2. to gain ~ 3. to damage smb.'s ~ 4. great, high; little, low ~ 5. the ~ to + inf. (does she have enough ~ to get the party nomination?) 6. of ~ (of little ~)

presume *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ upon smb.'s good nature) 2. (E) I will not ~ to give you advice 3. (L) we must ~ that she is innocent 4. (M) we must ~ her to be innocent 5. (N; used with an adjective) we must ~ her innocent; she must be ~d innocent until proven guilty

presumption *n.* 1. a ~ of (our decision was based on the ~ of her innocence until she is proven guilty) 2. a ~ that + clause (our decision was based on the ~ that she is innocent until proven guilty)

presumptuous *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's ~ of/for me to give you advice)

presuppose *v.* (L) we ~ that she is innocent until proven guilty

presupposition *n.* a ~ that + clause (our decision was based on the ~ that she is innocent until proven guilty)

pretence see **pretense**

pretend *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to claim") to ~ to (to ~ to expert knowledge in a field) 2. (E) ("to feign"); ("to make believe") she ~ed not to notice; I ~ed to be busy; the children ~ed to be cowboys 3. (L; to) ("to feign"); ("to make believe") she ~ed she hadn't noticed; I ~ed I was busy; the children ~ed (to their parents) that they were cowboys

pretender *n.* a ~ to (a ~ to a throne)

pretense, pretence *n.* ["simulation"] ["false show"] 1. to make a ~ (he made no ~ of being objective) 2. to see through smb.'s ~ 3. under a ~ (under the ~ of patriotism; under false ~s) 4. without ~ (a person totally without ~) ["unsupported claim"] 5. to see through smb.'s ~ 6. a ~ that + clause (he saw through the ~ that lower taxes would cause unemployment) ["appearance"] 7. to keep up, maintain a ~ (to maintain some ~ of legality) ["attempt"] 8. a ~ at; of (without any ~ of being objective)

pretentious *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of/for them to put on a tuxedo even when they were dining alone)

pretext *n.* 1. to find a ~ for 2. a flimsy; mere ~ 3. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ to occupy more territory) 4. a ~ that + clause (she refused to attend on the ~ that she would be out of town) 5. at, on, under a ~ (he would call for help at/on the slightest ~; under what ~ did she refuse to attend?) 6. (misc.) they start quarreling at the slightest ~

pretty *adj.* 1. to be sitting ~ ("to be well off or in a good position") 2. (misc.) as ~ as a picture

prevail *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ against, over (to ~ against overwhelming odds) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon smb. to do smt. (they ~ed on me to buy a new television set)

prevent *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from (nothing can ~ this disease from spreading; you cannot ~ Romeo and Juliet from getting married) 2. (J) (BE) nothing can ~ this disease spreading; you cannot ~ Romeo and Juliet getting married 3. (K) you cannot ~ their getting married

prevention *n.* 1. (health care) primary; secondary ~ 2. accident; crime; disease; fire ~ 3. (misc.) "~ is better than cure = an ounce of ~ is worth a pound of cure" – *proverb*

preview *n.* 1. to give a ~ 2. a sneak ~ (of a film)

prey I *n.* 1. to stalk one's ~ 2. to fall ~ to (they fell ~ to a swindler) 3. easy ~ 4. ~ for; to (they were easy ~ for a swindler) (see also *bird of prey* at **bird**)

prey II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on small game; swindlers ~ on gullible people)

price I *n.* 1. to fix, set a ~ 2. to place, put a ~ on 3. to quote a ~ 4. (BE) to agree a ~ 5. to drive up; hike (AE; colloq.), increase, mark up, raise ~s 6. to curb, hold down, keep down; freeze; maintain, stabilize ~s 7. to bring down, drive down ~s (the latest news brought down oil ~s) 8. to cut, lower, mark down, reduce, roll back, slash ~s 9. to undercut (smb.'s) ~s 10. to bring, command, fetch, get a ~ (icons bring a high ~) 11. an attractive, fair, moderate, popular, reasonable ~ 12. a bargain, low, reduced ~ 13. an exorbitant, high, inflated, outrageous, prohibitive, steep, stiff ~ 14. an asking; buying, purchase; cost; discount; going; list; market; reduced, knock-down; regular; resale; retail; sale; selling; unit; wholesale ~ (to sell smt. at or below (the) list ~) 15. an admission ~ = the ~ of admission 16. (at an auction) a reserve (esp. BE), upset (esp. AE) ~ 17. ~s drop, fall, go down, plummet, slump 18. ~s go up, rise, shoot up, skyrocket, soar; range, vary 19. a ~ for (to pay an exorbitant ~ for smt.) 20. a ~ on 21. at a ~ (to sell merchandise at reduced ~s; you can have anything you want – at a ~!) 22. (misc.) what ~ an economic recovery now? (BE) ("what are the chances of an economic recovery now?"); what ~ glory if you die in the trenches? (BE) ("what is the good of glory if you die in the trenches?"); to put a ~ on smb.'s head ("to post a reward for apprehending or killing smb."); they paid a heavy ~ for their freedom; "eternal vigilance is the ~ of liberty" – *proverb*; eternal vigilance is a small ~ to pay for liberty!

price II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ at (they ~d it at five hundred dollars) 2. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ out of (they ~d themselves out of the market) 3. (N) they ~d it too high 4. (misc.) attractively, competitively ~d

prick I *n.* a pin-prick

prick II *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ on (to ~ one's finger on a thorn)

pride I *n.* 1. to take ~ in (he takes ~ in his children) 2. to hurt smb.'s ~ 3. civic; community; ethnic; fierce, great, strong; hurt, injured, wounded; justified, proper ~ (she took great but proper ~ in her preeminence as a painter) 4. the ~ to + inf. (do they have enough ~ to defend their principles?) 5. out of ~ (he refused out of ~) 6. (misc.) to appeal to smb.'s ~; to burst with ~; to dent smb.'s ~; to pocket, swallow one's ~; to swell with ~; a feeling/glow/sense of ~; a blow to smb.'s ~

pride II *v.* (d; refl.) to ~ on (she ~ed herself on her preeminence as a painter)

priest *n.* 1. to ordain a ~ 2. to defrock, unfrock a ~ 3. an Anglican; Catholic; Episcopalian; Hindu; Mormon; Orthodox ~ 4. a high; local, parish (abbreviated PP by Roman Catholics) ~

priesthood *n.* to enter; leave the ~

primacy *n.* ~ over

primary *n.* ["intra-party election"] (esp. US) 1. to hold a ~ 2. a closed; direct; open; preferential; presidential; runoff ~

prime *n.* 1. to come into, reach one's ~ 2. to pass one's ~ 3. in one's ~ 4. (misc.) past one's ~; to be cut down in one's ~

primed *adj.* 1. ~ for (~ for the big game) 2. ~ to + inf. (we are ~ to play the big game)

prince *n.* 1. a crown ~ 2. (misc.) a ~ consort; regent USAGE NOTES: (1) The British Crown Prince is the Prince of Wales. (2) In Britain the title Prince Consort is in the gift of Parliament. It was bestowed on HRH the Prince Albert, husband to Queen Victoria; but it has not yet been bestowed on HRH the Prince Philip, husband to the present Queen.

princess *n.* 1. a crown ~ 2. a ~ royal USAGE NOTE: In Britain the title Princess Royal is in the gift of the Sovereign. It has been bestowed on HRH the Princess Anne, the eldest (and only) daughter of the present Queen.

principal *n.* ["an official"] 1. a school ~ ["money invested"] 2. to repay the ~ as well as the interest

principle *n.* 1. to establish, formulate, lay down a ~ 2. to apply a ~ 3. to adhere to, stick to (a) ~ 4. to betray, compromise one's ~s 5. an abstract; basic, fundamental; general; guiding; moral; sound; strict; underlying ~ 6. high ~s 7. a ~ applies; underlies (which ~s apply here?) 8. the ~ behind (the underlying ~ behind our decision is that everyone should be treated fairly) 9. the ~ that + clause (we adhere to the underlying ~ that everyone should be treated fairly) 10. against smb.'s ~s 11. in ~ (to agree in ~) 12. on ~ (to disagree on ~; on ~, I am opposed to the decision) 13. (misc.) a matter, question; person of ~; we make it a ~ to treat everyone fairly

print I *n.* ["photograph"] 1. to develop; make a ~ ["printed state"] 2. in ~; out of ~ (I have not seen the story in ~; the book is out of ~) (see also *print media* at **media**) ["text as of a contract"] 3. the fine, small ~ (people should always read the fine ~) ["printed letters"] 4. clear; fine; large; small ~ ["impression made by type"] 5. dark; light ~ (see also **fingerprints**; **footprints**)

print II *v.* to ~ smt. in block capitals (BE); in block letter(s) (BE); (in) boldface; in italics; in Roman

printer *n.* ["device for printing computer data"] a daisywheel; dot-matrix; laser; letter-quality; serial; thermal ~

printing *n.* 1. to put out a ~ (of a book) 2. offset ~ 3. (misc.) the book went through three ~s

print out *v.* (C) she ~ed me out a copy; or: she ~ed out a copy for me; or: she ~ed a copy out for me

prior *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to (it happened subsequent to World War I but ~ to World War II)

priority *n.* 1. to establish, set a ~ 2. to have, take ~ over 3. to give ~ to 4. high; low ~ 5. (a) first, number-one, top ~ 6. (misc.) to re-examine, rethink; reorder, sort out one's (order of) ~ties

prise, prize (BE) see **pry** 2, 3

prise off, prize off (BE) see **pry off**

prison *n.* 1. to go, be sent, be sentenced to ~ 2. to keep smb. in ~ 3. to serve/spend time in ~ 4. to release smb. from ~ 5. to be released from ~ 6. to break out of, escape from ~ 7. a maximum-security, minimum-security; open (BE) ~

prisoner *n.* 1. to take smb. ~; to take a ~ (we took many ~s and took them all ~) 2. to hold, keep smb. ~ (we held them all ~) 3. to free, release a ~ 4. a political ~ 5. a ~ escapes 6. (misc.) a ~ of conscience

prisoner of war *n.* 1. to hold prisoners of war 2. to interrogate prisoners of war 3. to exchange, free, liberate, repatriate prisoners of war

privacy *n.* 1. to disturb, invade, violate smb.'s ~ 2. an invasion of smb.'s, an intrusion on smb.'s ~ 3. in ~ (to do smt. in the ~ of one's (own) home)

private I *n.* in ~ (to do smt. in ~)

private II *n.* ["common soldier"] 1. a buck ~ (AE) 2. (US) a ~ first-class (the British Army has *lance corporal*) 3. to have, hold the rank of ~ 4. (misc.) what's your opinion, Private (Smith)?

privilege *n.* 1. to award, give, grant a ~ 2. to enjoy, exercise; have a ~ (to enjoy guest ~s) 3. to abuse a ~ 4. to revoke, withdraw; suspend a ~ 5. a class; exclusive; special ~ 6. full; franking; guest; kitchen ~s 7. executive ~ 8. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ to work with them = it was a ~ working with them)

privileged *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. (usu. does not stand alone) ~ to + inf. (we were ~ to be able to work with them)

privy *adj.* ["having access"] 1. ~ to (they are ~ to secret documents) ["aware"] 2. ~ to (don't blame me! I wasn't ~ to the arrangement!)

prize I *n.* 1. to award, give, present a ~ 2. to distribute ~s 3. to accept; receive, win a ~ (for) (he won a ~ for the largest carrot) 4. to take a ~ (who took first ~?) 5. a booby; consolation; door; first; second; third ~ 6. a ~ goes to (second ~ went to my sister) 7. (misc.) the glittering ~s (of life in the fast lane) ("The world continues to offer glittering ~s to those who have stout hearts and sharp swords." – Lord Birkenhead, 1923)

prize II (BE) see **pry** 2, 3

prized *adj.* ["valued"] 1. highly ~ 2. ~ among 3. ~ as (this wine is highly ~ among connoisseurs as the best of its kind) 4. ~ for (this wine is highly ~ for its bouquet)

pro see **professional**

probability *n.* 1. (a) real, strong ~ 2. little ~ 3. a ~ of (there is a strong ~ of her coming) 4. a ~ that + clause (there is a strong ~ that she'll come) 5. in all ~ (in all ~ she'll come)

probable *adj.* 1. hardly ~ (it's hardly ~ that she will show up after she was insulted last time!) 2. equally; highly, very ~ 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that she will not show up; more usu. is: she'll probably not show up)

probate *n.* 1. to grant ~ 2. to prove a will at ~

probation *n.* 1. to place, put smb. on ~ 2. to release smb. on ~ 3. to violate (the terms of one's) ~ 4. on ~ (he's out on ~ for a year)

probe I *n.* 1. to conduct; launch a ~ 2. an exhaustive, thorough ~ 3. an interplanetary; space ~ 4. a police ~ 5. a ~ into, of (a police ~ into racketeering)

probe II *v.* 1. to ~ deeply, thoroughly 2. (d; tr.) to ~ about, on (to ~ smb. on a matter) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for weak spots) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into the facts)

problem *n.* ["unsettled question"] ["source of difficulty"] 1. to cause, create, pose, present a ~ 2. to have a ~ (about/with); to have ~s about/with (colloq.) (we're having meat for dinner – do you have a ~ about/with that?) 3. to be, constitute a ~ 4. to address; bring up, raise; confront, face; discuss, explore a ~ 5. to attack, come to grips with, deal with, get to grips with (BE), grapple with, tackle a ~ 6. to lick, resolve, settle, solve a ~ 7. to avoid, sidestep a ~ 8. an acute, daunting, difficult, grave, major, pressing, serious; insoluble, insurmountable ~; the real, underlying ~ 9. a complex, complicated, involved, knotty, perplexing, thorny ~ 10. a delicate, ticklish ~ 11. a minor, petty ~ 12. an environmental; moral; political; social ~ 13. a global; local; national ~ (there are a number of important ~s about climate change that have arisen in our discussions) 14. an attitude; drink (BE), drinking (AE); emotional; physical; psychological; social; weight ~ 15. a perennial ~ 16. a ~ arises, comes up 17. a ~ to + inf. (it's a real ~ to make ends meet = it's a real ~ making ends meet) 18. (misc.) the crux of a ~; to get to the heart of a ~ ["mathematical statement requiring a solution"] 19. to do, solve a ~ 20. a complicated; difficult; easy; simple ~ USAGE NOTE: The question "what's your/his problem?" is ambiguous. It can function like "what's wrong?" ("what's your problem? whatever it is, we can help !") or like "what's wrong with you ?" ("you're rude to everybody ! what's your problem ?")

procedure *n.* 1. to establish a ~ (you can't do that under the established ~) 2. to adopt; follow a ~ 3. (a) correct, proper; normal, regular, standard ~ (for) (to follow regular ~s for dealing with a problem) 4. a complex, complicated; delicate ~ 5. a simple ~ 6. a scientific; surgical ~ 7. (surgery) a major; minor ~ 8. bureaucratic; parliamentary; safety ~s 9. (misc.) a point of ~

proceed *v.* 1. to ~ apace; smoothly 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against (to ~ against smb. in court) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ from New York to Philadelphia) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ apace with one's research) 4. (E) she ~ed to tell us every detail 5. (P) ~ left about a hundred yards, then ~ along the road till you see a turning

proceedings *n.* (often legal) 1. to bring, initiate, institute; conduct ~ against (to initiate legal ~ against a competitor) 2. judicial, legal ~ 3. bankruptcy; criminal; divorce; impeachment ~ (to institute divorce ~) 4. (misc.) Proceedings of the Royal Society (title of magazine)

proceeds *n.* ["profit"] 1. net ~ 2. the ~ amount to; go to 3. ~ from, of (the ~ from the sale of our surplus property will go to paying our creditors) 4. on, with the ~ (our creditors got rich on the proceeds of the sale of our surplus property)

process *n.* 1. a creative ~ 2. a democratic; electoral; manufacturing ~ (a waste product of the manufacturing ~) 3. the aging; transformation ~ = the ~ of aging; transformation 4. the judicial, legal ~ 5. mental ~es 6. a stage, step in a ~ (see also **due process**)

processing *n.* 1. data; food ~ 2. (computers) batch ~

procession *n.* 1. to head, lead a ~ 2. a ceremonial; funeral; religious; torchlight; triumphal; wedding ~ 3. a ~ moves, wends its way 4. in (a) ~ (to march in a ~)

processor *n.* a food ~ (see also **word processor**)

proclaim *v.* (formal) 1. (L; to) the president ~ed (to the nation) that the entire state was a disaster area 2. (N; used with a noun) the entire state was ~ed a disaster area

proclamation *n.* 1. to issue, make a ~ 2. a ~ that + clause (the president issued a ~ (to the nation) that the entire state was a disaster area)

proclivity *n.* (formal) 1. a ~ for; to, towards (we noted her ~ for (forming) strong attachments) 2. a ~ to + inf. (we noted her ~ to form strong attachments)

procure *v.* 1. (C) (BE) she was unable to ~ a ticket for us; or: she was unable to ~ us a ticket 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she was unable to ~ us a ticket even for £50 !) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ from (she was unable to ~ us a ticket from the box office even for £50 !)

prod *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (they ~ded me into buying a new car) 2. (H) they kept ~ding me to buy a new car 3. (misc.) to ~ smb. in the ribs

prodigy *n.* a child; infant ~

produce I *n.* ["fruits and vegetables"] 1. farm ~ 2. fresh; perishable ~

produce II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (she ~d several letters as evidence) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ food for export; she ~d several letters for me from her pocket) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ from (she ~d several letters from her pocket; to ~ gas from coal)

producer *n.* 1. an executive; film, movie; radio; stage, theater; steel; television, TV ~ 2. a ~ of (a ~ of films)

product *n.* 1. to market, promote a (new) ~ 2. a by-product; an end, finished; manufactured ~ 3. a waste ~ (a waste ~ of the manufacturing process) 4. the gross domestic ~ (= GDP); the gross national ~ (= GNP) 5. a wide range of ~s 6. (misc.) to endorse a ~

production *n.* ["work presented on the stage, radio, TV, etc."] 1. to put on, stage a ~ 2. a Hollywood; stage, theatrical; TV ~ ["process of producing"] 3. to go into; start up ~ 4. to beef up, boost, increase, speed up, step up ~ 5. to halt, stop ~ 6. to cut back (on), decrease, roll back ~ 7. industrial; mass ~ 8. coal; oil; steel ~ 9. (misc.) the means of ~ ["misc."] 10. (slang) (esp. AE) to make a big ~ out of smt. ("to make a big fuss over smt.")

productive *adj.* ~ of

productivity *n.* 1. to decrease, lower; increase, raise ~ 2. high; low ~ 3. a level of ~

products *n.* agricultural; dairy ~

profess *v.* (formal) 1. (E) he ~ed to know nothing about the matter 2. (L) he ~ed that he knew nothing about the matter 3. (M; refl.) he ~ed himself to be ignorant of the matter 4. (N; refl.) he ~ed himself ignorant of the matter

profession *n.* 1. to practice a ~ 2. the legal; medical; nursing; teaching ~ 3. by ~ (she's a lawyer by ~)

professional, pro *adj.*, *n.* 1. (usu. sports) to turn ~ (he turned ~ at the age of twenty) 2. a real, true ~ (she is a real ~) ("she does her work seriously and well") USAGE NOTE: A *professional tennis player* and a *professional golfer* compete for money. A *tennis professional* and a *golf pro* coach for money, typically at clubs.

professor *n.* 1. (AE) an adjunct; assistant; associate; full ~ 2. (GB) a Regius ~ (appointed by the Crown) 3. a research; visiting ~ 4. a ~ emerita, emeritus = an emerita, emeritus ~ 5. a college (esp. US), university ~ 6. (misc.) an absent-minded ~ USAGE NOTE: We speak of a professor *of* mathematics, but of a lecturer or reader *in* mathematics.

professorship *n.* 1. to endow; establish a ~ 2. to be appointed to, get, receive a ~ (she was appointed to an endowed ~) 3. to have, hold, occupy a ~ (to hold a ~ in biology = to hold the ~ of biology) 4. to give up, relinquish a ~ 5. a personal (BE); university ~

proficiency *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display ~ 2. to achieve ~ 3. language ~ 4. a level of ~ 5. ~ at, in (she has achieved a high level of ~ in English)

proficient *adj.* ~ at, in (she has become highly ~ in English)

profile *n.* ["public exposure"] 1. to have a high; low ~ 2. to keep, maintain a high; low ~ ["side view"] 3. in ~

profit I *n.* 1. to clear, earn, make, realize, reap, show, turn a ~ 2. to bring (in), yield; to maximize a ~ (maximize your ~s and minimize your losses) 3. a fat, handsome, juicy, large, tidy; marginal, small; quick ~ 4. an excess, exorbitant, windfall ~ 5. a clear; net; gross ~ 6. ~s decline, fall; increase, rise 7. a ~ on (to make a ~ on a deal) 8. at a ~ (to operate at a ~) 9. (misc.) to share (in) the ~s; ~s were up (by) ten percent

profit II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ by, from (will the rich ~ by/from the new tax laws? (= will the new tax laws ~ the rich?))

profitable *adj.* ~ to + inf. (is it ~ to work this mine?)

profiteer *n.* a black-market; war ~

profuse *adj.* ~ in (~ in one's apologies)

profusion *n.* in ~ (~ in one's apologies; apologies in ~)

prognosis *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. to confirm a ~ (further tests confirmed the initial ~) 3. a favorable; gloomy, unfavorable ~ 4. a ~ that + clause (further tests confirmed the initial ~ that she had not much longer to live)

program I *n.* ["plan"] 1. to chart, draw up; organize a ~ 2. to carry out, implement; evaluate; introduce; launch; phase out, terminate a ~ 3. a crash; long-range; pilot; short-range ~ 4. a building; development; political ~ 5. a ~ to + inf.; a ~ that + clause (to launch a ~ (whose purpose is) to reduce crime = to launch a ~ that is intended to reduce crime) ["schedule"] 6. on smb.'s ~ (what's on your ~ (for) today?) ["entertainment"] 7. to make; produce; put on a ~ ["broadcast, telecast"] 8. a call-in (AE), phone-in (BE); radio; television, TV ~ 9. a ~ airs; comes on; goes off (a TV ~ about drugs will air today) ["coded instructions for a computer"] 10. to boot up; debug; download; execute; load; reboot; run; write a ~ 11. a user-friendly ~ 12. a computer; software; word processing ~ ["academic course of study"] 13. a graduate, postgraduate (esp. BE); honors; training; undergraduate ~ 14. a ~ in (a ~ in linguistics) ["organized activities"] 15. an orientation; outreach; recreation; work-study (AE) ~ (our outreach ~ includes visits to local schools = there are visits to local schools in our outreach ~) ["misc."] 16. a reading ~ (for a dictionary) USAGE NOTE: The BE spelling is *programme*, except for the computer uses (10–12).

program II *v.* (H) to ~ a computer to store certain information USAGE NOTE: Except when referring to the computer, the BE spelling is *programme* – to programme an alarm system.

programme see Usage Notes for **program I, II**

programmer *n.* a computer ~

programming *n.* computer ~

progress I *n.* 1. to make ~ 2. to facilitate ~ 3. to block, hinder, impede, obstruct ~ 4. amazing, considerable, good, great; material, significant; rapid; smooth; steady ~ 5. little; slow; spotty ~ 6. economic; scientific; technological ~ 7. ~ in (to make little ~ in solving the problems of air pollution) 8. ~ towards (to make little ~ towards solving the problems of air pollution) 9. in ~ (negotiations are in ~) (see also *progress report* at **report I** *n.*)

progress II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ from the basics to advanced concepts)

progression *n.* 1. an arithmetic; geometric; harmonic ~ 2. ~ from; to 3. ~ through

prohibit *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from (she has ~ed him from smoking in her presence) 2. (rare) (K) she has ~ed his smoking in her presence

prohibition *n.* 1. to impose; abolish, lift, repeal ~ 2. a ~ against, on (her prohibition against his smoking in her presence)

project I *n.* ["organized undertaking"] 1. to conceive; draw up a ~ 2. to launch a ~ 3. to carry out a ~ 4. to do a ~ (on) (the children did a (class) ~ on dinosaurs) 5. to shelve a ~ 6. an irrigation; land-reclamation; pilot ("experimental"); public-works; research; water-conservation ~ 7. a ~ to + inf.; a ~ that + clause (to launch a ~ (whose purpose is) to reduce crime = to launch a ~ that is intended to reduce crime) ["publicly financed housing"] (AE) 8. a housing ~ (BE has *council estate, housing estate*)

project II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ a missile into space) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ onto (to ~ slides onto a screen)

projected *adj.* ~ to + inf. (production is ~ to increase by five percent)

projectile *n.* to fire; launch a ~

projection *n.* ["estimate"] 1. to make; revise a ~ 2. a computer ~ 3. according to, on certain ~s (according to our latest ~s, production will increase by five percent) ["system of presenting a map"] 4. an isometric; Mercator ~

projector *n.* 1. to operate, run, work a ~ 2. a cine-projector (BE), film, motion-picture (AE); opaque; overhead; slide ~

proliferation *n.* nuclear ~

prologue *n.* a ~ to (Chaucer's Prologue to *The Canterbury Tales*)

prom *n.* ["formal school dance"] (AE) 1. the junior; senior ~ 2. at the ~ 3. (misc.) to go to the ~; to take smb. to the ~ USAGE NOTE: In BE, *prom* means "a promenade concert".

prominence *n.* 1. to achieve, acquire, come into, come to, gain ~ (he gained ~ as an athlete) 2. to give ~ to (to give ~ to a story)

prominent *adj.* 1. socially ~ 2. to become ~ (he became ~ as an athlete)

promiscuity *n.* sexual ~

promise I *n.* ["vow"] 1. to make a ~ 2. to give smb. a/one's ~ 3. to elicit, extract; fulfill, keep a ~ (we managed to extract a ~ from him that we hope he'll keep) 4. to break, renege on, repudiate a ~ 5. a broken; empty, false, hollow; rash; vague ~ 6. a sacred, solemn ~ 7. a campaign, election ~ (politicians sometimes break their campaign ~s) 8. a ~ to + inf. (she made a solemn ~ to contribute fifty pounds) 9. a ~ that + clause (she made a solemn ~ that she would contribute fifty pounds) 10. (misc.) to hold smb. to a ~ ["basis for hope"] 11. to show ~ (the young boxer showed real ~) 12. great, real; little ~ 13. ~ as (he showed great ~ as a boxer) 14. of ~ (a young boxer of ~ = a promising young boxer)

promise II *v.* 1. to ~ solemnly 2. (A) he ~d the book to me; or: he ~d me the book 3. (E) she ~d solemnly to contribute fifty pounds; it ~s to be an exciting year 4. (H; often used in neg. constructions) he ~d me never to show up late again 5. (L; may have an object) he ~d (me) that he would never show up late again 6. (misc.) (BE) I ~ you ("I assure you") (I *did* see a whale in the river, I ~ you!) USAGE NOTE: In pattern H, *promise* is unique. "He promised me never to show up late again. = He promised me that HE would never show up late again." Compare *tell*, which is typical of verbs in pattern H. "He told me never to show up late again. = He told me that I should never show up late again."

promote *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (we ~d our dictionary as the best of its kind) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (she was ~d from captain to major) 3. (old-fashioned) (BE) (N; used with a noun) she was ~d major

promotion *n.* ["advancement in rank"] 1. to put smb. in for (a) ~ 2. to recommend smb. for (a) ~ 3. to approve smb. for (a) ~ 4. to approve a ~ 5. to put in for, try for (a) ~ (she put in for ~ to floor supervisor last month; he never tried for a ~) 6. to get, make (AE), win (a) ~ (she finally made her ~ to major; she got a ~ very quickly) 7. a ~ from; to (a ~ from captain to major; a ~ to the rank of professor) ["furtherance, fostering"] 8. health ~ ["advertising"] 9. prepublication ~ 10. sales ~ 11. in ~ (she is in ~)

prompt I *adj.* 1. ~ at, in (~ in fulfilling one's obligations) 2. ~ to + inf. (~ to fulfill one's obligations)

prompt II *v.* (H) what ~ed you to say that?

promptness *n.* ~ at, in (~ in fulfilling one's obligations)

prone *adj.* ["likely, liable"] (cannot stand alone) 1. ~ to (she is ~ to coughs and sneezes; ~ to exaggeration) 2. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to exaggerate) (see also *accident-prone* at **accident**)

pronoun *n.* a demonstrative; indefinite; interrogative; personal; possessive; reflexive; relative ~

pronounce *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ on, upon (he is willing to ~ upon subjects he knows nothing about!) 2. (formal) (M) the physician ~d him to be healthy 3. (N; used with an adjective, noun) the physician ~d him healthy; she was officially ~d dead; they were ~d husband and wife; the priest said, "I now ~ you man and wife" 4. (P) ~ it after me; ~ it as I do = ~ it like me; ~ it like this = ~ it this way; the "c" in "cow" is ~d like "k"

pronouncement *n.* 1. to issue, make a ~ 2. a ~ about, on (the government issued a ~ about lowering taxes) 3. a ~ that + clause (the government issued a ~ that taxes would be lowered)

pronunciamento *n.* (derog.) 1. to issue, make a ~ 2. a ~ that + clause (they issued a ~ that only their theories would be acceptable)

pronunciation *n.* 1. to acquire; have a (good) ~ 2. to correct smb.'s ~ 3. a native ~ (of a language) 4. (a) spelling ~ 5. (a) nonstandard; standard ~ 6. BBC, Received (RP); General American ~

proof *n.* ["conclusive evidence"] 1. to furnish, give, offer, present, produce, provide, show ~ 2. to have ~ 3. ample, clear, conclusive, concrete, convincing, definite, incontestable, incontrovertible, indisputable, irrefutable, living, positive, tangible, undeniable, unquestionable ~ 4. documentary; mathematical; scientific ~ 5. ~ that + clause (the prosecutor furnished convincing ~ that the accused could have been at the scene of the crime, which did not of course constitute incontrovertible ~ of his guilt!) 6. (misc.) the burden, onus of ~ (the burden of ~ lies/rests with the police) ["composed type"] 7. to correct, read ~ (s) 8. galley; page; reproduction; uncorrected ~s

proofreading *n.* to do (the) ~

prop *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ against (she ~ped the chair against the door) 2. (N; used with an adjective) she ~ped the window open

propaganda *n.* 1. to engage in, spread ~ 2. to counteract, neutralize ~ 3. enemy; ideological; political; vicious ~ 4. ~ about; against

propeller *n.* 1. a ~ spins, turns 2. (misc.) the blade of a ~

propensity *n.* (formal) 1. a ~ for (she has a ~ for exaggerating) 2. a ~ to + inf. (she has a ~ to exaggerate)

proper *adj.* 1. ~ for (their attire is not ~ for this occasion) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is not ~ to enter that restaurant without a jacket; it is ~ for her not to state her own opinion) 3. ~ that + clause; subj. (it is ~ that she not state/should not state/doesn't state (BE) her own opinion; "It is altogether fitting and ~ that we should do this." – Abraham Lincoln, The Gettysburg Address (Nov. 19, 1863))

property *n.* ["smt. owned"] 1. to attach; confiscate, seize ~ 2. to buy; develop; inherit; lease; let (esp. BE), rent; sell; transfer ~ 3. to reclaim; recover (stolen) ~ 4. (an) abandoned; beachfront; commercial ~ 5. common; communal; government; individual; joint; movable; personal; private; public; real ~ 6. intellectual ~ 7. community ~ ("property held jointly by two spouses") 8. a piece of ~ 9. (misc.) a man/woman of ~ ["quality"] 10. (to have) medicinal ~ties

prophecy *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. to fulfill a ~ 3. a gloomy; self-fulfilling ~ 4. a ~ comes true; proves to be true 5. a ~ about; of (she made a ~ of gloom about their future) 6. a ~ that + clause (her ~ that you would become governor came true)

prophesy *v.* 1. (K) no one but her could have ~sied your becoming governor! 2. (L; to) she ~sied that you would become governor

prophet *n.* 1. a false ~ 2. (rel.) a major; minor ~

propinquity *n.* (formal) ~ to

propitious *adj.* ~ for, to

proportion *n.* 1. (a) direct; inverse ~ 2. in ~ (to) (is the number of people with lung cancer in direct ~ to the number of people who smoke?) 3. out of (all) ~ to (the punishment was out of (all) ~ to the crime) 4. (misc.) (to have/keep) a sense of ~; does the ~ of people with lung cancer vary directly with the ~ of people who smoke?; does the ~ of people with lung cancer fall as smoking falls?

proportional *adj.* 1. directly; inversely; roughly ~ 2. ~ to

proportionate *adj.* ~ to (the punishment was not ~ to the crime)

proportions *n.* ["extent"] 1. to assume, take on ~ 2. astronomical, huge; epic; epidemic; menacing ~ (the outbreak assumed epidemic ~) 3. of certain ~ (of astronomical ~)

proposal *n.* 1. to draw up, make, present, put forth, put forward, submit a ~ 2. to back, support a ~ 3. to accept, adopt a ~ 4. to consider, entertain; receive a ~ 5. to block, kill (colloq.), reject, turn down a ~ 6. to withdraw a ~ 7. a concrete ~ 8. a ~ falls through (the ~ to reduce taxes fell through) 9. a ~ for (the committee rejected the ~ for reducing taxes) 10. a ~ to + inf. (the committee rejected the ~ to reduce taxes) 11. a ~ that + clause; subj. (the committee considered a ~ that taxes ¬be/should be¬ reduced)

propose *v.* 1. (B) she ~d a new plan to us 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as; for (to ~ smb. for membership in a club; to ~ smb. as a member of a club) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ to ("to offer marriage to") (he ~ to her by saying, "will you marry me?") 4. (E) I ~ to leave very early 5. (G) she ~d leaving very early 6. (K) she ~d his going in my place = what she ~d was his going in my place = what she ~d was for him to go in my place 7. (L; subj.; to) we ~d (to them) that she ¬be/should be/was (BE)¬ appointed 8. (misc.) are you really/seriously -sing to leave so soon after we got here?!

proposition *n.* ["unethical, immoral proposal"] (colloq.) 1. to make (smb.) a ~ ["subject, question to be discussed"] 2. a group, series, set of ~s 3. the ~ that + clause (the committee considered the ~ that taxes should be reduced) ["business proposal"] 4. an attractive; business; paying ~

proprieties *n.* ["accepted behavior"] to observe the ~

propriety *n.* ["conformity with accepted standards of behavior"] 1. to doubt, query, question the ~ of smt. (we doubted the ~ of passing off smb. else's work as one's own) 2. doubtful; due ~ 3. with ~ (to behave with due ~)

propulsion *n.* jet; nuclear; rocket ~

prop up *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ against (she ~ped up the chair against the door = she ~ped the chair up against the door) 2. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ with (she ~ped herself up with pillows) 3. (misc.) (colloq.) to ~ up the bar ("to stand at the bar having drink after drink")

pros and cons *n.* 1. to consider, weigh the ~ 2. to debate the ~

prose *n.* 1. to write (in) ~ 2. descriptive; flowery, purple; limpid; poetic ~ 3. a passage, piece of ~

prosecute *v.* 1. to ~ vigorously 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. for murder)

prosecution *n.* 1. to conduct a ~ 2. to face ~ 3. a vigorous ~ 4. criminal ~ 5. ~ for 6. (legal) the ~ rests its case, the ~ rests (AE) 7. (misc.) subject to (criminal) ~

prosecutor *n.* a public ~ (esp. BE; AE has *district attorney*)

proseminar *n.* 1. to conduct, give, hold a ~ 2. to attend a ~ 3. a ~ on

prospect I *n.* ["anticipated outcome"] 1. a bright, rosy; inviting ~ 2. a bleak, grim; daunting; dim ~ 3. ~ that + clause (is there any ~ that the situation will improve in the long term?) 4. in ~ (is there any improvement in ~ in the long term?) 5. (misc.) is there any ~ of improvement in the long term?

prospect II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for gold)

prospects *n.* ["chances"] 1. to have ~ for (to have ~ for the future) 2. job; long-term ~ 3. ~ that + clause (are there any ~ that the situation will improve in the long term?) 4. (misc.) are there any ~ of improvement in the long term? ["financial expectations"] 5. with; without ~

prospectus *n.* (BE) a college, university; school ~ (AE uses *catalog*)

prosperity *n.* 1. to create ~ 2. to enjoy ~ 3. durable, lasting, long-term; economic; sustainable ~ 4. a period, time of ~

prostitution *n.* 1. to engage in ~ 2. to decriminalize, legalize ~ 3. to ban, criminalize, outlaw ~

prostrate I *adj.* ~ with (~ with grief)

prostrate II *v.* (D; refl.) to ~ oneself before

prostration *n.* heat; nervous ~

protect *v.* 1. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ against, from 2. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ by; with (~ yourself against loss by taking out insurance! = ~ yourself against loss with insurance!)

protection *n.* 1. to afford, give, offer, provide; get ~ 2. government; police ~ 3. consumer; environmental ~ 4. a degree, measure of ~ 5. ~ against, from 6. ~ by; with (get ~ against loss by taking out insurance! = get ~ against loss with insurance!) 7. under smb.'s ~ (she was placed under our ~)

protective *adj.* 1. overly, too; very ~ 2. ~ of, towards

protector *n.* a chest; surge ~

protein *n.* 1. (for food) to furnish, provide ~ 2. (a) complete; incomplete; simple; total ~ 3. poor in; rich in ~(s)

protest I *n.* ["complaint"] ["dissent"] 1. to enter, file, lodge, register a ~ 2. to express, make, voice a ~ (we made a strong ~ to their government) 3. to cause, draw, spark (AE), spark off (BE), trigger a ~ 4. to dismiss, reject a ~ 5. a strong, vehement, vigorous; violent (we lodged a strong ~ with their government) 6. a mild; weak ~ 7. a ~ against, at, over 8. a ~ that + clause (the court rejected their ~ that due process had not been observed) 9. in ~ (to resign in ~ against/at/over the war) 10. under ~ (they complied with the order under ~) ["public demonstration of disapproval"] 11. to organize, stage a ~ 12. to put down, quell a ~ 13. an anti-nuclear; anti-war; mass; noisy; political; public ~ 14. a ~ against 15. (misc.) a storm of ~

protest II *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly, strongly, vehemently, vigorously 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about, against, at, over (to ~ against a war; AE also has: to ~ a war) 3. (K) (AE) we ~ed his being released 4. (L; to) we ~ed (to the mayor) that due process had not been observed USAGE NOTE: BE distinguishes between "she protested ["asserted"] her innocence = she protested that she was innocent" and "she protested against/at ["opposed"] her parking fine." AE can make that distinction, too – but is more likely nowadays to have both "she protested her innocence" and "she protested her parking fine."

protestation *n.* 1. a ~ against 2. a ~ of (we believe her ~s of innocence) 3. a ~ that + clause (we believe her ~s that she is innocent)

protocol *n.* ["minutes"] ["statement"] 1. to draw up a ~ ["official code of conduct"] 2. to observe; violate ~ 3. court, palace, royal; diplomatic; military ~ 4. the rules of ~ 5. ~ demands/requires that + clause (~ demands that he ¬visit/should visit/visits (BE)¬ the embassy) 6. (misc.) according to ~; a breach of ~

protrude *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from

proud *adj.* 1. justly ~ 2. ~ of (~ of one's children) 3. ~ to + inf. (will they be ~ enough to defend their principles?) 4. ~ that + clause (they are ~ that they defended their principles) 5. (misc.) to do smb. ~; as ~ as a peacock

prove *v.* 1. to ~ conclusively 2. (B) she was able to ~ her innocence to us 3. (E) she ~d to be a good worker; the rumor ~d to be true 4. (H) she ~d herself to be a good worker 5. (L; to) she was able to ~ (to us) that she was innocent 6. (M) history ~d her to have been right and ~d her detractors to have been wrong 7. (N; used with an adjective, past participle, noun) history ~d her right and ~d her detractors wrong; she ~d herself a good worker 8. (Q; to) she ~d (to us) how it had been done 9. (S) she ~d a good worker; the rumor ~d true 10. (misc.) "why are you behaving like that? what are you trying to ~?"

proverb *n.* 1. a common, old, popular, wise ~ 2. a ~ goes, runs 3. a ~ that (there is an old ~ (to the effect) that haste makes waste)

provide *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for one's family; to ~ for every contingency) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for, to (to ~ blankets for the refugees; to ~ services to the needy) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ with (they were ~d with the proper equipment; we ~d the refugees with blankets; the phone call ~d her with an excuse to leave) 4. (L; subj.) this bill ~s that money ¬be/should be¬ allocated for flood control 5. (O) (colloq.) (esp. AE) the phone call ~d her an excuse to leave 6. (misc.) tonight's buffet supper has been ~d courtesy of the mayor's office

provided, **providing** *adj.* ~ that (she will join us ~ that you are also there)

providence *n.* divine ~

providential *adj.* (formal) ~ that + clause (it was ~ that we ¬arrived/should have arrived¬ at exactly the same time!)

province *n.* 1. an autonomous ~ 2. (esp. in Canada) an inland; maritime ~; the Province of Alberta, Ontario, etc. 3. the capital of a ~ (the capital of the Province of Alberta is Edmonton) 4. (misc.) (BE) are there as many opportunities in the ~s as there are in London?; can smb. from the ~s be as successful as smb. from London?

proving ground *n.* a ~ for

provision *n.* ["preparations"] 1. to make ~ for (what ~ have you made for your old age?) 2. private; public, state ~ (of) (is private ~ of health care adequate for your needs?) 3. financial ~s ["clause in a legal document"] 4. to violate a ~ (of a contract) 5. according to a ~ (that is impermissible according to Provision 25 of the contract) 6. under a ~ (that is impermissible under Provision 25 of the contract) 7. (esp. AE) with a ~ that + clause (she will join us with the ~ that you are also there)

proviso *n.* 1. to add a ~ 2. with a ~ that + clause; subj. (she will join us with the ~ that you ¬also be/are also (esp. BE)¬ there)

provocation *n.* 1. deliberate; extreme, gross, severe ~ 2. ~ for (there was no ~ for such behavior) 3. at a ~ (he loses his temper at the slightest ~) 4. under ~ (he did use strong language, but only under extreme ~) 5. without ~ (he used strong language without the slightest ~!)

provocative *adj.* highly, very ~

provoke *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into, to (to ~ smb. into getting angry = to ~ smb. to anger) 2. (H) what ~d you to get angry?

prowess *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display ~ 2. athletic; military ~ 3. ~ as, at, in (he demonstrated his ~ as an athlete, at being an athlete, at throwing the javelin, in athletics) 4. ~ with (he demonstrated his ~ with the javelin)

prowl I *n.* on the ~ (for) (journalists on the ~ for juicy stories)

prowl II *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ around the neighborhood; they ~ed through the forest

proximate *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to

proximity *n.* 1. close ~ 2. ~ to 3. in ~ to 4. in the ~ of (a new hotel will be built in the ~ of the airport)

proxy *n.* 1. to appoint, name, nominate a ~ 2. to get, have, hold smb.'s ~ 3. a ~ to + inf. (I named him my ~ to vote for me = he had my ~ to vote for me) 4. by ~ (to vote by ~)

prudent *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was not ~ of you to sell that property so soon = you were not ~ to sell that property so soon)

prudish *adj.* ~ about

pry *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into smb.'s affairs) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ out of (to ~ information out of smb.) 3. (N; used with an adjective) they pried the door open USAGE NOTE: For senses two and three, BE uses *prise* or *prize*.

pry off *v.* (AE) (D; tr.) to ~ with (they pried off the door with a crowbar = they pried the door off with a crowbar) (BE has *prise off, prize off*)

P.S. *n.* to add a ~ (to)

psalm *n.* to recite a ~

p's and q's *n.* ["manners"] to mind one's ~

pseudonym *n.* 1. to adopt, take; use a ~ (Samuel L. Clemens adopted the ~ (of) Mark Twain) 2. under a ~ (Samuel L. Clemens wrote under the ~ (of) Mark Twain)

psychology *n.* ["science of the mind"] 1. abnormal; applied; behavioral; child; clinical; cognitive; developmental; educational; experimental; general; Gestalt; social ~ ["attitudes"] 2. group; mob ~ ["knowledge of a person's habits, reactions"] (colloq.) 3. to use ~

psych up *v.* (colloq.) (H; refl.) they ~ed themselves up to do well on the exam

pub *n.* 1. to manage, operate, run a ~ 2. to work at/in a ~ 3. to go down (to) the ~, stop at a ~ (on the way home); to drink at/in a ~; to drop into a ~ (see also *pub grub* at **grub I** *n.*)

pub-crawl *n.* (esp. BE) to go on a ~

puberty *n.* 1. to reach (the age/onset of) ~ 2. at ~

public *n.* 1. to educate, enlighten the ~ 2. to fool, mislead the ~ 3. the general; Great British (BE; humorous); listening; reading; theatergoing; traveling; viewing ~ 4. a member of the ~ 5. in ~

publication *n.* ["act of publishing"] 1. to begin, start ~ 2. to cease, stop; suspend ~ 3. to ban ~ (the government banned ~ of the newspaper) ["printed work"] 4. a government; official ~ 5. a copy; issue of a ~

publicity *n.* 1. to give, provide ~ 2. to gain, get, receive ~ 3. to seek ~ 4. to avoid, shun ~ 5. advance; enormous, extensive, wide ~ 6. adverse, bad; unwelcome ~ 7. favorable, good ~ 8. ~ surrounds (the blaze of ~ surrounding their trip to Europe) 9. ~ for 10. (misc.) a blaze of ~ (they left for Europe in a blaze of ~)

publicized *adj.* highly, widely ~

public opinion *n.* 1. to arouse, stir up ~ 2. to form, mold ~ 3. to affect, influence, sway, swing; manipulate ~ 4. to express ~ 5. to canvass, poll, probe, sound out ~

publishing *n.* desk-top ~

puff I *n.* a powder ~

puff II *n.* to have, take a ~ (at/on a cigarette)

puff III *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at, on (to ~ on a pipe; he sat ~ing away at his pipe) 2. (misc.) to ~ smoke into smb.'s face

pull I *n.* ["force"] 1. to give a ~ (at/on) (she gave a ~ on the rope = she gave the rope a ~) 2. gravitational ~ ["influence"] (colloq.) 3. to use one's ~ (she used her ~ to avoid paying the fine) 4. the ~ to + inf. (she had enough ~ to avoid paying the fine)

pull II *v.* 1. to ~ hard 2. (d; intr.) ("to tug") to ~ at (the little boy was ~ing at his father's coat; she ~ed at the door but it wouldn't open) 3. (AE; colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to support") (we were ~ing for the home team; they were ~ing for our team to win) 4. (d; intr.) ("to move") to ~ into (the train ~ed into the station) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ off ("to turn off") (to ~ off the road) 6. (D; tr.) ("to tug") to ~ off (she ~ed the sheets off the bed) (see also **pull off**) 7. (D; intr.) ("to tug") to ~ on (to ~ on a rope till it is tight) (see also **pull on**) 8. (d; intr.) ("to move") to ~ out of (the train ~ed out of the station; to ~ out of a dive) 9. (d; tr.) ("to lift") to ~ out of (they ~ed her out of the water; the pilot ~ed the plane out of the dive) 10. (d; tr.) ("to tug") to ~ over (she ~ed her sweater over her head) (see also **pull over**) 11. (N) ("to tug") she ~ed the rope tight; she ~ed the child free 12. (P; tr.) ("to tug") they ~ed the cart across the field 13. (misc.) to ~ a gun/knife on smb.; (esp. BE) to ~ a door to; she ~ed the child towards her (see also *to pull a fast one (on)* at **fast one**; *to pull oneself to one's feet* at **foot**)

pull ahead *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ of (to ~ of the other runners; the faster car ~ed ahead of the slower one)

pull alongside *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ of (esp. AE) (to ~ of the other car)

pull away *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from (to ~ from the curb; she ~ed the child away from the fire; the faster car ~ed away from the slower one)

pull back *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ from the others; to ~ to our original position; they ~ed back from the brink of war; she ~ed the child back from the fire)

pull down *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ over (she ~ed her sweater down over her head)

pulley *n.* a fixed; movable ~

pull off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ over (she ~ed her sweater off over her head) (see also *pull off* at **pull II** *v.*)

pull on *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ over (she ~ed her sweater on over her head) (see also *pull on* at **pull II** *v.*)

pull over *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; to (she ~ed her car over to the curb when the policeman ordered her to ~ to the curb) (see also *pull over* at **pull II** *v.*)

pull up *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ over (she ~ed her sweater up over her head) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to (she ~ed her car up to the curb when the policeman ordered her to ~ to the curb)

pulp *n.* 1. wood ~ 2. to beat smb. to a ~

pulpit *n.* 1. to ascend, mount the ~ 2. a bully ~ (AE) ("a place or a chance to promulgate one's views") (her media exposure gives her a bully ~ for influencing public opinion) 3. from; on the ~ (to denounce wrongdoing from the ~)

pulse *n.* 1. to feel; take ("measure") smb.'s ~ 2. to quicken smb.'s ~ (the excitement quickened his ~) 3. an erratic, irregular, unsteady; normal; rapid; regular, steady; strong; weak ~ 4. a ~ races; slackens, slows

pump I *n.* 1. to prime; work a ~ 2. a bicycle; gasoline (AE), petrol (BE) ~ 3. a centrifugal; heat; stomach; suction; sump ~

pump II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to interrogate") to ~ for (they ~ed her for information) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ investments into a company; to ~ water into a tank) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ out of (to ~ water out of a tank) 4. (N; used with an adjective) we ~ed the tank dry, empty; full

pun *n.* to make a ~

punch I *n.* ["blow"] 1. to deliver, give, land, throw a ~ 2. to pull ("soften") one's ~es (also fig.) 3. to roll with a ~ 4. a hard; knockout; one-two; rabbit; solid; sucker; Sunday ~ 5. a ~ in, on, to (a ~ in the face; a ~ on the nose) ["misc."] 6. to pack a ~ ("to be powerful") (also fig.) (this cocktail packs quite a ~!); to beat smb. to the ~

punch II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in, on (I ~ed him in/on the nose)

punch III *n.* ["mixed drink typically consisting of fruit juice, liquor, etc."] 1. to make ~ 2. to spike ("add alcohol to") the ~ 3. to water down the ~ 4. fruit ~

Punch *n.* as pleased as ~ ("very pleased")

punctilious *adj.* ~ about

punctual *adj.* ~ about, in (~ in paying one's rent)

punctuality *n.* ~ in

punctuate *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ one's comments with quotations from the Bible)

punctuation mark *n.* to place, put a ~ somewhere

puncture *n.* (esp. BE) 1. to get; have a ~ 2. to fix, mend, patch, repair a ~ 3. a slow ~ (see also **lumbar puncture**)

pundit *n.* a political ~

punish *v.* 1. to ~ cruelly; harshly, severely; lightly, mildly; summarily 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (they were ~ed harshly as dangerous criminals) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ by; with 4. (D; tr.) to ~ for (they were ~ed harshly for their crime ¬by being executed/with execution¬)

punishable *adj.* ~ by (~ by death)

punishment *n.* 1. to administer, mete out ~ to 2. to impose, inflict ~ on 3. to escape ~ 4. to suffer, take ~ 5. cruel, cruel and unusual; harsh, severe, unjust ~ 6. fitting, just; light, mild ~ 7. corporal; summary ~ (see also **capital punishment**) 8. (mil.) company ~ 9. ~ for (their ~ for that crime was execution) 10. as, in ~ (for) (they were executed in ~ for their crime)

pupil I *n.* ["opening in the iris of the eye"] constricted; dilated ~s

pupil II see the Usage Note for **student**

puppet *n.* 1. to manipulate, move, pull the strings of a ~ 2. a glove (BE), hand (esp. AE) ~

purchase I *n.* ["act of buying"] to make a ~

purchase II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from (we ~d a book (for her) (for twenty dollars) from a local bookshop) 3. (misc.) to ~ as is ("to purchase with no guarantee of quality"); to ~ retail; to ~ wholesale; to ~ at a reasonable price; to ~ compulsorily (esp. BE) (the government ~ed the land compulsorily to build housing on it)

pure *adj.* as ~ as the driven snow

purge I *n.* 1. to carry out, conduct a ~ 2. a radical, sweeping ~ (the party conducted a sweeping ~ of all dissidents)

purge II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to remove") to ~ from (all dissidents were ~d from the party) 2. (D; tr.) ("to cleanse") to ~ of (the party was ~d of all dissidents)

purify *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ of (the party was ~fied of all dissidents)

purity *n.* 1. to maintain ~ 2. great; moral ~

purple I *adj.* ["livid"] ~ with (~ with rage)

purple II *n.* 1. dark; deep; light ~ 2. a shade of ~ 3. a patch of ~ 4. in ~ (dressed in ~)

purple III *n.* (BE) born to the ~ ("born into a royal or aristocratic family")

purport *v.* (formal) (E) ("to claim") they ~ to be rich

purported *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (they are ~ to be rich = they are ~ly rich)

purpose *n.* 1. to accomplish, achieve, fulfill a ~ 2. to serve a ~ 3. to put smt. to a good ~ 4. a lofty, worthy; stated; useful ~ 5. smb.'s ~ in (what was your ~ in criticizing the authorities?) 6. for a ~ (it was done for a good ~; we arranged the meeting for the ~ of preventing a strike) 7. (misc.) at cross ~s; for all practical ~s ("in reality"); the herb can be used for medicinal ~s; the money is considered income for tax ~s; for the ~s of this discussion, let's assume an annual growth rate of 3%; on ~ ("purposely") ("did it happen by accident or on ~?" "it happened accidentally on ~ – if you know what I mean!"); with the express ~ of (we arranged the meeting with the express ~ of preventing a strike); to no ~ (we did what we could to prevent a strike but unfortunately it was all to no ~)

purse strings *n.* ["finances"] to control, hold the ~

pursuance *n.* (formal) in ~ of (in ~ of one's aims)

pursuant *adv.* (formal) (cannot stand alone) ~ to (~ to one's aims)

pursue *v.* to ~ aggressively; doggedly, patiently, relentlessly

pursuit *n.* ["chase"] 1. dogged, relentless; hot ~ 2. in ~ of (in hot ~ of the terrorists) 3. (misc.) "Life, Liberty and the ~ of Happiness" – U.S. Declaration of Independence, July 4, 1776 ["hobby"] 4. smb.'s favorite ~

purview *n.* to fall outside; under; within the ~ of smt. (this question falls outside the ~ of this investigation)

pus *n.* 1. to discharge ~ 2. ~ forms

push I *n.* ["act of pushing"] 1. to give smb./smt. a ~ (our car was stuck and they gave us a ~) 2. a hard ~ ["advance"] 3. to launch a ~ (the army launched a ~ to reach the sea) 4. a big ~ 5. a ~ to; towards (the army launched a ~ to the sea) 6. at a ~ (all your household chores can now be done at the ~ of a button!)

push II *v.* 1. ("to shove") to ~ hard 2. (D; intr.) ("to shove") to ~ against (she ~ed against the door but it wouldn't open) 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ for ("to urge") (to ~ for reform; to ~ the government for reform) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to force one's way") (to ~ (one's way) into a crowded bus) 5. (D; tr.) ("to force to move") to ~ into (we ~ed the stalled car into the garage) 6. (d; intr.) ("to press") to ~ on (to ~ on a handle) 7. (d; intr.) to ~ through ("to force one's way through") (to ~ (one's way) through a crowd) 8. (d; intr.) ("to move") to ~ to, towards (our troops ~ed towards the next village) 9. (H) ("to urge") to ~ smb. to do smt. 10. (N; used with an adjective) ~ the chair closer; ~ the door open/closed/shut 11. (P; tr.) ("to shove") she ~ed the book under the bed; I was ~ed out of the way 12. (misc.) the army was ~ed to the breaking point; to ~ at (she ~ed at the door but it wouldn't open); I ~ed past the other people to get on the bus (see also *pushed for time* at **time I** *n.*)

push ahead *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with, on (they ~ed ahead with their plans and then ~ed ahead on/with their project)

push-chair *n.* (BE) to push, wheel a ~ (BE also has *(baby) buggy*; AE has *stroller*)

push down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a handle)

push on *v.* (D; intr.) ("to continue") to ~ to, towards (our troops ~ed on towards the next village)

pushover *n.* ["easy target"] a ~ for

push-up *n.* (esp. AE) to do ~s (see also **press-up**)

push up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a handle)

put I *adj.* (colloq.) ["in one place"] to stay ~

put II *v.* 1. (B) ("to pose") to ~ a question to smb. 2. (d; tr.) ("to place") to ~ before (to ~ evidence before a grand jury; to ~ a proposal before a committee; to ~ one's family before all other concerns) 3. (d; tr.) ("to place") to ~ in; into (to ~ milk in/into the refrigerator; to ~ new equipment into service; to ~ a criminal in prison; to ~ money in/into circulation; to ~ a plan into operation; to ~ one's affairs in order; to ~ a theory into practice; to ~ wood into a stove; to ~ sugar in/into tea; to ~ a car into a garage; to ~ words into smb.'s mouth; to ~ one's confidence/faith in smb.; ~ yourself in my place; to ~ smb. in a bad mood) 4. (d; intr.) ("to move") to ~ into (the ship put into port) 5. (d; tr.) ("to express") to ~ into (to ~ one's feelings into words) 6. (d; tr.) ("to place") to ~ on (to ~ books on a table; to ~ a stamp on a letter; to ~ smb.'s name on a list; the doctor put the patient on a diet) 7. (d; tr.) ("to bet") to ~ on (to ~ money on a horse) 8. (d; tr.) ("to place") to ~ out of (the enemy has put all our tanks out of action) 9. (d; tr.) ("to assign") to ~ to (we put them all to work) 10. (d; tr.) ("to place") to ~ to (she put her fingers to her lips) 11. (d; tr.) ("to set") to ~ to (to ~ words to music) 12. (P; tr.) ("to place") to ~ one's family above all other concerns; she put her car at our disposal; ~ your shoes near the door; ~ the skis next to the fire; ~ the children to bed; ~ your things under the bed; to ~ troops across a river; she put her hand over her mouth; he put his arm around my shoulder 13. (misc.) to ~ a question to a/the vote; to ~ smb. to shame; to ~ smb. to death; to ~ smb. under arrest; to ~ smb. to great expense; to put smt./smb. through a long process of investigation; I put it ("suggested") to them that the plan should be revised; to ~ it crudely – you've lied to me!; let me ~ it another way – I don't think you're telling the truth; after hours of waiting I was – to ~ it mildly – a little upset (see also *to put smb. through their paces* at **pace I** *n.*)

put ahead *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ by (we put the clocks ahead (by) one hour)

put aside *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (we put aside some money for our future needs)

put back *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ (by) (we put the clocks back by one hour) 2. (P) I put the book back ¬on the shelf/where it belonged¬ after I'd finished reading it

put down *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to consider") to ~ as (we put this trip down as a business expense = we put down this trip as a business expense) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ for ("to enter a pledge for") (I'll ~ you down for five tickets) 3. (BE) (d; tr.) ("to enter") to ~ for (he put down his son for Eton = he put his son down for Eton) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ on (she put the books down on the table) 5. (d; tr.) ("to attribute") to ~ to (she put the blunder down to inexperience = she put down the blunder to inexperience)

put forward *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ by (we put the clocks forward (by) one hour)

put in *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for ("to submit") (the victim put in a claim for damages = the victim put a claim in for damages; I'll put in a good word for you with the authorities)

put off *v.* ("to postpone") 1. (D; tr.) to ~ until (she put the trip off because of the snow) 2. (G) we put off leaving because of the snow

put out *v.* 1. (D; refl.) ("to disturb") to ~ oneself out for (don't ~ yourself out for us) 2. (misc.) (for a vessel) to ~ to sea; to ~ to stud (see also *put out to grass* at **grass**; *put out to pasture* at **pasture**)

put over *v.* (D; tr.) ("to fob off") to ~ smt. over on smb. (he put his scheme over on the unsuspecting investors)

putter *v.* (AE: BE has *potter*) 1. (d; intr.) to ~ around (to ~ around the house) 2. (misc.) he loves ~ing around in his garden

put through *v.* (D; tr.) ("to connect") to ~ to (she was finally put through to her number)

put up *v.* 1. (B) ("to propose") I'll put the idea up to the whole committee 2. (d; tr.) ("to propose") to ~ as (we put her up as a candidate) 3. (old-fashioned) (BE) (d; intr.) ("to stay") to ~ at; with (to ~ at a hotel; to ~ with friends in/at Exeter) 4. (d; tr.) ("to offer") ("to propose") to ~ for (to ~ smt. up for sale; to ~ smb. up for an award) 5. (d; tr.) ("to provide") to ~ for (she put up the money for the flowers = she put the money up for the flowers) 6. (D; tr.) ("to give shelter to") to ~ for (my friends in Exeter put me up for a/the night) 7. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to tolerate") (we will not ~ with such behavior) 8. (H) ("to place") to ~ water up to boil; he put the meal up to cook 9. (misc.) I put her up to it ("I persuaded her to do it")

puzzle I *n.* 1. to do, solve a ~ 2. a crossword ~ (see also **jigsaw**; **jigsaw puzzle**) 3. a ~ to (those matters were a ~ to the police until they realized what the key to the whole ~ was) 4. to put the pieces of a ~ together

puzzle II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ over (to ~ over a problem) 2. (R) it ~d me that they never answered the telephone 3. (misc.) it ~d me why they never answered the telephone

puzzled *adj.* 1. ~ about; at, by (I was ~ at her decision) 2. ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to learn of her decision) 3. ~ that + clause (I was ~ that they never answered the telephone) 4. (misc.) I was ~ ¬about/as to¬ why they never answered the telephone

puzzlement *n.* in ~ (they looked at us in great ~)

puzzle out *v.* (Q) I finally ~d out why they never answered the telephone

puzzling *adj.* 1. ~ to (her decision was ~ to everybody = it was a ~ decision for everybody) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was very ~ learn of her decision) 3. ~ that + clause (it was very ~ (to me) that they never answered the telephone) 4. (misc.) it was very ~ (to me) why they never answered the telephone

pyjamas *n.* (BE: AE has *pajamas*) a pair of ~

pyramid *n.* the food ~ ("the hierarchy of living beings in which each one feeds on the one below; the food chain") (are we human beings really at the top of the food ~?)

pyre *n.* a funeral ~

Q

quagmire *n.* 1. to get bogged down in a ~ 2. in a ~ of

quail I *n.* a bevy, covey of ~

quail II *v.* (d; intr.) ["to lose courage"] to ~ at, before (we ~ed at the thought of getting lost in the forest; the servant ~ed before his master)

quake *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at the sight of the apparition) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with fear) 3. (misc.) we were ~king in our boots; we ~d to see the apparition = we ~d when we saw the apparition

qualification *n.* ["limitation"] 1. with; without ~ 2. a ~ that + clause (we agreed to the proposed settlement with the ~ that there should be adequate compensation)

qualifications *n.* ["qualities, attributes"] 1. excellent, fine, outstanding, strong ~ 2. the necessary, right ~ 3. academic; educational; physical; professional ~ 4. the ~ for (she has the right ~ for the job) 5. the ~ to + inf. (she has the right ~ to do the job)

qualified *adj.* 1. eminently, fully, highly, suitably ~; well-qualified 2. poorly ~ 3. ~ as (she is ~ as an engineer) 4. ~ by (~ by education and experience for the position) 5. ~ for (she is highly ~ for the job) 6. ~ to + inf. (she is highly ~ to do the job)

qualify *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ as (she ~fied as an engineer) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (goods ~ for a discount if bought in large quantities; she ~fied for the job; what ~fied her for the job?) 3. (E) she ~fied to work as an engineer 4. (H) what ~fied her to do the job? 5. (misc.) a two-week course hardly ~fies her to do such a demanding job!

quality *n.* ["feature"] 1. admirable; endearing; innate; moral; personal; redeeming ~ties (he has no redeeming ~ties) 2. (misc.) there was a rhapsodic ~ about her playing ["degree of excellence"] 3. excellent, sterling, superb, superior; fine, good, high ~ 4. inferior, low, poor ~ 5. of a certain ~ (of good ~) 6. (misc.) (the) ~ of life

qualms *n.* 1. to feel, have ~ 2. ~ about (I have no ~ about borrowing money) 3. without (any) ~ (he's willing to ask for money without any ~!)

quandary *n.* 1. a hopeless ~ 2. in a ~ (we were in a hopeless ~) 3. a ~ about, over (they are in a hopeless ~ about their finances)

quantity *n.* ["amount"] 1. a considerable, huge, large, vast ~ 2. a sufficient ~ 3. a negligible, small ~ 4. in ~ (goods qualify for a discount if bought in ~) 5. in (large) ~ties ~ (goods qualify for a discount if bought in large ~ties) ["factor"] ["person"] 6. an unknown ~

quarantine *n.* 1. to impose, institute a ~ 2. to put smb. in ~ 3. to lift a ~ 4. strict ~ 5. a period of/in ~ 6. in, under ~ (to place under ~)

quarrel I *n.* 1. to cause, lead to a ~ (their political differences led to a bitter ~) 2. to have, pick, provoke, start a ~ (she picked a ~ with her neighbor) 3. to patch up, settle a ~ 4. a bitter, furious, violent; long-standing; never-ending ~ 5. a domestic, family ~ 6. a ~ breaks out, ensues 7. a ~ about, over; between; with (a bitter ~ broke out between them over the use of the telephone; she had a ~ with her neighbor about the money that he had borrowed)

quarrel II *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly, furiously, violently 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about, over; with (she ~ed with her neighbor about the money that he had borrowed)

quarry I *n.* ["prey"] 1. to stalk one's ~ 2. to bring one's ~ to bay 3. hunted ~

quarry II *n.* ["open excavation"] 1. to work a ~ 2. an abandoned ~ 3. a marble; stone ~

quarter I *n.* ["mercy"] 1. to give, show ~ (the invaders showed no ~) 2. to ask for; receive ~ ["one fourth"] 3. (in telling time) (a) ~ of (AE), to (the hour) (it was a ~ to five) 4. (a) ~ after (AE), past (the hour) (it is a ~ past five) 5. (misc.) to divide into ~s

quarter II *v.* (esp. mil.) (D; tr.) ("to assign to a lodging place") to ~ among; on, upon (to ~ troops on the local population; "~ing large bodies of armed troops among us" – U.S. Declaration of Independence, July 4, 1776)

quarters *n.* ["housing"] 1. to find ~ 2. bachelor; living; officers'; servants' ~ 3. cramped ~ 4. ("misc.") confined to ~ ["assigned stations on a ship"] 5. battle, ~ (see also **general quarters**) ["sources"] 6. from certain ~ (from the highest ~) ["misc."] 7. at close ~ ("close together")

quartet *n.* 1. to play, perform a ~ 2. a ~ performs, plays 3. a piano; string; woodwind ~ 4. a barbershop ~

quay *n.* at, on a ~

queasy *adj.* ["uneasy"] ~ about (to feel ~ about smt.)

queen *n.* 1. to crown a ~ 2. to crown; proclaim smb. ~ 3. to depose, dethrone a ~ 4. a despotic; popular; strong; weak ~ 5. a ~ ascends, mounts, succeeds to the throne 6. a ~ reigns; rules 7. a ~ abdicates 8. a ~ consort; mother 9. (misc.) to toast the ~; how was life under the old ~?; a beauty ~; a drag ~ (colloq. and derog.) ("a male transvestite"); a drama ~ (who over-dramatizes things)

queen's evidence *n.* (BE) to turn ~ (see also **king's evidence**, **state's evidence**)

queer I *adj.* 1. ~ about (there is smt. ~ about them) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to be speaking of the heat in January) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that January has been so hot)

queer II *v.* (colloq.) 1. (d; refl.) ("to put oneself in a bad light") to ~ with (he ~ed himself with all his professors) 2. (misc.) to ~ smb.'s pitch (that mistake of his really ~ed his pitch with all his professors!)

query *n.* 1. to put a ~ to 2. to reply, respond to a ~ 3. a ~ about

quest *n.* 1. to set out on a ~ (for) 2. a ~ for (she set out on a ~ for perfection) 3. in ~ of (she set out in ~ of perfection)

question I *n.* ["query"] 1. to ask (smb.) a ~; to ask a ~ of smb.; to have a ~ for smb. 2. to address, pose, put a ~ to smb. 3. to bring up, raise a ~ 4. to fire, shoot a ~ at 5. to answer, field, reply to, respond to; take a ~ (the senator fielded all ~s expertly) 6. to avoid; beg ("evade") the ~ 7. to parry, sidestep smb.'s ~s 8. a civil ("polite"); relevant; straightforward ~ 9. an academic, hypothetical, rhetorical; debatable, moot ~ 10. a complex; complicated; puzzling ~ 11. a blunt, direct; pointed; probing ~ 12. an awkward, embarrassing, sticky, ticklish; irrelevant; leading; loaded, tricky; thorny; trick; trivial ~ 13. (on an examination) an essay; multiple-choice; true-false ~ 14. an exam(ination), test; quiz ~ 15. a ~ about, as to, concerning (the senator fielded expertly all ~s from the press about his activities but he did take a few ~s from the floor/audience) ["matter being discussed"] 16. to consider, debate, discuss; look into; raise a ~ 17. to put the ~ ("to vote on the matter being discussed") 18. a burning; controversial; crucial; explosive; open; vexed (esp. BE) ~ 19. (misc.) (colloq.) to pop the ~ (to) ("to propose marriage") ["doubt"] ["dispute"] 20. to clear up, resolve a ~ 21. a ~ about, as to, of (there is no ~ about her sincerity) 22. beyond (all) ~ 23. in, into ~ (to come into ~; to call smt. into ~) 24. open to ~ 25. without ~ ["interrogational form"] (ling.) 26. a tag; wh-; yes-no ~ (a tag ~ has a ~ tag, hasn't it?) ["misc."] 27. out of the ~ ("impossible"); the ~ of/as to/whether he'll go; there's some ~ (¬about/as to¬) whether he'll go USAGE NOTE: The sentence *there's no question that he'll go* is ambiguous. It could mean "there's no question of him/his going – he'll stay". Or, it could mean "there's no question but that he'll go – he'll go".

question II *v.* 1. to closely; intensively; repeatedly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ about (the police ~ed her closely about where the money had gone) 3. (Q) they ~ed where the money had gone

questionable *adj.* 1. highly, very ~ 2. (misc.) it's ~ whether she was actually there

questioning *n.* 1. close ("intensive") ~ 2. under ~ (under close ~ by the district attorney)

question mark *n.* 1. a big, huge ~ 2. a ~ hangs over (after those revelations, there's a huge ~ (hanging) over the senator's fitness to continue in office) (see also *question mark* at **mark I** *n.*)

questionnaire *n.* 1. to draw up, formulate a ~ 2. to circulate, distribute, hand out, send out a ~ 3. to answer, complete, fill in, fill out (esp. AE), fill up (BE; old-fashioned); hand in, return a ~

queue I *n.* (esp. BE) 1. to form a ~ (to form a ~ for fresh fruit) 2. to join; jump the ~ (AE has *buck the line*) 3. in a ~ (to stand/wait in a ~ for fresh fruit)

queue II *v.* (esp. BE) (D; intr.) to ~ for (they had to ~ for fresh fruit)

queue up *v.* (esp. BE) (D; intr.) to ~ for (they had to ~ for fresh fruit)

quibble I *n.* a minor ~

quibble II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, over; with (to ~ with smb. about trifles)

quick I *adj.* 1. ~ about (be ~ about it) 2. ~ at (~ at picking up a new language) 3. ~ with (~ with one's hands) 4. (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to pick up new languages; he is ~ to take offense) 5. (misc.) ~ on (~ on one's feet; ~ on the uptake); as ~ as a flash

quick II *n.* 1. to cut smb. to the ~ ("to offend smb. gravely") 2. (misc.) the ~ and the dead

quicksand *n.* a bed of ~

quiet I *adj.* 1. to be; keep ~ 2. (misc.) as ~ as a mouse

quiet II *n.* 1. to shatter the (peace and) ~ 2. (misc.) peace and ~

quilt *n.* a crazy; down; patchwork ~

quintet *n.* 1. to play, perform a ~ 2. a ~ performs, plays 3. a piano; string; woodwind ~

quip I *n.* 1. to make a ~ about 2. a ready ~

quip II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about; at 2. (L) she ~ped that a woman needs a man like a fish needs a bicycle = "a woman needs a man like a fish needs a bicycle," she ~pped (to me)

quirk *n.* 1. a strange ~ 2. by a ~ of fate

quit *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~as; because of, over (he quit his job as a civil servant because of the bribe) 2. (colloq.) (esp. AE) (D; intr.) ("to stop") to ~ on (the engine quit on us) 3. (G) she quit smoking

quits *n.* (colloq.) to call it ~ ("to cease doing smt.")

quiver I *n.* to feel a ~ (of excitement)

quiver II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with excitement)

quiz I *n.* ["short test"] 1. to draw up, make up, prepare a 2. to give a ~ 3. to take a ~ 4. to fail; pass a ~ 5. a daily; general-knowledge; pop (AE); pub; weekly ~ 6. an oral; unannounced; written ~ (see also *quiz question* at **question I** *n.*)

quiz II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ about, on (the police ~zed the neighbors about the incident)

quoits *n.* 1. to pitch, play ~ 2. a game of ~

quorum *n.* 1. to constitute, make (up) a ~ 2. to have; lack a ~

quota *n.* 1. to assign, establish, fix, set a ~ 2. to fill, fulfill, meet a ~ 3. to exceed one's ~ 4. an import; production; racial ~ 5. a ~ for; on (congratulations! you've exceeded your ~ for the week! = you've exceeded your weekly ~!)

quotation *n.* ["citation"] 1. to give; take a ~ from 2. a direct ~ 3. a ~ comes from 4. a dictionary of ~s (from; about, on; for) (a dictionary of ~s from famous authors on just about every subject and for just about every occasion!) ["estimate of cost"] 5. to give, put in, send in, submit a ~ (for) 6. to invite ~s (for/from) 7. the highest; lowest ~ (see also *quotation mark* at **mark I** *n.*)

quote I *n.* 1. scare ~s 2. in ~s 3. (misc.) ~ ¬unquote/end of quote¬ (the President said – ~ “the only thing we have to fear is – fear itself!” – ¬unquote/end of quote¬) see **quotation** (see also *quote mark* at **mark I** *n.*)

quote II *v.* 1. to ~ directly; in full 2. (A) she ~d several verses to us; or: she ~d us several verses 3. (d; intr.) to ~ from (she loves to ~ from Shakespeare) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ from (she loves to ~ verses from Shakespeare) 5. (misc.) to ~ about, on (she loves to ~ Shakespeare on just about any subject!); to ~ as (Hamlet’s “To be or not to be” is frequently/widely ~d as an example of Shakespeare at his best); I think she’s going to resign – but don’t ~ me on that!; the article ~d above = the above-quoted article; the President said – and I ~ – “the only thing we have to fear is – fear itself!” = the President said – ~ “the only thing we have to fear is – fear itself!”

quotient *n.* an intelligence ~ (IQ)

R

r *n.* 1. to roll, trill an ~ 2. a retroflex; rolled, trilled; uvular ~

rabbi *n.* a chief; Conservative; Liberal (BE), Progressive (BE); Orthodox; Reform ~ USAGE NOTE: See the entry for **Judaism**

rabbit *n.* 1. ~s breed quickly; burrow; hop (see also *rabbit warren* at **warren**)

rabbit on *v.* (colloq.) (BE) (D; intr.) ("to chatter") to ~ about

rabid *adj.* ["fanatical"] ~ about, on (~ on a certain subject)

rabies *n.* 1. to catch, get; have ~ (can humans get rabies from mad dogs?) 2. to transmit ~ (can mad dogs transmit ~ to humans?)

race I *n.* ["group distinguished by certain physical traits"] 1. the Caucasoid; Mongoloid; Negroid ~ 2. the human ~ 3. the (so-called) master ~ 4. between ~s (have relations between ~s ever been better ~?) 5. of a ~ (have relations ever been better between people of different ~s?) 6. (misc.) a person of mixed ~ (see also *all races and creeds* at **creed** 4)

race II *n.* ["contest of speed"] ["competition"] 1. to have, hold, organize, stage a ~ 2. to drive; row; run a ~ 3. to enter; lose; take part in; win a ~ 4. to fix (the results of) a ~ 5. a close, even, hotly contested, tight; grueling; one-sided, uneven ~ 6. an automobile (AE), motor (esp. BE); boat; cross-country; cycle; dog; drag ("acceleration") ~; footrace; horse; long-distance; relay ~ 7. (pol.) a congressional; governor's, gubernatorial; political; presidential; senatorial ~ 8. a ~ against, with; between; for (the ~ for the presidency was run between well-qualified candidates; it was a ~ against time to get the patient to the hospital) 9. a ~ to + inf. (the ~ to conquer space) ["misc."] 10. a rat ~ ("very hectic activity"); since both parties have fielded strong candidates, the election is now very much a two-horse ~ (see also **arms race**)

race III *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ against, with (to ~ against time) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for a prize) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to (let's ~ to school; I'll ~ you to the car; we ~d the child to the emergency room) 4. (E) we ~d to get there in time 5. (P; intr., tr.) to ~ through the park; they ~d around the corner; we ~d them down the hill; they ~d down the hill to the bottom; they ~d up the hill from the bottom

race down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from; to (they ~d down from the top of the hill to the bottom)

race up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from; to (they ~d up to the top of the hill from the bottom)

racialism (BE) see **racism**

racing *n.* auto (AE), motor (esp. BE); cycle; drag ("acceleration"); flat; harness; horse; stockcar ~

racism *n.* 1. to stamp out ~ 2. blatant, out-and-out; endemic; institutionalized; rampant; vicious, virulent ~

rack I *n.* ["framework, stand"] 1. a bicycle; bomb; clothes; hat; luggage (AE), roof (BE); magazine; rifle; toast; spice; towel; wine ~ 2. a dish (esp. AE), plate (BE) ~ 3. in a ~ ["instrument of torture"] 4. on the ~

rack II *n.* ["destruction"] to go to ~ and ruin

racked *adj.* 1. ~ by (~ by doubt) 2. ~ with (~ with pain)

racket I *n.* ["noise"] 1. to make a ~ 2. an awful, terrible ~ 3. over the ~ (I can't hear anything over this terrible ~!) ["dishonest practice"] 4. to operate, run a ~ 5. a numbers; protection ~ 6. in a ~ (also humorous) ("what ~ are you in, then?" "I'm a gynecologist, actually.")

racket II racquet *n.* ["bat used to play tennis, etc."] 1. to swing a ~ 2. to restring; string a ~ 3. a badminton; squash; tennis ~

racketeer *n.* a big-time, notorious; petty ~

radar *n.* 1. to track by ~ 2. off, under the ~ (also fig., colloq.) (he got in under my ~ and I fell for him before I knew what he was really like; a major player in the international futures market who fell off the ~ after losing a lot of money)

radiant *adj.* ~ with (she was ~ with joy) USAGE NOTE: In this sense, *radiant* is used of women rather than of men.

radiate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ (out) from; to (joy ~d (out) from her to everyone else at the party)

radiation *n.* 1. to emit, give off ~ 2. nuclear ~ 3. background; harmful ~ 4. a dose; level of ~ (even high doses of ~ may not cure certain cancers; low levels of background ~ have been reported here)

radical I *adj.* 1. politically; very ~ 2. ~ in (~ in one's views)

radical II *n.* a diehard; political ~

radio I *n.* ["radio receiving set"] 1. to plug in; put on, switch on, turn on a ~ 2. to switch off, turn off; unplug a ~ 3. to turn down; turn up a ~ 4. to listen to the ~ 5. an AM, medium-wave (esp. BE); (CB) Citizens' Band; clock; digital; FM, VHF (esp. BE); long-wave (esp. UK); portable; shortwave; transistor ~ 6. on, over the ~ (I heard the bad news over the ~) ["radio broadcasting industry"] 7. commercial; local; national; public (esp. AE) ~ 8. (to be/work) in ~

radio II *v.* 1. (A) we ~ed the message to them; or: we ~ed them the message 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ for (they ~ed (to) us for help) 3. (H) they ~ed (to) us to help them 4. (L; to) they ~ed (to) us that they needed our help

radioactivity *n.* 1. to emit, generate, give off, produce ~ 2. (a) dangerous (level of) ~

radishes *n.* a bunch of ~

radius *n.* 1. a cruising ~ 2. in, within a ~ of (within a ~ of fifty miles)

raffle I *n.* 1. to hold a ~ 2. to win a ~ 3. a ~ raises/

makes money 4. a ~ for (a ~ that made lots of money for our local church) 5. in a ~ (I won this in a ~)

raffle II *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ (off) for (we ~d (off) lots of things for our local church) 2. (misc.) (we ~d (off) lots of things (in order) to raise money for our local church)

raft *n.* 1. to launch a ~ 2. a life ~ 3. on a ~ (to float on a ~)

rafting *n.* white-water ~

rag I *n.* to chew the ~ (colloq.) ("to chat") (see also **rags**)

rag II *v.* (slang) (D ; tr.) to ~ about (they ~ged him about his beard)

rage I *n.* ["anger"] 1. to arouse, provoke, stir up smb.'s ~ 2. to express ; feel ~ 3. to fly into a ~ 4. to face ; placate ~ (to face the ~ of one's victims and try to placate it) 5. (a) blind, towering, ungovernable, violent ; jealous ; sudden ~ 6. ~ builds up ; bursts out ; subsides 7. an explosion, fit, outburst of ~ 8. a ~ against 9. in a ~ 10. (misc.) to be beside oneself with ~ ; quiver with ; seethe with ~ ["fashion, vogue"] (colloq.) 11. the latest ~ 12. a ~ for (the latest ~ is for short skirts) ["misc."] 13. road ~ (an accident caused by a fit of road ~) ; it's all the ~ (are short skirts all the ~ right now ?)

rage II *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) to ~ against, at ("Rage, ~ against the dying of the light" – Dylan Thomas, "Do Not Go Gentle Into That Good Night," 1951) 2. (misc.) to ~ out of control (the fire ~d out of control) ; the epidemic ~d through the city

ragged *adj.* to run smb. ~

rags *n.* 1. a bundle of ~ 2. (dressed) in ~ (and tatters) 3. (misc.) from ~ to riches ("from poverty to prosperity")

raid *n.* 1. to carry out, conduct, make a ~ 2. a bombing ; border ; dawn ; guerrilla ; police ; retaliatory ; suicide ~ 3. a ~ into (the enemy carried out a ~ into our territory) 4. a ~ on, upon (a ~ on an illegal gambling casino) (see also **air raid**)

rail I *n.* ["barrier, handrail"] 1. at the ~ (to stand at the ~) 2. (to jump) over the ~ 3. (misc.) a towel ~ ; to hold on to a ~ (see also **rails**)

rail II *v.* (d ; intr.) ("to complain") to ~ about, against, at

railroad I *n.* (esp. AE) 1. to manage, operate, run a ~ 2. a double-track ; elevated ; single-track ~ 3. a transcontinental ~ 4. a ~ from ; to 5. on a ~ ("I've been working on the ~ All the live-long day" – American folk-song)

railroad II *v.* (colloq.) ("to force") 1. (d ; tr.) to ~ into (they ~ed us into signing the contract) 2. (d ; tr.) to ~ through (to ~ a bill through a legislature and then ~ another one through)

rails *n.* 1. to go off, jump the ~ (the train ¬went off / jumped¬ the ~s and there was a serious accident) (also. fig.) (he went off the ~s and got into serious trouble) 2. to ride the ~ (see **rod** 5)

railway *n.* 1. (esp. BE) see **railroad I** 2. a scenic ~ (BE) 3. a cable ; cog ; light ; miniature ; rack ~ 4. a broad-gauge ; narrow-gauge ; normal-gauge ~

rain I *n.* 1. to make, produce ~ 2. to keep the ~ out 3. (a) drenching, driving, heavy, pouring, soaking, torrential ; freezing ; intermittent ; light ; steady ~ 4. acid ~ 5. ~ falls ; freezes ; lets up ; pours ; starts ; stops 6. ~ beats, patters (against the windows) 7. (misc.) the ~ came down in buckets ; to get caught in the ~ ; (BE) it's pouring with ~

rain II *v.* 1. to ~ buckets, cats and dogs, hard 2. (D ; intr., tr.) to ~ on (it was ~ing on us ; they ~ed blows / gifts on us) 3. (misc.) tears ~ed down her cheeks (see also *to rain on smb.'s parade* at **parade I** *n.*)

rainbow *n.* a ~ appears, comes out

rain check *n.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) ["a deferred offer"] 1. to give, offer a ~ on 2. to take a ~ on ("how about dinner tonight ?" "I'll have to take a ~ on that : I've got a previous engagement")

rain down *v.* (D ; intr.) to ~ on (confetti ~ed down on the spectators ; it was ~ing down on us)

raindrops *n.* ~ fall

rainfall *n.* 1. to measure ~ 2. annual, yearly ; average ; heavy ; light, low ; measurable ; normal ~

rain in *v.* (D ; intr.) to ~ on (it was ~ing in on us)

rainwater *n.* to catch, collect ~ (in a barrel)

raise I *n.* (AE) 1. to give smb. a ~ (in salary) 2. to deserve ; get a ~ 3. a pay ~ 4. an across-the-board ; annual ~ (BE has *rise*)

raise II *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) ["to lift"] to ~ above (~ your hand above your head) 2. (D ; tr.) ("to increase") to ~ by (they ~d their offer by one thousand dollars) 3. (D ; tr.) ("to lift") to ~ from ; to (to ~ a sunken ship from the bottom of the sea to the surface) 4. (d ; tr.) ("to elevate") to ~ to (to ~ smb. to the peerage) 5. (D ; tr.) to ~ as (our parents ~d us as atheists) 6. (H) ("to bring up") our parents ~d us to be atheists but also to respect others

raising *n.* consciousness-raising

raisins *n.* seeded ; seedless ~

rake *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ hay into piles) 2. (d ; intr.) to ~ through (they ~d through piles of rubbish to find the lost items and then they ~d through them again = they ~d through piles of rubbish to find the lost items and then they ~d them through again) (see also *to rake smb. over the coals* at **coal**)

rally I *n.* ["mass meeting"] 1. to go on, join, take part in ; mount, organize, stage a ~ 2. to ban ; break up, quell ; call off a ~ 3. an antinuclear ; antiwar, peace ; civil-rights ; political ~ 4. a disorderly, violent ; non-violent, orderly, peaceful ~ 5. a mass ; organized ; peace ; pep (AE) ; political ; protest ~ 6. a ~ calls for, demands ; takes place 7. a ~ against 8. a ~ for, in favor of, in support of 9. at, in a ~ (we met at a student ~ against the wars) ["competition, race between cars"] 10. to have, hold, organize, stage a ~

rally II *v.* 1. (d ; intr., tr.) to ~ around, round (to ~ around a leader ; "Oh we'll ~ round the flag, boys" – George F. Root, "The Battle Cry of Freedom,"

1862) 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ for (the commanders ~ied their troops for a counterattack) 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ to (they ~ied to the support of their country) 4. (H) (the commanders ~ied their troops to counterattack)

ram I *n.* a battering ~

ram II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ piles into a river bed) 2. (misc.) to ~ smt. down smb.'s throat ("to force smb. to accept smt.")

ramble *n.* 1. to go for, go on; organize a ~ 2. a ~ across; through (to go for a ~ through glorious countryside) 3. on a ~

ramble on *v.* (D; intr.) ("to talk in a disorganized manner") to ~ about (she ~d on about her childhood)

ramp *n.* 1. a steep ~ 2. (misc.) to go down a ~; to go up a ~

rampage I *n.* to go on a ~

rampage II *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ through the streets; they ~d around the city hall

rampant *adj.* to run ~ (inflation was running ~)

ramparts *n.* to storm the ~

ranch *n.* 1. a cattle; dude ~ 2. at, on a ~ (he works at the ~; to live on a ~)

rancher *n.* a cattle; sheep ~

rancor, rancour *n.* 1. to stir up ~ 2. to express; feel; show ~ 3. deep-seated ~ 4. ~ against, towards (to feel ~ towards smb.) 5. with; without ~

random *n.* at ~ (to choose at ~)

range I *n.* ["series of connecting mountains"] 1. a mountain ~ ["distance that a gun fires, can fire"] 2. close, short; long; point-blank ~ 3. artillery; rifle ~ 4. at; from a certain ~ (at close ~) 5. in, within ~ 6. out of ~ ["place where shooting is practiced"] 7. an artillery; firing; rifle; rocket ~ 8. at, on a ~ ["extent, scope"] 9. a narrow; whole; wide; an age; price ~ (we stock the/a whole ~ of organic health-foods; a club with a wide age ~) 10. within a ~ (within a narrow price ~) 11. (misc.) top-of-the-range (a state-of-the-art top-of-the-range product) ["cooking stove"] 12. an electric ~ (see also **gas range**) ["open region on which livestock graze"] 13. to ride the ~ 14. on the ~ ["misc."] 15. a driving ~ (where one practices driving golf balls); the short-range outlook is bleak but the long-range outlook gives grounds for hope

range II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to align") to ~ against (they were all ~d against us) 2. (d; intr.) ("to extend") to ~ from; to (prices ~ from ten dollars to thirty dollars) 3. (P; intr.) our discussion ~d over a wide variety of subjects = we had a wide-ranging discussion; the troops ~d through the fields 4. (misc.) prices ~ between ten and thirty dollars

ranger *n.* a forest ~

rank I *n.* ["row"] (esp. mil.) 1. to form a ~ 2. to break ~s (also fig.) ("to differ from the rest") (she broke ~s and voted against the war) 3. (misc.) to come up, rise from the ~s ["position, grade"] 4. to attain; have, hold a ~ (to hold the ~ of captain) 5. to pull (colloq.), use one's ~ 6. to strip smb. of a ~ 7. high; junior; low; senior ~ 8. (mil.) permanent (AE), substantive (BE) ~ 9. (mil.) other ~s (BE; AE has *enlisted personnel*) 10. cabinet, ministerial (BE) ~ 11. above; below; by, in ~ (officers above the ~ of captain; to be seated by ~) 12. of ~ (of cabinet ~; of high ~) ["misc."] 13. to close ~s ("to unite") (her colleagues closed ~s behind the government); a taxi ~ (BE; CE has *taxi stand*); the ~ and file ("everyone"); to swell the ~s ("to increase the numbers of")

rank II *v.* 1. to ~ high, highly; low (we ~ the service very high indeed!; a high-ranking service = a highly ~ed service) 2. (d; intr., tr.) ("to be rated; to rate") to ~ above (nobody ~s above Shakespeare = we do not ~ anybody above Shakespeare) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ among (she ~s among our best instructors) 4. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ as (to ~ as an outstanding chess player; we ~ her as our very best instructor; she ~s as ¬Number 1/First¬ in the world!) 5. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ alongside, with (Pushkin ~s (right up there) with Tolstoy) 6. (N) we ~ her Number 1 in the world! = we ~ her First in the world! 7. (S) she ~s Number 1 in the world = she ~s First in the world! 8. (misc.) on a scale of one to five we ~ the service four

rankle *v.* (R) it ~d me that they ¬got/should have gotten¬ all the credit

ransom I *n.* 1. to pay (a) ~ for 2. to demand; exact a ~ from 3. to hold smb. for ~ 4. (usu. fig.) to hold smb. to ~ (I refuse to be held to ~ for the misdeeds of my colleagues!) 5. (misc.) the enemy exacted a king's ~ from us for the return of their hostages!

ransom II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for; from (she was ~ed from her captors for two million dollars)

rant *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about; at 2. (misc.) to ~ and rave

rap I *n.* (colloq.) ["blame"] 1. to take the ~ for (I refuse to take the ~ for my colleagues!) 2. (AE) a bad, bum ~ (she got a bum ~) ("she was punished for smb. else's misdeeds") ["charge"] (esp. AE) 3. to beat the ~ 4. on a ~ (he was sent to prison on a murder ~)

rap II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to strike") to ~ at, on; with (to ~ on the window with a stick) 2. (d; tr.) ("to strike") to ~ over (she ~ped him over the knuckles with her ferrule) (see also **knuckle**)

rap III *v.* (slang) (D; intr.) ("to converse") to ~ about; with

rape *n.* 1. to commit ~ 2. attempted ~ 3. acquaintance, date; gang; marital; statutory ~ 4. a brutal ~ (see also *rape victim* at **victim**)

rapidity *n.* (with) great, lightning; ever-increasing ~

rapids *n.* 1. to ride, shoot ("pass through") (the) ~ 2. a stretch of ~

rapport *n.* 1. to develop, establish; feel; have ~ 2. close, good ~ 3. a ~ between, with 4. in ~ with (they worked in close ~ with us)

rapprochement *n.* to bring about a ~ between; with

rapture *n.* 1. complete, total, utter ~ 2. ~ about, at, over 3. in ~(s) over 4. (misc.) to go into ~s over

rare *adj.* 1. extremely, very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to see snow here in September = it's ~ for there to be snow here in September) 3. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that there is snow here in September)

raring *adj.* (colloq.) ["eager"] (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (we are ~ to go)

rash I *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to try that = she was ~ to try that)

rash II *n.* 1. a diaper (AE), nappy (BE); heat; skin ~ (the baby has heat ~) 2. nettle ~ 3. a ~ breaks out 4. (misc.) to break out in a ~

raspberry *n.* (colloq.) ["contemptuous noise"] 1. to give, let out a ~ 2. to give smb. the ~

rat I *n.* 1. to catch ~s 2. a black; brown; water ~ 3. ~s bite, gnaw; scamper; squeak 4. (misc.) to smell a ~ ("to suspect that the truth is not being told"); a dirty ~ ("a contemptible person")

rat II *v.* (colloq.) 1. (D; intr.) ("to inform") to ~ on (the criminal ~ted on his accomplices (to the police)) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ to (the criminal ~ted (on his accomplices) to the police)

rate I *n.* ["amount in relation to something else"] 1. to fix, set; increase, raise; lower, reduce a ~ 2. a fast; flat; high; low; moderate; slow; steady ~ 3. bargain; reasonable; reduced; regular ~s 4. an accident; birth; crime; cure; death; detection; divorce; dropout; fertility; growth; marriage; morbidity; mortality; survival ~ 5. a base; discount; exchange; group; inflation; interest; mortgage; primary; prime; tax ~ (a drop/rise in mortgage ~s) (see also *rate of exchange* at **exchange**; **exchange rate**) 6. a metabolic; pulse; respiration ~ 7. an annual; hourly; monthly; seasonal; weekly ~ 8. a ~ falls; rises 9. at a certain ~ (at a steady ~; she borrowed money at a high interest ~) ["misc."] 10. at any ~ ("in any case"); first ~ ("top quality")

rate II *v.* 1. to ~ high, highly; low (we ~ the service very high indeed!; a highly ~d service) 2. (d; intr., tr.) ("to be ranked; to rank") to ~ among (that player is ~d among the very best) 3. (d; intr., tr.) ("to be ranked; to rank") to ~ as (this wine ~s as excellent; we ~ her as our very best instructor; she is ~d as one of the best tennis players in the country) 4. (d; intr., refl., tr.) ("to compare") to ~ alongside, with (this wine ~s with the very best; Pushkin is ~d (right up there) with Tolstoy) 5. (colloq.) (AE) (D; intr.) ("to enjoy a favored status") to ~ with (she really ~s with them) 6. (P; intr., tr.) ("to rank") this restaurant is ~d very highly = this restaurant ~s very highly 7. (GB) (P; tr.) ("to assess for tax purposes") their flat is ~d at eight hundred pounds this year 8. (s) I ~ this restaurant very high = this restaurant ~s very high 9. (misc.) on a scale of one to five we ~ the service four

rather *adv.* 1. ~ + inf. + than (she would ~ play tennis than watch TV) 2. ~ + clause + than (I would ~ you stayed home than go/went out in this blizzard; she would ~ you did your homework than watched/watch TV) 3. ~ + inf. (she would ~ not watch TV) 4. ~ + clause (she would ~ you didn't watch TV = she would ~ you not watch TV) 5. (misc.) I prefer to walk ~ than (to) ride = I prefer walking to riding

rating *n.* ["classification"] ["limit"] 1. a high; low ~ 2. an approval; credit; efficiency; octane; poll; power ~ 3. a ~ for, on (she got a high poll ~ for decisiveness) ["ordinary seaman"] (BE) 4. a naval ~

ratio *n.* 1. a compression ~ 2. a direct; inverse ~ 3. a ~ between (is there a direct ~ between the proportion of people with lung cancer and the proportion of people who smoke?) 4. at a ~ of; to (at a ~ of three to one)

ration I *n.* ["fixed allowance"] 1. a daily; monthly; weekly ~ (our daily food ~) 2. a food; gasoline (AE), petrol (BE) ~ (our daily food ~) (see also *ration book* at **book I** *n.*; *ration card* at **card I** *n.*) 3. a ~ of (our daily ~ of food) (see also **rations**)

ration II *v.* 1. to ~ strictly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (we were ~ed to ten gallons of gasoline/petrol a month)

rational *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was not ~ to expect miracles)

rationalization *n.* ["excuse"] 1. a mere ~ 2. a ~ for (a ~ for refusing to contribute) 3. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ to argue that increased spending would harm the economy) 4. a ~ that + clause (their ~ for refusing to contribute, that increased spending is bad, has been disproved)

rationing *n.* 1. to introduce ~ 2. to end, terminate ~ 3. food; gasoline (AE), petrol (BE) ~ 4. emergency; wartime ~

ration out *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ among, to

rations *n.* 1. to issue ~ 2. army; emergency; short ~ 3. on ~ (we were on short ~)

rattle I *n.* ["noise in the throat caused by air passing through mucus"] 1. the death ~ ["device producing a rattling sound"] 2. a baby's ~

rattle II *v.* (colloq.) (R) it ~d me to realize how close we had been to a real catastrophe

rattled *adj.* badly, very ~ (she was badly ~ at the news)

rattlesnake *n.* a ~ bites, strikes

ravages *n.* ["destruction"] to repair the ~ (wrought by war)

rave *v.* (D; intr.) 1. to ~ about, over; to (she was ~ving to us about her grandchild) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ against/at (she was ~ving at the new taxes) 3. (L; to) she kept ~ving to everyone that the new taxes were wrong

ravine *n.* a deep ~

raw *n.* ["natural state"] in the ~

ray *n.* 1. to emit, send forth, send out ~s 2. a cathode; cosmic; death; gamma; infrared; ultraviolet; X ~ 3. dying, last; heat; light ~s (we said farewell in the dying ~s of the sun) 4. a ~ of hope (the court's temporary reprieve provided a ~ of hope to the condemned man)

raze *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to the ground (to ~ a building to the ground)

razor *n.* 1. to hone, set, sharpen a ~ 2. a dull; keen, sharp ~ 3. a double-edged; electric; safety; single-edged; straight (AE), cut-throat (esp. BE) ~

reach I *n.* 1. arm's, easy ~ 2. beyond, out of ~ 3. in, within ~ (to bring smt. within (arm's) ~; within easy ~) 4. (misc.) a boardinghouse ("very long"), long ~ (see also **reaches**)

reach II *v.* 1. (A; used without *to*) ("to pass") ~ me the salt 2. (d; intr., tr.) ("to extend") to ~ across, around (she could easily ~ her hand across the table) 3. (d; intr.) ("to extend one's hand") to ~ for (she ~ed for a cigarette) (also fig.) (to ~ for the moon) 4. (d; intr.) ("to extend one's hand") to ~ into (she ~ed into her pocket for her keys) 5. (D; intr.) ("to extend") to ~ to (the rope doesn't ~ to the ground)

reaches *n.* ["area"] 1. the lower; upper ~ (the upper ~ of the river) 2. vast ~ (the vast ~es of the western plains)

reach out *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to attempt to obtain") (to ~ for mutual understanding) 2. (D; tr.) ("to extend") to ~ for (she ~ed out her hand for the change = she ~ed her hand out for the change) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ into, to ("to attempt to help") (to ~ to the local community) (see also *outreach program* at **program I** *n.*) 4. (D; tr.) ("to extend") to ~ to (she ~ed her hand out to us in friendship = she ~ed out her hand to us in friendship)

react *v.* 1. to ~ calmly; strongly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ against (to ~ against unfair treatment) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to a stimulus; to ~ to a provocation) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ with (this medication ~s with aspirin) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ by, with (he ~ed to my provocation by punching me on the nose = he ~ed to my provocation with a punch on the nose)

reaction *n.* 1. to cause, provoke, spark, trigger a ~ 2. to encounter, meet with a ~ 3. to have a ~ 4. an enthusiastic; favorable, positive ~ 5. an immediate, instantaneous, quick, spontaneous; instinctive, knee-jerk (usu. fig.); natural, normal ~ 6. an adverse, negative; angry, hostile ~ 7. (a) delayed ~ 8. a strong; weak ~ 9. an allergic; chain; chemical; nuclear; physiological ~ 10. a ~ against, to (a natural ~ to provocation; an allergic ~ to nuts) 11. in ~ to (in ~ to provocation) (see also *reaction time* at **time I** *n.*)

reactionary I *adj.* 1. deeply; politically ~ 2. ~ in (~ in one's views)

reactionary II *n.* a diehard, dyed-in-the wool, political ~

reactor *n.* an atomic, nuclear; breeder; fission ~

read I *n.* 1. to have a ~ (I like to have a quiet ~ of the paper when I get home after work) 2. to be, make a ~ 3. a good, interesting ~ (her latest novel makes a very good ~)

read II *v.* 1. (A) she read a nice story to the children; or: she read the children a nice story 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about, of (I read about/of the accident in the paper; to ~ about a subject) 3. (d; tr.) ("to interpret") to ~ as (this story should be read as a satire) 4. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ for (she used to ~ for the patients in the nursing home; could you ~ that material for me?) 5. (esp. BE) (d; intr.) ("to study") to ~ for (to ~ for a degree; to ~ for the bar) 6. (d; intr.) ("to audition") to ~ for (she will ~ for the role of the ingenue in the new play) 7. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; to (she read from page ten to page thirty; she read to the children from *Peter Rabbit*) 8. (d; tr.) to ~ into ("to attribute") (don't try to ~ anything else into her letter) 9. (d; tr.) ("to enter") to ~ into (to ~ data into a computer) 10. (AE) (d; tr.) to ~ out of ("to exclude") (he was read out of the party) 11. (d; intr.) to ~ through (she read through the book at one sitting and he read through it , too = she read the book through at one sitting and he read through it , too) 12. (d; intr.) to ~ to (she loves to ~ to the children; she read to the children from *Peter Rabbit*; my daughter is old enough to ~ to herself) 13. (L) we read (in the papers) that prices would be going up 14. (misc.) they can ~ and write; to ~ by candlelight; to ~ a language fluently; to ~ between the lines; to ~ aloud, to ~ out loud (she read a nice story aloud to the children); to ~ silently (my daughter is old enough to ~ silently to herself); the letter ~s like an accusation; the play ~s well; the cablegram ~s as follows…; to ~ a child to sleep; to ~ oneself to sleep; to ~ smb. like a book ("to comprehend smb.'s motives very clearly"); a widely read column; she's widely read in the classics ("she has extensive knowledge of the classics")

read back *v.* (B) she read the sentence back to me = she read back the sentence to me

reader *n.* ["one who reads"] 1. an avid, omnivorous, voracious ~ 2. a regular ~ (of a newspaper) 3. a copy ~ (AE; AE also has *copy editor*; BE has *subeditor*) 4. (rel.) a lay ~ ["university teacher below the rank of professor"] (BE) 5. a ~ in (a ~ in physics) ["practice book for reading"] 6. a basic ~ ["assessor of a dissertation, thesis"] 7. a first; second ~ ["misc."] 8. a publisher's ~ 9. a mind ~ (see the Usage Note for **professor**)

readiness *n.* 1. combat; tactical ~ 2. ~ for 3. ~ to + inf. (her ~ to help was appreciated) 4. (to hold oneself) in ~ (for) 5. (misc.) a state of ~ (for); she indicated clearly her ~ to help

reading *n.* ["act of reading"] 1. extensive; good, interesting; heavy; light; remedial; responsive; serious; solid ~ (her latest novel makes very good ~) 2. a dramatic; poetry; staged ~ (they gave/presented a staged ~ of *Paradise Lost*) 3. assigned; background; required; suggested ~(s) (have you done the assigned ~ for the course?) 4. at, on a ~ (at the first ~) 5. in a ~ (you will not be able to absorb the material in one ~) ["interpretation"] 6. a new ~ of

(Shakespeare); a pianist who gave a compelling ~ of a Beethoven sonata

readjust *v.* 1. to ~ downward; upward (our original estimate had to be ~ed upward (to allow) for inflation) 2. (D. intr., refl., tr.) to ~for; to (he had to ~ to the new climate; we ~ed our watches to (show) local time)

readjustment *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. a price; rate ~ 3. a ~ for; in, of (an ~ in/of his salary (to allow) for inflation; a ~ of the brakes) 4. a ~ to (a ~ to a new environment)

read out *v.* (A) she read out a nice story to the children = she read a nice story out to the children; or: she read the children out a nice story

read up *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a subject)

ready I *adj.* 1. ~ for (~ for any emergency; we are ~ for you to start) 2. ~ with (she is always ~ with an answer) 3. ~ to + inf. (we are ~ to start) 4. (misc.) to get (smb.) ~ for; we made ~ to repel the attack; we stand ~ to do whatever we must; Ready, Aim, Fire!; ~ or not, here I come!; ~ when you are!; I'm ~, willing, and able to do it! USAGE NOTE: At the start of a race, the set phrases *Ready, set, go!* or *Get ready, get set, go!* or *On your mark* (AE) = *marks* (BE)*, get set, go!* are used to competitors; the BE phrase *Ready, steady, go!* is fig.

ready II *n.* at the ~

ready III *v.* 1. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ for (she readied herself for the confrontation with her accusers) 2. (H) she readied herself to confront her accusers

reaffirm *v.* (L; to) the ministry ~ed (to us) that the visit had been postponed

reaffirmation *n.* ~ that + clause (I believed the ministry's ~ (to us) that the visit had been postponed)

realism *n.* 1. down-to-earth, gritty, hard-headed, kitchen-sink, no-nonsense ~; socialist 2. to lend ~ 3. a degree of ~ (the sound effects lend a degree of ~ to the scene)

realist *n.* a down-to-earth, hardheaded, kitchen-sink ~; socialist

realistic *adj.* 1. ~ about (let's be ~ about our chances of winning) 2. ~ to + inf. (is it ~ to expect us to win?)

reality *n.* 1. to become a ~ 2. (the) grim, harsh, sober ~ (the harsh ~ of life) 3. (computers) virtual ~ 4. in ~ 5. (misc.) to accept ~; to deny ~; to face (up to) ~

realization *n.* 1. to come to the ~ 2. a full; growing; sudden ~ 3. the ~ that + clause (they finally came to the ~ that a catastrophe could occur at any time)

realize *v.* 1. to ~ finally; fully 2. (L) they finally ~d that a catastrophe could occur at any time 3. (Q) they finally ~d how close they were to a catastrophe

realm *n.* in a ~ (in the ~ of science)

reaper *n.* the grim ~ ("death")

reapply *v.* ("to apply again") 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for; to (we ~lied to the authorities for assistance; the captain ~lied to headquarters for a transfer; she ~lied for a fellowship) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (she ~lied to the three universities that had rejected her) 3. (D; refl.) to ~ to (she ~lied herself to her old duties with renewed energy) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ paint to the same surface; to ~ ointment to the same rash) 5. (E) ("to request") he ~lied (to the same university) to be admitted (to it)

reappoint *v.* ("to appoint again") 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (we ~ed the same person as treasurer) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (we ~ed the same person to the committee) 3. (H) we ~ed the same person to serve as treasurer 4. (M and N; used with a noun) we ~ed the same person (to be) treasurer

reappraisal *n.* 1. to carry out, do, make a ~ of 2. an agonizing; careful; fair, objective, realistic; thorough, thoroughgoing ~

rear I *n.* 1. to bring up the ~ 2. at, from, in, to the ~ (the column was attacked from the ~)

rear II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (our children were ~ed as atheists) 2. (H) we ~ed our children to be atheists but also to respect others

reason I *n.* ["cause, justification"] 1. to cite, give a ~ 2. a cogent, compelling, convincing, good, important, plausible, solid, sound, strong, urgent ~ 3. a logical; personal; prime; real; underlying; valid ~ 4. every ~; (a) sufficient ~ 5. a ~ against; behind; for (the real ~ behind their decision was never made public; to have a ~ for not going; did he give any ~ for not going?) 6. a ~ to + inf. (we had every ~ to complain; there is sufficient ~ to be concerned; have they any ~ to believe that the earth is really flat?) 7. a ~ that + clause (the ~ that/why she did it is a mystery; did he give any ~ why he didn't go?) 8. by ~ of 9. for a ~ (he quit for personal ~s; for no apparent ~; I'm against it for the simple ~ that any new project is bound to fail; for some strange and unknown ~ he hasn't answered my letter) 10. with ~ (I fear him – and with good ~) ["logic"] 11. to listen to; see ~ 12. to stand to ~ ("to be logical") (it stands to ~ that the majority party will be reelected) 13. (misc.) an appeal to ~ ["reasonable limits"] 14. within ~ (I'll do anything for you within ~) ["sanity"] 15. to lose one's ~

reason II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ with ("to attempt to persuade") (you can't ~ with him) 2. (L) ("to argue") they ~ed that any new project would fail

reasonable *adj.* 1. ~ about (let's be ~ about this) 2. ~ of (that was not very ~ of you) 3. ~ to + inf. (it is not ~ (of/for you) to demand that employees work without a break)

reasoning *n.* 1. cogent, logical, plausible, solid, sound; objective; subjective ~ 2. faulty; shrewd; specious ~ 3. deductive; inductive ~ 4. ~ that + clause (their ~ that any new project would fail proved to be specious)

reassign *v.* ("to assign again") (D; tr.) to ~ to (headquarters ~ed the soldiers to the same unit; an experienced detective was ~ed to a more difficult case; to ~ a painting to a later century)

reassure *v.* ("to assure again") 1. (d; tr.) to ~ about, of (the contractor ~d us of the work's completion on time) 2. (L; must have an object) the contractor ~d us that the work would be completed on time 3. (misc.) let me ~ you (despite all rumors to the contrary, let me ~ you that he's not dead)

reassuring *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to note that airport security has been improved) 2. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that airport security has been improved)

rebate *n.* 1. to give a ~ 2. to get, receive a ~

rebel I *n.* a ~ against (a ~ against tyranny)

rebel II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ against, at (to ~ against tyranny; they ~led at the thought of getting up before dawn)

rebellion *n.* 1. to foment, stir up; to spark (esp. AE), spark off a ~ 2. to crush, put down, quash, quell, smash, stifle a ~ 3. open ~ 4. an armed ~ 5. a ~ breaks out, takes place 6. a ~ against 7. in ~ (in open ~ against tyranny)

rebound I *n.* 1. (basketball) to grab a ~ 2. (misc.) on the ~ (right after her divorce she married smb. on the ~) 3. a ~ from (a ~ from a setback)

rebound II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from a setback)

rebuff I *n.* 1. to get, meet with, receive; risk a ~ 2. a brusque, curt; polite; sharp ~ 3. a ~ from; to

rebuff II *v.* 1. to ~ brusquely, curtly; politely; sharply

rebuke I *n.* 1. to administer, deliver, give a ~ 2. to draw, get, receive a ~ 3. a mild; polite; scathing, sharp, stern, stinging ~ 4. a ~ from; to

rebuke II *v.* 1. to ~ mildly; sharply, sternly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. for sloppy work)

rebuttal *n.* 1. to make, offer a ~ 2. a ~ to 3. in ~ (to)

recall I *n.* ["remembrance"] 1. beyond ~ ["memory"] 2. complete, total ~

recall II *v.* 1. ("to remember") to ~ distinctly, vividly; fondly 2. (d; tr.) ("to remember") to ~ as (I ~ him as a very bashful child) 3. (D; tr.) ("to call back") to ~ from; to (to ~ smb. from retirement to active duty) 4. (G) ("to remember") she ~ed having seen him somewhere 5. (J) I ~ them visiting us 6. (K) ("to remember") I ~ed their having visited us 7. (L) ("to remember") she ~ed that she had seen him somewhere 8. (Q) ("to remember") she could not ~ exactly where she had seen him 9. (misc.) (the reader will) ~ that this subject has been discussed earlier

recede *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from 2. (misc.) to ~ into the background; to ~ into the distance

receipt *n.* ["receiving"] 1. to acknowledge ~ of 2. in ~ of (we are in ~ of your letter) 3. on ~ of ["written acknowledgment of something received"] 4. to give, make out, write out a ~ 5. to get a ~ 6. (esp. US) a return ~ (for registered mail) 7. a ~ for (you'll get a ~ for your purchase, which you must produce/show if you want a refund) 8. (misc.) box office ~s for the show have risen by 25% since opening night

receive *v.* 1. to ~ badly, coldly, coolly; favorably; warmly, well (the book was well ~d by the critics) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ as (the astronauts were ~d as conquering heroes) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ from (he ~d a letter from her) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into a church)

receive back *v.* to ~ into the fold (after many years of wandering, they were ~d back into the fold)

receiver *n.* ["part of a telephone"] 1. to pick up the ~ 2. to hang up, put down, replace a ~ 3. a telephone ~ ["radio"] 4. a shortwave ~ ["one who catches a forward pass"] (Am. football) 5. to hit; spot a ~ (to spot a ~ down the field) ["misc."] (comm.) 6. the official ~ (the bankrupt firm is now in the hands of the official ~)

receivership *n.* 1. to put a firm into ~ 2. in ~ (the bankrupt firm is now in ~)

reception *n.* ["social gathering"] 1. to give, hold; host a ~ 2. a diplomatic; formal; informal; official; wedding ~ 3. a ~ for (a ~ for graduating students) 4. at a ~ (we met at the ~) ["reaction, response"] ["greeting"] 5. to get, meet with a ~ 6. to accord, give (smb.) a ~ 7. a cordial, friendly, warm; emotional; enthusiastic; favorable; jubilant; lavish; rousing ~ (they gave us a warm ~; the book received a favorable ~ from the critics) 8. a chilly, cold, cool; hostile; lukewarm; mixed; unfavorable; unfriendly ~ (their proposal got a mixed ~) ["registration desk in a hotel"] (BE) 9. at ~ (leave your key at ~) ["receiving of broadcasts"] 10. good, strong; poor, weak ~ 11. radio; television ~

receptive *adj.* ~ to (~ to any reasonable offer)

recess *n.* 1. to take a ~ 2. to declare a ~ 3. a spring; summer; winter ~ 4. in ~ (parliament was in ~)

recession *n.* 1. a business, economic ~ 2. a major ~ 3. in (a) ~ 4. (misc.) to cause; come out of a ~; go into a ~ (the country has gone into a major ~)

recipe *n.* 1. to follow a ~ 2. the ~ calls for, requires; makes; serves (the ~ calls for enough eggs to make a large cake that will serve at least six people) 3. a ~ for

recipient *n.* an intended; worthy ~

reciprocate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ by; for; with

reciprocity *n.* 1. ~ between 2. (misc.) on a basis of ~

recital *n.* 1. to attend, go to; give, hold, stage a ~ 2. to cancel a ~ 3. an organ; piano; poetry; song; violin ~ (to attend a wonderful piano ~) 4. a ~ by (to attend a ~ by a wonderful pianist) 5. a ~ of (a ~ of Schubert songs) 6. at a ~ (we met at a ~ to raise money for charity)

recite *v.* (B) she ~d her poetry to the audience from memory

reckless *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to go out alone at night)

reckon *v.* 1. (BE) (D; tr.) to ~ among, as (I ~ them ¬(to be) among my friends/as my friends¬) 2. (colloq. in AE) (d; intr.) ("to depend") to ~ on (you can always ~ on my support; we ~ed on reaching our destination before nightfall) 3. (colloq. in AE) (d;

intr.) (“to deal”) to ~ with (we’ll have to ~ with him later) 4. (BE) (E) we ~ed to reach our destination before nightfall 5. (colloq.) (L) I ~ we’ll reach our destination before nightfall 6. (BE) (M) I ~ them to be my best friends 7. (misc.) I ~ their chances highly; I ~ so; I ~ not

reckoning *n.* [“navigation”] 1. dead ~ [“calculations”] 2. by smb.’s ~ (by my ~) 3. (misc.) the day of ~

reclaim *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

reclamation *n.* land; water ~

recluse *n.* an aging, elderly; virtual ~

recognition *n.* 1. to give, grant ~ 2. to achieve, gain, get, receive, win ~ 3. belated; dawning; general, universal; growing; international, worldwide; national; official; public; tacit; wide ~ (to receive universal ~) 4. (diplomatic) de facto; de jure ~ 5. ~ for; from (to receive ~ for one’s accomplishments from one’s colleagues) 6. beyond ~ (burned beyond ~; my home town has changed beyond ~!) 7. in ~ of 8. out of all ~ (my home town has changed out of all ~!) 9. (misc.) she gave/showed no sign(s) of ~ except the briefest flicker of ~ when I entered the room – but eventually the ~ dawned on her that it really was me!; new techniques for voice ~

recognizance *n.* (legal) on one’s own ~ (she was released on her own ~)

recognize *v.* 1. to ~ belatedly; generally, universally; increasingly; internationally, worldwide; nationally; officially; publicly; tacitly; widely ~ (to be ~d universally) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (she is universally ~d as an authority on the subject = she is a universally ~d authority on the subject) 3. (L) we ~d that she was an authority on the subject 4. (M) she is universally ~d to be an authority on the subject

recoil *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at, from 2. (misc.) to ~ in horror (she ~ed in horror from the awful sight)

recollect *v.* 1. to ~ dimly, hazily, vaguely; vividly 2. (G) she vaguely ~ed having seen him somewhere 3. (K) I vividly ~ed their having visited us 4. (L) I ~ that the weather was cold; she ~ed that she had seen him somewhere 5. (Q) she could not ~ exactly where she had seen him

recollection *n.* 1. to have a ~ of (I have a hazy ~ of the weather being cold) 2. a dim, hazy, vague; painful; vivid ~ 3. a ~ that + clause (I have a hazy ~ that the weather was cold)

recommend *v.* 1. to ~ enthusiastically, highly, strongly 2. (BE) (A) she ~ed a good dictionary to me; or: she ~ed me a good dictionary 3. (AE) (B) she ~ed a good dictionary to me 4. (D; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~ed as a suitable candidate for the job) 5. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she was/came highly ~ed for the job) 6. (G) she ~ed buying this dictionary 7. (BE) (H) she ~ed me to buy this dictionary = I was ~ed to buy this dictionary 8. (K) she ~ed my buying this dictionary 9. (L; subj.; to) she ~ed (to me) that I ¬buy/should buy¬ this dictionary

recommendation *n.* 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to provide, write a ~ for smb. 3. to make a ~ 4. to act on, carry out, implement; consider a ~ 5. a glowing, warm; lukewarm; negative; positive; strong; weak ~ 6. a ~ for 7. a ~ to (her ~ to us was to postpone the trip) 8. a ~ to + inf. (we ignored her ~ to postpone the trip) 9. a ~ that + clause; subj. (we ignored her ~ that our trip ¬be/should be¬ postponed) 10. at, on smb.’s ~ (we postponed our trip on her ~)

recommit *v.* (D; tr.) (“to confine again”) to ~ to (to ~ smb. to a mental hospital after another breakdown; ~ted to prison for another crime)

recompense I *n.* (formal) 1. as (a) ~ (for) 2. in ~ (for) (she received a prize from the government in ~ for her charity work)

recompense II *v.* (formal) (D; tr.) to ~ for

reconcile *v.* 1. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ to (he had to ~ himself to his fate) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ with (we tried to ~ her with her sister = we tried to ~ her and her sister (with each other); to ~ a checkbook with a bank statement)

reconciliation *n.* 1. to bring about, effect a ~ 2. a ~ between; with (we tried to bring about a ~ between her and her sister) 3. (misc.) in a spirit of ~

reconnaissance *n.* 1. to carry out, conduct ~ 2. aerial ~ 3. (a) ~ in force

reconstruct *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ a crime from the evidence)

record I *n.* [“best performance”] 1. to establish, set a (new) ~ 2. to equal, tie a ~ 3. to beat, better, break, surpass a ~ 4. to hold a ~ 5. an unbroken ~ 6. an attendance; speed ~ 7. an all-time; national; Olympic; world ~ 8. ~s fall; stand (her ~ stood unbroken for many years until it was finally bettered) [“account of events”] [“file”] (see also **records**) 9. to keep; make a ~ (to keep a ~ of events; there is nothing about that in the ~s we’ve been keeping) 10. to close; open up a ~ 11. an accurate; detailed; official; sketchy; verbatim; written ~ 12. a daily; monthly; weekly ~ 13. an archeological; fossil; historical ~ (how far back do the historical ~s go?; how old do the fossil ~s suggest Earth is?) 14. (a) public ~ (a matter of public ~) 15. dental; medical; school ~s (the patient’s medical ~s show clearly the sort of treatment he requires) 16. of; on ~ (the coldest day on ~) 17. (misc.) to set the ~ straight (“to correct a misunderstanding”) [“past performance”] 18. to have a ~ 19. a clean impeccable, spotless, unblemished ~ (when she came to the firm, she had a spotless ~) 20. a brilliant, distinguished, outstanding; excellent; good ~ (she has an excellent academic ~) 21. a mediocre, spotty ~ 22. an academic; employment; safety; service; track ~ (this airline’s safety ~ is impeccable: it has a proven track ~ of many years with no accidents, so its track ~ for safety is wonderful!) [“recorded crimes”] 23. to have a ~ (he’s been in jail and has a ~) 24. a criminal, police; prison ~ [“publication”] [“public disclosure”] 25. to go on ~ (by; with) 26. for the ~ (was her statement for the ~?) 27. off; on the ~ (what she told the reporters was off the

~) ["grooved disc"] 28. to cut, make; release a ~ 29. to play a ~ 30. a gramophone (BE), phonograph (AE); long-playing ~

record II *v.* 1. to ~ live; openly; secretly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (the investigators ~ed the case as closed) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ from, off; on (we ~ed the program from the radio on our new tape recorder) 4. (L) ("to report") the investigators ~ed that the crime syndicate had been protected by corrupt officials 5. (Q) ("to report") the investigators ~ed how the crime syndicate had been protected by corrupt officials

recorder *n.* a flight; video, video-cassette; voice ~ (see also **tape recorder**; **VCR**)

recording *n.* 1. to make; release a ~ 2. to play, play back a ~ 3. a tape; video ~

records *n.* ["recorded information"] 1. to file; keep ~ 2. to dig up ~ 3. to destroy; falsify ~ 4. accurate; inaccurate ~

recount I *n.* 1. to do, make a ~ (of votes) 2. to ask for, demand a ~

recount II *v.* 1. (B) to ~ a story to smb. 2. (Q; to) she ~ed (to us) how it happened

recourse *n.* 1. to have ~ to 2. by ~ to; without ~ to (she coped with her pain by ~ to meditation and without ~ to drugs)

recover *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from (to ~ from an illness; the police ~ed the missing items from the bottom of the river)

recovery *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. a complete; gradual; partial; quick, rapid, speedy; remarkable; slow ~ 3. an economic ~ 4. a ~ from (the patient made a quick and complete ~ from her illness) 5. (misc.) on the road to ~ (the patient is well on the road to ~ from her illness); to wish smb. a speedy ~

recreation *n.* for ~ (what do you do for ~?)

recriminations *n.* 1. bitter; mutual ~ 2. without ~

recruit I *n.* a fresh, green, raw ~

recruit II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ mercenaries for the army) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ mercenaries for the army from various countries; to ~ members to a political party) 3. (H) to ~ mercenaries to serve in the army

recruiter *n.* 1. an air-force; army; marine; navy ~ 2. a ~ for (a ~ for the army)

rectitude *n.* moral ~

recuperate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from the flu)

recuperation *n.* 1. ~ from (smb.'s ~ from the flu) 2. (misc.) smb.'s powers of ~

recur *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to come again to mind") to ~ to 2. (D; intr.) to ~ throughout (that thought kept ~ring to me throughout the evening)

recuse *v.* (esp. US) (D; refl.) to ~ from (the judge ~d herself from the case)

red I *adj.* 1. (of a traffic light) to go, turn ~ 2. bright; dark; light ~ 3. (misc.) to blush, go, turn ~ (in the face) with embarrassment; as ~ as a beet (AE), beetroot (BE)

red II *n.* ["color"] 1. to dress in, wear ~ 2. (a) bright; dark; light ~ 3. a shade of ~ ["something red"] 4. a patch of ~ 5. dressed in ~ ["red light"] 6. on ~ (no turn on ~) ["debt"] 7. in; out of the ~ (to operate in the ~) ["misc."] 8. to see ~ ("to become furious")

rededicate *v.* (d; refl., tr.) to ~ to (we must ~ ourselves to our cause with renewed vigor)

rededication *n.* ~ to (our ~ to our cause)

redeem *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

redemption *n.* 1. ~ from 2. beyond, past ~

redeploy *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (troops were being ~ed from Europe to Asia)

redeployment *n.* 1. large-scale ~ (the large-scale ~ of troops) 2. ~ from; to

redevelopment *n.* urban ~

red-faced *adj.* ~ with (~ with shame)

red light *n.* 1. to go through, jump (BE), run (AE) a ~ (she ran a ~ and was fined) 2. at a ~ (to stop at a ~) 3. on a ~ (he went right through the intersection on a ~)

redolent *adj.* (formal) (cannot stand alone) ~ of, with (~ of honeysuckle)

redound *v.* (formal) (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to affect") (her success ~s to the credit of her teachers)

redress *n.* 1. to seek ~ 2. legal ~

red tape *n.* 1. to get caught up in, get involved in ~ 2. to cut, eliminate (the) ~ 3. bureaucratic; government ~

reduce *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ by (production was ~d (by) ten percent) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (the physician ~d the dosage from four to one) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ in (he was ~d in rank) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ to (she was ~d to poverty; the corporal was ~d to the rank of private)

reduction *n.* 1. to take a ~ (in salary) 2. to make a (price) ~ 3. a considerable, dramatic, large, sharp, significant, sizable, substantial; gradual; moderate; slight, small; steady ~ 4. risk; stress; weight ~ 5. a ~ in (a ~ in salary) 6. a ~ from; to (a ~ in dosage from four to one; a ~ in rank from corporal to private) 7. at a ~ (to sell merchandise at a substantial ~)

redundancy *n.* (comm.) (BE) 1. to announce; make ~cies 2. to face; take ~ 3. compulsory; voluntary ~ (the company announced several hundred compulsory ~cies and the workers who faced ~ had to decide whether to take ~ or strike)

redundant *adj.* (comm.) (BE) to be made ~

reef *n.* 1. to strike a ~ (the ship struck a ~) 2. a barrier; coral ~

reek *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ of (to ~ of alcohol) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with sweat)

reel *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to stagger") to ~ under (to ~ under blows) 2. (misc.) it made my head ~ (to look down from such a great height)

re-elect *v.* 1. to ~ unanimously 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~ed as vice-president for a second term) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to (she was ~ed to the vice-presidency for a second term) 4. (H) she was ~ed to represent us for a second term 5. (M) the nation ~ed her to be vice-president for a second term 6. (N; used with a noun) the nation ~ed her vice-president for a second term

re-election *n.* 1. to run for (esp. AE), seek, stand for (BE); win ~ 2. smb.'s ~ to (we welcomed her ~ to the vice-presidency for a second term) 3. for ~ (she was defeated for ~)

reeling *adj.* to send smb. ~

re-entry *n.* 1. to allow, grant; refuse ~ (they refused us ~ into the country that we'd left) 2. a ~ into (a spacecraft's ~ into the atmosphere)

refer *v.* (d; intr., tr.) to ~ to (in her autobiography she never ~red to her parents; the problem was ~red to a committee; they ~red me to the manager; my GP ~red me to a specialist; he ~red to his opponent in his speech; he ~red to his opponent as a liar)

refer back *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ to (the report was ~red back to the committee)

reference *n.* ["mention, allusion"] 1. to make (a) ~ (she made no ~ to the incident; there is an index of ~s at the back of the book) 2. to contain a ~ (the statement contains several ~s to the incident) 3. a cross-reference; direct; indirect, oblique; literary; passing; vague, (thinly) veiled ~ 4. (a) ~ to (without ~ to age) ["regard, relation"] 5. in, with; without ~ to (in ~ to your request, no decision has been made) 6. a frame, term of ~ (this question falls outside the limited terms of ~ of this investigation) ["recommendation"] ["statement"] 7. to give, provide a ~ 8. a glowing, good, positive, satisfactory; negative ~ 9. a character ~ (her employer gave her a good character ~) ["consultation"] ["source of information"] 10. easy; further; future; quick ~ 11. for ~ (to file for future ~; arranged for easy ~ = arranged for ease of ~)

referendum *n.* 1. to conduct, have, hold a ~ on (to hold a ~ on the status of a territory) 2. a ~ to + inf. (to hold a ~ to determine the status of a territory) 3. (misc.) to decide (the status of a territory) by ~

referral *n.* 1. to give; make a ~ 2. a ~ from; to (my GP gave me a ~ to a specialist)

refill *n.* 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. a ~ for (a ~ for a ballpoint pen)

refine *v.* (d; intr.) (esp. BE) to ~ on, upon ("to improve on") (to ~ on previous methods)

refinement *n.* a ~ on ("an improvement on") (a ~ on previous methods)

refinery *n.* an oil; sugar ~

reflect *v.* 1. ("to think about") to ~ closely; seriously 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on, upon ("to think about") (to ~ on one's past mistakes) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to discredit") (her unfounded accusations ~ed on her credibility) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to show") (her actions ~ badly/well on her upbringing) 5. (d; tr.) to ~ on ("to bring to") (the team's victory ~ed credit on the coach) 6. (L) ("to think, consider") he ~ed that he should answer as truthfully as possible 7. (Q) does this answer ~ how you feel?

reflection, reflexion *n.* ["criticism"] 1. a ~ on (this is no ~ on your qualifications) ["meditation, thought"] 2. quiet; serious; sober ~ 3. ~ on (~s on the war) 4. after, on ~ (on further ~ she saw her mistake) 5. a ~ that + clause (he changed his story because of his ~ that he should answer as truthfully as possible) 6. (misc.) time for ~ (I'll need more time for ~ before I can give you my answer)

reflex *n.* 1. to test smb.'s ~es 2. a conditioned ~ 3. abnormal; diminished; hyperactive; lightning-fast; normal ~es 4. (misc.) to trigger a ~ (a light tap to the right place can trigger a ~ in susceptible people)

reform *n.* 1. to carry out, effect a ~ 2. a far-reaching; radical; sweeping, wholesale ~ 3. (an) agrarian, land; economic; educational; fiscal; labor; penal, prison; political; social; tax; welfare ~ (to carry out a tax ~ = to carry out a ~ in/of taxation) 4. (an) orthographic, spelling ~ 5. (misc.) piecemeal ~s; the need for ~ is great but the pace of ~ should not be hurried

reformatory *n.* (now AE; obsol.) at, in a ~ (he spent time at/in a ~)

reformer *n.* an economic; political; social ~

refraction *n.* ["eye examination"] (AE) to do a ~ (the oculist did a ~)

refrain I *n.* to repeat; sing a ~

refrain II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from smoking)

refresh *v.* (d; refl., tr.) to ~ by; with (they ~ed themselves with a dip in the pool = they ~ed themselves by having a dip in the pool)

refreshing *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to have a dip in the pool; it was ~ to find such honesty; how ~ly honest!)

refreshments *n.* 1. to offer, provide, serve ~ 2. light; liquid ~

refrigeration *n.* under ~ (to keep food under ~)

refrigerator *n.* 1. to defrost a ~ 2. a frostfree ~ 3. an electric; gas ~ 4. (misc.) to raid the ~ ("to consume large quantities of food from the refrigerator, esp. at night")

refueling, refuelling *n.* inflight, midair ~

refuge *n.* 1. to give, provide ~ 2. to find, take; seek ~ 3. a wildlife ~ 4. a place of ~ 5. ~ from (to take ~ from the storm)

refugee *n.* 1. a bogus; political; stateless ~ 2. a ~ from 3. among ~s (among the ~s (fleeing) from tyranny there may be a few bogus ones)

refund I *n.* 1. to give, pay a ~ 2. to get, receive a ~ 3. a full; partial; tax ~ (they gave us a full ~ of the money)

refund II *v.* 1. (A) (BE) they ~ed the money to us; or: they ~ed us the money 2. (B) (AE) they ~ed the money to us 3. (misc.) they ~ed the money (to us) in full

refusal *n.* 1. an adamant, brusque, categorical, curt, flat, out-and-out, outright, point-blank, unyielding ~ 2. a polite ~ 3. a straightforward ~ 4. (a) first ~ (BE; CE has *first option*) 5. a ~ to + inf. (I could not comprehend her ~ to help) 6. (misc.) to meet with a ~

refuse I *n.* (BE) to collect the ~ (see also **garbage**, **rubbish**, **trash**)

refuse II *v.* 1. to ~ brusquely, categorically, completely, curtly, flatly, outright, point-blank 2. (E) she ~d to see him 3. (O; can be used with one object) he ~d them nothing

refute *v.* to ~ completely (he denied the charge but he couldn't ~ it completely)

regain *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

regale *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ by; with (to ~ one's guests with funny stories = to ~ one's guests by telling funny stories)

regalia *n.* in full ~

regard I *n.* ["consideration"] 1. to have; show ~ 2. ~ for (she shows no ~ for the feelings of others; you must have ~ for our safety) 3. little, scant ~ ["esteem"] 4. high; low ~ (to hold smb. in high ~ = to have a high ~ for smb.) (see also **regards**) ["aspect, relation"] 5. in a ~ (in this ~) 6. in, with ~ to (in ~ to your request, no decision has been made)

regard II *v.* 1. to ~ highly (highly ~ed in the scientific community) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ smb. as a friend that others might consider an enemy) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smb. with contempt) 4. (misc.) as ~s, ~ing (as ~s/~ing your request, no decision has been made)

regardless *adj.* ~ of

regards *n.* ["greetings"] 1. to convey smb.'s ~; to send one's ~ 2. to give smb. one's ~ 3. best, cordial, friendly, kind, kindest, sincere, warm, warmest; personal ~ (with best personal ~) 4. ~ from; to (best ~ to your family from all of us) USAGE NOTE: Such formulas as "With best regards to your family from us all" are used typically in the complimentary close of letters.

regatta *n.* an annual ~

regime *n.* (pol.) (typically derog.) 1. to establish a ~ 2. to bring down, overthrow a ~ 3. an authoritarian, dictatorial, totalitarian; puppet; repressive ~ 4. under a ~ (we all suffered under the repressive regime)

regimen *n.* 1. to put smb. on a ~ 2. to follow a ~ 3. a daily; strict ~

regiment *n.* 1. a Guards (GB); infantry ~ 2. a colonel commands a ~

region *n.* 1. a border; mountainous; outlying, remote; polar; tropical; unpopulated ~ 2. an autonomous ~ 3. (misc.) some features are found throughout the entire/whole ~; in the ~ of the lungs; to earn (something/somewhere) in the ~ of $50,000 a year

register I *n.* ["record, record book"] 1. to keep; sign a ~ 2. a case; hotel ~ ["roster"] 3. (BE) an electoral ~ 4. the Medical Register; the Social Register (she's (entered/listed) in Who's Who even though her family is not (listed) in the Social Register) ["machine that registers the amount of each sale"] 5. a cash ~

register II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ as (she ~ed as a Republican and is therefore a ~ed Republican; he was not ~ed as a voter) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (she ~ed for two courses; our department(al) secretary has ~ed ten students for the seminar) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ in (how many ~ed/are ~ed in the course?) 4. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (he had to ~ with the authorities; to ~ a pistol with the police) (also fig.) I'd like to ~ a strong protest with the authorities; although the news was important, it failed to ~ with them and hardly ~ed at all with me! 5. (E) have you ~ed to vote? 6. (misc.) the earthquake ~ed six on the Richter scale

registration *n.* 1. to conduct ~ 2. gun; voter ~ 3. ~ as (~ as a Republican) 4. ~ for (~ for this course has been completed) 5. ~ with (~ with the police) 6. ~ to + inf. (~ to vote)

regress *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to one's childhood)

regret I *n.* 1. to express; have ~(s) 2. to feel; show ~ 3. bitter; deep, great, keen, sincere ~ 4. a token of (one's); twinge of ~ 5. ~ at, over; for (to express ~ at not being able to accept an invitation; ~ for one's mistake) 6. to smb.'s ~ ((much/greatly) to my ~, she retired last year) 7. with ~ (with sincere ~ we announce that he passed away last night) (see also **regrets**)

regret II *v.* 1. to ~ deeply, really, very much 2. (formal) (E) we ~ to inform you that your position has been eliminated 3. (G) we ~ having to inform you that your position has been eliminated 4. (K) we ~ your having to be dismissed 5. (L) we really ~ that we cannot accept your invitation; we ~ that your position has been eliminated

regrets *n.* ["expression of regret at declining an invitation"] 1. to send (one's) ~ 2. (esp. AE) ~ only (appears on invitations instructing recipients to respond only if they are unable to accept)

regrettable *adj.* ~ that + clause (it was ~ that we couldn't accept your invitation; it was ~ that your position had been eliminated)

regular *adj.* (misc.) as ~ as clockwork

regulation *n.* 1. to adopt, enact a ~ 2. to apply, enforce a ~ 3. to comply with, obey, observe a ~ 4. to contravene, violate; ignore a ~ 5. rigid, strict ~s 6. army; government; health; police; safety, security; traffic ~s 7. against ~s (it's against ~s to park cars there) 8. a ~ that + clause; subj. (we obeyed the ~ that no cars ¬be/should be/can be¬ parked there)

rehab *n.* (colloq.) in; into; out of ~ (she went into ~ a drunk, stayed in ~ for a while, and came out of ~ sober)

rehabilitation *n.* physical ~

rehearsal *n.* 1. to attend; conduct, have, hold; schedule a ~ 2. a dress, final ~ 3. a ~ for; of 4. at; during a ~ (I'll see you at the dress ~ of *Hamlet*) 5. in ~ (the play is in ~)

rehearse *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ for *Hamlet*)

reign I *n.* during smb.'s ~

reign II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ as (she ~ed as queen for many years) 2. (D ; intr.) to ~ over (see also *to reign supreme* at **supreme**)

reimburse *v.* 1. to ~ amply, fully = in full, generously 2. (rare) (B) all expenses will be ~d to you 3. (D ; tr.) to ~ for (you will be ~d for all expenses)

reimbursement *n.* ~ for (you will receive full ~ for/of all expenses)

rein I *n.* ["control"] 1. to keep a ~ on 2. to give free, full ~ to ("to remove restraints on") (he finally gave free ~ to the emotions he had previously reined in) 3. a tight ~ (to keep a tight ~ on smb./smt.) (he finally gave free ~ to the emotions he had previously kept a tight ~ on) (see also **reins**)

rein II *v.* (D ; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a horse to the left)

reinforcements *n.* to bring up ; commit ; send ~

reins *n.* ["straps used to control an animal"] 1. to draw in, tighten the ~ 2. to pull, tug on the ~ ["control"] 3. to hold ; seize, take over, take up the ~ (of government)

reinstate *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~d as treasurer) 2. (D ; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ people in their former positions)

reissue *v.* (B) the school ~d the same old textbooks to the pupils

reiterate *v.* 1. (B) she ~d her story to the police 2. (L) he ~d (to us) that he would resign

reject *v.* 1. to ~ completely, flatly, outright, totally 2. (D ; tr.) to ~ as (he ~ed our argument as flawed)

rejection *n.* 1. complete, flat, outright, total ~ 2. ~ of ; as (we bridled at his ~ of our argument as flawed)

rejoice *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) to ~ at, in, over (we ~d at the good news that the war was over) 2. (E) (rare) we ~d to learn that the war was over 3. (L) we ~d that the war was over

rejoinder *n.* 1. a sharp ; telling ~ 2. a ~ to

relapse I *n.* (esp. medical) 1. to experience, have, suffer ; trigger a ~ 2. a complete, total ~ 3. a ~ occurs (what triggered the ~ that occurred after the patient's last remission ?) 4. a ~ into (the patient suffered a ~ into a coma again ; a ~ into previous bad habits) 5. in ~ (sometimes the patient is in ~ ; sometimes, in remission)

relapse II *v.* (D ; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into a coma again ; to ~ into previous bad habits)

relate *v.* 1. (B) she ~d her version of the incident to the police 2. (d ; intr.) to ~ to (this law does not ~ to your case ; how do they ~ to each other ?) 3. (L ; to) she ~d to the police that the attack was unprovoked 4. (Q ; to) she ~d to the police how the attack had been planned 5. (misc.) "you had an unhappy childhood ? I can ~ to that : my childhood was unhappy, too !" ; she had an unhappy childhood and, sad to ~, his childhood was unhappy, too

related *adj.* 1. closely ; distantly ~ 2. directly ; indirectly ~ 3. ~ by ; to (I am ~ to him by marriage ; are poverty and crime directly ~ (to each other) ?)

relation *n.* 1. to bear ; have a ~ to (X bears no ~ to Y) 2. a close ; distant ~ 3. a direct ; indirect ~ 4. a ~ between (is there a direct ~ between poverty and crime ?) 5. in ~ to (in ~ to crime, I think we've made some progress in reducing it) 6. (misc.) "what ~ was Queen Elizabeth I to Mary Queen of Scots ?" "I believe they were cousins." (see also **relations**)

relations *n.* 1. to establish ; have, maintain ; normalize ; renew ~ 2. to cement, improve, promote, strengthen ~ 3. to break off, sever ; strain ~ (to break off diplomatic ~ with a country) 4. close, intimate ; cordial, friendly, harmonious ; strained, troubled ~ 5. business, commercial, economic, trade ; diplomatic ; foreign ; industrial, labor ; international ~ 6. human ; public ; race ~ 7. extramarital ; marital ; premarital ; sexual ~ (to have sexual ~ with smb.) 8. ~ among, between ; with 9. (misc.) friends and ~ ("friends and relatives")

relationship *n.* 1. to build ; cement ; enter into, establish, strike up a ~ (to establish a ~ with smb.) 2. to have a ~ with smb. 3. to bear, have a ~ (to bear a ~ to smt.) 4. to break off a ~ (to break off a ~ with smb.) 5. a casual ; close, intimate ; direct ; indirect ; meaningful ; sexual ; solid ; stormy, tempestuous ; symbiotic ; tenuous ; warm ~ 6. a doctor-patient ~ 7. an adulterous ; extramarital ; incestuous ~ ; interpersonal ; spatial ~s 8. a direct ; inverse ~ 9. a ~ between ; to, towards ; with (is there a direct ~ between poverty and crime ?) 10. in a ~ (she is in an extramarital ~ with her husband's best mate ; there should be some give-and-take in any ~ (between people))

relative I *adj.* ~ to

relative II *n.* a blood ; close ; distant ~ ; smb.'s closest, nearest ~s ; friends and ~s ("is he a blood ~ or a ~ by marriage ?" "he's not my son : he's my son-in-law")

relax *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) to ~ by (they ~ by watching TV) 2. (G) they ~ watching TV

relaxant *n.* a muscle ~

relaxation *n.* 1. for ~ (what do you do for ~ ?) 2. (misc.) a ~ of the rules/restrictions

relaxing *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to spend a few days on the beach)

relay I *n.* 1. to run a ~ 2. (misc.) to work in ~s

relay II *v.* (B) she ~ed the information to us

release I *n.* ["liberation"] 1. to bring about, effect, secure smb.'s ~ 2. a ~ from (a ~ from prison) ["surrender of a claim or right"] (legal) 3. to agree to ; sign a ~ ["handing over"] 4. ~ to (the ~ of information to the press) 5. a news, press ~ ["recording"] 6. a new ~ ; the latest ~s ["misc."] 7. on general ~ (BE) (the film will go/be on general ~ from next week and you'll be able to see it at your local cinema)

release II *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ from (he has been ~d from prison) 2. (D ; tr.) to ~ into ; to (the judge ~d the youthful culprit to his parents ; the film has been ~d to various movie theaters ; the information was ~d to the press ; some offenders were ~d into the community)

relegate *v.* 1. (d ; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smb. to second-class status) 2. (misc.) (GB) to ~ a team to the second division

relevance *n.* 1. to have ~ to (the evidence has no ~ to the case) 2. of ~ to (the evidence is of no ~ to the case)

relevant *adj.* 1. ~ to (the evidence is not ~ to the case) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's not ~ to cite such outdated evidence) 3. ~ that + clause (it's not ~ that she was out of town) 4. (misc.) is it ~ whether she was present at the scene of the crime ?

reliance *n.* ~ on (I'd place no ~ on such evidence)

reliant *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ on (the prosecution is heavily ~ on questionable evidence)

relics *n.* ancient ; holy ~ ; ~ of the past

relief *n.* ["easing of pain, of a burden"] 1. to bring ; give ~ 2. to seek ~ 3. to find ; receive ~ (they found ~ in looking at their late son's photographs) 4. to express ; feel ~ 5. blessèd ; great, immense ; instant ; pain ; permanent ; temporary ; welcome ~ (a pain-relief clinic) 6. (esp. BE) (eligible for) tax ~ 7. ~ from (the rain brought instant ~ from the heat) 8. ~ to (the news came as a great ~ to us) 9. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ to get home) 10. ~ that + clause (they expressed ~ that they'd finally gotten home) 11. in, with ~ (to sigh in ~) 12. to smb.'s ~ ((much) to my ~ they got home safely) ["welfare, government aid"] (esp. AE ; obsol.) 13. on ~ (in the 1930s they were on ~) ["comic scenes"] 14. comic ; light ; mock (AE) ~ ["differences in height"] 15. bold ; high ; low ~ 16. in ~ (to show terrain in ~) ["sharpness of outline"] 17. in bold / sharp ~ against (a light background) (Count Dracula's castle stood out in sharp ~ against the snow-capped hills) ["material help"] 18. to provide, send ~ 19. disaster ; emergency ; famine ; flood ; humanitarian ~

relieve *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ of (the general was ~d of her command) 2. (R) it ~d us to learn that they had arrived safely

relieved *adj.* 1. ~ at (we were ~ at the news that they had arrived safely) 2. ~ to + inf. (we were ~ to learn that they had arrived safely) 3. ~ that + clause (we were ~ that they had arrived safely)

religion *n.* ["formal belief in a divine power"] 1. to adhere to ; embrace ; have ; practice a ~ (the hospital receptionist asked me if I had a ~ at all) 2. to abjure, recant, renounce a ~ 3. a fundamentalist ; monotheistic ; polytheistic ~ 4. (an) established, organized ~ 5. a personal ; state ~ 6. a ~ teaches (our ~ teaches us to be kind to animals) 7. the teachings, tenets of a ~ 8. by ~ (he's Jewish by ~) ["study of systems of worship"] 9. comparative ~(s)

religious *adj.* deeply, devoutly, profoundly, very ~

relinquish *v.* (B) ("to yield") he ~ed his business interests to his children

relish I *n.* ["enjoyment"] 1. to show ~ for 2. with ~ (we listened to their story with great ~)

relish II *v.* 1. (G) we really ~ed listening to their story ; I don't exactly ~ confronting him 2. (K) no one ~es his coming here

relocate *v.* 1. (P ; tr.) ("to locate again") we ~d our firm in / to Florida 2. (P ; intr.) ("to locate again") our firm is going to ~ in / to Florida

reluctance *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. extreme, great ~ 3. ~ to + inf. (her ~ to get involved was understandable) 4. with ~ (she got involved only with the greatest ~)

reluctant *adj.* (usu. does not stand alone) ~ to + inf. (she was understandably ~ to get involved in smt. so dangerous)

rely *v.* 1. to ~ heavily 2. (d ; intr.) to ~ on, upon (the prosecution relied heavily ~ on questionable evidence for support) 3. to ~ on, upon ; to + inf. (the prosecution relied heavily ~ on questionable evidence to support their case)

remain *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) to ~ of (did anything ~ of the wreckage ?) 2. (E) that ~s to be seen 3. (S) she ~ed a widow for the rest of her life ; to ~ silent ; (obsol.) "I ~ Your most humble and obedient servant, Martin Chuzzlewit" (used formerly in the complimentary close of letters)

remains *n.* 1. to exhume ~ 2. animal ; human ; mortal ~

remand I *n.* on ~ ("in prison awaiting trial") (to be (held) on ~)

remand II *v.* 1. (d ; tr.) ("to send") to ~ to (the judge ~ed the accused to the county jail) 2. (misc.) ~ed in custody ("sent back to prison")

remark I *n.* 1. to drop, make ; address a ~ (please address your ~s to the chair, not to the last speaker) 2. to pass a ~ (they passed several sarcastic ~s about the food) 3. a complimentary ; flattering ; friendly ; kind ; reassuring ; timely ~ 4. a droll ; facetious ; tongue-in-cheek ; witty ~ 5. a pertinent ; pithy ; pointed ~ 6. a casual, throwaway ; innocent ; innocuous ; off-the-cuff ; passing ~ 7. a controversial ; cryptic, puzzling ; provocative ; suggestive ~ 8. an inane ; indiscreet ; tasteless ; trite ; trivial ~ 9. a biting, catty, caustic, cutting, nasty, sarcastic, scathing, snide ; cruel, unkind ; cynical ; derogatory ; disparaging, insulting, offensive, rude ; impertinent ; slanderous ~ (I decided to take no notice of his snide ~s about me) 10. smb.'s closing, concluding ; introductory, opening ~s 11. a ~ about (she made a ~ (to us) about how boring being interviewed was) 12. a ~ that + clause (she made the ~ (to us) that being interviewed was boring)

remark II *v.* 1. (d ; intr.) to ~ on, upon (the visitors were heard to ~ on the excellent condition of the streets) 2. (L ; to) she ~ed (to us) that being interviewed was boring

remarkable *adj.* 1. ~ for (the city is ~ for its clean streets) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to see such clean streets) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that the streets are so clean after the parade) 4. (misc.) (it's ~ how clean the streets are after the parade)

remedy *n.* 1. to resort to, use a ~ 2. to prescribe a ~ 3. to provide a ~ (for) 4. (legal) to pursue a (legal) ~ 5. (legal) to exhaust all (legal) ~ies 6. a certain, reliable, sure; effective, efficacious ~ 7. a cold; cough ~ 8. a folk; herbal; home; homeopathic ~ 9. a ~ works 10. a ~ for (my granny's home ~ for coughs certainly worked on me!)

remember *v.* 1. to ~ clearly, distinctly; dimly, vaguely; to ~ aright, correctly, rightly, well (we met in 1966, if I ~ aright) 2. (B; colloq. the direct object is always a personal pronoun) please ~ me to your family ("please give my regards to your family") 3. (D; tr.) to ~ about ("do you ~ anything about the incident?" "no, I'm afraid I can't ~ anything about it") 4. (D; tr.) to ~ as; for (I well ~ her as a young girl; Laurence Olivier will always be ~ed for his Shakespeare performances) 5. (D; tr.) to ~ of (what do you ~ of them?) 6. (E) she ~ed to buy a newspaper 7. (G) she ~ed buying the newspaper 8. (J) I ~ him being very generous 9. (K) I ~ his being very generous 10. (L) she ~ed that she had bought a newspaper 11. (Q) she couldn't ~ where or when she'd bought the newspaper USAGE NOTE: The sentence *she didn't remember to buy a newspaper* means "she forgot to buy a newspaper". The sentence *she didn't remember buying a newspaper* means "she had no memory of buying a newspaper", whether she bought one or not.

remembrance *n.* in ~ of

remind *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to cause to remember") to ~ about, of (he ~ed me of my promise; we ~ed them of why the meeting had been postponed) 2. (d; tr.) ("to call to mind") to ~ of (she ~s me of my cousin) 3. (H) she ~ed me to buy a newspaper 4. (L; must have an object) we ~ed them that the meeting had been postponed 5. (Q; must have an object) we ~ed them why the meeting had been postponed 6. (misc.) the merest hint served to ~ me of my promise; I think I need hardly ~ you that your rent is now due!

reminder *n.* 1. to serve as a ~ (of) (the merest hint served as a ~ (to me) of my promise to pay the rent) 2. a bitter; eloquent; final; gentle; grim ~ 3. a ~ to + inf. (we received a final ~ to pay the rent) 4. a ~ that + clause (we received a final ~ that the rent was due)

reminisce *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about

reminiscences *n.* 1. personal ~ 2. ~ about

reminiscent *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ of (that melody is very ~ of the music we listened to in the old days)

remiss *adj.* (formal) 1. ~ about, in (~ in (performing) one's duties; I was very ~ in not writing to you) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of me not to write to you)

remission *n.* ["lessening of the effects of a disease"] (esp. med.) 1. to experience, have a ~ 2. a complete, total; partial ~ 3. a ~ occurs (what triggered the relapse after the patient's last ~ had occurred?) 4. in ~ (sometimes the patient is in relapse; sometimes, in ~)

remit I *n.* (BE) ["assignment, area of responsibility"] 1. a limited; wide ~ 2. a ~ to + inf. (they have a ~ to investigate the company's affairs) 3. (misc.) to fall outside; under; within the ~ of smt. (this question falls outside the limited ~ of this investigation)

remit II *v.* 1. (BE) (A) they ~ted the money to us; or: they ~ted us the money 2. (AE) (B) they ~ted the money to us

remittance *n.* 1. to enclose; send a ~ 2. (obsol.) (BE) a ~ man ("one living abroad on money emitted from home") 3. on ~ of (you will receive the book on ~ of the balance)

remonstrate *v.* (formal) (D; intr.) to ~ about, against; with (they ~d with the neighbors about the noise)

remorse *n.* 1. to display, exhibit, show ~ 2. to express; feel ~ 3. bitter, deep, profound, sincere ~ 4. a feeling; pang; stab; twinge of ~ 5. ~ for, over (he displayed no ~ for his crimes) 6. with ~ (he confessed his crimes with sincere ~)

remote *adj.* ~ from

removal *n.* 1. snow ~ 2. (BE) furniture ~ (see also *removal van* at **van**) 3. ~ from; to

remove *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ a dressing from a wound)

removed *adj.* 1. easily ~ 2. once; twice ~ (a first cousin once ~) 3. far ~ from

remover *n.* (a) nail-polish, nail-varnish (BE); paint; rust; spot ~

remunerate *v.* (formal) (D; tr.) to ~ for

remuneration *n.* 1. to offer ~ 2. to accept ~ 3. ~ for

rename *v.* (N) the file that had been named "urgent" has now been ~d "miscellaneous"

rend *v.* (D; tr.) ("to tear") to ~ into (to ~ one's clothes into shreds)

render *v.* 1. (A) she ~ed a valuable service to me; or: she ~ed me a valuable service 2. (formal) (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ a text into English) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ suspected terrorists to other countries for interrogation) 4. (N; used with an adjective) her remark ~ed me speechless

rendezvous *n.* 1. to have; make a ~ with 2. a secret ~

rendition *n.* 1. to give a ~ 2. a letter-perfect (AE), word-perfect (BE) ~ 3. ~ to (the ~ of suspected terrorists to other countries for interrogation)

renege *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a commitment)

renewal *n.* urban ~

renounce *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ wealth for happiness)

renovations *n.* 1. to make; undergo ~ 2. ~ in; to (to make ~s in/to an old building)

renown *n.* 1. to achieve, attain, win ~ 2. great, wide ~ (to achieve great ~ as a pianist for one's performances of Beethoven) 3. international, worldwide; national ~ 4. of ~ (an artist of great ~)

renowned *adj.* 1. internationally; nationally; widely ~ 2. ~ as; for (~ as a pianist; ~ for one's inventions)

rent I *n.* 1. to pay ~ for 2. to raise the ~ 3. (AE) for

~ (the house is for ~) (BE has *the house is to let*) 4. (misc.) to pay five hundred dollars (in) ~ (see also *rent control* at **control**)

rent II *v.* 1. (A) to ~ a room to a student; or: to ~ a student a room 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ a house from smb.) 3. (esp. AE) (d; intr.) to ~ to (she ~s to students) 4. (esp. AE) (d; intr., tr.) to ~ at, for (the room ~ed at five hundred dollars a month)

rental *n.* 1. car; film; office ~ 2. ~ to

rent out *v.* (B) to ~ rooms to students = to ~ rooms out to students (see also **let out**)

reorganization *n.* to undergo ~

repair I *n.* ["process of restoring to working order"] 1. to carry out, do, make a ~ (we have done the necessary ~s) 2. extensive, major; minor; necessary ~s 3. ~s to (the ~s to our roof cost one hundred dollars) 4. under ~ (the road is under ~) ["condition"] 5. in ~ (to keep a car in good ~; in poor ~)

repair II *v.* (formal or humorous) (d; intr.) ("to go") to ~ to (to ~ to the drawing room)

reparations *n.* 1. to pay ~ 2. war ~ 3. ~ for

repartee *n.* witty ~

repast *n.* (formal or humorous) a light, meager ~

repatriate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to

repatriation *n.* 1. forced ~ 2. ~ from; to

repay *v.* 1. (A) we must ~ the money to her for the tickets; or: we must ~ her the money for the tickets 2. (D; tr.) to ~ by; with (the firm repaid me with a promotion for my hard work = the firm repaid me for my hard work by promoting me) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ for (we must ~ her for the tickets) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a loan to a bank)

repeat *v.* 1. (B) she ~ed her story to us 2. (D; intr.) ("to cause an unpleasant aftertaste") to ~ on (this type of food ~s on me) 3. (L; to) he ~ed (to me) that he would buy some stamps 4. (misc.) ~ after me; to ~ verbatim = to ~ word for word

repellent I *adj.* 1. ~ to 2. (misc.) a water-repellent fabric

repellent II *n.* an insect; mosquito ~

repent *v.* 1. to ~ sincerely 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for, of (to ~ of one's sins) 3. (rare) (G) he ~ed having stolen the car

repentance *n.* 1. to show ~ for 2. genuine, sincere ~ (to show genuine ~ for one's sins)

repercussions *n.* 1. to have ~ for; on 2. far-reaching; serious; unexpected ~

repertoire *n.* 1. the standard ~ 2. in a ~ (our company has several new plays in its ~)

repertory *n.* in ~ (to play in ~)

replace *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (when my sister fell ill, they asked me to ~ her as secretary; when Jones couldn't play, the coach ~d him as quarterback) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (when Jones couldn't play, the coach ~d Jones with Smith: Smith has now ~d Jones) 3. (P) I ~d the book ¬on the shelf/where it belonged¬ after I'd finished reading it (see also **substitute II** *v.*)

replacement *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. to be; get, receive a ~ for (Smith is now the ~ for Jones as quarterback) (see also **substitute I** *n.*) 3. (misc.) the ~ of smt. by smt. else (the coach's ~ of Jones by Smith as quarterback) (see also **substitution**)

replay *n.* (an) action (BE), instant (AE) ~

replenish *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with

replete *adj.* ~ with

reply I *n.* 1. to give a ~ 2. to send a ~ 3. to get, have, receive a ~ 4. to draw, elicit a ~ 5. a favorable; witty ~ 6. a straightforward; succinct ~ 7. an immediate, prompt ~ 8. a brusque, curt, gruff; stinging; sullen; terse ~ 9. a ~ to 10. in ~ (to nod in ~) 11. in ~ to (in ~ to your letter)

reply II *v.* 1. ("to respond") to ~ brusquely, curtly; clearly, unequivocally; immediately, promptly; vaguely 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (she did not ~ to my letter) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (she replied to my letter with one of her own) 4. (L; to) she replied (to us) that she would be happy to accept our invitation

report I *n.* 1. to file, give, make, present, submit a ~ 2. to do, draw up, issue, make, make out, prepare, produce, write, write out, write up a ~ 3. to confirm a ~ 4. an accurate; balanced; confirmed; detailed, exhaustive, full; favorable, positive; impartial, objective ~ 5. a biased, slanted; negative, unfavorable; sketchy; unconfirmed ~ 6. an annual; daily; monthly; morning; weekly ~ 7. a final; interim; preliminary; progress; status ~ 8. an oral; written ~ 9. an eyewitness; firsthand ~ 10. an accident; incident ~ 11. a live; news; newspaper; press; radio; traffic; TV; weather ~ 12. a classified; committee; confidential; intelligence; official; restricted; secret; special; top-secret ~ 13. a majority; minority ~ 14. a school ~ (BE; AE has *report card*) 15. a ~ about, on; from; to; with (she filed a ~ about the incident with the authorities; the annual ~ from the company to stockholders) 16. a ~ that + clause (we have heard ~s that the road is closed)

report II *v.* 1. (B) ("to relate") she ~ed the incident to the authorities 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about, on ("to describe") (the correspondent ~ed on the situation at the front) 3. (d; tr.) ("to describe") to ~ as (the fire was ~ed as burning out of control; the stolen car was ~ed by several people as having been seen = several people ~ed the stolen car as having been seen; he was ~ed as missing in action) 4. (D; intr.) ("to present oneself") to ~ for; to (to ~ to headquarters for duty) 5. (D; tr.) ("to inform on") to ~ for; to (to ~ smb. to the police for violating an ordinance) 6. (d; intr.) ("to send information") to ~ from (during the war, she ~ed from London) 7. (pol.) (D; tr.) to ~ out of ("to return smt. for further action") (to ~ a bill out of committee) 8. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to answer to") (she ~s directly to the dean) 9. (D; intr.) ("to give information") to ~ to (I'll be ~ing to you soon) 10. (G) ("to make known") several people ~ed having seen the stolen car 11. (H) the stolen car was ~ed to have been seen in several places 12. (K) ("to make known") smb. ~ed their leaving early 13. (L; to) ("to relate") she ~ed (to us) that they had left early and that he was missing in action 14. (M) ("to describe") the fire was ~ed to be burning out of control; he was ~ed to be missing in action 15. (N; used with an adjective, past participle) ("to describe") the patrol ~ed the entire area clear/cleared; he was ~ed missing in action 16. (Q; to) ("to describe") she ~ed to the authorities how the incident had taken place; several people ~ed to the authorities where the stolen car had been seen 17. (esp. BE) (s) to ~ sick

report back *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ to (you will ~ to the chairperson of the committee) 2. (L; to) they ~ed back to the committee that all goals had been reached

reported *adj.* (cannot stand alone) 1. ~ to + inf. (they were ~ to be safe; the stolen car was ~ to have been seen in several places) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ed that they were safe; it was ~ (to the authorities) that the stolen car had been seen in several places) 3. (misc.) they were ~ safe

reporter *n.* 1. a court; cub; financial; free-lance; investigative; news; police; radio; roving; science; society; sports; TV ~ 2. a ~ for, on, with (a ~ for/on/with *The Times* = a *Times* reporter)

report in *v.* (AE) (s) to ~ sick

reporting *n.* 1. balanced; impartial, objective ~ 2. biased, slanted ~ 3. investigative ~

repose *n.* in (a state of) ~

represent *v.* 1. ("to depict") to ~ graphically 2. (B) ("to be the equivalent of, to symbolize") this room ~ed home to them 3. (esp. BE) (B) ("to convey") to ~ one's grievances to the authorities 4. (d; refl., tr.) ("to depict") to ~ as (she was ~ed as an heroic pioneer) 5. (S; used with nouns) ("to be") this ~s a serious problem

representation *n.* ["statement"]["protest"] 1. to make ~s to (our ambassador made ~s to their government) ["act of representing"] 2. legal ~ (they insisted on having legal ~) 3. proportional; virtual ~ 4. ~ as (her ~ as an heroic pioneer)

representative I *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. as ~ (a sample selected as ~ of the whole)

representative II *n.* 1. a sales ~ (BE also had *commercial traveller*) 2. an elected ~ 3. as a ~ (of) (Mrs. Smith has been selected as a ~ of American homemakers)

repression *n.* 1. political; sexual ~ 2. (to live) under ~

repressive *adj.* ~ of

reprieve *n.* 1. to give, grant a ~ 2. to get, receive a ~ 3. a last-minute ~ 4. a ~ from

reprimand I *n.* 1. to administer, give, issue a ~ (the judge issued a ~ from the bench) 2. to get, receive a ~ (an employee who got a ~ for being late) 3. a mild; severe, sharp, stern ~ 4. an oral, verbal; written ~ 5. a public ~

reprimand II *v.* 1. to ~ mildly; severely, sharply, sternly 2. to ~ orally, verbally; in writing 3. to ~ publicly 4. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ an employee publicly for being late)

reprint *n.* to issue a ~ (of a book)

reprisal *n.* 1. to carry out ~s 2. a harsh ~ 3. a ~ against, on 4. in ~ (for) 5. (misc.) as a ~; by way of ~

reproach I *n.* 1. a bitter ~ 2. a term of ~ 3. above, beyond ~ (his behavior is above/beyond ~ = his behavior is irreproachable)

reproach II *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly 2. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ an employee bitterly for being late)

reproduce *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ a photograph from an old negative)

reproduction *n.* ["copy"] 1. (a) high-fidelity; stereophonic ~ 2. a ~ (a ~ of a photograph from an old negative) ["biological process of reproducing"] 3. animal; human; plant ~ 4. asexual; sexual ~

reprove *v.* (formal) 1. to ~ harshly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ an employee harshly for being late)

reptile *n.* ~s crawl, creep, slither

republic *n.* 1. to establish a ~ 2. an autonomous; banana (obsol. derog.); democratic; people's ~

Republican *n.* (US) a registered ~

repugnance *n.* 1. to feel ~ 2. with ~ 3. (a) deep, profound ~ (she regards smoking with deep ~)

repugnant *adj.* 1. to find smt. ~ (she finds smoking deeply ~) 2. ~ to (smoking is deeply ~ to her)

repulsive *adj.* ~ to

reputation *n.* 1. to acquire, earn, establish, gain, get a ~ 2. to enjoy, have a ~ (he had the ~ of being a heavy drinker) 3. to guard, protect one's ~ 4. to compromise, blacken, blemish, damage, destroy, ruin, smear, tarnish smb.'s ~ 5. an enviable, excellent, fine, good, impeccable, spotless, unblemished, unsullied, untainted, untarnished ~ 6. a tainted, tarnished, unenviable ~ 7. an international, worldwide; local; national ~ 8. a ~ suffers 9. a ~ as, for (that judge has a ~ for being fair) 10. by ~ (to know smb. by ~) 11. (misc.) to live up to one's ~; to stake one's ~ on smt.

repute *n.* 1. high ~ (to be held in high ~) 2. ill, low ~ (a place of ill ~; to be held in low ~) 3. by ~ (to know smb. by ~)

reputed *adj.* (cannot stand alone) 1. generally, widely ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (she is widely ~ to be very generous)

request I *n.* 1. to file, make, submit a ~ (to file a ~ with the appropriate authorities; she has a ~ to make of us; to submit a ~ to the mayor's office) 2. to act on, agree to; grant, honor a ~ (I agreed to her ~ that I ¬be/should be/was (esp. BE)¬ there) 3. to deny, refuse, reject, turn down a ~ 4. a moderate, modest; polite; reasonable ~ 5. a desperate, urgent; unreasonable ~ 6. a formal; official; written ~ 7. an informal; oral; unofficial ~ 8. a ~ for (to make a ~ for more money) 9. a ~ to + inf. (she made a ~ for me to be there; a ~ to be allowed to leave) 10. a ~ that + clause; subj. (she made a ~ that I ¬be/should be/was (esp. BE)¬ there) 11. at smb.'s ~ (I was there at her ~) 12. by, on, upon ~ (brochures are mailed out on ~) 13. (misc.) this radio station takes and plays ~s if you phone them in

request II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from; of (to ~ a favor of smb.) 2. (H) to ~ smb. to do smt. (she ~ed me to be there) 3. (L; subj.) she ~ed that I ¬be/should be/was (esp. BE)¬ there

require *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from, of (she ~s attendance at meetings from everyone) 2. (E) one is not ~d to be a specialist = (esp. BE) "one does not ~ to be a specialist" – Elizabeth Bowen, 1899–1973 3. (G) the house ~s painting 4. (H) she ~d everyone to attend the meeting 5. (K) this position ~s everyone's attending all our meetings 6. (L; subj.) she ~d that everyone ¬attend/should attend/attended (esp. BE)¬ the meeting

requirement *n.* 1. to establish, set ~s 2. to fill, fulfill, meet, satisfy a ~ 3. to waive a ~ 4. admission, entrance; distributional (AE); legal; minimum; physical ~s 5. a ~ to + inf. (she has made it a ~ for everyone to attend all meetings) 6. a ~ that + clause; subj. (she has made it a ~ that everyone ¬attend/should attend/attends (esp. BE)¬ all meetings) 7. (misc.) Sociology 101 is a ~ for Sociology 102

requisite *n.* a ~ for

requisition I *n.* 1. to make out, write out a ~ 2. to send in, submit a ~ 3. to fill a ~ 4. a ~ for 5. on ~ (that item is on ~)

requisition II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for

rerun *n.* to show a ~ (that channel keeps showing ~s of old TV programs)

rescue I *n.* 1. to attempt; effect, make, mount a ~ 2. to come/go to smb.'s ~ 3. a daring, heroic ~ 4. a ~ from (see also *rescue attempt* at **attempt I** *n.*; *rescue bid* at **bid I** *n.*)

rescue II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

research I *n.* 1. to carry out, conduct, do, pursue ~ 2. to publish one's ~ (see also *research findings* at **finding**; *research project* at **project I** *n.*) 3. detailed, diligent, laborious, painstaking, solid, thorough ~ 4. independent; original ~ 5. empirical; further; qualitative; quantitative ~ (further ~ is necessary) 6. animal; biological; historical; medical; scientific ~ 7. market; operations; space ~ 8. ~ shows (has ~ shown that smoking is bad for health?) 9. an area of ~ 10. ~ in, into, on (~ on the development of an electric engine)

research II *v.* (BE) (D; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into the development of an electric engine)

researcher *n.* an independent ~

resemblance *n.* 1. to bear, have a ~ to 2. a close, strong; faint, remote, slight; passing; striking; superficial; uncanny ~ 3. a family ~ 4. a ~ between; to

resemble *v.* to ~ closely, strongly; remotely, slightly

resent *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly, deeply, greatly, strongly 2. (G) she bitterly ~s not being the center of attention 3. (J) she bitterly ~s him being the center of attention 4. (K) she bitterly ~s his being the center of attention

resentful *adj.* 1. bitterly, very ~ 2. ~ about, at, of (she's bitterly ~ at not being the center of attention)

resentment *n.* 1. to arouse, cause, stir up ~ 2. to bear, feel, harbor ~ 3. to express, voice ~ 4. bitter, deep, profound, smoldering, sullen ~ 5. unspoken; widespread ~ 6. ~ about, over; against; at, towards (she feels bitter ~ at not being the center of attention) 7. ~ that + clause (she feels bitter ~ that she isn't the center of attention)

reservation *n.* ["booking"] 1. to make a ~ (we made a ~ at a very good restaurant) 2. to confirm a ~ 3. to have a ~ (we have a ~ at the restaurant) 4. to cancel a ~ 5. an advance ~ 6. an airline; concert; hotel, motel, room; restaurant; theater ~ 7. a ~ for (I'd like to make a ~ for two people for 8 o'clock, please) ["qualification"] 8. a mental ~ 9. without ~ (see also **reservations**) ["tract of land"] 10. an Indian (Canadian English has *(Indian) reserve*); military ~ 11. on a ~ ["strip of land"] (BE) 12. a central ~ (on a road)

reservations *n.* ["doubts"] 1. to have ~ 2. to express ~ (they expressed strong ~ about the plan) 3. deep, strong; initial ~ 4. ~ about (do you have any ~ about the agreement?) 5. without ~ (to accept a proposal without ~ = to accept a proposal unreservedly)

reserve I *n.* ["restraint, coolness"] 1. to display, show ~ 2. to break down smb.'s ~ ["limitation, restriction"] 3. without ~ (to accept a proposal without ~) ["availability"] 4. dwindling ~s 5. in ~ (to hold/keep smt. in ~) ["tract of land"] 6. an Indian (in Canada: AE has *(Indian) reservation*); nature; wild-life ~ ["military force kept available for future use"] 7. the active; inactive ~ ["store"] 8. to build up; deplete a ~ (see also **reserves**)

reserve II *v.* 1. (esp. AE: BE also has *to book*) (C) ("to order in advance") she ~d a seat for me; or: she ~d me a seat 2. (esp. AE: BE also has *to book*) (D; tr.) to ~ for (I'd like to ~ a table for two people for 8 o'clock, please) 3. (D; tr.) ("to set aside") to ~ for (these seats are ~d for the handicapped)

reserved *adj.* ["restrained, reticent"] 1. very ~ 2. ~ about 3. ~ towards, with

reserves *n.* ["forces kept available for future use"] (usu. mil. and sports) 1. to call out, call up the ~ 2. to commit one's ~ 3. limited; unlimited ~ ["stores"] 4. to build up ~ 5. to deplete, exhaust the ~ 6. coal; currency; gas; oil ~ 7. abundant; dwindling; limited, meager; limitless, unlimited; untapped ~

reservoir *n.* 1. an artificial; natural ~ 2. (misc.) an untapped ~ of talent that we need to tap (into)

reside *v.* (P; intr.) they ~ in London

residence *n.* ["home, abode"] 1. to establish, take up ~ 2. to change one's (place of) ~ 3. one's legal; permanent ~ ["state of being officially present"] 4. in ~ (a poet in ~; the Queen is in ~ at Balmoral: how long will she remain in ~ there?)

resign *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from (she ~ed (from) her job) 2. (d; refl.) to ~ to (he ~ed himself to his fate and to losing his job)

resignation *n.* ["act of resigning"] 1. to hand in, offer, submit, tender one's ~ 2. to withdraw one's ~ 3. to accept; reject smb.'s ~ 4. a ~ as (he offered his ~ as party leader) 5. a ~ from (he offered his ~ from the party leadership)

resigned *adj.* ["submissive"] ~ to (~ to one's fate)

resist *v.* 1. to ~ strenuously, stubbornly, vigorously 2. (G) they couldn't ~ making fun of him

resistance *n.* 1. to offer, put up ~ 2. to break down, crush, overcome, overpower, put down, smash, wear down ~ 3. to arouse, come up against, give rise to, stir up; encounter, face, meet, meet with, run into ~ 4. bitter, determined, fierce, stiff, strong, stubborn, unyielding, valiant ~ 5. armed; nonviolent, passive; sporadic; spotty; token; weak ~ 6. ~ hardens, stiffens 7. ~ crumbles; wanes, weakens 8. ~ to (~ to a disease; ~ to new taxes) 9. against, despite, in spite of (the) ~ (we adopted the resolution despite the ~ of the other party) 10. (misc.) a pocket of (isolated) ~; the line/path (AE) of least ~; her ~ was low and she came down with a severe cold

resistant *adj.* ~ to (~ to change)

resolute *adj.* ~ in (~ in one's decision to do smt.)

resolution *n.* ["decision"] 1. to draft; propose a ~ 2. to adopt, pass a ~ 3. to reject a ~ 4. a joint ~ (of Congress) 5. a ~ to + inf. (they adopted a ~ to increase membership dues) 6. a ~ that + clause; subj. (they adopted a ~ that membership dues ¬be/should be¬ increased) ["vow"] 7. to make a (New Year's) ~ ["resolve"] 8. (a) firm ~ ["fine detail"] (optics) 9. sharp ~

resolve I *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. to strengthen one's/smb.'s ~ 3. to shake, weaken smb.'s ~ 4. (a) firm ~ 5. a ~ to + inf. (nothing shook her ~ to become an engineer) 6. a ~ that + clause (nothing shook her ~ that she would become an engineer)

resolve II *v.* 1. (BE) (d; intr.) ("to decide") to ~ against (they ~d against going out on strike) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ a problem into its simpler components) 3. (BE) (d; intr.) ("to decide") to ~ on, upon (they ~d on not striking) 4. (E) they ~d not to go out on strike 5. (L) they ~d that they would not go out on strike; "we here highly ~ that the dead shall not have died in vain" – Abraham Lincoln, "The Gettysburg Address," 1863 USAGE NOTE: The collocation "resolve highly" is a literary equivalent of "resolve firmly."

resolved *adj.* (usu. does not stand alone) 1. firmly ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to become an engineer) 3. (formal) ~ that + clause; subj. (be it hereby ~ that membership dues ¬be/should be¬ increased)

resort I *n.* ["recourse"] 1. (formal) to have ~ to 2. a last ~ (as a last ~) ["recreational center"] 3. a beach; fashionable; health; holiday, vacation (esp. AE); popular; ski; summer; winter ~ 4. at, in a ~

resort II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to trickery)

resound *v.* (P; intr.) applause ~ed in/throughout the hall = the hall ~ed with applause; the shouts of the hunters ~ed through the forest = the forest ~ed with the shouts of the hunters

resourceful *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to find the solution so quickly)

resources *n.* 1. to develop; exploit, tap; mobilize ~ 2. to conserve, husband; marshall; pool, share one's ~ 3. to deplete, exhaust, squander, use up, waste ~ 4. abundant; dwindling; limited, meager; limitless, unlimited; untapped ~ 5. economic; natural ~ (to exploit natural ~) 6. human; inner ~ 7. the ~ to + inf. (we have the ~ to do the job) 8. (misc.) left to one's own ~s ("left on one's own; unaided; left to one's own devices")

respect I *n.* ["esteem"] 1. to accord, pay, show; have ~ (to have ~ for smb.; to show ~ for/to smb.; to pay a lot of respect to smb.) 2. to command, inspire ~ (she commands ~ from everyone = she commands everyone's ~) 3. to earn, gain, get, win ~ 4. to lose smb.'s ~ (if I do that will I lose your ~?) 5. deep, great, profound, sincere, utmost; due; grudging; mutual ~ 6. a mark, sign, token of ~ (we observed a minute's silence as a mark of ~ for the fallen) 7. ~ for (~ for the law; if I do that will you lose ~ for me?) 8. out of ~ (we observed a minute's silence out of ~ for the fallen) 9. in ~ (to hold smb. in ~) 10. with ~ (with (all due) ~, I disagree) ["regard"] 11. in a ~ (in this/that ~; in all ~s) 12. in, with ~ to; (esp. BE) in ~ of (see also **respects**)

respect II *v.* 1. to ~ deeply, very much; widely 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ smb. as a scholar) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ for (I ~ them for their scholarship)

respected *adj.* 1. highly; universally, widely ~ 2. ~ as (highly ~ as scholars) 3. ~ for (highly ~ for their scholarship)

respectful *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ of; to (very ~ of one's elders)

respects *n.* to pay; send one's ~ (to pay one's last ~ after smb.'s death)

respiration *n.* artificial; labored; normal ~ (to give smb. artificial ~)

respite *n.* 1. to allow, give ~ (the cold allowed us no ~) 2. to get, have a ~ (we finally got a brief ~ from the cold) 3. a brief, temporary; welcome ~ 4. a ~ from (there was no ~ for us from the cold!) 5. without ~

resplendent *adj.* ~ in; with (~ in their academic gowns)

respond *v.* 1. ("to respond") to ~ affirmatively, positively; brusquely, curtly; clearly, unequivocally; enthusiastically; favorably; immediately, promptly; negatively; vaguely; wittily 2. (D; intr.) ("to react") to ~ by (they ~ed by walking out) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ to ("to answer") (to ~ to a letter) 4. (D; intr.) ("to react") to ~ to (to ~ well to kind treatment) 5. (D; intr.) ("to react") to ~ with (they ~ed to our demands with an immediate walkout) 6. (L; to) she ~ed (to us) that she would be happy to accept our invitation = "¬I'd be/I'm¬ happy to accept your invitation!" she ~ed (to us)

response *n.* 1. to call forth, draw (forth), elicit, evoke a ~ 2. to give, make a ~ 3. to get, have, receive a ~ 4. a brusque, curt; clear, unequivocal; enthusiastic; favorable; vague; witty ~ 5. a glib; lukewarm; sullen ~ 6. a delayed; immediate ~ 7. an affirmative, positive; negative ~ 8. a ~ to (there was no lack of enthusiastic ~s to our offer!) 9. in ~ to

responsibility *n.* ["accountability"] ["obligation"] 1. to accept, assume, bear, have, shoulder, take, take on (a) ~ 2. to exercise 3. to discharge a ~ 4. to abandon, abdicate, disclaim, dodge, evade, give up, shirk (a) ~ 5. to delegate; share; shift (a) ~ 6. an awesome, grave, great, heavy, terrible (colloq.); clear ~ 7. (a) collective; joint; moral; personal ~ 8. the ultimate ~ 9. (a) ~ falls on; lies, rests with smb. 10. (a) ~ for (the ultimate ~ for the decision rests/lies with the president = the president bears the ultimate ~ for the decision; the president said he would take personal ~ for the consequences of his decision) 11. a ~ to (have you no ~ to your country?!) 12. the ~ to + inf. (everyone has a/the ~ to pay taxes) 13. ~ that + clause; subj. (it was her ~ that all members ¬be/should be/were (esp. BE)¬ notified) 14. on one's ~ (she did it on her own ~) ["blame"] 15. to lay the ~ (fairly and squarely) at smb.'s door 16. to admit, claim; bear ~ (a shadowy group claimed ~ for the hijacking; the president must bear the ultimate ~ for the decision) 17. to disclaim (all) ~ 18. ~ for USAGE NOTE: In reporting smt. bad, it has been recommended that those responsible should be said to "admit" responsibility rather than to "claim" responsibility. That is probably because of the collocations "admit guilt" (for smt. bad) and "claim credit" (for smt. good).

responsible *adj.* 1. directly; personally 2. ~ for; to (politicians are ~ to the voters; people are ~ for their actions) 3. (misc.) to hold smb. ~ for smt. (you'll be held personally ~ for the consequences of your decision!; you'll be held personally ~ if anything goes wrong!)

responsive *adj.* ~ to (~ to flattery)

responsiveness *n.* ~ to

rest I *n.* ["repose"] 1. to have, take a ~ 2. to get some ~ 3. a well-earned ~ 4. bed; complete ~ 5. ~ from 6. at ~ (at last he is at ~ from his labors!) 7. (misc.) to come to ~ ("to stop"); to go to one's eternal ~ ("to die"); laid to ~ ("buried"); at parade ~ (mil.) (the platoon was at parade ~); to set one's mind at ~ 8. (misc.) to find ~ (may your troubled spirit find ~!) ["support"] 9. an armrest; chin ~

rest II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to support") to ~ on (~ your head on my shoulder) 2. (d; intr.) ("to stand") to ~ on (the statue ~s on a pedestal) 3. (d; intr.) ("to depend") to ~ with (the decision ~s with the court; it ~s with the court to make the decision) 4. (misc.) to ~ in peace ("to lie buried") (may she ~ in peace!) (see also *rest easy* at **easy**)

restaurant *n.* 1. to manage, operate, run; go to a ~ 2. an elegant, first-class ~ 3. a dairy; fast-food; fish, seafood; kosher; vegetarian ~ 4. (BE) a licensed ~ (that may sell alcoholic drinks) 5. at, in a ~

restful *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's ~ just to sit and read = it's ~ just sitting and reading)

restitution *n.* 1. to make; offer ~ 2. full ~ 3. ~ for 4. ~ to

restock *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (they ~ed their store with more merchandise; to ~ a pond with more fish)

restore *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ people to their former positions)

restrain *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ from (to ~ smb. from committing violence)

restraint *n.* ["control"] ["act of restraining"] 1. to display, exercise, show; impose ~ 2. to cast off, fling off, shake off (all); lift ~ 3. (legal) prior ~ 4. ~ in; on (they showed ~ in responding to the provocation; the government has sought to impose ~s on violence) 5. in ~ of (in ~ of trade) ["device for restraining"] 6. to apply, put on ~s

restrict *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ to (the chair ~ed discussion to items on the official agenda; she ~ed herself to two meals a day)

restriction *n.* 1. to impose, place, put ~s on 2. to lift a ~ 3. ~s on

result I *n.* 1. to achieve, get, produce, show ~s 2. to announce; evaluate, measure; tabulate ~s 3. to negate, nullify, undo a ~ 4. an end, final; direct; interim, preliminary; lasting; logical; negative; net; positive; striking; surprising; tangible ~ 5. overall; surefire ~s USAGE NOTE: In BE, "get a result" can refer to getting a clear-cut definite victory or defeat by contrast with a draw or other such outcome.

result II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ from (her death ~ed from an overdose of pills) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ in (an overdose of pills ~ed in her death)

resume *v.* (G) she ~d working

resurrect *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ smb. from the dead)

resurrection *n.* ~ from (smb.'s ~ from the dead)

resuscitation *n.* 1. to give ~ (the victim was given mouth-to-mouth ~) 2. cardiopulmonary (= CPR); mouth-to-mouth ~

retail I *adv.* to buy; sell ~

retail II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at, for (it ~s for fifty dollars)

retainer *n.* ["advance fee"] to pay, put down a ~

retaliate *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ against; for (the enemy ~ed against us for shelling civilian targets) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ by, with (the enemy ~d by bombarding our positions = they ~d with a bombardment of our positions)

retaliation *n.* 1. massive ~ 2. military ~ 3. ~ against; for 4. an act of ~ 5. in ~ (for)

retardant *n.* a fire; rust ~

retardation *n.* mental ~

retarded *adj.* mentally ~

retell *v.* (usu. B; occ. A) she has retold the story to us many times

reticence *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. ~ about

reticent *adj.* ~ about

retina *n.* a detached ~

retire *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to end one's working career") to ~ from (to ~ from one's job) 2. (D; intr.) ("to withdraw") to ~ to (the troops ~d to safer positions; let's ~ to the drawing room)

retirement *n.* 1. to go into ~ 2. to come out of ~ 3. compulsory, forced; early ~; semi-retirement; voluntary ~ 4. in ~ (to live in ~) 5. (misc.) to take early ~

retool *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ for wartime production) 2. (H) to ~ a plant to build prefabricated houses

retort I *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. a quick; angry; curt, sharp, stinging; witty ~ 3. a ~ to

retort II *v.* 1. to ~ angrily, heatedly; curtly; wittily 2. (L) she ~ed heatedly that she needed no favors = "I don't need any favors!" she ~ed heatedly

retraction *n.* to issue, publish a ~ (they issued a quick and unqualified ~)

retreat I *n.* ["withdrawal"] 1. to beat, carry out, make a ~ (they made good their ~; the regiment carried out its ~ in good order) 2. a disorderly, hasty, ignominious, precipitate; orderly ~ 3. full ~ (in full ~) 4. a strategic; tactical ~ 5. a ~ from ["signal for withdrawal"] 6. to sound ~ ["music for a flag-lowering ceremony"] (mil.) 7. to play, sound ~ ["secluded gathering"] 8. to go on (a) ~ 9. a meditation; religious; weekend ~ ["secluded spot"] 10. a country ~

retreat II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ before, in the face of; from; into; to (our troops ~ed from the border to safer positions; our government has ~ed from its hard-line position in the face of much public criticism; when challenged, he ~ed into silence)

retribution *n.* 1. to exact ~ from; to visit ~ on 2. divine; swift ~ 3. ~ against (~ against the invaders was swift) 4. in ~ for (he was punished in ~ for sins)

retrieval *n.* data, information ~

retrieve *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ data from a computer)

retroactive *adj.* ~ to

retrorocket *n.* to activate, fire a ~

retrospect *n.* in ~

retrospection *n.* in ~

return I *n.* ["official statement"] 1. to file a (census; tax) ~ 2. a joint ~ (see also **tax return**) ["going back, coming back"] 3. a safe ~ (home) 4. a ~ from; to (his ~ to civilian life) 5. on smb.'s ~ (on their ~ from a trip abroad) 6. the point of no ~ ["profit"] 7. to bring in, produce, yield a ~ (this investment will yield a ~ of ten percent) 8. a ~ from, on ["compensation"] 9. in ~ (to give smt. in ~) 10. in ~ for ["next post"] (BE; AE has *by return mail*) 11. by ~ (of post) (send us an answer by ~) (see also **returns**)

return II *v.* 1. (BE) (A) she ~ed my book to me; or: she ~ed me my book 2. (AE) (B) she ~ed my book to me 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ from a holiday/vacation; she ~ed to her home; to ~ books to the library)

returns *n.* ["election results"] 1. early; election; final; late ~ ["misc."] 2. many happy ~ (of the day) ("happy birthday"); the law of diminishing ~ USAGE NOTE: The formula "Many happy returns" is used in wishing people a happy birthday because it expresses the hope that they will have many more happy birthdays.

reunion *n.* 1. to hold a ~ 2. a touching ~ 3. an annual; class; family ~

reunite *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ people with their families = to ~ people and their families (with each other))

reveal *v.* 1. (B) she ~ed the secret of her illness to us 2. (L; to) she ~ed (to us) that she had been ill for years 3. (M) the document ~ed her to have been a conscientious employee 4. (Q; to) she ~ed (to us) how long she had been ill

reveille *n.* (mil.) 1. to play, sound ~ 2. to fall out for ~

revel *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in

revelation *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. an amazing, astonishing, astounding, startling, stunning, surprising ~ 3. (a) divine ~ 4. a ~ comes (the ~ came when we least expected it) 5. a ~ about 6. a ~ to (the story ¬was/came as¬ a ~ to us) 7. a ~ that + clause (the ~ that she had been in prison surprised everybody)

revenge I *n.* 1. to exact, get, have, take ~ on 2. to plot, seek; vow ~ 3. sweet ~ 4. an act of ~ 5. ~ for; on (to take ~ on smb. for smt.) 6. in ~ for (she did it in ~ for her father's murder)

revenge II *v.* (esp. BE) (d; refl.) to ~ on, upon (she avenged her father's murder by ~ging herself on his murderer)

revenue *n.* ["income"] 1. to generate, produce, raise, yield ~ 2. to collect ~ 3. government; tax ~ 4. smb.'s annual, yearly; monthly; weekly ~ 5. oil ~s 6. falling; rising ~s USAGE NOTE: The UK *Inland Revenue* (now incorporated into *HM Revenue & Customs*) corresponds to the US *Internal Revenue Service*.

reverberate *v.* (P; intr.) the cheers ~d through the arena = the arena ~d with cheers; the news ~d around the world

revere *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ smb. as a saint) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. for their saintliness)

reverence *n.* 1. to feel ~ 2. to show ~ 3. deep, profound ~ 4. ~ for (to feel ~ for smb.) 5. in ~ (to hold smb. in ~)

reverie *n.* 1. to indulge in ~s 2. to be lost, sunk in ~ 3. (misc.) to fall into a ~; to wake from a ~

reversal *n.* 1. to experience; suffer a ~ 2. a complete; minor ~ 3. a role ~ 4. a ~ in, of, on (a ~ of/in roles) 5. (misc.) a ~ of fortune (AE) = a ~ of ~s (BE)

reverse *n.* ["setback"] 1. to suffer, sustain a ~ 2. a serious; slight; tactical ~ 3. financial ~s ["reverse gear"]

4. to put a transmission/car into ~ 5. to change into, go into, shift (AE) into, throw into ~ 6. in ~ ["reversing mechanism"] 7. a/an (automatic) ribbon ~ (on a typewriter)

reversion *n.* ~ to (to undergo (a) ~ to an earlier state) (see also *reversion to type* at **type I** *n.*)

revert *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (her property ~ed to the state; to ~ to enlisted status; he reformed for a while but eventually ~ed to type)

review I *n.* ["renewed study"] 1. to do a ~ 2. a comprehensive ~ ["military ceremony"] 3. to hold a ~ (of troops) 4. to pass in ~ ["critical evaluation"] 5. to do, write a ~ (as of a book/play/concert) 6. to conduct a ~ 7. to get, receive; have a ~ 8. a complimentary, favorable, glowing, positive, rave; critical; negative, unfavorable ~ (the play got/had rave ~s from the critics = the critics gave the play rave ~s) 9. a book ~ 10. (legal) judicial ~ 11. (an) independent; peer ~ 12. a ~ concludes; shows (a comprehensive ~ of the system showed the need for its reform) 13. under ~ (the entire matter is under ~; we're keeping the matter under (constant) ~)

review II *v.* (AE) (D; intr., tr.) ("to study again") to ~ for (to ~ for an exam)

revise 1. (BE) see **review II** 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from; to 3. (misc.) to ~ downward; upward

revision *n.* ["renewed study"] (BE) 1. to do ~ (he had to do some ~ for the examination; he had some ~ to do for the examination) ["revised version"] 2. to do a ~ (we had to do a complete/major ~ of the manuscript) ["change"] 3. to make a ~ 4. to need, require; undergo (a) ~ 5. a ~ in, to (they made several ~s in/to their plans, which may still have to undergo further extensive ~(s))

revival *n.* a ~ in; of (there are signs of a ~ in/of faith healing)

revolt I *n.* 1. to foment, incite, stir up; cause, lead to, produce a ~ 2. to organize a ~ 3. to carry out a ~ 4. to crush, defeat, quash, quell, put down, stifle a ~ 5. an armed; open; peasant ~ 6. a ~ breaks out, erupts; fails; spreads; succeeds 7. a ~ against 8. in ~ (to rise in open ~ against intolerable conditions)

revolt II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ against, at (to ~ against intolerable conditions)

revolting *adj.* 1. ~ to (such obscene language is ~ to us) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to hear them use such obscene language) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that they use such obscene language)

revolution *n.* ["complete change"] 1. to foment, incite, stir up a ~ 2. to organize a ~ 3. to carry out, conduct, fight a ~ 4. to crush, defeat, put down a ~ 5. a cultural; industrial; palace; political; sexual; social ~ 6. a ~ breaks out, erupts; fails; spreads; succeeds 7. a ~ against 8. in ~ (to rise in ~ against intolerable conditions) 9. a ~ in (a ~ in hair styles) ["complete orbital turn (as of the Earth around the Sun)"] 10. to make a ~ 11. a ~ about, around, round (the Moon's rotation ~ around the Earth and the Earth's ~ around the Sun)

revolve *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, around, round (the Moon rotates ~s around the Earth and the Earth ~s around the Sun)

revolver *n.* see **pistol** 1–5, 7

revue *n.* to produce, put on, stage a ~

revulsion *n.* 1. to express; feel ~ 2. deep, utmost, utter ~ 3. a feeling of ~ 4. ~ against, at, towards 5. in ~ (we drew back in ~ at hearing them use such obscene language)

reward I *n.* 1. to offer, post; pay a ~ 2. to claim; deserve; get, receive; reap; a ~ 3. an ample, handsome; just; tangible; well-deserved ~ 4. a ~ for 5. as a ~ (she got a bonus as a ~ for her outstanding work) 6. (misc.) virtue is its own ~ (proverb)

reward II *v.* 1. to ~ amply, handsomely 2. (D; tr.) to ~ by; for; with (she was ~ed with a bonus for her outstanding work)

rewarding *adj.* 1. financially; very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (I find it very ~ to work with deprived children = I find it very ~ working with underprivileged children)

rhapsodize *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ over

rhapsody *n.* to compose; play a ~

rhetoric *n.* 1. to resort to, spout ~ 2. eloquent; impassioned, passionate; soothing ~ 3. ~ about (for all the ~ he spouts about helping underprivileged children, nothing actually gets done!)

rheumatism *n.* 1. to develop ~ 2. to suffer from ~ 3. chronic ~

rhubarb *n.* ["argument"] (slang) (AE) 1. to get into a ~ 2. a ~ about

rhyme I *n.* 1. to compose, write a ~ 2. a nursery, Mother Goose (AE) ~ 3. (poetry) a feminine; masculine ~ 4. an eye; internal ~ 5. a ~ about (a nursery ~ about three mice) 6. a ~ for (what is a ~ for *singe*?) 7. in ~ (poetry in ~) 8. (misc.) without ~ or reason ("with no apparent reason") (see also *rhyme scheme* at **scheme I** *n.*)

rhyme II *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (this word ~s with that word = this word and that word ~ (with each other); to ~ one word with another)

rhythm *n.* 1. to beat (out) a ~ 2. (a) dance; frenzied; pulsating; steady; undulating ~ 3. to a ~ (to dance to the ~ of drums) 4. a sense of ~ (see also *rhythm section* at **section**)

rib I *n.* 1. to nudge; poke smb. in the ~s (see also *a nudge in the ribs* at **nudge I** *n.*) 2. a broken, fractured; false; floating ~ 3. (misc.) to break, fracture a ~

rib II *v.* (colloq.) (D; tr.) to ~ about; for (they ~bed me about my new hair color)

ribbing *n.* ["teasing"] to get, take a ~

ribbon *n.* ["(of a typewriter)"] 1. to change a ~ 2. a typewriter ~ 3. the ~ reverses (automatically) ["misc."] 4. a blue ~ ("a first prize"); to cut to ~s ("to destroy completely")

rice *n.* 1. to mill, winnow ~ 2. brown; enriched; polished; quick-cooking; wild ~ 3. a bowl; grain of ~

rich *adj.* 1. (colloq.) filthy, stinking ~ 2. very ~ 3. ~ in (~ in coal deposits) 4. (misc.) the idle ~; to strike it ~; ~ and poor (alike); ~ beyond the dreams of avarice; gossip about the ~ and famous

riches *n.* 1. to accumulate, acquire, amass ~ 2. great, untold, vast ~

ricksha, rickshaw *n.* 1. to pedal; pull a ~ 2. to ride in a ~

ricochet *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ off

rid I *adj.* to be; get ~ of (the town has gotten ~ of its rats and is now ~ of rats = now that the rats have been gotten ~ of, the town is ~ of rats)

rid II *v.* (d; refl., tr.) to ~ of (to ~ the town of rats)

riddance *n.* ["act of getting rid of smt."] good ~! (good ~ to bad rubbish!; they're gone – and good ~, if you ask me!)

riddle I *n.* 1. to pose a ~ 2. to solve a ~ 3. a ~ to (the whole business was a ~ to me) 4. (misc.) to speak in ~s; "a ~ wrapped in a mystery inside an enigma" – Winston Churchill, 1939

riddle II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ with (the plane was ~d with anti-aircraft fire)

ride I *n.* ["short trip by vehicle, on horseback"] 1. to catch, get a ~ 2. to go for, go on, have (esp. BE), take a ~ 3. (colloq.) to bum (AE, colloq.), cadge (esp. BE, colloq.), hitch, thumb a ~ (as a hitchhiker) 4. to give (smb.) a ~ 5. to take (smb.) for a ~ 6. a bicycle; boat; bus; horse, horseback; joy; train ~ (to go on a joy ~ in a stolen car) 7. a bumpy, rough; smooth ~ 8. a ~ on (a ~ on a camel/horse) 9. a ~ into, to (a ~ into/to town) ["attraction"] (in an amusement park) 10. to go on the ~s ["misc."] 11. to take smb. for a ~ ("to victimize or cheat smb.")

ride II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ by, in, on (to ~ ¬in a car/on a bus¬) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ from; to (we ~ to work by bus) 3. (d; intr.) to be riding on ("to be wagered on") (a lot of money was ~ing on one horse) 4. (P; intr.) to ~ across town; to ~ through a forest; to ~ around the neighborhood 5. (misc.) to ~ bareback; to ~ sidesaddle; to go riding (esp. on horseback); the ship was ~ing at anchor (see also *ride roughshod over smb.* at **roughshod**)

ride back *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ from (he rode back from the procession)

ride out *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (he rode out to the procession)

rider *n.* ["amendment, addition"] to attach a ~ to (a bill)

ridicule *n.* 1. draw, incur ~ 2. to heap, pour ~ on 3. public ~ 4. an object of ~ (he became an object of ~ after his speech had drawn so much ~) 5. (misc.) to hold smb./smt. up to ~

ridiculous *adj.* 1. absolutely, completely, downright, obviously, patently, perfectly, simply, totally, truly, utterly ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ for them to keep applying for visas!) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that they keep applying for visas!) 4. (misc.) it's ~ ¬how/the way¬ they keep applying for visas!

rife *adj.* ["abounding"] 1. (cannot stand alone) ~ in; with (the city was ~ with rumors about them = rumors about them were ~ in the city) ["misc."] 2. to run ~ ("to be out of control") (rumors about them were running ~ in the city)

riffle *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ through (to ~ through the documents in the drawers)

rifle I *n.* 1. to load; reload a ~ 2. to aim, point; level a ~ 3. to fire a ~ 4. to handle, operate a ~ 5. to assemble; disassemble a ~ 6. an air; assault; automatic; high-powered; hunting; recoilless; semiautomatic ~ 7. a ~ fires, goes off; jams; misfires

rifle II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ through ("to search") (to ~ through the drawers for documents)

rift *n.* 1. to cause a ~ 2. to heal a ~ 3. an ideological ~ 4. a ~ among, between

rig *n.* ["large vehicle"] (esp. AE, Australian English) 1. to drive a ~ ["equipment"] 2. an oil-drilling ~

right I *adj.* 1. absolutely, completely, dead (colloq.), quite ~ 2. morally ~ 3. ~ about (to be ~ about smt./smb.) 4. ~ in (she was ~ in refusing) 5. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to refuse = she was ~ to refuse) 6. ~ that + clause (it's not ~ that they should be treated in that manner; it was ~ that she refused) 7. (misc.) that picture is just ~ for this room; she is the ~ person for the job = she is ~ for the job ; to be in one's ~ mind ("to be sane"); to put things ~ ("to straighten things out"); we were worried, but fortunately everything came ~ in the end; everything went all ~ at the office (see also **all right**)

right II *adv.* 1. to bear, go, turn ~ 2. ~ away; now 3. to do smt. ~ 4. (misc.) to do ~ by smb.; to see smb. ~ (I'll see you ~ if you do ~ by me); go ~ back; go ~ home after dinner; ~ in front of us; ~ on, man! (slang); ~ the way through/round/along etc. (BE; CE has: *all the way through/round/around/along* etc.)

right III *n.* ["that which is due"] 1. to assert, claim reserve a ~ (all ~s reserved) 2. to demand one's ~s 3. to achieve, gain, get a ~ (to achieve full civil ~s) 4. to enjoy, exercise, have a ~ 5. to forfeit, lose; give up, relinquish, renounce, sign away, waive a ~ 6. to defend, protect, safeguard, uphold smb.'s ~s 7. to give, grant a ~ (to) 8. to deny (smb.) a ~ 9. to violate smb.'s ~s 10. a divine; exclusive, sole; inalienable; inherent; legal; natural ~ 11. animal; civil; constitutional; political; reproductive; states'; voting ~s 12. children's; consumers'; gay; human; individual; patients'; squatters'; veterans'; women's ~s 13. film; grazing; mineral; property; publishing; translation ~s 14. conjugal; visiting, visitation ~s 15. the ~ of assembly; asylum; free speech 16. a ~ to (the ~ to privacy; the ~ to a free press; everyone has the ~ to a fair trial; the ~ to life) 17. the ~ to + inf. (the ~ to choose; the ~ to vote; the ~ to protest; you have the ~ to remain silent; we reserve the ~ to exercise our option within 90 days) 18. within one's ~s (she was within her ~s to remain silent) 19. (misc.) a bill of ~s; to read the accused her/his ~s ["right side"] 20. to keep to the ~ 21. on the ~; to the ~ ["conservative group"] 22. the extreme, far, radical ~; right-leaning ~ (a right-leaning think tank) 23. the religious ~ ["punch delivered with the right hand"] 24. to deliver, throw a ~ 25. a hard, stiff ~ 26. a ~ to (a ~ to the jaw) ["turn to the right"] 27. (colloq.) to hang (slang), make, take a ~ 28. to make a sharp ~ ["misc."] 29. in the ~ ("in accordance with the truth, accepted standards") (she was in the ~ when she refused = she was in the ~ to refuse); she has a promising career in her own ~; as of (BE), by ~ ("properly"); by ~ of conquest; ~ and wrong; by ~s ("ideally"); two wrongs do not make a ~; to know ~ from wrong; the ~s and wrongs (I'm not interested in the ~s and wrongs of the case: let's forget the whole thing!); you have every ~ to feel hard done by

right-of-way *n.* 1. to have the ~ 2. to give (esp. AE), yield the ~ 3. the ~ over (ambulances have the ~ over other vehicles)

right-winger *n.* an extreme ~

rigid *adj.* ~ about, in, on (~ on points of procedure; they are ~ in their views)

rigor mortis *n.* ~ sets in

rig out, rig up *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ smb. out as a clown) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ smb. out in a clown costume)

rile *v.* (R) it ~d me that they were paying no taxes

riled *adj.* (colloq.) ["annoyed"] 1. ~ at (I was ~ at them for paying no taxes) 2. ~ that + clause (I was ~ (up) that they were paying no taxes)

rim *n.* along; on; up to a ~ (on the ~ of a crater)

rind *n.* 1. to scrape the ~ 2. lemon; melon ~ USAGE NOTE: One usu. speaks of the *rind* of a melon, the *peel* or the *rind* of a lemon, the *peel* of an orange, and the *skin* or the *peel* of a banana.

ring I *n.* ["circular band"] 1. a diamond; gold; platinum; sapphire ~ 2. an earring; engagement; signet; wedding ~ 3. a key; napkin; teething ~ 4. a piston ~ 5. smoke ~s (to blow smoke ~s) 6. (misc.) to have, wear a ~ on one's finger ["group"] 7. a drug; smuggling; spy; vice ~ ["enclosed square area"] 8. a boxing; wrestling; prize ~ 9. to climb into, step into the ~ ["telephone call"] 10. to give smb. a ~ ["misc."] 11. to run ~s (a)round smb. ("to far outperform smb.")

ring II *n.* ["sound"] 1. a false, hollow; familiar ~ (there was a false ~ to his words) 2. (misc.) it has a nice ~ to it; her story had a ~ of truth (to it)

ring III *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for ("to call by ringing") (to ~ for the maid) 2. (s) to ~ false; hollow; true (her story rang false)

ringer *n.* (colloq.) to be a dead ~ for smb. ("to resemble smb. very closely")

ringside *n.* at ~ (the)

ring up *v.* (D; tr.) ("to record") to ~ on (she rang up a bill on a cash register = she rang a bill up on a cash register)

rink *n.* 1. an ice-hockey; ice-skating; roller-skating ~ 2. at a ~

rinse I *n.* to give smt. a ~ (I gave my hair a good ~ in the water)

rinse II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from, out of; in; with (~ the soap out of your hair; I ~d my hair in the water)

riot *n.* 1. to cause, foment, incite, instigate, spark (AE), spark off (BE), stir up, touch off a ~ 2. to crush, put down, quell a ~ 3. a communal; food; race ~ 4. a ~ breaks out, erupts, flares up 5. ~s swept the country 6. a ~ subsides 7. (misc.) to run ~ ("to act wildly")

riot act *n.* ["stern warning"] to read the ~ to smb. = to read smb. the riot act

rioting *n.* 1. to crack down on, put down, quell ~ 2. communal ~ 3. sporadic; widespread ~ 4. ~ breaks out, erupts, flares up; spreads 5. ~ ceases; dies down, subsides 6. a flare-up, outbreak of ~

rip *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to attack") (colloq.) (the politician ~ped into her opponent) 2. (misc.) an explosion ~ped through the laboratory; she ~ped her skirt on a nail = her skirt ~ped on a nail; to ~ smt. ¬to pieces/apart¬ (also fig.) (the politician ~ped her opponent apart)

ripcord *n.* to pull the ~

ripe *adj.* ~ for (~ for the picking; the time is ~ ¬for action/to act¬)

ripen *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ into (their friendship ~ed into love)

ripple *v.* (P; intr.) applause ~d through the auditorium

rise I *n.* ["origin"] 1. to give ~ to ["angry reaction"] 2. to get a ~ out of smb. ["pay increase"] (BE) 3. an across-the-board pay, wage ~ 4. a ~ in (wages) (AE has *raise*) ["increase"] 5. a sharp, steep; sudden ~ 6. a ~ in (a sudden sharp ~ in prices) 7. on the ~ (prices are on the ~) ["success"] 8. a meteoric ~ ["move upwards"] 9. a dramatic, sharp; steady; sudden ~ 10. a ~ during, throughout; from; to (a steady ~ from the bottom to the top; during Napoleon's ~ to power) 11. (misc.) *The Rise of the Dutch Republic* – J.L. Motley, 1855/6

rise II *v.* 1. ("to ascend") to ~ sharply, steeply; suddenly 2. (D; intr.) ("to ascend") to ~ above (to ~ above last year's level) 3. (D; intr.) ("to ascend") to ~ by (prices rose (by) ten percent) 4. (D; intr.) ("to revolt") to ~ against (they rose ~ against tyranny) 5. (D; intr.) ("to ascend") to ~ from, out of (smoke rose from the chimney; after many years he rose out of poverty) 6. (d; intr.) ("to be resurrected") to ~ from (to ~ from the dead; to ~ from the ashes) 7. (D; intr.) ("to ascend") to ~ into (the smoke rose into the air) 8. (D; intr.) ("to ascend") to ~ off (to ~ off the ground) 9. (D; intr.) ("to ascend") to ~ over (the sun rose over the city) 10. (D; intr.) ("to ascend") to ~ through (to ~ through the ranks) 11. (d; intr.) ("to ascend") to ~ to (to ~ to the surface; to ~ to one's feet) 12. (d; intr.) ("to be equal") to ~ to (to ~ to the challenge; can you ~

to the occasion ?) 13. (E) he rose (out of poverty) to become a member of the House of Lords 14. (misc.) he rose (in order) to greet me

riser *n.* an early ; late ~

rise up *v.* (D ; intr.) to ~ against (they rose up against tyranny)

risk I *n.* 1. to assume, incur, run, take a ~ (to run the ~ of being outvoted) 2. to face a ~ 3. to entail, involve a ~ 4. to outweigh a ~ (the advantages outweigh the ~s) 5. to minimize ; reduce a ~ 6. a grave, great, high ~ 7. a low, slight, small ~ 8. a calculated ~ (to take a calculated ~) 9. a bad, poor ; credit ; good ; health ; safety ; security ~ (she is a security ~ and is therefore considered a bad / poor credit ~ by her bank) 10. a degree ; element of ~ (there's a degree of ~ in any money-making venture) 11. a ~ of ; to (a ~ to safety ; there was a ~ of fire breaking out) 12. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ to enter that area) 13. a ~ that + clause (there was a ~ that a fire might break out) 14. at (a) ~ (at one's own ~ ; at the ~ of being ridiculed ; lives were at ~ ; esp. BE : children at ~) 15. (misc.) we diversified our investments in order to spread the ~ (see also *risk assessment* at **assessment** ; *risk factor* at **factor**)

risk II *v.* 1. (G) she ~ed losing everything 2. (K) he ~ed their turning against him 3. (misc.) it was a good deal and she decided to ~ it but he decided he couldn't ~ it

risky *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to play with fire = it's ~ playing with fire) (see also *a risky business* at **business**)

rite *n.* 1. to administer, perform a ~ 2. a pagan ; religious ; solemn ~ 3. funeral ; initiation ; marriage ~s 4. fertility ~s (see also **last rites** ; *rite of passage* at **passage**) 5. a ~ takes place (the ~s take place in the spring)

ritual *n.* 1. to go through ; perform a ~ 2. to make a ~ of smt. 3. a pagan ; religious ; solemn ~ 4. a ~ takes place (the ~s take place in the spring) 5. during, throughout ; in a ~ (silence is required throughout the ~)

rival I *n.* 1. an arch, bitter, keen ~ 2. a political ~ 3. a ~ for ; in

rival II *v.* (D ; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ smb. in skill)

rivalry *n.* 1. to stir up ~ 2. (a) bitter, deep, fierce, intense, keen, strong ~ 3. (a) friendly ~ 4. sexual ; sibling ~ 5. intercollegiate ; internecine ; interservice ~ 6. ~ among, between ; for ; in ; with (there was keen ~ between them for the award) 7. ~ to + inf. (there was keen ~ between them to win the award)

river *n.* 1. to cross ; ford a ~ 2. to dam ; drag ; dredge a ~ 3. a broad, wide ; deep ~ 4. a ~ floods ; flows (into the sea) ; meanders, winds ; narrows ; overflows (its banks) ; rises ; widens 5. the bank ; course ; mouth ; source of a ~ 6. down ~ ; up ~ 7. (misc.) ; to send up the ~ (AE ; slang) ("to send to prison") (see also *to sell smb. down the river* at **sell II**)

rivet *n.* to drive a ~ (into metal)

riveted *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ on, to (all eyes were ~ on the door / speaker ; she stood ~ to the spot)

road *n.* 1. to pave ; resurface ; surface a ~ 2. to widen a ~ 3. to block, cordon off a ~ 4. to cross a ~ 5. a macadam ; metalled (BE) ; paved, surfaced ; smooth (also fig.) ; straight ; wide ~ 6. a connecting ; main, trunk (BE) ; ring (BE) ; toll ~ 7. a service ; slip (BE) ~ 8. a back, country ; busy ; congested ; deserted, lonely ; good ; long ; minor ; mountain ; narrow ; secondary ; side ; through ; whizzy (BE ; colloq.) ; winding ~ (the sign said "No Through Road") 9. a bumpy ; dirt (AE), gravel, unpaved ; icy ; impassable ; rocky (also fig.) ; rough (also fig.) ; unmetalled (BE) ~ 10. intersecting ; merging ~s 11. the right ; wrong ~ (they took the wrong ~ ; we were on the right ~) 12. a ~ goes, leads, runs (in a certain direction) 13. a ~ curves, winds ; forks ; zigzags 14. a ~ from ; to (the ~ to town) 15. across ; along ; over a ~ 16. down ; up a ~ 17. in, on ; off a ~ (there were a lot of cars on the ~) 18. (also fig.) on the ~ (on the ~ to recovery) 19. (misc.) the bottom / end / middle / top of the ~ (also fig.) (is it the end of the ~ for heavy industry ? ; a party with moderate middle-of-the-road policies) ; to take a ~ (they took the wrong ~) ; one for the ~ ("a final drink") ; follow this ~ for two miles ; the car holds the ~ well ; a stretch of (the) ~ ; the ~ is clear (also fig.) ; some drivers hog the ~ (see also **high road**) USAGE NOTE : Between towns there are typically roads or highways rather than streets. Within towns there are both roads and streets, and both *Road* and *Street* are used in names : in London, Caversham *Road* runs parallel to Islip *Street* ; to live in (BE) / on Constantine *Road*. Both *road* and *street* can include the pedestrian walkways beside them or refer to only the part for vehicles : don't ride your bicycle on the sidewalk : ride it in the ~ ! ; walk along / up / down the ~ until you come to the corner ; a paved / gravel ~. When either *road* or *street* is possible in CE, AE may prefer *street* ; BE, *road* : go across the *street* (esp. AE) */ road* (esp. BE) and you'll see it.

road block *n.* 1. to establish, put up, set up a ~ 2. to remove a ~ 3. to break through, crash through, run a ~ 4. a police ~ 5. at ; through a ~ (we stopped at the police ~ but the other car drove right through it !)

roadhouse *n.* at a ~ (to stop at a ~ for a drink)

roadside *n.* by, on the ~

roadster *n.* (obsol.) to drive a ~

roadwork *n.* ["running"] to do ~ (the boxer did ~ every day) (see also *road works* at **works**)

roam *v.* (P ; intr.) to ~ around town

roar I *n.* 1. to give, let out a ~ 2. a deep, thunderous ~ 3. a ~ from ; of (there was a deep ~ of anger from the lion ; the crowd gave a thunderous ~ of approval)

roar II *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) to ~ at 2. (D ; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with laughter)

roast *n.* 1. to cook, do, make a ~ 2. to have a ~ (we had a ~ for dinner) 3. a chuck; eye (AE); lamb; pork; pot; rib; veal ~

rob *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ of (the bandits ~bed the passengers of their money) 2. (misc.) to ~ smb. blind

robbery *n.* 1. to commit (a) ~ 2. armed; bank; daylight (BE), highway ~ (fig.) ("overcharging") (it's highway ~ to charge that much!) 3. a ~ takes place (the police got an anonymous tip-off that the ~ would take place at night)

robed *adj.* ~ in (the judges were ~ in red = they were red-robed judges)

robot *n.* an industrial ~

rock I *n.* ["stone"] 1. to throw a ~ at (see Usage Note) 2. jagged; rugged ~s 3. falling ~s 4. solid ~ 5. (misc.) as hard/solid as a ~ USAGE NOTE: In BE, a *rock* is typically too big to be thrown. Thus, *to throw a rock at smb.* is esp. AE (CE has *to throw a stone at smb.*). However, the figurative expression *to throw rocks at smb.* ("to criticize smb.") is CE.

rock II *n.* ["type of music"] hard; punk ~; rock-and-roll, rock-'n'-roll

rock III *v.* (D; tr.) ("to lull") to ~ to (to ~ a baby to sleep)

rocket I *n.* ["device propelled by a rocket engine or explosives"] 1. to fire; launch a ~ 2. a booster; liquid-fuel; long-range; multistage; solid-fuel; space ~ 3. a ~ blasts off; goes into orbit (see also *rocket science* at **science**; *rocket ship* at **ship I** *n.*) ["reprimand"] (colloq.) (BE) 4. to give smb. a ~ 5. to get a ~ (from)

rocket II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (she ~ed to stardom)

rocks *n.* 1. on the ~ ("with ice") (scotch on the ~) 2. on the ~ ("ruined")

rod *n.* ["bar, shaft"] 1. a connecting; divining; lightning; piston ~; ramrod ["pistol"] (slang) (AE) 2. to pack ("carry") a ~ ["metal track"] 3. a curtain; traverse ~ ["pole"] 4. a fishing ~ ["misc."] 5. to ride the ~s (AE) ("to ride illegally in the framework below a railroad car")

rodent *n.* ~s gnaw

rodeo *n.* to hold, stage a ~

roe *n.* 1. to spawn ~ 2. hard; soft ~

role *n.* 1. to assume, find, get, have, take (on) a ~ ("Great Britain has lost an empire and has not yet found a ~" – Dean Acheson, 1893–1971) 2. to assign, hand out ~s 3. to do, perform, play; interpret; learn, memorize, study; understudy a ~ 4. a decisive; important; key; leading; prominent, vital ~ 5. a cameo; starring; supporting; title ~ 6. an active; passive ~ 7. a main, major; minor ~ 8. a primary; secondary ~ 9. a ~ as, of (fathers have more than just a ~ as disciplinarians = a father has more than just the ~ of disciplinarian) 10. a ~ for (is there still a ~ for fathers in the modern family?) 11. a ~ in (they played a key ~ in the uprising) 12. (misc.) to cast in the ~ of (see also *role model* at **model**)

roll I *n.* ["list of names"] 1. to call, take the ~ 2. an electoral ~; honor ~ (AE; BE has *roll of honour*) ["small cake or bread"] 3. to bake ~s 4. a bread (BE); hamburger; jelly (AE), Swiss (BE); kaiser (esp. US); poppyseed; sweet ~ 5. on a ~ (ham on a ~) 6. (misc.) ~s and butter; coffee and ~s ["act of rolling"] 7. on a ~ (from success to success) (colloq.) (with three Oscars in succession, Kylie Sweetheart seems to be on something of a ~!)

roll II *v.* 1. (A) ~ the ball to me; or: ~ me the ball 2. (C) ~ a cigarette for me; or: ~ me a cigarette 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ down (the children ~ed down the hill; we ~ed the barrels down the incline) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in the mud) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ off (the football ~ed off the field; new cars ~ed off the assembly line) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to lessen the impact by moving in the same direction") (he ~ed with the punch) 7. (P; intr., tr.) the ball ~ed across the field, through the tunnel, and out the other side; you can't expect me to just ~ over and play dead!

rollaway, rollaway bed *n.* (AE) to fold up; open up a ~

roll up *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ in (he ~ed smt. up in a blanket = he ~ed up smt. in a blanket) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ into (he ~ed up smt. into a ball = he ~ed smt. up into a ball) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to (the ball ~ed up to me) 4. to ~ tightly

romance *n.* 1. to find ~ (are we ever too old to find love and ~?) 2. a blossoming; shipboard; wartime; whirlwind ~

romanticize *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about

romp *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to deal with easily") to ~ through (she ~ed through the test) 2. (D; intr.) ("to play") to ~ with (to ~ with the children) 3. (misc.) our team ~ed home first ("our team won easily")

romp around, romp about *v.* (D; intr.) ("to play") to ~ with the children

roof *n.* 1. to install a ~ 2. a corrugated (iron); gabled; shingled; slate; thatched; tiled; tin ~ 3. a ~ leaks 4. on a ~ (*Fiddler on the Roof* – musical by Bock, Harnick, and Stein, 1964) 5. (misc.) to raise the ~ ("to complain vociferously"); to hit the ~ (colloq.) ("to lose one's temper") (mom will really hit the ~ if we get back late!); to have a ~ over one's head ("to have shelter")

room I *n.* ["(of a building)"] 1. to rent a ~ from 2. to let (BE), let out (BE), rent, rent out a ~ to 3. to book (BE), reserve a ~ 4. a back ~; bathroom; bedroom; boxroom (BE); dining; drawing, front (BE), reception (BE), sitting; family (AE); game, recreation; guest; rumpus (AE); spare; utility ~; workroom (see also *fitting room* at **fitting II**; **living room**) 5. a banquet; board; common (BE); reading ~; showroom; waiting ~ 6. a baggage (AE); lumber (BE), storage ~ 7. an adjoining ~, the next ~ 8. a changing (BE), dressing; locker ~ 9. a double; single ~ 10. (in a hospital) a delivery; emergency (AE); hospital; operating (esp. AE; BE prefers ¬*operating theatre/theatre*¬); private; recovery; semiprivate ~ 11. a ladies' (esp. AE), powder; men's (esp. AE); rest (AE) ~; (BE; euphemism) the smallest ~ (“the room with the toilet”) 12. a furnished; rented ~; (a) ~ to let (BE) 13. (misc.) a smoke-filled ~ (fig.) (the committee met in a smoke-filled ~ and decided everything secretly) [“space”] 14. to leave, make ~ for 15. to occupy, take up ~ 16. elbow ~; headroom; legroom 17. (in a theater) standing ~ only 18. ~ for (there is ~ for another bed) 19. ~ to + inf. (the children have ~ to play) [“possibility”] 20. ~ for (there is no ~ for doubt) USAGE NOTE: In the US, a *bathroom* usu. contains a toilet, sink, and bathtub or shower. In GB, it must contain a bath or shower and may have a toilet and washbasin. In CE, a *cloakroom* is a place in a public building where coats, umbrellas, etc. may be left temporarily. In GB, it can also denote a small room on the ground floor of a house near the front door; this room often contains a toilet and a place for hanging coats. *Ladies' room* and *men's room* are esp. AE. BE has *ladies'* and *gents'*.

room II *v.* (d; intr.) (“to reside”) to ~ at; with

roomer *n.* (AE) [“lodger”] to have, keep, take in ~s

room service *n.* to call, call for, get ~

rooster *n.* (esp. AE) a ~ cock-a-doodle-doos, crows, goes cock-a-doodle-doo (BE has *cock* or *cockerel*)

root I *n.* 1. to strike, take ~ (see also **cube root**; **square root**) 2. to get at, to the ~ of smt. (“to tackle smt. at the source”); (BE) ~ and branch (“wholly”); the ~ of all evil (see also **roots**)

root II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (“to support”) (AE) (to ~ for a team)

root about, root around *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (“to search for”) (to ~ in a stack of papers for a specific document)

rooted *adj.* 1. deeply ~ 2. ~ in (~ in poverty) 3. ~ to (~ to the spot)

rooter *n.* (AE) an ardent ~

roots *n.* 1. to put down ~ 2. to go back to one's ~ 3. to search for one's ~ 4. deep ~ 5. ethnic ~ 6. by the ~ (to pull smt. up by the ~) 7. (misc.) her ~ are in Canada

rope I *n.* 1. to pull; tie a ~ 2. to jump (esp. AE), skip ~ 3. to ease up on; tighten a ~ 4. a loose, slack; tight ~ 5. a coil; length; piece of ~ 6. by a ~ (to lower smt. by a ~) 7. (misc.) (boxing and fig.) on the ~s (“in a weak, vulnerable position”); at the end of one's ~ (esp. AE) (“in a desperate situation, at the end of one's tether”); to know the ~s (“to be well informed”)

rope II *v.* 1. (colloq.) (d; tr.) to ~ into (“to induce”) (to ~ smb. into doing smt.) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (the horse was ~d to a tree; the two horses were ~d to each other (“roped together”))

rosary *n.* to pray, recite, say the ~

rose *n.* 1. a long-stemmed; rambling; wild ~ 2. a bouquet of ~s 3. (misc.) a bed of ~s (“an ideal situation”) (see also *rose garden* at **garden**)

roster *n.* 1. to make up a ~ 2. a duty; personnel ~

rostrum *n.* 1. to get up on, mount the ~ 2. to stand on a ~ 3. from; on a ~

rot *n.* 1. black; creeping; dry; wet ~ 2. (misc.) to talk ~ (“to talk nonsense, rubbish”)

rotate *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ around (to ~ around an axle) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on (the earth ~s on its axis)

rotation *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. crop ~ 3. a ~ around (a wheel's ~ around an axle) 4. a ~ on (the earth's ~ on its axis) 5. in ~ (the leaders serve in strict ~)

rote *n.* [“repetition”] by ~ (to learn by ~)

rotten *adj.* 1. (colloq.) to feel ~ about smt. 2. (colloq.) ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to have done that) 3. (misc.) ~ to the core

rouge *n.* 1. to apply, put on; use ~ 2. to remove ~

rough *adj.* (colloq.) [“not gentle”] 1. ~ on, with (you've been pretty ~ on the children) [“difficult”] 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to work at night = it's ~ working at night) 3. (misc.) it was ~ on her, losing her job like that (see also *sleep rough* at **sleep II** *v.*)

roughshod *adv.* to ride, run ~ over smb. (“to treat smb. in an inconsiderate manner”)

roulette *n.* 1. to play ~ 2. Russian ~

round I *adv.*, *prep.* ~ about (~ about midnight)

round II *n.* [“unit of ammunition”] 1. to fire a ~; to get a ~ off 2. a blank; incoming; live ~ (of gunfire) 3. the ~ jammed [“drinks served to everyone in a group”] 4. to buy; order a ~ (of drinks) (it's my ~ now: let me buy this ~!) [“complete game”] 5. to play, shoot a ~ (of golf) [“song sung in unison in which each part is repeated”] 6. to sing a ~ [“part of a boxing match”] 7. in a ~ (the challenger was knocked out in the seventh ~) (see also **rounds**; **ward round**)

roundabout *n.* 1. to ride (on) a ~ 2. to get on a ~ 3. to get off a ~ (BE; CE has *merry-go-round*)

roundhouse *n.* [“type of blow”] to throw a ~

rounds *n.* 1. to do, go on, make one's ~ (the doctor was making her ~) 2. on one's ~ (the doctor was on ~ (AE) = the doctor was on her ~ (BE)) 3. (misc.) “And Priests in black gowns, were walking their ~” – William Blake, *Songs of Experience*, 1794

roundup *n.* a police ~ (of all suspects)

rouse *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from, out of (to ~ smb. out of bed) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smb. to action)

rouser *n.* a rabble ~

roust *v.* (esp. AE) to ~ smb. out of bed

rout I *n.* 1. a complete, total, utter ~ 2. (misc.) to put the enemy to ~; the retreat turned into a total ~

rout II *v.* 1. to ~ completely, utterly 2. to ~ smb. out of bed

route I *n.* 1. to map out, plan a ~ 2. to follow, take a ~ 3. to introduce a ~ 4. to discontinue a ~ 5. an alternate (AE), alternative; circuitous; direct; devious; indirect; roundabout ~ 6. an escape ~ 7. a scenic ~ (to take the scenic ~) 8. a bus; newspaper; streetcar (AE), tram (BE); truck (esp. AE) ~ 9. an air; overland; sea; trade ~ 10. a ~ between; from; to 11. along a ~ (along the sea ~ from Venice to Constantinople) 12. a ~ through (a sea ~ through the Bosphorus) (see also **en route**)

route II *v.* (P; tr.) they ~d the shipment around the war zone; to ~ a memorandum to the appropriate people

routine *n.* 1. to change; vary; establish; get stuck in, settle into a ~ 2. (a) daily, ordinary; domestic; dull ~ 3. a dance ~

rove *v.* (P; intr.) they ~d around the lobby; we ~d through the mall (see also *roving reporter* at **reporter**)

row I /rou/ *n.* ["arrangement in a straight line"] 1. an even, straight ~ 2. a back; front ~ 3. in a ~ 4. (misc.) the third year in a ~; ~s and ~s (there were ~s and ~s of corn in the field) = ~ on/upon ~ (there was ~ upon ~ of corn in the field; "In Flanders fields the poppies blow Between the crosses, ~ on ~" – John McRae, "In Flanders Fields," 1915) ["misc."] 5. death ~ ("cell block where prisoners await execution") (on death ~); skid ~ (AE) ("area in a city where destitute people congregate") (on skid ~); her hair was (arranged) in cornrows

row II *n.* 1. to go for a ~, have a ~ 2. a ~ across (let's go for a ~ across the lake) 3. a ~ on (let's go for a ~ on the lake)

row III *v.* 1. (P; intr., tr.) we ~ed across the lake; we ~ed on the lake 2. (misc.) to go ~ing (let's go ~ing on the lake)

row IV /rau/ *n.* 1. to kick up, make, raise a ~ 2. to have a ~ 3. an awful ~ 4. a ~ about, over; with (to have a ~ with smb. about a trifle)

row V *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, over; with

rowboat *n.* (AE) to row a ~

row down *v.* (d; intr., tr.) (they ~ed us down to the bridge)

rowing *n.* 1. to go ~ 2. to go in for ~

rowing-boat (BE) see **rowboat**

row out *v.* (d; intr., tr.) to ~ to (they ~ed us out to an island)

royalty *n.* ["percentage of revenue"] 1. to pay a ~/~ties on (the publisher paid them ~ties on their dictionaries) 2. to bring in, earn ~ties (the book brings in handsome ~ties) 3. to earn, get, receive ~ties (the author received ~ties on her book) 4. author's ~ties 5. from ~ties 6. in ~ties (the author earned a lot in ~ties from her book)

rub *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ against; with (one part was ~bing against the other; ~ your hand against this surface; ~ wet dishes with a dishcloth) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ into, on (to ~ lotion into one's skin) 3. (N; used with an adjective) ~ wet dishes dry with a dishcloth

rubber *n.* 1. crude; foam; sponge; synthetic ~ 2. ~ stretches (see the Usage Note for **eraser**)

rubbers *n.* (AE) ["rubber overshoes"] 1. to put on; wear ~ 2. a pair of ~

rubbish *n.* 1. (esp. BE) to collect; put out the ~ 2. (esp. BE) household ~ (AE usu. has *garbage*, *trash*) 3. an accumulation, heap, pile of ~ 4. (misc.) (CE) to talk (utter) ~ (about)

rubble *n.* 1. a heap, pile of ~ 2. (misc.) to reduce smt. to ~

rubdown *n.* to give smb. a ~

Rubicon *n.* to cross the ~ ("to commit oneself irrevocably")

rub off *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ on, onto (the paint ~bed off on my shirt) 2. (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ on, onto ("to affect") (we hoped that some of these cultural activities would ~ on our children)

rub up *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against ("to touch") (don't let the wire ~ against the pipe) 2. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ against ("to have contact with") (she used to ~ against many famous movie stars) 3. (misc.) to ~ the wrong way (they never got on because they kept ~bing each other up the wrong way) (BE; esp. AE is *to rub the wrong way*)

ruck *n.* (esp. BE) ["mass of undistinguished people"] 1. the common ~ 2. above; out of the ~

ruckus *n.* (esp. AE) to cause, create, kick up, make, raise, stir up a ~

ructions *n.* (BE) to cause, create ~

rude *adj.* 1. ~ about 2. ~ of (that was ~ of him) 3. ~ to 4. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to talk during the concert = he was ~ to talk during the concert)

rudeness *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. ~ to

rug *n.* 1. to braid; weave a ~ 2. to clean; shampoo; vacuum a ~ 3. a scatter, throw (AE) ~ 4. a hooked; oriental; Persian; rag ~ 5. a prayer ~ (see also *to sweep under the rug* at **sweep**)

rugby *n.* 1. to play ~ 2. the game of ~ 3. (misc.) a ~ ball; field (AE), pitch (BE); game, match; international; player

ruin I *n.* 1. to cause, spell ~ 2. to face; fall into ~ 3. complete, utter ~ 4. financial ~ (to face financial ~) 5. (misc.) on the brink of ~; on the road to ~; the credit crunch threatened the economic system with complete financial ~; alcohol proved (to be) his ~ (see also **ruins**)

ruin II *v.* to ~ completely, utterly (the credit crunch threatened to ~ the financial system completely)

ruins *n.* 1. ancient; charred, smoking ~ 2. a heap, pile of ~ 3. (misc.) to sift through the ~; to lie in ~ (to sift through the smoking ~ of the bombed building)

rule I *n.* ["regulation"] ["principle"] 1. to establish, lay down, make (the) ~s 2. to formulate, set down a ~ 3. to adopt a ~ 4. to apply, enforce a ~ 5. to bend, relax, stretch; waive a ~ 6. to rescind, revoke a ~ 7. to abide by, comply with, obey, observe a ~ 8. to break, violate a ~ 9. a binding; cardinal; firm, hard-and-fast, inflexible, ironclad, strict ~ 10. an unwritten ~ 11. a general; ground ~ 12. an exclusionary (AE); gag; parliamentary ~ 13. (ling.) a deletion; grammatical; rewrite; substitution ~ 14. a ~ against (a ~ against smoking at staff conferences) 15. a ~ for (is there one ~ for the rich and another ~ for the poor?) 16. a ~ to + inf. (it's their ~ not to smoke at staff conferences) 17. a ~ that + clause (they established a ~ that no one was to smoke at staff conferences) 18. (to be) against, in violation of the ~s 19. (misc.) a set of ~s that permit some things and forbid others; the golden ~; a ~ of thumb; as a (general) ~ ("generally"); the ~ of law (see also **ground rules**) ["government, reign"] 20. to establish; extend one's ~ 21. to overthrow smb.'s ~ 22. authoritarian; benevolent; despotic; harsh ~ 23. civilian; military; mob; popular ~ (to re-establish civilian rule after a military dictatorship) 24. majority; minority ~ 25. colonial; foreign; home ~ 26. ~ over 27. under smb.'s ~ (under foreign ~) (see also **slide rule**)

rule II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against (the judge ~d against the plaintiff) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in favor of (the judge ~d in favor of the defendant) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a question) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ over (to ~ over a country) 5. (L; can be subj.) the court ~d that the witness ¬be/should be¬ disqualified; they ~d that he was incompetent to stand trial 6. (M) the judge ~d him to be incompetent to stand trial 7. (N; used with an adjective) the judge ~d him incompetent to stand trial 8. (misc.) the judge ~d him out of order

rule out *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ as (the police can't ~ her out completely as a suspect in the case)

ruler *n.* ["person who rules"] 1. to put a ~ into power 2. to overthrow, unseat a ~ 3. an absolute, authoritarian, despotic, dictatorial, tyrannical; strong; weak ~ 4. a colonial; military ~ 5. (misc.) a tyrannical ~ who came to power but was unseated by those who had put him into power

ruling *n.* 1. to give, hand down (AE), make a ~ (the court handed down a ~) 2. a fair, just ~ 3. an unfair, unjust ~ 4. a court; official ~ 5. a ~ about, on (the court handed down a ~ on the company's violation of the law) 6. a ~ that + clause (the court handed down a ~ that the company had violated the law)

rumblings *n.* ["rumors"] ~ about; of (~ of discontent were heard)

ruminate *v.* (D; intr.) ("to reflect") to ~ about, on, over

rummage *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (he was ~ging in his pockets for change) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ through (to ~ through old clothes/crowded drawers; he was ~ging through his pockets for change)

rumor, rumour *n.* 1. to circulate, spread a ~ 2. to confirm; trace, track down a ~ 3. to deny; dispel, put paid to (BE), quash, scotch, silence, spike, squash a ~ 4. a malicious; persistent; vicious; widespread; wild ~ 5. a baseless, unconfirmed, unfounded; idle, vague ~ 6. ~s circulate, fly, go around, spread 7. a ~ that + clause (have you heard the ~ that he intends to resign?) 8. a ~ about (have you heard the ~(s) about his intention to resign?) 9. amid ~s (he resigned amid ~s that he was guilty) 10. (misc.) ~ has it/~s are rife that he intends to resign

rumored *adj.* (cannot stand alone) 1. ~ to + inf. (he is ~ to be intending to resign) 2. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that he intends to resign)

rumpus *n.* (colloq.) to cause, create, kick up, make, raise, stir up a ~

run I *n.* ["course"] 1. a ski ~ ["freedom of movement"] 2. to have the ~ of the house ["race"] 3. a cross-country ~; a fun ~; a sponsored ~; the mile ~ ["series of demands"] 4. a ~ on a bank; a ~ on the dollar ["running away"] 5. on the ~ (escaped criminals on the ~ from the police) 6. (misc.) to make a ~ for it ("to flee") ["trial, experiment"] 7. a dry, dummy (BE), trial ~ (to do/have a trial ~ = to give smt. a trial ~) ["flight"] 8. to make a ~ (over a target) 9. a bombing ~ ["point scored"] (baseball, cricket) 10. to score a ~ 11. (baseball) a home ~ ["unraveled stitches in a stocking"] (AE also has *runner*; BE often has *ladder*) 12. to get, have a ~ (in a stocking) ["duration"] 13. in the long; short ~ (see also **long run**; **short run**) ["period of activity"] 14. to have a ~ (we've had a ~ of bad luck recently) 15. a brief, short; long; record ~ (the play had a record ~ on Broadway) ["act of running"] 16. to go for, have a ~ (let's go for a short run in the park) 17. to go on, take part in (let's go on a sponsored ~ for charity) 18. to break into a ~ (when I saw they were following me I broke into a ~ to escape them) ["misc."] 19. an event quite different from the general ~ of things

run II *v.* 1. (C) ("to fill") ~ a bath for me; or ~ me a bath 2. (d; intr.) to ~ across ("to meet by chance") (to ~ across an old friend) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ after ("to chase") (to ~ after a bus) (also fig.) (she ran after him but he refused to date her) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ against ("to oppose") (I would not like to ~ against her in the senatorial race; popular feeling was ~ning against the president; in 2008 Obama and McCain ran against each other for President of the USA) 5. (d; intr.) ("to ply") to ~ between (this train ~s regularly between New York and Philadelphia) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ down ("to descend quickly"); ("to pour") (to ~ down the stairs; tears ran down her face) 7. (esp. AE) (D; intr., tr.) ("to be or make a candidate") to ~ for (to ~ for office; to ~ for Congress; to ~ a candidate for Congress/office) (BE has *stand* intr.) 8. (d; intr.) ("to extend") ("to ply") to ~ from; to (the sale will ~ from the first of the month to the tenth; the fence ~s from the house to the road; this train ~s regularly from New York to Philadelphia and back (again)) 9. (d; intr.) to ~ in ("to be present") (ability in languages ~s in their blood; talent ~s in the family) 10. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to meet") (to ~ into an old friend; to ~ into trouble) 11. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to hit") (¬he/the car¬ ran into a pole) 12. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to enter quickly") (to ~ into the house) 13. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to amount to") (the expenses will ~ into thousands of dollars) 14. (d; intr.) ("to move quickly") to ~ off (the car ran off the road) 15. (d; tr.) ("to force") to ~ off (she ran the other car off the road) 16. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ on ("to operate") (the engine ~s on diesel oil; they ran the business on borrowed money) 17. (d; intr.) to ~ out of ("to use up") (she ran out of money) 18. (d; intr.) to ~ out of ("to leave quickly") (to ~ out of the room) 19. (d; intr.) to ~ over ("to crush") (the car ran over an animal, then backed up and ran over it again = the car ran over an animal, then backed up and ran it over again) 20. (d; intr.) ("to pass") to ~ through (a blue thread ~s through the cloth; a strange thought ran through her mind) 21. (d; intr.) to ~ through ("to examine") (~ through the material again) 22. (d; tr.) to ~ through ("to process") (~ the data through the computer again) 23. (d; intr.) ("to go quickly") to ~ to (she ran to the doctor) 24. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to seek help from") (he keeps ~ning to his mother (over every little thing); don't ~ to the police (with unfounded suspicions)) 25. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to amount") (the dictionary ~s to a thousand pages; the expenses will ~ to thousands of dollars) 26. (d; tr.) ("to drive") to ~ to (I'll ~ you to the station) 27. (d; intr.) to ~ up ("to ascend quickly") (to ~ up the stairs) 28. (P; intr., tr.) ("to go") ("to move") ("to move quickly") the road ~s south; to ~ across the street; to ~ for the doctor; the children ran through the park; the smugglers are ~ning guns across the border 29. (s) supplies are ~ning low; the differences ~ deep 30. (misc.) Romeo ran through Tybalt with his sword = Romeo ran Tybalt through with his sword; the wastrel ran through the family fortune quickly and was left destitute; the trains are ~ning behind schedule; the trains are running late; do the trains ever ~ on time?; she ran her hand through her hair; we are ~ning short of coffee and may soon ~ out (of it) completely; things are ~ning smoothly; to ~ against the clock (esp. AE) ("to time one's performance"); a fast runner ~s fast; to ~ fast ("to be ahead of schedule"); to ~ slow ("to be behind schedule"); to ~ smb. out of town ("to expel smb. from a town"); to ~ rampant/riot ("to run wild"); (colloq.) ~ that by me again ("repeat that for me"); to go ~nning (let's go ~nning in the park)

run afoul *v.* (AE) (d; intr.) to ~ of (to ~ of the law)

run aground *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (the boat ran aground on a sandbank)

runaround *n.* (colloq.) ["delaying action"] to give smb. the ~

run around *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (he ~s around with a fast crowd)

run away *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from home) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (she ran away to California) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (he ran away with his firm's money and with his boss's wife)

run back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (she ran back to her room)

run counter *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (their actions ~ to their promises)

rundown *n.* ["summary"] 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to get a ~ 3. a ~ on

run down *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to go") to ~ to (to ~ to the grocery store) 2. (D; intr.) ("to descend quickly") to ~ to (to ~ to the bottom of the hill; she ran down to her basement room) 3. (misc.) she ran down from her attic room

run foul *v.* see **run afoul**

rung *n.* on the bottom, lowest; highest, top ~ (of a ladder)

run-in *n.* ["clash"] to have a ~ with smb.

run low *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on fuel)

runner *n.* ["one who runs"] 1. a distance, long-distance; fast ~ (a fast ~ runs fast) ["unraveled stitches in a stocking"] (AE) 2. see **run I** *n.* 12

runner-up *n.* a ~ to

running *n.* ["competition"] 1. in the ~ 2. out of the ~ ["racing"] 3. cross-country ~

run off *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ to (she ran off to California) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (he ran off with his firm's money and with his boss's wife)

run out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into the street) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to abandon") (he ran out on his family)

run over *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (she ran over to her friend's place; I'll ~ you over to the station)

run short *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ of (they never ~ of money)

run-up *n.* (BE) ["preparatory period"] a ~ to (during/in the ~ to the election)

run up *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against ("to encounter") (to ~ against strong competition; to ~ against difficulties) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to ("to approach quickly") (she ran up to me) 3. (D; intr.) ("to ascend quickly") (she ran up to her attic room)

runway *n.* 1. to clear a ~ (for an emergency landing) 2. to overshoot a ~ 3. on a ~ (the plane was still on the ~)

ruse *n.* 1. a clever, successful; subtle; unsuccessful ~ 2. a ~ fails; succeeds 3. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ to get their money)

rush I *n.* 1. to make a ~ (to make a ~ for the door) (see also **bum's rush**) 2. to beat the ~ (let's leave early and beat the ~) 3. a gold ~ 4. a headlong; mad; sudden ~ 5. a ~ for (there was a sudden ~ for tickets to the concert) 6. a ~ to + inf. (there was a sudden ~ to buy tickets for the concert) 7. in a ~ (everyone was in a ~ to buy tickets for the concert) 8. (misc.) I felt a ~ of dizziness after I drank the punch; a ~ to judgment

rush II *v.* 1. to ~ headlong, pell-mell 2. (d; intr.) to ~ at ("to attack") 3. (D; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ headlong into a business deal) 4. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the office; to ~ to smb.'s assistance; to ~ smb. to the hospital) 5. (P; intr., tr.) they were ~ing across the street; they ~ed over to the other side of the street; I had to ~ home; she ~ed down/up to her room 6. (misc.) she ~ed (in order) to catch the train

rush around *v.* (P; intr.) they are always ~ing around from one place to another

rush away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (we had to ~ (home) from the party)

rush off *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ to (they ~ed off to the theater; she ~ed off to her room) 2. (E) she ~ed off (in order) to catch the train

rut *n.* ["groove, furrow"] 1. a deep ~ (in a road) ["dreary routine"] 2. to get into a ~ 3. in a ~ 4. out of a ~ (she got into a ~ at work, felt she had been in a ~ long enough, and got out of her ~ by changing jobs)

ruthless *adj.* ~ in (he is ~ in his methods)

rye *n.* 1. winter ~ 2. a sheaf of ~ 3. (misc.) a ham sandwich on ~ (bread)

S

sabbath *n.* 1. to keep, observe the ~ 2. to break, desecrate, violate the ~ 3. on the ~

sabbatical *n.* 1. to give, grant a ~ 2. to get; have; take a ~ 3. (to be, go) on (a) ~ (she was on (a) ~)

saber, sabre *n.* 1. to draw one's ~ 2. to brandish a ~ 3. (misc.) saber-rattling ("threatening to wage war")

sabotage *n.* 1. to commit ~ 2. an act of ~

sack *n.* ["bag"] 1. a mail ~ 2. a ~ bursts; contains, holds ["sackful"] 3. a ~ of (bought a ~ of potatoes) ["bed"] (colloq.) (AE) 4. to hit the ~ ("to go to bed") ["dismissal"] (colloq.) 5. to get the ~ 6. to give smb. the ~

sackcloth *n.* in ~ and ashes ("in deep repentance")

sacrament *n.* 1. to administer a ~ 2. to receive a ~

sacred *adj.* ~ to (the shrines were ~ to them)

sacrifice I *n.* 1. to make; offer a ~ 2. to entail a ~ 3. a great; heroic; personal ~ 4. a human ~ 5. the supreme, ultimate ~ ("death") 6. a ~ for (our heroic soldiers who made the supreme ~ for their country) 7. the ~ of (we offered the ~ of a goat to our God) 8. a ~ to 9. as a ~ (we offered a goat as a ~ to our God) 10. at (a) ~ (they achieved success at great personal ~)

sacrifice II *v.* 1. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ oneself for a just cause) 2. (D; intr., refl., tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a goat to our God)

sacrilege *n.* 1. to commit (a) ~ 2. (a) ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to speak like that)

sacrilegious *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to speak like that)

sad *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ about, at (we felt ~ about being alone) 3. ~ to + inf. (we felt ~ to be alone; she'll be ~ to leave here) 4. ~ that + clause (we felt ~ that we were alone) (see also *sad to relate* at **relate**; **sad sack**; *sad to say* at **say**)

sadden *v.* (R) it ~ed us to be alone; it ~ed us that we were alone

saddened *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (we were ~ to be alone) 2. ~ that + clause (we were ~ that we were alone)

saddle I *n.* 1. to put a ~ on (an animal such as a horse) 2. an English; stock, western ~ 3. in the ~ (also fig.) (after a few nervous moments, the President is back in the ~ again!) (see also **saddle sore**)

saddle II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (they ~d (up) a gentle pony for the child) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smb. with an unpleasant task)

saddle sore *n.* to develop ~s

sadism *n.* to display ~

sadness *n.* 1. to experience, feel; express ~ 2. deep, profound ~ 3. a feeling; pang, touch of ~ (we felt a pang of ~ at being alone = we experienced a feeling of ~ at being alone) 4. ~ about, at, over; of (we felt deep ~ at being alone; we felt the deep ~ of being alone) 5. ~ that + clause (we felt deep ~ that we were alone)

sad sack *n.* (slang) (AE) ["inept person"] a hopeless ~

safari *n.* 1. to organize a ~ 2. to go on (a) ~ 3. a ~ to

safe I *adj.* 1. absolutely, completely, very ~ 2. ~ for (it is ~ for children) 3. ~ from (~ from attack) 4. ~ to + inf. (it is not ~ to drive without putting on seat belts; it's ~ to say that their party will win) 5. (misc.) better ~ than sorry ("prevention is better than cure"); ~ and sound

safe II *n.* 1. to open; unlock a ~ 2. to close; lock a ~ 3. to break open, crack a ~ 4. a wall ~

safe-conduct *n.* to issue a ~

safeguard I *n.* 1. an adequate; built-in ~ 2. a ~ against (here's our latest built-in ~ against theft)

safeguard II *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ against, from (to ~ one's property from theft)

safe-keeping *n.* in ~

safety *n.* ["security"] 1. to assure, ensure, guarantee smb.'s ~ 2. to jeopardize smb.'s ~ 3. air; industrial; public ~ 4. for ~ (fasten your seat belt for your own ~) 5. in ~ (to live in ~) 6. (misc.) a margin of ~; there is ~ in numbers; ~ first!; for safety's sake (for safety's sake, fasten your seat belt) ["device that prevents accidental discharge of a firearm"] 7. to set the ~ 8. to release the ~ (see also *safety catch* at **catch I** *n.*)

safety factor *n.* a built-in ~

sag *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to one side) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ against; under (the fat man ~ged against the door and the floor ~ged under the weight of him)

saga *n.* a ~ about, of

sagacity *n.* the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to diversify her investments)

said *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to be very wise) 2. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that she is very wise) (see also **say**)

sail I *n.* 1. to hoist, raise the ~s 2. to let out the ~s 3. to furl, take in a ~; to reduce; slacken ~ 4. to trim ("adjust") the ~s 5. to lower, strike the ~s 6. (misc.) to set ~ for; from ("to leave for by ship, boat"); to go for a ~

sail II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ along (to ~ along the coast) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ around, round (to ~ around the world) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ down (to ~ down a river) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for Europe) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ from New York to Liverpool) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ into (the ship ~ed into port) 7. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to attack") (the opposing candidates ~ed into each other) 8. (d; intr.) to ~ through (to ~ through the straits) 9. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ through ("to cope with easily") (she just ~ed through her finals!) 10. (d; intr.) to ~ up (to ~ up a river) 11. (P; intr.) to ~ across the ocean; to ~ towards the coast; to ~ east 12. (misc.) to go ~ing

sailing *n.* plain, plane, smooth ~ ("unimpeded progress")

saint *n.* a patron ~ (see also *the patience of a saint* at **patience**)

sake *n.* 1. for smb.'s ~ (do it for my ~) 2. for old times' ~ 3. for the ~ of (for the ~ of argument) 4. for pity's ~ 5. for argument's ~ 6. (misc.) it's worth doing for its own ~ ; for God's / Christ's / goodness' / heaven's / Pete's / pity's ~ (used as expressions of exasperation or urgency) (for heaven's ~, could / will you hurry up ?!) (see also **sakes**)

sakes *n.* (AE) (colloq.) ["sake"] for God / Christ / goodness / heaven ~ ("for God's / Christ's / Pete's / goodness' / heaven's / pity's sake") (for heaven ~, could / will you hurry up ?!)

salad *n.* 1. to make, prepare ; toss a ~ 2. to garnish ; season a ~ 3. a chicken ; egg ; fruit ; green ; ham ; mixed ; pasta ; potato ; salmon ; seafood ; tuna(fish) ; tomato ; tossed ~ (an egg-salad sandwich) 4. a side ~ (the main course comes with vegetables and a side ~) 5. a bowl ; helping, serving of ~ (see also *salad bar* at **bar I** *n.*)

salary *n.* 1. to pay a ~ 2. to command, draw, get, receive ; earn a ~ 3. (colloq.) to pull down (AE), pull in (BE) a ~ 4. to boost, increase, raise ~ries 5. to cut, reduce, slash ~ries ; to freeze ~s 6. to attach, garnishee smb.'s ~ 7. to withhold smb.'s ~ 8. an annual, yearly ; monthly ; weekly ~ 9. a fixed ; full ~ 10. a big, handsome, high ; decent, good ; final ; low, meager, poor ; small ; modest ; starting ~ 11. at a ~ (she was employed at a starting ~ of £50 a week) 12. on a ~ (can anyone survive on a ~ of £25 a week ?) 13. (misc.) the union successfully negotiated (for) a higher ~ ; a four-figure ~ ("in the thousands") ; a five-figure ~ ("in the tens of thousands")

sale *n.* ["selling"] 1. to make a ~ 2. a cash ~ 3. for, on ~ ("being sold") (house for ~ ; the book will be on ~ next month) 4. to put smt. up for ~ 5. a ~ falls through ; goes ahead, goes through (we had high hopes that the ~ would go ahead but our hopes were dashed when it fell through at the last moment) ["selling at reduced prices"] 6. to conduct, have, hold, run (colloq.) a ~ 7. an annual ; boot, car-boot (BE) ; clearance ; closeout ; fire ; garage (AE), yard (AE) ; going-out-of-business ; jumble (BE), rummage (AE) ; storewide ; warehouse ~ 8. on ~ (AE) = at, in a ~ (BE) ("being sold at a reduced price") (see also **sales**)

sales *n.* 1. to boost ~ 2. brisk ~ 3. gross ; high-street (BE) ; net ; retail ~ 4. ~ drop off, slump ; level off ; peak ; pick up 5. a decline, dip, fall ; increase, rise in ~ 6. the level ; volume of ~ (there's been a decline in the volume of high-street ~, but we hope they'll pick up later in the year) 7. (misc.) all ~ are final

salesman, salesperson, saleswoman *n.* 1. a door-to-door ~ 2. a traveling ~ (BE also has *commercial traveller*)

salesmanship *n.* aggressive, high-pressure ~

salient *n.* (mil.) 1. to form a ~ 2. a ~ juts out (into enemy lines)

saliva *n.* 1. to dribble, drool ~ 2. ~ dribbles, drools 3. a dribble, drool of ~

sally *n.* ["sortie"] 1. to make a ~ against ["trip"] 2. a ~ into (a ~ into strange territory)

salmon *n.* 1. canned (AE), tinned (BE) ; fresh ; pink ; red ; smoked ; wild ~ 2. ~ spawn 3. a can (AE), tin (BE) of ~

salon *n.* a beauty ; hair ; literary ~

salt *n.* 1. to pour ~ (pour the ~ into the saltshaker ; pour some ~ on the icy driveway) 2. to put, sprinkle ~ in, on (sprinkle some ~ on the meat ; put some ~ in the soup) 3. common, table ; fine ; garlic ; mineral ; onion ; rock ; sea ~ 4. a dash, pinch ; grain of ~ 5. a spoonful of ~ 6. (misc.) ~ and pepper ; to take smt. with a grain / pinch of ~ ("to regard smt. with skepticism") ; the ~ of the earth ("the very best") ; to be worth one's ~ ("to be worthy of respect") (see also *saltcellar* at **cellar** ; *saltshaker* at **shaker** ; **salts**)

salts *n.* bath ; smelling ~

salute I *n.* 1. to fire ; give a ~ (the president was given a 21-gun ~) 2. to return ; take a ~ 3. a smart, snappy ~ 4. a military ; naval ; 19-gun ; rifle ; royal ; 21-gun ~ 5. a ~ to 6. in ~ (to) (in ~ to our fighting forces we will play a march)

salute II *v.* 1. to ~ smartly (the soldier ~d smartly) 2. (D ; tr.) to ~ for, on (I ~ you for your magnificent achievement)

salvage *v.* (D ; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ records from a fire)

salvation *n.* 1. to bring ; preach ~ 2. to attain, find ; seek ~ 3. ~ from 4. ~ by, through (preaching ~ from sin through faith)

salve *n.* 1. to apply, rub in, rub on (a) ~ 2. a ~ for ; to (it was a ~ to my wounded feelings)

salvo *n.* 1. to fire a ~ 2. an opening ~

Samaritan *n.* a good ~ ("a person who helps those in need")

same *pron.*, *adj.*, *adv.* it's all the ~ to me ("it makes no difference to me") ; go or stay : it's all the ~ to me ! = it's all the ~ to me whether you go or stay ! ; we tried our best but we failed all / just the ~ ("but we failed nevertheless") ; a puma and a cougar are one and the ~ animal = a puma and a cougar are exactly the ~ animal = a puma and a cougar are the exact ~ animal (colloq.) = a puma is the ~ animal as a cougar ; that puma is the ~ one (that) I saw yesterday – at least it looks the ~ as the one (that) I saw yesterday ! ; that puma is the ~ in size as the one I saw yesterday = that puma is the ~ size as the one I saw yesterday = that's the same-size puma (that / as) I saw yesterday – at least it looks exactly the ~ size as the one I saw yesterday !

sample *n.* ["representative item"] 1. to distribute, hand out (free) ~s 2. (med.) to give, leave, provide a ~ 3. (med.) to analyze ; collect, take a ~ 4. (med.) a blood ; urine ~ (we'd like to take a blood ~ from you that we'll analyze later) 5. a floor; free ~ ["selected segment"] (statistics) 6. to select, take a ~ 7. a random; representative ~

sampler *n.* ["needlework"] to work a ~

sampling *n.* (a) random ~

sanction I *n.* ["approval"] 1. to give ~ to (no one gave ~ to his smoking marijuana) 2. to receive ~ 3. legal ~ (see also **sanctions**)

sanction II *v.* 1. to ~ officially; tacitly 2. (K) no one ~ed his smoking marijuana

sanctions *n.* ["coercive measures"] 1. to apply, impose ~ 2. to clamp ~ on 3. to lift ~ 4. economic, trade; military ~ 5. ~ against, on; for (the U.N. imposed economic ~ against/on the dictatorship for violating human rights)

sanctuary *n.* 1. to give, grant, offer, provide (a) ~ 2. to ask for, request, seek; find, receive ~ 3. to deny, refuse smb. ~ 4. a bird; wildlife ~ 5. (a) ~ for 6. (a) ~ from (they sought a ~ from persecution for themselves and their children)

sanctum *n.* an inner ~

sand *n.* 1. to scatter, spread, sprinkle, strew ~ 2. coarse; fine ~ 3. a grain of ~ 4. a pile of ~ (see also *sandbox* at **box I** *n.*; *sand dune* at **dune**; *sandpit* at **pit I** *n.*)

sandals *n.* 1. beach ~ 2. a pair of ~

sandwich I *n.* 1. to fix (esp. AE), make, prepare a ~ from, of, out of, with (to make a ~ out of leftovers with a lot in it) 2. to make smt. into a ~ (to make leftovers into a ~) 3. to eat, grab, have a ~ (there's just time to grab a quick ~ before the meeting) 4. a cheese; club (AE); corned-beef; doorstep (BE); double-decker; grilled-cheese (AE), toasted-cheese (BE); ham; open, open-face; tomato-and-lettuce, lettuce-and-tomato; tuna ~

sandwich II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ (in) between (to ~ (in) a meeting between a staff conference and lunch)

sanitation *n.* environmental ~

sanity *n.* 1. to keep, maintain, preserve, retain one's ~ 2. to lose one's ~

sarcasm *n.* 1. biting, devastating, keen, piercing, scathing, withering; mild; (thinly) veiled ~ 2. an edge, hint of ~ (there was a hint of ~ in her remarks) 3. ~ about 4. (misc.) dripping with ~ (her remarks were dripping with ~)

sardines *n.* 1. canned (AE), tinned (BE); fresh ~ 2. a can (AE), tin (BE) of ~ 3. (misc.) to pack in like ~

sashay *v.* (colloq.) (AE) 1. (P; intr.) ("to stroll") she ~ed down to the beach and then ~ed along it 2. (misc.) to come; go ~ing (she went ~ing along the beach)

satellite *n.* 1. to launch; orbit a ~ 2. an artificial (earth); communications; orbiting; spy; weather ~ 3. by ~ (an event telecast by ~) 4. from a ~ (pictures sent to earth from an orbiting ~)

satire *n.* 1. (a) biting, scathing ~ 2. political ~ 3. a ~ on

satisfaction *n.* ["act of satisfying"] ["state of being satisfied"] 1. to afford, give ~ to 2. to express; feel ~ 3. to find, take ~ in 4. deep, great, profound ~ 5. quiet ~ 6. ~ that + clause (they felt ~ that a fair compromise had been reached) 7. ~ about, at, over, with (they felt ~ with the compromise that had been reached) 8. to smb.'s ~ (the work was done to my (complete) ~) ["compensation for a wrong or injury"] 9. to demand; seek ~ 10. to get, receive; have ~ 11. ~ for (to receive ~ for an insult)

satisfactory *adj.* 1. completely; highly, very ~ 2. ~ for (her qualifications are not ~ for our needs) 3. ~ in (they were not ~ in their job performance) 4. ~ to (not ~ to anyone concerned)

satisfied *adj.* 1. completely, fully, perfectly, thoroughly ~ 2. ~ with (we are ~ with the good results) 3. ~ to + inf. (she is not ~ to spend her days doing nothing) 4. ~ that + clause (we are ~ that all requirements have been met)

satisfy *v.* 1. to ~ completely, thoroughly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ on (can you ~ me on just one more point?) 3. (L; refl.) we ~fied ourselves that all requirements had been met

satisfying *adj.* 1. completely, deeply, totally, very ~ 2. emotionally; intellectually ~ 3. ~ to + inf. (she does not find it ~ to spend her days doing nothing) 4. ~ that + clause (we find it ~ that at last all requirements have been met)

SATS *n.* ["Scholastic Aptitude Tests"] (US) 1. (for admission to US universities) to take the ~ ["Standard Assessment Tasks"] (GB) 2. (given to school children since 1991 as part of the national curriculum) to do the ~

saturate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in; with

sauce *n.* in; with (a) rich; savory, spicy; sweet; thick ~

saunter *v.* 1. (P; intr.) she ~ed down to the beach and then ~ed along it 2. (misc.) to come; go ~ing (she went ~ing along the beach)

sausage *n.* 1. liver ~ (CE; AE has *liverwurst*) 2. beef; garlic; pork ~ 3. a link; piece, slice of ~

savagery *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, exhibit, show ~ 2. extreme; great; sheer; unprovoked 3. an act; degree, level; outburst of ~ 4. ~ to, towards 5. with ~ (the police behaved with great ~ towards the demonstrators) 6. ~ to + inf. (it was sheer ~ ¬for/on the part of¬ the police to behave like that towards the demonstrators!)

save I *n.* ["action that prevents an opponent from scoring"] 1. to make a ~ 2. a brilliant, spectacular ~

save II *v.* 1. (C) ~ a place for me; or: ~ me a place 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (they are ~ing for a new car; to ~ money for a new car; to ~ for a rainy day) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ valuable records from destruction; the knight ~d the maiden from a dragon; it will ~ you from having to make a second trip) 4. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ on (during the mild winter we ~d (lots of money) on fuel) 5. (J) (esp. BE) it will ~ you having to make a second trip 6. (O) it will ~ you the trouble of making a second trip; the computer will ~ (us) a lot of time; buying it here will ~ (you) a lot of money 7. (misc.) to ~ money towards a new car; to scrimp and ~

save up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (they are ~ing up for a new car; to ~ up money for a new car; to ~ up for a rainy day)

saving *n.* to make a ~ (on) (during the mild winter we made a huge ~ on fuel bills) (see also **savings**)

savings *n.* 1. to make ~ (on) (during the mild winter we made huge ~ on fuel bills) 2. to set aside ~ 3. to deposit; invest one's ~ 4. to withdraw one's ~ (from a bank) 5. to dip into; squander one's ~

savings bond *n.* (AE) 1. to issue a ~ 2. to cash (in), redeem a ~ 3. to roll over a ~

savings certificate *n.* 1. to issue a ~ 2. to cash (in), redeem a ~ 3. (AE) to roll over a ~

savor, savour *v.* (lit.) (d; intr.) to ~ of ("to suggest") (to ~ of arrogance)

savvy *n.* ["knowledge"] (colloq.) 1. to demonstrate ~ 2. political ~ (to demonstrate considerable political ~)

saw I *n.* 1. to set ("put an edge on") a ~ 2. a band; buzz (AE), circular (BE), carpenter's; chain; coping; hand; musical; power; two-handed ~

saw II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ through (they ~ed through the cable and then they ~ed through it again = they ~ed through the cable and then they ~ed it through again) 2. (misc.) to ~ smt. up into little pieces

saw III *n.* ("saying") 1. a common, old, popular, wise ~ 2. a ~ goes, runs 3. a ~ that (there is an old ~ (to the effect) that haste makes waste)

say I *n.* ["decision"] 1. to have the final ~ ["opportunity to speak"] 2. to have one's ~ ["role"] 3. to have a ~ in

say II *v.* 1. (B) ("to utter") she said a few words to us 2. (d; tr.) ("to state") to ~ about, of (what did they ~ about our offer?) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ for ("to say in justification of") (what do you have to ~ for yourself?) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ to ("to respond to") (what do you ~ to the charges?) 5. (colloq.) (E) ("to state") the instructions ~ to take one tablet every morning 6. (L; to) ("to state") they said (to us) that they would be late; the instructions ~ that I should take one tablet every morning; people ~ that she is very wise 7. (Q; to) ("to state") she did not ~ (to us) when our next meeting would be; the instructions ~ how many tablets to take and when to take them 8. (misc.) "Hello!" she said (to me) = she said "Hello!" (to me); to ~ smt. in jest; to ~ smt. under one's breath; ~ no more; that ~s it all; needless to ~ (after that she got very angry and – needless to ~ – I didn't see her again); would it be fair/true to ~ that her anger ended your friendship?; what a thing to ~?!; it goes without ~ing that we will help (see also **saying**) USAGE NOTE: It is correct to use "You're wrong, I regret to say" or "You're wrong, I'm sorry to say" or "You're wrong, I'm afraid." But it's incorrect to use "??You're wrong, I'm afraid to say," even though "??I'm afraid to say," an incorrect blend of "I'm afraid" with "I'm sorry to say," is very common nowadays and is found even in writing.

saying *n.* 1. a common, old, popular, wise ~ 2. a ~ goes, runs 3. a ~ that (there is an old ~ (to the effect) that haste makes waste)

say-so *n.* (colloq.) ["statement"] on smb.'s ~ (I believed it was true on her ~)

scab *n.* a ~ falls off; forms

scabies *n.* to catch, get ~

scaffolding *n.* 1. to erect, put up ~ 2. to remove, take down ~ 3. ~ comes down; goes up; stays up 4. on the ~ (is there anyone working on the ~ you put up yesterday?)

scald *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (he was ~ed with boiling water)

scale I *n.* ["series of notes arranged in a certain sequence"] (mus.) 1. to play; sing a ~ 2. a chromatic; diatonic; major; minor; natural ~ ["system of classifying in a series of steps"] 3. a sliding; social ~ 4. a pay, salary, wage; union ~ ["relative size"] 5. an enormous, grand, large; full; moderate; monumental; small ~ 6. on a certain ~ (everything was planned on a monumental ~; on a ~ of one to ten; on a ~ of one inch to ten miles) 7. (misc.) drawn to ~; a small-scale problem = a problem that is small in ~ = a problem on a small ~

scale II *n.* ["weighing machine"] (AE) 1. a bathroom; kitchen; spring; table ~ 2. on a ~ (to weigh smt. on a ~) (see also **scales**)

scale down *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (they ~d down production to decreased demand = they ~d production down to decreased demand)

scales *n.* ["weighing machine"] 1. bathroom; kitchen; spring; table ~ 2. a pair, set of ~ 3. on ~ (to weigh smt. on ~) 4. (misc.) to tip the ~ at 150 pounds ["decisive influence"] 5. to tip the ~ ("to have a decisive influence") (the event tipped the ~ in their favor)

scallions *n.* (esp. AE; BE often prefers *spring onions* or *salad onions*) a bunch of ~

scalp *n.* a dry; itchy; oily ~

scamper *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ across the field

scan *n.* ["radiographic image"] 1. to do, take, perform; interpret, read a ~ (of) 2. to get, have, undergo a ~ (of) 3. to go for a ~ 4. (in, on) a bone; brain; CAT, CT; heart; liver; lung; MRI; PET; ultrasound ~ 5. a ~ indicates, reveals, shows

scandal *n.* 1. to cause, create a ~ 2. to cover up, hush up; expose, uncover a ~ 3. a juicy, sensational ~ 4. an open; political; public ~ 5. a ~ breaks, erupts; brews; dies down (a juicy ~ is brewing) 6. a breath, hint, suggestion of ~; series of ~s 7. a ~ about, over (we were shocked at the ~ about the mayor taking bribes) 8. a ~ that + clause (it's a ~ that the mayor has taken bribes)

scandalize *v.* (R) it ~d us that the mayor had taken bribes; we were ~d to hear that the mayor had taken bribes

scandalized *adj.* 1. ~ at (we were ~ at the news that the mayor had taken bribes) 2. ~ to + inf. (we were ~d to hear that the mayor had taken bribes)

scandalous *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ for the mayor to have taken bribes) 2. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that the mayor has taken bribes)

scanner *n.* a CAT, CT; code; heart; liver; lung; MRI; PET; text; ultrasound ~

scapegoat *n.* 1. to make a ~ of smb. 2. a convenient; obvious ~ 3. a ~ for (I turned out to be a convenient ~ for their incompetence) 4. (misc.) to make smb. a ~ (they made me a ~ for their incompetence)

scar *n.* 1. to leave a ~ 2. to bear, carry, have a ~ 3. an emotional, psychological; hideous, ugly; identifying; noticeable, prominent; permanent ~ (she had to bear the emotional ~s left by her unhappy childhood) 4. a ~ on (she has a ~ on her arm) 5. a ~ forms; grows fainter

scarcity *n.* 1. to cause, lead to a ~ 2. a severe ~ (the drought has led to a severe ~ of grain) (see also *scarcity value* at **value**)

scare I *n.* (colloq.) 1. to give smb. a ~; to put, throw a ~ into smb. 2. to get, have a ~ 3. a nasty; sudden ~ 4. a bomb ~ (see also *scare story* at **story I** *n.*; *scare tactics* at **tactics**)

scare II *v.* (colloq.) 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into doing smt.) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ out of (she ~d me out of doing it; she ~d me out of my wits) 3. (N; used with an adjective) to ~ smb. stiff 4. (R) it ~d us that no one answered the doorbell 5. (misc.) to ~ smb. (half) to death = to ~ the life out of smb.

scared *adj.* (colloq.) 1. ~ stiff, (half) to death, out of one's wits 2. ~ at, by, of (~ at the very thought; ~ of the dark; they are ~ed of saying anything) 3. ~ to + inf. (they are ~ to say anything) 4. ~ that + clause (we were ~ that the roof would collapse)

scare up *v.* (colloq.) (AE) to ~ for; from (to ~ a meal from leftovers)

scarf *n.* 1. to knit a ~ 2. to wear a ~ (around one's neck) 3. to tie, wrap a ~ (around smb.'s/one's head) 4. a knitted; silk; woolen ~

scarlet fever *n.* to develop, get; have ~

scar tissue *n.* ~ forms

scatter *v.* (P; intr., tr.) they ~ed through the woods; the pamphlets were ~ed around the neighborhood; the wind ~ed leaves on the ground = the ground was ~ed with leaves by the wind; the groups are ~ed throughout the various states; the rioters ~ed in all directions

scavenge *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (they were ~ging for spare parts from wrecked cars) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ from (they were ~ging spare parts from wrecked cars)

scenario *n.* ["film outline"] 1. to write a ~ 2. a film ~ ["potential situation"] 3. a doomsday; likely ~ 4. a worst-case ~ (in the worst-case ~ we lose all our money)

scene *n.* ["division of a play"] 1. to play; rehearse a ~ 2. to steal ("dominate") a ~ 3. the ~ shifts 4. (in) a love ~ 5. a change of ~ ["display of anger, feelings"] 6. to make a ~ 7. an awkward, painful, ugly ~ (ugly ~s between parents and children) ["location"] 8. to arrive/come on the ~ ("to appear"); to leave, vanish from the ~ ("to disappear") 9. at, on a ~; amid, among ~s (she was at the ~ of the crime; she interviewed the victims amid ~s of carnage) 10. on the national ~ ["spectacle, picture"] 11. to depict a ~ 12. a beautiful; idyllic; touching ~ 13. a funny; ridiculous ~ 14. an ever-changing; familiar ~ 15. a disgraceful, shameful; distressing; gruesome; revolting; tragic ~ ["misc."] 16. behind the ~s ("in secret"); a change of ~ (usu. fig.); to set the ~ ("to describe a situation") ("to prepare for the occurrence of smt.")

scenery *n.* ["stage props"] 1. to set up ~ 2. to move, shift ~ 3. to dismantle ~ 4. stage ~ ["landscape"] 5. beautiful, glorious, majestic, picturesque; wild ~ 6. amid; through ~ (we picnicked amid glorious mountain ~) 7. (misc.) (usu. fig.) a change of ~

scent *n.* ["track, trail"] 1. to have; follow; pick up a (the) ~ (the dogs picked up the ~) 2. to leave a ~ 3. a cold; false; hot ~ 4. (misc.) to throw smb. off the ~ ["intuition"] 5. a ~ for (a ~ for news) ["odor"] 6. to perceive; recognize an ~ 7. a delicate; faint; lingering; pungent, strong ~ 8. a ~ permeates smt. 9. a ~ of (the delicate ~ of lavender permeated the entire room) ["sense of smell"] 10. a keen ~ ["perfume"] (see **perfume**)

sceptical see **skeptical**

scepticism see **skepticism**

schedule I *n.* 1. to draw up, make out, make up, plan, prepare, set up, work out a ~ 2. to follow, stick to a ~ 3. to issue a ~ 4. a fixed; flexible; full; heavy; rigid; rotating ~ 5. (esp. AE) an airline; bus; train ~ (CE has *timetable*) 6. a production ~ 7. a ~ for 8. according to, on; ahead of; behind ~ (our work is coming along according to/on ~; the trains are running behind ~) 9. in a ~ (is there anything left to do in your ~?) 10. to be on smb.'s ~ (what's on your ~ ¬tomorrow/for tomorrow¬?)

schedule II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (we will ~ her for surgery next week) 2. (H) we're ~d to arrive at one o'clock; can you ~ her to speak in the afternoon?; we will ~ her to have surgery next week

scheme I *n.* 1. to come up with, conceive, concoct, cook up, devise, think up a ~ 2. to cobble together, work out a ~ 3. to outline, sketch out a ~ 4. to announce, unveil a ~ 5. to present, propose a ~ 6. to accept, approve a ~ 7. to carry out, go ahead with, implement a ~ 8. to put a ~ into effect/operation 9. to abandon, drop, scrub; shelve a ~ 10. to reject, turn down a ~ 11. to foil, thwart a ~ 12. a clever; complicated, elaborate; detailed; grandiose ~ 13. a diabolical; fantastic; get-rich-quick; grandiose; harebrained; ill-conceived; impracticable; impractical; unrealistic; nefarious; preposterous, wild-eyed ~ 14. a ~ calls for (smt.) (the ~ called for massive investment) 15. ~s materialize; succeed, work; go ahead 16. ~s fail 17. a ~ for (she concocted a harebrained ~ for getting publicity) 18. a ~ to + inf. (she concocted a harebrained ~ to get publicity) 19. (misc.) in the overall ~ of things; what rhyme ~ does the poet use? USAGE NOTE:

In CE, a *scheme* can be dishonest or crafty; this connotation is probably encountered more frequently in AE than in BE, where *scheme* can be similar in connotation to *plan*. So in AE a *scheme* is more likely to be *harebrained* than *clever;* but in BE it can be either.

scheme II *v.* (derog.) 1. (D; intr.) to ~ against; for 2. (E) they are ~ing to take over the government

schism *n.* 1. to cause, create a ~ 2. a ~ between

scholar *n.* 1. an eminent; productive ~ 2. a ~ in residence 3. (colloq.) a ~ of (a ~ of early French literature)

scholarship *n.* ["systematized knowledge, research"] 1. to foster, promote ~ 2. productive; scientific; solid, sound, thorough ~ ["aid to a student, researcher, writer"] 3. to establish, found a ~ 4. to award, grant a ~ 5. to apply for a ~ 6. to get, receive, win a ~ (she won a ~ to a leading university) 7. to have, hold a ~ 8. a ~ for (to receive a ~ for language study) 9. a ~ to (she won a ~ to Oxford) 10. a ~ to + inf. (she won a ~ to study at Oxford) 11. on a ~ (she went to Oxford on a ~)

school I *n.* ["educational institution"] ["education given by a school"] 1. to direct; operate, run a ~ 2. to accredit a ~ 3. to attend, go to (a) ~ (they go to a good ~) 4. to start ~ 5. to enter (a) ~ 6. to finish, graduate from (AE), leave (BE) ~ (she left ~ and went to university) 7. to drop out of, leave, quit (esp. AE) ~ 8. (by level) an elementary, grade (AE), grammar (AE), primary; first (BE); infant (BE); junior (BE); nursery ~ 9. (by level) a junior high (AE); middle; prep (BE) ~ 10. (by level) a comprehensive (BE), high (esp. AE), secondary; grammar (BE); prep (AE), public (BE) ("private secondary"); secondary modern (BE; now rare) ~ 11. (by level) a graduate, postgraduate (esp. BE); undergraduate ~ 12. (by subject) an art; ballet; beauty; business; dancing; divinity; drama, theater; driving; fencing; military; naval; riding; secretarial; technical; trade, vocational ~ 13. (by type) a boarding; church; consolidated; correspondence; progressive; public (AE), state (BE); day; evening; finishing; magnet; night; parochial; preparatory; private; reform (AE; now rare); religious; special; summer; Sunday ~ 14. (at a university; see also **faculty** 1) a business; dental; divinity; engineering; law; medical; nursing (US; CE has *school of nursing*); professional ~ 15. at, in (a) ~ (she works at/in a ~; their son is still at ~; AE also has: their son is still in ~) 16. a ~ for (a ~ for gifted children) 17. (misc.) to be kept after ~; late for ~; (AE) ~ lets out (at three o'clock); (BE) ~ breaks up for the holidays ["group of people holding similar views"] 18. an avant-garde ~ of artists; a radical ~ of economists 19. a ~ of opinion, thought 20. (misc.) of the old ~ ("adhering to established traditions") ["misc."] 21. the ~ of hard knocks ("life with all its difficulties") USAGE NOTES: (1) One says *to attend school* and *to go to school*, but with a modifier an article must be included – t*o attend a good school, to go to a good school, they go to the school of their choice*. Note that one can say *they go to school in California, where they go to a very good school indeed!* (see the Usage Notes for **college**; **university**) (2) In England the phrase *high school* is used chiefly in the names of state secondary schools that are or have been selective (i.e. grammar schools): *she went to Slough High School for Girls*. Elsewhere, *high school* is typically more or less synonymous with *secondary school*: *she went to high school before she went to college.*

school II *v.* 1. to ~ thoroughly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ smb. in the martial arts) 3. (H) they were ~ed to obey instantaneously

schooled *adj.* ~ in (well ~ in the martial arts)

schooling *n.* 1. to receive one's ~ 2. formal ~ 3. ~ in (receive ~ in the martial arts)

schoolwork *n.* to do one's ~

science *n.* 1. to advance, foster, promote ~ 2. an exact; hard; inexact; pure; soft ~ 3. applied; basic; popular ~ 4. computer, information; library; linguistic ~ 5. agricultural; medical; nursing; veterinary ~ 6. military; naval; space ~ 7. behavioral; natural; physical; political; social ~ 8. the life ~s 9. (misc.) rocket ~ ("very complicated ideas") (colloq.); the history/philosophy of ~

scientist *n.* 1. a nuclear; political; rocket (colloq.); social ~ 2. a ~ discovers (smt.) 3. a group, team of ~s (a team of nuclear ~s have discovered a new subatomic particle)

scissors *n.* 1. to use ~ 2. to grind, sharpen ~ 3. bandage (AE); left-handed; manicure; nail ~ 4. a pair of ~ USAGE NOTE: Some speakers of AE can use "a scissors" to mean 'a pair of scissors.'

scoff *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at

scold *v.* 1. to ~ severely 2. (D; tr.) to ~ about, for (they ~ed me for being late)

scolding *n.* 1. to give smb. a (good) ~ 2. to get, receive a ~

scoop I *n.* ["utensil for scooping"] 1. a coal; flour; grain; ice-cream ~ ["hot news item"] (colloq.) 2. to get the latest ~

scoop II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ from, off, out of (she ~ed the ice cream from the plate)

scoop up *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from, off (she ~ed up the ice cream from the plate = she ~ed the ice cream up from/off the plate)

scoot *v.* (P; intr.) the boys ~ed out of the room

scooter *n.* to ride a ~ (see also **motor scooter**)

scope *n.* 1. to broaden, widen the ~ of smt. 2. a broad; narrow ~ 3. beyond, outside the ~ of smt. 4. within the ~ of smt. 5. (misc.) this project will give your talent full ~ to express itself

score I *n.* ["tally"] (usu. sports) 1. to keep ~ 2. a close; even; lopsided ~ 3. (AE) (usu. baseball) a box ~ 4. a ~ stands (the ~ stood five to three (AE) = the ~ stood five – three (AE) = the ~ stood at five to three; how does the ~ stand?) 5. by a ~ (we won by a lopsided ~) ["points"] (sports, tests) 6. (esp. AE) to run up a ~ 7. a lopsided ~ (our team ran up a lopsided ~) 8. a high; low; perfect ~ (the judges gave her a perfect ~; the test ~s ranged from very low to very high) ["grievance"] ["matter"] 9. to pay off, settle a ~ 10. an old ~ (they had some old ~s to settle) 11. a ~ between (there are some old ~s between them) ["musical composition"] 12. to play; write a ~ ["copy of a musical composition"] 13. a film; full; orchestra; piano; vocal ~ ["matter"] 14. on a certain ~ (we are even on that ~) ["facts of a situation"] (colloq.) 15. to know the ~

score II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) ("to make a score") to ~ against (to ~ against a team; they ~d five points against the visiting team) 2. (D; intr., tr.) ("to make a score") to ~ for (she ~d ten points for her team; who ~d for their team?) 3. (d; intr., tr.) ("to write music") to ~ for (to ~ for full orchestra) 4. (colloq.) (BE) (d; intr.) to ~ off ("to beat in an argument") (it's difficult to ~ off him in an argument) 5. (colloq.) (D; intr.) ("to achieve success") to ~ with (I really ~d with the boss; I ~d with a pretty girl at the party last night) 6. (P) ("to get a certain score") in/on the proficiency tests they ~d badly/low/20%/high/well/80%/in the top 10/among the top 10

scoreboard *n.* an electronic ~

scorer *n.* (sports) a high; low; top ~ (who was the game's highest/top ~?)

scorn I *n.* 1. to express; feel ~ 2. to heap, pour ~ on 3. bitter, withering ~ 4. ~ for (to feel ~ for smb.) 5. with ~

scorn II *v.* (formal) 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (he was ~ed as a traitor) 2. (BE) (E) she ~s to compromise 3. (G) she ~s compromising

scornful *adj.* ~ of (they are ~ of him as a traitor; she is ~ of compromises)

scorpion *n.* ~s sting

scot-free *adj.* to get off, go (AE) ~

scourge *n.* a ~ of; to (the ~ of war is a ~ to the human race)

scout I *n.* 1. a boy ~ (esp. AE; BE usu. has *Scout*) 2. a girl ~ (AE; BE had *girl guide* but now has *Guide*) 3. a talent ~ USAGE NOTE: In CE, *boy scout* can also be fig., meaning 'a clean-living well-intentioned but naïve young man.'

scout II *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ the city for building sites; to ~ for new talent)

scout about, scout around *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for new talent)

scowl I *n.* 1. to wear a ~ 2. to have a ~ on one's face 3. a permanent, perpetual ~

scowl II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at

Scrabble *n.* (T) ["game"] to play ~

scramble I *n.* 1. a mad, wild ~ 2. a ~ for (a wild ~ for tickets) 3. a ~ to + inf. (there was a wild ~ to buy tickets) 4. during, in a ~ (people bumped each other in the ~ to buy tickets)

scramble II *v.* 1. (C) ~ a couple of eggs for me; or: ~ me a couple of eggs (see also *scrambled egg(s)* at **egg**) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ for, over (AE) (to ~ for government subsidies) 3. (P; intr.) the hikers were ~ling down the mountain; the children ~d through the forest; the passengers ~d aboard

scrap I *n.* ["waste metal"] to sell (smt.) for ~ (see also *scrap metal* at **metal**)

scrap II *n.* (colloq.) ["fight"] to put up a (good) ~

scrap III *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) ("to fight") to ~ over

scrapbook *n.* to keep a ~

scrape I *n.* ["awkward predicament"] ["fight"] to get into a ~

scrape II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ against (she ~d against the wall; I ~d the chair against the table) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ at (she ~d at the furniture; she ~d at the paint on the furniture) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ from, off (to ~ paint off furniture) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ through ("to manage to get through") (to ~ through a crisis to triumph) 5. (N; used with an adjective) (she ~d the dishes clean; she ~d the furniture clean of paint) 6. (misc.) to bow and ~ ("to be obsequious") (see also *to scrape acquaintance with* at **acquaintance**)

scrape along *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on; with (to ~ on a small salary)

scrape through *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (we somehow ~d through to triumph)

scratch I *n.* ["injury produced by scratching"] 1. (to come through a fight) without a ~ 2. a deep; slight; superficial ~ (she had only a slight ~ on her arm) ["beginning"] 3. from ~ ["prescribed level"] 4. up to ~

scratch II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at (the cat was ~ing at the door with its claws) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ off (he ~d the paint off the wall) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ on (I ~ed my hand on a nail)

scrawl *n.* ["bad handwriting"] 1. to decipher a ~ 2. an illegible; incomprehensible ~ (to write in an illegible ~)

scream I *n.* 1. to give, let out a ~ 2. a bloodcurdling; ear-piercing, loud; high-pitched, shrill ~ (he let out a loud ~ of terror)

scream II *v.* 1. to ~ hysterically; to ~ in agony 2. (B) she ~ed a few words to the children 3. (D; intr.) to ~ at; for (she ~ed at the children for making noise) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for help) 5. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with pain) 6. (E) she ~ed at/for/to the children to stop making noise 7. (L; to) she ~ed (at/to us) that the house was on fire; "Stop making noise!" she ~ed (at/to the children) 8. (N; used with a reflexive pronoun and an adjective) (she ~ed herself hoarse) (see also *scream at the top of one's lungs* at **lung**)

screech I *n.* 1. to give, let out a ~ (to let out a ~ of delight) 2. a bloodcurdling; ear-piercing, loud; high-pitched, shrill ~ (he let out a loud ~ of terror)

screech II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with delight) 2. (misc.) to ~ to a halt/stop = to come ~ing to a halt/stop

screen I *n.* 1. to erect, put up a ~ (what is ¬behind/on the other side of¬ the ~ they put up?) 2. a computer; radar; television, TV ~ 3. a smoke ~ (often fig.) (to ¬lay down/put up/throw up/use¬ a smoke ~ of obfuscation to conceal the truth) 4. the big, silver ~ (in the movies) 5. the small ~ (TV) 6. a blank ~ 7. a ~ between 8. on a ~ (there was no picture on the TV ~) 9. (misc.) to clear a ~ (as on a computer); actors who are on-screen enemies but off-screen friends

screen II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ for cancer) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ from (they ~ed the bed from the rest of the ward)

screening *n.* 1. to do a ~ 2. (a) mass ~ 3. a ~ for

screen off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (they ~ed off the bed from the rest of the ward = they ~ed the bed off from the rest of the ward)

screen test *n.* 1. to get, have a ~ 2. to give smb. a ~ 3. to do a ~ (they did a ~ on her)

screw I *n.* 1. to loosen; tighten; turn a ~ 2. a loose ~

screw II *v.* 1. to ~ securely; tightly; together (to ~ two things together securely = to ~ one thing and another together securely) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ a bracket into a wall; to ~ smt. into place) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ onto, to (they ~ed the desk to the floor; to ~ one thing to another) 4. (slang) (D; tr.) to ~ out of ("to cheat out") (they ~ed him out of his bonus) 5. (N; used with an adjective) ~ the cap tight

screw on *v.* (N; used with an adjective) ~ the cap on tight

scribble *v.* 1. (A) she ~d a note to me; or: she ~d me a note 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (to ~ with a pencil)

scrimp *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to be frugal") to ~ on (to ~ on food) 2. (misc.) to ~ and save

script *n.* ["alphabet"] 1. cuneiform; phonetic ~ (transcribed in phonetic ~) ["text"] 2. a film ~ (wrote a film ~ for a major Hollywood studio)

Scriptures *n.* the Holy ~ (to be found in the Holy ~)

scrounge *v.* (colloq.) 1. (D; intr.) ("to scavenge") to ~ for 2. (D; tr.) ("to wheedle") to ~ from, off (he ~d a cigarette from me)

scrounge around *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) ("to scavenge") to ~ for

scrub *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (we ~bed (away) at the tables until they were clean of dirt) 2. (N; used with an adjective) we ~bed the tables clean of dirt

scruff *n.* (to take smb.) by the ~ of the neck

scruples *n.* 1. to have; overcome ~ 2. moral; religious ~ 3. ~ about (she had moral ~ about referring to her opponent in public)

scrupulous *adj.* ~ in (she was ~ in avoiding references to her opponent in public)

scrutinize *v.* 1. to ~ closely, intently, thoroughly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (we've ~d the text thoroughly for errors)

scrutiny *n.* 1. to bear ~ (his record will not bear close ~) 2. to subject smt. to ~ 3. close, intense, strict, thorough; constant; public ~ (we've subjected the text to thorough ~ for errors) 4. open to ~ 5. under ~ (under constant ~; to come under ~)

scud *v.* (P; intr.) the clouds ~ded across the sky

scuffle I *n.* 1. to get into a ~ (with) 2. to have a ~ (with) 3. an angry; loud ~ 4. a ~ breaks out 5. a ~ about, over 6. a ~ between; with 7. in a ~ (several people were involved in the ~ between the gangs that broke out over smt. insignificant)

scuffle II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, over; with

sculpt *v.* see **sculpture II** *v.*

sculpted *adj.* see **sculptured**

sculpture I *n.* 1. to create, do, produce a ~ 2. to cast a ~ 3. an abstract ~ 4. modern ~ 5. a piece of ~

sculpture II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ into (I ~d the stone into a figure) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ from, out of (I ~d a figure from/out of the stone)

sculptured *adj.* ~ in; out of (~ in stone; ~ from stone)

scurry *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for cover) 2. (P; intr.) to ~ along the street 3. (misc.) we ~ied (in order) to find cover

sea *n.* 1. to sail the ~s 2. a calm, smooth; choppy, heavy, high, raging, rough, stormy, turbulent ~ 3. the deep; open ~ 4. at ~ (buried at ~) 5. (esp. BE) by the ~ (a holiday by the ~) 6. (misc.) (at) the bottom of the ~; to drift out to ~; to go to ~ ("to become a sailor"); to put out to ~; (all) at ~ ("bewildered") ["misc."] 7. I couldn't recognize her in the ~ of faces in the auditorium (see also **seas**)

seaboard *n.* (esp. AE) 1. the eastern ~ (of the U.S.A.) 2. along; down; on; up the (eastern) ~

seal I *n.* ["sea mammal"] 1. ~s bark 2. a colony, pod of ~s 3. a young ~ is a pup (they tried to prevent the culling of ~ pups) 4. a female ~ is a cow 5. a male ~ is a bull

seal II *n.* ["piece of molten wax"] 1. a privy; wax ~ ["closure"] 2. to break a ~ 3. a hermetic ~ ["stamp, symbol"] 4. to affix a ~ 5. an official; royal ~ 6. a ~ of approval (they got/received the official ~ of approval)

seal III *v.* 1. to ~ firmly, tightly; hermetically; together (they ~ed the flaps of the envelope together) 2. (N; used with an adjective) they ~ed the area/envelope shut

sea lion *n.* 1. a colony of ~s 2. a young ~ is a pup 3. a female ~ is a cow 4. a male ~ is a bull

seal off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

seam *n.* 1. to let out; rip open, tear open a ~ 2. (misc.) to be bursting at the ~s (also fig.); to come apart at the ~s (also fig.)

seaman *n.* an able, able-bodied; junior (BE), ordinary; merchant ~

seance *n.* 1. to conduct, hold a ~ 2. at; during a ~

seaport *n.* a bustling, busy ~

search I *n.* 1. to conduct, do, make a ~ 2. to abandon, call off a ~ 3. a careful, exhaustive, painstaking, systematic, thorough ~ 4. a fruitless ~ 5. a body, strip; door-to-door, house-to-house ~ 6. a literature ~ 7. a computer; online ~ (to do a computer ~) 8. a

~ for (the ~ for truth) 9. in ~ of 10. (misc.) (legal) unwarranted ~ and seizure

search II *v.* 1. to ~ carefully, painstakingly, systematically, thoroughly 2. to ~ all over, everywhere, high and low 3. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for a lost child) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ through (she ~ed through her purse for the keys and then ~ed through it again)

searching *n.* online ~

searchlight *n.* 1. to direct, focus, shine a ~ 2. ~s play on (a wall)

search party *n.* to organize; send out a ~

seared *adj.* ~ in, into (that day is ~ into my memory)

seas *n.* 1. the high ~ (on the high ~) 2. see **sea** 2; calm, smooth; choppy, etc. ~

seashore *n.* at the ~

seasick *adj.* to get; feel ~

seaside *n.* (BE) at, by the ~ (a holiday at the ~ = a ~ holiday) (esp. AE has *seashore*, *shore*)

season I *n.* 1. to open, usher in the (a) ~ 2. to close, usher out the (a) ~ 3. the dead, low, off, slack ~ 4. the high ~ 5. (sports) the baseball; basketball; fishing; football; hunting; open ~ 6. the dry; hurricane; monsoon; rainy ~ 7. the harvest; planting ~ 8. the Christmas, festive; holiday; tourist ~ 9. the breeding, mating, rutting ~ 10. at a ~ (at that ~ of the year) 11. in ~; out of ~ 12. (misc.) the height of the ~; it's open ~ on members of the opposition – the government has declared open ~ on them! ("members of the opposition are being subjected to attack")

season II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ with (we will ~ the salad with dill) 2. (misc.) mix the ingredients and ~ to taste

seasoned *adj.* highly; lightly ~

seat *n.* ["place to sit"] 1. to get; have a ~ 2. to take one's ~ 3. to assign ~s 4. to book (esp. BE), reserve a ~ 5. to give up, relinquish one's ~ 6. to keep one's ~ 7. to save a ~ (for smb.) 8. a back; bucket; car; front; jump; passenger ~ (see also **backseat**; *backseat driver* at **driver**) 9. a box; front-row; ringside ~ 10. the driver's (AE), driving (BE) ~ (when the accident happened he was in the driver's ~, she was in the passenger ~, and the children were in the back ~) 11. this ~ is free, vacant; occupied, taken 12. (misc.) please have, take a ~ ("please sit down") ["right to sit"] ["public office"] 13. to hold; win a ~ (she held a safe ~ easily whereas he managed to win a marginal ~!) 14. to contest a ~ 15. to lose one's ~ ["administrative center"] 16. a county ~ (AE; BE has *county town*) ["dominant position"] 17. the catbird (AE), driver's (AE), driving (BE) ~

seatbelt *n.* 1. to buckle, do up, fasten; put on a ~ 2. to unbuckle, undo, unfasten; take off a ~ 3. to adjust a ~ 4. to wear a ~

seated *adj.* 1. to be ~ 2. to remain ~ 3. ~ at; in; on (he was ~ at the steering wheel, she was ~ in the passenger seat, and the children were ~ on stools at home)

secateurs *n.* (esp. BE) a pair of ~ (see also **shears**)

secede *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (a township cannot ~ from a county; there was a Civil War when the Confederacy tried to ~ from the USA)

secession *n.* ~ from (the Confederacy's attempted ~ from the USA)

seclude *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ from

seclusion *n.* in ~

second I *adj.* ["inferior"] 1. ~ to (~ to none) ["placing after the first"] 2. to come (in), finish, place ~ (in a race) 3. the ~ to + inf. (she was the ~ to arrive and among the last to leave)

second II *n.* ["one who ranks after the first"] 1. a close ~ ["assistant"] 2. a ~ to smb. 3. (misc.) ~s away! (in wrestling); ~s out! (in boxing) ["second gear"] 4. to put (a vehicle) into ~ 5. in ~ (the car's in ~; don't start in ~) ["vote of endorsement"] 6. (do I hear) a ~ to (the motion?) ["undergraduate second-class honours degree at a British university"] 7. to get a ~ 8. a lower (2.2); upper (2.1) ~ 9. a ~ in (to get an upper ~ in English) (see also **seconds**)

second III *n.* ["sixtieth part of a minute"] ["short time"] 1. a split ~ 2. for a ~ (I'm stepping out into the corridor for a ~) 3. in a ~ (she'll be here in a ~) 4. (misc.) wait a ~; just a ~; it will take a ~; it all happened in a fraction of a ~!; "If you can fill the unforgiving minute With sixty seconds' worth of distance run..." – Rudyard Kipling (1865–1936), "If –"

second IV /si'kond/ *v.* (BE) (D; tr.) ("to assign temporarily") to ~ from; to (she was ~ed from the British Council to a university)

secondary *adj.* ~ to

second best *adj.*, *adv.*, *n.* 1. to come off ~ 2. to settle for ~

second-class *adv.* to travel ~

second fiddle *n.* ["subordinate role"] to play ~ to

second hand *n.* at ~ ("indirectly")

second place *n.* to take ~ to (her personal life took ~ to her job)

second thought *n.* 1. to have ~s about smt. 2. on ~ (AE) / on ~s (BE) ("after reconsideration") 3. (misc.) without (giving the matter) a ~

secondment *n.* (BE) on ~ from; to (she was on ~ from the British Council to a university)

seconds *n.* ["second helping of food"] (colloq.) 1. to ask for ~ 2. to offer ~ 3. (misc.) who wants ~? = who's for ~?

secrecy *n.* 1. to ensure ~ 2. strict ~ 3. ~ about 4. ~ in (~ in conducting negotiations) 5. in ~ (to meet in ~; the meetings were held in the strictest ~; cloaked/shrouded/veiled in ~) 6. to swear smb. to ~ (we were all sworn to ~ about the project) 7. ~ shrouds, surrounds (the ~ surrounding the project) 8. (misc.) a veil of ~

secret I *adj.*, *n.* 1. strictly ~ 2. most; top ~ 3. to keep smt. ~ (from smb.) 4. in ~ (they got engaged in ~ and kept meeting in ~)

secret II *n.* 1. to make a ~ of smt.; to make no ~ of smt. (they made no ~ of the fact that they were engaged = they made no ~ of their engagement) 2. to guard, keep a ~ (can you keep the project a ~ from everyone else?) 3. to betray, blurt out, divulge, reveal a ~ 4. to ferret out, uncover, unearth a ~ 5. a dark, deep, guilty, ugly ~ 6. a closely guarded; military; open; state; trade ~ 7. a ~ that + clause (it was no ~ that they were engaged = it was an open ~ that they were engaged)

secretary *n.* ["administrative assistant"] 1. a corresponding; executive; personal; press; recording; social ~ 2. a private ~ (AE; BE has *personal assistant*) 3. a ~ of, to ["company officer"] (BE) 4. a company ~ ["cabinet official supervising a government department"] 5. (GB) the Defence; Foreign; Home Secretary (etc.) 6. (US) the Secretary of Labor; Secretary of State ["misc."] 7. the Secretary General (the Secretary General of the U.N.; the Secretary General of the Communist Party)

secretion *n.* 1. an internal ~ 2. a ~ from

secretive *adj.* ~ about (very ~ about one's plans)

sect *n.* 1. a political; religious ~ 2. to join a ~ 3. a member of a ~

section *n.* ["division of a newspaper"] 1. the business; classified; news; sports; travel ~ ["plane figure"] (geometry) 2. a conical; cross; vertical ~ ["group of instruments"] 3. a brass; percussion; rhythm; string; woodwind ~ 4. in a ~ (to play in the woodwind ~) ["group"] (esp. AE) 5. a cheering ~ (in a grandstand) ["surgical cutting"] 6. an abdominal; caesarean/cesarean ~ ["area"] 7. a business; residential ~ 8. a non-smoking; smoking ~ ["department"] 9. the cultural; political ~ (of an embassy) 10. the children's; fiction; non-fiction ~ (of a library or bookstore) ["part"] 11. in ~s (the bookcases come in ~s; the Act is divided into 24 Sections) 12. under a ~ (the case falls under Section 22 of the Act) 13. (misc.) a political program intended to appeal to all ~s of society

sector *n.* 1. the private; public ~ 2. in a ~ (in the private ~)

secure I *adj.* 1. ~ about (to feel ~ about the future) 2. ~ against, from (~ against attack) 3. ~ in (~ in one's beliefs)

secure II *v.* 1. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ against (to ~ borders against attack) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for; from (I ~d a loan for the project from the bank) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ by; with (to ~ a bundle by using ropes = to ~ a bundle with ropes)

securities *n.* 1. to buy; issue; register; sell ~ 2. corporate; gilt-edged; government; negotiable; tax-exempt ~

security *n.* ["safety"] 1. to ensure, provide ~ 2. to beef up, strengthen, tighten ~ 3. to compromise; undermine ~ 4. collective; financial; internal; job; maximum; national; personal; state; top ~ (to compromise national ~) (see also *security of tenure* at **tenure**) 5. heightened; lax; strict, tight ~ 6. ~ against (~ against attack) 7. (misc.) a feeling, sense of ~; a breakdown in ~; a lack of ~; a lapse in/of ~ (don't let yourself be lulled into a false sense of ~) (see also *to pledge smt. as security for a loan* at **pledge II** *v.*) ["system of social insurance"] 8. (on) social ~ USAGE NOTE: In GB, *social security* refers to the whole system of public welfare provision. In the US, *social security* refers to the federal program that provides old-age, survivors', and disability benefits.

sedation *n.* under ~

sedative *n.* 1. to administer, give; prescribe a ~ 2. to take a ~ 3. a heavy, strong; light, mild ~

sediment *n.* to deposit ~

sedition *n.* 1. to foment, incite, stir up ~ 2. an act of ~

see *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ about, after ("to take care of") (to ~ about an important matter) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ as ("to visualize") ("to consider acceptable") (I can't ~ them as members of our organization; can you ~ him as Hamlet?) 3. (d; tr.) ("to find attractive") to ~ in (what does she ~ in him?) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ of ("to encounter") (we haven't seen much of you recently; you haven't seen the last of them) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ through ("to comprehend what's wrong with") (she saw through their crooked scheme immediately – she saw through it without difficulty!) 6. (d; tr.) to ~ through ("to assist, guide") (my friends saw me through my period of grief; I'm grateful because when I was grieving my friends saw me through!; the supporters of the bill saw it through Congress) 7. (d; tr.) ("to accompany") to ~ to (she saw him to the door) 8. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to attend to") (I had to ~ to the arrangements; he saw to it that the same mistake was not repeated; ~ to it that you get there on time!) 9. (d; tr.) to ~ (through) to ("to be sufficient for") (this money will have to ~ us through to the end of the month – I hope it will be enough to ~ us through!) 10. (I) we saw him enter the building = he was seen to enter the building 11. (J) we saw him entering the building = he was seen entering the building; somehow I can't quite ~ them becoming members of our organization; can you ~ him playing Hamlet? 12. (L) ("to perceive") they saw that further resistance was hopeless 13. (L) ("to make certain") ~ that you get there on time! 14. (N; used with a past participle) ("to watch") we saw the play performed in New York 15. (Q) ("to perceive") I could not ~ how the trick was done = I could not ~ how to do the trick; "I can't do it!" "I don't ~ why not!" 16. (P; tr.) ("to accompany") I'll ~ you home/out; I'll ~ myself out 17. (P; intr.) ("to look") to ~ over the fence; to ~ into the room; to ~ through the window 18. (misc.) they are ~ing each other regularly ("they are dating each other"); I ~ by/from/in the newspapers that… (see also *go see* at **go II** *v.*; *let's see* at **let's**; *live to see the day* at **live II** *v.*; *wait and see* at **wait II** *v.*; *see one's way (clear)* at **way**)

seed I *n.* 1. to plant, sow, spread ~s 2. ~s germinate, sprout; grow 3. (misc.) to go to ~ ("to be neglected and become useless")

seed II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ a field with rye) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ rye in a field) 3. (misc.) (tennis) to be ~ed third; the third-seeded player made it to the final!

seeding *n.* cloud ~

seek *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ help from smb.) 2. (E) smb. sought to help her

seeker *n.* an asylum; status ~

seem *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ like (she ~s like a reasonable person) 2. (E) she ~s to be well; she ~ to be a fool; they ~ to like me; they ~ not to like him = they don't ~ to like him; the door ~s not to open easily = the door doesn't ~ to open easily; I ~ not to be able to open the door = I don't ~ to be able to open the door = I can't ~ to open the door 3. (L; to) it ~s (to me) that they will not come = it doesn't ~ (to me) that they'll come 4. (S) to ~ foolish; sad; well (she ~s well/foolish); to ~ a fool; it ~ed a waste of time; I don't ~ able to open the door 5. (misc.) it ~s as if they will win, it ~s as though they will win, it ~s like they will win (colloq.); so it ~s, so it would ~; it ~s not

seen *adj.* ["regarded"] 1. ~ as (a new tax cut was ~ as necessary) 2. to + inf. (a new tax cut was ~ to be necessary)

seep *v.* (P; intr.) the water ~ed into the basement; the rain ~ed through the ceiling

seesaw *v.* (d; intr.) ("to alternate") to ~ between (the lead ~ed between the two teams)

seethe *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at, with (to ~ with rage at an insult)

segregate *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ according to, by (the pupils were ~d by age) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ one group from another = to ~ groups (from each other)) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ people into different groups)

segregation *n.* 1. to maintain, practice ~ 2. racial; religious; social ~ 3. ~ according to, by (~ by age)

seize *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ by (he ~d me by the arm = he seized my arm) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (I ~d upon a chance remark that was also ~d upon by the media) (see also *seize hold of* at **hold I** *n.*)

seized *adj.* ~ with (an acute illness)

seizure *n.* ["convulsion, paroxysm"] 1. to have a ~ 2. a cardiac, heart; epileptic; uncontrollable ~ ["act of seizing"] 3. (legal) unwarranted search and ~

select *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (we ~ed her as our candidate) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (who was ~ed for the assignment?) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ from among (we ~ed her from among many candidates) 4. (H) we ~ed her to be our candidate

selection *n.* ["choice"] 1. to make a ~ 2. natural; sexual ~ (to defend intelligent design against natural ~; natural ~ leading to the survival of the fittest) 3. a wide ~ 4. a ~ as (her ~ as party candidate was not popular) 5. a ~ for (her ~ for the assignment) ["selected piece of music"] 6. to play a ~ 7. a musical ~

self *n.* 1. smb.'s inmost, inner; real, true ~ 2. one's former, old; usual; whole ~ (she performed like her old ~) 3. (formal) one's better ~ (her plea recalled me to my better ~ and I repented)

self-assurance see **self-confidence**

self-confidence *n.* 1. to acquire, gain; display, exude, radiate, show; have ~ 2. to instill ~ 3. to boost, increase; restore smb.'s ~ 4. to shake, undermine smb.'s ~ 5. to lose one's ~ 6. the ~ to + inf. (she doesn't have the ~ to run for public office)

self-conscious *adj.* ~ about

self-consciousness *n.* 1. to display ~ (in) 2. ~ about

self-control *n.* 1. to display, exhibit, show; exercise, maintain; practice ~ 2. to lose one's ~ 3. admirable, commendable, complete, great, total ~ 4. ~ by, in (they showed great ~ in not responding to the provocation)

self-defense, self-defence *n.* 1. in ~ (to kill smb. in ~) 2. the art of ~ 3. (misc.) the manly art of ~ ("boxing")

self-denial *n.* to exercise, practice ~

self-determination *n.* 1. to give, grant ~ 2. to achieve, realize; enjoy ~ 3. national ~

self-discipline *n.* 1. to display, exhibit; exercise; have ~ 2. admirable; great, tremendous ~ 3. ~ breaks down, gives way 4. the ~ to + inf. (who has the ~ to write a dictionary?)

self-evident *adj.* 1. ~ from; to 2. ~ that + clause (from the vote so far, it is ~ to us all that she will be elected)

self-examination *n.* 1. to do a ~ 2. a frank, honest ~

self-flattery *n.* to indulge in ~

self-fulfillment, self-fulfilment *n.* to achieve; seek ~ (by; in) (to seek ~ by working = to seek ~ in work)

self-government *n.* 1. to grant ~ 2. to enjoy ~

self-image *n.* 1. to bolster, improve; change one's ~ 2. a good, positive; negative, poor ~

self-interest *n.* 1. enlightened ~ 2. in smb.'s own ~ (it's in your own ~ to sign the contract) 3. ~ dictates (~ alone would dictate that you should sign the contract)

selfish *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to do that)

self-management *n.* workers' ~ (of industry)

self-medication *n.* to resort to ~

self-pity *n.* 1. to exhibit; feel ~ 2. to give way to, indulge in; wallow in ~

self-portrait *n.* to do, paint a ~

self-respect *n.* 1. to keep, preserve; lose; regain one's ~ 2. a lack; loss of ~

self-restraint *n.* 1. to display, exercise, maintain, practice, show ~ 2. to cast off, fling off, lose, shake off (all) ~ 3. admirable, commendable, complete, great, total ~ 4. ~ by, in (they showed great ~ in not responding to the provocation)

self-rule *n.* 1. to grant ~ 2. to enjoy ~

self-sufficiency *n.* 1. to achieve, attain ~ 2. economic ~ 3. ~ in

self-sufficient *adj.* ~ in

self-treatment *n.* to resort to ~

sell I *n.* (colloq.) ["method of selling"] a hard; soft ~

sell II *v.* 1. to ~ cheap, cheaply; dear; retail; wholesale 2. (A) we sold our old car to him; or: we sold him our old car 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ at, for (it normally ~s at twelve pounds but yesterday it sold for ten pounds; we sold the car to them for three thousand dollars) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into slavery) 5. (colloq.) (d; tr.) to ~ on ("to convince of") (to ~ smb. on an idea) 6. (misc.) to ~ as is ("to sell with no guarantee of quality"); to ~ at a reasonable price; to ~ at/for a profit; to ~ smt. at a loss; to ~ by the dozen; to ~ in bulk; to ~ like hot cakes ("to be sold very quickly in large quantities"); to ~ smb. down the river ("to betray and ruin smb.")

sell back *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to

seller *n.* a best ~ (this book was a best ~)

selling *n.* panic ~

sell off *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (we sold it off for scrap to the highest bidder)

sell out *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to (she sold out to her partner)

semantics *n.* general; generative ~

semester *n.* (esp. US) the fall; spring; summer ~

semicircle *n.* 1. to form a ~ 2. in a ~

semicolon *n.* to place, put in a ~

seminar *n.* 1. to conduct, give, hold a ~ 2. to attend a ~ 3. a ~ on

seminary *n.* 1. to attend; graduate from a ~ 2. a theological ~

senate *n.* 1. to convene, convoke a ~ 2. to disband, dissolve a ~ 3. a university ~ 4. a ~ meets, is in session 5. a ~ adjourns

senator *n.* (US) a junior; senior ~ (the junior senator from Idaho)

send *v.* 1. (A) we sent the manuscript to her; or: we sent her the manuscript 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (he was sent as our representative) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ by (to ~ a letter (by) airmail) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to ask to come") (to ~ for the doctor) 5. (d; tr.) to ~ for ("to send smb. to fetch smt.") (she sent me for some beer) 6. (d; tr.) ("to insert") to ~ into (the coach sent some new players into the game) 7. (d; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ students on a field trip) 8. (d; tr.) to ~ out of (the teacher sent the unruly pupils out of the room) 9. (d; tr.) to ~ to (her parents sent her to camp) 10. (H) she sent me to buy some beer 11. (J) the explosion sent things flying; we sent him packing ("we dismissed him summarily")

send around, send round *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to circulate") to ~ to (the director sent a memo around to the staff = the director sent around a memo to the staff) 2. (H) ("to dispatch") I sent a car around to pick you up = I sent around a car to pick you up

send away *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ for; to (the children sent away box tops to the magazine for prizes = the children sent box tops away to the magazine for prizes)

send back *v.* (A) she sent the money back to me, she sent back the money to me; or: she sent me back the money

send down *v.* 1. (BE) (D; tr.) ("to expel") to ~ from (he was sent down from Oxford) 2. (esp. BE) (D; tr.) ("to sentence to prison") to ~ for (he was sent down for five years) 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ for pizza; they sent him down for beer)

send in *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for; to (the children sent in box tops to the magazine for prizes = the children sent box tops in to the magazine for prizes)

send-off *n.* to give smb. a (big) ~ (they gave her quite a ~)

send off *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (we sent the children off to Europe) 2. (the children sent off box tops to the magazine for prizes = the children sent box tops off to the magazine for prizes)

send on *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (they sent the package on to my new address = they sent on the package to my new address)

send out *v.* 1. (B) they sent out invitations to many people = they sent invitations out to many people 2. (d; tr.) to ~ as (they were sent out as our representatives) 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ for (she sent out for some beer; she sent me out for some beer) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ on (the young reporter was sent out on her first assignment) 5. (H) she sent me out to buy some beer

send up *v.* 1. (esp. AE) (D; tr.) ("to sentence to prison") to ~ for (he was sent up for five years) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (they sent tea up to my room)

senior I *adj.* 1. ~ in (~ in rank) 2. ~ to (he is ~ to me by three years)

senior II *n.* 1. ~ by (he is my ~ by three years) 2. (AE) a college; graduating; high-school ~

seniority *n.* according to, by ~ (to promote according to ~)

sensation *n.* ["excitement"] 1. to cause, create a ~ 2. a great ~ (her appearance created a great ~) 3. an overnight ~ ["feeling"] 4. to feel; have a ~ 5. to lose ~ (he lost all ~ in his foot) 6. a pleasant ~ 7. a burning; choking; indescribable; numbing; queasy; strange; tingling; unpleasant ~ 8. a ~ in (I had a choking ~ in my throat) 9. a ~ that + clause (I had the sensation that smb. was in the room)

sense I *n.* ["judgment"] 1. to display, have, show ~ 2. common, good, horse (colloq.); innate ~ (see also **common sense**) 3. a grain of ~ 4. the ~ to + inf. (they don't have the ~ to admit defeat) 5. (misc.) to bring people to their ~s; to come to one's ~s; to take leave of one's ~s ["logic"] 6. to make ~ (her choice makes ~; it makes ~ to file an application; can you make any ~ out of this?) 7. to talk ~ 8. to talk ~ into smb. 9. ~ in (there is no ~ (in) losing your temper) 10. (misc.) that makes no ~ (to me) ["reaction to stimuli"] 11. to sharpen the ~s 12. to dull the ~s 13. an acute; intuitive; keen ~ (she has a very acute ~ of smell) 14. the five ~s (of sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch) 15. a sixth ~ ("intuition") ["feeling"] 16. (to have) a false ~ (of security) (the swindler lulled her into a false ~ of security) 17. a ~ of relief (he felt an immediate indescribable ~ of relief when he heard the good news) ["meaning"] 18. a figurative; literal, narrow, strict ~ 19. in a ~ (in the literal ~ of the word; in every ~ of the word; in a certain ~, you are right; you're right in the ~ that the figures do tend to support you) ["appreciation"] 20. a ~ of beauty; a ~ of occasion; a ~ of timing (see also **sense of humor**)

sense II *v.* 1. (L) she ~d immediately that smt. was wrong 2. (Q) I ~d where the problem was

senseless *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was (of/for them) ~ to lie = lying was a ~ thing (for them) to do!)

sense of humor *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, have a ~ 2. a subtle; wry ~

sensibility *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. ~ to (to display ~ to pain)

sensible *adj.* ["reasonable"] 1. ~ about, when it comes to (she was eminently/very ~ about postponing the trip = she was eminently/very ~ when it came to having to postpone the trip) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was eminently/very ~ of/for her to postpone the trip = postponing the trip was ¬an eminently/a very¬ ~ thing for her to do) ["aware"] (formal) (BE) 3. ~ of (they were acutely ~ of the danger that they faced)

sensitive *adj.* 1. highly, very ~ 2. ~ about (very ~ about charges of corruption); 3. ~ to (~ to charges of corruption; ~ to criticism; ~ to the feelings of others)

sensitivity *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. great ~ 3. ~ to (to display great ~ to criticism)

sensitize *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smb. to suffering)

sensor *n.* to activate, set off, trip a ~

sentence I *n.* ["judgment of a court"] 1. to give, impose; pass, pronounce (a) ~ (on) 2. to carry out, execute a ~ 3. to get, receive; serve (out) a ~ 4. to commute; reduce, remit; suspend; vacate a ~ (her ~ was reduced to five years) 5. a harsh, heavy, severe, stiff ~ 6. a light ~ 7. a death; custodial, jail, prison; life ~ (to give smb. a life ~ for murder) 8. an indefinite, indeterminate; suspended ~ 9. under ~ 10. (misc.) to get off with a light ~ ["independent group of words"] 11. to form, formulate, make up; generate a ~ 12. an affirmative; complex; compound; declarative; elliptical; embedded; exclamatory; impersonal; interrogative; negative; simple ~

sentence II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for; to (the judge ~d her to five years for theft; the convicted murderer was ~d to death; to ~ smb. to hard labor) 2. (H) the judge ~d him to do community service

sentiment *n.* ["feeling"] 1. to echo; express a ~ 2. to display, show ~ 3. to share a ~ 4. a growing; lofty; patriotic; public; shocking; strong ~ 5. (a) ~ against; for, in favor of (there is growing ~ in favor of a tax reduction) 6. (a) ~ that + clause (there was strong ~ that the government should step down) 7. (misc.) "I think the government should step down." "(those are) my ~s exactly: I agree with you 100%!"

sentimental *adj.* 1. cloyingly, mawkishly ~ 2. to become, get, wax (formal) ~ 3. ~ about, over (she waxed mawkishly ~ about the sweet little puppy)

sentimentality *n.* 1. cloying, maudlin, mawkish ~ 2. ~ about (her mawkish ~ about the sweet little puppy)

sentimentalize *v.* 1. to ~ cloyingly, mawkishly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about, over (she ~d mawkishly about the sweet little puppy)

sentry *n.* 1. to post a ~ 2. to relieve a ~

separate I *adj.* 1. completely ~ 2. ~ from (to keep ~ from)

separate II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from (she was ~d from her family; she and her husband ~d (from each other) and later got divorced; to be ~d from the service; the little girl got ~d from her parents) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ by; into (the children were ~d by age into two groups)

separation *n.* ~ by; from; into

separatism *n.* political; racial; religious ~

sequel *n.* a ~ to (*Henry IV*, *Part 2* is the ~ to *Henry IV*, *Part 1*)

sequence *n.* 1. an alphabetical; chronological; natural; random ~ (see also *a sequence of events* at **event**) 2. in ~

serenade *n.* 1. to play, sing a ~ 2. a ~ to

sergeant *n.* 1. a buck (AE); color; drill; first, top; flight (BE); gunnery; master; platoon; recruiting; staff; technical ~ 2. a ~ major; (BE) a company ~ major 3. (misc.) here are your orders Sergeant (Smith)!; to make smb. a ~, to promote smb. to the rank of ~; to have, hold the rank of ~

series *n.* ["sequence"] (math.) 1. an alternating; convergent; divergent; geometric; harmonic; infinite ~ ["succession"] 2. an unbroken ~ 3. in a ~ ["cycle of programs, publications"] 4. a concert; lecture ~; a miniseries; TV ~ ["misc."] (baseball) 5. the World Series

serious *adj.* 1. deadly, very; potentially ~ (this is potentially a very ~ situation!) 2. ~ about (she is very ~ about her work)

seriousness *n.* 1. in all ~ (in all ~, we are facing a real crisis!) 2. with great ~ 3. ~ about (she spoke with great ~ about the crisis)

sermon *n.* 1. to deliver, give, preach a ~ 2. a lay ~ 3. during, in a ~ 4. a ~ against; on (a ~ against drinking; a ~ on business ethics)

servant *n.* 1. a civil, public; domestic; personal ~ 2. a faithful, loyal, trusted ~ 3. a ~ of, to (formal)

serve I *n.* (tennis) 1. to break; return smb.'s ~ 2. to hold; lose one's ~ 3. the ~ was good, in 4. the ~ was long; out; wide 5. a ~ to (a ~ to the backhand)

serve II *v.* 1. (A) ("to bring") she ~d dinner to us; or: she ~d us dinner; they ~d the meat to us cold; or: they ~d us the meat cold 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ as ("to fulfill the functions of") (his illness ~d (him) as an excuse; to ~ (the town) as mayor) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to be a member of") (to ~ on a jury) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ on ("to deliver to") (to ~ a summons on smb.) 5. (tennis) (D; intr.) ("to put the ball in play") to ~

to (I hate to ~ to her – she always returns the ball to my backhand; and what's more, she ~s to my backhand, too!) 6. (D; intr.) ("to be in service") to ~ under (he ~d directly under a general) 7. (d; tr.) ("to be in service") to ~ with (I ~d with Monty at El Alamein) 8. (d; tr.) to ~ with ("to deliver to") (to ~ smb. with a summons; they ~ed the meat with vegetables and a salad) 9. (E) ("to have an effect") it ~d to calm everyone's nerves 10. (N; used with an adjective) they ~d the meat cold 11. (misc.) it ~s him right ("he got what he deserved")

server *n.* an online ~

service *n.* ["work done for others"] 1. to do, offer, perform, provide, render a ~ 2. custom (AE); meritorious; outstanding; public; yeoman ("loyal") ~ 3. professional; social (BE) ~s (a fee for professional ~s) 4. ~ to (she received an award for meritorious ~ to the community) 5. (misc.) to press smb. into ~; goods and ~s ["facility that satisfies a need"] 6. to introduce; maintain; offer, provide; restore (a) ~ 7. to cut, suspend; terminate (a) ~ 8. an ambulance; counseling; emergency; (national) health (UK), (public) health; health-care; health-visitor (BE), visiting-nurse (AE); social ~ 9. an answering; clipping (AE), press-cutting (BE); news, wire; online ~ 10. (a) bus; ferry; limousine; rail (BE), train (AE); shuttle ~ 11. a dating; employment (esp. AE); placement ~ 12. (a) diaper (AE); janitorial (AE); laundry; repair ~ 13. (a) delivery; door-to-door; towing ~ 14. customer; maid ~ (see also **room service**) 15. express; postal; telephone ~ ["operation, use"] 16. to go into ~ 17. to see ~ (this equipment has seen plenty of ~) 18. in; out of ~ (the bus was not in ~) 19. (misc.) to put smt. into ~; to take smt. out of ~ ["disposal"] 20. to be at smb.'s ~ ["help, benefit"] 21. to be of ~ (to) ["solemn ceremony"] 22. to attend a ~; hold a ~; to hold ~s; officiate at a ~ 23. a burial, funeral; marriage; memorial ~ (to hold a funeral ~ for smb.) 24. a church; synagogue; ecumenical; graveside; prayer; religious ~ 25. an evening; mid-day, noontime (esp. AE); morning; sunrise ~ (they hold sunrise ~s once a week) ["set of utensils"] 26. a coffee; dinner; tea ~ 27. a ~ for ["administrative division of government; government service"] 28. the civil; consular; diplomatic; foreign; intelligence, secret ~ (to enter, join; leave; resign from the civil ~) 29. human ~s ("social services") ["game during which one serves"] (tennis) 30. to hold; lose one's ~ 31. to break; return smb.'s ~ ["duty in the armed services"] 32. to see ~ (she saw ~ during the Second World War) 33. national (BE), selective (AE) ~ (see also **military service**) 34. active; inactive ~ 35. in the ~ (s) ["position as a servant"] (esp. BE) 36. domestic ~ 37. to be in ~ 38. to go into ~ 39. ~ as (to go into ~ as a housekeeper; he recalled his years in ~ as a valet) ["scheduled routes, flights"] 40. to introduce; offer, provide ~ 41. to suspend ~ 42. (a) daily; regular ~ 43. ~ between; from; to (regular ~ between two cities; that airline provides daily ~ from New York to London) ["manner of dealing with customers"] 44. fast; fine; slow ~ (see also **lip service**)

serviette *n.* (BE) 1. to fold a ~ 2. to tuck a ~ (under one's chin) 3. a cocktail; dinner; paper ~

serving *n.* ["portion"] a generous, large, liberal; second; small ~ (of)

servitude *n.* 1. involuntary; penal ~ 2. in ~ to

session *n.* 1. to hold a ~ 2. a briefing; debriefing ~ 3. a bull (AE; colloq.), rap (colloq.); jam ~ 4. a counseling; emergency; joint; legislative; plenary; psychotherapy, therapy; secret; special ~ (when will the plenary ~ take place?) 5. a practice; working ~ 6. a summer; winter ~ 7. a ~ on (to hold a special ~ on problems of air pollution) 8. in ~ (in secret ~; the court was in ~)

set I *adj.* ["opposed"] 1. (cannot stand alone) ~ against (her parents were dead ~ against the marriage) ["ready"] 2. ~ for (we are ~ for the big celebration) 3. ~ to + inf. (we are ~ to begin) ["in favor of"] 4. ~ on (they were ~ on going) 5. (misc.) to get ~ for; (before a race): get ready, get ~, go! (BE fig. has *ready, steady, go!*; AE also has *on your marks, get ~, go!*)

set II *n.* ["collection of things used together"] 1. to complete, make up a ~ 2. to break, break up a ~ 3. a carving; chemistry; chess; tea ~ (how many pieces does a chess ~ comprise/contain? = how many pieces make up/constitute a chess ~? = how many pieces are there in a chess ~?) 4. a complete; incomplete ~ ["group of six or more games"] (tennis) 5. to play a ~ 6. to lose; win a ~ (he won the first ~ and went on to take the match in straight ~s: 6–4, 6–3, 6–0) ["apparatus"] 7. a radio; television, TV ~ ["clique"] 8. the fast (old-fashioned); international; jet; smart (old-fashioned) ~ (to belong to the jet ~) ["stage, film scenery"] 9. to dismantle, strike a ~ (the whole cast gathered on the ~ before it was dismantled) ["misc."] 10. to make a dead ~ at smb. ("to attack smb."); ("to attempt to win smb.'s favor")

set III *v.* 1. (BE) (C) ("to assign") the teacher set several problems for the pupils; or: the teacher set the pupils several problems 2. (d; tr.) ("to place") to ~ against (to ~ a ladder against a wall) 3. (d; tr.) ("to pit") to ~ against (to ~ brother against brother) 4. (D; tr.) ("to arrange") to ~ for (to ~ the stage for smt.; to ~ a trap for smb.; to ~ a date for a wedding) 5. (d; tr.) ("to incite") to ~ on (to ~ dogs on a trespasser) 6. (D; tr.) ("to put") to ~ on (to ~ a price on an article) 7. (d; tr.) ("to adapt") to ~ to (to ~ a poem to music) 8. (d; intr.) to ~ upon ("to attack") (the wolves set upon the sheep) 9. (BE) (H) ("to assign as a task") she set them to write reports; I set myself to study these problems 10. (J) ("to compel") that set me thinking 11. (N; used with an adjective) to ~ smb. free 12. (P; tr.) ("to place") she set the lamp on the table 13. (misc.) that set me to thinking; to ~ smt. apart (certain traits ~ them apart); to ~ store by smb./smt. ("to rely on smb./

smt.”) ; to set smt. in train (“to set smt. in motion”) ; to ~ one’s sights on (“to aspire to”) (see also *set an example for* at **example** ; *set fire to* at **fire I** *n.* ; *set a match to* at **match I** *n.* ; *set one’s mind to* at **mind I** *n.* ; *set smt. in motion* at **motion I** *n.* ; *set sail for/from* at **sail I** *n.*)

set about *v.* 1. (E) (“to begin”) he set about to undo the damage that he had caused 2. (G) (“to begin”) he set about undoing the damage that he had caused

set apart *v.* (D ; tr.) to ~ from (certain traits ~ them apart from the others)

set aside *v.* (D ; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ money for one’s old age)

setback *n.* 1. to experience, have, receive, suffer a ~ 2. a serious ; severe ; temporary ; unexpected ~ 3. a business ; diplomatic ; financial ; military ; personal ; political ; professional ~ 4. a ~ to (it was a ~ to her hopes)

set down *v.* (BE) (L) (“to establish”) it was set down that taxes are due in March ; where is that set down on paper ?

set forth *v.* see **set out** 2

set off *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) (“to start”) to ~ for, on (to ~ for home ; to ~ on a trip) 2. (misc.) to ~ in search of smt. = to ~ (in order) to find smt.

set out *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) (“to leave”) to ~ for ; from (to ~ for town) 2. (d ; intr.) to ~ on (“to begin”) (to ~ on a new career) 3. (E) (“to resolve”) he has set out to get revenge 4. (misc.) to ~ in search of smt. = to ~ (in order) to find smt.

settee I *n.* to lie ; sit on a ~

setting *n.* [“set of tableware”] 1. a place ~ (for) [“frame in which a gem is set”] 2. to fashion a ~ for [“surroundings”] 3. a natural ; perfect ; unlikely ~ (Central Park provided an unlikely ~ for the play) [“arrangement of stage props”] 4. a stage ~ [“point at which a measuring device is set”] 5. to adjust, change, switch the ~ (of a thermostat) 6. to lower ; raise the ~

settle *v.* 1. to ~ peacefully (to ~ a dispute peacefully) 2. (d ; intr.) to ~ for (“to be content with”) (they had to ~ for a very modest house with no garage) 3. (d ; intr.) (“to decide”) to ~ on (have you ~d on a place for your vacation ?) 4. (D ; intr., tr.) (“to adjust accounts ; to adjust”) to ~ with (to ~ with one’s creditors ; we have ~d our accounts with our creditors) 5. (misc.) to ~ (a case) out of court ; to ~ oneself (comfortably) in an armchair ; to ~ on the land ; to ~ into a routine ; she ~d a large portion of her holdings on her children

settle back *v.* (D ; intr., refl.) to ~ in, into (she ~d (herself) back comfortably into her armchair = she ~d comfortably back into her armchair)

settled *adj.* to get ~

settle down *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) to ~ into, to (to ~ into a routine ; to ~ to family life) 2. (D ; intr.) to ~ with (she ~d down for the evening with a good book) 3. (E) to ~ to study 4. (misc.) to ~ for the night

settlement *n.* 1. to agree (BE), agree on, agree to, come to, hammer out, make, negotiate, reach a ~ (on) 2. to mediate a ~ 3. a fair, reasonable ; tentative ~ 4. a divorce ; lump-sum ; marriage ; out-of-court ; wage ~ 5. in ~ of (the payment was accepted in full ~ of all her debts)

set up *v.* 1. (d ; refl., tr.) (“to establish”) to ~ as (she set herself up as a real-estate agent) 2. (BE) (d ; refl.) (“to claim to be”) to ~ as (she ~s herself up as an expert on Chinese art) 3. (D ; intr., refl., tr.) (“to establish”) to ~ in (to set (oneself) up in business and then set smb. else up in business, too)

several *determiner, pronoun* 1. ~ of (~ of them) 2. (misc.) ~ more (~ more students ; ~ more of the students whom we had discussed earlier) USAGE NOTE : The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows. When a noun follows, the use of *of the* limits the meaning – we saw several students ; we saw several of the students whom we had discussed earlier.

sew *v.* 1. to ~ tightly ; together (to ~ two edges together tightly) 2. (C) she ~ed a dress for me ; or : she ~ed me a dress 3. (P) to ~ a button on/onto a shirt with a needle and thread

sewage *n.* 1. to treat ~ 2. raw, untreated ~

sewer *n.* a sanitary ; storm ~

sex *n.* [“sexual relations”] 1. to have ~ (with smb.) 2. good, great ~ 3. casual ; consensual ~ 4. extramarital ; marital ; premarital ~ 5. safe ; unsafe ~ (to practice safe ~) 6. illicit ; kinky (slang), perverse ~ 7. anal ; oral ~ 8. explicit ~ (pictures of explicit ~ were cut from the film) [“division of organisms into male and female”] 9. the female ; male ~ 10. a member of the opposite ~ 11. between the ~es (equality between the ~es) 12. (misc.) the equality of the ~es ; are women really ¬the fair/the weaker¬ ~ ?

sex organs *n.* female ; male ~

sexuality *n.* female ; human ; male ~

shack *n.* a dilapidated, run-down ; jerry-built ~

shackle *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ to (the prisoner was ~d to the bars ; the prisoner was ~d to another prisoner = the prisoners were ~d to each other) 2. (misc.) the prisoners were ~d together

shackles *n.* to cast off, throw off one’s ~

shack up *v.* (slang.) (D ; intr.) to ~ with (he ~ed up with his girlfriend)

shade I *n.* [“gradation of color, hue”] 1. a delicate, pale, pastel, soft ~ 2. a dark ; light ~ (see also **shades**) [“window cover”] (AE ; BE has *blinds*) 3. to draw ; pull down ; raise the ~s (see also **window shade**) [“shaded place”] 4. in the ~ [“misc.”] 5. a lampshade ; people of all ~s of opinion USAGE NOTE : Remember that to draw the shades is either to open them or to close them !

shade II *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ by, with ; from (I must ~ my head from the sun by wearing a hat) 2. (d ; intr.) to ~ into (the colors ~ into each other)

shades *n.* in ~ (this fabric comes in several ~)

shadow *n.* 1. to cast, produce, throw a ~ (the setting sun cast long ~s) 2. ~s deepen, fall 3. (misc.)

a (mere) ~ of one's former self; to walk in smb.'s ~ ("to be subservient to smb."); into the ~s; out of the ~s (a strange figure stepped out of the ~s and then stepped back into them again); under a ~ ("under suspicion"); to be afraid of one's (own) ~ ("to fear everything"); beyond a (CE)/the (AE) ~ of a doubt, beyond a ~ of doubt (BE) (see also **eye shadow**)

shaft *n.* 1. to bore, sink a ~ 2. a cardan (BE), drive (AE) ~ 3. an air; elevator (AE), lift (BE); mine ~

shake I *n.* ["act of shaking"] 1. to give smb. or smt. a ~ (she gave the rug a good ~) ["opportunity"] (colloq.) (AE) 2. a fair ~ (she got a fair ~)

shake II *v.* 1. to ~ hard, vigorously; violently 2. (D; tr.) to ~ at; in (he shook his fist at me; he shook his head at my foolishness; he shook his head in disbelief) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ from, out of (to ~ apples from a tree) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with fear) 5. (N; used with an adjective) the dog shook itself dry 6. (misc.) ~ well before using; let's ~ (hands) on it (to show that we agree); he shook me by the hand = he shook my hand = he shook hands with me

shake down *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from, out of (to ~ apples down from a tree)

shaken *adj.* badly, deeply; easily; visibly ~

shaker *n.* 1. a cocktail ~ 2. a pepper ~ (AE; BE has *pepper pot*); saltshaker (esp. AE; CE has *saltcellar*)

shake-up *n.* 1. a personnel ~ 2. during; in a ~ (many jobs were lost in the ~ and there was a lot of uncertainty during it)

shall *v.* 1. (F) we ~ see, shan't we?! 2. (misc.) "shall we dance?" "yes, let's!"; "let's go to the movies, shall we?" "yes, let's!; no, let's not."

shamble *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ across the field; to ~ through the streets

shambles *n.* 1. to make a ~ of; to turn smt. into a ~ 2. in (a) ~ (their economy is in ~)

shame I *n.* 1. to bring ~ on, to, upon 2. to feel ~ at (they felt ~ at accepting bribes) 3. (colloq.) an awful, crying, dirty ~ 4. a ~ to + inf. (it's a ~ to waste so much time = it's a ~ wasting so much time) 5. a ~ that + clause (it was a ~ that they'd wasted so much time) 6. in ~ (to hang one's head in ~) 7. to smb.'s ~ (to my ~, I never did help them) 8. with ~ (his cheeks burned with ~) 9. (misc.) to have no (sense of) ~; to put smb. to ~; a damn/damned ~; ~ on you!, for ~! (old-fashioned); a beautiful spot – (what a) ~ about the weather, though!

shame II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into doing smt.) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ out of 3. (R) it ~s me to admit it 4. (misc.) the government wants to name and ~ young offenders publicly

shameful *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of/for them to surrender) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that they surrendered)

shameless *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of/for them to do that)

shampoo *n.* ["washing of the hair"] 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to get, have a ~ ["shampoo liquid"] 3. to apply ~ 4. an anti-dandruff ~

shape I *n.* ["form"] 1. to give ~ to 2. to assume a ~; to take ~; to take the ~ of (our plans are beginning to take ~; to take the ~ of a human being) ["good physical condition"] 3. to get (oneself) into ~ 4. to keep (oneself) in ~ 5. in ~ 6. out of ~ ["stated physical or analogous condition"] 7. excellent, fine, superb, tip-top; good ~ 8. bad poor ~ 9. in (certain) ~ (to be in bad ~; she was in superb ~ today – she ran a mile and didn't get out of breath!; our house is in good ~; the roads are in terrible ~; the economy is in worse ~ than ever) 10. (misc.) she is in no ~ to drive

shape II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ clay into a jug) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from, out of (to ~ a jug out of clay)

shape up *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ as (the election ~d up as a major event) 2. (E) the election is ~ping up to be a major event

share I *n.* 1. to do one's ~ 2. an equal; fair; full; large, major; minor ~ 3. the lion's ~ 4. a ~ in, of (to have a ~ in/of the profits and get the lion's ~ of the kudos) (see also **shares**)

share II *v.* 1. to ~ equally; fairly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ among (the thieves ~d the loot among themselves) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in the profits) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ with (we ~d our food with them)

share out *v.* 1. to ~ equally; fairly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ among (the thieves ~d out the loot equally among themselves = the thieves ~d the loot out equally among themselves)

shares *n.* ["units of capital stock"] 1. to buy; sell ~ (on the stock market) 2. ordinary ~ (BE; AE has *common stock*) 3. preference ~ (BE; AE has *preferred stock*) 4. ~ close strong; weak 5. ~ open strong; weak 6. ~ are active; sluggish 7. ~ are firm, steady; rising; up 8. ~ go up, rise; rally 9. ~ are depressed; down; falling 10. ~ collapse, crash; fall, go down; plummet; slump

sharing *n.* 1. profit ~ 2. revenue ~ (by the states)

shark *n.* 1. a man-eating ~ 2. (fig.) a loan ~

sharp *adj.* 1. razor ~ (she has a razor-sharp mind that's as ~ as a razor!) ["severe"] 2. ~ with (the boss was rather ~ with the workers)

sharpener *n.* a knife; pencil ~

shatter *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ into (the glass ~ed into many small pieces)

shave I *n.* 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to get, have a ~ 3. a close ~ 4. (misc.) a close ~ ("a narrow escape")

shave II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ from, off (the carpenter ~d an inch off the door; the runner ~d ten seconds off the record) 2. (N; used with an adjective) she ~d me close; he ~d his head bald

shavings *n.* wood ~

shears *n.* 1. garden; pinking; pruning (AE) ~ 2. a pair of ~ (see also **secateurs**)

shed *n.* 1. a bicycle; garden, potting (BE); tool ~ 2. in a ~ (put the tools back in the tool ~)

sheen *n.* ["brightness"] 1. to give smt.; produce a ~ 2. a high ~

sheep *n.* 1. to raise, rear (BE) ~ 2. to shear ~ 3. ~ baa, bleat, go baa 4. ~ graze 5. a flock, herd of ~ 6. the meat of the ~ is mutton 7. a young ~ is a lamb; its meat is lamb 8. a female ~ is a ewe 9. a male ~ is a ram 10. (misc.) ~ are tended by a shepherd; to round up stray ~

sheet *n.* [“piece of bed linen”] 1. a bed; cotton; flannel; percale; silk ~ 2. a double; king-sized; queen-sized; single; twin ~ 3. a fitted; flat ~ 4. (misc.) to change the ~s = to put on clean/fresh ~s (I put on fresh ~s and snuggled down between them) [“financial statement”] [“record”] 5. a balance ~ 6. (BE) a wages ~ [“diagram”] 7. a flow ~ [“piece of paper”] 8. a blank ~ [“newspaper”] (colloq.) (now esp. AE) 9. a scandal ~ [“statement”] 10. a charge ~ (“a statement of charges brought against an accused person”) [“pan”] (now esp. AE) 11. a cookie ~ (BE has *biscuit tin*)

shelf *n.* 1. to put up a ~ 2. adjustable; built-in shelves 3. a continental ~ 4. (misc.) on the ~ (“no longer in demand”) (also fig.) she’s still unmarried at 28 and beginning to feel she’s on the ~; to stock shelves with supplies

shell *n.* [“projectile”] 1. to fire a ~ at 2. to fuse a ~ 3. to lob a ~ (the enemy’s artillery was lobbing ~s into our positions) 4. an armor-piercing; high-explosive; hollow-charge; incendiary; mortar; smoke ~ 5. ~s burst, explode [“outer cover”] 6. to come out of, emerge from one’s ~ 7. to go into, withdraw into one’s ~ (also fig.); talk to him or he’ll just go into his ~ again

shellacking *n.* [“beating”] (colloq.) (AE) 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to get, take a ~

shelling *n.* constant, round-the-clock; heavy; light ~

shell out *v.* (colloq.) (“to pay”) 1. (B) they had to ~ money to their creditors 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ a lot for a new car) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ on (to ~ a lot on household expenses) 4. (misc.) we had to ~ a lot of money (in order) to take this vacation!

shelter I *n.* 1. to afford, give, offer, provide ~ 2. to seek; take ~ from 3. an air-raid, bomb, underground; fallout; homeless ~ (see also **tax shelter**) 4. in; under a ~ (we thought we were safe in the air-raid ~)

shelter II *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from

shelving *n.* 1. to put up ~ 2. adjustable; built-in ~

shepherd *v.* (P; tr.) to ~ children around the museum

sheriff *n.* a deputy ~

sherry *n.* 1. cooking; cream; dry; sweet ~ 2. a bottle; glass of ~

shield I *n.* a heat ~ (of a spacecraft)

shield II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ against, from

shift I *n.* [“change”] 1. to bring about, produce; represent a ~ in 2. (ling.) a consonant; functional; vowel ~ 3. a gradual; dramatic; sudden ~ 4. a ~ away from; in; to, towards (there was a gradual ~ in public opinion away from democracy to dictatorship) [“work period”] 5. a day; eight-hour; night; split; swing ~ (she works the night ~; to work an eight-hour ~) [“transmission”] (AE) 6. an automatic; standard, stick ~ (CE has *transmission*) (my car has a stick ~ and I know how to work/operate it)

shift II *v.* 1. to ~ gradually; dramatically; suddenly ~ 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; onto, to (to ~ responsibility to smb. else; public opinion is ~ing gradually away from democracy to dictatorship); (AE) (to ~ from first to second gear) (CE has *to change from first to second gear*) 3. (misc.) to ~ for oneself (“to manage on one’s own”); to ~ into neutral (AE; CE has *to change into neutral*)

shin *n.* 1. to bark (“scrape”) one’s ~s 2. on smb.’s ~ (he got a bad scrape on his ~)

shine I *n.* [“liking”] (colloq.) 1. to take a ~ to [“shining of shoes”] 2. to give smb. a ~, to give smb.’s shoes a ~ (“to shine smb.’s shoes”)

shine II *v.* 1. to ~ brightly 2. (D; intr.) (“to give light”) to ~ on (the hot sun was ~ing directly on our heads) 3. (P) (“to direct”) to ~ on (~ the lights on this part of the field and esp. along the hedges and under the trees)

shiner *n.* [“black eye”] (colloq.) (old-fashioned) 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to sport a ~

shingle *n.* [“small sign designating a professional office”] (colloq.) (AE) to hang out one’s ~

shingles I *n.* [“building material on a roof”] to lay ~

shingles II *n.* [“herpes zoster”] (med.) to come down with, develop, get; have ~

ship I *n.* 1. to build; refit a ~ 2. to christen; commission; launch a ~ 3. to board, get on, get on board; take (a) ~ 4. to disembark from, get off a ~ 5. to berth, dock; command; navigate; pilot, sail, steer a ~ 6. to scuttle; sink; torpedo a ~ 7. to abandon ~ (when it is sinking) 8. to jump ~ (“to desert from a ship’s crew”) 9. to raise a sunken ~ 10. to load; unload a ~ 11. a battleship; capital; naval; supply; troop ~; warship 12. a cargo; cruise; hospital; merchant; passenger ~ 13. an oceangoing; sailing ~; steamship 14. an airship; rocket ~; spaceship; starship 15. a ~ heaves; leaks; pitches; rolls; sinks 16. a ~ comes into harbor; docks; goes, sails 17. a ~ for; from; to (we took a ~ from New York to Southampton) 18. by ~ (to travel by ~ from New York to Southampton) 19. in; on a ~ (to cross the ocean in a ~ and sleep on the ~) 20. the bow; stern of a ~ 21. (misc.) to run a tight ~ (“to operate efficiently”) USAGE NOTE: The terms *rocket ship* and *spaceship* are now used chiefly in science fiction. The terms *spacecraft* and *space vehicle* are now used for the real thing. However, the term *spaceship* is sometimes used for “space shuttle”. The term *starship* is used in science fiction for a spaceship capable of interstellar travel; in particular, the Starship Enterprise in the television program *Star Trek*.

ship II *v.* 1. (A) they have ~ped the merchandise to us; or: they have ~ped us the merchandise 2. (P; tr.) to ~ cargo through the Panama Canal; to ~ goods to South America from New York

shipboard *n.* on ~

ship off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (they ~ped their children off to their favorite summer camp = they ~ped off their children to their favorite summer camp)

ship out *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; to (they ~ped the goods out from New York to London = they ~ped out the goods from New York to London = they ~ped the goods from New York out to London; we ~ped out from Philadelphia)

shipping *n.* merchant ~

shipwreck *n.* 1. to experience, suffer (a) ~ 2. to survive a ~

shipyard *n.* a naval ~

shirk *v.* (G) no one should ~ doing their duty

shirt *n.* 1. to put on; take off; wear a ~ 2. to button; unbutton a ~ 3. to tuck in one's ~ 4. a cotton; silk ~ 5. a body; dress; hair; polo (AE); sport (AE), sports (CE) ~; sweatshirt; tee ~, T-shirt; undershirt 6. a long-sleeve (AE), long-sleeved (CE); short-sleeve (AE), short-sleeved (CE) ~ 7. a drip-dry, wash-and-wear ~ 8. (misc.) to lose one's ~ ("to lose everything") (they lost their ~ in the recession) (see also *shirtsleeves* at **sleeve**)

shiver I *n.* 1. to feel a ~ 2. (misc.) a ~ of excitement went up and down my spine at the performance – it was the same ~ that passed through the whole audience (see also **shivers**)

shiver II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (she ~ed at the thought of getting up) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from, with (to ~ from the cold) 3. (E) she ~ed to think she'd have to get up soon

shivers *n.* (colloq.) 1. to get; have the ~ 2. (misc.) it gave her the ~ to think she'd have to get up soon

shock I *n.* 1. to give smb. a ~ (her arrest gave her quite a ~!) 2. to express; feel a ~ 3. to get; have a ~ 4. to absorb a ~ 5. to get over, recover from a ~ 6. to come as a ~ (to smb.) 7. a mild, slight ~ 8. a first, initial; deep, great, nasty, profound, severe, terrible; rude, sudden ~ (at; of) (the initial ~ of being arrested; her initial ~ at being arrested) 9. (a) culture ~; future ~ 10. (an) electric ~; insulin ~ (she got an electric ~ when she touched the wire) 11. (an) emotional ~ (it came as a deep emotional ~ to her) 12. a ~ to (her arrest was a ~ to everybody) 13. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ to learn of her arrest = it was a ~ learning of her arrest) 14. a ~ that + clause (it came as a ~ (to everybody) that she had been arrested) 15. ~ at (everyone expressed ~ at her arrest) 16. in ~ (she seemed to be in ~) 17. (misc.) a bit of a ~ (her arrest was a bit of a ~ to everyone); in a state of ~ (she seemed to be in a state of ~ after the initial ~ of her arrest; ~ and awe) (see also *shock to the system* at **system**)

shock II *v.* 1. to ~ deeply, greatly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ by, with (she ~ed me by her behavior) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into doing smt.) 4. (R) it ~ed everybody (to learn) that she had been arrested 5. (misc.) their campaign ~ed us out of our complacency

shocked *adj.* 1. deeply, greatly; easily ~ 2. ~ at, by (everybody was ~ at her arrest) 3. ~ to + inf. (everybody was ~ to learn that she had been arrested) 4. ~ that + clause (everyone was ~ that she had been arrested)

shocking *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to learn that she had been arrested) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that she ¬had been/should have been¬ arrested)

shoelace *n.* 1. to tie; undo, untie a ~ 2. to knot a ~ (he knotted a ~ that had come undone) 3. a pair of ~s

shoes *n.* 1. to put on; wear ~ 2. to slip off; take off ~ 3. to break in (new) ~ 4. to lace (up); unlace (one's) ~ 5. to brush; polish, shine ~ 6. to fix, mend (esp. BE), repair ~ 7. tight; well-fitting ~ 8. high-heeled; low-heeled ~ 9. ballet; basketball; earth; gym ~; overshoes; running; saddle ~ (esp. AE); snowshoes; sports; tennis; track; walking ~ 10. ~ fit; pinch 11. a pair of ~ 12. (misc.) to fill smb.'s ~ ("to replace smb."); I'd hate to be in your ~s right now! ("in your position")

shoestring *n.* (colloq.) ["limited funds"] on a ~ (to operate a business on a ~)

shoo *v.* (colloq.) (D; tr.) ("to chase") to ~ away from, out of (~ the cat out of the room)

shoot I *n.* ["young plant"] 1. a bamboo ~ ["hunting trip"] (esp. BE) 2. (to go on) a tiger ~

shoot II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to execute by shooting") to ~ as; for (he was shot as a deserter = he was shot for desertion) 2. (D; intr.) ("to fire") to ~ at (to ~ at smb. with a gun or perhaps with a bow and arrow) 3. (colloq.) (esp. AE) (d; intr.) ("to aim") to ~ for (to ~ for the top) 4. (D; intr., tr.) ("to fire") to ~ from (to ~ an arrow from a bow) 5. (D; tr.) to ~ in (she shot him in the leg) 6. (D; intr., tr.) ("to fire") to ~ into (to ~ into the air) 7. (N; used with an adjective) ("to hit with gunfire") to ~ smb. dead 8. (P; intr.) ("to move quickly") they shot past us in a sports car 9. (misc.) to ~ on sight; to ~ to kill; to ~ it out with smb.

shoot back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (they shot at us so we shot back at them)

shoot-out *n.* to have a ~ (with)

shoot up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into the sky) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ into (he shot up heroin into a vein = he shot heroin up into a vein)

shop I *n.* ["store"] 1. to keep (BE), run; manage, operate a ~ 2. an antique ~; bookshop; butcher (AE), butcher's (BE); chemist's (BE; AE has *drugstore*); duty-free; gift; green-grocer's; high-street (BE); novelty; pastry ~; pawnshop; pet; stationer's (BE; AE has *stationery shop/store*) ~; sweetshop (BE; AE has *candy store*); charity (BE), thrift (AE); toy ~ (see also **workshop**) 3. a draper's ~ (BE; AE has *dry-goods store*) 4. at, in (she works in a ~) ["workshop"] 5. a barbershop (esp. AE), barber's ~ (BE); beauty (esp. AE; CE has *beauty parlor*); body; machine; paint; printing; repair ~ ["place of work"] 6. a closed ~ ("firm that hires only union members") 7. an open ~ ("firm that hires union members and non-union members") 8. a union ~ ("firm that hires only workers who will join the union if they are not already members") ["misc."] 9. to close down (a) ~ ("to stop operations"); to introduce a closed/open/union ~ at work; to set up ~ ("to begin operations"); to talk ~ ("to discuss one's work while not at work"); a coffee ~ (AE; BE has *coffee bar*); a betting ~ (BE; CE has *bookmaker's*) USAGE NOTE: *Shop* and *store* are CE. In BE, *store* tends to be used for a very large retail establishment (*department store*) and *shop* for the others (*bookshop, sweetshop*). In AE, *store* is used for all, regardless of size (*department store, book store, candy store*). However, AE can also use *shop* for a small specialized store or boutique (*bookshop, millinery shop*). In BE *a chemist* (or sometimes *a chemist's*) is more likely than *a chemist's shop.*

shop II *v.* 1. (D: intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for food) 2. (misc.) to go ~ping (for smt.); let's go window ~ping; to ~ smb. to the police (BE; slang) ("to inform on smb. to the police")

shop around *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for bargains)

shopper *n.* a Christmas; comparison; window ~

shopping *n.* 1. to do the ~; to go ~ 2. Christmas; comparison; window ~ (to do the Christmas ~; to do comparison ~)

shore *n.* 1. (AE; BE has *seaside*) at; by the ~ (a vacation at the ~) 2. off ~ (two miles off ~) 3. on a ~ (smb. was standing on the ~ and began walking along it) 4. to reach (a) ~ USAGE NOTE: the bank(s) of a river or canal; the shore of a lake or sea; the coast (of an ocean).

shorefront *n.* (AE) along, on the ~

short I *adj.* 1. ~ in (~ in stature) 2. ~ of, on (colloq.) (~ of funds; to go (BE), run (CE) ~ of food; to fall ~ of one's goal; he is a nice fellow, but a bit ~ on common sense) 3. (misc.) she is rather ~ for her age; to be caught ~ ("to find oneself in acute need"); to be caught ~ (BE; colloq.) ("to feel the need to go to the toilet"); the boss was ~ ("impatient") with me; a bit, little ~; Will is ~ for William (see also **stop short**)

short II *n.* 1. (we called William Will) for ~ 2. in ~ (in ~, it was a disaster)

shortage *n.* 1. an acute, desperate, severe ~ 2. a food; fuel; housing; labor; teacher; water ~; wartime ~s (facing desperate food ~s) 3. a ~ of (facing desperate ~s of food) 4. no ~ of (there's never any ~ of reasons to be/for being idle!)

shortcut *n.* 1. to take a ~ (we took a ~ (home)) 2. a ~ from; to (I know a ~ from our house to the station) 3. (misc.) (fig.) a ~ to (a ~ to success)

shorten *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ by (to ~ trousers (by) two inches) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a manuscript to acceptable length)

shortening *n.* (esp. AE) vegetable ~

shorthand *n.* 1. to take; transcribe ~ 2. (to take smt. down) in ~

short haul (esp. AE) see **short run** (see also *short-haul flight* at **flight I**)

short-list *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (several applicants were ~ed for the job)

short run *n.* ["short-range outlook"] in, over the ~

shorts *n.* 1. Bermuda; boxer ~ 2. a pair of ~

short shrift *n.* ["short work"] 1. (AE) to make ~ of ("to deal with quickly") 2. to give smb. ~ ("to deal with smb. summarily") 3. to get ~ from smb. ("to be treated summarily by smb.")

shortsighted *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them not to provide for their old age)

short term see **short run**

short way *n.* 1. we took the ~ (home) 2. a ~ from; to (it's just a ~ from our house to the station)

shot *n.* ["act of shooting"] 1. to fire, take a ~ at (she took a ~ at him with a gun or perhaps with a bow and arrow) 2. a random; warning ~ (to send a warning ~ across the bow of a ship) 3. a gunshot; pistol; rifle ~ 4. a ~ from (fire a ~ from a rifle) 5. a ~ in (he got a ~ in the leg) 6. a ~ into (fire a ~ into the air) ["marksman"] 7. a bad; crack, good ~ ["throw, kick of the ball to score points"] 8. (esp. basketball) to make, sink; miss; take a ~ (to take a ~ at the basket) 9. (basketball) a dunk, stuff; foul; jump; lay-up ~ 10. (tennis) a cross-court; drop; passing ~ 11. (ice hockey) a penalty ~ 12. a ~ from (he sank a ~ from the back of the court!) ["metal ball used in the shot put"] 13. to put the ~ ["injection"] 14. to give smb. a ~ 15. to get; have a ~ 16. a booster; flu ~ ["critical remark"] 17. a cheap; parting ~ ["attempt"] (colloq.) 18. to get; have a ~ at (the boxer never got a ~ at the title) ["chance"] (colloq.) (AE) 19. a ~ that + clause (it's a five to one ~ that she'll find out) ["misc."] 20. to call the ~s ("to direct matters"); a ~ in the arm ("a stimulus"); a ~ in the dark ("a wild guess") (see also **potshot**)

shotgun *n.* a sawed-off (AE), sawn-off (BE) ~ (see also **gun** 1, 2, 4, 5, 6)

should *v.* (F) she ~ help, shouldn't she?; "~ she?"/"she ~?"; "yes, she ~"/"no, she shouldn't"

shoulder I *n.* 1. to shrug one's ~s 2. to square, straighten one's ~s 3. broad, square ~s 4. a dislocated ~ 5. (misc.) ~ to ~ (to work ~ to ~) ("to work closely together"); to put one's ~ to the wheel ("to work very hard"); to rub ~s with ("to associate with"); to tap smb. on the ~; straight from the ~ ("in a direct manner"); we parked our car on the ~ (AE)/hard ~ (BE) of the road; she is head and ~s above any of the other candidates (see also **cold shoulder**)

shoulder II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ through (she ~ed her way through the crowd)

shout I *n.* 1. to give a ~ 2. a jubilant; loud; piercing; triumphant ~ 3. a ~ rang out, went up

shout II *v.* 1. to ~ jubilantly; loudly; triumphantly 2. (B) she ~ed a few words to me 3. (D; intr.) to ~ at (don't ~ at me) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ for, with (she ~ed for/with joy) 5. (E; at; to) she ~ed at/to us to call the police 6. (L; at; to) she ~ed (at/to us) that we should call the police = "call the police!" she ~ed (at/to us) 7. (misc.) he ~ed himself hoarse

shove I *n.* to give smb. a ~

shove II *v.* (P) ~ the suitcases under the bed; she ~d the files into the drawer; she ~d him away; she ~d her way through the crowd and up to the front

shovel I *n.* a snow; steam ~

shovel II *v.* (P; tr.) they ~ed the snow to the side; I ~ed the coal into the bin

show I *n.* ["performance"]["program"] 1. to direct; do, produce, put on, stage; promote; sponsor a ~ (I saw him in a stage ~) 2. to attend, catch (colloq.), go to, see, take in a ~ 3. a chat (BE), talk; quiz; sketch; TV ~ (to sponsor a TV ~; I saw her on one of the funniest-ever TV sketch ~s) 4. a one-man, one-woman; talent; variety ~ 5. a floor; peep ~ 6. a horse; ice ~ 7. a Punch-and-Judy; puppet; sound-and-light ~ (see also **air show**) ["display, exhibition"] 8. to hold, organize, produce, put on, stage; promote; sponsor a ~ 9. to attend, go to, see, take in a ~ 10. an antique; art; auto (AE), motor (BE); fashion; flower ~ ["misc."] 11. for ~ ("designed to make an impression"); bad ~! ("very bad!"); good ~! ("very good!"); to put on a ~ ("to pretend"); to steal the ~ ("to draw the most attention"); to stop the ~ ("to receive too much applause, attention for the show to continue") (he sang a show-stopping song on stage last night; that song of his was a real show-stopper!); a ~ of strength; who's running the ~? ("who's in charge here?"); to get the ~ on the road (slang) ("to get things going")

show II *v.* 1. (A) ("to display") ~ the book to me; or: show me the book 2. (d; tr.) ("to guide") to ~ around, over, round (esp. BE), through; in; out; up (she ~ed me through the museum; Lord Fauntleroy asked his butler to ~ me in and to ~ me out afterwards) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ for ("to have as a result of") (what can we ~ for our efforts?) 4. (d; tr.) ("to guide") to ~ to (I ~ed her to her seat; to ~ smb. to the door) (see also *show smb. the door* at **door**) 5. (J) ("to display") the photograph ~ed them conversing 6. (L; may have an object) ("to demonstrate") the research ~ed (¬us/to us¬) that our theory was correct 7. (M) ("to demonstrate") she ~ed herself to be an excellent worker; history ~ed her to have been a prophet 8. (Q; usu. has an object) ("to demonstrate") can you ~ me how to operate the copying machine? 9. (misc.) to ~ to advantage ("to show in the best light"); to ~ oneself in public; don't worry: the stain on your shirt hardly ~s

showdown *n.* 1. to come to, have; force a ~ (if it comes to a ~, the boss will support her rather than me) 2. a ~ between; over; with (we had a ~with the boss over the change in plans)

shower I *n.* ["bath using an overhead spray, showerbath"] 1. to have (BE), take a ~ ["short period of rain"]["brief downpour"] 2. a heavy; light ~ 3. April; intermittent; passing; scattered ~s 4. a meteor; rain; snow; thunder ~; intermittent; scattered ~s 5. a sun ~ (esp. AE) ("rain that falls while the sun is shining") ["party to which the guests are expected to bring gifts"] (AE) 6. to make a ~ for smb. 7. a baby; bridal ~ ["misc."] 8. a ~ of arrows (rained down on our soldiers)

shower II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ gifts on smb.) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smb. with gifts)

showing *n.* ["performance"] 1. to make a ~ 2. a disappointing; good; poor ~ (he made a poor ~ in the debate) 3. a private ~ (attend a private ~ of the film at the director's house) 4. on a certain ~ (on its current ~ in the polls, the Conservative Radical Party may defeat the Radical Conservative Party)

show off *v.* 1. (B) they ~ed off their new car to all the neighbors = they ~ed their new car off to all the neighbors 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (she was ~ing off to everyone)

show up *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (the incident ~ed him up as a charlatan) 2. (s) he ~ed up drunk

shrapnel *n.* to catch a piece of ~ (in the leg)

shreds *n.* 1. to cut, rip, tear smt. to ~ 2. (misc.) her clothing was in ~

shrewd *adj.* 1. ~ at, in 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of/for her to buy real estate when the market was depressed)

shrewdness *n.* 1. to display ~ 2. ~ at, in (she showed great/real ~ in buying real estate when the market was depressed) 3. the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to buy real estate when the market was depressed)

shriek I *n.* 1. to give, let out a ~ 2. a loud ~

shriek II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in, with (to ~ with laughter) 3. (H; at) they ~ed at us to stop = "stop!" they ~ed (at us)

shrine *n.* 1. to consecrate; create, establish a ~ 2. to desecrate a ~ 3. a holy, sacred ~ 4. a ~ to 5. at a ~ (to pray at a ~ to the Virgin)

shrink *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from responsibility; "The summer soldier and the sunshine patriot will, in this crisis, ~ from the service of his country" – Thomas Paine, *The American Crisis*, December 19, 1776)

shrouded *adj.* ~ in (~ in mystery)

shrubbery, shrubs *n.* 1. to prune; trim ~ 2. ornamental ~

shrug I *n.* 1. to give a ~ (of the shoulders) 2. with a ~ (of the shoulders)

shrug II *v.* (D; intr.) 1. to ~ at ("to express indifference to") (she ~ged at the suggestion) 2. (misc.) she ~ged her shoulders at the suggestion

shudder I *n.* 1. to send a ~ (through the audience) 2. to give a ~ 3. a ~ passed, ran (through the audience) 4. (misc.) the news sent a ~ through our competitors; the shock sent a ~ down my spine (see also **shudders**)

shudder II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at the thought of going back to work) 2. (E) I ~ to think what lies ahead! 3. (misc.) the car ~ed to a stop

shudders *n.* 1. to give smb. the ~ (her weird appearance gave me the ~) 2. to get the ~ (I get the ~ whenever I think about our narrow escape)

shuffle *v.* (P; intr.) they ~d idly along the street; they ~d slowly through the park

shufty *n.* (slang) (BE) ["quick look"] to have a ~ at

shunt *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ from (the trains were ~ed from the station) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ onto, to (to ~ a train onto a siding)

shut *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ the door on smb.) (also fig.) (to ~ the door on any change) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (they shut their eyes to poverty) 3. (N; used with an adjective) she shut the door tight

shut off *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ from (they shut themselves off from their neighbors)

shutter *n.* ["shield in a camera"] 1. to release the ~ ["window cover"] 2. to close; open the ~s

shuttle I *n.* ["vehicle used on an established route"] 1. to take a ~ 2. a space ~ 3. a ~ between

shuttle II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ between (these ships ~ between the two ports) 2. (P; tr.) to ~ tourists to the terminal

shy I *adj.* ["wary"] ["nervous"] 1. painfully ~ 2. ~ about, of (BE) 3. ~ with (he was very ~ with girls) ["lacking"] (esp. AE) 4. ~ of (we are still a little ~ of our quota)

shy II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (the horse shied at the noise)

shy away *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ from (they shied away from contact with their neighbors)

sic *v.* (D; tr.) ("to urge to attack") to ~ on (to ~ a dog on smb.)

sick *adj.* 1. ~ at (~ at heart; ~ at the prospect of leaving home) 2. ~ of (we are ~ of the red tape) 3. (misc.) ~ to one's stomach (AE; BE has just *sick*); worried ~; to be ~ and tired of smt.; to be taken ~; to make smb. ~ ("to disgust smb."); to be off ~ (and not at work) (see also *call in sick* at **call in**)

sicken *v.* 1. (BE) (d; intr.) to ~ for; of (they ~ed of the endless parties; she's ~ing for the flu) 2. (R) it ~ed me to watch them bicker constantly

sickening *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to watch them bicker constantly)

sickness *n.* 1. altitude, mountain; car; decompression; morning; motion, travel; radiation; sea; sleeping ~ 2. in ~ (and in health)

sick parade *n.* (BE) see *sick call* at **call I** *n.*

side I *n.* ["right or left part"] 1. the left, left-hand; right, right-hand ~ 2. the credit; debit ~ (of a ledger) 3. on a ~ (on the sunny ~ of the street) ["faction, party"] 4. to take smb.'s ~; to take ~s ("to support a faction") 5. the losing; right; winning; wrong ~ 6. on smb.'s ~ (of a dispute) ("Which Side Are You On?" – Florence Reece, labor-union song, 1930s) ["direction"] 7. the opposite ~ 8. from a certain ~ (from the other ~; from all ~s) 9. (to turn) to one ~ ["surface"] ["part"] 10. a far; near; reverse ~ 11. the east; north; south; west ~ 12. on a ~ (on the other ~; on the north ~ of the town square) ["aspect"] 13. the bright; dark, gloomy; funny, humorous; practical ~ (of things); the seamy ~ of life 14. a ~ to (there are two ~s to every question) 15. (misc.) to study all ~s of a problem ["area near a person"] 16. at, by smb.'s ~ (she sat at my ~) ["shore, bank"] 17. on a ~ (on the other ~ of the river) ["misc."] 18. from ~ to ~; from all ~s; to be on the safe ~; I have a pain in my left ~, which is why I sleep on my right ~; the B ~ ("the less important side or part"); the flip ~ (colloq.) (the car runs well – the flip ~ is that it costs a lot); to tutor smb. on the ~ ("to tutor smb. part-time"); we split our ~s laughing ("we laughed long and hard"); time is on our ~ ("time is working for us"); on smb.'s ~ (of the family); he's a bit on the short ~ (see also *bit on the side* at **bit I** *n.*; the Usage Note for **team**)

side II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ against; with (to ~ with the union (and) against the bosses)

sideline *n.* 1. a ~ for; in; of; to (a ~ of doing B&B can develop into a lucrative ~ for people in villages; people in villages can develop a lucrative ~ in (doing) B&B) 2. as a ~ (he's developing B&B as a lucrative ~ to his primary job as a teacher)

sidelines *n.* on the ~ ("out of action")

sidestroke *n.* to do, swim the ~

siding *n.* ["material attached to the outside of a building"] (AE; CE has *cladding*) 1. to install ~ 2. aluminum ~ ["short stretch of railway track"] 3. a railway ~ 4. on a ~

sidle up *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (she ~d up to me)

siege *n.* 1. to conduct a ~ of; to lay ~ to 2. to lift, raise a ~ 3. a state of ~ (in a state of ~) 4. at, during a ~ (he was killed at the ~ of Leningrad) 5. under ~ (a city under ~)

siesta *n.* to have, take a ~

sieve *n.* to pass smt. through a ~ (see also *a memory like a sieve* at **memory**)

sift *v.* 1. to ~ carefully 2. (d; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ fact from fiction) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ through (to ~ through the debris)

sigh I *n.* 1. to breathe, heave a ~ (of relief) 2. to give, let out a ~ 3. an audible; deep, profound; inaudible ~ 4. a ~ of contentment; a ~ of relief

sigh II *v.* 1. to ~ audibly; contentedly; deeply; inaudibly 2. to ~ in, with relief

sight *n.* ["view"] 1. to catch; keep ~ of 2. to lose ~ of 3. at (the) ~ (to faint at the (very/merest) ~ of blood; to fall in love at first ~) 4. by ~ (to know smb. by ~) 5. in, into, within ~ (the ship was no longer in ~; we fired our torpedoes when the ship came into (plain) ~) 6. on ~ (to shoot looters on ~) 7. out of ~ 8. an awe-inspiring; beautiful; interesting; magnificent, marvelous, wonderful; memorable; pleasant; spectacular; thrilling ~ 9. a comical, funny ~ 10. a familiar ~ 11. a miserable; pitiful; sorry ~ 12. a disturbing; horrendous, horrible, horrific; ugly; unpleasant ~ ["device used to aim a gun"] 13. to adjust one's ~s 14. to line up one's ~s (on) 15. a front; panoramic; peep; rear; telescopic ~ 16. (misc.) to have smb./smt. in one's ~s (also fig.) (the government has pollution in its ~s and wants to end it) ["ability to see"] ["sense of sight, eyesight"] 17. deteriorating, failing, poor, weak; keen; perfect ~ 18. to lose; regain one's ~ (see also see also *line of sight* at **line I** *n.*; **sights**)

sighting *n.* a confirmed; radar; telescopic; unconfirmed; visual ~ (there have been several unconfirmed visual ~s of UFOs)

sights *n.* ["aspirations"] 1. to set one's ~ on (she set her ~ on a career in politics) 2. to lower; raise one's ~ 3. (misc.) to set one's ~ high ["something worth seeing"] 4. to see, take in the ~ (the tourists took in the ~) 5. to show smb. the ~

sign I *n.* ["indication"] 1. to display, give, show a ~ (he showed ~s of advanced emphysema; they showed no ~s of life; the volcano had shown no ~ of erupting) 2. a clear, obvious; sure, telltale, unmistakable ~ 3. an encouraging ~ 4. a danger; warning ~ (see also **stop sign**) 5. vital ~s ("basic indications of life") (to check/take a patient's vital ~s) 6. a ~ that + clause (there had been no ~ that the volcano would erupt) ["mark, symbol"] 7. a minus; plus ~ 8. a dollar; pound ~ 9. a call ~ ("identifying letters of a radio station") ["marker"] ["placard"] 10. to erect; post, put up; set up a ~ 11. a for rent (AE), to let (BE); for sale; no smoking; no trespassing; road, traffic; warning ~ (follow the road ~s; they put up a for-sale ~) 12. a ~ forbids; says; warns (the police put up a warning ~ saying that the road was closed) 13. (esp. AE) a ~ that + clause (the police put up a ~ that the road was closed) ["misc."] 14. to make the ~ of the cross; these new attitudes are a ~ of the times (see also **high sign**)

sign II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (she had to ~ for the letter) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (the player ~ed with the team yesterday) 3. (misc.) to ~ on the dotted line 4. (L; to) ("to communicate in sign language") she ~ed (to us) that the road was still closed

signal I *n.* ["sign"] ["message"] 1. to flash, give, send, send out, transmit; put on; use a ~ 2. to get, pick up, receive a ~ 3. to unscramble a ~ 4. a clear, unmistakable ~ 5. a danger, distress; prearranged; warning ~ 6. a smoke ~ (American Indians used to send up smoke ~s) 7. a turn ~ (AE; BE has *indicator*) 8. (AE) a traffic ~ 9. a storm ~ 10. a ~ from; to 11. a ~ to + inf. (the ~ to attack) 12. a ~ that + clause (the troops received the ~ that the attack was to begin) 13. at, on a ~ (the raid began at a given ~) 14. (misc.) she made a ~ for us to leave; (Am. football) to call the ~s (also fig.) ["electrical impulses"] 15. a radar; radio; shortwave ~ 16. a strong; weak ~ ["misc."] 17. to give out the wrong ~s ("to give the wrong impression"); to send mixed ~s ("to be vague about one's intentions")

signal II *v.* 1. to ~ frantically; wildly 2. (B) they ~ed their position to us 3. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for help) 4. (E; to) she ~ed to us to come closer 5. (H) she ~ed us to come closer 6. (L; to; may have an object) the radio operator ~ed (to us)/~ed (us) that the ship was in distress; she ~ed (to us) that we should come closer 7. (Q; to) she ~ed (to) us how close we should come 8. (misc.) she ~ed for us to come closer

signatory *n.* a ~ to (the ~ries to the treaty)

signature *n.* 1. to affix; scrawl; write one's ~ 2. to put one's ~ on, to 3. to bear a ~ (the treaty bore the president's ~) 4. to notarize; witness a ~ 5. to forge smb.'s ~

significance *n.* 1. to acquire; have ~ for 2. to attach ~ to 3. deep, great; statistical ~ 4. to be of ~ for, to

significant *adj.* 1. ~ for, to 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to note that our ambassador was not invited) 3. ~ that + clause (it is highly/very ~ that our ambassador was not invited)

signify *v.* 1. (L; to) their statements ~ (to us) that no action will be taken 2. (misc.) she ~fied her assent with a nod; all those in favor, ~ by saying "aye"

sign on *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ as (to ~ as a seaman) 2. (D; intr.) (BE) to ~ for (to ~ for the dole)

sign out *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (we ~ed out three books from the library = we ~ed three books out from/of the library)

sign over *v.* (B) she ~ed over the property to her children = she ~ed the property over to her children

sign up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ as (to ~ as a volunteer) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (she ~ed up for an evening course; to sign smb. up for a course) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (they ~ed up with the volunteers) 4. (E) they ~ed up to serve as volunteers 5. (H) they ~ed us up to serve as volunteers

silence *n.* 1. to impose ~ 2. to keep, maintain, observe ~ 3. to break (the) ~ 4. (an) absolute, complete, perfect, pindrop (South Asian English), total, utter ~ 5. a deep, pregnant, profound; prolonged; respectful, reverent ~ 6. (an) awkward; pained; shocked; stony; stunned ~ 7. a dead; eerie; hushed; ominous 8. ~ descends; reigns 9. in ~ (we were received in ~) 10. (misc.) radio ~; a conspiracy of ~; a vow of ~; a wall of ~; a deafening ~

silent *adj.* 1. absolutely, completely, totally, utterly ~ 2. to become, fall ~ 3. to keep, remain ~ 4. ~ about

silhouette *n.* in ~ (I saw it only in ~)

silhouetted *adj.* ~ against, on (~ against a light background)

silk *n.* ["fine fabric"] 1. to spin ~ 2. fine ~ 3. artificial, synthetic; natural; pure; raw ~ 4. (misc.) as smooth as ~ ["misc."] (BE) 5. to take ~ ("to become a King's Counsel or Queen's Counsel")

silkworm *n.* 1. to keep (BE), raise (esp. AE), rear (BE) ~s 2. ~s spin cocoons

silly *adj.* 1. ~ about 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of/for her to say that = saying that was a ~ thing for her to do) 3. (misc.) to make smb. look ~

silver *n.* pure, sterling ~

similar *adj.* 1. distinctly, strikingly ~ 2. ~ in (~ in outlook) 3. ~ to (this specimen is ~ to that one)

similarity *n.* 1. to bear, have (a) ~ 2. a distinct, striking ~ 3. a ~ among, between; in; to (~ in outlook)

simmer *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with excitement)

simple *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to do the job = it was ~ doing the job = it was a ~ job to do = the job was ~ to do)

simultaneous *adj.* ~ with

sin I *n.* 1. to commit a ~ 2. to expiate a ~ 3. to absolve smb. of ~ 4. to forgive smb.'s ~ 5. a cardinal; deadly; inexpiable; mortal; unforgivable, unpardonable; venial ~ 6. original ~ 7. a ~ against 8. a ~ to + inf. (it's a ~ to tell a lie) 9. a ~ that + clause (it's a ~ that her talents are being wasted!) 10. (misc.) (obsol.) to live in ~ ("to live together without being married")

sin II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ against

since *adv.*, *conjunction, prep.* 1. ever ~ 2. long ~

sincere *adj.* 1. ~ about (she was ~ about her promise to retire) 2. ~ in (~ in one's beliefs)

sincerity *n.* 1. to demonstrate, show ~ 2. ~ in (she shows great ~ in her beliefs) 3. (misc.) to doubt smb.'s ~; in all ~

sinful *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to lie) 2. ~ that + clause (it's absolutely/positively ~ that her talents are being wasted!)

sing *v.* 1. (C; more rarely A) ~ a song for/to us; or: ~ us a song 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about, of 3. (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to a piano accompaniment) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ with 5. (misc.) she can ~ in tune; to ~ out of tune; to ~ a baby to sleep

sing along *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (~ with me)

singer *n.* a blues; folk; jazz; lead; lieder; opera; pop ~

single-minded *adj.* ~ about

single out *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~d out as the leading candidate) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smb. out for special treatment) 3. (H) to ~ smb. out to get special treatment

singles *n.* (tennis) 1. to play doubles but not ~ 2. ladies' (BE), women's; men's ~ 3. (misc.) to play in the doubles but not in the ~

singular *n.* in the ~

sink I *n.* 1. the bathroom ~ (esp. AE; BE prefers *handbasin, wash-hand basin*) 2. a kitchen ~ 3. a ~ backs up; leaks

sink II *v.* 1. to ~ deep; like a stone 2. (d; intr.) to ~ below (to ~ below the surface) 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ into (to ~ into oblivion; to ~ one's teeth into a good steak) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the bottom; to ~ to one's knees) (see also *sink without trace* at **trace I** *n.*)

sink back *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ against (she sank back against the cushions) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into the bed)

sink down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ into (his head sank down into the soft pillows)

sip *n.* 1. to have, take a ~ 2. (misc.) to drink water in ~s

siphon *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from, out of (we had to ~ some gasoline/petrol from another car)

siphon off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; onto, to (we had to ~ some gasoline/petrol from another car; the police ~ed off traffic from the main road onto/to a secondary road)

siren *n.* 1. to sound, turn on a ~ 2. an air-raid; ambulance; fire; police ~ 3. a ~ blares, goes off, sounds, wails; dies away

sister *n.* ["relative"] 1. a big, elder, older; kid (colloq.), little, younger; twin ~ 2. a foster; half ~; stepsister 3. a sister-in-law 4. a lay; soul ~ 5. a ~ to (she was like a ~ to us) ["senior nurse"] (BE) 6. a nursing; ward ~

sit *v.* 1. to ~ quietly, still; upright 2. (D; intr.) ("to be seated") to ~ around/round, at (to ~ around a table; to ~ at a desk; to ~ at a piano) 3. (d; intr.) ("to pose") to ~ for (to ~ for ¬a portrait/an artist¬) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to be a member of") (to ~ on a committee) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ through (we had to ~ through the whole boring speech) 6. (misc.) to ~ astride a horse; to ~ beside a lake; to ~ tight ("to refrain from taking action"); to ~ for an examination (BE) = to ~ an examination (BE) ("to take an examination"); to ~ on the bench ("to be a judge"); to be ~ting pretty ("to be well off and without problems") USAGE NOTE: You *sit on* smt. like a stool or short grass but you *sit in* smt. like an armchair or long grass.

sit down *v.* 1. to ~ hard 2. (d; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to a meal)

site *n.* 1. to excavate a ~ 2. an archeological; battlefield; building, construction; burial; camping, campsite; caravan (BE), trailer (AE) ~ 3. at, on a certain ~ (the new church will be built on the ~ of the old cathedral) 4. (misc.) protective clothing must be worn on ~ (see also **web site**)

sit-in *n.* to conduct, hold; organize, stage a ~

sit in *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to attend") to ~ as (she sat in as our representative) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for ("to replace") (she sat in for me while I was out of town) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to attend") (we sat in on a few meetings)

sitter *n.* a baby; house ~

sitting duck *n.* ["easy target"] a ~ for

situated *adj.* 1. conveniently ~ 2. ~ for (a hotel ~ conveniently for the Lake District)

situation *n.* 1. to comprehend, grasp, size up, take in, understand a ~ 2. to accept; face, face up to a ~ 3. to deal with, handle a ~ 4. a pleasant; stable ~ 5. an awkward; delicate; embarrassing; tense; ticklish, touchy; tricky ~ 6. a complex, complicated; involved ~ 7. a Catch-22, crisis, emergency; critical; desperate; grave, serious; hopeless, no-win (colloq.); life-and-death ~ 8. a fluid, unstable;

explosive; intolerable; unpleasant ~ 9. the current, present ~ 10. the economic; housing; political; social ~ 11. the international, world; local; national ~ 12. a ~ deteriorates; improves 13. in a certain ~ (in the present ~) 14. (misc.) to take stock of the ~ USAGE NOTE: Some people prefer the simple nouns *crisis* and *emergency* to such phrases as *crisis situation* and *emergency situation*. However, *situation* can be useful in such more complex cases as *a Catch-22 situation*, *a no-win situation*, *a life-and-death situation*, *an I-won't-compromise-unless-you-do situation*.

sit-up *n.* ["exercise"] to do ~s

sit up *v.* 1. to ~ straight 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with a sick child) 3. (misc.) to ~ late; to ~ straight 4. to ~ and take notice

sit well *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with ("to be accepted by") (such behavior doesn't ~ with them)

six-shooter *n.* see **pistol** 1–5, 7

size *n.* 1. (often clothing) to take; wear (a) certain ~ (what ~ do you wear?; I take a large ~; I wear ~ 42) 2. an enormous, tremendous; large; moderate; small ~ 3. (clothing) an extra-large; large; medium; small ~ 4. a standard ~ 5. the right; wrong ~ (they gave me the wrong ~) 6. (clothing) boys'; children's; girls'; junior (esp. AE); men's; misses'; women's ~s 7. life ~ 8. of a certain ~ (of enormous ~) 9. (misc.) what ~ shirt/shoes do you take/wear? to cut to ~

skate I *n.* 1. an ice; roller ~ 2. a pair of ~s

skate II *v.* (P; intr.) we ~d across the lake; the children ~d onto the thin ice; the children ~d on/over the thin ice

skate over *n.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (the children ~d over to us)

skater *n.* a figure; ice; roller; speed ~

skating *n.* figure; ice; roller; speed ~

skeleton *n.* a human ~

skeptical, sceptical *adj.* ~ about, of

skepticism, scepticism *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display ~ 2. to maintain (a) ~ 3. ~ about (to maintain a healthy ~ about smt.) 4. (misc.) an air of ~; to regard/view smt. with ~

sketch *n.* ["drawing"] 1. to do, draw, make a ~ 2. a charcoal; composite; freehand; pencil ~ 3. a rough ~ ["short essay"] 4. a brief, thumbnail ~ 5. a biographical ~ ["radio or television vignette"] 6. a comedy, comic ~ (see also *sketch show* at **show I** *n.*)

ski I *n.* a pair of ~s (see also **skis**)

ski II *v.* 1. (P; intr.) they skied across the valley; I skied down the trail 2. (misc.) to go ~ing

skid *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ on (cars often ~ on ice) 2. (P; intr.) the bus ~ded into the ditch; the car ~ded off the road

skid row see **row I** *n.* 5

skids *n.* (colloq.) 1. to hit the ~s (esp. AE) ("to have difficulties") (her career has hit the ~) 2. on the ~ ("in difficulties") (her career is on the ~)

skiing *n.* cross-country; down-hill; water ~

skill *n.* 1. to acquire, develop, learn, master; hone a ~ 2. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 3. a basic ~ 4. consummate, great ~ 5. diplomatic; entrepreneurial; management, managerial; professional; technical; verbal ~ 6. coping; marketable; survival ~s 7. ~ at, in; with (~ at/in using a computer; ~ with one's hands) 8. the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to cope with a difficult job) 9. (misc.) to market one's ~s

skilled *adj.* 1. highly ~ 2. ~ at, in; with (~ at/in using a computer; ~ with one's hands)

skillful, skilful *adj.* 1. very 2. ~ at, in; with (~ at/in using a computer; ~ with one's hands)

skim *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to remove") to ~ from (to ~ the fat from the soup) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ through ("to read quickly") (I ~med through the article and then I ~med through it again) 3. (P; intr., tr.) ("to bounce") the boy ~med stones along the surface of the water; the birds ~med across the lake

skimp *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on food)

skin I *n.* 1. to tan a ~ 2. to cast, shed, slip (esp. AE) one's ~ (the snake shed its ~) 3. clear; delicate; fair; fine; sensitive, tender; smooth; soft ~ 4. chapped; dry; coarse, rough; mottled; oily ~ 5. dark; light ~ 6. (a) banana; human ~ 7. (sunburned) ~ blisters; peels 8. against; beneath, under; on ~ (I like the feel of silk against my ~) 9. (misc.) to save one's ~ ("to save one's life"); a thick ~ ("insensitivity"); a thin ~ ("excessive sensitivity"); to get under smb.'s ~ ("to irritate smb."); to break the ~

skin II *v.* to ~ smb. alive ("to punish smb. severely")

skip *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ from one topic to another; the child ~ped across the playground (see also *skip a grade* at **grade I** *n.*)

skirmish I *n.* 1. a border; brief; minor ~ 2. a ~ between; with (killed in a border skirmish with the enemy)

skirmish II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

skirt I *n.* 1. to have a ~ on, to wear a ~ 2. to put on, slip on a ~ 3. to take off a ~ 4. to hem; lengthen; shorten a ~ 5. a divided; full; gored; long; short ~ 6. a miniskirt; pleated; slit; wraparound ~

skirt II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ (a)round (they ~ed around the problem)

skis *n.* water ~ (see also **ski**)

skit *n.* 1. to do, perform a ~ on 2. a comedy, comic ~

skunk *n.* (misc.) to smell a ~ (esp. AE; colloq.) ("to sense trouble, to smell a rat")

sky *n.* 1. a blue, clear, cloudless, fair; starry ~ 2. a cloudy; dull, gray, overcast, sullen; (BE) mackerel ~ 3. a ~ clears up; clouds up, clouds over 4. a patch of (blue) ~ 5. the ~ above, over 6. in the ~ (we could see birds in the ~ above us) 7. (misc.) as high as the ~ = skyhigh

skyline *n.* 1. to dominate the ~ (the cathedral spire dominates the ~) 2. an imposing; jagged ~

skyscraper *n.* a huge; tall, towering ~

slab *n.* 1. a concrete; marble; mortuary; stone ~ 2. on a ~ (lying on a mortuary ~)

slack *n.* ["part that hangs loose"] 1. to take up the ~ (of a rope) 2. (misc.) (slang) to cut smb. some ~ ("to give smb. some leeway, to give smb. a break")

slacks *n.* 1. to have ~ on, to wear ~ 2. to put on ~ 3. to take off ~ 4. to button up; unbutton; unzip; zip up one's ~ 5. baggy; long; tight ~ 6. a pair of ~

slam *v.* (P; intr., tr.) she ~med the books down on the table; they ~med right into me; he ~med the door in my face

slander *n.* to spread ~

slang *n.* 1. army; prison; (Cockney) rhyming; student; underworld ~ 2. ~ for ("scram" is ~ for "go away"; what is "shooting gallery" slang for?) 3. in ~ (what does "shooting gallery" mean in ~?)

slanted *adj.* ["biased"] 1. unfairly ~ 2. ~ against; in favor of, towards (the article was ~ against our viewpoint)

slap I *n.* 1. to give smb. a ~ (in the face) 2. (misc.) a ~ in the face ("a direct insult") (the closure of our post office is a ~ in the face to the local community); a ~ on the wrist ("a gentle reprimand")

slap II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to strike") to ~ against (the waves were ~ping against the sides of the boat) 2. (D; tr.) ("to strike") to ~ in (to ~ smb. in the face) 3. (d; tr.) ("to impose") to ~ on (to ~ new restrictions on exporters) 4. (misc.) to ~ smb. on the wrist ("to reprimand smb. gently"); to ~ a preservation order on (BE) (they were going to demolish the old building but the government ~ped a preservation order on it)

slash *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at smb. with a knife) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in; on (she ~ed him on the face with her knife)

slate I *n.* ["record of past performance"] 1. a clean ~ (to start off with a clean ~) 2. (misc.) to wipe the ~ clean

slate II *v.* (colloq.) (BE) (D; tr.) ("to criticize severely") to ~ for (the play was ~d for its wooden dialogue)

slated *adj.* (AE) ["scheduled"] (cannot stand alone) 1. ~ for (~ for promotion) 2. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to be promoted soon)

slaughter *n.* indiscriminate, mass, wanton, wholesale ~

slave I *n.* 1. to free, liberate a ~; to emancipate ~s 2. a fugitive, runaway ~ 3. (fig.) a ~ of; to (a ~ to a habit) 4. (misc.) to buy; sell ~s (see also *slave labor* at **labor I** *n.*)

slave II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ over (to ~ over a hot stove)

slave away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at; over (to ~ over a hot stove)

slavery *n.* 1. to establish, introduce ~ 2. to abolish ~ 3. to free from ~ 4. to sell into ~ 5. white ~ (to sell smb. into white ~) 6. during, under ~ (can anyone remember what conditions were like under ~?)

sledding *n.* (colloq.) (AE) ["progress"] rough, tough ~

sleep I *n.* 1. to induce ~ 2. to get (enough) ~ 3. deep, heavy, profound, sound; fitful; light; restful ~ 4. (misc.) to fall into a deep ~; to go to ~; to walk in one's ~; to put to ~ (also fig. "to kill") (the vet had to put our poor old dog to ~); (also fig. "to make unconscious"); to lose ~ over ("to worry a great deal about"); one's beauty ~; to get/have a good night's ~ (see also *not get a wink of sleep* at **wink I** *n.*)

sleep II *v.* 1. to ~ fitfully; lightly; soundly, well 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to postpone for a day") (to ~ on a decision) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ through (I slept through the lecture) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to have sexual relations with") 5. (misc.) my foot went to ~; to ~ late; to ~ like a baby/log/top ("to sleep very soundly"); to ~ rough (BE) ("to sleep out of doors as through homelessness") (see also *not sleep a wink* at **wink I** *n.*)

sleeper *n.* a heavy, sound; light ~

sleet *n.* 1. to have ~ (we had ~ yesterday) 2. ~ falls; melts 3. in the ~ (to get caught in the ~) 4. through the ~ (to run through the ~)

sleeve *n.* 1. to roll up one's ~s 2. long; short ~s (I always wear ¬short ~s/short-sleeved shirts¬ during the summer) 3. in certain ~s (in the summer I always go around ¬in short ~s/in short-sleeved shirts¬) 4. on a ~ (I got some dirt on my left ~) 5. (misc.) to have smt. up one's ~ ("to have a secret trick"); to roll up one's ~s and get down to work ("to get down to serious work"); to laugh up one's ~ ("to laugh secretly"); in (one's) shirtsleeves (in the summer I take off my jacket and go around in my shirtsleeves)

slice I *n.* 1. to cut off a ~ (of) 2. to cut into ~s 3. a thick; thin ~ 4. (misc.) a ~ of life ("a realistic portrayal of life") (a somber slice-of-life drama that gives audiences a flavor of working-class life during the Great Depression)

slice II *v.* 1. (C) ~ a piece of cake for me; or: ~ me a piece of cake 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ into (to ~ into the cake; she ~d the cake into several portions) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ off (she ~d a small piece off the cake (for me)) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ through (the icebreaker ~d through the ice) 5. (N; used with an adjective) she ~d the bread thin

slice up *v.* (D; tr.) ~ into (she ~d up the cake into several portions = she ~d the cake up into several portions)

slick *n.* an oil ~

slide I *n.* a hair ~ (BE; AE has *barrette*) (see also **slides**)

slide II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ down (to ~ down a hill) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ from, out of (the glass slid from her hand) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ into (the car skidded and slid into a ditch) 4. (AE) (baseball) (D; intr.) to ~ into ("to occupy by sliding") (he slid into second base) 5. (N; used with an adjective) the door slid open but I slid it shut again 6. (P; intr., tr.) to ~ across a frozen pond

slide rule *n.* to operate, use a ~

slides *n.* 1. to project, show ~ 2. to make; mount ~ 3. to look at ~

slight *n.* (lit.) ["slur"] a ~ on, to (a ~ on smb.'s honor)

slime *n.* ~ oozes

sling I *n.* in a ~ (her arm was in a ~)

sling II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ at (to ~ stones at smb.) 2. (P; tr.) she slung the knapsack over her shoulder 3. (misc.) to ~ mud at smb. ("to slander smb.") (the media have been conducting a mud-slinging campaign against our candidate!)

slink *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ through the bushes

slip I *n.* ["error"] 1. to make a ~ (of the tongue) 2. a Freudian ~ ["escape"] (colloq.) 3. to give smb. the ~ ["small piece of paper"] 4. a credit, deposit, paying-in (BE) ~ (in a bank); a sales ~ (AE) 5. a call ~ ("request for a library book") 6. a pink ~ ("notice of termination of employment") 7. a rejection ~ ("notification that a manuscript has been rejected for publication") (see also *a slip of a girl* at **girl**; *a slip of paper* at **paper I** *n.*) ["cover"] 8. a pillow ~ USAGE NOTE: In AE, a *credit slip* indicates a credit for merchandise returned. BE uses *credit note*

slip II *v.* 1. (A) ("to hand") she ~ped a note to me; or: she ~ped me a note 2. (d; intr.) to ~ by, past ("to get by unnoticed") (they easily ~ped by the roadblock; they ~ped past the sentry) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ from, out of ("to fall from") (the glass ~ped out of her hand) 4. (d; intr.) ("to move quickly") to ~ into (to ~ into a room) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to change into") (to ~ into smt. more comfortable; to ~ into a dressing gown) 6. (d; tr.) to ~ into ("to insert surreptitiously") (to ~ a clause into a contract; she ~ped a note into his hand) 7. (D; intr.) ("to slide and fall") to ~ on (he ~ped on a banana peel) 8. (d; intr.) ("to move quickly") to ~ out of (to ~ out of a house) 9. (d; intr.) to ~ out of ("to take off") (he ~ped out of his sweat suit) 10. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ through ("to pass through; to cause to pass through") (several scouts ~ped through their lines; we were able to ~ an agent through their security net but we couldn't ~ another one through; the opportunity ~ped through his fingers) 11. (misc.) she let (it) ~ that she was going to retire

slipcovers *n.* 1. to make ~ 2. to put on ~ 3. custom-made ~

slip out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (she ~ped out for a walk) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (they ~ped out to the bar/pub) 3. (misc.) she ~ped out (in order) to take a walk

slippers *n.* 1. house ~ 2. a pair of ~

slippery *adj.* 1. ~ with (a path ~ with mud) 2. (misc.) as ~ as an eel

slip up *v.* (D; intr.) ("to blunder") to ~ on (she ~ped up on the last question)

slit I *n.* a narrow ~

slit II *v.* (N; used with an adjective) she slit the envelope open

slither *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ along the ground

slobber *v.* (colloq.) to ~ all over smb.

slog I *n.* (esp. BE) a hard, tough ~

slog II *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ through the mud

slogan *n.* 1. to coin, devise a ~ 2. to chant a ~ 3. a catchy ~

slog away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (to keep ~ging away at one's homework)

slope I *n.* 1. a gentle, gradual; steep ~ 2. a slippery ~ (may be fig.) (the first step on the slippery ~ to disaster) 3. a ski ~ 4. down; up a ~

slope II *v.* 1. to ~ gently, gradually 2. (P; intr.) the river bank ~s to the east

slope off *v.* (colloq.) (BE) (P; intr.) ("to slink") to ~ off to a pub; they ~d off home

slosh *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ through the snow

slot *n.* (colloq.) ["position"] to fill; fit into a ~

slouch I *n.* (colloq.) ["incompetent person"] no ~ at (she is no ~ at getting things done)

slouch II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ over (she was ~ing over the table)

slouch down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ behind (she ~ed down behind the steering wheel)

slow I *adj.* 1. ~ at, in (she was ~ in reacting) 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to react) 3. (misc.) ~ of speech; ~ on one's feet; ~ on the uptake

slow II *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to (the influx of immigrants has ~ed to a trickle; she ~ed the car to a stop)

slow burn *n.* (slang) (AE) to do a ~ ("to become angry gradually") (the driver did a slow ~ when the other car got in his way)

slowdown *n.* 1. an economic ~ 2. a ~ in, of

slow motion *n.* ["slow-motion cinematography"] in ~ (they showed the finish in ~)

sludge *n.* activated ~

slug *v.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) 1. (O) (can be used with one animate object) ("to punch") I'll ~ you one 2. (misc.) to ~ it out with smb.

slum *v.* to go ~ming

slumber *n.* deep ~

slump I *n.* 1. a business, economic ~ 2. a ~ in (there is a ~ in the housing market) 3. in a ~ (the housing market is in a ~)

slump II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ to (the ground) 2. (P; intr.) she was ~ed over her typewriter; profits ~ed from a record high to a new low; profits have already ~ed (by) 10%

slums *n.* 1. to clean up, clear away, tear down ~ (see also *slum clearance* at **clearance**) 2. festering, squalid; inner-city, urban ~

slur I *n.* ["insult"] 1. to cast a ~ 2. an ethnic, racial ~ 3. a ~ on (his remark was a ~ on my character)

slur II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ over ("to minimize") (esp. AE) (to ~ over a blunder)

sly I *adj.* as ~ as a fox (esp. AE)

sly II *n.* on the ~ (to do smt. on the ~)

smack I *n.* ["heroin"] (slang) to be on ~

smack II *v.* (colloq.) 1. (D; tr.) to ~ on (she ~ed the boy on his behind) 2. (O) (can be used with one animate object) I'll ~ you one

smack III *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ of ("to suggest") (to ~ of treason)

smallpox *n.* 1. to contract, develop, get; have ~ 2. to eradicate; immunize against, vaccinate against ~ 3. a case; epidemic; outbreak of ~

small talk *n.* to make ~ (at the party we made ~ about the weather; at office parties some people prefer to engage in shop talk but others prefer to make small ~)

smart I *adj.* ["impudent"] (colloq.) (esp. AE) 1. to get ~ with (don't get ~ with me!) ["shrewd"] 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to refuse = it was ~ of for her to refuse = refusing was a ~ thing for her to do)

smart II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at, over (to ~ at an insult) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from (her eyes were ~ing from the smoke) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ under (to ~ under injustice)

smash *v.* 1. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ into (she ~ed into another car = she ~ed her car into another car) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ through (to ~ through a fence) 3. (misc.) she ~ed her fist down on the table

smattering *n.* to acquire, pick up a ~ of (they have picked up a ~ of the language)

smear I *n.* (med.) 1. to do, take a ~ 2. a Pap ~ (they did a Pap ~ on each patient)

smear II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ bread with butter) 2. (P; tr.) to ~ butter ¬on/all over¬ bread; to ~ ointment on one's skin

smell I *n.* 1. to give off; have a ~ 2. a clean; delicious, good; sweet ~ (the food has a delicious ~) 3. a faint, slight ~ 4. a lingering; persistent; strong ~ 5. an acrid; bad, dirty, disagreeable, foul, putrid, rank; musty; sour ~ (the room has a dirty ~) 6. a smell emanates from 7. a ~ permeates smt. (a delicious ~ permeated the entire room) 8. a ~ of (the ~ of paint) 9. a/the sense of ~

smell II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ like; of (that flower ~s like a rose; to ~ of fish) 2. (J) I could ~ smt. burning 3. (L) I could ~ that smt. was burning 4. (Q) I could ~ where the coffee was 5. (s) the food ~s good

smile I *n.* 1. to crack a ~; flash a ~ (at) 2. to give smb. a ~ 3. to evoke; wear a ~ 4. to hide, repress a ~ 5. a beautiful, lovely, pretty; beguiling, intriguing; cheerful, happy; broad; dazzling; disarming, engaging; friendly; infectious; pleasant; radiant; ready; sunny; sweet ~ 6. a bitter; fixed; forced; sardonic; supercilious ~ 7. a hint, trace of a ~ (the merest hint of a ~ flashed across his handsome features) 8. with a ~ (to answer with a ~ on one's face) 9. (misc.) they are all ~s at the good news

smile II *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly; broadly; cheerfully; coldly; sardonically; superciliously; sweetly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ at (the teacher ~ed at the well-behaved children) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to favor") (fortune ~d on us) 4. (misc.) to ~ from ear to ear; to ~ with pleasure/satisfaction; she ~d to herself at the thought of her successful trick

smirk *v.* (derog.) 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (she ~ed with satisfaction at their embarrassment)

smite *v.* (formal) (N; used with an adjective) God smote the heathen dead (see also **smitten**)

smithereens *n.* to blow, break, smash smt. into, to ~

smitten *adj.* ["affected"] (formal) 1. ~ by, with (~ by disease) ["infatuated"] (colloq.) 2. ~ by, with (he was totally ~ with her)

smoke *n.* ["gaseous products of burning"] 1. to belch, emit, give off ~ (chimneys belch ~) 2. to exhale; inhale ~ 3. heavy, thick; light ~ 4. acrid; black ~ 5. cigar; cigarette ~ 6. (as of cigarettes) active; passive ~ 7. ~ pours, rises from (a chimney) 8. ~ eddies, spirals (upward) 9. a cloud; column; pall; pillar; puff; whiff; wisp of ~ 10. (misc.) to go up in ~ ("to disappear completely") (usu. fig.) (all our plans have gone up in ~!) (see also *a smoke-filled room* at **room**) ["act of smoking"] 11. to have a ~ 12. (to go out) for a ~

smoker *n.* a chain; habitual, heavy, inveterate; light; occasional; teenage ~

smoking *n.* 1. to cut down on; give up, stop; start; take up ~ 2. to ban, prohibit ~ 3. chain; habitual, heavy; light; occasional; passive; teenage ~ 4. (misc.) no ~!

smolder, smoulder *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with discontent)

smooth *adj.* 1. ~ to (~ to the touch) 2. (misc.) as ~ as silk/velvet

smother *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (we ~ed the flames with a heavy blanket)

smuggle *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ across (to ~ goods across a border) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ by, past, through (to ~ goods past customs) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ goods into a country) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ out of (to ~ stolen goods out of a country)

smuggling *n.* 1. to engage in ~ 2. arms; drug ~

smut *n.* a ~ peddler

snack I *n.* 1. to have a ~ 2. to fix, make ("prepare") a ~ 3. a between-meal(s); light; midnight; quick ~ 4. party ~s

snack II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on peanuts)

snag I *n.* ["obstacle"] (colloq.) 1. to hit a ~ (in) ["jagged tear"] 2. to get; have a ~ (in one's stocking)

snag II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ on (I ~ged my stocking on a nail)

snake I *n.* 1. a poisonous, venomous; non-poisonous ~ 2. ~s bite, strike; coil; crawl; hibernate; hiss; slither 3. ~s molt, shed their skin 4. (misc.) a ~ in the grass ("a treacherous person")

snake II *v.* (colloq.) he ~d (his way) through the crowd

snap I *n.* ["spell of weather"] 1. a cold ~ ["something easy"] (colloq.) 2. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ to find information about that author = it was a ~ finding information about that author)

snap II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (the dog ~ped at him; to ~ at the bait) 2. (L; at) she ~ped (at me) that she was too busy to help me = "I'm too busy to help you!" she ~ped (at me) 3. (misc.) to ~ to attention; to ~ out of a bad mood; the lid ~ped shut

snap back *v.* (L) when I asked her to help, she ~ped back (at me) that she was too busy

snappy *adv.* (colloq.) to make it ~ ("to hurry")

snapshot *n.* to take a ~

snarl *v.* 1. (B) she ~ed a few words to me 2. (D; intr.) to ~ at (the dog ~ed at him) 3. (L) he ~ed that he would be late = "I'm going to be late!" he ~ed

snatch I *n.* ["fragment"] to catch, hear; overhear ~es (of conversation)

snatch II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at (she ~ed at the line that the sailors threw to her) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from, out of (he ~ed the purse from her hand)

sneak *v.* (P; intr., tr.) they ~ed into the theater; they ~ed their friends into the theater; to ~ around in the bushes (see also *sneak a glance* at **glance I** *n.*)

sneak away *v.* see **sneak off**

sneak off *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from (she ~ed off from the others) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (he ~ed off to the football game) 3. (misc.) they ~ed off (in order) to see the football game

sneak up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ behind (he. ~ed up behind them) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on, to (he ~ed up to them)

sneaky *adj.* (colloq.) 1. ~ of (that was ~ of him) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of/for him to do that = that was a ~ thing for him to do)

sneer *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at

sneeze *v.* (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ at ("to consider lightly") (their offer is not to be ~d at)

sneezing *n.* a fit of ~ = a ~ fit

snicker *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at

sniff I *n.* to get, have a ~

sniff II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (the dog ~ed at her)

sniffles *n.* to have the ~

snigger *v.* (esp. BE) (D; intr.) to ~ about, at

snipe *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (the press keeps ~ing at her)

snit *n.* (colloq.) (AE) ["state of agitation"] in a ~

snitch *v.* (slang) (AE) (d; tr.) ("to inform against smb.") to ~ on (she ~ed on him to his teacher)

snob *n.* 1. an intellectual ~ 2. (BE) an inverted ~

snook *n.* (colloq.) (BE) to cock a ~ at ("to thumb one's nose at")

snore I *n.* a heavy, loud ~

snore II *v.* to ~ heavily, loudly

snow I *n.* 1. to have ~ (we had ~ yesterday) 2. deep; drifting; driving, heavy; falling; powdery; light; wet ~ 3. crisp; new-fallen ~ 4. ~ accumulates; falls; melts; sticks 5. a blanket; coating, dusting of ~ 6. across, through; in the ~ (to play in the ~) 7. (misc.) to clear away, remove, shovel ~; as white as ~ = snow-white; as pure as the driven ~ (see also *fall of snow, snowfall* at **fall I** *n.*; **snowball**; **snowfall**; *flake of snow, snowflake* at **flake**; *snow flurry* at **flurry**; *snowstorm* at **storm I** *n.* 3)

snow II *v.* to ~ hard, heavily; lightly (it began to ~ heavily)

snowball I *n.* to throw a ~ at

snowball II *v.* (D; intr.) ("to expand, mushroom") to ~ from; into, to

snowfall *n.* a heavy; light ~

snowman *n.* to build, make a ~

snowshoes *n.* 1. a pair of ~ 2. (to walk) on ~

snowstorm *n.* see **storm I** 3

snub *n.* a deliberate; obvious ~

snuff *n.* 1. to take ~ 2. a pinch of ~ 3. (misc.) not up to ~ ("not up to an acceptable standard")

snuggle *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ against (the children ~d against each other)

snuggle up *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ against; to (the children ~d up against each other; the little girl ~d up to her doll)

soak I *n.* to give; get; have a ~ (to give the laundry a ~ in cold water – and make sure it gets a good long ~!)

soak *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ in (to ~ the laundry in cold water; the laundry ~ed in cold water) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into (the water ~ed into the soil) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ through (the blood ~ed through the bandages)

soaked *adj.* 1. ~ to the skin 2. ~ through and through 3. thoroughly ~

soaking *n.* to give; get; have a ~ (to give the laundry a ~ in cold water – and make sure it gets a good long thorough ~!)

soap *n.* 1. face; laundry; liquid; powdered; saddle; scented; toilet ~ 2. a bar, cake of ~ (see also *flake of soap, soapflake* at **flake**)

soar *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ into, to (the temperature ~ed into the eighties; the mercury ~ed to ninety; prices ~ed and then plummeted)

sob I *n.* 1. to give, let out a ~; be racked with ~s 2. to stifle a ~ 3. a bitter; choking ~ 4. ~s die down, subside

sob II *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly 2. (B) the child ~bed a few words to the teacher 3. (L; to) she ~bed (to her teacher) that she wanted to go home = "I want to go home!" she ~bed (to her teacher) 4. (misc.) to ~ oneself to sleep

sober *adj.* 1. cold, stone (AE) ~ 2. as ~ as a judge

soccer *n.* 1. to play ~ 2. the game of ~ 3. (misc.) a ~ ball; field (AE), pitch (BE); a ~ game (esp. AE), match (BE); player

socialism *n.* 1. to build; establish ~ 2. democratic; Fabian; Guild; left-wing; libertarian; moderate; scientific; state; utopian ~ 3. under ~ (to live under ~)

socialist *n.* 1. an avowed, self-styled ~ 2. a democratic; Fabian; Guild; left-wing; libertarian; moderate; scientific ~

socialize *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (she likes to ~ with her neighbors)

society *n.* ["group, association"] 1. to establish, found, set up; join a ~ 2. to disband, dissolve; leave, resign from a ~ 3. a burial; historical; honor; humane; learned; literary; medical; musical; secret ~ 4. a friendly (BE), mutual-aid (AE) ~ 5. a building ~ (BE; AE has *building and loan association*) 6. a ~ for; of (she founded a ~ of scientists for peace in which we all were active) ["community"] 7. to polarize; unite a ~ 8. an advanced; affluent; civil; civilized; classless; consumer; primitive ~ 9. a multicultural; pluralistic ~ 10. a closed; open ~ 11. a matriarchal; patriarchal ~ 12. a capitalist; socialist ~ 13. the fabric, foundations, structure of ~ (your ideas threaten the very fabric of ~!) 14. a section of ~ (every section of ~ is against your ideas!) ["class"] 15. high; polite ~ 16. in ~ (such words are not used in polite ~)

sociology *n.* 1. the ~ of (the ~ of knowledge/religion) 2. in ~ (a degree in ~)

sock I *n.* 1. to knit ~s 2. to darn, mend a ~ 3. ankle, ankle-length; athletic; knee; stretch; tube ~s 4. a pair of ~s

sock II *v.* (colloq.) (D; tr.) ("to punch") to ~ in, on (he ~ed me on the jaw)

socket *n.* a wall ~ (to plug an appliance into a wall ~)

soda *n.* ["form of sodium"] 1. baking; caustic; washing ~ ["carbonated beverage"] 2. (a) club; cream; ice-cream ~ ["soda water"] 3. a dash of ~ 4. (misc.) (a) whiskey and ~

sodomy *n.* to commit, practice ~

sofa *n.* to lie; sit on a ~

soft *adj.* ~ on (this judge is not ~ on drunk drivers)

software *n.* 1. to write (the) ~ (for) 2. to download; run ~ 3. computer; proprietary; public-domain ~ 4. a piece of ~

soil I *n.* 1. to cultivate, till, work the ~ 2. to fertilize; irrigate the ~ 3. barren, poor; clayey; fertile; firm; good; packed; porous; rich; sandy; soggy; swampy ~; topsoil 4. in ~ (to plant crops in good ~)

soil II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ on, with (she would not ~ her hands with such trash)

solace *n.* 1. great ~ 2. to find ~ in (their parents found great solace in the children) 3. to derive, get ~ from (their parents got great solace from the children) 4. a ~ to (the children were a great ~ to their parents) 5. a ~ to + inf. (it was a great ~ to their parents to have the children nearby) 6. a ~ that + clause (it was a great ~ to their parents that the children lived nearby)

solder *n.* to apply; melt ~

soldier *n.* 1. a career; common; fellow; foot; professional; seasoned ~ 2. a ~ enlists; fights; reenlists; serves; trains 3. a ~ defects, deserts; goes AWOL 4. (misc.) the Unknown Soldier; a ~ of fortune ("a mercenary"); a toy ~

sole I *n.* ["bottom part of a shoe"] 1. to put (new) ~s on shoes 2. a half ~

sole II *n.* ["type of fish"] 1. Dover; lemon ~ 2. (a) fillet of ~

solicit *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for; from (she was ~ing funds for the Red Cross from passers-by)

solicitor *n.* 1. The Solicitor General ("the assistant attorney general") 2. (GB) barristers and ~s

solicitous *adj.* ~ about, of

solicitude *n.* to show ~ for

solid *adj.*, *adv.* 1. in liquid or in ~ form; to be in ~ with smb. (colloq. AE) 2. (misc.) as ~ as a rock

solidarity *n.* 1. to declare, express; feel; show ~ 2. ~ with (to express one's ~ with the protestors)

solitaire *n.* (AE) ["card game"] to play ~ (BE has *patience*)

solitude *n.* 1. complete, utter ~ 2. in ~ (to live in complete ~)

solo I *adv.* to dance; fly; perform; play; sing ~

solo II *n.* to perform a ~

solstice *n.* the summer; winter ~

soluble *adj.* ~ in (water) = water-soluble

solution *n.* ["answer"] ["explanation"] 1. to come up with, find; offer; propose a ~ 2. to apply a ~ 3. a definitive, final; effective; equitable; neat; satisfactory ~ 4. a creative; ideal; ingenious ~ 5. an easy; simple ~ 6. a military; political ~ 7. a permanent; temporary ~ 8. a ~ for, to (a ~ to a problem) ["mixture"] 9. to dilute a ~ 10. a strong; weak ~ 11. an antiseptic; chemical; saline ~ 12. in ~ (salt in ~)

some *pronoun, determiner* 1. ~ to + inf. (we have ~ to sell; we have ~ books to sell) 2. ~ of (~ of them) USAGE NOTE: The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows. When a noun follows, the use of *of the* limits the meaning – we saw some people; we saw some of the people whom we had discussed earlier. (See also the Usage Note for **something**)

somebody *pronoun* ~ to + inf. (we have ~ to talk to) (see also the Usage Note for **something**)

someone see **somebody**

someplace (AE) see **somewhere**

somersault *n.* to do, execute, turn a ~

something *n.*, *pronoun* 1. a certain, indefinable, indescribable, intangible ~ 2. ~ for (she has ~ for you) 3. ~ to + inf. (we have ~ to say) 4. (misc.) to make ~ of oneself ("to have success in life"); ("slang") I don't know if he wants to make ~ of it ("I don't know if he wants to make an issue of it"); there is ~ unusual about them; she is ~ of a celebrity USAGE NOTE: The form *some* and its compounds are often used in affirmative statements, whereas *any* and its compounds are often used in neg. and interrogative contexts. Compare *we have some books to sell – we don't have any books to sell; we have something to say – do you have anything to say?; we have somebody to talk to – we don't have anybody to talk to; we have somewhere to go – do you have anywhere to go?* However, *some* and its compounds can also be used in neg. and esp. in interrogative contexts (as when an affirmative answer is expected) – *don't you have something to* *say? would you like some brandy? do you have something to say? (Then say it!)*; *if you don't have something/anything relevant to say, then shut up!* Moreover, in the meaning "no matter which/what/who(m)/where...", *any* and its compounds occur in affirmative statements – *we will take any of these; they can say anything they want; we will talk to anyone; we will go anywhere.*

somewhere *adv.* ~ to + inf. (we have ~ to go) (see also the Usage Note for **something**)

son *n.* 1. to adopt a ~ 2. to marry off a ~ 3. an older; only; younger ~ 4. an adopted; foster ~; stepson 5. a son-in-law 6. a ~ to (he was like a ~ to them) 7. (misc.) a favorite ~ (AE; pol.); a prodigal ~ (fig.)

sonar *n.* to track by ~

song *n.* 1. to compose, write a ~ 2. to belt out (colloq.), sing; hum; play; whistle a ~ (the orchestra was playing our ~) 3. a drinking; folk; love, torch; marching; popular; theme; title ~ 4. smb.'s swan ("farewell") ~ 5. a ~ about 6. in a ~ 7. (misc.) the same old ~ ("the same story, complaint"); to burst into ~; for a ~ ("inexpensively") (see also *the lyrics of a song* at **lyrics**; *the words of/to a song* at **words**)

sonnet *n.* 1. to compose, write a ~ 2. an Italian, Petrarchan; Shakespearean; Spenserian ~

soot *n.* (all) covered in, with ~

sop *n.* ["concession"] 1. to throw a ~ to 2. as a ~ to

sophistication *n.* 1. to display, show ~ (she showed great ~ in dealing with their questions) 2. with ~ (she dealt with their questions with great ~) 3. the ~ to + inf. (she had enough ~ to deal with their questions)

sophistry *n.* 1. pure ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it's pure ~ to extenuate such behavior!)

sophomore *n.* (AE) a college, university; high-school ~

soprano *n.* 1. to sing ~ 2. a coloratura ~

sorcery *n.* to practice ~

sore I *adj.* ["angry"] (colloq.) (esp. AE) 1. to get ~ 2. ~ about, over (~ over smb.'s remark) ~ 3. ~ at (why is she ~ at me?) ["hurt, aching"] 4. to be; get ~ 5. ~ from (she's ~ from riding horseback)

sore II *n.* a bedsore; canker; cold; open, running; saddle ~

soreness *n.* 1. to cause; reduce ~ 2. mild; severe ~ 3. ~ subsides 4. ~ in (to reduce ~ in the legs)

sorority *n.* (US) 1. to pledge a ~ ("to agree to join a sorority") 2. a college ~ (see also **fraternity**)

sorrow *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. to express; feel; show ~ 3. to alleviate smb.'s ~ 4. deep, great, inexpressible, keen, profound ~ 5. genuine, real; personal ~ 6. ~ at, over (to feel deep ~ at the death of a friend) 7. in, with ~ 8. to smb.'s ~ (to my great ~ I never saw them again) 9. (misc.) an expression; feeling of ~

sorry *adj.* 1. dreadfully, terribly, very ~ 2. genuinely, really ~ 3. to feel ~ 4. ~ about (I'm ~ about your loss) 5. ~ for (she is ~ for him; we are ~ for being late; I feel ~ for you; I'm ~ for your loss (esp. AE)) 6. ~ to + inf. (I am ~ to (have to) inform you that your application has been rejected) 7. ~ that + clause (we are ~ that we were late)

sort I *n.* 1. a bad; curious; good ~ (a curious ~ of (a) life) 2. of a ~ (of all ~s; of several ~s; a person of that ~ = that ~ of person) 3. (misc.) ~ of thing (always going on about his enemies, his problems – (that) ~ of thing); to like all ~s of music; "was it satisfactory?" "it was nothing of the ~ – it was awful!"; to be out of ~s ("to be annoyed") (see also **sort of**)

sort II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ by (to ~ merchandise by size) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ socks into various sizes) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ through (to ~ through old documents)

sortie *n.* 1. to carry out, make a ~ 2. to fly a ~

sort of *adv.* (colloq.) ["more or less, rather"] I ~ expected it (to happen); it was ~ nice, actually

sort out *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ the current receipts from the old ones) 2. (Q) we had to ~ how many votes each one received

SOS *n.* 1. to broadcast, send an ~ 2. to receive an ~

soul *n.* 1. to save smb.'s ~ 2. to bare; search one's ~ 3. an artistic; immortal; kindly; kindred; lost; poor; timid ~ 4. (misc.) body and ~ (I earn hardly enough to make ends meet and keep body and ~ together!); heart and ~ (I'll support you heart and ~!)

sound I *adj.* ["healthy"] 1. ~ in, of (~ in mind and body) 2. (misc.) safe and ~ ["sturdy"] 3. structurally ~

sound II *n.* 1. to emit, make, produce, utter a ~ 2. to transmit (a) ~ 3. to articulate, enunciate, pronounce a ~ 4. to turn down; turn up the ~ (on a radio, TV set) 5. to carry ~ (air carries ~s) 6. a clear; consonant; faint; hollow; inarticulate; loud; muffled; rasping; soft; vowel ~ 7. (a) ~ travels (~ travels much slower than light) 8. a ~ dies away, dies down; rings out 9. at a ~ (at the ~ of the bell, they all assembled) 10. to a ~ (to the ~ of music)

sound III *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (the bell ~ed for dinner) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ like (that ~s like a great idea) 3. (BE) (S) that ~s a great idea 4. (s) their excuse ~ed reasonable 5. (misc.) it ~s as if/as though/like (colloq.) they don't know what to do; how does that ~ to you?

sound off *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ about, against ("to criticize") (to ~ against an idea)

sound out *v.* (D; tr.) ("to inquire") to ~ about (I ~ed the experts out about the problem = I ~ed out the experts about the problem)

soup *n.* 1. to eat; make; serve ~ 2. clear; cold; hot; thick; warm ~ 3. cabbage; celery; chicken; mushroom; noodle; onion; pea; tomato; vegetable ~ 4. a bowl; cup; mug; spoonful of ~ USAGE NOTE: We eat soup with a spoon; but we can drink soup from a cup or mug.

sour I *adj.* to go, turn ~ (things went ~; the whole affair turned ~)

sour II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on (AE) (they quickly ~ed on the idea)

source *n.* 1. to locate, track down a ~ 2. to tap a ~ 3. to cite; disclose, indicate, reveal one's ~s 4. an impeccable, unimpeachable; informed, well-informed; reliable, reputable, trustworthy ~; one's ~s (according to my ~s, there will be trouble ahead) 5. an unreliable ~ 6. an undisclosed, unnamed ~ 7. an original, primary; secondary ~ 8. an energy; renewable ~ 9. ~s dry up 10. at a ~ (it is best to make inquiries at the original ~) 11. (misc.) ~s close to the government revealed that…; (BE) tax deducted at ~

south I *adj.*, *adv.* 1. directly, due, straight ~ 2. ~ of (~ of the city) 3. down ~ 4. (misc.) to face; to go, head ~; southeast by ~; southwest by ~

south II *n.* 1. from the ~; in the ~; to the ~ 2. (misc.) the Deep South ("certain areas of the southern United States")

southeast I *adj.*, *adv.* 1. ~ of (to be ~ of the city) 2. (misc.) to go, head ~; south by ~

southeast II *n.* from; in; to the ~

South Pole *n.* at the ~

southwest I *adj.*, *adv.* 1. ~ of (to be ~ of the city) 2. (misc.) to go, head ~; south by ~

southwest II *n.* from; in; to the ~

sovereignty *n.* 1. to grant ~ 2. to assert; claim; establish; exercise ~ 3. to violate a country's ~ 4. ~ over

space *n.* 1. to save ~ 2. to clear a ~ 3. to take up ~ 4. to fill (in) the ~s 5. breathing ~ 6. (a) blank, empty ~ 7. a crawl (AE); parking ~ 8. office; storage ~ 9. interplanetary; interstellar; outer ~ (see also **air space**) 10. (a) ~ between 11. (a) ~ for 12. in ~ (to travel in ~) 13. (misc.) the (wide) open ~s; to indent several ~s; to fill every available ~

spacecraft *n.* 1. a manned; unmanned ~ (see the Usage Note for **ship**) 2. a ~ docks

spaceflight *n.* 1. to abort a ~ 2. a manned; unmanned ~ 3. a ~ to (a ~ to the moon)

space vehicle *n.* to launch a ~ (see the Usage Note for **ship**)

spacing *n.* (on a typewriter or word processor) double; single ~

spadework *n.* ["preparations"] to do the ~

span *n.* 1. a brief, short ~ 2. an attention; life; memory ~ 3. a wing ~ 4. in a certain ~ (in the brief ~ of ten years) 5. (misc.) over a ~ of five years = over a five-year ~; records covering the whole ~ of contemporary history

spanking *n.* 1. to give smb. a (good) ~ 2. to get a ~ (he got a good ~ for his misbehavior) 3. (misc.) to deserve a ~

spanner *n.* a box ~ (BE; AE has *lug wrench*)

spar *v.* (D; intr.) ("to fight") to ~ over; with

spare *v.* 1. (C) can you ~ a few minutes for me to-day? or: can you ~ me a few minutes today?; can you ~ some change for a beggar ~ or: can you ~ a beggar some change? 2. (O; can be used with one animate object) ~ us the gory details!; he wanted to ~ you embarrassment 3. (misc.) we got there with a few minutes to ~; we got there with time to ~ ("we got there early")

sparing *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ of (she's not ~ of herself!)

spark *n.* 1. to emit, produce a ~ 2. ~s fly 3. (misc.) a shower of ~s

sparkle *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with humor)

sparrow *n.* 1. ~s chirp 2. a flock of ~s

spasm *n.* 1. (a) coughing; muscle ~ 2. to go into ~ (my muscles went into ~) 3. to be in ~ (my muscles are in ~) 4. a ~ passes, subsides (my muscle ~ subsided eventually)

spat I *n.* ["quarrel"] to have a ~ with

spat II *v.* (D; intr.) ("to quarrel") to ~ with

spatter *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ with (the car ~ed me with mud) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ (all) over (the car ~ed mud (all) over me) 3. (P; intr.) the paint ~ed everywhere!

speak *v.* ("to talk") 1. to ~ glibly; loudly; quickly, rapidly; quietly, softly; slowly 2. to ~ clearly, distinctly; coherently; correctly; fluently; politely 3. to ~ bluntly, candidly, frankly, freely; openly; responsibly; truthfully 4. to ~ incorrectly; irresponsibly; rudely 5. (D; intr.) to ~ about, of, on (to ~ about politics) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ against; for, in favor of (to ~ against a bill) 7. (d; intr.) to ~ as (to ~ as the party candidate) 8. (d; intr.) to ~ for, on behalf of ("to be a spokesperson for") (she spoke for all of us; who will ~ for the accused?; "Speak for England, Arthur!" – Leo Amery, M.P., September 2, 1939) 9. (d; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from the heart; to ~ from experience) 10. (d; intr.) ("to converse") to ~ in (they were ~ing in English; more usu. is: they were ~ing English) 11. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to address") (she spoke to the crowd; to ~ to the subject; to ~ to the question on the agenda; don't ~ to him) 12. (D; intr.) ("to converse") to ~ to, (esp. AE) with (she spoke to me about several things; (esp. AE) I spoke with them for an hour) 13. (misc.) to ~ well of smb. ("to praise smb."); to ~ ill of smb. ("to criticize smb."); it ~s for itself ("it is self-evident"); roughly ~ing ("approximately"); strictly ~ing ("in exact terms"); generally ~ing

speaker *n.* ["one who speaks"] 1. a native ~ (of a language) 2. an effective, good; eloquent; fluent ~ 3. a poor ~ 4. an after-dinner; guest; public ~ (she is a good public ~) ["device that amplifies sound"] 5. an extension ~; loudspeaker ["misc."] 6. the Speaker of the House (addressed as Mister Speaker or as Madam Speaker)

speaking *n.* public ~

speak out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, concerning, on (to ~ on a subject) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ against ("to oppose") (to ~ against a proposal) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ for, in favor of, on behalf of ("to support") (to ~ for a proposal)

speak up see **speak out**

spear *n.* 1. to hurl, throw a ~ at 2. to thrust a ~ into 3. the point of a ~

spearhead *n.* 1. to send out a ~ 2. an armored ~

special I *adj.* 1. ~ about (there was smt. ~ about her) 2. ~ to 3. extra-special

special II *n.* ["special program"] 1. a TV ~ ["reduced price"] 2. to offer a ~ (on)

specialist *n.* 1. to call in ; consult a ~ 2. a ~ in, on (a ~ in plastic surgery ; a ~ on Milton)

specialize *v.* (D ; intr.) to ~ in

species *n.* 1. an endangered ; protected ~ 2. an animal ; plant ~ = a ~ of animal ; of plant 3. a ~ becomes extinct, dies out ; is reintroduced ; survives 4. a member of a ~

specific *adj.* 1. ~ about 2. ~ to (these symptoms are ~ to liver disease)

specifications *n.* 1. to adhere to, meet ~ 2. rigid ~

specifics *n.* to get down to ~

specify *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ by (to ~ smb. by name) 2. (L) the contract ~fies that a penalty must be paid if the work is not completed on time 3. (Q) the instructions ~ how the medicine is to be taken

specimen *n.* 1. to get ; take a ~ 2. to give, provide a ~ 3. a blood ; sputum ; stool ; urine ~

specs (colloq.) see **specifications**, **spectacles**

spectacle *n.* ["show, exhibition"] 1. to stage a ~ 2. a dramatic ~ ["object of curiosity"] 3. to make a ~ of oneself 4. a curious ; magnificent ; pitiful ; ridiculous ~

spectacles *n.* (now esp. BE) 1. to need ; put on ; take off ; wear ~ 2. to be fitted for ~ 3. horn-rimmed ; steel-rimmed ~ 4. a pair of ~

spectators *n.* to seat ~ (the stadium seats sixty thousand ~)

spectrum *n.* 1. a broad, wide ~ 2. (misc.) there was wholehearted endorsement for/of the plan from both ends of the political ~

speculate *v.* 1. (D ; intr.) ("to meditate, think") to ~ about, on (to ~ about the election results) 2. (D ; intr.) ("to conduct business by taking risks") to ~ in ; on (to ~ in oil shares ; to ~ in gold ; to ~ on the stock market) 3. (L) ("to assume, think") they ~d that the election results would be close

speculation *n.* ["meditation, thinking"] 1. to indulge in ~ 2. idle ; pure ; widespread ; wild ~ 3. ~ is rife 4. a flurry of ~ 5. ~ about, over (~ about the upcoming elections) 6. ~ that + clause (there was ~ that the election results would be close) ["risky business methods"] 7. to engage in ~ 8. property (BE), real-estate (AE) ; stock-market ~ 9. ~ in (~ in stocks and bonds)

speculator *n.* a property (BE), real-estate (AE) ; stock-market ~

speculum *n.* a nasal ; vaginal ~

speech *n.* ["address, talk"] 1. to deliver, give, make a ~ (to) 2. to ad-lib, improvise a ~ 3. an eloquent ; passionate ; rousing, stirring ~ 4. a brief, short ; impromptu, unrehearsed ~ 5. a boring ; long ; long-winded ; rambling ~ 6. an acceptance ; after-dinner ; campaign ; farewell ; inaugural ; keynote ; maiden ; nominating ; political ; welcoming ~ 7. a ~ about, on ; in (to deliver a ~ about climate change in German to a large audience) 8. during ; in a ~ (there was a lot of applause during the ~ and there were a lot of good points in it) ["communication in words"] 9. free ~ = freedom of ~ 10. a figure of ~ ["pronunciation"] 11. clipped ~ 12. impaired ; slurred ~ ["smb.'s words"] 13. direct ; indirect ; reported ~

speechless *adj.* 1. to be left ~ 2. ~ with (~ with anger)

speed I *n.* ["swiftness, velocity"] 1. to build up, gain, gather, increase, pick up ; maintain (a) ~ 2. to reach a ~ (to reach cruising ~ ; to reach a ~ of one hundred miles an hour) 3. to decrease, reduce ; lose ~ 4. (a) breakneck, breathtaking, high, lightning ; cruising ; deliberate ; full, maximum, top ; low ; moderate ; steady ; supersonic ~ 5. a burst of ~ 6. at a certain ~ (at top ~ ; to travel at a ~ of one hundred miles per hour) 7. with a certain ~ (they finished the work with great ~ ; with all deliberate ~) 8. (misc.) to adjust the idling ~ on an engine ; full ~ ahead ! ; at ~ (BE) ("at high speed") (the car raced through the village at ~) ["amphetamines"] (slang) 9. to shoot ; snort ~ 10. to be on ~

speed *v.* (P ; intr., tr.) to ~ south ; to ~ smb. to the airport

speed limit *n.* 1. to enforce ; establish, impose, set a ~ 2. to keep to, observe a ~ 3. to exceed a ~ 4. at ; below, under ; over ; within the ~

spell I *n.* ["incantation"] 1. to cast a ~ on, over 2. to put smb. under a ~ 3. to break, remove a ~ 4. to fall under smb.'s ~ 5. a magic ~ 6. under a ~

spell II *n.* ["period"] 1. a cold ; hot ; rainy ; sunny ; warm ~ 2. a long ; short ~ 3. a ~ as (he had a short ~ as a game-show host) ["period of illness"] 4. a coughing ; dizzy ; fainting ~ (she had been having dizzy ~s)

spellbinding *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to read her memoirs = her memoirs are ~ to read)

spell check *n.* to do, run a ~ (she ran a ~ on her computer)

spelling *n.* 1. phonetic ~ 2. (a) correct ; incorrect ; variant ~ 3. in (phonetic) ~

spell out *v.* 1. (B) they ~ed out their demands to us in considerable detail 2. (Q ; to) do I have to ~ (to you) why I did it ? 3. (misc.) "why did you do it ?" "do I really have to spell it out to/for you ? I did it because I had to !"

spend *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ for, on (to ~ a lot of money for/on a new car ; to ~ a lot on repairs ; during the severe winter we spent lots of money on fuel) 2. (D ; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ a great deal of time in studying) 3. (J) to ~ a great deal of time studying ; they spent the whole week hiking through the mountains

spender *n.* a big ~

spending *n.* 1. to boost, increase ~ 2. to cap, limit ; curtail, cut, cut back (on), decrease ~ 3. deficit ; defense ; government, public ; military ; welfare ~

sperm count *n.* a low ; normal ; high ~

spew *v.* 1. (d ; intr.) to ~ from, out of (lava ~ed from the crater) 2. (d ; intr.) to ~ into (fumes ~ed into the atmosphere)

spice I *n.* 1. to add ~(s) 2. ground ~(s)

spice II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ a cake with cinnamon)

spider *n.* 1. ~s crawl 2. ~s spin webs

spike *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ the punch with rum)

spill I *n.* ["accidental pouring"] 1. an oil ~ ["fall"] 2. to take a ~ (from a horse) 3. a nasty ~

spill II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ all over, on (I ~ed the milk all over her) 2. (d; intr.) ("to pour") to ~ into (the crowd was ~ing into the streets) 3. (d; intr.) ("to flow") to ~ out of (the liquid was ~ing out of the container)

spill over *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ into (the crowd was ~ing over into the adjacent streets)

spin I *n.* ["fast drive"] (colloq.) 1. to go for, take a ~ (let's go for a ~ around town) ["fall"] 2. to go into a ~ (the plane went into a (flat) ~; the market went into a ~) 3. to come out of a ~ ["rotation"] 4. to put a ~ on smt. (to put a ~ on a tennis ball) (see also *spin bowling* at **bowling**) ["interpretation"] 5. to put a ~ on smt. 6. a political; positive ~ (see also *spin doctor* at **doctor**; *spin dryer* at **dryer**)

spin II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to make") to ~ from, out of; into (to ~ wool into yarn = to ~ yarn out of wool) 2. (D; intr.) ("to turn") to ~ on (a wheel ~s on its axle)

spinal tap *n.* to do a ~ (on smb.)

spin-off *n.* a ~ from

spiral I *n.* an inflationary; wage-price ~ (a vicious inflationary ~)

spiral II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (the plane ~ed to earth)

spirit *n.* ["vigor"]["enthusiasm"] 1. to display, show ~ 2. to catch the ~ (of the times) 3. to break smb.'s ~ (her ~ was broken by torture) 4. (a) civic; community; ecumenical; patriotic ~ 5. (a) religious; scientific ~ 6. (a) class; college; school; team ~ 7. (a) competitive; partisan; rebellious ~ 8. a dauntless, hardy ~; (a) fighting; indomitable ~ 9. a guiding; moving ~ 10. with ~ (to work with great ~) 11. (misc.) a ~ of good will pervaded the conversation ["supernatural being, ghost"] 12. to call up, conjure up, invoke a ~ 13. an evil; holy ~ ["soul"] 14. a kindred ~ 15. in ~ (we are with you in ~) ["attitude"] 16. in a ~ (in a ~ of cooperation) 17. (misc.) the letter and the ~ of the law (see also **spirits**)

spirit away *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (she was ~ed away to the islands for a vacation)

spirit off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (he was ~ed off to prison)

spirits *n.* ["mood, morale"] 1. to boost, lift, raise smb.'s ~; to keep one's ~ up 2. to dampen smb.'s ~ 3. good, high; low ~ 4. ~ droop, flag, sink; rise 5. in ~ (in high ~ = high-spirited) ["alcohol"] 6. to drink ~ 7. a bottle; glass of ~

spit *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at; on 2. (d; intr.) to ~ in, into (to ~ in smb.'s face) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ out of (to ~ smt. out of one's mouth)

spite *n.* 1. in ~ of (they did it in ~ of my advice = they did it despite my advice) 2. out of ~ (they did it out of (pure) ~)

spiteful *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of/for him to say that = that was a ~ thing for him to say)

splash I *n.* (colloq.) ["vivid impression"] to make a (big) ~

splash II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ against, on, over (the waves ~ed against the rocks; they ~ed water (all) over me) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (they ~ed me with water) 3. (misc.) the boys ~ed through the puddle; the children were ~ing around in the water

splashdown *n.* to make a ~ (in)

splatter *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ with (the car ~ed me with mud) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ (all) over (the car ~ed mud (all) over me) 3. (P; intr.) the paint ~ed everywhere!; mud ~ed against the windows of the car

spleen *n.* ["bad temper"] 1. to vent one's ~ on ["ductless organ near the stomach"] 2. a ruptured ~

splendid *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to make the offer = that was a ~ offer for you to make)

splendor, splendour *n.* 1. regal ~ 2. in ~ (to dine in regal ~)

splice *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a wire to a cable = to ~ a wire and a cable to each other) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ a wire with tape) 3. (misc.) to ~ a wire and a cable together

splint *n.* 1. to apply a ~ to; to put a ~ on 2. a ~ for (a fractured leg)

splinter *n.* 1. to get; have a ~ (in one's finger) 2. to extract, get out, remove a ~ (she got out of my finger the ~ that had lodged there)

split I *n.* ["breach"] 1. to lead to; produce a ~ 2. a formal; irreparable ~ 3. a ~ between; with (she feared an irreparable ~ with her boyfriend) 4. a ~ in (the party) (the disagreement led to an irreparable ~ in the party between its two wings)

split II *v.* 1. to ~ formally; irreparably 2. (d; tr.) ("to divide") to ~ among, between; with (we split the profits with them rather than ~ting the profits among ourselves) 3. (d; intr., tr.) ("to divide") to ~ into (they split the party into several factions = the party split into several factions; the teacher split the class into two groups) 4. (misc.) the vote (was) split along party lines, with one wing ~ting from the party altogether; we split the profits five ways

split up *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ into (they split the party up into several factions = the party split up into several factions) 2. (colloq.) (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (she split up with her boyfriend = she and her boyfriend split up with each other; what split her and her boyfriend up with each other?) 3. (misc.) we split the profits up five ways = we split up the profits five ways

splurge *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) ("to spend extravagantly") to ~ on (to ~ on a new car)

splutter *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with rage)

spoil *v.* 1. (d; intr.; usu. in a progressive form) to ~ for ("to seek") (to be ~ing for a fight) 2. (misc.) (BE) to ~ smb. rotten (I love my grand-children but I don't want to ~ them rotten!) (see also *spoilt for choice* at **choice**)

spoils *n.* 1. to divide the ~ (of war) 2. (misc.) a division of the ~ (they argued over the division of the ~)

spoken *adj.* ~ for ("reserved")

spokesman see **spokesperson**

spokesperson *n.* a ~ for (a ~ for the strikers)

spokeswoman see **spokesperson**

sponge I *n.* ["spongy substance"] 1. to squeeze a ~ ["symbol of surrender"] 2. to throw in, toss in the ~

sponge II *v.* (colloq.) 1. (D; tr.) ("to wheedle") to ~ from, off, off of (AE) (he ~d a cigarette from me) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ off (of), on ("to impose on") (to ~ on one's friends)

sponsor I *n.* 1. a radio; television, TV ~ 2. a ~ for, of

sponsor II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she ~ed me for membership) 2. (H) she ~ed me to become a member

sponsorship *n.* 1. ~ for, of (her ~ of me for membership) 2. under smb.'s ~ (I became a member under her ~)

spoof *n.* ["parody"] a ~ of, on (it was a ~ on the political campaign)

spoon *n.* a coffee; dessert; measuring; soup ~; tablespoon; teaspoon

spoonful *n.* a heaping (AE), heaped (BE); level ~

spoon-feed *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (she spoon-fed theory to her students) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (she spoon-fed her students with theory)

sport *n.* ["person judged by her/his ability to take a loss or teasing"] 1. a bad, poor; good ~ 2. a ~ about (she was a good ~ about losing the bet) ["mockery"] (old-fashioned) 3. to make ~ of smb. ("to mock smb.") ["type of physical activity"] 4. a contact; spectator; team ~ 5. an exciting; strenuous, vigorous ~ (skiing is an exciting ~) ["physical activity"] (BE) 6. to go in for, play ~ 7. fond of ~; in the world of ~ (AE has *sports*)

sporting *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to give us a chance = giving us a chance was a ~ thing for them to do)

sports *n.* ["physical activity"] (AE) 1. to go in for, play ~ 2. fond of ~; in the world of ~ (BE has *sport*) ["types of physical activity"] 3. amateur; aquatic, water; competitive; indoor; intercollegiate (AE), inter-university (BE); intramural; outdoor; professional; varsity; winter ~ ["track meet"] (BE) 4. school ~; ~ day

sportsmanship *n.* to display, show (good; poor) ~ (she showed (her) good ~ by congratulating the person who beat her)

spot I *n.* ["mark, stain"] 1. to leave, make a ~ 2. to get out, remove a ~ 3. a grease ~ ["mark on the skin"] 4. a beauty ~ (see also *break out in spots* at **break out**; *come out in spots* at **come out**) ["area, place"] 5. a bald; black; high; isolated, secluded; low ~ 6. the penalty (soccer), the sweet (esp. tennis) ~ 7. at a ~ (let's meet at this same ~ tomorrow) (see also *rooted to the spot* at **rooted**) ["place of entertainment"] (colloq.) 8. to hit ("visit") all the night ~s ["point, position"] 9. a bright ~; the high; the low ~ (the high ~ of our visit) 10. (misc.) X marks the ~ ["misc."] 11. on the ~ ("immediately"); ("at the center of activity"); ("exposed to the worst danger") to put smb. on the ~ ("to expose smb. to danger"); a blind ~ ("an area that cannot be seen") (also fig.: see also **blind spot**); to have a soft/tender/warm ~ (in one's heart) for ("to have a weakness for"); to be in a tight ~ ("to be in a difficult situation"); a trouble ~ (that reporter has been in many trouble ~s throughout the world); (BE; colloq.) a ~ of bother ("a bit of trouble")

spot II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to identify") to ~ as (the police ~ted him as a known criminal) 2. (J) ("to see") we ~ted them going through the gate 3. (esp. AE) (O) ("to give as a handicap") he ~ted me ten points 4. (misc.) (BE) it is ~ting with rain; "Look! There's a red squirrel!" "Well ~ted!"

spotlight *n.* 1. to direct, focus, shine, turn a ~ on 2. (fig.) in the ~

spouse *n.* a beloved; faithful; unfaithful ~

spout *v.* (d; intr.) ("to spurt") to ~ from

sprawl I *n.* urban ~

sprawl II *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ on the sofa

sprawling *adj.* to send smb. ~

spray I *n.* an aerosol; hair; insect ~

spray II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ on, onto, over (to ~ paint on the walls) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ the walls with paint)

spread I *n.* ["expansion, transmission"] 1. to arrest, check, halt, stop; prevent the ~ (of a disease) 2. a ~ from; to (we did our best to prevent the ~ of the disease from parents to children) ["food"] 3. a cheese ~ ["misc."] 4. (the) middle-age(d) ~

spread II *v.* 1. to ~ smt. evenly; thickly; thinly (to ~ paint evenly) 2. to ~ quickly; unchecked (the epidemic spread unchecked) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ butter on bread) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ over (to ~ a blanket over a bed; to ~ payments over a year) 5. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; to (we did our best to prevent the disease from ~ing from parents to children; the epidemic spread to neighboring countries) 6. to ~ with (to ~ bread with butter) 7. (misc.) to ~ like wildfire; this butter ~s easily (on bread); to ~ papers out on the floor

spree *n.* 1. to go on a ~ 2. a crime; shopping; spending; weekend ~

spring I *n.* ["season"] 1. early; last; late; mid-; next ~ 2. during the, in (the) ~ (we met late in the ~ of 1995 = we met in the late ~ of 1995) 3. (misc.) there is a touch of ~ in the air; a harbinger of ~ (see also *spring equinox* at **equinox**) ["source of water"] 4. a hot, thermal; mineral; subterranean ~ ["bounce, elasticity"] 5. a ~ in, to (there was a ~ to her step) ["device of coiled metal"] 6. a box; watch ~

spring II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (the lion sprang at the hunter) 2. (d; intr.) ("to arise, result") to ~ from 3. (D; tr.) to ~ on ("to present without warning to smb.”) (to ~ a surprise on smb.) 4. (d; intr.) (“to jump”) to ~ over (to ~ over a wall) 5. (d; intr.) (“to jump”) to ~ to (to ~ to smb.’s defense; to ~ to one’s feet) 6. (s) the trap sprang shut 7. (misc.) they sprang out of the tank and into action; the tiger was poised to ~

springboard *n.* 1. a ~ for (a ~ for a new campaign) 2. a ~ to (a ~ to success)

spring-clean *n.* (BE) to do, have a ~

spring-cleaning (esp. AE) see **spring-clean**

sprinkle *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ on; with (to ~ water on clothes; to ~ clothes with water)

sprout (D; intr.) to ~ from

spruce up *v.* 1. (D; refl.) to ~ for (they ~d themselves up for the big party) 2. (H) they ~d themselves up to go to the big party

spunk *n.* (colloq.) [“courage”] 1. to show ~ 2. the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to defend her rights)

spur I *n.* [“incentive, stimulus”] 1. a ~ to (a ~ to action) 2. a ~ to + inf. (a ~ to act) (see also **spurs**) [“misc.”] 3. on the ~ of the moment (“without planning”)

spur II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smb. to action) 2. (H) what ~red her to act?

spur on *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smb. on to action) 2. (H) what ~red her on to act?

spurs *n.* [“recognition”] 1. to win one’s ~ [“devices worn on a rider’s heel”] 2. to dig, drive one’s ~ (into the side of a horse) 3. ~ jingle 4. a pair of ~

spurt I *n.* 1. a sudden ~ 2. a growth ~ 3. in a ~ (to work in ~s; the blood came out in a ~)

spurt II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (blood ~ed from the wound)

sputum *n.* to cough up, produce ~

spy I *n.* 1. a foreign ~ 2. a network of spies (see also *spy ring* at **ring I** *n.*)

spy II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for a foreign power) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on, upon 3. (J) we spied them coming through the gate

squabble I *n.* 1. to cause, lead to a ~ 2. to patch up, settle a ~ 3. a domestic, family ~ (their differences led to a family ~) 4. a ~ breaks out, ensues 5. a ~ about, over; between; with (a ~ broke out between them over the use of the telephone; she had a ~ with her neighbor about the money that he had borrowed)

squabble II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, over; with (she ~ed with her neighbor about the money that he had borrowed)

squad *n.* 1. a bomb; demolition; fraud (esp. BE); flying (BE) ~ (see also **firing squad**; *squad car* at **car I** *n.*) 2. a drugs; vice ~ 3. in a ~ (to work in the fraud ~) 4. (misc.) (BE) the awkward ~ (the awkward ~ are causing trouble again)

squalor *n.* 1. in ~ (to live in ~) 2. (misc.) “private affluence and public ~” – attributed to J.K. Galbraith, *The Affluent Society*, 1958

squander *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ a fortune on bad investments)

square I *n.* [“shape”] 1. to draw, make a ~ 2. (misc.) back to ~ one (“back to the beginning”) [“place”] 3. the main ~ 4. the public ~ (fig.) (an issue hotly debated in the public ~)

square II *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (their story doesn’t ~ with the facts; to ~ accounts with smb.)

square root *n.* to calculate, find, extract the ~

squash I *n.* (BE) [“fruit drink”] lemon; orange ~

squash II *n.* (AE) [“marrow-like plant”] summer; winter ~ (BE has *marrow*)

squawk I *n.* to emit, give, let out a ~

squawk II *v.* (colloq.) 1. (D; intr.) (“to complain”) to ~ about (she ~ed (to us) about the unfairness of the decision) 2. (L; to) she ~ed (to us) that the decision was unfair = “The decision’s unfair!” she ~ed (to us)

squeak *n.* [“shrill cry”] 1. to emit, give, let out a ~ 2. with a ~ (the gate closed with a ~) [“escape”] (colloq.) 3. a close (AE), narrow (BE) ~

squeal I *n.* 1. to emit, give, let out a ~ 2. with a ~ (the car stopped suddenly with a ~ of its brakes; she saw the cake with a ~ of delight)

squeal II *v.* 1. (slang) (d; intr.) (“to inform against smb.”) to ~ on (the criminal ~ed on his accomplices (to the police)) 2. (slang) (d; intr.) to ~ to (the criminal ~ed (on his accomplices) to the police) 3. (D; intr.) (“to emit a squeal”) to ~ in, with (the car’s brakes ~ed as it stopped suddenly; she ~ed with delight when she saw the cake)

squeamish *adj.* ~ about

squeeze I *n.* (colloq.) [“hug”] 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. a gentle; tight ~ [“lover”] (esp. AE) 3. smb.’s main ~ [“misc.”] 4. in a tight ~ (“in difficulty”); to put the ~ on smb. (“to put pressure on smb.”); a credit ~ (when credit is tight)

squeeze II *v.* 1. (C) ~ some orange juice for me; or: ~ me some orange juice 2. (d; tr.) to ~ from, out of (~ some toothpaste out of the tube) 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ into (to ~ into a small room; to ~ juice into a glass) 4. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ through (to ~ through a narrow passage) 5. (N; used with an adjective) ~ the mops dry

squelch *n.* (colloq.) [“crushing rebuke”] a perfect ~

squint *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at

squirm *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ out of (“to evade”) (to ~ out of an obligation)

squirt I *n.* [“instance of squirting”] 1. to give smt. a ~ [“insignificant person”] (colloq.) 2. a little ~

squirt II *v.* 1. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ from, out of (the liquid ~ed out of the bottle; to ~ a liquid out of a bottle) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ on, over (she ~ed water ¬on/over/all over¬ us) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ with (she ~ed us with water)

stab I *n.* [“attempt”] (colloq.) 1. to have, make a ~ at [“sensation”] 2. a sharp; sudden ~ (of pain) [“thrust of a pointed weapon”] 3. a ~ in the back (also fig.) (see also *stab wound* at **wound**)

stab II 1. (D; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ smb. in the leg) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smb. with a knife) 3. (misc.) to ~

smb. to death; to ~ smb. in the back (usu. fig.); to ~ at smb. – but miss

stability *n.* 1. to lend ~ to 2. economic; emotional; political; social ~ 3. ~ in

stabilization *n.* economic; price ~

stable *n.* a livery; riding (esp. AE) ~

stack I *n.* 1. a bookstack; haystack; smokestack (esp. AE) 2. (misc.) to pile books in a ~; (colloq.) (AE) to blow one's ~ ("to lose one's temper")

stack II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to arrange underhandedly") to ~ against (the cards were ~ed against her) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ with (the floor was ~ed with books) 3. (P; tr.) ~ the books on the floor; ~ the boxes against the door; ~ the merchandise in piles

stacks *n.* (in a library) 1. closed; open ~ 2. in the ~

stack up *v.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) (D; intr.) to ~ against, to ("to compare to") (how do we ~ to the competition?)

stadium *n.* 1. to crowd, fill, jam, pack a ~ 2. to empty a ~ 3. a baseball; football; Olympic ~ 4. a ~ empties; fills 5. a ~ holds, seats (the ~ holds 70,000 people) 6. in, into a ~ (70,000 people can fit into the ~)

staff I *n.* ["personnel"] 1. to dismiss, fire; employ, hire; lay off; recruit ~ 2. an administrative; coaching; editorial; hospital; medical; nursing; office; teaching ~ 3. a skeleton ~ 4. junior; permanent; senior; temporary ~ 5. on the ~ 6. (misc.) to join a ~ (she joined the ~ as an editor); a member of (the) ~ = a ~ member ["group of officers serving a commander"] 7. a general; joint; military; personal; special ~ 8. on a ~ (he was on the general ~) 9. (misc.) to assign smb. to a ~ (she was assigned to the ~ as an intelligence officer); a chief of ~ USAGE NOTE: In AE the teaching staff of an educational institution is typically called its faculty.

staff II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ by, with (the office was ~ed with part-time workers)

stag *adj.*, *adv.* to go ~ ("unaccompanied by smb. of the opposite sex" = AE, "unaccompanied by smb. of the female sex" = CE)

stage *n.* ["platform on which plays are performed"] 1. a revolving; sinking; sliding ~ 2. off; on (the) ~ (she has appeared many times on ~; to go on ~; she's very different off ~ from on ~) ["scene, setting"] 3. to set the ~ for (the ~ was set for a showdown) (see also **center stage**) ["level, degree, step"] 4. to go through; reach a ~ 5. an advanced; beginning, elementary; closing, final, last; critical, crucial, key; early; intermediate; late; opening ~ 6. flood ~ 7. at a ~ (negotiations were at a crucial ~; the river was at flood ~) 8. in a ~ (in this ~ of one's development) ["portion, part"] 9. easy ~s 10. by, in ~s (to cover a distance by easy ~s; to learn a language in easy ~s)

stagefright *n.* 1. to get; have ~ 2. a (bad) case of ~

stagger *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from; into (to ~ into a room) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ out of (to ~ out of a building) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ to; toward 4. (R) it ~ed me to learn of the earthquake 5. (misc.) to ~ to one's feet; to ~ under a heavy burden

staggered *adj.* 1. ~ at, by (~ at the news of the earthquake) 2. ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to learn of the earthquake)

staggering *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to learn of the earthquake)

stain I *n.* ["discolored spot"] 1. to leave a ~ 2. to get out, remove a ~ 3. a stubborn ~ 4. a ~ on (there's a ~ on your shirt) (also fig.) (a ~ on smb.'s reputation)

stain II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ with (he ~ed his shirt with ink) 2. (N; used with an adjective) we ~ed the wood dark brown

staircase *n.* a circular, spiral; winding ~

stairs *n.* 1. to climb, come up, go up, walk up the ~ 2. to come down; go down, walk down the ~ 3. moving ~ 4. service ~ 5. (misc.) a flight of ~; at the bottom, foot/head, top of the ~

stairway see **staircase**

stake I *n.* ["stick"] 1. to drive a ~ (into the ground) 2. to plant a ~ (in the ground) ["post"] 3. (to burn smb.) at the ~ ["share"] 4. to have a ~ in smt. (we want everyone to feel they have a ~ in society!) 5. a personal ~ ["risk"] 6. at ~ (our whole future is at ~); to go to the ~ for/over smt. ("to regard smt. as vitally important") (esp. BE) (he prefers bitter to lager – but he wouldn't go to the ~ for/over it!) (see also **stakes**)

stake II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ one's hope(s) on an investment) 2. (misc.) to ~ a claim to smt.

stakeholder *n.* a ~ in (we want everyone to feel they are ~s in society!)

stake out *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ on, to (esp. AE) (to ~ a claim to a mine)

stakes *n.* ["wager"] ["prize"] 1. to lower; raise the ~s 2. big, high ~ (to play for high ~) ["misc."] (colloq.) 3. to pull up, up ~ ("to move elsewhere") (one day he just upped ~ (and left) without telling anybody!)

stalemate *n.* 1. to end in, reach a ~ 2. to break, end a ~ 3. a continuing ~, a ~ between; in; over (we tried to break the continuing ~ in the negotiations between them over pay)

stalk *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ out of the room

stall I *n.* (BE) 1. a market ~ (see also **stand I** *n.* 9) 2. (misc.) a stallholder

stall II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ on (they were ~ing on handing over the documents) 2. (misc.) to ~ for time

stamina *n.* the ~ to + inf. (she lacked the ~ to finish the race)

stammer I *n.* (to have, speak with) a nervous ~

stammer II *v.* 1. to ~ nervously 2. (B) she ~ed (out) a few words to us 3. (L; to) she ~ed to us that she was sorry = "I'm sorry," she ~ed (to us)

stamp I *n.* ["postage stamp"] 1. to put, stick a ~ on (an envelope) 2. to lick, moisten a ~ 3. to issue a ~ (the post office has issued a new commemorative ~) 4. to collect ~s 5. to cancel a ~ 6. an airmail; commemorative; postage; revenue; tax ~ 7. a book;

roll; set; sheet of ~s ["coupon"] 8. a food; trading ~ ["device for imprinting"] 9. a rubber ~ (see also *stamp of approval* at **approval**) ["clear sign, mark"] 10. to bear, carry; leave a certain ~ (she bore the ~ of authority from the moment she took over and has certainly left her ~ on the company)

stamp II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as ("to mark") (these revelations ~ed him as a cheat) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ in, on ("to affix") (to ~ a date in a passport) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to crush") (to ~ on an insect) 4. (N; used with an adjective) ("to mark") she ~ed the document *secret* 5. (P; intr.) ("to stomp") she ~ed out of the room

stampede I *n.* 1. to cause, create a ~ 2. a ~ to + inf. (there was a ~ to get to the exit)

stampede II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (they were ~d into selling their homes) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to, towards (they ~d towards the exit) 3. (E) they ~d to get to the exit

stance *n.* ["attitude, position"] 1. to adopt, take a ~ (the party leaders have adopted an unpopular ~ on the deficit) 2. a controversial; intransigent, uncompromising; middle-of-the-road, moderate; radical; tough ~ 3. a ~ on (the president took a tough ~ on the issue of tax reform)

stand I *n.* ["defense"] 1. to make, put up a ~ 2. a last ~ ["attitude, position"] 3. to take a ~ 4. a controversial; defiant; firm, resolute, strong; intransigent, uncompromising ~ 5. a ~ against; for, in favor of; on (the president took a resolute ~ on the issue of tax reform) ["rack, small table"] 6. a music; umbrella ~ ["place taken by a witness"] 7. to take the ~ 8. a witness ~ (AE; BE has *witness box*) ["small structure used for conducting business"] (BE often prefers *stall*) 9. a fruit; hot-dog ~; newsstand; vegetable ~ ["performance, engagement"] 10. a one-night ~ (also fig.: "a single sexual encounter") ["row"] 11. a taxi ~ (BE prefers *taxi rank*) (see also **stands**)

stand II *v.* 1. ("to hold oneself") to ~ firm; still; straight; tall 2. (BE) (d; intr.) ("to be a candidate") to ~ as (to ~ as a Labour candidate) 3. (d; intr.) ("to hold oneself erect") to ~ at (to ~ at attention; to ~ at ease) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ by ("to support") (her family stood by her throughout the trial) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to represent") (our party used to ~ for progress) 6. (BE; *run* is esp. AE) (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to be a candidate") (to ~ for Parliament against the incumbent M.P.) 7. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to tolerate") (we will not ~ for such conduct; I won't ~ for his boasting!) 8. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to insist on") (to ~ on one's rights; to ~ on ceremony) 9. (d; intr.) to ~ over ("to watch") (he always ~s over me when I work) 10. (d; intr.) ("to be regarded") to ~ with (how do you ~ with your boss?) 11. (E) ("to face") ("to have as a prospect") we stood to gain a great deal 12. (esp. BE) (E; usu. with cannot – can't – couldn't) ("to tolerate") she couldn't ~ to wait any longer 13. (G; usu. with cannot – can't – couldn't) ("to tolerate") she couldn't ~ waiting any longer 14. (K; usu. with cannot – can't – couldn't) ("to tolerate") I can't ~ his boasting 15. (esp. BE) (O) ("to buy") can I ~ you another round of drinks? 16. (P; tr.) ("to place") she stood the bottle on the table; I stood the books in a row; ~ the paintings against the door 17. (s) she stood first in her class; to ~ accused of murder; I ~ corrected 18. (misc.) she couldn't ~ it when she had to wait; I can't ~ it when he boasts; to ~ in smb.'s way; your balance ~s at one thousand dollars; the building ~s five hundred feet high; the inflation rate ~s at sixteen percent; (AE) to ~ by one's guns ("to defend one's viewpoint stubbornly"); to ~ on one's own (two) feet ("to support oneself"); to ~ tall (esp. AE; colloq.) ("to be resolute") (see also *stand pat* at **pat I** *adj.*, *adv.*)

stand apart *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (she stood apart from the others)

standard *n.* 1. to establish, set a ~ 2. to apply a ~ 3. to have a ~ (to have high ~s) 4. to adhere to, maintain a ~ 5. to come up to, meet a ~ 6. to lower; raise ¬ ~s/a ~¬ (to raise the ~ of living; to raise academic ~s) 7. to abandon a ~ (the gold ~ was abandoned) 8. a high; low ~ 9. a double; moral ~ (to apply a double ~) 10. a rigorous, strict ~ 11. the gold ~ (to go off the gold ~) (also fig.) (this dictionary is the gold ~ of excellence against which all other dictionaries must be measured) 12. a living ~, living ~s (see also *standard of living* at **living**; **standard of living**) 13. academic, scholastic; educational; moral; professional ~s 14. below; up to ~; to a certain ~ (the work was not up to ~ so we made sure that it was done again to a very high ~) 15. by a certain ~ (by our ~s the candidate is not satisfactory; in fact, by *any* ~s he's pretty unsatisfactory!) 16. ~s are falling, going down; going up, rising 17. on a ~ (on a gold ~)

standardization *n.* to achieve, bring about ~

standard of living *n.* 1. to raise the ~ 2. a high; low ~ 3. a ~ falls, goes down; goes up, rises

stand back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from

standby *n.* ["alert"] to be on ~

stand by *v.* ("to be ready") 1. (D; intr.) to ~ with (they were ~ing by with additional supplies) 2. (E) to ~ to land 3. (misc.) how can you just ~ idly by when millions of children are dying of hunger?!

stand clear *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ of (~ of the closing doors, please!)

stand down *v.* (esp. BE) (D; intr.) ("to withdraw") to ~ in favor of (the other candidate)

stand in *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to substitute for") (can anyone ~ for her?)

standing *n.* ["duration"] 1. of (long) ~ (a custom of long ~ = a long-standing custom) ["status"] 2. academic; advanced ~ (at a university) 3. ~ among, with (his intransigent stand on tax reform enhanced his ~ among the voters) 4. the ~ to + inf. (who has the ~ to take over the leadership of the party?) 5. (misc.) in good ~; an artist of high ~ ["misc."] 6.

(US; on a traffic sign) ¬No Standing/No Stopping¬ (GB has *No Waiting)*

stand out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to be clearly visible") to ~ against (to ~ against a dark background) 2. (D; intr.) ("to be noticeable") to ~ among, from, in (to ~ among the others; to ~ in a crowd; to ~ from the rest of the group) 3. (D; intr.) ("to be noticeable") to ~ as (she ~s out as the leading candidate) 4. (colloq.) (BE) (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to insist on") (to ~ out for higher wages) 5. (misc.) he stood out for his intransigent stand on tax reform

standpoint *n.* from a ~ (from a practical ~; from our ~) (see also **viewpoint**)

stands *n.* ["(for spectators to stand or sit)"] in the ~ (compare **bleachers**)

standstill *n.* 1. to bring smt. to a ~ 2. to come to, end in, reach a ~ 3. to end a ~ 4. a complete, total ~ 5. a ~ between; in; over (we tried to end the total ~ in the negotiations between them over pay) 6. at a ~ (negotiations were at a complete ~) 7. (misc.) to fight smb. to a ~

stand up *v.* 1. to ~ straight 2. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to defend") (to ~ for one's rights) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to resist") (no one dared to ~ to the boss; this jacket will ~ to rough wear) 4. (misc.) the charges will not ~ ("be accepted")

staple *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (~ this page to that sheet)

star I *n.* ["heavenly body"] 1. a bright ~ (we walked out under the bright ~s) 2. a falling, shooting ~ 3. a fixed ~ 4. the evening; morning; north ~ 5. a distant ~ 6. ~s come out; shine, twinkle 7. (misc.) a galaxy of ~s ["prominent performer"] 8. a baseball; basketball; box-office; film, movie (AE); football; guest; pop; rising; rock; rugby; soccer; sports; track; TV ~ (we lined up a galaxy of ~s for our all-star show!) ["fortune"] 9. smb.'s ~ rises; sets, wanes (her ~ was rising) 10. under a ~ (she was born under a lucky ~) ["award"] 11. a battle; gold ~ ["shape"] 12. a five-pointed; six-pointed ~ 13. (misc.) the Star of David

star II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ as (in his last film he ~red as a cowboy) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ in (in his last film he ~red as a cowboy)

starch I *n.* cornstarch (AE; BE has *corn flour*); potato ~

starch II *v.* to ~ stiffly

stardom *n.* to achieve ~ (Vivien Leigh achieved ~ as Scarlet O'Hara in *Gone with the Wind*)

stare I *n.* a blank; cold, icy; fixed; haughty; vacant; wide-eyed ~

stare II *v.* 1. to ~ blankly; coldly, icily; fixedly; haughtily; vacantly; wide-eyed 2. (D; intr.) to ~ at (I ~d at him and he ~d back at me) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into space) 4. (misc.) the solution was ~ring us in the face ("the solution was obvious")

starlight *n.* 1. by ~ 2. in the ~

start I *n.* 1. to get off to, make a ~ 2. to have a ~ 3. a flying, running ~ (to get off to a flying ~) 4. a head ~ (to have a head ~) 5. a fresh, new ~ (they got off to/made a fresh ~) 6. an auspicious, promising ~ (the project got off to/had a promising ~) 7. an inauspicious, unpromising; false; shaky ~ (they got off to a shaky ~) 8. a ~ at, on (they made a fresh, new ~ at working out their problems; they got off to a shaky ~ on the project) 9. at the ~ 10. for a ~ (for a ~, let's agree where we should meet) 11. from the (very) ~ 12. (misc.) from ~ to finish ["misc."] 13. by fits and ~ ("in irregular bursts of activity")

start II *v.* 1. to ~ afresh, anew 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ as (she ~ed her career as a dancer) 3. (d; intr., tr.) ("to begin") to ~ at (prices ~ at five dollars; they ~ed the bidding at fifty dollars) 4. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ by (they ~ed (the proceedings) by reviewing the facts of the case) 5. (D; intr.) ("to leave") to ~ for (when did they ~ for the airport?) 6. (d; intr.) ("to leave") to ~ from (we ~ed from Philadelphia) 7. (d; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a trip; to ~ on another case) 8. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ with (they ~ed (the proceedings) with a review of the facts of the case; let's ~ with you) 9. (E) they ~ed to cough 10. (G) they ~ed coughing 11. (J) what ~ed them coughing? 12. (misc.) to ~ with, let's consider climate change; to ~ young; she ~ed towards the door; don't ~ anything ("don't cause any trouble")

start back *v.* (P; intr.) let's ~ for home; before it gets dark, we should ~ to the city; while the ferries are still running, we should ~ across the river; we should ~ from this point at dawn

starters *n.* (colloq.) for ~ ("to begin with") (for ~, let's consider climate change)

start in *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ by (they ~ed in by reviewing the facts of the case) 2. (AE) (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to put pressure on") (then they ~ed in on her) 3. (misc.) they ~ed in on me to buy a new car (AE); they're ~ing in again with their critical remarks

startle *v.* (R) it ~d me to see them dressed like that

startled *adj.* 1. ~ at (~ at the news) 2. ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to see them dressed like that)

startling *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to see them dressed like that)

start off *v.* 1. see **start II** 1–8 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (they ~ed off to the airport without saying goodbye) 3. (misc.) to ~ on a new tack; to ~ on the wrong foot 4. (s) to ~ poor and ¬end up/finish up¬ rich; to ~ as you mean to go on

start out *v.* 1. see **start off** 2. (E) they ~ed out to conquer the world of show business but ended up as extras

starve *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into submission) 2. (misc.) to ~ to death; to ~ oneself to death (see also *starve to death* at **death**)

starved *adj.* ~ for, of (BE) (~ for company)

state I *n.* ["government"] 1. to establish, found, set up a ~ 2. to govern, rule a ~ 3. a city; free; independent; nation; sovereign ~ 4. a buffer; client; puppet ~ 5. a capitalist; communist; socialist; welfare ~ 6. a failed; garrison; one-party; police; totalitarian ~ 7. a secular; theocratic ~ 8. a member

~ (the member ~s of the UN) 9. (misc.) a head of ~; affairs/matters of ~ ["condition"] 10. a good; satisfactory; unspoiled ~ 11. a permanent; temporary; transitional ~ 12. a comatose; moribund; trance; unconscious ~ 13. a bad, poor; sorry; unsatisfactory; weakened ~ 14. a confused; hysterical; nervous ~ 15. an emotional; mental ~ 16. a financial ~ 17. a gaseous; liquid; solid ~ 18. in a ~ (in a good ~ of repair; in a poor ~ of health; in a highly nervous ~) 19. (misc.) the ~ of the art ("the level of development") (is your computer state-of-the-art ("very up-to-date")?) (see also *state of affairs* at **affairs**; *state of mind* at **mind I** *n.*; *state of war* at **war I** *n.*) ["nervous condition"] 20. in a ~ (she was in quite a ~) ["pomp"] 21. to lie in ~ ["any of the states into which a country is divided"] 22. a dry ~ ("a state in which the sale of alcoholic beverages is prohibited") 23. (historical; US) a border; free; slave ~ 24. a fly-over ~ (that one ignores while flying over it between the liberal coastal states of the USA)

state II *v.* 1. to ~ categorically; clearly; emphatically; openly; solemnly; unreservedly 2. (B) we ~d our views to them 3. (L; to) they ~ed (to the reporters) that a summit conference would take place soon = "a summit conference will take place soon," they ~d (to the reporters) 4. (Q) they did not ~ (to the reporters) exactly when the summit conference would take place 5. (misc.) all terms and conditions are as ~d above unless ~d otherwise below

statehood *n.* 1. to achieve ~ 2. to seek, strive for ~ 3. ~ in (the 50 states of the USA have all achieved ~ in the USA)

statement *n.* ["act of stating"] ["something stated"] 1. to issue, make a ~ 2. to confirm; sign a ~ 3. to deny; refute; retract, withdraw a ~ 4. a brief, short; preliminary; succinct; terse ~ 5. a clear; definitive ~ 6. a categorical; controversial; fashion; sweeping ~ (to wear big hats today is to make a controversial fashion ~) 7. a prepared; sworn; voluntary ~ 8. a rash; vague ~ 9. an oral; written ~ 10. a false; truthful ~ 11. a ~ that + clause (they issued a ~ (to the reporters) that a summit conference would take place soon) 12. (misc.) to take down smb.'s ~; a ~ to the effect that… (they issued a ~ to the effect that a summit conference would take place soon) ["report"] 13. to issue a ~ 14. a bank; financial; mission; official; policy; political; public ~ (our mission ~ is: give better value for money!) 15. a ~ about, on 16. in a ~ (the government issued a ~ about the strike in which they said they hoped to settle it soon)

state's evidence *n.* (AE) to turn ~ (see also **King's evidence**, **Queen's evidence**)

statesman *n.* an elder; prominent ~

statesmanship *n.* to practice ~

stateswoman *n.* an elder; prominent ~

static *n.* to produce ~

station I *n.* ["building or place used for a specific purpose"] 1. a broadcasting; radio; television, TV ~ 2. a bus; coach (BE); freight (AE); railroad (AE), railway (esp. BE), train; subway (AE), tube (BE), underground (BE) ~; the last; next ~ (I got on at the last ~: please let me off at the next ~) 3. a fire; police ~ 4. a coast-guard; naval; recruiting ~ 5. a hydroelectric; power ~ 6. a radar; radar-tracking; space; tracking; weather ~ 7. a polling ~ (esp. BE) ["place where motor vehicles are serviced"] 8. a filling, gas (AE), gasoline (AE), petrol (BE), service ~ ["place of duty"] 9. an action; battle ~ (see also **battle station**) ["position"] 10. one's ~ in life 11. above; beneath smb.'s ~ in life ["misc."] 12. to pick up a radio ~

station II *v.* (P; tr.) they were ~ed in Germany; our unit was ~ed near the coast

statistics *n.* 1. to check; collect, gather, take; publish, release, report; record; tabulate ~ 2. to bandy ~ (about); to cite, quote ~ 3. to interpret; manipulate ~ 4. cold, hard ~ 5. vital ~ ("essential data about a population") (also fig.) ("a woman's breast, hip, and waist measurements") 6. crime ~ 7. official ~ 8. reliable; valid ~ 9. ~ indicate, show 10. according to, judging by, to judge by ~ (according to the latest official ~, everything is OK!)

statue *n.* 1. to carve; sculpt, sculpture (esp. AE) a ~ 2. to cast a ~ (in bronze) 3. to erect, put up a ~ (they put up a ~ of/to Winston Churchill) 4. to unveil a ~ (they unveiled a new ~ of Winston Churchill that stands in the park) 5. an equestrian ~

stature *n.* 1. considerable; imposing ~ (a person of imposing ~) 2. the ~ to + inf. (does she have the ~ to run for national office?) 3. in ~ (to grow in ~; small in ~)

status *n.* 1. to achieve ~ 2. to confer, give, grant ~ 3. celebrity ~ 4. most-favored nation ~ 5. legal ~ (to enjoy/have legal ~) 6. smb.'s financial; marital; social ~ 7. equal; high; low ~ 8. smb.'s ~ among; as (this will not affect your ~ as an asylum-seeker, nor will it lower your ~ among your friends) (see also *status symbol* at **symbol**)

status quo *n.* 1. to maintain, preserve; restore the ~ 2. to disrupt threaten; overturn the ~

statute *n.* 1. a penal ~ 2. by ~ (an organization regulated by ~) (see also *on the statute books* at **book I** *n.*)

statute of limitations *n.* 1. the ~ takes effect, goes into effect (or: colloq. and illogically – the ~ expires, runs out) 2. under the ~

stay I *n.* ["delay"] (legal) 1. to grant, issue; vacate a ~ 2. (misc.) a ~ of execution ["time spent"] 3. a long; short ~ 4. during, throughout a ~ 5. (misc.) we had a very pleasant ~ at the hotel, throughout which we enjoyed ourselves thoroughly

stay II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to remain") to ~ for, to (to ~ for, to dinner) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ off ("to keep off") (to ~ off the grass) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ out of ("to avoid") (to ~ out of trouble) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ with smb. ("to be smb.'s guest") (they ~ed with us) 5. (s) to ~ calm; seated 6. (misc.) to ~ from Monday to Wednesday USAGE NOTE: The phrase *from Monday to Wednesday* is ambiguous. Does the stay include Wednesday or not? If it does, you can make that clear by saying *from Monday through Wednesday* (AE) or *from Monday to Wednesday inclusive* (CE). The phrase *from Monday through to Wednesday* is esp. BE and is also somewhat ambiguous: though it is meant typically to include Wednesday it need not do so.

stay abreast *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ of (to ~ of the news; the runners ~ed abreast of each other)

stay ahead *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ of

stay away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from smb.)

staying power *n.* the ~ to + inf. (does she have the ~ to finish the race?)

stay on *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ as (she ~ed on as deputy) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for the evening's entertainment) 3. (misc.) to ~ (in order) to enjoy the evening's entertainment

stay out *v.* 1. to ~ late 2. to ~ on strike

stay up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (they allowed the children to ~ for the evening's entertainment) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ until (we ~ed up until midnight) 3. (misc.) to ~ late; the parents ~ed up with the sick child all night; to ~ (in order) to enjoy the evening's entertainment

stead *n.* to stand smb. in good ~ ("to be useful to smb.")

steady *adj.* 1. (colloq.) (AE) to go ~ with smb. ("to be smb.'s boyfriend or girlfriend") 2. (misc.) to hold smt. ~; (fig. as if before a race) ready, ~, go! (BE; AE has *get ready, get set, go!*)

steak *n.* 1. to broil (AE), grill a ~ 2. a juicy; tender; tough ~ 3. to like one's ~ medium; medium-rare; rare; well-done 4. a beefsteak; club (esp. US); cube (esp. US); flank; minute; Porterhouse; rump; Salisbury (US); salmon; sirloin; Swiss (esp. US); T-bone ~ 5. (BE) braising; stewing ~ (I'd like some stewing ~ for my steak-and-kidney pie, please)

steal *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to take or have surreptitiously") to ~ at (to ~ a glance at smb.) 2. (D; intr., tr.) ("to take illegally") to ~ from (to ~ from the rich; he stole money from his employer) 3. (d; intr.) ("to depart silently") to ~ from, out of (she stole out of the room) 4. (P; intr.) ("to move silently") she stole into the house; we stole quietly across the field; the intruder stole through the rooms

stealth *n.* by ~ (to enter a building by ~)

steal up *v.* (D; intr.) ("to sneak up") to ~ behind; on, to (he stole up behind/on me in the dark)

steam I *n.* 1. to emit ~ 2. to get up, produce, work up ~ 3. ~ condenses; forms 4. ~ hisses 5. a cloud; wisp of ~ 6. (misc.) (colloq.) to blow off, let off ~ ("to vent one's feelings"); to run out of ~ ("to use up one's energy"); a head of ~ (fig.) ("energy, momentum") (our indignation helped us to work up/get up quite a head of ~ even before the campaign got under way!)

steam II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ into; out of (to ~ into a harbor) 2. (N; used with an adjective) she ~ed the envelope open

steamed up *adj.* (colloq.) ["angry"] ~ about, over (don't get ~ about/over smt. so unimportant!)

steamer *n.* 1. an oceangoing; paddle; tramp ~ 2. by ~ 3. on (board) a ~

steam out *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to sea)

steamroller *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ through (to ~ a bill through Congress)

steel I *n.* 1. to make, produce ~ 2. to temper ~ 3. solid; stainless ~ 4. a bar; ingot; sheet; slab; strip of ~ 5. (misc.) cold ~ ("bayonet, knife used in close combat")

steel II *v.* 1. (D; refl.) to ~ for (to ~ oneself for the next attack) 2. (H; refl.) to ~ oneself to face an ordeal

steeped *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ in (~ in local traditions)

steeple *n.* a church ~

steer I *n.* ["castrated bull or ox"] to rope a ~

steer II *v.* 1. (P; intr., tr.) we ~ed for port; they ~ed into the hotel 2. (misc.) to ~ (well) clear of ("to keep away from") (to ~ clear of danger; ~ clear of him: he's trouble!)

steerage *n.* ["section in a passenger ship"] 1. to travel ~ 2. in ~ (to cross the ocean in ~)

steering *n.* power ~

stem I *n.* (ling.) a consonant; verb ~

stem II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ from

stench *n.* a dreadful, horrible, unbearable ~

stencil *n.* to cut, make a ~

step I *n.* ["placing the foot"] 1. to make, take a ~ (to take a ~ backward) 2. to retrace one's ~s 3. a giant (usu. fig.); long; mincing; short; small; stutter (AE) ~ ("That's one small ~ for [a] man, one giant leap for mankind." – Neil Armstrong (on the Moon), July 21, 1969) 4. (usu. fig.) ~ by ~ ["sequence of movements"] (dancing) 5. to execute, perform; learn a (dance) ~ ["stride in marching"] (mil.) 6. to keep in ~ 7. to change ~ 8. an even, steady ~ 9. half; route ~ 10. in ~; out of ~ (also fig.: she was out of ~ with everyone else) ["action"] 11. to take a ~ 12. a careful, prudent; positive; precautionary; preventive ~ 13. a bold; critical; decisive; giant; historic ~ (to take a giant ~ forward) 14. a dangerous; drastic; fatal ~ 15. a false; rash, risky ~ 16. (misc.) to keep a/one ~ ahead of everyone; watch your ~! ("be careful!") ["gait"] 17. a heavy; light ~ ["distance"] 18. a ~ from (their place is just a few ~s from the station) (see also **steps**)

step II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ around (to ~ around a puddle) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ between (the referee ~ped between the two boxers) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into a room) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ off (to ~ off a train) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ on (she ~ped on my foot; to ~ on the brake) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ out of (to ~ out of a room) 7. (d; intr.) to ~ over (she ~ped over the body) 8. (d; intr.) to ~ to, towards (the pupil ~ped to the blackboard) 9. (misc.) to ~ out of line ("to behave inappropriately"); just ~ this way, madam; ~ lively! ("hurry up!")

step aside *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (she ~ped aside for a younger candidate) 2. (misc.) she ~ped aside in favor of a younger candidate; she ~ped aside (in order) to make way for a younger candidate

step back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from the abyss)

step down *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from the presidency) 2. (misc.) she ~ped down in favor of a younger candidate; she ~ped down (in order) to make way for a younger candidate

step out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into the corridor) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on, onto (she ~ped out on the terrace) 3. (misc.) (esp. AE) he was ~ping out on his wife ("he was betraying his wife")

steppingstone *n.* a ~ to (a ~ to advancement)

steps *n.* ["stairs"] 1. to come up, go up the ~ 2. to come down, go down the ~ 3. steep ~ 4. a flight of ~

step up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (he ~ped (right) up to me and told me who he was)

stereo *n.* (to broadcast) in ~

stereotype *n.* 1. to perpetuate; reinforce a ~ 2. to conform to, fit a ~ 3. to challenge; reject a ~ 4. a cultural; ethnic; gender; negative; racial ~

stern *adj.* ~ towards; with

stew *n.* 1. to do, make a ~ 2. (a) beef; Irish; lamb; mulligan (esp. US); veal; vegetable ~ 3. (misc.) to be, get in a ~ ("agitated") (about, over)

steward *n.* a chief; shop ~

stick I *n.* 1. a hiking; hockey; lacrosse; walking ~ 2. a celery ~ 3. a composing ~ ("device for typesetting") 4. a swagger ~ (carried by a military officer) 5. (misc.) to carry a big ~ ("to threaten to use force to settle a dispute"); to eat fish ~s (AE = BE *fish fingers*); to up ~s (colloq.) (BE) ("to up stakes") ("I think the gene pool of America is made up of the kind of people who just wanted to up ~s and forge something new." – Stephen Fry, *Radio Times*, 11–17 October 2008, p. 18, col. 1) (see also **sticks**)

stick II *v.* 1. ("to remain fixed") to ~ fast (the car is stuck fast in the mud) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ by ("to be loyal to") (to ~ by one's friends) 3. (d; tr.) ("to thrust") to ~ into (to ~ a needle into a cushion; to ~ one's hands into one's pockets) 4. (d; tr.) ("to fasten, paste") to ~ on, to (to ~ a stamp on an envelope; to ~ one thing to another with glue = to ~ two things ¬to each other/together¬ with glue) 5. (d; tr.) ("to thrust") to ~ through (she stuck her head through the window) 6. (d; intr.) ("to adhere") to ~ to (the stamp didn't ~ to the envelope) 7. (d; intr.) ("to limit oneself") to ~ to (to ~ to the subject) 8. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to be loyal to") (to ~ to one's principles) 9. (d; intr.) ("to remain") to ~ with (~ with me, and you will not get lost) 10. (P; tr.) ("to put") she stuck it behind the door; she stuck it under the chair 11. (misc.) to ~ it to smb. (slang) (AE) ("to treat smb. badly or unfairly") (the fat cats have stuck it to us ordinary folks long enough!); it stuck in her mind that she might never see them again; to ~ in smb.'s throat ("to be hard to say"); ("to be a source of irritation"); ("Stick close to your desks and never go to sea, And you all may be Rulers of the Queen's Navee [= Navy]!" – Sir W.S. Gilbert (1836–1911), *H.M.S. Pinafore*)

sticker *n.* a bumper; price ~

stickler *n.* ["one who insists on exactness"] a ~ for (a ~ for protocol)

stick out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to protrude") to ~ from; into (the nail stuck out from the wall; his feet stuck out into the aisle) 2. (D; intr.) (BE) to ~ for ("to hold out for") (they stuck out for better terms) 3. (D; tr.) ("to extend") to ~ to, towards (she stuck out her hand to us) 4. (misc.) to ~ like a sore thumb ("to be very conspicuous")

sticks *n.* (colloq.) ["rural area"] in the ~ (to live way out in the ~)

stick up *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ for (colloq.) ("to defend") (to ~ for one's friend)

stiff *adj.* 1. frozen; scared ~ 2. ~ from; with (~ with mud from being left out too long)

stigma *n.* 1. to attach a ~ to 2. to bear, carry a ~ 3. a ~ attaches to (no ~ attaches to being poor) 4. a social ~ (does being poor still carry a social ~?) 5. a ~ about, in, to (there is no ~ to being poor)

stigmatize *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ as (to be ~d as a traitor)

still I *adj.*, *adv.* 1. deathly; perfectly; quite; stock; very ~ (to stand perfectly ~) 2. to keep; sit; stand ~

still II *n.* in the ~ of the night

stilts *n.* 1. (to walk) on ~ 2. a pair of ~

stimulant *n.* a ~ to (a ~ to the local economy)

stimulate *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ into (they ~d us into action) 2. (H) they ~d us to act

stimulating *adj.* 1. intellectually ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it is intellectually ~ to live in a large city)

stimulation *n.* 1. to provide ~ 2. erotic, sexual; intellectual ~ (the intellectual ~ provided by living in a large city)

stimulus *n.* 1. to give, provide a ~ 2. a powerful, strong ~ 3. a ~ to

sting I *n.* ["skin wound"] 1. a bee; wasp ~ ["con, swindle"] ["trap"] (colloq.) 2. to set up a ~ ["misc."] 3. to take the ~ out of smt. ("to minimize disappointment")

sting II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from (my eyes ~ from the smoke) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (her reproaches stung him into acting)

stingy *adj.* ~ with (~ with one's money)

stink I *n.* ("outcry") (colloq.) to cause, kick up, make, raise a ~ (about) (they kicked up quite a ~ about the new plan) (see also *stink bomb* at **bomb I** *n.*)

stink II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ of (the place ~s of rotten fish)

stint I *n.* ["period of service"] 1. to do, serve a ~ (he did his ~ as a soldier) 2. during a ~ (he met his future wife abroad during his ~ as a soldier)

stint II *v.* (D; intr.) ("to economize") to ~ on (don't ~ on the food)

stipend *n.* 1. to receive a ~ 2. to pay a ~ 3. a modest ~ (to live on a modest ~)

stipulate *v.* 1. (L) the contract ~s that the work must be finished by the end of the year 2. (Q) does the contract ~ when the work must be finished?

stipulation *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. a ~ that + clause (the contract makes the ~ that the work must be finished by the end of the year)

stir I *n.* ["disturbance"] 1. to cause, create, make a ~ 2. a big; something of a ~ 3. a ~ among ~ 4. a ~ about, over (they created a big ~ among local people about the new plan)

stir II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from, out of (we could not ~ him from his depression; he could not ~ out of his depression; she would not ~ from her desk) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ one ingredient into another) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to (the news ~red them to greater efforts) 4. (H) the news ~red them to make greater efforts 5. (misc.) to ~ all the ingredients together

stitch *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. to drop; pick up, take up a ~ 3. to cast on ~es 4. (med.) to put ~es in 5. (med.) to remove, take out ~es 6. a cable; chain; cross; knit, plain (BE); purl; running ~ (see also **stitches**)

stitches *n.* in ~ ("convulsed with laughter")

stock I *n.* ["inventory, supply"] 1. to take ~ 2. in ~; out of ~ (this item is not in ~) ["share, shares in a corporation"] 3. to buy; issue; sell ~ 4. common ~ (AE; BE has *ordinary shares)* 5. blue-chip; over-the-counter; preferred (AE; BE has *preference shares)* ~ (see also **stocks**) ["equipment"] 6. rolling ~ ("railway vehicles") ["confidence, trust"] 7. to put ~ in smb. ["evaluation"] 8. to take ~ (we must take ~ of the situation) ["stage productions"] (AE) 9. summer ~ ["livestock"] 10. to graze ~ ["lineage"] 11. of good ~ ["misc."] 12. smb.'s ~ in trade ("smb.'s customary practice") (see also *stock cube* at **cube**)

stock II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ in (they ~ed new merchandise in their store) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (they ~ed their store with new merchandise; to ~ a pond with new fish)

stock exchange see **stock market**

stocking *n.* 1. mesh; nylon; seamless; silk; surgical ~s 2. a pair of ~s 3. (misc.) she got a ladder (BE)/run (esp. AE) in her ~

stock market *n.* 1. to gamble on, play, speculate on the ~ 2. to depress the ~ 3. the ~ closes strong; weak 4. the ~ opens strong; weak 5. the ~ is active; volatile; sluggish 6. the ~ is firm, steady; rising; up 7. the ~ goes up, rises; rallies; slumps 8. the ~ is depressed; down; falling 9. the ~ collapses, crashes; falls, goes down,

stocks *n.* ["shares on the stock market"] (esp. AE; CE has *shares*) 1. to buy; sell ~ (on the stock market) 2. ~ close strong; weak 3. ~ open strong; weak 4. ~ are active; sluggish 5. ~ are firm, steady; rising; up 6. ~ go up, rise; rally 7. ~ are depressed; down; falling 8. ~ collapse, crash; fall, go down; plummet; slump

stock up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on, with (to ~ on supplies)

stockyards *n.* at, in the ~ (to work at/in the ~)

stoical *adj.* ~ about

stoicism *n.* 1. to display ~ 2. great ~ 3. with ~ (to meet adversity with great ~) 4. the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to meet adversity uncomplainingly)

stole *n.* a fur; silk; woolen ~

stomach *n.* ["digestive organ"] 1. to settle; turn, upset smb.'s ~ 2. an empty; full; queasy; sick; sour; strong; upset; weak ~ (see also *sick to one's stomach* at **sick**) 3. smb.'s ~ aches, hurts; growls, rumbles 4. on an empty ~ 5. on one's ~ (to lie on one's ~) 6. (misc.) it turns my ~ ("it disgusts me") (it turns my ~ to see such behavior!) ["inclination"] 7. to have no ~ for smt.

stomachache *n.* to get; have a ~ (BE also has *to get, have* ~)

stomp *v.* (P; intr.) she ~ed into my office; they ~ed out of the room; she ~ed on my toe

stone I *n.* ["piece of rock"] 1. to hurl, throw a ~ 2. a foundation; paving ~ 3. a block, slab of ~ 4. (misc.) to leave no ~ unturned ("to try all methods of achieving an end") ["gem"] 5. to set a (precious) ~ 6. a precious ~ ["stony mass"] 7. a block; piece; slab of ~ (see also *stone quarry* at **quarry II** *n.*) ["stony mass in the body"] 8. a gallstone; kidney ~

stone II *v.* to ~ smb. to death

stone's throw *n.* a ~ away; away from

stool *n.* 1. get on; get off; perch on; sit on a ~ 2. a bar; ducking ~; footstool; piano; step ~ 3. (misc.) (BE) to fall between two ~s ("to fail to achieve either of two goals")

stoop *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to lower oneself to") (she would never ~ to cheating!) 2. (misc.) she ~ed (in order) to pick it up; *She Stoops to Conquer*, Oliver Goldsmith, 1730–74; she would never ~ so low as to cheat!

stop I *n.* ["halt"] ["cessation"] 1. to make a ~ 2. to put a ~ to (the teacher put a ~ to the cheating) 3. to bring to a ~ (the driver brought the bus to a ~) 4. to come to a ~ (the train came to a ~) (see also **stop sign**) 5. an abrupt, sudden; brief; dead; full; smooth ~ 6. a comfort, rest; flag (AE), request (BE); regular, scheduled; unscheduled; whistle (AE) ("very brief") ~ 7. a bus; pit; refueling; streetcar (AE), tram (BE) ~ USAGE NOTE: The phrase *pit stop* means literally a stop made by a racing driver for repairs during a race. But it can also mean figuratively a stop during a trip to eat or to use the toilet. 8. at a ~ (at the bus ~) 9. (misc.) to miss one's ~ ["place for resting"] 10. a truck ~ (esp. AE; BE has *transport café*: see at **café**) ["punctuation mark"] 11. a full ~ (BE; AE has *period*)

stop II *v.* 1. to ~ dead; short 2. (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at the intersection) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for lunch; to ~ for a red light; "Because I could not ~

for Death, He kindly ~ped for me" – Emily Dickinson, 1830–86) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ from (you cannot ~ Romeo and Juliet from getting married) 5. (G) they ~ped talking 6. (J) (BE) you cannot ~ Romeo and Juliet getting married 7. (K) you cannot ~ their getting married 8. (misc.) to ~ dead in one's tracks; to ~ at nothing ("to allow no scruples to interfere with one's efforts to achieve an end"); they ~ped (in order) to chat

stop by *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (we'll ~ at your place) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for tea)

stop in *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (we'll ~ at your place) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for tea)

stop off *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (we'll ~ at your place on our way home) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for tea)

stopover *n.* 1. to make a ~ (for) (we made a ~ at Singapore for refueling en route to Japan) 2. at a ~ (we met at the ~ we made at Singapore)

stop over *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (we'll ~ at your place) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (AE) (to ~ for tea)

stoppage *n.* 1. a work ~ 2. during; throughout a ~ (throughout the work ~ there was no violence)

stopping see the Usage Note for **standing**

stop short *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ of (they ~ped short of imposing new taxes)

stop sign *n.* to go through, run (AE) a ~

storage *n.* ["storing"] 1. to put smt. into ~ 2. to take smt. out of ~ 3. cold ~ 4. in ~ ["memory of a computer"] 5. external; internal; magnetic ~

store *n.* ["shop, establishment where goods are sold"] (esp. AE; see the Usage Note for **shop**) 1. to manage, operate, run a ~ 2. a bookstore; candy; clothing ~; drugstore; food, grocery; furniture; hardware; jewelry (AE), jewellery (BE); music; shoe; stationery; toy ~ 3. a chain, multiple (BE); company; convenience; department; discount; general; retail; self-service ~ 4. (AE) a dry-goods ~ (BE has *draper's shop)* 5. (AE) a liquor, package ~ (BE has *off licence*) 6. (AE) a five-and-dime, five-and-tencent; (AE) a variety ~ (BE has *haberdashery*) 7. at, in a ~ (she works at/in a ~) ["misc."] 8. to set (great; little) ~ by ("to attribute importance to"); to lie/be in ~ ("to be imminent"); to have smt. in ~ for smb. ("to have smt. prepared for smb.")

stores *n.* ["supplies"] 1. naval ~ 2. a cache of ~

storm I *n.* ["atmospheric disturbance"] 1. to brave, ride out, weather a ~ (the ship finally rode out the ~) 2. a blinding; fierce, heavy, raging, severe, violent; perfect ~ 3. a dust; electrical ~; firestorm; hailstorm; ice ~; rainstorm; sandstorm; snowstorm; thunderstorm; tropical ~ 4. a ~ batters, hits, strikes; comes up; rages (the ~ struck several cities) 5. a ~ blows itself out, blows over, dies down, subsides 6. a ~ was gathering (also fig.) 7. during a ~; in a ~; (in) the eye of a ~ (also fig.) ["disturbance, commotion"] 8. to cause, raise, stir up a ~ 9. a ~ was brewing, gathering (a ~ was brewing between them over/about the insult) (see also *storm clouds* at **cloud I** *n.*; *storm warning* at **warning**) ["assault, attack"] (mil. and fig.) 10. to take by ~ (the new play took Broadway by ~) ["misc."] 11. to talk up a ~ (colloq.) (esp. AE) ("to talk a great deal")

storm II *v.* (d; intr.) ("to rush angrily") to ~ into; out of (to ~ out of a room)

story I *n.* ["tale"] 1. to narrate, recount, relate, tell a ~ 2. to concoct, fabricate, invent, make up a ~ 3. to spread a ~ 4. to hear; listen to a ~ 5. to change, revise; embellish, embroider a ~ 6. an amusing, funny, humorous; charming; fascinating; nice, pleasant ~ 7. a coherent; likely, plausible; true ~ USAGE NOTE: The phrase *a likely story* means typically 'an unlikely story' : He was abducted by a UFO? A likely ~! (= What an unlikely story!) 8. an unknown; untold ~ 9. a boring; complicated, involved; long ~ 10. a gripping; hard-luck; moving; sad; sob; tragic ~ 11. a horror; ugly; unpleasant ~ 12. a cock-and-bull, farfetched; implausible; improbable; unlikely; unpleasant ~ 13. a dirty, off-color, risqué; juicy ~ 14. an adventure; bedtime, children's, fairy; detective; ghost; hard-luck; life; love ~ 15. conflicting ~ries (they told conflicting ~ries to the police) 16. a shaggy dog ~ ("a long rambling joke with an illogical punch line") 17. a short ~ ("a short prose narrative") 18. the whole ~ (who knows the whole ~ of the incident?) 19. a ~ about, of (she told charming ~ries about her travels; to narrate gripping ~ries of wartime heroism) 20. a ~ that + clause (have you heard the ~ that she intends to resign?) (see also *story line* at **line I** *n.*) ["newspaper account"] 21. to carry, circulate, print, run a ~ (all the newspapers carried the ~ about the fire) 22. to feature a ~ 23. to edit; rewrite; write a ~ 24. to file a ~ 25. to cover up, hush up, kill, spike, suppress a ~ 26. a breaking ("very new"); cover; exclusive; feature; follow-up; front-page; human-interest; lead; scare; sensational ~ 27. the inside ~ (you can read the inside ~ (of the catastrophe) in tomorrow's edition) 28. a ~ breaks ("becomes known"); circulates ["background information"] 29. to get the (whole) ~ ["misc."] 30. the ~ goes that she intends to resign; I have not heard your side of the ~; to stick to one's ~; the police could not make a coherent ~ out of his ravings; a success ~ ("a successful career")

story II storey *n.* ["floor level"] 1. a lower; top; upper ~ 2. on a ~ 3. (misc.) a 10-story building (see also *multi-storey car park* at **park I** *n.*)

stove *n.* 1. to light a ~ 2. a coal; gas; kerosene (AE), paraffin (BE); kitchen; oil; pot-belly, pot bellied ~ 3. on a ~ (to cook smt. on a ~ (AE) = (BE) to cook smt. on a cooker)

stow away *v.* to ~ on a ship

straggle *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ across the border; they ~d into the lecture hall

straight *adj.* 1. absolutely, dead, perfectly ~ 2. (misc.) to go ~ ("to become law-abiding"); to set smb. (about smt.) ~ ("to disabuse smb.") (let me set you ~ about smt.: I'm not coming back!) 3. to be ~ with smb. about smt. ("to level with smb. about smt.") (let me be absolutely ~ with you: I'm not coming back!) 4. to get smt. ~ (let's get at least one thing ~: I'm not coming back!) (misc.) as ~ as an arrow, as ~ as a die

straightforward *adj.* 1. ~ about 2. ~ with

strain I *n.* ["exertion"]["tension"] 1. to impose, place, put a ~ on 2. to feel; stand the ~ 3. to ease, relieve the ~ 4. (a) considerable, great; intolerable; terrible, tremendous ~ 5. (an) emotional, mental; financial; physical ~ 6. back ~; eyestrain 7. a ~ on (the crisis has imposed a nearly intolerable ~ on relations between the two countries) 8. under a ~ 9. (misc.) the stresses and ~s of daily life; "Let the train take the ~!" (originally an advertising slogan promoting trains over private cars)

strain II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at (the dog ~ed at the leash/BE lead) 2. (E) they were ~ing to get the car out of the mud

strain III *n.* ["variety of microorganism"] a strong, virulent; attenuated, weak ~

straits *n.* ["difficulties"] 1. desperate, dire; financial ~ 2. in certain ~ (they were left in desperate ~)

stranded *adj.* to leave smb. ~

strange *adj.* 1. ~ to 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to work at night = it was ~ working at night) 3. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that she hasn't written for a whole month) 4. (misc.) ~ to say, she hasn't written for a whole month; it was ~ ¬how/the way¬ she kept coming back

stranger *n.* 1. a complete, perfect, total, utter ~ 2. a mysterious ~ 3. a ~ to (she's no ~ to us; she's no ~ to hardship) 4. (misc.) I don't know the way – I'm a ~ here myself

strangle *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ with (he ~d her with a scarf) 2. (misc.) to ~ smb. to death

stranglehold *n.* 1. to get; have a ~ on smb. (a few multinationals have a ~ on their economy) 2. to loosen; release; tighten a ~

strap I *n.* 1. a bra; chin; shoulder ~; watchstrap (BE; CE has *watchband*) 2. on a ~ (her purse was held on a ~ around her waist)

strap II *v.* 1. to ~ loosely; securely; tightly; together (to ~ two sticks together securely) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ onto, to (they ~ped the suitcase to the top of the car; to ~ two sticks to each other) 3. (N; used with an adjective) to ~ smt. tight

strapped *adj.* (colloq.) 1. completely; financially ~ 2. ~ for cash

stratagem *n.* 1. to resort to, use a ~ 2. a subtle; wily ~

strategist *n.* an armchair ("amateur") ~

strategy *n.* 1. to adopt, design, devise, formulate, map out, plan, work out a ~ 2. to apply, implement, pursue a ~ 3. to outline, unveil a ~ 4. a global; grand, long-range, long-term ~ 5. a campaign, political; defense, military; economic, financial ~ 6. a matter; point of ~ 7. a ~ about, for, on (to work out a ~ for balancing the budget) 8. a ~ to + inf. (they unveiled a ~ to balance the budget) 9. ~ and tactics

straw *n.* ["drinking tube"] 1. (to drink) through a ~ ["strand of hay"] 2. to decide smt. by drawing ~s to see who gets the short ~ (also fig.); a ~ in the wind ("a hint of smt. to come"); to clutch at (any) ~s ("to try in desperation"); the final/last ~, or: the ~ that broke the camel's back ("a final burden that exceeds smb.'s endurance") ["hay"] 3. in; on ~ (to find a coin in the ~; to spread a blanket on the ~)

stray *v.* (D; intr.) 1. to ~ from (to ~ from the subject) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into, onto (to ~ onto smb.'s property)

streak I *n.* ["tendency, trait"] (usu. derog.) 1. a cruel; jealous; mean, nasty, vindictive; stubborn ~ (people who have a cruel ~ (in them)) 2. a yellow ~ ("cowardice") 3. with a ~ of (people with a ~ of cruelty (in them)) ["series"] 4. a losing; lucky; winning ~ 5. on a ~ (let's keep gambling if we're on a winning ~!)

streak II *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ across a field

streaked *adj.* ~ with (~ with gray)

stream I *n.* 1. to ford a ~ 2. a mountain; running; swollen ~ 3. an endless; steady ~ (a steady ~ of refugees) 4. the jet ~ ("band of high-velocity winds moving high above the earth's surface")

stream II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) (esp BE) to ~ according to, by (are pupils ~ed by ability?) 2. (P; intr.) people were ~ing towards the town square; the audience came ~ing out of the auditorium

street *n.* 1. to pave; resurface; surface a ~ 2. to widen a ~ 3. to block, cordon off; cross a ~ 4. to name; number ~s 5. a bustling, busy; congested; crowded ~ 6. a deserted, lonely; quiet ~ 7. a back; high (BE), main (AE) ~ 8. a cross; dead-end; one-way; through ~ 9. a broad, wide; long; narrow; short; sidestreet; winding ~ 10. a ~ curves; goes; runs (in a certain direction) 11. across; along the ~ 12. down; up the ~ 13. in (esp. BE), on (esp. AE); off the ~ (the children were playing in/on the ~ and we told them to get off it) 14. (BE) in the high ~ 15. (AE) on the main ~; on Main Street 16. (misc.) the bottom/end/middle/top of the ~; to take a ~ (they took the wrong ~; we were on/in (esp. BE) the right ~); follow this ~ for two blocks; the ~ is clear; (the) mean ("squalid") ~s; (AE; military) a battery; company ~ (see also **easy street**; Usage Note at **road**)

streetcar *n.* (AE; BE has *tram*) 1. to drive, operate a ~ 2. (as a passenger) to board, get on; catch a ~; get off a ~; to come; go, travel by ~; to miss a ~; to ride a ~; to ride in/on a ~; to take a ~ 3. a ~ runs; stops; the ~s are not running today but normally run every half hour and pick people up from this ~ stop 4. a ~ for, to; from (is this the ~ from the center of town to the airport?) 5. (misc.) the driver of a ~ is a motorman or an operator

strength *n.* ["power"] 1. to build up, develop (one's)

~ 2. to find; gain, gather summon (up) (the) ~ 3. to conserve, husband, save (one's) ~ 4. to recoup, regain (one's) ~ 5. to overtax, sap, tax; test smb.'s ~ 6. brute, great; inner; physical; tensile ~ 7. ~ grows, increases; declines, ebbs away; fails 8. a position; show; test of ~ (see also *negotiate from a position of strength* at **negotiate**) 9. the ~ to + inf. (she somehow managed to summon up the ~ to lift the weight!) 10. in ~ ("in large numbers") 11. with ~ (it would take all her ~ to push it so she pushed it with all her ~) ["number of personnel, units"] 12. full, maximum ~ (to bring a department up to full ~) 13. at; below ~ (our police force was at full ~ but it is now five officers below ~) ["misc."] 14. on the ~ of smt. ("relying on smt.") (on the ~ of your recommendation, we gave her the job); on the ~ (BE; colloq.) ("on the full-time permanent staff")

stress I *n.* ["emphasis"] 1. to lay, place, put (the) ~ on 2. to shift the ~ from; to 3. great, particular, special ~ ["intensity of sound"] (ling.) 4. to place, put the ~ on (a syllable) 5. to shift the ~ from; to 6. (a) dynamic; free; fixed; pitch; primary; qualitative; quantitative; secondary; strong; weak ~ 7. sentence; word ~ ["tension"] 8. to cause, create, generate; increase ~ 9. to alleviate, reduce, relieve; control; decrease ~ 10. emotional, mental, psychological; perceived; physical ~ 11. a degree, level of ~ 12. under ~ (he's been under a lot of ~ lately) ["misc."] 13. with the ~ on (a program of house-building with the ~ on affordable housing for key workers) 14. ~es and strains

stress II *v.* (L; to) the police ~ed (to us) that all regulations would be enforced strictly

stretch I *n.* ["final phase"] (esp. AE) 1. the final ~ 2. to fade in the ~ (see also *homestretch* at **home straight**) ["expanse"] 3. a ~ of 4. on a ~ (the race took place on a ~ of barren land) ["period of time"] 5. to do a ~ (in prison) 6. (misc.) for hours at a ~

stretch II *v.* 1. (N; used with an adjective) we ~ed the rope tight 2. (P; intr.) the prairie ~es for miles; "The lone and level sands ~ far away" – P. B. Shelley, 1792–1822, "Ozymandias"

stretched *adj.* 1. fully ~ 2. ~ to the limit; ~ tight; tightly ~

stretch out *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (she ~ed her hand out to us in friendship = she ~ed out her hand to us in friendship)

stretcher *n.* (to carry smb.) on a ~

strew *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ with (the field was strewn with bodies) 2. (P; tr.) bodies were strewn all over the field; their equipment was strewn across the floor; they ~ed flowers around the auditorium

stricken *adj.* ["afflicted"] 1. ~ by, with 2. (misc.) conscience-stricken; grief-stricken; panic-stricken; poverty-stricken

strict *adj.* 1. ~ about, concerning, in 2. ~ towards, with

strictly *adv.* ~ speaking

stricture *n.* a ~ against, on

stride I *n.* ["normal speed"] 1. to hit one's ~ 2. to break one's ~ ["progress"] 3. to make great ~s (in) 4. considerable, giant, great, tremendous ~s ["misc."] 5. to take smt. in (one's) ~ ("to confront a problem calmly")

stride II *v.* 1. to ~ confidently; purposefully 2. (P; intr.) she strode confidently into the room; he strode towards the lectern; they strode angrily out of the room

strident *adj.* ~ in (they were ~ in their demands)

strife *n.* 1. to cause, create, stir up ~ 2. bitter ~ 3. civil; communal; domestic; factional; industrial; internal; internecine; political; sectarian ~ 4. ~ among, between; in (to create ~ between two sisters) 5. during the ~

strike I *n.* ["refusal to work"] 1. to call, go (out) on; organize a ~ 2. to conduct, stage a ~ 3. to avert; break (up); mediate; settle a ~ 4. a buyers'; hunger; rent ~ (the prisoners went on a hunger ~) 5. a general; lightning (BE); nationwide; sit-down; sympathy; token ~ 6. an official (BE); unofficial (BE), wildcat ~ 7. a ~ fails; occurs, takes place; spreads; succeeds 8. an outbreak, series, wave of ~ 9. on ~ (some of the workers went (out)/were on ~) ["attack"] 10. to carry out, make a ~ 11. an air; first, preemptive; retaliatory; second ~ ["disadvantage"] (from baseball) (AE) 12. they have two ~s against them ("they are at a decided disadvantage") ["discovery"] 13. an oil ~

strike II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to refuse to work") to ~ against; for (the workers struck against the company for higher pay) 2. (D; intr., tr.) ("to hit") to ~ against, on (she struck her head against the door) 3. (d; tr.) ("to impress") to ~ as (the idea struck me as silly) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ at ("to attack") (to ~ at the root causes of poverty; to ~ at the enemy) 5. (d; tr.) to ~ from, off (they struck her name off the list) 6. (N; used with an adjective) ("to make") to ~ smb. dead 7. (BE) (O: can be used with one object) ("to give") he struck me a heavy blow 8. (R) it struck me that the inflation rate has been going down

strike back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at the enemy)

strikebreaker *n.* to bring in ~s

strike out *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to act") to ~ against, at (to ~ against injustice) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to set out for") (to ~ for shore) 3. (misc.) to ~ on one's own ("to begin an independent existence")

string *n.* ["cord"] 1. to tie a ~ 2. to untie a ~ 3. a ball; length; piece of ~ ["grouping of players according to ability"] (esp. AE) 4. first; second ~ (see also **strings**)

string along *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with

strings *n.* ["strips used for fastening"] 1. apron ~; shoestrings (see also **purse strings**) ["cords on a musical instrument"] 2. to pick (esp. AE), pluck ~ ["influence"] (colloq.) 3. to pull ~

strip I *n.* ["runway"] 1. an airstrip, landing ~ ["dividing patch"] 2. a centre (BE), median (AE) ~ (on a road)

strip II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for a physical examination) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ of (to ~ smb. of all civil rights) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the waist) 4. (N; used with an adjective) to ~ smb. naked; to ~ smt. bare

strip down *v.* (d; intr., tr.) to ~ to (he ~ped down to his underwear)

stripe *n.* ["strip, band"] 1. a horizontal; vertical ~ 2. a sergeant's ~s 3. a service ~ (worn on a soldier's sleeve to indicate length of service) 4. with ~s (a dress with vertical ~s on it) ["sort"] (esp. AE) 5. of a certain ~ (people of that/his ~ are not to be trusted!)

stripping *n.* (BE) (commercial) asset ~ (see also **weather stripping**)

striptease *n.* to do, perform a ~

strive *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for peace) 2. (formal) (E) we ~ to please

stroke *n.* ["apoplexy"] 1. to have, suffer a ~ 2. a crippling, massive, severe ~ 3. a slight ~ ["movement, series of movements"] 4. (tennis) a backhand; forehand ~ 5. (swimming) to swim a few ~s 6. a backstroke; breast; butterfly ~; sidestroke ["sound of striking"] 7. at, on a ~ (at the ~ of midnight) ["movement of a piston"] 8. an exhaust; exhaust-suction; intake; suction ~ ["action"] 9. a brilliant ~ 10. (misc.) a ~ of genius; to reduce inflation at one/a ~; their hard-won freedoms were abolished with the ~ of a pen ["misc."] 11. a ~ of luck; one golfer led the other by a couple of ~s

stroll I *n.* 1. to go for, have, take a ~ 2. to take smb. for a ~ (she took the children for a ~) 3. a leisurely ~

stroll II *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ through the park

stroller *n.* (esp. AE) 1. to push, wheel a ~ (BE has *(baby) buggy*, *pushchair*) 2. in a ~

strong *adj.* 1. ~ in (I'm not ~ in mathematics) 2. (colloq.) ~ on, when it comes to (none too ~ on common sense) 3. (misc.) she's still going ~ at 90 years of age!; as ~ as an ox

structure *n.* 1. (ling.) to generate a ~ 2. (ling.) (a) deep; grammatical; intermediate; surface ~ 3. (pol.) a power ~ 4. bone; cellular; molecular ~ 5. a basic; complex; solid ~ 6. a corporate; economic, financial; political; price; tax; wage ~ 7. in ~ (that sonata is quite complex in ~ = that sonata has quite a complex ~)

struggle I *n.* 1. to abandon, give up; carry on, put up, wage; lose; win a ~ 2. a bitter, desperate, fierce, frantic, hard, stubborn, violent; ceaseless, unending, unrelenting, unremitting; last-ditch; uphill ~ (to put up a last-ditch ~; to put up a stubborn ~ against terminal illness) 3. an armed; internecine; life-and-death ~ 4. a power ~ 5. the class ~ 6. a ~ about, over (a ~ over property rights) 7. a ~ against, with (a ~ against poverty; a ~ with one's conscience) 8. a ~ between (a ~ between the two factions) 9. a ~ for (a ~ for justice) 10. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ to make ends meet = it was a ~ making ends meet; we had quite a ~ to make ends meet = we had quite a ~ making ends meet) 11. in ~ (locked in ~; they were locked in a fierce ~ with the government over pension rights) 12. (misc.) a ~ to the death

struggle II *v.* 1. to ~ bravely, heroically; desperately, hard, stubbornly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ against, with (to ~ against tyranny) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for freedom) 4. (D; intr.) to ~ about, over (to ~ over property rights) 5. (E) they ~d to remain alive 6. (misc.) to ~ to one's feet

strung out *adj.* (slang) ~ on (~ on heroin)

strut *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into a room) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ out of (to ~ out of a meeting) 3. (P; intr.) they were ~ting around the auditorium

stub *n.* 1. a cigarette; pencil; ticket ~ 2. a check (AE), cheque (BE) ~

stubborn *adj.* 1. ~ about 2. (misc.) to be as ~ as a mule

stubbornness *n.* 1. sheer ~ 2. ~ about 3. ~ to + inf. (it was sheer ~ not to agree) 4. out of ~ (she refused to compromise out of ~) 5. (misc.) to have the ~ of a mule

stuck *adj.* ["burdened"] (colloq.) 1. ~ with (he always gets ~ with the worst jobs; I am ~ with the chore of breaking the bad news) ["infatuated"] (colloq.) 2. ~ on (he's ~ on her) ["fully involved"] (colloq.) (BE) 3. ~ into (there is no holding him once he gets ~ into smt.) ["fixed"] 4. to get ~ (they got ~ in the mud) 5. ~ fast, firmly 6. ~ on, to (a stamp ~ on an envelope; one thing ~ to another with glue = two things ~ ¬to each other/together¬ with glue)

stud *n.* at ~ ("for breeding") (the retired racehorses are at ~)

student *n.* 1. an excellent, outstanding; good, strong ~ 2. a poor, weak ~ 3. a day; evening; external (BE); foreign, overseas (BE); full-time; part-time; special; transfer; work-study ~ 4. a college, university; degree; doctoral; graduate, postgraduate (esp. BE); high-school (AE); MA; post-doctoral; undergraduate ~ 5. (misc.) a student-teacher USAGE NOTES: (1) A student of law is a law student, a student of geology is a geology student, a student of dentistry is a dentistry student, but a student of medicine is a medical student. (2) To say that a geologist is a student of geology (as some dictionaries still do) is true but misleading. A geologist has been a student of geology long enough to be a professionally qualified expert at it. (3) In GB, *students* usu. refer to those in post-secondary education. Younger ones are usu. called *pupils*. However, secondary-school pupils in Britain have begun to call themselves *students* (or *school students*), too. In the US, the term *students* is used for those at a university and in secondary school – *college students*, *high-school students*. Children at (BE)/in (esp. AE) primary school are usu. called *pupils* in the US, and almost always in GB. (4) In CE, one can differentiate between a *student of*

Freud (“a student of Freud’s ideas”) and *Freud’s student/a student of Freud’s* (“one who was taught personally by Freud”).

studies *n.* 1. to begin, take up; complete, finish; pursue one’s ~ 2. advanced; further; graduate, postgraduate (esp. BE); undergraduate ~ 3. Black; business; classical; computer; liberal (BE); media; peace, war; social; women’s ~ (see also **study I** *n.*)

studio *n.* 1. an art; dance ~ 2. a film, movie; radio; recording; television, TV ~ 3. a soundproof ~ 4. in a ~ (to shoot a film on location rather than in a ~) (see also *studio apartment* at **apartment**; *studio flat* at **flat II** *n.*)

study I *n.* [“investigation”] 1. to conduct, do, make a ~ 2. a careful, detailed, exhaustive, in-depth, intensive, rigorous, thorough ~ 3. a feasibility; follow-up; pilot; statistical ~ 4. a classic, classical; definitive ~ 5. a case; empirical; epidemiological; experimental; research; scientific; time-and-motion ~ 6. a ~ proves; shows; suggests (have research studies shown that smoking is bad for health?) 7. under ~ (the matter is under ~) [“branch of learning, subject”] 8. nature ~ [“learning”] 9. advanced ~ 10. supervised ~ 11. an area of ~ (see also *study period* at **period**; **studies**)

study II *v.* 1. to ~ closely; diligently, hard, seriously 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for a degree) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ under (to ~ under a well-known professor) 4. (Q) to ~ how to survive in the wilderness 5. (misc.) he is ~ing to become a nurse

study up *v.* (colloq.) (AE) (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on a topic)

stuff I *n.* (colloq.) [“subject matter”] 1. to know one’s ~ 2. heady (“exciting”); kid (“elementary”) ~; the same old ~ [“knowledge, ability”] 3. to show, strut one’s ~ 4. (AE) the ~ to + inf. (she has the ~ to succeed) 5. (misc.) (esp. AE) the right ~ (she has the right ~ to succeed) [“duties”] 6. to do one’s ~ USAGE NOTE: *Stuff* can be used to replace or refer to a mass or uncountable noun, as *thing* can replace or refer to a countable noun: A container full of liquid fell on the floor: *the thing [= it]* broke and the *stuff* in it poured out.

stuff II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ in, into (she ~ed all sorts of things into her suitcase) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (she ~ed her suitcase with all sorts of things) 3. (N: used with an adjective) she ~ed her suitcase full (of all sorts of things); she ~ed it tight

stumble *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ across, into, on, onto, upon (“to meet by chance”) (to ~ across an old manuscript) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ over (“to trip over”) (also fig.) (she ~d over every sentence)

stumbling block *n.* 1. an insurmountable ~ 2. a ~ to (their stubbornness constitutes an insurmountable ~ to progress)

stump I *n.* to remove a ~ (of a tree)

stump II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ for (esp. AE) (“to support by making speeches”) (to ~ for a candidate)

stun *v.* (R) it ~ned me to see him drunk

stunned *adj.* 1. ~ at; with (I was ~ with astonishment at his drunkenness) 2. ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to see him drunk)

stunt *n.* 1. to do, perform; pull off a ~ 2. (colloq.) to pull a ~ (“to do smt. unexpected”) 3. a publicity ~ 4. a daredevil ~ 5. a ~ backfires; comes off

stupid *adj.* 1. ~ about 2. ~ to + inf. (it was just plain ~ of me to agree = I was just plain ~ to agree)

stupidity *n.* 1. to display ~ 2. sheer ~ 3. the height of ~ 4. ~ to + inf. (it was sheer ~ to agree) 5. ~ that + clause (it was sheer ~ that I decided to agree)

stupor *n.* 1. to fall into a ~ 2. a drunken ~

stutter I *n.* (to have, speak with) a nervous ~

stutter II *v.* 1. to ~ nervously 2. (B) she ~ed (out) a few words to us 3. (L; to) she ~ed to us that she was sorry = “I’m sorry,” she ~ed (to us)

style I *n.* [“manner of expression”] 1. to develop; polish, refine one’s ~ 2. an affected; classic, classical; elegant; flowery, ornate; formal; informal; pedestrian; plain; poetic; prose; vigorous ~ 3. in a ~ (to write/speak in a flowery ~) [“manner of behaving”] 4. to cramp smb.’s ~ 5. an abrasive; grand ~; smb.’s (characteristic) ~ (“why doesn’t he at least apologize?” “that’s not his ~. = it’s not his ~ to apologize.”) 6. in (a) ~ (to live in a/in grand ~) (see also **lifestyle**) [“fashionable elegance”] 7. high ~ 8. in ~ (to live in ~) [“excellence of expression or behavior”] 9. to lack ~ [“fashion”] 10. to keep up with the latest ~s 11. in ~ (running shoes are in ~) 12. out of ~ (dresses like that never go out of ~) (see also **family style**)

style II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ shoes for comfort)

suasion *n.* [“persuasion”] moral ~

subconscious *n.* in smb.’s ~

subdivide *v.* 1. to ~ equally, evenly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into

subject I *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to (~ to change)

subject II *n.* [“topic, theme”] 1. to bring up, broach; mention; pursue; tackle a ~ 2. to address, cover, deal with, discuss, take up, treat a ~ 3. to dwell on; exhaust; go into a ~ 4. to avoid; drop a ~ 5. to stick to; change; stray from the ~ 6. an appropriate, suitable; everyday, mundane; favorite; interesting; pleasant ~ 7. a boring, uninteresting; controversial, thorny; delicate, ticklish; inappropriate; taboo; unpleasant ~ 8. a ~ comes up (for discussion) 9. a ~ for (a ~ for discussion) 10. about, on a ~ (we have nothing to say on that ~; and while we’re on the ~ of money, when are you going to pay me back?) (see also **subject matter**) [“area, course of study”] 11. to study, tackle, take, take up a ~ 12. to master a ~ 13. an elective (AE), optional (BE); required ~ 14. a major (AE), main (BE); minor (AE), secondary (BE) ~ [“grammar”] 15. a compound; grammatical; impersonal; logical; simple ~ [“citizen of a monarchy”] (esp. BE) 16. a British; loyal; naturalized ~ 17. a ~ of (a loyal ~ of Her Majesty the Queen)

subject III *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ smb. to torture)

subjection *n.* 1. ~ to 2. in ~ (to live in ~ to smb. else)

subject matter *n.* related; unrelated ~

subjugate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to

subjugation *n.* 1. ~ to 2. in ~ (to live in ~ to smb. else)

subjunctive *n.* (grammar) in the ~ (the verb was in the ~)

sublease see **sublet**

sublet *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ a house from smb.) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a house to smb.)

sublimate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into

sublime *n.* from the ~ to the ridiculous

submarine *n.* 1. a conventional; midget; nuclear, nuclear-powered ~ 2. ~s dive; hunt in packs; submerge; surface

submerge *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ in (she ~d herself in her work)

submission *n.* ["giving in"] 1. in ~ to (they lived in ~ to the conqueror) ["argument"] (legal) 2. to make a ~ 3. a ~ that + clause (her lawyer made a ~ (to the court) that she had not been informed of her rights)

submissive *adj.* ~ to

submit *v.* 1. (B) ("to present") they ~ted their report to us; they ~ted their case to arbitration 2. (D; intr.) ("to yield") to ~ to (to ~ to superior force) 3. (d; intr.) ("to agree to") to ~ to (to ~ to arbitration) 4. (usu. legal) (L; to) ("to claim") her lawyer ~ted (to the court) that she had not been informed of her rights

subordinate I *adj.* ~ to

subordinate II *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ to (they had to ~ their own needs to the needs of the group)

subordination *n.* ~ to

subpoena I *n.* 1. to issue a ~ 2. to serve a ~ on 3. a ~ to + inf. (she received a ~ to appear in court in two weeks)

subpoena II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ smb. as a witness) 2. (H) they ~ed her to appear in court in two weeks

subscribe *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for ("to agree to purchase") (they ~d for a large number of shares) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to ("to receive regularly") (to ~ to a magazine) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to agree with") (to ~ to an opinion)

subscriber *n.* a ~ to (a ~ to a magazine)

subscription *n.* ["arrangement for receiving a periodical"] 1. to get, take out; have a ~ to 2. to renew a ~ 3. to cancel a ~ 4. an annual; individual; institutional ~ 5. a ~ comes up for renewal; lapses 6. a ~ to (a ~ to a magazine) ["amount of money pledged"] 7. a public ~

subsequent *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to (it happened ~ to World War I but prior to World War II)

subservience *n.* 1. ~ to 2. in ~ (to live in ~ to smb. else)

subservient *adj.* ~ to

subsidiary *adj.* ~ to

subsidized *adj.* heavily ~

subsidy *n.* 1. to apply for, request a ~ 2. to provide a ~ for 3. to cut, reduce; grant; refuse a ~ to 4. an arts; farm; government, public, state ~ 5. a generous ~ 6. a ~ covers (the ~ does not cover all our expenses) 7. a ~ for; to

subsist *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on

subsistence *n.* 1. (a) bare, hand-to-mouth ~ 2. a means of ~

substance *n.* ["drug"] 1. (AE) a controlled ~ ("a drug regulated by law") 2. an illegal ~ 3. (misc.) ~ abuse ["meaningful quality"] 4. ~ to (is there any ~ to their claim?) 5. in ~ (their claim is, in ~, that they have been mistreated) 6. (misc.) a matter of ~; a person of ~; a rumor without (any) ~ ["matter"] 7. a chemical; hard; oily; pure; radioactive; toxic ~

substitute I *n.* 1. a poor ~ 2. a ~ for (a ~ for sugar = a sugar ~; Smith is now the ~ for Jones as quarterback)

substitute II *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (when Jones couldn't play, the coach ~d Smith for Jones: Smith is now ~ting for Jones)

substitution *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. a ~ for (the coach's ~ of Smith for Jones as quarterback)

subsume *v.* (formal) (d; tr.) ("to classify") to ~ under (to ~ an item under a more inclusive category)

subterfuge *n.* to resort to, use (a) ~

subtract *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ five from ten and get five)

subtraction *n.* to do ~

suburb *n.* 1. to move from; to a ~ 2. a fashionable; leafy (BE); residential ~ 3. from the ~s (to smb. from the ~s, London is a fabulous place!) 4. in the ~s (to live in the ~s) 5. a dormitory ~ (BE; BE also has *dormitory town*; AE has *bedroom community*)

subvention see **subsidy**

subversion *n.* to engage in ~

subway *n.* ["underground railway"] (esp. US) (GB has *tube, underground*) 1. to take a/the ~ 2. (to go/travel) by, on the ~ (I always travel by ~) 3. (misc.) the driver of a ~ (train) is a motorman (or to be non-sexist) an operator ["system of underground trains and stations"] 4. from; in; to the ~ (crime in the ~; I couldn't find the right entrance to the ~ or the right exit from the ~!) (see also *subway station* at **station I** *n.*; *subway system* at **system**; *subway train* at **train I** *n.*)

succeed *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to come after") to ~ as (she ~ed me as treasurer) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in; with (to ~ in doing smt.; to ~ in business; she ~ed with her plan in the face of serious opposition) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ to ("to inherit") (to ~ to the throne)

success *n.* 1. to achieve, attain (a) ~ 2. to enjoy ~ 3. to score a ~ 4. to make a ~ of smt. 5. a brilliant, dazzling, great, howling (AE), huge, notable, resounding, roaring, rousing, signal, spectacular, thorough, total, tremendous, unequivocal, unqualified ~ 6.

(an) immediate; instant, overnight ~ 7. a modest ~ 8. a box-office; commercial; critical ~ 9. (a) ~ as; in; with (Laurence Olivier scored a notable ~ as Othello in the play of the same name)

successful *adj.* 1. highly, very; moderately ~ 2. ~ as; at, in; with (~ in business; ~ with women)

succession *n.* ["right to succeed to an office, position"] 1. the ~ to (the ~ to the throne) ["misc."] 2. in ~ ("successively, one after the other") (for several years in ~; who is third in ~ to the throne?); in seemingly endless ~; in quick, in rapid ~

successor *n.* 1. smb.'s immediate ~ 2. a worthy ~ 3. a ~ to (the ~ to the throne)

succumb *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to smb.'s urging; to ~ to a disease)

suck *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ (out) the juice from an orange) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ into (they were ~ed into the family quarrel) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ on (she was ~ing on an orange) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ through (she ~ed the juice through a straw) 5. (N; used with an adjective) she ~ed the lemon dry 6. (misc.) the baby ~ed at its mother's breast

suck away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at a lollipop)

sucker *n.* ["easily deceived person"] (colloq.) 1. to make a ~ out of smb. 2. a ~ for (she's a ~ for any hard-luck story) 3. a ~ to + inf. (he's a ~ to have believed her)

sue *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to request") (to ~ for peace) 2. (D; intr., tr.) ("to seek in court") to ~ for; over (to ~ for damages; she ~d him for a large sum of money; she ~d him over a disputed claim) 3. (E) ("to seek in court") they ~d to get their property back

suffer *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for one's sins) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from insomnia) USAGE NOTE: In BE it is now frequent – but wrong! – to have **suffer with insomnia.*

sufferer *n.* 1. a fellow ~ 2. a ~ from (a ~ from insomnia) USAGE NOTE: In BE it is now frequent – but wrong! – to have **a sufferer of insomnia.*

suffering *n.* 1. to inflict ~ on 2. to bear, endure ~ 3. to alleviate, ease, relieve ~ 4. chronic; great, incalculable, intense, untold; mental, psychological; physical ~ 5. the amount, extent, level of ~ (the extent of ~ caused by the war is almost incalculable)

suffice *v.* 1. to barely, hardly, scarcely; just; more than ~ 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (my salary more than ~s (us) for our basic needs) 3. (E) it should ~ to cite her previous accomplishments; my salary ~s to meet our basic needs 4. (misc.) ~ (it) to say (that) we will do our duty = let it ~ to say that we will do our duty

sufficient *adj.* 1. barely, hardly, scarecely; just; more than ~ 2. ~ for (my salary is more than ~ for our basic needs) 3. ~ unto oneself ("independent") 4. ~ to + inf. (my salary is ~ to meet our basic needs; it would have been ~ to send a brief note)

suffix I *n.* a derivational; diminutive; inflectional ~

suffix II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ an ending to a word)

suffrage *n.* 1. to extend, grant ~ 2. universal; women's ~

sugar *n.* 1. to produce; refine ~ 2. beet; brown; cane; confectioner's (AE), icing (BE); crude; demerara (BE); granulated; lump; maple; white ~ 3. (med.) blood ~ 4. a lump; spoonful of ~ 5. (misc.) as sweet as ~

suggest *v.* 1. (B) she ~ed a compromise to us 2. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ as (she ~ed a compromise as a possible solution even though no suitable compromise seemed to ~ itself as suitable) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she ~ed a compromise candidate for the position) 4. (G) she ~ed compromising 5. (K) who ~ed his taking part? 6. (L; can be subj.; to) who ~ed that he ¬take/should take/took (BE)¬ part?; she ~ed (to us) that an exception ¬be/should be/was (BE)¬ made; it was ~ed (to us) that an exception had in fact been made; the evidence seemed to ~ strongly that the vicar had been murdered! 7. (Q; to) did she ~ (to us) why the exception had been made?; did she ~ where we should meet? 8. (misc.) may I venture to ~ a possible compromise?

suggestion *n.* ["proposal"] 1. to advance, make, offer, proffer (formal), produce, put forward a ~ 2. to ask for, call for, invite ~s (see also *open to suggestions* at **open I** *adj.*) 3. to act on; adopt; consider; take; welcome a ~ 4. to decline, reject, turn down a ~ 5. an appropriate; constructive; good; helpful; pertinent; tentative ~ 6. an inappropriate; outrageous; preposterous, ridiculous ~ 7. a ~ about, concerning 8. a ~ that + clause; can be subj. (she made the ~ (to us) that an exception ¬be/should be/was (BE)¬ made; she made the ~ (to us) that an exception had in fact been made; there was never any ~ that the vicar had been murdered!) 9. at smb.'s ~ (at her ~, an exception was made) ["hint, overtone"] 10. the merest, slightest ~ (there was just the slightest ~ of menace in his voice; there was just the merest ~ of garlic in the sauce)

suggestive *adj.* 1. strongly, very ~ 2. ~ of

suicide *n.* 1. to commit ~ 2. to attempt; contemplate ~ 3. assisted; mass; political ~ 4. attempted ~ 5. ~ to + inf. (it would be sheer ~ to try to climb that mountain in this weather!) (see also *suicide bomber* at **bomber**; *suicide note* at **note I** *n.*; *suicide pact* at **pact I** *n.*; *suicide threat* at **threat**)

suit I *n.* ["lawsuit"] 1. to bring (a), file (a), institute a ~ against 2. to contest; press; settle a ~ (to settle a ~ out of court) 3. to dismiss; lose; win a ~ 4. a civil; class-action; frivolous; libel; malpractice; pending ~ 5. a ~ against; over (to bring a class-action ~ against the government over civil liberties) ["suit of clothes"] 6. to have a ~ made 7. to have on, wear; put on; take off; try on a ~ (I wore my best ~ to meet her parents; indeed, I wore a ~ and tie for the occasion) 8. a bathing, swimsuit, tank; diving; gym; ski; space; sweat ~ USAGE NOTE: Women wear swimsuits or bathing suits (old-fashioned) or (swimming) costumes (BE). Men wear (swimming) trunks. 9. a bespoke (BE), custom-made, made-to-measure (BE), made-to-order; off-the-peg (BE), ready-made ~ 10. a business (AE), lounge (BE); dress; leisure; sailor ~ 11. a double-breasted; single-breasted; three-piece; two-piece ~ 12. (for women) a pants (AE), trouser (BE) ~ 13. (BE) a boiler ~ ("overalls") 14. a ~ fits (well) 15. (misc.) a ~ of armor; (old-fashioed) a ~ of clothes (for men); (humorous) in one's birthday ~ ("naked") ["set of similar playing cards"] 16. to follow ~ (also fig.) (the government suggested a plan and the opposition followed ~) 17. a major; minor; trump ~ (which ~ is trumps?) ["trait"] 18. smb.'s strong ~

suit II *v.* 1. to ~ perfectly; very well 2. (R) it ~ed her to keep him guessing 3. (misc.) to ~ smb. down to the ground (BE), to ~ to a T ("to be perfectly appropriate for")

suitability *n.* ~ for

suitable *adj.* 1. eminently, very; hardly ~ 2. ~ for, to 3. ~ to + inf. ("would it be ~ to discuss this matter at lunch?" "no: it's hardly a ~ matter for discussion at lunch")

suitcase *n.* 1. to fill, stuff; pack; unpack a ~ 2. (esp. AE) to check a ~ (through) 3. to label a ~

suite *n.* ["group of connected rooms"] 1. a bridal; executive; hospitality; hotel; luxury; office; penthouse ~ USAGE NOTE: For *en-suite apartment* and *en-suite bathroom*, see **apartment**; **bathroom**. ["set of matched furniture"] 2. a bedroom; living-room; three-piece (BE) ~ (comprising a sofa and two armchairs that all match)

suited *adj.* 1. ideally, very, well ~ 2. ~ for, to (~ for the job; ~ to each other) 3. ~ to + inf. (is he psychologically ~ to be a police officer?)

sulk *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ about, over

sum *n.* 1. to raise a ~ (of money) 2. a considerable, large, not inconsiderable; substantial, tidy; equivalent; flat; lump; nominal; round; trivial ~ 3. (formal) in ~ (in ~, it could not have been worse) 4. (misc.) a three-figure, four-figure … six-figure … ~ (see also *sum total* at **total I** *n.*; **sums**)

summarize *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she ~d the plot for the class) 2. (misc.) to ~ (then), in *Romeo and Juliet*, Romeo and Juliet meet, fall in love, and die

summary *n.* 1. to give; make, prepare a ~ 2. a brief, executive ~ 3. a news ~ 4. in ~ (in ~ (then), in *Romeo and Juliet*, Romeo and Juliet meet, fall in love, and die)

summer *n.* 1. Indian; St. Luke's (BE; rare); St. Martin's (BE; rare) ~ 2. early; last; late; mid-; next ~ 3. a (long) hot ~ 4. during, over (esp. AE) the ~ 5. in (the) ~ (we met late in the ~ of 1995 = we met in the late ~ of 1995) (see also *summer solstice* at **solstice**)

summit *n.* ["peak"] (also fig.) 1. to reach a ~ 2. at a ~ (to stand at the ~; at the ~ of her career) ["summit conference"] 3. to convene, have, hold a ~ 4. at a ~ (we met at the ~ in Geneva)

summon *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ smb. as a witness) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ before (to be ~ed before a judge) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to (we were ~ed to the director's office) 4. (H) to ~ smb. to do smt.

summons I *n.* 1. to issue a ~ 2. to serve a ~ on smb. = to serve smb. with a ~ 3. a ~ to + inf. (she received a ~ to appear in court)

summons II *v.* (BE) (H) she was ~ed to appear in court

sums *n.* to do ~

sun *n.* 1. to blot out the ~ 2. the blazing; bright; hot; midday, noonday; tropical ~ 3. the ~ is down; up 4. the ~ is in; out 5. the ~ beats down, blazes; climbs (higher in the sky); comes out; comes up, rises; goes down, sets; goes in (behind a cloud); shines 6. an eclipse of the ~ = a solar eclipse 7. the light; rays of the ~ (= sunlight; the sun's rays) 8. on the ~ (changes have been observed on (the surface of) the ~) 9. in, under the ~ (to sit in the ~; "Mad dogs and Englishmen go out in the midday ~" – attributed to or used by Noël Coward, 1931) 10. (misc.) there's nothing new under the ~

sunburn *n.* 1. to get; have a ~ 2. a painful ~

sundae *n.* a butterscotch; chocolate; hot-fudge; ice-cream; strawberry ~

sundown *n.* at ~

sunlight *n.* 1. bright, brilliant, glaring, strong ~ 2. in the ~ 3. a patch; shaft of ~

sunrise *n.* at ~

sunscreen *n.* to apply, put on ~

sunset *n.* at ~

sunshine *n.* 1. to bask in; soak up ~ 2. bright, dazzling; warm ~ 3. a ray of ~ (also fig.) (the good news came as a ray of ~ after so much bad news)

sunstroke *n.* to get; have ~

suntan *n.* 1. to get; have a ~ 2. a deep ~ (see also *suntan lotion* at **lotion**; *suntan oil* at **oil I** *n.*)

supercilious *n.* ~ about

superfluous *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it would be quite ~ to add anything to their remarks)

superhighway *n.* the Information Superhighway

superimpose *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ one image on another; to ~ a new way of life on old customs)

superintendent *n.* a building (AE; AE also has *janitor*; BE has *caretaker*); school ~ (US) = ~ of schools (US)

superior I *adj.* 1. clearly, decidedly, definitely, far, (very) much, vastly ~ 2. ~ in (~ in numbers; ~ in rank) 3. ~ to (~ to all the other competitors) 4. (misc.) a mother ~

superior II *n.* smb.'s immediate ~

superiority *n.* 1. to achieve, establish ~ 2. to enjoy, hold ~ 3. clear ~ 4. numerical ~ 5. intellectual; social; (so-called) racial ~ 6. a feeling of ~ 7. ~ in; over, to (a feeling of ~ in skill over/to the other competitors) (See also **air superiority**)

superlative *n.* (to express oneself) in ~s

supermarket *n.* at, in a ~ (to shop at/in a ~)

supersensitive *adj.* 1. ~ about (~ about charges of corruption) 2. ~ to (~ to criticism)

superstition *n.* 1. a common ~ 2. a ~ about (there is a common ~ about the number thirteen) 3. a ~ that + clause (it is a common ~ that thirteen is an unlucky number)

superstitious *adj.* ~ about (a lot of people seem ~ about the number thirteen)

supervision *n.* 1. to exercise ~ of, over 2. to tighten ~ 3. to ease up on, relax ~ 4. close, strict; lax, slack; proper ~ 5. joint ~ 6. under smb.'s ~ 7. with; without ~ (don't let the child out without proper ~!)

supper *n.* 1. to eat (esp. AE), have ~ 2. to cook; make, prepare; serve ~ 3. a cold; hot; light; nutritious, wholesome; substantial ~ 4. at, during; over ~ (what did you discuss at/during/over ~?) 5. for ~ (what was served for ~?) 6. (misc.) to give smb. ~ (esp. BE); to take smb. to ~

supplement I *n.* 1. a color; lifestyle; literary; Sunday ~ (to a newspaper) 2. a dietary; iron; mineral; vitamin ~ (to take a vitamin ~ every day) 3. a ~ to 4. for a ~ (of) (¬for a ~ of $25/for a $25 ~¬ to the standard charge, you can have an en-suite bathroom!)

supplement II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ by; with (she ~ed her regular income ¬with a part-time job/by doing a part-time job¬)

supplementary *adj.* ~ to

supplicate *v.* (formal) (H) to ~ smb. to do smt.

supply I *n.* 1. to bring up, provide ~lies 2. to lay in, receive; replenish; store ~lies 3. an abundant, liberal, plentiful; inexhaustible ~ (of) 4. a fresh ~ (of) 5. emergency; relief ~lies 6. military; office ~lies 7. the coal; money; water ~ 8. ~lies hold out 9. ~lies run out; run short 10. in short ~ (see also **supply lines**) ["misc."] 11. the law of ~ and demand

supply II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ power to industry) 2. (D: tr.) to ~ with (to ~ industry with power)

supply lines *n.* 1. to overextend ~ 2. to cut ~

support I *n.* 1. to give, lend, offer, provide ~ 2. to pledge one's ~ 3. to bolster, increase, strengthen; drum up, enlist, line up, mobilize, muster, rally, round up ~ 4. to seek (smb.'s) ~ 5. to gain, get, receive, win (smb.'s) ~ 6. to have; lose the ~ of 7. to derive, draw ~ from 8. to cut off, terminate, withdraw (one's) ~ 9. ardent, complete, enthusiastic, firm, full, fullhearted (esp. BE), overwhelming, solid, strong, unflagging, unqualified, unstinting, unwavering, wholehearted ~ 10. lukewarm, qualified ~ (to give lukewarm ~ to a candidate) 11. active; bipartisan; liberal; loyal; traditional; vocal; wide ~ 12. emotional, psychological; financial; moral ~ 13. government, state; popular, public ~ 14. child ~ (is that mother eligible to claim child ~?) 15. farm; price ~s 16. ~ for; in 17. ~ from 18. in ~ (of) (she came out in ~ of the party) (see also *no visible means of support* at **means**; *support network* at **network**; **life support**)

support II *v.* 1. to ~ completely, enthusiastically, strongly, wholeheartedly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in (we ~ you in your efforts) 3. (K) we ~ed their seeking office 4. (misc.) we ~ed her financially all through college

supporter *n.* ["fan"] 1. to alienate; attract ~s (the party has alienated many of its traditional ~s in its effort to attract new ones) 2. an ardent, enthusiastic, fervent, firm, loyal, stalwart, staunch, steady, strong; life-long; traditional ~ 3. a lukewarm ~ 4. an active; vocal ~ (see also the Usage Note for **fan II**)

supportive *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ of

suppose *v.* 1. (L) we ~ that the situation will improve 2. (formal) (M) we ~d him to be guilty

supposed *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to rain; she was ~ to work today; the situation is ~ to improve – why hasn't it (done so)?)

supposition *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. (a) mere, pure ~ 3. a ~ that (I reject the ~ that he is guilty) 4. on (a) ~ (of) (to condemn smb. on mere ~ (of guilt))

suppository *n.* 1. to insert; remove a ~ 2. a rectal; vaginal ~

supremacy *n.* 1. to achieve, establish, gain; struggle for ~ (over) 2. to acknowledge smb.'s ~ 3. air; military; naval ~ 4. ~ in; over

supreme *adj.* to reign ~

supremo *n.* (BE) (see **czar**)

surcease *n.* (formal) ~ from, of

surcharge *n.* 1. to add a ~ to 2. to impose a ~ (on); to put a ~ on (the candidates vowed not to impose any ~s after the election; the new government put a ~ on all imported cars) 3. a ~ for, on (there is a ~ on these goods; there is ¬a ~ of $5/a $5 ~¬ for anything extra)

sure *adj.* 1. to make ~ 2. absolutely, quite ~ 3. far from ~ (I am far from ~ that she will pass the exam) 4. for ~ (can you say for ~ where the ceremony will take place?) 5. ~ of (we were ~ of his support) 6. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to pass the exam) 7. ~ that; wh-word + clause (I am ~ that she will pass the exam; make ~ that all doors are locked; are you ~ that you turned the gas off?; are you ~ where the ceremony will be held?; are you ~ who will officiate at the ceremony?; are you ~ how long the ceremony will take?)

surety *n.* to act as, stand ~ for

surf *n.* to ride the ~

surface *n.* 1. a bumpy, rough, uneven; even, smooth; flat; plane ~ 2. the calm; frozen ~ (of a body of water) 3. below, beneath, under, underneath the ~ (also fig.) 4. above, over; on the ~ (also fig.) (see also *surface area* at **area**; *surface temperature* at **temperature**) 5. (misc.) to scratch, skim (esp. AE) the ~ ("to treat superficially")

surge I *n.* ["military escalation"] 1. a troop ~ ["technical"] 2. a voltage ~ = a ~ in voltage

surge II *v.* (P; intr.) the crowd ~d around the entrance, through the corridor, and into the auditorium

surgeon *n.* 1. a brain; dental; flight; orthopedic

(AE), orthopaedic (BE); plastic; veterinary (BE; BE prefers *vet*; AE has *veterinarian*) ~ 2. a tree ~ 3. a ~ performs operations, operates (on patients)

surgery *n.* ["branch of medicine"] 1. to perform ~ 2. to undergo ~ 3. corrective, remedial; cosmetic; elective; plastic ~ 4. major; minor ~ 5. brain; by-pass; open-heart; transplant ~ 6. keyhole ~ (BE); laser ~; microsurgery 7. emergency; heroic; radical ~ ["office"] (BE) 8. a dentist's; doctor's ~ (CE has *doctor's office*) ["consultation period"] (BE) 9. to hold a ~ (our MP holds a ~ every week) 10. an MP's ~ ["misc."] 11. tree ~ (see the Usage Note for **office**)

surmise I *n.* (formal) ["conjecture"] a ~ that + clause (she expressed a ~ that the situation would improve)

surmise II *v.* (L) she ~d that the situation would improve

surname *n.* a double-barrelled ~ (esp. BE) (I asked Peregrine Chimp-Gibbon about his double-barrelled ~)

surplus I *adj.* ~ to (BE) (this merchandise is ~ to requirements; workers who are made redundant as ~ to requirements)

surplus II *n.* 1. to accumulate a ~ 2. to run ("have"), show a ~ 3. a budget; trade ~ 4. a ~ in 5. (BE) in ~ (our foreign trade is in ~)

surprise I *n.* 1. to spring a ~ on smb. 2. (mil.) to achieve ~ 3. to express; register ~ 4. to show ~ 5. (a) complete, outright, total ~ (the enemy achieved complete ~) 6. a pleasant; unpleasant ~ (they sprang an unpleasant ~ on us) 7. ~ at (to express ~ at recent events) 8. a ~ to (the results were a complete ~ to everyone) 9. a ~ to + inf. (it was a pleasant ~ to learn of her promotion) 10. a ~ that + clause (it was a ~ that she ¬was / should have been¬ promoted) 11. by ~ (the enemy took our fortress by ~) 12. to smb.'s ~ (to our ~ he was not drunk = to our great ~ he was not drunk = much to our surprise he was not drunk) 13. (misc.) it came as no ~; it will come as no ~ (to anyone) that she has been promoted; the element of ~ (see also *take by surprise* at **take II** *v.*)

surprise II *v.* 1. to ~ greatly, very much 2. (J) I ~d him lurking in the undergrowth 3. (R) it ~d me to see them drunk; it ~d us that their party won the election; it wouldn't ~ me in the least if he won the election 4. (misc.) it ~d me how much they had grown

surprised *adj.* 1. ~ at, by (~ at the news; I was ~ at how much they had grown) 2. ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to see them drunk) 3. ~ that + clause (I was ~ that they were drunk)

surprising *n.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to see them drunk) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that they were drunk) 3. (misc.) it is ~ how much they have grown

surrender I *n.* 1. unconditional ~ 2. a ~ to (there will be no ~ to pressure)

surrender II *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the enemy; to ~ a fortress to the invader)

surrounded *adj.* ~ by, with

surroundings *n.* 1. comfortable; elegant; luxurious; pleasant; sumptuous ~ 2. austere; unpleasant ~ 3. amid; in ~ (a pleasant cottage (set) amid rural ~)

surtax *n.* to impose, put a ~ (on)

surveillance *n.* 1. to conduct, maintain ~ 2. to keep; place smb. under ~ 3. (a)round-the-clock, constant; close, strict; police ~ 4. electronic ~ 5. under ~ (she was placed under strict police ~)

survey *n.* 1. to carry out, conduct, do, make, undertake a ~ 2. a brief; comprehensive ~ 3. an aerial; geodetic; house-to-house; topographical ~ 4. a ~ reveals, shows 5. the findings, results of a ~ 6. a ~ into, of 7. according to; in a ~

survival *n.* 1. to assure smb.'s ~ 2. ~ against, despite; as; from, since (his ~ against all the odds as dictator since 1973) 3. (misc.) the struggle for ~ resulting in natural selection leading to the ~ of the fittest

survive *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on bread and cheese; we can barely ~ on our income) 2. (E) she ~d to tell the tale 3. (N) to ~ intact and undamaged 4. (misc.) he has ~d against all the odds as dictator since 1973

survivor *n.* 1. to pick up ~s (at sea) 2. the sole ~ 3. a ~ from; of ("A Survivor from Warsaw" – Arnold Schönberg, 1947)

susceptibility *n.* ~ to (~ to disease)

susceptible *adj.* ~ to

suspect I *n.* 1. to arrest a ~ 2. to interrogate, question a ~ 3. to place a ~ under surveillance 4. to identify a ~ 5. the prime ~ 6. (misc.) "Round up the usual ~s." – *Casablanca* (film), 1942

suspect II *v.* 1. to ~ strongly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (to be ~ed as a participant in the robbery) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ of (rightly or wrongly, the police ~ed him of participation in the robbery) 4. (L) we ~ strongly that he participated in the robbery

suspend *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to hang") to ~ from (to ~ a hook from the ceiling) 2. (D; tr.) ("to bar temporarily") to ~ from (to ~ smb. from duty)

suspenders *n.* (AE) a pair of ~ (that hold up trousers) (BE has *braces*)

suspense *n.* 1. to break the ~ 2. great; mounting; unbearable ~ 3. in ~ (to keep smb. in ~; to wait in ~) 4. in ~ about, over (everyone was in ~ over the outcome) 5. (misc.) we cannot bear the ~

suspension *n.* independent ~ (on a car)

suspicion *n.* ["suspecting"] ["mistrust"] 1. to arouse, cause, create, evoke, give rise to, sow, stir (a) ~ 2. to entertain, harbor, have a ~ 3. to confirm a ~ 4. to cast ~ on 5. to allay, dispel ~ 6. a groundless, unfounded ~ 7. a deep, profound, strong; lingering, lurking; slight, sneaking; vague; well-founded ~ 8. a ~ about, of (there was some ~ about her motives) 9. (the) ~ falls on smb. 10. a ~ that + clause (these events confirmed my strong ~ that she was guilty) 11. above ~ ("not suspected") 12. on ~ of (arrested on ~ of murder) 13. under ~ ("suspected") 14. (misc.) a cloud of ~; the finger of ~ points at you; to regard smt. with ~ ["slight trace"] 15. a ~ of (not even the slightest ~ of scandal; a sauce with just a ~ of garlic in it)

suspicious *adj.* ["suspecting"] 1. ~ about, of (the police were ~ of the butler) ["causing suspicion"] 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that no story appeared in the press) (see also *suspicious circumstances* at **circumstances**)

suture *n.* 1. to put in a ~ 2. to remove, take out a ~

swagger *v.* (P; intr.) he ~ed into the room; they ~ed down the street

swallow I *n.* ["act of swallowing"] to have, take a ~

swallow II *v.* 1. to ~ down; hard 2. (misc.) to ~ smt. whole (also fig.) (they got him to ~ their ridiculous story whole!)

swamp I *n.* to drain a ~

swamp II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ by, with (they were ~ed with work)

swan *n.* 1. ~s glide; hiss 2. a flock (esp. in flight), herd of ~s 3. a young ~ is a cygnet 4. a male ~ is a cob 5. a female ~ is a pen 6. as graceful as a ~

swap I *n.* ["exchange"] 1. to make a ~ for; with 2. a straight ~ (she made a straight ~ with me of her bicycle for a hi-fi)

swap II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she ~ped her bicycle for a hi-fi) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (I ~ped places with my friend = my friend and I ~ped places (with each other)) 3. (O) I'll ~ you my bicycle for your hi-fi

swarm *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to crowd") to ~ around (the autograph seekers ~ed around the actor) 2. (d; intr.) ("to congregate") to ~ in (tourists were ~ing in the streets) 3. (d; intr.) ("to throng") to ~ into (to ~ into an auditorium) 4. (d; intr.) ("to throng") to ~ over, through (to ~ through the streets) 5. (d; intr.) ("to teem") to ~ with (the streets were ~ing with tourists) 6. (P; intr.) the spectators were ~ing across the field

swarming *adj.* ~ with (the streets were ~ing with tourists)

swath, swathe *n.* ["path"] to cut a ~ (to cut a wide ~ of destruction through the ranks of the enemy)

swathe *v.* (d; tr.) ("to wrap") to ~ in (she was ~d in mink)

sway I *n.* ["dominance"] 1. to hold ~ over 2. under smb.'s ~

sway II *v.* 1. to ~ gently 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the music) 3. (misc.) to ~ from side to side; to ~ back and forth; to ~ in the breeze

swayed *adj.* easily ~ (by an argument)

swear *v.* 1. to ~ solemnly 2. (B) ("to promise solemnly") they swore allegiance to the government 3. (D; intr.) ("to curse") to ~ at (he swore at them) 4. (d; intr.) ("to rely completely") to ~ by (everyone ~s by her remedy for a cold) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to confirm solemnly") (to ~ to the truth of a statement) 6. (d; tr.) ("to bind solemnly") to ~ to (to ~ smb. to secrecy) 7. (E) ("to promise solemnly") she swore to tell the truth; she swore to avenge her father's death 8. (L; to) ("to promise solemnly") she swore (to us) that she would tell the truth 9. (misc.) to ~ on the Bible; to ~ like a trooper ("to use obscene language freely") (see also *swear an oath* at **oath**)

swear in *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ as (she was sworn in as president)

sweat I *n.* 1. to break out in a cold ~ 2. beads, drops of ~ (ran down my face) 3. (misc.) to work up a good ~; to be dripping with ~; by the ~ of one's brow ("by working very hard")

sweat II *v.* to ~ freely, profusely

sweater *n.* 1. to crochet; knit a ~ 2. to put on; take off a ~ 3. to have on, wear a ~ 4. a light; warm ~ 5. an angora; mohair; turtleneck; woolen ~

sweep I *n.* ["reconnaissance"] 1. to make a ~ (behind enemy lines) ["winning of a series of contests"] 2. to make a clean ~ (of a series) ["sweeper"] 3. a chimney ~ ["sweeping movement or configuration"] 4. a broad ~ (the broad ~ of the prairie) 5. with a ~ (he dismissed my objections with a ~ of his hand)

sweep II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to remove") to ~ off (we swept the snow off the car) 2. (d; tr.) ("to remove") to ~ out of (to ~ the debris out of the room) 3. (N; used with an adjective) ("to clean with a broom") to ~ a floor clean 4. (P; intr., tr.) ("to move swiftly and overwhelmingly") the other party swept into office; they were swept into the sea; our troops swept through the village; the enemy column swept across the border 5. (misc.) to ~ smt. under the carpet (BE)/rug (AE) ("to conceal smt.")

sweep away *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (the children swept the snow away from the house)

sweep down *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on (the storm swept down on the village)

sweep in *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (the hurricane swept in from the sea)

sweepstakes, sweepstake *n.* to win the ~

sweet *adj.* (colloq.) 1. ~ on ("in love with") (he is ~ on her) 2. (used typically by women) ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to think of me = you were ~ to think of me) 3. (misc.) as ~ as honey/sugar

swell I *n.* ["growing wave"] a groundswell (a groundswell of support was building up)

swell II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with pride)

swelling *n.* 1. (to have) a painful ~ 2. (the) ~ goes down, subsides (the ~ went down)

swerve *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ from a course; to ~ to the right) 2. (misc.) the car ~d (¬in order/so as¬) to avoid a rabbit in the road

swift *adj.* 1. (lit.) ~ of (~ of foot) 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to react)

swig *n.* (colloq.) ["swallow"] to have, take a ~

swim I *n.* 1. to have, take a ~ 2. to go for a ~

swim II *v.* 1. (P; intr.) to ~ for shore; to ~ around the island; to ~ into the wrong lane 2. (misc.) to go ~ming

swindle I *n.* to perpetrate a ~

swindle II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ out of (to ~ smb. out of money)

swing I *n.* ["attempt to hit"] 1. to take a ~ at 2. a wild ~ ["shift"] 3. a ~ in (there was a ~ in public opinion) 4. a ~ to (in the last elections there was a ~ to the right) 5. (misc.) with that new medication, patients may be subject to frequent mood ~s ["operation"] 6. in full ~ (the work was in full ~)

swing II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ at (he swung at me; I swung the bat at the ball) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ from right to left) 3. (P; intr., tr.) public opinion swung towards the right and away from the left; the cranes swung the cargo onto the ship 4. (misc.) ~ your partner round and round

swings *n.* (children play) on the ~

swipe *n.* (colloq.) ["critical remark"] 1. to have, take a ~ at 2. a side ("indirect, implicit") ~

swirl *v.* (P; intr.) she ~ed (a)round the room

switch I *n.* ["change"] 1. to make a ~ 2. a ~ from; to 3. a ~ in (there was a sudden ~ in official policy) ["device used to open or close an electrical circuit"] 4. to flick on, turn on a ~ 5. to flick off, turn off a ~ 6. to throw a ~ ("to turn off or turn on a switch") 7. a master; power; time; toggle ~ ["movable section of railroad track"] (AE) 8. a railroad ~ (BE has *point*)

switch II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; into; to (to ~ to the metric system; she ~ed her support to the other candidate; to ~ from English into Russian) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (I ~ed places with my friend = my friend and I ~ed places (with each other))

switchboard *n.* 1. at, on a ~ (to work at a ~) 2. calls jammed the ~

switch over *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from; into; to (to ~ from English over to Russian)

switcheroo *n.* (slang) (AE) ["variation"] to pull a ~ (on smb.)

swoon I *n.* (old-fashioned) 1. to fall into a ~ 2. in a ~

swoon II *v.* (now usu. fig.) 1. (d; intr.) to ~ over (to ~ over a new film idol) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with joy)

swoop *n.* ["stroke"] at one fell ~ ("at one time") (the enemy captured all our positions at one fell ~)

swoop down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (the hawk ~ed down on the sheep)

swop (colloq.) (BE) see **swap I, II**

sword *n.* 1. to draw, unsheathe a ~ 2. to brandish; wield a ~ 3. to cross ~s with smb. (now usu. fig.) 4. to run smb. through with a ~, to run through smb. with a ~; thrust a ~ into 5. to sheathe a ~ 6. (misc.) a double-edged, two-edged ~ ("smt. that can have opposite results to those intended")

syllable *n.* 1. to stress a ~ 2. a closed; open; stressed; unstressed ~

syllabus *n.* 1. to design, draw up, make up a ~ 2. a ~ contains, covers, includes 3. in, on a ~

symbiosis *n.* 1. (a) ~ between 2. in ~ with

symbol *n.* 1. a chemical; phallic; phonetic; potent; religious; sex; status ~ 2. a ~ for (X is a ~ for an unknown quantity) 3. (misc.) a ~ of authority (the scepter is a ~ of royal authority)

symbolic *adj.* ~ of (the scepter is ~ of royal authority)

symmetrical *adj.* ~ to, with

sympathetic *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ to, with (rare)

sympathize *v.* 1. to ~ deeply, very much 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with

sympathy *n.* 1. to arouse, stir up ~ for 2. to capture; command; gain, get, win ~ 3. to express, extend; feel, have ~ for 4. to display, show ~ for 5. to lavish ~ on 6. to accept smb.'s ~ 7. deep, deepest, great, heartfelt, profound, strong ~ (please accept our deepest ~ on your bereavement) 8. little; no ~ for (to have little ~ for smb.) 9. one's ~ goes out to smb. 10. a token of one's ~ 11. ~ for (to have ~ for the underdog) 12. in ~ with (to be in complete ~ with smb.'s cause) 13. out of ("because of") ~ (we did it out of ~ for your family) 14. out of ("without") ~ (to be completely out of ~ with smb.'s cause) 15. (misc.) an expression of smb.'s ~; a message of ~; our deepest ~ goes out to you at a time like this

symphony *n.* 1. to compose, write a ~ 2. to perform, play a ~ (see also *symphony orchestra* at **orchestra**)

symposium *n.* 1. to conduct, hold a ~ (on) 2. to attend a ~ (on)

symptom *n.* 1. to develop; display, have, manifest, present, present with (med.), show ~s (of) 2. an acute; chronic ~ 3. a classic; specific ~ (the patient presented with all the classic ~s of that disease) 4. a ~ appears, develops; disappears, goes away; persists; recur (seek medical help if ~s persist or recur after treatmen) 5. the onset of ~s 6. withdrawal ~s

symptomatic *adj.* ~ of

synch *n.* (colloq.) ("synchronization") 1. in ~ (with) 2. out of ~ (with) (their ideas are out of ~ with the times)

synchronize *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with

syndicate *n.* 1. to form a ~ 2. a crime; drug ~

syndrome *n.* 1. the China; Stockholm ~ 2. acquired immune deficiency ~ (AIDS); chronic fatigue ~ (CFS); Down (esp. AE), Down's ~; premenstrual ~ (PMS); sudden infant death ~ (SIDS); toxic shock ~; (post-)traumatic stress ~ USAGE NOTES: PMS is also called PMT (pre-menstrual tension). SIDS is also called cot death (BE) or crib death (AE). Post-traumatic stress syndrome is also called post-traumatic stress disorder and is then abreviated PTSD.

synonymous *adj.* ~ with ("furze" and "gorse" are ~ with each other = "furze" is ~ with "gorse")

synopsis *n.* to give; make, prepare a ~

synthesis *n.* to make a ~

syphilis *n.* 1. to spread, transmit ~ 2. to catch, develop, get; have ~ 3. acquired; congenital; early; late; latent; primary; secondary; tertiary; untreated ~

syringe *n.* a disposable ; hypodermic ~

syrup *n.* 1. chocolate ; corn ; maple ~ 2. cough ~

system *n.* USAGE NOTE : "System" can be preceded by such verbs as bypass, create, develop, replace, overthrow and can be followed by such verbs as break down, fail, permit, succeed, work. ["group of items serving a common purpose"] 1. an air-conditioning ; drainage ; heating ; sprinkler ~ 2. an amplifying ; communications ; intercom(munication) ; public-address ; stereo ~ 3. a brake ; steering ~ 4. a data-processing ; filing ; software ; writing ~ 5. an early-warning ; guidance ~ 6. a highway (AE), motorway (BE), road ; postal ; rail, railroad (AE), railway (esp. BE) ; sewage ; transit (esp. AE), transport (esp. BE), transportation (esp. AE) ; subway (AE), tube (esp. BE), underground (BE) ~ 7. (misc.) a life-support ~ (to turn off a life-support ~ when a patient's condition becomes hopeless) ["form of organization, principles pertaining to a form of organization"] 8. a belief, philosophical ; value ~ 9. an honor ; merit ; quota ; seniority ~ 10. an economic ; educational, school ; government(al) ; health-care ; judicial ; legal ; political ; social ~ (an educational ~ can also be called a ~ of education ; a government(al) ~ can also be called a ~ of government ; a judicial ~ can also be called a ~ of justice ; an educational ~ can also be called a ~ of education) 11. a capitalist ; communist ; democratic ; socialist ~ 12. an authoritarian ; electoral ; multiparty ; one-party ; two-party ; totalitarian ~ 13. a banking ; monetary ~ 14. a class ; hierarchical ~ (see also *caste system* at **caste**) 15. a patronage ; spoils ~ 16. (colloq.) (AE) a buddy ~ 17. in, under a ~ (under our political ~ ; there may be defects in the ~) 18. (misc.) to beat ; buck (AE) the ~ ("to challenge established procedures") ["group of items forming a unified whole in nature"] 19. an ecosystem ; mountain ; river ; solar ~ ["functionally related group of bodily elements or structures"] 20. the cardiovascular ; central nervous ; circulatory ; digestive ; excretory ; genito-urinary ; immune ; muscular ; reproductive ; respiratory ; skeletal ~ ["classification"] ["type of measurement"] 21. a decimal ; metric ; monetary ; number ; taxonomic ~ ["group of substances in or approaching equilibrium"] (chemistry) 22. a binary ; ternary ~ ["set of meteorological conditions"] 23. a high-pressure ; low-pressure ~ ["procedure"] 24. the touch ~ (of typing) ["elements that allow the operation of a computer"] 25. to boot up ; reboot a ~ 26. a disk-operating, operating ; retrieval ~ ["misc."] 27. ~s analysis ; a ~s analyst ; ~s theory ; to become / be part of a ~ ; a ~ for doing smt. = a ~ to do smt. (to devise a ~ for winning at poker = to devise a ~ to win at poker) ; a shock to the ~ (the current crisis may deliver a much-needed shock to the international economic ~)

T

T *n.* to a ~ (“precisely”) (you fit the role to a ~)

tab I *n.* [“tabulator, device for setting a margin”] 1. to set a ~ [“bill”] (colloq.) (AE) 2. to pick up the ~ for (she picked up the ~ for everyone) 3. the ~ for (a pretty high ~ for a mediocre meal!) (see also **tabs**)

tab II *v.* (colloq.) (AE) 1. (d; tr.) (“to identify”) to ~ as (she was ~bed as a leading contender) 2. (d; tr.) (“to designate”) to ~ for (large sums were ~bed for school construction)

tabernacle *n.* to build a ~

table *n.* [“piece of furniture”] 1. to lay (esp. BE), set (esp. AE) a ~ 2. to clear a ~ 3. a bedside; coffee; corner; dressing; end; night; tray; window; writing ~ 4. a dining-room; dinner; kitchen ~ (set the dining-room ~ for six) 5. a card; drop-leaf; folding ~ 6. a billiard; ping-pong; pool; snooker ~ 7. the operating ~ (in a hospital) 8. (AE) a training ~ (for members of a team) 9. around, round a ~ (to sit around a ~) 10. ¬at the ~/at ~ (BE)¬ (“while eating”) (we never discuss politics at the dinner ~) 11. across; on; over; under a ~ 12. the foot; head of a ~ 13. (misc.) to book (BE)/reserve (AE) a ~ in a restaurant (I see that Sir has reserved the window ~ for tonight) [“table for conducting discussions, negotiations”] [“negotiating session”] 14. a bargaining, conference, negotiating; round ~ 15. at the ~ (at the negotiating ~) 16. on the ~ (a new offer was put on the ~) [“enumeration, list”] 17. to compile, draw up a ~ 18. a conversion; genealogy; life, mortality; multiplication; periodic; times ~ (see also *table of contents* at **contents** 3; **timetable**) 19. logarithmic ~s 20. in a ~ (to give data in ~s) [“level”] 21. a water ~ (the ~ is high; low) [“misc.”] 22. to turn the ~s on smb. (“to reverse the roles in a struggle with smb.”); under the ~ (“illegally”)

tablespoon *n.* a heaping (AE), heaped (BE); level ~

tablet *n.* [“pad”] (AE) 1. a writing ~ [“pill”] 2. to take a ~ (see also *aspirin tablet* at **aspirin**) 3. a scored ~ [“slab”] 4. a bronze; clay; marble; stone ~

taboo *n.* 1. to observe a ~ 2. to break, violate a ~ 3. a rigid ~ 4. a ~ about, against, on 5. (to place smt.) under (a) ~ 6. (misc.) the ~s surrounding smt. (See also *taboo subject* at **subject I** *n.*)

tabs *n.* (colloq.) [“watch, surveillance”] to keep ~ on

tack I *n.* [“short nail”] 1. a carpet; thumb (AE; BE has *drawing pin)* ~ [“direction of a sailing ship”] 2. the port; starboard ~ [“course of action”] [“direction”] 3. to change ~; take a new ~ 4. (misc.) to go off, start off on the wrong ~ (see also **brass tacks**)

tack II *v.* (d; tr.) (“to attach”) to ~ onto, to (an amendment was ~ed onto the bill)

tackle *n.* fishing ~

tack on *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (the clause was ~ed on as an amendment to the bill) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (an amendment was ~ed on to the bill)

tact *n.* 1. to display, exercise, show, use ~ 2. to have ~ 3. considerable, exemplary, great; subtle ~ 4. the ~ to + inf. (does she have the ~ to conduct the negotiations?) 5. (misc.) with ~ and diplomacy (to resolve a problem with ~ and diplomacy)

tactful *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ to + inf. (it was not ~ of you to mention that = you were not ~ to mention that)

tactic *n.* 1. a scare ~ (see **tactics**) 2. a ~ boomerangs; fails; pays off, succeeds

tactics *n.* 1. to adopt; devise; employ; use ~ 2. aggressive; bullying; delaying; diversionary; pressure; questionable; roughhouse (AE); scare; smear; strong-arm; wily ~ (to employ questionable ~) 3. defensive; military; offensive ~ 4. (esp. AE) Madison Avenue ~ (“reliance on sophisticated promotion, advertising”) 5. salami ~ (“maneuvering by stages”) 6. ~ boomerang; fail; pay off, succeed 7. (misc.) strategy and ~

tactless *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to mention that = you were ~ to mention that)

taffy *n.* (esp. AE) 1. to make; pull ~ 2. saltwater ~

tag I *n.* [“children’s game”] 1. to play ~ 2. a game of ~

tag II *n.* [“label, marker”] 1. to put a ~ on smt. 2. a baggage, luggage; name; price ~ 3. (AE) license ~s (on a car) 4. (AE) (mil.) dog (colloq.), identification ~s (BE has *identification disc*) [“short phrase”] (ling.) 5. a question ~ (a tag question has a question ~, hasn’t it?) (see also *tag question* at **question I** *n.*)

tag III *v.* (colloq.) 1. (d; intr.) to ~ after (“to follow”) (the child ~ged after the others) 2. (d; tr.) (“to label”) to ~ as (they ~ged her as a failure) 3. (AE) (d; tr.) (“to fine”) to ~ for (she was ~ged for going through a red light) 4. (N; used with a noun) they ~ged her a failure

tag along *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ after; behind (the child ~ged along after the others) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ with (the child wanted to ~ with the others)

tag end *n.* (esp. AE) [“very end, tail end”] at the ~ (of smt.)

tail *n.* [“rear appendage”] 1. to move; swish; wag a ~ (an animal, bird, or fish moves its ~; a dog wags its ~; a horse swishes its ~) 2. to dock (“shorten”) a ~ 3. a bushy ~ 4. (misc.) to turn ~ (“to flee”) [“person who conducts surveillance”] (colloq.) 5. to put a ~ on smb. [“misc.”] 6. a car was right on my ~ (“a car was following me very closely”); the traffic was nose to ~! (BE) (“bumper to bumper”)

tail end *n.* [“very end”] at the ~ (of smt.)

tailor I *n.* a bespoke (BE), custom; ladies’; men’s ~

tailor II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ an insurance policy to the needs of the insured)

tailored *adj.* 1. ~ for (~ed for a young audience) 2. ~ to + inf. (an insurance policy ~ to meet the needs of the insured)

tailor-made *adj.* ~ for; to (~ for the assignment;

we can offer you an insurance policy ~ to your needs!)

tailspin *n.* to go into a ~

tainted *adj.* ~ by, with (~ by scandal)

take I *n.* (colloq.) ["reaction"] 1. a double ~ ("delayed reaction") (to do a double ~) ["illegal payments"] 2. on the ~ (they were all on the ~) ("they were all accepting bribes") ["view"] (colloq.) 3. to have a ~ on (she has an interesting ~ on the subject)

take II *v.* 1. to ~ badly; hard; lightly; personally; philosophically; seriously; well (she took the bad news well/philosophically) 2. (A) ("to carry") she took a cup of tea to him; or: she took him a cup of tea 3. (d; intr.) to ~ after ("to resemble") (he ~s after his father) 4. (d; tr.) ("to construe") to ~ as (we took her gesture as a sign of friendship; I took his remark as a compliment; I took your silence as disapproval; I ~ it as read ("I assume") that you agree (esp. BE)) 5. (d; tr.) ("to grasp") to ~ by (she took him by the hand) 6. (D; tr.) ("to lead, accompany") to ~ for (she took her daughter for a walk; he took us for a ride) 7. (D; tr.) ("to obtain, secure") to ~ for (I took the book for him) 8. (d; tr.) to ~ for ("to assume to be") (just what do you ~ me for?; do you ~ me for a fool?) 9. (D; tr.) ("to obtain"); ("to remove") to ~ from (she took the empty cup of tea from him; I took the money from the safe) 10. (d; tr.) ("to subtract") to ~ from (~ five from ten and get five) 11. (d; tr.) ("to carry") to ~ into (~ the chairs into the house) 12. (d; tr.) to ~ into ("to bring into") (to ~ smb. into one's confidence; they took the prisoner into custody) 13. (d; tr.) to ~ into ("to include") (to ~ smt. into consideration; we took all the facts into account ("we took account of all the facts")) 14. (d; tr.) ("to remove"); ("to deduct") to ~ off (I took the books off the shelf; they took ten pounds off the bill) 15. (d; tr.) ("to carry") to ~ out of (~ the chairs out of the house) 16. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to like") (to ~ kindly to an offer; she took to them at once) 17. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to begin"); ("to engage in") (to ~ to drink; to ~ to drinking in bars; she took to gambling at the casinos; he took to fishing with great gusto) 18. (d; intr.) ("to go"); ("to have recourse") to ~ to (to ~ to one's bed; to ~ to the streets; to ~ to the lifeboats; to ~ to the airwaves) 19. (d; tr.) ("to lead, accompany, transport") to ~ to (to ~ smb. to dinner; she took us to the art museum; we took them to the station) 20. (d; tr.) ("to carry") to ~ to (I took the books to the library; she took the money to the bank) 21. (d; tr.) ("to move, transfer") to ~ to (they took the case to the supreme court) 22. (D; tr.) ("to accept, bear") to ~ with (he took his punishment with a smile; to ~ a remark with a grain of salt) 23. (d; tr.) ("to lead; accompany") to ~ with (they took their daughter with them) 24. (G) ("to tolerate, bear, stand") (used typically after *can, can't, could, couldn't*) he just can't ~ being ignored 25. (H) ("to interpret") I took your silence to mean disapproval 26. (H) ("to require") it took us two hours to do the job 27. (M) ("to consider"); ("to accept") I took him to be a friend; do you ~ this man to be your lawful wedded husband? 28. (N) ("to seize") we took them prisoner; to ~ smb. hostage 29. (O; can be used with one object of time) ("to require") the job took (us) two hours 30. (P; tr.) her work often ~s her abroad; he threatened to ~ his business elsewhere; the guide took us through the museum; she took them across the street 31. (R) ("to demand, require") it sometimes ~s courage to tell the truth; it took (us) two hours to do the job 32. (s) ("to become") to ~ sick 33. (misc.) she took it on/upon herself to break the news; to ~ five (esp. AE; colloq.) ("to have a five-minute break"); to ~ by surprise ("to surprise") (see also *take smb. to court* at **court**; *take for granted* at **granted**; *take to one's heels* at **heels**; *not take kindly to smt.* at **kindly**; *take the law into one's own hands* at **law**; *take smt. lying down* at **lie down**; *take smt. by storm* at **storm I** *n.*; *take smb. under one's wing* at **wing I** n)

take away *v.* (D; tr.) ("to remove") to ~ from (she took the scissors away from the child = she took away the scissors from the child)

take back *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to accept") to ~ from (they took the furniture back from the customer = they took back the furniture from the customer) 2. (D; tr.) ("to return") to ~ into (they took the furniture back into the house) 3. (D; tr.) ("to return") to ~ to (she took the book back to the library; the song took me back to my childhood) 4. (P; tr.) they took the chairs back up to the attic; they took the boxes back down to the basement; they took the visitors back across the river

take down *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to remove") to ~ from, off (she took the suitcase down from the attic = she took down the suitcase from the attic; I took the books down off the shelf) 2. (D; tr.) ("to write down") to ~ in (to ~ testimony down in shorthand) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to ("to move") (she took the suitcase down to the basement)

take in *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to accept") to ~ as (we took her in as a partner) 2. (D; tr.) ("to fool") to ~ by (he was taken in by flattery) 3. (D; tr.) ("to lead, accompany") to ~ to (to ~ smb. in to dinner) 4. (misc.) to ~ a car in for service; we took them in out of the cold

taken *adj.* ["impressed"] ["infatuated"] 1. very, very much ~ 2. ~ with (he was very (much) ~ with her)

takeoff *n.* ["parody"] (colloq.) 1. to do a ~ of (esp. BE), on (esp. AE) ["departure of an airplane"] 2. to abort a ~ 3. a smooth ~ 4. on ~

take off *v.* 1. (colloq.) (D; intr.) ("to leave") to ~ for (they took off for town) 2. (D; intr.) ("to begin flight") to ~ from (we took off from a small landing strip) 3. (D; intr.) ("to leave") to ~ with (he took off with their money – and with my wife!)

take on *v.* (D; tr.) ("to accept") to ~ as (we took her on as a partner)

take out *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to remove") to ~ from (I took out ten dollars from my purse) 2. (D; tr.) ("to carry") to ~ into (they took the chairs out into the garden) 3. (d; tr.) ("to vent") to ~ on (don't ~ your anger out on me = don't ~ your anger on me) 4. (D; tr.) ("to accompany") to ~ to (she took them out to a nice restaurant) 5. (misc.) he took her out on a date; to ~ it out on smb. ("to make smb. else suffer for one's own problem")

takeover *n.* 1. a friendly; hostile ~ (of a firm) 2. a corporate; military ~ (see also *(hostile) takeover bid* at **bid I** *n.*)

take over *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from (the new government has taken over from the outgoing government; we will ~ power from them) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to (I took some soup over to my neighbor = I took over some soup to my neighbor)

take up *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to carry") to ~ from (she took the suitcase up from the basement = she took up the suitcase from the basement) 2. (D; tr.) ("to remove") to ~ from (they took up the carpeting from the floor) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ on ("to accept, adopt") (he took me up on my offer) 4. (D; tr.) ("to carry") to ~ to (she took the suitcase up to the attic) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to join") (he took up with a rough crowd) 6. (misc.) I'll ~ ("discuss") the matter with my lawyer = I'll ~ the matter up with my lawyer

taking *n.* (colloq.) for the ~ (it's there for the ~) ("it can be taken by anyone who wants it")

tale *n.* 1. to concoct, make up a ~ 2. to narrate, tell a ~ 3. to hear a ~ 4. to listen to a ~ 5. an absorbing, exciting, fascinating, gripping, incredible; fanciful; grisly; hair-raising, harrowing, shocking ~ 6. a fairy; folk; old-wives' ~ 7. a tall ("unbelievable") ~ 8. a cautionary ~ 9. a ~ about 10. (misc.) to tell ~s out of school ("to reveal secrets"); thereby hangs a ~ ("there's a lot to be said about smt.")

talent *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show (a) ~ 2. to cultivate, develop a ~ 3. to have (a) ~ 4. to squander one's ~(s) 5. (a) great; mediocre; outstanding; rare; real ~ 6. (a) natural ~ 7. fresh; local; young ~ 8. the ~ to + inf. (she has the ~ to go far) 9. (a) ~ for (a ~ for painting) 10. of; with ~ (a person of considerable ~ who writes poems with great ~) USAGE NOTE: The phrase *local talent* has besides its literal meaning the sense 'local girls as potential sex objects' (as in "Let's check out the local talent").

talented *adj.* 1. highly, hugely, very ~ 2. ~ at, in 3. ~ with (~ with one's hands)

talk I *n.* ["address, lecture"] 1. to deliver, give a ~ 2. a pep; sales ~ (the coach gave the team a pep ~ before the game) 3. a ~ about, on (she gave an interesting ~ on bringing up children) ["conversation"] ["chatter"] 4. to have a ~ (with) 5. blunt, plain; idle, loose; pillow ~ (inted); table ~ (see also **small talk**) 6. a long; short ~ (she had a long ~ with him about his work) 7. sweet ~ ("flattery") 8. double, fast ~ ("deception") 9. a heart-to-heart ("frank") ~ 10. straight ("frank") ~ 11. (colloq.) big ~ ("boasting") 12. ~ about, of; with (there is ~ of her resigning) 13. ~ that + clause (there is ~ that she will resign) ["type of speech"] 14. baby ~ ["misc."] 15. it's all ~ but no action; the ~ of the town ("the topic being discussed by everyone"); at office parties some people prefer to engage in shop ~ but others prefer to make small ~ (see also **small talk**; **talks**)

talk II *v.* 1. to ~ bluntly, candidly, frankly, freely, openly 2. to ~ loud, loudly 3. to ~ quietly, softly 4. (D; intr.) to ~ about, of, on (they were ~ing about the elections; she was ~ing of her trip; to ~ on a topic) 5. (d; tr.) to ~ into ("to persuade") (to ~ smb. into doing smt.) 6. (d; tr.) to ~ out of ("to dissuade") (to ~ smb. out of doing smt.) 7. (d; intr.) ("to speak") to ~ to, with (esp. AE) (I will ~ to them about this problem); (esp. AE – I ~ed with them for an hour) 8. (misc.) to ~ big ("to boast"); to ~ turkey ("to speak frankly"); to ~ oneself hoarse; we have ways of making you ~!

talk back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to one's boss)

talk down *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to an audience)

talker *n.* (colloq.) a fast, glib, smooth ~ ("one who speaks glibly, in a deceptive manner")

talking *n.* to do the ~ (she did all the ~)

talking-to *n.* (colloq.) ["scolding"] 1. to give smb. a (good) ~ 2. to get a ~

talk over *v.* (D; tr.) ("to discuss") to ~ with (we ~ed it over with them)

talks *n.* ["negotiations"] 1. to conduct, have, hold; open; to resume ~ (about) 2. to break off ~ 3. candid, frank; direct ~ 4. arms-control, arms-limitation; contract; peace ~ 5. exploratory, preliminary; private, secret ~ 6. formal; informal ~ 7. high-level; top-level ~ 8. ~ break down, collapse; are deadlocked 9. ~ about; between, with (~ about smt.; ~ with smb.) 10. ~ to + inf. (we've opened ~ with the rebels to release the hostages) 11. (misc.) the next round of ~ will be held in the summer

tall *adj.* 1. to stand ~ ("to be resolute") 2. to walk ~ ("to be self-confident") 3. (misc.) she is five feet ~ = she is a five-foot-tall woman; she is rather ~ for her age

tally I *n.* to keep; make a ~

tally II *v.* (D; intr.) ("to correspond") to ~ with

tambourine *n.* to play (on) the ~

tamper *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with a lock; one should not ~ with a jury)

tampon *n.* to insert, put in; remove, take out a ~ (see also *sanitary napkin* at **napkin**; *sanitary pad* at **pad**; *sanitary towel* at **towel**)

tan I *n.* 1. to get; have a ~ 2. a deep ~

tan II *v.* (intr.) to ~ easily, readily

tandem *n.* in ~ (with)

tangent I *adj.* ~ to (~ to a circle)

tangent II *n.* ["digression"] to go off at, on (esp. AE) a ~

tangential *adj.* (formal) ["incidental"] ~ to

tangle I *n.* 1. to unravel a ~ 2. to get into; get out of a ~ 3. a dense, thick ~ 4. in a ~

tangle II *v.* (colloq.) (d; intr.) ("to quarrel") to ~ about, over; with (don't ~ with him over money)

tangled *adj.* ~ in

tango *n.* 1. to perform, play a ~ 2. to dance, do the ~

tank *n.* ["armored combat vehicle"] 1. to drive a ~ 2. a heavy; light; medium ~ 3. a column of ~s = a ~ column ["receptacle, container"] 4. a fish; fuel; gas (AE), gasoline (AE), petrol (BE); oil; oxygen; septic; water ~ 5. a ~ holds twenty gallons ["prison"] (slang) (esp. AE) 6. in the ~ ["misc."] 7. a think ~ ("a group of thinkers, planners") (a left-leaning think ~) (compare *brain trust*, *brains trust* at **trust**)

tanker *n.* an oil ~; a supertanker

tantamount *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to

tantrum *n.* 1. to have, throw a ~ 2. to fly into a ~ 3. a temper ~ (he threw a temper ~)

tap I *n.* ["faucet"] 1. on ~ ("ready to be drawn") (beer on ~) 2. (fig.) on ~ ("available"); ("imminent") (what's on ~ for tonight?) 3. see **faucet** ["act of tapping"] 4. feel; give a ~ 5. a light ~ 6. a ~ on (I felt a light ~ on my shoulder, turned around, and saw …!)

tap II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to ask") to ~ for (to ~ smb. for information) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to use") (to ~ into reserves) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ on ("to strike lightly") (to ~ smb. on the shoulder)

tape I *n.* ["narrow strip of material"] 1. adhesive, sticky (BE); friction; insulating; magnetic; masking; measuring; name; ticker ~ (a piece/strip of adhesive ~) ["smt. stretched across the track at the end of a race"] 2. to break, breast, reach the ~ (both runners reached the (finishing) ~ together) ["tape recording"] 3. to make a ~ 4. to fast-forward; play, put on, run; play back a ~ 5. to rewind; wind a ~ 6. to erase a ~ 7. a blank ~ 8. on ~ (I have their testimony on ~) 9. audiotape; videotape (see also **red tape**)

tape II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to attach") to ~ onto, to (she ~d the announcement to the bulletin board; to ~ X to Y = to ~ X and Y to each other) 2. (misc.) to ~ X and Y together; to have it ~d (colloq.) ("to be familiar with the routine (as by knowing the ropes)")

taper *v.* (d; intr., tr.) to ~ to (~ed to a point)

tape recorder *n.* 1. to start; turn on a ~ 2. to operate, play a ~ 3. to stop; turn off a ~ 4. a cassette; reel-to-reel ~

tapestry *n.* 1. to weave a ~ 2. (misc.) (BE) (it's all part of) life's rich ~

taps *n.* ["bugle call"] (AE; BE has *the last post*) 1. to play, sound ~ 2. at ~ (lights go out at ~)

tar *n.* coal ~

tardiness *n.* ~ in

tardy *adj.* ~ in

target I *n.* ["goal, mark"] 1. to aim at; destroy; find, hit; shoot at a ~ 2. to track a ~ 3. to miss; overshoot a ~ 4. to fall short of the ~ 5. a civilian; military; moving; stationary ~ 6. an easy; inviting, soft; sitting ~ 7. off ~, wide of the ~ ("not accurate") 8. on ~ ("accurate") 9. (misc.) to become a ~; use as a ~ (he became an easy ~ for the opposition) (see also *target audience* at **audience**) ["result, aim"] 10. to achieve, meet, reach; aim at, aim for; exceed; fall short of; set a ~ 11. an achievable, realistic; imposible, unrealistic; long-term; short-term ~ 12. a ~ for (to set unrealistic ~s for short-term growth)

target II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (she was ~ed as the next victim) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ at (a product ~ed specifically at women) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ for (an old building ~ed for demolition)

tariff *n.* 1. to impose, levy a ~ 2. to pay a ~ 3. a protective ~ 4. a high; low ~ 5. a ~ on (a stiff ~ was imposed on tobacco products) (see also *tariff barrier* at **barrier**)

tarpaulin *n.* 1. to spread a ~ 2. a piece, sheet of ~

tarry *v.* (formal) to ~ long (do not ~ long over dinner)

task *n.* 1. to carry out, do, fulfill, perform; cope with; take on, take upon oneself; undertake a ~ 2. to assign smb. a ~ 3. an enviable; pleasant; welcome ~ 4. a delicate, ticklish; fruitless, hopeless ~ (she took upon herself the delicate ~ of breaking the news) 5. an arduous; difficult; enormous; formidable; Herculean, monumental; strenuous ~ 6. a dreary; irksome; menial; onerous; thankless; unenviable; unpleasant; unwelcome ~ 7. (misc.) to take smb. to ~ for smt. ("to criticize smb. for smt.")

task force *n.* 1. to deploy; form, set up a ~ 2. an army; naval, navy ~ 3. a ~ to + inf. (the government has set up a ~ to fight racism)

taskmaster *n.* a hard, rigid, severe, stern ~

taste I *n.* ["appreciation"] ["sense of what is proper"] 1. to acquire, cultivate, develop a ~ 2. to demonstrate, display, exercise; show (a) ~; indulge one's ~ 3. to have ~ 4. (an) acquired; artistic; discriminating; elegant, excellent, exquisite, impeccable; good; simple ~ (she has excellent ~ in clothes; contemporary art is very much an acquired ~) 5. bad, poor ~ (it is bad ~ to ignore an invitation to a wedding) 6. a ~ for (to develop a ~ for music and finally be able to indulge it) 7. ~ in (they showed good ~ in planning the decor; excellent/poor ~ in music) 8. in (a certain) ~ (everything was done in ¬good/the best possible¬ ~) 9. for; to smb.'s ~ (these paintings are not to my ~: they are too modern for my ~) 10. (misc.) ~s differ; the sense of ~ (see also *a matter of (personal) taste* at **matter I** *n.*) ["sensation obtained from tasting, eating; flavor"] (also fig.) 11. to have; leave a ~ (the fruit had a pleasant ~; the whole affair left a bitter ~ in my mouth) 12. to bring out, enhance; disguise; spoil the ~ 13. an acquired; authentic; bad, disagreeable, foul; bitter; delicate; mild; nice, pleasant, sweet; salty; sharp; slight; sour; strong; tart ~ (olives are said to be an acquired ~) 14. a ~ permeates smt. (a garlicky ~ permeated the entire dish) 15. a ~ of (a ~ of garlic permeated the whole dish) 16. (misc.) the/a sense of ~; add salt and pepper to ~ (see also *taste buds* at **bud I** *n.*) ["small amount tasted or experienced"] 17.

to have, take (esp. AE) a ~ (of) 18. to give smb. a ~ of smt. (often fig.) (they gave him a ~ of his own medicine; that bit part ¬gave me/was¬ my first real ~ of show business)

taste II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ like; of (a nectarine ~s like a peach; the food ~s of garlic) 2. (s) the food ~s good

tasteless *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to bring up that subject)

taster *n.* a wine-taster

tatters *n.* in ~ (the beggars were in (rags and) ~; her clothing was in ~)

tattle *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) ("to inform") to ~ on

taunt I *n.* 1. to hurl a ~ at smb. 2. a cruel ~

taunt II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ about 2. (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into doing smt.)

tax I *n.* 1. to impose, levy, put a ~ on 2. to collect a ~ from 3. to pay a ~ (to pay a ~ on a new car; to pay a large sum in ~es; to pay a ~ to the government) 4. to avoid (esp. BE); evade a ~ (see also Usage Note at **avoidance**) 5. to increase, raise ~es 6. to cut, lower, reduce ~es 7. to rescind, revoke a ~ 8. an amusement; cigarette; gasoline (AE), petrol (BE); liquor (esp. AE); road (BE) ~ 9. a direct; indirect ~ 10. an excise; nuisance; purchase (BE), sales ~; a value-added tax (= VAT) (GB) 11. a federal (AE); local; state (US) ~ 12. a capital-gains; corporate; excess-profits; windfall-profits ~ 13. an income; negative income; social-security ~; withholding ~ (esp. AE; BE has *PAYE*) 14. a council ("local property tax") (GB); personal-property; property; real-estate; transfer ~ 15. a capital-transfer ~ (BE; has replaced *death duty*); death (AE), estate, inheritance; gift ~ 16. a flat; graduated, progressive ~ 17. a ~ on (a ~ on cigarettes) 18. after; before ~; net(t) of ~ (esp. BE) (your income before ~ is of course greater than your income after ~ = your gross pre-tax income is of course greater than your income net of ~) 19. (misc.) to exempt from ~ (a tax-exempt purchase); back ~es (to owe back ~es); delinquent ~es (AE); heavy ~es; a ~ haven; ~ relief; a ~ shelter; (BE) these purchases attract value-added ~ at seventeen per cent (see also *tax avoidance* & Usage Note at **avoidance**; *tax collector* at **collector**; *tax evasion* at **evasion**; *tax exile* at **exile I** *n.*; *tax haven* at **haven**; *tax loophole* at **loophole**; *for tax purposes* at **purpose**; *tax rate* at **rate I** *n.*; **tax return**; **tax shelter**)

tax II *v.* 1. to ~ heavily; lightly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ at (~ed at 17 percent) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ on (they ~ed the author on his royalties) 4. (formal) (d; tr.) ("to accuse") to ~ with (to ~ smb. with negligence)

taxation *n.* 1. to impose; lower; raise ~ 2. direct; general; indirect ~ (will the new public-works program be paid for out of general ~?) 3. the burden; level, rate of ~ (does the burden of ~ fall chiefly on those most able to pay?)

tax return *n.* 1. to complete, fill in, fill out (esp. AE), make out a ~ 2. to file, send in, submit a ~

tax shelter *n.* a foreign, off-shore; legal ~ (some investments provide a legal ~ for your money and produce tax-sheltered income)

taxi I see **cab**

taxi II *v.* (P; intr.) the plane ~ed along the runway; the jet ~ed to a complete stop

tea *n.* ["plant"] 1. to grow ~ ["beverage"] 2. to brew, make; steep ~ 3. to drink, have, take ~ (to take ~ with sugar) 4. to have, take (old-fashioned) ~ with smb. 5. strong; weak ~ 6. hot; iced ~ 7. black; green ~ 8. decaffeinated; herbal; scented ~ 9. camomile; jasmine; lemon; mint ~ 10. beef ~ (BE; CE has *beef broth*) 11. the ~ is brewing 12. a cup; glass; pot of ~ (a cup of ~ with milk and sugar in it; bring us two cups of ~; or: bring us two ~s) ["meal"] (GB) 13. to have ~ 14. afternoon; cream; high ~ (see also *tea ceremony* at **ceremony**; *tea party* at **party**; *tea things* at **thing**) USAGE NOTE: In Britain, *tea* can also mean 'an afternoon or early evening meal where tea is served.' A *cream tea* features scones, jam, and thick spreadable cream (such as clotted cream). *High tea* features more substantial food. In fact, *high tea* (old-fashioned) and *tea* can mean 'early dinner,' 'dinner,' or 'supper' (we're having gammon for tea!).

teach *v.* 1. (A) she taught history to us; or: she taught us history 2. (D; tr.) to ~ about (to ~ children about their heritage) 3. (H) she taught them to swim 4. (L; typically has a noun or pronoun object) he taught us that the best policy is to tell the truth 5. (O; can be used with one object) she taught us history; that is, she taught us and she taught history 6. (Q; must have an object) she taught them how to swim USAGE NOTES: (1) In pattern L, *teach* is formal without a noun or pronoun object: The Buddha teaches that we should be both wise and compassionate. (2) *Teach* is unusual in that it takes both pattern A and pattern O.

teacher *n.* 1. to certify; license; train a ~ 2. an exchange; practice, student ~ 3. (BE) a supply ~ (AE has *substitute*) 4. a ~ of (a ~ of English = an English ~)

teach-in *n.* to conduct, hold; organize, stage a ~

teaching *n.* 1. practice, student ~ 2. team ~ 3. health ~ 4. (misc.) to go into ~ (see also *teaching load* at **load I** *n.*)

teachings *n.* to follow smb.'s ~ (to follow the Buddha's ~ about wisdom and compassion)

teacup *n.* a storm in a ~ (BE) ("much ado about nothing") (for AE, see **teapot**)

teakettle see **kettle**

team *n.* 1. to field; organize a ~ 2. to coach; manage a ~ 3. to disband, split up a ~ 4. an all-star (AE); losing; winning ~ 5. a home; opposing, rival; visiting ~ 6. a baseball; basketball; cricket; drill; football; hockey; lacrosse; relay; soccer; track, track-and-field; volleyball ~ 7. (Am. professional football) a wild-card ~ 8. (mil.) a combat ~ 9. a negotiating ~ 10. (misc.) (AE) to make a ~

("to succeed in becoming a member of a team") USAGE NOTES: (1) AE uses *team* more often than BE – Chicago has fielded a strong team for today's game; Chicago is the strongest team in the league. BE prefers *side* when referring to a competitive match – Liverpool have fielded a strong side for today's match. BE often uses *club* when referring to a team in general – United is/are the strongest club in the Premier League. In BE, a player can be *in a side; in a team*. In AE, a player cen be *on a side; on a team*. In CE, a player can be *in a club*. In references to international competition, *team* is standard in BE – the England team in the World Cup. (2) Here, in summary, is an example of the British English usage of *club, side,* and *team.*:- Arsenal, one of the Premiership's most successful *clubs*, fielded a strong *side* for the F.A. Cup Final, several members of which were picked for the England *team* in the World Cup.

team up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ against; with (we ~ed up with them against our common enemy)

teapot *n.* a tempest in a ~ (AE) ("much ado about nothing") (for BE, see **teacup**)

tear I /tiy(r)/ *n.* ["teardrop"] 1. to burst into ~s 2. to shed a ~ 3. to weep (bitter) ~s 4. to choke back, hold back; dry one's ~s 5. bitter ~s 6. ~s flowed, ran, rolled, streamed down their cheeks 7. ~s welled up in my eyes 8. (misc.) crocodile ("false") ~s; to be in ~s over smt.; eyes fill with ~s; bored to ~s; a flood of ~s; ~s of joy; ~s of gratitude; a teardrop; a ~ duct; the sad song reduced me to ~s (see also *brim with tears* at **brim**)

tear II /tey(r)/ *n.* ["rip"] 1. to make a ~ 2. to mend a ~ 3. (misc.) to save wear and ~ (on)

tear III *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at (she tore at her shackles) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ from, out of (she tore several pages out of the book) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to attack verbally") (he tore into his opponent) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ into, to (she tore the paper into/to pieces; to ~ an argument to shreds) 5. (d; tr.) to ~ off (he tore a button off the coat) 6. (D; tr.) to ~ on (she tore her blouse on a nail) 7. (N) she tore the envelope open; she tore herself free of her shackles 8. (s) she tore free of her shackles

tear away *v.* (D; refl., tr.) to ~ from (she couldn't ~ herself away from the book)

tear gas *n.* to use ~ (on)

tease I *n.* ["person who teases"] a terrible ~

tease II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ about (they ~d her about her new hairdo) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ by (they ~d her by joking about her new hairdo) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ into (they ~d her into changing her hairdo) 4. (D; tr.) to ~with (they ~d her with jokes about her new hairdo) 5. (misc.) don't take offense: (I was) only teasing!

teaspoon *n.* a heaping (AE), heaped (BE); level ~

teatime *n.* 1. at ~ 2. past ~

technicality *n.* 1. a legal ~ 2. on a ~ (we lost the case on a ~)

technician *n.* a dental; lab, laboratory; medical; radar; television, TV ~

Technicolor *n.* (T) in (glorious) ~

technique *n.* 1. to acquire; develop, devise, work out; perfect a ~ 2. to apply a ~ 3. an acting; dance ~ 4. a diagnostic ~ 5. relaxation ~s 6. a ~ allows; encourages (our new relaxation ~s encourage you to become who you were meant to be!) 7. a ~ for (they worked out a ~ for analyzing the data) 8. a ~ to + inf. (they worked out a ~ to analyze the data)

technology *n.* 1. to create, develop (a) ~ 2. to apply, employ, use ~ 3. to export, transfer ~ (to developing countries) 4. computer; information ~ 5. high ~ (also *high tech*) 6. advanced, latest, modern, state-of-the-art ~ 7. a ~ allows, enables (our new ~ enables you to generate renewable energy!) 8. a ~ for (they developed a ~ for analyzing the data) 9. a ~ to + inf. (they developed a ~ to analyze the data)

teed off *adj.* (colloq.) (AE) ["angry"] ~ about, at

teem *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ in; with (fish were ~ing in the river = the river was ~ing with fish)

teens *n.* 1. to pass; reach one's ~ 2. early; late; mid-~ 3. during one's ~ (things that are all right during your ~ may not seem all right once you have passed your ~!) 4. in one's ~ (they are still in their ~)

teeter *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on the edge of a cliff)

teeth see **tooth**

telegram *n.* 1. to send a ~ 2. to get, receive a ~ 3. a ~ from; to (a ~ from London to Paris)

telegraph I *n.* by ~ (the news was sent by ~)

telegraph II *v.* 1. (A) they ~ed the information to us; or: they ~ed us the information 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ about (they ~ed (us) about the meeting) 3. (d; intr.) ("to request by telegraphing") to ~ for (she ~d home for some money) 4. (H; no passive) we ~ed them to return home immediately 5. (L; may have an object) she ~ed (us) that the manuscript had been received 6. (Q; may have an object) they ~ed (us) where to meet

telepathy *n.* mental ~

telephone I *n.* 1. to hook up, install a ~ 2. to answer, pick up; hang up; put down; slam down the ~ 3. to tap a ~ 4. to disconnect a ~ 5. a car; cellular; cordless; dial; mobile (esp. BE); pay, public ~ 6. a ~ rings; is busy, is engaged (BE) 7. by ~; on, over (esp. AE) the ~ (she spoke to him by ~; I enjoyed our chat on/over the ~; to speak on/over the ~; he is always on the ~) 8. (BE) on the ~ ("connected to the telephone system") 9. (misc.) to be wanted on the ~; to call smb. on the ~; to call smb. to the ~ (see also **phone I**)

telephone II *v.* 1. (B) they ~d the information to us 2. (D; tr.) to ~ about (they ~d me about the meeting) 3. (H; no passive) we ~d them to return home immediately 4. (L; may have an object) she ~d (us) that the manuscript had been received 5. (Q; may have an object) they ~d (us) where to meet

telephone call *n.* see **call I** *n.* 13–22

telephone directory, telephone book *n.* to be in the ~

telephone receiver *n.* see **receiver** 1–2

telescope I *n.* 1. to focus, train a ~ on 2. a reflecting; refracting ~ 3. through a ~ 4. (misc.) the wrong end of a ~ (as weird as seeing smt. through the wrong end of a ~)

telescope II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ a syllabus into a brief outline)

televised *adj.* 1. nationally ~ 2. ~ live (~ live from Yankee Stadium!)

television *n.* 1. to put on, switch on; turn on the ~ 2. to watch ~ (I watched scenes of violence on ~) 3. to switch off, turn off the ~ 4. to turn down; turn up the ~ 5. black-and-white; color ~ 6. breakfast; cable; closed-circuit; commercial; educational; free-view (esp. BE); local; national; pay; peak-time (BE), peak-viewing-time (BE), prime-time (esp. AE); public (esp. AE); satellite ~ 7. ~ broadcasts, shows (~ broadcasts showed scenes of violence) 8. on ~ (I saw scenes of violence on ~) 9. (misc.) she is, works in ~

television set *n.* 1. to plug in a ~ 2. to put on, switch on, turn on a ~ 3. to switch off, turn off a ~ 4. to unplug a ~ 5. to turn down; turn up a ~ 6. a black-and-white; color ~ 7. a digital ~

tell *v.* 1. (A; usu. without *to*) ("to relate") she told the news to everyone concerned; or: she told everyone the news; he told me his name; she told them a story; ~ me the truth 2. (D; intr.) ("to be certain") to ~ about (you can never ~ about people like that) 3. (d; intr., tr.) ("to inform") to ~ about, of (he didn't want to ~ about the incident; ~ me about the game; she told everyone of her success) 4. (BE; formal) (d; intr.) to ~ against ("to count against") (their past misdemeanors will ~ against them) 5. (d; tr.) ("to ascertain") to ~ from (can you ~ anything from a quick examination?) 6. (d; tr.) to ~ from ("to differentiate") (can you ~ one twin from the other?) 7. (colloq.) (d; intr., tr.) to ~ of (BE), on ("to inform on") (he told on her when the teacher returned; I'm going to ~ my father on you) 8. (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to affect") (the strain was beginning to ~ on her) 9. (H) ("to order") she told me to leave 10. (L; must have an object) ("to inform") she told me that I should leave 11. (Q; must have an object) ("to inform") ~ me how to get there 12. (Q) ("to ascertain") can you ~ from a quick examination where his injuries are?; you can never ~ whether people like that are lying 13. (misc.) I told you so!; pray ~ (old-fashioned or humorous) (and who might you be, pray ~?) (see also tell the difference at **difference**; **telling**; *tell (the) time* at **time**; **told**)

tell apart *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (can you ~ one twin apart from the other? = can you ~ the twins apart from each other?)

teller *n.* (AE) a bank ~ (BE has *cashier*)

telling *n.* ["certainty, knowing"] 1. there's no ~ (what they'll do) ["act of narrating"] 2. in the ~ (the story changed in the ~)

temerity *n.* the ~ to + inf. (he had the ~ to file a grievance)

temper I *n.* 1. to control, curb, keep one's ~ 2. to lose one's ~ 3. a bad, explosive, foul, hot, nasty, quick, uncontrollable, ungovernable, violent ~ (he has a very bad ~ = he's very bad-tempered) 4. a calm, even, mild ~ 5. ~s cool down; flare (up); fray 6. a display, fit, outburst of ~ (she said that in a fit of ~) 7. (misc.) she was in quite a (bad) ~ this morning; he flew into a ~

temper II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ justice with mercy)

temperament *n.* 1. to have a certain ~ (she has a nervous ~) 2. an artistic; poetic ~ 3. a calm, even, mild, quiet ~ 4. an excitable; fiery; nervous ~ 5. by ~ (very excitable by ~)

temperance *n.* ~ in

temperate *adj.* ~ in

temperature *n.* ["degree of heat or cold"] 1. to adjust, control the ~ 2. to take smb.'s ~ (also fig.) (a survey that tried to take the ~ of the American consumer) 3. a high; low; normal ~ 4. (smb.'s) body ~ 5. room ~ (at room ~) 6. the average; surface ~ 7. a ~ drops, falls; goes down 8. a ~ goes up, rises 9. a ~ remains steady 10. at a (certain) ~ (water boils at a certain ~) 11. an increase, rise in ~ 12. a decrease, drop in ~ ["excess over normal body heat, fever"] 13. to develop, have, run a ~ 14. a high; slight ~ 15. a ~ falls; rises; subsides 16. a ~ of (a ~ of 39 degrees)

tempo *n.* 1. to increase, step up the ~ 2. to slow down the ~ 3. a fast; slow ~ 4. the ~ increases, speeds up; slackens, slows down

tempt *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into doing smt.) 2. (H) to ~ smb. to do smt. (See also *tempt fate* at **fate**)

temptation *n.* 1. to overcome, resist ~ ("I can resist everything except ~" – Oscar Wilde, *Lady Windermere's Fan*, 1891) 2. to be exposed to, face, feel ~ 3. to succumb to ~ 4. to place, put ~ in smb.'s way 5. irresistible, strong ~ 6. a ~ to + inf. (she resisted the ~ to answer back)

tempted *adj.* ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to answer back)

tempting *adj.* ~ to + inf. (she felt it would be ~ to answer back)

tenacity *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 2. to have ~ 3. bulldog; great; sheer ~ (to demonstrate great ~) 4. the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to finish the job) 5. by ~ (she finished the job by sheer ~)

tend *v.* 1. (AE) (d; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to one's own business) (CE has *attend to*) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ towards (she ~s towards exaggeration) 3. (E) she ~s to exaggerate

tendency *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show a ~ 2. a growing; marked, pronounced; mounting; natural; strong; universal; worrying ~ 3. artistic; homicidal; suicidal; vicious ~cies (for years he has displayed suicidal ~cies) 4. a ~ among, on the part of (there is a marked ~ towards exaggeration among such people) 5. a ~ towards (she has a ~ towards exaggeration) 6. a ~ to + inf. (she has a ~ to exaggerate)

tender I *adj.* ~ to, towards, with (see also *tender loving care* at **care I** *n.*)

tender II *n.* ["offer, bid"] (esp. BE) 1. to make, put in, send in, submit a ~ 2. to invite ~s; put out to ~ (the government has invited ~s for the construction of the new motorway = the government has put the construction of the new motorway out to ~) 3. to accept; reject, turn down a ~ 4. to lose; win a ~ 5. a sealed ~ 6. the highest; lowest ~ 7. a ~ for 8. a ~ to + inf. (our company won the ~ to construct the new motorway) ["currency"] 9. legal ~

tender III *v.* 1. (B) ("to offer") she ~ed her resignation to the government 2. (BE) (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to bid on") (to ~ for the construction of a new motorway) 3. (BE) (E) to ~ to construct the new motorway

tenderness *n.* ["kindness, care"] 1. to show ~ 2. ~ towards

tendon *n.* 1. to pull a ~ 2. smb.'s/the Achilles ~

tenet *n.* 1. a basic, fundamental ~ 2. a ~ that + clause (our basic ~ is that all people are equal) 3. (misc.) to embrace the ~s of a new philosophy

tennis *n.* 1. to play ~ 2. court (AE), real (BE); lawn; paddle; table ~ 3. (misc.) a ~ match; a ~ player; the game of ~; a game of ~ (let's play a game of ~; she won the first game and went on to win the set and the match) (see also *tennis ball* at **ball I** *n.*; *tennis court* at **court**; *tennis racket* at **racket II** *n.*; *tennis shoes* at **shoes**)

tenor *n.* 1. to sing ~ 2. a high; lyric ~

tenpins *n.* (AE) to play ~

tense I *adj.* 1. ~ about 2. ~ with (~ with anxiety about the future)

tense II *n.* (grammar) 1. the continuous, progressive; future; future perfect; past; past perfect, pluperfect; present ~ 2. in a certain ~ (is that verb phrase in the simple present ~ or in the present continuous ~?)

tension *n.* ["strained relations"] ["strain"] 1. to cause, create ~ 2. to exacerbate, heighten, increase ~ 3. to alleviate, ease, lessen, reduce, relieve ~ (to alleviate/ease ~ between the adversaries) 4. acute; growing, mounting ~ 5. arterial; nervous; premenstrual ~ (PMT) (see also *tension headache* at **headache**) 6. international; racial ~ 7. ~ builds up, increases, mounts, rises 8. ~ decreases, eases, subsides 9. ~ between 10. under ~ 11. (misc.) a cause, source of ~ (political differences were a source of ~ between them) ["tautness"] 12. fan-belt ~ ["voltage"] 13. high; low ~

tent *n.* 1. to erect, pitch, put up a ~ 2. to dismantle, take down a ~ 3. a circus; pup; pyramidal; wall ~ 4. a croup; oxygen ~ 5. in a ~ (see also *tent pole* at **pole I** *n.*)

tenterhooks *n.* on ~ ("in suspense")

tenure *n.* ["permanence of employment as a teacher"] 1. to give, grant; deny ~ (a professor who has been granted ~ is a ~d professor) 2. to acquire, get, receive ~ 3. academic ~ 4. (misc.) security of ~ (after several years he was given security of ~ at the university)

term I *n.* ["expression, word"] 1. an abstract; concrete, specific; general ~ 2. a clear; comprehensible ~ 3. an incomprehensible; vague ~ (the lecturer used an incomprehensible ~ in making her point) 4. a cover-term, generic, umbrella; general; legal; medical; technical ~ (see also **word I** *n.*) ["period of time served"] 5. to serve a ~ (in office) 6. an unexpired ~ 7. a ~ expires, runs out 8. a jail, prison ~ ["division of a school year"] 9. the autumn (BE), fall (AE); school; spring; summer ~ 10. at the end ¬of a/of (BE)¬ ~ ["time at which a normal pregnancy terminates"] 11. to have a baby at ~ after a full-term pregnancy (see also **terms**)

term II *v.* (formal) (rare) (N; used with a noun or adjective) ("to call") they ~ed the compromise acceptable; by what right does he ~ himself an artist?

terminal *n.* ["point on an electric circuit"] 1. a negative; positive ~ ["device by which information enters or leaves a computer"] 2. a computer ~; Visual Display Terminal = VDT (AE; CE has *Visual Display Unit* = VDU) ["passenger, freight station"] 3. an airline; bus, coach (BE); freight; rail; shipping; trucking ~ 4. at a ~ (let's meet at the bus ~)

terminate *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ in (their efforts ~ed in success) 2. (BE) (P; intr., tr.) this train stops at various stations and ~s here

termination *n.* ["cessation of employment"] 1. voluntary ~ ["abortion"] 2. to have; request; seek a ~

terminology *n.* 1. to codify, create, establish, standardize; use (a) ~ 2. basic; legal; scientific; technical ~ 3. in a certain ~ (a pregnant woman who sought what in medical ~ would be called a termination)

terminus *n.* (esp. BE) 1. a bus, coach; main-line; rail ~ 2. at; in a ~

termites *n.* a colony of ~

terms *n.* ["expressions, words"] 1. absolute; general; relative ~ 2. bold; flattering; glowing ~ (she described him in glowing ~) 3. in ~ (to speak in general ~; in the strongest possible ~; in no uncertain ~; a contradiction in ~) ["conditions, provisions"] 4. to dictate; set; specify, stipulate (the) ~ 5. to state the ~ 6. easy; favorable ~ 7. surrender ~ (to stipulate surrender ~ to an enemy) 8. by the ~ (of an agreement) 9. on certain ~ (on one's own ~; on our ~) 10. under (the) ~ of the agreement ["acceptance"] ["agreement"] 11. to come to ~ with smb. ["relationship"] ["footing"] 12. equal, even; unequal ~ 13. familiar, intimate; speaking ~ 14. friendly, good; unfriendly ~ 15. on certain ~ (with) (to be on speaking ~ with smb.; to be on first-name/Christian-name ~ with smb.; to negotiate with smb. on equal ~; they are not on good ~ with each other) [“aspects”] 16. in certain ~ (in economic ~ [= economically (speaking)], that country is a superpower; in ~ of its foreign trade [= as regards its foreign trade], that country is a serious competitor) 17. (misc.) ~ of reference; this offer is subject to the usual ~ and conditions USAGE NOTE: The phrase *in terms of* is used widely, perhaps too widely, to link constructions in English: (1) This dictionary has done well in terms of sales. Alternatives include: (2) This dictionary has done well in sales terms; (3) this dictionary has done well saleswise; (4) this dictionary has done well with respect to sales; (5) this dictionary has done well in respect of sales (esp. BE). People who dislike the original example will also dislike the second and esp. the third. Such people will not object to examples four and five, but may well ask: Why not just say “This dictionary has sold well”?

terrace *n.* from; on a ~ (see also *terrace(d) house* at **house**)

terraces *n.* (BE) (as in football stadiums) from; on the ~ (cheers from the ~)

terrain *n.* 1. harsh, rough, rugged; hilly; mountainous; rocky; swampy ~ 2. across ~ (we wondered whether we could get across such rugged ~)

terrible *adj.* 1. really, simply ~ 1. ~ at (she is ~ at bridge) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was really ~ to work there = it was really ~ working there = working there was really ~; it was ~ of them to do that) 3. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that she lost her wallet; I feel ~ that you cannot accept our invitation)

terrified *adj.* 1. ~ at, by, of 2. ~ to + inf. (we are ~ to think that there might be another earthquake) 3. ~ that + clause (we are ~ that there might be another earthquake)

terrify *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (she was ~fied into handing over the keys) 2. (R) it ~fied me to contemplate the consequences of your actions; it ~fies us that there might be another earthquake

terrifying *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to watch that movie = it was ~ watching that movie = watching that movie was ~; it’s ~ to think that there might be another earthquake) 2. ~ that + clause (it’s ~ that there might be another earthquake)

territory *n.* 1. to annex; occupy ~ 2. to cede ~ 3. a neutral; trust ~ 4. (an) occupied; unoccupied ~ 5. unexplored ~ 6. (misc.) to reconnoiter enemy ~

terror *n.* 1. to employ, engage in, resort to; unleash ~ 2. to arouse, inspire; sow ~; to strike ~ into (to strike ~ into smb.’s heart) 3. to feel; show ~ 4. to overcome ~ (he finally overcame his ~ of snakes) 5. absolute, blind, mortal, sheer, stark ~ 6. (colloq.) a holy ~ 7. in ~ (to live in ~ of smt.) 8. (misc.) a campaign, reign of ~; a shriek of ~

terrorism *n.* 1. to combat, fight ~ 2. indiscriminate; international; state; urban ~ 3. an act; campaign of ~ 4. see **terror** 1

terrorist *n.* an armed; international; urban ~ (see also *terrorist attack* at **attack I** *n.*; *terrorist threat* at **threat**)

terrorize *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into

test I *n.* [“examination, set of questions”] 1. to administer, conduct, give a ~ 2. to draw up, make up, prepare, set (BE) a ~ 3. to sit (for) (BE), take a ~ 4. to fail, flunk (colloq.; esp. AE) a ~ 5. to pass a ~ 6. a demanding, difficult ~ 7. an easy ~ 8. an achievement; aptitude; general-knowledge; intelligence, IQ ~ 9. a placement; proficiency ~ 10. a cloze; completion; essay, essay-type; multiple-choice; objective; oral; true-and-false, true-false; unannounced; written ~ 11. a driving ~ 12. a breath ~ (to have/undergo a breath ~ and fail or pass it) 13. a lie-detector, polygraph ~ (to have/undergo a lie-detector ~ and fail or pass it) (see also **lie-detector test**; **polygraph test**) 14. a competency; means ~ 15. a ~ in, of, on (a ~ in mathematics; a ~ on new material) [“ordeal, trial”] 16. an acid, demanding, exacting, litmus, rigorous, severe ~ 17. an endurance ~ [“experiment, trial”] [“examination”] 18. to carry out, conduct, do, perform, run a ~ 19. to have, undergo a ~ (to undergo a number/series of blood ~s) 20. exhaustive, extensive, thorough ~s 21. a breathing; diagnostic; DNA; drug; PAP; patch; saliva; skin; scratch; tuberculin ~ (see also **blood test**) 22. a personality; psychological ~ 23. a laboratory; nuclear ~ 24. a road ~ 25. a ~ for (to do a skin ~ for tuberculosis) 26. a ~ on (they conducted a series of ~s on me at the health center) 27. (misc.) to stand the ~ of time; the ~ turned out (to be) negative/positive, the ~ was negative/positive; to put smb. to the ~ (see also *test case* at **case I** *n.*; **screen test**) USAGE NOTE: In AE, a *road test* is ambiguous: it can test a vehicle or a driver. In BE, a *road test* tests the vehicle only. In CE, a *test drive* tests the vehicle, and a *driving test* tests the driver.

test II *v.* 1. to ~ carefully, thoroughly 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ for excessive air pollution; to ~ the urine for sugar; to ~ a car for defects) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ in, on (we ~ed them ¬in English/on their knowledge of English¬; I was ~ed on irregular verbs) 3. (P; intr.) (esp. AE) some of our students ~ed in the top percentile 4. (esp. AE) (s) some students ~ high, others low; to ~ negative/positive for a disease (see also **tested**)

testament *n.* 1. the New; Old Testament 2. a ~ to (her Nobel Prize is a lasting/fitting ~ to her perseverance) 3. (misc.) smb.’s last will and ~

tested *adj.* 1. sorely ~ 2. (misc.) tried and ~

test flight *n.* to conduct a ~

testicle *n.* an undescended ~

testify *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about (to ~ about a case) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ against; for, on behalf of (to ~ for the plaintiff) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ to (the results ~ to the quality of their work) 4. (L) she ~fied (to the court) that she had not seen the accident 5. (misc.) to ~ under oath (she ~fied under oath that the driver had been drunk)

testimonial *n.* 1. to give, offer, provide a ~ 2. an eloquent ~ 3. a ~ to (her Nobel Prize provides an eloquent ~ to her perseverance)

testimony *n.* 1. to give, offer ~ (under oath) 2. to cite ~ 3. to recant, repudiate, retract (one's) ~ 4. to contradict; discount; refute (smb.'s) ~ 5. reliable ~ 6. false, perjured; unreliable ~ 7. expert ~ 8. ~ about 9. ~ against (she gave ~ against the defendant) 10. ~ for, on behalf of (she gave ~ for the plaintiff) 11. (a) ~ to (her Nobel Prize is a real ~ to her perseverance) 12. ~ that + clause (nobody could refute her ~, given under oath, that the driver had been drunk)

testing *n.* 1. proficiency ~ 2. drug; mandatory; voluntary ~

tetanus *n.* to develop ~

tether *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (the horse was ~ed to the hitching-post; the horses were ~ed to each other [= the horses were ~ed together])

text *n.* 1. to set a ~ (in type); to input a ~ (into a computer); to print a ~; to print out a ~ 2. to edit; copy-edit (esp. AE), sub-edit (esp. BE); proof-read a ~ 3. to annotate a ~ 4. an annotated; complete, full; draft; unexpurgated ~ 5. a machine-readable ~ 6. to stray from the ~ (as of a prepared speech) 7. a piece; section of ~ 8. in a ~

textbook *n.* 1. a basic, introductory; college; school; standard ~ 2. a ~ of, on (a ~ on advanced grammar = an advanced-grammar ~) 3. in a ~

texture *n.* delicate, fine; rough; smooth ~

thank *v.* 1. to ~ profusely; sincerely 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she ~ed me profusely for my help) 3. (H; no passive) I'll ~ you to make less noise in the future! 4. (L; must have an object) we can ~ you that we got there on time = we have you to ~ that we got there on time 5. (misc.) ~ you very much! (see also *thank-you letter* at **letter**; Usage Note at **thanks**)

thankful *adj.* 1. ~ for; to (we were ~ to them for still being alive) 2. ~ to + inf. (we were ~ to be still alive) 3. ~ that + clause (we were ~ (to them) that we were still alive)

thanks *n.* 1. to express; give one's ~; to say ~ 2. to accept smb.'s ~ 3. one's heartfelt, sincere, warm ~ 4. ~ for; to (special ~ are due to you for all your help!) 5. (misc.) many ~; ~ ¬a lot/a million¬; "you nearly ruined my work! ~ ¬a lot/a bunch!¬" (sardonic); I finished the whole job on time, no ~ to you; we completed the work on time, ~ to ¬you/your help¬; we owe her a vote of ~ USAGE NOTE: The standard responses to "Thanks" or "Thank you" include "You're welcome," "Don't mention it," "Not at all," "No problem." "You're welcome" is nowadays neutral CE. "No problem" is colloq. CE. "Don't mention it" and "Not at all" are both BE and somewhat old-fashioned.

that *pronoun* 1. at ~ ("in addition") (she was a thief and a clever one at ~) 2. (misc.) take ~! ("I'm going to punch you!")

thaw *n.* 1. the spring ~ 2. a ~ sets in (also fig.) 3. during a ~

theater, theatre *n.* ["building in which plays are performed or (esp. AE) films shown"] 1. to crowd, jam, pack a ~ 2. an art; dinner (esp. AE); movie (AE; BE has *cinema*); open-air; repertory ~ 3. at; in the ~ (we were at the ~ last night; what's on at the ~ tonight?; is there a restaurant at/in the ~?) ["theatrical profession or type of play"] 4. the legitimate ~ (old-fashioned or humorous) 5. musical; physical ~ 6. the ~ of the absurd; the ~ of cruelty; ~ in the round 7. in; into the ~ (she was well thought of in the ~, which she went into after drama school) ["operating room in a hospital"] (BE) 8. an operating ~ 9. in ~ (the patient is still in ~)

theft *n.* 1. to commit (a) ~ 2. petty ~ 3. a ~ from (the daring ~ of a famous painting from a museum)

theme *n.* 1. a basic; central, dominant, main; common; consistent; familiar; underlying ~ 2. a contemporary ~ 3. a recurrent, recurring ~ 4. a ~ for (a ~ for discussion) 5. on a ~ (a seminar on the ~ of poverty) (see also *variation on a theme* at **variation**)

then *adv.*, *n.* 1. just ~ 2. before; by ~ 3. from ~ on 4. since ~ 5. until, up to ~

theorem *n.* 1. to deduce; formulate a ~ 2. to prove; test a ~ 3. to disprove a ~ 4. the binomial ~

theorize *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about (the police ~d about how the burglar had entered) 2. (L) the police ~d that the burglar had entered through a window

theory *n.* 1. to construct, formulate a ~ 2. to advance, advocate, present, propose, put forth, set forth, suggest a ~ 3. to develop; test a ~ 4. to confirma ~ 5. to debunk, discredit, disprove, explode, refute a ~ 6. to challenge a ~ 7. a pet ~ 8. an economic; political ~ 9. critical; game; information; literary; number; quantum; set; scientific ~ (see also *systems theory* at **system**) 10. the big-bang; steady-state ~ 11. the germ ~ (of disease) 12. a ~ develops, evolves 13. a ~ holds (up) 14. a ~ about (a ~ about the origin of the universe) 15. a ~ that + clause (she has a ~ that drinking milk prevents colds) 16. in ~ (in ~ their plan makes sense but in practice it hasn't worked) 17. on a ~ (they proceeded on the ~ that the supplies would arrive on time) 18. (misc.) the ~ of evolution; the ~ of relativity; to combine ~ and practice

therapist *n.* a family; group; occupational; physical ~ (esp. AE), physiotherapist (esp. BE); psychotherapist; speech ~

therapy *n.* 1. to employ, use ~ (on, with) 2. to get, have; undergo ~ 3. art; dance; music ~ (to employ/use music ~) 4. massage; occupational; recreational; speech ~ (to get speech ~; to employ/use recreational ~); physical ~ (esp. AE), physiotherapy (esp. BE) 5. aversion; electro-convulsive (BE), electro-shock (AE); shock ~ (to get/receive/undergo shock ~; to administer/employ/use electro-shock ~; will the economic crisis be a form of shock ~ to our belief systems ?) 6. behavior(al) ; cognitive ; family ; group ; individual, one-on-one ~ ; psychotherapy 7. chemotherapy ; hormone replacement therapy (HRT) ; inhalation ; radiation, X-ray ~ (to get/have/undergo radiation ~) 8. ~ for 9. in ~ (she was in ~ for emotional problems) (see also *therapy group* at **group I** *n.* ; *therapy session* at **session**)

there *adv.* 1. from, (up) to ~ 2. down ; over ; up ~ 3. from ~ on

thermometer *n.* 1. to read a ~ (to read a clinical ; meat ; oral ; oven ; rectal ~) 2. a ~ reads (I knew I was ill because the ~ read 40 degrees) 3. a ~ shows a temperature (I knew I was ill because the ~ showed a temperature of 40 degrees)

thermostat *n.* 1. to adjust, set ; turn down ; turn up a ~ 2. to calibrate a ~

thesis *n.* ["research paper"] 1. to complete ; submit ; write a ~ (about, on) 2. a doctoral, D.Phil. (GB) ; Ph.D. ; graduate ; master's ~ ["proposition, hypothesis"] 3. to advance, formulate, propose, put forth/forward a ~ 4. to confirm, vindicate ; disconfirm ; support ; test a ~ 5. to challenge ; refute ; reject a ~ 6. smb.'s main, major ~ 7. a ~ about, on (she advanced a ~ about the spread of the disease) 8. a ~ that + clause (she advanced the ~ that the disease was spread by rodents) (see the Usage Note for **dissertation**)

thick I *adj.* 1. (colloq.) (esp. BE) ~ with (they are ~ with each other) 2. (misc.) as ~ as thieves ("very closely allied") ; to lay it on ~ ("to exaggerate")

thick II *n.* ["most intense part"] in the ~ (of the battle)

thick and thin *n.* ["all difficulties"] through ~ (to remain friends through ~)

thief *n.* 1. a car ; jewel ~ 2. a common, petty ; sneak ~ 3. a ~ robs ; steals 4. a band, gang of thieves (a gang of thieves stole a famous painting from a museum)

thing *n.* ["deed"]["event"] 1. to do a ~ (she did a nice ~ when she offered to help ; to do great ~s ; *Do the Right Thing* – Spike Lee, film, 1989 ; "It is a far, far better ~ that I do, than I have ever done" – Charles Dickens, 1812–70, *A Tale of Two Cities*) 2. a good ; great ; nice ~ ("the tyrant has been overthrown !" "and a good ~, too !") 3. a funny ; strange ~ 4. a bad ; mean ; nasty ; terrible ~ 5. a big ; small ~ 6. a difficult ; easy ~ 7. a sensible ; stupid ~ 8. the decent, right ; wrong ~ 9. a ~ happens ; ~s happen (a strange ~ happened this morning ; *When Bad Things Happen to Good People* – Rabbi Harold S. Kushner, 1981) 10. a ~ to + inf. (it was an easy ~ to do ; it was the wrong ~ to do ; there are still lots of ~s ¬to do/to be done¬) ["object"] 11. to use a ~ for (don't use this ~ for removing paint) ["facts, details"] 12. to discuss ; say ~s (about) 13. to get a ~ out of smb. (I couldn't get a ~ out of her) 14. to know a ~ about (he doesn't know a ~ about music ; don't say a ~ to her about it !) ; to know a ~ or two ("to know quite a bit") 15. (misc.) the way ~s stand (see also 25) ["fact, point"] (colloq.) 16. the ~ is that + clause (the ~ ("problem, difficulty") is that I still have a great deal of work to do ; the other ~ is that I really don't want to go) USAGE NOTE : A phrase like "*The thing *is is* that I still have a great deal of work to do" is heard often but is wrong. It is a blend of "The thing/problem *is* that I still have a great deal of work to do" with "What the thing/problem *is is* that I still have a great deal of work to do." ["article of clothing"] 17. not to have a ~ to wear (I don't have a ~ to wear) 18. to put on ; take off one's ~s ["possessions, effects"] 19. to pack one's ~s ["step"] 20. the first ; last ; next ~ (the next ~ is to submit your application) ["person of a certain type"] 21. a pretty ; poor ~ (a pretty little ~ ; you poor ~ (, you) !) ["thought, idea"] 22. to say the right ~ ["matters"] (used in the plural) 23. to even ~s up 24. to see ~s (as they are) 25. (misc.) all ~s considered ("with everything taken into account") ; ~s don't look good ; ~s are looking up for us ; how do ~s stand ? ; how are ~s ? ; among other ~s ("inter alia") (see also 15) ["utensils"] 26. to clear the (breakfast ; tea) ~s away ["individual"] 27. a living ~ (there wasn't a living ~ in sight) ["fear"]["obsession"] (colloq.) 28. a ~ about (she has a ~ about flying) ["misc."] 29. let's forget the whole ~ ; to be hearing/seeing ~s ("to be imagining things") ; to do one's (own) ~ ("to do what one feels competent or motivated to do") ; any old ~ ("anything at all") ; a sure ~ ("smt. that is certain to succeed") ; of all ~s ("most surprisingly") ; to tell smb. a ~ or two ("to tell smb. frankly what one thinks") ; to put first ~s first (in their proper order of priority) ; the best/greatest ~ since white bread (AE) = the best/greatest ~ since sliced bread (BE) (see also *let things take their natural course* at **course I** *n.* ; *the shape of things to come* at **come** ; *all other things being equal* at **equal I** *adj.* ; Usage Note at **stuff I** *n.*)

think I *n.* (colloq.) (BE) 1. to have a ~ about 2. a long hard ~

think II *v.* 1. to ~ aloud ; clearly ; fast ; hard ; laterally, outside the box (I thought (long and) hard and finally remembered the name) 2. (D ; intr.) ("to reflect") to ~ about, of (I was ~ing about you ; I thought about you/your working out there in the hot sun ; "kiss my wife ? don't even ~ about it !" ; to ~ of the past) 3. (d ; intr.) ("to be concerned") to ~ about, of (I was only ~ing of your welfare when I declined the offer) 4. (d ; intr.) to ~ of ("to have an opinion of") (to ~ badly, ill ; highly, well of) 5. (d ; intr.) to ~ of ("to consider ; to intend") (she never thought of telephoning ; to ~ of resigning) 6. (E) ("to remember") she never thought to call 7. (L) ("to anticipate") we thought (that) it would rain 8. (L) ("to believe") I ~ it's raining ; I ~ (that) he is ¬a fool/foolish¬ 9. (M ; used typically in the passive) ("to consider") he's generally thought to be a fool ; she is thought to be irreplaceable 10.

(N) (“to consider”) many people ~ him ¬a fool/foolish¬; many people ~ her irreplaceable 11. (Q) I can’t ~ where it could be 12. (misc.) to ~ nothing of walking five miles every morning; I thought to myself that it would be nice to have some hot soup; he doesn’t ~ of himself as a politician; to ~ better of doing smt. (“to change one’s mind about doing smt.”); to ~ on one’s feet (“to decide or respond quickly”); I dread/hate to ~ that smt. bad will happen but I’m inclined to ~ it might!; I ~ so; I don’t ~ so, I ~ not

think ahead *v.* (D; intr.) (“to direct one’s thoughts ahead”) to ~ to (to ~ to the future)

think back *v.* (D; intr.) (“to direct one’s thoughts back”) to ~ on, to (to ~ to the past)

thinker *n.* a clear; deep, profound; great; independent; logical; muddled; original ~

thinking *n.* 1. to do some (serious) ~ 2. clear; good; logical; positive; quick ~ 3. creative; independent; lateral; original ~ 4. critical; deep ~ 5. muddled; wishful ~ 6. a piece of ~ (that was quite a piece of lateral ~ on your part, boss!) 7. the ~ behind (what was the ~ (that lay) behind your decision, boss?) 8. smb.’s ~ on (what is your ~ on this matter, boss?) 9. (misc.) to my way of ~ (“in my opinion”)

thinner *n.* paint ~

third degree *n.* (colloq.) [“brutal, harsh interrogation”] 1. to give smb. the ~ 2. to get the ~

thirst I *n.* 1. to experience ~; more usu. is: to be thirsty 2. to quench, slake, satisfy smb.’s ~ 3. unquenchable; unquenched ~ 4. (to have) a ~ for (a ~ for knowledge) 5. of ~ (to die of ~)

thirst II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ after (formal), for (to ~ for the truth; “Blessed are they which do hunger and ~ after righteousness” – “The Sermon on the Mount,” *The Bible: St. Matthew*) 2. (E) (formal) to ~ to know the truth

thirsty *adj.* ~ for (~ for the truth)

thorn *n.* 1. to remove, take out a ~ (from one’s finger) 2. (misc.) a ~ in smb.’s side (“a source of irritation”)

thorough *adj.* ~ in

thoroughfare *n.* [“road”] (formal) 1. a busy, crowded; main ~ [“through road”] 2. No Thoroughfare (BE)

thought *n.* [“reflection”] [“idea”] 1. to entertain, harbor, have a ~ (to harbor ~s of revenge) 2. to relish a ~ 3. to express, present a ~ 4. to collect, compose, gather; sum up one’s ~s 5. a consoling, happy; intriguing; refreshing ~ 6. a first; fleeting, passing ~ (my first ~ was to run away but on second ~ I decided to stay) (see also **second thought**) 7. a disconcerting, upsetting; evil; sobering; ugly ~ 8. the ~ ¬occurred to me/struck me¬ that… 9. a ~ about, on (what are your ~s on this matter?) 10. a ~ that + clause (the ~ that we would soon reach home gave us courage) 11. at a ~ (my mind boggles at the very ~ (of it)) 12. in smb.’s ~s (she was always in my ~s (‘my ~s are always with her’)) 13. (misc.) the ~ has crossed my mind that…; to read smb.’s ~s; to spare a ~ for; at a time like this my ~s turn to you; a train of ~; in ~, word, and deed; smb.’s innermost, inmost ~s [“consideration”] 14. to give ~ to; put a lot of ~ into (a lot of ~ has gone into this project but we may well need to put even more ~ into it) 15. to abandon, give up all ~(s) (of doing smt.) 16. (misc.) with no ~ for one’s own safety; don’t give it a ~; perish the ~! (“one should not even consider the possibility!”) [“ideas, principles”] 17. liberal; logical; modern ~ 18. a school of ~ [“opinion”] 19. to express a ~ 20. a ~ about, on 21. a ~ that + clause (she expressed her ~ that the case should be settled without litigation) [“concentration”] 22. (deep) in ~ [“intention”] 23. to have no ~ (of doing smt.)

thoughtful *adj.* 1. ~ about 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to do that)

thoughtless *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to make noise)

thousand *n.* by the ~s, in the ~s, in their (BE) ~s (the crowd streamed into the stadium by the ~s)

thrall *n.* (formal) [“slavery”] in ~ to

thrash *v.* 1. to ~ soundly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smb. with a cane) 3. (misc.) to ~ from side to side; to ~ about/around in one’s sleep; to ~ people within an inch of their lives

thrashing *n.* 1. to get a ~ 2. to give smb. a ~ 3. a good, sound ~ (he got a good ~ for his misbehavior) 4. (misc.) to deserve a good ~

thread I *n.* [“fiber, cord”] 1. to make, spin; wind ~ 2. coarse; fine; heavy; thin ~ 3. cotton; lisle; nylon; polyester; rayon; silk ~ 4. a length, piece; reel (BE), spool (AE) of ~ 5. in ~ (there’s a tangle in the ~) 6. (misc.) the ~ gets tangled; a loose ~; to hang by a ~ (“to be very uncertain”) [“theme”] [“train of thought”] 7. to follow; lose the ~ (of an argument) 8. the common ~ (of the stories) 9. a tenuous ~ 10. (misc.) a common ~ runs through all of her stories; to pull all the loose ~s of the story together

thread II *v.* (C) ~ a needle for me; or: ~ me a needle

threat *n.* 1. to issue, make, utter; mutter a ~ 2. to carry out, fulfill; withdraw a ~ 3. to be, constitute, pose, represent a ~ 4. to defy; ignore a ~ 5. to give in to a ~ 6. a constant; dire, grave, serious; direct; explicit; imminent ~ 7. a covert; empty, idle; implicit; veiled ~ 8. a death; security; suicide; terrorist ~ (their group poses a security ~; they issued a death ~ against the leader of the rival group; they made terrorist ~s before the rally) (see also **bomb threat**) 9. a ~ against, to (to constitute/pose a ~ to the party leadership) 10. a ~ to + inf. (she carried out her ~ to resign) 11. a ~ that + clause (she carried out her ~ that she would resign) 12. under ~ of (under ~ of reprisals from disaffected elements) 13. (misc.) to take a ~ seriously; a constant ~ hung over them

threaten *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smb. with reprisals) (see also *threaten with extinction* at **extinction**) 2. (E) she ~ed to resign

threshold *n.* [″entrance″] 1. (also fig.) to cross a ~ 2. (also fig.) on the ~ (to be on the ~ of a promising career) 3. (med.) a renal ~ [″tolerance″] 4. a boredom; pain ~ 5. a high; low ~ (to have a low pain ~) 6. above; below a ~

thrift *n.* to practice ~

thrifty *adj.* ~ in

thrill I *n.* 1. to give, provide a ~ 2. to experience, feel, get, have a ~ (we got a ~ from riding in your new car) 3. a ~ for smb. (it was a ~ for us to ride in your new car) 4. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ to ride in your new car = it was a ~ riding in your new car) 5. (misc.) a cheap ~; to gamble for the ~ of it ("to gamble for the sheer excitement of gambling")

thrill II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ to (she ~ed to the sound of their voices) 2. (R) it ~ed us to ride in your new car

thrilled *adj.* 1. ~ at; with (we were ~ at the thought of riding in your new car; they were ~ with the gift) 2. ~ to + inf. (we were ~ to ride in your new car) 3. ~ that + clause (we were ~ that we could ride in your new car) 4. (misc.) ~ to bits (esp. BE), to pieces (AE); to death

thrilling *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to ride in your new car) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that we could ride in your new car)

thrive *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on hard work) 2. (misc.) to fail to ~ (despite our best efforts, they failed to ~)

throat *n.* 1. to clear one's ~ 2. to gargle one's ~ (AE) 3. to cut, slash, slit smb.'s ~ 4. a clear ~ 5. an inflamed, red, sore; scratchy; strep ~ (to come down with, get; have a sore/strep ~) 6. by the ~ (the mugger grabbed me by the ~) 7. down smb.'s ~ (the cool water went down her ~) 8. (misc.) to cut one's own ~ ("to ruin oneself"); to jump down smb.'s ~ ("to criticize smb."); to ram smt. down smb.'s ~ ("to impose smt. on smb."); the words stuck in her ~ ("she found it difficult to say them"); to be at each other's ~s ("to be constantly quarreling") (see also *bring a lump to smb.'s throat*; *have a lump in one's throat* at **lump**)

throb *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with excitement)

throes *n.* 1. death ~ 2. in the ~ (in the ~ of a severe economic crisis)

thrombosis *n.* a cerebral; coronary ~

throne *n.* 1. to acceed to, ascend, mount, succeed to a ~ 2. to seize, usurp; topple a ~ 3. to occupy, sit on a ~ 4. to abdicate; give up a ~ 5. to lose one's ~ 6. on a ~ (the old Queen remained on the ~ for many years) 7. (misc.) the power behind the ~ (see also *a pretender to the throne* at **pretender**)

throng *v.* (P; intr.) they all ~ed (a)round the speaker

thronged *adj.* ~ with (the beaches are ~ with people; the speaker was ~ with admirers)

throttle I *n.* 1. to open a ~ 2. at full ~ ("at full speed")

throttle II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ with (he ~d her with a scarf) 2. (misc.) to ~ smb. to death

through *adj.*, *adv.*, *prep.* 1. right, straight ~ (to) (when I dialed, I got right/straight ~; the call went right/straight ~; from spring right/straight ~ to winter) 2. ~ with (after thirty years, he is ~ with teaching – he's had enough!) (see also **come through**; *get through* at **get**; **get through**; *go through* at **go**; **go through**; *look through* at **look II** *v.*; *run through* at **run II** *v.*; *see through* at **see**)

throw I *n.* 1. (basketball) a free ~ (see also **free throw**) 2. (baseball) a wild ~ (see also **stone's throw**)

throw II *v.* 1. to ~ hard; high; straight (she threw the ball hard) 2. (A) she threw the ball to me; or: she threw me the ball 3. (D; tr.) to ~ across, over (to ~ a ball over a fence) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ at (she threw a stone at me) 5. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ into (he threw himself into his work; they threw the ball into the air; the news threw everyone into confusion) 6. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ on (she threw herself on the mercy of the court; she threw the books on(to) the table) (see also *throw light on smt.* at **light II** *n.*) 7. (d; tr.) to ~ out of (they were thrown out of work) 8. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ to (I threw myself to the ground) 9. (P; tr.) she threw the plate against the wall; he threw the tools under the car; he threw himself under a train 10. (misc.) to ~ smb. off balance; he threw himself at her ("he made a maximum effort to win her affections") (see also *throw smt. open* at **open I** *adj.*)

throw away *v.* (D; tr.) ("to squander") to ~ on (he threw away his money on gambling = he threw his money away on gambling)

throwback *n.* [″reversion″] a ~ to (to be a ~ to an earlier state)

throw back *v.* 1. (A) she threw the ball back to me; or: she threw me back the ball 2. see also **throw II** 1–9

throw down *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ on, onto, to (she threw the books down onto the table) 2. see also **throw II** 8, 9

throw up *v.* 1. (B) ("to reproach") (esp. AE) I was late, but she didn't ~ it up to me 2. (D; tr.) ("to toss") to ~ in, into; to (she threw the ball up in the air) (see also **throw II** *v.* 1–5)

thrust I *n.* [″push″] 1. to make a ~ 2. a deep ~ (the enemy made a deep ~ into our lines) 3. a ~ at; into [″main point″] 4. the main, principal ~ (the main ~ of their argument)

thrust II *v.* 1. to ~ deeply 2. (d; tr.) to ~ at (she thrust the money at me) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ into (she thrust the money into my hand) 4. (misc.) to ~ one's way through a crowd

thud *n.* 1. a dull; loud; sickening ~ 2. (misc.) it fell to the ground with a loud ~

thumb I *n.* [″finger″] 1. babies often suck their ~s [″misc.″] 2. under smb.'s ~ ("dominated by smb."); to twiddle one's ~s ("to be idle") (see also *stick out like a sore thumb* at **stick out**)

thumb II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ through (to ~ through a book)

thumbs-down *n.* ["rejection"] (colloq.) to get; give the ~

thumbs-up *n.* ["approval"] (colloq.) to get; give the ~

thunder I *n.* 1. ~ booms, reverberates, roars, rolls, rumbles 2. a clap, crack, crash, peal, roll; rumble of ~ (a deafening clap of ~) 3. (misc.) to steal smb.'s ~ ("to do first what smb. else was going to do")

thunder II *v.* (L; at) he ~ed (at us) that he would never agree = "I shall never agree!" he thundered (at us)

thunderbolt *n.* a ~ struck (a tree)

thunderstruck *adj.* 1. ~ at (~ at the news) 2. ~ to + inf. (they were ~ to learn that the train had already left)

thwart *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ in (we were ~ed in our efforts to help)

tic *n.* a nervous; uncontrollable ~

tick I *n.* (colloq.) (esp. BE) ["credit"] on ~ (to let smb. have smt. on ~)

tick II *n.* (colloq.) (BE) ["moment"] in a ~ (she'll be down in a ~)

tick III *n.* (BE) ["check mark"] to make/put a ~ beside/by the right answer

ticket I *n.* ["document showing that a fare or admission fee has been paid"] 1. to issue a ~ 2. to book, reserve; buy; get a ~ 3. to honor ("accept") a ~ 4. an airplane; bus, coach (BE); platform (BE); rail, train ~ 5. a day-return (BE); one-way (AE), single (BE); return (BE), round-trip (AE) ~ 6. a commutation (AE); season ~ 7. a library (BE; CE has *library card*); meal (AE; BE has *luncheon voucher*) ~ (also fig.) (his rich wife is his meal ~ who gives him everyhting he wants) 8. a pawn ~ 9. a cinema (BE); theater ~ 10. a complimentary, free; valid ~ 11. a ~ for, to (a ~ for a concert; a ~ to a game; a ticket to Birmingham) ["list of candidates"] (pol.) (AE) 12. to split a ~ 13. a dream; split; straight ~ (to vote a split ~) 14. (misc.) who is running on the party ~? ["printed card indicating participation in a game of chance"] 15. a winning ~ (she held the winning ~) 16. a lottery; raffle; sweepstake (BE), sweepstakes (AE) ~ (to buy a whole book of raffle ~s) ["citation for a traffic violation"] 17. to give (smb.); issue, write out a ~ (the police officer wrote out a ~ for illegal parking) 18. to get; pay a ~ 19. a parking; speeding; traffic (AE) ~ 20. a ~ for (she got a ~ for illegal parking) 21. (misc.) to fix a ~ (colloq.) (AE) ("to get a traffic ticket nullified") ["misc."] 22. to write one's own ~ (esp. AE; colloq.) ("to have complete freedom of action")

ticket II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (AE) (she was ~ed for illegal parking)

tickled *adj.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) ["happy"] 1. ~ at (~ at the prospect) 2. ~ to + inf. (they would be ~ to come to the party) 3. ~ that + clause (we're ~ that you'll be at our party) 4. (misc.) ~ pink/silly (AE), ~ to death ("very pleased")

tide *n.* ["rising and falling of the surface of bodies of water"] 1. a daily; ebb; falling; high, spring; flood; low, neap; strong ~ 2. a ~ comes in; ebbs, goes out; is in; is out 3. (misc.) to sail with the ~ ["trend, tendency"] 4. to buck (AE), go/swim against the ~ 5. to go/swim with the ~ 6. to stem; turn the ~ 7. (misc.) the ~ of public opinion is running strongly in our favor

tide over *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ until (this money will ~ us over until next month)

tidings *n.* 1. to bear, bring ~ 2. to receive ~ 3. glad; sad ~

tidy up *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ after smb. (he had to ~ after the children, who wouldn't ~ after themselves)

tie I *n.* ["necktie"] 1. to knot, tie; put on; wear; loosen; tighten a ~ 2. a garish, loud; regimental (GB); school (GB) ~ (see also **bow tie**) ["draw"] (sports) 3. to break a ~ 4. a goalless (esp. BE), scoreless ~ 5. (to end) in a ~ ["match"] (BE) (sports) 6. a cup ~ ["link, bond"] 7. to establish ~s with 8. to cement, strengthen ~s 9. to cut, sever; loosen ~s with 10. close, intimate, strong ~s 11. family ~s 12. ~s between; to, with (~s to other nations) ["support for rails"] (AE) 13. a railroad ~ (BE has *sleeper*) ["misc."] 14. the old school ~ (BE) ("mutual aid of former fellow-students; the old-boy network")

tie II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to fasten") to ~ (a)round (she ~d the cord around the package) 2. (D; tr.) ("to equal the score of") to ~ for (to ~ smb. for the lead) 3. (D; tr.) ("to fasten") to ~ onto, to (they ~d him to a post) 4. (D; intr.) ("to equal the score") to ~ with (our team ~d with them for the lead) 5. (D; tr.) ("to fasten") to ~ with (I ~d the books with a string) 6. (N; used with an adjective) she ~d the rope tight

tied *adj.* ["connected"] ~ to (the raise was ~ to the cost of living)

tie down *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (she was ~d down to her job; I tried unsuccessfully to ~ her down to a date for our next meeting)

tied up *adj.* ["busy"] 1. ~ with (I'm ~ with appointments all week) ["connected"] 2. ~ with (they are ~ with several multinational corporations)

tie-in *n.* (colloq.) ["relation"] a ~ between; with

tiers *n.* ["rows"] in ~

tie-up *n.* ["stoppage"] 1. to cause a ~ 2. a traffic ~ ["link"] 3. a ~ to; with

tie up *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ in (they ~d up their money in bonds = they tied their money up in bonds) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (she ~d up everything into a bundle = she tied everything up into a bundle) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to (she tied the horse up to the fence) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ with (I ~d up the package with string = I tied the package up with string)

tiff *n.* ["quarrel"] 1. to have a ~ with 2. a minor ~

tiger *n.* 1. a Bengal; man-eating; saber-toothed; Siberian ~ 2. ~s growl; roar 3. a young ~ is a cub 4. a female ~ is a tigress 5. (misc.) to fight like a ~ ("to fight very fiercely"); a paper ~ ("one who only seems to pose a threat")

tight *adj.* ["stingy"] (colloq.) 1. ~ with (~ with money) ["misc."] 2. to sit ~ ("to maintain one's position")

tighten up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (the police are ~ing up on illegal parking)

tightrope *n.* to walk a ~ (also fig.) (to walk a ~ between fiscal prudence and the increasing demands of the welfare state)

tights *n.* (BE; AE has *pantyhose*) 1. a pair of ~s 2. (misc.) she got a ladder in her ~

tile *n.* ceramic; vinyl ~

till *n.* ["money drawer"] 1. behind, on the ~ (who's (working) on the ~ today?) 2. (misc.) to have one's finger(s) in the ~ ("to steal from a money drawer")

tilt I *n.* ["attack"] (colloq.) (BE) 1. to have, make a ~ at ["inclination"] 2. a ~ to, towards ["misc."] 3. at full ~ ("at full speed")

tilt II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the right) 2. (misc.) to ~ at windmills ("to fight imaginary enemies")

timber *n.* 1. to float, raft ~ (down a river) 2. green, unseasoned; seasoned ~

time I *n.* ["unlimited duration"] ["entire period of existence"] 1. ~ flies; goes by, passes (see also *(the) time flies* at **time I** *n.* 31 below) 2. in ~ (we exist in ~ and space) ["unlimited future or later period"] 3. (only) ~ will tell (~ will tell if we are right; only ~ would tell whether we were right in 1967; "You can fool all the people some of the ~, and some of the people all the ~, but you can not fool all the people all of the ~" – attributed to Abraham Lincoln, 1858) 4. in, in the course of, over, with ~ (in/with ~ everything will be forgotten – just give it ~!; there are bound to be changes over ~) (see also *with the passage of time* at **passage**) ["moment"] ["fixed moment"] ["appropriate moment"] 5. to fix, set, specify a ~ for (to fix a ~ for a meeting) 6. to bide ("wait patiently for") one's ~ 7. arrival; bedtime; check-in; check-out; curtain ~; departure; dinner; lunchtime; mealtime; starting; summertime; supper; wintertime ~ (What is the estimated arrival ~? = What is the estimated ~ of arrival (ETA)?) (see also **peacetime**; **wartime**) 8. the appointed; present; right; wrong ~; an appropriate, suitable ~ 9. a closing; opening ~ 10. (a) ~ for (it's ~ for lunch) 11. ~ to + inf. (it's (high) ~ for us to leave) 12. ~ that + clause (it's (high) ~ that we ¬left/were leaving¬) 13. at a certain ~ (at a bad ~; at the present ~; at that ~; at any old ~; he ¬ran up/took¬ the stairs two at a ~) 14. by a certain ~ (by that ~ she had left) 15. (misc.) in good ~; in plenty of ~; there's a ~ and place for everything; smb.'s ~ has come; when the ~ comes, the ~ will come (the ~ will come when you'll look back on it all and laugh; when the ~ comes ¬to act/for action¬ we'll be ready!) ["duration"] ["period"] ["interval"] 16. to pass, spend ~ (she spends her ~ reading) 17. to gain, save ~ 18. to find ~ (she somehow finds (the) ~ to go jogging every day) 19. to take ~ (it takes quite a bit of time to get there; how much ~ will this job take?) 20. to lose; waste ~; to fritter away, idle away, while away one's ~ 21. a long; short ~ 22. ancient; Biblical; former; geological; modern; olden; prehistoric; recent ~s (in ancient ~s) 23. (AE) compensatory ~ ("free time given to an employee for previously worked overtime") (BE has *time off in lieu*) 24. equal ~ (for political candidates on TV and radio) 25. peak-time (BE), peak-viewing ~ (BE), prime ~ (what's on TV tonight during prime ~? = what's on prime-time TV tonight?) 26. (a) fast; record ~ (she ran the distance in record ~) 27. released ~ ("time given for extracurricular activities") 28. travel ~ ("time spent in traveling to and from work") 29. (the) running ~ (of a film) 30. (the) ~ drags; is up; runs out (the ~ is up and the class is over) 31. (the) ~ flies (see also *time flies* at **time I** *n.* 1 above) 32. ~ for (will you have ~ for an interview?) 33. (misc.) to kill ~ ("to make time pass"); to play for ~ ("to seek delay"); to take one's ~ (about); ("to act slowly"); for a ~; for the ~ being ("for now"); ~ hangs heavy on our hands; reaction ~ (a quick temper and a fast reaction ~) ["conditions during a period"] 34. to keep up with the ~s = to keep abreast of the ~s 35. bad, difficult, hard, rough ~s (during/in hard ~s) ["available period"] 36. to find; get; have; take (the) ~ (she doesn't find/get/have/take the ~ to relax; he never finds ~ for his family) 37. to budget; plan one's ~ 38. to run out of ~ 39. to devote ~ to; to put ~ into; to save ~; to waste ~ (don't waste ~ gambling!) 40. free, leisure, spare ~ (what do you do in your leisure ~?) 41. ~ to + inf. (there is no ~ to lose; will you have ~ to give an interview?) 42. ~ for (~ for relaxation; I have no ~ for my family) ["period worked"] 43. double; full ~; overtime; part ~; time-and-a-half (I work part ~) 44. lost ~ (to make up lost ~; to make up for lost ~) ["period of serving, service"] 45. to do, serve ~ (to do/serve ~ in prison) ["tempo, rhythm"] 46. to beat; keep ~ (to music, to a song) 47. (mus.) common; waltz ~ 48. (usu mil.) double; quick ~ (quick ~, march!) 49. in ~ to (the music) ["system of measuring duration"] 50. to gain; keep; lose ~ (my watch gains ~; your watch keeps good ~; her watch loses ~) 51. to show the ~ (that clock shows the ~) 52. to tell ~ (esp. AE)/the ~ (esp. BE) (a clock tells ~/the ~; the child is learning how to tell ¬ ~/the ~¬) 53. central (US); daylight-saving (AE), summer (BE); eastern (US); Greenwich (mean); local; mountain (US); Pacific (US); solar; standard (AE) ~ 54. (misc.) what ~ is it? = what is the ~?; where were you (at) this ~ last year? ["schedule"] 55. ahead of ~ 56. behind ~ 57. in (good, plenty of) ~ for (we arrived in ~ for the concert) (see also *(just) in the nick of time* at **nick**; *with time to spare* at **spare** *v.*) 58. on ~ (they got there on ~) ["experience"] 59. to have a (good) ~ 60. a delightful, good, great, lovely, pleasant, wonderful; fun (colloq.) ~ (we had a great ~ on our trip) 61. a bad, miserable, rough, tough, unpleasant ~ (see also **hard time**) ["timeout"] (sports) 62. to call

~ ["occasion"] 63. the first; last; next ~; that; this ~ ["end of pregnancy"] 64. her ~ is near ["misc."] 65. at the same ~ (“however”); at ~s (“occasionally”); for the ~ being (“at present”); behind the ~s (“not abreast of recent events”); the bartender called ~ and everybody had to leave; from/since ~ immemorial (“from the earliest period”); (all) in good ~ (“when appropriate”); in the fullness of ~ (all in good ~, my boy: everything will be all right in the fullness of ~!); in no ~ (at all) (“very soon”); to have the ~ of one’s life (“to enjoy oneself thoroughly”); it’s about ~! (“we must act now”); it’s (about) ~ that we ¬left/were leaving¬; to keep up with the ~s (“to keep abreast of the latest developments”); to make good ~ (“to travel quickly”); to make ~ with smb. (esp. AE; colloq.) (“to be successful in attracting smb.”); to mark ~ (“to be inactive”); ~ and ~ again; or: ~ after ~ (“frequently”); to live on borrowed ~ (“to live beyond the expected time of death”); pressed/pushed for ~ (“in a hurry”); to work against ~ (“to work to meet a deadline”) (see also *battle against time* at **battle**; *race against time* at **race I** *n.*); he died before his ~ (“he died prematurely”); those events were before my ~; at last I’ve won the Nobel Prize – and not before ~! (“I’ve deserved it for a long time”); (sports) extra ~ (BE), overtime (AE); once upon a ~ (used to begin a fairy tale); of all ~ (who’s the greatest tennis-player of all ~?) (see also *the time is ripe* at **ripe**; *a sign of the times* at **sign I** *n.*) USAGE NOTES: 1. The phrase *in time* can mean “eventually” – in time everything will be forgotten. 2. The phrase *in time* can also mean “with some time to spare” – we arrived in time for the concert. 3. The phrase *on time* means “neither early nor late” – they got there on time. 4. The phrase **of all times* is sometimes heard in BE but is wrong for *of all time*: who’s the greatest tennis-player of all time? (see also **big time**)

time II *v.* 1. to ~ smt. badly; well 2. (D; tr.) to ~ at (her performance was ~d at 57 seconds) 3. (H) her performance was ~d to last no longer than one minute 4. (misc.) to ~ smt. (down) to the last second

time bomb *n.* 1. to set off a ~ 2. a ~ ticks away 3. (misc.) they are sitting on a ~ (“disaster is imminent”)

time out *n.* 1. to take (a) ~ for (they took ~ for a rest) 2. (misc.) a ~ to + inf. (they took a ~ (in order) to rest) USAGE NOTE: Note the different spellings in: They took time out to rest; they took a time-out to rest.

timer *n.* ["timing device"] to set a ~

timetable *n.* 1. to draw up, make out, make up, prepare, work out a ~ 2. to issue a ~ 3. to follow, stick to a ~ 4. to upset a ~ 5. (esp. BE) an airline; bus; railway, train ~ (AE prefers *schedule*) 6. a ~ for (we have worked out a ~ for our trip) 7. according to, in a ~ (according to the ~ for our trip, we ought to have started out an hour ago!)

timid *adj.* ~ about; with

timing *n.* bad; flawless, perfect; good ~ (the secret of a good comedian is (perfect) ~)

tin *n.* (BE) a baking; biscuit; cake ~ (AE has *baking pan; cookie sheet; cake pan*)

tinged *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ with (~ with regret)

tingle *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (my ears ~d with the cold)

tinker *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ with

tint *v.* (N; used with an adjective) the windshield is ~ed blue

tip I *n.* ["gratuity"] 1. to give, leave a ~ 2. a big, generous, handsome ~ (I left a five-dollar ~ for the waitress = I left the waitress a five-dollar ~)

tip II *v.* 1. to ~ generously, handsomely, liberally 2. (O) I ~ped the waitress (five dollars)

tip III *n.* ["information"] 1. give smb. a ~ 2. to get, receive a ~ 3. to take a ~ 4. an anonymous; hot; useful ~ 5. a ~ about, on 6. a ~ for (useful ~s for poets about how to get published)

tip IV *n.* ["pointed end"] 1. a filter ~ ["end"] 2. at the ~ (at the northern ~ of the island) 3. on the ~ of smb.’s tongue (the word was on the ~ of my tongue; it was on the ~ of my tongue to say something) (see also **fingertips**)

tip V *v.* (d; tr.) (“to cover”) to ~ with (they ~ped their arrows with poison)

tip VI *v.* (BE) see **tipped**

tip-off *n.* 1. an anonymous ~ 2. to get a ~ 3. a ~ about (the police got an anonymous ~ about when the robbery would take place) 4. a ~ that + clause (the police got an anonymous ~ that the robbery would take place at night)

tip off *v.* 1. to ~ anonymously 2. (D; tr.) to ~ about (the police were tipped off anonymously about when the robbery would take place) 3. (L; must have an object + that-clause) (the police were tipped off anonymously that the robbery would take place at night)

tipped *adj.* ["considered likely"] (BE) 1. widely ~ 2. ~ as (~ as the next Prime Minister) 3. ~ for (widely ~ for the job of Prime Minister) 4. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to become the next Prime Minister)

tiptoe I *n.* (to go, stand, walk) on ~ (they went up the stairs on ~)

tiptoe II *v.* (P; intr.) she ~d into the room and through it; they ~d up the stairs

tirade *n.* 1. to deliver; launch into a ~ 2. a blistering, lengthy ~ 3. a ~ against

tire I tyre *n.* 1. to deflate; inflate, pump up a ~ 2. to mount, put on a ~ 3. to change; patch, repair; recap; retread a ~ 4. to crisscross, rotate ~s (to reduce wear) 5. to slash a ~ 6. a flat ~ (we had a flat ~ during our trip) 7. a bald; worn ~ 8. a balloon; radial; rubber; snow; spare; steel-belted; studded; tubeless ~ 9. whitewall ~s 10. a ~ blows (out), gets/has a puncture; goes flat 11. a set of ~s USAGE NOTE: AE has “change a tire”; BE, "change a wheel". CE has "spare tire/tyre"; BE, "spare wheel". CE has "spare tire/tyre" 'roll of fat around the waist'.

tire II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ of (to ~ of watching television)

tired *adj.* 1. to get ~ 2. dead ~ 3. ~ of (I'm ~ of waiting; "when a man is ~ of London, he is ~ of life" – Samuel Johnson, September 20th, 1777)

tiresome *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to do the same thing every day = it's ~ doing the same thing every day = it's ~ if/when you do the same thing every day)

tissue *n.* ["structural material"] 1. cellular; conjunctival; connective; fatty; granulation; muscular ~ (see also **scar tissue**) ["soft paper"] 2. absorbent; cleansing; toilet ~ 3. a wad of ~s ["misc."] 4. a ~ of lies

title I *n.* ["appellation"] 1. to bestow, confer a ~ on (the ~ (of) Baron Tweedsmuir was conferred on John Buchan) 2. to accept; refuse; renounce a ~ (John Buchan accepted the ~ (of) Baron Tweedsmuir; Sir Winston Churchill refused a ~ and Tony Benn renounced the ~ (of) Viscount Stansgate so that they could continue to sit in the House of Commons) 3. an official ~ ["exclusive possession"] 4. to give, grant smb. ~ to smt. 5. to hold ~ to smt. 6. clear ~ 7. ~ to (they hold clear ~ to the property) 8. (misc.) there is a cloud on the ~ ["championship"] 9. to fight for; win a ~ 10. to hold a ~ 11. to clinch a ~ 12. to defend a ~ 13. to give up; lose a ~

title II *v.* ("to call, name, entitle") (esp. AE) (N) they ~d their dictionary *The BBI*

titter *v.* (D; intr.) 1. to ~ nervously 2. to ~ at

toady (CE), **toady up** (esp. AE) *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (he ~died to the boss = he ~died up to the boss)

toast I *n.* ["browned bread"] 1. to make ~ 2. buttered; cinnamon; dry; French; melba ~ 3. a piece, round (BE; old-fashioned), slice of ~ 4. on ~ (butter/cheese/beans on ~)

toast II *v.* (C) ~ two slices for me; or: ~ me two slices

toast III *n.* ["act of drinking to honor smb."] 1. to drink; propose a ~ 2. a ~ to (we drank a ~ to her) 3. (misc.) to join smb. in a ~ ["highly admired person"] 4. the ~ of (the ~ of the town; the ~ of high society)

tobacco *n.* 1. to grow, raise ~ 2. to cure ~ 3. to chew; smoke ~ 4. mild; strong ~ 5. chewing; pipe ~ 6. a plug of (chewing) ~

toddy *n.* a hot ~ (as for a cold)

to-do *n.* ["fuss"] to make a (big) ~ over

toe *n.* 1. to stub one's ~ (on) 2. to curl one's ~s 3. the big; little ~ 4. (misc.) to keep/stay on one's ~s ("to be alert"); to step on smb.'s ~; to tread on smb.'s ~s ("to offend smb."); from head to ~

toehold *n.* ["footing, foothold"] 1. to gain, get a ~ 2. a precarious ~

toenail *n.* 1. to cut, trim; file; manicure a ~ 2. an ingrowing (BE), ingrown (AE) ~

together *adv.* 1. to go ~ ("to match") (do carrots and peas really go ~?) 2. ~ with (do carrots really go ~ with peas?) 3. all ~ (there were about 50 of them all ~ = all ~, there were about 50 ot them)

toil I *n.* ["hard work"] 1. arduous, backbreaking, unremitting ~ 2. physical ~ 3. (misc.) "I have nothing to offer but blood, ~, tears and sweat" – Winston Churchill, May 13th, 1940

toil II *v.* ("to work hard") 1. (D; intr.) to ~ over (to ~ over a hot stove; to ~ over a difficult project) 2. (misc.) to ~ (in order/so as) to finish a difficult project

toilet *n.* 1. to go to, need, use the ~ 2. to flush a ~ 3. a flush; gents' (esp. BE), men's; ladies', women's; pay; public ~ 4. down the ~ (to flush smt. down the ~)

token *n.* ["symbol, sign"] 1. to be, constitute a ~ 2. to give, provide a ~ of 3. a tangible ~ 4. (misc.) as a ~ of (here is smt. for you as a ~ of my esteem); by the same ~ ("for a similar reason") (we should always be ready and by the same ~ we should never relax our vigilance); in ~ of ("as evidence of") (here is smt. for you in ~ of my esteem) ["metal or plastic disc used as a substitute for money"] 5. to drop in, insert, put in a ~ (to insert a ~ into a slot) 6. to accept, take a ~ (will this machine take ~s?) 7. a bus; subway (AE) ~ ["coupon, voucher"] (BE) 8. a book; gift; record ~

told *adj.* all ~ ("altogether") (there were about 50 of them all ~ = all ~, there were about 50 ot them)

tolerance *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. to have (a) ~ 3. ~ for, of, towards 4. a level of ~ (the government showed a quite high level of ~ for/of dissidence) 5. (misc.) zero ~ (as of crime)

tolerant *adj.* 1. ~ of (~ of criticism) 2. ~ towards

tolerate *v.* 1. (G) I will not ~ smoking! 2. (K) I will not ~ his smoking!

toleration *n.* 1. to display, show ~ 2. to have ~ 3. ~ for, of, towards 4. a level of ~ (the government showed a quite high level of ~ of dissidence)

toll I *n.* ["amount levied"] 1. to charge, impose a ~ 2. to collect ~s (on a bridge, road) 3. to pay a ~ 4. a bridge; tunnel; turnpike (AE) ~ 5. (misc.) ~ free (a toll-free telephone number that you can call ~ free) ["damage"] 6. to take a ~ (on) (the storm took a heavy ~; the earthquake took a heavy ~ on several villages) 7. a heavy; mounting, rising ~ ["casualties"] 8. the death ~ (the mounting death ~ from the epidemic)

toll II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (the bell ~ed for those who had made the supreme sacrifice; "never send to know for whom the bell ~s; It ~s for thee" – John Donne, 1572–1631, *Devotions*)

tomato *n.* 1. to grow ~es 2. to can ~es 3. ripe; sun-dried ~es 4. a can (esp. AE), tin (BE) of ~es 5. a rotten ~ (also fig. in AE) (see also *tomato soup* at **soup**)

tome *n.* ["volume"] a scholarly; weighty ~

tom-tom *n.* 1. to beat a ~ 2. the beat of the ~

ton *n.* 1. a gross; long; metric; short ~ 2. (misc.) (BE; slang) to do the ~ ("to go one hundred miles per hour") USAGE NOTE: The ton in GB is the *long ton* (two thousand two hundred forty pounds). In the US, the ton is the *short ton* (two thousand pounds). The *metric ton* is one thousand kilograms and is officially spelled *tonne* in GB.

tone *n.* ["style, trend"] 1. to set the ~ ["sound"] 2. dulcet, sweet; harsh; strident ~(s) ["manner of speaking that reveals the speaker's feelings"] 3. to adopt, take a certain ~ 4. a conversational; friendly; normal 5. a businesslike; decisive; emphatic; firm ~ 6. an apologetic; subdued ~ 7. a flippant; ironic ~ 8. a serious; solemn ~ 9. a condescending, patronizing; unctuous ~ 10. an arrogant; imperious ~ 11. an abusive; angry, querulous; strident; threatening ~ 12. in a ~ (in angry ~s; she spoke in a normal ~ of voice) 13. (misc.) don't take that ~ with me! smb.'s ~ of voice ["signal"] 14. a dial (AE), dialling (BE); engaged (BE; AE has *busy signal*); ringing ~ ["pitch"] (ling.) 15. a falling; high; low; rising ~ (for music, see **note I** *n.* 11–14)

tongs *n.* 1. coal; curling; ice; sugar ~ 2. a pair of ~

tongue *n.* ["language"] 1. smb.'s mother, native ~ 2. a foreign ~ (to speak in a foreign ~) ["organ of speech"] ["speech"] 3. to hold one's ~ ("to be silent") 4. to find one's ~ ("to begin to speak") 5. to stick out one's ~ (the child stuck out its ~ at me) 6. to click one's ~ 7. a coated ~ 8. (misc.) a ~ depressor; on everyone's ~ ("discussed by everyone"); on the tip of smb.'s ~ ("not quite recalled"); ~s were wagging ("people were gossiping"); to speak with a forked ~ ("to be deceitful"); the brandy loosened her ~ ("after drinking she became very talkative") (see also *(with) tongue in cheek* at **cheek** 4) ["manner of speaking"] 9. a caustic, foul, nasty, sharp, vile; civil; glib; loose ~ (he has a nasty ~; I'll thank you to keep a civil ~ in your head!)

tongue-lashing *n.* 1. to give smb. a (good) ~ 2. to get, receive a ~

tonic *n.* 1. to take a ~ 2. a ~ for 3. (misc.) a gin and ~ ("type of mixed drink")

tonnage *n.* dead-weight; displacement; gross; net, registered ~

tonsillectomy *n.* 1. to do, perform a ~ (on) 2. to have a ~

tonsils *n.* 1. enlarged; inflamed ~ 2. (misc.) to have one's ~ out/removed/taken out

tool *n.* 1. to use a ~ 2. a garden; machine; power ~ 3. burglar's; farm ~s 4. a set of ~s 5. (misc.) the ~s of smb.'s/the trade; (BE) to down ~s ("to go out on strike") (see also *tool kit* at **kit**)

toot *n.* (colloq.) to give a ~ (on a horn)

tooth *n.* 1. to cut, get teeth (babies are often fretful when they are cutting teeth) 2. to lose a ~ 3. to brush (esp. AE), clean one's teeth 4. to cap = crown; drill; extract, pull, take out; fill a ~ 5. to pick one's teeth 6. to bare; clench, gnash, grind, grit one's teeth 7. a false; baby (AE), milk; back; front; gold; lower; missing; permanent; upper; wisdom ~ 8. an abscessed; decayed; loose ~ 9. teeth ache; chatter; decay, rot; erupt ("appear"); fall out; get discolored (see also *tooth decay* at **decay**) 10. a (full) set of teeth 11. between one's teeth (a pipe clampred firmly between his teeth) (see also *to take the bit between one's teeth* at **bit II** *n.*) 12. in one's teeth (to hold smt. in one's teeth) 13. (misc.) to have a sweet ~ ("to love sweets"); to sink one's teeth into smt. ("to become completely engrossed in smt."); to show one's teeth ("to show hostile intentions"); ~ and nail ("with all one's strength") (we fought ~ and nail to save our local post-office!); to cut one's teeth on smt. ("to gain one's first experience with smt.")

toothache *n.* to get, have a ~ (AE)/get, have (a) ~ (BE)

toothbrush *n.* to use a ~

toothpaste *n.* a tube of ~

top I *n.* ["device that spins"] 1. to spin a ~ ["misc."] 2. to sleep like a ~ ("to sleep very soundly")

top II *n.* ["highest point"] 1. to reach, rise to the ~ 2. a mountain ~; rooftop 3. from; to (the) ~ (from ~ to bottom; we climbed to the ~; to fill smt. to the ~) 4. at, on; over the ~ (the liquid spilled over the ~ of the bottle) ["cover, cap"] 5. to put on, screw on a ~ 6. to screw off, take off, unscrew a ~ 7. a bottle; box; screw ~ ["misc."] 8. to blow one's ~ ("to explode in anger"); to go over the ~ ("to begin a mil. charge by going over a parapet"); (fig.) ("to exceed a limit") (the actor's performance was a little over the ~ ("extreme") (abbreviated to OTT in BE)); to be on ~ of a situation ("to be in control of a situation")

top III *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ with (the cake was ~ped with whipped cream)

topic *n.* 1. to bring up, broach, consider, deal with; discuss; explore, go into a ~ 2. an appropriate, suitable; controversial; current; everyday; favorite; interesting; special ~ 3. a boring, uninteresting; inappropriate; taboo; unpleasant ~ 4. a ~ comes up (for discussion) 5. about, on a ~ (which ~ are you going to talk about tonight?) 6. (misc.) a ~ of conversation; a ~ of interest; a ~ for discussion

top off *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ with (we ~ped off our lunch with a nice dessert = we ~ped our lunch off with a nice dessert)

topple *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from (he was ~d from the throne)

topsy-turvy *adj.* to turn (smt.) ~

torch *n.* ["portable electric light"] (BE; AE has *flashlight*) 1. to turn on a ~ 2. to flash, shine; train a ~ on 3. to turn off a ~ 4. an electric ~ (we could see by the light of our electric ~) ["burning stick"] 5. to light a ~ (see also *torchlight* at **light II** *n.*; *torchlight parade* at **parade**) 6. to bear, carry, hold a ~ 7. a flaming ~ ["device used to produce a very hot flame"] 8. a blowtorch (CE; BE typically prefers *blowlamp*); welding ~ ["misc."] 9. to put smt. to the ~ ("to set fire to smt."); to carry a ~ for smb. (colloq.) ("to remain in love with smb. who does not return that love") (see also *torch song* at **song**)

torment *n.* 1. to endure, experience, feel, go through ~(s) 2. to prolong the ~ 3. acute, great, indescribable; unbearable ~ 4. in ~ (in great ~) 5. (misc.) (all) the ~s ¬of hell/of the damned¬

torment II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into doing smt.) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (they ~ed him with threats to his family)

torn *adj.* ["divided"] (cannot stand alone) ~ between (she was ~ between her family and her job)

tornado *n.* 1. a ~ hits, strikes; rages (the ~ struck several cities) 2. a ~ blows itself out, blows over, dies down, subsides

torpedo *n.* 1. to fire, launch a ~ 2. an acoustic; aerial; bangalore; magnetic ~ 3. a ~ explodes 4. a ~ hits; misses its target (see also *torpedo boat* at **boat**)

torrent *n.* 1. an angry, raging ~ 2. a mountain ~ 3. (misc.) the rain came down in ~s; a ~ of abuse (she vented her feelings in a ~ of abuse)

tort *n.* (legal) to commit a ~

torture I *n.* 1. to employ, inflict, practice, resort to, use ~ 2. to subject smb. to ~ 3. to suffer, undergo ~ 4. cruel; plain, sheer; sadistic; severe ~ 5. the water ~ 6. an act of ~ 7. ~ to + inf. (it was sheer ~ to listen to her sing = it was sheer ~ listening to her sing) 8. under ~ (he confessed under ~)

torture II *v.* 1. to ~ cruelly; sadistically; severely ~ 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (he was ~d into confessing) 3. (misc.) to ~ smb. to death

toss I *n.* ["flipping of a coin to decide an issue"] to lose; win the ~ (who won the ~ to go first?)

toss II *v.* 1. ("to turn and twist") to ~ (and turn) restlessly (as in one's sleep) 2. (A) ("to throw") ~ the ball to me; or: ~ me the ball 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for ("to decide by flipping a coin") (let's ~ for it) 4. (P; tr.) to ~ a ball into the air; the children ~ed stones over the fence; to ~ a salad in dressing to make a ~ed salad

toss-up *n.* 1. a ~ between (it was a ~ between the two leading candidates) 2. (misc.) it was a ~ who would win; it was a ~ whether to go or stay

total I *n.* 1. to add up, calculate, tally up a ~ 2. a combined; grand; sum ~ 3. (misc.) to add up to; come to a ~ (it comes to a grand ~ of €3000)

total II *v.* (S) it ~s €3000

touch I *n.* ["social contact"] 1. to be; get in ~ 2. to keep, stay in ~ 3. to lose ~ (with) 4. close ~ 5. in ~ with smb. (keep in close ~ with me) 6. out of ~ with (I am out of ~ with the present situation) ["feel, the sense of touch"] 7. to the ~ (smooth to the ~) ["physical contact"] 8. a deft; delicate; gentle, light, soft, soothing; heavy ~ (the door opened at a light ~ of her hand) ["sensitivity"] 9. to have; lose the common ~ ("to have; lose the ability to appeal to the common people") ("walk with Kings – nor lose the common ~" – Rudyard Kipling (1865–1936), "If –") 10. the human ~ ("the ability to relate with compassion to others") ["ability"] 11. to lose one's ~ ["manner"] 12. a bold; distinctive; magic; man's; personal; woman's ~ ["detail, stroke"] 13. the final; finishing ~es (to add the final ~es to a painting with a few distinctive ~es of his brush; to put the finishing ~es on/to smt.) ["misc."] 14. a soft ~ ("an overly generous person")

touch II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to stop briefly") to ~ at (the ship will ~ at three ports) 2. (colloq.) (d; tr.) to ~ for ("to ask for") (to ~ smb. for a loan) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to treat briefly") (to ~ on a topic) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ on ("to make contact by touch with") (she ~ed me lightly on the arm)

touchdown *n.* (esp. Am. football) to score a ~

touched *adj.* 1. deeply, very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to have been invited) 3. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that she ¬had been/should have been¬ invited)

touching *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was touching for her to learn that she had been invited) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that they ¬had/should have¬ invited her)

touchy *adj.* (colloq.) ~ about (he's ~ ¬about/when it comes to¬ his appearance)

tough *adj.* (colloq.) ["strict"] 1. to be, get ~ (on) 2. ~ on, with (they are ~ on drunk drivers and are getting ~er with them all the time; "Tough on crime, ~ on the causes of crime" – Tony Blair, 1992, though also attributed to Gordon Brown) ["difficult"] 3. (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (he is ~ to work with = it is ~ to work with him = it is ~ working with him = he is a ~ person to work with; it's ~ on workers when they lose their jobs = it's ~ for workers to lose their jobs) ["unfortunate"] 4. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that you can't be with your family) ["misc."] 5. to hang ~ (esp. AE; slang) ("to be very firm"); to talk ~ ("to take a very firm bargaining position"); as ~ as nails

tour *n.* 1. to conduct, operate a ~ (see also *tour operator* at **operator**) 2. to organize a ~ 3. to do, go on, make a ~ of 4. a barnstorming (AE); campaign; goodwill; lightning, whirlwind ~ 5. a bus; city; walking ~ 6. a concert; lecture, speaking; study ~ 7. a conducted, guided; organized; package ~ (see also *tour guide* at **guide I** *n.*) 8. a city; sightseeing ~ 9. on (a) ~ (to be on ~) 10. (misc.) a grand ~ (did the Grand Tour of Europe before settling down)

tourist *n.* 1. ~s flocked to the ~ sites 2. a flock; party of ~s

tour of duty *n.* 1. to do a ~ 2. on a ~ (they were on a ~ in the Far East)

tournament *n.* 1. to conduct, hold a ~ 2. to enter; win a ~ 3. a bridge; chess; invitational (AE); rapid-transit (for chess) (AE); tennis ~ 4. a ~ takes place 5. in; out of a ~ (he stayed in the ~ until the last round, when he was knocked out of the ~ by the eventual winner)

tourniquet *n.* 1. to apply, put on a ~ 2. to loosen; tighten a ~

tout I *n.* (BE) a ticket ~ (AE has *scalper*)

tout II *v.* (colloq.) ("to praise") ("to tip") 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (he was ~ed as the next middleweight champion) 2. (misc.) highly ~ed; (BE) to ~ for ("to solicit")

tow I *n.* 1. to give a ~ (to) 2. a ski ~ 3. to have, take in ~ 4. under ~ (she had her little sister in ~; they took the ship in ~ and it's still under ~)

tow II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ a barge into a port) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ out of (to ~ a boat out of a harbor) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ a car to a garage) 4. (P; tr.) they ~ed the bus across town

towel *n.* ["cloth, paper for drying"] 1. a bath; dish (AE), tea (esp. BE); face; guest; hand; linen; paper; roller; Turkish ~ 2. a sanitary ~ (BE; AE has *sanitary napkin*; CE has *sanitary pad*) 3. a disposable ~ (see also *towel rack* at **rack**; *towel rail* at **rail**) ["symbol of surrender"] 4. to throw in, toss in the ~

tower I *n.* 1. a bell; clock; computer; conning; control; fire; TV; watch; water ~ 2. a signal ~ (AE; BE has *signal box*) 3. a ~ stands (one hundred feet high) 4. (misc.) an ivory ~ ("a sheltered place where life's realities may be avoided"); twin ~s (as of the World Trade Center)

tower II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ above, over (as a thinker, she ~s over her colleagues) 2. (misc.) to ~ high (the skyscraper ~ed (hundreds of feet) high above the city)

town *n.* 1. a boom; border; country; college (AE), university; ghost ("deserted"); jerkwater (AE; colloq.), one-horse, provincial, sleepy, small; market (BE); seaside (BE); shanty ~ (they live in a sleepy little ~) 2. a company ~ 3. (BE) a dormitory ~ (AE has *bedroom community*) 4. smb.'s hometown 5. a county ~ (BE; AE has *county seat*) 6. in ~; out of ~ (they were out of ~ for six weeks; they are back in ~) 7. (misc.) to come to ~; to go to ~ (colloq.; fig.) ("to go all out"); to leave ~; to blow/skip ~ (esp. AE; colloq.) ("to leave town suddenly"); (out) on the ~ ("enjoying city nightlife") USAGE NOTE: In GB, many places are called *towns* that would be called *cities* in the US. In the US, many places are called *towns* or *small towns* that are *villages* in GB. AE rarely uses *village* for places in the US.

tow out *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ into, to (the boat was ~ed out into the channel; they ~ed the barge out to the freighter)

toy I *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. to wind, wind up a ~ 3. an educational; executive (BE); mechanical; musical; soft ~ (to wind a mechanical ~) 4. (misc.) to play with ~s; a ~ car/plane/train

toy II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with smb.'s affections; cats ~ with mice)

trace I *n.* 1. to leave a ~ 2. to show a ~ of (to show no ~ of remorse) 3. to lose (all) ~ of 4. a slight ~ (he didn't show the slightest ~ of intoxication) 5. without (a) ~ (they disappeared without a ~; they sank/vanished without ~)

trace II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (the letter was ~d to its sender)

traceable *adj.* ~ to

trace back *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ to (the letter was ~d back to its sender; she ~d her origins back to the twelfth century)

tracer *n.* ["inquiry"] (esp. AE) 1. to put out, send out a ~ on ["tracer bullet"] 2. to fire a ~ ["substance used to trace a reaction in the body"] (med.) 3. to inject, introduce a ~ (into the body) 4. to scan (for) a ~ 5. a radioactive ~

traces *n.* to kick over the ~ ("to free oneself")

tracing *n.* to do, make a ~

track I *n.* ["awareness"] 1. to keep ~ of (to keep ~ of expenses) 2. to lose ~ of 3. close ~ (to keep close ~ of smt.) ["course for racing"] 4. a fast; muddy; slow ~ 5. a cinder; indoor ~; racetrack; running ~ ["path, road"] 6. a cart ~ (BE; AE has *dirt road*) 7. off ~ ("straying from one's goals") 8. on ~ ("proceeding towards one's goals") (back on ~ for success = back on ~ to succeed); on the ~ of (hard on the ~ of a scientific discovery) 9. (misc.) on the right ~ ("proceeding correctly"); on the wrong ~ ("proceeding incorrectly"); off the beaten ~ ("isolated") ("off the beaten path"); the ~ goes/leads/runs/winds through the forest ["rail"] 10. to lay ~s 11. a double; main; railroad (AE), railway (BE); single ~ 12. (misc.) on the wrong side of the ~s (esp. AE; colloq.) ("in the poor section of a city") ["recording"] 13. a sound; favorite ~ (what's your favorite ~ on/from their latest album?) ["misc."] 14. the fast ~ ("the quickest route to success"); the inside ~ ("an advantageous position") (see also **tracks**) USAGE NOTES: (1) For footraces, *track* is CE. For horseracing, AE uses *track* and *racetrack*; BE prefers *course* and *racecourse*. (2) In BE, the train for Birmingham leaves from platform 29. In AE, the train for Birmingham leaves from track 29.

track II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (the hunters ~ed the animal (back) to its lair)

track-and-field *n.* (AE) to go in for ~ (BE has *athletics*) (see also *track-and-field events* at **event**)

tracks *n.* ["trail"] 1. to leave ~ 2. to make ~ for ("to go directly to") 3. to cover one's ~ ["misc."] 4. they are hard on the ~ of a scientific discovery; to stop (dead) in one's ~ ("to stop instantaneously"); tire ~

tract *n.* ["system of organs"] the digestive; gastrointestinal; genitourinary; intestinal; respiratory ~ (see also *tract house* at **house**)

traction *n.* 1. to apply ~ 2. in ~ (her broken leg is in ~)

tractor *n.* to drive, operate a ~

trade I *n.* ["commerce, business"] 1. to carry on, conduct, engage in ~ 2. to build up, develop, drum up, promote; lose ~ 3. to stimulate ~ 4. to restrain, restrict ~ 5. (a) brisk, lively, thriving ~ (they built up a lively ~ in organic produce) 6. fair ~ 7. the arms; tourist ~ 8. domestic; export; foreign, international, overseas; free; illicit; maritime; retail; wholesale ~ (to promote international ~) 9. (the) slave; white-slave ("prostitution") ~ 10. the carriage ~ ("business with wealthy people") 11. ~ is booming, thriving; dropping off, falling off; picking up, reviving 12. ~ among, between; with (to conduct ~ with many countries) 13. ~ in 14. (misc.) in the ~ (quality obvious to anyone in the ~); (in) restraint of ~; balance of ~ ["exchange"] 15. to make a ~ with smb. for smt. (she made a ~ of a knife with me for a spoon) 16. a fair ~ ["occupation"] 17. to ply one's, practice a ~ 18. to learn a ~ 19. by ~ (she is a bookbinder by ~) 20. (misc.) a jack-of-all-trades

trade II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she ~d a knife for a spoon) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in furs) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ with (to ~ with various countries; to ~ places with smb.) 4. (O) she ~d me a knife for a spoon

trade in *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (she ~d in her old car for a newer one)

trademark *n.* 1. to issue a ~ 2. to receive, register a ~ 3. to bear; display a ~ 4. to infringe a ~

trade-off *n.* a ~ between (a ~ between advantages and disadvantages)

trade off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ against (to ~ the advantages against the disadvantages)

trade up *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ to a larger car from a smaller one)

trader *n.* 1. a fur ~ 2. a ~ in (a ~ in fur(s))

trading *n.* 1. brisk; heavy; slow, sluggish ~ (slow ~ on the stock market) 2. insider ~ (as on the stock market) 3. ~ in (~ in fur(s) = fur-trading)

tradition *n.* 1. to hand down, pass down a ~ 2. to establish, start a ~ (we started a new ~) 3. to cherish; have; keep up, maintain, preserve, uphold a ~ 4. to break with, depart from; defy (a) ~ 5. an ancient, old; deep-rooted, deep-seated, established; long ~ (they have a long ~ of spending summers in the country) 6. a cherished; great; hallowed; popular ~ 7. a family; oral; religious ~ 8. according to, by ~ (according to ancient ~; by popular ~) 9. in a ~ (in our ~; a new release in the great/best ~ of Hollywood musicals)

traditional *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's ~ around here to fly the flag on holidays)

traffic I *n.* ["movement of vehicles, aircraft"] 1. to direct ~ (the police officer was directing ~) 2. to control, regulate ~ (traffic lights control/regulate ~) 3. to block, hold up, obstruct, tie up ~ 4. to divert ~ 5. bumper-to-bumper, heavy; light; rush-hour; slow-moving ~ 6. air; highway (AE), motorway (BE); pedestrian; vehicular ~ 7. inbound; outbound ~ 8. local; long-distance ~ 9. merging; through, thru (AE) ~ 10. one-way; two-way ~ 11. ~ backs up; builds up; thins out 12. (misc.) the flow of ~; the volume of ~; a lane of ~; an update on ~ conditions; a ~ report ["commerce, trade esp. illegal"] 13. brisk, lively ~ 14. illegal, illicit ~ 15. ~ in (illicit ~ in drugs) ["misc."] 16. (colloq.) to charge what the ~ will bear ("to charge as much as people are willing to pay")

traffic II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in drugs)

traffic light, traffic lights *n.* see **light II** *n.* 16–19 USAGE NOTE: *Traffic lights* is CE; *traffic light* is esp AE.

traffic ticket (AE) see **ticket I** *n.* 17–21

tragedy *n.* 1. to avert a ~ 2. a great; personal; terrible ~ 3. (a) ~ strikes (~ struck their family) 4. a ~ for 5. a ~ that + clause (it was a ~ (for their families) that there were no survivors) 6. (misc.) a Greek ~; to end in ~ (the story of Romeo and Juliet ended in ~)

tragic *adj.* ~ that + clause (it was ~ that they all perished)

trail I *n.* 1. to blaze, make; lay out a ~ 2. to leave a ~ (the wounded animal left a ~ of blood) 3. to follow a ~ 4. to cover up a ~ 5. a steep; winding ~ 6. a hiking; nature; ski; vapor ~ (to lay out a ski ~) 7. a campaign; comeback ~ (she was on the campaign ~ for months; to hit the comeback ~) 8. on smb.'s ~, on the ~ of (the police were on his ~; hard on the ~ of a scientific discovery) 9. (misc.) the ~ goes/leads/runs/winds through the forest; to leave a paper ~ ("to leave a record of one's activities behind")

trail II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ after, behind (to ~ behind the leaders (by a few points)) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ by (they're still ~ing (the leaders) by a few points) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ to (the police ~ed them to their hideout)

trailer *n.* 1. a house ~ (AE; BE has *caravan*) 2. a flatbed ~ 3. a semitrailer (AE), tractor-trailer (AE; AE also has *semi, trailer truck*; BE has *articulated lorry*) 4. the ~ jackknifed

trail off *v.* (D; int.) to ~ to a whisper

train I *n.* ["row of connected railroad cars"] 1. to drive a ~ 2. to shunt ~s (onto different tracks) 3. to board, get on; catch; get off; miss; take a ~ (we took a ~ to the city) 4. to change ~s (we'll have to change ~s in/at Chicago) 5. to flag down; hold; stop a ~ (to stop a ~ by pulling the communication/emergency cord) 6. a boat; commuter; express, fast (esp. BE); intercity (BE); local (AE), stopping (BE); long-distance; shuttle; suburban; through ~ 7. a down (BE) ("from a city"); up (BE) ("to a city") ~ 8. an inbound; outbound ~ 9. a freight (AE), goods (BE); hospital; passenger; troop ~ 10. an electric; elevated; subway (AE); tube (esp. BE), underground (BE) ~ 11. a ~ arrives, pulls in; leaves, pulls out; runs late; runs on time; stops 12. a ~ for, to; from (the ~ from Exeter to London) 13. by ~ (to travel by ~) 14. aboard, on a ~ (we met on the ~) ["column"] 15. a mule; supply; wagon ~ ["mechanism for transmitting power"] 16. a power ~ (see also *set smt. in train* at **set II** *v.*) USAGE NOTE: In BE, a *train, tram*, or *underground/tube (train)* is driven by an "engine/train driver". In AE, a *train* is driven or operated by an "engineer"; a *subway* or *streetcar* is driven or operated by a "motorman" (or, to avoid sexist language, an "operator.")

train II *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ as (she ~ed as a ballet dancer) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (to ~ for the ballet) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ smb. in ballet dancing) 4. (d; tr.) ("to aim") to ~ on (he ~ed his gun on the intruder) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ with (she ~ed with a champion) 6. (E) to ~ to be a dancer 7. (H) they ~ed her to be a dancer; they were ~ed to react instantaneously to an attack; they ~ed the workers to be precise

trained *adj.* 1. poorly; well ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to be a dancer; the dogs are ~ to attack) 3. (misc.) house-trained (esp. BE; AE prefers *house-broken*) (also fig.) (I'm afraid my husband still isn't house-trained: he doesn't even do the washing-up!); potty-trained (BE), toilet-trained

trainer *n.* an animal ~

training *n.* 1. to demand, require; give, provide ~ 2. to do, get, receive, undergo ~ 3. intense; thorough ~ 4. basic; specialized ~ (see also **basic training**) 5. hands-on; in-service, on-the-job (AE); professional; vocational ~ 6. assertiveness; manual; military; physical; sensitivity; toilet; voice; weight ~ 7. ~ in (hands-on ~ in the use of computers) 8. the ~ to + inf. (the soldiers did not have the necessary ~ to carry out the mission) 9. by ~ (she's an engineer by ~) 10. in ~ (he was in ~ for the big fight; she was in ~ with a champion; she was in ~ to be a dancer) (see also *transfer of training* at **transfer I** *n.*)

traipse *v.* (colloq.) (P; intr.) they were ~sing along the road USAGE NOTE: In AE, the verb *traipse* has the connotation of "saunter"; in BE, it typically has the connotation of "trudge" or "tramp heavily".

trait *n.* 1. to display, show; have a ~ 2. an acquired; character; genetic, hereditary; negative; personality; positive ~

traitor *n.* 1. a ~ to (a ~ to one's country) 2. (misc.) to turn ~

tram (BE) see **streetcar**

tramp *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ through the woods

trample *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ on smb.'s rights) 2. (misc.) to ~ underfoot; to ~ smb. to death

trance *n.* 1. to fall, go into a ~ 2. to come out of a ~ 3. a deep; hypnotic; light ~ 4. (to be) in a ~ (see also *trance state* at **state I** *n.*)

tranquillity, tranquility *n.* 1. to disturb; shatter smb.'s ~ 2. domestic; inner ~ ("We the People of the United States, in Order to … insure domestic Tranquility..." – the Constitution of the USA, 1787) 3. (misc.) an air of ~

tranquillizer, tranquilizer *n.* 1. to take a ~ 2. to prescribe a ~ (for) 3. (to be) on ~s 4. to come off ~s

transaction *n.* 1. to carry out; conduct ~s 2. a delicate ~ 3. business, financial ~s 4. ~s between (the ~s between us went well)

transcribe *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from; into (to ~ testimony from a tape; to ~ a text into Cyrillic) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ in (to ~ speech in phonetic script)

transcript *n.* 1. a complete, full; official; verbatim ~ 2. (AE) a grade ~ ("a student's record")

transcription *n.* 1. to make a ~ 2. (ling.) a broad; narrow; phonemic; phonetic ~

transfer I *n.* ["act of transferring"] 1. to make a ~ 2. an electronic; technology ~ 3. a ~ from; to 4. (misc.) a peaceful ~ of power; ~ of training (see also *transfer payment* at **payment**) ["ticket allowing a passenger to change from one vehicle to another on public transportation"] (esp. AE) 5. a bus; streetcar; subway ~

transfer II *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; to (she was ~red from New York to Toronto)

transfixed *adj.* ~ with (~ with horror)

transform *v.* 1. to ~ ¬beyond/out of¬ all recognition; to ~ completely, drastically, greatly, radically; suddenly; totally; overnight 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from; into; to (to ~ current from one voltage to another)

transformation *n.* ["radical change"] 1. to effect; undergo a ~ 2. a complete, radical, total; sudden, overnight ~ 3. a ~ from; into; to (his ~ from a brute to a good citizen took place almost overnight!) (see also *the transformation process* at **process**) ["transformational rule"] (ling.) 4. to formulate a ~ 5. to apply a ~ 6. to order ~s 7. a dative-movement, indirect-object; imperative; insertion; negative; particle-movement; passive; question ~ 8. a ~ applies

transformer *n.* a step-down; step-up ~

transfuse *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ into, to

transfusion *n.* 1. to administer, do, give a ~ 2. to get, have, receive a ~ 3. a – plasma ~ (see also **blood transfusion**)

transgress *v.* (formal) (D; intr.) to ~ against

transgression *n.* to commit a ~ against

transistor *n.* a solid-state ~

transit *n.* 1. (esp. AE) mass, rapid ~ 2. in ~ (damaged in ~) (see also *transit camp* at **camp**)

transition *n.* 1. to make; undergo a ~ 2. a gradual; peaceful; rapid ~ 3. a ~ from; to 4. a ~ between (the country is in a state of ~ between socialism and capitalism) 5. during; in ~ (at present, our economy is in ~, so please bear with us during the ~) 6. (misc.) in a state of ~

transitional *adj.* ~ between

translate *v.* 1. to ~ freely; literally, verbatim, word-for-word; simultaneously 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ *chien* as *dog*) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ from; into (to ~ a book from Russian into Spanish) 4. (misc.) to ~ at sight

translation *n.* 1. to do, make a ~ 2. (a) close, literal, verbatim, word-for-word; free, loose, rough; on-sight ~ 3. an authorized ~ 4. (a) loan ~ 5. (a) machine; running; simultaneous ~ 6. a ~ from; into (a ~ from Russian into Spanish) 7. in ~ (to read a novel in ~; the poem is very effective even ¬in free/in a free¬ ~; some poetry loses a lot in ~)

transliterate *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ a Russian letter as *ch*) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from; into (to ~ a text from Cyrillic into Roman letters)

transliteration *n.* to do a ~

transmission *n.* ["gearbox"] 1. an automatic; standard; synchromesh ~ ["act of transmitting"] 2. to arrest, check, halt, stop; prevent the ~ (of a disease) 3. a ~ from; to (we did our best to prevent the ~ of the disease from parents to children)

transmit *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from; to (the results were ~ted to all local stations from the network; we did our best to prevent the disease from being ~ted from parents to children) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ through (the infection was ~ted through contaminated food) 3. (misc.) to ~ by satellite; to ~ live

transmitted *adj.* sexually ~ (sexually ~ diseases (= STDs))

transmitter *n.* 1. a longwave; radar; radio; shortwave ~ 2. a television, TV ~

transmute *v.* (formal) (D; tr.) to ~ from; into (to ~ base metal into gold)

transpire *v.* 1. (L) ("to become apparent, evident, known") it ~d that he had gone out of town before the crime occurred 2. (misc.) as it ~d, he had gone out of town before the crime occurred

transplant I *n.* 1. to carry out, do, perform a ~ (to perform a bone-marrow ~ on a patient) 2. to reject a ~ (her body rejected the ~) 3. a bone-marrow; corneal; gene; heart; kidney; organ; skin ~ 4. a ~ takes; is rejected

transplant II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to

transport I *n.* 1. (esp. BE) see **transportation** 2. a supersonic ~ (also *SST*) 3. a troop ~

transport II *v.* 1. to ~ bodily 2. (d; tr.) to ~ from; to

transportation *n.* (esp. AE; BE usu. has *transport*) 1. to provide; use ~ 2. air; bus; ground, surface; mass, public ~ 3. a form, mode of ~ (trains are among my favorite forms of ~) 4. ~ from; to (to provide ~ from the city to the airport) 5. in the absence of, without ~ (without public ~, may I stay the night with you?)

transpose *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; into, to (to ~ a song into a different key)

transposition *n.* a ~ from; into, to (the ~ of a song into a different key)

transship *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from; to

transshipment *n.* ~ from; to

trap *n.* ["device for catching animals or people"] ["stratagem for tricking unsuspecting people"] 1. to bait; lay, set (up) a ~ (for) 2. to spring a ~ on 3. to fall into a ~ 4. to lure smb. into a ~ 5. a booby; death ~; mousetrap; radar, speed ~; a sand ~ (in golf) (see also **booby trap**) ["mouth"] (slang) 6. to shut one's ~

trapeze *n.* 1. on a ~ 2. (misc.) to hang from and perform on a ~

trapper *n.* an animal; fur ~

trash *n.* (esp. AE; CE has *refuse, rubbish*) 1. to accumulate ~ 2. to collect, pick up ~ 3. to dispose of, dump ~ (BE prefers *to tip refuse*) 4. to put out the ~ 5. ~ accumulates, piles up 6. (misc.) (derog.) trailer ~ ("members of the underclass"); white ~ ("poor white people in the southern US") (see also **garbage**)

trauma *n.* 1. to cause (a) ~ 2. to go through, suffer (a) ~ 3. (an) emotional; physical; psychological ~ (to go through the psychological ~ of being abandoned as a child)

travel I *n.* 1. air; rail; sea; space; time ~ 2. business-class; deluxe; first-class; second-class; tourist-class ~ 3. extensive; foreign, international, overseas ~ 4. ~ across; in; through (~ in Canada; ~ through the Rockies) 5. ~ by (~ by air) 6. ~ from; to (~ from London to Tokyo) (see also **travels**)

travel II *v.* 1. to ~ extensively, widely; far; far and wide; overseas 2. to ~ business-class; deluxe; economy; first-class; second-class; tourist-class 3. to ~ incognito; light 4. (D; intr.) to ~ across; in; through (to ~ in Canada; to ~ through the Rockies) 5. (D; intr.) to ~ by (to ~ by air) 6. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ from London to Tokyo) 7. (d; intr.) to ~ with (to be ~ing with a group of students) 8. (misc.) to ~ on business; to ~ downstream; to ~ upstream; to ~ the world

traveler, traveller *n.* 1. an experienced, seasoned ~ 2. an air ~ 3. a commercial ~ (old-fashioned; BE; CE has *traveling salesman*) 4. (misc.) a fellow ~ ("a Communist sympathizer")

travels *n.* on one's ~ (on our ~ we saw many interesting places)

travesty *n.* 1. to make a ~ of 2. a mere; shocking ~ 3. a ~ of, on (to make a shocking ~ of justice)

tray *n.* 1. a serving ~ 2. on a ~

treachery *n.* 1. an act of ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to sell military information to a foreign power)

tread I *n.* ["step"] 1. a firm; heavy; light ~ (to walk with a heavy ~) ["mark"] 2. tire ~s (as left on mud) ["pattern of ridges"] 3. a worn ~ 4. a tire ~

tread II *v.* 1. (can be fig.) (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ on smb.'s toes) 2. (P; intr.) to ~ softly ("Tread softly because you ~ on my dreams." – W.B. Yeats, "He Wishes for the Cloths of Heaven," 1899)

treadle *n.* to work a ~

treadmill *n.* on a ~ (often fig.)

treason *n.* 1. to commit; plot ~ 2. high ~ 3. an act of ~ (against one's own country) 4. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to sell military information to a foreign power)

treasonable see **treasonous**

treasonous *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to sell military information to a foreign power)

treasure *n.* 1. an art ~ 2. a national; priceless; real ~ (also fig.) (my dear, your cleaning lady is a real ~!) 3. (a) buried; sunken ~ (to find ¬buried/a buried¬ ~; to raise sunken ~ from the bottom of the sea) 4. a ~ trove

treat I *n.* ["source of joy"] 1. to provide a ~ 2. a ~ for (their visit was/provided a real ~ for us) 3. as a ~ (they planned their visit as a ~ for us) 4. a ~ to + inf. (it was a ~ to watch them dance = it was a ~ watching them dance) (see also *trick or treat!* at **trick I** *n.*) ["paying for the food or entertainment of others"] 5. to stand ~ (esp. AE) 6. (misc.) it's my ~

treat II *v.* 1. ("to describe") to ~ (a subject) exhaustively, painstakingly, thoroughly 2. ("to deal with") to ~ badly; cruelly; fairly; harshly; kindly; leniently; successfully; unfairly; unsuccessfully; well 3. (d; tr.) to ~ as ("to deal with") (they ~ed us as honored guests; she ~s me as if I was/were dirt) 4. (D; tr.) ("to try to cure") to ~ for; with (to ~ smb. for a cold with a new drug; to ~ walls for dry rot with chemicals) 5. (d; tr.) ("to deal with") to ~ like (they ~ed us like honored guests; he ~ed him like his own brother; she ~s me like dirt) 6. (formal) (d; intr.) to ~ of ("to deal with") (her books ~ of economic problems) 7. (D; refl., tr.) to ~ to ("to provide with at one's own expense") (to ~ smb. to a decent meal) 8. (d; tr.) ("to deal with") to ~ with (to ~ smb. with kindness)

treatise *n.* (formal) 1. to write a ~ 2. a learnèd; scientific; theoretical ~ 3. a ~ on, upon (she's written several learnèd ~s on economic problems)

treatment *n.* ["care"] ["cure"] 1. to administer, give, provide ~ 2. to get, have, receive, undergo ~ 3. to respond to ~ 4. inpatient; medical; outpatient; radiation; shock ~ 5. the ~ was effective, successful; ineffective, unsuccessful 6. ~ for (to undergo (a course of) ~ for alcoholism; to have ~ for dry rot) 7. in, under ~ (in ~ for alcoholism) 8. (misc.) a beauty ~ ["method of dealing with"] 9. gentle; humane; kid-glove; kind ~ 10. equal, equitable; fair ~ 11. preferential; red-carpet; special ~ (to receive preferential ~) 12. inequitable; shabby; uneven; unfair ~ 13. atrocious, barbarous, barbaric, brutal, cruel, harsh, inhumane ~ (brutal ~ of prisoners) 14. (colloq.) the full; VIP ("special") ~ (they got the full/VIP ~) 15. the silent ~ (to give smb. the silent ~) ["description, study"] 16. a definitive; exhaustive, lengthy ~ 17. a cursory; superficial ~

treaty *n.* 1. to conclude, sign; negotiate, work out a ~ 2. to confirm, ratify; throw out a ~ (the Senate must confirm all ~ties) 3. to honor a ~ 4. to break, violate a ~ 5. to abrogate, denounce, repudiate a ~ 6. a draft ~ 7. a bilateral, bipartite; multilateral ~ 8. a commercial, trade; extradition ~ 9. a nonaggression; peace ~ 10. a nonproliferation; test-ban ~ 11. a ~ between; with (a ~ between former foes) 12. a ~ to + inf. (they signed a ~ to settle all border disputes by arbitration) 13. (misc.) the articles; provisions; terms of a ~ (under the terms of the ~, we have to give up our nuclear weapons); the parties to a ~ = the signatories of a ~; the ~ obliges all its signatories to give up their nuclear weapons

tree *n.* ["woody plant with a trunk"] 1. to grow; plant a ~ 2. to prune, trim a ~ 3. to chop down, cut down, fell a ~ 4. to uproot a ~ (the gale uprooted several ~s) 5. a shade ~ (see also **Christmas tree**) 6. a deciduous; evergreen ~ 7. a tall ~ 8. a ~ grows 9. an avenue, line; clump, cluster; grove; stand of ~s 10. in; on a ~ (monkeys live in ~s; fruit grows on ~s) 11. (misc.) to climb a ~; (colloq.) up a ~ (AE), up a gum ~ (BE) ("stymied"); to be barking up the wrong ~ ("to be mistaken") ["something resembling a tree"] 12. a family, genealogical ~ 13. a clothes; shoe ~ ["misc."] 14. they cannot see the forest (AE)/wood (BE) for the ~s ("they see all of the details, but they do not recognize the essence of the problem")

trek I *n.* ["long trip"] to go on, make a ~ from; to

trek II *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ across the fields; "None will break ranks, though nations ~ from progress." – Wilfred Owen, 1893–1918, "Strange Meeting"

tremble *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at the thought of going back to the front line) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from, with (to ~ from the cold; to ~ with fear) 3. (E) I ~ to think of going back to the front line!

tremor *n.* 1. a nervous ~ 2. a perceptible; slight ~ 3. uncontrollable; violent ~s (uncontrollable ~s of nervousness) 4. an earth ~

trench *n.* 1. to dig a ~ 2. a slit ~ 3. (misc.) in the ~es (during World War I) (see also *trench warfare* at **warfare**)

trend *n.* 1. to create, set, start a ~ 2. to buck (colloq.) (AE); reverse a ~ 3. a discernible, noticeable; general; marked ~ 4. a growing; recent ~ 5. a downward; upward ~ 6. an unwelcome; welcome ~ 7. an economic; political ~ 8. a ~ away from; towards 9. a ~ in (is there a trend in fashion away from long skirts and towards shorter ones?)

trepidation *n.* fear and ~ (the very idea of work fills him with ~ and trepidation)

trespass I *n.* criminal ~

trespass II *v.* 1. (obsol.) (D; intr.) to ~ against ("And forgive us our trespasses, As we forgive them that ~ against us." – "The Lord's Prayer": *The* (Anglican) *Book of Common Prayer,* 1662) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ on a neighbor's property)

trespassing *n.* No Trespassing!

trial *n.* ["legal proceedings"] 1. to conduct, hold a ~ 2. to bring smb. to ~; to put smb. on ~ 3. to await ~ 4. to face; stand ~ for (he stood ~ for embezzlement) 5. to come, go to ~ (the case went to ~) 6. to waive a (jury) ~ (the accused waived a jury ~) 7. a fair; speedy ~ (to get a fair ~) 8. a closed; open, public; show ~ 9. a court; jury (or: a ~ by jury); summary ~ 10. a murder; war-crimes ~ 11. at a ~ (she testified at his ~) 12. on ~ (for) (he was on ~ for murder) ["test, experiment"] 13. to carry out, conduct a ~ 14. to undergo ~s 15. a clinical; controlled; field ~ 16. a ~ shows; suggests (the clinical ~s suggest that the new drug may not be effective or safe) 17. (misc.) by ~ and error (see also *trial period* at **period**) ["source of worry"] 18. a ~ to (they are a ~ to their parents) 19. (misc.) ~s and tribulations

triangle *n.* 1. to draw, make a ~ 2. an acute; congruent; equilateral; isosceles; obtuse; right (AE), right-angled (BE); scalene ~ 3. the apex of a ~ 4. (fig.) the eternal ~; a love ~

tribe *n.* 1. to lead a ~ 2. a native; nomadic, wandering; primitive ~ 3. (misc.) to belong to a ~; a member of a ~ USAGE NOTE: Because of such collocations as "primitive tribe," *tribe* is nowadays often replaced by *people*, so that "a nomadic tribe" becomes “a nomadic people” and “the Cherokee tribe” becomes “the Cherokee people.” In North America, the word *nation* is also used, esp. in connection with political or territorial rights, so that in such contexts “the Cherokee people” becomes “the Cherokee nation.”

tribulation *n.* 1. to bear, endure a ~ 2. (misc.) trials and ~s

tribunal *n.* 1. to go to; set up a ~ 2. a military; war-crimes ~ 3. (GB) an industrial ~ 4. at, before a ~ (to appear before a military ~)

tribute *n.* ["money paid under duress"] 1. to exact ~ from 2. to pay ~ to ["testimonial"] 3. to pay (a) ~ to 4. a fitting; glowing; moving, touching ~ 5. a floral ~ (“a bunch of flowers”) 6. a ~ to 7. in ~ to (see also *tribute band* at **band I** *n.*)

trick I *n.* ["dexterous feat, as of sleight of hand"] 1. to do, perform a ~ 2. a card; hat; magic; party ~ (performed the hat ~ of hitting three homers in one game) ["prank"]["deceitful act"] 3. to play a ~ on smb.; to fall for a ~ 4. a clever ~ 5. a cheap, contemptible, dirty, low, mean, nasty, shabby, sneaky ~ (our clever ~ ¬worked/came off¬ but their sneaky ~ failed) 6. a con, confidence ~ (BE; AE has *confidence game*) ["scoring unit in a card game"] 7. to lose; take, win a ~ ["misc."] 8. to do the ~ (“to be exactly what is needed”); smb.’s bag of ~s (“smb.’s expertise”); ~ or treat! (at Halloween); she doesn’t miss a ~ (“she notices everything”); the ~ is to know when you’re beaten and give up quickly (see also *trick question* at **question I** *n.*; **tricks**)

trick II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into doing smt.) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ out of (she was ~ed out of her money)

trickle I *n.* 1. a mere ~ 2. (misc.) to dwindle/slow to a ~ and then increase to a flood

trickle II *v.* (P; intr.) stragglers kept ~ling into camp; blood ~d from the cut

trickle down *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to the general population from the elite)

tricks *n.* 1. (often pol.) dirty ~ 2. (misc.) they are up to their old ~ again

trifle I *n.* a mere ~

trifle II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with smb.’s affections; they are not to be ~d with)

trigger *n.* ["device for releasing the hammer of a firearm"] 1. to press, pull, release, squeeze a/the ~ 2. a hair (“delicate”) ~ 3. (misc.) quick on the ~ (also fig.: “quick to take offense and get hot under the collar”) (see also *trigger finger* at **finger I** *n.*) ["device that fires an explosive"] 4. a ~ for (also fig.) (the ~ for their rebellion was an insult to their chief)

trim I *n.* ["good condition"]["condition"] 1. fighting ~ (in fighting ~) 2. in ~ (to be in ~) ["ornamental metalwork on a car"] 3. chrome ~ (he scratched my chrome ~!)

trim II *v.* 1. to ~ neatly (a neatly ~med beard) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ away; from, off (to ~ the fat from the budget)

trimmings *n.* ["garnishings"]["extras"] with all the ~ (roast turkey with all the ~; they got the full treatment with all the ~)

trip I *n.* 1. to go on, make, set off on, take a ~ (she went on a ~; I’ve made this ~ many times; we would like to take a ~) 2. to arrange, organize, plan a ~ 3. to cancel; postpone a ~ 4. an extended, long; short ~ 5. a boat; business; camping; day; field; overseas; pleasure; return; round; round-the-world; wedding ~ (we are planning a round-the-world ~) 6. a ~ along; around 7. a ~ from; to (they went on a ~ to Canada; to take a ~ from England to Australia) 8. a ~ through (a ~ through the west) 9. on a ~ (she was away on a ~) 10. (misc.) a ~ abroad; a bad ~ (on drugs); an ego ~ (“behavior that satisfies one’s ego”) (see also **guilt trip**)

trip II *v.* (D; intr.) (“to stumble”) to ~ on, over (to ~ on a rock and fall; she was ~ping over every word)

triplets *n.* 1. to have, give birth to ~ 2. a set of ~

triplicate *n.* in ~ (to prepare all documents in ~)

tripod *n.* 1. to set up a ~ 2. on a ~ (the camera rested on a ~)

triumph I *n.* 1. to achieve, score a ~ 2. a glorious, signal, splendid, stunning; hard-won; short-lived ~ 3. a ~ against (a ~ against overwhelming odds) 4. a ~ for (the result was a personal ~ for her) 5. a ~ over (a ~ over evil/adversity) 6. in ~ (to return home in ~)

triumph II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ over

triumphant *adj.* ~ in; over

trolley *n.* ["small wheeled conveyance"] (BE) 1. to load; push; unload a ~ 2. a (shopping) ~ (in a supermarket) (AE has *shopping cart*) 3. a tea ~ (AE has *tea wagon*) 4. a sweet ~ (in a restaurant) ["streetcar, tram"] (AE) 5. see **streetcar** USAGE NOTE: Wheeled conveyances that are called *trolleys* in BE are often called *carts* in AE. In a library, for example, books are moved on a *trolley* (BE) or on a *cart* (AE).

trombone *n.* to play the ~

troop I *n.* 1. a cavalry ~ 2. a (Boy) Scout; Girl Scout (AE); Guide ~

troop II *v.* (P; intr.) the children ~ed into school

trooper *n.* 1. (US) a state ~ 2. (misc.) to swear like a ~ (“to use vile language”)

troops *n.* 1. to commit; deploy; dispatch; lead; rally ~ 2. to review ~ 3. to station ~ (in a country); to withdraw ~ (from a country) 4. green; seasoned ~ 5. victorious ~ 6. defeated; demoralized ~ 7. airborne; armored; ground; motorized; mounted; ski ~ 8. elite; irregular; regular; shock ~ 9. ~ fight; serve; withdraw

trophy *n.* 1. to award, give, present a ~ 2. to get, lift (BE) (colloq.), receive, win a ~ 3. to display a ~ 4. a sports; war ~ 5. a ~ for (they proudly displayed the ~ they’d received for winning the tournament)

tropic *n.* the Tropic of Cancer; Capricorn (see also **tropics**)

tropics *n.* in the ~ (to live in the ~)

trot I *n.* 1. at a ~ 2. (misc.) (BE; colloq.) on the ~ all day ("busy all day"); that driver has won four races on the ~ ("that driver has won four races in succession")

trot II *v.* (P; intr.) the horses ~ted (a)round the track

troth *n.* (old-fashioned) to pledge, plight one's ~ ("to make a promise of marriage, to get engaged to smb.")

trouble I *n.* 1. to cause, foment, make, start, stir up ~ 2. to give smb. ~ (they gave their parents a lot of ~ = they were a lot of ~ to their parents) 3. to be asking for, inviting, looking for ~ (if you go on like that you're just asking for ~ !) 4. to go through, have, run into ~ (she had a lot of ~ with her back) 5. to go to ~ (they went to a great deal of/considerable/enormous ~ to arrange the interview) 6. to get (smb.) into ~ (we got into ~ during our trip; she got herself into serious ~ with the police; they got me into ~ at school; to get a girl into ~ (old-fashioned) ("to get a girl pregnant")) 7. to take the ~ to do smt. (I took the ~ to check on her story) 8. to get (smb.) out of ~ (I got out of ~; she got herself out of ~; they got him out of ~) 9. to avoid, steer clear of ~ 10. to prevent ~ 11. deep, real, serious ~ 12. back; engine; heart ~ (to develop engine ~) 13. ~ is brewing 14. ~ blows over 15. ~ about, over; between; with (we had ~ with our neighbors over the noise that they were making – but there's been ~ between us and the neighbors for some time) 16. a bit of ~ 17. no ~ to + inf. (it's no ~ to call them) 18. in ~ (with) (they were in ~; he was in ~ with the police) 19. out of ~ (to keep out of ~) 20. (misc.) there may be ~ ahead !; those events spell/mean ~ for us all !; to put smb. to a lot of ~; smt. isn't worth the ~ = smt. is more ~ than it's worth; sending a telegram will save you the ~ of making a second trip; she has ~ going up steps; he had no ~ memorizing the material for the test (see also *trouble spot* at **spot I** *n.*; *more trouble than it's worth* at **worth I** *adj., prep.*)

trouble II *v.* 1. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ about (don't ~ yourself about the arrangements) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ for (could I ~ you for the salt?) 3. (colloq.) (E; in neg. sentences) she didn't even ~ to lock the door ! 4. (colloq.) (H; in interrogative sentences; no passive) could I ~ you to pass the salt ? 5. (R) it ~d me (to read) that no negotiations were scheduled

troubled *adj.* 1. deeply ~ 2. ~ by, with (she is ~ with arthritis) 3. ~ to + inf. (I was ~ to read that no negotiations were scheduled) 4. ~ that + clause (I was ~ that no negotiations were scheduled)

troublesome *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to be without electricity = it's ~ being without electricity)

trousers *n.* 1. to have ~ on, to wear ~ 2. to put on ~ 3. to take off ~ 4. to button up; unbutton; unzip; zip up one's ~ 5. baggy; long; short; tight ~ 6. a pair of ~ 7. in ~ 8. (misc.) a trouser leg

trowel *n.* a bricklayer's; gardener's; plasterer's ~

truant *n.* to play ~ (see also *truant officer* at **officer**)

truce *n.* 1. to agree (BE), agree on, agree to, arrange, call, work out a ~ 2. to announce, declare a ~ 3. to violate a ~ 4. to denounce a ~ 5. an armed; uneasy ~ 6. a ~ between 7. during a ~

truck I *n.* ["vehicle"] 1. (esp. AE; BE often has *lorry, van*) to drive, operate; steer a ~ 2. to load; unload a ~ 3. (AE) a delivery, panel ~ (BE has *delivery van*) 4. a dump (esp. AE), dumper (BE), tipper (BE) ~ 5. (AE) a garbage, trash ~ (BE has *dustbin lorry, dustcart*) 6. (AE) a pickup; trailer ~ (BE has *articulated lorry*) 7. a breakdown (BE), tow (AE) ~ (BE also has *breakdown lorry, breakdown van*) 8. a railway ~ (BE; AE has *flatcar*) 9. a sound ~ 10. a ~ jackknifes

truck II *n.* ["dealings"] to have no ~ with

trudge *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ through the mud

true *adj.* 1. historically ~ 2. ~ to (~ to one's principles; ~ to form; ~ to life) 3. ~ to + inf. (it's simply not ~ to assume that all politicians are corrupt !) 4. ~ that + clause (it's just not ~ that all politicians are corrupt !) 5. (misc.) to come ~; to ring ~; to hold ~ ("to be valid")

truism *n.* 1. to mouth, utter a ~ (he's always mouthing ~s) 2. a well-worn ~ 3. (misc.) in ~s (to speak in well-worn ~s)

truly *adv.* (as in the complimentary close of a letter) (esp. AE) yours ~; yours very ~; very ~ yours (see **yours**)

trump *n.* ["winning card"] to play a ~

trump card *n.* ["final resource, ace in the hole"] to play one's ~

trumpet *n.* 1. to blow, play a ~ 2. a ~ blares, sounds (see also **horn** *n.* 6)

trumps *n.* to lead ~ (when playing cards)

trunk *n.* ["main stem"] 1. a tree ~ ["large piece of luggage"] 2. to pack; unpack one's ~ 3. to ship a ~ 4. a steamer; wardrobe ~ (see also **trunks**) USAGE NOTE: On cars, *trunk* is AE; *boot* is BE.

trunks *n.* 1. swimming ~ 2. a pair of ~

trust I *n.* ["reliance"] 1. to place, put one's ~ in 2. to earn, gain, win; have smb.'s ~ 3. to abuse, betray, violate smb.'s ~ 4. absolute; blind, unquestioning; universal ~ 5. public ~ ("A public office is a public ~" – attributed to US President Grover Cleveland, 1837-1908) 6. on ~ (to sell on ~) 7. a breach of ~ ["cartel"] 8. to break up a ~ ["fund"] 9. to set up a ~ (for a child) (see also *trust fund* at **fund**) 10. a unit ~ (BE; AE has *mutual fund*) 11. a blind; perpetual ~ (to place one's holdings in a blind ~ during one's term of office) 12. in ~ for (the money is held in ~ for a child)

trust II *v.* 1. to ~ blindly, implicitly 2. (d; intr.) ("to believe") to ~ in (to ~ in God; "In God We Trust." – motto on U.S. money) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to rely on") (to ~ to one's memory) 4. (d; tr.) ("to entrust") to ~ with (to ~ smb. with one's savings)

5. (H) (“to entrust”) I ~ed her to deposit the funds 6. (L) (“to believe”) we ~ that you will keep your word 7. (misc.) (ironic) ~ them to do smt. silly!

truth *n.* 1. to ascertain, elicit, establish, find; face, face up to; get at; search for, seek the ~ 2. to admit; expose, reveal; speak, tell the ~ 3. to distort, pervert, stretch the ~ 4. the absolute, basic, fundamental, Gospel, naked, plain, unvarnished, whole ~ (“I swear by Almighty God that the evidence I shall give shall be the ~, the whole ~ and nothing but the ~.” – formula used by court witnesses in England and Wales) 5. the awful; bitter; ultimate ~ 6. (the) historical ~ 7. an element, grain, kernel of ~ 8. (there is) not an iota, shred of ~ (in that) 9. the ~ about (I finally discovered the ~ about their origins) 10. ~ in (there is some ~ in their allegations; is there any ~ in that?) 11. in ~ 12. (misc.) where does the ~ lie?; it had a ring of ~ about it; the ~ is that she actually did serve in the army!; the ~ will out!

truthful *adj.* ~ about; in

try I *n.* 1. to have, make a ~ at 2. (colloq.) to give smt. a ~ 3. (rugby) to convert, score a ~ (against) 4. a valiant ~ 5. a ~ at, for 6. a ~ to + inf. (they made another ~ to have the decision reversed) 7. (misc.) to give it the old college ~ (AE; colloq.) (“to make a determined effort”); it’s worth a ~

try II *v.* 1. to ~ hard; to ~ one’s best 2. (D; intr.) (“to attempt”) to ~ for (to ~ for a prize) 3. (D; tr.) (“to subject to trial”) to ~ for (they tried her for murder) 4. (E) (“to attempt”) she tried to jog but couldn’t 5. (G) (“to attempt”) she tried jogging, but her ankles would hurt USAGE NOTES: 1. The phrase *try and do smt.* is a colloq. variant of *try to do smt.*, but has no past tense. 2. The sentence *she tried to jog* usu. means that she never was able to jog; *she tried jogging* means that she was able to jog, but gave it up after a while.

try on *v.* (misc.) he tried the hat on for size = he tried on the hat for size

tryout *n.* to hold a ~ for (to hold a ~ for the team) (see also **tryouts**)

try out *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (esp. AE) (to ~ for a major part in a play) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ on (they tried out the new drug on animals = they tried the new drug out on animals)

tryouts *n.* (esp. AE) to hold ~ for (to hold ~ for the team)

tryst *n.* (formal) 1. to make, keep a ~ 2. a ~ with (“Long years ago we made a ~ with destiny” – Jawaharlal Nehru, August 14th, 1947)

tsar (BE) see **czar**

tsunami *n.* 1. a ~ hits, strikes (the ~ struck the coastal areas of several cities) 2. (misc.) the ~ has already claimed many lives

tub *n.* [“bathtub”] (esp. AE; BE prefers *bath*) 1. to fill the ~ (for a bath) 2. to empty the ~ (after a bath) 3. to clean out; scrub (out) a ~

tube *n.* [“channel within the body”] 1. bronchial; Eustachian; Fallopian ~s [“rubber casing”] 2. an inner ~ [“hollow cylinder”] 3. an electron; picture, television; test ~ 4. a vacuum ~ (AE; BE has *valve*) 5. (slang) the boob ~ (“television”) [“container”] 6. to squeeze a ~ (of toothpaste) [“underground”] (esp. BE) 7. to take the/a ~ 8. by ~ (to go/travel) by ~ 9. on the ~ (to travel to work on the ~) (AE has *subway*) (see also Usage Note at **train I** *n.*) [“system of tube trains and stations”] 10. from; in; to the ~ (I couldn’t find the right entrance to the ~, the right platform in the ~, or the right exit from the ~!) (see also *tube station* at **station I** *n.*; *tube system* at **system**; *tube train* at **train I** *n.*) [“misc.”] 11. along; down; up a ~

tuberculosis *n.* to contract, develop, get; have ~

tubing *n.* 1. copper; glass; flexible; plastic; rubber ~ 2. a length, piece of ~

tuck *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ inside; into (to ~ a child into bed; he ~ed his shirt inside, into his trousers) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ behind; under (she ~ed her cigarette behind her ear; she ~ed the napkin under her chin)

tug I *n.* [“pull”] 1. to give a ~ at; on [“tugboat”] 2. a seagoing ~

tug II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at; on (to ~ at a rope) 2. (P; tr.) they ~ged the ship out of the harbor

tuition *n.* [“instruction”] (BE) 1. to give ~ 2. to get, have, receive ~ 3. private ~ (in) 4. ~ from 5. ~ for 6. ~ in (she’s getting ~ in Italian from Signor Da Ponte for the exam) [“payment for instruction”] (esp. AE) 7. to pay ~ for 8. free; full; half ~ (to pay full ~; to get/have/receive free ~)

tumble I *n.* (colloq.) [“fall”] 1. to have, take a ~ 2. a bad, nasty ~ (she took a nasty ~; shares have taken quite a ~ recently) 3. a sharp, steep; sudden ~ 4. a ~ from [“sign of recognition”] (AE) 5. to give smb. a ~ (they wouldn’t give us a ~) (see also *tumble dryer* at **dryer**)

tumble II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into bed) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ out of (to ~ out of a chair) 3. (colloq.) (esp. AE) (d; intr.) to ~ to (“to catch on to, comprehend”) (they didn’t ~ to the meaning of the clues) 4. (P; intr.) (“to fall”) to ~ down the stairs

tummy *n.* [“stomach”] 1. to upset smb.’s ~ 2. an empty; full; upset ~ 3. smb.’s ~ aches, hurts; growls, rumbles 4. on one’s ~ (to lie on one’s ~) USAGE NOTE: In AE, *tummy* is used typically by or to children. In BE it is also used frequently by or to adults as a kind of euphemism for *stomach.*

tumor, tumour *n.* 1. to excise, remove, take out a ~ 2. a benign; inoperable; malignant ~ 3. a brain ~ 4. a ~ in; on

tumult *n.* [“violent, noisy agitation”] 1. to cause ~ 2. in ~ over 3. (misc.) “The ~ and the shouting dies; The Captains and the Kings depart” – Rudyard Kipling (1865-1936), “Recessional”

tune I *n.* [“melody”] 1. to compose, write a ~ 2. to hum; play; sing; whistle a ~ (to play a ~ on the piano) 3. to carry (“sing the notes of”) a ~ 4. a ~ of, to (the ~ to a song) 5. a catchy; haunting; lilting ~

6. in ~ ; out of ~ (to sing in ~ ; she was playing out of ~) 7. to a ~ (to dance to a ~) 8. (misc.) (BE) a signature ~ (“theme song of a program”) ["agreement"] 9. in ~ with (in ~ with the times) 10. out of ~ with ["attitude"] (colloq.) 11. to change one’s ~ ["misc."] (colloq.) 12. to call the ~ (“to be in command”) ; to sing a different ~ (“to begin to act differently”) ; to the ~ of (we danced to the ~ of a lively old song) (also fig.) (“to about the extent of”) (colloq.) (I’m in hock to a loan shark to the ~ of $30,000 !)

tune II *v.* (d ; tr.) to ~ to (we ~d our sets to the local station to hear the local news ; stay ~d to this station for the latest news)

tune in *v.* (D ; intr.) to ~ on (esp. AE), to (to ~ to a station)

tuner *n.* a piano ~

tune-up *n.* 1. to do a ~ (of an engine) ; to give (an engine) a ~ 2. an engine ~

tuning *n.* fine ~ (also fig.) (the fine ~ of the economy to meet current needs)

tunnel I *n.* 1. to bore, build, construct, dig a ~ 2. a Channel ; pedestrian ; railroad (AE), railway (BE) ; wind ~ 3. a ~ caves in ; extends, goes, leads, runs 4. through a ~ (to drive through a ~) 5. (misc.) (fig.) the light at the end of the ~

tunnel II *v.* (P ; intr.) to ~ under the Channel ; termites ~ through wood ; the prisoners ~ed their way under the fence and escaped

turbulence *n.* clear-air ~

turkey *n.* 1. to breed, raise ~s 2. to carve ; roast ; stuff a ~ 3. a wild ~ 4. ~s gobble, go “gobble gobble” 5. a female ~ is a hen 6. a male ~ is a cock, gobbler, tom, or turkeycock (see also **cold turkey)**

turmoil *n.* 1. complete ~ 2. in (a) ~ (the country was in ~) 3. (misc.) the country was plunged/thrown into ~

turn I *n.* ["change of direction"] ["direction"] 1. to make, negotiate ; give smt. a ~ (to negotiate a difficult ~ ; to give the handle another ~) 2. to take a ~ (the conversation took an interesting ~) 3. a left ; right ; sharp ~ ; about-turn, 180-degree turn, U-turn (to do/make a U-turn) 4. a ~ to (a ~ to the right ; take the first ~ on the right) ["proper order, opportunity"] 5. to have, take one’s/a ~ ; to give smb. a ~ (“will you please give me a ~ now ? everyone else has had one !”) 6. to take ~s at ; with (we took ~s with them standing/at standing guard = (BE) we took it in ~s with them to stand guard) 7. to wait one’s ~ 8. to miss one’s ~ 9. smb.’s ~ comes (my ~ came) 10. smb.’s ~ to + inf. (it’s my ~ to drive) 11. by ~s 12. in ~ (“in sequence”) (everyone criticized him in ~) ; (“in consequence”) (everyone criticized him and he in ~ criticized everyone) ; out of ~ ["change"] 13. to take a ~ (the situation took a ~ for the better) 14. a dramatic ; favorable ; unexpected ; unfavorable ~ (events took a dramatic ~ for the worse) 15. (usu. of business conditions) a downward ; upward ~ (the market took an upward ~) 16. at the ~ (of the century) ["short walk"] 17. to take a ~ (let’s take a ~ around/round the park) ["shock"] 18. to give smb. a ~ (the revelation gave me quite a ~) ["misc."] 19. at every ~ (“on every occasion”) ; every twist and ~ in/of the road ; on the ~ (BE) (“about to change”) (the political situation is definitely on the ~) ; to do smb. a good ~ (“to do smb. a favor”) (see also *turn of phrase* at **phrase**)

turn II *v.* 1. (“to change direction”) to ~ abruptly, sharply 2. (d ; intr., tr.) to ~ against (“to become antagonistic towards”) ; (“to make antagonistic towards”) (to ~ against one’s friends ; what ~ed him against us?) 3. (d ; intr.) to ~ for ; to (“to resort to”) (she ~ed to her family in her time of need ; they had to ~ somewhere for help) 4. (d ; intr.) (“to shift”) to ~ from ; to (let’s ~ from this topic to a more pleasant one ; to ~ to a new field) 5. (D ; intr.) (“to change direction”) to ~ into ; onto (to ~ into a side street) 6. (d ; intr., tr.) to ~ from ; into, to (“to be converted, transformed into”) ; (“to convert, transform into”) (caterpillars ~ into butterflies ; freezing water ~s (in)to ice ; his love ~ed to hate ; they ~ed the meeting into a brawl ; the incident ~ed her into a better person ; he’s ~ed from a boy into a man ! ; the good news ~ed her tears to smiles ; ~ your junk into cash by selling it to us !) 7. (D ; intr.) to ~ off ; onto (“to leave”) (to ~ off the main road and onto the first side road) 8. (d ; intr.) to ~ on (“to attack”) (to ~ on smb. in anger ; the speaker finally ~ed on the hecklers) 9. (d ; intr.) to ~ on, upon (“to depend, hinge on”) (everything ~s on the judge’s interpretation of the law) 10. (D ; intr.) (“to change direction”) to ~ to (to ~ to the right) 11. (d ; intr.) (“to direct one’s attention, efforts”) to ~ to (to ~ to a new subject ; she ~ed to the study of art ; she ~ed to shouting (in order) to get attention) 12. (d ; tr.) (“to direct”) to ~ to, towards (to ~ one’s attention to a new problem ; ~ your face towards the mirror ; you should not ~ your back to the audience) 13. (D ; intr.) to ~ towards (“to face”) (~ towards me) 14. (E) he ~ed to go ; he ~ed to face the audience (“he turned and faced the audience”) 15. (N ; used with an adjective) (“to cause to become”) we ~ed the dog loose ; worry ~ed her hair gray 16. (S) to ~ traitor ; she ~ ed pale ; the light has ~ed green 17. (misc.) to ~ anticlockwise (BE)/counterclockwise (AE) ; to ~ left/right ; to ~ smt. inside out ; to ~ smt. upside down ; to ~ sixteen (“to reach one’s sixteenth birthday”) ; the road twists and ~s (see *turn one’s back on smb.; turn one’s back to smb.* at **back II** *n.* ; the Usage Note for **grow**)

turnabout *n.* ["reversal"] to do a ~

turn away *v.* (D ; intr.) to ~ from

turn back *v.* (D ; intr.) to ~ from ; to

turn down *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ to (please ~ the heater down to a lower setting) 2. (N) to ~ the radio down low ; to ~ (smt./smb.) down cold (AE)/flat (“to reject outright”)

turn in *v.* 1. (B) (“to hand over”) they ~ed him in to the police ; she ~ed the assignment in to the teacher; he refused to ~ himself in to the authorities 2. (D; tr.) ("to trade in") (esp. AE) to ~ for (she ~ed her old car in for a new one) 3. (s) to ~ early ("to go to sleep early")

turning *n.* (esp. BE) to take a ~ (take the first ~ on the right)

turning point *n.* 1. to be, constitute, mark, represent a ~ (in history) 2. to reach a ~ 3. a ~ for (for us the ~ came when we realized what to do) 4. a ~ in 5. at a ~ (we are at a ~ in history)

turn-off *n.* 1. to take a ~ 2. a ~ for (take the next ~ for the side road) 3. a ~ from; into, onto (take the next ~ from the main road into a side road)

turn off *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from; into (we ~ed off from the main road into a side road) 2. (misc.) they ~ed off at the last corner/minute

turn on *v.* (slang) 1. (D; intr.) to ~ to ("to become excited about") (to ~ to Beethoven) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ to ("to excite about") (to ~ smb. on to Beethoven) 3. (R) it really ~s me on to hear Beethoven 4. (Q) (BE) ("hinge on") (the outcome of the election will ~ which candidate the voters trust more)

turnout *n.* ["attendance"] ["participation"] 1. to attract a (large) ~ 2. an above-average; big, enormous, heavy, huge, large; good; record, unprecedented ~ 3. a disappointing; light, poor, small ~ 4. (a) voter ~ (the election has attracted an unprecedented voter ~)

turn out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) ("to appear") to ~ for (a large crowd ~ed out for her first concert) 2. (E) ("to prove") a large crowd ~ed out to attend her first concert; the test ~ed out to be positive; they ~ed out to have been away on a trip at the time = they had been away on a trip at the time, as it ~ed out; Samuel L. Clemens ~ed out to have written the works of Mark Twain. = the works of Mark Twain ~ed out to have been written by Samuel L. Clemens 3. (L) it ~ed out that they had been away on a trip at the time 4. (s) the test ~ed out positive

turnover *n.* ["movement of goods or personnel"] 1. to have; record a ~ 2. a brisk, quick, rapid ~ 3. a high; low; record ~ 4. (a) staff ~ ["filled pastry"] 5. an apple ~

turn over *v.* (B) ("to hand over") to ~ a thief over to the police

turnpike *n.* ["toll expressway"] (AE) 1. (to travel) by ~ 2. (to drive) on a ~

turnstile *n.* 1. to go through, pass through a ~ 2. a subway (AE), underground (BE) ~

turn up *v.* ("to appear") 1. (D; intr.) to ~ as (she ~ed up as the new principal of the school) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (they did not ~ for the ceremony) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ in (she finally ~ed up in London) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ to (please ~ the heater up to a higher setting) 5. (D; intr.) to ~ with (she ~ed up with the missing money) 6. (E) things were looking bad but he was sure smt. or smb. would ~ to/and save him 7. (s) he ~ed up drunk at/for work 8. (misc.) they ~ed up unexpectedly; they ~ed ¬the radio/the volume/the sound¬ up high ("they turned the radio on very loud")

turpitude *n.* moral ~

turtle *n.* 1. a fresh-water; land (AE); mud; sea; snapping ~ 2. (misc.) to turn ~ ("to capsize") USAGE NOTE: Although CE has both *turtle* and *tortoise*, the two are distinguished much more clearly in BE than in AE. In BE, turtles are aquatic; tortoises, terrestrial. In AE, the word *turtle* often serves as a generic term covering tortoises as well as turtles.

tusk *n.* an elephant; walrus; wild-boar ~

tussle I *n.* (colloq.) 1. to get into, have a ~ 2. a ~ about, over; between; for; with (there was quite a ~ between them for control of the company) 3. a ~ to + inf. (there was quite a ~ between them to control the company)

tussle II *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ about, over; for; with (they ~d with each other for control of the company)

tutelage *n.* under smb.'s ~

tutor I *n.* 1. a course (BE); private ~ 2. a ~ of, to (old-fashioned or formal)

tutor II *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ in (to ~ smb. in physics)

tutorial *n.* ["course"] 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. to have a ~ with 3. a ~ about, on

TV see **television**; **television set**

TV set see **television set**

twang *n.* (typically somewhat derog.) 1. (to have) a nasal ~ 2. (misc.) to speak with a ~ (they speak with a nasal ~)

tweed *n.* 1. Harris; herringbone ~ 2. in ~s (dressed in ~s)

tweezers *n.* a pair of ~

twilight *n.* 1. at ~ 2. in the ~ (in the ~ of smb.'s career) (see also *twilight zone* at **zone I** *n.*)

twin *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (which town is your town ~ned with ?) (see also **twins**)

twine I *n.* a ball of ~

twine II *v.* (d; intr., refl.) to ~ around, round (the vines ~d (themselves) around the tree)

twinkle I *n.* 1. a ~ in smb.'s eyes (there was a ~ of amusement in her eyes) 2. with a ~ in one's eyes

twinkle II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ with (her eyes ~d with amusement)

twins *n.* 1. to have, give birth to ~ 2. conjoined, Siamese; fraternal; identical ~ 3. a pair, set of ~ USAGE NOTE: The misleading phrase *Siamese twins* is increasingly being replaced by the more accurate phrase *conjoined twins*.

twirl *v.* (D; intr., tr.) to ~ around (she ~ed the baton around her finger)

twist I *n.* ["type of dance"] 1. to dance, do the ~ ["twisting or being twisted"] 2. to give smt. a ~ 3. to have a ~ (the rope has a ~ in it) ["unexpected turn"] 4. to take a ~ 5. a bizarre, strange, unusual; ironic ~ (the matter took a bizarre ~) ["interpretation"] 6. to give a (new) ~ (to the news) ["approach, method"] 7. a new ~ (to) ["misc."] 8. every ~ and turn in/of the road

twist II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ (a)round (she ~ed the thread around her finger) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smt. into a certain shape) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ off (he ~ed the cap off the bottle) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ out of (to ~ smt. out of shape) 5. (D; tr.) to ~ to (~ the knob to the right) 6. (N; refl.) the prisoner ~ed himself free of his captors 7. (s) the prisoner ~ed free of his captors 8. (misc.) to ~ smb.'s arm ("to coerce smb."); to ~ smb. around one's little finger ("to manipulate smb."); the road ~s and turns

twitch I *n.* a nervous; uncontrollable ~

twitch II *v.* 1. to ~ nervously; uncontrollably 2. (D; intr.) to ~ in; with (to ~ in/with pain)

two *n.* to put ~ and ~ together ("to comprehend the significance of smt.")

two cents' worth *n.* (slang) (AE) ["opinion"] to add, get in, put in one's ~

twopenn'orth *n.* (colloq.) (BE) ["opinion"] to add, get in, put in one's ~

tycoon *n.* a business ~

type I *n.* ["metal blocks used in printing"] 1. to set ~ (to set ~ by hand) 2. bold, boldface, boldfaced; elite; italic; pica; regular; roman ~ 3. a font (esp. AE)/fount (BE) of ~ 4. in ~ (to set a book in ~) ["sort, category"] 5. a blood ~ 6. of a certain ~ (of all ~s; of several ~s; a person of that ~ = that ~ of person) 7. (misc.) ~ of thing (always going on about his enemies, his problems – that ~ of thing); to like all ~s of music; true to ~; a reversion to ~

type II *v.* (D; tr.) ("to typewrite") to ~ for (~ this letter for me)

typecast *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ as; in (to be typecast in a certain role; that actor has been typecast as a villain)

typewriter *n.* 1. to operate, use; pound (colloq.) a ~ 2. an electric; electronic; manual; portable ~ 3. a ~ skips 4. on a ~ (I did the letter on my electric ~)

typhoid *n.* to contract, develop, get; have ~

typhoon *n.* 1. a ~ hits, strikes; rages (the ~ struck several cities) 2. a ~ blows itself out, blows over, dies down, subsides

typhus *n.* to contract, develop, get; have ~

typical *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to say such things) 3. (misc.) how very ~ (it was) of her to say such things!

typing *n.* 1. to do (the) ~ 2. hunt-and-peck ~ (colloq.) 3. touch ~

typist *n.* 1. a copy; shorthand ~ (BE; AE has *stenographer*) 2. a clerk-typist; a hunt-and-peck ~ (colloq.); a touch-typist

tyranny *n.* 1. to impose ~ on 2. to overthrow (a) ~ 3. cruel, merciless; ruthless ~ 4. petty ~ 5. an act of ~ 6. ~ over ("I have sworn upon the altar of God … eternal hostility against every form of ~ over the mind of man." – Thomas Jefferson, 1800) 7. under (a) ~

tyrant *n.* 1. to overthrow a ~ 2. a cruel, merciless; ruthless ~ 3. a petty ~ 4. a ~ oppresses 5. the rule of a ~ 6. under a ~

tyre (BE) see **tire I** *n.*

U

UFO *n.* ["unidentified flying object, flying saucer"] 1. to sight a ~ 2. (misc.) a ~ abduction; sighting

ukase *n.* ["edict"] 1. to issue a ~ 2. a ~ that + clause; subj. (the tyrant issued a ~ that all prisoners ¬be/should be¬ beheaded)

ulcer *n.* 1. to have an ~ 2. a bleeding; duodenal; gastric, stomach; mouth; peptic; perforated ~

ultimate *n.* ["acme, the nth degree"] 1. the ~ in (the ~ in comfort) 2. (carried) to the ~

ultimatum *n.* 1. to deliver, give, issue, present an ~ 2. to get, receive an ~ 3. to accept an ~ 4. to defy; ignore; reject an ~ 5. to rescind, withdraw an ~ 6. an ~ demands, insists 7. an ~ that + clause; subj. (their government issued an ~ to our government demanding that all our troops ¬be/should be¬ disarmed at once.)

umbilical cord *n.* 1. to tie (off) an ~ 2. to cut the ~ (also fig.)

umbrage *n.* ["offense"] 1. to give ~ 2. to take ~ at

umbrella *n.* 1. to open an ~ 2. to fold (up) an ~ 3. a beach ~ 4. under an ~ (also fig.) (need Europe still shelter under the American nuclear ~?) (see also *umbrella organization* at **organization**; *umbrella term* at **term I** *n.*)

unable *adj.* (typically cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to reach him today, she tried to reach him but she was ~ to) USAGE NOTE: In passive constructions, *unable to* is replaced by *cannot* – X is sometimes unable to replace Y = Y can't always be replaced by X.

unacceptable *adj.* 1. completely, totally, wholly; socially ~ 2. ~ to (the conditions proved/were completely ~ to all concerned) 3. ~ to + inf. (it's wholly ~ to behave like that) USAGE NOTE: Perhaps under the influence of cultural relativism, the word *unacceptable* is used increasingly where people of an older generation would use *wrong*. Malcolm Bradbury's novel *Eating People is Wrong* (1959) might if published today be called *Eating People Is Unacceptable.*

unaccounted *adj.* ~ for (several items are still ~ for)

unaccustomed *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to (~ to public speaking) USAGE NOTE: It was a cliché attributed to inexperienced public speakers that they would begin their speeches by saying: Unaccusomed as I am to public speaking, …

unaffected *adj.* 1. ~ by 2. to remain ~

unafraid *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to dive off the high board)

unaided *adj.* ~ by; in

unamenable *adj.* (formal) ~ to

unanimity *n.* 1. to reach ~ 2. virtual ~ 3. ~ in

unanimous *adj.* 1. almost, virtually, well-nigh ~ 2. ~ in

unanswerable *adj.* ~ for; to (bureaucrats who think they are above the law and ~ for their actions to anybody)

unanswered *adj.* to go, remain ~ (that question remained ~)

unappreciative *adj.* ~ of (he was ~ of our help)

unasked *adj.* ~ for

unattended *adj.* to leave ~

unaware *adj.* (cannot stand alone) 1. blissfully; completely, totally ~ 2. ~ of (they were completely ~ of the harmfulness of smoking) 3. ~ that + clause (they were totally ~ that smoking is harmful)

unawares *adv.* ["unexpectedly"] 1. to catch, take smb. ~ 2. completely, totally ~

unbalanced *adj.* mentally ~

unbeatable *adj.* ~ at, in (~ at chess)

unbecoming *adj.* ~ of; to (conduct ~ to an officer = conduct ~ an officer)

unbeknown *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to (~ to us, they had already left)

unbeknownst *adj.* (formal) (cannot stand alone) ~ to (~ to us, they had already left)

unbelievable *adj.* 1. absolutely ~ 2. ~ to 3. ~ that + clause (it was absolutely ~ to me that nobody ¬paid/should have paid¬ attention to the new invention = I find it absolutely ~ that nobody ¬paid/should have paid¬ attention to the new invention)

unbending *adj.* ~ in (~ in one's manner)

unbiased *adj.* 1. completely, totally ~ 2. ~ towards (they were completely ~ towards foreigners)

unburden *v.* 1. (B; refl.) he finally ~ed himself to his family 2. (D; refl.) to ~ of (he finally ~ed himself of his secret)

uncalled *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ for (that remark was completely ~ for! = that was a completely uncalled-for remark!)

uncanny *adj.* 1. positively ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to see how closely the twins resemble each other) 3. ~ that + clause (it's positively ~ that the twins resemble each other so closely) 4. (misc.) it's ~ how much the twins resemble each other

uncared *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ for (the children were ~ for)

uncensured *adj.* to go ~

uncertain *adj.* 1. ~ about, as to, of (~ about the outcome; we were ~ of his support) 2. (misc.) it is ~ whether (or not) they will sign the contract; I am still ~ (as to) when they are coming

uncertainty *n.* 1. to express ~ 2. grave, great ~ 3. ~ surrounds 4. a degree, element of ~ (there is still an element of ~ surrounding their time of arrival) 5. ~ about, as to, over (there was no ~ about the matter; there is still some degree of ~ as to when they are coming)

unchallenged *adj.* to go, pass ~ (Mr. Chairman, I cannot let the last speaker's scurrilous remark go ~!)

unchanged *adj.* to remain ~

uncharacteristic *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ to + inf. (it was completely / very ~ of them not to answer their correspondence promptly)

uncharitable *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ towards 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to say that)

unchecked *adj.* to go, remain ~

unclaimed *adj.* to go, remain ~

uncle *n.* 1. a great ~ 2. (misc.) (colloq.) (AE) to say ~ ("to admit defeat")

unclear *adj.* 1. ~ about (are you still ~ about the situation ?) 2. ~ from (the answer is still ~ from these facts) 3. ~ to (the answer was still ~ to us) 4. ~ how ; whether ; why (it was still ~ to us why she quit her job ; it was ~ whether (or not) they would attend)

uncomfortable *adj.* 1. to feel ~ 2. to make smb. ~ 3. ~ about ; with (I felt ~ about discussing this matter in public) 4. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to sit here in the blazing sunshine = it is ~ sitting here in the blazing sunshine)

uncommitted *adj.* ~ to (~ to any principles)

uncommon *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is not ~ to find people here who know several languages)

uncommunicative *adj.* ~ about, regarding

uncompromising *adj.* ~ in ; on ; towards (~ in one's attitude ; ~ towards their proposal)

unconcerned *adj.* ~ about, over ; with (see Usage Note for **concerned**)

unconscious I *adj.* 1. to become ; remain ~ 2. ~ of 3. to beat smb. ~

unconscious II *n.* in smb.'s ~

unconsciousness *n.* to lapse into ~

unconstitutional *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to censor the press)

unconventional *adj.* 1. ~ in (~ in one's tastes) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to go to work in shorts)

unconvinced *adj.* 1. to remain ~ 2. ~ of (they're still ~ of the feasibility of our project) 3. ~ that + clause (they remain ~ that our project will succeed)

uncooperative *adj.* 1. ~ about ; in ; towards (~ in working out a compromise) 2. ~ to the point of (the witness was ~ to the point of refusing to testify)

uncorrected *adj.* to go, remain ~ (see also *uncorrected proofs* at **proof**)

uncouple *v.* (D ; tr.) ("to separate") to ~ from (to ~ a trailer from a tractor)

uncritical *adj.* ~ of (he was ~ of my work)

unction *n.* (rel.) 1. to give ~ 2. to receive ~ 3. Extreme Unction USAGE NOTE : The term *the Anointing of the Sick* is now preferred to *Extreme Unction*.

undaunted *adj.* ~ by ; in (~ in one's resolve)

undecided *adj.* 1. to remain ~ 2. ~ about, as to (we are ~ as to whether we will attend) 3. ~ whether (we are ~ whether we will attend) 4. ~ whether + inf. (we are ~ whether to attend)

undemonstrative *adj.* ~ towards

undeniable *adj.* ~ that + clause (it's ~ that she is the best candidate)

underbrush *n.* (AE) in the ~ (see **undergrowth**)

undercharge *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ by (they ~d us (by) twenty percent) 2. (D ; tr.) to ~ for (they ~d us for the book ; we were ~d for it by twenty percent)

undercoating *n.* (AE) (on a car) to apply ~ (BE has *underseal*)

undercover *adv.* ["acting in secret"] 1. to work ~ 2. to go ~

undergraduate *n.* 1. a college (esp. AE), university ~ 2. a first-year ; second-year ; etc. ~

underground I *adv.* 1. to go ~ (during the war they went ~) 2. buried ~

underground II *n.* ["transportation"] (BE ; AE has *subway*) 1. to take the ~ 2. by ~ (I always travel by ~) 3. on the ~ (we went there on the ~) (see also Usage Note at **train I** *n.*) ["system of underground trains and stations"] 4. from ; in ; to the ~ (I couldn't find the right entrance to the ~, the right platform in the ~, or the right exit from the ~ !) (see also *underground station* at **station I** *n.* ; *underground system* at **system** ; *underground train* at **train I** *n.*)

undergrowth *n.* 1. to chop away, clear, remove the ~ 2. dense, heavy ; tangled ; thick ~ 3. from ; in ; into ; through ; out of the ~ (we cleared a path through the tangled ~)

underpass *n.* 1. a pedestrian ~ 2. an ~ under (an ~ under a road) 3. in ; into ; through an ~

underseal (BE) see **undercoating**

understand *v.* 1. to ~ clearly, fully, perfectly 2. (D ; intr., tr.) to ~ about (they do not ~ (anything) about computers) 3. (d ; tr.) to ~ by (what do you ~ by this term ?) 4. (G) I can ~ lying to save your life but I can't ~ lying when you don't have to 5. (H) I understood her to say that she would attend the meeting 6. (K) I just cannot ~ her not attending the meeting ! 7. (L) I understood (from what she said) that she would attend the meeting and I thought it was understood that she would ! 8. (Q) I fail to ~ why she didn't ~ the meeting ! 9. (misc.) she gave me to ~ that she would attend the meeting = I was given to understand (by her) that she would attend the meeting (see also **understood**)

understandable *adj.* 1. barely ; perfectly, quite (esp. BE) ~ 2. ~ to (we want this dictionary to be ~ to its users) 3. ~ that + clause (it was perfectly ~ that they would refuse) 4. (misc.) it was perfectly ~ why they refused

understanding I *adj.* ~ about, of

understanding II *n.* ["agreement"] 1. to arrive at, come to, reach an ~ 2. to have an ~ 3. a clear ; complete, full ; secret ; tacit ; verbal ; written ~ 4. an ~ about ; with (we have a tacit ~ with them about the matter) 5. an ~ to + inf. (we reached an ~ to keep the dispute out of the newspapers) 6. an ~ that + clause (it was my ~ that we would share the expenses) 7. on an ~ (we bought the supplies on the ~ that we would be reimbursed) ["harmony"] ["comprehension"] 8. to bring about, create, develop, promote ~ 9. to display, evidence, evince, show ~ (for, of) 10. deeper ; genuine ; mutual ~ 11. a lack ;

degree, level of ~ 12. ~ between (to promote deeper ~ between nations; to develop mutual ~)

understatement *n.* 1. to make an ~ 2. to go in for ~ 3. a massive ~ (to say I was pleased would be a massive ~ – I was absolutely ecstatic!) 4. (misc.) a masterpiece of ~; the ~ of the year (to say I was pleased would be the ~ of the year – I was absolutely ecstatic!)

understood *adj.* 1. generally, usually ~ 2. ~ by (what is generally ~ by this term?) 3. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that everyone would help; I understood (from what she said) that she would attend the meeting and I thought it was ~ that she would!)

undertake *v.* (E) she undertook to complete the project in six months

undertaking *n.* ["promise"] (esp. BE) 1. to give smb. an ~; to honor an ~ 2. an ~ to + inf. (she gave us an ~ to complete the project in six months – and she intends to honor it!) 3. an ~ that + clause (she gave us an ~ that she would complete the project in six months – which she intends to honor!) ["task, enterprise"] 4. a joint; large-scale ~

undertones *n.* 1. to take on; have ~ 2. nasty; political; racial ~ (the dispute took on nasty political ~)

underwear *n.* 1. long; thermal ~ 2. children's; men's; women's ~ 3. a change of ~ 4. an item of ~ 5. in one's ~

underworld *n.* 1. the criminal ~ 2. in the ~

underwriter *n.* an insurance ~

undeserving *adj.* ~ of (~ of any help)

undesirable *adj.* 1. highly, very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ (for you) to be there after two o'clock) 3. ~ that + clause; subj. (it is ~ that you ¬be/should be/(BE) are¬ there after two o'clock)

undeterred *adj.* ~ by (~ by our advice)

undignified *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to behave like that)

undiminished *adj.* ~ by; in (~ in stature)

undiplomatic *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to make such demands)

undisturbed *adj.* ~ by (~ by the commotion)

undoing *n.* ["ruin"] to prove (to be) smb.'s ~ (alcohol proved (to be) his ~ = alcohol proved (to be) the ~ of him)

undone *adj.* to come ~ (her necklace came ~)

undreamed, undreamt *adj.* ~ of (undreamt-of riches)

undressed *adj.* to get ~

unease *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. to conceal ~ 3. to allay smb.'s 4. ~ about, at (we can't conceal our ~ at the prospect of a recession)

uneasiness *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. to allay smb.'s ~ 3. ~ about

uneasy *adj.* ~ about

unemployed *n.* ["unemployed people"] 1. the hardcore; long-term ~ 2. (misc.) to join/swell the ranks of the ~

unemployment *n.* 1. to cause, create ~ 2. to eliminate; reduce ~ 3. falling; high; low; mass; mounting, rising; seasonal; widespread ~ 4. ~ bottoms out; falls; hits, reaches; peaks; rises (~ has already hit 2,000,000) 5. a level of ~ (rising levels of ~ led to government policies aimed at reducing ~) 6. (misc.) ~ is down; up (~ is way up over last year)

unemployment compensation *n.* (esp. AE) 1. to pay ~ 2. to draw, get, receive ~ 3. to be on ~ 4. to go on ~ 5. to apply for ~

unemployment insurance (esp. AE) see **unemployment compensation** 1, 2, 5

unequal *adj.* 1. ~ in (they are ~ in every way) 2. ~ to (she felt ~ to the task)

unequaled, unequalled *adj.* 1. ~ as (she was ~ as a dancer) 2. ~ at, in; by; for

unerring *adj.* (often does not stand alone) ~ in (she was ~ in her judgment = her judgment was ~ = she had ~ judgment)

unessential *adj.* 1. ~ for; to 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ for all students to be present) 3. ~ that + clause; subj. (it is ~ that all students ¬be/should be/are (BE)¬ present)

unethical *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to plagiarize)

unexcelled *adj.* ~ at, in (~ at sports)

unfair *adj.* 1. grossly, very ~ 2. ~ to (~ to certain groups) 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to take advantage of the situation) 4. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that she has to work so hard)

unfaithful *adj.* ~ in; to

unfaithfulness *n.* ~ in; to

unfaltering *adj.* ~ in (they were ~ in their efforts to reduce crime)

unfamiliar *adj.* ~ to; with (the area was ~ to me = I was ~ with the area)

unfamiliarity *n.* ~ to; with (my ~ with the area = the area's ~ to me)

unfashionable *adj.* 1. among, with (has recycling ever been ~ among the young?) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to wear boots to a formal reception)

unfasten *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from 2. (misc.) to come ~ed

unfavorable, unfavourable *adj.* ~ for, to

unfed *adj.* to go ~

unfeeling *adj.* 1. ~ towards 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to turn down her request)

unfit *adj.* 1. mentally, psychologically; physically ~ 2. ~ for (~ for military service; ~ for human consumption; ~ for purpose (BE)) 3. ~ to + inf. (he is ~ to work)

unfortunate *adj.* 1. ~ for 2. ~ in (we consider ourselves ~ in not having a nice house) 3. ~ to + inf. (we consider ourselves ~ not to have a nice house) 4. ~ that + clause (it is ~ (for us) that we don't have a nice house)

unfriendliness *n.* 1. to show ~ 2. ~ to, towards, with

unfriendly *adj.* 1. ~ of (that was ~ of you) 2. ~ to, towards, with 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to refuse to help) 4. (misc.) user-unfriendly

ungrateful *adj.* ~ for; to (he was ~ to us for our help)

unhappy *adj.* 1. bitterly, very ~ 2. ~ about, at, over; in; with (she was ~ about/at/over the bad news; we felt ~ about being alone; he was ~ in his boring work; they were ~ with the poor results) 3. ~ to + inf. (we felt ~ to be alone; she'll be ~ to leave here) 4. ~ that + clause (we felt ~ that we were alone) 5. (misc.) she'll be ~ working there

unharmed *adj.* 1. to go, remain ~ 2. ~ by 3. (misc.) to escape ~

unhealthy *adj.* 1. ~ for (smoking is ~ for you) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ (for you) to smoke)

unheard-of *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to come to a reception without an invitation)

unheeded *adj.* 1. to go ~ (her advice went ~) 2. ~ by

unheedful *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ of (~ of advice/danger/threats)

unification *n.* 1. to achieve, bring about (the) ~ (to achieve the ~ – or re-unification – of Germany) 2. ~ with (to achieve the ~ – or re-unification – of East Germany with/and West Germany)

uniform I *adj.* ~ in; with

uniform II *n.* 1. to don, put on a ~ 2. to have on, wear a ~ 3. to take off a ~ 4. a dress, full-dress; fatigue; military; naval; nurse's; parade; police; regulation; school ~ 5. in ~; out of ~ (he was out of ~ when he was picked up by the military police)

uniformity *n.* ~ in

unify *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (East Germany and West Germany were ~fied – or re-unified – into one nation) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ with (East Germany was ~fied – or re-unified – with West Germany = East Germany and West Germany were ~fied – or re-unified (with each other))

unimportant *adj.* 1. ~ for; to 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ for everyone to attend the meeting provided they make their views known to the chairman) 3. (misc.) it is ~ whether or not anyone attends the meeting

uninformed *adj.* ~ about, of

uninhibited *adj.* ~ about, from, in (after a few drinks, he felt ~ about/in talking to women)

unintelligible *adj.* 1. mutually ~ (are Old English and Modern English mutually ~?) 2. ~ to (is Old English ~ to speakers of Modern English?)

uninterested *adj.* ~ in (we are ~ in politics)

uninvited *adj.* to appear, show up, turn up ~

union *n.* 1. to form a ~ 2. to break up, dissolve a ~ 3. a company; craft; credit; currency, monetary; customs; industrial; labor (AE), trade (BE); postal; student ~ 4. a ~ forms; breaks up, dissolves 5. a ~ between; with (the ~ between East Germany and West Germany = the ~ of East Germany with West Germany = the ~ of East Germany and West Germany (with each other)) 6. (misc.) to recognize a labor/trade ~; a civil ~ (as between partners of the same sex) (the registrar performed a civil ~ between Adam and Steve)

unique *adj.* 1. ~ in 2. ~ to (~ to a certain area) USAGE NOTE: *More unique* and *most unique* are used: "She's the most ~ person I ever met." – Arthur Miller (1915–2005). Nevertheless, some people would apparently prefer, even here, some such phrase as "the *most remarkable* person." Likewise, such people would prefer "very remarkable" to "very unique."

unison *n.* in ~ (with)

unit *n.* ["single constituent of a whole"] 1. a basic, primary; discrete; individual ~; the intensive care ~ of/in a hospital ["united whole such as a military formation"] 2. to activate; form; weld into a ~ 3. to commit; manage a ~ (to commit a ~ to combat) 4. to deactivate; disband a ~ 5. an advance, advanced; airborne; armored; coherent, cohesive; combat; crack, elite; efficient, productive; mechanized, motorized; naval; tactical ~ (advance armored ~s have reached the river; the CEO welded the team he managed into a cohesive and productive ~) ["standard"] 6. a message ~ (used for telephone calls) 7. a currency; monetary ~ (the Euro is the monetary ~ of most of the EU; a pound can be a ~ of money or a ~ of weight) ["single residence"] 8. a rental ~ ["computer terminal"] 9. a Visual Display Unit = VDU (CE; AE also has *Video Display Terminal* = VDT)

unite *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ against (to ~ against aggression; to ~ one's allies against the common foe) 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ for (we must ~ for the common good; the nation was ~d for the struggle against terrorism) 3. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ in (we must ~ in our struggle against terrorism; to ~ a nation in the fight against inflation) 4. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ into (we had to ~ the competing factions into a cohesive whole) 5. (D; intr.) to ~ with (our countries must ~ with each other against the common enemy; East Germany and West Germany (were) ~d – or re-united – (with each other) into one country) 6. (misc.) to ~ (¬in order/so as¬) to succeed

united *adj.* ~ in (a nation ~ in the fight against inflation)

United States *n.* 1. the contiguous ~ (without Alaska and Hawaii) 2. the ~ of (the ~ of America; the ~ of Brazil; the ~ of Mexico)

unity *n.* 1. to achieve, bring about ~ 2. to destroy, shatter ~ 3. national; party ~ (to achieve national ~) 4. ~ among; between; with (who brought about such ~ between the factions?) 5. in ~ (in ~ there is strength) 6. (misc.) the USA's motto "E Pluribus Unum" expresses its commitment to ~ in diversity

universe *n.* 1. the entire, whole; known ~ 2. in; throughout the ~

university *n.* 1. to establish, found a ~ 2. ¬to go to a ~/to go to ~ (BE)¬ (she goes to a good ~) 3. a free, open; people's ~ 4. an ancient (BE); Ivy-League (US); redbrick (GB); state (US) ~ 5. at; in a ~ (to teach at a ~; there is a spirit of cooperation at/in our ~; BE: what did you read at ~? = AE: what did you major in at college?) USAGE NOTE: In

CE “a university” is a building or an institution (*there’s a big prestigious university in another town but she goes to a university near her home).* In BE “university” is the educational activity that goes on in a university (*university takes up a lot of her time ; she goes to university near her home ; we lost touch with each other after university*). In AE, the examples above would have to be re-phrased (e.g. *university work takes up a lot of her time ; she attends a university near her home ; we lost touch with each other after we got our university degrees*). A very likely alternative in AE would be to use “college” (*college takes up a lot of her time ; she goes to college near her home ; we lost touch with each other after college*). See also the Usage Notes for **college**, **school**.

unjust *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ to, towards 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to accuse me without proof) 4. ~ that + clause (it’s ~ that he ¬accused/should have accused¬ me without proof)

unjustified *adj.* 1. completely, totally ~ 2. ~ in (she was ~ in complaining)

unkind *adj.* 1. ~ of (that insult was very ~ of you) 2. ~ to (~ to animals) 3. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to insult him)

unknown *adj.* ~ to (the facts were ~ to us)

unlawful *adj.* 1. ~ for (smoking is ~ for minors) 2. ~ to + inf. (it’s ~ for minors to smoke)

unleash *v.* (D ; tr.) to ~ against ; on (to ~ a new arms race on the world)

unlike *prep.* ~ to + inf. (it was very ~ them to be late)

unlikely *adj.* 1. equally ; highly, very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to show up ; it is ~ to snow) 3. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that she will show up ; it is ~ that it will snow)

unload *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ cargo from a ship) 2. (D ; tr.) (fig.) to ~ on (they were ~ing defective merchandise on unsuspecting customers)

unlucky *adj.* 1. ~ at, in ; for ; with (~ at cards ; ~ in love ; ~ for some people ; they were ~ with their old car) 2. ~ to + inf. (some people feel that it is ~ to walk under a ladder) 3. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that we got there late = we were ~ to have gotten there late)

unmarked *adj.* ~ by

unmarred *adj.* ~ by (the ceremony was ~ by any untoward incidents)

unmatched *adj.* 1. ~ as (she was ~ as a dancer) 2. ~ at, in ; by ; for

unmerciful *adj.* ~ to, towards

unmindful *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ of (~ of danger ; ~ of one’s responsibilities)

unmoved *adj.* ~ by (they were left ~ by her tears)

unnamed *adj.* to remain ~ (I was told so by a certain person who shall remain ~)

unnatural *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it’s ~ of parents to reject their own children) 2. ~ that + clause (it’s ~ that parents should reject their own children)

unnecessary *adj.* 1. ~ for 2. ~ to + inf. (it’s ~ for you to get involved) 3. ~ that + clause (it’s ~ that you should get involved)

unnoticed *adj.* to go, pass ~ (the incident went/passed ~)

unobserved *adj.* to go, pass ~ (the incident went/passed ~)

unopposed *adj.* ~ to

unorthodox *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to bypass the channels of command in the army)

unparalleled *adj.* ~ in (~ in ferocity)

unperturbed *adj.* ~ by (she was ~ by the loud noise)

unpleasant *adj.* 1. ~ to (he is ~ to everyone) 2. ~ to + inf. (it’s ~ to talk to him = it’s ~ talking to him = he’s ~ to talk to = he’s an ~ person to talk to)

unpopular *adj.* 1. ~ as (she became ~ as a nightclub singer) 2. ~ among, with (she became ~ with teenagers)

unprepared *adj.* 1. ~ for (I am ~ for such a responsibility) 2. ~ to + inf. (I am ~ to take on such a responsibility)

unprofessional *adj.* 1. ~ in (she was ~ in not investigating the matter) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her not to investigate the matter = she was ~ not to have investigated the matter) 3. (misc.) (she was ~ in that she didn’t investigate the matter)

unprofitable *adj.* ~ to + inf. (is it ~ to work this mine ?)

unpunished *adj.* 1. to go, remain ~ (the criminals went ~) 2. ~ for

unqualified *adj.* 1. clearly ; grossly ~ 2. ~ for 3. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to work as a teacher)

unquote *n.* see **quote I** *n.*

unrealistic *adj.* 1. ~ about 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to hope for an improvement so soon = you are being ~ to hope for an improvement so soon)

unreasonable *adj.* 1. ~ about (let’s not be ~ about this) 2. ~ of (that was ~ of you) 3. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ (of/for you) to demand that employees work without a break)

unrecognized *adj.* 1. to go, pass, remain ~ 2. ~ by

unreported *adj.* to go, remain ~ (the story went ~)

unresponsive *adj.* ~ to (~ to flattery)

unrest *n.* 1. to foment, stir up ~ 2. to crush, quell ~ 3. industrial ; labor ; political ; social ~ (see also **civil unrest**) 4. violent ~ 5. a wave of ~ (a wave of ~ swept through the whole country) 6. during ; throughout the ~

unrivaled, unrivalled *adj.* 1. ~ as (she was ~ as a dancer) 2. ~ at, in ; by ; for

unsafe *adj.* 1. ~ for (it is ~ for children) 2. ~ to + inf. (it’s ~ to drive without putting on seat belts)

unsaid *adj.* to leave smt. ~

unsanctioned *adj.* ~ by (~ by custom)

unsatisfactory *adj.* 1. highly, very ~ 2. ~ for (her qualifications are ~ for our needs) 3. ~ in (they were ~ in their job performance) 4. ~ to (~ to all concerned) 5. ~ to + inf. (she finds it ~ to spend her days doing nothing) 6. ~ that + clause (we find it ~ that all the requirements have still not been met)

unsatisfying *adj.* 1. completely, very ~ 2. emotionally; intellectually ~ 3. ~ to + inf. (she finds it ~ to spend her days doing nothing) 4. ~ that + clause (we find it ~ that all the requirements have still not been met)

unscathed *adj.* 1. ~ by 2. to emerge ~ 3. to go ~

unschooled *adj.* ~ in (completely ~ in the martial arts)

unscrupulous *adj.* 1. ~ in (~ in his business dealings) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of their lawyer to withhold evidence)

unseemly *adj.* (formal) ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to show up at the reception without an invitation)

unseen *adj.* 1. to remain ~ 2. (misc.) to buy smt. sight ~

unselfish *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to make the offer)

unsettle *v.* (R) it ~d me to see them quarrel; it ~d me that they were quarreling

unsettling *adj.* 1. profoundly, very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to see them quarrel) 3. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that they were quarreling)

unshakable *adj.* ~ in (~ in one's faith)

unshaken *adj.* ~ in (~ in one's faith)

unshaven *adj.* to go ~ (he went ~ for a week)

unsightly *adj.* ["not pleasing to the sight"] it was ~ to behold such a thing

unskilled *adj.* ~ at, in; with (~ at/in using a computer; ~ with one's hands)

unskillful, unskilful *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ at, in; with (~ at/in using a computer; ~ with one's hands)

unsound *adj.* ["healthy"] 1. ~ in, of (~ in mind and body) ["sturdy"] 2. structurally ~

unsparing *adj.* ~ in, of (~ in one's criticism; ~ of praise; ~ of herself)

unspoiled, unspoilt *adj.* ~ by (~ by success)

unstinting *adj.* ~ in (~ in one's praise)

unstuck *adj.* ["ruined"] (colloq.) to come ~ (the whole scheme came ~)

unsuccessful *adj.* ~ as; at, in; with (~ in business; ~ with women)

unsuitable *adj.* 1. highly, very ~ 2. ~ for; to 3. ~ to + inf. ("would it really be so ~ to discuss this matter at lunch?" "yes, it would be: it's a highly ~ matter for discussion at lunch!")

unsuited *adj.* 1. ~ for, to (~ for the job; ~ to each other) 2. ~ to + inf. (he was turned down as psychologically ~ to be a police officer)

unsure *adj.* 1. ~ about 2. ~ of

unsurpassed *adj.* 1. ~ at, in (~ at learning languages) 2. ~ by (~ by any competitor)

unsuspicious *adj.* ~ of

unswerving *adj.* ~ in (~ in one's determination to stamp out corruption)

unsympathetic *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ to

untainted *adj.* ~ by, with (~ by scandal)

untarnished *adj.* ~ by

unthanked *adj.* to go ~

unthinkable *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it would be ~ to build a house so close to the river) 2. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that they would ever build a house so close to the river)

untiring *adj.* (usu. does not stand alone) ~ in (~ in one's efforts)

untold *adj.* to remain ~ (the story remained ~ for years)

untouched *adj.* ~ by

untreated *adj.* to go, remain; leave ~ (the disease went ~ = the disease was left ~)

untroubled *adj.* ~ by

untrue *adj.* 1. historically ~ 2. ~ to (~ to one's principles) 3. ~ to + inf. (it's simply ~ to assume that all politicians are corrupt!) 4. ~ that + clause (it's simply ~ that all politicians are corrupt!)

untruth *n.* 1. to tell an ~ 2. a blatant, deliberate, transparent ~

untruthful *adj.* 1. ~ about, in 2. ~ to + inf. (it would be ~ to deny it)

untutored *adj.* ~ in

untypical *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ to + inf. (it was altogether ~ of them to come without calling first)

unusable *adj.* ~ for

unused *adj.* ["unaccustomed"] (cannot stand alone) ~ to (they are ~ to hard work = they are ~ to working hard)

unusual *adj.* 1. ~ for 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to visit a class without ¬asking/asking for¬ permission first; it's ~ for two world records to be set in/on one day) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that two world records should be set in/on one day)

unversed *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ in (~ in the ways of big business)

unwarranted *adj.* ~ by

unwavering *adj.* ~ in (~ in one's support; ~ in one's determination to stamp out corruption)

unwilling *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to help: I'd like her to help but she's ~ to) 2. (misc.) we are ~ for them to share in the benefits – although some of us are not ~ for them to

unwillingness *n.* 1. to demonstrate, show ~ 2. to express ~ 3. the ~ to + inf. (we deplored her ~ to work for us)

unwise *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you not to remain silent = you were ~ not to remain silent)

unworthy *adj.* 1. ~ of (~ of praise; such behavior is ~ of you) 2. ~ to + inf. (~ to be praised)

unyielding *adj.* ~ in (~ in one's demands)

up I *adv.* (cannot stand alone) ["abreast"] 1. ~ on (are you ~ on the news?) ["dependent"] 2. ~ to (the decision is ~ to you; it's ~ to you to decide; it's ~ to you whether we go) ["misc."] 3. inflation is ~ by ten percent; the dollar was ~ against the yen; she is ~ for reelection; that topic was ~ for discussion; my car is ~ for sale

up II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to increase") to ~ by (they ~ped the price (by) ten percent) 2. (misc.) (colloq.) they just ~ped and left! (see also *up stakes* at **stake**; *up sticks* at **stick I** *n.*)

upbraid *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (they ~ed him for his sloppy work)

upbringing *n.* 1. a bad; good; strict ~ 2. smb.'s family; religious ~ 3. (misc.) she had a good ~ because she was brought up well

update I *n.* (colloq.) ["bringing up to date"] 1. to give an ~ on (I'll give you an ~ on the situation) 2. an ~ on (here is an ~ on the situation)

update II *v.* (colloq.) (D; tr.) to ~ on (could you ~ me on the situation?)

upgrade *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ to (our legation was ~d to an embassy)

upheaval *n.* 1. to experience, undergo an ~ 2. to cause, provoke, give rise to an ~ 3. a big, great; dramatic; violent ~ 4. an economic; political; social ~ 5. during, throughout an ~ (we stayed calm throughout the whole great economic ~ provoked by the credit crunch)

upholstery *n.* leather; plastic; vinyl ~

upkeep *n.* ["cost of maintenance"] the ~ of, on (esp. AE) (the ~ on this machinery is very costly) (see also **keep up**)

upper hand *n.* ["control"] 1. to gain, get; have the ~ 2. to lose the ~ 3. the ~ in; over (we gained the ~ over them in that contest)

upright *adv.* to sit bolt ~

uprising *n.* 1. to foment, incite, spark (esp. AE), spark off (esp. BE) an ~ 2. to crush, put down, quash, quell an ~ 3. an armed; peasant; popular ~ 4. an ~ against 5. during, in, throughout (they were active throughout the ~ they had fomented when they rose up against tyranny)

uproar *n.* 1. to cause, create an ~ 2. an ~ about, over 3. amid, during, in, throughout an ~ (we stayed calm throughout the whole great ~ caused by the credit crunch)

uproot *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (they were ~ed from their homes)

upset I *adj.* 1. to be, feel; get ~ about, over 2. ~ with (she was ~ with me about my expenses) 3. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to learn that they could not attend) 4. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that they could not attend)

upset II *n.* ["unexpected victory"] 1. (sports) to score an ~ over (see also *upset victory* at **victory**) ["malaise"] 2. a stomach ~

upset III *v.* 1. (R) it upset me to learn of their attitude = it upset me that they ¬had had/should have had¬ that kind of attitude 2. (misc.) it ~s me when they behave like that

upsetting *adj.* 1. ~ to (recent events have been very ~ to us) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to learn of their attitude) 3. (misc.) it was ~ to me that they had that kind of attitude

upside down *adv.* to turn smt. ~

upstairs *adv.* to come; go; run; walk ~

upstanding *adj.* 1. a fine ~ pillar of the community 2. be ~ ("stand up") (esp. BE) (be ~ for the judge; be ~ for a toast)

upsurge *n.* an ~ in (there was an ~ in violence)

uptake *n.* ["comprehension"] (colloq.) (quick/slow) on the ~

uptight *adj.* (colloq.) 1. ~ about 2. (misc.) just don't get all ~ about it!

upturn *n.* 1. a modest, slight ~ 2. a sharp ~ 3. an ~ in (there was a sharp ~ in the economy = there was a sharp economic ~) 4. (misc.) the economy took a slight ~

upwards *adv.* ~ of (~ of an hour) ("somewhat more than an hour")

uranium *n.* depleted; enriched ~

urchin *n.* a street ~

urge I *n.* 1. to feel; get; have an ~ 2. to satisfy an ~ 3. to control; resist; overcome; stifle an ~ 4. an irrepressible, irresistible, uncontrollable; natural; sudden ~ 5. an ~ to + inf. (she felt an irresistible ~ to respond)

urge II *v.* 1. to ~ forcefully, strongly 2. (H) we ~d her not to respond 3. (L; subj.) we ~d that she ¬not/should not¬ respond

urgency *n.* 1. great, utmost ~ 2. ~ about, in (there is no ~ about this matter) 3. with ~ (she spoke with great ~) 4. (misc.) a matter of great ~ (it is a matter of great ~ that they all ¬be/should be/are (BE)¬ present); a note of ~ (their repeated warnings lent a note of ~ to our appeals); a sense of ~

urgent *adj.* 1. ~ in (she was ~ in her demands) 2. ~ that + clause; subj. (it is ~ that they all ¬be/should be/are (BE)¬ present)

urging *n.* at smb.'s ~ (at our ~ they accepted the invitation)

urge on *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (they ~d me on to greater efforts) 2. (H) they ~d me on to make greater efforts

urn *n.* a burial; coffee ~

usable, useable *adj.* ~ for

usage *n.* 1. common; constant; correct; incorrect ~ 2. in ~ (this word is not in common ~)

use I /juːs/ *n.* 1. to make ~ of 2. to put smt. to (good) ~ 3. to find, have a ~ for 4. to have; lose; regain the ~ of (she lost the ~ of one arm) 5. to deny; grant (the) ~ of (the visitors were denied ~ of the library) 6. constant; daily; emergency; official; practical ~ 7. exclusive; extensive; free; full, maximal, maximum; optimal; universal; wide ~ (they made extensive ~ of computers) 8. external; internal ~ (this medicine is for external ~ only!) 9. (legal) fair ~ 10. ~ for (do you have any ~ for this old paper?) 11. ~ (in) (is there any ~ (in) trying again?) 12. ~ of (what's the ~ of ¬worrying/trying again¬?) 13. for ~ (for official ~ only; only for ~ as directed) 14. in ~ (the copying machine is in ~) 15. of ~ to (it was of no earthly ~ to us; can I be of any ~ to you?; computers are of great ~ when (it comes to) compiling statistics) 16. (misc.) she has no ~ for them ("she dislikes them"); to come into ~; to go out of ~; her ~ of a candle as a paperweight; it's no ~ trying to convince her (see also *for (greater) ease of use* at **ease**) USAGE NOTE: The following constructions are variants; the constructions with no prepositions are colloquial – *is there any use in trying again? – is there any use trying again? what's the use of worrying? – (AE) what's the use worrying?*

use II /juːz/ *v.* 1. to ~ widely 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (she ~d the candlestick as a paperweight) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ for (let's ~ paper plates for the picnic; she ~d the candlestick for holding down the papers) 4. (misc.) she ~d the candlestick (in order) to hold down the papers 5. (E; in positive sentences and negative sentences with *never* this verb is used only in the past tense to denote a former practice or state; in interrogative sentences the infinitive of this verb occurs with *didn't, did not*) she ~d to use candlesticks as paperweights; she ~d to work there; there ~d to be an open field here; she never ~d to work there, did she?; didn't she ~ to work there? USAGE NOTE: In negative sentences with *didn't, did not*, this verb occurs with the infinitive and, in colloquial writing, with the past tense – she didn't use/used to work there. In old-fashioned BE, constructions such as the following may occur – used she (not) to work there?; she used not to work there.

used I /juːst/ *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ["accustomed"] to be; get ~ to (they are ~ to working hard = they are ~ to hard work; to get ~ to hard work)

used II /juːzd/ *adj.* ["employed"] 1. ~ for (this machine is ~ for making copies) 2. ~ to + inf. (this machine is ~ to make copies)

useful *adj.* 1. highly, very ~ 2. ~ as (a combinatory dictionary is ~ as an aid to learning a language) 3. ~ for, to (a combinatory dictionary is ~ for/to students) 4. ~ for, in, when (it comes to) (computers are ~ when (it comes to) compiling statistics) 5. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to know several foreign languages when you are traveling abroad = it's ~ knowing several foreign languages when you are traveling abroad)

usefulness *n.* 1. great; limited ~ 2. ~ for; to 3. ~ for, in, when (it comes to) 4. of ~ (computers are of great ~ when (it comes to) compiling statistics)

useless *adj.* 1. absolutely, completely ~ 2. ~ as (I'm absolutely ~ as a carpenter!) 3. ~ at, when it comes to (I'm absolutely ~ at putting up shelves!) 4. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to try to convince her = it's ~ trying to convince her)

user *n.* 1. a casual ~ (of drugs) = a casual drug-user 2. a wheelchair-user (access is provided for wheelchair-users)

usher *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ into (they ~ed the guests into a large waiting room) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ out of 3. (d; tr.) to ~ through (the guests were quickly ~ed through the crowd) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ to (we were ~ed to our seats)

usual *adj.* 1. ~ for 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to ¬ask/ask for¬ permission before visiting a class) 3. (misc.) as ~, as per ~ (colloq.) (everything will go on as (per) ~) (see also *business as usual* at **business**)

usury *n.* 1. to engage in, practice ~ 2. to condemn; outlaw ~

utensils *n.* cooking, kitchen; household ~

utility *n.* ["company providing a public service"] a public ~ (have public ~ties been privatized in your country?)

utilize *v.* (more formal than *use*) 1. to ~ extensively, widely; fully 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (she ~d the candlestick as a paperweight) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she ~d the candlestick for holding down the papers) 4. (misc.) she ~d the candlestick (in order) to hold down the papers

utmost *n.* ["maximum effort"] to do one's ~ (we did our ~ to help)

utter *v.* (B) she ~ed a few words to them

utterance *n.* 1. (formal) to give ~ to 2. a prophetic; public ~

U-turn *n.* 1. to do, execute, make, perform a ~ 2. a complete, dramatic; sudden, unexpected 3. a ~ on (the government made a sudden dramatic ~ on foreign policy)

V

vacancy *n.* 1. to create a ~ 2. to have a ~ 3. to fill a ~ 4. a ~ for (we have a ~ in our sales department for a clerk) 5. (misc.) no ~ (the sign reads *no vacancy/vacancies*)

vacation *n.* ["period of rest"] (esp. AE; CE has *holiday*) 1. to spend; take a ~ 2. to be on; go on ~ 3. an extended, long; paid; short ~ 4. a spring; summer; winter ~ 5. a ~ from 6. during a ~; on ~ (she was away on ~) ["period during which a college or university is closed"] 7. (BE) the long ~ USAGE NOTE: Soldiers and sailors go on *leave* or (esp. AE) on *furlough*; civilians go on *holiday* (BE) or on *vacation* (AE). British students go on *holiday* during the long *vacation/vac*.

vaccinate *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ against, for (to ~ smb. against/for a disease)

vaccination *n.* 1. to carry out, do a (mass) ~ (of the population) 2. (a) compulsory; mass ~ 3. a ~ against, for (to carry out a mass ~ against/for a disease)

vaccine *n.* 1. to administer, give a ~ 2. BCG; influenza; polio; Sabin; Salk; smallpox; tetanus; yellow-fever ~ 3. a ~ against, for (to carry out a mass ~ against/for a disease)

vacillate *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ between; in

vacuum *n.* 1. to create, leave, produce a ~ 2. to break; fill a ~ 3. a partial ~ 4. a power ~ 5. in a ~ (nothing can live in a ~)

vague *adj.* ~ about, as to (she was ~ about her plans and about when she would have decided)

vain *adj.* 1. ~ about, of (formal) (~ about one's appearance) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ to protest) 3. (misc.) in ~ ("without success") (to work/protest in ~); to take the Lord's name in ~ ("to treat the Lord's name in a disrespectful manner")

valedictory *n.* ["farewell speech"] to deliver, give a ~

valid *adj.* 1. ~ for (~ for one year) 2. ~ to + inf. (is it ~ to say that Olympic athletes are amateurs?)

valise *n.* to fill, stuff; pack; unpack a ~

valley *n.* 1. a ~ between (high mountains) 2. in a ~ (they live down in the ~)

valor, valour *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 2. uncommon ~ 3. for ~ (to get a medal for ~) 4. of ~ (a person of great ~) 5. (misc.) (discretion is) the better part of ~

valuable *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ as (knowing languages is very ~ as a way into other cultures) 3. ~ for; to 4. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to know languages if you work in an export firm)

valuables *n.* to check (esp. AE); deposit one's ~

value I *n.* ["worth"]["monetary, numerical worth"] 1. to attach ~ to 2. to place, put, set a ~ on (it's impossible to put a cash ~ on friendship) 3. to acquire, take on; have, keep, retain (a) ~ 4. to have (a) ~ (of) (their holdings have little ~) 5. (a) great, high; inestimable ~ 6. (a) little; low ~ 7. a book; cash; face; market; nominal; re-sale; trade-in ~ (your car has a cash ~ of five thousand dollars) 8. entertainment; intrinsic; material; nuisance; rarity, scarcity; sentimental; strategic; symbolic, token ~ 9. (math.) an absolute; numerical; relative ~ 10. a fair ~ (the commission set a fair ~ of five million dollars on the property) 11. (economics) surplus ~ 12. (economics) present ~ 13. a (market) ~ falls, goes down; goes up, rises 14. at a certain ~ (at face ~) 15. in ~ (land tends to appreciate in ~ with time) 16. of ~ (to) (a discovery of great ~; it's of great ~ to know languages to anyone who works in an export firm) 17. (misc.) they took her story at face ~; to get ~ for (your) money; the street ~ (as of illegal drugs) ["principles, qualities"] 18. to cherish; foster ~s 19. basic; core; enduring; lasting; traditional ~s (a return to traditional ~s) 20. esthetic; family; human; moral; religious, spiritual; social ~s 21. middle-class; Victorian ~s ["misc."] 22. a set, system of ~es (see also *value system* at **system**)

value II *v.* 1. to ~ greatly, highly, very much 2. (d; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ smb. as a friend) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ at (to ~ a painting at five thousand pounds) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ smt. for sentimental reasons)

valve *n.* ["device that regulates flow"] 1. to close, shut; fit, install; open a ~ 2. to grind ~s 3. a ball; blocked; butterfly; check; exhaust; gate; globe; needle; safety; shunt; suction ~ ["membranous fold that permits body fluids to flow in one direction"] (anat.) 4. a heart ~ (the patient has a defective heart ~)

van I *n.* ["road vehicle"] 1. to drive a ~ 2. (BE) a breakdown ~ (BE also has *breakdown lorry, breakdown truck*; AE has *tow truck*) 3. (BE) a delivery, Transit (T) ~ (AE has *delivery truck, panel truck*) 4. a moving (AE), removal (BE) ~ ["rail vehicle"] 5. a guard's ~ (BE; AE has *caboose*) 6. a luggage ~ (BE; AE has *baggage car*) 7. a minivan (esp. AE)

van II *n.* ["vanguard"] in the ~

vandalism *n.* 1. to commit ~ 2. mindless ~ 3. an act of ~ (to commit an act of mindless ~)

vane *n.* a weather ~

vanguard *n.* in the ~ (of)

vanilla *adj.* plain ~ ("basic, no-frills") (colloq.) (our plain-vanilla plan is the cheapest but offers the fewest advantages)

vanish *v.* 1. to ~ completely 2. (D; intr.) to ~ from (to ~ from sight) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into thin air) (see also *vanish without trace* at **trace I** *n.*)

vanity *n.* 1. to appeal to, flatter, tickle smb.'s ~ 2. personal; sheer ~

vantage point *n.* from a certain ~

vapor, vapour *n.* 1. to emit (a) ~ 2. water ~ 3. (a) ~ condenses, forms; rises 4. a cloud of ~

vapor trail, vapour trail *n.* to leave a ~ (high-flying aircraft leave ~s)

variable *n.* (math.) a dependent; independent; random ~

variance *n.* ["permission to bypass a regulation"] (legal) (AE; BE has *derogation*, esp. for EU regulations) 1. to grant a ~ 2. to apply for a ~ 3. a zoning ~ ["disagreement"] 4. at ~ with (a theory at ~ with the facts)

variation *n.* ["deviation, change"] 1. (a) considerable, great; slight; wide ~ 2. ~ according to, by; across; between; within 3. ~ from; to (day-to-day price ~ from ten to fifteen dollars) 4. ~ in (there is considerable ~ in price across and even within our range of products according to quality; there is wide ~ in/of opinion throughout our party) ["modified repetition of a theme"] 5. a ~ on a theme (the government's new position is merely a ~ on the same old theme)

varied *adj.* 1. highly, very ~ 2. ~ in (those birds are very ~ in color)

variety *n.* 1. to add, lend ~ to 2. (a) great; wide ~ 3. a limited ~ 4. in a ~ of (in a ~ of roles/colors) 5. (misc.) this is just a common-or-garden variety product (CE) = this is just a common-or-garden product (BE); ~ is the spice of life (proverb)

varnish *n.* 1. to apply ~ 2. nail ~ (BE; CE has *nail polish*) 3. a coat, layer of ~

varsity *n.* ["college or secondary-school team"] (AE) 1. to make ("be selected to join") the ~ 2. the junior ~ 3. on the ~ (we play on the ~)

vary *v.* 1. to ~ considerably, greatly; directly; inversely; slightly (does the proportion of people with lung cancer ~ directly with the proportion of people who smoke?) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ according to, by; across; between; within (prices ~ considerably across and even within our range of products according to quality) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ from; to (prices may ~ from ten to fifteen dollars) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in size/price; they ~ in their opinions)

VAT *n.* (GB) 1. to attract ~ at seventeen percent 2. (misc.) VAT-registered (does your business have to be VAT-registered?)

vault I *n.* 1. a bank ~ 2. a family ~ (for burial) 3. (misc.) to keep one's valuables in a ~

vault II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into prominence) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ over (he ~ed over the bar)

VCR *n.* to program a ~ (to record exactly what you want it to) [VCRs have now largely been replaced by DVD players or DVD recorders.]

veal *n.* 1. to roast ~ 2. roast ~ (see also *veal stew* at **stew**) 3. a leg; piece, slice; shoulder of ~

veer *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ from one's course; to ~ to the right) 2. (P; intr.) to ~ across the field

veer away *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ from one's course; to ~ to the right) 2. (P; intr.) to ~ across the field

veer off *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from; to (to ~ from one's course; to ~ to the right) 2. (P; intr.) to ~ across the field

vegetables *n.* 1. to cook; eat, have; grow ~ 2. canned/tinned (BE); fresh; frozen; organic ~ 3. green; leafy; root ~ 4. garden ~ 5. boiled; cooked; raw; steamed; stir-fried ~

vegetation *n.* dense, lush, rank; sparse; subtropical; tropical ~

vehicle *n.* ["conveyance"] 1. to drive, operate; register a ~ 2. an all-purpose; amphibious; armored; half-track(ed); motor; passenger; recreational (esp. AE); re-entry ~ (see also **space vehicle**) 3. a hired (BE), rented, self-drive (BE) ~ ["means"] 4. a ~ for (a ~ for spreading propaganda; the film was nothing more than a ~ for a top movie star!) USAGE NOTE: Bear in mind also the AE expressions *ATV* ("All-Terrain Vehicle"), *Humvee* (a military "High-Mobility Multipurpose Wheeled Vehicle"), *SUV* ("Sport-Utility Vehicle").

veil *n.* 1. to draw a ~ (over) 2. to lift, raise a ~ 3. a bridal ~ 4. (misc.) under a ~ of mystery/secrecy; to take the ~ ("to become a nun") USAGE NOTE: A veil can cover the head and shoulders (as a nun's veil does) or the face (as a bridal veil does), or perhaps even both.

veiled *adj.* 1. thinly ~ (a thinly ~ reference) 2. (misc.) ~ in secrecy

vein *n.* ["blood vessel"] 1. to open a ~ 2. the jugular ~ 3. varicose ~s 4. a ~ stands out; throbs (a ~ in his forehead stands out and throbs when he's angry) ["mood"] ["manner"] 5. a happy; humorous; light; lighter; merry ~ 6. a gloomy; melancholy; serious ~ 7. a different; the same, a similar ~ 8. in a certain ~ (let's continue our discussion in a lighter ~) 9. (misc.) a rich ~ of humor runs through her works

velocity *n.* 1. to develop; gain, increase; lose ~ 2. to reach a ~ (to reach maximum ~) 3. to decrease, reduce; lose ~ 4. escape; high; low; maximum ~ 5. muzzle ~ 6. at a certain ~ (at the ~ of sound)

velvet *n.* (misc.) as smooth as ~

vendetta *n.* 1. to conduct, lead, pursue, wage a ~ 2. a personal ~ 3. a ~ against

vendor *n.* a fruit; street ~

veneer *n.* ["superficial gloss"] 1. to strip away, strip off a ~ 2. a polished; superficial, thin ~ 3. beneath a ~ of

venerate *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ as (she is now ~d as an elder stateswoman) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (she is now ~d for being an elder stateswoman)

veneration *n.* 1. deep, profound ~ 2. ~ for (she is now held in profound ~ for being an elder stateswoman) 3. to hold smb. in ~ (she is now held in deep ~ as an elder stateswoman)

venetian blinds *n.* 1. to close, shut; lower; open; raise ~ 2. to install ~

vengeance *n.* 1. to exact, take, wreak ~ on, upon 2. to vow ~ 3. to seek ~ for 4. an act of ~ 5. ~ for; on (to take ~ on smb. for smt.) 6. (misc.) with a ~ ("to an extreme degree") (it started snowing with a ~)

venom *n.* ["poison"] 1. to neutralize ~ 2. snake ~ ["malice"] 3. to spew, spit, spout ~ 4. unadulterated, pure ~ 5. with ~

vent I *n.* ["opening"] 1. an air ~ 2. through a ~ ["outlet"] 3. to give ~ to (he gave ~ to his pent-up feelings)

vent II *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ on (to ~ one's fury on smt.)

ventriloquism *n.* to practice ~

venture I *n.* 1. to undertake a ~ 2. a business, commercial; collaborative, cooperative, joint ~ 3. (misc.) to join smb. in a ~ (see also *venture capital* at **capital**)

venture II *v.* (formal) 1. (E) I ~ to suggest that your whole idea is unworkable 2. (L; to) (rare) ("to express") she ~d (to us) that our whole idea might be unworkable 3. (P; intr.) to ~ into the unknown; to ~ out of doors

venue *n.* ["site of a trial"] (AE) 1. a change of ~ (her lawyer requested a change of ~) ["site"] (BE) 2. a ~ for (the best ~ for a pop concert) 3. at; in a ~

veracity *n.* (formal) to doubt, question smb.'s ~

veranda 1. see **porch** 1, 3 2. on a ~

verb *n.* 1. to conjugate, inflect; passivize a ~ 2. an auxiliary, helping; compound; copular (esp. BE), copulative, linking; defective; irregular; main; modal; phrasal; prepositional; phrasal-prepositional; regular; strong; weak ~ 3. an active; passive ~ 4. an intransitive; reflexive; transitive ~ 5. an imperfective; perfective ~ 6. ~s agree (with); ~s govern, take a case (a ~ agrees with its/the subject in number) 7. a ~ has aspect; mood; tense; voice 8. ~s have complements; objects USAGE NOTE: In BBI, *hold up* is called a compound verb. Elsewhere, it would be called a phrasal verb and *uphold* might be called a compound verb.

verdict *n.* ["law"] 1. to arrive at, reach a ~ 2. to announce; bring in, deliver, hand down (AE), render, return a ~ 3. to sustain, uphold a ~ (the higher court sustained the ~) 4. to overturn, quash, set aside a ~ 5. to appeal (AE), appeal against a ~ 6. a fair, just; unfair, unjust ~ 7. an adverse, unfavorable; directed; favorable; sealed; unanimous ~ 8. a ~ comes down 9. a ~ of guilty; or: a guilty ~; a ~ of not guilty; a ~ of not proven (Scottish law); an open ~; a ~ for the defendant; a ~ for the plaintiff (the jury brought in a ~ of not guilty) 10. a ~ that + clause (they appealed the court's ~ that fraud had been committed) 11. (misc.) to defy/ignore a ~ ["opinion"] 12. to give a ~ (have the critics given a ~ on the new play yet?) 13. a ~ on (the critics' ~ on the new play was that it was awful)

verge I *n.* ["brink"] 1. on the ~ of (he was on the ~ of a nervous breakdown) 2. (misc.) driven to the ~ of bankruptcy

verge II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon (her actions ~d on the ridiculous)

verification *n.* 1. official; written ~ 2. to obtain; seek ~ 3. ~ of (the police obtained official ~ of her alibi but they could not obtain ~ of where the money had been deposited) 4. ~ that + clause (the police obtained official ~ that she had an airtight alibi)

verify *v.* 1. (L) the police ~fied that she had an airtight alibi 2. (Q) they could not ~ where the money had been deposited

vermin *n.* 1. to exterminate ~ 2. (misc.) infested with ~

vernacular *n.* in the ~ (to express oneself in the ~)

versatile *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ at, in; with

versatility *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 2. great, remarkable ~ 3. ~ at, in; with

verse *n.* 1. to compose, write; memorize; recite ~(s) 2. to scan ~ 3. blank; free; heroic; light; macaronic; rhymed, rhyming; unrhymed ~ 4. in ~ (see also *chapter and verse* at **chapter**; *verse form* at **form I** *n.*)

versed *adj.* (cannot stand alone) (well) ~ in

version *n.* 1. to give one's ~ (of a story) 2. to corroborate smb.'s ~ (of an event) 3. an abridged, condensed; expurgated; watered-down ~ 4. an unabridged, uncut; unexpurgated ~ (an uncut ~ of a film) 5. an accepted, authorized, official ~ 6. a conflicting; different, differing ~ (the police heard conflicting ~s of the incident) 7. an unauthorized, unofficial ~ 8. a censored; uncensored (an uncensored ~ of the book was smuggled into the country) 9. an oral; written ~ 10. a film, movie (AE); stage ~ (of a novel) 11. a cover ~ (of a pop song) 12. (misc.) to bring out, produce a ~ (the band is going to bring out a cover ~ of a Beatles hit); a ~ appears, comes out (the unexpurgated ~ appeared only very recently)

vertebra *n.* a cervical; lumbar; sacral; thoracic ~

vessel *n.* ["ship, boat"] 1. to charter a ~ 2. to launch a ~ 3. a cargo; escort; fishing; naval; oceangoing, seagoing ~ (for more combinations, see **boat**; **ship**) ["for liquids"] 4. a drinking ~ (see also **blood vessel**)

vest I *n.* 1. a bulletproof; stab ("stab-proof"); life (AE) (CE has *life jacket*); string (BE) ~ 2. in a ~ USAGE NOTE: In BE, the basic meaning of *vest* is "undershirt"; in AE, it is "waistcoat".

vest II *v.* (formal) 1. (d; tr.) to ~ in (to ~ power in smb.) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ smb. with power)

vested *adj.* (cannot stand alone) 1. ~ in (the power to impose taxes is ~ in Congress; by the power ~ in me) 2. ~ with (Congress is ~ with the power to impose taxes)

vestiges *n.* ["traces"] 1. to lose all (remaining) ~ of 2. the last ~ of

vet *v.* (BE) 1. to ~ thoroughly 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (all candidates are ~ted thoroughly for loyalty before appointment)

veteran *n.* a disabled; war ~ (to retrain disabled ~s) USAGE NOTE: *Veteran* 'ex-serviceman; ex-servicewoman' is AE when used by itself: a veteran who joined a veterans' organization to campaign for veterans' rights on Veterans' Day. *Veteran* 'ex-serviceman; ex-servicewoman' is now CE with appropriate modification: a war veteran who joined a war-veterans' organization to campaign for the rights of Korean/Korean-war veterans.

veto *n.* 1. to exercise, impose, use a ~ 2. to sustain a

~ 3. to override a ~ (Congress overrode the President's ~) 4. (US) a line-item; pocket; presidential ~ 5. (AE) (legal) a heckler's ~ 6. a ~ of, over 7. (misc.) European Union members have the power of ~ in certain cases; permanent members of the UN Security Council have the right of veto

vex *v.* 1. to ~ deeply, greatly 2. (R) it ~es me greatly to read such things in the newspapers; it ~es me that they are always late 3. (misc.) it ~es me greatly when I read such things in the newspapers; it ~es me when they come late

vexation *n.* 1. in ~ (she shouted in ~) 2. (misc.) my great ~ to read such things in the newspapers

vexed *adj.* (formal) 1. to become, get; grow ~ 2. deeply, greatly, very ~ 3. ~ about, at, with (we were ~ at the mix-up: I'm ~ at how such lies can be printed!; I'm ~ with them for coming late!) 4. ~ to + inf. (I am very ~ to read such things in the newspapers) 5. ~ that + clause (I am greatly ~ that they are always late 6. (misc.) I am very ~ when I read such things in the newspapers; I'm ~ when they come late)

vexing *adj.* 1. deeply, greatly, very ~ 2. ~ to + inf. (it is very ~ to read such things in the newspapers) 3. ~ that + clause (it is ~ that they are always late) 4. (misc.) it is ~ how such lies can be printed!; it's very ~ when they come late!

viability *n.* commercial, financial ~

vibes *n.* (slang) 1. to get (certain) ~ (from) 2. bad; good ~ (to get good ~ from smb.)

vibration *n.* 1. to feel a ~ 2. a slight; strong; weak ~ 3. ~ from; of

vice I *n.* 1. to stamp out ~ 2. legalized ~ 3. (misc.) poverty and ~ (see also *vice squad* at **squad**)

vice II (BE) see **vise**

vicinity *n.* 1. the close, immediate ~ 2. in the ~ (in the immediate ~ of the school)

vicious *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of him to make such an accusation)

vicissitude *n.* the ~s of life

victim *n.* 1. to fall ~ to (they fell ~ to a swindler) 2. an innocent; unsuspecting ~ (of) (they were unsuspecting ~s of a swindler) 3. an accident; amnesia; disaster; earthquake; flood; hurricane; murder; rape; storm ~ 4. (misc.) a ~ of circumstance; the tsunami has already claimed many ~s

victorious *adj.* ~ in; over (~ in a long and bloody struggle; ~ over an enemy)

victory *n.* 1. to achieve, chalk up, gain, notch (up) (colloq.), pull off (colloq.), rack up (AE) (colloq.), score, sweep to, win; assure, clinch a ~ 2. a clear, clear-cut, decisive, outright, signal ~ 3. a landslide, lopsided (esp. AE), overwhelming, resounding, stunning, sweeping ~ 4. a famous; glorious; hard-won ~ 5. a bloodless; easy ~ 6. a narrow; upset ~ 7. a cheap; hollow; Pyrrhic ~ 8. a military; moral ~ 9. a ~ against (a ~ against overwhelming odds) 10. a ~ for (the result was a personal ~ for her) 11. a ~ in; over (a ~ in a long and bloody struggle; a ~ over an enemy) 12. (misc.) to snatch, wrest ~ from the jaws of defeat

video *n.* 1. to make, produce, record a ~ (of) 2. to play, run, show a ~ 3. to watch a ~ 4. a blank ~ 5. on ~ (to record on ~; the film came out on ~) (see also *video recorder* & *video-cassette recorder* at **recorder**; *video recording* at **recording**)

videotape *n.* see **video**

vie *v.* 1. (formal) (d; intr.) to ~ for; with (she had to ~ for the prize with formidable competitors) 2. (E) she ~d with formidable competitors to win the prize

view I *n.* ["opinion"]["outlook"] 1. to air, express, make known, present, put forth, put forward, voice a ~ 2. to harbor, hold a ~ 3. to advance, advocate, support; reject a ~ 4. to exchange ~s 5. to have; take a ~ 6. a cheerful, favorable, optimistic, rosy; positive; sound ~ (she expressed very optimistic ~s about the project) 7. a cynical; dim; grave, grim, pessimistic; slanted; unpopular ~ (she took a dim ~ of the matter) 8. a contrary, unfavorable; divergent; diverse; opposing ~ (they hold opposing ~s on various matters) 9. a extreme; strong ~ (they aired strong ~s about the candidates) 10. a conservative; liberal, progressive; moderate; radical; reactionary ~ (she presented moderate ~s at the rally) 11. an ideological; philosophical; political; world ~ (we do not support that political ~) 12. an advanced; modern ~ 13. a conventional, majority, orthodox, popular; prevailing, widespread; minority, unorthodox ~ 14. an old-fashioned; outdated, outmoded ~ 15. a ~ about, of, on 16. a ~ that + clause (they disputed my ~ that taxes should be raised because they took the ~ that taxes should be reduced) 17. in smb.'s ~ (in my ~ the offer is unacceptable) ["sight"] 18. to get; have a ~ of 19. to block smb.'s; to hide from ~ 20. a beautiful, breathtaking, magnificent, majestic, marvelous, superb, wonderful ~ 21. a clear, unhampered, unimpaired ~ 22. a bird's-eye; close-up; full; full-length; panoramic; sectional ~ 23. in, within; on ~ (in full ~ of the public; the exhibition will be on ~ for a month) 24. (misc.) to come into; disappear, vanish from ~ ["perspective"] 25. an exploded ~ ["what can be seen"] 26. a rear ~ 27. a ~ across; from (the ~ across the lake from the window) 28. (misc.) a room with a (nice) ~ (of the ocean) ["aim"] 29. with a ~ (we entered talks with a ~ to reestablishing diplomatic relations) ["misc."] 30. in ~ of ("in consideration of"); of a ~ (they are of the ~ that taxes should be reduced); your ~ reflects your environment (see also *exchange of views* at **view I** *n.*; **point of view**; **viewpoint**)

view II *v.* ("to consider") 1. to ~ favorably; generally, widely; increasingly; unfavorably 2. (d; tr.) to ~ as (she was increasingly ~ed as a serious threat to the party leadership) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ with (to ~ recent developments with alarm)

viewer *n.* 1. a regular ~ (regular ~s of the channel will note some changes) 2. younger ~s (a TV program unsuitable for younger ~s)

viewpoint *n.* 1. a ~ that + clause (he explained his ~ that taxes should be increased) 2. from smb.'s ~ (from his ~, taxes should be increased) (see also **point of view**; **view I** 1–17)

vigil *n.* 1. to hold a ~; to keep (a) ~ 2. an all-night; bedside; lonely; prayer ~ 3. a ~ over

vigilance *n.* 1. to display, show; exercise ~ 2. constant; eternal ~ ("Eternal ~ is the price of liberty." – attributed to Wendell Phillips, 1852)

vigor, vigour *n.* 1. to regain one's ~ 2. to lose one's ~ 3. to sap smb.'s ~ 4. great ~ (he rejected the accusation with great ~) 5. the ~ to + inf. (does he have enough ~ to get everything done?) 6. (misc.) vim and ~

vile *adj.* (formal) ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to issue such a statement)

village *n.* 1. an agricultural, farming; fishing ~ 2. the global ~ (see also *village hall* at **hall**; the Usage Note for **town**)

village green *n.* on the ~

villain *n.* an arch, consummate ~ USAGE NOTE: In AE, *villain* is mostly literary or humorous; in colloq. BE it can still mean "criminal".

vim *n.* ["energy"] with ~ and vigor; full of ~ and vigor

vindictive *adj.* 1. ~ of (that was ~ of him) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to issue such a spiteful statement)

vinegar *n.* 1. balsamic; cider; malt; wine ~ 2. oil and ~ (as a vinaigrette salad dressing)

vintage *n.* ["period"] 1. of a certain ~ (a mansion of prewar ~; a car of ancient ~) (see also *vintage car* at **car**; *vintage port* at **port II** *n.*; *vintage wine* at **wine**)

viola *n.* 1. to play the ~ 2. to string, tune a ~ 3. for; on the ~ (a sonata for unaccompanied ~; a sonata for ~ and piano; to play smt. on the ~)

violation *n.* 1. to commit; constitute a ~ 2. a brazen, flagrant, gross; major ~ 3. a minor ~ 4. a human-rights ~ 5. a moving; parking; traffic ~ (by a motorist) 6. in ~ of (he acted in ~ of the law)

violence *n.* ["devastating force"] 1. to commit, resort to, use ~ 2. excessive ~ 3. domestic; sexual ~ 4. an act of ~ 5. ~ against ["distortion"]["harm"] 6. to do ~ to (the decision does ~ to our whole judicial tradition) ["rioting"] 7. to incite, stir up ~ 8. to crack down on ~ 9. communal; continuing; ethnic; mob; racial; sporadic; urban; widespread ~ 10. ~ breaks out, erupts, flares up 11. ~ ceases, dies down 12. an eruption, flare-up, outbreak, outburst of ~ 13. a cessation; reduction of ~ 14. the amount, incidence, level of ~ (hoping for a reduction in the level of communal violence)

violin *n.* 1. to play the ~ 2. to string, tune a ~ 3. a first; second ~ 4. for; on the ~ (a sonata for unaccompanied ~; a sonata for ~ and piano; to play smt. on the ~) 5. (misc.) the principal first violinist of an orchestra is called its leader in BE and its concertmaster in AE

virgin *n.* a vestal ~ (historical)

virginity *n.* to keep one's ~; to lose one's ~

virtue *n.* ["admirable feature"]["moral excellence"] 1. to have a ~ (our budget has the ~ of providing for a small surplus) 2. a cardinal ~ 3. (misc.) a paragon of ~; to extol the ~s of ["misc."] 4. by, in ~ of ("because of"); a woman of easy ~ (old-fashioned) ("a sexually promiscuous woman"); to make a ~ of necessity ("to make the best of smt. bad")

virus *n.* 1. to culture a ~ 2. to isolate a ~ 3. to come down with, get a ~ 4. a (common) cold; flu, influenza; intestinal; HIV/AIDS ~ 5. a computer ~ (a computer ~ is spreading) 6. a ~ is going around, spreading

visa *n.* 1. to apply for a ~ 2. to get, receive a ~ 3. to overstay; violate a ~ 4. to grant, issue a ~ 5. to extend; renew a ~ 6. to deny, refuse smb. a ~ 7. to cancel a ~ 8. an entry; exit; student; tourist; transit ~ 9. a ~ expires, runs out 10. a ~ for (do I need a ~ for that country?) 11. on a ~ (to enter a country on a student ~)

vise, vice *n.* ["tool for holding an object being worked on"] 1. to loosen; tighten a ~ 2. in a ~ USAGE NOTE: The AE form is *vise*; the BE form is *vice*; they have the same pronunciation.

visibility *n.* ["degree of being visible"] 1. clear, good; unlimited ~ 2. limited, poor, reduced; marginal; zero ~ (all planes were grounded because of poor ~) 3. (misc.) ~ is down to fifty yards ["exposure to publicity"] 4. high; increased; low; maximum ~

visible *adj.* 1. barely, hardly, scarcely; clearly, plainly ~ 2. ~ from; to (the house was not ~ from the road; not ~ to the naked eye) 3. (misc.) (fig.) a highly/very ~ public figure

vision *n.* ["sight"] 1. acute; clear; keen; normal; twenty-twenty ~ 2. blurred; deteriorating, failing; dim; double; impaired; tunnel ~ 3. binocular; peripheral ~ 4. to lose; regain one's ~ 5. (misc.) a field of ~ ("a visual field"); a ~ of the future; a ~ of loveliness ["foresight"] 6. the ~ to + inf. (she had the ~ to make wise investments several years ago) 7. of ~ (a person of great ~) 8. (misc.) tunnel ~ ("narrow horizons") ["imaginary picture"] 9. a ~ that + clause (she had a ~ that her country would be liberated) 10. in a ~ (to see smt. as if in a ~)

visit I *n.* 1. to make, pay a ~ (to) 2. to schedule a ~ (to) 3. to have a ~ from 4. to cancel; postpone a ~ 5. to cut short; prolong a ~ 6. a brief, flying, short; extended, lengthy, long ~ 7. a formal; friendly; home ~ (esp. BE; AE prefers *house call*); informal; official; return; state; unscheduled; weekend ~ 8. a ~ lasts (how long did his visit last?) 9. a ~ to (this is my first ~ to your country) 10. during a ~ 11. on a ~ (on a ~ to South America)

visit II *v.* 1. (obsol. or formal) (d; tr.) to ~ on (the Lord's anger was ~ed on the people) 2. (AE) (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to meet up and chat with") (she likes to ~ with the neighbors on the front porch)

visitor *n.* 1. to greet, welcome; introduce a ~ 2. to get; have, receive a ~ (this town doesn't get many ~s; we had some ~s this weekend) 3. a frequent ~ 4. a weekend ~ 5. (BE) a prison ~ 6. (BE) a health ~ (AE has *public-health nurse*) 7. a ~ from (~s from abroad) 8. a ~ to (~s to our city)

vista *n.* [“view”] 1. to open up new ~s (of the future) 2. a broad, wide ~

visualize *v.* 1. to ~ easily, readily 2. (d; tr.) to ~ as (I cannot ~ him as a famous star) 3. (J) I cannot ~ him becoming a famous star 4. (K) I cannot ~ his becoming a famous star 5. (Q) I could not ~ how he could become a famous star

vital *adj.* 1. ~ for, to (their aid is ~ to/for our success) 2. ~ to + inf. (it is ~ for us to be prepared for any eventuality) 3. ~ that + clause; subj. (it is ~ that we ¬be/should be/are (BE)¬ prepared for any eventuality)

vitamins *n.* 1. to be rich in ~ 2. to contain ~ 3. to take ~ 4. multivitamins (see also *vitamin deficiency* at **deficiency**)

vocabulary *n.* 1. to command a ~ 2. to build, develop, enlarge one's ~ 3. an extensive, huge, large, rich ~ 4. a limited, meager, restricted, small ~ 5. a basic; essential; technical ~ 6. an active; passive ~ 7. a ~ for (he has the ~ essential for his needs) 8. when did the word “surrender” enter your ~? (see also *item of vocabulary = vocabulary item* at **item**)

vocation *n.* 1. to have a ~ 2. a genuine, real ~ 3. (misc.) to have missed one's (true) ~ (“not to have chosen an occupation or vocation at which one is particularly adept”); to have a (genuine) ~ for the priesthood = to have a (genuine) ~ to the priesthood = to have a (genuine) ~ to be a priest = to have a (genuine) ~ as a priest

vogue *n.* [“popularity”] [“current fashion”] 1. to be the ~ (home computers are the latest ~) 2. to be in ~; to come into ~ (home computers have come into ~) 3. to enjoy, have (BE) a ~ 4. to go out of ~ 5. the current; latest ~ 6. a ~ for (the latest ~ is for home computers) 7. (misc.) to be all the ~

voice I *n.* [“sound produced by vocal cords”] 1. to raise one's ~ (in anger to to make oneself heard) 2. to drop, lower one's ~ 3. to keep one's ~ down 4. to disguise one's ~ 5. to lose one's ~ 6. a friendly, gentle, good, kind, pleasant, soft; mellifluous, melodious, sweet ~ 7. a clear; firm, steady ~ 8. a deep; mellow; resonant; rich ~ 9. a high; high-pitched; low, low-pitched ~ 10. a booming; loud; stentorian; strident; thundering ~ 11. a quaking, quivering, shaking, shaky, trembling ~ 12. a guttural; hoarse; husky; muffled; nasal; subdued ~ 13. a gruff, harsh, raucous; shrill ~ 14. a ~ bellows; booms out; breaks, cracks; carries; changes; drones away/on; drops, falls; quivers, shakes, trembles; rises 15. in a certain ~ (in a loud ~) 16. (misc.) (to shout) at the top of one's ~; ventriloquists throw their ~; actors must learn to project their ~ (see also *voice mail* at **mail I** *n.*; *voice recognition* at **recognition**; *tone of voice* at **tone**) [“expression”] 17. to give ~ to [“verbal form indicating the relation of the verb to its subject”] 18. the active; middle; passive ~ [“influence”] 19. to have a ~ in smt. [“misc.”] 20. an inner ~ (“conscience”); a lone dissenting ~; the ~ of reason; the still small ~ (of God) USAGE NOTE: *Hearing voices* may of course be perfectly normal. But the phrase is also used about auditory hallucinations, and is then like *hearing things* and is analogous to *seeing things* for visual hallucinations.

voice II *v.* (B) she ~d her concerns to us

void I *adj.* [“devoid”] 1. (cannot stand alone) ~ of 2. (misc.) null and ~ (to declare smt. null and ~)

void II *n.* 1. to fill a ~ 2. to leave a ~ 3. an aching, painful ~ 4. a ~ in

volatile *adj.* highly, very ~

volcano *n.* 1. an active, live; dead, extinct; dormant, inactive; intermittent ~ 2. a ~ erupts 3. a ~ spews lava 4. (misc.) the mouth of a ~

volition *n.* [“act of choosing”] of, on one's own ~ (they agreed of their own ~; to act on one's own ~)

volley I *n.* [“simultaneous discharge of weapons”] 1. to fire a ~ [“tennis ball in flight”] 2. (to hit/return a ball) on the ~

volley II *v.* (P; tr.) she ~ed the ball across the court

volleyball *n.* to play ~

voltage *n.* 1. to step up (the) ~ 2. high; low ~ (at a very high ~) (see also *a voltage surge = a surge in voltage* at **surge I** *n.*)

volume *n.* [“loudness”] 1. to amplify; increase, turn up the ~ 2. to decrease, turn down the ~ 3. at a certain ~ (at full ~) [“space occupied in three dimensions”] 4. molecular ~ [“book”] 5. a rare; single ~ (Shakespeare's complete works ¬in a single/in one¬ ~, whereas they often run to several ~s!) 6. a companion ~ (this work is a companion ~ to our first dictionary) 7. bound ~s (of a periodical) 8. (misc.) to speak ~s (“to imply a lot”) (a single glance can speak ~s)

volunteer I *n.* 1. to recruit ~s 2. a ~ for (I recruited several ~s for the job of tutor)

volunteer II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ as (she ~ed as a tutor) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (she ~ed for the job of tutor) 3. (E) she ~ed to be a tutor

vomiting *n.* 1. to cause, induce ~ 2. projectile ~

voodoo, voodooism *n.* to practice ~

vortex *n.* to draw, suck into a ~

vote I *n.* [“collective opinion as determined by voting”] 1. to have, take a ~ on (a motion) 2. to put a motion to a ~; to bring a motion to a ~ 3. to influence, swing a ~ (recent events swung the ~ in our favor; the press can influence the ~) 4. to count, tabulate, tally; recount the ~ 5. a close; free (as in Parliament); lopsided (esp. AE); majority; No; overwhelming; popular; solid; unanimous; Yes ~ 6. a straw; voice; write-in ~ 7. a ~ on (a ~ on an issue) 8. (esp. BE) a ~ to + inf. (we took a ~ to adjourn) 9. by a ~ (by a unanimous ~) 10. a ~ of censure; confidence; no confidence; thanks 11.

(misc.) to fix, rig a ~; the ~ went ¬in our favor/against us¬ ["individual expression of opinion, ballot"] 12. to cast a ~ 13. to change, switch one's ~ 14. to get, receive smb.'s ~ (you'll never get my ~) 15. the casting (BE), deciding ~ (to cast the deciding ~; if there's a tie the chairman has the deciding ~) 16. a write-in ~ 17. a ~ against; for; on (to cast a ~ for a proposal) 18. the ~s to + inf. (we have enough ~s to carry the state) ["group of voters"] 19. the bloc; conservative; floating (BE) ("unattached"); independent; labor; liberal; undecided ~ (the bloc ~ of certain groups made their victory certain) ["voters as a group"] 20. to deliver the ~(s); to get out the ~ (the party machine delivered the ~s; a series of interesting debates helped to get out the ~) 21. a heavy; light ~ ["right to vote, franchise, suffrage"] 22. to get, receive; give, grant the ~ (in some countries women got the ~ only after World War I)

vote II *v.* 1. to ~ No; overwhelmingly; solidly; Yes 2. (C; usu. used without *for*) Congress ~d him a pension 3. (D; intr.) to ~ against; for (to ~ against a bill by 12 to three) 4. (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into office) 5. (D; intr.) to ~ on, upon (to ~ on a resolution) 6. (d; tr.) to ~ out of (to ~ smb. out of office) 7. (E) Parliament ~d to approve the report 8. (L; subj.) Parliament ~d that the report ¬be/should be¬ approved 9. (N; used with an adjective, noun) she was ~d most likely to succeed 10. (misc.) to ~ by a show of hands or by a secret ballot (see also *the right to vote* at **right III** *n.*); to ~ smb. onto a committee and smb. else off the committee; most MPs ~d with their party but some rebelled

voter *n.* 1. an absentee; floating (BE), swing ("unattached"); independent; registered; undecided ~ 2. a ~ casts a vote; registers (to vote) (see also *voter registration* at **registration**)

voting *n.* absentee; bloc; tactical ~ (see also *voting irregularities = irregularities in voting* at **irregularity**; *voting machine* at **machine**)

voting lists *n.* to tamper with ~

vouch *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (I can ~ for the truth of her statement) 2. (L) I can ~ that her statement is true

voucher *n.* 1. an education; gift (BE); hotel; luncheon (BE; AE has *meal ticket*); travel; tuition (AE) ~ 2. a ~ for

vouchsafe *v.* (formal or ironic; rare) 1. (B) ("to grant") she ~d me a word 2. (E) ("to condescend") she ~d to help

vow I *n.* 1. to make, take a ~ 2. to fulfill, keep one's ~ 3. to break, repudiate, violate a ~ 4. a formal, sacred, solemn ~ 5. clerical; marriage; monastic; religious ~s (priests take religious ~s) 6. a ~ to + inf. (she made a solemn ~ not to drink again) 7. a ~ that + clause (she made a solemn ~ that she would not drink again) 8. (misc.) to exchange; renew marriage ~s; a ~ of silence

vow II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (she was ~d to secrecy) 2. (E) she ~ed not to drink again 3. (L; to) she ~ed (to them) that she would not drink again

vowel *n.* 1. to articulate, pronounce a ~ 2. a back; closed; front; high; lax; long; middle; nasal; open; reduced; rounded; short; stressed; tense; unstressed ~ (see also *vowel sound* at **sound II** *n.*)

voyage *n.* ["journey"] 1. to begin, embark on, go on, set off on, start on a ~ 2. to make, undertake a ~ 3. a long; maiden; ocean, sea; round-the-world; short; space ~ 4. a ~ around (a ~ around the world) 5. a ~ from; to (a ~ to the islands) 6. a ~ through (a ~ through the Panama Canal) 7. during; throughout a ~ 8. on a ~ (they were on a ~ to Europe) 9. (misc.) the ~ out; the ~ back/home; bon ~! (have a) safe journey!

V-sign *n.* 1. to give, make the/a ~ (showing triumph or encouragement) 2. (BE) to give, make a/the ~ (showing vulgar contempt or rage) USAGE NOTE: The favorable V-sign is made with the palm outwards and the hand held steady. The vulgar V-sign is made with the back of the hand outwards and the hand typically moved up and down rapidly.

vulgar *adj.* ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to spit in public)

vulnerable *adj.* 1. very ~ 2. ~ to

vulture *n.* 1. ~s feed on carrion 2. (misc.) ~ are supposed to gather near the dead or dying (also fig.)

vying see **vie**

W

wad *n.* (slang) (AE) ["a large amount, as of money"] to shoot one's ~ ("to spend all of one's money" or "to make a last-ditch effort")

waddle *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ across the road

wade *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ across (to ~ across a stream) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into a river) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ into ("to attack") (the speaker ~d into the opposing candidate) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ through (to ~ through deep water) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ through ("to read through with difficulty") (to ~ through a long report) (see also *wading pool* at **pool II** *n.*)

wade in *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ with (she ~d in with a few choice comments)

waft *v.* (P; intr.) an aroma ~ed in from the kitchen

wage I *n.* 1. to draw, earn, get, receive a ~ 2. to pay a ~ 3. to boost, increase, raise ~s 4. to cut, reduce, slash ~s 5. to freeze ~s 6. to attach, garnishee ~s 7. to withhold smb.'s ~s 8. a decent, living; minimum; high; low; subsistence ~ (to pay workers a decent ~) 9. an annual, yearly; daily; hourly; monthly; weekly ~ 10. a union ~ 11. (misc.) the union successfully negotiated (for) a higher ~ (see also **wages**)

wage II *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ against (to ~ a campaign/war against smoking)

wager I *n.* 1. to lay, make, place a ~ on 2. a ~ that + clause (she made a ~ that her team would win)

wager II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ on (he ~ed a month's salary on that horse) 2. (L; may have a personal object) he ~ed (me) that it would rain 3. (O; can be used with one object, two objects, or two objects + *that*-clause) we ~ed ten dollars; we ~ed him ten dollars; we ~ed him ten dollars that it would rain

wages *n.* 1. see **wage I** 2. meager; starvation ~

waggon (BE) see **wagon**

wagon *n.* 1. a station ~ (AE; BE has *estate car*; old-fashioned BE also has *shooting brake*) 2. a tea ~ (AE; BE has *tea trolley*) 3. (esp. AE) a paddy, patrol ~ (for other equivalents, see **car** 17; CE also has *black maria*) 4. (AE) a welcome ~ ("a car sent with gifts from local merchants to a family that has just moved into a neighborhood") 5. a Conestoga; covered ~ 6. a goods ~ (BE; AE has *freight car*) 7. (colloq.) (AE) a chuck ("food") ~ (on a ranch) 8. (misc.) on the ~ ("pledged not to drink alcoholic drinks")

waist *n.* 1. a slender, slim ~ 2. around, round the ~ (she wore a belt around her ~) 3. (misc.) (see also *waist-high* at **high I** *adj.*; *stripped to the waist* at **strip II** *v.*)

wait I *n.* 1. to lie in ~ for 2. to have a (long) ~ for (we had a long ~ for the bus) 3. a long; short ~ 4. quite a ~ (see also *worth the wait* at **worth I** *adj.*, *prep.*)

wait II *v.* 1. (BE) (d; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at table) (cf. 3) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (they ~ed for me; they could hardly ~ for me to leave!) 3. (AE) (d; intr.) to ~ on (to ~ on tables) (cf. 1) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ on, upon ("to attend to") (to ~ on smb. hand and foot) 5. (E) we are ~ing to go; I can't ~ to find out the results! 6. (misc.) to keep smb. ~ing; they ~ed until she returned; ~ and see; ~ a minute/moment/second (see also *a wait-and-see attitude* at **attitude**; *wait with bated breath* at **breath**)

waiter *n.* 1. to call a ~ over 2. to catch a waiter's eye 3. to give a ~ one's order 4. to tip a ~ 5. a head; wine ~ 6. a ~ takes smb.'s order

waiting *n.* (GB; on a traffic sign) No Waiting (US has *No Standing* or *No Stopping*)

waitress *n.* see **waiter** 1–4, 6

wait up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ for (they ~ed up for her until she returned = they ~ed up for her to return)

waiver *n.* to agree to, sign a ~

wake I *n.* ["vigil over a corpse"] to hold a ~

wake II *n.* ["aftermath"] in the ~ (of) (war brings misery in its ~; security was beefed up in the ~ of the explosion)

wake III *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from, out of (she woke from a deep sleep) 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ to (I woke to bright sunlight; it woke the community to the danger of pollution; "I woke to black flak and the nightmare fighters" – Randall Jarrell, 1914–65, "The Death of the Ball Turret Gunner") 3. (E) they woke to find the house in flames 4. (s) I woke refreshed

wake up *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from, out of (she woke up from a deep sleep) 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ to (the community must ~ to the danger of pollution!) 3. (E) they woke up to find the house in flames; I woke up only to find it had all been a dream! 4. (s) I woke up refreshed 5. (misc.) to ~ with a start (see also *wake-up call* at **call I** *n.*)

walk I *n.* ["journey on foot"] 1. to have (BE), take a ~ 2. to take smb. for a ~ (BE also has: to take smb. a long ~ round the grounds) 3. to go for, go on a ~ 4. a brisk; easy; leisurely; long; nature; short; sponsored (money-raising) ~ (to take a brisk ~) 5. a ~ lasts, takes (the ~ from here to school takes only 5 minutes) 6. a ~ from; to (we took a ~ from our house to the center of town; it's an easy 5-minute ~ from here to school) 7. at a ~ (we set off at a brisk ~) 8. during, on a ~ (see also **walk II** *v.* for more prepositions used also with **walk I** *n.*) ["profession"] ["class"] 9. from ¬every ~/all ~s¬ of life

walk II *v.* 1. to ~ fast; slow 2. (d; intr.) to ~ across (to ~ across the street) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ along (to ~ along a river bank) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ around, round (to ~ around a house) 5. (d; intr.) to ~ by, past (to ~ past the library) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ down; up (to ~ down the street and then back up it again) 7. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; to, towards (we ~ed from the park to the station; I ~ed her to the library; I ~ed my bicycle to the garage) 8. (d; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into a room; to ~ into an ambush; to ~ into a punch) 9. (d; intr.) to ~ on, over (don't ~ on the wet floor!; don't ~ on the grass!) 10. (d; intr.) to ~ out of (to ~ out of a meeting) 11. (d; intr.) to ~ (all) over ("to treat badly") (they ~ed all over us) 12. (d; intr.) to ~ through (to ~ through the park; to ~ through a puddle; she was so good she just ~ed through the exams!) 13. (d; tr.) to ~ smb. through ("to help with smt. complicated") (she ~ed me through the procedure) 14. (misc.) she ~ed her dog in the park; they ~ed off the job in protest against the long hours; they ~ed me home; to ~ up and down/back and forth; they like to go ~ing (see also **walking**)

walkabout *n.* (colloq.) ["a walk through a crowd by an important person"] (BE) 1. to do, go on a ~ (the Queen went on a ~ after the ceremony) ["misc."] 2. the Queen went ~ after the ceremony; my camera seems to have gone ~ ("my camera seems to be missing")

walk away *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ from (he ~ed away from me without saying a word; to ~ from an accident ("to survive an accident unhurt"); you can't just ~ from your responsibilities!) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to win") (she ~ed away with all the top prizes)

walk down *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ from; to (they ~ed down to the river bank)

walker *n.* a tightrope ~

walk in *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ from (they ~ed in from the street) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ on ("to come across unexpectedly") (I ~ed in on an interesting scene)

walking *n.* 1. heel-and-toe ~ 2. power ~ (see also *at a walking pace* at **pace I** *n.*)

walking papers *n.* (colloq.) (AE) ["notice of dismissal"] to give people their ~ (BE has *marching orders*)

walk off *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to win") (she ~ed off with first prize)

walkout *n.* 1. to stage a ~ 2. to end a ~ 3. a sympathy ~

walk out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ on ("to leave") (she ~ed out on her husband) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ onto (they ~ed out onto the veranda)

walk over *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ from; to (he ~ed over to her table; she ~ed over from her house to our house)

walk up *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to (I ~ed up to them and said a few words)

wall *n.* 1. to build, erect, put up a ~ 2. to demolish, tear down a ~ 3. to climb, scale a ~ 4. to paint; panel; paper; plaster a ~ 5. to line a ~ (to line a ~ with bookshelves) 6. a high; low; solid, thick ~ 7. a brick; fire; inside; load-bearing; outside; retaining ~; seawall; stone; supporting ~ 8. a (Chinese) ~ between (also fig.) (the (Chinese) ~ (of strict separation) between church and state) 9. against the ~ (they were lined up/stood up against the ~ and shot) 10. on a ~ (there were several pictures on the ~) 11. (misc.) we had our backs to the ~ ("we were in a desperate situation"); (slang) to drive smb. up the ~ ("to frustrate smb. completely")

wallet *n.* 1. a leather ~ 2. (misc.) his ~ was bulging with banknotes

wall off *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from

wallop *n.* (colloq.) ["force"] 1. to pack a ~ (the winds packed a real ~) ["blow"] 2. to give smb. a ~ (on)

wallow *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in the mud; to ~ in self-pity)

wallpaper *n.* 1. to hang, put up ~ 2. to scrape (off), take off ~ 3. a roll of ~

waltz I *n.* 1. to perform, play a ~ 2. to dance, do a ~ (see also *waltz time* at **time I** *n.*)

waltz II *v.* 1. (colloq.) (d; intr.) to ~ through ("to complete with ease") (she was so good she just ~ed through the exams!) 2. (P; intr.) they ~ed around the room together

waltz off *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ with (she ~ed off with first prize) 2. (P) "You … ~ed me off to bed Still clinging to your shirt." – Theodore Roethke, "My Papa's Waltz" (1948)

wan *adj.* pale and ~

wand *n.* 1. to wave a ~ 2. a magic ~

wander *v.* 1. (d; intr.) ("to stray") to ~ from (to ~ from the subject) 2. (P; intr.) we ~ed across the park; they ~ed along the river bank; she ~ed into the village; he ~ed through the town 3. (misc.) his mind is ~ing, poor man!

wander away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ from (the children ~ed away from their parents)

wanderer *n.* a homeless ~

wane I *n.* ["decrease"] ["period of decrease"] on the ~ (the moon is on the ~; the Roman Empire was on the ~ for several centuries before it fell)

wane II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ into (to ~ into insignificance) 2. (misc.) to wax and ~

wangle *v.* (colloq.) 1. (C) could you ~ an invitation for me?; or: could you ~ me an invitation? 2. (D; tr.) to ~ from, out of (she ~d an invitation out of them) 3. (misc.) to ~ one's way into a party

want I *n.* ["need"] 1. to fill, meet, satisfy a ~ 2. to minister to smb.'s ~s 3. a long-felt ~ 4. for ~ of (to die for ~ of medical care) 5. in ~ of (in ~ of a job) ["poverty"] 6. in ~ (to live in ~)

want II *v.* 1. to ~ badly, desperately, very much (they ~ed very badly to see us) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to be in need of") (they will never ~ for anything) 3. (D; tr.) ("to seek") to ~ for (he is ~ed for murder in three states) 4. (D; tr.) ("to desire") to ~ for (we ~ you for our team) 5. (E) ("to desire") I ~ to help 6. (E) ("ought") you ~ to think carefully about what you say to them 7. (BE) (G) ("to be in need of") your shirts ~ mending; the house ~s painting; her hair ~s cutting 8. (H; no passive) ("to desire") they ~ us to finish the job today 9. (J) I ~ them singing in tune! 10. (M) ("to desire") I ~ them to be kept busy at all times 11. (N; used with an adjective, past participle) ("to desire") I ~ them busy at all times; I ~ them kept busy at all times; I ~ them ready in one hour; she ~s the house painted tomorrow 12. (s; used with a past participle) (BE) (nonstandard) your shirts ~ mended 13. (misc.) I ~ them out of the house by tomorrow; (esp. AE) they ~ out of the deal but we ~ in (on it)!; your present is just what I've always ~ed!; all I've ever ~ed is your love! USAGE NOTE: It should be noted that the construction *want* + *for* + *to* + inf. can be acceptable in CE as in – w*hat they want is for us to finish the job today*; *they want very much for us to finish the job today*. In addition, a construction such as *they want very much that we should finish the job today* (Pattern L) is acceptable in CE, but typically only when a modifier such as *very much* appears between *want* and the dependent clause introduced by *that*. Nevertheless, *want* does appear in Pattern L in certain regional varieties of English and sometimes in literature: "How long ago Hector took off his plume, Not wanting that his little son should cry" – Frances Cornford (1886–1960), "Parting in Wartime"

wanted *adj.* ["sought"] 1. ~ by (he is ~ by the police) 2. ~ for (he is ~ed (by the police) for murder in three states)

wanting *adj.* ["deficient, lacking"] 1. ~ in 2. (misc.) to be found ~

wapiti *n.* see **elk**

war I *n.* 1. to conduct, fight, wage ~ against, with 2. to make ~ (Make Love, Not War!) 3. to declare ~ on; to go to ~ over 4. to drift into; plunge into (a) ~ 5. to provoke (a) ~ 6. to escalate, step up a ~ 7. to avert (a) ~ 8. to survive (a) ~ 9. to lose; win a ~ 10. to ban, outlaw ~ 11. to end a ~ 12. an all-out, full-scale, total; global, world ~ 13. a limited, local ~ 14. (a) civil; class; guerrilla; revolutionary ~ 15. a cold; hot, shooting ~ 16. a defensive; offensive ~ 17. a holy, religious ~ 18. a trade ~ 19. an atomic, nuclear, thermonuclear; conventional ~ 20. star ~s 21. a gang; price ~ 22. a ~ of aggression; attrition; extermination; nerves 23. a ~ breaks out; rages; spreads (the ~ spread to the north) 24. an act of ~ 25. a ~ against; between (a ~ against an aggressor; a ~ between former allies) 26. a ~ on (a ~ on drugs/poverty) 27. at ~ (with) (to be at ~ with one's neighbors) 28. during, throughout a ~ 29. in ~ (all's fair in love and ~) 30. (misc.) a theater of ~; a state of ~ (to be in a state of ~ with a country) (see also *the brink of war* at **brink**; *war crime* at **crime**; *war criminal* at **criminal**; *war footing* at **footing**; *war hero* at **hero**; **prisoner of war**)

war II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against, with (to ~ with one's neighbors) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ over (to ~ over disputed territory)

ward *n.* ["hospital room"] 1. an emergency; maternity, obstetrics; pediatrics; private (BE) ("not under the National Health Service") ~ 2. in, on a ~ (to work in the emergency ~; who works in/on this ~?) (see also **ward round**; *ward sister* at **sister**)

warden *n.* 1. a prison ~ (AE; BE has *governor*) 2. (BE) a traffic ~ 3. an air-raid ~ USAGE NOTE: An AE *prison warden* should not be confused with a BE *prison warder*, who in AE is a *prison guard*.

wardrobe *n.* ["clothes"] 1. an autumn (esp. BE), fall (AE); spring; summer; winter ~ 2. (misc.) I bought a whole new ~ for the cruise

ward round *n.* to do, make a ~ (the consultant will be making his ward rounds about now)

ware *n.* earthenware; glassware USAGE NOTE: *Ware* is often used in naming goods of a certain type. See also **wear I** *n.*

warehouse *n.* a bonded ~

wares *n.* to display; hawk, peddle one's ~

warfare *n.* 1. to engage in ~ 2. armored; guerrilla; naval; trench ~ 3. conventional; push-button ~ 4. atomic, nuclear, thermonuclear ~ 5. bacteriological, germ; biological; chemical ~ 6. desert; jungle; tribal ~ 7. all-out; class; global; total ~ 8. economic; psychological; modern ~ 9. ~ against; between (~ against an aggressor; ~ between former allies)

warhead *n.* 1. to fire, launch a ~ 2. a conventional; multiple; nuclear ~

warm *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to begin to like") (I was just ~ing to the task)

warming *n.* global ~

warmth *n.* 1. body ~ 2. ~ spreads

warm up *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for (the players were ~ing up for the game) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ to (after a few drinks he ~ed up to the other guests)

warn *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ about, against, of (they ~ed me about his bad temper; I ~ed her against smoking; the police ~ed us of the pickpockets; the newspapers are ~ing of a severe winter) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ off (esp. BE) (the police ~ed us off the landlord's property; I ~ed her off smoking) 3. (H) they ~ed him to be careful; I ~ed her not to smoke 4. (L; typically has a personal object) they warned him that he should be careful; I warned her that she shouldn't smoke; the newspapers are ~ing (their readers) that the winter will be severe

warn away *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (the police ~ed us away from the burning building)

warning *n.* 1. to give, issue, send, sound a ~ 2. to shout a ~ 3. to get, receive; have; heed a ~ 4. to disregard, ignore a ~ 5. a cryptic; dire; tacit; timely ~ 6. (an) advance; fair ~ 7. ample, plenty of ~ 8. a storm ~ 9. a ~ comes (your ~ came just in time!) 10. a word of ~ (let me give you a word of ~, young man: don't mess with me!) 11. a ~ about (they gave me a ~ about his bad temper) 12. a ~ against (a ~ against smoking) 13. a ~ to (a ~ to all; let this ¬be/serve as¬ a ~ to you!) 14. a ~ to + inf. (a ~ to her not to smoke) 15. a ~ that + clause (they issued a ~ to her that she shouldn't smoke) 16. without ~ 17. (misc.) (formal) take ~: something awful may happen to you if you don't stop smoking! (see also *warning light* at **light II** *n.*; *warning signal* at **signal I** *n.*)

warpath *n.* (usu. colloq. and humorous) 1. to go on the ~ 2. to be on the ~ (they are on the ~ again)

warrant I *n.* 1. to issue a ~ (the court issued a search ~) 2. (AE) to swear out a ~ against smb. 3. to serve a ~ on (a ~ was served on her) 4. a bench; death; search ~ (to sign smb.'s death ~) (also fig.) 5. a ~ for (the court issued a ~ for her arrest) 6. a ~ to + inf. (the police have a ~ to search the house) 7. (misc.) a ~ is out for her arrest (see also **arrest warrant**)

warrant II *v.* 1. (K) ("to justify") the insult hardly ~ed his behaving like that! 2. (L) ("to guarantee") I cannot ~ that the coins are genuine 3. (formal and rare) (M) I cannot ~ the coins to be genuine

warranty *n.* 1. to give, offer, provide a ~ 2. an implied; limited; special; written ~ 3. a ~ expires, runs out; lasts 4. a ~ on (a two-year ~ on a new car) 5. under ~ (the new car is still under ~)

warren *n.* a rabbit ~

wart *n.* to remove a ~

wartime *n.* during, in ~

wary *adj.* ~ of (be ~ of strangers)

wash I *n.* ["laundry"] 1. to do the ~ 2. to hang out the ~ (to dry) 3. the weekly ~ (see also **laundry** *n.* 1–3) ["installation for washing"] 4. a car ~

wash II *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against (the waves ~ed against the pier) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ for (would you please ~ the dishes for me?) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ off, out of (she ~ed the marks off the wall; I ~ed the mud out of my shirt) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ over (the waves ~ed over the deck) 5. (D; tr.) to ~ with (I ~ed my hands with soap) 6. (misc.) to be ~ed overboard

wash down *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ with (I like ~ing down a meal with a glass of beer = I like ~ing a meal down with a glass of beer)

washing (esp. BE) see **laundry** *n.* 1–3; **wash I** *n.* 1–3

washing machine *n.* 1. to run, use a ~ 2. to load; empty, unload a ~ 3. an automatic ~

washing-up *n.* (BE) to do the ~ ("to wash the dishes") (see the Usage Note for **wash up**)

washing-up machine *n.* (BE colloq.; CE has *dishwasher*) 1. to run, use a ~ 2. to load, stack; empty, unload a ~ 3. an automatic ~

wash up *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ on (the wreckage ~ed up on shore) USAGE NOTE: In AE, *to wash up* means "to wash one's dirty hands (and perhaps face)"; in BE, it means "to wash the dirty dishes".

wasp *n.* 1. ~s buzz; sting 2. ~s live in nests

wastage *n.* (esp. BE) natural ~ (the staff will be reduced by natural ~) (CE has *attrition*)

waste I *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. to cut down on ~ 3. hazardous; nuclear; radioactive; solid; toxic ~(s) 4. complete, sheer, total, utter ~ 5. (misc.) to go to ~ ("to be wasted"); to lay ~ to ("to destroy"); a terrible ~ of time, money, and effort (see also *waste disposal* at **disposal**) USAGE NOTE: Note the following equivalence: (1) The fire laid waste to the land. = (2) The fire laid the land waste. However, (2) is nowadays more formal and less common than (1).

waste II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ on (we ~d a lot of time, money, and effort on that project) 2. (misc.) we ~d a lot of time going through the files

wasteful *adj.* 1. ~ of (~ of natural resources) 2. ~ to + inf. (it's ~ to use so much fuel)

wasteland *n.* 1. to reclaim ~ 2. (a) barren, desolate; cultural; industrial ~

watch I *n.* ["timepiece"] 1. to adjust; set; wind (up) a ~ 2. to synchronize ~es 3. to clean; repair a ~ 4. a pocket; self-winding ~; stopwatch; waterproof; wrist ~ 5. an analog; digital ~ (by/according to my digital ~, it's ten thirty) 6. a ~ is fast; right; slow 7. a ~ goes, runs; keeps time, tells the time (BE), tells time (AE); runs; ticks 8. a ~ gains time; loses time; runs down; stops 9. the dial, face; hands of a ~ 10. the crystal (esp. AE) of a ~ (see also *watch band* at **band II** *n.*; *watch bracelet* at **bracelet**; *watchstrap* at **strap I** *n.*) 11. (misc.) to put, set, turn a ~ ahead/forward/back (by) one hour ["surveillance"] 12. to keep, maintain a ~ on 13. a close ~ 14. on the ~ (for) (to be on the ~ for bargains) ["sailor's duty"] 15. to stand ~ 16. on ~ (several sailors were on ~) (also fig.) (that would never happen on my ~!) ["volunteers organized to prevent crime"] 17. a crime (esp. AE); neighborhood; town (esp. AE) ~ ["preliminary warning"] (esp. AE) 18. a storm ~

watch II *v.* 1. to ~ closely; like a hawk 2. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for the train) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ over (to ~ over one's property) 4. (I; no passive) we ~ed them enter the auditorium 5. (J) we ~ed them entering the auditorium 6. (L; used in the imper.) ~ that they don't take everything! 7. (Q) ~ how it's done 8. (misc.) we could only ~ helplessly as/while they took everything!

watchdog *n.* a consumer ~ (esp. BE) (profiteers exposed by consumer ~s)

watcher *n.* ["observer"] a bird; poll ~

watching *n.* ["observation"] 1. to bear ~ (her activities bear ~) ("her activities should be watched") ["act of watching"] 2. bird; poll ~

watchman *n.* a night ~

watch out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ for 2. (esp. AE) (L; used in the imper.) ~ that they don't take everything! = ~ or they'll take everything!

water I *n.* 1. to turn on the ~ 2. to turn off the ~ 3. to cut off, disconnect the ~ 4. to draw, run ~ (for a bath) 5. to add ~ 6. to drink; sip ~ 7. to pour; spill ~ 8. to drain (off) ~ (from) 9. to splash; sprinkle; squirt ~ on 10. to boil, sterilize; chlorinate; distill; filter; fluoridate; purify; soften ~ 11. to pollute ~ (see also *water pollution* at **pollution**) 12. drinking; safe ~ 13. carbonated, fizzy (BE); mineral; soda ~ 14. clear; fresh; running ~ 15. distilled; soft ~ (see also **rainwater**) 16. hard ~ 17. salt, sea ~ 18. holy ~ (to sprinkle holy ~ on smb.) 19. heavy ~ 20. boiling; hot ~ 21. cold; cool; ice ~ 22. lukewarm; tepid; warm ~ 23. contaminated, polluted; murky; stagnant ~ 24. ~ boils; evaporates; freezes; vaporizes 25. ~ drains (off) from; flows, pours, runs; leaks; oozes; rises; splashes; spills; sprinkles; squirts 26. a body; drop of ~ 27. by ~ (to travel by ~) 28. under ~ (after the flood our basement was under ~) 29. (misc.) a bottle of ~; a glass of ~; to make/pass ~ ("to urinate"); to hold ~ ("to be valid") (your theory doesn't hold ~); to tread ~ (when swimming); ~ under the bridge ("past events that are done with; bygones"); to pour cold ~ on ("to discourage"); to keep one's head above ~ ("to keep out of difficulty"); toilet ~ ("liquid used as a skin freshener"); hot ~ ("trouble") (to be in hot ~; to get in/into hot ~; he got into hot ~ with his boss for being late); the boat was shipping ~ ("the boat was taking in water") (see also **deep water**; *water cure* at **cure I** *n.*; *water level* at **level II** *n.*; *water power* at **power**; *water pressure* at **pressure I** *n.*; *water shortage* at **shortage**; *water table* at **table**; *water wheel* at **wheel I** *n.*; **waters**)

water II *v.* (misc.) to make smb.'s mouth ~ ("to create a desire or appetite in smb."); her mouth ~s at the sight of popcorn

watercolors, watercolours *n.* to paint in ~

waterfront *n.* along, on the ~

watermark *n.* 1. to reach a ~ 2. a high; low; record ~

waters *n.* 1. flood ~ (the raging rising flood ~ eventually receded/subsided) 2. coastal; international; navigable; territorial; uncharted ~ 3. in ~ (the ship was in international ~) 4. (misc.) to fish in muddy (AE)/troubled ~ ("to attempt to stir up trouble"); to take the ~ ("to take a water cure")

watershed *n.* 1. to be, constitute, mark, represent a ~ (in history) 2. to reach a ~ 3. a ~ for (for us the ~ was when we realized what to do) 4. a ~ in 5. at a ~ (we are at a ~ in history)

waterway *n.* an inland ~

waterworks *n.* 1. a municipal ~ 2. (misc.) to turn on the ~ ("to start to cry") (colloq.)

wave I *n.* ["moving ridge on the surface of water"] 1. a high, tall; mountainous; perfect ~ (looking for a perfect ~ to ride) 2. a tidal ~ 3. ~s break (on the rocks); crest; lap; rise (see also *on the crest of a wave* at **crest**) 4. beneath the ~s ["upsurge"] 5. a crime ~ 6. in ~s ["physical disturbance that is transmitted in the propagation of sound or light"] 7. light; radio; sound; transverse ~s 8. long; medium; short ~s ["brain rhythm"] 9. an alpha; brain; theta ~ ["period of weather"] 10. a cold; heat ~ ["reaction"] 11. a shock ~ (the credit crunch sent massive shock ~s through the country) ["waviness of the hair"] 12. a natural; permanent ~ ["misc."] 13. to attack in ~s; to make ~s ("to have an impact"); (BE) a Mexican ~ ("a wave-like motion made by a crowd at a sporting event") USAGE NOTE: In colloq. BE, a *brain wave* can also mean a "sudden bright idea", which in AE is a *brainstorm.* In colloq. BE, a *brainstorm* is a "sudden mental aberration". However, the verb *to brainstorm* (as in *a brainstorming session*) is now CE.

wave II *v.* 1. (A) ~ goodbye to them; or: ~ them goodbye 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ at, to (we ~d to her and she waved back at/to us; she ~d her arm at me; she ~d to them to come closer; she ~d at us from the airplane) 3. (P) she ~d them ahead/away/on

wave back *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at, to (we waved to her and she ~d back at/to us)

wavelength *n.* ["manner of thinking"] (colloq.) to be on the same ~; to operate on different ~s

waver *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ between (to ~ between two possibilities)

wax I *n.* beeswax; sealing ~ (see also **earwax**)

wax II *v.* (formal or humorous) 1. (s) ("to become") to ~ indignant; to ~ eloquent over ("to express one's enthusiasm concerning") 2. (misc.) to ~ and wane

way *n.* ["path, route"] 1. to blaze, clear, cut, open, pave, prepare the ~ for (to pave the ~ for reform) (see also **give way**) 2. to smooth the ~ for 3. to take the easy ~ out (of a difficult situation) 4. to lead; point, show the ~ (to point the ~ to reform) 5. to edge; elbow; fight; force; hack; inch; jostle; make; muscle; push; shoulder; shove; slash; squeeze; thread; tunnel; wedge; work one's ~ through; to (to elbow one's ~ through a crowd; the battalion fought its ~ through enemy lines to the coast; he pushed his ~ through the mob; to shove one's ~ through the revelers; we made our ~ to the door; to tunnel one's ~ to freedom) 6. to twist; weave, wend, wind one's ~ (the river winds its ~ to the sea) 7. to feel; find one's ~ 8. to wangle, worm one's ~ (into smb.'s confidence) 9. to know the ~ to (do you know the ~ to the station?) 10. to lose one's ~ 11. to bar, block the ~ 12. (BE) a permanent ~ ("a railroad track") 13. the ~ from; to (he kept chattering all the ~ from our house to the airport) 14. the ~ into, to (the ~ into the park; can you show me the ~ to the station?) 15. the ~ out of (the ~ out of the city; show me the ~ out of this building; there is no easy ~ out of this mess) 16. along; on the ~ (a letter is on the ~; she is on her ~ to the airport; there were lots of problems along the ~) 17. (misc.) to work one's ~ through college; to make one's ~ in life; they went their separate ~s; my gift is winging its ~ to you by airmail; to come to a parting of the ~s; by ~ of ("via") ("Before we go to Paradise by ~ of Kensal Green." – G.K. Chesterton (1874–1936), "The Rolling English Road"); to know one's ~ around ("to be familiar with procedures"); to bluff one's ~ out of a predicament (see also *way of all flesh* at **flesh**; *harm's way* at **harm**) ["room for movement"] 18. to make ~ for (make ~ for the king!) 19. in the ~ (to be/stand in the ~; to get in smb.'s ~) 20. out of the ~ (to get out of the ~) ["progress"] 21. under

~ (an investigation is (getting) under ~) ["distance"] 22. to come; go the whole ~; go a long ~; to go all the ~ (also fig.) ["direction"] 23. both ~s; this ~; that ~; the other ~ (she went that ~; please step this ~; they went the other ~) ["aspect, respect"] 24. in a certain ~ (in every ~; in no ~; in more ~s than one) ["manner, method"] 25. to find a ~ (they found a ~ to spend less money on electricity) 26. the proper, right; wrong ~ 27. the easy; hard ~ (to do smt. the hard ~; to learn about life the hard ~ ("through pain and difficulty"); let's do it the easy ~) 28. charming, winsome ~s 29. that; this ~ (do it this ~) 30. the ~ to + inf. (show me the ~ to work this washing machine; that's the ~ to do it; there is no easy ~ to learn a new language) 31. in a certain ~ (in her own ~; in such a ~ that…; in a small ~; they behaved in a statesmanlike ~; in an awkward ~; everything was done in a well-organized ~) 32. (misc.) to mend one's ~s; to fall into evil ~s ["purpose"] 33. by ~ of (by ~ of apology; by ~ of example; by ~ of illustration) ["effective manner"] 34. to have a ~ with (she has a ~ with children/words) ["goal"] 35. to get, have one's (own) ~ (she always gets her ~; you can't always have everything/things your own ~!; OK, have it your own ~, then!) ["misc."] 36. to know the ~s of the world; to know one's ~ around; to make one's ~ in the world; to get under ~ ("to start out"); in a ~ ("to some degree"); to go out of one's ~ ("to make a special effort"); to give ~ ("to collapse") ("to yield"); to pay one's own ~ ("to pay for oneself"); (old-fashioned) to be in the family ~ ("to be pregnant"); by the ~ ("incidentally"); on the ~ out ("becoming obsolescent"); the box says "This Way Up"; there are no two ~s about it ("it is definitely true"); out our ~ (esp. AE), down our ~ (esp. BE) ("where we live"); we are in a fair ~ to get our new library ("it appears as if we will get our new library"); this compromise goes a long ~ towards resolving our differences; can you see your ~ (clear) to accepting their compromise?; the ~ to smb.'s heart; to my ~ of thinking; a ~ of life; no ~ is he going to agree! (see also **long way**; **short way**) USAGE NOTE: Constructions such as *to hack one's way through the jungle* cannot be passivized; and in them the phrase *one's way* can sometimes be omitted: *to hack through the jungle*. Compare *they hacked a path through the jungle – a path was hacked (by them) through the jungle.*

wayside *n.* to fall by the ~

weak *adj.* 1. ~ at, in (he's ~ in mathematics) (see also *weak at the knees* at **knee I** *n.*) 2. ~ on, when it comes to (a bit ~ on common sense = a bit ~ in the common-sense department) 3. ~ from, with (~ with hunger)

weakened *adj.* ~ by (~ by hunger)

weakness *n.* ["quality of being weak"] 1. to reveal, show (a) ~ 2. a basic; fatal; fundamental; glaring; inherent; structural ~ 3. ~ in (his ~ in mathematics; there's a fundamental ~ in your reasoning) ["fondness"] 4. to have a ~ 5. a ~ for (to have a ~ for chocolate)

wealth *n.* ["abundance of material possessions, riches"] 1. to accumulate, acquire, amass, attain ~ 2. to dissipate, squander ~ 3. to flaunt one's ~ 4. enormous, fabulous, great, untold ~ ("malefactors of great ~" – Theodore Roosevelt, 1858–1919) 5. hereditary ~ 6. ~ accumulates ("the land … Where ~ accumulates and men decay" – Oliver Goldsmith (1728–74), "The Deserted Village") ["abundance of resources"] 7. mineral; natural ~ (the natural ~ of a country) ["abundance, profusion"] 8. a ~ of information

wean *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ a calf from its mother) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ off; on (the children were ~ed on television and had to be ~ed off it) 3. (misc.) to ~ smb. away from bad company

weapon *n.* 1. to load a ~ 2. to fire a ~ 3. to brandish; carry; draw; handle a ~ 4. to calibrate; zero in a ~ 5. to lay down, throw down one's ~s 6. a concealed; deadly, lethal ~ 7. automatic; defensive; heavy; light; offensive; semiautomatic ~s 8. atomic, thermonuclear; biological; chemical; conventional ~s (see also **nuclear weapons**) 9. (misc.) (they entered the building) with drawn ~s/with ~s drawn; the ultimate ~ ("nuclear bombs or missiles"); to stockpile ~s (see also *weapons of mass destruction (WMD)* at **destruction**)

wear I *n.* ["clothing"] 1. beach; bridal; casual; children's; evening ~; footwear; infants'; ladies', women's; men's; sports; everyday ~ ["wearing out"] 2. to save ~ and tear (on) (to save ~ and tear on one's curtains) 3. from; with ~ (the curtains had become worn from/with constant ~)

wear II *v.* 1. (N; used with an adjective) she ~s her hair short 2. (s) my patience is ~ing thin 3. (misc.) she ~s her hair in a bun/in a bob/in plaits/in braids; she wore a hole through/in her sock; ladies' ready-to-wear ("ready-made") garments

weary I *adj.* ~ of (they grew ~ of his preaching)

weary II *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ of (they ~ied of his preaching)

weasel *v.* (colloq.) (AE) (d; intr.) to ~ out of ("to evade") (to ~ out of one's obligations)

weather *n.* 1. to forecast, predict the ~ 2. (good) beautiful; clear, fair; dry; fine, good, nice, pleasant; mild; seasonable ~ (we had nice ~ all week) 3. (bad) atrocious, bad, beastly, bleak, dismal, dreary, foul, gloomy, inclement, nasty, stormy; threatening; ugly; unseasonable ~ 4. (rainy) cloudy, overcast; damp; foggy; overcast; rainy; stormy; unsettled; wet ~ 5. (warm) hot; humid, muggy; sultry; sunny; sweltering; tropical; warm ~ 6. (cold) arctic; cold; cool; freezing; windy; wintry ~ 7. the ~ clears up; the ~ turns cold/warm 8. ~ sets in (bad ~ set in) 9. a period, spell of ~ (we're in for another spell of bad ~) 10. in ~ (restaurants lose customers in bad ~) 11. (misc.) we'll go there, ~ permitting; under the ~ ("slightly ill") (see also *weather conditions* at **conditions**)

weather stripping *n.* to install, put on ~

weave I *n.* a coarse; fine; loose; plain; satin; tight; twill ~

weave II *v.* 1. (C) she wove a basket for us; or: she wove us a basket 2. (d; tr.) to ~ around, round (she wove the story around a specific theme) 3. (d; tr.) to ~ from, out of; into (she wants to ~ a scarf from this wool = she wants to ~ this wool into a scarf) 4. (d; tr.) ("to insert") to ~ into (to ~ some humor into a plot) 5. (misc.) to ~ together (she wove several themes together into a coherent plot); to ~ in and out of traffic

web *n.* 1. to spin; weave a ~ 2. an intricate, tangled ~ (a tangled ~ of intrigue) 3. a spider, spider's ~ ["computers"] 4. to browse; cruise; surf the ~ 5. the World Wide Web 6. on the ~ (to find smt. on the ~) USAGE NOTE: Spiders *spin* webs. People *weave* webs: "Oh what a tangled ~ we weave, When first we practise to deceive!" – Sir Walter Scott (1771–1832), *Marmion*

web site *n.* (computers) 1. to access; build, create; design; maintain; visit a ~ 2. on a ~ (see also *website address* at **address I** *n.*)

wedded *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to ((firmly) ~ to tradition) (see also *wedded bliss* at **bliss**)

wedding *n.* ["ceremony"] 1. to have, hold a ~ 2. to officiate at, perform a ~ 3. to attend a ~ (see also *wedding anniversary* at **anniversary**; *wedding bells* at **bell**; *wedding cake* at **cake**; *wedding date* at **date I** *n.*; *wedding day* at **day**; *wedding guest* at **guest**) 4. a big; church; (humorous) shotgun ~ (where the bride is already pregnant); white ~ (where the bride wears white esp. because it's her first marriage) 5. a ~ takes place 6. at a ~ ["anniversary"] (esp. BE) 7. see **anniversary**

wedge I *n.* to drive a ~ between; into

wedge II *v.* 1. to ~ firmly; tightly, tight 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ between; into; under 3. (N; used with an adjective) she ~d the door open/shut 4. (misc.) to ~ firmly in place

wedged *adj.* (cannot stand alone) 1. ~ firmly; tightly, tight 2. ~ between; in

wedlock *n.* (formal or old-fashioned) 1. to join in ~ 2. holy ~ 3. out of ~ (born out of ~)

wee *n.* (colloq.) to have, take; need a ~

weed out *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (they ~ed out the fit from the unfit = they ~ed the fit out from the unfit)

weeds *n.* 1. to pull ~ 2. to kill ~ (as with weed-killer)

week *n.* 1. to spend a ~ (somewhere) 2. every; last; next; this ~ 3. the coming; current; past ~ 4. future; past; recent ~s 5. a ~ from (Tuesday) 6. by the ~ (she is paid by the ~) 7. by ("before or in") a ~ (by next ~, prices may have risen again) 8. during the ~ 9. for a ~ (they came here for a ~) 10. for ~s (she hasn't been here for ~s; esp. AE is: she hasn't been here in ~s) 11. in a ~ (we can't finish the whole job in just one ~; they will get here in a ~, (esp. BE) they will get here in a ~'s time) 12. (misc.) a ~ ago; once a ~; ~ after ~; ~ by ~; ~ in, ~ out; from ~ to ~; to take a ~ off; all ~ (long); the first time in (esp. AE), for (BE) a ~; she is five ~s old; ¬up to/until¬ last ~; mid-week; the working ~; (AE) freshman ~ USAGE NOTE: In the meaning "a week from Tuesday", BE also has – a week on Tuesday, (on) Tuesday week. Note also the BE expressions – she arrived a week last Tuesday; she will arrive a week next Tuesday.

weekday *n.* on ~s; AE also has: ~s (she works ¬ ~s/on ~s¬)

weekend *n.* 1. to spend a ~ somewhere 2. at (BE), during, over (esp. AE) the ~ 3. (AE) on ~s (she works on ~s) 4. (AE) ~s (she works ~s) 5. (BE) at ~s, at the ~ (she works at ~s) 6. (misc.) a long ~; a holiday ~; a ~ ¬away/off/in the country¬; have a nice ~!

weeknight *n.* on ~s; AE also has: ~s (she works ¬ ~s/on ~s¬)

weep *v.* 1. to ~ bitterly 2. (d; intr.) to ~ about, at, over (to ~ over one's misfortune; she wept at the sight of all the poor people) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ for, with (to ~ for joy at the good news) 4. (E) she wept to see them so poor 5. (misc.) she wept at seeing them so poor

weevil *n.* an alfalfa; boll ~

weigh *v.* 1. to ~ heavily, strongly 2. (d; intr.) ("to count") to ~ against (his testimony will ~ heavily against you) 3. (d; tr.) ("to balance") to ~ against (to ~ one argument against another = to ~ the arguments against each other) 4. (d; intr.) ("to press") to ~ on (legal problems ~ed heavily on her mind) 5. (S) ("to have a certain weight") "¬how much/what¬ does the suitcase ~?" "it ~s quite a lot; in fact, it ~s 10 pounds!" 6. (misc.) my testimony will ~ heavily in your favor

weigh down *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ by, with (we were ~ed down with packages) 2. (esp. AE) (D; intr.) to ~ on (snow ~ed down on the roof)

weigh in *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (the boxer ~ed in at 150 pounds)

weight I *n.* ["amount weighed, heaviness"] 1. to carry; gain, put on ~ (see also *weight gain* at **gain I** *n.*) 2. to lose, take off ~ (see also *weight loss* at **loss**) 3. to check; control; watch one's (body) ~ (see also *weight control* at **control I** *n.*) 4. to bear a ~ (the central beam must bear a very heavy ~) 5. (a) dead; gross; minimum; net ~ 6. atomic; avoirdupois; birth; molecular; ideal, optimum ~ 7. under a ~ (the table gave way and collapsed under the sheer ~ of the food) 8. (misc.) excess ~ (as in air travel); ~ can ¬go up/increase¬, ¬go down/decrease¬, or fluctuate (see also *weight problem* at **problem**) ["device used in athletic exercises for its heaviness"] 9. to lift ~s (see also *weight training* at **training**) 10. heavy; light ~s 11. a set of ~s ["importance"] 12. to carry ~ (with) 13. to add; attach, give, lend ~ to; to place considerable ~ on 14. considerable; great ~ 15. (misc.) to throw one's ~ about (BE)/around ("to flaunt one's influence"); to pull one's ~ ("to do one's fair share"); to take a (great) ~ off smb.'s mind ("to ease or relieve smb.'s mind"); it was/took a (great) ~ off my mind ("I felt relieved"); of ~ (that will be an argument of considerable ~ with the directors)

weight II *v.* 1. to ~ heavily 2. (D; tr.) ("to slant") to ~ against; in favor of (the evidence was ~ed heavily against me and in favor of her)

weighting *n.* (BE) ["salary supplement"] to get (the) London ~

weigh up *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to balance") to ~ against (to ~ one argument against another = to ~ the arguments against each other) 2. (BE) (Q) to ~ whether to do smt.

weird *adj.* (colloq.) 1. ~ about (there is smt. ~ about them) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to see her again = it was ~ seeing her again) 3. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that you never noticed her) 4. (misc.) it was really/very ~ when I saw her again

welcome I *adj.* 1. perfectly, very ~ 2. ~ to (you are ~ to my share; ~ to New York!) 3. ~ to + inf. (you are always ~ to borrow my car at any time) 4. (misc.) to make smb. feel ~; ~ back; ~ home!

welcome II *n.* 1. to bid, extend, give a ~ to 2. to receive, meet with a ~ 3. to outstay, overstay one's ~ 4. a cordial, effusive, enthusiastic, hearty, rousing, royal, warm ~ (we gave them a rousing ~) 5. a chilly, cool; guarded ~ 6. a ~ from; to (we received a warm ~ from the mayor; the government proposal met with a cool ~ from the opposition; the immigrants received a cool ~ to their new country) 7. in ~ (to raise one's voice in ~)

welcome III *v.* 1. to ~ cordially, enthusiastically, warmly 2. to ~ coolly 3. (D; tr.) to ~ from (they ~ inquiries from readers) 4. (D; tr.) to ~ into; to (we ~d the immigrants to our country; we ~d you into our home and you betrayed us!) (see also *welcome with open arms* at **arm I** *n.*)

welcome mat *n.* (colloq.) (esp. AE) to put out the ~ for smb.

weld *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ into (the US Constitution ~ed the states into a nation) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ onto, to (to ~ one thing to another = to ~ two things together)

welfare *n.* ["government financial aid"] 1. public ~ 2. (esp. US) on ~ (to be on ~; to go on ~) (see also *welfare state* at **state I** *n.*) ["well-being"] 3. "promote the general ~" – the U.S. Constitution, 1787 4. the public ~ 5. child; social ~ 6. for smb.'s ~

well I *adv.* 1. to leave ~ enough alone (AE) = to leave ~ alone (BE) ("not to interfere with smt. that is satisfactory") 2. to do ~ (at, in, on) 3. (misc.) are things going ~ for/with you? you did ~ to tell me; to mean ~; to think ~ of; that's all very ~, but …, that's all ~ and good, but …

well II *n.* ["hole dug to tap a supply of oil or water"] 1. to bore, dig, drill, sink a ~ 2. an abandoned; deep ~ 3. an artesian; oil ~ 4. a ~ dries up 5. (misc.) a wishing ~ (make a wish and throw a coin into a wishing ~)

well-advised *adj.* ~ to + inf. (you would be ~ to come early)

well-being *n.* 1. to threaten smb.'s ~ 2. material; physical; psychological ~ 3. (misc.) a sense of ~

well-disposed *adj.* (formal) (cannot stand alone) ~ to, towards (they are not ~ towards me)

well-grounded *adj.* ~ in

well-informed *adj.* ~ about, on

well-intentioned *adj.* ~ towards

well on *adv.* 1. ~ in (he's ~ in years) 2. ~ with (he's ~ with his latest novel)

well up I *adv.* 1. (AE) ~ in years 2. ~ on (the latest styles)

well up II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in; with (her eyes ~ed up with tears = tears ~ed up in her eyes)

welt *n.* to raise a ~ (on the skin)

wend *v.* (P; intr.) the procession ~ed its way through the town

west I *adj.*, *adv.* 1. directly, due, straight ~ 2. ~ of (~ of the city) 3. (misc.) to face; go, head ~; to go ~ (esp. BE; old-fashioned) ("to die"); northwest by ~; southwest by ~

west II *n.* 1. from the ~; in the ~; to the ~ 2. (AE) out ~ ("in the western part of the US") 3. (misc.) the Wild West (old-fashioned colloq.) ("the western part of the US"); (BE) up ~ (London slang) ("to the West End of London from the East End")

wet *adj.* 1. dripping, soaking, sopping, wringing; very ~ 2. ~ from; with (~ with dew) 3. (misc.) she got her shoes ~; he got ~ through (and through)

whack I *n.* (colloq.) ["blow"] 1. to give smb. a ~ ["attempt"] 2. to have, take a ~ at 3. to have the first ~ at ["share"] (colloq.) (BE) 4. a fair; full ~ (of) ["misc."] 5. out of ~ (esp. AE) (she threw her shoulder out of ~); to have a ~ at smt. (esp. BE) ("to have a try/go at smt.")

whack II *v.* (colloq.) (O) ("to strike") I'll ~ you one

whale *n.* ["sea mammal"] 1. to harpoon a ~ 2. a blue; bowhead; right; sperm; white ~ 3. a pod, school of ~s 4. a young ~ is a calf 5. a female ~ is a cow 6. a male ~ is a bull 7. (misc.) they managed to rescue a beached ~ ["misc."] 8. a ~ of a good time ("a very good time")

whammy *n.* (slang) (esp. AE) ["jinx"] 1. to put a (the) ~ on smb. 2. a double ~

wharf *n.* at; on a ~ (the ship was tied up at a ~)

what *determiner, pronoun* 1. ~ about, of (~ about them?) 2. (used in exclamatory sentences) ~ a (~ a (wonderful) day!) 3. (misc.) ~ (wonderful) days!; she has ~ it takes (colloq.) ("she is very capable"); to know ~'s ~ ("to understand clearly what the situation is"); ~ else is new? (esp. AE); so ~? ~ ¬on earth/ever¬ can she mean?; ~'s new?; ~ else?

wheat *n.* 1. to grow; harvest; plant ~ 2. to grind; thresh ~ (to grind ~ into flour = to grind flour out of ~) 3. summer; winter ~ 4. club; common; durum; hybrid ~ 5. cracked; whole ~ 6. an ear; grain of ~ (see also *a wheat field = a field of wheat* at **field**) USAGE NOTE: AE has *whole wheat bread, whole* *wheat flour*; BE has *wholemeal bread, wholemeal flour*.

wheedle *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ from, out of (to ~ information from smb.) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ smb. into doing smt.)

wheel I *n.* ["circular rim or solid disc joined to a hub that turns"] 1. to spin; turn a ~ 2. to align; balance; rotate ~s (on a car) 3. a balance; driving; front; idler; mill; paddle; potter's; ratchet; rear; retractable; roulette; spinning; sprocket; undershot; water ~ 4. a big (BE), Ferris ~ (in an amusement park) 5. a ~ spins; turns 6. (misc.) on ~s (towing a box on ~s); to break on the ~; (humorous) to reinvent the ~ ["device that turns a car"] 7. to take the ~ 8. a steering ~ (to turn the steering ~) 9. (to be) at, behind the ~ (who was at the ~ when the accident occurred?) ["misc."] 10. a big ~ ("an influential person") (AE; CE has *bigwig*) USAGE NOTE: For vehicles, AE has "change a tire"; BE, "change a wheel". CE has "spare tire/tyre"; BE, "spare wheel". CE has "spare tire/tyre" 'roll of fat around the waist'.

wheel II *v.* (P; refl., tr.) she ~ed the chair into the room; she ~ed herself into the room and had tea with the rest of us

wheelbarrow *n.* to maneuver; push, roll a ~

wheelchair *n.* 1. to maneuver; push; use a ~ 2. a motorized ~ 3. by ~ 4. in a ~ (see also *wheelchair access* at **access I** *n.*; *wheelchair-accessible* at **accessible**; *confined to a wheelchair* at **confine**; *wheelchair-user* at **user**)

wherewithal *n.* ["resources"] 1. the ~ for (they didn't have the ~ for a trip abroad) 2. the ~ to + inf. (they didn't have the ~ to take a trip abroad)

which *determiner, pronoun* ~ of (~ of them did you see?; ~ three (of them) did you see?) USAGE NOTE: The use of the preposition *of* is necessary when a pronoun follows. When a noun follows, the use of *which of the* limits the meaning – which student(s) did you see? which of the students whom we had discussed did you see?

whiff *n.* (colloq.) ["smell, odor"] 1. to catch; get; have; take a ~ of (to get a good ~ of tear gas) 2. to give smb. a ~ of smt. 3. at a ~ (she lost consciousness at the first ~ of ether)

while *n.* 1. a good, long; little; short ~ (I had to wait a (good) long ~) 2. after; for; in a ~ (he came back after a ~) (misc.) it was worth our ~ (to do it = doing it) USAGE NOTE: The adverb *awhile* can be used to mean 'for a while': you'll have to wait ¬a while/for a while/awhile¬.

whim *n.* 1. to have, pursue; satisfy a ~ 2. to indulge a ~ 3. an idle; passing; sudden ~ 4. a ~ to + inf. (I had a sudden ~ to go for a walk) 5. at; on a ~ (they went there on a ~) 6. (misc.) smb.'s every ~ (courtiers who indulged the king's every ~)

whine *v.* 1. (B) she ~d a few words to them 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about (she kept ~ing about how she had been cheated) 3. (L; to) she ~d (to them) that she had been cheated = "I've been cheated!" she ~d (to them)

whinge *v.* (colloq.) (BE) see **whine** 2, 3

whip I *n.* ["lash used for whipping"] 1. to crack, snap a ~ (see also *the crack of a whip* at **crack I** *n.*) ["dessert made by whipping"] 2. a prune ~ ["member of a political party who enforces party discipline"] 3. a government (GB); majority; minority; opposition (GB); party ~ ["official party edict"] (GB) 4. to defy a ~ (against) 5. a three-line ~ ("most insistent") (the rebels who defy a government three-line ~ may have the party ~ withdrawn as a punishment)

whip II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to beat") to ~ into (I ~ped the eggs into a froth) 2. (colloq.) (d; tr.) ("to bring") to ~ into (the sergeant ~ped the recruits into shape) 3. (d; tr.) ("to incite") to ~ into (the speaker ~ped the crowd into a frenzy) 4. (P; intr.) ("to move very quickly") they ~ped into position

whip hand *n.* ["control"] to get; have the ~ over

whipping *n.* ["beating"] 1. to get, receive, take a ~ (from) 2. to give smb. a ~

whip-round *n.* (BE) ["collection"] to have a ~

whip up *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to beat") to ~ into (I ~ped up the eggs into a froth = I ~ped the eggs up into a froth) 2. (d; tr.) ("to incite") to ~ into (the speaker ~ped up the crowd into a frenzy = the speaker ~ped the crowd up into a frenzy)

whirl I *n.* (colloq.) ["try"] 1. to give smt. a ~ ["hectic activity"] 2. the social ~ 3. (misc.) my mind is in a (mad) ~

whirl II *v.* (P; intr.) the leaves ~ed through the air

whirlpool *n.* to be drawn into a ~

whisk I *n.* an egg ~ (BE; AE has *eggbeater*)

whisk II *v.* (P; intr., tr.) ("to move quickly") they were ~ed into the hotel; the important visitors were ~ed through customs; "her face dissolved in laughter and she ~ed past him" – Philip K. Dick, *Do Androids Dream of Electric Sheep?* (1968), Chap. 13

whisk away *v.* see **whisk off**

whiskers *n.* ["beard"] 1. to grow ~ 2. to shave off one's ~ 3. rough ~

whiskey, whisky *n.* 1. to age; distill, produce ~ 2. neat (esp. BE), straight (esp. AE) ("undiluted") ~ 3. blended; bonded (US); corn; Irish; malt; rye; Scotch; single-malt ~ 4. ~ ages 5. a shot of ~ USAGE NOTE: The spelling *whiskey* is usu. used in Ireland and the US.

whisk off *v.* (colloq.) (d; tr.) to ~ to (they were ~ed off to prison)

whisper I *n.* 1. a loud, stage ~ 2. in a ~ (to speak in a ~)

whisper II *v.* 1. (B) he ~ed a few words to her 2. (d; intr.) to ~ about (what was he ~ing (to her) about? = what was he ~ing about (to her)?) 3. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ into (he ~ed a few words into her ear) 4. (E) he ~ed to her to be careful 5. (L; to) he ~ed (to her) that she should be careful = "Be careful!" he ~ed (to her) (see also *whisper sweet nothings* at **nothing**)

whistle I *n.* [“instrument that produces a whistling sound”] 1. to blow (on) a ~ (the guard blew a blast on his whistle to attract our attention) 2. a bird; factory; police; referee’s ~ 3. a ~ blows, sounds [“act of whistling”] 4. to give a ~ 5. a loud; shrill ~ [“misc.”] 6. a wolf ~ (to show sexual interest); as clean as a ~ (“very clean”); to blow the ~ on smb. (“to reveal smb.’s evil intentions, to be a whistle-blower”)

whistle II *v.* 1. (A) she ~d a song to me; or, she ~d me a song 2. (D; intr.) to ~ at; to (who ~d at you?) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with surprise) USAGE NOTE: One whistles *to* people to attract their attention. One whistles *at* people to express one’s feelings about them.

white I *adj.* 1. to go, turn ~ 2. lily ~ 3. (misc.) as ~ as a ghost/sheet, as ~ as chalk = chalk-white; as ~ as snow = snow-white; ~ with anger

white II *n.* [“color”] 1. to dress in, wear ~ [“something white”] 2. a patch of ~ 3. in ~ (dressed in ~) [“the albumen of an egg”] 4. an egg ~ (for this recipe, beat two egg ~s until stiff)

white feather *n.* [“symbol of cowardice”] 1. to give smb. the/a ~ [“cowardice”] 2. to show the ~

white paper *n.* [“official government report”] 1. to issue a ~ 2. a ~ on

whittle *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at a piece of wood) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ into (to ~ a reed into a whistle) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ out of (to ~ a whistle out of a reed)

whittle away *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at a piece of wood; to ~ at smb.’s alibi)

whiz, whizz I *n.* (colloq.) a ~ at (she is a ~ at languages)

whiz, whizz II *v.* (P; intr.) to ~ through the air

whole *n.* 1. to constitute, form a ~ 2. a complete; integrated; single ~ 3. (a) part of a ~ 4. as a ~ 5. on the ~ (the situation is, on the ~, satisfactory)

whole hog *n.* (colloq.) [“the whole way”] to go ¬ ~ (AE)/the ~¬

wholesale *adv.* to buy; sell ~

whoop *n.* [“loud cry”] to emit, let out a ~

whoopee *n.* (colloq.) [“boisterous fun”] to make ~

whooping cough *n.* to catch (the) ~

whopper *n.* (colloq.) [“a big lie”] to tell a ~

wicked *adj.* 1. ~ of 2. ~ to + inf. (it was (of them) ~ to do that = they were ~ to have done that = it was a ~ thing for them to do)

wide *adj.* [“deviating”] 1. (cannot stand alone) ~ of (you are ~ of the mark) [“misc.”] 2. far and ~

widow *n.* 1. a war ~ 2. (humorous) a golf; grass ~

widower *n.* (humorous) a grass ~

width *n.* 1. full ~ 2. in ~ (ten feet in ~)

wife *n.* 1. (old-fashioned) to take a ~ 2. to beat; desert, leave; divorce one’s ~ 3. an abused, battered; common-law; estranged ~; ex-wife, former; future; jealous; late; unfaithful ~ 4. (misc.) he had two children by his first ~; husband and ~; I now pronounce you man and ~: you may kiss the bride; smb.’s lady ~ (“smb.’s wife”) (BE) (considered somewhat condescending to women) (and how’s your lady ~?) (see also *smb.’s good lady* at **lady**)

wig *n.* 1. to wear a ~ 2. to put on; take off a ~ 3. in a ~ 4. (misc.) a bigwig (CE; AE also has *big wheel*)

wild I *adj.* [“enthusiastic”] (colloq.) 1. to go ~ (the spectators went ~) 2. ~ about, over (the audience went ~ over the new play) [“furious”] 3. ~ with (~ with anger) 4. (misc.) to drive smb. ~ [“out of control”] 5. to run ~

wild II *n.* [“wilderness”] in the ~ (to live in the ~) (see also **wilds**)

wilderness *n.* 1. a desolate; trackless; unexplored ~ 2. in the ~

wildfire *n.* to spread like ~ (“to spread very quickly”)

wild oats *n.* [“youthful excesses”] to sow one’s ~

wilds *n.* see **wild II**; lost in the ~ of the Yukon

will I *n.* [“desire”] 1. to impose one’s ~ (on) 2. to implement the ~ (of the majority) 3. the ~ to + inf. (lacking the ~ to live) 4. (misc.) to lose the ~ to live; a clash of (strong) ~s; against smb.’s ~; with a ~ (to work with the/a ~ to succeed) [“attitude”] 5. to show good ~ (see also **ill will**) [“choice”] 6. at ~ (to fire at ~) (see also **free will**) [“legal document disposing of an estate”] 7. to draw up, make, make out a ~ 8. to change a ~ 9. to administer; execute; read (out) a ~ 10. to probate, validate a ~ 11. to challenge, contest a ~ 12. to break, overturn, set aside a ~ 13. to repudiate a ~ 14. a deathbed ~ 15. a living ~ (an advance directive by smb. requesting no life support in case of terminal illness) 16. the terms of a ~ (under the terms of the deceased’s ~, you inherit his estate) 17. (misc.) to be cut out of a ~; to be named in a ~; to be remembered in smb.’s ~; smb.’s last ~ and testament [“spirit”] [“power to make decisions, willpower”] 18. to break smb.’s ~ 19. an indomitable, strong; inflexible, unbending ~; an iron ~ = a ~ of iron 20. an effort of ~

will II *v.* 1. (A) he ~ed his entire estate to her; or: he ~ed her his entire estate 2. (H) the runner ~ed herself to keep going

will III *v.* (auxiliary) 1. (F) she ~ return, won’t she? 2. (misc.) do what/whatever you ~: I don’t care!; leave if you ~: I don’t care

willies *n.* (colloq.) [“jitters”] 1. to get; have the ~ 2. to give smb. the ~ (her behavior gives me the ~)

willing *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to help: I asked her to help and she’s ~ to) 2. (misc.) we are ~ for them to share in the benefits – although some of us are not ~ for them to

willingness *n.* 1. to demonstrate, show ~ 2. to express ~ 3. the ~ to + inf. (she expressed her ~ to work for us)

willpower *n.* 1. to demonstrate, show ~ 2. great; sheer ~ 3. the ~ to + inf. (do you have the ~ to stick to the diet?) 4. by ~ (the runner managed to finish the race by sheer ~ alone!)

wily *adj.* 1. ~ of (that was ~ of him) 2. (esp. AE) as ~ as a fox

win I *n.* to chalk up, notch up, record, score a ~ (against/over)

win II *v.* 1. to ~ easily, handily, hands down 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ against, over; from (to ~ against considerable odds; to ~ against the champions; to ~ a match against the champions; we won over the opposition; she won the trophy from her chief rival) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at cards) 4. (O) her perseverance won her the award 5. (misc.) to ~ by a mile; to ~ by three points; to ~ (by) 5–2

win back *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (she won the trophy back from her chief rival = she won back the trophy from her chief rival)

wince *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ at (to ~ at the thought of going back to work) 2. (misc.) to ~ in/with pain

winch I *n.* to operate, use a ~

winch II *v.* (P; tr.) they ~ed the victims to safety

wind I *n.* /wind/ ["movement, current of air"] 1. a balmy, gentle, light; fair, favorable ~ 2. a brisk, heavy, high, stiff, strong; gale-force; gusty ~ 3. a biting, cold, cutting, icy; raw ~ 4. an adverse; head; tail ~ 5. a trade ~ 6. the prevailing ~s 7. the ~ blows; changes, shifts; picks up 8. the wind dies down, drops, falls, slackens, subsides 9. the ~ howls; whistles 10. a blast, gust; puff of ~ 11. a down; up ~ 12. against the ~ 13. into the ~ 14. out of the ~ 15. with the ~ 16. (misc.) as free as the ~ (see also *wind power* at **power**; *wind tunnel* at **tunnel I** *n.*) ["knowledge"] 17. to get ~ of smt. ["breath"] 18. to catch, get one's second ~ 19. out of ~ ["misc."] 20. to break ~ ("to expel rectal gas"); in the ~ ("imminent"); to take the ~ out of smb.'s sails ("to deflate smb."); to see how the ~ blows ("to see what is likely to happen")

wind II *v.* /waynd/ 1. (d; tr.) to ~ around, round (she wound the string around her finger) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ into (she wound the string into a tight mass) 3. (P; intr.) the procession wound (its way) through the town 4. (misc.) to ~ smb. around one's little finger ("to manipulate smb.")

winded *adj.* ["out of breath"] easily ~

windfall *n.* ["a stroke of good fortune"] 1. to get, have a ~ 2. a sudden, unexpected ~ (see also *windfall profit* at **profit I** *n.*)

windmill *n.* 1. a ~ turns 2. (misc.) to tilt at ~s ("to struggle with imaginary opponents")

window *n.* 1. to open a ~; to roll down a ~ (in a car) 2. to close, shut a ~; to roll up a ~ (in a car) 3. to clean, wash; face a ~ 4. a bay; bow; French (BE; AE has *French door*); lattice; picture; storm ~ 5. a shop, store (esp. AE) ~ 6. a back, rear; front; side ~ (as of a car) 7. a ~ faces smt.; fogs up, sweats; frosts over 8. a ~ on (a ~ on the sea; a good book can be a ~ on the world) 9. at, by a ~ (sit at a ~ and look out) 10. from a ~ (what can you see from your ~?) 11. in a ~ (to see a sign in a shop ~) 12. out (esp. AE), out of a ~ (what can you see out of your ~; don't lean out of the ~!) 13. through a ~ (what can you see through your ~?) ["(computers)"] 14. to close; enlarge; minimize; open a ~

window shade *n.* (AE) 1. to lift, raise a ~ 2. to draw, drop, lower a ~ (BE has *blind)*

wind up *v.* /waynd əp/ ("to end up") 1. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ by (she wound up her affairs by selling all her stock) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ with (I wound up with the estate) 3. (G) I wound up paying for everyone 4. (misc.) to ~ out in the cold; she wound up worse off than when she started; to start off/out poor and ~ rich

wine *n.* 1. to make, produce ~ (a) 2. to decant, pour ~ 3. (a) dry; fortified; sweet ~ 4. (a) cooking; dessert; table; vintage ~ 5. (a) red; rosé; sparkling; white ~ 6. (a) communion; sacramental ~ 7. mulled ~ 8. (a) domestic; imported ~ 9. a house ~ (of a restaurant) 10. ~ ferments 11. a bottle; carafe; decanter; glass of ~ (see also *wine cellar* at **cellar**; *wine list* at **list I** *n.*; *wine rack* at **rack I** *n.*; *wine waiter* at **waiter**) USAGE NOTE: The phrase *domestic wine* seems to be reserved for wine produced in English-speaking countries. English-speakers in France or Italy, for example, usu. do not refer to French or Italian wine as *domestic*.

wing *n.* ["faction of a political party"] 1. a conservative; left; liberal; radical; right ~ ["a bird's appendage used for flying"] 2. a bird beats, flaps, flutters; spreads its ~s (the bird spread its ~s and flew off) 3. (misc.) to clip smb.'s ~s ("to restrict smb.'s freedom"); to grow, sprout ~s (when did dinosaurs sprout ~s and become birds?); to spread one's ~s ("to develop one's full potential"); a pair of ~s ["protection"] 4. to take smb. under one's ~ ["act of flying"] 5. to take ~ (also fig.) 6. on the ~ ["extension, annex of a building"] 7. to add a ~ (to a building) 8. (BE) see **fender** ["misc."] 9. to wait in the ~s ("to await the opportunity to take over a job"); the political ~ ("the political section of an organization")

wink I *n.* 1. to give smb. a ~ 2. a suggestive ~ 3. (misc.) I didn't get a ~ of sleep last night = I didn't sleep a ~ last night; to get, have forty ~s ("to take a brief nap"); (BE) to tip smb. the ~ ("to give smb. secret information")

wink II *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ at (also fig.: the police ~ed at illegal gambling)

winkle *v.* (colloq.) (BE) (d; tr.) ("to obtain") to ~ out of (to ~ the truth out of smb.)

winner *n.* 1. a clear; likely; real; sure ~ 2. the lucky; outright, overall ~ (the rich will be the real ~s under the government's tax policy) 3. (misc.) to be on to a (sure) ~ (at a racetrack)

win out *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ over (we won out over the opposition)

win over *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ to (we won them over to our side)

winter *n.* 1. early; last; late; mid-; next ~ 1. a cold, cruel, hard, harsh, severe, terrible ~ 2. a mild ~ 3. during, in, over (esp. AE) (the) ~ (we met late in the ~ of 1995 = we met in the late ~ of 1995) 4. (misc.) in the dead of ~ (see also *winter solstice* at **solstice**)

wipe *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ off ("to erase from") (to ~ a city off the map; I'll ~ that smile off your face!) 2. (D; tr.) to ~ on; with (she ~d her hands on the towel) 3. (N; used with an adjective) she ~d her hands clean/dry on the towel; he ~d the dishes clean/dry with a cloth

wipers *n.* 1. to turn on the ~ 2. windscreen (BE), windshield (AE) ~

wire I *n.* ["long metal thread"] 1. to string ~ 2. barbed; chicken; copper ~ 3. a high; trip ~ 4. a ~ goes, runs 5. a length, piece, strand of ~ (he got caught on a strand of barbed ~) ["cable conducting electric current"] 6. to cross, jump ~s (in order to start a car) 7. (esp. AE) to tap ~s 8. telegraph; telephone ~s 9. (an) electric; high-tension ~ 10. heavy-duty ~ ["cablegram, telegram"] (esp. AE) 11. to send a ~ ["finish line"] (esp. AE) (also fig.) 12. (right) down to the ~ ("to the very end") 13. (misc.) to get in under the ~ ("to enter barely in time")

wire II *v.* (esp. AE) (CE has *telegraph*) 1. (A) ("to send by wire") we ~d the money to her; or: we ~d her the money 2. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ about (they ~ed (us) about the meeting) 3. (d; intr.) ("to request by sending a wire") to ~ for (she ~d home for some money) 4. (H; no passive) ("to inform by wire") we ~d them to return home immediately 5. (L; may have an object) ("to inform by wire") she ~d (us) that the manuscript had been received 6. (Q; may have an object) we will ~ (you) where to meet

wire III *v.* 1. (D; tr.) ("to provide with wire") to ~ for (the auditorium was ~d for sound) 2. (d; tr.) ("to connect") to ~ to (the explosives were ~d to the door; the two things were ~d to each other = the two things were ~d together)

wire back *v.* (esp. AE) (see **wire II**) 1. (L; to) she ~d back (to us) that the manuscript had been received 2. (Q; to) we ~d back (to you) where to meet = we ~d you back where to meet

wireless *n.* (BE) (now less common than *radio*) see **radio I** 1–4, 6

wiring *n.* 1. defective, faulty ~ 2. electric ~

wisdom *n.* 1. to impart ~ 2. to doubt, question smb.'s ~ (to question the ~ of an action) 3. (the) conventional, (the) received ~ 4. earth, folk, homespun ~ 5. the ~ to + inf. (will they have the ~ to make the correct choice?) 6. of ~ (a person of great ~) 7. (misc.) in their (infinite) ~, the council members voted to cut the police budget in the midst of a crime wave; wit and ~ (see also *with the wisdom of hindsight* (sarcastic) at **hindsight**; *words of wisdom* at **words**)

wise *adj.* ["sagacious"] 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of you to remain silent = you were ~ to remain silent) ["aware of"] (colloq.) 2. ~ to (she was ~ to their scheme; I finally got ~ to his tricks; she put me ~ to his tricks) (see also *wise words* at **words**)

wisecrack I *n.* ["flippant remark"] 1. to make a ~ 2. a ~ about (she made a ~ about a woman needing a man like a fish needs a bicycle)

wisecrack II *v.* (colloq.) 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about (she ~ed about a woman needing a man like a fish needs a bicycle) 2. (L) ("to remark flippantly") she ~ed that a woman needs a man like a fish needs a bicycle = "a woman needs a man like a fish needs a bicycle," she ~ed

wise up *v.* (colloq.) (AE) (D; intr.; tr.) to ~ to (I finally ~d up to his tricks after she had ~d me up to them)

wish I *n.* ["desire"] 1. to make a ~ 2. to fulfill, realize a ~ 3. to get one's ~ 4. to express a ~ 5. to respect smb.'s ~(es) 6. to grant smb.'s ~ 7. a fervent, strong; unfulfilled ~ 8. smb.'s dying ~ (her dying ~ to see her children was granted) 9. a/the death ~ 10. a ~ comes true 11. a ~ for (a ~ for peace) 12. a ~ to + inf. (they expressed a ~ to visit the museum; my only ~ is for you to stay) 13. a ~ that + clause; subj. (the editor respected her ~ that the contribution ¬not be/should not be/was not (BE)¬ announced publicly; my only ~ is that you would stay) 14. against smb.'s ~es (the project was carried out against our ~es) 15. in accordance with smb.'s ~es (see also *wish fulfillment* at **fulfillment**; *wish list* at **list I** *n.*) ["greetings"] 16. to extend, offer, send one's (best) ~es 17. one's best, good, warm, warmest ~es 18. one's ~es for (one's best ~es for the New Year) 19. with best ~es

wish II *v.* 1. (A; usu. without *to*) they ~ed us good luck; we ~ you a Merry Christmas and a Happy New Year! 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (we were ~ing for cool weather) 3. (formal) (E) I ~ to lodge a complaint 4. (formal) (H; no passive) "do you ~ me to stay?" "yes: what I ~ is for you to stay!/yes: I ~ more than anything else for you to stay!" 5. (L) I ~ only that you would stay 6. (misc.) to ~ smb. well ("to hope that things will go well for smb.")

wit I *n.* 1. to display, show; have ~ 2. (a) coruscating, sparkling; keen, penetrating, sharp; sophisticated ~ 3. (a) dry; quick, ready; sly ~ 4. (an) acerbic, acid, biting, caustic, cutting, mordant, trenchant ~ 5. the ~ to + inf. (he didn't have the ~ to realize what was happening) 6. (misc.) at one's ~'s end; ~ and wisdom (see also **wits**)

wit II to ~ ("namely")

witchcraft *n.* 1. to practice ~ 2. sheer ~ (it was sheer ~ the way she could make us all a slap-up meal at such short notice!)

witch-hunt *n.* to conduct a ~ against

withdraw *v.* 1. (D; intr., tr.) to ~ from; into, to (our troops have withdrawn from the border area; to ~ money from a bank; to ~ to a safer area; to ~ into one's shell 2. (misc.) I'd like to ~ (my candidacy) in favor of my worthy opponent)

withdrawal *n.* ["removal of funds"] 1. to make a ~ 2. mass ~s 3. a ~ from (a (cash) ~ from an account) ["retreat"] (often mil.) 4. to carry out, make a ~ 5. to complete a ~ 6. an orderly; phased; precipitate; strategic; tactical; unilateral ~ 7. a ~ from; into, to (a ~ to a safer area; a ~ into one's shell; a ~ in favor of a worthy opponent) (see also *withdrawal symptoms* at **symptom**)

withhold *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ information from the police)

within *n.*, *prep.* 1. ~ a mile of 2. (misc.) an attempt to reform the system from ~

witness I *n.* ["testimony"] 1. to bear ~ to 2. false ~ (to bear false ~) ["one who testifies"] 3. to produce a ~ (the district attorney finally produced a credible ~) 4. to call, subpoena; swear in a ~; to hear ~es 5. to cross-examine; examine, interrogate, question; interview a ~ 6. to badger; bribe; confuse; discredit; lead; suborn; trap a ~ 7. a defense; expert ~; prosecution ~ (see also **eyewitness**) 8. a competent; credible; reliable ~ 9. a character; hostile ~ 10. a key; material ~ 11. a ~ is sworn in = a ~ takes the oath (see also *witness box* at **box I** *n.*; *witness stand* at **stand I** *n.*) 12. a ~ testifies (under affirmation or oath) 13. a ~ stands down, steps down 14. a ~ against (a ~ against one's former accomplices) 15. a ~ for (a ~ for the prosecution) 16. a ~ to (a ~ to an accident)

witness II *v.* 1. (J) who ~ed him signing the documents? 2. (K) who ~ed his signing the documents?

wits *n.* 1. to collect one's ~ 2. to match ~ with smb. 3. the ~ to + inf. (he didn't have enough ~ to realize what was happening) 4. (misc.) keep your ~ about you! ("stay alert!"); to live by one's ~; at one's wits' end; a battle of ~; to drive people out of their ~; to be frightened out of one's ~

witty *adj.* 1. ~ of (that was ~ of her) 2. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of her to say that)

wizard *n.* 1. a financial; mathematical ~ 2. a ~ at (a ~ at solving crossword puzzles)

wizardry *n.* sheer ~ (it was sheer ~ the way he could make us all a slap-up meal at such short notice!)

woe *n.* a tale of ~

wolf *n.* 1. wolves howl 2. wolves hunt in packs 3. a pack of wolves 4. a young ~ is a pup 5. (misc.) to keep the ~ from the door ("to provide the necessities"); a ~ in sheep's clothing ("one who disguises hostile intentions"); a lone ~ (see also *to cry wolf* at **cry II**)

woman *n.* 1. to deliver a ~ (of a baby) 2. an attractive, beautiful, pretty; average; desirable; fat; grown; handsome; middle-aged; old; short; tall; thin; ugly; wise; young ~ 3. a divorced; married; single ~ 4. a career; ideas; liberated; organization; professional; right-hand; self-made; stunt; university (BE; AE has *college graduate*); working ~ 5. an anchor ~; businesswoman; newspaperwoman 6. (AE) a cleaning ~ (BE has *charlady*, *charwoman, char*) 7. (BE) a lollipop ~ (AE has *crossing guard*) 8. (AE) enlisted women (BE has *other ranks*) 9. a battered ~ 10. the other ~ ("a married man's paramour") 11. (misc.) a ~ of letters; a ~ of action; a ~ of the world; the ~ of the year (see *women's lib* at **lib**; *women's liberation* at **liberation**; *women's magazine* at **magazine**; *women's movement* at **movement**; *women's rights* at **right III** *n.*) USAGE NOTE: The terms *career woman* and *working woman* are becoming old-fashioned. (See also the Usage Note for **girl**)

womanhood *n.* to reach ~

wonder I *n.* 1. to perform, work ~s 2. to achieve ~s 3. to do ~s for 4. a natural ~ 5. a ~ that + clause (it's a ~ to me that we didn't get lost; small/no ~ they had so much trouble, given their lack of preparation!) 6. in ~ (to look around in ~) 7. (misc.) the seven ~s of the world; a nine-days ("short-lived") ~; the eighth ~ of the world (see also *wonder drug* at **drug**)

wonder II *v.* 1. to ~ really, very much (I really ~ if/whether they'll come) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about, at (to ~ about a problem) 3. (L) I shouldn't ~ that you are tired after all that work 4. (Q) I ~ why they left

wonderful *adj.* 1. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ to see each other again; it was ~ of them to come) 2. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that we could see each other; it was ~ that they could come)

wonderland *n.* a scenic ~

wonderment *n.* in ~

wont I *adj.* (formal) (rare) ["accustomed"] (cannot stand alone) ~ to + inf. (she is ~ to call at any time; she arrived late, as she is ~ to do)

wont II *n.* (formal) (rare) ["custom"] 1. it is her ~ to arrive late 2. she arrived late, as was/is her ~

wood *n.* 1. to chop, cut ~ 2. to gather ~ 3. firewood; kindling ~ 4. a block; cord; piece; sliver of ~ 5. (misc.) out of the ~ (BE)/~s (CE) ("safe from danger"); in our neck of the ~s ("where we live")

wool *n.* 1. to produce ~ 2. to comb; process; sort ~ 3. lamb's; sheep's; steel, wire (BE) ~ 4. (one hundred percent) pure ~ 5. (CE) cotton ~ (AE has *absorbent cotton*) 6. a ball; skein of ~ 7. (misc.) to pull the ~ over smb.'s eyes ("to deceive smb.")

woozy *adj.* (colloq.) ["dazed, dizzy"] ~ from (~ from lack of sleep)

word I *n.* ["independent meaningful linguistic form"] 1. to coin, make up a ~ 2. to define; enter; look up a ~ (as in a dictionary) 3. to spell; write a ~ 4. to pronounce, say, utter a ~ 5. to mispronounce a ~ 6. an archaic; old-fashioned; obsolete ~ 7. a compound; simple ~ 8. a big, long; monosyllabic; polysyllabic, sesquipedalian; short; vague ~ 9. a borrowed; dialectal, regional; foreign; native; operative ~ 10. a ghost; nonce ~ 11. a four-letter, naughty, obscene; swear; taboo ~ 12. a portmanteau ~ 13. a guide ~ (at the top of a page in a dictionary, reference work) 14. (misc.) (upon) my ~! ("really!"); what's the ~ for "cat" in your language? = what's the ~ that means "cat" in your language ~?; ~ for ~ ("verbatim"); a household ("common") ~; to get a ~ in (edgewise (AE)/edgeways (BE)) ("to manage to say smt., as in a dispute"); to put in a good ~ for smb. ("to plead smb.'s case"); in a ~ ("briefly"); in ~ and deed; begin at the ~ *go*; a buzz ~; a code ~; a cover ~

(see also *a word of advice* at **advice**; *a word of caution* at **caution I** *n.*; *a word game* at **game II** *n.*; *in the accepted meaning of the word* at **meaning**; *by word of mouth* at **mouth**; *in every sense of the word* at **sense I** *n.*; *word of warning* at **warning**; **last word**; **term**; **word order**) ["promise"] 15. to give one's ~ 16. to take smb.'s ~ (I trust you, so I'll take your ~ for it) 17. to take people at their ~ 18. to break; keep one's ~ 19. one's solemn ~; one's ~ of honor 20. one's ~ that + clause. (she gave me her ~ that she would deliver the message) 21. of one's ~ (she's a woman of her ~) ("she keeps her promises") ["command"] 22. to give/say the ~ (just give/say the ~ and I'll do it!) ["information, news"] 23. to bring; send ~ 24. to breathe, say a ~ (don't breathe a ~ about it to anyone) 25. to get/receive ~ (we got/received ~ that the contract would be signed) 26. the latest; last ~ (it's the latest/last ~ in fashion!; she always wants to have the last ~ in an argument!) 27. (esp. AE) advance ~ 28. ~ about, of (there was no ~ of the incident in the newspapers; she would like to say a few ~s about the incident) 29. ~ that + clause (they sent ~ that they would be late) 30. (misc.) there has been no ~ from them; ~ has it that he intends to resign = ~ has got out that he intends to resign; and now a ~ from our sponsor (see also *have a word in smb.'s ear* at **ear**; *put in a good word for smb.* at **put in**) ["conversation"] 31. to have a ~ with smb. about smt. (see also **words**) USAGE NOTE: The construction *I'd like (to have) a word with you* usu. indicates that the conversation will be of a serious nature. Compare *I had words with him* "I had an argument with him".

word II *v.* to ~ smt. carefully; strongly; tactfully (a strongly ~ed statement)

word order *n.* (a) fixed; flexible; normal; reverse ~

wording *n.* the exact ~ (of a text)

word processor *n.* a dedicated ~

words *n.* ["text"] 1. (the) ~ of, to (a song) ["discussion"] 2. to bandy, exchange ~ with smb. ["argument"] 3. to have ~ with smb. 4. (misc.) ~ passed between them ["words that constitute a statement"] 5. to say a few ~ about smt. 6. to weigh ("consider with care") one's ~ (carefully) 7. to distort smb.'s ~ 8. to not mince any ~ ("to speak frankly") 9. (misc.) smb.'s dying/last ~ ["words that express strong feeling"] 10. kind; sincere; warm ~ 11. choice; eloquent; high-sounding ~ 12. angry, cross, sharp; fighting; harsh; hasty; heated, hot; threatening ~ 13. hollow, hypocritical; meaningless; weasel ~ ("polite meaningless ~" – W.B. Yeats, "Easter 1916") ["misc."] 14. to choose one's ~ carefully; in so many ~ ("precisely"); in one's own ~; of few ~ ("not talkative"); to hang on (to) smb.'s ~ ("to listen to smb. very attentively"); at a loss for ~, lost for ~; she took the ~ right out of my mouth ("she said exactly what I wanted to say"); a play on ~ ("a pun"); wise ~ = ~ of wisdom

work I *n.* ["labor"] 1. to do ~ (they never do any ~) 2. to begin, start; quit (AE), stop ~ (they quit ~ at one o'clock) 3. to take on ~ 4. creative; delicate; easy, light; fulfilling ~ 5. meticulous, painstaking, precise; skilled; productive; unskilled ~ 6. backbreaking, hard, heavy; demanding; exhausting, tiring ~ 7. dirty, donkey (esp. BE), scut (AE); intellectual; manual, physical; menial ~ 8. shoddy, slipshod, sloppy ~ 9. clerical, office; engineering; paper ~ (trains will not be running because of planned engineering ~) 10. fieldwork; legwork 11. casual (BE); full-time; part-time; seasonal; steady ~ 12. ~ begins, starts; finishes, stops 13. (misc.) he never does a lick/stitch (AE)/stroke of ~; to make short ~ of ("to dispose of quickly"); to undo smb.'s ~ ("to destroy the results of smb.'s labor") (see also *work-life balance* at **balance I** *n.*; **graduate work**; **guesswork**; **postgraduate work**; **roadwork**) ["employment"] 14. to create, give, provide ~ (a plan to provide ~ for the unemployed) 15. to find; look for, seek ~ (I found ~ as a receptionist in an office) 16. to get to, go to ~ 17. to begin, start ~ 18. to finish, stop ~ 19. to return to ~ 20. to take (time) off from ~ 21. to leave ~ (early) 22. a job; line, type of ~ (there's still a job of ~ to be done!; what line of ~ are you in?) 23. at ~ (they are still at ~) 24. (BE) in ~ ("employed") 25. out of ~ (they have been out of ~ for a week) ["result of research, labor, artistic effort"] 26. to exhibit; hang one's ~s (in a gallery) 27. coursework; written ~ 28. (a) literary; scholarly ~ = a ~ of literature; scholarship (see also *a work of genius* at **genius**) 29. collected; published; selected ~s 30. (misc.) ~ in progress; a ~ of art = an artwork; their life's ~ was writing novels ["service"] 31. social ~ (to do social ~) 32. undercover ~ (to do undercover ~ for the police) 33. volunteer ~ ["treatment"] 34. root-canal ~ (to do root-canal ~ on smb.) ["misc."] 35. to go to ~ on smb. ("to put pressure on smb.") (see also **works**)

work II *v.* 1. ("to labor") to ~ effectively; full-time; hard, like a horse, strenuously; part-time 2. (d; intr.) to ~ against ("to oppose") (to ~ against a proposed law) 3. (D; intr.) ("to labor") to ~ as (to ~ as a teacher) 4. (d; intr.) ("to labor") to ~ at, on (they were ~ing on a new book; you have to ~ at being friendlier with people) 5. (d; intr.) ("to be employed; to labor") to ~ for (she ~s for a large firm; to ~ for a living) 6. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to support") (to ~ for a good cause; the committee ~ed for a reduction of tension) 7. (d; refl.) ("to excite") to ~ into (she ~ed herself into a rage) 8. (d; tr.) to ~ into ("to insert") (she ~ed a few jokes into her speech) 9. (d; intr.) to ~ through ("to go through") (to ~ through difficult material) 10. (d; intr.) ("to progress") to ~ towards (to ~ towards a common goal) 11. (d; intr.) ("to labor") to ~ under ("to ~ under a noted scientist") 12. (d; intr.) ("to collaborate") to ~ with (to ~ closely with one's colleagues) 13. (misc.) to ~ far/late into the night; to ~ one's way through college; to ~ one's way through a crowd; I slowly ~ed my way through the long report; the committee ~ed to reduce tension; to ~ against the clock; they are ~ing us very hard; indeed, they are ~ing us to death; the screw ~ed (itself) loose; the drug needs time to ~ through the system; to ~ one's fingers to the bone; (BE) to ~ to rule ("to conform to all rules governing work so as to do only the minimum, as in a go-slow (AE)"); to ~ like a charm, to work like magic ("to succeed quickly and completely") (the offer ~ like a charm and satisfied everybody)

worked up *adj.* (colloq.) ~ about, over (he got himself all ~ about/over a mere trifle)

worker *n.* 1. to hire, take on a ~ 2. to retrain; train ~s 3. to organize, unionize ~s 4. to dismiss, fire, sack (colloq.) a ~; lay off a ~ (temporarily or permanently), to make a ~ redundant (as by eliminating the worker's job) (BE) 5. an assiduous, diligent, efficient, good, hard, indefatigable; key; meticulous ~; a fast ~ (also fig.: "one who succeeds fast with women") 6. an idle; poor; slow ~ 7. an assembly-line; blue-collar (esp. AE); construction; dock; factory ~ 8. an office; research; white-collar ~ 9. an immigrant; migrant; undocumented (AE) ~ 10. a full-time; part-time ~ 11. a skilled; unskilled ~ 12. (misc.) a social; welfare; youth ~; a sex ~ ("a prostitute"); a gang, group of ~s (see also *miracle-worker* at **miracle**)

workforce *n.* 1. to cut (down), downsize, reduce; expand the ~ 2. an ageing; growing; productive; shrinking ~ 3. a member of the ~ 4. among, in the ~ (there is great variation in skill among/in the ~) 5. throughout the ~ (there is dissatisfaction throughout the whole ~)

working hours *n.* flexible; regular; staggered; unsocial (BE) ~ (during regular ~)

workings *n.* the inner, internal ~

workman *n.* see **worker**

workmanship *n.* 1. conscientious, good, meticulous, sound; delicate, exquisite, fine ~ 2. poor, shoddy ~ 3. a standard of ~

workout *n.* ["exercise"] 1. to do, get, have; give a ~ 2. a daily ~ (she does a daily ~ with weights in a gym)

work out *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with weights daily in a gym) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (everything ~ed out just fine for us in the end; let's try to work out the answer for ourselves) 3. (L) we ~ed out that she was probably lying 4. (Q) we ~ed out for ourselves how to proceed; we ~ed out why she was lying

workplace *n.* at, in the ~ (to maintain harmony in the ~)

works *n.* ["construction projects"] 1. to carry out, do ~ 2. road, public ~ (see also **roadwork**) ["preparation"] (colloq.) 3. in the ~ ["operations"] 4. to gum up, mess up the ~ ["everything available"] (colloq.) 5. to give smb. the ~ ["misc."] 6. ~ of art = artworks (see also **work I** *n.*)

workshop *n.* ["working seminar"] 1. to conduct, hold a ~ 2. to participate in, take part in a ~ 3. a member of, participant in a ~ 4. a series of ~s (he participated in a series of Thomas Hardy ~s held last summer) 5. a ~ on (he participated in a series of ~s on Thomas Hardy held last summer)

workup *n.* ["series of tests"] (esp. AE) 1. to do a ~ (on) 2. a diagnostic ~

work up *v.* 1. (d; refl., tr.) ("to excite") to ~ into (he ~ed himself up into a rage) 2. (d; refl., tr.) ("to incite") to ~ to (the orator ~ed the crowd up to a fever pitch) 3. (misc.) she ~ed her way up to the top; she ~ed her way up through the ranks; he finally ~ed up the courage to ask for a promotion; he ~ed himself up about/over a mere trifle (see also **worked up**)

world *n.* ["earth"] 1. across, all over, through, throughout; around, round the ~ (to travel around the ~) 2. (misc.) to see the ~ ("to travel to many parts of the earth") (see also *world-class* at **class I** *n.*) ["area, part of the earth"] 3. the English-speaking; Arab; Free; known; New; Old; Third ~ (in the Third ~) ["domain, realm, sphere"] 4. the animal ~ 5. the academic; art; business; financial; literary; scientific ~ (a theory that divided/polarized/split the scientific ~) 6. the civilized; outside; real ~ (out in the real ~) (see also *world champion* at **champion**; *world championship* at **championship**; *the World Cup* at **cup**; *world leader* at **leader**; *world music* at **music**; *world record* at **record I** *n.*; *the World Series* at **series**; *world view* at **view I** *n.*) ["period"] 7. the ancient; medieval; modern; post-modern ~ (there are many problems in the modern ~) ["life, being"] 8. to bring a child into the ~ 9. to come into the ~ 10. not long for this ~; the next ~ ("life after death") ["misc."] 11. the entire, whole ~; a closed ~; a different ~; living in a ~ of one's own and not caring about the rest of the ~; dead to the ~; in an ideal ~; it makes a ~ of difference; out of this ~ ("remarkable"); ~s apart ("very far apart"); to live in a dream/fantasy ~ = to live in a ~ of dreams/fantasy; welcome to the Real World!; we meet again: isn't it a small ~!; who in the ~ would do smt. like that?; what in the ~ is that?

worm *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ into (how did they ~ their way into the meeting?) 2. (d; intr., tr.) to ~ out of (to ~ out of an obligation; to ~ information out of smb.) 3. (misc.) to ~ one's way into smb.'s confidence

worried *adj.* 1. unduly; very ~ 2. ~ about (we were very ~ about smt. bad happening) 3. ~ to + inf. (we were ~ to think that smt. bad might happen) 4. ~ that + clause (we were ~ sick that smt. bad might happen) 5. (misc.) ~ sick; ~ to death

worry I *n.* 1. to cause ~ 2. deep, serious; groundless; growing, increasing, mounting ~ (the news came amid mounting ~ries that the pound was weakening against the euro) 3. financial ~ries 4. ~ about, over (our constant ~ about smt. bad happening) 5. a ~ to (some children are a (great) ~ to their parents) 6. a ~ that + clause (our constant ~ that smt. bad might happen) 7. (misc.) to be sick with ~ (we were sick with ~ that smt. bad might happen) (see also *the least of my worries* at **least**)

worry II *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about, over (they ~ about you; we ~ried about smt. bad happening; to ~ over trifles) 2. (L) we ~ that smt. bad might happen 3. (R) it ~ries me sick (to think) that smt. bad might happen 4. (misc.) not to ~ (not to ~: it's only a trifle!)

worse *adj.* none the ~ (you'll be none the ~ for having spent a couple of years on a farm!) (see also *any worse* at **any I** *adv.*)

worship I *n.* 1. ancestor; hero; idol; nature; public ~ (to practice ancestor ~) 2. (misc.) an act; house, place of ~ (see also *freedom of worship* at **freedom**)

worship II *v.* 1. to ~ reverently 2. (D; tr.) to ~ as (to ~ smb. as a god) 3. (misc.) I ~ the ground she walks on

worst *n.* 1. to do one's ~ (do your ~: see if I care!) 2. to prepare for the ~ 3. to bring out the ~ in smb. 4. to expect; fear the ~ 5. to get the ~ of smt. 6. at one's ~ (I'm at my ~ in the morning) 7. (misc.) if ~ comes to ~ (AE)/if the ~ comes to the ~; at (the) ~, our team may lose five matches; can we avoid the ~ of the crisis?; ~ of all

worth I *adj.*, *prep.* 1. well ~ (the cost/wait) 2. ~ to (how much is it ~ to you (to know what really happened)?) 3. ~ + *-ing* (it's not ~ keeping) 4. (misc.) ~ one's salt ("worthy of respect for one's work"); it's ~ a try; ¬how much/what¬ is it ~ (to you)?; it would be (well) ~ your while to visit the exhibition; don't fret: she's not ~ it!

worth II *n.* 1. intrinsic; self-worth; true ~ 2. net ~ 3. (legal) comparable ~ (the theory of comparable ~) 4. of ~ (books of great ~) 5. (misc.) she bought ten dollars ~ of vegetables; the fire did thousands of dollars ~ of damage

worthwhile *adj.* 1. ~ for (visiting that exhibition would be very ~ for you) 2. ~ to + inf. (it would be very ~ to visit the exhibition = it would be very ~ visiting the exhibition)

worthy *adj.* (usu. does not stand alone) 1. ~ of (~ of praise; such behavior is truly ~ of an officer and a gentleman!) 2. ~ to + inf. (~ to be praised)

would *v.* (F) ~ you do it?; "he denies everything" "well, he ~ say that, wouldn't he!"

wound *n.* 1. to inflict a ~ on/upon smb. 2. to get; receive, sustain a ~ 3. to bandage, dress; cauterize; clean, cleanse; suture; swab a ~ 4. a bad; deep; entry; exit; fatal, mortal; festering; flesh; gaping; head; light, slight; self-inflicted; serious, severe; superficial ~ (she received a slight ~ in the arm) 5. a bullet, gunshot; knife; stab ~ 6. a ~ festers; weeps 7. a ~ heals 8. a ~ in; to (the ~ in her arm was less serious than the ~ to her pride) 9. (misc.) to lick one's ~s ("to recover from a beating or defeat"); to open, re-open old ~s ("to stir up bad memories")

wounded *adj.* 1. badly; fatally, mortally; lightly, slightly; seriously ~ 2. (fig.) deeply ~ (I was deeply ~ by your remarks) 3. ~ in (she was slightly ~ in the arm)

wracked *adj.* ["racked"] 1. ~ by (~ by doubt) 2. ~ with (~ with pain)

wrangle *v.* 1. to ~ constantly, incessantly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ about, over; with

wrangling *n.* 1. constant, incessant ~ 2. ~ about, over; with

wrap I *n.* ["substance"] 1. (esp. AE) (a) freezer; plastic ~ ["sandwich"] 2. a beef; chicken ~

wrap II *v.* 1. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ (a)round (to ~ a blanket around oneself) 2. (d; refl., tr.) to ~ in (to ~ oneself in a blanket)

wrapped up *adj.* ["engaged, busy"] 1. ~ in (they are all ~ in campaigning) ["enclosed"] 2. ~ in (I was warmly/snugly ~ in a blanket)

wrapper *n.* a cellophane; plastic ~

wraps *n.* to keep a plan under ~ (colloq.) ("to keep a plan secret")

wrath *n.* (formal) 1. to arouse, provoke; incur smb.'s ~ 2. to bring down smb.'s ~ (on smb.) 3. to visit one's ~ upon 4. to face; placate ~ (to face the ~ of one's victims and try to placate it) 5. ~ bursts out, explodes; subsides 6. an explosion, fit, outburst of ~

wreak *v.* (see *wreak havoc with* at **havoc**; *wreak vengeance on/upon* at **vengeance**)

wreath *n.* 1. to make, weave a ~ 2. to lay, place a ~ (they laid a ~ at the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier) 3. a bridal; Christmas; funeral; laurel ~ 4. a floral ~ = a ~ of flowers

wreathed *adj.* ~ in (~ in flowers; ~ in smiles)

wreck *n.* ["wrecked vehicle"] 1. to tow a ~ 2. (misc.) the car was a total ~ ["person who has suffered a breakdown"] 3. a nervous ~ 4. (misc.) he was a total ~ after his wife died ["wrecked ship"] 5. to raise a ~ (to the surface)

wreckage *n.* 1. to strew ~ (over a wide area) 2. to clear, remove ~ 3. to raise ~ (as to the surface) 4. twisted ~ 5. a piece of ~ 6. among; in the ~ (a wedding ring was found in the ~ of the bombed house)

wrench I *n.* 1. a monkey ~ (see also **monkey wrench** (fig.)) 2. a lug ~ (BE also has *box spanner*)

wrench II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ from, off (he ~ed the handbag from the old woman) 2. (misc.) she ~ed her handbag ¬free/away from the mugger¬

wrest *v.* (d; tr.) to ~ from (to ~ power from a dictator)

wrestle *v.* 1. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with various problems) 2. (misc.) they ~d me to the ground

wrestler *n.* to pin; throw a ~

wrestling *n.* arm; catch-as-catch-can; Greco-Roman, Graeco-Roman (BE); Indian ~

wretch *n.* a homeless; miserable, poor ~

wretched *adj.* 1. to feel ~ 2. ~ about ~ (they felt perfectly ~ about the failure of the experiment) 3. ~ of (that was simply ~ of him!)

wriggle *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ out of (he ~d out of my grip) 2. (s) to ~ free, loose

wring *v.* 1. (d; tr.) ("to extract") to ~ from, out of (the police finally succeeded in ~ing a confession from the prisoner) 2. (N; used with an adjective) ("to squeeze") to ~ a towel dry

wrinkle *n.* ["crease"] 1. to make a ~ 2. to iron out, press out ~s 3. ~s appear (~s around the eyes often appear with advancing age) ["innovation"] (colloq.) 4. the latest, newest ~ in (the latest ~ in marketing home computers)

wrist *n.* 1. to break, fracture; sprain one's ~ 2. around, round smb.'s ~ (wear smt. around one's ~) 3. by the ~ (prisoners fastened by the ~) 4. (misc.) to slash/slit one's ~s (see also *a slap on the wrist* at **slap I** *n.*)

writ *n.* ["legal order"] 1. to apply for; get; issue; serve a ~ (to issue/serve a ~ on smb. = to serve smb. with a writ) 2. to quash a ~ 3. in a ~ (what is specified in the ?) 4. (misc.) he can't do that: his ~ doesn't run so far

write *v.* 1. ("to form letters") to ~ illegibly; legibly 2. (A) ("to compose and send") she wrote a letter to me; or: she wrote me a letter 3. (C) ("to compose") he wrote a recommendation for me; or: he wrote me a recommendation 4. (d; intr.) to ~ about, of, on ("to describe") (to write about/of the war) 5. (D; tr.) to ~ about ("to compose about") (she wrote a book about her experiences) 6. (D; intr.) ("to be a writer") to ~ for (she ~s for popular magazines) 7. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to request") (she wrote for a recommendation; she wrote to me for a recommendation; AE also has: she wrote me for a recommendation) 8. (d; intr.) to ~ to ("to compose and send a letter to") (he ~s to her every day; AE also has: he ~s her every day) 9. (D; tr.) to ~ to ("to compose for") (to ~ the words to a song) 10. (d; intr.) ("to order, command") to ~ to + to + inf. (she wrote (to us) to come home) 11. (H; no passive) (AE) ("to order, command") she wrote us to come home 12. (L; to; may have a personal object in AE) ("to inform") she ¬wrote to us/wrote us (AE)¬ that we should come home 13. (Q; to; may have an object in AE) ("to inform") she ¬wrote to us/wrote us (AE)¬ when we should come home 14. (misc.) she ~s home every week; she ~s extensively and publishes many books; his part was written out of the script; I ~ with a pen; she ~s poetry in French

write away *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (the children wrote away for a puzzle book) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (the children wrote away to the company)

write back *v.* 1. (A) ("to answer") she wrote a long letter back to me; or: she wrote me back a long letter 2. (D; intr.) to ~ for (she wrote back for more information) 3. (D; intr.) to ~ to ("to answer") she wrote back to me = she wrote me back 4. (L; to) she wrote back (to me) that they would attend the conference = she wrote (me) back that they would attend the conference 5. (misc.) she wrote (me) back (in order) to check the details

write off *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (the children wrote off for a puzzle book) 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (the children wrote off to the company) 3. (D; tr.) to ~ as (he was written off as a has-been)

write out *v.* 1. (A) she wrote out a receipt to me; or: she wrote me out a receipt 2. (C) she wrote out a receipt for me; or: she wrote me out a receipt

writer *n.* 1. a free-lance; screen; sports ~ 2. a hack; professional ~ 3. a prolific ~ 4. a ~ about, on (a ~ about/on the war) 5. a ~ for (she is a ~for popular magazines)

write-up *n.* (colloq.) ["account, review"] 1. to do a ~ (as of a book/play/concert) 2. to get, receive; have a ~ 3. a complimentary, favorable, glowing, good, positive, rave; critical; negative, unfavorable ~ (the play got/had rave ~s from the critics = the critics gave the play rave ~s)

write up *v.* (D; tr.) to ~ for (to ~ a story for a newspaper; to ~ smb. up for a decoration)

writhe *v.* (D; intr.) to ~ in (to ~ in pain)

writing *n.* 1. to decipher smb.'s ~ 2. cuneiform; cursive; hieroglyphic; picture ~ 3. illegible; legible ~ 4. creative; travel ~ 5. a piece of ~ 6. (misc.) to have smt. in ~; to put smt. in ~; in ~; to see the ~ on the wall (CE; for AE, see **handwriting** *n.*) ("to foresee impending doom") (we saw the ~ on the wall for the international monetary system = the ~ was on the wall for the international monetary system) (see also **writing paper** at **paper I** *n.*; **writings**)

writing paper *n.* personalized ~

writings *n.* ["written works"] 1. collected; selected ~ 2. scientific ~ (her latest scientific ~ appeared in a recent journal)

wrong I *adj.* 1. all, completely, dead (colloq.), quite, totally ~ 2. morally ~ 3. ~ about (to be ~ about smt./smb.) 4. ~ in (I was ~ in disregarding your advice) 5. ~ with (what's ~ with her?) 6. ~ to + inf. (it was ~ of them to gossip = they were ~ to gossip; I was ~ to disregard your advice; it is ~ to lie) 7. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that they should be treated so badly) 8. (misc.) everything went (all) ~; she is the ~ person for the job = she is ~ for the job; don't get me ~: I'm really on your side! USAGE NOTE: The expression *what's wrong?* can express sympathy; *what's wrong with you?* is often critical.

wrong II *adv.* to do smt. ~

wrong III *n.* 1. to do (smb.) ~ 2. to forgive; redress, right, undo a ~ 3. a grievous; irreparable ~ 4. in the ~ (she was in the ~ when she accepted = she was in the ~ to accept) 5. (misc.) two ~s do not make a right; to know right from ~ = to know the difference between right and ~; the rights and ~s (I'm not interested in the rights and wrongs of the case: let's forget the whole thing!)

wrought up *adj.* ["upset, worked up"] (colloq.) ~ about, over (he got himself all ~ about/over a mere trifle)

X

X ray *n.* 1. to do, make, take an ~ (of) (the physician decided to take an ~ of my back) 2. to interpret, read an ~ (the radiologist will read your ~ before you leave) 3. to get, have an ~ (of) 4. to go for an ~ (of) 5. a chest ~ = an ~ of one's chest 6. an ~ indicates, reveals, shows (see also *X-ray machine* at **machine**)

xylophone *n.* 1. to play the ~ 2. (misc.) ~s are played by hitting their keys with mallets

Y

Y *n.* (= YMCA, YWCA, YMHA, YWHA, which are abbreviations of Young Men's or Women's Christian or Hebrew Association) at the ~ (they are staying at the ~)

yacht *n.* 1. to board, get on, get on board (a) ~ 2. to disembark from, get off a ~ 3. to navigate; sail, steer a ~ 4. a ~ docks; goes, sails 5. the bow; stern of a ~ 6. a ~ from; to 7. by ~ 8. aboard, on a ~ (they spent the summer on their ~) (see also *yacht club* at **club I** *n.*)

yammer *v.* (colloq.) (D; intr.) to ~ about; for

yank I *n.* ["tug"] (colloq.) to give a ~ at; on

yank II *v.* (colloq.) 1. (d; intr.) ("to tug") to ~ at, on (the little girl kept ~ing at her mother's apron) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ out of ("to withdraw") (they ~ed their children out of school)

yap I *n.* ["mouth"] (colloq.) to shut one's ~

yap II *v.* (colloq.) 1. (D; intr.) to ~ about 2. (d; intr.) to ~ at

yard I *n.* ["enclosed area"] a barnyard (esp. AE), farmyard; brickyard; coalyard; dockyard (BE), navy ~ (AE); dooryard (AE); graveyard; junkyard (esp. AE), scrapyard (BE); lumberyard (AE), timberyard (BE); prison; railroad (AE), railway (BE); schoolyard (esp. AE), shipyard ~ ("When Lilacs Last in the Dooryard Bloom'd" – Walt Whitman, 1865 (on Lincoln's death)) USAGE NOTE: In BE, a plot of land adjoining a house is called a *garden* if grassy (a *back garden*, a *front garden*) or a *yard* if paved (a *backyard*, a *front yard*). In AE, such a plot is called a *yard* whether grassy or paved; a large grassy plot can also be called a *garden*.

yard II *n.* ["unit of measurement"] 1. a cubic; square ~ 2. by the ~ (to sell carpeting by the square ~)

yardstick *n.* ["standard"] 1. to adopt a ~ 2. to apply a ~ to 3. a reliable, useful, valid ~ 4. a ~ for (adopt a ~ for measuring academic success) 5. against a ~ (adopt a ~ against which to measure academic success) 6. by a ~ (by which ~ do you propose to measure academic success?)

yarn *n.* ["fiber"] 1. to make, spin; wind ~ 2. to snarl, tangle; unsnarl, untangle ~ 3. coarse; fine; thick; thin ~ 4. wool(en); worsted ~ 5. a ball; hank; length; piece; skein of ~ 6. in ~ (there's a tangle in the ~) ["tale, story"] (colloq.) 7. to spin, tell a ~ about

yawn I *n.* 1. to give a ~ (she gave a big ~ when she heard our story) 2. to stifle, suppress a ~ 3. a big; loud ~ 4. with a ~ (she greeted our story with a big ~)

yawn II *v.* 1. to ~ loudly 2. to ~ at (she ~ed at our story)

year *n.* 1. to spend a ~ (somewhere) 2. a banner (AE), good; happy; healthy; memorable; peak, record; profitable ~ (our firm had a very profitable ~; their team had a good ~) 3. a bad, lean ~ 4. smb.'s formative; golden ~s 5. every; last; next; this ~ 6. the coming; current; past ~ 7. an academic; school; calendar ~ (see also *gap year* at **gap**) 8. an election; presidential (US) ~ 9. a jubilee; sabbatical ~ 10. a financial (esp. BE), fiscal (esp. AE); tax ~ 11. a common; leap ~ 12. a light; sidereal ~ 13. a lunar; solar ~ 14. early; future; past; recent ~s 15. a ~ from (now/today) 16. by the ~ (to be paid by the ~) 17. by ("before or in") a ~ (by the ~ 2050, the population in many countries will have doubled) 18. during the ~ 19. for a ~ (they went abroad for a ~) 20. for, in (esp. AE) ~s (they have not been here for/in ~s) 21. in a ~, in a ~'s time (BE) (we can finish the job in a ~; they'll be back in a ~) 22. in a (certain) ~ (he died in the ~ of the great flood; in future ~s; in ~s to come; in past ~s) 23. (misc.) ~ after ~; all ~ long; once a ~; ~ in, ~ out; the first time in (esp. AE), for (BE) a ~; she is five ~s old; light ~s away; for ~s to come; ¬up to/until¬ last ~; children of tender ~s; she had three ~s of college; donkey's ~s (BE) ("a long time"); from the ~ dot (BE, colloq.), from the ~ one ("from a time long ago") (see also **New Year**)

yearn *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ for (I ~ed for the return of peace) 2. (E) she ~ed to return home; I ~ed for peace to return

yearning *n.* 1. to express; feel, have a ~ for 2. a secret; strong ~ 3. a ~ for (I had a ~ for peace) 4. a ~ to + inf. (I had a ~ for peace to return; she has a ~ to return home)

yeast *n.* brewer's ~

yell I *n.* 1. to give, let out a ~ (to let out a ~ of delight) 2. a bloodcurdling; ear-piercing, loud; high-pitched, shrill; rebel ~ (he let out a loud ~ of terror)

yell II *v.* 1. to ~ hysterically; loudly; shrilly; to ~ in pain/terror 2. (B) she ~ed a few words to the children 3. (D; intr.) to ~ at; for (she ~ed at the children for making noise) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ for (to ~ for help) 5. (D; intr.) to ~ with (to ~ with pain/terror) 6. (E) she ~ed at/for/to the children to stop making noise 7. (L; to) she ~ed (at/to us) that the house was on fire; "Stop making noise!" she ~ed (at/to the children) 8. (N; refl.; used with an adjective) (she ~ed herself hoarse) 9. (misc.) she was ~ing at the top of her voice

yellow I *adj.* 1. to go, turn ~ 2. bright; pale ~

yellow II *n.* 1. to dress in, wear ~ 2. a shade of ~ ["something yellow"] 3. a patch of ~ 4. in ~ (dressed in ~)

yelp I *n.* 1. to give, let out a ~ (to let out a ~ of pain) 2. a loud; high-pitched, shrill ~ (the dog let out a loud ~ of pain when I stepped on its tail) 3. with a ~ (the dog reacted with a loud ~ of pain when I stepped on its tail)

yelp II *v.* 1. to ~ loudly; shrilly 2. (D; intr.) to ~ at (the dog ~ed at me when I stepped on its tail)

yen I *n.* ["desire"] (colloq.) 1. to have a ~ for (she had a ~ for a hamburger) 2. a ~ to + inf. (she had a ~ to have a hamburger)

yen II *n.* 1. a falling; rising; strong; weak ~ (the international markets experienced difficulties with the falling ~) 2. (misc.) the dollar was strong against the ~

yes *n.* ["positive response"] 1. to answer; say; vote Yes 2. a definite, emphatic, resounding ~ 3. (a) ~ to (a request) 4. (misc.) all I want is a simple Yes or No; to say No but (really) mean Yes (see also *a Yes vote* at **vote I** *n.*)

yield I *n.* ["earnings"] 1. to produce a ~ 2. the current ~ (of an investment) 3. an annual ~ 4. a high; low ~

yield II *v.* 1. (B) I ~ed the right of way to the other driver 2. (D; intr.) to ~ to (they finally ~ed to our demands; to ~ to temptation) (see also *yield the floor* at **floor**)

yoga *n.* to do, practice ~

yoke I *n.* ["harness framework"] 1. to put a ~ on (oxen) (see also *a yoke of oxen* at **ox**) ["servitude, bondage"] 2. to cast off, throw off the ~ (of bondage) 3. a foreign ~ 4. under a (foreign) ~

yoke II *v.* 1. (D; tr.) to ~ to (to ~ oxen to a cart; to ~ one ox to another) 2. (misc.) to ~ oxen together

young I *adj.* 1. ~ at heart 2. ~ in spirit 3. (misc.) she's 80 years ~! (used for special effect); she looks (too) ~ to be his mother; in fact, she looks ~ enough to be his daughter!

young II *n.* ["offspring of an animal"] 1. to bring forth ~ (wild animals bring forth their ~ in the wilderness) 2. with ~ ("being a pregnant animal")

yours *pronoun* 1. (in the complimentary close of a letter) Yours faithfully (esp. BE), Yours sincerely, Yours truly (AE) 2. (colloq.) ~ truly ("I myself, I personally") (I don't know about you guys, but as for ~ truly, I could murder a pizza!) 3. Sincerely ~ (AE) USAGE NOTE: At the end of letters, the following combinations can occur – Yours (esp. BE; informal); Yours ever (BE; friendly); Yours faithfully (esp. BE); Yours sincerely; Sincerely yours (AE); Yours truly (AE); Very truly yours (AE); AE also commonly uses Sincerely. In BE, *Yours faithfully* typically ends a letter beginning *Dear Sir/Madam/Colleague(s)*; *Yours sincerely* typically ends a letter beginning *Dear Mr/Mrs/Ms/Dr/Prof Smith*.

youth *n.* ["young age"] 1. to spend one's ~ (she spent her ~ traveling) 2. early; first; flaming; gilded ~ (she's well past her first ~) 3. during, in; from, since smb.'s ~ (she's traveled from/since her earliest ~; things were very different in my ~!) ["adolescent male, young man"] (now typically derog.) 4. a gang of ~s ["male and female young people collectively, typically as specified"] 5. the ~ of today = today's ~; what future for America's/American ~? (see also *youth club* at **club I** *n.*; *youth culture* at **culture**; *youth worker* at **worker**) USAGE NOTE: When *youth* is used of a young man, the young man in question is nowadays one more likely to give cause for worry than cause for hope: I was mugged by a gang of unruly youths but helped by a group of nice young lads. However, in former times this sense of *youth* could be used freely in neutral or favorable contexts: "When Duty whispers low, *Thou must*, The ~ replies, *I can.*" – R.W. Emerson (1803–82), "Voluntaries"

Z

zap *v.* (colloq.) (P; intr., tr.) she ~ped the incident out of her memory (esp. AE); I ~ped through the exam

zeal *n.* 1. to demonstrate, display, show ~ 2. great; excessive ~ 3. evangelical; missionary; religious; righteous ~ 4. ~ for (to show ~ for one's project) 5. the ~ to + inf. (does she have enough ~ to finish the project?) 6. in one's ~ (in her ~ to finish the project, she made many blunders) 7. with ~ (she worked with great ~ to finish the project)

zealot *n.* a religious ~

zealous *adj.* ~ about, in

zebra *n.* a herd of ~(s)

zenith *n.* 1. to attain, reach a ~ 2. at a ~ (at the ~ of their power)

zero *n.* 1. absolute ~ 2. above; below ~ (it was five degrees below ~ Fahrenheit) (see also *zero gravity* at **gravity**; **ground zero**; *zero growth* & *zero population growth* at **growth**; *zero hour* at **hour**; *zero tolerance* at **tolerance**)

zero in *v.* (d; intr.) ("to concentrate, to home in") to ~ on (to ~ on a target; they all ~ed in on me)

zest *n.* 1. to add ~ to 2. boundless; flagging; great; renewed; youthful ~ 3. (a) ~ for (a ~ for life) 4. with (great) ~

zigzag I *n.* to make a ~

zigzag II *v.* (P; intr.) the road ~s across the county

zip I (BE), **zipper** (AE) *n.* 1. to do up, fasten, zip up a ~ 2. to undo, unfasten, unzip a ~ 3. a ~ gets stuck

zip II *v.* (P; intr.) they ~ped past us

zodiac *n.* the signs of the ~

zone I *n.* 1. to establish, set up a ~ 2. a climatic; frigid; temperate; torrid ~ 3. a buffer; combat; communications; demilitarized; drop; Euro-zone; military; neutral; no-fly; no-go; occupation; residential; war ~ 4. a danger; nuclear-free; safety; security ~ 5. a no-parking; no-passing; school; towaway ~ 6. a postal; time ~ 7. an erogenous ~ (of the body) 8. in a ~; in the ~ (colloq.) (the tennis player felt he was in the ~ and couldn't lose) 9. (misc.) a twilight ("transitional") ~

zone II *v.* 1. (d; tr.) to ~ as (they ~d the area as residential) 2. (d; tr.) to ~ for (this area has been ~d for residential use)

zoning *n.* exclusionary (esp. AE); residential ~

zoo *n.* 1. at, in a ~ (she works at the ~; wild animals are well cared for in our ~) 2. (misc.) a person who manages a ~ is a zookeeper (see also *zoo animal* at **animal**)

zoom in *v.* (d; intr.) to ~ on (the cameras all ~ed in on me)

Using the BBI

A workbook with exercises
for the BBI Combinatory Dictionary of English

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

Table of contents

Preface 4

How entries are structured in the BBI 5

Abbreviations used in the BBI 7

UNIT 1 : Using the BBI 8
Exercise 1-A 8
Exercise 1-B 9
Exercise 1-C 10
Exercise 1-D 11
Exercise 1-E 12

UNIT 2 : Collocations, free combinations, and idioms 14
Exercise 2-A 14
Exercise 2-B 16

UNIT 3: Noun collocations 18
Exercise 3-A 18
Exercise 3-B 19
Exercise 3-C 20
Exercise 3-D 21

UNIT 4: Adjective collocations 24
Exercise 4-A 24
Exercise 4-B 25
Exercise 4-C 26
Exercise 4-D 28
Exercise 4-E 29

UNIT 5: Verb collocations 31
Exercise 5-A 31
Exercise 5-B 33
Exercise 5-C 34
Exercise 5-D 35
Exercise 5-E 36
Exercise 5-F 37

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

UNIT 6: Verb collocations *(continued)* 39
Exercise 6-A 39
Exercise 6-B 41
Exercise 6-C 43
Exercise 6-D 44
Exercise 6-E 46
Exercise 6-F 47

UNIT 7: Supplementary exercises 48
Exercise 7-A 48
Exercise 7-B 49
Exercise 7-C 49
Exercise 7-D 50

Postscript 51

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

Preface

This Workbook, USING THE BBI, introduces students, teachers, translators, and other interested people to the BBI Combinatory Dictionary of English. The Workbook explains how the BBI is constructed, demonstrates how collocations differ from free combinations and idioms, and shows how collocations of all types can be identified and found quickly. Users of the Workbook will become well acquainted with all parts of the BBI -which also includes Usage Notes giving extra information.

Explanatory material and illustrative exercises are organized into six basic Units. The seventh Unit consists of missing-word exercises, that is doze-type exercises, in which collocating words can be inserted, where appropriate, into larger texts. This Unit gives practice in using a whole range of BBI collocations in connected discourse. A Postscript offers a handy step-by-step procedure for finding collocations in the BBI. Answers to the exercises in all seven Units are included separately.

This *Workbook* is intended to complement the BBI's own Preface and detailed Introduction. The *Workbook* can be used for both classroom instruction and independent study.

How entries are structured in the BBI

A visual guide

appointment *n.* ["agreement to meet"] 1. a follow-up; outpatient ~ 2. to have; keep; give, make, schedule an ~ (with) (the hospital gave me a follow-up outpatient ~ with their cardiologist) 3. to break; cancel; miss an ~ 4. by ~ (she sees patients by ~ only) 5. an ~ to + inf. (she had an ~ to see the dean) ["selection"] 6. to confirm; make an ~ 7. to block an ~ 8. an ~ to (we announced her ~ to the committee) ["position"] 9. an ~ as 10. to offer an ~ (we offered her an ~ as treasurer) 11. to have, hold; receive an ~ 12. an interim; permanent; temporary ~ 13. a political ~ ["designation"] 14. by ~ to Her Majesty

Definition (of noun in square brackets, other typeface and double quotation marks),
referring to 1. – 5.

Definition, referring to 6. – 8.

Definition, referring to 9. – 13.

Definition, referring to 14.

clock I *n.* 1. to regulate, set; wind (up) a ~ 2. to advance a ~; or: to put, set, turn a ~ ahead/forward ((by) one hour) 3. to put, set, turn a ~ back ((by) one hour) 4. a digital; cuckoo; electric; grandfather; wall ~ (by/according to my digital ~, it's ten thirty) 5. a time ~ (to punch a time ~ when starting or finishing work) 6. a biological ~ (her biological ~ keeps ticking away) 7. a ~ is fast; right; slow 8. a ~ gains time; goes, runs; keeps time; loses time; runs down; says the time, shows the time, tells the time (BE), tells time (AE); stops; ticks 9. a ~ strikes the hour 10. the dial; face; hands of a ~ 11. (misc.) to watch the ~ ("to wait impatiently for the end of the working day"); to work (a)round the ~ ("to work without rest"); to work against the ~ ("to strive to meet a deadline"); the ~ ran out ("the allotted time expired"); to stop the ~ ("to suspend play in a game so that the clock stops running") (see also **alarm clock**)

1. – 10. = Lexical collocations

11. = Idioms with paraphrases in double quotation marks

concerned *adj.* 1. deeply, gravely, greatly; very ~ 2. ~ about, for, over; with (~ about safety) 3. (esp. BE) ~ to + inf. (~ to know your decision) 4. ~ that + clause (she is ~ that there is still so much illiteracy; we are ~ that they might have missed the train) 5. (misc.) as far as I'm ~ USAGE NOTE: The phrases *concerned about*, *concerned over*, and, less frequently, *concerned for* mean "worried about" (concerned about your safety). The phrase *concerned with* means "interested in" (concerned with establishing the truth).

2. – 4. = Grammatical collocations

USAGE NOTE providing additional information

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

Used only in American English

Used only in British English

meat *n.* 1. to barbecue; braise; broil (AE), grill; cook; cure; fry; marinate; roast; sear; stew ~ 2. to carve, cut; slice ~ 3. dark; red; white ~ 4. fatty; lean ~ 5. raw; tender; tough ~ 6. halal; kosher ~ 7. canned (AE), tinned (BE); fresh; frozen ~ 8. boned; chopped (AE), ground (AE), minced (BE); soup ~ 9. ~ goes bad, spoils 10. a cut; joint; piece; slice of ~ (I'd like a couple of slices of your best cut of ~, please) 11. (misc.) ~ off the bone; ~ on the bone

Illustrative phrase

excited *adj.* 1. ~ about, at, by, over (she got ~ about the news that they were coming) 2. ~ to + inf. (she was ~ to learn that they were coming) 3. ~ that + clause (she was ~ that they were coming)

Compound verb

Definition (of verb in parentheses and double quotation marks)

Verb patterns

come out *v.* 1. (d; intr.) to ~ against ("to oppose") (to ~ against a proposal) 2. (d; intr.) to ~ for, in favor of ("to support") (to ~ for a proposal) 3. (d; intr.) to ~ for ("to try out for") (are you ~ing out for the team?) 4. (d; intr.) to ~ with ("to make known; to publish") (to ~ with a new book; to ~ with the truth) 5. (L) it came out that he had cheated 6. (P; intr.) ("to end up, result") to ~ on top ("to be victorious") 7. (s) the pictures came out fine 8. (misc.) to ~ in spots ("to be covered with spots as a result of illness"); they came out from behind the bushes; she meant it as a compliment, but it came out as an insult; she finally came out openly as a liberal

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

Abbreviations used in the BBI

Abbreviations

adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
AE	American English
Am.	American
anat.	anatomical
BE	British English
Br.	British
CA	creation and/or activation
CE	Common English
cf.	compare
colloq.	colloquial
comm.	commercial
derog.	derogatory
EN	eradication and/or nullification
esp.	especially
fig.	figurative
GA	General American
GB	Great Britain
imper.	imperative
inf.	infinitive
intr.	intransitive
ling.	linguistics
lit.	literary
math.	mathematics
med.	medicine, medical
mil.	military
misc.	miscellaneous
mus.	music
n.	noun
neg.	negative
obsol.	obsolete
occ.	occasionally
pol.	politics, political
pred.	predicative
prep.	preposition
refl.	reflexive
rel.	religion, religious
RP	Received Pronunciation
smb.	somebody
smt.	something
subj.	subjunctive
(T)	Trademark
tr.	transitive
usu.	usually
US	United States
v.	verb
*	incorrect English

Verb patterns

Pattern Designation		Pattern
A	=	svo *to* o (or) svoo
B	=	svo *to* o
C	=	svo *for* o (or) svoo
D, d	=	sv prep. o (or) svo prep. o
E	=	sv *to* inf.
F	=	sv inf.
G	=	svv-ing
H	=	svo *to* inf.
I	=	svo inf.
J	=	svov-ing
K	=	sv possessive v-ing
L	=	sv(o) *that*-clause
M	=	svo *to be* c
N	=	svoc
O	=	svoo
P	=	sv(o)a
Q	=	sv(o) wh-word
R	=	s(*it*)vo *to* inf. (or) s(*it*)vo *that*-clause
S	=	svc (adjective or noun)
s	=	svc (adjective)

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

UNIT 1

Using the BBI

Exercise 1-A

An entry in the BBI tells you what part of speech the headword is. You can tell whether the headword is a noun, a verb, an adjective, an adverb, or a preposition.

> ### Example
>
> *v.* means this word is a verb
>
> **begin** *v.* 1. (D ; intr., tr.) to ~ as (to ~ as a clerk ; to ~ a new career as a teacher) 2. (d ; intr., tr.) to ~ at (prices ~ at five dollars ; they began the bidding at fifty dollars) 3. (D ; intr. ; tr.) to ~ by, with (they began (the meeting) by saying a prayer ; or : they began (the meeting) with a prayer ; let's ~ with you) 4. (d ; intr.) to ~ on (they began on a new case) 5. (E) she began to work 6. (G) she began working 7. (misc.) to ~ with (to ~ with, let's consider climate change) ; "To ~ at the beginning" – Dylan Thomas, *Under Milk Wood* (1954)

Find the part of speech for the following headwords in the BBI. Write noun, verb, adjective, adverb, or preposition in the space provided. If there is more than one entry for a word in the BBI, list the parts of speech for all the entries. (Note that the BBI lists 'homographs – different words with the same spelling – with the help of Roman numerals. For example, **count I** is a noun and **count II** is a verb. The order of homographs is *adjective*, *adverb*, *noun*, *verb*. If you find homographs in this exercise, list the parts of speech for all of them.)

1 **commercial** ____________________

2 **edgy** ____________________

3 **lawsuit** ____________________

4 **avail** ____________________

5 **possum** ____________________

6 **tease** ____________________

7 **overboard** ____________________

8 **incongruous** ____________________

9 **fine** ____________________

10 **likewise** ____________________

11 **awry** ____________________

12 **zipper** ____________________

Exercise 1-B

To save space, the swung dash (~) replaces the headword within entries in the BBI.

> **Example**
>
> **pose II** *v.* 1. (d ; intr.) to ~ as (“to pretend to be”) (to ~ as an expert) 2. (D ; intr.) to ~ for (“to serve as a model for”) (to ~ for an artist) (see also *to ~ a threat to smb. / smt.* at **threat**)

Replace the swung dash with the headword in the following entries. The first one is done for you.

1 **positive *adj.* ~ about**

positive about

2 **possum *n.* (colloq.) to play ~**

____

3 **restrict *v.* (D;refl.,tr.) ... the chair ~ed discussion to items on the official agenda**

____

4 **go forward *v.* (d;intr.) (‘to proceed’) ... to ~ with one’s plans**

____

5 **angle II *v.* (d;intr.) to ~ for (‘to try to obtain’) (she was ~ing for an invitation)**

____

6 **jet I *n.* to fly, pilot a ~**

____

7 **plunge I *n.* [‘risk’] (colloq.) to take the ~**

____

8 **pneumonia *n.* 1. to come down with, contract, develop ~ 2. bronchial, viral ~**

____

9 **subversion *n.* to engage in ~**

____

10 **subject I *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ to (~ to change)**

____

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

11 **subpoena I *n.* 1. to issue a ~ 2. to serve a ~ on 3. a ~ to + inf. (he received a ~ to appear in court in two weeks)**

____

____

12 **cousin *n.* 1. a first; second ~; a first ~ once removed 2. a ~ to (she is a first ~ to the count) 3. (colloq.) kissing ('friendly') ~ s**

____

____

Exercise 1-C

In the BBI, synonyms (or near synonyms) are listed in a series and separated by a comma (,). When non-synonymous collocations are given in the same series they are separated by a semicolon (;). (Note that the swung dash is not repeated in a series.)

Examples

resistance *n.* 1. to offer, put up ~ 2. to break down, crush, overcome, overpower, put down, smash, wear down ~ 3. to arouse, come up against, give rise to, stir up ; encounter, face, meet, meet with, run into ~ 4. bitter, determined, fierce, stiff, strong, stubborn, unyielding, valiant ~ 5. armed ; nonviolent, passive ; sporadic ; spotty ; token ; weak ~ 6. ~ hardens, stiffens 7. ~ crumbles ; wanes, weakens 8. ~ to (~ to a disease ; to new taxes) 9. against, despite, in spite of (the) ~ (we adopted the resolution despite the ~ of the other party) 10. (misc.) a pocket of (isolated) ~ ; the line / path (AE) of least ~ ; her ~ was low and she came down with a severe cold

The comma means that *to offer resistance* and *to put up resistance* are synonyms.

answerable *adj.* ~ for ; to (politicians are ~ to the voters for their actions)

The semicolon means that *answerable for* and *answerable to* are not synonyms.

In the following pairs of collocations, some pairs are synonymous and some are not. Look up the words IN CAPITALS in the BBI and determine which pairs are synonymous, then write Synonymous or Not synonymous in the space provided.

1 **a brilliant ACHIEVEMENT**

a magnificent ACHIEVEMENT ____________________________________

2 **give ADVICE**

offer ADVICE ____________________________________

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

3 manage a BAR

run a BAR ______________________________

4 edit a MANUSCRIPT

revise a MANUSCRIPT ______________________________

5 pay off a DEBT

write off a DEBT ______________________________

6 nod one's HEAD

shake one's HEAD ______________________________

7 CONCERNED about

CONCERNED with ______________________________

8 She has DIFFICULTY in breathing

She has DIFFICULTY breathing ______________________________

9 a FIGHT about

a FIGHT for ______________________________

10 MADE of wood

MADE out of wood ______________________________

11 fill in an application FORM

fill out an application FORM ______________________________

12 service ENTRANCE

side ENTRANCE ______________________________

Exercise 1-D

Consult the Introduction to the BBI to determine the meaning of the following abbreviations. Write the meaning of the abbreviation in the space provided. The first one is done for you (Remember that the BBI also uses *smb*. 'somebody' and *smt*. 'something'.).

1 colloq. colloquial____________________

2 esp. ______________________

3 inf. ______________________

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

4 **intr.** ______________________________

5 **math.** ______________________________

6 **misc.** ______________________________

7 **obsol.** ______________________________

8 **occ.** ______________________________

9 **refl.** ______________________________

10 **subj.** ______________________________

11 **tr.** ______________________________

12 **usu.** ______________________________

Exercise 1-E

The differences between British English and American English are marked in the BBI by the labels (BE) and (AE). If a word or collocation is common to both British and American English, it either has no label at all or, occasionally, it is marked as Common English (CE).

> **Example**
>
> **different** *adj.* 1. basically, completely, entirely, totally, widely ; quite ; radically ; very ~ 2. ~ in (they are quite ~ in outlook ("their outlooks are quite different") 3. ~ from, than (esp. AE), to (BE) USAGE NOTE : Some purists consider only *different from* to be correct. Note that, as prepositions, *from*, *than*, *to* can all introduce full clauses (different from / than / to what we thought), but only *than* can, as a conjunction, become part of a clause (different than we thought).

This entry shows that *different than* is more characteristic of American English than of British English and different to is used in British English, but not in American English. However, *different from* is acceptable in both British and American English.

The following pairs of sentences have the same meaning. Look up the words IN CAPITALS in the BBI and determine which sentences are acceptable in British, American, or Common English, then write BE, AE, or CE in the space provided.

1 **That SOUNDS a great idea.** ______________________________

That SOUNDS like a great idea. ______________________________

2 **They are on WELFARE.** ______________________________

They are on the DOLE. ______________________________

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

3 He WRITES her every day. ______________________________

He WRITES to her every day. ______________________________

4 She was ill and has been in HOSPITAL. ______________________________

She was ill and has been in the HOSPITAL. ______________________________

5 They did a DEAL. ______________________________

They made a DEAL. ______________________________

6 Half our money GOES for food. ______________________________

Half our money GOES on food. ______________________________

7 She RECOMMENDED me a good dictionary. ______________________________

She RECOMMENDED a good dictionary to me. ______________________________

8 Let’s go SOMEPLACE different. ______________________________

Let’s go SOMEWHERE different. ______________________________

9 I’ll CATCH up to you later. ______________________________

I’ll CATCH you up later. ______________________________

10 Do you need a RUBBER? ______________________________

Do you need an ERASER? ______________________________

11 We had breakfast at a transport CAFE. ______________________________

We had breakfast at a truck STOP. ______________________________

12 The OVERPASS crosses the TURNPIKE. ______________________________

The FLYOVER crosses the MOTORWAY. ______________________________

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

UNIT 2

Collocations, free combinations, and idioms

Exercise 2-A

Collocations are phrases which are regularly repeated, come readily to mind, and are relatively fixed. Examples of collocations are *ride a bicycle*, *confirmed bachelor*, and *tall building*. The meaning of a collocation typically reflects the meanings of its individual words.

Free combinations are phrases such as *buy a bicycle*, *wealthy bachelor*, and *new building*. These combinations of words are not fixed and are not regularly repeated. The BBI does not normally show free combinations.

In each of the following pairs of sentences, the words in italics are a free combination in one sentence and are a collocation in the other. Look up the word IN CAPITALS in the BBI to determine which sentence contains the collocation. Write Collocation or Free combination in the space provided.

Examples

Can *you* give me a *concrete EXAMPLE*?

Collocation

That's a *good EXAMPLE*.

Free combination

The BBI contains the following entry for *example*:

example *n.* 1. to cite, give, provide an ~ 2. to be, serve as, set an ~ (for) 3. to make an ~ of 4. to follow smb.'s ~ 5. a classic ; concrete ; extreme ; glaring, striking ; illustrative ; impressive ; inspiring ; perfect ; prime, shining ; textbook ; typical ~ 6. an ~ for, to 7. for ~ 8. (misc.) to lead by (personal) ~

Note: the BBI entry contains *concrete example* but not *good example*. So *concrete example* is the collocation, while *good example* is a free combination.

1 **We received *bitter COMPLAINTS* about the service.**

____

We have had no *recent COMPLAINTS* **about the service.**

____

2 **The first prize in our competition is an *expensive DICTIONARY*.**

____

I need a *bilingual DICTIONARY* **to help me with that translation.**

____

The BBI Combinatory Dictionary of English: Your guide to collocations and grammar
© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

3 Teachers are not allowed to *hit CHILDREN*.

____

Unfortunately, our plans have *hit a SNAG*.

____

4 The people *NEED* food *badly*.

____

They *NEED* the food *now*.

____

5 The programmers must *debug this PROGRAM* before we can use it on our computers.

____

We *bought* a new *PROGRAM* for the office computer.

____

6 The police *filed a REPORT* about the demonstration.

____

Unfortunately, the office has *lost your REPORT*.

____

7 She *committed SUICIDE*.

____

Most people in our country *detest SUICIDE*.

____

8 Do you need a license to *operate a TRACTOR*?

____

You don't need a license to *sell a TRACTOR*.

____

9 They never officially *declared WAR*.

____

Many people *hated the WAR* and tried to stop it.

____

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

10 May I *borrow your WA TCH?*

____

Set your WATCH to the new time zone as soon as you board a transcontinental flight.

____

11 We took our children to the *amusement PARK*.

____

We went for a walk in the *big PARK* by the river.

____

12 The newspaper published some *interesting EVIDENCE*.

____

The newspaper published *conclusive EVIDENCE*.

____

Exercise 2-B

Idioms are phrases whose meaning does not reflect the meanings of the individual words. Examples of idioms are *buy a pig in a poke*, "accept or buy something without inspecting it," and *kick the bucket*, "die". Idioms are not usually included in the BBI; those common idioms that are included are listed under *misc*.

Look up the words IN CAPITALS in the following sentences in the BBI and decide which sentences contain collocations and which contain idioms. Write Collocation or Idiom in the space provided.

Examples

He *really takes the CAKE.*

*Idiom*____________________________

He really knows how to *bake a CAKE.*

*Collocation*________________________

The BBI entry for *cake* contains the following:

> **cake** *n.* 1. to bake, make ; cut ; frost (esp. AE), ice a ~ 2. a birthday ; wedding ~ 3. (a) chocolate ; Christmas (BE) ; coffee ~ ; fruitcake ; honey ; Madeira (BE), sponge ; marble ; pound ; white (AE) ~ 4. a layer ; upside-down ~) 5. a piece, slice of ~ 6. (misc.) a piece of ~ ("smt. very easy to do") ; to take the ~ ("to be the best or worst" ; BE has also to take the biscuit) ; to go / sell like hot cakes ("to be bought up very quickly")

The entry shows that *bake a cake* is a collocation (listed under 1.), but that *take the cake* is an idiom (listed under 6. misc.)

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

1 In this passage the writer *makes an ALLUSION* to his childhood.

____

2 We were ready to give up the plan but she *breathed new LIFE into it*.

____

3 People who object to this law *have an AX to grind*.

____

4 After the doctor *performed a CEASAREAN SECTION*, mother and baby were fine.

____

5 The U.N. has *imposed an EMBARGO* on arms sales.

____

6 Poor fellow! He *put his FOOT in his mouth.*

____

7 They *HAVE it in for* you.

____

8 The solution I propose will *do the TRICK.*

____

9 I *invest my MONEY* in stocks and bonds.

____

10 Is everything clear now? Do you *get the PICTURE*?

____

11 Are you calling our office to *place an ORDER*?

____

12 Our government wishes to *lodge a PROTEST*

____

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

UNIT 3

Noun collocations

Exercise 3-A

Noun collocations are types of collocations in which nouns appear. For example, *our ambassador to Rome*, *an effort to succeed*, *a vow that we would help*, *on his advice*, *put up resistance*, *a formidable challenge*, *an alarm goes off*, and *a herd of buffalo* are all noun collocations. Note that in some noun collocations the first word may be a noun used as an adjective. This construction is very common in English. *House arrest*, *dialect atlas*, *tennis club*, and *jet engine* are all examples of this type of noun collocation.

How do you find noun collocations in the BBI? When a collocation includes a noun, the collocation is given at the entry for that noun. When a collocation consists of two nouns, the collocation is given at the entry for the second noun. So you will find the collocation, *jet engine*, under **engine** and *herd of buffalo* under **buffalo**.

Use the BBI to find the noun collocation in each of the following sentences. Underline it and then, in the space provided, write the noun under which the collocation is listed.

Example

The crew prepared the space shuttle for launch.

shuttle

The noun collocation is space shuttle. This is given in the BBI under the second word, shuttle.

shuttle I *n.* ["vehicle used on an established route"] 1. to take a ~ 2. a space ~ 3. a ~ between

1 **My friend and I met by accident.**

____

2 **The teacher asked several questions.**

____

3 **My brother drives an expensive car.**

____

4 **Her uncle was a chronic alcoholic.**

____

The BBI Combinatory Dictionary of English: Your guide to collocations and grammar
© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

5 **Bees sometimes sting people.**

____

6 **The hikers came across a flock of sheep.**

____

7 **It was a pleasure to see my classmates again.**

____

8 **The story that he intends to resign is a hoax.**

____

9 **Professor Murray is an expert on folklore.**

____

10 **The students thought that the aptitude test was difficult.**

____

11 **The injured player was carried off on a stretcher.**

____

12 **The police solved the case.**

____

Exercise 3-B

Each of the following sentences contains an incomplete noun collocation. Use the EBI to find the collocation and write the missing word in the space provided. If you add a verb, make sure that it is in the proper form.

Example

I don't know how to ____operate / run / work________this machine. I'm afraid you'll have to teach me.

The entry for **machine** in the BBI gives the following list of collocations:

> machine n. 1. to operate, run, use, work a ~ 2. to shut down a ~ 3. an adding, calculating ~ 4. an answering ; video-game ~ 5. a cash, money-access (AE) ; cigarette ; slot (BE), vending ~ 6. a composing, linotype, typesetting ; copy, copying, duplicating ; fax ~ 7. a heart-lung ; X-ray ~ 8. an earth-moving ; milking ; milling ; sanding ; sewing ; threshing ~ (see also **washing machine** ; **washing-up machine**) 9. a voting ~ 10. a mincing ~ (BE ; AE has *meat grinder*) 11. a fruit (BE), slot (AE) ; pinball ~ (to play a pinball ~) (BE also has *pintable*) 12. a party ; political ~ (I felt I was just a small cog in a well-oiled political ~) 13. a ~ functions, runs ; breaks down (see also *machine tool* at **tool**)

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

1 She was an adviser ______________________ the prime minister.

2 The photograph is too small. Can you ______________________ it?

3 The X-ray showed a fracture. The doctor had to ______________________ the bone.

4 We spotted a ______________________ of wild horses.

5 I cannot finish the payroll today. The computer has been ______________________ all morning.

6 They acquired fluency ______________________ three languages.

7 The ships were riding ______________________ anchor.

8 He was feeling better. His new regimen of diet and exercise had finally ______________________ effect.

9 This letter is a follow-up ______________________ my telephone call.

10 He lost the key. He had to ______________________ the door.

11 If an American president vetoes legislation, the Congress can ______________________the veto.

12 The problems are similar. We can ______________________ a parallel between them.

Exercise 3-C

Of the following 12 sentences, five contain incorrect noun collocations. Use the BBI to identify the incorrect collocations. Then write the correct collocation in the space provided.

Examples

1 He drove his bicycle down the road.

He rode his bicycle down the road

The BBI entry for **bicycle** lists *ride a bicycle*, but not *drive a bicycle*:

bicycle *n.* 1. to pedal, ride a ~ 2. to get on, mount ; get off ; push, walk, wheel a ~ 3. an exercise, stationary ; racing ~ 4. by ~ (to go somewhere by ~)

2 The pilot flew the helicopter very skillfully.

Correct

The BBI entry for **helicopter** lists the collocation *fly a helicopter*, so this sentence is correct.

1 Our publisher brought out 30 new books last year.

____

2 My friends sent hot greetings.

____

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

3 The pupils made their homework.

____

4 Our party put up several good candidates.

____

5 She was a great comfort to her parents.

____

6 The campers were rowing a canoe.

____

7 The government pursued a new policy.

____

8 Bill never cracks jokes.

____

9 The children pitched their tent near the river.

____

10 The actor did his bow.

____

11 We boarded the train in Vladivostok.

____

12 After ten days we got down from the train in Moscow.

____

Exercise 3-D

The phrase in *italics* in each of the following sentences is a free combination that can be replaced by a noun collocation with a similar meaning. Use the BBI to rewrite the sentences using collocations.

Example

The newspaper *printed a bombshell.*

The newspaper dropped a bombshell

The BBI entry for **bombshell** lists *drop a bombshell* as a collocation:

> **bombshell** *n.* ["sensation"] to come as ; drop a ~ (the news she told us came as a ~ that she hadn't intended to drop)

Thus the sentence with the collocation is *The newspaper dropped a bombshell.*

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

1 The story was printed in *big headlines*.

____

2 The government's proposal has *caused antagonism*.

____

3 They lived in great *poverty*.

____

4 The argument *ended our friendship*.

____

5 The *epidemic started* about ten years ago.

____

6 Our university *gave* the mayor *an honorary degree*.

____

7 The fortune-teller *interpreted my horoscope*.

____

8 You shouldn't *have a dog* in a small apartament.

____

9 I'm willing to *accept a cut* in salary if the new job is interesting.

____

10 We will *have the conference* in Tokyo.

____

11 The judge *took away my hunting license* for 12 months.

____

12 He *produced a bibliography* of articles relating to computer-assisted instruction.

____

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

UNIT 4

Adjective collocations

The BBI includes several types of collocations in which adjectives appear. *Fond of*, *ready to go*, *I'm glad that we finally met*, and *sound asleep* are all examples of adjective collocations.

How do you find an adjective collocation? When a collocation includes an adjective but no noun, the collocation is given in the BBI at the entry for the adjective. When a collocation includes a noun and an adjective, the collocation is given at the entry for the noun. For example, to find the collocation *fond of* look under the entry for **fond**; *ready to go* is found under **ready**; *I'm glad that we finally met* is under **glad**; and *sound asleep* is under **asleep**. However, *a rough estimate* is found under the entry for the noun **estimate**.

Exercise 4-A

Complete each sentence by selecting one of the two prepositions listed in parentheses.

Example

You are very good _____at_______ statistics (with, at)

The BBI lists several prepositions which collocate with *good*:

> **good I** *adj.* 1. any ; no ; very ~ ("is he any ~ at chess ?" "I'm afraid he's no ~ at chess at all !" ; it's no ~ (you / your) protesting your innocence : no one believes you !) 2. ~ **at, in (she is ~ at / in mathematics)** 3. ~ for (exercise is ~ for you ; this ticket is ~ for a month) 4. ~ to (he is ~ to his parents) 5. ~ with (he is ~ with his hands) 6. ~ to + inf. (it's no ~ (for you) to protest your innocence : no one believes you ! ; it's ~ to be home again ; it was ~ of you to come) 7. ~ that + clause (it's ~ that we're home again ; it was that you came) 8. (misc.) for ~ ("for ever") ; she is ~ about baby-sitting ("she doesn't mind baby-sitting") ; they made ~ their escape ("they succeeded in escaping") ; so far so ~ ; as ~ as gold ("very good and esp. very obedient") (the baby's been as ~ as gold !) ; would you be ~ enough to help us ? = would you be so ~ as to help us ? ; she said she'd help us and she was as ~ as her word ("…and she kept her word")

The structure of the example is closest to 2. in the BBI entry, so *at* (or *in*) is the correct preposition.

1 **We are aware ______________________ his interest. (about, of)**

2 **He was infatuated ______________________ her. (to, with)**

3 **She was proud ______________________ her accomplishments. (for, of)**

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

4 They were vague ______________________ their plans. (about, of)

5 The camp was remote ______________________ civilization. (from, to)

6 The pioneers were imbued ______________________ lofty ideals. (by, with)

7 That judge is tough ______________________ drunk drivers. (on, to)

8 She's eager ______________________ success. (for, with)

9 When they got home, their father was furious ______________________ them. (to, with)

10 This medication is effective ______________________ the common cold. (against, for)

11 We felt sad ______________________ his illness. (about, for)

12 It's been a long day. I'm ready ______________________ bed. (for, to)

Exercise 4-B

Use the BBI to find the correct prepositions that will complete the collocations in the following sentences.

> **Example**
>
> I am fond ___of_______her.
>
> The entry for **fond** in the BBI shows that it is always followed by *of*:
>
> **fond** *adj.* (cannot stand alone) ~ of (she is very ~ of him)

1 My sister is allergic ______________________ wool.

2 The textbook was intended ______________________ beginners.

3 The students were well schooled ______________________ classical languages.

4 Her dissertation was replete ______________________ footnotes and statistics.

5 Our country is rich ______________________ natural resources.

6 The officials were deaf ______________________ our pleas for help.

7 Are you familiar ______________________ the details?

8 The boys were bent ______________________ doing mischief.

9 Political leaders should be sensitive ______________________ the needs of the people.

10 You should be conscious ______________________ the danger.

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

11 She's very well qualified ______________________ the job.

12 Collocations are different ______________________ idioms.

Exercise 4-C

Some adjectives can be followed by *to* + infinitive, some by a *that*-clause, and others by either construction. Use the BBI to find which constructions can follow the adjectives below. Then write complete sentences beginning with the phrases given, adding the construction or constructions that can follow the given adjective.

Examples

1 We are ready ... *to begin*

ready I *adj.* 1. ~ for (~ for any emergency ; we are ~ for you to start) 2. ~ with (she is always ~ with an answer) 3. ~ to + inf. (we are ~ to start) 4. (misc.) to get (smb.) ~ for ; we made ~ to repel the attack ; we stand ~ to do whatever we must ; Ready, Aim, Fire ! ; ~ or not, here I come ! ; ~ when you are ! ; I'm ~ , willing, and able to do it ! USAGE NOTE : At the start of a race, the set phrases *Ready, set, go !* or *Get ready, get set, go !* or *On your mark* (AE) = *marks* (BE), *get set, go !* are used to competitors ; the BE phrase *Ready, steady, go !* is fig.

2 It was clear ... *that they would not come*

clear I *adj.* 1. abundantly, perfectly ; fairly ; painfully ~ 2. (cannot stand alone) ~ about (are you ~ about the situation ? ; let's get ~ about a few things) 3. ~ from (the answer is ~ from these facts) 4. ~ of (the roads were ~ of snow ; to keep ~ of trouble) 5. ~ to (the situation is ~ to everyone ; it was ~ to everyone that they would not come) 6. ~ that + clause (it was ~ that they would not come ; the teacher made it ~ that discipline would be maintained) 7. (misc.) as ~ as crystal = crystal-clear ("perfectly clear") ; as clear as mud (colloq.) ("not clear at all") ; it is ~ why she came ; it is not ~ how he was able to do it ; it is not ~ whether they will attend ; (as adv) the ball went ~ over my head (see also *see one's way (clear)* at **way**)

3 she was proud ... *to serve*

proud *adj.* 1. justly ~ 2. ~ of (~ of one's children) 3. ~ to + inf. (will they be ~ enough to defend their principles ?) 4. ~ that + clause (they are ~ that they defended their principles) 5. (misc.) to do smb. ~ ; as ~ as a peacock

1 I am aware... ____

____

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

2 It was sad...

3 She was happy...

4 He was bound...

5 We were furious...

6 I was not able...

7 We were prepared...

8 It was frustrating...

9 The plan was doomed...

10 My father is apt...

11 It is arguable...

12 We were satisfied...

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

Exercise 4-D

Use the BBI to find an adverb that collocates with the adjectives in the following sentences.

> **Example**
>
> To be _brutally / perfectly_ frank, I don't think you're the right person to do the job.
>
> The entry for **frank** lists two adverbs, *brutally* and *perfectly*, that collocate with *frank*:
>
> **frank** *adj.* 1. brutally, perfectly ~ (let's be perfectly ~ , to be perfectly ~ ; to be ~ with you, I don't think your plan will work) 2. ~ about ; with (she was ~ with us about everything)

1 **These companies are ______________________competitive with each other.**

2 **The Tokyo area is ______________________ populated.**

3 **They were ______________________ addicted to drugs. They needed help.**

4 **With her training and experience, she was ______________________ qualified for the position.**

5 **It is ______________________ cold this morning.**

6 **The ground was frozen ______________________.**

7 **When he came out of the shower, he was ______________________ wet.**

8 **We will do everything that is ______________________ possible.**

9 **Your discovery is a ______________________ interesting one.**

10 **He ran across the stage ______________________ naked.**

11 **My mother is a ______________________ educated woman.**

12 **You should be ______________________ ashamed of yourself.**

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

Exercise 4-E

Of the following 12 sentences, five contain incorrect adjective collocations. Use the BBI to identify the incorrect collocations. Then write the correct collocation in the space provided.

Examples

1 We are highly aware of the dangers.

We are keenly / painfully / very much aware of the problem

The BBI entry for **aware** lists *keenly aware*, *painfully aware*, and *very much aware*, but not **highly aware*:

> **aware** *adj.* (usu. cannot stand alone) 1. acutely, all too, keenly, only too, painfully, very (much), well ~ 2. dimly, hardly ~ 3. ~ of (they were only too well ~ of the harmfulness of smoking) 4. ~ that + clause (they were only too well ~ that smoking is harmful) USAGE NOTE : The adjective aware can be used without a following of or that-clause when it is preceded by such an adverb as politically : a politically aware person who knows what all the candidates stand for.

2 Don't be cruel to animals.

Correct

The BBI entry for **cruel** lists the collocation *cruel to*, so this sentence is correct.

1 **You should not be pessimistic about your prospects.**

____

2 **Bob was easy to please.**

____

3 **Sally was easy pleasing.**

____

4 **It was great to see everyone again.**

____

5 **It was great seeing all of you again.**

____

6 **Their behavior was greatly provocative.**

____

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

7 **Remaining silent was tantamount of giving consent.**

____

8 **He was incapable of giving an intelligent answer.**

____

9 **They are eligible voting.**

____

10 **They are busy cleaning their room.**

____

11 **He got himself all worked up over a trifle.**

____

12 **She was angry againts everyone.**

____

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

UNIT 5

Verb collocations

The treatment of verb collocations in the BBI is based on the 19 verb patterns described in the Introduction. In addition to these 19 verb patterns, the BBI also shows lexical collocations consisting of a verb + adverb of manner such as *argue heatedly* and *struggle desperately*.

How do you find verb collocations? Lexical verb collocations consist of an adverb and a verb: *they argued heatedly*, *the incident affected him deeply*. Grammatical verb collocations consist of a verb and preposition or of a verb and grammatical construction: *the bill came to twenty pounds*, *she bought a book for me*, *she bought me a book*, *he began to write*, *they continued working*, *I consider him (to be) competent*, *we bet him ten dollars, etc*.

Some collocations are given in the BBI at two different entries. An example is the collocation *break the news (to somebody)*. It is given as a noun collocation at the entry for the noun **news** 1 and also at the entry for the verb **break** II 1.

Exercise 5-A

In each of the following pairs of sentences, one sentence contains a verb collocation and the other sentence contains a noun collocation. Use the BBI to determine which is the noun collocation and which is the verb collocation. Underline the collocation and then, in the space provided, write Noun or Verb.

Examples

We will all benefit from your success. ____verb____

Does your employer provide benefits with your job? ____noun____

benefit from is listed in the BBI as a verb collocation:

> **benefit II** *v.* (D ; intr. ; tr.) to ~ by, from (she ~ed from a good education, which ~ed her in many ways in later life ; will the rich ~ by / from the new tax laws ? = will the new tax laws ~ the rich ?)

while *provide benefits* is listed as a noun collocation:

> **benefits** *n.* 1. to provide ~ 2. to collect ; reap ~ 3. to withhold ~ 4. disability ; health-care ; old-age ; retirement ; social-security ; strike ; survivors' (AE) ; unemployment ; veterans' ; welfare ; workers' ~ (see also **fringe benefits**)

1 **The demonstrators circulated a petition.** ____________________

They petitioned for a reduction of taxes. ____________________

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

2 They filed a protest. ____________________

They protested against the lockout. ____________________

3 The governor will release her from prison. ____________________

Her release from prison was delayed. ____________________

4 People often spread gossip. ____________________

One should not gossip about one's colleagues. ____________________

5 They can revoke our permit. ____________________

They will not permit us to leave. ____________________

6 Bees swarm. ____________________

They always swarm around me. ____________________

7 The new proposal raised doubts. ____________________

We doubt that they will attend. ____________________

8 They had to pay a fine at customs. ____________________

They were fined for not declaring the perfume. ____________________

9 We must answer for the loss. ____________________

They will never give us an answer. ____________________

10 Our query did not evoke a response. ____________________

They responded by walking out. ____________________

11 The meeting resulted in agreement. ____________________

The meeting produced very positive results. ____________________

12 It angered me that they didn't come. ____________________

We didn't show our anger. ____________________

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

Exercise 5-B

Of the following 12 sentences, six contain incorrect verb constructions. Use the BBI to identify the incorrect constructions. Then write the correct collocation in the space provided. Hint: Check which verbs do not accept the Dative Movement Transformation (Type B verbs).

Examples

1 The neighbors brought us some food.

Correct

The BBI entry for **bring** lists it as a Type A verb which accepts the Dative Movement Transformation, so this sentence is correct.

2 Mrs. Jones said us hello.

Mrs. Jones said hello to us

The BBI entry for **say** lists it as a Type B verb which does *not* accept the Dative Movement Transformation.

1 **He addressed us his comments.**

____

2 **They advanced us a month's salary.**

____

3 **She sent him a book.**

____

4 **She revealed me a secret.**

____

5 **I lent them money.**

____

6 **The chilren handed her their work.**

____

7 **We offered his brother a great deal of money.**

____

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

8 **The doctor described us the facts.**

____

9 **The engineer presented them the plan.**

____

10 **You must submit us your application.**

____

11 **The commission reported the President their findings.**

____

12 **They awarded her the Nobel Prize for Literature.**

____

Exercise 5-C

Of the following 12 sentences, only six are correct. The other six are incomplete and require the addition of prepositional phrases. Use the BBI to find the incorrect sentences and then complete them with an appropriate preposit:ional phrase. Hint: Check in the BBI which verbs are normally followed by a prepositional phrase (Type d verbs).

Examples

1 We will adhere *to our plan*__________

The BBI entry for **adhere** 2. shows that it is coded with d. Thus, this verb must be followed by a prepositional phrase beginning with *to*.

2 They concurred *correct*__________

The BBI entry for **concur** 2.,3. shows that it is coded with D. This means that this verb may stand alone without a prepositional phrase.

1 **I referred the problem** ____________________________

2 **They kept the book** ____________________________

3 **We had to abide** ____________________________

4 **Her remark meant nothing** ____________________________

5 **The teacher frowned** ____________________________

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

6 **Her eyes flashed** ______________________________

7 **The facts pertained** ______________________________

8 **They inveigled me** ______________________________

9 **They promoted the captain** ______________________________

10 **They based their argument** ______________________________

11 **The committee consists** ______________________________

12 **Our lawyers agreed** ______________________________

Exercise 5-D

Use the BBI to complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verb in parentheses. If two versions are possible, give both. Hint: Check in the BBI which verbs are followed by *to* + infinitive (Type E verbs), which are followed by *-ing* (Type G verbs), and which are followed by a bare infinitive without to (Type F verbs).

Examples

1 She decided __to return__________ . (return)

The BBI lists **decide** in this sense as a Type E verb, so it must be followed by *to* + infinitive.

2 A famous person cannot escape __being recognized_____. (be recognized)

The BBI lists **escape** in this sense as a Type G verb, so it must be followed by *-ing*.

3 They must __work______________harder. (work)

The BBI lists **must** as a Type F verb, so it must be followed by the infinitive without *to*.

1 **We choose ______________________ at home. (remain)**

2 **Their representatives offered ______________________. (negotiate)**

3 **We dare not ______________________. (complain)**

4 **The children kept ______________________. (talk)**

5 **He risked ______________________. (be punished)**

6 **These workers expect ______________________ soon. (retire)**

7 **Her husband faced ______________________ to prison (go)**

8 **She plans ______________________ her family. (visit)**

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

9 I prefer ____________________ in my office. (wait)

10 They enjoy _____________________. (walk)

11 The house needs _____________________. (paint)

12 You needn't _____________________ to work tomorrow. (come)

Exercise 5-E

Use the BBI to complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verb. If two versions are possible, give both. Hint: Check in the BBI which verbs are followed by an object and *to* + infinitive (Type H verbs); by an object and a bare infinitive (Type I verbs); by an object and *-ing* (Type J verbs); or by an object/possessive pronoun and -ing (Type K verbs).

Examples

1 I wanted him __to go______________. (go)

The BBI lists **want** in this sense as a Type H verb, so it must be followed by an object and *to* + infinitive.

2 I watched him __go / going__________. (go)

The BBI lists **watch** in this sense as both a Type I and a Type J verb, so both bare infinitive and *-ing* forms are possible.

3 I remembered him __singing / his singing__ that song. (sing)

The BBI lists **remember** in this sense as both a Type J and a Type K verb, so both object and -ing and possessive pronoun and *-ing* are possible.

1 We saw them _____________________ the house. (leave)

2 I kept her _____________________ outside. (wait)

3 They advised her _____________________ . (resign)

4 He forced us _____________________. (get up)

5 He made us _____________________. (get up)

6 Can you imagine him _____________________ that? (do)

7 They urged me _____________________. (apply)

8 She expects you _____________________. (help)

9 **He could feel his heart ______________________. (beat)**

10 **We found them ______________________. (rehearse)**

11 **Let the people ______________________ the bus first. (get off)**

12 **I don't recall you ______________________ the computer. 9turn off)**

Exercise 5-F

Of the following 12 sentences, only seven are correct. The other five require the addition of an object. Use the BBI to identify the incorrect sentences and then rewrite them with an appropriate object. Hint: Check in the BBI to see which of these Type L verbs *may* have an object and which *must* have an object.

Examples

1 You assured that there would be no trouble.

You assured us that there would be no problem.

The BBI entry for **assure** states that this verb must have an object:

> **assure** *v.* 1. (d ; tr.) to ~ about, of (the contractor assured us of the work's completion on time) 2. (L ; must have an object) (the contractor assured us that the work would be completed on time) 3. let me ~ you (despite all rumors to the contrary, let me ~ you that he's not dead)

2 He cabled that he would be arriving on the 20th.

Correct

The BBI entry for **cable** states that this verb *may* have an object:

> **cable II** *v.* 1. (A) we ~d the message to them ; or : we ~d them the message 2. (d ; intr., tr.) to ~ for (they ~d for immediate delivery) 3. (H) we ~d them to return home immediately 4. (L ; may have an object) she ~d (us) that the manuscript had arrived 5. (Q ; may have an object) they ~d (us) where to meet

1 **I bet that our team will win.**

____

2 **My friend said that she would attend.**

____

3 **My friend told that she would attend**

____

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

4 **The dean informed that the examination had been postponed.**

____

5 **The experiment showed that our theory was correct.**

____

6 **The principal promised that a fire drill would be conducted.**

____

7 **They decided that they would remain at home.**

____

8 **I reminded that he would have to pay the bill.**

____

9 **We convinced that they should leave at once.**

____

10 **The government warned that it would take severe measures.**

____

11 **Their religion teaches that the way to overcome suffering is through understanding its causes.**

____

12 **The captain reassured that there was no damage to the plane.**

____

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

UNIT 6

Verb collocations *(continued)*

Exercise 6-A

In each of the following pairs of sentences, one sentence contains a verb that can be followed by an indirect object preceded by *to*. Use the BBI to identify the verbs which may be followed by an indirect object and add an appropriate phrase with *to*. Hint: Look for the verb pattern (**L;to**) in the BBI.

Examples

1 He confessed that he had lied.

He confessed to us that he had lied.

The BBI entry for **confess** contains the verb pattern (L;to), so an indirect object is possible here.

> **confess** *v.* 1. to ~ frankly, honestly ; publicly ; voluntarily, willingly 2. (B) he ~ed his crime to the police 3. (D ; intr.) to ~ to (to ~ to a crime ; to ~ to the police ; he ~ed to cheating on the exam ; he ~ed to having been bored by the opera) 4. (L ; to) he ~ed (to the police) that he had committed a crime ; I must ~ I was bored by the opera

2 We demanded that he help us.

No change

The BBI entry for **demand** shows that it is a Type L verb, but one which does not take an indirect object.

> **demand II** *v.* 1. (D ; tr.) to ~ from, of (to ~ an apology from smb.) 2. (E) she ~s to be kept informed of everything 3. (L ; subj.) she ~s that she be / should be kept informed of everything

1 **They admitted that I was right.**

____

They agreed that I was right.

____

2 **She believed that he would return.**

____

She hinted that he would return.

____

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

3 He boasted that he had committed a crime.

____

He realized that he had committed a crime.

____

4 She mentioned that she would be late.

____

She thought that she would be late.

____

5 The witnesses knew that they would tell the truth.

____

The witnesses swore that they would tell the truth.

____

6 He foresaw that prices would drop.

____

He said that prices would drop.

____

7 This document proves that you are telling the truth.

____

This document shows that you are telling the truth.

____

8 We move that an apology be printed on the front page.

____

We propose that an apology be printed on the front page.

____

9 She implied that she knew more than she was saying.

____

We inferred that she knew more than she was saying.

____

10 They are assuming that the bill will be defeated in the Senate.

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

____

They are suggesting that the bill will be defeated in the Senate.

____

11 He intimated that the manager would resign.

____

He hoped that the manager would resign.

____

12 I promise that my English will improve.

____

I vow that my English will improve.

____

Exercise 6-B

In six of the following 12 sentences, the infinitive *to be* may be inserted. Use the BBI to find which verbs collocate with *to be*, then rewrite those sentences with *to be*. Hint: Check the BBI to see whether the verbs are of TypeM.

Examples

1 We consider her very well qualified.

We consider her to be very well qualified.

In the BBI, **consider** is listed as a Type M verb.

2 She dyed her hair red.

No change

However, **dye** is listed as a Type N verb, which does not allow *to be*. It is not listed as a Type M verb.

1 The children nicknamed her Tiny.

____

2 They found London a fascinating city.

____

3 We must presume her innocent.

4 Have you heard the aria sung in Italian?

5 The evidence proved him guilty.

6 We saw the play performed in New York.

7 They buried her alive.

8 The child licked the plate clean.

9 The medical board officially pronounced him unfit for service.

10 The patrol reported the fire burning out of control.

11 The Supreme Court declared the law unconstitutional.

12 Call me Terry.

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

Exercise 6-C

In seven of the following sentences, constructions with the prepositions *to* or *for* are possible. In the other five sentences, no such constructions are possible. Rewrite the sentences containing verbs that can take *to* or *for*. Hint: Check in the BBI for Type O verbs; they take two or more objects and cannot be followed by *to* or *for*. Type A verbs can be followed by *to* and Type C verbs can be followed by *for*.

Examples

1 She tipped the waiter five dollars.

No change

The BBI lists **tip** as a Type O verb, which cannot be followed by *to* or *for*.

> **tip II** *v.* 1. to ~ generously, handsomely, liberally 2. (O) I ~ped the waitress (five dollars)

2 She sent her mother two hundred dollars.

She sent two hundred dollars to her mother.

However, the BBI lists send in this sense as a Type A verb, which may be followed by *to*.

> **send** *v.* 1. (A) we sent the manuscript to her ; or : we sent her the manuscript ...

1 **The children asked us a question.**

____

2 **The children sang us a song.**

____

3 **He owed his brother ten pounds.**

____

4 **He bet his brother ten pounds.**

____

5 **They envied us our new house.**

____

6 **They sold us our new house.**

____

7 **The police fined her twenty dollars.**

____

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

8 **The police offered her twenty dollars.**

____

9 **She baked me a cake.**

____

10 **He bought her a book.**

____

11 **I whacked him one on the nose.**

____

12 **I called him a taxi.**

____

Exercise 6-D

In each of the following pairs of sentences, one sentence is incomplete. Use the BBI to identify the incomplete sentence and complete it by adding an adverbial. Hint: Check in the BBI for Type P verbs; they must be followed by an adverbial. Adverbials (including prepositional phrases) must also follow Type d verbs.

> **Examples**
>
> 1 The enemy sneaked _through our lines_____
>
> According to the BBI, **sneak** is a Type P verb, which *must* be followed by an adverbial:
>
> **sneak** *v.* (P ; intr., tr.) they ~ed into the theater ; they ~ed their friends into the theater ; to ~ around in the bushes (see also *sneak a glance* at **glance I** *n.*)
>
> 2 The workers struck _No change________
>
> However, **strike** in the sense of 'refuse to work' is listed as a Type D intransitive verb, which does not need to· be followed by an adverbial.

1 **He carried himself** ______________________________

He hated himself ______________________________

2 **She is doing** ______________________________

She is succeeding ______________________________

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

3 I stopped the car ____________________

I backed the car ____________________

4 The child dropped the books ____________________

The child put the books ____________________

5 The soldiers were advancing ____________________

The soldiers were inching ____________________

6 She bore herself ____________________

She deceived herself ____________________

7 I will lay the book ____________________

I will read the book ____________________

8 The thief lurked ____________________

The thief ran ____________________

9 The trunk fell ____________________

The trunk weighed ____________________

10 He scratched his head ____________________

He poked his head ____________________

11 The hikers tramped ____________________

The hikers marched ____________________

12 They saddled the horse ____________________

They saddled us ____________________

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

Exercise 6-E

In each of the following pairs of verb + adverb phrases, only one of the phrases is an acceptable collocation. Use the BBI to identify the acceptable collocations, then underline them. Note that the other phrase in each pair is generally unacceptable in ordinary usage.

Example

thank heavily
thank profusely

The BBI entry for **thank** cites *thank profusely* but not *thank heavily*:

> **thank** *v.* 1. to ~ **profusely** ; **sincerely** 2. (D ; tr.) to ~ for (she ~ed me profusely for my help) 3. (H ; no passive) I'll ~ you to make less noise in the future ! 4. (L ; must have an object) we can ~ you that we got there on time = we have you to ~ that we got there on time 5. (misc.) ~ you very much !

1 **anchor firmly**
anchor potently

2 **appreciate forcefully**
appreciate sincerely

3 **argue heatedly**
argue mightily

4 **protest highly**
protest vigorously

5 **recommend highly**
recommend deeply

6 **apologize highly**
apologize humbly

7 **arrange tastefully**
arrange strongly

8 **forbid categorically**
forbid highly

9 **invite vehemently**
invite cordially

10 **resent bitterly**
resent wonderfully

11 **turn sharply**
turn deeply

12 **appreciate highly**
appreciate deeply

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

Exercise 6-F

Use the BBI to fill in the blanks in this passage. If no word is needed, do not write anything.

When Mary decided to give a party, she invited us to come. We dropped her a line to let her know that we could accept her invitation. We looked forward (1) ____to____ to the party very much, and we put off our work (2) __________ the next week. When the first guests arrived, Mary was looking (3) __________ the window. The guests walked (4) __________ the living room. A few of them began (5) __________ look (6) __________ cold drinks. Several guests wanted (7) __________ dance; some knew (8) __________ to dance very well. At dinner, some of the guests gossiped (9) __________ people who were not there. It upsets me (10) __________ hear people gossip. Other guests spoke (11) politics. I spoke (12) __________ nobody; I was very hungry and was busy eating. Mary asked us (13) __________ come again next month. We assured (14) __________ that we would do so. We thanked Mary (15) __________ her hospitality and went home. We recommend Mary's parties (16) __________ everyone very (17) ________________________. Relaxing with friends at a party can help us (18) ________________________ forget our problems.

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

UNIT 7

Supplementary exercises

Fill in the blanks in the following four exercises. If a verb is to be added, put it in the past tense. If no insertion is necessary, do not write anything.

Exercise 7-A

A Day in Court

Yesterday I attended a trial. The accused had been indicted (1) ____for______ larceny. Several years earlier he had been convicted (2) __________ fraud. He had two accomplices. One was charged (3) __________ possession of stolen goods. The other was accused (4) __________obstructing justice. The trial was (5) __________ in a municipal court. An experienced judge (6) __________ the case. Six people served (7) __________ the jury. Citing lack of evidence, the defendant's lawyer asked the judge to (8) __________ the case. When the judge refused, the lawyer (9) __________ a plea of not guilty.

Several defense witnesses (10) __________ testimony. Witnesses must (11) __________ an oath to (12) __________the truth. When witnesses lie (13) __________ oath, they (14) __________ perjury. The witnesses tried to (15) __________ a(n) (16) __________ alibi for the accused. The prosecutor then (17) the same witnesses, trying to disprove the defendant's alibi.

Because of the (18) __________ publicity concerning the case, the judge decided to isolate, that is, to (19) __________ the jury. However, the jury very quickly (20) __________ a verdict of not guilty and filed back (21) __________ the courtroom. When the foreman of the jury (22) __________ the verdict, the accused shook hands (23) __________ his lawyer and congratulated him (24) __________ his successful defense. In our country juries often (25) __________ verdicts of not guilty.

The BBI Combinatory Dictionary of English: Your guide to collocations and grammar
© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

Exercise 7-B

A Visit to the Doctor

I did not feel well and went to see the doctor. She asked me what was wrong. I explained (1) __to__ her that I (2) ________ a cold. The doctor did a physical examination, (3) ________ a diagnosis, and (4) ________ (a) medication. A pharmacist had to (5) ________ the prescription. This medication is sold (6) ________ prescription (7) ________ . She told me to (8) ________the medication twice a day. The medication is reported to be very effective (9) ________the common cold. The doctor also (10) ________ me some advice. She said that I was allergic (11) ________ certain types of meat and should not eat them. She suggested that I (12) ________ a warm bath once a day in order to relax. She also urged me to (13) ________ calisthenics every morning and (14) ________ a long walk every afternoon.

Last year one of my friends was (15) ________ hospital. The doctor decided to (16) ________ an X-ray of his back. The nurses (17) ________ him an injection every day. The nurses were always friendly (18) ________ the patients. When my friend did not respond (19) ________ treatment, the doctor decided to (20) ________ several tests (21) ________ him. It was discovered that my friend had (22) ________ blood pressure or hypertension. He would have to (23) ________ a pill once a day and (24) ________ a low-salt diet. The doctor (25) ________ rounds every morning. She often (26) ________jokes in order to make the patients laugh. When my friend recovered, he went back (27) ________ work. He wrote a letter (28) ________ the doctor in order to (29) ________ his gratitude (30) ________ her help.

Exercise 7-C

A Flight to London

We had to fly from New York to London. We bought the tickets (1) __from__ our travel agent. The tickets were sold (2) ________a discount. When we got (3) ________ the airport, we checked our suitcases (4) ________ to London. When we boarded the plane, we (5) ________our seats and began to read some newspapers. They were full (6) ________ interesting news (7) ________the

The BBI Combinatory Dictionary of English: Your guide to collocations and grammar
© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

latest happenings in Europe. After the plane took off and (8) __________its cruising altitude, a meal was (9) __________ by the flight attendants. Then an excellent film was (10) __________. After the film, we (11) __________ breakfast. When the plane (12) __________ in London, all passengers had to (13) __________ customs. We had nothing to declare (14) __________ customs. Then we (15) __________ a taxi to our hotel. We checked (16) __________ the hotel, went to our room, and (17) __________ our bags. Then we went to the restaurant, sat down, and asked the waiter to (18) __________the menu. After some discussion, we (19) __________ our choice and (20) __________ our order. The food was delicious, and we (21) __________ the meal very much. When paying (22) __________ the dinner, we (23) __________ a generous tip for the waiter. I would recommend that restaurant (24) __________ anyone. We went back to our room, turned on the TV, and (25), __________ the news.

Exercise 7-D

My University Education

I first earned a bachelor's degree in mathematics. As a student, I (1) ___took___ several courses (2) __________ calculus and did research (3) __________ number theory. I (4) __________ several papers at conferences and succeeded (5) __________ publishing a paper in a well-known journal. The editor of the journal showed keen interest (6) __________my research. (7) __________ the strength of the published paper I was encouraged (8) __________ write up a longer report.

The report (9) __________ a profound impression on several specialists (10) __________ my field who urged me to apply for a scholarship leading (11) __________ the Ph.D degree (12) __________ computer science. I hoped (13) __________ my published research could serve (14) __________ a basis for my future doctoral dissertation. After I complete my studies, I plan to marry the man (15) __________ whom I'm engaged.

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

Postscript

Having completed the *Workbook*, you can now identify the various types of English collocations. Keep in mind that collocations can be found in the BBI in accordance with the following algorithm, that is, step-by-step procedure:

If there is a noun in the collocation, look under the noun; if there are two nouns; look under the second; if there is no noun, look under the adjective; if there is no adjective, look under the verb.

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

Answers to exercises

Unit 1: Using the BBI

Exercise 1-A

(1) noun
(2) adjective
(3) noun
(4) noun, verb
(5) noun
(6) verb
(7) adverb
(8) adjective
(9) adjective, noun, verb
(10) adverb
(11) adjective, noun
(12) noun

Exercise 1-B

(2) to play possum
(3) the chair restricted discussion to items on the official agenda
(4) to go forward with one's plans
(5) to angle for ... (she was angling for an invitation)
(6) to fly, pilot a jet
(7) to take the plunge
(8) 1. to come down with, contract, develop pneumonia 2. bronchial; viral pneumonia
(9) to engage in subversion
(10) subject to (subject to change)
(11) 1. to issue a subpoena 2. to serve a subpoena on 3. a subpoena to + info (he received a subpoena to appear in court in two weeks)
(12) 1. a first; second cousin; a first cousin once removed 2. a cousin to (she is a first cousin to the count) 3. kissing cousins

Exercise 1-C

(1) Synonymous
(2) Synonymous
(3) Synonymous
(4) Not synonymous
(5) Not synonymous
(6) Not synonymous
(7) Not synonymous
(8) Synonymous
(9) Not synonymous
(10) Synonymous
(11) Synonymous
(12) Not synonymous

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

Exercise 1-D

(2) especially
(3) infinitive
(4) intransitive
(5) mathematics
(6) miscellaneous
(7) obsolete
(8) occasionally
(9) reflexive
(10) Subjunctive
(11) transitive
(12) usually

Exercise 1-E

(1) BE,CE
(2) AE,BE
(3) AE,CE
(4) BE,AE
(5) BE,AE
(6) CE, esp. BE
(7) BE,CE
(8) AE,CE
(9) AE,BE
(10) BE,esp. AE
(11) BE,AE
(12) AE,BE

Unit 2: Collocations, Free combinations, and Idioms

Exercise 2-A

(1) bitter complains -- Collocation
recent complaints -- Free combination
(2) expensive dictionary -- Free combination
bilingual dictionary -- Collocation
(3) hit children -- Free combination
hit a snag -- Collocation
(4) need ... badly -- Collocation
need ... now -- Free combination
(5) debug this program -- Collocation
bought a program -- Free combination
(6) filed a report -- Collocation
lost your report -- Free combination
(7) committed suicide -- Collocation
detest suicide -- Free combination
(8) operate a tractor -- Collocation
sell a tractor -- Free combination
(9) declared war -- Collocation
hated the war -- Free combination
(10) borrow your watch -- Free combination
set your watch -- Collocation
(11) amusement park -- Collocation

big park -- Free combination
(12) interesting evidence -- Free combination
conclusive evidence -- Collocation

Exercise 2-B

(1) Collocation
(2) Idiom
(3) Idiom
(4) Collocation
(5) Collocation
(6) Idiom
(7) Idiom
(8) Idiom
(9) Collocation
(10) Idiom
(11) Collocation
(12) Collocation

Unit 3: Noun collocations

Exercise 3-A

(1) by accident, accident
(2) asked ... questions, question I
(3) drives an ... car, car
(4) chronic alcoholic, alcoholic
(5) bees ... sting, bee I
(6) flock of sheep, sheep
(7) a pleasure to ..., pleasure
(8) the story that ..., story I
(9) an expert on, expert II
(10) aptitude test, test I
(11) on a stretcher, stretcher
(12) solved the case, case I

Exercise 3-B

(1) to
(2) enlarge
(3) set
(4) herd
(5) down
(6) in
(7) at
(8) taken
(9) to
(10) break down, force
(11) override
(12) draw

Exercise 3-C

(1) CORRECT
(2) My friends sent *warm greetings.*
(3) The pupils *did their homework.*
(4) CORRECT
(5) CORRECT
(8) CORRECT
(9) CORRECT
(10) The actor *took his bow.*
(11) CORRECT
(12) After ten days we *got off the train* in Moscow.

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

(6) The campers were *paddling a canoe*.
(7) CORRECT

Exercise 3-D

(1) The story was printed in *screaming headlines*.
(2) The government's proposal has *aroused/stirred up antagonism*.
(3) They lived in *abject/dire/extreme/grindirig/severe poverty*.
(4) The argument *broke up/destroyed our friendship*.
(5) The *epidemic broke out* about ten years ago.
(6) Our university *awarded an honorary degree to* the mayor; ... *conferred an honorary degree on* the mayor.
(7) The fortune-teller *read my horoscope*.
(8) You shouldn't *keep a dog* in a small apartment.
(9) I'm willing to *take a cut* in salary if the new job is interesting.
(10) We win *hold the conference* in Tokyo.
(11) The judge *suspended my hunting license* for 12 months.
(12) He *compiled/made up a bibliography* of articles relating to computer-assisted instruction.

Unit 4: Adjective collocations

Exercise 4-A

(1) of
(2) with
(3) of
(4) about
(5) from
(6) with
(7) on
(8) for
(9) with
(10) against
(11) about
(12) for

Exercise 4-B

(1) to
(2) for
(3) in
(4) with
(5) in
(6) to
(7) with
(8) on
(9) to
(10) of
(11) for
(12) from, than (AE), to (BE)

Exercise 4-C

(1) I am aware that ...
(2) It was sad to ...
It was sad that ...
(3) She was happy to
She was happy that ...
(4) He was bound to ...
(5) We were furious to ...
We were furious that ...
(6) I was not able to ...
(7) We were prepared to ...
(8) It is frustrating to ...
It is frustrating that ...
(9) The plan is doomed to ...
(10) My father is apt to ...
(11) It is arguable that ...
(12) We were satisfied to ....
We were satisfied that ...

Exercise 4-D

(1) fiercely, keenly
(2) densely, heavily
(3) chronically, hopelessly
(4) eminently, fully, highly, well-
(5) bitter, bitterly
(6) hard, solid
(7) dripping, soaking
(8) humanly
(9) highly
(10) stark
(11) highly, well-; poorly
(12) thoroughly

Exercise 4-E

(1) CORRECT
(2) CORRECT
(3) Sally was easy to please.
(4) CORRECT
(5) CORRECT
(6) Their behavior was highly provocative.
(7) Remaining silent was tantamount to giving consent.
(8) CORRECT
(9) They are eligible to vote
(10) CORRECT
(11) CORRECT
(12) she was angry at/with everyone

Unit 5: Verb collocations

Exercise 5-A

(1) circulated a petition -- Noun collocation
petitioned for -- Verb collocation
(2) filed a protest -- Noun collocation
protested against -- Verb collocation
(3) release ... from -- Verb collocation
Her release from -- Noun collocation

(4) spread gossip -- Noun collocation
gossip about -- Verb collocation
(5) revoke our permit -- Noun collocation
permit us to leave -- Verb collocation
(6) Bees swarm -- Noun collocation
swarm around -- Verb collocation
(7) raised doubts -- Noun collocation
doubt that -- Verb collocation
(8) pay a fine -- Noun collocation
fined for -- Verb collocation
(9) answer for -- Verb collocation
give an answer -- Noun collocation
(10) evoke a response -- Noun collocation
responded by -- Verb collocation
(11) resulted in -- Verb collocation
produced ... results -- Noun collocation
(12) It angered me that -- Verb collocation
... show ... anger -- Noun collocation

Exercise 5-B

(1) He addressed his comments to us
(2) CORRECT
(3) CORRECT
(4) She revealed a secret to me
(5) CORRECT
(6) CORRECT
(7) CORRECT
(8) The doctor described the facts to us
(9) The engineer presented the plan to them
(10) You must submit your application to us
(11) The commission reported their findings to the President
(12) CORRECT

Exercise 5-C

(1) I referred the problem to ...
(2) CORRECT
(3) We had to abide by ...
(4) CORRECT
(5) CORRECT
(6) CORRECT
(7) The facts pertained to ...
(8) They inveigled me into ...
(9) CORRECT
(10) They based their argument on/upon...
(11) The committee consists of ...
(12) CORRECT

Exercise 5-D

(1) to remain
(7) going

(2) to negotiate
(3) complain
(4) talking
(5) being punished
(6) to retire
(8) to visit
(9) to wait, waiting
(10) walking
(11) painting, (also: to be painted)
(12) come

Exercise 5-E

(1) leave, leaving
(2) waiting
(3) to resign
(4) to get up
(5) get up
(6) him doing, his doing
(7) to apply
(8) to help
(9) beat, beating
(10) rehearsing
(11) get off
(12) you turning off, your turning off

Exercise 5-F

(1) CORRECT
(2) CORRECT
(3) My friend told me/us that she would attend.
(4) The dean informed us/the students that the examination had been postponed.
(5) CORRECT
(6) CORRECT
(7) CORRECT
(8) I reminded him that he would have to pay the bill.
(9) We convinced them that they should leave at once.
(10) CORRECT
(11) CORRECT
(12) The captain reassured us that there was no damage to the plane.

Unit 6: Verb collocations (continued)

Exercise 6-A

(1) They admitted *to* ... that I was right.
(2) She hinted *to* ... that he would return.
(3) He boasted *to* ... that he had committed a crime.
(4) She mentioned *to* ... that she would be late.
(5) The witnesses swore *to* ... that they would tell the truth.
(6) He said *to* ... that prices would drop.
(7) This document proves *to* ... that you are telling the truth.
(8) We propose *to* ... that an apology be printed on the front page.

(9) She implied *to* ... that she knew more than she was saying.
(10) They are suggesting *to* ... that the bill will be defeated in the Senate.
(11) He intimated *to* ... that the manager would resign.
(12) I vow *to* ... that my English will improve.

Exercise 6-B

(1) NO CHANGE
(2) They found London to be a fascinating city.
(3) We must presume her to be innocent.
(4) NO CHANGE
(5) The evidence proved him to be guilty.
(6) NO CHANGE
(7) NO CHANGE
(8) NO CHANGE
(9) The medical board officially pronounced him to be unfit for service.
(10) The patrol reported the fire to be burning out of control.
(11) The Supreme Court declared the law to be unconstitutional.
(12) NO CHANGE

Exercise 6-C

(1) NO CHANGE
(2) The children sang a song tolfor us.
(3) He owed ten pounds to his brother.
(4) NO CHANGE
(5) NO CHANGE
(6) They sold our new house to us.
(7) NO CHANGE
(8) The police offered twenty dollars to her.
(9) She baked a cake for me.
(10) He bought a book for her.
(11) NO CHANGE
(12) I called a taxi for him.

Exercise 6-D

The following sentences are incomplete:
(1) He carried himself (with dignity).
(2) She is doing (well).
(3) I backed the car (into the garage).

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

(4) The child put the books (on the shelf).
(5) The soldiers were inching (forward).
(6) She bore herself (proudly).
(7) I will lay the book (down).
(8) The thieflurked (in the darkness).
(9) The trunk weighed (200 pounds).
(10) He poked his head (round the comer).
(11) The hikers tramped (through the woods).
(12) They saddled us (with an unpleasant task).

Exercise 6-E

(1) anchor firmly
(2) appreciate sincerely
(3) argue heatedly
(4) protest vigorously
(5) recommend highly
(6) apologize humbly
(7) arrange tastefully
(8) forbid categorically
(9) invite cordially
(10) resent bitterly
(11) turn sharply
(12) appreciate deeply

Exercise 6-F

(2) until, till
(3) out (AE), out of
(4) into
(5) to
(6) for
(7) to
(8) how
(9) about
(10) to
(11) about
(12) to, with
(13) to
(14) her
(15) for
(16) to
(17) enthusiastically, highly, strongly
(18) to, *no addition*

Unit 7: Supplementary exercises

Exercise 7-A

(2) of
(3) with
(4) of
(5) held
(6) heard, tried
(7) on
(8) dismiss, throw out
(15) establish; provide
(16) airtight, foolproof, unassailable,
no addition
(17) cross-examined
(18) extensive, wide, no addition
(19) sequester
(20) arrived at, reached

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

(9) entered
(10) gave, offered
(11) take
(12) tell
(13) under
(14) commit render, return
(21) into
(22) announ.ced
(23) with
(24) on
(25) bring in, deliver, hand down

Exercise 7-B

(2) had
(3) made
(4) prescribed
(5) fill (AE), make up
(6) by
(7) only, no addition
(8) take
(9) against
(10) gave
(11) to
(12) (should) have (BE), take
(13) do
(14) take
(15) in (BE), in the (AE)
(16) do (colloq.), make, take
(17) gave
(18) towards, with
(19) to
(20) carry out, conduct, do, run
(21) on
(22) high
(23) take
(24) be on, follow, stick to; go on
(25) made
(26) cracked, told
(27) to
(28) to
(29) express
(30) for

Exercise 7-C

(2) at
(3) to
(4) through
(5) took
(6) of
(7) about
(8) reached
(9) served
(10) shown
(11) ate, had
(12) landed
(13) clear, get through, gp through
pass through
(14) at
(15) took
(16) into
(17) unpacked
(18) bring
(19) made
(20) gave, placed
(21) enjoyed
(22) for
(23) left
(24) to
(25) watched

© 2010 John Benjamins Publishing Company, Robert Ilson and Evelyn Benson

Exercise 7-D

(2) in, on

(3) on

(4) delivered, gave, offered, presented, read

(5) in

(6) in

(7) On

(8) to

(9) made

(10) in

(11) to

(12) in

(13) that, *no addition*

(14) as

(15) to

Short Forms and Symbols Used in the Dictionary

adj	adjective	**pl.**	plural
AmE	American English	**sb**	somebody
BrE	British English	**sing**	singular
C	countable noun	**sth**	something
etc.	et cetera (= and so on)	**U**	uncountable noun
n	noun		

See also p x for an explanation of the abbreviations used in the grammar patterns.

Symbols Used in the Dictionary

SUBJ	shows common subjects of the phrasal verb
OBJ	shows common objects of the phrasal verb
SYN	shows a verb with a similar meaning
OPP	shows a verb with the opposite meaning
NOTE	introduces a note on grammar or usage
Ⓖ	shows the grammar patterns of the phrasal verb
IDM	idiom(s) section of the entry
▶	derivative section of the entry
→	means 'look at'
~	replaces the key verb in a menu box
⚠	taboo (see Labels below)

Oxford Phrasal Verbs Dictionary

for learners of English

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS
Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,
and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Bangkok Buenos Aires Cape Town Chennai
Dar es Salaam Delhi Hong Kong Istanbul Karachi Kolkata
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Mumbai Nairobi
São Paulo Shanghai Singapore Taipei Tokyo Toronto

with an associated company in Berlin

Oxford and Oxford English are registered trade marks of
Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2001
Database right Oxford University Press (maker)
First published 2001
Second impression 2002

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press (with the sole exception of photocopying carried out under the conditions stated in the paragraph headed 'Photocopying'), or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

This dictionary includes some words which have or are asserted to have proprietary status as trademarks or otherwise. Their inclusion does not imply that they have acquired for legal purposes a non-proprietary or general significance nor any other judgement concerning their legal status. In cases where the editorial staff have some evidence that a word has proprietary status this is indicated in the entry for that word but no judgement concerning the legal status of such words is made or implied thereby

Photocopying
The Publisher grants permission for the photocopying of those pages marked 'photocopiable' according to the following conditions. Individual purchasers may make copies for their own use or for use by classes that they teach. School purchasers may make copies for use by staff and students, but this permission does not extend to additional schools or branches. Under no circumstances may any part of this book be photocopied for resale

ISBN 0-19-431543-6
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

Acknowledgements

Advisory Board: Dr Keith Brown; Dr Alan Cruse; Ms Moira Runcie;
Prof. Gabriele Stein; Dr Norman Whitney; Prof. Henry Widdowson

Phonetics editor: Michael Ashby
Guide to the Particles: Graham Workman

A-Z pages designed by Peter Burgess
Non A-Z pages designed by Sarah Nicholson
Cover design by Richard Morris

Data capture and processing by Oxford University Press
Printed in Spain

CONTENTS

Short forms and symbols used in the dictionary — inside front cover
Labels used in the dictionary — iv
Key to the dictionary entries — v
Guide to using the dictionary — vi

Dictionary A-Z — **1-348**

STUDY PAGES — between pages 182-3
- Tips on learning phrasal verbs — S2-4
- Phrasal verb or single word? — S5
- Are you a natural born student? — S 6-7
- Sport — S 8-9
- Computers — S10
- Environmental problems — S11
- Phrasal verbs in newspapers — S12
- Phrasal verbs in business — S13
- Phrasal verbs in informal language — S14-15
- Using phrasal verbs in writing — S16-17
- Using phrasal verbs in the passive — S18-19
- New phrasal verbs — S20-21
- The most common phrasal verbs — S22-25
- Test yourself — S26

Guide to the particles — 349-71

Key to the study pages — 372-7

Pronunciation — inside back cover

Labels Used in the Dictionary

AmE	describes verbs, expressions, spellings and pronunciations used in American English and not in British English, for example *beat on sb, blimp out/up, duke it out.*
approving	verbs show that you feel approval or admiration.
BrE	describes verbs, expressions, spellings and pronunciations that are mainly used in British English and not in American English, for example *beaver away* (*at sth*), *doss down, put* (*the clocks*) *back.*
disapproving	verbs show that you feel disapproval or contempt, for example *dumb sth down, flash sth about.*
figurative	a figurative example is one in which language is used in a non-literal or metaphorical way, as in *His anger blazed up* (= suddenly became very strong) *uncontrollably.*
formal	verbs are usually only used in serious or official language and would not be appropriate in normal everyday conversation. Examples are *abide by sth, embark on/upon sth, vie for sth.*
humorous	expressions are intended to be funny, for example *toddle off* and *We've rounded up some good speakers for the conference.*
informal	verbs are used between friends or in a relaxed or unofficial situation. They are not appropriate for formal situations. Examples are *bang on about sth, kick back, tuck into sth.*
less formal	synonyms are verbs that have a similar meaning to the main phrasal verb, but are used in less official situations or are more common in normal everyday conversation.
less frequent	verbs or grammar patterns are not used as often as the main phrasal verb or the other grammar patterns given.
literary	verbs are used mainly in literature and imaginative writing. Examples are *yearn for sb/sth, eke out sth.*
more formal	verbs have a similar meaning to the main phrasal verb, but are usually used in more serious or official situations, or in a less casual way.
old-fashioned	verbs are passing out of current use, for example, *buck up, gad about/around, run along.*
rare	verbs or grammar patterns are not commonly used.
slang	is very informal language, mainly used in speaking and sometimes restricted to a particular group of people, for example people of the same age or those who have similar interests or do the same job. Examples are *want in, want into sth, juice sth up.*
spoken	verbs are used mainly in informal conversations, for example *Tea's up! chuck sth out.*
taboo	verbs and expressions are likely to be thought by many people to be obscene or shocking and you should avoid using them.
written	verbs are used mainly in written language, for example *abound in/with sth, spring from sth.*

Key to the Dictionary Entries

Information in the dictionary is given in **entries**, arranged in the alphabetical order of the key words and then in the alphabetical order of the particles.

Main parts of an entry

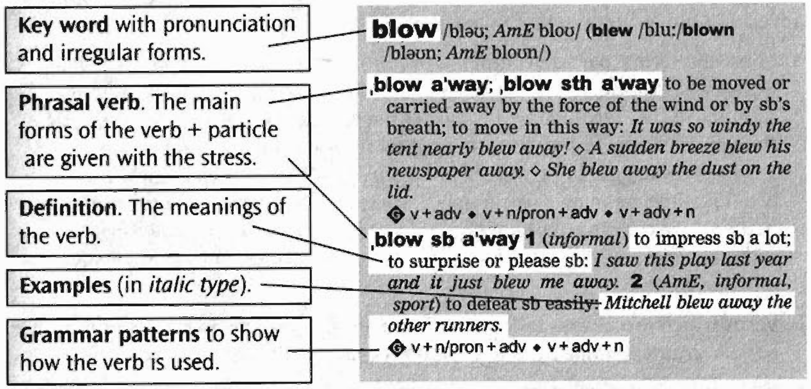

Key word with pronunciation and irregular forms.

Phrasal verb. The main forms of the verb + particle are given with the stress.

Definition. The meanings of the verb.

Examples (in *italic type*).

Grammar patterns to show how the verb is used.

blow /bləʊ; *AmE* bloʊ/ (**blew** /bluː/**blown** /bləʊn; *AmE* bloʊn/)

ˌblow aˈway; **ˌblow sth aˈway** to be moved or carried away by the force of the wind or by sb's breath; to move in this way: *It was so windy the tent nearly blew away!* ◇ *A sudden breeze blew his newspaper away.* ◇ *She blew away the dust on the lid.*

Ⓖ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌblow sb aˈway 1 (*informal*) to impress sb a lot; to surprise or please sb: *I saw this play last year and it just blew me away.* **2** (*AmE, informal, sport*) to defeat sb easily: *Mitchell blew away the other runners.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

Further information in an entry

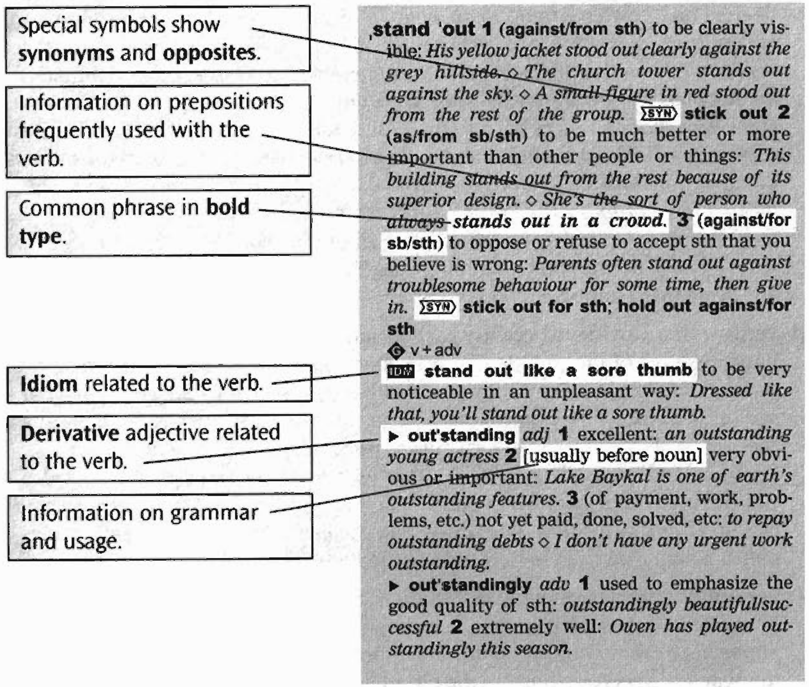

Special symbols show **synonyms** and **opposites**.

Information on prepositions frequently used with the verb.

Common phrase in **bold type**.

Idiom related to the verb.

Derivative adjective related to the verb.

Information on grammar and usage.

ˌstand ˈout 1 **(against/from sth)** to be clearly visible: *His yellow jacket stood out clearly against the grey hillside.* ◇ *The church tower stands out against the sky.* ◇ *A small figure in red stood out from the rest of the group.* SYN **stick out 2** **(as/from sb/sth)** to be much better or more important than other people or things: *This building stands out from the rest because of its superior design.* ◇ *She's the sort of person who always **stands out in a crowd**.* **3** **(against/for sb/sth)** to oppose or refuse to accept sth that you believe is wrong: *Parents often stand out against troublesome behaviour for some time, then give in.* SYN **stick out for sth; hold out against/for sth**

Ⓖ v + adv

IDM **stand out like a sore thumb** to be very noticeable in an unpleasant way: *Dressed like that, you'll stand out like a sore thumb.*

▸ **outˈstanding** *adj* **1** excellent: *an outstanding young actress* **2** [usually before noun] very obvious or important: *Lake Baykal is one of earth's outstanding features.* **3** (of payment, work, problems, etc.) not yet paid, done, solved, etc: *to repay outstanding debts* ◇ *I don't have any urgent work outstanding.*

▸ **outˈstandingly** *adv* **1** used to emphasize the good quality of sth: *outstandingly beautiful/successful* **2** extremely well: *Owen has played outstandingly this season.*

GUIDE to USING the DICTIONARY

Finding Verbs in the dictionary

1 What is in the dictionary?

In this dictionary we include several different types of verbs that are used with adverbs or prepositions, (often called 'particles').

a **Idiomatic verb + particle combinations**. Sometimes when you meet combinations of verb and particle, it is impossible to guess the meaning in the context from the meaning of the verb and the meaning of the particle. Examples of these are ***fall through*** (meaning *'not happen'*) and ***put up with somebody*** (meaning *'accept somebody who is annoying without complaining'*). There is often a single-word verb with the same meaning. For example, instead of *'The meeting was **put off** until the next day'*, we could say *'The meeting was postponed until the next day'.* Single-word verbs, however, may be more formal than the phrasal verb, or used in slightly different contexts.

b **Verbs which are always followed by a particular particle**. Examples of these are ***rely on***, ***crop up***, ***abide by***. These cannot be used without the particle.

c **Verbs that are followed by a particle in a particular meaning**. These verbs can be used on their own without a particle, but have a different meaning when they are used with one. ***Brush sth up*** is an example of a verb like this. ***Brush sth*** can be used on its own meaning *'clean, polish or make sth smooth'*. ***Brush sth up*** means *'study or practise sth to get back the skill or knowledge that you had in the past': You should brush up your French before you go to France.* Other examples are ***nod/nod off***, ***grow/grow up***, ***walk/walk out***.
Many very common verbs fall into this group. ***Look***, for example, can be used with several different particles, and it has a special meaning with each one that is different from ***look*** on its own. ***Look up** the word in your dictionary.* ◇ *I'm really **looking forward to** the trip.* ◇ ***Look out!** There's a car coming.*
Some more formal verbs also fall into this group. For example you can *'**furnish** a room'*, that is, put furniture in it, but if you *'**furnish** somebody **with** something'* you are giving them some useful information.

d **Verbs with a particle, where the particle adds to, but does not change, the basic meaning of the verb**. The particle often adds something to the meaning, such as completeness. For example, you can say *'I'll **finish** my work and then I'll go out'* or *'I'll **finish off** my work and then I'll go out.'* ***Finish off*** emphasizes that you are completing your work. Another example is ***wake/wake up***. You can either say *'I woke at 6.30'* or *'I woke up at 6.30.'* ***Woke up*** is much more common than ***woke***, which is used more in formal or written English. Other examples are ***spread/spread out***, ***fade/fade away***, ***slave/slave away***. You will find more information about the meaning of the particles in the **Guide to the Particles** at the back of the dictionary.

e **Verbs plus particles where each has their normal meaning**. ***Phone back*** (meaning *'telephone sb again'*) is an example of a verb like this. The meaning of ***phone back*** can be worked out from the meaning of ***phone*** and ***back***. Verbs of this type have been included in the dictionary where the combination of verb and particle are very common, or where there is something unusual or interesting about the verb. For example, ***phone back*** can mean two slightly different things (*'telephone somebody who has called you'*, or *'telephone sb for a second time'*); ***pin sth up*** means *'fasten something to a wall with pins'*, but there is also a noun ***pin-up***, meaning *'a picture of an attractive person designed to be put up on a wall for people to look at'*, or *'the person who appears in a picture like that'*.

All these types of verbs can cause problems for learners, and so they have been included in this dictionary.

2 Particles

These are the particles used with phrasal verbs in this dictionary. The * shows you which are the most common. You will find more information about those particles in the **Guide to Particles** at the back of the dictionary.

aback	*about	above	across	after	against	ahead	ahead of
along	among	apart	*around	as	aside	*at	*away
*back	before	behind	between	by	*down	*for	forth
forward	from	*in	*into	*of	*off	*on	onto
*out	*out of	*over	past	*round	*through	*to	together
towards	under	*up	upon	*with	without		

3 Long verbs

Some verbs, such as ***come***, ***go***, ***put*** and ***take*** are used with many different particles.
In these cases you will find literal meanings of the verb plus particle included for completeness. These meanings can also help you understand the idiomatic uses of the verb plus particle. For example, at ***run around***, you will find the literal meaning *'run in different directions'* (*It's a lovely park to run around in*) as well as the idiomatic meaning *'move very quickly from place to place, being very busy'* (*I've been running around all day trying to organize the meeting.*).
At the beginning of many of these verbs you will find a menu box with a list of all the particles that can be used with the verb, in the order they appear in the dictionary.

These verbs are:

break	bring	call	come	cut	do	fall	get	give
go	hang	hold	keep	kick	knock	lie	live	look
make	move	pass	play	pull	push	put	run	send
set	sit	stand	stay	stick	take	talk	throw	turn

It is also possible to add many different particles to verbs of movement to create 'multi-word' verbs with literal meanings. For example, we can use the verb ***walk*** in these sentences: *We **walked down** the road.* ◇ *He **walked up to** me and asked me for a light.* ◇ *We sang as we **walked along**.* ◇ ***Walk across** the road, don't run.* These are straightforward combinations of verb and particles.

4 Finding the verb you want

The phrasal verbs are arranged in the dictionary under their key verbs (for example, **give**, **move**, **sit**) and then in alphabetical order of the particles. Within each particle you will first find the verb + particle, with no object. Then there are meanings of the verb that can be used both without an object and with an object. After that, there are meanings of the verb used only with an object, first verbs with people as objects (sb), then verbs that can have people or things (sb/sth) and then verbs with only things as objects (sth). Verbs with itself, yourself, etc. come at the end of those, and verbs that are only used in passive forms will be last. For example:

give up; give sth up
give sb up
give sth up
give yourself up

break in
break sb/sth in
break sth in
break into sth

put sb out
put sth out
put yourself out
be put out

Using Phrasal Verbs

1 The phrasal verb

The arrangement of the verbs in the dictionary will tell you whether they can be used without an object, (INTRANSITIVE), with an object (TRANSITIVE) or both with and without an object. Look at the beginning of the entry for ***break down***:

> **ˌbreak ˈdown 1** if a vehicle, etc. breaks down, it stops working because of a fault: *The washing machine has broken down again.* ◇ *We* (= our car) *broke down twice on the way home.* **2** if talks,

This shows you that in this meaning ***break down*** is an intransitive verb, used without an object: *My car **broke down** on the way to work this morning.* There are two forms of the verb at ***burn down***:

> **burn ˈdown; ˌburn sth ˈdown** if a building burns down, or sb burns it down, it is destroyed by fire: *The palace burnt down in the nineteenth century.* ◇ *She threatened to burn the house down.*

This shows you that you can use ***burn down*** as a transitive and an intransitive verb in this meaning. The definition also shows you how to use it. Look at the beginning of the entry for ***wake up***.

> **ˌwake ˈup; ˌwake sb ˈup; ˌwake yourself ˈup 1** to stop sleeping; to make sb stop sleeping: *How many times does the baby wake up in the night?* ◇ *I usually wake up early in the summer.* ◇ *You look as if you've only just woken up!* ◇ *Can you wake me up at 8?* ◇ *He was woken up by the sound of*

This tells you that you can use it as an intransitive verb (*What time did you **wake up** this morning?*), and as a transitive verb with an object (*I'll **wake you up** at 6.30.*) or with **yourself** (*I must have shouted so loudly while I was dreaming that **I woke myself up**.*) At ***keep out***, you will see:

> **ˌkeep ˈout; ˌkeep ˈout of sth** to not enter a place; to remain outside: *There was a sign saying 'Keep out!'.* ◇ *Please keep out of the office while I'm working.*
> ◈ v + adv • v + adv + prep

This tells you that in this meaning you can use the verb on its own (*Danger! **Keep out***) or as a transitive verb with the adverb + preposition **out of**, followed by a noun or pronoun (***Keep out of** my way*).

If the verb can also be used with an **-ing** form of a verb that follows it, this is given at the beginning:

> **ˌrush ˈinto sth; ˌrush ˈinto doing sth; ˌrush sb ˈinto doing sth** to do or decide sth quickly without thinking about it carefully; to make sb do this: *Don't go rushing into anything.* ◇ *You*

This tells you that all these sentences are possible: *Don't **rush into** anything.* ◇ *Don't **rush into leaving** your course.* ◇ *Don't **rush me into making** a decision.*

▶ More information about the grammar of phrasal verbs is given in the section on Grammar Patterns (page x)

2 Common subjects and objects

At the end of many of the verbs, or at the end of a numbered meaning, you will find some common subjects or objects. These show you the type of contexts that the verb is often used in, so that you can use it correctly yourself. For example, at ***break out***, you will see:

> **ˌbreak ˈout 1** if sth unpleasant such as a fire, a war, etc. breaks out, it starts suddenly: *They would have got married in 1939 if war had not broken out.* ◇ *A fire broke out on a ferry yesterday.* SUBJ **war, fire, fighting, row, violence** **2** (*also*

Sentences such as ***Fighting** has broken out on the border*; ***Fire broke out*** in a warehouse. ◇ *A furious **row broke out** over the ownership of the painting* are therefore very common and acceptable in English.

You can use these subjects and objects to help you use the verbs in the right context.

3 Synonyms and opposites.

When there are helpful synonyms or opposites, these are given in alphabetical order, synonyms and opposites that are phrasal verbs first and then single-word verbs. These will help you understand the verb and add to your vocabulary. Information is also given about the formality of the synonym or opposite and whether it is British or American. As the contexts that the synonyms are used in may not always be exactly the same as the original phrasal verb, it is worth looking them up in this dictionary or another dictionary to be sure that you understand them and how they are used. For example, while ***knock down*** can be used instead of ***break down*** in the examples given there, ***break down*** cannot always be used instead of ***knock down***.

> **ˌpull ˈin; ˌpull ˈinto sth 1** if a train or a bus pulls in, it arrives somewhere and stops: *The express pulled in on time.* ◇ *The coach pulled into bay 27.* **2** (*BrE*) if a vehicle or a driver pulls in, they move to the side of the road and stop: *Pull in in front of the bus.* ◇ *He pulled into the parking lot and turned off the engine.*
> SYN **draw in, draw into sth**
> OPP **pull out, pull out of sth**

✓ *They had to get the police to **break/knock** the door **down**.* ✓ *If you don't open up, I'm going to **knock/break** the door **down**.* ✓ *These old houses are going to be **knocked down**.* ✗ *These old houses are going to be **broken down**.*

4 Notes

Notes are given in two places. Before a definition you will find information about the tenses or a particular use of a phrasal verb:

> **be'long to sb** *(not used in the progressive tenses)* **1** to be the property of sb; to be owned by sb: *The house belonged to my cousin.* ◇ *That land belongs*

Notes are also given after the examples where there is a particular point of grammar or use to draw your attention to. This is often something about the passive, or where the verb without the particle can also be used with a similar meaning.

> **,blaze a'way 1 (at sb/sth)** if guns or people blaze away, the guns fire continuously: *The guns kept blazing away at the enemy.* **2** if a fire blazes away, it burns brightly
> NOTE Blaze is used with the same meanings.
> ◆ v + adv

5 Grammar patterns of phrasal verbs

To help you use the verbs correctly, a simple system of grammar patterns is given after each one. These show you how the verb combines with an adverb, a preposition, a noun or a pronoun, an infinitive, etc. and the order in which these words can occur. The short forms used are these:

adv = adverb
inf = infinitive (without 'to' e.g. do)
-ing = a verb form ending in -ing (e.g. doing)
n = noun
n/pron = noun or pronoun
prep = preposition
pron = pronoun
to inf = infinitive with 'to' (e.g. to do)
v = verb

Frequent patterns

The following are the most common types of verb patterns used in the dictionary.

v + adv Intransitive verbs, for example:

break down	*My car broke down this morning.*
hang around	*There was a group of kids hanging around outside.*
sit down	*Come in and sit down.*

v + prep These are verbs followed by a preposition. For example:

rely on sb/sth	*You can rely on me.*
call for sb	*I'll call for you at 8.*
come across sth	*I came across an interesting book in the library.*

v + adv + prep Some verbs are followed by an adverb and a preposition:

put up with sb/sth	*How do you put up with him?*
settle down to sth	*Come on children, settle down to work now.*
keep out of sth	*Keep out of the kitchen until I've finished cooking.*

These last two groups are sometimes called INSEPARABLE verbs as the object always follows the particle.

v + n/pron + adv **v + adv + n** **v + pron + adv**
These three patterns are all used with transitive verbs. In order to be able to use these verbs correctly, you need to know where to put the object. The patterns show you this. The most frequent patterns come first at each verb.

v + n/pron + adv **v + adv + n**
Verbs that can be used with these patterns , where the object can go either between the verb and the particle or after the particle, are sometimes called SEPARABLE verbs. They are shown in the dictionary as, for example, **tear sth up**:

*She **tore** the letter **up**.* *She **tore up** the letter.* *She **tore** it **up**.*

When the object is a long phrase, it usually comes after the particle: *She **tore up** all the letters he had sent her.*
When the object is a pronoun, it **must** come between the verb and the particle.

v + adv + n **v + pron + adv**
With some phrasal verbs the object can only come between the verb and the particle when it is a pronoun. A noun must follow the particle. They are given in the dictionary as, for example, **fight back sth; fight it/them back**

fight back sth	I tried to **fight back** my tears.
fight it/them back	I had an urge to scream but managed to **fight** it **back**.

v + n/pron + adv
There are a few phrasal verbs in which the two parts of the verb **must** be separated by the object. An example is **mess sb about/around**:

*They changed the flight time and **messed** all the passengers **around**.*

v + n/pron + prep
An example of a verb that is used in this pattern is **drill sth into sb**

drill sth into sb *The teacher **drilled** grammar **into** us right from the start.*

Passive

A few phrasal verbs are only used in the passive, for example: **be/get carried away**. The verb patterns will show you how to use these verbs. **be/get carried away** will have the pattern **be/get + v + adv**. **be/get stuck with sth** will have a pattern **be/get + verb + prep**.
Other phrasal verbs that are used with objects can also be used in the passive for example: *The deal **has been called off**.* Where this is common you will find an example of the passive and a note. Verbs with the pattern **v + prep** are not usually used in the passive. If they are, you will find a note about this (see **rely on sb/sth**).

Other patterns

You can easily work out how to use verbs with different patterns. For example, if you look at **take sb up on sth**, you will see the pattern **v + n/pron + adv + prep**. This shows you that the verb is used in sentences like this:

*I'd like to **take you up on** your offer of a bed for the night.*
v + pron + adv + prep

At **set out**, you will see the pattern **v + adv + to inf**. This describes sentences such as: *He **set out to become** a millionaire by the time he was thirty.*
Boom out sth has two patterns:

v + adv + n	*She boomed out instructions.*
v + adv + speech	*A voice boomed out, 'Nobody move!'*

6 Building your vocabulary

Idioms

Many phrasal verbs have idioms related to them. You will find these immediately after the grammar patterns. The idioms in the dictionary are ones that are related in some way to the meaning of the phrasal verb where you find them. For example:

ˌbite sth 'off to cut sth off by biting it: *She bit off a piece of chocolate.* ◇ *His finger had been bitten off by a dog.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

IDM **bite/snap sb's 'head off** (*informal*) to shout at sb or speak to them angrily, often for no good reason: *I only asked him when the work would be finished and he almost bit my head off.* **bite off more than you can 'chew** (*informal*) to try to do too much or sth that is too difficult for you: *This time he's bitten off more than he can chew.*

Derivative nouns and adjectives.

Nouns and adjectives that are related in meaning to a particular phrasal verb are given after the grammar patterns or any idioms. Sometimes the derivative has more than one meaning, each one relating to different uses of the phrasal verb. You will find the meaning at the appropriate entry, with a link to show you where to find the same derivative with a different meaning.
For example, you will find one meaning of the adjective **mixed-up** at the verb it is related to, **mix sb up**; **be/get mixed up** and another meaning at **mix sth up (with sth)**, with a link from one to the other.

ˌmix sb 'up; be/get ˌmixed 'up to make sb unable to think clearly or understand what is happening: *Now you've mixed me up completely! I'm really confused.* ◇ *He got mixed up and caught the wrong train.*

▶ **ˌmixed-'up** *adj* (*informal*) confused because of social or emotional problems: *She's a very mixed-up kid.*
→ *see also* MIXED-UP at MIX STH UP (WITH STH)

Further Information and Practice

Study pages

There is a 25-page section of study pages in the middle of this dictionary. You can use these on your own or in class with a teacher. They will help you to learn phrasal verbs and give you practice in using them.

Guide to the particles

At the end of the dictionary is a guide to the most common particles used in the verbs in this dictionary and their main meanings. This will help you understand verbs better and be able to guess the meaning of new ones that you meet.

Aa

abide /ə'baɪd/

a'bide by sth (*formal*) to accept rules, a law, an agreement, a decision, etc. and obey them/it: *Members must abide by the rules of the club.*
OBJ **rules, decision, the law**
SYN **comply (with sth)**
◈ v + prep

abound /ə'baʊnd/

a'bound in/with sth (*written*) to have a lot of sth; to contain a lot of sth: *The rivers there abound in/with fish.*
◈ v + prep

accede /ək'siːd/

ac'cede to sth (*formal*) to agree to or allow sth that sb has asked for, often after you have opposed it for a while: *The government acceded to public pressure to review the tax.*
OBJ **request, demands, pressure**
NOTE **Accede to sth** can be used in the passive: *Have all our requests been acceded to?*
◈ v + prep

account /ə'kaʊnt/

ac'count for sb/sth 1 to know where sb/sth is or what has happened to them, especially after an accident or a natural disaster: *All the people who were working in the building have now been accounted for.* ◇ *There are three files that I can't account for.* NOTE **Account for sb/sth** is often used in the passive in this meaning. **2** (*old-fashioned*) to destroy sth or kill sb: *Our guns accounted for five enemy planes.*
◈ v + prep

ac'count for sth 1 to explain how or why sth happened; to be the explanation for sth: *How do you **account for** the fact that the box has disappeared?* ◇ *Poor hygiene may have accounted for the increase in cases of the disease.* OBJ **the fact that… 2** to be a particular part of sth; to be a particular amount: *Car crime accounted for 28% of all reported offences.* ◇ *Wages account for less than half of the budget.* OBJ **a large amount, a (particular) proportion, (so many) per cent** SYN **make up sth; represent sth 3** to keep a record of how the money in your care will be spent or has been spent: *Every penny of the funds is accounted for.* **4** to consider particular facts or circumstances when you are making a decision about sth, especially when you are calculating the cost of sth: *The cost of the film and the processing were all accounted for in the calculation of the cost of the service.* SYN **take sth into account**
NOTE **Account for sth** can be used in the passive: *This increase is accounted for by rising taxes.*
◈ v + prep
IDM **there's no accounting for 'taste(s)** used to say that it is impossible to know why sb likes sb/sth that you do not like at all: (*humorous*) *'She seems to like you.' 'Well — there's no accounting for taste!'*

accustom /ə'kʌstəm/

ac'custom sb/yourself to sth; ac'custom sb/yourself to doing sth (*formal*) to make sb/yourself familiar with sth; to become used to sth: *It shouldn't take long to accustom your students to working in groups.* ◇ *It took a while for her eyes to accustom themselves to the dark.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ache /eɪk/

'ache for sb/sth to have a strong desire for sb/sth or to do sth: *I was aching for home.*
SYN **long for sb/sth**
◈ v + prep

acquaint /ə'kweɪnt/

ac'quaint sb/yourself with sth (*formal*) to make sb/yourself familiar with or aware of sth: *He decided to take his son along and acquaint him with the business.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

act /ækt/

'act as sth to perform a particular role or function: *Will you act as interpreter for us?* ◇ *Large fines act as a deterrent to motorists.*
OBJ **agent, consultant, intermediary/go-between, deterrent** SYN **serve as sth**
◈ v + prep

'act for sb (*also* **ˌact on be'half of sb**, **ˌact on sb's be'half**) if sb **acts for** you or **acts on behalf of** you, they deal with your affairs for you, for example by representing you in a court of law, or by doing your duty when you are not able to: *Do you have a solicitor acting for you?* ◇ *The Prince was acting on behalf of the Queen.* ◇ *The Prince was acting on the Queen's behalf.*
OBJ **client**
◈ v + prep

'act on sth (*also* **'act upon sth** *more formal*) **1** to do sth as a result of advice, information, instructions, etc. that you have received: *The police were acting on information from a member of the public.* ◇ *I was just acting on instructions.* ◇ *If my advice had been acted upon, this would never have happened.* OBJ **advice, information, instructions**

NOTE **Act on/upon sth** can be used in the passive in this meaning. **2** to have an effect on sth: *The drug acts on the central nervous system.* **NOTE** **Act** can be used on its own with this meaning: *The drug acts quickly.*
◈ v + prep

ˌact on beˈhalf of sb; **ˌact on sb's beˈhalf** = ACT FOR SB

ˌact sth ˈout 1 to perform a story or events that have happened or might happen, as if you are performing a play: *The teacher read a story and the children acted it out.* ◇ *She acted out her fantasies of pop stardom in front of her bedroom mirror.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The whole nation was following the drama being acted out on the football field.*
OBJ **story, fantasy** **2** to act a part in real life: *I found myself acting out the role of good, brave patient.* **3** (*technical*) to express your thoughts and feelings in your behaviour, often without being aware of it
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌact ˈup (*informal*) **1** to make sb annoyed by behaving badly, trying to get attention, etc: *The kids have been acting up all day.* **2** if a machine or part of the body **acts up**, it does not work properly: *The car's acting up again.* ◇ *My ankle is acting up* (= is painful and causing problems).
SYN **play up**
NOTE **Act up** is often used in the progressive tenses.
◈ v + adv

ˈact upon sth = ACT ON STH

add /æd/

ˌadd sth ˈin to include sth with sth else; to put sth into sth else or between two things: *Send me the new figures when the additional costs have been added in.* ◇ *I've added in two extra paragraphs.*
NOTE **Add** can also be used with this meaning: *I've added a couple of extra paragraphs.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌadd ˈon; **ˌadd ˈon to sth** (*AmE*) to build an extra room or rooms on to a house or other building: *They decided to add on rather than move.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + prep

ˌadd sth ˈon; **ˌadd sth ˈon to sth** to include sth or attach sth extra: *He added £2 on to the bill.*
NOTE **Add (to sth)** can also be used with this meaning: *He added £2 to the bill.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

▸ **ˈadd-on** *n* a thing that is added to or included with sth else: *The catalogue advertised add-ons such as extra memory and software.* ◇ *add-on products/pockets/units*

ˈadd to sth to increase the size, amount, number, etc. of sth: *Taking the children with us would only add to our problems.* ◇ *Music playing in the background added to the atmosphere.* ◇ (*BrE*) *The house has been added to over the years.* ◇ *The food at the hotel is of a very high standard.* ***Add to this*** *the quality of the rooms and the service and it is clear why this is such a popular hotel.*
OBJ **problems, number, knowledge, enjoyment**
NOTE **Add to sth** can be used in the passive.
◈ v + prep

ˌadd toˈgether; **ˌadd sth toˈgether** to come together to produce sth; to join two or more things, numbers, etc. together to produce sth: *The games, the dancing and the good food all added together to make a memorable occasion.* ◇ *When all the different factors are added together, I can understand her decision.* ◇ *Add the two numbers together and divide by three.*
OBJ **factors, numbers, costs**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌadd ˈup (*informal*) **1** to seem reasonable; to make sense; to have all the different parts agreeing with each other: *There are things in her story that just don't add up.* ◇ *Now that I know where she was last night, it's all beginning to add up.* **NOTE** **Add up** with this meaning is used especially in negative sentences. **2** to increase gradually to make a large number or amount: *Save a small amount each month; it'll soon add up.* **3** if two or more numbers **add up**, they come to the total that they should or that you would expect: *These figures just don't add up.*
◈ v + adv

ˌadd ˈup (*especially BrE*), **ˌadd sth ˈup** to calculate the total of two or more numbers or amounts: *I never could add up.* ◇ *She's very good at adding up in her head.* ◇ *She added the figures up in no time.* ◇ *I needed to use a calculator to add up the bill.*
OBJ **numbers, figures, score, cost**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌadd ˈup to sth 1 if two or more numbers or figures **add up to** sth, they make a total of sth when they are added together: *Can you arrange the numbers in groups that add up to 10?* ◇ *The cost of all the equipment you need for a baby adds up to a considerable sum.* **2** (*informal*) to show sth; to have a particular meaning or result: *His evidence didn't really add up to very much* (= gave us very little information). ◇ *All in all, it adds up to a pretty desperate situation.*
SYN **amount to sth**
◈ v + adv + prep

address /əˈdres/

adˈdress yourself to sth (*formal*) to think about a problem or a situation and decide how you are going to deal with it: *We must address ourselves to the problem of traffic pollution.*
◈ v + pron + prep

adhere /ədˈhɪə(r)/

adˈhere to sth (*formal*) to act in the way that a particular law, rule or set of instructions says that you should; to follow or support a particular opinion or set of beliefs: *They have adhered strictly to the terms of the treaty.* ◇ *He found the diet very difficult to adhere to.* ◇ *How many people actually adhere to this view?*
OBJ **principles, rules, guidelines** **SYN** **keep to sth** (*less formal*)
NOTE **Adhere to sth** can be used in the passive: *All safety requirements must be adhered to.*
◈ v + prep

admit /ədˈmɪt/ (-tt-)

adˈmit of sth (*formal*) to show that sth such as an explanation or an answer is possible; to allow sth to happen: *The situation admits of only one explanation.*
OBJ **explanation, answer** **SYN** **allow of sth**
◈ v + prep

agree /əˈɡriː/

aˈgree with sb to make you feel happy or healthy: *You look great! Marriage obviously agrees with you.* ◇ *Mushrooms don't agree with me* (= they make me feel ill/sick).
NOTE **Agree with sb** is often used in negative sentences.
◈ v + prep

aˈgree with sth; **aˈgree with doing sth** to approve of sth, especially a policy or a belief: *I don't agree with capital punishment.*
OPP **disagree with sth, disagree with doing sth**
◈ v + prep

aim /eɪm/

ˈaim at sth; **ˈaim at doing sth** to try to achieve sth; to have sth as your aim: *She's aiming at a sports scholarship.* ◇ *We need to aim at increasing exports.*
NOTE **Aim to do sth** is also used with the same meaning: *What do you aim to achieve?*
◈ v + prep

ˈaim sth at sb/sth if you **aim sth at** a particular person or group, you do or say sth that you intend to have an effect on them: *The advertising campaign is aimed primarily at young people.* ◇ *I was not aiming my remarks at you.*
OBJ **remarks, criticism, campaign**
NOTE **Aim sth at sb** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

be ˈaimed at sth; **be ˈaimed at doing sth** to have sth as an aim or purpose: *The new scheme is aimed at reducing unemployment.*
◈ be + v + prep

alight /əˈlaɪt/

aˈlight on/upon sb/sth (*formal*) to notice sb/sth suddenly; to find or think of sth by chance: *My eye alighted on an old book.* ◇ *He finally alighted on a solution.*
SYN **light on/upon sb/sth**
◈ v + prep

align /əˈlaɪn/

aˈlign yourself with sb/sth to publicly support a person, a group of people or a set of opinions: *The senator aligned himself with the critics of the proposed reforms.*
◈ v + pron + prep

allow /əˈlaʊ/

alˈlow for sth to include sth when you are calculating sth or planning sth: *Add an extra ten minutes to your journey time to allow for the traffic.* ◇ *I've bought a large size to allow for the fact that it may shrink in the wash.*
OBJ **the possibility, the fact that…, differences**
NOTE **Allow for sth** can be used in the passive: *This had not been allowed for in the budget.*
◈ v + prep

alˈlow of sth (*formal*) to show that sth such as an explanation or an answer is possible; to make sth possible: *The facts allow of only one explanation.*
SYN **admit of sth**
◈ v + prep

allude /əˈluːd/

alˈlude to sb/sth (*formal*) to mention sb/sth indirectly or in a few words: *He hated his mother's way of alluding to Jean but never actually saying her name.*
NOTE **Allude to sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *Do you know the person who was alluded to in the report?*
◈ v + prep

amount /əˈmaʊnt/

aˈmount to sth (*not used in the progressive tenses*) **1** to add up to sth; to result in a final total of sth: *The cost of the trip amounted to well over £500.* ◇ *The money I pay in tax and insurance contributions amounts to about 40% of my salary.*
SYN **come to sth** **2** to be equal to or the same as sth: *What they did amounted to a breach of contract.* ◇ *It doesn't matter whether I pay or my husband pays it amounts to the same thing in the end.* ◇ ***It all amounts to*** *a lot of hard work.* **SYN** **come to sth** **3** if you say that sb/sth **doesn't amount to much**, you mean that he/she/it is not very important: *He'll never amount to anything.* ◇ *The information we have doesn't amount to much.*
SYN **add up to sth**
◈ v + prep

angle /'æŋgl/

'angle for sth (*often used in the progressive tenses*) to try to obtain sth without asking for it directly: *She's angling for an invitation to the party.*
SYN **fish for sth**
◆ v + prep

answer /'ɑːnsə(r); *AmE* 'æn-/

ˌanswer 'back to defend yourself against sth bad that sb has said about you: *It's not fair to criticize without giving her the chance to answer back.*
◆ v + adv

ˌanswer 'back; ˌanswer sb 'back if a child **answers back** or **answers you back** when you are telling them to do sth, for example, they reply rudely: *Don't answer back!* ◇ *He's a rude little boy, always answering his mother back.*
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

'answer for sb to speak on behalf of sb and say what they will do or what they think: *I can't answer for my colleagues, but I can manage a meeting next week.*
SYN **speak for sb**
NOTE **Answer for sb** is usually used in negative sentences.
◆ v + prep

'answer for sth 1 to be responsible for sth bad; to accept the blame for sth: *She has a lot to answer for.* ◇ *He's old enough to answer for his own actions.* ◇ *When it comes to violence among young people, television has a great deal to answer for.* OBJ **the consequences, sb's actions 2** to say that you are certain that sb has a particular quality or can be trusted or relied on: *I can answer for her honesty.* SYN **vouch for sth**
◆ v + prep

'answer to sb (for sth) to have to explain your actions to sb or show that they are right or reasonable: *You will answer to me for any damage to the car.* ◇ *If anything happens to her, you'll have me to answer to.*
◆ v + prep

'answer to sth to be called sth; to recognize a name as your own: *I answer to either Susan or Sue.* ◇ *I'm afraid there's no one here **answering to that name**.* ◇ *They have a cat **answering to the name of** Bill.*
OBJ only **name**
◆ v + prep

appeal /ə'piːl/

ap'peal for sth/sb; ap'peal for sb to do sth to make a serious and urgent request for sth or for sth to be done: *The government has appealed for calm.* ◇ *The police appealed for witnesses to come forward.* ◇ *The victim's family has appealed for help in tracking down the killer.*
OBJ **witnesses, help, information, calm, funds**
◆ v + prep • v + prep + n/pron + to inf

ap'peal to sb if sth **appeals** to you, you like it or find it interesting and attractive: *The 'Harry Potter' books appeal to readers of all ages.* ◇ *The prospect of camping didn't appeal to me.*
◆ v + prep

ap'peal to sth to try to persuade sb to do sth by reminding them that it is a good, reasonable thing to do: *Maybe if you **appeal to her better nature*** (= her kindness), *you can get her to help.*
OBJ **sb's better nature, sb's sense of justice**
◆ v + prep

appertain /ˌæpə'teɪn; *AmE* -pər't-/

apper'tain to sth (*formal*) to belong to sth; to be connected with sth: *the duties appertaining to the post*
NOTE This verb is usually only used in written English.
◆ v + prep

apprise /ə'praɪz/

ap'prise sb of sth (*formal*) to tell or inform sb of sth: *We were fully apprised of the situation.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

argue /'ɑːgjuː; *AmE* 'ɑːrg-/

ˌargue sb 'into sth; ˌargue sb 'into doing sth to persuade sb to do sth by giving them a large number of reasons why they should do it: *I managed to argue him into going back home to talk to his parents.*
OPP **argue sb out of sth, argue sb out of doing sth**
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌargue sth 'out to discuss all the details of an idea, a plan, etc., often in an excited or angry way, until you reach a decision: *I'm sure they'll manage to argue out any differences that arise.* ◇ *I'm too tired to **argue it out** with you now.* ◇ *The issues have all been argued out at great length.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌargue sb 'out of sth; ˌargue sb 'out of doing sth to persuade sb not to do sth by giving them a large number of reasons why they should not do it: *I argued her out of her crazy idea.*
OPP **argue sb into sth, argue sb into doing sth**
◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

'argue with sth to disagree with what sb says; to say or show that sth is not right: *'It's cold today, isn't it?' 'I can't argue with you there!* (= I agree with you).*'* ◇ *It's a lovely jacket — and you couldn't argue with the price.*
NOTE **Argue with sth** is often used with *can't* or another negative.
◆ v + prep

arrive /ə'raɪv/

ar'rive at sth to agree on sth or to find sth after discussing and thinking about it: *They had both arrived at the same conclusion.* ◇ *It didn't take long to arrive at a decision.*
OBJ **conclusion, decision, agreement**
SYN **reach sth**
◆ v + prep

arse /ɑːs; *AmE* ɑːrs/

ˌarse a'bout/a'round (*BrE*, ⚠, *slang*) to behave in a silly or annoying way and waste time instead of doing what you are supposed to be doing: *Stop arsing about and give me my bag back.*
NOTE **Mess around** and **play around** are more polite verbs to use to express this.
◆ v + adv

ascribe /ə'skraɪb/

a'scribe sth to sb to consider, perhaps wrongly, that sth has been written, painted, spoken or created by a particular person: *This play is usually ascribed to Shakespeare.*
SYN **attribute sth to sb**
◆ v + n/pron + prep

a'scribe sth to sb/sth (*formal*) **1** to consider that sth is caused by a particular person or thing: *He ascribed his exhaustion to the heat and an unfamiliar diet.* **2** to consider that a person or a thing has a particular quality: *I am reluctant to ascribe supernatural powers to a fortune teller.* ◇ *The government ascribe great importance to these policies.*
SYN **attribute sth to sb/sth**
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ask /ɑːsk; *AmE* æsk/

'ask after sb to ask for news about sb and how they are, etc: *Did she ask after me in her letter?*
SYN **enquire after sb** (*formal*)
◆ v + prep

ˌask sb a'long to ask sb if they would like to go with you to an event or activity: *Jane and Ed are going to a movie tonight, and they've asked me along.*
SYN **invite sb along** (*more formal*)
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˌask a'round to ask a number of different people in order to find out sth: *I don't know if there's any work, but I'll ask around for you.*
◆ v + adv

ˌask sb a'round (*AmE*) = ASK SB OVER/ROUND

ˌask sb 'back (to sth) (*especially BrE*) to invite sb to come back to your house with you for a drink, etc. when you are both out together: *I asked him back for a coffee.*
SYN **have sb back; invite sb back (to sth)** (*more formal*)
◆ v + n/pron + adv

'ask for sb to say that you want to see or speak to sb: *There's somebody at the door asking for Pete.*
◆ v + prep

'ask for sth 1 to say that you want sb to give you sth: *Jodie asked for a guitar for her birthday.* ◇ *If you get into trouble, don't hesitate to ask for help.* ◇ *We **couldn't have asked for** better weather.* ◇ *A beautiful house, husband and children. **What more could you ask for?*** SYN **request sth** (*formal*) **2** (*informal*) if sb is **asking for trouble** or **asking for it**, they are behaving in a way that is likely to cause sth bad to happen to them: *You're asking for trouble walking home alone at night.* ◇ *'You asked for it!* (= you deserve what I am going to do to you)*' she said, pouring a bucket of water over his head.* OBJ **trouble, it 3** to say that you want to speak to sb or be directed to a place: *When you arrive, go to reception and ask for George.* ◇ *Ask for the station if you get lost.*
◆ v + prep

ˌask sb ' in/'up to invite sb to come into the room or building that you are in, especially your home: *Aren't you going to ask me in? It's cold out here.* ◇ *She asked me into her office for a chat.* ◇ *Once we get settled, we must ask the neighbours in for coffee.*
SYN **invite sb in/up** (*more formal*)
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌask sb 'out to invite sb to go out with you, especially when you would like a romantic relationship with them: *Has he asked you out yet?*
SYN **invite sb out** (*more formal*)
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌask sb 'over/'round (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˌask sb a'round**) to invite sb to come and visit you in your home: *She's asked me round for dinner.*
SYN **invite sb over/round** (*more formal*)
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌask sb 'up = ASK SB IN/UP

aspire /ə'spaɪə(r)/

a'spire to sth to have a strong desire to gain or achieve sth: *He's never really aspired to great wealth.*
◆ v + prep

associate /ə'səʊʃieɪt; *AmE* ə'soʊ-/

as'sociate with sb to be involved with or spend a lot of time with sb or with a group of people, especially people that sb else does not approve of: *I don't like the people you associate with.*
◆ v + prep

asˈsociate yourself with sb/sth (*formal*) to say that you agree with sb or with their ideas: *It was unreasonable to expect the Democrats to associate themselves with spending cuts and tax increases.*
OPP **dissociate yourself from sb/sth**
◈ v + pron + prep

attend /əˈtend/

atˈtend to sb/sth (*formal*) to deal with or take responsibility for sth; to give practical help and care to sb who needs it: *I have some urgent business to attend to.* ◇ (*BrE*) *Are you being attended to?*
OBJ **business, needs, customer**
SYN **look after sb; look after sth; see to sb/sth** (*less formal*)
◈ v + prep

attribute /əˈtrɪbjuːt/

atˈtribute sth to sb to consider, perhaps wrongly, that sth has been written, painted, spoken or created by a particular person: *This painting is usually attributed to Goya.*
SYN **ascribe sth to sb**
◈ v + n/pron + prep

atˈtribute sth to sb/sth to consider that sth is caused by a particular person or thing: *His success can be largely attributed to hard work.* ◇ *She said she was not going to attribute blame or seek revenge for what had happened.*
SYN **ascribe sth to sb/sth; put sth down to sth** (*less formal*)
◈ v + n/pron + prep

auction /ˈɔːkʃn, *BrE also* ˈɒk-/

ˌauction sth ˈoff to sell sth at an auction, especially sth that sb no longer needs or wants: *The house and all its contents will be auctioned off next week.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

avail /əˈveɪl/

aˈvail yourself of sth (*formal*) to make use of sth; to take advantage of sth, usually to improve your situation: *Guests are encouraged to avail themselves of all the hotel's services.* ◇ *I'd like to avail myself of this opportunity to thank you all.*
OBJ **facilities, opportunity**
◈ v + pron + prep

average /ˈævərɪdʒ/

ˌaverage ˈout to result in a fair or equal amount over a period of time or after several occasions: *Sometimes I do the cooking and sometimes my flatmate does. It averages out over a month* (= results in us each doing the same amount of cooking).
◈ v + adv

ˌaverage sth ˈout (at sth) to calculate the average of sth: *If you average it out, there's one car stolen every three minutes.* ◇ *The tax authorities averaged out his profit at £10 000 a year over five years.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌaverage ˈout at sth to have a particular amount as the average over a period of time: *The time she spends practising the piano averages out at about an hour a day.*
◈ v + adv + prep

awake /əˈweɪk/ (**awoke** /əˈwəʊk; *AmE* əˈwoʊk/, **awoken** /əˈwəʊkən; *AmE* əˈwoʊkən/)

aˈwake to sth (*formal*) to become aware of sth and its possible results; to realize or understand sth: *They finally awoke to the full extent of the problem.* ◇ *I suddenly awoke to the fact that I had the answer in front of me.*
→ *see also* AWAKEN TO STH, AWAKEN SB TO STH
◈ v + prep

awaken /əˈweɪkən/

aˈwaken to sth; aˈwaken sb to sth (*formal*) to become aware of sth, or to make sb become aware of sth, and its possible results: *People are gradually awakening to their rights.* ◇ *The public has been awakened to the full horror of the situation.*
→ *see also* AWAKE TO STH
◈ v + prep ◆ v + n/pron + prep

Bb

back /bæk/

ˌback aˈway; ˌback aˈway from sb/sth to move backwards away from sb/sth frightening or unpleasant: *He stepped forward and she backed away in alarm.* ◇ *The child backed away from the dog nervously.*
SYN **retreat (from sb/sth)** (*more formal*)
→ *see also* BACK OFF 2
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + prep

ˌback aˈway from sth; ˌback aˈway from doing sth to avoid doing sth unpleasant or difficult; to show that you no longer support an action or an idea: *We will not back away from tough measures.* ◇ *The union has backed away from calling a strike.*
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌback ˈdown (on/from sth) to take back a claim or a demand that you have made, or sth that you have said, usually because sb forces you to: *Neither of them will back down on this issue.* ◇ *His critics were forced to back down.*
SYN **climb down (over sth); give in (to sb/sth)**
→ *see also* BACK OFF (FROM STH/FROM DOING STH), BACK OFF STH
◈ v + adv

ˌback ˈoff 1 (*informal*) to stop threatening or annoying sb: *Back off and let me make my own decisions.* ◇ *The press have agreed to back off and leave the couple alone.* **2** to move away from sb/sth frightening or unpleasant: *As the head teacher approached the children backed off.* SYN **retreat (from sb/sth)** → *see also* BACK AWAY, BACK AWAY FROM SB/STH
◈ v + adv

ˌback ˈoff (from sth/from doing sth), ˌback ˈoff sth (*especially AmE*) to decide not to continue to do sth or support an idea, in order to avoid a difficult or unpleasant situation: *The government backed off in the face of strong opposition.* ◇ *He refused to back off from his earlier statement.* ◇ *The rebels backed off their demand for meeting with the President.*
→ *see also* BACK DOWN (ON/FROM STH)
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌback ˈonto sth (*BrE*) if a building **backs onto** sth, it has sth behind it: *The hotel backs onto the golf course.*
◈ v + prep

ˌback ˈout; ˌback ˈout of sth; ˌback ˈout of doing sth to decide not to do sth that you had agreed or promised to do: *Everything's arranged. It's too late to back out now.* ◇ *There's still time to back out of selling the house.*
SYN **pull out, pull out of sth, pull out of doing sth; withdraw (from sth)** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + prep

ˌback ˈup; ˌback sb/sth ˈup to move backwards a short distance, especially in a vehicle; to make sb/sth move backwards a short distance: *You can back up another two metres or so.* ◇ *Jeff backed the van up and drove off quickly.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The woman was backed up against the wall.*
SYN **reverse, reverse sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌback ˈup; ˌback sth ˈup if traffic **backs up** or is **backed up**, it cannot move and forms a long line: *Two lanes were closed by the accident, causing cars to back up for miles.* ◇ *The traffic is backed up to the traffic lights.*
NOTE **Back sth up** is nearly always used in the passive.
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌback sb/sth ˈup 1 to say or show that what sb says is true: *If I tell my parents I was with you, will you back me up?* ◇ *His version of events is not backed up by the evidence.* OBJ **statement, claim** **2** to support or help sb/sth: *Mel complained that her husband never backed her up in the control of the children.* ◇ *Backing her up* (= playing music to support her) *was the band 'Midnight Express'.*
SYN **support sb/sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)
▸ ˈ**backup** *n* [C] [U] (*AmE, music*) (*usually used as an adjective*) music that supports the main singer or player in popular music or jazz: *a backup singer for Stevie Wonder* ◇ *She once sang backup for Madonna.*
→ *see also* BACK-UP at BACK STH UP

ˌback sth ˈup 1 (*computing*) to make a copy of a file, a program, etc. that can be used if the original one is lost or damaged: *We back up all the files every night.* OBJ **file** **2** to add sth extra to sth, especially as a support: *The lectures will be backed up by practical work.* ◇ *They backed up their demands with threats.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ ˈ**back-up** *n* **1** [U] support or help that you can use in order to do sth: *military back-up* ◇ *They have a huge back-up team.* **2** [C] a second piece of equipment, set of plans, person, etc. that can replace another if necessary: *He's our back-up if another player isn't available.* ◇ *the back-up plan* **3** [C] (*computing*) a copy of a file, program, etc. for use in case the original is lost or damaged: *Have you kept a back-up of this file?* ◇ *a back-up disk*
→ *see also* BACKUP at BACK SB/STH UP

bag /bæg/ (**-gg-**)

ˌbag sth ˈup to put sth, usually large amounts of sth, into a bag or bags: *The vegetables are bagged up on the farm and then sent out to the shop.*
NOTE **Bag sth** can also be used with this meaning.
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

bail /beɪl/

ˌbail ˈout; **ˌbail ˈout of sth** **1** (*BrE also* **ˌbale ˈout**, **ˌbale ˈout of sth**) to jump out of a plane that is going to crash, using a parachute (= a large piece of cloth that opens out like an umbrella and makes people fall slowly and safely): *The crew just had time to bail out.* **2** (*AmE*) to stop doing sth or taking part in sth because it is difficult or unpleasant: *The actor who was supposed to be playing the part bailed out.* → *see also* BACK OUT, BACK OUT OF STH, BACK OUT OF DOING STH
◈ v + adv • v + adv + prep

ˌbail ˈout; **ˌbail sth ˈout** (*BrE also* **ˌbale ˈout**, **ˌbale sth ˈout**) to throw water out of a boat with a container or with your hands: *The boat will sink unless we bail out.* ◇ *They started bailing the boat out.*
OBJ **boat, water**
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌbail sb ˈout (*law*) to pay sb's bail (= the money that sb accused of a crime has to pay if they do not appear at their trial) for them, so that they can be set free until their trial
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌbail sb/sth ˈout; **ˌbail sb/sth ˈout of sth** (*BrE also* **ˌbale sb/sth ˈout**, **ˌbale sb/sth ˈout of sth**) (*informal*) to rescue sb/sth from difficulties, especially financial difficulties: *The government has refused to bail the company out again.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n •
v + n/pron + adv + prep
▶ **ˈbailout** *n* (*especially AmE, finance*) an act of giving financial help to a company, economy, etc. to save it from failing: *government/bank bailouts* ◇ *a bailout package*

balance /ˈbæləns/

ˈbalance A against B to compare the value or importance of one plan, argument, etc. against another: *You must balance the high salary against the long working hours.*
SYN **set sth against sth**
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌbalance ˈout; **ˌbalance sth ˈout/ˈup** if things that are very different or have opposite effects **balance out** or you **balance them out**, they become equal in amount or value: *If you eat a variety of food, protein and carbohydrate will balance out over a week.* ◇ *We need to invite three more girls to balance up the numbers* (= so that there are equal numbers of boys and girls).
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

bale /beɪl/

ˌbale ˈout; **ˌbale ˈout of sth** (*BrE*) = BAIL OUT, BAIL OUT OF STH 1

ˌbale ˈout; **ˌbale sth ˈout** (*BrE*) = BAIL OUT, BAIL STH OUT

ˌbale sb/sth ˈout; **ˌbale sb/sth ˈout of sth** (*BrE*) = BAIL SB/STH OUT, BAIL SB/STH OUT OF STH

balk /bɔːk/

ˈbalk at sth; **ˈbalk at doing sth** (*especially AmE*) = BAULK AT STH, BAULK AT DOING STH

balls /bɔːlz/

ˌballs sth ˈup (*BrE*, ⚠) to spoil sth; to do sth very badly
NOTE A more polite, informal way of saying this is **foul sth up** or **bungle sth**.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ **ˈballs-up** *n* (⚠, *slang, especially BrE*) something that has been done very badly: *I made a real balls-up of my exams.*
NOTE A more polite, informal way of saying this is **foul-up**.

band /bænd/

ˌband toˈgether to form a group and act together in order to achieve sth, etc: *We need to band together to fight these reforms.*
◈ v + adv

bandage /ˈbændɪdʒ/

ˌbandage sb/sth ˈup to wrap a bandage (= a long narrow strip of material) around a part of the body that is injured: *Joe bandaged me up until the doctor came.* ◇ *I didn't see the burns because her fingers were all bandaged up.*
OBJ **wound, sb's leg/arm, etc.**
NOTE **Bandage sb/sth up** is often used in the passive. • **Bandage sb/sth** is also used with this meaning.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

bandy /ˈbændi/ (**bandies, bandying, bandied, bandied**)

ˌbandy sth aˈbout (*also* **ˌbandy sth aˈround** *especially BrE*) if a word, a name, etc. **is bandied about**, it is mentioned or talked about by many people, often in a careless way: *The stories being bandied about are completely false.* ◇ *He's not paid anything like the £4000 a week figure being bandied around.*
OBJ **story, figures, word/term**
NOTE **Bandy sth about/around** is usually used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

bang /bæŋ/

ˌbang aˈround (*also* **ˌbang aˈbout** *especially BrE*) to move around noisily: *We could hear them banging about upstairs, moving things.*
◈ v + adv

ˌbang aˈway **1** (*informal*) to hit sth repeatedly with lots of force or energy: *She picked up the hammer and began banging away with enthusiasm.* **2** if sth such as your heart **bangs away**, it makes very loud regular sounds: *My heart was banging away unhealthily.*
◈ v + adv

ˌbang aˈway at sth (*AmE, informal*) to work very hard at sth: *She banged away all day at her assignment.*
SYN **bash away (at sth)** (*BrE*)
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌbang sth ˈdown to put sth down quickly and with a lot of force so that it makes a loud noise: *He banged his fist down on the table.* ◇ *He banged the phone down* (= ended the telephone conversation) *before I could explain.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌbang ˈinto sb/sth to crash into or hit sb/sth violently, usually by mistake: *He ran around the corner and banged into an old lady who was coming the other way.*
◈ v + prep

ˌbang ˈon about sb/sth (*BrE, informal*) to talk or write a lot or in a boring way about sth: *Pat is always banging on about politics.* ◇ *She keeps banging on about how wonderful her son is.*
SYN **go on (about sb/sth)**
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌbang ˈout sth; **ˌbang it/them ˈout** (*informal*) **1** to play music very loudly: *He banged out the tune on the piano.* **2** to write sth very quickly and without taking much care: *She was banging out four novels a year.* SYN **bash sth out** (*BrE*); **churn sth out**
NOTE A noun must always follow **out**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **out**.
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv

ˌbang sb/sth ˈup (*AmE, informal*) to damage or injure sb/sth, especially by hitting sth else: *I banged up my knee when I fell off the bike.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

be/get ˌbanged ˈup (*BrE, informal*) to be locked up or put in prison: *He was banged up in a Singapore jail for six months.*
◈ be/get + v + adv

bank /bæŋk/

ˈbank on sb/sth; **ˈbank on doing sth**; **ˈbank on sb/sth doing sth** to rely on sb/sth; to be confident that sth will happen: *I'm banking on your help.* ◇ *I'm banking on you to help me.* ◇ *I'd banked on getting a cup of coffee at the airport, but everything was closed.* ◇ *He was banking on the train being on time.* ◇ *She might already have cleaned up but **I wouldn't bank on it**.*
SYN **count on sb/sth, count on doing sth, count on sb/sth doing sth; reckon on sb/sth, reckon on doing sth, reckon on sb/sth doing sth**
◈ v + prep • v + prep + n/pron + to inf

ˌbank ˈup; **ˌbank sth ˈup** (*BrE*) to form into a large pile; to make sth form a large pile: *The snow had banked up on either side of the road.*
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

bargain /ˈbɑːgən; *AmE* ˈbɑːrgən/

ˌbargain sth aˈway (*rare*) to give away sth valuable or important in exchange for sth less valuable or important: *The leaders refused to bargain away the freedom of their people.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˈbargain for/on sth; **ˈbargain for/on doing sth**; **ˈbargain for/on sb/sth doing sth** to expect or be prepared to do sth; to expect sth to happen or sb to do sth: *We hadn't bargained for such bad weather.* ◇ *I hadn't bargained on taking the kids with us.* ◇ *I didn't bargain for Jake being at the party.* ◇ *When he tried to argue with Kate, he **got more than he had bargained for**.* ◇ *What I hadn't bargained for was that very few people would speak English.*
SYN **reckon on sb/sth, reckon on doing sth, reckon on sb/sth doing sth**
NOTE These phrasal verbs are usually used in negative sentences.
◈ v + prep

barge /bɑːdʒ; *AmE* bɑːrdʒ/

ˌbarge ˈin (on sb/sth), **ˌbarge ˈinto sth** (*informal*) **1** to enter a place or join a group of people quickly and rudely, without being asked: *Sorry to barge in, but…* ◇ *She barged in on our meeting without knocking.* ◇ *He just barged (his way) into the room.* **2** to interrupt what sb is doing or saying, especially when you have not been invited to join in: *As soon as I paused for breath, Bart barged in.* ◇ *You can't just come barging into our conversation!*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

bark /bɑːk; *AmE* bɑːrk/

ˌbark sth ˈout to shout sth loudly: *She barked out instructions to her secretary.*
OBJ **orders, instructions** SYN **rap sth out**
NOTE **Bark sth** can also be used with the same meaning: *He barked orders at Tim.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + speech

barricade /ˌbærɪˈkeɪd/

barriˌcade yourself/sb ˈin; barriˌcade yourself/sb ˈin/ˈinto/inˈside sth to put up a line of objects at the entrance to a room or building, so that nobody can get in or out, usually to protect or defend yourself or sb else: *The police were called when he barricaded himself in.* ◇ *They barricaded themselves inside their house.* ◇ *Families had to be barricaded inside a restaurant while students protested outside.*
OBJ **room, house**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

base /beɪs/

ˈbase sth on sth (*also* **ˈbase sth upon sth** *more formal*) to use or have an idea, an experience, etc. as the point from which sth can be developed: *The novel is based on a true story.* ◇ *She is basing the prosecution case on the evidence of two witnesses.* ◇ *What's the design based on?* ◇ *The report has been based upon inaccurate information.* ◇ *Sue's knowledge of Japan was based only on what she had read in books.*
OBJ **decision, theory, design, opinion, etc.**
NOTE **Base sth on/upon sth** is often used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

bash /bæʃ/

ˌbash sb/sth aˈbout (*BrE, informal*) to hit or strike sb/sth and treat them/it in a rough way: *The mugger had bashed her about.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌbash aˈway (at sth) (*BrE*) to work very hard at sth for a period of time: *I bashed away at the article without a break from 11 until 6.*
◆ v + adv

ˌbash sth ˈdown (*informal, especially BrE*) to destroy sth and make it fall by hitting it violently: *The firefighters had to bash the door down.*
OBJ **door** SYN **break sth down** (*more formal*), **knock sth down** (*more formal*)
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌbash sth ˈin (*informal, especially BrE*) to break or destroy sth by hitting it violently: *The window had been bashed in.*
OBJ **window, head, skull, nose**
SYN **smash sth in**
NOTE **Bash sth in** is often used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
IDM **ˌbash sb's ˈhead/ˈbrains in** (*informal*) to hit sb very hard: *Shut up or I'll bash your brains in!*

ˌbash ˈon (with sth) (*BrE, informal*) to continue working hard at sth: *Let's bash on.* ◇ *I'd better bash on with my work.*
SYN **get on (with sth)** (*more formal*)
◆ v + adv

ˌbash sth ˈout (*BrE, informal*) to write sth very quickly, without taking much care: *I don't do drafts of articles. I just bash them out.*
SYN **bang out sth**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌbash sb ˈup (*BrE, informal*) to attack sb violently
SYN **beat sb up** (*more formal*)
NOTE **Bash sb up** is used less often than the synonym **beat sb up**.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

bat /bæt/ (-tt-)

ˌbat sth aˈround (*informal*) to talk about or discuss plans or ideas, etc. before you decide what to do: *We're just batting some ideas around.*
OBJ **ideas, figures**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

batten /ˈbætn/

ˌbatten sth ˈdown to fasten sth firmly in order to prevent damage by storms or winds: *They managed to batten down the shutters and doors before the hurricane hit.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
IDM **ˌbatten down the ˈhatches** to prepare for difficult times ahead: *Businesses are battening down the hatches and preparing for a difficult year.*

batter /ˈbætə(r)/

ˌbatter sth ˈdown to hit sth repeatedly until it breaks and falls down: *The only way to get in was to batter the door down.*
OBJ **door** SYN **break sth down**; **beat sth down**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

baulk (*especially BrE*) (*AmE usually* **balk**) /bɔːk/

ˈbaulk at sth; ˈbaulk at doing sth to be unwilling to do sth or to get involved in sth because it is difficult, dangerous, expensive, etc: *He baulked at the idea of telling his parents where he was going.*
OBJ **idea, expense**
◆ v + prep

bawl /bɔːl/

ˌbawl sb ˈout (*informal*) to speak angrily to sb because they have done sth wrong: *My boss bawled me out for being late.*
SYN **tell sb off (for sth/for doing sth)**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ **ˌbawling-ˈout** *n* [usually sing.] (*informal*) an act of speaking angrily to sb because they have done sth wrong

ˌbawl sth ˈout (*informal, especially BrE*) to say or sing sth very loudly or in a harsh voice: *She doesn't give you an order. She bawls it out.* ◇ *The children bawled out the songs.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*) • v + adv + speech

be /bi; strong form biː/ (is/are, being, was /wəz, wɒz; *AmE* wɑːz, wʌz/, were /wə(r), wɜː(r)/, been /biːn, bɪn/)

~ after
~ at
~ away
~ before
~ behind
~ behind with
~ down
~ down on
~ down to
~/go down with
~ in
~ in for
~/get in on
~ (well) in with
~ into
~ off
~ off for

~ on
12 ~ on about
~/go/keep on at
~ onto
~ out
~ out for
~ out of
~ over
~ past
~ through
~ up
~ up against
~ up before
~ up for
~ up to
13 ~ upon

---

be ˈafter sth to try to get or obtain sth: *Several people in the office are after the same job.* ◇ *She's being too nice. I wonder what she's after.*
◆ v + prep

be ˈat sb (*informal, especially BrE*) = BE/GO/KEEP ON AT SB

be ˈat sth to be busy doing sth: *He's been at his essay all night.* ◇ *I'll* **be at it** *all day tomorrow.*
◆ v + prep
IDM **be ˈat it** to behave badly; to argue or fight: *The kids are at it again.*

be aˈway to not be at home, especially when you are on holiday/vacation or on a business trip: *We'll be away for the month of August.* ◇ *He's away on business at the moment.*
◆ v + adv

be before sb = BE UP BEFORE SB

be beˈhind sb to give sb your support: *Don't forget that we're behind you all the way.*
◆ v + prep

be beˈhind with sth to be late doing sth, such as paying a bill, your rent, etc: *We're behind with the mortgage repayments.* ◇ *I'm behind with my college assignments.*
◆ v + adv + prep

be ˈdown if a computer system **is down**, it is not working temporarily: *Surely your computer isn't down again?*
◆ v + adv

be ˈdown on sb to treat sb severely or unfairly: *He's been really down on me lately.*
◆ v + adv + prep

be ˈdown to sb to be the responsibility of sb; to be sb's fault: *It's down to you to help them now.*
◆ v + adv + prep

be ˈdown to sth to have only a little money left: *I'm down to my last dollar.*
◆ v + adv + prep

be/go ˈdown with sth to have or catch an illness: *Gill's down with flu.*
◆ v + adv + prep

be ˈin 1 to be in fashion: *Miniskirts are in this season.* **2** to be elected to a political position: *The Democrats are in for another term.*
◆ v + adv

be ˈin for sth (*informal*) to be going to experience sth soon, especially sth unpleasant: *She's in for a shock.* ◇ *It looks like we're in for a storm.*
◆ v + adv + prep

be/get ˈin on sth (*informal*) to have a share in or knowledge of sth; to be or become involved in sth: *Are you in on the secret?* ◇ *I'd like to be in on the deal.*
◆ v + adv + prep

be (well) ˈin with sb to be (very) friendly with sb and likely to get an advantage from the friendship
◆ v + adv + prep

be ˈinto sth to have a taste for or an interest in sth: *Are you into jazz music?* ◇ *He's been into trains since he was a small boy.*
◆ v + prep

be ˈoff 1 to leave; to go, especially in a hurry: *I must be off.* **2** to have gone bad and not be fit to eat or drink: *This milk is off.*
◆ v + adv

be ˈoff sth 1 to have no interest in sth; to have stopped liking sth: *She can't be well. She's been off her food all week.* ◇ *That's it. I'm off men for life.* **2** to have finished speaking on the telephone: *Isn't he off the phone yet?*
◆ v + prep

be ˌoff for ˈsth (*informal*) to have a particular amount of sth: *How are we off for coffee* (= how much have we got)*?*
◆ v + adv + prep

be ˈon 1 (of an event, a show, a performance, etc.) to be happening; to take place: *Is the party still on?* **2** (of a performer) to be on the stage; to perform: *Who's on next?* ◇ *We're on after the support band.* **3** (of food) to be cooking: *Are the potatoes on?*
◆ v + adv
IDM **you're ˈon** (*spoken, informal*) used when you are accepting a bet or a challenge

be ˈon sb if sth such as drinks, food, tickets, etc. **are on** sb, they are paid for by that person: *The drinks are on me tonight.*
◆ v + prep

be 'on sth 1 to be taking medicine, a drug, etc: *She's been on the pill for ten years.* ◇ *I'm on strong painkillers.* **2** to be talking to sb on the telephone: *She's been on the phone for hours.* **3** to be eating or drinking sth: *I'm on my third coffee already this morning.*

◆ v + prep

IDM **what are you 'on?** (*spoken, informal*) used when you are very surprised at sb's behaviour and are suggesting that they are acting in a similar way to sb using drugs

be 'on about sth (*informal, especially BrE*) to talk about sth, often in a boring way; to mean sth: *He's always on about how much money he earns.* ◇ *What are you on about?* (= I don't really understand).

◆ v + adv + prep

be/go/keep 'on at sb (*also* **be 'at sb**) (*informal, especially BrE*) to try to persuade sb to do sth by talking about it very often and in an annoying way: *I've been on at my husband to go to the doctor, but he won't.*

SYN **nag sb**

◆ v + adv + prep ◆ v + prep

be 'onto sb (*informal*) **1** to become aware that sb has done sth wrong or illegal and be trying to catch them: *The police aren't onto us yet.* **2** to talk to sb about sth, especially to complain about sth or ask them to do sth: *I've been onto the council about the noise.*

◆ v + prep

be 'onto sth to find or discover sth that could have very good results for you or for sb else: *She could be onto something* (= she might have discovered sth that will prove important).

◆ v + prep

be 'out 1 to have stopped work as a protest and be on strike: *The postal workers are still out.* **2** to be no longer in prison: *I've heard Smith's out now.* **3** if a jury (= a group of people who decide the results of a competition or whether or not sb is guilty of a crime) **is out**, they are still trying to make a decision **4** to no longer be in fashion: *Black is out this year.* ◇ *Politeness seems to* ***be out of fashion*** *these days* (= no one is polite any more). **5** if an action, for example, **is out**, it is not possible or is not allowed: *Shall we get together one evening next week? Monday's out — I've got a French class.*

◆ v + adv

IDM **the jury is (still) 'out on sth** used when you are saying that sth is still not certain: *The jury is still out on whether wine can be good for you.*

be 'out for sth; be 'out to do sth to be trying very hard to do sth or to get sth: *He's out for revenge.* ◇ *Everyone's just out for what they can get these days* (= they are trying to get things for themselves). ◇ *The German team want to win this game, but Brazil are out to stop them.*

◆ v + adv + prep ◆ v + adv + to inf

be 'out of sth to have used up a supply of sth and have nothing left: *We're out of sugar.*

◆ v + adv + prep

be 'over sb to have returned to your usual state of happiness after the end of a relationship: *It was hard at first, but I'm over him now.*

◆ v + prep

be 'over sth to have returned to your normal state of health after an illness: *He's over the flu now.*

◆ v + prep

be 'past it (*informal*) used to show that you think sb is so old that they can no longer do anything useful or interesting: *The children laughed at him and said he was past it.*

◆ v + prep + it

be 'through (to sb) to be connected to sb on the telephone: *You're through now.* ◇ *You're through to the manager now.*

◆ v + adv

be 'through (with sb/sth) (*especially AmE*) to have finished using or doing sth; to have finished a relationship with sb: *Aren't you through yet? You've been ages!* ◇ *He promised he was through with drugs.* ◇ *Keith and I are through.*

◆ v + adv

be 'up 1 to be awake: *You're up early.* ◇ *I've been up all night.* **2** (of the wind, the sea, etc.) to increase in strength or become violent: *In the morning the wind was up and we got ready for a day's sailing.* **3** (*spoken, informal*) (of a drink, a meal, etc.) to be ready: *Tea's up! Come and get it.*

→ *see also* WHAT'S UP at BE UP TO STH

◆ v + adv

be 'up against sb/sth to be facing problems or difficulties: *We're up against tough competition.* ◇ *With three players injured, they were really* ***up against it*** (= in a difficult situation). ◇ *Do you realize what you're up against?*

◆ v + adv + prep

be 'up before sb (*also* **be be'fore sb**) to appear in court or before a judge: *He's up before the judge tomorrow.*

◆ v + adv + prep ◆ v + prep

be 'up for sth 1 to be considered for sth, especially as a candidate for a job, in an election, etc: *She's up for promotion.* ◇ (*informal*) *There are 50 tickets* ***up for grabs*** (= available for people who ask quickly). **2** to be for sb to buy: *I see your house is* ***up for sale.*** ◇ *A Picasso is* ***up for auction.*** **3** (*informal*) to be ready to take part in an activity: *The new job will be a challenge, but I'm* ***up for it.***

◆ v + adv + prep

be 'up to sb 1 to be sb's responsibility or duty: *It's up to you to make sure the house is kept tidy.* **2** to be left to sb to decide: *'Shall we go out?' 'It's up to you.'*

◆ v + adv + prep

be 'up to sth (*informal*) **1** to be busy doing sth, especially sth bad: *What have you been up to lately?* ◇ *The kids are quiet — I'm sure they're up to no good* (= they are doing sth bad). **2** to be as good as people expect: *Was your meal up to standard?*

◆ v + adv + prep

IDM **what's up?** (*spoken, informal*) **1** used to ask sb if there is something wrong: *You look terrible! What's up?* ◇ *I couldn't understand* ***what was up with*** *George.* **2** used as a greeting to mean 'how are you?', 'what have you been doing?', etc.

be u'pon sb (*formal*) to be going to happen very soon: *The election is almost upon us.*

◆ v + prep

bear /beə(r); *AmE* ber/ (**bore** /bɔː(r)/**borne** /bɔːn; *AmE* bɔːrn/)

ˌbear 'down on sb/sth (*also* **ˌbear 'down upon sb/sth** *more formal*) **1** (*especially BrE*) to move towards sb/sth in a determined or threatening way: *A crowd of journalists bore down on the minister.* ◇ *A hurricane is bearing down on central America.* **2** (*especially AmE*) if a problem or a difficult situation **bears down on** you, it makes you feel very worried and has a severe effect on you: *The drought is bearing down very hard on farmers.* **3** (*especially AmE*) to press or push on sb/sth: (*figurative*) *The government has announced it will bear down on* (= deal strictly with) *inflation.*

◆ v + adv + prep

'bear on/upon sb/sth (*formal*) to be connected with sb/sth; to have an effect on sb/sth: *This decision bears directly on our everyday lives.*

SYN **affect sb/sth**

NOTE This verb is mainly used in written English.

◆ v + prep

ˌbear sb/sth 'out (*especially BrE*) to show that sth is true or that what sb says is true; to support sb/sth: *I always said she'd do well. John will bear me out on this.* ◇ *John will bear out what I say.* ◇ *This theory is not borne out by the facts.*

◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbear 'up (under sth) to remain cheerful and in control in a difficult situation: *'How is your mother?' 'She's bearing up very well.'* ◇ *'How are you?' 'Oh, bearing up.'*

◆ v + adv

'bear upon sb/sth = BEAR ON/UPON SB/STH

'bear with sb to be patient with sb: *If you'll just bear with me for a moment, I'll try to find her.* ◇ *She's under a lot of strain. Just bear with her.*

NOTE **Bear with sb** is usually used in the present tense or to ask sb to be patient.

◆ v + prep

beat /biːt/ (**beat, beaten** /'biːtn/)

ˌbeat sb 'back to make sb move backwards away from sth: *She was beaten back by the flames.* ◇ *They tried to beat the enemy forces back.*

NOTE **Beat sb back** is usually used in the passive.

◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbeat 'down (on/upon sb/sth) 1 if the sun **beats down**, it shines with great heat: *The sun beat down all afternoon from a clear sky.* **2** if rain **beats down,** it falls with great force: *The rain was beating down on them.*

◆ v + adv

ˌbeat sb/sth 'down to persuade sb to reduce the price of sth; to get sb to accept a lower price for sth: *Chris tried to beat them down to a lower price.*

SYN **knock sb/sth down**

◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌbeat sth 'down 1 to hit sth hard, often many times, until it falls down: *The police had to beat the door down.* ◇ *People are hardly* ***beating the door down*** *to get her latest book* (= they are not rushing to buy it). **OBJ** **door** **SYN** **break sth down**; **batter sth down** **2** to make sth flatter or lower by hitting it hard, usually with sth flat: *I used a spade to beat down the mud until it was flat and hard.* ◇ *Two women tried to beat down the flames on his back.* **OBJ** **flames**

◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbeat sb/sth 'off 1 to drive sb/sth back or away by fighting: *They beat off an attack by the rebel army.* ◇ *He tried to beat the thugs off with a stick.* **OBJ** **attack, attacker** **2** to defeat sb/sth in a competition: *The company has beaten off very strong competition from abroad.* **OBJ** **challenge, competition**

◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

'beat on sb (*AmE, informal*) to hit or kick sb repeatedly

→ *see also* BEAT SB UP; BEAT UP ON SB

◆ v + prep

ˌbeat sth 'out 1 to produce a rhythm by hitting sth such as a drum repeatedly **OBJ** **rhythm** **2** to put out a fire by hitting it with sth such as a blanket, a jacket, a brush, etc: *He used his jacket to beat out the flames.* **OBJ** **flames, fire** **3** to make a piece of metal flat by hitting it with a hammer, etc: *Pure gold can be beaten out to form very thin sheets.* **OBJ** **gold/iron, dent**

◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌbeat sb 'out (for sth) (*AmE*) to defeat sb in a competition: *They beat out nine other companies for the contract.*

◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

'beat sb to sth; ˌbeat sb 'to it to achieve sth or reach a place before sb else: *Beckham beat everyone else to the ball.* ◇ *Book now before somebody else beats you to it!*

◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌbeat sb ˈup to hit or kick sb repeatedly: *Her husband used to beat her up.* ◇ *The gang went round beating up old ladies.*
SYN **bash sb up** (*informal, less frequent*)
→ *see also* BEAT UP ON SB
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ **ˌbeat-ˈup** (*especially AmE*) (*BrE usually* **ˌbeaten-ˈup**) *adj* [usually before noun] (*informal*) old or damaged: *He drives a beat-up old van.*

ˌbeat yourself ˈup (*informal*) to blame yourself for sth; to criticize yourself: *If we don't succeed the first time, we shouldn't beat ourselves up, but try again.*
◆ v + pron + adv

ˌbeat ˈup on sb (*AmE, informal*) to attack sb physically or with words: *Of course it's not OK to beat up on your wife.* ◇ *He was accused of beating up on the President in the press.*
→ *see also* BEAT ON SB
◆ v + adv + prep

beaver /ˈbiːvə(r)/

ˌbeaver aˈway **(at sth)** (*BrE, informal*) to work very hard at sth: *She's been beavering away at her homework for hours.*
◆ v + adv

become /bɪˈkʌm/ (**became** /bɪˈkeɪm/ **become**)

beˈcome of sb/sth (*formal*) to happen to sb/sth: *I wonder what became of the people who lived next door.* ◇ *What will become of us if I lose my job?*
NOTE **Become of sb/sth** is always used in a question with *what*.
◆ v + prep

bed /bed/ (-dd-)

ˌbed ˈdown (*BrE*) **1** to lie down to go to sleep somewhere you do not normally sleep: *Young people bedded down in doorways.* SYN **doss down** (*BrE, less formal*) **2** (*also* **ˌbed ˈin**) if sth/sb new **beds down**, it/they become settled and start to work well: *It'll take a while for the new system to bed down.* ◇ *The new players have bedded down well in the team.*
◆ v + adv

beef /biːf/

ˌbeef ˈup sth; **ˌbeef it/them ˈup** (*informal*) to make sth bigger, stronger, more interesting, etc: *Security has been beefed up.* ◇ *The company has been trying to beef up its image.*
NOTE A noun must always follow **up**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **up**.
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv
▶ **ˈbeefed-up** *adj* [only before noun] improved; made bigger, stronger, more interesting, etc: *beefed-up security*

beg /beg/ (-gg-)

ˌbeg ˈoff; **ˌbeg ˈoff sth**; **ˌbeg ˈoff doing sth** to ask to be excused from sth; to say that you cannot do sth that you are expected or have promised to do: *She was asked to work the weekend shift but she tried to beg off.* ◇ *He begged off visiting his grandparents.*
SYN **pull out, pull out of sth, pull out of doing sth**
→ *see also* CRY OFF, CRY OFF STH, CRY OFF DOING STH
◆ v + adv • v + prep

believe /bɪˈliːv/

beˈlieve in sb/sth **1** to feel sure that sb/sth exists: *Do you believe in ghosts?* ◇ *I believe in God.* ◇ *I don't believe in aliens.* → *see also* DISBELIEVE IN SB/STH **2** to have confidence in sb/sth, to feel sure that they/it will be successful or achieve sth: *My parents always believed in me.* ◇ *I have to believe in a product before I can sell it.*
◆ v + prep

beˈlieve in sth; **beˈlieve in doing sth** to feel that sth is right or valuable; to approve of sth: *Do you believe in capital punishment?* ◇ *She doesn't believe in running risks.* ◇ *I've always believed in giving people a second chance.*
◆ v + prep

beˈlieve sth of sb to accept that sb is capable of a particular action, etc., especially a bad or immoral one: *Taking drugs! I can't* ***believe that*** *of Lucy!* ◇ *If I hadn't seen him doing it, I would never have* ***believed it of him***. ◇ *She is determined to* ***believe the worst of me*** (= think I am capable of doing, and likely to do, sth very bad).
◆ v + n/pron + prep

belong /bɪˈlɒŋ; *AmE* -ˈlɔːŋ/

beˈlong to sb (*not used in the progressive tenses*) **1** to be the property of sb; to be owned by sb: *The house belonged to my cousin.* ◇ *That land belongs to the golf club.* ◇ *Who does the van belong to?* **2** if a time or an event **belongs to** a team, a group of people, etc. they are the most successful, popular or important: *Britain did well in the athletics competition, but the day belonged to Norway.* ◇ *The second half of the twentieth century belonged to the young.* **3** if a job, a duty, etc. **belongs to** you, it is your responsibility: *The job of disciplining a child belongs to the parents.* ◇ *The credit for our success belongs to the staff* (= they made us successful, for example by working hard).
◆ v + prep

beˈlong to sth **1** to be a member of sth, for example, a club, an organization or a family: *I don't belong to any political party.* ◇ *Portugal already belongs to the European Union.* OBJ **(trade) union, club, (political) party** **2** to be part of a particular group or system: *Rattlesnakes belong to the viper family.* ◇ *These three turtles all belong to one species.* OBJ **species, class, group, category** **3** to be part of sth or connected with a particular time or place: *These things belong to the past.* ◇ *Writers like him belong to a different generation.* OBJ **the past, generation**
◆ v + prep

belt /belt/

ˌbelt sth ˈdown (*AmE, informal*) to drink sth quickly: *He belted down his beer.*
SYN **knock sth back**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌbelt ˈout sth; **ˌbelt it/them ˈout** (*informal*) if you **belt out** a song or a piece of music, you sing or play it very loudly: *Nobody can belt out a tune like she can.* ◇ *A radio belted out pop music.*
NOTE A noun must always follow **out**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **out**.
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv

ˌbelt ˈup (*BrE, informal*) **1** (*spoken*) used to tell sb not very politely to be quiet: *Belt up, will you?* SYN **shut up** (*informal*) **2** to fasten the belt that you wear in a car to keep you in your seat if there is an accident (a **seat belt**) SYN **buckle up**
◆ v + adv

bend /bend/ (**bent, bent** /bent/)

ˌbend ˈdown to lean down: *He bent down and kissed her on the cheek.*
◆ v + adv

ˌbend ˈover; **ˌbend ˈover sth** to lean over; to bend from the waist: *Bend over and touch your toes.* ◇ *He was bending over his desk, writing.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep
IDM **bend over ˈbackwards (to do sth)** to do everything you can or make a great effort to do sth, especially to help sb: *We bend over backwards to be fair to all the children.*

bet /bet/ (**betting, bet, bet** or *less frequent* **betting, betted, betted**)

ˈbet on sth; **ˈbet on sb doing sth** to rely on sth or on sb doing sth and expect it to happen: *'Do you think she'll come?' 'I wouldn't bet on it* (= I don't think it is very likely).*'* ◇ *Don't bet on me still being here when you get back!*
SYN **count on sb/sth, count on doing sth, count on sb/sth doing sth**
◆ v + prep

bill /bɪl/

ˈbill sb/sth as sth to describe sb/sth in a particular way; to advertise sb/sth as sth: *Some patients are receiving what has been billed as a revolutionary treatment.* ◇ *The concert was billed as 'A Night of Magic'.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

bind /baɪnd/ (**bound, bound** /baʊnd/)

ˌbind sb ˈover (*law*) to warn sb that they will have to appear in court if they break the law again: *He was bound over to keep the peace.*
NOTE **Bind sb over** is usually used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈbind sb to sth (*formal*) to force sb to do sth by making them promise to do it or making it part of a legal document: *The company directors are* ***bound to secrecy*** (= they have promised not to say anything) *about the future of the company.* ◇ *The band found they were bound to the contract.*
NOTE **Bind sb to sth** is usually used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌbind sth ˈup **(with sth)** to tie a long thin piece of fabric around sth to protect it: *She bound up his wounds with bandages.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
IDM **be bound ˈup in sth** to be very busy with sth; to be very interested or involved in sth: *He's too bound up in his work to have much time for his children.* **bound ˈup with sth** closely connected with sth: *The history of the company is closely bound up with the history of the Grant family.*

bite /baɪt/ (**bit** /bɪt/, **bitten** /ˈbɪtn/)

ˈbite at sth to try to bite sth: *The dog bit at the boy's hand.*
◆ v + prep

ˌbite ˈback **(at sb/sth)** to react when sb has harmed you and try to harm or criticize them: *If you criticize him, he'll bite back.*
SYN **hit back (at sb/sth)**
◆ v + adv

ˌbite sth ˈback to stop yourself from saying sth or from showing how you feel: *She struggled to bite back the tears of disappointment.* ◇ *Mike bit back his anger.* ◇ *The word 'idiot' came into her head, but she bit it back.*
OBJ **words, anger, retort** SYN **suppress sth**
NOTE **Bite sth back** is not used in the passive.
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌbite ˈinto sth **1** to cut or press into the surface of sth: *The collar bit into his neck.* SYN **cut into sth** **2** to have an unpleasant effect on sth, especially by making it smaller: *The recession is biting into our profits.*
◆ v + prep

ˌbite sth ˈoff to cut sth off by biting it: *She bit off a piece of chocolate.* ◇ *His finger had been bitten off by a dog.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
IDM **bite/snap sb's ˈhead off** (*informal*) to shout at sb or speak to them angrily, often for no good reason: *I only asked him when the work would be finished and he almost bit my head off.* **bite off more than you can ˈchew** (*informal*) to try to do

too much or sth that is too difficult for you: *This time he's bitten off more than he can chew.* **I, etc. could have bitten my/his/her 'tongue off/out** used to say that you wish you hadn't said sth that you have just said: *Sam looked hurt and Maria could have bitten her tongue off.*

black /blæk/

ˌblack 'out to lose consciousness or lose your memory for a short time: *The pain hit him and he blacked out.*
◈ v + adv
▶ **'blackout** *n* a temporary loss of consciousness or of memory: *When did you start having these blackouts?*
→ *see also* BLACKOUT at BLACK STH OUT

ˌblack sth 'out to turn out lights completely or cover windows, etc. so that light cannot be seen from outside: *blacked out windows/houses* ◇ *The city was often blacked out* (= there were no lights because there was no electricity) *by power cuts.*
OBJ **window, city**
NOTE **Black sth out** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)
▶ **'blackout 1** (*especially BrE*) (in the past) a period of time during a war when the streets and buildings were kept as dark as possible so that the enemy could not see what to bomb **2** [usually pl.] (*BrE*) a covering for windows that stops light from outside coming in, or that stops bright light being seen from outside: *blackout material* **3** (*also* **'outage** *AmE*) a period of time when the electricity supply to a place stops completely NOTE This is now the most common meaning of **blackout**. **4** a situation when the government or the police prevent a radio or television programme from being broadcast, or do not allow some news or information to be given to the public: *The government have been accused of maintaining a news blackout over election fraud.*
→ *see also* BLACKOUT at BLACK OUT

blank /blæŋk/

ˌblank 'out (*AmE, informal*) if you or your mind **blanks out**, you can't remember anything or you become confused: *I hope I don't blank out in the exam.*
NOTE **Blank** has the same meaning.
◈ v + adv

ˌblank sth 'out 1 to deliberately forget sth unpleasant: *Your childhood may have been difficult but you can't just blank it out.* **2** to cover sth written or printed, for example, with black ink so that it cannot be read: *All the names in the report had been blanked out.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

blare /bleə(r); *AmE* bler/

ˌblare 'out; ˌblare sth 'out if music **blares out**, or a radio, etc. **blares out** music, it is produced or played very loudly: *Music was blaring out from somewhere.* ◇ *The radio was blaring out rock music.*
SYN **blast out, blast sth out** (*less frequent*)
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

blast /blɑːst; *AmE* blæst/

ˌblast a'way (at sb/sth) if a gun or sb using a gun **blasts away**, the gun fires loudly and continuously: *The machine guns blasted away all night.*
◈ v + adv

ˌblast sb/sth a'way (*less frequent*) to kill sb or remove sth or break it apart violently, for example with a gun, explosives, etc: *They have blasted away the side of this beautiful valley to make a road.* ◇ (*figurative*) *This theory has been blasted away by the new evidence.*
SYN **blow sb/sth away**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv (*rare*)

ˌblast 'off when a spacecraft **blasts off**, it leaves the ground and goes up into space: *The rocket blasted off at 7.28 p.m.*
SYN **lift off**
◈ v + adv
▶ **'blast-off** *n* [U] the moment when a spacecraft leaves the ground: *Blast-off will be in 30 seconds.*

ˌblast 'out; ˌblast sth 'out if music **blasts out** or a radio, etc. **blasts out** music, it is produced or played very loudly: *A Beatles song was blasting out at full volume.* ◇ *The radio was blasting out heavy rock music.*
SYN **blare out, blare sth out**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

blaze /bleɪz/

ˌblaze a'way 1 (at sb/sth) if guns or people **blaze away**, the guns fire continuously: *The guns kept blazing away at the enemy.* **2** if a fire **blazes away**, it burns brightly
NOTE **Blaze** is used with the same meanings.
◈ v + adv

ˌblaze 'up if a fire **blazes up**, it suddenly starts burning more strongly: (*figurative*) *His anger blazed up uncontrollably.*
◈ v + adv

blend /blend/

ˌblend 'in 1 (with sth) if something **blends in** with sth else or with its surroundings, it looks similar to it/them or matches well: *The curtains blend in perfectly with the carpet.* ◇ *The new office block doesn't blend in well with its traditional surroundings.* **2 (with sb)** if sb **blends in** with other people, they become similar to the people around them: *He should try to blend in with the locals a bit more.*
→ *see also* BLEND INTO STH; MERGE IN (WITH STH), MERGE INTO STH
◈ v + adv

ˌblend sth 'in 1 (in cooking) to add another substance to sth and mix them together: *Heat the butter gently and then blend in a little flour.* SYN **mix sth in 2** to make a substance mix with another so that you cannot see where one ends and the other starts: *Blend the eyeshadow in with your fingers.* ◇ *He blended in the charcoal lines to make the picture look softer.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌblend 'into sth to look or sound so similar to sth that it is difficult for anyone to see or hear it separately: *The animals can become almost invisible by blending into the long grass.* ◇ *The new development should blend into its surroundings.*
OBJ **background, surroundings**
→ *see also* BLEND IN; MERGE IN (WITH STH), MERGE INTO STH
◈ v + prep

blimp /blɪmp/

ˌblimp 'out/'up (*AmE, informal*) to become fat; to gain weight
◈ v + adv

blink /blɪŋk/

ˌblink sth a'way to clear sth from the eyes by blinking (= closing and opening your eyes quickly): *He blinked away a tear.*
OBJ **tears**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌblink sth 'back to try to control your tears: *I found myself blinking back tears during his speech.*
OBJ only **tear(s)**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

block /blɒk; *AmE* blɑːk/

ˌblock sb/sth 'in to stop a vehicle from being driven away by parking too close to it: *You're blocking that Mini in.* ◇ *Somebody had parked in front of me, blocking me in.* ◇ *I was blocked in by two lorries so I had to leave the car and walk.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌblock sth 'off 1 to close a road or another place by placing a barrier across it to stop sb/sth going in or coming out: *The police blocked the street off.* ◇ *The pipe had been blocked off to prevent further leaks.* OBJ **street, road, area, entrance** SYN **close sth off (to sth/sb) 2** (*especially AmE*) to reserve a period of time for a particular activity: *Thursday afternoons are blocked off for sports.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌblock sth 'out to stop light or noise from coming in; to cover or hide sth: *The trees blocked out much of the sunlight.* ◇ (*figurative*) *I'm so used to the traffic noise now I just block it out* (= I don't hear it).
OBJ **light, sun, sound**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌblock sb/sth 'out; ˌblock sb/sth 'out of sth to avoid remembering sb/sth or thinking about sb/sth, especially sth unpleasant: *He tried to block the incident out of his mind.*
SYN **blot sb/sth out, blot sb/sth out of sth; shut sth out, shut sth out of sth; suppress sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌblock sth 'up to fill sth such as a hole completely so that nothing can get through it: *All the windows had been blocked up.*
OBJ **window, door, hole, fireplace**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▶ **ˌblocked 'up** *adj* completely full; not clear: *I've got a blocked-up nose.*

blot /blɒt; *AmE* blɑːt/ (-tt-)

ˌblot sb/sth 'out; ˌblot sb/sth 'out of sth to avoid remembering sb/sth or thinking about sb/sth, especially sth unpleasant: *He wanted to blot out the memory.*
OBJ **memories, thoughts** SYN **block sb/sth out, block sb/sth out of sth; shut sth out, shut sth out of sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌblot sth 'out to stop light or noise coming in; to cover or hide sth: *Dark clouds were blotting out the sun.*
OBJ **light, sun, stars, sound** SYN **block sth out**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

blow /bləʊ; *AmE* bloʊ/ (**blew** /bluː/ **blown** /bləʊn; *AmE* bloʊn/)

18
~ away
~ down
~ in, into
~ off
~ out
~ over
~ up

ˌblow a'way; ˌblow sth a'way to be moved or carried away by the force of the wind or by sb's breath; to move in this way: *It was so windy the tent nearly blew away!* ◇ *A sudden breeze blew his newspaper away.* ◇ *She blew away the dust on the lid.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌblow sb a'way 1 (*informal*) to impress sb a lot; to surprise or please sb: *I saw her performance on Broadway last year and it just blew me away.*

2 (*AmE, informal, sport*) to defeat sb easily: *Mitchell blew away the other runners.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌblow sb/sth aˈway to kill sb or remove or destroy sth with explosives or with a gun: *He threatened to blow us away.* ◇ *They blew his kneecaps away* (= by shooting them).
SYN **blast sb/sth away**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌblow ˈdown; ˌblow sth ˈdown if sth **blows down**, or the wind **blows it down**, it falls to the ground because of the force of the wind: *An old oak tree had blown down in the storm.* ◇ *Hundreds of trees have been blown down this winter.*
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌblow ˈin; ˌblow ˈinto sth (*informal*) to arrive somewhere where you are not expected: *Look who's just blown in!* ◇ *Have you heard who's just blown into town?*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˌblow ˈoff; ˌblow sth ˈoff; ˌblow sth ˈoff sth 1 if sth **blows off**, or the wind **blows it off**, it is removed by the force of the wind: *My hat blew off.* ◇ *A gust of wind blew her cap off.* ◇ *The roof was blown off the Greens' house.* **2** if sth **blows off** in an explosion, or an explosion **blows sth off** it is violently removed: *The door blew off in the explosion.* ◇ *The explosion blew the roof off (the house).*
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep
IDM **blow/knock sb's ˈsocks off** to impress or surprise sb very much: *When I first heard the song, it blew my socks off.*

ˌblow ˈoff sth; ˌblow it ˈoff (*AmE, informal*) to decide not to do sth you should do or were planning to do: *Jessica blew off her classes on Friday afternoon to go shopping.*
NOTE A noun must follow **off**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **off**.
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv

ˌblow sb ˈoff (*AmE, informal*) to disappoint sb by not meeting them as arranged; to end a relationship with sb: *We were supposed to go out yesterday, but he blew me off.*
SYN **stand sb up**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌblow ˈout 1 if a tyre **blows out**, it bursts suddenly: *One of the front tyres blew out.* SYN **burst** **2** if an oil or gas well **blows out**, it suddenly sends out gas with great force
◈ v + adv
▶ ˈ**blowout** *n* **1** an occasion when a tyre bursts on a vehicle while it is being driven **2** an occasion when oil or gas suddenly escapes from an oil well **3** (*BrE, informal*) a large meal at which people eat too much **4** (*AmE, informal*) a large party or social occasion
→ *see also* BLOWOUT at BLOW SB OUT

ˌblow ˈout; ˌblow sth ˈout 1 if a flame **blows out** or sb/sth **blows it out**, it is put out by the wind or some air: *There was a sudden gust of wind and the candle blew out.* ◇ *She took a deep breath and blew out all the candles.* **2** if a window **blows out**, or an explosion, etc. **blows it out**, the force makes it fall out: *All the windows blew out in the blast.* ◇ *The explosion blew out the windows in the building.*
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌblow sb ˈout (*AmE, informal, sport*) to defeat sb easily: *The home team blew out the Suns by 30 points.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ ˈ**blowout** *n* (*AmE, informal, sport*) an easy victory
→ *see also* BLOWOUT at BLOW OUT

ˌblow sth ˈout 1 to breathe sth out from your mouth: *She inhaled and then blew the smoke out.* SYN **exhale sth** **2** to fill sth, especially your cheeks, with air: *She blew out her cheeks in exasperation.* OBJ **cheeks**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
IDM **blow your/sb's ˈbrains out** (*informal*) to kill yourself/sb by shooting yourself/them in the head

ˌblow itself ˈout if a storm **blows itself out**, it loses its force and stops: *By morning the storm had blown itself out.*
◈ v + pron + adv

ˌblow ˈover 1 if a storm **blows over**, it becomes less strong and stops: *We sheltered in a barn until the storm blew over.* SYN **die down; subside** **2** if sth such as an argument **blows over**, it becomes less important and is forgotten: *Don't come back to work until the argument has blown over.* SYN **subside**
◈ v + adv

ˌblow ˈover; ˌblow sb/sth ˈover if sb/sth **blows over** or the wind **blows sb/sth over**, they fall to the ground because of the force of the wind: *One of the trees had blown over in the storm.* ◇ *The fence had been blown over in a storm.*
NOTE **Blow sb/sth over** is often used in the passive: *Pedestrians were blown over in gale force winds today.*
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

ˌblow ˈup 1 to explode; to be destroyed by an explosion: *The bomb blew up as experts tried to defuse it.* ◇ *The car blew up when it hit the wall.* SYN **explode** (*more formal*) **2** to start suddenly and with force: *A storm blew up just after the ship left port.* ◇ *A row has blown up over the leaking of information to the press.* OPP **die down** **3** (**at sb**) (*informal*) to become very angry: *My mum blew up at my dad for keeping me up so late.* ◇ *His attitude annoyed me and I blew up.*
◈ v + adv

IDM **blow up in sb's ˈface** if a plan, a deal or a situation **blows up in your face**, it goes very badly wrong and causes you harm or embarrassment
▶ ˈ**blow-up** *n* **1** (*especially AmE*) an explosion **2** (*AmE*) an occasion when sb becomes very angry; an argument: *The tensions between them ended in a big blow-up.*
→ *see also* BLOW-UP at BLOW STH UP

ˌblow sb/sth ˈup to kill sb or destroy sth with a bomb or an explosion: *The hijackers threatened to blow the plane up.* ◇ *A judge in Italy was blown up by a car bomb last week.*
NOTE **Blow sb/sth up** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌblow sth ˈup 1 to fill sth with air or gas: *You need to blow up the tyres on your bike.* OBJ **balloon, tyre** SYN **inflate sth** (*more formal*) OPP **let sth down** **2** to make sth larger: *What a lovely photo! Why don't you have it blown up?* OBJ **photo** SYN **enlarge sth** (*more formal*) **3** to make sth seem more important, better or worse than it really is: *The whole affair has been **blown up out of all proportion**.* SYN **exaggerate sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ ˈ**blow-up** *n* a larger picture made from a photo or picture: *The blow-up showed a scar on the attacker's cheek.*
→ *see also* BLOW-UP at BLOW UP
▶ ˈ**blow-up** *adj* [only before noun] that you can fill with air or gas
→ *see also* BLOW-UP at BLOW UP

bluff /blʌf/

ˌbluff sb ˈout (*old-fashioned, informal, especially AmE*) to lie and pretend in order to deceive sb
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌbluff it ˈout (*especially BrE*) to lie and deceive sb in order to get out of a difficult situation, especially when they suspect you are not being honest: *If he asks any difficult questions, you'll have to bluff it out.* ◇ *I know everything so there's no point trying to bluff it out.*
◈ v + it + adv

ˌbluff sb ˈout of sth (*old-fashioned, AmE*) to deceive sb in order to get sth from them
SYN, **cheat sb of sth, cheat sb out of sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep

blunder /ˈblʌndə(r)/

ˌblunder aˈround; ˌblunder aˈround sth (*also* **ˌblunder aˈbout/ˈround, ˌblunder aˈbout/ˈround sth** *especially BrE*) to move about a place in an awkward or uncertain way, knocking into things: *He blundered about in the dark, feeling for the light switch.* ◇ *I blundered around the flat, trying to be quiet.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˌblunder ˈinto sth 1 to walk into sb/sth because you are awkward or unable to see: *She blundered into a tree.* **2** to accidentally find yourself in a difficult or dangerous place or situation: *She blundered into a dangerous area of the city after losing her way.* ◇ *He had innocently blundered into a private dispute.*
◈ v + prep

blurt /blɜːt; *AmE* blɜːrt/

ˌblurt sth ˈout to say sth suddenly and without thinking carefully: *'There's been an accident,' she blurted out.* ◇ *He found himself blurting out the whole story to her.*
◈ v + adv + speech • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

board /bɔːd; *AmE* bɔːrd/

ˌboard sth ˈup to cover a window or a door with boards: *All the windows had been boarded up.*
OBJ **window, house, shop**
NOTE **Board sth up** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

bob /bɒb; *AmE* bɑːb/ (-bb-)

ˌbob ˈup 1 to come to the surface quickly: *She dived in and bobbed up a few seconds later in the middle of the pool.* **2** to appear suddenly: *She bobbed up from behind the fence.* SYN **pop up**
◈ v + adv

bog /bɒg; *AmE* bɔːg/ (-gg-)

ˌbog ˈdown (*AmE*) to be unable to make progress: *The bill bogged down after being passed by Congress.*
◈ v + adv

be/get ˌbogged ˈdown (in sth) 1 to be/get stuck in mud or wet ground; to become stuck in sth and unable to make progress: *The car got bogged down in the mud.* **2** to be unable to make progress in an activity: *Don't get bogged down in details.* ◇ *I'm rather bogged down (with work) at the moment.*
◈ be/get + v + adv

ˌbog ˈoff (*BrE, slang*) used to tell sb rudely to go away: *Bog off, I'm trying to sleep!*
SYN **clear off** (*informal*)
◈ v + adv

boil /bɔɪl/

ˌboil aˈway if a liquid **boils away**, it boils until there is nothing left: *The water in the saucepan had all boiled away.*
SYN **evaporate** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv

ˌboil sth ˈdown 1 to make a liquid less in quantity by boiling it SYN **reduce sth** (*more formal*)

2 **(to sth)** to make sth smaller by removing unimportant parts and leaving only the essential things: *Boil the report down to the key points.*
SYN **condense sth** (*more formal*)
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌboil ˈdown to sth (*not used in the progressive tenses*) if a situation, an issue, etc. **boils down to sth**, it has that as its main part: *It all boils down to money in the end.*
G v + adv + prep

ˌboil ˈover 1 if a liquid in a pan, etc. **boils over**, it boils and flows over the side of the pan: *Don't let the milk boil over.* **2** **(into sth)** (*informal*) if anger, an argument, etc. **boils over**, it changes and becomes very violent and difficult to control: *The unrest could boil over into civil war.* ◇ *She interrupted swiftly before his temper could boil over again.* SYN **explode**
G v + adv

ˌboil ˈup if anger, an argument, etc. **boils up**, it starts to become stronger or more violent
G v + adv

ˌboil sth ˈup (*BrE*) to heat a liquid or some food until it boils: *I'll boil the kettle up again and we'll have a cup of tea.*
NOTE **Boil sth** can be used with the same meaning.
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

bollix /ˈbɒlɪks; *AmE* ˈbɑːl-/

ˌbollix sth ˈup (*AmE, slang*) to confuse or change sth; to spoil sth
SYN **mess sth up** (*informal*), **screw sth up** (*slang*)
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

bolster /ˈbəʊlstə(r); *AmE* ˈboʊl-/

ˌbolster sb/sth ˈup to support or encourage sb; to make sth better or stronger: *He tried to bolster up their morale.* ◇ *The high interest rates helped to bolster up the economy.*
OBJ **confidence, morale**
NOTE **Bolster sb/sth** is more frequent.
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

bolt /bəʊlt; *AmE* boʊlt/

ˌbolt sth ˈdown (*informal*) to eat sth very quickly: *I had to bolt down my breakfast.*
OBJ **food**
NOTE **Bolt sth** is also used with this meaning.
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

bomb /bɒm; *AmE* bɑːm/

ˌbomb aˈlong (*informal, especially BrE*) to move very fast, usually in a vehicle
G v + adv

ˌbomb ˈout (*informal, especially AmE*) to fail very badly: *The movie bombed out at the box office.*
NOTE **Bomb** is also used with the same meaning.
G v + adv

be/get ˌbombed ˈout; be/get ˌbombed ˈout of sth if a person is bombed out, their home is destroyed by bombs; if a building is **bombed out**, it is destroyed by bombs: *They got bombed out.*
G be/get + v + adv • be/get + v + adv + prep

bone /bəʊn; *AmE* boʊn/

ˌbone ˈup on sth (*informal*) to study sth; to look again at sth you already know: *I must bone up on my French before we go to Paris.*
G v + adv + prep

book /bʊk/

ˌbook ˈin **(at sth)**, **ˌbook ˈinto sth** (*BrE*) to arrive at a hotel and arrange to have a room: *They booked in (at the St Francis Hotel) using a false name.* ◇ *She booked into a hotel in the centre of Boston.*
SYN **check in (at sth); check into sth**
OPP **check out, check out of sth**
G v + adv • v + prep

ˌbook sb/yourself ˈin **(at sth)**, **ˌbook sb/yourself ˈinto sth** (*BrE*) to reserve a room at a hotel, etc. for sb: *I've booked us in at the Plaza.* ◇ *The hotel I was booked into was awful.* ◇ *He's booked himself into a rehabilitation clinic.*
OBJ **hotel**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌbook ˈup **(for sth)** (*especially BrE*) to reserve a place, for example on a trip or a course: *I booked up for the course months in advance.*
NOTE **Book (for sth)** can be used with the same meaning.
G v + adv

be ˌbooked ˈup 1 if a plane, restaurant, theatre, etc. **is booked up**, there are no seats, tables, etc. available: *All the flights are booked up.* NOTE **Be fully booked** is often used with the same meaning. **2** (*informal*) if a person is **booked up**, they have no time available: *He can't see you tomorrow, he's booked up.*
G be + v + adv

boom /buːm/

ˌboom ˈout if a sound or sb's voice **booms out**, it makes a loud, deep noise: *His voice boomed out, announcing the winners.*
G v + adv

ˌboom ˈout sth to say sth in a loud deep voice: *She boomed out instructions through a loud hailer.* ◇ *A voice boomed out: 'Nobody move!'*
G v + adv + n • v + adv + speech

boot /buːt/

ˌboot sb ˈout; ˌboot sb ˈout of sth (*informal, especially BrE*) to force sb to leave a place, job, school, club, etc: *I'll have to boot you out soon — I want to lock up.* ◇ *The manager booted him out of the team.* ◇ *He was booted out of the house by his father.*
SYN **kick sb out, kick sb out of sth** (*informal*), **throw sb out, throw sb out of sth**
NOTE **Boot sb out, boot sb out of sth** are often used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n •
v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌboot ˈup; ˌboot sth ˈup (*computing*) if a computer **boots up**, or sb **boots it up**, it is turned on and becomes ready to use: *My machine isn't booting up properly.* ◇ *When you boot up, a menu will appear on the screen.* ◇ *Boot the computer up and enter your password.*
OBJ **computer**
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

border /ˈbɔːdə(r); *AmE* ˈbɔːrd-/

ˈborder on sth (*also* **ˈborder upon sth** *more formal*) **1** to share a border with another country or region; to be next to a place: *Many states bordering on the EU are eager to join.* ◇ *Their garden borders on the River Severn.* **2** to come close to being sth: *Her self-confidence borders on arrogance.* ◇ *Our task borders on the impossible.* SYN **verge on sth**
G v + prep

bore /bɔː(r)/

ˌbore ˈinto sb/sth (*literary*) if somebody's eyes **bore into sb/sth**, they stare in a way that makes sb feel uncomfortable: *His blue eyes seemed to bore into her.*
G v + prep

boss /bɒs; *AmE* bɔːs/

ˌboss sb aˈround (*also* **ˌboss sb aˈbout** *especially BrE*) (*informal*) to tell sb what to do in a forceful or unpleasant way: *He's always bossing his wife around.*
G v + n/pron + adv

botch /bɒtʃ; *AmE* bɑːtʃ/

ˌbotch sth ˈup (*informal*) to spoil sth by doing it badly; to do sth badly: *Instead of fixing my computer, he's botched it up completely.*
SYN **mess sth up**
NOTE **Botch sth** is used more frequently with the same meaning: *botched attempts at DIY*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈbotch-up** (*also* **botch**) *n* (*informal, especially BrE*) a piece of work that is badly done

bottle /ˈbɒtl; *AmE* ˈbɑːtl/

ˌbottle ˈout; ˌbottle ˈout of sth; ˌbottle ˈout of doing sth (*BrE, informal*) to suddenly decide not to do sth because you are too frightened: *I bottled out of phoning him at the last minute.*
SYN **chicken out, chicken out of sth, chicken out of doing sth**
G v + adv • v + adv + prep

ˌbottle sth ˈup to keep your feelings, especially sadness or anger, hidden and not tell other people how you are feeling: *Tell someone how you're feeling, instead of bottling it all up.*
OBJ **emotions, feelings**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

bottom /ˈbɒtəm; *AmE* ˈbɑːtəm/

ˌbottom ˈout if markets, prices or bad situations **bottom out**, they reach their lowest point and then stop getting worse: *The recession has finally bottomed out.*
G v + adv

bounce /baʊns/

ˌbounce sth aˈround (*informal, especially AmE*) to discuss sth with other people: *We're bouncing some new ideas around.*
OBJ **ideas**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌbounce ˈback **(from sth)** (*AmE also* **ˌsnap ˈback (into sth)**) (*informal*) to recover well after you have been ill/sick or had a difficult time: *No matter what happens, she always bounces back very quickly.*
SYN **recover (from sth)** (*more formal*)
G v + adv

ˌbounce ˈback; ˌbounce sth ˈback if an e-mail **bounces back**, or the system **bounces it back**, it returns to the person who sent it because the system cannot deliver it
G v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌbounce sb ˈinto sth; ˌbounce sb ˈinto doing sth (*especially BrE*) to make or force sb to do sth quickly without giving them time to think about it: *I felt I'd been bounced into supporting a proposal I didn't really agree with.*
NOTE This phrasal verb is often used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + prep

ˌbounce sth ˈoff sb (*informal*) to tell sb else your ideas to find out what they think about them: *We were able to share problems and bounce ideas off each other.*
OBJ **ideas**
G v + n/pron + prep

bow /baʊ/

ˌbow ˈdown 1 (to/before sb/sth) to move your head or the top part of your body forwards or downwards as a sign of respect: *He refused to bow down before the king.* **2 (to sb/sth)** to do what sb tells you to do without trying to resist: *We refuse to just bow down and let the government do whatever it wants.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌbow ˈout; **ˌbow ˈout of sth** to stop doing an activity or a job that you have been doing successfully, often for a long time: *After thirty years in politics, he feels it is time to bow out.* ◇ *Smith will bow out of professional football at the end of the season.*

Ⓖ v + adv • v + adv + prep

ˈbow to sth to agree unwillingly to do sth or to accept sth that sb else wants you to: *The government eventually bowed to public pressure.*

OBJ **pressure, the inevitable**

SYN **give in (to sb/sth)**

Ⓖ v + prep

bowl /bəʊl; *AmE* boʊl/

ˌbowl sb ˈout (in cricket) to make the person who is hitting the ball (the **batsman**) have to leave the field by throwing a ball that they cannot hit and that hits the wicket (= the three sticks behind the batsman); to dismiss a whole team in this way

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌbowl sb ˈover to surprise or impress sb a lot; to affect sb deeply: *We were bowled over by the news.* ◇ *Philip bowled us all over by deciding to go into advertising.*

NOTE **Bowl sb over** is often used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

box /bɒks; *AmE* bɑːks/

ˌbox sb ˈin to prevent sb from doing what they want, especially by creating rules or other difficulties: *The President was unable to act because the Democrats were boxing him in.* ◇ *She was boxed in by rules and regulations.*

NOTE **Box sb in** is often used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌbox sb/sth ˈin to prevent a person or a vehicle from moving by surrounding them/it with other people or vehicles: *You can't park here you're boxing that car in!* ◇ *He couldn't overtake the leader because he was boxed in by the other runners.*

NOTE **Box sb/sth in** is often used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌbox sth ˈup to put sth in a box or boxes: *She boxed up all the old baby clothes to send to her niece.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

branch /brɑːntʃ; *AmE* bræntʃ/

ˌbranch ˈoff 1 if a road or path **branches off**, it leaves a larger one and goes in a different direction: *She followed the path until it branched off.* ◇ *Over the bridge a road branches off to the right.* **2** if a person **branches off**, they leave a road or path and travel in a different direction: *Go past the farm and branch off towards the trees.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌbranch ˈout (into sth) to begin to do a new job or an activity that you do not usually do: *The company is branching out into Europe.* ◇ *She's leaving the company to* ***branch out on her own***.

Ⓖ v + adv

brazen /ˈbreɪzn/

ˌbrazen ˈout sth; **ˌbrazen it ˈout** to behave in a confident way as if you are not ashamed or embarrassed about sth you have done, even though you should be: *The senator* ***brazened it out*** *as the list of scandals grew.*

NOTE A noun must always follow **out**, but **it** comes between the verb and **out**.

Ⓖ v + it + adv • v + adv + n

break /breɪk/ (broke /brəʊk; *AmE* broʊk/ broken /ˈbrəʊkən; *AmE* ˈbroʊkən/)

~ away
23 ~ down
~ in
~ into
~ off
24 ~ out
~ out in/into
~ through
~ up
25 ~ with

ˌbreak aˈway 1 (from sth) if an object **breaks away** from sth that is holding it in place, it becomes separated from it: *The boat had broken away from its moorings.* **2 (from sb)** to escape suddenly from sb who is holding you or keeping you prisoner: *The prisoner broke away from the guards.* **3 (from sb/sth)** to leave a group or an organization, such as a political party or a state, because of a disagreement, usually in order to form a new one: *Several MPs broke away to form a new party.* ◇ *Two states broke away from the federation.* **4 (from sb/sth)** to move away from a group of people or a crowd: *She managed to break away from the pack* (= in a race) *and establish a lead.* ◇ *He broke away from the group and came over to talk to us.* **5 (from sb/sth)** to reject a tradition or the usual way of doing things and do sth new and different: *The company is trying to break away from its traditional image.*

Ⓖ v + adv

▸ **ˈbreakaway** *adj* [only before noun] a **breakaway** group, political party or part of a country is one that leaves a larger group: *a breakaway faction/movement/republic*

▸ **ˈbreakaway** *n* [sing.] an act of separating from a larger group/state, etc.

ˌbreak ˈdown 1 if a vehicle, etc. **breaks down**, it stops working because of a fault: *The washing machine has broken down again.* ◇ *We* (= our car) *broke down twice on the way home.* **2** if talks, a marriage, etc. **break down**, they fail: *Negotiations between the two sides have broken down.* ◇ *Their marriage broke down after three years.* **3** to lose control of your feelings and start crying: *As she drove away, I just broke down and wept.* **4** if your health **breaks down**, it becomes very bad: *Her health broke down as a result of the strain.* **5 (into sth)** to be divided into parts so that it is easier to discuss, to analyse or to deal with: *My weekly budget breaks down as follows: 50% for rent, 20% for food, 10% for travel, and 20% for everything else.* ◇ *The job breaks down into seven parts.* → *see also* BREAK STH DOWN 3 **6 (into sth)** if a substance **breaks down**, it separates into different parts or changes into sth else in a chemical process: *Some pesticides break down safely in water.* → *see also* BREAK STH DOWN 4

Ⓖ v + adv

▸ **ˈbreakdown** *n* **1** [C] an occasion when a vehicle or a machine stops working: *We had a breakdown on the way home.* ◇ *a breakdown truck* **2** [C] [U] a failure of talks, a marriage, law and order, etc: *a breakdown in communication* ◇ *They were both responsible for the breakdown of their marriage.* **3** [C] a period of mental illness when sb becomes tired, depressed and unable to lead a normal life: *He had a* ***nervous breakdown*** *last year.* **4** [C, usually sing.] detailed information or figures that are the results of dividing sth into its parts to explain it more clearly: *Get me a breakdown of how the money was spent.* **5** [U] the act of dividing a substance into its parts in a chemical process

▸ **ˌbroken-ˈdown** *adj* [usually before noun] **1** (of a vehicle or a machine) not working: *a broken-down car* **2** in a poor condition: *a broken-down wall*

ˌbreak sth ˈdown 1 to make sth fall down or open by hitting it hard: *They had to get the police to break the door down.* OBJ **door** SYN **knock sth down** **2** to destroy or remove sth, especially a problem or an attitude or opinion that sb has: *Our aim is to* ***break down barriers*** *that exist between teachers and parents.* OBJ **barriers** **3 (into sth)** to separate sth into smaller parts in order to analyse it or deal with it more easily: *I've broken down the costs by country.* ◇ *The company was broken down into smaller units.* ◇ *The question can be broken down into two parts.* → *see also* BREAK DOWN 5 **4 (into sth)** to make a substance separate into its parts or change in a chemical process: *Enzymes in the mouth and stomach break the food down.* → *see also* BREAK DOWN 6

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▸ **ˈbreakdown** *n* = BREAKDOWN at BREAK DOWN

▸ **ˌbroken-ˈdown** *adj* = BROKEN-DOWN at BREAK DOWN

ˌbreak ˈin 1 to enter a building illegally or by force: *Somebody broke in last night and stole the PC and video.* ◇ *The firefighters had to break in to rescue them.* → *see also* BREAK INTO STH 1 **2 (on sth)** to interrupt sb when they are speaking or doing sth: *He apologized for breaking in on their conversation.* ◇ *Mary broke in: 'It's not her fault!'*

Ⓖ **1** v + adv
2 v + adv • v + adv + speech

▸ **ˈbreak-in** *n* an entry into a building using force, usually illegally: *There has been a series of break-ins in the area.*

ˌbreak sb/sth ˈin to train a person so that they get used to a new job or situation; to train a horse so that you can ride it: *We try to break newcomers in gently.* ◇ *The horses hadn't been broken in.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌbreak sth ˈin 1 if you **break in** new shoes or boots, you wear them until they become comfortable: *It took me weeks to break in these new boots.* OBJ **boots, shoes** SYN **wear sth in** **2** (*AmE*) (in the past) to prepare the engine of a new car for normal use by driving it slowly and carefully OBJ **car** SYN **run sth in** (*BrE*)

Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌbreak ˈinto sth 1 to enter a building, open a car, etc. illegally and by force: *A thief can break into a car in under ten seconds.* ◇ *Three houses in our street have been broken into this week.* OBJ **house, car** NOTE **Break into sth** can be used in the passive in this meaning. → *see also* BREAK IN 1 **2** to suddenly begin to do sth such as laugh, cheer, run, etc: *He broke into a run when he saw the police.* ◇ *Her face broke into a huge smile.* ◇ *The audience broke into applause.* OBJ **smile/grin, run/trot, song, laughter** **3** (*BrE*) to use a banknote (= a piece of paper money) of high value to buy sth costing less: *I didn't want to break into a twenty-pound note.* **4** to interrupt sb's thoughts: *Her mother's voice broke into her thoughts.* OBJ **thoughts** SYN **disturb sth** **5** to start to get involved in an activity that it is difficult to become involved in and to be successful at it: *The company is having difficulty breaking into new markets.* ◇ *She is trying to break into journalism.* OBJ **market** **6** to open and use sth that you have been saving for an emergency or a special occasion: *I had to break into my savings to pay for the trip.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌbreak ˈoff; **ˌbreak sth ˈoff 1** (*also* **ˌbreak sth ˈoff sth**) to separate sth from sth else, using force; to become separated from sth in this way: *The leg of the table just broke off.* ◇ *A corner of*

her tooth had broken off. ◇ *He broke off a piece of chocolate and gave it to me.* **2** to stop speaking or stop doing sth suddenly before you have finished: *He broke off abruptly in the middle of a sentence.* ◇ *We had to break off our holiday and return home immediately.* ◇ *They broke off their conversation as I approached.*
◈ **1** v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep
2 v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌbreak sth ˈoff to end sth such as a relationship: *They've broken off their engagement.* ◇ *Britain threatened to break off diplomatic relations.* ◇ *They were having an affair but she* ***broke it off.***
OBJ **diplomatic relations, engagement, talks/negotiations** SYN **terminate sth** (*formal*)
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌbreak ˈout 1 if sth unpleasant such as a fire, a war, etc. **breaks out**, it starts suddenly: *They would have got married in 1939 if war had not broken out.* ◇ *A fire broke out on a ferry yesterday.*
SUBJ **war, fire, fighting, row, violence 2** (*also* **ˌbreak ˈout of sth**) to escape from a place or from a situation: *Two terrorists have broken out of Blackwall Prison.* ◇ *She longed to break out of the daily routine.* **3** if sth **breaks out** on your skin, your skin becomes covered in sth: (*AmE*) *I keep breaking out* (= I keep getting lots of spots). ◇ *Sweat broke out all over his body.*
◈ v + adv **2** also v + adv + prep
▸ ˈ**breakout** *n* an escape from prison
▸ ˈ**outbreak** *n* the start of sth or the sudden appearance of sth unpleasant or violent: *the outbreak of war* ◇ *an outbreak of food poisoning* ◇ *outbreaks of rain*

ˌbreak sth ˈout to get sth ready to be used, eaten, drunk, etc: *That's wonderful news! Let's break out the champagne!*
OBJ **champagne**
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌbreak ˈout in/into sth to suddenly become covered in sth such as sweat: *He broke out in a cold sweat at the thought of the trial.* ◇ *My skin has broken out in an itchy rash.*
OBJ **sweat, rash**
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌbreak ˈthrough (*especially AmE*) to achieve your first important success in sth; to make an important or new discovery: *Glenn Close broke through as a star with 'Fatal Attraction'.* ◇ *Scientists believe they have broken through in their fight against the disease.*
NOTE The phrase **to make a breakthrough** is used more often than **to break through**: *Scientists have made a major breakthrough in their fight against AIDS.*
◈ v + adv
▸ ˈ**breakthrough** *n* an important discovery or development; sb's first important success in sth: *an important breakthrough in the negotiations* ◇ *Jo was only 19 when he got his breakthrough as a DJ.*

ˌbreak ˈthrough; ˌbreak ˈthrough sth 1 to make a way through a barrier using force: *He ran towards the barrier in an attempt to break through.* ◇ *Demonstrators tried to break through the police cordon.* OBJ **barrier 2** (of the sun or moon) to appear from behind sth: *The sun finally broke through in the afternoon.* ◇ *It stopped raining and the sun broke through the clouds.*
→ *see also* BREAK THROUGH STH
◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˌbreak ˈthrough sth 1 to become greater in size or quantity than a particular level: *Unemployment figures have broken through the three million barrier.* **2** to succeed in dealing with a problem such as an attitude that sb has and the difficulties that it makes: *I tried hard to break through his silent mood.* ◇ *Women are starting to break through the barriers that keep them out of top management.* SYN **overcome sth** (*more formal*)
→ *see also* BREAK THROUGH, BREAK THROUGH STH
◈ v + prep

ˌbreak ˈup 1 (*especially BrE*) if a school or the children in it **break up**, school closes for the holidays at the end of a period of the school year (a **term**): *We break up for Christmas next week.* ◇ *Have the schools broken up yet?* **2** (of a relationship, a band, etc.) to come to an end; to stop working together: *Their marriage broke up after ten years.* ◇ *There are rumours that the band are breaking up.* SUBJ **marriage 3** (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) if the connection between two telephones, or two radios that are used for sending and receiving messages, is **breaking up**, the people speaking can no longer hear each other clearly: *The signal was breaking up.* ◇ *I'm sorry — what did you say?* ***You're breaking up.***
◈ v + adv

ˌbreak ˈup (with sb), ˌbreak sb ˈup to end a relationship with sb: *Rob and I broke up last week.* ◇ *She's just broken up with her boyfriend.* ◇ *I can't believe my best friend is really trying to break us up!*
SYN **split up (with/from sb), split sb up**
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ ˈ**break-up** *n* [C] [U] the ending of a marriage or a relationship: *He moved away after the break-up of his marriage.* ◇ *marriage break-up*
→ *see also* BREAK-UP at BREAK UP, BREAK SB/STH UP

ˌbreak ˈup; ˌbreak sb/sth ˈup 1 (into sth) if a group of people or a family **breaks up**, or sb **breaks it up**, the members separate and do not stay together: *The conference broke up into discussion groups.* ◇ *She had never intended to break up his family.* ◇ *The Soviet Union began to break up in 1991.* SYN **split up (into sth), split sb/sth up (into sth) 2** if a group of people meeting **break up**, or sb **breaks them up**, they go away in different directions: *The meeting broke up after two hours.* ◇ *Police broke up the demonstration.* ◇ *I don't want to* ***break up the party*** (= I don't want to make everyone else leave), *but I have to go.*
◈ v + adv • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)
▸ ˈ**break-up** *n* [C] [U] the division of a company, a country, an organization or a group of people into smaller parts: *the break-up of the Commonwealth* ◇ *family break-up*
→ *see also* BREAK-UP at BREAK UP (WITH SB), BREAK SB UP

ˌbreak ˈup (into sth), ˌbreak sth ˈup (into sth) if sth **breaks up**, or sb/sth **breaks it up**, it becomes separated into smaller pieces: *The ship broke up on the rocks.* ◇ *Break the chocolate up into small pieces.* ◇ *Sentences can be broken up into clauses.*
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌbreak sth ˈup to make sth that is rather boring, such as a period of time or a pattern, more interesting by adding sth different to it: *I break up my day by going for a walk in the afternoon.* ◇ *Drawings were used to break up the page.*
OBJ **day, monotony**
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˈbreak with sb/sth (*formal*) to end your connection or relationship with sb/sth because you no longer agree with them: *Nick broke with his father to set up his own firm.*
◈ v + prep

ˈbreak with sth (*formal*) to reject sth such as a tradition or the past and decide to do sth different: *The prince broke with tradition by going to study abroad.* ◇ *The new directors are eager to break with the past.*
OBJ **tradition, the past**
◈ v + prep

breathe /briːð/

ˌbreathe ˈin to take air into your lungs through your nose or mouth: *Breathe in through your nose as you stretch up.* ◇ *He breathed in deeply and then spoke.*
SYN **inhale** (*more formal*) OPP **breathe out**
◈ v + adv

ˌbreathe sth ˈin to take air, smoke, a smell, etc. in through your nose or mouth: *We walked along the beach, breathing in the sea air.*
OBJ **air, smoke** SYN **inhale sth** (*more formal*)
OPP **breathe sth out**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌbreathe sth ˈinto sth to fill sth with life, energy or enthusiasm: *She has* ***breathed fresh life into*** *the movie industry.*
OBJ **life**
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌbreathe ˈout to send air out of your lungs through your nose or mouth: *Breathe out slowly through your mouth as you stand up.*
SYN **exhale** (*more formal*) OPP **breathe in**
◈ v + adv

ˌbreathe sth ˈout to send air, smoke, etc. out through your nose or mouth: *Breathe the air out slowly and steadily.*
OBJ **air, smoke** SYN **exhale sth** (*more formal*)
OPP **breathe sth in**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

breeze /briːz/

ˌbreeze ˈin; ˌbreeze ˈinto sth (*informal*) to arrive somewhere or enter a place in a casual, cheerful and confident way: *She breezed in at eleven and greeted everyone with a smile.* ◇ *He breezed into the office and announced he was leaving.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˌbreeze ˈthrough sth (*informal*) to succeed in doing sth very easily: *She breezed through the first exam.*
◈ v + prep

brew /bruː/

ˌbrew ˈup; ˌbrew sth ˈup (*BrE, informal*) to prepare a hot drink of tea or coffee: *Come into the kitchen while I brew up.* ◇ *I'll brew up a fresh pot of tea when they arrive.*
OBJ **tea**
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)
▸ ˈ**brew-up** *n* (*BrE, informal*) an act of making a drink of tea; the drink that you make

brick /brɪk/

ˌbrick sth ˈin/ˈup to fill in or block an opening with bricks: *The fireplace had been bricked in some years before.* ◇ *Somebody had bricked up all the doors and windows.*
OBJ **window, fireplace, door**
NOTE **Brick sth in/up** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

brighten /ˈbraɪtn/

ˌbrighten ˈup 1 if the weather **brightens up**, it becomes clearer and brighter: *After a dull start, it should brighten up later.* SYN **clear up 2** if a

person **brightens up**, they become happier and more cheerful: *He brightened up when they said he could go with them.* SYN **cheer up**
◈ v + adv

ˌbrighten sth ˈup to make sth more interesting, exciting or attractive: *I've brought some flowers to brighten the place up a bit.* ◇ *Brighten up your bedroom with a few posters.*
OBJ **place, room** SYN **cheer sth up**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

brim /brɪm/ (-mm-)

ˌbrim ˈover (with sth) (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) if a cup or a container **brims over** with a liquid, it is so full that the liquid flows over the edge: *He filled my glass so full it was brimming over!* ◇ *Her eyes were brimming over with tears.*
SYN **overflow (with sth)** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv

ˌbrim ˈover with sth (*not used in the progressive tenses*) if sb **brims over with** sth, they show a lot of a particular quality: *She's brimming over with confidence and enthusiasm.*
OBJ **confidence, excitement**
◈ v + adv + prep

bring /brɪŋ/ (brought, brought /brɔːt/)

26 ~ about
~ along
~ around
~ around to
~ back
~ before
~ down
27 ~ down on/upon
~ forth
~ forward
~ in
~ into
~ off
~ on
28 ~ out
~ out in
~ over
~ round
~ round to
~ to
~ together
~ up
~ up against
29 ~ up to
~ upon

ˌbring sth aˈbout to make sth happen: *What has brought about this change?* ◇ *His nervous breakdown was brought about by stress.*
OBJ **change, the end/collapse of sth**
SYN **cause sth**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌbring sb aˈlong (*AmE*) = BRING SB ON

ˌbring sb/sth aˈlong to bring sb/sth somewhere with you: *Can I bring my sister along to the party?* ◇ *She brought some CDs along.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbring sb aˈround (*AmE*) = BRING SB ROUND

ˌbring sb/sth aˈround (*especially AmE*) = BRING SB/STH ROUND

ˌbring sth aˈround to sth (*especially AmE*) = BRING STH ROUND TO STH

ˌbring sb ˈback (to sth) 1 to return sb to a place; to take sb home: *I'll bring you back again after the party.* ◇ *She tried to bring him back* (= to make him return) *to the matter in hand.* ◇ *Putting the driver of the car in prison won't bring my sister back* (= return her to life after she has been killed). **2** to put sb back in their old job or position: *United have brought back their old manager.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbring sth ˈback 1 (to sth) to return sth to the place it came from: *If the dress doesn't fit, bring it back to the shop and we'll change it for you.* **2** to make you remember sth or think about it again: *Talking about his death **brought it all back** to me.* ◇ *The photos brought back happy memories.* OBJ **memories 3** to make sth that existed or was done before be used or done again: *Are you in favour of bringing back the death penalty?* SYN **restore sth; reintroduce sth** (*both more formal*) **4 (for sb)** to return with sth for sb: *What shall I bring back for the children from Paris?* NOTE In informal language **bring sb back sth** and, less often, **bring sb sth back** are also used in this meaning: *I brought the kids back some books.* ◇ *Can you bring me something back?*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˈbring sb/sth before sb/sth (*law*) to present sb for judgement; to present sth to sb/sth for discussion or a decision: *Children should not be brought before a court.* ◇ *The case was brought before the judge.*
OBJ **case** SYN **haul sb before sb/sth, haul sb up before sb/sth** (*informal*)
NOTE **Bring sb/sth before sb/sth** is usually used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌbring sb ˈdown (*informal*) to depress sb; to make sb unhappy: *Spending New Year alone brought me right down.*
SYN **get sb down; depress sb** (*more formal*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌbring sb/sth ˈdown 1 to take sb/sth from a higher to a lower level: *They brought all the boxes down from the attic.* **2** to make sb/sth fall to the ground: *He was brought down in the penalty area.* ◇ *Their plane was brought down by a violent storm.* ◇ *When she fell, she brought him down with her.* ◇ *He brought down the bird with a single shot.* **3** to make a government, a leader, etc. lose power or be defeated: *The scandal brought the government down.* OBJ **government**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbring sth ˈdown 1 to make sth smaller in size or amount: *We are determined to bring down inflation.* ◇ *The price war is bringing the cost of flights down.* OBJ **inflation, prices** SYN **lower sth** (*more formal*) **2** to make an aircraft come down to the ground (**land**): *The pilot brought the plane down safely.* OBJ **plane** SYN **land sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
IDM **bring the ˈhouse down** to make an audience laugh or clap in an enthusiastic way: *Her performance brought the house down.*

ˌbring sth ˈdown on/upon sb (*formal*) to make sth unpleasant happen to sb as a result of your actions: *He had brought nothing but trouble down on the family.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep ◆ v + adv + n + prep
IDM **bring down the ˈcurtain on sth; bring the ˈcurtain down on sth** to finish or mark the end of sth: *Her decision to retire brought down the curtain on a glittering 30-year career.*

ˌbring sb ˈforth (*old-fashioned, formal, rare*) to give birth to sb: *She brought forth a son.*
OBJ **child**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌbring sth ˈforth (*formal*) **1** to produce sth; to make sth happen: *Her remarks brought forth a harsh response.* **2** (*old-fashioned*) to take sth out of a container
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌbring sth ˈforward 1 to move sth to an earlier date or time: *We'll have to bring the date of the final game forward.* OBJ **meeting, date** SYN **put sth forward** OPP **put sth back 2** to suggest a subject, an idea, etc. for discussion: *She brought forward proposals for a new school building.* OBJ **proposal** SYN **put sth forward 3** (*finance*) to move a total from the bottom of one page or column of numbers to the top of the next page OBJ **balance** SYN **carry sth forward** NOTE **Bring sth forward** is often used in the passive in this meaning. **4** (*technical*) to put a document in a file until the particular date when you need to deal with it: *a bring forward file* (= one that contains documents for a particular date) ◇ *With this software, the system will remind you when the **bring forward date** arrives.* NOTE **Bring sth forward** is only used in an office context with this meaning, and is usually used in front of a noun, as if it is an adjective.
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbring ˈin sth; ˌbring sb ˈin sth to make or earn money for sb: *How much is she bringing in every month?* ◇ *His job only brought him in a small income.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + n

ˌbring sb ˈin 1 (on sth) to get sb involved in sth, especially to advise or help, etc: *Can we deal with this without bringing the police in?* ◇ *I'd like to bring Inspector Lacey in on this investigation.* ◇ *Experts were brought in to advise the government.* OBJ **experts, police, troops 2** if the police **bring sb in** they take them to a police station to question them or arrest them: *Two men have been brought in for questioning.* OBJ **suspect**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌbring sb/sth ˈin 1 to take sb/sth into a room, a house, an office, etc: *Could you bring in another chair?* ◇ *Bring him in!* NOTE In informal language **bring sb in sth** and, less often, **bring sb sth in** are also used: *Could you bring me in another chair?* ◇ *Could you bring us some tea in?* **2** to attract sb/sth to a place or a business: *The visitor centre is bringing in more and more people.*
OBJ **business, customers, tourism**
→ *see also* BRING SB/STH INTO STH
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌbring sth ˈin 1 to introduce a new law: *A new law was brought in to improve road safety.* ◇ *New controls were brought in to limit spending and borrowing.* OBJ **legislation, law** SYN **introduce sth** (*more formal*) NOTE **Bring sth in** is often used in the passive in this meaning. **2** (*law*) to give a decision in a court of law: *The jury brought in a verdict of guilty.* OBJ only **verdict, decision 3** to mention or include sth: *She brought in other evidence to support her argument.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌbring sb/sth ˈinto sth 1 to take sb/sth into a place: *Bring that chair into the dining room.* **2** to include or mention sb/sth in a discussion, conversation, etc: *Why do you always have to bring Pete into it* (= mention Pete when we are discussing sth)? ◇ *I knew you'd manage to bring football into the conversation!* **3** to attract sb/sth to a place or business: *The advertising campaign should bring more people into the bookshops.*
→ *see also* BRING SB/STH IN
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌbring sth ˈoff (*informal*) to manage to do sth difficult successfully: *England were close to victory, but they couldn't quite **bring it off**.* ◇ *Thompson, the new goalkeeper, brought off a superb save.*
SYN **pull sth off**
◈ v + pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n + adv

ˌbring sb ˈon (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˌbring sb aˈlong**) to help sb to develop or improve when they are learning to do sth: *We need to bring on the young players quickly.* ◇ *There's no time to bring employees along gradually.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌbring sth ˈon to make sth unpleasant happen: *The heart attack was brought on by stress.* ◇ *It's not like you to get so upset. What's brought this on* (= has made you so upset)*?*
OBJ **heart attack, depression** SYN **cause sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˈbring sth on sb/yourself (*also* **bring sth upon sb/yourself** *more formal*) to be responsible for sth unpleasant that happens to sb/yourself: *You've brought shame on the whole family!* ◇ *Don't blame me! You've brought this on yourself.*
OBJ **shame, disgrace**
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌbring sb ˈout to help sb to be more confident and less shy: *He's good at bringing out nervous interviewees.* ◇ *A year at college has really* ***brought her out of herself****.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌbring sth ˈout 1 (*also* **ˌbring sth ˈout of sth**) to take sth out of sth; to remove sth from sth: *He brought a card out of his wallet and gave it to her.* SYN **take sth out, take sth out of sth 2** to produce or publish sth: *They're bringing out a new sports car this year.* ◇ *How many albums have the band brought out?* ◇ *The publishers are bringing out a new edition of the dictionary next spring.* **3** to make a particular quality easier to see, taste, or notice: *That dress brings out the colour of your eyes.* OBJ **colour, flavour** SYN **emphasize sth** (*more formal*) **4** to make sth appear that is usually hidden: *She always brings out the worst in me!* ◇ *The situation brought out the viciousness in him.* OBJ **the best, the worst**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
1 also v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌbring sb ˈout in sth (*BrE*) to make sb's skin be covered in sth such as sweat or spots: *Tomatoes bring me out in a rash.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌbring sb/sth ˈover to take or bring sb/sth to a particular place, especially sb's home: *When your sister gets back from New York, bring her over to see us.* ◇ *Bring your chair over and sit with us!*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbring sb ˈround (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˌbring sb aˈround**) **1** (*also* **ˌbring sb ˈto**) to make sb conscious again: *She gently slapped his face to bring him round.* **2** **(to sth)** to persuade sb to agree with you, or to do what you want: *I brought him round to my way of thinking in the end.* SYN **win sb over (to sth)**
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌbring sb/sth ˈround (*especially BrE*) (*AmE usually* **ˌbring sb/sth aˈround**) to bring sb/sth to sb's home: *I'll bring the papers round to your house this evening.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbring sth ˈround to sth (*BrE*) (*also* **ˌbring sth aˈround to sth** *AmE, BrE*) to direct a conversation, a discussion, etc. so that you are talking about the subject you want to talk about: *He always brings the conversation round to football.*
OBJ **conversation, discussion**
◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌbring sb ˈto = BRING SB ROUND 1

ˌbring A and B toˈgether 1 to help two people or groups to end a quarrel; to unite two people or groups: *The crisis brought the family closer together.* **2** to introduce two people who have never met; to help two people come together socially: *It was me who brought them together.*
SYN **get A and B together**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbring sb/sth toˈgether to collect a group of people or objects together in one place: *This exhibition brings together many artists' work.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbring sb ˈup 1 to care for a child until he or she is grown up: *She was brought up by her aunt.* ◇ *I was brought up* (= I grew up) *on a farm.* OBJ **children, family, daughter, son** SYN **raise sb** (*AmE*) NOTE **Bring up** a child does not mean the same as **look after** a child. **2** to teach your child a particular way to behave, etc: *They brought their children up very strictly.* ◇ *We were brought up to be polite and do what we were told.* ◇ *a well brought up child* OBJ **children, family, daughter, son** SYN **raise sb** (*AmE*) **3** (*law*) to make sb appear for trial in a court of law
NOTE **Bring sb up** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **ˈupbringing** *n* [sing.] [U] the way in which a child is cared for and taught, especially by parents, while he or she is growing up

ˌbring sb/sth ˈup (to sth) to move sb/sth to a higher place, especially up the stairs: *Breakfast was brought up to our room.* ◇ *Callum is downstairs. Shall I bring him up?* ◇ *She brought her hand up and slapped him.* ◇ *I brought the cup up to my lips and took a sip of coffee.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbring sth ˈup 1 to move sth from a lower to a higher position: *She brought up her hand to protect her face.* **2** to mention a subject and start to talk about it: *Every time I bring the matter up, he changes the subject.* OBJ **subject, matter** SYN **raise sth** (*more formal*) **3** **(to sth)** to increase a total, a price, a number, etc. to a higher level or amount: *This donation brings the total up to $6 000.* ◇ *Owen got another goal, bringing the score up to 4-0.* OBJ **total** SYN **raise sth** (*more formal*) **4** to bring food from the stomach back out through the mouth: *The baby's just brought up her breakfast.* SYN **throw sth up** (*informal*), **vomit sth** (*more formal*) **5** to make sth appear on a computer screen: *Can you bring that file up on screen?*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbring sb ˈup against sth to make sb realize sth or face sth and deal with it: *This case brings us up against the problem of punishment in schools.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌbring sb/sth ˈup to sth to help sb/sth to reach an acceptable level or standard: *They have now brought the football ground up to the required safety standards.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌbring sth uˈpon sb/yourself = BRING STH ON SB/YOURSELF

bristle /ˈbrɪsl/

ˈbristle with sth to be covered in sth; to have or contain a large number or amount of sth: *a roof bristling with TV aerials* ◇ *The staff bristle with efficiency.*
NOTE **Bristle with sth** is mainly used in writing.
◈ v + prep

broaden /ˈbrɔːdn/

ˌbroaden ˈout if a river, a road, etc. **broadens out**, it becomes wider
NOTE **Broaden** is also used with the same meaning, but less often.
◈ v + adv

ˌbroaden ˈout; ˌbroaden sth ˈout (*especially BrE*) if sth **broadens out**, or you **broaden it out**, it becomes more general or includes a larger number of people or things: *Let's broaden out the discussion to talk about education as a whole.*
NOTE **Broaden** is used more frequently with the same meaning.
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

browse /braʊz/

ˌbrowse ˈthrough sth to look through a book, a magazine, etc. in a casual way, without reading everything: *She browsed through the newspaper while she waited.*
OBJ **book, newspaper**
◈ v + prep

brush /brʌʃ/

ˌbrush aˈgainst/ˈby/ˈpast sb/sth to touch sb/sth lightly when you move close to them/it: *A cat brushed against his leg.* ◇ *He brushed by/past me and ran out.*
◈ v + prep

ˌbrush sb/sth aˈside 1 to push sb/sth to one side: *She brushed a strand of hair aside.* **2** to refuse to listen to sb/sth or treat them/it as important: *He brushed my protests aside and paid the bill.* ◇ *Every time I try to explain, you brush me aside.* SYN **wave sth aside/away; dismiss sb/sth**
→ *see also* BRUSH SB OFF 1; BRUSH STH OFF 2
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbrush sth aˈway (from sth) 1 to remove sth from a surface with a brush, your hand, etc: *She brushed a stray hair away from her face.* OBJ **tears, hair, dust 2** to ignore an idea, a thought, etc. because you do not want to think about it or you think it is not important: *She quickly brushed the idea away.* SYN **dismiss sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbrush ˈby sb/sth = BRUSH AGAINST/BY/PAST SB/STH

ˌbrush sb/yourself ˈdown (*especially BrE*) to clean sb/yourself by brushing their/your clothes with your hand, especially after they/you have fallen: *She stood up and brushed herself down.*
→ *see also* BRUSH SB/YOURSELF OFF
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌbrush sth ˈdown (*especially BrE*) to clean sth by brushing it thoroughly: *Brush your coat down to get the mud off.* ◇ *The children were taught how to brush down their ponies.*
OBJ **coat, skirt, etc.**
→ *see also* BRUSH STH OFF 1
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbrush ˈoff; ˌbrush sth ˈoff if mud, dust etc. **brushes off**, or you **brush it off**, it is removed by brushing: *Don't worry about the mud — it'll brush off easily when it's dry.* ◇ *We were able to brush the dirt off quite easily.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbrush sb ˈoff (*informal*) **1** to refuse to listen to sb; to ignore sb in a rude or unkind way: *He tried to explain to her, but she brushed him off impatiently.* SYN **rebuff sb** (*formal*) → *see also* BRUSH SB/STH ASIDE 2 **2** to get rid of sb: *She couldn't brush Roger off after the party.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **ˈbrush-off** *n* (*informal*) rude or unkind behaviour that shows you do not want to be friendly: *to give sb the brush-off*

ˌbrush sb/yourself ˈoff to clean sb/yourself by brushing their/your clothes quickly with your hand
→ *see also* BRUSH SB/YOURSELF DOWN
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbrush sth ˈoff 1 to clean sth quickly by brushing it: *He picked up his hat and brushed it off quickly.* → *see also* BRUSH STH DOWN **2** to refuse to listen to, discuss or accept sth: *Roberts brushed off allegations of corruption.* ◇ *She brushed off offers of help from her friends.* → *see also* BRUSH SB/STH ASIDE 2
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbrush sth ˈout 1 to brush sth, especially hair, thoroughly to remove knots or to make it straighter: *She brushed out her hair, washed her face and got into bed.* OBJ **hair 2** (*also* **ˌbrush sth ˈout of sth**) to remove knots, etc. from your hair by brushing: *It took half an hour to brush out all the tangles in his hair.* OBJ **tangles, knots**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
2 also v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌbrush ˈpast sb/sth = BRUSH AGAINST/BY/PAST SB/STH

ˌbrush sth ˈup; ˌbrush ˈup on sth (*especially BrE*) to study or practise sth in order to get back the skill or knowledge that you had in the past but have not used for some time: *I need to brush up my computer skills.* ◇ *You should brush up on your French before you go to France.*
OBJ **skills, French/English, etc.** SYN **polish sth up; review sth** (*especially AmE*), **revise sth** (*BrE*)
NOTE **Brush sth up** cannot be used in the passive.
G v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*) ◆ v + adv + prep

bubble /ˈbʌbl/

ˌbubble ˈover (with sth) to be full of excitement, enthusiasm, ideas, etc: *They were bubbling over with excitement.*
G v + adv

ˌbubble ˈunder; ˌbubble ˈunder sth if sth is **bubbling under**, it is already fairly successful but is not yet as successful as other things of the same kind, although it is likely to be so soon: *This is our list of tracks bubbling under – songs that may soon be in the Top 20.*
G v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌbubble ˈup 1 if a liquid **bubbles up** from the ground, etc. it rises up in the form of bubbles or making the sound of bubbles: *Water bubbled up from the pool.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Clouds will bubble up* (= start to form) *later this afternoon.* **2** if laughter or an emotion **bubbles up**, it becomes stronger and starts to be heard or seen: *I could feel the anger bubbling up inside me.* ◇ *Laughter came bubbling up.*
G v + adv

buck /bʌk/

ˌbuck ˈup (*old-fashioned, BrE, informal*) used to tell sb to hurry up: *Buck up! We'll be late.*
SYN **hurry up**
G v + adv

ˌbuck ˈup; ˌbuck sb ˈup (*old-fashioned, BrE, informal*) to become, or to make sb, more cheerful: *Buck up! There's no school tomorrow!* ◇ *He bucked up when I said he could go.* ◇ *A day out will buck you up.*
SYN **cheer up, cheer sb/yourself up**
G v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv
IDM **buck your iˈdeas up** (*BrE, informal*) to start behaving in a more acceptable way, so that work gets done better, etc.

bucket /ˈbʌkɪt/

ˈbucket down (*BrE, informal*) to rain heavily: *It bucketed down all day.*
G v + adv

buckle /ˈbʌkl/

ˌbuckle ˈdown (to sth) (*informal*) to start working or doing sth in a serious or determined way: *He tried to buckle down to some work/study.*
SYN **knuckle down (to sth)**
G v + adv

ˌbuckle ˈup (*especially AmE*) to fasten the belt that you wear in a car, etc. to keep you in your seat if there is an accident (a **seat belt**): *Buckle up, kids.*
SYN **belt up** (*BrE*)
G v + adv

buddy /ˈbʌdi/ (buddies, buddying, buddied, buddied)

ˌbuddy ˈup to/with sb/sth; be/get ˌbuddied ˈup to/with sb/sth (*AmE, informal*) to become friendly with sb or work closely with another person: *She buddied up to Laura, hoping to get to know her brother.* ◇ *I asked to get buddied up with an experienced diver.*
G v + adv + prep ◆ be/get + v + adv + prep

budge /bʌdʒ/

ˌbudge ˈup (*BrE, informal*) to move up; to make more room for sb else: *Budge up a bit! I'd like to sit down too.*
SYN **move up**
G v + adv

budget /ˈbʌdʒɪt/

ˈbudget for sth to plan to save or provide an amount of money for a particular purpose: *Don't forget to budget for the cost of textbooks.*
NOTE **Budget for sth** can be used in the passive: *These extra costs have not been budgeted for.*
G v + prep

bug /bʌg/ (-gg-)

ˌbug ˈout (*AmE, informal*) to leave in a hurry: *I picked up my pay and then bugged out.*
G v + adv

bugger /ˈbʌgə(r)/

ˌbugger aˈbout/aˈround (with sth) (*BrE,* △, *slang*) to waste time doing stupid or unimportant things; to behave in a silly way: *Stop buggering about and let's get on with it.*
NOTE **Mess around** or, in British English, **mess about** is a more polite informal way to say this.
G v + adv

ˌbugger sb aˈbout/aˈround (*BrE,* △, *slang*) to treat sb badly or in a way that wastes their time: *I'm sick of being buggered about by my boss.*
NOTE **Mess sb around** or, in British English, **mess sb about** is a more polite informal way to say this.
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌbugger ˈoff (*BrE,* △, *slang*) to go away: *Bugger off and leave me alone.* ◇ *Clive's buggered off to the pub with Julie.*
NOTE **Clear off** is a more polite informal way to say this.
G v + adv

ˌbugger sth ˈup (*BrE,* △, *slang*) to spoil sth; to do sth badly: *I'm not going to let her bugger things up for me.*
NOTE **Mess sth up** is a more polite informal way to say this.
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

build /bɪld/ (built, built /bɪlt/)

ˌbuild sth aˈround sth (*BrE also* **ˌbuild sth ˈround sth**) to create sth, basing it on a particular thing, person, idea, etc: *The story is built around the adventures of 12 knights.*
NOTE **Build sth around/round sth** is often used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + prep

ˌbuild sth ˈin; ˌbuild sth ˈinto sth 1 to make sth a fixed and permanent part of a system, a plan, etc: *Safeguards against fraud are built into the system.* **2** to make sth a fixed and permanent part of sth larger: *The flash is built into the camera.* ◇ *This dishwasher can be built in.*
NOTE **Build sth in** and **build sth into sth** are often used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep
▶ **ˌbuilt-ˈin** (*also* **ˌin-ˈbuilt** *less frequent*) *adj* [only before noun] forming a fixed part of a larger structure: *a built-in cupboard* ◇ *The camera has a built-in flash.*
▶ **ˈinbuilt** *adj* [only before noun] existing as an essential part of sth/sb: *the inbuilt survival instinct of animals*

ˈbuild on sth (*also* **ˈbuild upon sth** *more formal*) to develop further from sth that you have already achieved: *We need to build on last year's success.* ◇ *This course builds on existing skills.*
OBJ **success, skills, strengths, achievements**
NOTE **Build on/upon sth** can be used in the passive: *This success should be built on, not ignored.*
G v + prep

ˌbuild sth ˈon; ˌbuild sth ˈonto sth to add sth such as an extra room to an existing building: *They had built on a large extension at the back of the house.*
OBJ **extension**
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˈbuild sth on sth (*also* **ˈbuild sth upon sth** *more formal*) to base sth on sth; to use sth as the basis or foundation for sth: *Our company has built its reputation on the quality of its products.*
G v + n/pron + prep

ˌbuild sth ˈround sth (*BrE*) = BUILD STH AROUND STH

ˌbuild ˈup to become greater, stronger or larger in number: *Queues of traffic are building up after the accident.* ◇ *I could feel the anger building up inside me.*
SYN **accumulate** (*more formal*)
G v + adv
▶ **ˈbuild-up** *n* [sing.] [U] an increase in the amount, strength or number of sth: *a build-up of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere*
→ *see also* BUILD-UP at BUILD UP (TO STH), BUILD YOURSELF UP (TO STH); BUILD-UP at BUILD SB/STH UP

ˌbuild ˈup (to sth), ˌbuild yourself ˈup (to sth) to gradually prepare yourself for sth such as a race or competition: *Start gently and build up to the more strenuous exercises.* ◇ *Build up slowly until you can jog for 30 minutes.* ◇ *Build yourself up to the day of the performance.*
G v + adv ◆ v + pron + adv
▶ **ˈbuild-up (to sth)** *n* [C, usually sing.] the time before an important event, when people are gradually preparing for it: *the build-up to the Olympics*
→ *see also* BUILD-UP at BUILD UP; BUILD-UP at BUILD SB/STH UP

ˌbuild sb/yourself ˈup to make sb healthier or stronger: *She gave me lots of vitamins and minerals to build me up.*
NOTE **Build sb up** cannot be used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌbuild sb/sth ˈup to speak about sb/sth with great enthusiasm, often praising them more than they deserve: *He has been **built up to be** the answer to the nation's problems.*
NOTE **Build sb/sth up** is often used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▶ **ˈbuild-up** *n* [C, usually sing.] a very enthusiastic description, especially of a performance, that is intended to make people excited about it and want to see it: *The reviewers gave the play a big build-up.*
→ *see also* BUILD-UP at BUILD UP; BUILD-UP at BUILD UP (TO STH), BUILD YOURSELF UP (TO STH)

ˌbuild sth ˈup 1 to collect or create sth, often gradually over a period of time: *She has built up an impressive collection of paintings.* OBJ **collection, library 2** to develop sth: *The manager had built up a good relationship with his staff.* ◇ *My father built the business up from scratch.* ◇ *Harriet has built up quite a reputation for herself as a reporter.* ◇ *We are gradually **building up a picture** of what happened.* OBJ **business, reputation, picture 3** to increase sth or make sth stronger: *After an accident, most drivers need to build up their confidence again.* OBJ **confidence, trust, strength 4** to cover sth so that it is higher or stronger than before
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

▸ **ˌbuilt-ˈup** *adj* [usually before noun] **1** covered with many houses or buildings: *The speed limit is lower in built-up areas.* **2 built-up** shoes, boots, or heels have extra height added

ˌbuild yourself ˈup 1 = BUILD UP (TO STH), BUILD YOURSELF UP (TO STH) **2** = BUILD SB/YOURSELF UP

ˈbuild upon sth = BUILD ON STH

ˈbuild sth upon sth = BUILD STH ON STH

bulk /bʌlk/

ˌbulk ˈout/ˈup; ˌbulk sb/sth ˈout/ˈup (*especially AmE*) to increase in size or weight; to make sb/sth increase in size or weight: *Griswold had bulked up for this match and won easily.* ◇ *Local businesses are helping to bulk up school computer labs* (= provide more computers).
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

bully /ˈbʊli/ (**bullies, bullying, bullied, bullied**)

ˌbully sb ˈinto sth; ˌbully sb ˈinto doing sth to force sb to do sth by frightening them or threatening them: *You can't bully me into saying anything!*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

bum /bʌm/ (**-mm-**)

ˌbum aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌbum ˈround**) (*informal*) to travel around or to spend your time doing nothing in particular
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌbum aˈround/ˈround sth (*informal, especially BrE*) to travel somewhere with no particular plans: *After I left school, I bummed around the world for a year.*
OBJ **the world, Europe, etc.**
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌbum sb ˈout (*AmE, informal*) to annoy sb: *I was really bummed out that there were no tickets left.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌbum ˈround (*BrE*) = BUM AROUND

ˌbum ˈround sth (*especially BrE*) = BUM AROUND/ROUND STH

bumble /ˈbʌmbl/

ˌbumble aˈround; ˌbumble aˈround sth (*BrE also* **ˌbumble aˈbout, ˌbumble aˈbout sth**) to move around in an awkward and noisy way: *I could hear my father bumbling about downstairs.* ◇ *a film of two sisters bumbling around their home, making tea*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + prep

bump /bʌmp/

ˌbump ˈinto sb (*informal*) to meet sb by chance: *I bumped into an old friend in town today.*
SYN **run into sb**
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌbump sb ˈoff (*informal*) to murder sb: *He admitted bumping off Baines.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbump sb ˈoff; ˌbump sb ˈoff sth 1 to not allow sb to have the seat on a plane that they have booked, because seats have been sold to more people than the plane will carry: *With more people flying these days, there is a greater chance of* ***getting bumped off your flight***. ◇ *bumped off travellers* NOTE **Bump sb** can also be used with this meaning: *We were late arriving at the airport and the airline bumped us.* **2** (*especially AmE, computing*) to break the connection between sb's computer and the Internet, so that they can no longer use the Internet: *Some users couldn't log in, others kept* ***getting bumped off***. ◇ *to be bumped off the Internet* OBJ **the Internet, server, website** SYN **kick sb off, kick sb off sth; disconnect sb (from sth)** (*more formal*)
NOTE These phrasal verbs are usually used in the passive: *I was worried about being bumped off the flight.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌbump sb ˈup (to sth) (*informal*) to move sb to a more expensive seat in a plane without charging them extra, because there are not enough seats at the price they have paid: *I got bumped up to business class.*
NOTE **Bump sb up** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌbump sth ˈup (*informal*) to increase or raise sth: *The company bumped their prices up by 10%.*
OBJ **prices**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

bunch /bʌntʃ/

ˌbunch ˈup; ˌbunch sth ˈup if material **bunches up**, or you **bunch it up**, it forms tight folds: *The sheets bunched up under him every time he moved.* ◇ *She bunched her skirt up and jumped.*
NOTE **Bunch sth up** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbunch ˈup/toˈgether; ˌbunch sb/sth ˈup/toˈgether to move closer together to make a tight group; to make sb/sth do this: *The children bunched together in little groups in the playground.* ◇ *All the runners were bunched up behind the leader.*
NOTE **Bunch sb/sth up/together** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

bundle /ˈbʌndl/

ˌbundle sb ˈoff (to sth...) to send sb somewhere in a hurry or when they do not want to go: *She bundled her son off to school.*
SYN **pack sb off (to...)**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbundle ˈup; ˌbundle sb ˈup (in sth) to dress in warm clothes; to put warm clothes on sb: *Bundle up! It's freezing outside!* ◇ *I bundled Lucy up in a blanket and made her a cup of tea.*
SYN **wrap up (in sth), wrap sb up (in sth), wrap yourself up (in sth)**
NOTE **Bundle sb up** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌbundle sth ˈup/toˈgether to put or tie things together into a bundle: *She bundled up her clothes and pushed them into a cupboard.* ◇ *The papers were all bundled together, ready to be thrown away.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

bung /bʌŋ/

ˌbung sth ˈup (with sth) (*BrE, informal*) to stop sth from moving or flowing through sth by putting sth in or across it: *She's bunged the sink up with tea leaves.*
SYN **block sth up** (*more formal*)
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **ˌbunged ˈup** *adj* blocked; not clear: *My nose is all bunged up this morning.*

bunk /bʌŋk/

ˌbunk ˈdown (*especially AmE*) to lie down to sleep somewhere, especially somewhere uncomfortable or for only one night: *We bunked down in an old barn for the night.*
SYN **doss down** (*BrE, informal*)
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌbunk ˈoff; ˌbunk ˈoff sth (*BrE, informal*) to stay away from school or work when you ought to be there; to leave school or work early, especially without permission: *Let's bunk off this afternoon and go shopping.*
OBJ **school, work** SYN **skive off, skive off sth** (*BrE*)
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + prep

buoy /bɔɪ; *AmE also* ˈbuːi/

ˌbuoy sb/sth ˈup 1 to make or keep sb cheerful and confident: *Winning the match buoyed the team up.* ◇ *The party did little to buoy up her spirits.* ◇ *She was buoyed up by her father's praise.* **2** to keep sb/sth floating; to stop sb/sth from sinking: *I relaxed, letting the salt water buoy me up.*
NOTE **Buoy sb/sth up** is often used in the passive. **Buoy sb/sth** can also be used: *Buoyed by their recent victory, the team are convinced they can win the final.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌbuoy sth ˈup (*finance*) to make or keep prices at a high or satisfactory level: *Share prices were buoyed up by the news.* ◇ *to buoy up the economy*
OBJ **prices**
NOTE **Buoy sth up** is often used in the passive. ◆ **Buoy sth** is also used with this meaning.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

burn /bɜːn; *AmE* bɜːrn/ (**burnt, burnt** /bɜːnt; *AmE* bɜːrnt/ or **burned, burned** /bɜːnd; *AmE* bɜːrnd/)

ˌburn aˈway; ˌburn sth aˈway to disappear as a result of burning; to make sth do this: *Half the candle had burnt away.* ◇ *The fire had burned away part of the roof.*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌburn ˈdown if a fire **burns down**, it becomes less strong and burns with smaller flames: *They sat by the fire, watching it slowly burn down.*
OPP **burn up**
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌburn ˈdown; ˌburn sth ˈdown if a building **burns down**, or sb **burns it down**, it is destroyed by fire: *The palace burnt down in the 19th century.* ◇ *She threatened to burn the house down.*
NOTE **Burn sth down** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌburn sth ˈoff 1 to remove sth by burning: *Burn the old paint off before repainting the door.* **2** (*also* **ˌburn sth ˈup**) to use energy by exercising: *Walking briskly can burn off a lot of calories.* OBJ **calories, fat**
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌburn ˈout; ˌburn sth ˈout if a machine or part of a machine **burns out** or sb/sth **burns it out**, it stops working because it has been used too much or has got too hot: *The clutch has burnt out.* ◇ *I burnt out the motor in the first car I had.*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌburn ˈout; ˌburn itself ˈout to stop burning because there is no more fuel: *Blow out the candles before they burn out.* ◇ *By the time the fire brigade arrived the fire had burnt (itself) out.*
→ *see also* BURN STH OUT
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + pron + adv

ˌburn ˈout; ˌburn yourself ˈout to become very tired or sick and unable to continue your work by working too hard over a period of time: *It's a high pressure job and many people burn out at a young age.* ◇ *If he carries on working so hard, he'll burn himself out.*

→ *see also* BURN SB OUT, BURN SB OUT OF STH

Ⓖ v + adv • v + pron + adv

▸ ˈ**burnout** *n* [C] [U] the state of being very tired or sick because you have worked too hard: *Burnout is common among teachers.*

▸ ˌ**burnt-ˈout** (*especially BrE*) (*AmE usually* ˌ**burned-ˈout**) very tired or sick because you have worked too hard: *burnt-out rock singers*

→ *see also* BURNT-OUT at BURN STH OUT

ˌ**burn sb ˈout**; ˌ**burn sb ˈout of sth** to force sb to leave a building by setting fire to it: *A gang has tried to burn a woman out of her home.*

→ *see also* BURN OUT, BURN YOURSELF OUT

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌ**burn sth ˈout** to destroy sth completely by fire, so that only the outside or the frame is left: *Two cars were burnt out in the crash.*

NOTE **Burn sth out** is usually used in the passive.

→ *see also* BURN OUT, BURN ITSELF OUT

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▸ ˈ**burnt-out** (*especially BrE*) (*AmE usually* ˈ**burned-out**) *adj* [only before noun] completely destroyed or badly damaged by fire: *burnt-out buses ◇ burned-out houses*

→ *see also* BURNT-OUT at BURN OUT, BURN YOURSELF OUT

ˌ**burn ˈup 1** to be destroyed by heat: *The spacecraft burned up as it entered the earth's atmosphere.* **2** (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) to have a fever or a high temperature: *She is burning up — she needs a doctor.* **3** if a fire **burns up**, it gets stronger and has larger flames OPP **burn down**

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌ**burn sb ˈup** (*AmE, informal*) to make sb very angry: *The way he treats me really burns me up.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌ**burn sth ˈup 1** to get rid of sth completely by burning: *I'm going to burn up all the rubbish/trash.* **2** = BURN STH OFF 2

Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

burrow /ˈbʌrəʊ; *AmE* ˈbɜːroʊ/

ˈ**burrow in sth** to search for sth among things in a container: *She burrowed in her pocket and eventually found a few coins.*

Ⓖ v + prep

burst /bɜːst; *AmE* bɜːrst/ (**burst, burst**)

ˌ**burst ˈin** (**on sb/sth**), ˌ**burst ˈinto sth** to enter a room, a building, etc. suddenly and noisily, interrupting the people who are in it: *He apologized for bursting in on our meeting. ◇ The door suddenly flew open and Mia burst in. ◇ She ran down the stairs and burst into the kitchen.*

→ *see also* BURST INTO STH

Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˈ**burst into sth** to start producing or doing sth suddenly and with great force: *The aircraft* ***burst into flames*** (= suddenly started to burn). ◇ *I was so relieved I* ***burst into tears*** (= suddenly started to cry). ◇ *The cab's engine* ***burst into life*** (= suddenly started to work). ◇ *As the curtain fell, the audience burst into applause* (suddenly started to clap).

OBJ **tears, flames, laughter, life**

→ *see also* BURST IN (ON SB/STH), BURST INTO STH

Ⓖ v + prep

ˈ**burst on/onto sth** (*also* ˈ**burst upon sth** *more formal*) to appear somewhere suddenly in a dramatic or unusual way: *A major new talent has burst on/onto the tennis scene.*

OBJ **scene**

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌ**burst ˈout** to say sth suddenly, loudly and with strong feeling: *'I hate you!' she burst out.*

SYN **exclaim** (*formal*)

→ *see also* BURST OUT DOING STH

Ⓖ v + adv + speech

▸ ˈ**outburst** *n* a sudden strong expression of an emotion; a sudden increase in an attitude or an activity: *an outburst of anger/laughter ◇ sporadic outbursts of violence ◇ She apologized for her outburst.*

ˌ**burst ˈout**; ˌ**burst ˈout of sth** to leave a room, a building, etc. suddenly and noisily: *The door opened suddenly and a man burst out of the house.*

Ⓖ v + adv • v + adv + prep

ˌ**burst ˈout doing sth** to begin doing sth suddenly: *We looked at one another and burst out laughing.*

OBJ **laughing, crying**

→ *see also* BURST OUT; OUTBURST at BURST OUT

Ⓖ v + adv + -ing

ˌ**burst ˈthrough**; ˌ**burst ˈthrough sth** to move suddenly through a door, a barrier, etc. with great force: *The car drove fast up to the road block and burst through. ◇ She burst through the door pursued by two men. ◇ The sun burst through the clouds.*

Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˈ**burst upon sth** = BURST ON/ONTO STH

bury /ˈberi/ (**buries, burying, buried, buried**)

ˈ**bury yourself in sth 1** to go to or be in a place where you will not meet many people: *He buried himself in the country to write a book.* **2** to involve yourself in sth completely; to spend all your time thinking about or doing sth and ignore everything else: *She buried herself in her work in an attempt to forget.* OBJ **work, book**

Ⓖ v + pron + prep

bust /bʌst/ (**bust, bust** or **busted, busted**)

ˌ**bust ˈout**; ˌ**bust ˈout of sth**; ˌ**bust sb ˈout**; ˌ**bust sb ˈout of sth** (*informal*) to escape from somewhere, usually prison; to help sb to do this: *His last movie was about a guy busting out of Alcatraz. ◇ His friends busted him out of jail.*

SYN **break out, break out of sth** (*more formal*)

Ⓖ v + adv • v + adv + prep • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌ**bust ˈup** (**with sb**) (*BrE, informal*) if a couple or two friends **bust up**, they have a quarrel and separate: *They bust up after five years together. ◇ I bust up with Tim a while ago.*

SYN **break up (with sb); split up (with/from sb)**

Ⓖ v + adv

▸ ˈ**bust-up** *n* (*BrE, informal*) **1** (**with sb**) an argument or a quarrel: *We had a huge bust-up and now we're not talking.* **2** the end of a relationship

ˌ**bust sth ˈup** (*informal*) **1** to end sth such as a meeting or a relationship by disturbing or ruining it: *The police busted up the meeting.* SYN **break sth up** (*more formal*) **2** (*AmE*) to injure, damage or break sth: *He busted up his knee in the accident.* **3** (*AmE*) to break a company or a larger organization into smaller parts OBJ **company** SYN **break sth up** (*more formal*)

Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

bustle /ˈbʌsl/

ˌ**bustle aˈbout/aˈround**; ˌ**bustle aˈbout/aˈround sth** (*especially BrE*) to move about somewhere in a busy or hurried way: *She was already bustling about, getting dinner ready.*

Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

butt /bʌt/

ˌ**butt ˈin** (*informal*) **1** (**on sb/sth**) to rudely interrupt sb when they are speaking: *He apologized for butting in on our conversation. ◇ 'His name's Terry, actually,' she butted in.* SYN **interrupt (sb/sth)** (*more formal*) **2** to interfere in a situation that does not concern you: *Stop butting in. It's nothing to do with you.* SYN **interfere (with sth)** (*more formal*)

Ⓖ v + adv **1** also v + adv + speech

ˌ**butt ˈout** (*spoken, informal, especially AmE*) used to tell sb rudely not to interfere in sth or to go away: *Butt out! It's none of your business.*

Ⓖ v + adv

butter /ˈbʌtə(r)/

ˌ**butter sb ˈup** (*informal*) to say nice things about sb because you want them to do sth for you or give you sth: *We'd better butter him up a bit before we ask for his help.*

SYN **soften sb up**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

button /ˈbʌtn/

ˌ**button ˈup**; ˌ**button sth ˈup** to be fastened with buttons; to fasten sth with buttons: *He buttoned up his coat.*

OBJ **coat, jacket, etc.** SYN **do up, do sth up**

OPP **unbutton, unbutton sth**

NOTE **Button** and **button sth** are also used with this meaning.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▸ ˌ**buttoned-ˈup** *adj* **1** [usually before noun] not showing or expressing your feelings openly; not very friendly: *his buttoned-up calmness* **2** (*AmE*) very formal in appearance; traditional rather than new or exciting

buy /baɪ/ (**bought, bought** /bɔːt/)

ˌ**buy sth ˈback** if somebody **buys sth back**, they buy again sth that they have sold earlier to sb else: *The bank will supply and buy back foreign currency. ◇ He sold the car in 1949 for £400. To buy it back last year cost £31 000.*

Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

▸ ˈ**buy-back** *n* **1** the action of buying again sth that you have sold earlier: *a book/equipment buy-back* (when a shop/store or company buys back sth you have finished using) **2** (*business*) a form of borrowing money in which a company sells its shares with an agreement that it will buy them again at a later date: *a share buy-back ◇ a share buy-back programme*

ˌ**buy sth ˈin** (*BrE*) to buy sth or a large amount of sth for a special occasion or in order to have a supply for the future: *I'll have to buy in extra food if they're coming to stay for a while.*

OBJ **food**

Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌ**buy ˈinto sth 1** to buy shares in a company, for example to gain control over it: *They are looking to buy into another insurance company.* OBJ **company, business 2** (*informal*) to accept sth that many other people believe: *We don't buy into the myth that money is the answer to everything.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌ**buy sb ˈoff** to pay sb to stop them acting against you, causing trouble for you, etc: *They had to buy Brennan off to stop him from talking.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌ**buy sb/yourself ˈout**; ˌ**buy sb/yourself ˈout of sth** (*BrE*) to pay money so that sb/you can leave an organization, especially the armed forces, before the time agreed: *After four years in the navy I bought myself out.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌ**buy sb/sth ˈout** to buy part of a company, business, etc. from sb else so that you own all of it and control it: *I want to buy her out and have the* *house to myself.* ◇ *The company was bought out by two German businessmen.*

OBJ **partner, company**

◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

▶ **'buyout** *n* (*finance*) a situation when sb buys enough shares in a company to gain control of it

ˌbuy sth 'up to buy quickly all of sth or as much as you can: *They've bought up all the land in the area.*

OBJ **company, land, property**

◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

buzz /bʌz/

ˌbuzz a'round; **ˌbuzz a'round sth** (*also* **ˌbuzz a'bout/'round**, **ˌbuzz a'bout/'round sth** *especially BrE*) to move around quickly and busily: *She buzzed round (the kitchen).* ◇ *The photographer buzzed around, checking the light.* ◇ *Questions buzzed round inside my head.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌbuzz 'off (*informal*) used to tell sb, not very politely, to go away: *Buzz off, I'm trying to work!* ◇ *I wish he'd buzz off!*

SYN **clear off; go away** (*more formal*)

◈ v + adv

ˌbuzz 'round; **ˌbuzz 'round sth** (*especially BrE*)

= BUZZ AROUND, BUZZ AROUND STH

Cc

call /kɔːl/

~ around
~ away
~ back
~ by
~ down
~ for
~ forth
~ in
38 ~ off
~ on
~ on/upon
~ out
~ out for
~ over
~ round
~ up
39 ~ upon

NOTE **To call** is the most common way to say 'to telephone' in American English. It is also used in British English, but **to phone** and **to ring** are more common.

ˌcall a'round; **ˌcall a'round sb/sth** (*AmE*) to telephone a number of different people, usually to try to get information: *He's been calling around trying to get the best price on a computer.* ◇ *I called around the neighbourhood to get support for my campaign.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌcall sb a'way to ask sb to stop doing what they are doing and go somewhere else to deal with sth: *He was called away to the phone.* ◇ *She was called away from the meeting to deal with an emergency.*

NOTE **Call sb away** is almost always used in the passive.

◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌcall 'back (*BrE*) to visit sb again: *I'll call back later when your wife's at home.*

◈ v + adv

ˌcall 'back; **ˌcall sb 'back** to telephone sb again or to telephone sb who telephoned you earlier: *Call back in an hour — he'll be here then.* ◇ *Kate phoned. Can you call her back?* ◇ *I'll call you back with the details later.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv

▶ **'callback** *n* **1** a device in a telephone that automatically calls again a number that was busy when you first called it: *a callback facility* **2** a telephone call that you make to sb who has called you earlier

ˌcall sb 'back 1 to shout to sb to turn around and come back to a place they have just left: *I ran off, but he called me back.* ◇ *We started to walk off but were called back by the police officer.* **2** to ask sb who is applying for a job, etc. to return so that you can talk to them again: *Three people were called back for a second interview.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌcall 'by (*informal, especially BrE*) to visit a place or a person for a short time, usually when you are going somewhere else: *Could you call by on your way home?* ◇ *Jan called by to bring your gift.*

SYN **drop by**

◈ v + adv

ˌcall sb 'down to shout to sb to ask them to come down from a place which is higher than you: *I've called him down* (= to come downstairs) *to breakfast already.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌcall sth 'down (**on/upon sb**) (*literary*) to pray that sth unpleasant will happen to sb because of sth bad they have done to you; to make sth bad happen to sb: *He called down curses on them.*

OBJ **curses, wrath**

◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

'call for sb (*BrE*) to go to sb's home, for example, and take them or go with them somewhere: *Shall I call for you at eight?*

◈ v + prep

'call for sth if a situation **calls for** a particular action or quality, it needs or requires it: *This calls for a celebration!* ◇ *What she's doing calls for great skill and courage.*

NOTE **Call for sth** can be used in the passive: *Tougher action by the government is called for.*

◈ v + prep

▶ **un'called for** *adj* (of remarks or behaviour) not fair or necessary in the circumstances: *I shall ignore that uncalled-for remark.*

'call for sth; **'call for sb/sth to do sth** to demand publicly that sth should be done: *The group has called for a boycott of the elections.* ◇ *The other directors have called for him to resign.*

NOTE **Call for sth** can be used in the passive: *A total ban on nuclear weapons has been called for.*

◈ v + prep ◆ v + prep + n/pron + to inf

ˌcall sth 'forth (*formal*) to produce a particular reaction: *Her remarks have called forth harsh criticism in the media.*

◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌcall 'in 1 **[+ adv/prep]** (*especially BrE*) to visit a place or a person for a short time, usually when you are going somewhere else: *He called in at the office before he left for London.* ◇ *She often calls in for a chat.* SYN **drop in (on sb/at…)** (*informal*) **2** to telephone the place where you work: *She* ***called in sick*** *this morning* (= telephoned to say that she was ill/sick and would not be coming to work). **3** to make a telephone call to a radio or television programme: *Many listeners called in to complain.*

◈ v + adv

▸ **ˈcall-in** *n* (*AmE*) a television or radio show in which people can phone to talk to people on the show, ask questions, give their opinions, etc: *a call-in show*

ˌcall sb ˈin to ask sb to come and help, give advice, repair sth, etc: *He's threatened to call in the police.* ◇ *You'll have to call a plumber in to look at this.* ◇ *Bomb disposal experts were called in to get rid of the device.*
OBJ **police, expert** SYN **send for sb**
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌcall sth ˈin (*BrE*) to order or request the return of sth, especially a product that has a fault: *The manufacturers have called in the faulty goods.* ◇ *The bank have called in the loan* (= asked for the money to be paid back) *immediately.*
SYN **recall sth** (*more formal*)
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌcall sb/sth ˈoff to order soldiers, dogs, etc. to stop attacking sb, searching for sb/sth, etc: *Please call your dog off.*
OBJ **dog**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌcall sth ˈoff to cancel or abandon sth that has been planned or that has already started: *The meeting was called off at the last minute.* ◇ *They've called off their engagement* (= they have decided not to get married). ◇ *Police called off the search for the climbers at dusk.*
OBJ **match/game, engagement/wedding, deal, search, strike**
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˈcall on sb 1 (*especially BrE*) to visit sb for a short time: *On our way back, we called on grandma.* SYN **drop in (on sb/at ...)** **2** (*AmE*) to ask sb in a class, etc. to answer a question or give their opinion: *The math teacher always calls on the boys.*
G v + prep

ˈcall on/upon sth (*formal*) to use your strength, courage, etc. in order to achieve sth or deal with a problem: *She had to call on all her reserves of courage to face the ordeal.*
OBJ **strength, courage**
G v + prep

ˈcall on/upon sb to do sth (*formal*) **1** to make a serious or urgent request to sb to do sth: *I'm available in case I'm called on to help.* ◇ *We call upon all parties to respect the results of the election.* **2** to formally invite or request sb to speak, etc: *I now call upon Mr. Spring to give the vote of thanks.*
NOTE **Call on/upon sb to do sth** can be used in the passive: *I was called on to make a speech.*
G v + prep + n/pron + to inf

ˌcall ˈout (**to sb**), **ˌcall sth ˈout** (**to sb**) to shout or say sth loudly in order to get sb's attention or help: *He called out to her, but she carried on walking.* ◇ *He woke in the night, calling out her name.* ◇ *They called out the numbers of the winning tickets.*
OBJ **name** SYN **shout out (to sb), shout sth out (to sb)**
NOTE **Call/call sth** can be used with a similar meaning, but **call out/call sth out** suggests sth louder or more urgent.
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + adv + speech

ˌcall sb ˈout 1 to ask sb to come to help you, when there is an emergency: *I've never had to call the doctor out at night before.* ◇ *We had to call out an electrician.* ◇ *Troops were called out to deal with the riot.* OBJ **doctor, fire brigade, electrician** **2** to order or ask workers to stop work as a protest: *Miners were called out on strike by union leaders.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈcall-out** *n* (*BrE*) an occasion when you ask sb to come to help you in an emergency: *ambulance call-outs* ◇ *How much is the plumber's call-out charge?*
NOTE The noun **call** is also used.

ˌcall ˈout for sth (*AmE*) to telephone a shop, store, restaurant, etc. to ask them to deliver food to you at home or at work: *Let's call out for pizza.*
SYN **send out for sth**
G v + adv + prep

ˌcall sb ˈover to call sb to come over to where you are, because you want to speak to them, give or show them sth, etc: *Call the waiter over.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˌcall ˈround (*BrE*) to visit sb at their home for a short time: *I just called round to say hello.*
SYN **drop round**
G v + adv

ˌcall ˈup; **ˌcall sb/sth ˈup** (*especially AmE*) to make a phone call to a person or a place: *Call up and make a reservation for 8 o'clock.* ◇ *She called him up from the bus station.* ◇ *Call up the office and ask for Mr. Morgan.*
NOTE **Call** and **call sb** are also frequently used with this meaning. **Call up** and **call sb up** are very common in spoken English.
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌcall sb ˈup 1 to officially ask sb to go to do training in the army, navy or air force or to fight in a war: *When the war began, he was too old to be called up.* SYN **conscript sb** (*especially BrE*), **draft sb** (*AmE*) **2** (*especially BrE*) to ask sb to join sth or take part in sth; to choose sb to play in a team: *He's been called up for next week's match.*
NOTE **Call sb up** is often used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈcall-up** *n* **1** an official order to join the army, navy or air force: *call-up papers/camps* **2** (*especially BrE, sport*) an official invitation to play in a team or in a particular game

ˌcall sth ˈup 1 (*computing*) to obtain information that is stored on a computer: *She called up all the files he had worked on.* OBJ **file, information** **2** to bring sth back to your mind; to make you remember and think about sth: *The sound of their laughter called up memories of his own childhood.* OBJ **memory** SYN **recall sth** (*formal*) **3** to use a quality that you have: *He called up all his reserves of courage.* OBJ **reserves**
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˈcall upon sth = CALL ON/UPON STH

ˈcall upon sb to do sth = CALL ON/UPON SB TO DO STH

calm /kɑːm/

ˌcalm ˈdown; **ˌcalm sb/yourself ˈdown** if sb **calms down**, or you **calm them down**, they stop being angry or excited and become calm: *Calm down! I've said I'm sorry.* ◇ *There was nothing we could do to calm her down.* ◇ *He went for a walk to calm himself down.* ◇ *Jack was so shocked that he had to be calmed down by his wife and son.*
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌcalm ˈdown; **ˌcalm sth ˈdown** to become calmer; to make a situation calmer: *The whole fuss will have calmed down by tomorrow.* ◇ *I've spoken to them to try to calm things down a bit.*
NOTE **Calm sth down** cannot be used in the passive.
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

camp /kæmp/

ˌcamp ˈout (*informal*) to sleep outside, usually in a tent; to sleep on the floor somewhere for a short time: *If there is nowhere to stay, we'll have to camp out.* ◇ *People camped out in the school hall to escape the flood water.*
G v + adv
▸ **ˈcampout** *n* (*AmE*) a time when people sleep outside in a tent

ˌcamp it ˈup (*BrE, informal*) **1** (of a man) to move or behave deliberately in a way that people think is typical of a man who is sexually attracted to other men (a **homosexual**): *He enjoys camping it up.* **2** to exaggerate your behaviour or a performance to make people laugh: *I really camped it up in the final scene.*
G v + it + adv

cancel /ˈkænsl/ (**-ll-**, *AmE* **-l-**)

ˌcancel ˈout; **ˌcancel sth ˈout** if two or more things **cancel out** or one **cancels out** the other, they are equally important, but have an opposite effect on a situation so that the situation does not change: *The gains and losses are expected to cancel out.* ◇ *Our expenditure and profits* ***cancel each other out.*** ◇ *The job is hard work, but this is cancelled out by the fact that the people are so nice.*
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

cannon /ˈkænən/

ˌcannon ˈinto sb/sth (of a moving person, vehicle, etc.) to hit sb/sth by accident and with great force: *She stopped suddenly and I almost cannoned into her.*
G v + prep

ˌcannon ˈoff sb/sth if sth moving **cannons off** sb/sth, it hits them/it by accident and with great force and then goes off in a different direction: *The ball cannoned off his leg into the goal.*
G v + prep

capitalize (*also* capitalise) /ˈkæpɪtəlaɪz/

ˈcapitalize on sth (*also* **ˈcapitalize upon sth** *less frequent, more formal*) to use sth to gain further advantage for yourself: *They capitalized on their success by raising prices.* ◇ *The opposition tried to capitalize on popular discontent over the new law.*
OBJ **success, opportunity, potential** SYN **take advantage of sth**
G v + prep

care /keə(r); *AmE* ker/

ˈcare for sb to like or love sb: *I care deeply for you.*
NOTE **Care for sb** can be used in the passive: *I just want to be loved and cared for by somebody.*
G v + prep

ˈcare for sb/sth 1 to take care of and be responsible for sb who is very young, old or sick, etc. or for sth that is in danger or could be damaged: *The nurses give advice to the patients and those who care for them.* ◇ *She cares for several children with special needs.* ◇ *The company is committed to caring for the environment.* OBJ **children, the sick, the elderly** NOTE In this meaning **care for sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *The children were all clean and well cared for.* → *see also* LOOK AFTER SB/STH/YOURSELF; LOOK AFTER STH **2** **not care for sb/sth** (*formal*) to not like sb/sth very much: *I don't care for opera.*
G v + prep
IDM **would you care for ...** (*formal*) used to ask sb if they would like sth to eat or drink: *Would you care for a cup of tea?*
▸ **unˈcared for** *adj* not looked after; neglected: *The children looked dirty and uncared for.* ◇ *uncared-for gardens*

carry /ˈkæri/ (**carries, carrying, carried, carried**)

ˌcarry sth aˈround (*also* **ˌcarry sth aˈbout/ˈround** *especially BrE*) (**with you**) to take sth from one place to another; to take sth everywhere with you: *I don't want to carry this bag about with me all day.* ◇ *The CD player is light enough to carry around in your pocket.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌcarry sb/sth aˈlong to take or move sb/sth forward: *His body had been carried along by the river.* ◇ *The crowd was so thick that she was carried along with it.* ◇ (*figurative*) *His immense enthusiasm carried us all along.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌcarry sb/sth aˈway/ˈoff to support the weight of sb/sth and take them/it away: *A strong current carried the dinghy away.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

be/get ˌcarried aˈway to be so excited and enthusiastic about sth that you lose control of your feelings and may behave in a silly or thoughtless way: *I got so carried away with shopping that I completely forgot the time.* ◇ *Don't get carried away — it's not that exciting.*
Ⓖ be/get + v + adv

ˌcarry sb ˈback (to sth) to remind sb of sth that happened in the past: *The song carried her back to her childhood.*
SYN **take sb back (to sth)**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌcarry sth ˈforward 1 (*also* **ˌcarry sth ˈover**) (*finance*) to move a total sum of money, or a total amount, from one page or column to the next, or from one week or year to the next: *The figures were carried forward from the previous page.* SYN **bring sth forward** NOTE In this meaning **carry sth forward** is often used in the passive. **2** to help sth to make progress or succeed: *She will carry the project forward after I leave.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌcarry sb ˈoff 1 if a disease **carries sb off**, they die as a result of it: *She was carried off by the epidemic.* **2** to capture sb: *The enemy carried off many prisoners.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌcarry sb/sth ˈoff = CARRY SB/STH AWAY/OFF

ˌcarry sth ˈoff 1 to win sth: *She carried off most of the prizes.* **2** to succeed in doing sth difficult; to deal with a difficult situation successfully: *She's the only person I know who can wear a dress like that and carry it off!*
Ⓖ **1** v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)
2 v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌcarry ˈon 1 (with sth) (*also* **ˌcarry ˈon doing sth**) (*especially BrE*) to continue doing sth or moving in a particular direction, without stopping: *Carry on working/with your work while I'm away.* ◇ *If she carries on shoplifting, she'll end up in jail.* ◇ *She ignored me and carried on writing.* ◇ *I called out to him, but he carried on down the road.* SYN **go on, go on doing sth** → *see also* CARRY STH ON 1 **2** to manage to continue living or working in your usual way in spite of difficult or unpleasant circumstances: *Life carried on as usual after the fire.* ◇ *We're all going to carry on as if nothing has happened.* SYN **go on; continue 3 (with sth)** to continue speaking or doing sth after a short pause: *'Well', she carried on, 'then I realized where I'd met him before!'* ◇ *Ted looked up briefly, then carried on with what he was doing.* SYN **go on (with sth) 4** to last for a particular time: *How long can this situation carry on?* SYN **go on; last 5 (at sb) (about sth)** (*informal*) to argue, quarrel or complain noisily; to make a fuss: *Stop carrying on about how hard your life is.* ◇ *How long are they going to be shouting and carrying on like that?* SYN **go on (at sb) (about sth) 6 (with sb)** (*old-fashioned, informal*) to have a sexual relationship with sb: *She's carrying on with her boss.*
Ⓖ v + adv
1 also v + adv + -ing
3 also v + adv + speech

▸ **ˈcarry-on** *n* **1** [usually sing.] (*BrE, informal*) excited or noisy behaviour over sth that is not important; a fuss **2** (*AmE*) a small bag or case that you carry onto a plane with you: *I'm travelling light — I just have a carry-on.* ◇ *Do you have any carry-on luggage?*

ˌcarry sth ˈon 1 to continue sth, especially sth that sb else has begun: *Our children will carry this tradition on after us.* → *see also* CARRY ON 1 **2** **ˌcarry ˈon sth, ˌcarry it/them ˈon** to do the activity mentioned: *We're trying to carry on a very important conversation!* ◇ *They carried on a correspondence for over forty years.* ◇ *to carry on a business/trade* OBJ **conversation, correspondence, business** SYN **conduct sth** NOTE A noun must always follow **on**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **on**.
Ⓖ **1** v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
2 v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv

ˌcarry sth ˈout 1 to do sth that you said you would do or that you have been asked to do: *to carry out a plan/a promise/an order* ◇ *He had no intention of carrying out his threats.* ◇ *She had carried out all his instructions.* OBJ **threat, promise, order 2** to do and complete a task: *to carry out a survey/an investigation* ◇ *to carry out repairs/checks/tests* ◇ *to carry out research* ◇ *It is not yet clear who carried out the attack.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

▸ **ˈcarry-out** *n* (*AmE, ScotE*) a meal that you buy cooked from a restaurant and take away to eat somewhere else: *Let's get a carry-out.*

ˌcarry sth ˈover 1 to delay sth until a later time: *The game had to be carried over until Wednesday.* ◇ *You can carry over 4 days' leave to next year.* SYN **postpone sth 2** to keep sth from one situation and use or deal with it in a new situation: *You should carry over what you learn in school into your everyday life.* **3** = CARRY STH FORWARD 1
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

▸ **ˈcarry-over** *n* **1** (*finance*) a total sum of money or an amount that is moved to the next column/page/year, etc. **2** something that is kept from one situation or time and used in another

ˌcarry sth ˈround (with you) (*especially BrE*) = CARRY STH AROUND (WITH YOU)

ˌcarry ˈthrough (on/with sth) (*AmE*) to do and finish what you have promised, agreed or arranged to do: *He convinced us that he would carry through with/on his promise.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌcarry sb ˈthrough; ˌcarry sb ˈthrough sth to help sb to deal with a difficult period: *Her determination carried her through.* ◇ *His courage helped to carry them through the difficult times.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌcarry sth ˈthrough to finish a task, a plan, etc. successfully: *She was determined to carry through her plans.* ◇ *Once Helen has started a task, she'll carry it through to the end.*
OBJ **plan, proposal, decision, reforms**
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

cart /kɑːt; *AmE* kɑːrt/

ˌcart sth aˈround (*also* **ˌcart sth aˈbout/ˈround** *especially BrE*) **(with you)** (*informal*) used to talk about carrying sth large, awkward or unimportant from one place to another or everywhere you go: *I had to cart my shopping around with me all day.* ◇ *He carts all sorts of useless stuff about.*
SYN **carry sth around (with you)** (*more formal*), **lug sth around (with you)**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌcart sb/sth aˈway/ˈoff (*informal*) to take sb/sth away with some difficulty: *Two players were carted off to hospital.* ◇ *The police arrived and carted 40 rioters off to jail.*
SYN **take sb/sth away** (*more formal*)
NOTE **Cart sb/sth away/off** is often used in the passive: *He was carted away by two policemen.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

carve /kɑːv; *AmE* kɑːrv/

ˌcarve sth ˈout 1 (*also* **ˌcarve sth ˈout of sth**) (*geology*) to make a physical feature in the earth's surface over a long period of time through the action of water, ice, weather, etc: *The valley was carved out by glaciers.* NOTE In this meaning **carve sth out** is often used in the passive. **2 (for yourself)** to build a successful career, a good reputation, etc., often with difficulty or hard work: *She carved out a unique niche for herself in the music business.* ◇ *He's carved out a successful career in the building industry.* OBJ **career, name, niche**
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
1 also v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌcarve sb/sth ˈup (*BrE, informal*) **1** to wound sb or their face badly with a knife: *He got carved up outside the pub last night.* **2** to go past a moving vehicle ahead of you and then suddenly move in front of it in a dangerous way: *I was carved up by a lunatic in a Porsche.* ◇ *We saw the van carve up several cars, before turning left.* OBJ **person, car**
SYN **cut sb/sth up** (*BrE*)
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌcarve sth ˈup to divide a company, an area of land, etc. into parts and share them out: *They carved the territory up into three provinces.* ◇ *The thieves hurriedly carved up the loot.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

▸ **ˈcarve-up** *n* [sing.] (*BrE, informal*) the act of dividing sth up into parts and sharing them out

cash /kæʃ/

ˌcash ˈin (on sth) (*informal*) to gain an advantage from a situation in a way that people think is wrong or dishonest: *Many businesses cashed in on the massive public interest in her death.* ◇ *The new law means video pirates can no longer cash in by selling illegal copies.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌcash sth ˈin to exchange sth for money: *Cash in any remaining travellers' cheques when you return.* ◇ *You will lose money if you cash your policy in early.*
OBJ **shares, policy**
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌcash ˈup (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˌcash ˈout**) to count the money that has been taken in a shop/store, restaurant, etc. at the end of the day: *We cash up at five o'clock.*
Ⓖ v + adv

cast /kɑːst; *AmE* kæst/ (**cast, cast**)

ˌcast aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌcast aˈbout**) **(for sth)** (*formal*) to look around you to try to find sth; to try very hard to think of sth: *He cast about for an escape route.* ◇ *He was desperately casting around for an excuse.* ◇ *The company is having to cast around feverishly for ways to cut its costs.*
NOTE This phrasal verb is usually used in written English.
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌcast sb/sth aˈside (*formal*) to get rid of, or give no attention to, sb/sth that you no longer want or need: *She just cast him aside when she got bored.* ◇ *She has been able to cast aside* (= stop using) *her wheelchair.*
SYN **discard sb/sth**
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌcast sth aˈside (*formal*) **1** to throw sth to one side: *He cast aside the newspaper impatiently.* **2** to get rid of feelings, attitudes, etc. that are bad or

negative, or that stop you achieving sth: *He cast aside all his inhibitions.* ◇ *The speakers cast modesty aside and talked about their success.*
SYN **throw sth aside**; **toss sth aside** (*less formal*)
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

be ˌcast aˈway (on sth) to be left somewhere after your ship has been destroyed at sea: *What would you do if you were cast away on a desert island?*
◈ be + v + adv
▸ **ˈcastaway** *n* a person whose ship has been destroyed and who has managed to swim to an island, etc.

ˌcast sth ˈback (to sb/sth) to make yourself think about a particular time, a situation in the past, etc: *I **cast my mind back** to our first meeting all those years ago.*
OBJ only **your mind**
◈ v + n + adv

ˌcast sth ˈdown (*literary*) if you **cast** your eyes **down**, you look down: *She cast her eyes down modestly while Jack was talking about her.*
OBJ only **eyes** SYN **lower sth** (*less formal*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **ˈdowncast** (*also* **ˌcast ˈdown** *less frequent*) *adj* (*literary*) **downcast** eyes are looking down
→ *see also* DOWNCAST at BE CAST DOWN

be ˌcast ˈdown (by sth) (*formal*) to be sad or unhappy about sth: *He is not easily cast down.*
◈ be + v + adv
▸ **ˈdowncast** (*also* **ˌcast ˈdown** *less frequent*) *adj* (*literary*) sad or unhappy: *a downcast expression* ◇ *He looked so downcast I took pity on him.*
→ *see also* DOWNCAST at CAST STH DOWN

ˌcast ˈoff; **ˌcast sth ˈoff 1** to undo the ropes that are holding a boat in position so that it can start to move **2** (in knitting) to remove a row of stitches from the needle in a way that will make a finished edge: *When the scarf is the right length, cast off.* OBJ **stitches** OPP **cast on, cast sth on**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆
v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌcast sth ˈoff (*formal*) **1** to take off a piece of clothing and throw it to one side: *They cast off their clothes and jumped in the pool.* OBJ **jacket, shoes, clothes** SYN **take sth off** (*less formal*) **2** to get rid of sth bad or sth that you do not like: *She tried to cast off her upbringing.* ◇ *It's time to cast off those winter blues and burst into spring!*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)
▸ **ˈcast-off** (*especially BrE*) (*AmE usually* **ˈhand-me-down**) *n* [usually pl.] a piece of clothing that the original owner no longer wants to wear: *She's fed up with wearing her sister's cast-offs.*
▸ **ˈcast-off** *adj* [only before noun] that the original owner no longer wants to wear or use: *cast-off clothing* ◇ *cast-off plastic bags*

ˌcast ˈon; **ˌcast sth ˈon** (in knitting) to make the first row of stitches on a needle, or add new stitches: *Cast on and knit 10 rows.*
OBJ **stitches** OPP **cast off, cast sth off**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆
v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌcast sb/sth ˈout; **ˌcast sb/sth ˈout of sth** (*formal*) to drive sb away; to get rid of sb/sth, especially by using force: *She was cast out by society.* ◇ *He claimed to be able to cast out demons.* ◇ *The villagers had been cast out of their homes.*
NOTE **Cast sb out** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆
v + n/pron + adv + prep
▸ **ˈoutcast** *n* someone who is rejected and ignored by other people and often has to leave their home and friends: *She felt like a social outcast.* ◇ *He was treated like an outcast by the other children.*
▸ **ˈoutcast** *adj* [only before noun] ignored or not accepted by other people: *outcast members of society*

ˌcast sb/sth ˈup (on sth) (*literary*) **1** if the sea **casts sb/sth up** on the land, it carries them/it in and leaves them/it there: *A whale bone was cast up on the beach.* SYN **wash up, wash sth up** (*less formal*) NOTE **Cast sb/sth up** is often used in the passive in this meaning. **2** if you **cast** your eyes **up**, you look up: *She cast her eyes up to the ceiling and sighed.* OBJ only **eyes**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

catch /kætʃ/ (caught, caught /kɔːt/)

ˈcatch at sth/sb to try to get hold of sth quickly: *She tried to catch at a branch but couldn't reach.*
OBJ **sb's hand/arm/sleeve** SYN **clutch at sb/sth; grasp at sth/sb**
◈ v + prep

ˌcatch ˈon (*informal*) **1 (to sth)** to understand sth; to realize the truth of sth: *He's very quick to catch on.* ◇ *The students soon caught on to the idea that phrasal verbs are not really difficult.* ◇ *People are catching on to the fact that he's a fraud.* SYN **cotton on (to sth) 2 (with sb)** to become popular or fashionable: *It's a good idea, but it'll never catch on.* ◇ *Paying by credit card has only caught on recently here.* ◇ *3-D films never caught on with a mass audience.*
◈ v + adv

ˌcatch sb ˈout 1 to trick sb into making a mistake or doing sth wrong; to discover that sb does not know much or is doing sth wrong: *The test isn't designed to catch you out. It's to see how much you've learnt.* ◇ *The interviewer may try to catch you out with trick questions.* ◇ *She reacted like a child caught out in a lie.* **2** (*especially BrE*) if a situation, bad weather etc. **catches sb out**, it surprises them and puts them into a difficult situation: *The snow catches us out every year* (= we are not prepared for it). ◇ *Many investors were caught out by the collapse of the company.*
NOTE **Catch sb out** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌcatch ˈup (with sb/sth) (*BrE also* **ˌcatch sb/sth ˈup**) **1** to reach sb/sth ahead of you by going faster than them/it: *She was walking so fast I had to run to catch up (with her).* ◇ *The police car finally caught up with the van at the junction.* **2** to reach the same level or standard as sb/sth else that was better or more advanced: *We need to catch up with our competitors in Europe.* ◇ *You'll have to work hard to catch up with the rest of the class.* ◇ *When I went back to school I found I **had a lot of catching up to do**.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˌcatch ˈup (with sth) 1 to spend extra time doing all the work, tasks, etc. that you should have done earlier: *I'm so behind with my paperwork, it's going to take me a week to catch up.* **2** to find out about things that have happened: *Come and stay for a few days, so that we have a chance to catch up.* ◇ *I want to catch up with all your news.* ◇ *We've **got a lot of catching up to do** after all this time.* → *see also* CATCH UP ON STH
◈ v + adv

ˌcatch sb ˈup (on sth) (*AmE*) to tell sb about things that have happened: *You can catch me up on the news later.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌcatch sb/sth ˈup (*BrE*) **1** = CATCH UP (WITH SB/STH) 1 *You go ahead. I'll catch you up.* ◇ *She caught the leader up and then overtook her.* **2** = CATCH UP (WITH SB/STH) 2 *This company is the most likely to catch up the market leader.* ◇ *She's training hard to catch her sister up.*

be/get ˌcaught ˈup in sth 1 to become involved in an unpleasant event or situation that you cannot escape from: *A number of tourists got caught up in the riots.* ◇ *children caught up in crime* ◇ *Sorry I'm late -- I got caught up in a traffic jam.* OBJ **violence, war, events, traffic 2** to be completely absorbed in an activity, your own feelings, etc: *She got caught up in the excitement and drama of the auction.* ◇ *I didn't hear you come in; I was so caught up in this book.* OBJ **excitement, book**
◈ be/get + v + adv + prep

ˌcatch ˈup on sb = CATCH UP WITH SB 2 *Old age is catching up on me.*

ˌcatch ˈup on sth 1 to spend extra time doing all the work, tasks, etc. that you should have done earlier: *I've got a lot of work to catch up on.* ◇ *I spent the weekend catching up on lost sleep.* OBJ **work, sleep 2** to find out about things that have happened: *It was good to see Patsy and catch up on all the gossip.*
→ *see also* CATCH UP (WITH STH)
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌcatch ˈup with sb 1 if the police or people in authority **catch up with** sb, they finally find out that they have done sth wrong and punish them: *They were involved in burglary for years before the police caught up with them.* **2** (*also* **catch up on sb** *less frequent*) if sth you have done or sth that has been happening to you **catches up with** you, it starts to cause you problems that you have so far managed to avoid: *His past is finally catching up with him.* ◇ *The late nights were beginning to catch up with her.* **3** (*informal*) to meet sb you have not seen for a while and hear their news: *He just wants to rest and catch up with old friends.* ◇ *Catch up with you later!* ◇ *We've **got a lot of catching up to do** after all this time!* OBJ **friends**
◈ v + adv + prep

cater /ˈkeɪtə(r)/

ˈcater for sb/sth to provide everything that sb, a group of people or a situation needs or wants: *The careers service caters for the needs of young people and adults.* ◇ *The resort also caters for winter sports.*
OBJ **needs, children, interests**
NOTE **Cater for sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *All age groups are well catered for.*
◈ v + prep

ˈcater to sb/sth (*disapproving*) to provide sth that satisfies what a particular type of person wants: *Endless media coverage catered to the public's interest in the scandal.*
NOTE **Cater to sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *Their every need was catered to.*
◈ v + prep

cave /keɪv/

ˌcave ˈin 1 (on sb/sth) if a roof, wall, etc. **caves in**, it falls down and inwards: *The roof of the tunnel caved in on the workmen.* SUBJ **roof, wall 2 (to sth)** to finally do what sb wants you to do after you have resisted for a long time: *The management refused to cave in to their demands.* ◇ *Under his fierce questioning she caved in and told him the truth.* OBJ **demands, pressure**
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˈcave-in** *n* **1** the fact of a roof, wall, etc. falling down and inwards: *For the people inside the tunnel there was a serious risk of flooding or a cave-in.* **2** an instance of agreeing under pressure to do sth you do not want to do

centre (*BrE*) (*AmE* **center**) /ˈsentə(r)/

ˈcentre around sb/sth; **ˈcentre sth around sb/sth** (*BrE also* **ˈcentre round sb/sth**, **ˈcentre sth round sb/sth**) to be, or make sb/sth, the most important person or thing around which most activity takes place: *The debate centres around the question of power.* ◇ *The case centred around the couple's adopted children.* ◇ *Her life was centred entirely around her family.* ◇ *The night-life of the town is largely centred around the hotels.*

NOTE **Centre sth around/round sb/sth** is often used in the passive.

◈ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˈcentre on sb/sth; **ˈcentre sth on sb/sth** (*also* **ˈcentre upon sb/sth**, **ˈcentre sth upon sb/sth** *more formal*) to give a lot of attention or thought to one particular activity, idea or person, etc: *The discussions centred on the hostage issue.* ◇ *Public interest centred largely on the team's stars.* ◇ *The group has centred its attention on the need for reform.* ◇ *His research is centred on the effects of unemployment.*

NOTE **Centre sth on/upon sb/sth** is often used in the passive.

◈ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

chain /tʃeɪn/

ˌchain sb/sth ˈup (to sth) to fasten sb/sth to sth else with chains to stop them escaping or being stolen: *I'd chain your bike up (to the fence) just in case.* ◇ *The prisoners were chained up in a dark cell.*

NOTE **Chain sb/sth (to sth)** can also be used with this meaning.

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

chalk /tʃɔːk/

ˌchalk ˈup sth; **ˌchalk it/them ˈup** (*informal*) to achieve a success, a victory, a score in a game, etc: *The team has chalked up its fifth win in a row.* ◇ *This week Dee Brothers chalked up 100 years of business in this town.*

OBJ **success, victory, win**

NOTE A noun must always follow **up**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **up**.

◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv

ˌchalk sth ˈup to sth (*informal*) to think that sth happens as a result of sth else: *We can chalk our recent victories up to a lot of luck.* ◇ *When the goal was disallowed they* ***chalked it up to a bad referee decision.***

SYN **attribute sth to sth** (*formal*), **put sth down to sth**

◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep

IDM **chalk it up to exˈperience** (*spoken, especially AmE*) used to say that you can learn from sth bad that has happened to you

chance /tʃɑːns; *AmE* tʃæns/

ˈchance on/upon sb/sth (*formal*) to meet sb or find sth when you do not expect to: *I chanced on an old school friend in town.* ◇ *He chanced upon a volume of Japanese poetry in a bookshop.*

◈ v + prep

change /tʃeɪndʒ/

ˌchange sb/sth aˈround (*especially AmE*) = CHANGE SB/STH ROUND

ˌchange ˈback 1 (into sth) to take off your clothes and put on what you were wearing earlier: *I'll just change back into my tracksuit.* **2 (into/to sb/sth)** to return to an earlier state or form: *When you double click on SELECT, the screen changes back to the main design screen.* ◇ *Slowly the angry animal changed back into its normal calm self.*

◈ v + adv

ˌchange sth ˈback (into/to sth) to exchange an amount of money into the system of money (**currency**) that it was in before: *Can I change these dollars back into sterling?*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌchange ˈdown (into/to sth) (*BrE*) to move the stick that controls the speed in a vehicle into a position suitable for slower speeds (a **lower gear**): *Change down into second as you approach the corner.*

OPP **change up (into/to sth)**

◈ v + adv

ˌchange ˈinto sth to put on different clothes: *We quickly changed into our swimsuits.* ◇ *I didn't bring anything to change into.*

◈ v + prep

ˌchange ˈinto sth; **ˌchange sb/sth ˈinto sth** to change, or to make sb/sth change, into sth different: *The castle has changed into a hotel.* ◇ *The handsome prince was changed into a frog.*

SYN **turn into sth, turn sb/sth into sth**

◈ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌchange ˈout of sth to take off the clothes you are wearing and put on different ones: *I must change out of these wet clothes before I get a chill.* ◇ *She changed out of her suit as soon as she came home.*

◈ v + adv + prep

ˌchange ˈover 1 (from sth) (to sth) to stop using one system or thing and start using another: *The magazine changed over from pink paper to white in 1917.* ◇ *We're changing over to a new computer system.* **SYN** **switch over (from sth) (to sth)** **2 (to sth)** (*BrE*) to change from watching one television channel to watching another: *I changed over to BBC1 to see the football.* ◇ *Can we change over?* **SYN** **switch over (from sth) (to sth); turn over (to sth)**

◈ v + adv

▶ **ˈchangeover** *n* a change from one system or thing to another: *The changeover to the new system will take place gradually.* ◇ *a changeover period*

ˌchange ˈover/ˈround (*BrE*) if two people **change over/round**, they move to where the other person was before or do what the other person was doing: *Can you and Phil change round? You're too tall to stand in the front row.* ◇ *When you get tired of driving we can change over.*

SYN **swap around/over/round** (*informal, especially BrE*)

◈ v + adv

ˌchange sb/sth ˈround (*especially BrE*) (*AmE usually* **ˌchange sb/sth aˈround**) to move objects, such as furniture, or people into different positions: *Who's changed the desks around?* ◇ *You're always changing this room round!* (= making it look different by moving the furniture, etc.) ◇ *The Yankees keep changing their players around.*

OBJ **room, furniture** **SYN** **swap sb/sth around/over/round** (*especially BrE*)

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌchange ˈup (into/to sth) (*BrE*) to move the stick that controls the speed in a vehicle into a position suitable for faster speeds (a **higher gear**): *Change up into fourth gear now.*

OPP **change down (into/to sth)**

◈ v + adv

charge /tʃɑːdʒ; *AmE* tʃɑːrdʒ/

ˈcharge sb with sth; **ˈcharge sb with doing sth** (*formal*) to give sb a duty, responsibility or task: *A solicitor was charged with administering the estate.*

NOTE These phrasal verbs are often used in the passive.

◈ v + n/pron + prep

charm /tʃɑːm; *AmE* tʃɑːrm/

ˌcharm sth ˈout of sb if you **charm** money or information **out of** sb, you obtain it by using your power to please or attract people: *She managed to charm £20 out of him.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep

chase /tʃeɪs/

ˌchase aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌchase aˈbout/ˈround**) to be very busy, rushing from one place to another: *I've been chasing around all morning trying to find a gift for my sister.*

◈ v + adv

ˌchase sb/sth aˈway/ˈoff/ˈout to force sb/sth to run away by running after them or threatening them: *He chased the attackers away by firing shots into the air.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌchase sb/sth ˈdown (*AmE, informal*) to try hard to get sth or find sb/sth that you need or want: *I've been trying to chase Sam down all day!*

SYN **seek sb/sth out** (*more formal*), **track sb/sth down**

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌchase sb/sth ˈoff = CHASE SB/STH AWAY/OFF/OUT, ETC.

ˌchase sb/sth ˈout = CHASE SB/STH AWAY/OFF/OUT, ETC.

ˌchase ˈround (*BrE*) = CHASE AROUND

ˌchase sb/sth ˈup (*informal*) **1** to contact sb and remind them to do sth they have said they would do or that they ought to do: *I'll chase him up and find out what's going on.* ◇ *It is his job to chase up clients with outstanding debts.* ◇ *Could you chase up those late replies* (= remind people to reply). **2** to try to find sb/sth that you need; to try to get more information about sb/sth: *We're chasing up two other people who were at the party.* ◇ *I'll chase up references to the battle in the library.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

chat /tʃæt/ (-tt-)

ˌchat sb ˈup (*informal*) **1** (*BrE*) to talk in a friendly way to sb because you are sexually attracted to them: *Who was that girl you were chatting up last night?* **2** (*especially AmE*) to talk to sb in a friendly way because you want them to do sth for you or to give you sth: *You'll have to chat the boss up if you want some days off.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▶ **ˈchat-up** *n* (*BrE, informal*) an attempt to talk in a friendly way to sb you are sexually attracted to: *He was trying some old chat-up lines.*

cheat /tʃiːt/

ˈcheat sb of sth (*also* **ˌcheat sb ˈout of sth**) to prevent sb from having sth, especially in an unfair or dishonest way: *He had cheated the taxman of £60 000.* ◇ *He was cheated out of his rightful inheritance.*

◈ v + n/pron + prep • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˈcheat on sb to be unfaithful to your husband, wife or partner by secretly having sex with sb else: *He was the last to know that she had been cheating on him.*

OBJ **wife, partner, etc.**

◈ v + prep

ˈcheat on sth to fail to do sth you have agreed or promised to do: *The government have cheated on their commitment not to raise taxes.*

OBJ **agreement, commitment**

◈ v + prep

ˌcheat sb ˈout of sth = CHEAT SB OF STH

check /tʃek/

ˌcheck ˈin 1 (at sth) to go to an official desk at a hotel, an airport, etc. and tell sb that you have arrived: *After checking in, we went out for a meal.* ◇ *You must check in at desk 25 an hour before take-off.* → *see also* CHECK INTO STH 1 **2 (with sb)** (*especially AmE*) to contact sb to let them know where you are or what you are doing: *I have to check in with my boss every three hours.* SYN **report in (to sb/sth)**

G v + adv

▸ **ˈcheck-in** *n* **1** [U] the act of telling an official at an airport that you have arrived, showing them your ticket, etc: *the check-in desk* **2** [C] [U] the place at an airport where you go to say you have arrived, show your ticket, etc: *There were long queues at the check-in.*

ˌcheck sb ˈin to take sb's name when they arrive at a hotel or an airport, look at their ticket, etc: *Write all the names of the guests in this book as they are checked in.* ◇ *All the passengers have been checked in.*

OBJ **guests, passengers**

G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌcheck sth ˈin to leave or accept bags, cases, etc. to be put on a plane or a train: *When we arrived at the airport we checked our bags in straight away.*

OBJ **luggage, bags**

G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌcheck ˈinto sth 1 to arrive at a hotel, private hospital, etc. to begin your stay there: *I arrived in Boston and checked into my hotel.* ◇ *She's checked into a private clinic for drug rehabilitation.* OBJ **hotel, motel, clinic** SYN **book into sth** OPP **check out of sth** → *see also* CHECK IN 1 **2** to try to find out more about sth or discover the true facts about sth: *The police are checking into the cause of the crash.* SYN **look into sth**

G v + prep

ˌcheck sth ˈoff 1 to put a mark beside items on a list to show that they are correct, present or have been dealt with: *I've checked off all the furniture on the list.* ◇ *He checked everyone's name off as they arrived.* SYN **tick sth off 2** (*especially AmE*) to put a mark in a box on a document to give an answer to a question, choose sb/sth, etc: *Some voters wrote in names instead of checking off the candidates listed.* NOTE **Check sth** is usually used with this meaning.

G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˈcheck on sb/sth 1 to make sure that sb is safe, happy, etc. or that sth is progressing as it should be: *I'll just check on dinner.* ◇ *The doctor visited every day to check on my progress.* OBJ **progress, children, patient 2** to find out if sth is true or correct, especially sth that sb has said about themselves: *Do you always check on future employees?* ◇ *Will you check on his address?* → *see also* CHECK UP

NOTE **Check on sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *The children were put to bed and then not checked on again.* ◆ **Check sth** can also be used with these meanings.

G v + prep

ˌcheck ˈout (*especially AmE*) if facts, etc. **check out**, they can be shown to be correct or true: *His story doesn't check out.* SUBJ **story, reference**

G v + adv

ˌcheck ˈout; **ˌcheck ˈout of sth 1** (*AmE, informal, becoming old-fashioned*) to leave a place or finish an activity: *The climb was too difficult so I checked out early.* ◇ *He can't just* **check out on us** *like that!* ◇ *Let's check out of here.* **2** to leave a hotel, a hospital, etc. where you have been staying: *She checked out this morning.* ◇ *He decided to check out of the hospital and go home.* OBJ **hotel, motel, hospital** OPP **check in; check into sth**

G v + adv ◆ v + adv + prep

▸ **ˈcheckout** *n* (*AmE*) [U] the act or time of leaving a hotel at the end of your stay: *Checkout is 10 a.m.* ◇ *checkout time*

→ *see also* CHECKOUT at CHECK OUT, CHECK SB OUT

ˌcheck ˈout; **ˌcheck sb ˈout** (*AmE*) if you **check out** in a shop/store, or sb **checks you out**, you find out how much you have to pay and give sb the money: *You can check out at aisle eight.* ◇ *The girl who checked me out looked at me strangely.*

G v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv

▸ **ˈcheckout** *n* the place where you pay for the goods you are buying in a supermarket: *There were huge queues at the checkout.* ◇ *a supermarket checkout*

→ *see also* CHECKOUT at CHECK OUT, CHECK OUT OF STH

ˌcheck sb/sth ˈout 1 (*especially AmE*) to find out if sth is true or correct or if sb is honest, truthful, reliable, etc: *Check him out before you give him the job.* ◇ *Police have checked out his story.* ◇ *We need to check out whether the company is reliable.* OBJ **story, claim, company 2** (*informal, especially AmE*) to look at sb/sth because they/it seem interesting or attractive: *Check out our new fashion range!* ◇ *It's worth checking out that new restaurant.* ◇ *Check out that gorgeous guy over there!*

G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌcheck sth ˈout (*AmE*) to borrow sth such as a book or a video from a library: *I checked out three books from the library.*

OBJ **book, video**

G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌcheck sb/sth ˈover to examine a person or an animal to make sure that they are healthy; to examine a machine, etc. to make sure it is working correctly: *The doctor would like to check you over.* ◇ *I got the car checked over before the trip.*

SYN **look sb/sth over; examine sb/sth** (*more formal*)

G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌcheck sth ˈover (*also* **ˌcheck ˈthrough sth**) to examine sth written or printed carefully to make sure that it is correct: *I've got to check over my work for spelling before I hand it in.* ◇ *You should get someone to check the letter over for you.*

G v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*) ◆ v + prep

ˌcheck ˈthrough sth (*also* **ˌcheck it, them, etc. ˈthrough** *less frequent*) = CHECK STH OVER *Check through your notes carefully.* ◇ *There were 23 files to look at, and Tim spent half his day checking through them all.*

NOTE A noun must always follow **through**. A pronoun can come between the verb and **through** or after **through**.

G v + prep ◆ v + pron + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌcheck ˈup (*especially BrE*) **1** (on sb) to make sure that sb is doing what they should be doing, or that what they have said about themselves is true: *They always check up on prospective employees.* ◇ *I won't have you checking up on me like that!* ◇ *I'd better check up to see the kids are OK.* **2** (on sth) to find out if sth is true or correct; to find out what is happening: *I think the train's at ten o'clock, but I'll phone the station to check up.* ◇ *I went to the library to check up on a few things.*

NOTE **Check** and **check sth** can also be used with these meanings.

→ *see also* CHECK ON SB/STH

G v + adv

▸ **ˈcheck-up** *n* an examination by your doctor to see how healthy you are: *to go for a check-up* ◇ *a routine check-up*

cheer /tʃɪə(r); *AmE* tʃɪr/

ˌcheer sb ˈon to encourage sb, especially sb in a race or competition, by shouting: *The crowd cheered the runners on.*

G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌcheer ˈup; **ˌcheer sb/yourself ˈup** to become, or to make sb/yourself, happier or more cheerful: *She seems to have cheered up since Saturday.* ◇ *Cheer up!* ◇ *Nothing could cheer him up.* ◇ *She bought some chocolates to cheer herself up.*

SYN **brighten up; liven up, liven sb/sth up**

G v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌcheer sth ˈup to make a room, etc. brighter and more cheerful: *Flowers always cheer up a room.*

OBJ **room** SYN **brighten sth up; liven sth up**

G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

chew /tʃuː/

ˈchew on sth 1 (*also* **ˈchew at sth**) to bite sth continuously, especially because you are nervous or to test your teeth: *He chewed on his bottom lip as he considered the question.* **2** (*informal*) = CHEW STH OVER *Why don't we chew on it for a while?*

G v + prep

ˌchew sb ˈout (*AmE, informal*) to tell sb angrily that they have done sth wrong: *He got chewed out by his teacher for being late.*

SYN **tell sb off** (for sth/for doing sth); **reprimand sb** (*formal*)

G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌchew sth ˈover (*also* **ˈchew on sth**) (*both informal*) to think about or discuss sth carefully and in detail: *He spent the weekend chewing over the problem.*

OBJ **problem, idea**

G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌchew sth ˈup 1 to bite sth until it is completely soft or destroyed: *The baby chewed the cookie up and swallowed it.* **2** (*informal*) if a machine **chews sth up**, it damages or destroys it: *The cassette player's chewed the tape up again.*

G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

chicken /ˈtʃɪkɪn/

ˌchicken ˈout; **ˌchicken ˈout of sth**; **ˌchicken ˈout of doing sth** (*informal*) to decide not to do sth because you are afraid: *If I don't fight him, everyone will say that I chickened out.* ◇ *She chickened out of telling him the truth.*

SYN **bottle out, bottle out of sth, bottle out of doing sth**

G v + adv ◆ v + adv + prep

chill /tʃɪl/

ˌchill ˈout (*informal*) to relax completely and not get upset or excited about anything: *Chill out! We'll get there on time!* ◇ *I spent most of the weekend chilling out at my friend's house.*

G v + adv

▸ **ˈchill-out** *adj* [only before noun] that helps you to relax or makes you feel relaxed: *chill-out music* ◇ *a chill-out room* (= a place at a club, etc. where you can relax when you do not want to dance)

chime /tʃaɪm/

ˌchime ˈin (with sth) (*informal*) to join in a conversation suddenly or interrupt sb: *'Absolutely!' she chimed in eagerly.* ◇ *He kept chiming in with his own opinions.*

G v + adv ◆ v + adv + speech

ˌchime ˈin with sth; **ˈchime with sth** (*formal*) to agree with sth; to be similar to sth: *His policies chimed in with the national mood at the time.*

SYN **fit in with sth**

NOTE These phrasal verbs are usually used in written English.

G v + adv + prep ◆ v + prep

chip /tʃɪp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌchip aˈway at sth (*used especially in the progressive tenses*) to make sth smaller or weaker by

was chipping away at the rocks, looking for fossils. ◇ *(figurative) The government seems to be chipping away at people's rights.*
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌchip sth aˈway/ˈoff; ˌchip sth ˈoff sth to remove sth by continuously breaking off small pieces: *She used a hammer to chip away the stone.* ◇ *I chipped the rust off the box with a knife.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌchip ˈin (with sth) (*informal*) **1** to join in or interrupt a conversation; to add sth to a conversation: *Feel free to chip in if I've forgotten to mention anything.* ◇ *She chipped in with some interesting remarks.* **2** (*also* **ˌchip ˈin sth**) to give some money so that a group of people can buy sth together: *Has everyone chipped in for the present?* ◇ *The company has chipped in with a $200 donation.* ◇ *Let's all chip in five dollars.* SYN **club together (to do sth)**
◈ v + adv **2** also v + adv + n

ˌchip sth ˈoff; ˌchip sth ˈoff sth = CHIP STH AWAY/OFF, CHIP STH OFF STH

ˌchip ˈoff; ˌchip ˈoff sth if paint or a surface **chips off**, it comes off in small pieces: *The varnish is chipping off.* ◇ *Most of the paint had chipped off the gate.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

chivvy /ˈtʃɪvi/ (**chivvies, chivvying, chivvied, chivvied**)

ˌchivvy sb aˈlong (*BrE, informal*) to try to make sb move faster or do sth more quickly: *The teacher chivvied the children along.*
SYN **hurry sb/sth along**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

choke /tʃəʊk; *AmE* tʃoʊk/

ˌchoke sth ˈback to try to stop yourself from showing a strong emotion, or saying sth that might upset sb: *He choked back his tears.* ◇ *A protest rose to her lips, but she choked it back.*
OBJ **tears, sob(s)**
NOTE **Choke sth back** is not used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌchoke sth ˈoff 1 to prevent or stop sth: *High interest rates have choked off investment.* OBJ **demand, investment 2** to stop or interrupt sth: *His words were choked off by the sudden screams.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌchoke ˈup; ˌchoke sb ˈup to become, or to make sb, so upset that you/they are unable to speak: *That song really chokes me up.* ◇ *He gets **choked up** just remembering the day she left.*
NOTE **Choke sb up** is usually used in the passive with *be* or *get*.
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

chop /tʃɒp; *AmE* tʃɑːp/ (**-pp-**)

ˈchop at sth; ˌchop aˈway at sth to aim blows at sth with a sharp heavy tool: *They chopped at the undergrowth with their machetes.*
◈ v + prep • v + adv + prep

ˌchop sth ˈdown to make sth such as a tree fall down by cutting it at the base with a sharp tool: *They're chopping down thousands of trees every year.*
OBJ **tree** SYN **cut sth down**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌchop sth ˈoff; ˌchop sth ˈoff sth to remove sth by cutting it with a sharp heavy tool: *The king had his head chopped off.* ◇ *She chopped a branch off the tree.*
SYN **cut sth off, cut sth off sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌchop sth ˈup to cut sth into small pieces with a knife or a sharp tool: *Shall we chop these logs up for firewood?* ◇ *I shall have to chop her food up very small for her.* ◇ *Chop up the onion into small pieces.*
SYN **cut sth up**
→ *see also* HACK STH UP
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

chow /tʃaʊ/

ˌchow ˈdown (on sth) (*AmE, informal*) to eat a lot of food: *We chowed down on fried chicken and salad.*
◈ v + adv

chuck /tʃʌk/

NOTE **Chuck** is an informal way of saying **throw**.

ˌchuck sth aˈway (*BrE, informal*) **1** to not make good use of sth; to waste sth: *She's chucking all her money away on presents for him.* ◇ *It's too good an opportunity to chuck away.* **2** (*also* **ˌchuck sth ˈout**) to throw sth away because you no longer want or need it: *We chucked the old sofa away.* ◇ *Don't chuck yesterday's paper out. I still haven't done the crossword.*
SYN **throw sth away**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈchuck it down (*also* **ˈchuck down, ˈchuck down sth** *less frequent*) (*BrE, informal*) to rain very heavily: *It was chucking it down outside.*
SYN **pour down** (*BrE*)
NOTE **Chuck it down** and **chuck down** are always used with the subject *it*.
◈ v + it + adv • v + adv • v + adv + n

ˌchuck sth ˈin (*BrE, informal*) to include sth extra with what you are selling or offering without increasing the price: *If you buy the freezer and the fridge we'll chuck in a toaster.*
SYN **throw sth in**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌchuck sth ˈin/ˈup (*BrE, informal*) to decide to stop doing sth such as a job or a course of study: *What made you decide to chuck in your course?* ◇ *I feel like **chucking it all in** and going back to Africa.*
OBJ **job, course** SYN **jack sth in** (*BrE*), **pack sth in** (*BrE*), **give sth up**
NOTE **Chuck sth in/up** cannot be used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌchuck sb ˈout; ˌchuck sb ˈout of sth (*informal*) to force sb to leave a place, a job, etc: *Her parents chucked her out when she got pregnant.*
SYN **throw sb out, throw sb out of sth; turn sb out (from sth), turn sb out of sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌchuck sth ˈout (*spoken, informal*) **1** to reject a plan, a proposal, etc: *The committee chucked my proposal out.* **2** = CHUCK STH AWAY 2
SYN **throw sth out**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌchuck sth ˈup (*BrE*) = CHUCK STH IN/UP

chug /tʃʌg/ (**-gg-**)

ˌchug aˈlong (*informal*) to make steady but slow progress: *'Hi! How are things?' 'Oh, fine, just chugging along.'*
◈ v + adv

churn /tʃɜːn; *AmE* tʃɜːrn/

ˌchurn sth ˈout (*informal*) to produce sth quickly in large amounts: *She churns out trashy romantic novels.* ◇ *They churn out 3 000 identical toy trains every day.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌchurn sb ˈup (*informal*) to make sb feel very upset, worried, frightened or angry: *When I drove away from the house for the last time, I was churned up inside.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌchurn sth ˈup to move sth such as mud or water around and damage or disturb the surface: *Cars and motorbikes had churned up the field.* ◇ *seas churned up by the storm* ◇ *(figurative) His visit churned up bitter memories.*
OBJ **earth/ground, mud, water**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

claim /kleɪm/

ˌclaim sth ˈback to ask for sth to be returned to you: *Claim your expenses back from the company.*
OBJ **tax, money**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

clam /klæm/ (**-mm-**)

ˌclam ˈup (on sb) (*informal*) to refuse to speak about sth because you are afraid, or want to keep it secret: *He always clams up when we ask about his family.*
◈ v + adv

clamp /klæmp/

ˌclamp ˈdown; ˌclamp ˈdown on sb/sth (*informal*) to become strict about sth in order to prevent sth happening, especially a crime, a protest, etc: *The government intends to clamp down on drug smuggling.*
SYN **crack down, crack down on sb/sth**
◈ v + adv • v + adv + prep
▸ **ˈclampdown (on sb/sth)** *n* sudden action that is taken by a government or other authority to stop a crime, a protest, etc.

ˈˌclamp ˈon sth; ˌclamp sth ˈon sb/sth (*especially AmE*) to force sb to accept sth unpleasant: *The army clamped on a curfew after the riots.* ◇ *The army clamped a curfew on the refugee camps.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv (*rare*) • v + n/pron + prep

claw /klɔː/

ˈclaw at sb/sth to try to catch sb/sth or scratch or tear sb/sth with sharp, curved nails (**claws**) or with your fingernails: *The cat was clawing at the door.* ◇ *She tried to claw at his face.*
◈ v + prep

ˌclaw sth ˈback (*especially BrE*) **1** to work hard to get sth back that you have lost: *They're trying to claw back their share of the market.* **2** if a government **claws back** money it has paid to people, it gets it back, usually by taxing them: *The government are clawing back age allowances in tax.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈclawback** *n* (*BrE, business*) the act of a government getting back in tax the money it has paid to people; the money that is paid back

clean /kliːn/

ˌclean sth ˈdown (*BrE*) to clean sth thoroughly by wiping or brushing it: *Clean down all the walls before repainting them.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌclean sth ˈoff; ˌclean sth ˈoff sth to remove sth from the surface of sth by brushing, wiping, etc: *She couldn't be bothered to clean her make-up off.* ◇ *How can I clean red wine off the carpet?*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌclean sb/sth ˈout; ˌclean sb/sth ˈout of sth (*informal*) to use up or take all sb's money; to take or buy the whole supply of sth that sb has: *Buying drinks for everyone cleaned me out.* ◇ *It's been a great year for sales. We're completely*

cleaned out (= we've sold all our supply). ◇ *The stall was cleaned out of newspapers by 8.00 a.m.* ◇ *Burglars had cleaned the place out* (= had stolen everything).
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌclean sth ˈout to clean the inside of sth thoroughly: *We clean the stables out every day.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **ˈclean-out** *n* [usually sing.] (*especially BrE*) an occasion when you clean a room, house, cupboard, etc. thoroughly; the activity of cleaning a room, house, cupboard, etc. thoroughly

ˌclean ˈup (*informal*) to be very successful; to win a lot of money or prizes: *The movie cleaned up at the awards ceremony.*
◈ v + adv

ˌclean ˈup; **ˌclean yourself ˈup** to wash yourself or make yourself clean: *I'll just clean up before dinner.* ◇ *They cleaned themselves up and put on their best clothes.* ◇ *It's time you got cleaned up and ready for the evening.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + pron + adv

ˌclean ˈup; **ˌclean sth ˈup** to remove dirt, etc. from a place and make it clean: *I've got to clean up before my parents get home.* ◇ *Who's going to clean the place up after you?* ◇ *How often is the trash and litter cleaned up?*
OBJ **mess, house, environment**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈclean-up** *n* [usually sing.] the act of removing dirt, etc. from a place to clean it
→ *see also* CLEAN-UP at CLEAN STH UP

ˌclean sb ˈup to clean sb thoroughly: *Dad cleaned me up after I fell over in the mud.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌclean sth up to remove criminals, crime or immoral behaviour from a place or an organization: *The mayor is determined to clean up the city and make it a safer place to live.* ◇ *The company is trying to clean up its image.*
OBJ **city, image**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
IDM **clean up your ˈact** to start behaving in a responsible way
▸ **ˈclean-up** *n* [usually sing.] the act of removing crime or immoral behaviour from a place or an organization
→ *see also* CLEAN-UP at CLEAN UP, CLEAN STH UP

clear /klɪə(r); *AmE* klɪr/

ˌclear aˈway; **ˌclear sth aˈway** (*especially BrE*) to remove things that you have been using and no longer need in order to leave a clear space: *I'll help you to clear away after tea.* ◇ *to clear away the dishes* ◇ *Can you clear your books away?*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌclear sb aˈway (*AmE*) to make sb leave a place: *The police cleared the demonstrators away.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌclear ˈoff (*informal, especially BrE*) to go or run away: *You've no right to be here. Clear off!* ◇ *He cleared off as soon as he heard the police car.* ◇ *I asked if I could play with them, but they told me to clear off home.*
◈ v + adv

ˌclear ˈout; **ˌclear ˈout of sth** (*informal*) to leave a place quickly: *Would it be better for you if I just cleared out and went back to London?* ◇ *I told him to clear out of the house by Monday.*
SYN **get out, get out of sth**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + prep

ˌclear sth ˈout to make sth empty and clean by removing what you do not want: *I cleared out all the cupboards.*
SYN **tidy sth out** (*BrE*)
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈclear-out** *n* [usually sing.] (*informal, especially BrE*) the act of throwing away all the things you no longer want or need or of getting rid of people you no longer want: *a clear-out of staff to reduce the wages bill*

ˌclear ˈup if the weather **clears up**, it becomes brighter and rain, etc. moves away: *For a week, it rained all day and cleared up in the evening.*
SYN **brighten up**
◈ v + adv

ˌclear ˈup; **ˌclear sth ˈup 1** to make sth clean and neat: *I'll help you clear up.* ◇ *Clear up the mess in here before you go.* OBJ **mess** SYN **tidy up, tidy sth up** (*especially BrE*) **2** if an illness, infection, etc. **clears up** or sth **clears it up**, it disappears: *The rash cleared up very quickly.* ◇ *The antibiotics should clear up the infection.* OBJ **rash, infection**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌclear sth ˈup to solve a problem; to find an explanation for sth: *to clear up a mystery* ◇ *I'm glad we've cleared that misunderstanding up.*
OBJ **confusion, matter, problem, mystery**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

climb /klaɪm/

ˌclimb ˈdown (over sth) (*informal*) to admit that you are wrong or have made a mistake; to change your position in an argument: *The president was forced to climb down and issue an apology.*
SYN **back down (on/from sth); give in (to sb/sth)**
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˈclimbdown (over sth)** *n* an act of admitting that you are wrong or have made a mistake; an act of changing your position in an argument

cling /klɪŋ/ (**clung, clung** /klʌŋ/)

ˈcling to sth; **ˌcling ˈon to sth** to be unwilling to stop doing, believing or thinking about sth; to be unwilling to get rid of sth: *I still cling to the hope that he's alive.* ◇ *She's clinging on to the past.*
OBJ **past, power, tradition**
◈ v + prep ◆ v + adv + prep

clock /klɒk; *AmE* klɑːk/

ˌclock ˈin/ˈon; **ˌclock sb ˈin/ˈon** (*BrE*) to record the time that you arrive at work, especially by putting a card into a machine; to do this for sb or check the time they arrive at work: *We arrived and clocked on for the night shift.*
SYN **punch in, punch sb in** (*AmE*)
OPP **clock off/out**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌclock ˈin at sth to last or take a particular amount of time; to cost a particular amount of money: *The fastest runner clocked in at 3 minutes 40 seconds.*
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌclock ˈoff/ˈout; **ˈclock sb ˈoff/ˈout** (*BrE*) to record the time that you leave work, especially by putting a card into a machine; to do this for sb: *Don't forget to clock off when you leave.*
SYN **punch out, punch sb out** (*AmE*)
OPP **clock in/on, clock sb in/on**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌclock ˈon; **ˌclock sb ˈon** (*BrE*) = CLOCK IN/ON, CLOCK SB IN/ON

ˌclock ˈout; **ˌclock sb ˈout** (*BrE*) = CLOCK OFF/OUT, CLOCK SB OFF/OUT

ˌclock sth ˈup (*informal*) to win or achieve a particular number or amount: *We've clocked up 500 miles* (= we've travelled 500 miles) *today.* ◇ *The company has clocked up record exports this year.*
OBJ **miles, years** SYN **notch sth up**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv (*rare*)

clog /klɒg; *AmE* klɑːg/ (**-gg-**)

ˌclog ˈup (with sth), **ˌclog sth ˈup (with sth)** to become, or to make sth, blocked so that nothing can move: *The pipe had clogged up (with mud).* ◇ *The roads were clogged up with traffic.*
OBJ **roads, pipes** SYN **block up, block sth up**
NOTE **Clog** and **clog sth** are used with a similar meaning.
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

close /kləʊz; *AmE* kloʊz/

ˌclose aˈround sb/sth (*BrE also* **ˌclose aˈbout/ˈround sb/sth**) to surround sb/sth, holding them/it tightly: *His fingers closed around her wrist.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The darkness of the night was closing about him.*
◈ v + prep

ˌclose ˈdown (*BrE*) if a radio or television station **closes down**, it stops broadcasting programmes at the end of the day
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˈclose-down** *n* [sing.] the end of broadcasting on television and radio until the next day
→ *see also* CLOSE-DOWN at CLOSE DOWN, CLOSE STH DOWN

ˌclose ˈdown; **ˌclose sth ˈdown** if a shop/store, business, etc. **closes down**, or sb **closes it down**, it stops operating as a business, usually permanently: *Many businesses have closed down because of the recession.* ◇ *The government has closed down most of the mines.* ◇ *The hospital closed down last year.*
SYN **shut down, shut sth down**
OPP **open up, open sth up**
NOTE **Close** and **close sth** are also used with this meaning: *The factory was closed last year.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈclose-down** *n* [U] [sing.] the stopping of work, especially permanently, in an office, factory, etc.
→ *see also* CLOSE-DOWN at CLOSE DOWN

ˌclose ˈin 1 (on sb/sth) to come nearer to and surround sb/sth in a frightening way or in order to attack them: *The enemy is closing in.* ◇ *The fog was closing in on us.* **2** (*especially BrE*) when the days **close in**, they gradually become shorter: *The days/nights are closing in now that autumn/fall is here.* ◇ *The evenings are closing in fast.* SYN **draw in** (*BrE*)
◈ v + adv

ˌclose sth ˈoff (to sb/sth) to put sth across the entrance to a road, a room, etc. so that people cannot go in: *Police have closed the area off to traffic.* ◇ (*figurative*) *We don't want to close off any options.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˈclose on sb/sth (*BrE*) to make the distance between you and sb/sth else smaller, for example in a race: *I was slowly closing on the runner ahead of me.*
◈ v + prep

ˈclose on/over sth to surround sth, covering it or holding it tightly: *His fingers closed over the money.*
◈ v + prep

ˌclose ˈout (*AmE*) if a shop/store **closes out** it sells everything very cheaply before it stops operating as a business: *The store is closing out on Monday with discounts of up to 75%.*
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˈcloseout** *n* (*AmE*) an occasion when a shop/store sells all remaining goods very cheaply before it stops operating: *a closeout sale*
NOTE In British English, this is called a **closing-down sale.**

ˌclose sth ˈout 1 to prevent light, sound, etc. from entering a place: *We need a curtain up there to close out the light.* OBJ **light, noise** SYN **shut sb/sth out 2** (*AmE, informal*) to bring sth to an end: *The vote closed out the three-day debate.* **3** (*AmE*) if you **close out** a bank account, you stop keeping money in it: *I'd like to close out my savings account.* OBJ only **account** NOTE Close sth is also used with this meaning.
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌclose ˈover sth = CLOSE ON/OVER STH

ˌclose ˈround sb/sth (*BrE*) = CLOSE AROUND SB/STH

ˌclose ˈup 1 to close completely: *His eye had swollen and closed up.* ◇ *The cut took a long time to close up* (= to heal). OPP **open up 2** to hide your thoughts and feelings: *She closed up when I mentioned her father.* OPP **open up 3** if people or vehicles **close up**, they move nearer to each other: *Traffic was heavy and cars were closing up behind each other.*
◆ v + adv

ˌclose ˈup; ˌclose sth ˌup to shut and lock a building completely for a period of time: *You go on home. I'll close up* (= shut the shop/store). ◇ *He closes the shop up at 5.30.* ◇ *They closed the house up and rented an apartment in the city.*
OPP **open up, open sth up**
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

cloud /klaʊd/

ˌcloud ˈover 1 if the sky or the weather **clouds over**, clouds cover the sky and the sun disappears: *It's starting to cloud over.* SUBJ **it, the sky 2** if your face, expression, etc. **clouds over**, you start to look sad, worried or angry: *His face clouded over when she walked into the room.* SUBJ **face, expression, eyes**
◆ v + adv

clown /klaʊn/

ˌclown aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌclown aˈbout**) to behave in a silly way to make other people laugh
SYN **mess around** (*informal*)
◆ v + adv

club /klʌb/ (-bb-)

ˌclub toˈgether (to do sth) if people **club together**, they each give an amount of money so that the total can be used for a particular purpose: *They clubbed together to buy their teacher a present.*
SYN **chip in (with sth)**
◆ v + adv

clue /kluː/

ˌclue sb ˈin (on/about sth) (*AmE, informal*) to give sb reliable information about sth: *Can you clue me in on the facts of the case?*
◆ v + n/pron + adv
► **ˌclued-ˈin (on/about sth)** *adj* having a lot of information about sth
NOTE **Clued-up** is used in British English with this meaning.

cluster /ˈklʌstə(r)/

ˌcluster aˈround sb/sth (*BrE also* **ˌcluster aˈbout/ˈround sb/sth**) to form a group around sb/sth: *People clustered around the market stalls.*
◆ v + prep

ˌcluster toˈgether to come together in a small group: *The children clustered together in a corner of the room.*
◆ v + adv

clutch /klʌtʃ/

ˈclutch at sth/sb to try to get hold of sb/sth suddenly: *She clutched at her stomach, obviously in pain.*
SYN **catch at sth/sb; grasp at sth**
◆ v + prep
IDM **clutch at ˈstraws** to try every possible way to escape from a difficult situation even though there seems to be little hope of doing so

clutter /ˈklʌtə(r)/

ˌclutter sth ˈup (with sth) to fill or cover sth with lots of things so that it looks very untidy: *I'm sick of all these books cluttering up my office.*
NOTE **Clutter sth** is used with a similar meaning.
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

coax /kəʊks; *AmE* koʊks/

ˌcoax sb ˈinto sth; ˌcoax sb ˈinto doing sth to persuade sb to do sth by talking to them gently: *Can we coax you into singing for us?*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌcoax sb ˈout of sth; ˌcoax sb ˈout of doing sth to persuade sb not to do sth by talking to them gently: *Try to coax him out of resigning.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌcoax sth ˈout of sb; ˌcoax sth ˈfrom sb to persuade sb to do sth or to give you sth by talking gently: *She coaxed a smile from the baby.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep • v + n/pron + prep

cobble /ˈkɒbl; *AmE* ˈkɑːbl/

ˌcobble sth toˈgether (*informal*) to put sth together or to make sth quickly or carelessly, with whatever time and materials you have available: (*figurative*) *The government seems to have cobbled together these proposals.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

cock /kɒk; *AmE* kɑːk/

ˌcock ˈup; ˌcock sth ˈup (*slang, especially BrE*) to spoil or ruin sth by doing it badly or by making a mistake: *You've really cocked up this time.* ◇ *The travel agency completely cocked up the arrangements.* ◇ *Trust him to cock things up again!*
SYN **mess up, mess sth up; bungle sth** (*informal*)
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv
► **ˈcock-up** *n* (*slang, especially BrE*) a mistake that spoils or ruins plans or arrangements; sth that has been spoilt because it has been badly done: *She's made a complete cock-up of the arrangements.*

coil /kɔɪl/

ˌcoil ˈup; ˌcoil sth ˈup to wind into a series of circles; to make sth do this: *The snake coiled up in the sunshine.* ◇ *He coiled the rope up neatly.*
OBJ **rope, string**
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

colour (*BrE*) (*AmE* color) /ˈkʌlə(r)/

ˌcolour sth ˈin to fill a shape, an area, etc. with colour, using pencils or pens: *Why don't you colour the pictures in?*
OBJ **picture, drawing**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

comb /kəʊm; *AmE* koʊm/

ˌcomb sth ˈout 1 to use a comb to remove knots from your hair or to make it neat: *My hair's so long that it takes me ages to comb it out.* OBJ **hair 2** (*also* **ˌcomb sth ˈout of sth**) to remove dirt, knots, etc. from hair or fur with a comb: *She brushed her hair and then combed out the tangles.*
OBJ **knots, tangles**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n **2** also v + n/pron + adv + prep

come /kʌm/ (came /keɪm/ come)

~ about
~ across
~ after
54 ~ along
~ apart
~ around
~ at
~ away
~ away from
~ away with
~ back
~ back to
~ before
~ between
55 ~ by
~ down
~ down on
~ down to
~ down with
~ for
56 ~ forth
~ forward
~ from
~ in
~ in for
~ in with
57 ~ into
~ of
~ off
~ on
~ on/upon
58 ~ on to
~ out, out of
~ out at
~ out in
~ out with
~ over
~ over to
59 ~ past
~ round
~ through
~ to
~ together
~ under
60 ~ up
~ up against
~ up for
~ up on
~ up to
~ up with
~ upon
61 ~ with

ˌcome aˈbout to happen: *It's hard to understand how the accident came about.* ◇ *Can you tell us how it came about that you decided to strike?*
SYN **happen**
◆ v + adv

ˌcome aˈcross (*also* **ˌcome ˈover**) **1** (*also* **ˌcome ˈthrough**) [+adv/prep] (of an idea, an opinion or a feeling) to be expressed clearly and understood easily: *Do you think the film's message comes across clearly?* ◇ *These themes come across very strongly in the novel.* ◇ *I could tell she was frightened. It came over in her voice.* ◇ *The feeling of solidarity among the people really came through.* **2** (*AmE also* **ˌcome ˈoff** *informal*) [+ adv/prep] (as sth) to make a particular impression on people: *She comes across well in interviews.* ◇ *At the press conference, he came over as cool and confident.*
◆ v + adv

ˌcome aˈcross (with sth) (*informal*) to provide or supply sth that sb asks for, especially money: *They eventually came across with another $250000.* ◇ *We still hope the company will come across for us.*
◆ v + adv

ˌcome aˈcross; ˌcome aˈcross sth to cross a room, a road, a river, etc. towards the place where the speaker is: *When you've done your homework, come across to my house and we'll listen to some music.* ◇ *She waved and came across the room to talk to me.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˌcome aˈcross sb/sth to meet or find sb/sth by chance, without having planned or thought about it: *He's the most unpleasant man I've ever come across.* ◇ *She came across a pile of old photographs while she was clearing the attic.*
SYN **encounter sb/sth** (*formal*)
◆ v + prep

ˌcome ˈafter sb/sth to chase or follow a person or an animal to try to catch them: *The farmer came after them, threatening to call the police.*
◆ v + prep

ˌcome aˈlong 1 to arrive or appear somewhere; to start to exist, happen or be available: *It's lucky you came along when you did or I'd have been stranded at the bus stop for an hour!* ◇ *When the right opportunity comes along, he'll take it.* ◇ *There are new designs coming along.* SYN **turn up 2** to go somewhere with sb: *We're going to the pub. Do you want to come along?* ◇ *You'd better come along with me to the police station.* **3** = COME ON 4 **4 come along!** (*especially BrE*) = COME ON 1

◆ v + adv

ˌcome aˈlong; ˌcome aˈlong sth to move forward or from one end of sth to the other, towards the speaker: *I waited for ages for a bus, then three came along together!* ◇ *The lorry was coming along the road at great speed.*

OBJ **road**

◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˌcome aˈpart to break or fall into pieces: *The teapot just came apart in my hands.* ◇ (*figurative*) *After the first act, the play begins to* ***come apart at the seams*** (= have a lot of problems).

SYN **fall apart**

◆ v + adv

ˌcome aˈround (*especially AmE*) = COME ROUND

ˌcome aˈround; ˌcome aˈround sth (*especially AmE*) = COME ROUND, COME ROUND STH

ˌcome aˈround sth (*BrE also* **ˌcome ˈround sth**) to move or travel around a corner: *The bus came round the bend too fast.*

OBJ only **corner**, **bend**

◆ v + prep

ˈcome at sb to move towards sb as if you are going to attack them: *She came at me with a knife.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The questions came at me so fast that I didn't have time to think about them.*

◆ v + prep

ˈcome at sth to approach, think about or try to deal with a question, problem, etc. in a particular way: *We're getting nowhere. Let's try coming at the problem from a different angle.*

OBJ **problem**

◆ v + prep

ˌcome aˈway; ˌcome aˈway from sth 1 to leave a place or a person: *Come away, now. There's nothing to see.* ◇ *Jane came away from the meeting feeling angry and upset.* **2** to become separated from sth: *He pulled at the door handle until it came away in his hands.* ◇ *The plaster had started to come away from the wall.*

◆ v + adv • v + adv + prep

ˌcome aˈway with sth to leave a place with a particular feeling, impression or result: *She came away from the championship with three medals.* ◇ *We came away with the impression that something was wrong.*

◆ v + adv + prep

ˌcome ˈback 1 to return to the place where the speaker is: *Come back here at once!* ◇ *Did she say when she was coming back?* ◇ *Why don't you come back to my place for a coffee?* ◇ *They came back from the trip relaxed and happy.* ◇ *She went into the kitchen and came back with two glasses of milk.* ◇ *We'll come back for the car tomorrow.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Liverpool came back from being 2-0 down to win the game.* SYN **return** (*more formal*) **2** to begin to exist or happen again: *My headache has come back again.* ◇ *Her confidence is starting to come back slowly.* SYN **return** OPP **go away 3** to return to school or work after a break: *Do you know when Bill is coming back to work?* **4** to become popular, successful or fashionable again: *Punk hairstyles are* ***coming back into fashion.*** ◇ *Punk hairstyles are* ***coming back in.*** ◇ *Do you think trams will come back?* **5** (of a message or a reply) to be given in answer to a message, letter, etc. that you have sent or a question that you have asked: *I sent her an email and a message came back that she was away.* **6 (to sb)** to return to your memory, often suddenly: *It's all coming back to me now.* **7 (at sb) (with sth)** to reply to sb quickly, strongly or angrily: *She came back at the speaker with some questions.* ◇ *He came back straightaway, telling me what he thought of me.*

◆ v + adv

▸ **ˈcomeback** *n* **1** [usually sing.] if a person **makes a comeback** they return to performing or to public life after a long time, or they become popular again: *The band's trying to make/stage a comeback.* **2** if something **makes a comeback** it becomes popular or fashionable again: *Cartoons seem to be making a comeback.* **3** a way of getting payment or a reward for sth unfair or wrong that has been done to you: *Will I have no comeback if the contract falls through?* **4** a quick reply that is often angry, insulting, clever or humorous: *For once in her life, she had no sharp comeback.*

ˌcome ˈback to sth to return to a particular subject, an idea, etc. and start to talk about it or think about it: *I'll come back to that point in a moment.* ◇ *It always seems to come back to the question of money.*

SYN **return to sth** (*more formal*)

◆ v + adv + prep

ˌcome beˈfore sb/sth (*formal*) (of a legal case, a proposal or an issue) to be presented to sb/sth so that they can discuss it or make a decision or a judgement about it: *The case comes before the court next week.* ◇ *The bill came before parliament last month.*

OBJ **the court(s)**, **committee**, **judge**, **parliament**

◆ v + prep

ˌcome beˈtween sb and sb; ˌcome beˈtween sb and sth to harm or disturb a relationship between two people; to prevent sb from doing, enjoying or having sth: *Nobody will ever come between them.* ◇ *I don't want to come between her and her work.*

◆ v + prep

ˌcome ˈby; ˌcome ˈby sth 1 to pass sb/sth without stopping: *Some kids on bikes came by, but they didn't notice me.* **2** (*especially AmE*) to come to visit sb for a short time in a casual or informal way: *Thanks for coming by yesterday.* ◇ *Come by on your way home from work.* ◇ *If you come by the office tomorrow, I'll have it ready for you.* SYN **drop by**; **stop by**, **stop by sth**

◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˈcome by sth to manage to get sth; to receive sth by chance: *Jobs are hard to come by these days.* ◇ *Information about the company was not easy to come by.* ◇ *How did you come by that cut on your hand?*

SYN **get sth**; **obtain sth** (*more formal*)

NOTE **Come by sth** can be used in the passive, but this is not common: *Old postcards are fairly easily come by.*

◆ v + prep

ˌcome ˈdown 1 (from…) (to…) to travel from one place to another, especially from the north of a country to the south: *When are you going to come down and see us?* **2** if a price, a level or an amount **comes down**, it becomes lower or less than before: *Oil is coming down in price.* ◇ *Inflation has come down twice in the last month.* SYN **decrease** (*more formal*), **drop**; **fall** OPP **go up**

NOTE You can also use **come back up** with the opposite meaning if a price, etc. is increasing towards what it had been before: *Oil prices are coming back up* (= they have been high in the past, then they fell, but now they are rising again). **3** to break and fall to the ground: *Part of the ceiling had come down.* SYN **collapse 4** (of a plane, etc.) to fall from the sky; to be brought down to the ground: *The pilot was forced to come down in a field.* **5** (of rain, snow, etc.) to fall: *The rain was coming down harder now.* SUBJ only **the rain, the snow** SYN **fall 6 [+ adv/prep]** to decide that you support or oppose sb/sth and say so publicly: *I knew my parents would come down on my sister's side.* ◇ *The committee came down against the proposal.* ◇ *Voters came down firmly in favour of reform.* **7** when the curtain in a theatre **comes down**, it is the end of the performance: *When the curtain came down, we all rushed for the exits.* OPP **go up 8 [+adv/prep]** to reach down to a particular point: *My mother's hair comes down to her waist.* **9** (*informal*) to stop having the pleasant feelings and excitement that sth such as an enjoyable experience or a drug produces: *The party was so good I haven't really come down yet.* **10 (from sth) (to sth)** (of a person selling sth) to suggest or agree to a lower price: *I wasn't prepared to pay £1 500, but they eventually came down to £1 350.* ◇ *Can you come down another $30?* **11 (from sth)** (*BrE, formal*) to leave a university (especially Oxford or Cambridge) after finishing your studies: *When did you come down (from Oxford)?* OPP **come up (to sth)**

◆ v + adv **10** also v + adv + n

IDM **come (back) down to ˈearth (with a ˈbang/ˈbump)** to return to the reality of everyday life after a period of great excitement or a time when you have been living in a way that is not very practical: *He came (back) down to earth with a bang when he discovered that all his money had run out.*

▸ **ˈcomedown** *n* [usually sing.] (*informal*) a situation which is not as good, important or interesting as one you have experienced previously: *It's a bit of a comedown after her previous job.*

ˌcome ˈdown; ˌcome ˈdown sth to move from a higher place or position to a lower one, or from a distant place towards the speaker: *Come down from that tree!* ◇ *The car was coming down the road towards us.* ◇ *Jack came down the stairs two at a time.*

OPP **come up, come up sth**

◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˌcome ˈdown on sb (*informal*) to punish sb or criticize sb severely: *The courts are coming down heavily on drug dealers.* ◇ *Don't come down too hard on him — he's young.*

NOTE **Come down on sb** is always used with an adverb such as *hard* and/or a phrase with a similar meaning: *If it happens again, we'll come down on you so hard that you'll wish you'd never been born.* ◇ *He came down on me like a ton of bricks.*

◆ v + adv + prep

ˌcome ˈdown to sb (from sb/sth) to be passed to sb from sb who lived in the past: *The estate came down to her from her grandfather.*

SUBJ **story, name, tradition**

◆ v + adv + prep

ˌcome ˈdown to sth to be able to be explained as one simple, important question or point: ***It all comes down to*** *a matter of priorities in the end.* ◇ ***When it comes down to it*** (= the most important fact is), *we can't afford to go.* ◇ ***What it comes down to*** *is a choice between money or happiness.*

◆ v + adv + prep

ˌcome ˈdown with sth to get an illness, often not a very serious one: *I came down with a bad cold.* ◇ *I think I'm coming down with something.*

OBJ **flu, a cold** SYN **go down with sth**; **catch sth**; **get sth**

◆ v + adv + prep

ˈcome for sb/sth 1 to come to sb's home, or to the place where sb/sth is in order to take them/it somewhere: *The police came for him this morning.* ◇ *Have you come for the parcel?* **2** to attack sb/sth: *Sam came for me with his fists.*

◆ v + prep

ˌcome ˈforth (*literary*) to appear or be produced: *He struck the rock and water came forth.*

Ⓖ v + adv

▸ **ˌforthˈcoming** *adj* **1** [only before noun] about to happen or appear very soon: *Who is in charge of promoting the band's forthcoming album?* **2** [not before noun] ready or made available when you need it: *Unfortunately money for the project has not been very forthcoming.* **3** [not before noun] (of a person) ready to give information when they are asked: *He's not very forthcoming about his love life.*

ˌcome ˈforward (with sth) to offer to give help, information, etc: *Police have asked witnesses to come forward.* ◇ *We're hoping that a sponsor will come forward with the extra money.* ◇ *No one came forward to claim the reward.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˈcome from ... (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to be born in or live in a particular place: *Where do you come from?* ◇ *She comes from London.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˈcome from sth to start in a particular place or be made from a particular thing: *Most of the wines that we sell come from France.* ◇ *Does your information come from a reliable source?* ◇ *I'm lazy? That's rich, coming from you!* (= you are lazy too) ◇ *He comes from a wealthy family.* ◇ *Where's that terrible noise coming from?* ◇ *93% of our energy comes from fossil fuels.*

Ⓖ v + prep

IDM **where sb is ˈcoming from** (*spoken, informal*) a person's situation, attitude, ideas, etc. that make them say what they have said: *I know exactly where you're coming from.*

ˈcome from sth; **ˈcome from doing sth** = COME OF STH, COME OF DOING STH

ˌcome ˈin 1 when the sea **comes in** it moves towards the land: *The tide was coming in fast.* OPP **go out 2** to finish a race in a particular position: *Which horse came in first?* **3** to arrive; to be received: *News is coming in of a train crash in Scotland.* ◇ *We've got more work coming in than we can handle.* ◇ *I met all the trains that came in from London.* ◇ *We've got just enough money coming in each month to pay the bills.* **4** to become available: *English strawberries usually come in in June.* ◇ *New jobs are coming in all the time.* **5** if a law or a rule **comes in**, it is introduced and begins to take effect: *New legislation coming in next month will tackle low pay.* **6** to take part in a discussion, sometimes by interrupting sb: *I'd like to come in here.* ◇ *I wish he wouldn't keep coming in with his stupid suggestions.* **7** to come to your home, office, etc. in order to repair sth, or do some work: *A plumber's coming in to look at the boiler.* → *see also* COME IN, COME IN STH, COME INTO STH; COME IN, COME INTO STH; COME INTO STH

Ⓖ v + adv

IDM **ˌcome in ˈhandy/ˈuseful** to be useful: *These boxes will come in handy when we move house.*

▸ **ˈincome** *n* money that you receive regularly, especially as payment for work

▸ **ˈincoming** *adj* [only before noun] **1** travelling towards a place and arriving there: *incoming flights/passengers* **2** (of the sea) coming towards the land **3** (of a phone call, letter or message) that has been sent to you or received by you: *This phone only takes incoming calls.* **4** recently appointed or elected: *the incoming Socialist government*

ˌcome ˈin; **ˌcome ˈin sth**; **ˌcome ˈinto sth** to enter a room or a building; to pass through sth such as a hole, a window, etc: *I knocked and heard her say 'Come in'.* ◇ *The rain's coming in through that hole.* ◇ *I'll ask him to call you as soon as he comes in* (= arrives home or at work). ◇ *The sun was coming in at the windows.* ◇ *When you come in the door, you'll find Reception on your left.* ◇ *She came into the room crying.*

→ *see also* COME IN; COME IN, COME INTO STH; COME INTO STH

Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˌcome ˈin; **ˌcome ˈinto sth 1** to go to an office or the place where you work, in order to do some work: *Are you coming into the office tomorrow?* OBJ **the office, work 2** to have a part to play in sth; to play a useful role: *I like the plan, but where do I come in* (= what is my role)? **3** to become fashionable; to start to be worn or used: *When did platform heels come in?* ◇ *Trolleybuses first came in in 1923.* ◇ *Punk clothes seem to be* ***coming into fashion*** *again.* OPP **go out 4** to go to a hospital to receive treatment, tests, etc: *Can you come in for the X-rays on Friday?*

→ *see also* COME IN; COME IN, COME IN STH, COME INTO STH; COME INTO STH

Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˌcome ˈin for sth to receive sth, especially sth unpleasant: *The government has come in for severe criticism from all sides.* ◇ *The company came in for a lot of stick* (= a lot of criticism) *with their advertising campaign.*

OBJ **(severe) criticism**

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌcome ˈin with sb (on sth), **ˌcome ˈin (with sb) on sth** if somebody **comes in with** you, they join you in a particular project, activity, business, etc: *Do you want to come in with me on Joe's present?* ◇ *My brother hoped I would come in with him when he started his own business.* ◇ *Do you want to come in on the deal?*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌcome ˈinto sth 1 to begin to exist, happen, etc: *The cherry trees are* ***coming into blossom***. ◇ *The band only* ***came into being*** *in 1995.* ◇ *When do the new regulations* ***come into force/effect***? ◇ *When did the Labour party come into office?* ◇ *A variety of factors* ***come into play*** *when choosing an employee.* **2** to receive a large sum of money when sb dies: *She unexpectedly came into a fortune when her cousin died.* OBJ **a fortune, money 3** to be important in a particular situation: *I got the job because I was the best. My looks didn't* ***come into it***. ◇ *He took the job because he liked the work. Money didn't come into the equation.* OBJ **it, the equation**

→ *see also* COME IN; COME IN, COME IN STH, COME INTO STH; COME IN, COME INTO STH

Ⓖ v + prep

IDM **come into ˈline (with sb/sth)** to behave in the way other people behave, or in the way you should behave **come into your/its ˈown** to have the opportunity to show your/its qualities or abilities: *After two rather poor games, he finally came into his own in the game against Germany.* ◇ *This bike really comes into its own on rough ground.*

ˈcome of sth; **ˈcome of doing sth** (*also* **ˈcome from sth**, **ˈcome from doing sth**) to happen as a result of sth: *He promised to help, but I don't think anything will* ***come of it***. ◇ *That's what comes of not listening to my advice!* ◇ *I had the feeling of satisfaction that comes from doing a difficult job well.*

NOTE **Come of sth** is often used with a negative: *I told him no good would come of it.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌcome ˈoff 1 to be able to be removed: *Does this knob come off?* **2** (*informal*) to take place; to happen: *Did your trip to New York ever come off?* **3** (*informal*) if a plan, etc. **comes off**, it is successful or it has the result that you intend: *Her attempt to break the world record nearly came off.* **4 [+ adv]** (*informal*) if somebody **comes off** well or badly in a fight, a contest, etc. they finish the fight in a good or a bad condition: *He always comes off worst in fights.* **5** (*AmE, informal*) = COME ACROSS 2

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌcome ˈoff; **ˌcome ˈoff sth 1** to become detached or separated from sth: *The handle came off in my hand.* ◇ *A button has come off my coat.* **2** to fall from sth: *My glasses came off when I tripped.* ◇ *She braked sharply and came off her bike.* OBJ **bicycle, horse 3** to move away from sth large or important and go in a different direction: *A narrow road comes off on the left.* **4** to leave the stage, the sports field, etc. during a play or a game: *Two players came off just before half time.* **5** to leave sth such as a vehicle or a road: *She looked tired as she came off the plane.* ◇ *Come off (the motorway) at junction five.* **6** if an amount of money **comes off** a price, the price becomes lower by that amount: *Two pence a litre is coming off the price of petrol/gasoline.*

Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˌcome ˈoff sth 1 to stop using sth; to stop taking a drug, medicine, alcohol, etc: *It's time she tried to come off sleeping pills.* **2** (of heat, a smell, the wind, etc.) to start from a particular place or thing: *There was a mist coming off the sea.*

Ⓖ v + prep

IDM **ˌcome ˈoff it!** used to tell sb that you think or know that what they have said is untrue or that you disagree with it: *Come off it! England will never win!*

ˌcome ˈon 1 (*also* **ˌcome aˈlong** *especially BrE, less frequent*) used to encourage sb to do sth, for example, to hurry: *Come on, we'll be late.* ◇ *Come on, things can't be that bad!* **2** used to show that you do not believe what sb has said or that you disagree with them: *Come on! You don't really expect me to believe that do you?* **3** (of a light, the electricity, etc.) to begin working; to be switched on: *Does the heating come on automatically?* ◇ *I've set the oven to come on at five.* SUBJ **lights** OPP **go off 4** (*also* **ˌcome aˈlong**) to make progress; to improve or develop in the way that you want: *Your French is really coming on.* ◇ *Tim's come on well with the guitar.* ◇ *How's dinner coming along?* **5** (of an actor or a performer) to walk onto the stage and start to perform: *When are Westlife coming on?* **6** (in sport) (of a player) to join a team instead of another player during a game: *Robson came on in place of Wilkins.* **7** (of a television programme, etc.) to start to be shown: *What time does the news come on?* **8** (*especially BrE*) (of a season, a period of time, an illness, etc.) to begin: *It's getting colder. Winter's coming on.* ◇ *I think I've got a cold coming on.* ◇ *It came on to rain.* NOTE In this meaning, **come on** is usually used in the progressive tenses. **9 [+ adv]** to go to a place: *Come on in and make yourself at home.* ◇ *My wife's coming on later.*

Ⓖ v + adv

IDM **ˌcome on ˈstrong** to speak or behave in a very forceful way, especially in a way that shows sb you want to have a sexual relationship with them

▸ **ˈoncoming** *adj* [only before noun] advancing towards you; approaching you

ˌcome ˈon; **ˌcome ˈon sth** to begin speaking to sb on the telephone: *I had a long talk with my mother, then my dad came on.* ◇ *Sue came on the line for a chat.*

Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˈcome on/upon sb/sth (*formal*) to meet or find sb/sth by chance: *I came upon this beautiful vase in the attic.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌcome ˈon to sb (*informal*) to behave in a way that clearly shows sb that you want to have a sexual relationship with them

◈ v + adv + prep

▶ **ˈcome-on** *n* [usually sing.] (*informal*) a remark or an action that is intended to attract sb

ˌcome ˈon to sth to start talking about or discussing a topic: *I'll come on to the subject of exams in a minute.*

OBJ **question, topic, subject**

◈ v + adv + prep

ˌcome ˈout 1 when the sun, moon or stars **come out**, they appear in the sky: *The sun came out in the afternoon.* SYN **appear 2** when flowers **come out**, they open: *The daffodils came out late this year.* **3** to be published or produced: *Her new novel's just come out.* ◇ *When do the exam results come out?* SYN **appear 4** (of news, the truth, etc.) to become known after a time when it has been secret: *The truth finally came out.* ◇ ***It came out that** she'd made the whole thing up.* **5** to be shown clearly: *His arrogance comes out in every speech he makes.* **6 (with sb)** to go somewhere with sb for a social event: *Will you come out to dinner with me tonight?* **7** if a photograph **comes out**, the picture can be seen clearly: *My photos didn't come out very well because there wasn't enough light.* **8** when words **come out** they are spoken: *I opened my mouth to apologize, but the words wouldn't come out.* ◇ *He tried to pay her a compliment but it came out all wrong.* **9 [+ prep]** to state publicly that you do or do not support sth: *Members of the committee have come out in opposition to the proposal.* **10 come out and do sth** to be brave enough to say or do sth that other people might find it hard to say or do: *Has she actually come out and admitted it yet?* ◇ *Only one member of staff came out and said that the working conditions were unsatisfactory.* **11** (*BrE*) to stop work and go on strike: *The miners have **come out on strike**.* **12** to say openly that you are a homosexual (= a person who is sexually attracted to people of the same sex) **13** when a young girl **came out** in the past, she was formally introduced into society

◈ v + adv

ˌcome ˈout; ˌcome ˈout of sth 1 to leave a place or appear from inside a place: *Come out! I know you're in there!* ◇ *I'll speak to her as soon as she comes out of the meeting.* **2** if an object **comes out** of sth, it is removed from the place where it is fixed or becomes separated from sth: *Her tooth came out when she bit into the apple.* ◇ *All the pages have come out of this book.* ◇ *This screw won't come out of the wall.* **3** if a mark or dirt **comes out**, it is removed from sth by washing or cleaning: *The bloodstains won't come out of my shirt.* ◇ *It was a very expensive skirt, but most of the colour came out when I washed it.* **4 [+ adv/prep/adj]** to finish sth in a particular state; to have a particular result: *She came out on top in the exams.* ◇ *His reputation came out undamaged.* ◇ *The family didn't come out of the affair very well.* NOTE In this meaning, **come out** and **come out of sth** are always used either with an adverb, an adjective or a phrase beginning with a preposition.

◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + prep

IDM **ˌcome ˈout of yourself** to relax and become more confident and friendly with other people

ˌcome ˈout at sth to add up to a particular cost or sum: *The total bill comes out at over a thousand pounds.*

◈ v + adv + prep

ˌcome ˈout in sth if a person **comes out in** sth such as spots, their skin becomes covered in them: *The cream made her face come out in a rash.*

OBJ **spots, rash, lumps** SYN **break out in sth**

◈ v + adv + prep

ˌcome ˈout of sth 1 to return to normal after a difficult time: *The country is slowly coming out of recession.* **2** to result or develop from a process or an event: *At least some good came out of all our hard work.* ◇ *The book came out of her travels in Japan.* **3** to be taken away from a total amount: *The money will have to come out of your wages.*

◈ v + adv + prep

ˌcome ˈout with sth (*informal*) to say sth, especially sth surprising or not polite: *I can't believe the things he comes out with!* ◇ *When I asked her why she was late, she just came out with a load of nonsense.*

◈ v + adv + prep

ˌcome ˈover 1 (to sb/sth) to move across a room, a road, an ocean, etc. towards where the speaker is: *Come over and meet my husband.* ◇ *When are you coming over to England again?* ◇ *Lots of people are coming over from America for the wedding.* **2 (to sth)** to visit sb for a short time, usually at their home: *Her son only comes over to see her occasionally.* ◇ *Our new neighbours came over to our house last night.* **3 [+ adj]** (*BrE, informal*) to suddenly start feeling sth: *to come over funny/dizzy/faint* ◇ *I come over all shy whenever I see her.* **4** = COME ACROSS 1 **5** = COME ACROSS 2

◈ v + adv

ˌcome ˈover sb/sth (of a feeling, a mood, etc.) to affect sb/sth: *I'm sorry — I don't know what came over me* (= I don't know what made me behave in that way). ◇ *A remarkable change has come over the group since he left.*

◈ v + prep

ˌcome ˈover to sb/sth to leave one group of people in order to join a competing group; to change from one opinion to another: *Some of their members have come over to our side.*

◈ v + adv + prep

ˌcome ˈpast; ˌcome ˈpast sb/sth to pass in front of the speaker or the place where the speaker is: *As I walked down the road, Charlie came past on his bike.* ◇ *I'll bring the book round this evening on my way to night school* ◇ *I've got to come past your house.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌcome ˈround (*BrE*) (*also* **ˌcome aˈround** *AmE, BrE*) **1 (to sth)** to visit sb or a place; to come to sb's home to see them for a short time: *Come round and see us sometime.* ◇ *Do you want to come round for lunch?* → *see also* COME OVER 2 **2** (of a regular event) to arrive; to happen at the usual time: *I can't believe Christmas has come round again!* **3** to move among a group of people in order to give them sth: *The waiters came round with drinks.* **4 (to sth)** (*informal*) to agree to sth that you were against before; to change your opinion about sth: *She'll never come round to our way of thinking.* ◇ *Don't push him; he'll come round in time.*

◈ v + adv

ˌcome ˈround (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˌcome aˈround**) (*also* **ˌcome ˈto** *BrE, AmE*) to become conscious again: *When she came round, her sister was sitting beside her bed.* ◇ *He hasn't yet come round after the anaesthetic.*

→ *see also* PASS OUT

◈ v + adv

ˌcome ˈround; ˌcome ˈround sth (*BrE*) (*also* **ˌcome aˈround, ˌcome aˈround sth** *AmE, BrE*) **1** (of a letter or a document) to be passed from one person to another: *The card came round for everyone to sign.* **2** to travel to where the speaker is by a longer route than usual, especially around the outside of sth: *The road was blocked so we had to come round by the fields.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌcome ˈround sth (*BrE*) = COME AROUND STH

ˌcome ˈthrough 1 (to sth) (*informal*) used especially to ask sb to enter a room or a building, or move from one room to another: *Come through to my office.* ◇ *Mr. Dole can see you now. Will you come through?* **2** (of news, a message, a document, etc.) to be received by telephone, radio, etc. or in an official way: *I've got an international call coming through for you.* ◇ *We're going to buy a new car when the insurance money comes through.* ◇ *He's still waiting for his divorce to come through.* **3 (with sth)** to provide or do sth that people expect or that you have promised: *The insurance company has finally come through with the money.* **4** = COME ACROSS 1

◈ v + adv

ˌcome ˈthrough; ˌcome ˈthrough sth 1 to enter and cross a room, an area of land, a town, a country, etc.; to pass through sth: ◇ *Put sth over the hole to stop the rain coming through.* **2** to get better after a serious illness; to avoid serious injury or damage: *He's very ill but his doctors expect him to come through the operation.* **3** to start to appear from under or behind sth: *The baby's front teeth were coming through.* ◇ *The sun's coming through the clouds at last.* SYN **emerge** (*more formal*) **4** to pass from one stage of a competition to the next; to be successful in a test or an exam: *Chris did well to come through the qualifying rounds of the tournament* (= for example in tennis). ◇ *Most of the students **came through** (the exam) **with flying colours*** (= were very successful).

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep + pron

ˌcome ˈto = COME ROUND

ˈcome to sb 1 if an idea **comes to** you, it suddenly enters your mind: *The idea came to me in the middle of the night.* ◇ *It suddenly came to her that she had been wrong.* **2** (*especially BrE*) (of money, property, etc.) to pass to sb else when sb dies: *All my money will come to you when I die.*

◈ v + prep

ˌcome to yourˈself (*old-fashioned*) to return to your normal state: *It took her a while to come to herself again.*

◈ v + prep + pron

ˈcome to sth 1 to add up to sth; to be equal to sth: *The bill came to $50.* **2** to reach a particular state or condition; to arrive at sth: *We both came to the same conclusion.* ◇ *I don't know what the world's coming to* (= I think things are getting very bad and unpleasant). ◇ *All her dreams had come to nothing.* OBJ **this, that, nothing** NOTE In this meaning **come to sth** is often used with *this* or *that*: *The doctors will operate if necessary, but it may not come to that.*

◈ v + prep

IDM **when it comes to sth/to doing sth** when it is a case, matter or question of sth/of doing sth: *When it comes to cooking, he's much better than I am!*

ˌcome toˈgether if two or more people or things **come together**, they form one group or one piece: *Several local groups came together to fight the proposed housing development.* ◇ *During the last three days of rehearsals, everything came together.*

◈ v + adv

ˌcome ˈunder sth 1 be included within a particular group or collection of things: *Several different types of schools come under the heading of 'private schools'.* OBJ **heading, banner, category 2** to be managed, controlled or owned by a particular group or organization: *The prisons now come under central government control.* OBJ **control, authority, wing 3** if you **come under** attack, criticism, etc. sb attacks, criticizes, etc. you: *The government has come under attack over the new bill.* ◇ *She's come under intense pressure to change her mind.* OBJ **attack, pressure, fire, scrutiny, criticism**

◈ v + prep

ˌcome 'up 1 (to ...) (from ...) to travel from one place to another, usually from a smaller place to a larger one, or from the south of a country to the north: *They've come up from Texas.* ◇ *We thought we'd go up to London for a weekend in the big city.* **2 (to sb/sth)** to go towards a person in order to talk to them: *An old guy came up to me in the street and asked me for money.* ◇ *The group leader came up to the reception desk looking anxious.* **3** (of plants) to appear above the ground: *The first snowdrops are just coming up.* SYN **appear 4** when the sun or moon **comes up**, it rises in the sky: *We sat and watched the sun coming up behind the hills.* SUBJ only **the sun, the moon** SYN **rise** OPP **go down 5** to rise to the surface of water or another liquid: *I came up gasping for air.* ◇ *Bubbles were coming up to the surface.* **6** to happen, especially when you do not expect it: *Something urgent has come up; I have to go.* ◇ *Opportunities like this don't come up every day.* SYN **crop up 7** (*always used in the progressive tenses*) (of an event or a time) to be going to happen very soon: *Our exams are coming up soon.* ◇ *Coming up next is the news.* **8** to be talked about or discussed: *The subject didn't come up in conversation last night.* ◇ *Mary's name keeps coming up.* SUBJ **name, question, subject 9** to be dealt with by a court of law: *Her case comes up next month.* **10** if your name, number or ticket **comes up** in a betting game, it is chosen and you are one of the winners: *My numbers came up and I won a million pounds!* **11** (*spoken, informal*) (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) to be ready soon; to be coming soon: *'A cup of tea please.' 'Coming up!'* **12** (of information) to appear on a computer screen or a board, for example in an airport: *Her flight has just come up on the arrivals board.* **13 [+ adj/adv]** (*BrE*) (of an object or a substance) to appear in a particular way at the end of a period of time or when sth has been done to it: *When the wool is washed, it comes up beautifully soft and fluffy.* ◇ *I've given it a good clean and it's* ***come up like new.*** **14** (of lights in a cinema, a theatre, etc.) to become brighter after the film/movie, play, etc. has finished: *The lights came up to loud applause.* **15 (to sth)** (*BrE, formal*) to begin your studies at a university (especially Oxford or Cambridge): *She came up (to Oxford) in 1982.* OPP **come down (from sth) 16 (to sth)** to reach as far as a particular point or level: *The water came up to my chin.* ◇ *My sister hardly comes up to my shoulder.* ◇ *His scarf came up over his eyes.* SYN **reach sth**
G v + adv

IDM **be coming up 'roses** (*informal*) (of a situation) to be developing in a successful way: *Everything's coming up roses!* **come 'up in the world** to become more important in society or more successful in your career: *She's really come up in the world since she left school.* **come up/turn up 'trumps** to do more than people expect and so make a situation very successful: *The team's new player came up trumps and scored three goals.* ◇ *That was a wonderful meal! You've come up trumps again.*

▶ **ˌup-and-'coming** *adj* [only before noun] (*informal*) making good progress and likely to be successful in the future: *an up-and-coming young actor*

▶ **'upcoming** *adj* [only before noun] (*especially AmE*) about to happen soon: *the upcoming presidential election*

ˌcome 'up; ˌcome 'up sth to move from a lower place or position to a higher one, or upstairs in a building, especially with the speaker or towards the place where the speaker is: *Who wants to come up to the top of the hill with me?* ◇ *My apartment is on the third floor. Are you coming up?* ◇ *I can hear somebody coming up the stairs.*
OBJ **road, stairs** OPP **come down, come down sth**
G v + adv • v + prep

ˌcome 'up against sb/sth if you **come up against sb/sth**, you have to face sb/sth difficult: *We expect to come up against a lot of opposition to the scheme.* ◇ *You'll come up against the reigning champion in the next round.*
G v + adv + prep

ˌcome 'up for sth 1 to come to the time when sth must be done: *He's coming up for retirement soon.* ◇ *She comes up for re-election next year.* ◇ *When does your contract come up for renewal?* OBJ **renewal 2** to become available for a particular purpose: *That house you like has come up for sale.*
OBJ **sale, auction**
G v + adv + prep

ˌcome 'up on sth (*AmE*) to be almost a particular time or age: *It's coming up on your bedtime.*
G v + adv + prep

ˌcome 'up to sth 1 to approach a particular place, an age or a period of time: *You're coming up to a busy road now.* ◇ *It's just coming up to half past twelve.* **2** to reach an acceptable level or standard: *The performance didn't come up to our expectations.* ◇ *You may lose your job if you don't* ***come up to scratch.*** OBJ **standard, expectations** NOTE In this meaning **come up to sth** is usually used in the negative.
G v + adv + prep

ˌcome 'up with sth 1 to think of an idea, an answer to a question or a solution to a problem: *She came up with a great idea for increasing sales.* OBJ **idea, answer, suggestion, explanation 2** to find or produce sth that sb needs: *If you want to buy my car, you must come up with the money.* ◇ *He always* ***comes up with the goods*** (= does what he is expected to do) *on the day.*
G v + adv + prep

'come upon sb/sth = COME ON/UPON SB/STH

'come with sth to be included with or as part of sth: *A new car comes with the job.*
G v + prep

commune /kə'mjuːn; *AmE* 'kɑːm-/

com'mune with sth (*formal*) if you **commune with** sth such as nature, you spend time thinking deeply about it and so feel close to it
OBJ **nature**
G v + prep

complain /kəm'pleɪn/

com'plain of sth to say that you feel ill or are suffering from a pain: *Several children complained of severe stomach pains.*
OBJ **pain, headache, symptoms**
G v + prep

condemn /kən'dem/

con'demn sb to sth 1 to say what sb's punishment will be: *to be condemned to death/hard labour* **2** to force sb to accept a difficult or unpleasant situation: *They were condemned to a life of hardship.* SYN **doom sb (to sth)**
NOTE **Condemn sb to sth** is usually used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + prep

cone /kəʊn; *AmE* koʊn/

ˌcone sth 'off to close a road or part of a road with special coloured plastic objects that have a round base and a point at the top (**traffic cones**): *Part of the road was coned off while repairs were done.*
NOTE **Cone sth off** is usually used in the passive.
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

confide /kən'faɪd/

con'fide in sb to tell sb a secret or a piece of information that you wouldn't tell other people: *Can I confide in you?* ◇ *Do you have a friend that you can confide in?*
OBJ **mother, friend**
G v + prep

confine /kən'faɪn/

con'fine sb/sth to sth; con'fine yourself to sth to keep sb/sth/yourself inside the limits of a particular activity, subject, area, etc: *The work will not be confined to the Glasgow area.* ◇ *I will* ***confine myself*** *to looking at the period from 1900 to 1916.*
SYN **limit sth to sb/sth; restrict sb/sth/yourself (to sth)**
NOTE **Confine sb/sth/yourself to sth** is often used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + prep

be con'fined to sth 1 if a person or an animal **is confined to** a place, they are kept in a small or closed space and not allowed to go out: *The children were confined to their rooms for the evening.* ◇ *The soldiers concerned were* ***confined to barracks*** (= had to stay in the barracks, as a punishment). **2** if a person **is confined to** bed, etc., they have to stay in bed, etc. because they are ill/sick or injured: *She was* ***confined to bed*** *with the flu.* ◇ *He was* ***confined to a wheelchair*** *after the car accident.*
G be + v + prep

confront /kən'frʌnt/

con'front sb with sth to make sb face or deal with an unpleasant or difficult person or situation: *He confronted her with a choice between her career or their relationship.*
G v + n/pron + prep

be con'fronted with sth to have sth in front of you that you have to deal with or react to: *Most people when confronted with a horse will pat it.*
G be + v + prep

conjure /'kʌndʒə(r)/

ˌconjure sb/sth 'up to make sb/sth appear suddenly or unexpectedly, as if by magic: *She conjured up a three-course meal in half an hour!*
G v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌconjure sth 'up 1 to make a picture, a memory, etc. appear in your mind: *The word 'birthday' conjures up images of presents and parties.* ◇ *The song conjured up memories of warm summer evenings.* OBJ **image, picture, visions, memories** SYN **evoke sth** (*more formal*) **2** to ask a spirit of a dead person to appear, by using a magic ceremony
G v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

conk /kɒŋk; *AmE* kɑːŋk, kɔːŋk/

ˌconk 'out (*informal* or *humorous*) **1** if a vehicle or a machine **conks out**, it stops working: *Our car conked out 5 miles from home.* **2** if a person **conks out**, they fall asleep because they are very tired: *She was so tired she came home and conked out at eight o'clock.* **3** (*old-fashioned, BrE*) (of a person) to collapse or become unconscious **4** (*AmE*) to die: *The old guy looks as if he's going to conk out any minute.*
G v + adv

connect /kə'nekt/

conˌnect sth 'up (to sth); conˌnect 'up (to sth) to join sth to a supply of electricity, gas, water, etc. or to another piece of equipment; to be

joined to sth in this way: *Connect the computer up (to the power supply).* ◇ *Many canals connected up to major ports.*
OPP **disconnect sth (from sth); disconnect (from sth)**
NOTE **Connect sth** and **connect** are often used with the same meaning.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + adv

connive /kə'naɪv/

con'nive at/in sth (*formal*) to ignore or seem to allow sth that you know is wrong: *The general is accused of conniving in a plot to topple the government.* ◇ *Her brother is believed to have connived at her murder.*
◆ v + prep

consign /kən'saɪn/

con'sign sb/sth to sth (*formal*) **1** to get rid of or put somewhere sb/sth that you do not want: *She consigned his letter to the waste basket.* ◇ (*figurative*) *They can't just consign me to the scrap heap because I'm over fifty!* **2** to put sb/sth in an unpleasant situation: *Orphaned children were consigned to institutions.*
NOTE **Consign sb/sth to sth** is often used in the passive: *The report was consigned to the dustbin.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

consist /kən'sɪst/

con'sist in sth; con'sist in doing sth (*formal*) (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to have sth as the main or only feature: *A home does not consist in the quality of its architecture and decoration.*
◆ v + prep

con'sist of sth/sb; con'sist of doing sth (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to be formed from the things or people mentioned: *The exam consists of two parts: a written test and an oral.* ◇ *The group consists of senior people from education and business.* ◇ *His job consists of answering the phone and making coffee.*
SYN **be made up of sth; comprise sth** (*formal*)
◆ v + prep

consort /kən'sɔːt; *AmE* kɑːn'sɔːrt/

con'sort with sb (*formal* or *humorous*) to spend time with sb, especially sb that other people do not approve of: *The nurses are instructed not to consort with their patients.*
◆ v + prep

contend /kən'tend/

con'tend with sb/sth to have to deal with a difficult person or situation: *If we leave at 8, we'll have to contend with the rush-hour traffic.* ◇ *Anyone who criticizes her will have me to contend with!* ◇ *He's had a lot of serious problems to contend with.*
OBJ **problems**
NOTE **Contend with sb/sth** can be used in the passive.
◆ v + prep

content /kən'tent/

con'tent yourself with sth to accept and be satisfied with sth and not try to have or do sth better: *Martina contented herself with a single glass of wine.* ◇ *The crowd contented themselves with shouting insults.*
SYN **make do with sth**
◆ v + pron + prep

contract /kən'trækt/

conˌtract 'in; conˌtract 'into sth (*BrE*) to choose to become involved in and formally agree to a system, plan, etc: *Employees can contract into the company pension scheme.*
OBJ **(pension) scheme** OPP **contract out, contract out of sth**
◆ v + adv • v + prep

conˌtract 'out; conˌtract 'out of sth (*BrE*) to choose and formally state that you do not want to be involved in a system, plan, etc: *Only a few employees have contracted out (of the pension scheme) so far.*
OBJ **(pension) scheme** OPP **contract in, contract into sth**
◆ v + adv • v + adv + prep

conˌtract sth 'out (to sb) to arrange for work to be done by another company rather than your own: *The company contracts the printing out to an outside firm.*
OBJ **work**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

contribute /kən'trɪbjuːt; *BrE also* 'kɒntrɪbjuːt/

con'tribute to sth to help to cause sth: *The stress of losing his job contributed to his death.* ◇ *The Prime Minister contributed to his own downfall by failing to control his government.*
OBJ **death, decline, downfall**
◆ v + prep

convert /kən'vɜːt; *AmE* -'vɜːrt/

con'vert into/to sth; con'vert sth into/to sth to be able to be changed from one form, purpose, or system to another; to make sth do this: *a sofa that converts into a bed*
SYN **turn into sth, turn sb/sth into sth**
◆ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

cook /kʊk/

ˌcook sth 'up 1 to cook sth, especially very quickly: *In half an hour she had managed to cook up some delicious chilli.* OBJ **meal 2** (*informal*) to invent a story, an excuse or a plan, especially a very clever or dishonest one: *She cooked the plan up while he was away.* ◇ *They cooked up the story between the two of them.* OBJ **plan, story, scheme** SYN **concoct sth** (*more formal*)
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

cool /kuːl/

ˌcool 'down; ˌcool sb 'down 1 (*also* **ˌcool 'off, ˌcool sb 'off**) to become, or to make sb become, cool or cooler: *I'm going for a swim to cool down.* ◇ *A shower will cool you down.* **2** to become, or to make sb become, less angry or excited: *She's very angry. Give her some time to cool down.* ◇ *He tried to cool her down but she carried on shouting.*
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

ˌcool 'down; ˌcool sth 'down to become, or to make sth become, cooler: *He waited for the soup to cool down a bit.* ◇ *Once it had cooled down outside, we went for a walk.* ◇ *Cool the soup down by stirring it.* ◇ *The rain had cooled everything down.*
NOTE **Cool** and **cool sth** are also used with this meaning, but less often.
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˌcool 'off 1 to become less interested or enthusiastic: *Our relationship was going well, but then Laura seemed to cool off.* **2** to become less angry or excited: *When I'm angry, I go for a walk to cool off.* **3** if sth hot **cools off**, it becomes cooler: *Leave the engine to cool off before you touch it.*
◆ v + adv
▶ **ˌcooling-'off period** *n* **1** a period of time in which two sides in a dispute try to come to an agreement before taking any further action: *There is to be a six month cooling-off period before divorce proceedings begin.* ◇ *The union and the employers failed to reach an agreement within the cooling-off period.* **2** a period of time when you can change your mind about buying sth, such as an insurance plan, that you have agreed to buy: *Customers have a 14-day cooling-off period in which to cancel the agreement.*

ˌcool 'off; ˌcool sb 'off = COOL DOWN, COOL SB DOWN 1

coop /kuːp/

be ˌcooped 'up (in sth) if a person or an animal **is cooped up**, they/it are kept in a small place or inside a building: *We've been cooped up (indoors) for hours because of the rain.*
◆ be + v + adv

cop /kɒp; *AmE* kɑːp/ **(-pp-)**

ˌcop 'off (with sb) (*BrE, slang*) to meet sb and start a sexual relationship with them
◆ v + adv

ˌcop 'out; ˌcop 'out of sth (*informal*) to avoid or not do sth that you should be doing, because you are afraid, shy, lazy, etc: *Lots of people said they'd help but they've all copped out.* ◇ *You can't just cop out of difficult decisions.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + prep
▶ **'cop-out** *n* (*informal, disapproving*) a way of, or an excuse for, avoiding sth you should be doing: *You're not too busy to come! That's just a cop-out.*

copy /'kɒpi; *AmE* 'kɑːpi/ **(copies, copying, copied, copied)**

ˌcopy sth 'down to write sth exactly as it is written somewhere else: *If I don't copy the phone number down, I'll forget it!* ◇ *We copied down what the teacher had written on the blackboard.*
SYN **write sth down**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌcopy sb 'in (on sth) to make sure that sb receives a copy of a letter, an electronic message, etc. that you are sending to sb else: *Please copy me in on all correspondence.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˌcopy sth 'out to write sth out again; to make a copy of sth that is already written or printed: *She copied out a recipe she found in a library book.*
SYN **write sth out**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

cordon /'kɔːdn; *AmE* 'kɔːrdn/

ˌcordon sth 'off to stop people going into an area by forming a line or ring around it with police, soldiers, objects, etc: *Police cordoned off the area until the bomb was defused.*
OBJ **area, street** SYN **close sth off (to sb/sth)**
NOTE **Cordon sth off** is often used in the passive: *The roads were cordoned off.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

cost /kɒst; *AmE* kɔːst/

ˌcost sth 'out to estimate how much money will be needed for sth: *We'll have to cost the work out before we make a decision.* ◇ *Have you costed out how much it will be to hire another member of staff?*
NOTE **Cost sth** is usually used with this meaning.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

cosy (*BrE*) (*AmE* **cozy**) /ˈkəʊzi; *AmE* ˈkoʊzi/ **(cosies, cosying, cosied, cosied)**

ˌcosy ˈup to sb (*informal, especially AmE*) to try to become friendly with sb, especially in order to gain an advantage for yourself: *She's only cosying up to him because she needs his help.*
SYN **cuddle up to sb** (*BrE, less frequent*)
◈ v + adv + prep

cotton /ˈkɒtn; *AmE* ˈkɑːtn/

ˌcotton ˈon (to sth) (*informal*) to come to understand or realize sth without being told directly: *She cottons on very quickly.* ◇ *It took him a while to cotton on to what I was trying to say.*
SYN **catch on (to sth)**
◈ v + adv

ˈcotton to sb/sth (*old-fashioned, AmE, informal*) to begin to like or approve of sb/sth: *I didn't much cotton to the idea at first.*
NOTE **Cotton to sb** is often used in negative sentences.
◈ v + prep

cough /kɒf; *AmE* kɔːf/

ˌcough ˈup; ˌcough sth ˈup (*informal*) **1** (*especially BrE*) to pay for sth or give sb money unwillingly: *You owe me £20. Come on, cough up!* ◇ *Don't cough up the money until the job's finished.*
SYN **pay up** **2** (*BrE*) to admit sth or give sb information unwillingly: *Come on, cough up: where've you been?* SYN **own up (to sth/to doing sth)**; **confess (to sth/to doing sth)** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌcough sth ˈup to force sth out of the throat or lungs by coughing: *He's been coughing up blood.*
OBJ **blood**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

count /kaʊnt/

ˌcount aˈgainst sb to be a disadvantage to sb: *I'm sure that being late for the interview counted against me.*
SYN **weigh against sb** (*formal*)
◈ v + prep

ˌcount aˈmong sb/sth; ˌcount sb/sth aˈmong sth to be considered, or to consider sb/sth, to be part of the group mentioned: *She counts among the top ten marathon runners in the country.* ◇ *The band count John Lennon among their influences.* ◇ *I no longer counted myself among his friends.*
NOTE **Count sb/sth among sb/sth** is more frequent than **count among sb/sth**: *Egypt was counted among the most powerful countries in the world.*
◈ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌcount ˈdown (to sth), ˌcount sth ˈdown to be waiting for an important or exciting day, event, etc. and be counting the number of days, minutes, etc. there are before it: *The whole world was counting down to the new millennium.* ◇ *I'm counting down the days until my trip.*
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv (*rare*)
▸ **ˈcountdown (to sth)** *n* **1** the act of counting backwards to zero, for example before a spacecraft is sent into space **2** the period immediately before sth important happens

ˌcount sb ˈin to include sb in a group or an activity: *If you're going to the theatre, you can count me in.*
SYN **deal sb in** (*less formal*) OPP **count sb out**
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌcount ˈoff (*AmE*) if people count off, they say loudly in order the numbers they have been given: *He made everyone count off.*
◈ v + adv

ˈcount on sb/sth; ˈcount on doing sth; ˈcount on sb/sth doing sth (*also* **ˈcount upon sb/sth, ˈcount upon doing sth, ˈcount upon sb/sth doing sth** *more formal*) to rely on sb to do sth; to expect sth to happen and make plans in an appropriate way: *You can count on me!* ◇ *'I'm sure he'll help us.' 'Don't count on it.'* ◇ *She hadn't counted on going swimming when she packed.* ◇ *I'm counting on your support.* ◇ *I'm counting on you to support me.*
SYN **bank on sb/sth, bank on doing sth, bank on sb/sth doing sth; reckon on sb/sth, reckon on doing sth, reckon on sb/sth doing sth**
NOTE These phrasal verbs can be used in the passive: *She can be counted upon to contribute good ideas.*
◈ v + prep • v + prep + n/pron + to inf

ˌcount sb ˈout; ˌcount sb ˈout of sth (*informal*) to not include sb in a group or an activity: *You may enjoy those games, but you can count me out.*
SYN **deal sb out, deal sb out of sth**
OPP **count sb in**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌcount sth ˈout to count coins, etc. one by one and put them somewhere: *He counted out the exact money (on the counter).*
OBJ **money, change, notes/coins**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌcount toˈwards sth (*also* **ˌcount toˈward sth** *especially AmE*) to be included as part of sth you hope to obtain or achieve: *Marks from this test count towards your final grade.* ◇ *These sales will not count toward meeting the target.*
NOTE **Count towards/toward sth** can be used in the passive: *These payments may be counted towards your pension.*
◈ v + prep

ˌcount sb/sth ˈup to add together the number of things or people in a group: *Count up the number of times you've been abroad.*
OBJ **number**
NOTE **Count sb/sth** is used with the same meaning.
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˈcount upon sb/sth; ˈcount upon doing sth; ˈcount on sb/sth doing sth = COUNT ON SB/STH, COUNT ON DOING STH, COUNT ON SB/STH DOING STH

couple /ˈkʌpl/

ˈcouple sb/sth with sb/sth to link one person, thing or situation with another: *The large number of new graduates, coupled with high unemployment, means that there is fierce competition for jobs.*
NOTE **Couple sb/sth with sb/sth** is usually used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

cover /ˈkʌvə(r)/

ˌcover sth ˈover (with sth) to cover sth completely, especially to hide or protect it: *Put the bulbs in a bowl and cover them over with soil.* ◇ *The shopping mall is covered over with an enormous glass roof.*
NOTE **Cover sth (with sth)** is used more often with this meaning.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌcover ˈup; ˌcover yourself ˈup (with sth) to put on more clothes: *Make sure you cover up before going out in the sun.* ◇ *Cover yourself up. It's cold.*
◈ v + adv • v + pron + adv

ˌcover ˈup (for sb/sth), ˌcover sth ˈup to try hard to stop people finding out about a mistake, a crime, etc.; to hide the truth about sth: *He's always covering up for her.* ◇ *The government's attempts to cover up the scandal failed.*
OBJ **scandal, mistake, truth** SYN **conceal sth** (*more formal*), **hide sth**
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)
▸ **ˈcover-up** *n* [usually sing.] an act of hiding a mistake, a crime, etc: *The opposition accused the government of a cover-up.*

ˌcover sb/sth ˈup to put sth over sb/sth in order to hide or protect them/it: *You can cover up ugly pipes with wooden boxes.* ◇ *There was something on the table covered up with a cloth.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

cozy /ˈkəʊzi; *AmE* ˈkoʊzi/ **(cozies, cozying, cozied, cozied)**

ˌcozy ˈup to sb (*AmE*) = COSY UP TO SB

crack /kræk/

ˌcrack ˈdown; ˌcrack ˈdown on sb/sth to try harder to prevent people breaking a rule, using sth harmful, committing a crime, etc. and deal severely with those who do: *Police are cracking down hard on drug dealers.* ◇ *The government is cracking down on misleading food labelling.*
SYN **clamp down, clamp down on sb/sth**
◈ v + adv • v + adv + prep
▸ **ˈcrackdown (on sb/sth)** *n* severe action that is taken to prevent people committing a crime, opposing the government, etc: *a police crackdown on car crime*

ˌcrack ˈon (with sth) (*BrE, informal*) to work hard and do sth quickly: *We'd better crack on with the painting before it gets dark.*
SYN **get on (with sth)**
◈ v + adv

ˌcrack ˈup (*informal*) to become physically or mentally ill because you are under pressure: *She's cracking up under the strain.*
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˈcrack-up** *n* (*informal, especially AmE*) a period of mental illness caused by pressure

ˌcrack ˈup; ˌcrack sb ˈup (*informal*) to start laughing a lot; to make sb laugh a lot: *Everybody cracked up when he fell over.* ◇ *She's so funny — she cracks me up!*
SYN **crease up, crease sb up** (*BrE*)
NOTE **Crack sb up** is not used in the passive.
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv
IDM **be ˌcracked ˈup to be sth** (*informal*) to be as good, clever, exciting, etc. as people think or say sb/sth is: *Stardom is not all it's cracked up to be.* ◇ *She's not as good as she's cracked up to be.*

cram /kræm/ **(-mm-)**

ˌcram ˈinto sth; ˌcram sb/sth ˈin; ˌcram sb/sth ˈin/ˈinto sth to go into a place or space that is too small for everyone/everything; to push or force sb/sth into a place or space that is too small: *Six of us crammed into Rob's Mini.* ◇ *I only had three days in New York, but I crammed in as much sightseeing as I could.* ◇ *He crammed all the sweets into his mouth.* ◇ *You can't cram eight children into the car!*
◈ v + prep • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

crank /kræŋk/

ˌcrank sth ˈout (*informal, especially AmE*) to produce sth quickly and in large amounts: *The plant can crank out about 63 cars an hour.*
SYN **churn sth out; turn sth out**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌcrank sth ˈup (*informal*) **1** to make a machine start working or work better: *It's time to crank up the air conditioning.* **2** to make music, etc. louder:

They cranked the music up when the party started. OBJ **music**, **volume** SYN **turn sth up** (*more formal*)
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

crash /kræʃ/

ˌcrash aˈround (*also* **ˌcrash aˈbout/ˈround** *especially BrE*) (*informal*) to move around making a lot of noise: *I heard her crashing about in the bathroom.*
G v + adv

ˌcrash ˈdown to fall with a very loud noise: *Passengers had a lucky escape when a huge tree crashed down onto a bus.* ◇ *John's hand* ***came crashing down*** *on the table* (= he hit the table hard with his hand). ◇ (*figurative*) *All my dreams* ***came crashing down*** *around me* (= I completely failed in what I wanted to do).
NOTE **Crash down** is usually followed by a phrase beginning with a preposition.
G v + adv

ˌcrash ˈout (*informal, especially BrE*) to go to sleep because you are very tired: *I was so tired I crashed out in an armchair.*
SYN **flake out** (*BrE*)
G v + adv

ˌcrash ˈout of sth (in sport) to lose a game very badly and so not be able to continue to take part in a competition: *England crashed out of the World Cup.*
NOTE This phrasal verb is used especially in newspapers.
G v + adv + prep

ˌcrash ˈround (*especially BrE*) = CRASH AROUND

crawl /krɔːl/

ˈcrawl with sb/sth (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) to be full of moving people, animals, insects, etc. in an unpleasant way: *The place is crawling with cops!*
OBJ **police**, **insects**
G v + prep

cream /kriːm/

ˌcream sb/sth ˈoff to take away the best people or things in a group or an amount of money, usually for your own advantage: *The best pupils are creamed off into special classes.* ◇ *The company's directors are creaming off the profits.*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

crease /kriːs/

ˌcrease ˈup; **ˌcrease sb ˈup** (*BrE, informal*) to start laughing; to make sb start laughing: *We all creased up when we saw her hat!* ◇ *His programme always creases me up.*
SYN **crack up**, **crack sb up**
G v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv

credit /ˈkredɪt/

ˈcredit A with B; **ˈcredit B to A** **1** to believe that sb/sth is responsible for sth or for doing sth, especially sth good: *Bach is credited with performing the first solo on a piano.* ◇ *She credits her good looks and intelligence to her father's side of the family.* **2** to consider that sb/sth has a particular good quality or characteristic: *I had credited him with more sense.* ◇ *Numerous health benefits are credited to this natural oil.*
NOTE **Credit A with B** is often used in the passive. ◆ You can also use the pattern **credit sb/sth as sth**, especially in the passive: *The cheetah is generally credited as the world's fastest animal.*
G v + n/pron + prep

creep /kriːp/ (**crept**, **crept** /krept/)

ˌcreep ˈin; **ˌcreep ˈinto sth** to start happening or affecting sb/sth gradually: *I thought I'd decided, but then doubts started to creep in.* ◇ *A hint of sarcasm crept into his voice.* ◇ *More and more foreign words are creeping into the language.*
G v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌcreep ˈover sb/sth if a feeling **creeps over** you, or an expression **creeps over** your face, it gradually affects you: *A feeling of tiredness began to creep over her.* ◇ *A sly smile crept over her lips.*
SYN **steal over sb/sth**
G v + prep

ˌcreep ˈup **1** if a price, an amount, etc. **creeps up**, it rises very gradually: *House prices are starting to creep up.* **2** **(on sb)** to move nearer to sb/sth slowly and quietly without being seen or heard: *Don't creep up on me like that!* ◇ *Jack crept up behind me.* SYN **steal up (on sb)**
G v + adv

ˌcreep ˈup on sb **1** if an event, a date, etc. **creeps up on** you, it arrives before you are really ready for it: *The exams just seemed to creep up on me.* **2** if a feeling, etc. **creeps up on** you, it starts to affect you before you realize it: *Anorexia can creep up on young girls when they least expect it.*
G v + adv + prep

crop /krɒp; *AmE* krɑːp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌcrop ˈup (*informal*) to appear, happen, etc. when it is not expected: *I can't make it tonight — something's cropped up.* ◇ *Her name keeps cropping up everywhere.*
SYN **come up**
G v + adv

cross /krɒs; *AmE* krɔːs/

ˌcross sb/sth ˈoff; **ˌcross sb/sth ˈoff sth** to remove sb's name or an item from a list by drawing a line through it because you have dealt with them/it or they/it are no longer involved: *Cross off any items we've already got.* ◇ *Jane won't be coming, so we can cross her off the list.*
SYN **delete sth** (*more formal*)
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌcross sth ˈout/ˈthrough to remove words from a text by drawing a line through them, usually because they are wrong: *I crossed his name out and wrote mine instead.* ◇ *You've spelt it wrong. Cross it out and try again.*
OBJ **word**, **name** SYN **delete sth** (*more formal*)
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌcross ˈover **1** (*also* **ˌcross ˈover sth**) (*especially BrE*) to go from one side of sth, for example a road/street, a room, etc. to the other: *Let's cross over to the other side.* ◇ *She crossed over the road.*
OBJ **road**, **bridge** **2** **(into/to sth)** to move from one style or type of music, culture, politics, etc. to another; to combine parts of different styles or types: *They're a blues band who have succeeded in crossing over to jazz.*
G **1** v + adv ◆ v + prep
2 v + adv
▸ **ˈcrossover** *n* a successful combination of different styles or types of music or culture; a successful change from one style or type to another: *a fresh and exciting rock-dance crossover* ◇ *a crossover artist*

ˌcross sth ˈthrough = CROSS STH OUT/THROUGH

crouch /kraʊtʃ/

ˈcrouch over sb/sth to bend over sb/sth so you are near them/it: *She crouched over the injured man, checking his wounds.*
G v + prep

crowd /kraʊd/

ˌcrowd aˈround; **ˌcrowd aˈround sb/sth** (*especially AmE*) = CROWD ROUND, CROWD ROUND SB/STH

ˌcrowd ˈin; **ˌcrowd ˈinto sth** to move in large numbers into a small place: *As soon as the doors opened people began to crowd in.* ◇ *We all crowded into the lift.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Memories she would rather forget* ***came crowding in***. ◇ (*figurative*) *Doubts crowded into my mind.*
SYN **pile in**, **pile into sth**
G v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌcrowd sb/sth ˈin; **ˌcrowd sb/sth ˈinto/ˈonto sth** to put a large number of people or things into a small space: *I doubt if we can crowd any more people in — the place is packed already.* ◇ *We were all crowded into a small area behind the goal.*
SYN **cram sb/sth in**, **cram sb/sth in/into sth**; **pack sb/sth in**, **pack sb/sth into sth**
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌcrowd ˈin (on sb) if high buildings, mountains, etc. **crowd in**, they seem to surround you and threaten you or have a strong effect on you: *The high walls seemed to crowd in (on her).* ◇ (*figurative*) *He tried to resist the fears that were crowding in on him.*
G v + adv + prep

ˌcrowd sb/sth ˈonto sth = CROWD SB/STH IN, CROWD SB/STH INTO/ONTO STH

ˌcrowd sb/sth ˈout; **ˌcrowd sb/sth ˈout of sth** if a number of people or things **crowd out** other people or things, they are present in such large numbers that there is no room for anyone or anything else: *Tourists are crowding the regular customers out of the bar.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Small shops are increasingly being crowded out by the big supermarkets.*
SYN **squeeze sb/sth out**, **squeeze sb/sth out of sth**
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆
v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌcrowd ˈround; **ˌcrowd ˈround sb/sth** (*especially BrE*) (*AmE usually* **ˌcrowd aˈround**, **ˌcrowd aˈround sb/sth**) to gather in large numbers around sb/sth: *People were crowding around to see what was going on.* ◇ *Fans crowded round him to ask for his autograph.*
G v + adv ◆ v + prep

crumple /ˈkrʌmpl/

ˌcrumple sth ˈup to crush sth, especially a piece of paper, into a ball: *She crumpled his letter up without even looking at it.*
OBJ **paper**
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

cry /kraɪ/ (**cries**, **crying**, **cried**, **cried**)

ˈcry for sth to ask for or demand sth in a forceful or urgent way: *The families of the victims are crying for justice.* ◇ *Listen! That sounds like somebody crying* (= calling) *for help.*
OBJ **help**, **mercy**
G v + prep

ˌcry ˈoff; **ˌcry ˈoff sth**; **ˌcry ˈoff doing sth** (*BrE*) to decide not to do sth you have promised or agreed to do: *We'd arranged to go together but Luis cried off at the last moment.* ◇ *Why did you cry off training last night?*
SYN **pull out**, **pull out of sth**, **pull out of doing sth**
→ *see also* BEG OFF, BEG OFF STH, BEG OFF DOING STH
G v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌcry ˈout to make a loud sound without words because you are hurt, afraid, surprised, etc: *She cried out in/with pain.*
G v + adv

ˌcry ˈout sth to shout sth loudly: *He suddenly cried out, 'Stop at once!' ◇ She could hear a voice crying out her name.*
G v + adv + speech ◆ v + adv + n
IDM **for ˌcrying out ˈloud!** (*spoken, informal*) used to show that you are surprised or angry about sth: *For crying out loud! What did you do that for?*

ˌcry ˈout against sth to protest strongly about sth: *People have been crying out against this abuse for years.*
G v + adv + prep
▸ **ˈoutcry (against/at/over sth)** *n* [C] [U] a public reaction of strong protest against sth: *There is sure to be a massive outcry against the proposals.*

ˌcry ˈout for sth (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) to clearly need sth very quickly: *The group is crying out for new members. ◇ The whole system was crying out for a radical review.*
G v + adv + prep

cuddle /ˈkʌdl/

ˌcuddle ˈup (to/against sb), ˌcuddle ˈup together if children, pets, etc. **cuddle up**, they sit or lie close to each other or sb else, because they need warmth or comfort, or want to show affection: *Jack cuddled up to his mother. ◇ The cubs cuddle up together for warmth.*
SYN **snuggle up (to/against sb/sth)**
G *v + adv ◆ v + adv + adv*

ˌcuddle ˈup to sb/sth (*BrE, informal, rare*) to try to be friendly to sb in order to gain an advantage for yourself: *Just before the election they started cuddling up to the government.*
SYN **cosy up to sb**
G v + adv + prep

culminate /ˈkʌlmɪneɪt/

ˈculminate in sth (*also* **ˈculminate with sth** *less frequent*) (*formal*) to end with a particular result or conclusion, or at a particular point: *The negotiations culminated in an agreement acceptable to all sides.*
G v + prep

curl /kɜːl; *AmE* kɜːrl/

ˌcurl ˈup; be ˌcurled ˈup 1 to lie down or sit down with your back curved and your knees and arms close to your body: *I love curling up in an armchair with a good book. ◇ The cat was curled up asleep under the bush.* **2** if the edges of pages, leaves, etc. **curl up** they bend towards the middle: *The pages had all curled up at the corners.*
G v + adv ◆ be + v + adv

ˌcurl sth ˈup; ˌcurl yourself ˈup to bend sth/yourself into a tight curved shape: *She curled her legs up under her on the sofa. ◇ He curled himself up under the covers and went to sleep.*
G v + n/pron + adv

curse /kɜːs; *AmE* kɜːrs/

be ˈcursed with sth to have or suffer from sth bad: *He was cursed with poor health from childhood. ◇ I've always been cursed with bad luck.*
G be + v + prep

curtain /ˈkɜːtn; *AmE* ˈkɜːrtn/

ˌcurtain sth off (from sth) to separate part of a room with a curtain or curtains: *A corner of the room was curtained off.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

cut /kʌt/ (cutting, cut, cut)

	~ across		~ off
	~ away	70	~ out, out of
	~ back		~ out for
69	~ down		~ through
	~ in		~ up
	~ into		

ˌcut aˈcross sth 1 (*also* **ˌcut ˈthrough sth**) to take a short route (a **short cut**) across a place instead of going around it: *We'll get there quicker if we cut across the fields.* **2** to affect or be true for people in different groups that usually remain separate: *Opposition to the proposal cuts across party boundaries.* OBJ **boundary, division 3** to interrupt and stop sth: *The sound of the fire alarm cut across his attempt to explain.*
G v + prep

ˌcut sth aˈway (from sth) to remove sth by cutting with a knife or a sharp tool: *Cut away any dead branches.*
G *v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv*

ˌcut ˈback (on sth) 1 to reduce sth such as the amount sb spends or produces: *The recession means that everyone is cutting back. ◇ We've had to cut back on staff to save money.* **2** (*especially AmE*) to eat, drink or use less of a particular thing, usually for your health: *I smoke too much. I must cut back. ◇ The doctor's told me to cut back on red meat.*
→ *see also* CUT STH BACK 1; CUT DOWN
G v + adv
▸ **ˈcutback (in sth)** *n* [usually pl.] a reduction in sth: *cutbacks in public spending*

ˌcut sth ˈback 1 to reduce sth a lot, especially to save money or improve the environment or your health: *Government funding is being cut back. ◇ We have agreed to cut back CFC emissions by the end of the century.* OBJ **production, spending, pollution** SYN **pare sth down (to sth), pare sth back (to sth)** NOTE **Cut sth back** is often used in the passive in this meaning. **2** to reduce the size of a plant, a bush, etc. by cutting parts off: *That rose bush needs cutting back a lot.* OBJ **bush, tree** SYN **prune sth**
G v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌcut ˈdown (on sth) 1 to reduce the amount or quantity of sth: *Recycling cuts down on waste. ◇ I've spent too much already this month   I'll have to cut down a bit* (= spend less money). **2** to consume, use or buy less of sth: *The doctor's told me to cut down on fatty foods. ◇ I haven't stopped smoking, but I've cut down to five a day.*
→ *see also* CUT STH DOWN 1; CUT BACK
G v + adv

ˌcut sb ˈdown (*formal, BrE*) to kill sb: *He was cut down by pneumonia at an early age.*
NOTE **Cut sb down** is often used in the passive in this meaning.
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌcut sb/sth ˈdown (*AmE, informal*) to make sb feel or look stupid, especially in front of other people: *He always cuts her down in front of his friends. ◇ She's always cutting down my lifestyle.*
SYN **put sb down**
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
IDM **cut sb down to ˈsize** to show sb that they are not as important as they think they are
▸ **ˈcutdown** (*AmE*) (*BrE* **ˈput-down**) *n* (*informal*) a remark or criticism that is intended to make sb feel or look stupid

ˌcut sth ˈdown 1 to reduce the amount or quantity of sth: *Measures were introduced to cut down the number of road accidents involving children. ◇ The policy aims at cutting down exhaust emissions.* OBJ **number, costs, amount** SYN **reduce sth** (*more formal*) NOTE **Cut sth** can also be used with this meaning. **Cut sth**, not **cut sth down** is used for reducing the cost or the price of sth: *Petrol/gas prices have been cut.* → *see also* CUT DOWN; CUT STH BACK 1 **2** to make a tree, etc. fall down by cutting it at the base: *Every time we cut a tree down, we plant a new one.* OBJ **tree** SYN **chop sth down; fell sth** (*more formal*) **3** to reduce the length of sth: *Please cut your article down to 1 000 words.* SYN **shorten sth** (*more formal*) NOTE **Cut sth** can also be used with this meaning.
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌcut ˈin 1 (on sb/sth) to interrupt sb/sth: *'Listen to me!' she cut in impatiently.* SYN **interrupt (sb/sth)** → *see also* CUT INTO STH 2 **2 (on sb/sth)** (of a vehicle or a driver) to move suddenly in front of another vehicle in a dangerous way, leaving little space between the two vehicles: *The lorry cut in (on me) suddenly and I had to brake sharply.* **3** (of an engine, a motor or a piece of equipment) to start working automatically, especially after another source of power has failed: *If the power fails, the generator will cut in.* SYN **kick in 4** (*AmE, informal*) to push in front of people who have been waiting in a line: *Someone tried to cut in in front of us. ◇ She saw some friends in line and cut in with them.* SYN **push in** (*BrE*)
G v + adv **1** also v + adv + speech

ˌcut sb ˈin (on sth) (*informal*) to include sb in a deal and give them a share of the profits: *Do you think we can cut Harris in on the deal?*
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌcut ˈinto sth 1 to make a mark, an opening or a wound in sth with a knife or a sharp object: *Make some pencil guidelines before you cut into the wood. ◇ The rope was cutting into her wrists* (= because it was very tight). OBJ **cake, meat, etc. 2** to interrupt sth: *His voice cut into her thoughts.* OBJ **thoughts 3** to begin to use part or too much of sb's time, sth that belongs to sb else, etc: *My work's cutting into my free time at the moment. ◇ The independent stations are cutting into our audience.* OBJ **time** SYN **encroach on/upon sth** (*more formal*)
G v + prep

ˌcut sb ˈoff 1 to refuse to let sb have any of your money or property after you die: *He cut his son off without a penny.* OBJ **son, daughter** SYN **disinherit sb** (*more formal*) → *see also* CUT SB OUT, CUT SB OUT OF STH **2** to end a relationship with sb because you do not want to see or talk to them any more: *His family have cut him off since he told them what he'd done.* **3** to interrupt a telephone conversation by breaking the connection: *Operator, I've just been cut off.* NOTE **Cut sb off** is usually used in the passive in this meaning.
G **1,2** v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)
3 v + n/pron + adv
IDM **be cut off in your ˈprime** to die suddenly when you are still young, strong and successful

ˌcut sb/sth ˈoff 1 (*also* **ˌcut yourself ˈoff**) **(from sb/sth)** to separate sb/sth/yourself physically or socially from other people or things: *His deafness cut him off from his family and friends. ◇ She cut herself off from music after her marriage. ◇ Why has he* ***cut off all contact*** *with his family? ◇ The farm gets completely cut off in the winter. ◇* (*figurative*) *Politicians are cut off from the reality of poverty.* SYN **isolate sb/sth/yourself (from sb/sth)** NOTE **Cut sb/sth/yourself off** is often used in the passive in this meaning: *The children were cut off by the tide.* **2** to interrupt sb when they are speaking: *He cut me off in mid-sentence. ◇ My explanation was abruptly cut off.* **3** to stop the supply of gas, water or electricity to sb's home: *The gas company threatened to cut them off if they didn't pay the bill. ◇ The water supply had been cut off.* **4** (*AmE*) = CUT SB/STH UP *A sports car cut me off as I turned into the road.* **5** to prevent sb from reaching or leaving a place; to stop sb: *Try to cut him off at the traffic lights.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **ˈcut-off** *n* an act of stopping sth
→ *see also* CUT-OFF at CUT STH OFF; CUT-OFF at CUT STH OFF, CUT STH OFF STH

ˌcut sth ˈoff to block or get in the way of sth, etc: *The police cut off all their escape routes.* ◇ *The new hotel cuts off our view of the sea.*

OBJ **route, aid, supplies**

◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

▶ **ˈcut-off** *n* a point or a limit when you stop sth: *a cut-off in aid* ◇ *What is the cut-off date for registration?*

→ *see also* CUT-OFF at CUT SB/STH OFF; CUT-OFF at CUT STH OFF, CUT STH OFF STH

ˌcut sth ˈoff; **ˌcut sth ˈoff sth** to remove sth by cutting it with a knife or a sharp tool: *He cut off a metre of cloth from the roll.* ◇ *Mind you don't cut your fingers off!* ◇ *She's **had** all her hair **cut off**.* ◇ *If the photo is too large for the frame, cut a bit off the top.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Five seconds has been cut off the world record.*

SYN **chop sth off, chop sth off sth**

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

▶ **ˈcut-offs** *n* [pl.] trousers/pants that have been made shorter by cutting off part of the legs

▶ **ˈcut-off** *adj* [only before noun] **cut-off** trousers/pants have been made shorter by cutting off part of the legs

→ *see also* CUT-OFF at CUT SB/STH OFF; CUT-OFF at CUT STH OFF

▶ **ˈoffcut** *n* (*especially BrE*) a piece of wood, paper, etc. that remains after the main piece has been cut

ˌcut yourself ˈoff (from sb/sth) = CUT SB OFF 1

ˌcut ˈout if an engine or a motor **cuts out**, it suddenly stops working: *One of the aircraft's engines cut out.*

◈ v + adv

▶ **ˈcut-out** *n* (*especially BrE*) a safety device that stops an electric current from flowing through sth: *A cut-out stops the kettle boiling dry.*

→ *see also* CUT-OUT at CUT STH OUT, CUT STH OUT OF STH

ˌcut ˈout; **ˌcut ˈout of sth** (*AmE*) **1** (of a vehicle or a driver) to move suddenly sideways out of a line of traffic: *Did you see the way the car in front cut out?* **2** (*old-fashioned, slang*) to leave: *I'm cutting out (of here). See you later.*

◈ v + adv • v + adv + prep

ˌcut sb ˈout; **ˌcut sb ˈout of sth** to not allow sb to be involved in sth: *If we deliver the goods ourselves, we can cut out the middleman.* ◇ *Don't cut your parents out of your lives!* ◇ *She cut me out of her will* (= refused to let me have any of her money or property after she died).

→ *see also* CUT SB OFF 1

◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv •
v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌcut sth ˈout 1 to make sth unnecessary: *Cut out some of the administration by computerizing your records.* ◇ *The new fast train service cuts out the need for a long bus journey.* OBJ **need 2** (*informal*) to stop doing, using or eating sth: *I've cut out sweets to try to lose weight.* OBJ **smoking, drink, sweets 3** (*informal*) to block light or sound: *That tree in front of the window cuts out the light.* OBJ **light, noise** SYN **block sth out 4** (*informal*) used to tell sb to stop doing or saying sth that is annoying you: *I'm sick of you two arguing — just cut it out!* ◇ *Now cut out the jokes and pay attention!* OBJ **it, that 5** to make sth by cutting: *They managed to cut out a path through the jungle.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌcut sth ˈout; **ˌcut sth ˈout of sth 1** to remove sth you want from sth larger by cutting; to cut the shape of sth from a piece of fabric, paper, etc: *Simply cut out and return the coupon.* ◇ *She cut the article out of the newspaper.* ◇ *The children enjoy cutting shapes out of coloured paper.* OBJ **article, picture 2** to remove sth bad from sth by cutting: *I cut out the bad parts of the apple.* **3** (*informal*) to leave sth out of a piece of writing, etc: *You can cut out the unimportant details.* SYN **omit sth**

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n •
v + n/pron + adv + prep

IDM **have your ˈwork cut out (for you)** (*formal*) to face a difficult task or situation: *You'll have your work cut out to beat him.*

▶ **ˈcut-out** *n* a shape cut out of paper, wood, etc: *a cardboard cut-out*

→ *see also* CUT-OUT at CUT OUT

be ˌcut ˈout for sth; **be ˌcut ˈout to do/be sth** (*informal*) to have the qualities and abilities needed for sth: *I don't think I'm cut out for country life.* ◇ *He's not cut out to be a politician.*

NOTE This phrasal verb is usually used in negative sentences.

◈ be + v + adv + prep • be + v + adv + to inf

ˌcut ˈthrough sth 1 = CUT ACROSS STH 1 *The path cuts through the wood.* ◇ *It should be quicker if we cut through town.* **2** to pass through sth by cutting: *Will this saw cut through metal?* ◇ (*figurative*) *The sharp wind cut through his shirt.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The pain cut through him like a knife.* **3** to overcome a difficulty that is preventing you from making progress: *Once you cut through the technical language the report is easy to understand.* ◇ *The yacht cut smoothly through the waves.* **4** to interrupt sth: *His voice cut through her thoughts.*

→ *see also* CUT STH THROUGH STH

◈ v + prep

ˌcut sth ˈthrough sth to make a path or passage through sth by cutting: *They had to use their knives to cut a path through the undergrowth.*

OBJ **path**

→ *see also* CUT THROUGH STH

◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌcut sb ˈup (*informal*) **1** to injure sb by cutting them with a knife, a piece of glass, etc: *He was very badly cut up in the fight.* **2** to make sb very emotionally upset: *She's still very cut up about the divorce.* NOTE **Cut sb up** is usually used in the passive in this meaning.

◈ **1** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
2 v + n/pron + adv

ˌcut sb/sth ˈup (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˌcut sb/sth ˈoff**) (of a vehicle or a driver) to suddenly drive in front of another vehicle in a dangerous way: *Did you see how he cut me up?*

SYN **carve sb/sth up** (*BrE*)

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌcut sth ˈup to divide sth into small pieces with a knife or a sharp tool: *Who's going to cut up the vegetables?*

SYN **chop sth up**

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

Dd

dab /dæb/ (-bb-)

ˈdab at sth (with sth) to touch sth, especially your face, several times, quickly and lightly: *She was crying and dabbing at her eyes with a handkerchief.* ◇ *He gently dabbed at his cuts with a piece of cotton wool.*
OBJ **my, your, etc. eyes**
NOTE **Dab sth** can be used with the same meaning: *She dabbed her eyes with a handkerchief.*
◆ v + prep

ˌdab sth ˈoff to remove sth such as a stain, sth you have spilled on sth, etc. with quick, light movements: *Dab the coffee off with your handkerchief.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌdab sth ˈon (with sth) to put sth on a surface with quick, light movements: *Dab the paint on with a sponge.* ◇ *She dabbed on a little perfume.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

dabble /ˈdæbl/

ˈdabble in sth to take part in an activity or a sport, but not very seriously: *She swims twice a week and has been dabbling in weight training.*
◆ v + prep

dally /ˈdæli/ (dallies, dallying, dallied, dallied)

ˈdally with sth/sb (*old-fashioned*) to think about sth, do sth or treat sb in a way that is not serious enough: *They've been dallying with the idea for years.*
OBJ **idea, thought** SYN **toy with sth**
◆ v + prep

dam /dæm/

ˌdam sth ˈup to stop the water flowing in a river by building sth across it (a **dam**): *The stream was dammed up to form ornamental lakes.* ◇ (*figurative*) *I tried to dam up my tears.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

damp /dæmp/ (*also* **dampen** /ˈdæmpən/)

ˌdamp sth ˈdown 1 to make a fire burn more slowly or stop burning: *Firefighters were damping down the embers hours later.* ◇ *He put sand on the fire to try to damp it down.* ◇ *The fire had been damped down but not extinguished.* OBJ **fire 2** if somebody or something **damps down** an emotion or a feeling, it becomes less strong: *She tried to damp down her feelings of despair.* OBJ **emotions 3** if somebody or something **damps down** a situation or an activity, it becomes slower or weaker: *The latest increase in interest rates has damped down activity in the housing market.* **4** (*rare*) to make a surface slightly wet by spraying a small amount of water over it
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

dangle /ˈdæŋɡl/

ˌdangle sth beˈfore sb/sth to offer sb sth very attractive to try to persuade them to do sth: *It's the biggest financial incentive ever dangled before British footballers.*
NOTE **In front of** can be used instead of **before**.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

dash /dæʃ/

ˌdash aˈbout (*especially BrE*) = DASH AROUND

ˌdash aˈgainst sth (of rain, waves, the sea, etc.) to beat violently against a surface
◆ v + prep

ˌdash aˈround (*also* **ˌdash aˈbout/round** *especially BrE*) to move very quickly from place to place, being very busy: *I've been dashing around all day!* ◇ *At the scene of the accident, people were **dashing about all over the place**.*
SYN **rush around**
◆ v + adv

ˌdash aˈway/ˈoff to go away from a place in a hurry: *He dashes off every day at 4 o'clock.*
◆ v + adv

ˌdash sth aˈway if you **dash** tears **away**, you remove them quickly from your face: *He dashed away the tears welling up in his eyes with an impatient hand.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌdash ˈoff = DASH AWAY/OFF

ˌdash sth ˈoff to write or draw sth very quickly: *I dashed off a quick letter to my brother.*
SYN **scribble sth**
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌdash ˈround (*especially BrE*) = DASH AROUND

date /deɪt/

ˌdate ˈback ... (*also* **ˌdate ˈback to sth**) to have existed since a particular time in the past or for the length of time mentioned: *It's a tradition that dates back at least a thousand years.* ◇ *Her problems date back to her childhood.* ◇ *The town dates back to Roman times.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + prep

ˈdate from sth to have existed since a particular time in the past: *It is a beautiful vase dating from about 1715.* ◇ *The strike was the latest stage in a dispute which dated from 1990.*
◆ v + prep

dawn /dɔːn/

ˈdawn on sb (*also* **ˈdawn upon sb** *more formal*) if an idea, the truth or a fact **dawns on** you, you realize it for the first time: *It suddenly dawned on us that we were lost.* ◇ *The answer finally dawned on me.*
SYN **strike sb**
◆ v + prep

deal /diːl/ (dealt, dealt /delt/)

ˈdeal in sth 1 to do business; to make money by buying and selling a particular product or kind of goods: *He made a fortune dealing in stocks and shares.* ◇ *They deal exclusively in Chinese art.* ◇ *The company deals in computer software.* OBJ **shares, art 2** to make money by buying and selling goods illegally, especially drugs: *They're rumoured to be dealing in stolen goods.* OBJ **drugs, arms 3** to be concerned with or involved in sth: *This newspaper doesn't deal in gossip, only in facts.* ◇ *She's not the type to deal in rumours.*
◆ v + prep

ˌdeal sb ˈin (*informal, especially AmE*) to include sb in an activity: *It sounds like a great plan! Deal me in!*
SYN **count sb in**
OPP **deal sb out, deal sb out of sth**
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌdeal sb ˈout; ˌdeal sb ˈout of sth (*AmE, informal*) to not include sb in an activity: *You can deal me out of this. I don't want to get involved in anything illegal.*
SYN **count sb out, count sb out of sth**
OPP **deal sb in**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌdeal sth ˈout (to sb) 1 to share sth among a number of people, groups of people or organizations: *We'll deal out the proceeds to several charities.* ◇ *The profits were dealt out among the investors.* SYN **distribute sth** (*more formal*) **2** (in a game of cards) to give cards to each player: *She dealt out seven cards to each player.* NOTE **Deal sth** can also be used with this meaning. **3** to give sb a particular punishment; to say what punishment sb should have: *She dealt out the same punishment to all the children.* ◇ *Severe penalties are dealt out to persistent offenders.* OBJ **punishment** SYN **administer sth** (*formal*)
◆ **1,2** v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
3 v + adv + n • v + pron + adv

ˈdeal with sb 1 to look after, talk to or control people in an appropriate way, especially as part of your job: *Her job involves dealing with young offenders.* ◇ *They're very difficult people to deal with.* SYN **handle sb 2** to take appropriate action in a particular situation or according to who you are talking to, etc: *Can you deal with this customer?* ◇ *We have to deal with students and handle a load of paperwork as well.* ◇ *Most patients are dealt with within four weeks.* **3** to take appropriate action to punish sb who has done sth wrong: *Your father will deal with you when he gets home.* ◇ *Athletes found guilty of taking drugs were swiftly dealt with.* SYN **sort sb out**
◆ v + prep

ˈdeal with sb/sth 1 to do business regularly with a person, an organization, a government, etc: *We prefer to deal only with reputable companies.* ◇ *It is best to deal directly with foreign suppliers.* OBJ **business, company 2** to talk to sb, an organization, a government, etc. in order to reach an agreement or settle a dispute: *I prefer to deal with somebody in authority.* ◇ *It would help if I knew exactly who I'm dealing with.*
◆ v + prep

ˈdeal with sth 1 to solve a problem, carry out a task, etc: *to deal with enquiries/issues/complaints* ◇ *The police dealt with the incident very efficiently.* ◇ *There's some urgent correspondence here that hasn't been dealt with.* OBJ **problems, matter, situation, crisis 2** (of a book, poem, article, etc.) to be about sth: *The next programme deals with the subject of divorce.* OBJ **subject, question, issue** SYN **cover sth 3** if you deal with an emotion such as anger or sadness, you learn to control it or become less affected by it: *He is beginning to deal with his anger in a constructive way.* ◇ *'You've got to try and forget her and get on with your life.' 'I'm dealing with it!'* ◇ *She's good at dealing with pressure.*
OBJ **anger, grief, loss** SYN **cope (with sth)**
NOTE **Deal with sth** can be used in the passive.
◆ v + prep

debar /dɪˈbɑː(r)/ (-rr-)

deˈbar sb from sth; deˈbar sb from doing sth (*formal*) to prevent sb from doing sth, joining an organization, going somewhere, etc: *Students who have not paid their fees will be debarred from taking examinations.* ◇ *He was debarred from holding public office.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

decide /dɪˈsaɪd/

deˈcide on sb/sth (*also* **deˈcide upon sb/sth** *more formal*) to choose sb/sth after careful thought: *We haven't decided on a date for the wedding yet.* ◇ *Have you decided on whether to take the job or not?*
SYN **settle on/upon sth**
NOTE **Decide on/upon sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *Nothing has yet been decided on.*
◆ v + prep

deck /dek/

ˌdeck sb ˈout; ˌdeck yourself ˈout (in/as/like sth) to put on interesting and colourful clothes or jewellery, usually for a special occasion: *He decked himself out in his best suit.* ◇ *A lot of supporters were decked out in the team's colours.*

SYN **dress up (as sth), dress sb/yourself up (as sb/sth)**

NOTE **Deck sb out** is usually used in the passive. • **Deck sb/yourself (in/with sth)** is also used with this meaning.

G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌdeck sth ˈout (with/in/like sth) to decorate sth, especially a room or a building, for a special occasion: *The canteen was decked out with Christmas decorations.* ◇ *The room was decked out to look like the inside of a spaceship.*

OBJ **room**

NOTE **Deck sth out** is usually used in the passive. • **Deck sth** can also be used with this meaning.

G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

dedicate /ˈdedɪkeɪt/

ˈdedicate sth to sb to say at the beginning of a book, a piece of music or a performance that you are doing it for sb, as a way of thanking them or showing respect: *This book is dedicated to my parents.*

OBJ **book, work, song**

G v + n/pron + prep

ˈdedicate yourself/sth to sth; ˈdedicate yourself/sth to doing sth to give a lot of your time and effort to a particular activity or purpose because you think it is important: *She dedicates herself to her work.* ◇ *He dedicated his life to helping the poor.*

G v + n/pron + prep

defer /dɪˈfɜː(r)/ (-rr-)

deˈfer to sb/sth (*rather formal*) to accept sb's opinion or do what they suggest because you respect them: *I defer to your judgement in these matters.* ◇ *We are happy to defer to the committee's wishes.*

OBJ **judgement, wishes**

NOTE **Defer to sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *They were deferred to just because they were men.*

G v + prep

delight /dɪˈlaɪt/

deˈlight in sth; deˈlight in doing sth to get a lot of pleasure from sth or from doing sth, especially sth that annoys or upsets other people: *She seemed to delight in making her parents angry.* ◇ (*rather formal*) *From childhood, she delighted in reading.*

G v + prep

deliver /dɪˈlɪvə(r)/

deˈliver on sth if you deliver **on** a promise, a threat or an agreement, you do what you have said you would do, or what you are expected to do: *Can he be trusted to deliver on his promises?* ◇ *They failed to deliver on the agreement.*

OBJ **promise, agreement**

G v + prep

deˌliver sb/sth ˈover/ˈup (to sb); deˌliver yourself ˈover/ˈup (to sb) (*formal*) to give sb/sth/yourself to sb in authority, often because you have been ordered to do so: *The defendant has been ordered to deliver up the goods.* ◇ *She delivered the baby over to the care of her sister.* ◇ *He delivered himself up to the authorities.*

SYN **hand sb/sth over (to sb), hand yourself over (to sb)** (*less formal*)

G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

delve /delv/

ˌdelve ˈinto sth to try hard to find out more information about sth: *We should not delve too deeply into this painful matter.*

OBJ **subject, reasons** SYN **probe (sth/into sth)**

G v + prep

depart /dɪˈpɑːt; AmE dɪˈpɑːrt/

deˈpart from sth to behave in a way that is different from what is usual or expected: *The teachers are not encouraged to depart from the syllabus.* ◇ *They departed from tradition and got married in a hotel.*

OBJ **principles, rules, tradition, decision**

NOTE **Depart from sth** can be used in the passive: *This rule should only be departed from in exceptional circumstances.*

G v + prep

depend /dɪˈpend/

deˈpend on sb/sth (*also* **deˈpend upon sb/sth** *more formal*) **1 (for sth)** (*not usually used in the progressive tenses*) to need help or support from sb/sth in order to live or to manage in a particular situation: *The organization depended heavily on voluntary help.* ◇ *She came to depend on her daughter for support.* ◇ *He depends on medication to stay alive.* SYN **rely on/upon sb/sth (for sth) 2** (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to be affected by or decided by sb/sth: *I don't know if I'll come or not. **It all depends on** how tired I feel this evening.* ◇ *This may be a welcome change or not, depending on your point of view.* NOTE In informal English it is quite common to say **depend** rather than **depend on** before words like what, how, or whether. *It depends how tired I feel.* ◇ *It all depends what happens.* **3** to rely on sb/sth; to be able to trust sb: *I hope you'll be able to come — I'm depending on you to help me.* ◇ *We need someone who can be depended on.* SYN **count on/upon sb/sth; rely on/upon sb/sth** NOTE In this meaning **depend on/upon sb/sth** can be used in the passive. **4** (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to be sure that sth will happen: *You can depend on my sister to spoil things* (= she always does). SYN **count on/upon sb/sth; rely on/upon sb/sth** NOTE In this meaning **depend on/upon sb/sth** can be used in the passive.

G v + prep • v + prep + n/pron + to inf

deprive /dɪˈpraɪv/

deˈprive sb/sth/yourself of sth to prevent sb/sth from having sth important; to take sth away from sb: *In prison they were starved and deprived of sleep.* ◇ *The baby's brain had been deprived of oxygen during the birth.* ◇ *There is no need to deprive yourself of food on this diet.* ◇ (*humorous*) *I couldn't deprive you of* (= take away from you) *your last few pence.*

G v + n/pron + prep

derive /dɪˈraɪv/

deˈrive from sth to come or develop from sth: *The word history derives from the Latin word 'historia' meaning story.* ◇ *The criticism derives from a misunderstanding of our aims.*

G v + prep

deˈrive sth from sth 1 (*formal*) to get or obtain sth from sth: *She derived a great deal of satisfaction from this achievement.* OBJ **pleasure, satisfaction, information, benefits 2** to obtain a substance from sth: *These remedies are derived mainly from the natural world.* **3** to come or develop from sth: *The Rubik cube derives its name from its inventor.* ◇ *The name of the mountain appears to be derived from an old Norse word.* OBJ **name, word**

NOTE In meanings 2 and 3, **derive sth from sth** is frequently used in the passive.

G v + n/pron + prep

descend /dɪˈsend/

be desˈcended from sb/sth to be related to sb who lived a long time ago: *He claimed he was descended from the Vikings.*

OBJ **ancestors, line, family**

G be + v + prep

desˈcend into sth to get into a very bad condition or state: *The situation has descended into total chaos.* ◇ *There were fears that the country was descending into turmoil or even civil war.*

G v + prep

desˈcend on sb/sth (*also* **desˈcend upon sb/sth** *more formal*) **1** to arrive somewhere, especially suddenly and unexpectedly and in large numbers: *Dozens of police descended on the building.* ◇ (*humorous*) *My sister and her family are descending on us this weekend.* **2** to go towards sb/sth as if you are going to attack them/it: *The mosquitoes descended on us as soon as night fell.* ◇ (*humorous*) *A large woman in a hat was descending on them.*

G v + prep

desˈcend to sth to do or say sth that makes people lose their respect for you: *If you insult him back, you descend to his level.*

SYN **stoop to sth, stoop to doing sth**

G v + prep

despair /dɪˈspeə(r); AmE dɪˈsper/

deˈspair of sb/sth; deˈspair of doing sth (*formal* or *humorous*) to feel that there is no hope that sb/sth will improve, get better, etc. or that sth will happen: *I despair of you, Ian — act your age!* ◇ *I'd begun to despair of ever seeing him again.*

G v + prep

detract /dɪˈtrækt/

deˈtract from sth (*not usually used in the progressive tenses*) to make sth seem less good than it really is: *These revelations should not detract from his achievements.* ◇ *Her tattered clothes in no way detracted from her beauty.*

SYN **diminish sth**

G v + prep

devolve /dɪˈvɒlv; AmE -ˈvɑːlv/

deˈvolve on/to/upon sb/sth (*formal*) (of work, duties, power or responsibility) to be given to a person or an organization by sb at a higher level of authority: *All the responsibility has devolved upon him.* ◇ *Additional powers will devolve to the regional governments.*

G v + prep

deˈvolve sth to sb/sth to give work, duties, power or responsibility to sb with less authority than you: *More powers are gradually being devolved to the regions.*

G v + n/pron + prep

devote /dɪˈvəʊt; AmE dɪˈvoʊt/

deˈvote sth to sb/sth; deˈvote sth to doing sth to give an amount of time, energy or attention to sb/sth: *He devoted his life to the struggle for justice.* ◇ *She gave up work to devote more time to her children.* ◇ *The museum is hosting an exhibition devoted to her work.* ◇ *Several courses are devoted to improving customer care.*

OBJ **time, attention, energy, life, chapter**

G v + n/pron + prep

deˈvote yourself to sb/sth; deˈvote yourself to doing sth to spend a large part of your time, energy and attention on a particular activity, especially sth good: *After her marriage, she*

couldn't devote herself totally to her music. ◇ *They had devoted themselves entirely to building up their business.*
◈ v + pron + prep

dial /ˈdaɪəl/ (**-ll-**, *AmE* **-l-**)

ˌdial ˈin; **ˌdial ˈinto sth** (*also* **ˌdial ˈup sth**) (*computing*) to make a connection between one computer and another using a telephone line: *I dial in from my PC at home to get the files I need.* ◇ *Every time I try to dial into the Internet I can't get a connection.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌdial ˈout to make a call to sb outside the building you are in: *You can't dial out from that phone – it's for internal calls only.*
◈ v + adv

ˌdial ˈup sth; **ˌdial it/them ˈup 1** (*AmE*) to call sb/sth on the telephone: *Would you dial up the doctor's office for me?* SYN **call sb/sth up**; **call sb/sth** (*AmE*) **2** = DIAL INTO STH *Customers can dial up the central computer from home and access the database.*
NOTE A noun must always follow **up**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **up**.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv

dictate /dɪkˈteɪt; *AmE* ˈdɪkteɪt/

dicˈtate to sb to give orders to sb, especially in a rude or aggressive way: *You can't dictate to people how they should live.* ◇ *I'm not going to be dictated to by my little brother!*
NOTE **Dictate to sb** can be used in the passive.
◈ v + prep

diddle /ˈdɪdl/

ˌdiddle aˈround (*AmE*, *informal*) to spend your time doing things that are not important: *Stop diddling around and do some work!*
SYN **fiddle about/around** (*BrE*), **mess around**
◈ v + adv

die /daɪ/ (**dies**, **dying**, **died**, **died**)

ˌdie aˈway 1 (of a sound) to become so faint or weak that you can no longer hear it: *The sound of the car engine died away.* ◇ *Her laughter died away when she saw how angry he was.* SYN **fade away 2** (*also* **ˌdie ˈout**) (of rain, wind or a storm) to gradually become weaker and stop: *The rain will largely die away overnight.* **3** (of a feeling or an emotion) to gradually become weaker and disappear: *The excitement over their affair soon died away.* SYN **fade away**
◈ v + adv

ˌdie ˈback (*also* **ˌdie ˈdown**) if a plant **dies back**, its leaves die, although the roots are still alive: *The leaves die back in winter.*
◈ v + adv

ˌdie ˈdown 1 (of a sound or flames) to gradually become less loud or strong: *He waited for the applause to die down.* ◇ *The fire had died down by the morning.* **2** (of wind, rain or a storm) to gradually become less strong or violent: *As it got dark, the wind died down.* SYN **subside 3** if something such as excitement or confusion **dies down**, it gradually becomes less: *When all the fuss had died down, he just quietly went back home.* SYN **subside 4** = DIE BACK
◈ v + adv

ˌdie ˈoff if a group of people or animals **die off**, they die one by one over a short period of time until there are none left: *The survivors are dying off daily.*
◈ v + adv

ˌdie ˈout 1 if a family, race or species **dies out**, there are no longer any members left alive: *There are several theories about why dinosaurs died out so suddenly.* ◇ *Many plants and animals are in danger of dying out.* SYN **become extinct 2** (of a custom, tradition or skill) to no longer be used or practised: *Many New Year and May Day ceremonies have virtually died out now.* **3** = DIE AWAY 2 *The outbreaks of rain will die out later in the day.*
◈ v + adv

dig /dɪɡ/ (**digging**, **dug**, **dug** /dʌɡ/)

ˌdig ˈin 1 (*informal*) to begin to eat: *Dig in while it's hot!* ◇ *As soon as the food arrived he dug in hungrily.* SYN **tuck in** (*especially BrE*) NOTE **Dig in** is used especially to tell sb to start eating. **2** if soldiers **dig in**, they make a safe place in the ground and prepare for the enemy to attack: *The troops dug in and organized their defences.* **3** to wait for or deal with a difficult situation with great patience: *Hospital workers dug in, prepared for a long battle with management over pay increases.*
◈ v + adv

ˌdig ˈin; **ˌdig ˈinto sth** (*AmE*, *informal*) to begin to do sth in a way that shows that you are determined to continue or finish it, even if it is difficult: *He looked at the stack of work and dug in straight away.* ◇ *She dug into the reports and finished them before the meeting.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌdig sth ˈin; **ˌdig sth ˈinto sth 1** to push sth into sth: *The bird dug its claws in and held onto its prey.* ◇ *She dug her nails into my arm.* **2** to mix a substance into soil by digging: *I've dug the fertilizer into the soil.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep
IDM **dig your ˈheels/ˈtoes in** to refuse to do sth or to change your ideas or plans: *He dug his heels in and insisted she went with him.*

ˌdig yourself ˈin; **be dug in** to make a safe place for yourself in the ground and prepare for the enemy to attack: *They advanced a short distance and dug themselves in.*
NOTE **Dig yourself in** is used especially in the passive. *The marines were dug in on the front line.*
◈ v + pron + adv ◆ be + v + adv

ˌdig ˈinto sth 1 (*informal*) to begin to eat in an enthusiastic way: *They dug into the pizza hungrily.* SYN **tuck into sth** (*especially BrE*) **2** to examine sth carefully to find out information: *It isn't a good idea to dig too deep into his past.* **3** (*AmE*, *informal*) = DIG IN, DIG INTO STH
◈ v + prep
IDM **ˌdig (deep) into your ˈpocket(s), ˈsavings, etc.** to spend some of the money you have or have been saving: *I'll have to dig into my savings to buy a new car.* **ˈdig your ˈhands into your ˈpockets** to put your hands deep inside your pockets

ˌdig sb/sth ˈout; **ˌdig sb/sth ˈout of sth** to get sb/sth out of a place by digging the ground around them/it: *It took them three hours to dig him out of the rubble.* ◇ *The car was buried in snow and had to be dug out.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆
v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌdig sth ˈout 1 (*informal*) to find sth that has been hidden or not used for a long time: *He dug out the shoes he'd bought 20 years before.* SYN **unearth sth** (*more formal*) **2** (*informal*) to find out facts or information by searching or asking questions: *I dug out some interesting facts and figures about the place.* SYN **hunt sth down/out**; **root sb/sth out**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌdig sth ˈover to prepare the ground thoroughly for plants by digging the soil: *The flower beds should be dug over in the spring.*
OBJ **ground**, **garden**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌdig sth ˈup 1 to break the ground into small pieces, especially before building sth, taking sth from underneath it, etc: *Some Roman remains were found under a car park which was being dug up.* OBJ **road**, **garden 2** to remove sth from the ground by digging: *Archaeologists have dug up some human remains.* OBJ **weeds**, **roots** SYN **unearth sth** (*more formal*) **3** (*informal*) to discover information about sb/sth by searching or asking questions: *See what you can dig up on this man's past.* SYN **unearth sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

dine /daɪn/

ˈdine on sth to eat a particular type of food: *We dined on freshly-caught fish in a floating restaurant.* ◇ *They dined on a diet of soup and bread.*
◈ v + prep

ˌdine ˈout (*formal*) to have dinner away from your home, for example at a restaurant or in sb else's home: *We dined out every night when we stayed in Paris.*
SYN **eat out** (*less formal*)
◈ v + adv

ˌdine ˈout on sth (*BrE*, *humorous*) to tell people of something that has happened to you in order to impress them: *She only actually said one sentence to Brad Pitt but she dined out on it for years.*
◈ v + adv + prep

dip /dɪp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌdip sth ˈin/ˈinto sth; **ˌdip sth ˈin** to put sth very quickly into a liquid and take it out again: *She dipped her toes cautiously into the sea.* ◇ *She took off her shoes and cautiously dipped a toe in.* ◇ *The fruit had been dipped in chocolate.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌdip ˈinto sth 1 to read or watch only small parts of a book, magazine, programme, etc: *I've only had time to dip into the report.* ◇ *The continuous news services are intended for people to dip into.*
OBJ **book**, **report 2** to put your hand into a container to take sth out of it: *She dipped into her purse and took out a coin.*
◈ v + prep
IDM **dip into your ˈpocket, ˈsavings, etc.** to take an amount from money that you have been keeping or saving: *They have dipped into their savings to pay for the shares.*

disagree /ˌdɪsəˈɡriː/

disaˈgree with sb (*not used in the progressive tenses*) if something such as food or the weather **disagrees with** you, it has a bad effect on you or makes you feel ill: *I feel terrible – something I ate must have disagreed with me.*
SYN **upset sb**
NOTE **Not agree with sb** is used more often: *Mushrooms don't agree with me.*
→ *see also* AGREE WITH SB
◈ v + prep

disaˈgree with sth; **disaˈgree with doing sth** to disapprove of sth and think it is bad or wrong: *We totally disagree with the ban on fox hunting.* ◇ *She disagrees with keeping animals locked up in cages.*
OBJ **decision**, **statement**, **principle** OPP **agree with sth**, **agree with doing sth**
◈ v + prep

disassociate /ˌdɪsəˈsəʊʃieɪt, -ˈsəʊs-; *AmE* -ˈsoʊ-/

ˌdisasˈsociate yourself from sb/sth (*formal*) = DISSOCIATE YOURSELF FROM SB/STH

disbelieve /ˌdɪsbɪˈliːv/

disbeˈlieve in sb/sth to not believe that sb/sth exists: *to disbelieve in God/devils*
NOTE **Not believe in sb/sth** is used more frequently.
→ *see also* BELIEVE IN SB/STH
◈ v + prep

discourse /dɪsˈkɔːs; *AmE* -ˈkɔːrs/

disˈcourse (with sb) on sth (*formal*) to talk for a long time on a subject; to make a long speech about sth: *He was able to discourse at great length on the problems of education.*
◈ v + prep

dish /dɪʃ/

ˌdish sth ˈout (to sb) 1 (*informal*) to give sth out to large numbers of people or in large amounts: *He's always dishing out advice to people.* SYN **hand sth out (to sb)** (*more formal*) NOTE In informal spoken language **dish sb out sth** is also used: *He dished me out a few vitamin pills.* **2** to serve food to sb by putting it on plates: *He's busy dishing out the dinner.* SYN **serve sth (to sb)** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)
IDM **ˌdish it ˈout** (*disapproving*) to criticize sb or attack them: *He was good at dishing it out. It was time he learned what it felt like.*

ˌdish ˈup; ˌdish sth ˈup (*BrE, informal*) to serve food by putting it on plates: *You pour the wine while I dish up.* ◇ *Come and wash your hands — I'm just going to dish up the dinner.*
SYN **serve sth out; serve, serve sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌdish ˈup sth; ˌdish it/them ˈup (*informal*) to present or offer sth to sb, usually sth not very good: *She keeps on dishing up the same old jokes in her shows.*
SYN **serve sth up**
NOTE A noun must always follow **up**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **up**.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv

dispense /dɪˈspens/

diˈspense with sb/sth (*formal*) to get rid of sth; to stop using sb/sth because they/it are no longer necessary: *The programme dispensed with its most popular presenter.* ◇ *The spread of PCs has dispensed with the need for typists.*
OBJ **services, need, requirement**
NOTE **Dispense with sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *His services can now be dispensed with.*
◈ v + prep

dispose /dɪˈspəʊz; *AmE* dɪˈspoʊz/

diˈspose of sb to defeat or kill sb: *The league champions quickly disposed of the opposition.*
◈ v + prep

diˈspose of sb/sth (*formal*) to get rid of sb/sth that you do not want: *She tried to dispose of the evidence.* ◇ *They decided to dispose of much of their property.*
OBJ **waste, property, assets**
NOTE **Dispose of sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *Ensure that all the waste is properly and safely disposed of.*
◈ v + prep

diˈspose of sth (*formal*) to successfully deal with or finish with a problem, etc: *There just remains the matter of funding to dispose of.*
OBJ **problem, matter, argument** SYN **deal with sth** (*less formal*)
NOTE **Dispose of sth** can be used in the passive.
◈ v + prep

dissociate /dɪˈsəʊʃieɪt, -ˈsəʊs-; *AmE* -ˈsoʊ-/ (*also* **disassociate** /ˌdɪsəˈsəʊʃieɪt, -ˈsəʊs-; *AmE* -ˈsoʊ-/)

disˈsociate yourself from sb/sth (*formal*) to say or do sth to show that you have no connection with sb/sth and do not support or agree with them/it: *The President dissociated himself from the report.*
OPP **associate yourself with sb/sth**
◈ v + pron + prep

dissolve /dɪˈzɒlv; *AmE* -ˈzɑːlv/

disˈsolve into sth 1 to suddenly start to laugh or cry: *They dissolved into fits of laughter.* ◇ *I dissolved into giggles.* ◇ *When I mentioned his name, she dissolved into tears.* OBJ **laughter, giggles, tears 2** to change gradually into a very bad state: *His surprise slowly dissolved into fury.*
◈ v + prep

dive /daɪv/ (dived, dived, *AmE also* dove /dəʊv; *AmE* doʊv/dived)

ˌdive ˈin; ˌdive ˈinto sth 1 (*informal*) to start doing sth with enthusiasm and without stopping to think: *She dived in with a question before I had finished speaking.* ◇ *They had dived into the new business without thinking it through.* **2** (*informal*) to start eating with enthusiasm: *As soon as the food was served, she dived in.* OBJ **food, dinner** SYN **dig in; dig into sth**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˈdive into sth to move your hand quickly into sth such as a pocket or bag to try to find sth: *She dived into her handbag for the keys.*
OBJ **bag, pocket**
◈ v + prep

divest /daɪˈvest/

diˈvest sb/yourself of sth (*formal*) to take clothes off sb/yourself: *He swiftly divested himself of his clothes.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

diˈvest sb/sth of sth (*formal*) to take sth away from sb/sth: *The court order divests the company of all its assets.*
SYN **strip sb/sth of sth** (*less formal*)
◈ v + n/pron + prep

diˈvest yourself of sth (*formal*) to get rid of sth you no longer want or that is no longer useful: *She managed to divest herself of the unwanted property.*
→ *see also* DIVEST SB/YOURSELF OF STH
◈ v + pron + prep

divide /dɪˈvaɪd/

diˈvide by sth if a number **divides by** another number, the second number is contained in the first an exact number of times: *Does 612 divide by 13?* ◇ *148 doesn't divide by 12.*
◈ v + prep

diˈvide sth by sth if you **divide** a number **by** another number, you find out how many times the second number is contained in the first: *What's 48 divided by 3?* ◇ *48 ÷ 3 = 16.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

diˈvide into sth if a number **divides into** another number, it is contained in the second number a particular number of times: *Does 300 divide into 1270?*
◈ v + prep

diˈvide sth into sth if you **divide** a number **into** another number, you find out how many times the first number is contained in the second: *Can you divide 300 into 1270?*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

diˌvide sth/sb ˈoff (from sth/sb) to separate two things or two people with a barrier such as a wall or fence; to form a barrier between two things or people: *A fence divided off one side of the garden.* ◇ *They put up a barrier to divide the women's section off from the men's.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

diˌvide ˈup; diˌvide sb/sth ˈup (into sth) to separate, or to make sb/sth separate, into groups or parts: *Divide up into two teams.* ◇ *They divided the children up into groups.* ◇ *Divide up your time so that you don't spend too long on any of the questions.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv

diˌvide sth ˈup (among/between sb) to separate sth into parts and give one part to each of a number of people: *We divided the work up between us.* ◇ *The money was divided up among all three winners.*
OBJ **work, money, land**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

divorce /dɪˈvɔːs; *AmE* dɪˈvɔːrs/

diˈvorce sb/sth from sth to separate a person, an idea, a subject, etc. from sth; to keep two things separate: *They believed that art should be divorced from politics.* ◇ *When he was depressed, he felt utterly divorced from reality.*
SYN **separate sb/sth (from/and sth)**
◈ v + n/pron + prep

divvy /ˈdɪvi/ (divvies, divvying, divvied, divvied)

ˌdivvy sth ˈup (*informal, especially AmE*) to divide or share sth, especially money, between a number of people: *They divvied up the bill.*
OBJ **money** SYN **share sth out (among/between sb)** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

do /du; strong form duː/ (does /dʌz/did /dɪd/ done /dʌn/)

ˌdo aˈway with sb/yourself (*informal*) to kill sb/yourself: *She tried to do away with herself.*
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌdo aˈway with sth (*informal*) **1** to get rid of sth; to stop doing or having sth: *They've done away with the uniform at our school.* SYN **abolish sth** (*more formal*) **2** to make sth no longer necessary: *Computers have done away with a lot of the repetitive work.* SYN **eliminate sth; end sth** (*both more formal*)
NOTE **Do away with sth** can be used in the passive: *A lot of the paperwork could easily be done away with.*
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌdo sb ˈdown; ˌdo yourself ˈdown (*BrE, informal*) to criticize sb or yourself in a way that makes them/you appear more stupid or less able than they/you really are: *Don't do him down, he's a good worker.* ◇ *She's always doing herself down.*
SYN **put sb down, put yourself down** (*more formal*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˈdo for sb/sth (*BrE, informal*) to damage or destroy sth; to injure or kill sb; to put sb/sth in a situation so bad that they/it have no chance of returning to normal: *The last bout of pneumonia nearly did for her.*
◈ v + prep
▸ **ˈdone for** *adj* (*informal*) in serious trouble or danger; having no chance of succeeding at sth: *If anyone recognizes us, we're done for!* (= we will not be able to escape and will be in trouble) ◇ *After three days trapped in the cave they thought they were done for* (= they thought they would die).

ˌdo sb ˈin (*informal*) **1** if sth **does you in**, it makes you feel extremely tired: *That's done me in, lifting all those boxes.* **2** (*also* **ˌdo yourself ˈin**)

(*informal, especially BrE*) to kill sb/yourself: *When we split up I felt like doing myself in.* ◇ *Does he get done in at the end of the film?*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*rare*)
2 also v + pron + adv

▶ **done ˈin** *adj* (*informal*) very tired: *I felt absolutely **done in** by the end of the day!* ◇ *Come and sit down — you **look done in**.*

ˌdo sth ˈin (*BrE, informal*) to injure a part of your body: *He did his back in playing tennis.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)
IDM **do sb's ˈhead in** (*BrE, informal*) to make you feel confused, upset and/or annoyed: *Shut up! You're doing my head in.*

ˌdo yourself ˈin = DO SB IN 2

ˌdo sth ˈout (*BrE, informal*) to clean or paint and decorate a room, a house, etc: *He's done the whole house out in yellows and greens.* ◇ *They **had** the hall **done out** in striped wallpaper.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌdo sb ˈout of sth (*informal*) to prevent sb from getting or keeping sth they ought to have, in an unfair or dishonest way: *She tried to do me out of my inheritance.* ◇ *The residents of the home have been done out of a lot of money.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌdo sb ˈover (*BrE, informal*) to attack sb and beat them severely: *They threatened to do her over if she didn't pay.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌdo sth ˈover 1 (*BrE, informal*) to enter a house, flat/apartment, etc. by force and steal things from it: *I got back to find the house had been done over.* NOTE In this meaning **do sth over** is frequently used in the passive. **2** (*AmE*) to do sth again: *Your handwriting is too messy — you'd better do it over* (= write it out again). ◇ *I'm glad the campaign was successful, but I wouldn't want to do it over.* SYN **do sth again**; **redo sth** (*more formal*) **3** (*AmE*) to clean or paint and decorate a room, house, etc: *They've done over the whole store.*
◈ **1,3** v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
2 v + n/pron + adv

ˌdo ˈup; **ˌdo sth ˈup** (*especially BrE*) to be fastened with buttons, straps, etc.; to fasten or close sth in this way: *This skirt does up at the back.* ◇ *Could you do up my dress?* ◇ *I can't do the zip up.*
OBJ **jacket, buttons, zip** SYN **fasten up, fasten sth up** (*BrE*); **fasten, fasten sth**
OPP **undo, undo sth**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌdo sth ˈup 1 **(in sth)** to make sth into a parcel or package: *She was carrying some books done up in brown paper.* SYN **wrap sth up (in sth)** **2** (*especially BrE*) to repair or decorate a room, a house, etc. to make it look better and more modern: *They're looking for an old house so that they can do it up.* ◇ *We're **having** the kitchen **done up**.* OBJ **house** SYN **fix sth up** (*especially AmE*), **decorate sth**; **renovate sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌdo yourself ˈup (*informal*) to make yourself more attractive by putting on make-up, attractive clothes, etc: *She spent hours doing herself up for their first date.*
◈ v + pron + adv

ˈdo with sb/sth
◈ v + prep
IDM **be/have ˈdone with it** to finish dealing with sth unpleasant, especially as quickly as possible: *Just tear up the contract and be done with it.* **I, you, etc. can't/couldn't be ˈdoing with sb/sth** (*BrE, informal*) used to say that you do not like sb/sth and find them/it very annoying: *I can't be doing with people like that.* ◇ *He couldn't be doing with her untidiness.* **I, you, etc. could ˈdo with sth/sb** used to say that you need or would like sth/sb: *I could do with a drink!*

ˈdo sth with sth used with negatives and in questions to talk about where sb has put sth: *What have you done with my shoes?* ◇ *I haven't done anything with your keys* (= I haven't moved them).
◈ v + pron + prep

ˈdo sth with yourself used in questions to talk about how sb spends their time: *She doesn't know what to do with herself while they're at school.*
◈ v + pron + prep + pron

ˌdo withˈout; **ˌdo withˈout sb/sth** to manage without sb/sth: *If you can't afford a car, you'll just have to do without.* ◇ *I could do without* (= I wish I didn't have) *all this hassle.*
SYN **go without, go without sth**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

dob /dɒb; *AmE* dɑːb/ **(-bb-)**

ˌdob sb ˈin **(to sb)** (*informal*) to tell sb about sth bad that another person has done: *Kay wasn't sure who had dobbed her in to the teachers.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv

dole /dəʊl; *AmE* doʊl/

ˌdole sth ˈout **(to sb)** (*informal*) to give money, food, etc. to a group of people: *She quickly doled out the food.* ◇ *The money was doled out to them on a weekly basis.*
OBJ **money, bread, etc.**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

doll /dɒl; *AmE* dɑːl/

ˌdoll yourself ˈup **(in sth)** (*informal*) to make yourself look attractive by putting on fashionable clothes, doing your hair, etc: *Every Friday she dolls herself up and goes out to a nightclub.*
◈ v + pron + adv

be/get ˌdolled ˈup **(in sth)** (*informal*) to be/get ready for a special occasion by putting on fashionable clothes, doing your hair, etc: *She was all dolled up in a black dress and pearls.* ◇ *I got dolled up for the party.*
◈ be/get + v + adv

dope /dəʊp; *AmE* doʊp/

be/get ˌdoped ˈup (*informal, especially AmE*) to be in a state where you cannot think clearly or act normally because you are under the influence of drugs: *Some of the patients were kept doped up most of the time.*
◈ be/get + v + adv

dose /dəʊs; *AmE* doʊs/

ˌdose sb/yourself ˈup **(with sth)** to give sb/yourself a large amount of a medicine: *She dosed him up with aspirin and sent him to bed.*
NOTE **Dose sb/yourself** is used more often with the same meaning.
◈ v + n/pron + adv

doss /dɒs; *AmE* dɑːs/

ˌdoss aˈbout/aˈround (*BrE, informal*) to spend your time doing nothing or very little: *Everyone dosses about in geography classes.* ◇ *He just dossed around for a year before he got a job.*
◈ v + adv

ˌdoss ˈdown (*BrE, informal*) to sleep on the floor or somewhere uncomfortable because you have nowhere else to sleep: *We dossed down on Tony's floor after the party.*
SYN **bed down** (*BrE, more formal*)
NOTE **Doss** is sometimes used with the same meaning.
◈ v + adv

dot /dɒt; *AmE* dɑːt/ **(-tt-)**

be ˌdotted aˈbout/aˈround; **be ˌdotted aˈbout/aˈround sth** (*especially BrE*) if things or people are **dotted about/around**, they are in several different places over an area: *A few farms were dotted about in the valley.*
◈ be + v + adv ◆ be + v + prep

ˈdot A on/over B; **ˈdot B with A** to spread very small amounts of sth in different places on a surface: *Dot the suncream on your face in tiny quantities and rub it in well.* ◇ *Dot the top of the cake with small sweets.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

be ˈdotted with sth if an area is **dotted with** things or people, they are spread around in several places: *The hillside was dotted with houses.*
◈ be + v + prep

dote /dəʊt; *AmE* doʊt/

ˈdote on sb (*also* **ˈdote upon sb** *more formal*) to feel or show very great love for sb and ignore their faults: *They dote on their daughter.*
OBJ **daughter/child/mother, etc.**
NOTE **Dote on/upon sb** can be used in the passive: *He was doted on (by his sisters).*
◈ v + prep

double /ˈdʌbl/

ˈdouble as sth; **ˌdouble ˈup as sth** to have a second function in addition to the main use: *The garage doubles as his workshop.* ◇ *The school secretary doubled up as the nurse.*
◈ v + prep ◆ v + adv + prep

ˌdouble ˈback **(on yourself, itself, etc.)** to turn around and go back in the direction you have come from: *The road ahead was flooded so we had to double back to find another way around.* ◇ *The line of trees doubles back on itself at a bend in the river.*
◈ v + adv

ˌdouble ˈover; **ˌdouble sb ˈover** = DOUBLE UP/OVER, DOUBLE SB UP/OVER (IN/WITH STH)

ˌdouble sth ˈover to bend or fold sth in the middle: *Use an A4 sheet doubled over.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌdouble ˈup 1 **(with sb/on sth)** to form pairs in order to share sth: *We've only got one room left; you'll have to double up with Peter.* ◇ *There were enough guitarists to double up on parts* (= two played each part). **2** **(on sth)** (*rare*) to do sth in addition to your main role: *The band are looking for a singer who can double up on guitar* (= who can also play the guitar).
◈ v + adv

ˌdouble ˈup as sth = DOUBLE AS STH, DOUBLE UP AS STH

ˌdouble ˈup/ˈover **(in/with sth)**; **ˌdouble sb ˈup/ˈover** **(in/with sth)** to bend your body suddenly or quickly because you are in pain, for example; to make sb bend their body in this way: *He doubled up in/with pain.* ◇ *She doubled up with laughter.* ◇ *The punch hit him in the stomach, doubling him over.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*rare*)

doze /dəʊz; *AmE* doʊz/

ˌdoze ˈoff to go to sleep, especially during the day: *He dozed off during the film.* ◇ *I must have dozed off for a few minutes because I didn't hear her come in.*
SYN **nod off** (*informal*)
◈ v + adv

draft (*also* **draught** *especially BrE*) /drɑːft; *AmE* dræft/

ˌ**draft sb ˈin**; ˌ**draft sb ˈinto sth** to choose people and send them somewhere for a special task: *Extra police are being drafted in to control the crowds.* ◇ *Williams was drafted into the team to play France.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*) ◆ v + n/pron + prep

drag /dræg/ (**-gg-**)

ˌ**drag sb/sth/yourself aˈway (from sb/sth)** to make sb or yourself stop doing sth when they/you do not really want to: *She was enjoying herself at the party so much, I couldn't drag her away.* ◇ *I find it difficult to drag myself away from my computer.* ◇ *He couldn't* ***drag his eyes away*** *from her face.*
SYN **tear sb/sth/yourself away (from sb/sth)**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌ**drag sb/sth ˈdown 1 (to sth)** to bring sb down to a lower standard of behaviour, or a lower social or economic level: *I'm worried the other children will be dragged down to his level* (= because his behaviour is so bad). **2** to make sb feel depressed or weak: *Her parents' constant criticism began to drag her down.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌ**drag sb/sth ˈin**; ˌ**drag sb/sth ˈinto sth 1** to make sb or sth become involved in a difficult or unpleasant situation when they do not want to be involved: *When violence breaks out in the streets, innocent people are always dragged in.* ◇ *Don't drag me into your argument!* SYN **involve sb (in sth)** (*more formal*) **2** to start talking about a person or a subject that has nothing to do with what is being talked about: *Do you have to drag politics into every conversation?*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌ**drag sb ˈoff (to sth/...)** to take sb somewhere by force: *I was dragged off to the head teacher's office.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌ**drag ˈon** (*disapproving*) to progress very slowly and take too long: *The day dragged on interminably.* ◇ *Negotiations between the two sides dragged on through the summer.*
SUBJ **months, time, meeting, negotiations**
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌ**drag sth ˈout** to make sth last longer than it should: *She dragged the meeting out for as long as possible.*
SYN **prolong sth** (*more formal*)
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌ**drag sth ˈout of sb** to make sb give you information they do not want to give you: *They eventually dragged a confession out of her.*
OBJ **confession, truth**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌ**drag sth ˈup** to mention in a conversation an unpleasant fact from the past that sb would prefer to forget: *It all happened years ago. There's no point dragging it up now.* ◇ *She's dragged up that story just to embarrass me.*
SYN **bring sth up**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

dragoon /drəˈguːn/

draˈgoon sb into sth; **draˈgoon sb into doing sth** (*written* or *humorous*) to force sb to do sth that they do not want to do: *We were dragooned into the football team.*
NOTE **Dragoon sb into sth/into doing sth** is usually used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

drain /dreɪn/

ˌ**drain aˈway** (of feelings or colours) to disappear gradually: *As she lay in the warm bath all the tension drained away.* ◇ *The colour had drained away from her face.*
SUBJ **anger** SYN **fade**
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌ**drain aˈway/ˈoff**; ˌ**drain sth aˈway/ˈoff (from sth)** if a liquid **drains away/off**, or sb **drains it away/off**, it flows away: *The water drained away down the plughole.* ◇ *I drained the water away and hung up the blouse to dry.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Paying for private education for the children was draining away their resources.*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

draw /drɔː/ (**drew** /druː/**drawn** /drɔːn/)

ˌ**draw ˈback 1** to move away from sb/sth, especially sb/sth that makes you feel frightened: *She drew back from the window in case anyone saw her.* **2 (from sth/from doing sth)** to decide not to do sth, because you are afraid of what might happen: *The government has drawn back from making a commitment to reform the voting system.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌ**draw sth ˈdown** (*AmE, business*) to reduce the amount of sth, especially money, by using it and spending it: *Higher production costs will draw down cash gains from rising farm prices.*
OBJ **funds**
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˈ**draw sth from sth** to get sth from a particular source: *Many artists and poets have drawn their inspiration from the landscape.* ◇ *At times of crisis, we drew strength from each other.*
OBJ **inspiration, comfort, support**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

ˌ**draw ˈin** (*BrE*) (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) when evenings or nights are **drawing in**, it is gradually becoming darker earlier in the evening because winter is coming: *The nights are drawing in fast now.* ◇ *Evening was already drawing in.* ◇ *It was the end of September and the days had begun to draw in.*
SYN **close in** OPP **draw out** (*BrE*)
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌ**draw ˈin**; ˌ**draw ˈinto sth** (*especially BrE*) if a train **draws in**, or **draws into** a station, it slowly enters a station and stops at the platform: *The London train drew in late.* ◇ *I got to the platform just as the train was drawing into the station.*
SYN **pull in, pull into sth**
OPP **draw out, draw out of sth**
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌ**draw sb ˈin**; ˌ**draw sb ˈinto sth**; ˌ**draw sb ˈinto doing sth** to make sb become involved or take part in sth, although they do not want to: *I didn't like the book when I started it, but the strange story soon drew me in.* ◇ *I refuse to be drawn into this argument.*
OBJ **conversation, discussion, argument, situation** SYN **involve sb (in sth)**
NOTE This phrasal verb is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌ**draw sth ˈin** if you **draw in** a breath, you breathe deeply or quickly: *She drew in a deep breath at the magical sight of the city below.* ◇ *He drew in his breath sharply.*
OBJ only **a/your, etc. breath**
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌ**draw sth ˈoff** to remove some liquid from a larger amount: *He drew off a glass of beer.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌ**draw ˈon** (of a time or a season) to slowly pass: *As night drew on, it became clear he wasn't coming.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˈ**draw on sth 1** (*also* ˈ**draw upon sth** *more formal*) to use sth that you have or that is available to help you do sth: *The assignment asked us to draw on our experiences while we were in England.* ◇ *I'll have to draw on my savings to pay for the car.* OBJ **experience, work, resources, savings, tradition** NOTE **Draw on/upon sth** can be used in the passive in this meaning: *Sections of the book should be drawn on as required.* **2** if you **draw on** a cigarette or a pipe, etc. you breathe smoke into your mouth from it: *He drew on his cigar.* OBJ **cigar, cigarette, pipe**
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌ**draw ˈout** (*BrE*) (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) when evenings or nights are **drawing out**, it is gradually becoming lighter for longer in the evening because spring is coming: *After March the evenings started drawing out.*
OPP **draw in** (*BrE*)
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌ**draw ˈout**; ˌ**draw ˈout of sth** (*especially BrE*) if a train **draws out** or **draws out of** a station, it begins to move and slowly leaves the station: *I arrived in time to see the train drawing out.* ◇ *The train drew slowly out of the station.*
SYN **pull out, pull out of sth**
OPP **draw in, draw into sth**
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + adv + prep

ˌ**draw sb ˈout** to encourage sb who is shy to talk freely: *I tried to draw him out on the subject of his life in Africa.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌ**draw sth ˈout** to make sth such as a meeting or an event last longer than usual or longer than it should: *They drew the interview out to over an hour.* ◇ *The process is likely to be drawn out over several months.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **drawn-ˈout** (*also* ˌ**long-drawn-ˈout**, ˈ**long-drawn** *less frequent*) *adj* lasting longer than you expect or too long: *The negotiations were difficult and drawn-out.* ◇ *It was another long-drawn-out meeting.*

ˌ**draw sth ˈout**; ˌ**draw sth ˈout of sth** to take money out of a bank account: *How much money did you draw out?* ◇ *Several thousand pounds had been drawn out of the account.*
SYN **take sth out, take sth out of sth; withdraw sth (from sth)** (*more formal*)
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌ**draw ˈup**; ˌ**draw sth/sb/yourself ˈup** to come to a stop; to make sth/sb/yourself stop: *A taxi drew up outside.* ◇ *He drew the car up at the front door.* ◇ *He was walking towards the door when a loud knock* ***drew him up sharply.***
SYN **pull up; pull sb up; pull yourself up**
→ *see also* DRAW YOURSELF UP
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌ**draw sth ˈup 1** to make or write sth that needs careful planning: *My solicitor is drawing up the contract.* ◇ *Clear guidelines need to be drawn up.* ◇ *We've drawn up a plan of action.* OBJ **contract, agreement, plan** SYN **formulate sth** (*more formal*) **2** to bring sth nearer to sb/sth: *She drew up another chair and sat with them.* ◇ *He drew his knees up to his chest.* OBJ **chair, knees** SYN **pull sth up**
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌ**draw yourself ˈup** to stand up very straight so that you are as tall as possible: *She* ***drew herself up to her full height,*** *hands on hips, and glared at me.*
SYN **pull yourself up**
→ *see also* DRAW UP, DRAW SB/STH/YOURSELF UP
Ⓖ v + pron + adv

ˈ**draw upon sth** = DRAW ON STH 1

dream /driːm/ (**dreamt, dreamt** /dremt/ or **dreamed, dreamed**)

ˌdream sth aˈway to spend time in a lazy way thinking about things you would like to do but not actually doing anything: *She dreamt her life away, never really achieving anything.*
OBJ **life**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈdream of sth
◆ v + prep
IDM **wouldn't ˈdream of sth/of doing sth** used to emphasize the fact that you would not even think about doing sth: *'Don't go without me, will you?' 'I wouldn't dream of it!'*
▸ **unˈdreamed of** *adj* much more or much better than you thought was possible: *undreamed-of happiness*

ˌdream ˈon (*spoken, informal*) used to tell sb that you are certain that what they have just said will not happen: *You want a pay rise? Dream on!*
◆ v + adv

ˌdream sth ˈup (*informal*) to have an idea or think of a plan, especially one that is not very practical: *The scheme was dreamed up by a local businessman.* ◇ *Trust you to dream up a crazy idea like this!*
OBJ **idea, scheme**
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

dredge /dredʒ/

ˌdredge sth ˈup (*usually disapproving*) **1** to mention sth that sb has forgotten or wants to forget because it is unpleasant or embarrassing: *She always dredges up that embarrassing story.* OBJ **the past** **2** to remember sth or to do sth with difficulty: *She was dredging up the little she knew about babies.* ◇ *He managed to dredge up a smile.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

dress /dres/

ˌdress ˈdown (in sth) to wear clothes that are less formal than those you usually wear or those that are usually worn in a particular situation: *He deliberately dressed down for the party.* ◇ *More and more people are dressing down for the office these days.*
OPP **dress up (in sth)**
◆ v + adv

ˌdress sb ˈdown to criticize sb angrily for sth wrong that they have done: *The sergeant dressed down the new recruits.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˌdressing-ˈdown** *n* [sing.] (*old-fashioned, informal*) an occasion when sb speaks angrily to a person because they have done sth wrong

ˌdress ˈup (as sb/sth), **ˌdress sb/yourself ˈup (as sb/sth)** to put on special clothes in order to pretend to be sb else: *The kids love dressing up.* ◇ *They dressed themselves up as cartoon characters.* ◇ (*BrE*) *dressing-up clothes* ◇ (*AmE*) *dress-up clothes*
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌdress ˈup (in sth), **ˌdress yourself ˈup (in sth)** to wear special or more formal clothes than you usually do or than those usually worn in a particular situation: *Don't bother to dress up — come as you are.* ◇ *She dressed herself up in a grey suit for the court appearance.*
OPP **dress down (in sth)**
NOTE Do not confuse this phrasal verb with **get dressed** or **dress, dress sb/yourself**, which just mean 'to put on clothes': *I jumped out of bed and got dressed quickly.*
◆ v + adv • v + pron + adv

ˌdress sth ˈup (as sth) to make sth seem different or better than it really is by the way that you present it: *You're sacking me. Don't try to dress it up as a career move.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

drift /drɪft/

ˌdrift aˈpart to become less close or less friendly with sb: *Over the years we just drifted apart.*
◆ v + adv

ˌdrift ˈoff to fall asleep: *She soon drifted off.* ◇ *I drifted off to sleep on the sofa while I was watching the football.*
SYN **doze off**
◆ v + adv

drill /drɪl/

ˌdrill sth ˈinto sb to make sb learn or understand sth by repeating it frequently: *We had multiplication tables drilled into us at school.* ◇ *There's no need to drill things into them — they'll learn as they go along.*
SYN **drum sth into sb**
NOTE **Drill sth into sb** is often used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

drink /drɪŋk/ (**drank** /dræŋk/, **drunk** /drʌŋk/)

ˌdrink sth ˈdown to drink all of sth quickly: *He filled a cup with cold water and drank it down in one gulp.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌdrink ˈin sth; **ˌdrink it/them ˈin** to look at, listen to or experience sth with great pleasure and interest: *She wandered the streets, drinking in the atmosphere.* ◇ *We sat gazing at the view, drinking it all in.*
OBJ **sight, view, atmosphere, beauty**
NOTE A noun must always follow **in**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **in**. • **Drink in sth** can not be used in the passive.
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv

ˈdrink to sb/sth to wish sb/sth good luck, success or happiness, by raising your glass and then drinking: *They all drank to the couple's health.* ◇ *'Things can only get better.' 'I'll drink to that!'*
SYN **toast sb/sth**
◆ v + prep

ˌdrink ˈup; **ˌdrink sth ˈup** to finish all of a drink: *Drink up. It's time to go.* ◇ *Drink your milk up it's good for you.*
NOTE **Drink sth up** is not used in the passive.
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

drive /draɪv/ (**drove** /drəʊv; *AmE* droʊv/, **driven** /ˈdrɪvn/)

ˈdrive at sth to try to express or say sth: *I'm not sure I understand* ***what you're driving at****.* ◇ *What's he driving at?*
SYN **get at sth**
NOTE **Drive at sth** is only used in the progressive tenses and in direct or indirect questions with '*what*'.
◆ v + prep

ˌdrive aˈway/ˈoff; **ˌdrive sb/sth aˈway/ˈoff** (of a car or a driver) to go away in a vehicle; to take sb away in a vehicle: *The cab drove slowly away.* ◇ *There's someone to drive your car away and park it.* ◇ *They were driven away in a police van.*
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

ˌdrive sb/sth aˈway (from sth) to make sb not want to go to a particular place or be with a particular person; to make sb/sth leave a place: *Rising prices are driving our customers away.* ◇ *His temper and his violent behaviour have driven all his family away.*
OBJ **business, customers**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌdrive ˈoff (in golf) to hit the ball to begin a game
◆ v + adv

ˌdrive ˈoff, **ˌdrive sb/sth ˈoff** = DRIVE AWAY/OFF, DRIVE SB/STH AWAY/OFF *The van drove off at high speed.* ◇ *The car was driven off at speed.* ◇ *Then he drove her off to the airport.*

ˌdrive sb/sth ˈoff; **ˌdrive sb/sth ˈoff sth** to force sb/sth to move away from a particular place: *The army was driven off by the fierce attacks of the rebels.* ◇ *We were driven off the island by the new owner.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌdrive ˈon to continue driving either without stopping or after stopping for a short time: *We drove on until we came to an open square full of cafés.* ◇ *Paula stopped to let Philip out of the car before driving on.*
◆ v + adv

ˌdrive sb/sth ˈout; **ˌdrive sb/sth ˈout of sth** to make sb/sth leave or disappear: *They're hoping that their competitive prices will drive out the rival company.* ◇ *They tried to drive her out of the village.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv + prep

drone /drəʊn; *AmE* droʊn/

ˌdrone ˈon (about sth) to talk about sth for a long time in a boring way: *I nearly fell asleep while he was droning on!* ◇ *She droned on for hours about the uses of the present tense.*
◆ v + adv

drool /druːl/

ˈdrool over sb/sth to look at sb/sth in a way that shows you like and admire or want them/it, often in a silly or exaggerated way: *He was drooling all over you at the party!* ◇ *The boys drooled over the sports cars in the showroom.*
◆ v + prep

drop /drɒp; *AmE* drɑːp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌdrop aˈround (*AmE*) = DROP BY

ˌdrop sth aˈround (*AmE*) = DROP STH ROUND

ˌdrop aˈway (*especially BrE*) **1** if the ground **drops away**, it slopes down steeply away from where you are: *The seabed suddenly dropped away and I was waist deep in the water.* **2** to become less strong or disappear: *He felt his dark mood dropping away.*
◆ v + adv

ˌdrop ˈback if a person in a group **drops back**, they move to a position further back behind other people, often because they are not able to stay at the front: *The original leader in the race has now dropped back to third place.*
SYN **fall back**
◆ v + adv

ˌdrop beˈhind; **ˌdrop beˈhind sb/sth** if sb **drops behind** or **drops behind** sb/sth, they move to a position behind other people: *He dropped behind to walk with Sam.* ◇ *We cannot afford to drop behind our competitors.*
SYN **fall behind, fall behind sb/sth**
◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˌdrop ˈby (*also* **ˌdrop ˈround** *BrE*, **ˌdrop aˈround** *AmE*) (*informal*) to pay a short, informal visit to sb, often without arranging this in advance: *I just dropped by to check you were OK.* ◇ *I'm dropping round to Kate's later.*
SYN **call by** (*especially BrE*), **stop by**
→ *see also* DROP IN (ON SB/AT ...), DROP INTO STH; DROP OVER
◆ v + adv

ˌdrop sth ˈby (*AmE*) = DROP STH IN (TO SB/STH), DROP STH INTO STH

ˌdrop ˈin (on sb/at…), **ˌdrop ˈinto sth** (*informal*) to pay a short, informal visit to sb, often without arranging this in advance: *Drop in any time you're passing.* ◇ *She drops in on her parents at least once a week.* ◇ *I dropped into the coffee shop for a quick drink on my way home.*
SYN **call in**
→ *see also* DROP BY
G v + adv • v + prep
▶ **ˈdrop-in** *adj* [only before noun] used to describe a place where you can go without making an appointment: *a drop-in centre/surgery/clinic*

ˌdrop sb/yourself ˈin it (*BrE, informal*) to put sb in a difficult or embarrassing situation: *She got herself out of trouble by dropping Laura in it.*
G v + n/pron + prep + it

ˌdrop sth ˈin (to sb/sth), **ˌdrop sth ˈinto sth** (*especially BrE*) (*AmE usually* **ˌdrop sth ˈby**) (*informal*) to deliver sth, especially when you are on the way to somewhere else: *She dropped the report in on her way out.* ◇ *I'll drop a note in to you when I know the arrangements.* ◇ *Could you drop my coat into the cleaner's on your way to work?* ◇ *I'll drop the brochures by later.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌdrop ˈinto sth = DROP IN (ON SB/AT…), DROP INTO STH

ˌdrop sth ˈinto sth = DROP STH IN (TO SB/STH), DROP STH INTO STH

ˌdrop ˈoff 1 (*informal, especially BrE*) to fall into a light sleep: *He's always dropping off in front of the TV.* SYN **doze off; nod off** (*informal*) **2** if a number, an amount or a quality **drops off**, it decreases: *The numbers applying for membership have dropped off sharply.* SYN **fall off**
G v + adv
▶ **ˈdrop-off (in sth)** *n* a decrease: *Managers are concerned by a recent drop-off in sales.*
→ *see also* DROP-OFF at DROP SB/STH OFF

ˌdrop sb/sth ˈoff to stop and let sb get out of a car, etc.; to deliver sth to a place, often when you are on the way to somewhere else: *Could you drop me off at the station?* ◇ *I'm going past Jan's house — I could drop the cake off.* ◇ *She dropped off some clothes at the dry-cleaner's.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ **ˈdrop-off** *n* a place where vehicles can stop for people to get out, or where sth can be left; the action of doing this: *It is easier to get a taxi at passenger* ***drop-off points*** *than at flight arrival stands.*
→ *see also* DROP-OFF at DROP OFF

ˌdrop ˈout; **ˌdrop ˈout of sth 1** to stop taking part in an activity, being a member of a group, etc: *Several members of the team had to drop out at the last minute.* ◇ *She had to drop out of the race half way through.* ◇ *The company had to drop out of the deal due to rising costs.* SYN **pull out, pull out of sth; withdraw (from sth)** (*more formal*) **2** to leave school, college, university, etc. without finishing your studies: *She dropped out of college after only a few weeks.* ◇ *Many students drop out or fail because they're not enjoying the course.* **3** to reject the accepted ideas, morals and values of society: *There's a danger that when people lose their jobs they drop out (of society) altogether.*
G v + adv • v + adv + prep
▶ **ˈdropout** *n* **1** a person who leaves school, college or university before they have finished their studies: *He might be a college dropout but he's made a fortune in business.* ◇ *There is a high* ***dropout rate*** *from some college courses.* **2** (*usually disapproving, especially BrE*) a person who rejects the accepted ideas, morals and values of society: *Many of the town's dropouts hang around the square.*

ˌdrop ˈover (*especially AmE*) to visit sb for a short time at their home, without arranging a time in advance: *I think I'll just drop over to Jim's for a while.* ◇ *Why don't you drop over this evening?*
SYN **pop over/round**
→ *see also* DROP BY
G v + adv

ˌdrop ˈround (*BrE*) = DROP BY

ˌdrop sth ˈround (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˌdrop sth aˈround**) (*informal*) to deliver sth to sb's home, etc: *I'll drop those papers round later.*
→ *see also* DROP STH IN (TO SB/STH), DROP STH INTO STH
G v + n/pron + adv

drown /draʊn/

ˌdrown sb/sth ˈout if a sound **drowns out** sb/sth, it is so loud that they/it cannot be heard: *The music was playing at full volume, drowning out conversation.* ◇ *Her reply was drowned out by a passing motorbike.*
SUBJ **noise, sound, roar, music**
NOTE **Drown sb/sth** can also be used with the same meaning: *Her voice was drowned by the crashing waves.*
G v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

drum /drʌm/ **(-mm-)**

ˌdrum sth ˈinto sb to make sb remember sth by repeating it often: *He drummed road safety into them before letting them out on their bicycles.* ◇ *Traditional values were drummed into him from an early age.* ◇ *I had it drummed into me that I shouldn't talk to strangers.*
SYN **drill sth into sb**
G v + n/pron + prep

ˌdrum sb ˈout; **ˌdrum sb ˈout of sth** to force sb to leave a group or an organization, usually because they have done sth wrong: *He was drummed out of the club.*
SYN **throw sb out, throw sb out of sth**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌdrum sth ˈup to work hard to get sth: *We're launching a campaign to drum up more business.* ◇ *We couldn't drum up enough cash to keep the club going.*
OBJ **business, support, customers**
G v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

dry /draɪ/ **(dries, drying, dried, dried)**

ˌdry ˈoff; **ˌdry sb/sth ˈoff**; **ˌdry yourself ˈoff** to become dry; to make sb/sth/yourself dry: *We lay beside the pool to dry off in the sun.* ◇ *You can use this towel to dry yourself off.* ◇ *I dried the car off with a soft cloth.*
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌdry ˈout; **ˌdry sb ˈout** (*informal*) to receive treatment to help you stop drinking alcohol or taking drugs; to cure sb of drinking too much alcohol or of taking drugs: *She went into a clinic to dry out.*
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

ˌdry ˈout; **ˌdry sth ˈout** to become very or too dry; to make sth become very or too dry: *Water the plant regularly and don't let the soil dry out.* ◇ *The wind and the sun had dried out my skin.*
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌdry ˈup 1 if a supply of sth **dries up**, it is no longer available: *The plan was abandoned when the money dried up.* SUBJ **investment, supply, funds** SYN **run out 2** (*informal*) to stop talking suddenly because you cannot remember what to say next or are very nervous: *She dried up during the second act.* ◇ *I just dried up halfway through the interview.* **3** (*informal*) used to tell sb rudely to be quiet or stop talking
G v + adv

ˌdry ˈup; **ˌdry sth ˈup 1** if a river or a lake, etc. **dries up**, or sth **dries it up**, it becomes completely dry: *The well dried up for the first time in a century.* ◇ *The sun dried up all the puddles.* **2** (*BrE, informal*) to dry dishes after they have been washed: *I'll dry up if you wash the dishes.* ◇ *He dried all the dishes up and put them away.* NOTE **Dry** and **dry sth** are also used with this meaning.
G v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)
▶ **ˌdried ˈup** *adj* **1** completely dry: *They camped in a dried-up river bed.* **2** [only before noun] (*disapproving*) (of a person) old, with many folds and lines on the skin, small and usually bitter or bad-tempered: *The librarian was a dried-up, bitter old man.*
▶ **ˌdrying ˈup** *n* [U] (*BrE, informal*) the act of drying dishes after they have been washed: *to do the drying up*

duck /dʌk/

ˌduck ˈout; **ˌduck ˈout of sth**; **ˌduck ˈout of doing sth** (*informal*) to avoid a responsibility or duty, especially an unpleasant one: *She ducked out of visiting him in hospital.* ◇ *You have to go, so don't try ducking out.*
NOTE **Duck** can be used with an object with the same meaning: *Don't try to duck the issue.*
G v + adv • v + adv + prep

dude /duːd/

ˌdude yourself ˈup (*AmE, slang*) to make yourself more attractive and try to impress people by wearing expensive or special clothes: *He really duded himself up for the party.*
G v + pron + adv

duff /dʌf/

ˌduff sb ˈup (*BrE, informal*) to hit or kick sb severely: *A couple of guys duffed him up.*
SYN **beat sb up**
G v + n/pron + adv

duke /djuːk; *AmE* duːk/

ˌduke it ˈout (with sb) (*AmE, slang*) to fight with sb using your hands tightly closed: *You can't settle every argument by duking it out.* ◇ (*figurative*) *You'll have to duke it out over the last cookie.*
G v + it + adv

dumb /dʌm/

ˌdumb ˈdown; **ˌdumb sth ˈdown** (*disapproving*) to make sth too simple and therefore less accurate and of poorer quality, by trying to make it easier for people to understand: *The programme producers claimed they had to dumb down.* ◇ *The new producer has really dumbed the show down.*
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ **ˌdumbing ˈdown** *n* [U] the act or policy of making sth too simple and therefore less accurate and of poorer quality

dummy /ˈdʌmi/ **(dummies, dummying, dummied, dummied)**

ˌdummy ˈup (*AmE*) to say nothing: *If he dummies up, just try a little persuasion.*
SYN **clam up**
G v + adv

dump /dʌmp/

ˈdump on sb (*slang*) **1** to treat sb unfairly, especially by giving them too much to do or unpleasant tasks: *The boss dumps on Jane and she dumps on the junior staff.* **2** (*AmE*) to criticize sb and

make them feel unimportant or stupid: *Quit dumping on me, I'm trying my best.*
NOTE **Dump on sb** can be used in the passive: *Why do I always get dumped on?*
Ⓖ v + prep

'dump on sb; **'dump sth on sb** (*slang, especially AmE*) to tell sb all your problems: *He dumps on me every time she throws him out.* ◇ *She keeps phoning me and dumping all her problems on me.*
Ⓖ v + prep ◆ v + n/pron + prep

dust /dʌst/

,dust sb/sth 'down (*BrE*) = DUST SB/STH OFF, DUST YOURSELF OFF

,dust sth 'down (*BrE*) = DUST STH OFF

,dust yourself 'down (*BrE*) **1** = DUST SB/STH OFF, DUST YOURSELF OFF **2** = DUST YOURSELF OFF

,dust sb/sth 'off; **,dust yourself 'off** (*BrE also* **,dust sb/sth 'down**, **,dust yourself 'down**) to remove the dust or dirt from sb/sth/yourself, for example with your hand or a brush: *She stood up and dusted herself down.*
→ *see also* DUST YOURSELF OFF
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

,dust sth 'off (*BrE also* **,dust sth 'down**) to bring sth out after it has not been used for a long time and start to use it again: *The government is dusting off its plans for offshore gas and oil exploration.* ◇ *Some of their early songs have been brought out and dusted down for re-release.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

,dust yourself 'off (*BrE also* **,dust yourself 'down**) to recover after a difficult or unpleasant experience and begin again: *After every disappointment I just dust myself down and start again.*
→ *see also* DUST SB/STH OFF, DUST YOURSELF OFF
Ⓖ v + pron + adv

dwell /dwel/ (**dwelt**, **dwelt** or **dwelled**, **dwelled**)

'dwell on sth (*also* **'dwell upon sth** *more formal*) **1** to think or talk about sth for too long, especially sth unpleasant: *It's time you stopped dwelling on the past.* OBJ **the past**, **problems** **2** (*literary*) to look at sth for a long time: *He smiled, his eyes dwelling on her face.*
Ⓖ v + prep

Ee

ease /iːz/

,ease 'back 1 (*business*) if profits, prices, etc. **ease back**, they become a little lower, especially after they have been high: *The company's profits eased back from £15.1 million to £14.7 million.* **2** **(on sth)** if somebody **eases back**, they go a little slower, do sth with a little less energy, are less strict, etc. than before: *The team played aggressively in the first half of the game, but were able to ease back in the second.* ◇ *The government should ease back on farming restrictions.*
Ⓖ v + adv

,ease 'back into sth; **,ease sb/yourself 'back into sth** to gradually become familiar again with sth you have not done for some time; to help sb become familiar again with sth they used to do: *Smith is gradually easing back into running after his injury.* ◇ *It's time to ease the kids back into the school routine.* ◇ *The* ***ease back*** *process is designed to reduce the chance of re-injury.*
→ *see also* EASE INTO STH, EASE SB/YOURSELF INTO STH
Ⓖ v + adv + prep ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

,ease 'into sth; **,ease sb/yourself 'into sth** to gradually become, or help sb become, familiar with sth new, especially a new job: *to ease into retirement* ◇ *a course for easing people into the world of computing*
→ *see also* EASE BACK INTO STH, EASE SB/YOURSELF BACK INTO STH
Ⓖ v + prep ◆ v + n/pron + prep

,ease 'off 1 to gradually become less strong or unpleasant: *Eventually the rain started to ease off.* ◇ *The pain eased off after a few hours.* **2** to go slower or make less effort: *He eased off in the last lap and still won.* SYN **slack off**
Ⓖ v + adv

,ease sb 'out; **,ease sb 'out of sth** to make sb leave their job or position, especially by making it difficult or unpleasant for them over a period of time: *He was eased out of his job as presidential adviser.*
NOTE **Ease sb out** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

,ease 'up 1 **(on sth)** to go slower or make less effort; to do sth less: *The doctor told him to ease up.* ◇ *I'd ease up on the training a bit if I were you.* **2** **(on sb)** to start being less severe with sb: *I think you should ease up on the kids a bit.*
Ⓖ v + adv

eat /iːt/ (**ate** /et, eɪt (*especially AmE*)/, **eaten** /'iːtn/)

,eat sth a'way to gradually damage or destroy sth over a period of time: *Something was eating away the foliage.* ◇ *Some of the stone had been eaten away by pollution.* ◇ *The sea is eating away the coastline.*
→ *see also* EAT AWAY AT STH
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

,eat a'way at sb to worry sb over a long period of time: *Jealousy is eating away at him.*
Ⓖ v + adv + prep

,eat a'way at sth to gradually damage or destroy sth over a period of time: *Pollution is eating away at the stone.* ◇ *Resentment ate away at their relationship.*
→ *see also* EAT STH AWAY
Ⓖ v + adv + prep

,eat 'in 1 to have a meal at home rather than at a restaurant: *Are you eating in tonight?* OPP **eat out** **2** (*also* **,eat sth 'in**) (*especially BrE*) to buy and eat food at a restaurant, rather than taking it away to eat: *Is this food to eat in or take away?* OPP **take sth away** (*especially BrE*)
Ⓖ v + adv **2** also v + n/pron + adv

'eat into sth 1 to gradually damage or destroy sth: *Woodworm had eaten into most of the furniture.* **2** to use or take away a large part of sth valuable, especially money or time: *My work began to eat into the weekends.* OBJ **profits**, **time**
Ⓖ v + prep

,eat 'out to have a meal in a restaurant, etc. rather than at home: *We ate out almost every night.*
SYN **dine out** (*formal*) OPP **eat in**
Ⓖ v + adv

,eat 'up used to tell sb to eat quickly or to eat everything they have been given: *Eat up! You'll be late for school.*
→ *see also* EAT STH UP 1
Ⓖ v + adv

,eat sb 'up if an emotion such as anger, guilt, etc. **eats sb up**, it worries them all the time and they cannot think of anything else: *The anger was eating her up inside.*
SYN **consume sb** (*formal*)
NOTE **Eat sb up** is often used in the passive: *He's eaten up by jealousy.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

,eat sth 'up 1 to eat all the food you have been given: *Eat up your broccoli. It's good for you.* → *see also* EAT UP **2** (*informal, especially BrE*) to use

large quantities of sth, for example fuel or electricity: *His extravagance is eating up our profits.* ◇ *The van really eats up petrol/gas.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

ebb /eb/

ˌebb aˈway to gradually become weaker and begin to disappear: *His confidence ebbed away.*
SUBJ **strength, enthusiasm, anger**
◈ v + adv

edge /edʒ/

ˌedge sb/sth ˈout; ˌedge sb/sth ˈout of sth to gradually move sb out of their job or position, especially by taking their place yourself; to gradually defeat sb: *Be careful he doesn't edge you out of your job altogether.* ◇ *She was edged out of the semi-final by her younger rival.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌedge ˈup if prices, etc. **edge up**, they gradually increase: *Inflation is edging up.*
◈ v + adv

edit /ˈedɪt/

ˌedit sth ˈout; ˌedit sth ˈout of sth to remove words or phrases from a book, programme, etc. before it is published or shown: *The swear words were edited out (of the song).* ◇ *He must have edited a lot of the interview out.* ◇ *Read through your work and edit out anything repetitive or irrelevant.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

eff /ef/

ˌeff ˈoff (*BrE*, ⚠) a rude way of telling sb to go away, used instead of *fuck off*
◈ v + adv

egg /eg/

ˌegg sb ˈon (to do sth) to encourage sb to do sth, especially sth foolish or wrong: *Egged on by his classmates, he climbed a bit higher.* ◇ *The other lads were egging them on to fight.*
SYN **urge sb/sth on (to sth/to do sth)**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

eke /iːk/

ˌeke sth ˈout 1 to make a small supply of sth last longer by using only a little at a time or by adding sth else to it: *She eked out the stew to make another meal.* OBJ **income, supplies 2 ˌeke ˈout sth, ˌeke it/them ˈout** (*literary*) to manage to live with very little money: *She **eked out a living** by selling what she could grow.* OBJ **living, existence** NOTE A noun must always follow **out**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **out**.
◈ **1** v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)
2 v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv

elaborate /ɪˈlæbəreɪt/

eˈlaborate on/upon sth to explain or describe sth in a more detailed way: *He said he was resigning but did not elaborate on his reasons.*
SYN **enlarge on/upon sth**
◈ v + prep

elbow /ˈelbəʊ; *AmE* -boʊ/

ˌelbow sb/sth aˈside/ˈout; ˌelbow sb/sth ˈout of sth to force sb or sth out of a position or job: *The story was on the front page, elbowing aside the peace talks.* ◇ *Wrestling elbowed judo out of the 1994 Games.* ◇ *He was elbowed out of power.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

embark /ɪmˈbɑːk; *AmE* ɪmˈbɑːrk/

emˈbark on/upon sth (*formal*) to start to do sth new, important or difficult: *The government has embarked upon a programme of reforms.* ◇ *He travelled for a year, before embarking on graduate studies.*
OBJ **programme, career, course, journey**
◈ v + prep

empty /ˈempti/ (**empties, emptying, emptied, emptied**)

ˌempty ˈout; ˌempty ˈout of sth if a place **empties out**, or people **empty out of** a place, it becomes empty of people: *At 11.30 the restaurant emptied out* (= people left it). ◇ *People were emptying out of bars and clubs.*
NOTE **Empty** and **empty sth** are also used with this meaning.
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + prep

ˌempty sth ˈout; ˌempty sth ˈout of sth to remove all the things from inside a container: *He emptied the bag out onto the table.* ◇ *Don't empty the bath water out!* ◇ *I was asked to empty everything out of my pockets.*
NOTE **Empty sth** is used more frequently with this meaning than **empty sth out**.
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

encroach /ɪnˈkrəʊtʃ; *AmE* ɪnˈkroʊtʃ/

enˈcroach on sth (*also* **enˈcroach upon sth** *more formal*) **1** to use up too much of sb's time, personal life, etc.; to begin to affect sb: *She tried to prevent her work from encroaching too far on her private life.* SYN **cut into sth** (*less formal*) **2** to gradually spread over more and more of an area: *New housing is starting to encroach upon the surrounding fields.* OBJ **territory, land**
◈ v + prep

end /end/

ˈend in sth to have sth as an ending or as a result: *Many adverbs in English end in -ly.* ◇ *His first attempt to run a marathon ended in disaster.* ◇ *The partnership between the two companies could all **end in tears*** (= have an unhappy or unpleasant result).
OBJ **failure, disaster, divorce, a draw**
◈ v + prep

ˌend ˈup; ˌend ˈup doing sth to reach or come to a particular place or situation that you did not expect or intend to be in: *He ended up in prison.* ◇ *I don't want to end up worse off than when I started.* ◇ *I expect I'll end up paying, as usual.* ◇ *If you drive like that, you could **end up dead!***
SYN **finish up, finish up doing sth; wind up, wind up doing sth** (*informal*)
NOTE In this meaning, **end up** is nearly always used with either an adjective, a phrase beginning with a preposition, or *doing sth*. ◆ Note that this phrasal verb does not mean the same as **end**: *Classes end at 4 p.m.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + -ing

endear /ɪnˈdɪə(r); *AmE* -ˈdɪr/

enˈdear sb/yourself to sb (*formal*) to make sb/yourself loved or liked by sb: *He managed to endear himself to my entire family.* ◇ *The government's record on employment did not endear them to the voters.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

endow /ɪnˈdaʊ/

enˈdow sb/sth with sth (*formal*) **1** to give sb sth, such as a particular quality, responsibility, etc: *They endowed their children with remarkable names.* ◇ *The job endows its holder with great prestige.* **2** to imagine or believe that sb/sth has a particular quality: *They endowed certain plants with almost magical healing qualities.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

be enˈdowed with sth to naturally have a particular skill, quality, feature, etc: *He is endowed with both intelligence and good looks.* ◇ *machines endowed with amazing powers* ◇ *The islands are well endowed with ponds, lakes and streams.*
◈ be + v + prep

engage /ɪnˈgeɪdʒ/

enˈgage in sth; enˈgage in doing sth; enˈgage sb in sth; enˈgage sb in doing sth (*formal*) to take part in sth; to make sb take part in sth; to be busy doing sth: *Lecturers engage in teaching and research.* ◇ *She tried to engage him in conversation.* ◇ *He was engaged in running a small business.*
OBJ **activities, research, business, discussion**
◈ v + prep ◆ v + n/pron + prep

be enˈgaged on/upon sth (*formal*) to do sth; to be involved in doing sth: *He is engaged on a biography of his father.*
◈ be + v + prep

enlarge /ɪnˈlɑːdʒ; *AmE* -ˈlɑːrdʒ/

enˈlarge on/upon sth (*formal*) to say or write more about sth you have mentioned: *I'll enlarge on this point later.*
SYN **elaborate on/upon sth**
◈ v + prep

enquire (*also* **inquire** *especially AmE*) /ɪnˈkwaɪə(r)/

enˈquire after sb (*formal*) to ask about sb's health or about what they are doing: *My mother enquired after you and the baby.*
SYN **ask after sb** (*less formal*)
◈ v + prep

enˈquire into sth (*formal, especially BrE*) to try to find out the facts about sth: *The committee are enquiring into the employment of children.*
SYN **investigate sth**
NOTE **Enquire into sth** can be used in the passive.
◈ v + prep

enˈquire sth of sb (*formal*) to ask sb sth: *'Are you able to come with us?' she enquired of Will.*
◈ v + speech + prep

enter /ˈentə(r)/

ˈenter into sth (*formal*) **1 (with sb)** to begin to discuss or deal with sth: *The government agreed to enter into negotiations.* ◇ *The examiners cannot enter into any correspondence over the results.*
OBJ **negotiations, correspondence, contract**
NOTE **Enter into sth** can be used in the passive in this meaning. **2 (with sb)** to begin or become involved in a formal agreement: *The government has entered into an agreement with the World Bank.* ◇ *It is vital that the contract be freely entered into.* OBJ **agreement** NOTE **Enter into sth** can be used in the passive in this meaning. **3** to affect a situation or be an important part of it: *Luck didn't **enter into it**; I won because of my skill.* OBJ **it**
◈ v + prep

ˈenter on/upon sth (*formal*) to make a start on sth; to begin sth: *The economy entered on a period of sustained growth.* ◇ *In 1991, he entered upon a turbulent political career.*
NOTE **Enter on/upon sth** can be used in the passive.
◈ v + prep

entitle /ɪnˈtaɪtl/

enˈtitle sb to sth to give sb a right to have or do sth: *This ticket entitles you to a free meal.* ◇ *All children are entitled to education.* ◇ *I think I'm entitled to an explanation.*
NOTE **Entitle sb to sth** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

entrust /ɪnˈtrʌst/

enˈtrust A to B; enˈtrust B with A to make sb responsible for doing sth or for taking care of sb: *I couldn't entrust my children to strangers.* ◇ *Can you entrust an assistant with the task?*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

equate /iˈkweɪt/

eˈquate to sth to be equal to sth: *Do my qualifications equate to any in your country?* ◇ *Production costs for the movie equated to around 30% of income.*
◈ v + prep

eˈquate sth with sth to consider that sth is the same as sth else, or equal in value or importance: *He equates success with material wealth.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

etch /etʃ/

be ˈetched into/on sth; be ˈetched with sth if a feeling is **etched into/on** sb's face or sb's face is **etched with** a particular feeling, that feeling can be seen very clearly: *Tiredness and despair were etched into his face.* ◇ *Anthea's face was etched with horror.*
◈ be + v + prep
IDM **be etched on your ˈheart/ˈmemory/ˈmind** if sth is **etched on your memory**, you remember it because it has made a very strong impression on you

even /ˈiːvn/

ˌeven ˈout if sth **evens out**, it becomes level or steady after a period when it has gone up and down or changed a lot: *The path evens out further on.* ◇ *House prices will eventually even out.*
◈ v + adv

ˌeven sth ˈout to spread sth equally over a number of people or a period of time: *She tried to even out the work among the staff.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌeven sth ˈup to make a situation, a competition, etc. more equal: *If I give you another £5, that will even things up a bit.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

expand /ɪkˈspænd/

exˈpand on sth (*also* **exˈpand upon sth** *more formal*) to give more information or details about sth you have said or written: *Could you expand on your earlier statement?*
OBJ **point, statement**
NOTE **Expand on/upon sth** can be used in the passive.
◈ v + prep

explain /ɪkˈspleɪn/

exˌplain sth aˈway to give reasons why you should not be blamed for sth or why sth is not as important or as bad as people think: *How will you explain away the loss of two cars?*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

eye /aɪ/ (**eyeing** or **eying**, **eyed**, **eyed**)

ˌeye sb ˈup (*informal, especially BrE*) to look at sb in a way that shows that you are interested in them, especially in a sexual way: *She's eyeing me up as a potential customer.* ◇ *He was eyeing up all the women at the party.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌeye sth ˈup (*informal, especially BrE*) to look closely at sth, because you want it or are interested in it: *Are you eyeing up that strawberry tart?*
NOTE Have your eye on sth has a similar meaning.
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

Ff

face /feɪs/

ˌface sb ˈdown (*especially AmE*) to oppose or defeat sb by dealing with them directly and confidently: *The President is determined to face down his critics.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌface ˈoff (*AmE*) **1** (*sport*) to start a game such as ice hockey: *The teams face off at 2.30.* **2** to get ready to argue, fight or compete with sb: *The candidates face off in a Democratic primary today.*
◈ v + adv
▶ **ˈface-off** *n* (*AmE*) **1** a method of beginning a game such as ice hockey **2** an argument or a fight

ˌface ˈonto sth if a room or a building **faces onto** sth, the windows look in that direction: *The front bedroom faces onto a main road.*
◈ v + prep

ˌface ˈup to sth to accept and deal with a difficult or unpleasant situation: *When is she going to face up to her responsibilities?* ◇ *He must **face up to the fact that** he is no longer young.*
OBJ **fact, reality, problem, responsibilities**
SYN **square up (to sb/sth)**
NOTE **Face up to sth** can be used in the passive: *This problem has got to be faced up to.*
◈ v + adv + prep

factor /ˈfæktə(r)/

ˌfactor sth ˈin; ˌfactor sth ˈinto sth (*especially AmE*) to include a particular fact or situation when you are calculating sth, or thinking about or planning sth: *When you estimated the cost of the repairs, you forgot to factor in the labour.* ◇
OPP **factor sth out, factor sth out of sth**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌfactor sth ˈout; ˌfactor sth ˈout of sth (*especially AmE*) to not include a particular fact or situation when you are calculating sth, or thinking about or planning sth: *When inflation is factored out, the trade deficit fell 12.8%.*
OPP **factor sth in, factor sth into sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv + prep

fade /feɪd/

ˌfade aˈway **1** to gradually become less strong, clear or frequent and disappear: *His footsteps gradually faded away.* ◇ *Her enthusiasm will soon fade away.* **SYN** **die away** **NOTE** **Fade** can also be used with this meaning, especially in more formal English. **2** (of a person) to become weaker and die: *She's fading away rapidly.*
◈ v + adv

ˌfade ˈin; ˌfade sth ˈin if a sound or a picture in a film/movie, etc. **fades in**, or sb **fades it in**, it gradually becomes louder or clearer
OPP **fade out, fade sth out**
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ **ˈfade-in** *n* [U] [C] an act of gradually making a picture appear at the beginning of a scene in a film/movie

ˌfade ˈout; ˌfade ˈout of sth to become quieter, weaker, etc. and gradually disappear: *The protest eventually faded out.* ◇ *She looked a strong candidate, but then **faded out of the picture**.*
◈ v + adv • v + adv + prep

ˌfade ˈout; ˌfade sth ˈout if a sound or a picture in a film/movie, etc. **fades out** or sb **fades it out**, it gradually becomes quieter or less clear: *Near the end of the song he faded out the music.*
OPP **fade in, fade sth in**
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ **ˈfade-out** *n* [U] [C] an act of gradually making a picture disappear at the end of a scene in a film/movie

faff /fæf/

ˌfaff aˈbout/aˈround (*BrE, spoken, informal*) to waste time doing unimportant things and not get very much done: *Stop faffing about.*
◈ v + adv

fake /feɪk/

ˌfake sb ˈout (*AmE, informal*) to deceive or trick sb; to make sb think you are going to do one thing and then do another: *He thought I was going to turn left, but I faked him out.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

fall /fɔːl/ (**fell** /fel/**fallen** /ˈfɔːlən/)

	~ about		~ in with
94	~ apart		~ into
	~ away	95	~ off
	~ back		~ on
	~ back on		~ out
	~ behind		~ over
	~ behind with/in		~ through
	~ down		~ to
	~ down on		~ under
	~ for		~ upon
	~ in		

ˌfall aˈbout (*BrE, informal*) to laugh a lot: *We all fell about at her idea.* ◇ *He's rude to the audience and yet they **fall about laughing**.*
◈ v + adv

ˌfall aˈpart 1 to be old or in bad condition and break or break into pieces: *If you buy cheap shoes, they'll fall apart after a few months.* ◇ *My dictionary is falling apart now, I've used it so much.* SYN **come apart 2** to have so many problems that it is no longer possible to exist or operate: *The whole country's falling apart.* ◇ *After my marriage fell apart I moved away.* **3** (*informal*) to have so many problems or worries that you can no longer think or behave normally: *I fell apart when she left.*

Ⓖ v + adv

IDM **be falling apart at the ˈseams** to have a lot of problems and be starting to fail

ˌfall aˈway 1 **(from sth)** to break off or separate from a surface: *The plaster was falling away in big chunks.* **2** (of land, a road, etc.) to slope down: *The ground falls away abruptly to the right.* **3** to gradually disappear: *Gradually, all his cares and worries fell away.* ◇ *When things got difficult, his supporters all fell away.* **4** (*especially BrE*) to get less or smaller: *The number of applicants has fallen away sharply.* → *see also* FALL OFF

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌfall ˈback 1 to fail to stay with people at the front in a race: *Betts had been leading, but fell back with 10 laps to go.* SYN **drop back** → *see also* FALL BEHIND, FALL BEHIND SB/STH **2** to move or turn back away from sth or sb: *When the troops moved forward, the crowd fell back.* SYN **retreat** (*more formal*) **3** (*BrE, finance*) to decrease in value or amount: *Prices rose by more than 10% before falling back slightly.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌfall ˈback on sb/sth (*also* **ˌfall ˈback upon sb/sth** *more formal*) to use sb/sth when the situation is difficult or other people/things have failed: *It's very hard if you have no family to fall back on.* ◇ *He could always fall back on his old jokes.*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

▶ **ˈfallback** *n* a plan or course of action that you can use if sth else fails: *a fallback position*

ˌfall beˈhind; **ˌfall beˈhind sb/sth** to fail to stay with other people or things, especially in a race or competition: *I fell further and further behind.* ◇ *The industry is falling behind the rest of Europe.* ◇ *He fell behind the rest of the class.*

SYN **drop behind, drop behind sb/sth**

→ *see also* FALL BACK 1

Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌfall beˈhind with/in sth to not do sth or pay sth at the right time: *She fell behind with the rent.* ◇ *He began falling behind in his schoolwork.*

OBJ **payments, school work**

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌfall ˈdown 1 to suddenly stop standing: *I thought the whole house was falling down.* ◇ *Her legs were so weak that she fell down on her knees.* **2** to drop to the ground: *His trousers were falling down.* ◇ *A lump of the ceiling fell down.* **3** (*only used in the progressive tenses*) (of a building) to be in extremely bad condition: *It's a beautiful house but it's falling down.* **4** (of an idea, an argument, a method, etc.) to be shown to be not true or not good enough: *That's where the theory falls down.*

Ⓖ v + adv

▶ **ˈdownfall** *n* the loss of sb's power, position, money, etc.; the thing that causes this

ˌfall ˈdown on sth (*BrE, informal*) to fail to do sth correctly or successfully: *The suggestion was that he was **falling down on the job**.*

OBJ **job**

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˈfall for sb/sth (*informal*) to be attracted to sb/sth; to fall in love with sb/sth: *He fell for a young student.* ◇ *We fell for the farmhouse as soon as we saw it.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˈfall for sth (*informal*) to be tricked into believing sth is true when it is not: *You didn't fall for that old trick, did you?*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌfall ˈin 1 if a roof or a ceiling **falls in**, it drops to the ground: *The roof of the cave fell in.* **2** (of soldiers) to move into a line OPP **fall out**

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌfall ˈin with sb (*informal*) to join sb; to become involved with sb: *She fell in with a bad crowd.*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌfall ˈin with sth (*BrE*) to agree to or support a plan or an idea, especially when you do not really want to: *He always expects me to fall in with his plans.*

OBJ **plans** SYN **go along with sb/sth**

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌfall ˈinto sth 1 to begin to be in a particular state: *He fell into a deep sleep.* ◇ *The tramway fell into disuse in the 1920s.* ◇ *We mustn't fall into this error* (= make this mistake). ◇ *He's fallen into arrears with the rent* (= he is late in paying it). OBJ **disuse, disrepair 2** to begin to do sth or become involved in sth: *I fell into the habit of having a nap after dinner.* ◇ *She fell into conversation with her neighbour.* OBJ **the habit of…, conversation 3** to be able to be divided into sth: *Computer viruses fall into three broad categories.* OBJ **two groups, three categories, etc. 4** to belong to a particular group or class: *Only 25% of people fall into this group.* OBJ **category, group, class, etc.**

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌfall ˈoff to decrease in quantity or quality: *Attendance has fallen off recently.* ◇ *The standard of cooking fell off when the old chef left.*

SYN **drop off**

→ *see also* FALL AWAY 4

Ⓖ v + adv

▶ **ˈfall-off** (*BrE also* **ˈfalling-off** *less frequent*) **(in/of sth)** *n* [sing.] a decrease in the quality of sth: *a fall-off in attendance/interest/sales*

ˌfall ˈoff; **ˌfall ˈoff sth** if something **falls off** or **falls off** sth, it becomes separated from the thing it is joined to: *The door handle has fallen off.* ◇ *Put the picture up properly — we don't want it to fall off the wall.*

Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˈfall on sb/sth (*also* **ˈfall upon sb/sth** *more formal*) (*especially BrE*) **1** to be the responsibility or duty of a particular person or organization: *Most of the cost fell on us.* ◇ *When he died, the responsibility of the business fell on his son.* **2** if your eyes **fall on** sb/sth, you suddenly see or notice them/it: *My eye fell on a letter she had left on the table.* **3** to attack sb/sth with energy or enthusiasm: *The children fell on the food with cries of delight.* ◇ (*figurative*) *He fell on the drawings and examined them closely.* OBJ **food**

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌfall ˈout 1 (of hair, teeth etc.) to become loose and drop out: *The chemotherapy made her hair fall out.* **2** **(with sb)** **(over/about sth)** (*especially BrE*) to have an argument with sb and stop being friendly with them: *It's not worth falling out about this.* ◇ *Why have you fallen out with him?* ◇ *They fell out over their father's will.* **3** (of soldiers) to move out of lines OPP **fall in**

Ⓖ v + adv

▶ **ˌfalling-ˈout** *n* [sing.] (*especially BrE*) a quarrel: *We've had a bit of a falling-out.*

▶ **ˈfallout** *n* [U] **1** dangerous (**radioactive**) dust that is in the air after a nuclear explosion or accident **2** the bad results of a situation: *the current crisis and its political fallout*

ˌfall ˈover to be unable to stay standing and fall to the ground: (*especially BrE*) *He lost his balance and fell over.* ◇ *His bike fell over.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌfall ˈover sb/sth to hit sb/sth with your foot when you are walking or running and fall or almost fall: *Mind you don't fall over the boxes.*

SYN **trip over sb/sth**

Ⓖ v + prep

IDM **ˌfall ˈover yourself to do sth** (*informal*) to be very eager to do sth: *Recording companies were falling over themselves to sign the band.*

ˌfall ˈthrough to fail to be completed; to not happen: *Our travel plans have fallen through.* ◇ *The deal fell through.*

SUBJ **deal**

Ⓖ v + adv

ˈfall to sb (to do sth) to become the duty or responsibility of a particular person: *The task of telling them the news fell to me.* ◇ ***It falls to the** police to ensure that demonstrations are well organized.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˈfall to sth; **ˈfall to doing sth** (*literary*) to start doing sth: *Little Red Riding Hood and the wolf fell to talking.* ◇ *They fell to it with gusto.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˈfall under sth 1 to belong to or be included in a particular group of things: *What heading do these items fall under?* OBJ **heading 2** to begin to be controlled or influenced by sb/sth: *I realized I was **falling under her spell**.* ◇ *The education system fell under the control of the church.* OBJ **spell**

Ⓖ v + prep

ˈfall upon sb/sth = FALL ON SB/STH

familiarize (*also* familiarise) /fəˈmɪliəraɪz/

faˈmiliarize sb/yourself with sth to teach sb about sth or to learn about sth until you know it well: *I familiarized myself with everyone's name before the meeting.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

fan /fæn/ (-nn-)

ˌfan ˈout to spread out over an area from a central point: *Searchers fanned out over the area where the missing child was last seen.* ◇ *Five main roads fan out from the village.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌfan sth ˈout if a bird **fans out** its feathers, it spreads them out: *The peacock fanned out its tail.*

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

fancy /ˈfænsi/ (fancies, fancying, fancied, fancied)

ˌfancy sth ˈup (*AmE, informal*) to make sth look more attractive by adding decoration to it: *I fancied up the dress with some pearls.* ◇ *You don't need to fancy up your web pages.*

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

farm /fɑːm; *AmE* fɑːrm/

ˌfarm sb ˈout (to sb) (*informal, disapproving*) to arrange for sb you are responsible for, especially a child, to be cared for by other people: *When he was little, he was often farmed out to family friends.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌfarm sth ˈout (to sb) (*informal*) to send or give work to other people to do: *We farm a lot of the work out to other companies.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

fart /fɑːt; *AmE* fɑːrt/

ˌfart aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌfart aˈbout**) (⚠, *slang*) to waste time, especially by behaving in a silly way: *Stop farting around and behave yourself!*
NOTE A more polite, informal way to express this is **mess around** or, in British English, **mess about**.
Ⓖ v + adv

fasten /ˈfɑːsn; *AmE* ˈfæsn/

ˈfasten on sb/sth; **ˈfasten sth on sb/sth** if your eyes **fasten on** sb/sth, or you **fasten** your eyes **on** sb/sth, you look at them for a long time: *All eyes in the room fastened on me.* ◇ *She fastened her gaze on him.*
Ⓖ v + prep ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˈfasten on/onto sth (*also* **ˈfasten upon sth** *more formal*) **1** to hold sth firmly: *The cheetah's jaw fastened on the gazelle's throat.* **2** to choose sth and give it all your attention or interest: *When she fastens on an idea, there's no stopping her.* OBJ **idea, word, fact**
Ⓖ v + prep

ˈfasten sth on/onto sb/sth to direct feelings such as blame, hope, etc. towards sb: *The blame hasn't been fastened on anybody yet.*
OBJ **blame, hopes**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

ˌfasten ˈup; **ˌfasten sth ˈup** (*BrE*) to close, or to make sth close, with buttons, straps, etc: *The dress fastens up at the front.* ◇ *Fasten your jacket up — it's getting cold.*
OBJ **jacket, coat** SYN **do up, do sth up** (*especially BrE*)
NOTE **Fasten** and **fasten sth** can also be used with the same meaning.
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˈfasten upon sth = FASTEN ON/ONTO STH

fathom /ˈfæðəm/

ˌfathom sb/sth ˈout (*BrE*) to understand how sb thinks and acts; to find an explanation for sth: *I can't fathom her out — she says one thing then does another.* ◇ *Have you fathomed out how to work the video yet?*
SYN **work sb out; work sth out**
NOTE **Fathom sb/sth out** is not used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

fatten /ˈfætn/

ˌfatten ˈup; **ˌfatten sb/sth ˈup** to become fatter; to give an animal or a person a lot of food so that they become fatter: *The sheep fattened up quickly.* ◇ *We're fattening the livestock up for slaughter.*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

fax /fæks/

ˌfax ˈin; **ˌfax sth ˈin** to send a fax (= a message sent using a machine that sends and receives messages or documents along telephone wires and then prints them) to an organization, a company, a television or radio programme, etc: *Viewers are invited to fax in with their comments.* ◇ *Orders can be either phoned or faxed in to us.*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌfax sth ˈon (to sb/sth) to send a fax (= a message sent using a machine that sends and receives messages or documents along telephone wires and then prints them) that you have received to sb else for them to see or deal with: *Please email or fax this on to a friend.*

ˌfax sth ˈout to send a fax (= a message sent using a machine that sends and receives messages or documents along telephone wires and then prints them) to a large number of people at the same time: *Draft proposals will be faxed out for comment at the end of May.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌfax sth ˈthrough to send sb a fax (= a message sent using a machine that sends and receives messages or documents along telephone wires and then prints them) with details of or information about sth
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

fear /fɪə(r); *AmE* fɪr/

ˈfear for sb/sth (*literary*) to be anxious or worried about sb/sth: *I fear for her safety.* ◇ *When he's away at sea, I really fear for him.*
OBJ **life, safety, future**
Ⓖ v + prep

feed /fiːd/ (**fed, fed** /fed/)

ˌfeed ˈback (into/to sth) if sth **feeds back** to/into sth, it returns to the place, situation, idea, etc. that it started from and has an effect, usually a good one, on its development: *Rising import prices tend to feed back into domestic prices.* ◇ *What the audience says feeds back into the development of the programme.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌfeed sth ˈback (to sb) to give information, advice or opinions about a product, sb's work, etc., especially so that it can be improved: *We will feed this information back to the company.* ◇ *The results of the tests will be fed back to the schools.*
OBJ **information**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **ˈfeedback** *n* [U] **1** information, advice or opinions about how good a product, sb's work, etc. is: *We got a lot of positive feedback about the programme.* **2** an unpleasant noise produced by some electrical equipment when some of the power returns to the system

ˌfeed sth ˈin; **ˌfeed A ˈinto B**; **ˈfeed B with A** to put sth into a machine: *You'll need to feed the paper in by hand.* ◇ *to feed information into a computer* ◇ *He fed coins into the meter.* ◇ *He fed the meter with coins.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˈfeed on/off sth 1 (of an animal, etc.) to use sth as food; to eat sth; to be nourished or strengthened by sth: *This bat feeds on fruit.* **2** (*often disapproving*) to become stronger because of sth else: *The media feed off each other's stories.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌfeed ˈthrough (to sb/sth/into sth) to reach sb/sth after going through a process or a system: *Rises in prices feed through to higher wage claims.* ◇ *It will take time for the higher rates to feed through to invesetors.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌfeed sb/sth ˈup (*BrE*) to give extra food to a person or an animal to make them stronger and more healthy: *You look as if you need feeding up a bit.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˈfeed B with A = FEED STH IN, FEED A INTO B, FEED B WITH A

feel /fiːl/ (**felt, felt** /felt/)

ˈfeel for sb to have sympathy for sb: *I really felt for her, bringing up her children alone.* ◇ *I do feel for you, honestly.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌfeel sb ˈup (*informal*) to touch sb in a sexual way when they do not want you to
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌfeel ˈup to sth; **ˌfeel ˈup to doing sth** to feel capable of doing sth, physically or mentally: *If you **feel up to it**, we could walk into town.* ◇ *I don't really feel up to seeing anyone.*
Ⓖ v + adv + prep

fence /fens/

ˌfence sb ˈin to restrict sb's freedom: *We've been fenced in by rules and regulations for too long.*
SYN **hem sb/sth in**
NOTE **Fence sb in** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌfence sth ˈin to surround sth with a fence: *The grounds are fenced in by barbed wire.*
NOTE **Fence sth in** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌfence sth ˈoff to separate one area from another with a fence, often to stop people or animals from entering: *We've fenced off the vegetable patch to stop the rabbits from getting in.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

fend /fend/

ˌfend for yourˈself to take care of yourself without needing any help from other people: *We were brought up to fend for ourselves when we were still quite young.*
Ⓖ v + prep + pron

ˌfend sb/sth ˈoff to defend or protect yourself from sb/sth: *The minister had to fend off some awkward questions.* ◇ *She managed to fend her attackers off for some time.* ◇ *She held up her arm to fend him off.*
OBJ **attack, question, criticism**
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ferret /ˈferɪt/

ˌferret ˈout sth; **ˌferret it/them ˈout** (*informal*) to discover sth by searching thoroughly or asking a lot of questions: *She's determined to ferret out the truth.*
OBJ **information, the truth**
NOTE A noun must always follow **out**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **out**.
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv

fess /fes/

ˌfess ˈup (to sth)/(to sb) (about sth) (*informal, especially AmE*) to admit that you have done sth wrong: *Come on, fess up. I know there's something you're not telling me.* ◇ *How many stolen cars did they fess up to?*
SYN **own up (to sth/to doing sth); confess (to sth/to doing sth)** (*more formal*)
Ⓖ v + adv

fetch /fetʃ/

ˌfetch ˈup (*informal, especially BrE*) to arrive somewhere by chance: *The boat finally fetched up on a sandy beach.* ◇ *He travelled around Europe for a while and finally fetched up in Naples.*
SYN **end up**
Ⓖ v + adv

fiddle /ˈfɪdl/

ˌfiddle aˈbout/aˈround (*BrE, informal*) to spend your time doing nothing or doing sth that is not important: *He's fiddling around in the garage.*
SYN **mess around**
Ⓖ v + adv

fight /faɪt/ (**fought, fought** /fɔːt/)

ˌfight ˈback (against sb/sth) to defend yourself with actions or words when sb attacks you or causes you problems: *The team fought back to win the game.* ◇ *Don't let them bully you. Fight back!*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌfight ˈback sth; **ˌfight it/them ˈback** to try hard not to show your feelings or not to do sth: *She tried to fight back the tears.*
OBJ **tears, urge**
NOTE A noun must always follow **back**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **back**.
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv

ˌfight ˈdown sth; **ˌfight it/them ˈdown** to try hard not to show an emotion that you are starting to feel: *He fought down a rush of panic.* ◇ *She fought down the anger that was rising in her.*
OBJ **desire, impulse, panic**
NOTE A noun must always follow **down**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **down**.
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv

ˌfight sb/sth ˈoff to resist sb/sth or make them/it go away, by fighting against them/it: *She managed to fight her attackers off.* ◇ *The company fought off tough competition.*
OBJ **attack, illness**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌfight ˈout sth; **ˌfight it ˈout** to fight or argue about sth until it is settled: *We mustn't interfere. Let them **fight it out** between themselves.* ◇ *The teams fought out a 0-0 draw.*
OBJ **battle, struggle, draw**
NOTE A noun must always follow **out**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **out**.
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv

figure /ˈfɪɡə(r); *AmE* ˈfɪɡjər/

ˈfigure on sth; **ˈfigure on sb/sth doing sth** (*informal, especially AmE*) to include sth in your plans; to plan sth: *We hadn't figured on a long delay at the airport.* ◇ *I figure on being in New York in January.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌfigure sb/sth ˈout to come to understand sb/sth by thinking carefully: *I never could figure him out.* ◇ *Can you figure out what's going on?*
SYN **work sb out; work sth out**
NOTE **Figure sb/sth out** is often followed by a question word such as *how, what, why*, etc: *I can't figure out why he quit his job.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌfigure sth ˈout to calculate the total amount of sth: *Have you figured out how much it will cost?*
SYN **work sth out**
NOTE **Figure sth out** is often followed by a question word such as *what, how much*, etc.
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

file /faɪl/

ˌfile sth aˈway to put papers, documents, etc. away in a place where you can find them easily: *Everything is filed away in drawers.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

fill /fɪl/

ˌfill ˈin (for sb) to take sb's place for a short time and do the work they normally do: *Who's filling in for you while you're away?*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌfill sb ˈin (on sth) to give sb all the details about sth that has happened: *Can you fill me in on what's been happening while I was away?*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌfill sth ˈin 1 (*also* **ˌfill sth ˈout** *especially AmE*) to complete a form, etc. by writing information on it: *You could fill in an application form now.* ◇ *Fill in the blank spaces with one of these words.* ◇ *I've left gaps on the sheet for you to fill in the details.* OBJ **form, details 2** to fill sth, such as a hole, a crack, etc. completely with a substance: *We'll have to fill the holes in with cement.* OBJ **hole, crack 3** (*especially BrE*) to spend time while you are waiting for sb/sth: *How shall we fill in the time until he arrives?*
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌfill ˈout to become larger, rounder or fatter: *The baby's filled out a lot recently.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌfill sth ˈout 1 to make sth larger or more complete: *We'll need to fill the story out to make a full page article.* **2** (*especially AmE*) = FILL STH IN 1
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌfill ˈup; **ˌfill sth ˈup 1 (with sb/sth)** if a container or a place **fills up** or sb **fills it up**, it becomes completely full: *The restaurant was beginning to fill up.* ◇ *She filled her glass up again.* ◇ *People began filling up the empty seats.* **2 (with sth)** to fill your vehicle with petrol/gas, etc: *I need to fill up with petrol before we go.* ◇ *Fill the tank up with diesel.*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **ˈfill-up** *n* (*AmE*) the action of filling sth, particularly of filling a car with petrol/gas

ˌfill sb/yourself ˈup to give sb a lot of food so that they feel full; to eat as much as you can: *The meals at school never fill me up.* ◇ *Eat lots of pasta to fill yourself up.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

filter /ˈfɪltə(r)/

ˌfilter sth ˈout to remove sth from a substance by passing it through a special substance or device: *Use a sun cream to filter out ultraviolet rays.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

find /faɪnd/ (found, found /faʊnd/)

ˈfind against sb (*law*) to decide in a court of law that sb is guilty: *The court found against the defendant.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˈfind for sb (*law*) to decide in a court of law that sb is innocent: *The jury found for the defendant.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌfind ˈout (about sth/sb, that…, how…, etc.), **ˌfind sth ˈout (about sth/sb)** to learn a fact, a piece of information, or the truth about sth/sb: *She won't be happy when she finds out about this.* ◇ *'What did she say?' 'You'll find out soon enough.'* ◇ *When did you find out (that) she was ill?* ◇ *I never found out exactly what happened.* ◇ *How did you find that out?*
NOTE **Find out** is often used with question words such as *how, what, when*, etc: *It took me a while to find out what he was really like.* ◇ *Did you ever find out who did it?* ◆ If you **find sth out**, you do so either by chance or by asking or studying. You can **discover** a piece of information that other people know but you didn't. You can also **discover sth** before anyone else does.
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌfind sb ˈout (*informal*) to discover that sb has been dishonest or has done sth wrong: *If you're ever found out, you'll go to prison.*
NOTE **Find sb out** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

finish /ˈfɪnɪʃ/

ˌfinish ˈoff (with sth), **ˌfinish sth ˈoff (with sth)** (*informal*) to have sth as the last part of sth; to make sth end by doing one last thing: *After a delicious meal we finished off with coffee and mints.* ◇ *The concert finished off with the band's latest hit.* ◇ *The band finished off the show with their latest hit.* ◇ *I have to go now, can I leave you to finish off?* ◇ *Her outfit was finished off with navy shoes.*
NOTE **Finish** and **finish sth** are also used with almost the same meaning.
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌfinish sb ˈoff (*informal*) to make sb so unhappy, tired, etc. that they cannot continue what they are doing: *Running in that heat nearly finished him off.*
NOTE **Finish sb** can also be used with almost the same meaning.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˌfinish sb/sth ˈoff (*informal*) **1** to destroy or kill sb/sth, especially sb/sth that is already injured: *He thought the soldiers would come back and finish him off.* ◇ *We ought to finish the poor animal off.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The business had been finished off by financial difficulties.* **2** (in sport) to defeat a person or team that you are competing against: *Agassi finished him off in three sets.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌfinish sth ˈoff 1 to complete sth: *I'm going to try and finish off my work tonight.* **2** to use the last part of sth, especially food or drink: *He's finished off all the ice cream!*
NOTE **Finish sth** is used with almost the same meaning.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌfinish ˈup 1 [+ adj/prep] (*also* **ˌfinish ˈup doing sth**) (*especially BrE*) to reach or come to a particular place, state or situation after a long series of events, often without planning it: *He lost control of the car and finished up in the river.* ◇ *She started out washing dishes and finished up as a chef.* ◇ *They all went home and I finished up doing most of the clearing up.* SYN **end up, end up doing sth; wind up, wind up doing sth** (*informal*) NOTE In this meaning, **finish up** is always used with either an adjective, a phrase beginning with a preposition, or *doing sth*. Note that **finish up** does not mean the same as **finish**: *Classes finish at 4 p.m.* **2** (*AmE*) to complete what you are doing; to do the last part of sth: *I'll finish up here and join you later.*
Ⓖ **1** v + adv ◆ v + adv + -ing
2 v + adv

ˌfinish sth ˈup (*especially AmE*) to do the last part of sth; to use what is left of sth: *He stayed home to finish up his assignment.*
NOTE **Finish sth up** is not used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˈfinish with sb (*informal*) **1** (*BrE*) to end a relationship with sb: *I've finished with Antonia.* SYN **break up (with sb) 2** to stop punishing sb: *He'll never do that again once I've finished with him!*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˈfinish with sth 1 to no longer need to use sth: *Can you wash your cup when you've finished with it?* ◇ *Can I keep the book a little longer? I haven't finished with it yet.* NOTE **Finish with sth** is usually used in the perfect tenses in this meaning. **2** (*BrE, informal*) to stop doing sth because you no longer want to do it or enjoy it: *He said he was finished with football.* NOTE **Finish with sth** is usually used in the perfect tenses or in the form **be finished with sth** in this meaning.
Ⓖ v + prep

fire /ˈfaɪə(r)/

ˌfire aˈway (*spoken, informal*) used to tell sb to begin asking questions or to begin to speak: *'Can I ask you some questions?' 'Fire away!'*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌfire sth ˈoff 1 to shoot a bullet from a gun: *He fired off a volley of shots.* OBJ **gun, shot 2** to ask a lot of questions, etc. quickly, one after the other: *He fired off a series of questions.* OBJ **questions 3** to write a letter, report, etc. quickly, often because you are angry: *She would fire off a letter of protest in the morning.* OBJ **letter 4** if you **fire off** an email, you send it: *I'm going to fire off an email to a newsgroup.* OBJ **email**
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌfire sb/sth ˈup to make sb/sth become excited or enthusiastic about sth: *The manager fired the team up at half-time.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌfire sth ˈup 1 (*AmE*) to light a fire; to make sth hot: *I'll get the burgers – you fire up the grill.* **2** (*especially AmE*) to make an engine start operating: *She fired up the engine.* OBJ **engine**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

firm /fɜːm; *AmE* fɜːrm/

ˌfirm sth ˈup (*also* **ˌfirm ˈup** *less frequent*) **1** if sb **firms up** an arrangement, an agreement, etc. it becomes more definite or less likely to change: *I'll phone on the 25th to firm up the details of the meeting.* ◇ *Prices will firm up later this year.* OBJ **plans, agreement 2** to make sth, especially part of the body, harder or more solid: *These exercises will firm up those difficult areas of your body.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*) • v + adv

fish /fɪʃ/

ˈfish for sth (*often used in the progressive tenses*) to try to make sb tell you sth, say sth nice to you, etc. by asking them a question: *Are you fishing for compliments?*
OBJ **information, compliment** SYN **angle for sth**
◈ v + prep

ˌfish sb/sth ˈout; ˌfish sb/sth ˈout of sth to take or pull sb/sth out of somewhere: *He fished some change out of his pocket.* ◇ *Several days later his car was fished out of the river.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv + prep

fit /fɪt/ (**fitting, fitted, fitted**, *AmE usually* **fitting, fit, fit** except in the passive)

ˌfit ˈin (with sth) if sth **fits in**, it looks pleasant or suitable with other things or in a particular place: *The building doesn't fit in with the surrounding area.* ◇ *It's an old house, but our furniture fits in well.*
◈ v + adv

ˌfit ˈin; ˌfit ˈinto sth 1 to be the right size or shape to go in a particular place: *Will all your furniture fit in?* ◇ *The piano wouldn't fit into the room.* **2** to live or work easily and naturally with a group of people: *Tim never fitted in at college.* ◇ *Jane fitted in well with the rest of the staff.* ◇ *She's fitted into the team well.* **3** to have a particular role or part in a plan, a situation, etc: *Where does he fit in?* ◇ *I like to know where I fit in and what I have to do.* ◇ *Where do I fit into all this?*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˌfit sb/sth ˈin; ˌfit sb/sth ˈinto sth 1 to find a place for sb/sth, especially when there is not much space: *We can't fit a sofa in here.* ◇ *We will try to fit you in somewhere in the organization.* SYN **get sb in, get sb into sth; get sth in, get sth into sth 2** to manage to find time to see sb or to do sth: *The nurse will fit you in between other appointments.* ◇ *How do you manage to fit so much into your day?*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌfit ˈin with sth 1 if an activity or event **fits in with** sth else, they exist or happen together in an easy or convenient way: *My job fits in with looking after my family.* **2** to adapt to what sb else is planning or to sb else's way of doing things: *They've got to learn to fit in with our methods.* ◇ *I'll fit in with what you want to do.* **3** to agree with ideas or information that you already have about sb/sth: *That fits in with everything I've heard about her.*
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌfit sb/sth ˈout (*also* **ˌfit sb/sth ˈup**) **(with sth)** to supply sb/sth with the clothes, food, equipment, etc. they need: *The ship had to be fitted out before the voyage.* ◇ *the high cost of fitting out offices* ◇ *We fitted him out with a set of dry clothes.*
NOTE **Fit sb/sth out** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌfit sb ˈup (for sth) (*BrE, informal*) to make sb appear to be guilty of a crime that they have not committed: *They're trying to fit me up for the theft.*
SYN **frame sb** (*more formal*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌfit sb/sth ˈup (with sth) = FIT SB/STH OUT (WITH STH)

fix /fɪks/

ˈfix on sth to decide to choose sth: *We haven't fixed on a date for the meeting yet.*
SYN **decide on/upon sth; settle on/upon sth**
◈ v + prep

ˈfix sth on sb/sth if you **fix** your eyes or your mind **on** sb/sth, you look at or think about them/it with great attention: *She fixed her eyes on his face.* ◇ *His attention was fixed on a large dark car.*
OBJ **eyes, gaze, attention**
NOTE **Fix sth on sb/sth** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌfix sb ˈup; ˌfix yourself ˈup (*informal*) **1 (with sth)** to arrange for sb to have sth; to provide sb with sth: *I can fix you up with somewhere to stay.* ◇ *I hope she soon gets herself fixed up with a job.* NOTE In informal spoken language **fix sb up sth** is also used: *Can you fix me up an appointment for tomorrow?* **2 (with sb)** to arrange for sb to meet sb who might become a boyfriend or girlfriend: *My brother says he wants me to fix him up with one of my friends.*
→ *see also* FIX YOURSELF UP; FIX STH UP 1; FIX UP TO DO STH, FIX UP FOR SB TO DO STH
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌfix sth ˈup 1 to arrange or organize sth; to arrange for sb to have sth: *Have you fixed your holiday up yet?* ◇ *Shall we fix up a meeting for next week?* OBJ **meeting** SYN **arrange sth** → *see also* FIX UP TO DO STH, FIX UP FOR SB TO DO STH **2** (*especially AmE*) to repair, decorate, etc. a room of a house: *They spent £30 000 fixing up their house.* ◇ *We fixed up the attic as a study.* OBJ **house, room** SYN **do sth up** (*BrE*) **3** (*especially BrE*) to build or make something quickly; to make sth ready: *We fixed up a shelter for the night.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌfix yourself ˈup (*AmE, informal*) to make yourself neat and attractive: *Can you wait? I'll just go and fix myself up.*
→ *see also* FIX SB UP, FIX YOURSELF UP
◈ v + pron + adv

ˌfix ˈup to do sth; ˌfix ˈup for sb to do sth (*BrE, informal*) to make arrangements to do sth or for sb to do sth: *He's fixed up for her to see the doctor on Thursday.* ◇ *I've fixed up with the school to start in September.*
SYN **arrange to do sth; arrange for sb to do sth**
→ *see also* FIX STH UP 1; FIX SB UP, FIX YOURSELF UP
◈ v + adv + to inf • v + adv + prep + n/pron + to inf

ˌfix sb with sth (*formal*) if you **fix sb with** a look, etc., you look at them directly for a long time: *She fixed him with a cold stare.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

fizzle /ˈfɪzl/

ˌfizzle ˈout (*formal*) to fail or to end in a weak or disappointing way, often after having started strongly: *The romance fizzled out after a month.* ◇ *The coup attempt soon fizzled out.*
◈ v + adv

flag /flæg/ (**-gg-**)

ˌflag sb/sth ˈdown to signal to the driver of a moving vehicle to stop, usually by waving your arm: *He managed to flag down a passing motorist.* ◇ *The police were flagging down all heavy goods vehicles.*
OBJ **taxi/cab, motorist** SYN **wave sb/sth down**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

flake /fleɪk/

ˌflake ˈout (*informal*) **1** to collapse or fall asleep because you are very tired: *I was so exhausted that I flaked out on the sofa.* **2** (*AmE*) to begin to behave in a strange way
◈ v + adv

flare /fleə(r); *AmE* fler/

ˌflare ˈup 1 (of flames, a fire, etc.) to suddenly burn more strongly: *The fire flared up as I added more wood.* **2** if fighting, tension, anger, etc. **flares up**, it starts very suddenly and violently: *Violence flared up in several cities.* ◇ *The dispute could flare up into a major crisis.* **3** if a person **flares up**, they show sudden anger towards sb: *He flared up in a fury and shouted at her.* **4** if an illness or injury **flares up**, it suddenly starts again or becomes worse: *Her asthma has flared up again.*
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˈflare-up** *n* [usually sing.] **1** a sudden expression of anger, violent feeling, etc: *the latest flare-up between the two countries* **2** an occasion when an illness or injury starts again or quickly becomes worse

flash /flæʃ/

ˌflash sth aˈround (*also* **ˌflash sth aˈbout** *especially BrE*) (*disapproving*) to show sth valuable, especially money or jewellery to people, or let them see it, to impress them: *Stop flashing your money around.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌflash ˈback (to sth) if your mind or your thoughts **flash back** to sth that happened in the past, you suddenly remember it: *My mind flashed back to my first day at college.*
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˈflashback** *n* **1** [C] [U] a scene in a film/movie, book, etc. which shows sth that happened earlier **2** a sudden, very clear, strong memory of sth that happened to you in the past that is so real you feel that you are living through the experience again: *She still has nightmares and vivid flashbacks of the accident.*

ˌflash ˈby/ˈpast; ˌflash ˈby/ˈpast sb/sth to go or pass very quickly; to go very quickly past sb/sth: *The days just flashed by.* ◇ *She watched the scenery flash past the train window.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

flatten /ˈflætn/

ˌflatten sth/yourself aˈgainst/ˈon sb/sth to press your body or part of your body on or against sb/sth: *She flattened her nose and lips against the window.* ◇ *I flattened myself against the wall to let them pass.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌflatten ˈout 1 if a road, an area of land, etc. **flattens out**, it gradually becomes flat: *After Oxford the countryside flattens out.* **2** to stop growing or going up: *Sales have flattened out in the last few years.*
◈ v + adv

ˌflatten sth ˈout to make sth completely flat: *She flattened out the crumpled letter on the desk.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

flesh /fleʃ/

ˌflesh sth ˈout (with sth) to add more details or information to an argument, an idea, a drawing, etc: *You need to **flesh out the bones** of your idea a bit more.* ◇ *They must be prepared to flesh out their strategy with some details.*

◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

flick /flɪk/

ˌflick sth ˈoff to switch sth off quickly: *He flicked the light off.*

OBJ **light** SYN **switch sth off** OPP **flick sth on**

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌflick sth ˈon to switch sth on quickly: *He flicked on the air-conditioning.*

OBJ **light** SYN **switch sth on** OPP **flick sth off**

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌflick ˈthrough sth to turn the pages of a book, etc. quickly, or look through a pile of papers, etc. without reading everything: *He flicked through a magazine while he waited.*

OBJ **pages, book, papers** SYN **flip through sth; leaf through sth; thumb through sth**

◈ v + prep

fling /flɪŋ/ (flung /flʌŋ/, flung)

ˈfling yourself at sb (*informal, disapproving*) to try too hard to show sb that you are interested in them in a sexual way and make them interested in you

SYN **throw yourself at sb**

◈ v + pron + prep

ˈfling yourself into sth to start to do sth with a lot of energy, enthusiasm and effort: *When they split up she flung herself into her work to try to forget him.*

SYN **throw yourself into sth**

◈ v + pron + prep

ˌfling sth ˈoff (*informal*) to take clothes off quickly and carelessly: *Flinging off her coat, she sank into an armchair.*

SYN **throw sth off** OPP **fling sth on**

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌfling sth ˈon (*informal*) to put clothes on quickly and carelessly: *Just fling a coat on over your pyjamas.*

SYN **throw sth on** OPP **fling sth off**

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

flip /flɪp/ (-pp-)

ˈflip for sb/sth (*AmE, slang*) to begin to like sb very much; to suddenly become very excited about sth attractive, pleasant, etc: *She flipped for his red hair and freckles.*

◈ v + prep

ˈflip for sth; ˈflip sb for sth (*AmE*) = TOSS FOR STH, TOSS SB FOR STH

ˌflip sb ˈoff (*AmE, slang*) to raise your middle finger to sb in a very rude gesture

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌflip ˈout (*informal, especially AmE*) to become very angry or excited, or lose control

NOTE **Flip** is often used with this meaning, especially in British English.

◈ v + adv

ˌflip ˈover; ˌflip sth ˈover to turn over, or to turn sth over, onto the other side or upside down: *The dolphin flipped over onto its back.* ◇ *A huge wave flipped the dinghy over.*

◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈflip through sth to turn over the pages of a book, etc. quickly, or look through a pile of papers, etc. without reading everything: *He flipped through the photos quickly.*

OBJ **pages, magazines** SYN **flick through sth; leaf through sth**

◈ v + prep

flirt /flɜːt; *AmE* flɜːrt/

ˈflirt with sth (*written*) **1** to think about or be interested in sth for a short time, but not very seriously: *I flirted briefly with the idea of emigrating.* OBJ **idea, thought** SYN **toy with sth** **2** to take risks or not worry about a dangerous situation: *to flirt with danger/death/disaster* OBJ **danger, disaster**

◈ v + prep

float /fləʊt; *AmE* floʊt/

ˌfloat aˈround; ˌfloat aˈround sth (*BrE also* **ˌfloat aˈbout/ˈround, ˌfloat aˈbout/ˈround sth**) **1** (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) if an idea or a piece of news is **floating around/about**, it is being talked about by a lot of people: *There's a rumour floating about (the office) that she's leaving.* SUBJ **rumour, idea** SYN **go around, go around sth** **2** if you say that an object is **floating around/about** you mean that you have seen it somewhere but do not know exactly where it is: *Is there a pen floating about here somewhere?*

◈ v + adv • v + prep

flood /flʌd/

ˌflood ˈback if a thought or a memory **floods back**, you remember sth suddenly and it affects you strongly: *Suddenly all my fears came flooding back.*

NOTE **Flood back** is often used with the verb **come**: *His words came flooding back to me.*

◈ v + adv

ˌflood ˈin; ˌflood ˈinto sth **1** if water, etc. **floods in** or **floods into** a place, it moves to fill or cover it: *He opened the door and water came flooding in.* ◇ *Sunshine flooded into the room.* **2** to come to or arrive at a place in large numbers or great quantities: *Letters of support have been flooding in from all over the country.*

SYN **pour in, pour into sth**

◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˌflood sb ˈout to force sb to leave their home because of a flood: *We were flooded out by a burst water main.*

NOTE **Flood sb out** is often used in the passive.

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌflood ˈover/ˈthrough sb if a feeling **floods over/through** you, it affects you very strongly: *A great sense of relief flooded through her.*

SUBJ **relief**

◈ v + prep

ˈflood sth with sth to send sth somewhere in large numbers or amounts, sometimes more than is necessary: *The switchboard was flooded with calls after the programme.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The room was flooded with evening light.*

NOTE **Flood sb/sth with sth** is often used in the passive: *The office was flooded with complaints.*

◈ v + n/pron + prep

flounder /ˈflaʊndə(r)/

ˌflounder aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌflounder aˈbout**) to struggle to move or get somewhere because it is difficult, or because you do not know where you are going: *People were floundering about in the water, shouting and screaming.* ◇ (*figurative*) *I floundered around trying to decide what I ought to do next.*

◈ v + adv

flow /fləʊ; *AmE* floʊ/

ˈflow from sth (*formal*) to come or result from sth: *What benefits might flow from having a single European currency?*

SUBJ **benefits/advantages, consequences**

◈ v + prep

fluff /flʌf/

ˌfluff sth ˈout/ˈup to shake or brush feathers, fur, hair, etc. so that they look bigger or softer: *The bird fluffed out its feathers.* ◇ *Let me fluff up your pillows for you.*

OBJ **feathers**

◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

flunk /flʌŋk/

ˌflunk ˈout; ˌflunk ˈout of sth (*AmE, informal*) to have to leave school or college because your marks/grades are not good enough: *He flunked out (of college) last year.*

◈ v + adv • v + adv + prep

flush /flʌʃ/

ˌflush sth aˈway to get rid of sth with a sudden quick flow of water: *She flushed the unused tablets away.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌflush sb/sth ˈout; ˌflush sb/sth ˈout of sth to force a person or an animal to leave the place where they are hiding: *The dogs flushed out the deer that were left in the wood.* ◇ *The police flushed the gunmen out of the building.*

◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌflush sth ˈout; ˌflush sth ˈout of sth to wash sth out; to get rid of sth with a rush of water: *Drink lots of water to flush the poisons out of your body.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv + prep

flutter /ˈflʌtə(r)/

ˌflutter aˈround; ˌflutter aˈround sth (*also* **ˌflutter aˈbout, ˌflutter aˈbout sth** *especially BrE*) **1** if a bird or an insect **flutters around**, it flies somewhere moving its wings very quickly: *Butterflies fluttered around (the garden).* **2** if a person **flutters around**, they move quickly in a nervous or excited way: *My mother fluttered about picking things up and putting things away.*

◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˌflutter ˈdown to move gently through the air to the ground: *Wind shook the branches and several leaves fluttered down.*

◈ v + adv

fly /flaɪ/ (flies, flying, flew /fluː/ flown /fləʊn; *AmE* floʊn/)

ˌfly aˈround; ˌfly aˈround sth (*also* **ˌfly aˈbout, ˌfly aˈbout sth** *especially BrE*) (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) if a story or a piece of news is **flying around**, it is being talked about by a lot of people and passed from one person to another: *Stories about his past are flying around among the students.* ◇ *Rumours have been flying around the office.*

◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˈfly at sb (of a person or an animal) to attack sb suddenly and violently: *She flew at him, hitting and kicking.*

◈ v + prep

ˌfly ˈby/ˈpast **1** when time **flies by/past**, it seems to pass very quickly: *My three years at college flew by.* ◇ *When you have lots of things to do, time just flies past.* SUBJ **time, days, hours, etc.** NOTE **Fly** can also be used with this meaning, especially with the subject *time*: *There was so much to do the time just flew.* **2** when miles, etc. **fly by/past**, a journey by car, bus, train or bicycle

seems to pass very quickly: *As the miles flew past and we got closer and closer to the sea, the kids got more and more excited.* SUBJ **miles, countryside**
◈ v + adv

ˌfly ˈin/out; ˌfly ˈinto sth; ˌfly ˈout of sth to arrive/leave a place by plane: *She's flying out to join him in Nairobi next week.* ◇ *Several heads of state flew into London last night for talks with the Prime Minister.*
→ *see also* FLY SB/STH IN/OUT, FLY SB/STH INTO/OUT OF STH
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep ◆ v + adv + prep

ˌfly sb/sth ˈin/ˈout; ˌfly sb/sth ˈinto sth; ˌfly sb/sth ˈout of sth to bring sb/sth by plane to a place or take them away: *They flew us in by helicopter.* ◇ *Food supplies are being flown out immediately.* ◇ *The travel company is flying 200 people out of the area tomorrow.*
→ *see also* FLY IN/OUT, FLY INTO STH, FLY OUT OF STH
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌfly ˈinto sth if sb flies into a temper, etc., they suddenly become extremely angry: *He flies into a rage when you mention her.*
OBJ **rage, temper, panic**
◈ v + prep

ˌfly ˈoff; ˌfly ˈoff sth to come off sth suddenly and with force: *The jolt caused her glasses to fly off.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep
IDM **fly off the ˈhandle** (*informal*) to become suddenly very angry

ˌfly ˈout; ˌfly ˈout of sth = FLY IN/OUT, FLY INTO STH, FLY OUT OF STH

ˌfly sb/sth ˈout; ˌfly sb/sth ˈout of sth = FLY SB/STH IN/OUT, FLY SB/STH INTO STH, FLY SB/STH OUT OF STH

ˌfly ˈpast = FLY BY/PAST

fob /fɒb; *AmE* fɑːb/ (-bb-)

ˌfob sb ˈoff (with sth) (*BrE*) **1** to try to make sb stop asking questions or complaining by giving them answers or excuses that are not true: *Don't try to fob me off with excuses.* **2** to give sb sth that is different from or not as good as what they want: *We thought we'd been fobbed off with inferior goods.*
SYN **palm sb off (with sth)**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌfob sth ˈoff on/onto sb (*BrE, informal*) to trick sb into accepting sth that you do not want or sth that is not genuine: *She tried to fob all her junk off onto me.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep

focus /ˈfəʊkəs; *AmE* ˈfoʊ-/ (-s- or -ss-)

ˈfocus on sb/sth; ˈfocus sth on sb/sth (*also* **ˈfocus upon sb/sth, ˈfocus sth upon sb/sth** *more formal*) **1** to give all your attention, effort, etc. to a particular problem, subject or person: *Suspicion focused on her husband.* ◇ *The programme was intended to focus attention on global warming.* **2** (of eyes, a camera, etc.) to be adjusted so that things can be seen clearly; to adjust sth so that you can see things clearly: *Rest your eyes by letting them focus on distant objects.* ◇ *The camera was focused on an old woman.*
◈ v + prep ◆ v + n/pron + prep

fog /fɒg; *AmE* fɔːg, fɑːg/ (-gg-)

ˌfog ˈup if a glass surface **fogs up** it becomes covered with steam or drops of water so that it is difficult to see in or through it: *The windscreen started to fog up.*
SYN **mist up, mist sth up; steam up, steam sth up**
◈ v + adv

foist /fɔɪst/

ˈfoist sth/sb/yourself on sb (*also* **ˈfoist sth/sb/yourself upon sb** *more formal*) to force sb to accept sth that they do not want, or take care of sb that they do not want to: *He doesn't try to foist his beliefs on everyone.* ◇ *She resented having the child foisted on her while the parents went travelling abroad.*
NOTE **Foist sth on sb** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

fold /fəʊld; *AmE* foʊld/

ˌfold aˈway/ˈdown; ˌfold sth aˈway/ˈdown to be able to be bent or arranged into a smaller or flatter shape that you can store or carry more easily; to bend or arrange sth in this way: *The bed can fold away.* ◇ *You can fold the table away to make more room.*
NOTE If you want to talk about a newspaper, a piece of paper, etc. use **fold up**.
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **ˈfoldaway** (*also* **ˈfold-down, ˈfold-up**) *adj* [only before noun] that can be folded so that you can carry it or store it more easily

ˌfold sth aˈway to fold sth and put it away: *She folded the newspaper away.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌfold sth ˈback, ˈover, ˈdown, etc. to bend sth back, over, down, etc. so that one part of it lies flat on another: *He folded the corner of the page over to mark his place.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌfold ˈdown; ˌfold sth ˈdown = FOLD AWAY/DOWN, FOLD STH AWAY/DOWN

ˌfold sth ˈinto sth; ˌfold sth ˈin (in cooking) to mix one substance gently with another, usually with a spoon: *Gently fold the flour into the mixture.* ◇ *Fold in two egg whites.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˈfold A in B; ˈfold B round/over A to wrap sb/sth in sth: *She gently folded the baby in a blanket.* ◇ *She folded a blanket round the baby.* ◇ *He **folded** her **in his arms*** (he put his arms around her).
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌfold ˈup; ˌfold sth ˈup to bend sth or fold it so that it is smaller: *The map folds up quite small.* ◇ *She folded the letter up and put it in her pocket.*
OPP **unfold, unfold sth**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈfold-up** *adj* = FOLDAWAY at FOLD AWAY/DOWN, FOLD STH AWAY/DOWN

follow /ˈfɒləʊ; *AmE* ˈfɑːloʊ/

ˌfollow ˈon 1 (from sth) to continue or result from sth in a natural or logical way: *Listen carefully to the answer and make sure that your next question follows on.* ◇ *Following on from what Jill has said, I'd like to talk about the future of the company.* **2** to leave a place after sb else and meet them later: *You go now. I'll follow on later.*
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˈfollow-on** *n* (*especially BrE*) something that continues or results from sth; the action of following on from sth: *The movie 'Arthur 2' was a successful follow-on to 'Arthur'.* ◇ *follow-on treatment/talks* ◇ *a follow-on call*

ˌfollow ˈthrough (*sport*) to complete a stroke in tennis, golf, etc. by continuing to move the club, etc. after you have hit the ball
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˌfollow-ˈthrough** (*also* **ˈfollow-through** *especially AmE*) *n* (*sport*) (in tennis, golf, etc.) the final part of a stroke after the ball has been hit
→ *see also* FOLLOW-THROUGH at FOLLOW THROUGH (WITH STH), FOLLOW STH THROUGH

ˌfollow ˈthrough, ˌfollow sth ˈthrough to complete sth you have begun or already done: *The store did not follow through with the prosecution.* ◇ *He never follows things through.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˌfollow-ˈthrough** *n* the actions that sb takes to complete or continue sth: *Your follow-through on the project was not very satisfactory.*
→ *see also* FOLLOW-THROUGH at FOLLOW THROUGH

ˌfollow ˈup; ˌfollow sth ˈup 1 (with sth) to take further action about sth: *You should follow your letter up with a phone call* (= you should write first and then telephone). **2** to find out more about sth sb has told you or suggested to you: *The police are following up all the leads.* ◇ *It's worth following up his idea.* OBJ **lead, idea, complaint, matter** SYN **investigate sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **ˈfollow-up (to sth)** *n* [usually sing.] something that continues sth: *The survey is a follow-up to the questionnaire.* ◇ *follow-up treatment/studies*

fool /fuːl/

ˌfool aˈround 1 (*BrE also* **ˌfool aˈbout**) **(with sth)** to waste time or behave in a silly way: *Stop fooling about with that knife!* **2 (with sb)** (*especially AmE*) to have a casual sexual relationship with another person's partner or with sb who is not your partner: *He's been fooling around with other women.* **3** (*AmE*) if two people **fool around**, they kiss and touch each other in a sexual way: *We were fooling around on the couch when my dad walked in.*
◈ v + adv

force /fɔːs; *AmE* fɔːrs/

ˌforce ˈback sth; ˌforce it/them ˈback to try very hard not to show an emotion: *Forcing back the tears, she nodded and smiled.*
OBJ **tears**
NOTE A noun must always follow **back**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **back**. ◆ **Force back sth** is not used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv

ˌforce sth ˈdown to make yourself eat or drink sth when you do not want to: *She forced down her breakfast.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˈforce sth on sb (*also* **ˈforce sth upon sb** *more formal*) to make sb accept sth they do not want to: *I didn't want to take the money, but she forced it on me.* ◇ *Teachers feel that changes are being forced on them.*
OBJ **change, cuts, decision**
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˈforce itself/themselves on sb (*also* **ˈforce itself/themselves upon sb** *more formal*) if sth **forces itself on** you, you cannot avoid becoming aware of it: *When he read the letter, the truth forced itself on him.*
◈ v + pron + prep

ˈforce yourself on sb (*also* **ˈforce yourself upon sb** *more formal*) to force sb to have sex with you when they do not want to, by using violence or by threatening them
SYN **rape sb**
◈ v + pron + prep

ˈforce sth upon sb = FORCE STH ON SB

ˈforce itself/themselves upon sb = FORCE ITSELF/THEMSELVES ON SB

ˈforce yourself upon sb = FORCE YOURSELF ON SB

forge /fɔːdʒ; *AmE* fɔːrdʒ/

ˌforge aˈhead 1 to move forward quickly: *He forged ahead, panting and breathless.* **2 (with sth)** to make progress quickly: *The company is forging ahead with its plans.* ◇ *Jane's language skills enabled her to forge ahead on the career ladder.*
SYN **press ahead/on (with sth)**
◈ v + adv

fork /fɔːk; *AmE* fɔːrk/

ˌfork ˈout (for sth), **ˌfork sth ˈout (for/on sth)** (*informal*) to pay a lot of money for sth, especially when you do not want to: *I had to fork out for a cab home.* ◇ *I had to fork out $30 for a cab home.*
SYN **shell out (for sth), shell sth out (for sth)**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌfork sth ˈover (*AmE, informal*) to pay for sth, especially when you do not want to: *I had to fork over the $10 I owed her.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

form /fɔːm; *AmE* fɔːrm/

ˌform ˈup; **ˌform sb ˈup** if soldiers **form up**, or sb **forms them up**, they get into position in lines: *The general formed up his troops.* ◇ *The teams formed up into lines.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

foul /faʊl/

ˌfoul ˈup; **ˌfoul sth ˈup** (*informal*) to do sth badly; to spoil sth, especially by making mistakes: *The team can't afford to foul up in this game.* ◇ *He admitted he'd completely **fouled things up**.*
SYN **mess up, mess sth up**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
▶ **ˈfoul-up** *n* (*informal*) a problem caused by bad organization or a stupid mistake: *an administrative foul-up* ◇ *There was a computer foul-up at the bank and customers were sent the wrong statements.*

found /faʊnd/

ˈfound sth on sth (*also* **ˈfound sth upon sth** *more formal*) to base sth on sth: *Their conclusions were largely founded on guesswork.*
SYN **base sth on/upon sth**
NOTE **Found sth on/upon sth** is usually used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

freak /friːk/

ˌfreak ˈout; **ˌfreak sb ˈout** (*informal*) if sb **freaks out** or if sth **freaks them out**, they react very strongly to sth that shocks, angers, excites or frightens them: *I don't know what happened in the exams. I just freaked out.* ◇ *I thought I'd seen a ghost — it really freaked me out.*
NOTE **Freak** and **freak sb** are used less often with the same meaning.
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

free /friː/

ˌfree sb/sth ˈup to do sth so that sb is able to do sth else; to make money, time, etc. available for a particular purpose: *Having a secretary frees me up to work on other things.* ◇ *I need to free up more disk space.*
NOTE **Free sb/sth** is also used with the same meaning.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

freeze /friːz/ (**froze** /frəʊz; *AmE* froʊz/ **frozen** /ˈfrəʊzn; *AmE* ˈfroʊzn/)

ˌfreeze sb/sth ˈout; **ˌfreeze sb/sth ˈout of sth** (*informal*) to prevent sb from being part of a group or taking part in an activity, business, etc. by being very unfriendly or making things very difficult for them: *My colleagues were freezing me out.* ◇ *American rice farmers complained that their crops were being frozen out of the market.*
NOTE This phrasal verb is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep
▶ **ˈfreeze-out** *n* (*informal, especially AmE*) an act of preventing sb from being part of a group or from taking part in an activity, a business, etc.

ˌfreeze ˈover to become covered by ice: *The river sometimes freezes over.*
SYN **ice over/up**
◈ v + adv

ˌfreeze ˈup 1 if sth **freezes up**, it becomes blocked with frozen liquid so that it cannot be used: *The pipes had frozen up.* **2** if sb **freezes up**, they are so nervous, frightened or excited that they are unable to move: *I was so nervous I froze up.*
◈ v + adv

freshen /ˈfreʃn/

ˌfreshen ˈup; **ˌfreshen yourself ˈup** to wash and make yourself look clean and tidy after a journey, before a meeting, etc: *I'll just freshen (myself) up before dinner.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + pron + adv

ˌfreshen sth ˈup to make sth look cleaner and more attractive: *A coat of paint will freshen this room up.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

frighten /ˈfraɪtn/

ˌfrighten sb/sth aˈway/ˈoff; **ˌfrighten sb/sth aˈway from sth 1** to make a person or an animal go away by making them feel afraid: *The noise frightened the birds away.* ◇ *I sometimes use a gun to frighten dogs away from the hens.* **2** to make a person or an organization so nervous that they are no longer interested in sth or no longer want to do sth: *Investment companies have been frightened off by fear of losing money.*
SYN **scare sb/sth away/off**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

fritter /ˈfrɪtə(r)/

ˌfritter sth aˈway (on sth) to waste time or money on things that are not useful or important: *He's frittered away the money his father left him.*
OBJ **money, time**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

front /frʌnt/

ˈfront for sb/sth to represent a group or an organization in order to hide a secret or an illegal activity or protect the person who is controlling it: *The police could not discover who he was fronting for.*
◈ v + prep

ˌfront ˈonto sth if a building fronts onto sth, it faces it: *The apartment fronts onto the beach.*
◈ v + prep

frost /frɒst; *AmE* frɔːst/

ˌfrost ˈover/ˈup to become covered with frost: *All the windows frosted up overnight.*
◈ v + adv

frown /fraʊn/

ˈfrown on sb/sth (*also* **ˈfrown upon sb/sth** *more formal*) to disapprove of sb/sth: *Some restaurants frown on men not wearing jackets.*
NOTE **Frown on/upon sth** is often used in the passive: *Such behaviour is frowned upon.*
→ *see also* SMILE ON/UPON SB/STH
◈ v + prep

fry /fraɪ/ (**fries, frying, fried, fried**)

ˌfry sth ˈup to cook food in oil especially in order to make a meal quickly: *He fried up some eggs and potatoes.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
▶ **ˈfry-up** *n* (*BrE, informal*) a meal of fried food, especially bacon, eggs, etc.

fuck /fʌk/

ˌfuck aˈbout (with sth) (*BrE*) = FUCK AROUND (WITH STH)

ˌfuck sb aˈbout (*BrE*) = FUCK SB AROUND

ˌfuck aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌfuck aˈbout**) **(with sth)** (⚠, *slang*) to waste time by behaving in a silly way: *Stop fucking around and give me a hand.*
NOTE A more polite informal way of saying this is **mess around** or, in British English, **mess about**.
◈ v + adv

ˌfuck sb aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌfuck sb aˈbout**) (⚠, *slang*) to treat sb badly or in an unhelpful way, causing them a delay: *Don't fuck me around.*
NOTE A more polite informal way of saying this is **mess sb around** or, in British English, **mess sb about**.
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌfuck ˈoff (⚠, *slang*) used to tell sb very rudely to go away: *Fuck off and leave me alone!*
◈ v + adv

ˌfuck sb ˈover (*AmE*, ⚠, *slang*) to treat sb very badly or unfairly: *The company promised me a big pay-off but they really fucked me over.*
NOTE A more polite informal way to say this is **mess sb around**.
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌfuck ˈup; **ˌfuck sth ˈup** (⚠, *slang*) to spoil sth or do sth badly; to make a stupid mistake: *It was my fault — I fucked up.* ◇ *He's fucked everything up.*
NOTE A more polite informal way to say this is **mess (sth) up** or **foul (sth) up**.
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▶ **ˈfuck-up** *n* (⚠, *slang*) **1** a problem caused by bad organization or a stupid mistake NOTE A more polite informal way to say this is **foul-up**. **2** (*AmE*) a person who does sth badly or makes stupid mistakes

ˌfuck sb ˈup (⚠, *slang*) **1** to upset or confuse sb so much that they are not able to deal with problems in their life NOTE A more polite informal way to say this is **mess sb up**. **2** (*AmE*) to hit or kick sb hard many times NOTE A more polite informal way to say this is **beat sb up**.
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▶ **ˌfucked ˈup** *adj* (⚠, *slang*) thoroughly confused or disturbed
NOTE A more polite informal way to say this is **messed up**.

ˈfuck with sb to treat sb badly in a way that makes them annoyed
NOTE A more polite way to express this is **mess with sb**.
◈ v + prep

fuel /ˈfjuːəl/ (**-ll-**, *AmE* **-l-**)

ˌfuel ˈup; **ˌfuel sth ˈup** to put fuel into a vehicle: *I need to fuel up before I begin the trip.* ◇ (*figurative*) *On a cold morning I like to fuel up with a hot breakfast.* ◇ *People in a hurry can fuel up their cars and themselves in one stop.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

fumble /ˈfʌmbl/

ˌfumble aˈround (*also* **ˌfumble aˈbout** *especially BrE*) to move awkwardly, especially using your hands to do sth or to find sth: *He fumbled around in the dark trying to find the lamp.*
◈ v + adv

furnish /ˈfɜːnɪʃ; *AmE* ˈfɜːrnɪʃ/

ˈfurnish sb/sth with sth (*formal*) to supply or provide sb/sth with sth: *She furnished him with the facts surrounding the case.*
SYN **supply sb/sth (with sth)**
◈ v + n/pron + prep

fuss /fʌs/

ˈfuss at sb (*AmE*) to complain to sb about sb/sth very often in an annoying way: *She's always fussing at me about my smoking.*
◈ v + prep

ˈfuss over sb/sth to pay a lot of attention, or too much attention, to sb/sth: *She likes to have someone to fuss over.* ◇ *When she gets nervous she fusses over unimportant details.*
NOTE **Fuss over sb** can be used in the passive: *I hate being fussed over.*
◈ v + prep

futz /fʌts/

ˌfutz aˈround (*AmE, spoken, slang*) to spend time doing unimportant things: *I just futzed around all morning and got nothing done.*
SYN **mess around** (*BrE*)
◈ v + adv

Gg

gabble /ˈgæbl/

ˌgabble aˈway/ˈon (about sth) to talk quickly and for a long time about sth so that people find it difficult to understand you or become bored: *Someone on the radio was gabbling away in a foreign language.* ◇ *Nicola gabbled on about her boyfriend for hours.*
◈ v + adv

gad /gæd/ (-dd-)

ˌgad aˈbout/aˈround (*old-fashioned, informal, humorous, especially BrE*) to go to different places looking for fun and excitement, especially when you should be doing sth else: *It's about time he stopped gadding about and settled down.*
◈ v + adv

gag /gæg/ (-gg-)

be ˈgagging for sth (*BrE, slang*) (*only used in the progressive tenses*) if somebody is **gagging** for sth, they want it very much: *We were all gagging for a burger.* ◇ *Not all rock stars are* ***gagging for it*** (= wanting to have sex with sb).
NOTE You can also use **be gagging to do sth**: *footballers gagging to play for their country*
◈ v + prep

gain /geɪn/

ˈgain in sth to get more of a particular quality: *The students are slowly gaining in confidence.*
OBJ **popularity, confidence, strength**
◈ v + prep

ˈgain on sb/sth (*often used in the progressive tenses*) to come closer to sb/sth, especially sb/sth that you are chasing: *We were gaining on the car in front.*
◈ v + prep

gallop /ˈgæləp/

ˌgallop ˈthrough sth to do or say sth very quickly: *Don't gallop through your speech as if you can't wait to finish.*
◈ v + prep

gamble /ˈgæmbl/

ˌgamble sth aˈway to lose sth such as money, your possessions, etc. by risking it/them on a card game, horse race, etc: *She gambled away all our money.*
OBJ **money**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˈgamble on sth; ˈgamble on doing sth; ˈgamble on sb/sth doing sth to take a risk with sth, hoping that you or it will be successful: *She's had two kidney transplants and now her family are gambling on one last operation.* ◇ *We're gambling on the weather being fine on Saturday.*
◈ v + prep

gang /gæŋ/

ˌgang ˈup (against/on sb) (*informal*) to join together, especially to oppose, threaten, hurt or frighten sb: *My brothers are always ganging up on me.*
◈ v + adv

gas /gæs/ (-ss-)

ˌgas ˈup; ˌgas sth ˈup (*AmE, informal*) to put fuel in a vehicle: *I'll have to gas up before we leave.* ◇ *Have you gassed up the car?*
SYN **fuel up, fuel sth up**
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

gather /ˈgæðə(r)/

ˌgather aˈround; ˌgather aˈround sb/sth (*BrE also* **ˌgather ˈround, ˌgather ˈround sb/sth**) to come together in one place, forming a group around sb/sth: *Everyone gathered around to hear the song.* ◇ *They all gathered round the table.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˌgather sth ˈin to collect a quantity of things, especially crops, and put them all together in one place
OBJ **harvest, crop**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌgather ˈround; ˌgather ˈround sb/sth (*BrE*) = GATHER AROUND, GATHER AROUND SB/STH

ˌgather sth toˈgether/ˈup to bring together objects that have been spread around: *She gathered together her belongings and left.*
OBJ **papers, belongings, things**
NOTE **Gather sth** is used less often with the same meaning.
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

gear /gɪə(r); *AmE* gɪr/

ˈgear sth to/towards sb/sth; ˈgear sth to/towards doing sth to make or change sth so that it is suitable for a particular need or an appropriate level or standard: *The programme is clearly geared to a teenage audience.* ◇ *We try to gear our services to customers' requirements.* ◇ *The policy is geared towards attracting nurses back to work.*
NOTE This phrasal verb is usually used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌgear ˈup (for sth/to do sth), ˌgear sb/sth/yourself ˈup (for sth/to do sth) to be prepared, ready and able to do sth; to become or make sb/sth/yourself ready, prepared or able to do sth: *The players are gearing up for the big game.* ◇ *The hospital is gearing itself up to deal with new patients.*

NOTE **Gear sb/sth up** is usually used in the passive.

◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

gee /dʒiː/

ˌgee ˈup (*BrE*) used to tell a horse to start moving or to go faster

◈ v + adv

ˌgee sb ˈup (*BrE*) to encourage sb to work harder or faster or to perform better: *Their success last week will gee the team up.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

gen /dʒen/ (-nn-)

ˌgen ˈup; ˌgen sb/yourself ˈup (on sth) (*old-fashioned, BrE, informal*) to find out about sth; to get or give sb information on sth: *I must gen myself up for the interview.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv

get /get/ (getting, got, got /gɒt; *AmE* gɑːt/)

NOTE In spoken American English, the past participle **gotten** is almost always used.

	~ about		~ in
	~ above	114	~ in on
	~ across		~ in with
	~ after		~ into
	~ ahead, ahead of	115	~ off
111	~ along		~ off on
	~ around		~ off together
	~ around to		~ off on doing
	~ at		~ off with
	~ away	116	~ on
	~ away from		~ on at
	~ away with		~ onto, on to
	~ back	117	~ out, out of
112	~ back at		~ out of
	~ back into	118	~ over
	~ back to		~ past
	~ back together		~ round
	~ back with		~ round to
	~ behind		~ through
	~ beyond	119	~ to
	~ by		~ together
	~ down	120	~ up
113	~ down on		~ up as/in
	~ down to		~ up to

ˌget aˈbout 1 (*BrE also* **ˌget aˈround**) if sb who is old or ill **gets about**, they are able to move from place to place without difficulty: *She gets about with the help of a stick.* **2** (*BrE*) = GET AROUND

◈ v + adv

ˌget aˈbout sth (*BrE*) = GET AROUND STH

ˌget aˈbove yourself (*especially BrE*) (*often used in the progressive tenses*) to have too high an opinion of yourself; to behave as if you are better than other people: *She's been getting a bit above herself since winning that award.*

◈ v + prep + pron

ˌget aˈcross (to sb) to be communicated to sb or understood by sb: *The message is finally getting across to the public.*

◈ v + adv

ˌget aˈcross; ˌget aˈcross sth to move from one side of a river, a bridge, a street, etc. to the other: *How can we get across to the island?* ◇ *The only way to get across the lake is by boat.* ◇ *Can we get across the city without having to use the subway?*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌget sth aˈcross (*also* **ˌget sth ˈover** *less frequent*) **(to sb)** to communicate sth to sb; to make sth clear to sb: *He's not very good at getting his ideas across to the class.* ◇ *You'll have to think of new ways of getting your message across effectively.*

OBJ **message, point, idea** SYN **put sth across**

NOTE **Get sth across** is not used in the passive.

◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌget sb/sth aˈcross sth (*also* **ˌget sb/sth ˈover sth**) to move sb/sth, or to help sb/sth move, from one side of sth such as a road, river, bridge, wall, etc. to the other: *We've got to get supplies across the border somehow.* ◇ *We got all the injured soldiers across the river.* ◇ *Billy got the pony over the jumps with difficulty.*

NOTE **Get sb/sth across sth** is not used in the passive.

◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌget ˈafter sb (*informal, especially AmE*) **1** to keep asking or telling sb to do sth, often in an annoying way: *She's been getting after me to take a vacation.* ◇ *I had to get after Jack to clean his room.* **2** to try to catch sb, especially after they have committed a crime: *We need to be tougher on those who commit crime and get after drug users more.*

◈ v + prep

ˌget aˈhead; ˌget aˈhead of sb to make more progress than other people, companies, etc.; to become successful in your life or your career: *It isn't easy to get ahead in the movie business.* ◇ *By doing extra homework, he soon got ahead of his classmates.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + prep

IDM **get aˈhead of yourself** to tell sb sth before you have fully explained the background or the details that they need to know first

ˌget aˈlong (*informal*) **1** (*often used in the progressive tenses*) to leave a place: *It's late. We'd better be getting along.* ◇ *One more coffee and then I must get along.* → *see also* GET ON 5 **2 (with sb/together)** = GET ON 1 **3 (with sth)** = GET ON 4

◈ v + adv

ˌget aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌget aˈbout**) **1** (*informal*) to move from place to place; to go to lots of different places: *You certainly get around! Paris one minute, Bonn the next.* ◇ *She can use my car to get around while she's here.* **2** (of news, a piece of information, etc.) to become known by a lot of people: *The news of her resignation soon got around.* ◇ *Word soon got around that they were having an affair.* **3** to have an active social life and be aware of what is happening: *It's time you got around more.* → *see also* GET OUT 2 **4** (*informal, disapproving*) to have sexual relationships with lots of different people **5** - GET ABOUT 1

◈ v + adv

ˌget aˈround; ˌget aˈround sth = GET ROUND, GET ROUND STH

ˌget aˈround sb (*especially AmE*) GET ROUND SB

ˌget aˈround sth (*BrE also* **ˌget aˈbout sth, ˌget ˈround sth**) **1** to move around a city, a country, etc: *It's easy to get around Amsterdam on a bicycle.* **2** (of news, a piece of information, etc.) to become known by a lot of people: *News soon gets round the office.* ◇ *It didn't take long for the rumour to get all around town.* **3** (*especially AmE*) = GET ROUND STH 3

◈ v + prep

ˌget aˈround to sth; ˌget aˈround to doing sth = GET ROUND/AROUND TO STH, GET ROUND/AROUND TO DOING STH

ˈget at sb (*informal*) **1** (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) to keep criticizing sb: *Sam's parents are always getting at him.* ◇ *She feels she's being got at.* **2** to influence sb, especially illegally, for example by threatening them or offering money, in order to persuade them to say sth untrue or act in an unfair way: *One of the witnesses had been got at.* ◇ *They even tried getting at the judge.*

NOTE **Get at sb** can be used in the passive.

◈ v + prep

ˈget at sb/sth to reach or obtain sb/sth; to find a way of entering a place, talking to sb, looking at sth, etc: *The files are locked up and I can't get at them.* ◇ *I can't get at my inheritance until I'm 21.*

NOTE **Get at sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *Put it in a place where it can be got at easily.*

◈ v + prep

ˈget at sth to learn, discover or find out sth: *We've got to get at the truth.*

OBJ **truth** SYN **find sth out**

◈ v + prep

IDM **what are you, was he, etc. ˈgetting at?** (*spoken*) used to ask, often in an angry way, what sb is/was suggesting: *What exactly are you getting at?* ◇ *I see what you're getting at, but I'm afraid I can't help you with that.*

ˌget aˈway 1 to have a holiday/vacation: *We're hoping to get away for a few days at Easter.* ◇ *Will you manage to get away this year?* **2 (from sth/...)** to succeed in leaving a place: *It was midday before we finally managed to get away.* ◇ *I won't be able to get away from the office before 7.* **3 (from sb/sth/...)** to escape from sb or a place: *The thieves got away in a blue van.* ◇ *You're not getting away from me so easily!* **4 ˌget ˈaway (with you)!** (*BrE, spoken, becoming old-fashioned*) used to show that you find it difficult to believe what sb has just said: *Get away! You could never run that far!* ◇ *'I'm going to live in China.' 'Get away with you!'* SYN **go on**

◈ v + adv

▸ **ˈgetaway** *n* [usually sing.] **1** the act of leaving a place in a hurry, especially after committing a crime: *They made a quick getaway.* **2** a short holiday/vacation; a place for this: *the popular island getaway of Penang*

ˌget aˈway from sth; ˌget aˈway from doing sth to start doing sth in a different way or talking about a different subject: *The club should get away from its old-fashioned image and try to attract younger people.* ◇ *I tried to get away from the subject of babies.*

◈ v + adv + prep

IDM **get aˈway from it all** (*informal*) to have a short holiday/vacation in a quiet place where you can relax **there's no getting aˈway from sth; you can't get aˈway from sth** you have to admit that sth unpleasant is true: *There's no getting away from the fact that his mistake lost the game for his team.*

ˌget sb/sth aˈway from sth to remove sb/sth from somewhere: *Get that dog away from me!* ◇ *Someone was trying to get Angela away from the window.*

NOTE **Get sb/sth away from sth** is not used in the passive.

◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌget aˈway with sth 1 to steal sth and escape with it: *Thieves raided the bank and got away with £50 000.* **2** (*also* **ˌget aˈway with doing sth**) (*informal*) to do sth wrong and not be punished or criticized for it: *I can't believe you cheated in the exam and got away with it!* ◇ *Nobody gets away with insulting me like that.* **3** to receive a relatively light punishment: *For such a serious offence he was lucky to get away with a fine.* OBJ **fine, warning**

◈ v + adv + prep

ˌget ˈback 1 (from/to sth/...) to return, especially to your home: *What time did you get back last night?* ◇ *We only got back from our trip yesterday.*

◇ *It'll take us ten minutes to get there and five minutes to get back.* **2** **(from sb/sth)** (*used especially to give orders*) to move away from a place, a person or sth that is happening: *Get back or I'll shoot!*

SYN **stand back; back off**

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌget sb ˈback 1 to persuade sb to begin a romantic relationship with you again, after you have been apart for some time: *I've done everything I can to get her back.* **2** **(for sth/for doing sth)** (*informal*) = GET BACK AT SB

NOTE **Get sb back** is not used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌget sb/sth ˈback **(to sth/…)** to take sb/sth back to a place after they have been away from it: *We'll get her back home before midnight.*

NOTE **Get sb/sth back** is not used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌget sth ˈback to obtain sth again after you have lost it, spent it, lent it to sb, etc: *She's got her old job back.* ◇ *I never lend people books; you never get them back.* ◇ *If I don't like the dress, can I get my money back?* ◇ *There isn't much of a chance of getting the wallet back* (= it has been stolen).

NOTE **Get sth back** cannot be used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

IDM **get your ˈbreath back** (*BrE*) to start breathing normally again after physical exercise: *It took me a while to get my breath back after running for the bus.* ◇ (*figurative*) *I haven't had a moment to get my breath back* (= I've been very busy) *since we came back from Prague.*

ˌget ˈback at sb (*also* **ˌget sb ˈback**) **(for sth/for doing sth)** (*informal*) to punish or hurt sb because they have done sth unpleasant to you: *This is his way of getting back at me for arguing with him.* ◇ *I'll get her back for what she's done.*

SYN **pay sb back (for sth/for doing sth)**

Ⓖ v + adv + prep • v + n/pron + adv

ˌget back ˈinto sth to start being interested or involved in a particular activity again: *She'll try to get back into journalism when the kids start school.* ◇ *How soon should I get back into serious training?*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌget ˈback to sb to reply to sb or contact them again by letter or by telephone: *Leave a message and I'll get back to you as soon as I can.* ◇ *They never got back to me about my order.*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌget ˈback to sth to start doing or talking about sth again; to return to sth: *To get back to what I was saying earlier…* ◇ *Once I was awake I couldn't get back to sleep.* ◇ *Let's get back to the point.*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌget ˈback with sb; **ˌget back toˈgether** to begin a romantic relationship with sb again, after you have been apart for some time: *Jack's getting back with his ex-girlfriend.* ◇ *Jack and his girlfriend are getting back together.*

→ *see also* GET TOGETHER 2

Ⓖ v + adv + prep • v + adv + adv

ˌget beˈhind **(with sth)** to not go as fast as is necessary or as other people; to not produce sth at the right time: *Once I get behind (with my work) it's very hard to catch up.* ◇ *We're getting behind with the rent.*

SYN **drop behind, drop behind sb/sth; fall behind, fall behind sb/sth** OPP **get ahead**

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌget beˈhind sb/sth 1 to move into a position behind sb/sth: *If you get behind the tree, she won't see you.* ◇ *He seems to go mad when he gets behind the wheel of a car.* **2** to reveal the person or thing responsible for starting or developing sth: *This is a programme that really gets behind the world of pop music.* **3** (*especially AmE*) to support sb/sth and help them to succeed: *The whole town got behind him/the campaign.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌget beˈyond sth 1 (*also* **ˌget ˈpast sth**) to move or advance further than a particular place: *I haven't been able to get beyond chapter one.* ◇ *When we got beyond York, it started to snow.* **2** (*also* **ˌget ˈpast sth**) to make progress so that you no longer do or are interested in a particular thing: *Hasn't she got beyond/past the stage of sucking her thumb yet?* **3** to become more than sth: *What if our losses get beyond 10%?*

Ⓖ v + prep

IDM **get beyond a ˈjoke** to become annoying and no longer acceptable: *This rain is getting beyond a joke. Let's go inside.*

ˌget ˈby to manage to live or do a particular thing using the money, knowledge, equipment, etc. that you have: *How does she get by on such a small salary?* ◇ *'Are you earning more money now?' 'I get by.'* ◇ *She's got a deadline to meet, so she's getting by on virtually no sleep.* ◇ *I don't know a lot of Italian, but I can get by.* ◇ *To begin with, you can get by with a few simple tools.* ◇ *Getting by isn't good enough for me. I want to be successful.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌget ˈby; **ˌget ˈby sb/sth** = GET PAST, GET PAST SB/STH

ˌget ˈdown 1 **(from sth)** to move from a higher position to a lower one: *The driver got down from his truck to help me.* OPP **get up** **2** to bend downwards from a standing position and sit, kneel or lie on the ground: *The children got down on their hands and knees and pretended to be lions.* ◇ *He's going to shoot! Get down!* OPP **get up** **3** **(to sth/…)** to visit or arrive at a place further south in the country than the place where you live: *How long did it take you to get down here?* OPP **get up** **4** **(from sth)** (*BrE*) (of children) to leave the table after a meal: *Please may I get down (from the table)?* **5** **(to sth)** (*spoken, informal*) to go to a place: *I'll get down there straight away.* ◇ *I've got five minutes to get down to the store.* **6** (*AmE, informal*) to relax and enjoy yourself, especially in a very lively way: *Let's* ***get down and party!***

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌget ˈdown; **ˌget ˈdown sth** to move from a higher place to a lower one, for example using stairs, a rope, a ladder, etc: *What are you doing on the table? Get down now!* ◇ *Did you get down the hill without any difficulty?* ◇ *How does water get down the back of the sink?*

OPP **get up, get up sth**

Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˌget sb ˈdown (*informal*) to make sb feel sad or depressed: *This weather is really getting me down.* ◇ *Don't let it get you down too much.*

SYN **depress sb**

NOTE **Get sb down** is not used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌget sb/sth ˈdown 1 **(to sth/…)** to send or move sb/sth to a place, often a place further south in a country: *Get somebody down here straight away.* ◇ *We'll need to get the boat down to the south coast.* OPP **get sb/sth up** **2** **(from sth)** to move sb/sth from a higher position to a lower one: *Can you get a jar down from the shelf for me?* ◇ *He got the baby down from the high chair and put her on the floor.* ◇ *Get your head down!* (= bend so that your head is low) *He's going to shoot!* NOTE In informal spoken language **get sb down sth** and, less often, **get sb sth down**, are also used: *Can you get me down that book?* ◇ *Can you get me that book down?*

NOTE **Get sb/sth down** is not used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌget sth ˈdown 1 (*also* **ˌget sth ˈdown sb/you** *informal*) to swallow sth, usually with difficulty: *The medicine was so horrible I could hardly get it down.* ◇ *Get this tea down you, then you'll feel better.* SYN **swallow sth** **2** to make a note of or record sth: *Get it down in writing.* ◇ *I just managed to get down the car's registration number.* ◇ *Did you get his name and telephone number down?* SYN **note sth down; take sth down; write sth down** **3** to reduce sth, especially the cost or price of sth: *If we bargain, we may be able to get the price down.* ◇ *How can I get my blood pressure down?* SYN **bring sth down; lower sth**

NOTE **Get sth down** cannot be used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)
1 also v + n/pron + prep

ˌget sb/sth ˈdown sth to manage to move sb/sth from a higher place to a lower one, for example using stairs, a rope, a ladder, etc: *I can't get the bookcase down the stairs on my own.*

NOTE **Get sb/sth down sth** cannot be used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

ˌget sth ˈdown sb/you (*informal*) = GET STH DOWN 1

ˌget ˈdown on sb/sth **(for sth)** (*AmE, slang*) to think that sb/sth is wrong and to criticize them: *She's always getting down on me for coming in late.* ◇ *It's easy to get down on kids from day to day and forget their good points.*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌget ˈdown to sth; **ˌget ˈdown to doing sth** to begin to do sth; to give serious attention to sth: *Let's* ***get down to business*** *straight away.* ◇ *Isn't it about time you* ***got down to work?*** ◇ *Read the text all the way through before you get down to translating it.*

OBJ **business, work**

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌget ˈin; **ˌget ˈinto sth 1** to arrive at a place: *When do you normally get in* (= arrive home) *from work?* ◇ *What time do you get into work in the morning?* ◇ *The train got in late.* ◇ *What time does your flight get into Heathrow?* **2** (*also* **ˌget ˈin sth** *informal*) to succeed in entering a place, especially a building: *How did the burglars get in?* ◇ *They broke a window to get into the house.* ◇ *You can't get in* (= to a concert, party, etc.) *without a ticket.* ◇ *Maybe we can get in the window?* OPP **get out, get out of sth** **3** (*also* **ˌget ˈin sth**) to enter or go inside sth: *He ran to the car, got in and drove off.* ◇ *I saw Jan getting into a cab.* ◇ *Hurry up and* ***get into bed.*** ◇ *Get in the car!* ◇ *He needs help getting in the bath.* ◇ *Luckily the poison hasn't got into her bloodstream.* ◇ *The smell of smoke got into all my clothes.* OPP **get out, get out of sth** **4** to be elected to a political position: *They need 326 seats to get in.* ◇ *The Republican candidate got in with a small majority.* ◇ *When did she first get into Parliament?* **5** to gain a place at a school, college, university, etc: *She's applied for Cambridge, but doesn't know if she'll get in.* ◇ *I tried to get into Harvard, but I wasn't accepted.* **6** (*also* **ˌget ˈin sth** *informal*) (*BrE, sport*) to be chosen as a member of a sports team: *He played well at the trials for the football team and got in.* ◇ *I'll never get into the senior side.* ◇ *Did you get in the team?*

→ *see also* GET INTO STH; GET INTO STH, GET SB/YOURSELF INTO STH

Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˌget ˈin sth = GET IN, GET INTO STH 2,3,6

ˌget sb ˈin 1 to call sb to your home, etc. to do a job for you: *We'll have to get a plumber in to mend the pipe.* **2** to attract a large audience: *A pantomime* *usually gets the crowds in.* SYN **pull sb in 3** (*also* **,get sb 'into sth**) to fit sb in a small place: *Can you get another person in* (= in a car, for example)? SYN **fit sb/sth in, fit sb/sth into sth 4** (*also* **,get sb 'into sth**) to make it possible for sb to get into a place, attend an event, etc: *If I come to the stage door, can you get me in?*

NOTE **Get sb in** cannot be used in the passive.

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

,get sth 'in 1 to collect or gather sth and bring it inside a place: *Did you get in the washing when it started raining?* ◇ *Can you get the bags in from the car?* ◇ *We worked hard all week to get the corn in.* SYN **bring sth in 2** to buy a supply of sth: *Have you got your coal in for the winter yet?* ◇ *Will you be getting any more of these dresses in?* ◇ (*informal*) *Who's going to get the beers in* (= buy beer for everybody)? **3** to manage to do, have, etc. sth, although there is not much time: *I can only get in an hour's piano practice a day.* ◇ *We ought to get in another meeting before the end of the month.* SYN **fit sth in 4** to manage to say sth, usually when there are lots of people talking: *She talks so much that it's impossible to **get a word in**.* ◇ *'Excuse me', I eventually got in, 'I think I can help you.'* OBJ **word 5** to manage to finish a piece of work and give it to sb in authority, for example your teacher: *Did you manage to get your project in on time?* **6** (*also* **,get sth 'into sth**) to fit sth in a small place: *How are we going to get everything in?* SYN **fit sth in, fit sth into sth**

NOTE **Get sth in** cannot be used in the passive.

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
3 v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv (*less frequent*)
4 also v + adv + speech

IDM **(not) get a word in 'edgeways** (*BrE*) (*AmE* **(not) get a word in 'edgewise**) to (not) be able to say anything because sb else is talking too much: *When those two get together, you can't get a word in edgeways.*

,get 'in on sth (*informal*) to become involved or take part in an activity: *How did she manage to get in on the deal?* ◇ *He's hoping to get in on any discussions about the new project.*

→ *see also* BE IN ON STH

◈ v + adv + prep

IDM **get ,in on the 'act** (*informal*) to become involved in an activity that sb else has started, especially to get sth for yourself: *Since the success of the first four-wheel drives, other companies are getting in on the act too.*

,get 'in with sb (*informal*) to try to become friendly with sb, especially in order to gain an advantage for yourself: *Have you noticed how he's trying to get in with the boss?* ◇ *She got in with a bad crowd at school.*

◈ v + adv + prep

,get 'into sb

◈ v + prep

IDM **what has got into sb?** (*spoken*) used to say that sb has started to behave in a strange or different way: *What's got into you?* ◇ *I don't know what's got into Georgia recently — she's so bad-tempered.*

,get 'into sth 1 to put on a piece of clothing, especially with difficulty: *I can't get into these shoes; they're too small.* ◇ *She wants to get into a size 40.* ◇ *Go upstairs and get into your pyjamas.* **2** to start a career in a particular profession: *Can you give me any advice on getting into advertising?* **3** (*also* **'get into doing sth**) to become involved in an activity; to start sth: *We got into a conversation about pollution.* ◇ *He got into taking drugs at school.* ◇ *Sam's always getting into fights.* ◇ *Are you sure you know what you're getting into?* OBJ **conversation, fight, argument 4** to develop a habit, a routine, etc: *I don't want to get into bad habits.* ◇ *We've got into a good routine with the baby now.* ◇ *Get into the habit of checking your work carefully.* OBJ **habit, routine** OPP **get out of sth 5** (*informal*) to develop a taste for or an interest in sth: *I'm really getting into jazz these days.* **6** to become familiar with sth; to learn sth: *I haven't really got into my new job yet.* **7** to be found and used in a particular way or by particular people: *I hope the story doesn't get into the papers.* ◇ *I don't want this file **getting into the wrong hands*** (= getting to people who should not see it).

→ *see also* GET IN, GET INTO STH; GET INTO STH, GET SB/YOURSELF INTO STH

◈ v + prep

,get 'into sth; ,get sb/yourself 'into sth to reach a particular state or condition, especially a bad or unpleasant one; to make sb do this: *Jerry was always getting into trouble as a boy.* ◇ *Her little brother was always getting her into trouble.* ◇ *My sense of humour often gets me into trouble!* ◇ *The company has got into difficulties* (= financial problems). ◇ *His passion for sailing has got him into debt.* ◇ *That's another fine mess I've got myself into!* ◇ *Do you realize what you're getting (yourself) into?*

OPP **get out of sth; get sb/yourself out of sth**

NOTE **Get sb into sth** cannot be used in the passive.

→ *see also* GET IN, GET INTO STH; GET INTO STH

◈ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

IDM **get sb into 'bed** to persuade sb to have a sexual relationship with you

,get sb 'into sth = GET SB IN 3,4

,get sth 'into sth = GET STH IN 7

,get 'off 1 to leave a place or start a journey: *We ought to get off straight after breakfast.* ◇ *to get off to bed/work* **2** **(with sth)** to escape or nearly escape punishment: *He got off with a small fine.* ◇ *Companies who pollute the environment have been **getting off lightly**.* **3** **(with sth)** to escape or nearly escape injury in an accident: *She was lucky to get off with just a few bruises.* **4** (*BrE, informal*) to go to sleep: *I couldn't **get off to sleep** last night.* **5** (*AmE, informal*, usually *disapproving*) to be bold enough to say or do sth: *I don't know where you get off saying that musicians don't make much money.* **6** (*AmE*, ⚠) to have an orgasm (= strong feelings of sexual pleasure)

◈ v + adv

IDM **get off to a flying 'start; get off to a 'flyer** to make a very good start: *The team have got off to a flying start this season.* **get off to a good, bad, slow, etc. start** to make a good, bad, slow, etc. start **get off on the right/wrong 'foot** (*informal*) to start a relationship well/badly: *Mark and I managed to get off on the wrong foot.*

,get 'off; ,get 'off sb (*informal*) used to tell sb to stop touching sb: *Get off (me)! You're hurting my arm!*

◈ v + adv • v + prep

,get 'off; ,get 'off sth 1 to leave a bus, train, plane, etc. that you are travelling in: *Ask the driver where to get off.* ◇ *Let's get off the bus and walk the rest of the way.* OPP **get on, get on sth** → *see also* GET OUT, GET OUT OF STH 2 **2** to move your body from sth you are sitting, standing, lying, etc. on, down to the ground: *Get off the table at once!* ◇ *Your bike's got a flat tyre. You'd better get off and walk.* OPP **get on, get on sth 3** to leave work with permission: *I normally get off at 5.30, but I'll try to get off earlier.* ◇ *What time do you get off work tomorrow?* **4** to stop touching sth: *Get off those cakes! They're for your grandparents.*

◈ v + adv • v + prep

,get 'off sth 1 to leave a place where you shouldn't really be: *Get off my land!* OBJ **land, property 2** to stop discussing a particular subject: *Doesn't she ever get off the subject of money?* OBJ **subject 3** to stop using the telephone: *Can you tell me when you get off the phone?* ◇ *Get off that phone! I'm waiting for a call.* OBJ **phone, line** OPP **get on sth 4** to stop using or doing sth that you have been using or doing as a habit: *I'm determined to get off the drugs.* OBJ **drugs, drink** → *see also* GET SB OFF STH 1 **5** (*AmE*) to say or write sth amusing

◈ v + prep

IDM **get off my 'back/'case** (*spoken, informal*) used to ask sb to stop annoying you by criticizing you or telling you to do things **get (sth) off the 'ground** to start happening successfully; to make sth do this: *The project was slow to get off the ground.* ◇ *to get a new company off the ground*

,get sb 'off 1 (to ...) to make or help sb leave a place or start a journey: *I'll come after I've got the children off to school.* **2** to make a baby, a child, etc. fall asleep: *She got the baby off to sleep by rocking her.* ◇ *When did you eventually get him off?* OBJ **baby 3** (*also* **,get sb 'off sth**) to help sb to escape punishment: *She's relying on clever lawyers to get her off.* ◇ *They managed to get him off the charge.*

NOTE **Get sb off** is not used in the passive.

◈ v + n/pron + adv **3** also v + n/pron + prep

,get sth 'off 1 to send sth by post/mail: *I must get these letters off tonight.* SYN **send sth off** (to sb) **2** to remove sth from sth; to manage to remove sth from sth: *Get your coat off and come and sit down.* ◇ *Her finger was so swollen that she couldn't get her ring off.* OBJ **clothes, coat** SYN **take sth off 3** to have permission from your employer not to go to work for a particular period of time: *Can you get some time off next week?* ◇ *I'll see if I can get the day off.* OBJ **time, day, week** SYN **take sth off** → *see also* GET STH OFF STH 2

NOTE **Get sth off** is not used in the passive.

◈ v + n/pron + adv

IDM **get it 'off (with sb)** (*AmE*, ⚠, *slang*) to have sexual relations with sb; to have strong feelings of sexual pleasure

,get sb 'off sth 1 to help sb to stop using or doing sth that they are in the habit of using or doing: *I need professional help to get me off the alcohol.* → *see also* GET OFF STH 4 **2** to stop sb from discussing a particular subject: *I couldn't get him off politics once he'd started* **3** = GET SB OFF 3

OPP **get sb onto sth**

NOTE **Get sb off sth** cannot be used in the passive.

◈ v + n/pron + prep

,get sth 'off sb (*informal*) to succeed in getting sb to give you sth: *Did you get that money off him?* ◇ *Our team couldn't get the ball off them.*

NOTE **Get sb off sth** cannot be used in the passive.

◈ v + n/pron + prep

,get sth 'off sth 1 to manage to remove sth from sth; to remove sth from somewhere: *Can you get the top off this bottle?* ◇ *She got a jar of coffee off the shelf.* ◇ *Get your feet off the chair!* **2** to get permission from your employer not to go to work during a particular period of time: *Do you think you can get the week off work?* OBJ **time, day, week** → *see also* GET STH OFF 3

SYN **take sth off sth**

NOTE **Get sth off sth** cannot be used in the passive.

◈ **1** v + n/pron + prep
2 v + n/pron + prep + n

,get 'off on sth; ,get 'off on doing sth (*informal*) to become very excited by sth, often in a sexual way or because of drugs: *She seems to get off on shouting at people.*

◈ v + adv + prep

,get 'off with sb; ,get 'off together (*informal, especially BrE*) to start a sexual or romantic rela-

tionship with sb: *Sam got off with Kate at the party.* ◇ *Sam and Kate got off together at the party.* ◇ *He was trying to get off with her.*
◆ v + adv + prep • v + adv + adv

,get 'on 1 (*also* **,get a'long**) **(with sb/together)** to have a friendly relationship with sb: *My mum and I never really got on (together).* ◇ *Do you get along all right with your boss?* ◇ *Do you and your boss get along all right?* ◇ *I'm glad you get on so well with her.* **2** **(with sth)** to start an activity or continue doing sth, especially after an interruption: *Be quiet and get on with your dinner!* ◇ *Let's get on with the meeting.* ◇ *She got on with the job quietly.* ◇ *If you're going to tell us, just get on with it!* ◇ *I'd love to talk but I must get on.* ◇ *All I want is to get on with my life.* **3** **(in sth)** to be successful in your career: *She's keen to get on in her career.* ◇ *Having contacts is the only way to get on in the art world.* **4** (*also* **,get a'long**) **(with sth)** used to talk about how well sb is doing a task, managing a situation, etc: *How's Jan getting on at college?* ◇ *Are you getting on alright with your project?* ◇ *I can get along without him easily.* ◇ *I'm not getting on very fast with this job.* ◇ *How did you get on in your exams?* **5** (*often used in the progressive tenses*) to leave a place, because you have lots to do: *It's time we were getting on.* → *see also* GET ALONG 1
◆ v + adv

IDM **be getting 'on 1** (of a person) to be becoming old **2** (of time) to be becoming late: *The time's getting on — we ought to be going.* **be, getting 'on for...** to be near a particular time, age or number: *It must be getting on for midnight.* ◇ *I think he's getting on for 40.* **be, getting 'on towards/toward...** (*especially AmE*) to be near a particular time, especially a time that is late: *It must be getting on toward midnight by now.*

,get 'on; ,get 'on sth 1 (*also* **,get 'onto sth**) to get into a bus, plane, train, etc: *How did he manage to get on the wrong plane?* ◇ *Did Jack manage to get on?* ◇ *Did anyone see Sue getting onto the bus?* OBJ **plane, bus, train** SYN **board, board sth** (*more formal*) OPP **get off, get off sth** NOTE Enter sth cannot be used with this meaning. **2** (*also* **,get 'onto sth**) to move your body so that you are standing, sitting or lying on sth: *He got on his bike and rode off.* ◇ *How did the rabbit get onto the table?* OPP **get off, get off sth 3** to leave one road and join another: *You'll need to get on the motorway at Birmingham.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep

,get 'on sth 1 **(to sb)** to pick up the telephone and try to call sb: *Get on the phone (to them) and tell them you can't come.* OBJ **phone, telephone, line** OPP **get off sth 2** (*also* **,get 'onto sth**) to be successful in being chosen to do sth such as be on a radio or television programme, etc: *She'd do anything to get on the telly.* **3** (*also* **,get 'onto sth**) to gain a place on a course, a committee, etc: *I was very lucky to get onto the course.* **4** (*also* **,get 'onto sth**) to be dropped, rubbed, etc. on sth; to fall on sth: *How did that mud get on the carpet?* ◇ *Be careful that the oil doesn't get onto your clothes.*
◆ v + prep

'get on sth; 'get sb on sth used especially in offices to mean to make telephone calls, or to contact sb by phone: *I'll get on the phone and find out exactly what he wants.* ◇ *I couldn't get him on the phone all day.* ◇ *Shall I get her on the line?*
NOTE Get sb on sth is not used in the passive.
◆ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

,get sth 'on 1 to put on, or to manage to put on, an item of clothing, jewellery, etc: *Get your coat on and we'll go for a walk.* ◇ *My finger's swollen and I can't get my ring on.* OBJ **coat, shoes** OPP **get sth off 2** to start preparing or cooking a meal, a drink, etc: *It's nearly 6 o'clock. I must get the dinner on.* ◇ *Get the kettle on and make us a nice cup of tea.* OBJ **dinner, kettle**
SYN **put sth on**
NOTE Get sth on is not used in the passive.
◆ **1** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)
2 v + n/pron + adv
IDM **,get it 'on (with sb)** (*slang, especially AmE*) to have sex with sb

,get sb/sth 'on sth (*also* **,get sb/sth 'onto sth** *less frequent*) **1** to manage to put sb/sth onto a place: *It took four people to get the piano on the stage.* ◇ *Get him onto a chair and call an ambulance.* **2** to make sth reach a particular state or condition: *How did you get mud on your coat?*
NOTE Get sb/sth on sth is not used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep
IDM **get your 'hands on sb/sth** to find, obtain or catch sb/sth: *I'll need anything I can get my hands on.* ◇ *Just wait until I get my hands on him!*

,get 'on at sb to criticize sb a lot: *She's always getting on at me.*
◆ v + adv + prep

,get 'on to = GET ONTO

,get 'onto sb; ,get 'on to sb 1 (*informal*) to contact sb, especially by telephone or letter: *If you've got a complaint you'd better get onto the manager.* **2** to become aware of sb's activities, especially ones they want to keep secret: *I don't want the police getting onto me.* → *see also* BE ONTO SB
◆ v + prep • v + adv + prep

,get 'onto sth 1 = GET ON STH 2,3,4 **2** (*also* **,get 'on to sth**) to begin to discuss a new subject: *We somehow got onto the subject of exams.* ◇ *It's time we got onto the question of cost.* OBJ **subject, question 3** (*also* **,get 'on to sth**) (*spoken, informal*) to start working on or thinking about sth: *I'll get onto it right away.* → *see also* BE ONTO STH **4** = GET ON, GET ON STH 1,2
◆ v + prep

,get sb 'onto sth; ,get sb 'on to sth 1 to introduce sb to sth, especially sth harmful: *Who got her onto drugs in the first place?* **2** to make sb start discussing a particular subject: *Don't get Ken onto politics or we'll be here all night!*
OPP **get sb off sth**
NOTE Get sb onto sth cannot be used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep • v + n/pron + adv + prep

,get sb/sth 'onto sth = GET SB/STH ON STH

,get 'out 1 if news, etc. gets out, it becomes known, even though people are trying to keep it a secret: *If word gets out there'll be trouble.* ◇ *When it got out that we'd won the lottery, we couldn't escape press photographers.* SYN **leak out 2** to have a social life outside your home: *You need to get out more.* SYN **go out** → *see also* GET AROUND 3 **3 Get out!** (*AmE, informal*) used to show that you do not believe sth: *Get out! Ed actually said that?*
◆ v + adv

,get 'out; ,get 'out of sth 1 to leave or go out of a place such as a car, a lift, a room or a house: *The car door opened and a tall man got out.* ◇ *I have a lot of trouble getting out of bed in the mornings.* ◇ *Close the door to stop the heat getting out.* ◇ *Get out and don't come back!* ◇ *Do you need help getting out of the bath?* OPP **get in, get into sth 2** to leave a bus, train, plane, etc. that you are travelling in: *The bus driver will tell you where to get out.* OPP **get on, get on sth** → *see also* GET OFF, GET OFF STH 1 **3** to manage to find a way out of a place: *It's very difficult getting out of the city in the rush hour.* ◇ *The thieves must have got out through the window.* **4** to leave a place, an organization, etc. in order to avoid difficulty or danger: *They were able to get out of the country before the war started.* ◇ *The company's in trouble — you should get out while you can.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + prep

,get sb 'out (in cricket) to end the time when sb is hitting the ball, for example by forcing them to make a mistake: *If England can get Richards out, they might win the match.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

,get sb 'out; ,get sb 'out of sth to help or make sb leave a place: *Get everyone out* (= out of a building) *quickly!* ◇ *I couldn't get the kids out of bed this morning.* ◇ (*figurative*) *I can't get her out of my mind.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + adv + prep

,get sth 'out 1 to say sth with difficulty: *She was laughing so much she could hardly get the words out.* ◇ *I wanted to tell him how I felt, but I couldn't get it out.* OBJ **words 2** to produce or publish sth: *Will we get the book out by the end of the year?*
NOTE Get sth out is not used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

,get sth 'out; ,get sth 'out of sth 1 to remove or take sth out of a place, a container, etc: *Get your violin out and we'll start the lesson.* ◇ *He started to get his wallet out (of his pocket)* (= to pay) *but I insisted on paying.* ◇ *I'll need to get some money out* (= out of the bank). ◇ *She got out her cigarettes and offered me one.* ◇ *I'll try and get that book out of the library.* ◇ (*figurative*) *I can't get the argument out of my mind.* SYN **take sth out, take sth out of sth 2** to remove a stain, etc. from sth: *Did you manage to get out that oil stain?* ◇ *I can't get the red wine out of the carpet.* OBJ **stain**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*) •
v + n/pron + adv + prep
IDM **get sth out of your 'system** (*informal*) to do or say sth so that you no longer feel a very strong emotion or have a very strong desire: *I need to get the anger out of my system.* ◇ *You'll feel better once you've got it all out of your system.*

,get 'out of sth 1 (*also* **,get 'out of doing sth**) to avoid a responsibility or duty; to not do sth that you ought to do: *We promised we'd go — we can't get out of it now.* ◇ *I'll see if I can get out of going to the meeting.* **2** to stop having a particular habit: *I can't get out of the habit of waking up early.* ◇ *I don't want the children to get out of their routine.* ◇ *Try to get out of the habit of eating between meals.* OBJ **habit, routine** OPP **get into sth 3** to escape from a difficult situation: *Sometimes I feel I'll never get out of debt.* ◇ *How are we going to get out of this mess?* OBJ **debt, mess, trouble** OPP **get into sth 4** to remove an item of clothing: *Come in and get out of those wet clothes.*
OPP **get into sth**
◆ v + adv + prep
▶ **'get-out** *n* [usually sing.] a way of avoiding sth; an excuse: *They're looking for a good get-out.* ◇ *The agreement contains a number of get-out clauses.*

,get 'out of sth; ,get sb/yourself 'out of sth to escape from a particular state or condition, especially a bad or unpleasant one; to make or help sb do this: *Jack always uses his wits to get out of trouble.* ◇ *The situation is getting out of control.* ◇ *Who can get us out of this mess?* ◇ *This new job should help me get out of debt.*
OPP **get into sth; get sb/yourself into sth**
NOTE Get sb out of sth cannot be used in the passive.
◆ v + adv + prep • v + n/pron + adv + prep

,get sth 'out of sb to obtain sth from sb, usually by persuading or threatening them: *The police have got a confession out of her.* ◇ *It's not worth trying to get money out of him!* ◇ *I couldn't get a word out of her.*
OBJ **word, money, the best**
◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌget sth ˈout of sth; ˌget sth ˈout of doing sth to gain, obtain or achieve sth from a particular occasion, situation or activity: *She seems to get a lot out of life.* ◇ *He gets a lot of pleasure out of buying presents for the children.* ◇ *I didn't get much out of the conference.* ◇ *I don't feel she's getting the most out of her studies.* ◇ *John* ***gets a kick out of*** (= gets a lot of pleasure and excitement from) *driving fast cars.*
OBJ **pleasure, enjoyment**
◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌget ˈover (*also* **ˌget yourself ˈover** *informal*) **[+adv/prep]** to go to a place or to arrive somewhere: *How much will it cost you to get over to Ireland?* ◇ *I'd better get over there right now to see her.* ◇ *Get yourself over there now and tell him how you feel.*
◆ v + adv • v + pron + adv

ˌget ˈover sb/sth to return to your usual state of health, happiness, etc. after the end of a relationship with sb, an illness, a shock, etc: *He never really got over Jennifer* (= when their relationship finished). ◇ *I'm still getting over my cold.* ◇ *My pride was hurt, but I'll get over it.*
◆ v + prep

ˌget ˈover sth 1 to deal with or gain control of sth: *Eddy's got to learn to get over his shyness.* OBJ **shyness, problem** SYN **overcome sth** NOTE **Get over sth** can be used in the passive in this meaning: *I think the problem can be got over without too much difficulty.* **2** (*informal*) (*usually used in a negative sentence with* ***can't*** *or* ***couldn't***) to believe that sth surprising or unexpected really did happen or is true: *I can't get over* (= I'm very surprised or shocked by) *how much she's changed!* SYN **believe sth 3** to climb or cross sth high: *Can you get over the wall on your own?*
◆ v + prep

ˌget sb ˈover [+adv/prep] to arrange for sb to go or come to a place: *Get a reporter over here straight away!* ◇ *Shall we get my parents over for dinner tonight?*
NOTE **Get sb over** is not used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌget sth ˈover 1 (to sb) = GET STH ACROSS (TO SB) **2** (*informal*) to complete sth necessary and usually unpleasant: *Can we just get this test over?* ◇ *Let's tell her the news now and* ***get it over with.*** ◇ *I'll be glad to* ***get the exam over and done with.***
NOTE **Get sth over** is not used in the passive.
◆ **1** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
2 v + n/pron + adv

ˌget yourself ˈover [+adv/prep] = GET OVER

ˌget sb/sth ˈover sth = GET SB/STH ACROSS STH

ˌget sth ˈover sth to make sth reach a particular state or condition: *How did you manage to get chocolate all over your clean T-shirt?*
NOTE **Get sth over sth** is not used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌget ˈpast; ˌget ˈpast sb/sth (*also* **ˌget ˈby, ˌget ˈby sth** *less frequent*) **1** to manage to move past sb/sth: *He tried to get past them and run for the door.* ◇ *Once we get past this truck I can speed up.* **2** to pass sb/sth without being noticed, caught or stopped: *It'll be difficult to get past the ticket collector without paying.* ◇ *The movie will never get past the censors.* ◇ *Very few goals get past the goalkeeper.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˌget ˈpast sth = GET BEYOND STH 1, 2

ˌget sb/sth ˈpast sb/sth 1 to manage to move sb/sth past sb/sth: *I couldn't get the baby's buggy past the car parked on the pavement.* **2** to make sb/sth go past sb/sth without being noticed, stopped or caught: *You won't get any goals past him!* ◇ *How did you get your article past the editor?*
NOTE **Get sth past sb/sth** is not used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌget ˈround; ˌget ˈround sth (*BrE*) (*also* **ˌget aˈround, ˌget aˈround sth** *AmE, BrE*) **1** (in sport, a race, etc.) to complete a course and return to the beginning: *How long did it take you to get round (the course)?* **2** to fit in a circle around a table, etc: *Can we all get round (the table)?*
◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˌget ˈround sb (*also* **ˌget aˈround sb** *especially AmE*) to persuade sb to let you do or have sth, or to do what you want, often by being nice to them: *I'll try and get round my dad tonight and persuade him to give us a lift.*
NOTE **Get round/around sb** can be used in the passive, but this is not common: *Do you think your brother can be got around?*
◆ v + prep

ˌget ˈround sth (*BrE*) **1** = GET AROUND STH 1 **2** = GET AROUND STH 2 **3** (*also* **ˌget aˈround sth** *especially AmE*) to deal with a problem successfully; to avoid sth: *There's no getting round it. We're just going to have to pay.* ◇ *A clever lawyer might be able to get round that clause.* NOTE In this meaning, **get round sth** can be used in the passive: *There must be a way these rules can be got round.*
◆ v + prep

ˌget ˌround/aˈround to sth; ˌget ˈround/aˈround to doing sth to find the time to do sth: *I haven't got round to asking him yet.* ◇ *One of these days I'll get around to buying a new car.* ◇ *I'm going to write to Uncle Joe, but I haven't got around to it yet.*
◆ v + adv + prep

ˌget ˈthrough 1 (to sb) to make contact with sb by telephone: *I tried ringing you but I couldn't get through.* ◇ *We had great trouble getting through to the right person on the phone.* **2 (to sb)** to make sb understand or accept what you say to them, especially when you are trying to help them: *I don't feel I'm getting through (to her).* ◇ *Do you think the message is getting through?* ◇ *How can I* ***get it through to him*** *that he's wasting his life in that job?* **3 (to sb/sth)** to succeed in reaching a place or a person: *Thousands of refugees will die if these supplies don't get through (to them).* **4 (to sth)** to reach the next stage of a competition: *Henman got through to the final.* ◇ *I really wasn't expecting to get through!*
◆ v + adv

ˌget ˈthrough; ˌget ˈthrough sth 1 to survive a difficult or unpleasant experience or period in your life: *He wouldn't have got through (it) without her.* ◇ *I don't know how I got through the day.* OBJ **day** SYN **survive, survive sth** NOTE **Get through sth** can be used in the passive in this meaning: *These difficult times just have to be got through.* → *see also* GET SB THROUGH, GET SB THROUGH STH 1 **2** to be successful in an examination, a test, etc: *Tom failed but his sister got through.* ◇ *The whole class got through the exam.* OBJ **exam** SYN **pass, pass sth 3** to manage to pass through a hole, gap, etc. to reach the other side: *The gap's not very wide. Do you think you can get through?* ◇ *Sophie's probably small enough to get through the window.* ◇ *The sun was still trying to get through (the clouds).* OBJ **window** → *see also* GET STH THROUGH, GET STH THROUGH STH 2 **4** to be officially approved or accepted: *Do you think the bill will get through (Congress)?* OBJ **Parliament, Congress** → *see also* GET STH THROUGH, GET STH THROUGH STH 1
◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˌget ˈthrough sth 1 (*especially BrE*) to use up the amount or quantity of sth mentioned: *She gets through forty cigarettes a day.* ◇ *Have we got through all that milk already?* **2** to manage to do or complete sth: *I've got a lot of work to get through today.* ◇ *We must get through the syllabus before the end of the year.* OBJ **work**
NOTE **Get through sth** can be used in the passive: *There are a lot of jobs to be got through.*
◆ v + prep

ˌget sb ˈthrough; ˌget sb ˈthrough sth 1 to help sb survive a difficult or unpleasant experience or period in their life: *I'm depending on luck to get me through.* ◇ *A good breakfast will help you get through the morning.* → *see also* GET THROUGH, GET THROUGH STH 1 **2** to help sb to be successful in an examination, a test, etc: *My mum got me through my driving test.* ◇ *These grades should just get me through.* → *see also* GET THROUGH, GET THROUGH STH 2 **3 (to sth)** to help a player or team to reach the next stage of a competition: *He was responsible for getting them through that round.* ◇ *A stroke of luck may get us through to the final.*
NOTE **Get sb through** and **get sb through sth** are not used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌget sth ˈthrough (to sb/sth) to manage to send sth to a person or place: *I really need to get a message through to them.* ◇ *We must get food through to Ethiopia.*
NOTE **Get sth through** is not used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌget sth ˈthrough; ˌget sth ˈthrough sth 1 to make sth be officially approved or accepted: *I'm still trying to get the proposal through.* ◇ *Will he manage to get the bill through parliament?* OBJ **bill 2** to cause sth to pass through sth: *Can you get your car through the gate?* ◇ *My hair was so tangled that I couldn't get a comb through it.*
NOTE **Get sth through** and **get sth through sth** are not used in the passive.
→ *see also* GET THROUGH, GET THROUGH STH 3
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˈget to sb (*informal*) to begin to annoy, anger, upset or affect sb, even though they try not to let it: *His constant nagging is beginning to get to her.* ◇ *Don't let her get to you.* ◇ *Seeing him so sad really got to me.*
◆ v + prep

ˈget to sth to arrive at a place or reach a particular situation, age, time, etc: *The train gets to London at 6 o'clock.* ◇ *I didn't get to bed until after midnight last night.* ◇ *It's got to the stage/point where I don't want to go home.* ◇ *When you get to my age you're a bit more relaxed about things.* ◇ *It got to 4 o'clock and she still hadn't arrived.* ◇ *I wonder* ***where*** *Anthony's* ***got to*** (= where he is/what he is doing)?
OBJ **bed, stage, point**
◆ v + prep

ˈget to doing sth to reach the point where you do sth; to begin to do sth: *He got to thinking that perhaps she wouldn't come after all.*
◆ v + prep

ˌget toˈgether (with sb) 1 to meet with sb for social purposes or to discuss or organize sth: *We must get together for a drink some time.* ◇ *The management should get together with the union to discuss their differences.* ◇ *Local residents have got together and started a petition.* **2** to begin a relationship with sb: *Did you two get together (with each other) at university?* → *see also* GET BACK WITH SB, GET BACK TOGETHER
◆ v + adv
▶ **ˈget-together** *n* (*informal*) an informal social meeting; a small party: *a family get-together* ◇ *We're having a little get-together to celebrate Jane's exam results.*

ˌget A and B toˈgether to help two people begin a romantic relationship with each other: *I was the one who got them together.*
SYN **bring A and B together**
NOTE **Get sb together** is not used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌget sb/sth toˈgether to bring people or things together in one place: *She's getting her things together ready to leave.* ◇ *Do you think you could get together a team for Saturday's match?* ◇ *We're getting a band together.* ◇ (*figurative*) *We'll need some time to* ***get our ideas together*** *and come up with a plan.* ◇ *Can you get the money together by Friday?* ◇ *Do you think you can get together a proposal by next week?* ◇ *I haven't got anything together for the trip.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
IDM **get your ˈact together** (*informal*) to become properly organized in order to be able to deal with or achieve sth: *If he gets his act together he could be very successful.* ◇ *The government needs to get its act together on unemployment.* **get it toˈgether (with sb)** (*informal*) **1** to start a romantic or sexual relationship with sb: *I didn't know Bill and Gina had got it together!* **2** to become properly organized in order to be able to deal with or achieve sth: *The team needs to get it together if they want to win the match.*

ˌget yourself toˈgether to manage to control your feelings in a difficult situation: *She paused outside the door to get herself together.*
SYN **pull yourself together**
◆ v + pron + adv

ˌget ˈup 1 to stand after sitting, kneeling, etc: *Everyone got up when the President came in.* ◇ *He got up slowly from his chair.* ◇ *Get up off the floor!* **2 [+ adv/prep]** to visit or travel to a place (usually somewhere further north in the country): *When are you going to get up to Glasgow for a visit?* ◇ *He doesn't get up to see me very often.* ◇ *I won't be able to get up there until Wednesday.* OPP **get down 3** if the sea or the wind **gets up**, it increases in strength and becomes violent: *As the sun went down, a breeze got up.*
◆ v + adv
▸ **ˌget-up-and-ˈgo** *n* [U] (*informal*) the quality of being energetic and determined: *She's got lots of get-up-and-go.*

ˌget ˈup; ˌget sb ˈup to get out of bed; to make sb get out of bed: *What time do you usually get up?* ◇ *Could you get me up early tomorrow?* ◇ *Get up, you lazy thing!*
◆ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌget ˈup; ˌget ˈup sth to climb to the top of sth such as a hill, steps, etc: *How did the cat get up there?* ◇ *He can't really get up the stairs on his own.* ◇ *We used ropes to get up the mountain.* ◇ *I had to get up on the desk and shout to get somebody's attention.*
OBJ **mountain, hill, stairs, steps** OPP **get down, get down sth**
◆ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌget ˈup sth 1 to make yourself feel excited, full of energy, etc: *I'm trying to* ***get up the enthusiasm*** *to do some Christmas shopping.* OBJ **enthusiasm, energy 2** to organize sth such as a public event or action: *Parents are getting up a petition against the closure of the local school.* ◇ *We're getting up a party for her birthday.*
◆ **1** v + adv + n
2 v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)
IDM **get up ˈspeed** to start to go faster: *We'll be able to get up speed once we get onto the motorway.*

ˌget sb/sth ˈup 1 (to sth) to send or move sb/sth to another place, often a place further north in the country: *We need to get somebody up there straight away.* ◇ *How can we get all our equipment up to Leeds?* OPP **get sb/sth down 2** (*also* **ˌget sb/sth ˈup sth**) to move sb/sth from a lower position to a higher one: *Can you get me up onto the chair?* ◇ *How did you get the bed up the stairs?*
OPP **get sb/sth down; get sb/sth down sth**
NOTE **Get sb/sth up** is not used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv **2** also v + n/pron + prep

ˌget sth ˈup 1 to build sth; to put sth into an upright position: *They got the building up in just a few months.* ◇ *Can you get the tent up while I go and find water?* **2** if sb **gets** their hopes **up**, they start to hope and believe that sth they want will happen: *I don't want to get your hopes up, but there will probably be a place on the course for you.* OBJ only **hopes**
NOTE **Get sth up** is not used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv
IDM **get sb's ˈback up** (*informal*) to annoy sb: *He really gets my back up when he behaves like that!* **get it ˈup** (*slang*) (of a man) to become sexually excited so that the penis is hard and upright

ˌget sb/yourself ˈup as/in sth to dress sb/yourself in unusual or strange clothes: *She was got up as an Indian princess.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep
▸ **ˈget-up** *n* (*old-fashioned, informal*) a set of clothes, usually an unusual or strange one: *He looked ridiculous in that get-up!*

ˌget ˈup to sth 1 to reach a particular point: *We got up to page 72 last lesson.* ◇ *I've got to get up to intermediate level in French in a year.* **2** (*informal*) to be doing or be involved in sth, especially sth that is surprising or unpleasant: *What on earth will he get up to next?* ◇ *What have you kids been getting up to?* ◇ *The boys are lively and* ***get up to mischief*** *all day.* ◇ *She's been getting up to her old tricks again!*
◆ v + adv + prep

ginger /ˈdʒɪndʒə(r)/

ˌginger sb/sth ˈup (*BrE*) to make sb/sth more active, interesting or exciting: *Some dancing would ginger up the party.* ◇ *They need some excitement to ginger them up a bit.*
◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

give /ɡɪv/ (**gave** /ɡeɪv/ **given** /ˈɡɪvn/)

~ away
~ back
~ for
~ in
~ of
~ off
~ onto
~ out
122 ~ over
~ over to
~ up
~ up on
~ up to

ˌgive sb aˈway 1 (in a marriage ceremony) to lead the woman who is getting married to the man she is going to marry and formally allow her to marry him: *Her father gave her away.* **2** (*BrE*) to give a baby or a child to another person to take care of as their own child: *She had never understood why her mother had given her away.*
→ *see also* GIVE SB UP 2
◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌgive sb/sth/yourself aˈway to do or say sth that shows sth about sb/sth/yourself that was a secret: *It was her eyes that gave her away* (= showed how she really felt). ◇ *He never gives very much away about himself.* ◇ *She had given away state secrets to the enemy.* ◇ *I found I could tell lies confidently without giving myself away.*
OBJ **nothing, anything, little** SYN **betray sb/sth/yourself** (*more formal*)
◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
IDM **ˌgive the ˈgame away** to tell a secret, especially by accident; to show sth that has been hidden: *I don't want to give the game away by telling you how the movie ends.*
▸ **ˈgiveaway** *n* (*informal*) something that makes you guess the real truth about sth: *He said he was French, but his accent was* ***a dead giveaway****!* (= showed clearly that he was not French)
→ *see also* GIVEAWAY at GIVE STH AWAY

ˌgive sth aˈway to give sth to sb as a gift: *He decided to give most of his money away.* ◇ *We have 200 tickets to give away free to our viewers.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **ˈgiveaway** *n* (*informal*) something that a company gives free, usually with a product for sale, to persuade people to buy it
→ *see also* GIVEAWAY at GIVE SB/STH/YOURSELF AWAY
▸ **ˈgive-away** *adj* [only before noun] (*informal*) (of prices) very low

ˌgive sb ˈback (to sb) to return a child to its parents: *We love our grandchildren dearly, but we are happy to give them back at the end of the day!*
◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌgive sth ˈback (to sb) to return sth to its owner: *You can't have it. Give it back!* ◇ *Have you given back the money you borrowed from your father?* ◇ *Can you lend me $20? I'll give it back to you later.* ◇ *The new law gives some power back to the people.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The operation gave him back the use of his legs.*
SYN **hand sth back (to sb); return sth (to sb)** (*more formal*)
NOTE In informal language **give sb back sth** and, less often, **give sb sth back** are also used: *Could you give me back my pen?* ◇ *Could you give me my pen back?* In very informal spoken English, you can also say: *I'll give you it back tomorrow* or *I'll give it you back tomorrow.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˈgive sth for sth to pay or give a particular amount to have or do sth: *How much did you give for the car?* ◇ *I'd give anything for a cold beer.*
NOTE **Give sth for sth** is not used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌgive ˈin (to sb/sth) 1 to accept that you have been defeated or persuaded by sb: *I give in – you'll have to tell me the answer.* ◇ *Eventually I gave in to temptation and had an ice cream.* **2** to finally agree to do sth that you do not want to do: *We mustn't give in to terrorist demands.* ◇ *She gives in to the children all the time to avoid arguments.*
OPP **hold out (against sb/sth)**
◆ v + adv

ˌgive sth ˈin (to sb) to hand sth to sb in authority, for example a teacher: *Please give your test in (to the teacher) when you've finished.*
SYN **hand sth in (to sb)**
◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˈgive of sth; ˈgive of yourself (*formal*) to give your time or money willingly to help other people without expecting them to do anything for you: *She's always willing to give of her time to help the homeless.* ◇ *The teacher encourages all the children to* ***give of their best****.*
OBJ **time, best**
◆ v + prep ◆ v + prep + pron

ˌgive ˈoff sth; ˌgive it/them ˈoff 1 to produce sth such as heat, light, smoke, etc: *Burning apple wood gives off a pleasing smell.* OBJ **smell, aroma, light, gas** → *see also* GIVE STH OUT 2 **2** to give a particular impression by the way you look or behave: *She gave off an air of confidence.*
NOTE A noun must always follow **off**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **off**.
◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv (*less frequent*)

ˈgive onto sth (*BrE*) if a door, a window, etc. **gives onto** sth, it has a view of it or leads directly to it: *French windows give onto a balcony.*
◆ v + prep

ˌgive ˈout 1 to come to an end; to be used up: *My patience finally gave out.* ◇ *We were fine until the batteries in the torch gave out.* SYN **run out 2** if an engine, a machine, etc. **gives out**, it stops working, especially because it is old or damaged: *One of the plane's engines gave out.* ◇ (*figurative*) *His heart gave out just before his eightieth birthday.* SYN **break down**
◆ v + adv

ˌgive sth ˈout 1 to hand sth to a lot of people: *The teacher gave out the exam papers.* ◇ *I'll write up the report and give it out to the whole department.* OBJ **cards, leaflets** SYN **hand sth out (to sb)** NOTE In informal spoken language **give sb out sth** is also used: *I'll give you out the cards later.* **2** to produce sth, such as light or heat: *That lamp doesn't give out a lot of light.* OBJ **light, heat, noise** → *see also* GIVE OFF STH, GIVE IT/THEM OFF 1 **3** (*BrE*) to tell people sth or broadcast sth: *No details of the accident have been given out yet.* ◇ *The leader of the opposition has **given out that** she is resigning.* OBJ **information** NOTE **Give sth out** is often used in the passive in this meaning.
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌgive ˈover (*BrE, spoken, informal*) used to tell sb to stop doing sth: *Give over! I can't work with you shouting like that.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌgive sb/sth ˈover to sb to let sb have sb/sth so that they can look after or have responsibility for them/it: *We gave the house over to my uncle when we went to live abroad.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv + prep ◆ v + adv + n + prep

ˌgive sth ˈover to sth to use sth only for a particular activity or purpose: *The newspapers gave six pages over to the tragedy.* ◇ *Much of the countryside is given over to agriculture.*
NOTE **Give sth over to sth** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv + prep ◆ v + adv + n + prep

ˌgive yourself ˈover/ˈup to sth; ˌgive yourself ˈover/ˈup to doing sth to spend all your time and energy on sth; to allow sth to completely control your life: *After his wife's death, he seemed to give himself over to despair.* ◇ *I want to give myself over to writing full-time.*
Ⓖ v + pron + adv + prep

ˌgive ˈup; ˌgive sth ˈup; ˌgive ˈup doing sth 1 to stop trying to do sth, usually because it is too difficult: *She doesn't give up easily — she keeps on trying.* ◇ *I tried to fix the car myself, but gave up the attempt after a couple of hours.* ◇ *I've given up trying to understand her.* → *see also* GIVE IN (TO SB/STH) **2** to stop doing or having sth that you consider unhealthy: *It's about time you gave up smoking.*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*) ◆ v + adv + -ing

ˌgive sb ˈup 1 to stop having a friendship or a relationship with sb: *I'm not going to give up all my friends just because I'm getting married.* ◇ *He gave her up for a younger woman.* **2** to give a baby to sb else to bring up: *She gave the baby up for adoption.* → *see also* GIVE SB AWAY 2 **3** (*also* **ˌgive ˈup on sb** *especially AmE*) to stop hoping that sb will arrive or is still alive: *Where have you been? We'd given you up!*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n **2** also v + adv + prep

IDM **give sb up for ˈlost/ˈdead** (*formal*) to no longer hope or expect that sb will arrive or is still alive

ˌgive sth ˈup 1 to stop doing or having sth: *He's **given up the idea** of becoming a model.* ◇ *She'd **given up all hope of** seeing him again.* **2 (to sb)** to let sb else have sth, sometimes because they need it more than you: *Children rarely give up their seats to older people on buses now* (= stand up so that they can sit down). **3 (to sb)** to hand sth over to sb else: *Do I have to give up my old passport when I apply for a new one?* **4** to spend time doing sth when you would normally be doing sth else: *Thanks for giving up your time to come and help us.* OBJ **time, the morning, etc. 5 (for sb/to do sth)** to stop doing or having sth that you enjoy so that you can do or achieve sth that you consider more important: *I gave up everything for my family.* ◇ *She gave it all up to be with him.*
NOTE **Give sth up** is not often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*) **3** v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
IDM **let's give it up for sb** (*spoken, informal, especially AmE*) used to ask people to hit their hands together several times (to **clap**) to show they approve of sb or have enjoyed sth

ˌgive yourself ˈup (to sb/sth) to allow yourself to be arrested or captured: *After a week on the run he gave himself up to the police.*
SYN **surrender (to sb/sth)**
Ⓖ v + pron + adv

ˌgive ˈup on sb (*informal*) **1** to lose hope that sb will get better, change, etc: *I've given up on her. She never replies to my letters.* ◇ *His teachers seem to have given up on him.* **2** (*especially AmE*) = GIVE SB UP 3
Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌgive ˈup on sth (*informal*) to stop hoping that sth will be successful or will happen: *I haven't given up on my marriage yet* (= I think we can save it). ◇ *Have you given up on the idea of emigrating?*
Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌgive yourself ˈup to sth; ˌgive yourself ˈup to doing sth = GIVE YOURSELF OVER/UP TO STH, GIVE YOURSELF OVER/UP TO DOING STH

glance /glɑːns; *AmE* glæns/

ˌglance ˈoff sth if a ball, etc. **glances off** sth, it touches it lightly and moves away from it in a different direction: *The ball glanced off the goal post into the net.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌglance ˈoff/ˈon sth if light **glances off/on** sth, it flashes on a surface or is reflected from it: *the sun glancing on water*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌglance ˈover/ˈthrough sth to look at or read sth very quickly and not very thoroughly: *Could you glance over this document for me?* ◇ *I glanced through a magazine while I waited.*
OBJ **book, list**
Ⓖ v + prep

glaze /gleɪz/

ˌglaze ˈover if a person's eyes **glaze over**, the person begins to look very bored or tired: *Her eyes glazed over when they started talking about football.* ◇ *I started to glaze over at that point.*
NOTE Glaze can also be used with the same meaning: *Her eyes glazed with tears.*
Ⓖ v + adv

glom /glɒm; *AmE* glɑːm/ **(-mm-)**

ˌglom ˈonto sth (*AmE, slang*) to become very interested in sth such as a new fashion or an idea: *The whole nation glommed onto the scandal.*
Ⓖ v + prep

glory /ˈglɔːri/ **(glories, glorying, gloried, gloried)**

ˈglory in sth (*literary*) **1** to get great pleasure or enjoyment from sth: *He gloried in his son's success.* ◇ *I gloried in the beauty of the scenery.* **2** to take pleasure in sth: *She seemed to glory in his failure.*
Ⓖ v + prep

gloss /glɒs; *AmE* glɔːs, glɑːs/

ˌgloss ˈover sth to treat sth such as a problem, mistake, etc. as if it was not important and avoid discussing it in detail: *The manager glossed over the team's recent defeat.* ◇ *The movie glosses over the real issues of the war.*
NOTE **Gloss over sth** can be used in the passive: *This question has been glossed over by politicians.*
Ⓖ v + prep

gnaw /nɔː/

ˈgnaw at sb to make sb feel gradually more anxious or annoyed over a long period of time: *These doubts had been gnawing at him for some time.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌgnaw aˈway at sth to gradually have a harmful effect on sth over a long period of time: *His attitude towards her gnawed away at her confidence.*
Ⓖ v + adv + prep

go /gəʊ; *AmE* goʊ/ (**goes** /gəʊz; *AmE* goʊz/ **went** /went/ **gone** /gɒn; *AmE* gɔːn, gɑːn/)

NOTE **Been** is used as the past participle of **go** when sb has gone somewhere and come back.

~ about
~ about together
~ about with
~ across
~ after
124 ~ against
~ ahead
~ along
~ along with
~ around
~ around together
~ around with
125 ~ at
~ away
~ away with
~ back
~ back on
~ back over
~ back to
126 ~ before
~ beyond
~ by
~ down
127 ~ down on
~ down to
~ down with
~ for
~ forth
~ forward
~ in
128 ~ in for
~ in with
~ into
~ off
129 ~ off with
~ on
130 ~ out, out of
~ out for
~ out of
~ over
131 ~ over to
~ past
~ round
~ round together
~ round with
~ through
132 ~ through with
~ to
~ together
~ towards
~ under
~ up
~ up against
~ up to
~ with
~ without
133 ~ up against
~ up to
~ with
~ without

ˌgo aˈbout; ˌgo aˈbout sth (*BrE*) = GO AROUND, GO AROUND STH 3

ˌgo aˈbout; ˌgo aˈbout sth; ˌgo aˈbout doing sth (*BrE*) = GO AROUND, GO AROUND STH, GO AROUND DOING STH

ˈgo about sth to continue to do sth in your usual way, especially after sth unusual has happened; to keep busy with sth: *Everybody was going about their business as usual.*
OBJ **your business, the business of…, work, task**
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌgo aˈbout sth; ˌgo aˈbout doing sth to start to work at sth; to approach or deal with sth: *I want to help, but I don't know how to go about it.* ◇ *How should I go about finding a job?* ◇ *You're not going about it the right way.* ◇ *It seems a strange way of **going about things**.*
OBJ **things** SYN **set about sth, set about doing sth; tackle sth**
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌgo aˈbout with sb; ˌgo aˈbout together (*BrE*) = GO AROUND WITH SB, GO AROUND TOGETHER

ˌgo aˈcross; ˌgo aˈcross sth to cross a room, a road, a river, etc. in order to get to the other side: *We borrowed a boat and went across to the island.* ◇ *Can you go across the road to the store for me?*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌgo ˈafter sb/sth 1 to chase or follow a person or an animal to try to catch them: *He went after the burglars.* ◇ *Aren't you going to go after her to see if she's all right?* **2** to try to get or obtain sb/sth: *We're both going after the same job.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌgo aˈgainst sb if a result, a judgement, etc. **goes against** sb, it is not in their favour or to their advantage: *The jury's verdict went against him.* ◇ *The war is going against us.*

◈ v + prep

ˌgo aˈgainst sb/sth to resist or oppose sb/sth; to act in a different way from what sb tells you or advises you to do: *Anyone who goes against me will be punished.* ◇ *He was going against his doctor's advice by continuing to work.* ◇ *Don't go against your parents' wishes.*

◈ v + prep

ˌgo aˈgainst sth to be opposed or contrary to sth; to not fit or agree with sth: *This goes against everything I believe in.* ◇ *Paying for my children's education goes against my principles.*

OBJ **principles, beliefs**

◈ v + prep

IDM **go against the ˈgrain** to be sth different from what is normal or natural for you and so sth you do not like doing: *It went against the grain to have to agree with my brother.*

ˌgo aˈhead 1 (*also* **ˌgo aˈhead of sb**) to go in front of other people who are going in the same direction as you and arrive before them: *She went ahead of him into the house.* ◇ *You go ahead and we'll follow when we're ready.* **2** (of a plan, a project, a deal, etc.) to be carried out or happen: *The building of the new bridge will go ahead as planned.* ◇ *Filming went ahead in spite of the bad weather.* SYN **proceed** (*formal*) **3 (with sth)** if sb **goes ahead** with sth, they do it, although there may be a problem, or sb may have objected or expressed doubts: *In spite of her illness, Anna decided to go ahead with the wedding.* ◇ *'May I start now?' 'Yes, go ahead* (= I give you permission).' SYN **proceed (with sth)**

◈ v + adv **1** also v + adv + prep

▸ **the ˈgo-ahead** *n* [sing.] permission or approval for sth to start: *Has the boss **given** you the **go-ahead** for the project?*

▸ **ˈgo-ahead** *adj* [usually before noun] (*BrE*) very ambitious; trying hard to succeed, often by using new methods and ideas: *a go-ahead young designer*

ˌgo aˈlong 1 to progress; to develop or improve: *Things are going along nicely.* **2 (to sth) (with sb)** to go somewhere or to an event with sb: *I went along to the club a couple of times.* ◇ *Sam said he'd go along to the party with us.* **3** (*especially AmE*) to do what sb else suggests or does: *Whatever Ed said, Max went right along.*

◈ v + adv

IDM **as you go aˈlong** while you are doing sth: *He made the story up as he went along.* ◇ *I was never taught how to use a computer. I just picked it up as I went along.*

ˌgo aˈlong; **ˌgo aˈlong sth** to move forward or from one end of sth towards the other: *The bus rattled as it went along.* ◇ *I went along a dark narrow passage, past several doors.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌgo aˈlong with sb/sth 1 (*especially BrE*) to agree with sb/sth: *I can't go along with you on that point.* **2** to accept sth or do sth, especially when you do not really want to: *They didn't like the idea, but they went along with it.* ◇ *I didn't want to make him angry, so I just went along with him* (= I didn't argue with him). SYN **fall in with sth** (*BrE*)

◈ v + adv + prep

ˌgo aˈround (*AmE*) = GO ROUND

ˌgo aˈround; **ˌgo aˈround sth** (*BrE also* **ˌgo ˈround, ˌgo ˈround sth**) **1** to visit a group of people or places, one by one: *I'll go around and check all the doors are locked.* ◇ *We spent all afternoon going round the shops.* ◇ *She went round the table and said goodbye to everyone.* **2** (of a note, etc.) to be sent round a group of people so that everyone can read it: *A card's going around for people to sign.* ◇ *A memo went around the department.* **3** (*BrE also* **ˌgo aˈbout, ˌgo aˈbout sth**) if a piece of news, an illness, etc. **goes around**, it spreads from one person to another: *There's a rumour going around that Sam and Kate are having an affair.* ◇ *There's a nasty virus going round the school.* SYN **float around, float around sth 4** to move or be placed in a circle: *The cyclist was going round the roundabout the wrong way.* ◇ *The earth goes round the sun.* ◇ (*figurative*) *We're going round in circles in this argument.* **5** to be enough for everyone to have a share: *There aren't enough chairs to go round.* ◇ *Is there enough food to go around all the guests?* **6** to move around the outside of sth in order to get past sth or get to the other side: *We didn't go into the city. We went around it.* ◇ *Because of the flood, we had to go round by the minor roads to get to school.* **7** to travel in a country or place and visit lots of different things: *We travel around by bus.* ◇ *They're saving up to go around the world.* ◇ *We're planning to go round visiting all the temples.* **8** to visit every part of a room or building: *How long does it take to go around the museum?* ◇ *A guide will go round with you.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

IDM **what ˌgoes around ˈcomes around** whatever happens now will have an effect in the future

ˌgo aˈround [+ adv/prep], **ˌgo aˈround sth** [+ adv/prep], **ˌgo aˈround doing sth** (*BrE also* **ˌgo ˈround/about** [+ adv/prep] **ˌgo ˈround/about sth** [+ adv/prep] **ˌgo ˈround/aˈbout doing sth**) to dress or behave in a particular way; to do sth regularly: *She goes around barefoot most of the time.* ◇ *It's not safe to go about the streets alone.* ◇ *You can't go round spreading rumours like that.* ◇ *The kids went around in gangs, dressed completely in black.*

NOTE **Go around/round/about** and **go around/round/about sth** are used with an adverb or a phrase beginning with a preposition.

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌgo aˈround sb/sth (*BrE also* **ˌgo ˈround sb/sth**) to surround or go in a circle around sb/sth: *I felt his arm going around my shoulder.* ◇ *The belt won't go round my waist!*

◈ v + prep

ˌgo aˈround sth (*BrE also* **ˌgo ˈround sth**) to move or travel around a corner: *The car's tyres screeched as it went round the bend.* ◇ *Maggie watched until Jess had gone around the corner and was out of sight.*

OBJ only **corner, bend**

◈ v + prep

IDM **go round the ˈbend/ˈtwist** (*informal, especially BrE*) to go crazy: *If I have to stay in this place another day, I'll go round the bend!*

ˌgo aˈround with sb; **ˌgo aˈround together** (*BrE also* **ˌgo aˈbout/ˈround with sb, ˌgo aˈbout/ˈround together**) (*becoming old-fashioned*) to spend a lot of time with sb or with a group of people: *Ann goes around with Sue.* ◇ *Ann and Sue go around together.* ◇ *These are the people I used to go around with.*

SYN **hang around with sb, hang around together**

◈ v + adv + prep ◆ v + adv + adv

ˈgo at sb to attack sb: *He went at me like a wild animal.*

◈ v + prep

ˈgo at sth to make great efforts to do sth; to work hard and with enthusiasm at sth: *They went at the job as if their lives depended on it.* ◇ *He was going at the food as though he hadn't eaten for days.*

◈ v + prep

IDM **go at it ˌhammer and ˈtongs** if two people **go at it hammer and tongs**, they argue or fight with a lot of energy and noise

ˌgo aˈway 1 to leave a place or a person: *Go away! You're annoying me!* ◇ *Go away and think about it a bit.* **2** to leave home for a period of time, especially for a holiday/vacation: *They went away for the weekend.* ◇ *Are you going away on holiday this year?* ◇ *She goes away on business a lot.* **3** to disappear gradually: *The smell still hasn't gone away.* ◇ *Has your headache gone away?* ◇ *The longing never went away.*

OPP **come back**

◈ v + adv

ˌgo aˈway with sth to leave a place with a particular feeling or impression: *I don't want people to go away with the wrong idea.*

◈ v + adv + prep

ˌgo ˈback 1 (to sth/...) to return to a place where you were before: *Can we go back inside?* ◇ *I made a cup of tea and went back to bed.* ◇ *When are you going back to Australia?* **2 (to sth)** to return to school or work after a break: *The children have to go back to school next week.* **3 (to sb/sth)** to be in a situation that you were in before: *We can never go back to how things were before* (= in a relationship, for example). ◇ *Once you have taken this decision, **there's no going back**.* ◇ *I don't think Emily will go back to her husband* (= live with him again). **4 (to sth)** to return to work after being on strike: *The strikers won't go back (to work) until they get a pay rise.* **5 (to sth)** (*informal*) (of sth that you have bought or borrowed) to be returned to the place where you got it: *This toaster will have to go back to the shop — it doesn't work properly.* ◇ *When does this video have to go back?* **6** (of clocks and watches) to be set to an earlier time when the time changes at the end of summer: *The clocks go back tonight. We get an extra hour in bed.* OPP **go forward**

◈ v + adv

ˌgo ˈback... 1 if two people **go back** a period of time, they have known each other and have been friends for that time: *Adam and I **go back a long way**.* **2** (*also* **ˌgo ˈback to sth**) to have existed since a particular time in the past: *Our friendship goes back fifteen years.* ◇ *This tradition goes back to medieval times.* SYN **date back..., date back to sth 3** (*also* **ˌgo ˈback to sth**) to consider sth that happened in the past: *To trace the origins of the problem, we have to go back to the 18th century.* ◇ *I'm **going back a few years** now...* (= I'm talking about sth that happened some years ago)

◈ v + adv **2,3** also v + adv + prep

ˌgo ˈback on sth to fail to keep a promise; to change your mind about sth: *She never **goes back on her word*** (= fails to do what she has said she will do). ◇ *He went back on his promise.* ◇ *I don't like to go back on what I said.*

OBJ **your promise, your word**

◈ v + adv + prep

go ˈback over sth to think about sth again or often: *I went back over the day's events in my mind.*

◈ v + adv + prep

ˌgo ˈback to sth 1 to start talking about sth again: *To go back to what you were saying before...* SYN **return to sth 2** = GO BACK... 2 **3** = GO BACK... 3

◈ v + adv + prep

ˌgo ˈback to sth; **ˌgo ˈback to doing sth 1** to start doing sth again that you had stopped doing: *Tom turned over and went back to sleep.* ◇ *I wouldn't go back to living in the city.* ◇ *She's decided to go back to teaching.* ◇ *John's going back to college to get some more qualifications.*

2 (of a situation) to return to what it was before sth else happened: *Things haven't gone back to normal yet.*

SYN **return to sth**

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌgo beˈfore (*literary*) (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to exist or happen in an earlier time: *The present crisis is worse than any that have gone before.*

NOTE **Go before** is usually used in the past or perfect tenses.

Ⓖ v + adv

ˈgo before sb/sth (of a legal case, a proposal or an issue) to be presented to sb/sth so that they can discuss it or make a decision or a judgement about it: *When does his case go before the judge?*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌgo beˈyond sth to be greater, better, etc. than sth: *The price we got for the painting went beyond all our expectations* (= was much better than we had expected). ◇ *The matter has* ***gone beyond a joke*** (= has become very serious and is no longer amusing).

SYN **exceed sth** (*formal*)

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌgo ˈby (of time) to pass: *As time goes by, my memory seems to get worse.* ◇ *The weeks went slowly by.* ◇ *Hardly a day went by without Anthony's name being mentioned.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˈgo by; **ˈgo by sb/sth 1** to pass sb/sth without stopping: *Did you see a boy go by on a bicycle?* ◇ *We sat and* ***watched the world go by*** (= watched people passing). ◇ *They waved to us as we went by the window.* SYN **pass by, pass by sb/sth 2** (*AmE*) to stop somewhere or visit sb for a short time, often on your way to somewhere else: *I'll go* ***by and*** *see him on my way home.* ◇ *Would you go by the grocery store for me?* SYN **drop by; stop by**

Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˈgo by sth 1 to be guided or directed by sth; to form an opinion or a judgement from sth: *That's a good rule to go by.* ◇ *If past experience* ***is anything to go by****, Tom will be late!* ◇ *I shall go entirely by what my solicitor says.* **2** to call yourself a particular name, which may not be your real name: *For her crime novels, she goes by the name of Monica Simon.* OBJ only **the name of...**

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌgo ˈdown 1 (to.../sth) (from.../sth) to travel from one place to another, especially from the north of a country to the south: *We're going down to London next week.* OPP **go up 2** to fall to the ground: *She tripped and went down with a bump.* **3** to become lower or smaller; to fall: *The price of petrol is going down/Petrol is going down (in price).* ◇ *The temperature went down by 10 degrees overnight.* ◇ *Rental costs have gone down (£50) since last year.* ◇ *The flood waters are going down.* ◇ *Membership numbers have gone down recently.* ◇ *The swelling has gone down a little.* SYN **drop; fall** OPP **go up 4 [+ adv]** if a remark, a performance, an action, etc. **goes down** well or badly, etc. it gets a good or bad reaction from people: *Did your performance go down all right* (= did people like it)? ◇ *The movie went down well in America.* ◇ *Jokes don't go down too well with my mother* (= she does not like them). ◇ *The band* ***went down a storm*** (= people liked them very much). **5** (of the sun and moon) to disappear below the point where the sky seems to meet the land or the sea (the **horizon**): *We watched the sun go down.* SYN **set** OPP **come up; rise 6** to get worse: *The quality of the product has gone down since the company was sold.* ◇ *He's certainly gone down in my estimation* (= I don't have the good opinion of him that I used to). ◇ *The food's gone down since the restaurant changed hands.* SYN **deteriorate** (*more formal*) OPP **go up 7** (*computing*) if a computer system **goes down**, it stops working temporarily: *I lost all my work when the computer went down.* **8** (of food, a meal, etc.) to be digested or partly digested: *Let your food go down before you go swimming.* **9 [+ adv]** if food or drink will/will not **go down**, it is easy/difficult to swallow, or you enjoy it/do not enjoy it: *My drink* ***went down the wrong way*** *and I started coughing.* ◇ *A cup of tea would go down nicely* (= I would like one). **10** when the curtain in a theatre **goes down**, it is the end of the performance: *The audience were cheering as the curtain went down.* ◇ (*figurative*) *After 25 years, the curtain has finally gone down on his sparkling career.* OPP **go up 11** when lights **go down** in a theatre, the performance is about to start: *She quickly found a seat before the lights went down.* OPP **go up 12 [+ adv/prep]** to reach down to a particular point: *Pepita's coat is so big it goes right down to her ankles.* **13** (of a tyre) to lose air: *My tyre's gone down again.* **14** (*BrE, informal*) to be sent to prison: *He's gone down for twenty years.* **15** (of a carpet) to be put on the floor: *It'll feel a lot warmer when the carpet goes down.* **16** (of a plane) to fall from the sky; to be brought to the ground: *'The plane's going down!' he cried.* **17** (of a ship) to sink: *Hundreds died when the ferry went down.* **18** to fail; to behave badly and lose people's respect: *If the business goes down, we go down with it.* **19** to be defeated by sb, especially in a sports game or competition: *Liverpool went down 2-0 to Everton.* **20 (to sth)** (*especially BrE*) to be made to move to a lower position, rank, class, status, etc: *We need to win the next two games to avoid going down.* OPP **go up 21 (in sth) (as sth)** to be written down; to be recorded or remembered in a particular way: *Everything I said went down in his little book.* ◇ *1998 will go down as the company's best year.* ◇ *He will go down in history as a great statesman.* **22** (*slang, especially AmE*) to be happening: *She always knows what's going down.* ◇ *What's going down?* **23 (from...)** (*BrE, formal*) to leave a university (especially Oxford or Cambridge) at the end of a term or after finishing your studies: *She went down (from Cambridge) in 1984.* OPP **go up**

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌgo ˈdown; **ˌgo ˈdown sth** to move from a higher position to a lower one; to go along sth from one end towards the other: *One end of the see-saw goes up while the other end goes down.* ◇ *The pain goes down my arm.* ◇ *I've just got to go down to Jim's office with these papers.* ◇ *Will we go down any steep hills?* ◇ *You'll see the museum if you go down the road a bit.* ◇ *It was hard enough to get up here* (= a mountain, for example), *and now we've got to go down!* ◇ *Their company has decided to* ***go down the same path*** (= do the same things) *as ours.*

OBJ **road, stairs, hill** OPP **go up, go up sth**

Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

IDM **go down the ˈdrain** (*BrE also* **go down the ˈplughole**) to be wasted; to get much worse **go down ˈthat road** to follow a particular course of action, especially a difficult or harmful one: *He said he'd never used drugs because he'd seen too many talented kids go down that road.*

ˌgo ˈdown on sth to lower your body towards the ground, especially so that you are kneeling: *I* ***went down on my hands and knees*** *to look for the pen.* ◇ *I'm not going to go down on my knees and beg him to forgive me.*

OBJ **hands and knees, knees, one knee, all fours**

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌgo ˈdown to .../sth to go to a place near where you are, or a place you often go to: *Shall we go down to the beach for a swim?* ◇ *I'm going down to the corner shop for some milk.*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌgo ˈdown with sth (*especially BrE*) to become ill with sth: *I think I'm going down with a cold.*

SYN **come down with sth; sicken for sth; catch sth; get sth**

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˈgo for sb/sth 1 to attack sb/sth: *She went for him with a knife.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The newspapers really went for him over his defence of terrorism.* **2** to apply to sb/sth; to be true of sb/sth: *What I said about Tim helping goes for you too, Alex.* ◇ *We may have high unemployment, but the same goes for many other countries.* ◇ *Terry needs to relax more, and* ***the same goes for you****.* **3** to go to get sb/sth: *Shall I go for a doctor?* ◇ *She's gone for some milk.* **4** to be attracted by sb/sth; to like or prefer sb/sth: *He's not the type I usually go for.* ◇ *Children usually go for colourful packaging.*

Ⓖ v + prep

IDM **(have) a lot, nothing, etc. ˈgoing for it/you** (to have) many/not many advantages: *She has a good job, she's attractive and intelligent — she has a lot going for her.* ◇ *The town doesn't really have much going for it.*

ˈgo for sth 1 to choose sth: *I think I'll go for the steak.* ◇ *Which computer system are they going for?* **2** to try to get or achieve sth: *Did you go for that job?* ◇ *He's going for the world record.* ◇ ***Go for it!*** *You've got nothing to lose.* ◇ *That's a great idea!* ***Go for it!*** **3** to be sold for the price mentioned: *These computers usually go for under £1 000.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌgo ˈforth (*literary*) to leave a place and go somewhere, especially in order to do sth good or brave

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌgo ˈforward 1 to make progress; to begin to happen or be successful: *The project is going forward nicely.* ◇ *Now that we have his agreement, the deal can go forward.* **2** (of clocks and watches) to be set one hour ahead at the beginning of summer: *The clocks go forward tonight. We have an hour less in bed.* OPP **go back 3** to be suggested as a candidate for a job or an elected position, etc: *Her name has gone forward for the job.* **4 (to sth)** to win one stage of a competition, etc. and be able to take part in the next stage: *Which teams will go forward to the second round?*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌgo ˈin 1 (of the sun or moon) to disappear behind a cloud: *The sun went in and it grew colder.* OPP **come out 2** (*informal*) (of facts, information, etc.) to be absorbed, understood and remembered: *I keep studying, but these dates just won't go in.* SYN **sink in 3** (of a piece of equipment, furniture, etc.) to be built or fitted in a place: *The kitchen will be finished once the fridge has gone in.*

→ *see also* GO IN, GO IN STH, GO INTO STH; GO IN, GO INTO STH; GO INTO STH

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌgo ˈin; **ˌgo ˈin sth**; **ˌgo ˈinto sth 1** to enter a room, a house, etc: *It's getting cold; let's go in.* ◇ *Let's go in the kitchen — it's warmer.* ◇ *Why did you go into my office?* ◇ *Are you going into town today?* **2** to fit into a container, etc: *The suitcase is full already — those shoes definitely won't go in.* ◇ *I'm amazed that all the luggage went in the car.* ◇ *All the photos will go into this box.* **3** (*informal*) to join an organization, especially one of the armed forces or the police: *He was 17 when he went in the army.* ◇ *Ed wants to go into the Marines.* **4** (of the ball in sports played with a ball, etc.) to enter the goal, net, hole, etc. and score points: *Did you see if the ball went in?* ◇ *He kicked the ball hard enough to go into the back of the goal.*

→ *see also* GO IN; GO IN, GO INTO STH; GO INTO STH

Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˌgo ˈin; ˌgo ˈinto sth 1 to go to an office or another place of work in order to work, do a particular task, have some work done for you, etc: *I've got to work tomorrow, but I can always go in late.* ◇ *The car needs to go in* (= into the garage) *for a service.* ◇ *Are you going into work tomorrow?* **2** to go to a hospital to receive treatment, tests, etc: *I'm going in on Friday for an X-ray.* ◇ *When is Cara going into hospital?* **3** (of soldiers, an army, etc.) to go to a place where there is fighting or a war and become involved in it: *Troops are going in tonight.*

→ *see also* GO IN; GO IN, GO IN STH, GO INTO STH; GO INTO STH

G v + adv • v + prep

ˌgo ˈin for sth (*especially BrE*) **1** to take part in a competition; to take an exam: *She goes in for all the competitions in the magazines and never wins anything.* ◇ *Which events are you going in for at the school sports?* ◇ *She's going in for the Cambridge First Certificate.* **2** = GO INTO STH 3 *He decided to go in for politics.*

SYN **enter sth**

G v + adv + prep

ˌgo ˈin for sth; ˌgo ˈin for doing sth to like sth and regularly use it, do it, etc.; to have sth as an interest or a hobby: *She goes in for very bright colours.* ◇ *He doesn't really go in for making long speeches.* ◇ *My family don't go in for that sort of thing.* ◇ *She never went in for dancing.*

G v + adv + prep

ˌgo ˈin with sb (on sth) to join sb in a particular project, activity, business, etc: *Jack went in with some friends to start a car hire business.* ◇ *I'll go in with you on* (= I'll give you some money for) *Mary's present.* ◇ *My brothers are opening a garage and they want me to go in with them.*

G v + adv + prep

ˌgo ˈinto sth 1 (of a vehicle) to hit sth violently; to crash into sth: *The car skidded and went into a tree.* **2** (of a vehicle or driver) to start a particular movement: *The truck went into a spin on a patch of ice.* ◇ *The plane went into a nosedive.* **3** (*also* **ˌgo ˈin for sth**) to decide to do a particular kind of work as your job or career: *When did you decide to go into politics?* ◇ *She's going into publishing.* ◇ *Sanjay's gone into business with his father.* OBJ **politics** SYN **take sth up 4** to begin to be in a particular state or situation: *She went into a coma after the accident.* ◇ *The country is going into a decline.* ◇ *The company has gone into liquidation.* ◇ *The family has gone into hiding.* OBJ **liquidation, production, decline, hiding, exile, a coma 5** to begin to act or behave in a particular way: *He went into a long explanation of the affair.* ◇ *Divers were there, ready to* ***go into action*** *if the stunt went wrong.* **6** to examine or discuss sth carefully: *I won't* ***go into details*** *now.* ◇ *We need to go into the question of costs.* ◇ *She's not coming, for reasons which I won't go into now.* **7** (*also* **ˌgo ˈinto doing sth**) (of money, time, effort, etc.) to be spent on sth; to be used to do sth: *More money needs to go into rebuilding the inner cities.* ◇ *I can see that a lot of time and effort has gone into your project.* ◇ *A huge amount of work went into making the occasion a success.* ◇ *A lot of skill, love and work had gone into the garden.* **8** to start taking part in an exam, a competition, an election, etc: *I can't go into the exam unprepared.* **9** if one number **goes into** a larger number, it is contained in that number the number of times mentioned: *5 goes into 25 five times.* ◇ *Does 13 go into 39?* NOTE Notice also the example: *5 into 24* ***won't go.***

→ *see also* GO IN; GO IN, GO IN STH, GO INTO STH; GO IN, GO INTO STH

G v + prep

ˌgo ˈoff 1 (to sth) to leave a place, especially in order to do sth: *You go off and have fun.* ◇ *When are you going off on your trip?* ◇ *Have the children gone off to school yet?* ◇ *Everyone went off happy.* ◇ *I can't believe Ed went off without saying goodbye!* ◇ *My parents have just gone off to bed.* **2** (of a weapon, etc.) to be fired; to explode: *The gun went off by accident.* ◇ *The bomb went off in a crowded street.* SUBJ **gun, bomb 3** (of an alarm) to make a sudden loud noise or flash: *She got up as soon as the alarm clock went off.* ◇ *The thieves ran away when the burglar alarm went off.* SUBJ **alarm, alarm clock, fire alarm 4** if a light, the electricity, etc. **goes off**, it stops working: *Suddenly all the lights went off.* ◇ *The heating comes on at 6 and goes off at 9.* SUBJ **lights** OPP **come on; go on 5** **[+ adv]** if a performance, etc. **goes off** well/badly, it is successful/not successful: *The show went off very well.* ◇ *How did the concert go off?* ◇ *The performance* ***went off without a hitch*** (= without any problems at all). **6** (*BrE*) if food or drink **goes off**, it becomes bad and not fit to eat or drink: *This milk has gone off.* SUBJ **milk, meat 7** (*especially BrE*) to become worse in quality: *Her books have gone off in recent years.* **8** (*informal, especially BrE*) to fall asleep: *Hasn't the baby gone off (to sleep) yet?* SYN **drop off**

G v + adv

ˌgo ˈoff; ˌgo ˈoff sth 1 to move away from sth large or important and go in a different direction: *The road you want goes off on the right.* ◇ (*figurative*) *She's always going off the point* (= not talking about the main topic). **2** to leave the stage, the sports field, etc. during a play or a game: *Hamlet goes off in the middle of the scene.* ◇ *Johnson went off at half-time.*

G v + adv • v + prep

ˌgo ˈoff sb/sth (*informal, especially BrE*) to lose interest in sb/sth; to stop liking sb/sth: *I think she's going off me.* ◇ *He's gone off his food.* ◇ *I've gone off the idea of a holiday in Scotland.*

G v + prep

ˌgo ˈoff with sb to leave your husband, wife, partner, etc. in order to have a relationship with sb else: *Eddie's gone off with his wife's best friend.*

SYN **run away/off with sb**

G v + adv + prep

ˌgo ˈoff with sth to leave a place with sth that does not belong to you: *Who's gone off with my new pen?*

SYN **make off (with sth)**

G v + adv + prep

ˌgo ˈon 1 (of a situation or a state of affairs) to continue to happen or exist without changing: *We can't let this dispute go on.* ◇ *Things can't go on as they are.* ◇ *In spite of everything, life must go on.* ◇ *We* ***can't go on like this!*** SYN **carry on; continue 2** to last for a particular time: *The meeting went on for hours.* ◇ *How much longer will this hot weather go on (for)?* SYN **carry on; last 3 (with sth)** to continue an activity, especially after a pause or a break: *I'm sorry I interrupted. Go on with your story.* ◇ *The children quietly went on with their work.* ◇ *Let's take a break. We'll go on when you're ready.* SYN **carry on (with sth) 4 (with sth)** (*also* **ˌgo ˈon doing sth**) to continue an activity without stopping: *When I came into the room, the boss just went on with what she was doing and didn't look up.* ◇ *I could have gone on listening to Ted's stories all night.* ◇ *I'd prefer to go on doing things my own way.* SYN **carry on (with sth), carry on doing sth 5** to continue speaking after a short pause: *'You know', he went on, 'I never liked her.'* ◇ *Go on then! Tell me what happened!* ◇ *She hesitated for a moment, and then went on.* SYN **carry on 6** (of a light, the electricity, etc.) to start to work; to be switched on: *Suddenly all the lights went on.* OPP **go off 7** (of time) to pass: *Things will improve as time goes on.* ◇ *She became more miserable as the evening went on.* SYN **go by 8** (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) to take place; to happen: *What's going on here?* ◇ *Who knows what goes on when I'm away.* ◇ *There must be a party going on next door.* ◇ *She ignores a lot of what goes on.* **9 (to sth/to do sth)** to do sth after you have finished sth else: *Do all the students go on to work in catering?* ◇ *Let's go on to the next item on the agenda.* ◇ *The boys went on to a club, but I decided to go home.* **10 ˌgo ˈon!** (*informal*) used to encourage or dare sb to do sth: *Go on! Have another cake.* ◇ *Go on! Try it!* ◇ *Go on! Ask her out! I dare you!* **11 (about sb/sth)** to continue talking to sb for a long time about the same person or thing, usually in an annoying way: *They keep going on about their trip.* ◇ *What is she going on about?* ◇ *My parents* ***went on and on*** *about how successful my sister is.* SYN **bang on about sb/sth** (*BrE, informal*) **12 (at sb) (about sth)** (*especially BrE*) to complain to sb about their behaviour, work, etc: *My dad went on at me about not having a job.* ◇ *Stop going on at me!* ◇ *She keeps going on at me to dress better.* SYN **carry on (at sb) (about sth); criticize sb 13** to continue to travel in the direction you are going: *I'm too tired to go on.* ◇ *They had an accident and couldn't go on.* SYN **carry on 14 (ahead/to sth)** to travel in front of sb else: *Jack's going on ahead to get the house ready.* ◇ *Shall we wait for Ray or shall we go on into town without him?* **15** (of a road, a piece of land, etc.) to cover a particular distance in a particular direction: *The desert seemed to go on forever.* **16** (of an actor or a performer) to walk onto the stage to begin their performance: *She doesn't go on till Act 2.* **17** (in sport) (of a player) to join a team instead of another player during a game: *Allen went on (in place of Brown) just before half-time.* **18 go on** (*spoken, informal, especially BrE*) used to agree to do or allow sth that you do not really want to do or allow, after sb has persuaded you: *'Are you sure you won't come?' 'Oh go on then, but I won't be able to stay long.'* **19 go on!** (*old-fashioned, BrE, spoken, informal*) used to show that you do not believe what sb is saying: *Go on! You didn't eat it all yourself!* SYN **get away (with you)**

G v + adv
  4 also v + adv + -ing
  5 also v + adv + speech

IDM **be ˌgoing ˈon (for) sth** (*BrE*) to be nearly a particular age, time or number: *It was going on (for) midnight.* ◇ *She's 15, going on 21!* (= she acts as if she's 21) **enough, plenty, etc. to be going ˈon with** enough, plenty, etc. for our present needs: *That should be enough food to be going on with.*

▶ **ˌgoings-ˈon** *n* [pl.] (*informal*) activities or events that are strange or amusing: *There have been some strange goings-on at their house.*

▶ **ˈongoing** *adj* [usually before noun] continuing to exist or develop: *an ongoing process* ◇ *the ongoing debate* ◇ *an ongoing situation* ◇ *The problem is ongoing.*

ˌgo ˈon; ˌgo ˈon sth to fit or be put on top of another object: *The lid won't go on.* ◇ *This shoe won't go on my foot at all.*

G v + adv • v + prep

ˈgo on sth 1 (*used in negative sentences and questions*) to base an opinion or a judgement on sth: *The police don't have much evidence to go on.* ◇ *I'm only going on what she told me.* **2** to begin doing, following, enjoying or using sth: *to go on a course/trip* ◇ *I'm going on a diet on Monday.* ◇ *When are you going on holiday?* ◇ *to go on the dole* (= to start to receive government unemployment benefit) ◇ *When do the band go on tour?*

G v + prep

ˈgo on sth; ˈgo on doing sth (of money, time, energy, etc.) to be spent or used for sth: *All his money goes on drink.* ◇ *Most of the electricity we use goes on running the computers.*

→ *see also* GO ON 4

G v + prep

ˌgo ˈout 1 (for/to sth) to leave your house to go to social events, etc: *Shall we go out for a meal tonight?* ◇ *Ellie goes out a lot.* ◇ *She goes out dancing most weekends.* ◇ *Jenny usually goes out with her friends on Friday evenings.* OPP **stay in** **2 (with sb/together)** (*informal*) (especially of young people) to spend time with sb and have a romantic or sexual relationship with them: *Sam has been going out with Kate for six months.* ◇ *How long have Sam and Kate been going out together?* ◇ *When did they start going out?* SYN **date, date sb** **3** (of a letter, a message, etc.) to be sent, announced, etc: *Have the invitations gone out yet?* ◇ *A memo went out about the director's resignation.* **4** (of news, information, etc.) to be made public; to be published: *Word went out that the Prime Minister had resigned.* ◇ *The magazine goes out six times a year.* **5** (*especially BrE*) (of a radio or television programme) to be broadcast: *The first episode goes out next Friday at 8.00 pm.* ◇ *The show will go out live from the studio.* **6** (of a fire or a light) to stop burning or shining: *The fire has gone out.* ◇ *There was a power cut and all the lights went out.* SUBJ **lights, fire** SYN **be extinguished** (*formal*) **7** if money **goes out**, it is spent on bills and expenses: *We need to have more money coming in than going out.* OPP **come in** **8 (to …)** to leave your country and travel to another one, especially one far away: *We went out to see him when he was living in Australia.* ◇ *Have you been out to India recently?* **9** if the tide or the sea **goes out**, it moves away from the land: *When does the tide go out?* SUBJ only **the tide** SYN **ebb** (*more formal*) OPP **come in** **10** to fail in a competition, contest, etc: *She went out in the first round of the tournament.*

◈ v + adv

IDM **go out like a ˈlight** to fall asleep very quickly: *I went out like a light as soon as my head hit the pillow.* **your heart goes ˈout to sb** used to say that you feel a lot of sympathy for sb: *Our hearts go out to the families of the victims.*

▶ **ˈoutgoing** *adj* **1 outˈgoing** very friendly and liking to meet and talk to other people: *Annie's sister is much more outgoing than she is.* **2** [only before noun] about to leave a position of responsibility: *the outgoing government* **3** [only before noun] going away from a particular place rather than coming in to it: *outgoing calls/flights/passengers* ◇ *the outgoing tide*

▶ **ˈoutgoings** *n* [pl.] (*BrE*) the money which a person or a company spends regularly on bills and other necessary expenses: *They haven't got enough money to cover their outgoings.*

ˌgo ˈout; ˌgo ˈout of sth 1 to leave a room, building, etc: *It's too cold to go out.* ◇ *The talking started as soon as the teacher went out of the room.* ◇ *It isn't a good idea to go out alone at night.* ◇ *I'm going out for a walk.* ◇ *He's just gone out to get a newspaper.* ◇ *My grandmother never* ***went out to work*** (= away from the home). ◇ *She went straight out and spent £200 on a new coat.* OPP **go in, go in sth, go into sth** **2** to become no longer fashionable or used: *That hairstyle* ***went out of fashion*** *years ago.* ◇ *Styles like that have completely gone out now.* ◇ *The word 'leathern' has gone out of use in modern English.* OPP **come in, come in sth, come into sth**

◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + prep

ˌgo ˈout for sth (*AmE*) to try to gain a place in a sports team, a band or a group that does some other activity: *I had to talk Greg into going out for the basketball team.* ◇ *'Did she make the band?' 'She didn't go out for it.'*

SYN **try for sth** (*especially BrE*), **try out (for sth)** (*especially AmE*)

◈ v + adv + prep

ˌgo ˈout of sb/sth (of a quality or feeling) to no longer be present in sb/sth; to disappear from sb/sth: *He relaxed and the tension went out of him.* ◇ *The heat had gone out of the day.*

◈ v + adv + prep

ˌgo ˈover 1 (to sb/sth) to move towards sb/sth, especially crossing a room, etc: *He went over to the window for a closer look at the parade.* ◇ *I went over and sat beside Jane.* **2 (to sth)** to visit sb for a short time, usually at their house: *I'm going over to my daughter's for lunch.* → *see also* GO ROUND 1 **3 (to …)** to travel to a place overseas: *My family live in Belgium and I'm going over to see them next week.*

◈ v + adv

ˌgo ˈover; ˌgo ˈover sth to pass above or over the top of sb/sth: *Planes were going over all night.* ◇ *We were shaken as the car went over the bumps in the road.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌgo ˈover sth 1 to do more, spend more, etc. than a particular amount or than you are allowed to do: *Don't go over the speed limit.* ◇ *Did you go over budget on your project?* SYN **exceed sth** (*more formal*) **2** to examine the details of sth; to check sth: *I'll go over the figures again to make sure they're right.* ◇ *Go over your work carefully before you hand it in.* **3** to study sth carefully; to repeat sth: *I've gone over and over what happened in my mind.* ◇ *She went over her lines* (= in a play) *until she knew them perfectly.* **4** to look at or inspect sth carefully: *Police went (back) over all the evidence again.* ◇ *My dad went over the car thoroughly and advised us not to buy it.* **5** to draw, paint, etc. over the top of sth that has already been drawn or painted: *I've gone over the original drawing in pen.* **6** to clean sth by passing sth across the surface: *He went over the surfaces with a duster.*

NOTE **Go over sth** can be used in the passive in meanings 2, 4, 5 and 6: *These details have been gone over already.*

◈ v + prep

▶ **ˌgoing-ˈover** *n* [sing.] (*informal*) **1** an act of examining, cleaning or repairing sth thoroughly: *I've given the flat a good going-over* (= a thorough clean). ◇ *The garage gave the car a thorough going-over* (= a careful inspection). **2** a serious physical or verbal attack on sb: *The gang gave him a real going-over.*

ˌgo ˈover to sb/sth 1 to leave a group of people in order to join a competing group; to change from one side, opinion, habit, system, etc. to another; to start using sth different: *Two Conservative MPs went over to the opposition.* ◇ *We've recently gone over to* (= we've started using) *semi-skimmed milk.* **2** (in broadcasting) to transfer to a different person, place, etc. for the next part of a programme: *Let's go over to the news desk for an important announcement.*

◈ v + adv + prep

ˌgo ˈpast (of time) to pass: *Half an hour went past while we were sitting there.*

◈ v + adv

ˌgo ˈpast; ˌgo ˈpast sb/sth to pass in front of sb/sth: *I stood back to let Jack go past.* ◇ *The shop is empty whenever I go past it.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌgo ˈround (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˌgo aˈround**) **1 (to sth)** to visit sb for a short time, usually at their house: *Why don't you go round and see Annie?* ◇ *I've got to go around to my sister's* (= to her house) *in the morning.* → *see also* GO OVER 2 **2** to spin or turn: *When I found the bicycle, the wheels were still going round.* ◇ (*figurative*) *I've got so many ideas going around in my head at the moment.*

◈ v + adv

ˌgo ˈround; ˌgo ˈround sth (*BrE*) = GO AROUND, GO AROUND STH

ˌgo ˈround; ˌgo ˈround sth; ˌgo ˈround doing sth (*BrE*) = GO AROUND, GO AROUND STH, GO AROUND DOING STH

ˌgo ˈround sb/sth (*BrE*) = GO AROUND SB/STH

ˌgo ˈround sth (*BrE*) = GO AROUND STH

ˌgo ˈround with sb; ˌgo ˈround together (*BrE*) = GO AROUND WITH SB, GO AROUND TOGETHER

ˌgo ˈthrough 1 (to sth) (*informal*) used especially to ask sb to enter a room, etc: *Shall we go through to my office?* ◇ *Go through and make yourself comfortable.* **2** if a law, a contract, etc. **goes through**, it is officially approved, accepted or completed: *The bill went through without any objections.* ◇ *The adoption* (= of a child) *has finally gone through.* **3** if a business deal, etc. **goes through**, it is completed successfully: *We are almost certain the deal will go through.* ◇ *If the merger goes through, we may lose our jobs.* **4 (to sth)** to pass to the next stage of a competition, etc., having won the first part(s): *Four teams will go through to the semi-final.*

◈ v + adv

ˌgo ˈthrough; ˌgo ˈthrough sth to enter and cross a room, an area of land, a town, a country, etc.; to pass through sth: *The gates opened and we went through.* ◇ *Lots of huge trucks go through the town.* ◇ *You have to go through the lounge to reach the kitchen.* ◇ *The defence was weak, and the ball went through into the goal.* ◇ *The bullet went straight through the window.* ◇ *This is the hole where the bullet went through.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌgo ˈthrough sb 1 if a feeling **goes through** you, it passes through your body: *A shudder went through her.* **2** if a particular type of food **goes through** you, you find it difficult to digest and it is emptied from your bowels quickly or in liquid form: *I can't eat sushi — it goes right through me.*

◈ v + prep

ˈgo through sb/sth to ask a person or an organization to deal with sth for you or give you permission to do sth: *If you want to book the cruise, you'll have to go through a travel agent.*

◈ v + prep

ˌgo ˈthrough sth 1 to pass through sth from one end to the other: *We went through the woods to get to the lake.* ◇ (*figurative*) *What* ***went through your mind*** *when you saw John standing there after all this time?* **2** if you **go through** an event, a period of time, etc., you pass through it from the beginning to the end: *He went through the day in a state of shock.* ◇ *She can't* ***go through life*** *always depending on her parents.* **3** to experience or suffer sth: *You don't realize what I've been going through.* ◇ *She's been through a bad patch recently.* ◇ *We've been through a lot together.* ◇ *It's a phase/stage all teenagers go through.* OBJ **phase, experience, a bad, difficult, etc. patch** SYN **undergo sth** (*more formal*) **4** to look at, check or examine sth closely and carefully, especially in order to find sth: *I've gone through all my pockets but I can't find my keys.* ◇ *After his death, his daughter had to go through his papers.* OBJ **pockets, papers** **5** to discuss or study sth in detail, especially repeating it: *Let's go through the arguments again.* ◇ *Could we go through Act 2 once more?* SYN **run through sth** **6** to perform a series of actions; to follow a method: *This is the process you have to go through to become a club member.* ◇ *I made a mistake when I was logging out and had to go through the whole process again.* ◇ *Have you seen him go through his exercise routine in the mornings?* OBJ **process, routine, procedure** **7** to use up sth: *I seem to be going through a lot of money at the moment.* ◇ *Have we gone through all that milk already?* SYN **get through sth** **8** to wear or make a hole in sth: *I've gone through the elbows of my jumper.*

NOTE **Go through sth** can be used in the passive in meanings 4, 5 and 6: *The formalities have to be gone through.*

◈ v + prep

IDM **go through the 'motions (of sth/of doing sth) 1** to pretend to do sth: *He just went through the motions of being a poet.* **2** to do or say sth without being serious or sincere about it: *Her heart wasn't in the game — she was just going through the motions.* **go through the 'roof 1** (of prices, etc.) to rise very quickly: *House prices have gone through the roof.* **2** to become very angry: *My mum will go through the roof if she finds out!*

,go 'through with sth to do what is necessary to complete sth or achieve sth, even though it may be difficult or unpleasant: *She decided not to go through with the operation* (= she decided not to have it). ◇ *He says he'll take us to court, but he'll never go through with it.*
◈ v + adv + prep

,go 'to it (*AmE, spoken, informal*) used to tell sb to start doing sth: *You need to get it finished by 6. Go to it!* ◇ *We better go to it before it gets dark.*
◈ v + prep + it

'go to sb/sth to be given to sb/sth; to pass to sb else when sb dies: *Proceeds from the concert will go to charity.* ◇ *Some of the credit for the book should go to the illustrator.* ◇ *The first prize went to Peter.* ◇ *The contract has gone to a private firm.* ◇ *The property went to his eldest daughter* (= when he died).
◈ v + prep

'go to sth 1 to start to do sth; to begin to be in a particular state or condition: *The two countries are set to* ***go to war*** *over the dispute.* ◇ *I hate to see food* ***going to waste.*** ◇ *My brain* ***went to work on*** (= started to think about) *what I should do next.* OBJ only **war, waste, work 2** to make a lot of effort, spend a lot of money, etc. in order to do or achieve sth: *Don't* ***go to any trouble*** *on my behalf.* ◇ *Why* ***go to the expense*** *of buying a car?* ◇ *He* ***went to great pains*** *to persuade us.* ◇ *It's amazing the lengths people will go to to get a job.*
OBJ only **trouble, expense, pains, lengths**
◈ v + prep + n
IDM **go to the 'dogs** (*informal*) to get into a very bad state: *Some people think this country is going to the dogs.* **go to your 'head 1** (of alcohol) to make you feel drunk **2** (of success, praise, etc.) to make you feel very proud of yourself, especially in a way that other people find annoying **go to 'pieces** (*informal*) if somebody **goes to pieces**, they become so upset or frightened that they cannot live or work normally: *It seems he goes to pieces in a crisis.* **go to 'pot** (*informal*) to be spoiled because people are not working hard or taking care of things: *His plan to make money had gone to pot.* **go to 'sleep 1** to fall asleep **2** if part of your body **goes to sleep**, you lose the sense of feeling in it **go to 'town (on sth)** to do sth with a lot of energy and enthusiasm, especially spending a lot of money: *They hadn't got a garden, so they really went to town on indoor plants.* **go to the 'wall** if a company or a business **goes to the wall**, it fails because of a lack of money

,go to'gether 1 (of two or more things) to exist at the same time; to be often found together: *Money and happiness don't always go together.* → *see also* GO WITH STH 2 **2** to look, taste, sound, etc. good together; to combine well with sth: *These colours go together well.* ◇ *Curry and pasta don't really go together.* NOTE **Go** is also used with this meaning: *Curry and pasta don't really go.* ◇ *These colours don't really go.* → *see also* GO WITH STH 1 **3** (*old-fashioned, especially AmE*) (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) (of two people) to spend time with each other and have a romantic or sexual relationship: *They haven't been going together long.* → *see also* GO OUT 2
◈ v + adv

'go towards sth; **'go towards doing sth** to be used as part of the payment for sth; to be used as part of sth: *The money will go towards buying a computer.* ◇ *All these marks go towards my final diploma.*
◈ v + prep

,go 'under 1 to sink below the surface of the water: *They had to swim to shore when the boat went under.* ◇ *Someone rushed to help him when he went under.* **2** (*informal*) to fail, lose power, etc.; to be unable to pay what you owe: *A large number of small companies have gone under.*
◈ v + adv

'go under sth to be known by a particular name or title: *Does he go under any other names?*
OBJ **the name of…, a different, etc. name, the title of…**
→ *see also* GO BY STH 2
◈ v + prep

,go 'up 1 to become higher in price, level, etc.; to rise: *The price of cigarettes is going up.* ◇ *Cigarettes are going up (in price).* ◇ *My pension has gone up (by) £5 a week.* SUBJ **price, temperature** SYN **rise** OPP **come down; go down 2 (to sb/sth)** to go towards sb/sth: *He went up to the house and knocked on the door.* **3 (to…)** to travel from one place to another, especially from the south of a country to the north: *She's gone up to Scotland to see her son.* ◇ *Are you going up to London tomorrow?* **4** to be built; to be put up: *New office blocks are going up everywhere.* **5** to be destroyed by fire or an explosion: *If one of the gas tanks goes up, there will be massive damage.* ◇ *The whole building* ***went up in flames.*** **6** to be fixed in a public place: *Notices have gone up all over the university.* **7** if the curtain across the stage in a theatre **goes up**, it is raised or opened: *The stage was empty when the curtain went up.* SUBJ **curtain** OPP **come down 8** if a loud sound such as a shout or a cheer **goes up**, it is made by lots of people: *A huge cheer went up from the crowd.* SUBJ **cheer, cry 9 (to/into sth)** (of a sports team or a student) to move to a higher rank, position or class: *Liverpool have gone up into the second division.* ◇ *Is she going up into the sixth form this year?* OPP **go down 10 (to…)** (*BrE*) to begin your studies at a university, especially Oxford or Cambridge; to begin a term at university: *She went up (to Oxford) in 1976.* OPP **go down**
◈ v + adv

,go 'up; ,go 'up sth to move from a lower position to a higher one or upstairs in a building: *The lift goes up and down all day.* ◇ *Go up the ladder.* ◇ *She went up the stairs very slowly.* ◇ *Julie's gone up to her room to change.*
OBJ **stairs, hill, road** SYN **ascend, ascend sth** (*formal*)
OPP **go down, go down sth; descend, descend sth** (*formal*)
◈ v + adv • v + prep

,go 'up against sb/sth (*AmE, informal*) to face sb/sth difficult, for example in a competition: *He went up against the champion in the second round.* ◇ *In a consumer taste test, Coke went up against Pepsi.*
◈ v + adv + prep

,go 'up to sth to come close to a particular point or time, or go in a particular direction: *This diary only goes up to November.* ◇ *The road goes up to the school.*
◈ v + adv + prep

'go with sb (*old-fashioned, informal*) to have a sexual or romantic relationship with sb; to have sex with sb: *She's been going with him for quite a while.*
→ *see also* GO OUT 2
◈ v + prep

'go with sb/sth (*informal, especially AmE*) to support a plan, an idea, etc. or the person suggesting it: *I'm prepared to go with her decision.* ◇ *I like Ted's idea. Let's go with it.* ◇ *Which candidate shall we go with?*
◈ v + prep

'go with sth 1 to look, taste, sound, etc. good with sth; to combine well with sth: *This sauce goes well with lamb.* ◇ *Does this skirt go with my jumper?* → *see also* GO TOGETHER 2 **2** (of two or more things) to exist at the same time or in the same place as sth; to be often found together: *Disease often goes with poverty.* ◇ *She loves all the attention that goes with being famous.* → *see also* GO TOGETHER 1 **3** to be included with or as a part of sth: *A new car goes with the job.*
◈ v + prep

,go with'out; ,go with'out sth; ,go with'out doing sth to manage without sth which you usually have: *I never want the children to have to go without.* ◇ *She went without sleep for three days.*
SYN **do without, do without sth**
◈ v + adv • v + prep

goad /gəʊd; *AmE* goʊd/

,goad sb 'on to drive and encourage sb to do sth: *They goaded him on to break the window.* ◇ *The boxers were goaded on by the shrieking crowd.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv

gobble /'gɒbl; *AmE* 'gɑ:bl/

,gobble sth 'down/'up (*informal*) to eat food very quickly: *I gobbled down my breakfast and ran out of the house.*
SYN **wolf sth down**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

,gobble sth 'up (*informal*) **1** to use all of sth, especially money, very quickly: *The rent gobbles up half his earnings.* **2** if a business, company, etc. **gobbles up** a smaller one, it takes control of it: *Small family businesses are being gobbled up by larger firms.*
SYN **swallow sth up**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

goof /gu:f/

,goof a'round (*informal, especially AmE*) to waste your time doing silly or stupid things: *Come on, quit goofing around — this is serious.*
SYN **mess around**
◈ v + adv

,goof 'off (*AmE, informal*) to waste time when you are supposed to be working
◈ v + adv
▶ **'goof-off** *n* (*AmE, informal, disapproving*) a lazy person who does not work hard

,goof 'up (on sth), ,goof sth 'up (*AmE, informal*) to make a mistake; to spoil sth by making a mistake or doing it badly: *He always goofs up (on exams).* ◇ *He really goofed up his exam.*
SYN **mess up, mess sth up**
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

gouge /gaʊdʒ/

,gouge sth 'out; ,gouge sth 'out of sth to remove sth, or form sth, by digging into a surface with a sharp tool, your fingers, etc: *I wanted to gouge her eyes out.* ◇ *Glaciers gouged out valleys from the hills.*
OBJ **eyes**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + adv + prep

grab /græb/

'grab at sb/sth to try to take hold of sb/sth: *She grabbed at the branch, missed and fell.*
SYN **clutch at sb/sth**
◈ v + prep

ˈgrab at sth to take advantage of an opportunity to do or have sth: *He'll grab at any excuse to avoid doing the dishes.*

OBJ **chance, opportunity, excuse** SYN **seize on sth**

Ⓖ v + prep

grapple /ˈgræpl/

ˈgrapple with sth to try to deal with a difficult situation or solve a difficult problem: *I've spent all afternoon grappling with these accounts.*

OBJ **problem, issue** SYN **wrestle with sth**

NOTE **Grapple with sth** can be used in the passive: *This is an issue that is being grappled with by the council.*

Ⓖ v + prep

grasp /grɑːsp; *AmE* græsp/

ˈgrasp at sth/sb to try to take hold of sth/sb in your hands: *She grasped at his coat.*

SYN **catch at sth/sb; clutch at sth/sb**

Ⓖ v + prep

ˈgrasp at sth to try to take advantage of an opportunity, especially because you are unhappy with the present situation: *He grasped at any hope of escape.*

SYN **clutch at sth**

Ⓖ v + prep

IDM **grasp at ˈstraws** to try very hard to find a solution to a problem or some hope in a difficult or unpleasant situation, even though this seems very unlikely

grass /grɑːs; *AmE* græs/

ˌgrass sth ˈover to cover an area of ground with grass: *The garden had been grassed over.*

NOTE **Grass sth over** is often used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌgrass sb ˈup (*BrE, informal*) to inform the police or sb in authority about a crime or sth bad that sb has done: *My girlfriend grassed me up.*

NOTE It is also possible to say: *My girlfriend grassed (on me).*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

gravitate /ˈgrævɪteɪt/

ˈgravitate to/toward(s) sb/sth to move towards sb/sth that you are attracted to: *Most visitors to New York gravitate to Times Square.*

Ⓖ v + prep

grind /graɪnd/ (**ground**, **ground** /graʊnd/)

ˌgrind sb ˈdown to treat sb in a harsh way or annoy them for a long time until they can no longer defend themselves or fight back: *Don't let your colleagues grind you down! ◇ The villagers had been ground down by years of poverty.*

SYN **wear sb down**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌgrind sth ˈdown to rub sth against a hard surface in order to make it smooth and shiny

SYN **wear sth down**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌgrind ˈon to continue for a long time in a boring or unpleasant way: *The negotiations ground on for months.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌgrind sth ˈout 1 to produce sth in large quantities over a long period of time, especially sth that is not interesting or of good quality: *He grinds out a novel a month.* SYN **churn sth out 2** to press a burning cigarette down firmly with your hand or your foot in order to stop it burning: *He ground out the cigarette with his heel.*

SYN **stub sth out**

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

grope /grəʊp; *AmE* groʊp/

ˈgrope for sth to try hard to find sth: *I stepped in the door and groped for the light switch. ◇ (figurative) 'Yes, but....' He was groping for words.*

OBJ **light, word, answer**

Ⓖ v + prep

ˈgrope towards sth (*rare*) to try to find an agreement, an answer to a problem, etc: *The two parties are groping towards a compromise.*

Ⓖ v + prep

gross /grəʊs; *AmE* groʊs/

ˌgross sb ˈout (*AmE, informal*) to make sb feel disgusted: *His greasy hair really grosses me out!*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ground /graʊnd/

be ˈgrounded in/on sth to be based on sth: *Is the story grounded in fact?*

Ⓖ be + v + prep

grow /grəʊ; *AmE* groʊ/ (**grew** /gruː/ **grown** /grəʊn; *AmE* groʊn/)

ˌgrow aˈpart to become less close to sb in a relationship: *We used to be good friends, but we've grown apart.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌgrow aˈway from sb to come to have a less close relationship with sb; to depend on sb less: *She has grown away from her parents.*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌgrow ˈback if hair, fur, etc. **grows back**, it starts to grow again after it has been cut or damaged: *His hair grew back thicker after he shaved his head.*

SUBJ **hair**

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌgrow ˈinto sth 1 to gradually become sth over a period of time: *She had grown into a beautiful young woman.* **2** if a child **grows into** clothes, he/she becomes big enough to fit into them: *This coat's too big for him now, but he'll grow into it.* OBJ **coat, trousers, etc.** OPP **grow out of sth 3** to become familiar with and confident in a new job, activity, etc: *He needs time to grow into the job.* OBJ **job, role**

Ⓖ v + prep

ˈgrow on sb if sb/sth **grows on** you, you gradually like them/it more and more: *That painting's really grown on me.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌgrow ˈout if the colour or style of your hair **grows out**, it disappears as your hair grows: *I had my hair coloured six weeks ago, but it's growing out now.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌgrow sth ˈout to let your hair grow so that the colour or style changes or disappears: *I've decide to grow the layers out.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌgrow ˈout of sth 1 if a child **grows out of** clothes, he/she becomes too big to wear them: *She grows out of her clothes so fast!* OBJ **coat, trousers, etc.** SYN **outgrow sth** OPP **grow into sth 2** to stop doing something or suffering from sth as you become older: *He grew out of his eczema as he got older. ◇ He was a very rebellious teenager, but he* ***grew out of it.*** SYN **outgrow sth 3** to develop from sth: *These laws grew out of a need to protect children.*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌgrow ˈup 1 when a person **grows up**, they become an adult: *Kate's growing up fast. ◇ Oh, grow up* (= behave in a more sensible way) *and stop making such a fuss! ◇ He was a difficult teenager, but grew up to be a responsible adult.* **2** **[+adv/prep]** to spend the time you are a child in a particular place or in a particular way: *He grew up in Portugal. ◇ Mel and I grew up together. ◇ This generation has grown up on MTV.* **3** to develop gradually: *The town had grown up around the abbey. ◇ A cult had grown up around him.* SYN **develop**

NOTE Do not confuse this phrasal verb with **grow**. **Grow** can be used without an object to mean 'increase in size, number, cost, etc.' **Grow**, but not **grow up**, can be used with an object: *to grow vegetables.* Use **bring sb up** to refer to parents caring for their children until they are grown up and teaching them how to behave, etc.

Ⓖ v + adv

▸ **ˌgrown-ˈup** *adj* (*informal*) **1** mentally and physically an adult: *He has two grown-up children.* **2** adult, mature: *Susie is very grown-up for her age.*

▸ **ˈgrown-up** *n* (*informal*) (*used especially by adults when talking to children, or by children*) an adult person: *The grown-ups will sit at one table and the children at another.*

grub /grʌb/ (**-bb-**)

ˌgrub sth ˈout/ˈup (*rare*) to dig sth out of the ground: *Thousands of miles of hedgerows have been grubbed up.*

SYN **dig sth out; dig sth up**

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

guard /gɑːd; *AmE* gɑːrd/

ˈguard against sth; **ˈguard against doing sth** to do sth to prevent sth happening or to protect yourself from sth: *Clean the wound to guard against the danger of infection. ◇ We should guard against the possibility of this happening again. ◇ Regular exercise can help to guard against heart disease.*

OBJ **danger, risks, possibility**

NOTE **Guard against sth/against doing sth** can be used in the passive: *This danger must be guarded against.*

Ⓖ v + prep

guess /ges/

ˈguess at sth to try to imagine sth or make a judgement without knowing all the facts: *We can only guess at the reason for his actions.*

NOTE **Guess at sth** can be used in the passive: *Her feelings can only be guessed at.*

Ⓖ v + prep

gulp /gʌlp/

ˌgulp sth ˈback (*rare*) to stop yourself showing that you are upset by swallowing hard: *She* ***gulped back her tears.***

OBJ **tears**

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌgulp sth ˈdown to swallow sth quickly and noisily: *He gulped down a glass of water.*

OBJ **water, coffee, etc.**

NOTE **Gulp sth** can also be used with a similar meaning.

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

gum /gʌm/ (**-mm-**)

ˌgum sth ˈup (*BrE, informal, rare*) to fill sth with a sticky substance so that it cannot move or work: *My eyes were all gummed up. ◇ The substance gummed the machine up.*

NOTE **Gum sth up** is often used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

gun /gʌn/ (**-nn-**)

ˌ**gun sb ˈdown** (*informal*) to shoot sb, especially so as to kill or seriously injure them: *He was gunned down outside his home.* ◇ *Terrorists gunned down six people in the town last month.*
SYN **shoot sb**
NOTE **Gun sb down** is often used in the passive.
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˈ**gun for sb** (*informal*) (*only used in the progressive tenses*) to try to blame sb or cause trouble for them: *She's been gunning for me since I came to work here.*
◆ v + prep

ˈ**gun for sth** (*informal*) (*only used in the progressive tenses*) to try hard to get sth; to aim for sth: *They are both gunning for places in the championship.*
◆ v + prep

gussy /ˈgʌsi/ (**gussies**, **gussying**, **gussied**, **gussied**)

ˌ**gussy sb/sth ˈup**; ˌ**gussy yourself ˈup** (*AmE, informal*) to dress sb/yourself in special, attractive clothes; to decorate sth to make it look attractive: *She gussied herself up for the big party.* ◇ *Jim's* ***got all gussied up!*** ◇ *My dress was plain, but I gussied it up with some jewellery.* ◇ *The city was gussied up for the President's visit.*
SYN **doll yourself up (in sth)**; **be/get dolled up (in sth)**
NOTE **Gussy sb/sth up** is usually used in the passive with *be* or *get*.
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv

Hh

hack /hæk/

ˌ**hack sth aˈbout** (*BrE, informal, disapproving*) to cut or change sth in a rough and careless way: *The hairdressers have hacked her hair about a bit.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The script was hacked about by several people before the movie was finished.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˈ**hack at sth**; ˌ**hack aˈway (at sth)** to try to cut sth using strong rough blows with an axe, a knife, scissors, etc: *She's really hacked at my hair. It's a complete mess.* ◇ *He was hacking away at the trees with an axe.* ◇ *Don't hack at it! Cut it carefully!*
◆ v + prep • v + adv

ˌ**hack sth ˈdown** to cut a tree, etc. roughly so that it falls to the ground: *They are hacking down the forests to sell the timber.*
OBJ **tree** SYN **chop sth down**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌ**hack ˈinto sth** (*computing*) to find a way of looking at or changing the information on sb else's computer without their knowledge or permission: *A teenage girl managed to hack into the bank's computer.*
◆ v + prep

ˌ**hack sb ˈoff** (*BrE, informal*) to make sb feel extremely annoyed or irritated: *He was hacked off with the whole situation.* ◇ *She always wants her jobs done in the next 10 minutes. That really hacks me off.*
NOTE **Hack sb off** is usually used in the passive or as an adjective.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌ**hack sth ˈoff**; ˌ**hack sth ˈoff sth** to cut sth off sth with rough heavy blows: *They hacked off the dead branches.* ◇ *He hacked the padlock off the door.* ◇ *She was always threatening to hack her lovely long hair off with the kitchen scissors.*
SYN **chop sth off, chop sth off sth**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌ**hack sth ˈup** to cut sth very roughly into large pieces: *He hacked up the meat with a large knife.*
SYN **chop sth up**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

hail /heɪl/

ˈ**hail from** ... (*formal*) (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to come from or to live in a particular place: *Which part of Ireland does he hail from?*
◆ v + prep

ham /hæm/ (**-mm-**)

ˌ**ham it ˈup** (*informal*) to act in a deliberately artificial or exaggerated way: *The actors were really hamming it up.*
◆ v + it + adv

hammer /ˈhæmə(r)/

ˌ**hammer aˈway at sth** to work hard in order to finish or achieve sth; to repeat sth again and again: *He kept hammering away at the same point all through the meeting.*
◆ v + adv + prep

ˌ**hammer sth ˈin**; ˌ**hammer sth ˈinto sb** to force sb to learn sth by repeating it many times: *I'll manage to hammer the point in somehow.* ◇ *They have had English grammar hammered into them.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌ**hammer sth ˈout 1** to discuss a plan, a deal, etc. for a long time and with great effort, until sth is decided or agreed on: *It took weeks to hammer out an agreement.* OBJ **deal, agreement, policy 2** to produce a sound, play a tune, etc. especially on a piano, loudly and not very well: *She hammered out 'Happy Birthday' on the piano.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

hand /hænd/

ˌ**hand sth aˈround** (*especially AmE*) = HAND STH ROUND

ˌ**hand sb ˈback to sb/sth** used by a television or radio reporter at the end of a report from a particular place to show that the main presenter will continue: *Now I'll hand you back to Trevor in the studio.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌ**hand sth ˈback (to sb) 1** to give sth back to the person, country, etc. who used to have it or who owns it legally: *The territory was handed back to Egypt.* ◇ *We will not press charges if the stolen money is handed back.* OBJ **money, control 2** to give sth back to the person who gave it to you: *She looked quickly at my passport and then handed it back.* OBJ **passport, letter, glass** NOTE In informal spoken language **hand sb back sth** and, less often, **hand sb sth back** are also used: *I handed her back her pen.* ◇ *I handed her her pen back.*
SYN **give sth back (to sb)**; **return sth (to sb)**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌ**hand sth ˈdown 1** (*also* ˌ**hand sth ˈon**) **(to sb)** to give or leave sth to a younger person: *All my clothes were handed down to me by my brother.* ◇ *These skills have been handed down from*

generation to generation. ◇ *He's got no one to hand the family house on to.* OBJ **tradition, custom, skills** SYN **pass sth down (to sb)** NOTE In this meaning **hand sth down** is usually used in the passive. **2** (*especially AmE*) (of a court of law or other official body) to announce an official decision: *The judge handed down a sentence of six years.* OBJ **decision, sentence, verdict**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

▶ **ˈhand-me-down** *n* [usually pl.] (*especially AmE*) clothing that is no longer wanted and is given to sb else, especially a younger brother or sister: *I used to hate wearing my brother's hand-me-downs.*

ˌhand sth ˈin (**to sb**) **1** to give a piece of work to sb, such as a teacher, so that they can correct, read or deal with it; to give sth to sb in authority because it belongs to them or is lost: *Make sure you hand in your homework on time.* ◇ *Hand your room keys in by 10 a.m* OBJ **essay, homework** SYN **give sth in (to sb) 2** to tell sb officially that you intend to leave your job: *I've just handed in my notice.* OBJ only **your notice, your resignation** SYN **give sth in (to sb); resign**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌhand sth ˈon (**to sb**) **1** to send or give sth to another person after you have finished with it: *Hand on the magazine to your friends.* ◇ *The task has been handed on to me.* **2** = HAND STH DOWN 1
SYN **pass sth on (to sb)**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌhand sth ˈout (**to sb**) **1** to give sth to each person in a group: *She handed textbooks out to the new students.* OBJ **leaflets, money** SYN **give sth out; pass sth out (to sb) 2** to give advice, criticism, a punishment, etc. to sb: *The courts are handing out tough sentences to frequent offenders.*
OBJ **information, punishment, sentence**
SYN **dish sth out (to sb)** (*informal*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

▶ **ˈhandout** *n* **1** something that is given free to people, especially food, money or clothes **2** a document giving information about sth, especially one that is given to a group or a class by a teacher, speaker, etc.

ˌhand ˈover to sb; **ˌhand sb ˈover to sb** (*especially BrE*) to give sb else a turn to speak when you have finished talking: *I'd like to hand over now to our guest speaker.* ◇ *I'll hand you over to dad for a chat.*
◈ v + adv + prep ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌhand ˈover to sb; **ˌhand sth ˈover to sb** to give sb else your position of power or authority; to give sb else the responsibility for dealing with a particular situation: *I am resigning and handing over to my deputy.* ◇ *My father has handed over the business to me.*
◈ v + adv + prep ◆ v + adv + n + prep ◆
v + n/pron + adv + prep

▶ **ˈhandover** *n* [C] [U] the act of moving power or responsibility from one person or group to another; the period during which this happens
→ *see also* HANDOVER at HAND SB/STH OVER (TO SB), HAND YOURSELF OVER (TO SB)

ˌhand sb/sth ˈover (**to sb**), **ˌhand yourself ˈover** (**to sb**) to give sb/sth officially to sb else, especially sb in authority: *They handed him over to the police.* ◇ *He forced me to hand over the keys to the safe.*
SYN **deliver sb/sth over/up (to sb), deliver yourself over/up (to sb)** (*more formal*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

▶ **ˈhandover** *n* [C] [U] the act of giving a person or a thing to sb in authority
→ *see also* HANDOVER at HAND OVER TO SB, HAND STH OVER TO SB

ˌhand sth ˈround (*especially BrE*) (*AmE usually* **ˌhand sth aˈround**) to offer or pass sth (especially food and drink) to each person in a group of people or in a room: *Could you hand round the sandwiches, please?*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

hang /hæŋ/ (**hung, hung** /hʌŋ/)

~ about
~ about together
~ about with
~ around
~ around together
~ around with
139 ~ back
~ on
~ onto, on to

~ out
~ over
~ round
~ round together
~ round with
~ together
~ up
140 ~ with

ˌhang aˈbout (*BrE*) **1** (*informal*) = HANG ON 3 **2** = HANG AROUND

ˌhang aˈbout; **ˌhang aˈbout sth** (*BrE*) = HANG AROUND, HANG AROUND STH

ˌhang aˈbout with sb; **ˌhang aˈbout together** (*BrE*) = HANG AROUND WITH SB, HANG AROUND TOGETHER

ˌhang aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌhang aˈbout/ˈround**) (*informal*) **1** to wait: *Sorry to keep you hanging around for so long.* ◇ *I won't hang about for you if you're late.* SYN **wait around (for sb/sth) 2** to delay doing sth; to be slow to do sth: *Have you finished already? You don't hang about do you?*
◈ v + adv

ˌhang aˈround; **ˌhang aˈround sth** (*BrE also* **ˌhang aˈbout/ˈround, ˌhang aˈbout/ˈround sth**) (*informal*) to spend time somewhere, without doing very much: *We spent most of the day hanging about doing nothing.* ◇ *Children hang around the streets because there's nowhere for them to play.* ◇ *Why are they always hanging round our house?*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌhang aˈround with sb; **ˌhang aˈround together** (*BrE also* **ˌhang aˈbout/ˈround with sb, ˌhang aˈbout/ˈround together**) (*informal*) to spend a lot of time with sb or with a group of people: *Bob hangs around with Tim.* ◇ *Bob and Tim hang around together.* ◇ *I don't like the kind of people she hangs about with.*
SYN **go around with sb, go around together**
◈ v + adv + prep ◆ v + adv + adv

ˌhang ˈback 1 to not move forwards because you are nervous or afraid: *She hung back, afraid to go near the dog.* **2** to stay behind in a place such as a school or an office after most of the other people have left: *My friends rushed out, but I hung back to talk to the teacher.* **3** to be unwilling to do sth; to hesitate: *This is a great opportunity. We can't afford to hang back.*
◈ v + adv

ˌhang ˈon 1 to hold sb/sth firmly: *Hang on tight and you won't fall off.* ◇ *The horse suddenly galloped off and I tried to hang on as best as I could.*
→ *see also* HANG ONTO STH/SB, HANG ON TO STH/SB
2 (*BrE, spoken, informal*) used to ask sb to wait for a short time: *Hang on a minute — I'm nearly ready.* ◇ *The line's engaged. Would you like to hang on?* **3** (*BrE also* **ˌhang aˈbout**) (*spoken, informal*) used to tell sb to stop what they are doing or saying, because you have just realized sth, or because you do not understand sth: *Hang on! I've had an idea.* ◇ *Hang on! How much did you say it was?* ◇ *Hang on! That's not what I said!* **4** to continue doing sth even when the situation is difficult: *How much longer can their troops hang on in that position?* **5** to wait for sth to happen: *I need an answer soon - don't keep me hanging on.*
SYN **hold on**
◈ v + adv
IDM **hang (on) ˈin there** (*informal*) to continue trying to do sth, even though it is very difficult: *Hang on in there! The exams will soon be over.*

ˈhang on sth to depend on sth: *My whole future hung on his decision.*
OBJ **decision** SYN **depend on sth**
◈ v + prep

ˈhang sth on sb (*informal, especially AmE*) to blame sb for sth, often unfairly: *You can't hang the damage to your computer on me I wasn't even there!*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌhang ˈonto sth/sb; **ˌhang ˈon to sth/sb** to hold sth/sb tightly: *Hang onto my hand while we cross the road.*
SYN **hold on, hold onto sth/sb, hold on to sth/sb**
→ *see also* HANG ON
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep ◆ v + adv + prep

ˌhang ˈonto sb/sth; **ˌhang ˈon to sb/sth** (*informal*) to keep sb/sth; to not sell, give away or lose sth: *Hang on to the receipt in case you want to change the dress.* ◇ *You can hang on to the book for a bit longer if you want.* ◇ *I hope she manages to hang on to her job.* ◇ *The company seems to be incapable of hanging on to its staff.* ◇ *He's a great guy — you should hang on to him!*
SYN **hold onto sb/sth, hold on to sb/sth**
◈ v + prep ◆ v + adv + prep

ˌhang ˈout (*informal*) **1** [**+adv/prep**] to spend a lot of time in a place or with a person or a group of people: *Where does he hang out these days?* ◇ *She used to hang out with the Beatles in the sixties.* **2** to spend time relaxing, doing very little: *We've just been hanging out and listening to music.*
◈ v + adv

▶ **ˈhang-out** *n* (*informal*) a place where you live or enjoy spending time with friends: *a popular hang-out for teenagers*

ˌhang sth ˈout to attach things that you have washed to a piece of string or rope outside so that they can dry; to put sth such as a flag, etc. out of a window or in a street by attaching it to a piece of string or rope: *Have you hung the washing out?* ◇ *Many houses hung out a banner supporting the march.*
OBJ **washing, clothes, flags, banner**
→ *see also* HANG UP, HANG STH UP 1
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌhang ˈover sb/sth if a problem, a threat or sth sad **hangs over** you, you think about it or worry about it a lot: *A question mark hangs over the future of the club* (no one knows what is going to happen). ◇ *The threat of dismissal hung over our heads.*
SUBJ **question mark, threat** OBJ **head, future**
◈ v + prep

ˌhang ˈround (*BrE, informal*) = HANG AROUND

ˌhang ˈround; **ˌhang ˈround sth** (*BrE, informal*) = HANG AROUND, HANG AROUND STH

ˌhang ˈround with sb; **ˌhang ˈround together** (*BrE, informal*) = HANG AROUND WITH SB, HANG AROUND TOGETHER

ˌhang toˈgether to be well organized and fit together well; to have parts that all agree with each other: *The book doesn't really hang together.* ◇ *This account of what happened doesn't hang together.*
◈ v + adv

ˌhang ˈup; **ˌhang sth ˈup 1** to attach sth from the top to a hook, a piece of string, etc. so that the lower part is free or loose; to be attached in this way: *My dress is hanging up in the wardrobe.* ◇ *Shall I hang your coat up?* ◇ *He took off his suit and hung it up carefully.* OBJ **coat, clothes** → *see also* HANG STH OUT **2** (**on sb**) to end a telephone conversation, often very suddenly, by putting down the part of the telephone that you speak into (the **receiver**) or switching the telephone off: *She hung up on me.* ◇ *Don't hang up. I'd like to talk to Dad too.* ◇ *I was so upset I hung up the phone.* OBJ **phone, receiver 3** to finish using sth

for the last time; to give up a particular activity, profession, etc: *After twenty years playing football, he's finally hanging up his boots.* OBJ **boots**
G v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

get ˌhung ˈup (*AmE*) to be delayed: *I got hung up in traffic.* ◇ *Sorry I'm late — I got hung up at the office.*
G get + v + adv

ˈhang with sb (*AmE, slang*) to spend a lot of time with sb: *Are you still hanging with those guys?*
G v + prep

hanker /ˈhæŋkə(r)/

ˈhanker after/for sth to want sth very much: *He hankered after big city life.*
SYN **long for sth**
G v + prep

happen /ˈhæpən/

ˌhappen aˈlong/ˈby (*informal*) to arrive or appear unexpectedly: *A police car happened along just at that moment.*
G v + adv

ˈhappen on/upon sb/sth (*old-fashioned*) to find or meet sb/sth by chance: *I happened upon the book I wanted in a second-hand bookshop.*
SYN **come across sb/sth**
G v + prep

hark /hɑːk; *AmE* hɑːrk/

ˈhark at sb (*spoken, humorous*) used only in the form **hark at** sb, to show that you think what sb has just said is stupid, or shows too much pride: *'I need to lose some weight.' 'Hark at her! She's so thin I can hardly see her!'*
G v + prep

ˌhark ˈback to sth 1 to talk about or remember sth that happened in the past or was mentioned before: *You can't keep harking back to the past.* OBJ **the past, youth** NOTE In this meaning **hark back to sth** is often used in the progressive tenses. **2** (*BrE*) to remind you of or to be like sth in the past: *The melody harks back to one of his earlier symphonies.* NOTE In this meaning **hark back to sth** is not used in the progressive tenses.
G v + adv + prep

harp /hɑːp; *AmE* hɑːrp/

ˌharp ˈon (about sth), ˈharp on sth (*informal*) to keep talking about sth in a way that other people find annoying: *He's still harping on about having his bike stolen.* ◇ *He's always harping on the same theme.*
SYN **go on (about sth)**
G v + adv • v + prep

hash /hæʃ/

ˌhash sth ˈout (*AmE, informal*) to discuss sth in detail for a long time in order to reach an agreement: *They are still hashing out the details of the contract.*
SYN **thrash sth out**
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

hatch /hætʃ/

ˌhatch ˈout (*BrE*) when a bird, an insect, etc. **hatches out**, it comes out of the egg; when an egg **hatches out**, it breaks open and a bird, an insect, etc. comes out: *The chicks hatch out after fifteen days.* ◇ *Have the eggs hatched out yet?* ◇ *When will the caterpillars hatch out?*
NOTE **Hatch** is used instead of **hatch out** in American English. It can also be used in British English.
G v + adv

haul /hɔːl/

ˌhaul sb beˈfore sb/sth (*also* **ˌhaul sb ˈup before sb/sth**) (*informal*) to make sb appear in a court of law in order to be judged: *They were hauled before the courts.* ◇ *They hauled her up in front of senior officers.*
SYN **bring sb before sb/sth** (*more formal*)
NOTE **In front of sb/sth** can be used instead of **before**: *They hauled her up in front of senior officers.* • **Haul sb (up) before/in front of sb/sth** is often used in the passive.
→ *see also* HAUL SB UP
G v + n/pron + prep

ˌhaul sb ˈoff (to sth/…) (*informal*) to take sb somewhere by force: *They hauled him off to jail.*
SYN **drag sb off (to sth/…)**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˌhaul sb ˈup (*informal*) to make sb appear in a court of law in order to be judged: *He was hauled up on a charge of dangerous driving.*
NOTE **Haul sb up** is often used in the passive.
→ *see also* HAUL SB BEFORE SB/STH
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

have /həv, əv, hæv/ (has, having, had, had)

ˌhave sth aˈgainst sb/sth (*also* **have ˌgot sth aˈgainst sb/sth**) (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to dislike sb/sth for a particular reason: *I've **got nothing against** her family personally — it's just that there are so many of them!* ◇ *I don't know what she had against me.*
OBJ **nothing, anything, something**
NOTE **Have sth against sb/sth** is not used in the passive.
G v + pron + prep

ˌhave sb aˈround (*especially AmE*) = HAVE SB OVER

ˌhave it aˈway (with sb) (*BrE, slang*) = HAVE IT OFF (WITH SB)

ˌhave sb ˈback (*especially BrE*) **1** to allow a husband, wife or partner that you are separated from to return: *He had his wife back time and time again.* SYN **take sb back 2** to invite sb to your house after you have been somewhere with them: *After the cinema we had everybody back for coffee.* SYN **ask sb back**; **invite sb back** (*more formal*)
NOTE **Have sb back** is not used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌhave sth ˈback to receive sth that has been borrowed or taken from you: *Can I have the book back by Thursday?*
NOTE **Have sth back** is not used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˌhave sb ˈdown as sth (*especially BrE*) to think that sb is a particular type of person, especially when in fact they are not: ***I didn't have you down as** the jealous type.*
NOTE **Have sb down as sth** is not used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌhave sb ˈin (*also* **have ˌgot sb ˈin**) to have sb doing some work in your home or office: *They've got the builders in all week.* ◇ *We had the inspectors in on Tuesday.*
NOTE **Have sb in** is not used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌhave sth ˈin (*also* **have ˌgot sth ˈin**) (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to have a supply of sth in your home, etc: *Do we have enough food in for the holiday?* ◇ *I wanted to get a new swimsuit, but the store didn't have any in yet.*
NOTE **Have sth in** is not used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv

have it ˈoff (*also* **ˌhave it aˈway (with sb)**) (*BrE, slang*) to have sex with sb
G v + it + adv

ˌhave sb ˈon (*informal*) (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) to joke with sb by pretending sth is true when it is not: *'We've won a new car!' 'You're having me on!'*
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌhave sth ˈon (*also* **have ˌgot sth ˈon**) **1** (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to be wearing sth: *She's got her best dress on.* ◇ *He had nothing* (= no clothes) *on!* ◇ *He had on a blue and white checked shirt and jeans.* OBJ **clothes, coat, hat, etc.** SYN **be wearing sth 2** to have a piece of electrical equipment switched on: *I didn't hear you come in because I had the radio on.* OBJ **television, radio 3** to have something planned or arranged: *I've had a lot on recently.* ◇ *What do you have on (for) tomorrow?* OBJ **nothing, something, a lot**
NOTE **Have sth on** is not used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv
1 also v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌhave sth ˈon sb/sth (*also* **have ˌgot sth ˈon sb/sth**) (*informal*) (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to know sth bad about someone that can be used against them: *The police had nothing on him* (= no evidence that he had committed a crime).
OBJ **something, nothing**
NOTE **Have sth on sb/sth** is not used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + prep

ˌhave sth ˈout 1 to have a tooth or an organ of your body removed: *I had to have a tooth out.* OBJ **tooth, appendix, tonsils 2 (with sb)** to talk to sb openly to try to settle a dispute or disagreement: *She finally decided to **have it out with** him.* OBJ **it**
NOTE **Have sth out** is not used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌhave sb ˈover (*also* **ˌhave sb aˈround** *especially AmE*) (*BrE also* **ˌhave sb ˈround**) to invite sb to come to your house: *They had some friends over last night.* ◇ *We're having people round for dinner tonight.*
NOTE **Have sb over/around/round** is not used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌhave sb ˈup (for sth) (*BrE, informal*) to accuse sb of sth and bring them to a court of law to be examined by a judge: *He was had up for dangerous driving.*
NOTE **Have sb up** is usually used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv

hawk /hɔːk/

ˌhawk sth aˈbout/aˈround/ˈround; ˌhawk sth aˈbout/aˈround/ˈround sth (*BrE*) to try to sell things by going from place to place asking people to buy them: *Pirate copies of their CD were being hawked around.* ◇ *They hawked their newsletter around student bars.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*) •
v + n/pron + prep

head /hed/

ˈhead for/towards sth (*also* **be ˈheaded for/towards sth** *especially AmE*) (*often used in the progressive tenses*) **1** to be going in a particular direction or to a particular place: *It's time I was heading for home.* ◇ *Jane headed for the door.* SYN **make for sb/sth 2** to be likely to experience sth, especially sth bad: *They're heading for trouble.* ◇ *The country is headed for an economic disaster.* OBJ **trouble, defeat, disaster, victory, a fall**
G v + prep • be + v + prep

ˌhead ˈoff to leave a place to go somewhere else or do sth else: *It's time we headed off to get the train.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌhead sb ˈoff to get in front of sb in order to make them turn back or go in a different direction: *Police tried to head off the demonstrators before they got to the city hall.*
SYN **intercept sb** (*more formal*)
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌhead sb/sth ˈoff to prevent sth; to stop sb from doing sth: *Their attempts to head off criticism have failed.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˈhead towards sth (*also* **be ˈheaded towards sth** *especially AmE*) = HEAD FOR/TOWARDS STH, BE HEADED FOR/TOWARDS STH

ˌhead ˈup sth; **ˌhead it/them ˈup** to be in charge of sth such as a department, a company, an organization, etc: *She heads up our finance division.*
OBJ **operation, company**
NOTE A noun must always follow **up**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **up**. • This phrasal verb is also used in the passive: *The new company will be headed up by Graham Hart.*
NOTE **Head sth** is also used with the same meaning: *She heads our finance division.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv

heal /hiːl/

ˌheal ˈup/ˈover if a cut, a wound, etc. **heals up/over**, it closes and becomes healthy again: *Her leg took a long time to heal up.* ◇ *The cut has healed over now.*
NOTE **Heal** is often used with the same meaning.
Ⓖ v + adv

heap /hiːp/

ˈheap A on B; **ˈheap B with A** (*also* **ˈheap A upon B** *more formal*) **1** to put a lot of sth in a pile on sth: *She heaped food on my plate.* ◇ *The food was heaped on the plate.* ◇ *The chairs were heaped with cushions.* **2** to offer or give sb a lot of sth, especially praise or criticism: *They heaped scorn upon his proposal.* ◇ *Praise was heaped on the police for their handling of the case.* OBJ **praise, scorn**
NOTE These phrasal verbs are often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

ˌheap sth ˈup to put sth into a pile: *A huge pile of washing was heaped up in a corner.*
SYN **pile sth up**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

hear /hɪə(r); *AmE* hɪr/ (**heard, heard** /hɜːd; *AmE* hɜːrd/)

ˈhear about sb/sth to be told news or information about sb/sth: *I'm so sorry to hear about your mother* (= for example, that she is ill). ◇ *Have you heard about your job yet* (= if you have got it or not)*?*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˈhear from sb; **ˈhear sth from sb 1** to receive news or information from sb, usually by letter or telephone: *Do you ever hear from any of your school friends?* ◇ (*written*) *I look forward to hearing from you.* ◇ *I haven't heard anything from Kate for ages.* **2** to formally get sb's opinion about sth or their description of sth that has happened, such as an accident, etc: *Can we hear from some of the women in the audience?* ◇ *The police would like to hear from anyone who witnessed the accident.* ◇ *I'd like to hear something from somebody who's had experience of studying abroad.*
Ⓖ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˈhear of sb/sth to know about sb/sth because you have been told about them/it: *I've heard of the Alexander technique, but I don't know anything about it.* ◇ *I've never heard of him.*
NOTE **Hear of sb** is often used in the present perfect tense with *have*.
→ *see also* UNHEARD-OF at HEAR OF SB/STH, HEAR STH OF SB/STH
Ⓖ v + prep

ˈhear of sb/sth; **ˈhear sth of sb/sth** to have news of sb/sth: *I was sorry to hear of your accident.* ◇ *He was last heard of in Liverpool.* ◇ *You're going abroad? This is **the first I've heard of it**!* ◇ ***From what I've heard of** Andy, he's become very successful.* ◇ *I expect we'll hear more of this band in the future.*
NOTE **Hear of sb** is often used in the passive.
→ *see also* NOT HEAR OF STH, NOT HEAR OF SB DOING STH
Ⓖ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep
▸ **un'heard-of** *adj* that has never been known or done; surprising: *It's almost unheard-of for it to rain there in July.*

not ˈhear of sth; **not ˈhear of sb doing sth** to not allow something or not allow sb to do sth: *I offered to go but she wouldn't hear of it.* ◇ *They wouldn't hear of us postponing the trip.*
→ *see also* UNHEARD-OF at HEAR OF SB/STH, HEAR STH OF SB/STH
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌhear sb ˈout to listen until sb has finished saying what they want to say: *I know you don't believe me, but please hear me out!*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

heat /hiːt/

ˌheat ˈup (*AmE*) = HOT UP

ˌheat ˈup; **ˌheat sth ˈup** to become warm or hot; to make sth warm or hot: *The pipes will expand as they heat up.* ◇ *We can heat up the soup in the microwave.*
SYN **warm up, warm sth up**
Ⓖ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

hedge /hedʒ/

ˌhedge sth aˈbout/aˈround/ˈround with sth (*BrE, formal*) to surround and limit sth with conditions or restrictions: *Employment is hedged around with legislation nowadays.*
NOTE **Hedge sth about/around/round with sth** is usually used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌhedge sb/sth ˈin to surround sb/sth with sth; to restrict the freedom of sb to do sth: *The cathedral is hedged in by other buildings.* ◇ *He felt hedged in by all the rules and regulations.*
SYN **fence sb in; hem sb/sth in**
NOTE **Hedge sb/sth in** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

help /help/

ˌhelp sth aˈlong to try to make sth happen more quickly or easily: *My mother always says that a cup of tea **helps things along**.* ◇ *His father's name helped along his career in the early days.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌhelp sb ˈoff/ˈon with sth to help sb to take off or put on a piece of clothing, such as a coat: *Can I help you off with your coat?* ◇ *She helped him on with his dressing gown.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌhelp ˈout (with sth), **ˌhelp sb ˈout** (with sth) to help sb in order to make things easier for them, for example by doing some of their work or by giving them money: *Thank you for helping out.* ◇ *My dad said he'd help me out with money.*
NOTE **Help (with sth)** and **help sb (with sth)** can be used with the same meaning.
Ⓖ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˈhelp sb to sth; **ˈhelp yourself to sth** to give sb/yourself some food or drink: *Can I help anyone to more chicken?* ◇ *Please help yourselves to salad.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

hem /hem/ (-mm-)

ˌhem sb/sth ˈin to surround sb/sth with sth so that they cannot move freely: *The thick trees hemmed them in on all sides.* ◇ *The ship was hemmed in by the ice.* ◇ (*figurative*) *We felt hemmed in by restrictions.*
SYN **fence sb in**
NOTE **Hem sb/sth in** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

herd /hɜːd; *AmE* hɜːrd/

ˌherd toˈgether; **ˌherd sb/sth toˈgether** to move or make sb/sth move in a particular direction: *They were herded together into trucks and driven away.*
NOTE **Herd sb/sth together** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

hide /haɪd/ (**hid** /hɪd/ **hidden** /ˈhɪdn/)

ˌhide aˈway; **ˌhide yourself aˈway** to go to a place secretly because you do not want anyone to find you: *She used to hide away in her room when she got depressed.* ◇ *She hid herself away until she felt better.*
Ⓖ v + adv • v + pron + adv
▸ **ˈhideaway** *n* a place where sb goes to be alone

ˌhide sb/sth aˈway to put sb/sth in a secret place so that no one else can find them/it: *You won't find your present — I've hidden it away!*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌhide ˈout to go to a secret place to escape from sb who is trying to find you: *He hid out in the woods.*
Ⓖ v + adv
▸ **ˈhideout** *n* a place where sb goes when they do not want to be found

hike /haɪk/

ˌhike sth ˈup 1 (*informal*) to lift or pull up a piece of clothing that you are wearing: *He hiked up his trousers and waded into the water.* SYN **hitch sth up 2** to increase a price or rate suddenly and by a large amount: *They hiked up the price by 40%.* SYN **jack sth up** (*informal*), **put sth up** **NOTE** **Hike sth** is used less often with this meaning.
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

hinge /hɪndʒ/

ˈhinge on sth (*also* **ˈhinge upon sth** *more formal*) if an action, a result, etc. **hinges on/upon** sth, it depends on it completely or is strongly influenced by it: *My whole career could hinge on the results of these exams.* ◇ *The success of the project hinges on how well everyone works together.*
Ⓖ v + prep

hint /hɪnt/

ˈhint at sth to suggest in an indirect way that sth is true or likely: *In his speech the Prime Minister hinted at an early election.*
NOTE **Hint at sth** can be used in the passive: *The problem was only hinted at.*
Ⓖ v + prep

hire /ˈhaɪə(r)/

ˌhire sb ˈout; **ˌhire yourself ˈout** (**to sb**) (**as sth**) to arrange for sb to work for sb else; to arrange to work for sb: *The agency hires out cleaning staff.* ◇ *He hires himself out to farmers at harvest time.* ◇ *He had been hired out to them as an expert.*
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌhire sth ˈout (**to sb**) to allow sb to use sth for a short period of time in return for payment: *The club will hire out tennis rackets to guests.*
OBJ **equipment, boat** SYN **let sth out** (**to sb**); **rent sth out** (**to sb**)
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

hit /hɪt/ (**hitting, hit, hit**)

ˌhit ˈback (**at sb/sth**) to criticize or attack sb who has criticized or attacked you: *In an interview she hit back at her critics.*
SYN **bite back** (**at sb/sth**); **strike back** (**at/against sb/sth**)
G v + adv

ˈhit sb for sth (*also* **ˌhit sb ˈup for sth**) (*slang, especially AmE*) to ask sb for sth, especially money: *They hit us for a commission as well.* ◇ *She's always hitting me up for the cab fare home.* ◇ *Does he always hit you for cash when he wants new clothes?*
G v + n/pron + prep • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌhit it ˈoff (**with sb**) (*informal*) if two people **hit it off** with each other, they like each other and become friendly immediately: *We hit it off from the start.* ◇ *She didn't really hit it off with the office manager.*
G v + it + adv

ˈhit on sb (*AmE, slang*) to talk to sb in a way that shows you are sexually attracted to them: *He was hitting on my girlfriend!*
G v + prep

ˈhit on sth (*also* **ˈhit upon sth** *more formal*) (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to think of a plan, a solution, etc. suddenly or by chance: *She hit on an idea for raising money.* ◇ *I realized I'd hit upon a solution to one of our main problems.*
OBJ **idea, method, formula, solution** SYN **light on/upon sb/sth**
G v + prep

ˌhit ˈout (**at sb/sth**) **1** to attack sb violently, especially sb who is trying to hit or capture you: *She hit out at the policeman as he tried to arrest her.* ◇ *I just hit out blindly in all directions.* SYN **strike out** (**at sb/sth**) **2** to criticize sb or sth strongly: *He hit out at the government's decision.*
SYN **lash out** (**at sb/sth**)
G v + adv

ˌhit sb ˈup for sth (*especially AmE*) = HIT SB FOR STH

ˈhit upon sth = HIT ON STH

hitch /hɪtʃ/

ˌhitch sth ˈup to pull up a piece of your clothing: *We hitched up our skirts and climbed over the wall.*
SYN **hike sth up** (*informal*)
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

hive /haɪv/

ˌhive sth ˈoff (**into/to sth**) (*business*) to separate sth from a larger group; to sell part of a company: *Some of the firm's operations have been hived off into a separate company.*
NOTE **Hive sth off** is often used in the passive.
G v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

hold /həʊld; *AmE* hoʊld/ (**held, held** /held/)

~ against
~ back
145 ~ back on
~ down
~ forth
~ in
~ off
~ on
~ onto, on to
~ out
146 ~ out for
~ out on
~ over
~ to
~ together
~ up
~ up as
~ with

ˌhold sth aˈgainst sb to allow sth bad that sb has done to make you like or respect them less: *I know I was stupid — I hope you won't* ***hold it against*** *me.* ◇ *Do you hold any grudges against him?* ◇ *I don't* ***hold it against*** *him* ***that*** *he lied to me twice.*
OBJ **it, grudge**
NOTE **Hold sth against sb** is often used with a negative such as *don't* or *won't*.
G v + n/pron + prep

ˌhold ˈback (**from doing sth**); **ˌhold sb ˈback** (**from doing sth**) to hesitate, or to make sb hesitate, to act or speak: *Don't hold back! This opportunity is too good to miss!* ◇ *Phil walked forward confidently but something held Ben back.* ◇ *I nearly told him what I thought of him, but I held back.*
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

ˌhold sb/sth ˈback 1 to prevent sb/sth from moving forward or from entering or leaving a place: *The police were unable to hold back the fans.* **2** to prevent the progress or development of sb/sth: *Now that he's got this job, there'll be* ***no holding him back****.* ◇ *Teaching all the children together can hold the brighter children back.* ◇ *Low rates of investment will hold back technical progress.* ◇ *Parents claim the tests are being used to hold children back* (= not let them progress to the next class).
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌhold sth ˈback 1 to stop yourself from expressing or showing how you feel: *They couldn't hold back their laughter.* ◇ *He struggled to hold back his tears.* OBJ **your tears, your laughter** SYN **keep sth back**; **contain sth** (*more formal*) **2** to not tell sb sth that you wish to keep secret: *I think he's holding something back; he knows more than he's admitting.* OBJ **something, anything, information** SYN **withhold sth** (*more formal*) **3** to keep sth such as money to use later: *£1 000 of the grant will be held back until the project is completed.* NOTE **Hold sth back** is often used in the passive in this meaning.
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌhold ˈback on sth to try to spend only a little time, money, etc. on sth; to show control in what you do: *My grandmother never held back on the tea and cakes when we visited.* ◇ *She held back on her questioning* (= she did not ask too many questions).
G v + adv + prep

ˌhold sb ˈdown to prevent sb from having their freedom or rights
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌhold sb/sth ˈdown to use force to hold sb/sth in a particular position and stop them/it from moving: *He was held down and kicked by the two men.* ◇ *Hold the mouse button down as you move the cursor.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌhold sth ˈdown 1 to manage to keep a job, position, etc. even though it may be difficult for you to do so: *He doesn't seem able to hold down a full-time job.* OBJ **a job 2** (*especially BrE*) to keep sth at a low level: *The company is trying to hold down costs.* ◇ *The rate of inflation must be held down.* OBJ **prices, wages, inflation, costs** SYN **keep sth down 3** (*AmE, informal*) to limit sth, especially a noise: ***Hold it down****, will you? I'm trying to sleep!* **4** (*usually used in negative sentences*) to be able to eat food without bringing it back out of your mouth: *She hasn't been able to hold any food down since the operation.* OBJ **food** SYN **keep sth down 5** to not allow yourself to show or express a strong emotion: *I had to hold down the urge to hit him.*
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌhold ˈforth (**on/about sth**) (*formal* or *humorous*) to speak for a long time and often in a boring or annoying way: *He was holding forth about how successful his business is.*
G v + adv

ˌhold sth ˈin 1 to keep sth inside a place so that it cannot fall out or escape: *The straps hold the baby in securely.* ◇ *I had to hold my stomach in* (= pull the muscles flat) *to zip up my jeans.* OBJ **your stomach, your tummy 2** to not show or express how you feel: *I couldn't hold in my anger any longer.* OPP **let sth out**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌhold ˈoff 1 if rain or a storm, etc. **holds off**, it does not start: *I hope the rain holds off for the wedding.* SYN **keep off 2** (*also* **ˌhold ˈoff sth, ˌhold ˈoff** (**from**) **doing sth**) to delay doing sth: *I need to make a decision soon, but I'll hold off until next week.* ◇ *The committee will hold off their decision until they receive the report.* ◇ *I'm holding off buying a dress until the sales start.*
NOTE **Hold off sth** is not used with a pronoun.
G **1** v + adv
2 v + adv • v + adv + n • v + adv + -ing

ˌhold sb/sth ˈoff to resist an attack by an enemy or an opponent: *How long do you think you can hold off the attack?* ◇ *He held off a late challenge from Davies to win the race.*
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌhold ˈon 1 (*spoken, informal*) used to ask sb to wait or stop for a short time: *Hold on a minute — I'm not quite ready.* ◇ *Hold on! That doesn't sound right.* **2** to survive in a difficult or dangerous situation; to continue doing sth although it is difficult: *They managed to hold on until help arrived.*
SYN **hang on**
G v + adv

ˌhold ˈon; **ˌhold ˈonto sth/sb**; **ˌhold ˈon to sth/sb** to hold sth/sb tightly; to not let go of sth/sb: ***Hold on tight*** *— I'm going to speed up!* ◇ *Hold onto your hat or it'll blow away.* ◇ *I had to hold onto the chair for support.*
SYN **hang on, hang onto sth/sb, hang on to sth/sb**
G v + adv • v + prep • v + adv + prep

ˌhold sth ˈon to keep sth in position so that it cannot fall off: *It is these nuts and bolts that hold the wheels on.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌhold ˈonto sb/sth; **ˌhold ˈon to sb/sth** to keep sth/sb; to not lose sth/sb: *Hold on to the magazines for as long as you like.* ◇ *The party will hold on to its majority at the next election.* ◇ *She's a good worker. You should hold on to her.* ◇ *You must pass the ball else and not hold onto it.*
SYN **hang onto sb/sth, hang on to sb/sth** (*informal*)
G v + prep • v + adv + prep

ˌhold ˈout 1 if money or supplies, etc. **hold out**, they last or remain: *I'm staying here for as long as my money holds out.* ◇ *Do you think the fine weather will hold out?* SYN **last out 2** (**against sb/sth**) to resist an attack: *The town continues to hold out against enemy bombing.* **3** (**against sth**) to refuse to accept sth that you not agree with: *We can't hold out against industrialization any longer.* OPP **give in** (**to sb/sth**)
G v + adv
▸ **ˈholdout** *n* (*AmE*) someone who resists an attack, an enemy or an opponent, or who refuses to accept sth

ˌhold ˈout sth to offer a chance, hope or possibility of sth: *He may come, but I don't* ***hold out much hope.*** *◇ This method seems to hold out the greatest promise of success.*
OBJ **the promise/prospect/possibility of…, hope**
NOTE **Hold out sth** is never used with a pronoun.
◈ v + adv + n

ˌhold sth ˈout to hold sth such as your hand or sth in your hand, in front of you towards sb else: *She held her cup out for more coffee. ◇ 'You must be Kate,' he said, holding out his hand.*
OBJ **hand**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ⬩ v + adv + n

ˌhold ˈout for sth to deliberately delay reaching an agreement in the hope that you will gain sth; to refuse to accept anything less than what you are asking for: *Union leaders are holding out for a better deal.*
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌhold ˈout on sb (*informal*) to refuse to tell or give sb sth: *You promised to give me the money. Stop holding out on me.*
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌhold sth ˈover 1 to leave sth to be dealt with later: *We decided to hold the matter over until the next meeting.* SYN **postpone sth 2** (*AmE*) to show a film/movie or play for longer than planned because it is so successful: *The show is being held over for another month.*
NOTE **Hold sth over** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv ⬩ v + adv + n
▸ **ˈholdover** *n* (*AmE*) a person who keeps a position of power, for example sb who had a particular position in one government and who still has it in the next

ˌhold sth ˈover sb to use sth that you know about sb in order to threaten them and to make them do what you want: *I don't want to give him anything to hold over me.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˈhold to sth if you **hold to** an opinion, a belief, etc., you do not change it: *She always holds to her principles.*
SYN **keep to sth; stick to sth**
◈ v + prep

ˈhold sb to sth 1 to make sb keep a promise: *'I promise I'll take you out to dinner if we win.' 'I'll hold you to that!'* **2** (*sport*) to stop your opponent in a sports competition winning more points than you: *Spain held France to a 1-1 draw.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˈhold sth to sth to place sth close to sth else: *He held a knife to her throat.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌhold toˈgether; **ˌhold sth toˈgether 1** to remain, or to keep sb/sth, united: *The coalition has held together for longer than expected. ◇ Strong bonds of loyalty hold the family together.* **2** if ideas, arguments, etc. **hold together**, or sth **holds them together**, they are logical and the parts agree with each other: *His ideas don't really hold together. ◇ Words like 'however', 'therefore', 'although', etc. can hold your text together.* **3** to remain in one piece; to stay in good condition: *It's a miracle that his car is still holding together. ◇ His trousers were held together by safety pins.*
◈ v + adv ⬩ v + n/pron + adv ⬩ v + adv + n

ˌhold ˈup 1 to remain healthy, in good condition or working effectively, especially when there are difficulties: *Sales have held up well, in spite of economic difficulties. ◇ How did your tent hold up in the storm?* **2** if an idea, an argument, etc. **holds up**, it remains strong when you analyse it carefully: *I don't think his argument really holds up.* SYN **stand up**
◈ v + adv

ˌhold sb/sth ˈup 1 to raise sb/sth in the air: *She held up her hand to stop him. ◇ He held up his trophy as the crowd applauded.* **2** to support sb/sth and prevent it/them from falling: *Her trousers were held up with string. ◇ The two pillars were holding the ceiling up.* SYN **keep sth up 3** to block or delay the progress of sb/sth: *Roadworks on the motorway are holding up traffic. ◇ She phoned to say she'd been held up at the office. ◇ I don't want to hold you up.* **4** to rob a person, a bank, a shop/store, etc. using a gun: *Have they caught the people who held up the bank?*
NOTE **Hold sb/sth up** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n ⬩ v + n/pron + adv
4 v + adv + n ⬩ v + pron + adv ⬩ v + n + adv (*rare*)
▸ **ˈhold-up** *n* **1** a delay or sth which causes a delay: *What's the hold-up?* **2** an act of robbing a person, a bank, a shop/store, etc. using a gun

ˌhold sb/sth ˈup as sth to present sb/sth as an example of sth: *My mother held up my cousin as an example of a good student.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep ⬩ v + adv + n + prep

ˈhold with sth to agree with or approve of sth: *I don't hold with these new theories on education.*
NOTE **Hold with sth** is only used in negative sentences and questions.
◈ v + prep

hole /həʊl; *AmE* hoʊl/

ˌhole ˈup; **be ˌholed ˈup** (*informal*) to hide somewhere: *The thieves holed up in an empty warehouse. ◇ The police couldn't find out where the gang were holed up.*
◈ v + adv ⬩ be + v + adv

hollow /ˈhɒləʊ; *AmE* ˈhɑːloʊ/

ˌhollow sth ˈout 1 to make a space inside sth by removing part of it: *We hollowed out the pumpkin and put a candle in it. ◇ a hollowed-out tree trunk* **2** to form sth by making a hole in something else: *The waves have hollowed out caves along the cliff.*
◈ v + adv + n ⬩ v + pron + adv ⬩ v + n + adv (*rare*)

home /həʊm; *AmE* hoʊm/

ˌhome ˈin on sb/sth 1 to move or be aimed straight towards sb/sth: *She homed in on me as soon as she saw me.* **2** to turn all your attention to sth: *The lawyer homed in on the inconsistencies in her story.*
◈ v + adv + prep

hook /hʊk/

ˌhook sb ˈinto sth; **ˌhook sb ˈinto doing sth** (*AmE, informal*) to persuade sb to do sth when they do not want to: *I didn't want to be involved but I got hooked into helping. ◇ He tried to hook me into going with them.*
NOTE **Hook sb into sth/into doing sth** is nearly always used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌhook ˈup (with sb) 1 (*informal*) to agree to work with sb: *We've hooked up with a firm in Ireland.* **2** (*informal, especially AmE*) to meet sb and spend time with them: *On vacation we hooked up with some Texans. ◇ Let's hook up when you get back from your trip.* **3** (*AmE, informal*) to start a relationship with sb: *They hooked up at Kyle's party.*
◈ v + adv

ˌhook ˈup; **ˌhook sb/sth ˈup (to sth)** to connect sb/sth to a piece of electronic equipment or to a power supply: *All the speakers hook up to a single amplifier. ◇ The boat was hooked up to the shore power supply. ◇ They've hooked him up to a life-support machine.*
◈ v + adv ⬩ v + adv + n ⬩ v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈhook-up** *n* a connection between two or more pieces of equipment: *an international phone hook-up*

hoover /ˈhuːvə(r)/

ˌhoover sth ˈup (*BrE*) to remove dust, dirt, etc. from a carpet or floor with a vacuum cleaner (= an electrical machine that cleans floors and carpets by sucking up dust and dirt): (*figurative*) *The US and Canada usually hoover up all the gold and silver medals at the Olympic Games.*
◈ v + adv + n ⬩ v + n/pron + adv

horse /hɔːs; *AmE* hɔːrs/

ˌhorse aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌhorse aˈbout**) (*informal*) to play in a noisy and careless way that is likely to damage sth or hurt sb: *If you two don't stop horsing around you'll hurt yourselves.*
SYN **mess around** (*BrE*)
◈ v + adv

hose /həʊz; *AmE* hoʊz/

ˌhose sth ˈdown to wash or clean sth using water from a long rubber or plastic tube (a **hose**): *I hosed the car down to get rid of the mud.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ⬩ v + adv + n

hot /hɒt; *AmE* hɑːt/ (**-tt-**)

ˌhot ˈup (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˌheat ˈup** *informal*) to become more lively or exciting: *Things are hotting up as the election approaches. ◇ As the pace hotted up, he dropped back into third place.*
◈ v + adv

hound /haʊnd/

ˌhound sb ˈout; **ˌhound sb ˈout of sth**; **ˈhound sb from sth** to force sb to leave a place or their job: *They were hounded out of the town. ◇ She was hounded from politics by her rivals.*
NOTE **Hound sb out** is usually used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv ⬩ v + adv + n (*rare*) ⬩
v + n/pron + adv + prep ⬩ v + n/pron + prep

huddle /ˈhʌdl/

ˌhuddle toˈgether to move, stand or sit close to one another for warmth or protection: *We huddled together for warmth.*
◈ v + adv

ˌhuddle ˈup (against/to sb/sth) to press yourself into a small space for warmth or protection: *She huddled up against him to keep warm.*
◈ v + adv

hunger /ˈhʌŋɡə(r)/

ˈhunger after/for sth (*literary*) to have a strong desire for sth and try to get it: *She hungers after wealth and prestige.*
◈ v + prep

hunker /ˈhʌŋkə(r)/

ˌhunker ˈdown (*especially AmE*) **1** to sit on your heels with your knees bent up in front of you: *We hunkered down around the fire.* SYN **squat 2** to refuse to change an opinion, a way of behaving, etc: *The Democrats have hunkered down and won't be moved.* **3** to start to work at sth or study very hard: *It's time you hunkered down and started studying.*
◈ v + adv

hunt /hʌnt/

ˌhunt sb ˈdown to search for sb until you find or catch them: *He vowed to hunt down the killer.*
◈ v + adv + n ⬩ v + n/pron + adv

ˌhunt sth ˈdown/ˈout to find sth after a long and difficult search: *I managed to hunt out those files you wanted.* ◇ *Can you hunt down his phone number for me?*
SYN **dig sth out; root sb/sth out**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌhunt sb/sth ˈup to search for sb/sth, especially sb/sth that is hidden or difficult to find: *We hunted up anyone who might have known him.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

hurry /ˈhʌri; *AmE* ˈhɜːri/ (**hurries, hurrying, hurried, hurried**)

ˌhurry sb/sth aˈlong to do or say sth to make sb move or work faster; to do sth to make sth happen faster: *Hurry the kids along or we'll miss the train.* ◇ *We should try to **hurry things along** a bit.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌhurry ˈon (to sth) to continue speaking, without allowing anyone to interrupt or speak: *She hurried on to the next topic before I could object.* ◇ *'Just leave that to me,' she hurried on.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + speech

ˌhurry ˈup (*spoken*) used to tell sb to move or do sth more quickly: *Hurry up, we have to leave in five minutes!* ◇ *I wish the bus would hurry up and come.* ◇ *I wish the waiter would hurry up with our soup.*
◈ v + adv

ˌhurry sb/sth ˈup to encourage sb to move or work faster; to do sth to make sth happen faster: *Hurry your brother up or we'll be late.* ◇ ***Hurry it up** we haven't got all day!* ◇ *Is there a way of **hurrying things up**?*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*rare*)

hush /hʌʃ/

ˌhush sth ˈup to hide information about a situation, especially sth bad or shocking, because you do not want people to know about it: *The government tried to hush the affair up.*
NOTE **Hush sth up** is often used in the passive: *The scandal was hushed up.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

hype /haɪp/

ˌhype sb/sth ˈup (*informal*) to advertise or talk about sb/sth in an exaggerated way in order to get a lot of public attention for it: *His latest movie is being hyped up by the media.*
NOTE **Hype sb/sth up** is often used in the passive. • **Hype sb/sth** is also used with the same meaning.
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **ˌhyped ˈup** *adj* (*informal*) **1** (of a person) very excited or worried about sth: *She gets very hyped up before a race.* **2** (of a film/movie, a book, an event, etc.) advertised or talked about in an exaggerated way to get public attention: *a hyped-up movie*

Ii

ice /aɪs/

ˌice ˈover/ˈup; be ˌiced ˈover/ˈup to become covered by a layer of ice: *The road had iced over during the night.* ◇ *The windscreen had iced up.* ◇ *The lake was iced up.*
SYN **freeze over, freeze up**
◈ v + adv ◆ be + v + adv

identify /aɪˈdentɪfaɪ/ (**identifies, identifying, identified, identified**)

iˈdentify with sb/sth to feel that you can understand and share the feelings of sb else: *He's a character that readers feel they can identify with.*
◈ v + prep

iˈdentify sb with sb/sth to consider sb to be sth or to be closely connected with sb/sth: *The last thing she wanted was to be identified with her parents.* ◇ *Many of these artists were closely identified with Cubist painting.*
NOTE **Identify sb with sb/sth** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

iˈdentify sth with sth to consider sth to be the same as sth else: *Beauty is often identified with youth.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

iˈdentify yourself with sb/sth; be iˈdentified with sb/sth to support sb/sth; to be closely connected with sb/sth: *He refused to identify himself with the new political party.*
→ *see also* IDENTIFY SB WITH SB/STH

idle /ˈaɪdl/

ˌidle sth aˈway to spend time doing nothing very important: *They idled away their time watching television.*
OBJ **day, time**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

imbue /ɪmˈbjuː/

imˈbue sb/sth with sth to fill sb/sth with a strong feeling, quality, etc: *He managed to imbue his employees with team spirit.* ◇ *The painting is imbued with energy and life.*
SYN **infuse B with A**
NOTE **Imbue sb/sth with sth** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

immerse /ɪˈmɜːs; *AmE* ɪˈmɜːrs/

imˈmerse sb/yourself in sth to become, or to make sb become, completely involved in sth: *He immersed himself in his studies.* ◇ *I was completely immersed in the story.*
NOTE **Immerse sb in sth** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

impact /ɪmˈpækt/

imˈpact on sb/sth (*also* **imˈpact upon sb/sth** *more formal*) to have an effect on sb/sth: *Government cuts will impact directly on education.* ◇ *This decision may impact on the unemployed.*
SYN **affect sb/sth**
◈ v + prep

impinge /ɪmˈpɪndʒ/

imˈpinge on sb/sth (*also* **imˈpinge upon sb/sth** *more formal*) to have a strong effect on sb/sth, especially a bad one: *She didn't allow her personal problems to impinge on her work.*
SYN **affect sb/sth**
◈ v + prep

impose /ɪmˈpəʊz; *AmE* ɪmˈpoʊz/

imˈpose on sb to expect sb to do sth for you or spend time with you when they do not have much time, or when it may not be convenient for them: *Tim never says 'No', so people are always imposing on him.*
◈ v + prep

impress /ɪmˈpres/

imˈpress sth on sb (*also* **imˈpress sth upon sb** *more formal*) to emphasize to sb how important or serious sth is: *I wanted to impress on him that it was a very serious offence.* ◇ *She impressed on her staff the importance of keeping accurate records.*
NOTE The object of **impress** usually comes after **on sb**.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

imˈpress sth/itself on sth (*also* **imˈpress sth/itself upon sth** *more formal*) if sb **impresses** sth **on** or sth **impresses itself on** your mind, memory, etc. it has a great effect on you so that you do not forget it: *Her beauty impressed itself on everyone who met her.* ◇ *His words impressed themselves on my memory.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

imprint /ɪmˈprɪnt/

imˈprint A in/on B; imˈprint B with A **1** to have a great effect on sth so that it cannot be forgotten, changed, etc: *The scene was imprinted on my mind.* ◇ *The picture is imprinted with his own style.* **2** to print or press a mark or design on sth: *T-shirts imprinted with the logos of sports teams*

NOTE **Imprint sth in/on/with sth** is often used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

improve /ɪmˈpruːv/

imˈprove on sth (*also* **imˈprove upon sth** *more formal*) to achieve or produce sth of a better standard or quality than sth else: *There are a few points in your work that you could improve on.* ◇ *The Kenyan girl improved on her previous best performance* (= in a race).
NOTE **Improve on/upon sth** can be used in the passive: *These results must be improved upon.*
◆ v + prep

impute /ɪmˈpjuːt/

imˈpute sth to sb/sth (*formal*) to say, often unfairly, that sb/sth is responsible for sth, or has a particular quality: *Why do you impute selfish motives to her?*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

incline /ɪnˈklaɪn/

inˈcline to/towards sth; inˈcline sb to/towards sth (*formal*) to tend to think or behave in a particular way; to make sb do this: *I incline to the view that we should take no action.* ◇ *Her love of languages inclined her towards a career as a translator.*
◆ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

indulge /ɪnˈdʌldʒ/

inˈdulge in sth 1 to allow yourself to have or do sth that you like, often sth that is bad for you: *She indulged in the luxury of a long bath.* ◇ *He now has time to indulge in his favourite hobby: photography.* ◇ *I'm going to indulge in a chocolate cake!* **2** to take part in an activity, especially sth bad or illegal: *We shouldn't indulge in speculation as to what really happened.*
NOTE **Indulge in sth** can be used in the passive: *It's a luxury that can only be indulged in from time to time.*
◆ v + prep

inform /ɪnˈfɔːm; *AmE* ɪnˈfɔːrm/

inˈform on sb to give evidence about sb or make an accusation against sb, to the police or sb in authority: *One of the gang informed on the rest.*
◆ v + prep

infringe /ɪnˈfrɪndʒ/

inˈfringe on sth (*also* **inˈfringe upon sth** *more formal*) to limit sb's freedom, rights, etc: *The media is accused of infringing on people's privacy.*
OBJ **liberty, rights**
NOTE **Infringe on/upon sth** can be used in the passive.
◆ v + prep

infuse /ɪnˈfjuːz/

inˈfuse A into B; inˈfuse B with A (*formal*) to fill sb/sth with a particular quality: *His arrival infused new life and energy into the team.* ◇ *Her work is infused with anger.*
SYN **imbue sth with sth**
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ink /ɪŋk/

ˌink sth ˈin (*BrE*) to write or draw in ink over sth that has been written or drawn in pencil: *I did the answers in pencil first and then inked them in.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The company has inked in June 1st* (= made it definite) *for the launch.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

inquire /ɪnˈkwaɪə(r)/

inˈquire after sb/sth (*especially AmE*) = ENQUIRE AFTER SB/STH

inˈquire into sth (*especially AmE*) = ENQUIRE INTO STH

inˈquire sth of sb (*especially AmE*) = ENQUIRE STH OF SB

insinuate /ɪnˈsɪnjueɪt/

inˌsinuate yourself ˈinto sth (*formal, disapproving*) to get yourself into a position of advantage, especially by clever talk or by gaining the favour or respect of sb important: *She cleverly insinuated herself into his family.*
◆ v + pron + prep

insist /ɪnˈsɪst/

inˈsist on sth; inˈsist on doing sth (*also* **inˈsist upon sth, inˈsist upon doing sth** *more formal*) to demand sth and refuse to be persuaded to accept anything else: *They are insisting on a meeting tomorrow.* ◇ *I always insist on skimmed milk.* ◇ *He insisted on walking home with her.*
NOTE **Insist on/upon sth** can be used in the passive: *This format must be insisted on.*
◆ v + prep

inˈsist on doing sth (*also* **inˈsist upon doing sth** *more formal*) to continue doing sth even though other people find it annoying: *She will insist on shouting at the top of her voice.*
◆ v + prep

insure /ɪnˈʃʊə(r), -ˈʃɔː(r); *AmE* -ˈʃʊr/

inˈsure against sth 1 to buy an insurance policy which will pay you money if the event mentioned happens: *Everyone needs to insure against fire.* **2** to take action to prevent sth unpleasant happening: *This is to insure against a repetition of previous disasters.*
◆ v + prep

interest /ˈɪntrəst, -trest/

ˈinterest sb in sth to persuade sb to buy, do or eat sth: *Could I interest you in this model* (= of car), *Sir?*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

interfere /ˌɪntəˈfɪə(r); *AmE* ˌɪntərˈfɪr/

interˈfere with sb (*BrE*) to touch a child in a sexual way
NOTE **Interfere with sb** can be used in the passive.
◆ v + prep

interˈfere with sth 1 to get in the way of sth; to prevent sth from being done or making progress: *Don't let anything interfere with your training.* ◇ *We don't want to interfere with your plans.* **2** to touch, adjust or change sth without permission, and damage it: *Who's been interfering with the clock?* **SYN** **tamper with sth 3** if sth **interferes with** radio or sound waves, etc., it stops them being heard easily or clearly: *The computer is interfering with the radio.*
NOTE **Interfere with sth** can be used in the passive: *The evidence has been interfered with.*
◆ v + prep

inure /ɪˈnjʊə(r); *AmE* ɪˈnjʊr/

iˈnure sb/yourself to sth to make sb/sth get used to sth unpleasant so that they are no longer strongly affected by it: *The prisoners quickly became inured to the harsh conditions.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

invalid /ˈɪnvəlɪd, ˈɪnvəliːd/

ˌinvalid sb ˈout; ˌinvalid sb ˈout of sth (*BrE*) to make sb leave a job, especially in the armed forces, because they are ill/sick or injured: *He was invalided out of the army because of his injuries.*
NOTE **Invalid sb out** is usually used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv + prep

invest /ɪnˈvest/

inˈvest in sth (*informal, often humorous*) to buy sth or spend money on sth useful, especially sth expensive: *It's time we invested in a new sofa — this one is falling to bits.*
◆ v + prep

inˈvest sb/sth with sth (*formal*) to make sb/sth **seem** to have a particular quality: *Being the boss* ***invests*** *her with a certain glamour.*
NOTE **Invest sb/sth with sth** is often used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

invite /ɪnˈvaɪt/

inˌvite sb aˈlong to ask sb if they would like to go with you to an event or activity: *Shall I invite Dave along (to the concert)?*
SYN **ask sb along** (*less formal*)
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

inˌvite sb aˈround (*AmE*) = INVITE SB OVER/ROUND

inˌvite sb ˈback (to sth) (*especially BrE*) to ask sb to go back to your home after you have been out somewhere together: *She invited me back to her flat for coffee after the movie.*
SYN **ask sb back (to sth); have sb back** (*both less formal*)
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

inˌvite sb ˈin/ˈup to politely ask sb to enter a room, your house, etc: *Aren't you going to invite me in for a coffee?*
SYN **ask sb in/up** (*less formal*)
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

inˌvite sb ˈout to ask sb to go out with you, especially as a way of beginning a romantic relationship: *We've been invited out for dinner this evening.* ◇ *He eventually found the courage to invite Julia out.*
SYN **ask sb out** (*less formal*)
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

inˌvite sb ˈover/ˈround (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˌinvite sb aˈround**) to ask sb to come and visit you in your home: *I've invited a few friends round to watch the game with us on TV.* ◇ *We ought to invite the new neighbours over for coffee.*
SYN **ask sb over/round** (*less formal*)
◆ v + n/pron + adv

inˌvite sb ˈup = INVITE SB IN/UP

involve /ɪnˈvɒlv; *AmE* ɪnˈvɑːlv/

inˈvolve sb in sth to make sb experience or do sth, especially sth unpleasant: *The new exams have involved teachers in a lot of extra paperwork.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

iron /ˈaɪən; *AmE* ˈaɪərn/

ˌiron sth ˈout 1 to remove the folds that you do not want from clothes, etc. by using a tool with a flat metal base that can be heated (an **iron**): *Iron out all the creases.* **OBJ** **creases 2** to get rid of any problems or difficulties that are affecting sth: *We must iron out the problems before next week.* **OBJ** **difficulties, problems** **SYN** **resolve sth** (*more formal*)
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

issue /ˈɪʃuː (*BrE also*) ˈɪsjuː/

ˈissue from sth (*formal*) to come, go or flow out of sth or somewhere: *I could see smoke issuing from the window.*
◆ v + prep

itch /ɪtʃ/

ˈitch for sth (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) to want sth very much: *They were just itching for a fight.*
OBJ **a fight, a chance**
NOTE **Itch to do sth** can also be used with the same meaning: *He was itching to find out more.*
◆ v + prep

Jj

jab /dʒæb/ (**-bb-**)

ˈjab at sb/sth (**with sth**) to push a sharp or pointed object quickly or roughly into sb/sth or in the direction of sb/sth: *He kept jabbing at the paper cup with his pencil.* ◇ *She jabbed at the papers with her finger.*
◆ v + prep

jabber /ˈdʒæbə(r)/

jabber aˈway (*informal*) to speak or talk quickly in an excited way: *She jabbered away, trying to distract his attention.* ◇ *He was jabbering away in Russian.*
◆ v + adv

jack /dʒæk/

jack sth ˈin (*BrE, informal*) to stop doing sth, especially your job: *She decided to jack in her job.* ◇ *After such a bad day I feel like **jacking it all in**.*
OBJ **job** SYN **chuck sth in/up; pack sth in**
NOTE **Jack sth in** can not be used in the passive.
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

jack ˈoff (*AmE*, ⚠, *slang*) if a man **jacks off** he gives himself sexual pleasure by rubbing his sexual organs
◆ v + adv

jack ˈup (*slang*) to take an illegal drug by putting it into your body using a plastic or glass tube with a long hollow needle (a **syringe**)
◆ v + adv

jack sth ˈup 1 to lift sth such as a vehicle off the ground using a special device (a **jack**) OBJ **car 2** (*informal*) to increase the cost or the price of sth: *The wholesalers have jacked up their prices.* OBJ **cost, price** SYN **put sth up; increase sth** (*more formal*)
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

jam /dʒæm/ (**-mm-**)

jam sth ˈon if you **jam on** the brakes on a vehicle you operate them suddenly and with force: *A child ran into the road and I jammed on the brakes.*
OBJ only **the brakes, the handbrake** SYN **slam sth on**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

jam ˈup; jam sth ˈup (**with sth**) (*especially BrE*) if a machine, a road, etc. **jams up**, or sth **jams it up**, it becomes blocked, stops working, etc: *Let's get moving before the traffic jams up.* ◇ *People were jamming up the aisles in their rush to get out of the theatre.* ◇ *That photocopier is always getting jammed up.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

jazz /dʒæz/

jazz sth ˈup (**with sth**) (*informal*) **1** to make sth more lively or interesting: *Jazz up that plain dress with some jewellery.* SYN **liven sth up; spice sth up** (*more formal*) **2** to make a piece of music sound more modern, or more like jazz or popular music: *jazzed up Bach*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

jerk /dʒɜːk; *AmE* dʒɜːrk/

jerk sb aˈround (*informal, especially AmE*) to treat sb badly and cause them problems, especially by deceiving them: *He won't give us an answer — he keeps jerking us around.*
SYN **mess sb about/around** (*BrE*)
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

jerk ˈoff (*BrE*, ⚠, *slang*) if a man **jerks off**, he gives himself sexual pleasure by rubbing his sexual organs
◆ v + adv

jet /dʒet/ (**-tt-**)

jet ˈoff (**to ...**) to fly somewhere, especially somewhere far away: *They're jetting off to Florida tomorrow.*
◆ v + adv

jibe /dʒaɪb/

ˈjibe with sth (*AmE*) to agree with sth; to be the same as sth or match sth: *Her story didn't jibe with the witnesses' account.*
◆ v + prep

jockey /ˈdʒɒki; *AmE* ˈdʒɑːki/

ˈjockey for sth to try very hard to gain an advantage, a favour, etc. for yourself and stop other people getting it: *Several employees are jockeying for the manager's position.*
OBJ **position, power**
◆ v + prep

jog /dʒɒɡ; *AmE* dʒɑːɡ/ (**-gg-**)

jog aˈlong (*BrE, informal*) to continue in a steady way, with little or no excitement or progress: *For years the business just kept jogging along.*
◆ v + adv

join /dʒɔɪn/

join ˈin (**with sb/sth**), **join ˈin sth** to become involved in sth; to take part in an activity with other people: *Can I join in (the game)?* ◇ *We all joined in with the singing.*
SYN **participate** (**in sth**) (*more formal*)
◆ v + adv • v + prep

join ˈup 1 (with sb/sth) to meet or combine with sb/sth to do sth together: *They joined up with the rest of the party later.* **2** to become a member of the armed forces: *We both joined up in 1939.* SYN **enlist** (*more formal*)
G v + adv

join ˈup; join sth ˈup (*especially BrE*) to be connected to sth; to connect sth to sth: *The dots join up to form a solid line.* ◇ *Join up the dots to see the picture.*
SYN **connect (sth)** (*more formal*)
G v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
▶ **joined ˈup** *adj* [usually before noun] (*especially BrE*) things that are **joined up** are connected or linked together: *joined-up writing* ◇ (*figurative*) *joined-up thinking* ◇ (*figurative*) *the government's joined-up policy on health care*

ˈjoin with sb (in sth/in doing sth) (*formal*) to do or say sth with sb else or with a group of people: *I'm sure you'll join with me in congratulating Isla and Jake.* ◇ *Parents joined with teachers to protest against the closure of the school.*
G v + prep

jolly /ˈdʒɒli; *AmE* ˈdʒɑːli/ (**jollies, jollying, jollied, jollied**)

jolly sb aˈlong (*BrE, informal*) to keep encouraging sb in a friendly way: *She tried to jolly him along but he couldn't forget his problems.*
G v + n/pron + adv

jolly sb/sth ˈup (*BrE*) to make sb/sth brighter or more cheerful: *Do you think you can jolly Anthony up a bit?*
SYN **cheer sb/sth up; liven sb/sth up**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

jostle /ˈdʒɒsl; *AmE* ˈdʒɑːsl/

ˈjostle for sth to compete strongly and forcefully with other people for sth: *People in the crowd were jostling for the best positions.*
G v + prep

jot /dʒɒt; *AmE* dʒɑːt/ (**-tt-**)

jot sth ˈdown to write sth down quickly: *I'll jot down their address before I forget it.*
SYN **note sth down**
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

juice /dʒuːs/

juice sth ˈup (*AmE, slang*) **1** to make sth more lively, exciting or interesting: *Juice up your presentations with colourful graphics.* SYN **jazz sth up** (*informal*) **2** to make sth more powerful: *I could juice up the engine for you.* SYN **soup sth up 3** to put petrol in a vehicle: *We need to juice up the car before we leave.* OBJ **car** SYN **fill sth up**
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

jumble /ˈdʒʌmbl/

jumble sth ˈup/toˈgether to mix things up in a confused way: *Make sure you don't jumble everything up.* ◇ *The details of the accident were all jumbled together in his mind.*
SYN **mix sth up**
NOTE **Jumble sth up/together** is often used in the passive: *All her papers had been jumbled up.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

jump /dʒʌmp/

ˈjump at sb (*AmE*) = JUMP ON SB

ˈjump at sth to accept an opportunity, a chance, etc. with enthusiasm: *I jumped at the chance of a trip to Italy.*
OBJ **chance, idea** SYN **leap at sth**
G v + prep

jump ˈin 1 (with sth) to interrupt a conversation: *I jumped in while there was a brief pause in the conversation.* **2** to become involved in a situation suddenly or quickly: *She had jumped in to help while he was ill.*
G v + adv

ˈjump on sb (*AmE also* **ˈjump at sb**) (*informal*) to criticize sb sharply: *She jumped on me before I had a chance to explain.*
G v + prep

jump ˈout at sb to be very easy to see; to be noticeable: *The headline jumped out at me.* ◇ *The mistakes are so obvious they jump out at you.*
SYN **leap out at sb**
G v + adv + prep

jump ˈup to stand quickly and suddenly when you have been sitting: *He jumped up off the floor.*
SYN **leap up**
G v + adv
▶ **ˈjumped-up** *adj* [only before noun] (*BrE, informal, disapproving*) thinking that you are more important than you really are, particularly when you have risen in social status but do not deserve to: *I won't take orders from a jumped-up office girl!*

jut /dʒʌt/ (**-tt-**)

jut ˈout (from sth), jut ˈout of sth to stand out from sth; to stick out further than the surrounding surface: *The tops of the flooded houses jutted out of the water.*
SYN **stick out, stick out of sth**
G v + adv • v + adv + prep

Kk

keel /kiːl/

ˌkeel ˈover 1 (*informal*) to fall over: *I'm so tired, all I want to do is keel over and sleep for a week.* SYN **collapse 2** (of a boat) to turn on its side: *The boat keeled over in the strong winds.* SYN **capsize**
G v + adv

keep /kiːp/ (**kept, kept** /kept/)

~ after
~ ahead, ahead of
~ at
~ away
~ back
~ behind
~ down
156 ~ from
~ in
~ in with
~ off
~ on
157 ~ out, out of
~ to
~ together
~ under
~ up
158 ~ up with

ˌkeep ˈafter sb (about sth/to do sth) (*AmE*) to ask or tell sb repeatedly to do sth: *She keeps after me to fix the TV.*
→ *see also* KEEP ON 2
G v + prep

ˌkeep aˈhead; ˌkeep aˈhead of sb/sth to continue to be more advanced or successful than other people, groups, etc: *We need to keep ahead of our competitors.* ◇ *If you want to keep ahead in this industry, you have to be ruthless.*
SYN **stay ahead, stay ahead of sb/sth**
G v + adv • v + adv + prep

ˌkeep ˈat sth; ˌkeep sb ˈat sth to continue to work hard at sth, or to make sb work hard at sth, particularly sth which is difficult or takes a long time: ***Keep at it**, you've nearly finished!* ◇ *He kept them at the job until it was finished.*
G v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌkeep aˈway (from sb/sth) to not go near sb/sth: *Keep away from me!* ◇ *The police told us to keep well away from the area.*
SYN **stay away (from sb/sth)**
G v + adv

ˌkeep sb/sth aˈway (from sb/sth) to prevent sb/sth from going near sb/sth: *Keep him away from the kitchen while we make his birthday cake.* ◇ *We turned off the lights to keep the mosquitoes away.* ◇ *Her parents are keeping her away from school for a few days.* ◇ (*figurative*) *A healthy diet can help to keep colds and flu away.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌkeep ˈback (from sb/sth) to remain at a distance from sb/sth: *Keep back or I'll shoot!* ◇ *I kept well back from the road.*
SYN **stay back**
G v + adv

ˌkeep sb ˈback 1 (*BrE*) = KEEP SB IN 1 *I was kept back after school for being cheeky.* **2** (*AmE*) = KEEP SB DOWN 1

ˌkeep sb/sth ˈback (from sb/sth) to make sb/sth remain at a distance from sb/sth; to prevent sb from moving forwards: *Keep the children back from the fire.* ◇ *The police were trying to keep back the crowds.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌkeep sth ˈback 1 (*especially BrE*) to keep a part of sth to use later: *Have you kept some money back to pay the bills?* ◇ *Keep a piece of cake back for Alex.* **2 (from sb/sth)** to refuse to tell sb sth; to hold sth back: *I'm sure she's keeping something back (from us).* OBJ **something, anything, nothing** SYN **withold sth** (*more formal*) **3** to try not to let other people see or know how you feel: *He could hardly keep back the tears.* OBJ **tears** SYN **hold sth back**
G **1,2** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
3 v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌkeep sb beˈhind (*AmE*) **1** = KEEP SB IN 1

ˌkeep ˈdown to hide yourself by not standing up straight: *Keep down! Don't let anybody see you.*
SYN **stay down**
G v + adv

ˌkeep sb ˈdown 1 (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˌkeep sb ˈback**) to make a student repeat a year at school, college, etc. because of poor marks/grades: *I was kept down because I failed the exam.* **2** to control a people, a nation, etc. so that they have no power or freedom: *The people have been kept down for years by a brutal regime.* SYN **repress sb**
G **1** v + n/pron + adv
2 v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌkeep sth ˈdown 1 to make sth remain at a low level; to avoid increasing sth: *We're trying to keep costs down.* ◇ *He exercises a lot to keep his weight down.* ◇ *Keep your voice down!* ◇ ***Keep it down*** (= the noise)*! I'm trying to concentrate.* OBJ **costs, prices, voice, noise** SYN **hold sth down 2** to manage to keep food or drink in your stomach and avoid bringing it back through the mouth: *He can't keep anything down.* OBJ **food** SYN **hold sth down 3** to not raise a part of your body: *Keep your head down!* ◇ *She kept her eyes down while he was talking.* OBJ **eyes, head, face**
NOTE In meanings 2 and 3, **keep sth down** can not be used in the passive.
G **1,2** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
3 v + n/pron + adv
IDM **keep/get your ˈhead down** to avoid attracting attention

ˈkeep from doing sth; **ˈkeep yourself from doing sth** to prevent yourself from doing sth: *She bit her lip to keep from laughing.*

G v + prep • v + pron + prep

ˈkeep sb from sth; **ˈkeep sb from doing sth** to prevent sb from doing sth: *Don't let me keep you from your work.* ◇ *I've been trying to keep him from finding out the truth.* ◇ *Her pride kept her from crying in front of them.*

G v + n/pron + prep

ˈkeep sth from sb to avoid telling sb sth: *I think he's keeping secrets from me.* ◇ *Are you keeping something from us?*

OBJ **secrets**, **something**

G v + n/pron + prep

ˌkeep ˈin (*BrE*) to stay near the edge of the road or path while you are driving, walking, etc: *If you keep in, the van can overtake.*

G v + adv

ˌkeep sb ˈin (*especially BrE*) **1** (*BrE also* **ˌkeep sb ˈback**) (*AmE also* **ˌkeep sb beˈhind**) to make a child stay after normal school hours as a punishment: *The teacher kept them all in after school.* **2** to not allow a child to go outdoors: *I'm keeping the children in because it's raining outside.* **3** to keep sb in hospital: *She's much better, but they're keeping her in overnight.*

G v + n/pron + adv

ˌkeep sth ˈin 1 to stop yourself expressing an emotion: *He could hardly keep in his anger.* SYN **restrain sth 2** to not allow sth to escape, be lost or taken out: *Close the door to keep in the warmth.* ◇ *She wanted to cut the sex scene* (= in a play or film/movie), *but we kept it in.* OBJ **warmth**, **heat 3** to not allow an animal to go outdoors

G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

IDM **keep your ˈhand in** to do an activity occasionally so that you do not lose your skill at it: *I play squash from time to time, just to keep my hand in.*

ˈkeep sb/yourself in sth (*informal*) to give or allow sb/yourself a regular supply of sth: *This part-time job keeps me in cigarettes.*

G v + n/pron + prep

ˌkeep ˈin with sb (*BrE*) to continue to be friendly with sb, especially in order to gain some advantage for yourself: *He keeps in with anyone who might be useful to him.*

G v + adv + prep

ˌkeep ˈoff (*especially BrE*) if rain, snow, etc. **keeps off**, it does not fall, even though it looks as if it might: *The party will go ahead provided the rain keeps off.*

SYN **hold off**

G v + adv

ˌkeep ˈoff; **ˌkeep ˈoff sth** to not go onto a particular area: *Keep off (the grass)!* ◇ *We kept off the main roads to avoid the traffic.*

OBJ **grass**

G v + adv • v + prep

ˌkeep ˈoff sth; **ˌkeep sb ˈoff sth 1** to not eat, drink or smoke sth; to not let sb eat, drink or smoke sth: *The doctor's told me to keep off red meat.* **2** to not mention a particular topic; to stop sb talking about a particular topic: *It's best to keep off the subject of politics with my father.* ◇ *Keep her off the subject of teenage girls!* OBJ **subject**, **topic**

SYN **stay off sth**

G v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌkeep sb/sth ˈoff; **ˌkeep sb/sth ˈoff sb/sth** to stop sb/sth from coming near or going into (a place); to stop sb/sth from touching or harming sb/sth: *He covered the sandwiches to keep the flies off.* ◇ *Keep your animals off my land!* ◇ *Working helps* ***keep my mind off*** *my problems.* ◇ *I kept the children off (school) until they felt better.*

OBJ **flies**, **hands**, **mind**, **eyes**

G v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌkeep ˈon 1 (*also* **ˌkeep ˈon doing sth**) to continue doing what you were doing, behaving in a certain way, etc., without stopping: *He'll get into trouble if he keeps on like this!* ◇ *Keep on trying – don't give up!* ◇ *The rain kept on* (= continued to fall) *all night.* SYN **carry on (with sth)**, **carry on doing sth 2 (at sb) (about sb/sth)** (*BrE*) to continue to talk about sb/sth in a boring or annoying way: *Don't keep on (about it)!* ◇ *My mum keeps on at me to cut my hair.* SYN **go on (about sb/sth)** → *see also* KEEP AFTER SB (ABOUT STH/TO DO STH)

G v + adv **1** also v + adv + -ing

ˌkeep ˈon; **ˌkeep ˈon sth** to continue to follow a particular route: *Keep on until you come to the road.* ◇ *Keep on the path until you see a gate.*

G v + adv • v + prep

ˌkeep sb ˈon to continue to employ sb, even though circumstances have changed: *We can only afford to keep a few workers on.*

G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌkeep sth ˈon 1 to continue to wear sth; to not take sth off: *It was so cold that we kept our socks on in bed.* ◇ *Keep the lid on while the tea is brewing.* OPP **take sth off 2** to not switch sth off: *Do you keep the heating on all day?* SYN **leave sth on** OPP **switch sth off 3** to stop sth coming or falling off: *How do you keep that bandage on?* **4** to continue to rent or be the owner of a house, flat/apartment, etc: *Can you afford to keep this place on while you're abroad?*

G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

IDM **keep your ˈhair on** (*BrE, spoken, informal*) used to tell sb not to become angry

ˈkeep sth on sb/sth if you **keep** your mind, eyes, etc. **on** sb/sth, you fix your attention on them/it: *I can't keep my mind on my work.* ◇ *She kept one eye on the traffic and the other on the map.*

OBJ **mind**, **attention**, **eye**

G v + n/pron + prep

IDM **keep an eye on sb/sth** (*informal*) to watch or check sb/sth to make sure that they are safe, etc.; to look after sb/sth: *Will you keep an eye on the baby for five minutes?*

ˌkeep ˈout; **ˌkeep ˈout of sth** to not enter a place; to remain outside: *There was a sign saying 'Keep out!'.* ◇ *Please keep out of the office while I'm working.*

G v + adv • v + adv + prep

ˌkeep ˈout of sth; **ˌkeep sb ˈout of sth 1** to avoid sth; to prevent sb/yourself from being affected by sth: *The doctor has advised me to keep out of the sun.* ◇ *They always kept their daughter out of the spotlight* (= away from the public). ◇ *I try to keep out of his way.* OBJ **the sun**, **sight**, **sb's/the way 2** to avoid becoming involved in sth; to stop sb from becoming involved in sth: *Keep out of this! It's got nothing to do with you!* ◇ *Try to keep the kids out of mischief while I'm out.*

G v + adv + prep • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌkeep sth ˈout to not put sth away that you have taken out of a cupboard, etc.; to keep sth ready to use: *Keep the butter out for your dad's breakfast.*

OPP **put sth away**

G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌkeep sb/sth ˈout; **ˌkeep sb/sth ˈout of sth** to prevent sb/sth from entering a place: *We hung a curtain at the door to keep out the cold.* ◇ *(figurative) She tried to keep the anger out of her voice.*

G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˈkeep to sth 1 to not leave a path, a road, etc: *Keep to the footpath.* ◇ *Keep to the left* (= on a road, etc.). OBJ **path 2** to talk or write only about a particular subject: *Keep to the point!* ◇ *Will you please keep to the subject under discussion?* OBJ **subject**, **point 3** to follow a plan, an agreement, a rule, etc. exactly as you are expected to do, or as you have promised to do: *She hasn't kept to the agreement, so neither will I.* ◇ *We must keep to the schedule.* ◇ *He never keeps to the speed limit.* OBJ **rules**, **agreement**, **schedule** SYN **adhere to sth** (*formal*)

SYN **stick to sth**

NOTE **Keep to sth** can be used in the passive: *Was the agenda kept to at the meeting?*

G v + prep

ˌkeep to yourˈself; **ˌkeep yourˈself to yourˈself** to avoid meeting people socially or becoming involved in other people's affairs: *He keeps (himself) to himself and nobody knows very much about him.*

G v + prep + pron • v + pron + prep + pron

ˈkeep to sth; **ˈkeep sth to sth** to use only one thing or a limited number or amount of sth; to make sure that the number or amount of sth doesn't become any bigger than a particular size: *We've decided to keep to pale colours for the bedroom.* ◇ *I'm trying to keep the number of guests to a minimum.*

G v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌkeep sth to yourˈself to not tell anyone about sth or what you think about sth: *I know who's won, but I'm keeping it to myself.* ◇ *Keep your opinions to yourself in future!* ◇ *(figurative) Keep your hands to yourself!* (= do not touch me)

OBJ **opinions**

G v + n/pron + prep + pron

ˌkeep toˈgether; **ˌkeep sb/sth toˈgether** to remain together in a group; to make sb/sth do this: *Keep together, kids, when we cross the road.* ◇ *Use a paper clip to keep your papers together.*

G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌkeep sb ˈunder (*BrE*) to control sb: *The local people are kept under by the army.*

SYN **oppress sb** (*more formal*)

G v + n/pron + adv

ˌkeep ˈup 1 if rain, snow, etc. **keeps up**, it continues without stopping: *The rain kept up all afternoon.* **2 (with sb/sth)** to move at the same rate or speed as sb/sth: *I had to run to keep up with him.* OPP **fall behind**, **fall behind sb/sth 3** to work at the necessary speed so that you progress at the same speed as other people: *She's having trouble keeping up with the rest of the class.* ◇ *Do keep up! I can't keep repeating everything.* **4 (with sth)** to rise at the same rate as sth else: *Salaries are not keeping up with inflation.* **5 (with sth)** to do all the work necessary in order to finish on time or deal successfully with a situation that changes rapidly: *We're finding it hard to keep up with demand.* ◇ *Things were happening too fast to keep up with.*

G v + adv

ˌkeep sb ˈup to prevent sb from going to bed or from sleeping: *I hope we're not keeping you up.* ◇ *The baby kept us up half the night.*

G v + n/pron + adv

ˌkeep sth ˈup 1 to continue sth at the same, usually high, level; to continue to practise or observe sth: *Keep up the good work!* ◇ *You're doing a great job!* ***Keep it up!*** ◇ *We kept up a fast pace all the way.* ◇ *We're having difficulty keeping up our mortgage payments.* ◇ *The press is keeping up the pressure on the government.* ◇ *Do you still keep up your Portuguese?* OBJ **it**, **pace**, **pressure**, **tradition 2** to prevent sth from falling down: *You'll have to wear a belt to keep your trousers up.* OBJ **trousers/pants** SYN **hold sth up**

3 to make sth stay at a high level: *High transport costs are keeping food prices up.* ◇ *They sang songs to keep their spirits up.* OBJ **price, spirits, strength, morale** **4** to keep a house, garden/yard, etc. in good condition by spending money on it or working hard on it: *The house is becoming too expensive for them to keep up.* SYN **maintain sth**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

IDM **keep up apˈpearances** to hide the true situation and pretend that things are better than they are: *There's no point keeping up appearances when everyone knows we've lost all our money.* **keep your ˈchin up!** (*spoken, informal*) used to tell sb to remain cheerful in difficult circumstances

▶ **ˈupkeep** *n* [U] **1** the cost or process of keeping a building, piece of land, etc. in good condition: *Who is responsible for the day-to-day upkeep of the house?* **2** the cost or process of giving a child or an animal the things that they need

ˌkeep ˈup with sb to continue to be in contact with sb by writing, phoning or seeing them regularly: *How many of your old school friends do you manage to keepup with?*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌkeep ˈup with sth 1 to learn about the news, events, etc. that are happening: *I try to keep up with current affairs.* ◇ *Susie lies to keep up with the latest fashions.* **2** to continue to pay or do sth regularly: *He couldn't keep up with the repayments on the loan.* ◇ *Are you keeping up with your homework?*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

key /kiː/

ˌkey sth ˈin; **ˌkey sth ˈinto sth** to put information into a computer, using a keyboard: *Key in your personal number.* ◇ *All the information has been keyed into the computer.*

OBJ **data, information** SYN **enter sth (into sth)**

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌkey ˈinto sth 1 to use a computer or information stored on a computer: *A hacker keyed into a vital database at the newspaper's office.* SYN **access sth** (*more formal*) **2** if sth **keys into** sth else, it goes well with it and agrees with it, producing a good result: *remedies that key into the body's basic metabolism*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˈkey sth to sth/sb to make sth suitable for sth/sb; to make sth consistent with sth else or to link sth with sth else: *The farm was keyed to the needs of the local people.* ◇ *The timing of the concerts was keyed to the World Cup soccer games.*

NOTE **Key sth to sth/sb** is usually used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

kick /kɪk/

ˌkick aˈbout; **ˌkick aˈbout sth** (*BrE*) = KICK AROUND, KICK AROUND STH

ˌkick sb aˈbout (*BrE*) = KICK SB AROUND

ˌkick sth aˈbout (*BrE*) = KICK STH AROUND

ˌkick aˈround; **ˌkick aˈround sth** (*BrE also* **ˌkick aˈbout, ˌkick aˈbout sth**) (*informal*) **1** (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) to be present or lying somewhere not being used: *His letter is kicking about somewhere.* ◇ *The idea has been kicking around for years.* **2** (of a person) to be somewhere, or to go from one place to another, with no particular purpose: *I decided to kick around the States for a couple of months.*

SYN **knock around, knock around sth**

Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌkick sb aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌkick sb aˈbout**) (*informal*) to treat sb in a harsh or unfair way: *Don't let the boss kick you around.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌkick sth aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌkick sth aˈbout**) **1** to play with a ball by kicking it with your foot: *They were kicking a ball around in the street.* OBJ **ball** **2** (*informal*) to discuss plans, ideas, etc. in an informal way: *They're kicking around the idea of a merger.* OBJ **idea** SYN **discuss sth** (*more formal*)

SYN **knock sth around**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˈkick against sth to protest about sth or resist sth: *It's no use kicking against the system.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌkick ˈback (*AmE, informal*) to relax: *I spent the evening kicking back in the hotel's piano bar.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌkick sth ˈback (to sb) (*AmE, informal*) to pay money illegally in order to get some advantage for yourself: *Contractors winning construction jobs had to kick back 2 per cent of the contract price to the mafia.* ◇

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

▶ **ˈkickback** *n* (*AmE, informal*) money that is paid to sb in order to get an advantage for yourself

ˌkick sth ˈdown to break sth and make it fall inwards by kicking it: *If you don't open up, we'll kick the door down.*

OBJ **door**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌkick ˈin (*informal*) to start to work or have an effect: *After a couple of minutes the emergency electricity supply kicked in.* ◇ *You'll feel better when the antibiotics kick in.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌkick sth ˈin to break sth and make it fall inwards by kicking it: *They had kicked the front door in.*

OBJ **door**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

IDM **ˌkick sb's ˈhead/ˈteeth in** (*informal*) to kick sb very violently

ˌkick ˈoff 1 when a football game or team **kicks off**, the game starts: *The game kicks off at 7.30.* **2** **(with sth)** (*informal*) to start: *The tour kicks off with a concert in Nottingham.*

Ⓖ v + adv

▶ **ˈkick-off** *n* [C] [U] the start of a football game: *It's an afternoon kick-off.*

ˌkick sb ˈoff; **ˌkick sb ˈoff sth** (*computing*) to break the connection between sb's computer and the Internet, so that they can no longer use the Internet: *I keep **getting kicked off** the Internet for no reason.*

OBJ **the Internet, server, website** SYN **disconnect sb (from sth)**

NOTE These phrasal verbs are usually used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌkick sth ˈoff 1 to remove sth by kicking: *She kicked off her shoes and lay down on the bed.* **2** **(with sth)** to begin a meeting, an event, etc: *Who's going to kick off the discussion?*

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌkick ˈout (at sb/sth) 1 to kick your foot into the air to try to hit sb, especially because you are angry or upset: *She kicked out wildly at him as he tried to grab her.* **2** to react violently to sb/sth that makes you angry or upset: *She kicked out against traditional ideas about painting portraits.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌkick sb ˈout; **ˌkick sb ˈout of sth** (*informal*) to make sb leave; to send sb away by force: *His parents kicked him out* (= made him leave home) *when he was seventeen.* ◇ *They were kicked out of the nightclub for fighting.*

SYN **boot sb out, boot sb out of sth** (*informal*), **throw sb out, throw sb out of sth**

NOTE **Kick sb out** is often used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆
v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌkick sth ˈover to make sth fall on its side by kicking it: *She almost kicked the bucket over.*

SYN **knock sth over**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌkick ˈup if a wind, a storm, etc. **kicks up**, it becomes stronger

SUBJ only **wind, storm**

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌkick sth ˈup to make dust, sand, etc. rise into the air: *The horse kicked up a cloud of dust.*

OBJ **dirt, dust**

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

IDM **ˌkick up a ˈfuss/ˈstink etc. (about sth)** to complain loudly about sth

kid /kɪd/ **(-dd-)**

ˌkid aˈround (*informal, especially AmE*) to behave in a silly way; to joke: *A lot of what I said was just kidding around, but people took me seriously.*

SYN **mess around**

Ⓖ v + adv

kill /kɪl/

ˌkill sb/sth ˈoff 1 to make a lot of plants, animals, etc. die: *Antibiotics should kill off the bacteria.* ◇ *The plant life was killed off by air pollution.* **2** to get rid of sb/sth; to stop sth: *The hero is killed off in the last chapter.* ◇ *It is difficult to kill off old traditions or myths.* NOTE **Kill sb/sth off** is often used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

kip /kɪp/ **(-pp-)**

ˌkip ˈdown (*BrE, informal*) to sleep in a place that is not your own bed: *Is there anywhere to kip down for the night?*

Ⓖ v + adv

kiss /kɪs/

ˌkiss sth aˈway to stop sb feeling sad or angry by kissing them: *Let mummy kiss away your tears.*

OBJ **tears, worries**

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌkiss ˈup to sb (*AmE, informal*) if you **kiss up to** sb in authority, you try to please them in order to gain an advantage for yourself

SYN **suck up to sb**

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

kit /kɪt/ **(-tt-)**

ˌkit sb/sth ˈout (*also* **ˌkit sb/sth ˈup** *less frequent*) **(in/with sth)** (*BrE*) to supply sb/sth with the clothes or equipment that they need for a particular purpose: *The kids are all kitted out for the new school year.* ◇ *The studio is kitted out with modern sound equipment.*

NOTE **Kit sb/sth out** is usually used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

kneel /niːl/ (**knelt, knelt** /nelt/, *AmE also* **kneeled, kneeled**)

ˌkneel ˈdown to get into a position where one or both knees are resting on the ground: *He knelt down beside the chair.* ◇ *She was kneeling down, looking for something on the floor.*

Ⓖ v + adv

knit /nɪt/ **(-tt-)**

ˌknit toˈgether (*Knit is usually used for the past tense and past participle*) when broken bones **knit together**, they grow together again: *The ribs are broken, but they'll knit together.*
NOTE **Knit** is also used with the same meaning.
G v + adv

knock /nɒk; *AmE* nɑːk/

~ about
~ about together
~ about with
~ around
~ around together
~ around with
~ back
~ down
161 ~ in
~ in/into
~ off
~ out, out of
162 ~ over
~ together
~ up

ˌknock aˈbout; **ˌknock aˈbout sth** (*BrE*) = KNOCK AROUND, KNOCK AROUND STH

ˌknock sb aˈbout (*BrE*) = KNOCK SB AROUND

ˌknock sth aˈbout (*BrE*) = KNOCK STH AROUND

ˌknock aˈbout with sb; **ˌknock aˈbout together** = KNOCK AROUND/ABOUT WITH SB, KNOCK AROUND/ABOUT TOGETHER

ˌknock aˈround; **ˌknock aˈround sth** (*BrE also* **ˌknock aˈbout, ˌknock aˈbout sth**) (*informal*) **1** (*especially BrE*) (*often used in the progressive tenses*) used to say that sb/sth is in a particular place, but is not doing anything or being used: *These chocolates have been knocking around since New Year.* ◇ *His book was knocking around the lounge for ages.* ◇ *There were a few kids knocking about in the street outside.* **2** to travel and live in various places: *He spent a few years knocking about Europe.* ◇ *Jeff will know what to do — he's knocked about a bit* (= has travelled and had a lot of experience of different situations).
SYN **kick around, kick around sth**
G v + adv • v + prep

ˌknock sb aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌknock sb aˈbout**) (*informal*) to hit sb again and again: *Her husband knocks her about.*
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌknock sth aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌknock sth aˈbout**) **1** to treat sth roughly; to hammer or hit sth: *The builders have started knocking our kitchen about.* **2** (*BrE*) to kick sth around: *We spent a few hours knocking a ball about.* OBJ **a ball** SYN **kick sth around** **3** (*informal*) to discuss an idea or a suggestion with several people: *We knocked a few ideas about at the meeting.* OBJ **idea** SYN **kick sth around**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈknockabout** *n* (*BrE*) a period of time spent kicking a ball around with other people: *We had a knockabout in the park.*
▸ **ˈknockabout** *adj* [usually before noun] (*BrE*) **knockabout** entertainment involves people acting in a deliberately silly way, for example falling over or hitting other people, in order to make the audience laugh

ˌknock aˈround/aˈbout with sb; **ˌknock aˈround/aˈbout together** (*BrE, informal*) to spend a lot of time with sb: *She knocks around with Sahan.* ◇ *She and Sahan knock around together.* ◇ *He knocks about with some strange people!*
SYN **hang around with sb, hang around together**
G v + adv + prep • v + adv + adv

ˌknock sb ˈback 1 to prevent sb from achieving sth or making progress, especially by rejecting them or sth that they suggest or ask: *He had been knocked back twice by the selection committee.* **2** to surprise or shock sb: *The news really knocked me back.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)
▸ **ˈknock-back** *n* (*BrE*) an occasion when sb rejects you or sth that you suggest or ask; a refusal: *I don't think I could stand another knock-back.*

ˌknock sb ˈback sth (*BrE, informal*) to cost sb a particular amount of money: *Those books knocked me back £50.* ◇ *That car must have knocked you back a bit!*
SYN **set sb back sth**
NOTE **Knock sb back sth** cannot be used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv + n

ˌknock sth ˈback (*informal*) to drink sth quickly: *He knocked back two pints of beer.*
OBJ **beer, coffee, etc.** SYN **swig sth**
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌknock sb ˈdown 1 if a car or another vehicle **knocks sb down**, it hits them, often killing or injuring them: *She was knocked down by a bus.* SYN **run sb over** NOTE **Knock sb down** is often used in the passive in this meaning. **2** to hit or push sb so that they fall to the ground or the floor: *The wind was strong enough to knock you down.* ◇ *He knocked down his opponent in the first round* (= in boxing).
→ *see also* KNOCK SB OVER
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
IDM **you could have knocked me down with a ˈfeather** used to express great surprise
▸ **ˈknock-down** *n* an occasion in boxing when one competitor hits the other so hard that they fall to the ground
→ *see also* KNOCK-DOWN PRICE at KNOCK STH DOWN

ˌknock sb/sth ˈdown to persuade sb to accept a lower price for sth; to make the price of sth lower: *He knocked Simon down to £5.* ◇ *We knocked the price down to £10.* ◇ *How did you manage to knock them down from £5 000 to £4 000?* ◇ *He managed to knock the price down from £350 to £320.*
SYN **beat sb/sth down**
NOTE **Knock sb down sth** and **knock sth down sth** can also be used: *We should be able to knock them down a few pounds.* ◇ *He knocked the price down five dollars.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌknock sth ˈdown 1 to destroy sth and make it fall down: *If you don't open up, I'm going to knock the door down.* ◇ *These old houses are going to be knocked down.* OBJ **house, door** SYN **demolish sth** (*more formal*) **2 (to sb)** to sell sth to the person who offers most money at a public sale (an **auction**): *The painting was knocked down to me for £5 000.* **3** (*AmE*) to take sth apart, especially furniture, so that it can be sent or carried somewhere more easily
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈknock-down price** *n* a much lower price than usual: *I got these books at a knock-down price.*
→ *see also* KNOCK-DOWN at KNOCK SB DOWN

ˌknock sth ˈin; **ˌknock sth ˈin/ˈinto sth 1** to make sth enter sth by hitting it, for example with a hammer: *She knocked some nails into the wall.* **2** to make sth go into sth by hitting or kicking it: *Barnes knocked in two goals.* ◇ *She knocked the ball into the net.* OBJ **goal, ball**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌknock sth ˈin sth to make sth such as a hole in sth by hitting: *They knocked a hole in the wall for the window.*
OBJ **hole**
G v + n/pron + prep

ˌknock ˈoff; **ˌknock ˈoff sth** (*informal*) to stop doing sth, especially work: *What time do you knock off (work) today?*
OBJ **work**
G v + adv • v + prep

ˌknock it ˈoff (*spoken, informal*) used to tell sb to stop doing sth annoying: *Knock it off! I'm trying to concentrate!*
G v + it + adv

ˌknock sb ˈoff (*slang*) **1** to murder sb: *He was knocked off by another gang.* SYN **bump sb off** (*informal*) **2** (*BrE*, ⚠, *slang*) to have sex with sb
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌknock sb ˈoff; **ˌknock sb ˈoff sth** to make sb fall off sth by hitting them: *I was knocked off my bike this morning* (= by a car).
G v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌknock sth ˈoff 1 (*also* **ˌknock sth ˈout**) (*informal*) to complete sth quickly and without much effort: *They expect me to knock off* (= write) *a thousand words a day.* SYN **churn sth out** **2** (*BrE, slang*) to steal sth: *He's knocking off TVs and video recorders.* ◇ *These bikes have been knocked off.* **3** (*AmE, slang*) to make a copy of a popular product to sell at a cheaper price, often illegally
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈknock-off** *n* (*AmE, informal*) a copy, often illegal, of a popular product sold at a cheaper price

ˌknock sth ˈoff; **ˌknock sth ˈoff sth 1** to reduce the price, value, etc. of sth: *We've knocked £20 off the price.* ◇ *The short cut knocks about half an hour off the journey.* ◇ *That hairstyle knocks years off your age.* SYN **lop sth off, lop sth off sth** **2** to remove sth, and usually make it fall to the ground, by hitting it: *Who knocked that glass off the table?* ◇ *She knocked my glasses off.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep
IDM **I'll knock your ˈblock/ˈhead off** (*BrE, spoken, informal*) used to show that you are very angry with sb, by threatening to hit them **knock/blow sb's ˈsocks off** to impress or surprise sb very much

ˌknock sb ˈout 1 (*also* **ˌknock yourself ˈout**) to make sb fall asleep or become unconscious: *The bump on the head* ***knocked*** *me* ***out cold***. ◇ *He was knocked out in the seventh round.* ◇ *He ran straight into a lamp post, knocking himself out.* **2** (in boxing) to hit an opponent so hard that they fall to the ground and cannot get up within a limited time, so losing the fight **3** (*also* **ˌknock yourself ˈout**) to make sb very tired, ill, etc: *The course completely knocked me out.* ◇ *She's knocking herself out with all that work.* **4** (*informal*) to surprise sb very much; to have a strong emotional effect on sb: *The movie was fantastic. It knocked me out.*
G **1,2,3** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)
4 v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈknockout** (*also* **ˈknock-out**) *n* **1** a person, a piece of clothing, a performance, etc. that is extremely attractive or impressive: *Her daughter's an absolute knockout.* **2** (in boxing) a blow that is so hard that your opponent falls to the ground and cannot get up within a limited time, so losing the fight
→ *see also* KNOCKOUT at KNOCK SB/STH OUT
▸ **ˈknockout drops** *n* [pl.] (*humorous*) medicine in liquid form that makes you sleep or feel sleepy

ˌknock sb/sth ˈout; **ˌknock sb/sth ˈout of sth** (*sport*) to defeat a person or a team so that they cannot continue in the competition: *France knocked Belgium out of the European Cup.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n •
v + n/pron + adv + prep
▸ **ˈknockout** (*also* **ˈknock-out**) *n* (*especially BrE, sport*) a competition in which the winning player or team at each stage goes on to the next stage, but the losing one no longer takes part in the competition: *the European cup knockout* ◇ *a knockout competition*
→ *see also* KNOCKOUT at KNOCK SB OUT

ˌknock sth ˈout 1 = KNOCK STH OFF 1 (*informal*) *Can you knock out a quick report for me?* **2** to remove sth with a hard blow: *She knocked out her front teeth in the fall.* OBJ **teeth**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌknock yourself ˈout 1 = KNOCK SB OUT 1 **2** = KNOCK SB OUT 3 **3** (*informal, humorous, especially AmE*) used to encourage sb to do sth they have said they would like to do, even though you do not understand why they want to do it: *You want to help? Great, knock yourself out!* ◇ *Sure you can take over the cooking — knock yourself out!*
◈ v + pron + adv

ˌknock sth ˈout of sb to make sb lose their breath, because of a fall, a blow, etc: *The force of the impact knocked the breath out of her.*
OBJ **breath, wind**
◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep
IDM **knock the ˈstuffing out of sb** (*informal*) to make sb lose their energy, enthusiasm or confidence

ˌknock sb ˈover if a car or another vehicle **knocks sb over**, it hits them and often kills or injures them: *He got knocked over by a bus.*
SYN **run sb/sth over**
NOTE **Knock sb over** is often used in the passive. It is not used as often as **knock sb down** or **run sb over**.
→ *see also* KNOCK SB DOWN
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌknock sth ˈover to push or hit sth, making it fall or turn on its side: *You've knocked my drink over!* ◇ *I'll put the candle here so that it doesn't get knocked over.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌknock toˈgether (*especially BrE*) if two things **knock together**, they touch each other with some force and make a sound: (*figurative*) *His knees were knocking together with fright.*
◈ v + adv

ˌknock sth toˈgether 1 (*also* **ˌknock sth ˈup**) to make or complete sth quickly and often not very well: *I'll quickly knock some lunch together.* **2** (*BrE*) to join two or more rooms or houses to make a single one: *They've knocked the two rooms together to make one big living room.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌknock ˈup (*BrE, sport*) (in tennis, etc.) to practise for a short time before the beginning of a game: *We knocked up for a few minutes before the match.*
◈ v + adv
▶ **ˈknock-up** *n* (*BrE*) (in tennis, etc.) a short practice before a game

ˌknock sb ˈup (*informal*) **1** (*BrE*) to wake sb by knocking on their door: *Would you like me to knock you up in the morning?* **2** (*especially AmE*) to make a woman pregnant
◈ **1** v + n/pron + adv
2 v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌknock sth ˈup = KNOCK STH TOGETHER 1

know /nəʊ; *AmE* noʊ/ (**knew** /njuː; *AmE* nuː/ **known** /nəʊn; *AmE* noʊn/)

ˈknow sb/sth as sth to call sb/sth by a particular name; to think that sb/sth has a particular characteristic or is a particular type of person or thing: *She is known to her friends as Beth.* ◇ *It became known as the worst local company to work for.*
NOTE **Know sb/sth as sth** is usually used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

be ˈknown for sth to be well known because of a particular characteristic, achievement or feature: *The town is best known for its ancient university.* ◇ *He is not known for his tact!* (= he is often rude)
◈ be + v + prep

ˈknow A from B to be able to recognize the difference between two things: *She doesn't know a Rolls Royce from a Renault.*
NOTE **Know sth from sth** cannot be used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep
IDM **not know your ˌarse from your ˈelbow** (*BrE*, ⚠, *slang*) used to say that you think sb is very stupid or completely lacking in skill

ˈknow of sb/sth to have heard of sb/sth, but not have very much information about or experience of them/it: *'Has he ever been in trouble with the police?' 'Not that I know of.'* ◇ *I know of one student who failed the exam twice.* ◇ *I know of her, but we've never actually met.*
◈ v + prep

knuckle /ˈnʌkl/

ˌknuckle ˈdown (to sth) (*informal*) to begin to work seriously at sth, usually after a period when you have not worked hard: *It's time to knuckle down (to some hard work).*
SYN **buckle down (to sth)**
◈ v + adv

ˌknuckle ˈunder (to sb/sth) (*informal*) to accept or admit defeat and do what you are told or what you have to do: *Those who refused to knuckle under were imprisoned.*
◈ v + adv

kowtow /ˌkaʊˈtaʊ/

kowˈtow to sb/sth (*informal*) to show sb/sth too much respect and be too willing to obey them: *I refuse to kowtow to anyone.*
◈ v + prep

Ll

labour (*BrE*) (*AmE* **labor**) /ˈleɪbə(r)/

ˈlabour under sth (*BrE*) (*formal*) **1** (*often used in the progressive tenses*) to believe sth that is not true: *to be labouring under a delusion* ◇ *She was labouring under the impression that he loved her.* OBJ **misapprehension, delusion 2** to find a situation very difficult because of sth: *The new government is labouring under a huge debt.*
◈ v + prep

lace /leɪs/

ˌlace ˈup; **ˌlace sth ˈup** to tie the strings that go through the holes on a shoe to fasten it (**shoelaces** or **laces**): *She laced her shoes up.*
OBJ **shoes, boots** SYN **do up, do sth up**
NOTE **Lace sth** is also used with this meaning.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ **ˈlace-up** *n* [usually pl.] (*BrE*) shoes fastened with strings: *As a child, she always wore lace-ups.* ◇ *lace-up shoes*

ˈlace sth with sth 1 to put a small amount of sth, such as alcohol, a drug, poison, etc. into a drink: *Someone had laced the cat's milk with alcohol.* **2** (*especially BrE*) to put a lot of a particular quality into sth such as a speech, a piece of writing, etc: *The show is laced with black humour.* ◇ *She laces her stories with irony.* NOTE **Lace sth with sth** is usually used in the passive in this meaning.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ladle /ˈleɪdl/

ˌladle sth ˈout 1 to serve food with a large spoon or in large quantities: *He ladled out the soup.* **2** (*sometimes disapproving*) to give sb a lot of sth, especially money or advice
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

lag /læg/ (**-gg-**)

ˌlag beˈhind; **ˌlag beˈhind sb/sth 1** to be behind sb/sth because you are walking more slowly: *Everyone ran down to the beach, but Amy lagged behind.* ◇ *Susie lagged behind the other children.* **2** (**in sth/in doing sth**) to progress or develop more slowly than others: *We are lagging far behind our European competitors in using new technology.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

land /lænd/

ˈland in sth; **ˈland sb/yourself in sth** (*informal*) to get sb/yourself into trouble or a difficult situation: *She landed in court for stealing a car.* ◇ *Being too outspoken landed her in trouble.* ◇ *How did I land myself in such a mess?* ◇ *He really **landed** us **in it!*** (= got us into trouble).
◈ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌland ˈup (*BrE, informal*) **1** [**+adv/prep**] to reach a final position or situation: *She landed up in hospital with a broken leg.* ◇ *The train was diverted and we landed up in York.* ◇ *The dish slipped out of my hands and landed up on the floor.* ◇ *I landed up with more work than I could manage.* **2 land up doing sth** to end by doing sth or having to do sth that you had not planned to do: *They landed up paying for the damage.* ◇ *We landed up spending the night at the airport.*
SYN **end up; finish up**
◈ **1** v + adv
2 v + adv + -ing

ˈland sb/yourself with sb/sth; **ˈland sb/yourself with doing sth** (*informal, especially BrE*) to give sb/yourself an unpleasant or difficult task to deal with: *We've landed ourselves with the most boring job of the lot.* ◇ *I got landed with clearing up the mess.* ◇ *They landed the organization with a huge bill.*
SYN **saddle sb/yourself with sb/sth, saddle sb/yourself with doing sth**
NOTE **Land sb with sb/sth** and **land sb with doing sth** are often used in the passive, usually with **get**: *Guess who got landed with washing the dishes?*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

lap /læp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌlap sth ˈup 1 to receive sth such as praise or a kind remark with pleasure without thinking about whether it is true or not: *The baby was lapping up the attention he was getting.* ◇ *She lapped up his flattery.* **2** to drink all of sth with great enjoyment: *The cat lapped up the cream.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

lapse /læps/

ˈlapse into sth 1 to pass gradually into a worse or less active state or condition: *They lapsed into silence.* ◇ *The country lapsed into chaos.* ◇ *to lapse into unconsciousness/a coma* OBJ **silence, unconsciousness 2** to start speaking or behaving in a different way, often one that is less acceptable: *She lapses into French when she can't think of a word in English.*
◈ v + prep

lard /lɑːd; *AmE* lɑːrd/

ˈlard sth with sth (*often disapproving*) to include a lot of a particular kind of words or expressions in a speech or in a piece of writing: *His conversation was larded with Russian proverbs.*
NOTE **Lard sth with sth** is nearly always used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

lark /lɑːk; *AmE* lɑːrk/

ˌlark aˈbout/aˈround (*old-fashioned, BrE, informal*) to enjoy yourself by behaving in a silly way: *Some kids were larking about in the shopping centre.*
SYN **mess around**
◆ v + adv

lash /læʃ/

ˌlash ˈdown if rain **lashes down**, it falls heavily: *The rain lashed down.*
◆ v + adv

ˌlash ˈout (at sb/sth) 1 to make a sudden violent attack on sb: *He lashed out at us.* ◇ *Jim lashed out with both fists.* **2** to criticize sb/sth in an angry way: *She lashed out at the company for treating her so badly.* **SYN** **hit out (at sb/sth)**
◆ v + adv

last /lɑːst; *AmE* læst/

ˌlast ˈout; ˌlast sth ˈout 1 to survive for a period of time: *How long can we last out without water?* ◇ *The doctors thought he might not last out the night.* **2** to continue in the same situation or manage to do sth for a particular length of time: *He made it to the summit, but at one point I thought he wasn't going to last out.* ◇ *She lasted out for a week without smoking.* ◇ *Can you last out the day without using your phone?* **3** to be enough for a particular length of time: *Our supplies should last out until the end of the month.* ◇ *Will the food last out the week?* **SYN** **hold out**
NOTE **Last sth out** cannot be used in the passive. • **Last** and **last sth** are used frequently with the same meanings.
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌlast sb ˈout (*often humorous*) to live or continue longer than sb else: *My grandmother is so fit and healthy she'll probably last us all out!*
◆ v + n/pron + adv

latch /lætʃ/

ˌlatch ˈon; ˌlatch ˈonto sb (*also* **ˌlatch ˈon to sb**) (*informal*) to follow sb around, often when they do not want you with them: *He latched onto us and we couldn't get rid of him.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep • v + adv + prep

ˌlatch ˈon; ˌlatch ˈonto sth (*also* **ˌlatch ˈon to sth**) **1** to become attached to sth: *The virus latches onto the red blood cells.* **2** to be interested in an idea, a fashion, etc. and use it for your own purposes: *The government have latched onto environmental issues to win votes.* ◇ *They have a reputation for latching onto all the latest crazes.* ◇ *Young children latch onto phrases and repeat them over and over.* **3** (*BrE, informal*) to understand an idea, what sb is saying, etc: *It took him a while to latch onto their style of humour.* ◇ *She soon latched onto the idea.* ◇ *It was a difficult concept to grasp, but Sam latched on very quickly.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep • v + adv + prep

laugh /lɑːf; *AmE* læf/

ˈlaugh at sb/yourself to make sb/yourself seem stupid by making jokes about them/yourself; to not be too serious about sb/yourself: *They were laughing at him behind his back.* ◇ *We all laughed at Jane when she said she believed in ghosts.* ◇ *I laughed at myself for believing such an unlikely story.*
NOTE **Laugh at sb** can be used in the passive: *Nobody likes to be laughed at.*
◆ v + prep

ˈlaugh at sth 1 to show that you find sth funny or amusing: *You never laugh at my jokes.* ◇ *The whole class was laughing at him clowning around.* **2** to make sth seem stupid by making jokes about it: *He was laughing at my accent.* **SYN** **ridicule sth** (*more formal*)
NOTE **Laugh at sth** can be used in the passive: *He doesn't like his ideas being laughed at.*
◆ v + prep

ˌlaugh sth ˈoff (*informal*) to try to make people think that you do not care about sth, or that it is not serious or important, by making a joke about it: *He laughed off suggestions that he had been approached to be manager of the England team.* ◇ *It was an embarrassing situation, but she managed to laugh it off.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

launch /lɔːntʃ/

ˈlaunch into sth; ˈlaunch yourself into sth to start doing sth in a very enthusiastic way; to start to attack sb physically or with words: *She launched into an explanation of how the machine worked.* ◇ *We don't want to launch ourselves into the wrong enterprise.* ◇ *The band launched into one of their best known songs.*
OBJ **speech, explanation, challenge**
◆ v + prep • v + pron + prep

ˌlaunch ˈout (into sth) to begin to do sth new or different in a confident way: *She's decided she has enough experience to launch out on her own.*
◆ v + adv

lavish /ˈlævɪʃ/

ˈlavish sth on sb/sth (*also* **ˈlavish sth upon sb/sth** *more formal*) to give a lot of sth, often too much, to sb/sth: *They lavished such care on that house!* ◇ *He was jealous of the attention lavished on his sister.* ◇ *Millions of pounds were lavished on restoring the building.*
OBJ **attention, praise, care**
NOTE **Lavish sth on/upon sb/sth** is often used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

lay /leɪ/ (**laid, laid** /leɪd/)

ˌlay aˈbout sb (with sth) (*especially BrE*) to attack sb violently physically or sometimes with words: *He started to lay about me with his walking stick.*
◆ v + prep

ˌlay sth aˈside (*formal*) **1** to put sth to one side and not use it or think about it: *I laid my book aside and picked up the letter.* ◇ (*figurative*) *They laid aside their differences until the crisis was over.* **2** (*also* **ˌlay sth ˈby** *less frequent*) to keep sth to use in the future; to save sth: *Have you laid anything aside for your old age?*
SYN **put sth aside; set sth aside**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌlay sth beˈfore sb/sth to present a proposal, some information, etc. to sb for them to think about and decide on: *The bill was laid before Parliament.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌlay sth ˈby = LAY STH ASIDE

ˌlay sth ˈdown 1 to put sth down or stop using it: *He stopped writing and laid down his pen.* ◇ *They refused to **lay down their arms**.* **SYN** **put sb/sth down** **2** if you **lay down** a rule, or a principle, you state officially that people must obey it or use it: *The government has laid down procedures for negotiating teachers' pay.* ◇ *Clear guidelines have been laid down for religious teaching in schools.* **OBJ** **guidelines, rules, conditions** **3** to establish sth that will develop or be useful in the future: *Good eating habits can be laid down in childhood.* **4** to produce sth that is stored and gradually increases: *If you eat too much, the surplus is laid down as fat.* **OBJ** **fat** **NOTE** **Lay sth down** is usually used in the passive in this meaning. **5** (*BrE*) to store sth, especially wine, to use in the future: *She has laid down hundreds of bottles of port.* **OBJ** **bottles, wine**
◆ **1,4** v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
2,3,5 v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)
IDM **lay down the ˈlaw** to tell sb firmly what they can or cannot do **lay down your ˈlife (for sb/sth)** to die willingly in order to save sb or because of sth that you believe in

ˌlay sth ˈin (*formal*) to get a supply of sth and store it to use in the future: *I've laid in enough logs for the winter.*
SYN **get sth in**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌlay ˈinto sb/sth (with sth) (for sth/for doing sth) (*informal*) to attack sb/sth violently, with words or blows: *She laid into him with her fists.* ◇ *He laid into the government for spending millions of pounds on buildings nobody wanted.*
SYN **rip into sb/sth (with sth) (for sth/for doing sth)**
◆ v + prep

ˌlay ˈoff; ˌlay ˈoff sb/sth; ˌlay ˈoff doing sth (*informal*) used to tell sb to stop doing sth that irritates or annoys you: *Lay off! You're messing up my homework!* ◇ *Lay off him, he's still learning.* ◇ *Lay off bullying your brother!*
◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˌlay ˈoff sth; ˌlay ˈoff doing sth (*informal*) to stop doing or using sth harmful: *You should lay off alcohol/drinking for a while.*
◆ v + prep

ˌlay sb ˈoff to dismiss workers, usually for a short time, because there is not enough work: *We've had to lay off hundreds of workers.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈlay-off** *n* **1** [C] an act of dismissing workers because there is not enough work: *The crisis has caused thousands of lay-offs.* **2** [usually sing.] a period of time when sb is not able to take part in an activity or a sport that they usually do

ˌlay sth ˈon (*BrE, informal*) to provide or arrange sth for sb, for example food, transport or entertainment: *Extra buses were laid on during the train strike.* ◇ *She had laid on tea for the players.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
IDM **lay it/sth on with a ˈtrowel; lay it on ˈthick** (*informal*) to talk about sb/sth in a way that makes them seem much better or worse than they really are; to exaggerate sth: *He was laying on the flattery with a trowel.* ◇ *Calling him a genius is laying it on a bit thick!*

ˌlay sth ˈon sb (*informal*) **1** to force sb to deal with sth unpleasant or difficult: *I'm sorry to lay all this work on you.* **2** (*AmE*) to break bad or surprising news to sb: *Sorry to **lay this on you**, but he's never coming back.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌlay sb ˈout 1 (*informal*) to knock sb unconscious: *He laid his opponent out with a single blow.* **2** to prepare a dead body to be buried
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌlay sth ˈout 1 to spread sth out ready to use or so that it can be seen easily: *Lay out all the clothes you want to take.* ◇ *Lay all the cards out on the table.* **2** to plan how sth should look and arrange it in this way: *They laid the streets out on a grid pattern.* ◇ *a well laid out CV/resumé* **3** to present

or explain sth clearly and carefully: *At the meeting, he laid out his plans for the company.* **4 (on sth)** (*informal*) to spend money: *He laid out thousands renovating the house.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ♦ v + adv + n

▶ **ˈlayout** *n* [usually sing.] the way in which sth is arranged: *He still recalled the layout of the house perfectly.* ◇ *The magazine has a very attractive layout.*

▶ **ˈoutlay** *n* [C] [U] the money that you spend on sth, especially when you start a new project: *an outlay of $400 000* ◇ *What was your initial outlay on equipment?*

ˌlay ˈup to hide somewhere or do nothing for a while: *They lay up in a cave until it got dark.*
◈ v + adv

ˌlay sb ˈup (*informal*) if sb is **laid up** they are unable to work or take part in an activity because they are ill/sick or injured: *I was laid up for a month with a broken leg.* ◇ *He has been laid up with flu for a week.*
NOTE **Lay sb up** is nearly always used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv ♦ v + adv + n

ˌlay sth ˈup 1 (for yourself) (*BrE*) if you **lay up** trouble or problems for yourself, you do sth that will result in difficulties later: *You're laying up problems for yourself by not tackling this now.* **2** to stop using a vehicle, ship, etc. because you do not need it, or it has to be repaired: *Our boat is laid up during the winter months.* NOTE **Lay sth up** is often used in the passive in this meaning.
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + adv

laze /leɪz/

ˌlaze aˈround; laze aˈround sth (*BrE also* **ˌlaze aˈbout, ˌlaze aˈbout sth**) to spend your time relaxing and doing very little: *He lazed about all day.* ◇ *They lazed around the pool in the afternoon.*
SYN **lie around, lie around sth; lounge about/around, lounge about/around sth**
◈ v + adv ♦ v + prep

ˌlaze sth aˈway to spend a period of time relaxing and doing very little: *We lazed away the summer on the beach.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ♦ v + adv + n

lead /liːd/ (**led, led** /led/)

ˌlead ˈinto sth 1 if a subject or a discussion **leads into** sth, it moves naturally into a second subject or discussion: *This led into a discussion on gender differences.* ◇ *Pair and group work often leads into a whole class discussion.* **2** if a room, a door, a street, etc. **leads into** a place, it opens into it or connects with it: *The door led into a tiny kitchen.* SUBJ **door, room, road**
◈ v + prep

▶ **ˈlead-in (to sth)** *n* an introduction to a subject, a story, etc: *We want a striking lead-in to the new programme.*

ˌlead ˈoff (with sth) (*especially AmE*) to start a discussion, meeting, etc: *Everyone will have a chance to speak. Would you like to lead off?*
◈ v + adv

ˌlead ˈoff sth; ˌlead ˈoff from sth 1 if a street **leads off** (from) a place, it starts there and goes away from it: *He pointed to a street leading off (from) the corner of the square.* **2** if a room, a door, etc. **leads off** (from) a place, it connects directly with it: *All the rooms lead off the main hall.*
◈ v + prep ♦ v + adv + prep

ˌlead sb ˈon (*informal*) to deceive sb and make them believe sth that is not true, especially that you love them or find them attractive: *You shouldn't have led him on like that.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ♦ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˈlead to sth; ˈlead sb to sth (*also* **ˌlead ˈon to sth, ˌlead sb ˈon to sth**) to result in a particular action or event; to force or persuade sb to take a particular action: *Living in damp conditions can lead to serious health problems.* ◇ *What led you to this conclusion?* ◇ *The increase in the number of motor vehicles has led to an increase in autocrimes.* ◇ *The police have offered a reward for information leading to the conviction of the child's killers.* ◇ *She described how her early life had led her to her profession as an artist.* ◇ ***One thing led to another** and before long Sue and I were engaged.*
NOTE **Lead sb to do sth** can also be used with this meaning: *She described how her early life led her to become an artist.*
◈ v + prep ♦ v + n/pron + prep ♦ v + adv + prep ♦ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌlead ˈup to sth 1 to be the introduction to or the cause of sth: *The book describes the period leading up to the start of the war.* ◇ *Police are investigating the chain of events that led up to her death.* **2** to prepare to talk about sth or ask a difficult question by gradually introducing the subject you want to talk about: *What exactly are you leading up to?* ◇ *He seemed to be leading up to asking a difficult question.*
◈ v + adv + prep

▶ **ˌlead-ˈup (to sth)** *n* [sing.] (*BrE*) a period of time or an event or series of events before another event or activity: *in the lead-up to the election*

leaf /liːf/

ˌleaf ˈthrough sth to turn over the pages of a book, a magazine etc. quickly without reading them carefully or in detail: *She picked up a brochure and leafed through it.*
OBJ **pages** SYN **flick through sth**
◈ v + prep

leak /liːk/

ˌleak ˈout if secret information **leaks out**, it becomes known to the public when it should remain secret: *He was worried about what might happen if the news leaked out.*
SYN **get out**
◈ v + adv

lean /liːn/ (**leaned, leaned**, *BrE also* **leant, leant** /lent/)

ˈlean against/on sth/sb; ˌlean ˈup against sth to rest against or on sth/sb for support: *Laura leaned weakly against the door.* ◇ *We left our bikes leaning up against the wall.* ◇ *You can lean on my arm.*
→ *see also* LEAN ON SB/STH
◈ v + prep ♦ v + adv + prep

ˈlean sth against/on sth; ˌlean sth ˈup against sth to make sth rest against or on sth in a sloping position: *He leaned his head on his hand and closed his eyes.* ◇ *Maggie leant the broom up against the wall.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep ♦ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˈlean on sb (*informal*) to try to make sb do sth by threatening them: *They are leaning on him to make him withdraw his complaints.*
NOTE **Lean on sb** can be used in the passive: *I was being leaned on.*
◈ v + prep

ˈlean on sb/sth (*also* **ˈlean upon sb/sth** *more formal*) to depend on sb/sth: *It's good to have someone to lean on.* ◇ *She was unsure of herself and leaned heavily on her friends for support.*
→ *see also* LEAN AGAINST/ON SB/STH
◈ v + prep

ˌlean toˈwards sth (*also* **ˌlean toˈward sth**) to support or tend to prefer a particular idea or political party: *I'm not sure how I'm going to vote but I'm leaning towards the Democrats.*
◈ v + prep

ˌlean up aˈgainst sth
→ *see also* LEAN AGAINST/ON STH/SB

ˌlean sth up aˈgainst sth
→ *see also* LEAN STH AGAINST/ON STH

ˈlean upon sb/sth = LEAN ON SB/STH

leap /liːp/ (**leapt, leapt** /lept/ or **leaped, leaped**)

ˈleap at sth to accept sth eagerly, without hesitating: *She leapt at the chance of working in Paris.*
OBJ **chance, opportunity** SYN **jump at sth**
◈ v + prep

ˈleap on sth (*also* **ˈleap upon sth** *more formal*) (*especially BrE*) to suddenly become very interested in an idea or a suggestion, especially because you think it will give you an advantage: *The press leapt on the story.*
◈ v + prep

ˌleap ˈout at sb if sth, especially sth written, **leaps out at** you, you see it immediately: *His name leapt out at me from the page.*
SYN **jump out at sb**
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌleap ˈup to stand quickly and suddenly when you have been sitting: *He leapt up and ran to answer the door.*
SYN **jump up**
◈ v + adv

ˈleap upon sth (*especially BrE*) = LEAP ON STH

leave /liːv/ (**left, left** /left/)

ˌleave sth aˈside to not discuss or consider a particular idea or issue: ***Leaving aside** car parking space, the housing development is well planned.* ◇ *Let us **leave aside the question of** costs for the moment.* ◇ *Leaving that aside…*
OBJ **question, that/this problem**
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + pron + adv ♦ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌleave sb/sth beˈhind to make progress much faster than sb else: *The new car is going to leave the competition far behind.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌleave sb/sth beˈhind; ˌleave sb/sth beˈhind sb 1 to go away from a place without taking sb/sth because you have forgotten them/it: *Somebody has left their umbrella behind.* ◇ *Wait — don't leave me behind!* **2** to go away from a place while the result of sth you have done stays there: *They wore gloves so as not to leave any fingerprints behind (them).* **3** to leave a person or place permanently, especially in order to begin a new life: *He was anxious to leave the past behind (him).* ◇ *She disappeared a year ago leaving behind a boyfriend and a small baby.* **4** to have sb/sth remaining after your death: *He died at the age of 33, leaving behind a wife and three young children.*
NOTE **Leave sb/sth** is also often used with all these meanings: *They wore gloves so as not to leave any fingerprints.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ♦ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + prep

ˌleave sth ˈin to not remove sth for example from a book, a piece of writing, etc: *Make sure you leave that paragraph in.*
OPP **leave sth out**
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌleave ˈoff; ˌleave ˈoff sth; ˌleave ˈoff doing sth (*BrE, informal*) to stop doing sth: *Lee shouted at him, but he wouldn't leave off.* ◇ *Would you leave off what you are doing for a moment?* ◇ *We're going to try and begin where they left off.* ◇ *'Will you leave off nagging?' he shouted.*
G v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + adv + -ing

ˌleave sb/sth ˈoff; ˌleave sb/sth ˈoff sth to not include or mention sb/sth, especially on a list: *Have I left anyone off the list?*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌleave sth ˈon 1 if you leave clothes **on**, you continue wearing them: *Leave your shoes on.* **2** to not switch sth off: *I found the television had been left on all night.*
SYN **keep sth on** OPP **leave sth off; switch sth off**
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌleave it ˈout (*BrE, informal*) **1** used to tell sb to stop doing sth silly or annoying **2** used to tell sb that you think what they have said is stupid, or that you do not believe it: *Two million dollars? Leave it out!*
G v + it + adv

ˌleave sb ˈout; ˌleave sb ˈout of sth to not include sb deliberately: *It seemed unkind to leave Daisy out, so we invited her too.* ◇ *There was an outcry when he was left out of the team.*
SYN **exclude sb** (*more formal*)
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆
v + n/pron + adv + prep
▶ **left ˈout** *adj* unhappy because you have not been included in sth: *I felt a bit left out.*

ˌleave sb/sth ˈout; ˌleave sb/sth ˈout of sth 1 to not involve sb/sth in sth: *Leave my brother out of this — he had nothing to do with it.* **2** to not include sb/sth either accidentally or on purpose: *Have I left anyone out?* ◇ *You can leave out the gory details.* ◇ *This is spelt wrongly. You've left out the 'e'.* ◇ *You've left the second 'm' out of 'committee'.* ◇ *You've left out an 'm' in 'committee'.* SYN **omit sth** (*more formal*)
G **1** v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep
2 v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆
v + n/pron + adv + prep

be ˌleft ˈover (from sth) (of food or money) if food, money, etc. is **left over**, it remains when the rest has been eaten or used up: *After I've paid my rent and bought food there isn't much left over to spend on books.* ◇ *There was plenty of food left over after the party.* ◇ *There's some rice left over from lunch.*
G be + v + adv
▶ **ˈleftover** *n* (*BrE*) **1** [usually pl.] food that has not been eaten and remains after a meal **2** a custom, tradition, etc. that belongs to an earlier time but still exists: *These narrow roads are a leftover from the days of horse-drawn carriages.*
▶ **ˈleftover** *adj* [only before noun] remaining because it has not been eaten or used: *leftover vegetables/fabric*

ˈleave sb to sth to go away from sb so that they can continue what they were doing before you came, or do sth without your help: (*informal*) *If you don't need me any more, I'll* ***leave you to it.*** ◇ *I'll leave you to your lunch.*
G v + n/pron + prep
IDM **leave sb to their own deˈvices** to leave sb alone to do as they wish: *Once I've explained things to him I tend to leave him to his own devices.*

lend /lend/ (**lent, lent** /lent/)

ˌlend sth ˈout (to sb) to allow sb to borrow sth for a period of time: *The reference books cannot be lent out.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˈlend itself/themselves to sth (*formal*) to be suitable for sth: *Science in elementary schools lends itself well to learning through play.* ◇ *Not all materials lend themselves to scientific dating.*

let /let/ (**letting, let, let**)

	~ down		~ on
169	~ in, into		~ out
	~ in for	170	~ past
	~ in on		~ through
	~ into		~ up
	~ off		

ˌlet sb ˈdown 1 to fail to help or support sb in the way that they hoped or expected: *She said she would help, but let them down at the last minute.* ◇ *It's important our decision doesn't let down our customers.* ◇ *The car has never let me down.* ◇ *I felt I'd been badly let down by the company.* **2** to tell sb some bad news in a kind way so that they will not be too disappointed or upset: *The kids will be really upset the trip's been cancelled — try to let them down gently.*
G v + n/pron + adv **1** also v + adv + n
IDM **let the ˈside down** (*BrE*) to disappoint your family, friends, team, etc. by not being as successful as they expect, or not helping or supporting them: *John would never let the side down.* ◇ *I knew I was letting the side down* (= disappointing my family, etc.) *by not going to college.*
▶ **ˈlet-down** *n* [C, usually sing.] [U] something that is not as good as you thought or hoped it would be: *The movie was great but the ending was a bit of a let-down.*

ˌlet sb/sth ˈdown; ˌlet yourself ˈdown to make sb/sth/yourself less successful or impressive than they/it/you should be: *Her knowledge of Italian is excellent, but her pronunciation lets her down.* ◇ *His clothes let him down.* ◇ *If you don't work hard for these exams, you'll only be letting yourself down.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌlet sth ˈdown 1 to make sth go lower: *We let the bucket down on a rope.* SYN **lower sth** (*more formal*) **2** to make sth longer, especially an item of clothing such as a skirt or a dress: *I'm going to let the hem down a couple of centimetres.* OPP **take sth up 3** (*BrE*) to allow the air to come out of sth, such as a tyre: *The tyres on his car had been let down during the night.* OBJ **tyre** SYN **deflate sth** (*formal*)
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
IDM **let your ˈhair down** (*informal*) to relax and enjoy yourself, often in a wild or lively way: *I saw my parents letting their hair down on the dance floor.*

ˌlet sb/sth ˈin; ˌlet yourself ˈin; ˌlet sb/sth/yourself ˈinto sth to allow sb/sth/yourself to enter a room or a building: *Let me in! It's cold out here.* ◇ *The guard refuses to let anyone in without a security pass.* ◇ *She let herself into the flat.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌlet sth ˈin to allow sth such as water or light to enter a place through a hole: *There was a hole in the roof that let the rain in.* ◇ *I drew the curtains back to let in some light.*
OBJ **light, rain**
NOTE **Let sth in** cannot be used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▶ **ˈinlet** *n* **1** a narrow strip of water which goes from the sea or a lake into the land: *a narrow/sheltered inlet* **2** the part of a machine through which air, gas or fuel enters: *a fuel/power inlet*

ˌlet sb/yourself ˈin for sth (*informal*) to allow yourself to become involved in sth difficult or unpleasant: *If I'd known what I was letting myself in for, I'd never have agreed to help.* ◇ *What have you let me in for?*
NOTE **Let sb/yourself in for sth** cannot be used in the passive. It is often used in questions with *what*.
G v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌlet sb ˈin on sth (*BrE also* **ˌlet sb ˈinto sth**) (*informal*) to allow sb to share a secret: *Are you going to let them in on your plans?* ◇ *I wanted to let Chris in on the secret.* ◇ *I'll let you into a little secret.*
OBJ **secret**
G v + n/pron + adv + prep ◆ v + n/pron + prep

be ˌlet ˈinto sth (*BrE*) to be put into the surface of sth: *A large window was let into the wall.*
G be + v + prep

ˌlet ˈoff (*BrE, slang*) to let air from the bowels come out through your bottom
G v + adv

ˌlet sb ˈoff (with sth) to punish sb lightly for sth wrong they have done; to not punish sb at all: *She was let off with a fine.* ◇ *I'll let you off this time, but don't do it again.*
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌlet sb ˈoff; ˌlet sb ˈoff sth 1 to allow sb not to do sth or not to go somewhere: *You really ought to help with the shopping, but I suppose I could let you off.* ◇ *Mum let me off the household chores during exams.* **2** to allow sb to get out of a vehicle, especially a bus: *Can you let me off here?*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + prep
IDM **let sb off the ˈhook** to free sb from a difficult or unpleasant task or situation: *He wasn't going to let the senator off the hook easily; he kept asking difficult questions.*

ˌlet sth ˈoff to fire a gun; to make a bomb explode: *The boys were letting off fireworks.* ◇ *He let off a warning shot.*
OBJ **firework, shot**
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
IDM **ˌlet off ˈsteam** to get rid of your energy, emotions, etc. by shouting or doing sth active: *He let off steam by hitting a pillow.*

ˌlet ˈon (to sb) (*informal*) to tell sb sth that is supposed to be a secret: *She doesn't know I've bought her a watch, so don't let on, will you?* ◇ *The children knew he was coming, but they didn't let on to anyone.* ◇ *There were holes in Jack's shoes, but Kate didn't let on (that) she'd noticed.*
G v + adv

ˌlet ˈout (*AmE*) when schools, classes, offices, etc. **let out**, they come to an end and students, workers, etc. go home at the end of a day or a term: *Classes let out in June.* ◇ *More than 30 000 people are expected in the square after work lets out.*
G v + adv

ˌlet sb ˈout; ˌlet sb ˈout of sth 1 to allow sb not to do sth they have promised or are expected to do; to free sb from a difficult situation: *I've got school tomorrow, so that lets me out (of helping).* **2** to allow sb to leave a hospital, prison, etc., especially early or for a short time: *The doctors might let me out tomorrow.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆
v + n/pron + adv + prep
▶ **ˈlet-out** *n* [sing.] (*especially BrE*) something that allows you to avoid an unpleasant or difficult situation: *a let-out clause* (= in a contract) ◇ *'I think it's too hot to go jogging today,' I said, looking for a let-out.*

ˌlet sb/sth ˈout; **ˌlet sb/sth ˈout of sth**; **ˌlet yourself ˈout**; **ˌlet yourself ˈout of sth** to allow sb/sth/yourself to go out of a room or a building: *Can you let yourself out?* ◇ *I was amazed they let her out of hospital so soon.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ♦ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + adv + prep

IDM **let the ˈcat out of the bag** to tell a secret carelessly or by mistake: *I was trying to keep my promotion quiet, but Steve went and let the cat out of the bag.*

ˌlet sth ˈout 1 to give a cry; to make a sound: *She let out a scream of terror.* ◇ *He let out a sigh of relief.* OBJ **cry**, **sigh** OPP **hold sth in** **2** to allow secret information to become known: *He's the only person who could have let the secret out.* ◇ *The company let out that they were putting in a bid for KFC.* OBJ **secret** SYN **reveal sth** (*more formal*) **3** **(to sb)** (*BrE*) to make a house, flat, apartment, etc. available for rent: *The apartment's been let out to a German couple.* OBJ **flat/apartment**, **house** SYN **hire sth out (to sb)**; **rent sth out (to sb)** **4** to make an item of clothing looser or larger: *I've eaten so much I'll have to let my belt out!* OBJ **skirt, trousers** OPP **take sth in** **5** (*also* **ˌlet sth ˈout of sth**) to allow air, liquid, etc. to escape or flow out of somewhere: *We need to let the air out of the radiator.*
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + adv
5 also v + n/pron + adv + prep

▶ **ˈoutlet** *n* **1** **(for sth)** a way of expressing or using energy, strong feelings, ideas, etc: *Children need an outlet for all their energy.* **2** a shop/store or an organization that sells goods made by a particular company or of a particular type: *a retail/fast food outlet* **3** (*especially AmE*) a shop/store that sells goods of a particular make/makes at reduced prices: *designer outlets* **4** a pipe or hole through which water, steam, etc. can flow out **5** (*AmE*) a device in a wall that you use to connect a piece of electrical equipment to a power supply: *an electrical outlet* **6** the end of a river where it flows into a lake or the sea

ˌlet sb/sth ˈpast to allow sb/sth to go past you: *Can you let me past, please?*
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌlet sb/sth ˈthrough 1 to allow sb/sth to pass or go through sth that is blocking the way: *The crowd moved aside to let the ambulance through.* ◇ *Let me through — I'm a doctor.* ◇ *These blinds don't let much light through.* **2** (*especially BrE*) to say that sb/sth is good enough for sth or is correct: *We were worried the council wouldn't let the plans for the new building through.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ♦ v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˌlet ˈup (*informal*) **1** to become less strong: *The rain showed no sign of letting up.* **2** to do sth with less effort or energy than before, or stop doing it: *We mustn't let up, even though we're winning.* ◇ *Doesn't she ever let up? She's been complaining all day.*
◈ v + adv

▶ **ˈlet-up (in sth)** *n* [U] [sing.] a reduction in the strength of something; a period of time when sth unpleasant stops: *There can be no let-up in the war against drugs.* ◇ *The rain continued all afternoon with no let-up.*

level /ˈlevl/ (**-ll-**, *AmE* **-l-**)

ˈlevel sth at sb/sth 1 (*also* **ˌlevel sth aˈgainst sb/sth**) to say publicly that sb is to blame for sth, especially a mistake or a crime: *The charges levelled against him are unjust.* ◇ *Environmental groups have levelled a number of criticisms at the proposal.* OBJ **criticism**, **accusation**, **charge**
NOTE **Level sth against/at sb/sth** is usually used in the passive in this meaning: *Accusations of incompetence have been levelled at the principal.* **2** to point sth, especially a gun, at sb: *She levelled the pistol at his head.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌlevel sth ˈdown/ˈup to make standards, amounts, etc. be the same low/high or lower/higher level: *The government is accused of levelling down standards in schools rather than levelling them up.*
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + adv

ˌlevel ˈoff/ˈout 1 to become level or steady after a period of sharp rises and falls: *House prices showed no sign of levelling off.* **2** to become level or horizontal after rising or falling: *The road began to level off as we approached the coast.* ◇ *The plane levelled off at 20 000 feet.*
◈ v + adv

ˌlevel sth ˈoff/ˈout to make something smooth or flat: *Level the ground out before sowing the seed.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ♦ v + adv + n

ˌlevel sth ˈup = LEVEL STH DOWN/UP

ˈlevel with sb (*informal*) to speak or deal with sb in an honest and direct way: *I'm going to level with you now — your work hasn't been up to standard for some time.* ◇ *I've got the feeling that he's not levelling with me.*
◈ v + prep

lick /lɪk/

ˌlick sth ˈoff/ˈup; **ˌlick sth ˈoff sth** to eat or drink sth by moving your tongue over the surface of it: *She licked the jam off (the spoon).* ◇ *The cat licked up the milk from the dish.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ♦ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + prep

lie /laɪ/ (**lies**, **lying**, **lay** /leɪ/ **lain** /leɪn/)

ˌlie aˈbout; **ˌlie aˈbout sth** (*BrE*) = LIE AROUND, LIE AROUND STH

ˌlie aˈhead; **ˌlie aˈhead of sb** to be in the future; to be in front of you: *Great opportunities lie ahead.* ◇ *Who knows what problems might lie ahead of us?*
◈ v + adv ♦ v + adv + prep

ˌlie aˈround; **ˌlie aˈround sth** (*BrE also* **ˌlie aˈbout**, **ˌlie aˈbout sth**) **1** (of a person) to spend time being lazy and not doing anything in particular: *She's been lying around the house all day doing nothing.* SYN **laze around, laze around sth**; **lounge about/around**, **lounge about/around sth** **2** (of a number of things) to be left somewhere in a careless or untidy way: *His clothes lay around all over the floor.* ◇ *'Have you seen my purse?' 'It was lying about in the kitchen when I last saw it.'* ◇ *You shouldn't **leave** valuables **lying around** the changing rooms.*
◈ v + adv ♦ v + prep

▶ **ˈlayabout** *n* (*old-fashioned, BrE, informal*) a lazy person who does very little work

ˌlie ˈback (in/on sth) to rest, relax and do very little: *Just lie back and enjoy the peace and quiet.* ◇ *She lay back on the pillows and closed her eyes.*
◈ v + adv

ˌlie beˈfore sb (*literary*) **1** to be in front of sb: *A terrible sight lay before them.* **2** to be in the future: *Your whole life lies before you.*
◈ v + prep

ˌlie beˈhind sth to be the real explanation or reason for sth: *She understood the feelings that lay behind his angry words.* ◇ *We will probably never know what lay behind his decision to resign.*
◈ v + prep

ˌlie ˈdown to be or move into a horizontal position on a bed, etc. in order to sleep or rest: *Go and lie down for a while.* ◇ *He lay down on the sofa and went to sleep.* ◇ *The coughing is worse when he's lying down.* ◇ *She was lying down on the bed.*
NOTE Do not confuse this sense of **lie down** with **lay sth down**, which must always have an object: *Jack lay down on the sofa.* ◇ *Jack laid the pen down on the table.* ◇ *Jack was lying down on the sofa*, (not *Jack was laying down on the sofa*).
◈ v + adv

IDM **take sth lying ˈdown** to accept an insult, a criticism, a violent attack, etc. without protesting or reacting to it: *He has been accused of bribery, but he won't take this lying down.*

▶ **ˌlie-ˈdown** *n* [sing.] (*BrE, informal*) a short rest, especially in bed: *to have a lie-down*

ˌlie ˈin (*BrE, informal*) to stay in bed after the time you usually get up: *It's Saturday tomorrow, so you can lie in.*
SYN **sleep in**
◈ v + adv

▶ **ˌlie-ˈin** *n* [sing.] (*BrE, informal*) an act of staying in bed longer than usual in the morning: *to have a lie-in*

ˌlie ˈup (*BrE*) to hide somewhere: *The fugitives lay up in the caves until it got dark.*
◈ v + adv

ˈlie with sb/sth (to do sth) (*formal*) to be the duty or responsibility of sb/sth: ***It lies with you** to accept or reject the proposal.* ◇ *The decision on whether to proceed lies with the minister.*
SYN **rest with sb**
◈ v + prep

lift /lɪft/

ˌlift ˈoff when a rocket, etc. **lifts off** it rises from the ground into the air: *The rocket lifts off next Monday.*
◈ v + adv

▶ **ˈlift-off** *n* [C] [U] the moment when a rocket or spacecraft leaves the ground and rises into the air: *We have lift-off!*

ˌlift sb/sth ˈup; **ˌlift yourself ˈup** to raise sb/sth/yourself to a higher position or level: *I can't lift you up — you're too heavy!* ◇ *She lifted herself up on one elbow.* ◇ *She lifted up the box and put it on the table.*
NOTE **Lift sb/sth/yourself** can also be used with this meaning.
◈ v + n/pron + adv ♦ v + adv + n

light /laɪt/ (**lit**, **lit** /lɪt/)

ˈlight on/upon sb/sth (*literary*) **1** to suddenly see sb/sth: *Her gaze lighted on her daughter.* **2** to suddenly find sb/sth or think of sb/sth: *The research team has lit upon important new material.* SYN **hit on sth**
NOTE **Lighted** is also used for the past tense and past participle.
SYN **alight on/upon sb/sth**
◈ v + prep

ˌlight ˈup; **ˌlight sth ˈup 1** to become or to make sth bright with light or colour: *She switched the monitor on and the screen lit up.* ◇ *Flashes of lightning lit up the sky.* ◇ *The waterfall was lit up at night with pink and green floodlights.* **2** if a person's eyes or face **light up**, or sth **lights them up**, they become bright with excitement or happiness: *Her eyes lit up when she saw them.* ◇ *A smile of delight lit up his face.* ◇ *His face **lit up with pleasure**.* **3** (*informal*) to begin to smoke a cigarette, etc: *She took out a cigarette and lit up.* ◇ *He lit up one cigarette after another.*
◈ v + adv ♦ v + adv + n ♦ v + pron + adv ♦ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˈlight upon sb/sth = LIGHT ON/UPON SB/STH

lighten /ˈlaɪtn/

ˌlighten ˈup (*spoken*) used to tell sb to be less serious or to complain or worry less about sth: *Come on, lighten up! It was only a joke.*
◈ v + adv

ˌlighten sth ˈup (*informal*) to make sth more cheerful and less serious or depressing: *He did his best to* ***lighten things up.*** ◇ *She tried to lighten up her speech with a few jokes.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

liken /ˈlaɪkən/

ˈliken sb/sth to sb/sth (*formal*) to compare sb/sth to someone or something else and say that they are similar: *He has been likened to a young George Best.* ◇ *She likened the building to a ship.*
NOTE **Liken sb/sth to sb/sth** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

limber /ˈlɪmbə(r)/

ˌlimber ˈup (**for sth**) to do exercise to prepare to take part in a sport, a race, etc.; to warm up: *The players were limbering up for the game.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The candidates are already limbering up for the election campaign.*
SYN **warm up**
◈ v + adv

limit /ˈlɪmɪt/

ˈlimit sth to sb/sth to make sth exist or happen only in a particular place or within a particular group: *Violent crime is not limited to big cities.* ◇ *The teaching of history should not be limited to dates and figures.*
SYN **confine sth to sb/sth**
NOTE **Limit sth to sb/sth** is usually used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

line /laɪn/

ˌline ˈup 1 (**for sth/to do sth**) if people **line up**, they form a line, standing one behind the other or beside each other: *A group of people were lining up for tickets.* ◇ *They lined up to shake the President's hand.* ◇ *The runners lined up at the starting line.* → *see also* QUEUE UP (FOR STH/TO DO STH) **2** to join with sb in order to do sth: *Local groups are lining up against the new development.* ◇ *Several newspapers lined up to demand his resignation.*
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˈline-up** *n* [usually sing.] a row of people that is formed so that sb who saw a crime can try to recognize the person who did it: *She picked him out of a line-up* (= she recognized him as the person who committed the crime).
→ *see also* LINE-UP at LINE SB/STH UP

ˌline ˈup; **ˌline sth ˈup** to be, or to put sth, in the correct position in relation to sth else: *The three holes should all line up (with each other).*
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌline sb/sth ˈup 1 to arrange people or things in a line or a row: *She lined the children up for the photograph.* ◇ *His CDs were lined up on the shelf.* **2** (**for sb/sth**) to organize an event or an activity; to arrange for sb to do something at an event, a competition, etc: *He's lined up a band for the party.* ◇ *We've lined up a few things for the weekend.* ◇ *They already had a buyer for their car lined up.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)
▸ **ˈline-up** *n* [usually sing.] **1** a group of people who have been chosen or invited to take part in an event: *an impressive line-up of performers* ◇ *The line-up for tonight's game is still not known.* **2** a set of events, people or things: *Several new dramas are included in the line-up of programmes for next year.*
→ *see also* LINE-UP at LINE UP

linger /ˈlɪŋgə(r)/

ˌlinger ˈon 1 to remain for a long time: *The memory of that day lingers on in the minds of local people.* ◇ *The smell lingered on for days after.* **2** to remain alive, but becoming gradually weaker: *We should be thankful that she didn't linger on.*
NOTE **Linger** is used more frequently with the same meanings.
◈ v + adv

link /lɪŋk/

ˌlink ˈup 1 (**with sb**) to join with sb in order to do sth together: *We are trying to link up with other charities working in the area.* **2** (**with sth**) to make a connection with sth: *The two spacecraft will link up in orbit.*
◈ v + adv

ˌlink sb/sth ˈup (**to sth**) to connect sb/sth with someone or something else: *The alarm is linked up to the police station.* ◇ *The new network can link us up to similar organizations around the country.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈlink-up** *n* a connection between two systems or machines: *They did a live satellite link-up with the show.*

liquor /ˈlɪkə(r)/

be/get ˌliquored ˈup (*AmE, informal*) to be/get drunk: *We got liquored up on Saturday night.*
◈ be/get + v + adv

listen /ˈlɪsn/

ˈlisten for sb/sth; **ˌlisten ˈout for sb/sth** to listen carefully to see if you can hear sb/sth: *She lay awake, listening out for the sound of the key in the lock.* ◇ *Will you listen out for the phone while I'm in the bath?* ◇ *The children were asked to listen out for a word beginning with 'sh'.*
OBJ **sound, door**
◈ v + prep • v + adv + prep

ˌlisten ˈin 1 (on/to sth) to listen to sth or sb secretly: *Have you been listening in on my phone calls?* ◇ *They were sure that the police were listening in to their conversations.* **2** (to sth) to listen to a radio programme, etc: *Listen in on Friday for our interview with George Michael.*
◈ v + adv

ˌlisten ˈout for sb/sth = LISTEN FOR SB/STH, LISTEN OUT FOR SB/STH

ˌlisten ˈup (*spoken, especially AmE*) used to tell sb to pay attention to what you are going to say: *Listen up, everyone — this is important!*
◈ v + adv

live /lɪv/

ˈlive by sth to follow a particular belief or set of principles: *Some people live by the rule 'anything for the sake of peace'.* ◇ *Women working in a man's world have to live by men's rules.*
OBJ **principles, standards**
◈ v + prep
IDM **live by your ˈwits** to earn money or survive by clever and sometimes dishonest means: *He had no money and was living by his wits and by selling a few paintings.*

ˈlive by sth; **ˈlive by doing sth** to earn the money that you need by using or doing a particular thing: *people who live by the land* (= for example, farmers) ◇ *She lived by giving private lessons.*
◈ v + prep

ˌlive sth ˈdown to make people forget sth very embarrassing or bad that you have done in the past: *I can't believe I fell in the river — I'll never be able to live it down.*
NOTE **Live sth down** is not used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈlive for sb/sth to consider sb/sth as the main purpose of or the most important person or thing in your life: *She lives for her work.* ◇ *What have I got to live for now?*
◈ v + prep

ˌlive ˈin to live at the place where you work or study: *They have a nanny living in.* ◇ (*BrE*) *Most students live in during their first year.*
OPP **live out**
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˈlive-in** *adj* [only before noun] **1** (of an employee) living in the house where they work: *a live-in housekeeper/position* **2** (of a boyfriend, girlfriend, etc.) living in the same house as their sexual partner: *a live-in lover/boyfriend*

ˈlive off sb/sth (*often disapproving*) to get the money or the things you need from sb/sth: *You can't live off your parents forever!* ◇ *He had to live off his savings.*
◈ v + prep

ˈlive off sth to eat one type of food very frequently or all the time: *When I was a student I lived off bread and cheese.*
→ *see also* LIVE ON STH 2
◈ v + prep
IDM **live off the ˈland** to eat food that you can grow, kill or find yourself: *The army was forced to live off the land.* ◇ *It's a farming area and most of the people still live off the land.* **live off the fat of the ˈland** (*disapproving*) to have enough money to be able to buy expensive food, drink, clothes, etc: *It was a time when landlords and merchants lived off the fat of the land.*

ˌlive ˈon to continue to live or exist: *He may be dead but his music lives on.*
◈ v + adv

ˈlive on sth 1 to have a particular amount of money with which to buy everything you need: *How did you manage to live on a student grant?* ◇ *They don't earn enough to live on.* **2** to eat a particular type of food very frequently or all the time: *She was living on fruit and raw vegetables.* ◇ *birds that live on insects* → *see also* LIVE OFF STH
◈ v + prep

ˌlive ˈout (*BrE*) to live away from the place where you work or study: *I lived out during my final year at college.*
OPP **live in**
◈ v + adv

ˌlive ˈout sth; **ˌlive it/them ˈout 1** to do in reality sth that you think about, believe in, dream of, etc: *On holiday in Texas I lived out my childhood fantasy of being a cowboy.* **OBJ** **fantasy, dream** **2** to spend your life or the rest of your life in a particular way: *She lived out the rest of her life in poverty.* ◇ *Maybe I'll live out my days in the peace of the mountains.* **OBJ** **life, days**
NOTE A noun must always follow **out**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **out**.
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv

ˌlive ˈthrough sth to experience sth difficult or unpleasant and survive: *He lived through both world wars.* ◇ *It's something I never want to live through again.*
◈ v + prep

ˌlive toˈgether (*also* **ˈlive with sb**) **1** to live in the same house, flat/apartment, etc: *There are six students living together in the house.* ◇ *I'm living in a flat with Meg.* **2** to share a home and have a sexual relationship, but without being married
◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˌlive it ˈup (*informal*) to have a very exciting and enjoyable time, usually spending a lot of money: *I've heard that Tom's living it up in L.A.*
◈ v + it + adv

ˌlive ˈup to sth to behave as well as or be as good or successful as people expect: *The hotel failed to live up to expectations.* ◇ *Mr. Mean lived up to his name and died a millionaire.* ◇ *I've got a lot to live up to.*
OBJ **expectations, name, reputation**
◈ v + adv + prep

ˈlive with sb = LIVE TOGETHER

ˈlive with sth; **ˈlive with yourself** to accept an unpleasant situation and continue with your life and work: *You might not like the situation, but you'll have to learn to live with it.* ◇ *She wouldn't be able to live with herself if she hurt him.*
◈ v + prep

liven /ˈlaɪvn/

ˌliven ˈup; **ˌliven sb/sth ˈup** to become or to make sb/sth more lively, interesting or exciting: *She livened up when Alan asked her to dance.* ◇ *Put some music on to liven things up.* ◇ *A few pictures would liven up the room.*
SYN **brighten up; brighten sth up**
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

load /ləʊd; *AmE* loʊd/

ˌload sb/sth ˈdown (**with sth**) **1** to give sb/sth too many things to carry: *She was loaded down with books.* **2** to give sb/sth too much work or too many responsibilities: *We've been loaded down with work recently.*
NOTE **Load sb/sth down** is usually used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌload ˈup (**with sth**), **ˌload sth ˈup** (**with sth**) to put a lot of things in/on sth, especially a vehicle: *Bring the car to the door and we'll help you load up.* ◇ *I loaded up the van with all my possessions.* ◇ *We've loaded up all the furniture and are just about ready to go.*
NOTE **Load** and **load sth** are used more frequently with this meaning.
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

loaf /ləʊf; *AmE* loʊf/

ˌloaf aˈround; **ˌloaf aˈround sth** (*BrE also* **ˌloaf aˈbout**, **ˌloaf aˈbout sth**) (*informal*) to spend your time in a lazy way, doing very little: *kids loafing about with nothing to do* ◇ *She just loafs around the streets all day.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

loan /ləʊn; *AmE* loʊn/

ˌloan sth/sb ˈout (**to sb**) to lend sth/sb to sb, sometimes in return for money: *Several players have been loaned out to other teams.* ◇ *Sometimes we loan out these buses.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

lock /lɒk; *AmE* lɑːk/

ˌlock sb aˈway 1 = LOCK STH UP 1 **2** = LOCK SB UP/AWAY *He was locked away for the rest of his life.*

ˌlock sth aˈway = LOCK STH UP *She locked the money away in a cupboard.*

ˌlock yourself aˈway = LOCK STH UP 1 to shut yourself in a place away from other people so that you are not disturbed: *He locked himself away* (*in his room*) *until he'd finished his work.*
SYN **shut yourself away (from sb/sth)**
→ *see also* LOCK SB UP/AWAY
◈ v + pron + adv

ˌlock sb/sth ˈin; **ˌlock yourself ˈin** to put sb/sth/yourself in a room or building and lock the door: *The prisoners are locked in every night.* ◇ *He rushed to his bedroom and locked himself in.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈlock-in** *n* (*BrE*) an occasion when customers are locked into a bar or pub after it has closed so that they can continue drinking privately

be ˈlocked in sth to be involved in a difficult or unpleasant situation, especially an argument or a legal dispute, that seems unlikely to end soon: *The parents are locked in a bitter legal battle over the future of the twins.*
◈ be + v + prep

ˌlock ˈin on sth = LOCK ONTO STH

be ˌlocked ˈinto sth (*also* **become/get ˌlocked ˈinto sth**) to be in a particular situation, or behave in a particular way, that you cannot change: *The government is locked into a policy of reducing taxes.* ◇ *Older horses can get locked into bad habits.*
◈ be + v + prep

ˌlock ˈonto sth (*also* **ˌlock ˈin on sth**) if a weapon that is sent through the air **locks onto** sth that it is aimed at, it finds it and follows it: *The missile can lock onto a target from a kilometre away.*
OBJ **target**
NOTE **Lock onto sth** can be used in the passive: *The missile was locked onto the target.*
◈ v + prep • v + adv + prep

ˌlock sb/sth ˈout 1 (*also* **ˌlock sb/sth ˈout of sth**) to prevent sb/sth from entering a place by locking a door: *I arrived home to find the landlady had locked me out.* **2** to prevent workers from entering their place of work until they agree to the conditions given by the employer: *The management will lock out anyone who refuses to sign the new contract.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
1 also v + n/pron + adv + prep
▸ **ˈlockout** *n* a situation when an employer refuses to let workers enter their place of work until they agree to particular conditions: *The strikers faced a lockout.*

ˌlock yourself ˈout; **ˌlock yourself ˈout of sth** to accidentally leave your keys inside a car, building, etc. when you go out, so that you are unable to get inside again: *I've managed to lock myself out of my room three times!*
◈ v + pron + adv • v + pron + adv + prep

ˌlock ˈup; **ˌlock sth ˈup** to make a building safe by locking the doors and windows: *Make sure you lock up before you leave.* ◇ *She locked the shop up and went home.*
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈlock-up** *n* a small shop that the owner does not live in; a place that the owner does not need and rents to sb else, for example to keep a car in: *a lock-up garage/shop*
→ *see also* LOCK-UP at LOCK SB UP/AWAY

ˌlock sb ˈup/aˈway (*informal*) to put sb in prison or in a guarded hospital: *People like that should be locked up!* ◇ *They should lock her up and throw away the key.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈlock-up** *n* a small prison where prisoners are kept for a short time
→ *see also* LOCK-UP at LOCK UP, LOCK STH UP

ˌlock sth ˈup 1 (*also* **ˌlock sth aˈway**) to put sth valuable in a safe place and lock it: *Lock your valuables up in the safe.* **2** (**in sth**) to invest money in sth and not be able to turn it into cash to spend: *Huge sums of money are locked up in pension funds.* OBJ **capital, money** SYN **tie sth up**
NOTE In this meaning **lock sth up** is nearly always used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

log /lɒɡ; *AmE* lɔːɡ, lɑːɡ/ (**-gg-**)

ˌlog ˈin/ˈon; **ˌlog ˈinto/ˈonto sth** (*computing*) to perform the actions that allow you to begin using a computer system: *I got an error message when I tried to log in/on.* ◇ *The password allows the user to log into the system.*
OBJ **system, network, computer** OPP **log off/out; log off/out of sth**
NOTE **Log into/onto sth** can be used in the pattern: *I was logged onto the Internet.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˌlog ˈoff/ˈout; **ˌlog ˈoff/ˈout of sth** (*computing*) to perform the actions that allow you to finish using a computer system: *Try logging off and logging on again.*
OBJ **system, computer** OPP **log in/on; log into/onto sth**
NOTE **Log off/out of sth** can be used in the pattern: *Wait until all the users are logged off.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

loll /lɒl/

ˌloll aˈround; **ˌloll aˈround sth** (*BrE also* **ˌloll aˈbout**, **ˌloll aˈbout sth**) to sit, lie or stand in a relaxed way, doing very little: *There were several kids lolling around outside the club.* ◇ *Jim should get a job instead of lolling around the house all day.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

long /lɒŋ; *AmE* lɔːŋ/

ˈlong for sb/sth; **ˈlong for sb to do sth** to want sb/sth very much: *to long for a baby* ◇ *I was longing for a chat and a good laugh.* ◇ *She found herself longing for her visitors to leave.*
◈ v + prep • v + prep + n/pron + to inf
▸ **ˈlonged-for** *adj* [only before noun] that sb has been wanting or hoping for very much: *a longed-for child*

look /lʊk/

~ about
~ across
~ after
176 ~ ahead
~ around
~ at
~ away
~ back
~ down
~ down on
~ for
177 ~ forward to
~ in
~ into
~ on
~ out
~ out for
~ out on/over
~ over
~ round
178 ~ through
~ to
~ up
~ up to
~ upon

ˌlook aˈbout; **ˌlook aˈbout sth**; **ˌlook aˈbout you** (*BrE*) = LOOK AROUND, LOOK AROUND STH, LOOK AROUND YOU

ˌlook aˈcross/ˈover (**at/to sb/sth**) to look quickly across a room: *I looked across to where they were sitting.* ◇ *She knew I was there, but she didn't look over at me.*
◈ v + adv

ˌlook ˈafter sb/sth/yourself (*especially BrE*) **1** to make sure that sb/sth is safe; take care of sb/sth: *His parents are looking after the children for the weekend.* ◇ *She doesn't look after her clothes.* ◇ *Sophie will look after the visitors.* ◇ *They're old enough to look after themselves now* (= they don't need any help). ◇ *Would you mind looking after my bag for a minute?* ◇ *See you soon — look after yourself* (= when saying goodbye to sb). NOTE **Take care of sb** is used in American and British English with the same meaning: *My mother is going to look after/take care of the kids* *while we're away.* In more formal language you can also use **care for sb**: *His job involves caring for the elderly.* → *see also* BRING SB UP 1 **2** to make sure that things happen to sb's advantage: *He's good at* ***looking after his own interests.***

NOTE **Look after sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *He needs to be properly looked after.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌlook ˈafter sth (*BrE*) to deal with sth; to be responsible for sth: *Their accountant looks after the financial side of things.*

SYN **attend to sth** (*more formal*)

NOTE **Look after sth** can be used in the passive: *Everything's being looked after.* ◆ **Take care of sth** is used in American and British English with the same meaning.

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌlook aˈhead (to sth) to think about what is going to happen in the future: *The team is looking ahead to next season.* ◇ *Looking ahead to the weekend, the weather will stay fine.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌlook aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌlook ˈround**) **1** (at sb/sth) to turn your head in order to see sb/sth behind you: *The people in front kept looking round at us.* ◇ *He looked round to see if I was still there.* **2** (for sb/sth) to examine various choices or possibilities: *We're looking around for a new car.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌlook aˈround; **ˌlook aˈround sth** (*BrE also* **ˌlook ˈround**, **ˌlook ˈround sth**) to visit a place or a building as a tourist: *Take your time looking around.* ◇ *They've gone to look round the cathedral.* ◇ *I spent the day looking around the town.*

Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌlook aˈround; **ˌlook aˈround sth**; **ˌlook aˈround you** (*BrE also* **ˌlook aˈbout/ˈround**, **ˌlook aˈbout/ˈround sth**, **ˌlook aˈbout/ˈround you**) to turn your head in different directions so that you can see sth or see what is there: *She came into the room, looked around, then went out.* ◇ *He looked round the classroom angrily.* ◇ *I looked about me at the other passengers.*

Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˈlook at sb/sth 1 to turn your eyes towards sb/sth so that you can see them/it: *Don't look at me like that!* ◇ *What are you looking at?* **2** to examine sth/sb closely: *I'd like the doctor to look at him.* ◇ *Can you look at this watch for me? I think it might be broken.* NOTE In this meaning, **look at sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *I took the car to the garage to get it looked at.* **3** (*usually used in negative sentences or questions*) to consider or be prepared to accept sb/sth: *They wouldn't even look at someone wanting part-time work.* **4** used to draw sb's attention to sb/sth, often as an example that you want them to follow or not follow: *I wouldn't take advice from her — just look at the mess she's made of her own life!* ◇ *He left school without any qualifications, but look at him now!* (= he is very successful now) ◇ *Money doesn't always bring happiness — just look at Ian* (= he is rich but not happy).

Ⓖ v + prep

ˈlook at sth 1 to read sth, usually quickly, without reading all the details: *She sat in the waiting room, looking at a magazine.* NOTE In this meaning **look at sth** can be used in the passive: *Don't hand the form in until it's been looked at by a teacher.* **2** to think about or study sth: *Have you looked at the possibility of adopting a child?* ◇ *The film looks at the events leading up to the war.* NOTE In this meaning, **look at sth** can be used in the passive: *Four possible routes were looked at for the new road.* **3** to consider sth in a particular way: *If you look at it like that, it's a good thing we didn't go.* **4** (*informal*) (*always used in the progressive tenses*) to have to consider or deal with sth; to be faced with sth: *You're looking at £600 to get the car fixed.* ◇ *If he's found guilty he's looking at a six-year prison sentence.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌlook aˈway (from sb/sth) to look in the opposite direction; to turn your eyes away from sb/sth: *She looked at him then looked away.* ◇ *He mumbled a reply and looked away from me.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌlook ˈback (at/on/to sth) to think about sth that has happened in your past: *Looking back, I'm not surprised she left.* ◇ *He looked back on his time in England with a sense of nostalgia.*

Ⓖ v + adv

IDM **never/not look ˈback** (*informal*) to become more and more successful: *He started work on a market stall in 1970 and he's never looked back.*

ˌlook ˈdown to turn your eyes downwards to the floor, especially because you are embarrassed, shy, etc: *The little boy blushed and looked down.* ◇ *She looked down at her hands.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌlook ˈdown on sb/sth to consider sb/sth as less good or important than yourself: *She tends to look down on people who haven't been to college.* ◇ *They looked down on our little house.*

NOTE **Look down on sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *He was looked down on at school.*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˈlook for sb/sth to search for sb/sth, either because you have lost them/it, or because you need them/it: *Sue's been looking for you.* ◇ *'Can I help you?' 'Yes, I'm looking for this shirt in blue.'* (= in a shop/store)

NOTE **Seek sb/sth** is only used with this meaning in very formal language or in newspapers.

Ⓖ v + prep

ˈlook for sth 1 to hope for sth or expect sth: *The examiners will be looking for good grammar and spelling.* ◇ *This could be just the opportunity he's been looking for.* **2** to search for sth; to try to find sth: *They were looking for an easy solution to the problem.* NOTE **Seek sth** is only used with this meaning in very formal language, or in newspapers.

Ⓖ v + prep

IDM **look for ˈtrouble** to behave in a way that is likely to cause an argument, a fight, etc: *Are you looking for trouble?*

▶ **unˈlooked-for** *adj* (*formal*) not expected: *unlooked-for success*

ˌlook ˈforward to sth; **ˌlook ˈforward to doing sth** to feel excited about sth that is going to happen because you expect to enjoy it: *Are you looking forward to your trip?* ◇ *I'm not looking forward to going to the dentist.* ◇ *We're looking forward to the concert!* ◇ *I look forward to hearing from you* (= at the end of a letter).

NOTE **Look forward to sth** can be used in the passive: *The President's visit is eagerly looked forward to.* ◆ Remember that **to** is a preposition in this phrasal verb and must be followed by a noun or the *-ing* form of a verb.

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌlook ˈin (**on sb**) to make a short visit to a place: *I asked Sarah to look in on her grandmother on her way home.* ◇ *The doctor will look in again this evening.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌlook ˈinto sth to examine sth or consider it carefully: *The committee is looking into the matter.* ◇ *The manager is looking into your complaint.* ◇ *We're looking into the possibility of moving to France.*

NOTE **Look into sth** can be used in the passive: *This situation should be looked into.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌlook ˈon 1 to watch an event or an incident without taking part in it yourself: *People looked on in alarm as the car began to roll down the hill.* ◇ *Passers-by just looked on as he was attacked.* **2** (**with sb**) (*AmE*) to share a book, etc. with another person in a group: *There aren't enough books so you'll have to look on with your neighbor.*

Ⓖ v + adv

▶ **ˈonlooker** *n* a person who watches sth without becoming involved in it: *A crowd of onlookers formed around the fight.*

ˈlook on sb/sth (*also* **ˈlook upon sb/sth** *more formal*) [**+ adv/prep**] to consider sb/sth in a particular way: *I look on you as my friend.* ◇ *She looked upon the assignment as a challenge.* ◇ *I looked on life in a different way after that.* ◇ *She was always looked on with distrust.*

NOTE **Look on/upon sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *The job was looked upon as glamorous.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌlook ˈout used to tell sb to be careful, especially when there is some danger: *Look out! There's a car coming.* ◇ *You're going to burn that food if you don't look out.*

SYN **watch out**

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌlook sth ˈout (**for sb/sth**) (*BrE*) to search for something from among your possessions: *I'll look out that book for you.*

NOTE **Look sth out** cannot be used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌlook ˈout for sb/yourself to take care of sb/yourself and think about their/your own interests: *Once he was in London he had to look out for himself.* ◇ *Emily's brothers always looked out for her.*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌlook ˈout for sb/sth 1 to try to find sb/sth or meet sb: *I was looking out for Pete but I didn't see him.* ◇ *Look out for this film at your local cinema.* **2** to try to avoid sth bad happening or doing sth bad: *Look out for pickpockets.*

SYN **watch out for sb/sth**

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

▶ **ˈlookout** *n* **1** a place where sb watches from to see if there is any danger: *a lookout post/tower* **2** a person who watches for danger: *The burglars posted a lookout outside the house.*

ˌlook ˈout on/over sth (of a room, etc.) to have a view of sth: *Our room looked out over the square.*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌlook ˈover (**at/to sb/sth**) = LOOK ACROSS/OVER (AT/TO SB/STH)

ˌlook ˈover sth 1 to make a tour of a place: *We were invited to look over the new classrooms.* **2** to read sth quickly: *I need to look over my notes before the test.* ◇ *Your tutor will look over your work with you.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌlook sb/sth ˈover to inspect or examine sb/sth to see how good, big, etc. it is: *He looked the painting over carefully.* ◇ *I'd like the doctor to look him over.* ◇ *We'll get a mechanic to look the car over before we buy it.*

SYN **check sb/sth over**; **examine sb/sth**

NOTE When **look sb/sth over** is used with the pronouns *it* and *them* referring to things, these pronouns can also come after **over**: *We'd like a mechanic to look over it for us.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌlook ˈround (*BrE*) LOOK AROUND

ˌlook ˈround; **ˌlook ˈround sth** (*BrE*) = LOOK AROUND, LOOK AROUND STH

ˌlook ˈround; **ˌlook ˈround sth**; **ˌlook ˈround you** (*BrE*) = LOOK AROUND, LOOK AROUND STH, LOOK AROUND YOU

ˌlook ˈthrough sb to look at sb and not show that you have seen or recognized them: *I smiled at him, but he just looked straight through me.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌlook ˈthrough sth 1 to read sth quickly: *She looked through her notes before the exam.* **2** to read sth quickly: *I looked through the paper while I was waiting.* **3** to examine a collection of things or what is inside sth: *What are you doing looking through my bag?*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˈlook to sb/sth (for sth/to do sth) to rely on sb/sth or expect sb to provide sth or do sth: *They looked to us for help.* ◇ *We must look to other means to generate the funds we need.* ◇ *Many students can't look to their parents for financial support.*
SYN **turn to sb**
Ⓖ v + prep

ˈlook to sth (*especially BrE*) **1** to think about something that will happen in the future: *We are looking to the future with confidence.* OBJ **the future 2** (*formal*) to make sure that sth is safe or in good condition; to think about how to improve sth: *You should look to your own behaviour before criticizing others.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌlook ˈup 1 (from sth) to raise your eyes: *She looked up from her book and smiled.* **2** (*informal*) (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) (of a business, a situation etc.) to become better; to improve: *Things started to look up for me after I got a job.* ◇ *Business is looking up at last.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌlook sb ˈup (*informal*) to visit or contact sb when you are in the place where they live, especially when you have not seen them for a long time: *Look me up next time you're in London.*
NOTE **Look sb up** cannot be used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)
IDM **look sb ˌup and ˈdown** to look at sb suspiciously or in a careful or critical way

ˌlook sth ˈup to search for a word or some information in a dictionary or another book: *I looked the word up in the dictionary.* ◇ *Hang on, I'll just look up her telephone number.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌlook ˈup to sb to admire or respect sb: *She always looked up to her older sister.*
NOTE **Look up to sb** can be used in the passive: *She was looked up to by the rest of her family.*
Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˈlook upon sb/sth = LOOK ON SB/STH

loom /luːm/

ˌloom aˈhead if sth dangerous, difficult or unpleasant **looms ahead**, it is likely to happen soon: *Further problems are looming ahead.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌloom ˈup to appear as a large shape that is not clear, often in a way that seems frightening or threatening: *A dark shape loomed up out of the fog.*
NOTE **Loom up** is usually followed by an adverb or a phrase beginning with a preposition: *A man loomed up out of the darkness.* ◆ **Loom** is also used with this meaning.
Ⓖ v + adv

loosen /ˈluːsn/

ˌloosen ˈup (*informal*) to become more relaxed and comfortable: *He began to loosen up and enjoy the evening.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌloosen ˈup; ˌloosen sb/sth ˈup to relax your muscles or parts of the body, or make them relax, before taking exercise, etc: *I swam a short distance to loosen up.* ◇ *A massage will help loosen you up.* ◇ *These exercises will loosen up your shoulders.*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

lop /lɒp; *AmE* lɑːp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌlop sth ˈoff; ˌlop sth ˈoff sth 1 to remove sth from sth, especially branches from a tree, by cutting it: *Several branches had been lopped off (the tree).* ◇ *They lopped 20p off the price of each unit.*
SYN **chop sth off, chop sth off sth; cut sth off, cut sth off sth 2** to make sth smaller or less: *The new rail link has lopped an hour off the journey.*
SYN **knock sth off, knock sth off sth**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

lord /lɔːd; *AmE* lɔːrd/

ˈlord it over sb to behave in a superior way to sb: *She likes to lord it over the junior staff.*
Ⓖ v + it + prep

lose /luːz/ (**lost, lost** /lɒst; *AmE* lɔːst/)

ˈlose yourself in sth to become so interested in sth that you are not aware of anything else: *I soon lost myself in the excitement of the play.*
Ⓖ v + pron + prep

ˌlose ˈout (on sth) (*informal*) to be unsuccessful in getting sth that you want or think you should have: *Some youngsters are taking day jobs and losing out on schooling.* ◇ *If things go wrong, I'm the one who'll lose out.* ◇ *While the stores make big profits, it's the customers who lose out.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌlose ˈout to sb/sth (*informal*) to not get the business you expected or hoped to get, because sb else has got it: *Small stores are losing out to the big supermarkets.*
Ⓖ v + adv + prep

lounge /laʊndʒ/

ˌlounge aˈbout/aˈround; ˌlounge aˈbout/aˈround sth to spend your time in a relaxed way doing very little: *She was always lounging about while the rest of us were working!* ◇ *They were lounging around the hotel pool.*
SYN **laze around, laze around sth; lie about/around, lie about/around sth**
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + prep

louse /laʊs/

ˌlouse sth ˈup (*slang*) to spoil or ruin sth: *He loused up my promotion chances.*
SYN **mess sth up** (*BrE*)
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

luck /lʌk/

ˌluck ˈinto sth (*AmE, informal*) to get sth you want by chance: *I lucked into some free tickets.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌluck ˈout (*AmE, informal*) to be very lucky: *We lucked out in a big way.* ◇ *We really lucked out with the weather.*
Ⓖ v + adv

lug /lʌg/ (**-gg-**)

ˌlug sth aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌlug sth aˈbout, ˌlug sth ˈround**) **(with you)** (*informal*) to carry or pull sth large, awkward or heavy from one place to another, or everywhere you go: *Can I leave my bag somewhere? It's very heavy to lug around.*
SYN **carry sth around (with you)** (*more formal*), **cart sth around (with you)**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

lull /lʌl/

ˌlull sb ˈinto sth; ˌlull sb ˈinto doing sth to make sb feel confident and relaxed, especially so that they do not expect it when sth bad happens: *Don't let success in the test lull you into thinking you do not need to work hard.* ◇ *His calm manner* ***lulled me into a false sense of security*** (: made me feel safe with him when I was not).
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

lumber /ˈlʌmbə(r)/

be/get ˈlumbered with sb/sth (*BrE, informal*) to give sb a responsibility or a problem that they do not want and cannot get rid of: *I'm sorry you've been lumbered with driving me home.* ◇ *The movie was about sb who sees a murder and then gets lumbered with the dead man's child.*
Ⓖ be/get + v + prep

lump /lʌmp/

ˌlump A and B toˈgether; ˈlump A with B; ˈlump A in with B (*informal*) to put or consider two or more people or things together in the same group: *A large number of plants are lumped together under the name of 'herbs'.* ◇ *You can't lump the elderly and the disabled together.* ◇ *You can't lump the elderly with the disabled.*
NOTE **Lump sb/sth together** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

lust /lʌst/

ˈlust after sb (*often disapproving*) to feel a strong sexual desire for sb
NOTE **Lust after sb** can be used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + prep

ˈlust after/for sth to have a strong desire to possess or have sth: *She was lusting after/for revenge.*
NOTE **Lust after/for sth** can be used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + prep

luxuriate /lʌgˈʒʊərieɪt; *AmE* -ˈʒʊr-/

luˈxuriate in sth (*formal*) to take great pleasure in sth that is very pleasant and relaxing: *I luxuriated in a long, hot bath.*
Ⓖ v + prep

Mm

magic /ˈmædʒɪk/ (**-ck-**)

ˌmagic sb/sth aˈway/ˈup (*BrE*) to use magic to make sb/sth disappear or appear; to make sb/sth disappear or appear so quickly or suddenly that it seems as if you have used magic: *I wish my problems could be just magicked away.* ◇ *Sarah magicked up a wonderful meal in a very short time.*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

mail /meɪl/

ˌmail sth ˈoff (to sb) to send sth to sb by post/mail: *I mailed off an application the next day.*
OBJ **letter**, **package** SYN **post sth off** (*BrE*), **send sth off (to sb)**
NOTE You can also use **mail a letter**, etc., but this often refers to the action of putting the letter in the mailbox: *How much does it cost to mail a letter in Italy?*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌmail sth ˈout to send sth to a lot of different people or places at the same time: *Catalogues will be mailed out next week.*
SYN **send sth out**
NOTE **Mail sth** can also be used with this meaning.
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

major /ˈmeɪdʒə(r)/

ˈmajor in sth (*AmE*) to study sth as your main subject at a university or college; to get a degree in that subject: *He majored in chemistry.*
G v + prep

make /meɪk/ (**made**, **made** /meɪd/)

~ away with
~ for
~ into
~ of
~ off
~ out
181 ~ over
~ over to
~ towards
~ up
~ up for
182 ~ up to

ˌmake aˈway with sth (*informal*) to steal sth and take it away with you: *Thieves made away with a computer and two televisions.*
→ *see also* MAKE OFF (WITH STH)
G v + adv + prep

ˈmake for sb/sth to move in the direction of sb/sth: *He jumped up and made for the door.* ◇ *She made straight for me.*
SYN **head for/towards sth**
G v + prep

ˈmake for sth (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to help to make sth possible; to produce a particular result: *The two-hour journey to work makes for a long day.* ◇ *The large print makes for easier reading.*
G v + prep

ˈmake sb/sth into sth to change sb/sth into sth: *They made the extra bedroom into a bathroom.* ◇ *You're trying to make her into something she isn't.* ◇ *Their story is being made into a movie.*
SYN **turn sb/sth into sth**
G v + n/pron + prep

ˈmake sth of sb/sth to have an impression or an understanding of sb/sth: ***What did you make of** the play?* ◇ *I never knew quite **what to make of** Nick.* ◇ *The information we have is so confused, it's hard to make anything of it.*
G v + n/pron + prep

ˌmake ˈoff (with sth) (*informal*) to hurry or rush away, especially when sb is trying to escape or has stolen sth: *The youths made off in a stolen car.* ◇ *Two boys made off with our bags.*
→ *see also* MAKE AWAY WITH STH
G v + adv

ˌmake ˈout (*informal*) **1** used to ask sb how they have managed or survived in a particular situation: ***How are you making out** in your new home?* ◇ *'Did you make out all right in the interview?' 'Yes, fine.'* **2** (**with sb**) (*AmE*) to kiss sb: *I saw her making out with Billy.*
G v + adv

ˌmake ˈout (that …), **ˌmake sb/sth/yourself ˈout to be …** to claim that sth is true that may not be; to try to make people believe sth: *She made out (that) she was earning a fortune.* ◇ *Things aren't as bad as he makes out.* ◇ *The brochure made the place out to be a quiet resort.* ◇ *He makes himself out to be a big shot in the city.* ◇ *The hotel wasn't quite what it was made out to be* (= it was not as good as the brochure said it was).
G v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv + to inf

ˌmake sb/sth ˈout 1 to manage to see sb/sth or read sth: *I could just make out the shape of a house in the darkness.* ◇ *Can you make out his handwriting?* ◇ *She could just make out the sound of distant voices.* ◇ *I couldn't make out what he was saying.* **2** (*used in negative sentences and questions*) to understand sb/sth; to see the reasons why sth happens or why sb behaves in the way that they do: *She couldn't make out the expression on his face as he spoke.* ◇ *I can't make her out at all.* ◇ *He couldn't make out what was going on.* ◇ *You need to apply for a permit, **as far as I can make out**.* ◇ *How do you make that out* (= how did you reach that conclusion)? NOTE **Make sb/sth out** cannot be used in the passive in this meaning.
G **1** v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)
2 v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌmake sth ˈout to write out or complete a form or document: *He made out a cheque for £100.* ◇ *Who shall I make the cheque out to* (= whose name shall I write on it)? ◇ *Shall I make the invoice out to the company?* ◇ *Would you make out a list for me of everyone who's coming?*
OBJ **cheque**, **list**
NOTE In informal spoken language **make sb out sth** can also be used: *I'll make you out a list.*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌmake sb/sth ˈover (*informal, especially AmE*) to change sb/sth to give them/it a new appearance; to change sth to give it a new use: *They decided to make over the whole house when they moved in.*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈmakeover** *n* the process of improving the appearance of a person or a place: *She won a complete makeover* (= new clothes, hairstyle, etc.) *in a competition.*

ˌmake sth ˈover to sb to legally give sth you own to sb else: *He made his estate over to his eldest son.* ◇ *The government has made a lot of its power over to the regions.* ◇ *The house was made over to the charity three years ago.*
OBJ **estate**, **money**
G v + n/pron + adv + prep ◆ v + adv + n + prep

ˈmake towards sb/sth to go in the direction of sb/sth: *I saw them making towards the exit.*
G v + prep

ˌmake ˈup; **ˌmake sb/sth ˈup**; **ˌmake yourself ˈup** (*BrE*) to put substances on your/sb's eyes, lips and face to make them or yourself attractive or to prepare for an appearance in the theatre, on television, etc: *It takes her an hour to make up before going on stage.* ◇ *She spends ages making herself up.* ◇ *The children had been made up to look like clowns.*
G v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **ˌmade-ˈup** *adj* wearing coloured substances on the face: *a heavily made-up face* ◇ *She's always carefully made-up.*
→ *see also* MADE-UP at MAKE STH UP
▸ **ˈmake-up** *n* [U] substances that people put on their eyes, lips and face to make themselves more attractive, or that actors, etc. use: *to put on your make-up* ◇ *a make-up bag*
→ *see also* MAKE-UP at MAKE STH UP

ˌmake ˈup; **ˌmake it ˈup (with sb)** (*BrE*) to end a quarrel or a dispute with sb: *Let's **kiss and make up**.* ◇ *He's made it up with his parents.*
G v + adv ◆ v + it + adv

ˌmake sth ˈup 1 to invent sth, often in order to deceive sb: *He was making up stories for the children.* ◇ *She made up an excuse for being late.* ◇ *Did you think I was making it all up?* OBJ **story**, **excuse** NOTE It is much more common to say **make up** a story than **invent** a story. **2 ˌmake ˈup sth** to form a particular part of sth: *Rice makes up a large part of their diet.* ◇ *Women make up 55% of the student population.* SYN **account for sth**; **constitute sth** (*formal*) **3 ˌmake ˈup sth**, **ˌmake it/them ˈup** to put sth together from several different things: *the cultures and races that make up the nation* ◇ *The course **is made up of** five modules.* SYN **constitute sth**; **be composed of sth** (*formal*) NOTE A noun must always follow **up**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **up**. → *see also* CONSIST OF STH/SB, CONSIST OF DOING STH **4** to complete sth, especially a number or an amount: *We need one more player to make up a team.* **5** to replace sth that has been lost: *We need to make up lost time.* ◇ *He was late for work but he made the time up the following day.* **6** to prepare sth; to make sth ready to use: *The pharmacist made up the prescription* (= the medicine). ◇ *She made up a basket of food for the picnic.* ◇ *The bed's already made up.* NOTE In informal spoken language **make sb up sth** is also used: *Can you make us up a packed lunch?*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
2 v + adv + n
3 v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv
IDM **make up your ˈmind** to decide sth: *I like both dresses — I can't make up my mind.* ◇ *Have you made up your minds where to go for your honeymoon?* ◇ *You'll never persuade him to stay — his mind's made up* (= he has definitely decided to go). ◇ *Come on — it's make your mind up time!*
▸ **made-ˈup** *adj* invented; not true or real: *It was a true story, not a made-up one.*
→ *see also* MADE-UP at MAKE UP, MAKE SB/STH UP, MAKE YOURSELF UP
▸ **ˈmake-up** *n* **1** the different things, people, qualities, etc. that combine to form something: *Aggression is part of our genetic make-up.* ◇ *The country has a complicated ethnic make-up.* **2** (*AmE*) a school test that you were not present for and that you take later: *The make-up will be on Friday.* ◇ *a make-up test*
→ *see also* MAKE-UP at MAKE UP, MAKE SB/STH UP, MAKE YOURSELF UP

ˌmake ˈup for sth; **ˌmake ˈup for doing sth** to do or provide sth good to balance or reduce the effects of sth bad: *I bought myself a new dress to make up for not getting the job.* ◇ *After two years in prison he's now **making up for lost time*** (= doing the things he was not able to do while he was in prison).
SYN **compensate (for sth)** (*more formal*)
G v + adv + prep

ˌmake ˈup for sth; **ˌmake it ˈup to sb** (*informal*) to do sth good for sb because you have treated them badly or because they have done sth good for you: *An apology won't make up for the way you've behaved.* ◇ *He said he was sorry and promised to make it up to her.* ◇ *You've done me a real favour — I don't know how to make it up to you.*
◆ v + adv + prep • v + it + adv + prep

ˌmake ˈup to sb (*BrE, informal, disapproving*) to be pleasant to sb in order to get an advantage for yourself: *He's always making up to the boss.*
SYN **kiss up to sb** (*AmE*), **suck up to sb**
◆ v + adv + prep

map /mæp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌmap sth ˈout to plan or arrange sth in detail: *I've mapped out a route for you.* ◇ *She felt as though her future had been mapped out for her.*
OBJ **future, route, strategy, plan**
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

march /mɑːtʃ; *AmE* mɑːrtʃ/

ˌmarch ˈon 1 to continue marching; to continue walking quickly: *I tried to speak to her but she just marched on.* **2** to move on or pass quickly: *Time marched on and we still hadn't finished.*
SUBJ **time**
◆ v + adv

ˈmarch on sth to march to a place in order to attack it or make a protest: *Demonstrators marched on the American embassy.*
◆ v + prep

ˌmarch ˈpast; **ˌmarch ˈpast sb/sth** (of soldiers) to march past an important person or building: *At 11 o'clock the army began to march past.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep
▸ **ˈmarch past** *n* a ceremony in which soldiers formally march past an important person, etc.

mark /mɑːk; *AmE* mɑːrk/

ˌmark sb/sth ˈdown to reduce the marks given to sb in an examination, etc: *She was marked down for poor spelling.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌmark sth ˈdown 1 to reduce the price of sth: *All goods have been marked down by 15%.* SYN **reduce sth 2** to write something down; to make a note of something for future action: *The teacher had marked me down as absent.* ◇ *The council had the old square marked down for new development.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈmarkdown** *n* a reduction in price: *a markdown of 12%*

ˌmark sb ˈdown as sth (*BrE*) to consider sb a particular type of person: *I had him marked down as a promising player from the start.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌmark sb/sth ˈoff (*BrE*) = MARK SB/STH OUT

ˌmark sth ˈoff 1 to separate sth by marking a line between it and sth else: *We've marked the playing area off with a white line.* **2** to write or draw a mark beside a name or an item on a list, for example, for a particular reason: *The students I want to see are marked off on the list.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌmark sb/sth ˈout (*BrE also* **ˌmark sb/sth ˈoff** *less frequent*) to make sb or sth different from other people or things: *There was something about her which marked her out from the other students.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌmark sth ˈout to draw lines to show the edges of sth: *She marked out a circle on the ground.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌmark sth ˈup 1 to increase the price of sth: *Shares were marked up by 8%.* **2** to mark or correct a text: *The text had already been marked up with corrections* (= for printing).
NOTE **Mark sth up** is often used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈmark-up** *n* [usually sing.] the difference between the cost of producing sth and the price it is sold at

marry /ˈmæri/ (**marries, marrying, married, married**)

ˌmarry beˈneath you/yourself to marry sb who belongs to a lower social class than your own: *She thought her son was marrying beneath him.*
◆ v + prep + pron

ˌmarry ˈinto sth to become a part of a family or a group because you have married sb who belongs to it: *She married into a wealthy family.*
OBJ **family, aristocracy**
◆ v + prep

ˌmarry sb ˈoff (**to sb**) (*disapproving*) to get rid of a daughter or a son by finding a husband or wife for them: *He had married his daughter off to a man twice her age.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌmarry ˈup; **ˌmarry sth ˈup** (**with sth**) (*BrE*) **1** to join up or connect successfully; to make two things or two parts do this: *The two halves of the structure didn't marry up.* ◇ *He couldn't marry up the two parts of the lock.* **2** to match; to make two things match: *The two versions of the story don't quite marry up.* ◇ *The lawyers couldn't marry up her story with the facts.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

STUDY PAGES

Tips on learning phrasal verbs	S2–4
Phrasal verb or single word?	S5
Are you a natural born student?	S6–7
Sport	S8–9
Computers	S10
Environmental problems	S11
Phrasal verbs in newspapers	S12
Phrasal verbs in business	S13
Phrasal verbs in informal language	S14–15
Using phrasal verbs in writing	S16–17
Using phrasal verbs in the passive	S18–19
New phrasal verbs	S20–21
The most common phrasal verbs	S22–25
Test yourself	S26

S2–4 Tips on Learning Phrasal Verbs

Phrasal verbs

Sometimes when you meet a multi-word verb, you can understand the meaning if you understand the verb and particle individually. For example, one meaning of ***put down*** is to place something somewhere: *Jack **put** the books **down** on the table.* But what does it mean in the following sentence? *She's always **putting** people **down**.* It does not mean that she places people somewhere, but that she is always criticizing them. When you see a verb followed by a particle but you cannot understand the meaning in the context from the meaning of the verb and the particle, you have found an idiomatic phrasal verb.

If you find other combinations of verbs and particles which seem to have a different meaning from the verb used on its own, this is likely to be a type of phrasal verb too. Verbs which are always followed by the same particle are another type. (For more information on the types of phrasal verbs found in this dictionary, look at page vi).

It is useful to learn these combinations of verbs and particles as a chunk of language. It is also essential to learn the context the verb usually appears in. For example, **put down** in the sense of *criticize* is used with a person or people as the object.

Recording Phrasal Verbs

The first thing you need to do is to find ways of recording the phrasal verbs you meet. It is a good idea to have a separate section for them in your vocabulary book. You should record the verb, its meaning and an example sentence to help you remember the context. Look at the example in the box.

verb	*meaning*
drop off	*to fall asleep, often when you don't intend to*
example:	*He usually drops off in front of the television.*
mess around	*to do unimportant things rather than e.g. your work*
example:	*He failed his exams because he was messing around instead of studying.*

You could also record a translation in your own language but you must make sure the context is the same.

The position of objects

If the verb has an object, it is useful to record the possible positions of the object. In this dictionary you will find this information about each verb after the definitions and examples. You can record the information as it is given in the dictionary, or by putting examples in your notebook.

try out	*to test something* ***v+n/pron+adv, v+adv+n***
examples:	*She tried out the new recipe on her children.* *She tried the new recipe out on her children.*

Or you could record the verb as: **try sth out, try out sth** Remember that when the object is a pronoun, it must come between the verb and the particle: *She **tried it out** on the children.*

Collocations

Many phrasal verbs are typically used with particular nouns. It is a good idea to record these. This will help you with context and accuracy, e.g.

to find out information
to work out a solution
to phase in changes
to make up a story

to play down a problem or the dangers of something
to fill in a document or form
to break off negotiations or formal talks
to butt in on a conversation

You can use the common subjects or objects given in the dictionary to help you do this.

Organizing Phrasal Verbs

When you record the verbs there are ways of organizing them that may make them easier to remember.

a Organizing by particles

The particles which appear with phrasal verbs often have a general meaning of their own, which can help you to understand the meaning of the whole verb. For example, one meaning of the particle *over* is 'considering, thinking about or examining' and this can help you to understand verbs like *look over, talk over, go over, think over, read over*. The particle *up* is the most common particle with phrasal verbs but it has several meanings e.g. 'increasing', 'improving', 'preparing', 'completing and finishing'. Therefore, you should try and record verbs under all these separate meanings. Look at the examples for the particle *into* above:

into	
entering:	*break into, get into, check into, crowd into*
changing:	*grow into, turn into, make into*
persuading:	*talk into, pull into, draw into*

b Organizing by meaning groups

Sometimes it can help you to remember verbs if you record them in meaning (or semantic) groups. This is because these verbs often appear together in the same context, for example 'feelings', 'travel', 'crime'. This means that when you need to talk or write about a particular situation you will have all the verbs you may need together. For example:

Feelings:	*to get carried away; to open up; to fall out; to fall for; to get on with*
Travel:	*to take off; to set off; to check in; to touch down; to stop over*
Crime:	*to get away with; to break into; to take in; to track down*

c Organizing by opposites

turn up/turn down
break up/get together

switch on/switch off
go away/come back

pass out/come round
bring forward/put back

d Organizing by different meanings and patterns for the same verb

For example: make up

to make up – to put on make-up (lipstick, eye-shadow, etc)
to make something up – to invent a story
to make up with somebody – to become friends again after an argument
to make up something – to form or compose a thing
to make up your mind – to decide from a number of possibilities

e Organizing three-word verbs

You may want to record together the verbs that are followed by an adverb and a preposition. For example:

to cut back on
to feel up to
to run out of
to catch up on
to come in for
to get on with
to go along with
to get round to
to look forward to
to stand in for
to look back on
to take over from

NB However you organize your verbs, it is essential that you record them in the same way, that is with their meaning and context.

Learning Phrasal Verbs

These are some ideas for self-study that may help you to learn and remember phrasal verbs.

i Try to read in English, especially informal writing such as tabloid newspapers and novels, and underline all the phrasal verbs you find. Check their meaning in your dictionary and make a note in your vocabulary book as suggested above.

ii Learn the verbs in organized groups (as suggested on p S22–25) rather than randomly. Constantly look back through your vocabulary book – familiarity and repetition help you to learn more effectively.

iii Think of a particle and then try and list the different 'meanings' that the particle has. When you have done this, see how many verbs you can list under each meaning. You can also do this exercise with a friend. If you can learn the meanings of the particles, it will help you to understand new verbs you come across. The Guide to Particles at the back of the dictionary will help you with this.

iv Look at the verbs you have recorded in meaning groups. Try to learn all the verbs, then in your head or in writing, make up a story using as many of the verbs as possible. These 'stories' will help you to remember the context for the verbs. Try this with a friend. Tell each other stories and correct each other if necessary.

v Write down ten example sentences of phrasal verbs that you want to learn. Then on another piece of paper write down a translation in your own language. Underline the verb in your language. One week later, take out your translated sentences. Look at the underlined verb and try to remember what the phrasal verb equivalent is in English. This will help you to 'think' in phrasal verbs, rather than using a more formal translation from your language.

S5 Phrasal Verb or Single Word?

Phrasal verbs are often the usual way of expressing something in everyday language. A single word which means the same is often more formal. Look at this description of an excursion from a printed brochure:

Day 4 Temple Tour

The coach will depart at 09.00. Leaving the city, it will ascend the mountain passes to reach the temple at 10.30. A local guide will conduct the tour and will answer any questions that arise. Visitors will not be admitted unless they are wearing suitable clothing, and will be expected to remove their shoes before entering the temple. The group will return via the 'Lost Valley', where lunch will be provided for those who have requested it.

Now look at this letter, which Penny wrote to her friend when she got back from her holiday. In this letter the words that are underlined in the brochure text would be too formal. Use a form of one of each of the phrasal verbs in the box to fill the gaps in her letter:

ask for come back
come up get to
go in go up lay on
let in set off
show round take off

For me, the highlight of the whole holiday was the trip to the temple. We ______ at nine in the morning and were soon ______ some hair-raisingly steep roads. We ______ the temple about half ten. We had to wear long-sleeved tops and long trousers or they wouldn't have ______ us ______. Of course, we had to ______ our shoes ______ before we ______ the temple, too. A local guide ______ us ______, which was good, because lots of questions ______ about how we were supposed to behave, and about the history of the place. The temple itself was absolutely breathtaking, but that wasn't the best thing because we ______ through what they call the 'Lost Valley'. Lunch was ______ for the people who'd ______ it, but we'd taken a packed lunch with us and we agreed that it was the most spectacular picnic spot we'd ever seen!

Recording phrasal verbs

Here are some suggestions for your own vocabulary records.

Verb	position of pronoun/object	meaning	synonym/ translation	related noun
set off		start on a journey	depart (fml) (partire)	departure
go up	go up **sth**	climb	ascend (fml) (scendere)	ascent
take off	take **sth** off take off **sth**	when you are too hot you ~ your jumper	remove (fml) (togliere)	removal

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

S6–7 Are You a Natural Born Student?

Some people are born to study, others just think it's a bore. Here's a quiz for you to try to find which category you are in. First you'll need to complete the questions by choosing a verb from the box on the left to make a phrasal verb (you may need to change the form of the verb). The first one has been done for you. Then try the quiz. For each question tick the letter that best applies to you. The questions are written to someone who has finished school, so if you are still at school you will need to imagine the questions are in the present tense. You can check the completed questions on page 372 before you start the quiz.

mess
pick
keep
tell

1 At school
A did teachers always pick on you and ______ you off for no reason? ___
B did kids who ______ around in class annoy you? ___
C did you ever get ______ back for extra study? ___

put
get
put

2 When you are given an essay to do, do you
A ______ on with it straight away and finish it early? ___
B ______ off starting it until the last possible moment? ___
C do some work on it immediately then ______ it aside for a while? ___

hand
jot
plan
type
write

3 How do you go about writing the essay? Do you
A ______ down some notes then write it and ______ it in? ___
B do it in rough first, and then ______ it out neatly or ______ it up? ___
C ______ it out carefully then write and edit it? ___

beaver
get
sail
scrape

4 Do you
A work steadily and ______ through your exams? ___
B ______ through your exams despite ______ away all year? ___
C just do enough to ______ by? ___

rattle
go
check
hand
move

5 When you do an exam, do you
A ______ through it and ______ it in early? ___
B ______ over each question carefully before ______ on to the next one? ___
C answer all the questions then ______ through your answers? ___

read
come
look

6 If you're reading a newspaper article in English, do you reach for your English dictionary
A as soon as you ______ across a word you don't know? ___
B only to ______ up a word whose meaning you can't guess? ___
C only after you've ______ through the article once without a dictionary? ___

throw
sign
swot

7 Which of these methods is the best if you want to speak good English?
A ______ up for evening classes? ___
B ______ away your books and find someone to talk with in English? ___
C ______ up on vocabulary every night? ___

fall
get
write

8 When you had to stay off school when you were younger,
A did you study while you were sick in order not to ______ behind? ___
B were you just happy to have ______ out of lessons? ___
C did you borrow a friend's notes and ______ them up? ___

scribble
talk

9 When you had homework did you
A do it as well as you could? ___
B ______ it down as quickly as possible? ___
C ______ a friend into letting you copy theirs at the last minute? ___

read
come
work

10 When you had a week of exams coming up did you
A ______ out a revision timetable in plenty of time? ___
B ______ up the subject the night before each exam? ___
C just take it easy and hope easy questions ______ up? ___

switch
shout
come

11 If there's a quiz on TV do you
A ______ over to something more interesting? ___
B ______ out an answer quickly, even if you're not sure? ___
C get annoyed if the answer doesn't ______ to you quickly? ___

settle
chill
catch

12 What do you like to do on a long train journey?
A ______ out and gaze out of the window? ___
B buy a paper and ______ up on the news? ___
C ______ down with a good book? ___

Now check your score on page 372.

20–24 points:	You were born to study. You are the type of student teachers love. Remember to relax sometimes!
14–19 points:	You don't mind studying and you aren't frightened of exams, but sometimes you need a little push in the right direction.
9–13 points:	You can force yourself to study if you absolutely have to, but there are other things that you'd much rather be doing.
0–8 points:	Lazybones! Studying is as natural to you as breathing air is to a fish!

If you are working in class, discuss your answers to the quiz with other students and give each other advice about how to improve your study methods. For example: *'You should **look up** words you don't know in the dictionary.' 'You shouldn't have **messed around** in class'.*

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

S8–9 Sport

If you enjoy sport, you will meet many of the phrasal verbs that are used to describe different sports.

Here are three extracts from a sports bulletin. Complete the extracts with phrasal verbs, using either a verb from the box on the left or a particle from the box on the right in each gap. You will need to change the form of the verb in some cases. Use your dictionary to help you if you need to. The first one has been done for you.

bring
end
play
rule
send

Football, and tonight's match in the European Cup ended in controversy after Italy *came* ___back___ from 2–0 down to beat Spain. At 2–2, the Italian goalkeeper Alberti appeared to ________ *down* Rojas, the Spanish centre forward. As the Spanish players *appealed* ________ a penalty, the Italians ________ *on* and *broke* ________ to score. The Spanish captain Martín was then ______ ________ for arguing with the referee. Italy ________ *up* fortunate winners, but their goalkeeper *picked* ________ a hand injury and has been ________ *out* of the next two games.

away
back
for
off
up

catch
drop
hold
urge

The Tokyo marathon has been won by Takeshi Saito of Japan. ________ *on* by the home crowd, Saito *forged* ________ after just 5 kilometres and built up a 2-minute lead. The chasing runners did not *give* _____, and gradually reduced the lead. The hot weather and the fast pace caused several leading athletes to ________ *out*. Saito's recent training in the Sahara desert *paid* _____ as he _____ *off* the strong challenge of the Kenyan Daniel Nyanga, who ________ *up* with 5 kilometres to go, then *fell* _____ in the final kilometre.

ahead
back
off
up

go
hold
knock
pick
settle
take
come

Tennis, and the unseeded Sofia Adamou of Greece has beaten Russia's Irena Markova in three sets to _____ _____ to the final of the French Open. Adamou said afterwards, "I've never _____ *up* _____ such a tough opponent. Before I came here I thought I'd get ________ *out* in the first round, but now I've got a chance of winning." Adamou, who only ________ _____ the sport four years ago, will _____ *up* a cheque for $100,000. The loser will have to ________ *for* just $50,000 !

against
through
up

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

Further practice

Now cover the left-hand page and match the definitions on the left with the phrasal verbs from the extracts on the right. One has been done for you as an example.

Extract 1	
1 *to reach a situation that you did not expect to be in*	a come back
2 to continue to play	b bring sb down
3 to return or recover	c *end up*
4 to make it impossible for somebody to do something	d play on
5 to escape from somebody who is keeping you somewhere	e break away
6 to get sth	f send sb off
7 to make somebody leave the field because they have broken the rules	g appeal for sth
8 to make somebody fall to the ground	h pick sth up
9 to make an urgent request for sth	i rule sb out of sth

Extracts 2 and 3	
1 to make progress quickly	a urge sb on
2 to stop taking part in an activity	b forge ahead
3 to defeat a person or a team so that they cannot continue in the competition	c give up
4 to encourage somebody	d drop out
5 to fail to stay with people at the front in a race	e pay off
6 to start to do a new activity	f hold sth off
7 to accept something that is not quite what you wanted	g catch up
8 to reach somebody ahead of you by going faster than them	h fall back
9 to stop trying to do something	i go through
10 to face somebody or something difficult	j come up against sb/sth
11 to resist an attack by an opponent	k knock sb out
12 to be successful and bring the results that you want	l take sth up
13 to pass to the next stage of a competition	m pick sth up
14 to obtain or win sth	n settle for sth

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

S10 Computers

Have you noticed how many phrasal verbs are used in computing? Try this crossword to see how many you know. Use the dictionary to help you if you need to.
Use a verb from the top box and a particle from the lower box to complete each sentence. The missing word(s) can be a verb, an adjective or a noun. The solid lines in the crossword show the divisions between words.

switch hack type back scan boot shut
print pull pop go log scroll add click

down out on
up in in down
on down on into
up down up in

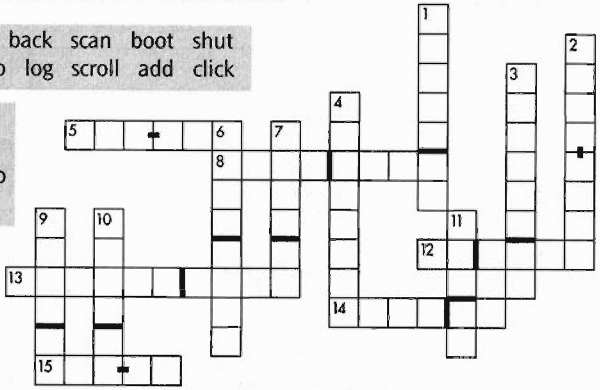

Down

1 __________ the link below to visit our website.
2 Select 'options' from the __________ menu.
3 The printer didn't work because I'd forgotten to __________ it ____!
4 I stuck a __________ of the email on the wall.
6 Close all programs before you __________ your computer.
7 You can __________ your photos and email them to friends.
9 __________ vital documents on floppy disk to avoid losing them if your system crashes.
10 The computer sometimes takes ages to __________ when I turn it on.
11 You'll need a password to ______

Across

5 You can download various __________s that allow your existing software to do even more things.
8 A teenager managed to __________ the bank's main database.
12 I hope the computer doesn't __________ again or I'll never finish this work.
13 __________ the page until you find the item you want.
14 __________ your password and press 'enter'.
15 If you click on the right mouse button a __________ menu will appear.

The language used to talk about computers is often quite informal. Look out for phrasal verbs used in a figurative or creative way, such as '*crank up* a search engine' (= start it working) or '*wander around* the web'; and keep an eye out for invented combinations, such as '*browsing off*' (= starting to browse).

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

S11 Environmental Problems

Phrasal verbs are not necessarily informal. The ones on this page, for example, could appear in a text book or a magazine article on the environment.
Use your environmental knowledge and your phrasal verb dictionary to help you complete this exercise. Match the heads and tails of the sentences, then write the completed sentences in a logical order under the appropriate heading. The first one has been done for you.

The algae *uses*	up	.
Temperatures on earth *go*	through	**the soil and end up in rivers and lakes.**
Algae *feeds*	off	**when fossil fuels are burned.**
Carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases are *given*	up	**the oxygen in the water, and fish die.**
Nitrates from fertilizers *soak*	up	**heat that should escape into space.**
Greenhouse gases *soak*	on	**the nitrates and multiplies uncontrollably.**

The Greenhouse Effect

1 *Carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases are given off when fossil fuels are burned.*
2 ______________________________
3 ______________________________

Algae

1 ______________________________
2 ______________________________
3 ______________________________

Some species of animals and plants lose their habitat and *die*	down	.
Less carbon dioxide is *soaked*	into	**desert.**
Some areas *turn*	up	**by trees, which adds to global warming.**
Too many trees are burnt or *cut*	out	.

Deforestation

1 ______________________________
2 ______________________________
3 ______________________________
4 ______________________________

If you are studying for an exam and the environment is a topic you need to know, you may find it useful to record these phrasal verbs together in your vocabulary notebook. Add a definition and an example. Use the dictionary to help you record some information about the grammar of the verbs.

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

S12 Phrasal Verbs in Newspapers

Some phrasal verbs are used more commonly in newspapers, etc. than in other kinds of writing. Look at these headlines and make sure that you understand the phrasal verbs in them.

a Manager steps down after cup disaster

b UNIONS TAKE ON MANAGEMENT OVER NEW SHIFTS

c *President aims to win back voters*

d *PRESIDENT FLIES IN FOR TALKS*

e **HOSTILITIES BREAK OUT IN DISPUTED TERRITORIES**

f DEMOCRATS CALL FOR TOUGHER SENTENCING

g ROBBINS BOWS OUT AFTER 10 YEARS ON COUNCIL

h GOVERNMENT CLIMBS DOWN OVER NEW ROAD

i **WAR OF NERVES PLAYED OUT ON HOSTAGE PLANE**

j **INFLATION SHOOTS UP**

k *Stars whisked away to honeymoon hideaway*

l *United Romp Ahead*

Try to guess what the stories might be about. If you are working in class, discuss your ideas with a partner. Then answer the questions below to match the headlines with the subject of the article that they go with.

1 Which headline goes with an article about somebody travelling to an important meeting?
2 Which reports that somebody was taken to a secret destination?
3 Which two headlines talk about somebody resigning?
4 Which headline refers to reports about the start of fighting?
5 Which article is about somebody trying to win an election?
6 Which is a report on rising prices?
7 Which comes from a sports report about a team winning a game easily?
8 Which headline is about people wanting new punishments?
9 Which article reports that somebody has changed their mind about something?
10 Which report is about events that are happening in a tense situation?

Further practice

On your own

When you see English newspapers, look for phrasal verbs in the headlines. In your vocabulary notebook, keep a record of any you find.

Class activity

Look through some English newspapers and find headlines containing phrasal verbs. Cut out the headlines with the articles. In groups, cut the headlines from your articles and mix them all up. Put the headlines and the articles in an envelope. Pass your envelope to another group. Their task is to try to match the headlines with the articles. Do the same for the headlines and articles in the envelope you receive.

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

S13 Phrasal Verbs in Business

The story of a company

Here is the outline history of Hall Motors. Fill in the missing particles and follow the rise and fall of this (fictional!) company. Use the phrasal verbs dictionary to help you.

1888 Frank Hall designs and builds the 'Hall safety cycle' in his back yard. The design really *catches* ______ and Hall soon has to *take* ______ five workers to help him produce bicycles.

1902 Hall, who now has a workforce of 50, *teams* ______ with his cousin Jack, a motor mechanic, and they build their first car. They *set* ______ 'Hall Motors' and *sell* ______ the bicycle side of the business.

1906 Hall Motors is the country's second biggest car manufacturer, *turning* ______ 20 cars a week.

1945 Frank Hall dies and his son Bill *takes* ______ the company.

1954 The company sees a market for a light 4-wheel drive vehicle, and *comes* ______ ______ the extremely successful 'Trail Ranger'.

1963 Hall Motors revolutionizes the design of the small car with the 'Townie'. Sales *take* ______ immediately, *bringing* ______ record profits.

1969 The company *buys* ______ its main rivals, Wallace Cars and Ryder-Pratt.

1974 Workers at the Leeds plant *walk* ______ in protest at the latest pay offer, *sparking* ______ several years of management-union unrest.

1987 The company just manages to avoid being *swallowed* ______ by American Motors, and announces healthy profits for the first time in many years. Thing seem to have *turned* ______ .

1992 Hall Motors' market share has been gradually *worn* ______ by cheaper foreign imports. With sales *falling* ______ as quickly as debts *mount* ______, the company seems set to *go* ______, but is *bailed* ______ by a last-minute government loan.

1999 As sales continue to decline, Europe Motors *takes* ______ the company, announcing that its aim is to break even within two years. After investing heavily in new models, Europe Motors is *caught* ______ as the value of the pound *shoots* ______, causing exports to plunge. The decision is taken to *wind* ______ Hall Motors.

2000 6000 workers are *laid* ______ as the last remaining Hall Motors plant *closes* ______.

Further practice

1 Sort the phrasal verbs above into three groups according to whether you feel their meaning is positive, negative or neutral.

+	–	+/–
catch on	*close down*	*team up*

2 Research and write 10 important dates in the history of a famous real company, using these and/or other phrasal verbs.

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

S14–15 Phrasal Verbs in Informal Language

Using this Dictionary

Phrasal verbs are especially common in informal language, but it is important to know whether a phrasal verb is informal or not to help you use it more appropriately.

- Look at the dictionary entry below and notice how information on the formality of the phrasal verb is given:

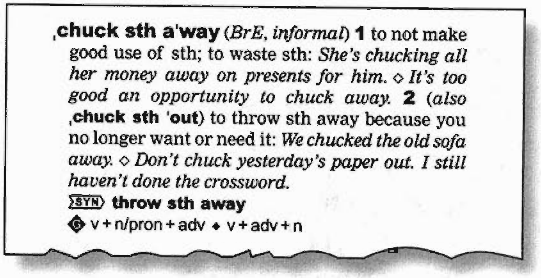

ˌchuck sth aˈway (*BrE, informal*) **1** to not make good use of sth; to waste sth: *She's chucking all her money away on presents for him.* ◇ *It's too good an opportunity to chuck away.* **2** (*also* **ˌchuck sth ˈout**) to throw sth away because you no longer want or need it: *We chucked the old sofa away.* ◇ *Don't chuck yesterday's paper out. I still haven't done the crossword.*
SYN **throw sth away**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

- Look up the following phrasal verbs in your dictionary and complete the table on the right.

a boot sb out
b provide for sth
c turn up
d barge into sb
e throw sth aside
f put sb down
g tune out
h attend to sb/sth

Formal	Informal	Neutral

Practice

- Read the following email from Helen to her friend Katy. Underline all the phrasal verbs that you can find. One has been done for you, there are 10 others:

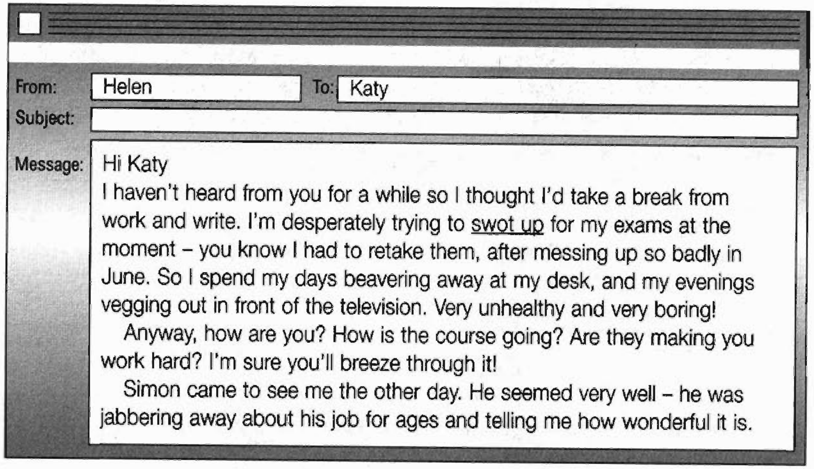

From: Helen
To: Katy
Subject:
Message:

Hi Katy
I haven't heard from you for a while so I thought I'd take a break from work and write. I'm desperately trying to swot up for my exams at the moment – you know I had to retake them, after messing up so badly in June. So I spend my days beavering away at my desk, and my evenings vegging out in front of the television. Very unhealthy and very boring!

Anyway, how are you? How is the course going? Are they making you work hard? I'm sure you'll breeze through it!

Simon came to see me the other day. He seemed very well – he was jabbering away about his job for ages and telling me how wonderful it is.

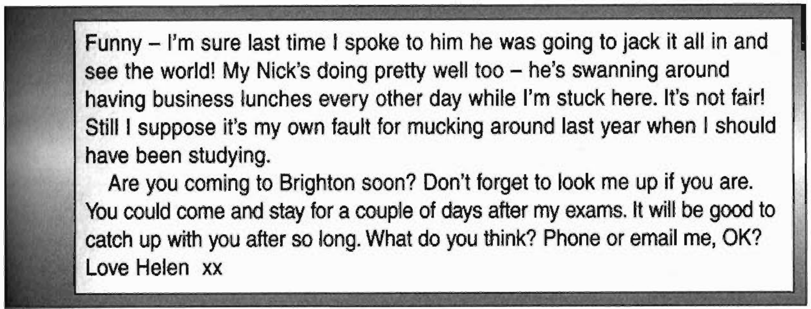

Funny – I'm sure last time I spoke to him he was going to jack it all in and see the world! My Nick's doing pretty well too – he's swanning around having business lunches every other day while I'm stuck here. It's not fair! Still I suppose it's my own fault for mucking around last year when I should have been studying.

Are you coming to Brighton soon? Don't forget to look me up if you are. You could come and stay for a couple of days after my exams. It will be good to catch up with you after so long. What do you think? Phone or email me, OK?
Love Helen xx

- Now write one of the phrasal verbs from the email next to the definitions below according to its meaning. One has been done for you.

a work very hard (at sth) ________
b study very hard, especially when you are preparing for an exam swot up
c go from one place to another feeling pleased with yourself ________
d speak or talk quickly in an excited way ________
e visit or contact sb when you are in the place where they live ________
f find out about things that have happened to somebody ________
g stop doing sth, especially your job ________
h succeed in sth very easily ________
i relax in a lazy way and do very little ________
j do sth very badly ________
k behave in a silly way, especially when you should be working or doing sth else ________

- Replace all the unnecessary information (in italics) with one phrasal verb from the box, remembering to change the verb into the correct form. The first one has been done for you.

a OK, level with you ~~*I'll tell you the situation in an honest way*~~. I'm afraid we're not able to accept your proposals at this time.
b Greg was all ready to do the bungee jump, but at the last moment he *decided not to do it because he was afraid*.
c We're going to *visit* the new bar in town *to see if it's any good*. Would you like to come?
d Dinner? I haven't had time to go the shops, but I guess I'll be able to *provide* something *quickly and without planning*.
e Our class was really behind the others, so we *did* the last three chapters *very quickly*.
f I don't like watching horror movies – they *make* me *feel* really *shocked and scared*.
g He's usually pretty quick, but it took him ages to *understand what I meant without being told directly*.
h As soon as I asked her about her family, she just *refused to speak because she didn't want to talk about it*.

freak out   cotton on   chicken out   ~~level with~~   check out   rustle up
whip through   clam up

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

S16–17 Using Phrasal Verbs in Writing

The following verbs are often used in essays and reports and are slightly more 'formal' than the majority of phrasal verbs. The verbs are listed below together with the context in which they typically appear in a piece of writing.

1	*refer to*	a particular subject
2	*report back*	to a person or committee about something
3	*enlarge upon*	a problem
4	*put forward*	a suggestion
5	*draw up*	a plan or proposal
6	*consist of*	several sections
7	*point out*	an important piece of information
8	*sum up*	the main points discussed
9	*write down*	the information
10	*file away*	the documents
11	*go through*	a list or plan
12	*set out*	the reasons why something should be done
13	*edit out*	any unnecessary information
14	*deal with*	a topic or idea
15	*account for*	why something happened

Exercise 1

Read the following extract from a report and replace the underlined words with the phrasal verbs listed below.

> This report [1]concerns the delivery services we wish to expand for our clients. Our market research company has already [2]given the information to the marketing department on their recent research. The main points of this information will be [3]given in a series of short reports for the committee to examine in their own time.
>
> The marketing department has now [4]made a plan of action for increasing our delivery service. The Managing Director has [5]looked at this carefully and given it his approval. Essentially it [6]presents three suggestions for discussion and [7]explains the reasons why we should consider a slow rather than a rapid expansion.
>
> This report summarizes those reasons and [8]is in three parts: *(a)* it [9]gives more details about the difficulties we have had with recruiting staff, *(b)* it [10]explains why our delivery service had problems last month, *(c)* it [11]briefly discusses the problems caused by rising inflation. ....

consists of
puts forward
enlarges upon
gone through
drawn up
reported back
summed up
refers to
accounts for
deals with
sets out

Exercise 2

Now write your own report using as many of the phrasal verbs above as possible. Imagine you have been studying English at a college in Britain and the Principal has asked you to write a short report explaining what you enjoyed about the course, discussing any problems you had and suggesting some improvements for next year.

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

Below is a short list of what you may have liked and another list of some problems. Remember to explain in the introduction what your report is about and to finish with your suggestions. There is a sample answer in the key (at the back of the dictionary).

Good points	**Problems**
■ enjoyed lessons	■ expensive cafeteria
■ helpful teachers	■ not enough books in library
■ meeting other students	■ boring trips and visits

Exercise 3

In the sentences below, choose the best verb to fill the gap.

1 This document ________ the brochures you were sent earlier this week.
a consists of b refers to c accounts for

2 It is important to ________ that our prices have been reduced.
a set out b sum up c point out

3 The director would like you to ________ the list carefully and check the figures.
a go through b draw up c deal with

4 The secretary reported that the papers had been ________ in the wrong order.
a filed away b accounted for c put forward

5 It is useful to ________ all the important points in a presentation.
a draw up b write down c edit out

6 It is essential to ________ the main points discussed in your report.
a put forward b file away c sum up

7 This afternoon the MD will ________ on our success in the new markets.
a sum up b write down c report back

8 The presentation will ________ the issue of customer complaints.
a deal with b account for c point out

Formal verbs

You will find many other verbs marked formal in this dictionary. Many of them have the pattern **v + n/pron + prep** and are often used in the passive. ***To ascribe sth to sb, to preface sth by/with sth, to refer sb/sth to sb/sth*** are examples of these. Other formal verbs are reflexive and have the pattern **v + pron + prep**. Examples are ***to address yourself to sth, to avail yourself of sth*** and ***to dissociate yourself from sth.***

You may not always recognize them as 'phrasal verbs', but they must always be used in these patterns. They are often used in business or in spoken or written news reports. If you are studying at university or college, you may meet them in academic textbooks or journals. If you meet verbs like this, keep a note of them, with their patterns and an example, in your vocabulary book.

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

S18–19 Using Phrasal Verbs in the Passive

Forming the passive

Notice the word order of the passive phrasal verbs:

Active	You'll need to write down the details.	= ***Verb** + **particle** + **Object***
	or Did you write the details down?	= ***Verb** + **Object** + **Particle***
Passive	The details will need to be written down. The details weren't written down correctly. = Have they been written down?	***Auxiliary verb 'to be'** + **Verb (Past Participle)** + **Particle.***

Transitive and intransitive verbs

Verbs can be used either without an object, (**intransitive**), for example ***sleep***:
I slept ~~the night~~. I slept for 8 hours.
or with an object, (**transitive**), for example ***read*** in the sentence:
She's reading the newspaper.

Combinations of verbs and particles can be used in the same way:
sit down (intransitive): *I sat down.*
put sth on (transitive): *I put on my coat. I put my coat on.*
rely on sb/sth (transitive): *You can rely on me.*

Exercise 1

Which of the following verbs + particles have an object and which do not?

1 He likes to stand out in the crowd.
2 I'm looking for a new job.
3 Turn off the TV if you don't want to watch it.
4 Our holiday plans fell through at the last minute.
5 I didn't get the job – they turned down my application.
6 Do you think the sun will come out this afternoon?

We can divide the **transitive** verbs + particles into two further groups:

- those where the verb can be separated from its particle (**separable**)
- those where the verb and particle must occur next to each other (**inseparable**)

In this dictionary, this information is shown in the grammar patterns following the verbs.
Sort sth out is separable:

✓ I'll **sort out** the accommodation. *v+adv+n*	✓ I'll **sort** the accommodation **out**. *v+n/pron+adv*

But ***jump at sth*** is inseparable:

✓ I'd **jump at** the chance to study abroad. *v+prep*	✗ I'd **jump** the chance **at** to study abroad.

Exercise 2

Now divide the verbs that have objects in the sentences above according to their grammar. Refer to the dictionary entries if you need help.

Separable	Inseparable

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

Exercise 3

The following sentences contain the same verbs, this time in the passive. Look at the table and then answer the question below.

✓ Passive possible	✗ Passive not possible
The television must **be turned off after** use. My application's **been turned down**.	Jobs have **to be looked for** very carefully.

Which type of verbs can generally be used in the passive?
Complete this general 'rule' using the words '*separable*' or '*inseparable*':

_________ phrasal verbs can generally be used in the passive, whereas _________ phrasal verbs cannot.

However, there are many exceptions!
The verbs in the following sentences are all **separable**.

✓ Passive possible	✗ Passive not possible
Can the whole chapter **be left out**? The top floor **is being made into** a separate flat.	My meaning just can't **be got across** no matter how I try. We **were sat down** by the manager in his office.

Notes in the dictionary tell you when you **cannot** use the passive with this type of verb.
The following sentences all contain **inseparable** verbs.

✓ Passive possible	✗ Passive not possible
That remark **wasn't called for**! He hates **being fussed over**. Can this section **be improved on**?	The noise will just have to **be put up with**, I'm afraid.

Notes in the dictionary tell you when you **can** use a passive with verbs of this type.

Exercise 4

Some phrasal verbs are often used in the passive. (Again, notes in the dictionary give you this information.) Choose one verb from the box and put it into the correct form to complete each sentence:

charge sb with
rip sb off
kick sb out
hear of sb
mix sb up
burn sth down

1 She's been _________ shoplifting.
2 If you carry on like this you'll be _________ of college.
3 The building was _________ in the riots.
4 No one knows where Jerry is. He hasn't been _________ since the summer.
5 The twins look so alike that they are often _________.
6 £10 for this? You've been _________!

When you look up a verb in the dictionary, look to see if there is a note about the passive.

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

S20–21 New Phrasal Verbs

Where do new phrasal verbs come from?

New phrasal verbs turn up in the language all the time, but where do they come from? One answer is of course that new inventions and activities appear and new names and verbs are invented to describe them. But in fact, they are not usually completely new verbs, but either new combinations of existing verbs and particles, or old phrases which have found new uses.

1 From literal meaning to figurative meaning.

Plough back originally meant to return a crop that you have grown to the soil. This was done to produce more. It is easy to see how this can change to being used about reinvesting profits in a business. Sometimes the connection is less obvious. An American student may **blow off** his or her classes (that is, not go to them) – perhaps because they seem as unimportant as a fly that you would blow off your face.

2 New opposites.

In the past we tended to **dress up** more for formal occasions, putting on special clothes and perhaps jewellery. Today, modern companies often try to foster a more creative and relaxed atmosphere by allowing staff to **dress down** once a week, that is, to wear more casual clothes.

3 New verbs from nouns or adjectives.

There are enormous possibilities for creating phrasal verbs because they don't have to be made from existing verbs. Nouns, too, can turn into verbs and be used with particles to make new phrasal verbs. These often come into the language first through American English where there seems to be more freedom for words to change grammatical class, or through informal spoken language. So from the noun **luck**, instead of 'getting lucky', we can **luck out** and cowards ('wimps', people who have no courage or 'bottle') might **wimp out** or **bottle out**.

4 Adding particles for emphasis.

Sometimes a simple verb can turn into a phrasal verb without any real change of meaning. We now often hear something like *'Professor Jones will **head up** an international team.'* where before we would have said that he will head the team, and it is difficult to see any reason for this change, except that the particle 'up' seems to strengthen the meaning of the verb.

Task A

Find phrasal verbs with **free**, **hype**, **tense**, **test** and **drown** that are similar to this.

New phrasal verbs in modern life.

Business and communication	Personal life	
fax out a document	work out in the gym	veg out with a pizza and a video
fire off an email	chill out and watch TV	
bump sb off the Internet	lighten up	pig out on junk food

You will find other new verbs on other study pages.

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

Being creative

In addition to forming new verbs in the ways we have looked at, it is also possible to form many other combinations of verbs and particles. Think, for example, of all the ways that movement can be described. Almost any verb of motion can team up with almost any particle. Because we can **go back** or **come back**, we can also **hurry back**, **amble back** or **tear back**. We can say '**I walked around** the town', so it's also possible to say '**I sauntered around**', or **wandered around**, or **strolled around**. If you are having a lazy day, perhaps you **sit around** at home. You might also **lie around** or **lounge around**. If we want to describe how somebody **came in**, did they **sneak in**, **burst in**, **creep in** or **storm in**? You can see how using combinations of verbs and particles in this way can make your speech and writing more interesting.

Task B

Combine a verb from the box on the left with a particle from a box on the right and make a verb that might describe one of these things that you might see when you are out. If you are working in class, see if your partner can guess which person or thing your verb is describing. Then write a sentence for each one.

a sports car
a boy with his leg in plaster
a train
a small child in a park
a teacher going home at the end of a long day
a butterfly
a bee
tourists visiting a palace
a group of boys going to school

flutter
steam
muck
run
hobble
buzz
flash
dash
hurry
wander

around
by
past
along

Conclusion

We live in a fast-changing world and new expressions to describe it can be coined faster even than dictionaries can record them! However, we don't need to **freak out** when we meet a new phrasal verb, because we are usually already familiar with one or both of the parts when we hear a new addition to English. (The Guide to the Particles at the back of the dictionary will give you more information on the way particles are used.) No need, then, to panic – just **lighten up** and **chill out**!

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

S22–25 The Most Common Phrasal Verbs

Combinations of verbs and particles are extremely common in English, especially in the spoken language. Many of these verbs appear to have a single-word equivalent (a synonym). However, often the single-word equivalent is not used in the same context or has a slightly different meaning. For example, it is often said that ***find out*** means the same as ***discover***, but in fact ***find out*** is generally used for facts and information, whereas ***discover*** can be used for something you are the first person to learn about, such as a place or scientific technique. It is therefore essential to learn the most frequently used phrasal verbs if you want to understand and speak English well. Here are some exercises to help you understand and learn the most common.

Particles

The following verbs are organized by their particle. You will find more about the meanings of the particles in the *Guide to the Particles* at the back of the dictionary.

Group A

Up

Match the item on the left with the item on the right.

(i) *increasing or improving:*

1 Many people
2 Students
3 Peter,
4 Children

a grow up so fast and soon leave home.
b bring up their children to be well-mannered.
c cheer up when their university exams are over.
d hurry up or we will miss the train.

(ii) *completing or finishing:*

1 Add up
2 Hang up
3 Give up
4 Wake up

a the phone – you've been talking for ages.
b early if you want to get to work on time.
c your expenses and give them to my secretary.
d chocolate if you want to get fit.

Down

Put the correct verb into the gaps below.

(i) *failing:* turn break let

1 ________ down	When your car ________ , it no longer works.
2 ________ somebody down	If somebody ________ , they don't do something that you were relying on them to do and you may feel disappointed.
3 ________ down	If you ________ an invitation, you don't accept it.

(ii) *movement :* bend keep lie put sit

1 Every day, at 8pm, we all ________ down to have dinner together.
2 If you don't want him to see you, you'd better ________ your head down.
3 That bag looks heavy! You can ________ it down over there.
4 The coach made us ________ down and touch our toes. It was quite difficult.
5 I'm so tired – I'm going to ________ down on the bed. Wake me up if I fall asleep.

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

Group B

Match the item on the left with the item on the right.

On

Continuing:

1 The professor
2 The customer
3 My boss
4 The problem

a went on for months until we resolved it.
b keeps on talking to me and interrupting my work.
c carried on talking even though the seminar had finished.
d held on for several minutes then put the phone down.

Off

Departing:

1 Get off
2 Go off
3 Run off
4 Set off

a early so you miss the traffic on the motorway.
b the bus at the next stop if you want the city centre.
c on holiday by yourself if you really want to relax.
d and play in the garden – you need some fresh air.

Group C

Put the correct verb into the gaps below.

In

Entering or arriving: break in check in come in let in

1 ________ in	When you ________ somewhere you enter a place, often somewhere familiar such as your home or when a friend invites you to their house.
2 ________ in	When you ________ , you register at a hotel or an airport desk.
3 ________ somebody in	When you ________ you open the door and allow them to come in.
4 ________ in	If someone ________ , they enter a building illegally.

NB ***Break into*** *and* ***check into*** mean the same as ***break in*** and ***check in*** but they must be followed by an object.

Out

Leaving: break come fall get

1 Some medical treatments can make your hair ________ out.
2 As I was ________ out of the car, I fell over.
3 Several prisoners have ________ out of jail.
4 As we ________ out of the hotel we saw the beach right in front of us.

Group D – verbs with an adverb and a preposition

Use the verbs to fill the gaps in the sentences below.

look forward to get on with hang on to run out of put up with

1 You should ____________ your baggage at the airport in case it gets stolen.
2 I've been really ____________ meeting your family.
3 Oh no, we've ____________ milk again – will you go to the shop and get some?
4 I don't know how you ____________ his temper – you must be very patient.
5 I ____________ my father very well – we always have a laugh together.

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

Meaning Groups

The following verbs are organized into meaning groups because certain verbs are typically used in particular situations.

Group 1

Daily Routine

Put the following phrasal verbs in the gaps in the text below. Remember to use the right tense.

wake up get off look after phone up set off have sth on
catch up get to come from meet up get back

I a__________ a small town outside London and when I was younger, most days I b__________ at about 7a.m., showered and had breakfast. Then, when I c__________ my coat __________ I used to d__________ for school. I got the bus and I would e__________ at the stop just before the school. I usually f__________ with my friends but often I was late so I would have to run to g__________ with them. We h__________ school before 9a.m. After a long day in school I used to i__________ home at about 4, and if my mother was at work I had to j__________ my little sister. Most evenings I would k__________ my best friend and we would chat for ages. I was very happy then.

Group 2

Business

The following is a speech by a Marketing Director to some managers.
Put the sentences from the speech into the correct order.

Good morning.

- **a** Then, when our Finance Director did the figures, he decided that it added up to too great an investment for us at this stage.
- **b** We were hoping that our meeting would lead to a partnership so that we too had access to these markets.
- **c** First of all, I'm sorry this meeting had to be put off until today but I was away in Germany last week.
- **d** I began my visit discussing this and dealing with the negotiations for a possible contract.
- **e** However, my visit was not a success – two important meetings were called off so I had no opportunity to speak to the Chief Executive.
- **f** I also gave out some leaflets to senior managers, which described our products.
- **g** I would, however, like to point out to you all that we will be visiting other companies in Europe next year and hope this will be more successful.
- **h** Now, as you know, the company I visited deals in stationery supplies and sells their products all over Europe.

Thank you.

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

Opposites

The following verbs are organized into pairs with their opposites. Match the phrase on the right with the phrase on the left.

1. If we set off early
2. You must stand up when the teacher arrives
3. Put the box down in the corner
4. You've been lying down all day
5. I decided to carry on with tennis
6. If you're too hot, take your jumper off

- **a** and put a T-shirt on.
- **b** – get up and do something.
- **c** we'll get back before dark.
- **d** – I'll get someone to pick it up and move it later.
- **e** – you can sit down when she has said hello.
- **f** and give up volleyball. It was too much to do both.

Multi-Meaning Verbs

The following verbs have more than one meaning. Complete the pairs of sentences with one of the verbs listed below.

catch up give up meet up pick up take off come out fall out

1 If you want to __________ you will have to run.
You will have to work hard to __________ with the other students.

2 That shampoo made my hair __________ in handfuls.
I hate to have arguments and __________ with my friends.

3 My little daughter always __________ her clothes by herself.
When the plane __________ we will be able to see the fields below.

4 I'm going to __________ smoking in the New Year.
I don't think the rebels will __________ their fight easily.

5 If she waits by the station, I'll __________ (her) in my car.
The cat was so light , I could __________ (it) with one hand.

6 The mark on my skirt wouldn't __________ even when I washed it.
We know that the stars __________ at night but we can't always see them.

7 Do you want to __________ for dinner after work?
I'm so surprised to __________ with you here – I haven't seen you for ages.

Further practice

You will find more meaning groups on the Are you a Natural Born Student, Sport, Computers, Environmental Problems, Phrasal Verbs in Newspapers, and Phrasal Verbs in Business study pages.

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

S26 Test Yourself

Exercise 1

These are all verbs that you have studied in the last four pages. Choose the best phrasal verb to fill the gaps in the sentences below.

1 I would love to be able to ______________ my children in the country.
a grow up b bring up c get up d wake up

2 I warned them to ______________ , otherwise they would hit their heads.
a put down b let down c bend down d lie down

3 The two boys ______________ to the building easily because there was no security.
a came in b broke in c put in d checked in

4 She was relieved to ______________ of the party – it was so hot in there.
a run out b come out c get out d break out

5 He will ______________ leaving the door open – it drives me mad!
a hold on b go on c keep on d carry on

6 We were so late, the plane nearly ______________ without us!
a went off b set off c took off d got off

7 He ______________ her difficult behaviour even though it made him angry.
a got on with b put up with c looked forward to d hung on to

8 I'm going to ask you to ______________ the problem because you know the background to it.
a deal with b point out c deal in d lead to

9 Give me your blouse and I'll see if the stain will ______________ .
a fall out b come out c get out d go out

Which meaning?

Exercise 2

List the following verbs under the meaning of their particle.

(i) grow up add up hang up bring up give up cheer up shut up
wake up hurry up

increasing or improving	**completing or finishing**
....	....
....	....

(ii) sit down let down lie down put down turn down keep down
break down bend down

failing	**movement**
....	....
....	....

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

---

marvel /ˈmɑːvl; *AmE* ˈmɑːrvl/ (-ll-, *AmE* -l-)

ˈmarvel at sth to be very surprised or impressed by sb/sth: *Everyone marvelled at his courage.* ◇ *Massimo marvelled at how quickly he had got used to life in Britain.*
SYN **wonder at sth**
◆ v + prep

masquerade /ˌmæskəˈreɪd; *BrE also* ˌmɑːsk-/

masqueˈrade as sb/sth to pretend to be sth that you are not: *commercial advertisers masquerading as private individuals* ◇ *The local paper is full of gossip masquerading as news.*
◆ v + prep

match /mætʃ/

ˈmatch sb/sth against/with sb/sth to make sb/sth compete with another person or thing: *Jobson will be matched against a far more experienced player.* ◇ *Match your skill against the experts in our weekly quiz.*
NOTE **Match sb/sth against sb/sth** is often used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˈmatch sth against sth to compare sth to sth else to see how the two things are similar or different: *We are able to match the details he gave us against the information held on the computer.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌmatch ˈup 1 (with sth) to be the same or similar: *Do their names match up with any in our database?* ◇ *The two statements don't match up.* SYN **tally (with sth) 2 (to sb/sth)** (*especially BrE*) (*usually used in negative sentences*) to be as good as or equal to sb/sth: *The movie didn't match up to my expectations.* ◇ *He knows what he wants and I just don't match up.* SYN **measure up (to sb/sth)**
◆ v + adv

ˌmatch sb/sth ˈup (with sb/sth) to find things or people that are suitable for each other or fit well with each other: *The agency matched me up with a suitable job.* ◇ *They were unable to match up his tissue type with any of the possible donors.*
NOTE **Match sb/sth (with sb/sth)** can be used with the same meaning.
◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˈmatch sb/sth with sb/sth = MATCH SB/STH AGAINST/WITH SB/STH

max /mæks/

ˌmax ˈout; ˌmax sth ˈout (*AmE, slang*) to reach the limit at which nothing more is possible: *The car maxed out at 180 mph.* ◇ *I just maxed out my credit card.*
◆ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

measure /ˈmeʒə(r)/

ˈmeasure sb/sth/yourself against sb/sth to compare sb/sth/yourself with somebody or something else: *The quality of the water is measured against EU standards.* ◇ *We have nothing to measure our performance against.* ◇ *She always measured herself against her sisters.* ◇ *I had no one to measure myself against.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌmeasure sth ˈoff to mark out a particular length on sth such as a piece of cloth: *She measured off two metres of cloth.*
◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌmeasure sth ˈout to measure the quantity of sth that you need from a larger amount: *He measured out the ingredients for the cake.*
◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌmeasure ˈup (to sb/sth) (*informal*) to be of a good enough standard: *The new assistant didn't measure up* (= he was not good enough to do the job), *so we had to replace him.* ◇ *The procedures don't measure up to today's standards.*
SYN **match up (to sb/sth)**
NOTE **Measure up** is often used in negative sentences and questions.
◆ v + adv

ˌmeasure ˈup (for sth), ˌmeasure sb/sth ˈup (for sth) (*especially BrE*) to find the exact size of sth or of sth that you need by measuring: *We need to measure up and decide where the furniture can go.* ◇ *They've come to measure up (the room) for the new carpet.* ◇ *He was being measured up for a suit.*
◆ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

meet /miːt/ (met, met /met/)

ˌmeet ˈup 1 (with sb) to meet sb by arrangement: *We're meeting up with Gary after work, if you want to come.* ◇ *Where shall we meet up?* **2 (with sb)** to meet sb by chance: *It was lucky we met up with them.* ◇ *I expect we'll meet up again some time.* **3 (with sth)** (of two or more roads, rivers, etc.) to join up: *The two paths meet up just below the summit.* ◇ *This road eventually meets up with the A40.* SYN **join up**
◆ v + adv

ˈmeet with sb to have a meeting with sb: *The Prime Minister met with other European leaders this morning.*
◆ v + prep

ˈmeet with sth (*formal*) **1** to experience sth unpleasant: *The chief witness met with an accident on his way to the court.* ◇ *Our attempts to save her met with failure.* OBJ **an accident, fate** **2** to be received or treated by sb in a particular

way: *The proposal met with considerable opposition.* ◇ *My explanation met with a blank stare.*
OBJ **opposition, approval, hostility, resistance**
NOTE **Meet with sth** is mainly used in written English.
◆ v + prep

ˈmeet sth with sth to react to sth in a particular way, especially a bad or negative way: *The proposal was met with anger and dismay.*
NOTE **Meet sth with sth** is usually used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

mellow /ˈmeləʊ; *AmE* -loʊ/

ˌmellow ˈout (*informal, especially AmE*) to relax and do very little: *We could just put on some music and mellow out.*
SYN **chill out**
◆ v + adv

ˌmellow sb ˈout (*informal, especially AmE*) to make sb more relaxed: *A week on the beach should mellow him out.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

melt /melt/

ˌmelt aˈway; ˌmelt sth aˈway to disappear gradually; to make sth disappear gradually: *His anger melted away.* ◇ *The crowd dispersed, melting away into the side streets.* ◇ *His smile melted away all the tension.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌmelt sth ˈdown to heat sth until it is in a liquid state, usually so that it can be made into sth else: *Aluminium cans can be melted down and recycled.*
OBJ **gold, silver, etc.**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈmeltdown** *n* [U] [C] a serious accident in which the central part of a structure that produces nuclear energy melts, causing harmful rays to escape: *A meltdown at the reactor had only just been avoided.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The meltdown on Wall Street caused chaos in markets worldwide.*

ˈmelt into sth to gradually become part of sth and difficult to see: *I tried hard to melt into the background.*
◆ v + prep

merge /mɜːdʒ; *AmE* mɜːrdʒ/

ˌmerge ˈin (with sth), ˌmerge ˈinto sth if something **merges in** (with sth) or **merges into** sth, it is so similar to the second thing that you cannot really see the differences between them or where one ends and the other begins: *The new college building does not merge in with the old buildings around it.* ◇ *Autumn is merging into winter.* ◇ *Saturday and Sunday seemed to merge into each other.*
→ *see also* BLEND IN; BLEND INTO STH
◆ v + adv • v + prep
IDM **merge into the ˈbackground** (of a person) to behave quietly when you are with a group of people so that they do not notice you

mess /mes/

ˌmess aˈbout (*BrE*) = MESS AROUND

ˌmess aˈbout with sb (*BrE*) = MESS AROUND WITH SB

ˌmess aˈbout with sth (*BrE*) = MESS AROUND WITH STH

ˌmess sb aˈbout/aˈround (*BrE, informal*) to treat sb badly, making them waste time, changing your mind a lot, etc: *They messed us around so much, I wrote to complain.* ◇ *I don't like being messed about.*
SYN **muck sb about/around** (*BrE*)
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌmess aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌmess aˈbout**) (*informal*) **1** (**with sb/sth**) to spend time and enjoy yourself doing sth with no particular purpose: *We just messed around at home all day.* ◇ *Children love to mess about in water.* **2** (**with sb/sth**) to behave in a silly way, especially when you should be working or doing sth else: *He got told off for messing around in class.* ◇ *She messed about all year and failed her exams.* ◇ *Stop messing around with Jo and get on with the work.* ◇ *'They fixed that quickly!' 'Yeah, they don't mess around.'* (= they do things quickly) **3** to joke, to say silly things: *I'm not messing about, it's true!* SYN **kid around** (*informal*)
SYN **muck about/around** (*BrE*)
→ *see also* MESS AROUND WITH STH
◆ v + adv

ˌmess sb aˈround (*BrE*) = MESS SB ABOUT/AROUND

ˌmess aˈround with sb (*BrE also* **ˌmess aˈbout with sb**) (*informal*) to have a sexual relationship with sb
◆ v + adv + prep

ˌmess aˈround with sth (*BrE also* **ˌmess aˈbout with sth**) (*informal*) **1** to keep touching or moving sth in an annoying way: *Stop messing around with the video!* ◇ *Don't mess around with your food like that!* **2** to get involved in sth that you do not know much about or understand: *Who knows what might happen if we mess around with nature?* **3** to get involved with sth dangerous: *He started messing around with drugs when he was just a kid.*
SYN **muck about/around with sth** (*BrE*)
NOTE **Mess about/around with sth** can be used in the passive in meanings 1 and 2: *This package has been messed around with.*
→ *see also* MESS AROUND
◆ v + adv + prep

ˌmess ˈup; ˌmess sth ˈup (*informal*) to spoil sth; to do sth very badly: *I was so nervous I totally messed up at the interview.* ◇ *She messed up all our arrangements by arriving late.* ◇ *You've really messed things up for me.*
SYN **foul up, foul sth up; screw up, screw sth up**
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌmess sb ˈup (*informal*) **1** to spoil sb's life; to make sb suffer emotionally or mentally: *His parents really messed him up.* ◇ *He came back into her life and messed her up again.* **2** (*AmE, spoken*) to physically hurt sb, especially by hitting them
SYN **screw sb up**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˌmessed ˈup** *adj* (*informal*) confused and upset, especially because of sth bad that has happened to you in the past: *He's just a messed-up kid.*

ˌmess sth ˈup to make sth untidy or dirty: *She comes in, messes the place up and then goes out again.* ◇ *The wind is going to mess up my hair.*
SYN **muck sth up** (*informal*)
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈmess with sb (*informal*) (*usually used in negative sentences*) **1** to do or say sth that might annoy a particular person, as they may react in a violent or dangerous way: *I wouldn't mess with Frank if I were you.* **2** to have or try to have a sexual relationship with sb
→ *see also* MESS AROUND WITH SB
◆ v + prep

ˈmess with sth (*informal, especially AmE*) **1** to use or treat sth carelessly, causing damage: *Who's been messing with the answering machine?* ◇ *Read the label carefully before you start messing with dangerous products.* **2** to get involved with sth dangerous: *How long has he been messing with drugs?* OBJ **drugs**
→ *see also* MESS AROUND WITH STH
◆ v + prep

mete /miːt/

ˌmete sth ˈout (to sb) (*formal*) to give sb a punishment, etc: *Schools should not mete out physical punishment to children.* ◇ *Severe penalties were meted out to the offenders.*
OBJ **punishment, treatment, justice**
NOTE **Mete sth out** is usually used in the passive.
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

militate /ˈmɪlɪteɪt/

ˌmilitate aˈgainst sth (*formal*) to prevent sth; to make it difficult for sth to happen: *Lack of funds militated against the success of the campaign.*
◆ v + prep

mill /mɪl/

ˌmill aˈround; ˌmill aˈround sb/sth (*BrE also* **ˌmill aˈbout, ˌmill aˈbout sb/sth**) if a large group of people **mill around**, or **mill around** a place, they move around without going anywhere in particular, often while waiting for sth to happen: *Photographers milled around outside the hotel, waiting for the prince to appear.* ◇ *People milled about the room, shaking hands and chatting.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep

mind /maɪnd/

ˌmind ˈout (*BrE*) **1** used to warn sb to be careful: *Mind out! You nearly knocked me off my bike!* ◇ *I've got you fish and chips. Mind out for the bones!* SYN **watch out** **2** (*informal*) used to tell sb to move so that you or sb else can pass: *Mind out Joe — you're in the way!*
◆ v + adv

minister /ˈmɪnɪstə(r)/

ˈminister to sb/sth (*old-fashioned, formal*) to care for sb; to make sure that sb/sth has everything necessary: *She felt it was her vocation to minister to the sick.* ◇ *Servants ministered to his needs.*
OBJ **needs, the sick**
NOTE **Minister to sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *He would not be ministered to by strangers.*
◆ v + prep

minor /ˈmaɪnə(r)/

ˈminor in sth (*AmE*) to study another subject as well as your main subject at a university or college: *He minored in Art History.*
◆ v + prep

miss /mɪs/

ˌmiss ˈout (on sth) to lose an opportunity to benefit from sth or enjoy yourself, by not doing sth or taking part in an activity: *I felt I missed out because I didn't go to college.* ◇ *She missed out on the school trip.* ◇ *He just missed out on a gold medal in the last Olympics* (= he was just beaten). ◇ *There are lots of things happening during Carnival, so don't miss out on the fun!*
◆ v + adv

ˌmiss sb/sth ˈout (*BrE*) to not include sb/sth either deliberately or by accident: *Have I missed anybody out?* ◇ *You've missed out the most important piece of information!* (= you haven't mentioned it) ◇ *She missed out a few chapters in the middle.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

mist /mɪst/

ˌmist ˈover 1 if glass **mists over**, it becomes covered with very small drops of water so that you cannot see through it: *As soon as I stepped inside, my glasses misted over.* **2** if your eyes **mist over**, they fill with tears: *His eyes misted over.*
NOTE **Mist** is often used with these meanings.
◈ v + adv

ˌmist ˈup; **ˌmist sth ˈup** to cover sth such as glass with small drops of water so that you cannot see through it: *The inside of the car was beginning to mist up.* ◇ *The windows were misted up.*
SYN **fog up; steam up, steam sth up**
NOTE **Mist** and **mist sth** are also used with this meaning.
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

mistake /mɪˈsteɪk/ (**mistook** /mɪˈstʊk/ **mistaken** /mɪˈsteɪkən/)

miˈstake sb/sth for sb/sth to think wrongly that sb/sth is sb/sth else: *I mistook him for his brother.* ◇ *The toy could easily be mistaken for a real gun.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

mix /mɪks/

ˌmix sth ˈin (with sth), **ˌmix sth ˈinto sth** to combine one substance with others, especially in cooking: *Mix the eggs in slowly.* ◇ *Mix a little cream into the sauce.*
SYN **blend sth in; stir sth in, stir sth into sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌmix sb ˈup; **be/get ˌmixed ˈup** to make sb unable to think clearly or understand what is happening: *Now you've mixed me up completely! I'm really confused.* ◇ *He got mixed up and caught the wrong train.*
SYN **muddle sb up** (*informal, especially BrE*), **confuse sb** (*more formal*)
NOTE **Mix sb up** is often used in the passive with *be* or *get*: *I think you're getting mixed up.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ be/get + v + adv
▸ **ˌmixed-ˈup** *adj* (*informal*) confused because of social or emotional problems: *She's a very mixed-up kid.*
→ *see also* MIXED-UP at MIX STH UP (WITH STH)

ˌmix sb/sth ˈup (with sb/sth) to think wrongly that sb/sth is sb/sth else; to be unable to distinguish between two or more people or things: *You're mixing me up with my brother.* ◇ *The hospital was accused of mixing up the babies' name tags.*
SYN **muddle sb/sth up (with sb/sth)** (*especially BrE*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
IDM **get A and B mixed up; get A mixed up with B** to think wrongly that sb/sth is sb/sth else; to be unable to distinguish between two or more people or things: *My bag got mixed up with somebody else's at the airport.* ◇ *People who are colour-blind usually get red and green mixed up.*

ˌmix sth ˈup (with sth) to change the order or arrangement of things in a confused or untidy way: *I'd sorted those papers out and now you've mixed them all up again.* ◇ *My letters have all been mixed up with yours.*
SYN **muddle sth up (with sth)** (*especially BrE*)
NOTE **Mix sth up** is often used in the passive with *be* or *get*: *The clean clothes got all mixed up with the dirty ones.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **ˈmix-up** *n* a mistake that causes confusion; a situation that is full of confusion: *There was a mix-up over the tickets.*
▸ **ˌmixed-ˈup** *adj* untidy; in a state of confusion: *She presented me with a mixed-up stack of files and asked me to put them in order.* ◇ *My papers were all mixed-up.*
→ *see also* MIXED-UP at MIX SB UP, BE/GET MIXED UP

be/get ˌmixed ˈup in sth to be/become involved in sth dangerous or illegal: *He would never have got mixed up in anything criminal.* ◇ *How did you get mixed up in all this?*
◈ be/get + v + adv + prep

be/get ˌmixed ˈup with sb to be/become friendly with or involved with sb dangerous or dishonest: *I'll never understand how she got mixed up with Phil.* ◇ *He was mixed up with the wrong crowd for a while.*
◈ be/get + v + adv + prep

ˈmix it with sb (*BrE, informal*) **1** to compete with sb; to argue or fight with sb: *He'll be mixing it with the world's best players.* ◇ *He can mix it with the best of them.* **2** to meet and spend time with people in a friendly way: *She loves mixing it with the rich and famous.*
◈ v + it + prep

mock /mɒk/

ˌmock sth ˈup to produce a copy of sth that is going to be made, so that it can be tested or people can see what it will be like: *We mocked up the front page to see how it would look.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈmock-up** *n* a copy of sth that is produced to show people what it will be like, or to test it: *a mock-up of the next day's front page*

model /ˈmɒdl; *AmE* ˈmɑːdl/ (**-ll-**, *AmE* **-l-**)

ˈmodel sb/sth/yourself on sb/sth (*also* **ˈmodel sb/sth/yourself upon sb/sth** *more formal*) (*AmE also* **ˈmodel sb/sth after sb/sth**) to make or create sth that looks or behaves like sth else; to take sb, especially sb you like, as an example and copy them: *The house was modelled on a French chateau.* ◇ *He modelled the main character on his friend.* ◇ *He still models himself on Elvis.*
NOTE **Model sb/sth on/after sb/sth** is often used in the passive: *The ship was modelled after a Greek pirate ship.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

monkey /ˈmʌŋki/

ˌmonkey aˈbout/aˈround (with sth) (*BrE, informal*) to behave in a silly way; to touch or change sth in a careless way: *They were monkeying around in class.* ◇ *He's monkeyed about with the original words of the song.*
SYN **mess around; mess around with sth**
◈ v + adv

mooch /muːtʃ/

ˌmooch aˈbout/aˈround; **ˌmooch aˈbout/aˈround sth** (*informal, especially BrE*) to spend time doing nothing in particular: *We went into town and mooched about for a while.* ◇ *They spent an hour mooching around the shops.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

moon /muːn/

ˌmoon aˈbout/aˈround; **ˌmoon aˈbout/aˈround sth** (*BrE, informal*) to spend time doing nothing in particular, often because you are feeling unhappy: *He mooned around the streets, hoping to see Anna.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˈmoon over sb (*informal*) to spend your time dreamily thinking about sb that you love: *He spends most of his time mooning over Helen.*
◈ v + prep

mop /mɒp; *AmE* mɑːp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌmop ˈup; **ˌmop sth ˈup 1** to clean up liquid or remove liquid from somewhere, using sth that absorbs it: *I always have to mop up after he's had a shower.* ◇ *Can you mop up the water on the bathroom floor?* ◇ *She mopped up the sauce with a piece of bread.* ◇ *Mopping-up operations have begun after the floods.* **2** to use up all of sth: *The new factory should mop up the pool of surplus labour.* **3** to take control of sth: *The company started mopping up smaller firms.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌmop sb/sth ˈup to get rid of the last few people who continue to oppose you; to finish tasks that remain: *The army mopped up some isolated pockets of resistance.* ◇ *There are a few things to mop up before we go.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

mope /məʊp; *AmE* moʊp/

ˌmope aˈround; **ˌmope aˈround sth** (*BrE also* **ˌmope aˈbout**, **ˌmope aˈbout sth**) to walk about a place in an unhappy way, with no particular purpose: *He's been moping about all day.* ◇ *You spend too much time moping around the house.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

mount /maʊnt/

ˌmount ˈup (to sth) to increase gradually in size or quantity: *The paperwork soon mounts up if you don't deal with it immediately.* ◇ *My debts have mounted up to over a thousand dollars.*
◈ v + adv

mouth /maʊð/

ˌmouth ˈoff (at/about sb/sth) (*informal*) (*often used in the progressive tenses*) to give your opinion about sb/sth loudly; to complain loudly about sb/sth: *I could hear him mouthing off about how they should have won.* ◇ *She was mouthing off at all the other drivers on the road.*
◈ v + adv

move /muːv/

	~ about	189	~ in
	~ across		~ in together
	~ ahead		~ in with
	~ ahead of		~ into
188	~ along		~ off
	~ apart		~ on
	~ around		~ out
	~ aside		~ out of
	~ away		~ over
	~ away from	190	~ past
	~ back		~ round
	~ down		~ towards
	~ forward	191	~ up

ˌmove aˈbout; **ˌmove aˈbout sth** (*especially BrE*) = MOVE AROUND, MOVE AROUND STH

ˌmove sb/sth aˈbout (*especially BrE*) = MOVE SB/STH AROUND

ˌmove aˈcross; **ˌmove aˈcross sth** to move from one side of sth to the other: *He moved across to the window and looked out.*
OBJ **room**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌmove aˈhead to advance or develop, often after there has been a delay: *The project is moving ahead again now.*
SYN **proceed** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv

ˌmove aˈhead of sb/sth to move faster than sb/sth; to develop more quickly than sb/sth else: *'Speed up!' he said, moving ahead of her.* ◇ *Our foreign competitors are moving ahead of us.*
SYN **overtake sb/sth**
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌmove aˈlong; ˌmove aˈlong sth to go forward: *The convoy of cars was moving slowly along the road.*

OBJ **road**

Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˌmove aˈlong/ˈon; ˌmove sb aˈlong/ˈon to leave a particular place or go to a new position; to make sb do this: *Move along now. You're blocking the entrance.* ◇ *The police arrived to move the demonstrators along.*

Ⓖ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

ˌmove aˈlong; ˌmove sth aˈlong if a project, etc. **moves along**, or if sb **moves it along**, it continues to make good progress: *Can you move the story along a bit faster? What happened in the end?*

Ⓖ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

ˌmove aˈpart if two or more things or people **move apart**, they become separated by a distance: *They quickly moved apart when I walked in.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The two sides in the dispute are moving further and further apart.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌmove aˈround; ˌmove aˈround sth (*also* **ˌmove aˈbout/ˈround, ˌmove aˈbout/ˈround sth** *especially BrE*) to keep moving from one place to another: *Use the mouse to move around the screen.* ◇ *I have to move around a lot with my job.* ◇ *She sang as she moved about the room.*

Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˌmove sb/sth aˈround (*also* **ˌmove sb/sth aˈbout/round** *especially BrE*) to move sb/sth from one place to another: *It's not fair to keep moving the children around from school to school.* ◇ *The chair is light and easy to move about.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌmove aˈround sth (*also* **ˌmove ˈround sth** *especially BrE*) to move in a circle around sth that is blocking your path: *She moved round the table to open the window.*

SYN **go around sb/sth**

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌmove aˈside to move to one side, usually to allow sb or sth to pass: *I moved aside to let her go past.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌmove sb/sth aˈside to put sb/sth to one side away from the centre of a place, usually to make room for sb/sth else: *We moved the tables aside so that we could dance.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌmove aˈway to leave the place where you live to go and live in another place: *All her friends have moved away from the area.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌmove aˈway (from sb/sth), ˌmove sth aˈway (from sb/sth) to leave the place or position you are in and go to another; to take sth from one place or position and put it in another: *Move away from the window in case anyone sees you.* ◇ *Can you move the scissors away from the baby?*

Ⓖ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌmove aˈway from sth to stop doing, following or believing sth: *The party seems to be moving away from its original aims.*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌmove ˈback; ˌmove sth ˈback 1 to go, or to move sth, to a new position at a distance away from the front or behind sb/sth: *He moved back a few steps.* ◇ *She moved her chair back from the fire.* OPP **move forward, move sth forward 2** to go, or to move sth, to the place or position it was in before: *His eyes moved back to her face.* ◇ *It took a long time to move the furniture back after the party.* SYN **return (sth) (to sth) 3** if an event **moves back**, or sb **moves it back**, it takes place at a later date or time than was first planned: *They've moved back the date of the wedding.*

→ *see also* PUT STH BACK

Ⓖ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌmove ˈdown (of a level or an amount) to decrease: *Prices move up and down according to demand.*

SYN **go down** OPP **move up**

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌmove ˈdown; ˌmove ˈdown sth 1 to move from a higher position to a lower one: *I watched her move nervously down the slope.* OBJ **hill, ladder** OPP **go up, go up sth 2** to move to a new position to make more space for sb else: *Can you move down (the bus) so more people can get on?*

OPP **move up, move up sth**

Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˌmove ˈdown; ˌmove sb ˈdown (at school) to move, or to move sb, to a lower class, grade or level: *I was worried that if I failed the test I would have to move down.* ◇ *If you don't work harder, you'll be moved down* (*to the class below*).

OPP **move up, move sb up**

Ⓖ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

ˌmove sb/sth ˈdown; ˌmove sb/sth ˈdown sth to move sb/sth from a higher position to a lower one: *Move the boxes down from the top of the wardrobe.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌmove ˈforward; ˌmove sth ˈforward 1 to go, or to make sth go, to a place or position that is in front: *The car began to move forward slowly.* OPP **move back, move sth back 2** to develop, or to make sth develop, towards a good result: *It's time to move this project forward.* **3** to move, or to make sth move, towards the future: *The company must keep moving forward.* ◇ *The story then moves forward to 1999.* **4** if an event **moves forward**, or sb **moves it forward**, it takes place at an earlier date or time than was planned: *My operation has been moved forward two weeks.*

OPP **move back, move sth back**

Ⓖ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

ˌmove ˈin 1 (on sb/sth) to move towards sb/sth, especially in a threatening way, or to make a dangerous situation calm: *I moved in close and stuck the gun in his back.* ◇ *The police moved in to control the crowd.* SYN **close in (on sb/sth) 2** to arrive and begin work, especially when people don't really want you there: *The developers moved in and built a housing estate in the grounds of the old house.* **3 (on sth)** to begin to try to have control of or responsibility for a company, a project, etc: *They are moving in on another drugs company.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌmove ˈin; ˌmove ˈinto sth to go to a new house and begin to live there: *How soon can you move in?* ◇ *When are you moving into your new flat?*

OPP **move out, move out of sth**

Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˌmove ˈin together; ˌmove ˈin with sb to start living with sb, especially a partner: *They've decided to move in together.*

Ⓖ v + adv + adv • v + adv + prep

ˌmove ˈinto sth 1 MOVE IN, MOVE INTO STH **2** to start to be involved in a new area of activity or business: *The company is looking to move into new markets.* ◇ *After teaching for ten years he moved into publishing.* **3** to develop or advance into a new position, stage, etc: *The project is now moving into its second year.* ◇ *The team has moved into fourth place after their victory.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌmove sb/sth ˈinto sth to take sb/sth and put them/it in a new place: *We've moved the phone into the hall.* ◇ *The doctors at the hospital have moved my father into a room on his own.* ◇ *I've moved my savings into a different bank account.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

ˌmove ˈoff (*especially BrE*) (especially of a vehicle) to start a journey; to begin to move: *Check in your mirrors before you move off.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌmove ˈoff sth; ˌmove sb/sth ˈoff sth to leave the place where you are; to remove sb/sth from a particular place: *Farmers are rapidly moving off the land.* ◇ *Can you move your car off the pavement please?*

Ⓖ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌmove ˈon 1 to continue your journey after stopping for a short while; to leave the place where you are and go to a new place: *After a few minutes, the bus moved on again.* ◇ *The police told them to move on and go home!* ◇ *When I looked round, I realized everyone else had moved on.* **2** if ideas, beliefs, etc. **move on**, they change and develop: *Things have moved on a lot since my parents were young.* ◇ *The debate does not seem to have moved on much.* ◇ *Fashions are moving on all the time.* **3 (to sth)** to start doing or discussing sth new: *I want to move on to my next point now.* ◇ *When her contract here runs out in April, Tessa will move on.* ◇ *She moved on to become senior editor of a magazine.* SYN **pass on (to sth)**

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌmove ˈon; ˌmove sb ˈon = MOVE ALONG/ON, MOVE SB ALONG/ON *Every time they stopped they got moved on by the police.*

ˌmove ˈout; ˌmove ˈout of sth to leave your home and go to live somewhere else: *The lodger moved out yesterday.* ◇ *He wants to move out of London.* ◇ *They've recently moved out of the city and gone to live in the country.*

OPP **move in, move into sth**

Ⓖ v + adv • v + adv + prep

ˌmove sb ˈout; ˌmove sb ˈout of sth 1 to make sb leave a place, especially their home: *The landlord is moving the tenants out.* ◇ *The emergency services are moving people out of their homes.* **2** to remove sb from a place: *Many countries are moving their troops out of the area.* SYN **withdraw sb (from sth)**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*) • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌmove sth ˈout; ˌmove sth ˈout of sth to remove sth from a place, especially in order to make more space: *We'll need to move some chairs out before the party to make more room.* ◇ *When can you move your belongings out of my apartment?* ◇ *That table will have to be moved out of the way.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*) • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌmove ˈout of sth 1 to leave a particular place, area or situation: *We watched the boat moving out of the harbour.* ◇ *The country is moving out of recession.* **2** to stop being involved in a particular activity or area of business: *Many people have been forced to move out of farming.*

Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌmove ˈover 1 (to sb/sth) to go towards sb/sth: *He moved over to her.* **2 (to sth)** (*especially BrE*) to begin to do sth in a different way or with different people; to change the system you are using: *I'm an interpreter, but I'd like to move over to translation work.* ◇ *We've just moved over to a new computing system.* **3** to move to one side, usually to make room for sb/sth else: *I wish the car in front would move over and let me overtake.* ◇ *Move over! I want to sit down too.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Older managers should move over to make room for younger people.* → *see also* MOVE UP 2

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌmove ˈover sth; ˌmove sb/sth ˈover sth 1 to go forward slowly across a surface; to make sth do this: *The tank adapts to the ground it is mov-*

ing over. ◇ *Just move the brush lightly over the paper.* **2** if somebody's hands, eyes, etc. **move** over sth, or sb **moves them over** sth, they slowly cross sth: *His eyes moved over her face.* ◇ *She moved her hands gently over his injured ankle.*
◆ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌmove ˈpast sb/sth to pass in front of sb/sth: *He moved past her into the lounge.*
SYN **go past sb/sth**
◆ v + prep

ˌmove ˈround; ˌmove ˈround sth (*especially BrE*) = MOVE AROUND, MOVE AROUND STH

ˌmove sb/sthˈ round (*especially BrE*) = MOVE SB/STH AROUND

ˌmove ˈround sth (*especially BrE*) = MOVE AROUND STH

ˌmove toˈwards sb/sth to approach sb/sth: *She began to run as the car moved towards her.*
◆ v + prep

ˌmove toˈwards sth; ˌmove toˈwards doing sth (*especially BrE*) (*AmE usually* **ˌmove toˈward sth, ˌmove toˈward doing sth**) (*often used in the progressive tenses*) to prepare to do or achieve sth; to approach or move nearer to sth: *We are moving towards a better understanding of the situation.* ◇ *Is the group moving towards finding a solution?*
OBJ **understanding, settlement**
◆ v + prep

ˌmove ˈup 1 (of a rate, a level or an amount) to increase: *What will we do if interest rates move up?* SYN **go up** OPP **go down 2** to change your position to make room for sb else: *Come on, move up a bit and let your mother sit down!* → *see also* MOVE DOWN, MOVE DOWN STH 2; MOVE OVER 3

ˌmove ˈup; ˌmove sb ˈup to move, or to make sb move, to a higher level, grade or class: *She's been moved up into the Advanced class.* ◇ *I see Tim has* ***moved up in the world*** (= has got a better job, more money, a higher social position, etc.)
OPP **move down, move sb down**
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

ˌmove ˈup; ˌmove ˈup sth; ˌmove sb/sth ˈup; ˌmove sb/sth ˈup sth to move from a lower to a higher position; to make sb/sth do this: *Hold the ladder tightly and move up a rung at a time.* ◇ *We watched the group moving up the hill.* ◇ (*figurative*) *This is your chance to move up the career ladder and get a better job.* ◇ *Move your hand up and down.* ◇ *We had to move the piano up three flights of stairs.*
SYN **go up, go up sth** OPP **move down, move down sth**
◆ v + adv • v + prep • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

mow /məʊ; *AmE* moʊ/ (**mowed, mown** /məʊn; *AmE* moʊn/ or **mowed**)

ˌmow sb ˈdown 1 to kill sb, often large numbers of people, with a gun: *The demonstrators were mown down by the soldiers.* **2** (of a vehicle or a driver) to kill/hit sb, often because the driver has been driving carelessly or dangerously: *A mother and her two children were mown down by joyriders.* SYN **run sb down**
NOTE **Mow sb down** is often used in the passive.
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

muck /mʌk/

ˌmuck aˈbout/aˈround (*BrE, informal*) **1 (with sb/sth)** to spend time and enjoy yourself doing sth with no particular purpose: *They were mucking about outside, kicking a ball around.* **2 (with sb/sth)** to behave in a silly way, especially when you should be working or doing sth else: *Stop mucking around and go to bed.* ◇ *She mucked around all year and failed her exams.* **3** to joke; to say silly things: *I thought he was mucking about until I saw it was real blood on his face.*
SYN **mess around**
→ *see also* MUCK ABOUT/AROUND WITH STH
◆ v + adv

ˌmuck sb aˈbout/aˈround (*BrE, informal*) to treat sb badly, making them waste time, changing your mind a lot, etc: *I'm sick of being mucked about by employers.*
SYN **mess sb about/around**
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌmuck aˈbout/aˈround with sth (*BrE, informal*) to keep touching, moving or changing sth in an annoying way: *Who's been mucking about with my computer?* ◇ *Don't muck around with the words of the song — I think they're fine.*
SYN **mess around with sth, mess about with sth**
→ *see also* MUCK ABOUT/AROUND
◆ v + adv + prep

ˌmuck aˈround (*BrE*) = MUCK ABOUT/AROUND

ˌmuck sb aˈround (*BrE*) = MUCK SB ABOUT/AROUND

ˌmuck aˈround with sth (*BrE*) = MUCK ABOUT/AROUND WITH STH

ˌmuck ˈin (*BrE, informal*) **1** to join in with other people in order to complete a task: *If we all muck in, we'll soon get the job finished.* **2** to share food, accommodation, costs, etc. with other people: *Money was short, but we all mucked in together.*
◆ v + adv

ˌmuck ˈout; ˌmuck sth ˈout to clean the place where an animal lives, especially a horse: *It's your turn to muck out today.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌmuck sth ˈup (*informal, especially BrE*) **1** to do sth very badly; to spoil sth: *This is your last chance, so don't muck it up.* ◇ *Her surprise visit totally mucked up my plans.* **2** to make sth dirty: *Take your shoes off! You're mucking up my floor!* **3** to make sth untidy: *Stop that, you're mucking up my hair.*
SYN **mess sth up**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

muddle /ˈmʌdl/

ˌmuddle aˈlong (*also* **ˌmuddle ˈon** *less frequent*) (*especially BrE*) to continue living or doing sth with no clear purpose or plan: *We muddle along from day to day.*
◆ v + adv

ˌmuddle ˈthrough to achieve your aims although you are not efficient, do not know what you are doing, do not have the right equipment, etc: *I'll muddle through somehow.*
◆ v + adv

ˌmuddle sb ˈup (*especially BrE*) to make sb confused: *I won't explain how this works now — it might muddle you up.* ◇ *You're muddling me up!* ◇ *I got muddled up and took the wrong turning.*
SYN **mix sb up; confuse sb** (*more formal*)
NOTE **Muddle sb up** is often used in the passive with the verb *get.* • **Muddle sb** is used more frequently with the same meaning.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌmuddle sb/sth ˈup (with sb/sth), ˌmuddle A ˈup with B (*especially BrE*) to confuse one person or thing with another; to think that sb/sth is sb/sth else: *He muddled up our passports and gave me back the wrong one.* ◇ *I keep muddling her up with her sister.*
SYN **mix sb/sth up (with sb/sth)**
NOTE **Muddle sb/sth** is also used with the same meaning.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
IDM **get A and B muddled ˈup; get A muddled ˈup with B** to confuse one person or thing with another: *I always get the twins muddled up.*

ˌmuddle sth ˈup (with sth) (*especially BrE*) to carelessly put things in the wrong order; to mix things together in an untidy way: *The money was muddled up with everything else in his pocket.* ◇ *The kids have muddled up all the photos.*
SYN **mix sth up (with sth)**
NOTE **Muddle sth** is also used with the same meaning.
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
IDM **get sth muddled ˈup (with sth)** to put things in the wrong order; to mix things together in an untidy way: *The words seemed to have got muddled up.*

mug /mʌg/ (**-gg-**)

ˌmug ˈup (on sth), ˌmug sth ˈup (*BrE, informal*) to quickly learn sth, especially sth that you should already know, before an exam, etc: *He spent the whole night mugging up for the exam.* ◇ *I'd better mug up on the subject before I meet her.* ◇ *I'm going to mug up as much as I can about Delhi before I go there.*
SYN **swot up (on sth)** (*BrE*), **review sth** (*especially AmE*), **revise sth** (*BrE*)
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

mull /mʌl/

ˌmull sth ˈover to think about or consider sth for a long time before you decide to do sth: *I've been mulling over what you said last night.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

muscle /ˈmʌsl/

ˌmuscle ˈin (on sb/sth) (*informal*) to get involved in a situation that you have no right to be involved in, especially sth that will give you an advantage or a profit: *I don't want Matt muscling in on our deal.*
◆ v + adv

muss /mʌs/

ˌmuss sth ˈup (*AmE*) to make sth look untidy: *My skirt got mussed up when I sat down.*
SYN **mess sth up**
NOTE **Muss sth up** is often used in the passive. • **Muss sth** is often used.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

muster /ˈmʌstə(r)/

ˌmuster sth ˈup to find the courage, strength, etc. that you need in order to do sth difficult or unpleasant: *She could barely muster up the strength to get out of bed.*
OBJ **strength, energy** SYN **summon sth up**
NOTE **Muster sth** is often used with the same meaning.
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

Nn

naff /næf/

ˌnaff ˈoff (*becoming old-fashioned, BrE, slang*) used by some people to tell sb rudely to go away and stop annoying them: *Just naff off and leave me alone!*
SYN **clear off** (*especially BrE*)
◈ v + adv

nag /næɡ/ **(-gg-)**

ˈnag at sb 1 to keep complaining to sb about their behaviour; to keep asking sb to do sth: *He keeps nagging at me to get more exercise.* **2** to worry or irritate you continuously: *The suspicion that she was lying continued to nag at me.*
◈ v + prep

nail /neɪl/

ˌnail sb ˈdown (to sth) to force sb to state exactly what they think, what they intend to do, etc: *He says he'll come, but I can't nail him down to a date.*
SYN **pin sb down (to sth)**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌnail sth ˈdown 1 to fasten sth down with nails: *She got him to nail the loose floorboard down.* **2** to know or understand exactly what sth is: *Something seems strange here, but I can't nail it down.* **3** to reach an agreement or a decision, usually after a lot of discussion: *They managed to nail down an agreement with the management.* OBJ **agreement**
◈ **1** v + n/pron + adv **2** v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv **3** v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌnail sth ˈup 1 to attach sth to a wall, a post, etc. with nails: *I nailed up a notice saying: Keep out!* **2** to fasten a door, a window, etc. with nails so that it cannot easily be opened: *He nailed up the door to keep intruders out.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

name /neɪm/

ˈname sb/sth ˈafter sb/sth (*AmE also* **ˈname sb/sth ˈfor sb/sth**) to give sb/sth the name of sb/sth else that you like or admire, for example a family member or a famous person or place: *We named her after her grandmother.* ◇ *The Miller fire was named for the canyon in which it began.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

narrow /ˈnærəʊ; *AmE* -roʊ/

ˌnarrow sth ˈdown (to sth) to gradually reduce the number of possibilities: *I've narrowed the list of candidates down to three.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

nestle /ˈnesl/

ˌnestle ˈup (to sb/sth) to make yourself warm and comfortable by moving close to sb: *Jamie nestled up to his mother on the sofa.*
◈ v + adv

nibble /ˈnɪbl/

ˈnibble at sth 1 to eat sth by taking very small bites: *The mouse nibbled at the peanuts.* ◇ *You've only nibbled at your lunch.* **2** to show a slight interest in sth: *Several companies have nibbled at our offer.*
◈ v + prep

ˌnibble aˈway at sth (*especially BrE*) to gradually reduce or use up the total amount of sth: *Inflation began to nibble away at their savings.*
◈ v + adv + prep

nip /nɪp/ **(-pp-)**

ˌnip sth ˈoff to remove a part of sth by squeezing it with your fingers, cutting it quickly with scissors, etc: *She nipped off the dead leaves.*
SYN **cut sth off**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

nod /nɒd; *AmE* nɑːd/ **(-dd-)**

ˌnod ˈoff (*informal*) to fall asleep: *She nodded off in front of the television.*
SYN **doze off** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv

nose /nəʊz; *AmE* noʊz/

ˌnose aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌnose aˈbout**) **(for sth)** (*informal*) to go around trying to find out sth about sb/sth, particularly when you should not do this: *I'm just nosing about for clues.*
◈ v + adv

ˌnose sb ˈout (*informal*) to defeat sb by a small amount, for example in a race or an election: *She was nosed out of first place by her old rival.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌnose sth ˈout (*informal*) to discover some information by searching for it: *That man can nose a news story out anywhere.*
SYN **sniff sth out**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

notch /nɒtʃ; *AmE* nɑːtʃ/

ˌnotch sth ˈup (*informal*) to achieve a win or a high score: *He notched up ten points in the first five minutes of the game.*
OBJ **victory, points** SYN **clock sth up**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

note /nəʊt; *AmE* noʊt/

ˌnote sth ˈdown to write sth down so that you will remember it: *The class noted down every word she said.*
SYN **take sth down; write sth down**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

number /ˈnʌmbə(r)/

ˈnumber sb/sth among sth (*formal*) to include sb/sth in a particular group: *I number her among my closest friends.* ◇ *He is numbered among the world's top experts.*
SYN **count sb/sth among sth**
◈ v + n/pron + prep

nuzzle /ˈnʌzl/

ˌnuzzle ˈup against/to sb/sth to press your head, face, etc. against sb/sth to show affection or keep warm, etc: *He nuzzled up to his mother with a happy sigh.*
◈ v + adv + prep

Oo

object /əbˈdʒekt/

obˈject to sb/sth; obˈject to doing sth; obˈject to sb doing sth to say that you disagree with, disapprove of or oppose sth: *Many local people object to the building of the new airport.* ◇ *I really object to being charged for parking at the hospital.*
◆ v + prep

occur /əˈkɜː(r)/

ocˈcur to sb if an idea or a thought occurs to you it suddenly comes into your mind: *Hasn't it ever occurred to you that he might be lying to you?* ◇ *A strange thought suddenly occurred to me.*
SUBJ **thought, possibility**
◆ v + prep

offend /əˈfend/

ofˈfend against sth (*formal*) to go against what people believe is morally right: *The film offends against good taste.*
◆ v + prep

offer /ˈɒfə(r); *AmE* ˈɔːf-, ˈɑːf-/

ˌoffer sth ˈup (for sth) to give sth to God: *She offered up a prayer for her husband's safe return.*
OBJ **prayer, sacrifice**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv (*less frequent*)

ooze /uːz/

ˌooze ˈout; ˌooze ˈout of/ˈfrom/ˈthrough sth if a thick liquid oozes out or oozes from, etc. somewhere, it flows out slowly: *Cream was oozing out of the cake.* ◇ *cakes with cream oozing out at the sides* ◇ *Blood was oozing from the cut on her arm.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + prep • v + prep

open /ˈəʊpən; *AmE* ˈoʊ-/

ˌopen ˈinto/ˈonto sth if a door or a room **opens** into/onto sth, it leads directly to it: *The door opened onto a small yard.* ◇ *The kitchen opens into a large sitting room.*
◆ v + prep

ˌopen ˈoff sth if a door or a room **opens off** sth, it connects directly with it: *Several doors opened off the hall.* ◇ *The offices opened off the reception area.*
◆ v + prep

ˌopen ˈout 1 (into/onto sth) to become wider or bigger; to become more open and not enclosed by anything: *The valley opened out in front of us.* ◇ *The narrow lane opened out into a field.* **2 (to sb)** (*BrE*) = OPEN UP 1 *He only opened out to her very slowly.* **3** to spread out; to become open and larger or flatter: *The table opens out so that more people can sit at it.* ◇ *The buds on the trees have all opened out.*
◆ v + adv

ˌopen sth ˈout to spread sth out; to make sth open and flat: *He opened the map out.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌopen ˈup 1 (*BrE also* **ˌopen ˈout**) **(to sb)** (*informal*) to talk freely and openly about what you feel or think: *Will you open up to me and tell me what's worrying you?* **2** to start firing: *The anti-aircraft guns opened up.* **3** (*often used in orders etc.*) to open a door: *Open up or we'll break the door down!*
◆ v + adv

ˌopen sb ˈup to cut sb open in order to do a medical operation: *They opened her up but didn't find anything wrong.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌopen ˈup; ˌopen sth ˈup 1 to become or to make sth possible, available or able to be reached: *If you have good qualifications, a whole range of possibilities open up for you.* ◇ *The whole region has been opened up for trade by the new rail link.* ◇ *They opened up the sports hall to house the flood victims.* ◇ *Writing to penfriends can open up a whole new world.* **2** to start a new business: *The company are opening up a new factory in Wales.* OPP **close down, close sth down 3** to begin business for the day: *If you're feeling tired this morning, I'll open up (the store).* OPP **close up, close sth up 4** (usually in sport) to develop or start to happen; to produce sth or make sth start to happen: *An increasing gap is opening up between the achievements of girls and boys in exams.* ◇ *United have opened up a three-point lead after five games.* **5** to become wider; to make sth wider, especially sth that has been closed: *Coughing might open up your wound.* ◇ *She wished the floor would open up and swallow her* (= for example, because she felt very embarrassed about sth). ◇ *Cutting down the trees opened up the view from the house.*
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌopen sth ˈup to make sth that is shut, locked, etc. open: *Can you open up that box of books for me?*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

opt /ɒpt; *AmE* ɑːpt/

ˈopt for sth to choose sth; to make a decision about sth: *More students are now opting for computer science courses.* ◇ *You can stay in the main hotel or opt for one of the bungalows near the beach.*
◆ v + prep

ˌopt ˈin; ˌopt ˈinto sth to choose to take part in sth: *We offer a pension plan, and all staff have the chance to opt. in.* ◇ *The government decided to opt into the new European treaty.*
OPP **opt out, opt out of sth**
◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˌopt ˈout; ˌopt ˈout of sth 1 to choose not to take part in sth: *You can opt out of the company's pension plan.* **2** (of a school or a hospital in Britain) to choose not to be under the control of the local authority: *A majority of parents were in favour of opting out.*
OPP **opt in, opt into sth**
◆ v + adv • v + adv + prep
▸ **ˈopt-out** *n* (*often used as an adjective*) **1** the act of choosing not to take part in sth **2** (in Britain) the action of a school or a hospital that decides to manage its own money and is therefore no longer controlled by a local authority: *Nurses and health workers voted against the opt-out.*
▸ **ˌopted-ˈout** *adj* [only before noun] (in Britain) an **opted-out** school or hospital is one that has decided not to be under the control of the local authority

order /ˈɔːdə(r); *AmE* ˈɔːrd-/

ˌorder sb aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌorder sb aˈbout**) to keep on telling sb to do things in an unpleasant way: *Stop ordering me around!* ◇ *Even as a child he ordered his friends about.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌorder ˈin; ˌorder ˈin sth (*AmE*) to telephone and buy a meal from a restaurant that cooks the food and brings it to your home: *I'm too tired to cook — let's order in.* ◇ *Let's order in Chinese tonight.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n

ˌorder sb ˈoff; ˌorder sb ˈoff sth 1 to tell sb to leave sth such as a bus, a train, etc: *The driver ordered the boys off for messing around on the bus.* **2 (for sth)** (*especially BrE*) (in a sports game) to make sb leave the field because they have broken the rules of the game: *He was ordered off for arguing with the referee.* OBJ **player** SYN **send sb off (for sth)** (*BrE*) NOTE Order sb off is often used in the passive in this meaning.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌorder ˈout (for sth) (*AmE*) to telephone and buy a meal from a restaurant that cooks the food and brings it to you: *We could order out for a Chinese.*
◆ v + adv

own /əʊn; *AmE* oʊn/

ˌown ˈup (to sth/to doing sth) to admit that you are the person responsible for sth that has happened: *Nobody owned up to breaking the window.*
SYN **confess (to sth/to doing sth)** (*more formal*)
◆ v + adv

P p

pace /peɪs/

ˌpace ˈout sth; **ˌpace it/them ˈout** (*also* **ˌpace ˈoff sth**, **ˌpace it/them ˈoff** *less frequent*) to measure sth by taking regular steps across it: *She paced out the length of the room.*
NOTE A noun must always follow **out**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **out**.
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv

pack /pæk/

ˌpack aˈway if sth **packs away**, it can be folded up small when you are no longer using it: *The jacket packs away neatly into its own pocket.*
◈ v + adv

ˌpack sth aˈway 1 to put sth into a box, cupboard, etc. when you are no longer using it: *We packed away the picnic things and put them in the car.* **2** (*informal*) to eat a lot of sth: *She can certainly **pack it away**!*
SYN **put sth away**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpack sb ˈin to attract large numbers of people to a show, a play, etc: *The film is still packing in the crowds.*
OBJ **the crowds**
NOTE **Pack sb in** is not used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌpack sb/sth ˈin; **ˌpack sb/sth ˈin/ˈinto sth 1** to do a lot of things, see a lot of people, etc. in a limited period of time: *She managed to pack a lot of sightseeing into three days.* ◇ *We packed in a lot yesterday afternoon.* **2** to put a lot of things or people into a limited space: *Somehow we managed to pack everyone in.*
SYN **cram sb/sth in, cram sb/sth in/into sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌpack sth ˈin (*BrE, informal*) **1** to give sth up, especially a job: *She's packed in her job as a teacher.* ◇ *Smoking's bad for you. You ought to pack it in.* ◇ *I was so depressed I felt like **packing it all in**.* OBJ **job** SYN **chuck sth in/up** (*BrE*), **jack sth in** (*BrE*), **give sth up** → *see also* PACK UP, PACK STH UP 2 **2 ˌpack it ˈin** used to tell sb to stop behaving badly or doing sth that is annoying you: *Just pack it in, will you?*
◈ **1** v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
2 v + it + adv

ˌpack ˈinto sth if people **pack into** a place, they go there in large numbers and fill it completely: *All six of us packed into the tiny car.* ◇ *More than 70 000 people packed into Trafalgar Square on New Year's Eve.*
SYN **cram into sth**
◈ v + prep

ˌpack sb/sth ˈinto sth = PACK SB/STH IN, PACK SB/STH IN/INTO STH

ˌpack sb ˈoff (**to …**) (*informal*) to send sb away, especially because you do not want them with you: *She was packed off to boarding school at the age of eight.* ◇ *He packed the children off to bed.*
NOTE **Pack sb off** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpack sth ˈout (*BrE*) if a show, a performer, etc. **packs out** a place, they attract large numbers of people there to see it/them: *The band packs out venues all over the country.* ◇ *The movie has been packing out cinemas for weeks.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˌpacked ˈout** *adj* (*BrE*) very full: *The town is packed out with tourists in the summer.* ◇ *a packed-out stadium*

ˌpack ˈup (*BrE, informal*) if a machine, an engine, etc. **packs up**, it stops working: *My car's packed up again.*
SYN **break down**; **give out**
◈ v + adv

ˌpack ˈup; **ˌpack sth ˈup 1** to put your possessions, equipment, etc. into bags or boxes before you leave a place: *It's time to pack up and go home now.* ◇ *All our things were packed up waiting to be moved.* OBJ **things, belongings 2** (*BrE, informal*) to stop doing sth, especially a job: *He used to smoke but he packed up last year.* ◇ *You'd feel better if you packed up smoking.* ◇ *When did you pack up your job at the bookshop?* OBJ **smoking, work, job** SYN **give sth up** → *see also* PACK STH IN 1
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

package /ˈpækɪdʒ/

ˌpackage sth ˈup (*especially AmE*) to wrap sth and make it into a parcel so that you can send it somewhere: *She packaged up his books and mailed them to him.*
SYN **parcel sth up** (*BrE*)
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

pad /pæd/ (**-dd-**)

ˌpad sth ˈout (**with sth**) **1** to put soft material into a piece of clothing in order to change its shape: *She padded the costume out with foam.* **2** to make sth, such as a book, an article, a speech, etc., longer by adding unnecessary material: *I padded out the article with lots of quotations.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv

page /peɪdʒ/

ˌpage ˈthrough sth (*AmE*) to turn the pages of a book, a magazine, etc. and look at them without reading them in detail: *She paged through the report looking for her name.*
SYN **leaf through sth**
◈ v + prep

paint /peɪnt/

ˌpaint sth ˈout (*especially BrE*) to cover sth, such as a mark, part of a picture, etc. by putting paint on top of it so that no one can see it: *The markings on the plane had been hurriedly painted out.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌpaint ˈover sth to cover sth with a layer of paint: *We'll have to paint over the dirty marks on the wall.* ◇ *I don't like the way the painting has turned out so I'll just paint over it.*
NOTE **Paint over sth** can be used in the passive: *The name had been painted over.*
◈ v + prep

ˌpaint sth ˈup to paint sth, decorating it in a bright, attractive way: *Their house had been painted up in amazing colours.* ◇ *The bus was painted up with advertisements.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

pair /peə(r); *AmE* per/

ˌpair ˈoff; **ˌpair sb ˈoff** (**with sb**) to form a pair or pairs, especially in order to have a romantic relationship; to bring two people together in this way: *By the end of the course, everyone had paired off.* ◇ (*especially BrE*) *They tried to pair their daughter off with the neighbour's son.*
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpair ˈup; **ˌpair sb ˈup** (**with sb/sth**) to form a pair or pairs (with sb/sth) in order to work, play a game, etc. together; to bring two people together for this purpose: *The job is a lot easier if you pair up with someone else.* ◇ *Writers have been paired up with artists to write articles on paintings.*
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

pal /pæl/ (**-ll-**)

ˌpal aˈround (**with sb**) (*AmE*) to become friends with sb and spend time with them: *I used to pal around with Brad.*
◈ v + adv

ˌpal ˈup (**with sb**) (*BrE*) to become friends with sb: *They palled up at college.*
◈ v + adv

palm /pɑːm/

ˌpalm sb ˈoff (**with sth**) (*informal*) **1** to persuade sb to believe an explanation for sth that is not true, in order to stop them asking questions or complaining: *Don't let him palm you off with an excuse.* **2** to persuade sb to accept sth that has little value or is not what they really want: *Make sure he doesn't palm you off with faulty goods.*
SYN **fob sb off (with sth)**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpalm sth ˈoff as sth (*informal*) to persuade sb that sth is better than it really is, or is sth different, especially in order to sell it: *She was trying to palm copies off as original paintings.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌpalm sb/sth ˈoff on/onto sb (*informal*) to get rid of sb/sth that you do not want by persuading sb else to accept them/it: *He tried to palm his uncle off on me for the whole afternoon.* ◇ *I think she palmed off the stolen necklace on some unsuspecting old lady.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep • v + adv + n + prep

pan /pæn/ (**-nn-**)

ˌpan ˈout (*informal*) (of events or a situation) to develop in a particular way: *I don't know why things panned out the way they did.* ◇ *How do you see your career panning out?*
SYN **turn out**
◈ v + adv

pander /ˈpændə(r)/

ˈpander to sb/sth (*disapproving*) to try to please sb by doing or providing what they want although you know it is probably wrong to do so: *He panders to her every whim.* ◇ *His films never pandered to public taste.*
NOTE **Pander to sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *I don't think children should be pandered to.*
◈ v + prep

panic /ˈpænɪk/ (**-ck-**)

ˈpanic sb into sth; **ˈpanic sb into doing sth** to make sb do sth too quickly because they are afraid: *Don't let them panic you into a decision.*
NOTE **Panic sb into sth/into doing sth** is often used in the passive: *She refused to be panicked into making rash promises.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

paper /ˈpeɪpə(r)/

ˌpaper ˈover sth 1 to cover sth such as a wall with thick paper in order to hide sth: *We papered over the stains on the wall.* **2** to hide sth such as a problem, a disagreement, etc., especially quickly or not very well: *The divisions in the party had been papered over during the election campaign.*
NOTE **Paper over sth** can be used in the passive.
◈ v + prep
IDM **paper over the ˈcracks (in sth)** to try to hide a problem or fault, especially in a way that is unlikely to be successful

parcel /ˈpɑːsl; *AmE* ˈpɑːrsl/ (-ll-, *AmE* -l-)

ˌparcel sth ˈout to divide sth into parts or portions: *They parcelled out the land into small plots.* ◇ *The work was parcelled out among the staff.*
G v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌparcel sth ˈup (*BrE*) to wrap sth and make it into a parcel: *She parcelled up the books ready to send.*
SYN **package sth up** (*especially AmE*), **wrap sth up**
NOTE **Parcel sth** is used less often with the same meaning.
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

pare /peə(r); *AmE* per/

ˌpare sth aˈway/ˈoff to remove the thin outer layer from sth in thin strips: *Pare off the rind from the orange using a sharp knife.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Their rights had been pared away under the last three kings.*
NOTE **Pare sth** can also be used with this meaning: *Pare the rind from the lemons.* ◇ *thinly pared rind*
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌpare sth ˈdown (*also* **ˌpare sth ˈback** *less frequent*) **(to sth)** to gradually reduce sth considerably in size or amount: *We've pared our expenses down to a minimum.*
SYN **cut sth back; cut sth down (to sth)**
NOTE **Pare sth** can also be used with this meaning: *We pared costs by doing much of the work ourselves.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

parlay /ˈpɑːleɪ; *AmE* ˈpɑːrleɪ/

ˌparlay sth ˈinto sth (*AmE, informal*) to use an advantage that you have, such as money or a skill, in order to get sth or make it worth more: *He parlayed his relationship with his boss into an important job.*
G v + n/pron + prep

part /pɑːt; *AmE* pɑːrt/

ˈpart with sth to give sth away that you would prefer to keep: *It was my grandmother's necklace and I'll never part with it.* ◇ (*humorous*) *We won't be sorry to part with that old sofa.* ◇ *He hates parting with* (= spending) *his money.*
OBJ **money**
G v + prep

partake /pɑːˈteɪk; *AmE* pɑːrˈt-/ (**partook** /-ˈtʊk/ **partaken** /-ˈteɪkən/)

parˈtake of sth (*old-fashioned* or *humorous*) to eat or drink sth: *Would you care to partake of some refreshment?*
G v + prep

partition /pɑːˈtɪʃn; *AmE* pɑːrˈt-/

parˌtition sth ˈoff to separate one area, one part of a room, etc. from another with a wall or screen: *The dining area is partitioned off with screens.*
NOTE **Partition sth off** is often used in the passive.
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

pass /pɑːs; *AmE* pæs/

~ around
~ as
~ away
~ between
~ by
199 ~ down
~ for
~ into
~ off
~ off as
~ on
~ on to
~ out
~ over
200 ~ round
~ through
~ to
~ up

ˌpass sth aˈround; ˌpass sth aˈround sth (*BrE also* **ˌpass sth ˈround, ˌpass sth ˈround sth**) to offer sth to each person in a group: *Would you mind passing the sandwiches round?* ◇ *A picture was passed around the class.*
SYN **hand sth round, hand sth around**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˈpass as sb
→ *see also* PASS FOR/AS SB

ˌpass aˈway 1 (*also* **ˌpass ˈon**) people say **pass away** to avoid saying 'die': *She passed away peacefully in her sleep.* **2** to disappear: *Many of these customs have passed away.*
G v + adv

ˌpass beˈtween sb if sth such as a look, a word, etc. **passes between** two people, they look quickly at each other, speak to each other, etc: *A look of understanding passed between Ann and Carla.* ◇ *I never knew what passed between them* (= what they said to each other) *on that day.*
G v + prep

ˌpass ˈby if time **passes by**, it goes past: *The weeks passed by and she didn't call.*
SYN **go by**
NOTE **Pass** is used more frequently with this meaning: *The weeks passed.*
G v + adv

ˌpass ˈby; ˌpass ˈby sb/sth to go past sb/sth without stopping: *He saw the procession pass by.* ◇ *The boat passed close by the island.*
SYN **go by, go by sb/sth**
NOTE **Pass** and **pass sb/sth** are also used with this meaning: *We watched the procession pass.*
G v + adv • v + prep
▶ **ˈbypass** *n* **1** a road that goes around a town, etc. and which is intended to keep traffic out of the town centre **2** a medical operation on the heart in which blood is directed along a different route so that it does not flow through a part that is damaged or blocked; the new route that the blood takes: *a bypass operation*
▶ **ˌpasser-ˈby** *n* a person who is walking past sb/sth, especially when sth unexpected happens: *Several passers-by stopped to help.*

ˌpass sb/sth ˈby to happen without affecting sb/sth: *She feels that life is passing her by* (= that she is not enjoying the opportunities and pleasures of life). ◇ *The whole business passed him by* (= he was hardly aware that it was happening).
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌpass sth ˈdown (to sb) to give sth or teach sth to your children or people who are younger than you, who will then give or teach it to their children, etc: *These stories were passed down from one generation to the next.* ◇ *Some of the furniture has been passed down through the family.*
SYN **hand sth down (to sb)**
NOTE **Pass sth down** is often used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈpass for sth (*disapproving*) used to say that although sth is said to be a particular thing, you do not think it is good enough to be called that: *I got used to drinking what passes for tea in that part of the world.*
G v + prep

ˈpass for/as sb to be so much like another person, or another type of person, that people could easily think you were that person or type: *He speaks French well enough to pass for a Frenchman.* ◇ *She's in her forties but she could pass for ten years younger.* ◇ *They could pass as twins.*
G v + prep

ˈpass into sth to become a part of sth: *Many foreign words have passed into English.*
G v + prep

ˌpass ˈoff (*BrE*) **1 [+ adv/prep]** if an event **passes off** in a particular way, it takes place and is finished in the way mentioned: *The election has passed off without incident.* ◇ *The celebrations passed off peacefully.* **2** if pain, the effects of a drug, etc. **pass off**, they gradually disappear: *The symptoms should pass off within 24 hours.*
G v + adv

ˌpass sth ˈoff to act as if a difficult or awkward remark or situation is less important than you really think it is: *He had really upset her, but she smiled and tried to pass it off.* ◇ *He managed to pass the question off lightly.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpass sb/sth ˈoff as sb/sth; ˌpass yourself ˈoff as sb/sth to pretend that sb or sth is something that they are not: *She tried to pass the picture off as an original.* ◇ *He succeeded in passing himself off as a doctor.*
G v + n/pron + adv + prep • v + adv + n + prep (*less frequent*)

ˌpass ˈon 1 (to sth) (*BrE*) to begin a new activity, discussion, etc: *Let's pass on to the next item on the agenda.* ◇ *If you can't answer one question, pass on to the next.* SYN **move on (to sth) 2** = PASS AWAY 1
G v + adv

ˌpass sth ˈon (to sb) 1 to give sth to sb else, especially after receiving or using it yourself: *I'll pass this book on to you when I've finished with it.* ◇ *I'll pass on your news to the rest of the family.* SYN **hand sth on (to sb) 2** to give sth that you have, such as a disease, a quality, etc. to sb else: *HIV can be passed on from parent to child.* ◇ *Parents pass these attitudes on to their children.* **3** if a company, a shop/store, etc. **passes on** higher or lower costs to its customers, it makes them pay more or less for sth: *The supermarket did not pass on its profit to customers by cutting prices.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpass sb ˈon to sb to arrange for sb else to help or deal with a particular person: *I'm afraid I can't answer your question, but I'll pass you on to my colleague.*
G v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌpass ˈout 1 to lose consciousness: *He almost passed out with the pain.* SYN **black out; faint** → *see also* COME ROUND/COME TO **2** (*also* **ˌpass ˈout of sth**) (*BrE*) to leave a military college after completing a course of training
G v + adv **2** also v + adv + prep

ˌpass sth ˈout (to sb) to give something to each person in a group: *The teacher asked me to pass the books out.*
SYN **give sth out; hand sth out (to sb)**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpass ˈover sb (for sth), ˌpass him, them, etc. ˈover (for sth) to not consider sb for a better job, especially when they deserve it or think they deserve it: *I was passed over for promotion again.* ◇ *He was passed over in favour of a younger man.*
NOTE A noun must always follow **over**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **over**. • This phrasal verb is often used in the passive.
G v + adv + n • v + pron + adv

ˌpass ˈover sb/sth 1 to move over the top of sb/sth: *The planes pass directly over the hospital.* ◇ *The eye of the storm was passing over us.* **2** to ignore or avoid sth: *They chose to pass over her rude remarks.* ◇ *For years this painting was passed over by experts.* SYN **ignore sb/sth** NOTE **Pass over sb/sth** can be used in the passive in this meaning.
G v + prep
▶ **ˈoverpass** *n* (*especially AmE*) a bridge that carries one road or railway above another; a bridge over a road for people who want to cross: *Don't try to cross the highway — use the overpass.*

ˌpass sb/sth ˈover (to sb) **1** to give sth to sb, especially when they ask for it or you do not want it any more; to give sb, or the responsibility for sb, to sb else: *Jeff passed the phone over so that I could speak to Clare.* ◇ *The doctor passed the baby over to the nurse.* ◇ *Control of the budgets has been passed over to individual schools.* SYN **hand sb/sth over** (to sb) **2** to let sb listen or speak to sb else when you have finished talking: *If there are no more questions, I'll pass you over to Ted.* SYN **hand over to sb, hand sb over to sb**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpass sth ˈround; **ˌpass sth ˈround sth** (*BrE*)
= PASS STH AROUND, PASS STH AROUND STH

ˌpass ˈthrough; **ˌpass ˈthrough sth** to go or travel through a place, only stopping for a short time: *We're not staying here, we're just passing through.* ◇ *We passed through Pompeii on our way to Naples.*
Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˌpass ˈthrough sth (*especially BrE*) to experience a particular kind of situation or period of time, especially a difficult or unpleasant one, and develop during it: *She passed through a difficult period after her divorce.* ◇ *The industry is passing through a period of change.*
OBJ **period, stage** SYN **go through sth**
Ⓖ v + prep

ˈpass to sb/sth to begin to be owned by sb new: *When she died, the house passed to her niece.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌpass sth ˈup (*informal*) to decide not to take advantage of an opportunity, an offer, etc: *She passed up the chance of a trip to Rome.* ◇ *Imagine passing up an offer like that!*
OBJ **opportunity, chance, offer**
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

patch /pætʃ/

ˌpatch sb/sth ˈthrough to connect telephone or electronic equipment temporarily: *The radio was patched through to army headquarters*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌpatch sth toˈgether to arrange sth quickly, especially by putting several different parts together, without taking any care over it: *An interim government was quickly patched together.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌpatch sb/sth ˈup to give quick or temporary medical treatment to someone who is injured: *They patched him up and sent him back onto the field* (= for example in a game of football). ◇ *The doctor did the best he could to patch up their wounds.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpatch sth ˈup 1 to repair sth, especially quickly or temporarily: *The car was patched up and resold.* ◇ *We patched up the hole in the roof and got it repaired the next day.* **2** to end a quarrel or dispute with sb and be friends again: *They patched up their differences.* ◇ *Can't you two try to patch things up?* OBJ **differences, quarrel, things 3** to agree on sth, especially after long discussions and even though the agreement is not completely satisfactory: *They managed to patch up a peace.*
Ⓖ **1** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
2,3 v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

paw /pɔː/

ˈpaw at sb/sth (*informal*) if an animal **paws at** sb/sth, it touches sb/sth repeatedly with its foot: *a horse pawing at the ground* ◇ (*figurative*) *One of the children was pawing at my sleeve.*
Ⓖ v + prep

pay /peɪ/ (**paid, paid** /peɪd/)

ˌpay sb ˈback (for sth/for doing sth) to punish sb because they have made you or sb else suffer: *I'll pay him back for getting me into trouble!*
SYN **get back at sb** (for sth/for doing sth)
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)
▸ **ˈpayback** *n* [C] [U] a reward or a punishment that sb receives for sth they have done
→ *see also* PAYBACK at PAY SB BACK, PAY STH BACK (TO SB)

ˌpay sb ˈback; **ˌpay sth ˈback** (to sb) to return money that you have borrowed from sb: *I'll pay you back next week.* ◇ *She's trying to pay the loan back over 5 years.* ◇ *He'll never be able to pay back the money.*
SYN **repay sb** (sth), **repay sth** (to sb) (*more formal*)
NOTE In informal language **pay sb back sth** and, less often, **pay sb sth back** are also used: *When are you going to pay me back that $100 you owe me?* ◇ *Can you pay me that money back soon?*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈpayback** *n* [C] [U] the money that you receive back on money that you have invested; the time that it takes to get your money back: *I'm waiting to get the maximum payback on my investment.* ◇ *a ten-year payback*
→ *see also* PAYBACK at PAY SB BACK (FOR STH/FOR DOING STH)

ˈpay for sth to suffer or be punished for sth wrong that you have done or said, or for sth you believe: *Someone's going to pay for this!* ◇ *They are **paying dearly for** their mistake.*
OBJ **mistake, crime**
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌpay sth ˈin; **ˌpay sth ˈinto sth** to put money into a bank account: *I had to go to the bank to pay a cheque in.* ◇ *Her wages are paid directly into her account.*
OBJ **cheque, money** SYN **deposit sth (in sth)** (*more formal*)
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌpay ˈoff if sth that involves risk **pays off**, it is successful and brings the results that you want: *The gamble paid off.* ◇ *Their hard work is beginning to pay off.* ◇ *All the training you've been doing seems to have **paid off handsomely*** (= has had very good results).
Ⓖ v + adv
▸ **ˈpay-off** *n* (*informal*) a reward or a benefit that you receive as a result of sth you do: *What are the pay-offs of working at home?*
→ *see also* PAY-OFF at PAY SB OFF

ˌpay sb ˈoff 1 to give sb money to persuade them not to do sth or not to tell sb about sth illegal or dishonest you have done: *She refused to be paid off.* SYN **buy sb off 2** to pay sb the money they have earned and dismiss them from their job: *The store has paid off many of the full-time staff and offered them part-time work.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈpay-off** *n* (*informal*) **1** a payment you make to sb to persuade them not to do sth or not to tell sb about sth illegal or dishonest you have done: *Police have been accused of receiving pay-offs from local gangs.* **2** a payment made to sb to persuade them to leave their job: *She has received a £10 000 pay-off.*
→ *see also* PAY-OFF at PAY OFF

ˌpay sth/sb ˈoff 1 to finish paying money that you owe for sth: *I used the money to pay off my overdraft.* ◇ *They're still paying off their mortgage.* ◇ *to pay off creditors/a bank manager* OBJ **mortgage, loan, debts** SYN **repay sth/sb** (*more formal*) **2** (*especially BrE*) to pay the fare for a taxi journey: *She paid the taxi off and walked the rest of the way.* OBJ **taxi/cab**
Ⓖ **1** v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)
2 v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpay ˈout; **ˌpay sth ˈout** (for sth) (*especially BrE*) to pay a large amount for sth: *The insurance company refused to pay out.* ◇ *The government pays out millions of pounds in benefits.* ◇ *I can't afford to pay out for private treatment.*
Ⓖ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)
▸ **ˈpayout** *n* a large amount of money that is given to sb: *People injured in the crash won record payouts from the rail company.*

ˌpay sth ˈout (*BrE*) to release or pass a length or rope, etc. through your hands: *He started paying out the rope.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌpay ˈup (*informal*) to give somebody the money that you owe them, especially if you do not want to: *In the end we threatened to take them to court and they paid up.*
SYN **cough up** (*especially BrE*)
Ⓖ v + adv
▸ **ˈpaid-up** *adj* [only before noun] **1** having paid all the money necessary to be a member of a club or an organization **2** (*informal*) strongly supporting sth: *a fully paid-up football fan*

peck /pek/

ˈpeck at sth to eat only very small amounts of sth, because you are not hungry: *He was so nervous he only pecked at his lunch.*
Ⓖ v + prep

peel /piːl/

ˌpeel aˈway/ˈback (from sth), **ˌpeel aˈway/ˈback** (from sth) to come off the surface of sth; to remove a thin layer from the surface of sth: *The wallpaper had started to peel away.* ◇ *The paint was peeling away from the wood.* ◇ *She peeled back the blankets and jumped into bed.* ◇ *He peeled away the plastic wrapping.*
→ *see also* PEEL STH OFF, PEEL STH OFF STH
Ⓖ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpeel ˈoff 1 to come away from the surface of sth: *The wallpaper was peeling off.* SUBJ **paper, skin, paint 2** (of cars, aircraft, etc.) to leave a group and turn to one side: *The planes peeled off, one by one.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌpeel sth ˈoff 1 to remove some or all of your clothing, especially sth that fits tightly: *He peeled off his wet clothes.* OBJ **clothes, gloves, T-shirt, etc. 2** to remove some notes from a thick pile of folded or rolled paper money: *He peeled off two hundred dollars and handed them to her.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌpeel sth ˈoff; **ˌpeel sth ˈoff sth** to remove a thin layer from the surface of something: *He peeled off the sweet wrapper.* ◇ *She peeled all the wallpaper off the bathroom ceiling.*
OBJ **wallpaper, paint, wrapper**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

peg /peg/ (**-gg-**)

ˌpeg aˈway (at sth) (*informal*) to continue to work hard at or try to achieve sth difficult: *He keeps pegging away at his novel.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌpeg sb/sth ˈback (especially in sport) to stop sb/sth from winning or from increasing the amount by which they are ahead: *Italy were winning 2-0, but were pegged back to a draw by Spain's late goal.*
NOTE **Peg sb/sth back** is often used in the passive. • It is common in newspapers.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌpeg ˈout (*BrE, informal*) to die: *I thought she was going to peg out right in front of me!*
◆ v + adv

ˌpeg sth ˈout (*BrE*) to fasten washing to a line with a wooden or plastic device (a **peg**): *He was outside, pegging the washing out.*
OBJ **washing, clothes** **SYN** **hang sth out**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

pelt /pelt/

ˈpelt down (*informal*) to rain very heavily: *It's pelting down (with rain) outside.*
SYN **pour down**
◆ v + adv

pen /pen/ (-nn-)

ˌpen sb/sth ˈin; **ˌpen sb/sth ˈin sth** to shut sb/sth in a small space with walls or fences, etc. all around: *We penned the sheep in the yard.* ◇ *The troublemakers were penned in by the police.* ◇ (*figurative*) *She felt penned in living in the heart of the city.*
NOTE This phrasal verb is often used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌpen sb/sth ˈup (*especially BrE*) to shut sb/sth in a place with walls, fences, etc. all around, and not let them leave: *It was good to go outside after being penned up in the house all day.* ◇ *They penned us up in a little room and wouldn't let anyone leave.*
NOTE **Pen sb/sth up** is usually used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

pencil /ˈpensl/ (-ll-, *AmE* -l-)

ˌpencil sb/sth ˈin (for sth) to write down sb's name for an appointment, or the details of an arrangement, although you know that this might have to be changed later: *Let's pencil in the third of May for the meeting.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

pension /ˈpenʃn/

ˌpension sb ˈoff to allow or force sb to leave their job and stop regular work (to **retire**), especially because they are old or ill, and pay them a regular sum of money (a **pension**): *She was pensioned off at the age of 56.* ◇ (*figurative*) *We've pensioned our old TV off and bought a new one.*
NOTE **Pension sb off** is usually used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

pep /pep/ (-pp-)

ˌpep sb/sth ˈup (*informal*) to make sb/sth more interesting; to make sb feel more lively or full of energy: *The company needs to pep up its image.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

pepper /ˈpepə(r)/

ˈpepper sb/sth with sth to hit sb/sth with lots of small things such as bullets: *They said they were peppered with shotgun pellets as they walked in the forest.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The interviewer peppered her with questions.*
NOTE **Pepper sb/sth with sth** is usually used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˈpepper sth with sth to include a large number of sth in sth: *She peppers her conversation with references to famous people.* ◇ *Her hair is peppered with grey.*
NOTE **Pepper sth with sth** is usually used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

perk /pɜːk; *AmE* pɜːrk/

ˌperk ˈup; **ˌperk sb ˈup** (*informal*) to become, or make sb, more lively or more cheerful, especially after they have been ill/sick: *You've perked up since this morning.* ◇ *A shower would soon perk you up.*
SYN **liven up, liven sb up**
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌperk ˈup; **ˌperk sth ˈup** (*informal*) to improve or increase in value, to make sth increase in value, etc: *The weather seems to be perking up.* ◇ *The recent demand for houses has perked up the prices.* ◇ *House prices are expected to perk up.*
SYN **improve, improve sth**
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌperk sth ˈup (*informal*) to make sth more interesting or more attractive: *Perk up a dark kitchen with a coat of paint.* ◇ *A vegetable stew can be perked up with a dash of chilli sauce.* ◇ *ideas for perking up bland food*
SYN **liven sth up**
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

permit /pəˈmɪt; *AmE* pərˈm-/ (-tt-)

perˈmit of sth (*formal*) to make sth possible; to allow sth to happen: *The situation does not permit of any delay.*
NOTE **Permit of sth** is usually used in negative sentences, and in written English.
◆ v + prep

pertain /pəˈteɪn; *AmE* pərˈt-/

perˈtain to sth (*formal*) to be connected with a particular subject, person, event or situation: *The committee was reviewing all the laws pertaining to adoption.*
◆ v + prep

peter /ˈpiːtə(r)/

ˌpeter ˈout (into sth) to decrease or fade gradually before coming to an end: *The road petered out into a dirt track.* ◇ *By midday their enthusiasm had petered out.* ◇ *The conversation gradually petered out.*
◆ v + adv

phase /feɪz/

ˌphase sth ˈin to introduce sth gradually or in stages: *The government will phase in the new tax.*
OPP **phase sth out**
NOTE **Phase sth in** is often used in the passive: *The scheme will be phased in over 15 years.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌphase sth ˈout to stop using sth gradually or in stages: *They agreed to phase out chemical weapons.*
OPP **phase sth in**
NOTE **Phase sth out** is often used in the passive: *The old system is being phased out.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

phone /fəʊn; *AmE* foʊn/

NOTE **To phone** is the most common way to say 'to telephone' in British English. **To ring** and **to call** are also used. The most common verb in American English for this is **to call**.

ˌphone aˈround/ˈround; **ˌphone aˈround/ˈround sb/sth** (*especially BrE*) to make phone calls to several different people or places, usually to try to find out some information: *I spent the morning phoning round hotels, trying to book a room.* ◇ *He phoned around to tell everyone about the meeting.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˌphone ˈback; **ˌphone sb ˈback** (*especially BrE*) to telephone sb again or to telephone sb who telephoned you earlier: *I left a message but they never phoned back.* ◇ *Tom called while you were out. He asked if you could phone him back.* ◇ *The travel agent phoned back to confirm your booking.* ◇ *It's engaged — I'll phone back later.*
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˌphone ˈin (*especially BrE*) **1** to telephone your place of work: *I'll phone in to say I won't be in until lunchtime.* ◇ *He* **phoned in sick** (= to say he was ill/sick and could not go to work) *this morning.* **2** to phone a television or radio programme: *Hundreds of listeners phoned in to complain.*
◆ v + adv
▸ **ˈphone-in** *n* (*especially BrE*) a radio or TV programme in which people can phone and ask questions, give their opinions, etc. as the programme is being broadcast: *He hosts a radio phone-in.* ◇ *a phone-in programme*

ˌphone sth ˈin (*especially BrE*) to make a telephone call to the place where you work in order to give sb some information: *Our reporter phoned the story in this afternoon.*
SYN **ring sth in** (*BrE*)
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌphone ˈround; **ˌphone ˈround sb/sth** (*especially BrE*) = PHONE AROUND/ROUND, PHONE AROUND/ROUND SB/STH

ˌphone sth ˈthrough (*especially BrE*) to phone sb with details of or information about sth: *Phone your order through to the store.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌphone ˈup; **ˌphone sb/sth ˈup** (*especially BrE*) to make a telephone call to sb/sth: *I'll phone up and cancel my appointment.* ◇ *Phone Mike up and ask him if he wants to come.* ◇ *I phoned up the bank this morning.*
NOTE **Phone** and **phone sb** are also frequently used with this meaning. **Phone up** and **phone sb up** are very common in spoken English.
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

pick /pɪk/

~ at
~ off
~ on
204 ~ out
~ over
~ up
205 ~ up on

ˈpick at sth 1 to eat very small amounts of food because you are not hungry: *She picked at her food for a while, then left the table.* **OBJ** **food, meal** **2** to pull sth with your fingers several times: *She picked nervously at her skirt until she made a hole.*
◆ v + prep

ˌpick sb/sth ˈoff 1 to shoot a person, an animal, a bird, an aircraft, etc. especially one of a group, after aiming carefully: *One of our men was picked off by a sniper.* **2** to choose the best people or things for your own use: *The company continues to pick off the brightest young graduates.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌpick sth ˈoff; **ˌpick sth ˈoff sth** to remove sth from sth with your fingernails or a tool: *She watered the plants and picked off the dead leaves.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˈpick on sb 1 to treat sb badly or unfairly, especially repeatedly: *You're always picking on me!* ◇ *The manager was accused of picking on a member of the department.* ◇ *It's difficult being the younger sister — you always get picked on.* **2** (*especially BrE*) to choose sb for a task, especially an unpleasant one: *The teacher always picked on Tom to answer the difficult questions.*
NOTE **Pick on sb** can be used in the passive: *She was picked on by the other children at school.*
◆ v + prep

ˌpick sb/sth ˈout 1 to choose sb/sth from a number of people or things: *He picks out people from the audience to come up on stage.* ◇ *The brightest students were picked out for special training.* ◇ *He picked out the most expensive suit in the shop.* SYN **select sb/sth** (*more formal*) **2** to recognize sb/sth from among people or things: *Can you pick me out in this old school photo?* ◇ *The suspect was picked out at an identity parade.* **3** to manage to see sb/sth: *We could just pick out a car in the distance.* SYN **make sb/sth out** (*more formal*) **4** if a light, etc. **picks sb/sth out** it shines on sb/sth so that they/it are easier to see: *The car's headlights picked out a road sign.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌpick sth ˈout 1 to discover or recognize sth after careful study: *It was difficult to pick out the important points from the mass of facts.* ◇ *They were asked to pick out exactly what it was that made his style so distinctive.* **2** if you **pick out** a tune on a musical instrument, you play a tune that you have heard or made up slowly, note by note, without using written music: *Buddie was picking out a simple tune on his guitar.* OBJ **melody**, **tune** **3** usually **be ˌpicked ˈout** (*BrE*) to paint, draw or write sth in such a way that it is very easy to see, especially by using a colour that is different from the background: *The details of the flowers were picked out in blue and gold.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌpick sth ˈover 1 (*also* **ˌpick ˈthrough sth** *less frequent*) to look carefully at a group of things, choosing what you want and rejecting anything you do not want: *He picked over the apples, checking for bad ones.* ◇ *Bargain hunters picked over a pile of sale items.* **2** (*especially BrE*) to examine or analyse sth carefully: *We spent the meeting picking over last month's results.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv

ˌpick ˈup 1 to become better; to improve: *The market always picks up in the spring.* ◇ *The game started very slowly but picked up in the second half.* ◇ *We're waiting until the weather picks up a bit.* **2** if the wind **picks up**, it starts to blow more strongly: *The wind seems to be picking up.* **3** to start again; to continue: *The new series **picks up** where the old one **left off**.* → *see also* PICK STH UP 10 **4** if your speed **picks up**, you start to go faster: *After the first mile* (= in a race) *I started to feel stronger and my speed picked up.* → *see also* PICK UP SPEED/MOMENTUM at PICK STH UP **5** if a bus, etc. **picks up** somewhere, it stops there to allow passengers to get on: *The bus picks up outside the Post Office* → *see also* PICK SB UP 3 **6** (*informal, especially AmE*) to collect things that have been dropped or left on the ground and put them away: *I shouldn't have to pick up after you!* → *see also* PICK STH UP 12
◈ v + adv

▸ **ˈpickup** *n* **1** an improvement: *There are no signs of a pickup in consumer spending.* **2** (*AmE*) the ability of a vehicle to increase its speed
→ *see also* PICKUP at PICK SB UP; PICKUP at PICK STH UP

ˌpick sb ˈup 1 to take hold of and lift sb: *I always pick the baby up when she cries.* → *see also* PICK STH UP 1 **2** to go to sb's home or a place you have arranged and take them somewhere in your car: *I'll pick you up at seven o'clock.* ◇ *He picked up a hitch-hiker.* ◇ *I went to pick her up from the airport.* NOTE **Pick sb up** is used much more often than **collect sb** in spoken English. **3 ˌpick ˈup sb**, **ˌpick him, her, them, etc. ˈup** if a bus, etc. **picks up** sb, it stops and allows them to get on: *The bus stopped to pick up some passengers.* NOTE A noun must always follow **up**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **up**. → *see also* PICK UP 5 **4** to rescue sb, for example from the sea: *Lifeboats picked up all the survivors.* **5** to arrest sb; to take sb somewhere in order to question them: *She was picked up by the police as she was leaving her hotel.* **6** (*informal*) to start talking to sb you do not know, because you want to have a sexual relationship with them: *He picked her up at a club.* **7** if sth **picks you up**, it makes you feel better: *A cup of tea will soon pick you up.*
→ *see also* PICK YOURSELF UP
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
3 v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv

▸ **ˈpick-me-up** *n* (*informal*) something that makes you feel better or happier, etc: *The country air was the perfect pick-me-up.*

▸ **ˈpickup** *n* **1** an occasion when sb gets in a car, on a bus, etc. to be taken to another place: *The coach driver made several pickups before heading for the airport.* ◇ *a pickup point* **2** (*informal*) a situation in which sb is trying to start a sexual relationship with a person they do not know; the person they are trying to start a sexual relationship with: *Nothing ever came of his pickups.*
→ *see also* PICKUP at PICK UP; PICKUP at PICK STH UP

ˌpick sth ˈup 1 to take hold of and lift sth: *I picked up your bag by mistake.* ◇ *Pick your coat up off the floor!* ◇ ***Pick up*** (= answer the phone) *if you're there, Tom!* → *see also* PICK SB UP 1 **2** to obtain or collect sth: *We can pick up the tickets an hour before the show starts.* **3** to learn a language, a skill, etc., or to get information, without making an effort: *She picks up languages really easily.* ◇ *I showed her how to use the software and she picked it up quickly.* ◇ *I picked up lots of tips on home entertainment from the magazine.* ◇ *She picked up the idea for the novel from a news story.* OBJ **languages**, **French**, **tips**, **etc.** **4** to get or obtain sth: *He picked up a virus at school.* ◇ *The children have picked up the local accent.* OBJ **cold**, **habits** **5** to identify or recognize sth: *The early signs of the disease were not picked up.* OBJ **signs** SYN **detect sth** **6** if a machine **picks sth up**, it receives a sound, a signal or a picture: *The microphone picks up every sound.* ◇ *Signals from the satellite are picked up at ground stations.* ◇ *We were able to pick up the BBC World Service.* **7** to buy sth, especially cheaply or by good luck: *He picked up some amazing bargains in the sales.* ◇ *You can pick up a second-hand bike for about £60.* OBJ **bargain** **8** to win a prize or an award: *The movie picked up several Oscars.* OBJ **award**, **cheque** **9** to find and follow a route, etc: *A police dog picked up his scent.* ◇ *The French police picked up the trail and traced her to Lisle.* OBJ **trail**, **scent** **10** to discuss something further; to return to a topic or theme and continue it: *Can I pick up the point you made earlier?* ◇ *We pick the story up again in London, five years later.* OBJ **point**, **story** → *see also* PICK UP 3 **11** to manage to see or hear sth that is not very clear: *I just picked up the sound of a car in the distance.* **12** (*especially AmE*) to collect things that have been dropped or left on the ground and put them away: *Will you pick up your toys now?* → *see also* PICK UP 6 **13** (*AmE*) to tidy a room, etc. and put things away: *Pick up your room before you go out.* OBJ **room** SYN **tidy sth up** (*BrE*), **tidy sth** (*BrE*) **14** (*informal*) if you **pick up** a bill for sth you pay it for sb else: *We ended up picking up the bill.* OBJ **bill**, **tab**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv **14** v + adv + n ◆
v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

IDM **pick up the ˈpieces** to return, or to help sb return, to a normal situation, particularly after a shock or a disaster: *He walked out on his family, leaving his wife to pick up the pieces.* **pick up ˈspeed/moˈmentum** to go faster: *The bus picked up speed as it went down the hill.*

▸ **ˈpickup 1** (*also* **ˈpickup truck**) a light motor vehicle with low sides and no roof at the back, used for example, by farmers **2** the part of a record player or musical instrument that changes electrical signals into sound, or sound into electrical signals
→ *see also* PICKUP at PICK UP; PICKUP at PICK SB UP

ˌpick yourself ˈup to get to your feet, especially after a fall: *She picked herself up and stumbled on.* ◇ (*figurative*) *We have to pick ourselves up after yesterday's defeat and start again.*
→ *see also* PICK SB UP
◈ v + pron + adv

ˌpick ˈup on sth 1 to notice sth: *He picked up on her feelings of unease.* ◇ *Children soon pick up on tensions between their parents.* **2** to return to a point in order to talk about it in more detail: *I'd like to pick up on Mr Finlay's point.* OBJ **point**
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌpick sb ˈup on sth (*BrE*) to correct sth that sb has said or done: *If you make a mistake, he always picks you up on it.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep

piece /piːs/

ˌpiece sth toˈgether 1 to discover a story, etc. by putting together separate facts or pieces of evidence: *Detectives are piecing together the events of the last hours of his life.* ◇ *Investigators are still trying to piece together the evidence to find out what caused the crash.* OBJ **evidence**, **story**, **events** **2** to make sth by putting a lot of separate parts together: *Archaeologists have worked for years to piece together the huge mosaic.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

pig /pɪg/ (-gg-)

ˌpig ˈout (on sth) (*informal*) to eat too much or a lot of food: *We pigged out at lunch for four bucks each.* ◇ *It isn't a good idea to pig out on sugar.*
◈ v + adv

▸ **ˈpig-out** *n* an occasion on which you eat too much or a lot of food: *We had a real pig-out last night.* ◇ *a pig-out party*

pile /paɪl/

ˌpile ˈin/ˈout; **ˌpile ˈinto/ˈout of sth** to go in or out of somewhere without order or control: *The taxi arrived and we all piled in.* ◇ *Crowds of children piled out of the building.*
OBJ **car**, **taxi**, **room**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌpile ˈinto sb/sth to crash into sb/sth: *She stopped dead in the middle of the pavement and we all piled into her.* ◇ *As many as 30 cars and trucks piled into each other in the fog this morning.*
→ *see also* PILE UP, PILE STH UP
◈ v + prep

ˌpile ˈon if sb's weight **piles on**, it increases rapidly: *The pounds have just piled on since I got married!*
◈ v + adv

ˌpile sth ˈon 1 to express a feeling in a much stronger way than is necessary: *I admit I'm piling on the drama a bit, but I'm trying to make a serious point.* **2** to give sb a lot or too much of sth: *United **piled on the pressure** in the second half* (= of the football game). OBJ **pressure**, **guilt** **3** to make sth increase rapidly: *As soon as she stops dieting she piles on the pounds.* ◇ *The team were piling on the points.* OBJ **pounds**, **weight**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

IDM **pile on the ˈagony/ˈgloom** (*informal, especially BrE*) to make an unpleasant situation worse

ˌpile ˈout; **ˌpile ˈout of sth**
→ *see also* PILE IN/OUT, PILE INTO/OUT OF STH

ˌpile ˈup; **ˌpile sth ˈup 1** to form a pile; to make a lot of things into a pile: *Snow was piling up against the windows.* ◇ *They piled the stones up in a corner of the yard.* **2** to increase or to make

sth increase in quantity or amount: *Rubbish was piling up in the streets.* ◇ *The bills were piling up and we had no money to pay them.* ◇ *Liverpool should have gone on to pile up a big score* (= in a game of football).
Ⓖ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
2 v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)
▸ **ˈpile-up** *n* a road accident in which several vehicles crash into each other: *Eleven cars were involved in a pile-up on the motorway.* ◇ *Three people were killed in a multiple pile-up.*

pin /pɪn/ (-nn-)

ˌpin sb ˈdown 1 to make sb unable to move, especially by holding them firmly: *The older boy had pinned Jimmy down on the floor.* ◇ *The rebels were pinned down* (they could not move from their position) *just south of the border.* **2 (to sth/to doing sth)** to make sb say clearly exactly what they are going to do: *You'll find it difficult to pin him down to a price.* ◇ *They pinned the builders down to finishing by June.* SYN **nail sb down (to sth) 3** to find sb and make them answer a question or tell you what you need to know: *She tried to pin him down for an interview, but he was always busy.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpin sth ˈdown to identify or understand sth exactly: *There's something wrong with this photograph but I can't quite pin it down.* ◇ *Doctors have been unable to pin down the cause of her symptoms.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈpin sth on sb to make sb seem responsible or take the blame for sth they have not done: *They tried to pin the blame on me!*
OBJ **blame**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep
IDM **ˌpin (all) your ˈhopes on sb/sth; ˌpin your ˈfaith on sb/sth** to rely on sb/sth completely for success or help: *Police are pinning their hopes on finding the murder weapon.*

ˌpin sth ˈup 1 to fasten sth to a wall, etc. with pins: *He pinned up a notice on the board.* ◇ *Can I pin this poster up?* **2** to fix your hair in place with pins: *She was pinning her hair up in front of the mirror.* OBJ **hair**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈpin-up** *n* **1** a picture of an attractive person, designed to be put up on the wall for people to look at: *The walls of his room were covered in pin-ups.* ◇ *He was football's first pin-up boy.* **2** a person who appears in a pin-up

pine /paɪn/

ˌpine aˈway to become very sad, and sometimes ill or weak because sb has died or gone away: *After his wife died, he just pined away.* ◇ *He seemed to be pining away from love.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˈpine for sb/sth to want or miss sb/sth very much: *She wasn't really pining for Brazil at all.* ◇ *a dog pining for its master*
Ⓖ v + prep

pipe /paɪp/

ˌpipe ˈdown (*informal*) used to tell sb to be less noisy or to stop talking: *OK, everybody pipe down!*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌpipe ˈup (with sth) (*informal*) to begin to speak: *Debbie suddenly piped up with 'I've seen this film before!'*
Ⓖ v + adv • v + adv + speech

piss /pɪs/

ˌpiss aˈbout/aˈround (*BrE*, ⚠, *slang*) to act in a silly or unhelpful way and waste time: *We haven't got time to piss about.*
NOTE A more polite, informal way of saying this is **mess around** or, in British English, **mess about**.
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌpiss sb aˈbout/aˈround (*BrE*, ⚠, *slang*) to treat sb in an unhelpful way that wastes their time: *Don't piss me about, just tell me the truth!*
NOTE A more polite, informal way of saying this is **mess sb around**, or, in British English, **mess sb about**.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˈpiss down; ˈpiss it down (*BrE*, ⚠, *slang*) to rain very heavily: *It's still pissing (it) down out there.*
SUBJ only **it** SYN **pour down** (*BrE, more formal*)
NOTE **Piss (it) down** is always used with the subject **it**. • A more polite, informal way of saying this is **chuck it down**: *It's still chucking it down outside.*
Ⓖ v + adv • v + it + adv

ˌpiss ˈoff (⚠, *slang, especially BrE*) used to tell sb rudely to go away: *I told him to piss off.* ◇ *Piss off and leave me alone!*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌpiss sb ˈoff (⚠, *slang*) to make sb annoyed or bored: *Everybody's pissed off with what's going on.* ◇ *It really pisses me off when I see people behaving like that.*
NOTE **Pissed off** (*BrE*) and **pissed** (*AmE*) are often used as adjectives: *I was really pissed off with him.* A more polite way of saying **piss sb off** is **get on sb's nerves**: *It really gets on my nerves when I see people behaving like that.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

pit /pɪt/ (-tt-)

ˌpit sb/sth/yourself aˈgainst sb/sth to test sb/sth/yourself in a struggle or competition with sb/sth: *It's a chance to pit yourself against the champion.* ◇ *I'd like to* ***pit my wits against the best minds in the country*** (= to test my intelligence). ◇ *I like sailing as I enjoy* ***pitting my strength*** *against the wind and the waves.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

pitch /pɪtʃ/

ˌpitch ˈin (with sb/sth) (*informal*) to join in willingly with sb to help with an activity: *We all pitched in and soon finished the job.* ◇ *Lots of people pitched in with advice.* ◇ *Ruth pitches in with the adult workers at the stables before she goes off to school.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌpitch ˈinto sb (*informal, especially BrE*) to attack or criticize sb: *They really pitched into me when I refused to cooperate.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌpitch ˈinto sth (*informal, especially BrE*) to start doing sth with energy and enthusiasm: *I rolled up my sleeves and pitched into the cleaning.* ◇ *All of them pitched into the fight.*
SYN **launch into sth**
Ⓖ v + prep

pivot /ˈpɪvət/

ˈpivot on/around sth to depend on a central point; to develop from a central idea or point: *The success of the project pivots on investment from abroad.* ◇ *The novel pivots around a long conversation between two characters.*
SYN **hinge on sth**
Ⓖ v + prep

plan /plæn/ (-nn-)

ˌplan aˈhead (for sth) to make arrangements in advance: *It's impossible to plan ahead when things keep changing!* ◇ *We need to plan ahead for our retirement.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˈplan on sth; ˈplan on doing sth; ˈplan on sb doing sth 1 to intend to do sth: *We'd planned on having a quiet evening at home tonight.* ◇ *I'm not planning on going to bed yet.* **2** (*often used in negative sentences*) to expect sth to happen: *We hadn't planned on a storm!* ◇ *They hadn't planned on so many people visiting the exhibition.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌplan sth ˈout to plan carefully and in detail sth that you are going to do in the future: *to plan out your time/route* ◇ *I knew exactly where I was going — I'd got it all planned out.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

plant /plɑːnt; *AmE* plænt/

ˌplant sth ˈout to put plants in the ground so that they have enough room to grow
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

plaster /ˈplɑːstə(r); *AmE* ˈplæs-/

ˌplaster ˈover sth to cover sth such as a crack or a wall with a substance that is put on wet and dries to form a hard, smooth surface (**plaster**): *The old brick had been plastered over.*
NOTE **Plaster over sth** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + prep

play /pleɪ/

~ about
~ about with
~ along
~ around
~ around with
~ at
208 ~ back
~ down
~ off
~ off against
~ on
~ out
~ up
~ up to
~ upon
~ with

ˌplay aˈbout (*BrE*) = PLAY AROUND

ˌplay aˈbout with sth (*BrE*) = PLAY AROUND WITH STH

ˌplay aˈlong (with sb/sth) to pretend to agree with sb/sth, to believe sb/sth, etc., to gain an advantage for yourself, amuse yourself, avoid trouble, etc: *He realized they'd mistaken him for the gardener, but decided to play along.* ◇ *I knew he was lying, but I decided to play along with him for a while.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌplay aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌplay aˈbout**) **1 (with sb/sth)** to behave in a careless way, without thinking about the results: *Stop playing about and get on with your work!* ◇ *Don't play around with matches!* SYN **mess around (with sb/sth); mess around with sth** (*BrE*) → *see also* PLAY AROUND WITH STH **2 (with sb)** (*informal*) to have a sexual relationship with sb who is not your usual partner
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌplay aˈround with sth (*BrE also* **ˌplay aˈbout with sth**) to test or try new ideas, methods, etc. to see how good or effective they are before you make a final decision: *Play around with the spreadsheet until you find the best way to display the data.* ◇ *We're still playing around with ideas for a new programme.*
Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˈplay at doing sth (*especially BrE*) to do sth without any effort or real interest: *He's just playing at being in love.*
Ⓖ v + prep
IDM **ˈtwo can play at ˈthat game** used to tell sb who has played a trick on you that you can do the same to them **what is sb playing at?** (*informal*) used to ask in an angry way about what sb is doing: *What do you think you're playing at?*

ˌplay sth ˈback (to sb) to play music, sound, film, etc. that has been recorded on a tape or video: *Can you play back what we've just recorded?*

OBJ **tape**

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▶ **ˈplayback** *n* [U] [C] the act of playing music, showing a film/movie or listening to a telephone message that has been recorded before; a recording that you listen to or watch again: *A TV playback showed exactly what had happened.*

ˌplay sth ˈdown to try to make sth appear less important than it is: *The government is trying to play down its involvement in the affair.*

OPP **play up sth, play it/them up**

NOTE **Downplay sth** is also used with the same meaning: *The report downplayed the effects of large class sizes in schools.*

◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌplay ˈoff (*especially BrE*) if two teams, players, etc. that have the same number of points in a competition **play off**, they play a final game to decide who has won: *The two Germans played off for a place in the final.*

◆ v + adv

▶ **ˈplay-off** *n* a game or games between two players or teams with equal points in a competition to decide who the winner is: *We're unlikely to reach the play-offs.* ◇ *The title was decided by a sudden-death play-off.* ◇ *a play-off final*

ˌplay A ˈoff against B (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˈplay A off B**) to make two people or groups oppose each other, especially in order to gain an advantage for yourself: (*BrE*) *He tries to play one parent off against the other.* ◇ (*AmE*) *The children played their parents off each other.* ◇ *She played her two rivals off against each other and got the job herself.*

◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌplay ˈon 1 (*sport*) to continue to play; to start playing again: *They claimed a penalty but the referee told them to play on.* **2** to continue to play music: *Despite the uproar, the musicians played on.*

◆ v + adv

ˈplay on sth (*also* **ˈplay upon sth** *more formal*) to deliberately use sb's fears, etc. for your own advantage: *He played on my feelings of guilt to make me stay.* ◇ *The government played on people's fears of rising crime to get support for their policies.*

OBJ **fears** SYN **exploit sth** (*formal*)

◆ v + prep

ˌplay ˈout (*informal*) if a band, etc. **plays out**, it performs in front of an audience: *Serious bands should be playing out regularly.* ◇ *Playing out is the best way for a DJ to build a following.*

◆ v + adv

ˌplay ˈout; ˌplay itself/themselves ˈout (*formal*) to develop and come to an end or be no longer useful or important: *The crisis has yet to play out.* ◇ *The revolution soon played itself out.*

NOTE This phrasal verb is usually used in written English.

◆ v + adv • v + pron + adv

▶ **ˌplayed ˈout** *adj* completely finished; too tired or weak to continue: *She was played out — too exhausted even to cry.*

ˌplay sth ˈout 1 when an event **is played out**, or sb **plays it out**, it happens: *The negotiations are being played out behind closed doors.* ◇ *She continued to play out her role of dutiful daughter.* NOTE **Play sth out** is often used in the passive. **2** (*especially AmE*) to continue to play sth until it finishes: *We'll play out this game and then go to bed.* **3** to let a length of rope pass through your hands bit by bit

◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌplay ˈup; ˌplay sb ˈup (*informal, especially BrE*) **1** if a part of your body, a machine, etc. **plays up** or **plays you up**, it causes you problems: *My leg's playing up again* (= it is painful). ◇ *My back plays me up from time to time.* ◇ *The car started playing up* (= not working in a reliable way) *about six months ago.* ◇ *The computer's been playing me up recently.* **2** if children **play up** or **play sb up**, they behave very badly: *The kids have been playing up all day.* ◇ *All kids play new teachers up.*

NOTE **Play up, play sb up** are often used in the progressive tenses.

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌplay ˈup sth; ˌplay it/them ˈup to try to make sth appear more important than it really is: *She played up her achievements in an attempt to impress us.*

OPP **play sth down**

NOTE A noun must always follow **up**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **up**.

◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv

ˌplay ˈup to sb (*BrE*) to behave towards sb in a way that you think they will like and will bring you an advantage: *She always played up to her father.*

◆ v + adv + prep

ˌplay ˈup to sth (*especially BrE*) to behave in the way that people expect you to: *She doesn't look 12. People think she's only 8 or 9, and she plays up to this all the time.*

◆ v + adv + prep

ˈplay upon sth = PLAY ON STH

ˈplay with sb/sth (*disapproving*) to behave towards sb in a way that is not serious, especially by pretending to feel sth you do not feel: *She was just playing with my emotions.*

◆ v + prep

ˈplay with sth (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) if you **play with** an idea, you think about it, but do not really intend to do anything about it: *She's playing with the idea of starting her own business.*

OBJ **idea** SYN **toy with sth**

◆ v + prep

ˈplay with yourself (*informal*) to touch your sexual organs in order to give yourself pleasure

◆ v + prep

plod /plɒd; *AmE* plɑːd/ (**-dd-**)

ˌplod aˈlong/ˈon to continue doing sth, especially difficult or boring work, at a very slow rate: *Keep plodding on — you'll soon be finished!* ◇ *They're still plodding along with their investigation.*

◆ v + adv

ˌplod aˈway (at sth) to work steadily but slowly at a difficult or boring task: *He plodded away all night at his project to get it finished.*

◆ v + adv

plonk (*especially BrE*) /plɒŋk; *AmE* plɑːŋk, plɔːŋk/ (*AmE usually* **plunk**)

ˌplonk ˈdown; ˌplonk yourself ˈdown (*informal*) to sit down heavily and quickly: *She plonked herself down in front of the telly.*

SYN **plump down, plump yourself down**

◆ v + adv • v + pron + adv

ˌplonk sb/sth ˈdown (*informal*) to drop sth or put sth down heavily without taking great care: *She plonked the food down in front of them.* ◇ *Don't just plonk the baby down on the floor.*

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

plough (*BrE*) (*AmE* **plow**) /plaʊ/

ˌplough sth ˈback (into sth), ˌplough sth back ˈin to put profits back into the business that produced them: *All the profits are ploughed back into the company.* ◇ *The director confirmed that every penny had been ploughed back in.*

OBJ **profits, money**

NOTE **Plough sth back** is usually used in the passive.

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌplough ˈinto sb/sth (of a vehicle or a driver) to crash violently into sb/sth: *The car hit a lamppost before ploughing into a wall.*

◆ v + prep

ˌplough sth ˈinto sth; ˌplough sth ˈinto doing sth to invest a large amount of money on a project, a business etc: *$50 million will be ploughed into the area over the next five years.*

SYN **sink sth into sth**

◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌplough ˈon (with sth) to continue to say or do sth even though it becomes difficult: *No one was listening to him but he* ***ploughed on regardless.*** ◇ *The path was steep, but we ploughed on until we got to the top.*

◆ v + adv

ˌplough ˈthrough sth; ˌplough your way ˈthrough sth 1 to force a way through sth: *The car ploughed its way through the snow and ice.* ◇ *The journey involved ploughing through 50 miles of swamp land.* **2** (of a vehicle or an aircraft) to crash violently through sth: *The car ploughed through the hedge.* **3** to slowly do, read or eat all of sth even though it is difficult or boring: *It took me hours to plough through all the mail.* ◇ *I had to plough my way through a mountain of pasta because I didn't want to appear rude.*

◆ v + prep • v + n + prep

ˌplough sth ˈup 1 to break the surface of an area of land that has not been used for growing crops before, and turn it over using a special piece of farming equipment (a **plough**): *He ploughed up the field ready for sowing.* ◇ *action to prevent farmers ploughing up footpaths* **2** to break up the surface of the ground by walking or driving across it again and again: *He got so angry he ploughed up his neighbour's lawn with his motorbike.*

◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

plow (*AmE*) /plaʊ/

ˌplow sth ˈback (into sth), ˌplow sth back ˈin (*AmE*) = PLOUGH STH BACK (INTO STH), PLOUGH STH BACK IN

ˌplow ˈinto sb/sth (*AmE*) = PLOUGH INTO SB/STH

ˌplow sth ˈinto sth; ˌplow sth ˈinto doing sth (*AmE*) = PLOUGH STH INTO STH, PLOUGH STH INTO DOING STH

ˌplow ˈon (with sth) (*AmE*) = PLOUGH ON (WITH STH)

ˌplow ˈthrough sth; ˌplow your way ˈthrough sth (*AmE*) = PLOUGH THROUGH STH, PLOUGH YOUR WAY THROUGH STH

ˌplow sth ˈup (*AmE*) = PLOUGH STH UP

pluck /plʌk/

ˈpluck at sth to take hold of sth with your fingers and pull it towards you in a quick, sharp movement: *He plucked at my sleeve. 'Come and sit down.'*

◆ v + prep

plug /plʌg/ (**-gg-**)

ˌplug aˈway (at sth) (*informal*) to work hard and steadily at sth for a long time, especially sth difficult or boring: *Scientists have been plugging away at the problem for years.*

◆ v + adv

ˌplug ˈin; ˌplug ˈinto sth 1 to be able to be connected to a source of electricity or another piece of electrical equipment: *Where does the TV plug in?* ◇ *The guitar plugs into this amplifier.* **2** to become involved with a particular activity or group of people: *The company hopes to plug into new markets in Asia.*

◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˌplug sth ˈin; ˌplug sth ˈinto sth to connect a piece of electrical equipment to the electricity supply or to another piece of electrical equipment: *Don't forget to plug the printer in.* ◇ *Where can I plug in my hairdryer?*
OPP **unplug sth (from sth)**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep
▸ **ˈplug-in** *adj* [only before noun] that can be connected to an electricity supply with a plug (= a small plastic object with two or three metal pins): *a plug-in kettle*
▸ **ˈplug-in** *n* (*computing*) a piece of software (= programs used to operate a computer) that can be added to a computer system to give extra features: *plug-ins for a palmtop computer* ◇ *a plug-in graphics card*

ˌplug sth ˈinto sth 1 = PLUG STH IN, PLUG STH INTO STH **2** to connect a computer to a computer system → *see also* PLUG-IN at PLUG STH IN, PLUG STH INTO STH
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌplug sth ˈup to fill or block a hole with a substance or a piece of material that fits tightly into it: *We plugged up all the holes around the window to stop the wind coming in.*
OBJ **hole** SYN **block sth up**
NOTE **Plug sth** is often used with the same meaning.
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

plumb /plʌm/

ˌplumb sthˈ in (*BrE*) to connect a washing-machine, a bath, etc. to a water system: *He's plumbed in the new washing machine for me.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

plump /plʌmp/

ˌplump ˈdown; ˌplump yourself ˈdown (*informal*) to sit down quickly and heavily: *She plumped herself down in the armchair.*
SYN **plonk down, plonk yourself down**
◆ v + adv • v + pron + adv

ˌplump sth ˈdown (*informal*) to put sth down suddenly and carelessly: *He plumped his books down on the table.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈplump for sb/sth (*BrE, informal*) to choose or vote for sb/sth after thinking about it carefully: *I think I'll plump for the steak.*
◆ v + prep

ˌplump ˈup to become rounder or fatter: *Soak the raisins until they plump up.*
◆ v + adv

ˌplump sth ˈup to make sth such as a cushion rounder and softer by shaking it: *Let me plump up your pillows for you.*
OBJ **cushion, pillow**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

plunge /plʌndʒ/

ˌplunge ˈin; ˌplunge ˈinto sth 1 to jump or fall in to sth, usually with some force: *He plunged into the pool.* ◇ *The car plunged into a gorge.* ◇ *We ran down to the sea and plunged in.* **2** to begin doing sth or talking about sth without preparing for it or thinking carefully: *He plunged into the task of clearing the office.* ◇ *I plunged in and started telling him all about it.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˌplunge sth ˈin; ˌplunge sth ˈin/ˈinto sth to put sth quickly and with force into sth else: *She plunged the knife into his leg.* ◇ *He opened the sack and plunged his arm in.*
OBJ **knife, hand**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌplunge ˈinto sth = PLUNGE IN, PLUNGE INTO STH

ˌplunge ˈinto sth; ˌplunge sb/sth ˈinto sth to be or to make sb/sth suddenly be in a bad situation or state: *The country plunged into recession.* ◇ *The city was plunged into chaos as a result of the strike.* ◇ *The room was suddenly plunged into darkness.*
OBJ **recession, despair**
NOTE **Plunge sb/sth into sth** is often used in the passive.
◆ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌplunge sth ˈinto sth = PLUNGE STH IN, PLUNGE STH IN/INTO STH

plunk /plʌŋk/

ˌplunk ˈdown; ˌplunk yourself ˈdown (*AmE, informal*) = PLONK DOWN, PLONK YOURSELF DOWN
◆ v + adv

ˌplunk sb/sth ˈdown (*AmE, informal*) = PLONK SB/STH DOWN (*figurative*) *Movie goers* ***plunked down $1.7 billion for tickets*** (= spent that amount on tickets) *this summer.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ply /plaɪ/ (plies, plying, plied, plied)

ˈply sb with sth 1 to keep giving sb large amounts of sth, especially food and drink: *They plied us with tea and cakes.* **2** to keep asking sb questions: *They plied me with questions about my visit to England.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

point /pɔɪnt/

ˌpoint sb/sth ˈout (to sb) to show sb which person or thing you are referring to, for example by moving your head, by describing them/it, etc: *Will you point his wife out to me if you see her?* ◇ *He drove them around Beverley Hills pointing out where the stars lived.* ◇ *The guide pointed out various historic monuments.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpoint sth ˈout (to sb) to mention sth in order to give sb information about it or make them notice it: *He thanked me for pointing out the mistakes in his report.* ◇ *I must point out that my part in the rescue was very small.* ◇ ***It must be pointed out that*** *this new drug is not a miracle cure.* ◇ *He doesn't like having his faults pointed out to him.* ◇ *'He's not my father, he's my stepfather,' he pointed out angrily.*
NOTE **Point sth out** is often used in the pattern **point out that…**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + speech

ˈpoint to sth 1 to mention sth that you think is important and/or the reason why a particular situation exists: *She pointed to unemployment as a reason for rising crime.* **2** if a fact, event or situation **points to** sth, it suggests that this is true or likely to happen: *All the signs pointed to a successful year ahead.* ◇ *The facts seem to point to him having been murdered.* ◇ *She had symptoms which pointed to a diagnosis of kidney failure.*
◆ v + prep

ˌpoint ˈup sth; ˌpoint it/ˈthem up (*BrE, formal*) to give special emphasis to one particular aspect of a problem, fact or opinion; to show sth very clearly: *This incident points up the hostility between the two sides.*
NOTE A noun must always follow **up**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **up**.
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv

poke /pəʊk; *AmE* poʊk/

ˌpoke aˈbout/aˈround; ˌpoke aˈbout/aˈround sth (*informal*) **1** (*also* **ˌpoke ˈthrough sth** *especially AmE*) to look for sth, especially sth that is hidden among other things that you have to move: *They were poking around in the bushes, looking for their ball.* ◇ *What were you doing poking about in my room?* ◇ *He spent his weekends poking around dusty old bookshops.* ◇ *Customs officials poked through the containers looking for weapons.* **2** to try to find out information, especially secret or hidden information; to get involved in sth that does not concern you: *A reporter had been poking around, trying to discover something in my past.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˌpoke aˈround; ˌpoke aˈround sth (*AmE, informal*) to move or do things slowly, without hurrying: *I was just poking around in town all morning.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˈpoke at sth to push your finger, a stick, etc. into sth, often several times: *She poked at her salad with her fork.*
SYN **prod at sth**
◆ v + prep

ˌpoke ˈout; ˌpoke ˈout of sth (*also* **ˌpoke ˈthrough, ˌpoke ˈthrough sth**) if sth **pokes out** or **pokes out of** sth, you can see it because a small part is coming through a hole or is no longer covered: *His toes were poking through the holes in his socks.* ◇ *Two feet poked out from under the bed.* ◇ *There were flowers poking out of holes in the wall.*
SYN **stick out, stick out of sth; stick through, stick through sth**
◆ v + adv • v + adv + prep • v + prep

ˌpoke sth ˈout; ˌpoke sth ˈout of sth to move sth suddenly forwards or out of sth: *The door opened and Max poked his head out.* ◇ *The pony poked its nose out of the door as I went past.*
OBJ **head, tongue** SYN **stick sth out, stick sth out of sth**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*) • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌpoke ˈthrough; ˌpoke ˈthrough sth = POKE OUT, POKE OUT OF STH

ˌpoke ˈthrough sth (*especially AmE*) = POKE ABOUT/AROUND, POKE ABOUT/AROUND STH 1

ˌpoke ˈup to become visible because a small part is coming through a hole, etc: *The grass had begun to poke up through the snow.*
SYN **stick up**
◆ v + adv

polish /ˈpɒlɪʃ; *AmE* ˈpɑːl-/

ˌpolish sb ˈoff (*informal, especially AmE*) to kill someone: *She hired an assassin to polish him off.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpolish sth ˈoff (*informal*) to finish sth quickly, especially food or drink: *They polished off the pudding in no time.* ◇ *I'll polish off this last bit of work, then we can go out.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌpolish sth ˈup 1 to make changes to sth in order to improve it: *The college needs to polish up its image.* OBJ **act, image 2** to improve your skills in sth that you have learned but have not used for a long time: *She went on a course to polish up her German.* OBJ **French, Italian, etc.** SYN **brush sth up**
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ponce /pɒns; *AmE* pɑːns/

ˌponce aˈbout/aˈround (*BrE, informal*) to do silly things in a way that looks ridiculous, especially to attract attention; to waste time: *He ponces around on the show, interviewing members of the audience.* ◇ *I could have finished that job while you've been poncing around!*
◆ v + adv

poop /puːp/

ˌpoop ˈout (*AmE, slang*) **1** **(on sth)** (*also* **ˌpoop ˈout of sth**) to fail to do something that you have arranged to do; to stop doing sth because you are very tired or afraid: *I was supposed to go out last night but I pooped out.* **2** if a machine **poops out**, it stops working
G v + adv **1** also v + adv + prep

ˌpoop sb ˈout (*AmE, informal*) to make sb very tired: *A long day at the office poops me out.*
G v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˌpooped ˈout** *adj* [not before noun] (*informal, especially AmE*) very tired: *I was pooped out after a long day at the office.*

pop /pɒp; *AmE* pɑːp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌpop ˈin (*informal, especially BrE*) to visit sb/sth for a short time: *She often pops in for coffee.* ◇ *I'll pop in to see you at the weekend.*
SYN **drop in (on sb/at …)**
G v + adv

ˌpop sth ˈin/ˈround (*BrE*) to deliver sth to sb on your way to another place: *I'll pop the library books in on my way home.* ◇ *Could you pop those photos round later?*
SYN **drop sth by**; **drop sth in (to sb/sth)**; **drop sth off**
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌpop ˈoff (*informal, especially BrE*) **1** to go or leave somewhere, especially for a short time: *I'm going to pop off early tonight* (= leave work early), *if it's all right with you.* ◇ *They just pop off to France whenever they feel like it.* **2** (*old-fashioned*) to die: *When I pop off, all my money goes to you.*
G v + adv

ˌpop sth ˈon (*BrE, informal*) **1** to put on a piece of clothing quickly: *He popped on his jacket and went out.* **2** to turn on a piece of electrical equipment: *I'll pop the kettle on and we'll have some tea.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌpop ˈout 1 (*also* **ˌpop ˈout of sth**) to come out from a place suddenly: *He just popped out from behind a tree.* ◇ (*figurative*) *I didn't mean to tell them — it just popped out* (= I spoke) *before I realized.* ◇ (*figurative*) *His eyes nearly popped out of his head* (= he was very surprised) *when he saw what she was wearing.* **2** (*especially BrE*) to leave somewhere for a very short time: *John's just popped out to get a newspaper.*
G v + adv **1** also v + adv + prep

ˌpop ˈover/ˈround (*BrE*) to visit sb's home for a short time: *Pop over if you feel lonely.*
SYN **drop by**; **drop over** (*especially AmE*)
G v + adv

ˌpop ˈup (*informal*) to appear or happen when you do not expect it: *He seems to pop up in the most unlikely places.* ◇ *When you click with the mouse, a menu pops up.*
G v + adv
▸ **ˈpop-up** *adj* [only before noun] **1** (of a book, etc.) having pictures that stand up when you open the pages: *a pop-up book* **2** (*computing*) a **pop-up** function is one that appears quickly on the screen when you choose it while you are working on another document: *a pop-up menu/window*

pore /pɔː(r)/

ˈpore over sth to study sth by looking at it or thinking about it very carefully: *She was poring over an old map.*
G v + prep

post /pəʊst; *AmE* poʊst/

ˌpost sth ˈoff (to sb) (*BrE*) to send sth to sb by post/mail: *I posted a letter off to you this morning.*
OBJ **letter, parcel** SYN **mail sth off**; **send sth off (to sb)**
NOTE You can also use **post a letter, etc.**, but this often refers to the action of putting the letter in the mailbox: *Did you remember to post my letter when you went out?*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌpost sth ˈup to put a notice, etc. up on a wall so that people can see it: *The exam results will be posted up in the hall.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

potter (*BrE*) /ˈpɒtə(r); *AmE* ˈpɑːt-/ (*AmE* **putter**)

ˌpotter aˈbout/aˈround; **ˌpotter aˈbout/aˈround sth** to do things or move without hurrying, especially when you are doing sth that you enjoy and that is not important: *They spent the day pottering about by the river.* ◇ *She was happy just pottering around the house.*
OBJ **the house, the garden**
G v + adv ◆ v + prep

pounce /paʊns/

ˈpounce on sb/sth (*also* **ˈpounce upon sb/sth** *more formal*) to quickly notice sth that sb has said or done, and criticize it or use it for your own advantage: *As soon as I opened my mouth, the teacher pounced on me.* ◇ *He said something silly and the other boys pounced on it at once.*
SYN **seize on sth** (*more formal*)
NOTE **Pounce on/upon sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *His mistake was pounced on by the press.*
G v + prep

ˈpounce on sth (*also* **ˈpounce upon sth** *more formal*) to accept an opportunity, etc. with enthusiasm: *She pounced on the opportunity to work with them.*
SYN **seize sth** (*more formal*)
G v + prep

pound /paʊnd/

ˌpound sth ˈout to play a tune on a musical instrument very loudly: *Cole was pounding out a tune on the piano.* ◇ (*figurative*) *She pounded out her poems on an old typewriter.*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

pour /pɔː(r)/

ˌpour sth aˈway to get rid of a liquid by emptying it out of its container: *He poured the water away after he finished washing the car.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˈpour down to rain heavily: *It's pouring down.* ◇ *The rain poured down all weekend.*
SYN **pelt down**
NOTE **Pour** is also used with this meaning, but only with the subject *it*: *It's pouring* (*with rain*).
G v + adv
▸ **ˈdownpour** *n* a heavy shower of rain

ˌpour ˈforth; **ˌpour ˈforth sth** (*formal*) to appear or to produce sth from somewhere in large numbers or amounts: *The doors opened and a crowd of people poured forth.* ◇ *He poured forth a stream of bitter accusations.*
G v + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌpour ˈin; **ˌpour ˈinto sth** to arrive somewhere in large numbers or amounts: *Complaints poured in after last night's programme.* ◇ *Sunlight poured in through the windows.* ◇ *Fans were still pouring into the stadium.*
SYN **flood in, flood into sth**
G v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌpour sth ˈinto sth to provide a large amount of money for sth: *The council has been pouring money into the area.*
G v + n/pron + prep

ˌpour sth ˈoff to remove some of the liquid from a container, cooking pot, etc. by pouring: *When the fish is cooked, pour off the water.*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌpour ˈout; **ˌpour sth ˈout 1** (*also* **ˌpour ˈout of sth, ˌpour sth ˈout of sth**) to come out or to produce sth from somewhere in large amounts or numbers: *Black smoke poured out of the engine.* ◇ *People poured out through the gates.* ◇ *Factory chimneys poured out smoke.* **2** when feelings or words **pour out**, or sb **pours them out**, they are expressed, usually after they have been kept hidden for some time: *All her feelings of resentment just **came pouring out**.* ◇ *The whole story then poured out.* ◇ *He poured out his troubles to me.*
G v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)
1 also v + adv + prep ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep
▸ **ˈoutpouring** *n* **1** [usually pl.] a strong and sudden expression of feeling: *She hated having to listen to his passionate outpourings.* **2** a large amount of sth produced in a short time: *a remarkable outpouring of scholarship*

power /ˈpaʊə(r)/

ˌpower ˈup; **ˌpower sth ˈup** if a machine **powers up**, or sb/sth **powers it up**, it is switched on and becomes ready to use: *Switch on the computer then wait for it to power up.* ◇ *This switch will power up the monitor.*
G v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

precede /prɪˈsiːd/

ˈprecede sth with sth (*formal*) to do or say sth before the main thing that you want to do or say: *They often precede their performances with a short talk or display.*
G v + n/pron + prep

predispose /ˌpriːdɪˈspəʊz; *AmE* -ˈspoʊz/

prediˈspose sb to sth (*also* **prediˈspose sb towards sth** *less frequent*) (*formal*) to make sb more likely to do something or to suffer from a particular illness: *Cigarette advertising predisposes children to smoking.* ◇ *His lifestyle predisposed him to high blood pressure.* ◇ *Certain people may be predisposed to mental illness.*
NOTE **Predispose sb to/towards sth** is often used in the passive: *He believes that some people are predisposed to criminal behaviour.*
G v + n/pron + prep

preface /ˈprefəs/

ˈpreface sth by/with sth; **ˈpreface sth by doing sth** (*formal*) to say sth before you start making a speech, answering a question, etc: *It is helpful if an interviewer prefaces each group of questions with a brief explanation.*
G v + n/pron + prep

prefix /ˈpriːfɪks/

ˈprefix A to B; **ˈprefix A with B** to add letters, numbers or words to the beginning of a number or word: *Prefix 020 to the number you want to call.* ◇ *Prefix the number you want to call with 020.*
G v + n/pron + prep

preside /prɪˈzaɪd/

preˈside over sth (*formal*) to lead or be in charge of a meeting, ceremony, etc: *She presided over the meeting.* ◇ *The court is presided over by a* *single judge.* ◇ (*figurative*) *His government presided over* (= were responsible for) *a massive increase in unemployment.*

NOTE Preside over sth can be used in the passive in its basic meaning.

◆ v + prep

press /pres/

ˌpress aˈhead/ˈon (*also* **ˌpress ˈforward** *less frequent*) (**with sth**) to continue moving forward quickly; to continue to do a task in a determined way: *He pressed on, even though it was now dark.* ◇ *They decided to press ahead with their plans.*

SYN **forge ahead (with sth)**

◆ v + adv

ˈpress for sth; **ˈpress sb for sth** to make repeated and urgent requests for sth: *The unions are pressing for a pay rise.* ◇ *I must press you for a reply.*

SYN **push for sth, push sb for sth**

◆ v + prep

ˌpress ˈforward = PRESS AHEAD/ON

ˌpress ˈin (**on/upon sb**) to move nearer to sb in a way that seems likely to cause harm: *He felt as if the walls were pressing in on him.*

SYN **close in (on sb/sth)**

◆ v + adv

ˌpress ˈon = PRESS AHEAD/ON

ˈpress sth on sb to try to make sb accept sth, even though they may not want it: *She pressed cake and tea on us.*

◆ v + n/pron + prep

presume /prɪˈzjuːm; *AmE* -ˈzuːm/

preˈsume on/upon sth (*formal*) to use sb's friendship or kindness for your own advantage in an unfair way: *I felt it would be presuming on our friendship to keep asking her for help.*

OBJ **friendship, hospitality**

NOTE Presume on/upon sth can be used in the passive.

◆ v + prep

pretend /prɪˈtend/

preˈtend to sth (*formal*) (*usually used in negative sentences and questions*) to claim to be or have sth, especially when it is not true: *I don't pretend to any great knowledge of the situation.*

◆ v + prep

prevail /prɪˈveɪl/

preˈvail on/upon sb (**to do sth**) (*formal*) to persuade sb to do sth: *Can I prevail on you to play the piano for us?*

NOTE Prevail on/upon sb can be used in the passive: *She was prevailed upon to give one final performance.*

◆ v + prep

prey /preɪ/

ˈprey on sb (*also* **ˈprey upon sb** *more formal*) to treat sb who is weaker than you in an unfair or dishonest way in order to get sth or gain an advantage for yourself: *The thieves have been preying on elderly people living alone.*

SYN **exploit sb**

NOTE Prey on/upon sb can be used in the passive

◆ v + prep

IDM **prey on sb's ˈmind** if a problem or a thought **preys on your mind**, you think and worry about it all the time

ˈprey on sth (*also* **ˈprey upon sth** *more formal*) if a bird or an animal **preys on/upon** another bird or animal, it hunts and kills it for food: *They prey on small mammals.*

NOTE Prey on/upon sth can be used in the passive: *These small fish are preyed upon by sharks and other fish.*

◆ v + prep

pride /praɪd/

ˈpride yourself on sth; **ˈpride yourself on doing sth** to be proud of sth such as a personal quality or a skill: *She had always prided herself on her appearance.*

◆ v + pron + prep

print /prɪnt/

ˌprint sth ˈoff/ˈout to produce a document or information from a computer in printed form: *I'll print off enough copies for everyone to have one.* ◇ *I'm waiting for the results to be printed out.*

OBJ **copy**

◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

▸ **ˈprintout** *n* a printed copy of information in a computer file: *She asked for a printout of the previous year's accounts.*

prise (*BrE*) (*AmE* **prize**) /praɪz/ (*also* **pry** /praɪ/ *especially AmE*)

ˌprise sth ˈout of sb; **ˈprise sth from sb** to obtain some information, etc. from sb with great difficulty: *I finally managed to prise his new address out of her.* ◇ *She had a way of prising secrets from people.* ◇ *You'll be lucky to prise any money out of him!*

◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep • v + n/pron + prep

prize (*AmE*) /praɪz/

ˌprize sth ˈout of sb; **ˈprize sth from sb** = PRISE STH OUT OF SB, PRISE STH FROM SB

proceed /prəˈsiːd; *AmE* proʊ-/

proˈceed against sb (*formal, law*) to start a court case against sb: *I shall instruct my solicitor to proceed against you for trespass.*

NOTE Proceed against sb can be used in the passive.

◆ v + prep

proˈceed from sth (*formal*) to be caused by or be the result of sth: *The dispute proceeded from a wrong interpretation of the law.*

◆ v + prep

prod /prɒd; *AmE* prɑːd/ (**-dd-**)

ˈprod at sth to press sth with your finger or with a pointed object, especially to see what it is, or what it is made of, etc: *He prodded at the plate of fish with his fork.*

SYN **poke at sth**

◆ v + prep

pronounce /prəˈnaʊns/

proˈnounce for/against sb/sth to give a judgement in a court of law for or against sb/sth

◆ v + prep

proˈnounce on/upon sth (*formal*) to express an opinion or give a judgement on sth: *The minister will pronounce on the situation today.*

◆ v + prep

prop /prɒp; *AmE* prɑːp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌprop sb ˈup; **ˌprop yourself ˈup** to support a person by putting sth under or behind them: *We propped her up with a pillow.* ◇ *He tried to prop himself up on his elbow.*

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌprop sth ˈup 1 to keep sth upright or stop sth from falling by putting sth under or behind it: *A family photo was propped up against some books on her desk.* ◇ *The tree had to be propped up with thick posts.* **2** to support sth that is having financial, political, etc. difficulties: *The regime is being propped up by foreign aid.* ◇ *The government will no longer prop up inefficient industries.*

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

provide /prəˈvaɪd/

proˈvide against sth (*formal*) to make plans in order to deal with or prevent a bad or unpleasant situation: *Does your insurance provide against loss of income?*

NOTE Provide against sth can be used in the passive.

◆ v + prep

proˈvide for sb to give sb the things that they need to live, such as food, money and clothing: *How will she provide for six children?* ◇ *My family will be well provided for if I die.*

OBJ **children, family**

NOTE Provide for sb can be used in the passive.

◆ v + prep

proˈvide for sth (*formal*) **1** to make plans or arrangements to deal with sth that may happen in the future: *The budget provides for rising inflation.* SYN **allow for sth 2** (of a law, etc.) to make it possible for sth to be done: *European legislation provides for expansion of the EU.*

NOTE Provide for sth can be used in the passive.

◆ v + prep

prowl /praʊl/

ˌprowl aˈround; **ˌprowl aˈround sth** (*also* **ˌprowl aˈbout/ˈround, ˌprowl aˈbout/ˈround sth** *especially BrE*) **1** to move quietly and carefully around an area, often with the intention of committing a crime: *There was someone prowling around outside.* ◇ *Why were you prowling about the building so late?* **2** to walk around a room, a building, etc., because you are worried, bored or unable to relax: *Her husband prowled about restlessly.* ◇ *She got up and prowled around the room.*

◆ v + adv • v + prep

pry (*AmE*) /praɪ/ (**pries, prying, pried, pried**)

ˌpry sth ˈout of sb; **ˈpry sth from sb** = PRISE STH OUT OF SB, PRISE STH FROM SB

psych /saɪk/

ˌpsych sb ˈout (*informal*) to make an opponent feel less confident by saying or doing things that make you seem better, stronger, etc. than them: *The other team tried to psych us out before the game started.*

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpsych sb ˈup; **ˌpsych yourself ˈup** (**for sth**) (*informal*) to prepare sb/yourself mentally for sth difficult or unpleasant, such as a game, an exam, an interview, etc: *Boxers need to psych themselves up for the fight.* ◇ *I'd got psyched up for the interview but then it was cancelled at the very last minute!*

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

puff /pʌf/

ˌpuff aˈway (**at/on sth**) (*informal*) (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) to smoke a pipe, cigarette, etc., often when you are thinking deeply: *He stood looking out of the window, puffing away at his pipe.*

◆ v + adv

ˌpuff sth ˈout to make sth larger and rounder by filling it with air: *She puffed out her cheeks in anger.* ◇ *Her hair was puffed out round her face.*

OBJ **cheeks, chest**

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpuff ˈup; ˌpuff sth ˈup to swell or to make sth swell and increase in size: *He could feel his face puffing up where Mark had hit him.* ◇ *He puffed up his chest like an exotic bird.* ◇ *The medicine makes my ankles puff up.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
IDM **be puffed up with ˈpride, self-imˈportance, etc.** to be too full of pride, self-importance, etc: *She was so puffed up with conceit she didn't notice people were avoiding her.*

pull /pʊl/

~ ahead, ahead of
~ apart
~ aside
~ at
~ away
~ back
~ down
~ for
217 ~ in
~ into
~ off
~ on
~ out, out of
~ over
~ through
218 ~ to
~ together
~ under
~ up

ˌpull aˈhead; ˌpull aˈhead of sb/sth to move in front of sb/sth, especially suddenly or unexpectedly: *I pulled ahead of the other runners on the last straight.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + prep

ˌpull sb/sth aˈpart 1 to separate sb/sth, often people or animals that are fighting: *It took several of us to pull them apart.* SYN **separate sb/sth** (*more formal*) **2** to severely criticize sb/sth: *She pulled my work apart and made me do it again.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌpull sth aˈpart to destroy sth or separate sth into pieces by pulling parts of it in different directions: *I pulled the machine apart, but couldn't find what was wrong with it.* ◇ *The fox was pulled apart by the dogs.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌpull sb aˈside to take sb to a quiet corner or place to talk to them privately: *I pulled him aside to warn him not to say anything.*
SYN **take sb aˈside**
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌpull sth aˈside to move sth such as a curtain so that you can see sth: *She pulled the curtain aside to reveal a small door.*
OBJ **curtain**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈpull at sth 1 to pull sth lightly several times especially to gain attention: *The little boy pulled anxiously at her sleeve.* **2** = PULL ON/AT STH
SYN **tug at sth**
◆ v + prep

ˌpull aˈway (from sth) 1 when a vehicle **pulls away**, it begins to move: *The train was pulling away as we reached the station.* ◇ *I started the engine and pulled away from the kerb.* **2** to gradually move further in front of sb/sth; to start to win a game or competition by getting more points than your opponent: *The British boat began to pull away from the Italians* (= in a race). ◇ *The German pair pulled away to finish three games ahead* (= in tennis). **3 (from sb/sth)** to move quickly away from sb/sth: *She pulled away from him in horror.*
◆ v + adv

ˌpull sb/sth aˈway (from sb/sth) to make sb/sth move away from sb/sth: *I pulled her away from the edge.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpull ˈback 1 (from sb/sth) to move backwards away from sb/sth: *He pulled back and stared at her in disbelief.* ◇ *The camera then pulled back to a wider view.* **2** to decide not to do sth you were intending to do, usually because of possible problems: *Their sponsors pulled back from financing the movie.* SYN **withdraw**
◆ v + adv

ˌpull ˈback; ˌpull sb/sth ˈback 1 to move back from a place; to make an army move back from a place **2** (*BrE, sport*) to improve a team's position in a game: *Rangers pulled back to 4–3.* ◇ *They pulled back a goal in the last few minutes of the game.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌpull sb/sth ˈback to hold sb/sth and move them/it backwards, sideways or away from sth: *I pulled the child back from the edge.* ◇ *He pulled back the curtain.* ◇ *She pulled the sheet back to show us the wound.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpull sb ˈdown (*informal, especially AmE*) to have a bad effect on sb's health or happiness: *The strain is really pulling me down.*
SYN **get sb down**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpull sth ˈdown 1 to move sth from a higher to a lower position: *She pulled down the blinds and locked the door.* ◇ *He dried his hands and pulled down his sleeves.* OBJ **blinds, trousers, arm 2** (*especially BrE*) to destroy a building completely: *My old school has been pulled down.* OBJ **house, building** SYN **demolish sth** (*more formal*) **3** (*computing*) to make a list of possible choices appear on a computer screen by pressing one of the buttons on the mouse **4** (*slang*) = PULL STH IN
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈpull-down** *adj* [only before noun] used to describe a list of possible choices that appears on a computer screen below a title: *a pull-down menu*

ˈpull for sb/sth (*AmE*) to support and encourage sb/sth and hope they will be successful: *Hang in there, we're all pulling for you to win!*
SYN **root for sb/sth**
◆ v + prep

ˌpull ˈin; ˌpull ˈinto sth 1 if a train or a bus **pulls in**, it arrives somewhere and stops: *The express pulled in on time.* ◇ *The coach pulled into bay 27.* **2** (*BrE*) if a vehicle or a driver **pulls in**, they move to the side of the road and stop: *Pull in in front of the bus.* ◇ *He pulled into the parking lot and turned off the engine.*
SYN **draw in, draw into sth**
OPP **pull out, pull out of sth**
◆ v + adv • v + prep
▸ **ˈpull-in** *n* (*old-fashioned, BrE*) an area at the side of a road where drivers can stop; a restaurant for drivers at the side of a road

ˌpull sb ˈin 1 (*informal*) to bring sb to a police station in order to ask them questions: *The police have pulled him in for questioning.* SYN **bring sb in 2** if an event or a show **pulls** people **in**, it attracts people in large numbers: *The show is still pulling in the crowds.* OBJ **crowds, customers** SYN **get sb in**
◆ **1** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
2 v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌpull sth ˈin (*also* **ˌpull sth ˈdown** *slang*) (*informal*) to earn a particular amount of money: *He must be pulling in a hundred thousand.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv (*rare*)

ˌpull ˈoff; ˌpull ˈoff sth (of a vehicle or its driver) to leave the road in order to stop for a short time: *He pulled off onto the verge.* ◇ *I pulled off the main road and stopped.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep + n

ˌpull sb/sth ˈoff; ˌpull sb/sth ˈoff sb/sth to forcefully pull away sb/sth attacking sb/sth else: *They tried to pull off the dogs with their hands.* ◇ *He had to be pulled off the older man by two policemen.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌpull sth ˈoff 1 to remove an item of clothing quickly or with difficulty: *She pulled off her hat and gloves.* SYN **take sth off** OPP **pull sth on 2** (*informal*) to succeed in doing or achieving sth difficult: *The goalie pulled off a terrific save.* ◇ *If anyone can* **pull it off**, *I'm sure you can.* SYN **bring sth off**
◆ **1** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
2 v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌpull sth ˈon to put an item of clothing on quickly or with difficulty: *I pulled my shorts on and ran outside.*
SYN **put sth on** OPP **pull sth off**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈpull on/at sth to take long deep breaths from a cigarette, etc: *She pulled on her cigar.*
OBJ **cigarette, cigar**
◆ v + prep

ˌpull ˈout 1 (*also* **ˌpull ˈout of sth**) if a train or bus **pulls out**, it leaves a place: *The train pulled out (of the station) on time.* SYN **draw out, draw out of sth** OPP **pull in, pull into sth 2 [+ adv/prep]** (of a vehicle or its driver) to move away from the side of a road, from behind sth, etc: *I pulled out onto the main road.* ◇ *A white van suddenly pulled out in front of me.*
◆ v + adv **1** also v + adv + prep

ˌpull ˈout; ˌpull ˈout of sth; ˌpull sb/sth ˈout; ˌpull sb/sth ˈout of sth 1 to move or to make sb/sth move away from sth or stop being involved in it: *They are pulling their troops out of the war zone.* **2** (*also* **ˌpull ˈout of doing sth, ˌpull sb/sth ˈout of doing sth**) to stop being involved in sth or decide not to do sth you had promised to do; to make sb do this: *The other firm wanted to pull out of the deal.* ◇ *The manager has pulled the team out of the competition.* ◇ *The company is pulling out of sponsoring the team.*
SYN **back out, back out of sth, back out of doing sth; withdraw (from sth), withdraw sb/sth (from sth)** (*more formal*)
◆ v + adv • v + prep • v + n/pron + adv •
v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv + prep
▸ **ˈpull-out** *n* an act of taking an army away from an area; an act of taking an organization out of a system, a deal, etc: *their unexpected pull-out from the competition*
→ *see also* PULL-OUT at PULL STH OUT, PULL STH OUT OF STH

ˌpull sth ˈout; ˌpull sth ˈout of sth 1 to take sth out of somewhere by pulling: *He pulled an envelope out of his pocket.* ◇ *The woman suddenly pulled out a knife.* **2** to remove sth from sth else; to separate sth from sth else: *I pulled out the middle page of the magazine to show him.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + adv + prep
▸ **ˈpull-out** *n* a part of a magazine, newspaper, etc. that can be taken out easily and kept separately: *an eight-page pull-out* ◇ *a pull-out guide to health*
→ *see also* PULL-OUT at PULL OUT, PULL OUT OF STH, PULL SB/STH OUT, PULL SB/STH OUT OF STH

ˌpull ˈover; ˌpull sb/sth ˈover to move or to make sb/sth move, to the side of the road and stop: *He pulled over and jumped out of the car.* ◇ *I pulled over to let the ambulance pass.* ◇ *A police car pulled me over.*
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpull ˈthrough; ˌpull ˈthrough sth; ˌpull sb ˈthrough; ˌpull sb ˈthrough sth 1 to get better after an illness; to help sb get better after an illness: *Few people expected him to pull through after the accident.* ◇ *She has pulled through the operation remarkably well.* ◇ *He suffered terrible injuries, but his courage pulled him through.* **2** to succeed in doing sth very difficult or in dealing with difficult problems; to help sb do this: *He's got his problems at school, but with help he'll pull through.* ◇ *It's going to be tough but we'll pull through it together.* ◇ *She relied on her business experience to pull her through.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep • v + n/pron + adv •
v + n/pron + prep

ˌpull sth ˈto if you **pull** a door or a window **to**, you close it or almost close it by pulling it towards you: *Pull the door to on your way out.*
OBJ only **door, window**
SYN **shut sth** OPP **push sth to**
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌpull toˈgether if a group of people **pull together**, they act or work together in order to achieve sth: *If we all pull together, we'll finish by Friday.*
◈ v + adv

ˌpull sth toˈgether 1 to make all the different parts of an organization, an activity, etc. work together in a successful way: *His inspired leadership pulled the party together.* **2** to organize a variety of ideas, etc. in a logical and careful way: *This lecture pulls together several recent theories.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpull yourself toˈgether to gain control of your feelings and start to act in a calm and sensible way: *She made a great effort to pull herself together.* ◇ *Stop crying and pull yourself together!*
◈ v + pron + adv

ˌpull sb/sth ˈunder to make sb/sth become completely covered in water: *He felt the waves pulling him under.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌpull ˈup (of a vehicle, or its driver) to stop, especially for a short time: *He pulled up alongside me at the traffic lights.* ◇ *A taxi pulled up outside.*
SYN **draw up**
◈ v + adv

ˌpull sb ˈup 1 (*BrE*) (on/for sth) (*informal*) to criticize or correct sb for sth they have done badly or wrong: *She pulled him up on his untidy handwriting.* ◇ *I was pulled up for not using the correct procedure.* **2** to make sb stop doing or saying sth very suddenly: *The shock of his words* ***pulled me up short.*** ◇ *The expansion of industry was* ***pulled up sharply*** *by an economic crisis.* SYN **draw sb up**
→ *see also* DRAW YOURSELF UP
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpull sth ˈup 1 to move sth from a lower to a higher position: *She pulled her shorts up and put a T-shirt on.* **2** to remove sth from the ground with force: *Kids had pulled all the shrubs up.* **3** (to sth) to bring sth such as a chair closer to sb/sth: *Pull up a chair and sit down.* SYN **draw sth up**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
IDM **pull your ˈsocks up** (*BrE*) to try to develop a more serious, responsible attitude to your work; to improve your behaviour: *He'll have to pull his socks up if he wants to pass that exam.*

▸ **ˈpull-up** *n* an exercise in which you hold onto a high bar above your head and pull yourself up towards it: *She does 50 pull-ups and 100 sit-ups every morning.*

ˌpull yourself ˈup 1 to move your body into an upright position, especially by holding sth firmly and using force: *Julia pulled herself up from the sofa.* ◇ *I* ***pulled myself up to my full height*** *and glared angrily at Dan.* **2** to stop doing or saying sth very suddenly: *I started to ask about her family, but* ***pulled myself up sharply*** *when I saw she was getting upset.*
SYN **draw yourself up**
→ *see also* PULL SB UP
◈ v + pron + adv
IDM **pull yourself up by your (own) ˈbootstraps** (*informal*) to improve your situation yourself, without help from other people

pump /pʌmp/

ˌpump sth ˈin; ˌpump sth ˈinto sth to give large amounts of money or resources to sth: *Millions have been pumped into this industry.*
OBJ **money** SYN **inject sth** (into sth)
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌpump ˈout; ˌpump ˈout of sth; ˌpump sth ˈout; ˌpump sth ˈout of sth 1 (of a liquid) to come out of somewhere or to be produced from somewhere with force and in large amounts: *Blood was pumping out of the wound.* ◇ *Cars are pumping out tons of pollutants every year.* **2** if music, sound, etc. **pumps out** or sb **pumps** it **out**, it is produced from somewhere very loudly and for a long time: *Heavy metal was pumping out of huge speakers.*
◈ v + adv • v + adv + prep • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌpump sth ˈout; ˌpump sth ˈout of sth to remove a gas, liquid, etc. from inside sth with a pump: *The fire brigade pumped out the basement.* ◇ *The fire brigade pumped the water out of the basement.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌpump sb ˈup; ˌpump yourself ˈup (*informal, especially AmE*) to make sb feel more excited or determined about sth: *I was really pumped up for the race.*
NOTE **Pump sb up** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌpump sth ˈup 1 to fill a tyre, etc. with air using a pump: *Pump your tyres up before you set off.* **2** (*informal, especially BrE*) to increase the amount, value or volume of sth: *They always pump their prices up before Christmas.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

punch /pʌntʃ/

ˌpunch ˈin/ˈout; ˌpunch sb ˈin/ˈout (*AmE*) to record the time that you arrive at or leave work, by putting a card into a machine; to do this for sb else: *He punched in ten minutes late.* ◇ *I was in such a hurry to leave that I forgot to punch out.* ◇ *Would you punch me in? I'm going to be late.*
SYN **clock in/on, clock sb in/on** (*BrE*), **clock off/out** (*BrE*)
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

ˌpunch sth ˈin; ˌpunch sth ˈinto sth to put information into a computer, etc. by pressing keys: *She punched in the security code and the door opened.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌpunch ˈout; ˌpunch sb ˈout (*AmE*) = PUNCH IN/OUT, PUNCH SB IN/OUT

ˌpunch sb ˈout (*AmE, informal*) to hit sb repeatedly: *Touch my car and I'll punch you out.*
SYN **beat sb up**
→ *see also* PUNCH IN/OUT, PUNCH SB IN/OUT
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌpunch sth ˈout 1 to press a combination of buttons or keys on a computer, telephone, etc: *He picked up the phone and punched out Donna's number.* **2** to hit sth very hard and make a hole in it or make sth fall out: *The burglar had punched out a pane of glass to open the window.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

push /pʊʃ/

~ about
~ ahead/forward/on
~ around
~ aside
~ away
~ back
~ by/past
~ for
~ forward
~ in
220 ~ off
~ on
~ on/onto
~ out, out of
~ over
~ past
~ through
~ to
~ towards
~ up

ˌpush sb aˈbout (*especially BrE*) = PUSH SB AROUND

ˌpush aˈhead/ˈforward/ˈon (with sth) to continue with a plan in a determined way: *They pushed ahead with the modernization programme.*
→ *see also* PUSH ON
◈ v + adv

ˌpush sb aˈround (*also* **ˌpush sb aˈbout** *especially BrE*) (*informal*) to order sb to do things in a threatening or unpleasant way: *Don't let him push you around.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌpush sb/sth aˈside 1 to move sb/sth to a position where they do not prevent you from going somewhere or doing sth: *He pushed her aside and went into the room.* ◇ *I pushed the curtain aside to get a better view.* **2** to treat sb/sth as if they/it are not important; to avoid thinking about sb/sth: *When his sister brought home a school friend, he felt pushed aside and abandoned.* ◇ *Emma immediately pushed the unpleasant thought aside.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpush sb/sth aˈway to remove sb/sth from in front of you with your hands or arms, to show that you do not want them/it: *He offered to help, but she pushed him away.* ◇ *She pushed her plate away. 'I'm not hungry.'* ◇ (*figurative*) *Had he lied to me? I* ***pushed the thought away.***
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpush sb ˈback 1 to use force to make sb move backwards, especially by using your hands or arms: *The police pushed the protesters back.* **2** if sb **pushes** soldiers, an army, etc. **back**, they force them to move away from a place: *Magnus's army was gradually pushed back into a defensive circle.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpush sth ˈback 1 to make sth move backwards by using your hands, arms, legs, etc: *He pushed his chair back and stood up.* **2** to make the time or date of a meeting, etc. later than originally planned: *The release of their new album has been pushed back until early next year.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌpush ˈby/ˈpast; ˌpush ˈby/ˈpast sb to use force to go past other people, rudely making them move to one side: *She pushed by without saying a word.* ◇ *He followed me to the door and pushed past me into the house.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˈpush for sth; ˈpush sb for sth to keep asking for sth, or asking sb to do sth, because you think it is very important: *We are pushing hard for electoral reform.* ◇ *They're pushing me for a decision on the matter.*
SYN **press for sth, press sb for sth**
◈ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌpush ˈforward 1 to move forward through a group of people until you are near the front: *She pushed forward through the crowd.* **2** = PUSH AHEAD/FORWARD/ON **3** if soldiers, an army, etc. **push forward**, they move forward against the enemy, especially with some difficulty
◈ v + adv

ˌpush sb/yourself ˈforward to try to make sb notice sb/yourself, especially in order to obtain sth such as a job or a move to a more important job: *He's not the sort of person who pushes himself forward.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌpush ˈin (*BrE, informal*) to move in front of other people who are waiting in a line: *They thought I was trying to push in at the head of the queue.*
SYN **cut in** (*AmE*)
◈ v + adv

ˌpush ˈoff 1 (*informal, especially BrE*) used to tell sb rudely to go away: *Push off and leave me in peace!* **2** to leave sb/a place, especially in order to go home: *It's time I pushed off and did some work.* **3 (from sth)** to move away from the shore in a boat, or from the side of a swimming pool: *He pushed off from the bank and rowed downstream.*
◆ v + adv

ˌpush ˈon 1 (to…) to continue travelling somewhere: *We decided to push on to Kobe.* **2** = PUSH AHEAD/FORWARD/ON
◆ v + adv

ˈpush sth on/onto sb to try to make sb accept or buy sth they do not really want: *He keeps pushing his attentions on her.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌpush sb ˈout; **ˌpush sb ˈout of sth** to make sb leave a place or an organization: *He refused to resign, so his colleagues pushed him out.* ◇ *Patients are being pushed out of hospital before they are really ready.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌpush sb/sth ˈout to make sb/sth less important than before; to replace sb/sth with sb/sth else: *My parents didn't want me to feel pushed out by my younger brother.* ◇ *'Harry Potter' is pushing out more traditional children's stories.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌpush sb/sth ˈover to make sb/sth fall to the ground; to make sth fall onto its side or turn over: *I was pushed over in the playground.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈpushover** *n* (*informal*) **1** a task that is easy to do; a contest that you win easily: *The game against Sheffield will be a pushover.* **2** a person who is easy to influence or persuade

ˌpush ˈpast; **ˌpush ˈpast sb** = PUSH BY/PAST, PUSH BY/PAST SB

ˌpush ˈthrough; **ˌpush ˈthrough sth** to use force to cross a barrier, especially one formed by a crowd of people: *He **pushed his way through** to the front of the crowd.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˌpush sth ˈthrough; **ˌpush sth ˈthrough sth** to get a new law, plan or proposal officially accepted: *We're trying to push through the reforms as quickly as possible.* ◇ *The Prime Minister promised to push the bill through Parliament quickly.*
OBJ **bill, reforms, legislation**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌpush sth ˈto if you **push** a door or a window **to**, you close it or almost close it by moving it away from you: *I pushed the door to.*
OBJ only **door, window** SYN **shut sth**
OPP **pull sth to**
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌpush toˈwards sth to make progress towards achieving an aim: *We are pushing towards full monetary union in Europe.*
◆ v + prep

ˌpush sb toˈwards sth; **ˌpush sb toˈwards doing sth** to make sb try to do or achieve sth: *The need for aid finally pushed them towards cooperation with the USA.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌpush sth ˈup to make sth rise or increase: *A shortage of land pushed property prices up.*
OBJ **prices, rates, costs**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

put /pʊt/ **(putting, put, put)**

~ about
~ above
~ across
221 ~ aside
~ at
~ away
~ back
~ before
~ behind
~ by
~ down
222 ~ down as
~ down for
~ down to
~ forth
~ forward
~ in
~ in/into
~ in for
223 ~ into
~ off
224 ~ on
~ onto
~ out
225 ~ over
~ over on
~ past
~ through
226 ~ to
~ together
~ towards
~ under
~ up
227 ~ up to
~ up with
~ upon

ˌput aˈbout (*technical*) if a ship **puts about**, it changes direction: *The ship put about and headed back to port.*
◆ v + adv

ˌput sth aˈbout (*informal, especially BrE*) to spread information, stories etc. among a group of people: *Someone has been **putting it about that** you're leaving.* ◇ *This was an idea put about by the government.* ◇ *Rumours were put about that the shop was closing.*
OBJ **rumour, idea, it**
NOTE **Put sth about** is often used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈput sb/sth above sb/sth = PUT SB/STH BEFORE SB/STH

ˌput sth aˈcross (*also* **ˌput sth ˈover**) **(to sb)** to communicate your ideas, feelings, etc. to sb clearly and successfully: *The campaign failed to put the message across.* ◇ *She's very good at putting across her ideas.*
OBJ **message, idea, point** SYN **get sth across**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
IDM **put one aˈcross sb** (*informal*) to deceive or trick sb

ˌput yourself aˈcross (*also* **ˌput yourself ˈover**) **(to sb)** (*BrE*) to make sb understand your ideas, your personality, etc: *She puts herself across well at interviews.*
◆ v + pron + adv

ˌput sth aˈside 1 to place sth to one side: *She put the newspaper aside and stood up.* SYN **lay sth aside 2** to keep an item for a customer to collect later: *I asked them to put the dress aside for me.* **3** (*also* **ˌput sth ˈby** *especially BrE*, **ˌput sth aˈway**) to save some money to use later: *He had been putting some money aside every month.* OBJ **money 4** to decide to keep a period of time for a particular task or activity: *We need to put aside some time to deal with this.* OBJ **time 5** to ignore or forget sth: *Doctors have to put their personal feelings aside.* ◇ *They decided to put aside their differences.* SYN **set sth aside**; **disregard sth** (*more formal*)
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˈput sth/sb at sth to calculate or estimate something to be a particular size, amount, etc: *I'd put his age at about sixty.* ◇ *I'd put him at about sixty.* ◇ *The cost of the project is put at two million pounds.*
OBJ **figure, cost**
◆ v + n/pron + prep + n

ˌput sb aˈway (*informal*) **1** to send sb to prison, to a hospital for people who are mentally ill, etc: *He was put away for 15 years.* ◇ *If you're found guilty, they'll put you away for a long time.* NOTE **Put sb away** is often used in the passive in this meaning. **2** (*AmE, slang*) to kill sb: *He was ordered to put the hostage away.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌput sth aˈway 1 to put sth in a box, drawer, etc. because you have finished using it: *He washed the dishes and put them away.* ◇ *I'm just going to put the car away* (= in the garage). ◇ *Kids — will you put away your toys now?* **2** = PUT STH ASIDE 3 *She's putting some money away for college.* ◇ *I'm **putting** something **away for a rainy day*** (= for difficult times). **3** (*informal*) to eat or drink large quantities of sth: *They put away five bottles of wine between them!* ◇ *I don't know how he manages to put it all away!* **4** (*AmE*) = PUT STH DOWN 4
◆ **1,2** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
3 v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌput sth ˈback 1 to return sth to its usual place; to return sth to the place it was before: *He uses my things and never puts them back.* ◇ *Put the book back on the shelf, will you?* ◇ *She carefully put the letters back where she'd found them.* SYN **replace sth** (*more formal*) **2 (to…)** (*also* **ˌput sth ˈback…**) to move sth to a later time or date: *The meeting has been put back to next week.* ◇ *The game has been put back 24 hours.* SYN **postpone sth** (*more formal*) OPP **bring sth forward 3** to cause sth to be delayed: *The strike has put back our deliveries by over a month.* SYN **set sth back 4** to move the hands of a clock back to give the correct earlier time, especially at the end of summer: *We forgot to put the clocks back last night.* OBJ **the clocks, your watch** OPP **put sth forward 5** (*informal*) to drink a large quantity of alcohol: *I had just put back my sixth beer of the evening.* SYN **knock sth back 6 (into sth)** to give sth to or do sth for an organization, a society, etc. that has given you sth: *The school has been so good to me. I really want to put something back into it.* OBJ **something** SYN **give sth back 7** to spend more money on sth in order to make it better or more successful: *The government isn't putting enough money back into the economy.* OBJ **money**
◆ **1,2,4** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
3,5 v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
IDM **put the ˈclock back** to return to a situation that existed in the past: *I wish I could put the clock back and give our marriage another chance.*

ˈput sb/sth before sb/sth (*also* **ˈput sb/sth above sb/sth**) to give sb/sth more importance than sb/sth else: *He puts his children before anyone else.* ◇ *They have always put business before pleasure.* ◇ *Some young men put their own career above their partner's.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌput sth beˈfore sb/sth to present sth to sb/sth: *She will be able to put her arguments before the committee.* ◇ *The new evidence was put before the court.*
OBJ **proposal, evidence, plan**
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌput sth beˈhind you to try to forget about sth unpleasant that has happened and not allow it to affect your future: *She wanted to put the past behind her.*
OBJ **your/the past, your problems**
◆ v + n/pron + prep + pron

ˌput sth ˈby (*especially BrE*) = PUT STH ASIDE 3 *He puts a few pounds by every week.* ◇ *She's got some money put by.*

ˌput ˈdown (*especially BrE*) if an aeroplane or its pilot **puts down**, the plane comes down to the ground: *The plane put down at Manchester airport.* ◇ *He had to put down in a field.*
SYN **set down, set sth down; land, land sth**
◆ v + adv

ˌput sb ˈdown 1 (*also* **ˌput yourself ˈdown**) to criticize sb and make them feel stupid, especially in front of other people; to say something that suggests that you have a low opinion of yourself: *She's always putting people down.* ◇ *Don't put yourself down!* SYN **do sb down, do yourself down** (*BrE, informal*) **2** (*BrE*) (of a bus, etc.) to allow sb to get off: *The bus stopped to put down some passengers.* ◇ *Ask the driver to put you down outside the City Hall.* OBJ **passengers**

SYN **set sb down** (*especially BrE*) OPP **pick sb up** **3** to put a baby to bed: *She's just put the baby down.* OBJ **baby**

G **1,3** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)
2 v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▶ **ˈput-down** *n* (*informal*) a remark or an action that is intended to make sb look stupid: *She produces some wonderful put-downs.*

ˌput yourself ˈdown 1 = PUT SB DOWN 1 **2** = PUT SB/STH DOWN, PUT YOURSELF DOWN

ˌput sb/sth ˈdown to place sb/sth that you are holding onto the floor or another surface: *She put her bag down by the door.* ◇ *Put me down!* ◇ (*figurative*) *It's a great book. I couldn't put it down!* (= stop reading it)
OPP **pick sb/sth up**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌput sb/sth ˈdown; ˌput yourself ˈdown 1 **(for/as sth) (to do sth)** to add your name or someone else's to a list, etc. in order to arrange for you/them to do sth: *She put herself down for an aerobics class.* ◇ *I've put Jack's name down for the local school.* ◇ *We've been put down to go to a class at 4 p.m.* **2** **(as sth)** to write sth down; to make a note of sth: *I'll put the meeting down in my diary.* ◇ *He put himself down on the form as 'unfit'.* ◇ *I've put some ideas down on paper.* ◇ *Could you put down in writing what you feel?* ◇ *I've put you* (= your name) *down where it says 'next of kin'* (= on a form).
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌput sth ˈdown 1 to replace the receiver of a telephone and end your conversation: (*BrE*) *She put the phone down on me!* OBJ only **the phone, the receiver** **2** to pay part of the cost of sth: *I've put down a deposit on our trip.* OBJ **deposit** **3** to move sth from a higher to a lower position: *The sun's in my eyes — can I put the blind down?* ◇ *Put your feet down, please!* (= off the table/chair) ◇ *The rain stopped so she put her umbrella down.* **4** (*AmE also* **ˌput sth aˈway**) to kill an animal because it is old or sick: *The horse was injured and had to be put down.* ◇ *We had to* **have** *our cat* ***put down***. NOTE **Put sth down** is often used in the passive in this meaning. **5** to stop sth by force: *The revolt was swiftly put down.* OBJ **rebellion, uprising, revolt** SYN **suppress sth; crush sth** **6** to spread sth on the floor or ground: *We decorated the room and put a new carpet down.* ◇ *I'm going to put some poison down for the rats.* **7** (in a game of cards) to play a card: *She put down the ace of spades.* ◇ *Each player puts down a card in turn.* OBJ **card, ace, etc.** **8** to present sth formally for discussion by a parliament or a committee: *to put down a motion/an amendment* SYN **table sth** (*formal*)
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

IDM **put your ˈfoot down 1** (*BrE*) to drive faster; to drive very fast **2** to be very firm in opposing sth: *You'll just have to put your foot down and say no.* **put your ˈhead down** to go to sleep: *Why don't you put your head down for a while?*

ˌput sb ˈdown as sth to think that sb is a particular type of person, especially when you do not know them very well: *I put the boy down as a troublemaker as soon as I saw him.* ◇ *I would never have put you down as an athlete!*
G v + n/pron + adv + prep + n

ˌput sb ˈdown for sth to write down that sb is willing or wishes to buy sth, give an amount of money, etc: *Put me down for three tickets for the Saturday show.*
G v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˈput sth down to sth to consider that sth is caused by sth: *She tends to put everything down to fate.*
SYN **attribute sth to sth** (*formal*), **chalk sth up to sth** (*informal*)
G v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌput sth ˈforth (*formal* or *literary*) **1** = PUT STH OUT 9 *The plant put forth new leaves.* **2** (*especially AmE*) = PUT STH FORWARD 3 **3** (*AmE*) to make a strong physical or mental effort to do sth: *He isn't putting forth the necessary effort.* OBJ **effort**
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv (*rare*)

ˌput sb/sth ˈforward; ˌput yourself ˈforward **(for/as sth)** to suggest somebody or yourself as a candidate for a job, a position, etc: *Can I put your name forward for the job?* ◇ *Only one woman has put herself forward as a candidate.* ◇ *We would like to put you forward as head of department.* ◇ *My name was put forward for the scholarship by the principal.*
OBJ **name**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌput sth ˈforward 1 to move sth to an earlier time or date: *We've put the meeting forward a couple of days.* SYN **bring sth forward** **2** to move the hands of a clock forward to give the correct time, especially at the beginning of summer: *We forgot to put the clocks forward last night.* ◇ *France is an hour ahead, so you'll have to put your watch forward when you get there.* OBJ **the clocks, your watch** OPP **put sth back** **3** (*also* **ˌput sth ˈforth** *formal, especially AmE*) to suggest an idea or a plan so that it can be discussed: *She put forward several ideas for new projects.* ◇ *This theory was originally put forward by Darwin.* OBJ **argument, proposal, idea** SYN **bring sth forward**
G **1** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
2 v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)
3 v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌput ˈin **(at ...)**, **ˌput ˈinto** ... (*BrE*) (of a ship or its sailors) to stop in port for a short time: *The ship put in at Lisbon.* ◇ *The captain was instructed to put into Calais for repairs.*
OPP **put out (to/from...)**
G v + adv • v + prep

ˌput ˈin; ˌput ˈin sth to interrupt another speaker in order to say sth: *'But what about us?' he put in quickly.* ◇ *Could I put in a word?*
SYN **interject sth** (*more formal*)
G v + adv + speech • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌput sb ˈin (*especially BrE*) to elect a political party as the government; to choose sb officially to do a particular job: *The voters put the Conservatives in with a large majority.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌput sb ˈin/ˈinto sth 1 to make sb go to a particular institution, such as a school, hospital, etc: *He was put in prison for five years.* ◇ *An accident put him in hospital for three weeks.* ◇ *We had to put granny in/into a nursing home.* NOTE When this meaning of the phrasal verb is used with *hospital* and *prison*, **in** is usually used rather than **into**. **2** to give sb a particular job to do: *We put her in/into sales and she did really well.*
G v + n/pron + prep

IDM **put sb in the ˈpicture** (*informal*) to give sb the information they need in order to understand a situation: *You should put Mike in the picture as soon as possible.* **put sb in their ˈplace** to make sb feel stupid or embarrassed when they have shown too much confidence **put yourself in sb's shoes** to imagine that you are in another person's situation, especially when it is an unpleasant or difficult one: *Don't be angry with your brother. Try to put yourself in his shoes.*

ˌput sth ˈin 1 to fit a piece of equipment, furniture, etc. into a particular place: *Steve put the shower in by himself.* ◇ *They had central heating put in when they moved into the flat.* SYN **install sth** (*more formal*) **2** to officially make a claim, a request, etc: *I've put in a request for some extra funding.* ◇ *They've put in an offer on the house* (= they've said they would pay a particular amount for it). OBJ **offer, claim** **3** to give sth, such as time or money, in order to help sb/sth: *We all put in five pounds for Lucy's present.* **4** to plant sth in the ground: *Have you put any bulbs in this autumn?* OBJ **bulbs, seeds**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

IDM **put in an apˈpearance** to go somewhere for a short time: *I can't stay long at the party, but I'd better put in an appearance.*

ˌput sth ˈin; ˌput sth ˈin/ˈinto sth 1 to include sth in a story, a letter, etc: *He didn't put anything in his letter about coming to stay.* ◇ *When you write the report, make sure you put in the latest figures.* **2** to pay money into a bank account: *He put £500 into his account.* OBJ **money** SYN **pay sth in, pay sth into sth; deposit sth** **3** (*also* **put sth into doing sth**) to give a lot of time or effort to sth or to doing sth: *She's put a lot of effort into improving her French.* ◇ *Thank you for all the hard work you've put in.* OBJ **effort** **4** (*also* **put sth into doing sth**) to provide money for sth: *The school has put a lot of money into (buying) new equipment.* OBJ **money, resources** SYN **invest sth**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

▶ **ˈinput** *n* [C] [U] time, knowledge, ideas or work that you put into a project, etc. in order to make it succeed: *Nurses should have more input into the way patients are treated.* ◇ *Thank you for your input to the discussion.*

NOTE There is also a verb **input sth** meaning *to put information into a computer* and a related noun **input**.

ˌput ˈin for sth (*especially BrE*) to apply formally for sth: *Are you going to put in for that job?* ◇ *She's going to put in for a transfer.*
OBJ **transfer, job**
G v + adv + prep

ˌput sb/sth/yourself ˈin for sth to enter sth/yourself for a competition: *She's put herself in for the 100 metres.* ◇ *You should put that photo in for the competition.*
G v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌput ˈinto... (*BrE*) = PUT IN (AT ...), PUT INTO...

ˌput sb ˈinto sth = PUT SB IN/INTO STH

ˌput sth ˈinto sth 1 to add a quality to sth: *Do you need to put some excitement into your life?* **2** = PUT STH IN, PUT STH IN/INTO STH
G v + n/pron + prep

put sth into doing sth = PUT STH IN, PUT STH IN/INTO STH 3,4

ˌput ˈoff doing sth = PUT STH OFF 1

ˌput sb ˈoff 1 to cancel a meeting or sth you had arranged with sb: *He was supposed to come yesterday, but I put him off.* ◇ *Tell her you want to talk to her and don't be put off.* **2** (*BrE*) (of a vehicle, a driver, a ship, etc.) to stop in order to allow sb to get off: *I asked the bus driver to put me off near the town centre.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌput sb ˈoff; ˌput sb ˈoff sb/sth; ˌput sb ˈoff doing sth to make sb stop liking sb/sth; to make sb lose interest in sb/sth: *His manner tends to put people off.* ◇ *Your story is putting me off my food!* ◇ *The accident put her off driving for life.* ◇ *The way he treated his wife really put me off him.* ◇ *Don't be put off by her appearance — she's really very sweet.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*) •
v + n/pron + prep

▶ **ˈoff-putting** *adj* (*informal, especially BrE*) unpleasant; making sb dislike or not be interested in sth/sb: *The computer made a buzzing noise that she found off-putting.* ◇ *I find it very off-putting to have someone watching me all the time.* ◇ *His manner is very off-putting.*

ˌput sb ˈoff; ˌput sb ˈoff sth to disturb sb who is trying to give all their attention to sth: *Don't put* *me off when I'm trying to concentrate.* ◇ *The sudden noise put her off her game.*

SYN **distract sb (from sth)**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*) • v + n/pron + prep

ˌput sth ˈoff 1 (*also* **ˌput ˈoff doing sth**) to change sth to a later date or time: *We'll have to put the meeting off until next week.* ◇ *He keeps putting off going to the dentist.* SYN **delay sth 2** (*especially BrE*) to switch sth off: *Could you put the lights off before you leave?* OBJ **lights, the television, etc.** SYN **switch sth off; turn sth off**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n **1** also v + adv + -ing

ˌput sb ˈon (*AmE, informal*) (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) to laugh at sb, especially by pretending that sth is true that is not: *I thought you were putting me on!*

SYN **have sb on** (*BrE*)

NOTE **Put sb on** is not used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

▸ **ˈput-on** *n* [C, usually sing.] (*AmE, informal*) an act of laughing at sb by telling them that sth is true that is not; a joke or trick: *Don't take it so seriously — it was just a put-on.*

→ *see also* PUT-ON at PUT STH ON

ˌput sb ˈon; ˌput sb ˈon sth to give sb the telephone so that they can speak to the person calling: *She put Tim on the phone.* ◇ *Put Jane on for a minute, will you?*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌput sb ˈon sth 1 to make sure that someone gets on a plane, train, etc: *We put Ruth on the bus to Carlisle.* **2** to make someone follow a particular diet, take a particular medicine, etc: *The doctor put him on antibiotics.* ◇ *Tim's been put on a low-fat diet.* **3** to decide that someone should do a particular job: *They're going to put someone else on that project.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

ˌput sth ˈon 1 to put an item of clothing, etc. on your body: *Aren't you going to put your coat on?* ◇ *Hang on, I need to put my glasses on.* ◇ *I can't find anything clean to put on!* ◇ *Have you put your seat belt on* (= in a car)*?* ◇ *Could you put his shoes on for him?* OBJ **coat, shoes, glasses, etc.** OPP **take sth off 2** to apply sth to your skin: *She's putting her make-up on.* ◇ *Make sure you put some sun cream on before you go out.* OBJ **lipstick, make-up, perfume** SYN **apply sth** OPP **take sth off 3** (*especially BrE*) to switch sth on: *Shall I put the light on — it seems very dark in here?* ◇ *Let's put the kettle on and have a cup of tea.* OBJ **the light, the heating, the radio, the kettle** SYN **switch sth on; turn sth on** OPP **put sth off; switch sth off; turn sth off 4** to begin to cook food: *I need to get home and put the dinner on.* SYN **get sth on 5** to make a tape, a CD, etc. begin to play: *Do you mind if I put some music on?* ◇ *She put on a Bob Marley CD.* OBJ **some music, CD, tape, video 6** to operate the brakes on a vehicle (=a device for slowing or stopping the vehicle): *Don't forget to put the handbrake on.* ◇ *She put on the brakes suddenly.* OBJ **the brakes, the handbrake** SYN **apply sth** (*more formal*) **7** to grow heavier by the amount mentioned: *He's* ***put on a lot of weight*** *since I last saw him.* ◇ *I've put on two kilos in two weeks.* OBJ **weight** SYN **gain sth** (*more formal*) OPP **lose sth** NOTE **Put sth on** is not used in the passive in this meaning. **8** to provide sth specially: *They put on extra trains during the holiday period.* ◇ *A splendid lunch was put on for the visitors.* OBJ **bus, train** SYN **lay sth on** OPP **take sth off 9** to produce or present a play, an exhibition, etc: *The local drama group are putting on 'Macbeth'.* ◇ *The museum put on a special exhibition about dinosaurs.* OBJ **play, exhibition, show** SYN **stage sth** (*more formal*) OPP **take sth off 10** to pretend to have a particular feeling or quality: *He put on a hurt expression.* ◇ *Can you put on an American accent?* ◇ *She isn't really upset — she's just* ***putting it on.*** ◇ *He seemed furious, but I think it was all put on.* OBJ **accent, expression** SYN **assume sth** (*formal*)

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▸ **ˈput-on** *n* [C, usually sing.] (*AmE, informal*) something that is done to trick or deceive people: *Kate's shabby appearance is just a put-on. Her parents are both lawyers.*

→ *see also* PUT-ON at PUT SB ON

ˌput sth ˈon sth 1 to add an amount of money to the price or cost of sth: *The new tax put 20 pence on the price of a packet of cigarettes.* OPP **knock sth off sth 2** to bet money on sth: *I've put £10 on Sultan's Promise* (= the name of a horse) *in the next race.* OBJ **bet (on sth), money**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

ˌput sb ˈonto sb/sth (*also* **ˌput sb ˈon to sb/sth**) **1** to tell sb about a person, an organization, etc. that could help them, or something that they might like or find useful: *Could you put me onto a good accountant?* **2** to connect sb by telephone to sb else: *Could you put me onto the manager, please?* **3** to inform the police, etc. about a crime or a criminal: *Do you know who put the police onto the hackers?*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌput ˈout 1 (to/from…) (*BrE*) (of a boat or a crew) to move out to sea from a harbour, port, etc: *The ship put out to sea by night.* ◇ *We put out from Liverpool.* OPP **put in (at …) 2** (*AmE, slang*) (of a woman) to agree to have sex with sb: *She won't put out on a first date.* NOTE Some people consider **put out** offensive in this meaning.

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌput sb ˈout 1 to make trouble, problems, extra work, etc. for sb: *I hope our arriving late didn't put you out at all.* **2 be ˌput ˈout** to be upset or offended: *Jeff wasn't at all put out by what I said.* ◇ *I was a bit put out that I hadn't been invited.* **3** (*informal*) to make sb go to sleep or become unconscious: *These pills should put him out for a few hours.* → *see also* PUT YOURSELF OUT

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌput sth ˈout 1 to make sth stop burning: *Firefighters soon put the fire out.* ◇ *He put his cigarette out with his foot.* OBJ **fire, cigarette, candle** SYN **extinguish sth** (*more formal*) **2** (*especially BrE*) to switch sth off: *Put the light out before you come to bed.* OBJ **the light** SYN **put sth off; switch sth off; turn sth off 3** to take sth out of your house and leave it, often for sb to collect: (*BrE*) *Remember to put the dustbins/rubbish out tonight.* ◇ (*AmE*) *Remember to put the garbage/trash out.* ◇ *She put the washing out to dry.* OPP **bring sth in 4** to place sth where it will be noticed and used: *Have you put out clean towels for the guests?* **5** to stretch part of your body away from yourself towards sb else: *He put his hand out to shake mine.* OBJ **hand, tongue 6** (*also* **ˌput sth ˈout of sth**) to make sth, especially part of your body, come out through a door or window to the outside: *She opened the window and put her head out.* ◇ *Sam put the cat out of the door roughly.* **7** (*BrE*) to broadcast sth; to publish or issue sth: *The programme will be put out on Channel Four.* ◇ *The CD was put out for the American market.* ◇ *The police put out an urgent appeal for witnesses.* OBJ **appeal, statement** SYN **broadcast sth 8** (*informal*) to produce sth: *The factory puts out 500 new cars a week.* ◇ *They put out a new software package last month.* SYN **produce sth 9** (*also* **ˌput sth ˈforth** *more formal*) (of a plant) to develop or produce new leaves, etc: *The roses are putting out new shoots already.* OBJ **flowers, shoots, leaves 10** to make a figure, a result, etc. wrong: *A price increase put our estimates out by a thousand pounds.* **11 (to sb)** to give a job, a task, etc. to a worker who is not your employee or to another company so that the work will be done in another place: *A lot of editing is put out to freelancers.* ◇ *The cleaning contract was* ***put out to tender*** (= companies were asked to make offers to supply these services). OBJ **work 12** (*informal*) to push a bone out of its normal position: *She fell off her horse and put her shoulder out.* ◇ *You're going to put your back out lifting those boxes.* OBJ **your back, shoulder** SYN **dislocate sth** (*formal*)

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▸ **ˈoutput** *n* [U] [sing.] **1** the amount of something that a person, machine, company, etc. produces: *The company aims to increase output in the coming year.* ◇ *His musical output has diminished in recent years.* **2** (*computing*) the information produced by a computer: *data output* NOTE There is also a verb **output sth**, related to this meaning. **3** the power, energy, etc. produced by a piece of equipment: *an output of 100 watts*

ˌput yourself ˈout to make a special effort to do sth for sb: *Please don't put yourself out on our account.* ◇ *She really put herself out for the visitors.*

→ *see also* PUT SB OUT 1

Ⓖ v + pron + adv

be ˌput ˈout = PUT SB OUT 2

ˌput yourself ˈover (to sb) = PUT YOURSELF ACROSS (TO SB)

ˌput sth ˈover = PUT STH ACROSS

IDM **put one ˈover on sb** (*spoken, informal*) **1** to persuade sb to accept sth that is not true; to deceive sb: *No one is going to put one over on him.* **2** to show that you are better, stronger, etc. than sb else by defeating them: *We'd love to put one over on the Welsh team.*

ˌput sth ˈpast sb (to do sth) (*informal*) (*always used in negative sentences with* ***wouldn't***) to be surprised that someone has done something wrong, illegal, etc: *I wouldn't put it past him to use force to get what he wants.* ◇ *'She won't tell the teacher, will she?' 'I wouldn't put it past her!'* ◇ *Personally I wouldn't put anything past him!*

OBJ only **it, anything, that**

NOTE **Put sth past sb** is not used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

ˌput sb/yourself ˈthrough sth 1 to make sb/yourself experience sth unpleasant or difficult: *He* ***put*** *his parents* ***through hell.*** ◇ *Why* ***put*** *yourself* ***through it?*** ◇ *She never forgot the terrible ordeal he had put her through.* **2** to pay for sb to attend a school, college, etc: *She worked part-time to put herself through university.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

ˌput sb/sth ˈthrough (to sb/to…) to connect sb to sb else by telephone: *Could you put me through to the manager, please?* ◇ *The call was put through to the wrong extension.* ◇ *Hold the line, I'm putting you through.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌput sb/sth ˈthrough sth to test sb/sth to see what they are able to do: *We put the machines through a series of tests.* ◇ *The team are put through a fitness programme.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

IDM **put sb/sth through their/its ˈpaces** to give someone or something tasks to perform in order to find out what they are able to do: *He put the car through its paces.* ◇ *She watched the team being put through their paces.*

ˌput sth ˈthrough; ˌput sth ˈthrough sth to complete a plan, programme, etc. successfully: *This was the last deal James put through.* ◇ *Has the legislation been put through parliament?*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌput sth ˈthrough sth to change sth by using a machine, a process, etc: *She put some oranges through the juicer.* ◇ *The fish is then put through the smoking process* (= to produce smoked fish).

Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

▸ **ˈthroughput** *n* [U] [C, usually sing.] (*technical*) the number of people that are dealt with, or the amount of work that is done, in a particular period: *Hospitals have increased the throughput of patients.*

ˈput sb to sth to make trouble, problems or extra work for sb: *I hope we're not putting you to too much trouble.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep + n

ˈput sth to sb 1 to suggest sth to sb for them to consider: *Your proposal will be put to the board of directors.* ◇ *The question of strike action must be put to union members.* ◇ *When are you going to put the idea to your parents?* ◇ *I'll put it to you straight* (= tell or ask you sth in an honest and direct way). OBJ **proposal, idea, view 2** to ask sb a question: *The audience were invited to put questions to the panel.* OBJ **question**
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌput sth toˈgether 1 to make or repair sth by fitting parts together: *He took the clock apart and couldn't put it together again.* ◇ *Can you put a team together in time for the game on Saturday?* SYN **assemble sth** (*more formal*) OPP **take sth apart 2** to create sth: *He's putting together a travel guide for the British Isles.* ◇ *The band are putting their first album together.* **3** to combine things: *What reaction will we get if we put these two chemicals together?*
◆ **1,3** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)
2 v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

IDM **more, better, etc. than…put toˈgether** used when comparing sb/sth with a group of other people or things to mean 'combined' or 'in total': *This painting is worth more than all the rest put together.* **put our/your/their ˈheads together** to discuss sth as a group in order to reach a plan of action, a solution to a problem, etc: *We put our heads together and decided what had to be done.*

ˈput sth towards sth to use or give an amount of money to pay part of the cost of sth: *We will put the money towards a new computer.* ◇ *The city council will put £5 000 towards equipment for the nursery.*
OBJ **money**
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌput sb ˈunder (*informal, especially AmE*) to make sb unconscious before a medical operation: *I'm afraid we'll need to put you under for the operation.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌput ˈup [**+ adv/prep**] (*old-fashioned, especially BrE*) to stay somewhere for the night: *We put up at a hotel.*
◆ v + adv

ˌput ˈup sth 1 to resist strongly or fight hard in a game, a contest, an argument, etc: *The other team didn't put up much of a fight.* ◇ *She's not likely to put up much resistance to the idea.* OBJ **fight, resistance 2** to show a good level of skill in a game or a competition: *The team put up a great performance* (= played very well). OBJ **performance, show 3** to suggest an idea for other people to discuss: *to put up a proposal for a new book* OBJ **argument, proposal**
◆ v + adv + n

ˌput sb ˈup 1 to let sb stay at your home; to arrange for sb to stay somewhere: *We can put you both up for the night.* ◇ *They put us up at a hotel in town.* **2** (**for sth**) to present sb as a candidate in an election; to propose sb for an official position: *We hope to put up more women candidates in the next election.* ◇ *We want to put you up for club secretary.* OBJ **candidates**
◆ **1** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)
2 v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌput sth ˈup 1 to raise sth from a lower to a higher position: *Put your hand up if you want to ask a question.* ◇ *It started raining so I put my umbrella up.* ◇ *I've decided to put my hair up for the party.* ◇ *to put up a flag* OBJ **your hand, your hair 2** to fix or fasten sth in a place where it will be seen; to display sth: *Several warning signs have been put up.* ◇ *The exam results haven't been put up on the noticeboard yet.* ◇ *Annie's put posters up all over her bedroom.* ◇ *The stores have put their Christmas decorations up already.* OBJ **sign, poster, curtains, notice** OPP **take sth down 3** to build sth; to put sth into an upright position: *These apartment blocks were put up in the sixties.* ◇ *We had trouble putting the tent up in the dark.* ◇ *We need to put some shelves up for our books.* OBJ **tent, shelf, fence** OPP **take sth down; pull sth down 4** to increase the price or cost of sth: *The theatre has put up ticket prices.* ◇ *The banks have put up their interest rates again.* ◇ *The landlord wants to put up the rent by £20 a month.* OBJ **prices** SYN **raise sth** OPP **bring sth down 5** (*informal*) to provide or lend money: *James put up half the money for the car.* ◇ *A local businessman has put up the £500 000 needed to save the club.* OBJ **money 6 ˌput sth ˈup for sth** to offer sth to sb else for them to buy, etc: *The house has been* ***put up for sale.*** ◇ *Why did Jess* ***put*** *her baby* ***up for adoption?*** OBJ **house, baby, child**
◆ **1,2,3,4** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
5 v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)
6 v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

IDM **put your ˈfeet up** to sit down and relax: *I can't wait to get home and put my feet up for a while.* **a ˌput-up ˈjob** (*BrE, informal*) a plan or an event that has been arranged secretly in order to trick or deceive sb: *The kidnapping was a put-up job.*

ˌput sb ˈup to sth; ˌput sb ˈup to doing sth (*informal*) to encourage or persuade sb to do sth wrong or foolish: *Some of the older boys must have put him up to it.* ◇ *Her sister put her up to climbing into the house through an open window.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌput ˈup with sb/sth to accept sb/sth that is annoying, difficult or unpleasant, without complaining: *I don't know how your parents put up with you!* ◇ *We put up with that car for years.* ◇ *I don't see why I should put up with being spoken to like that.* ◇ *I can put up with the rain — it's the cold I don't like.* ◇ *She has a lot to put up with.*
SYN **tolerate sth** (*more formal*), **endure sth** (*more formal*)
◆ v + adv + prep

ˈput upon sb (*BrE*) to use sb's kindness for your own advantage by asking them to do things for you that you should not expect them to do: *I felt that my mother had been put upon.*
NOTE **Put upon sb** is often used in the passive.
◆ v + prep
▸ **ˈput-upon** *adj* badly treated by someone who uses your kindness for their own advantage: *My grandmother is the most put-upon member of the family.*

putter /ˈpʌtə(r)/

ˌputter aˈround; ˌputter aˈround sth (*AmE*) = POTTER ABOUT/AROUND, POTTER ABOUT/AROUND STH

puzzle /ˈpʌzl/

ˌpuzzle aˈbout sth = PUZZLE OVER/ABOUT STH

ˌpuzzle sth ˈout to find the solution to a difficult problem by thinking carefully about it: *She couldn't puzzle out where her keys could have gone.* ◇ *I spent hours trying to puzzle out an explanation for his behaviour.* ◇ *I can't puzzle out how the box opens.*
SYN **work sth out**
NOTE **Puzzle sth out** is often used with the question words *how, what, why*, etc. • It cannot be used in the passive.
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˈpuzzle over/about sth to think hard about something because you want to understand it: *Police are still puzzling over the incident.* ◇ *She puzzled over the postmark on the letter.*
◆ v + prep

Qq

quarrel /ˈkwɒrəl; *AmE* ˈkwɔːr-, ˈkwɑːr/ (**-ll-**, *AmE* **-l-**)

ˈquarrel with sth/sb (*especially BrE*) (*usually used in negative sentences*) to disagree with sth/sb: *Few would quarrel with the principle of free education for all.*
Ⓖ v + prep

queue /kjuː/ (**queuing** or **queueing**)

ˌqueue ˈup (for sth/to do sth) (*BrE*) to wait or stand in a line with other people in order to get sth or do sth: *They spent four hours queueing up for tickets.* ◇ *We had to queue up to get our visas.*
NOTE **Queue** is often used with the same meaning: *We spent four hours queueing for tickets.*
→ *see also* LINE UP 1
Ⓖ v + adv

be ˌqueuing ˈup for sth; be ˌqueuing ˈup to do sth if you say that people **are queuing up** for sth or to do sth, you mean that a lot of people are very eager to have sth or do sth: *Actors are queuing up to work with this company.*
Ⓖ be + v + adv + prep ◆ be + v + adv + to inf

quiet (*AmE*) /ˈkwaɪət/

ˌquiet ˈdown; ˌquiet sb ˈdown = QUIETEN DOWN, QUIETEN SB DOWN

quieten (*BrE*) /ˈkwaɪətn/ (*AmE* **quiet**)

ˌquieten ˈdown; ˌquieten sb ˈdown to become, or to make sb, calmer, less noisy or less active: *We've been really busy at work during the summer but **things should quieten down** now.* ◇ *It took a long time for the baby to quieten down.* ◇ *Can you quieten the kids down?*
NOTE **Quieten/quiet** and **quieten/quiet sb** are also used with the same meaning, especially in more formal language: *The class quietened.*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

quit /kwɪt/ (**quitting**, **quit**, **quit**, *BrE also* **quitting**, **quitted**, **quitted**)

ˈquit on sb (*AmE, informal*) **1** to stop helping, working with or supporting sb when they need you most: *I can't believe he quit on the team after only two games!* ◇ *You can't quit on me now, we're almost there!* **2** if a machine, a vehicle, etc. **quits on** you, it stops working at a time when you really need it: *The air-conditioning quit on us in mid-July.*
Ⓖ v + prep

Rr

rabbit /ˈræbɪt/

ˌrabbit ˈon (about sb/sth) (*BrE, informal, disapproving*) to talk about sth for a long time in a boring way: *What's he rabbiting on about?*
SYN **go on (about sb/sth)**
Ⓖ v + adv

rack (*also* **wrack** *less frequent*) /ræk/

ˌrack ˈup sth; ˌrack it/them ˈup (*informal, especially AmE*) to get or collect a large amount or quantity of sth, such as profits or losses in a business or points in a competition: *The company racked up $20 billion in sales.* ◇ *Bush has racked up victories in another five states.*
NOTE A noun must always follow **up**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **up**.
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv (*less frequent*)

raffle /ˈræfl/

ˌraffle sth ˈoff to offer sth as a prize in a raffle (– a way of making money when people buy tickets with a number on and some of the numbers are later chosen to win prizes): *The cake will be raffled off to raise money for the school.*
NOTE **Raffle sth** is used more frequently with this meaning.
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

rail /reɪl/

ˈrail against/at sb/sth (*formal*) to protest about sb/sth in an angry or bitter way: *to rail against the government/authorities* ◇ *There's no point railing against the decision.*
Ⓖ v + prep

rain /reɪn/

ˌrain ˈdown (on/upon sb/sth), ˌrain sth ˈdown (on/upon sb/sth) to fall or to make sth fall on sb/sth in large quantities: *Huge boulders rained down on us.* ◇ *He rained blow after blow down on my skull.*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

be ˌrained ˈoff (*BrE*) (*AmE* **be ˌrained ˈout**) (*informal*) if an event such as a sports game is **rained off**, it stops or it does not take place because of rain: *The game was rained off.* ◇ *It looks as if the concert is going to be rained off.*
Ⓖ be + v + adv

rake /reɪk/

ˌrake sth ˈin (*informal*) to earn large amounts of money without difficulty: *The company rakes in about £190 million.* ◇ *Since she moved to London she's been **raking it in**.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌrake ˈover sth (*BrE, informal, disapproving*) to examine sth that happened in the past in great detail and keep talking about it, when it should be forgotten: *There's no point in raking over the events of the past.*
OBJ **the past**
Ⓖ v + prep
IDM **rake over old ˈcoals/ˈashes** to discuss sth that happened in the past in detail, when it should be forgotten **rake sb over the ˈcoals** (*AmE*) (*BrE* **haul sb over the ˈcoals**) to criticize sb severely because they have done sth wrong

ˌrake sth ˈup 1 to talk about sth unpleasant that has happened in the past, which people would like to forget: *I didn't come here to rake up old arguments.* **2** to collect sth into a pile using a tool with a long handle and a row of metal points at the end (a **rake**): *I raked up all the leaves.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

rally /ˈræli/ (**rallies**, **rallying**, **rallied**, **rallied**)

ˌrally aˈround/ˈround; ˌrally aˈround/ˈround sb if people **rally around** or **rally around sb**, they work together to help and support sb who is in a difficult or unpleasant situation: *When she was ill, the neighbours all rallied round to help her and bring her meals.* ◇ *His friends rallied around him as soon as they heard the news.*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ram /ræm/ (**-mm-**)

ˌram ˈinto sb/sth; ˌram sth ˈinto sth to hit sth violently; to make sth hit sth violently: *He was going too fast and rammed into the car in front.* ◇ *The thieves rammed their truck into the jeweller's window.*
Ⓖ v + prep ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ramble /ˈræmbl/

ˌramble ˈon (about sb/sth) (*BrE*) to talk or write a lot about sb/sth in a confused and boring way: *What is she rambling on about?* ◇ *There's me rambling on, and you haven't told me your news yet.*
Ⓖ v + adv

range /reɪndʒ/

be ˌranged aˈgainst/ˈwith sb/sth; ˌrange yourself aˈgainst/ˈwith sb/sth (*formal*) to join with other people to oppose sb/sth: *He felt as*

though the whole family was ranged against him. ◇ *She ranged herself more with her parents than with her brother.*
◆ be + v + prep • v + pron + prep

rap /ræp/ (-pp-)

ˌrap sth ˈout to say sth quickly and sharply: *The officer rapped out orders.*
OBJ **command, order** SYN **bark sth out**
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*) • v + adv + speech

rat /ræ/ (-tt-)

ˈrat on sb (*informal*) to give information to people in authority, causing trouble for sb: *Say what you like about Ali but he has never ratted on his friends.*
◆ v + prep

ˈrat on sth (*BrE, informal*) to fail to keep a promise you have made: *They accused the government of ratting on promises to the disabled.*
OBJ **promise, pledge**
◆ v + prep

ratchet /ˈrætʃɪt/

ˌratchet sth ˈup to make prices, etc. increase a little at a time: *The interest rates have been ratcheted up sharply.* ◇ *The hormone rushes around the brain, ratcheting the heart rate up from 60–80 to about a hundred.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The government have ratcheted up the pressure on the protest organizers.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ration /ˈræʃn/

ˌration sth ˈout to divide sth that there is not very much of between a group of people in such a way that everyone gets a small share: *They rationed the water out among the survivors.*
OBJ **food, water**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

rattle /ˈrætl/

ˌrattle aˈround; **ˌrattle aˈround sth** (*informal*) to live, work, etc. somewhere that is much too big for your needs: *There are only two of us, rattling around in this massive office.* ◇ *They're rattling around that house now that the children have left.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˌrattle sth ˈoff to say or repeat sth from memory, quickly and without any effort: *She rattled off the names of the movies Hitchcock had directed.*
SYN **reel sth off**
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌrattle ˈon (about sth) (*informal*) to talk quickly and for a long time about sth that is not important or interesting: *He rattled on about his job for over an hour.*
SYN **waffle on (about sth)**
◆ v + adv

ˌrattle ˈthrough sth (*BrE, informal*) to do something very quickly: *He rattled through his homework then went out.*
◆ v + prep

reach /riːtʃ/

ˌreach sth ˈdown (for sb) to get sth down from a high place: *Could you reach that vase down for me?* ◇ *She reached down a box from the top shelf.*
NOTE In informal spoken language **reach sb down sth** is also used: *Could you reach me down that vase?*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌreach ˈout; **ˌreach sth ˈout** to stretch your arm or your hand in order to touch or get something: *He reached out to switch on the light.* ◇ ***I reached out a hand** to touch her face.* ◇ *The child reached out for her hand.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌreach ˈout to sb to show sb that you are interested in them and/or want to help them; to try to get people's interest or attention: *The organization is trying to reach out to people of all ages and from all levels of society.* ◇ *The party has failed to reach out to young people.* ◇ *The makers of this movie have tried to reach out to an older audience.*
◆ v + adv + prep
▶ **ˈoutreach** *n* [U] the activity of an organization that provides a service or advice to people in the community, especially those who cannot or are unlikely to come to an office, a hospital, etc. for help: *a rural outreach programme* ◇ *outreach work*

read /riːd/ (read, read /red/)

ˌread sth ˈback to read a message, a letter etc. aloud in order to check that it is correct: *I got her to read the message back to me to make sure it was right.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌread sth ˈinto sth to think that something has a meaning or an importance that it probably does not have: *It's a mistake to read too much into the results of one opinion poll.* ◇ *You can read anything you want into horoscopes.* ◇ *Her voice was cold and I wasn't sure what to read into it.*
OBJ **too much, something, anything**
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌread sth ˈoff to look at the measurement shown on a machine or other measuring device: *The speed can be calculated or read off from the graph.* ◇ *I looked at the thermometer and read off the temperature.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌread ˈon to continue reading: *The book was so exciting he read on until dawn.* ◇ *The idea is to make the reader want to read on.* ◇ *If you want to find out more, read on!*
◆ v + adv

ˌread sth ˈout (to sb) 1 to read sth aloud, especially to other people: *She read out the names of the winners.* ◇ *The teacher read my poem out to the class.* ◇ *There's a letter from Tom. Shall I read it out to you?* **2** (*especially AmE, computing*) to get back information that is stored on a computer; to produce a display of the information on a screen
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + speech
▶ **ˈread-out** *n* (*computing*) a record or display of information on a computer screen: *The computer will work out the best route for you and give you a read-out on the screen.*

ˌread sth ˈthrough (*also* **ˌread sth ˈover** *less frequent*) to read something from the beginning to the end, usually in order to find any mistakes: *I read through my translation, checking for mistakes.* ◇ *When she read her letter through the next day, she decided not to send it.* ◇ *When she'd finished, Emily read over what she'd written.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌread ˈup on sb/sth; **ˌread sb/sth ˈup** (*also* **ˌread ˈup about sb/sth** *less frequent*) to read a lot about a particular subject in order to learn about it: *Have you been reading up on the history of the island?* ◇ *I've been reading this place up in the library.*
◆ v + adv + prep • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

rear /rɪə(r); *AmE* rɪr/

ˈrear sb/sth on sth to give a person or an animal a particular type of food, entertainment, etc. when they are young: *I was reared on jazz, but later discovered rock.*
NOTE **Rear sb/sth on sth** is usually used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌrear ˈup 1 if a horse, etc. **rears up**, it stands on its back legs with its front legs in the air: *The horse reared up and she fell off.* **2** if a building, cliff, etc. **rears up**, it seems to lean over you in a threatening way: *The cliff reared up before them.*
NOTE **Rear** is also used with these meanings, especially meaning 1: *The horse reared and she fell off.*
◆ v + adv

reason /ˈriːzn/

ˌreason sth ˈout to think carefully about something in a logical way in order to understand it: *Let's try to reason out why he behaved as he did.* ◇ *Reason it out for yourself — why do you think she didn't say where she was going?*
SYN **figure sb/sth out; work sth out**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈreason with sb to talk to sb in order to persuade them to be more sensible: *It's impossible to reason with her when she's in this mood.*
NOTE **Reason with sb** can be used in the passive: *He can't be reasoned with.*
◆ v + prep

rebound /rɪˈbaʊnd/

reˈbound on sb (*also* **reˈbound upon sb** *more formal, less frequent*) if sth that you do, especially sth that is intended to be unpleasant for sb else, **rebounds on/upon** you, it has a bad or unpleasant effect for you instead: *His little trick seems to have rebounded on him.* ◇ *These measures could rebound on the poorest families* (= affect them instead of the people they were intended to affect).
◆ v + prep

reckon /ˈrekən/

ˈreckon on sb/sth; **ˈreckon on doing sth**; **ˈreckon on sb/sth doing sth** to rely on sb/sth or on sth happening; to expect sb to do sth or sth to happen: *We were reckoning on a profit of about half a million.* ◇ *You can reckon on my support.* ◇ *We hadn't reckoned on them arriving so early.* ◇ *You can't always reckon on having good weather in June.* ◇ *The company thought they would easily get permission to build a hotel, but they hadn't reckoned on the local people.*
SYN **count on sb/sth, count on doing sth, count on sb/sth doing sth**
◆ v + prep

ˌreckon sth ˈup (*especially BrE*) to add figures or numbers together: *That'll be £20.50, if I've reckoned it up correctly.*
SYN **add sth up; calculate sth** (*more formal*)
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈreckon with sb/sth 1 (*usually used in negative sentences*) to consider sb/sth as a possible problem that you should be prepared for: *Unfortunately, we hadn't reckoned with Emily.* ◇ *We must reckon with the possibility of failure.* **2** to consider or deal with sb/sth as a serious opponent or problem: *He had to reckon with a great deal of opposition.* ◇ *The team are still **a force to be reckoned with*** (= they will be difficult to defeat).
NOTE In this meaning **reckon with sb/sth** can be used in the passive.
◆ v + prep

ˈreckon without sb/sth (*especially BrE*) to not consider sb/sth as a possible problem and therefore not be prepared for it: *We allowed an hour to get there, but we'd reckoned without the traffic* (= it took us much longer).
◆ v + prep

reconcile /ˈrekənsaɪl/

ˈreconcile sb/yourself to sth; **ˈreconcile sb/yourself to doing sth** to make sb/yourself accept an unpleasant situation because there is nothing you can do to change it: *They were reconciled to the fact that he wouldn't be coming back.* ◇ *I've reconciled myself to having no money while I'm a student.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

reduce /rɪˈdjuːs; *AmE* -ˈduːs/

reˈduce sb/sth to sth to bring sb to a particular state, especially a worse one: *She was reduced to tears by their criticism.* ◇ *The building was reduced to a heap of rubble.* ◇ *Her questioning reduced him to a state of confusion.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

reˈduce sb to doing sth to make sb do something they do not approve of or are ashamed of because there is no other choice for them: *I was reduced to borrowing money from friends.*
NOTE **Reduce sb to doing sth** is nearly always used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

reˈduce sth to sth to change sth into a simpler or more general form: *His arguments can be reduced to four points.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

reek /riːk/

ˈreek of sth (*disapproving*) **1** to smell very strongly of sth unpleasant: *His breath reeked of tobacco.* **2** if sth **reeks of** sth unpleasant or suspicious, it suggests very strongly that there is sth unpleasant or suspicious about it: *His statement reeks of hypocrisy.* ◇ *The whole place reeked of neglect.*
◈ v + prep

reel /riːl/

ˌreel sth ˈin/ˈout to wind sth on/off a special round device (a **reel**), for example on a fishing rod: *He slowly reeled the fish in.* ◇ *The firefighters reeled out the hose.* ◇ *The line caught on something in the water as he reeled it in.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌreel sth ˈoff 1 to say a long list of things quickly and without having to think about it: *He reeled off the names of the people he'd invited.* OBJ **list, names, figures** SYN **rattle sth off 2** (*informal, especially BrE*) (in a sports competition) to win a series of games or a number of points: *The Bulls reeled off nine consecutive points.* ◇ *Henman reeled off three straight games.* OBJ **points, games** SYN **chalk up sth**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌreel sth ˈout = REEL STH IN/OUT

refer /rɪˈfɜː(r)/ (**-rr-**)

reˈfer to sb/sth 1 (**as sth**) to mention or talk about somebody or something: *She never referred to the incident again.* ◇ *Passengers are now referred to as 'customers'.* **2** to describe or be connected to sb/sth: *This paragraph refers to the events of last year.* ◇ *This phenomenon is referred to in detail in chapter nine.* ◇ *The term 'visually handicapped' refers to students who have serious difficulties in seeing.*
NOTE **Refer to sb/sth** can be used in the passive.
◈ v + prep

reˈfer to sth to look at sth for information: *You don't need to refer to a dictionary for this exercise.*
OBJ **book, dictionary, manual, instructions**
SYN **consult sth** (*more formal*)
NOTE **Refer to sth** can be used in the passive: *It is important to provide a record that can be referred to.*
◈ v + prep

reˈfer sb/sth to sb/sth to send sb/sth to a different place or person in order to get help, advice or a decision: *The case was referred to the Court of Appeal.* ◇ *My tutor referred me to a counsellor.* ◇ (*formal*) *I refer you to my letter of 2 June.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

reflect /rɪˈflekt/

reˈflect on sb/sth (*also* **reˈflect upon sb/sth** *more formal*) to make sb have a particular opinion of sb/sth: *When the department performs badly, it reflects on me as manager* (= it makes people think I am a bad manager). ◇ *This incident* ***reflects badly*** *on everyone involved.* ◇ *When our students are successful it* ***reflects well*** *on the whole school.*
NOTE **Reflect on sb/sth** is often used with adverbs, especially *badly* or *well*.
◈ v + prep
IDM **reflect great credit on sb/sth** to show that sb/sth is very good or has done sth very well: *The fine condition of the cars reflects great credit on their owners.* ◇ *The young orchestra's performance reflected great credit on their training.*

regale /rɪˈɡeɪl/

reˈgale sb with sth to entertain sb with stories, jokes, etc: *She was regaling us with tales of her youth.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

rein /reɪn/

ˌrein ˈin; **ˌrein sth ˈin** (*also* **ˌrein ˈback**, **ˌrein sth ˈback** *less frequent*) to pull on the reins of a horse (= the leather bands that go around its neck) to make it go more slowly or stop: *Felipe reined back and rode beside her.* ◇ *She reined in her horse and waited for John to catch up.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌrein sb/sth ˈin (*also* **ˌrein sb/sth ˈback** *less frequent*) to control sb or sth more strictly: *We need to rein in public spending.* ◇ *The new President is faced with the task of reining in the military.* ◇ *He was unable to rein back his impatience.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

relate /rɪˈleɪt/

reˈlate to sb/sth 1 to feel that you can understand a person, a situation, sth that sb does or feels, etc. and have sympathy with them/it: *She was unable to relate to her youngest child.* ◇ *I find him very difficult to relate to.* ◇ *I just couldn't relate to that movie at all.* ◇ *She could relate to his feelings of guilt about his children.* **2** to be connected to sb/sth; to refer to sb/sth: *All the documents relating to the matter were destroyed.* ◇ *The new law relates only to children born after 1996.*
◈ v + prep

relieve /rɪˈliːv/

reˈlieve sb of sth 1 (*formal*) to carry out a difficult or unpleasant task for sb else, or instead of them: *Robots can relieve people of dull and repetitive work.* ◇ *Can I relieve you of some of your bags* (= carry them for you)? **2** (*formal*) to dismiss sb from a job or responsibility: *He was relieved of his post as manager.* NOTE In this meaning, **relieve sb of sth** is often used in the passive. **3** (*informal, ironic*) to rob sb of sth: *The thief relieved him of his wallet.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

rely /rɪˈlaɪ/ (**relies, relying, relied, relied**)

reˈly on sb/sth (*also* **reˈly upon sb/sth** *more formal*) **1** (**for sth**) to need or be dependent on sb/sth: *She still has to rely on her parents for money.* ◇ *He hasn't got a car, and relies on public transport to get around.* ◇ *We relied on Anna to translate for us.* ◇ *Before they got a piped water supply, local people had to rely on getting their water from wells and tanks.* SYN **depend on/upon sb/sth (for sth) 2** to trust or have confidence in sb/sth: *You can safely rely on her judgement.* ◇ *You can rely on Jon to turn up late!* (= he always does) ◇ *For the first time in years she had someone she could rely on.* ◇ *We relied on the advice of our solicitor.* SYN **count on/upon sb/sth; depend on/upon sb/sth** NOTE **Rely on/upon sb/sth** can be used in the passive in this meaning: *She cannot be relied on to tell the truth.*
◈ v + prep

remember /rɪˈmembə(r)/

reˈmember sb to sb (*BrE*) (*not used in the progressive tenses*) used to ask sb to give your greetings and good wishes to sb else: *Remember me to your mother.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

remind /rɪˈmaɪnd/

reˈmind sb of sb/sth (*not used in the progressive tenses*) if sb/sth **reminds you of** sb/sth, they make you think of sb/sth because they are similar: *The smell of bread baking reminds me of home.* ◇ *When Clare smiled, she reminded me of her mother.* ◇ *Watching his serious face, with its big round glasses, she was reminded of an owl.*
NOTE **Remind sb of sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *Listening to her, he was reminded of Helen.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

rent /rent/

ˌrent sth ˈout (**to sb**) to allow something that you own to be used by someone else in return for payment: *They rented the house out to students.* ◇ *Most of these houses are rented out.*
OBJ **room, house, etc.** SYN **hire sth out (to sb); let sth out (to sb)** (*BrE*)
NOTE **Rent sth** can also be used with the same meaning: *You could rent a room to a student.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

repair /rɪˈpeə(r); *AmE* -ˈper/

reˈpair to… (*formal* or *humorous*) to go to a place: *After dinner, they repaired to the lounge for coffee.*
◈ v + prep

report /rɪˈpɔːt; *AmE* rɪˈpɔːrt/

reˌport ˈback 1 (**to sb**) (**on sb/sth**) to give a spoken or written account of some information that you were asked to find out about: *I have to report back to the manager on our progress.* **2** (**to…**) to return to a place, especially in order to start work again: *When do you have to report back for duty?*
◈ v + adv

reˌport ˈin (**to sb/sth**) to contact sb to let them know where you are or what you are doing: *The officer briefly reported in (to the police station).*

reˈport to sb (*business*) (*not used in the progressive tenses*) if you **report to** sb in a company or an organization, they are responsible for your work and tell you what to do: *She reports directly to the chief executive.* ◇ *A new team will be put together for the project, reporting to Julia Healey.*
◈ v + prep

reside /rɪˈzaɪd/

reˈside in sb/sth (*formal*) to be in sb/sth; to be caused by sth: *The attraction of the book resides in its illustrations.* ◇ *The interests of the child reside in getting the best possible education.*
◈ v + prep

reˈside in/with sb/sth (*formal*) to be present in or belong to sb/sth: *Supreme authority resides with the President.* ◇ *Political power seems to reside increasingly in the South of England.*
◈ v + prep

resign /rɪˈzaɪn/

reˈsign yourself to sth; reˈsign yourself to doing sth to be ready to accept sth unpleasant because you cannot avoid it: *She* ***resigned herself to her fate.*** ◇ *They resigned themselves to being defeated.* ◇ *I've resigned myself to staying in again tonight.*
◈ v + pron + prep

resolve /rɪˈzɒlv; *AmE* rɪˈzɑːlv/

reˈsolve into sth; reˈsolve sth into sth to separate or to be separated into its parts: *The design resolved into a number of different patterns.* ◇ *a lawyer's ability to resolve facts into their legal categories*
◈ v + prep ◆ v + pron + prep

reˈsolve into sth; reˈsolve itself/themselves into sth 1 if sth you see or hear at a distance **resolves into** sth or **resolves itself into** sth, you gradually see it or hear it clearly as a particular thing: *The grey shape resolved into a group of walkers.* ◇ *The white light resolved itself into the headlights of a car.* **2** to gradually become or be understood as sth: *The discussion eventually resolved itself into two main issues.* ◇ *The question resolves itself into whether individuals should be allowed to choose such a course of action.*
◈ v + prep ◆ v + pron + prep

resort /rɪˈzɔːt; *AmE* rɪˈzɔːrt/

reˈsort to sth; reˈsort to doing sth to make use of something, especially something bad or unpleasant, as a way of achieving sth, often because no other course of action is possible: *They should be able to settle their differences without resorting to violence.* ◇ *They resorted to bribery to get what they wanted.*
OBJ **violence, bribery**
NOTE **Resort to sth/to doing sth** can be used in the passive: *Various measures were resorted to.*
◈ v + prep

rest /rest/

ˈrest on sb/sth (*also* **ˈrest upon sb/sth** *more formal*) **1** to depend on sb/sth: *Britain's hopes of a medal now rest on Henderson.* **2** if your eyes **rest on** sb/sth, you look at them/it: *Her eyes rested on a photograph on the desk.* SUBJ **eyes, gaze**
◈ v + prep

ˈrest on sth (*also* **ˈrest upon sth** *more formal*) to be based on sth: *The whole case rests on one man's evidence.* ◇ *His argument seemed to rest on a false assumption.*
◈ v + prep

ˌrest ˈup (*informal*) **1** (*old-fashioned, especially BrE*) to rest after an illness or injury: *He was advised to rest up for a week after his fall.* NOTE **Rest** is usually used with this meaning. **2** (*especially AmE*) to rest in order to gain energy and strength, for example after an illness or before a sports competition: *You should rest up if you're going to be fit for the game.* ◇ *The climbers decided to rest up for a couple of days before continuing up to the summit.* NOTE **Rest** can also be used with this meaning.
◈ v + adv

ˈrest with sb (to do sth) (*formal*) (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to be sb's responsibility: *The decision rests entirely with you.* ◇ *The responsibility for bringing up children rests with the parents.* ◇ ***It rests with*** *the bus company* ***to*** *prove they were not responsible for the accident.*
SYN **lie with sb (to do sth)**
◈ v + prep

result /rɪˈzʌlt/

reˈsult in sth to have a particular effect; to make sth happen: *The accident resulted in 67 deaths.* ◇ *The agreement will result in employers working more closely with students and teachers.*
OBJ **death, increase, loss**
◈ v + prep

retail /ˈriːteɪl/

ˈretail at/for sth (*business*) to be sold at a particular price: *The videos retail at £15 each.*
◈ v + prep

return /rɪˈtɜːn; *AmE* rɪˈtɜːrn/

reˈturn to sth 1 to go back to a previous state: *Train services have* ***returned to normal*** *after the strike.* SYN **go back to sth 2** to start discussing a subject you were discussing earlier: *He returns to this topic later in the report.* SYN **come back to sth**
◈ v + prep

rev /rev/ (-vv-)

ˌrev ˈup; ˌrev sth ˈup if the engine of a vehicle **revs up**, or sb **revs it up**, it runs quickly although the vehicle does not move: *The car revved up and roared away.*
NOTE **Rev** and **rev sth** are also used with this meaning.
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌrev ˈup (for sth), ˌrev sb/sthˈup (for sth) (*especially AmE*) to become, or to make sb/sth, more active or excited: *The team are revving up for next week's game.* ◇ *It's his job to rev up the audience before the show starts.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

revel /ˈrevl/ (-ll-, -l-)

ˈrevel in sth; ˈrevel in doing sth to enjoy a situation or an experience very much: *I think he's secretly revelling in all the attention.* ◇ *She seems to revel in annoying her parents.*
◈ v + prep

revert /rɪˈvɜːt; *AmE* rɪˈvɜːrt/

reˈvert to sb (*law*) (of property and land) to return legally to the owner: *After his death the house reverted to its original owner.*
◈ v + prep

reˈvert to sth; reˈvert to doing sth (*formal*) **1** to go back to a previous condition or activity, especially a worse one: *When the pressure is on, players revert to bad habits.* ◇ *After a good year the team* ***reverted to type*** *in their last game* (= they played badly again). ◇ *After 80 years as a school, the building has reverted back to being a house again.* **2** to start talking or thinking again about a subject you were considering earlier: *To revert to your earlier question…*
◈ v + prep

revolve /rɪˈvɒlv; *AmE* rɪˈvɑːlv/

reˈvolve around sb/sth; reˈvolve around doing sth (*also* **revolve round sb/sth, revolve round doing sth** *especially BrE*) to have sb/sth as the main subject or interest: *His whole life revolved round cars.* ◇ *You think the whole world revolves around you.* ◇ *Much of a dolphin's life revolves around finding and eating food.*
◈ v + prep

reˈvolve around sth (*also* **reˈvolve round sth** *especially BrE*) to move around sth in a circle: *The earth revolves around the sun.*
◈ v + prep

rid /rɪd/ (ridding, rid, rid)

ˈrid sb/sth/yourself of sb/sth (*formal*) to remove sth/sb unpleasant from a person, a place or an organization: *The government pledged to rid the country of nuclear weapons.* ◇ *How could she rid herself of Charles?*
NOTE This phrasal verb is used mainly in written English.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

riddle /ˈrɪdl/

ˈriddle sb/sth with sth to fill sb/sth with bullets or with holes: *His body was riddled with bullets.* ◇ *wooden beams riddled with holes* ◇ *a bullet-riddled car*
NOTE **Riddle sb/sth with sth** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

be ˈriddled with sth to be full of sth, especially sth unpleasant or bad: *The whole organization is riddled with corruption.*
◈ be + v + prep

ride /raɪd/ (rode /rəʊd; *AmE* roʊd/ridden /ˈrɪdn/)

ˈride on sth (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) to depend on sth: *My whole future is riding on this interview.* ◇ *There's a lot of money riding on this deal.* ◇ *She has* ***a lot riding on*** *this film after the failure of the last two.*
◈ v + prep

ˌride sth ˈout to manage to survive a difficult period or situation without suffering serious harm: *Do you think the president will be able to ride out this latest crisis?* ◇ *Of course your parents were angry, but you should have stayed to* ***ride out the storm.***
OBJ **storm, recession**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌride ˈup if an item of clothing **rides up**, it gradually moves upwards, out of position: *His waistcoat was riding up over his stomach.*
◈ v + adv

rifle /ˈraɪfl/

ˌrifle ˈthrough sth to search quickly through sth such as drawers, cupboards or papers, in order to find or steal sth: *Sally rifled through her wardrobe looking for something to wear.* ◇ *The room looked as if a burglar had rifled through it* (= it was very untidy).
NOTE **Rifle through sth** can be used in the passive: *The drawers had been rifled through.*
◈ v + prep

rig /rɪɡ/ (-gg-)

ˈrig sb/sth ˈout (in/with sth) (*old-fashioned, BrE*) to provide sb/sth with clothes or equipment: *They took the kids to a big store and rigged them out from top to bottom* (= bought them a set of new clothes, shoes, etc.). ◇ *The ship had been rigged out with state-of-the-art equipment.*
SYN **kit sb/sth out (in/with sth)** (*BrE*)
NOTE **Rig sb out** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌrig sth ˈup 1 to fix a piece of equipment into place: *We've rigged up lights in the garden for the party.* ◇ *He was rigged up to a machine so that the nurses could check his heartbeat.* **2** to make or build sth quickly, using whatever materials are available: *He had rigged up a sort of tent, using his jacket and shirt.*
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ring /rɪŋ/ (**rang** /ræŋ/**rung** /rʌŋ/)

NOTE **To ring** is not used in American English to mean 'to telephone'. **To call** is the most common verb for this in American English. It is also used in British English, as well as **to phone**.

ˌring aˈround/ˈround; ˌring aˈround/ˈround sb/sth (*BrE*) to phone several people or places to find out information or discuss sth: *I've spent the morning ringing round travel agents to find a flight.*
G v + adv • v + prep

ˌring ˈback; ˌring sb ˈback (*BrE*) to telephone sb again or to telephone sb who telephoned you earlier: *I'll ring you back later with more details.* ◇ *Your mother called while you were out. She wants you to ring back.* ◇ *I've only got a few coins for this call* (= from a public telephone). *Can you ring me back?* ◇ *If he phones while I'm out, tell him to ring back later.*
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

ˌring ˈin (*BrE*) **1** to telephone the place where you work: *She felt so exhausted she* ***rang in sick*** (= to say she could not come to work). ◇ *The boss rings in several times a day, even when he's on holiday.* **2** to telephone a radio, television programme, etc: *Listeners were asked to ring in with their opinions.*
G v + adv

ˌring ˈoff (*BrE*) to end a telephone conversation, and put the telephone down: *He rang off before I could explain.*
SYN **hang up**
G v + adv

ˌring ˈout to be heard loudly and clearly: *His clear voice rang out across the hall.* ◇ *Suddenly shots rang out nearby.*
G v + adv

ˌring ˈround; ˌring ˈround sb/sth (*BrE*) = RING AROUND/ROUND, RING AROUND/ROUND SB/STH

ˌring ˈthrough (to sb/sth) (*BrE*) to make a telephone call to sb, especially within the same building: *Reception rang through to say my visitor had arrived.*
G v + adv

ˌring ˈup; ˌring sb/sth ˈup (*BrE*) to telephone sb/sth: *He rang up to apologize.* ◇ *We must ring Jenny up tonight.* ◇ *Can you ring up the station to check the train times?* ◇ *My dad was once rung up by someone claiming to be John Lennon.*

NOTE **Ring** and **ring sb** are also frequently used with this meaning. **Ring up** and **ring sb up** are very common in spoken English.
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌring sth ˈup to record the cost of goods being bought in a shop/store on a machine (a **cash register**); to make sales of the value mentioned: *She rang up the drinks on the till.* ◇ *The company rang up profits of $160 million last year.*
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

rinse /rɪns/

ˌrinse sth ˈout 1 to make sth clean by washing it in water: *Ruth finished her coffee and rinsed out her cup out under the tap.* ◇ *Rinse your mouth out to get rid of the taste.* NOTE **Rinse sth** is also used with the same meaning: *She quickly rinsed her cup and plate.* **2** (*also* **ˌrinse sth ˈout of sth**) to remove sth such as soap from sth else with water: *Leave the conditioner on your hair for three minutes and then rinse it out.*
SYN **wash sth out**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
2 also v + n/pron + adv + prep

rip /rɪp/ (**-pp-**)

ˈrip at sth to attack sth violently and tear it or cut it: *The bird ripped at its rival's throat.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The hurricane tore at their skin and ripped at their clothes.*
G v + prep

ˌrip ˈinto sb/sth (with sth) (for sth/for doing sth) (*informal*) to criticize sb in an angry way for sth they have done or said: *He ripped into me for being late.*
SYN **lay into sb/sth (with sth) (for sth/for doing sth)**
NOTE **Rip into sb/sth** can be used in the passive
G v + prep

ˌrip ˈinto/ˈthrough sb/sth to go very quickly or violently into or through sb/sth: *An explosion ripped through a four-storey apartment building.*
G v + prep

ˌrip sb ˈoff (*informal*) to cheat sb, for example by charging them too much for sth, selling them sth of poor quality, etc: *The bank was accused of ripping off its customers.* ◇ *The tickets were very expensive, but the play was terrible. We felt we'd been ripped off.*
NOTE **Rip sb off** is often used in the passive: *The law protects tenants from being ripped off by landlords.*
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈrip-off** *n* [usually sing.] (*informal*) a situation where you pay too much for sth; sth that is not worth what you pay for it: *They charged you £25 for a T-shirt? What a rip-off!* ◇ *The meal was a total rip-off.* ◇ *rip-off prices*

→ *see also* RIP-OFF at RIP SB/STH OFF; RIP-OFF at RIP STH OFF

ˌrip sb/sth ˈoff (*informal*) to copy sb/sth, by stealing ideas, designs, etc. especially in order to make money for yourself: *Another band has ripped off our song.* ◇ *She was accused of ripping off other people's ideas.*
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈrip-off (of sth)** *n* (*informal*) a copy of sth, especially one that is not as good as the original: *He has a stall that sells designer rip-offs* (= clothes).
→ *see also* RIP-OFF at RIP SB OFF; RIP-OFF at RIP STH OFF

ˈrip sth ˈoff (*slang*) to steal sth: *Thieves broke in and ripped off five computers.*
SYN **nick sth** (*BrE, slang*)
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈrip-off** *n* (*informal*) an act of stealing sth: *It was a scandalous rip-off of public funds.*
→ *see also* RIP-OFF at RIP SB OFF; RIP-OFF at RIP SB/STH OFF

ˌrip sth ˈoff; ˌrip sth ˈoff sb/sth to remove sth, especially clothing, very quickly by pulling sharply: *The fans were trying to rip his clothes off.* ◇ *She ripped the poster off the wall.*
SYN **tear sth off, tear sth off sb/sth**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌrip ˈthrough sth = RIP INTO/THROUGH STH

ˌrip sth ˈup 1 to tear sth to pieces: *I ripped the letter up without reading it.* **2** to pull sth quickly or violently from the floor or ground: *A gang of teenagers ripped up fences and plants.* ◇ *We've ripped up the old carpets and painted the walls.*
SYN **tear sth up**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

rise /raɪz/ (**rose** /rəʊz; *AmE* roʊz/**risen** /ˈrɪzn/)

ˌrise aˈbove sth (*written*) **1** to not be affected or limited by problems, insults, etc.; to be able to deal with problems: *She was able to rise above her disability.* **2** to be too wise or good to do sth wrong or to think or behave in the way other people do: *He had an unusual ability to rise above the prejudices of his generation.* ◇ *There will always be gossip. You have to try and rise above it.* **3** to be better than other similar things: *Her articles never rise above the level of a gossip column.*
G v + prep

ˈrise to sth 1 to deal successfully with a situation or problem that you do not expect or do not usually have to face: *The job wasn't easy but Sam was ready to* ***rise to the challenge***. ◇ *The play was a challenge for the actors but they* ***rose to the occasion***. **2** to react when sb is deliberately trying to make you angry or get you interested in sth: *I refuse to rise to that sort of comment.* ◇ *I decided to flatter him and he* ***rose to the bait*** (= he reacted in the way that I wanted).
G v + prep

ˌrise ˈup 1 (against sb/sth) (*formal*) to start to fight against or refuse to obey people in authority, for example a government or king: *The people rose up against the invaders.* SYN **rebel (against sb/sth)** **2** (*literary*) to appear as a tall shape above the surroundings: *A magnificent palace rose up before her.*
G v + adv
▸ **ˈuprising** *n* a situation in which a group of people join together to fight against or to refuse to obey people in authority: *The uprising was ruthlessly suppressed.*

roll /rəʊl; *AmE* roʊl/

ˌroll aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌroll ˈround**) (*informal*) **1** (*BrE also* **ˌroll aˈbout**) to be laughing so much that that you can hardly control yourself: *Her speech had everyone rolling around with laughter.* **2** (of a regular event) to arrive; to happen at the usual time: *We have to be ready when election time rolls around again.* SYN **come round, come around**
G v + adv

ˌroll sth ˈback 1 to reduce the amount of influence, power or importance that sth has; to change sth so that it is the opposite of what it was: *They were determined to roll back union power.* **2** to reduce prices, wages, etc: *We must roll back inflation.* OBJ **prices** **3** to make sth go back or further away: *to roll back the frontiers of space/science* ◇ *The former international football player* ***rolled back the years*** *with a brilliant performance last night* (= he played as he did when he was younger). OBJ **frontiers**
G v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)
▸ **ˈrollback (of sth)** *n* **1** (*especially AmE*) a reduction or decrease in sth: *a 2% rollback in taxes* **2** (*computing*) a return to the condition that existed before there was an error in a computer system

ˌroll sth ˈdown 1 to open out a piece of clothing, etc. that has been folded over and over: *She rolled down her sleeves.* OBJ **sleeves** **2** to lower sth; to open a window in a car, especially by turning a handle: *He rolled down the car window and waved to us.* OBJ **car window**
OPP **roll sth up**
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌroll ˈin (*informal*) **1** to arrive in great numbers or quantities: *Offers of help continue to roll in.* **2** to arrive somewhere, usually late and without being worried or sorry: *Rob finally rolled in at lunch time.*
G v + adv

ˌroll ˈon 1 (of time) to pass steadily: *As the years rolled on the painful memories began to fade.* **2** to continue without changing very much: *For the next few weeks the debate rolled on.* **3 roll on…** (*BrE, informal*) used to say that you wish sth would come soon: *Roll on summer!*
G v + adv

ˌroll sb/sth ˈout (*informal, especially AmE*) to use sb/sth to help you achieve sth: *He rolled out all his old friends to help him win the election.* ◇ *The Moscow Circus rolled out dancing bears to announce its arrival in North America.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv

ˌroll sth ˈout 1 to make a substance such as pastry flat and thin by rolling sth over it: *Roll out the pastry with a clean rolling pin.* OBJ **pastry, dough 2** to unfold sth that is in a roll and put it flat on the ground: *I rolled out my sleeping bag and crawled in.* OPP **roll sth up 3** to officially make a new product available to the public: *The Air Force will roll out its new planes in November.*
SYN **launch sth**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
IDM **roll out the red ˈcarpet (for sb)** to treat sb like a very important visitor
▸ **ˈroll-out** *n* an occasion when a company introduces a new product: *a roll-out ceremony*

ˌroll ˈover; ˌroll sb/sth ˈover 1 (of a person) to turn from lying on one side of your body to the other side; to move sb in this way: *She rolled over onto her back.* ◇ *I rolled the baby over and sat up.* **2** (of a vehicle, a boat, etc.) to turn onto its side or upside down; to move sth in this way: *The car rolled over into a ditch.*
SYN **turn over, turn sb/sth over**
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

ˌroll sth ˈover 1 (*finance*) to allow money that sb owes to be paid at a later date: *The government agreed to roll over the debt.* OBJ **debt, loan 2** (*BrE*) to add the prize money in a competition in a particular week to the prize money the next week, if no one has won it: *This week's lottery jackpot will be rolled over until next week.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈrollover** *n* **1** [C] (*BrE*) a prize of money in a competition that is formed by adding the prize from one week when no one has won it to the prize for the next week: *This week there is a rollover of $14 million.* ◇ *a rollover jackpot/week* **2** [U] (*finance*) the act of allowing money that is owed to be paid at a later date

ˌroll ˈround (*BrE*) = ROLL AROUND

ˌroll ˈup (*informal*) to arrive: *He finally rolled up an hour late.* ◇ *Roll up! Roll up for the greatest show on earth!* (= used to invite people who are passing to come and form an audience)
◈ v + adv

ˌroll sth ˈup 1 to turn the end of a piece of clothing over and over to make it shorter: *He rolled up his sleeves and started washing the dishes.* OBJ **sleeves, trousers** OPP **roll sth down 2** to fold sth to make the shape of a tube or a ball: *She rolled up the sleeping bag.* OPP **roll sth out 3** to close the window in a car, especially by turning a handle; to raise sth: *She rolled up the window and drove off.* OBJ **car window** OPP **roll sth down**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈroll-up** *n* (*BrE, informal*) a cigarette that you make yourself by rolling tobacco in special paper: *Simon lit a roll-up.*

romp /rɒmp; *AmE* rɑːmp/

ˌromp aˈhead/aˈway (*BrE*) to make progress, increase or win quickly and easily: *The home team romped away to win by 3 goals.*
NOTE This verb is mostly used in newspapers.
◈ v + adv

ˌromp ˈthrough sth (*BrE, informal*) to do sth easily and quickly: *She romped through the exam questions.*
NOTE This verb is mostly used in newspapers.
◈ v + prep

root /ruːt/

ˌroot aˈround; ˌroot aˈround/ˈthrough sth (*BrE also* **ˌroot aˈbout, ˌroot aˈbout sth**) **(for sth)** to move things around or turn them over to try to find sth: *He was rooting around in the drawer for his keys.* ◇ *Something or someone had been rooting through the piles of rubbish.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˈroot for sb/sth (*informal*) (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) to support or encourage sb in a sports competition or when they are in a difficult situation: *Good luck — I'll be rooting for you!*
◈ v + prep

ˌroot sb/sth ˈout 1 to find the person or thing that is causing a problem and remove or get rid of them: *The government has promised to root out police corruption.* ◇ *The trouble makers seem to have been rooted out.* OBJ **corruption 2** (*informal*) to find sb/sth when it is not easy or it takes a long time: *They eventually rooted out two witnesses.* ◇ *I've got some instructions for the camera somewhere — I'll see if I can root them out.* ◇ *I'll root out the photo for you.* SYN **dig sth out; hunt sth down/out**
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌroot ˈthrough sth = ROOT AROUND, ROOT AROUND/THROUGH STH

ˈroot sb to sth if fear, shock, etc. **roots you** to a place, it makes you unable to move: *She stood **rooted to the spot** in horror.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌroot sth ˈup to dig or pull up a plant, tree, etc. with its roots: *Kids have been rooting up plants and carving their names on the trees.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

rope /rəʊp; *AmE* roʊp/

ˌrope sb ˈin; ˌrope sb ˈinto sth; ˌrope sb ˈinto doing sth (*informal*) to persuade sb to take part in an activity or to help you, even when they do not want to: *We'll rope Colin in to help us.* ◇ *I got roped into washing all the dirty dishes.*
NOTE This phrasal verb is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌrope sth ˈoff to separate one area from another with ropes, in order to stop people from entering it: *The scene of the crime had been roped off.*
OBJ **area**
NOTE **Rope sth off** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

rot /rɒt; *AmE* rɑːt/ (-tt-)

ˌrot aˈway to gradually decay: *The window frame had rotted away.*
◈ v + adv

rough /rʌf/

ˌrough sth ˈout to draw or write the main parts of sth without including all the details: *She roughed out the design on the back of an envelope.* ◇ *I've roughed out a few ideas for the book.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌrough sb ˈup (*informal*) to hurt sb by hitting or kicking them, especially in order to frighten or warn them: *They didn't want to kill him, just rough him up a little.* ◇ *Demonstrators claimed they had been roughed up by the police.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

round /raʊnd/

ˌround sth ˈdown (to sth) = ROUND STH UP/DOWN (TO STH)

ˌround sth ˈoff 1 (*AmE also* **ˌround sth ˈout**) **(with sth)** to end or complete sth in a satisfactory way: *We rounded off the meal with coffee.* ◇ *The team rounded off a successful season with another brilliant victory.* ◇ *The evening was rounded off with a disco.* OBJ **the day, the evening 2** to give a smooth curved shape to the edge of sth: *I rounded off the corners with sandpaper.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˈround on sb to suddenly speak angrily to sb and criticize or attack them: *He rounded on her angrily and told her to keep her mouth shut.*
◈ v + prep

ˌround sth ˈout (*AmE*) = ROUND STH OFF 1

ˌround sb/sth ˈup to bring together a number of people, animals or objects in one place: *to round up cattle/sheep* ◇ *The gang were rounded up and put in jail.* ◇ (*humorous*) *We've rounded up some good speakers for the conference.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈround-up** *n* [usually sing.] **1** a brief summary of the most important points of news or sport, for example on a television or radio news programme: *a news round-up* ◇ *a round-up of the day's events* **2** an act of bringing people or animals together in one place: *a round-up of wild ponies* ◇ *a round-up of suspects*

ˌround sth ˈup/ˈdown (to sth) to increase/decrease a number to the next highest or lowest whole number: *He rounded the price down to $900.* ◇ *Totals should be rounded up to the nearest whole number.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

rub /rʌb/ (-bb-)

ˌrub aˈgainst sb/sth; ˌrub ˈup against sb/sth if an animal **rubs (up) against** sb/sth, it moves backwards and forwards and presses itself against them/it: *The cat rubbed (up) against her legs.*
◈ v + prep • v + adv + prep

ˌrub aˈlong (with sb/together) (*BrE, informal*) to live or work together with sb in a satisfactory way: *We rub along all right with the neighbours.*
SYN **get on/along (with sb/together)**
◈ v + adv

ˌrub sb/sth ˈdown; ˌrub yourself ˈdown to rub the skin of a person, an animal, etc. with sth such as a towel, to make it clean and dry: *She rubbed herself down with a towel.* ◇ *After exercise each horse must be rubbed down.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈrub-down** *n* [usually sing.] an act of rubbing sb/sth yourself with a towel, for example
→ *see also* RUB-DOWN at RUB STH DOWN

ˌrub sth ˈdown 1 (*especially BrE*) to make sth clean by wiping it with a cloth, etc: *Rub the walls down well before painting them.* **2** to make the surface of sth smooth by rubbing it with special paper, etc: *He rubbed the woodwork down with sandpaper.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈrub-down** *n* [usually sing.] (*especially BrE*) **1** an act of cleaning the surface of sth with a cloth, etc. **2** an act of rubbing the surface of sth to make it smooth
→ *see also* RUB-DOWN at RUB SB/STH DOWN, RUB YOURSELF DOWN

ˌrub sth ˈin to say sth to sb which reminds them of sth that they feel embarrassed or guilty about and would like to forget: *I already know it was my fault — there's no need to **rub it in**.* ◇ *Was he trying to rub in the fact that he didn't like me?*
OBJ **it**
NOTE **Rub sth in** is not used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
IDM **rub sb's ˈnose in it** to remind sb of sth they feel embarrassed or guilty about and would like to forget

ˌrub sth ˈin; ˌrub sth ˈinto sth to spread a substance over a surface while pressing firmly with your fingers, a cloth, etc: *Rub the lotion into your skin with your fingers.* ◇ *Spray on the polish and rub it in well.*
OBJ **cream, lotion**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌrub ˈoff (on/onto sb) if sth, such as a good quality that sb has, **rubs off** onto you, you gain some of that quality by spending time with the person: *Let's hope some of his good luck rubs off on me!* ◇ *None of her love for nature has rubbed off onto her children.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌrub ˈoff; ˌrub sth ˈoff; ˌrub sth ˈoff sth to be removed from sth by rubbing; to remove sth from sth by rubbing: *Somebody's used the wrong kind of pen on the whiteboard and it won't rub off.* ◇ *He quickly rubbed mud off his face.*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌrub sb ˈout (*AmE, slang*) to murder sb: *He was rubbed out before he could give evidence.*
SYN **bump sb off** (*informal*), **do away with sb** (*informal*), **murder sb**
NOTE **Rub sb out** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌrub sth ˈout (*BrE*) to remove the marks made by a pen, pencil, piece of chalk, etc. from a piece of paper, a board, etc: *Draw the outline with a soft pencil, so that you can rub it out later.*
SYN **erase sth** (*more formal*)
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌrub ˈup against sb/sth = RUB AGAINST SB/STH, RUB UP AGAINST SB/STH

ruck /rʌk/

ˌruck ˈup; ˌruck sth ˈup (*BrE*) to form untidy folds; to make sth do this: *Your blouse has rucked up at the back.* ◇ *Her skirt was rucked up.*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

rule /ruːl/

ˌrule sth ˈin; ˌrule sth ˈinto sth (*formal*) if sb **rules** sth **in**, they decide that it is possible, or that it can or should happen: *He asked for all possible results to be ruled in to the discussions.*
OPP **rule sth out, rule sth out of sth**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌrule sb ˈout (as sth), **ˌrule sb ˈout of sth 1** if somebody **rules** somebody else **out**, they decide that it is not possible for them to have done sth or to do sth, or that they are not suitable for sth: *The police soon ruled out her husband as a suspect.* ◇ *The producer ruled out an older actress for the role.* ◇ *Ramsay has been ruled out as too old for the job.* **2** if something **rules sb out**, it makes it impossible for sb to have done sth or to do sth, or makes them unsuitable for sth: *Several people saw her at the restaurant at 9.00 p.m. so that seems to rule her out as the murderer.* ◇ *Beckham has been ruled out of tonight's game with a knee injury.*
→ *see also* RULE YOURSELF, ITSELF, ETC. OUT, RULE YOURSELF, ITSELF, ETC. OUT OF STH
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌrule sth ˈout (as sth), **ˌrule sth ˈout of sth 1** if somebody **rules sth out**, they decide that it is not possible, or that it cannot or should not happen: *The police have ruled out suicide.* ◇ *I wouldn't rule anything out.* ◇ *Detectives have not* ***ruled out the possibility*** *that she was abducted.* ◇ *Manchester has been ruled out as the site for the next Olympics.* ◇ *Sabotage was ruled out of the investigation.* OPP **rule sth in, rule sth into sth** **2** if something **rules** sth **out**, it makes it impossible for sth to happen, or makes sth unsuitable for a particular purpose: *The latest developments* ***rule out the possibility*** *of a lasting peace.* ◇ *The change in the weather ruled out any climbing the next day.* ◇ *The size of the house ruled it out as a family home* (= it was too small).
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌrule yourself, itself, etc. ˈout; ˌrule yourself, itself, etc. ˈout of sth to decide you do not want to or are not able to do sth; to decide that you are not suitable for sth: *Smith has not ruled himself out of Saturday's game.*
Ⓖ v + pron + adv ◆ v + pron + adv + prep

rumble /ˈrʌmbl/

ˌrumble ˈon (*written, especially BrE*) if an argument, a dispute, etc. **rumbles on**, it continues slowly and steadily for much longer than it should: *The dispute rumbled on through the summer.* ◇ *The row has been rumbling on for two years.*
Ⓖ v + adv

run /rʌn/ (running, ran /ræn/run)

	~ about		~ in
241	~ across		~ into
	~ after	243	~ off
	~ along		~ off together
	~ around		~ off with
	~ around after		~ on
	~ around with		~ out
	~ at		~ out on
	~ away	244	~ over
	~ away from		~ past
	~ away with		~ round
	~ away/off		~ round after
	~ away/off together		~ through
	~ away/off with		~ to
242	~ by		~ up
	~ down		~ up against

ˌrun aˈbout; ˌrun aˈbout sth (*BrE*) = RUN AROUND, RUN AROUND STH

▶ **ˈrunabout** *n* (*informal*) **1** a small car, boat or aircraft, used mainly for short journeys **2** (*AmE*) a person who moves from place to place

ˌrun aˈcross sb/sth to meet sb or find sth by chance: *I ran across Mary in town yesterday.*
SYN **come across sb/sth**
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌrun ˈafter sb (*informal*) to try to persuade sb to have a romantic or sexual relationship with you: *He's always running after younger women.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌrun ˈafter sb/sth to run to try to catch sb/sth; to chase sb/sth: *They ran after the thief but he got away.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌrun aˈlong (*old-fashioned, informal*) used to tell sb, especially a child, to go away and not disturb you: *Run along now, children, I'm busy.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌrun aˈround; ˌrun aˈround sth (*BrE also* **ˌrun aˈbout/ˈround, ˌrun aˈbout/ˈround sth**) **1** to run in different directions, especially in an excited way: *It's a lovely park to run around in.* ◇ *The children were running round the house with no clothes on.* ◇ *They stopped the car to let the dogs out to run about.* **2** to move very quickly from place to place, being very busy: *I ran around like a mad thing all day.* ◇ *He's been running about the place organizing the party.* ◇ *I've been running round everywhere looking for you!* ◇ *He's had the police* ***running around in circles*** (= being very busy but not achieving anything).
SYN **rush around, rush around sth; tear around, tear around sth**
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + prep
▶ **ˈrunaround** *n* if you give sb the **run around**, you treat them badly by delaying them, giving them false information, not telling them the truth, etc: *You know where she is, don't you, but you're just* ***giving me the run around.***

ˌrun aˈround after sb (*BrE also* **ˌrun ˈround after sb**) to be very busy doing a lot of things for sb, when they should be able to do them for themselves: *His mother shouldn't have to run around after him.* ◇ *She spends all her time running round after the children.*
Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌrun aˈround with sb (*disapproving*) to spend a lot of time with sb: *Their son is running around with a bad crowd.*
Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˈrun at sb to run towards sb to attack them or as if you were going to attack them: *He ran at me with a knife.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˈrun at sth (*often used in the progressive tenses*) to be at or near a particular level or rate: *Inflation is running at 26%.* ◇ *Interest rates were running at record levels.* SUBJ **inflation, unemployment**
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌrun aˈway 1 (**from sb/sth**) to move quickly away from sb/a place; to escape from sb/a place: *A man was seen running away from the shop.* ◇ *'Bye then,' she said, and ran away without looking back.* ◇ *His first instinct was to run away.* → *see also* RUN OFF 1 **2** (**from sth**) to leave the place where you are living or staying suddenly and secretly because you are unhappy: *She ran away from home on several occasions.* ◇ *He ran away and joined a circus.* → *see also* RUN OFF 2 **3** to leave a person or a place to try to avoid doing sth: *Don't run away — I want your advice.* **4** used to tell a child to go away and not disturb you: *Run away and play.*
Ⓖ v + adv
▶ **ˈrunaway** *adj* [only before noun] **1** (of a situation or an event) happening quickly and easily and not able to be controlled: *The movie has been a runaway success.* ◇ *The game was a runaway victory for Liverpool.* ◇ *runaway inflation* **2** (of an animal or a vehicle) moving, but no longer under the control of the rider or driver: *a runaway horse* **3** (of a person) having secretly left their home or the place where they are staying: *runaway children/ teenagers*
▶ **ˈrunaway** *n* a person who has left their home or the place where they are staying suddenly and secretly because they are unhappy there: *a 16-year-old runaway*

ˌrun aˈway/ˈoff; ˌrun aˈway/ˈoff with sb; ˌrun aˈway/ˈoff together to leave your home, husband, wife, etc. secretly with sb else in order to marry them or have a sexual relationship with them: *They ran away to Scotland.* ◇ *We think John and Susie have run off together.*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + adv + prep ◆ v + adv + adv

ˌrun aˈway from sth to try to avoid dealing with or thinking about sth because it is difficult or unpleasant: *He is running away from his responsibilities.* ◇ *You can't just run away from difficult situations — you must face up to them.*
OBJ **responsibilities**
Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌrun aˈway with sb; ˌrun aˈway together = RUN AWAY/OFF, RUN AWAY/OFF WITH SB, RUN AWAY/OFF TOGETHER

ˌrun aˈway with you if a feeling, an emotion, etc. **runs away with you**, you are not able to control it: *Her imagination tends to run away with her.* ◇ *My tongue ran away with me and I said things I regretted.* SUBJ **imagination, tongue**
Ⓖ v + adv + prep

,run a'way with sth 1 to win sth clearly or easily: *Their team are running away with the championship.* ◇ *She ran away with the show* (= she was easily the best performer). **2** (*especially AmE*) (*also* **,run 'off with sth**) to escape with sth that you have stolen or taken without asking: *The treasurer ran away with all the funds.* **3** (*informal*) to believe sth that is not true: *Don't* ***run away with the idea that*** *everything was perfect in our marriage.* OBJ **idea, impression**

◈ **1,2** v + adv + prep
3 v + adv + prep + noun

,run sth 'by/'past sb (*informal*) to show sb sth or tell them about an idea, a proposal, etc. in order to get their reaction to it: *I've got a few ideas I'd like to run by you.* ◇ *Run that past me again.*

◈ v + n/pron + prep

,run 'down; ,run sth 'down 1 to lose power or stop working; to make sth do this: *I think the batteries are running down.* ◇ *If you leave your headlights on, you'll run the battery down.* SUBJ **battery 2** to stop functioning gradually or become smaller in size or number; to make sth do this: *Oil supplies in the region will start to run down in the next decade.* ◇ *The company are running down their operations in the UK.*

◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▶ **'rundown (in/of sth)** *n* [usually sing.] (*BrE*) **1** a reduction in the size, number, amount or importance of sth: *The public are complaining about the rundown of health services.* **2** a description or an explanation of sth, especially the main points: *a rundown of the history of each team*

→ *see also* RUNDOWN at RUN DOWN STH, RUN STH DOWN STH

▶ **,run-'down** *adj* **1** (of a building or an area) in poor condition; that has not been looked after: *a run-down area of East London* **2** (of a business, etc.) not as busy or as active as it used to be **3** [not before noun] (of a person) tired, weak and not in good health after having worked too hard, etc: *I'm feeling a bit run-down.*

→ *see also* RUNDOWN at RUN DOWN STH, RUN STH DOWN STH

,run 'down sth if a liquid **runs down** a surface, it flows downwards over it: *Tears were running down his cheeks.*

◈ v + prep

,run 'down sth; ,run sth 'down sth 1 to look quickly at a list; to quickly read and mention the items on it: *Her eyes ran down the figures on the page.* ◇ *She ran her eyes down the page.* **2** to pass, or to make sth pass, downwards over a surface: *She ran her finger down the page.*

▶ **'rundown (on/of sth)** *n* [usually sing.] an explanation or a description of sth: *I can give you a brief rundown on each of the job applicants.* ◇ *We would like a full rundown on the progress of the project so far.*

→ *see also* RUNDOWN at RUN DOWN, RUN STH DOWN

◈ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

,run sb/sth 'down 1 (of a vehicle or its driver) to hit a person or an animal and knock them/it to the ground: *The cyclist was run down by a lorry.* ◇ *You nearly ran down that pedestrian.* SYN **knock sb down; knock sb over** NOTE In this meaning **run sb/sth down** is often used in the passive. It can also suggest that the driver of the vehicle intended to hit the person or animal: *The officer challenged the thief and tried to make the car stop, but the driver ran him down.* → *see also* RUN SB/STH OVER **2** to criticize sb/sth in an unkind way: *She's always running her husband down in front of their friends.* SYN **disparage sb/sth** (*formal*) NOTE In this meaning **run sb/sth down** is not used in the passive. → *see also* RUN YOURSELF DOWN **3** to find sb/sth after looking for a long time: *I finally ran the book down in the college library.* SYN **track sb/sth down; trace sb/sth** NOTE In this meaning **run sb/sth down** is not used in the passive.

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

,run yourself 'down to criticize yourself, often unfairly: *You're always running yourself down!*

→ *see also* RUN SB/STH DOWN 2

◈ v + pron + adv

,run 'in; ,run 'into sth (*AmE, informal*) to visit sb for a short time in an informal way; to go somewhere quickly on your way to somewhere else: *I'll run in on my way home.* ◇ *Can you run into the dry-cleaner's on your way to work?*

◈ v + adv • v + prep

,run sb 'in (*old-fashioned, informal*) to arrest sb and take them to a police station: *She was run in for shoplifting.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

▶ **'run-in** *n* **1 (with sb)** (*informal*) an argument or a quarrel: *I had a run-in with my mum this evening.* **2** (*also* **'run-up**) **(to sth)** (*BrE*) a period of preparation just before an event takes place: *the final run-in to the World Cup* **3** the action of approaching sth or the distance you cover: *the final run-in to the target*

,run sb 'in; ,run sb 'into sth/... to take sb by car to the centre of town, etc: *I need to go into town. Can you run me in?*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

,run sth 'in (*BrE*) (in the past) to drive a vehicle slowly and carefully when it is new so that you do not damage the engine: *I'm not going on motorways until I've run the car in.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

,run 'into sb to meet sb by chance: *Guess who I ran into today?* ◇ *You rarely run into people you know in London.*

SYN **bump into sb** (*informal*)

◈ v + prep

'run into sb/sth; 'run sth into sb/sth to accidentally crash into sb/sth; to make a vehicle do this: *The car went out of control and ran into a tree.* ◇ *The lorry behind ran into the back of me* (= my car). ◇ *He ran his car into a tree.*

◈ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

'run into sth 1 to meet or enter an area of bad weather while travelling: *We ran into a patch of thick fog just outside the city.* OBJ **bad weather 2** to experience difficulties or problems: *We ran into problems right from the beginning of the project.* OBJ **trouble, difficulties, problems, opposition 3** to reach a particular level or amount: *The bill will run into hundreds of pounds.* **4** if things **run into** each other, or sth **runs into** sth else, they join so that they can only be separated with difficulty: *I tried to explain, but my words all ran into each other.*

◈ v + prep

,run sb 'into sth = RUN SB IN, RUN SB INTO STH

'run sth into sb/sth = RUN INTO SB/STH, RUN STH INTO SB/STH

,run 'off 1 to move quickly away from sb/a place; to escape from sb/a place: *The thief ran off down a side street.* ◇ *They ran off laughing.* → *see also* RUN AWAY 1 **2** to leave a place secretly: *She ran off in the middle of the night.* → *see also* RUN AWAY 2

→ *see also* RUN AWAY/OFF, RUN AWAY/OFF WITH SB, RUN AWAY/OFF TOGETHER

◈ v + adv

,run 'off; ,run 'off sth if a road, path, etc. **runs off** or **runs off** a place, it leads away from it: *Can you see that road running off to the right?* ◇ *Several doors ran off the corridor.*

◈ v + adv • v + prep

,run 'off; ,run 'off with sb; ,run 'off together = RUN AWAY/OFF, RUN AWAY/OFF WITH SB, RUN AWAY/OFF TOGETHER

,run 'off sb/sth to drain or flow from sb/sth: *Water runs off the fields into the valley.* ◇ *Sweat was running off her.*

SUBJ **water, sweat**

◈ v + prep

▶ **'run-off** *n* [C] (*technical*) rain, water or other liquid that runs off land and into rivers, etc.

,run 'off sth; ,run sth 'off sth (of a machine, etc.) to use a particular type of power in order to operate a machine: *The outboard motor runs off an ordinary car battery.*

→ *see also* RUN ON STH, RUN STH ON STH

◈ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

,run sth 'off 1 to produce copies of a piece of writing, etc. on a machine: *They ran off hundreds of copies of the leaflet.* ◇ *Can you run these letters off for me?* NOTE In informal spoken language **run sb off sth** and **run sb sth off** are also used: *I'll just run you off a copy.* ◇ *I'll run you a copy off now.* **2** to produce sth that is usually difficult to write, such as a poem, speech, etc. quickly and easily: *She ran off a fantastic speech in no time at all.*

◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

,run 'off with sb; ,run 'off together = RUN AWAY/OFF WITH SB, RUN AWAY/OFF TOGETHER

,run 'off with sth = RUN AWAY WITH STH 2

,run 'on 1 to continue to run in the same direction: *I'll stop here, you run on ahead.* **2** to continue longer than is necessary or expected: *I don't want the meeting to run on.* **3 (about sth)** (*especially AmE*) to continue talking for a long time about unimportant things: *She does tend to run on!* ◇ *She ran on with great enthusiasm about her latest project.* **4 [+ adv/prep]** (of a road or a track) to continue in the same direction: *The road runs on into the desert.* **5** (of a line of text) to continue into the next line: *This line runs on into the next verse of the poem.*

SYN **go on**

◈ v + adv

'run on sth if your thoughts etc. **run on** a particular subject, you think or talk about it a lot: *Her thoughts kept running on their last meeting.*

◈ v + prep

'run on sth; 'run sth on sth to use a particular type of power or fuel to make a machine or a vehicle work: *You can run the car on any type of unleaded petrol.*

→ *see also* RUN OFF STH, RUN STH OFF STH

◈ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

,run 'out 1 if a supply of sth **runs out**, it is finished or used up: *I'm going to keep travelling until my money runs out.* ◇ *We have to eat quickly as time is running out.* ◇ *One day his luck will run out.* ◇ *My patience with her suddenly ran out.* SUBJ **money, petrol, time, luck, patience 2** (*also* **,run 'out of sth**) if a person or a machine **runs out** of a supply of sth, they finish it or use it all up: *We're running out of money.* ◇ *Could you get some more milk? We've run out.* ◇ *I've run out of patience with her.* ◇ *You've run out of space on the disk.* ◇ *The band seems to have run out of ideas.* OBJ **money, ideas, petrol, patience, time 3** if a contract or other legal document **runs out**, it is no longer valid: *His contract with the club runs out at the end of the season.* SYN **expire** (*more formal*)

◈ v + adv **2** also v + adv + prep

IDM **,run out of 'steam** (*informal*) to have less energy and enthusiasm and stop doing sth or do it less well: *I ran out of steam halfway up the hill.* ◇ *The campaign seems to have run out of steam.*

,run sb 'out; ,run sb 'out of sth/... (*especially AmE*) to force sb to leave a place: *He vowed to run them out of town.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌrun sb ˈout; **ˌrun yourself ˈout** (in cricket, etc.) to make a player end their turn at hitting the ball by throwing the ball so that it hits the set of upright sticks, (the **wicket**), while they are still running: *He was run out for 73.*
NOTE **Run sb out** is often used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌrun ˈout on sb to leave sb that you live or work with, especially when they need your help: *She ran out on him as soon as things got difficult.*
◆ v + adv + prep

ˌrun ˈover 1 if a container or the liquid in it runs over, the liquid flows out of it over the edge: *Don't let the bath run over!* ◇ *The tea ran over into the saucer.* SYN **overflow 2** to continue longer than expected or planned: *We've already run over so let's try to end the meeting soon.*
◆ v + adv

ˌrun ˈover sb/sth; **ˌrun sth ˈover sb/sth** to move over a surface; to make sth do this: *I let the cold water run over me.* ◇ *She ran her eye over the figures on the page.*
◆ v + prep

ˌrun ˈover sth to read through or think about sth quickly; to practise sth: *Let's run over the plans again.* ◇ *I ran over the possibilities in my mind.*
SYN **go over sth**
◆ v + prep

ˌrun sb/sth ˈover (of a vehicle or its driver) to knock a person or an animal down and often pass over their body or part of it: *Two children were run over by a truck and killed.* ◇ *I ran over a cat last night.* ◇ *You nearly ran me over!*
SYN **knock sb over**
→ *see also* RUN SB/STH DOWN 1
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌrun sth ˈpast sb (*informal*) = RUN STH BY/PAST SB

ˌrun ˈround; **ˌrun ˈround sth** (*BrE*) = RUN AROUND, RUN AROUND STH

ˌrun ˈround after sb (*BrE*) = RUN AROUND AFTER SB

ˌrun ˈthrough sb/sth if a feeling **runs through** sb/sth, it passes quickly through them/it: *A thrill of excitement ran through her.* ◇ *She felt a tremor run through his body.* ◇ *An angry murmur ran through the crowd.*
SUBJ **tremor, shiver, shudder, fear, relief**
◆ v + prep

ˌrun ˈthrough sth 1 to be present in every part of sth: *There is a common theme running through all of her novels.* ◇ *The English title picks up a thread running through the film.* **2** to discuss, examine or read sth quickly: *He ran through his check list one more time.* ◇ *Can you run through some of these figures with me?* ◇ *She mentally ran through the list of who to invite.* ◇ *Let's run through what I'm meant to do again.* SYN **go through sth 3** to perform, act or practise sth: *Could we run through Act 3 again, please?* SYN **go through sth 4** (*informal*) to use up or spend money carelessly: *She ran through a lot of money in her first year at college.* SYN **go through sth**
NOTE **Run through sth** can be used in the passive in meanings 2, 3 and 4: *That scene's been run through plenty of times.*
◆ v + prep
▸ **ˈrun-through** *n* a practice for an event or a performance: *We're having the main technical run-through of the play tonight.*

ˈrun to sb to go to sb for help, advice, protection, etc: *If you get hurt, don't come running to me.*
◆ v + prep

ˈrun to sth 1 to reach the amount, or size mentioned, especially a large one: *The total cost runs to hundreds of pounds.* ◇ *The report already runs to 800 pages.* **2** (*BrE*) (*often used in negative sentences and with can*) if a person or their money can **run to sth**, they have enough money to pay for it: *We couldn't quite run to private education for the children.* **3** if your taste or your mind, etc. **runs to** sth, you enjoy it or can do it: *His taste in music runs to pop and jazz, but that's about it.*
◆ **1** v + prep + n
2,3 v + prep

ˌrun ˈup 1 to move quickly towards sb/sth: *She ran up to me, smiling.* **2** (in cricket and other sports) to run in order to gain speed before you throw a ball, jump a long distance, etc: *Gough is now running up to bowl.*
◆ v + adv
▸ **ˈrun-up** *n* (*BrE*) **1** (*sport*) the act of running or the distance you run in order to gain speed before you throw a ball, jump a long distance, etc: *She took a run-up and kicked the ball.* **2** (*also* **ˈrun-in** *less frequent*) **(to sth)** the period of preparation before an important event: *She's been training hard in the run-up to the big competition.* ◇ *the run-up to the election*

ˌrun sth ˈup 1 to allow a bill, debt, etc. to reach a large total: *I ran up a few debts while I was abroad.* ◇ *He's run up a huge bill on his credit card.* OBJ **bill, debts, overdraft 2 (for sb)** to make sth very quickly, especially an item of clothing: *I'll run up some new dresses for the girls.* NOTE In informal spoken language **run sb up sth** and, less often, **run sb sth up** can also be used: *Could you run me up some curtains/run me some curtains up?* **3** to raise sth, especially a flag: *They ran up a white flag and surrendered.* OBJ **flag 4** to achieve sth: *The team have run up their best victory yet.* OBJ **victory, results**
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌrun ˈup against sb/sth to experience a difficulty or a problem: *The project keeps running up against the problem of lack of funds.* ◇ *In this round, he will run up against the previous year's champion.*
OBJ **problems** SYN **come up against sb/sth**
◆ v + adv + prep

rush /rʌʃ/

ˌrush aˈround; **ˌrush aˈround sth** (*BrE also* **ˌrush aˈbout/ˈround**, **ˌrush aˈbout/ˈround sth**) to move very quickly from place to place, being very busy: *I've been rushing around all day.* ◇ *He rushed about the room tidying.*
SYN **run around, run around sth; tear around, tear around sth**
◆ v + adv

ˌrush ˈin to do or decide sth very quickly, often without thinking about it for long enough: *He's very wary of rushing in and making changes.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep
IDM **fools rush in (where angels fear to tread)** used to say that people with little experience will try to do the difficult or dangerous things that people with more experience would not do

ˌrush ˈinto sth; **ˌrush ˈinto doing sth**; **ˌrush sb ˈinto doing sth** to do or decide sth quickly without thinking about it carefully; to make sb do this: *Don't go rushing into anything.* ◇ *You shouldn't rush into getting married.* ◇ *She won't be rushed into a decision.* ◇ *Don't let anyone rush you into accepting the job.*
◆ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌrush ˈoff to leave quickly: *Don't rush off, I haven't finished.*
◆ v + adv

ˌrush sth ˈout to produce sth very quickly: *They rushed out the posters in time for the festival.* ◇ *The book was rushed out by the publishers.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌrush ˈround; **ˌrush ˈround sth** (*BrE*) = RUSH AROUND, RUSH AROUND STH

ˌrush sth ˈthrough; **ˌrush sth ˈthrough sth** to make sth become official policy, etc. much quicker than normal: *The legislation has been rushed through.* ◇ *They rushed the bill through Parliament.*
OBJ **bill, legislation**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*) • v + n/pron + prep

rustle /ˈrʌsl/

ˌrustle sb/sth ˈup (*informal*) to prepare or provide sth for sb very quickly without planning; to find sb very quickly: *I'll rustle up some lunch up for you.* ◇ *I rustled up a few helpers to hand out leaflets.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

Ss

sack /sæk/

ˌsack ˈout (*AmE, informal*) to lie down to rest or relax: *We sacked out on the couch and watched a video.*

Ⓖ v + adv

saddle /ˈsædl/

ˌsaddle ˈup; **ˌsaddle sth ˈup** to prepare to ride a horse by placing a leather seat (a **saddle**) on it: *Have you saddled up the horses yet?* ◇ *Saddle up, we're leaving right away.*

OBJ **horse**

Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˈsaddle sb/yourself with sb/sth; **ˈsaddle sb/yourself with doing sth** to give sb/yourself a difficult or unpleasant task or responsibility to deal with: *I've been saddled with my brother's kids for the weekend* (= I have to take care of them). ◇ *He had saddled himself with huge debts.* ◇ *I've been saddled with organizing the conference.*

SYN **land sb/yourself with sb/sth, land sb/yourself with doing sth**

NOTE **Saddle sb with sb/sth** is often used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

safeguard /ˈseɪfɡɑːd; *AmE* -ɡɑːrd/

ˌsafeguard aˈgainst sth; **ˌsafeguard sb/sth/yourself aˈgainst sth** (*formal*) to prevent sth bad from happening to sth; to keep sth safe from harm or damage: *Safeguard against theft by installing a burglar alarm.* ◇ *The leaflet shows you how to safeguard your home against electrical dangers and accidents.*

Ⓖ v + prep ◆ v + n/pron + prep

sail /seɪl/

ˌsail ˈthrough; **ˌsail ˈthrough sth** to succeed in an examination, a test, etc. very easily: *She sailed through her final exams.*

OBJ **exam**

Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + prep

sally /ˈsæli/ (**sallies, sallying, sallied, sallied**)

ˌsally ˈforth (*also* **ˌsally ˈout** *less frequent*) (*old-fashioned* or *literary*) to leave a place in a determined or enthusiastic way: *After lunch she sallied forth for a short walk.*

Ⓖ v + adv

salt /sɔːlt, *BrE also* sɒlt/

ˌsalt sth aˈway to save money, etc. for the future, often secretly or dishonestly: *He claimed she had salted money away in Brazil.* ◇ *$10 billion had been salted away in banks.*

OBJ **money**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

sand /sænd/

ˌsand sth ˈdown to make sth smooth by rubbing it with strong, rough paper: *Sand the doors down before you paint them.*

NOTE **Sand sth** can be used with the same meaning: *Sand the doors before you paint them.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

sandwich /ˈsænwɪtʃ, -wɪdʒ/

ˈsandwich sb/sth between sb/sth to fit sth/sb into a very small space between two other things or people: *I was sandwiched between two large men on the back seat.* ◇ *The shop is sandwiched between a bank and a café.*

NOTE **Sandwich sb/sth between sb/sth** is nearly always used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

ˌsandwich A and B toˈgether (**with sth**) to put sth between two things to join them: *Sandwich the cakes together with cream.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

save /seɪv/

ˈsave on sth; **ˈsave sth on sth** to use less of sth or not more than necessary: *He saved on electricity by using candles.* ◇ *Get your tickets early and save $5 on the cost of an adult ticket.*

Ⓖ v + prep ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌsave ˈup; **ˌsave sth ˈup** (**for sth**) to keep your money instead of spending it, especially because you want to buy a particular thing: *She's saving up for a new computer.* ◇ *I saved up all my wages to buy my parents a present.*

NOTE **Save** and **save sth** are used more frequently with this meaning, especially in more formal English.

Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌsave sth ˈup to keep sth to use or enjoy in the future: *I save up the week's newspapers to read at weekends.*

NOTE **Save sth** is used more frequently with this meaning, especially in more formal English.

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

saw /sɔː/ (**sawed, sawn** /sɔːn/, *AmE also* **sawed, sawed**)

ˌsaw sth ˈdown to cut sth down and bring it to the ground, using a tool with a long blade and sharp points along the edge (a **saw**): *We had to saw down two trees.*

OBJ **tree**

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌsaw sth ˈoff; **ˌsaw sth ˈoff sth** to remove sth from sth by cutting it with a tool with a long blade and sharp points along the edge (a **saw**): *I sawed the lower branches off the apple tree.*

OBJ **branch**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

▶ **ˈsawn-off** (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˈsawed-off**) [only before noun] (of a gun) having had the long tube through which the bullets are fired, (the **barrel**), cut short: *a sawn-off shotgun*

ˌsaw sth ˈup (into) to cut sth into pieces using a tool with a long blade and sharp points along one edge (a **saw**): *All the trees were sawn up into logs.*

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

scale /skeɪl/

ˌscale sth ˈdown (*AmE also* **ˌscale sth ˈback**) to reduce sth in size or importance: *The company has scaled down its training programmes this year.* ◇ *Police are scaling down the search for the attacker.* ◇ *Jonnie's tools were a scaled-down version of his father's.*

OBJ **programme, project** OPP **scale sth up** (*less frequent*)

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌscale sth ˈup to increase the size or importance of sth: *We're deciding how to scale up our operation.*

OPP **scale sth down**

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

scare /skeə(r); *AmE* sker/

ˌscare sb/sth aˈway/ˈoff to make sb/sth leave or stay away by frightening them: *She used a whistle to scare away her attacker.* ◇ *The noise scared the birds off.*

SYN **frighten sb/sth away/off** (*especially BrE*)

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˈscare sb into sth; **ˈscare sb into doing sth** to make sb do sth by frightening them: *Her threats finally scared him into action.* ◇ *He was scared into signing a confession.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

ˌscare sb ˈoff to accidentally make sb afraid of or nervous about sth they were planning to do: *Many investors were scared off by the rumours.* ◇ *Don't act too interested or you'll scare him off* (= a boyfriend).

SYN **frighten sb off** (*especially BrE*)

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌscare sb/sth ˈoff = SCARE SB/STH AWAY/OFF

ˌscare ˈup sth; **ˌscare it, him, etc. ˈup** (*AmE, informal*) to find sb/sth or to make sth by using whatever is available: *I'll see if I can scare up enough chairs for us all.* ◇ *I'll try to scare up some friends to come and help us.*

NOTE A noun must always follow **up**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **up**.

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv (*less frequent*)

scoop /skuːp/

ˌscoop sth ˈout 1 (*also* **ˌscoop sth ˈout of sth**) to remove sth from the inside of sth else using a curved tool, such as a spoon, or your hand: *Scoop all the seeds out of the fruit.* OBJ **seeds**, **flesh** **2** to make sth hollow by removing the inside with a curved tool such as a spoon: *First scoop out the melon using a spoon.* SYN **hollow sth out**

Ⓖ **1** v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep
2 v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌscoop sb/sth ˈup to move or lift sb/sth using a quick continuous movement: *I scooped up a handful of sweets.* ◇ *She scooped the baby up into her arms.*

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌscoop sth ˈup to win or get sth easily, especially a large sum of money or a prize: *The Democrat party scooped up four fifths of the seats.*

OBJ **seats, prizes**

NOTE **Scoop sth** can also be used with the same meaning: *The movie scooped nine Oscars.*

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

scoot /skuːt/

ˌscoot ˈover (*AmE, informal*) to move along on a seat to make room for another person: *Scoot over and make room for your sister.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Scoot over, men! Women golfers are on the increase.*

SYN **move over**

Ⓖ v + adv

scope /skəʊp; *AmE* skoʊp/

ˌscope sb/sth ˈout (*AmE, informal*) to look for sb/sth interesting or attractive; to search out sb/sth: *We scoped out a place to spend the weekend.*

Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

score /skɔː(r)/

ˈscore off sb (*especially BrE*) to show that you are better than sb, especially by making clever remarks, for example in an argument: *He's always trying to score off his colleagues.*

Ⓖ v + prep

ˌscore sth ˈout/ˈthrough (*BrE*) to draw a line or lines through sth in a text to show that you do not

want it: *The last paragraph had been scored out.* ◇ *He neatly scored through the word 'impossible'.*
SYN **cross sth out/through; delete sth**
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

scout /skaʊt/

ˌscout aˈround; ˌscout aˈround sth (*BrE also* **ˌscout ˈround, ˌscout ˈround sth**) **(for sb/sth)** to search an area or different places to try to find sb/sth: *I'll go and scout around for some water.*
G v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌscout sth ˈout to find out what sth is like or where sth is, by searching: *A team travelled to Moscow to scout out possible places for a meeting.* ◇ *The company is scouting out business opportunities in Vietnam.*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

scrabble /ˈskræbl/

ˌscrabble aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌscrabble aˈbout, ˌscrabble ˈround**) **(for sth)** to use your fingers to search for sth quickly or with difficulty: *She scrabbled around in her bag for her glasses.*
G v + adv

ˌscrabble at sth to scratch at sth with small, hurried movements: *She was scrabbling at the earth with her fingers.*
G v + prep

scrape /skreɪp/

ˌscrape ˈby (on sth) to manage to live on the money you have, although you do not have much: *I can just scrape by on what my parents give me.*
G v + adv

ˌscrape ˈin; ˌscrape ˈinto sth (*BrE*) to manage to get a job, a position, a place at college, etc., but with difficulty: *I just managed to scrape into university.* ◇ *He scraped in with 180 votes.* ◇ *Our team just scraped into the semi-finals.*
G v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌscrape sth ˈoff; ˌscrape sth ˈoff sth to remove sth from a surface by moving sth sharp and hard like a knife across it: *He spent all day scraping paint off the walls.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌscrape sth ˈout 1 (*also* **ˌscrape sth ˈout of sth**) to remove sth from the inside of sth else using sth sharp and hard like a knife: *I scraped all the seeds out of the melon.* ◇ *He scraped out the bowl* (= removed everything from it) *with a teaspoon.* **2** (*AmE*) to just manage to make enough money to live: ***He scraped out a living** by drawing cartoons for local newspapers.* OBJ **living, existence**
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
1 also v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌscrape ˈthrough; ˌscrape ˈthrough sth to succeed with difficulty in doing sth, especially in passing an exam: *I might scrape through (the exam) if I'm lucky.* ◇ *She just scraped through law school.*
OBJ **exam**
G v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌscrape sth toˈgether (*also* **ˌscrape sth ˈup** *less frequent*) to obtain or collect sth such as an amount of money with difficulty: *They managed to scrape together $1 200 and printed 3 000 copies of the comic.* ◇ ***We scraped up enough money** to buy a small car.*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

scratch /skrætʃ/

ˌscratch aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌscratch aˈbout**) **(for sth)** to search for sth in a way that is not very organized, by looking at different things, looking on the ground, etc: *He was scratching around on the ground for clues.*
G v + adv

ˌscratch sth ˈoff; ˌscratch sth ˈoff sth to remove sth from a surface by rubbing with your nails, etc: *She scratched the paint off to see what was underneath.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌscratch sth ˈout to remove a word, especially a name, from sth written, usually by putting a line through it: *Their names had been scratched out.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

scream /skriːm/

ˌscream ˈout (for sth) to be very obvious or noticeable; to demand attention: *The mistakes just scream out at you.* ◇ *The cake was screaming out to be eaten.*
G v + adv

screen /skriːn/

ˌscreen sth ˈoff to separate or hide an area of a room etc. from another area by putting a tall piece of furniture or equipment in front of it or around it: *Part of the room had been screened off with a curtain.*
NOTE **Screen sth off** is often used in the passive.
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌscreen sb/sth ˈout to decide not to include sb/sth, or not to allow sb to join an organization, enter a country, etc. because you think they may not be suitable or may cause trouble: *Unsuitable candidates were screened out.* ◇ *His job is to screen out inquiries unlikely to result in a sale.* ◇ *Insurance companies often screen out people who are high risk.*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*) ◆ v + pron + adv

ˌscreen sth ˈout to prevent sth harmful from entering or going through sth: *It is essential to screen out ultraviolet rays.* ◇ *A window blind will screen out too much light.*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*) ◆ v + pron + adv

screw /skruː/

ˌscrew aˈround (△, *slang*) **1** to have sex with a lot of different people NOTE A more polite, informal way to say this is **sleep around**. **2** (*AmE*) to waste time doing silly or useless activities: *Stop screwing around and do some work!* NOTE A more polite, informal way to say this is **mess around**, or, in British English, **mess about**.
G v + adv

ˌscrew sb aˈround (*BrE*, △, *slang*) to treat sb in a way that is deliberately not helpful to them or wastes their time: *Stop screwing me around and tell me the truth!*
NOTE A more polite, informal way of saying this is **mess sb about/around** (*BrE*).
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌscrew sth ˈdown to attach sth firmly to sth else using screws: *Screw the lid of the box down securely.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌscrew sth ˈon; ˌscrew sth ˈonto sth to fasten the top on a container by twisting it around: *Is the top screwed on tightly?*
OBJ **lid, top**
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep
IDM **have your head screwed on (right/the right way)** (*informal*) to be a sensible person

ˌscrew sb ˈout of sth (*slang*) to cheat sb and prevent them from having sth that they should have: *She tried to screw him out of his winnings.*
NOTE A more polite way to say this is **cheat sb out of sth**.
G v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌscrew sth ˈout of sb (*slang*) to force sb to give you sth; to get sth from sb with great difficulty: *They screwed the money out of her by threatening to hit her.*
G v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌscrew sb ˈover (*AmE*, △, *slang*) to trick sb in order to obtain sth valuable from them; to treat sb badly, especially by deceiving them: *He screwed her over and took all her money.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌscrew ˈup; ˌscrew sth ˈup (*slang, especially AmE*) to do sth badly or spoil sth: *I was trying to be helpful, but I screwed up again.* ◇ *She screwed up all the arrangements.*
SYN **mess up, mess sth up**
G v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈscrew-up** *n* (*slang, especially AmE*) a situation that has been dealt with very badly; a bad mistake: *There was a screw-up over the bookings.*

ˌscrew sb ˈup (*slang*) to make sb so upset or confused that they are unable to deal with problems in life: *Her parents have really screwed her up.*
SYN **mess sb up**
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **ˌscrewed-ˈup** *adj* (*informal*) upset and anxious, especially because of sth bad that has happened to you in the past: *a screwed-up kid*
→ *see also* SCREWED-UP at SCREW STH UP

ˌscrew sth ˈup 1 (*BrE*) to squeeze sth into a tight ball: *She screwed up the note and threw it away.* OBJ **paper, letter** SYN **scrunch sth up 2** if you **screw up** your eyes or your face, you tighten the muscles because you are in pain, the light is too bright, etc: *He screwed up his face in disgust.* OBJ **face, eyes**
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
IDM **screw up your ˈcourage** (*especially BrE*) to force yourself to be brave enough to do sth: *I finally screwed up my courage and went to the dentist.*
▸ **ˌscrewed-ˈup** *adj* (*BrE*) squeezed and twisted into a ball: *a screwed-up sheet of paper*
→ *see also* SCREWED-UP at SCREW SB UP

scribble /ˈskrɪbl/

ˌscribble sth ˈdown to write sth quickly and carelessly: *She scribbled down the directions on her pad.*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

scroll /skrəʊl; *AmE* skroʊl/

ˌscroll ˈdown/ˈup (*computing*) to move down/up or backwards/forwards in the text on a computer screen so that you can read different parts of it: *She scrolled down to the end of the document.*
G v + adv

scrounge /skraʊndʒ/

ˌscrounge aˈround (for sth) (*AmE, informal*) to search around in different places for sth, especially if it is difficult to find or there is not much available: *He scrounged around in his desk drawer for a paper clip.*
G v + adv

scrub /skrʌb/ **(-bb-)**

ˌscrub ˈin (*AmE*) = SCRUB UP

ˌscrub sth ˈoff; ˌscrub sth ˈoff sth to remove sth from the surface of sth by rubbing it hard with a brush, etc: *Scrub all that mud off the walls.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌscrub sth ˈout to clean the inside of sth by rubbing it hard with a brush and usually with soap and water: *He scrubbed out the pans and left them to drain.* ◇ *The cupboards are scrubbed out every week.*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌscrub ˈup (*especially BrE*) (*AmE usually* **ˌscrub ˈin**) (of a doctor, nurse, etc.) to wash your hands and arms very thoroughly before performing a medical operation: *The surgeon scrubbed up and put on his gloves.* ◇ *He asked to scrub in for surgery.*
◈ v + adv
IDM **scrub ˈup well** if sb/sth **scrubs up well**, they look very attractive when they are clean and tidy

scrunch /skrʌntʃ/

ˌscrunch sth ˈup (*informal*) **1** to squeeze sth into a small round shape in your hands: *He scrunched up the piece of paper and threw it at me.* OBJ **paper, letter** **2** to twist your face or part of it into a different shape: *He scrunched up his face, trying to concentrate.* OBJ **face, eyes**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

seal /siːl/

ˌseal sth ˈin to keep sth inside a container so that none of it can escape: *The foil packet seals in the flavour.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌseal sth ˈoff if the police, the army, etc. **seal** a place or an area **off**, they put barriers there to prevent anyone from entering it: *The police have sealed off the town centre.* ◇ *Seal off all the exits!*
OBJ **area, road, building**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*) ◆ v + pron + adv

ˌseal sth ˈup 1 to close an envelope, etc. by sticking the edges of the opening together: *He sealed up the envelope and wrote the address on it.* **2** to close sth completely so that nothing can get in or out: *I sealed up the windows to keep out the fumes.*
NOTE **Seal sth** is used more frequently with these meanings.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

search /sɜːtʃ; *AmE* sɜːrtʃ/

ˌsearch sb/sth ˈout to look for sb/sth until you find them: *He's searching out some old pictures to show us.* ◇ *She wanted to search out her real parents.* ◇ *John searched me out and gave me a note.*
SYN **seek sb/sth out**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*) ◆ v + pron + adv

see /siː/ (**saw** /sɔː/ **seen** /siːn/)

ˈsee about sth; **ˈsee about doing sth** to deal with sth; to make arrangements for sth to be done: *I'll go and see about lunch.* ◇ *I must see about getting someone to help you with the kids.*
◈ v + prep

ˌsee sb ˈin; **ˌsee sb ˈinto sth** to go with sb into a room, building, etc. to make sure that they get there safely: *After seeing her in* (= into her home), *he rode off without a word.*
NOTE **See sb out, see sb out of sth** are used much more often than these verbs.
→ *see also* SEE SB/OUT, SEE SB/YOURSELF OUT OF STH
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌsee sth ˈin if you **see in** an occasion such as New Year, you are there when it happens: *They saw in the New Year with friends.* ◇ *He lived long enough to see in the new millennium.*
OBJ **New Year**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˈsee sth in sb/sth to believe that sb/sth has a particular quality or characteristic, especially a good one: *I don't know what she sees in him* (= I can't understand why she likes him or finds him attractive). ◇ *He sees good in everyone.* ◇ *I can see value in each argument.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌsee sb/sth ˈoff 1 to go to a station, an airport, etc. to say goodbye to sb who is going on a journey: *We all went to the airport to see her off.* **2** (*BrE*) to force sb to leave a place, for example by chasing them: *The dogs soon saw off the burglars.* **3** to defeat sb: *She saw off her opponent and now goes into the final.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌsee sth ˈoff (*BrE*) to be strong enough to resist sth: *The company saw off the threat of a takeover.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌsee sb/yourself ˈout; **ˌsee sb/yourself ˈout of sth** to go with sb out of a building, etc. to make sure that they find the way: *Jay saw the last guests out and locked the door.* ◇ *Don't get up. I'll see myself out.* → *see also* SEE SB IN, SEE SB INTO STH
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌsee sth ˈout (*not used in the progressive tenses*) **1** to stay in the same place, do the same things, or survive, until the end of sth: *She promised to see out the rest of her contract.* **2** to last until the end of sth: *We have enough fuel to see the winter out.*
NOTE **See sth out** is not used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌsee ˈover/ˈround sth (*BrE*) to visit and look at a place carefully: *We'd like to see over the flat again before we rent it.*
SYN **look over sth; look around sth**
◈ v + prep

ˌsee ˈthrough sb/sth (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to realize the truth about sb/sth so that you are not deceived: *We saw through him straight away.* ◇ *I can see through your little game* (= trick).
◈ v + prep

ˌsee sb ˈthrough; **ˌsee sb ˈthrough sth** to give sb support to enable them to survive a difficult experience or a particular period of time: *His courage and good humour saw him through.* ◇ *She saw him through the months after his accident.* ◇ *I only have $20 to see me through the week.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌsee sth ˈthrough (*not usually used in the progressive tenses*) to not give up a task, project, etc. until it is completed: *She's determined to see the job through.*
OBJ **project, job**
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˈsee to sb/sth to deal with sb/sth that needs attention: *I'll see to the kids.* ◇ *Lin was great and saw to everything.* ◇ *Don't worry, I'll **see to it**!*
SYN **attend to sb/sth** (*formal*)
NOTE **See to sth** can be used in the passive: *We must get that door seen to.*
◈ v + prep

ˈsee to it that… to make sure that sth happens: *Can you see to it that everyone knows the date of the meeting?*
◈ v + prep

seek /siːk/ (**sought, sought** /sɔːt/)

ˌseek sb/sth ˈout to look for and find sb/sth, especially when this means using a lot of effort: *He sought her out to ask her advice.* ◇ *She's always seeking out new business opportunities.*
OBJ **opportunities, information**
SYN **track sb/sth down** (*less formal*)
◈ *v + adv + n* ◆ *v + n/pron + adv*

seep /siːp/

ˌseep aˈway to flow away slowly and in small quantities: *Water had been slowly seeping away from the pond.* ◇ (*figurative*) *My anger began to seep away.*
◈ v + adv

segue /ˈseɡweɪ/

ˌsegue ˈinto sth to move smoothly from one song, subject, place, etc. to another: *a spiritual that segued into a singalong chorus* ◇ *He then segued into a discussion of children's rights.*
◈ v + prep

seize /siːz/

ˈseize on sth (*also* **ˈseize upon sth** *more formal*) to suddenly show a lot of interest in sth, especially because you can use it to your advantage: *The scandal was immediately seized upon by the press.* ◇ *Peter seized eagerly on all opportunities for conversation.*
SYN **pounce on sth**
NOTE **Seize on/upon sth** can be used in the passive.
◈ v + prep

ˌseize ˈup 1 if a machine or a part of a machine **seizes up**, it stops moving or working correctly: *The engine seized up after only three weeks.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The whole city seized up* (= no traffic, etc. was able to move) *during the blizzard.* **2** if a part of your body **seizes up**, it becomes stiff and you are unable to move it easily: *My legs were beginning to seize up and I needed a rest.*
◈ v + adv

sell /sel/ (**sold, sold** /səʊld; *AmE* soʊld/)

ˌsell sth ˈoff 1 to sell all or part of an industry, a company or a piece of land: *Unwanted land next to the farm was sold off.* ◇ *The government decided to sell off state companies.* OBJ **assets, land, business, company** **2** to sell things cheaply because you no longer want them or because you need the money: *The store is selling off the old stock.* ◇ *The family silver was sold off to pay the debts.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈsell-off** *n* (*BrE*) **1** the sale by the government of an industry or a service to individual people or private companies: *the proposed sell-off of the rail company* ◇ *sell-off plans* **2** (*AmE, business*) the sale of a large number of shares in a company, after which their value usually falls

ˌsell sth ˈon (to sb) to sell sth to sb else that you have bought not long before, usually in order to make a profit: *She managed the business for a year and then sold it on.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

be ˈsold on sth (*informal*) to be convinced that sth is very good: *I could see she was sold on the idea.* ◇ *I'm not really sold on American music.*
OBJ **idea**
◈ be + v + prep

ˌsell ˈout; **be ˌsold ˈout 1** if tickets for a concert, a game, etc. **sell out** or are **sold out**, they are all sold and there are none left: *The tickets for the game will sell out quickly.* ◇ *Tonight's performance is completely sold out.* ◇ *The first 5 000 copies of the book have sold out.* **2** (*also* **ˌsell ˈout of sth, be ˌsold ˈout of sth**) if sb **sells out** of sth or is **sold out** of sth, they have sold all of it and have nothing left: *I'm sorry, we've sold out of milk.* ◇ *We are already sold out for tonight's concert.*
◈ v + adv ◆ be + v + adv
2 also v + adv + prep ◆ be + v + adv + prep
▸ **ˈsell-out** *n* [usually sing.] a play, concert, etc. for which all the tickets have been sold: *The gig is a sell-out.* ◇ *a sell-out tour/crowd*
→ *see also* SELL-OUT at SELL OUT (TO SB/STH)

ˌsell ˈout (to sb/sth) (*disapproving*) **1** to ignore or change your principles or beliefs, especially to gain an advantage for yourself: *The rest of the gang accused him of selling out to the law.* ◇ *a talented British movie director who's sold out to Hollywood* **2** to sell your business or a part of your business: *The company sold out to its rival.*
◈ v + adv

▸ **'sell-out** *n* [usually sing.] a situation in which sb betrays sb who trusted them, by not doing sth that they promised to do, or by doing sth that they promised not to do: *a dreadful sell-out of their cause* ◇ *The deal was seen as a union sell-out to management.*

→ *see also* SELL-OUT at SELL OUT, BE SOLD OUT

,sell sb/sth 'out (to sb/sth) to betray sb: *They discovered who had sold them out to the enemy.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

,sell 'out of sth; be ,sold 'out of sth = SELL OUT; BE SOLD OUT 2

,sell 'up; ,sell sth 'up to sell your home, possessions, business, etc., usually because you need the money, are moving to another place or stopping work: *They sold up and moved to France.* ◇ *We decided to sell up everything and buy a farm.*

◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv

send /send/ (**sent, sent** /sent/)

,send sb/sth a'head to arrange for sb/sth to go or be taken to the place you are going to, before you arrive there: *The rest of the equipment was sent ahead by air.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv

,send a'way (for sth) = SEND OFF (FOR STH)

,send sb a'way 1 to tell sb to leave: *The reporters were sent away empty-handed* (= without any news). **2 (to…)** to arrange for sb to go somewhere away from home: *He was sent away to boarding school at the age of 7.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

,send sb/sth 'back (to sb/sth) to return sb/sth to where they/it came from: *The refugees were sent back to their own country.* ◇ *You can send the goods back if you're not satisfied.*

SYN **return sb/sth (to sb/sth)** (*more formal*)

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

,send sb 'down (*BrE*) **1** (*informal*) to send sb to prison: *He was sent down for ten years.* SYN **put sb away 2** (*old-fashioned*) to make a student leave a university, especially Oxford or Cambridge, because of bad behaviour: *She was sent down from Oxford.* SYN **expel sb**

NOTE **Send sb down** is often used in the passive.

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

'send for sb to send a message to sb to ask them to come and see you, especially in order to help you: *Send for a doctor.*

OBJ **doctor, police** SYN **call sb in**

NOTE **Send for sb** can be used in the passive: *Has the doctor been sent for?*

◈ v + prep

'send for sth to ask sb to bring or deliver sth to you: *Send for an ambulance.* ◇ *Have you sent for a catalogue* (= by post/mail)?

NOTE **Send for sth** can be used in the passive: *More equipment has been sent for.*

◈ v + prep

,send sb 'in 1 to order sb to go to a place to deal with a difficult situation: *Troops were sent in to restore order.* OBJ **troops, police, army 2** to tell sb to go into a room, where sb else is waiting to see them: *Send the next candidate in, please.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

,send sth 'in to send sth by post/mail to a place where it will be dealt with: *500 schools sent in entries for the competition.* ◇ *Viewers are invited to send in their suggestions for the programme.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

,send 'off (*also* **,send a'way** *especially AmE*) **(for sth)** to write to sb and ask them to send you sth by post/mail: *If you save enough packets, you can send off and get a free toy.* ◇ *You can send off for a free booklet.*

SYN **write away/off (to sb) (for sth)**

◈ v + adv

,send sb 'off 1 (for sth) (*BrE*) (in a sports game) to make sb leave the field because they have broken the rules of the game: *He was sent off for a foul.* ◇ *Three players got sent off in the first half.* OBJ **player** NOTE In this meaning **send sb off** is often used in the passive. **2 (to …)** to ask or tell sb to go somewhere: *The bank sent him off for four months study at Harvard.* ◇ *I always send the kids off to school looking clean and tidy.* ◇ *The men were sent off to find water.*

◈ **1** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
2 v + n/pron + adv

▸ **,sending-'off** *n* (*BrE*) (in a sports game) a situation when a player is told to leave the field because they have broken the rules: *It's his third sending-off this year.* ◇ *The match saw three penalties and two sendings-off.*

▸ **'send-off** *n* (*informal*) an occasion when people come together to say goodbye to sb who is leaving: *She was given a good send-off by all her colleagues.*

,send sth 'off (to sb) to send sth by post/mail: *Have you sent that letter off yet?*

OBJ **letter, parcel** SYN **mail sth off (to sb)** (*AmE*), **post sth off (to sb)** (*BrE*)

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

,send sth 'on 1 (to…) to send a letter, etc. that has arrived at sb's old address to their new one: *I've asked a neighbour to send on any important letters.* OBJ **letter** SYN **forward sth (to sb/sth)** (*more formal*) **2 (to sb/sth)** to send sth you have received to sb else for them to see or deal with: *I'll send the photos on to you.* **3** to send sth to a place so that it arrives before you get there: *We sent our furniture on by ship.* ◇ *We've arranged for your belongings to be sent on.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

,send sb 'out to send sb somewhere for a particular purpose: *I'll ask them to send someone out straightaway to fix the car.* ◇ *If I'm not back by midnight, send out a search party!*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

,send sth 'out 1 to send sth to a lot of different people or places: *I sent out fifty invitations.* ◇ *Have we sent letters out to all the applicants?* OBJ **letter, information** SYN **mail sth out 2** to produce sth, such as light, a signal, sound, etc: *a fire sending out waves of warmth* ◇ *His brain was sending out warning signals telling him to be careful.* OBJ **signal** SYN **emit sth** (*more formal*)

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

,send 'out for sth to ask a restaurant or shop/store to deliver food to you at home or at work: *We could send out for a takeaway.*

◈ v + adv + prep

,send sb/sth 'up (*BrE, informal*) to make people laugh, especially by copying them/it in an amusing way: *a TV programme that sends up politicians* ◇ *Everyone was sending her up.* ◇ *The teacher heard me sending up her accent.*

◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

▸ **'send-up** *n* (*BrE, informal*) an act of making sb/sth look silly by copying them in an amusing way: *The movie is a hilarious send-up of the Hollywood western.*

separate /'sepəreɪt/

,separate sth 'off (from sth) to remove sth from a larger thing or group; to keep sth apart: *The property agency has been separated off from the main business.*

◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

,separate 'out; ,separate sb/sth 'out (from sth) to divide into different parts; to divide sb/sth into different parts or groups: *The mixture separates out into layers.* ◇ *Plastics must be separated out into different types for recycling.* ◇ *We need to separate out fact from speculation.* ◇ *The process separates out the different gases.*

NOTE **Separate** and **separate sb/sth** can also be used with this meaning.

◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

serve /sɜːv; *AmE* sɜːrv/

'serve as/for sth to be used instead of sth else when there is nothing better available: *An old box served as a table.* ◇ *Small temporary buildings had to serve for offices.*

SYN **act as sth**

◈ v + prep

'serve sth on sb (*also* **'serve sth upon sb** *more formal*) **'serve sb with sth** (*law*) to give or send sb an official document, especially one that orders them to appear in a court of law: *The police have served a summons on Mr Jackson.* ◇ *The police have served him with a summons.*

OBJ **summons, notice, writ**

◈ v + n/pron + prep

,serve sth 'out 1 to continue doing sth until the end of a fixed period of time: *She served out the rest of her sentence in an open prison.* OBJ **notice, sentence, term** NOTE In this meaning **serve sth out** cannot be used in the passive. **2** (*especially BrE*) = SERVE STH UP

◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

,serve sth 'up 1 (*also* **,serve sth 'out** *especially BrE*) to put food onto plates and give it to people: *He served up a delicious meal.* SYN **dish sth out; dish up, dish sth up 2** (*disapproving*) to give or offer sth: *All the TV channels served up the usual old movies during the holidays.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

,serve sth u'pon sb = SERVE STH ON SB, SERVE SB WITH STH

'serve sb with sth = SERVE STH ON SB, SERVE SB WITH STH

set /set/ (**setting, set, set**)

~ about
~ against
254 ~ ahead
~ apart
~ aside
~ back
~ down
~ forth
~ in
~ in/into
255 ~ off
~ off against
~ on
~ out
~ to
~ up
256 ~ up as
~ upon

'set about sb (with sth) (*BrE, old-fashioned*) to attack sb: *He set about me with a stick.*

◈ v + prep

'set about sth; 'set about doing sth 1 to begin a task or an activity, especially with energy or enthusiasm: *We set about the task of cleaning the apartment.* **2** to approach a problem or task in a particular way: *You've set about this problem the wrong way.* ◇ *How should I set about finding a job?* SYN **go about sth, go about doing sth**

◈ v + prep

'set sb a'gainst sb to make sb oppose a friend, relative, etc: *The civil war set brother against brother.*

◈ v + n/pron + prep

,set sth a'gainst sth 1 to consider sth by comparing good points with bad ones: *Set against the benefits of the new technology is the possibility that jobs will be lost.* SYN **balance A against B 2** (*also* **'set sth 'off against sth**) (*finance*) to record sth as a business cost as a way of reducing the amount of tax you must pay: *The cost of looking for oil can be set against tax as business expenditure.* **3 be set against sth** if sth is set **against** sth else, it is placed near it or next to it so that the difference between the two is very noticeable: *views of rocky islands set against fiery sunsets* ◇ *Set against her white dress, her hair seemed even darker.* **4 be set against sth** if a story, a film/movie, etc. is **set against** a particular time, event or place, the action happens at that time or place: *It is a love story set against a backdrop of rural Irish life.*

NOTE In meanings 3 and 4 **set sth against sth** is only used in the passive.

◈ **1,2** v + n/pron + prep
3,4 be + v + prep

ˌset sth aˈhead (*AmE*) to change a clock or watch to show the correct later time: *Don't forget to set your clocks ahead tonight* (because the time has officially changed).

OBJ **clock, watch** SYN **put sth forward** (*BrE*)
OPP **set sth back** (*AmE*), **put sth back** (*BrE*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌset sb/sth aˈpart (from sb/sth) to make sb/sth different from or better than others: *His confidence sets him apart from his classmates.* ◇ *It's the service at the restaurant that sets it apart.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌset sth aˈpart (*BrE*) (*also* **ˌset sth aˈside** *AmE, BrE*) to keep sth such as money or time for a special use or purpose: *A room was set apart for quiet reading.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌset sth aˈside 1 to place sth to one side: *I set her letter aside, meaning to read it later.* SYN **put sth aside 2** to save or keep sth for a particular purpose: *She sets aside £50 every month for her daughter's college fees.* ◇ *We need to set aside some time to deal with this.* OBJ **money, time** SYN **put sth aside 3** to ignore sth such as your feelings or opinions, because other things are important: *We decided to set our differences aside.* ◇ *Let's set aside my personal feelings for now.* SYN **put sth aside 4** = SET STH APART *Restaurants must set aside an area for non-smokers.* OBJ **area, room** SYN **put sth aside 5** (*law*) to reject a previous decision made by a court of law: *The verdict was set aside by the Appeal Court.* OBJ **decision, conviction** SYN **overturn sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

▶ **ˈset-aside** *n* [U] a system in which the government pays farmers not to use some of their land for growing crops; the land that the farmers are paid not to use: *750 acres of set-aside*

ˌset sb ˈback sth (*informal*) to cost sb a large amount of money: *That new car must have set her back a bit.* ◇ *This watch set me back £200.*
SYN **knock sb back sth** (*BrE, informal*)

NOTE **Set sb back sth** cannot be used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv + n

ˌset sb/sth ˈback to delay the progress of sb/sth: *The rain set the building programme back by several weeks.* ◇ *He was starting to play very well, but his injury has really set him back.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▶ **ˈsetback** *n* a problem or difficulty that delays the progress of sb/sth: *Parry's broken ankle was a major setback for the team.*

ˌset sth ˈback (*AmE*) to change a clock or watch to show the correct earlier time: *I forgot to set my watch back last night* (= when the time officially changed).

OBJ **clock, watch** SYN **put sth back** (*BrE*)
OPP **put sth forward** (*BrE*), **set sth ahead** (*AmE*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv

be ˌset ˈback (from sth) if a building is **set back**, it is a long way from sth, especially a road: *Their house is the only one that's set back (from the road).*
◈ be + v + adv

ˌset ˈdown; **ˌset sth ˈdown** (of a plane, a pilot, passengers, etc.) to land: *We set down on the beach.* ◇ *The pilot tried to set the plane down in a field.*
SYN **put down** (*especially BrE*), **land, land sth**
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌset sb ˈdown (*BrE*) (of a vehicle or its driver) to stop and allow sb to get off/out: *The taxi set me down at the end of the road.*
SYN **drop sb/sth off** OPP **pick sb up**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌset sth ˈdown 1 (on sth) (*literary*) to place an object down on a surface: *He set his glass down before he spoke.* ◇ *She made space so that I could set the tray down on the table.* SYN **put sth down 2** to write sth down on paper in order to record it: *I wanted to set my thoughts down on paper.* ◇ *It's a good idea to set down your complaint in writing.* SYN **put sth down 3** to give sth as a rule, etc: *to set down guidelines/rules* ◇ *qualifying standards set down by the Athletics Association*
◈ **1,2** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
3 v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌset ˈforth (*literary*) to start a journey: *They set forth for Crete.*
SYN **set out** (*less formal*)
◈ v + adv

ˌset ˈforth sth; **ˌset it/them ˈforth** (*formal*) to state sth clearly; to make sth known: *The President set forth his views in a long television broadcast.*

NOTE This phrasal verb can be used in the passive: *Her beliefs have been clearly set forth.* • A noun must always follow **forth**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **forth**.
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv

ˌset ˈin if bad weather, an unpleasant feeling, an illness, etc. **sets in**, it begins and seems likely to continue: *I need to mend the roof before winter sets in.* ◇ *Panic set in when she realized how much work there was to do.* ◇ *He eventually agreed to stay in bed, but it was too late — pneumonia had set in.* SUBJ **panic, winter**
◈ v + adv

IDM **the ˈrot set in** used to describe the fact that a situation has become very bad and will continue like that: *She had problems at her first school, but when she changed schools the rot really set in.*

ˌset sth ˈin/ˈinto sth to fix sth in a space so that it does not stick out beyond the surface: *A small safe had been set into the wall.*

NOTE **Set sth in/into sth** is usually used in the passive. • The verb **inset sth** has a similar meaning.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

▶ **ˈinset** *n* **1** a small picture, map, etc. inside a larger one: *Brad Pitt at the premiere, and his wife (inset)* (= about a photograph in a newspaper) **2** a piece of material, a small stone, etc. that is added on to sth else or put inside sth else: *a silver brooch with ruby insets*

ˌset ˈoff to begin a journey: *I set off for work at seven.* ◇ *Check your oil before setting off on a long journey.* ◇ *When are you planning to set off?*
◈ v + adv

ˌset sb ˈoff; **ˌset sb ˈoff doing sth** (*informal, especially BrE*) to make sb start doing sth such as laughing, crying or talking: *Those photos always set her off (crying).* ◇ *Just seeing him laughing sets me off!* (= makes me start laughing)
SYN **start sb off, start sb off doing sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌset sth ˈoff 1 to make a bomb, etc. explode: *to set off fireworks* ◇ *They set the bomb off as soon as they were a safe distance away.* OBJ **bomb, firework 2** to make an alarm (= a loud warning noise or signal) start: *The burglars set the alarm off.* ◇ *If you burn the toast you'll set the smoke alarm off.* OBJ **alarm 3** to start a process or series of events: *The news set off a wave of panic on world markets.* ◇ *The girl's death set off a terrible chain of events.* OBJ **panic, chain/series of events** → *see also* SET STH UP 4 **4** to make sth appear more attractive by being placed near it: *That scarf sets off the blue of her eyes.*
◈ **1,2** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
3,4 v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌset sth ˈoff against sth – SET STH AGAINST STH 2

NOTE The verb **offset sth (against sth)** has a similar meaning: *There are certain expenses that you can offset against tax.*

ˈset on/upon sb (*formal*) to attack sb: *I was set upon by a gang of youths.*

NOTE **Set on/upon sb** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + prep

ˈset sb/sth on sb to make a person or an animal attack sb: *The farmer threatened to set his dogs on us if we didn't leave at once.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌset ˈout 1 to leave a place and begin a journey, especially a long journey: *They set out on the last stage of their journey.* ◇ *We set out at dawn.* **2 ˌset ˈout to do sth** to begin to do sth with a particular aim or purpose: *She set out to break the world record.* ◇ *They succeeded in what they had set out to do.*
◈ v + adv **2** also v + adv + to inf

▶ **ˈoutset** *n* the beginning of sth: *We knew the danger* ***at/from the outset.***

ˌset sth ˈout 1 to arrange or display sth: *She began setting out plates and glasses.* ◇ *Set out your answers neatly.* **2** to present ideas, facts, etc. in a clear, organized way, in speech or writing: *This document sets out our objections to the proposal.* OBJ **terms, reasons, policies, conditions**
◈ **1** v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
2 v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌset ˈto (*old-fashioned, formal, especially BrE*) **1** to begin doing sth in a busy or determined way: *She set to with a scrubbing brush* (= she started cleaning). **2** to begin fighting: *They took off their jackets and set to.*
◈ v + adv

▶ **ˌset-ˈto** *n* [sing.] (*informal, especially BrE*) a fight or an argument: *He had a set-to with one of his workmates.*

ˌset ˈup; **ˌset sth ˈup** to make a machine, some equipment, etc. ready to use: *He helped me to carry my equipment in and set up.* ◇ *It took hours to set up all the equipment.*
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌset ˈup; **ˌset yourself ˈup** to start running your own business: *He left the firm and set up in business on his own.* ◇ *She set herself up as a hairdresser.*
◈ v + adv • v + pron + adv

ˌset sb ˈup 1 to provide sb with the money they need, for example to start a business, buy a home, etc: *A bank loan helped to set her up in business.* ◇ *He set his daughter up in her own apartment.* ◇ *If you win tonight's fight, you'll* ***be set up for life*** (= have all the money you will ever need). **2** (*informal*) to trick sb, especially by making them appear to be guilty of sth that they have not done: *He claimed he had been set up by the police.* **3** (*informal*) to make sb feel healthier, stronger, more active, etc: *A good breakfast will set you up for the day.* **4 (with sb)** (*informal*) to arrange for sb to meet sb so that they can have a romantic or sexual relationship: *He set me up with his sister.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

▶ **ˈset-up** *n* [usually sing.] (*informal*) **1** a situation in which sb tricks you or makes it seem as if you are guilty of sth that you have not done: *I didn't do it, this is a set-up!* **2** a situation when sb arranges for you to meet sb in order to begin a romantic or sexual relationship: *a set-up date*
→ *see also* SET-UP at SET STH UP

ˌset sth ˈup 1 to create sth or start a business, an organization, etc: *She gave a talk on setting up a business.* ◇ *A committee was set up to investigate*

the problem. ◇ *young people setting up home for the first time* OBJ **business, committee, system, company 2** to build sth or put sth somewhere: *The police set up roadblocks on all main roads.* **3** to organize or arrange sth; to make the arrangements for sth to happen: *to set up a meeting* ◇ *We'll set up the transport arrangements.* OBJ **meeting 4** to start a process or a series of events: *The crisis set up a chain reaction in other European markets.* OBJ **chain reaction, chain of events** → *see also* SET STH OFF 3
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
▶ **ˈset-up** *n* [usually sing.] (*informal*) the way sth is organized or arranged; a system: *I've only been here a week so I don't really know the set-up.*
→ *see also* SET-UP at SET SB UP

ˌset yourself ˈup = SET UP, SET YOURSELF UP

ˌset yourself ˈup as sth to claim to be very important, know a lot about sth, etc: *He set himself up as an authority on modern art.*
◈ v + pron + adv + prep

ˈset upon sb (*formal*) = SET ON/UPON SB

settle /ˈsetl/

ˌsettle ˈdown 1 (*also* **ˌsettle yourself ˈdown**) to get yourself into a comfortable position when you are sitting or lying: *She settled down in an armchair to read.* ◇ *Tom settled himself down at the table.* **2** to start to have a calmer or quieter way of life, without many changes, especially living in one place: *He got married and settled down.* **3** to become relaxed and confident in a new situation; to get used to a new way of life, job, etc: *She's settling down well at her new school.* ◇ *He just couldn't settle down in the city.* **4** to become calmer and less active: *I've been really busy at work, but things should settle down again soon.* ◇ *Their speed settled down to a steady fifty miles an hour.*
◈ v + adv **1** also v + pron + adv

ˌsettle ˈdown; ˌsettle sb ˈdown to become or to make sb become calmer, less excited, etc: *The children finally settled down and started work.* ◇ *The teacher had trouble settling the class down.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌsettle yourself ˈdown = SETTLE DOWN

ˌsettle ˈdown to sth (*also* **ˈsettle to sth** *BrE*) to begin to think about sth or give your attention to doing sth: *They had just settled down to dinner when the phone rang.* ◇ *I'm so worried that I can't settle to anything.*
◈ v + adv + prep ◆ v + prep

ˈsettle for sth; ˈsettle for doing sth to accept sth that is not quite what you wanted but is the best that you can get: *Both teams were happy to settle for a draw.* ◇ *He'd hoped to get £8 000 for the car but had to settle for a lot less.* ◇ *I refuse to settle for (being) second best!*
OBJ **less**
◈ v + prep

ˌsettle ˈin; ˌsettle ˈinto sth to become used to something new, such as a new home, school or job: *She soon settled in at school.* ◇ *It took her a while to settle into her new job.*
OBJ **routine, school, job**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˈsettle on sth (*also* **ˈsettle upon sth** *more formal*) to choose sth; to make a decision about sth: *We couldn't decide where to go but we eventually settled on Italy.*
SYN **decide on/upon sth**
NOTE **Settle on/upon sth** can be used in the passive: *A date was finally settled on.*
◈ v + prep

ˈsettle sth on/upon sb (*formal, law*) to arrange to give property or money to sb, for example after your death: *He settled his entire estate on his son.*
OBJ **money, estate**
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˈsettle to sth (*BrE*) = SETTLE DOWN TO STH

ˌsettle ˈup (with sb) to pay sb the money you owe them: *We need to settle up with them for the hire of the room.* ◇ *I'll pay now — we can settle up later.*
◈ v + adv

ˈsettle upon sth = SETTLE ON STH

ˈsettle sth upon sb = SETTLE STH ON/UPON SB

sew /səʊ; *AmE* soʊ/ (**sewed, sewn** /səʊn; *AmE* soʊn/ or **sewed**)

ˌsew sth ˈup 1 to join or mend sth using a needle and thread: *Sew up the tear before it gets any worse.* ◇ *They cleaned the wound and sewed it up.* OBJ **seam, tear, wound 2** (*informal*) to arrange sth in a satisfactory way; to bring sth to a favourable conclusion: *They'd sewn the deal up by midday.* OBJ **deal 3** (*informal*) to have control of sth; to be likely to win sth: *Her company* ***have got*** *the market* ***sewn up.*** ◇ *By half time they* ***had*** *the game* ***sewn up.*** OBJ **market, game, election**
NOTE In meanings 2 and 3 **sew sth up** is often used in the passive and in the phrase **have (got) sth sewn up.**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

shack /ʃæk/

ˌshack ˈup with sb; be ˌshacked ˈup with sb (*also* **ˌshack ˈup together**) (*slang, disapproving*) to live with sb you are having a sexual relationship with but are not married to: *He's shacked up with some girl he met in Berlin.*
◈ v + adv + prep ◆ be + v + adv + prep ◆ v + adv + adv

shade /ʃeɪd/

ˌshade sth ˈin to make part of a picture darker, either with colours or using black: *He shaded in part of the graph.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌshade ˈinto sth to gradually change into sth else so that you cannot tell where one thing ends and the other begins: *The blue gradually shades into purple.* ◇ *Sometimes nervousness can shade into fear.*
◈ v + prep

shake /ʃeɪk/ (**shook** /ʃʊk/ **shaken** /ˈʃeɪkən/)

ˌshake ˈdown (*informal*) to become comfortable and confident in a new situation: *Once the team shakes down, results should improve.*
◈ v + adv
▶ **ˈshakedown** *n* (*AmE, informal*) the test of a vehicle or an aircraft before it is generally used, to see if there are any problems and to make the crew familiar with it: *a shakedown flight*
→ *see also* SHAKEDOWN at SHAKE SB DOWN; SHAKEDOWN at SHAKE SB/STH DOWN

ˌshake sb ˈdown (*AmE, slang*) to threaten sb in order to get money from them: *They've found the guy who shook George down.* ◇ *police who shake down motorists for bribes*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▶ **ˈshakedown** *n* (*AmE, slang*) an act of trying to get money from sb with violence or threats: *He was stabbed during a shakedown.*
→ *see also* SHAKEDOWN at SHAKE DOWN; SHAKEDOWN at SHAKE SB/STH DOWN

ˌshake sb/sth ˈdown (*AmE, informal*) to search a person or place in a very thorough way: *Police shook down the club, looking for drugs.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
▶ **ˈshakedown** *n* (*AmE, informal*) a thorough search of sb/sth: *a police shakedown of the area*
→ *see also* SHAKEDOWN at SHAKE DOWN; SHAKEDOWN at SHAKE SB DOWN

ˌshake sb ˈoff 1 to escape from sb; to get rid of sb who is following you: *He twisted and turned in a desperate attempt to shake off his pursuer.* ◇ *I think we've shaken them off.* **2** to escape from sb who is holding you and will not let go: *She clung to him, but he shook her off.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌshake sth ˈoff to get rid of sth, such as an illness, that is causing you problems: *I can't shake off this cold.* ◇ *She struggled to shake off her image as a beauty with no brains.*
OBJ **(a) cold**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˈshake on sth to shake hands with sb in order to show that you agree to sth: *Let's shake on it.*
OBJ **deal, agreement, it**
◈ v + prep

ˌshake sth ˈout 1 to open or spread sth by shaking it: *He shook the blanket out and spread it on the grass.* **2** to open sth by shaking it in order to get rid of bits of dirt, dust, etc: *She went outside to shake out the tablecloth.*
→ *see also* SHAKE-OUT at SHAKE STH UP
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌshake sb ˈup 1 to shock or upset sb: *She has been badly shaken up by the experience.* NOTE **Shake sb up** is often used in the passive in this meaning. • **Shake sb** is also used frequently with this meaning: *She was badly shaken by the experience.* **2** to surprise sb in order to make them think or behave in a different way, become more active, etc: *He was asked to shake the staff up a bit.* ◇ *Shaken up by the early goal against them, the team began to fight back.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌshake sth ˈup to make important changes in an organization, a profession, etc. in order to make it more efficient: *The company needs shaking up.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▶ **ˈshake-up** (*also* **ˈshake-out**) *n* a major change to a company or an organization in order to improve it: *The police force is facing the biggest shake-up in its history.*

shame /ʃeɪm/

ˈshame sb into sth; ˈshame sb into doing sth to persuade sb to do sth by making them feel ashamed not to do it: *They shamed him into apologizing.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

shape /ʃeɪp/

ˌshape ˈup (*informal*) **1** [**+ adv/prep**] to develop in a particular way, often in the way that you had hoped for: *Our plans are shaping up nicely.* ◇ *How's the new team shaping up?* **2** to improve your work or your behaviour: *If you don't shape up, you'll lose your job.* **3** (*especially BrE*) to become slim and physically fit: *It's time to slim down and shape up for the summer.*
◈ v + adv
IDM **shape up or ship ˈout** (*AmE, informal*) used to tell sb that if they do not improve their work or their behaviour they will have to leave their job, etc.

share /ʃeə(r); *AmE* ʃer/

ˌshare sth ˈout (**among/between sb**) to divide something such as money, food or work and give an amount to each person: *The work was shared out equally.* ◇ *How can we share out the pizza between the five of us?*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

sharpen /ˈʃɑːpən; *AmE* ˈʃɑːrpən/

ˌsharpen ˈup; ˌsharpen sb/sth ˈup to become, or to make sb/sth, better, more skilful, more effective, etc. than before: *She needs to sharpen up before next month's competition.* ◇ *This exercise will help students sharpen up their reading skills.* ◇ *Discipline has sharpened them up.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

shave /ʃeɪv/

ˌshave sth ˈoff to remove hair from your face, head, etc: *Dad's shaved his beard off.* ◇ *She shocked everyone by shaving all her hair off.*
OBJ **beard, moustache, hair**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌshave sth ˈoff; ˌshave sth ˈoff sth 1 to cut very thin pieces from the surface of a piece of wood, etc: *I had to shave a bit off the door to make it shut.* ◇ *Use a sharp knife to shave off thin rolls of chocolate.* **2** to make something smaller or lower by a very small amount: *We managed to shave 5% off the cost.* ◇ *He shaved half a second off the world record.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

shear /ʃɪə(r); *AmE* ʃɪr/ (**sheared, shorn** /ʃɔːn; *AmE* ʃɔːrn/ or **sheared**)

be ˈshorn of sth (*literary*) to have sth important taken away from you: *a political party shorn of power*
◆ be + v + prep

ˌshear ˈoff; ˌshear sth ˈoff (*technical*) (especially of sth metal) to break under pressure; to cut through sth and make it break: *The bolts holding the wheel in place sheared off.*
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + n + adv

sheer /ʃɪə(r); *AmE* ʃɪr/

ˌsheer aˈway/ˈoff to suddenly move away in a different direction, especially to avoid hitting sth: *The car sheered wildly away, just missing the truck.* ◇ *Her mind sheered away from images she did not wish to dwell on.*
SYN **veer off, veer away (from sth)**
◆ v + adv

shell /ʃel/

ˌshell ˈout (for sth), ˌshell sth ˈout (for sth) (*informal*) to pay for sth, especially when it is a lot of money or you do not really want to: *I'm not shelling out for another computer.* ◇ *I had to shell out $500 for the air fare.*
SYN **fork out (for sth), fork sth out (for sth)**
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

shin (*BrE*) /ʃɪn/ (**-nn-**) (*AmE* **shinny**)

ˌshin ˈdown/ˈup; ˌshin ˈdown/ˈup sth (*BrE*) (*informal*) to climb down or up sth, using your hands and legs to hold it tightly: *He shinned down the drainpipe.* ◇ *You might be able to see if you shin up that tree.*
OBJ **drainpipe, rope**
◆ v + adv • v + prep

shine /ʃaɪn/ (**shone, shone** /ʃɒn; *AmE* ʃoʊn/)

ˌshine ˈout 1 to shine brightly: *A light shone out across the field.* **2** if a person or a thing **shines out**, you notice them because they are very much better than the others: *She seemed to shine out from the rest.*
◆ v + adv

ˌshine ˈthrough; ˌshine ˈthrough sth to be seen clearly and easily: *In the last game her talent really shone through.* ◇ *His love of life shines through the pages of his book.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep

shinny (*AmE*) /ˈʃɪni/ (**shinnies, shinnying, shinnied, shinnied**)

ˌshinny ˈdown/ˈup; ˌshinny ˈdown/ˈup sth (*AmE*) = SHIN DOWN/UP, SHIN DOWN/UP STH *Burglars broke into the art gallery through the roof, shinnied down the rope and stole five valuable paintings.*

ship /ʃɪp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌship sb ˈoff (to…) (*informal*) to send sb away somewhere, especially when they do not want to go: *They shipped the children off to summer camp.*
NOTE **Ship sb off** is often used in the passive: *I was shipped off to Canada.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌship sb/sth ˈoff (to…) to send goods or people somewhere by ship: *They shipped all their possessions off to Australia.*
NOTE **Ship sb/sth off** is often used in the passive: *The goods were shipped off last week.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌship sb/sth ˈout (to…) to send goods or people somewhere, especially by ship: *They shipped the sculpture out to the States.*
NOTE **Ship sb/sth out** is often used in the passive: *Fresh supplies were shipped out.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
IDM **shape up or ship ˈout** (*AmE, informal*) used to tell sb that if they do not improve their work or their behaviour they will have to leave their job, etc.

shoot /ʃuːt/ (**shot, shot** /ʃɒt; *AmE* ʃɑːt/)

ˌshoot sb/sth ˈdown 1 to shoot at sb/sth and make them/it fall to the ground: *They were shot down in cold blood.* ◇ *They shot down a civilian aircraft by mistake.* **2** (*informal*) to strongly criticize sb or their ideas, etc: *When I made a suggestion they **shot me down in flames**.* ◇ *My ideas were shot down one by one.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˈshoot for sth (*AmE, informal*) (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) to try to get or achieve sth difficult: *They're shooting for another victory this season.*
◆ v + prep

ˌshoot ˈoff (*informal*) to leave somewhere very quickly: *She had to shoot off to meet someone.* ◇ *I'm sorry, I've got to shoot off.*
◆ v + adv

ˌshoot sth ˈoff to remove sth by shooting: *They shot the lock off.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌshoot ˈthrough (*informal, especially AustralE*) to leave, especially in order to avoid sb/sth: *I was only five when my Dad shot through.*
◆ v + adv

ˌshoot ˈup 1 (to sth) to rise or increase very quickly: *The inflation rate has shot up to 20%.* **2** to grow taller in a short time: *She's shot up in the last few months.*
◆ v + adv

ˌshoot ˈup; ˌshoot ˈup sth (*slang*) to inject an illegal drug
OBJ **heroin, drugs**
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n

ˌshoot sb/sth ˈup to injure sb or damage sth severely by shooting: *An armed gang shot up the nightclub.*
OBJ **house, bar, club**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

shop /ʃɒp; *AmE* ʃɑːp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌshop aˈround (for sth), ˌshop aˈround sth (for sth) to look at different shops/stores to compare the prices of goods or services so that you can buy the ones that are the best value: *If you're buying a new hi-fi, shop around for the best price.* ◇ *It's worth shopping around the travel agents to find the best deal.* ◇ *When you open a bank account, it's a good idea to shop around first.*
◆ v + adv • v + prep

shore /ʃɔː(r)/

ˌshore sth ˈup 1 to support part of a building or other large structure by placing large pieces of wood or metal against or under it so that it does not fall down: *Engineers shored up the tunnel with wooden beams.* ◇ *The building was shored up to make it safe.* **2** to strengthen or support sth that is weak or failing: *to shore up the economy/dollar/pound*
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

shout /ʃaʊt/

ˌshout sb ˈdown to shout to prevent sb who is speaking from being heard, because you do not like them, or you disagree with what they are saying: *I tried to explain but they just shouted me down.* ◇ *The speaker was shouted down by angry protesters.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌshout ˈout (to sb), ˌshout sth ˈout (to sb) to suddenly say sth in a loud voice: *I shouted out to them but they didn't hear me.* ◇ *She shouted out a warning.* ◇ *He shouted out, 'Over here!'*
SYN **call out (to sb), call sth out (to sb)**
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + speech

shove /ʃʌv/

ˌshove ˈoff (*BrE, spoken*) used to tell sb rather rudely to go away: *Just shove off and leave me alone!*
SYN **push off**
◆ v + adv

ˌshove ˈup (*BrE, spoken*) used to ask sb to move to make a space for sb else to sit down: *We can get one more in if you shove up.* ◇ *Shove up a bit!*
SYN **budge up** (*BrE*), **move up**
◆ v + adv

show /ʃəʊ; *AmE* ʃoʊ/ (**showed, shown** /ʃəʊn; *AmE* ʃoʊn/ or, rarely, **showed**)

ˌshow sb aˈround; ˌshow sb aˈround sth (*BrE also* **ˌshow sb ˈround, ˌshow sb ˈround sth**) to go with sb when they visit a place for the first time, showing them what is interesting: *There are guides in the palace who will show visitors around.* ◇ *I'll arrange for someone to show you around the school.*
SYN **take sb around, take sb around sth**
→ *see also* SHOW SB OVER STH
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌshow sb ˈin; ˌshow sb ˈinto sth to lead a visitor to a place where they can wait, or to the room where sb is waiting to see them: *Sarah showed the visitors in.* ◇ *I was shown into a waiting room.*
OPP **show sb out, show sb out of sth**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌshow ˈoff (*informal, disapproving*) to try to impress other people with your abilities, wealth, intelligence, etc: *Stop showing off!* ◇ *Bonnie was showing off to her friends, doing handstands on the grass.*
◆ v + adv
▶ **ˈshow-off** *n* (*informal, disapproving*) a person who likes to impress other people with their abilities, wealth, etc: *You're such a show-off!*

ˌshow sb/sth ˈoff (to sb) 1 to try to make people pay attention to sb/sth because you are proud of them/it: *He was showing his CD collection off to his friends.* ◇ *She brought her new boyfriend along to show him off.* **2** to make sb/sth look attractive or seem interesting or exciting by

showing their best features: *The black sweater showed off her figure to full advantage.* ◇ *The music shows the band off in their best light.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌshow sb ˈout; **ˌshow sb ˈout of sth** to lead a visitor to the door out of a room, a building, etc: *I'll show you out.*
OPP **show sb in, show sb into sth**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌshow sb ˈover sth (*BrE*) to take sb around a place they are visiting and show them what is interesting: *They showed me over the house.*
→ *see also* SHOW SB AROUND, SHOW SB AROUND STH
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

ˌshow sb ˈround; **ˌshow sb ˈround sth** (*BrE*)
= SHOW SB AROUND, SHOW SB AROUND STH

ˌshow ˈthrough; **ˌshow ˈthrough sth** to be visible through something or behind sth: *This paper is so thin the ink shows through.* ◇ *His skull showed through his thin hair.* ◇ *When he spoke, his bitterness showed through.*
Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˌshow ˈup (*informal*) to arrive or appear at the place you have arranged: *She finally showed up at lunchtime.* ◇ *I arranged to meet him but he didn't show up.*
SYN **turn up**
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌshow ˈup; **ˌshow sth ˈup** to become or to make sth easy to see: *His striped tie showed up well against his dark red shirt.* ◇ *Something odd has shown up on the X-ray.* ◇ *Her lack of experience was shown up by the test.*
Ⓖ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌshow sb ˈup (*informal*) to make sb else feel embarrassed by behaving badly or by doing sth better than them: *He said I'd shown him up in front of his friends.* ◇ *You really showed me up by snoring during the concert!* ◇ *Don't worry about being shown up by the kids — they've always used computers.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌshow sb/sth ˈup as/for sth to show what sb/sth is really like, when this is worse than people thought: *The book shows her up for what she really is: a fraud.* ◇ *We were shown up as the second-rate team that we were.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv + prep

shower /ˈʃaʊə(r)/

ˌshower ˈdown; **ˌshower ˈdown on sb/sth**; **ˈshower on sb/sth**; **ˌshower sth ˈdown on sb/sth**; **ˈshower sth on sb/sth** to fall onto sb/sth, especially in a lot of small pieces: *Volcanic ash showered down on the town after the eruption.* ◇ *The bottle broke and showered glass fragments on us.*
Ⓖ v + adv • v + adv + prep • v + prep •
v + n/pron + adv + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˈshower sb with sth to drop a lot of small things onto sb: *The bride and groom were showered with rice as they left the church.* ◇ *The roof collapsed, showering us with dust and debris.* ◇ (*figurative*) *He showered her with gifts.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

shrink /ʃrɪŋk/ (shrank /ʃræŋk/ shrunk /ʃrʌŋk/ or shrunk, shrunk)

ˌshrink aˈway/ˈback (**from sb/sth**) to move backwards or away from sb/sth, especially because you are frightened or disgusted: *She shrank away from him in horror.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˈshrink from sth; **ˈshrink from doing sth** (*often used in negative sentences*) to be unwilling to do or accept sth that you find frightening, unpleasant or immoral: *She recognized her responsibility and did not shrink from it.* ◇ *He shrank from confronting his son face to face.* ◇ *She never shrank from difficult tasks.*
OBJ **task, duty** SYN **back away from sth**
NOTE **Shrink from sth/from doing sth** are usually used in written English.
Ⓖ v + prep

shrivel /ˈʃrɪvl/ (-ll-, *AmE* -l-)

ˌshrivel ˈup to become dry and wrinkled (= having many small lines or folds) because of heat, lack of water, etc: *The apples left on the tree had shrivelled up.*
NOTE **Shrivel** is used with a similar meaning.
Ⓖ v + adv
▸ **ˌshrivelled ˈup** *adj* dry and wrinkled (= with many small lines or folds): *shrivelled-up apples*

shroud /ʃraʊd/

be ˈshrouded in sth **1** to be covered or hidden by sth: *The city was shrouded in mist.* ◇ *furniture shrouded in dust sheets* **2** if information, etc. is shrouded in mystery, it is hidden or kept secret: *His family background* ***is shrouded in mystery.*** ◇ *Their work* ***is shrouded in secrecy.***
Ⓖ be + v + prep

shrug /ʃrʌg/ (-gg-)

ˌshrug sth ˈoff **1** (*also* **ˌshrug sth aˈway** *less frequent*) to push sth back or away with your shoulders: *She shrugged off her jacket.* ◇ *She put her hand on his shoulder but he shrugged it away.* OBJ **jacket, hand** **2** (*also* **ˌshrug sth aˈside** *less frequent*) to treat sth as if it is not important: *He shrugged off all the objections I raised.* ◇ *Barnes is trying to shrug off an ankle injury.* OBJ **injury, criticism**
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

shut /ʃʌt/ (shutting, shut, shut)

ˌshut sb/sth aˈway to put sb/sth in a place where other people cannot see or find them/it: *He shut the files away in the safe.* ◇ *prisoners shut away in jail for a long time*
SYN **lock sb up/away; lock sth up/away**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌshut yourself aˈway (**from sb/sth**) to stay in your room or go somewhere where you will be completely alone: *He shut himself away in his study to finish the book.* ◇ *You can't just shut yourself away from the world.*
SYN **lock yourself away**
Ⓖ v + pron + adv

ˌshut ˈdown; **ˌshut sth ˈdown** **1** to stop opening for business; to stop sth from opening: *The mine shut down last month.* ◇ *The club was shut down by the police.* SYN **close down, close sth down** **2** if a machine **shuts down**, or sb **shuts it down**, it stops working: *The machine shuts down if there's an overload.* ◇ *The computer system will be shut down over the weekend.*
Ⓖ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈshutdown** *n* **1** the act of closing a factory or business, either temporarily or permanently: *The shutdown has put hundreds out of work.* **2** the act of stopping a large machine from working, either temporarily or permanently: *There was a fault in the nuclear reactor's emergency shutdown procedures.*

ˌshut sb/sth ˈin; **ˌshut sb/sth ˈin sth**; **ˌshut yourself ˈin**; **ˌshut yourself ˈin sth** to put sb/sth in a room, a vehicle, etc. and keep them there; to go into a room, a building, a vehicle, etc. and stay there: *They shut the animals in at night.* ◇ *Liz rushed out of the kitchen and shut herself in her room.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep
▸ **ˈshut-in** *n* (*AmE*, *old-fashioned*) a person who cannot leave their home because they are ill/sick or cannot move easily

ˈshut sth in sth to trap or injure sth by closing sth tightly around it: *I shut my finger in the car door.*
OBJ **finger**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

ˌshut ˈoff; **ˌshut sth ˈoff** **1** if a machine **shuts off**, or sb **shuts it off**, it stops working: *The central heating shuts off automatically at 9.30.* ◇ *I stopped the car and shut off the engine.* SYN **switch off, switch sth off; turn off, turn sth off** OPP **switch on, switch sth on; turn on, turn sth on** **2** if a supply of gas, water, electricity, etc. **shuts off** or sb/sth **shuts it off**, it stops flowing: *The water shuts off automatically when the tank is full.* ◇ *A valve shuts off the gas when the lid is closed.*
Ⓖ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈshut-off** *n* **1** a device that stops sth working or stops power, water, gas, etc. from flowing: *a shut-off valve* **2** a period when power, water, gas, etc. is prevented from flowing: *a shut-off of the water supply*

ˌshut sb/sth ˈoff (**from sth**) to keep sb/sth separate from other people or things: *A range of mountains shuts Bosnia off from the Adriatic.* ◇ *The kitchen area could be shut off from the rest of the room.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌshut yourself ˈoff (**from sb/sth**) to deliberately separate yourself physically or socially from other people: *After her son died, she just wanted to shut herself off from the world.*
SYN **cut yourself off (from sb/sth)**
Ⓖ v + pron + adv

ˌshut sb ˈout **1** (*also* **ˌshut sb ˈout of sth**) to refuse to allow a person to share your thoughts, feelings or activities: *Don't shut me out* (= Tell me about your problems) — *I want to help you.* ◇ *I was shut out of the decision-making process.* ◇ *When he saw her with the baby he felt shut out.* SYN **exclude sb** (*more formal*) **2** (*AmE*, *informal*) to stop an opponent from scoring in a game or contest: *They shut out the Mets in their last game.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
1 also v + n/pron + adv + prep
▸ **ˈshut-out** *n* (*AmE*, *informal*) a game in which one team does not score

ˌshut sb/sth ˈout; **ˌshut sb/sth ˈout of sth** to stop sb/sth from entering a place: *He closed the door firmly, shutting us out of the room.* ◇ *I drew the curtains to shut out the light.*
OBJ **light, noise**
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv •
v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌshut sth ˈout; **ˌshut sth ˈout of sth** to stop yourself from having particular feelings or from thinking about particular things: *She tried to shut out all the painful memories.*
OBJ **pain, memories** SYN **block sth out, block sth out of sth**
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv •
v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌshut yourself ˈout; **ˌshut yourself ˈout of sth** to be unable to enter your home because you have closed the door and left your keys inside: *I've shut myself out of the house again!*
SYN **lock yourself out, lock yourself out of sth**
Ⓖ v + pron + adv • v + pron + adv + prep

ˌshut ˈup (*spoken*, *informal*) used to tell sb rudely to stop talking or making a noise: *Shut up and go away!* ◇ *If you'd shut up, I could hear what she's saying.*
SYN **belt up** (*BrE*)
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌshut sb ˈup (*informal*) to make sb stop talking or making a noise: *I couldn't shut the kids up!*
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌshut sb/sth ˈup **(in sth)**, **ˌshut yourself ˈup** **(in sth)** to keep sb/sth in a place and prevent them from going anywhere; to stay in a room and not go out: *He had been shut up in a cell for ten years.* ◇ *Shut the dog up in the shed.* ◇ *My father used to shut himself up with his books for days.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌshut sth ˈup (*especially BrE*) to close a room, house, etc. and not use it for a period of time: *We shut the summer house up for another year.*
SYN **close sth up**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
IDM **shut up ˈshop** (*BrE, informal*) to close a business permanently; to stop working for the day: *It's time to shut up shop and go home.*

shy /ʃaɪ/ **(shies, shying, shied, shied** /ʃaɪd/**)**

ˌshy aˈway **(from sth/from doing sth)** to avoid doing sth because you are nervous or frightened: *She shies away from close friendships.* ◇ *Don't shy away from saying what you think.*
◈ v + adv

sic (*also* **sick**) /sɪk/ **(-cc-)**

ˈsic sth on sb (*AmE, informal*) to tell a dog to attack sb: *Back off or I'll sic the dog on you.*
OBJ **dog** SYN **set sth on sb** (*BrE*)
◈ v + n/pron + prep

sick /sɪk/

ˌsick sth ˈup (*BrE, informal*) to bring food up from the stomach: *The baby sicked up her milk.*
SYN **throw sth up; vomit sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˈsick sth on sb (*AmE, informal*) = SIC STH ON SB

sicken /ˈsɪkən/

ˈsicken for sth (*BrE*) (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) to show signs that you may be becoming ill/sick: *I feel as if I'm sickening for something.* ◇ *You look as if you're sickening for flu.*
SYN **go down with sth; get sth**
◈ v + prep

side /saɪd/

ˈside with sb **(against sb)** to support sb in an argument, a dispute, etc: *The children always sided with their mother (against their father).*
◈ v + prep

sidle /ˈsaɪdl/

ˌsidle ˈover/ˈup **(to sb)** to approach sb in a shy, uncertain or secret way: *She sidled up to him and whispered in his ear.*
◈ v + adv

sift /sɪft/

ˈsift sth from sth; **ˌsift sth ˈout from sth** to separate sth, usually sth you want, from a group of things: *to sift (out) the good from the bad*
◈ v + n/pron + prep • v + adv + n + prep • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌsift sth ˈout to separate sth, usually sth you do not want, from a group of things: *We need to sift out unsuitable applications.* ◇ *He helped me sift out the bad songs I'd written.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌsift ˈthrough sth **(for sth)** to carefully examine a large amount of sth in order to find sth important or decide what is useful and what is not: *I sifted through his papers for clues.* ◇ *The judges sifted through 8000 entries and finally picked the winner.*
NOTE **Sift through sth** can be used in the passive: *This pile of reports needs to be sifted through by the end of this week.*
◈ v + prep

sign /saɪn/

ˌsign sth aˈway to give up your rights, property, etc. by signing a document: *The artist lost millions by signing away his rights to the cartoon character he created.*
OBJ **rights**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˈsign for sth 1 to sign a form, etc. as proof that you have received sth: *The postman asked me to sign for the packet.* NOTE **Sign for sth** can be used in the passive in this meaning: *This letter hasn't been signed for.* **2** if a football player **signs for** a club, he formally agrees to play for that team: *When did Cantona sign for United?*
◈ v + prep

ˌsign ˈin; **ˌsign sb ˈin** to write your name or the name of a guest when you arrive at an office, a club, etc: *All visitors must sign in on arrival.* ◇ *You have to be signed in by a member.*
OPP **sign out, sign sb out**
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌsign ˈoff 1 (*BrE*) to end a letter, a postcard, etc: *I'll sign off now and post this.* **2** to end a broadcast by saying goodbye or playing a piece of music: *I'll sign off with a reminder to tune in again tomorrow.*
◈ v + adv

ˌsign sb ˈoff (*BrE*) to say officially that sb is too ill/sick to work for a particular period: *The doctor signed him off for a week.* SUBJ **doctor**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌsign sth ˈoff (*BrE*) to give your formal approval to sth, by signing your name: *She signed off all the invoices.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌsign ˈoff on sth (*AmE, informal*) to express your approval of sth formally and definitely: *The President hasn't yet signed off on this report.*
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌsign ˈon 1 (*BrE, informal*) to sign a form stating that you are unemployed so that you can receive payment from the government: *He had to sign on when the factory closed.* **2** (*old-fashioned, AmE*) to announce the start of broadcasting for the day: *This is Jack Grainger signing on.*
◈ v + adv

ˌsign ˈon; **ˌsign sb ˈon** = SIGN UP, SIGN SB UP *Eric has been signed on for the team as goalkeeper.* ◇ *Shall I sign you on for the painting class?* ◇ *I tried to sign on as a medical assistant.*

ˌsign ˈout; **ˌsign sb ˈout** to write your name or the name of a guest when you leave an office, a club, etc: *Don't forget to sign out when you go.* ◇ *You must sign your guests out when they leave the club.*
OPP **sign in, sign sb in**
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

ˌsign sth ˈout to sign a document to say officially that sth can be removed from a place or that you have taken it: *There is no record of the file being signed out again.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌsign sth ˈover **(to sb)** to give your rights or property to sb else by signing a document: *He signed the house over to his daughter.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌsign ˈup; **ˌsign sb ˈup** (*also* **ˌsign ˈon**, **ˌsign sb ˈon** *less frequent*) **1** **(with/for sb)** to sign a document saying that you agree to work for sb, play for their team, etc.; to persuade sb to do this: *She's signed up with an employment agency.* ◇ *We've signed up three new players.* ◇ *Who has been signed up to star in the new movie?* **2** **(for sth)** to arrange to do a course of study by adding your name or sb else's name to the list of people doing it: *I've signed up for a pottery course.* ◇ *Shall I sign you up for the workshop too?* **3** to agree to become a member of the armed forces; to persuade sb to do this: *He tried to sign up when he was only fifteen.*
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

silt /sɪlt/

ˌsilt ˈup; **ˌsilt sth ˈup** to become blocked with sand, mud, etc. that has been brought by flowing water; to block sth in this way: *The old harbour has silted up.* ◇ *Mud is silting up the stream.*
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

simmer /ˈsɪmə(r)/

ˌsimmer ˈdown (*informal*) to become calm after a period of anger, excitement, violence, etc: *Just simmer down and we'll discuss this calmly.*
SYN **cool down, calm down**
◈ v + adv

sing /sɪŋ/ **(sang** /sæŋ/**, sung** /sʌŋ/**)**

ˌsing aˈlong **(with sb/sth)**, **ˌsing aˈlong** **(to sth)** to sing together with sb who is already singing or while a record, radio, or musical instrument is playing: *He sang along with the CD.* ◇ *We sang along to all the songs.*
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˈsingalong** *n* an informal occasion at which people sing songs together: *We had a great singalong in the pub last night.*

ˌsing ˈout; **ˌsing sth ˈout** to sing or say sth clearly and loudly: *Sing out so that everyone can hear.* ◇ *If you need anything, just sing out.*
◈ v + adv • v + adv + speech • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌsing ˈup (*BrE*) to sing more loudly: *Sing up, I can't hear you.*
◈ v + adv

single /ˈsɪŋgl/

ˌsingle sb/sth ˈout **(for sth/as sb/sth)** to choose sb/sth from among a group for special comment or treatment: *They singled her out for particular praise.* ◇ *He was singled out as the best student.*
NOTE **Single sb/sth out** is often used in the passive: *Why had Aidan been singled out for special treatment?*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

sink /sɪŋk/ **(sank** /sæŋk/**sunk** /sʌŋk/**)** or (*less frequent* **sunk, sunk)**

ˌsink ˈback **(into sth)** to move or fall backwards, or lie down, especially when you are feeling tired: *She sank back into her chair.* ◇ *He sank back against the pillows, exhausted.*
◈ v + adv

ˌsink ˈin; **ˌsink ˈinto sth 1** (of liquids) to go down into another substance: *Apply the moisturiser and let it sink in.* ◇ *The rain sank into the dry ground.* SYN **be absorbed (into sth)** **2** (of words, etc.) to be fully understood or realized: *It took a while for the news to sink in.* ◇ *He paused to let his words sink into her brain.* SUBJ **words, news, meaning**
◈ v + adv
IDM **be ˈsunk in sth** to be in a state of unhappiness or deep thought: *She just sat there, sunk in thought.*

ˈsink into sth to go gradually into a less active, happy or pleasant state: *She sank into a deep sleep.* ◇ *He sank deeper into depression.*
OBJ **depression** SYN **descend into sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + prep

ˌsink ˈinto sth; **ˌsink sth ˈinto sth** to go deep into sth solid; to make sth sharp do this: *Sharp teeth sank into his arm.* ◇ *The dog sank its teeth into my leg.*
◈ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌsink sth ˈinto sth to spend a lot of money on a business or an activity, for example in order to make money from it in the future: *We sank all our savings into the new company.*
OBJ **a fortune** SYN **plough sth into sth**
◈ v + n/pron + prep

sip /sɪp/ (-pp-)

ˈsip at sth to drink sth slowly, taking a very small amount each time: *She sipped at her coffee.*
OBJ **drink**
◈ v + prep

siphon (*also* syphon) /ˈsaɪfn/

ˌsiphon sth ˈoff (from sth) (*informal*) to move money or resources from one place to another, usually illegally: *She siphoned off profits into her own bank account.*
OBJ **money, funds** SYN **divert sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

sit /sɪt/ (sitting, sat, sat /sæt/)

ˌsit aˈround; ˌsit aˈround sth (*BrE also* **ˌsit aˈbout/ˈround, ˌsit aˈbout/ˈround sth**) to spend time sitting down doing very little: *I'm far too busy to sit around here all day.* ◇ *We sat about talking for most of the morning.* ◇ *All we could do was sit around and wait.* ◇ *They were sitting around the house chatting.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌsit ˈback 1 to sit or lean comfortably in a chair: *He sat back in his chair and closed his eyes.* **2 (and do sth)** to relax, especially by not getting too involved in or anxious about sth: *Now all the work's done we can* ***sit back and*** *enjoy things!* ◇ *Are you going to sit back and let me do everything?*
◈ v + adv

ˌsit ˈby to do nothing to stop sth bad or unpleasant happening: *I'm not going to sit by and let an innocent man go to jail.*
SYN **stand by**
◈ v + adv

ˌsit ˈdown 1 to lower your body until you are sitting on a chair, etc: *Please sit down!* ◇ *We sat down on the sofa.* ◇ *When everyone was sitting down, he began.* → *see also* SIT YOURSELF DOWN **2 (and do sth)** to give time and attention to sth in order to try to solve a problem or achieve sth: *We've never actually* ***sat down and*** *talked the problem through.*
◈ v + adv
▶ **ˈsit-down** *n* **1** [C] a strike, demonstration, protest, etc. involving people sitting down and refusing to leave a place: *to stage a sit-down* ◇ *a sit-down protest* **2** [sing.] (*BrE, informal*) a short rest while sitting: *I need a sit-down.*

ˌsit ˈsb down to help or persuade sb to sit down either for a rest or to discuss sth: *She sat him down in front of the fire.* ◇ *We need to sit him down and explain the situation.*
NOTE **Sit sb down** is not used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌsit yourself ˈdown (*informal*) to lower your body until you are sitting on a chair, etc: *Come in and sit yourself down.*
→ *see also* SIT DOWN 1
◈ v + pron + adv

ˈsit for sb/sth to be a model for an artist or a photographer: *She sat for some of the most famous artists of her day.*
◈ v + prep

ˌsit ˈin (on sth) to attend a meeting, a class, etc. to watch it, not to take part: *I was allowed to sit in on the meeting.* ◇ *I sat in on some English classes.*
◈ v + adv
▶ **ˈsit-in** *n* a form of protest in which people refuse to leave a factory, a building, etc: *Workers decided to stage a sit-in.*

ˌsit ˈin for sb to do sb's job or perform sb's duties while they are away: *The chief reporter often sat in for George as editor.*
SYN **stand in for sb**
◈ v + adv + prep

ˈsit on sth 1 to be a member of a group of people such as a committee: *How many people sit on the committee?* ◇ *My mother sat on the jury during a famous murder trial.* OBJ **committee, council 2** (*informal*) to do nothing about a letter, report, etc. that sb has sent you: *They've been sitting on my application for a month now.*
◈ v + prep
IDM **sit on the ˈfence** to avoid becoming involved in deciding or influencing something: *You can't go on sitting on the fence trying not to upset anybody.* **(be) sitting on a ˈfortune/ˈgold mine** (*informal*) to own sth very valuable, often when you do not realize it: *His paintings are in great demand. If you have one, you could be sitting on a gold mine.*

ˌsit ˈout to sit outside somewhere rather than inside: *It's too cold now to sit out.* ◇ *Let's sit out on the balcony.*
◈ v + adv

ˌsit sth ˈout 1 to not take part in a dance, game or other activity: *I think I'm going to sit this one out.* OBJ **dance 2** to stay in a place and wait for sth unpleasant or boring to finish: *to sit out a recession/slump/war* ◇ *We'll just have to* ***sit it out*** *here until things improve.*
NOTE **Sit sth out** is not used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˈsit over sth to have a meal or a drink in a slow relaxed way: *We sat over breakfast and planned the day ahead.*
OBJ **breakfast, dinner, etc.**
◈ v + prep

ˌsit ˈround; ˌsit ˈround sth (*BrE*) = SIT AROUND, SIT AROUND STH

ˈsit through sth to stay until the end of a performance, speech, meeting, etc. that you think is boring or too long: *We had to sit through a whole dinner without a cigarette.* ◇ *I can't sit through four hours of Shakespeare!*
◈ v + prep

ˌsit ˈup 1 to be or to move yourself into a sitting position, for example, from lying down: *He sat up, turned the light on, and looked at his watch.* ◇ *Do you feel well enough to sit up yet?* **2** to not go to bed until later than usual: *We sat up late watching a movie.* SYN **stay up 3 (and do sth)** to suddenly give your attention to sth: *We need an advert that will make people* ***sit up and take notice.*** ◇ *This will make them sit up and listen.*
◈ v + adv
▶ **ˈsit-up** *n* an exercise in which you move from lying down to a sitting position: *I do about sixty sit-ups a day.*

ˌsit sb ˈup to move sb from lying to a sitting position: *She sat the baby up in the pram.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv

size /saɪz/

ˌsize sb/sth ˈup (*informal*) to form a judgement or an opinion of sb/sth: *The two opponents were sizing each other up.* ◇ *I sized up the situation very quickly.*
OBJ **situation** SYN **sum sb/sth up (as sb/sth)**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

skate /skeɪt/

ˌskate ˈover/aˈround sth (*BrE also* **ˌskate ˈround sth**) to talk about sth difficult or embarrassing quickly, without giving attention to details: *She skated over the next part of her story.*
◈ v + prep

sketch /sketʃ/

ˌsketch sth ˈin 1 to give more information or details about sth: *He sketched in the background to the case.* ◇ *I'll sketch in the details later for you.* ◇ *You need to sketch in his character a little more.* OBJ **background, history 2** to add sth to a drawing quickly or roughly: *She sketched in a few more trees.* ◇ *I sketched in the outline of the house.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌsketch sth ˈout 1 to draw all the main features of sth without showing exact details: *He sketched out some preliminary designs.* **2** to give a brief general description of a plan or an idea: *She sketched out the plots of her novels in an exercise book.* SYN **outline sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

skim /skɪm/ (-mm-)

ˌskim sth ˈoff 1 to remove a substance such as fat from the surface of a liquid: *Skim off the fat and reheat the stew.* **2** to take the best part of sth for yourself, often in an unfair or dishonest way: *She's been skimming off a percentage of the profits for years.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌskim ˈthrough sth to read sth very quickly in order to get a general impression or to find a particular point: *I only had time to skim through the report.* ◇ *He skimmed through the article trying to find his name.*
OBJ **book, letter**
◈ v + prep

skimp /skɪmp/

ˈskimp on sth to spend less money or time on sth than is normal or necessary: *Older people shouldn't skimp on food or heating.*
SYN **hold back on sth**
◈ v + prep

skip /skɪp/ (-pp-)

ˌskip ˈoff (*BrE*) (*also* **ˌskip ˈout** *AmE, BrE*) (*informal*) to leave a place secretly or suddenly, especially for a dishonest reason, for example to avoid paying for sth: *They skipped off without paying.*
◈ v + adv

ˌskip ˈout on sb/sth (*AmE, informal*) to leave sb, especially when they need you, or when you have a responsibility towards them; to try to avoid a difficult situation by leaving a place: *He just skipped out on his wife leaving her with four kids to take care of.* ◇ *He was found 12 years after he skipped out on drugs charges.*
SYN **run out on sb** (*especially BrE*)
◈ v + adv + prep

skirt /skɜːt; *AmE* skɜːrt/

ˌskirt aˈround sth (*BrE also* **ˌskirt ˈround sth**) **1** to be or move around the edge: *We skirted around the pond and crossed the bridge.* **2** to avoid discussing or dealing with a difficult or embarrassing subject: *She tactfully skirted around the subject of money.* OBJ **subject, question** NOTE **Skirt around/round sth** can be used in the passive in this meaning: *The issue was skirted around for years.*
NOTE **Skirt sth** is also used with both these meanings: *the road that skirted the lake* ◇ *to skirt laws/duties.*
◈ v + prep

skive /skaɪv/

ˌskive ˈoff; **ˌskive ˈoff sth** (*BrE, informal*) to avoid work or school by staying away or leaving early: *I can skive off for a few hours.* ◇ *I decided to skive off school and tell my mum I had a bad headache.*
OBJ **school**, **work** SYN **bunk off**, **bunk off sth** (*BrE*)
NOTE **Skive** can also be used, but not *skive sth*: *Where's Tom? I expect he's skiving again!*
Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

slack /slæk/

ˌslack ˈoff to do sth more slowly or work less hard than before: *We can't slack off until everything is finished.*
SYN **ease off**
Ⓖ v + adv

slacken /ˈslækən/

ˌslacken ˈoff to become less busy or active: *We've been really busy, but things are starting to slacken off now.*
Ⓖ v + adv

slag /slæg/ (**-gg-**)

ˌslag sb/sth ˈoff (*BrE, slang*) to criticize sb/sth in a cruel, unkind way: *He's always slagging his brother off.*
SYN **run sb/sth down** (*BrE*), **cut sb/sth down** (*AmE, more formal*)
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

slam /slæm/ (**-mm-**)

ˌslam aˈgainst sb/sth; **ˌslam sb/sth aˈgainst sb/sth** = SLAM INTO/AGAINST SB/STH, SLAM SB/STH INTO/AGAINST SB/STH

ˌslam sth ˈdown (**on/onto sth**) to put sth down with a lot of force, especially when you are angry: *She slammed the book down on the table.* ◇ *I slammed down the phone* (= put the receiver down and ended the phone conversation) *in a rage.*
OBJ **phone**, **receiver**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌslam ˈinto/aˈgainst sb/sth; **ˌslam sb/sth ˈinto/aˈgainst sb/sth** to crash, or to make sth crash, into sth with a lot of force: *The jeep slammed into the wall.* ◇ *In the crash she was slammed against the back of the seat.*
Ⓖ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌslam sth ˈon if you **slam on** the brakes of a vehicle, you press your foot very hard on the brake and make the vehicle stop very quickly: *A child suddenly ran out into the road and I had to slam on the brakes.*
OBJ only **brakes** SYN **jam sth on**
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

slap /slæp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌslap sb aˈbout/aˈround (*informal, especially BrE*) to hit sb regularly or often, used especially of a man hitting a woman: *He used to come back drunk and slap his wife around.*
SYN **knock sb around**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌslap sb ˈdown (*informal*) to criticize sb or their ideas or suggestions in an unfair way, often in public: *He tried to object, but was immediately slapped down.* ◇ *If you ask a question, she just slaps you down.*
SYN **cut sb down** (*AmE*)
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌslap sth ˈdown (**on/onto sth**) to put sth onto a surface in a quick and often noisy way, especially because you are angry: *He slapped down a copy of the book on the table.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌslap sth ˈon; **ˈslap sth on sb/sth** (*informal*) to announce suddenly that sb must have a punishment, obey a new rule etc., often when this is unfair: *Judges have been slapping on longer prison sentences.* ◇ *The government slapped a new tax on high earners.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

ˌslap sth ˈon; **ˌslap sth ˈon/ˈonto sth** (*informal*) to spread a substance on a surface quickly and carelessly: *I'd better slap some make-up on before I go out.*
OBJ **paint**, **make-up**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌslap sth on sth (*informal*) to increase the price of sth suddenly: *They've slapped 50p on the price of cigarettes.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

ˌslap sth ˈonto sth = SLAP STH ON, SLAP STH ON/ONTO STH

slash /slæʃ/

ˈslash at sb/sth (**with sth**) to attack sb violently with a knife, etc. and try to cut them/it: *He slashed at his opponent's face with a knife.*
Ⓖ v + prep

slave /sleɪv/

ˌslave aˈway (**at sth**) (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) used to emphasize how hard you are working, especially when you think people do not recognize this or feel grateful: *I've been slaving away all day trying to get this work finished.*
Ⓖ v + adv

sleep /sliːp/ (**slept**, **slept** /slept/)

ˌsleep aˈround (*informal, disapproving*) to have sex with many different partners
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌsleep ˈin to remain in bed longer than usual in the morning: *She usually sleeps in on Sundays.*
SYN **lie in** (*BrE, informal*)
NOTE Compare **oversleep**, which means to sleep longer than you intended.
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌsleep sth ˈoff to get better after sth, especially drinking too much alcohol, by sleeping: *He's still sleeping off yesterday's hangover.* ◇ *Go home and **sleep it off**.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˈsleep on sth to delay making a decision about sth until the next day so that you can think about it: *Sleep on it and let me know tomorrow.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌsleep ˈout to sleep outdoors: *We slept out most nights when we were in Greece.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌsleep ˈover to stay the night at sb else's home: *The kids are sleeping over with friends.* ◇ *It's very late now — why don't you sleep over?*
NOTE Compare **oversleep**, which means to sleep longer than you intended.
Ⓖ v + adv
▸ **ˈsleepover** *n* a party for children or young people when a group of them spend the night at one house

ˌsleep ˈthrough sth to not be woken up by sth such as a loud noise or a lot of activity: *She slept right through the thunderstorm.* ◇ *I'm afraid I slept through the alarm.* ◇ *Did he sleep through the whole incident?*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˈsleep together; **ˈsleep with sb** (*informal*) to have sex with sb, especially sb you are not married to: *They have been sleeping together for months now.*
Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

slice /slaɪs/

ˌslice sth ˈoff; **ˌslice sth ˈoff sth 1** to remove a thin piece of sth from sth larger by cutting: *The top of his finger was sliced off in an accident.* ◇ *She sliced a piece of meat off the joint.* **2** to reduce sth by a particular amount: *He sliced two seconds off the world record.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌslice ˈthrough sth (*especially BrE*) to pass through sth very easily: *The axe sliced through the wood like butter.* ◇ (*figurative*) *He sliced through all my objections.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌslice sth ˈup to cut sth into flat thin pieces: *Would you slice the cucumber up?*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

slick /slɪk/

ˌslick sth ˈback/ˈdown if you **slick** your hair **back/down** you make it lie flat by putting oil, water, etc. on it: *His hair was slicked back.* ◇ *He still slicks down his hair with oil.*
OBJ **hair**
NOTE **Slick sth down** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

slim /slɪm/ (**-mm-**)

ˌslim ˈdown to become thinner, for example as a result of eating less: *She slimmed down to 60 kilos before her wedding.*
SYN **trim down**
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌslim ˈdown; **ˌslim sth ˈdown** to make sth, such as an organization or a company, smaller by employing fewer people, reducing the amount of work done, etc: *The coal industry has had to slim down.* ◇ *The firm had to slim down its workforce.* ◇ *a slimmed down curriculum*
SYN **trim down**, **trim sth down**
Ⓖ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

slip /slɪp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌslip aˈway 1 (*also* **ˌslip ˈoff**) to leave quietly without attracting attention: *I slipped away to my room to write some letters.* ◇ *He managed to slip off alone for an hour.* **2** (*also* **ˌslip ˈby**) if a period of time **slips away**, it passes more quickly than you realize: *She could see her childhood slipping away.* ◇ *The afternoon slipped away.* **3** (**from sb**) to disappear; to die or to stop existing: *He slipped away* (= died) *peacefully during the night.* ◇ *I felt the game was slipping away from me* (= I was losing).
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌslip ˈby 1 = SLIP AWAY 2 *Time just seemed to slip by.* **2** if an opportunity, etc. **slips by**, it passes and you do not use it: *I try never to let a chance to travel slip by.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌslip sth ˈin; **ˌslip sth ˈinto sth** to add sth to a speech, conversation or written text quickly or secretly: *He usually slips a couple of jokes into his lectures.* ◇ *She slipped in a few comments about her boyfriend.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌslip ˈinto sth 1 to put clothes on quickly and easily: *I'll just slip into something more comfortable.*
OBJ **dress**, **shoes**, **etc.** OPP **slip out of sth** → *see also* SLIP STH OFF; SLIP STH ON **2** to pass into a particular state or situation, especially a difficult or unpleasant one: *The patient slipped into a coma.* ◇ *The economy has slipped into recession.*
OBJ **coma**, **sleep**, **recession**, **debt**
Ⓖ v + prep

ˌslip ˈoff = SLIP AWAY 1

ˌslip sth ˈoff to take clothes or shoes off quickly and easily: *She slipped her shoes off by the door.* ◇ *Slip off your coat and I'll make some tea.*

OBJ **coat, shoes, etc.** OPP **slip sth on**

→ *see also* SLIP INTO STH; SLIP OUT OF STH

◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌslip sth ˈon to put clothes or shoes on quickly and easily: *Hold on, I'll just slip my coat on, then I'll be ready.*

OBJ **shoes, jacket, etc.** OPP **slip sth off**

→ *see also* SLIP INTO STH; SLIP OUT OF STH

◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

▸ **ˈslip-on** *n* [usually pl.] a shoe that you can put on and take off quickly and easily without having to tie or fasten anything: *a pair of cheap slip-ons* ◇ *slip-on shoes*

ˌslip ˈout (*informal*) if sth **slips out**, you say it when you do not intend to: *I didn't mean to tell him — it just slipped out.*

◈ v + adv

ˌslip ˈout of sth to take off clothes quickly and easily: *She slipped out of her clothes and got into the shower.*

OBJ **clothes, dress, etc.** OPP **slip into sth**

→ *see also* SLIP STH OFF; SLIP STH ON

◈ v + prep ◆ v + adv + prep

ˌslip ˈover to slide a short distance and fall: *He slipped over on the ice and broke his leg.*

◈ v + adv

ˌslip ˈthrough; ˌslip ˈthrough sth if sth or sb **slips through** or **slips through** a system, etc., a person or a system fails to find and deal with it/them: *Mistakes occasionally slip through.* ◇ *Somehow he slipped through the company's screening process.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

IDM **(let sth) slip through your ˈfingers** if sb/sth **slips through your fingers**, you fail to keep or use it/them: *The thief had slipped through their fingers yet again.* ◇ *You've wasted your time at college and let your chances slip through your fingers.* **slip through the ˈnet** when sb/sth slips through the net, an organization or a system fails to find them and deal with them: *We tried to contact all the former students, but some slipped through the net.*

ˌslip ˈup (over sth) (*informal*) to make a careless mistake: *I slipped up over the date of the meeting.* ◇ *He slipped up in his calculations.* ◇ *We slipped up there, didn't we?*

◈ v + adv

▸ **ˈslip-up** *n* (*informal*) a careless mistake: *One small slip-up could cost us the election.*

slob /slɒb; *AmE* slɑːb/ **(-bb-)**

ˌslob aˈround/ˈout; ˌslob aˈround sth (*BrE, slang*) to spend time being lazy and doing nothing: *We just slobbed out in front of the telly last night.* ◇ *Are you going to slob around in your pyjamas all morning?* ◇ *I decided to slob around the campsite instead of going swimming.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

slog /slɒɡ; *AmE* slɑːɡ/ **(-gg-)**

ˌslog aˈway (at sth) (*informal*) to work hard and steadily at sth, especially a boring or difficult task, for a long time: *He slogged away at that report for weeks.*

◈ v + adv

ˌslog it ˈout (*BrE, informal*) = SLUG IT OUT

ˌslog ˈthrough sth (*informal*) to work hard and steadily at sth, especially a boring or difficult task, for a long time: *I seem to have been slogging through this book for weeks.*

◈ v + prep

slop /slɒp; *AmE* slɑːp/ **(-pp-)**

ˌslop aˈbout/aˈround 1 (in sth) (of a liquid) to move around in a container, often so that some liquid comes over the edge: *Water was slopping about in the bottom of the boat.* SYN **slosh around/about 2 (in sth)** to move around in water, mud, etc: *She slopped around in the cooling water.* SYN **slosh around/about 3** (*BrE, informal, disapproving*) to spend time relaxing or being lazy: *She used to slop around all day in old jeans and sweatshirts.* SYN **slouch about/around** (*BrE*), **hang around**

◈ v + adv

ˌslop ˈout (*BrE*) when prisoners **slop out**, they empty the containers that they use as toilets

◈ v + adv

ˌslop ˈover; ˌslop ˈover sth (of a liquid) to move around in a container so much that some liquid comes out over the edge: *Some tea had slopped over into the saucer.* ◇ *Water slopped over the edge of the bath.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

slope /sləʊp; *AmE* sloʊp/

ˌslope ˈoff (*BrE, informal*) to go away, especially without being noticed, in order to avoid doing work, talking to sb, etc: *He always slopes off if there's any work to be done.* ◇ *Where are you trying to slope off to?*

◈ v + adv

slosh /slɒʃ; *AmE* slɑːʃ/

ˌslosh aˈround (*also* **ˌslosh aˈbout** *especially BrE*) **(in sth)** (*informal*) **1** (of a liquid) to move around noisily in a container: *The water was sloshing about in the bucket.* SYN **slop about/around 2** to move around noisily in sth liquid: *The children were sloshing around in the puddles.* SYN **slop about/around 3** (*BrE*) (especially of money) to be present in large quantities: *There seems to be lots of money sloshing around in professional tennis.*

◈ v + adv

slot /slɒt; *AmE* slɑːt/ **(-tt-)**

ˌslot ˈin; ˌslot ˈinto sth if sth **slots in** or **slots into sth**, it fits easily and exactly into a space, especially the space made or designed for it: *This bit slots in neatly just here.* ◇ *This piece is meant to slot into this groove.* ◇ (*figurative*) *I didn't understand everything at the time, but later it all* ***slotted into place.***

→ *see also* SLOT STH IN, SLOT STH INTO STH

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌslot sb/sth ˈin to manage to find a time to see sb or to do sth: *I can slot you in tomorrow at four.*

SYN **fit sb/sth in**

◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌslot sth ˈin; ˌslot sth ˈinto sth to put something into a space that is available or designed for it: *He slotted a coin into the machine.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The final pieces of the puzzle had been* ***slotted into place*** *and I understand what was happening.*

→ *see also* SLOT IN, SLOT INTO STH

◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌslot toˈgether; ˌslot A and B toˈgether if two things **slot together**, or sb **slots them together**, they fit together easily and exactly: *The base comes in two sections that simply slot together.* ◇ *The parts are pre-cut, ready to be slotted together.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

slouch /slaʊtʃ/

ˌslouch aˈbout/aˈround; ˌslouch aˈbout/aˈround sth (*BrE, disapproving*) to spend time relaxing or being lazy: *He slouches around all day reading comics.* ◇ *She wasted the day slouching about the house.*

SYN **slop about/around** (*BrE*), **hang around**

◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

slough /slʌf/

ˌslough sth ˈoff 1 to remove or get rid of a layer of dead skin, etc: *Slough off dry skin once a week.* SYN **shed sth 2** (*formal*) to get rid of sth that you no longer want: *He was not able to slough off the memories of the past.* ◇ *Responsibilities are not sloughed off so easily.*

◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

slow /sləʊ; *AmE* sloʊ/

ˌslow ˈdown; ˌslow sb/sth ˈdown (*also* **ˌslow ˈup, ˌslow sb/sth ˈup** *less frequent*) **1** to go, or to make sb/sth go, at a slower speed: *Slow down, I can't keep up with you.* ◇ *The bus slowed up as it approached the junction.* ◇ *The heat slowed us down.* ◇ *The roadworks are slowing the traffic up in the mornings.* **2** to be less active or develop more slowly; to make sb/sth do this: *He looks ill, he should slow down.* ◇ *The economy has slowed down.* ◇ *They claim they can slow up the ageing process.*

◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

▸ **ˈslowdown** *n* **1** a decrease in the rate of activity or production: *a slowdown in the economy* **2** (*AmE*) a protest that workers make by doing their work more slowly than usual: *The union threatened a slowdown if their demands were not met.*

slug /slʌɡ/ **(-gg-)**

ˌslug it ˈout (*BrE also* **ˌslog it ˈout**) (*informal*) to fight; to compete until sb has won: *The two companies slugged it out for their share of the market.* ◇ *The Democrats and the Republicans will be slugging it out in November.*

◈ v + it + adv

sluice /sluːs/

ˌsluice sth ˈdown/ˈout (*especially BrE*) to wash or clean the surface of sth with large amounts of water: *They sluice the streets down every morning.* ◇ *An attendant was sluicing out the changing rooms.*

◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

smack /smæk/

ˈsmack of sth to seem to contain an unpleasant attitude or quality: *His comments smack of racism.*

◈ v + prep

smarten /ˈsmɑːtn; *AmE* ˈsmɑːrtn/

ˌsmarten ˈup 1 (*also* **ˌsmarten yourself ˈup**) to make yourself neater, tidier, or more attractive: *You need to smarten (yourself) up before you go out.* SYN **spruce yourself up 2** (*especially AmE*) to become more clever and aware of things: *You'll have to smarten up if you want to pass those exams.*

◈ v + adv **1** also v + pron + adv

ˈsmarten sb/sth ˈup (*especially BrE*) to make a person or a place neater, tidier or more attractive: *The hotel has been smartened up by the new owners.* ◇ *She did her best to smarten her husband up.*

SYN **spruce sb/sth up**

◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

smash /smæʃ/

ˌsmash sth ˈdown to make sth fall by hitting it very hard and breaking it: *The police decided to smash the door down.*

OBJ **door**

◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌsmash sth ˈin to make a hole in sth or destroy it by hitting it very hard: *The doll's face had been smashed in.* ◇ (*informal*) *He threatened to* ***smash my head in*** (= hit my head very hard).
OBJ **door, face, head** SYN **bash sth in** (*informal, especially BrE*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv ♦ v + adv + n

ˌsmash sth ˈup to damage or destroy sth by hitting it very hard: *A bunch of thugs broke in and smashed the place up.* ◇ *He smashed his car up last week* (= he had a crash).
OBJ **car, things, place**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ♦ v + adv + n

smell /smel/ (**smelled, smelled**, *BrE also* **smelt, smelt** /smelt/)

ˈsmell of sth to have the smell of sth: *The baby smelled of soap and milk.* ◇ *Can you put your cigarette out? I don't want my room smelling of smoke.*
◈ v + prep
IDM **come up/out of sth smelling of ˈroses** (*informal*) to still have a good reputation, even though you have been involved in sth that might have given people a bad opinion of you

ˌsmell sb/sth ˈout 1 to be aware of fear, danger, trouble, etc. in a situation: *He could smell out weakness in others.* **2** (of dogs) to detect sb/sth, by smelling: *The dogs are trained to smell out drugs.*
SYN **sniff sb/sth out**
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + adv

ˌsmell sth ˈout (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˌsmell sth ˈup**) to fill a place with an unpleasant smell: *That fish smelt the whole house out.*
SYN **stink sth out** (*BrE*), **stink sth up** (*AmE*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv ♦ v + adv + n

smile /smaɪl/

ˈsmile on/upon sb/sth (*formal* or *literary*) if fortune, fate, etc. **smiles on** you, you are very lucky and successful: *Fortune smiled on us that night and the plane landed safely.*
→ *see also* FROWN ON SB/STH
◈ v + prep

smoke /sməʊk; *AmE* smoʊk/

ˌsmoke sb/sth ˈout 1 to make sb/sth come out of a place by filling it with smoke: *The fire is used to smoke the bees out.* **2** to find sb/sth that is causing a problem; to make sth that is secret publicly known: *The police are determined to smoke out the leaders of the gang.*
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + adv

smooth /smuːð/

ˌsmooth sth aˈway/ˈout to reduce or remove problems and difficulties: *The group was set up to smooth away local difficulties.* ◇ *His anxieties were quickly smoothed away.*
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + adv

ˌsmooth sth ˈdown to make your hair or your clothes smooth and flat with your hands: *He smoothed down his hair.*
OBJ **hair, skirt**
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + adv

ˌsmooth sth ˈout 1 to make sth such as a piece of paper or cloth smooth and flat with your hands: *She tried to smooth out the crumpled letter.* OBJ **wrinkles, paper 2** SMOOTH STH AWAY/OUT *We are here to smooth out any practical problems for you.* OBJ **differences, problems**
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + adv

ˌsmooth sth ˈover to make a problem or difficulty seem less serious or easier to deal with, especially by talking to the people involved: *She tried to calm her parents down and* ***smooth things over***. ◇ *The leaders managed to smooth over their differences.*
OBJ **differences, things**
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + adv

snack /snæk/

ˈsnack on sth to eat small amounts of food between or instead of meals: *It's healthier to snack on fruit rather than chocolate.*
◈ v + prep

snap /snæp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌsnap ˈback (into sth) (*AmE*) (*informal*) = BOUNCE BACK (FROM STH) *After the initial shock, he soon snapped back.* ◇ *She snapped back into her daily routine soon after the operation.*
SYN **recover** (from sth)
◈ v + adv

ˌsnap sth ˈout to say sth in a sharp or unpleasant way: *The sergeant snapped out an order.*
NOTE **Snap sth** can be used with this meaning: *She snapped instructions to the team.*
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + pron + adv ♦ v + n + adv (*less frequent*) ♦ v + adv + speech

ˌsnap ˈout of sth; **ˌsnap sb ˈout of sth** (*informal*) to make yourself, or help sb else, stop feeling upset, in a bad mood, etc.; to wake up from a day dream: *Come on, Joe.* ***Snap out of it.*** ◇ *She was snapped out of her reverie by the sound of the door opening.*
◈ v + adv + prep ♦ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌsnap ˈto it (*informal*) used to tell sb to start working harder or more quickly: *This place has to be clean by this evening so snap to it!*
◈ v + prep + it

ˌsnap sb/sth ˈup to buy or seize sth quickly and eagerly: *Fans quickly snapped up the tickets.* ◇ (*figurative*) *He was snapped up by United.*
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + adv

snarl /snɑːl; *AmE* snɑːrl/

ˌsnarl ˈup; **ˌsnarl sth ˈup** if sth **snarls up**, or sth **snarls it up**, it becomes so confused, twisted, etc. that no part of it can move: *The dog's lead got snarled up in a bush.* ◇ *The traffic snarls up at that junction every evening.* ◇ *The accident snarled up the traffic for the whole day.*
NOTE **Snarl sth up** is often used in the passive with *get*: *The city centre gets snarled up with tourists in the summer.*
◈ v + adv ♦ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + adv
▶ **ˈsnarl-up** *n* (*BrE, informal*) a situation in which traffic is unable to move

snatch /snætʃ/

ˈsnatch at sth 1 to try to take hold of sth: *She snatched at the letter in his hand.* **2** (*BrE*) to take an opportunity to do sth eagerly and quickly: *They snatched at the chance to be happy.*
◈ v + prep

sneak /sniːk/

NOTE The usual past form is **sneaked**, but **snuck** is now very common in informal speech in American English and some people use it in British English too. However, many people consider it incorrect and it should not be used in formal writing.

ˌsneak ˈup (**on sb**) to approach sb very quietly, so that they do not see or hear you until you reach them: *He loves sneaking up on me to scare me.* ◇ *She snuck up behind them and suddenly shouted.*
◈ v + adv

sniff /snɪf/

ˌsniff aˈround; **ˌsniff aˈround sth/sb** (*BrE also* **ˌsniff ˈround**, **ˌsniff ˈround sth/sb**) (*informal*) to go somewhere to try to find secret information about sth/sb or to look for a particular person or thing: *Representatives from the studio were sniffing around for new talent.* ◇ *It won't be long before the press come sniffing around the club.*
◈ v + adv ♦ v + prep

ˈsniff at sth (*informal*) to show a lack of interest in or respect for sth: *At first he sniffed at her foreign ways.*
◈ v + prep
IDM **not to be ˈsniffed at** (*informal*) good enough to be accepted or considered seriously: *Her achievement is not to be sniffed at.*

ˌsniff sb/sth ˈout 1 (especially of dogs) to find sb/sth by smelling: *These dogs can sniff out explosives.* SYN **smell sb/sth out 2** (*informal*) to find information about sb/sth: *journalists trained to sniff out a sensation or a scandal* ◇ *They're quick to sniff out a deception.* SYN **nose sth out**
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + adv

ˌsniff ˈround; **ˌsniff ˈround sth** (*BrE*) = SNIFF AROUND, SNIFF AROUND STH/SB

snow /snəʊ; *AmE* snoʊ/

be/get ˌsnowed ˈin/ˈup to be unable to go anywhere or leave a place because of heavy snow: *We got snowed in for three days.*
◈ be/get + v + adv

be/get ˌsnowed ˈunder (**with sth**) to have so much work that you have problems dealing with it: *We're snowed under with work at the moment.*
◈ be/get + v + adv

be/get ˌsnowed ˈup (*BrE*) **1** = BE/GET SNOWED IN/UP **2** (of a road, etc.) to be/become blocked with snow: *The driveway was still snowed up.*
◈ be/get + v + adv

snuff /snʌf/

ˌsnuff sb ˈout (*especially AmE*) to kill sb: *He was snuffed out by the Mafia.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ♦ v + adv + n

ˌsnuff sth ˈout 1 to stop a flame from burning: *She snuffed out the candles.* OBJ **candle, flame** NOTE **Snuff sth** can also be used with this meaning. **2** (*written*) to suddenly end or destroy sth: *A moment of mindless violence snuffed out his life.* ◇ *The revolution was quickly snuffed out.* OBJ **life, hope**
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + pron + adv ♦ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

snuggle /ˈsnʌɡl/

ˌsnuggle ˈdown to make yourself warm and comfortable in your bed: *He snuggled down and went to sleep.*
◈ v + adv

ˌsnuggle ˈup (**to/against sb/sth**), **ˌsnuggle ˈup** (**in sth**) to get into a warm and comfortable position close to sb/sth or in sth: *She snuggled up to him on the sofa.* ◇ *I'd love to snuggle up in bed right now!*
SYN **cuddle up** (**to/against sb**)
◈ v + adv

soak /səʊk; *AmE* soʊk/

ˌsoak ˈin; **ˌsoak ˈinto sth** (of a liquid) to pass into sth: *Apply the oil to the wood and leave it to soak in.* ◇ *The wine had soaked into the carpet.*
◈ v + adv ♦ v + prep

ˌsoak ˈthrough; **ˌsoak ˈthrough sth** (of a liquid) to pass into or through sth: *Blood had soaked through the bandage.*
◈ v + adv ♦ v + prep

ˌsoak sth ˈup 1 to take in or absorb sth, especially a liquid: *Use a paper towel to soak up the excess oil.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The farmers soak up* (= use up) *£1 billion of government aid a year.* OBJ **water, debts 2** to absorb sth into your senses,

your body or your mind: *We walked around the town, soaking up the atmosphere.* OBJ **the sun, the atmosphere**
SYN **absorb sth** (*more formal*)
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv (*less frequent*)

sober /ˈsəʊbə(r); *AmE* ˈsoʊ-/

ˌsober ˈup; ˌsober sb ˈup to become, or to make sb, no longer drunk: *I decided to walk home to sober up.* ◇ *I need a black coffee to sober me up.* ◇ (*figurative, especially BrE*) *We all laughed at what Liam said, but soon sobered up* (= became serious) *when we saw his wife's expression.*
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

sock /sɒk; *AmE* sɑːk/

ˌsock sth aˈway (*AmE, informal*) to save money by putting it in a bank or by buying shares in a company, etc: *She already has $500 socked away for college.* ◇ *He socks away half his salary every month for the house.*
OBJ **money**
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˈsock it to sb (*informal* or *humorous*) used to encourage sb to do or say sth that will have a strong effect, for example before an interview, a sports game, etc: *You'll be fine. Just get in there and sock it to them.*
NOTE **Sock it to sb** is not used in the passive.
G v + it + prep

sod /sɒd; *AmE* sɑːd/ (**-dd-**)

ˌsod ˈoff (*BrE*, ⚠, *slang*) used to tell sb to go away: *Just sod off and leave me in peace!*
G v + adv

soften /ˈsɒfn; *AmE* ˈsɔːfn/

ˌsoften sb ˈup (*informal*) to try to make sb more willing to do sth for you by being very nice to them first: *I know you, you're just trying to soften me up!* ◇ *They softened the voters up with promises they had no intention of keeping.*
SYN **butter sb up**
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌsoften sb/sth ˈup to make an enemy weaker and easier to attack: *It'll take more than a few bruises to soften him up.* ◇ *The artillery was used to soften up the advancing enemy.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

soldier /ˈsəʊldʒə(r); *AmE* ˈsoʊl-/

ˌsoldier ˈon (with sth) to continue with sth you are doing although it is difficult or unpleasant: *She soldiered on with the course in spite of her personal problems.* ◇ *I'm having to soldier on alone since Bill left.*
G v + adv

sort /sɔːt; *AmE* sɔːrt/

ˌsort sb ˈout (*informal, especially BrE*) to deal with sb who has been causing trouble: *They sent the lads round to sort him out.*
SYN **deal with sb**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌsort sb/yourself ˈout (*BrE, informal*) **1** to find a solution to sb's/your own problems, etc: *It took her months to sort herself out after the divorce.* ◇ *He was so upset it took us an hour to calm him down and sort him out.* SYN **straighten sb/yourself out** **2** to organize sb or yourself: *You load the car and I'll sort the kids out.* ◇ *She's in her room sorting herself out for the trip* (= packing clothes, etc.).
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌsort sb ˈout with sth (*informal, especially BrE*) to provide sb with something they need: *I'm sure we can sort you out with some dry clothes.*
G v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌsort sth ˈout 1 to put sth in order; to tidy and organize sth: *I spent the afternoon sorting out my study.* OBJ **room, stuff** **2** (*especially BrE*) to organize or arrange sth: *First you have to sort out a work permit.* **3** (*especially BrE*) to decide on sth: *I need to sort out what clothes to take with me on the trip.* OBJ **details, priorities** NOTE In this meaning **sort sth out** is usually used with question words such as *what, where*, etc. **4** to solve a problem: *We've sorted the problem out.* OBJ **problem, mess** **5 (from sth)** to separate sth from a larger group: *Sort out the ripe pears from the rest.* ◇ *She sorted out the clothes that she didn't wear any more.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈsort-out** *n* (*BrE, informal*) an act of arranging or organizing things in a neat and tidy way and getting rid of things you don't want

ˌsort itself ˈout (*especially BrE*) if a problem **sorts itself out**, it stops being a problem without anyone having to do anything: *He woke up feeling ill, but thought the problem would soon sort itself out.*
SYN **work itself out**
G v + pron + adv

ˌsort ˈthrough sth to look through a number of things either in order to find a particular thing or to put them in groups: *She sorted through her wardrobe for something to wear.* ◇ *They sorted through thousands of old photos.*
G v + prep

sound /saʊnd/

ˌsound ˈoff (about sth) (*informal, disapproving*) to express your opinions loudly or in an aggressive way: *He should check his facts before sounding off like that.*
G v + adv

ˌsound sb/sth ˈout (about/on sth) to try to discover sb's views, opinions, etc. on sth, especially in an indirect way: *I want to sound him out about a possible job.* ◇ *We should sound out opinions on these changes.*
G v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

soup /suːp/

ˌsoup sth ˈup (*informal*) if you **soup up** a car, a computer, etc., you make changes to it so that it is more powerful or exciting: *He makes a living buying old cars and souping them up.*
G v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)
▸ **ˈsouped-up** *adj* [only before noun] (*informal*) a **souped-up** car, computer, etc. has been changed to make it more powerful or exciting: *a souped-up Mini*

space /speɪs/

ˌspace ˈout; ˌspace sb ˈout (*slang, especially AmE*) to be confused, unable to think clearly, or not aware of what is happening around you, for example as a result of taking drugs; to put sb in a state like this: *I was supposed to meet her for lunch but I spaced out and forgot.* ◇ *The drugs I was taking for my illness spaced me out so I couldn't think clearly.*
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˌspaced ˈout** *adj* (*slang*) confused, unable to think clearly and not completely conscious of what is happening around you, for example because of taking drugs: *He sat in the corner looking completely spaced out.*

ˌspace sth ˈout to arrange things with a regular distance or time between them, especially a fairly large amount: *Try spacing the words out more on the page.* ◇ *Should I space out the baby's feeds over 24 hours?*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

spark /spɑːk; *AmE* spɑːrk/

ˌspark sth ˈoff (*informal*) to cause something to suddenly happen or develop: *The incident sparked off riots across the country.* ◇ *His resignation sparked off a political crisis.*
OBJ **riots, debate, incident, protest, crisis**
NOTE **Spark sth** is also used with this meaning: *The TV programme sparked a storm of protest.*
G v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌspark ˈup if a fire **sparks up**, it starts to burn brightly again after a period when it was almost out: *The fire is still smoking and could spark up at any moment.* ◇ (*figurative*) *They sparked up* (= became more lively and interested) *when they heard the music.*
G v + adv

ˌspark sth ˈup (*informal*) **1** if you **spark up** a conversation, a debate, a friendship, etc., you start one, often suddenly: *I sat down beside Helen and tried to spark up a conversation with her.* **2** to add interest or excitement to sth: *Spark up pasta dishes with fresh herbs.* ◇ *Send a card and spark up someone's day.* SYN **spice sth up** **3 spark up sth, spark it/them up** to light a fire, etc: (*slang*) *Time to spark up a cigarette.* ◇ (*figurative*) *There is nothing in the book to spark up the reader's interest.* NOTE A noun must come after **up**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **up**.
G v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

speak /spiːk/ (*past* **spoke** /spəʊk; *AmE* spoʊk/ **spoken** /ˈspəʊkən; *AmE* ˈspoʊ-/)

ˈspeak for sb 1 to state the wishes or views of sb; to act as a representative for sb: *I can't speak for the others, but I'd love to come.* ◇ *She speaks for a whole generation of disillusioned youngsters.* SYN **answer for sb** **2** to give evidence to support sb in a court of law: *Many people spoke for her at the trial.*
G v + prep
IDM **speak for itˈself/themˈselves** if something **speaks for itself** it is so clear and easy to understand that it does not need to be explained: *The facts speak for themselves.*

ˌspeak for yourˈself to express your own opinion, although you know that others might not agree with you: ***Speaking for myself**, I'd prefer to go by train.* ◇ *He speaks for himself when he says we need a smoking area.*
G v + prep
IDM **speak for myˈself/herˈself/himˈself/themˈselves** to express your opinion yourself, rather than sb else doing it for you: *I can speak for myself, thank you!* **speak for yourˈself** (*spoken, informal*) used to tell sb that sth they have said is not true of you: *'We're all tired.' 'Speak for yourself — I'm fine!'*

be ˈspoken for 1 to be married or to have a partner already: *You can forget about him, he's spoken for!* **2** to be set aside for a particular purpose: *Half the money is already spoken for.*
G be + v + adv

ˈspeak of sth (*formal* or *literary*) to be evidence of sth; to suggest sth: *The pictures and ornaments in the room spoke of dreams of faraway places.*
G v + prep

ˌspeak ˈout (against/in favour of/on sth) to say what you think clearly and publicly, often criticizing or opposing sb/sth, in a way that needs courage: *People are no longer afraid to speak out.* ◇ *She spoke out against the regime.*
G v + adv

▸ **outˈspoken** *adj* saying openly exactly what you think, even if you know other people will disagree or be offended: *Her outspoken views often get her into trouble.*

ˌspeak ˈup 1 used to ask sb to speak louder: *Please speak up – we can't hear you at the back.* **2** **(for sb/sth/yourself)** to say what you think clearly and freely, especially to support or defend sb/sth: *Several players spoke up for their manager.* ◇ *She's learned to speak up for herself.* ◇ *It's time to speak up about what is happening in our schools* (= to say we do not like it).
◈ v + adv

speed /spiːd/ (**speeded**, **speeded**, or **sped**, **sped**)

ˌspeed aˈway/ˈoff to leave very quickly, usually in a vehicle of some kind: *The car sped away from the house.* ◇ *She sped off on her bike to get help.*
NOTE **Sped** is usually used as the past tense and past participle of this verb.
◈ v + adv

ˌspeed ˈup; **ˌspeed sth ˈup** to start to move or happen faster; to make sth do this: *The train started to speed up.* ◇ *Parking restrictions were introduced to try to speed up the traffic.* ◇ *They worked slowly at first, speeding up as they got used to it.* ◇ *The new tool bar on the screen definitely* ***speeds things up****.*
NOTE **Speeded** is used as the past tense and past participle of this verb.
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

spell /spel/ (**spelt**, **spelt** /spelt/ or **spelled**, **spelled**)

ˌspell sth ˈout 1 to make sth clear and easy to understand; to explain sth in detail: *His reasons for leaving are spelt out in detail in his letter.* ◇ *Surely I don't have to spell it out?* (= it should be obvious) **2** to say or write the letters of a word in the correct order: *Could you spell that word out for me again?* NOTE **Spell sth** is usually used with this meaning.
◈ **1** v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)
2 v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + speech

spew /spjuː/

ˌspew ˈout; **ˌspew sth ˈout** to flow out quickly in large amounts; to make sth do this: *lava spewing out from a volcano* ◇ *fumes spewed out by cars and trucks*
NOTE **Spew** and **spew sth** are also used with this meaning: *a volcano spewing clouds of ash*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌspew ˈup; **ˌspew sth ˈup** (*BrE, slang*) to bring food from the stomach back out through the mouth: *He spewed up all over my jacket.*
SYN **throw up, throw sth up; vomit, vomit sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

spice /spaɪs/

ˌspice sth ˈup to add spice to food in order to give it more flavour and make it more interesting: *Casseroles can be spiced up with a dash of tabasco sauce.* ◇ (*figurative*) *He exaggerated the details to spice up the story.*
SYN **jazz sth up** (*informal*), **liven sth up**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

spiff /spɪf/

ˌspiff sb/sth ˈup; **ˌspiff yourself ˈup** (*AmE, informal*) to make sb/sth/yourself look more attractive: *We went home to* ***get spiffed up*** *for the party.* ◇ *Here are some easy ways to spiff up spreadsheets.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

spill /spɪl/ (**spilled**, **spilled**, *BrE also* **spilt**, **spilt** /spɪlt/)

ˌspill ˈout; **ˌspill ˈout of sth 1** to accidentally flow out of a container: *The contents of her bag spilled out everywhere.* ◇ *Water had spilled out onto the floor.* **2** to come out in large numbers or amounts: *The theatre crowds spilled out onto the pavement.* ◇ *The children spilled out into the yard.* SYN **pour out, pour out of sth**
◈ v + adv

ˌspill ˈout; **ˌspill sth ˈout** to tell sb a secret, your fears, worries, etc. in a hurried and unplanned way: *When she started to speak, the words just* ***came spilling out****.* ◇ *She spilled out her troubles to her parents.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌspill ˈover (into/to sth) to start in one situation or area and then have an effect on another situation or in another area: *Unrest has spilt over into areas outside the city.* ◇ *Anger spilled over into violence at yesterday's demonstration.* ◇ *Her excitement spilled over to the rest of the group.*
◈ v + adv

▸ **ˈoverspill** *n* [U] [sing.] (*BrE*) people who move from a town or city because it is too crowded and go and live somewhere else: *These towns were built to house overspill populations from the big cities.*

▸ **ˈspillover** [C] [U] **1** something that is too large or too much for the place where it starts and spreads to other places: *a spillover of riots* ◇ *a spillover room for guests and friends* (= a room

where extra guests and friends can go) **2** the results and effects of sth that have spread to other situations or areas: *Other resorts could benefit from the spillover (of tourists).* ◇ *spillover effects/benefits*

ˌspill ˈover; **ˌspill ˈover sth** to flow over the edge of a container that is too full: *The water spilled over the rim of the glass.* ◇ *Her tears suddenly spilled over* (= she started to cry). ◇ *The goods were spilling over from the shops onto the pavements.* ◇ (*figurative*) *His emotions suddenly spilled over.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

spin /spɪn/ (**spinning**, **spun**, **spun** /spʌn/)

ˌspin aˈround; **ˌspin sb/sth aˈround** (*BrE also* **ˌspin ˈround**, **ˌspin sb/sth ˈround**) **1** to turn very quickly to face in the opposite direction; to turn sb/sth in this way: *She jumped when she heard her name and spun around to see the speaker.* ◇ *He spun her round to face him.* **2** to turn round and round quickly; to make sth do this: *The propeller started to spin around.* ◇ *The room seemed to be spinning round.* ◇ *to spin a ball/coin*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌspin ˈoff (from sth), **ˌspin sth ˈoff (from sth)** (*especially BrE, business*) to produce a new product, material, service, etc. that is connected with sth successful that already exists; to be produced in this way: *Calendars and diaries spinning off from familiar books and TV shows are always popular.* ◇ *'A Different World' was spun off from 'The Cosby Show'.* ◇ *Their research has spun off many useful applications.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

▸ **ˈspin-off** *n* **1** an unexpected but useful result of an activity that is designed to produce sth else: *commercial spin-offs from medical research* ◇ *spin-off effects* **2** a product or a book, film/movie, etc. that is based on a very successful book, film/movie or television series: *'The Cosby Show' and its spin-off 'A Different World'* ◇ *a spin-off movie*

ˌspin sth ˈoff (*especially AmE, business*) to separate part of a company or an organization from the main part in order to form a new one: *The fast food chain could be spun off as a separate company.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌspin sth ˈout to make sth last as long as possible: *I managed to spin my talk out to an hour.* ◇ *She had to spin out her money until pay day.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌspin ˈround; **ˌspin sb/sth ˈround** (*BrE*) = SPIN AROUND, SPIN SB/STH AROUND

spirit /ˈspɪrɪt/

ˌspirit sb/sth aˈway/ˈoff (to sth) to remove sb/sth quickly, secretly or as if by magic: *He was spirited away by his friends before the police arrived.* ◇ *An enormous amount of money had been spirited away in only two months.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

spit /spɪt/ (**spitting**, **spat**, **spat** /spæt/ or **spitting**, **spit**, **spit**, *especially AmE*)

ˌspit it ˈout (*spoken*) used to tell sb to reveal a piece of information or to say sth when they are feeling nervous or unwilling to speak: *Come on, spit it out! Who did it?*
◈ v + it + adv

ˌspit sth ˈout 1 to force sth out of your mouth: *It tasted so horrible he had to spit it out.* **2** to say sth very angrily: *'Men!' She spat the word out.* OBJ **word**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
2 also v + adv + speech

ˌspit ˈup; **ˌspit sth ˈup** (*AmE*) if a baby **spits up** or **spits sth up**, it brings milk back from its stomach out through its mouth: *Put this cloth on your shoulder in case she spits up.* ◇ *Lots of babies spit up a bit of milk after feeding.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
SYN **vomit, vomit sth; be sick** (*BrE*)

▸ **ˈspit-up** *n* [U] the milk that a baby brings back out of its mouth

splash /splæʃ/

ˌsplash aˈbout (*BrE*) = SPLASH AROUND

ˌsplash sth aˈbout/aˈround (*informal, especially BrE*) to spend money freely or carelessly: *He splashes his wages about just to impress her.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌsplash sth aˈcross/oˈver sth to publish a photograph, a news story, etc. in a place where a lot of people will see it, especially in a newspaper: *The next day her name was splashed across all the front pages.* ◇ *I don't want my private life splashed all over the tabloids.*
NOTE **Splash sth across/over sb** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌsplash aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌsplash aˈbout**) **(in sth)** to move about in water making it fly everywhere: *The children splashed about in the river all afternoon.*
◈ v + adv

ˌsplash sth aˈround = SPLASH STH ABOUT/AROUND

ˌsplash ˈdown when a spacecraft **splashes down**, it returns to earth and lands in the sea/ocean: *The capsule splashed down in the Pacific.*
◈ v + adv

▸ **'splashdown** *n* [C] [U] the return of a spacecraft to earth when it lands in the sea/ocean: *Splashdown is expected 300 kilometres west of Valparaiso.*

,splash 'out **(on sth)**, **,splash sth 'out** **(on/for sth)** (*informal*) to spend a lot of money on sth: *She splashed out on a new pair of shoes.* ◇ *Why don't we splash out and go out for a meal?* ◇ *The band splashed out thousands of pounds on new equipment.* ◇ *Don't splash it all out at once!*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

,splash sth 'over sth = SPLASH STH ACROSS/OVER STH

split /splɪt/ (**splitting, split, split**)

,split a'way/'off **(from sth)**, **,split sth a'way/'off** **(from sth)** to separate from, or be separated from, a large object or a group: *The branch had split away from the main trunk.* ◇ *The wind split the door away from its frame.* ◇ *Some of the members split away to form a new party.* ◇ *Should the ownership of the rail track be split off from the running of the train services?*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

'split on sb **(to sb)** (*BrE, informal*) to tell sb in authority about sth bad or wrong that sb has done: *Promise you won't split on me.*
SYN **tell on sb**
◆ v + prep

,split 'up **(with/from sb)**, **,split sb 'up** (*informal*) to end a relationship or a marriage; to make two people stop having a relationship with each other: *He told me he had split up with his girlfriend.* ◇ *The band split up at the height of their fame.* ◇ *My friend is doing her best to split Maria and me up.*
SYN **break up (with sb), break sb up**
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

,split 'up **(into sth)**, **,split sb/sth 'up** **(into sth)** if a group of people or a family **splits up**, or sb **splits it up**, the members separate and do not stay together: *We split up into groups to discuss the question.* ◇ *The class was split up into groups.* ◇ *We got split up in the crowd.*
SYN **break up, break sb/sth up**
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

,split sth 'up **(into sth)** to divide sth into smaller parts: *The day was split up into 6 one-hour classes.* ◇ *We split the profits up between us.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

spoil /spɔɪl/ (**spoiled, spoiled** /spɔɪld/, *BrE also* **spoilt, spoilt** /spɔɪlt/)

'spoil for sth (*informal*) (*only used in the progressive tenses*) to be very eager to fight sb: *He was spoiling for a fight.*
OBJ **a fight**
◆ v + prep

sponge /spʌndʒ/

,sponge sb/sth 'down to wash sb/sth with a wet cloth or a soft material: *I sponged the coat down to remove the mud.* ◇ *She tried sponging the baby down to lower his temperature.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

'sponge off sb (*also* **'sponge on sb** *less frequent*) (*informal, disapproving*) to get money, food, etc. from other people, without doing anything for them or offering to pay: *He's constantly sponging off his friends.*
◆ v + prep

,sponge sth 'off; **,sponge sth 'off sth** (*especially BrE*) to remove a mark, some dirt, etc. with a wet cloth or a piece of a soft material: *It was impossible to sponge the mark off.* ◇ *I couldn't sponge the stain off my dress.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

'sponge on sb = SPONGE OFF SB

spout /spaʊt/

,spout 'off/'on **(about sth)** (*informal, disapproving*) to talk about sth in a boring or annoying way: *He's always spouting off about the behaviour of young people today.* ◇ *What are you spouting on about now?*
◆ v + adv

sprawl /sprɔːl/

,sprawl 'out to sit or lie down with your arms and legs spread out in a relaxed or awkward way: *He came home and just sprawled out on the sofa.*
NOTE **Sprawl** is used more frequently with the same meaning: *Tom sprawled in the armchair.*
◆ v + adv

spread /spred/ (**spread, spread**)

,spread 'out 1 to gradually cover a wider area: *The city has spread out into what used to be countryside.* ◇ *The ripples spread out across the water.* ◇ (*figurative*) *A bright future spread out before him.* NOTE **Spread** is also frequently used with this meaning: *The fields spread for miles along the river.* **2** (*also* **,spread yourselves 'out**) to move away from others in a group so as to cover a wider area: *The search party spread out over the moor.* ◇ *Don't all sit together. Spread yourselves out.* NOTE When this phrasal verb is used with a reflexive pronoun, the pronoun is always plural: *ourselves*, *yourselves* or *themselves*. **3** (*also* **,spread yourself 'out**) to stretch your body or arrange your things over a large area: *There's more room to spread out in business class.* ◇ *Do you have to spread yourself out all over the sofa?*
◆ **1** v + adv
2,3 also v + pron + adv

,spread 'out; **be ,spread 'out** to cover a wide area: *The valley spread out beneath us.* ◇ *We looked down at the city spread out below us.*
NOTE This verb is often used in descriptions of cities, views, etc. • **Spread** and **be spread** are also frequently used with this meaning: *The valley lay spread before us.*
◆ v + adv • be + v + adv

,spread sth 'out 1 to arrange a group of objects on a surface so that you can see them all clearly: *Spread out all the pieces before you begin the jigsaw.* ◇ *All the brochures were spread out on the floor.* **2** to unfold sth and put it down on a flat surface: *They spread the blanket out on the grass.* ◇ *The map had been spread out on the table.* OBJ **map, newspaper, blanket** **3** to stretch your fingers, arms, etc. so that they are apart: *The boy spread out his arms, pretending to be an aeroplane.* OBJ **arms, hands** NOTE **Spread sth** is also frequently used with this meaning. **4** **(over sth)** to separate sth into parts and arrange them over a period of time or divide them between different people: *The cost can be spread out over two years.* ◇ *I'll try to spread out the work evenly.* OBJ **cost, work** SYN **divide sth** (*more formal*)
NOTE **Spread sth (over sth)** is also frequently used with this meaning: *Payments can be spread (over five years).*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

,spread yourself 'out = SPREAD OUT 3

,spread yourselves 'out = SPREAD OUT 2

spring /sprɪŋ/ (**sprang** /spræŋ/**sprung** /sprʌŋ/, *AmE also* **sprung, sprung**)

'spring for sth (*AmE, slang*) to pay for sth for other people: *I'll spring for lunch.*
◆ v + prep

'spring from sth 1 (*written*) to be caused by sth; to start from sth: *The idea for the novel sprang from a trip to India.* ◇ *Aggression often springs from fear.* **2** (*informal*) (*usually used in questions*) to appear suddenly or unexpectedly from somewhere: ***Where on earth did you spring from?***
◆ v + prep

'spring sth on sb to suddenly do, say or suggest sth that people do not expect: *I hate to spring this on you at such short notice.* ◇ *They were planning to spring a surprise on us.* ◇ *I didn't know a thing about Rob's new job until he sprang it on me this morning.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

,spring 'up to appear, develop, grow, etc. quickly or suddenly: *Weeds were springing up everywhere.* ◇ *Several new cafés sprang up in the area.* ◇ *A cool breeze had sprung up.* ◇ *New industries were springing up all over the country.*
◆ v + adv

spruce /spruːs/

,spruce sb/sth 'up; **,spruce yourself 'up** to make sb/sth/yourself tidy and clean: *We spruced up the room with a coat of paint.* ◇ *He spruced himself up for the interview.*
SYN **smarten up, smarten yourself up; smarten sb/sth up**
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

spur /spɜː(r)/ (**-rr-**)

,spur sb 'on **(to sth/to do sth)** to encourage sb to act in a particular way, especially to work harder or to try to achieve sth: *Her difficult childhood spurred her on to succeed.* ◇ *His parents' encouragement spurred him on to greater efforts.* ◇ *Spurred on by this victory, we went on to win the championship.* ◇ *Their shouts of encouragement spurred us on.*
SYN **encourage sb**
NOTE **Spur sb on** is often used in the passive: *He was spurred on by new hope.* • **Spur sb** followed by an infinitive or a phrase beginning with a preposition is also used with this meaning: *His criticism spurred me to try harder.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

spurt /spɜːt; *AmE* spɜːrt/

,spurt 'out; **,spurt 'out of sth**; **,spurt sth 'out**; **,spurt sth 'out of sth** to come out of sth in a sudden or fast stream; to pour out a sudden fast stream of liquid or flames: *Water spurted out of the hole.* ◇ *The volcano was spurting out rivers of molten lava.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + prep • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + adv + prep

spy /spaɪ/ (**spies, spying, spied, spied**)

'spy on sb/sth (*also* **'spy upon sb/sth** *more formal*) to watch sb/sth secretly: *He hired a detective to spy on his wife.*
NOTE **Spy on sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *He knew he was being spied on.*
◆ v + prep

,spy sth 'out (*BrE*) to go somewhere secretly to try to find out information: *I arrived early to **spy out the land*** (= collect information before deciding what do do). ◇ *He studied the map and spied out the quickest route.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

square /skweə(r); *AmE* skwer/

,square sth a'way (*AmE*) to finish dealing with sth; to put sth in order: *We need to get everything squared away before you leave.*
NOTE **Square sth away** is often used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌsquare ˈoff (against sb) (*AmE*) to fight or to prepare to fight sb: *The two candidates will square off in a TV debate tomorrow.* ◇ *Protesting students squared off against police.*
◈ v + adv

ˌsquare ˈup 1 (to sb) (*BrE*) to stand facing sb as if you are prepared to fight or argue with them: *Kath put her hands on her hips and squared up to him.* **2 (to sb/sth)** to face a difficult situation and deal with it in a determined way: *He must square up to the reality of being out of work.* SYN **face up to sth 3 (with sb)** to pay sb the money you owe them: *Can I leave you to square up with the waiter?* SYN **settle up (with sb)**
◈ v + adv

ˈsquare with sth; ˈsquare sth with sth to agree with another fact, idea or situation; to make two facts, ideas or situations agree with each other: *This doesn't square with what you told us earlier.* ◇ *How do you square your profession with your religious beliefs?* ◇ *We must remember that the interests of the farmers need to be squared with those of consumers.*
◈ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˈsquare sth with sb to get sb's approval before you do sth: *You'd better square it with the boss if you want to leave early.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

squash /skwɒʃ; *AmE* skwɑːʃ, skwɔːʃ/

ˌsquash ˈin; ˌsquash ˈinto sth = SQUEEZE IN, SQUEEZE INTO STH *Can I squash in?* ◇ *We all squashed into the back of the van.*

ˌsquash sb/sth ˈin; ˌsquash sb/sth ˈinto sth = SQUEEZE SB/STH IN, SQUEEZE SB/STH INTO STH *We can squash you in.*

ˌsquash sb/sth toˈgether to press people or things tightly together in a small space: *people living squashed together in terrible conditions*
NOTE **Squash sb/sth together** is usually used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˌsquash ˈup (against sb/sth), ˌsquash sb/sth ˈup (against sb/sth) (*BrE*) = SQUEEZE UP, SQUEEZE SB/STH UP *If we squash up there'll be room for one more.* ◇ *I was squashed up against Jo in the back of the van.*

squeak /skwiːk/

ˌsqueak ˈby (*AmE, informal*) to achieve a successful result with great difficulty: *We just squeaked by in the semi-final.*
◈ v + adv

ˌsqueak ˈthrough; ˌsqueak ˈthrough sth (*informal*) to manage to achieve sth or get a successful result with great difficulty: *Andrew squeaked through the qualifying rounds of the championship.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

squeeze /skwiːz/

ˌsqueeze ˈin; ˌsqueeze ˈinto sth (*also* **ˌsquash ˈin, ˌsquash ˈinto sth**) to just manage to fit into a small space: *The bus was so full not one more passenger could have squeezed in.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˌsqueeze sb/sth ˈin; ˌsqueeze sb/sth ˈinto sth 1 (*also* **ˌsquash sb/sth ˈin, ˌsquash sb/sth ˈinto sth**) to just manage to put sb/sth into a small space: *Can you squeeze anything else into that case?* **2** to just manage to fit sb/sth into a short period of time: *The doctor can squeeze you in on Tuesday morning.* ◇ *All my classes are squeezed into four days a week.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌsqueeze sb/sth ˈout; ˌsqueeze sb/sth ˈout of sth to prevent sb/sth from doing sth or from doing business: *Small firms are being squeezed out by larger companies.* ◇ *One candidate has already been squeezed out of the leadership race.*
SYN **crowd sb/sth out, crowd sb/sth out of sth; exclude sb/sth (from sth)**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n •
v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌsqueeze sth ˈout 1 (*also* **ˌsqueeze sth ˈout of sth**) to remove liquid from sth by pressing it hard: *She squeezed the cloth out.* ◇ *You'll need to squeeze the juice out of four oranges.* **2** (*also* **ˌsqueeze sth ˈout of sb/sth**) to get sth such as information or money from sb by putting pressure on them, threatening them, etc: *The government will always try to squeeze more money out of the taxpayer.* ◇ *The police squeezed the truth out of him.* ◇ *They finally squeezed some concessions out of the employers.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n •
v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌsqueeze ˈup (against sth), ˌsqueeze sb/sth ˈup (against sth) (*also* **ˌsquash ˈup, ˌsquash sb/sth ˈup**) to move closer towards sb so that you are pressed tightly together: *There'll be enough room if we all squeeze up a bit.* ◇ *I'll walk — it's better than being squeezed up in the back of the car.*
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

squirrel /ˈskwɪrəl; *AmE* ˈskwɜːrəl/ (-ll-, *AmE* -l-)

ˌsquirrel sth aˈway to put sth, especially money, in a safe place so that you can use it later: *She had money squirrelled away in various bank accounts.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

stack /stæk/

ˌstack ˈup 1 to increase gradually until there is a large pile, a long line, etc: *Over the months he just let the paperwork stack up.* ◇ *The traffic quickly stacked up behind the bus.* SYN **pile up 2 (against sb/sth)** (*informal*) to compare with sb/sth: *How does this washing powder stack up against your usual brand?* ◇ *Let's try him in the team and see how he stacks up.* SYN **compare (with sb/sth)**
◈ v + adv

ˌstack ˈup; ˌstack sth ˈup if planes **stack up** or are **stacked up** over an airport, there are a lot of them flying around waiting to land: *Planes stacked up at Heathrow after an accident on the runway.*
NOTE **Stack** and **stack sth** are sometimes used with this meaning: *a queue of planes stacked in the air over the closed airport*
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌstack sth ˈup 1 to arrange things in a tall pile: *He stacked up the dishes on the draining board.* SYN **pile sth up** NOTE **Stack sth** is often used with this meaning. **2** (*AmE, informal*) to gradually get more of sth: *She's stacking up the college credits with all of her night classes.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

stake /steɪk/

ˈstake sth on sth; ˈstake sth on doing sth to risk money or sth very important on the result of sth or on sth happening: *He staked twenty pounds on the favourite* (= in horse racing, for example). ◇ *Several journalists staked their reputation on Bush winning the election.* ◇ *He'll never let you down — I'd* ***stake my life on it.***
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌstake sth ˈout 1 to mark the position and the limits of a piece of land or an area to show that you own it: *The male stakes out his territory and defends it from other birds.* **2** to state your position or opinion on sth clearly: *The President staked out his position on the issue.* **3** if police **stake out** a building, they watch it secretly and continuously because they think sth illegal is happening there: *Armed police have been staking out the house for two weeks.* ◇ *The cops had the building staked out.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)
▸ **ˈstake-out** *n* a situation when police watch a building continuously and secretly because they think sth illegal is happening there: *The stake-out at the house produced nothing.*

stamp /stæmp/

ˈstamp on sth 1 to bring your foot down on sth with force: *The child stamped on the spider.* ◇ *She stamped on his foot as hard as she could.* ◇ *The victim had been kicked and stamped on.* ◇ *A child ran out into the road and I had to stamp on the brakes.* **2** (*especially BrE*) to control sth or stop sth from happening by force: *This kind of disobedience must be stamped on at once.*
NOTE **Stamp on sb/sth** can be used in the passive.
◈ v + prep

ˈstamp sth on sth to make sth have an important effect or influence on sth: *She stamped her own interpretation on the role.* ◇ *The new director has worked hard to stamp his authority on the board.* ◇ *The date is forever stamped on her memory.*
OBJ **your authority, your mark**
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌstamp sth ˈout 1 to destroy or get rid of sth bad or unpleasant by force or with a lot of effort: *They aim to stamp out drug dealing in schools.* ◇ *The party chairman is determined to stamp out corruption.* OBJ **a problem, drug abuse** SYN **eradicate sth** (*more formal*) **2** to put out a fire by pressing down on it hard with your foot: *He stamped out the flames before they spread any further.*
◈ **1** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
2 v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

stand /stænd/ (**stood, stood** /stʊd/)

~ about
~ around
~ aside
~ back
280 ~ between
~ by
~ down
~ for
~ in
~ out
~ over
~ round
~ up
281 ~ up for
~ up to

ˌstand aˈround; ˌstand aˈround sb/sth (*also* (*BrE also*, **ˌstand aˈbout/ˈround, ˌstand ˈround sb/sth** *BrE*) to stand in a place doing nothing, either waiting for sb/sth or with no particular purpose: *Don't just stand around watching me, give me a hand.* ◇ *There were a few people standing around the square.* ◇ *A group of people stood around watching.* ◇ *Young men stood about in groups, chatting.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˌstand aˈside 1 to move to one side to let sb/sth pass: *Stand aside please and let her through.* **2** to take no part in events; to do nothing: *I can't stand aside and let you waste an opportunity like that.* **3** to stop doing a job so that sb else can do it: *It's time he stood aside and let somebody younger take his place.*
◈ v + adv

ˌstand ˈback (from sth) 1 to move a short distance away from sb/sth: ***Stand well back*** *from the flames.* **2** to be situated at a distance from sth: *The house stands back from the road.* **3** to think about a situation as if you are not involved in it: *She found it hard to stand back from the situation.* ◇ *This is an opportunity to stand back and think about what you have achieved.* SYN **step back (from sth)**
◈ v + adv

,stand be'tween A and B to prevent sb from doing or having sth, or being in a particular situation: *Only three people stood between him and the crown* (= becoming king). ◇ *Your lack of confidence is all that stands between you and a much better job.*
◆ v + prep

,stand 'by 1 to be present when sth bad or unpleasant is happening, but not become involved: *I can't* ***stand idly by*** *and let him take the blame for what happened.* ◇ *I can't stand by and see you ruin your life.* **2 (for sth)** to be ready to take appropriate action: *The pilot was instructed to stand by for take-off.* ◇ *Fire crews are standing by in case of an explosion.*
◆ v + adv
▸ **'bystander** *n* a person who is present but is not involved in sth: *Two innocent bystanders were hit by stray bullets.*
▸ **'standby** *n* **1** [C] a person or a thing that can be used if sb/sth else is not available: *Keep some candles as a standby in case the power fails.* ◇ *Mia made a delicious meal from standbys in the store cupboard.* **2** [U] a state of being ready to act if necessary: *All local hospitals have been* ***put on standby.***
▸ **'standby** *adj* [only before noun] **1** that can be used if other things are not available: *standby supplies* ◇ *Two divers work together while a standby diver remains on the surface.* **2** a **standby** ticket for a flight, a theatre, etc. is one that cannot be bought in advance and is only available a very short time before the plane leaves or the performance starts: *standby passengers* ◇ *to fly standby* (= with a standby ticket)

,stand 'by sb to support or help sb in a difficult situation: *I'll stand by you whatever happens.*
SYN **stick by sb** (*informal*)
◆ v + prep

'stand by sth to continue to believe sth you said earlier even though the situation may now be different: *I'll stand by what I said earlier.* ◇ *He appealed against his suspension, but the committee stood by their decision.*
◆ v + prep

,stand 'down 1 (as/from sth) to leave a job or position; to stop taking part in a race or a competition, etc: *She stood down after only three months as chairman.* ◇ *He stood down from the committee for personal reasons.* SYN **step down (as/from sth) 2** (in a court of law) to leave the place where you stand to give evidence: *The witness was allowed to stand down.*
◆ v + adv

'stand for sth 1 (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to be an abbreviation of sth: *What does DVD stand for?* **2** to support sth; to be in favour of sth: *Our party stands for racial harmony.* ◇ *I hated him and all he stood for.* **3** (*used in negative sentences and questions*) to allow sth to happen or sb to do sth: *I won't stand for this behaviour.* SYN **put up with sth; tolerate sth** (*more formal*)
◆ v + prep

,stand 'in (for sb) to take sb's place: *We'll need someone to stand in for you while you're away.*
SYN **deputize (for sb)** (*formal*)
◆ v + adv
▸ **'stand-in** *n* **1** a person who does sb's job for a short time while they are away or not available: *Tom acted as my stand-in while I was abroad.* ◇ *a stand-in captain/goalkeeper* (= for example, in a football game) **2** a person who replaces an actor in some scenes in a film/movie, especially dangerous ones: *rehearsing with stand-ins*

,stand 'out 1 (against/from sth) to be clearly visible: *His yellow jacket stood out clearly against the grey hillside.* ◇ *The church tower stands out against the sky.* ◇ *A small figure in red stood out from the rest of the group.* SYN **stick out 2 (as/from sb/sth)** to be much better or more important than other people or things: *This building stands out from the rest because of its superior design.* ◇ *She's the sort of person who* ***always stands out in a crowd.*** **3 (against/for sb/sth)** to oppose or refuse to accept sth that you believe is wrong: *Parents often stand out against troublesome behaviour for some time, then give in.* SYN **stick out for sth; hold out against/for sth**
◆ v + adv
IDM **stand out like a sore thumb** to be very noticeable in an unpleasant way: *Dressed like that, you'll stand out like a sore thumb.*
▸ **out'standing** *adj* **1** excellent: *an outstanding young actress* **2** [usually before noun] very obvious or important: *Lake Baykal is one of earth's outstanding features.* **3** (of payment, work, problems, etc.) not yet paid, done, solved, etc: *to repay outstanding debts* ◇ *I don't have any urgent work outstanding.*
▸ **out'standingly** *adv* **1** used to emphasize the good quality of sth: *outstandingly beautiful/successful* **2** extremely well: *Owen has played outstandingly this season.*

,stand 'over sb to remain close to sb and watch them, usually to make sure that they behave or do sth correctly: *She won't do her homework unless I stand over her.* ◇ *I can't concentrate with you standing over me.*
◆ v + prep

,stand 'round; ,stand 'round sb/sth (*BrE*) = STAND AROUND, STAND AROUND SB/STH

,stand 'up 1 to rise to your feet from a sitting or lying position; to be on your feet: *Darcy stood up when Emma came into the room.* ◇ *There was silence when the President stood up to speak.* ◇ ***Stand up straight*** *instead of slouching.* ◇ *Horses can sleep standing up.* **2 (to sth)** to remain true or correct even when tested, examined closely, etc: *Your theory doesn't stand up to close examination.* ◇ *His story won't stand up under cross-examination.* SYN **hold up 3 (to sth)** to be strong enough not to be harmed by sth: *The children* ***stood up well*** *under questioning from the police.* ◇ *The players are standing up to the tour well.*
◆ v + adv
▸ **'stand-up** *adj* [only before noun] **1** a **stand-up** comedian (= an entertainer who makes people laugh by telling jokes) is sb who stands in front of an audience and tells jokes or funny stories: *stand-up comedy* ◇ *a stand-up act* **2** (*especially BrE*) a **stand-up** argument, fight, etc. is one in which people shout loudly at each other or are violent towards each other: *He had a stand-up row with the team captain.*

,stand sb 'up (*informal*) to deliberately fail to meet sb you have arranged to meet, especially sb you are having a romantic relationship with: *We agreed to meet at the cinema but she stood me up.* ◇ *I've been stood up!*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

,stand 'up for sb/sth/yourself to support or defend sb/sth/yourself, especially when sb is criticizing them/it/you: *She's always stood up for her friends.* ◇ *You should stand up for what you believe in.* ◇ *He's always telling her what to do. It's time she stood up for herself!* ◇ *James doesn't need you to stand up for him.*
OBJ **your rights, your interests**
◆ v + adv + prep

,stand 'up to sb/sth to resist sb/sth; to defend your position against a more powerful person or organization that is treating you badly or unfairly: *If you don't stand up to him he'll treat you like dirt.* ◇ *It was difficult for Paul to stand up to his father's rage.*
◆ v + adv + prep

,stand 'up to sth (of a product, material, etc.) to be able to stay in good condition even though it is treated roughly: *Will your china and glass stand up to family wear and tear?*
SYN **withstand sth** (*formal*)
◆ v + adv + prep

stare /steə(r); *AmE* ster/

,stare sb 'out (*BrE*) (*also* **,stare sb 'down** *AmE, BrE*) to look sb directly in the eyes for a long time until they feel forced to lower their eyes or look away: *He was looking at her intently but she stared him out.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The two nations are trying to stare each other down.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

start /stɑːt; *AmE* stɑːrt/

,start 'back to begin to return somewhere: *It's time we started back.*
◆ v + adv

'start for ... to leave one place to go to another: *We started for home.*
SYN **head for ...**
◆ v + prep

,start 'in (on sth) (*informal, especially AmE*) to begin to do sth: *Let's start in now and get the job done quickly.* ◇ *It's time you started in on your homework.*
◆ v + adv

,start 'in on sb/sth (*especially AmE*) **1** = START ON SB/STH **2** = START ON AT SB

,start 'off 1 (*also* **,start 'off doing sth, ,start sth 'off**) **[+ adv/prep/adj]** to begin happening in a particular way; to begin doing sth in a particular way: *The game started off well, but gradually got worse.* ◇ *We started off with some gentle exercises.* ◇ *She* ***started off*** *by welcoming everyone.* ◇ *He started off as a plumber.* ◇ *I started off working quite hard, but it didn't last.* ◇ *The discussion started off calmly enough.* ◇ *The leaves start off green but turn red later.* ◇ *We always started off the lessons with a quiz.* ◇ *The teacher* ***started things off*** *by asking us what we had done at the weekend.* NOTE In this meaning, **start off** and **start off sth** are always followed by an adverb, an adjective, a phrase beginning with a preposition, or the *-ing* form of a verb. **2 [+adv/prep]** to begin to move or travel: *The bus started off with a jolt.* ◇ *We started off for home.*
◆ **1** v + adv • v + adv + -ing • v + adv + n •
v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)
2 v + adv

,start sb 'off 1 (on sth) (*also* **,start sb 'off doing sth**) to help sb begin an activity, an exercise, a job, etc: *I'll start you off on the first exercise.* ◇ *His father started him off farming.* **2** (*also* **,start sb 'off doing sth**) to make sb react in a particular way or begin doing sth: *Just mentioning 'The Simpsons' started her off again* (= made her start laughing). ◇ *Don't shout — you'll start the baby off (crying) again.* SYN **set sb off, set sb off doing sth**
NOTE **Start sb off** cannot be used in the passive in this meaning.
◆ v + n/pron + adv

,start sth 'off
→ *see also* START OFF 1

'start on sb/sth (*also* **,start 'in on sb/sth** *especially AmE*) (*informal*) to attack sb physically or with words: *He hit me first and then he started (in) on my friend.* ◇ *Don't start on me, I'm tired.* ◇ *My mum started on me about doing my homework as soon as I got home.*
◆ v + prep • v + adv + prep

'start on sth to begin to deal with sth; to begin to do sth: *When she'd finished cleaning the kitchen, she started on the bathroom.*
NOTE **Start sth** has a similar meaning.
◆ v + prep

ˌstart ˈon at sb (*BrE*) (*also* **ˌstart ˈon about sth**, **ˌstart ˈin on sb/sth** *AmE, BrE*) (*informal*) to begin to criticize sb/sth or complain to sb about sth: *He started on at me again about my hair.* ◇ *Don't start on about that dog barking.*
◆ v + adv + prep

ˌstart ˈout 1 to begin a journey: *Check the engine before you start out.* ◇ *What time did they start out?* SYN **set off 2** (**as sth**) to begin in a particular way, especially in business or work: *We started out originally as a taxi firm.* ◇ *When the band started out, they had hardly any equipment.* ◇ *Did you know the tower started out leaning the other way?* **3** (*also* **ˌstart ˈout to do sth**, **ˌstart ˈout doing sth**) to have a particular idea or intention when you begin to do sth: *I had no idea what I was going to write about when I started out.* ◇ *She had started out to write a short story but it ended up as a novel.* ◇ *He started out with no political opinions, but soon got involved in student politics.* ◇ *She'd started out meaning to apologize but couldn't.* SYN **set out to do sth**
◆ v + adv **3** also v + adv + to inf • v + adv + -ing

ˌstart ˈover; **ˌstart sth ˈover** (*especially AmE*) to begin doing sth again, especially because you were not successful the first time: *I messed up and had to start over.* ◇ *She spelled my name wrong and had to start over.* ◇ *His wife has walked out on him and he must start life over.*
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

ˌstart ˈup to begin happening: *After a moment's silence, the music started up again.*
◆ v + adv

ˌstart ˈup; **ˌstart sth ˈup 1** to start operating; to make sth start operating: *The engine started up with a roar.* ◇ *It took me a while to start up the generator.* ◇ *I heard the car starting up.* **2** (**in sth**) to start operating or trading; to establish a business: *When I started up in business, I needed a lot of help.* ◇ *There are a lot of small businesses starting up in the area.* ◇ *My father helped me start up my own company.* OBJ **business, company**
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

▸ **ˈstart-up** *adj* connected with beginning a new business: *the new company's start-up costs*

▸ **ˈstart-up** *n* a company that is just beginning to operate, especially an Internet company: *This is just one of the problems facing start-ups in this highly competitive area.*

starve /stɑːv; *AmE* stɑːrv/

ˈstarve for sth; **ˈstarve sb/sth for sth** (*AmE*) to feel you do not have something that you really need; to prevent sb/sth from having sth necessary or very important: *Sam was starving for a kind word from Clare.* ◇ *The children were starved for affection.*

NOTE **Starve for sth** is usually used in the progressive tenses. • **Starve sb/sth for sth** is usually used in the passive.
→ *see also* STARVE SB/STH OF STH
◆ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˈstarve sb into sth; **ˈstarve sb into doing sth** to force sb to do sth or accept sth by preventing them from getting food or money: *The aim was to* ***starve*** *the enemy* ***into submission****.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˈstarve sb/sth of sth to prevent sb/sth from having sth that they want or need: *The project is being starved of funds.* ◇ *The baby had been starved of oxygen at birth.* ◇ *Teachers described the students as starved of attention and affection.*
SYN **deprive sb/sth/yourself of sth**
NOTE **Starve sb/sth of sth** is usually used in the passive.
→ *see also* STARVE FOR STH, STARVE SB/STH FOR STH
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌstarve sb ˈout to force sb to leave a place by not allowing them to get food: *It took a month to starve them out.* ◇ *A few rebels remain in the area. The rest have been starved out.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

stash /stæʃ/

ˌstash sth aˈway (*informal*) to store sth in a secret or safe place: *She has a fortune stashed away in various bank accounts.*
SYN **hide sth away**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

stave /steɪv/

ˌstave sth ˈin to break sth by hitting it with force and making part of it fall inwards: *The side of the boat was staved in when it hit the rocks.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌstave sth ˈoff to prevent sth unpleasant from happening for a period of time; to delay sth unpleasant: *to stave off hunger/illness* ◇ *desperate attempts to stave off civil war* ◇ *I staved off jet lag with a bath and an early night.*
SYN **avert sth**
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

stay /steɪ/

~ ahead
283 ~ around
~ away
~ back
~ behind
~ down
~ in
~ off
~ on
~ out
~ out of
~ over
~ up
~ with

ˌstay aˈhead; **ˌstay aˈhead of sb/sth** to succeed in remaining further forward in space, time, development, success, etc: *We need to keep an eye on our competitors if we want to stay ahead.* ◇ *He stayed ahead of me throughout the race.* ◇ *More investment is needed if we are to* ***stay ahead of the game*** (= be more successful than our competitors).
OBJ **competitors**
SYN **keep ahead, keep ahead of sb/sth**
◆ v + adv • v + adv + prep

ˌstay aˈround to not leave somewhere: *I'll stay around in case you need me.* ◇ *I don't know if he'll be angry with us or not, but I'm not staying around to find out!*
◆ v + adv

ˌstay aˈway (**from sb/sth**) to not go near sb/sth dangerous or unpleasant; to have nothing to do with sb/sth: *Stay away from the edge!* ◇ *He advised us to stay away from drugs.* ◇ *The police have asked the public to stay away.*
SYN **keep away** (**from sb/sth**)
◆ v + adv

ˌstay ˈback to remain in a place and not move forward: *The police shouted to the crowd to stay back.*
SYN **keep back** (**from sb/sth**)
◆ v + adv

ˌstay beˈhind (**after sth**) to remain in a place at the end of an event after other people have left: *I had to stay behind after class.* ◇ *She stayed behind after the meeting for a chat.*
◆ v + adv

ˌstay ˈdown 1 to remain in a low position: *The blind won't stay down.* ◇ *Get down and stay down or he'll see you!* SYN **keep down 2** (of food) to remain in the stomach: *Nothing she ate would stay down.*
◆ v + adv

ˌstay ˈin 1 to remain in a position inside sth: *This nail won't stay in.* **2** to remain at home or inside a building: *I was ill and had to stay in all week.* ◇ *Let's stay in this evening.*
◆ v + adv

ˌstay ˈoff to keep away; to not return: *If the rain stays off, we'll got out for a walk.* ◇ *She's always dieting, but she can never get the weight to stay off.*
◆ v + adv

ˌstay ˈoff; **ˌstay ˈoff sth** (*BrE*) to not go to work, school, etc., especially because you are ill/sick: *He injured his back and stayed off for a week.* ◇ *Can I stay off school today?*
OBJ **work, school**
◆ v + adv • v + prep

ˌstay ˈoff sth to stop yourself from eating or drinking sth, especially sth that could be harmful: *The doctor told him to stay off alcohol.*
SYN **keep off sth**
◆ v + prep

ˌstay ˈon 1 to remain in position on top of sth: *The lid won't stay on.* **2** to not leave a job, school, place, etc. when you are expected to, or when other people do: *We hope he will stay on as manager at the end of his contract.* ◇ *We couldn't persuade Jane to stay on at school for an extra year.* **3** to continue operating: *The light stays on until dawn.*
◆ v + adv

ˌstay ˈout 1 to remain out of the house or outdoors, especially at night: *Sam was allowed to stay out until 11.30 on a Saturday.* ◇ *I don't like you taying out so late. Try to come home earlier next time.* **2** to remain on strike: *The miners stayed out for fifteen months.*
◆ v + adv

ˌstay ˈout; **ˌstay ˈout of sth** to remain outside a place: *Stay out, the floor's wet.* ◇ *Stay out of the kitchen, I'm busy.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + prep

ˌstay ˈout of sth 1 to not become involved in sth that does not concern you: *I try to stay out of their little quarrels.* ◇ *Stay out of this, it's none of your business.* **2** to avoid sth: *Try to stay out of trouble!*
SYN **keep out of sth, keep sb out of sth**
◆ v + adv + prep

ˌstay ˈover to sleep at sb's house for a night: *It got late, so we stayed over.* ◇ *Can I stay over at Gareth's (house) tonight?*
SYN **sleep over**
◆ v + adv

ˌstay ˈup 1 if something **stays up**, it remains in an upright or higher position where it has been put, built, etc: *These trousers won't stay up without a belt.* ◇ *I'm not very good at putting up shelves — I'm amazed they've stayed up!* **2** to not go to bed: *Don't* ***stay up*** *too* ***late****.* ◇ *We let him stay up to watch the movie.*
◆ v + adv

ˈstay with sth/sb (*informal*) to continue to do sth, especially when it is difficult or you do not really want to; to wait until sb has finished sth: *Several students said they weren't enjoying the course, but they stayed with it.* ◇ *Stay with me, I've nearly finished this list.*
SYN **stick with sth**
◆ v + prep

steal /stiːl/ (**stole** /stəʊl; *AmE* stoʊl/**stolen** /ˈstəʊlən; *AmE* ˈstoʊ-/)

ˌsteal aˈway to go away from a place quietly and secretly: *He stole away under cover of darkness.*
◆ v + adv

ˌsteal ˈover sb (*formal*) if a feeling **steals over** you, you gradually feel it: *A chill stole over her body.* ◇ *Exhaustion stole over me as I sat there.*
◆ v + prep

ˌsteal ˈup (**on sb**) to approach sb silently so that they do not see or hear you coming: *She stole up on him in the dark.*
◆ v + adv

steam /stiːm/

ˌsteam sth ˈoff; ˌsteam sth ˈoff sth to remove a piece of paper from another piece using steam to soften the glue that is holding them together: *He steamed the stamp off the envelope.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌsteam ˈup; ˌsteam sth ˈup to become, or to make sth become, covered with steam: *The windows had steamed up.* ◇ *The warmth in the room steamed all the windows up.*
SYN **fog up; mist up, mist sth up**
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
IDM **be/get (all) steamed ˈup (about/over sth)** (*BrE, informal*) to be/become very angry or excited about sth: *I realized I had got all steamed up over nothing.*

steep /stiːp/

ˈsteep sth in sth to put food in a liquid and leave it for some time so that it becomes soft and flavoured by the liquid: *Raspberries are delicious steeped in brandy.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˈsteep yourself in sth; be ˈsteeped in sth (*formal*) to spend a lot of time doing sth or thinking about sth and learn a lot about it: *teenagers steeping themselves in pop culture* ◇ *He was steeped in the family business from an early age.*
NOTE This phrasal verb is mainly used in written English.
◆ v + pron + prep • be + v + prep

be ˈsteeped in sth (*written*) to have a lot of a particular quality: *a city steeped in history and tradition*
OBJ **history, tradition**
◆ be + v + prep

steer /stɪə(r); *AmE* stɪr/

ˌsteer aˈway from sth to avoid discussing sth or becoming involved with sb/sth, because it may cause problems: *I tried to steer away from the subject of divorce.* ◇ *Jane tends to steer away from sugary foods.*
◆ v + adv + prep

stem /stem/ (-mm-)

ˈstem from sth (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to be caused by sth; to be the result of sth: *Many of her problems stem from the fact that her parents are famous.* ◇ *Their opposition stems from fear and ignorance.*
SUBJ **problem, difficulty** OBJ **the fact that…**
◆ v + prep

step /step/ (-pp-)

ˌstep aˈside/ˈdown (as/from sth) to leave an important job or position in order to let sb else take your place: *After 10 years as party leader, it's time for him to step aside.* ◇ *He decided to step aside as company director to make way for his son.* ◇ *I intended to step down as Chairman.* ◇ *She's stepping down from her post next year.*
◆ v + adv

ˌstep ˈback 1 (from sth) to try to think calmly about a situation in which you have been closely involved, as if you are not involved in it: *You should try to step back from the problem and look for a new way to deal with it.* SYN **stand back (from sth) 2** to feel as if you have moved backwards to an earlier period of history: *When you enter the cathedral you **step back in time** to the 15th Century.*
◆ v + adv

ˌstep ˈdown (as/from sth) = STEP ASIDE/DOWN
SYN **stand down (as/from sth)**

ˌstep ˈforward to offer to help sb, give information, money, etc: *A soft drinks company has stepped forward to sponsor the team.*
◆ v + adv

ˌstep ˈin to help in an argument or a difficult situation: *When my mum was ill, my aunt stepped in to help.* ◇ *The Youth Club was going to close, but a local bank stepped in with a generous donation.*
◆ v + adv

ˈstep on it (*spoken, informal*) used especially to tell sb to drive faster: *Step on it! We're late already!* ◇ *We'll have to really step on it to be there by noon.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Step on it! I need those figures by lunchtime.*
◆ v + prep + it

ˌstep ˈout (*especially AmE*) to leave a place for a short period: *He's just stepped out for ten minutes.*
◆ v + adv

ˌstep ˈup (to sb/sth) to come forward: *He stepped up to receive his award.* ◇ *The runners stepped up to the line.*
◆ v + adv

ˌstep sth ˈup to increase the rate, level, amount, etc. of sth: *Security has been stepped up at the airport since the bomb scare.* ◇ *Police have stepped up their search for the missing schoolgirl.*
OBJ **campaign, pressure, security, production, efforts**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

stick /stɪk/ (stuck, stuck /stʌk/)

---

285 ~ around
~ at
~ back
~ by
~ down
~ in
~ in/into
~ on
~on, onto
~ out, out of
~ out for
286 ~ through
~ to
~ together
~ up
~ up for
~ with

NOTE **Stick** is often used as an informal way of saying **put**.

ˌstick aˈround (*informal*) to stay in or near a place, waiting for sth to happen, sb to arrive, etc: *Stick around, we need all the help we can get.* ◇ *I'll stick around here in case Maya arrives.*
◆ v + adv

ˈstick at sth to work continuously at sth in a determined way: *If we **stick at it**, we should finish the job today.* ◇ *She never sticks at anything for very long.*
SYN **keep at sth; persevere with sth** (*more formal*)
◆ v + prep

ˌstick sth ˈback (*informal*) to return sth to its usual place; to return sth to the place it was before: *Stick the cake back in the oven for ten minutes.* ◇ *When you've finished with the dictionary, just stick it back on the shelf.*
SYN **put sth back**
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˈstick by sb (*informal*) to be loyal to sb and continue to support them in difficult times: *She stuck by him through thick and thin.*
SYN **stand by sb**
◆ v + prep

ˈstick by sth to do what you said, planned or promised you would do, even though the situation might have changed: *In spite of what's happened, we must stick by our decision.* ◇ *The developer wants to stick by his original plan.*
SYN **stand by sth**
◆ v + prep

ˈstick sth ˈdown 1 to fix a piece of paper, etc. to sth else using glue: *I can't stick the corners of this wallpaper down.* ◇ *The envelope hadn't been stuck down properly.* **2** (*informal*) to place sth that you are holding onto the floor or another surface: *Stick your coat on the chair and come and sit down here.* SYN **put sth down 3 (in/on sth)** (*informal*) to write or note sth down quickly: *Stick it all down on paper before you forget.* SYN **put sth down; jot sth down; note sth down**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈstick in sth 1 if something sharp sticks in sth, it goes into sth, making a small hole, and stays there: *The arrow whizzed past and stuck in the tree.* ◇ *These poles stick in the ground easily.* ◇ *Something was sticking in my back.* **2** if something sticks in a place, it stays there and does not move: *A crumb stuck in my throat.* ◇ *I've got my finger stuck in the bottle.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The words stuck in my throat* (= I couldn't say them). ◇ (*figurative*) *Her words stuck in my mind/memory.*
◆ v + prep

ˌstick sth ˈin/ˈinto sth; ˌstick sth ˈin 1 (*informal*) to put sth into sth: *I stuck the letter in my pocket to read later.* ◇ *He saw the hole and stuck his finger in.* ◇ *I stuck my feet into my slippers.* ◇ *Timmy stuck his thumb in his mouth.* SYN **put sth in, put sth in/into sth 2** to put sth sharp into sth, making a small hole: *Ouch! I've stuck the needle in my finger!* OBJ **knife, needle 3** (*informal*) to include sth in a story, a letter, etc: *Should I stick this paragraph in or leave it out?* ◇ *I'll stick in something about football to make the article more interesting.* SYN **put sth in, put sth in/into sth 4** to attach sth firmly to sth, using tape or glue: *I'm going to stick the new photos in my album.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep
IDM **stick/poke your ˈoar/ˈnose into sth** (*informal*) to try to become involved in sth that does not concern you

ˌget stuck ˈin; ˌget stuck ˈinto sth (*BrE, informal*) to start doing sth in an enthusiastic way; to become very interested and involved in sth: *You must be hungry. Get stuck in!* (= start eating) ◇ *I was too tired to get really stuck into the debate.*
◆ get + v + adv • get + v + prep

ˌstick sth ˈon (*informal*) **1** to switch on a piece of electrical equipment: *I'll stick the kettle on for a cup of tea.* **2** to put on clothes: *I'll just stick a jacket on, and I'm ready.* **3** to begin to cook food: *I'll stick the potatoes on and then I'll make us a coffee.* **4** to make a tape, a CD, etc. begin to play: *Stick on some music, if you like.*
SYN **put sth on**
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌstick sth ˈon; ˌstick sth ˈon/ˈonto sth to attach sth firmly to a surface, using glue, tape, etc: *I stuck the label on with adhesive tape.* ◇ *He sealed the envelope, and stuck a stamp on it.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep
▶ **ˈstick-on** *adj* [only before noun] a **stick-on** object has glue on one side so that it can be attached to sth: *stick-on badges/labels*

ˌstick sth ˈon sth (*informal*) **1** to put sth somewhere in a casual way: *Stick your report on my desk when you've finished it.* **2** to add an amount of money to the price or cost of sth: *They can't just stick an extra 20p on the price of cigarettes!*
SYN **put sth on sth**
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌstick ˈout to be very noticeable or easy to see: *They wrote the notice in red so that it would stick out.* ◇ (*figurative*) *One of the boys in the class sticks out in my mind.*
SYN **stand out** (*more formal*)
◆ v + adv
IDM **stick out a ˈmile** to be very noticeable or easy to see: *Dressed like that, you stick out a mile.* ◇ *It stuck out a mile that she was lying.* **stick out like a sore ˈthumb** to be very different from others, especially in an unpleasant way: *The red house stuck out like a sore thumb among the old stone cottages.*

ˌstick ˈout; ˌstick ˈout of sth to be further out than sth else; to be partly outside sth such as a container: *His ears stick out.* ◇ *There was a newspaper sticking out of her coat pocket.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + prep

ˌstick sth ˈout; ˌstick sth ˈout of sth to make sth, especially part of your body, come through a hole: *If you want to turn right, stick out your hand.* ◇ *I stuck my head out of the window to see what was happening.*
OBJ **head, tongue** SYN **poke sth out, poke sth out of sth**
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + adv + prep
IDM **stick your ˈneck out** (*informal*) to do or say sth when there is a risk you may be wrong: *I'm going to stick my neck out and say that we'll have a dry summer.*

ˌstick it/sth ˈout to continue doing sth difficult or boring until it is finished: *I don't like being on my own, but I'll stick it out until my parents come back.* ◇ *I'm amazed that she's stuck the course out.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌstick ˈout for sth (*BrE, informal*) to refuse to give up until you get what you want: *They're sticking out for a higher pay rise.*
SYN **hold out for sth**
Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˌstick ˈthrough; ˌstick ˈthrough sth if sth **sticks through** or **sticks through** sth, it goes from one side of sth to the other and it is partly outside: *His head was sticking through the railings.*
Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˈstick to sth 1 to continue doing sth even if it is difficult or you have problems: *He found it difficult to stick to a diet.* → *see also* STICK WITH STH 1; STAY WITH STH **2** to continue doing or using sth and not want to change it: *I'm sticking to my previous statement.* ◇ *That's her story and she's sticking to it.* → *see also* STICK WITH STH 2 **3** to keep inside the limits of a particular subject, etc: *I'm not interested in your opinions — just stick to the facts.*
Ⓖ v + prep
IDM **stick to your ˈguns** to refuse to change your mind about sth even when other people are trying to persuade you that you are wrong

ˌstick toˈgether (*informal*) **1** to remain friendly and loyal to one another; to support each other: *The family should stick together at a time like this.* ◇ *The children from the village tended to stick together.* **2** (*informal*) to stay physically close to each other: *Let's all stick together until we find the way out.* → *see also* STICK WITH SB 1
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌstick sth toˈgether to attach things or parts of things to each other: *Cut out the shapes and stick them together to make a bird.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌstick ˈup to point upwards; to be upright: *The branch was sticking up out of the water.* ◇ *Is my hair sticking up?*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌstick sb/sth ˈup (*AmE, informal*) = HOLD SB/STH UP *He stuck up a liquor store in Oregon.*
▸ **ˈstick-up** *n* (*AmE, informal*) an act of robbing sb/sth using a gun: *This is a stick-up, nobody move!*

ˌstick sth ˈup to attach sth to a wall, a noticeboard, a window, etc. so that people can see it: *They had stuck up posters everywhere advertising the show.* ◇ *If you want to sell your bike, just stick a notice up in the shop window.*
SYN **put sth up**
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌstick sth ˈup; ˌstick sth ˈup sth (*informal*) to place sth in a high position; to move sth upwards, especially inside sth: *Stick your hand up if you know the answer.* ◇ *Jeff stuck his hand up the pipe to see what was blocking it.*
OBJ **hand, finger** SYN **put sth up**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌstick ˈup for sb/yourself/sth (*informal*) to support or defend sb, yourself or sth, when they are being criticized: *She always sticks up for her little sister.* ◇ *You must stick up for what you believe in.* ◇ *Don't be so weak — you should stick up for yourself.*
Ⓖ v + adv + prep

ˈstick with sb 1 (*informal*) to stay physically close to sb: *Stick with me until we get out of the forest.* → *see also* STICK TOGETHER 2 **2** (*informal*) to remain in sb's memory: *His words will stick with me for ever.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˈstick with sth (*informal*) **1** to continue to do sth in spite of difficulties: *If we **stick with it** we should finish by Friday.* ◇ *I stuck with the job for as long as I could, although I didn't enjoy it.* **2** to continue doing or using sth and not want to change it: *I've decided to stick with my usual method.* → *see also* STICK TO STH 2
Ⓖ v + prep

be/get ˈstuck with sb/sth (*informal*) to be forced to do sth, take care of sb/sth, etc. that you do not want to: *How did I get stuck with all the cleaning?* ◇ *If we're stuck with each other for the next two weeks, we might as well be polite.* ◇ *I got stuck with defending my brother's wild behaviour* (= but I really thought he was wrong).
Ⓖ be/get + v + prep

sting /stɪŋ/ (stung, stung /stʌŋ/)

ˈsting sb for sth (*informal*) **1** to trick or cheat sb into paying more money than they should or than they expected to: *Motorists are being stung for another £25 road tax.* **2** (*BrE*) to borrow money from sb, especially when they are unwilling to give it to you: *Can I sting you for a fiver* (= five pounds)?
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

stink /stɪŋk/ (stank /stæŋk/stunk /stʌŋk/ or stunk, stunk)

ˌstink sth ˈout (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˌstink sth ˈup**) (*informal*) to fill a room, a building, etc. with a very unpleasant smell: *He stank the whole place out with his cigarettes.*
OBJ **the place** SYN **smell sth out** (*BrE*), **smell sth up** (*AmE*)
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

stir /stɜː(r)/ (-rr-)

ˌstir sth ˈin; ˌstir sth ˈinto sth to mix one substance into another by moving a spoon or sth similar in circles: *Stir in the cream.* ◇ *Stir the pasta into the sauce.*
SYN **mix sth in (with sth), mix sth into sth**
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌstir sb ˈup to encourage sb to do sth; to make sb feel they must do sth: *He was accused of stirring up the slaves against their masters.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌstir sb/sth ˈup 1 to cause trouble, especially by making people feel strong emotions: *I don't want to stir up any more trouble.* ◇ *The government has been accused of stirring up racial hatred.* OBJ **hatred, trouble, things, controversy** SYN **rouse sb/sth 2** to make sb have a particular feeling or attitude: *Her story stirred up a lot of old memories for me.* ◇ *I can't seem to stir up any interest in the campaign.* OBJ **memories, interest, emotions 3** to make sth such as sand or dust move around in water or air: *The helicopter stirred up a cloud of dust.* OBJ **dust**
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
IDM **stir up a ˈhornet's nest** to cause a difficult situation in which a lot of people get very angry: *His criticisms of the president stirred up a hornet's nest.*

stitch /stɪtʃ/

ˌstitch sb ˈup (*BrE, informal*) to make sb appear to be guilty of sth they have not done, for example by giving false information; to cheat sb: *I didn't do it! I've been stitched up!*
SYN **frame sb**
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌstitch sth ˈup 1 to join things together using a needle and thread: *This wound has to be stitched up urgently.* OBJ **wound 2** (*BrE, informal*) to arrange sth; to complete a business deal: *He has managed to stitch up major deals all over the world.* ◇ *The company has the US market stitched up.* OBJ **deal**
SYN **sew sth up**
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

stock /stɒk; *AmE* stɑːk/

ˌstock ˈup (on/with sth) to buy or get a lot of sth so that you can use it later: *The shops are very busy with people stocking up for the holidays.* ◇ *I need to stock up on food before all the family arrive.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌstock sth ˈup (on/with sth) to fill sth with goods, food, etc: *Mum stocked up the freezer for us before she went to the conference.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

stoke /stəʊk; *AmE* stoʊk/

ˌstoke ˈup (on/with sth) (*informal*) to eat a lot of sth so that you will not feel hungry later: *We'd better stoke up now — we've got a long journey in front of us.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌstoke sth ˈup 1 to keep a fire, etc. burning by adding more fuel: *He stoked up the fire before going to bed.* OBJ **fire 2** to make people feel sth more strongly: *He continued to stoke up hatred in his speeches.*
NOTE **Stoke sth** can also be used with the same meanings.
Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

stoop /stuːp/

ˈstoop to sth; ˈstoop to doing sth to do sth bad or unpleasant in order to gain an advantage for yourself: *I can't believe he would stoop to blackmail.* ◇ *He's the kind of person who would stoop to making personal attacks on a rival.*
SYN **descend to sth** (*more formal*)
Ⓖ v + prep

stop /stɒp; *AmE* stɑːp/ (-pp-)

ˌstop aˈround; ˌstop aˈround sth (*AmE*) to make a short visit to sb, usually at their home: *I'll stop around this evening when I finish work.* ◇ *Let's stop around the Smiths' house for a quick drink.*
SYN **drop round; pop over/round** (*both BrE*)
Ⓖ v + adv • v + prep

ˌstop aˈway to deliberately decide not to go somewhere: *Many of the people invited to the dinner had stopped away in protest.*
SYN **stay away**
NOTE **Stay away** is used much more frequently than **stop away**.
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌstop ˈback (*AmE*) to return to somewhere that you have visited earlier: *I'll stop back on my way home.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌstop beˈhind (after sth) (*informal*) to remain somewhere at the end of an event after other

people have left: *She stopped behind after the meeting to talk to him.*
SYN **stay behind (after sth)**
NOTE **Stay behind** is used more frequently than **stop behind**.
◈ v + adv

ˌstop ˈby; ˌstop ˈby sth to make a short visit to sb/somewhere, especially when you are on the way to somewhere else: *Stop by for a chat on your way home.* ◇ *Could you stop by the store for some milk?*
SYN **come by, come by sth; drop by**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌstop ˈin (*BrE, informal*) to stay at home rather than go out: *We've decided to stop in tonight because it's raining.*
SYN **stay in**
NOTE **Stay in** is used much more frequently than **stop in**.
◈ v + adv

ˌstop ˈoff (at/in...) to stop somewhere for a short time when you are on the way to somewhere else: *We stopped off for lunch just north of Paris.* ◇ *I stopped off at the supermarket on the way home.*
◈ v + adv
▶ **ˈstop-off** *n* **1** a short stay somewhere during a trip: *a stop-off in Sydney* **2** a place where you stop for a short time during a trip

ˌstop ˈon [+ adv/prep] (*BrE, informal*) to stay somewhere longer than you planned or after other people have left: *I'll be late home tonight — the boss wants me to stop on an hour after work and help tidy up after the meeting.*
SYN **stay on**
NOTE **Stay on** is used more frequently than **stop on**.
◈ v + adv

ˌstop ˈout (*BrE, informal*) to stay out late at night or all night instead of going home: *He often stops out till three in the morning.*
SYN **stay out**
NOTE **Stay out** is used much more frequently than **stop out**.
◈ v + adv

ˌstop ˈover (in/at ...) to stop somewhere for a short time when you are on a long journey, especially a journey by plane: *I stopped over in Mérida on the way to Havana.*
◈ v + adv
▶ **ˈstopover** *n* **1** a short stay somewhere during a long journey: *We had a three-day stopover in Hawaii.* **2** a place where you stay for a short time during a long journey

ˌstop ˈup (*BrE, informal*) to not go to bed until later than usual: *She stopped up to see the football match.*
SYN **stay up**
NOTE **Stay up** is used much more frequently than **stop up**.
◈ v + adv

ˌstop sth ˈup to cover or fill a hole, a crack, etc. so that nothing can get through: *I stopped up all the holes to keep out the draught.*
SYN **block sth up**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

store /stɔː(r)/

ˌstore sth aˈway to put sth in a safe place and keep it there so that you can use it later: *We stored away the baby clothes until we had another child.* ◇ *It's amazing how much knowledge he's got stored away in his memory.* ◇ *I stored away the information for future use.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌstore ˈup sth; ˌstore it ˈup to not express strong feelings or deal with problems when you have them, often making trouble for yourself in future: *Smokers may be storing up health problems for their unborn children.* ◇ *Children who store up their bad feelings often develop headaches or stomach pains.*
OBJ **problems, trouble**
NOTE A noun must always follow **up**, but a pronoun comes between the verb and **up**.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv

ˌstore sth ˈup 1 to keep sth so that it can be used later: *animals storing up food for the winter* ◇ *The batteries store up enough energy for a week.* NOTE **Store sth** is also used with this meaning. **2** to keep information or facts in your memory to use later: *He stored up all the amusing and interesting things that happened during the day to tell his family in the evening.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

storm /stɔːm; *AmE* stɔːrm/

ˌstorm ˈoff to leave a place or a person suddenly because you are very angry: *We had a big argument and he stormed off.*
◈ v + adv

stow /stəʊ; *AmE* stoʊ/

ˌstow aˈway (on sth) to hide on a vehicle, especially a ship or a plane, in order to travel without paying or without being seen: *He stowed away on a ship bound for Vigo.*
◈ v + adv
▶ **ˈstowaway** *n* a person who hides on a ship or a plane in order to travel without paying or without being seen

ˌstow sth aˈway to put sth in a place where it will be safe or will not be found: *He stowed his passport away safely in a drawer.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

straighten /ˈstreɪtn/

ˌstraighten ˈout; ˌstraighten sth ˈout to become or to make sth straight: *After the bridge, the road straightens out.* ◇ *attempts to straighten out the river*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌstraighten sb ˈout; ˌstraighten yourself ˈout to help sb deal with problems or understand a difficult situation which may be making them behave badly; to help yourself in this way: *A few sessions talking to a counsellor should straighten him out.*
SYN **sort sb/yourself out**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌstraighten sth ˈout to deal with problems or a difficult situation; to organize things that are confused: *I was left to straighten out the mess.* ◇ *He's trying to straighten out his finances.*
SYN **sort sth out**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌstraighten ˈup to stand up straight from a bent position: *She slowly straightened up and rubbed her back.*
◈ v + adv

ˌstraighten sth ˈup to make a room, etc. neat and tidy: *We'd better straighten up the house before they get back.*
SYN **tidy sth up**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

strain /streɪn/

ˈstrain at sth to pull very hard on sth: *The dog was straining at its lead.*
◈ v + prep
IDM **strain at the ˈleash** (*informal*) to want to do sth very much, especially when sb/sth is trying to stop you: *He's straining at the leash to get on with his research.*

ˌstrain sth ˈoff to separate a liquid from sth solid by pouring it through sth that has very small holes in it: *Strain off any excess liquid.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

strap /stræp/ (-pp-)

ˌstrap sb ˈin; ˌstrap yourself ˈin; ˌstrap sb/yourself ˈinto sth to fasten sb/yourself in a seat, etc. using straps: *All passengers in the plane must be securely strapped in.* ◇ *Make sure you strap the baby firmly into the high chair.* ◇ *Have you strapped yourselves in?*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌstrap sth ˈon; ˌstrap sth ˈonto sth to attach sth to sth else with straps: *He strapped on his helmet and rode away.* ◇ *She strapped the suitcases onto the roof of the car.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌstrap sth ˈup to tie strips of cloth (a **bandage**) around sth, especially an injured part of the body, to support it or prevent it from moving: *Your wrist needs to be strapped up.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

stress /stres/

ˌstress sb ˈout (*informal*) to make sb very anxious and tired so that they are unable to relax: *My job really stresses me out.* ◇ *My Dad stressed me out by criticizing me all the time.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv
▶ **ˌstressed ˈout** *adj* too anxious and tired to be able to relax: *When I'm stressed out, I try to go for a long walk.* ◇ *stressed-out executives*

stretch /stretʃ/

ˌstretch aˈway/ˈout [+ adv/prep] to spread over a large area of land, especially away from where you are: *The mountains stretched away into the distance.* ◇ *Banana plantations stretched away as far as the eye could see.*
SYN **extend**
◈ v + adv

ˌstretch ˈout; ˌstretch yourself ˈout to lie down, with your arms or legs out straight, especially in order to relax or sleep: *He stretched out on the floor and fell asleep.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + pron + adv

ˌstretch sth ˈout 1 to put your arm or leg out straight, especially in order to reach sth: *She stretched out a hand to touch his face.* ◇ *He leant back and stretched his legs out in front of him.* OBJ **arm, hand, leg 2** to make sth last as long as possible by not using very much at a time: *It's hard to stretch my money out to the end of the month.* SYN **spin sth out**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

strew /struː/ (strewed, strewed or strewn /struːn/)

be ˈstrewn with sth to be covered with a lot of things: *The floor was strewn with clothes.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The way ahead is strewn with difficulties.*
◈ be + v + prep

strike /straɪk/ (struck, struck /strʌk/, *AmE also* struck, stricken /ˈstrɪkən/)

ˈstrike at sb/sth 1 to try to hit sb/sth, especially with a weapon: *She screamed and struck at the wolf with a stick.* **2** to cause damage or have a serious effect on sb/sth: *The proposals strike at the roots of community life.* ◇ *This legislation strikes at the most vulnerable people in society.*
◈ v + prep

ˌstrike ˈback (at/against sb/sth) to criticize or attack sb who has criticized or attacked you: *Sarah used the article to strike back at her critics.*
SYN **hit back (at sb/sth)**
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌstrike sb ˈdown *(formal)* **1** if a disease **strikes sb down**, it kills them or makes them seriously ill: *She was struck down by polio at the age of four.* ◇ *I was struck down by flu and had to cancel the trip.* **2** to hit sb very hard so that they fall to the ground; to kill sb: *Fights broke out near the shop and one girl was struck down by a handbag.* ◇ *the spot where Kennedy was struck down*
NOTE **Strike sb down** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌstrike sth ˈdown *(especially AmE)* to reject sth; to make sth no longer valid: *Only the Supreme Court has the power to strike down this legislation.* ◇ *Parents tried to have the dance ban struck down.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌstrike ˈoff STRIKE OUT 3

ˌstrike sb/sth ˈoff; ˌstrike sb/sth ˈoff sth *(BrE)* to remove sb's name from the list of members of a profession so that they can no longer work in that profession: *She was struck off for professional misconduct.* ◇ *These doctors should be struck off the medical register.* ◇ *I'm going to strike Ashok off my guest list for the party.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌstrike sth ˈoff *(formal)* to remove sth with a sharp blow; to cut sth off: *They struck off his head with a sword.*
SYN **chop sth off** *(less formal)*
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌstrike ˈout 1 (at sb/sth) to aim a violent blow at sb: *He struck out at me with his fist.* SYN **hit out (at sb/sth) 2** to start being independent and do sth new: *Sanjay left the firm and struck out on his own.* **3** (also **ˌstrike ˈoff** *less frequent*) **[+ adv/prep]** to start to go somewhere in a determined way: *He struck out across the fields towards the farmhouse.* **4 (with sb)** *(AmE, informal)* to fail; to be unsuccessful: *I tried to get a job but struck out completely.* ◇ *He must have struck out with her because he came home early.* **5 (at sb/sth)** to criticize sb/sth, especially publicly: *striking out at your critics* SYN **hit out (at sb/sth)**
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌstrike ˈout; ˌstrike sb ˈout *(AmE)* (in baseball) to fail to hit the ball successfully three times and so finish your turn; to make sb do this: *He struck out in the third inning.* ◇ *The pitcher struck out three batters.*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌstrike sth ˈout/ˈthrough *(especially BrE)* to remove sth from a text or a list by drawing a line through it: *I struck out some words to make the telegram shorter.* ◇ *He insisted that I strike out all references to his family.*
SYN **cross sth out/through**
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌstrike ˈup (with sth), ˌstrike ˈup sth if a band or an orchestra **strike up**, they begin to play: *Everyone was waiting for the band to strike up.* ◇ *The orchestra struck up a lively tune.*
OBJ **tune**
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌstrike ˈup sth (with sb) to begin a friendship, a relationship, a conversation, etc. with sb: *My mother will strike up a conversation with anyone she meets.* ◇ *Children of the same age don't always strike up friendships (with each other).*
OBJ **conversation, friendship, relationship**
Ⓖ v + adv + n

string /strɪŋ/ (strung, strung /strʌŋ/)

ˌstring aˈlong (with sb) *(informal)* to go somewhere or do sth with sb else, especially because you have nothing else to do: *I'm free this morning. Can I string along with you when you go to the shops?*
SYN **tag along (behind/with sb)**
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌstring sb aˈlong *(informal)* to allow sb to believe sth that is not true for a long period of time, especially when you encourage them to have false hopes: *They never really intended to give her a job. They were just stringing her along.* ◇ *He strung her along for years and then married somebody else.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv

ˌstring ˈout (across/along sth) to spread out in a line: *As we climbed, we tended to string out, with the fittest people taking the lead.*
Ⓖ v + adv

ˌstring sth ˈout to make sth last longer than expected or necessary: *I didn't want to string out the argument.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌstring sth toˈgether 1 to combine words, phrases, sentences, etc. to form sth that has some meaning: *I can barely string together two words of German.* ◇ *The report should be written by somebody who can string two sentences together.* OBJ **words, a sentence 2** to join a series of things together: *pearls strung together on a necklace* ◇ *The student of kung fu learns various movements that are then strung together.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌstring sb ˈup *(informal)* to kill sb by hanging them, especially illegally: *They'll string him up if they catch him.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌstring sth ˈup to hang or tie sth in place: *She strung up a banner saying 'Happy 40th Birthday'.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

strip /strɪp/ (-pp-)

ˌstrip sth aˈway 1 (from sth) to completely remove a layer of sth that is covering sth else: *Strip away the paint to reveal the wood underneath.* ◇ *The bark has been stripped away from the tree.* **2** to remove anything that is not true and necessary to reveal what sb/sth is really like: *When you strip away the jargon, he really has nothing sensible to say.* ◇ *The programme stripped away the mystery surrounding the royal family.* **3** to remove or get rid of sth that has existed for a long time: *Our basic rights are being stripped away by these laws.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌstrip sth ˈdown to separate a machine or an engine into parts, especially in order to clean or repair it: *We had to strip down the engine and replace the worn parts.* ◇ *The car was stripped down and sold for parts.*
SYN **dismantle sth** *(more formal)*
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌstrip ˈdown to sth to take off your clothes until you are only wearing the items mentioned: *I stripped down to my underwear for the massage.*
Ⓖ v + adv + prep + noun

ˌstrip sth ˈfrom sth STRIP STH OFF, STRIP STH OFF/FROM STH

ˈstrip sb/sth of sth to take away a right, a privilege, property, etc. that sb has, as a punishment: *He was stripped of his title for refusing to fight in Britain* (= for example, in boxing). ◇ *They stripped me of my citizenship and deported me.*
SYN **divest sb/sth of sth** *(formal)*
NOTE **Strip sb of sth** is often used in the passive.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

ˌstrip ˈoff; ˌstrip sth ˈoff *(BrE, informal)* if you **strip off**, or **strip sth off**, you take off all or nearly all your clothes: *She stripped off and dived into the water.* ◇ *Strip off your wet clothes and put on these dry ones.*
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌstrip sth ˈoff; ˌstrip sth ˈoff/ˈfrom sth to remove a layer of sth: *It was hard work stripping the old wallpaper off.* ◇ *All the leaves had been stripped off the branches.*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌstrip sth ˈout to completely remove things you do not want; to remove everything from a place and leave it empty: *They had stripped out all the original features of the house.*
Ⓖ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

struggle /ˈstrʌɡl/

ˌstruggle aˈlong/ˈon to manage to continue in spite of great difficulties: *The country's economy is still struggling along.* ◇ *The government struggled on with a tiny majority.*
Ⓖ v + adv

stub /stʌb/ (-bb-)

ˌstub sth ˈout to stop a cigarette, etc. burning: *He stubbed the cigarette out with his foot.*
OBJ **cigarette, cigar** SYN **grind sth out; put sth out; extinguish sth** *(more formal)*
Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

stuff /stʌf/

ˌstuff ˈup; ˌstuff sth ˈup *(BrE, slang)* to do sth very badly; to fail at sth: *I'm afraid I stuffed up again.* ◇ *I'm not having them stuff up my plans.*
SYN **mess up, mess sth up**
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

stumble /ˈstʌmbl/

ˌstumble aˈcross/ˈon/uˈpon sb/sth to find sb/sth unexpectedly or by chance: *We stumbled on the solution by accident.* ◇ *I stumbled across an old school friend today.*
Ⓖ v + prep

ˈstumble into sth to become involved in sth by chance: *She stumbled into engineering because of her love of maths.*
Ⓖ v + prep

stump /stʌmp/

ˌstump ˈup (for sth), ˌstump ˈup sth (for sth) *(BrE, informal)* to pay the amount of money for sth that sb asks, often when you do not want to: *He had no money so I had to stump up for his ticket.* ◇ *We had to stump up an extra five hundred pounds for insurance.*
OBJ **the cash** SYN **cough up, cough sth up**
Ⓖ v + adv ◆ v + adv + n

subject /səbˈdʒekt/

subˈject sb/sth/yourself to sth *(formal)* to make sb/sth/yourself experience, suffer or be affected by sth, usually sth unpleasant: *to subject sth to scrutiny/analysis* ◇ *All our products are subjected to thorough tests.* ◇ *to be subjected to criticism/harassment/abuse/torture* ◇ *Why did I subject myself to another evening of arguments?* ◇ *The city was subjected to repeated bombings.*
NOTE **Subject sb/sth/yourself to sth** is often used in the passive. ◆ It is mainly used in written English.
Ⓖ v + n/pron + prep

subscribe /səbˈskraɪb/

subˈscribe to sth *(formal)* to agree with an opinion, a theory, etc: *It's not an opinion I tend to subscribe to.* ◇ *The company subscribe to the view that if you can encourage children to use your products, they will continue to use them when they are adults.*
OBJ **view, theory, opinion**

NOTE **Subscribe to sth** can be used in the passive: *It is not a theory that is commonly subscribed to.*
◈ v + prep

substitute /ˈsʌbstɪtjuːt; *AmE* -tuːt/

ˈsubstitute for sb/sth to take the place of sb/sth else: *Can you substitute for me at the meeting?* ◇ *Nothing can substitute for the advice your doctor is able to give you.*
◈ v + prep

succeed /səkˈsiːd/

sucˈceed in doing sth to achieve sth that you have been trying to do or get; to have the result or effect that was intended: *He succeeded in getting top marks in chemistry.* ◇ *The Labour Party succeeded in capturing the female vote* (= they persuaded women to vote for them). ◇ (*ironic*) *I tried to mend my watch, but only succeeded in breaking it* (= that was not what I intended).
◈ v + prep

suck /sʌk/

ˌsuck sb ˈin; **ˌsuck sb ˈinto sth** to gradually involve sb in an activity, a situation, etc., especially one that they do not at first want to be involved in: *There is a danger we could be sucked into a war.* ◇ *Don't let yourself get sucked in.* ◇ *In his youth he had been sucked into a hippy cult.*
NOTE **Suck sb in/suck sb into sth** is nearly always used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌsuck ˈup to sb (*informal, disapproving*) to try to please sb by helping them, saying nice things to them, etc. in order to gain an advantage for yourself: *He's always sucking up to the teacher.* ◇ *We don't suck up to anyone!*
◈ v + adv + prep

sucker /ˈsʌkə(r)/

ˌsucker sb ˈinto sth; **ˌsucker sb ˈinto doing sth** (*AmE, informal*) to persuade sb to do sth they do not really want to do, especially by using their lack of knowledge or experience: *He got suckered into the scheme.* ◇ *I was suckered into helping.*
NOTE This phrasal verb is usually used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

sue /suː *BrE also* sjuː/

ˈsue for sth (*formal*) to formally ask for sth, especially in a court of law: *to sue for divorce* ◇ *The rebels were forced to sue for peace.*
OBJ **divorce, peace**
◈ v + prep

suit /suːt *BrE also* sjuːt/

ˈsuit sth to sb/sth to make sth appropriate for sb/sth: *He can suit his conversation to whoever he's with.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

sum /sʌm/ (**-mm-**)

ˌsum ˈup; **ˌsum sth ˈup 1** to give the main points of sth in a few words: *Before we conclude the meeting, let me sum up.* ◇ ***To sum up**, there are three main ways of tackling the problem...* ◇ *In her conclusion, she summed up what had been agreed.* SYN **summarize, summarize sth** (*more formal*) **2** (of a judge) to give the main points of the evidence or arguments in a legal case, near the end of the trial: *When he summed up, the judge reminded the jury of the seriousness of the case.*
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)
▸ **ˌsumming-ˈup** *n* **1** a speech made by the judge to the jury near the end of the trial, giving the main points of the evidence and the arguments in the case: *The judge will begin her summing-up on Monday.* **2** an occasion when sb states the main points of an argument, etc: *There was a final summing-up by each of the speakers.* ◇ *The speakers gave brief summings-up of their talks.*

ˌsum sb/sth ˈup 1 to describe or show the most typical characteristics of sb/sth, especially in a few words: *His speech summed up the mood of the whole country.* ◇ *Totally lazy — that just about sums him up.* **2** (**as sb/sth**) to decide or express what you think about sb/sth: *The two of them stood there, summing each other up.* ◇ *He had already summed her up as someone who hated to admit defeat.* ◇ *I summed up the situation immediately* (= realized what was happening and what needed to be done). SYN **size sb/sth up**
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

summon /ˈsʌmən/

ˌsummon sth ˈup 1 to manage to produce a particular feeling in yourself, although this is difficult: *She eventually summoned up the courage to knock at the door.* ◇ *He managed to summon up a smile.* ◇ *I can't summon up much enthusiasm for grammar!* ◇ *I don't think I can summon up the energy to go for a run.* OBJ **courage, smile, energy, strength** SYN **muster sth up** NOTE In this meaning **summon sth up** is not used in the passive. • **Summon sth** is sometimes used with this meaning. **2** to make an idea, a feeling, a memory, etc. come into your mind: *It's a smell that summons up memories of my childhood.* OBJ **memories, vision, image** SYN **evoke sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

surge /sɜːdʒ; *AmE* sɜːrdʒ/

ˌsurge ˈthrough sb if a feeling **surges through** you, you suddenly feel it very strongly: *A thrill of excitement surged through Isobel.* SUBJ **relief, excitement, anger**
→ *see also* SURGE UP
◈ v + prep

ˌsurge ˈup (*literary*) if an emotion **surges up** in you, you suddenly feel it very strongly: *Panic surged up inside her.*
NOTE **Surge up** is usually used with another adverb or a phrase beginning with a preposition.
→ *see also* SURGE THROUGH SB
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˈupsurge** (**in/of sth**) *n* [*usually* sing.] a sudden great increase in sth: *There has been a recent upsurge of violence in the area.* ◇ *an upsurge of interest in science and technology*

surrender /səˈrendə(r)/

surˈrender to sb/sth; **surˈrender yourself to sb/sth** (*formal*) to stop trying to resist a feeling, a particular person, etc. and let them control what you do: *He surrendered to his natural instinct to run away.* ◇ *She surrendered to Leo's charm.* ◇ *He surrendered himself to sleep.*
◈ v + prep • v + pron + prep

suss /sʌs/

ˌsuss sb/sth ˈout (*BrE, informal*) to find out what sb/sth is really like; to understand the important things about sb/sth: *My classmates were sussing me out, seeing how tough I was.* ◇ *We'll need to suss out our opponents before the game.* ◇ *I've got him sussed out now.* ◇ *Jen had sussed out right away that there was something strange going on.* ◇ *Simon always did what his family wanted. I soon sussed that out.*
NOTE **Suss sb/sth** can be used with a similar meaning: *I've got him sussed.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

swallow /ˈswɒləʊ; *AmE* ˈswɑːloʊ/

ˌswallow sb/sth ˈup to completely cover sb/sth or absorb them/it, so that they can no longer be seen or do not exist separately: *He watched them walk away until the darkness swallowed them up.* ◇ *She was so embarrassed she wished that the ground would open and swallow her up.* ◇ *The countryside is rapidly being swallowed up by building developments.* ◇ *Many small businesses have been swallowed up by larger companies.*
NOTE **Swallow sb/sth** is sometimes used with this meaning: *She wished that the ground would open up and swallow her.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌswallow sth ˈup to use sth such as money or resources completely: *Practising the piano swallows up all her free time.* ◇ *Pay rises were quickly swallowed up by price increases.* ◇ *Nuclear weapons swallowed up a third of the country's defence spending.* ◇ *The extra money was swallowed up by debts.*
OBJ **time, money** SYN **use sth up**
NOTE **Swallow sth up** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

swan /swɒn; *AmE* swɑːn/ (**-nn-**)

ˌswan aˈbout/aˈround; **ˌswan aˈbout/aˈround sth** (*BrE, informal, disapproving*) to move around or go from one place to another enjoying yourself, but with no real purpose: *Stop swanning about pretending to be clever.* ◇ *She's swanning around Europe for the summer.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˌswan ˈoff (**to...**) (*BrE, informal, disapproving*) to go off to enjoy yourself with no real purpose: *He's always swanning off to Spain on holiday!*
◈ v + adv

swap (*also* **swop**) /swɒp; *AmE* swɑːp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌswap aˈround/ˈover/ˈround (*informal, especially BrE*) if two people **swap around/over/round**, they move to where the other person was before or start doing each other's jobs: *I'll drive there and you can read the map. We'll swap over on the way back.*
SYN **change over/round** (*BrE*)
◈ v + adv

ˌswap sb/sth aˈround/ˈover/ˈround (*informal, especially BrE*) to replace sb/sth with sb/sth else: *At half-time the manager swapped some of the players around.*
SYN **change sb/sth round/around**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˌswap ˈover (**to sth**), **ˌswap sb/sth ˈover** (**to sth**) to change from one situation, position, etc. to another; to make sb do this: *We swapped over from an electric cooker to a gas cooker.* ◇ *Have you been swapped over to the new computer system yet?*
SYN **switch over, switch sth over, switch sb over**
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

swarm /swɔːm; *AmE* swɔːrm/

ˈswarm with sb/sth (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) if a place is **swarming with** sb/sth, it is very full of people or things moving around: *The museum was swarming with tourists.* ◇ *The room was hot and swarming with flies.*
◈ v + prep

swear /sweə(r); *AmE* swer/ (**swore** /swɔː(r)/**sworn** /swɔːn; *AmE* swɔːrn/)

ˈswear by sb (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to name sb in order to show that you are making a serious promise: *I swear by Almighty God that I will tell the truth* (for example, said in a British court of law).
G v + prep

ˈswear by sth/sb (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to believe strongly that sth/sb is very useful and helpful: *My brother swears by lemon and honey drinks as a cold remedy.* ◇ *Why don't you go and see Dr. Nash? My mother swears by him.*
G v + prep

ˌswear sb ˈin; **ˌswear sb ˈinto sth** to introduce sb publicly to a new position, responsibility, etc. by getting them to promise that they will do the job correctly, be loyal to the organization, their country, etc: *He was sworn in as President in January.* ◇ *The new President was hurriedly sworn into office.*
NOTE **Swear sb in** and **swear sb into sth** are often used in the passive.
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep
▶ **ˌswearing-ˈin** *n* [U] [sing.] the act of getting sb to promise publicly to do their job correctly, be loyal to their organization or country, etc. before they begin a new job or responsibility: *The swearing-in of the new president will take place tomorrow.* ◇ *a swearing-in ceremony*

ˌswear ˈoff sth (*informal, especially AmE*) to make a serious promise that you will give sth up, especially sth that is bad or harmful: *He's intending to swear off alcohol.* ◇ *Ever since her boyfriend left she has sworn off men.*
G v + prep

ˈswear to sth (*informal*) to say that sth is definitely true: *I think I've met him somewhere before, but I **couldn't swear to it*** (= I'm not completely certain).
G v + prep

ˈswear sb to sth to make sb promise sth, especially that they will not tell other people sth: *The actors know how the series will end but they are **sworn to secrecy**.* ◇ *Jeff told me about his promotion and **swore me to silence**.*
G v + n/pron + prep

sweat /swet/

ˌsweat sth ˈoff to lose weight by doing a lot of hard exercise to make yourself hot and produce sweat: *I sweated off the extra weight by playing squash every day.*
G v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌsweat sth ˈout 1 to get rid of a cold, fever, etc. by staying warm so that you produce sweat: *Whenever I get a bad fever I go to bed and sweat it out.*
OBJ **cold, fever** **2** **ˌsweat it ˈout** to wait for sth that you feel nervous or anxious about to happen or to end: *They made us sweat it out for two hours until the result was announced.*
NOTE **Sweat sth out** is not used in the passive.
G v + pron + adv • v + n + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˈsweat over sth (*informal*) to work very hard on sth; to spend a lot of time doing sth or worrying about sth: *I've been sweating over my letter of resignation for several days.*
G v + prep

sweep /swiːp/ (**swept, swept** /swept/)

ˌsweep sb aˈlong/aˈway to make sb feel very enthusiastic about sth or involved in sth; to affect sb so much they forget everything else: *Ana was swept along by her father's enthusiasm.*
SYN **carry sb along; be/get carried away**
NOTE **Sweep sb along/away** is usually used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌsweep sb aˈside to defeat sb easily: *United swept Liverpool aside with ease.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌsweep sth aˈside to ignore sth; to treat sth as though it is not important: *All their objections were swept aside.* ◇ *She sweeps aside every suggestion I make.*
OBJ **objections, protests, restrictions, opposition, criticism**
NOTE **Sweep sth aside** is often used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌsweep sb aˈway = SWEEP SB ALONG/AWAY

ˌsweep sth aˈway to destroy or get rid of sth completely: *The President's speech swept away all our doubts.* ◇ *Poverty will be swept away!* ◇ *The old way of life has been swept away by the electronic revolution.*
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌsweep sth ˈback/ˈup if you **sweep** your hair **back** or **up**, you brush or push it away from your face: *She swept her hair back from her face with both hands.* ◇ *Long hair can be swept up on top of your head.*
OBJ **hair**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌsweep sth ˈoff; **ˌsweep sth ˈoff sth** to remove sth from somewhere, especially by brushing with your hands, a brush, etc: *He swept the crumbs off the table.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The wind swept her hat off.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep
IDM **ˌsweep sb off their ˈfeet** to make sb fall suddenly and deeply in love with you: *Maria was swept off her feet by Mark's charm.*

ˌsweep sth ˈout to clean a room, a cupboard, etc. with a large brush with a long handle (a **broom**): *Brad was busy sweeping out the yard.*
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌsweep sb ˈup 1 to lift sb with a sudden smooth movement: *He ran forward and swept her up in his arms.* **2** to make sb become very involved in sth so that they are unable to think clearly: *The whole country was swept up in the excitement.* SYN **be/get caught up (in sth)** NOTE **Sweep sb up** is often used in the passive in this meaning.
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˌsweep ˈup; **ˌsweep sth ˈup** to remove dust, dirt, etc. from a floor with a brush: *We had to sweep up before we left.* ◇ *We'd better sweep up all the bits of broken glass quickly.*
G v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌsweep sth ˈup = SWEEP STH BACK/UP

sweeten /ˈswiːtn/

ˌsweeten sb ˈup (*informal*) to try to persuade sb to help you, agree to sth, etc. by giving them gifts, being very nice to them, etc: *If you sweeten him up he'll do the work for you.* ◇ *They sweeten up customers with special offers.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

swell /swel/ (**swelled** /sweld/**swollen** /ˈswəʊlən; *AmE* ˈswoʊ-/ or **swelled, swelled**)

ˌswell ˈup if part of the body **swells up**, it becomes much larger and rounder than usual as a result of illness, injury, etc: *My foot swelled up to twice its normal size.* ◇ (*figurative*) *A feeling of admiration swelled up in her.*
G v + adv

swill /swɪl/

ˌswill sth ˈdown (*informal*) to drink a large amount of sth quickly: *He just swilled down his beer and walked out.*
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

swing /swɪŋ/ (**swung, swung** /swʌŋ/)

ˌswing aˈround; **ˌswing sb/sth aˈround** (*BrE also* **ˌswing ˈround, ˌswing sb/sth ˈround**) **1** to turn around fast to face the other way; to make sb/sth do this: *Luke suddenly swung round and glared at me.* ◇ *I swung the car round and drove back down the road.* **2** to change from one idea, opinion, etc. to another, especially the opposite one: *The Labour Party has now swung round to supporting Europe.* ◇ *You should be able to swing people round to your point of view.*
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

ˈswing at sb; **ˈswing sth at sb** to try to hit sb: *She swung at me with the iron bar.*
G v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌswing ˈby; **ˌswing ˈby sth** (*AmE, informal*) to visit a person or place for a short time, especially when you are going somewhere else: *She swung by* (= came here) *on her way home.* ◇ *Let's swing by Dave's house after the movie.*
SYN **drop by**
G v + adv • v + prep

ˌswing ˈround; **ˌswing sb/sth ˈround** (*BrE*) = SWING AROUND, SWING SB/STH AROUND

switch /swɪtʃ/

ˌswitch ˈoff (*informal*) to stop giving your attention to sb or sth: *I just switch off when Jo starts talking.* ◇ *Do you find it hard to switch off* (= stop thinking about work) *when you get home?*
SYN **turn off**
G v + adv

ˌswitch ˈoff; **ˌswitch sth ˈoff**; **ˌswitch itself ˈoff** to stop an electrical device, a machine or an engine working by pressing a switch, a button, etc: *The heating switches off at 10.00 p.m.* ◇ *Shall I switch the lights off?* ◇ *The electricity has been switched off.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Her smile switched off suddenly when she saw him come in.*
SYN **turn off, turn itself off, turn sth off**
OPP **switch on, switch sth on, switch itself on**
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌswitch ˈon; **ˌswitch sth ˈon**; **ˌswitch itself ˈon** to start an electrical device, a machine or an engine by pressing a switch, a button, etc: *She walked in and switched on the light.* ◇ *The machine switches (itself) on automatically.* ◇ *How do you switch this thing on?* ◇ (*figurative*) *He can switch on the charm whenever he likes.*
SYN **turn on, turn itself on; turn sth on**
OPP **switch off, switch sth off, switch itself off**
G v + adv

ˌswitch ˈover (to sth), **ˌswitch sth ˈover** (to sth) **1** (*BrE*) to change from one television station to another: *I switched over to watch the news.* SYN **change over (to sth); turn over (to sth), turn sth over (to sth)** **2** (*also* **ˌswitch sb ˈover**) to change from one position, situation, job, etc. to another: *We've finally switched over to a computerized system.* ◇ *The country gradually switched over from imperial to metric.* ◇ *35 000 customers have been switched over to the new system.* SYN **change over (from sth) (to sth)**
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

swivel /ˈswɪvl/ (**-ll-**, *AmE* **-l-**)

ˌswivel aˈround; **ˌswivel sb/sth aˈround** (*also* **ˌswivel ˈround, ˌswivel sb/sth ˈround** *especially BrE*) **1** to turn or move your body, eyes or head around quickly to face another direction: *He swivelled around to look at her.* **2** to turn or make sth turn around a fixed central point: *She swivelled the chair around to face them.*
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

swop /swɒp; *AmE* swɑːp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌ**swop aˈround/ˈover/ˈround** = SWAP AROUND/OVER/ROUND

ˌ**swop sb/sth aˈround/ˈover/ˈround** = SWAP SB/STH AROUND/OVER/ROUND

swot /swɒt; *AmE* swɑːt/

ˌ**swot ˈup (on sth)** (*BrE, informal*) to study a subject very hard, especially when you are preparing for an exam: *I have to swot up on phrasal verbs for a test tomorrow.* ◇ *It's time to start swotting up for the exam.*
SYN **brush sth up, brush up on sth** (*especially BrE*), **mug up (on sth), mug sth up** (*BrE*), **review sth** (*especially AmE*), **revise sth** (*BrE*)

syphon /ˈsaɪfn/

ˌ**syphon sth ˈoff** = SIPHON STH OFF

Tt

tack /tæk/

ˌ**tack sth ˈon**; ˌ**tack sth ˈon to sth** (*informal*) to add sth as an extra item, especially in a careless way: *The last paragraph seems to have been tacked on at the last minute.* ◇ *An extra day has been tacked onto the New Year holiday.* ◇ *a porch tacked on to the front of the house*
SYN **add sth on, add sth on to sth**
NOTE **Tack sth on** and **tack sth on to sth** are often used in the passive.
➔ *see also* TAG STH ON, TAG STH ON TO STH
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv + prep

tag /tæg/ (**-gg-**)

ˌ**tag aˈlong (behind/with sb)** (*informal*) to go somewhere with sb, especially when you have not been invited: *The children tagged along behind their mother.* ◇ *Can I tag along (with you) when you go to the shops?*
SYN **string along (with sb)**
➔ *see also* TAG ON, TAG ON TO SB
◈ v + adv

ˌ**tag ˈon**; ˌ**tag ˈon to sb/sth** (*especially BrE*) to follow sb closely and go somewhere with them, although you have not been invited: *Kate's friend tagged on and spoiled the day.* ◇ *We tagged on to the end of the procession.*
➔ *see also* TAG ALONG (BEHIND/WITH SB)
◈ v + adv • v + adv + prep

ˌ**tag sth ˈon**; ˌ**tag sth ˈon to sth** (*informal*) to add sth as an extra item to the end of sth, especially in a careless way: *An apology was tagged on to the end of the letter.* ◇ *Online security is being built in to the system, not tagged on.*
SYN **add sth on, add sth on to sth**
NOTE **Tag sth on** and **tag sth on to sth** are often used in the passive.
➔ *see also* TACK STH ON, TACK STH ON TO STH
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv + prep

tail /teɪl/

ˌ**tail aˈway** = TAIL OFF

ˌ**tail ˈback** (*BrE*) if traffic **tails back**, it forms a long line that moves very slowly or does not move at all: *After the accident, traffic tailed back eight miles.*
◈ v + adv
▸ ˈ**tailback** *n* (*BrE*) a long line of traffic that moves very slowly or does not move at all: *The crash caused a six-mile tailback.*

ˌ**tail ˈoff** (*also* ˌ**tail aˈway** *less frequent*) to become smaller, fewer, weaker, etc: *Sales tailed off in the autumn/fall.* ◇ *The number of tourists starts to tail off in September.* ◇ *Her voice tailed away.* ◇ *'Did you want to see…' she tailed off.*
◈ v + adv

tailor /ˈteɪlə(r)/

ˈ**tailor sth to/for sb/sth** to make or adapt sth for a particular purpose, a particular person, etc: *Special programmes of study are tailored to the needs of specific students.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

take /teɪk/ (**took** /tʊk/**taken** /ˈteɪkən/)

~ aback
~ after
~ against
~ along
298 ~ apart
~ around
~ aside
~ away
~ away from
~ back
299 ~ down
~ in
300 ~ into
~ off
301 ~ on
~ out
302 ~ out of
~ out on
~ over
~ round
~ through
~ to
303 ~ up
~ up on
~ up with
~ upon
~ with

ˌ**take sb aˈback** to shock or surprise sb: *I was taken aback by his rudeness.*
NOTE **Take sb aback** is usually used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌ**take ˈafter sb 1** (*not used in the progressive tenses*) to look like or behave like an older member of your family: *I'm told I take after my grandmother.* ◇ *Your daughter doesn't take after you at all.* ◇ *He's always been shy he takes after his father.* **2** (*old-fashioned, AmE*) to begin to follow sb quickly in order to catch them: *A man rushed out of the bank and two men took after him.* ◇ *She ran out into the night and he took after her.*
◈ v + prep

ˌ**take aˈgainst sb/sth** (*old-fashioned, BrE*) to begin to dislike sb/sth: *Why have you suddenly taken against Laura?*
OPP **take to sb/sth**
◈ v + prep

ˌ**take sb/sth aˈlong (to sth)** to take sb or sth with you when you go somewhere: *Tom took his sister along to the party.* ◇ *When you travel with young children, take along some favourite toys or a book.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtake sb/sth aˈpart (*informal*) **1** (in sport) to defeat sb easily: *He took the American apart in the third set* (= in a game of tennis). ◇ *We took the other team apart.* ◇ *Touch her again and I'll take you apart!* **2** to attack or criticize sb/sth severely: *Her second novel was taken apart by the critics.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌtake sth aˈpart to separate a machine, a piece of equipment, etc. into its parts: *She took the clock apart and couldn't put it back together.* ◇ *You can take the mixer apart to clean it.* ◇ *The police took the room apart* (examined everything very carefully), *looking for evidence.*
SYN **dismantle sth** (*more formal*)
OPP **put sth together**
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌtake sb aˈround; **ˌtake sb aˈround sth** (*BrE also* **ˌtake sb ˈround**, **ˌtake sb ˈround sth**) to visit a place with sb; to show sb the interesting or important parts of a place: *If you'd like to see the town, I could take you around.* ◇ *We got a guide to take us round the temples.*
SYN **show sb around, show sb around sth**; **take sb over sth**
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌtake sb/sth aˈround (*especially AmE*) = TAKE SB/STH ROUND

ˌtake sb aˈside to separate sb from the rest of a group in order to talk to them privately: *She took me aside and explained the situation.*
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌtake sb aˈway **(from sb/sth)** **1** to remove sb from somewhere; to lead or move sb to another place: *The injured were taken away by ambulance.* ◇ *I can take you away from all this* (= all this trouble). **2** to remove sb, especially a child, from sb's care: *The children were taken away from them and put into a children's home.* ◇ *My father took me away from school and taught me himself.* **3** to take sb with you on a trip or holiday/vacation: *He takes the whole family away for two weeks in the summer.* **4** to make it necessary for sb to leave a place, especially temporarily: *Sam's work takes him away from his family for months at a time.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌtake sth aˈway **1** to remove sth and place it somewhere else: *They had to take the computer away to fix it.* ◇ *You can take the book away with you.* **2** **(from sb/sth)** to remove something from a person, a place or an organization so that they no longer have it: *These books must not be taken away from the library.* ◇ *They can't take our rights away from us.* **3** to make a feeling, pain, etc. disappear: *These tablets should help take the pain away.* ◇ *That was disgusting! I need a drink of water to take the taste away.* OBJ **pain**, **taste**, **appetite** **4** **(from sth)** (*mathematics*) to take one number from another: *If you take four away from ten, that leaves six.* ◇ *Ten take away four leaves six* (10 - 4=6). **5** (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˌtake sth ˈout**) (*usually used in the infinitive with 'to'*) to buy a cooked dish at a restaurant and carry it away to eat at home, in the street, etc: *A cheeseburger and a coffee* ***to take away***, *please.* ◇ *Is that to eat here or take away?* **6** **(from sth)** to form an opinion or impression of sb/sth that is still there when you go away: *We didn't take away a very favourable impression of the hotel.* ◇ *What do we want students to take away* (= to learn) *from this course?*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
IDM **take sb's ˈbreath away** to surprise or please somebody very much: *The first sight of the waterfall takes your breath away.*
▶ **ˈtakeaway** (*BrE*) *n* **1** a restaurant that cooks and sells food that you eat somewhere else: *a Chinese/Indian takeaway* ◇ *a takeaway restaurant* **2** (*AmE* **ˈtakeout**, **ˈcarry-out**) a meal that you buy from this type of restaurant: *We could get a takeaway tonight.* ◇ *a takeaway pizza*

ˌtake aˈway from sth to make the effect or value of sth seem less: *I don't wish to take away from his achievements, but he couldn't have done it without our help.*
SYN **detract from sth** (*more formal*)
G v + adv + prep

ˌtake sb aˈway from sth to take sb's attention away from what they are trying to do: *These minor problems are taking us away from the real issue.*
SYN **distract sb (from sth)**
G v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌtake sb ˈback **1** **(to sth)** to go with someone to the place where they were or to your/their home: *Can you take me back to the hotel?* ◇ *I'll take the kids back now — they're getting tired.* **2** to allow sb such as your husband, wife or partner to come home after they have left because of a problem; to allow sb to return to their job: *I agreed to take her back if she promised to be faithful in future.* ◇ *An employer cannot be forced to take you back.* SYN **have sb back** **3** **(to sth)** to make sb's thoughts return to a past time: *The smell of the sea took him back to his childhood.* ◇ *That song takes me back a bit!* SYN **carry sb back (to sth)**
G v + n/pron + adv

ˌtake sth ˈback **1** **(to sb/sth)** if you **take sth back** to a shop/store, or a shop/store **takes sth back**, you return sth that you have bought because it is the wrong size or does not work, for example: *The sweater had a hole in it so I took it back.* SYN **return sth** (*more formal*) **2** to return sth you have borrowed, hired, etc: *I forgot to take my books back to the library.* ◇ *It's your turn to take the videos back.* SYN **return sth** (*more formal*) NOTE In informal spoken language **take sb back sth**, or, less often, **take sb sth back** can also be used: *I took him back his CD.* ◇ *I took him his CD back.* **3** to take something you have bought, etc. home with you after you have been away: *We spent a lot of the holiday looking for presents to take back for the kids.* NOTE In informal spoken language **take sb back sth** is also used: *We took the kids back some presents.* **4** to receive or take sth that you own from sb who has borrowed it: *When I'd read the letter he took it back and put it in his pocket.* ◇ *No attempt was ever made to take back the land* (= to take control of it again). **5** to admit that sth you said was wrong or that you should not have said it: *I take back what I said about you being lazy.* SYN **retract sth**; **withdraw sth** (*both more formal*)
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n **5** v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌtake sb/sth ˈdown; **ˌtake sb/sth ˈdown sth** to go with sb/sth to a lower level, to a more southern part of a country, etc., or to a different part of a building, town, country, etc: *The nurse will take you down in the lift.* ◇ *The injured climbers were taken down the mountain on a sledge.* ◇ *You promised to take me down to London next time you went!* ◇ *Tony's just taking the car down to the garage — he'll be back soon.*
OPP **take sb/sth up, take sb/sth up sth**
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*) ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌtake sth ˈdown **1** to remove sth from a high level: *She took a book down from the top shelf.* **2** to remove sth that is hanging on a wall, etc: *Will you help me take the curtains down?* OBJ **curtains**, **pictures** OPP **put sth up** **3** to remove a structure by separating it into pieces: *They were taking their tent down as we left.* OBJ **a tent**, **scaffolding** OPP **put sth up** **4** to pull down a piece of clothing worn below the waist, without actually removing it: *She took her trousers down to show the doctor her leg wound.* OBJ **trousers**, **pants** **5** to write sth down: *She took down my name, address and phone number.* OBJ **details**, **(telephone) number** SYN **note sth down**
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌtake sb ˈin **1** to allow sb to stay in your home: *She takes in paying guests.* ◇ *When my parents died, my uncle took me in and brought me up.* OBJ **guests**, **lodgers** **2** if the police **take sb in**, they take them to a police station to question them about a crime: *Two young men have been taken in for questioning.* **3** (of an organization, an institution, etc.) to accept sb as a member, a student, a patient, etc: *The college took in more students than ever before last year.* **4** to make sb believe sth that is not true: *How could I have been taken in by his charm?* ◇ *She took me in completely with her story.* SYN **deceive sb** (*more formal*) NOTE In this meaning **take sb in** is usually used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▶ **ˈintake** *n* **1** [C] [U] the number of people who join a college or other organization at a particular time: *a new intake of students* **2** (*AmE*) a first test, meeting, etc. that you have when you go to a hospital or have an interview for a job or school, etc. → *see also* INTAKE at TAKE STH IN, TAKE STH INTO STH

ˌtake sb/sth ˈin **(to sth)**, **ˌtake sb/sth ˈinto sth** to go with sb or to take sth into a building or another place: *I'm going into town, so I'll take you in if you like.* ◇ *I took Jack into the kitchen for a quiet chat.* ◇ *I'll take you in to meet the manager now.* ◇ *If you take your camera in (to the shop), they'll have a look at it for you.* ◇ *My dad has been taken into hospital.*
NOTE In informal spoken language **take sth in (for sb)** can also be used in the patterns **take sb in sth** and, less often, **take sb sth in**: *I took him in a cup of tea.* ◇ *I took him a cup of tea in.*
→ *see also* TAKE STH IN, TAKE STH INTO STH
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌtake sth ˈin **1** to notice sth with your eyes: *He took in every detail of her appearance.* ◇ *She started to relax and take in her surroundings.* **2** to understand or absorb sth that you hear or read; to accept sth as true: *I read the whole page without taking anything in.* ◇ *He just couldn't take in what had happened.* **3** to include or cover sth: *The trip takes in six European capitals.* ◇ *The study takes in women from 15 different countries.* NOTE In this meaning **take sth in** is not used in the passive. **4** (*informal*) to go to see or visit sth such as a film/movie, especially when you are in a place for a different reason: *She always tries to take in a show when she's in New York.* OBJ **a show**, **the sights** NOTE In this meaning **take sth in** is not used in the passive. **5** to make a piece of clothing narrower or tighter: *This dress needs to be taken in at the waist.* OBJ **a dress**, **a skirt**, **etc.** OPP **let sth out** **6** if a boat **takes in** water, water comes in to it, usually through the bottom or sides OBJ only **water** **7** (*old-fashioned*) to do particular kinds of work for other people in your home, in order to earn money: *My grandmother used to take in washing.* OBJ **washing**, **ironing**, **sewing** **8** (*AmE*) to receive or earn an amount of money: *How much did the show take in?*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌtake sth ˈin; **ˌtake sth ˈinto sth** to absorb sth into the body by breathing or swallowing it: *Fish take in oxygen through their gills.* ◇ *She took in deep breaths of sea air.* ◇ *When we breathe we take oxygen into the body.*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + prep
▶ **ˈintake** *n* **1** [U] [C] the amount of food, drink, etc. that you take into your body: *a high intake of vitamin C* ◇ *to reduce your calorie intake* **2** [C, usually sing.] an act of taking sth in, especially a breath: *a sharp intake of breath*
→ *see also* INTAKE at TAKE SB IN

ˌtake sb ˈinto sth to accept sb into an institution, an organization, etc: *They had to* ***take the*** *children* ***into care*** (= to be looked after by the local authority). ◇ *Five men were* ***taken into custody*** (= to prison). ◇ *They took him into the firm as a partner last year.*
NOTE **Take sb into sth** is often used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌtake sb/sth ˈinto sth to bring sb/sth into a particular situation, activity, period of time, etc: *Improved graphics took computer games into a new era.* ◇ *Owen's goal took England into the lead* (= they were winning). ◇ *the government that took Britain into Europe*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌtake ˈoff 1 (of an aircraft, etc.) to leave the ground and begin to fly: *The flight was due to take off from Heathrow at 13.15.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The high jumper took off at a bad angle.* OPP **land 2** (*informal*) if an idea, a product, etc. **takes off**, it suddenly becomes successful or popular: *The new dictionary has really taken off.* ◇ *Her career is just starting to take off.* ◇ *Sales of mobile phones have really taken off in the last few years.*
◆ v + adv
▸ **ˈtake-off** *n* [U] [C] **1** the moment when an aircraft, etc. leaves the ground: *The plane is ready for take-off.* ◇ *take-off point/speed/run* ◇ (*figurative*) *The economy is poised for take-off.* **2** the moment when your feet leave the ground when you jump
→ *see also* TAKE-OFF at TAKE SB OFF

ˌtake ˈoff; **ˌtake yourself ˈoff** to leave somewhere suddenly or in a hurry: *Whenever things get tough, she takes off.* ◇ *He stayed for a year, then took off for a job in New York.* ◇ *I'm going to take myself off to bed.*
◆ v + adv • v + pron + adv

ˌtake sb ˈoff (*especially BrE*) **1** to copy sb in an amusing way: *She was taking off the woman next door.* **2** (in sports, entertainment, etc.) to remove a player from the field, an actor from the stage, etc. and not allow them to continue playing, or acting: *Their best striker was taken off after 30 minutes.*
◆ **1** v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv
2 v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)
▸ **ˈtake-off** *n* an act of copying sb in an amusing way
→ *see also* TAKE-OFF at TAKE OFF

ˌtake sb ˈoff; **ˌtake sb ˈoff sth** to rescue sb from a ship, a mountain, etc: *The injured men were taken off the boat by helicopter.*
NOTE This phrasal verb is often used in the passive.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*) • v + n/pron + prep

ˈtake sb/sth ˈoff (to sth) to make sb go with you to another place; to take sth to another place: *They took him off to the police station.* ◇ *She collected our passports and took them off somewhere.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˌtake sb ˈoff sth 1 to stop sb from continuing a particular medicine, treatment, etc: *His doctor took him off tranquillizers.* OPP **put sb on sth 2** to remove sb from a job, position, etc. and not allow them to continue: *One of the lawyers has been taken off the case.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌtake sth ˈoff 1 to remove an item of clothing from your/sb's body: *She took her coat off and hung it up.* ◇ *It's the custom to take off your shoes when you go into the house.* ◇ *Can you take off Tommy's jacket for me?* OBJ **clothes**, **shoes**, **coat**, **jacket**, **etc.** OPP **put sth on 2** to remove a bus, train, etc. from service; to stop a television or radio programme, performances of a show, etc: *The 17.13 bus to Bristol will be taken off next month.* ◇ *The play was taken off after a week.* OPP **put sth on 3** to cut off hair or a part of the body: *The hairdresser asked me how much she should take off.* ◇ *His leg had to be taken off above the knee.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
IDM **I take my ˈhat off to sb** (*informal, especially BrE*) used to say that you admire sb very much for sth they have done

ˌtake sth ˈoff; **ˌtake sth ˈoff sth 1** to remove sth from somewhere: *Sam took off the lid and looked inside.* ◇ *Sam took the lid off the box and looked inside.* ◇ *Can you take your feet off the sofa?* ◇ *I've got an assistant now, which will* ***take the pressure off*** *a bit.* ◇ *Always take your make-up off before you go to bed.* SYN **remove sth** (*more formal*) OPP **put sth on 2** to remove an amount of money, a number of marks or points, etc. from sth in order to reduce the total: *Can you take any money off this shirt* (= sell it at a cheaper price)? ◇ *Marks will be taken off for bad spelling.* **3** to have a period of time as a break from work or school: *I'm going to take next week off.* ◇ *She took a day off work.* **4** to remove a name, an item, etc. from a list: *The soup has been taken off (the menu).* ◇ *I took my name off the list.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep
IDM **take your ˈeyes off sb/sth** to stop looking at sb/sth: *He couldn't take his eyes off the cake.* ◇ *I only took my eyes off her for a second and she disappeared.* **take your ˈmind off sb/sth** to make you stop thinking about sb or about sth unpleasant: *We thought going out for the evening might take her mind off things.*

ˌtake sth ˈoff sb (*informal, especially BrE*) to use force or your authority to get sth from sb: *Another child took his teddy off him.* ◇ *The teacher took the cigarettes off me.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep
IDM **take ˈyears off sb** to make sb feel or look younger than they are: (*informal*) *That hairstyle takes ten years off you!*

ˌtake sth ˈoff sth (*informal*) to make sth shorter by the amount mentioned: *Smoking takes six years off the average life.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌtake yourself ˈoff = TAKE OFF, TAKE YOURSELF OFF

ˌtake ˈon sth to begin to have a particular quality, appearance, etc: *Lisa's voice took on a more serious tone.* ◇ *His words suddenly took on a different meaning.* ◇ *The car suddenly seemed to take on a life of its own* (= move by itself without anyone controlling it).
OBJ **meaning**, **shape**, **expression**, **appearance**
SYN **assume sth** (*more formal*)
◆ v + adv + n

ˌtake sb ˈon 1 to employ sb: *She was taken on as a graduate trainee.* ◇ *They take on extra staff for the summer.* SYN **employ sb 2** to accept sb as a patient, a customer, etc: *The practice* (= group of doctors or dentists) *has stopped taking on new patients.* OBJ **patients**, **clients 3** to play against sb in a game or contest; to fight against sb: *She took her father on at chess and beat him.* ◇ *The rebels took on the entire Roman army.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtake sb/sth ˈon (of a bus, plane, ship, etc.) to allow sb/sth to enter or come on board: *The bus stopped to take on more passengers.* ◇ *The plane was taking on fuel from a tanker.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌtake sth ˈon to decide to do sth; to agree to be responsible for sth: *She took on more responsibilities when she was promoted.* ◇ *If we're short of money, I'll just have to take on extra work.*
OBJ **responsibility**, **job**, **task**, **work**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˈtake sth on/upon yourself to decide to do sth without asking permission or talking to anyone else: *She took the responsibility for what had happened upon herself.* ◇ *Reg* ***took it upon himself*** *to tell the newspapers the truth.*
◆ v + n/pron + prep + pron

ˌtake sb ˈout (**for/to sth**) to invite sb to go with you to the theatre, a restaurant, etc: *He took Susie out for a meal.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌtake sb ˈout; **ˌtake sb ˈout of sth** to remove sb from a place; to take sb outside a building: *The prisoners were taken out and shot.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌtake sb/sth ˈout (*informal*) to kill sb or destroy sth; to injure or damage sb/sth so that they cannot work or be used: *Enemy missiles took out two of our planes.* ◇ *Police think he was taken out by a rival gang.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌtake sth ˈout 1 to remove a part of the body from inside sb: *She had to have her appendix taken out.* ◇ *I'm afraid we'll have to take the tooth out.* OBJ **your/sb's tonsils**, **your/sb's teeth**, **your/sb's appendix** SYN **remove sth** (*more formal*) **2** to obtain an official document or a service: *She took out a loan to buy a new car.* ◇ *Did you remember to take out travel insurance?* OBJ **insurance**, **loan**, **mortgage 3** (**against sb**) to start a legal process against sb by means of an official document: *They took out an injunction against the newspaper.* OBJ **summons**, **injunction 4** (**for sth**) to leave your house with sth in order to do a particular activity: *Shall we take the car out for a drive this afternoon?* **5** (*AmE*) = TAKE STH AWAY 5
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌtake sth ˈout; **ˌtake sth ˈout of sth 1** to remove sth from somewhere: *Jack felt in his pocket and took out his keys.* ◇ *How many books did you take out of* (= borrow from) *the library?* ◇ *You're not allowed to take so much money out of the country.* ◇ *He took out his wallet and pulled out a £50 note.* **2** to carry sth with you outside: *I'll take the cases out to the car.* **3** to remove money from your bank account: *I took some more money out (of my account) yesterday.* OBJ **money** SYN **draw sth out, draw sth out of sth**; **withdraw sth (from sth)** (*more formal*) **4** to remove an amount of money from a larger amount to pay for sth: *£20 will be taken out of your wages to pay for the damage.* ◇ *Contributions to your pension will be taken out of your salary.* **5** to stop your career, studies, etc. for a period of time in order to do sth else: *She took a year out of college to work abroad.* ◇ *He took a year out between school and college.* ◇ *We need to take time out to think things through.* OBJ **a year**, **time** NOTE **Take sth out** is not used in the passive in this meaning. **6** to make sth disappear from somewhere: *Soaking should help to take the stain out.* OBJ **stain**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + adv + prep
5 v + n + adv • v + n + adv + prep • v + adv + n (*rare*)
IDM **take a leaf out of sb's ˈbook** to follow sb's example: *I'm going to take a leaf out of your book and get to work early.* **take sth out of sb's ˈhands** to remove sth from sb's control and deal with it yourself: *The decision has been taken out of my hands.* **take the ˈmickey out of sb/sth** (*also* **take the ˈpiss out of sb** ⚠, *slang*) both (*BrE, informal*) to make sb look or feel silly by copying sth

that they do, or making them believe sth that is not true: *They used to take the mickey out of Ade because of the way he spoke.*
▸ **ˈtakeout** (*AmE*) = TAKEAWAY at TAKE STH AWAY

ˈtake it/sth ˈout of sb to make sb feel very tired: *That flu really took it out of me.* ◇ *Looking after three young children really takes a lot out of you.*
OBJ **a lot, so much** SYN **wear sb out**
◆ v + it + adv + prep • v + pron + adv + prep

ˌtake sb ˈout of themselves (*especially BrE*) to make sb forget their worries, thoughts, concerns, etc: *Seeing his old friends again took him out of himself.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌtake sth ˈout on sb/sth to behave in an unpleasant way towards sb/sth because you feel angry, disappointed, etc: *When he's had a bad day, he always takes it out on me.* ◇ *You shouldn't take your frustrations out on the kids.*
◆ v + it + adv + prep • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌtake ˈover 1 (from sth) (as sth) to become more important than sth else and replace it: *Computers are rapidly taking over from books as children's learning resources.* ◇ *Glasgow took over from Lisbon as cultural capital of Europe.* **2** to become stronger, more powerful or more noticeable: *It's hard not to let negative feelings take over.* ◇ *When she saw the accident, her training as a doctor immediately took over.*
◆ v + adv

ˌtake ˈover, ˌtake sth ˈover 1 (from sb) (as sth) to take responsibility for sth after sb else has finished; to do sth instead of sb else: *Who's going to take over from Bill as manager when he retires?* ◇ *If you're tired of driving, I'll take over for a while.* ◇ *I'll take over the driving if you want.* **2** to gain control of a political party, a country, etc: *Things will change when the Socialist Party takes over.* ◇ *In the film, aliens take over the world.*
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv
1 also v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌtake sb ˈover sth 1 to go with sb around a building and show them what is interesting or important: *A guide took us over the house.* SYN **take sb around/round sth 2** to look at or discuss sth with sb and explain important points: *Would you mind taking us over the procedure again?* → *see also* TAKE SB THROUGH STH
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌtake sb/sth ˈover 1 to affect sb so strongly that they are unable to think of anything else or do anything else: *His ambition had taken him over.* ◇ *My job is starting to take over my life.* **2** **[+ adv/prep]** to take sb/sth from one place to another: *I took Mia over to Cambridge to meet my parents.*
◆ **1** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
2 v + n/pron + adv

ˌtake sth ˈover 1 to gain control of a business, a company, etc. by buying it or by buying the most of its shares: *The company was taken over last September.* ◇ *They have already taken over several smaller airlines.* OBJ **company** SYN **buy sth out 2** if you **take over** a place, you fill it or use the whole of it so that other people cannot use it: *We're taking over the whole hotel for the conference.* **3** to start living in a place or using it: *The flat was a mess when we took it over.* ◇ *This building used to be a school until the hotel took it over.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈtakeover** *n* [C] [U] **1** an act of gaining control of a company by buying most of its shares: *The company have abandoned their takeover bid.* **2** an act of gaining control of a country, region or city, especially by force: *a military takeover*

ˌtake sb ˈround; ˌtake sb ˈround sth (*BrE*) = TAKE SB AROUND, TAKE SB AROUND STH

ˌtake sb/sth ˈround (*BrE*) (*also* **ˌtake sb/sth aˈround** *AmE, BrE*) to take sb/sth with you to another place, sb else's home, etc: *I'm taking the photos straight round to Phil's to show him.* ◇ *Joe took us round to see his mother.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtake sb/sth ˈthrough; ˌtake sb/sth ˈthrough sth to lead or carry a person or a thing through one place to another: *Let's take our tea through to the lounge.* ◇ *The journey takes you through some beautiful scenery.* ◇ (*figurative*) *We have plenty of work to take us through to the end of the year.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˈtake sb ˈthrough sth to discuss sth with sb or explain it to them so that they know what to do: *Your solicitor will take you through the contract.* ◇ *The director took us through the play scene by scene.*
→ *see also* TAKE SB OVER STH 2
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˈtake to sb/sth to start liking sb/sth: *I didn't take to Elena's husband at all.* ◇ *He hasn't taken to his new school.*
OPP **take against sb/sth**
◆ v + prep
IDM **not take ˈkindly to sb/sth** to not like sb/sth: *I don't take kindly to being told how to run my life.*

ˈtake to sth to go away to a particular place, especially to escape from sth difficult or dangerous: *She felt so ill that she took to her bed.* ◇ *The rebels took to the hills.* ◇ *Thousands of people **took to the streets*** (= went out into the streets) *in protest.*
◆ v + prep
IDM **take to your ˈheels** to start running: *They took to their heels and fled.*

ˈtake to sth 1 (*also* **ˈtake to doing sth**) to begin to do sth, especially as a habit: *For some reason he took to walking the New York streets at night.* ◇ *She gave up painting and took to sculpture.* **2** to develop an ability for sth: *He took to tennis as if he'd been playing all his life.* ◇ *Jay **took to teaching like a duck to water*** (= very naturally).
◆ v + prep

ˈtake sth to sth (*informal*) to use a tool or piece of equipment in order to do sth, especially sth violent: *He took a hammer to the radio* (= he destroyed it).
◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌtake ˈup to continue with sth, especially after sb/sth else has finished: *The band's new album takes up where the last one left off.*
◆ v + adv

ˌtake sb/sth ˈup; ˌtake sb/sth ˈup sth to go with sb or take sth to a higher place or to another part of a building, country, etc: *Someone will take you up to your room.* ◇ *Why don't we take our picnic up the hill?* ◇ *She took a hot drink up to bed with her.*
OPP **take sb/sth down, take sb/sth down sth**
NOTE In informal spoken language **take sb up sth** and, less often, **take sb sth up** are also used: *He took her up a cup of tea.* ◇ *He took her a cup of tea up.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*) • v + n/pron + prep

ˌtake sth ˈup 1 to remove sth that is fixed on a floor or on the ground: *They took the road up to repair the water pipes.* OBJ **road, pavement, carpet, floorboards** SYN **pull sth up 2** to fill a particular amount of space or time: *This table takes up too much room.* ◇ *Virtually all the memory is taken up with this one program.* ◇ *I mustn't take up any more of your time.* ◇ *Her whole day was taken up with making phone calls.* OBJ **room, space, time** SYN **occupy sth 3** to start to do a new activity, especially for pleasure: *She took up yoga a few years ago.* ◇ *I've decided to take up Japanese.* ◇ *Alex only took up the piano when he was 14.* **4** to start or begin sth, especially a job: *She took up a post at Kyoto University.* OBJ **post 5** to make an item of clothing, a curtain, etc. shorter: *This skirt will need taking up.* OPP **let sth down 6** to absorb sth such as a liquid, a gas, etc: *Plants take up carbon dioxide from the atmosphere.* SYN **absorb sth 7** to continue sth after sb else has stopped; to continue to discuss sth that was mentioned earlier: *I'd like to take up the point you raised earlier.* ◇ *Paula took up the story.* OBJ **story** SYN **pick sth up 8** to accept a suggestion, a policy, an invitation, etc: *The union have taken up her case.* ◇ *The idea was never taken up.* ◇ *I'd like to take up their invitation to visit them in Rio.* OBJ **case, idea, challenge, offer 9** to join in saying or singing sth: *The cry was taken up by the rest of the crowd.* OBJ **the cry, the refrain 10** to move into a particular position: *We took up our positions by the door.* ◇ (*formal*) *She has **taken up residence*** (= begun to live) *in London.* OBJ **position 11** (*old-fashioned, formal*) to take sth in your hand: *She took up a book and began to read.*
SYN **pick sth up**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv (*less frequent*) **1** v + n + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv
▸ **ˈuptake** *n* [U] [sing.] **1** the process by which sth is taken into a body or system; the rate at which this happens: *The experiment measured the uptake of oxygen by the muscles.* **2** an act of making or starting sth; the number of people who do this: *There has been an increase in the uptake of these courses.*

ˌtake sb ˈup on sth (*informal*) **1** to question sb or argue with sb about sth because you do not agree: *I thought he was wrong but I didn't take him up on it.* ◇ *I'd like to take you up on what you said about unemployment.* SYN **pick sb up on sth 2** to accept an offer, an invitation that sb has made: *I think I'll take you up on your offer to help.* ◇ *'You can borrow the car if you like.' 'I might take you up on that.'*
◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌtake ˈup with sb (*informal*) to become friendly with sb; to start a relationship with sb, especially sb who might have a bad influence on you: *I heard Tom has taken up with a supermodel!* ◇ *She's taken up with a bunch of losers* (= people who will never be successful).
◆ v + adv + prep

ˌtake sth ˈup with sb to speak or write to sb about sth they may be able to help you with: *You'll have to take your complaint up with the manager.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

be ˌtaken ˈup with sb/sth; be ˌtaken ˈup with doing sth to be very busy with sb or with doing sth: *She is very taken up with the children.* ◇ *I've been completely taken up with preparing for exams.*
◆ be + v + adv + prep

ˌtake sth uˈpon yourself = TAKE STH ON/UPON YOURSELF

be ˈtaken with sb/sth to find sb/sth attractive or interesting: *We were all very taken with Zoe.*
◆ be + v + prep

talk /tɔːk/

~ around
304 ~ at
~ away
~ back
~ down
~ down to
~ into
~ out
~ out of
~ over
~ round
~ through
305 ~ to
~ up
~ with

ˌtalk aˈround sth (*BrE also* **ˌtalk ˈround sth**) to talk in a general way about a subject or a problem without discussing the difficult or important parts of it: *We talked around the subject for some time before coming to the real issue.*
OBJ **subject**
◆ v + prep

ˈtalk at sb to speak to sb without listening to what they say in reply: *My father always listened to our point of view — he never just talked at us.*
NOTE **Talk at sb** can be used in the passive: *I was being talked at rather than talked to.*
◈ v + prep

ˌtalk aˈway (to sb) to talk without stopping for a period of time: *They were soon talking away to each other as if they'd known each other for years.* ◇ *Marie was* ***talking away nineteen to the dozen*** (talking a lot without stopping).
◈ v + adv

ˌtalk ˈback (to sb) to reply rudely to sb in authority: *She was sent out for talking back to the teacher.*
SYN **answer back, answer sb back** (*especially BrE*)
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˈback talk** *n* [U] (*AmE, informal*) a rude reply or comment: *I said no, and don't give me any more back talk.*

ˌtalk sb ˈdown 1 to talk to sb who is threatening to kill themselves and persuade them not to jump from a tall building, a bridge, etc: *The police were trying to talk down a youth threatening to jump from the roof of the car park.* **2** to prevent sb from speaking by talking loudly or without stopping: *I tried to argue but they talked me down.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtalk sb/sth ˈdown 1 to help a pilot bring a plane to the ground by giving detailed instructions from the ground: *The pilots were talked down through the fog by the Ground Controllers.* ◇ *to talk a plane down* **2** to persuade sb to lower their prices: *He's asked for $1 000. Can we talk him down any further?* **3** to talk about sth in a way that makes it seem less important or successful than it really is: *The opposition was attacked for talking the country down.* ◇ *He tends to talk his achievements down.*
OPP **talk sb/sth up**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtalk ˈdown to sb to speak to sb as if they are younger or less intelligent than you or than they really are: *He makes the mistake of talking down to his students.*
SYN **patronize sb**
NOTE **Talk down to sb** can be used in the passive: *I hate being talked down to.*
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌtalk sb/yourself ˈinto/ˈout of sth; ˌtalk sb/yourself ˈinto/ˈout of doing sth to persuade sb/yourself to do/not to do sth: *Why did you let James talk you into this crazy scheme?* ◇ *I talked myself into believing I was happy.* ◇ *I'm leaving now and don't try to talk me out of it.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep • v + n/pron + adv + prep
IDM **talk your way out of sth/of doing sth** to make excuses and give reasons for not doing sth; to manage to get yourself out of a difficult situation: *I managed to talk my way out of having to give a speech.* ◇ *His wife's found out about everything! I'd like to see him talk his way out of this one!*

ˌtalk sth ˈout to discuss sth thoroughly until you find a solution, an agreement, etc. or make a decision: *to talk out your thoughts/feelings/problems with sb* ◇ *It might help to talk things out.*
OBJ **things, problem**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtalk yourself ˈout to talk until you have nothing left to say: *They spent all the evening discussing the problem until they talked themselves out.*
◈ v + pron + adv

ˌtalk sb/yourself ˈout of sth; ˌtalk sb/yourself ˈout of doing sth = TALK SB/YOURSELF INTO/OUT OF STH, TALK SB/YOURSELF INTO/OUT OF DOING STH

ˌtalk sth ˈover (with sb) to discuss sth thoroughly with sb in order to find a solution, make a decision, etc: *I need to talk it over with my parents.* ◇ *You'll find it helpful to talk things over with a friend.* ◇ *You and Len both need to talk over what happened.*
OBJ **things, feelings, problems**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtalk ˈround sth (*BrE*) = TALK AROUND STH

ˌtalk sb ˈround (to sth) (*BrE*) to persuade sb to accept sth or to agree to sth: *My parents didn't want me to go to study in Britain, but I managed to talk them round (to the idea).*
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌtalk sb ˈthrough sth to explain sth to sb in detail so that they understand it: *The technical support staff will talk you through any difficulties you have with the software.* ◇ *I can talk you through the application form.*
SYN **walk sb through sth** (*AmE*)
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌtalk sth ˈthrough to discuss sth thoroughly so that you can understand it, come to an agreement, or make a decision about it: *Throughout their marriage they have always talked things through.* ◇ *It's helpful to talk the problem through with a counsellor.* ◇ *We talked through what had happened.*
OBJ **things, problems**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈtalk to sb 1 (*also* **ˈtalk with sb** *especially AmE*) to have a conversation with sb **2** to speak to sb seriously, especially about sth wrong that they have done, or sth that they have not done: *I'd like to talk to you in my office now.*
◈ v + prep
▸ **ˈtalking-to** *n* [sing.] (*informal*) a serious talk with sb who has done sth wrong: *to give sb a good talking-to*

ˌtalk sb/sth ˈup to praise sb/sth in order to make other people interested in them/it; to describe sb/sth in a way that makes them sound better or more successful than they really are: *They talked up the tourist attractions to encourage more visitors.* ◇ *He was being talked up as a future presidential candidate.* ◇ *It's too early to tell if the new President will talk the dollar up or down.*
OPP **talk sb/sth down**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈtalk with sb (*especially AmE*) = TALK TO SB 1

tamper /ˈtæmpə(r)/

ˈtamper with sth to do something to sth to change it without permission: *Two policemen were accused of tampering with the evidence.*
OBJ **evidence, controls, brakes** SYN **interfere with sth**
NOTE **Tamper with sth** can be used in the passive: *The lock has been tampered with.*
◈ v + prep

tangle /ˈtæŋgl/

ˌtangle sth ˈup; be/get ˌtangled ˈup (in/with sth) to twist sth into an untidy mass; to become twisted in this way: *My long skirt got tangled up in the wheel of my bike.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Kurt didn't want to get tangled up with a girl while he was trying to study.*
NOTE **Tangle sth up** is usually used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • be/get + v + adv

ˈtangle with sb (*informal*) to become involved in an argument or a fight with sb: *You've chosen the wrong man to tangle with.*
◈ v + prep

tank /tæŋk/

ˌtank ˈup; ˌtank sth ˈup (*AmE, informal*) to fill a vehicle with fuel: *We'd better tank up before we get on the thruway.*
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtank ˈup (on sth) (*slang*) to drink a lot of alcohol: *The lads had spent all evening tanking up on scotch.*
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˌtanked ˈup** *adj* very drunk: *She got totally tanked up and couldn't drive home.*

tap /tæp/ (-pp-)

ˈtap sb for sth 1 (*BrE, informal*) to persuade sb to give you sth, especially money: *Can't you tap your father for a loan?* ◇ *to tap sb for information* **2** (*AmE, informal*) to choose sb for a particular role or job: *A British actress has been tapped for a part in the movie.* NOTE **Tap sb for sth** is usually used in the passive in this meaning.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌtap sth ˈin/ˈout to put information, numbers, letters, etc. into a machine by pressing buttons: *Tap in your password.* ◇ *I picked up the phone and tapped out Joe's number.*
= TAP STH OUT
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌtap ˈinto sth 1 to use a computer to obtain information from another computer: *He had managed to tap into the company's database.* **2** to use sth from a supply of energy, knowledge, etc. for your own advantage: *Schools should tap into the knowledge and experience of people in the local community.* ◇ *His talk about bullying tapped into parents' anxieties.*
◈ v + prep

ˌtap sth ˈout 1 to hit a surface lightly, making a rhythm: *He tapped out the rhythm with his foot.* **2** = TAP STH IN/OUT
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

tape /teɪp/

ˌtape sth ˈup 1 to fasten tape around sth firmly: *Put it in a box and tape it up securely.* **2** (*AmE*) to tie a long strip of fabric (a **bandage**) firmly around an injury or a wound: *That's a nasty cut — come on, we'll get it all taped up.*
NOTE **Tape sth** can also be used: *Put it in a box and tape it securely.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

taper /ˈteɪpə(r)/

ˌtaper ˈoff to gradually become smaller in size, volume, amount, etc: *Our profits have begun to taper off.*
◈ v + adv

tart /tɑːt; *AmE* tɑːrt/

ˌtart sth ˈup (*BrE, informal*) to decorate or improve the appearance of sth, often in a way that other people do not think is attractive: *They've tarted up the restaurant but the food hasn't improved.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌtart yourself ˈup (*BrE, informal, disapproving*) (especially of a woman) to try and make yourself more attractive by putting on special clothes and jewellery, and putting substances on your face

(**make-up**): *She spends ages tarting herself up for a night out.*
SYN **doll yourself up (in sth)**
◈ v + pron + adv

task /tɑːsk; *AmE* tæsk/

ˈtask sb with sth to give sb a task to do: *forces tasked with keeping the peace*
NOTE **Task sb with sth** is usually used in the passive. • You can also use the pattern **task sb to do sth**: *soldiers tasked to provide medical support*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

tax /tæks/

ˈtax sb with sth (*formal*) to accuse sb of doing sth wrong: *Critics taxed the government with not acting quickly enough.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

team /tiːm/

ˌteam ˈup (with sb) to work together with another person or group in order to do sth: *The two companies have teamed up to produce new software.* ◇ *We've teamed up with XL Records to give away 25 pairs of tickets for the live concert.* ◇ *How did the two of you come to team up?*
◈ v + adv

tear /teə(r); *AmE* ter/ (**tore** /tɔː(r)/ **torn** /tɔːn; *AmE* tɔːrn/)

ˌtear aˈbout; **ˌtear aˈbout sth** (*BrE*) = TEAR AROUND, TEAR AROUND STH

ˌtear sb/yourself aˈpart to make sb/yourself suffer very much or feel very unhappy: *Being separated from the children was tearing her apart.* ◇ *Don't tear yourself apart thinking about the past.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌtear sb/sth aˈpart 1 (*also* **ˌtear itself, themselves, etc. aˈpart**) to separate people in a family, an organization, a country, etc. and make them argue with or fight against each other: *The civil war is tearing the country apart.* ◇ *The family was torn apart by conflicting loyalties.* ◇ *The region was tearing itself apart.* ◇ *Jealousy tore them apart.* **2** to destroy or defeat sb/sth; to criticize sb/sth severely: *We tore the other team apart in the second half.* ◇ *You can't write that – you'll be torn apart.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtear sth aˈpart 1 to destroy sth by pulling it violently so that it breaks into pieces: *The dogs tore the fox apart.* OBJ **prey** SYN **rip sth apart 2** to destroy a building, etc: *Hundreds of homes were torn apart by the hurricane.* ◇ *The police tore the room apart looking for drugs.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˌtear itself, themselves, etc. aˈpart = TEAR SB/STH APART 1

ˌtear aˈround; **ˌtear aˈround sth** (*BrE also* **ˌtear aˈbout/ˈround**, **ˌtear aˈbout/ˈround sth**) to move very quickly from place to place, being very busy: *The children were tearing around shouting.* ◇ *No wonder you're tired, tearing about like that all the time.*
SYN **run around**, **run around sth**; **rush around**, **rush around sth**
◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˈtear at sth (with sth) to attack sth violently, especially by pulling pieces off it: *The brambles tore at her legs.* ◇ *He tore at the meat with his bare hands.*
◈ v + prep

ˌtear sb/yourself/sth aˈway (from sb/sth) to make sb/yourself stop doing sth they/you enjoy in order to do sth else: *I can't tear myself away from this book.* ◇ *Come and visit us, if you can tear Bill away from his computer!* ◇ *He couldn't **tear his eyes away from*** (= stop looking at) *Mina.*
SYN **drag sb/sth/yourself away (from sb/sth)**
◈ v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˈtearaway** *n* (*informal*) a young person who behaves in a wild way or who is not responsible or reliable: *Her son's a bit of a tearaway.* ◇ *The 11-year-old tearaway had burgled several houses.*

ˌtear sth aˈway to pull sth violently from the thing it is attached to: *The floods had torn away the base of the bridge.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

be ˈtorn between A and B to have to make a very difficult choice between two things, people, etc: *I was torn between my parents and my friend.* ◇ *Jenni was torn between staying at school or going to music college.*
◈ be + v + prep

ˌtear sth ˈdown to pull or knock down a building, a wall, etc: *They're tearing down some old houses to build a new office block.*
OBJ **building**, **house**, **trees** SYN **pull sth down**; **demolish sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌtear ˈinto sb/sth to attack sb/sth physically or with words: *He tore into Jed with his fists.* ◇ *She tore into the students if they were late.* ◇ (*figurative*) *They tore into their food* (= started eating) *as if they were starving.*
◈ v + prep

ˌtear sth ˈoff; **ˌtear sth ˈoff sb/sth** to remove sth quickly by pulling violently: *Alice tore off her ring and threw it on the ground.* ◇ *The door was nearly torn off its hinges.* ◇ *If you need a piece of paper I'll tear some off my pad.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

IDM **tear sb ˈoff a strip**; **tear a ˈstrip off sb** (*BrE, informal*) to speak angrily to sb you think has done sth wrong: *The boss tore him off a strip.*

ˌtear sth ˈout; **ˌtear sth ˈout of sth** to separate sth from sth it is attached to, especially with your hands: *Several pages had been torn out of the book.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n •
v + n/pron + adv + prep
IDM **tear your ˈhair out** (*informal*) to show that you are very angry or very worried about sth: *I was tearing my hair out trying to work out what to do.*

ˌtear ˈround; **ˌtear ˈround sth** (*BrE*) = TEAR AROUND, TEAR AROUND STH

ˌtear sth ˈup 1 to destroy a piece of paper, a letter, etc. by pulling it into pieces: *She tore up all the letters he had sent her.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The union accused the management of tearing up* (= ignoring) *the agreement.* OBJ **letter**, **agreement**, **treaty** SYN **rip sth up 2** to destroy or damage sth, especially by removing it violently from the ground: *Trees and bushes were torn up by the storm.* OBJ **trees** SYN **pull sth up**; **rip sth up**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

tease /tiːz/

ˌtease sth ˈout; **ˌtease sth ˈout of sth 1** to try to find some information or the meaning of sth when this is hidden or not clear: *teasing out meanings from texts* ◇ *to tease information/the truth out of somebody* OBJ **information**, **answers**, **truth 2** to remove sth such as knots from hair, wool, etc. by gently pulling or brushing it: *Lisa dried her hair carefully, teasing it out between her fingers.* **3** to separate sth carefully from sth else: *birds teasing out ripe seeds (from plants)* ◇ *He took a screwdriver and teased out the remaining screws.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n •
v + n/pron + adv + prep

tee /tiː/ (**teed**, **teed**)

ˌtee ˈoff to start a game of golf by hitting the ball for the first time: *The players eventually teed off two hours late.*
◈ v + adv

ˌtee sb ˈoff (*AmE, informal*) to make sb angry or annoyed
NOTE This phrasal verb is usually used as an adjective **teed off**.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˌteed ˈoff** *adj* (*AmE, informal*) annoyed or angry: *Her friend was teed off about what she said.*

ˌtee ˈup; **ˌtee sth ˈup** to prepare to hit a golf ball by placing it on a small piece of plastic or wood stuck in the ground (a **tee**): *The crowd fell silent as he teed up.*
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv

teem /tiːm/

ˌteem ˈdown to rain hard: *It was absolutely teeming down.*
SUBJ only **the rain**, **it** SYN **pour down**
NOTE You can also say: *It was **teeming with** rain.*
◈ v + adv

ˈteem with sb/sth (*usually approving*) (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) to have large numbers of people or things moving around: *cities teeming with life/people* ◇ *The lake was teeming with fish.*
◈ v + prep

tell /tel/ (**told**, **told** /təʊld; *AmE* toʊld/)

ˌtell aˈgainst sb (*formal, especially BrE*) to be a serious disadvantage to sb: *Her lack of experience told against her.*
SYN **count against sb** (*less formal*)
◈ v + prep

ˌtell sb/sth aˈpart to be able to distinguish sb/sth from other similar people or things: *I can never tell the twins apart.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˈtell sb/sth from sb/sth to distinguish sb/sth from another person or thing: *It needs skill to tell a real diamond from a fake.* ◇ *Can you tell Tom from his twin brother?*
NOTE **Tell sb/sth from sb/sth** is not used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˈtell of sth (*formal* or *literary*) to make sth known; to give an account of sth: *The report told of a series of design errors.* ◇ *The story tells of the love between a prince and a young girl.*
◈ v + prep

ˌtell sb ˈoff (for sth/for doing sth) (*informal*) to speak angrily to sb, especially a child, because they have done sth wrong: *I told the boys off for making so much noise.* ◇ *You'll get told off if you're caught doing that.*
SYN **tick sb off**; **reprimand sb**; **scold sb** (*both formal*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)
▸ **ˌtelling-ˈoff (for sth/for doing sth)** *n* [C, usually sing.] (*informal, especially BrE*) an act of speaking angrily to sb, especially a child, because they have done sth wrong: *You've already had one telling-off today!* ◇ *How many tellings-off have you had this week?*

ˈtell on sb 1 (*informal*) (*used mainly by children*) to tell a teacher or sb in authority that sb has done sth wrong: *Don't tell on me, will you?* **2** (*formal*) to have a bad effect on sb/sth: *The long wait was telling on his nerves.*
◈ v + prep

tend /tend/

ˈtend to sb/sth to care for sb/sth, especially when there is a problem: *I'll look after the child - you tend to the mother.* ◇ *The injured were already being tended to.*
SYN **attend to sb/sth; see to sb/sth**
NOTE **Tend to sb/sth** can be used in the passive • **Tend sb/sth** can also be used: *farmers tending their cattle*
◆ v + prep

ˈtend towards sth; ˈtend towards doing sth (*less frequent*) to take a particular direction or have a particular opinion; to have a lot of a particular quality: *We're tending towards the view that all students should study English.* ◇ *His views tend towards the extreme.*
SYN **incline to/towards sth**
◆ v + prep

tense /tens/

ˌtense ˈup; ˌtense sth ˈup if you **tense up** or **tense sth up**, you make your muscles stiff and tight because you are not relaxed: *If you feel that you're tensing up, take a few moments to relax.* ◇ *Tense up your arm and leg muscles and then let them go.*
NOTE **Tense** and **tense sth** are used with the same meaning.
◆ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv

test /test/

ˈtest for sth; ˈtest sb/sth for sth to examine sb/sth to see if a particular substance, etc. is present: *They are testing for oil in the area.* ◇ *She was tested for hepatitis.* ◇ *The software has been tested for viruses.*
◆ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌtest sb ˈout to try to find out what qualities sb has, how they will react in a particular situation, etc: *My new boss gave me the most difficult clients to deal with. I felt he was really testing me out to see if I would cope.*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌtest sth ˈout (on sb/sth) to try an idea, a machine, a product, etc. to see if it works well or if people like it: *Let me test this idea out on you.* ◇ *When you buy a bed, test it out in the shop.*
OBJ **idea, theory, equipment** SYN **try sb/sth out (on sb/sth)**
NOTE **Test sth** can also be used with the same meaning.
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

testify /ˈtestɪfaɪ/ (**testifies, testifying, testified, testified**)

ˈtestify to sth to show or be evidence that sth is true: *Vijay's school reports testified to his ability.*
◆ v + prep

thaw /θɔː/

ˌthaw ˈout if ice or snow **thaws out**, it becomes water again: *Britain is thawing out after the big freeze* (there has been a lot of snow and ice).
◆ v + adv

ˌthaw ˈout; ˌthaw sth ˈout 1 to become, or to let frozen food become, soft and ready to cook: *He took the meat out of the freezer and left it to thaw out.* ◇ *to thaw out meat/fish* SYN **defrost, defrost sth 2** (*informal*) to become, or to let sth become, warmer after being very cold: *Come in and thaw out by the fire!* ◇ *My feet are frozen! I need to thaw them out.* ◇ (*figurative*) *She was very shy at first, but she soon thawed out.*
NOTE **Thaw** and **thaw sth** can also be used with these meanings.
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

thin /θɪn/ (**-nn-**)

ˌthin sth ˈdown (with sth) to make a liquid less thick or strong, for example by adding water to it: *The paint needs to be thinned down with water before you use it.*
NOTE **Thin sth** is used more frequently.
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌthin ˈout to become fewer in number, or less thick: *The crowd had thinned out and only a few people were left.* ◇ *Once they were clear of the city, the traffic started to thin out.* ◇ *The trees began to thin out as we climbed higher.*
SUBJ **crowd, trees, traffic**
◆ v + adv

ˌthin sth ˈout to reduce the number of sth so that there is more space between them: *Thin out the seedlings to about 10cm apart.*
OBJ **plants**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

think /θɪŋk/ (**thought, thought** /θɔːt/)

ˈthink about sb/sth 1 to have ideas or images in your mind; to remember sb/sth: *I can't stop thinking about her.* ◇ *All he ever thinks about is money.* ◇ *It doesn't bear thinking about.* ◇ *When I was alone, I just sat and thought about things.* **2** (*also* **ˈthink of sb/sth**) to consider sb/sth: *It's time you stopped being so selfish and started thinking about other people!* SYN **take sb/sth into account**
◆ v + prep
IDM **if/when you ˈthink about it** used to draw attention to a fact that is not obvious or has not been mentioned before: *It must have been terrible when you think about it.*

ˈthink about sth; ˈthink about doing sth to use your mind to consider sth, such as your future plans, to try to solve problems, etc: *I'll think about it and let you know tomorrow.* ◇ *She's thinking about changing her job.* ◇ *Have you thought about what you'll do if you don't get a place at college?* ◇ *'What did I do wrong?' 'Just think about it!'*

◆ v + prep
IDM **think ˈtwice about sth/about doing sth** to think carefully before you decide to do sth: *I'd think twice about calling him if I were you.*

ˌthink aˈhead (to sth) to think carefully about what might happen in the future; to plan for the future: *Even when their children are very young, parents are thinking ahead to exams and jobs.* ◇ *Pilots are trained to think ahead.*
◆ v + adv

ˌthink ˈback (to sth) to remember or think about sth that happened in the past: *She thought back to the day they first met.* ◇ *Thinking back, I'm sure I noticed there was something strange.*
◆ v + adv

ˌthink for yourˈself to make your own decisions, form your own opinions, etc. without depending on other people: *You need to learn to think for yourself.* ◇ *Our parents always encouraged us to think for ourselves.*
◆ v + prep+ pron

ˈthink of sb/sth 1 to have an image or idea of a particular person or thing in your mind: *When I said that, I wasn't thinking of anyone in particular.* ◇ *He thought of how happy his parents would be to see him.* **2** = THINK ABOUT SB/STH 2 *Just think of the consequences if you give up your job.* **3** to create an idea in your imagination: *Who first thought of the idea?* ◇ *Can you think of anyone who could help?* ◇ *Hasn't this idea ever been thought of before?* **4** (*used especially with* **can**) to remember sb/sth: *I can't think of his name at the moment.* ◇ *I was just thinking of the wonderful trip we had.* **5 (as sb/sth)** to consider sb/sth from a particular point of view: *I still think of Oxford as my home.* ◇ *Franco thought of his landlady as his 'English mother'.* ◇ *I don't really think of myself as a businesswoman.* ◇ *Jenni hates being thought of as a little girl.*
NOTE **Think of sb/sth** can be used in the passive, especially in meanings 3 and 5
◆ v + prep
IDM **come to ˈthink of it** used when you suddenly remember sth or realize that it might be important: *Come to think of it, he did mention seeing you yesterday.* **not think much of sb/sth** to not have a very high opinion of sb/sth: *I didn't think much of her new boyfriend.* **think ˈbetter of it/of doing sth** to decide not to do sth you had planned to do after you have thought about it: *I was about to tell him the truth, but I thought better of it.* **think the ˈworld of sb** to have a very high opinion of sb; to love sb very much: *He thinks the world of his daughter.*

ˈthink of doing sth 1 to consider that you might do sth: *They're thinking of moving to America.* ◇ *I did think of resigning, but I decided against it.* SYN **contemplate sth** (*more formal*) **2** to imagine an actual or a possible situation: *I'd never have thought of doing that!* ◇ *I couldn't think of letting you take the blame* (= I wouldn't allow you to do this). NOTE In this meaning **think of doing sth** is often used in negative sentences.
IDM **think ˈnothing of doing sth** to consider that doing sth is normal and not very difficult: *She thinks nothing of walking all the way home in the rain.*

ˌthink sth ˈout to consider all the details of sth carefully, especially in order to find an answer or a solution to a problem: *She needed to be alone to **think things out**.* ◇ *I thought out what I was going to say before I phoned.* ◇ *a well-thought-out training programme*
◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌthink sth ˈover to consider sth carefully especially before making a decision: *Please think over what I've said.* ◇ *I'd like more time to **think things over**.*
SYN **mull sth over**
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌthink sth ˈthrough to consider a problem fully: *Careers advisers can help you think through your choices.* ◇ *Take my advice and **think things through** before you do anything.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌthink sth ˈup (*informal*) to create an idea, a plan, a story, etc. in your mind: *We need to think up a new name for the group.* ◇ *Can't you think up a better excuse than that?*
SYN **devise sth** (*more formal*), **invent sth** (*more formal*)
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

thirst /θɜːst; *AmE* θɜːrst/

ˈthirst for sth (*literary*) to be eager for sth; to want sth very much: *Our opponents were thirsting for revenge.*
◆ v + prep

thrash /θræʃ/

ˌthrash aˈround (*also* **ˌthrash aˈbout** *especially BrE*) to move about in a violent, uncontrolled way: *He thrashed around in the water, gasping for breath.*
◆ v + adv

ˌthrash sth ˈout to discuss sth thoroughly and in an open and honest way to try to find a solution: *He called a meeting to thrash out the problem.* ◇ *Eventually they thrashed out an agreement.*
OBJ **problem, details, agreement, deal** SYN **hash sth out** (*AmE, informal*)
◆ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

thrill /θrɪl/

'thrill to sth (*formal*) to feel very excited at sth: *Audiences thrilled to his performance in Macbeth.*
G v + prep

thrive /θraɪv/ (**thrived**, **thrived**, *AmE also* **throve** /θrəʊv; *AmE* θroʊv/ **thriven** /'θrɪvn/)

'thrive on sth to enjoy or be successful in a situation or condition that other people would not like: *He thrives on hard work.* ◇ *Sue and Jack seem to thrive on arguments.*
G v + prep

throttle /'θrɒtl; *AmE* 'θrɑːtl/

ˌthrottle 'back (*also* **ˌthrottle 'down** *less frequent*) to control the supply of fuel or power to an engine in order to reduce the speed of a vehicle: *The pilot got very low before he throttled back.*
G v + adv

ˌthrottle 'up (*rare*) to control the supply of fuel or power to an engine in order to increase the speed of a vehicle
G v + adv

throw /θrəʊ; *AmE* θroʊ/ (**threw** /θruː/, **thrown** /θrəʊn; *AmE* θroʊn/)

~ about
~ around
~ aside
~ at
311 ~ away
~ back
~ back at
~ back on
~ down
~ in
312 ~ into
~ off
313 ~ on
~ onto
~ out, out of
~ over
314 ~ round
~ together
~ up
~ upon

ˌthrow sb/yourself a'bout; **ˌthrow sb/yourself a'bout sth** (*especially BrE*) = THROW SB/YOURSELF AROUND, THROW SB/YOURSELF AROUND STH

ˌthrow sth a'bout (*especially BrE*) = THROW STH AROUND

ˌthrow sth a'bout; **ˌthrow sth a'bout sth** (*especially BrE*) = THROW STH AROUND, THROW STH AROUND STH

ˌthrow sth a'bout sb/sth (*BrE*) = THROW STH AROUND SB/STH

ˌthrow sb/yourself a'round; **ˌthrow sb/yourself a'round sth** (*BrE also* **ˌthrow sb/yourself a'bout**, **ˌthrow sb/yourself a'bout sth** *especially BrE*) to make sb/yourself move about suddenly and violently, often causing injury: *The passengers were thrown around in the crash.* ◇ *The child was screaming and throwing himself around.* ◇ *The band threw themselves around the stage like madmen.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌthrow sth a'round (*BrE also* **ˌthrow sth a'bout**) **1** to say sth, discuss sth, etc. in a general way: *You can't just throw accusations around like that!* ◇ *Let's have an initial meeting to* ***throw some ideas about.*** OBJ **accusations, ideas** SYN **toss sth around** **2** to spend time throwing sth such as a ball from one person to another, in a not very serious way: *They were in the yard throwing a ball around.* OBJ **ball** **3** to move part of your body around violently: *She was speaking excitedly, throwing her arms around.* OBJ **arms, head**
G v + n/pron + adv
IDM **throw your 'money around** to spend a lot of money in a very careless way, often in order to impress people: *John hates people being well off and throwing their money about.* **throw your 'weight around** (*informal*) to use your authority too aggressively to achieve what you want: *She enjoys throwing her weight about and making people do what she wants.*

ˌthrow sth a'round; **ˌthrow sth a'round sth** (*also* **ˌthrow sth a'bout/'round**, **ˌthrow sth a'bout/'round sth** *especially BrE*) to send sth from your hand in different directions, often because you are angry: *How do you stop babies throwing their food around?* ◇ *Jeff got so angry that he started throwing furniture about.* ◇ *People were throwing glasses round the room.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌthrow sth a'round sb/sth (*BrE also* **ˌthrow sth a'bout/'round sb/sth**) **1** if you **throw** your arms **around** sb, you hold them tightly to show that you love them or wish to thank them for sth: *Diana rushed up to her father, threw her arms around him/his neck and kissed him.* **2** to put sth quickly around sb/sth: *We threw blankets around ourselves to keep warm.* ◇ *a silk scarf thrown casually around the shoulders* **3** to put a barrier around a place so that people cannot enter or leave: *A security cordon had been thrown around the area.*
G v + n/pron + prep

ˌthrow sth a'side **1** to put sth quickly to one side, often because you are angry or in a hurry: *She read the letter and immediately threw it aside.* SYN **cast sth aside** (*formal*), **toss sth aside** (*formal*) **2** to reject sth such as an attitude, an idea, a way of life, etc: *All loyalties were thrown aside once the competition started.* ◇ *to throw aside sentimentality/nervousness* ◇ *to throw aside a system* SYN **cast sth aside** (*formal*)
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

'throw sth at sb **1** to direct sth such as a remark, a question, etc. at sb, often in an aggressive way: *She threw a look of contempt at me.* ◇ *to throw insults/accusations at somebody* ◇ *He has an answer for any question you can throw at him.* OBJ **question, look, accusation** NOTE You can also say: *She threw me a look of contempt.* **2** to do sth or give sb sth that tests their abilities and skills: *You never know what life's going to throw at you.* ◇ *We can cope with anything our opponents throw at us.* OBJ **everything, anything, whatever**
G v + n/pron + prep

'throw sth at sb/sth to throw an object in the direction of sb/sth, trying to make it hit them: *He threw stones at the window to try to catch their attention.*
G v + n/pron + prep
IDM **throw the 'book at sb** (*informal*) to punish sb who has committed an offence very severely **throw 'money at sth** (*disapproving*) to try to solve a difficult situation or problem by spending lots of money on it rather than considering other ways of dealing with it: *You can't solve the problem by throwing money at it.*

'throw yourself at sb (*informal, disapproving*) (usually of a woman) to be too eager to try to attract sb, because you want to have a romantic relationship with them: *He was flattered that such an attractive woman as Nell was throwing herself at him.*
SYN **fling yourself at sb**
G v + pron + prep

'throw yourself at sb/sth to rush or jump violently towards or onto sb/sth: *The dogs threw themselves at the gate.*
G v + pron + prep

ˌthrow sth a'way **1** (*also* **ˌthrow sth 'out**) to get rid of sth that has no use or that you no longer need: *She never throws anything away.* ◇ *The average household throws away 3 kilos of waste every week.* SYN **discard sth** (*more formal*) **2** to fail to make good use of sth; to waste sth: *She's throwing away a great opportunity.* ◇ *The team threw away a 2-0 lead* (- they were winning, but then lost the game). OBJ **chance, lead, money, opportunity**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **'throwaway** *adj* [only before noun] **1** a **throwaway** product is intended to be used only once, or for a short time and then to be got rid of: *a throwaway lighter/razor* ◇ *our throwaway culture/society* (we expect to use things once and then throw them away) **2** a **throwaway** remark, line or comment is sth you say casually, without careful thought, often in order to be funny: *Some people overreacted to what was only a throwaway remark.*

ˌthrow yourself a'way (**on sb**) to have a relationship with sb, or work for sb, who is not good enough for you or does not deserve you: *Don't throw yourself away on somebody like him.*
G v + pron + adv

ˌthrow sth 'back **1** to return sth with a sharp movement of your arm or wrist: *Can you throw the ball back to me?* **2** to put sth quickly and carelessly in the place where it was before: *Just throw those papers back in the drawer when you've finished with them.* **3** if you **throw back** your head or your shoulders, you move them backwards suddenly: *She threw back her head and laughed.* OBJ **head, shoulders** **4** to pull or fold back a covering, especially on a bed: *He threw back the bedclothes and jumped out of bed.*
OBJ **covers, bedclothes**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **'throwback** (**to sth**) *n* [C, usually sing.] sb/sth that is very similar to sb/sth that existed a long time ago: *This music is a real throwback to the seventies.*

ˌthrow sth 'back at sb **1** to remind sb of sth they have said or done in the past, especially to upset or annoy them: *His unwise remark was frequently thrown back at him by his colleagues.* OBJ **words, remark** **2** to reply angrily to sb: *'It was your fault!' he threw back at her.*
G **1** v + n/pron + adv + prep
2 v + speech + adv + prep

be ˌthrown 'back on sth to be forced to rely on sth which you have not needed for a while because nothing else is available: *The television broke down so we were thrown back on our own resources* (- we had to entertain ourselves).
G be + v + adv + prep

ˌthrow sb/sth 'down; **ˌthrow sb/sth 'down sth** to send sb/sth from your hand suddenly and violently downwards: *Ellie threw the book down on the table.* ◇ *Jed threw her down on the sofa.* ◇ *Throw the rest of the medicine down the sink.* ◇ *Her husband threw her down the stairs.*
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌthrow sth 'down **1** to drop or put your weapons down to show that you do not wish to fight any longer: *The rebels have thrown down their arms.* OBJ **weapons, arms** **2** to eat or swallow food or drink very quickly: *He threw his dinner down in two minutes and raced out of the house.* **3** to suggest that sb should do sth you think they will not be willing or able to do: *She* ***threw down a direct challenge*** *for him to tell them the truth.* OBJ only **challenge**
G **1,2** v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)
3 v + adv + n • v + n + adv (*rare*)
IDM **throw down the 'gauntlet** to invite sb to fight or compete with you

ˌthrow yourself 'down to move suddenly and violently so that you fall down to the ground: *She threw herself down on the grass.*
→ *see also* THROW SB/STH DOWN
G v + pron + adv

ˌthrow sb 'in/into sth (*usually used in the passive*) to force or order sb to enter a prison and stay there: *I'll have you* ***thrown in jail*** *for that!* ◇ *He was thrown into a police cell overnight.*
G v + n/pron + prep

ˌthrow sb/sth/yourself ˈin; **ˌthrow sb/sth/yourself ˈin/ˈinto sth** to push or move sb/sth/yourself roughly or violently into sth, such as water or a building: *Sam opened the door of the shed and threw his bike in.* ◇ *Did Eva throw herself in the river or was she pushed?*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*) ◆ v + n/pron + prep
IDM **throw sb in at the ˈdeep end** (*informal*) (*usually used in the passive*) to introduce sb to the most difficult part of an activity or job, especially an activity they have not been prepared for
▸ **ˈthrow-in** *n* (in football and rugby) the act of throwing the ball back onto the playing field after it has gone outside the area

ˌthrow sth ˈin 1 to include sth with what you are selling or offering, without increasing the price: *The job pays £25 000, with a company car thrown in.* **2** to add a remark, comment, etc. casually or unexpectedly: *Jack threw in the odd encouraging comment.* ◇ *'I wouldn't mind coming,' she threw in casually.*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
2 also v + adv + speech
IDM **throw in your ˈlot with sb/sth** (*informal*) to decide to join sb/sth and share all their successes and problems **throw in the ˈtowel**; **throw in your ˈhand** (*informal*) to admit that you are defeated and stop trying to do sth: *Decorating my apartment isn't easy, but I'm not ready to throw in the towel yet.*

ˈthrow sb into sth = THROW SB IN/INTO STH

ˌthrow sb/sth ˈinto sth to put sb/sth suddenly in a particular state, especially a bad one: *His announcement* ***threw*** *everyone* ***into confusion.*** ◇ *Her arrival* ***threw him into a panic.*** ◇ *Traffic was* ***thrown into chaos*** *by the accident.*
G v + n/pron + prep
IDM **throw sth into ˈdoubt/ˈquestion** to make people wonder whether sth is true, correct, appropriate, etc. or whether it will be able to continue: *The future of the company has been thrown into question by recent events.* **throw sth into (sharp) relief 1** to make an object more noticeable than others around it: *The sunlight threw the objects in the room into sharp relief.* **2** to make a particular situation, problem, etc. more noticeable than before: *Their differences have been thrown into sharp relief by the present crisis.*

ˌthrow sb/sth/yourself ˈinto sth = THROW SB/STH/YOURSELF IN, THROW SB/STH/YOURSELF IN/INTO STH

ˌthrow sth ˈinto sth 1 to use a lot of energy or resources to try to make sth successful: *He's thrown all his energy into this project.* **2** = THROW SB/STH/YOURSELF IN, THROW SB/STH/YOURSELF IN/INTO STH
G v + n/pron + prep

ˌthrow yourself ˈinto sth 1 (*also* **ˌthrow yourself ˈinto doing sth**) to begin to do sth with energy and often enthusiasm: *Laura threw herself into her work to try and forget him.* ◇ *He threw himself into writing his report.* SYN **fling yourself into sth 2** = THROW SB/STH/YOURSELF IN, THROW SB/STH/YOURSELF IN/INTO STH
G v + pron + prep

ˌthrow sb ˈoff; **ˌthrow sb ˈoff sth** to order sb to leave a place: *Farmers are being thrown off their land.* ◇ *If he finds you on his property, he'll throw you off.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*) ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌthrow sb/sth ˈoff; **ˌthrow sb/sth ˈoff sth 1** to get rid of sb/sth that is making you suffer, annoying you, following you, etc.; to free yourself from sb/sth: *to throw off repression/domination* ◇ *to throw off anger/family worries/troublesome thoughts* ◇ *They waded through a stream to throw the dogs off* (= so that they could not folllow them). ◇ *I tried every way I could think of to throw him off.* ◇ *She wants to throw off her old image and start again.* ◇ *I can't seem to throw off this cold.* **2** to disturb sb/sth who is trying to do sth, making them fail or not behave as usual: *The director came in while I was speaking and that threw me off a bit.* SYN **put sb off, put sb off sth**
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep
IDM **throw sb off ˈbalance 1** to make sb unsteady and likely to fall: *I was thrown off balance by the sudden gust of wind.* **2** to make sb surprised and no longer calm: *The senator was thrown off balance by the unexpected question.* **throw sb off ˈcourse 1** if sb/sth is **thrown off course**, they are forced away from the direction they should be travelling in: *The plane was thrown off course in dense fog.* **2** to force sb to change the direction in which their ideas or actions are moving: *The government was thrown off course by labour and economic problems.* **throw sb off the ˈscent** to do sth to stop sb finding you or discovering a secret: *She changed taxis to throw her pursuers off the scent.* ◇ *Lisa told her parents she was going to a friend's house to throw them off the scent* (= she was really going somewhere else).

ˌthrow sth ˈoff to remove your clothes or sth covering your body quickly and carelessly: *She threw off her clothes and leapt into the river.*
SYN **fling sth off** OPP **throw sth on**
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌthrow sb/sth/yourself ˈoff; **ˌthrow sb/sth/yourself ˈoff sth** to send or push sb/sth violently from a high place; to jump from a high place: *Ed was threatening to throw himself off the roof.* ◇ *The sledge hit a bump and threw me off.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌthrow sth ˈon to put on a piece of clothing quickly and carelessly: *He threw on his clothes and ran downstairs.* ◇ *I'll just throw a coat on and then I'll be ready.*
SYN **fling sth on** OPP **throw sth off**
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌthrow sb/sth ˈon; **ˌthrow sb/sth ˈon/ˈonto sth**; **ˌthrow yourself ˈon/ˈonto sth** to send or push sb/sth violently onto sth: *Jamie angrily threw the book onto the table.* ◇ *The fire wasn't burning well, so we threw on more wood.*
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˈthrow sth on sb/sth (*also* **ˌthrow sth uˈpon sb/sth** *more formal*) **1** if sb/sth **throws** doubt or suspicion **on** sb/sth, people start to wonder if sth is true, is what it seems to be, will continue, etc: *New evidence threw doubt on Tom's innocence.* ◇ *This controversy throws doubt on her political future.* ◇ *The murder was carefully planned to throw suspicion on the woman's husband* (= to make him appear guilty). ◇ *They tried to throw suspicion on us.* OBJ **doubt, suspicion 2** (*formal*) to cover sb/sth in light or shadows: *The lamp threw strange shadows on his face.* OBJ **light, shadows**
G v + n + prep
IDM **throw ˈlight on sth** to make a problem, etc. easier to understand: *I thought you might be able to throw some light on the matter.* ◇ *Recent research has thrown new light on the cause of the disease.*

ˈthrow yourself on sb/sth (*also* **ˈthrow yourself onto sb/sth** *less frequent*) to run towards sb/sth and fall onto them: *She threw herself on him and burst into tears.*
→ *see also* THROW SB/STH ON, THROW SB/STH ON/ONTO STH, THROW YOURSELF ON/ONTO STH
G v + pron + prep
IDM **throw yourself on sb's ˈmercy** (*formal*) to put yourself in a position where you must rely on sb to be kind to you and not harm or punish you: *He threw himself on the mercy of his captors.*

throw sb/sth/yourself ˈonto sth = THROW SB/STH ON, THROW SB/STH ON/ONTO STH, THROW YOURSELF ON/ONTO STH

ˌthrow sb ˈout; **ˌthrow sb ˈout of sth** to force sb to leave a place, their home, a job, etc: *Tim's parents threw him out when he was 18.* ◇ *When the mine closed down, 50 people were thrown out of their jobs.* ◇ *When she failed her exams, she was thrown out of college.* ◇ *Many families have been* ***thrown out into the street*** (= made to leave their homes).
SYN **boot sb out, boot sb out of sth**; **kick sb out, kick sb out of sth** (*both informal*)
NOTE **Throw sb out** is often used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌthrow sb/sth ˈout to confuse sb/sth; to make sb make a mistake; to make sth wrong: *One of the figures was wrong and it threw me out completely.* ◇ *Some unexpected costs threw our calculations out by £4 000.*
OBJ **calculations**
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌthrow sth ˈout 1 = THROW STH AWAY 1 *It's time we threw that old chair out.* **2** to reject sth such as a proposal, an idea, etc: *The committee have thrown out the proposal for a new supermarket.* ◇ *The case was* ***thrown out of court*** (= in a court of law). OBJ **bill, case, proposals** NOTE **Throw sth out** is often used in the passive in this meaning. **3** to mention sth, usually in a casual way, for people to think about: *She threw out a few ideas for us to consider.* ◇ *We are* ***throwing out a challenge*** *to residents to help clean up our neighbourhood.* OBJ **idea, challenge 4** to produce sth such as heat, light, smoke, etc: *The fire throws out a lot of heat.* ◇ *The lamp threw out just enough light to read by.* OBJ **heat, light** SYN **emit sth 5** to move a hand or arm suddenly away from your body: *She threw her arm out to protect herself as she fell.*
OBJ **hand, arm**
G v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
IDM **throw the baby out with the ˈbathwater** (*informal*) to lose sth that you want at the same time as you are trying to get rid of sth that you do not want

ˌthrow sb/sth ˈout; **ˌthrow yourself ˈout**; **ˌthrow sb/sth ˈout of sth**; **ˌthrow yourself ˈout of sth** to push or send sb/sth/yourself forward and out of a place: *Frank quickly opened the window and threw his cigarette out.* ◇ *He threw himself out of the window and was killed.*
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌthrow sb ˈover (*old-fashioned*) to end a relationship with sb: *His girlfriend threw him over for somebody else.*
SYN **chuck sb** (*BrE, slang*), **dump sb** (*informal*)
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌthrow sb/sth ˈover; **ˌthrow yourself ˈover**; **ˌthrow sb/sth/yourself ˈover sth** to move or push sb/sth so that they move over the top of sth and land on the other side of it; to move yourself violently in this way: *Throw a rope over and I'll catch it on the other side.* ◇ *I threw myself over the wall to escape from the dog.* ◇ *Jay took off his coat and threw it over a chair* (= so it rested on the back of a chair).
G v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*) ◆ v + n/pron + prep
IDM **throw sth over your ˈshoulder** if you **throw** a remark, a comment, or a look **over your shoulder**, you turn your head to say sth to sb or to look at sb: *'And don't bother phoning me!' she threw over her shoulder as she left.*

ˌthrow sth ˈover (to sb) (*informal*) to pass sth to sb in a casual way: *He threw the paper over to me.* ◇ *Will you throw over those keys?*

NOTE You can also use **throw sb over sth** and **throw sb sth over**: *Will you throw me over the paper?* ◇ *Will you throw me the paper over?*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌthrow sth ˈover sb/sth to quickly place sth so that it covers sb/sth: *I threw a blanket over the baby to keep him warm.* ◇ *He threw a coat over his pyjamas and ran out into the street.*

◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌthrow sth ˈround; ˌthrow sth ˈround sth = THROW STH AROUND, THROW STH AROUND STH

ˌthrow sth ˈround sb/sth (*especially BrE*) = THROW STH AROUND SB/STH 1 *We threw blankets round ourselves to keep warm.* ◇ *She threw her arms round me/my neck.*

ˌthrow sth ˈround sth (*BrE*)

→ *see also* THROW STH AROUND, THROW STH AROUND STH

ˌthrow sb toˈgether to bring people into contact with each other, often casually: *Fate had thrown them together.*

NOTE **Throw sb together** is often used in the passive: *We were strangers, thrown together by circumstance.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌthrow sth toˈgether to make or produce sth roughly or quickly, often with things that you can find easily: *I'll just throw together a quick supper.* ◇ *Can you throw a report together by tomorrow morning?*

◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌthrow ˈup (*also* **ˌthrow sth ˈup** *less frequent*) (*informal*) to bring food you have eaten back out of your mouth: *The smell made me want to throw up.* ◇ *He ate the meal and immediately threw it all up.*

SYN **bring sth up; vomit, vomit sth**

◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌthrow sb/sth ˈup to lift sb/sth and make them move upwards into the air by moving your hand quickly: *The baby loved being **thrown up into the air**.* ◇

◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌthrow sth ˈup 1 to produce sth; to show or make people notice sth: *Her research has thrown up some interesting facts.* ◇ *The competition threw up some promising players.* OBJ **problems, questions, ideas, facts** **2** (*BrE, informal*) to leave your job suddenly and often unexpectedly: *He threw up a highly paid job to travel round the world.* OBJ **job** SYN **chuck sth in/up** (*BrE, informal*), **give sth up** (*informal*) **3** to build sth suddenly or quickly, and often carelessly: *These buildings were thrown up hurriedly after the war.* OBJ **buildings** **4** if you **throw up** your arms or hands, you raise them quickly in the air: *He threw up his hands to protect his face as he fell.* ◇ *She threw her arms up in horror.* OBJ **hand, arm** **5** to make sth such as dust or water rise up into the air: *The wheels threw up a shower of mud and water.* OBJ **dust, mud**

◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌthrow sth uˈpon sb/sth = THROW STH ON SB/STH

thrust /θrʌst/ (thrust, thrust)

ˌthrust sth aˈside to refuse to listen to sb's complaints, comments, etc: *All our objections were thrust aside.*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈthrust sb/sth on sb (*also* **ˈthrust sb/sth upon sb** *more formal*) to force sb to accept sb/sth or do sth that they do not want to: *Responsibility for the family was thrust upon him at an early age.* ◇ *She was annoyed at having three extra guests suddenly thrust upon her.*

OBJ **role, responsibility, change**

NOTE **Thrust sb/sth on/upon sb** is often used in the passive.

◈ v + n/pron + prep

thumb /θʌm/

ˌthumb ˈthrough sth to turn the pages of a book, a magazine, etc. looking at them quickly: *She thumbed through her diary.*

OBJ **book, pages** SYN **flick through sth**

◈ v + prep

tick /tɪk/

ˌtick aˈway; ˌtick sth aˈway if a clock **ticks away** or **ticks** the minutes or seconds **away**, it makes continuous short light regular sounds to mark time passing: *The clock ticked away in the silence.* ◇ *We waited as the clock ticked away the last few seconds of the old millennium.*

◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌtick aˈway/ˈby/ˈpast (of time) to pass, especially when you feel it is passing too quickly or too slowly: *The seconds ticked by as I tried to think of something to say.* ◇ *Two long minutes ticked past.* SUBJ **minutes, seconds, time**

◈ v + adv

ˌtick sb ˈoff 1 (for sth/for doing sth) (*BrE, informal*) to speak angrily to sb, especially a child, because they have done sth wrong: *I was ticked off for forgetting my books.* SYN **tell sb off; scold sb** (*more formal*) **2** (*informal, especially AmE*) to annoy sb: *This type of thing really ticks me off.* SYN **hack sb off** (*BrE*)

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▸ **ˌticked ˈoff** *adj* (*informal, especially AmE*) annoyed: *I was really ticked off about it.*

▸ **ˌticking ˈoff (for sth/for doing sth)** *n* [sing.] (*old-fashioned, BrE, informal*) the act of speaking to somebody angrily because they have done sth wrong: *He gave me a ticking off for being late for class.*

ˌtick sb/sth ˈoff (*BrE*) (*AmE* **ˌcheck sb/sth ˈoff**) to put a mark next to sth on a list to show that it has been dealt with: *Al ticked off the names of the people who had replied.* ◇ *Everything on the list had been ticked off.* ◇ *She ticked the points off on her fingers.*

OBJ **points, items**

◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌtick ˈover (*especially BrE*) (*usually used in the progressive tenses*) **1** if an engine is **ticking over** it is running slowly but the vehicle is not moving: *Don't leave the engine ticking over while you are in the shop.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Learning Japanese keeps my brain ticking over!* SUBJ **engine** SYN **idle** **2** to continue slowly without producing or achieving much: *Try and keep things ticking over while I'm away.* SUBJ **things**

◈ v + adv

ˌtick ˈpast = TICK AWAY/BY/PAST

tide /taɪd/

ˌtide sb ˈover; ˌtide sb ˈover sth to help sb through a difficult period by providing what they need: *We've got enough money to tide us over until next month.* ◇ *Our savings should tide us over the next couple of months.* SUBJ **money, loan**

NOTE **Tide sb over** is usually used in the infinitive form. It cannot be used in the passive.

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

tidy /ˈtaɪdi/ (tidies, tidying, tidied, tidied)

ˌtidy sth aˈway (*BrE*) to put things in a particular place where they cannot be seen so that a room, etc. appears tidy: *Harry was busy tidying away his papers in the office.*

SYN **clear away, clear sth away**

◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌtidy sth ˈout (*BrE*) to make a room, a cupboard, etc. tidy by removing things you do not want and arranging the rest neatly: *It's time to tidy out the kitchen cupboards.*

OBJ **cupboard, drawer, room** SYN **clear sth out**

◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌtidy ˈup; ˌtidy sth ˈup (*especially BrE*) to make a room, a group of things, etc. tidy by arranging things neatly in the correct places: *Don't forget to tidy up when you've finished.* ◇ *The whole place needs tidying up.* ◇ *I've just got a bit of tidying up to do.* ◇ *I'd better tidy my desk up.*

SYN **clear up, clear sth up**

◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtidy sb ˈup; ˌtidy yourself ˈup (*especially BrE*) to make sb/yourself look cleaner and smarter: *How about tidying yourself up a bit before we go out?*

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtidy sth ˈup (*BrE*) **1** to finish sth such as a piece of written work by dealing with the last details well or correctly: *My lecture still needs tidying up.* OBJ **room, mess, house** SYN **clear sth up** **2** to make sure that things are dealt with correctly: *He had to go to Boston to tidy up his brother's affairs* (= after his brother had died).

◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

tie /taɪ/ (ties, tying, tied, tied)

ˌtie sb ˈdown 1 (*also* **ˌtie yourself ˈdown**) **(to sth/to doing sth)** to restrict sb's activities or freedom, for example by making them accept particular conditions or by keeping them busy: *We managed to tie him down to a date for the meeting.* ◇ *She didn't want to be tied down by a full-time job.* ◇ *I don't want to be tied down to coming back at a particular time.* ◇ *Do you really want to tie yourself down at 18 with a husband, a home and a baby?* **2** to do sth so that an enemy force is kept busy and has to stay in a particular area: *Guerrilla activity kept the army tied down in the mountains.* OBJ **troops, police**

◈ **1** v + n/pron + adv

2 v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌtie ˈin (with sth) to fit or be in agreement with sth: *This new evidence ties in with the witness's statement.* ◇ *That doesn't tie in with what you said yesterday.*

◈ v + adv

ˌtie ˈin (with sth), ˌtie sth ˈin (with sth) to link sth or be linked to sth; to happen or to arrange for sth to happen at the same time as sth else: *The book was intended to tie in with the TV series.* ◇ *Jack couldn't be tied in with the murder.* ◇ *The release of their new album will be tied in with the tour.*

◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▸ **ˈtie-in** *n* **1** (*BrE*) a product such as a book or a toy that is sold in close connection with a film/movie, television programme, etc: *television/film tie-ins* ◇ *tie-in books/toys/sales* **2** (*especially AmE*) a link or a relationship with sth: *a tie-in to the main subject*

ˌtie sth ˈoff to put a knot in the end of sth; to close sth with string, thread, etc: *to tie off a rope/an artery*

◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌtie ˈup; ˌtie sth ˈup 1 to attach a boat to a fixed point with a rope: *The barge tied up at the quay.* ◇ *Ben tied the boat up and jumped ashore.* **2** to close or fasten sth with a knot; to be closed or fastened in this way: *I'm so fat my bathrobe won't tie up!* ◇ *to tie up a garbage bag*

◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtie sb ˈup 1 to tie sb's arms and legs tightly so that they cannot move or escape: *The gang tied up the security guard and put a gag in his mouth.* **2** to keep sb so busy that they have no time for other things: *I'm tied up in a meeting until three.*

◇ *Sorry I'm late -- I was tied up at the office.* NOTE **Tie sb up** is usually used in the passive in this meaning.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtie sth ˈup 1 to make sth secure by putting string, rope, etc. around it, or attaching it to sth else: *He tied the parcel up with a ribbon.* ◇ *He tied the dog up outside.* **2 (with sth)** to connect or link sth to sth else: *Her behaviour is tied up with her feelings of guilt.* ◇ *Do you think these two incidents are tied up?* NOTE **Tie sth up** is usually used in the passive in this meaning. **3 (in sth)** to invest money so that it is not easily available for use: *Most of our capital is tied up in property.* OBJ **money, capital, resources, assets** SYN **lock sth up** NOTE **Tie sth up** is often used in the passive in this meaning. **4** to deal with all the remaining details of sth: *to tie up a deal* ◇ *We're hoping to* ***tie up all the loose ends*** *as quickly as possible.* OBJ **deal, loose ends 5** to bring sth to a stop; to prevent sb from doing sth or using sth: *The strike tied up production for a week.* ◇ *Haven't you finished yet? You've been tying up the phone for hours!*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▸ **ˈtie-up** *n* **1 (with sb/sth)** (*BrE*) an agreement between two companies to join together: *They're negotiating a tie-up with Ford.* **2 (between A and B)** (*BrE*) a connection between two or more things: *a tie-up between politics and economics* **3** (*especially AmE*) a situation in which sth, especially traffic, stops moving: *A tie-up on the highway caused major delays.*

tighten /ˈtaɪtn/

ˌtighten ˈup; **ˌtighten sth ˈup 1** to become or to make sth tight or tighter: *His face muscles tightened up in anger.* ◇ *to tighten up a screw/wheel/muscle* NOTE **Tighten** and **tighten sth** can also be used with this meaning **2** to become more careful or strict about sth; to make sth more strict: *Laws on gambling have tightened up recently.* ◇ *The police are* ***tightening up on*** *drink-driving.* ◇ *to tighten up laws/rules/legislation/security*

Ⓖ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

tinker /ˈtɪŋkə(r)/

ˌtinker aˈround (*also* **ˌtinker aˈbout** *especially BrE*) **(with sth)** to make small changes to sth in order to repair or improve it, especially in a way that may not be helpful: *He's outside tinkering around with his bike.* ◇ *They haven't made any real changes to the system — they've just been tinkering around a bit.*

Ⓖ v + adv

tip /tɪp/ (-pp-)

ˌtip sb ˈoff (about sth) (*informal*) to give sb a warning about sth which will affect them and which they should know about, especially sth illegal: *The police were tipped off about the bank robbery.*

OBJ **police**

Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

▸ **ˈtip-off** *n* (*informal*) a piece of useful or secret information that sb gives, for example to the police, to warn them about an illegal or unexpected activity: *The police received an anonymous tip-off about the attack.*

ˌtip ˈover; **ˌtip sth ˈover** to become unstable and fall over; to make sth do this: *The bottle tipped over and all the water spilled out.* ◇ *Watch you don't tip the jug over.*

SYN **overturn, overturn sth** (*more formal*)

Ⓖ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtip ˈup; **ˌtip sth ˈup** to become unsteady and fall forwards, backwards or sideways; to make sth do this: *One after another the canoes tipped up.* ◇ *The pile of books on the end of the table nearly tipped it up.*

Ⓖ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtip sth ˈup to change the angle of sth so that it leans to one side: *She tipped her glass up and drained it.* ◇ *He tipped his face up towards the light.*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

tire /ˈtaɪə(r)/

ˈtire of sb/sth; **ˈtire of doing sth** to become bored with sb/sth or begin to enjoy them/it less: *They soon tired of the beach and went for a walk.*

Ⓖ v + prep

IDM **never tire of doing sth** to do sth a lot, especially in a way that annoys people: *Jack travelled all over the world when he was a student, as he never tires of telling us.*

ˌtire sb ˈout; **ˌtire yourself ˈout** to make sb/yourself feel very tired: *I took the children to the beach to tire them out.* ◇ *Try not to tire yourself out too soon in the race.*

SYN **wear sb/yourself out (with sth)**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

▸ **ˌtired ˈout** *adj* very tired: *We finally reached home tired out.*

toddle /ˈtɒdl; *AmE* ˈtɑːdl/

ˌtoddle ˈoff (*BrE, informal, humorous*) to leave; to depart: *It's late — it's time you toddled off to bed.*

Ⓖ v + adv

tog /tɒg; *AmE* tɑːg, tɔːg/ (-gg-)

be/get ˌtogged ˈout/ˈup (in sth) (*BrE, informal*) to be wearing clothes for a particular activity or occasion: *He got togged up in a suit and tie for the interview.* ◇ *We were all togged out in our best clothes.*

Ⓖ be/get + v + adv

toil /tɔɪl/

ˌtoil aˈway (at sth) to work extremely hard at sth difficult or boring: *He toiled away at his homework all the evening.*

Ⓖ v + adv

tone /təʊn; *AmE* toʊn/

ˌtone sth ˈdown 1 to make sth such as a speech, an opinion, etc. less offensive, critical or harsh than it was originally: *He had to tone down his article before it was published.* **2** to make sth, especially your clothes, less bright, colourful and noticeable: *She toned down her style of dress when she started her new job.* **3** to make a colour less bright: *We toned down the yellow paint with a little white.* ◇ *Petra used powder to tone down her rosy cheeks.*

Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌtone ˈin (with sth) (*BrE*) to match or fit with the colour or style of sth else: *The cushions tone in well with the carpet.* ◇ *The new bridge doesn't tone in with the buildings around it.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌtone ˈup; **ˌtone sth ˈup** to make your muscles or a part of your body firmer, stronger, and healthier: *It's time I toned up and slimmed down.* ◇ *This exercise will tone up your stomach muscles.*

OBJ **body, muscles**

Ⓖ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

tool /tuːl/

ˌtool ˈup; **ˌtool sth ˈup (for sth/to do sth)** (*BrE, technical*) to get or provide sb/sth with the equipment, machines, etc. necessary to do or produce sth: *It took several months to tool up to produce the new model.* ◇ *A new plant in Scotland is being tooled up to produce these screws.*

Ⓖ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

▸ **ˌtooled ˈup** *adj* (*slang*) **1** having the equipment necessary for a particular job **2** (*BrE*) carrying a gun

top /tɒp; *AmE* tɑːp/ (-pp-)

ˌtop sth ˈoff (with sth) to complete sth in a successful or pleasant way, especially by adding one final thing: *Jane was wearing a very colourful outfit, topped off with a dramatic hat.*

NOTE **Top sth off** is often used in the passive.

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtop ˈout (at sth) to stop increasing after reaching a high level: *Your annual salary will top out at seventy thousand dollars.*

Ⓖ v + adv

ˌtop sb ˈup (*BrE*) to fill sb's glass or cup by adding some more liquid: *Can I top you up?*

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▸ **ˈtop-up** *n* (*BrE*) an amount of liquid that you add to some already in a glass, cup or other container: *Can I give you a top-up?*

→ *see also* TOP-UP at TOP STH UP

ˌtop sth ˈup (*especially BrE*) **1 (with sth)** to add some more liquid to some already in a glass, cup or other container in order to fill it: *Can I top your glass up?* ◇ *We should top the car up with oil before we set off.* OBJ **glass, cup 2** to increase the amount of sth, especially money, to the level you want or need: *She relies on tips to top up her wages.* OBJ **income, pension**

Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

▸ **ˈtop-up** *n* (*BrE*) a sum of money that is added to what you already have in order to increase it to the amount that you need: *a salary top-up* ◇ *a top-up loan* ◇ *top-up fees* (= extra money that university students must pay, in addition to the money that they already pay, in order to provide the university with the money it needs)

→ *see also* TOP-UP at TOP SB UP

▸ **ˈtop-up card** *n* a card that you buy for a mobile phone that enables you to make calls to the value of the card

topple /ˈtɒpl; *AmE* ˈtɑːpl/

ˌtopple ˈover to become unsteady and fall over: *The vase wobbled and then toppled over.*

Ⓖ v + adv

toss /tɒs; *AmE* tɔːs/

ˌtoss sth aˈround (*also* **ˌtoss sth aˈbout** *especially BrE*) to discuss ideas in a casual or general way: *We sat and tossed around a few suggestions.* ◇ *This is a problem that has been tossed around for more than a century.*

SYN **throw sth around**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtoss sth aˈside 1 to put sth quickly to one side because you are angry or in a hurry: *He tossed aside the newspaper angrily and stood up.* ◇ (*figurative*) *When he's bored with people he just tosses them aside.* SYN **cast sth aside** (*formal*), **throw sth aside 2** to reject sth such as an attitude, an idea, a way of life, etc: *The idea of buying a new car was quickly tossed aside.* SYN **cast sth aside** (*formal*), **throw sth aside**

Ⓖ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌtoss sth aˈway to throw sth away carelessly: *She finished her drink and tossed the can away.* ◇ (*figurative*) *He's tossed away so many opportunities.*

Ⓖ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌtoss sth ˈback 1 (*also* **ˌtoss sth ˈdown** *less frequent*) to drink sth very quickly, especially alcohol: *She tossed back glass after glass of champagne.* ◇ *He tossed back the rest of his drink and walked out.* OBJ **drink, whisky, wine, etc. 2** to move sth, especially your head, quickly backwards, especially when you are angry or impatient: *Sam tossed back his head in defiance.* ◇ *She tossed back her hair and smiled.* OBJ **hair, head**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˈtoss for sth; **ˈtoss sb for sth** (*especially BrE*) (*BrE also* **ˌtoss ˈup (for sth)**) (*AmE also* **ˈflip for sth**, **ˈflip sb for sth**) to make a decision about sth by spinning a coin in the air and seeing which side is on top when it lands: *We can't both go, so why don't we toss for it?* ◇ *There's only one ticket left — I'll toss you for it.*
→ *see also* FLIP FOR STH
◈ v + prep ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌtoss ˈoff; **ˌtoss sb ˈoff**; **ˌtoss yourself ˈoff** (*BrE*, ⚠, *slang*) to give yourself sexual pleasure by rubbing your sex organs; to give sb else sexual pleasure in this way
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌtoss sth ˈoff (*especially BrE*) to do sth quickly, easily and often with little care or effort: *He tossed this novel off in two months.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌtoss ˈup (for sth) (*BrE*) = TOSS FOR STH, TOSS SB FOR STH *They tossed up for the best seat.*
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˈtoss-up** *n* [sing.] (*informal*) a situation where it is difficult to decide between two things, or where there are two possible results: *It was a toss-up between spending the night in the van and walking ten miles for help.*

tot /tɒt; *AmE* tɑːt/ (**-tt-**)

ˌtot sth ˈup (*informal, especially BrE*) to add together several numbers or amounts in order to get a total: *Can you tot up how much I owe you?*
OBJ **figures, the number of sth** SYN **add sth up**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

total /ˈtəʊtl; *AmE* ˈtoʊtl/ (**-ll-**, *AmE also* **-l-**)

ˌtotal ˈup (to sth) to reach a particular total: *The costs total up to over a million.*
◈ v + adv

ˌtotal sth ˈup to add amounts together to get a total: *Let's total up what we've spent.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

touch /tʌtʃ/

ˌtouch ˈdown 1 (of a plane, a spacecraft, etc.) to land: *The plane touched down safely at Kennedy Airport at about midday.* ◇ (*figurative*) *A tornado touched down in Colorado, injuring five people.*
SUBJ **plane, aircraft, helicopter** SYN **land** OPP **take off 2** (in rugby) to score points (a **try**) by putting the ball on the ground behind the other team's goal line: *Williams touched down in the first few minutes of the game.*
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˈtouchdown** *n* **1** the moment when a plane or a spacecraft lands **2** (in rugby) an act of scoring points by putting the ball down on the area of ground behind the other team's goal line **3** (in American football) an act of scoring points by crossing the other team's goal line while carrying the ball, or receiving the ball when you are over the other team's goal line

ˈtouch sb for sth (*BrE, informal*) to persuade sb to give or lend you money: *He tried to touch me for twenty pounds.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌtouch sth ˈoff to make sth begin, especially an explosion or a violent or difficult situation: *The explosion was touched off by a single spark.* ◇ *His arrest touched off a riot.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˈtouch on/upon sth to mention or deal briefly with a topic, a problem, etc: *He touched on the need for increased funding.* ◇ *Some of these issues were touched on in Chapter 7.*
OBJ **subject, point, issue**
NOTE **Touch on/upon sth** can be used in the passive.
◈ v + prep

ˌtouch sb ˈup (*BrE, informal*) to touch sb in an unpleasant sexual way
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌtouch sth ˈup to improve sth by making small changes or additions: *He had to touch up the paintwork to cover the scratches.* ◇ *The photo had been touched up.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

ˈtouch upon sth = TOUCH ON/UPON STH

tough /tʌf/

ˌtough sth ˈout to stay firm and determined in a difficult situation: *He decided not to resign, but to stay and* ***tough it out.***
◈ v + n + adv ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

toughen /ˈtʌfn/

ˌtoughen ˈup; **ˌtoughen sb ˈup** to become stronger and better able to deal with difficult situations; to make sb stronger in this way: *He had toughened up during military service.* ◇ *His parents sent him away to boarding school to toughen him up.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌtoughen sth ˈup to make sth such as a law or a rule more strict: *The legislation on this trade needs to be toughened up.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

tout /taʊt/

ˌtout sth aˈround; **ˌtout sth aˈround sth** (*BrE also* **ˌtout sth ˈround**, **ˌtout sth ˈround sth**) to take sth to many different places or companies in the hope of selling it: *He's been touting his novel around publishers for years.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˈtout for sth (*especially BrE*) to try to get business, work, etc. by asking people directly: *cab drivers touting for business at the airport*
OBJ **business, trade, custom**
◈ v + prep

tow /təʊ; *AmE* toʊ/

ˌtow sth aˈway (from sth) to remove sth, especially a vehicle, from a place, by pulling it behind another one: *They'll tow your car away if you park it here.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

tower /ˈtaʊə(r)/

ˌtower aˈbove/ˈover sb/sth 1 to be much higher or taller than other things or people that are near: *The new offices tower above the rest of the town.* ◇ *Amy towers over her mother.* **2** to be much better, more famous, etc. than other people or things: *He towers above all other poets of his generation.*
◈ v + prep

toy /tɔɪ/

ˈtoy with sth 1 to consider sth but not very seriously or for very long: *He had toyed with the idea of living in Germany.* OBJ **the idea of 2** to play with sth; to move sth around carelessly without really thinking about it: *Stop toying with your food!* ◇ (*figurative*) *He accused the young man of toying with his daughter's affections.*
SYN **dally with sth/sb**
NOTE **Toy with sth** can be used in the passive: *The possibility had been toyed with but rejected.*
◈ v + prep

trace /treɪs/

ˌtrace sth ˈback (to sth) to find the origin or cause of sth by following clues or evidence backwards from the present time: *Many different childhood illnesses can be traced back to certain foods.* ◇ *Boston has a large population that traces its roots back to Ireland.* ◇ *She can trace her family back as far as the 13th century.*
OBJ **roots, origins, history**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌtrace sth ˈout to draw a shape or a mark clearly: *I traced out our route on the map.* ◇ (*figurative*) *She traced out how working patterns had changed in the last 50 years.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

track /træk/

ˌtrack sb/sth ˈdown (to sth) to find sb/sth after a long and difficult search: *We finally tracked Sam down to his parents' house.* ◇ *It has taken ten years to track down the wreckage of the plane.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

trade /treɪd/

ˌtrade ˈdown (to sth) 1 to spend less money on things than you used to: *People are trading down and buying cheaper food.* **2** to sell sth large or expensive and buy sth smaller or less expensive: *They traded down to a house with fewer bedrooms.* OPP **trade up (to sth)**
◈ v + adv

ˌtrade sth ˈin (for sth) to give sth that you have used to sb you are buying sth new from as part of your payment: *He traded his motorbike in for a new van.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▸ **ˈtrade-in** *n* a method of buying something by giving a used item as part of the payment for a new one; the used item that you give: *the trade-in value of a car* ◇ *Do you have a trade-in?*

ˌtrade sth ˈoff (against sth) to balance two things or situations that are opposed to each other: *The government were attempting to trade off inflation against unemployment.* ◇ *They were willing to trade off information to keep the hostages alive* (= to give information in exchange for their lives).
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)
▸ **ˈtrade-off (between sth and sth)** *n* the act of balancing two things that you need or want but which are opposed to each other: *a trade-off between inflation and unemployment* ◇ *There is a trade-off between the benefits of the drug and the risk of side effects.*

ˈtrade on sth (*also* **ˈtrade upon sth** *more formal, less frequent*) (*disapproving*) to unfairly make use of sth for your own advantage: *He traded on his father's name to get himself a job.*
SYN **exploit sth**
◈ v + prep

ˌtrade ˈup (to sth) to sell sth small or not expensive in order to buy sth larger or more expensive: *He traded up to a larger car.*
OPP **trade down (to sth)**
◈ v + adv

ˈtrade upon sth = TRADE ON STH

traffic /ˈtræfɪk/ (-ck-)

ˈtraffic in sth to buy and sell sth, especially drugs or weapons, illegally: *He was accused of trafficking in stolen works of art.*
OBJ **drugs, weapons**
G v + prep

trail /treɪl/

ˌtrail aˈway/ˈoff if sb's speech **trails away/off**, it gradually becomes quieter and then stops: *Mark's voice trailed away to a whisper.* ◇ *'I only hope…' She trailed off.*
SUBJ **voice**
G v + adv

train /treɪn/

ˈtrain sth on/upon sb/sth (*formal*) to point sth such as a gun, a camera, a light, etc. at sb/sth: *The police marksmen trained their weapons on the building.* ◇ *She trained the camera on the bride and groom.* ◇ *He kept his eyes trained on the road ahead.*
OBJ **gun, camera, eyes**
NOTE This phrasal verb is used mainly in written English.
G v + n/pron + prep

ˌtrain sb ˈup to make sb ready to do a job or an activity by teaching them the skills they need: *We need to train up extra staff for the Christmas period.*
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

traipse /treɪps/

ˌtraipse aˈround; **ˌtraipse aˈround sth** (*BrE also* **ˌtraipse ˈround**, **ˌtraipse ˈround sth**) (*informal*) to walk from place to place slowly because you are tired and unwilling: *I've been traipsing around all day with Jenny trying to buy a coat for her.* ◇ *We spent the afternoon traipsing around the town.*
G v + adv • v + prep

trample /ˈtræmpl/

ˈtrample on/over sb/sth to ignore sb's feelings or rights and treat them as if they are not important: *The government is trampling on the views of ordinary people.* ◇ *Don't let Jack **trample all over** you!*
G v + prep

treat /triːt/

ˈtreat sb to sth to entertain sb with sth special: *Visitors will be treated to a spectacular show.* ◇ (*ironic*) *We were treated to* (= we had to suffer) *a two-hour lecture.*
NOTE **Treat sb to sth** is often used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + prep

trick /trɪk/

ˌtrick sb ˈinto sth; **ˌtrick sb ˈinto doing sth** to manage to get sb to do sth by deceiving them or not telling them the truth: *She felt she'd been tricked into marriage.* ◇ *He tricked me into lending him £100.*
NOTE **Trick sb into sth/into doing sth** is often used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + prep

ˌtrick sb ˈout of sth to take sth away from sb by deceiving them: *An 80-year old woman was tricked out of her life savings.*
G v + n/pron + adv + prep

trickle /ˈtrɪkl/

ˌtrickle ˈdown (especially of money) to spread from rich to poor people through the economic system of a country: *If the wealthy pay less tax, the benefits should trickle down to people on lower incomes.*
G v + adv
▸ **ˈtrickle down** *n* [U] the theory that if the richest people in society become richer this will have a good effect on poorer people as well, for example by creating more jobs

trifle /ˈtraɪfl/

ˈtrifle with sb/sth (*used especially in negative sentences*) to treat sb/sth without respect as if they are not very important: *He is not a man to be trifled with.* ◇ *He was a man who trifled with women's affections.*
G v + prep

trim /trɪm/ (-mm-)

ˌtrim sth aˈway/ˈoff to cut off a small part of sth because it is not needed: *My hair is too long now. Can you trim off about two centimetres?*
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌtrim ˈdown; **ˌtrim sth ˈdown** to become, or to make sth, smaller in size: *He's trimmed down from 90 kilos to 70.* ◇ *The movie was trimmed down to 2¼ hours.*
SYN **slim down; slim down, slim sth down**
G v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

trip /trɪp/ (-pp-)

ˌtrip ˈover; **ˌtrip ˈover sb/sth** to fall or almost fall because you have accidentally hit your foot against sth while you are walking or running: *I tripped over the rug and fell heavily.* ◇ *He kept tripping over.* ◇ (*figurative*) *He tripped over his words in his excitement.*
G v + adv • v + prep

ˌtrip ˈup; **ˌtrip sb ˈup 1** (*especially BrE*) to fall or almost fall because you have accidentally hit your foot against sth while walking or running; to make sb fall or almost fall by catching their foot while they are walking or running: *I tripped up as I ran across the room.* ◇ *She tripped him up with her stick.* **2** to make a mistake; to deliberately make sb do this: *I knew I had to think carefully in the interview or I might trip up.* ◇ *She was trying to trip me up with her questions.*
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

trot /trɒt; *AmE* trɑːt/ (-tt-)

ˌtrot ˈoff to go somewhere, walking quite quickly: *She trotted off to school happily with her new lunch box.*
G v + adv

ˌtrot sth ˈout (*informal, disapproving*) to say or repeat sth such as an excuse, an explanation, etc. without thinking about it or being sincere about it: *The airline trotted out the same old excuses to explain the delays.* ◇ *He's just trotting out the party line again* (= in politics).
G v + adv + n • v + pron + adv (*less frequent*)

trump /trʌmp/

ˌtrump sth ˈup to make up a false story about sb/sth, especially accusing them of doing sth wrong: *Several of his colleagues trumped up a complaint to get him removed from the job.* ◇ *She was arrested on **trumped-up charges**.*
OBJ **charge(s)**
G v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

trundle /ˈtrʌndl/

ˌtrundle sth ˈout (*disapproving, especially BrE*) to mention sb/sth or do sth that you have often mentioned or done before: *The government trundled out the same old clichés to justify their actions.*
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

truss /trʌs/

ˌtruss sb/sth ˈup (*old-fashioned*) to tie a person or an animal up very tightly so that they cannot move or escape: *The victims had been trussed up with rope and beaten.*
NOTE **Truss sb/sth up** is often used in the passive.
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

trust /trʌst/

ˈtrust in sb/sth (*formal*) to have confidence in sb/sth; to rely on sb completely: *I was scared before the operation, but I trusted in the skill of the doctors and nurses.* ◇ *He urged them to trust in God.*
OBJ **God**
G v + prep

ˈtrust to sb/sth to leave the result or progress of events to be decided by luck, chance, etc., because there is nothing or no one else to help you: *I stumbled along in the dark, **trusting to luck** to find the right door.*
OBJ **luck**
G v + prep

ˈtrust sb with sb/sth to give sb/sth to a person to take care of because you believe they will be careful with them/it: *Would you trust her with the children?* ◇ *I'd trust him with my life.*
G v + n/pron + prep

try /traɪ/ (tries, trying, tried, tried)

ˌtry ˈback; **ˌtry sb ˈback** (*AmE*) to telephone sb again when you have already telephoned them but have not managed to speak to them: *Can you try back later?* ◇ *She's not there. I'll have to try her back after lunch.*
SYN **phone back, phone sb back** (*especially BrE*), **call back, call sb back**
G v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈtry for sth (*especially BrE*) to make an attempt to get or win sth: *Are you going to try for that job?* ◇ *They've been trying for a baby for several years now* (= the woman has been trying to become pregnant).
OBJ **a baby**
G v + prep

ˌtry it ˈon (with sb) (*informal, disapproving, especially BrE*) to behave badly towards sb or try to get sth from them just to see what you can do before they become angry or stop you: *The kids sometimes try it on with a new babysitter.*
G v + it + adv
▸ **ˈtry-on** *n* (*BrE*) an act of trying to behave badly and hoping that no one will stop you

ˌtry sth ˈon to put on a piece of clothing to see if it fits and how it looks: *Can I try on the blue one?* ◇ *If you like it, why don't you try it on?*
G v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌtry ˈout (for sth) (*especially AmE*) to compete for a place in a sports team, a part in a play, etc: *He tried out for the school band.* ◇ *It's a pretty good team. I think I'll try out.*
G v + adv
▸ **ˈtry-out** *n* (*AmE*) a test, etc. to choose players for a team, actors for a play, etc: *The team is holding try-outs this Thursday.* ◇ *Did you have a try-out for the school play?*
→ *see also* TRY-OUT at TRY SB/STH OUT (ON SB)

ˌtry sb/sth ˈout (on sb) to test sb/sth to see how good and useful they are or how suitable for a particular task or purpose before you decide to use them/it: *We've been trying out some new musicians for our band.* ◇ *He couldn't wait to try out his new invention.* ◇ *I've got an idea I'd like to try out on you.* ◇ *The drug has not been tried out on humans yet.*
SYN **test sth out (on sb/sth)**
G v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▶ **'try-out** *n* an act of testing how good or suitable sb/sth is before you decide to use them/it: *The play had an out-of-town try-out in Oxford.*
➔ *see also* TRY-OUT at TRY OUT (FOR STH)

tuck /tʌk/

ˌtuck sth aˈway 1 be ˌtucked aˈway to be in a quiet or hidden place where not many people go: *The house is tucked away right at the end of a rough track.* SYN **hide sth away** NOTE **Be tucked away** is usually followed by a phrase with a preposition: *The café was tucked away in the basement.* **2 (in sth)** to put sth in a safe place, especially sth valuable: *She tucked the photos away in her wallet.* ◇ *We've got some money tucked away for emergencies.* SYN **stash sth away 3** (*BrE, informal*) to eat a lot of food: *He can certainly **tuck it away**!* SYN **put sth away**
◈ **1** be + v + adv
2,3 v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌtuck ˈin; ˌtuck ˈinto sth (*informal, especially BrE*) to eat food, especially quickly or with enthusiasm: *We tucked in hungrily.* ◇ *He was tucking into a huge plateful of pasta.* ◇ *Tuck in, everybody!*
SYN **dig in; dig into sth**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌtuck sb ˈin/ˈup to cover sb, especially a child, comfortably in bed by pulling the covers around them: *Will you come and tuck me in, Mummy?* ◇ *The children were all tucked up in bed by 8 p.m.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌtuck sth ˈin; ˌtuck sth ˈinto sth 1 to push or fold the loose end of a piece of clothing, a sheet, rope, hair, etc., in sth, to make it tidy or hold it in position: *Tom, tuck your shirt in!* ◇ *Why don't you tuck your trousers into your socks?* ◇ *Tuck the flap of the envelope in.* OBJ **shirt 2** to pull a part of your body inwards, especially by making your muscles tight: *Stand up straight and tuck your bottoms in!* ◇ *Keep your chin tucked in.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌtuck sb ˈup TUCK SB IN/UP

ˌtuck sth ˈup to move or put sth in a small space, especially to hide it or keep it safe or comfortable: *She kicked off her shoes and tucked her feet up under her.*
OBJ **legs, feet**
NOTE **Tuck sth up** is often used in the passive: *She sat with her legs tucked up under her.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

tug /tʌg/ (-gg-)

ˈtug at sth to give sth a quick, strong pull: *Daniel tugged at my sleeve.*
OBJ **sb's arm, sb's hair, sb's sleeve** SYN **pull at sth**
◈ v + prep

tumble /ˈtʌmbl/

ˌtumble ˈdown to fall suddenly to the ground in a dramatic way: *One push and the wall came tumbling down.* ◇ *Her long dark hair tumbled down around her face.* ◇ (*figurative*) *She felt herself tumbling down into the hole.*
◈ v + adv
▶ **ˈtumbledown** *adj* [usually before noun] a **tumbledown** building is old and in a very bad condition, with parts falling down: *He lived in a small, tumbledown hut.*

ˌtumble ˈover to fall to the ground: *She knocked the statue and it tumbled over.*
◈ v + adv

ˈtumble to sb/sth (*BrE, informal*) to suddenly realize, understand, or become aware of what sb/sth is really like: *I've tumbled to Isabel now.* ◇ *I've tumbled to what he is trying to do.*
◈ v + prep

tune /tjuːn; *AmE* tuːn/

ˌtune ˈin (to sth), ˌtune ˈinto sth 1 to turn on the radio or television in order to listen or watch a particular programme or channel: *We tuned in to watch the football.* ◇ *Tune into* (= watch) *next week's exciting episode!* **2** to be aware of or understand other people's thoughts, feelings or needs: *You must tune into the needs of the people you love.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

ˌtune sth ˈin 1 to adjust the controls on a radio or television so that you can hear or see a particular programme or channel clearly: *The radio isn't properly tuned in.* ◇ *I keep the radio tuned in to the BBC World Service.* **2** (*AmE*) to turn on the radio or television in order to listen to or watch a particular programme: *Tune in our TV special tonight at nine.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

be ˌtuned ˈin (to sth); be ˌtuned ˈinto sth to be aware of or understand sth, especially other people's feelings: *Parents should be tuned in to the needs of their child.* ◇ *I'm tuned in to what I have to do.*
◈ be + v + adv ◆ be + v + prep

ˌtune ˈout; ˌtune sb/sth ˈout (*informal, especially AmE*) to stop listening to sb/sth; to ignore sb/sth: *When Lee started talking about her job, Tim just tuned out.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˈtune sth to sth to adjust the controls of a radio or television so that you can listen to or watch a particular programme: *All the TVs in the store were tuned to the same channel.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌtune ˈup when an orchestra **tunes up**, the players adjust the instruments so that they can play together: *We could hear the orchestra tuning up.* ◇ *The quartet tuned up and began to play.*
◈ v + adv

turf /tɜːf; *AmE* tɜːrf/

ˌturf sb/sth ˈout; ˌturf sb/sth ˈout of sth (*also* **ˌturf sb ˈoff, ˌturf sb ˈoff sth**) (*BrE, informal*) to force sb/sth to leave a particular place or an organization: *We need to turf the Democratic party out.* ◇ *Several families have been turfed out of their homes.* ◇ *The boys should have been turfed off the bus.*
SYN **kick sb out, kick sb out of sth; throw sb/sth out, throw sb/sth out of sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*) ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌturf sth ˈout (*BrE, informal*) to get rid of sth you do not want: *The shop is full of beautiful clothes that people have turfed out.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

turn /tɜːn; *AmE* tɜːrn/

	~ about	325	~ off
	~ against		~ on
	~ around		~ on to
	~ aside		~ out, out of
324	~ away	326	~ over
	~ away from	327	~ over to
	~ back		~ round
	~ down		~ to
	~ in		~ up
	~ in on		~ upon
	~ inside out		~ upside down
	~ into		

ˌturn aˈbout (*especially BrE*) to turn around quickly so as to face in the opposite direction: *She turned about and went into the kitchen.*
➔ *see also* TURN AROUND, TURN SB/STH AROUND; TURN AROUND, TURN STH AROUND
◈ v + adv
▶ **aˌbout-ˈturn** *n* (*BrE*) **1** an act of turning around quickly so as to face in the opposite direction: *He did a rapid about-turn when he saw me and went back inside.* **2** a complete change of opinion, plan or behaviour: *Hours later the management did an about-turn and agreed to our demands.* ◇ *a dramatic about-turn in government policy*
▶ **ˈturnabout** *n* [sing.] **1** an act of turning around quickly so as to face in the opposite direction **2** a sudden and complete change in attitude or opinion

ˌturn aˈgainst sb/sth; ˌturn sb aˈgainst sb/sth to stop, or to make sb stop, being friendly towards sb; to stop, or to make sb stop, supporting sb/sth: *Her old friends were turning against her.* ◇ *He's trying to turn his family against me.* ◇ *What has made them turn against the government?*
◈ v + prep ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌturn aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌturn ˈround**) if sb **turns around** and does sth, they do sth unexpectedly and often unfairly: *What will we do if he **turns around and** says it was all our fault?*
◈ v + adv

ˌturn aˈround; ˌturn sb/sth aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌturn ˈround, ˌturn sb/sth ˈround**) to move your head and shoulders or your whole body so that you face in the opposite direction; to make sb/sth change position in this way: *She turned around to stare at the man behind her.* ◇ *He walked away without turning round.* ◇ *I turned the bottle round to look at the label.* ◇ *The nurse turned him around to face the window.*
➔ *see also* TURN ABOUT
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)
▶ **ˈturnaround** (*BrE also* **ˈturnround**) *n* [usually sing.] **1** the amount of time it takes to unload a plane or ship at the end of a journey and load it ready for the next one **2** the amount of time that it takes to do a piece of work that you have been given and return it **3** a complete change in sb's opinion, plans, behaviour, etc.
➔ *see also* TURNAROUND at TURN AROUND, TURN STH AROUND

ˌturn aˈround; ˌturn sth aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌturn ˈround, ˌturn sth ˈround**) if a business or an economy **turns around**, or sb **turns it around**, it becomes successful after it has been unsuccessful for a time: *The economy is slowly turning around.* ◇ *His job is to try to turn the company around.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▶ **ˈturnaround** (*BrE also* **ˈturnround**) *n* [C, usually sing.] a sudden improvement in a business, an economy, etc: *The predicted economic turnaround failed to happen.*
➔ *see also* TURNAROUND at TURN AROUND, TURN SB/STH AROUND

ˌturn sth aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌturn sth ˈround**) to deliberately understand sth that sb says in the wrong way, especially for your own advantage: *You turn everything I say around to make me look stupid.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌturn aˈside to change direction and go to one side, especially in order to avoid sb/sth: *He turned aside in embarrassment.*
◈ v + adv

ˌturn sb/sth aˈside to make sb/sth move to one side, especially in order to avoid sth difficult or dangerous: *As he bent to kiss her, she turned her head aside.* ◇ (*figurative*) *He cleverly turned all her questions aside* (= he did not answer them).
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

ˌturn aˈway; **ˌturn sth aˈway** **(from sb/sth)** to move or to move your head to face in a different direction, often to avoid sth difficult or dangerous: *Will turned quickly away and walked out of the door.* ◇ *He turned away from her with a sigh.* ◇ *Tina turned her head away and looked out of the window.*

◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌturn sb aˈway 1 **(from sth)** to refuse to allow sb to enter a place: *We had to turn hundreds of fans away from the game* (= because the place was full). **2** to refuse to help sb: *They had nowhere to stay so I couldn't just turn them away.*

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌturn aˈway from sth; **ˌturn sb aˈway from sth** to stop, or to make sb stop, supporting sb/sth or being interested in sth: *Younger voters are turning away from the party.* ◇ *The recent scandals have turned many people away from politics.*

◆ v + adv + prep • v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌturn ˈback; **ˌturn sb/sth ˈback** to return in the direction that you have come from; to make sb/sth do this: *The weather got so bad that we turned back.* ◇ *We were turned back at the border.* ◇ (*figurative*) ***There'll be no turning back*** (= you can't change your mind) *once you sign the agreement.*

◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

IDM **turn the ˈclock back** to return to a situation that existed in the past; to return to old-fashioned methods or ideas: *This new law is an attempt to turn the clock back.*

ˌturn sth ˈback to fold sth back on itself: *She straightened the bedclothes and turned back the top sheet.*

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌturn ˈdown (*rare*) if your mouth **turns down**, it forms a line with the ends curved downwards, because you are sad or annoyed: *'Don't be cross with me,' she said, her mouth turning down at the corners.*

OPP **turn up**

◆ v + adv

ˌturn sb/sth ˈdown to reject or refuse sb/sth: *Why did Clare turn down your invitation?* ◇ *He asked her to marry him, but she turned him down.* ◇ *They turned down my offer of help.* ◇ *She turned the job down because it paid too little.* ◇ *My book was turned down by eight publishers.*

OBJ **offer, application, invitation, request, job, proposal** SYN **reject sb/sth**

◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌturn sth ˈdown 1 to adjust the controls on a piece of equipment in order to reduce the amount of heat, noise, light, etc. produced: *Turn that radio down, I can't sleep.* ◇ *It's warmer today. I'll turn down the heating.* ◇ *She turned the lights down low.* OBJ **volume, heating, sound, television** OPP **turn sth up 2** to fold sth so that one part is covering another: *The corner of the page had been turned down.* ◇ *He turned down the blankets and the children climbed into bed.*

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▶ **ˈdownturn** *n* [C, usually sing.] a fall in economic activity or profits: *a downturn in sales*

ˌturn ˈin (*old-fashioned, informal*) to go to bed: *It's time for me to turn in.*

SYN **retire** (*formal*)

◆ v + adv

ˌturn ˈin sth to achieve a good result, performance, profit, etc: *The champion turned in a brilliant performance.* ◇ *The company turned in nearly $150 000 last month.*

OBJ **performance, profit**

◆ v + adv + n

ˌturn sb ˈin; **ˌturn sth ˈin** to fold sth so that it bends or faces inwards; to be folded in this way: *Her feet turn in as she walks.*

◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌturn sb ˈin **(to sb)**, **ˌturn yourself ˈin** **(to sb)** (*informal*) to give sb or yourself to sb in authority because they/you have done sth wrong: *He turned his own brother in to the police.* ◇ *Things will be better for you if you turn yourself in.*

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌturn sth ˈin 1 to give back sth that you no longer need or should have: *Turn in your pass before you leave.* **2** (*especially AmE*) to give sth such as a piece of written work to the person who asked you to do it: *Have you turned in your assignment yet?* SYN **hand sth in (to sb) 3** to give sth to the police or sb in authority: *Only a few guns have been turned in so far.* SYN **hand sth in (to sb)**; **give sth in**

◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌturn ˈin on yourself to become very concerned with your own problems and stop communicating with others: *He completely turned in on himself after his wife left him.*

◆ v + adv + prep

ˌturn inside ˈout; **ˌturn sth inside ˈout** to make the inside of sth face outwards: *It was so windy my umbrella turned inside out.* ◇ *She pulled off her jumper, turning the sleeves inside out.*

◆ v + adv + adv • v + n/pron + adv + adv

ˌturn sb/sth inside ˈout to make great changes in sb's life: *The shock turned her world inside out.*

◆ v + n/pron + adv + adv

SYN **turn sb/sth upside down**

ˌturn ˈinto sth; **ˌturn sb/sth ˈinto sth** to change, or to make sth change, into sth different: *We need to stop this problem from turning into a crisis.* ◇ *The house had been turned into three apartments.* ◇ *As the fruit ripens, the starch turns into sugar.* ◇ *The director turned her into a star!*

SYN **change into sth, change sb/sth into sth**

◆ v + prep • v + n/pron + prep

ˌturn ˈoff (*informal*) to stop listening to or thinking about sb/sth: *I couldn't understand the lecture so I just turned off.*

SYN **switch off**

◆ v + adv

ˌturn ˈoff; **ˌturn ˈoff sth** to leave one road in order to travel on another: *She turned off onto a side street.* ◇ *The car turned off the main road.*

◆ v + adv • v + prep

▶ **ˈturn-off** *n* a place where one road leads off a larger or more important road: *the turn-off for the airport*

→ *see also* TURN-OFF at TURN SB OFF, TURN SB OFF SB/STH

ˌturn ˈoff; **ˌturn itself ˈoff** if a machine or a piece of equipment **turns off**, or **turns itself off**, it stops operating: *The heating turns off automatically at 9.30.* ◇ *The computer will turn itself off if you leave it.*

SYN **switch off, switch itself off**

OPP **turn on, turn itself on**

◆ v + adv • v + pron + adv

ˌturn sb ˈoff; **ˌturn sb ˈoff sb/sth 1** (*informal*) to make sb lose interest or become bored: *People had been turned off by both candidates in the election.* ◇ *His political views turned her off him.* **2** (*informal*) to stop sb feeling attracted to sb/sth; to make sb feel disgusted: *If I tell her I'm only 17 it might turn her off.* ◇ *The sight of all that raw meat turned me off.* ◇ *The smell turned me off my food.*

OPP **turn sb on; turn sb on to sb/sth**

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

▶ **ˈturn-off** *n* [C, usually sing.] (*informal*) something or somebody that people do not find interesting or attractive: *Unlike many other women she found his beard a real turn-off.*

→ *see also* TURN-OFF at TURN OFF, TURN OFF STH

ˌturn sth ˈoff to stop the flow of electricity, gas, water, etc. by moving a switch or a button: *to turn the radio/television off* ◇ *I forgot to turn the tap off.* ◇ *Turn all the lights off when you leave.* ◇ *You'll need to turn off the water to mend the pipe.*

OBJ **light, television, tap, water, gas, etc.**

SYN **switch sth off** OPP **turn sth on**

→ *see also* TURN STH OUT

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈturn on sb to attack sb suddenly and unexpectedly: *The dog turned on him and bit his finger.* ◇ *She suddenly turned on me and started shouting.*

◆ v + prep

ˈturn on sth (*also* **ˈturn upon sth** *more formal*) **1** (*BrE*) to depend on sth in order to have a successful outcome: *Her future career turns on this interview.* ◇ *The case turns on whether the police can prove that the driver knew he had hit something.* ◇ *Much turns on the outcome of the peace talks.* SYN **hinge on sth 2** if a conversation, an argument, etc. **turns on** sth, it has that as its main subject: *Their talk turned on the likelihood of his return* (= if he was likely to return or not).

◆ v + prep

ˌturn ˈon; **ˌturn itself ˈon** if a machine or a piece of equipment **turns on**, or **turns itself on**, it starts operating: *I've set the oven to turn on at 5 p.m.* ◇ *I don't know why the radio suddenly turned itself on.*

SYN **switch on, switch itself on**

OPP **turn off, turn itself off**

◆ v + adv • v + pron + adv

ˌturn sb ˈon (*informal*) **1** to make sb enthusiastic about sth: *What really turns him on is motorbikes.* ◇ *If live theatre turns you on, there is plenty to choose from.* **2** to make sb feel sexually excited: *That's not the kind of thing that turns me on.* ◇ *She says she gets turned on by men in uniform!*

OPP **turn sb off**

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

▶ **ˈturn-on** *n* [C, usually sing.] (*informal*) a person, a thing, a situation, etc. that sb finds sexually exciting: *Being the centre of attention for four or five guys was a real turn-on.*

ˌturn sth ˈon to start the flow of electricity, gas, water, etc. by moving a switch or a button: *Did you turn the central heating on?* ◇ *Turn the tap on slowly.* ◇ *I checked the fuses and turned the electricity back on.* ◇ *I didn't know you were in the room until I turned the light on.* ◇ *Leo turns the television on as soon as he comes home from school.*

OBJ **light, tap, television, water, gas, etc.**

SYN **switch sth on** OPP **turn sth off**

◆ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

IDM **turn on the ˈcharm** to be very pleasant and polite to sb in order to gain sth for yourself: *She's good at turning on the charm to get what she wants.*

ˈturn sth on sb/sth (*also* **ˈturn sth upon sb/sth** *more formal*) to point sth such as gun, a camera, a light, etc. at sb/sth: *Officers turned hoses on the demonstrators.*

SYN **train sth on sb/sth**

◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌturn sb ˈon to sb/sth (*informal*) to make sb interested in sb/sth or use sth for the first time: *What was it that first turned you on to jazz?*

OPP **turn sb off sb/sth**

◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌturn ˈout 1 to be present at an event; to attend sth or to go somewhere: *The whole village turned out to welcome us.* ◇ *Only half the team turned out for the practice.* ◇ *I'm not going to turn out to meet you in this weather.* **2** (*used with an adverb, an adjective or in questions with* ***how***) to take place or happen in the way mentioned; to develop or end in a particular way: *The article she wrote had turned out well.* ◇ *The day turned out fine again.* ◇ *You never know how things will turn out.* ◇ *I*

couldn't have gone anyway, as it turned out. ◇ *The children have turned out well in spite of their upbringing.* **3** to be discovered to be; to prove to be: ***It turned out that** she was a friend of my sister.* ◇ *My decision turned out to have been a mistake.* ◇ *Ruth's illness turned out not to be serious after all.*
◈ v + adv

▶ **ˈturnout** *n* [C, usually sing.] [U] **1** the number of people who come to take part in or watch an activity: *There was a good turnout for the concert.* **2** the number of people who vote in a particular election: *a high/low/poor turnout*

ˌturn ˈout; **ˌturn sth ˈout** to point, or to make sth point, outwards: *His feet turn out as he walks.* ◇ *She turns her toes out when she walks.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌturn sb ˈout (from sth), **ˌturn sb ˈout of sth** to force sb to leave or go out of a place: *The landlord turned them out of their house just before the New Year.* ◇ *You can't turn us out in this storm!*
SYN **chuck sb out, chuck sb out of sth; kick sb out, kick sb out of sth; turf sb out, turf sb out of sth** (*BrE, informal*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌturn sth/sb ˈout to produce sth/sb: *The factory turns out 900 cars a week.* ◇ *This school has turned out several well-known engineers.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv (*less frequent*)

ˌturn sth ˈout 1 to switch off sth such as a light or a source of heat: *Remember to turn out the lights.* OBJ only **light, gas** SYN **switch sth off** OPP **turn sth on** → *see also* TURN STH OFF **2** (*BrE*) to clean a room, a cupboard, etc. thoroughly by removing the contents and organizing them again: *She turned the kitchen cupboards out at the beginning of the year.* ◇ *I'm going to turn out my bedroom during the holidays.* SYN **clear sth out** **3** to remove the contents of sth; to empty sth completely: *I turned out all the drawers looking for my keys.* ◇ *Turn out your pockets.* ◇ *She turned the rice out of the packet into a bowl.* SYN **empty sth**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

be ˌturned ˈout [+ adv/prep] to dress sb/yourself with special care or effort: *The children were always **beautifully turned out**.* ◇ *She was fashionably **turned out in** cream trousers and a red sweater.*
NOTE This phrasal verb is always used in the passive.
◈ be + v + adv

ˌturn ˈover; **ˌturn sb/sth ˈover** to change your position, or the position of sb/sth, so that the other side is facing outwards or upwards: *He turned over onto his back.* ◇ *The van skidded and turned over.* ◇ *Jack was driving too fast and turned the car over on the bend.* ◇ *The nurse turned Adam over onto his back.* ◇ *Turn the pancake over when one side is cooked.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The smell made my stomach turn over.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n (*less frequent*)

▶ **ˈturnover** *n* a small piece of pastry filled with fruit or jam, folded over and baked
→ *see also* TURNOVER at TURN OVER, TURN STH OVER; TURNOVER at TURN STH OVER

ˌturn ˈover; **ˌturn sth ˈover 1** (of an engine) to run steadily at a low speed; to start: *I turned the key and the engine turned over quietly.* ◇ *The engine was turning over too fast.* SYN **tick over** **2 (to sth)** (*BrE*) to change to a different channel when watching television: *Can I turn over to Channel Four?* ◇ *This is boring. Let's turn it over.* SYN **change over (to sth); switch over (to sth), switch sth over (to sth)** **3** to move a page or a piece of paper so that you can see the other side: *Turn over (the page) for more details.* NOTE **Turn** or **turn sth** is used more frequently in this meaning: *I turned the page quickly.* ◇ *Turn to page 23.* **4** to sell goods and replace them; to be sold and replaced: *Large supermarkets turn over their stock very rapidly.* ◇ *This brand turns over twice as fast as the others.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
IDM **turn over a new ˈleaf** to change your way of life to become a better, more responsible person
▶ **ˈturnover** *n* [sing.] **1** the rate at which employees leave a company and are replaced by others: *a high turnover of staff* **2** the rate at which goods are sold in a shop/store and are replaced by others: *a fast turnover of stock*
→ *see also* TURNOVER at TURN OVER, TURN SB/STH OVER; TURNOVER at TURN STH OVER

ˌturn sb/sth ˈover (to sb/sth) to deliver sb/sth to the control and care of sb in authority, especially the police: *He was turned over to the Belgian police at the border.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌturn sth ˈover 1 (to sb) to give the responsibility for sth important to sb else: *He had to turn over some of his duties to his assistant.* ◇ *She's planning to turn the business over to her daughter.* SYN **hand over to sb, hand sth over to sb** **2** if a business **turns over** a particular amount of money, it deals with that amount in a particular period of time: *The company turned over a million pounds in its first year.* **3** to think about sth carefully: *Diana turned over what James had said in her mind.* ◇ *He lay in the dark, turning over the day's extraordinary events.* SYN **chew sth over**; **mull sth over** **4** (*BrE, slang*) to enter a place illegally and steal valuable things from it: *The burglars had turned the house over.* NOTE **Turn sth over** is often used in the passive in this meaning. **5** (*BrE*) to search a place very thoroughly, making it very untidy: *His room had been turned over by the police.* NOTE **Turn sth over** is often used in the passive in this meaning.
◈ **1,3,4,5** v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
2 v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv
▶ **ˈturnover** *n* [C, usually sing.] [U] the total amount of goods and services sold by a company during a particular period of time: *an annual turnover of twenty million*
→ *see also* TURNOVER at TURN OVER, TURN SB/STH OVER; TURNOVER at TURN OVER, TURN STH OVER

ˌturn ˈover to sth; **ˌturn sth ˈover to sth** if an area, a factory, etc. **turns over** or sb **turns it over** to sth, it starts to be used for sth different: *The whole area has turned over to rice production.* ◇ *The factory was turned over to the production of aircraft parts.*
◈ v + adv + prep ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌturn ˈround (*BrE*) = TURN AROUND

ˌturn ˈround; **ˌturn sb/sth ˈround** (*BrE*) = TURN AROUND, TURN SB/STH AROUND

ˌturn ˈround; **ˌturn sth ˈround** (*BrE*) = TURN AROUND, TURN STH AROUND

ˌturn sth ˈround (*BrE*) = TURN STH AROUND

ˈturn to sb 1 to move your head or body so as to face sb: *He turned to me and smiled.* **2 (for sth)** to approach sb for help, sympathy or advice: *Sue turns to her friends for support rather than her family.* ◇ *You're the only person I can turn to for advice.* ◇ *She has nobody she can turn to.*
◈ v + prep

ˈturn to sth to start to become involved in sth or start to do sth, especially sth illegal or harmful, often because you are in a difficult situation: *He was forced to turn to crime to pay off his debts.* ◇ *People often cope with stress by turning to food for comfort.*
◈ v + prep

ˈturn to sth; **ˈturn sth to sth** to turn your attention, your thoughts, etc. to a new subject: *Our conversation soon turned to the kind of music that we liked.* ◇ *Let's turn our attention to next week's conference.*
OBJ **attention**
◈ v + prep ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌturn ˈup 1 (of a person) to arrive: *He finally turned up at three o'clock.* ◇ *The taxi didn't turn up so we walked.* SYN **show up** (*informal*) **2** to be found, especially by chance, after being lost: *The missing letter turned up in the waste basket.* **3** (of an opportunity) to happen, especially unexpectedly: *I haven't got a job at the moment, but I'm sure that something will turn up.* ◇ *References to Irina turn up in many of his poems.*
◈ v + adv
IDM **turn up/come up ˈtrumps** to do more than people expect and so make a situation very successful: *The team's new player turned up trumps and scored three goals.* ◇ *That was a wonderful meal! You've turned up trumps again.*
▶ **ˈturn-up** *n* [sing.] (*BrE, informal, humorous*) something surprising or unexpected that happens: *Nick's handed his work in on time? That's a **turn-up for the books**!*
→ *see also* TURN-UP at TURN STH UP
▶ **ˈupturn** *n* an improvement or an increase in sth: *an upturn in the economy*

ˌturn ˈup; **ˌturn sth ˈup** to point, or to make sth point, upwards: *Her nose turns up at the end.* ◇ *She turned her face up towards him.*
OPP **turn down; turn sth down**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▶ **ˈturned-up** *adj* [only before noun] pointing upwards: *a turned-up nose*
▶ **ˈupturned** *adj* [only before noun] pointing or facing upwards: *an upturned nose* ◇ *upturned faces*
→ *see also* UPTURNED at TURN STH UPSIDE DOWN

ˌturn sth ˈup 1 to adjust the controls of a piece of electrical equipment in order to increase the heat, noise, etc: *Turn the TV up, I can't hear what she's saying.* ◇ *Let's turn the heating up, I'm freezing.* ◇ *The music was turned up loud.* OBJ **heating, music, radio/television** OPP **turn sth down** **2** to make a piece of clothing, or part of a piece of clothing, shorter by folding it back and sewing it: *The sleeves were too long and had to be turned up.* ◇ *Will you turn the hem up for me?* OBJ **hem** OPP **let sth down** **3** to discover sth, such as information or sth hidden: *Their enquiries turned up a number of interesting facts.* ◇ *Our efforts to trace him turned up nothing.*
◈ **1,2** v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
3 v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
▶ **ˈturn-up** *n* (*BrE*) the bottom of the leg of a pair of trousers/pants that has been folded over on the outside: *Turn-ups seem to be coming back into fashion.*
→ *see also* TURN-UP at TURN UP

ˈturn upon sth (*formal*) = TURN ON STH

ˈturn sth upon sb/sth = TURN STH ON SB/STH

ˌturn upside ˈdown; **ˌturn sth upside ˈdown** to move sth so that the bottom is facing upwards: *The car hit a wall, turned upside down, and ended up in a field.* ◇ *I turned the box upside down and everything fell out.*
◈ v + adv + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv + adv

ˌturn sth upside ˈdown 1 to make a place very untidy while you are searching for sth: *The burglars turned the flat upside down.* **2** to make large changes and confusion in sb's life: *The divorce **turned** his whole **world upside down**.*
SYN **turn sb/sth inside out**
◈ v + n/pron + adv + adv

▸ **ˈupturned** *adj* [only before noun] turned upside down: *upturned chairs* ◇ *We sat on an upturned box.*
➔ *see also* UPTURNED at TURN UP, TURN STH UP

twist /twɪst/

ˌtwist sth ˈoff; **ˌtwist sth ˈoff sth** to remove sth or break sth off by turning and pulling it with your hand: *He twisted off the lid and looked inside.* ◇ *She twisted the cap off the bottle and took a mouthful of water.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + prep

type /taɪp/

ˌtype sth ˈin; **ˌtype sth ˈinto sth** to put data into a document using a computer or a typewriter: *Type in the file name then press return.* ◇ *Type the relevant details into the boxes provided.*
SYN **key sth in, key sth into sth**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌtype sth ˈout/ˈup to produce a copy of sth on a computer (or **word processor**) or a typewriter: *I'm typing up the report this morning.* ◇ *It took me ages to type my notes out.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

U u

urge /ɜːdʒ; *AmE* ɜːrdʒ/

ˌurge sb/sth ˈon (to sth/to do sth) to encourage sb; to support sb so that they can do sth better: *The supporters were urging the team on.* ◇ *Urged on by the Prime Minister the police tried to end the strike.* ◇ *The driver urged the horses on.*
SYN **encourage sb/sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

use /juːz/ (**used, used** /juːzd/)

ˌuse sth ˈup to use all of sth until no more is left: *I've used up all the milk.* ◇ *These eggs need to be used up quickly.* ◇ *This program will use up a lot of memory on the hard disk.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

usher /ˈʌʃə(r)/

ˌusher sth ˈin (*formal*) to mark or be the start of sth new: *The elections ushered in a new period of change in the country.* ◇ *Firework displays ushered in the New Year.*
OBJ **period, era** SYN **herald sth** (*formal*)
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv

Vv

veer /vɪə(r); *AmE* vɪr/

ˌveer ˈoff; **ˌveer ˈoff sth** (*also* **ˌveer aˈway (from sth)**) **1** to suddenly change direction: *The car suddenly veered off to the left.* ◇ *The truck veered off the road and crashed into a tree.* ◇ *The plane was going straight towards the mountain, but veered away at the last minute.* **2** (of a conversation or a way of behaving or thinking) to change in the way it develops: *The conversation veered off into more personal matters.* ◇ *Throughout his career, he's veered away from jazz into other areas.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

veg /vedʒ/ (**vegges, vegging, vegged, vegged**)
NOTE Although these forms are spelt with *-gg-*, they are all pronounced /vedʒ-/.

ˌveg ˈout (*spoken, informal*) to relax and do very little: *All she does is veg out in front of the telly.*
SYN **laze about/around**; **lounge about/around**
◈ v + adv

venture /ˈventʃə(r)/

ˈventure into/on sth (*also* **ˈventure upon sth** *more formal*) to dare to do sth that could be dangerous or involve risk: *As soon as he arrived in the country, he ventured on a trip up the Amazon.* ◇ *This is the first time the company has ventured into movie production.*
◈ v + prep

verge /vɜːdʒ; *AmE* vɜːrdʒ/

ˈverge on sth (*also* **ˈverge upon sth** *more formal*) to be very close or similar to an extreme state or condition: *I was treated with suspicion that verged on hostility.* ◇ *Her hair was dark brown, verging on black.*
SYN **border on sth**
◈ v + prep

vest /vest/

ˈvest sth in sb/sth; **ˈvest sb with sth** (*formal*) **1** to officially or legally give sb the power or authority to do sth: *It is unwise to vest absolute power in a single institution.* ◇ *The court is vested with certain rights.* **2** to make sb the legal owner of land or property NOTE **Vest sth in sb/sth** and **vest sb with sth** are often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + prep

vie /vaɪ/ (**vies, vying** /ˈvaɪɪŋ/ **vied, vied**)

ˈvie with sb/sth (for sth/to do sth), **ˈvie for sth** (*formal*) (*often used in the progressive tenses*) to compete strongly with sb/sth: *There'll be a lot of people vying for those posts.* ◇ *The children were vying for the teacher's attention.* ◇ *The boys were vying with each other to impress her.* ◇ *There were several restaurants vying with each other for customers.*
SYN **compete (with sb/sth) (for sth)**
NOTE You can also use **vie to do sth**: *The boys were vying to impress her.*
◈ v + prep

visit /ˈvɪzɪt/

ˈvisit with sb (*AmE, informal*) to spend time with sb talking in an informal and casual way: *I visited with my neighbour while the kids were playing.*
◈ v + prep

be ˈvisited on sb/sth (*also* **be ˈvisited upon sb/sth**) (*old-fashioned, formal*) to be punished with sth: *He listed the horrors visited upon the region during the conflict.* ◇ *Each new indignity visited on her was worse than the previous one.*
◈ be + v + prep

vote /vəʊt; *AmE* voʊt/

ˌvote sb/sth ˈdown to reject or defeat a candidate or a proposal by voting: *The Senate has voted down efforts to raise taxes.* ◇ *If Mr Smith demands too much, the unions will vote him down.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌvote sb ˈin; **ˌvote sb ˈinto/ˈonto sth** to choose sb for a particular position by voting: *I was voted in as treasurer.* ◇ *When was this government voted into office?* ◇ *Who voted her onto the Board of Governors?*
SYN **elect sb (to sth)** (*more formal*)
NOTE **Vote sb in** and **vote sb into/onto sth** are often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*) ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌvote sb ˈoff sth = VOTE SB OUT, VOTE SB OUT OF/OFF STH

ˈvote on sth to make a decision about sth by voting: *The committee is voting on the proposal tonight.* ◇ *Workers have begun voting on whether to hold a series of one-day strikes.*
OBJ **proposal, resolution, issue**
NOTE **Vote on sth** can be used in the passive: *The proposal was voted on and agreed.*
◈ v + prep

ˌvote sb ˈonto sth = VOTE SB IN, VOTE SB INTO/ONTO STH

ˌvote sb ˈout; **ˌvote sb ˈout of/ˈoff sth** to decide as a group to remove sb from a particular position by voting: *The government may be voted out of office at the next election.* ◇ *What will he do if he gets voted out?* ◇ *Parsons was voted off the Board.*
OBJ **government, party**
NOTE **Vote sb out** and **vote sb out of/off sth** are often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep ◆ v + n/pron + prep

ˌvote sth ˈthrough to approve sth or bring a proposal, etc. into force by voting for it: *Congress voted the bill through without a debate.*
OBJ **bill, proposal**
NOTE **Vote sth through** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

vouch /vaʊtʃ/

ˈvouch for sb/sth 1 to say that you know sb, that you believe they have a good character and that you are prepared to be responsible for their actions: *They asked whether I was prepared to vouch for him.* ◇ *You should give the names of two people who can vouch for your honesty and reliability.* ◇ *I can vouch for the fact that he is a good worker.* SYN **answer for sth 2** to say that you know sth is true because you have seen it yourself: *I was in bed with flu. My wife can vouch for that time.* ◇ *I can't vouch for this hotel* (= I have no personal experience of it) *but it looked wonderful from the brochure.*
NOTE **Vouch for sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *I had to be vouched for by a responsible person.*
◈ v + prep

Ww

wade /weɪd/

ˌwade ˈin; **ˌwade ˈinto sth** (*informal*) to get involved in a discussion, an argument, a difficult situation, etc. in a forceful and not very sensitive way: *She waded in with an attack on company policy.* ◇ *The Senator waded into a new argument over defence spending.*
◈ v + adv ♦ v + prep

ˌwade ˈinto sb (*informal*) to attack sb physically or with words: *Marty was terrific – he just waded into the skinheads without a thought.* ◇ *She waded straight into her critics with her opening remarks.*
SYN **launch into sb**; **attack sb** (*more formal*)
◈ v + prep

ˌwade ˈthrough sth to spend a lot of time and effort reading sth or dealing with sth: *I had to wade through pages and pages of statistics.*
OBJ **pages** SYN **plough through sth**
◈ v + prep

waffle /ˈwɒfl; *AmE* ˈwɑːfl/

ˌwaffle ˈon (about sth) (*informal, especially BrE*) to talk or write a lot about sth without giving any useful information: *He waffled on for ages about his garden.*
SYN **go on (about sth)**; **rattle on (about sth)**
◈ v + adv

wait /weɪt/

ˌwait aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌwait aˈbout**) **(for sb/sth)** to stay in a place without doing anything, waiting for sth to happen or for sb to arrive: *I wouldn't bother waiting around for him.* ◇ *She didn't wait about to hear his reply.*
SYN **hang around**
◈ v + adv

ˌwait beˈhind (*especially BrE*) to stay after other people have gone, especially in order to speak to sb privately: *He asked her to wait behind after the meeting.*
◈ v + adv

ˌwait ˈin (for sb/sth) (*BrE*) to stay at home because you are expecting sb to arrive or telephone: *I've got to wait in for the TV repair man.* ◇ *She waited in all day in case he called.*
◈ v + adv

ˈwait on sb 1 (*also* **ˈwait on sth** *especially AmE*) to bring food and drink to people at a table, usually in a restaurant: *My daughter will wait on us this evening!* ◇ *When I started, I didn't know anything about **waiting on tables**.* ◇ *We were waited on by a very polite young man.* **2** (*also* **ˈwait upon sb** *more formal*) to bring sb everything they want or need: *She spoiled the children, always **waiting on them hand and foot*** (= doing everything for them, like a servant). **3** (*AmE*) to serve customers in a shop/store: *Is anybody waiting on you?* ◇ *There is no one in the furniture department to wait on me.*
◈ v + prep

ˈwait on sb/sth (*informal, especially AmE*) to wait until sb arrives or until sth is available: *Judd was late and she was sick of waiting on him.* ◇ *I'm still waiting on the result of the blood test.* ◇ *She was waiting on my decision.*
NOTE In British English, **wait (for sb/sth)** is usually used.
◈ v + prep

ˈwait on sth (*especially AmE*) = WAIT ON SB 1

ˌwait sth ˈout to stay in a place until sth difficult or unpleasant has passed or finished: *We sheltered in a doorway to wait out the storm.* ◇ *It was difficult to wait out the hours until I could phone her to hear the news.* ◇ *Their strategy has been to wait the recession out.*
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + adv

ˌwait ˈup 1 (for sb) to not go to bed until sb comes home or arrives: *Don't wait up (for me). I may be late.* SYN **stay up 2** (*informal, especially AmE*) used to tell sb to stop so that you can reach them and talk to them or go with them: *Wait up! I'll be right there.* ◇ *Hey guys, wait up.* SYN **hang on**
◈ v + adv

ˈwait upon sb = WAIT ON SB 2

wake /weɪk/ (**woke** /wəʊk/**woken** /ˈwəʊkən/ or **waked**, **waked**)

ˌwake ˈup; **ˌwake sb ˈup**; **ˌwake yourself ˈup** **1** to stop sleeping; to make sb stop sleeping: *How many times does the baby wake up in the night?* ◇ *I usually wake up early in the summer.* ◇ *You look as if you've only just woken up!* ◇ *Can you wake me up at 8?* ◇ *He was woken up by the sound of breaking glass.* NOTE **Wake** and **wake sb** can also be used with this meaning, but usually only in more formal language. **Wake up** and **wake sb/yourself up** are much more common than *awake/awake sb*, *awaken/awaken sb* and *waken/waken sb*, which are formal and usually only used in writing. **2** to become, or to make sb, more lively and interested: *You need to wake up and start paying attention.* ◇ *Wake up! I don't want to have to repeat all this.* ◇ *The class needs waking up.*
◈ v + adv ♦ v + n/pron + adv ♦ v + adv + n
▶ **ˈwake-up** *adj* [only before noun] that is intended to wake you up: *What time would you like your wake-up call* (= for example, in a hotel)?

ˌwake ˈup to sth to become aware of sth; to realize sth: *People are finally **waking up to the fact that** the natural world must be conserved.* ◇ *The hospitals have woken up to the value of experienced nurses.* ◇ *He hasn't yet woken up to the seriousness of the situation.*
◈ v + adv + prep

walk /wɔːk/

ˌwalk aˈway (from sb/sth) 1 to leave a difficult or unpleasant situation in order to avoid it, instead of staying to deal with it: *to walk away from a situation/deal* ◇ *You can't just walk away from the problem.* ◇ *He just walked away from everything – his job, his home and his family.* **2** if you **walk away** from an accident, etc. you are not seriously injured: *Both drivers walked away with minor cuts and bruises.* ◇ *He **walked away unhurt**.* NOTE **Walk away** is usually used with an adjective or a phrase beginning with a preposition in this meaning.
◈ v + adv

ˌwalk aˈway/ˈoff with sth 1 to win sth very easily: *The team walked away with the championship.* **2** to steal sth; to take sth without the owner's permission: *The thief walked away with jewellery worth £24 000.*
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌwalk ˈin on sb/sth to go into a room and see what sb is doing when they did not expect you and did not want anyone to see them: *Sorry, I didn't mean to walk in on you.* ◇ *I'd obviously walked in on a very serious conversation.*
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌwalk ˈinto sb/sth to crash into sb/sth while you are walking: *Look where you're going! You walked straight into me.* ◇ *He keeps bumping into things and walking into walls.*
◈ v + prep

ˌwalk ˈinto sth (*informal*) **1** to become caught in sth that you are not expecting, especially because you are not careful: *He realized he'd walked into a trap.* **2** to succeed in getting a job without having to make an effort: *She walked straight into a job in publishing.*
◈ v + prep

ˌwalk ˈoff; **ˌwalk ˈoff sth** to leave a place or a person suddenly because you are angry or upset: *She turned and walked off without a word.* ◇ *The rest of the team walked off the field in protest.*
◈ v + adv ♦ v + prep

ˌwalk sth ˈoff to go for a walk in order to get rid of the feeling that you have eaten too much or an emotion such as anger: *I need to walk off that lunch.* ◇ *It'll do her good to walk some of her temper off.*
NOTE **Walk sth off** is not used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + adv

ˌwalk ˈoff with sth (*informal*) **1** = WALK AWAY/OFF WITH STH 1 *They've walked off with most of the film awards.* **2** (*humorous*) = WALK AWAY/OFF WITH STH 2 *Who's walked off with my pen?* ◇ *That dog's just walked off with our ball!*

ˌwalk ˈout 1 (*also* **ˌwalk ˈout of sth**) to leave a meeting, a performance, etc. suddenly before the end, because you do not like it or are angry: *Several students walked out of the debate before the vote.* ◇ *Some of the audience walked out in disgust.* **2** (of workers) to stop working and go on strike: *The cameramen have walked out over working conditions.* **3 (on sb/sth)** (*informal*) to leave sb you have a close relationship with and a responsibility for: *He walked out on his wife/marriage after 35 years.*
◈ v + adv **1** also v + adv + prep
▶ **ˈwalkout** *n* **1** a sudden strike by workers: *The staff **staged a one-day walkout**.* **2** a protest in which you leave a meeting, a performance, etc. to show your anger or disapproval

ˌwalk ˈover sb (*informal*) **1** to treat sb badly and not consider their wishes or feelings: *We're not prepared to let the management **walk all over** us.* **2** to defeat sb easily in a competition: *They'll **walk all over** you on Saturday.*
NOTE **Walk over sb** can be used in the passive: *Don't let yourselves be walked over.*
◈ v + prep
▶ **ˈwalkover** *n* (*informal*) an easy victory in a game or competition; a situation in which you are considered to have won a game although you did not in fact play: *The race was no walkover* (= it was not easy to win). ◇ *The other team didn't turn up so we had a walkover into the final.*

ˌwalk ˈthrough sth (*especially AmE*) **1** to practise or perform a play in a simple way, just using basic moves and positions **2** to practise a television programme without the cameras
◈ v + prep
▶ **ˈwalk-through** *n* [usually sing.] **1** a practice of a play without costumes or the objects you need, to practise basic moves and positions **2** a practice of a television programme without the cameras

ˌwalk sb ˈthrough sth (*AmE*) to show or tell sb how to do sth by carefully explaining or showing each part separately: *She walked me through the complicated document.* ◇ *He'll walk you through the procedure.*
SYN **talk sb through sth**
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌwalk ˈup (to sb/sth) to approach sb/sth in a confident way: *She walked straight up to the desk and asked to see the manager.*
◈ v + adv

wall /wɔːl/

ˌwall sth ˈin to put a wall or a barrier around sth: *Apartment blocks walled in the playground completely.*
◈ v + adv + n ♦ v + n/pron + adv

ˌwall sth ˈoff to build a wall or a barrier around an area to separate it from another area: *Part of the yard had been walled off.*
NOTE **Wall sth off** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌwall sb ˈup to keep sb as a prisoner in a place surrounded by walls: *a story of a woman who was walled up in a small room and left to die*
NOTE **Wall sb up** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌwall sth ˈup to block a space with bricks or a wall so that it can no longer be used: *The entrance had been walled up in the 17th century.*
NOTE **Wall sth up** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

wallow /ˈwɒləʊ; *AmE* ˈwɑːloʊ/

ˈwallow in sth (*often disapproving*) to enjoy sth that gives you pleasure, especially when it is sth unpleasant and you do it in a way that makes other people think you enjoy being unhappy or want sympathy from them: *Stop wallowing in self-pity.* ◇ *She wallows in nostalgia for the past.*
OBJ **self-pity, nostalgia**
◈ v + prep

waltz /wɔːls; *AmE* wɔːlts/

ˌwaltz ˈoff (with sth) (*informal*) to leave a person or place in an annoying way, often taking sth without the owner's permission: *The tenants waltzed off with half our possessions.* ◇ *He just waltzed off and left me!*
SYN **walk away/off (with sth)**
◈ v + adv

wander /ˈwɒndə(r); *AmE* ˈwɑːn-/

ˌwander ˈoff/aˈway; ˌwander ˈfrom/ˈoff sth to leave the place where you ought to be, or the person or group of people you are with, without thinking about it: *Don't wander off and get lost.* ◇ *The child had wandered away from her mother.* ◇ *We had wandered off the path.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + prep

want /wɒnt; *AmE* wɑːnt, wɔːnt/

ˈwant for sth (*formal*) (*usually used with a negative word*) to suffer because you do not have sth: *I work hard so that my children want for nothing.*
OBJ **little, nothing**
◈ v + prep

ˌwant ˈin (on sth) 1 (*also* **ˌwant ˈinto sth**) (*informal, especially AmE*) to want to be involved in sth, especially a business deal: *Do you want in (on this project)?* ◇ *Does Jack want into the club?* **2** (*informal, especially AmE*) to want to come inside a place: *The cat wants in. Can you open the door?*
OPP **want out, want out of sth**
◈ v + adv **1** also v + prep

ˌwant ˈout; ˌwant ˈout of sth 1 (*informal*) to no longer want to be involved in sth, especially a business deal: *I want out before we get into difficulties.* ◇ *I want out of this mess.* OPP **want in (on sth), want into sth 2** (*informal, especially AmE*) to want to go out of a place: *I want out of here.* OPP **want in**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + adv + prep

ward /wɔːd; *AmE* wɔːrd/

ˌward sb/sth ˈoff to prevent sb/sth dangerous or unpleasant from affecting or harming you: *She put up a hand to ward off the blows.* ◇ *I'm taking vitamin C to ward off a cold.* ◇ *He keeps dogs to ward off unwanted visitors.*
OBJ **evil, blows, criticism, danger**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

warm /wɔːm; *AmE* wɔːrm/

ˈwarm to sb to start to like a person: *I warmed to the teacher immediately.*
◈ v + prep

ˈwarm to sth to become more interested in or enthusiastic about sth: *The speaker was warming to his theme now.*
OBJ **theme, task, idea**
◈ v + prep

ˌwarm ˈup 1 (of the weather, the earth, etc.) to become warmer: *Research shows that the sea is warming up.* ◇ *When spring comes the earth begins to warm up.* **2** to do gentle exercise or practice to prepare for an athletic activity or a performance: *I'm always careful to warm up before I go jogging.* ◇ *Peter was warming up with a few scales.* SYN **limber up (for sth) 3** (of a machine, an engine, etc.) to run for a short time in order to reach the temperature at which it will operate well: *This computer takes a long time to warm up.*
◈ v + adv
▶ **ˈwarm-up** *n* [usually sing.] a series of gentle exercises or a short practice to prepare for an athletic activity or a performance: *What do you do as a warm-up?* ◇ *warm-up exercises*

ˌwarm ˈup; ˌwarm sb/sth ˈup 1 to become, or to make sb or a part of sb's body, feel warmer: *Come and warm up by the fire.* ◇ *They stamped their feet to warm them up.* **2** to become, or to make sb/sth, more lively or enthusiastic: *By midnight the party was only just warming up.* ◇ *His role is to warm up the audience before the main event.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌwarm sth ˈup 1 to make sth become warmer: *The fire had begun to warm the room up.* **2** to heat cooked food again before you eat it: *The soup just needs warming up.*
SYN **heat sth up**
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

warn /wɔːn; *AmE* wɔːrn/

ˌwarn sb/sth aˈway to tell a person, a ship, an aircraft, etc. not to come near a place because it is dangerous: *The male birds sing to warn other males away.* ◇ *An electric fence warned away anyone who came too close.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌwarn sb ˈoff; ˌwarn sb ˈoff sb/sth; ˌwarn sb ˈoff doing sth 1 to tell sb to leave or not to come near a place, often in a threatening way: *The farmer warned us off his land when we tried to camp there.* **2** to advise sb not to do sth or to stop doing sth: *He was warned off smoking after his first heart attack.* ◇ *She warned him off a career in acting.* ◇ *We were warned off renting the apartment.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + prep

wash /wɒʃ; *AmE* wɑːʃ, wɔːʃ/

ˌwash sb/sth aˈway if water, a wave, etc. **washes sb/sth away**, it removes or carries them/it away to another place: *A freak wave washed the two children away.* ◇ *The bridge was washed away by the floods.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌwash sth aˈway to use water to remove a mark, dirt, etc. from sth: *She tried to wash away some of the dirt and blood from the boy's face.* ◇ (*figurative*) *A hot bath soon washed my tiredness away.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌwash sth ˈdown 1 (with sth) to clean sth by using a large quantity of water: *I washed the car down with a hose.* **2 (with sth)** to drink sth after, or at the same time as, eating food: *We washed our lunch down with iced tea.* ◇ *He had a huge plate of pasta washed down with several bottles of beer.* **3** (of a river, a flood, etc.) to carry sth downwards away from its original position: *Tons of earth had been washed down by the storm.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌwash ˈoff; ˌwash sth ˈoff; ˌwash sth ˈoff sth to be removed from the surface of sth or from a fabric by washing; to remove sth in this way: *However hard you rub, an ink stain won't wash off.* ◇ *Wash off the dirt with soap and water.* ◇ *Wash the mud off your boots before you go in.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆
v + n/pron + prep

ˌwash ˈout; ˌwash sth ˈout; ˌwash sth ˈout of sth to be removed from a fabric, hair, etc. by washing; to remove sth in this way: *The hair colour isn't permanent. It will wash out in a few weeks.* ◇ *Take care to wash all the shampoo out of your hair.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆
v + n/pron + prep
▶ **ˌwashed ˈout** *adj* (of fabric, clothes or colours) no longer brightly coloured, often as a result of frequent washing: *Washed-out jeans were very fashionable at that time.*
→ *see also* WASHED OUT at WASH SB OUT; WASHED OUT at WASH STH OUT

ˌwash sb ˈout to make sb very tired: *That long walk has washed me out.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▶ **ˌwashed ˈout** *adj* (of a person) tired and pale: *You look washed out — go and rest.*
→ *see also* WASHED OUT at WASH OUT, WASH STH OUT, WASH STH OUT OF STH; WASHED OUT at WASH STH OUT

ˌwash sb/sth ˈout (to …), ˌwash sb/sth ˈout of sth (of water, a wave, etc.) to carry sb/sth away from their/its original position: *If you'd fallen in you would have been* ***washed out to sea.***
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌwash sth ˈout 1 (with sth) to wash the inside of a container in order to remove dirt, etc: *He carefully washed the bottles out with disinfectant.* **2** if rain **washes out** a sports game, an event, etc. it makes it end early or prevents it from starting: *The game was washed out.* **3** (*AmE, formal*) to end sth: *Baltimore washed out the Indians' six-game win streak with an 8-3 win.*
◈ **1,3** v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
2 v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv
▶ **ˌwashed ˈout** *adj* [only before noun] flooded; damaged by floods: *Washed-out towns are appealing for help.*
→ *see also* WASHED OUT at WASH SB OUT; WASHED OUT at WASH OUT, WASH STH OUT, WASH STH OUT OF STH
▶ **ˈwashout** *n* (*informal*) **1** an event that stops early or does not happen, because of rain: *The game was a washout.* **2** an event that is a complete failure: *The party was a total washout.*

ˌwash ˈover sb 1 (*also* **ˌwash ˈthrough sb**) to suddenly affect sb very strongly: *A wave of guilt washed over her.* **2** (*informal*) to happen all around sb without affecting them: *All their criticism seems to wash over him.*
◈ v + prep

ˌwash ˈup (*AmE*) to wash your hands and face: *I went to the men's room to wash up.*
◈ v + adv

ˌwash ˈup; ˌwash sth ˈup 1 (*BrE*) to wash dirty plates, glasses, etc. after a meal: *It's your turn to wash up.* ◇ *Don't forget to wash up the glasses as well.* **2** to be carried along in the water and then left on land; to carry sth along and leave it in this way: *A number of dead dolphins have washed up on the shore.* ◇ *His body was washed up on the beach two days later.*
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n
▶ **ˌwashed ˈup** *adj* (*informal, especially AmE*) to be no longer successful and unlikely to succeed again in the future: *a washed-up cabaret singer*
▶ **ˌwashing-ˈup** *n* [U] (*BrE*) **1** the act of washing dirty dishes, glasses, etc. after a meal: *Don't*

forget to do the washing-up before you go out. ◇ *washing-up liquid* **2** the dirty dishes, glasses, etc. that have to be washed after a meal: *a sink full of washing-up*

waste /weɪst/

ˌwaste aˈway (of a person, part of the body, etc.) to grow thin or weak in an unhealthy way: *He was clearly wasting away.* ◇ *The muscles in her arm had wasted away.*
◈ v + adv

watch /wɒtʃ; *AmE* wɑːtʃ, wɔːtʃ/

ˈwatch for sb/sth 1 to look and wait for sth to happen or for sb to come: *My parents were watching for me coming off the plane.* ◇ *Watch for the sign.* **2** = WATCH OUT FOR SB/STH 1 *There are several points to watch for.*
◈ v + prep

ˌwatch ˈout (*spoken*) used to warn sb about sth dangerous: *Watch out, there's a car coming!* ◇ *He'll get in a terrible mess if he doesn't watch out.*
SYN **look out**
◈ v + adv

ˌwatch ˈout for sb/sth 1 (*also* **ˈwatch for sb/sth**) to be quick to notice or be aware of sb/sth, especially sb/sth that might cause you trouble: *The staff were asked to watch out for forged banknotes.* ◇ *Watch out for their striker; he could cause us all sorts of problems.* **2** to be ready to see sb/sth new or interesting: *Watch out for a new feature in next month's magazine.*
SYN **look out for sb/sth**
◈ v + adv + prep • v + prep

ˌwatch ˈover sb/sth (*formal*) **1** to take care of sb/sth, by being near them; to protect or guard sb/sth: *The child needed to be watched over 24 hours a day.* ◇ *He believed his mother was still watching over him, even though she had died when he was very young.* SYN **protect sb/sth** (*more formal*) **2** to watch sb/sth carefully to make sure that everything is done or happens correctly: *There is a committee to watch over each different area of government policy.* SYN **supervise sb/sth** (*more formal*)
NOTE **Watch over sb/sth** can be used in the passive: *I don't like being watched over like a child.*
◈ v + prep

water /ˈwɔːtə(r); *AmE also* ˈwɑːt-/

ˌwater sth ˈdown 1 to make a liquid weaker by adding water: *The beer had been watered down.* OBJ **beer** SYN **dilute sth** (*more formal*) **2** to change sth such as a speech, a piece of writing, etc. to make it less strong and less likely to offend people: *The criticisms had been watered down to avoid giving offence.* OBJ **proposal** SYN **dilute sth** (*more formal*)
NOTE **Water sth down** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)
▶ **ˌwatered ˈdown** *adj* **1** made weaker because water has been added: *watered-down beer* **2** made less strong or critical in order not to offend people: *watered-down language* ◇ *It's a watered-down version of the original proposal.*

wave /weɪv/

ˌwave sth aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌwave sth aˈbout**) if you **wave** your arms, hands, etc. **around** in the air, you move them violently about, often in order to attract attention: *She ran out into the yard, waving her arms about.* ◇ *Stop waving that knife around!*
◈ v + n/pron + adv

ˌwave sth aˈside/aˈway to not accept sth because you think it is not important or necessary: *Their protests were waved aside.* ◇ *He waved away my question without trying to answer it.*
OBJ **objection, protest** SYN **brush sth aside**; **dismiss sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌwave sb/sth ˈdown to signal to sb/sth to stop, by waving your hand: *We waited while Richard waved down a taxi.* ◇ *The police had set up a roadblock and waved several drivers down.*
OBJ **driver, taxi, vehicle** SYN **flag sb/sth down**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌwave sb ˈoff to wave goodbye to sb as they leave: *I waved the children off to school and went back inside.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌwave sb/sth ˈon to signal to sb/sth to go forwards, by waving your hand or arm: *The police waved the traffic on.* ◇ *We stopped, but the cab driver waved us on.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌwave sb/sth ˈthrough; **ˌwave sb/sth ˈthrough sth** to signal to sb to continue forwards through a gate or a barrier, by waving your hand or arm: *The soldier gave us back our passports and waved us through.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

wean /wiːn/

be ˈweaned on sth to have learned about or experienced sth from an early age: *I was weaned on a regular diet of Hollywood fantasy.*
◈ be + v + prep

ˈwean sb/yourself off/from sth to make sb/yourself gradually stop doing sth or using sth that is bad or harmful: *The hospital managed to wean her off the drug.* ◇ *The patch enables smokers to wean themselves off cigarettes very gradually.* ◇ *It can be extremely difficult to wean children off junk food.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

wear /weə(r); *AmE* wer/ (*past* **wore** /wɔː(r)/ **worn** /wɔːn; *AmE* wɔːrn/)

ˌwear aˈway (*written*) if time **wears away**, it passes very slowly: *The afternoon was wearing away.*
SYN **pass by**
◈ v + adv

ˌwear aˈway; **ˌwear sth aˈway** to become, or to make sth become thinner, smoother, etc. by continually using or rubbing it: *The picture on the coin had worn away.* ◇ *The steps had been worn away by the feet of thousands of visitors.*
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌwear aˈway at sb/sth to slowly and gradually make sth thinner or smoother: *a drop of water wearing away at a stone* ◇ (*figurative*) *Stress can wear away at your ability to think straight.*
OBJ **stone** SYN **erode sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv + prep

ˌwear ˈdown; **ˌwear sth ˈdown** to become or to make sth become, gradually smaller, thinner, etc. by continuously using or rubbing it: *The tyres had worn right down.* ◇ *The path has been worn down in places to bare rock.*
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌwear sb/sth ˈdown to make sb/sth weaker or less determined, especially by continuously attacking or putting pressure on them/it over a period of time: *Constantly being criticized was wearing her down.* ◇ *to wear down sb's patience/resistance*
SYN **grind sb down**
◈ v + adv + n • v + pron + adv • v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌwear sth ˈin (*BrE*) to wear boots or shoes for a short period of time until they become comfortable: *These boots were so comfortable they didn't need to be worn in at all.*
OBJ **boots, shoes** SYN **break sth in**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌwear ˈoff if a feeling or an effect **wears off**, it gradually disappears: *The effects of the medicine slowly wore off.* ◇ *Children love new toys, but the novelty soon wears off.*
◈ v + adv

ˌwear ˈon (*written*) when time **wears on**, it passes in a way that seems slow: *As the evening wore on, she became more and more nervous.*
◈ v + adv

ˌwear ˈout; **ˌwear sth ˈout** to become, or to make sth become, thin or no longer able to be used, usually because it has been used too much: *Our carpets always seem to wear out quickly.* ◇ *I wore out two pairs of boots on the walking trip.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Her patience finally wore out.*
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
▶ **ˌworn ˈout** *adj* badly damaged and no longer useful because it has been used a lot: *worn-out clothes/equipment*
→ *see also* WORN OUT at WEAR SB/YOURSELF OUT (WITH STH)

ˌwear sb/yourself ˈout (with sth) to make sb/yourself extremely tired: *It's no good wearing yourself out by working so late.* ◇ *The kids have worn me out today.*
SYN **tire sb out; exhaust sb** (*more formal*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv
▶ **ˌworn ˈout** *adj* [not usually before noun] extremely tired: *I went to bed feeling worn out after the busy week.* ◇ *You look worn out!* ◇ *He died a worn-out man overcome by the injustices of life.*
→ *see also* WORN OUT at WEAR OUT, WEAR STH OUT

weary /ˈwɪəri; *AmE* ˈwɪri/ (**wearies, wearying, wearied, wearied**)

ˈweary of sb/sth; **ˈweary of doing sth** (*literary*) to lose your interest in or enthusiasm for sb/sth: *As the day went on, we wearied of the long journey.*
SYN **tire of sb/sth, tire of doing sth** (*less formal*)
◈ v + prep

weasel /ˈwiːzl/ (-ll-, *AmE* -l-)

ˌweasel ˈout; **ˌweasel ˈout of sth** (*informal, disapproving, especially AmE*) to avoid keeping a promise, doing your duty, etc: *What I did was wrong and I should be punished. I'm not going to try and weasel out.* ◇ *He's trying to figure out a way to weasel out of the deal.*
◈ v + adv • v + adv + prep

weed /wiːd/

ˌweed sb/sth ˈout to remove or get rid of sb/sth that you do not want from a group of people or things: *a plan intended to weed out poor teachers* ◇ *Weak or sick animals were weeded out.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

weigh /weɪ/

ˌweigh aˈgainst sb/sth (*formal*) to make sb less likely to achieve sth or to be successful: *The fact that he's had five jobs in two years will weigh against his application.*
SYN **count against sb**
◈ v + prep

ˌweigh sth aˈgainst sth to consider the importance or the advantages of sth compared to sth else: *Potential benefits need to be weighed against the obvious risks.*
SYN **set sth against sth**
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌweigh sb ˈdown (with sth) to make sb feel anxious or depressed: *The responsibilities of the job are weighing her down. ◇ He was weighed down with grief.*
NOTE **Weigh sb down** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌweigh sb/sth ˈdown (with sth) to put a heavy weight on sb/sth so that it is difficult for them to move easily: *We were weighed down with bags of shopping. ◇ The snow was weighing down the branches of the fir trees.*
SYN **burden sb (with sth)**
NOTE **Weigh sb down** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌweigh ˈin 1 (at sth) to have your weight measured, especially before a race, a competition, etc: *Both boxers weighed in at several pounds below their limit. ◇ Baby Sam weighed in at 4 kilos.* **2 (with sth)** (*informal*) to join in a discussion, an argument, etc. by saying sth important or doing sth to help: *We all weighed in with helpful suggestions.*
◈ **1** v + adv
2 v + adv ◆ v + adv + speech
▸ **ˌweigh-in** *n* the occasion when the weight of a sports person such as a boxer is measured just before a fight, a race, etc: *The champion arrived five minutes late for the weigh-in*

ˈweigh on sb/sth (*also* **ˈweigh upon sb/sth** *more formal*) to make sb feel worried or depressed; to be a difficult duty or task for sb/sth: *The responsibilities are clearly* ***weighing heavily on*** *his* ***shoulders****. ◇ The debt burden weighs heavily on the government.*
SYN **burden sb/sth**
◈ v + prep

ˌweigh sth ˈout to measure a quantity of sth by weight: *Weigh out all the ingredients before you start making the cake.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌweigh sb ˈup to form an opinion of sb by watching them or talking to them: *She stared at him, weighing him up. ◇ The two women weighed each other up for a few moments. ◇ He's certainly got Jeff weighed up.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˌweigh sth ˈup (against sth) to think carefully about a situation before you decide what to do: *I weighed up the pros and cons* (= the advantages and disadvantages) *of giving up my job. ◇ We have to weigh up whether we can afford a trip to Italy this year. ◇ It's important to weigh up all possible courses of action.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

ˈweigh upon sb/sth = WEIGH ON SB/STH

weight /weɪt/

ˌweight sth ˈdown (with sth) to add a weight to sth so that it feels very heavy, bends down, sinks, etc: *The canvas sheet was weighted down to stop it blowing away. ◇ My pockets were weighted down with lots of small coins.*
NOTE **Weight sth down** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

welch /weltʃ, welʃ/

ˈwelch on sb/sth = WELSH ON SB/STH

weld /weld/

ˌweld sb/sth ˈinto sth; ˌweld sb/sth toˈgether to unite sb/sth into an effective whole: *The manager has welded the players into a strong team. ◇ The crisis helped to weld the community together.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep ◆ v + n/pron + adv

well /wel/

ˌwell ˈup 1 if a liquid **wells up**, it rises to the surface and starts to flow: *Tears welled up in his eyes. ◇ Spots of blood began to well up on her skin.* **2 (in/inside sb)** if an emotion **wells up**, you start to feel it very strongly: *She felt anger welling up inside her.*
◈ v + adv

welsh /welʃ/ (*also* **welch**)

ˈwelsh on sb/sth (*informal, disapproving*) to not do sth that you have promised to do, for example to not pay money that you owe a person: *'I'm not in the habit of welshing on deals,' said Don.*
◈ v + prep

whale /weɪl/

ˈwhale into/on sb (*AmE, informal*) to attack sb by hitting them again and again with great force: *Jo really whaled on Steve and was surprised he was still standing afterwards. ◇ I was so angry, I simply whaled into him. ◇ (figurative) She whaled into me for being late again.*
◈ v + prep

wheel /wiːl/

ˌwheel aˈround; ˌwheel sb/sth aˈround (*BrE also* **ˌwheel ˈround, ˌwheel sb/sth ˈround**) (*literary*) to turn around very quickly to face the opposite direction; to make sb/sth do this: *I wheeled around to scream at Miles. ◇ He* ***wheeled his horse around*** *and started for home.*
SYN **spin around, spin sb/sth around**
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌwheel sb/sth ˈout (*BrE, informal*) to produce sb/sth and use them to help you do sth, even though they have often been used before: *He wheels out the same old arguments every time he makes a speech. ◇ The company wheeled out some big guns* (= very important people) *to launch the new car.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

while /waɪl/

ˌwhile sth aˈway if you **while away** a period of time, you spend it in a pleasant, lazy way: *There were plenty of cafés in which to while away a pleasant evening. ◇ We whiled away the time at the airport reading magazines.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*rare*)

whip /wɪp/ (-pp-)

ˌwhip sth ˈout; ˌwhip sth ˈout of sth to take sth out quickly and suddenly: *He whipped out his camera and started taking photos.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌwhip ˈthrough sth (*informal*) to do sth very quickly: *She whipped through the routine paperwork.*
◈ v + prep

ˌwhip sb/sth ˈup to deliberately make sb feel strong emotions or get excited about or interested in sth: *The studio audience was whipped up into a frenzy. ◇ They're trying to whip up support for their candidate.*
OBJ **crowd, support, resistance** SYN **stir sb/sth up; rouse sb/sth** (*more formal*)
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌwhip sth ˈup 1 to prepare a meal or some food very quickly: *I can easily whip up an omelette.* SYN **put sth together; throw sth together** (*informal*) **2** if the wind **whips up** dust, waves, etc. it makes it/them rise quickly: *The wind whipped up the sand in gusts.* SUBJ **wind**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + pron + adv ◆ v + n + adv (*less frequent*)

whisk /wɪsk/

ˌwhisk sb/sth aˈway/ˈoff to remove sb/sth from a place very quickly: *The president was whisked away by his bodyguards. ◇ The food was whisked away before we had finished.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

whittle /ˈwɪtl/

ˌwhittle sth aˈway to gradually reduce the size, importance or value of sth: *Inflation has been whittling away their savings. ◇ Our lead* (= in a sports competition, for example) *was being gradually whittled away.*
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

ˌwhittle sb/sth ˈdown to reduce the size or number of sb/sth gradually: *The government's majority has been whittled down to eight.*
SYN **reduce sb/sth**
◈ v + adv + n ◆ v + n/pron + adv

whizz (*especially BrE*) (*AmE usually* **whiz**) /wɪz/

ˌwhizz ˈthrough sth to do, read sth, etc. very quickly: *She whizzed through the work and was finished before lunch.*
◈ v + prep

whoop /wuːp; *AmE* wʊp/

ˌwhoop it ˈup (*informal*) **1** to enjoy yourself in a noisy and excited way: *I've been working hard while you've been whooping it up in Berlin.* **2** (*AmE*) to try to make people excited or enthusiastic about sb/sth
SYN **live it up**
NOTE **Whoop it up** cannot be used in the passive.
◈ v + it + adv

wig /wɪɡ/

ˌwig ˈout; ˌwig sb ˈout (*AmE, slang*) to become, or to make sb, very excited or very anxious about sth; to go, or to make sb, crazy, often as a result of the effect of drugs
◈ v + adv ◆ v + n/pron + adv

wimp /wɪmp/

ˌwimp ˈout (on sb/sth) (*informal, disapproving*) to decide not to do sth you had intended to do because you are too frightened: *Did you wimp out on any of the tests? ◇ Dave wimped out and refused to dive off the top board.*
SYN **bottle out, bottle out of sth, bottle out of doing sth; chicken out, chicken out of sth, chicken out of doing sth**
◈ v + adv

win /wɪn/ (**winning, won, won** /wʌn/)

ˌwin sb/sth ˈback to get again by your own efforts sb/sth that you had before: *I'm hoping to win back my place in the team soon. ◇ Jack had tried everything to win Martha back. ◇ You do have a chance to win your money back.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv ◆ v + adv + n

ˌwin ˈout (over sb/sth) (*informal*) if sth **wins out**, it is stronger or more successful than other things: *It is not clear if the archaeologists will win out over the builders and save the temple.*
SYN **prevail** (*more formal*)
◈ v + adv

ˌwin sb ˈover (*BrE also* **ˌwin sb ˈround**) **(to sth)** to gain sb's support or approval, especially by persuading them that you are right: *My dad's against the idea, but I'm sure I can win him over.* ◇ *Jenny's parents were soon won over by Anthony's easy charm.*
SYN **bring sb round/around (to sth)**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌwin ˈthrough to finally succeed after trying very hard: *We are faced with a lot of problems but we'll win through in the end.* ◇ *United won through to the final in an exciting game.*
◈ v + adv

wind /waɪnd/ (**wound, wound** /waʊnd/)

ˌwind ˈdown 1 to relax, after a period of stress or excitement: *It takes a while for me to wind down after work.* SYN **unwind 2** if a machine **winds down**, it goes slowly and then stops: *The old clock had wound right down.* **3** if a business **winds down**, it gradually reduces the amount of work it does until it closes completely: *Next week the mill winds down for a summer break.*
◈ v + adv

ˌwind sth ˈdown 1 to bring a business or an activity gradually to an end over a period of time: *The government is winding down its nuclear programme.* OBJ **business, programme** SYN **reduce sth** OPP **expand sth 2** to make the window of car open and go downwards by moving a handle, pushing a button, etc: *She wound down the driver's window and called to him.* OBJ **car window** SYN **open sth** OPP **wind sth up**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌwind ˈup; ˌwind ˈup doing sth (*informal*) to find yourself after a long time in a particular place or situation: *I always said she would wind up in jail.* ◇ *Bill wound up marrying the girl next door!* ◇ *If he isn't more careful, he'll wind up dead.*
SYN **end up, end up doing sth; finish up, finish up doing sth**
NOTE In this meaning, **wind up** is nearly always used with either an adjective, a phrase beginning with a preposition, or *doing sth*.
◈ v + adv

ˌwind ˈup; ˌwind sth ˈup 1 to bring sth such as a speech, a meeting or a discussion to an end: *Before I wind up, I'd like to make one final point.* ◇ *If we all agree, let's wind up the discussion.* **2** to make sth mechanical work by turning a handle several times: *Does this clock have a battery or does it wind up?* ◇ *This is a great little toy. You just wind it up and off it goes!*
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
▶ **ˈwind-up** *adj* [only before noun] a **wind-up** mechanism is one that you operate by turning a handle several times: *a wind-up clock/toy*

ˌwind sb ˈup (*BrE, informal*) **1** to deliberately make sb very angry or annoyed: *Are you deliberately winding me up?* ◇ *Ignore them. They're just trying to wind you up.* SYN **annoy sb** (*more formal*) **2** to tell sb sth that is not true in order to make a joke: *Come off it, you're winding me up!*
SYN **tease sb**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ **ˈwind-up** *n* (*BrE, informal*) sth that sb says or does in order to annoy sb or to make a joke: *It sounded so crazy I thought it was a wind-up.*

ˌwind sth ˈup 1 to close a business, a company, etc: *The company was wound up last year.* OBJ **business, company 2** to close a car window, making it move upwards, by turning a handle, pressing a button, etc: *I wound up the window and locked the door.* OBJ **car window** OPP **wind sth down**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv
▶ **ˌwinding-ˈup** *n* the act of officially closing a business, a company, etc: *a voluntary winding-up of the company* ◇ *a winding-up order/petition*

wink /wɪŋk/

ˈwink at sth to pretend that you have not noticed sth, especially sth bad or illegal: *The authorities have chosen to wink at the illegal trade.*
◈ v + prep

winkle /ˈwɪŋkl/

ˌwinkle sb/sth ˈout; ˌwinkle sb/sth ˈout of sth (*BrE*) to get sb/sth out of somewhere slowly and with difficulty: *The bird uses its sharp beak to winkle insects out of tree trunks.* ◇ *The terrorists have been winkled out of their hiding place.* ◇ *Leila had been working in the library all the week, so we sent Tim to winkle her out.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n •
v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌwinkle sth ˈout; ˌwinkle sth ˈout of sb (*BrE*) to get sth such as information, money, etc. from sb with difficulty: *She's very good at winkling out secrets.* ◇ *He wouldn't tell you? Don't worry, I'll winkle it out of him.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n •
v + n/pron + adv + prep

wipe /waɪp/

ˌwipe sth aˈway to remove sth, such as dirt or tears, with a cloth or your hand: *Wipe away mud splashes with a wet cloth.* ◇ *He wiped away a tear.*
OBJ **tear**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌwipe sth ˈdown to clean a surface with a cloth: *I'll just wipe the table down before you put your books there.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌwipe sth ˈoff; ˌwipe sth ˈoff sth 1 to remove sth from a surface with a cloth: *Wipe off any surplus glue with a rag before it dries.* ◇ *Tom had carefully wiped his fingerprints off the glass.* **2** to remove sth that has been recorded on a tape or a video tape: *He wiped the conversation off the tape.* **3** to reduce the value of sth, especially shares: *Over £5 billion was wiped off share values worldwide today.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌwipe ˈout (on sth) (*informal, especially AmE, sport*) to fall or crash in a sport, especially to fall from a board (a **surfboard**) when you are riding the waves: *I caught a huge wave but then wiped out on the next.*
◈ v + adv
▶ **ˈwipe-out** *n* (*informal, especially AmE, sport*) a fall or a crash, especially a fall from a board (a **surfboard**) when you are riding on waves: *I had so many bad wipe-outs while I was learning to surf.*

ˌwipe sb ˈout 1 (*informal*) to defeat sb easily in a sports competition: *The Welsh side was wiped out 24-3.* **2** (*informal, especially AmE*) to make sb very tired: *All that travelling wiped her out.* **3** (*slang*) to murder sb
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ **ˌwiped ˈout** *adj* [not before noun] (*informal*) very tired

ˌwipe sb/sth ˈout to kill large numbers of people or animals: *The whole village was wiped out by the flood.* ◇ *Pollution has wiped out half the species of fish in the river.*
NOTE **Wipe sb/sth out** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌwipe sth ˈout 1 to destroy sth completely: *The disease has been virtually wiped out.* ◇ *The government is trying to wipe out drug trafficking.* OBJ **memory 2** to remove information from a computer, writing from a board, etc: *The virus could wipe out your hard disk.* ◇ (*figurative*) *I'll never be able to wipe out the memory of that day.* OBJ **disease 3** to remove or deal with a debt completely: *He secured a loan to wipe out the club's debts.* ◇ *Their lead was wiped out* (= destroyed) *by four goals in ten minutes.* ◇ *This year's losses have wiped out last year's profits.* OBJ **profits, debts**
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌwipe ˈup; ˌwipe sth ˈup (*BrE, informal*) to dry dishes with a cloth: *You wash and I'll wipe up.*
SYN **dry up, dry sth up; dry, dry sth**
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌwipe sth ˈup to clean a substance, especially a liquid, from a surface with a cloth: *Keep a cloth handy to wipe up any mess.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

wire /ˈwaɪə(r)/

ˌwire sb/sth ˈup (to sth) to connect sb/sth to a piece of electrical equipment by using electrical wires: *You will be wired up to a machine which will record your heartbeat.* ◇ *The police suggested I should be wired up* (to record the conversation) *before I met the dealer.* ◇ *The band's instruments were all wired up for sound.* ◇ *The microphone hadn't been wired up properly.*
NOTE **Wire sb/sth up** is often used in the passive.
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

wise /waɪz/

ˌwise ˈup (to sth) (*informal, especially AmE*) to understand sth better; to become aware of the unpleasant truth about a situation: *Employees should wise up about how the industry works.* ◇ *You need to wise up to the fact that he's never coming back.* ◇ *Wise up! Try and see her for what she really is.* ◇ *You need to wise up to how serious this situation is.*
◈ v + adv

wish /wɪʃ/

ˌwish sb/sth aˈway to try to get rid of sth by wishing it did not exist; to wish that sb was somewhere else: *These complications can't just be wished away, you know.* ◇ *Don't wish your life away* (= said to sb who spends a lot of time looking forward to sth that is going to happen in the future).
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈwish sb/sth on sb (*also* **ˈwish sb/sth upon sb** *more formal*) (*used in negative sentences, especially with **wouldn't***) to hope very much that sth unpleasant will happen to sb or that they will have to deal with sb unpleasant: *I wouldn't wish this pain on my worst enemy.* ◇ *I wouldn't wish my daughter on anyone at the moment — she's very difficult!*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

wither /ˈwɪðə(r)/

ˌwither aˈway to become less or weaker, especially before disappearing completely: *All our hopes just withered away.* ◇ *They predicted that the bad schools would wither away.*
◈ v + adv

wolf /wʊlf/

ˌwolf sth ˈdown (*informal*) to eat sth very quickly, especially in large quantities: *He wolfed down his breakfast and rushed out of the house.*
SYN **gobble sth down/up**
NOTE **Wolf sth** is also sometimes used with this meaning: *wolfing tea and cakes*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

wonder /ˈwʌndə(r)/

ˈwonder at sth to be very surprised by sth: *He wondered at her beauty.* ◇ *She wondered at her own stupidity.* ◇ ***It's hardly to be wondered at** that he behaves as he does, considering his family background.*
SYN **marvel at sth**
NOTE **Wonder at sth** can be used in the passive.
◈ v + prep

work /wɜːk; *AmE* wɜːrk/

~ against
~ around
~ around to
~ at
~ away
~ in
~ into
~ off
~ on
~ out
343 ~ over
~ round
~ round to
~ through
~ to
~ towards
~ up
344 ~ up to

ˌwork aˈgainst sb/sth if sth **works against** sb/sth, it has the effect of making it harder for sb to do or achieve sth: *The engineering career structure works against women.* ◇ *The government's new policy has worked against the interests of small farmers.*
◈ v + prep

ˌwork aˈround sth (*BrE also* **ˌwork ˈround sth**) to find a way of doing what you want to in spite of situations, rules, etc. that could prevent you doing it: *If we can't get rid of the problem, we'll just have to work round it.* ◇ *He urged the two sides to work around their disputes and reach an agreement.* ◇ *My uncle couldn't read, but he'd found ways to work around it because he was too embarrassed to tell anyone.*
◈ v + prep

ˌwork aˈround to sth (*BrE also* **ˌwork ˈround to sth**) to gradually turn a conversation towards a particular topic: *I wondered when he would work around to the subject of money.*
◈ v + adv + prep

ˈwork at sth; **ˈwork at doing sth** to make great efforts to achieve sth or do sth well: *She worked hard at her French and passed the exam.* ◇ *You've got to work at losing weight.* ◇ *You've got to work at it.*
NOTE **Work at sth/at doing sth** can be used in the passive: *Marriage has to be worked at.*
◈ v + prep

ˌwork aˈway **(at sth)** (*often used in the progressive tenses*) to continue to work hard for a period of time: *I've been working away in the gym, trying to get fit.* ◇ *Ruth spends hours in the library, working away at Japanese.*
◈ v + adv

ˌwork sth ˈin; **ˌwork sth ˈinto sth 1** to add one substance to another and mix them together: *Work the butter in with your fingers.* ◇ *Use plenty of polish and work it well into the wood.* **2** to try to include sth in a piece of writing, a speech, etc: *Try and work in something about your own experience.* ◇ *He usually manages to work something topical into his act.*
◈ **1** v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n •
v + n/pron + prep
2 v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv •
v + n/pron + prep

ˌwork yourself ˈinto sth to become very angry, excited, etc: *She's **working herself into a state** about the exams.* ◇ *He was working himself into a rage.*
→ *see also* WORK SB UP, WORK YOURSELF UP
◈ v + pron + prep

ˈwork off sth (of a machine, a piece of electrical equipment, etc.) to use a supply of power or another machine in order to operate: *The lighter works off the car battery.*
◈ v + prep

ˌwork sth ˈoff 1 to get rid of sth by physical effort: *He went for a run to work off some calories* (= the food that he had eaten). ◇ *By the time she had finished cleaning, she had worked off her anger.* **2** to earn money in order to pay off a debt; to work for the person you owe money to: *They worked off their huge bank loan over five years.* **3** if you **work off** a punishment, etc., you do what you have been told to do because you have done sth wrong or committed a crime: *Grima has started to work off his eight-match suspension.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˈwork on sb to try to persuade sb to agree to sth or to do sth: *My father hasn't said he will lend me the car yet, but I'm working on him.*
◈ v + prep

ˈwork on sth 1 to be busy with a particular activity, project, piece of research, etc: *What are you working on at the moment?* ◇ *The committee worked on ways to raise money for the project.* ◇ *Tara is currently working on a solo album.* **2** to practise or work hard in order to improve sth: *Your designs are great, but you need to work on them a bit more.* ◇ *You need to work on your technique* (= for example, in a sport). ◇ *Jack's been working on building up his confidence.* ◇ *'Have you sorted things out with your parents yet?' 'No, but **I'm working on it*** (= I'm trying hard to do this).' **3** to consider that sth is true when you are saying or doing sth, planning sth, etc: *We are **working on the assumption** that everyone invited will come.* ◇ *The police are working on the theory that she was attacked by somebody she knew.*
◈ v + prep

ˌwork ˈout 1 to happen or develop in a particular way, especially a successful way: *I'm glad my plan worked out* (= was successful). ◇ *Their marriage didn't work out* (= was not successful). ◇ *It is all working out very well.* ◇ *Don't worry now,*

everything will work out all right in the end. **2** **(at sth)** if sth **works out** at sth, you calculate that it will be a particular amount: *The rent works out at £50 a week each.* ◇ *It'll **work out cheaper** to go by bus.* NOTE **Work out** is often used with *cheaper, more expensive*, etc. in this meaning **3** to train the body by physical exercise: *I try and work out two or three times a week.* **4** if a sum, a mathematical problem, etc. **works out**, it gives a result: *The equation won't work out if x is negative.*
◈ v + adv
▸ **ˈworkout** *n* a period of physical exercise: *I did a two-hour workout in the gym.*

ˌwork sb ˈout (*especially BrE*) to understand sb's character: *I've never been able to work my mother out.*
SYN **figure sb out**
NOTE **Work sb out** cannot be used in the passive.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n (*rare*)

ˌwork sth ˈout 1 to calculate sth: *You'll have to work out the costs involved.* ◇ *Can you work out the answer to number 2?* ◇ *I worked out that we owe him £30.* ◇ *Let me pay for now and we'll work it out later.* OBJ **cost, answer** SYN **figure sth out** **2** to find the answer to a question or sth that is difficult to understand or explain: *I couldn't **work out how** Jack had got there so quickly.* ◇ *We worked out that we were second cousins.* ◇ *Can you work out what's going on?* ◇ *The game was fairly simple once we'd worked out the rules.* SYN **figure sth out** NOTE **Work sth out** is often used with *how, where, why*, etc. in this meaning. **3** to plan sth; to think of sth: *I've worked out a better way of doing it.* ◇ *The details still have to be worked out.* OBJ **details, plan, way** **4** to organize sth or deal with problems in a satisfactory way: *Ed and Jane seem to have **worked things out** between them.* SYN **sort sth out** **5** to continue to work at your job until the end of the period of time mentioned: *They didn't make me work out my notice* (= the period of time that is officially fixed before you can leave your job). ◇ *He didn't want to work out the rest of his years in an office.* **6** to remove all the coal or metal from a mine: *Most of the mines had been worked out.* SYN **exhaust sth** NOTE **Work sth out** is often used in the passive in this meaning.
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌwork itself ˈout if a problem **works itself out**, it gradually stops being a problem without anyone having to do anything: *Did you think everything would just work itself out?*
SYN **sort itself out**
◈ v + pron + adv

ˌwork sb ˈover to attack sb physically and injure them, either as a punishment or to get information from them: *They sent the boys round to work him over.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌwork ˈround sth (*BrE*) = WORK AROUND STH

ˌwork ˈround to sth (*BrE*) = WORK AROUND TO STH

ˌwork ˈthrough to work without stopping for a particular period of time: *At harvest time we work through until it gets dark.*
◈ v + adv

ˌwork ˈthrough; **ˌwork ˈthrough sth 1** to start to have an effect somewhere: *These pressures have worked through to the staff.* ◇ *The full effects of the change will take time to work through the system.* **2** to move or pass through sth gradually until you reach a particular point: *I started at page one and slowly **worked my way through** to the end.* ◇ *You shouldn't try to work through the course too fast.* ◇ *Allow time for the drug to work through your body.*
◈ v + adv • v + prep

ˌwork ˈthrough sth 1 to experience a problem, a difficult situation, etc., and deal with it until you eventually find a solution: *to work through grief/emotions* ◇ *Counselling is helping him work through this trauma.* ◇ *The situation was difficult for the family, but they were able to work through it and come out the other side.* **2** (*also* **work sth ˈthrough** *less frequent*) to think or talk about sth carefully until you can find a solution: *If you are having problems in your relationship, take time to work through it with your partner.* ◇ *Work the problem through together.*
◈ **1** v + prep
2 v + prep • v + n/pron + adv (*less frequent*)

ˈwork to sth to follow a plan, etc: *We're working to a very tight schedule.* ◇ *They have to work to a budget.*
◈ v + prep

ˌwork toˈwards sth (*also* **ˌwork toˈward sth** *especially AmE*) to try to reach or achieve a goal: *She's working towards her PhD.* ◇ *The two groups are working towards the same end.* ◇ *Jo's working towards obtaining a Master's degree.*
◈ v + prep

ˌwork sb ˈup; **ˌwork yourself ˈup** **(into sth)** to gradually make sb/yourself become very upset, angry or excited about sth: *She had worked herself up into a rage.* ◇ *He worked the crowd up into a frenzy.* ◇ *You've worked yourself up into a state again. Try and relax.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˌworked ˈup (about sth)** *adj* [not before noun] (*informal*) very excited, upset or angry about sth: *What was Ben so worked up about?* ◇ *I can't get at all worked up about cars* (= I am not interested in or excited by cars). ◇ *She gets terribly **worked up*** (= nervous) *about exams.*

ˌwork sth ˈup 1 to gradually develop or increase sth until you have enough: *We jogged up the hill to work up an appetite.* ◇ *I can't work up much enthusiasm for this subject.* ◇ *She soon worked up a sweat.* **2 (into sth)** to spend time and effort on a piece of work in order to improve or complete it: *The idea needs a lot of working up.* ◇ *You could work up this idea into a story.* ◇ *Some of the sketches were worked up into paintings.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌwork ˈup to sth 1 to gradually prepare for and move towards sth that is more exciting or extreme: *He started slowly and worked up to running ten miles a day.* ◇ *The tension works up to a climax towards the end of the film.* **2** to prepare yourself to do sth difficult or unpleasant: *I haven't told him yet but I'm working up to it.* SYN **build up (to sth)**
◈ v + adv + prep

worm /wɜːm; *AmE* wɜːrm/

ˌworm your way/yourself ˈinto sth (*informal, disapproving*) to gradually make sb like or trust you, especially in order to gain an advantage for yourself: *Somehow he managed to **worm his way into** her confidence.*
OBJ **confidence, affections, heart**
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌworm sth ˈout of sb (*informal*) to manage to obtain information from sb, often by asking them questions in a clever way for a long period of time: *It took me days to worm the truth out of my daughter.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv + prep

worry /ˈwʌri; *AmE* ˈwɜːri/ (**worries, worrying, worried, worried**)

ˈworry at sth (*often used in the progressive tenses*) **1** if an animal such as a dog **worries at sth**, it holds it in its teeth and shakes it about: *a dog worrying at a bone* ◇ (*figurative*) *She worried at the knot in the string* (= with her fingers). **2** to think or talk a lot about a problem and try to find a solution: *He lay awake all night, worrying at the problem.*
◈ v + prep

wrap /ræp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌwrap sth aˈround sb/sth (*BrE also* **ˌwrap sth ˈround sb/sth**) to put sth firmly around sth/sb: *He wrapped his arms tightly around my waist.* ◇ *A long scarf was wrapped round her neck.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

ˌwrap ˈup; **ˌwrap it ˈup** (*slang*) used to tell sb rudely to stop talking and be quiet: *Oh wrap up and let somebody else say something!*
◈ v + adv • v + it + adv

ˌwrap ˈup (in sth), ˌwrap sb ˈup (in sth), ˌwrap yourself ˈup (in sth) to put warm clothes, etc. on yourself/sb: ***Wrap up warm** — it's really cold outside.* ◇ *I wrapped the twins up before letting them go out.* ◇ *We were all well wrapped up against the weather.* ◇ *I wrapped myself up against the cold.*
SYN **bundle up, bundle sb up (in sth)**
◈ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌwrap sth ˈup 1 (in sth) to cover sth in a layer of paper or other material, either to protect it or because you are giving it to sb as a present: *I wrapped the vase up in tissue paper.* ◇ *It took all the evening to wrap up the kids' Christmas presents.* ◇ (*figurative*) *There's a simple explanation wrapped up in all those long words.* SYN **do sth up (in sth)** NOTE **Wrap sth** is often used with this meaning. **2** to complete sth in a satisfactory way: *The discussions should be wrapped up by Friday.* ◇ *Well, I think that just about **wraps it up** for today.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ **ˈwrap-up** *n* (*especially AmE*) **1** a short summary of what has gone before, especially at the end of a news broadcast: *And to close, here is a wrap-up of today's developments.* **2** the final actions that complete sth: *the wrap-up of the campaign*

be ˌwrapped ˈup in sb/sth to be so involved in a person or an activity that you do not notice other people or what is happening around you: *He was so wrapped up in his book that he didn't notice me leaving.* ◇ *Julia is completely wrapped up in her children.*
◈ be + v + adv + prep

wrench /rentʃ/

ˌwrench sth ˈoff; **ˌwrench sth ˈoff sth** to remove sth from sth by force with a strong twisting movement: *The tug of the rope nearly wrenched my arm off.* ◇ *He wrenched the picture off the wall and threw it to the ground.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

wrest /rest/

ˈwrest sth from sb/sth (*formal*) **1** to take sth such as power or control from sb/sth with great effort: *The rebels tried to wrest control of the town from government forces.* **2** to take sth from sb that they do not want to give, suddenly or violently: *The officer managed to wrest the gun from his grasp.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

wrestle /ˈresl/

ˈwrestle with sth to struggle to deal with sth difficult: *Farmers are wrestling with the problem of the wet weather.* ◇ *He spent several more weeks wrestling with his conscience and then finally decided to resign.* ◇ *He wrestled with the reins as the horse galloped towards the cliff edge.*
SYN **grapple with sth**
◈ v + adv + prep

wriggle /ˈrɪɡl/

ˌwriggle ˈout of sth; **ˌwriggle ˈout of doing sth** (*informal*) to avoid doing sth unpleasant or sth that you do not want to do by making clever excuses: *to wriggle out of your responsibilities* ◇ *I've got an appointment I can't wriggle out of.* ◇ *Don't let Tom wriggle out of helping you.*
◈ v + adv + prep

wring /rɪŋ/ (**wrung, wrung** /rʌŋ/)

ˈwring sth from sb = WRING STH OUT OF/FROM SB

ˌwring sth ˈout to remove water or other liquid from a cloth, etc. by twisting it tightly and squeezing it: *Rinse the cloth and wring it out well.* ◇ *My clothes got so wet I could wring the water out!*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˈwring sth out of/from sb to obtain sth from sb with difficulty, especially by putting pressure on them: *She eventually wrung an apology out of him.* ◇ *A few concessions were wrung from the government.*
◈ v + n/pron + prep

write /raɪt/ (**wrote** /rəʊt/ **written** /ˈrɪtn/)

ˌwrite aˈway (to sb) (for sth) = WRITE OFF/AWAY *I wrote away to the company for a free sample.*

ˌwrite ˈback (to sb) to write in reply to sb's letter: *I wrote and apologized, but he never wrote back.* ◇ *The school wrote back to me saying that all the courses were full.*
◈ v + adv

ˌwrite sth ˈdown (in/on sth) 1 to write sth on paper so that you do not forget it: *I wrote her address down in my notebook.* ◇ *There is a handout so you needn't write all this down.* SYN **take sth down** **2** (*business*) to reduce the value of what a company owns when stating it in the company's accounts: *All stock over six months old was written down to 50%.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ **ˈwrite-down** *n* (*business*) a reduction in the value of what a company owns, etc.

ˌwrite ˈin (to sb/sth) to write a letter to an organization to state an opinion or to ask a question: *Write in to the programme and tell us your own opinion on this.* ◇ *500 viewers wrote in to complain about the advertisement.*
◈ v + adv

ˌwrite sb/sth ˈin (*AmE*) to add an extra name to a list of candidates in an election so that you can vote for them: *She wrote Carrasco in on the ballot paper.* ◇ *Workers were handing out sample ballots with their candidate's name written in.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ **ˈwrite-in** *adj* (*AmE*) a vote for sb who is not an official candidate in an election, in which you write their name on your voting paper: *He qualified as a write-in in 15 states.* ◇ *a write-in candidate/vote*

ˌwrite sb/sth ˈin; **ˌwrite sb/sth ˈinto sth** to add a character or a scene to a play, a film/movie, a regular series, etc: *Why did you write the plane crash in?* ◇ *It was the first time a disabled child had been written into a TV soap.* ◇ *He wrote himself **into the history books** by becoming the first player to win the championship five times.*
OPP **write sb/sth out, write sb/sth out of sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌwrite sth ˈin; **ˌwrite sth ˈinto sth** to include sth such as a special rule or a condition in a document, a contract, an agreement, etc: *A yearly visit to both families was written into their marriage contract.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + prep

ˌwrite ˈoff/aˈway (to sb) (for sth) to write to an organization or a company, asking them to send you sth: *She wrote off to an agency for advice.*
SYN **send off (for sth), send away (for sth)**
◈ v + adv

ˌwrite sb/sth ˈoff (as sth) to consider that sb/sth is a failure or not important: *Don't write John off too soon — he may surprise you!* ◇ *I wrote off my symptoms as tiredness.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ **ˈwrite-off** *n* [sing.] (*informal*) a failure; a time when you do not achieve anything: *Today has been a write-off as far as work is concerned.*
→ *see also* WRITE-OFF at WRITE STH OFF

ˌwrite sth ˈoff 1 (*business*) to cancel a debt; to recognize that sth is a failure, has no value, etc: *All outstanding Third World debts should now be written off.* **2** (*BrE*) to damage a vehicle so badly that it is not worth spending money to repair it: *That's the third car he's written off this year.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▶ **ˈwrite-off** *n* **1** (*business*) an act of cancelling a debt and accepting that it will never be paid: *a £4.9 billion debt write-off* **2** (*BrE, informal*) a vehicle that is so badly damaged that it is not considered worth repairing: *They escaped with minor injuries but the van was a write-off.*
→ *see also* WRITE-OFF at WRITE SB/STH OFF (AS STH)

ˌwrite sb/sth ˈout; **ˌwrite sb/sth ˈout of sth** to remove a character, a scene, etc. from a play, a film/movie, a regular series, etc: *He got bored and asked to be written out of the series.* ◇ *The censor demanded that the scene be written out.*
OPP **write sb/sth in, write sb/sth into sth**
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n •
v + n/pron + adv + prep

ˌwrite sth ˈout to write sth on paper clearly, including all the details: *Use symbols and abbreviations instead of writing things out in full.* ◇ *I wrote out the poem in my best handwriting.* ◇ *I watched him write out a cheque for five thousand pounds for her.*
NOTE In informal spoken language **write sb out sth** is also used: *He wrote her out a cheque.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌwrite sb ˈup (*AmE*) to report sb in writing because they have done sth illegal: *He wrote me up for illegal parking.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n

ˌwrite sth ˈup 1 to write sth in a complete and final form, especially from notes that you have made: *She writes her lecture notes up every night before going out.* OBJ **notes, research, experiment 2** to write a review of a play, a concert, a book, etc. for a newspaper or magazine: *She wrote the movie up in glowing terms.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈwrite-up** *n* a review of a concert, a play, a book, etc. in a newspaper or magazine: *The concert got a good write-up in all the papers.*

Yy

yank /jæŋk/

ˈyank at sth to pull at sth hard and quickly: *Someone yanked at my hair.*
◈ v + prep

ˌyank sth ˈoff; **ˌyank sth ˈoff sth** to remove sth by pulling it quickly and hard: *He yanked off his shoes.* ◇ *She yanked the lid off the tin.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + prep

ˌyank sb/sth ˈout; **ˌyank sb/sth ˈout of sth** (*informal*) to remove sb/sth from somewhere by pulling hard and quickly: *He was yanked out of the house and bundled into a car.*
◈ v + n/pron + adv • v + n/pron + adv + prep

yearn /jɜːn; *AmE* jɜːrn/

ˈyearn for sb/sth (*literary*) to want sb/sth very much, especially when this is difficult to get: *Mira yearned for a child.*
SYN **long for sb/sth**
◈ v + prep

yell /jel/

ˌyell ˈout; **ˌyell sth ˈout** to suddenly shout sth in a loud voice: *She was yelling out in terror.* ◇ *He yelled out the names of the winners.*
◈ v + adv • v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + speech

yield /jiːld/

ˈyield to sth (*formal*) to be replaced by sth: *Barges yielded to road vehicles for transporting goods.*
◈ v + prep

ˈyield sth ˈup (*formal*) **1** to allow sb else to take sth that you own and feel is very important for you: *He swore he would never yield up the castle to the English.* **2** to reveal sth that has been hidden: *A thorough search of the site yielded up only a few ancient coins.*
◈ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

Zz

zero /ˈzɪərəʊ; *AmE* ˈzɪroʊ, ˈziː-/ (**zeroes, zeroing, zeroed, zeroed**)

ˌzero ˈin on sb/sth 1 to aim weapons at sb/sth: *They zeroed in on the target.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Clare zeroed in on Craig* (= went to talk to him) *as soon as he entered the room.* **2** to fix all your attention on sb/sth: *Wasting no time she zeroed in on the main topic.*
◆ v + adv + prep

zip /zɪp/ (**-pp-**)

ˌzip ˈthrough sth to do, read, etc. sth very quickly: *Could you zip through my report and check it's OK?*
◆ v + prep

ˌzip ˈup; ˌzip sb/sth ˈup to be fastened with a zip/zipper (= a device consisting of two rows of metal or plastic teeth that you can pull together or pull apart); to fasten sth with a zip/zipper: *The skirt zips up at the side.* ◇ *Will you zip me up* (= my dress), *please?* ◇ *I can't zip my jacket up!*
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv • v + adv + n
▸ **ˈzip-up** *adj* [only before noun] fastened with a zip/zipper: *a zip-up jacket*

zone /zəʊn; *AmE* zoʊn/

ˌzone sth ˈoff (**for sth**) to keep an area of land to be used for a particular purpose: *The city centre has been zoned off for pedestrians.*
◆ v + adv + n • v + n/pron + adv

ˌzone ˈout (*AmE, slang*) to stop thinking or noticing what is going on around you: *Relax your muscles, take a deep breath, and zone out for a while.*
SYN **space out, space sb out** (*slang*)
◆ v + adv
▸ **ˈzone-out** *n* a time when you stop thinking or noticing what is going on around you
▸ **ˌzoned ˈout** *adj* (*AmE, informal*) unable to think or to notice what is going on around you because of the effects of drugs or alcohol

zonk /zɒŋk/

ˌzonk ˈout; ˌzonk sb ˈout (*slang, especially AmE*) to fall asleep, become unconscious or unable to think, either because you are very tired or because of the effects of drugs or alcohol; to make sb do this: *He zonked out after the big exam.* ◇ *I usually zonk out about 11 p.m.*
◆ v + adv • v + n/pron + adv
▸ **ˌzonked ˈout** *adj* (*slang, especially AmE*) sleeping, unconscious, or unable to think, especially from the effects of drugs or alcohol: *I feel totally zonked out after the day's work.*

zoom /zuːm/

ˌzoom ˈin/ˈout (**on sb/sth**) if a camera **zooms in/out**, it shows the object that is being photographed from closer/further away, by using a special lens (a **zoom lens**): *The camera zoomed in on her beautiful eyes.*
◆ v + adv

ˌzoom ˈoff (*informal*) to hurry away: *He jumped into his car and zoomed off.*
◆ v + adv

GUIDE to the PARTICLES

Introduction

This Guide deals with the main categories of meaning of the particles that occur most frequently in the verbs in this dictionary. Knowing something about the different meanings of particles can help you learn and understand how phrasal verbs or combinations of verbs and particles are formed and help you understand new ones when you meet them.

When you look at verbs used with a particular particle, you can see that one particle can have several different meanings. The most obvious starting point is the basic or literal meaning of the particle since this often combines with verbs to produce a meaning that you can easily recognize. For example, the basic meaning of the particle **down** involves movement from a higher position to a lower position. It can be used in combination with a verb as a preposition: '*He* ***climbed down*** *the mountain.*', or as an adverb: '*What are you doing up there?* ***Come down*** *at once!*' '***Put*** *the book* ***down*** *there.*' This meaning of **down** can help you to understand its more figurative use in other verbs. For example, **down** can also be used to express the related ideas of making something lower, or reducing something, (for example ***Turn down*** *that radio*), keeping something low (*to* ***keep down*** *the rate of inflation*), or removing somebody or something from a powerful position (for example, *to* ***bring down*** *the government*.)

What this also shows is that there is a system to the way phrasal verbs are formed. In other words, the combination of particles and verbs is to a large extent systematic and not totally random. It also explains how new phrasal verbs come to be created and can be easily understood by everybody. For example, the phrasal verb *to rule something in*, meaning to include something, is a relatively new expression which you might hear. It was created in contrast to the phrasal verb *to rule something out*, meaning to exclude something. Both these phrasal verbs are related to the meaning of their particles, **out** suggesting excluding and **in** suggesting including. (You can find more about new verbs on page S20 – 21.)

As this last example shows, particles which have opposite meanings, such as **up** and **down**, **in** and **out**, **on** and **off**, can form phrasal verbs which have opposite meanings as well. For example, the opposite of *to turn on* is *to turn off*. However, there are exceptions. The opposite of *to put on your clothes* is *to take off your clothes*. The particles **on** and **off** are opposite in meaning, but combine with different verbs to produce phrasal verbs with opposite meanings.

The meanings of particles that you will find in this Guide are only the main meanings, usually figurative, that occur in groups of verbs. After the explanation of the meaning, some verbs belonging to the group are given, first the ones that appear in the examples, and then a few other important verbs, arranged in alphabetical order. The examples that have been chosen to illustrate each meaning show you the most frequent contexts. You will find that sometimes one phrasal verb appears in more than one category, for example, *build up* in 'Increasing' and 'Creating and constructing', reflecting two different senses of the verb. For more information on how each verb in the lists is used, you should look the verb up in the dictionary.

ABOUT

About is used in approximately 120 verbs (2%) in this dictionary, as an adverb and a preposition. It is often used to show the connection between the verb and its object, for example *talk about something, worry about something*. In some of the verbs, the particles **around** and, especially in British English, **round** can be used instead of **about** without changing the meaning. The most common categories of meaning are:

Moving in different directions

About can be used to indicate that you are moving here and there or making rough or violent movements. The verb shows what kind of movement it is. Example verbs are:

run about **crash about** **throw about**

1 The kids love *running about* in the park.
2 I can hear someone *crashing about* upstairs.
3 She got very angry and started *throwing* things *about* the room.

Around and **round** can usually be used with the same meaning. You can also add **about** to a variety of other verbs to make a similar meaning: for example, *jump about, scatter about*.

Doing nothing

About is used with many verbs that suggest you are spending your time in a lazy way. Other verbs refer to a silly way of behaving.

hang about **wander about** **mess about**

1 Groups of youths were *hanging about* the shopping centre with nothing to do.
2 We spent the afternoon *mooching about* the town and looking in shop windows.
3 Stop *messing about* and start doing your homework.

Around and **round** can usually be used with the same meaning. You can also add **about** to a variety of other verbs to make a similar meaning: for example, *faff about, muck about, potter about*.

Making something happen

About is used with some verbs to indicate something happening or somebody making something happen. Example verbs are:

come about **bring about** **set about**
go about **see about**

1 More and more people are deciding to retire early. How has this *come about*?
2 What do you think has *brought about* this change in public opinion?
3 In the afternoon he *set about* cleaning the kitchen.

Surrounding and enclosing

About can be used with some verbs to give the idea of something going around something and surrounding or enclosing it.

throw about **hedge about**

1 She *threw* her arms *about* me and hugged me tightly.
2 Employment is *hedged about* with more and more laws.

Around and **round** are more common with this meaning.

AROUND

Around is used in approximately 280 verbs (5%) in this dictionary, as an adverb and a preposition. Its basic meaning is of movement in a circle or curve to face in the opposite direction or to arrive at the other side of something, for example, *spin around, turn around, go around*. **Round** is often used instead of **around**, especially in British English. **About** is also sometimes used. In verb plus particle combinations, the most common categories of meaning are:

Moving in different directions

Around is used with some verbs to indicate movement in different directions or to many different places. Example verbs are:

run around **bustle around** **shop around**

1 The playground was full of children *running around* and shouting.
2 He was *bustling* busily *around* the room humming a song.
3 You have to *shop around* if you want to find the best products at the lowest prices.

Round and **about** can be used in these verbs except *shop around*. **Around** can be used with many other verbs with a similar meaning: *blunder around, dance around, rush around, crash around*, etc.

Doing nothing

Around can be used in verbs that suggest that you are spending your time in a lazy way. Other verbs refer to a silly way of behaving. Example verbs are:

hang around **fool around** **mess around**

1 They spend their time *hanging around* the streets.
2 You can't take her seriously because she is always *fooling around*.
3 Stop *messing around* and find something useful to do.

About can also be used with these verbs.

Surrounding and enclosing

Around can be used with some verbs to suggest surrounding someone or something.

crowd around **throw around** **cluster around**

1 People *crowded around* the entrance waiting for her to come out.
2 She rushed up to him and *threw* her arms *around* his neck.

Round can also be used with these verbs.

Being centred on something

Around is used as a preposition with some verbs to suggest the idea of something having a particular idea, object, etc. as its centre or focus. Example verbs are:

centre around **revolve around** **pivot around**

1 Her whole life is *centred around* her research.
2 Their social life *revolves around* going to parties.

Avoiding

Around with verbs can be used to indicate that you are avoiding something.

skirt around **get around** **skate around**
work around

1 He *skirted around* the issues without discussing any of them in depth.
2 We'll have to find a way of *getting around* the problem.

AT

At is a preposition used in 87 verbs (1½%) in this dictionary. It is a common word in English and is often used to show where something or somebody is in space or time. It has two main meanings in verb and particle combinations:

Aiming and directing

At is used with many verbs to give the idea of aiming or directing something at someone or something. Example verbs are:

laugh at **look at** **stare at** **talk at**
aim at **nag at** **wonder at**

1 I felt everybody was *laughing at* me so I left the room.
2 When I entered the room she was *looking at* the painting.
3 She *stared at* me in amazement when I told her the news.
4 He *talked at* us rather than involve us in what he was saying.

Attacking, striking and holding

At can be used with verbs to give the idea of trying to attack, hit or hold someone or something. Example verbs are:

strike at **fly at** **grab at** **get at**

1 He *struck at* me several times with a knife but missed.
2 She lost her temper and *flew at* them, punching and kicking.
3 She *grabbed at* my coat and pulled me back from the edge of the cliff.
4 My parents are always *getting at* me (= criticizing me) for not finishing my college course.

AWAY

Away is used in 210 verbs (3%) in this dictionary, as an adverb. The basic meaning of **away** indicates movement to a different place and it can be used with most verbs of movement, for example, *go away, run away, hurry away, drive away*. **Off** can be used instead of **away** with a similar meaning. **Away** often combines with another particle, particularly **from**, for example *run away from*, *walk away from*, *do away with*. The most common uses of the particle with verbs are as follows:

Avoiding and not doing something

Away is used with some verbs to show that somebody is avoiding a person, a place or a situation or is stopping being involved in something. Example verbs are:

keep away **look away** **back away**
walk away from **shrink away** **stay away**

1. *Keep away* from the edge of the cliff - you might fall.
2. I looked at her but she *looked away*.
3. He moved towards her and she *backed away* in alarm.
4. You can't just *walk away from* every difficult situation.

Separating

Away is used with some verbs giving the meaning of becoming separated from something or from a group of people or of making this happen.

come away **break away** **call away**
peel away **sheer away** **strip away**

1. The handle of the bag *came away* in my hand.
2. They *broke away* from the rest of the group and started to explore the area on their own.
3. The doctor was *called away* from the meeting to attend to a patient.

Removing

Away is used with some verbs to give the idea of removing something from a particular place because you no longer want or need it, or of destroying something.

throw away **frighten away** **do away with**
blast away **drive away** **give away**

1. This is all rubbish. Please *throw* it *away*.
2. He is so rude and aggressive that he *frightens* customers *away*.
3. We need to *do away with* old and outdated laws.

Disappearing

Away is used with some verbs to give the idea of something disappearing gradually.

die away **fade away** **waste away**
wear away **pass away** **pine away**

1. The shouts and cheers gradually *died away* as the President stood up to speak.
2. The excitement of the day began to *fade away* as night fell.
3. The animal was *wasting away* through illness and lack of food.
4. The rock had been *worn away* by the action of the sea.
5. She *passed away* (= died) peacefully in her sleep.

Storing and hiding

Away can be used with some verbs to convey the idea of putting something in a place either to keep it safe or to stop people finding it. Example verbs are:

put away **file away** **tidy away**
hide away **clear away** **lock away**

1. *Put away* your books – you won't need them for the rest of the lesson.
2. All the records relating to the case have been *filed away*.
3. Can you *tidy away* everything on the floor.
4. The letter was *hidden away* where no one would find it.

Working hard or continuously

Away can be used to indicate that you are doing something, especially working hard or doing something difficult or boring, for a long period of time. Example verbs are:

slog away **work away** **slave away**
bang away **beaver away** **plod away**

1. I've been *slogging away* at this for days and I still haven't finished.
2. He spent hours *working away* at the problem.
3. She has been *slaving away* at the report all day.

BACK

Back is an adverb and is used in 175 verbs (3%) in this dictionary. The basic meaning of this particle is returning to the place where you were before or to an earlier time. Many verbs of movement use **back** with this meaning, for example *walk back*, *drive back*.

The other most common uses are:

Returning something

Back can be used to convey the idea of giving or taking something back to the place it came from. It can also mean reacting or replying to someone in a similar way to the way they have acted or spoken.

take back **give back** **write back**
call/ring back **fight back**

1. I *took* the clock *back* to the shop because it broke after a few days.
2. Have you *given back* all the money you borrowed from him?
3. You must *write back* and thank her for her letter.

Moving backwards; being behind or at a distance

Back can be used with verbs to give the idea of moving away from the front or edge of something or of being at a distance from something. Example verbs are:

fall back **stand back** **keep back**
pull back **push back**

1. The British runner tried to catch up, but *fell back* and finished fifth.
2. Please *stand back* and let the people get off the train.
3. *Keep back*! The bomb may explode at any moment.

Not making progress

Back in some combinations suggests being kept or held in a position without making any progress. Example verbs are:

hold back **set back** **keep back**

1. I feel I'm being *held back* in class. I want to move faster.
2. The fire at the office *set* the project *back* several months.

Repeating

Back can be used in verbs that express the idea of doing something again.

play back **go back over**
read back **call/phone back**

1. Can you *play back* the recording once more? I missed part of it.
2. I think we need to *go back over* it so that all the details are clear in our minds.
3. Can you *read* that *back* to me? I want to be sure that you wrote it down correctly.

Regaining

Back in combinations can be used with the idea of getting again something that was lost or of recovering from something.

win back **get back** **bounce back** **claw back**
ease back **grow back** **snap back**

1. We were very lucky. We *won back* all the money we had lost.
2. I don't think I will ever *get back* all those books I lent him.
3. She's feeling a bit down at the moment, but she'll soon *bounce back*.

Being under control

Back in combinations often means reducing something or keeping something such as an emotion under control. Example verbs are:

cut back on **force back** **choke back**
bite back **hold back**

1. You need to *cut back on* the number of cigarettes you smoke.
2. He tried to *force back* the urge to punch him on the nose.
3. She *choked back* the tears as she told us what had happened.

Looking at the past

Back can be used to talk about the past.

date back **go back** **take back**
look back **think back**

1. This castle *dates back* to the 12th century.
2. John and I are great friends. We *go back* a long way.
3. This music *takes* me *back* to the years I lived in Paris.

DOWN

Down is used in about 310 verbs (7%) in this dictionary, mainly as an adverb. It often has meanings that are the opposite of **up**. The literal meaning is movement in a downwards direction, moving from a higher to a lower position, for example, *climb down*, *bend down*, *fall down*. Many combinations of a verb and **down** refer to somebody putting something on a surface, for example, *bang down*, *lay down*. It is also used to express figurative ideas related to downward movement, such as decreasing, being reduced or failing. As an adverb it combines with some prepositions to make three-word verbs such as *get down to, look down on, come down with*. The most common uses of **down** are:

Falling and destroying

This use of the particle is most closely connected to the literal meaning of **down**, and suggests something or somebody falling to the ground and being destroyed or suffering damage. Examples of verbs are:

pull down **burn down** **tear down**
knock down **run down** **beat down**

1 The builders were in the process of *pulling down* a wall.
2 The whole forest was *burnt down*.
3 The protesters *tore down* the barriers.
4 He was *knocked down/run down* by a car.

Reducing

Down is used in many verbs that express the idea of something decreasing in amount, strength, speed, cost, importance, etc., or of somebody making something do this. Examples of verbs are:

turn down **bring down** **calm down** **come down**
play down **cut down** **die down** **narrow down**
put down **run down** **slow down** **wear down**

1 Can you *turn* the music *down*, please? It's deafening.
2 We have to *bring down* our costs in order to remain competitive.
3 Please *calm down* – there's no need to get so excited about it.
4 Fortunately his temperature is starting to *come down*.
5 The government are trying to *play down* the importance of the meeting.

Suppressing

Down can be used with verbs to express the idea of keeping somebody or something under control or ending something, often using authority or force. Examples of verbs are:

keep down **clamp down** **come down on**
break down **crack down** **pin down**

1 The government is trying to *keep down* wage demands.
2 The police are going to *clamp down on* motorists who break the speed limit.
3 The teacher said he would *come down* hard *on* anyone he caught cheating.

Defeating

Down can be used to express the idea of defeating someone or something or being defeated in an argument, a competition, etc.

bring down **put down** **vote down**
back down **shout down** **stare down**

1 The aim of the rebels is to *bring down* the government.
2 The rebellion was quickly *put down* by troops loyal to the president.
3 Her proposal for stricter safety measures was *voted down*.
4 The government *backed down* over the idea of increasing taxes.

Failing

Down can be used to express the idea of something stopping, failing or not working properly. Examples of verbs are:

break down **close down** **turn down**
let down **wind down**

1 The car *broke down* on the way to the coast.
2 The company was making huge losses and in the end was forced to *close down*.
3 She applied for the job but was *turned down*.
4 My PC has never *let* me *down*.

Fixing

Down can be used with the idea of fixing something firmly to something else. Example verbs are:

tie down **nail down** **strap down**
batten down **screw down** **stick down**

1 Make sure you *tie* everything *down* so that the wind doesn't blow it away.
2 This floorboard needs *nailing down* before it causes an accident.
3 Everything on the boat was *strapped down* so it wouldn't be lost in a storm.

Recording in writing

Down is used with verbs meaning writing or copying to give the idea of recording something in writing. Examples of verbs are:

write down **get down** **note down**
jot down **copy down** **put down**
set down

1 Could you *write* it *down* for me, please?
2 He was speaking too fast for me to *get* it *down* on paper.

3 I'll *note/jot down* the things we have to do before Sunday.

Eating

Down is used with some verbs to describe ways of eating or drinking. Example verbs are:

gulp down **gobble down** **bolt down**
keep down **stay down** **wash down**
wolf down

1 She was in such a hurry she had to *gulp down* her coffee.
2 'This is delicious,' he said as he *gobbled down* another piece of cake.

FOR

For is a preposition, used in about 115 verbs (2%) in this dictionary. It is one of the most common words in English. It often combines with verbs to link the verb and its object, for example, ask for something, *pay for* something. It has two common meanings when used with verbs:

Aims and purposes

For can be used to refer to the aim or purpose of an action or to where you are going. Example verbs are:

apply for **press for** **live for**
make for **head for**

1 I've *applied for* more than twenty jobs in the past month.
2 We're *pressing for* a change in the way animals are transported to markets.
3 I *live for* my children. They are the most important thing in my life.
4 We're *making for* Edinburgh and hope to be there by tonight.

States and actions in relation to other people

For can be used with some verbs to show how you feel about somebody or something, or to show how you are dealing with a person or a situation. Example verbs are:

feel for **fall for** **fear for**
root for **care for** **stand up for**

1 I really *feel for* her. She has lost all her family in the past year.
2 I *fell for* her the moment I saw her and two years later we were married.
3 When we heard the sound of gunfire we all *feared for* our lives.
4 Good luck, we'll be *rooting for* you.

IN

In is used in about 380 verbs (6½%) in this dictionary, as an adverb and a preposition. The basic meaning is (being) contained inside something or somewhere, or movement from outside to inside. It is often the opposite of **out**. The preposition **into** can also be used with verbs of movement (*Please come in. She came into the room in a hurry.*) The most common uses are:

Entering

In is used with many verbs with the literal meaning of entering somewhere, for example, *go in, come in, walk in, invite in*. (**Into** has similar uses).

break in **get in** **let in** **ask in**
breeze in **drop in** **squeeze in**

1 Thieves *broke in* and stole all the paintings.
2 I'll never understand how they *got in* without anyone noticing.
3 That'll be Stuart at the door. Can you *let him in*?

Arriving

In can be used in verb plus particle combinations that refer to a person, a vehicle, etc. arriving at a particular place.

clock in **check in** **pull in**
draw in **flood in**

1 What time do you have to *clock in* in the morning?
2 Our flight is delayed so there is no hurry to *check in*.
3 We arrived at the station just as the train *pulled in*.

Absorbing

In can be used with certain verbs to give the idea of absorbing something.

take in **sink in** **drink in**
breathe in **soak in**

1 We had to try and *take in* a lot of information in a very short period of time.
2 It was only after a few minutes that the awful truth started to *sink in*.
3 For the first few minutes I *drank in* the atmosphere of the place.

Including

In can be used with some verbs that give the idea of adding or mixing something in something else, or of including something with something else. Example verbs are:

stir in **throw in** **take in**
blend in **fold in**

1 *Stir in* the ingredients gradually until all of them have been used.
2 If you buy the car I'll *throw in* the radio for free.
3 While we're in London we could *take in* a visit to the theatre or the opera.

Putting inside or between

In can be used with some verbs, giving the idea of one thing being put into or going into another. Example verbs are:

plug in **put in** **key in** **lay in**
pump in **punch in** **type in**

1 First you have to *plug* it *in* and then you switch it on.
2 I'd like to *put* some money *in* my bank account.
3 I need someone to *key in* all this information on my computer.

Beginning; introducing something new

In can be used in verbs that give the idea of something starting or of somebody introducing something new.

set in **bring in** **phase in**
creep in **usher in**

1 The cold weather has started to *set in*.
2 The government wants to *bring in* stricter laws to protect the environment.
3 The new production scheme will be *phased in* gradually.

Collecting

In can be used in combinations that refer to collecting things. Example verbs are:

gather in **get in** **pull in**
fetch in **pack in**

1 They *gathered in* the grapes ready for making wine.
2 It's starting to rain. I'd better *get* the washing *in*.
3 The band have been *pulling in* the crowds wherever they perform.

Filling and completing

In is used in some combinations that refer to filling a drawing, a shape, a hole etc. with something and completing it. Other similar verbs refer to writing something somewhere.

colour in **fill in** **pencil in**
block in **ink in** **shade in**

1 Listen, children. When you have finished your drawing you can *colour* it *in*.
2 I'd like you to *fill in* this form
3 I'll *pencil in* next Wednesday for a meeting.

Taking part

In is used with many verbs to suggest the idea of joining an activity and being involved in something. Sometimes the involvement of the person is not welcome.

join in **go in for** **call in**
interfere in **jump in** **pitch in**
want in

1 Why don't you *join in* and have some fun? Everybody's dancing.
2 She decided to *go in for* the competition because she had a good chance of winning.
3 The police were *called in* to investigate the robbery.
4 I don't like you *interfering in* my affairs.

Interrupting

In can be used with verbs to express the idea of someone interrupting a conversation or a meeting when the interruption is not wanted or welcome.

cut in **barge in** **break in**

1 She *cut in* while I was talking in order to make her own suggestions.
2 We were talking quietly in the kitchen when he *barged in* and said he wanted a drink.
3 'I'm sorry, but I simply can't agree with that,' he *broke in*.

Limiting

In can be used in combinations that refer to somebody being prevented from leaving a place. Example verbs are:

snow in **block in** **lock in**
box in **fence in** **hem in**

1 No planes are flying out today. We are completely *snowed in*.
2 Look at that! Someone has parked their car so close to mine and *blocked* me *in*.
3 Some prisoners are *locked in* for twenty three hours a day.

Staying inside

In can be used in combinations that mean remaining inside or at home instead of going out somewhere. The particle **out** can be used with the same verbs with the opposite meaning. **In** is also used with verbs meaning that you remain in bed later than you usually do. Example verbs are:

stay in **eat in** **sleep in** **lie in** **stop in**

1 We decided to *stay in* and watch a film on television.
2 Why don't we *eat in* tonight instead of going out for a meal?
3 I was so tired I *slept in* until 11.

Damaging, destroying, falling

In is used in combinations that mean damaging or destroying things, especially by making them fall inwards. Other verbs refer to things falling inwards.

smash in **kick in** **cave in**

1 The car door was completely *smashed in*.
2 The police *kicked in* the door and entered the apartment.
3 The whole building is going to *cave in* at any moment.

Stopping doing something

In is used in combination with some verbs that mean stopping trying to resist something or giving up something such as your job. Example verbs are:

give in **throw in** **cave in** **jack in**

1 We will never *give in* to threats of violence.
2 I sometimes feel like *throwing* it all *in* and looking for a job abroad.

INTO

Into is a preposition and it is used in 260 verbs (4%) in this dictionary. The literal meaning of **into** is movement from the outside of something to the inside, so it is used with many verbs that give the idea of of entering something, for example, *He walked into the room*. It is often used in the same verbs and with the same meanings as the adverb **in**, for example, *burst in* (on sb), *burst into* (a place). The particle can also be used in verbs that express metaphorical meanings, for example, changing or being transformed. The most common uses are:

Entering

Into is used in many combinations meaning to enter somewhere. Example verbs are:

break into **get into** **check into**
crowd into **invite into**

1 Burglars *broke into* my house last night and stole all my video equipment.
2 He *got into* the car and drove off.
3 We *checked into* the hotel.
4 Everybody *crowded into* the room to listen to the Minister speak.
5 She *invited* us *into* her room.

Out of is often used with similar verbs as an opposite, for example *get out of*, *check out of*.

Putting in, going in

Into is used in many combinations referring to putting or going in or inside something.

plug into **tuck into** **pay into**
bore into **dip into**

1 You can *plug* the TV *into* the socket in the wall.
2 She never wears her blouse *tucked into* her skirt.
3 I need to *pay* some money *into* my bank account.

Combining

Into is used in combinations that mean mixing one substance into another so that they become one. Example verbs are:

blend into **shade into** **mix into**
fade into **fold into**

1 *Blend* the cream *into* the sauce.
2 The scarlet of the bird's wings *shades into* pink at the tips.

Transforming and changing

Into can be used to describe things that change or are transformed. Example verbs are:

turn into   **grow into**   **make into**   **change into**

1 The discussion soon *turned into* an argument about politics.
2 She *grew into* a very loving person.

Persuading and forcing

Into is used with some verbs to convey the idea of persuading or making someone do something that they do not really want to do. The verb describes the way you try to persuade somebody. Example verbs are:

talk into   **press into**   **frighten into**
force into   **shame into**   **starve into**

1 She *talked* me *into* going on holiday with her.
2 I was *pressed into* giving a speech at her farewell dinner.
3 He was *frightened into* confessing the crime.

Out of is often used with these verbs with the opposite meaning: *talk somebody out of something*.

Hitting and meeting

Into can be used with verbs that describe objects hitting one another, and to describe people meeting by accident.

bang into   **run into**   **bump into**

1 He didn't put the light on and *banged into* a chair.
2 I *ran into* Steve (= met him by chance) the other day. He hasn't changed at all.

Investigating

Into can be used with some verbs that give the idea of investigating something in detail in order to discover the truth.

go into   **look into**   **delve into**   **dig into**

1 The third chapter of the book *goes into* the subject in great detail.
2 The police are *looking into* the matter.

Starting

Many combinations with **into** suggest starting doing something, often suddenly.

burst into   **plunge into**   **rush into**   **get into**

1 She *burst into* tears.
2 The aircraft *burst into* flames.
3 The country was *plunged into* recession.

OF

Of is a preposition. It occurs in 55 verbs (almost 1%) in this dictionary. When it is used in verb plus particle combinations it shows the relationship between the verb and somebody or something that is involved in the action. The different kinds of relationship are shown below:

Communicating and interpreting

Of with some verbs shows that a particular piece of information or knowledge is being communicated to or interpreted by somebody. Example verbs are:

hear of   **know of**   **make of**
remind of   **speak of**

1 I'm sorry, I've never *heard of* him.
2 I *know of* the place but I've never been there.
3 What do you *make of* her most recent paintings?

Characteristics and qualities

Of can be used with verbs to show the characteristics or qualities of someone or something, or what something contains.

smell of   **remind of**   **make of**   **consist of**

1 This soap *smells of* spring flowers.
2 The piece of music *reminds* me *of* holidays in Greece.
3 It's *made of* cheese and potatoes.

Removing, lacking

Of can be used with some verbs to indicate something is being removed from someone or something or that they do not have something. Example verbs are:

rob of   **starve of**   **deprive of**
dispose of   **strip of**

1 They *robbed* me *of* everything I was carrying with me.
2 She was *starved of* affection during her childhood.

OFF

Off is used in about 520 verbs (8½%) in this dictionary, as an adverb and a preposition. It has a wide variety of meanings. It is often used with verbs of movement to indicate movement away from a place, for example, *run off, dash off, hurry off, march off*, where the verb shows how somebody departs. **Off** can sometimes be replaced by **away** in this meaning. The most common uses are:

Departing

The particle **off** can be used to give the idea of somebody starting a journey or leaving a place or of making somebody or something do this. Example verbs are:

set off   **take off**   **see off**   **make off**
clear off   **blast off**   **head off**   **start off**

1 We *set off* at four in the morning to climb the mountain.
2 What times does the plane *take off*?
3 He came to *see* us *off* at the airport.
4 The robbers *made off* in a blue car.

Starting

Off in combinations can also suggest that something is beginning. Example verbs are:

start off   **spark off**   **kick off**
lead off   **touch off**

1 The day *started off* well, but gradually got worse.
2 Small things can sometimes *spark off* a row between people.

Ending; not happening

Some verbs can be used with **off** to give the idea of something ending or being cancelled. Example verbs are:

break off   **ring off**   **put off**   **call off**
cut off   **log off**   **switch off**

1 The unions have decided to *break off* their negotiations with management.
2 I'm afraid he *rang off* before I had a chance to ask him what his name was.
3 We've *put off* the meeting till the end of next week.

Finishing completely

Off can be used with some verbs to emphasize that something is completely finished. Often these are verbs that can also be used on their own with a similar, but weaker, meaning. Example verbs are:

finish off   **pay off**   **sell off**   **go off**
polish off   **round off**   **work off**

1 I'd like to *finish off* what I'm doing before I go home.
2 Our aim is to *pay off* all our debts by the end of the year.
3 They decided to *sell off* their entire stock and invest in a new range of products.
4 The demonstration *went off* quietly without any serious incidents.

Becoming less

Off can be used with some verbs to express the idea of something gradually decreasing in strength or effect. Example verbs are:

wear off   **level off**   **cool off**   **fall off**
die off   **ease off**   **tail off**

1 The pain started to return when the effect of the drugs began to *wear off*.
2 The rate of inflation was rising dramatically but now it has started to *level off*.
3 We need time to *cool off* (= become less hot) and have a shower before lunch.

Rejecting or dismissing

Off is used with some verbs to suggest the idea of rejecting, dismissing or trying to ignore somebody or something. Example verbs are:

write off   **lay off**   **shrug off**
laugh off   **brush off**   **shake off**

1 I know he hasn't been playing very well recently, but we can't *write* him *off*.
2 The company has had to *lay off* several hundred workers.
3 It's only a cold. I'll soon *shrug* it *off*.
4 She tried to *laugh off* the whole matter, but I knew that it worried her terribly.

Resisting

Some verbs using the particle **off** indicate that you are trying to stop something happening or trying to protect somebody or yourself from something harmful or unpleasant. Example verbs are:

fight off   **hold off**   **ward off**   **beat off**
fend off   **keep off**   **stave off**   **warn off**

1 I am doing everything I can to *fight off* another attack of flu.
2 We can't *hold off* the enemy much longer.
3 He put up his hand to *ward off* the blows.

Removing

Off is used with some verbs to give the idea of removing something from somewhere, for example by cutting or chopping. Some combinations of verbs have the idea of removing someone from your responsibility.

cut off **cross off** **take off**
palm off on **bump off** **rub off**

1 I had to *cut* a bit *off* the top of the photo.
2 I think we can *cross* them *off* our list. I'm sure they won't come to the party.
3 *Take off* those dirty boots before you come into the house.
4 Don't *palm* your visitors *off on* me – you should entertain them yourself.

Dividing and separating

In these combinations **off** indicates that one area is divided or separated from another, for example with a barrier, to stop somebody or something going into it.

block off **fence off** **seal off**
curtain off **divide off** **shut off**

1 The police *blocked* the road *off* to prevent anyone from entering the city.
2 The field was *fenced off* to stop animals eating the crops.
3 The area has been *sealed off* to stop the spread of contamination.

Being absent from work or school

Off can be used with some verbs to talk about not going to work or school or leaving early. Example verbs are:

take off **skive off** **slip off** **bunk off**

1 She *took* three weeks *off* (work) to be with her sick mother.
2 As a teenager he was always *skiving off* school.

Drawing attention

Off occurs in combination with some verbs that indicate that someone is drawing attention to themselves or their opinions in some way. Other combinations describe how something draws attention to something else or makes it easy to see. Example verbs are:

show off **set off** **sound off** **mouth off**

1 Ignore him. He's just *showing off* in front of the girls.
2 I think the white background is ideal for *setting off* the rich colours of the painting.

Using

Off can be used with some verbs to talk about things that are used, such as money, food, etc. Example verbs are:

live off **feed off** **run off** **work off**

1 Although he's nearly thirty he still *lives off* his parents.
2 The birds *feed off* the meat that has been left behind by the lions.
3 You can *run* the CD player *off* a battery.

On can also be used with these verbs with a similar meaning.

Exploding

This group of verbs is used for things such as weapons, that explode or are fired.

set off **blast off** **go off** **let off** **fire off**

1 The bomb was *set off* by someone using a remote control device.
2 The rocket *blasted off* towards space.
3 The gun *went off* before he was ready.

Cheating

Off is used with some verbs to indicate that something is done dishonestly or with the intention of cheating someone.

rip off **fob off** **palm off** **pass off as**

1 We were *ripped off* by the taxi driver. He charged more than double the normal price.
2 When I said I wanted to buy a good watch he tried to *fob* me *off* with a cheap plastic thing.

ON

On is used in 380 verbs (about 6%) in this dictionary, as an adverb and a preposition. Its basic meaning describes the position of one thing above or on top of another or resting on something. For example: *He put the lid on the pot. He put the lid on.* It is also used in combination with verbs of movement, where the preposition **onto** is also sometimes used, for example *get on the bus, get onto the bus*. With some of these verbs it is the opposite of off, for example *get on the bus, get off the bus*. The most common uses of the particle **on** are as follows:

Continuing

The particle **on** can be used with many verbs to show that something continues and does not stop. For example, if someone decides to continue driving instead of stopping, we can say the person *drove on*. It can also mean that you stop for a short time and then continue: *We spent a few days in Seattle and then flew on to L.A.* It can also be used in this way to express the idea of continuing to do something difficult or unpleasant, for example *fight on, struggle on, battle on, soldier on*. In other cases it suggests that something is continuing for too long, for example *drag on, drone on, ramble on*. Other commonly used verbs are:

keep on **stay on** **go on**
carry on **hurry on** **move on**

1 Many people tried to interrupt him but he *kept on* talking.
2 We liked the town so much we decided to *stay on* another month.
3 He paused, then *went on* as if nothing had happened.

Developing and changing

On can be used with some verbs to talk about the way things are progressing or changing. Example verbs are:

get on **come on** **move on**

1 She is *getting on* very well at school.
2 How is your new novel *coming on*?
3 Technology has *moved on* and made the world a different place.

Encouraging

On in combination with some verbs gives the idea of supporting somebody or encouraging someone to do something. Example verbs are

urge on **come on** **egg on** **spur on**

1 The team captain *urged* them *on* to produce their best performance.
2 *Come on*! I know you can do it if you try!
3 They *egged* him *on*, telling him to steal the apples.

Starting

On can be used in verbs that talk about starting an activity or making a machine begin to work. Example verbs are:

bring on **sign on** **turn on**
switch on **put on**

1 The dust in the air *brought on* an attack of coughing and sneezing.
2 He had to *sign on* at the unemployment office.
3 She *turned on* the radio.
4 He *put on* the kettle to make a cup of tea.

Off is often used with the some of these verbs with the opposite meaning. For example: *She turned on the radio. She turned off the radio.*

Holding and connecting

On can be used in combinations to express the idea of holding something tightly. Other verbs describe how things are connected or attached to each other. Example verbs are:

hang on **hold on** **strap on** **latch on**
cling on **fasten on** **screw on** **stick on**

1 *Hang on* to this rope and don't let go.
2 Can you *hold on* (= said on the phone) while I find the information you need?
3 The luggage was *strapped on* to the car roof.
4 People are *latching on* to the idea very quickly.

Dressing

On can be used with different verbs to talk about ways of getting dressed.

put on **try on** **pull on** **slip on**

1 I *put on* my best clothes for the interview.
2 I *tried on* several jackets before choosing one.

Having an effect on someone or something

On is often used as a preposition with verbs to talk about what somebody does to a person or a thing, or the effect that somebody or something has. Example verbs are:

dote on **impress on** **dawn on** **cheat on**
descend on **elaborate on** **spy on** **work on**

1 He absolutely *dotes on* her and gives her gifts all the time.
2 I want to *impress on* you the importance of these new safety rules.
3 It suddenly *dawned on* me why she was so angry.

Upon can also be used with many of these verbs, but it is more formal: *The importance of education was impressed upon me from an early age.*

Attacking

Some verbs with on indicate that someone is being attacked, either physically or with words. Example verbs are:

turn on **pick on** **round on** **jump on**
set on **start on**

1 She suddenly *turned on* me and criticized everything I had done.
2 Why does my boss keep *picking on* me?
3 He *rounded on* me for not supporting him at the meeting.

Thinking and commenting

On is used with some verbs of thinking or deciding to show what you are thinking or talking about. Example verbs are:

reflect on **decide on** **touch on** **sleep on**

1 I've *reflected on* what happened and I've decided to forgive you.
2 We have to *decide on* several things at today's meeting.
3 I'll *sleep on* it and let you know my decision by the end of the week.

Finding

On is used with some verbs that mean finding something or someone suddenly or unexpectedly. Examples of verbs are:

hit on **stumble on** **chance on**

1 We *hit on* a good idea for making some money.
2 I *stumbled on* the information while I was looking for something else.
3 Jill *chanced on* an old school friend at the party.

Depending

On is often used with verbs to indicate that *one thing is affected by or decided by* something else. **On** can also indicate the person or thing that you trust or feel sure about. Example verbs are:

depend on **rely on** **count on** **hinge on**

1 The success of the trip will *depend on* whether it rains or not.
2 You can *depend on* James to deal with the situation.
3 Our work *relies on* voluntary donations.

OUT

Out is used in 815 verbs (14%) in this dictionary, as an adverb. The basic meaning is of movement from inside to outside, so it combines with many verbs of movement, for example, *storm out, rush out, go out*. Many verbs that combine with **out** also combine with the adverb plus preposition **out of**, for example, *storm out, storm out of the room; Don't leave me out; He was left out of the team.* **Out** and **in** can sometimes be used with the same verbs to express opposite meanings, for example, *go out, go in.* The most common uses of this particle are:

Leaving

Out can be used in verbs that mean starting a journey or going away from a person or a place. Example verbs are:

set out **pop out** **check out** **start out**

1 We *set out* in the early morning to climb the mountain.
2 I'm just going to *pop out* for a few minutes to get some milk.
3 We have to *check out* of the hotel by midday.

Searching, observing, solving

Out in some combinations gives the idea of searching for something such as a piece of information, the answer to a difficult problem, etc. and then finding it.

find out **dig out** **make out**
turn out **hunt out** **sort out**
spy out **try out** **work out**

1 Can you *find out* how many people in the company are aged over forty?
2 I'll try and *dig out* some old college photos for you.
3 I can't *make out* the handwriting. What is this word here?
4 Let's wait and see how things *turn out*.

Disappearing; using completely

Out can be used in phrasal verbs to suggest that something is gradually disappearing or has been used completely so that there is none left. Example verbs are:

die out **run out** **go out** **phase out**

1 The change in weather conditions is causing many species to *die out*.
2 I think we've *run out* of petrol.

Stopping an activity

Out is used in some verbs that describe an activity being stopped, often by using force or authority. Some verbs describe people or places being completely destroyed. Other verbs refer to a fire, etc. going out or being put out. Example verbs are:

stamp out **cut out** **wipe out** **burn out**
beat out **blow out** **drown out**

1 The rebellion was quickly *stamped out*.
2 I should really try to *cut out* chocolate (= stop eating it)!
3 The town was almost completely *wiped out* by the earthquake.
4 The fire had *burnt out* before the fire engines arrived.

Stopping being involved

Out can be used in combinations that show that you are no longer involved in something or no longer want to be involved. Example verbs are:

fall out **pull out** **bottle out** **chicken out**
drop out **opt out** **sell out**

1 Mike and Janet have *fallen out* and are not talking to one another.
2 The company has decided to *pull out* of the project.

Producing

Out can used with verbs to talk about things being produced, especially when they are produced quickly and in large quantities. Example verbs are:

turn out **churn out** **spill out** **pour out**

1 The factory *turns out* 200 washing machines a day.
2 This magazine *churns out* the same stories every week of the year.
3 All her worries came *spilling out*.

Being outside

Out can be used in combinations that express the idea of somebody going out of a place, such as their home, or doing something outside. Example verbs are:

get out **camp out** **eat out**
stay out **go out** **lock out**

1 The prisoners *got out* through a hole in the fence.
2 We *camped out* in a field in the pouring rain.
3 We like to *eat out* at least once a month
4 They *stayed out* all night and only returned in the early morning.

Appearing

Out can be used with some verbs that give the idea of something or somebody appearing, sometimes suddenly, or of something being brought out of a place where it was hidden. Example verbs are:

leap out **turn out** **take out**
break out **come out**

1 My name *leapt out* at me from the page.
2 Two thousand people *turned out* to watch the parade.
3 He *took out* a gun and pointed it at me.

Speaking or shouting loudly

Out can be used with some verbs that suggest that somebody is speaking loudly or angrily, perhaps to call for help or shout a warning. Example verbs are:

bark out **call out** **scream out**
shout out **snap out** **yell out**

1 She was *barking out* orders at the children.
2 Everyone was *calling out* for help
3 People were *screaming out* to the driver to tell him to stop.

Sharing

Out can be used to convey the idea of something being distributed to or shared among people. Example verbs are:

hand out **give out** **share out**
dish out **dole out** **serve out**

1 They were *handing out* free samples of cheese in the supermarket today.
2 We need to *give out* more information to our clients.
3 We *shared out* the prize money amongst the three of us.

Finishing

Out can be used to convey the idea of something being completely finished or done. Example verbs are:

hear out **dry out** **talk out** **tire out** **wear out**

1 Don't interrupt - *hear* me *out*.
2 If the soil in the garden *dries out*, this particular plant will not survive.
3 It might help to *talk* things *out*.

Out is often added to other verbs or past participles to create new verbs that mean you have completely finished doing something and can do no more. For example: *I'm all partied out* (= I have been to so many parties that I can't go to any more).

Removing

Out is used with some verbs that mean removing something or somebody from somewhere, or removing yourself from somewhere. The verb tells you how this is done. Example verbs are:

take out knock out pull out bomb out
push out rinse out throw out wash out

1 I'd like to *take out* three thousand pounds from my account.
2 She was *knocked out* of the competition in the first round.
3 The army has decided to *pull out*.

Excluding

Out can be used in combinations that express the idea that someone or something is not included in an activity, a list, etc. Example verbs are:

leave out cross out rule out
filter out keep out weed out

1 We must be sure not to *leave* anyone *out* when we invite people to the party.
2 *Cross out* the wrong answers.
3 The government has *ruled out* the possibility of giving any financial aid.

Supporting

Out is used with verbs that suggest helping or supporting somebody, especially with money or encouragement.

help out bear out bring out
draw out reach out to

1 I wonder if you could *help* me *out*. I've got a problem.
2 David will *bear* me *out* and confirm that everything I have said is true.

Choosing

Out can be used to convey the idea of something being chosen from among many others. Example verbs are:

pick out single out pull out
mark out separate out sort out

1 She was *picked out* as the person most likely to succeed in the company.
2 Some of the animals were *singled out* for special medical treatment.
3 Can you *sort out* all the books you don't want any more?

Lasting

Out can be used to convey the idea of resisting some kind of pressure or enduring a difficult situation. Example verbs are:

hold out stick out last out ride out

1 The unions are *holding out* for a better pay deal.
2 I don't like the job but I'll *stick* it *out* until the end of the year.
3 They say they can't *last out* much longer. They need help now.

Attacking; reacting violently

Out can be used in verbs that show that someone is attacking somebody or reacting violently to something. Examples verbs are:

lash out strike out fight out
hit out kick out shoot out

1 The lion *lashed out* if any of the other lions came near him.
2 As soon as the fight started, he *lashed out* at everyone standing near him.
3 When the man said something rude, I *struck out* at him.

Recording and putting down on paper

Out can be used with verbs connected with writing or drawing to give the idea of something being recorded or written down on paper.

copy out sketch out map out write out

1 Could you *copy* this *out* for me so it is easy to read?
2 I'll *sketch out* a few ideas for you on paper.
3 They have *mapped out* the area where they will be digging.

Increasing

Out is used with some verbs that show that something or somebody is increasing in size, shape, extent, etc.

broaden out fill out flesh out
open out spread out

1 The river *broadens out* just outside the town.
2 Hasn't the baby *filled out* now (= become fatter)?
3 These points were *fleshed out* in the later part of the speech.

OVER

Over is used in approximately 200 verbs (about 3%) in this dictionary as an adverb and a preposition. The basic meaning of the particle indicates movement from one side of something to the other, especially over the top of something, for example: *climb over a wall, fly over a city, cross over a road*. It can also indicate a position above something: *bend over* something, *lean over* someone. The most common uses are:

Having a higher position

Over can be used to suggest that someone or something is taller or in a higher position than somebody or something else. It can also refer to somebody in a position of greater authority or responsibility.

tower over stand over rule over
preside over watch over

1 My son is only 15 but he *towers over* his father already.
2 I don't want my boss *standing over* me and watching everything I do.
3 She has *ruled over* the country for twenty years.

Covering

Over can be used in combination with verbs to show that something is completely covered with something such as ice or clouds. It is also used in a more figurative way to suggest that a difficulty or the truth is being hidden. Example verbs are:

freeze over cloud over gloss over
paint over paper over

1 Last winter the lake was completely *frozen over*.
2 What a pity! It's starting to *cloud over*.
3 He avoided answering difficult questions by *glossing over* the problem.

Moving to the side

A few verbs use **over** to indicate movement to the side of something. Example verbs are:

pull over move over

1 The driver *pulled over* to the side of the road to take a short break.
2 Can you *move over*? I haven't got enough space.

Visiting

Over with some verbs suggests going from your house to somebody else's for a visit.

ask over drop over come over
invite over pop over

1 The neighbours have *asked* us *over* for tea.
2 Why don't you *drop over* this evening?

Considering, thinking about or examining

Over can be used with verbs that mean thinking about something carefully before you make a decision, or inspecting something to see if it is correct.

think over talk over check over
go over look over

1 I'd like some time to *think over* your offer before making a decision.
2 Let's *talk* it *over* and see if we can come to some kind of agreement.
3 Can you *check* this *over* for me to see if there are any mistakes?

Remaining

Over can be used to convey the idea of something remaining in the same place or being kept to use at a later date.

stay over hold over be left over sleep over

1 She decided to *stay over* with her parents for a couple of days.
2 I think we should *hold* that agenda item *over* until the next meeting.

Changing position

Over can be used in combination with verbs suggesting the idea of two people or things changing places, jobs etc., or of a person changing their opinion or ideas.

take over swap over win over
change over hand over swap over

1 She is *taking over* the management of the company from next spring.
2 I'll drive the first part of the journey, then we'll *swap over*.
3 I think I've managed to *win* her *over* to our side of the argument.

Falling

Over can be used with verbs to express the idea of something falling to the ground, usually from an upright position. The verb shows what the movement is.

fall over **knock over** **trip over**
keel over **kick over** **run over**

1. I *fell over* and hurt my knee.
2. She *knocked over* the vase as she entered the room.
3. I *tripped over* someone's bag and fell.

Finishing and recovering

Over can be used in combinations that mean that something is temporary and will soon end. Example verbs are:

blow over **get over** **get over with**

1. It wasn't a serious argument. I'm sure it will *blow over* and soon be forgotten.
2. She's upset now, but she'll soon *get over* it.

Communicating a message or an impression

Over can be used to convey the idea of giving somebody a message or a particular impression. Example verbs are:

put over **get over** **come over**

1. She is very good at *putting over* her ideas to an audience.
2. I think we succeeded in *getting over* the idea that the situation is serious.
3. He *came over* as rather arrogant in the interview.

Across can be used instead of **over** with these verbs with a very similar meaning.

Overflowing

Over can be used in combinations that mean that something such as a liquid flows over the edge of a container. These verbs can also have a figurative meaning referring to very strong feelings. Example verbs are:

boil over **spill over** **brim over** **bubble over**

1. Please watch this saucepan of milk so that it doesn't *boil over*.
2. The enormous crowd *spilled over* into the neighbouring streets.
3. Her heart was *brimming over* with happiness.

ROUND

Round is used in approximately 150 verbs (2⅓ %) in the dictionary, as an adverb and a preposition. The basic meaning is of movement in a circle or curve in order to face in the opposite direction or to arrive at the other side of something. It can sometimes be replaced by **about** and **around** with very little change of meaning. The most common categories of use are:

Moving

Round is used with some verbs to indicate movement in different directions.

move round **run round** **hand round**
phone/call round

1. At the first class we were told to *move round* the room and talk to different people.
2. It was a cold day so the kids *ran round* in the playground to keep warm.

Lack of activity and purpose

Round can be used to suggest lack of activity or specific purpose. Example verbs are:

stand round **hang round** **sit round**

1. We all *stood round*, waiting for something to happen.
2. He *hangs round* bars and talks to anyone who will listen to him.

Surrounding and enclosing

Round can be used to indicate that something is surrounded by something.

wrap round **throw round** **go round**
gather round

1. *Wrap* this scarf *round* your neck - it's cold outside.
2. He *threw* his arms *round* me.
3. The belt won't *go round* my waist now!

Being centred on something

Round can be used with a few verbs to indicate how something or somebody has a particular person or thing as the focus of their attention. Example verbs are:

revolve round **centre round**

1. My whole life seems to *revolve round* cooking, cleaning and shopping.
2. Our holiday *centred round* sitting by the pool, swimming and sunbathing.

Turning

Round is sometimes used in combinations with the idea of something turning in circles or turning to face the other way. Example verbs are:

spin round **swing round** **wheel round**

1. The car *span round* several times and then hit a tree.
2. She *swung round* with the hammer in her hand and almost hit me.

Avoiding

Round can be used with verbs to express the idea that you are avoiding something.

talk round **skate round**

1. We *talked round* the subject but we never really discussed it in any real detail.
2. Politicians tend to *skate round* most issues without answering any questions directly.

Persuading

Round can be used with verbs to express the idea of persuading someone to change their minds about something. The verb shows how you do this. Example verbs are:

talk round **get round** **come round** **win round**

1. I managed to *talk* them *round* and they finally signed the contract.
2. At first her parents refused to let her go on holiday alone, but she finally *got round* them.

Visiting informally

Round is used with some verbs to indicate going to a particular place to visit a person briefly on an informal basis.

call round **drop round** **pop round**
come round

1. *Call round* any time. We're always happy to see you.
2. I'll *drop round* later and give you that book I mentioned.

Sharing or distributing

Round in combinations can give the idea of sharing or distributing something between people. Example verbs are:

hand round **pass round** **go round**

1. Could you help to *hand round* the sandwiches?
2. *Pass* the photos *round* so that everyone can see them.
3. I don't think there is enough cake to go *round*.

Recovering

Round can be used with the idea of someone becoming conscious again, for example after an operation or after fainting. Other verbs mean recovering from an illness. Example verbs are:

come round **bring round** **pull round**

1. She started to *come round* three hours after the operation.
2. They tried to *bring* him *round* but he remained unconscious.

THROUGH

Through is used in 150 verbs (2⅓%) in the dictionary, as an adverb and a preposition. The basic meaning refers to passing from one side of something solid to the other side, for example, to *go through* a hole in a wall or to *see through* a window. It can be used with this meaning with many other verbs such as *to slice through, to cut through*, and *to break through something*. The most common categories are:

Doing something thoroughly and completely

Through can be used with verbs to give the idea of going from the beginning to the end of something and finishing it. The verb tells you what the activity is and how someone is doing it. It is often used to suggest doing something in a logical and thorough way and completing it. Example verbs are:

look through **rush through** **sit through**
talk through **think through** **read through**

1. Can you *look through* this letter for me and tell me if it's alright?
2. Don't *rush through* your homework – take your time.
3. We had to *sit through* a very boring talk that lasted almost two hours.
4. If the two of you have a problem then I suggest you sit down together and *talk* it *through*.

Surviving, achieving

Through can be used in combinations to express the idea of surviving a bad situation or getting past something difficult such as a test or a barrier. Example verbs are:

live through
sail through
come through
pull through
get through
see through

1 My grandmother *lived through* the horrors of two world wars.
2 She *came through* the operation and made a rapid recovery.
3 You won't *get through* the exam if you don't study hard.
4 You won't have any difficulties with the driving test. You'll *sail through*.

Communicating

Through can be used in combinatons that express the idea of communicating with somebody, for example by telephone. It can also be used to talk about attempts to make someone understand a message or an idea.

put through
get through
fax through

1 Hello, operator? Can you *put* me *through* to extension 437 please?
2 He won't listen to me. I can't *get through* to him how serious the problem is.

Seeing clearly

Through can be used with a few verbs to suggest that you can see or understand something or somebody very clearly.

see through
shine through
come through

1 He was able to fool everybody else, but I *saw through* him immediately.
2 Her qualities *shine through* in everything she does.

TO

To is used in about 170 verbs (nearly 3%) in this dictionary, mainly as a preposition, although there are a few verbs where it is an adverb (*pull the door to, come to/round.*) With verbs of movement, it expresses the idea of direction, for example, *I walked to the office*; *It fell to the ground*. It generally shows the relationship between the verb and the person or thing that is affected by it, for example, *She is devoted to her children; We fixed a rope to the boat*. In the verbs in this dictionary, the most frequent groups are:

Directing or aiming

To used with verbs shows the direction that somebody or something is going or what is being aimed at. Example verbs are:

gravitate to
pander to
devote to
point to
gear to

1 Many young people are *gravitating to* the cities in search of work.
2 She *devoted* herself *to* her career.
3 The course is *geared to* the needs of the students.

Showing relationships

To is used with verbs to indicate the relationship between people or things. The verb itself shows the nature of the action, feeling, etc, and **to** shows who or what is involved or affected. Example verbs are:

belong to
resort to
defer to
fall to
cling to
look up to
endear to
surrender to
warm to
stick to
face up to
stoop to

1 Who does this book *belong to*?
2 They *clung to* each other for comfort.
3 I *warmed to* Chris immediately.
4 You shouldn't need to *resort to* violence to achieve your aims.
5 Jack's always *looked up to* his older brothers.
6 I'm *sticking to* what I said before.

UP

The particle **up** is the most common particle in phrasal verbs. It is used in about 15% of verbs in this dictionary, mostly as an adverb. The literal meaning of **up** is movement upwards, from a lower to a higher position, so it occurs with many verbs describing movement, such as *climb up, jump up, look up*, and *sit up*. It is also

used with verbs of lifting to express the idea of raising something to a higher level, for example *pick up, lift up, snatch up*. You will also find it used to express the related ideas of increase and improvement. As an adverb, it frequently combines with a preposition to form three-word verbs, for example, *come up against, keep up with*. The most common and important meanings are:

Increasing

Up is often used to give the idea of something increasing in volume, speed, price, strength, and reputation. Examples of such verbs are:

go up
build up
hurry up
speed up
speak up
push up
turn up
play up
step up
grow up
flare up
talk up

1 Petrol is *going up* next week.
2 The train started to *speed up* after it left the station.
3 It's freezing in here. Can you *turn up* the heat?
4 People say that children *grow up* very quickly nowadays.
5 You need to *build up* your strength before you go back to work.
6 I'm sorry, I can't hear you. Can you *speak up* a bit?
7 The government wants to *play up* the importance of the meeting.

The opposite of the particle **up** is **down**, so these particles can be used in verbs that have opposite meanings. For example, the opposite of ***turn up** the heating* is ***turn down** the heating.*

Improving

Up can be used to express the idea of things improving, such as the economy, your health or your knowledge. Example verbs are:

look up
smarten up
dress up
brush up
cheer up
jazz up
clear up
brighten up
pick up

1 The year started badly but I think things are starting to *look up*.
2 I'd like to *brush up* my knowledge of Italian.
3 The weather looks as if it's starting to *clear up*.
4 Well, I think you could *smarten up* your appearance.
5 They tried to *cheer* me *up* by telling me funny stories.

Note that ***dress down*** is now used as an opposite for ***dress up***, and means *to wear more casual clothes.*

Supporting

Up can be used to give the idea of providing support. Example verbs are:

back up
stand up for
shore up
bolster up
speak up for
stick up for

1 Will you *back* me *up* if I tell them what really happened?
2 The bank took action to *shore up* the value of sterling.
3 Nobody *spoke up for* him when he was falsely accused of stealing the money.
4 It's time for us to *stand up for* what we believe in.

Preparing

Up is used with a group of verbs to give the idea of preparing for doing something.

draw up
fix up
set up
limber up
warm up
soften up
butter up
tune up

1 She's busy *drawing up* a plan of how the whole scheme will work.
2 We are *setting up* a research project to investigate the effects of radiation on plant life.
3 He tried to *warm up* the audience by telling them a few jokes at the start of his talk.
4 We'd better *butter* him *up* before we ask him to give us so much money.

Creating and constructing

Up is also used to suggest creating, producing, inventing or constructing something, either physically or in your mind. Example verbs are:

make up
come up with
rise up
dream up
conjure up
think up
build up
put up

1 My grandmother was fantastic at *making up* stories for us.
2 I would like to know who *dreamed up* this whole idea. It's complete madness.
3 She *built* the business *up* from nothing.
4 She has *come up with* a fantastic idea for solving the problem we're having with recruiting people.

Completing and finishing

With some verbs that can be used on their own, ***up*** adds the idea of completing something. For example, in the sentence *I ate fish for dinner*, **ate** means *took food*. If you tell somebody to *Eat up*, you want them to finish eating quickly. It is also used in this way in verbs like *tidy up*, *dry up* and *clear up*. Other examples of verbs are:

end up **use up** **wind up** **dry up**
dummy up **follow up** **sum up** **wake up**

1 Although he wanted to work in advertising, he *ended up* working in a bank.
2 We will have *used up* all our coal reserves by the end of the year.
3 Could I ask you to *wind up* the meeting?

Damaging and destroying

Up can be used to express the idea of something being damaged or spoilt in some way or not working well. Example verbs are:

tear up **blow up** **mess up** **beat up**
play up **slip up** **smash up**

1 After looking at the letter for a few moments, she *tore it up* and threw it in the bin.
2 Explosive experts *blew up* the building as part of a new building programme.
3 What a stupid mistake! Now you've really *messed* things *up*.

Stopping, delaying and disrupting

Up can be used to give the idea of something stopping, being delayed or prevented from operating normally. Example verbs are:

break up **give up** **pull up** **hold up** **slow up**

1 The police *broke up* the demonstration.
2 I've decided to *give up* smoking.
3 A car *pulled up* in front of the bank.
4 I'm sorry we're late. We were *held up* in traffic on the motorway.

Note that *slow up* and *slow down* have the same meaning: *to become slower*.

Things happening

Up can be used to convey the idea of something happening or of something/somebody appearing, sometimes unexpectedly. Example verbs are:

turn up **come up** **bring up** **crop up** **pop up**

1 To everybody's amazement she *turned up* at the party and behaved as if nothing had happened.
3 Can you come to the office as soon as possible? Something serious has *come up*.
4 I'd like to *bring up* the question of installing air conditioning in the new offices.

Approaching and getting closer for comfort

Up can be used to give the idea of something or somebody approaching or getting closer to somebody/something, sometimes in a rather secretive way. It can also be used to give the idea of getting closer to somebody or something for warmth and comfort. Example verbs are:

creep up **loom up** **snuggle up** **curl up**
nuzzle up **sneak up** **steal up**

1 The two children *crept up* close to the edge of the garden.
2 The exams are *looming up*.
3 It's lovely to *snuggle up* by the fire and listen to the rain outside.

Dividing and separating

Up can be used to give the idea of something being divided in some way, for example by being cut or chopped into small pieces. When it is used in connection with a group of people or a couple, it has the idea of separation. Example verbs are:

slice up **divide up** **split up** **break up**
cut up **chop up**

1 First you need to *slice up* the tomatoes and add them to the mixture.
2 We've decided to *divide up* the money equally.
3 Pam and Paul have *split up* after twenty years of marriage.

Gathering and collecting

Up can be used with the idea of collecting things or people together. Example verbs are:

match up **stock up** **team up** **join up**
meet up **pair up** **pile up** **save up**

1 The task is to *match up* all the cards in front of you.
2 We had better *stock up* on sugar as there is going to be a shortage.
3 I think it's best if we *team up* with people from other departments.

Fastening

Up can be used to talk about fastening things like clothes or objects. It can be used with the name of an object or a material to show how something is fastened, or with the name of a container to show where things are placed. Related to this is the idea of restricting the movement of somebody/something. Example verbs are:

do up **zip up** **parcel up** **tie up**
bag up **bandage up** **brick up** **chain up**
lace up **lock up**

1 Remember to *do up* all the buttons on your coat.
2 You'd better *zip up* your bag so no one steals anything from it.
3 I'm going to *parcel up* the gifts to send your cousins.
4 The security guard was *tied up* in a corner of the room.

WITH

With is a preposition and is used in about 125 verbs (2%) in the dictionary, sometimes combining with an adverb to form a three-word verb, such as *fall in with*, *fit in with*. It is generally used to describe the connections and relationships between people, things, facts or situations. The most common uses are:

Relationships between people

With is used with verbs that describe relationships between people. These often involve difficulties or the ending of a relationship. Example verbs are:

mess with **reason with** **finish with**
argue with **associate with** **level with**
trifle with **vie with**

1 I wouldn't *mess with* him. He has a terrible temper and can get violent.
2 I've tried *reasoning with* her, but she won't change her mind.
3 Maria is going to *finish with* Pierre. Their relationship just isn't working.

Relationships between things

Verbs plus **with** often show connections between things, such as comparing, including, involving or separating. Example verbs are:

go with **crawl with** **do away with**
riddle with **square with**

1 I wouldn't wear that tie. It doesn't *go with* the shirt.
2 The town is *crawling with* tourists at the moment.
3 He thinks it's time we *did away with* the monarchy.

Relationshps between people and things

With can be used to convey the idea of somebody taking action and getting involved in something, sometimes when they should not. Example verbs are:

deal with **wrestle with** **juggle with**
meddle with **catch up with** **land with**
lumber with **tamper with**

1 I'm very busy at the moment, so I'll *deal with* that later.
2 It's a problem I've been *wrestling with* for months.
3 In my job I have to *juggle with* several different things at the same time.
4 Please don't *meddle with* things you don't understand.

Giving support

With is used with verbs that express the idea of agreeing with a person or an idea or providing support. Example verbs are:

agree with **side with** **bear with** **hold with**

1 I *agree with* everything you've said.
2 She always *sides with* her sister in any family arguments.
3 She's under a lot of strain at the moment - just *bear with* her.

S5 Phrasal Verb or Single Word?

For me, the highlight of the whole holiday was the trip to the temple. We ***set off*** at nine in the morning and were soon ***going up*** some hair-raisingly steep roads. We ***got to*** the temple about half ten. We had to wear long-sleeved tops and long trousers or they wouldn't have ***let*** us ***in***. Of course, we had to ***take*** our shoes ***off*** before we ***went in*** the temple, too. A local guide ***showed*** us ***round***, which was good, because lots of questions ***came up*** about how we were supposed to behave, and about the history of the place. The temple itself was absolutely breathtaking, but that wasn't the best thing because we ***came back*** through what they call the 'Lost Valley'. Lunch was ***laid on*** for the people who'd ***asked for*** it, but we'd taken a packed lunch with us and we agreed that it was the most spectacular picnic spot we'd ever seen!

S6–7 Are You a Natural Born Student?

Study quiz score

1 A–0, B–2, C–0
2 A–1, B–0, C–2
3 A–1, B–1, C–2
4 A–2, B–1, C–0
5 A–0, B–1, C–2
6 A–1, B–2, C–2
7 A–2, B–2, C–1
8 A–2, B–0, C–2
9 A–2, B–1, C–0
10 A–2,B–1,C–0
11 A–0,B–2,C–2
12 A–0,B–2,C–2

1 (a) did teachers always ***pick on*** you and ***tell*** you ***off*** for no reason?; (b) did kids who ***messed around*** in class annoy you?; (c) did you ever get ***kept back*** for extra study?
2 (a) ***get on*** with it straight away and finish it early?; (b) ***put off*** starting it until the last possible moment? (c) do some work on it immediately then ***put*** it ***aside*** for a while?
3 (a) ***jot down*** some notes then write it and ***hand*** it ***in***?; (b) do it in rough first, and then ***write*** it ***out*** neatly or ***type*** it ***up***?; (c) ***plan*** it ***out*** carefully then write and edit it?
4 (a) work steadily and ***sail through*** your exams?; (b) ***scrape through*** your exams despite ***beavering away*** all year?; (c) just do enough to ***get by***?
5 (a) ***rattle through*** it and ***hand*** it ***in*** early?; (b) ***go over*** each question carefully before ***moving on*** to the next one?; (c) answer all the questions then ***check through*** your answers?
6 (a) as soon as you ***come across*** a word you don't know?; (b) only to ***look up*** a word whose meaning you can't guess?; (c) only after you've ***read through*** the article once without a dictionary?
7 (a) ***sign up*** for evening classes?; (b) ***throw away*** your books and find someone to talk with in English? (c) ***swot up*** on vocabulary every night?
8 (a) did you study while you were sick in order not to ***fall behind***?; (b) were you just happy to have ***got out of*** lessons?; (c) did you borrow a friend's notes and ***write*** them ***up***?
9 (a) do it as well as you could?; (b) ***scribble*** it ***down*** as quickly as possible; (c) ***talk*** a friend ***into*** letting you copy theirs at the last minute?
10 (a) ***plan out*** a revision timetable in plenty of time?; (b) ***read up*** the subject the night before each exam?; (c) just take it easy and hope easy questions ***came/would come up***?
11 (a) ***switch over*** to something more interesting?; (b) ***shout out*** an answer quickly, even if you're not sure?; (c) get annoyed if the answer doesn't ***come to*** you quickly?

12 (a) ***chill out*** and gaze out of the window?; (b) buy a paper and ***catch up on*** the news?; (c) ***settle down*** with a good book?

S8–9 Sport

Football, and tonight's match in the European Cup ended in controversy after Italy ***came*** back from 2–0 down to beat Spain. At 2–2, the Italian goalkeeper Alberti appeared to ***bring down*** Rojas, the Spanish centre forward. As the Spanish players ***appealed for*** a penalty, the Italians ***played on*** and ***broke away*** to score. The Spanish captain Martín was then ***sent off*** for arguing with the referee. Italy ***ended up*** fortunate winners, but their goalkeeper Pollo ***picked up*** a hand injury and has been ***ruled out*** of the next two games.

The Tokyo marathon has been won by Takeshi Saito of Japan. ***Urged on*** by the home crowd, Saito ***forged ahead*** after just 5 kilometres and built up a 2-minute lead. The chasing runners did not ***give up***, and gradually reduced the lead. The hot weather and the fast pace caused several leading athletes to ***drop out***. Saito's recent training in the Sahara desert ***paid off*** as he ***held off*** the strong challenge of the Kenyan Daniel Nyanga, who ***caught up*** with 5 kilometres to go, then ***fell back*** in the final kilometre.

Tennis, and the unseeded Sofia Adamou of Greece has beaten Russia's Irena Markova in three sets to ***go through*** to the final of the French Open. Adamou said afterwards, "I've never ***come up against*** such a tough opponent. Before I came here I thought I'd get ***knocked out*** in the first round, but now I've got a chance of winning." Adamou, who only ***took up*** the sport four years ago, will ***pick up*** a cheque for $100,000. The loser will have to ***settle for*** just $50,000 !

Extract 1

1 c **2** d **3** a **4** i **5** e **6** h **7** f **8** b **9** g

Extracts 2 and 3

1 b **2** d **3** k **4** a **5** h **6** l **7** n **8** g **9** c **10** j
11 f **12** e **13** i **14** m

S10 Computers

Down

1 click on
2 pull-down
3 switch on
4 printout
6 shut down
7 scan in
9 back up
10 boot up
11 log in

Across

5 add-ons
8 hack into
12 go down
13 scroll down
14 type in
15 pop-up

S11 Environmental Problems

The Greenhouse effect

1 Carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases are ***given off*** when fossil fuels are burned.
2 Greenhouse gases ***soak up*** heat that should escape into space.
3 Temperatures on earth ***go up***.

Algae

1 Nitrates from fertilizers ***soak through*** the soil and end up in rivers and lakes.
2 Algae ***feeds on*** the nitrates and multiplies uncontrollably.
3 The algae ***uses up*** the oxygen in the water, and fish die.

Deforestation

1 Too many trees are burnt or ***cut down***.
2 Some areas ***turn into*** desert.
3 Some species of animals and plants lose their habitat and ***die out***.
4 Less carbon dioxide is ***soaked up*** by trees, which adds to global warming.

S12 Phrasal Verbs in Newspapers

1 d 2 k 3 a, g 4 e 5 c 6 j 7 l 8 f 9 h 10 i

S13 Business

1888 catches ***on***, take ***on***; 1902 teams ***up***, set ***up***, sell ***off***; 1906 turning ***out***; 1945 takes ***over***; 1954 comes ***up with***; 1963 take ***off***, bringing ***in***; 1969 buys ***out***; 1974 walk ***out***, sparking ***off***; 1987 swallowed ***up***, turned ***around***; 1992 worn ***away***, falling ***off***, mount ***up***, go ***under***, bailed ***out***; 1999 takes ***over***, caught ***out***, shoots ***up***, wind ***up***; 2000 laid ***off***, closes ***down***

S14–15 Informal

Using this dictionary

Formal	Informal	Neutral
provide for sth	boot sb out	turn up
attend to sb/sth	barge into sb	throw sth aside
	tune out	put sb down

Practice

The 11 phrasal verbs are:

swot up
mess up
beaver away
veg out
breeze through (sth)
jabber away
jack sth in
swan around
muck around
look sb up
catch up with sb

Matching Exercise:

a beaver away
b swot up
c swan around
d jabber away
e look sb up
f catch up
g jack sth in
h breeze through (sth)
i veg out
j mess up
k muck around

Sentences:

a OK, I'll level with you.
b at the last moment he chickened out.
c We're going to check out the new bar
d I'll be able to rustle something up.
e we whipped through the last three chapters.
f – they really freak me out.
g it took him ages to cotton on.
h she just clammed up.

S16–17 Using Phrasal Verbs in Writing

Exercise 1

1 refers to
2 reported back
3 summed up
4 drawn up
5 gone through
6 puts forward
7 sets out
8 consists of
9 enlarges upon
10 accounts for
11 deals with

Exercise 2: Sample Report

This report refers to the Intermediate English Course, which I attended last summer. Firstly, I will deal with the positive aspects of the course. The lessons were very enjoyable and the teachers were very helpful. I especially liked the opportunity to meet other students and speak to them in English.

However, I would also like to point out that there were some problems. The cafeteria was expensive and the meals consisted of only one course. Our opportunities for self-study were limited resulting from the fact that there were not enough books in the library. In addition, the trips and visits were not very interesting and I have enlarged upon this problem in a report I have submitted to the Social Secretary.

For next year, I suggest that a list of events is given to students to go through and perhaps they should be given the chance to put forward their own ideas. The college should also draw up a plan of action for improving the cafeteria and library.

To sum up, it was a positive experience but a few changes would make it even better.

Exercise 3

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 c 8 a

S18–19 Using Phrasal Verbs in the Passive

Exercise 1

1 No
2 Yes
3 Yes
4 No
5 Yes
6 No

Exercise 2

Separable	Inseparable
turn off	look for
turn down	

Exercise 3

Separable phrasal verbs can generally be used in the passive, whereas inseparable phrasal verbs cannot.

Exercise 4

1 She's been charged with shoplifting.
2 If you carry on like this you'll be kicked out of college.
3 The building was burnt down in the riots.
4 No one knows where Jerry is. He hasn't been heard of since the summer.
5 The twins look so alike that they are often mixed up.
6 £10 for this? You've been ripped off!

S20–21 New Phrasal Verbs

Task A

free up, hype up, tense up, test out, drown out

Task B

Suggested answers

a sports car – flashes past/by
a butterfly – flutters by/past/around
a boy with his leg in plaster – hobbles by/past/along
a bee – buzzes past/by/around
a train – steams past/by/along
tourists visiting a palace – wander around/past
a small child in a park – runs around
a group of boys going to school – muck around
a teacher going home at the end of a long day – hurries along/past

S22–25 The Most Common Phrasal Verbs

Up

i 1 b, 2 c, 3 d, 4 a
ii 1 c, 2 a, 3 d, 4 b

Down

i 1 breaks 2 lets 3 turn
ii 1 sit 2 keep 3 put 4 bend 5 lie

On

1 c, 2 d, 3 b, 4 a

Off

1 b, 2 c, 3 d, 4 a

In

1 come in 2 check in 3 let sb in 4 breaks in

Out

1 fall 2 getting 3 broken 4 came

Verbs with an adverb and a preposition

1 hang on to
2 looking forward to
3 run out of
4 put up with
5 get on with

Further practice: class activities

1 Work with a partner. See who can be first to remember all the verbs in each particle group. Remember to use example sentences.
2 In groups, make up an oral story using the verbs in two or three of the participle groups. One person starts the story with a sentence using one of the phrasal verbs and the next person has to continue the story using a different phrasal verb. Your sentences must show that you understand the meaning of the verb. For homework write the story down correctly.
3 In pairs learn one group of verbs, then teach them, together with their context, to another pair in your class. Then test your classmates by asking them to give you correct sentences using the verbs you have taught them.

Meaning Groups

Daily Routine

a come from
b woke up
c had .... on
d set off
e get off
f met up
g catch up
h got to
i get back
j look after
k phone up

Business

c, h, b, d, f, e, a, g

Opposites

1 c, 2 e, 3 d, 4 b, 5 f, 6 a

Further practice: class activity

Work with a partner. One of you starts a sentence with one of the verbs in the opposites group and the other must complete the sentence using a verb which is opposite in meaning.

Multi-Meaning Verbs

1 catch up
2 fall out
3 takes off
4 give up
5 pick her up, pick it up
6 come out
7 meet up

S26 Test Yourself

1 b, 2 c, 3 b, 4 c, 5 c, 6 c, 7 b, 8 a, 9 b

Which meaning?

i increasing or improving: grow up, bring up, cheer up, hurry up
completing or finishing: add up, hang up, give up, wake up, shut up
ii failing: let down, turn down, break down
movement: sit down, lie down, put down, keep down, bend down

Pronunciation

Phonetic symbols

Consonants

p	pen	h	how
b	bad	m	man
t	tea	n	no
d	did	ŋ	sing
k	cat	s	so
g	get	z	zoo
tʃ	chain	ʃ	she
dʒ	jam	ʒ	vision
f	fall	l	leg
v	van	r	red
θ	thin	j	yes
ð	this	w	wet

Vowels and diphthongs

iː	see	ɜː	fur
i	happy	ə	about
ɪ	sit	eɪ	say
e	ten	əʊ	go (*BrE*)
æ	cat	oʊ	go (*AmE*)
ɑː	father	aɪ	my
ɒ	got	ɔɪ	boy
ɔː	saw	aʊ	now
ʊ	put	ɪə	near
u	actual	eə	hair
uː	too	ʊə	pure
ʌ	cup		

The symbol /(r)/ indicates that British pronunciation will have /r/ only if a vowel sound follows directly at the beginning of the next word, as in **pore over**; otherwise /r/ is omitted. For Amercian English, all the /r/ sounds should be pronounced.

Stress in phrasal verbs

In speech it is important to use the correct stress patterns for phrasal verbs. To help with this, verbs are shown in this dictionary with stresses marked using the symbols /ˈ/ (= a main stress) and /ˌ/ (= a weaker secondary stress).

There are two patterns of stress in phrasal verbs. One type has a single stress, and it is always on the first word of the verb. Examples are **ˈcome to sth**, **ˈgo for sb**, **ˈlook at sth**. The other type has two stresses; the first word is marked with a secondary stress, and a main stress is put on the second word. Examples are **ˌget ˈup**, **ˌput sth ˈoff**, **ˌgo ˈoff sth/sb**. Remember that **sth**, **sb** are not really parts of the verb; they just show where other words may be fitted in. So in **ˌput sth ˈoff**, the second word of the verb is **off**.

One-stress verbs

One-stress verbs keep the single main stress on the first word in all situations. No stress is put on the second word of the verb (or on any other words which the verb may contain). Often the second word of these verbs is a word such as **for** or **at** which has both strong and weak forms. Generally the weak form of the word should be used, but if that word happens to come at the end of a phrase, the strong form must be used, even though the word remains unstressed. For example: *The washing machine is broken. I'll have to get it* ***ˈlooked at***. **ˈLook at** is a one-stress verb so the main stress is on **looked** and there is no stress on **at**. But because **at** is at the end of a phrase it is pronounced in its strong form with vowel /æ/ and not /ə/.

Two-stress verbs

Two-stress verbs have the main stress on the second word, and this is the pattern that will be used when the verb as a whole is the last important item in a phrase.

What time are you ˌcoming ˈback?
He ˌmade it ˈup.
ˌFill them ˈin.

But the speaker will put a strong stress on any other important word if it comes later than the verb. The stress on the second word of the verb is then weakened or lost, especially if it would otherwise be next to the other strong stress. For example in ***I ˌcame back ˈearly***, the verb is **ˌcome ˈback** , but in this sentence there is no main stress on **back** because it would clash with the stress on **early**. However, if something shows that **early** is not important and therefore does not need a main stress, the main stress would be on **back**. For example, **early** might be a repeated word, as in *I finished my work early, and I* ***ˌcame ˈback*** *early*.

The second stress of two-stress verbs is weakened whether the additional important word is put between parts of the phrasal verb, or after all of them.
Take for example **ˌfill sth ˈin**. If **sth** is replaced with an unimportant item such as a pronoun, the main stress is on **in**, as in *I* ***ˌfilled*** *it* ***ˈin***. But if **sth** is replaced with something important such as **this form**, then **form** receives a main stress, giving *I* ***ˌfilled*** *this ˈform* ***in***.

In the same way, when the verb is used in the pattern **ˌfill ˈin sth**, if **sth** is replaced with an important item, the stress on **in** will be lost: ***I ˌfilled in a*** *ˈform*. But if **sth** is replaced by something unimportant, such as a repeated word, the main stress will be on **in**: *A form? I've already* ***ˌfilled ˈin*** *a form*.

In two-stress verbs with three words, such as **ˌback aˈway from**, **ˌaverage ˈout at**, the extra word helps to avoid a clash with a following stress and the weakening of the stress is optional. So you can say *It* ***ˌaverages out at*** *ˈfifty*, with the stress on **out** weakened, or *It* ***ˌaverages ˈout at*** *ˈfifty* in which the stress on **out** is kept. There is no difference of meaning between the two.

Stress on patterns with *doing*.

Some verbs are shown in the dictionary with forms that include **doing** (for example **ˈbank on sb/sth**, **ˈbank on doing sth**, **ˈbank on sb/sth doing sth**; **ˌget aˈround to sth**, **ˌget aˈround to doing sth**). Like **sb** and **sth**, the word **doing** is not part of the verb, but shows where another verb must be fitted into the pattern. For example: *He's* ***banking on going*** *to America* or *I'm* ***getting around to cleaning*** *the kitchen*. The verbs with **doing** follow the same one-stress or two-stress patterns as other phrasal verbs. So the one-stress pattern **ˈbank on doing sth** shows that **on** never receives a stress, even when **doing sth** is replaced with something unimportant or already mentioned: *He's* ***ˈbanking on*** *it*, or *Go to America? He's* ***ˈbanking on going*** *to America*. In the same way the two-stress example **ˌput ˈoff doing sth** shows that **off** will receive a stress if the verb is the last important word in a phrase: *Pay those bills? He's* ***ˌputting ˈoff*** *paying them*. If the *doing* verb is important, then the stress on the second word of the phrasal verb will be lost: *I'm* ***ˌputting off*** *ˈwriting to her*.

Little Oxford Thesaurus

In A–Z form

- Over 150,000 alternative and opposite words
- Robust, portable, and easy to use

New Reverse Dictionary section

The World's Most Trusted Dictionaries

The Oxford Thesaurus
An A-Z Dictionary of Synonyms

Mansoor AlMatrafi
Digitally signed by Mansoor AlMatrafi
DN: cn=Mansoor AlMatrafi, c=SA, o=MOE, email=mreota@hotmail.com
Reason: I have reviewed this document
Date: 2006.10.06 16:39:33 +03'00'

INTRO Introduction

=-

In its narrowest sense, a synonym is a word or phrase that is perfectly substitutable in a context for another word or phrase. People who study language professionally agree that there is no such thing as an ideal synonym, for it is virtually impossible to find two words or phrases that are identical in denotation (meaning), connotation, frequency, familiarity, and appropriateness. Indeed, linguists have long noted the economy of language, which suggests that no language permits a perfect fit, in all respects, between any two words or phrases. Many examples of overlapping can be cited; the more obvious ones in English are those that reflect a duplication arising from Germanic and Romance sources, like motherly and maternal, farming and agriculture, teach and instruct. In such pairs the native English form is often the one with an earthier, warmer connotation. In some instances, where a new coinage or a loanword has been adopted inadvertently duplicating an existing term, creating 'true' synonyms, the two will quickly diverge, not necessarily in meaning but in usage, application, connotation, level, or all of these. For example, scientists some years ago expressed dissatisfaction with the term tidal wave, for the phenomenon was not caused by tides but, usually, by submarine seismic activity. The word tsunami was borrowed from Japanese in an attempt to describe the phenomenon more accurately, but it was later pointed out the tsunami means 'tidal wave' in Japanese. Today, the terms exist side by side in English, the older expression still in common use, the newer more frequent in the scientific and technical literature.

Any synonym book must be seen as a compromise that relies on the sensitivity of its users to the idiomatic nuances of the language. In its best applications, it serves to remind users of words, similar in meaning, that might not spring readily to mind, and to offer lists of words and phrases that are alternatives to and compromises for those that might otherwise be overused and therefore redundant, repetitious, and boring. The Oxford Thesaurus goes a step further by offering example sentences to illustrate the uses of the headwords and their alternatives in natural, idiomatic contexts.

1. Selection of headwords

Two criteria have been employed: first, headwords have been selected because of their frequency in the language, on the assumption that synonyms are more likely to be sought for the words that are most used; second, some headwords of lower frequency have been included because it would otherwise be impossible to find a suitable place to group together what are perceived as useful sets of synonyms with their attendant illustrative sentences. Obvious listings have been omitted on the grounds that users of the Thesaurus can easily find synonyms for, say, abdication by making nouns of the verbs listed under abdicate. This deliberate attempt to avoid duplication is mitigated in the case of very common words. For the convenience of the user, both shy and bashful are main entries, as are method, manner, and mode, which, though much the same in some respects, differ in detail and application. In this book, however, mitigate is a main entry but not mitigation, mistake and mistaken are main entries but not mistakenly, etc. Where it is determined that such derivations are neither automatic nor semantically obvious, separate listings have been provided.

2. Illustrative sentences

On the principle that a word is known by the company it keeps, one or more sentences showing the main entry word in context are provided for each sense discrimination. These have been carefully selected to demonstrate the use of the main entry in a context likely to be encountered in familiar written or spoken ordinary English. (See also 7, below.)

3. Synonym lists

Each main entry is followed by one or more sense groupings, each illustrated by one or more sentences. An effort has been made to group the synonyms semantically as well as syntactically and idiomatically: that is, each synonym listed within a given set should prove to be more or less substitutable for the main entry in the illustrative sentence.

In some instances, idiomatic congruity may, unavoidably, become strained; where it is felt to be stretched too far--though still properly listed among its accompanying synonyms--a semicolon has been inserted to separate sub-groups of synonyms, and, in many cases, additional illustrative sentences have been provided. Such sub-groupings have been confined largely to distinctions between literal uses and figures of speech, between transitive and intransitive verbs, and between synonyms that differ in more subtle aspectual characteristics of meaning or syntax. (See also 7, below.)

Not all senses of all words are covered for either or both of the following reasons: the sense, though it exists, is relatively rare in ordinary discourse and writing; there are no reasonable synonyms for it. Thus, this sense of mercy,

> an affecting or moving of the mind in any way; a mental state brought about by any influence; an emotion or feeling: Mercy is an affection of the mind.

is not covered for the first reason, as it is a literary and somewhat archaic usage. The same can be said for the sense,

> a bodily state due to any influence

and for other senses listed in the largest dictionaries but rarely encountered except in literary contexts. Even in such contexts it would be unusual to need a synonym for this word and others like it.

4. Cross references

There are very few cross references between main listings in the Thesaurus. Where such cross references do occur, they are simple and straightforward:

> superior adj....3 See supercilious, above. --n 4 See supervisor, below.

A number of cross references occur within entries, between variant forms of an expression. At the entry for take, for example, as one can say either take or take it in the sense of 'understand' etc., the option is shown in the following way:

> take v...19 understand, gather, interpret, perceive, apprehend, deduce, conclude, infer, judge, deem, assume, suppose, imagine, see: I take him to be a fool. I take it from your expression that you've had bad news.
>
> 33 take it: a withstand or tolerate or survive punishment or abuse, survive: The Marines are extremely tough and can take

it. b See 19, above.

In a few entries, the form 'See also' is used.

5. Labels

a. All words and phrases that are recognized as being typical of a particular variety of English, whether geographical or stylistic, are labelled. It might at first seem that a large number of colloquial, slang, and taboo words have been included. The labels used are those commonly encountered in ordinary dictionaries:

Colloq	Colloquial; informal; used in everyday conversation and writing, especially in the popular press and in dramatic dialogue; sometimes avoided where more formal language is felt to be appropriate, as in business correspondence, scholarly works, technical reports, documents, etc.
Slang	Belonging to the most informal register and characteristic of spoken English; often originating in the cult language of a particular socio-cultural group. Not sufficiently elevated to be used in most writing (aside from dialogue), although often found in the popular press and frequently heard on popular radio and television programmes.
Taboo	Not used in polite society, usually because of the risk of offending sexual, religious, or cultural sensibilities; occasionally encountered on late-night television and radio; often occurring in graffiti and in dialogue in novels, plays, and films.
Archaic	Describing an obsolete word or phrase (like tickety-boo, lounge lizard) that is used deliberately to invoke the feeling of a bygone time.
Old-fashioned	Used of a synonym (like comfit) that is no longer current but might occasionally be encountered among older speakers and in older writing.
Technical	Used of a somewhat specialized word that is not commonly

encountered in ordinary, everyday English, like defalcator, which appears as a synonym under swindler.

Literary Describes a word, like euchre 'cheat', that is not usually met with in everyday language, even of the formal genre, but may be found in poetry and other literary works.

Brit, US, Australian, Canadian, New Zealand
Marks a word or phrase that occurs mainly in the designated variety.

The meanings of other labels are self-evident.

b. All labels can occur in combination. Usage labels always take precedence over regional labels. For example,

> pushover n. 1 sure thing, Colloq piece of cake, child's play, snap, picnic, walk-over, US breeze, Slang cinch, Brit doddle, US lead-pipe cinch.

Here 'sure thing' is standard universal English. All words and phrases following Colloq up to the Slang label are colloquial: 'piece of cake,...walkover' are universal colloquial English, 'breeze' is US colloquial. All synonyms following the Slang label are slang; 'cinch' is universal English slang, 'doddle' is confined to British slang, and 'lead-pipe cinch' is confined to American slang.

> talented adj....Colloq ace, crack, top-notch, Brit wizard, whizzo, US crackerjack.

In this entry, all synonyms shown are colloquial, 'ace, crack, topnotch' being universal English, 'wizard, whizzo' British, and 'crackerjack' US.

It must be emphasized that such labels are to some extent impressionistic and are based in the Thesaurus on a consensus of several sources: that is, there is no implication that 'breeze' is never used in the sense of 'pushover' except in the US, nor should such an inference be made.

c. Comments regarding what might be viewed as 'correct' in contrast to 'incorrect' usage are generally avoided. For example, the non-standard use of between in contexts referring to more than two of anything or of among in contexts involving fewer than three goes unmarked. However, if the usage question is confined to what can easily be represented in a 'lexical' environment, then suitable treatment is accorded it; thus 'now' and 'at present' are labelled Non-Standard under presently. To take another example, 'different to', in the typically British usage His house is different to mine, is rarely encountered in American English; in American English, purists condemn 'different than', as in His house is different than mine, which is increasingly heard in British English; purists on both sides of the Atlantic prefer 'different from'. Such matters are best left to usage books and to usage notes in dictionaries and are not treated in the Thesaurus.

d. Main entry words and sub-entries are not labelled, only the synonyms. Thus, under beat appears the idiomatic expression, beat it, which is not labelled:

> 8 beat it: depart, leave, abscond, run off or away, Slang US take it on the lam, lam out of here, hit the road: You'd better beat it before the cops come.

The idiom is not labelled because it is assumed that the user has looked it up to find a substitute for it, hence needs no information about it other than a listing of its alternatives (which are labelled, when appropriate) and an illustrative example.

A rare exception to the above rule occurs where a headword has one meaning in British English and quite a different meaning in another regional variety. Thus:

> subway n. 1 In US: underground (railway), tube: She takes the subway to work. 2 In Britain: tunnel, underpass: Use the subway to cross the road in safety.

Here, the two regional labels do not apply to the synonyms (since, for example, 'tunnel' has the same meaning in both British and US English) but to the two definitions of the headword.

e. Synonyms bearing any kind of label appear at the end of the set in which they are listed, except in the case described immediately above.

6. Spelling and other variants

The spellings shown throughout are those preferred by most modern British writers. British variant spellings are shown; if they are variants of the main entry word, they appear as the first word in the set(s) of synonyms following:

mousy adj. 1 mousey,...
movable adj. moveable,...

Such variants are also shown when they appear within an entry:

movable adj....transferable or transferrable,...

Common American spelling variants (humor, traveler, unraveled) are not shown, but less common ones are listed for convenience. Where both forms are variants in American spelling, they are described by 'or US also':

...accoutrements or US also accouterments,...
...phoney or US also phony,...

This should be understood to mean 'the normal British spelling is accoutrements (or phoney); this form, together with accouterments (or phony), occurs in American English'.

7. Substitutability

a. The purpose of a synonym book is to provide the user with a collection of words that are as close as possible in meaning to a designated word. The Oxford Thesaurus tries to go to a step further by providing examples that not only illustrate the main entry word in a natural contextual environment but also allow the user to substitute as many of the synonyms as possible into the framework of the context. For example:

porous adj. spongy, spongelike, permeable, pervious, penetrable: The rainwater runs through the porous rock and collects in the pools below.

It is possible to substitute for porous in the sample sentence any of the words given as synonyms without any adjustment of the grammar or phrasing of the example. That is not to suggest that the synonyms are identical: 'permeable' and 'pervious' belong to a different register from that of 'spongy, spongelike', being more common in technical usage. Some might argue that 'penetrable' is not synonymous with the other listed words; but it is the function of this book to provide synonyms for the main entries, not for the other synonyms that might be listed. No claim is made--nor could it be made--that synonyms are identical, either to one another or to another word, merely that they fall well within the criteria of what, for practical purposes, is viewed as synonymy in the language.

It is certainly true that substituting for porous any of the five listed synonyms will yield five standard English sentence.

b. Some judgement is required of the user in determining the syntax and idiomaticity with which a given word or expression can be substituted in an illustrative context: words are rarely as readily interchangeable in a context as might be components in a chemical or mathematical formula. Moreover, while such formulae are reflective of science, language offers its users the virtually infinite variety available only in art, with each individual speaker of any language being presented with the opportunity to become an artist.

In the following example, nearly all terms can be substituted for adjoining in the first illustrative sentence; to create idiomatic parallels to the second sentence, the parenthetical prepositions must be used:

> adjoining adj. neighboring, contiguous (to), adjacent (to), abutting, bordering, next (to): We have bought the adjoining land and will build our new house there. The land adjoining the supermarket is for sale.

Interpreting this, the following are all idiomatic: adjoining land, neighbouring land, contiguous land, adjacent land, abutting land, and bordering land. But if the context requires the adjective to come after land (with a following noun), then the parenthetical words must be added to yield constructions that are idiomatic, like land adjoining the supermarket, land neighboring the supermarket, land continuous to the supermarket, land adjacent to the supermarket, land abutting the supermarket, land bordering the supermarket, and land next to the supermarket.

As this is intended as a synonym book and not a work on English collocations, the treatment of idiomaticity cannot be taken further.

c. There are other reasons why direct substitutability is not always possible within a single semantic concept. The following extract demonstrates this:

> possess v.... 3 dominate, control, govern, consume, take control of, preoccupy, obsess; charm, captivate, enchant, cast a spell on or over, bewitch, enthral: What possessed her to think that I could help? He behaves as if he is possessed by the devil.

Here, two aspects of the same sense have been divided by a semicolon, with the synonyms preceding the semicolon illustrated by the first contextual example and those following it by the second. While it may be argued that in this instance the synonyms following the semicolon, with their illustrative sentence, might better have been listed in a separately numbered set, the close semantic association of the two groups would thereby have been lost.

d. Sometimes, where the sub-sense is familiar enough not to require its own example yet needs to be set off from the other synonyms because of a subtle or aspectual semantic distinction, a semicolon is inserted among the synonyms and only one example is provided:

> practice n.... 2 exercise, discipline, drill, practising, repetition, rehearsal, training, preparation, workout, warm-up; application, study: She needs more practice on the beginner`s slope before going down the main piste.

the idiomatic usage of this sense of 'study' and 'application' is sufficiently familiar not to require separate example.

On the other hand, a second example is needed for the next sense of practice:

> ...3 pursuit, exercise, work, profession, career,

vocation, conduct; business, office: He genuinely enjoys
the practice of law. I heard of a veterinary practice for
sale in Yorkshire.

It would be difficult--perhaps impossible--to defend such fine distinctions in every instance: indeed, as a comparison of the different lengths of the entries in any dictionary will quickly reveal, language does not provide the same levels of sense discrimination for all words. The metaphorical focus and diversity of a language provide for polysemy in some semantico-cultural spheres but not in others. The classic observation often cited to demonstrate this linkage is that of the Inuit language that has a large number of distinguishing words for types of snow or of the African language that has an extensive vocabulary to describe the kinship among its speakers. On the grounds that the lexicon of a language is moulded by speakers who, quite naturally, use it to talk (and write) about things that are important to them, one might be tempted to draw conclusions about the voracity of English-speakers by reflecting that the entry for take has about twice as many definitions in most dictionaries as that for give.

e. Often, the semicolon may be used to separate transitive uses of a verb from intransitive:

preach v....2 moralize, sermonize, advise, counsel,
admonish, reprimand, lecture, harangue, pontificate; urge,
inculcate, advocate: Mother used to preach to us about
being charitable. Father preached restraint in all things.

Because of the behaviour of verbs in English, different synonyms may be required depending on what the object of the verb is and, often, whether the object is a word or phrase or a clause:

predict v. foretell, prophesy, forecast, foresee, augur,
prognosticate, forewarn, presage, vaticinate; portend,
foreshadow, foretoken, forebode; intimate, hint, suggest:
My mother predicted that there would be moments like this.
If only I could predict the winner of the 2.30!

f. Wherever possible, the proper prepositional or adverbial particle normally accompanying a verb in a certain sense has been supplied, though it must be emphasized that the one offered is the most frequently used and not, necessarily, the only one acceptable in standard usage. Particles used with some words may vary considerably, owing not only to dialect variation but also to whether the verb is used actively or passively as well as to which nuance of meaning, sometimes far too subtle to be dealt with adequately in a book of this kind, is to be expressed. The following entry illustrates the full treatment that can be accorded to words that occur in a wide variety of grammatical environments:

> persevere v. Often, persevere in or with or at: persist, resolve, decide, endure, continue, carry on or through, keep at or on or up, be steadfast or staunch or constant, keep going, stand fast or firm, see through, be or remain determined or resolved or resolute or stalwart or purposeful or uncompromising, be tenacious or persistent or constant or pertinacious or assiduous or sedulous, be tireless or untiring or indefatigable, show determination or pluck or grit, be plucky, be patient or diligent or stubborn or inflexible or adamant or obstinate or obdurate, show or exhibit or demonstrate patience or diligence or stubbornness or inflexibility or obstinacy or obduracy, remain dogged, pursue doggedly, be intransigent or intractable, cling to, stick to, support, stop at nothing, sustain, Colloq stick with, stick (it) out: We must persevere to win. I shall persevere in my loyalty.

g. In some adjective senses, a split might occur between attributive and predicative uses, though in most such cases, where the syntax is open, only one, usually common, illustration is given. For example, alone is used only predicatively or post-positively, not attributively; that is, one cannot say *An alone woman...In this particular case, the normal attributive form would be lone, but lone is not listed as a synonym for alone because they are not mutually substitutable. It is acknowledged that the detailed description of the special syntactic ways in which certain words (like alone, agog, galore) behave lies outside the province of this book.

Although similar cautions must be observed and adjustments made throughout, it is hoped that the illustrative sentences will provide a substantial basis for the user to identify idiomatic contexts and to discriminate senses that are not always carefully distinguished in dictionaries.

CONTENTS Table of Contents
=-

Title Page   TITLE

Edition Notice   EDITION

Introduction   INTRO

Table of Contents   CONTENTS

A   1.0
abandon...   1.1
academic...   1.2
adapt...   1.3
aesthete...   1.4
affair...   1.5
age...   1.6
ahead   1.7
aid...   1.8
akin   1.9
alarm...   1.10
amalgam...   1.11
anachronism...   1.12
apart...   1.13
arbitrary...   1.14
ashamed...   1.15
atmosphere...   1.16
audacious...   1.17
available...   1.18
awake...   1.19

B   2.0
babble...   2.1
beach...   2.2
bias...   2.3
blab...   2.4
board...   2.5
brace...   2.6

bubble 2.7
by... 2.8

C 3.0
cab... 3.1
cease... 3.2
chafe... 3.3
circle... 3.4
claim... 3.5
coach... 3.6
crack... 3.7
cuddle... 3.8
cycle 3.9

D 4.0
dab... 4.1
dead... 4.2
diabolic... 4.3
dock... 4.4
drab... 4.5
duck... 4.6
dwarf... 4.7
dying... 4.8

E 5.0
eager... 5.1
ebb... 5.2
eccentric... 5.3
eddy... 5.4
eerie 5.5
effect... 5.6
egoistic... 5.7
eject... 5.8
elaborate... 5.9
emaciated... 5.10
enable... 5.11
epicure... 5.12
equable... 5.13
era... 5.14
escape... 5.15
etch... 5.16
eulogize... 5.17
evacuate... 5.18

exact...   5.19
eye...   5.20

F   6.0
fabric...   6.1
fear...   6.2
fianc,(e)...   6.3
flabby...   6.4
foam...   6.5
fracas...   6.6
fuel   6.7

G   7.0
gab...   7.1
gear...   7.2
ghastly...   7.3
giant...   7.4
glad...   7.5
gnarled...   7.6
go...   7.7
grab...   7.8
guarantee   7.9
gyrate   7.10

H   8.0
habit...   8.1
head...   8.2
hidden   8.3
hoard...   8.4
hub...   8.5
hybrid...   8.6

I   9.0
icing...   9.1
idea...   9.2
ignorance...   9.3
ill...   9.4
image...   9.5
inability...   9.6
irk...   9.7
island...   9.8
itch...   9.9

J 10.0
jab... 10.1
jealous... 10.2
jiggle... 10.3
job... 10.4
judge... 10.5

K 11.0
keen... 11.1
kick... 11.2
knack... 11.3
kowtow 11.4
kudos 11.5

L 12.0
label... 12.1
lead... 12.2
liability... 12.3
load... 12.4
luck... 12.5
lying... 12.6

M 13.0
macabre... 13.1
meadow... 13.2
microbe... 13.3
moan... 13.4
muck... 13.5
mysterious... 13.6

N 14.0
nab... 14.1
near... 14.2
nice... 14.3
nobility... 14.4
nub... 14.5

O 15.0
oar... 15.1
obedience... 15.2
occasion... 15.3
odd... 15.4
off... 15.5

ogle... 15.6
oil... 15.7
OK 15.8
old... 15.9
omen... 15.10
once... 15.11
ooze 15.12
opacity... 15.13
oracle... 15.14
oscillate... 15.15
otherwise 15.16
out... 15.17
oval... 15.18
owe... 15.19

P 16.0
pace... 16.1
peace... 16.2
phantom... 16.3
pick... 16.4
place... 16.5
pocket... 16.6
practicable... 16.7
pseudonym... 16.8
pub... 16.9

Q 17.0
quack... 17.1

R 18.0
rabble... 18.1
reach... 18.2
rhapsodic... 18.3
ribaldry... 18.4
road... 18.5
rub... 18.6

S 19.0
sabotage... 19.1
scale... 19.2
sea... 19.3
shabby... 19.4
sick... 19.5

sketchily... 19.6
slab... 19.7
small... 19.8
snack... 19.9
soak... 19.10
space... 19.11
squad... 19.12
stab... 19.13
suave... 19.14
swagger... 19.15
sybarite... 19.16

T 20.0
tab... 20.1
teach... 20.2
thank... 20.3
tickle... 20.4
toast... 20.5
trace... 20.6
tug... 20.7
tweak... 20.8
tycoon... 20.9

U 21.0
ugly 21.1
ulcer... 21.2
umbrage... 21.3
unabashed... 21.4
upbeat... 21.5
urge... 21.6
usage... 21.7
Utopia... 21.8

V 22.0
vacancy... 22.1
vehicle... 22.2
viable... 22.3
vocalist... 22.4
vulgar... 22.5

W 23.0
wad... 23.1
weak... 23.2

wheedle... 23.3
wicked... 23.4
woe... 23.5
wrap... 23.6

Y 24.0
yank... 24.1
yearly... 24.2
yield... 24.3
young... 24.4
yucky... 24.5

Z 25.0
zany... 25.1
zealot... 25.2
zone... 25.3

1.0 A

1.1 abandon...

abandon v. 1 give up or over, yield, surrender, leave, cede, let go, deliver (up), turn over, relinquish: I can see no reason why we should abandon the house to thieves and vandals. 2 depart from, leave, desert, quit, go away from: The order was given to abandon ship. 3 desert, forsake, jilt, walk out on: He even abandoned his fianc,e. 4 give up, renounce; discontinue, forgo, drop, desist, abstain from: She abandoned cigarettes and whisky after the doctor's warning.

--n. 5 recklessness, intemperance, wantonness, lack of restraint, unrestraint: He behaved with wild abandon after he received the inheritance.

abandoned adj. 1 left alone, forlorn, forsaken, deserted, neglected; rejected, shunned, cast off or aside, jilted, dropped, outcast: An abandoned infant was found on the church steps. Totally alone, she felt abandoned by her friends. 2 bad, immoral, amoral, wicked, sinful, evil, corrupt, unprincipled, unrestrained, uninhibited, reprobate; loose, wanton, debauched, wild, dissolute, dissipated, profligate; depraved, lewd, lascivious, flagitious: His abandoned behaviour soon landed him in jail.

abbreviate

v. 1 shorten, compress, contract, truncate, trim, reduce, curtail: We abbreviated some of the longer words to save space. 2 shorten, cut, condense, abridge, abstract, digest, epitomize, summarize, US synopsize: The school presented an abbreviated version of A Midsummer Night's Dream.

abbreviated

adj. skimpy, brief, revealing: The dancers' abbreviated costumes shocked some members of the audience.

abbreviation

n. initialism; acronym; shortening, contraction: UK is one kind of abbreviation, or initialism; NATO, which is pronounced as a word, is another, usually called an acronym.

abdicate v. give up, renounce, disclaim, waive, disown, surrender, yield, relinquish, abandon, resign, quit: He abdicated all responsibility for care of the children. She abdicated the throne to marry a commoner.

abduct v. kidnap, carry off, make away or off with, seize, Slang US snatch, grab: The child that was abducted is safe.

abet v. 1 encourage, urge, instigate, incite, provoke, egg on, prod, goad; aid, help, assist: The jury found that his wife had abetted him in the murder. 2 countenance, approve (of), support, endorse, second, sanction, condone; further, advance, promote, uphold: By failing to inform on the terrorists, the neighbours abetted the bombing.

abeyance n. in abeyance. pending, abeyant, reserved, in reserve, shelved, pushed or shoved or shunted aside, postponed, put off, suspended, US tabled; temporarily inactive, dormant; latent; Colloq in a holding pattern, on the back burner; Slang on hold, in the deep-freeze, on the shelf, on ice, hanging fire: Legal proceedings were held in abeyance so that talks could take place to reach an out-of-court settlement.

abhor v. hate, loathe, detest, abominate, execrate; regard or view with horror or dread or fright or repugnance or loathing or disgust, shudder at, recoil or shrink from; be or stand aghast at: He said that he abhorred any violation of human rights.

abhorrent adj. hateful, detestable, abhorred, abominable, contemptible, odious, loathsome, horrid, heinous, execrable, repugnant; repulsive, repellent, revolting, offensive, disgusting, horrifying, obnoxious: The idea of war was totally abhorrent to her.

abide v. 1 stand, endure, suffer, submit to, bear, put up with, accept, tolerate, brook: How can you abide the company of such a fool? 2 live, stay, reside, dwell, sojourn: Local people believe that the rain god abides in these mountains. 3 remain, stay, continue, tarry; linger, rest: He'll abide in my care till he can walk again. 4 abide by. consent to, agree to, comply with, observe, acknowledge, obey, follow, submit to, conform to, keep to, remain true to, stand firm by, adhere to, hold to: You must abide by the rules of the club if you become a member.

abiding adj. lasting, permanent, constant, steadfast, everlasting, unending, eternal, enduring, indestructible; unchanging, fast, hard and fast, fixed, firm, immutable, changeless: Her abiding love is a solace to him.

ability n. 1 adeptness, aptitude, facility, faculty, capacity, power, knack, proficiency, Colloq know-how: I have perceived your ability to manipulate situations to your own advantage. 2 talent, skill, cleverness, capacity, wit, gift, genius, capability: He has such extraordinary ability it is difficult to see why he doesn't accomplish more. 3 abilities. faculty, faculties, talent(s), gift(s), skill(s): Her abilities have made her one of the finest cellists of our time.

ablaze adj. 1 aflame, afire, burning, on fire, alight, blazing: By the time the firemen arrived, the roof was ablaze. 2 lit up, alight, brilliantly or brightly-lit, sparkling, gleaming, aglow, bright, brilliant, luminous, illuminated, radiant: The ballroom was ablaze with the light from thousands of candles.

able adj. 1 capable, qualified, competent, proficient: I feel quite able to take care of myself, thank you. He is an able tennis player. 2 talented, clever, skilled, masterful, masterly; adept, skilful, gifted, superior, expert, accomplished: There is no doubt that Wellington was a very able general.

abnormal adj. 1 deviant, deviating, irregular, unusual, unconventional, aberrant, Psych jargon exceptional: The wing of a bat is an abnormal structure. 2 peculiar, unusual, odd, strange, queer, freakish, unnatural, extraordinary, weird, eccentric, bizarre, anomalous, aberrant, perverse, deviant, irregular, Colloq offbeat, Slang oddball, kinky, weirdo: They certainly make the contestants on that TV show do some very abnormal things.

abnormality

n. 1 irregularity, unconformity, unusualness, singularity, eccentricity, unconventionality, uncommonness, deviation, aberration, idiosyncrasy: The desire in a man to wear women's clothing is viewed as an abnormality. 2 distortion, anomaly, malformation, deformity: The child was born with an abnormality of the right foot.

abode n. residence, dwelling, dwelling-place, house, home, domicile, habitation, quarters, lodging, accommodation Military billet; Colloq Brit digs, diggings: He was described as being of no fixed abode.

abolish v. eliminate, end, put an end to, terminate, destroy, annihilate, annul, void, make void, demolish, do away with, nullify, repeal, cancel, obliterate, liquidate, destroy, stamp out, quash, extinguish, erase, delete, expunge; eradicate, extirpate, deracinate, uproot: The best way to abolish folly is to spread wisdom. Prohibition in the US was abolished in 1933.

abolition n. elimination, end, termination, annulment, nullification, repudiation, cancellation; destruction, annihilation: 1837 marks the abolition of the slave trade in the British Empire.

abominable

adj. 1 offensive, repugnant, repulsive, vile, monstrous, loathsome, odious, execrable, detestable, despicable, base, disgusting, nauseous, nauseating, foul, abhorrent, horrid, deplorable: He was accused of crimes too abominable to detail in open court. 2 terrible, unpleasant, disagreeable; awful, distasteful, in bad taste, horrible, frightful , Colloq Brit beastly: No one wants to go out in this abominable weather. The d,cor in this hotel is simply abominable.

aboriginal
n. native, indigene, autochthon; Colloq Australian Abo, Offensive Australian aborigine , Slang Australian contemptuous boong: Many aboriginals are not assimilated to modern life.

abound v. 1 prevail, thrive, flourish: Disease abounds among the undernourished peoples of Africa. 2 abound in. be crowded or packed or jammed with, be abundant or rich in, proliferate (in or with): The ship abounds in conveniences. 3 abound with. teem or swarm or throng with, be filled or infested with, overflow with: The ship abounds with rats.

about adv. 1 round, around, close by, nearby, on every side: Gather about, for I have something to tell you. 2 approximately, around, nearly, roughly, more or less, almost, close to or upon; give or take: In 1685 London had been, for about half a century, the most populous capital in Europe. Light travels at about 186,000 miles a second. 3 to and fro, up and down, back and forth, here and there, hither and yon, far and wide, hither and thither: He wandered about aimlessly for several days. 4 here and there, far and wide, hither and yon, hither and thither, helter-skelter: My papers were scattered about as if a tornado had struck. 5 around, prevalent, in the air: There is a lot of flu about this year. 6 approximately, nearly, close to, not far from, almost, just about, around: It is about time you telephoned your mother.

--prep. 7 around, surrounding, encircling: There is a railing about the monument. 8 round, around, all round, everywhere, in all directions, all over: Please look about the room for my hat. 9 near, nearby, adjacent to, beside, alongside, close by, nigh: There were a lot of trees about the garden. 10 with, at hand, Colloq on: I am sorry, but I haven't my cheque-book about me. 11 touching, concerning, connected with, involving, in or with reference to, in or with regard to, regarding, in the matter of, with respect to, respecting, relative to, relating to, apropos, Formal anent: He wrote a book about the Spanish

Armada.

about-turn
n. reversal, reverse, turn-about, turn-round, U-turn, volte-face, US about-face: There has been a complete about-turn in the policy concerning immigration.

above adv. 1 overhead, on high, aloft, in the sky or heavens: Far above, the clouds scudded swiftly by. 2 upstairs: They lived on the ground floor and the landlady lived above.

--prep. 3 on, on (the) top of, upon, over, atop: The plume of smoke remained fixed above the volcano. He hasn't got a roof above his head for the night. 4 over, more than, exceeding, in excess of, beyond, greater than, surpassing: The operations are controlled by gears, of which there are above fifty in number. 5 insusceptible to, unaffected by, out of reach of, not susceptible or vulnerable or exposed to, superior to: The judge is above bribery or other influence. 6 above all. before or beyond everything, first of all, chiefly, primarily, in the first place, mainly, essentially, at bottom: Above all, serve God and country before you serve yourself.

above-board
adv. 1 openly, candidly, freely, publicly, frankly, straightforwardly, plainly, for all to see, out in the open, in the open: Donald has always dealt completely above-board with everyone.

--adj. 2 open, candid, frank, straight, direct, honourable, straightforward, forthright, guileless, undeceiving, artless, ingenuous, undeceptive, undeceitful, straight from the shoulder; honest, genuine: The company's dealings have always been above-board.

abridge v. shorten, reduce, condense, cut, abbreviate, cut back, trim, curtail, pare down, contract, compress, digest, summarize, epitomize, abstract, US synopsize: We abridged the original edition of 1000 pages to 480 pages.

abridgement
n. 1 shortening, reduction, abbreviation, condensation, contraction, truncation, trimming: The abridgement took ten

years. 2 curtailment: We protested against the abridgement of our right to picket. 3 digest, condensation, epitome, compendium, concise edition or version, cut edition or version; synopsis, abstract, summary, pr,cis, outline, r,sum,: The one-volume abridgement of the dictionary is easier to use.

abroad adv. 1 overseas, in foreign lands or parts: We were abroad on assignment for a few years. 2 broadly, widely, at large, near and far, far and wide, everywhere, extensively, publicly: Don't spread rumours abroad. 3 outside, out of doors, away, out and about: There are few people abroad this early in the morning.

abrupt adj. 1 sudden, hasty, quick, precipitate, snappy; unexpected, unannounced, unplanned, unforeseen, unanticipated: The general's abrupt departure has been linked with the disappearance of a great deal of money. 2 precipitous, steep, sheer, sudden: From the ridge there is an abrupt drop of 1000 metres into the valley. 3 curt, short, brusque, blunt, bluff, gruff, uncivil, rude, discourteous, impolite, unceremonious, snappish: My bank manager gave me an abrupt reply when I asked for an increased overdraft.

absence n. 1 non-attendance, non-presence, non-appearance, truancy: This is Jason's third absence from class in a week. She runs the place in my absence. 2 lack, want, deficiency, non-existence; insufficiency, scantiness, paucity, scarcity, dearth: In the absence of new evidence, the matter must remain undecided.

absent adj. 1 away, out, off, elsewhere, not present, missing, gone: Twenty people attended, but Harold was conspicuously absent. 2 missing, lacking, wanting, deficient: All warmth is absent from her singing.

--v. 3 absent (oneself) from. keep or stay away from; withdraw or retire from: He absented himself from the court during his father's trial for murder. Absent thee from felicity awhile.

absent-minded

adj. preoccupied, inattentive, unattentive, absorbed, unmindful, absent, off, withdrawn, unheeding, heedless, unheedful, inadvertent; distracted, abstracted, day-dreaming, in a brown study, in the clouds, unaware, oblivious, in a trance, distrait(e), mooning, (far) away (somewhere), star-gazing, wool-gathering: The absent-minded professor delivered his lecture to an empty lecture hall.

absolute adj. 1 perfect, complete, total, finished, thorough, through-and-through, consummate, flawless, faultless, unadulterated, pure, unmixed, unalloyed, undiluted; rank: Alan behaved like an absolute gentleman. 2 complete, outright, downright, genuine, real, pure, out-and-out, transparent, unmitigated, categorical, unqualified, unconditional, utter, veritable, unconditioned: Peace is an absolute requirement for prosperity. 3 unrestricted, unrestrained, unconstrained, unlimited, unmitigated, arbitrary, despotic, dictatorial, totalitarian, supreme, almighty, arbitrary, autocratic, tyrannical: The days of absolute monarchy are numbered. 4 positive, certain, sure, unambiguous, unquestionable, authoritative, verifiable, uncompromised: Few intelligent people would claim absolute knowledge of anything.

absolutely

adv. 1 unqualifiedly, unconditionally, unreservedly, unexceptionally, unequivocally, unquestionably, positively, definitely, really, genuinely, decidedly, surely, truly, certainly, categorically: She is absolutely the best dancer I have ever seen. I absolutely refuse to go. 2 totally, utterly, completely, entirely, fully, quite, altogether, wholly: It is absolutely necessary that you undergo surgery.

--interj. 3 certainly, assuredly, positively, definitely, of course, naturally, indubitably, yes, to be sure: 'Are you sure you want to go?' 'Absolutely!'

absorbed adj. engrossed, lost, wrapped up, occupied, engaged, immersed, buried, preoccupied, concentrating, rapt: He was absorbed in his reading.

absorbing adj. engrossing, engaging, riveting, captivating, fascinating, spellbinding, gripping: Maria was watching an absorbing thriller on television.

abstract adj. 1 theoretical, unapplied, notional, ideational, conceptual, metaphysical, unpractical, intellectual: It is difficult to capture abstract ideas on paper. 2 non-representational, symbolic, non-realistic: Museums began buying abstract art in the 1930s.

--n. 3 summary, epitome, synopsis, essence, digest, condensation, survey, conspectus, extract; outline, pr,cis, r,sum,: By reading the abstracts, you can determine which articles merit reading in full.

--v. 4 epitomize, abbreviate, digest, summarize, condense, shorten, abridge, cut, cut down, US synopsize: The service abstracts articles that appear in scientific journals.

absurd adj. 1 ridiculous, silly, nonsensical, senseless, outlandish, preposterous, farcical, mad, stupid, foolish, idiotic, imbecilic or imbecile, moronic, childish; laughable, ludicrous, risible, inane, Colloq crazy, nutty, nuts , Chiefly Brit daft: The notion that the moon is made of green cheese is absurd. 2 asinine, senseless, illogical, irrational, unreasoned, unreasonable, incongruous, paradoxical, unsound, meaningless: Today, most people view it absurd to believe that the earth is flat.

absurdity n. 1 folly, silliness, ridiculousness, foolishness, ludicrousness, nonsense, senselessness, meaninglessness, illogicality, irrationality, unreasonableness, incongruity, stupidity, Colloq craziness, nuttiness , Chiefly Brit daftness: Many comics rely on absurdity rather than cleverness for humour. 2 paradox, self-contradiction, error, fallacy: No one can abide the man's pretentiousness and other absurdities.

abundance n. overflow, superfluity, over-abundance, superabundance, excess, surplus, oversupply, glut, satiety, over-sufficiency; plenty, plenteousness, plentifulness, plenitude, copiousness, profusion, Formal nimiety: The days when there was an abundance of fresh drinking-water have come to an end.

abundant adj. 1 plentiful, overflowing, ample, copious, over-sufficient, superabundant, plenteous, profuse, inexhaustible, replete, bountiful, bounteous: The abundant rainfall fills the reservoirs every day. 2 abounding (in), full (of), rich (in), luxuriant, lavish: We know a stream that is abundant in trout. The abundant vegetation of the rain forest is an ecological wonder.

abuse v. 1 misuse, misemploy, pervert, misapply, exploit: The officer abused his authority in ordering the forced march at midnight. 2 maltreat, ill-use, injure, wrong, hurt, mistreat, manhandle, ill-treat; damage: I cannot stand by and watch that drunk abuse his wife and family. 3 malign, revile, censure, upbraid, assail, objurgate, lambaste, berate, rebuke, scold, reproach, disparage, traduce, defame, insult, swear at, curse (at), calumniate, slander, libel, decry, deprecate, vilify, rail against: In the report the director was abused in the most virulent terms.

--n. 4 misuse, misusage, misemployment, perversion, misapplication, misappropriation, Rhetoric catachresis: Beware of imitating his abuse of the language. 5 addiction, dependence: They are being treated for drug abuse at the local clinic. 6 maltreatment, ill-treatment, ill use, fault: It seemed perfectly natural that he should defend abuses by which he profited. 7 self-abuse, self-pollution, masturbation, violation, defilement; corruption: The schoolmasters consistently lectured the boys against any abuse of themselves. 8 revilement, reviling, execration, vituperation, malediction, imprecation, tongue-lashing, calumny, calumniation, vilification, obloquy, scurrility, invective, maligning, upbraiding, berating, objurgation, scolding; billingsgate: The two parties, after exchanging a good deal of abuse, came to blows.

abused adj. 1 misused: Permission to use the office copying machine has become an abused privilege. 2 maltreated, ill-treated, mistreated, hurt: It was explained that he had been an abused child.

abusive adj. 1 insulting, scurrilous, vituperative, calumnious, offensive, slanderous, libellous, defamatory, censorious, opprobrious, disparaging, deprecatory, depreciatory, derogatory, derisory, derisive, reviling, vilifying, vituperative, reproachful; profane; rude, filthy, dirty, foul, vulgar, obscene, smutty, vile, thersitical: The Crown refuses to tolerate abusive satire directed at the king. If I hear another word of abusive language out of you, I'll wash out your mouth with soap! 2 perverted, misapplied, improper, wrong, incorrect; exploitive, exploitative, exploitatory; brutal, cruel, injurious, hurtful, harmful, destructive: Despite the abusive treatment of wives, married women commanded much respect. 3 corrupt, venal, dishonest, crooked: The politicians exercised abusive power over the townspeople.

abysmal   adj. 1 awful, appalling, dreadful, terrible, profound: The government of Nero presented a spectacle of abysmal degradation. 2 abyssal, bottomless, profound, unfathomable, unfathomed: The abysmal depths have been plumbed in the diving bell.

abyss   n. deep, abysm, bottomless gulf, yawning chasm, gaping void, unfathomable cavity, impenetrable depth(s): The path led straight down into the abyss. In the scandal the MP was plunged into the abyss of disgrace.

1.2 academic...

=-

academic adj. 1 scholastic, collegiate; scholarly, learned, lettered, erudite: Green's academic background qualifies him for the professorship. The university began publishing academic journals in the 19th century. 2 theoretical, hypothetical, conjectural, speculative, abstract; ivory-tower, visionary, idealistic; impractical, unrealistic, unpractical: The car doesn't run, so the question of miles per gallon is purely academic.

accent   n. 1 emphasis, stress, force, prominence, accentuation; intensity, inflection; cadence, beat: The accent is on the second syllable in 'reward'. 2 diacritic, diacritical mark, mark, accent mark: There is an acute accent on the 'e' in 'clich,'. 3 pronunciation, articulation, intonation, speech pattern, inflection: Even after forty years in the country, he still speaks English with an Italian accent.

--v. 4 accentuate, emphasize, stress, give prominence to, mark, underline, underscore, distinguish, highlight, set off or apart: In her speech, the psychologist accented the 'id' in 'idiot'. Why must he always accent the negative aspect of everything?

accept   v. 1 receive, take, allow, permit: Sorry, but we cannot accept any more applications. 2 accede (to), agree (to), assent (to), consent (to), acknowledge, admit, allow, recognize: We accept your request for a hearing. 3 assume, undertake, take on or up, agree to bear: I'll accept the responsibility for replying. 4 reconcile oneself to, suffer, undergo, experience, stand, withstand, stomach, endure, bear, resign oneself to, brook, allow, tolerate, take: I think I have accepted enough criticism for one day.

acceptable

adj. 1 satisfactory, adequate, tolerable, all right, sufficient, admissible, passable, Colloq OK, okay: The bread and meat were acceptable, but the beer was awful. 2 agreeable, pleasing, welcome, satisfying, delightful, pleasant, pleasing: Most people find her compliments quite acceptable.

accessible

adj. approachable, open, available, attainable, obtainable, reachable, ready, at hand, Colloq get-at-able: The president is always accessible to those seeking help. The mechanism is accessible if the cover is removed.

accessory n. 1 extra, addition, adjunct, attachment, component, frill, Slang bells and whistles, doodah, US and Canadian doodad: My food processor has more accessories than I could ever need. 2 accessary, accomplice, helper, assistant, confederate, colleague, abettor, aide, collaborator, co-conspirator, conspirator, fellow-criminal, associate or partner in crime: Although he did not rob the bank, he drove the getaway car, which legally makes him an accessory before the fact. A seller of stolen goods is an accessory after the fact.

--adj. 3 extra, subordinate, auxiliary, additional, ancillary, supplemental, supplementary, secondary, adventitious, Formal adscititious: For no apparent reason, the salamander grew an accessory limb near its hind leg.

accident n. 1 mishap, misfortune, mischance, misadventure, blunder, mistake; casualty, disaster, catastrophe, calamity: A high percentage of the road accidents were caused by drunken drivers. 2 chance, fortune, luck, fortuity, fluke; serendipity: I came across the gold ring by accident, when cleaning out a disused cupboard. 3 non-essential, accessory or accessary, extra, addition: Melancholy is an almost inseparable accident of old age.

accidental

adj. chance, fortuitous, lucky, unlucky, serendipitous; undesigned, unpremeditated, uncalculated, unintended, unintentional, unwitting, inadvertent; unexpected, unplanned, unforeseen, unanticipated, adventitious; casual, random: Our meeting was entirely accidental.

accommodate

v. 1 fit, suit, adapt, adjust, modify; customize: I shall do my best to accommodate the equipment to your needs. 2 harmonize, make consistent, reconcile, adapt: It is uncertain whether his version of the incident can be accommodated to ours. 3 equip, supply, provide, furnish: Can you accommodate me with five pounds till tomorrow? 4 put up, house, lodge, shelter, quarter, Military billet: The innkeeper is unable to accommodate us tonight. 5 suit, oblige, convenience, serve: I was willing to accommodate you by selling your old car.

accommodating

adj. 1 obliging, cooperative, helpful, hospitable; considerate, conciliatory, easy to deal with, pliant, yielding, compliant, polite, friendly, complaisant, kind, kindly: The lady at the complaints desk in the store was most accommodating. 2 pliable, accessible, corruptible, subornable, get-at-able; bribable: If you want to get off scot-free, we'll have to find an accommodating judge.

accommodation

n. 1 adaptation, adjustment, modification, change, alteration, conformation, conformity: Her skilful accommodation to her boss's demands kept the peace in the office. 2 settlement, treaty, compromise: Negotiations were now opened for an accommodation between the belligerents. 3 convenience, favour: Would you take the mail to the post office as an accommodation to me? 4 lodging(s), room(s), quarters, shelter, housing; facility, premises, Brit digs, US accommodations: We were able to arrange for accommodation at the hotel. Have you seen our new office accommodation? 5 loan, (financial) assistance or aid; grant, grant-in-aid: The man was able to obtain an accommodation from his brother-in-law.

accompany v. 1 convoy, escort, chaperon or chaperone, go along with;

attend; usher, squire: Allow me to accompany you to your taxi. 2 go (along) with, come with, be associated with, belong with, go together with, be linked with: The roast was accompanied by a bottle of claret.

accomplice

n. accessory or accessary, partner in crime, confederate, ally, associate, colleague, fellow, henchman, collaborator, conspirator, co-conspirator, abettor, assistant, fellow-criminal, Colloq US cohort: The police arrested the safe-cracker and three accomplices within hours of the robbery.

accomplish

v. fulfil, perform, achieve, carry out, execute, carry off, do, complete, carry through, finish, effect, bring to an end, conclude, wind up, end; attain, reach, gain; Colloq bring off, knock off, polish off, Slang pull off, US swing, hack, cut: I don't know how she accomplished it, but she sailed around the world single-handed. Has he accomplished his goal yet?

accomplished

adj. consummate, perfect, expert, adept, skilful, proficient, practised, gifted, talented, skilled, professional: Did you know that she is also an accomplished flautist?

accomplishment

n. 1 fulfilment, consummation, completion, realization, attainment, achievement, conclusion, culmination, realization: After the accomplishment of the task they were all taken out to celebrate. 2 coup, feat, exploit, triumph, tour de force: Among her many accomplishments was climbing Mount Everest. 3 skill, skilfulness, talent, gift, ability: Playing the violin is another of his accomplishments.

accord v. 1 agree, harmonize, concur, be at one, correspond, agree, be in harmony, be consistent, go (together), coincide, conform: His principles and practices do not accord with one another.

--n. 2 agreement, unanimity, concord, reconciliation, harmony, mutual understanding, conformity, accordance, rapport, concert: The countries are in accord on a beneficial trade balance. 3 agreement, treaty, pact, contract: The accords will be signed at the summit meeting in May. 4 agreement, harmony, congruence;

correspondence: The colours of the curtains are in perfect accord with those of the carpet.

accordingly

adv. 1 hence, therefore, consequently, thus, in consequence (where)of, (and) so: Smoking was forbidden; accordingly, we put out our cigars. 2 suitably, in conformity, in compliance; conformably, appropriately, compliantly: Dinner-jackets were required, and the men dressed accordingly.

according to

adv.phr. 1 on the authority of, consistent with, in conformity or agreement with, as said or believed or maintained etc. by: We are going to play this game according to Hoyle. According to his lawyer, he should never have been acquitted. 2 conformable to, consistent with, in conformity with, commensurate with: The queen greeted them in order, according to rank.

account v. 1 account for. explain, give a reason for, give or render a reckoning for, answer for, justify, reckon for: The treasurer has been able to account for every penny of expense. His desire to conceal his background accounts for his secrecy.

--n. 2 calculation, accounting, reckoning, computation, (financial) statement; enumeration: The accounts show that the company has ample funds in reserve. Williams hasn't submitted his expense account for the trip. 3 interest, profit, advantage, benefit, favour; sake: Nigel turned his convalescence to good account by writing a best seller. Don't read the book on my account. 4 explanation, statement, description, report, recital, narrative, history, chronicle: The defendant gave a credible account of his whereabouts at the time of the crime. 5 consideration, use, worth, importance, consequence, note, value, merit; standing, significance, estimation, esteem: The committee decided that length of service is of some account in determining retirement pensions. 6 story, narration, narrative, report, tale, relation, description: Alice's account of the rabbit wearing a waistcoat is unbelievable. 7 take into account or take account of. notice, take note of, consider, take into consideration, allow for: In passing sentence, the judge took into account the child's poverty and the fact that it was Christmas time.

accountability

n. answerability, responsibility, liability, culpability, accountableness: In a democracy, there can be no reducing the accountability of the government to the citizens.

accountable

adj. answerable, responsible, liable, obliged, obligated: I am accountable to no man, but the greatest man in England is accountable to me.

accumulate

v. collect, gather, amass, mass, pile or heap up, aggregate, cumulate; assemble, store, stock, hoard, stockpile, put or lay away: Overnight, the snow accumulated in six-foot drifts about the house. Ill fares the land, to hast'ning ills a prey,/Where wealth accumulates, and men decay.

accumulation

n. 1 collecting, amassing, gathering, piling or aggregation, heaping up: One effect of the strike was the accumulation of rubbish in the streets. 2 growth, increase, build-up: The accumulation of wealth has never proved a valid purpose in life. 3 heap, pile, mass, collection, hoard, store, stockpile, stock, aggregation; assemblage: Our gardener made sure that there was an ample accumulation of compost.

accuracy n. exactness, correctness, Loosely precision, preciseness: The translation from the Greek has been accomplished with great accuracy. Rifling the inside of the barrel of a firearm increases its accuracy.

accurate adj. 1 exact, correct, error-free, precise: She gave an accurate description of the events. There is a nice distinction between 'accurate' and 'precise'. 2 careful, meticulous, nice, with an eye to or for detail, scrupulous, conscientious: Marvin is a very accurate typist. 3 unerring, on target, Colloq on the mark, spot on (target): This rifle is accurate if you allow for the wind.

accusation

n. charge, allegation, indictment, charge, citation, arraignment, complaint; imputation, incrimination, denunciation, impeachment: The politician denied the accusation of having accepted a bribe.

accuse v. 1 accuse (of or with). blame, censure, hold responsible (for), charge (with), denounce (for), point the finger (at), cite, call to account: She accused the Knave of Hearts of lying. 2 accuse (of or with). charge, indict, impeach, arraign, incriminate; attribute, impute: The prisoner is accused of assault, criminal damage, and disorderly conduct.

accustom v. familiarize, acquaint, habituate, train, season; acclimatize or acclimate: Start off by wearing your contact lenses for an hour at a time in order to accustom your eyes to them. She soon accustomed herself to the new surroundings.

accustomed

adj. 1 customary, habitual, usual, traditional, normal, regular, set, routine, ordinary, familiar, wonted, common, habituated: The old man took his accustomed place near the fire. 2 used: I've grown accustomed to her face.

ache v. 1 pain, hurt, smart, throb, pound; sting: My jaw has been aching since that tooth was extracted. 2 yearn, long, hunger, hanker, pine; crave: A hostage for a year, he was aching to see his wife and children.

--n. 3 pain, pang, throbbing, pounding, smarting, soreness: I have had this ache in my back, Doctor, and I can't stand up straight. 4 pang, pain; distress; longing: There's been an ache in my heart, my darling, ever since you went away.

achieve v. 1 accomplish, carry out, execute, succeed in, complete, fulfil, bring off or about; realize, effect: When the fund reaches its goal, we shall have achieved our purpose. 2 accomplish, attain, reach, gain, get, acquire, win, obtain: She achieved her ends by cheating and conniving.

achievement

n. 1 attainment, accomplishment, acquisition, acquirement: As he was still in his thirties, the achievement of great fame still lay ahead for him. 2 accomplishment, attainment, feat, deed, exploit, victory: The winning of the Nobel prize was her greatest achievement. 3 fulfilment, realization, accomplishment, attainment, completion: What virtue lies more in achievement than in the desire for it?

acknowledge

v. 1 admit, confess, allow, concede, own, recognize, accept, accede, acquiesce; own up to: We acknowledge that we might have been mistaken. She finally acknowledged my presence by looking up. 2 answer, reply to, respond to, react to: She couldn't possibly acknowledge personally every letter she receives.

acknowledgement

n. 1 acknowledging, confessing, admitting, owning, admission, confession, avowal, affirmation: His acknowledgement of his involvement in the crime saved the police a great deal of time. 2 approval, acceptance, recognition, allowance: By acknowledgement of the parliament, the king was the commander of the army and navy. 3 reply, response, answer, recognition: Our acknowledgement will be in tomorrow's post.

acme n. peak, apex, top, summit, pinnacle, zenith; climax, culmination: Roger has reached the acme of perfection as a diamond-cutter.

acquaint n. acquaint with. familiarize with, inform of or about, make aware of, apprise of, advise of: The management requires employees to acquaint themselves with the safety rules.

acquaintance

n. 1 familiarity, knowledge, acquaintanceship, understanding, awareness; experience: His acquaintance with the works of Coleridge is sparse at best. 2 associate, fellow, colleague: She's not a friend of mine, only an acquaintance.

acquainted

adj. 1 known to each other or one another, familiar with each other or one another, on speaking terms: I have known Rory for years, but his wife and I are not acquainted. 2 acquainted with. familiar with, known to, aware of, informed of, knowledgeable of, conversant with: I have studied trigonometry, but I am not acquainted with calculus.

acquire v. get, obtain, gain, win, earn, procure, secure, come by or into; receive, come into possession of; buy, purchase: He acquired great wealth by marrying rich old dying widows.

acquisition
n. 1 obtaining, getting, acquiring, acquirement, gain, procurement: The acquisition of property entails many obligations. 2 possession(s), property, purchase; object: This first edition is a recent acquisition.

act n. 1 deed, action, undertaking, operation, step, move; feat, exploit; accomplishment, achievement: The first act of the new commission was to ban smoking in public places. 2 performance, show, bit, skit, stand, routine, turn, sketch, Colloq thing, Slang US shtick: Stand-up comedians do their acts in nightclubs. 3 performance, pretence, posture, stance, feigning, front, fake, dissimulation, show, deception, hoax, affectation: She didn't mean what she said - it was just an act. 4 bill, law, decree, edict, statute, order, ordinance, command, mandate, resolution, measure, enactment: Are the opening hours of public houses in England regulated by act of Parliament?

--v. 5 behave (oneself), carry on, deport oneself, comport oneself, conduct oneself: I don't know how she'll act when we're in public. 6 perform, play, do: She is acting in the West End. 7 portray, represent, impersonate, act out, personify, take or play the part or role of, personate: Reginald acts the fool whenever he has had too much to drink. 8 feign, pretend, counterfeit, fake, dissemble, make believe, sham, simulate, dissimulate, posture: You may think him sincere, but I know he is just acting. 9 take effect, work, operate, function, perform: This drug will act only if taken with meals.

action n. 1 activity, performance, movement, motion, energy, liveliness, vim, vigour, spirit, vitality; enterprise, initiative: Being a man of action, he hates just sitting and reading. 2 influence, effect, power, force, strength: The action of the moon's gravitational pull causes tides on earth. 3 deed, act, undertaking, exertion, exercise: The very action of breathing caused me pain. 4 remedy, proceeding, process: If they don't stop beating their dog we shall take action against them. 5 fighting, combat: We saw action in the Far East. 6 fight, battle, engagement, encounter, clash, fray, sortie, skirmish, affray: How many men were lost in last night's action? 7 effect, effectiveness, activity, function, performance, functioning, reaction: What is the action of steroids on the lymph system? 8 actions. behaviour, conduct, deportment, demeanour, ways, manner, manners: She must be held responsible for her actions.

activate v. move, actuate, set in motion, get started, energize, get or set going, start, initiate, switch or turn on, trigger; motivate, rouse, arouse, prompt, stimulate, stir, mobilize, animate, impel, galvanize, Colloq US light a fire under: The sensor in the pavement activates the traffic signal. Her enthusiasm activated him to go into business for himself.

active   adj. 1 strenuous, vigorous, full, dynamic, physical; energetic, lively, busy, brisk, bustling, occupied, on the move, Colloq on the go, running: She is healthier for having led a very active life. He always seems to be active. 2 acting, effective, efficacious, effectual, working, functioning, operative, potent, influential; powerful: The active ingredient in her medicine is an antihistamine. 3 energetic, lively, hyperactive, animated, spry, nimble, quick, agile, sprightly: There is no keeping up with an active child.

activity n. 1 action, movement, motion, vigour, vim, energy, liveliness, bustle: Last week there wasn't much activity in the stock market. 2 pursuit, occupation, vocation, work, function, operation, job, labour, endeavour, enterprise, project, undertaking, venture, interest: What sort of business activity are you engaged in?

actual   adj. 1 existing, existent, real, genuine, factual, true, authentic, verified, verifiable, true to life, manifest, realized, realistic, Colloq solid: The actual cost of the project turned out to be double the estimate. 2 present, current, existent, real, genuine, physical, tangible: No telescope has detected any actual volcanic eruption on the moon.

actually adv. really, in reality, in fact, in actuality, in point of fact, in truth, absolutely, as a matter of fact, indeed, truly, literally: The interest rates actually charged by banks may vary from those quoted publicly.

acute   adj. 1 sharp, pointed, narrow: The two roads meet at an acute angle. 2 severe, intense, critical, crucial, dangerous, grave, serious, severe: This is the ward for patients with acute illnesses. 3 sharp, cutting, intense, severe, violent, penetrating, exquisite, excruciating, fierce, shooting, stabbing, piercing, sudden: The onset of the disease is marked by acute pains in the abdomen. 4 keen, sharp, sensitive: The bloodhound is known for its acute sense of smell. 5 keen, sharp-witted, shrewd, clever, ingenious, astute, sharp, canny, incisive, discerning, perceptive, perspicacious, intelligent, penetrating, insightful, percipient, wise, sensitive, discriminating; alert, aware, on the qui vive: Such a circumstance could not be lost upon so acute an observer.

1.3 adapt...

=-

adapt   v. 1 suit, fit, make suitable, qualify: The structure of the outer ear is adapted to collect and concentrate the vibrations. 2 alter, modify, change, remodel, tailor, reshape, shape, fashion; adjust, accommodate, accustom, acclimatize or acclimate, habituate: He adapted the play from an old French comedy. The whale adapts itself to great changes in pressure when it dives thousands of feet.

adaptable adj. flexible, pliable, pliant, compliant, accommodative, tractable, malleable, ductile, versatile; alterable, changeable: Men, in general, are not as adaptable as women.

adaptation
n. 1 fitting, suiting, modifying, adjusting, conversion: In 1831 electricity was ripe for adaptation to practical purposes. 2 modification, change, adjustment, accommodation, reworking, customization, alteration: She was responsible for the adaptation of her short story to a television play.

add   v. 1 join, unite, combine, annex: 5 + 3 denotes that 3 is to be added to 5. 2 total, sum, sum up, combine, count up, reckon, Brit tot (up), US tote (up): The computer can add all those figures in a few seconds. 3 continue, go on: 'And I won't take no for an answer', she added. 4 add to. increase, enlarge, amplify, augment, supplement: His articles have added greatly to his reputation as a financial analyst.

addict n. 1 (habitual) user, Slang junkie, dope-fiend, doper, head, pot-head, acid-head, pill popper, tripper, Chiefly US hophead: His contributions helped set up the halfway houses for addicts. 2 devotee, aficionado, fan, admirer, follower, adherent, supporter, enthusiast, Colloq buff, hound, fiend, groupie, Slang freak, bug, nut, teeny-bopper: She became a rock 'n' roll addict in the '60s.

addition n. 1 adding, joining, putting together, uniting, combining: The addition of this paragraph is uncalled for. 2 totalling, adding up, summing-up, summation, counting up, reckoning, totting up: You have made an error in addition. 3 addendum, appendix, appendage, supplement, increment, augmentation, extension: This addition contributes nothing to the manuscript. 4 extension, ell, Brit annexe, US annex, wing: We used our lottery winnings to pay for an addition to the house.

--prep. 5 in addition to. as well as, besides, beyond, over and above: In addition to books, the shop sold greetings cards.

---adv.phr. 6 in addition. moreover, furthermore, additionally, besides, withal, to boot, in or into the bargain, too, also, as well: We were compelled to exercise every morning and in addition we went for a ten-mile run each Saturday.

address n. 1 speech, talk, discourse, oration, lecture; sermon: The Prime Minister's address to the nation was broadcast last night. 2 location, whereabouts: She couldn't write to me because she didn't have my address.

--v. 3 speak or talk to; deliver or give a speech to; lecture: After the coup, the general addressed the crowd in the square. 4 greet, hail, accost, approach: She was addressing strangers in the street to ask their views on women's rights. 5 address oneself to. devote or direct or apply oneself to: After the holidays, I again addressed myself to studying for examinations.

adept adj. 1 versed, proficient, skilled, well-skilled, expert, accomplished, skilful or US skillful, adroit, dexterous or dextrous, able, masterful, masterly, polished: She is an adept pianist, and her husband is adept at carpentry.

--n. 2 expert, master, specialist, authority , Colloq dab hand, old hand: He is an adept at anything that one does with one's hands.

adequate adj. 1 sufficient, enough, ample; satisfactory, fitting, equal, suitable: Is there language adequate to describe my feelings? 2 passable, fair, fair to middling, middling, average, tolerable, (barely) acceptable, (barely) satisfactory, all right, competent, not (at all) bad, so so , Colloq OK or okay, up to snuff, not that or too bad, no great shakes: The music was good, the band only adequate. 3 equal, suitable, suited, fitted, up, proper, qualified, competent, good enough: Johnson was unsure that he was adequate to the task at hand.

adjoining adj. neighbouring, contiguous (to), adjacent (to), abutting, bordering, next (to): We have bought the adjoining house. The land adjoining the supermarket is for sale.

adjust v. 1 set right, arrange, settle, harmonize, reconcile, resolve, set or put to rights; arbitrate, mediate; redress, rectify, correct, patch up: Four were named on each side to adjust their differences. 2 change, alter, modify, regulate, set: After he adjusted the pendulum, the clock kept good time. 3 adapt (to), accommodate (oneself) (to), accustom (oneself) (to); get used (to), acclimatize or acclimate (to), reconcile (oneself) (to): If she travels a distance east or west, it takes her a few days to adjust to the local time. Army life was very different, but I was able to adjust quickly. 4 put in order, arrange, rearrange, close or fasten or zip or button (up): She adjusted the children's coats and did up their shoes.

adjustment

n. 1 adjusting, altering, alteration, setting, regulating, regulation, setting or putting right or aright or to rights, correcting, correction, calibrating, calibration; tuning: The adjustment of the clocks is my responsibility. 2 arrangement, balance, coordination, order, alignment, harmony, harmonization: The inspector requires everything to be in perfect adjustment.

administer

v. 1 administrate, manage, control, run, direct, conduct, superintend, supervise, oversee: The president said that she had administered the department well during her year as its head. 2 execute, carry on, carry out; apply, implement, prosecute: It is the responsibility of the police to administer the law, not to make it. 3 dispense, supply, furnish, give (out), provide (with), mete out, distribute, deliver, deal, hand out: Doctors sometimes administer drugs that have side effects.

administration
n. 1 management, direction, conduct, supervision, oversight, superintendence, regulation, charge: Lord Hampden was given administration of her affairs till she came of age. 2 authority, management, US government: The current administration is in favour of a better health programme. 3 dispensation, administering, supplying, furnishing, provision, delivery, distribution, application: The judge is charged with the administration of justice.

admirable adj. wonderful, awe-inspiring, excellent, estimable, splendid, marvellous, superior, first-rate, first-class, of the first water, great, fine, Colloq top-drawer, ripsnorting, A-1, Brit smashing, magic: His performance in Harper's new play is admirable.

admiration
n. wonder, awe; delight, pleasure; esteem, regard, appreciation, respect: She is lost in admiration of her mother's latest painting. Randolph was presented with a gold medal as a token of his colleagues' admiration.

admire v. 1 wonder or marvel (at), delight in: Typically, he most admires people who are wealthy. 2 esteem, regard or respect highly, look up to, revere, idolize, venerate, worship: The queen is one of the most admired people in the country.

admirer n. 1 devotee, aficionado, fan, supporter, enthusiast, adherent, follower Slang groupie: Rock stars always seem to be accompanied by a retinue of admirers. 2 beau, suitor; lover, sweetheart, darling: Scarlett was always surrounded by many admirers.

admission n. 1 access, admittance, entr,e, entry: The special card gives me admission to the rare book room of the library. 2 reception, acceptance, appointment, institution, induction, installation, investiture: The committee has at last approved the admission of women into the society. 3 acknowledging, acknowledgement or acknowledgment, allowing, allowance, admitting, admittance, conceding, concession: The court refuses to consider the admission of testimony taken under duress. 4 acknowledgement, confession, concession, profession, declaration, disclosure, affirmation, concession, divulgence or divulgement, revelation: The police were able to extract an admission of guilt from the suspect. 5 ticket, (entry or entrance) fee, tariff: Admission is free for senior citizens.

admit v. 1 let in, allow to enter, take or allow in; accept, receive: I opened the window to admit some air. The harbour is too small to admit even one more ship. 2 allow, permit, grant, brook, tolerate: The governor will admit no delay in the execution of the sentence, and the prisoner will be hanged at dawn. 3 accept, concede, acquiesce, allow, grant, accept, recognize, take cognizance of: Descartes' principle admitted nothing but what his own consciousness obliged him to admit. 4 confess, own, concede, divulge, reveal, acknowledge, declare: She readily admitted to having incited the riot.

admittance

n. leave or permission to enter, entry, entering, entrance, access, entr,e: Admittance to the club is restricted to members.

adolescent

n. 1 teenager, youth, juvenile, minor, stripling, youngster, US teen, Colloq kid; Slang teeny-bopper: A group of adolescents volunteered to work at the home for the elderly.

--adj. 2 teenaged, young, youthful, maturing, pubescent; immature, puerile, juvenile: Adolescent growth is often dramatic, a gain of two inches in height being not unusual.

adopt v. 1 take (in), accept, take or accept as one's own: Carol and her husband have adopted two children. 2 take, take up or on or over, embrace, espouse; arrogate, appropriate: All Hugh's ideas are adopted from others - he's never had one of his own.

adorable adj. lovable, beloved, loved, darling, sweet, dear; delightful, appealing, attractive, charming, captivating, fetching: To look at him now, it is hard to imagine what an adorable child he once was.

adore v. 1 esteem, honour, respect, admire; idolize, dote on: An entire generation adored the Beatles. 2 worship, venerate, reverence, revere, exalt; hallow: O! Come let us adore him - Christ, the Lord! 3 love, be in love with, cherish, fancy, revere, adulate, Colloq have a crush on, carry the or a torch for: Katie just adores the captain of the football team at school.

adult adj. 1 mature, grown (up), full-grown, matured, of age: Now that you are adult, you come into a large inheritance.

--n. 2 grown-up: Tiger cubs are cute, but the adults are very dangerous.

adulterate

v. falsify, corrupt, alloy, debase, water (down), weaken, dilute, bastardize, contaminate, pollute, taint, Colloq doctor; Slang US cut: Adulterated rape seed oil was found to have caused the deaths of more than 600 people.

advance v. 1 move or put or push or go forward; approach: Man has advanced the frontier of physical science. The battalion advanced towards the fort with guns blazing. 2 further, promote, forward, help, aid, abet, assist, benefit, improve; contribute to: The terrorists' dynamiting of the school has done nothing to advance their cause. 3 go or move forward, move (onward), go on, proceed, get ahead: As people advance in life, they acquire what is better than admiration - judgement. 4 hasten, accelerate, speed: We have advanced the date of our departure from December to October. 5 move up, promote: In less than a year, Mrs Leland has been advanced from supervisor to manager of the production department. 6 prepay, lend: Could you advance me some money till pay-day?

--n. 7 progress, development, progress, forward movement; improvement, betterment; headway: Who has done more for the advance of knowledge? 8 rise, increase, appreciation: Any advance in prices at this time would reduce our sales. 9 prepayment, deposit; loan: I cannot understand why George is always asking for an advance on his allowance. 10 in advance. a beforehand, ahead (of time), before: You will have to make reservations well in advance. b before, in front (of), ahead (of), beyond: The colonel rode in advance of the cavalry.

advantage n. 1 superiority, upper hand, dominance, edge, head start; sway; Colloq US and New Zealand drop: After a year, the advantage was with the Royalists. His height gives him an advantage at basketball. 2 gain, profit, benefit, interest; asset, betterment, improvement, advancement; use, usefulness, utility, help, service: I have information that will be of advantage to her. 3 to advantage. better, (more) favourably, advantageously: The dress sets off her figure to advantage.

advantageous
adj. profitable, worthwhile, gainful, opportune, beneficial, favourable, useful, valuable: The minister signed an advantageous treaty of commerce with Russia.

adventure n. 1 exploit, escapade, danger, peril; affair, undertaking, feat, deed; experience, incident, event, occurrence, happening, episode: We shared many wartime adventures. 2 speculation, hazard, chance, risk, venture, enterprise: I lost a fortune in some of his financial adventures.

--v. 3 venture, hazard, risk, imperil, endanger, jeopardize, threaten: Would you adventure your pension money in such a scheme? 4 dare, wager, bet, gamble, stake, try one's luck, Brit punt: She adventured a whole week's salary on the pools.

adventurer
n. 1 adventuress, soldier of fortune, swashbuckler, hero, heroine, daredevil; mercenary: Errol Flynn often played the role of the adventurer. 2 adventuress, cheat, swindler, charlatan, trickster, rogue, scoundrel, knave; cad, bounder, philanderer, fortune-hunter, opportunist: That adventuress is just after Nelson's money.

adventurous
adj. daring, rash, brash, reckless, devil-may-care, bold, foolhardy, hazardous, risky, daredevil, venturesome, adventuresome, temerarious, audacious, bold, intrepid, brave, courageous: She was adventurous enough to sail round the world single-handed.

adversary n. 1 foe, enemy, opponent, antagonist, competitor, rival:

Before beginning to fight, each adversary sized up the other.

--adj. 2 opposed, hostile, antagonistic, competitive: Why does she always take the adversary position in every argument?

advertisement
n. 1 notice, handbill, blurb, broadside, bill, circular, brochure, poster, placard, classified, commercial, spot (announcement), US car-card, Colloq ad, plug, Brit advert: The company has placed advertisements in all major media. 2 advertising, promotion; publicity; propaganda, ballyhoo, hoop-la, Colloq hype, beating the drum, US puffery: Advertisement on TV may be very effective, but it is very expensive.

advice n. 1 counsel, guidance, recommendation, suggestion, opinion, view; warning, admonition, Technical par‘nesis: His solicitor's advice is to say nothing. 2 information, news, intelligence, notice, notification; communication: Advice has reached the police that a shipment of arms will leave Dover tonight.

advisable adj. recommendable, expedient, prudent, practical, sensible, sound, seemly, judicious, wise, intelligent, smart, proper, politic: It would be advisable for you to keep out of sight for a few days.

advise v. 1 counsel, guide, recommend, suggest, commend; caution, admonish, warn; urge, encourage: I advised him to be careful driving at night in that area. 2 tell, announce (to), inform, apprise, register, make known (to), intimate (to), notify: We advised her of our disapproval. The police have advised the defendants of their rights.

adviser n. counsellor, mentor, guide, cicerone, counsel, consultant, confidant(e): The chairman always consults his advisers before making a decision.

advisory adj. 1 consultive, consultative, counselling, hortatory, monitory, admonitory, Technical par‘netic(al): Our firm has been engaged in an advisory capacity on the privatization of the utility companies.

--n. 2 bulletin, notice, warning, admonition, prediction: The

Weather Office has issued a storm advisory for the weekend.

advocate v. 1 support, champion, back, endorse, uphold, recommend, stand behind, second, favour, speak or plead or argue for or in favour of: Don't you advocate the policies of the Party?

--n. 2 supporter, champion, backer, upholder, second, exponent, proponent, patron, defender, apologist: She is an enthusiastic advocate of free speech. 3 lawyer, counsel; intercessor; Brit barrister, solicitor, US attorney, counselor-at-law: The advocate for the opposition is not in court.

1.4 aesthete...

=-

aesthete n. connoisseur, art-lover, lover of beauty, aesthetician or esthetician, US tastemaker: It was the aesthetes who set the standard for the art purchased by the museum.

aesthetic adj. 1 artistic, tasteful, beautiful; in good, excellent, etc. taste: Daphne always does such aesthetic flower arrangements. 2 sensitive, artistic, refined, discriminating, cultivated: These paintings might be realistic, but they are an aesthetic disaster.

1.5 affair...

=-

affair n. 1 matter, topic, issue; business, concern, interest, undertaking, activity: These are affairs of state and require the approval of a minister. 2 concern, business, Slang US beeswax: Who wiped the fingerprints off the weapon is none of your affair. 3 event, business, occurrence, happening, proceeding, incident, operation: Last night's farewell party was truly a dull affair. 4 Also, affaire. love affair, amour, romance, intrigue, fling, liaison, relationship, affaire d'amour, affaire de coeur: Lady Constance is having an affair with the gamekeeper.

affect° v. 1 attack, act upon, lay hold of, strike: Arthritis has affected his hands and he can no longer play the piano. 2 move, stir, impress, touch, strike; perturb, upset, trouble, agitate: The sportsman was not affected by all the taunts and jeers. 3 influence, sway, change, transform, modify, alter: Her sudden fame has affected her view of herself.

affectý v. 1 assume, adopt, put on, pretend (to), feign, sham, fake, counterfeit: Charles affects a knowledge of high finance. 2 choose, select; use, wear, adopt: He affected a striped blazer and a boater which he wore at a jaunty angle.

affectation
n. 1 affectedness, pretentiousness, artificiality, insincerity, posturing: She behaves with so much affectation that I never can be sure of her real feelings. 2 pretence, simulation, false display, show, front, pose, pretension, fa‡ade; act, airs: Some people's charitable concern for others is mere affectation. Using a long cigarette-holder is one of her many affectations.

affected adj. 1 unnatural, artificial, specious, stilted, stiff, studied, awkward, non-natural, contrived, mannered: Dryden found Shakespeare's style stiff and affected. 2 pretended, simulated, hollow, assumed, feigned, fake, faked, false, counterfeit, insincere, spurious, sham, bogus, Colloq phoney or US also phony: The heir's affected grief concealed his secret exultation. 3 pretentious, pompous, high-sounding, mincing, niminy-piminy, Colloq la-di-da orlah-di-dah or la-de-da: Oliver's affected airs were enough to make his classmates detest him. 4 attacked, seized, afflicted, stricken, gripped, touched; diseased, laid hold of: Her affected lungs never quite recovered. 5 afflicted, moved, touched, stirred, distressed, troubled, upset, hurt; influenced, swayed, impressed, struck, played or worked or acted upon: Many affected theatre-goers enjoyed her performances.

affection n. goodwill, (high) regard, liking, fondness, attachment, loving attachment, tenderness, warmth, love: The affection she felt towards her stepchildren was returned many times over.

affectionate
adj. fond, loving, tender, caring, devoted, doting, warm: She gave her mother an affectionate embrace and boarded the train.

affiliated

adj. associated; attached, connected, combined, united, joined: For our members' convenience, the club is now affiliated with one that serves meals.

affinity n. 1 relationship, kinship, closeness, alliance, connection or Brit connexion; sympathy, rapport: He felt an affinity with other redheaded people. 2 friendliness, fondness, liking, leaning, bent, inclination, taste, partiality, attractiveness, attraction: I have an affinity for the sea.

afflict v. affect, bother, distress, oppress, trouble, torment: Last winter's intense cold afflicted everyone, but those in the north especially.

affliction
n. 1 hardship, misery, misfortune, distress, ordeal, trial, tribulation, adversity, suffering, woe, pain, grief, distress, torment, wretchedness: Moses saw the affliction of his people in Egypt. 2 curse, disease, calamity, catastrophe, disaster, plague, scourge, tribulation, trouble: He often observed that greed was the affliction of the middle class.

afford v. 1 have the means, be able or rich enough, manage, bear the expense, pay, provide: We cannot afford to send the children to better schools. 2 give, spare, give up, contribute, donate; sacrifice: The loss of a single day's work was more than I could afford. 3 yield, give, supply, produce, provide, furnish, grant, offer; give forth: May kind heaven afford him everlasting rest. The poems afford no explanation.

afoul adv. afoul of. entangled with, in trouble with, in conflict with, at odds with: Barbara fell afoul of the new tax regulations.

afraid adj. 1 fearful, frightened, scared, intimidated, apprehensive, lily-livered, white-livered, terrified, panic-stricken, faint-hearted, weak-kneed, timid, timorous, nervous, anxious, jittery, on edge, edgy, jumpy; cowardly, pusillanimous, craven, Colloq yellow: Don't be afraid, the dog won't bite you. 2 sorry, unhappy, regretful, apologetic, rueful: I'm afraid I cannot help you find a cheap flat in London.

1.6 age...

=-

age n. 1 lifetime, duration, length of existence; life-span: The age of a stag is judged chiefly by its antlers. She was sixteen years of age. 2 maturity, discretion; majority, adulthood, seniority: When he comes of age he will inherit millions. 3 period, stage, time: Among these people, both boys and girls undergo rites of passage at the age of puberty. He is a man of middle age. 4 long time, aeon or esp. US eon; years: I haven't seen you for an age! The noise went on for ages. 5 era, epoch, period, time: The 18th century was known as the Augustan Age in England.

--v. 6 grow old(er), mature, ripen: O, Matilda, I age too fast for my years! You must first age the whisky in the barrel, then bottle it.

aged adj. old, elderly, superannuated, ancient, age-old, grey, venerable: The three aged women crouched in their chairs, each with her own memories.

agency n. means, medium, instrumentality; intervention, intercession, action, intermediation; operation, mechanism, force, power, activity, working(s), energy: Pollen is carried from flower to flower by the agency of certain insects.

agent n. 1 representative, intermediary, go-between, proxy, emissary, delegate, spokesman, spokeswoman, spokesperson, deputy, substitute, surrogate, advocate, emissary, legate, envoy, factor: Our agent in Tokyo will look after the matter for you. 2 factor, agency, cause, means, force, instrument, power, vehicle, ingredient: The active agent in this cleaner is ammonia.

aggravate v. 1 worsen, intensify, exacerbate, heighten, magnify, increase; inflame: They introduce new problems and aggravate the old ones. 2 exasperate, frustrate; anger, incense, infuriate; provoke, irritate, nettle, rile, vex, annoy, harass, hector, bother; embitter, rankle, Colloq peeve, needle, get on one's nerves; Slang Brit give (someone) aggro: Threats only serve to aggravate people.

aggression

n. 1 aggressiveness, hostility, belligerence, combativeness, Slang Brit aggro: The mere crossing of the river is an act of aggression. 2 attack, assault, onslaught, invasion, encroachment: The conflict had become a war of aggression.

aggressive

adj. 1 combative, warlike, martial, belligerent, bellicose, pugnacious, quarrelsome, disputatious, litigious; hostile, unfriendly: The Germanic tribes were known to the Romans as aggressive and hardened warriors. 2 forward, assertive, forceful, bold, Colloq pushy: Dennis's aggressive nature may yet make him a good salesman.

aggressor n. assailant, attacker, instigator, initiator, provoker; belligerent: You will find that the Nazis were the aggressors in Poland in 1939.

agile adj. 1 nimble, quick, brisk, swift, active, lively, lithe, limber, spry, sprightly: Sofia is an agile dancer. 2 keen, sharp, alert, dexterous or dextrous, resourceful, acute: With his agile mind Richard was able to solve the problems in no time at all.

agitate v. 1 excite, arouse, rouse, move, perturb, stir up, disquiet, fluster, ruffle, rattle, disconcert, discomfit, unsettle, upset, rock, unnerve, shake (up), Colloq discombobulate: Rachel was agitated to learn of the bank's threat to foreclose on the mortgage. 2 push, press, campaign; promote: The miners have been agitating for better safety measures. 3 stir (up), churn, disturb, shake, roil: The calm lake was agitated by the motor boats.

agitated adj. moved, stirred (up), shaken (up), rattled, disturbed, upset, nervous, perturbed, jittery, jumpy, uneasy, ill at ease, fidgety, disquieted, discomfited, ruffled, flustered, unsettled, unnerved, wrought up, discomposed, disconcerted, aroused, roused, excited, Colloq discombobulated: The sheriff was in a very agitated state about the mob forming outside the jail.

agitation n. 1 shaking, disturbance, churning, stirring, turbulence: The agitation made the solution become cloudy. 2 excitement, arousal, rabble-rousing, provocation, stirring up, incitement, ferment, stimulation, over-stimulation, commotion: The organized agitation of the crowds continued for weeks after the coup.

agitator n. activist, rabble-rouser, incendiary, agent provocateur, insurrectionist, troublemaker, demagogue, firebrand: The opposition party hires professional agitators to incite the people to riot.

agog adj. eager, avid, keen, enthusiastic, expectant, impatient, breathless: The children were all agog waiting for Santa Claus to come.

agonizing adj. painful, distressful, distressing, harrowing, torturous, racking, excruciating, tortured, tormented: We went through an agonizing reappraisal of our policy on immigration.

agony n. anguish, trouble, distress, suffering, misery, wretchedness, pain, pangs, woe, torment, throes, torture, affliction: For two days his parents experienced the agony of not knowing whether he was dead or alive.

agree v. 1 concur, conform, come or go together, coincide, correspond, harmonize, reconcile; accord, tally, Colloq jibe: At last my cheque-book agrees with my bank statement! 2 Often, agree to. consent to, favour, acquiesce in or to, approve of, accede to, assent to: They finally agreed to our offer. We agreed terms with respect to the contract. 3 concede, grant, consent, admit, approve, allow, accept, concur; accede (to), acquiesce (in or to), assent (to), see eye to eye: The committee agreed that she should be given time to comply with the request. I objected and they agreed with me. 4 agree with. suit: The climate in England agrees with me, strange to say.

agreeable adj. 1 pleasing, pleasant, enjoyable, pleasurable, favourable, delightful, satisfying, satisfactory, good, nice, acceptable; to one's liking or taste: He found the Caribbean an agreeable place for a holiday. 2 in favour, approving, willing, consenting, acquiescent, complying, compliant, in agreement or accord, concurring, amenable, sympathetic, well-disposed; accommodating, accommodative: If Anne's agreeable, we can leave tomorrow.

agreement n. 1 understanding, covenant, treaty, pact, accord, compact, settlement, concordat; contract, bargain, Colloq deal: They drew up a ten-year agreement to be signed at the summit in Geneva. 2 concord, harmony, compatibility, unity, concurrence, unanimity: Agreement in error is far worse than division for the sake of truth.

1.7 ahead
=-

ahead adv. 1 at the or in front, in advance, in the lead or vanguard, up ahead, before, to the fore: The general rode ahead. 2 winning: At half time, our team was ahead by two points. 3 onward(s), forward(s), on: Please move ahead if you can.

1.8 aid...
=-

aid v. 1 help, support, assist, facilitate, back, abet, uphold, promote; succour, relieve, subsidize: The invasion was aided by Richard's subjects. He salved his conscience by aiding a local charity.

--n. 2 help, support, assistance, backing, relief, benefit, service, succour, comfort: He was convicted of giving aid to the enemy in time of war. 3 funding, subsidy, subvention; grant-money, grant, grant-in-aid, scholarship: He could never have gone to university without aid from the endowment.

aide n. aide-de-camp, assistant, helper, coadjutor; good or strong right arm, right hand, right-hand man; colleague, partner, ally, comrade, comrade-in-arms, US cohort , Colloq man Friday, girl Friday, US gal Friday: The general's aides are always at his side.

ail v. 1 trouble, afflict, affect, bother, distress, upset, worry, make ill or sick, pain, hurt: I cannot imagine what ails him, and the doctor can find nothing wrong. 2 suffer, be or feel ill or poorly or unwell or indisposed, US be sick: Granny has been ailing lately.

ailment n. illness, sickness, affliction, disease, disorder, indisposition, malady; disability, infirmity; malaise, queasiness: Granny's ailment has been diagnosed as influenza.

aim v. 1 direct, point, focus, train, level: The guns of the fort are aimed at the narrow pass. 2 aim at. focus on, have designs on, aspire to, plan for or on, set one's sights on, seek, strive for, try for, wish, want: Edward aimed at absolute dominion over that kingdom. 3 seek, intend, plan: I aim to retire at fifty, if not before.

--n. 4 direction, pointing, focus, focusing or focussing, sighting: His aim is so bad that he can't hit the side of a barn with a shotgun. 5 purpose, goal, ambition, desire, aspiration, object, end, objective, target, intent, intention, plan: It was never her aim in life to be rich. The aim of the book is set forth in the Foreword.

aimless adj. 1 purposeless, pointless, frivolous: After receiving the inheritance she led an aimless life of ease and luxury. 2 undirected, erratic, chance, haphazard, random, vagrant, wayward; wanton: We were annoyed by the tourists' aimless meandering round the village.

air n. 1 atmosphere, ambience, aura, climate, feeling, sense, mood, quality: This restaurant has a delightful air about it. 2 breeze, zephyr, current, draught; breath, puff, wind: Light airs sprang up from the south. 3 manner, style, appearance, aura, feeling, bearing, quality, flavour: Louis has a lugubrious air about him. 4 melody, tune, song, music: She was humming airs from some Italian opera. 5 airs. pretension, pretence, show, affectedness; haughtiness, hauteur, arrogance, superiority, superciliousness: He puts on such airs since he got his knighthood.

--v. 6 ventilate, freshen, refresh, aerate: The chambermaid is airing the room, so you can't go in now. 7 show off, parade, display, exhibit; publish, broadcast, circulate, publicize, make public or known, reveal, expose, disclose, divulge, tell, express, declare: Once again Andrew is airing his views on modern art.

1.9 akin

=-

akin adj. Usually, akin to. related (to), allied or connected or affiliated (to or with), associated (with), germane (to), like, alike, similar (to): Desultoriness is akin to indolence. Their decision not to show the film smacks of something akin to censorship.

1.10 alarm...
=-

alarm n. 1 warning, alert, danger- or distress-signal; tocsin, bell, gong, siren, whistle, horn: At the approach of the storm, the lookouts gave the alarm. The alarm is set to wake me at four o'clock. 2 fear, fright, apprehension, dismay, trepidation, terror, dread, anxiety, excitement, panic, consternation, distress, nervousness, uneasiness, discomfort: He viewed with alarm the arrest of his next-door neighbours.

--v. 3 frighten, scare, daunt, startle, terrify, panic; unnerve, dismay, disturb, upset: She was alarmed at the news of the car crash. Don't be alarmed - such delays are quite normal.

alcohol n. spirits, liquor, the bottle, the cup that cheers, demon rum, John Barleycorn, Colloq booze, hard stuff, juice, moonshine, fire-water, Slang rot-gut, US and Canadian hooch: Alcohol and driving do not mix.

alcoholic adj. 1 intoxicating, inebriating: His doctor has forbidden him any alcoholic beverage.

--n. 2 drunkard, drunk, dipsomaniac, sot, toper, drinker, winebibber, serious or problem drinker, tippler, Colloq barfly, soak, Slang boozer, alchy or alkie or alky, dipso, stew, rummy, US and Canadian lush, booze-hound, wino: The community runs a centre for rehabilitating alcoholics.

alert adj. 1 awake, wide awake, watchful, vigilant, attentive, heedful, wary, cautious, on the qui vive, aware, on guard, on the lookout, observant, Colloq on the ball, on one's toes: The sentinels must remain alert throughout the night. Kenneth is alert to the perils of smoking cigarettes. 2 active, nimble, lively, agile, active, quick, spry, sprightly, vivacious: He is an alert and joyous old soul.

--n. 3 lookout: She is always on the alert for new ways of saving money. 4 alarm, warning, signal, siren: Sound the air-raid alert!

--v. 5 warn, caution, advise, alarm, forewarn, signal, notify: We must alert him to the fact that the man is a vicious killer.

alibi   n. 1 excuse, explanation: Your alibi places you very close to the scene of the crime.

--v. 2 excuse, explain: Caught red-handed, she couldn't alibi her way out of it.

alien   adj. 1 foreign, strange, exotic, outlandish, unfamiliar: The customs of the country were alien to me.

--n. 2 foreigner, stranger, outlander, outsider, non-native, immigrant, newcomer: Aliens are required to register during January.

alienate v. Usually, alienate from. disabuse (of or from), wean away (from), detach (from), distance (from): Gradually the villagers were alienated from their old animistic beliefs.

alike   adj. 1 similar, akin, resembling or like one another, akin to or similar to one another, showing or exhibiting a resemblance: They began to think all religions were alike.

--adv. 2 in like manner, in the same manner or way, similarly, equally, uniformly, identically: She believes that all people should be treated alike.

alive   adj. 1 living, live, breathing, among the living, in the land of the living: My great-grandfather is still alive, in spite of years of defying medical advice. 2 alive to. sensitive or alert to, aware or conscious of, aware or cognizant of: She is alive to every slight nuance in the poem. 3 alert, active, lively, vivacious, quick, spirited, animated, brisk, spry, sprightly, vigorous, energetic: Look alive, my lads, and hoist away! 4 astir, teeming, swarming, thronging, crowded, packed, buzzing, crawling, jumping, bustling, humming, Colloq lousy: In a few minutes the water around the corpse was alive with deadly piranha.

allegation
n. charge, accusation, complaint; assertion, avowal, asseveration, claim, declaration, statement, deposition: I resent the allegation that I don't bath often enough.

allege v. declare, aver, state, assert, charge, affirm, avow, asseverate, depose, say: The guard alleged that he had caught the boy climbing in a basement window.

alleged adj. described, designated; claimed, avowed, stated; purported, so-called, suspected, supposed, assumed, presumed; hypothetical, conjectural: The press reported that the alleged assailant had confessed. He is awaiting trial for his alleged involvement in the bombing.

alliance n. 1 union, confederation, combination, federation, pact, league, association, coalition, affiliation, connection, bond; unity, affinity: The alliance between the two empires has been faithfully maintained. 2 marriage, affinity: The alliance between the two families was welded by the children born of it.

allot v. distribute, apportion, allocate, earmark, assign, parcel or dole out, deal (out), divide, share (out), dispense: The millionaire allotted an equal share of his fortune to each of his children.

allotment n. 1 share, apportionment, ration, portion, quota, allowance, measure: Each prisoner was given a daily allotment of four ounces of black bread and a cup of water. 2 garden plot, kitchen garden, patch, tract, plot, Brit market garden, US truck garden: If I don't answer the phone, it's because I am digging my allotment.

allow v. 1 acknowledge, admit, grant, concede, own: He allowed that he had not been completely truthful about his movements that night. 2 agree to, concede, cede to, admit, permit, authorize, entertain, consent to: The judge said that he would allow a plea of 'guilty with an explanation'. 3 permit, let, suffer:

Please allow the children to select their own friends. 4 tolerate, stand (for), brook, sanction, countenance, permit, consider, put up with: The headmaster refuses to allow such goings-on at his school. 5 give, let (someone) have, appropriate, grant, budget, earmark, assign, allocate, assign, approve: The company allowed him œ100 a day for expenses. 6 make allowance or concession for, set apart or aside, put aside, take into account or consideration; add; deduct: You must allow at least an extra hour for the traffic during rush hour. The shipper allows ten kilos for the weight of the container.

allowance n. 1 permission, toleration, tolerance, sufferance, admission, concession, sanction; allowing, permitting, tolerating, suffering, sanctioning, brooking, countenancing: There were many causes of difference between them, the chief being the allowance of slavery in the south. 2 payment, recompense, remuneration, reimbursement, remittance: Allowance will be made for all reasonable expenses. 3 stipend, dole, pin or pocket money, quota, ration; pension, annuity, allocation: Bill gets a liberal weekly allowance for expenses. 4 deduction, discount, reduction, rebate; credit; tret; tare: You must make allowance for the weight of the crate. 5 excuse(s), concession, consideration: Allowance must be made for his poor eyesight.

alloy n. 1 mixture, mix, combination, compound, composite, blend, amalgam, admixture; aggregate: Brass is an alloy of copper and zinc.

--v. 2 contaminate, pollute, adulterate, debase, diminish, impair, vitiate: Their external prosperity was not alloyed by troubles from within. 3 change, modify, temper, alter, moderate, allay: Gentle persons might by their true patience alloy the hardness of the common crowd.

ally n. 1 comrade, confederate, collaborator, coadjutor; accessory, accomplice; associate, partner, friend: I had hoped to have you as an ally in my proposal for reorganization. The Allies finally defeated the Nazi war machine in 1945.

--v. 2 league, combine, unite, join (up), team (up), side, band together, associate, affiliate, collaborate, confederate: In their attempt at a take-over of our company, the raiders have allied themselves with two banks. We shall ally the Romans to us and conquer the territory.

almost adv. nearly, about, approximately, practically, virtually, wellnigh, bordering on, on the brink of, verging on, on the verge of, little short of; not quite, all but; barely, scarcely, hardly; Colloq damn near: We are almost ready to go. You almost broke the window!

aloft adv. above, overhead, (up) in the air, in flight, up (above); on high; heavenwards, skyward: The plane was overloaded, but we finally made it aloft. Five women held the banner aloft.

alone adj. 1 unaccompanied, unescorted, solitary, by oneself, tout(e) seule, solo, unattended, unassisted; abandoned, desolate, deserted: I am alone in the world. Leave me alone. 2 unequalled, unparalleled, unique, singular, unexcelled, unsurpassed, without equal, peerless, matchless: As a poet, Don stands alone.

--adv. 3 solitarily, by oneself, solo: I'll walk alone. 4 only, solely, exclusively, simply, just, merely: You alone can help me.

aloof adv. 1 apart, away, at a distance, separate; at arm's length: We invited Martha to join us but she preferred to remain aloof.

--adj. 2 private, reticent, reserved, withdrawn, haughty, supercilious, standoffish, formal, unsociable, unsocial; distant, remote: Deirdre is quite an aloof sort of person - not what you would call a 'mixer'. 3 standoffish, distant, remote, cool, chilly, unresponsive, unfriendly, antisocial, unapproachable; unsympathetic, apathetic, indifferent, undemonstrative: Roger keeps himself aloof from the needs of those less fortunate than he is.

alter v. change, revise, modify, vary, transform; adjust, adapt, convert, remodel: After the attack, we altered our opinion of the rebels. The dress fits better since being altered.

alteration

n. change, modification, revision, transformation; adjustment, adaptation, conversion, remodelling: We found places where alterations had been made in the original document. My new suit needs alteration to fit properly.

alternate v. 1 rotate, exchange, change, interchange, take turns, go or take, etc. in turn, US change off, interexchange: To help out, we could alternate our days off. 2 succeed, be in succession or rotation: The wallpaper had alternating stripes of pink, grey, and maroon.

--adj. 3 in rotation, successive; every other, every second: The embankment revealed alternate layers of clay and gravel. The nurse visited our district on alternate days. 4 alternative, second, other: The alternate selection contains only milk chocolate.

--n. 5 variant, alternative, (second) choice, US and Canadian substitute, deputy, stand-in, backup, understudy; pinch-hitter, Baseball designated hitter: I prefer the alternate to the featured model. My alternate takes over if I am ill.

alternation

n. rotation, succession; exchange, interchange: In a temperate climate there is the advantage of the alternation of the seasons.

alternative

adj. 1 alternate, variant, (an)other, different, additional; substitute, surrogate: Alternative models are available.

--n. 2 alternate, variant, choice, option, selection; possibility; substitute, surrogate: The alternative was to remain at home and do nothing. You leave me no alternative. 'Esthetic' is an American spelling alternative.

altogether

adv. entirely, utterly, completely, wholly, totally, fully, in all respects, absolutely, perfectly, quite; all in all, in all: I don't altogether agree with you. Altogether, you may be right.

altruism n. selflessness, self-sacrifice, unselfishness, philanthropy, generosity, charity, charitableness, humanitarianism, humaneness, benevolence, humanity, public-spiritedness: Nick does things for others out of altruism, expecting nothing in return.

always adv. 1 at all times, again and again, on all occasions, every or each time, each and every time, without exception, unexceptionally; often, many times, usually: He that indulges hope will always be disappointed. I have always made coffee this way and see no reason for changing. 2 forever, continually, ever, perpetually; unceasingly, unendingly, eternally, evermore, ever after, everlastingly, till the end of time, in perpetuity: You are a fool, Mike, and you will always be a fool. 3 in any case, as a last resort: You could always refuse to pay.

1.11 amalgam...
=-

amalgam n. mixture, blend, combination, alloy, mix, composite, admixture, amalgamation; compound: The population was an amalgam of original settlers and new immigrants.

amalgamate
v. blend, combine, unite, mix, join, consolidate, compound, integrate, merge: The four sentences of the original are amalgamated into two.

amalgamation
n. blend, fusion, combination, mixture, mingling, admixture, composite, compound, blending, joining, consolidating, consolidation, compounding, commingling, fusing, coalescing, coalescence, union, uniting, unification, integration, merger, association, composition: The directors voted for an amalgamation of the two companies that would benefit both.

amass v. accumulate, mass, pile or heap or rack up, collect, gather (together), assemble, aggregate, cumulate, stock or store up, hoard, set aside: How many points have you amassed? Owing to the bountiful harvest, the farmers amassed huge amounts of grain.

amateur n. 1 layman, non-professional, tiro or tyro; dabbler, dilettante, bungler; Colloq US bush-leaguer: When it comes to repairing cars, I'm a mere amateur.

--adj. 2 lay, non-professional, untrained; unpaid; dilettante, amateurish, unprofessional, unskilled, inexpert, unskilful, clumsy, mediocre, inferior, crude, bungling, second-rate; Colloq US bush-league: The amateur theatre group's performance received excellent reviews. These paintings are strictly amateur and totally without merit.

amaze v. astound, astonish, surprise, awe, stun, stagger, take aback, floor, dumbfound or dumfound, confound, nonplus, stupefy, Colloq flabbergast, dazzle: Annie Oakley amazed audiences with her fancy shooting. I was amazed that she still cared for me.

amazement n. astonishment, surprise, awe, wonder, stupefaction: He stared at her in amazement, sure that he had misunderstood what she was saying.

amazing adj. astonishing, astounding, surprising, wonderful, remarkable, extraordinary, marvellous, fabulous, stunning, dazzling, staggering, awesome: The Cossacks put on an amazing display of horsemanship.

ambassador

n. envoy, delegate, legate, emissary, minister, plenipotentiary, diplomat; agent, deputy, representative, (papal) nuncio, messenger: The ambassador must present his credentials to the queen.

ambiguity n. 1 equivocalness, equivocacy, amphibology or amphiboly; vagueness, indistinctness, uncertainty, indefiniteness, imprecision, inconclusiveness: Ambiguity of language must be avoided in legal documents. 2 equivocation, double-talk, double-speak, equivoque; pun, double entendre, amphibologism: The minister's speech was full of ambiguities.

ambiguous adj. 1 equivocal, amphibological, amphibolic or amphibolous; misleading: If one says 'Taylor saw Tyler drunk', which one was drunk is ambiguous. 2 doubtful, dubious, questionable, obscure, indistinct, unclear, indefinite, indeterminate, uncertain, undefined, inconclusive, uncertain, vague, misty, foggy, unclear; cryptic, Delphic, enigmatic(al), oracular, mysterious, puzzling; confusable: The soothsayer's prophecies were sufficiently ambiguous to allow for several conflicting interpretations. 3 unreliable, undependable: How can the doctor decide on a correct diagnosis when the symptoms are ambiguous?

ambition n. 1 hunger, thirst, craving, appetite, arrivisme: John's relentless ambition may yet be his undoing. 2 drive, enterprise, energy, initiative, vigour, enthusiasm, zeal, avidity, Colloq get-up-and-go: The company is seeking young men of ambition. You'll never get anywhere, Stewart, since you are totally lacking in ambition. 3 goal, object, aim, aspiration, hope, desire, dream, objective, wish, purpose: It is Olivia's ambition to marry someone with a title.

ambitious adj. 1 aspiring, hopeful; enthusiastic: My son, I am just as ambitious for you as you are for yourself. 2 energetic, enterprising, vigorous, zealous, enthusiastic, eager: We prefer ambitious young people to those who are seeking a sinecure. 3 greedy, avaricious, overzealous, overambitious, Colloq pushy, yuppy: Howard is a trifle too ambitious, expecting to be department head after only one year.

ambush n. 1 trap, ambuscade or Archaic ambuscado: The company set up an ambush near the crossroads.

--v. 2 lie in wait, trap, waylay, ensnare, entrap, lurk, ambuscade, intercept, Colloq lay in wait, US bushwhack: The guerrillas were ready to ambush the soldiers.

amend v. 1 reform, change for the better, improve, better, ameliorate: The prisoner believes he could amend his ways if given the chance. 2 correct, emend, emendate, rectify, set to rights, repair, fix, revise: Take whatever time you need to amend the text.

amendment n. 1 correction, emendation, reformation, change, alteration, rectification, repair, reform, improvement, amelioration, betterment, enhancement: The committee approved the amendment of the constitution by the addition of the suggested paragraphs. 2 attachment, addition, addendum; clause, paragraph; alteration: A two-thirds majority in the Congress is needed to pass the amendment.

amends n. make amends. compensate, pay, repay, make reparation or restitution, recompense, redress, remedy, requite: How can the bus-driver ever make amends for the loss of a beloved kitten?

amiable adj. friendly, well-disposed, kindly, kind, amicable, agreeable, congenial, genial, warm, winsome, winning, affable, agreeable, pleasant, obliging, tractable, approachable, benign, good-natured, good-hearted, kind-hearted; affectionate: Melissa is well named for her sweet and amiable disposition.

amicable adj. friendly, amiable, congenial, harmonious, brotherly, kind-hearted; warm, courteous, cordial, polite, civil, pleasant; peaceful, peaceable: Our countries have always enjoyed the most amicable relations.

amid prep. mid, in or into the middle or midst or centre of, amongst, among, surrounded by, in the thick of, Literary amidst: She is sitting in her cottage, Amid the flowers of May. Without further ado, she plunged amid the waves.

amiss adj. 1 wrong, at fault, awry, out of order, faulty, defective, improper, untoward; astray, erroneous, fallacious, confused, incorrect, off: Something is amiss with the ignition. If I am amiss in my thinking, let me know.

--adv. 2 wrong, awry, badly, poorly, imperfectly; inopportunely, unfavourably, unpropitiously: Everything possible has already gone amiss with the rocket launch. 3 wrongly, improperly, badly; incorrectly, inappropriately: A word of advice might not come amiss here. 4 take or think (it) amiss. mistake, misinterpret, misunderstand, take offence (at): I trust that you will not take amiss what I intended as constructive criticism.

among prep. 1 amongst, amid, amidst, mid, in the midst or middle or centre of, surrounded by: Please take a seat among the people over there. We lay down among the flowers. 2 among, to each or all (of): The examination booklets were passed out among the students.

amount v. 1 amount to. a add up to, total, aggregate, come (up) to: Waiter, what does my bill amount to, please? b become, develop into: That son of his will never amount to much.

--n. 2 quantity, volume, mass, expanse, bulk, supply, lot; number; magnitude: What amount of water is needed to fill the container? She eats a huge amount of chocolates every day. 3

(sum) total, aggregate, extent, entirety: What is the amount of the invoice without the tax?

ample adj. 1 broad, wide, spacious, extensive, expansive, great: Her ample bosom heaved with sobs. 2 wide-ranging, extensive, broad: In one ample swoop they snatched up all the land. 3 abundant, extensive, fruitful: The event proved a very ample subject for history. 4 abundant, full, complete, plentiful, copious, generous, substantial; sufficient, adequate, enough: He had stored ample provision of food for the winter. 5 liberal, unsparing, unstinted, unstinting, generous, substantial, large, lavish: Steve's contributions have always been ample, especially at Christmas time. 6 copious, full, broad, detailed, extensive, extended, thorough: The subject deserves more ample treatment.

amplify v. 1 broaden, widen, extend, increase, expand (on), enlarge (on), expatiate on, detail; add to, augment, supplement: Let no man comfort him But amplify his grief with bitter words. 2 exaggerate, overstate, magnify, stretch: The reports have amplified the number of horsemen slain in the encounter. 3 enlarge (on), elaborate (on), stretch, lengthen, detail, embellish, embroider: He amplifies every point in microscopic detail.

amply adv. 1 widely, broadly, extensively, greatly, expansively: This fabric stretches amply enough to fit over the couch. 2 to a great extent, largely, fully, abundantly: My confidence in her was amply recompensed by her success. 3 abundantly, fully, copiously: The prophecy was amply fulfilled. 4 fully, well, liberally, unstintingly, generously, richly, substantially, lavishly; sufficiently: He has been amply paid for his work.

amulet n. charm, talisman, good-luck piece; fetish: Whenever the man rubbed the silver amulet, his number would win.

amuse v. 1 divert, entertain, please, beguile, interest, occupy: Perhaps the crossword puzzle will amuse her while she is waiting. 2 make laugh, delight, cheer, Colloq tickle: That form of rowdy slapstick doesn't amuse me.

amusement n. 1 entertainment, diversion, recreation, pleasure, relaxation, distraction, enjoyment, fun, sport, joke, lark, beguilement: The boys in my class used to pull the wings off flies for amusement. They spent their afternoons in the amusement arcade. 2 entertainment, diversion, divertissement, recreation, distraction, pastime; game, sport: During the festival there are concerts, plays, and other amusements.

1.12 anachronism...
=-

anachronism
n. misdate, misdating, misapplication; antedate, antedating, prochronism; postdate, postdating, parachronism: The poster showing Cleopatra smoking a cigarette is an anachronism - a prochronism, to be specific.

analyse v. 1 take apart or to pieces, separate, dissect, break down, anatomize: If we analyse these statistics for England and Wales, we find no pattern. The scientists are analysing the internal constitution of a glacier. 2 examine, investigate, study, scrutinize, interpret; assess, evaluate, critique, criticize, review; estimate, assay, test: We must first explicitly define and analyse the nature of the sample we found.

analysis n. 1 examination, investigation, study, scrutiny, enquiry or inquiry, dissection, assay, breakdown, division: The analysis has shown the presence of arsenic in her soup. 2 interpretation, opinion, judgement, criticism, critique; review: She disagrees with our analysis of the poem.

ancestor n. forebear, forefather; forerunner, precursor, antecedent, Formal progenitor, primogenitor: His ancestors were transported to Australia in a prison ship, and he's proud of it. The eohippus, only a foot high, was the ancestor of the horse.

anchor n. 1 mooring: The ship rode at anchor in the harbour. 2 stability, security, mainstay, support, stabilizer, holdfast, sheet anchor: Marie is an anchor to windward for George, who tends to be a bit irresponsible.

--v. 3 attach, affix, secure, moor, fix, fasten; pin, rivet, glue: You must anchor the foundation before adding the walls. She remained anchored to the spot, refusing to move.

ancient adj. 1 old, bygone, past, former, earlier, Literary olden: In ancient times there were very few books. 2 old, antique, antediluvian, primitive, prehistoric, primeval, primordial, Noachian, Literary Ogygian: In those ancient days man had only just come down from the trees. 3 old, old-fashioned, archaic, time-worn, aged, ageing, obsolescent, antiquated, elderly, venerable, grey, hoary, superannuated, obsolete, fossil, fossilized: We were accosted by an ancient crone at the mouth of the cave.

anger n. 1 rage, wrath, ire, fury, pique, spleen, choler; antagonism, irritation, vexation, indignation, displeasure, annoyance, irritability, resentment, outrage: Her anger got the better of her, so she simply punched him.

--v. 2 enrage, infuriate, madden, pique, incense, raise one's hackles, make one's blood boil, rile, gall; annoy, irritate, vex, nettle, displease, exasperate, provoke: Father was so angered by the insult that he refused to pay.

angle° n. 1 slant, oblique, corner, edge, intersection; bend, cusp, point, apex, projection: The two walls meet at an angle. 2 slant, point of view, aspect, viewpoint, standpoint, approach, position, side, perspective: The managing editor told me he's looking for a new angle on the kidnapping story.

angleý v. angle for. fish for; look for, seek, be after, try for, hunt for: On holiday we went angling for perch. Fran is angling for compliments on her new dress.

angry adj. 1 enraged, furious, irate, resentful, ireful, wrathful, piqued, incensed, infuriated, fuming; irritated, irritable, annoyed, vexed, irascible, provoked, indignant, exasperated, splenetic, Literary wroth, Colloq livid, hot under the collar, on the warpath, (all) steamed up, up in arms, mad, Slang browned off, Brit cheesed off: Father was angry with me for letting the cat out. 2 inflamed, irritated, sore, smarting: He has an angry lesion where the fetters rubbed against his ankles.

anguish n. 1 suffering, pain, agony, torment, torture, misery: She endured the anguish of toothache rather than go to the dentist. 2 suffering, grief, distress, woe, anxiety: He underwent terrible anguish in the waiting-room till the surgeon arrived.

--v. 3 disturb, upset, distress, afflict, trouble; torment, torture: The anguished cries of prisoners could be heard.

animal n. 1 creature, being, mammal, organism: Scientists are unlikely to employ the popular division of all things into animal, vegetable, or mineral. 2 beast, brute, savage, monster: Think of the poor girl married to that animal!

--adj. 3 zoological, zooid, animalistic: The sponge is a member of the animal kingdom. 4 physical, fleshly, sensual, gross, coarse, unrefined, uncultured, uncultivated, rude, carnal, crude, bestial, beastlike, subhuman: His animal appetites occasionally got the better of him.

animate v. 1 activate, enliven, invigorate, stimulate, inspirit, excite, stir, vitalize, spark, vivify, revitalize, breathe life into, innervate: A little enthusiasm would have animated their dull relationship. 2 inspire, inspirit, stimulate, actuate, move, motivate, incite, rouse, arouse, excite, fire (up), encourage, energize, vitalize, spur (on or onwards): He spent the few minutes before the battle in animating his soldiers.

--adj. 3 lively, spirited, vivacious, animated, quick: A courser more animate of eye, Of form more faultless never had been seen. 4 alive, moving, breathing, Archaic quick: Although they move, plants are not considered to be animate.

animated adj. 1 lively, quick, spirited, active, vivacious, energetic, vigorous, excited, ebullient, enthusiastic, dynamic, vibrant, ardent, enlivened, passionate, impassioned, fervent: In the corner, Terence was engaged in an animated conversation with Mary. 2 mechanical, automated, lifelike, moving: Each Christmas, the shop has an animated window display.

animation n. 1 spirit, spiritedness, vitality, dash, ,lan, zest, fervour, verve, liveliness, fire, ardour, ardency, exhilaration, intensity, energy, pep, dynamism, enthusiasm, excitement, vigour, vivacity: Johnson was in high spirits, talking with great animation. 2 enlivenment, liveliness, energizing, invigoration, enlivening, innervation: The scout leader was credited with the animation of the youths in his care.

animosity n. hostility, antagonism, antipathy, ill will, malevolence, enmity, hatred, animus, loathing, detestation, contempt; bad blood, malice, bitterness, acrimony, resentment, rancour: The animosity he felt for his brother soon disappeared.

announce v. 1 proclaim, make public, make known, set or put forth, put out, publish, advertise, publicize, promulgate, broadcast, herald; circulate; tell, reveal, disclose, divulge, declare, propound: The appointment of a new prime minister has been announced. 2 intimate, suggest, hint at, signal: The sight of a top hat announced Gordon's presence in the club. 3 declare, tell, state, aver, assert, asseverate; notify; confirm: The president announced that he was resigning because of the scandal. 4 foretell, betoken, augur, portend, presage, harbinger, herald, signal; precede: The sighting of the first crocus announces spring.

announcement
n. 1 declaration, pronouncement, proclamation, statement: Ladies and gentlemen, I wish to make an announcement. 2 notification, notice, word: We received an announcement of the wedding but no invitation. 3 commercial, advertisement, advert, ad, spot: The window was filled with announcements of houses for sale. 4 report, bulletin, communiqu,, disclosure: An announcement has just been received from the fire-fighters at the scene.

announcer n. presenter, master of ceremonies, master of the revels, MC, emcee, reporter, anchorman, anchorwoman, anchor; newsreader, newscaster, sportscaster, weatherman, weathergirl: The announcer didn't get my name right.

annoy v. 1 irritate, bother, irk, vex, nettle, get on (someone's) nerves, exasperate, provoke, incense, rile, madden, Colloq get at: The anonymous telephone calls were beginning to annoy us. 2 pester, harass, harry, badger, nag, plague, molest, bedevil, Colloq bug, needle, hassle, Slang get up someone's nose: Stop annoying me with your persistent requests for money.

annoyance n. 1 irritation, bother, vexation, exasperation, pique, aggravation, Colloq botheration: Must I put up with the annoyance of that constant bickering? 2 nuisance, pest, irritant, bore, Colloq pain, pain in the neck or arse or US ass: He's such an annoyance, I wish he'd leave.

answer n. 1 reply, response; rejoinder, retort, riposte, Colloq comeback: The boy's answer is unprintable. 2 Law defence, counter-statement, plea, explanation; Technical declaration, plea, replication, rejoinder, surrejoinder, rebutter or rebuttal, surrebutter or surrebuttal: Her answer to the charge was 'Not Guilty'. 3 solution, explanation: Ten points were taken off because I had the wrong answer to question three.

--v. 4 reply, respond; retort, rejoin, riposte: When I ask you a question, I expect you to answer. 5 satisfy, fulfil, suffice for, meet, suit, serve, fit, fill, conform to, correlate with: The bequest answered my needs for the moment. 6 answer back. talk back (to): How dare you answer your father back! 7 answer for. a be accountable or responsible or answerable for, be to blame for; take or undertake responsibility for; sponsor, support, guarantee: I answer alone to Allah for my motives. So shall my righteousness answer for me. b make amends for, atone for, suffer the consequences of: Caesar was ambitious and he answered for it with his life. c take or accept the blame for: Andy shouldn't have to answer for his brother's shortcomings.

antagonism
n. 1 opposition, animosity, enmity, rancour, hostility, antipathy: It is difficult to understand your antagonism towards classical music. 2 conflict, rivalry, discord, dissension, friction, strife; contention: Giving jobs only to personal friends has engendered antagonism.

antagonist
n. adversary, opponent, enemy, foe; contender, competitor, competition, opposition: The antagonists prepared to fight.

anticipate
v. 1 forestall, intercept, preclude, obviate, prevent; nullify: She anticipated her opponent's manoeuvre by moving the queen's bishop one square. 2 foretell, forecast, predict, prophesy, foretaste, foresee: He anticipated that flying would be a future mode of locomotion. 3 expect, look forward to, prepare for; count or reckon on: We eagerly anticipated the arrival of Uncle Robert.

anticipation

n. 1 expectation, expectancy; hope: In anticipation of the arrival of Father Christmas, we hung up our stockings. 2 foreknowledge, precognition; intuition, presentiment, feeling; foreboding, apprehension: His anticipation of the solar eclipse by a week established him as the foremost scientist of his day.

antidote n. antitoxin, antiserum, antivenin; counteractant, counterirritant; cure, remedy, specific; medication, medicine, drug, medicament, Technical alexipharmic: The old prospector says that the best antidote against snakebite is whisky.

antiquated

adj. old, old-fashioned, outmoded, pass,, out of date, dated, archaic, obsolescent, antique, obsolete, quaint, ancient, antediluvian, medieval or mediaeval, primitive; extinct; Colloq old hat: Antiquated laws list penalties for practising witchcraft.

antique   adj. 1 old, old-fashioned; antiquated, outmoded, pass,, out of date, obsolete: She wore the antique clothing she had found in the trunk.

--n. 2 collectable or collectible, collector's item, bibelot, objet d'art, objet de vertu, object or article of virtu, heirloom, curio, rarity: His hobby is collecting antiques.

anxiety   n. 1 solicitude, concern, uneasiness, disquiet, nervousness, worry, dread, angst, apprehension, foreboding: Philip began to feel genuine anxiety over Tanya's safety. 2 appetite, hunger, thirst, desire, eagerness, longing, ache, concern: It is every person's anxiety to obtain for himself the inestimable pearl of genuine knowledge.

anxious   adj. 1 troubled, uneasy, disquieted, uncertain, apprehensive; solicitous, concerned, worried, distressed, disturbed, nervous, tense, fretful, on edge, restless, edgy, perturbed, upset; wary, cautious, careful, watchful: She has been terribly anxious about the diagnosis. We were anxious for her safety. 2 desirous, eager, keen, enthusiastic, ardent, agog, avid, yearning, longing, aching, impatient: I was anxious to visit the Pitti Palace once again.

1.13 apart...

=-

apart adv. 1 aside, to one side, by oneself, at a distance, separate, separately: He stood apart when the awards were given out. 2 separately, distinctly, individually, singly, alone, independently: The provisions of the bill should be seen together as a whole, not viewed apart. 3 to or into pieces, asunder: At the touch of the button, the building blew apart. 4 apart from. except for, excepting, separately from, aside from, besides, but for, not including, excluding, not counting: Apart from the immediate family, no one knows of your indiscretions.

aperture n. opening, space, gap, cleft, chink, crevice, crack, fissure, hole, chasm: As much water ran through as the aperture could accommodate.

apologetic
adj. regretful, sorry, contrite, remorseful, penitent, rueful, repentant, conscience-stricken: The lad was most apologetic for having broken the window.

apologize v. 1 beg or ask pardon, express regret(s), feel sorry or regretful or remorse(ful): You needn't apologize for sneezing. 2 make or give excuses or explanation(s), defend, justify, vindicate, espouse: You don't have to apologize for her.

appal v. dismay, shock, discomfit, unnerve, intimidate, terrify, frighten, scare, horrify, alarm, startle, daunt: The council were appalled to discover that the police superintendent was accepting bribes.

apparatus n. equipment, requisites, tool, instrument, utensil, device, implement, machine, machinery, gear, paraphernalia, tackle, outfit; appliance, Colloq contraption, gadgetry, gadget: The apparatus needed for the experiment is here.

apparel n. clothing, attire, clothes, dress, raiment, garments, Colloq gear, rags, glad rags, duds, Slang US threads: The police found various items of apparel strewn about the flat.

apparent adj. 1 evident, plain, clear, obvious, patent, unmistakable; conspicuous, marked, manifest, visible, discernible: It was apparent to all of us that she would become a successful opera singer. 2 appearing, seeming, illusory, ostensible, superficial, outward: In an apparent show of strength, he ordered his forces to attack the capital.

apparently

adv. 1 evidently, plainly, clearly, obviously, patently, manifestly: There is apparently no cure in sight for the disease. 2 seemingly, ostensibly, superficially, outwardly: In stop-action photography, the bullet apparently hangs in mid-air.

appeal v. 1 entreat, supplicate, solicit, plead, petition, apply, sue; beseech, beg, implore, pray: She appealed to the king to release her son from the dungeon. 2 attract, be attractive to, allure, please; invite, tempt, beguile, fascinate, interest: He seems to appeal to older women.

--n. 3 application, suit; entreaty, call, request, supplication, solicitation, petition, plea; prayer: Her appeal to the court has been dismissed. I don't know if God heard our appeal. 4 attraction, lure, allurement, charm, fascination: It is not hard to see why his type would have some appeal.

appear v. 1 come forth, become visible or manifest, put in an appearance, materialize, surface, emerge, rise, arise, come up, enter (into) the picture, show oneself, turn up, arrive, come, Colloq crop or show up; Slang show: Suddenly, a vision appeared before me. His wife appeared after an absence of ten years. 2 perform, act, play, take the role or part of: She has appeared as Roxanne in dozens of productions of Cyrano de Bergerac . 3 occur, happen, come up, be included, figure, arrive: That four-letter word does not appear in written form till the 20th century. 4 seem, be clear or evident or plain or manifest; look: It appears that the money was taken while the manager was at lunch. 5 be published, come out, become available: The next issue will appear in March.

appearance

n. 1 arrival, advent; presence; publication: I was awaiting the appearance of the book in the shops. 2 aspect, look(s), form; mien, air, demeanour; bearing, manner: The doorman would not let him in because of his shabby appearance. 3 display, show: Their fine horses with their rich trappings made a splendid appearance. 4 semblance, show, hint, suggestion; illusion: She gave no appearance of wanting to go.

appetite n. 1 desire, inclination, proclivity, tendency, disposition, bent, preference, liking, predilection, zest, fondness, love, zeal; enthusiasm; taste, relish; Formal appetency, appetence: I have never lost my appetite for chocolate. They tried to suppress their bodily appetites, such as hunger and lust. 2 craving, hunger, thirst, desire, keenness, hankering, yearning, longing, passion, demand, Formal edacity: She developed an insatiable appetite for reading.

applaud v. 1 approve, express approval, clap, cheer, give (someone) a hand, Colloq root (for): The audience applauded when the villain was caught. 2 express approval of, praise, laud, hail, commend: Susan's parents applauded her decision to apply for university.

applause n. clapping, acclamation, acclaim, ,clat; cheering, cheers; approval, commendation, approbation, praise, kudos, plaudit(s): At the curtain there was applause from the audience.

applicable
adj. fit, suitable, suited, appropriate, proper, apropos, fitting, befitting, pertinent, apt, germane, right, seemly, relevant, apposite: Are the laws of the mainland applicable to the islands?

application
n. 1 use, employment, utilization, practice, operation: The committee wants to see a sterner application of the law with respect to mail-order offers. 2 relevancy, relevance, reference, pertinence, germaneness, appositeness; bearing: The application of the regulation to present circumstances is somewhat vague. 3 attention; diligence, industriousness, effort, perseverance, persistence, assiduity, devotion, dedication, commitment, attentiveness Colloq stick-to-it-iveness; industry: Her application to her studies leaves little time for recreation. Without application, you will never develop much skill at the piano. 4 request, solicitation; appeal, petition, claim: Gavin

made six job applications. The board will consider your application.

apply v. 1 fasten, fix, affix, stick, cement, glue: The signs were applied to the window with a special substance. 2 administer, rub in or on, embrocate: The doctor said to apply this ointment before retiring. 3 appropriate, assign, allot, credit; use, utilize, employ, put to use: He had many skills, but failed to apply them in his daily work. The money raised for food was illegally applied to paying the administrators. 4 bear, have bearing; be relevant, refer, pertain, appertain, relate, suit: I am not sure that the law applies to this situation. 5 devote, dedicate, commit, focus, concentrate, pay attention, address; do, attend, tend, Colloq buckle down (to): He stubbornly applies himself to the task at hand. 6 seek, go after; register, bid, try out, put in; audition, interview, make application: Are you qualified to apply for a job as a nanny? 7 petition, solicit; appeal, request: Geraldine applied to the court for compensation.

appoint v. 1 fix, set, settle, determine, ordain, authorize, establish, destine, arrange, assign, allot, prescribe, decree: The time appointed for the execution has been delayed. 2 name, designate, nominate, elect; assign, delegate, commission, deputize; select, choose: I was delighted to have been appointed as chairman. 3 equip, fit out, furnish, decorate: They live comfortably in a well-appointed home in the suburbs.

appointment

n. 1 meeting, date, rendezvous, engagement; assignation, tryst: You are again late for your appointment. 2 nomination, election; assignment, designation; selection, choice: We fully approve of his appointment as chairman. 3 job, position, post, situation, office, place, assignment, Colloq berth, slot: He got the appointment as manager.

appreciate

v. 1 value, find worthwhile or valuable; esteem, cherish, enjoy, admire, rate or regard highly, prize, treasure, respect: I appreciate all you have done for me. Delia's contribution is not really appreciated. 2 increase or rise or gain in value or worth: The property in this area has been appreciating at a rate of about ten per cent a year. 3 understand, comprehend, recognize, perceive, know, be aware or cognizant or conscious of: Do you appreciate the implications of the new tax law?

appreciation

n. 1 gratitude, thankfulness, gratefulness, thanks; acknowledgement; obligation: She is trying to think of an appropriate way to express her appreciation for all he has done. 2 increase, rise, advance, growth, enhancement, gain; aggrandizement: The appreciation in the value of the shares made me very wealthy on paper - till the stock-market crash. 3 understanding, comprehension, perception, recognition, knowledge, awareness; realization, enjoyment; admiration: It's fortunate that Richard's appreciation of the finer things in life is supported by his income.

apprentice

n. 1 novice, tiro or tyro, learner, starter, beginner, greenhorn, Colloq US rookie: Lever served as an apprentice in the soap factory.

--v. 2 indenture, contract, bind: Cartwright was apprenticed to a carpenter before becoming a journeyman cabinet-maker.

approach v. 1 near, advance, draw or come near or nearer or close or closer, Formal come nigh: Claude approached the table. As night approached, the sky darkened. With approaching manhood, you must take on more responsibilities. 2 approximate, nearly equal, come close to, compare with: The total is beginning to approach your estimate. 3 make advances or overtures to, proposition, propose to, sound out, make (a) proposal to, solicit, Colloq chat up: Theo makes mincemeat of any man who tries to approach his daughter.

--n. 4 approaches. advances, overtures, proposals, propositions: Michelle had no intention of discouraging Pierre's approaches. 5 access, passage, way, path, course; entry: The approach to the house was overgrown with brambles. 6 advance, movement: Our approach to the gates was being watched very carefully. 7 method, procedure, modus operandi, way, technique, style, manner, attitude, Slang US MO (= 'modus operandi'): Our approach in dealing with the problem is different.

appropriate

adj. 1 suitable, apt, fitting, fit, proper, right, meet, becoming, befitting, seemly, suited, apropos, correct, germane, pertinent, happy, felicitous: Will a dinner-jacket be appropriate attire? She has written a poem appropriate to the occasion.

--v. 2 take, take over, seize, expropriate, arrogate, annex, impound; commandeer; steal, pilfer, filch, usurp, make away or off with, Colloq pinch, lift, Brit nick, US boost: The police appropriated the paintings. Somebody has appropriated my chair. 3 set aside or apart, devote, assign, earmark, allot, apportion: Most of the money has been appropriated for back taxes.

appropriately

adv. fittingly, suitably, properly, correctly, aptly, rightly, becomingly, meetly: She came down appropriately dressed for dinner.

approval n. sanction, approbation, blessing, consent, agreement, concurrence; endorsement, acceptance, imprimatur, affirmation, ,clat, confirmation, mandate, authorization; licence, leave, permission, rubber stamp, Colloq OK, okay, go-ahead, green light: I don't think that the plan will meet with the committee's approval. We gave our approval to proceed.

approve v. 1 Often, approve of. allow, countenance, condone, permit, sanction, authorize, endorse, put one's imprimatur on, agree (to), accept, assent (to), go along with, Colloq OK or okay, give the green light or go-ahead or one's blessing (to), rubber-stamp: The headmistress would never approve your leaving the building during classes. 2 confirm, affirm, support, ratify, uphold, subscribe to, second, give the stamp of approval to; favour, commend, recommend: Sheila Jones's appointment to the commission has been approved unanimously. 3 approve of. sanction, consider fair or good or right, accept, favour, respect, be partial to, like, have regard for, have a preference for, tolerate, reconcile oneself to: I always had the feeling that her father didn't quite approve of me.

approximate

adj. 1 rough, inexact, loose, imprecise, estimated, Colloq guestimated, ballpark: The figures are only approximate, not exact.

--v. 2 near, approach, come close to, verge on: Your estimates approximate those of the budget committee. 3 resemble, approach, look or seem like; simulate: The laboratory tests on rats approximate the way the virus behaves in humans.

approximately
adv. approaching; nearly, almost, close to, about, around, give or take, roughly, generally: I haven't seen Sally for approximately three weeks. There are approximately fifty people in the audience.

aptitude n. 1 fitness, suitability, appropriateness, relevance, applicability, suitableness, aptness: One need only look at an albatross in the air to appreciate its aptitude for flight. 2 tendency, propensity, disposition, predilection, bent, proclivity; talent, gift, ability, capability, facility, faculty, flair: Helen displays a natural aptitude for the violin. 3 intelligence, quick-wittedness, intellect; capacity, aptness: The aptitude of that new student sets her apart from the others in the class.

1.14 arbitrary...
=-

arbitrary adj. 1 capricious, varying, erratic, uncertain, inconsistent, doubtful, unpredictable, whimsical, irrational, chance, random, inconsistent, subjective, unreasoned, irrational, Colloq chancy, iffy: The choices are entirely arbitrary, totally at the whim of the council and not based on research or knowledge. 2 absolute, tyrannical, despotic, authoritarian, magisterial, summary, peremptory, autocratic, dogmatic, imperious, uncompromising, inconsiderate, high-handed, dictatorial, Rare thetic(al): The conduct of the archbishop appears to have been arbitrary and harsh.

arch adj. 1 chief, principal, prime, primary, pre-eminent, foremost, first, greatest, consummate, major: Moriarty was Holmes's arch-enemy. 2 clever, cunning, crafty, roguish, tricky, shrewd, artful, sly, designing: Brendan loves to play his arch pranks on unsuspecting friends. 3 waggish, saucy, mischievous, prankish: I could tell from the lad's arch expression that he had thrown the snowball.

ardent adj. eager, intense, zealous, keen, fervent, fervid, passionate, avid, fierce, impassioned, hot, warm; enthusiastic: Diane was carrying on ardent love affairs with at least three men.

ardour n. eagerness, desire, zeal, fervency, burning desire, keenness, fervour, passion, heat, warmth; enthusiasm: Bernadette has supported the cause with great ardour.

arduous adj. 1 laborious, difficult, hard, tough, strenuous, onerous, burdensome, back-breaking, painful, Formal operose; tiring, exhausting, wearisome, fatiguing, taxing, gruelling, trying, formidable: The Sherpas were well equipped for the arduous climb. What an arduous task it is to read the proofs of a dictionary! 2 energetic, strenuous, vigorous: Montrose made arduous efforts to reconstruct his army.

area n. 1 space, room: Is there enough floor area here for the carpet? 2 extent, limit, compass, size, square footage, acreage: The area of my greenhouse is thirty by fifteen feet. 3 space, field, region, tract, territory, district, zone, stretch; section, quarter, precinct, arrondissement, neighbourhood, locality, bailiwick, US block: An area was set aside for a garden. There has been a lot of crime in that area lately. 4 scope, range, extent, breadth, compass, section: His studies cover only one area of Scottish history. 5 court, courtyard, enclosure, close, yard; square, ground, arena, field, parade-ground, parade: The soldiers drill in the area behind the barracks.

argue v. 1 dispute, debate, disagree, bicker, wrangle, quarrel, squabble, spar, fight, remonstrate, altercate, Colloq chiefly Brit row, scrap: The couple next door are continually arguing with each other at the tops of their voices. 2 discuss, reason, debate, wrangle: He would argue by the hour, but never for arguing's sake. 3 make a case, talk, plead, debate, contend: I cannot tell whether she's arguing for or against the proposition. 4 prove, evince, indicate, denote, demonstrate, show, establish, suggest, signify, betoken: The increase in street crime argues that the police are not visible enough. 5

say, assert, hold, maintain, reason, claim, contend: The defendant argued that he had never met the witness. 6 argue into or out of. persuade or dissuade, talk out of or into, prevail upon; convince: I argued him out of sailing to Bermuda alone. She succeeded in arguing me into going to the tea dance.

argument n. 1 debate, dispute, disagreement, quarrel, controversy, polemic, wrangle, squabble, tiff, spat, altercation; conflict, fight, fracas, affray, fray, Donnybrook, feud, Colloq row, falling-out, scrap, barney: The argument was about who had invented the wheel. The argument spilt out into the street. 2 point, position, (line of) reasoning, logic, plea, claim, pleading, assertion, contention, case; defence: His argument has merit. Arthur's argument falls apart when he brings in the phlogiston theory.

argumentative
adj. quarrelsome, disputatious, belligerent, combative, contentious, litigious, disagreeable, testy: Evelyn is irritable and argumentative.

arise v. 1 rise, get up, stand up, get to one's feet; wake up, get out of bed, awake: We arose when Lady Spencer entered the room. I have arisen before dawn all my life. 2 rise, go up, come up, ascend, climb; mount: The full moon arose in the eastern sky. 3 come up, be brought up, be mentioned, Colloq crop up: The subject never would have arisen if the waiter hadn't spilt the wine on me. 4 spring up, begin, start (up), originate, come up, Colloq crop up: A very unpleasant situation has arisen regarding the missing funds.

aroma n. 1 smell, odour, fragrance, scent, perfume, savour, bouquet; redolence: Don't you just love to be awakened by the aroma of fresh coffee? 2 smell, odour, character, aura, atmosphere, flavour, hint, suggestion: There is an aroma of dishonesty about them that I can't quite identify.

aromatic adj. fragrant, spicy, perfumed, savoury, pungent: A most agreeable scent came from a bowl of aromatic herbs.

around adv. 1 about, approximately, nearly, almost, roughly; circa: There were around a dozen of us in the place. 2 about, everywhere, in every direction, on all sides, all over, throughout: By this time the savages were all around and we couldn't move. 3 round, about, for everyone or all, US also 'round: I don't think we have enough food to go around. 4 round, about, all about, everywhere, here and there, hither and thither, hither and yon, far and wide: The tinker travelled around selling his wares and repairing pots.

--prep. 5 round, about, surrounding, encompassing, enveloping, encircling, on all sides of, in all directions from, enclosing: The fields around the castle were cultivated by tenant farmers. 6 about, approximately, roughly; circa: He was born around the turn of the century.

arouse v. 1 awaken, raise (up), wake up, waken, rouse, revive, stir (up): I was aroused by the noise and reached for my pistol. 2 excite, stir up, stimulate, awaken, summon up, spark, Colloq turn on: My suspicions were aroused because she was carrying my umbrella. 3 provoke, encourage, quicken, foster, call forth, stir up, kindle, foment: The song aroused feelings of patriotism among the recruits.

arrange v. 1 order, dispose, array, organize, sort (out), systematize, group, set up, rank, line up, align, form, position: The teachers arranged the children according to height. The flowers were arranged in a vase so as to conceal the listening device. 2 settle, plan, set (up), organize, orchestrate, manipulate, choreograph; predetermine, decide, prepare, determine, prearrange, devise, bring about, contrive; fix it: Everything has been arranged - you won't have to lift a finger. For a small fee I can arrange for you to win the first prize. 3 orchestrate, score, adapt: Flemburgh has arranged music for some of the best-known modern composers.

arrangement

n. 1 order, disposition, grouping, organization, array, display, structure, structuring, ordering, alignment, line-up, Colloq set-up: Don't you care for the arrangement of the furniture, Milady? 2 structure, combination, construction, contrivance, affair, set-up: An arrangement of bricks served as a hearth. 3 settlement, agreement, terms, plan, contract, covenant, compact: The arrangement called for Bosworth to get ten per cent of the gross profits. 4 orchestration, score, instrumentation, adaptation, interpretation, version: I prefer

Fats Waller's arrangement of 'Sugar Blues'. 5 arrangements. preparations, plans; groundwork, planning: Arrangements have been made for the limousine to pick you up at five.

arrest v. 1 stop, halt, check, stall, forestall, detain, delay, hinder, restrain, obstruct, prevent, block, interrupt: The progress of the train has been arrested. 2 catch, capture, seize, apprehend, take, take in, take into custody, detain, Colloq nab, pinch, collar, bust, run in, Brit nick: Foxworthy was arrested crossing the border. 3 slow, retard, stop: I'm afraid that we have here a case of arrested mental development.

--n. 4 seizure, capture, apprehension, detention; restraint, Colloq bust, US collar: The police have made six arrests. 5 stop, stoppage, check, cessation: The doctor said it was a case of cardiac arrest. 6 under arrest. in custody, under legal restraint, in the hands of the law, imprisoned, arrested: You are under arrest for the murder of one Hugh Brown, and anything you say may be used in evidence against you.

arresting adj. striking, shocking, remarkable, impressive, electrifying, stunning, extraordinary, surprising, dazzling: It is indeed an experience to be in the presence of such an arresting beauty.

arrival n. 1 coming, advent, appearance: We have been awaiting your arrival for weeks. 2 newcomer; immigrant; traveller, passenger; tourist; Australian migrant, new chum: The arrivals on flight 422 were questioned about a bearded passenger on the plane.

arrive v. 1 come, make one's appearance, appear, turn up, Colloq show up; Slang hit (town), blow in: She arrived only two minutes before the plane was to take off. 2 succeed, prosper, get ahead (in the world), reach the top, Colloq make it, make the grade, get somewhere, get there: Yuppies believe that once they own a fur coat and a Mercedes, they've arrived. 3 arrive at. come or get to, reach; attain: I think that Crumley has arrived at the stage in his career where he merits a promotion.

arrogance n. self-assertion, impertinence, insolence, presumption, nerve, effrontery, gall, presumptuousness, self-importance, conceit, egotism, hauteur, haughtiness, loftiness, pride, hubris, pompousness, pomposity, pretension, pretentiousness, bluster, snobbery, snobbishness, Colloq snottiness, Slang Brit side: He has the arrogance to assume that I wish to see him again.

arrogant adj. 1 presumptuous, assuming, self-assertive, conceited, egotistical, pompous, superior, brazen, bumptious, cavalier: It would be most arrogant of me to take for myself the glory that rightfully belongs to the whole team. 2 haughty, overbearing, imperious, high-handed, overweening, disdainful, contemptuous, scornful, snobbish, supercilious, lofty, swaggering , Brit toffee-nosed; Colloq uppity, on one's high horse, high and mighty, snotty: Since her husband was made a company director, she's become unbearably arrogant.

art n. 1 skill, skilfulness, ingenuity, aptitude, talent, artistry, craftsmanship; knowledge, expertise; craft, technique, adroitness, dexterity, Colloq know-how: Little art is required to plant turnips. 2 artistry, artisticness; taste, tastefulness: High art differs from low art in possessing an excess of beauty in addition to its truth. 3 craft, technique, business, profession, skill: The fishermen can't employ their art with much success in so troubled a sea. 4 knack, aptitude, faculty, technique, mastery; dexterity, adroitness: Conversation may be esteemed a gift, not an art. You have acquired the art of insulting people without their realizing it. 5 trickery, craftiness, cunning, wiliness, slyness, guile, deceit, duplicity, artfulness, cleverness, astuteness: You have to admire the art with which she wraps him round her little finger. 6 arts. wiles, schemes, stratagems, artifices, subterfuges, tricks; manoeuvres,: She was expert in the arts which ladies sometimes condescend to employ for captivation.

artful adj. 1 scheming, wily, sly, cunning, foxy, tricky, crafty, deceitful, underhand or underhanded, double-dealing, guileful, disingenuous: That artful fellow managed to sell me a completely useless gadget. 2 ingenious, clever, astute, shrewd, dexterous: She has practised her artful deceptions so long that nobody believes anything she says.

artifice n. 1 skill, cunning, trickery, craft, craftiness, artfulness, guile, duplicity, deception, chicanery, underhandedness, shrewdness, slyness, wiliness, trickiness: He used artifice to get control of the firm. 2 stratagem, device, manoeuvre, trick, contrivance, wile, ruse, subterfuge, expedient, contrivance, Colloq dodge: They were deluded by artifices to cheat them out of their money.

artificial
adj. 1 unnatural, synthetic, man-made, manufactured, simulated, imitation, plastic: The museum has a strange collection of artificial teeth on display. 2 made-up, concocted, bogus, fake, sham, false, counterfeit, Colloq phoney or US also phony: The figures used in the sample survey are entirely artificial. 3 affected, unnatural, forced, pretended, high-sounding, feigned, assumed, contrived, factitious; meretricious, insincere, sham, faked, Colloq phoney or US also phony: I tell you that Alan's concern for you is entirely artificial.

artless adj. 1 innocent, sincere, guileless, ingenuous, true, natural, open, unartificial, genuine, simple, direct, candid, frank, honest, straightforward, above-board, uncomplicated, undevious, undeceptive , Colloq upfront, on the level, on the up and up: Imitation is a kind of artless flattery. 2 unpretentious, unassuming, unaffected, natural, simple, na‹ve, unsophisticated, plain, ordinary, humble: The remarks were those of an artless young man who meant nothing sinister. 3 unskilled, untalented, unskilful, unpractised, inexperienced, inexpert, primitive, unproficient, incompetent, inept, clumsy, crude, awkward, bungling: Clogs must be the most artless footwear ever made.

1.15 ashamed...

=-

ashamed adj. embarrassed, abashed, humiliated, chagrined, mortified, blushing, shamefaced, sheepish, red-faced: I was ashamed to have to admit that it was I who had written the nasty letter.

ask v. 1 question, interrogate, query, quiz; inquire or enquire (of): Let's ask the policeman for information. Just ask directions of any passer-by. I merely asked if you were going my way. 2 demand, require, expect, request: Doing his laundry is a lot to ask. 3 beg, apply (to), appeal (to), seek (from), solicit (from), petition, plead (to), beg, beseech, pray, entreat, implore: In the streets, thousands of beggars ask passers-by for alms. 4 invite, bid, summon: Nellie asked me to dinner. 5 ask after or about. inquire or enquire after or about: My sister asked after you - wanted to know how you were getting along. 6 ask for. a invite, attract, encourage, provoke: You're asking for trouble if you walk alone through that neighbourhood after dark. b request, seek: We asked for more time to finish the project.

aspect n. 1 viewpoint, point of view, position, standpoint, side: Looked at from a different aspect, the problem did not seem insurmountable after all. 2 complexion, light, angle, interpretation, mien, face: His conviction for robbery put a different aspect on hiring him as a security guard. 3 exposure, prospect, outlook, orientation: The western aspect of the room made it sunny in the afternoons. 4 side, feature, attribute, characteristic, quality, detail, angle, facet, manifestation, element, circumstance: There are many aspects of Buddhism that you do not understand.

aspersion n. slander, libel, false insinuation, calumny, imputation, allegation, detraction, slur, obloquy, defamation, disparagement: He resented my casting aspersions on the legitimacy of his birth.

aspiration

n. desire, longing, yearning, craving, hankering, wish, dream, hope; ambition, aim, goal, objective, purpose, intention, plan, scheme, plot: It was his lifelong aspiration to marry someone with money.

aspire v. aspire to. desire, hope, long, wish, aim, yearn; dream of: I'd never aspire to anything higher. He still aspired to being a full professor.

assailant n. attacker, assaulter, mugger: My assailant threatened me with a knife.

assault n. 1 attack, onslaught, onset, charge, offensive, blitzkrieg, blitz, strike, raid, incursion, sortie; aggression, invasion: At dawn we launched the assault on the fort. 2 beating, battering, hold-up, mugging; rape, violation, molestation; Law battery: The defendant is accused of assault.

--v. 3 attack, assail, set or fall upon, pounce upon, storm, beset, charge, rush, lay into: The elderly couple were assaulted near their home. 4 rape, violate, molest: Three women were assaulted in that neighbourhood last night. 5 beat (up), batter, bruise, harm, hit, strike, punch, smite: She complained that her husband continually assaulted the children.

assemble v. 1 convene, gather, call or bring or get together, convoke, summon, muster, marshal, rally, levy, round up, collect, congregate, forgather or foregather; meet: The forces were assembled along the waterfront. A small crowd assembled at the airport. 2 accumulate, gather, amass, collect, bring or group or lump together, compile, unite, join or draw together: The paintings were assembled from many sources. 3 construct, put together, erect, set up, fit or join or piece together, connect, fabricate, manufacture, make: The sculpture was assembled from so-called objets trouv,s , or 'found' objects.

assembly n. 1 gathering, group, meeting, assemblage, body, circle, company, congregation, flock, crowd, throng, multitude, host; horde: A huge assembly of well-wishers greeted the candidate. 2 convocation, council, convention, congress, association, conclave; diet, synod: The assembly voted to re-elect the incumbent officers. 3 construction, putting together, erection, connection, setting up, set-up, fitting or joining or piecing together, fabrication; manufacture, making: Assembly of the bicycle can be completed in an hour.

assertion n. 1 statement, declaration, affirmation, contention, asseveration, averment, avowal, pronouncement; Law affidavit, deposition: He made the assertion that he had never seen the defendant before. 2 insistence, proclamation, representation, affirmation, confirmation: The kings exercised their jurisdiction in the assertion of their regal power.

assertive adj. declaratory, affirmative, asseverative; definite, certain, sure, positive, firm, emphatic, bold, aggressive, confident, insistent; dogmatic, doctrinaire, domineering, opinionated, peremptory, Colloq bossy, pushy: Harold won't obey unless his mother adopts an assertive tone with him.

asset n. 1 Also, assets. property, resources, possessions, holdings, effects, capital, means, valuables, money, wealth: We have to pay a tax on the company's assets. Her only liquid asset was some shares in the Suez Canal Company. 2 talent, strength, advantage, resource, benefit: His main asset is that he speaks fluent Japanese.

assign v. 1 allot, allocate, apportion, consign, appropriate, distribute, give (out), grant: A water ration was assigned to each person. 2 fix, set (apart or aside), settle (on), determine, appoint, authorize, designate, ordain, prescribe, specify: Have they really assigned Thursday as the day of worship? Please sit in the seats assigned to you. 3 appoint, designate, order; name, delegate, nominate, attach; choose, select; Brit second: The men have been assigned to their posts. I assigned David to look after the champagne. 4 attribute, ascribe, accredit, put down; refer: To which century did the curator assign this vase?

assignment

n. 1 allotment, allocation, apportionment, giving (out), distribution: Assignment of posts in the Cabinet is the responsibility of the Prime Minister. 2 task, obligation, responsibility, chore, duty, position, post, charge, job, mission, commission; lesson, homework: Every agent is expected to carry out his assignment. The school assignment for tomorrow is an essay on Alexander Pope. 3 appointment, designation, naming, nomination: The assignment of Neil Mackay to the post was a stroke of genius. 4 designation, specification, ascription: In ancient medicine, the assignment of the functions of the organs was often wrong.

assist v. 1 aid, help, second, support: He could walk only if assisted by the nurse. 2 further, promote, abet, support, benefit, facilitate: The rumours will not assist his election. 3 help, succour, serve, work for or with; relieve: She has always assisted the poor.

assistance

n. help, aid, support, succour, backing, reinforcement, relief, benefit: Can you get up without my assistance? The scholarship fund offered financial assistance.

assistant n. 1 helper, helpmate or helpmeet, aid, aide; aide-de-camp, second: These systems make use of rhymes as assistants to the memory. 2 deputy, subordinate, subsidiary, auxiliary; underling: He is now the assistant to the sales manager.

associate v. 1 associate (with). a ally with, link, join or unite (with), combine or confederate (with), connect (with), conjoin (with): In the 1930s Abe was associated with Dutch and Louis in Murder, Incorporated. I always associate him with fast cars and hard drinking. b see, be seen with, socialize or fraternize (with), mix or mingle (with), go (out) with, consort with, have to do with, Colloq hang out with, Brit pal with or about, pal up (with), US pal around (with): Mother told me not to associate with boys who use that kind of language.

--n. 2 colleague, partner; fellow, fellow-worker: I'd like you to meet my associate, Ian Lindsay. 3 confederate, ally, collaborator; accomplice, accessory: He and his associates have been sent to prison for conspiracy. 4 comrade, companion, friend, mate, buddy; confidant(e): We have been close associates for many years.

--adj. 5 subsidiary, secondary: She is an associate professor at an American university. 6 allied, affiliate, affiliated, associated; accessory: Publication is under the direction of an associate company.

association

n. 1 society, organization, confederation, confederacy, federation, league, union, alliance, guild, coalition, group; syndicate, combine, consortium, cooperative: The society later became known as the British Association for the Advancement of Science. 2 connection, link, affiliation, relationship, bond, tie, linkage, linking, pairing, joining, conjunction, bonding: The association between princes and frogs is probably lost on anyone so literal-minded. 3 fellowship, intimacy, friendship, camaraderie, comradeship, relationship: There has been a long-standing association between Peter and Wendy.

assortment

n. 1 group, class, category, batch, set, lot, classification, grouping: Which assortment contains only plain chocolates? 2 collection, pot-pourri, mixture, m,lange, array, agglomeration, conglomeration, medley, farrago, variety, miscellany, jumble, salmagundi, gallimaufry, mishmash, Colloq mixed bag: That hat looks like something from the assortment at a jumble sale. A bizarre assortment of people attended the meeting.

assume v. 1 accept, adopt, take, use, employ; arrogate, appropriate, take over or up, undertake: Who will assume the leadership of the party? 2 take on (oneself), take upon (oneself), put or try on, don, adopt; acquire: Whenever she delivered the information, she assumed the disguise of an old man. That trivial dispute has assumed gargantuan proportions. 3 presume, suppose, believe, fancy, expect, think, presuppose, take, take for granted, surmise, Chiefly US guess: When I saw the knife in his hand, I assumed the chef was going to slice a lemon. The king assumed he had the cooperation of Parliament. 4 pretend to, feign, sham, counterfeit, simulate, sham, affect, fake: Though she cared deeply, she assumed a devil-may-care attitude.

assumed adj. 1 appropriated, taken, usurped, expropriated, pre-empted, usurped, seized: He functions in his assumed capacity as a judge. 2 pretended, put on, sham, false, feigned, affected, counterfeit, simulated, spurious, bogus, fake; pseudonymous, made-up, Colloq phoney or US also phony: She morosely stared at the floor in assumed contrition. He wrote poetry under an assumed name. 3 taken, taken for granted, presumed, supposed, accepted, expected, presupposed; hypothetical, theoretical, suppositional: The payment depends materially on the assumed rate of interest.

assurance n. 1 promise, pledge, guarantee or guaranty, warranty, commitment, bond, surety; word, word of honour, oath, vow: You have the bank's assurance that the money will be on deposit. 2 insurance, indemnity: His life assurance is barely enough to cover the costs of his funeral. 3 certainty, confidence, trust, faith, reassurance, surety, assuredness, certitude; security: There is no assurance that Herr Kleister will get the job done. 4 audacity, impudence, presumption, boldness, brazenness, nerve, effrontery, insolence , Colloq brass, gall, cheek, chutzpah: With an air of assurance they quote authors they have never read. 5 self-confidence, self-reliance, confidence, steadiness, intrepidity, self-possession, poise, aplomb, coolness, control, self-control, resolve, Colloq gumption, guts, gutsiness: He has the assurance of one born to command.

assure v. 1 secure, stabilize, settle, establish, confirm, certify, warrant, guarantee, ensure, be confident of, make or be sure or certain: Force, fear, and the multitude of his guard do less to assure the estate of a prince than the good will of his subjects. 2 encourage, inspirit, reassure, hearten: Your humanity assures us and gives us strength. 3 convince, persuade, reassure, make (someone) certain; ensure: What can I do to assure you of my love? 4 assert, state, asseverate, promise: I assure you that we shall do everything possible to find your dog.

astonish v. amaze, surprise, shock, astound, stun, stagger, dumbfound or dumfound, bowl over, floor, stupefy, daze, Colloq flabbergast: She astonished the audience with her gymnastic skill. I was astonished when told my wife had given birth to quintuplets.

astonishment
n. amazement, surprise, shock, stupefaction, wonder, wonderment: I'll never forget that look of astonishment on his face when he learned he had won.

astound v. surprise, shock, astonish, stun, stagger, dumbfound or dumfound, bowl over, floor, stupefy, bewilder, overwhelm, Colloq flabbergast: We were astounded to learn that he had survived all those years on a desert island. The Great MacTavish performs astounding feats of magic and levitation!

astute adj. 1 shrewd, subtle, clever, ingenious, adroit, wily, cunning, calculating, canny, crafty, artful, arch, sly, foxy, guileful, underhand, underhanded; Rare astucious: He had the reputation of being an astute businessman. 2 sharp, keen, perceptive, observant, alert, quick, quick-witted, sage, sagacious, wise, intelligent, insightful, perspicacious, discerning, knowledgeable: That was a very astute comment, Smedley.

1.16 atmosphere...
=-

atmosphere
n. 1 air, heaven(s), sky, aerosphere: It is gravity that prevents the earth's atmosphere from drifting off into outer space. 2 air, ambience or ambiance, environment, climate, mood, feeling, feel, spirit, tone: There's such a friendly atmosphere in the bar of the Golden Cockerel. The atmosphere became very chilly when she told him she was marrying someone else.

atone v. expiate, make amends, pay, repay, answer, compensate; redress, remedy, propitiate, redeem: Nothing can atone for her betrayal of him to the enemy. He has atoned for his sins many times over.

atonement n. amends, propitiation, reparation, repayment, compensation, payment, restitution, recompense, expiation, penance, satisfaction: He sent her flowers in atonement, together with a note apologizing profusely for his actions.

atrocious adj. 1 cruel, wicked, iniquitous, villainous, fiendish, execrable, appalling, abominable, monstrous, inhuman, savage, barbaric, brutal, barbarous, heinous, dreadful, flagrant, flagitious, gruesome, grisly, ruthless, ghastly, unspeakable, horrifying, horrible, awful, infamous, infernal, satanic, hellish: They will never forget the atrocious crimes that took place during the war. 2 awful, terrible, bad, rotten, horrid, appalling, frightful, horrendous, Colloq lousy: That's the most atrocious book it has ever been my misfortune to review. Priscilla has atrocious taste.

atrocity n. 1 enormity, wickedness, flagitiousness, iniquity, infamy, cruelty, heinousness, horror, evil, inhumanity, barbarity, savagery: The atrocity of the 'Final Solution' was a well-kept secret during the war. 2 evil, outrage, crime, villainy, offence: She could not listen when the prosecutor read a list of the atrocities perpetrated at the camp.

attach v. 1 fasten, join, connect, secure, fix, affix; tack or hook or tie or stick on, pin, rivet, cement, glue, bond, solder, weld, braze; unite; Nautical bend: The tag is still attached to your dress. Attach this to the wall. How do I attach the sail to the spar? 2 connect, associate, assign, affiliate, enlist, join, add, subjoin, Brit second: Her brother-in-law has been attached to my regiment. 3 endear, attract: I won't say that we were in love, but I was very closely attached to her. 4 fix, affix, pin, apply, ascribe, assign, attribute, put, place: Why do you attach so much importance to what Dora says? 5 adhere, cleave, stick: Many legends have attached themselves to Charlemagne. 6 seize, lay hold of, confiscate, appropriate: If he cannot meet the mortgage payments the bank will attach his house.

attached adj. 1 connected, joined, Brit seconded: She has been attached to the Foreign Office for many years. 2 united, fastened, fixed: The knob attached to the outside of the door might come off. 3 Often, attached to. devoted (to), partial (to), fond (of), devoted (to): I feel closely attached to her. I became attached to the painting and did not wish to sell it. 4 spoken for, married, unavailable, engaged, betrothed: I would have asked Suzanne out, but I gather she's attached.

attachment

n. 1 fastening; connection, tie, link, bond: The attachment of this fitting is too flimsy. William cannot understand how an attachment could have been formed between his wife and his brother. 2 attaching, fastening, linking, joining, affixing, fixing, connection: The mode of attachment to the wall is not immediately apparent. 3 affection, regard, fidelity, faithfulness, devotion, regard, liking, fondness, affinity, friendliness, loyalty, admiration, tenderness, partiality, friendship, love: We still feel a deep attachment, despite the divorce. 4 adjunct, addition, accessory, device, appliance, extra, accoutrement or US also accouterment, appendage, part; ornament, decoration; Colloq gadget: With this attachment, the film is advanced automatically. Attachments are available at extra cost.

attack v. 1 assail, assault, fall or set or pounce upon; charge, rush, raid, strike (at), storm; engage (in battle), fight; Colloq mug, jump: They were attacked on their way home by a gang of boys. Helicopter gunships were sent out to attack the bunker. 2 criticize, censure, berate; abuse, revile, inveigh against, denounce, condemn, malign, denigrate, decry, disparage, deprecate, vilify: His article attacked the minister for his views on housing. 3 begin, start; approach, undertake: We attacked the meal with gusto. 4 affect, seize; infect: Rheumatism attacks young and old alike. 5 waste, devour, destroy, eat; erode, corrode, decompose, dissolve: Termites have attacked the beams of the house. Watch how the acid attacks the areas on the plate that have not been protected.

--n. 6 assault, onset, offensive, onslaught, incursion, raid, strike, inroad, invasion: The enemy responded to our attack with a smokescreen. After capturing the pawn, Karpov launched an attack on the queen. 7 criticism, censure; abuse, denunciation, revilement, denigration, decrial, disparagement, deprecation, vilification: The quarterly's attack is totally uncalled for. 8 seizure, spell, spasm, paroxysm; fit, bout: Preston has had another attack of gout. How do you stop an attack of hiccups? 9 destruction, wasting; erosion, corrosion: Noting the attack on the planks by shipworm, the surveyor declared the vessel unseaworthy. Aluminium will not withstand the attack of the salt air in this area.

attempt v. 1 try, essay, undertake, take on, venture; endeavour, strive, Colloq have or take a crack at, try on, have a go or shot at: It is too stormy to attempt the crossing tonight. Is she going to attempt to dive off the cliff tomorrow?

--n. 2 endeavour, try, essay; effort, undertaking, bid, Colloq crack, go, shot: The weather cleared sufficiently for another attempt at the summit. He made a feeble attempt to wave. 3 attack, assault: An abortive attempt was made on the life of the vice-president tonight.

attend v. 1 be present (at), go to, be at, appear (at), put in an appearance (at), turn up (at), haunt, frequent; sit in (on), US and Canadian audit: Are you attending the concert? She attends Miss Fiennes's elocution class. 2 turn to, pay attention to, serve, tend to, take care of, deal with, handle, heed, fulfil: I shall attend to your request as soon as possible, Madam. 3 Also, attend to. watch over, wait on or upon, care for, take care of, minister to, occupy oneself with, look after, look out for, devote oneself to: Mrs Atterbury attends the patients in the cancer ward on weekdays. The clergyman has his own flock to attend to. 4 escort, accompany, conduct, convoy, squire, usher, wait upon, follow; chaperon or chaperone: The actress arrived, attended by her entourage of toadies. 5 be associated with, accompany, result in or from, give rise to: A departure in the midst of the battle would be attended by great peril, Milord.

attendance

n. 1 presence, appearance, being: Your attendance at chapel is required. 2 audience, crowd, assembly, assemblage, gathering, turnout, gate, house: The attendance at the fˆte was greater than we expected. 3 in attendance. waiting upon, attending, serving: The king always has at least four people in attendance.

attendant adj. 1 waiting upon, accompanying, following; resultant, resulting, related, consequent, concomitant, depending, accessory: The circumstances attendant on your acceptance of the post are immaterial.

--n. 2 escort, servant, menial, helper, usher or usherette, chaperon or chaperone; aide, subordinate, underling, assistant; follower, Derogatory lackey, flunkey, slave; Colloq US cohort: He dismissed his attendants and entered the church alone.

attention n. 1 heed, regard, notice; concentration: Please give your attention to the teacher. Pay attention! Don't let your attention wander. 2 publicity, notice, distinction, acclaim, prominence, r,clame, notoriety; limelight: She seems to have been getting a lot of attention lately.

attentive adj. 1 heedful, observant, awake, alert, intent, watchful, concentrating, assiduous; mindful, considerate: James is very attentive in class. You really must be more attentive to the needs of others. 2 polite, courteous, courtly, gallant, gracious, accommodating, considerate, thoughtful, solicitous, civil, respectful, deferential: He is always very attentive to the ladies.

attest v. bear witness (to), bear out, swear (to), vow, testify, certify, vouchsafe, declare, assert, asseverate, aver, affirm, confirm, verify, substantiate, vouch for, Law depose, depose and say, depone: I attest to the fact that they left the restaurant together. The merits of chƒteau-bottled Bordeaux are attested by most epicures.

attitude n. 1 posture, position, disposition, stance, bearing, carriage, aspect, demeanour: The attitude of the figures in the sculpture was one of supplication. 2 posture, position, disposition, opinion, feeling, view, point of view, viewpoint, approach, leaning, thought, inclination, bent, tendency, orientation: What is your attitude towards the situation in South Africa?

attract v. draw, invite; entice, lure, allure, appeal to, charm, captivate, fascinate, Colloq pull: Our attention was attracted by a slight noise in the cupboard. Melissa attracts men the way flowers attract bees.

attraction
n. 1 draw, appeal; magnetism; gravitation, Colloq pull: David confided to Joan that he felt a strong attraction to her. There is an attraction between the north and south poles of these magnets. 2 draw, lure, enticement, attractant, inducement; show, entertainment, presentation, performance , Colloq come-on, crowd-puller, crowd-pleaser: The presence of the movie stars has been a powerful attraction. The producer has planned to repeat the attraction every evening.

attractive
adj. attracting, drawing, pulling, captivating, taking, fetching, appealing, luring, inviting, enticing, seductive, inviting, engaging, charming, interesting, pleasing, winning, alluring, good-looking, pretty, handsome: The person I'd like to meet needn't be beautiful or stunning - attractive will do nicely.

attribute n. 1 quality, character, characteristic, property, feature, trait, virtue: It is surprising how soon historical personages become invested with romantic attributes.

--v. 2 ascribe, impute, assign, put down to, trace to, charge, credit: The shrivelled arm of Richard the Third was attributed to witchcraft. To what do you attribute your interest in birds?

attribution
n. assignment, ascription, credit: The curator disagreed with the expert's attribution of the painting to Canaletto.

1.17 audacious...
=-

audacious adj. 1 daring, bold, confident, intrepid, brave, courageous, adventurous, venturesome, reckless, rash, foolhardy, daredevil, devil-may-care, fearless, doughty, mettlesome: The troop launched an audacious daylight attack. Cranshaw made an audacious bid for the chairmanship. 2 presumptuous, shameless, bold, impudent, pert, saucy, defiant, impertinent, insolent, brazen, unabashed, rude, disrespectful, cheeky, forward: Charlotte was so audacious as to assume that she could win.

aura n. air, atmosphere, feeling, ambience or ambiance, spirit, character, quality, odour, aroma, emanation: There is an aura of elegance about the woman that impresses everyone she meets.

auspices n. aegis, sponsorship, authority, protection, support, backing, supervision, guidance, patronage, sanction, approval, control, influence: The competition is under the auspices of the astronomical society.

authentic adj. genuine, real, actual, bona fide, factual, accurate, true, legitimate, authoritative, reliable, veritable, trustworthy, faithful, undisputed: This is an authentic Chippendale chair.

authenticate
v. verify, validate, certify, substantiate, endorse, vouch for, confirm, corroborate: You will have to go to the consul to have your passport authenticated.

author n. creator, originator, inventor, father, founder, framer, initiator, maker, prime mover, architect, designer; writer, novelist, litt,rateur: Adolfo was the author of the plot to kill the governor.

authoritarian
adj. dictatorial, imperious, totalitarian, autocratic, arbitrary, absolute, dogmatic, domineering, strict, severe, unyielding, tyrannical, despotic, Colloq bossy: Why do people ever elect an authoritarian government?

authoritative
adj. 1 official, valid, authentic, documented, certified, validated, legitimate, sanctioned; conclusive: The second edition is usually considered the authoritative one. 2 scholarly, learned, authentic, valid, sound, veritable, verifiable, accurate, factual, faithful, dependable, reliable, trustworthy, true, truthful: There is no more authoritative source than Professor Fitzhugh on early Egyptian history.

authority n. 1 power, jurisdiction, dominion, right, control, prerogative, authorization; hegemony: Who gave you the authority to tell me what to do? By the authority vested in me, I now pronounce you man and wife. 2 word, testimony, evidence, Colloq say-so: Do not accept anything solely on the authority of the Herald . 3 expert, specialist, scholar, sage, judge, arbiter: Gardner is an authority on Scottish history. 4 authorities. government, establishment, officials, officialdom, powers that be, police: The authorities lowered the speed limit.

authorize v. empower, commission; sanction, approve, countenance, permit, give leave, allow, license, entitle, consent or subscribe to, endorse, Colloq OK or okay, give the green light or go-ahead to: Who authorized you to speak for all of us?

automatic adj. 1 self-acting, self-governing, self-regulating, mechanical, robot, automated: Many modern cars are equipped with an automatic choke. 2 mechanical, involuntary, unconscious, instinctive or instinctual, natural, spontaneous, impulsive, conditioned, reflex, robot-like, Slang knee-jerk: Flinching is an automatic reaction to a threatening gesture. 3 unavoidable, inevitable, inescapable, ineluctable: It is automatic for the tax inspector to suspect people of hiding something.

auxiliary adj. 1 helping, assisting, supportive, aiding, abetting; helpful, accessory, supplementary: In a well-balanced mind, imagination and understanding are auxiliary to each other. 2 subordinate, additional, subsidiary, secondary, ancillary, extra, reserve; accessory: Larger sailing vessels have an auxiliary motor in case the wind fails.

--n. 3 help, assistance, aid, support, accessory: Knowing another language is a useful auxiliary in the study of your own. 4 helper, assistant, aide, alter ego, supporter, Colloq man Friday, girl Friday: Let me introduce Pat, my auxiliary, who will help you if I am not available.

1.18 available...

=-

available adj. at or to hand, at one's disposal, accessible, handy, present, ready, (readily) obtainable, convenient, nearby, close by, within reach, on tap, at one's fingertips or elbow: Running water is available. If you need me for anything, I am available.

avant-garde
adj. innovative, advanced, progressive, experimental, original, new, ground-breaking, pioneering, precedent-setting; revolutionary, extreme, extremist, Colloq far-out, way-out: We disapprove of your avant-garde notions of teaching. Some modern art, avant-garde not very long ago, seems quite conventional today.

avarice n. greed, acquisitiveness, cupidity, craving, covetousness, desire, greediness, rapacity, selfishness; stinginess, meanness, miserliness, parsimony, tight-fistedness, close-fistedness, niggardliness, penuriousness: The classic tale of avarice is that of King Midas, whose touch turned everything to gold.

avaricious
adj. greedy, acquisitive, grasping, covetous, mercenary, selfish; penny-pinching, stingy, miserly, mean, parsimonious, tight-fisted, close-fisted, niggardly, penurious, tight: She fell into the clutches of an avaricious lawyer.

average n. 1 mean, norm, usual, standard: The Bell Inn is certainly far above average in accommodation, food quality, and service. 2 on average. in the main, generally, normally, usually, ordinarily, typically, customarily, as a rule, for the most part: On average, I go abroad twice a year on business.

--adj. 3 normal, common, usual, customary, general, typical, ordinary, regular: On an average day, the museum has about 2,000 visitors. 4 mediocre, middling, run-of-the-mill, commonplace, common, ordinary, undistinguished, unexceptional, Colloq so so: Boris is only an average violinist, but he's a virtuoso on the harmonica.

averse adj. disinclined, unwilling, reluctant, resistant, loath, opposed, anti, antipathetic, ill-disposed, indisposed: He does not appear to be averse to your suggestion: in fact, he seems quite keen on it.

aversion n. 1 dislike, abhorrence, repugnance, antipathy, antagonism, animosity, hostility, loathing, hatred, odium, horror; disinclination, unwillingness, reluctance, dislike, distaste: Does Anne have an aversion to people who smoke? Your aversion to the theatre might be explained as agoraphobia. 2 dislike, hatred, hate, loathing: Turnips are a particular aversion of mine.

avoid   v. shun, keep (away) from, keep off, leave alone, keep or steer clear of, refrain from, dodge, circumvent, sidestep, elude, escape, evade: The doctor suggested that I avoid chocolate. Why does Bennie avoid looking me straight in the eye?

1.19 awake...

=-

awake   v. 1 wake (up), awaken, get up, rouse or bestir oneself: When I awoke, she was standing over me with a pistol. 2 awaken, animate, arouse, rouse, stimulate, revive, incite, excite, activate, alert, stir up, fan, kindle, ignite, fire: Marches awaken my sense of patriotism. 3 awake to. awaken to, wake up to, realize, understand, become aware or conscious of: I finally awoke to the fact that my tax return was overdue.

--adj. 4 up, aroused, roused, wide awake, up and about, alert, on the alert, on the qui vive, watchful, on guard, attentive, conscious; heedful, alive: I'm always awake a few minutes before the alarm goes off.

awaken   v. See awake, 1, 2, above.

award   v. 1 grant, give, confer, bestow, present, accord, furnish, endow with; assign, apportion: Her dog was awarded the blue ribbon in the club show.

--n. 2 prize, trophy, reward: The award for the tidiest boats has been won by the Bristol Yacht Club. 3 grant, bestowal, presentation, endowment, awarding: Before the award of the prizes, we listened to speeches. Profits were up last year despite a large pay award.

aware   adj. 1 informed, apprised, knowledgeable, knowing, posted, in the know, enlightened, au fait, au courant, cognizant, Slang hip, hep, wise: She is well aware of the consequences. 2 sensitive, sensible, conscious: I became aware that someone was watching us.

awesome adj. awe-inspiring, awful, imposing, amazing, wonderful, breathtaking, marvellous, wondrous, moving, stirring, affecting, overwhelming, formidable, daunting, dreadful, fearsome, fearful, frightening, horrifying, terrifying, terrible; unbelievable, incredible; alarming, shocking, stunning, stupefying, astounding, astonishing,: The eruption of Vesuvius in AD 67 must have been a truly awesome spectacle.

awful adj. 1 bad, terrible, inferior, base, abominable, rotten, horrible, horrid; tasteless, unsightly, ugly, hideous, grotesque, Slang lousy, Brit naff, Chiefly US hellacious: That is an awful piece of sculpture. I feel awful this morning. 2 frightful, shocking, execrable, unpleasant, grotesque, nasty, ghastly, gruesome, horrendous, horrifying, horrific, horrible, unspeakable: That was an awful thing to do.

awfully adv. very (much), badly, terribly, extremely, greatly, remarkably, in the worst way, dreadfully, extraordinarily, exceedingly, excessively, really, fearfully, inordinately; incomparably: I get awfully tired running in the marathon. I'm awfully sorry I'm late. Doreen is an awfully good horsewoman.

awkward adj. 1 clumsy, ungainly, left-handed, ham-handed, ham-fisted, blundering, bungling, maladroit, uncoordinated, undexterous, inexpert, gauche, unhandy, inept, oafish, unskilled, unskilful, Colloq all thumbs, butter-fingered, Brit cack-handed: In his awkward attempt at putting the watch back together, Sam left out a few parts. 2 ungraceful, ungainly, inelegant, wooden, gawky: The ballerina made an awkward, flat-footed pirouette and stumbled off stage. 3 embarrassed, shamefaced, uncomfortable, ill at ease, uneasy, out of place, discomfited, confused: He felt awkward being the only boy in the class. Terry made an awkward excuse and left the room. 4 dangerous, hazardous, risky, precarious, perilous: Be careful, there's an awkward step here. 5 difficult, touchy, sensitive, embarrassing, delicate, unpleasant, uncomfortable, ticklish, tricky, trying, troublesome, Colloq sticky: He's got himself into a very awkward situation indeed.

2.0 B

=-

2.1 babble...
=-

babble v. 1 prattle, twaddle, jabber, gibber, chatter, blab, blabber, gurgle, burble, gabble, Colloq blab, blabber, gab, yack, natter, witter, Brit rabbit: The silly fellow kept babbling away, but no one was listening. Madelaine is still too young to talk and just babbles to herself. 2 divulge, tell, disclose, repeat, reveal, tattle, gossip, blurt (out), Colloq blab: Don't tell Nigel about the affair - he'll babble it all over town.

--n. 3 gibberish, nonsense, twaddle, prattle, chatter(ing), gibber, jabber, jibber-jabber, drivel, rubbish, bavardage; murmur, hubbub: Ella's conversation about the financial market is just so much babble.

baby n. 1 infant, neonate, newborn, babe, babe in arms, child, toddler, tot: The baby is just beginning to teethe.

--v. 2 cosset, coddle, pamper, mollycoddle, indulge, spoil, pet: He turned out that way because he was babied till he was ten. I know you like to be babied when you're ill.

back v. 1 invest in, wager or bet on: She backed a 35-to-2 long shot in the Derby, and she won. 2 Also, back up. a support, uphold, stand behind, promote, encourage, help, uphold, second, side with, endorse, aid, abet, assist; sponsor, subsidize, underwrite, subvene, finance, Slang US and Canadian bankroll: Your mother and I will back you if you want to start a business. b reverse, go or move in reverse, go or move backwards: He backed into the driveway. 3 back down (from) or off (from) or away (from) or out (of) or up. withdraw (from), retreat (from), abandon, retire (from), backtrack (from), shy away (from), recoil (from), turn tail (from): When Percy stood up to him, the bully backed down. The investment sounded risky, so I backed off. Philippa backed out of singing the leading role. Back up and give me room!

--n. 4 backside, rear, Technical dorsum: She stood with her back towards me. 5 at the back of or at someone's back. behind, following, pursuing, chasing, US in back of: Here come the hounds at the back of the fox. You were at my back in the queue a minute ago. 6 behind the back of or behind someone's back. surreptitiously, secretly, clandestinely, privately, furtively, sneakily, slyly; treacherously, traitorously, perfidiously, deceitfully, insidiously: Graham is always telling tales about you behind your back. 7 break the back of. a overcome, master: Now that he's broken the back of that problem he can get on with his work. b US crush, ruin, bankrupt, destroy, defeat, vanquish, Colloq break: The government has tried on many occasions to break the back of the Mafia operation. 8 on (someone's) back. US weighing (down) on or upon (someone), burdening (someone), lodged with (someone), resting with (someone): The responsibility for the decision is on your back. 9 turn one's back on or upon. abandon, forsake, ignore, disregard, repudiate, reject, cast off, disown, deny: He turned his back on her when she needed him most. 10 with one's back to or against the wall. hard pressed, struggling (against odds), without hope, with little or no hope, helpless, in dire straits, in (serious) trouble: After the stock-market crash, some brokers found themselves with their backs to the wall.

--adj. 11 rear; service, servants': Both back tyres are flat. Please use the back staircase from now on. 12 US and Australian and New Zealand outlying, remote, isolated, distant; undeveloped, primitive, raw, rough, uncivilized: They raised three boys in the back country, and all of them became doctors. 13 in arrears, overdue, past due, late; behindhand: The tax inspector has advised me that I owe thousands in back taxes.

--adv. 14 to or toward(s) the rear, rearward(s), backward(s); away: We beat back the enemy in severe hand-to-hand fighting. I accepted his offer at once, lest he should draw back. Get back from the edge! 15 in return or repayment or requital or retaliation; again: I'll pay you back when I have the money. She gave him back as good as he had given. 16 ago, in time(s) past: Two generations back, his was the finest house in the town. 17 behind, behindhand, in arrears, overdue: We are a week back in the rent. 18 go back on. renege, fail; deny, disavow, break, repudiate: He has gone back on his promise to send the payment on the first of every month.

backbone n. 1 spine, spinal column: He's much better since the surgery on his backbone. 2 mainstay, chief or main support, buttress, pillar: Sheila has been the backbone of the society, but she has now moved away. 3 resoluteness, sturdiness, firmness, determination, strength (of character), mettle, purposefulness, resolution, courage, fortitude, resolve, will, will-power, strength, stability, stamina, staying power, grit: Has she the backbone to run the company alone?

backer n. 1 supporter, advocate, promoter, sponsor, patron: She has always been an enthusiastic backer of adult education. 2 investor, benefactor or benefactress, supporter, underwriter, Colloq angel: The play's backers have made huge profits. 3 bettor, Brit punter: His backers are offering odds of 10 to 1.

background
n. 1 history, experience, qualifications, credentials, grounding, training; breeding, upbringing, family; curriculum vitae, Colloq CV: His background suits him admirably for the post of ambassador. 2 distance, offing, horizon, obscurity: I like the way the coastline disappears into the background towards the edge of the painting. 3 in the background. inconspicuous, unnoticed, unobtrusive, behind the scenes, out of the limelight or spotlight, unseen, out of the public eye, backstage: Edward prefers to remain in the background, letting his dealer bid at the auctions.

backing n. 1 support, help, aid, assistance, succour; approval, endorsement, patronage, approval, sponsorship: He knows that he can rely on the backing of his local party. 2 investment, money, funds, funding, subsidy, grant; sponsorship: How can you launch the company without backing?

backlash n. reaction, repercussion, recoil, counteraction, rebound, kickback, backfire; boomerang: There was a strong backlash in the USA against giving minorities preferred instead of equal job opportunities.

backward adj. 1 bashful, shy, reticent, diffident, retiring, coy, timid, unwilling, loath, chary, reluctant, averse: She took him to be a bit backward when he didn't respond to her smile. 2 slow, dim-witted, dull, stupid, slow-witted, dumb, feeble-minded, Colloq Brit gormless, dim: Some of the more backward students will need extra help. 3 slow, late, behindhand, retarded:

Millie seemed a bit backward in learning to walk. 4 rearward; to the rear, behind; to the past: She gave him a backward glance. He went on through life with never a backward look. 5 retrograde, retrogressive, reverse, regressive: The ancients were unable to account for the apparently backward motion of the planets.

--adv. 6 backwards: Walk backward to the door with your hands up.

backwards adv. 1 rearwards or rearward, in reverse, regressively, retrogressively, backward; withershins or widdershins, Brit anticlockwise, US counter-clockwise: The general, who refused to acknowledge defeat, explained that his troops were 'advancing backwards'. Do the clocks run backwards in Australia, Daddy? 2 in reverse; back to front: She can even ride sitting backwards on a galloping horse. I think you're wearing your pullover backwards.

bad adj. 1 poor, wretched, inferior, defective, awful, worthless, miserable, egregious, execrable, substandard, unsatisfactory, disappointing, inadequate, non-standard, Colloq lousy, rotten, crummy, Slang Brit grotty, naff: Sometimes they would send him a letter, but he was a bad correspondent. We went to see a rather bad play the other night. 2 corrupt, polluted, vitiated, debased, base, vile, foul, rotten, miasmic, noxious, mephitic, unhealthy, poisonous, injurious, dangerous, harmful, hurtful, pernicious, deleterious, ruinous: It wasn't healthy to be so near the bad air of the sewer. 3 evil, ill, immoral, wicked, vicious, vile, sinful, depraved, awful, villainous, corrupt, amoral, criminal, wrong, unspeakable: The man was thoroughly bad and deserved everything he got. 4 unpleasant, offensive, disagreeable, inclement, severe, awful, unfavourable, adverse, inclement, unpleasant, Colloq lousy, rotten: Surely you're not going sailing in this bad weather?! 5 unfavourable, unlucky, unpropitious, unfortunate, inauspicious, troubled, grim, distressing, discouraging, unpleasant: Agreeing to do that job might yet turn out to have been a bad decision. 6 off, tainted, spoilt or spoiled, mouldy, stale, rotten, decayed, putrefied, putrid, contaminated: The fridge isn't working and all the food has gone bad. She ate a bad egg and felt ill the next day. 7 irascible, ill-tempered, grouchy, irritable, nasty, peevish, cross, crotchety, crabby, cranky, curmudgeonly: Don't go near the boss - he's been in a bad mood all day. 8 sorry, regretful, apologetic, contrite, rueful, sad, conscience-stricken, remorseful, upset: She felt bad about having invited me. 9 sad, depressed, unhappy, dejected, downhearted, disconsolate, melancholy; inconsolable: I feel bad about you losing your purse. 10 naughty, ill-behaved, misbehaving, disobedient, unruly, wild; mischievous: Ronnie isn't a bad boy, he's just bored. 11 distressing, severe, grave, serious, terrible, awful, painful: He was laid up with a bad case of the mumps.

badly adv. 1 poorly, defectively, insufficiently, inadequately, unsatisfactorily, carelessly, ineptly, shoddily, inadequately, deficiently: We lived in a badly furnished flat in the East End. 2 unfortunately, unluckily, unsuccessfully, unfavourably, poorly: These are an improvement on the former rules, which worked badly. 3 incorrectly, faultily, defectively, poorly, improperly, inaccurately, erroneously, unacceptably; ineptly, inartistically, amateurishly, awfully: He speaks English badly. He sings badly. 4 immorally, wickedly, viciously, mischievously, naughtily, shamefully, improperly, villainously: The school has had its share of badly behaved pupils. 5 dangerously, severely, gravely, critically, grievously, seriously: Her father was badly wounded in the war. 6 unkindly, cruelly, harshly, severely, wretchedly, dreadfully, improperly, atrociously, horribly, unspeakably: The prisoners were treated so badly that few survived. 7 unfavourably, damagingly, critically: Even her friends spoke badly of her. 8 very much, greatly, seriously: Peter is badly in need of extra money. 9 distressfully, emotionally, hard: He took the news badly.

bag n. 1 sack, shopping bag, reticule, string bag, Chiefly Brit carrier bag, Scots or dialect poke, pocket: They have helpers at the supermarket who will carry your bags to your car for you. 2 baggage, luggage, valise, satchel, grip, suitcase, overnight bag, carry-on luggage or bag, Gladstone bag, carpet-bag, portmanteau, toilet kit or case, sponge bag; briefcase, attach, case, dispatch- or despatch-case: Boarding in London I flew to Buenos Aires while my bag went to Seoul. 3 purse, handbag, evening bag, wallet, Highland dress sporran: She reached into her bag and felt the gun that the Commander had given her. 4 crone, hag, beast, ogress, gorgon, nightmare, witch, harridan, Archaic beldam, Slang old bat, dog, monster, US two-bagger:

Derek has been romancing some old bag for her money. 5 occupation, hobby, avocation, business, vocation, department, concern, affair, Colloq lookout, worry, Slang thing: Peter's bag at the moment is learning to play the violin.

--v. 6 catch, trap, ensnare, snare, entrap, capture, land; kill, shoot: We bagged six pheasants and two partridges this morning.

balance v. 1 weigh, estimate, ponder, consider, deliberate, assess, compare, evaluate: We need to balance the advantages and the disadvantages. 2 steady, poise; equalize, stabilize, level, match, even out or up: The see-saw will balance better if both of you get on the other end. 3 compensate (for), make up for, counterbalance, offset, match, equal; counterpoise: The column of mercury in the barometer balances the atmospheric pressure on the surface of the bowl. The total of expenses seems to balance the total of income.

--n. 4 scale(s), steelyard: According to the balance, the package weighs two pounds. 5 control, command, authority, weight, preponderance: Britain held the balance of power during those decades. 6 equilibrium, stability, steadiness, footing; equiponderance; equality, harmony: The acrobat almost lost his balance on the high wire. It is important to maintain a balance between presentation and content. 7 remainder, residue, rest; excess, surplus, difference: You take these and I'll follow with the balance. My bank balance is down to zero.

ban v. 1 prohibit, forbid, outlaw, proscribe, interdict, bar, disallow, debar: They have banned smoking in all public places.

--n. 2 prohibition, taboo, proscription, interdiction, interdict; embargo, boycott: They have put a ban on the sale of alcoholic beverages. The ban against importing firearms is strictly enforced.

banal adj. trite, hackneyed, stereotyped, clich,d, stereotypical, commonplace, old hat, stock, common, everyday, ordinary, pedestrian, humdrum, tired, unoriginal, unimaginative, platitudinous; trivial, petty, jejune, Slang corny: The book was blasted as banal and boring. The plot of boy-meets-girl, though banal, still brings in the audiences.

band° n. 1 strip, ribbon, belt, bandeau, fillet, tie; stripe, line, border: He wears a cloth band round his head to keep the sweat out of his eyes. There is a decorative band at the top of each page.

--v. 2 line, stripe, border: The column is banded at intervals with bas-reliefs depicting scenes from the emperor's life. 3 tie, keep, bind: Only those papers that are banded together should be sent off.

bandý n. 1 company, troop, platoon, corps, group, body, gang, horde, party, pack, bunch: They were set upon by a band of robbers in the forest. 2 group, ensemble, combination, orchestra, Colloq combo: A jazz band plays at the Civic Centre every Tuesday evening.

--v. 3 band together. unite, confederate, gather or join or league together, team up, affiliate, merge, federate: We must band together if we expect to accomplish anything.

banish v. 1 exile, expatriate, deport, extradite, transport, eject, oust, expel, rusticate, drive out or away, dismiss, excommunicate, outlaw, ostracize: After ten years in prison, the thief was released and banished from the kingdom. 2 drive or drive out or away, expel, cast out, dismiss, reject: He tried to banish suspicion from his mind.

banner n. 1 standard, flag, pennant, ensign, burgee, gonfalon, pennon, streamer, banderole; symbol: The flag of the United States is called the star-spangled banner. He is seeking election under the banner of the Tories.

--adj. 2 leading, foremost, momentous, memorable, notable, important, noteworthy: The firm had a banner year, with profits up 25 per cent.

banquet n. 1 feast, sumptuous repast or meal, ceremonial dinner, lavish dinner: At the end of the banquet, the guest of honour rose to make a few remarks.

--v. 2 feast, indulge, wine and dine, regale, carouse: The winners of the trophy banqueted night after night on champagne and caviare.

banter n. raillery, badinage, persiflage, pleasantry, jesting, joking, repartee; chaffing, teasing, chaff; Colloq kidding, ribbing: Despite the good-natured banter between them, Ray knew that Stephen really detested him.

bar n. 1 rod, shaft, pole, stick, stake: A heavy iron bar is used to tamp the dynamite into place in the hole. 2 strip, stripe, band, belt; streak, line: The company trade mark is a narrow red bar around the barrel of every ball-point pen. 3 barrier, obstacle, obstruction, barricade, hindrance, block, deterrent, impediment; ban, embargo: A steel bar was across the entrance. Her pride proved a bar to her success. There is a bar against importing spirits. 4 sandbar, shallow, shoal, bank, sandbank: Because the keel is too deep, the sloop will be unable to cross the bar till high tide. 5 tribunal, court, courtroom, lawcourt, bench: The former mayor was found guilty of corruption at the bar of public opinion. 6 bar-room, saloon, public house, caf,, lounge, cocktail lounge, tavern, taproom, canteen, Brit local, wine bar; Colloq pub; Slang boozer, gin-mill: I was at the bar on my third beer when she walked in. 7 counter: We had a quick lunch at the sandwich bar.

--v. 8 fasten, close up, secure, shut up; lock, lock up, padlock: We tried to get in through the window, but they had barred it. 9 block, obstruct, stop, stay, hinder, keep (out), shut out, exclude, prevent, forbid, prohibit, set aside; forestall, impede, hamper, retard, balk, barricade; ban, embargo: After his behaviour, he was barred from the club for a year. A huge man in an ill-fitting dinner-jacket barred my way. The regulations bar the import of firearms.

--prep. 10 except (for), excepting, excluding, barring, outside (of), save for, aside from, but: It's all over now bar the shouting.

barbarian n. 1 savage, brute: The barbarians wore animal skins. 2 boor, lowbrow, lout, oaf, clod, churl, philistine, ignoramus, yahoo; hooligan, vandal, ruffian, tough, Slang Brit yob, yobbo, skinhead: Those barbarians ought to be denied admittance to the games.

--adj. 3 uncivilized, uncultivated, uncultured, philistine, savage; barbarous, barbaric, coarse, vulgar, uncouth, rude; boorish, loutish, oafish, crude, rough, insensitive, churlish, uncivil: One sees a great deal of barbarian behaviour every day.

barbarity n. cruelty, inhumanity, ruthlessness, savagery, brutishness, barbarousness, heartlessness, viciousness, cold-bloodedness, bloodthirstiness: The barbarity of this mass murderer cannot be overstated.

bare adj. 1 unclothed, naked, nude, stark naked, unclad, exposed, uncovered, hatless, unshod, undressed , Brit starkers; Colloq in the altogether, in one's birthday suit, in the buff; Slang US bare-ass: He stood completely bare in the middle of the room. 2 unconcealed, undisguised, open, revealed, literal, bald, manifest, out-and-out, overt, uncovered, straightforward, direct, unvarnished, unembellished, cold, hard, plain, unadorned, basic, simple: The bare facts point to him as the culprit. 3 unfurnished, undecorated, vacant, stripped, empty: The landlord entered and found a bare flat - the tenants had done a moonlight flit. 4 denuded, stripped, leafless, defoliated, shorn, barren; bared: After the storm the trees were entirely bare of foliage. The hurricane began blowing in earnest, and the little ketch was driving forward under bare poles. 5 plain, mere, simple, minimal, essential, absolute, basic; meagre, scant, scanty: For years we scraped by with only the bare necessities of life.

--v. 6 expose, lay bare, uncover, reveal, open; undress, unveil: The torrential rain had washed away the soil, baring the clay and rock beneath. He tore off his shirt, baring his hairy chest. 7 disclose, reveal, lay bare, uncover, divulge, unfold, tell, expose, unmask, bring to light: Because of the way he had treated her, she decided to bare his secrets to the police. Benson bares his soul in his book. 8 strip, divest, denude; defoliate: The autumn winds bared all the trees in the arboretum.

barefaced adj. 1 unconcealed, open, undisguised, blatant, manifest, unmitigated, outright, downright, out-and-out, sheer, unalloyed, undiluted: His proposal is a barefaced attempt to gain control of the committee. 2 audacious, impudent, shameless, insolent, impertinent, immodest, bold, arrant, unabashed, forward, brazen, brassy, saucy, pert, unblushing, Colloq cheeky: She said that he was a barefaced liar and that she would have nothing more to do with him.

barely adv. scarcely, only, just, not quite, hardly, only just, no more than: I barely had my coat off when she said she'd forgotten to shop for dinner.

bargain n. 1 agreement, contract, understanding, arrangement, covenant, pact, compact, settlement, transaction, deal: We made a bargain - I would provide the materials and he would do the work. 2 good deal, Colloq give-away, US steal: If you paid only œ100 for this painting, you got a real bargain.

--v. 3 negotiate, trade, haggle, barter, dicker, chaffer: We bargained far into the night, and finally came to an agreement after eight hours of discussion. 4 bargain for. expect, count on, anticipate, foresee, take into account, allow for, be prepared for: Even though the storm had been predicted, it was windier than we had bargained for.

barren adj. 1 sterile, childless, infertile: We won't have any calf from this barren cow. 2 unproductive, sterile, bare, infertile; fruitless, dry, unfruitful, unprofitable, poor: The land was exceedingly stony and barren. The fifteenth century was the most barren period in the history of English literature.

barrier n. 1 bar, fence, railing, wall; ditch, ha-ha: A barrier was erected at each end of the street. This barrier will keep the dingoes from killing the sheep. 2 obstacle, bar, obstruction, block, impediment, hindrance: Neither race, nor creed, nor colour shall be a barrier to success. 3 boundary, boundary-line, limit, frontier: No mountain barrier lay between France and Flanders.

barring prep. excluding, exclusive of, bar, omitting, leaving out, excepting, except (for), save for, aside from, besides, but: Barring another stock market crash, your money is safe. Nobody else, barring the author, knew the truth of the matter.

base° n. 1 bottom, foot, support, stand, pedestal: The base of the statue cracked and the whole thing fell down. Have you been able to find a teak base for the new lamp? 2 groundwork, background, fundamental principle, principle, foundation, underpinning; infrastructure, basis: Henry's charter was at once welcomed as a base for the needed reforms. 3 root, theme, radical, stem, core: In the word interdigitation the base is -digit- . 4 home, station, camp, starting-point, point of departure, post, centre: Using the Sherpa village as a base of operations, we set up smaller camps as we began to climb the mountain.

--v. 5 establish, found, secure, build, ground, anchor, fix, hinge, form; derive, draw: We are basing all our hopes on his ability to do a deal. 6 establish, headquarter, post, station, position, place: The company is based in Guernsey.

baseý adj. 1 low, undignified, cowardly, selfish, mean, despicable, contemptible, filthy, evil: He must have had some base motive in revealing to her what Martha had said. 2 degraded, degrading, menial, inferior, mean, unworthy, lowly, low, grovelling, servile, slavish, subservient, downtrodden, abject, miserable, wretched, sordid, undignified, ignoble, dishonourable, disreputable, vile, scurrilous, wicked, Colloq infra dig: Foolish sinners will submit to the basest servitude, and be attendants of swine. 3 mean, cheap, sorry, common, poor, shabby, shoddy: He cast off his base attire, revealing a splendid suit of armour like burnished gold. 4 sordid, offensive, lewd, lascivious, obscene, profane, rude, ribald, unseemly, vulgar, coarse, rude, dirty, indecent, evil-minded, filthy, pornographic: The entertainment in that theatre caters to the basest appetites. 5 poor, shoddy, cheap, fake, pinchbeck, inferior, counterfeit, fraudulent, debased, forged, spurious, worthless, bad: Her jewels look valuable but are, in fact, made of base materials. 6 wicked, evil, wretched, corrupt, shameful, currish, loathsome, scurvy, insufferable, villainous: They were labelled as base infidels and treated with contempt and cruelty.

bashful adj. 1 shy, retiring, embarrassed, meek, abashed, shamefaced, sheepish, timid, diffident, self-effacing, unconfident; ill at ease, uneasy, uncomfortable, nervous, self-conscious, awkward, confused, Colloq in a tizzy, US and Canadian discombobulated: Henry is so bashful in the presence of women that he blushes merely talking to them. 2 modest, coy, unassuming, unostentatious, demure, reserved, restrained, Rare verecund:

When we first met, she was a bashful young girl of fifteen who had no notion of her own beauty.

basic adj. fundamental, essential, key, elementary, underlying, prime, primary, root; principal, central, focal, vital: He enrolled for a basic course in Sanskrit. We must reconsider the basic facts.

basis n. 1 foundation, base, bottom, heart, footing, principle, underpinning; infrastructure: The three R's form the basis of elementary education. Do you think our society still rests on the basis of the family? 2 essence, main ingredient or constituent, point of departure: The basis of the discussion is that the hospitals are understaffed.

batch n. 1 quantity, lot; amount, volume: Mother baked a huge batch of bread. 2 set, group, number, quantity, assortment, bunch, pack, collection: Please sort this batch of cards into alphabetical order.

batter v. 1 beat, hit, strike, clout, belabour, pound, pummel or pommel, pelt, bash, smite, thrash, Colloq wallop, clobber: He was battered till he was black and blue. 2 bombard, attack, assault: Battering by the cannons finally breached the wall of the fort. 3 maltreat, mistreat, ill-treat, abuse; maul, bruise, harm, mangle, disfigure: The police report an increase in complaints about battered wives and children.

battle n. 1 fight, conflict, combat, action, encounter, clash, engagement, struggle, Donnybrook, fray, Law affray; brawl, fracas, mˆl,e or melee; contest; duel, hand-to-hand encounter: You won the battle, but you lost the war. And now, the battle between the world champion and the challenger! 2 argument, dispute, altercation, quarrel, war; contest, competition; struggle, fight, crusade, campaign: The battle spilt out of the restaurant and into the street. We are not yet winning the battle against AIDS.

--v. 3 Usually, battle against. fight, contend or struggle or fight with or strive against, combat: We must battle against ignorance at every opportunity.

bauble n. gewgaw, trinket, ornament, trifle, toy, bagatelle, knick-knack, plaything, kickshaw: Wear your diamonds to the ball, my dear, not those cheap baubles.

bawdy adj. lewd, obscene, taboo, vulgar, dirty, smutty, filthy, coarse, earthy, gross, scatological, rude, lascivious, salacious, indelicate, indecent, indecorous, broad, crude, ribald, risqu,, suggestive, Rabelaisian, uninhibited, unrestrained, lusty, Literary lubricious or lubricous: Afterwards, each of us had to recite a bawdy limerick.

bawl v. 1 shout, bellow, vociferate, roar, yell, trumpet, thunder , Colloq holler: Fishwives bawled out their wares continuously, creating a deafening din. 2 cry, wail, weep, keen, squall, blubber, whimper; yelp, Colloq yammer: Stop that bawling or I'll really give you something to cry about! 3 bawl out. scold, reprimand, upbraid: My father bawled me out because I stayed out past midnight.

2.2 beach...
=-

beach n. 1 shore, lakeshore, bank, seashore, seaside, lido, strand, coast, margin, Formal littoral: The children wanted to go to the beach and build sandcastles.

--v. 2 ground, run aground, strand; careen: Despite the heavy surf, we finally beached the boat safely.

beacon n. signal, sign, fire, light, bonfire, flare, signal fire, Very light, rocket; lighthouse, pharos: Beacons blazed at the tops of the hills to spread the news of the victory. The drunkard's nose shone like a beacon.

beam n. 1 timber, scantling, girder, rafter; bar, brace, plank, board, stud, trestle: Are you sure that these beams will support the weight of the upper storeys? 2 ray, gleam; shaft; pencil: I could just make out his face in the beam of the electric torch.

--v. 3 radiate, shine; smile radiantly: The door opened and the firelight beamed forth onto the snowdrifts. 'I'm so happy to meet you at last', she beamed.

beamy adj. broad, wide, broad in the beam; big, heavy, chubby, chunky, fat, obese: She's quite a beamy boat, with accommodation for eight below. A beamy gentleman sat on my homburg, squashing it flat.

bear v. 1 carry, transport, convey, move, take, Colloq tote: She was borne round the stadium on the shoulders of her team-mates. 2 carry, support, sustain, shoulder, hold up, uphold; suffer, undergo, experience, endure: Looking after her invalid mother while working is a heavy burden to bear. 3 merit, be worthy of, warrant; provoke, invite: Gordon's suggestion bears looking into. 4 stand, abide, tolerate, brook, survive, endure, stand up to; reconcile oneself to, admit of, Colloq put up with: How can you bear such boring people? His actions will not bear examination. I cannot bear to see you unhappy. 5 have, carry, show, exhibit, display, sustain: The getaway car bore German licence plates. The knight bore the scars of many battles. She bears her grandmother's name. 6 produce, yield, develop, breed, generate, engender; give birth to, spawn, bring forth: Our apple tree did not bear any fruit this year. She bore thirteen children and still had time to write books. 7 entertain, harbour, wish: He bore her no ill will, despite her accusations. 8 bear on or upon. relate or have relevance or be relevant to or pertain to, touch on or upon, affect, concern, have a bearing on or upon, influence: I don't quite see how your illness bears on which school James attends. 9 bear out. confirm, support, corroborate, substantiate, uphold, back up: The evidence bears out what I said. 10 bear up. a survive, hold out, stand up, hold up, withstand: Can Alex bear up under the strain of keeping two jobs? b support, cheer, encourage: What hope have you to bear you up? 11 bear with. put up with, be patient with, make allowance(s) for: Please bear with me, I'm sure you'll think it was worth waiting when you see the finished result.

bearable adj. tolerable, supportable, endurable, acceptable, manageable: The heat last summer was made bearable only by frequent dips in the swimming-pool.

bearing n. 1 carriage, deportment, manner, behaviour, conduct, aspect, demeanour, posture, stance, air, attitude, mien, presence: Lewis's noble bearing makes him noticeable, even in a crowd. 2

sustaining, supporting, endurance, enduring: Thomas Jefferson considered the government of England totally without morality and insolent beyond bearing. 3 aspect; relation, reference, relationship, correlation, pertinence, relevance, connection, relevancy, applicability, application, germaneness, significance: The legal bearing of the case will become obvious in court. It is unclear exactly what bearing your remarks have on the situation. 4 Often, bearings. direction, orientation, (relative) position: The bearing of the lighthouse is now 180ø. Which way is north? - I have lost my bearings entirely.

beast   n. 1 animal, creature, being: He loves all the beasts of the field, of the sea, and of the air. 2 brute, savage, animal, monster: I've seen that beast hitting his wife in public.

beastly   adj. 1 uncivilized, uncultivated, uncivil, rude, crude, boorish, unrefined, coarse; cruel, inhuman, savage, barbaric, barbarous, bestial, brutal: Priscilla treats Cyril in a beastly way. 2 abominable, intolerable, offensive, unpleasant, awful, terrible, ghastly, horrid, disagreeable, horrible, hateful, execrable; foul, vile, nasty, rotten, dirty, filthy: If this beastly weather keeps up, the plane may be delayed.

beat   v. 1 strike, pound, bash, smite, batter, pummel or pommel, belabour, pelt, clout, thrash, give (someone) a thrashing or beating, drub, manhandle, thump, whack, cane, scourge, whip, bludgeon, club, cudgel, fustigate; whip, flog, lash , Colloq clobber, wallop, give (someone) a once-over: At first he refused to tell them, but then they beat it out of him. 2 defeat, best, worst, win (out) over, vanquish, trounce, rout, outdo, subdue, overcome, overwhelm, pre-empt; surpass, conquer, crush, master, US beat out: Can they beat Manchester United for the cup? He first beat the Danes, then the Russians. 3 throb, pulsate, palpitate, pound, thump: I could feel my heart beating against my ribs. 4 Nautical tack: Close-hauled, the sloop was beating to windward against the howling gale. 5 hammer, forge, shape, form, fashion, make, mould: They shall beat their swords into ploughshares. 6 mix, whip, stir, blend: Beat two eggs, then add the flour and sugar. 7 tread, wear, trample: The hunters beat a path through the forest. 8 beat it. depart, leave, abscond, run off or away, Slang US take it on the lam, lam out of here, US hit the road: You'd better beat it before the cops come. 9 beat off. drive off or away, rout: We beat off our attackers, who fled into the forest.

--n. 10 stroke, blow: The signal was to be three beats of a tin cup on the pipes. 11 rhythm, tempo, measure; pulse, throb, stress, pulsation: In boogie-woogie the beat is eight to the bar. 12 course, round, tour, route, circuit, run, path; area, bailiwick: In the old days, it was the bobby on the beat who prevented a lot of crime. As a reporter, my beat is the financial news.

--adj. 13 dead beat, exhausted, spent, drained, worn out, weary, bone-tired, fatigued, fagged: I was really beat after completing the marathon.

beautiful adj. 1 attractive, charming, comely, lovely, good-looking, fair, pretty, alluring, appealing, handsome, radiant, gorgeous, Formal pulchritudinous, Scots bonny; Colloq smashing: She's not only intelligent, she's beautiful. She entered on the arm of some beautiful youth. 2 excellent, first-rate, unequalled, skilful, admirable, magnificent, well done; superb, spectacular, splendid, marvellous, wonderful, incomparable, superior, elegant, exquisite, pleasant, pleasing, delightful, Colloq smashing: The garage did a beautiful job in tuning the engine. Armand's arranged a beautiful wedding reception for us.

beautifully
adv. 1 attractively, chicly, fashionably, delightfully, charmingly, splendidly, magnificently, Colloq smashingly: The princess was beautifully dressed in a rose satin ball-gown. 2 admirably, superbly, excellently, wonderfully, marvellously, splendidly, spectacularly, magnificently, Colloq smashingly: Emily played her solo beautifully.

beautify v. adorn, embellish, decorate, ornament, titivate, elaborate, garnish, deck (out), bedeck: The old fa‡ade was removed and the building beautified by refacing it with white marble.

beauty n. 1 loveliness, attractiveness, handsomeness, pulchritude: The beauty of the actress took my breath away. 2 belle, Colloq looker, knockout, dream, dreamboat, stunner: She was one of the great beauties of her day. 3 attraction, strength, advantage, asset: The beauty of the plan lies in its simplicity.

beckon v. signal, gesture, motion; summon, bid, call: The manager beckoned to me and I went over to see what he wanted.

become v. 1 turn or change or transform into: The princess kissed the prince, who immediately became a frog. 2 grow or develop or evolve into; mature or ripen into: It's hard to believe that this dull caterpillar will eventually become a splendid butterfly. 3 enhance, suit, fit, befit, be proper or appropriate for, behove or US behoove: Moonlight becomes you, It goes with your hair. 4 grace, adorn: Walter was a man who became the dignity of his function as a commissionaire. 5 become of. come of, happen to: What will become of you if you don't go to school?

becoming adj. enhancing, beautifying, seemly; attractive, comely, fetching, chic, stylish, fashionable, tasteful; appropriate, fitting, fit, meet, befitting, proper, suitable: Your new hairdo is most becoming, Frances.

bedlam n. pandemonium, uproar, hubbub, commotion, confusion, tumult, turmoil, furore or US furor, chaos; madhouse: The chancellor's announcement created instant bedlam in the Commons.

bedraggled

adj. soiled, dirty, muddy, muddied, untidy, stained, dishevelled, scruffy, messy; wet, sloppy, soaking or sopping or wringing wet, soaked, drenched, Colloq gungy, US grungy: We took the two bedraggled waifs in out of the pouring rain.

befitting adj. fitting, becoming, due, suitable or suited (to), appropriate (to), apropos, proper (to), seemly (for): He really ought to behave in a manner befitting his position as chairman. This must be done with a befitting sense of awe.

before adv. 1 previously, earlier, already, beforehand; formerly, in the past; once: I have told you before, don't count your chickens. 2 ahead, in advance, in front, in the forefront, first, in the vanguard, Colloq up front: He let his wife walk before, as he knew the road was mined. 3 ahead, in the future, to come: Before lie the prospects of surrendering or dying.

--prep. 4 ahead of, in advance of, in front of, forward of: The king indicated that the page should go before him. 5 in front of; in the presence of: The entire valley was spread out before me. 6 preceding, previous or anterior to, prior to; on the eve of: Before my departure I have to kiss Annie goodbye. 7 in preference to, rather than, sooner than, more willingly than: They said they would die before yielding.

--conj. 8 previous to or preceding the time when: This was a nice place before the day-trippers arrived.

beg v. 1 entreat, beseech, plead (with), crave, implore, importune, wheedle, cajole, supplicate (with), pray; ask for, request: She begged me to stay. 2 solicit, sponge, Colloq cadge, scrounge, US panhandle: When he was an alcoholic, he used to beg drinks off everyone.

beggar n. 1 mendicant, supplicant, suppliant, alms-man, sponger, tramp, vagrant, pauper, Colloq cadger, scrounger, US panhandler: We were approached by beggars on every street corner. 2 fellow, man, person, Colloq chap, guy, bloke: I feel sorry for the poor beggar who lost his wallet at the station.

--v. 3 impoverish; want, challenge, defy, baffle: The misery of those people beggars description.

begin v. 1 start (out or off or in or on), initiate, enter on or upon, set out or about, set out on or upon, Rather formal commence: We began the journey full of enthusiasm. 2 start (off), inaugurate, originate, open, launch, create, establish, found, set up; go into: We began the company five years ago. 3 arise, start, originate, Rather formal commence: The greatness of the Prussian monarchy begins with Frederick II. The paragraph begins in the middle of the page.

beginning n. 1 start, commencement, outset, onset, inception, dawn, dawning, birth, genesis, origin, creation, day one; origination, source, well-spring: There are several competing theories about the beginning of life on earth. The beginning of the idea can be traced to Galileo. 2 opening, start, inception, commencement: I have plenty of energy at the beginning of the day. The book is good at the beginning, but then it gets boring.

begrudge v. 1 resent, envy, grudge: She doesn't begrudge him his success. 2 give (be)grudgingly or unwillingly or reluctantly, deny, refuse: He begrudges her the slightest consideration.

beguile   v. 1 delude, deceive, cheat, swindle, dupe, fool, mislead, hoodwink, bamboozle, take in: She was easily beguiled by his solicitude. 2 defraud (of), deprive (of), cheat (out of or into), swindle (out of): Let no man beguile you of your reward. 3 charm, divert, amuse, distract, fascinate, engross, engage, allure: I always meet the most beguiling people at Daphne's parties.

behalf   n. on or US in behalf of or on or US in one's behalf. for, as a representative of, in place of, instead of, in the name of, on the part of; in the interest of, for the benefit or advantage of: The lawyer is acting on behalf of the heirs.

behave   v. act, react, function, operate, perform, work, conduct or deport or comport or bear (oneself); act obediently, act properly, be good: The boy behaved with great insolence. I wish the children would behave themselves.

behaviour n. conduct, demeanour, deportment, bearing, manners, comportment; action(s): His behaviour in the presence of the royal couple was abominable.

behead   v. decapitate, guillotine, Archaic decollate: Criminals and enemies of the state were formerly beheaded.

behold   v. see, look at, regard, set or lay eyes on, descry, notice, note, espy, perceive, discern, remark, view: As we emerged from the gorge, we beheld the mountain looming above us.

beholden adj. obliged, obligated, indebted, grateful, in debt, under (an) obligation: She said that she was beholden to him for everything he had done.

behove   v. US behoove; be required of, be incumbent on, be proper of, be fitting of or for, befit; be advisable for, be worthwhile for, be expeditious for or of, be advantageous to or for, be useful to or for, be beneficial to or for: It behoves you to be respectful to the chairman of the board.

belabour v. thrash, beat, pummel or pommel, buffet, pelt, lambaste: We tried to stop the drover from belabouring the poor horse with a whip.

belated adj. late; behind time, behindhand, out of date; delayed, detained: I forgot your birthday, so here's a belated gift.

belief n. 1 trust, dependence, reliance, confidence, faith, security, assurance: He retains his belief in the divine right of kings. 2 acceptance, credence; assent: His statements are unworthy of belief. 3 tenet, view, idea, sentiment, conviction, doctrine, dogma, principle(s), axiom, maxim, creed, opinion, persuasion: The belief that there is no God is as definite a creed as the belief in one God or in many gods. 4 intuition, judgement: It is her belief that nuclear energy will eventually prove economical.

believe v. 1 accept, put faith or credence in or into, find credible, find creditable; allow, think, hold, maintain, feel; take it, suppose, assume: He still believes that the moon is made of green cheese. 2 believe in. trust to or in, rely upon or on, have faith or confidence in, put one's trust in, be convinced of, swear by, credit; have the courage of one's convictions: Do you believe everything you read in the papers? The chairman believes in your ability to carry out the plan. 3 make believe. pretend, suppose, imagine, fancy, conjecture, assume: I used to make believe I was a great detective.

belittle v. diminish, minimize, disparage, slight, decry, detract from, depreciate, trivialize, deprecate, degrade, denigrate, downgrade, de-emphasize, discredit, criticize, derogate; reduce, mitigate, lessen, undervalue, underestimate, underrate, minimize, Colloq play down, pooh-pooh: He belittles the efforts of others but accomplishes nothing himself.

belligerent
adj. 1 warring; warlike, militant, warmongering, hawkish, jingoistic, bellicose, martial: The belligerent nations have agreed to discuss an accord. 2 quarrelsome, pugnacious, contentious, disputatious, truculent, aggressive, hostile, combative, antagonistic, bellicose: I cannot see why you have to take such a belligerent attitude towards the chairman.

--n. 3 warring party, antagonist, contestant; warmonger, hawk, jingoist, militant: Our country has refused to sell arms to the belligerents in the conflict.

bellow v. 1 roar; yell, shout, blare, trumpet, howl, Colloq holler: Father was bellowing that he couldn't find his pipe. The public-address system bellowed out my name.

--n. 2 roar; yell, shout, Colloq holler: The bull gave a bellow and charged.

belong v. 1 be a member (of), be affiliated or associated or connected (with), be attached or bound (to), be a part (of): Does he belong to the Green party? He didn't want to belong while his wife was a member. 2 have a (proper) place (in), be proper (to): Do you ever get the feeling that you don't belong here? 3 belong to. be owned by, be the property or possession of: That coat belongs to me.

belonging n. association, connection, alliance, relationship, affinity, relation: She says the Church gives her a strong sense of belonging.

belongings

n. (personal) property, effects, possessions, goods, things, chattels: He returned home to find all his belongings in the street.

beloved adj. 1 loved, cherished, adored, dear, dearest, darling, precious, treasured; admired, worshipped, revered, esteemed, idolized, respected, esteemed; valued, prized: He denied nothing to his beloved children. She was their beloved queen.

--n. 2 sweetheart, darling, dearest, love; lover, paramour, inamorata or inamorato, Colloq flame: He wrote poems to his beloved.

below adv. 1 lower down, further down, farther down: Please see the explanation given below. The department head could no longer resist the pressures from below. 2 beneath, underneath, under; downstairs, Nautical below-decks, Brit below-stairs: Can you hear someone walking about below? They put the captain in irons below. 3 on earth, here, in this world, under the sun: Man wants but little here below.

--prep. 4 under, underneath, beneath: Below the sea live creatures we have never even seen. Barely discernible below his nose was a tiny moustache. Sign your name below 'Yours truly'. 5 less or lower or cheaper than: The sale price is below cost. 6 deeper or further or farther down than: The current is strongest about six feet below the surface. 7 under, beneath, underneath: Her bright eyes peered at him from below the wide hat. 8 lower or less than, under: The temperature was 20 degrees below zero. 9 inferior or subordinate to, lower than: He gives orders to the servants below him. 10 inferior or secondary to, under, beneath, lower than: In exports, the USA and UK are below Japan. 11 beneath, unworthy of, unbefitting, not worth: Mugging old ladies is below contempt.

belt n. 1 sash; Literary girdle, cestus, cincture, zone: At her belt she wore a dagger in a golden scabbard. 2 zone, band, strip, circuit, perimeter; area, swath, tract, region, district: The planners ensured that each city would be surrounded by a green belt.

--v. 3 strike, hit, punch; beat, thrash: When he insulted her, I simply belted him. 4 belt out. sing or perform stridently or loudly; put over or across: Sophie Tucker was there, belting out 'One of These Days'.

bemoan v. lament, mourn or grieve or weep or moan for: She bitterly bemoaned the loss of her sole companion, her canary.

bemuse v. 1 confuse, muddle, mix up, addle, befuddle, perplex, bewilder, puzzle, Colloq US and Canadian discombobulate: The actors were thoroughly bemused by the sudden appearance of a horse on stage. 2 stupefy, benumb, numb, paralyse: I found him, completely bemused, with the empty bottle beside him.

bend n. 1 curve, turn, turning, corner; bow, angle, crook, hook, curvature, flexure: Go left at the bend in the road. If you put a bend in a wire hanger, you can fish out the obstruction.

--v. 2 arch, bow, curve, crook: Soak the branch in water and it will bend easily. Stop bending my arm - it hurts! 3 bow; curtsy or curtsey; kowtow, salaam; kneel, genuflect: The cannibal bent down before a pile of skulls. 4 incline, channel, focus, direct, steer, set; fix: He bent his attention on more important matters. She bent her steps towards the cemetery. 5 submit, bow, yield, give way, be pliant or subservient or tractable: The cabinet bends to the will of the prime minister. 6 incline, turn, deflect: As you can see, the ray is bent by the lens.

bender Colloq n. drunk, spree, bout, revel, carousal, carouse, bacchanal; Slang binge, jag, US toot: He goes off on a bender whenever his wife leaves him.

beneath adv. 1 low or lower down, below, under, underneath: Please sign beneath if you agree the terms. 2 below, underneath, under; underground: The flowers are above the ground, the roots beneath.

--prep. 3 under, underneath, below: Beneath that gruff exterior of his beats a heart of gold. 4 below, unworthy of, unbefitting, undeserving of, not (even) meriting, lower than: Your behaviour is beneath criticism.

benefactor

n. patron, supporter, sponsor, donor, philanthropist; backer, investor, supporter, Colloq angel: Our benefactor has made a donation that will enable the mission to carry on its work.

beneficial

adj. 1 advantageous, serviceable, useful, profitable, helpful, supportive, favourable, constructive, good: No measures could have been more beneficial to the kingdom. 2 healthful, healthy, salutary, salubrious; efficacious, effective: A certain amount of sunshine is quite beneficial.

benefit n. 1 advantage, profit, good, sake, gain, aid, help, service: It would be to their benefit to call off the strike. 2 Often, benefits. perquisite(s), emolument(s), allowance(s), extra(s), fringe benefit(s), Colloq perk(s): We offer one of the best schemes in the industry for employee benefits.

--v. 3 improve, aid, help, better, promote, further, advance, forward: Enrolling on a management course could benefit your chances for advancement. 4 profit, gain: No one has ever personally benefited a penny from these contributions.

benevolence

n. 1 charity, kindness, kindliness, humanity, humanitarianism, beneficence, charitableness, goodness, altruism, good will, unselfishness, philanthropy, generosity, magnanimity: The poor people in the village used to rely on his benevolence. 2 gift, grant, contribution, donation, beneficence: The victims of the famine were recipients of the benevolence of the British people.

benevolent

adj. charitable, well-disposed, gracious, good, kind, kindly, humane, humanitarian, well-wishing, thoughtful, considerate, sympathetic, caring, kind-hearted, warm-hearted, compassionate, benign, benignant; liberal, generous, magnanimous, open-handed; beneficial, helpful, salutary: That hypocrite has cast himself in the role of a benevolent despot.

benighted adj. unenlightened, na‹ve, uninformed, ignorant: That poor, benighted fool believes that the doctors can cure him.

benign adj. 1 kindly, gracious, good, kind, kind-hearted, benevolent, benignant, warm, warm-hearted, cordial, genial, congenial, tender, tender-hearted, compassionate, sympathetic, soft-hearted: It was Grandad's benign goodwill that kept us together in those hard times. 2 bland, gentle, mild, warm: A benign smile lit the headmaster's face as he announced the awards for scholastic achievement. 3 kind, favourable, fortunate; salutary, salubrious, mild, congenial, propitious: She recovered rapidly in that most benign climate. 4 non-fatal, non-malignant, non-virulent, curable, harmless: Fortunately, the biopsy showed that the tumour was benign.

bent adj. 1 curved, deflected, bowed, crooked, distorted: He complained to the waiter just because the fork was bent. 2 strange, weird, peculiar, twisted, deviant, warped, wry, awry, corrupt, corrupted; perverted, perverse, abnormal: You'd be bent, too, if you'd been in prison for fifteen years. 3 dishonest, crooked, illegal: That share deal sounds a bit bent to me: I'll pass. 4 determined, intent, set, resolved, resolute, decided, set: Garvey is bent on running in the marathon, despite his sprained ankle.

--n. 5 turn, inclination, direction, disposition, predisposition, tendency, bias, leaning, proclivity, propensity, partiality, prejudice; ability, aptitude, talent, gift: She wished to follow the bent of her own taste. He has a natural bent for music.

bequeath v. leave, make over, will, pass on, hand down or on, transmit, Law devise: Aunt Margaret has bequeathed her collection of music boxes to the museum.

bequest n. legacy, inheritance: A huge bequest was received by the hospital.

berate v. scold, chide, rate, upbraid, revile, abuse, rail at, excoriate, castigate, objurgate; harangue: In the square an ancient virago was berating a butcher.

bereave v. deprive; strip, rob, dispossess: The accident bereaved him of his child.

berserk adj. amok, mad, violent, wild, crazed, frenzied, maniacal: He went berserk, destroying tables and chairs.

beseech v. supplicate, entreat, implore, plead (with), beg, importune, obsecrate: The prisoners beseeched the king to have mercy on them.

beset v. encompass, surround, besiege; assail, attack, harass, harry, hector, bother, afflict, trouble: She was beset by all the problems involved in having a job and a family.

beside prep. 1 alongside, near, next to, with, close to, hard by, nearby, by: A handsome young man walked up and sat down beside her. 2 away from, wide of, apart from, unconnected with, off: The fact that I owe you money is entirely beside the point. 3 beside oneself. out of one's mind or wits, at the end of one's tether, overwrought, agitated, upset, crazy, mad: She was beside herself with grief when she heard the news.

besides adv. 1 in addition, additionally, also; further, furthermore, moreover, as well, too; to boot, on top of everything else, into the bargain: Maria is our choice for the post and, besides, she's the only qualified person available. On their anniversary he gave her a diamond ring and a sapphire brooch besides.

--prep. 2 over and above, above and beyond, in addition to, additionally to, as well as; aside from, barring, excepting, except for, excluding, exclusive of, not counting or including, beyond, apart from, other than: St Paul became acquainted with many Christians besides his converts.

besiege v. 1 lay siege to, beleaguer: For ten years Troy was besieged by the Greeks. 2 blockade, block, block off or up, hem in, cut off; surround, crowd round: The strikers have besieged the factory gates, not allowing anyone in or out. 3 importune, sue, petition, assail, pressurize or US pressure, press, overwhelm, inundate: The Home Office has been besieged by requests for leniency in your case.

best adj. 1 superlative, unexcelled, finest, pre-eminent, first, superb, unsurpassed, superior, excellent, paramount, first-rate, Colloq A-1, A-one: Henry VIII was the best rider, the best lance, and the best archer in England. 2 kindest, most beneficent, nicest: Which of your brothers is the best to you? 3 foremost, choicest, pre-eminent, most suitable, most appropriate, most qualified, most talented, most desirable, most outstanding: We want the best person to fill the job. 4 largest, most, greatest: She had travelled the best part of the way by ship. 5 richest, wealthiest; first-class, upper crust, upper-class: He associates only with those he considers to be the best people.

--n. 6 finest; first: The best is yet to come. 7 finery, best clothes, Colloq best bib and tucker: He was all decked out in his Sunday best. 8 greatest or maximum effort: He did his best but it wasn't enough to win.

--adv. 9 most excellently, to the fullest extent, in the most suitable way, most adroitly, most skilfully, most superbly, most artistically: All the children performed well, but Alice performed best. 10 with greatest satisfaction, most successfully: He who laughs last laughs best.

--v. 11 win (out) over, conquer, beat, surpass, overpower, get the better of, subdue, defeat, worst, vanquish, trounce, rout, crush, master, outdo, overwhelm, overcome, outwit: He was bested in three falls out of four.

bestow v. confer; give, award, present, donate, grant: The country has bestowed its highest honours on her.

bet n. 1 wager, stake, risk, venture, Brit punt, Colloq Brit flutter: He could not afford more than a small bet.

--v. 2 wager, stake, gamble, risk, hazard, play, lay, put, chance, venture, Brit punt: Every week he bet a small amount on the lottery.

betray v. 1 be or prove false or disloyal to, sell out, break faith with, let down, fail, inform on, Colloq sell down the river, Slang Brit shop: He betrayed her to the enemy. 2 reveal, disclose, divulge, impart, tell; expose, lay bare: She betrayed their hide-out to the police. He betrayed an unsuspected streak of cowardice. 3 lead astray, mislead, misguide, deceive, dupe, fool, hoodwink: He has been betrayed by his own arrogance.

betrayal n. 1 treachery, treason, disloyalty, perfidy, traitorousness, faithlessness, bad faith, breach of faith: His delivery of the country into the hands of an invader was an outright act of betrayal. 2 revelation, divulging, disclosure, divulgence: People should not be led into betrayals of their secret opinions.

better° adj. 1 superior: You're a better man than I am, Gunga Din. Can you suggest a better investment than the Channel Tunnel? I know of no better invention than the wheel. 2 more; greater, larger, bigger: I waited for her the better part of two hours. 3 wiser, safer, well-advised, more intelligent: It would be better to wait till tomorrow to tell her. 4 healthier, haler, heartier, less ill or US sick, improved; cured, recovered: You will feel better after you have eaten something.

--adv. 5 preferably, best; more wisely, more advisedly, more safely: We had better go before the trouble starts. 6 better off. a improved, happier, well-advised: You'd be better off attending a technical college. b wealthier, richer: She is better off than any of us. 7 think better of. reconsider, think twice, change one's mind: He was going to fight but thought better of it.

--n. 8 advantage, mastery, superiority, control: Don't let the obstacle course get the better of you. 9 betters. superiors: That young imp should learn how to address his elders and betters!

--v. 10 improve, ameliorate, advance, raise, elevate: It was impossible in those days for labourers to better their condition. 11 surpass, excel, outdo, outstrip, beat, improve: She bettered her record in the 100-metre hurdles by two-tenths of a second.

betterý n. gambler, speculator, wagerer, gamester, Brit punter, US bettor, Colloq crap-shooter, sport: The betters were gathered round the craps table.

bewail v. lament, mourn, bemoan, moan or mourn over, shed tears or whimper over, weep or cry or keen over, beat one's breast over: Instead of bewailing his condition, why doesn't he do something about it?

beware v. take heed, be careful, be wary, be cautious, be on one's guard, exercise caution, mind, watch out, look out, take care: There are shoals nearby, so beware. Beware the ides of March!

bewilder v. confuse, confound, perplex, puzzle, mystify, befuddle, baffle, bemuse: I was bewildered by differential calculus.

bewitch v. enchant, entrance, spellbind, charm, fascinate, beguile, cast a spell over, captivate, enrapture: She easily bewitches men with her sultry good looks and her husky, low voice.

2.3 bias...

=-

bias n. 1 prejudice, partiality; inclination, leaning, bent, disposition, propensity, tendency, predilection, predisposition, proclivity: She shows a marked bias in favour of the Irish. 2 angle, slant, diagonal: Cut the fabric on the bias. 3 influence, impulse, weight: If he is under any bias, it is on the side of fairness.

--v. 4 influence, affect unduly or unfairly, sway, incline, prejudice, colour, taint, predispose: Artists are seldom good critics of art because they have been biased.

biased adj. biased, prejudiced, partial; warped, distorted, jaundiced: I don't want to listen to your biased opinions about women's rights.

bicker v. dispute, quarrel, wrangle, argue, squabble, tiff, Colloq spat: The couple next door are always bickering about trifling matters.

bid v. 1 offer, make an offer (for), tender, proffer: We bid œ500 for the painting. 2 Archaic or literary ask, pray, press, entreat, beg, request, suggest, invite: She bade me leave her to mourn alone. 3 Formal command, demand, order, tell, enjoin, dictate: Please bid him enter. Custom bade him blow his horn.

bidding n. 1 invitation, summons: We attended the ceremony at the bidding of the vice-chancellor. 2 command, order, dictate, direction, instruction, demand: The letter was sent to all theatre directors at the bidding of the Arts Minister.

big adj. 1 large, great, grand; huge, enormous, immense, gigantic, giant, tremendous, colossal, Brobdingnagian, jumbo, Colloq Brit socking or whacking big or great, US humongous: We live in a big house in the country. 2 ample, hefty, huge, bulky, fat, obese; large, hulking, beefy, burly, brawny, strapping, gargantuan, elephantine, enormous, gigantic, immense, monstrous: The sumo wrestler was one of the biggest men I'd ever seen. 3 tall, grown, mature, grown-up, large: Christopher is certainly big for his age. 4 important, significant, outstanding, weighty, consequential, major, grave, momentous, notable, noteworthy, telling: Changing careers can be one of the biggest decisions of your life. 5 important, prominent, illustrious, noteworthy, notable, renowned, eminent, distinguished, esteemed: Mr Johnson is a big man in our town. 6 generous, magnanimous, charitable, unselfish, giving: It was very big of her to take on the support of the orphanage. 7 popular, famous, well-known, successful: That band is very big with the kids these days. 8 capital, large, upper case, majuscule: Always spell London with a big L.

--adv. 9 pompously, boastfully, conceitedly, arrogantly, pretentiously: Alfred talks big at home, but he's very modest when he's with his friends. 10 successfully, well, oustandingly,effectively: I think your speech went over big with those opposed to the new budget.

bigoted adj. prejudiced, intolerant, biased, jaundiced, one-sided, partial: The judge was bigoted against Blacks, which accounts for the unfair decision.

bigotry n. prejudice, intolerance, bias, partiality: No government that practises bigotry can survive long.

bigwig n. 1 boss, kingpin, king, queen, nabob, VIP, Colloq big-shot, big gun, big cheese, big wheel, hotshot, chief, brass hat, US (chief) honcho, Mr Big: The bigwig sits here, at the head of the table. 2 bigwigs. brass, brass hats: Don't let the bigwigs find out what we've done.

bilious adj. ill-tempered, bad-tempered, ill-natured, peevish, testy, cross, petulant, tetchy, choleric, dyspeptic, angry, wrathful: The director was absolutely bilious when he heard we had lost the account.

bill° n. 1 invoice, account; tally, reckoning, tabulation, US (restaurant) check, Colloq US tab: Have you paid the telephone bill? 2 US and Canadian note, banknote, paper money, Colloq folding money: The robbers took only small bills, which they could spend easily.

--v. 3 invoice, charge: I haven't got my cheque-book with me, please could you bill me.

billý n. beak, neb, nib, pecker; jaws: One of the birds had a fish in its bill.

bind v. 1 tie, fasten, secure, make fast, tie up: The thieves bound him hand and foot. 2 constrain; hold, oblige, obligate: The contract we signed is equally binding on both parties. The union is bound by an agreement that expires in a month. 3 gird, encircle, wreathe, wrap, cover, swathe, bandage: They were binding his wounded head. 4 cement, stick, cause to adhere; attach, connect: Ordinary glue will bind these pieces together.

--n. 5 Colloq US dilemma, predicament, tight spot, (difficult) situation, Colloq pickle, fix, jam: I'm in a real bind because I've invited two girls to the party. 6 Colloq Brit annoyance, irritant, bother, bore, trial, ordeal, irritation, vexation, Colloq pain (in the neck or arse): It was a bit of a bind having to wait three hours at the airport.

birth n. 1 childbirth, delivery, Technical parturition, Old-fashioned confinement: Nicole is expecting the birth of her first baby in early April. 2 origin, creation, emergence, beginning, start, origination: I believe we may be present at the birth of a powerful idea. 3 nativity, origin, extraction; parentage, line, lineage, ancestry, descent, family, blood: She is Scottish by birth. Hortense is of noble birth.

bisexual adj. 1 hermaphrodite or hermaphroditic(al), androgynous: Many of these microscopic animals are bisexual and self-fertilizing. 2 Colloq AC/DC, swinging both ways, Facetious ambisextrous: He was known to have had bisexual relationships.

--n. 3 androgyne, hermaphrodite: Statistics showed that more women than previously believed were bisexual.

bit n. 1 morsel, piece, scrap, fragment, shred, particle, grain, crumb: We didn't have a bit of food in the house. 2 jot, tittle, whit, scintilla, trace, touch, hint, suggestion, suspicion, particle, iota, speck, atom: There's not the slightest bit of evidence to link her with the crime. 3 moment, minute, second, flash, Colloq two shakes (of a lamb's tail): I'll be with you in a little bit. 4 piece, share, equity, segment, portion, part, fraction: He owns a little bit of the business.

bitch n. 1 shrew, nag, termagant, virago, harpy, fury, spitfire, scold: That greedy bitch has the house, and now she's suing me for half my income. 2 whore, prostitute, bawd, harlot, call-girl, trollop, strumpet, trull, drab, tart, floozie, streetwalker, Colloq bimbo, pro, US hooker, tramp, hustler,: He roamed the street every night, ending up with some bitch he found in a bar.

--v. 3 complain, object, protest, grumble, Colloq gripe: Oh, stop your bitching and get on with it! 4 bungle, botch, ruin, spoil: They bitched the job by using too little paint.

bite v. 1 nip; chew, gnaw: That dog of yours bit a piece out of my ankle. 2 sting: She was bitten by a mosquito.

--n. 3 mouthful, morsel, scrap, bit, piece, taste; snack, Slang nosh: The survivors hadn't had a bite of food for three days. Come round for a bite on Sunday evening before the concert. 4 sting: These mosquito bites itch horribly.

biting adj. severe, harsh, cutting, piercing, penetrating, keen, sharp, bitter; cold, wintry, freezing: The biting wind went right through his thin coat.

bitter adj. 1 harsh, acerbic, acrid, sharp, caustic, mordant: I added some cream to the sauce to try and make it taste less bitter. 2 unappetizing, distasteful, unsavoury, unpleasant, hard (to swallow or take), irritating, obnoxious, disagreeable, nasty, painful, unwelcome, unpalatable: The demand for additional tax payments was a bitter pill. 3 miserable, grievous, dispiriting, distressing, cruel, distressful: Dismissal after all those years in the firm was a bitter experience. 4 resentful, embittered, rancorous; hateful: Andrew felt bitter at not being selected as chairman. 5 stinging, cutting, biting, harsh, reproachful, vicious, acrimonious, virulent; cruel, unkind, unpleasant, nasty: His bitter denunciation of other candidates lost him the campaign. 6 sharp, keen, cutting, severe, biting, cold, wintry, freezing: A bitter gale lashed at the rigging.

bitterness
n. 1 harshness, acerbity, acrimony, acrimoniousness, bitterness, spleen, Literary gall and wormwood: The bitterness of his opponent's attack was totally uncalled for. 2 animosity, hatred, resentment; hostility, antagonism: She felt bitterness in her heart over the way she had been treated.

bizarre adj. 1 eccentric, unusual, unconventional, extravagant, whimsical, strange, odd, curious, peculiar, queer, offbeat, fantastic, weird, incongruous, deviant, erratic, Slang kinky: The police thought his behaviour somewhat bizarre and invited him down to the station for questioning. 2 grotesque, irregular, nonconformist, nonconforming, outlandish, outr,, quaint, fantastic, unconventional: His house is a bizarre mixture of baroque and modern design.

2.4 blab...

=-

blab Colloq v. broadcast, tattle, babble, betray, reveal, disclose, divulge, expose: Don't tell Frieda - she'll blab your secrets all over town.

blabbermouth
Colloq n. tell-tale, babbler, chatterer, gossip, Colloq blab, tattle-tale, big-mouth: Oscar is such a blabbermouth that you can't tell him anything you don't want everyone to know.

black adj. 1 jet, jet-black, coal-black, inky, sooty, swart, swarthy, raven, ebony, dusky, Literary ebon, hyacinthine: Her hair was as black as coal. 2 Negro, Negroid, coloured, dark-skinned: Most of the Black races live near or south of the equator. 3 dark, pitch-black, jet-black, coal-black, Stygian; starless, moonless: He bundled his coat round himself and walked into the black night. 4 dark, sombre, dusky, gloomy, menacing, glowering, louring or lowering, threatening, funereal: The sky became black with storm clouds. 5 malignant, baleful, baneful, deadly, deathly, sinister, dismal, hateful, disastrous: It was a black day when he came into my life. 6 bad, foul, iniquitous, wicked, evil, diabolical, infernal, hellish, atrocious, awful, malicious, abominable, outrageous, vicious, villainous, flagitious, vile, disgraceful, unscrupulous, unconscionable, unprincipled, blackguardly, knavish, perfidious, insidious, nefarious, dastardly, treacherous, unspeakable, disgraceful, shameful, scurvy, criminal, felonious: You have told the blackest lies about me. 7 angry, wrathful, furious, frowning, bad-tempered, sulky, resentful, clouded, threatening, glowering: She gave him a black look and he withered in abject fear.

--v. 8 boycott, embargo, blacklist, ban, interdict: Because of the dispute over plumbers' wages, the other building-trades unions have blacked every manufacturer in the business.

blacken v. 1 darken, smudge, begrime: The chimney sweep's face was blackened with soot. 2 slander, libel, asperse, cast aspersions on, traduce, smear, sully, soil, besmirch, taint, tarnish, defame, revile, malign, vilify, discredit, denigrate: His article has blackened my reputation.

blackleg n. scab, strikebreaker: Despite the strike, the plant is being operated by blackleg labour.

blackmail n. 1 extortion, ransom, tribute, US graft: Even if you pay the blackmail, that is no guarantee that he won't demand more later.

--v. 2 extort money from; force, coerce, compel, make: They had discovered his indiscretions and were blackmailing him. He blackmailed her into signing the alimony settlement.

blade n. 1 knife, cutting edge: Don't hold the knife by the blade. 2 Literary sword, rapier, sabre, dagger, poniard, stiletto, cutlass, bayonet, knife, penknife, jackknife: She plunged the blade in up to the hilt. 3 leaf, leaflet, frond, shoot: The blades of grass were flattened where he had walked. 4 Rather old-fashioned playboy, ladies' man, man about town, fop, dandy: He was quite a gay blade in his youth.

blame v. 1 find fault with, censure, criticize, fault; accuse, charge, indict, condemn, point to, point (the finger) at, rebuke, reprimand, recriminate, reproach, scold, reprehend, reprove: Don't blame me if you can't get to school on time. 2 hold responsible, fix (the) responsibility upon or on, put or place or lay (the) blame on, lay at someone's door, denounce, incriminate: Why blame Carol for the mess?

--n. 3 censure, criticism, reproof, rebuke, recrimination, disapproval, disapprobation, reproach, objurgation, condemnation, reprehension: The cyclist put the blame for the accident on me. 4 culpability, responsibility; guilt, Slang rap: Why should you take the blame for something that Donald did?

blameless adj. faultless, guiltless, innocent, irreproachable, unimpeachable: Hugh has led a blameless life.

bland adj. 1 gentle, soothing, smooth, mild, suave, urbane, cool, unruffled, calm, composed, unemotional, nonchalant, insouciant: His reaction to the news of the invasion was bland indifference. 2 insipid, boring, dull, uninteresting, ennuyant, tasteless, Colloq US plain vanilla; Slang US blah: The play is a bland mixture of clich,s embedded in a tired plot.

blank adj. 1 empty, plain, bare: I stared at the blank paper, unable to write even my name. 2 unornamented, unadorned, undecorated, void: Whenever Irena sees a blank wall she feels compelled to hang a painting on it. 3 vacant, empty: The actor's mind went completely blank

--he had forgotten his lines. 4 passive, impassive, expressionless, emotionless, vacuous, mindless, unexpressive: He gave us a blank look when asked about the missing rare stamps. 5 disconcerted, discomfited, nonplussed, confused, helpless, resourceless, perplexed, dazed, bewildered: The two old men looked at each other with blank and horror-stricken faces. 6 unrelieved, stark, sheer, utter, pure, unmixed, absolute, unqualified: Jack faced the blank prospect of solitary confinement.

--n. 7 space; line, box: Please fill in the blanks on the form. 8 nothing, zero, nil; void, emptiness: I asked her when the baby was coming, but I drew a blank.

blare v. 1 blast, bellow, trumpet, ring, boom, thunder, roar, bray; resound, echo, reverberate, resonate: Everyone in the neighbourhood can hear your hi-fi blaring.

--n. 2 blast, bellow, ring, roar, boom, noise, sound, clamour: The games began with a blare of trumpets.

blas, adj. 1 bored, jaded, weary, unimpressed, ennuy,: Her blas, attitude does little to endear her at job interviews. 2 indifferent, cool, superior, supercilious, sophisticated, unmoved, nonchalant, emotionless, phlegmatic, apathetic, pococurante, carefree, light-hearted, insouciant: His blas, behaviour hides his basic feelings of insecurity.

blaspheme v. 1 curse, swear, imprecate, execrate, profane, damn: They were denounced for blaspheming against God. 2 abuse, malign, calumniate, defame, disparage, revile, put down, decry, deprecate, depreciate, belittle: The ungrateful wretches blaspheme the charitable soul who would help them.

blasphemous

adj. profane, impious, irreverent, disrespectful, sacrilegious, irreligious, sinful, wicked, evil, iniquitous: He was excommunicated for his blasphemous writings.

blast n. 1 blow, gust, wind, gale: The door opened and a blast of icy air made us shiver. 2 blare, sound, noise, racket, din, bellow, roar; boom: At the trumpet-blast thousands of Goths descended screaming on the camp. 3 explosion, burst, eruption, discharge; detonation: A blast of dynamite levelled all the houses in the vicinity. 4 (at or in) full blast. fully, at full tilt, at the maximum, completely, thoroughly, entirely, maximally, Slang with no holds barred, US to the max: The factory was going full blast before the strike.

--v. 5 blow up, explode, dynamite, demolish, destroy, ruin, waste, lay waste, shatter, devastate: The pillbox was blasted out of existence by our guns. 6 defame, discredit, denounce, criticize, attack; ruin, destroy: The candidate has been blasted by the press. 7 curse, damn: The minister continued to blast the proposal till the legislature dropped it.

blatant adj. 1 obvious, flagrant, palpable, obtrusive, arrant, shameless, unashamed, brazen, overt, glaring: Those hooligans have shown a blatant disregard for the law. 2 noisy, clamorous, loud, bellowing, strident, vociferous, rowdy, boisterous, obstreperous, uproarious: The blatant radical faction insists on making itself heard.

blaze n. 1 flame, fire, holocaust, inferno, conflagration: The fuel barrels exploded, feeding the blaze. 2 outburst, eruption, flare-up: Her speech fanned the Lower House into a blaze of resentment. 3 light, brightness, brilliance, brilliancy, glow: The blaze of lamps lit up the whole square.

--v. 4 burn, flare up, flame: In a few minutes the logs were blazing merrily. 5 blaze away (at). fire, shoot, open fire, blast; bombard, shell: The enemy appeared, and we just blazed away at them.

bleach v. 1 whiten, lighten, fade, blanch, blench, Technical etiolate: My jeans are all bleached by the sun.

--n. 2 whitener, chlorine: Add a little bleach to the laundry.

bleak adj. 1 cheerless, dreary, depressing, dismal, gloomy, sombre, melancholy, sad, unhappy, mournful: 1940 was one of the bleakest periods in British history. 2 cold, chilly, raw, bitter: The days were getting shorter, and the bleak winter was setting in. 3 barren, bare, exposed, windswept, desolate: How depressing the bleak landscape of the Russian steppes can be in winter!

blemish v. 1 deface, mar, scar, impair, disfigure: They did nothing to blemish the beauty of the landscape. 2 tarnish, stain, sully, spoil, mar, flaw, harm, damage, scar, injure, bruise, besmirch: She has blemished my reputation by spreading those stories about me.

--n. 3 disfigurement, scar, mark, impairment, stain, smear, blot; defect, flaw, error, fault, imperfection, error, erratum: Her complexion was entirely without blemish.

blend v. 1 mix, mingle, combine, meld, commingle, intermingle: The Latakia is blended with the Virginia to produce a fine smoking tobacco. 2 shade, grade, gradate, graduate, merge, coalesce, fuse, unite: Note how the pink sky and the tinted clouds blend in this Turner painting.

--n. 3 mixture, mix, combination, mingling, meld, commingling, intermingling: His humour is a fine blend of the sardonic with slapstick.

bless v. 1 consecrate, hallow, sanctify; extol, glorify, praise, revere, adore: God bless this ship and all who sail in her. Bless the Lord. 2 give, make happy or fortunate, endow, favour, furnish, provide, supply, grace: She is blessed with one of the most beautiful soprano voices that I have ever heard.

blessing n. 1 benediction, prayer, consecration: Each spring the vicar officiated at the blessing of the fleet. 2 boon, favour, advantage, good fortune, godsend, luck, profit, gain, help, asset, gift, bounty: Hot, sunny days are a blessing for wine growers.

blight n. 1 affliction, disease, plague, infestation, pestilence, scourge: The crops were visited with a blight that lasted seven years. 2 misfortune, curse, trouble, woe, calamity: Genius may suffer an untimely blight.

--v. 3 afflict, infest, plague, scourge; wither, mar, taint, blast: Central Africa has been blighted by famine after famine.

blind adj. 1 sightless, eyeless, unsighted, purblind, stone-blind: He has been blind from birth. 2 imperceptive, slow, insensitive, thick, dense, obtuse, stupid, weak-minded, dull-witted, slow-witted, dim-witted, Colloq Brit gormless: How blind some parents are! There's another case of the blind leading the blind. 3 indiscriminate, undiscriminating, heedless, reckless, rash, impetuous, inconsiderate, unreasoning, mindless, senseless, thoughtless, unthinking, irrational, delusional: He did her bidding with the blind obedience of a dog. 4 blind to. unaware or unconscious of, impervious or insensible to, unaffected or untouched or unmoved by: The critics were blind to her merits as a novelist till many years had passed.

--v. 5 deceive, blindfold, blinker; bamboozle, hoodwink, fool: Wolsey could not blind himself to the true condition of the church. How jealousy blinds people! 6 conceal, hide, eclipse, overshadow; dazzle, blindfold: The bright lights of the city blinded our view of the airport runway. Her beauty blinded him to her greed.

--n. 7 shade, curtain, screen, cover, shutter(s), awning: The sun is too bright - please draw the blind. 8 pretence, pretext, front, cover, smokescreen, stratagem, subterfuge, ruse, trick, deception, Colloq dodge; Slang scam: The plumbing service is merely a blind for getting into houses to rob them.

blindly adv. recklessly, heedlessly, deludedly, indiscriminately, rashly, impetuously, irrationally, thoughtlessly, mindlessly, senselessly, unthinkingly: Despite his parents' warnings, he went blindly on, till one day he was arrested.

blink v. 1 wink, flicker, Technical nictitate: She blinked in the strong light. 2 twinkle, flicker, gleam, glimmer, shimmer, flash, sparkle, scintillate, coruscate: A billion stars blinked in the wintry sky. 3 flinch, wince, shrink, quail, blench, recoil, start, move: She didn't even blink when she had the injection. 4 blink at. wink at, ignore, overlook, disregard:

That inspector has been known to blink at health violations.

--n. 5 wink, flicker: He switched the cards in the blink of an eye. 6 on the blink. Colloq out of order, broken, in disrepair, not working or operating, not operational, Slang US out of whack, on the fritz: The fridge is on the blink again.

bliss n. happiness, blitheness, gladness, joy, blessedness, delight, felicity, glee, enjoyment, pleasure, joyousness, cheer, exhilaration, gaiety, blissfulness, rapture, ecstasy: The bliss of our honeymoon has remained with us throughout our marriage.

blithe adj. 1 blissful, happy, cheerful, joyous, merry, light-hearted, well-pleased, delighted, gay, joyful, elated, jubilant: His spirit was blithe and his heart unquenchable. 2 happy-go-lucky, insouciant, heedless, carefree, unconcerned, blas,, casual, detached, indifferent, uncaring, careless: She goes through life with a blithe disregard for the feelings of others.

bloated adj. swollen, distended, fully, puffy; puffed up, overgrown, inflated, pompous: He felt bloated after the enormous banquet. That bloated, conceited, self-important petty official had the gall to refuse me a visa.

blob n. gob, gobbet, globule, drop, droplet, bit, gout, lump, dab, Colloq glob, Chiefly US and Canadian smidgen or smidgin: There's a blob of jelly on your tie.

block n. 1 piece, chunk, hunk, lump, slab; stump; brick, cube: The figure is carved out of a solid block of stone. 2 bar, obstacle, obstruction, hindrance, stumbling-block, deterrent, impediment, barrier: Her arrival should be no block to your leaving.

--v. 3 obstruct, close off, barricade; bar, shut off; hinder, hamper, balk, impede, prevent: Entry to the playing field was blocked by the police. 4 block out. a rough out, design, outline, sketch, lay out, plan: The colonel blocked out a strategy for our escape. b mask, screen, blank (out), erase, eliminate, exclude, blot out, deny: She has blocked out that part of her life from her mind. 5 block (up). stuff (up), congest, clog, Colloq Brit bung up: My nose is all blocked up because of this awful cold.

bloodshed n. slaughter, carnage, butchery, killing, murder, blood-letting; violence; genocide: Let's settle this peaceably and avoid bloodshed.

bloodsucker

n. leech, extortionist, extortioner, blackmailer; parasite, barnacle, Colloq sponge, freeloader, scrounge, scrounger; Slang US moocher: He's nothing but a bloodsucker, always demanding more and more money.

bloodthirsty

adj. murderous, homicidal, savage, feral, cruel, ruthless, pitiless, vicious, brutal, sadistic, ferocious, fierce, Formal sanguinary, Literary fell: Bloodthirsty pirates had slaughtered the whole crew.

blot n. 1 stain, spot, mark, smudge, blotch, blemish, disfigurement, smear, smirch, scar, Colloq splodge or US also splotch: An ink blot covered the date of the document. There are a few blots on his record from his time in the army.

--v. 2 stain, spot, spatter, smudge, mark, blur: You have blotted these pages where you wrote with a fountain-pen. 3 blot one's copybook. err, destroy or ruin or mar or spoil one's reputation, commit an indiscretion, transgress, sin: She's certainly blotted her copybook by having an affair with that subaltern. 4 blot out. a obscure, conceal, cover (up), hide, eclipse, dim: The clouds blotted out the sun for a few minutes. b obliterate, destroy, erase, demolish, efface, annihilate, delete, rub or wipe out: He subconsciously blotted out all memory of the accident.

blow° v. 1 breathe, puff, exhale; expel: If the crystals turn green when you blow into the tube, it means that you've had too much to drink. Blow some air into the balloon. 2 waft, puff, whistle, whine, blast: An icy wind blew through the cracks in the windows. 3 Colloq bungle, botch, make a mess of, muff, mismanage, Colloq screw up, mess up, fluff, bugger up, Taboo fuck up: It was my last chance to win and I blew it. 4 Colloq spend, lavish, squander, waste, throw out or away: She blew hundreds on that dress and now she won't wear it. 5 short-circuit, burn out: All the fuses blew when I turned on the electric heater. 6 blow hot and cold. vacillate, hesitate, dither, Colloq shilly-shally: The sales manager has been blowing hot and cold over my proposal for a month now. 7 blow out. a extinguish: I blew out all the candles in one breath. The match blew out in the wind. b explode, burst: One of my tyres blew out on the way over here. c short-circuit, burn out: The lights blew out during the storm. 8 blow up. a become furious or angry or enraged, flare up, lose one's temper, Slang blow one's top or US also stack, flip one's lid: She really blew up when I said I was going to the pub. b explode, burst, shatter, Colloq bust; detonate, dynamite, destroy, blast: The bridge blew up with a roar. Demolition experts will blow up the dam. c enlarge, inflate, embroider, magnify, expand, exaggerate, overstate: The tabloid press has blown up the story out of all proportion. d enlarge, magnify, amplify, expand, increase: Can you blow up just this corner of the photograph? e inflate; distend, swell: We were busy blowing up balloons for the party.

--n. 9 gale, storm, tempest, whirlwind, tornado, cyclone, hurricane, typhoon, north-easter, nor'easter: We can expect a big blow tonight - winds of gale force, they say.

blowý n. 1 stroke, punch, clout, whack, hit, knock, thump, thwack, Colloq wallop: He was felled by a blow to the chin in the fourth round. 2 shock, surprise, bombshell, jolt, bolt from the blue, revelation: It came as a blow to learn that she was leaving in a month.

blue adj. 1 depressed, low-spirited, dispirited, sad, dismal, down, down in the mouth, gloomy, unhappy, glum, downcast, crestfallen, chap-fallen, dejected, melancholy, despondent, downhearted, morose: I've been feeling blue since Kathleen left me. 2 obscene, vulgar, indecent, titillating, pornographic, dirty, filthy, lewd, smutty, risqu,, bawdy, sexy, X, X-rated, 18, US XXX; indelicate, suggestive, off colour, erotic, coarse, offensive, improper: There's a place nearby that shows blue movies.

bluff° v. 1 deceive, hoodwink, dupe, mislead, delude, trick, cozen, fool, Colloq bamboozle: I bluffed him into believing that I held four aces. 2 pretend, feign, bluster, fool, Colloq kid; Slang bullshit: She became frightened, unaware that I was only bluffing.

--n. 3 bombast, bravado, boasting, bragging, bluster, show, puffery; deception, blind; Literary rodomontade, gasconade; Colloq hot air: Roger's ranting is all bluff - he's really very timid.

bluffý adj. 1 blustering, gruff, rough, abrupt, blunt, curt, short, crude: Fred's bluff manner puts many people off. 2 frank, open, hearty, straightforward, plain, plain-spoken, outspoken, affable, approachable, good-natured, friendly: That comment is typical of his bluff honesty.

--n. 3 cliff, escarpment, precipice, scarp, headland, promontory, palisades: As you sail down the lower Hudson river, the tall bluffs form a natural wall along the western bank.

blunder v. 1 stumble, flounder: I had somehow blundered into a meeting of the local crime syndicate. She blundered upon the truth when she saw them together.

--n. 2 mistake, error, gaffe, faux pas, slip, slip-up, howler, Colloq boo-boo, screw-up, fluff, boner, US goof, goof-up: I made a stupid blunder in telling him about the plans.

blunt adj. 1 dull, worn: This knife is too blunt to cut bread. 2 abrupt, curt, rough-spoken, plain-spoken, short, direct, candid, frank, unceremonious, undiplomatic, inconsiderate, thoughtless, brusque, outspoken, bluff, brash, indelicate, rude, uncivil, ungracious, discourteous, impolite; straightforward, straight, uncomplicated, uncompromising: Ralph may be blunt, but at least you know exactly where you stand with him.

--v. 3 dull, take the edge off: You've blunted the scissors cutting that cardboard. 4 soften, mitigate, mollify, soothe; efface, dim, obscure, blur, weaken: Mother's love is an absorbing delight, blunting all other sensibilities.

blur n. 1 indistinctness, dimness, haziness, cloudiness, fogginess: We were unable to pick out the star from the blur of the Galaxy. 2 fog, haze, Brit fuzz: Without my spectacles, everything is a blur.

--v. 3 dim, befog, obscure, bedim; efface: My vision was momentarily blurred, and I didn't see the oncoming car. 4 obscure, hide, conceal, veil, mask; weaken: The Honourable Gentleman has blurred the distinction between the unemployed and the unemployable.

blurt v. Usually, blurt out. burst out with, utter; reveal, disclose, give away, divulge, Colloq blab: She blurted out the name of her accomplice.

blush v. be or act ashamed, redden, flush, colour: He blushed when asked if he still loved Belinda.

bluster v. 1 storm, rage, harangue: It won't do any good to bluster on about the postal service. 2 swagger, strut, talk big, boast, brag, blow one's own horn or trumpet, show off, crow: He's always blustering about his conquests.

--n. 3 swaggering, storming, raging, raving, haranguing, tumult; hot air, puffery, bravado, grandiloquence, Literary rodomontade: He's all bluster and will do nothing despite his threats.

2.5 board...

=-

board n. 1 plank, scantling, timber: We nailed the last board in place and the house was finished. 2 table, gaming-table, game table or surface: I have the chessmen, have you brought the board? 3 food, meals, provisions: I am moving to the country, where room and board are cheaper. 4 council, committee, directors, directorship, management, cabinet, panel, trustees, advisers: That issue will be discussed at the meeting of the board. 5 on board. aboard, on: Young children are not allowed on board the boat.

--v. 6 go aboard, ship aboard; enter, embark on: We all boarded the ship but it didn't leave for an hour. 7 feed; eat, take meals; accommodate, lodge, house, billet, quarter; lodge, stay, live, room; Colloq put up: Mrs O'Brien already boards three gentlemen at her house, but she has agreed to let me board there too.

boast n. 1 brag, bragging: They did not make good their boasts of being the fastest in the competition.

--v. 2 brag, vaunt, crow, show off, Colloq US blow or toot one's (own) horn or trumpet; Slang lay it on thick, talk big: He boasted that he was the best poker player in the casino.

boastful adj. ostentatious, show-off, bragging, vainglorious, egotistical, vain, conceited: She's boastful about her wealth, but it was all left to her by her mother.

boat n. vessel, craft, skiff, small craft, motor boat, speedboat, knockabout, runabout, yacht, motor yacht, sailing-yacht, Brit rowing-boat, sailing-boat, US row-boat, sailboat, Colloq ship: I bought a 30-foot boat at this year's show. They went off on a slow boat to China.

bode v. portend, promise, augur, betoken, forebode, presage; foreshadow: The weather bodes well for the picnic.

body n. 1 corpse, cadaver, remains, carcass, Slang stiff: A body has been dragged up from the lake. 2 trunk, torso: They found the body, but the arms, legs, and head were missing. 3 main part or portion, hull, fuselage: The body of the plane remained intact, though the wings and superstructure broke away. 4 substance, essentials, main part, essence, heart, centre, core: The body of the book is all right, but the index needs work. 5 majority, bulk, main part or portion, mass(es): Under Henry VIII the main body of the people were prosperous. 6 association, league, band, corps, confederation, fraternity, society; committee, council; group, assemblage, assembly, congress, company: It is not within the power of this body to do more than vote on the proposal. 7 richness, substance, firmness, consistency, solidity, thickness, density, fullness, viscosity, fullness: This wine has excellent body. Add a little cornflour to give the sauce more body.

bog n. 1 swamp, fen, marsh, quagmire: The peat bogs have yielded interesting fossils. 2 bog down. impede, slow, hamper, encumber, stymie, stick, handicap, clog, check, set back, hold back: Traffic is bogged down owing to roadworks.

bogus adj. counterfeit, spurious, fake, false, fraudulent, sham, imitation, fictitious, Colloq phoney or US also phony: The police reported that a gang was trying to pass bogus money to unsuspecting shopkeepers in the area.

Bohemian adj. nonconformist, unconforming, unconventional, unorthodox, casual, free and easy: In the '60s she became a flower person and adopted a Bohemian way of life.

boil°   v. 1 bubble, seethe; simmer, stew, steam: A pot of soup was boiling on the kitchen stove. 2 seethe, fume, sizzle, smoulder, chafe, fulminate, ferment, sputter, splutter, bluster: When she learned what he had been saying about her, she boiled with furious indignation.

boilý   n. abscess, carbuncle, pustule, Technical furuncle: The doctor said the boil had to be lanced at once.

boisterous

adj. rowdy, clamorous, rough, noisy, lively, exuberant, unruly, wild, undisciplined, tempestuous, stormy, turbulent, Colloq rambunctious: The boys were sent outside because of their boisterous behaviour.

bold   adj. 1 courageous, brave, plucky, confident, stout-hearted, lion-hearted, daring, enterprising, audacious, fearless, unafraid, intrepid, resolute, dauntless, undaunted, valiant, stout, valorous, stalwart, adventurous, venturesome; reckless, foolhardy, incautious, daredevil, rash: It would take a bold man to enter the ring with the champion. 2 audacious, presumptuous, forward, immodest, brazen, impudent, temerarious, impertinent, shameless: It was very bold of you to speak your mind to the boss. 3 pronounced, outstanding, striking, vigorous, clear, strong, vivid, distinct, conspicuous: He wrote down their demands in a good, bold hand.

bolster   v. support, prop (up), brace, shore up, buttress, uphold, back (up), reinforce, aid, help, assist, further, advance: The miners cited a lack of safety measures to bolster their arguments.

bolt   n. 1 arrow, dart, projectile, missile, Historical quarrel: He had only three bolts remaining for the crossbow. 2 pin, bar, rod, catch; latch: We hoped that the bolt would prevent their opening the door. 3 machine screw: Bolts can be tightened or removed, unlike rivets. 4 roll, length: We sell only full bolts of fabric. 5 lightning flash, thunderbolt, Formal fulguration: One bolt travelled down the television aerial and blew out the set. 6 bolt from or out of the blue. surprise, shock, bombshell, bomb, blow, revelation, eye-opener, Colloq shocker: The news of her resignation came like a bolt from the blue. 7 shoot one's bolt. exhaust or use up one's resources, Slang burn out, US poop out: He was fast early in the marathon, but he'd shot his bolt long before the finishing line.

--v. 8 spring, dart, shoot off, take flight, run (away or off), rush (off or away), break away, flee, decamp, abscond, escape, fly, dash (off or away), Colloq skedaddle, scram, Brit scarper, do a bunk, do a moonlight flit, US take a (run-out) powder,: The youths bolted as soon as they saw the police. The couple in room 315 bolted without paying their bill. 9 gulp (down), swallow whole: When the bell rang, she bolted her breakfast and ran out of the back door. 10 fasten, lock, latch, secure: Make sure you bolt your door at night and don't let anyone in. 11 fix, attach, fasten, connect, make fast to: The motor must be securely bolted to the workbench.

--adv. 12 bolt upright. erect, straight, rigidly, stiffly: When her name was called, Penny sat bolt upright in her chair.

bomb   n. 1 bombshell, shell, explosive: One of the bombs blew up the school.

--v. 2 bombard, shell, batter, blow up: Last night the railway station was bombed.

bombard   v. 1 batter, bomb, shell: The artillery continued to bombard the enemy with everything in their arsenal. 2 assail, attack, assault, set upon; besiege: The Prime Minister was bombarded with requests to amend the law.

bombast   n. pretentious language, flatulence, bluster, show, grandiloquence, magniloquence, hot air, bravado, boast, boasting, Literary gasconade, rodomontade; Colloq puffery: The speaker continued to bore the audience with his pompous bombast.

bombastic adj. high-flown, extravagant, pompous, grandiose, grandiloquent, magniloquent, inflated, fustian, flatulent, turgid, Literary euphuistic: The Minister made a bombastic speech full of emotive appeals, but his actual arguments were unconvincing.

bombshell n. surprise, shock, eye-opener, bomb, blow, revelation, bolt from or out of the blue, Colloq shocker: Then came the bombshell - she and Tony had been married the week before.

bona fide adj. genuine, authentic, attested, real, veritable, legitimate, true, valid; in good faith, sincere, honest: The jeweller affirmed that it was a bona fide ruby. I don't believe her reasons are bona fide.

bond   n. 1 tie(s), shackles, chains, fetters, manacles, handcuffs, trammels, thongs, cord(s), rope(s); restraint(s), constraint(s), check(s), control(s), rein(s): The council is hampered by the bonds of the old regulations. 2 covenant, pact, contract, agreement, engagement, compact, treaty: To unite the party a bond of confederacy was formed. 3 connection, link, linkage, union, tie, relationship: The main bond between us was a shared love of the theatre. The bond between the veneer and the board should hold with a little more glue.

--v. 4 cement, bind, hold together, stick, cohere: They use mortar to bond the bricks together.

bondage   n. slavery, servitude, subjection, subjugation, enslavement, serfdom, thraldom; vassalage, villeinage: The poor souls were kept in bondage for most of their lives, forced to row in the galleys till they died.

bonny   adj. beautiful, comely, attractive, pretty, lovely: She's grown into quite a bonny lass.

bonus   n. reward, largesse, hand-out, perquisite, extra, honorarium, tip, gratuity, remuneration, compensation, Colloq perk: Employees often receive a Christmas bonus.

book   n. 1 volume, tome, work, publication; hard-cover, soft-cover, paperback: Our personal library contains more than 5000 books. 2 libretto, words, lyrics: Richard Rodgers wrote the music and Oscar Hammerstein the book for several hit shows. 3 rules, laws, regulations: He always insists that we go by the book.

--v. 4 engage, reserve; earmark, ticket; order, register, enrol, list, enlist, log, record, post: Please phone the restaurant and book a table for four for seven-thirty.

bookkeeper
n. clerk; accountant, Brit chartered accountant, CA, cashier; US CPA, certified public accountant: The office was haunted by the melancholy ghosts of departed bookkeepers.

bookworm n. bibliophile, book-lover, inveterate or ardent reader, Formal bibliophage: Fiona is such a bookworm, she hardly does anything but read.

boom v. 1 sound, resound, resonate, blast, rumble, thunder, roar, bang, explode: We heard the cannons booming in the distance. 2 prosper, thrive, flourish, progress, grow, increase, burgeon or bourgeon: Business is booming in every sector.

--n. 3 blast, rumble, explosion: There was a resounding boom and the car went up in flames. 4 prosperity, profitability; growth, increase, burgeoning or bourgeoning: In this business it is either boom or bust.

boomerang v. rebound, recoil, backfire, miscarry, redound: His plan boomeranged.

boon n. gift, favour, award, reward, gratuity, present; blessing, benefit, advantage: The mobile library service is a great boon to the elderly in the area.

boor n. 1 rustic, peasant, yokel, (country) bumpkin, provincial, backwoodsman, US hayseed, hill-billy, Juke, Kallikak, Slang hick: The boor is blind to the beauties of nature. 2 barbarian, yahoo, oaf, clod, clodhopper, philistine, clown, Grobian; hoyden, Colloq lummox, Slang galoot, slob, US goop, slobbovian: The guests behaved like boors, throwing their food at each other.

boorish adj. rustic, barbarian, rude, crude, ill-mannered, uncultured, coarse, clownish, uncouth, loutish, oafish, gawky, vulgar, ill-bred: How can you even think of inviting such a boorish fellow?

boost n. 1 lift, shove or push up or upward(s), Colloq leg up; rise, raise: If you give me a boost up, I can reach the window ledge. 2 encouragement, help, aid, assistance, support: With a boost from your constituency, Trevor should win the vote. 3 increase, rise, US raise, hike: He was given a slight boost in salary as an incentive to stay.

--v. 4 lift, shove or push up or upward(s), raise: He boosted her over the fence. The second stage is intended to boost the rocket beyond the atmosphere. 5 encourage, promote, help, aid, support, assist, improve: A talk from the manager before the game helped to boost the players' morale. 6 increase, raise: Her salary was boosted twice in one year.

boot n. 1 to boot. in addition, into the bargain, in addition, besides, moreover, as well, also, too, additionally: He's stingy and cruel - and ugly to boot. 2 shoe, riding-boot, bootee: I need a new pair of boots for my walking holiday.

--v. 3 eject, expel, shove, propel, push, Colloq kick: The landlord booted three rowdies out of the pub. 4 Literary profit, avail, help, be in aid of: What boots it to complain?

booth n. 1 stall, stand: Our company has taken three booths at the book fair. 2 compartment, cubicle, box, kiosk: We walked across the road to a telephone booth and phoned a garage.

bootless adj. pointless, unavailing, vain, purposeless, useless, futile, worthless, unproductive, ineffective, inefficacious, fruitless, unprofitable, profitless, unremunerative, unrewarding, wasteful, time-wasting, Sisyphean: It's a bootless task trying to persuade him of the importance of a good education.

booty n. plunder, gain, spoil(s), contraband, takings, loot, Slang swag, boodle, (hot) goods, take: The pirates fought over the booty seized from the Spanish galleon.

booze n. 1 drink, (hard) liquor, spirit(s), whisk(e)y, alcohol, US demon rum, John Barleycorn, mountain dew, white lightning, white mule; Slang rot-gut, poison, fire-water, mother's ruin, US and Canadian sauce, juice, hooch, red-eye: I ordered plenty of booze for the party.

--v. 2 drink, tipple; Humorous bibulate; Slang hit the bottle, US hit the sauce: He has a terrible hangover after boozing all night.

border n. 1 edge, margin, hem, binding, trimming, trim, edging, periphery, purfle, purfling: The border of the tablecloth is beautifully embroidered with flowers. 2 Usually, borders. limit(s), bound(s), confines: Sometimes Tony exceeds the borders of good taste. 3 boundary, frontier: You won't be able to cross the border without a passport. 4 frame, frieze, moulding; dado, wainscot or wainscoting or wainscotting: The border of the fresco is in Greek fretwork design. 5 borderline, edge, verge, brink: She is just on the border of becoming a born-again Christian. 6 bed, flowerbed, herbaceous border: Hollyhocks are growing in the border.

--v. 7 edge, trim, bind, fringe, purfle: The hem of the skirt is bordered with lace. 8 resemble (closely), approach (closely), verge upon or on: Isabel's attempts at playing the tuba border on the ludicrous. 9 lie alongside, adjoin, abut (on or upon), verge upon or on, touch, be adjacent to: The territory of the Gauls bordered the western lands of the Germans.

bore° n. 1 hole, drill-hole, borehole: A bore of six inches was carried to a depth of 2086 feet.

--v. 2 pierce, perforate, drill, penetrate, puncture, tap, punch, stab, prick; sink, tunnel, dig (out), gouge (out); hollow out: Bore a hole through this sheet metal. The oil rig is boring through solid rock.

boreý n. 1 annoyance, nuisance: Reggie is such a bore - always talking about himself.

--v. 2 weary, wear out, tire, exhaust, jade: The programme so bored me that I fell asleep.

boredom n. dullness, dreariness, ennui, tedium, monotony: I have to look forward to the boredom of an evening of chamber music.

boring adj. dull, monotonous, tedious, humdrum, tiresome, dreary, flat, dead, uninteresting, unexciting, ennuyant, stale, tired, dry, dry-as-dust, arid; tiring, wearying, wearisome, exhausting, soporific; repetitious, wordy, prolix, unending, long-drawn-out: Felicity's boring old stories put me to sleep.

borrow v. take, appropriate, draw, adopt, refer to, obtain, Colloq sponge, cadge, touch (someone) for, US bum; Slang mooch: Has Fred borrowed my lawnmower again?

Borstal n. youth custody centre, approved school, Now chiefly US reform school, reformatory: He was too young to go to prison, so he was sent to a Borstal.

bosom n. 1 breast, chest, bust; Slang boobs, knockers, tits, titties, pair, jugs, Brit Bristols: The sex goddess's lack of talent was more than compensated for by her ample bosom. 2 midst, interior, heart, core, centre: She was welcomed into the bosom of the family as if she had been their own child. 3 soul, heart, heart of hearts, bowels, blood, Colloq gut: I know he loves me, I can feel it in my bosom.

--adj. 4 close, intimate, dear, beloved, cherished, boon, special, confidential: We were once bosom companions.

bosomy adj. big-busted, busty, well-endowed: This tabloid always has a bosomy model on page 3.

boss n. 1 chief, supervisor, head, administrator, manager, foreman, superintendent, overseer; employer, director, proprietor, owner, Brit managing director , US president, Dialect himself, Colloq supremo, Brit governor, gov., gaffer, US super, leader, kingpin, big cheese, the man, Slang honcho, head or chief honcho, Mr Big, prex or prexy: If you have to leave early, check with the boss. The company boss was interviewed on television last night.

--v. 2 supervise, head, manage, run, oversee, overlook, direct, control, superintend, command, take charge, be in charge: Clive has been here only a year and he's already bossing a department. 3 domineer, push or shove around or about, dominate, order about, lord it over: That slave-driver had better stop bossing me about or I'll quit!

bossy adj. overbearing, domineering, dictatorial, tyrannical, despotic, imperious, lordly: Her boyfriend is awfully bossy - and they're not even married yet.

botch v. bungle, mismanage, spoil, Colloq screw or louse up, blow, mess up, muck up, make a mess or hash or muddle of; Slang bollocks or ballocks or US bollix up: Give Gordon an assignment and he's sure to botch it.

bother v. 1 annoy, pester, worry, irritate, trouble, hector, harass, hound, dog, nag, plague, needle, Colloq hassle; Slang US nudge: I wish they'd stop bothering me about paying the telephone bill. 2 trouble (about), fuss (at), make a fuss (about), concern oneself (with), burden: Too few people are interested in bothering about the welfare of others. 3 confuse, bewilder, perplex, perturb, upset, disconcert, discomfit: She was increasingly bothered by her inability to understand the local language.

--n. 4 trouble, inconvenience: Those pets must be a lot of bother. 5 worry, annoyance, vexation, nuisance, irritation, trouble, effort, disturbance, upset, Slang hassle: Painting the lattice will be more bother than it's worth. 6 dither, flutter, Colloq tizzy, pet, stew, lather, sweat: She seems to have worked herself into quite a bother about something quite insignificant. 7 pest, irritant, nag, nuisance, Colloq pain, pain in the neck or Brit taboo arse or US taboo ass; Slang US nudge: Mother is such a bother, always asking if I wear my galoshes when it rains. 8 disturbance, to-do, ado, commotion, fuss, trouble, disorder, stir, hubbub: We ran into a bit of bother at the pub last night.

bottle n. 1 flask, container; fiasco, decanter: The milkman left two bottles of milk. 2 courage, nerve, manliness, manfulness, grit, backbone, gumption, mettle, pluck, Dutch courage, Slang guts; Colloq spunk, starch, US moxie: He was going to tell her off but lost his bottle at the last minute. 3 the bottle. alcohol, alcoholic drink, spirit(s), liquor, booze, sauce: He's back on the bottle after only two weeks of being on the wagon.

--v. 4 bottle up. a contain, restrain, hold back, control, suppress, repress, hold or keep in check, stifle: All the emotions, bottled up for so long, burst upon him at once, and he

wept pitiably. b trap, cut off, hem in, box in: With the help
of the posse, we can bottle up the gang in the canyon.

bottom n. 1 seat, buttocks, rear, behind, rear end, derriŠre, rump, posterior, hindquarters, breech, fundament, gluteus maximus, Colloq backside, butt, prat, Brit bum , US can, duff, keister or keester, hinie; Taboo Brit arse, US ass; Slang US tokus or tochis or tuchis, tushie or tushy or tush: He just sits there on his bottom, never doing a bit of work. 2 base, foot, foundation, groundwork, substructure, footing, underpinning, fundament: A ditch was dug along the bottom of the wall. 3 basis, foundation, source, origin, cause, heart, nub: We have to get to the bottom of the problem. 4 depths, Davy Jones's locker; bed: The ship sank to the bottom of the sea. 5 at bottom. basically, fundamentally, in the final or last analysis, really, in reality, truly, in truth, essentially: Despite her behaviour at the party, at bottom she is very reserved. 6 Bottoms up! Prosit!, To your (very good) health!, Cheers!, Here's to -!, Skol!: Here's to the whole team - Bottoms up!

bottomless

adj. unfathomed, unfathomable, abyssal, abysmal, inexhaustible, unlimited, immeasurable, unplumbable: The bottomless ignorance of the man is incredible.

bounce n. 1 bound, leap, hop, recoil, ricochet, rebound: The ball took a bad bounce and the infielder missed it. 2 vitality, energy, verve, zest, vivacity, liveliness, animation, dynamism, life, Colloq pep, zip, go, get-up-and-go: Betty has so much bounce, she is a bit tiring to have around.

--v. 3 bound, rebound, hop; recoil, ricochet: The ball bounced over the wall and into the river.

bound° n. 1 Usually, bounds. boundary, boundary-line, limit(s), extent, border(s), confines: Please try to keep the dogs within the bounds of the estate. Carl's plan is beyond the bounds of common sense.

--v. 2 limit, restrict, confine, delimit, define, circumscribe: The river bounds the property on the east.

boundý n. 1 leap, jump, vault, spring; bounce, hop: With a great bound, the dog was upon me. 2 by leaps and bounds. See leap, 7, below.

--v. 3 leap, jump, hop, spring, vault, gambol, caper, romp, frolic, bounce, Colloq galumph: The wolfhound came bounding towards me across the meadow.

bound° adj. 1 tied, fast, fixed, fastened, confined, secured: We were bound hand and foot and left in the cave. 2 obliged, obligated, required, constrained, forced, compelled: In the circumstances, Philippa was bound to do as she was told. 3 determined, resolved: Otto is bound to go to the party if Antonia is going. 4 likely, certain, sure, destined, predestined, fated, doomed: He is bound to get the sack if he goes on turning up late. 5 destined, scheduled, booked; headed, directed: We were bound for Cardiff.

boundary n. border(s), limit(s), frontier(s); bound(s), confines, perimeter: If you cross that boundary, you will be safely in Switzerland.

boundless adj. limitless, unbounded, unlimited; illimitable, vast, endless, unending, infinite, immense, enormous, immeasurable, incalculable, measureless, unrestricted, unchecked, inexhaustible, unstoppable, unbridled, uncontrolled, Literary vasty: How can you keep up with a teenager's boundless energy?

bountiful adj. 1 generous, beneficent, munificent, liberal, unsparing, unstinting, charitable, eleemosynary, magnanimous, Literary bounteous: We are grateful to Sir Roger, our most bountiful patron, for endowing this library. 2 ample, abundant, plenteous, plentiful, copious, rich, Literary bounteous: Until the Stock Exchange d,bƒcle, these shares paid bountiful dividends.

bounty n. 1 generosity, liberality, munificence, charitableness, philanthropy, charity, unselfishness, beneficence, goodness: The poor used to be dependent on the bounty of the local gentry. 2 gift, present, largesse, grant, subsidy, endowment, subvention: People should be given work and not live off the bounty of the state. 3 reward, award, premium, bonus, gratuity: In America they paid a bounty of œ50 for every dead wolf.

bouquet n. 1 nosegay, posy, bunch, arrangement, spray: I sent her a bouquet of spring flowers for her birthday. 2 aroma, scent, odour, fragrance, perfume: This '83 burgundy certainly has a fine bouquet. 3 compliment(s), praise, commendation: Mrs Campbell received many bouquets for her performances.

bourgeois adj. 1 middle-class, conventional, philistine, capitalistic, propertied; materialistic, greedy, money-grubbing, money-hungry: The yuppies constitute the modern bourgeois element in society. 2 working-class, proletarian, plebeian: In his bourgeois mind, he had only his labour to offer.

bout   n. 1 turn, round, time, occasion, spell, period, session: He's just got over a bout of pneumonia. 2 chance, spree, stint, opportunity, innings: We had long planned this bout of shopping. 3 contest, match, boxing-match, prizefight, meet, set-to, struggle, encounter, engagement; duel: A bout has been arranged between the heavyweight champion of the world and a challenger from Puerto Rico.

bow   n. 1 nod; curtsy or curtsey, salaam, kowtow, genuflection, prostration, obeisance: We all bowed respectfully before the emperor.

--v. 2 defer, yield, submit, give in, bend, bow down, capitulate: I bow to your greater knowledge of the subject. 3 bend, incline, lower: The servants bowed their heads when the master entered. 4 weigh down, crush, overload, bend down, burden: Michael was bowed down by the responsibilities of his new family. 5 nod, curtsy or curtsey, salaam, kowtow, genuflect, prostrate oneself, salaam, make obeisance: The natives bowed as the king passed by.

bowels   n. interior, insides, depths; heart, centre, core, intestines, viscera, vitals, belly, gut, Colloq innards, guts: We descended the shaft into the very bowels of the earth. She hates me, I can feel it in my bowels.

bowl°   v. move, trundle, wheel, roll, spin: We saw him in his car, bowling along at about 40.

bowlý   n. dish; basin, pan: She brought me a bowl of cereal.

box°   n. 1 case, receptacle, crate, carton, container, casket, coffer, caddy, chest: She keeps her valuables in a small tortoise-shell box on the dressing-table.

--v. 2 crate, encase, package: The candles are boxed in dozens. 3 box in or up. trap, confine, bottle up, hem in, enclose, surround; pin down: They have the horses boxed in and are now driving them into the corral.

boxý v. 1 fight, engage in fisticuffs, spar, battle: When he was in the army, he boxed for his regiment. 2 strike, buffet, punch, hit, Colloq slug, sock, whack, thwack, clout, belt, thump, lambaste, whomp: Every time she heard him swear, she'd box his ears.

--n. 3 blow, buffet, punch, hit, strike, Colloq slug, sock, whack, thwack, clout, belt, thump, whomp: How would you like a box on the ear, you young rascal!

boy n. 1 lad, youth, young man, stripling, youngster, schoolboy, fellow, urchin, brat, Colloq kid, guy, small fry, little shaver: There were two girls and five boys in my family. 2 servant, house-servant, attendant; lackey, slave, Archaic knave, varlet, rogue, wretch, caitiff: Here! Boy! Bring me another gin and tonic. 3 old boy. Brit (public) schoolmate; friend, chum, pal, Archaic old bean, old egg, old crumpet, dear boy; crony: I say, old boy, care for a rubber of bridge? Carruthers wouldn't be where he is now if it weren't for the old-boy network.

boycott v. 1 blacklist, embargo; avoid, refuse, shun, reject, eschew, pass over or by: They are boycotting Fern's Dairy because it won't hire women. The US government is still boycotting cigars from Havana.

--n. 2 embargo, blacklist, blacklisting, ban: A boycott of their products soon forced them to change their policies.

boyish adj. 1 young, youthful, juvenile, adolescent: She liked his boyish good looks. 2 childish, puerile, juvenile, immature: Don't be too hard on them - it was just a boyish prank.

2.6 brace...

=-

brace n. 1 bracket, stiffener, reinforcement, reinforcer, support, buttress, prop, stay, strut, truss: Two steel braces have been installed to steady the columns. 2 drill: He bored three holes in the wood with his brace and auger. 3 clasp, clamp, buckle, fastener, clip, holdfast, catch, coupler, coupling: Another brace will be needed here to strengthen the handle. 4 pair; couple, span, team (of two): A brace of duelling pistols was sold at auction last week for œ20,000. Her carriage was drawn by a brace of palominos.

--v. 5 steady, reinforce, support, strengthen, prop or shore up: Iron bars are used to brace the arches. 6 brace oneself. steady or gird or prepare oneself; hold or hang on: I braced myself against the likelihood that she would refuse.

bracing adj. invigorating, tonic, stimulating, refreshing, exhilarating, fortifying, restorative: I cannot live in the tropics and need the more bracing climate of the north.

bracket n. 1 support, corbel, console: The mantelpiece rests on a pair of stone brackets. 2 shelf: Her collection of glass paperweights was arrayed on a bracket in the sitting-room. 3 category, class, set, group, grouping, classification, division, level; order, grade, rank: He comes from an altogether different bracket of society.

--v. 4 classify, rank, group; unite, combine, join, link: I wish you wouldn't bracket her with me - our politics are as different as day and night.

brag v. boast, crow, trumpet, vaunt, strut, swagger, show off, Colloq talk big, blow or toot one's own horn or trumpet, go on about: He's always bragging about what he did in the war.

braggart n. boaster, bragger, braggadocio, windbag, peacock, show-off, Scaramouch or Scaramouche, Slang big-mouth, loud-mouth, gasbag: That braggart William Smith talks about himself incessantly.

braid n. 1 plait: Katrina wore her blond hair in a tightly coiled braid on top of her head. 2 trimming, embroidery, soutache, lace, fillet, band, ribbon: The edges are decorated with narrow braid containing gold thread.

--v. 3 plait, intertwine, interlace, weave, twist: At school we learned how to braid leather laces into a belt.

brain n. 1 brains, intelligence, intellect, understanding, sense, thought, imagination, capacity, perspicacity, perceptiveness, perception, percipience; wisdom, sagacity, wit, discernment, acumen; knowledge, cognition: Although she's not yet ten, she has the brain to become a great mathematician. 2 genius, mastermind, intellectual; leader, planner: Many people regard Einstein as the greatest brain of the 20th century. Ivor was clearly the brains of the operation.

brake n. 1 curb, check, restraint, restriction, constraint, control, rein: The central bank applied a brake to the upward trend of the dollar by buying Deutschmarks.

--v. 2 slow, slow up or down, put on or apply the brakes, reduce speed, decelerate, slacken, hold up: He braked before the bad curve. She braked the car going down the steep hill.

branch n. 1 offshoot, arm; limb, bough, stem, shoot, twig, sprig: The branches of this tree need trimming. 2 department, section, subsection, division, subdivision, office, part, ramification; affiliate, subsidiary; spin-off: What branch of medicine are you going to specialize in? The company maintains branches in New York and Melbourne.

--v. 3 ramify, divide, subdivide, diverge; diversify: This road branches off in three directions. The company will branch out into electronics this year.

brand n. 1 kind, make, type, sort, variety; brand name, manufacturer, maker, trade name, trade mark, label, mark, marque, Chiefly US and Canadian name brand: Which brand of toothpaste do you prefer? Our advertising agency is conducting a survey of brand loyalty.

--v. 2 mark, stamp, identify, tag, label, trade-mark: We sell only branded merchandise in our shops. 3 label, characterize; stigmatize, discredit, disgrace: Because his actions at the front were misinterpreted, Corporal Williams was branded as a coward.

brand-new adj. new, unused, fresh, firsthand, mint, virgin: We bought a brand-new car last week.

brash adj. 1 hasty, rash, impetuous, precipitate, impulsive, headlong, reckless: He may be a brash young man, but I think he's going places. 2 impudent, rude, impertinent, disrespectful, insolent, forward, audacious, brassy, brazen, bold, tactless, undiplomatic, presumptuous, Colloq cheeky, fresh: Her brash behaviour has already landed her in trouble with the headmistress.

brass n. effrontery, gall, nerve, temerity, impudence, insolence, rudeness, Colloq cheek, nerve: He had the brass to turn down a knighthood.

brassy adj. 1 impudent, forward, insolent, saucy, brash, rude, brazen, shameless; coarse, flashy, florid, flamboyant; Colloq cheeky, fresh: Our landlady was a big brassy blonde. 2 harsh, strident, tinny, grating, dissonant, shrill, loud: She has just the right kind of brassy voice for belting out songs like, 'There's No Business Like Show Business'.

bravado n. boldness, bluster, boasting, braggadocio, swagger, front, self-assurance, Literary rodomontade, gasconade; arrogance, pretentiousness, Colloq machismo, Slang Brit side: With an attempt at bravado, the union leader refused to meet the management representatives.

brave adj. 1 fearless, intrepid, bold, courageous, daring, gallant, stout, stout-hearted, valiant, valorous, stalwart, plucky, staunch, undaunted, dauntless, unafraid, unfearing, indomitable, heroic, Colloq macho; Slang gutsy: Despite her misgivings about her proposal, she put on a brave face in the boardroom. He was brave to face the enemy alone. 2 fine, handsome, grand, splendid, showy, colourful, spectacular, smart: The colonel made a brave appearance in full Highland regalia.

--v. 3 challenge, defy, dare; brazen (out), face, confront, encounter, meet: We had to brave the elements in the open boat. I had to brave my father at breakfast.

bravery n. daring, courage, valour, heroism, fortitude, fearlessness, intrepidity, intrepidness, pluck, determination, staunchness, firmness, resoluteness, resolution, indomitability, stalwartness, Colloq machismo: One has to admire the bravery of a woman who supported suffrage in the early 1900s.

brawl n. 1 fight, mˆl,e or melee, battle, battle royal, Donnybrook, fray, wrangle, dispute, disorder, brannigan, fracas, row, quarrel, squabble, Colloq punch-up, free-for-all, scrap, ruckus: The police had to be brought in to break up the brawl.

--v. 2 fight, wrangle; row, quarrel, squabble, Colloq scrap: The two brothers always seem to be brawling.

brawn n. muscle(s), strength, robustness, brawniness, might, power, Colloq huskiness: It must take a lot of brawn to lift those weights.

brawny adj. muscular, strong, tough, robust, mighty, powerful, burly, strapping, beefy, hefty, bulky, Colloq husky: That brawny fellow tossing the caber is my brother.

brazen adj. brassy, shameless, barefaced, brash, outspoken, forward, immodest, unashamed, audacious, candid, open, unabashed, brazen-faced; rude, impudent, impertinent, insolent, saucy, Colloq cheeky, fresh, US sassy: That's the last time I'll let that brazen hussy near my husband!

breach n. 1 break, violation, infraction, disobedience, non-observance, infringement, contravention: Their failure to comply with paragraph 3 is a clear breach of our contract. 2 break, rift, gulf, split, break-up, separation, rupture, severance, schism, split, alienation, estrangement: There seems to be no way to heal the breach between them. 3 gap, fissure, crack, split, hole, opening; chasm: Their cannon opened a breach in the castle wall.

--v. 4 rupture; break through, invade: The sea has breached the dyke. Someone breached the security measures set up for the missile design.

breadth n. 1 width, wideness, broadness, beam, span, spread, thickness: The breadth of the cloth is 54in. 2 extent, magnitude, degree, amount, scope, expanse, range, area, depth, detail: I like the breadth of coverage of the six o'clock news. 3 liberality, largeness, catholicity, latitude: Great breadth of vision was exhibited in the conference papers.

break v. 1 break apart or up or asunder, fracture, rupture, break into bits, come apart, shatter, shiver, crack, crash, splinter, fragment, split, burst, explode, Colloq bust: The ball flew over the fence and broke my neighbour's window. She fell and broke her wrist. 2 reveal, announce, disclose, divulge, tell, make public: Break the news to him gently. 3 relax, ease up, improve, ameliorate, change for the better: When will this spell of wet weather break? 4 demolish, smash, destroy, crush, ruin, defeat, foil, frustrate: The power of the dictator was finally broken. 5 ruin, bankrupt: He's the man that broke the bank at Monte Carlo. 6 weary, exhaust, wear out, weaken, debilitate: Twenty years in the chain-gang had broken him completely. 7 crush, overcome; cow, cripple, demoralize, weaken, undermine, discourage: The divorce has broken her spirit. 8 break in, tame, discipline, train, condition: I used to break horses for a living. 9 violate, transgress, disobey, contravene, defy, infringe, fail to observe, ignore, disregard, flout: If you break the law, you'll regret it. They broke the contract. 10 break off, discontinue, interrupt, sever, cut off; give up, suspend, disrupt: We broke relations with Spain after the incident. It is very difficult to break a habit of a lifetime. The narrative breaks at this point, to be taken up later. 11 break up, divide, disperse, scatter: The rain is over and the clouds are breaking. 12 break loose or away or forth, separate from, break out (of), escape (from), depart (from): The ship broke from its moorings during the storm. 13 break forth, burst forth; emerge or come out suddenly: The storm broke in all its fury. After a little while, the sun broke through. 14 demote, Colloq bust: He was broken from sergeant to private. 15 break away. leave, depart, separate (oneself): A small group broke away from the established church to worship as they saw fit. 16 break down. a demolish, destroy: All right, men, let's break down that wall. b decompose, break up; analyse: The carbon dioxide molecules and water are broken down by photosynthesis. c collapse, give way, disintegrate, be crushed, be prostrated: His health has broken down completely. 17 break ground. initiate, begin, commence, found, set up, establish, inaugurate, be innovative, innovate, Colloq break the ice, take the plunge, start the ball rolling: Laser printers have broken new ground in the area of computer printout. 18 break in. a interrupt, interpose, interject, burst in, intrude, intervene, interfere, disturb: If the results of the election become known, we shall break in to keep you informed. b train, educate, prepare; accustom, condition, habituate, wear: We'll break you in for a week or two on the new machine. Wear your new boots for an hour each day to break them in. c rob, burgle, burglarize, break and enter: Someone broke in and stole my video recorder last night. 19 break off. a discontinue, stop, cease, end: Sally broke off in mid sentence. After the Fashoda Incident, Britain broke off relations with France. b disengage; sever, detach, break: A large branch broke off from the tree and crashed down, narrowly missing me. 20 break out. a escape; emerge, appear: She broke out of prison in 1985 and hasn't been seen since. b erupt, come out in, break out in or into: He breaks out in a rash from eating strawberries. A war could break out any minute. 21 break the ice. See 17, above. 22 break through. penetrate, force or get through: Wit, like beauty, can break through the most unpromising disguise. 23 break up. See also 11, 16 (b), above. a disband, disperse; disintegrate: Heraclius succeeded in breaking up the Persian power. b fracture, fragment, comminute: In the spring, the ice on the river breaks up. c See 24 (a), below. 24 break with. a break up (with), separate from, leave, depart from: The leader broke with the party and established a new organization. Sally has broken up with Michael. b renounce, repudiate, disavow: They have broken entirely with the traditions we valued so highly.

--n. 25 fracture, split, separation, rupture, breach, rift, schism: There was a break in a gas pipe. Disagreement over the fishing grounds has resulted in a break in relations. 26 gap, opening, hole; crack, slit: You can escape through a break in the wall near the bridge. 27 interruption, discontinuity, discontinuation, hesitation, suspension, hiatus, gap, lacuna, unevenness, irregularity: There was a five-minute break in transmission from the ship. 28 rest, respite, rest period, coffee-break, tea break, intermission, interlude, lull, pause, playtime, US recess, Colloq breather: We take a break at ten o'clock. 29 chance, stroke of luck, opportunity, opening: All he needs is a break to get started.

breakdown n. 1 collapse, downfall, failure, foundering; destruction, ruin: There was a breakdown of our computer system. The arbitrators blamed a breakdown of communication between union and management. 2 (mental) collapse, nervous breakdown, Colloq crack-up: She had a bad breakdown after her daughter was killed. 3 analysis, run-down, detailing, review; decomposition, itemization, classification, dissection, distillation, fractionation: I want a breakdown of these figures by noon. The chemical breakdown of the substance indicated the presence of arsenic.

breakneck adj. reckless, dangerous, daredevil; excessive, careless, headlong, rash, Colloq hell for leather: The car came round the corner at breakneck speed on two wheels.

breast n. 1 chest, bosom, bust; teat, Technical mamma, Slang boob, knocker, tit, titty: He clasped the child to his breast. On some beaches in Europe, women bare their breasts when sunbathing. 2 soul, core, heart, heart of hearts: I feel in my breast it is the right thing to do.

breath n. 1 gust, zephyr, breeze, puff, whiff, stirring, stir: There wasn't a breath of air in the tent. 2 hint, suggestion, indication, touch, murmur, whisper, soup‡on: She never allowed the breath of scandal to affect her behaviour. 3 take one's breath away. astound, astonish, surprise, amaze, dazzle, startle, shock, stagger: The sheer beauty of the waterfall takes your breath away.

breathe v. 1 live, exist: She believes that there never breathed a wiser man than her father. 2 inhale and exhale, respire, suspire: He was breathing regularly. 3 exhale, expel, puff, blow: The banner depicts a dragon breathing fire. 4 whisper, murmur, hint (at), suggest, tell, speak, say: She told me not to breathe a word of it to anybody.

breathless

adj. 1 panting, out of breath, winded, gasping, exhausted, spent, worn out, tired out, Colloq Brit puffed: We were breathless after carrying the piano up two flights of stairs. 2 surprised, amazed, astonished, astounded, awestruck, staggered: The news of Penny's having given birth to twins left me breathless. 3 eager, agog, feverish, in suspense: We were all breathless with anticipation as the compŠre opened the envelope.

breed n. 1 kind, sort, type, variety, species; race, lineage, stock, family, strain: What breed of dog won at Crufts this year?

--v. 2 produce, generate, bring forth, create, engender, hatch, beget, give rise to, develop, cause: The cheese is so old it's breeding maggots. Familiarity breeds contempt. 3 raise, rear, cultivate, propagate: Charollais cattle are widely bred in Europe today. 4 arise, originate, appear; develop, grow, increase, multiply: The sergeant allowed discontent and jealousy to breed within his platoon.

breeding n. 1 rearing, bringing-up, raising, cultivation, development, propagation: The breeding of sheepdogs has been Tom's hobby for years. 2 (good) upbringing, (good) manners, civility, politeness, politesse, gentility, (good) behaviour: You can tell from the way she treats people that she has breeding.

breeze n. 1 breath, puff, zephyr, wind, draught, gust, Nautical cat's-paw: A breeze sprang up from the north, and the little boat moved forward. 2 easy or simple job or task, nothing, Colloq snap, Slang cinch, US lead-pipe cinch: It ought to be a breeze to find someone at that salary.

breezy adj. 1 airy, fresh, windy, draughty, brisk, gusty: The afternoon was breezy and warm, ideal for walking. 2 casual, carefree, light-hearted, cheerful, cheery, airy, lively, spirited, blithesome, buoyant: The chairman's breezy opening of the annual meeting made everyone feel comfortable.

brevity n. shortness, briefness, conciseness, concision, terseness, succinctness, pithiness, compactness, laconicism or laconism, economy: Brevity is the soul of wit.

brew v. 1 ferment, cook, boil; infuse: Our beer is brewed using the best hops. 2 concoct, devise, plan, Colloq cook up; contrive, prepare, bring about, cause, produce, hatch: They are brewing up a plot to unseat the financial director. 3 start, go on, hatch, begin, form; stew, simmer, Colloq cook: A storm is brewing.

--n. 4 beer, ale, stout; tea; beverage, drink; concoction, mixture: She served me some strange brew in which I could detect cinnamon and nutmeg.

bribe n. 1 graft, inducement, Colloq kickback, Chiefly US payola, US plugola: Some judges were offered bribes for reducing the sentences of convicted felons.

--v. 2 pay or buy off, buy; corrupt, suborn, Colloq fix; Slang oil, grease (someone's) palm, Brit nobble: The guards were bribed to look the other way during the prison break.

bric-…-brac
n. bric-a-brac, curiosities, knick-knacks, collectables or collectibles, trinkets, gewgaws, gimcracks; bibelots, curios, objets d'art, objets de vertu: On Saturday she went to an antiques fair and bought still more bric-…-brac to clutter up the house.

brick n. 1 block, cube, chunk, hunk, slab; stone: I bought a brick of ice-cream to serve for pudding. A university is not just bricks and mortar. 2 pal, comrade, friend, Colloq chum, US and Canadian buddy: You're a real brick to watch the children for me till I get back.

bridal adj. nuptial, wedding; conjugal, connubial, marriage: The bridal gown was white, with lace appliqu,s.

bridge n. 1 span: We could build a bridge over the river here. 2 link, connexion or connection, tie, bond: She regarded teaching as a bridge between her studies and a post in school administration.

--v. 3 span, cross (over), go or pass over, traverse: The viaduct bridges the swamp. 4 connect, link, unite, join, tie: The gap between rich and poor is not easily bridged.

bridle n. 1 restraint, curb, check, control: Man has need of a bridle on his passions.

--v. 2 curb, check, restrain, hold in, control: You must learn to bridle your temper. 3 bristle, draw oneself up, be or become indignant, take offence or umbrage or affront (at), be affronted or offended (by): She bridled at the suggestion that she was responsible for Keith's departure.

brief adj. 1 short, momentary, little, fleeting; short-lived, transitory, transient, evanescent, passing, temporary, ephemeral, fugitive: The lights went back on after a brief interval. His glory was brief. 2 short, concise, succinct, to the point; condensed, shortened, cut, curtailed, abbreviated, compressed, abridged, thumbnail, compendious: The chairman made a few brief remarks. Here is a brief description of what happened. 3 curt, abrupt, terse, short, blunt, brusque: You mustn't be so brief with little children.

--n. 4 summary, outline, digest, pr,cis, r,sum,, compendium, abstract, condensation, abridgement or US only abridgment, synopsis, extract: This is merely a brief; the full document will follow. 5 in brief. briefly, concisely, in sum, in summary, to sum up, succinctly, in a word: He is a cutthroat, too - in brief, the greatest scoundrel living.

--v. 6 advise, inform, fill in, coach, instruct, enlighten; explain, run through or down: Howard will brief you on the details.

briefly adv. 1 concisely, tersely, succinctly, in a word, in short; bluntly, curtly, in a nutshell, in a few words, to sum up: Briefly, the plan is a complete non-starter. 2 momentarily, for a few moments or seconds or minutes, fleetingly, hurriedly, hastily, quickly: I stopped briefly at the post office on my way home.

bright adj. 1 light, shining, gleaming, radiant, brilliant, resplendent, glittering, flashing, Formal refulgent, effulgent, fulgent, fulgid, fulgorous; alight, aglow, beaming, dazzling, glowing, luminous, lambent, incandescent, ablaze with: We arrived on a bright, sunny day. The water was bright with phosphorescence. 2 clear, cloudless, fair, unclouded: It certainly is a bright night - you can see every star. 3 shiny, polished, lustrous, glossy, sparkling: I want that brass so bright I can see my face in it. 4 hopeful, optimistic, favourable, propitious, auspicious, promising, rosy: Glenys's job prospects are not very bright. 5 brilliant, vivid, intense, fluorescent, US trade mark Day-Glo: But you said you wanted the room bright orange, Madam. 6 intelligent, clever, quick-witted, witty, brilliant, keen-minded, sharp-witted, gifted, astute, ingenious, alert, smart; precocious; Colloq brainy, on the ball:

No one can deny that Alison is a bright young woman. 7 illustrious, glorious, splendid, magnificent, distinguished, outstanding: Today has been one of the brightest days in the history of Britain. 8 cheerful, gay, happy, exuberant, lively, animated, vivacious, spirited: It is a pleasure to see so many bright faces in the audience.

brighten v. 1 illuminate, enliven, lighten, cheer up, liven up, Colloq perk up: Replacing those heavy draperies with thinner curtains ought to brighten the room. 2 shine, polish, burnish: The silver could use a bit of brightening up.

brilliance

n. 1 brightness, radiance, lustre, splendour, magnificence, sparkle, dazzle, glitter, effulgence, light: The brilliance of the opening night rivalled that of Hollywood. 2 intelligence, wit, intellect, keenness, sharpness, acuteness, genius, talent, sagacity; precocity: Her brilliance shows in her books.

brilliant adj. 1 bright, shining, lustrous, radiant, resplendent, dazzling, luminous; incandescent, glittering, sparkling, scintillating, coruscating, twinkling, Formal effulgent: At the show I saw the most brilliant display of diamonds. 2 splendid, magnificent, superb, beautiful, distinguished, striking, glorious, remarkable, exceptional, outstanding: The audience rose for a standing ovation after the brilliant last movement of the concerto. 3 illustrious, famous, noted, celebrated, eminent, prominent, renowned, accomplished: Paul is one of the country's most brilliant chemists. 4 intelligent, clever, gifted, bright, talented, smart, expert, masterful, accomplished, ingenious, imaginative, creative; quick-witted, sharp-witted, keen-witted, enlightened; resourceful, discerning, able, competent: Goddard's brilliant mind understood principles of practical rocket flight.

brim n. 1 edge, margin, lip, rim; brink: I filled the cup to the brim.

--v. 2 be full or filled, overflow: His cup was brimming with steaming mulled wine. They are brimming over with confidence as they approach the race.

bring v. 1 carry, bear, fetch, get, take; deliver: Don't forget to bring some wine home for dinner tonight. 2 lead, conduct, convey; escort, invite, accompany: The road brought me to your house. You can bring anyone you like to the party. 3 draw, attract, lure, allure: What brings you to London? 4 carry, bear, convey; report: She brought word of the uprising. 5 bring on, bring about, occasion, give rise to, be the source or cause of, create, cause, engender, produce; contribute to: The thought of his mother brought tears to his eyes. 6 institute, advance; invoke: She is bringing charges against him for slander. 7 bring about. occasion, cause, bring on, accomplish, effect, achieve, produce: The government has brought about changes in the health service. 8 bring down. a overthrow, depose, oust, unseat, dethrone, overturn, topple: A military faction has brought down the government. b reduce, lessen, diminish, cut (back or down): The chancellor promised to bring down taxes in the next budget. 9 bring forth. a bear, give birth to, produce; yield: The kangaroo brings forth young less than an inch in size. b set forth, bring out or in or up, introduce, present, produce, put out, submit, offer, advance: Mr Hanson has brought forth a new sales plan. 10 bring in. a earn, yield, produce, realize, fetch, return, sell for: Advertising brings in more revenue than subscriptions. b See def. 15, below. 11 bring off. succeed (in), carry out, achieve, accomplish, do, carry out or off, perform, succeed, pull off; Colloq put over: Do you really think she'll be able to bring off her masquerade? 12 bring on. a produce, put on, introduce, bring in: When the children in the audience began to get restless, they brought on the clowns. b induce, produce, occasion, bring about: Eating strawberries brought on a rash. 13 bring out. a display, feature, focus on, illuminate, set off, make noticeable or conspicuous, emphasize, develop: The colour of the dress brings out the blue of your eyes. b publish, issue, release, make known or public, produce; put on, stage: They've brought out a new edition of Dickens's works. 14 bring round or around. a revive, resuscitate, bring to; restore: The smelling salts brought her round when she fainted. b persuade, win over, convince, influence: Can he be brought round to our way of thinking? 15 bring up. a rear, raise, care for, look after, nurture, breed; educate, teach, train, tutor: She has brought up six children on her own. b introduce, broach, bring in, raise, pen (up), set forth, mention, touch on, talk about, discuss; reintroduce, recall: Why bring up irrelevant matters like his age? c raise, elevate: So far, they have brought up only three survivors from the mine. d vomit, throw up, regurgitate, disgorge: He woke up feeling sick and brought up most of the previous night's meal.

brink n. 1 edge, brim, rim, margin, lip, border: He lost his footing and almost went over the brink into the gorge. 2 verge, point: He was on the brink of telling them everything, but suddenly remembered his promise.

brisk adj. 1 active, lively, busy, vigorous: The poachers are doing a brisk trade in rhinoceros horn. 2 quick, animated, sprightly, spry, energetic, spirited: Patrick was a brisk lad, fresh from Oxford. 3 strong, steady, fresh, refreshing, bracing, invigorating, stimulating, crisp, biting, bracing, keen, nippy, chill, chilly, cool, cold: A brisk breeze had started up from the north, chilling us through. 4 energetic, vibrant, invigorating, stimulating: After a brisk massage, Mariette felt completely revitalized.

bristle n. 1 hair, whisker, barb, prickle, thorn, quill, Technical seta: Shaving brushes are often made from badger bristles.

--v. 2 prickle, rise, stand up, Formal horripilate: He could feel the hair on the back of his neck bristle. 3 seethe, become angry or infuriated or furious or maddened, boil, flare up, see red, bridle: He bristled with enraged frustration. 4 teem, crawl, be thick, swarm, be alive: The sea urchin was bristling with sharp spines.

brittle adj. 1 fragile, frangible, breakable; friable: My fingernails become brittle in the cold and break easily. 2 frail, weak, delicate, sensitive, fragile, insecure: She might seem strong, but she has a very brittle nature and is easily upset.

broach v. introduce, raise, open (up), suggest, mention, hint at, touch on or upon, bring up or in, talk about, advance: I didn't dare broach the subject of money.

broad adj. 1 wide, expansive, large, extensive; spread out, ample, spacious: The broad highway stretched out for miles before them. Cattle graze in the broad pastures. 2 bright, plain, open, full; unshaded: He had the nerve to kiss me in broad daylight, in front of everyone! 3 plain, clear, obvious, emphatic, explicit, pronounced, direct, unconcealed, undisguised, unsubtle, evident: His wink gave a broad hint of what he really had in mind. 4 main, general, generalized, rough, unspecific, non-specific, approximate, sweeping: Without the details, here is a broad outline of what happened. 5 plain-spoken, outspoken, forthright, direct, unreserved, frank, candid, unrestrained: When he reached the witness box, he repeated the accusation in broad terms. 6 inclusive, general, widely applicable, extensive, wide-ranging, comprehensive, wholesale; vague, imprecise, indefinite, unfocused, non-specific, unspecified: We have broad support for these policies. She formulated a broad rule to fit all imaginable cases. 7 liberal, tolerant, catholic, ecumenical, latitudinarian: The term 'Broad Church' is said to have been coined by A. H. Clough. The judge feels that he must give the broadest possible interpretation of the law. 8 dirty, blue, coarse, rude, indecent, vulgar, improper, indelicate, off colour, loose, gross, obscene, lewd, lascivious, filthy, pornographic; inelegant, unrefined, unladylike, ungentlemanly, titillating: Peter was in the corner telling some of his broad jokes.

--n. 9 woman, girl, Slang dame, cookie or cooky, skirt, bimbo, bird, chick, number, doll, piece (of baggage): We picked up a couple of broads at the dancehall last night.

broadcast v. 1 air, transmit, relay; radio; televise, telecast: The programme will be broadcast tonight. 2 announce, advertise, publish, proclaim; disseminate: It may be a bad idea to broadcast your plans in advance. 3 sow, scatter, seed: The farmer broadcasts this seed instead of planting it.

--n. 4 programme, show; transmission, telecast: I heard the broadcast on my car radio.

brochure n. pamphlet, booklet; catalogue; folder, leaflet; tract: The brochure advertising the company's products will be ready tomorrow.

broil v. grill, barbecue: I think hamburgers taste better broiled than fried.

broke adj. penniless, indigent, down-and-out, poverty-stricken, penurious, impoverished, insolvent, destitute, poor, needy, bankrupt, ruined, Colloq on one's beam-ends, on one's uppers, strapped, flat or dead or stony-broke, hard up, short, up against it, US flat, on the skids; Slang Brit skint: I was broke after paying the rent - I didn't even have money for food.

broken adj. 1 fragmented, shattered, shivered, splintered, ruptured, cracked, split, smashed, pulverized, disintegrated, destroyed, demolished: A broken Ming vase cannot be worth much. 2 fractured: With a broken leg, she certainly won't be competing in the slalom. 3 enfeebled, weakened, crushed, defeated, beaten, ruined; dispirited, dejected, discouraged, demoralized, defeated, subdued, debilitated, Colloq licked: Rosa's running away with a sailor left Hugh a broken man. 4 tamed, trained, disciplined, obedient, docile, domesticated, subdued; conditioned: What use is a horse that isn't broken? 5 violated, transgressed, disobeyed, contravened, defied, flouted,disregarded, ignored, infringed: The rules of this club are broken too often: we'll have to tighten things up. 6 interrupted, disturbed, discontinuous, disjointed, disconnected, fragmented, fragmentary, intermittent, erratic, sporadic: I couldn't stop worrying about the operation and had a terrible night of broken sleep. 7 Also, broken-down. out of order or commission, not working or functioning, in disrepair, Slang on the blink, out of kilter, kaput, US on the fritz, out of whack: My watch is broken. Why waste money repairing that broken-down car of yours?

broken-hearted
adj. heart-broken, depressed, downhearted, dejected, devastated, crushed, overwhelmed, heartsick, downcast, upset; forlorn, sorrowful, disconsolate, inconsolable, grief-stricken, miserable, wretched, melancholy, heavy-hearted, sad, doleful, dolorous, woeful, woebegone, gloomy, morose, glum, cheerless, Colloq down: She was broken-hearted when her puppy was lost.

broker n. stockbroker; agent, dealer, middleman, intermediary, go-between, Brit stockjobber: I have phoned my broker to tell him to sell all my shares.

brooch n. clasp, pin; fastening: She was wearing the cameo brooch I had given to her mother.

brood n. 1 young, offspring, progeny; children, family: A mallard was tending her brood among the rushes.

--v. 2 incubate, hatch, set, sit, cover: The old hen was brooding three eggs. 3 Also, brood on or over. ponder (on or over), meditate (on or over), contemplate, ruminate (on or over), muse (on or over): He just sits there brooding over the subject of his next novel. 4 mope, sulk, pout, pine, eat one's heart out, fret, worry, agonize, despair: Don't just brood over the problem, do something about solving it!

brook° n. stream, rivulet, run, runnel, rill, US and Canadian and Australian and New Zealand creek; No. Eng. dialect beck, gill or ghyll; Scots burn: The river is fed by numerous brooks from every part of the country.

brooký v. endure, tolerate, stand, abide, put up with, suffer, allow: She runs the business in her own way and brooks no interference from anyone.

broth n. stock, bouillon, consomm,; soup; decoction: We tossed food scraps into the large, simmering pot to make a broth.

brothel n. bordello, whore-house, house of ill fame or ill repute, bawdy-house, bagnio; seraglio, harem, Obsolete stew, Colloq US sporting house, Slang Brit knocking-shop, US cat-house: On their first night in Paris, they visited a brothel.

brother n. sibling; relation, relative, kin, kinsman; fellow, fellow-man, fellow-clansman, fellow-citizen, fellow-countryman, fellow-creature; associate, colleague, confrŠre, companion, Colloq pal, chum, Brit and Australian mate, US buddy: Some day, perhaps all men will regard each other as brothers.

brotherhood
n. 1 brotherliness, fellowship, companionship, alliance, friendship, comradeship, camaraderie, kinship: We should all live together in harmony and brotherhood. 2 fraternity, guild, society, association, order, league, union, organization, club, community, circle, set, clique: The tribes fused into a united and enthusiastic brotherhood.

brotherly adj. fraternal, kind, affectionate, cordial, friendly, amicable, amiable, neighbourly, loyal, devoted: The boys grew up together and maintained a brotherly relationship throughout their lives.

browbeat v. bully, intimidate, threaten, badger, dominate, cow, frighten, discourage, tyrannize, hector, harass, keep after, nag, Colloq hassle: The foreman constantly browbeat anyone who wasn't one of his drinking cronies.

browse v. look over or through, skim (through), scan, thumb or flip or flick through: I was browsing through some recent acquisitions at the second-hand bookshop.

bruise n. 1 injury, hurt, contusion, bump, welt, scrape, abrasion, scratch, wound, black-and-blue mark, blotch, blemish, mark, spot, discoloration, damage, Technical ecchymosis: I got this bruise from walking into the corner of the table. The price is lower if the fruit has a few bruises.

--v. 2 injure, contuse, hurt, scrape, harm; wound, damage: I bruised my knee when I fell down. Being arrested certainly bruised his self-esteem.

bruiser n. prizefighter, boxer, fighter; tough, ruffian, bodyguard, thug, hoodlum, bouncer, Colloq hooligan, tough guy, toughie, Brit minder, US roughneck, hood, gorilla, plug-ugly, torpedo, enforcer: The heavyweight contender is really a big bruiser. Mr Big strode in with two of his bruisers.

brunt n. (full) force, burden, onus, weight, impact; shock, stress, violence, onslaught: As the head of the department was on holiday, I had to take the full brunt of the customers' complaints.

brush° n. 1 brushwood, shrubs, undergrowth, branches, scrub, brush, bracken, brambles, underbrush, underwood: It took us three days to clear the brush from around the house. 2 thicket, brake, copse, grove, boscage: The fox disappeared into the brush, which was too dense for the dogs to follow.

brushý n. 1 hairbrush, toothbrush, clothes-brush, shoe-brush, nail-brush, paintbrush; broom, dust-broom, besom, US whisk broom: This brush is too harsh and may damage your teeth. 2 See brush-off. 3 encounter, engagement, skirmish, Colloq Brit spot of bother: Mark has had several brushes with the law.

--v. 4 scrub, clean; groom, curry; sweep, whisk, gather: Brush your teeth twice a day. I brushed down the mare before saddling her. Brush the crumbs off the table. 5 graze, touch: He deliberately tried to brush against her in the corridor. 6 brush aside or away. disregard, dismiss, put aside, shrug off: Brushing aside the members' objections, he tried to force the committee's acceptance of the new rules. 7 brush off. dismiss, ignore, rebuff, send off or away or packing: He asked her out, but she brushed him off. 8 brush up (on). review, restudy, go over, refresh, study, Archaic con: You should brush up on your geometry before taking trigonometry.

brush-off n. dismissal, rebuff, rejection, snub, Colloq cold shoulder, put-down, slap in the face, the (old) heave-ho; Chiefly US and Canadian walking papers: Tanya has given Theo the brush-off - said she never wants to see him again.

brusque   adj. blunt, rude, overbearing, impolite, uncivil, discourteous, ungracious, ill-mannered, unmannerly; churlish, gruff, abrupt, short, curt, sharp, terse, brash, bluff: I could tell that the interviewer had already decided against me by her brusque attitude.

brutal   adj. 1 inhuman, savage, cruel, pitiless, harsh, severe, barbaric, barbarous, beastly, bestial, sadistic, murderous; inhumane, heartless, hard-hearted, unkind, fierce, stony-hearted, insensitive, unfeeling, cold-blooded, unsympathetic, remorseless, ruthless, ferocious, atrocious, Draconian or Draconic, Literary fell: Few survived the brutal treatment in the concentration camps. 2 rude, ill-mannered, coarse, unrefined, boorish, ill-bred, rustic, crass, uncouth, uncultured, uncultivated, rough, crude: His brutal behaviour made him unfit to represent the Crown.

brute   adj. 1 brutish, dull, unfeeling, senseless, blind, unintelligent, unthinking, thoughtless, mindless, unreasoning, irrational, instinctive, physical, material; insensate, unconscious: He was able to lift the safe without help, by sheer brute strength.

--n. 2 animal, beast, savage: He wrote that man was the middle link between angels and brutes. George behaved like an absolute brute to her.

2.7 bubble

=-

bubble   n. 1 blister, air pocket, globule, droplet: This painted surface is full of air bubbles. 2 bubbles. froth, foam, suds, lather, spume; effervescence, carbonation, fizz: The cider is full of bubbles.

--v. 3 foam, froth, boil, seethe, fizz: A pot of soup was bubbling on the stove.

bubbly   adj. 1 effervescent, foamy, frothy, fizzy, sparkling: I could see that the surface was all bubbly. 2 effervescent, merry, ebullient, bouncy, animated, vivacious, cheerful, cheery, lively, excited: Janet is known for her bubbly personality.

--n. 3 champagne, sparkling wine, sparkling burgundy, Asti spumante, Colloq Brit champers: Let's open a bottle of bubbly and celebrate.

bucket   n. pail, scuttle: Keep this bucket of coal near the hearth.

buckle   n. 1 clasp, fastener, clip, fastening, hook, catch: The buckle broke on my belt and my trousers fell down.

--v. 2 collapse, cave in, crumple, bend, warp, distort, twist, bulge: The support gave way and the entire wall buckled.

bug   n. 1 insect, beetle, larva, grub, caterpillar, butterfly, mosquito, fly, spider, Colloq Brit creepy-crawly, US no-see-em: There's a bug on your collar. 2 microbe, germ, virus; disease, affliction, illness, sickness, ailment, disorder, malady, infection; condition, complaint, infirmity, indisposition: She's caught some kind of bug and won't be in for a few days. 3 obsession, craze, fad, mania, rage: Almost everyone in those days succumbed to the hula hoop bug. 4 enthusiast, faddist, fan, fanatic; hobbyist: She's turned into a fruit machine bug. 5 listening device; microphone, transmitter, electronic eavesdropper, tap: They planted a bug in the ambassador's telephone. 6 fault, error, mistake, failing, shortcoming, Colloq hang-up, glitch: There's a bug in the program that's preventing the list from being sorted. They can't market the device till they've ironed out all the bugs.

--v. 7 annoy, irritate, pester, irk, harass, bother: I wish Mum'd stop bugging me about my homework. 8 tap, spy on: They bugged her phone and recorded all her conversations.

bugger n. 1 buggerer, sodomite. 2 chap, fellow, man; boy, lad, child, tot; Slang chiefly Brit geezer , US jerk; Colloq guy , Brit bloke, fool, idiot: He's a cute little bugger, isn't he? Who's that silly-looking bugger with Christina?

--v. 3 Also, bugger up. ruin, destroy, botch, bungle, wreck; make a mess of, Colloq mess or screw up, Brit bollocks or ballocks up, balls up, make a balls-up of, cock up, US ball up, bollix up; Taboo fuck up: He's buggered the recording, so we'll have to start again at the beginning. Why does she bugger up everything I try to do? 4 bugger about or around. a fool about, waste time, dawdle, Colloq US lallygag or lollygag; Taboo fuck about or around: He buggers about the house all the time instead of looking for a job. Don't bugger about with my hi-fi. b cause complications for, create difficulties for: She pretends to be helping me, but she's just buggering me about. 5 bugger off. go away, depart, leave, clear off or out, Colloq make tracks, skedaddle, beat it, Slang piss off; Taboo fuck off: Oh, bugger off and leave me alone!

build v. 1 construct, erect, raise, set up, assemble: I hope to build my own house in another year or so. 2 found, establish, base: The theory is built on the principle that light travels at 186,000 miles per second. 3 develop: She built the company in about five years. 4 Also, build up. intensify; increase, develop, enlarge, strengthen: The distant hum of voices gradually built to a mighty roar.

--n. 5 physique, figure, body, shape, Slang bod: He has a good build from working out at the gym.

building n. edifice, structure, construction, erection: The building where I work is air-conditioned.

bulge n. 1 lump, hump, protuberance, bump, swelling, projection: This wallet is making a bulge in my jacket.

--v. 2 protrude, stick out, swell (out): His stomach bulges out over his belt.

bulk n. 1 volume, magnitude, mass, enlargement, largeness, size: The sausage-makers add bread just for bulk. 2 majority: The bulk of the people voted for the proposal.

bulky adj. large, voluminous, unwieldy, awkward, ungainly, cumbersome, Brit chunky: The package, though quite bulky, didn't cost much to post.

bulletin n. message, notice, communication, announcement, communiqu,, dispatch or despatch, report, account, flash, news item, newsflash: And now, here's a bulletin from the centre court at Wimbledon.

bully n. 1 persecutor, intimidator, tyrant: That bully Roderick is always beating up the younger boys.

--v. 2 persecute, intimidate, tyrannize, torment, browbeat, daunt, awe, cow, terrorize; hector, harass, push around: Roderick even bullied his best friend into parting with his allowance.

--adj. 3 Old-fashioned jolly, worthy, admirable: Ah, there you are, my bully boy!

--interj. 4 Usually, Bully for (someone)! Bravo!, Great!, Fantastic!, Fabulous!, Marvellous!, Spectacular!; So what?, What of it?; US Peachy!, Dandy!, Neat-oh!; Old-fashioned Fantabulous!: 'David's won the snooker competition again.' 'Bully for him!'

bulwark n. 1 defence or US defense, safeguard, redoubt, bastion, buffer, barrier, rampart, fortification: A strong defence is the best bulwark against aggression from outside.

--v. 2 defend, protect, shelter: Marnie's indifference to others bulwarks her against any feelings of contrition.

bum n. 1 buttocks, posterior, hindquarters, fundament, behind, rump, bottom, behind, derriŠre, rear end, backside, seat, rear, Colloq Brit arse, US fanny, can, hinie, tush, tushy or tushie, tokus or tochis or tuchis, keister or keester, ass: Why don't you get off your fat bum and go out and get a job?! 2 tramp, panhandler, beggar, vagrant, loafer, drifter, vagabond, hobo, derelict, gypsy; Brit caird, tinker, traveller; US (shopping-)bag lady: Along the Bowery the doorways and pavements are strewn with bums. 3 improper, unjustified, false, trumped up, untrue, fabricated, made-up, bogus: That auto theft charge was a bum rap, but he still served 18 months.

--adj. 4 bad, awful, unfair, dishonest, poor, rotten, Slang lousy, crummy: I still think you got a bum deal on that toaster.

--v. 5 borrow, beg, sponge, Colloq scrounge, cadge, touch, put the touch on, US mooch, hit, hit up: Can I bum a cigarette from you?

bump n. 1 blow, collision, thud, hit, knock, buffet, clunk, whack: That bump on the head seems to have affected him. 2 lump, protuberance, welt, swelling, tumescence, knob, bulge: How did you get that bump on your forehead?

--v. 3 knock (against), strike, hit, collide (with), run into, ram; smash, crash, Colloq wallop: I bumped into the car in front as I was parking. 4 bump into. meet, encounter, run into or across, come across, stumble over: I bumped into Philippa at the hairdresser's. 5 bump off. murder, kill, put away, assassinate, do away with, execute, liquidate, dispatch or despatch, Slang take for a ride, destroy, eliminate, rub out, wipe out, do in, US waste, ice: They bumped off Wimpy, boss; he was pulled out of the river wearing concrete overshoes.

bumpy adj. lumpy, rough, uneven, irregular, knobby, knobbly, pitted; potholed, bouncy, jarring, jerky, rutted: The skin on his forehead is a bit bumpy. This is the bumpiest road in the town.

bunch n. 1 bundle, cluster, batch, clump; bouquet, nosegay, posy, spray: That's a nice-looking bunch of grapes. Mr Herbert arrived with a bunch of flowers for me. 2 crowd, knot, collection, group, lot, gathering, cluster, clutch, batch, assortment, mass: A bunch of people stood outside the courtroom, awaiting news of the verdict.

--v. 3 sort, class, classify, categorize, assort, group together, bracket: It would be a mistake to bunch all different kinds of liberals into the same category. 4 bunch up. gather; smock; collect, crowd, group, cluster: The fabric is all bunched up at the bottom. Don't let the people bunch up in front of the exits.

bundle n. 1 bunch, collection, package, parcel, packet, pack; bale, sheaf; Archaic fardel: I have to leave this bundle at the laundry today. Bring this bundle of hay for the horse.

--v. 2 gather (together), tie up (together), collect, pack, package: He bundled up all his belongings. 3 bundle off or out. dispatch or despatch, pack off, hustle or hurry off or away, send away or off; decamp, scurry off or away, Colloq Brit do a moonlight flit: We bundled Aunt Mary off home as soon as the storm subsided. That couple have bundled out of room 429.

bungle v. spoil, botch, mismanage, stumble, bumble, Golf foozle, Colloq foul or screw or louse up, blow, mess or muck up, make a mess or hash or muddle of, muff, Slang Brit bugger, US snafu, Taboo fuck up: Smith has bungled the job again; we'll have to replace him.

buoy n. 1 (navigational or channel) mark or marker, float; nun (-buoy), can (-buoy), bell (buoy), gong (-buoy), siren, signal, mooring-buoy, spar-buoy, lollipop: Returning to port, always leave the red buoys to starboard.

--v. 2 Often, buoy up. lift, raise, elevate, support, hearten, sustain, keep up: We sang songs to buoy up our spirits while the rescuers dug their way towards us.

buoyant adj. 1 afloat, floating, floatable: The wood was water-logged and no longer buoyant. 2 light, resilient, lively, vivacious, bright, cheerful, carefree, blithe, animated, jaunty, bouncy, ebullient, light-hearted , Colloq peppy: One had to admire his buoyant optimism, even under adverse conditions.

burden n. 1 load, weight, gravamen; strain, pressure, trouble, onus, millstone, cross, albatross: The old man put down his burden. The burden of the evidence is against them. His feeling of guilt over her death in the crash was a terrible burden to bear.

--v. 2 load, weigh down, saddle with, encumber; tax, oppress: The mules were heavily burdened with a month's supply of food. Don't burden me with your problems.

burdensome
adj. onerous, cumbersome, oppressive, weighty, troublesome, wearisome, bothersome, distressing, worrying, worrisome, vexatious, irksome: A tax on food is burdensome for those on a low income.

bureau   n. 1 Brit (writing-)desk, US chest of drawers, chest, dresser, chifferobe, chiffonier: Simon has a beautiful antique bureau in his office. One of my cuff-links rolled under the bureau. 2 office, agency, department, division, section, subdivision, subsection, desk: I sent the form to the bureau a month ago, but I still don't have my visa.

bureaucracy
n. officialdom, officialism, government, red tape, administration, authorities: The bureaucracy survives because the officials rely on graft for their income.

burglar   n. housebreaker, thief, robber; sneak-thief, cat burglar, US second-story or second-storey man: The burglars, remarkably, didn't take the most valuable paintings.

burial   n. interment, funeral, entombment, obsequies, sepulture: His six ex-wives attended the burial.

burlesque n. 1 caricature, lampoon, spoof, parody, satire, mockery, travesty, Colloq take-off; (grotesque) imitation, vulgarization, exaggeration: In the mid-19th century, burlesques drove pantomimes off the stage. 2 US striptease, strip show, nudie or girlie show: The old comedians insist that burlesque acts were an art form, but the audience went just for the girls.

--v. 3 satirize, take off, lampoon, spoof, parody, caricature, travesty: Cervantes burlesqued the old romances in Don Quixote
.

--adj. 4 satirical, derisive, mock-heroic, mock-pathetic: She sang a burlesque opera based on Hamlet, called 'Omelette'.

burly adj. stout, sturdy, corpulent, large, big, hefty, stocky, thickset, brawny, chunky, heavy, beefy, muscular, strong, strapping, rugged, tough, Colloq husky: Two rather burly gentlemen were called in to help me out of the place.

burn v. 1 blaze, flame, flare, smoulder: A fire was burning on the hearth. 2 ignite, set on fire, fire, light, kindle, incinerate, Slang torch: He burnt the incriminating papers in the fireplace. 3 desire, yearn, wish, long, itch: He wrote 'Darling, I am burning to be with you tonight'. 4 waste, throw or fritter away, squander: Don't worry about Norman, he has money to burn. 5 overcook, blacken, char, singe: If you're not careful, you'll burn the toast again.

burning adj. 1 flaming, blazing, fiery; ablaze, aflame, afire, on fire: When we arrived, the entire building was burning. 2 vehement, ardent, excited, passionate, fervent, fervid, intense, fiery, enthusiastic: She had a burning desire to join that illustrious company. 3 raging, violent, parching: His burning fever had finally subsided a little. 4 hot, blazing, scorching, seething, withering: She was married on a burning hot day in July.

burrow n. 1 excavation, hole, warren, tunnel: The rabbit retreated to its burrow under the hedge.

--v. 2 dig, delve, tunnel, bore; excavate: The larvae burrow into the wood where the birds can hear them moving about.

burst v. break (asunder), rupture, shatter, explode, blow up; puncture; Slang bust: If it keeps raining the dam will burst and the valley will be flooded.

bury n. 1 inter, inhume, lay to rest: They buried her next to her husband as she had requested. 2 abandon, forget, consign to oblivion, eradicate, extirpate: The residents buried their differences and united to repel the town planners. 3 submerge (oneself), exile (oneself), plunge, become engrossed or absorbed: She buried herself in her book. 4 conceal, obscure, hide, cover up: The real story was by now completely buried beneath the mass of legend. 5 overwhelm, overcome, inundate: I'm so buried in work I can't take a holiday.

business n. 1 duty, function, occupation, calling, vocation, trade, profession, work, province, area, subject, topic, concern, affair, responsibility, role, charge, obligation: Her business is supplying models for fashion shows. Mind your own business and don't be such a Nosy Parker. 2 matter, job, task, subject, question, problem, issue, point, affair: Gentlemen, let us call the meeting to order and attend to the business at hand. 3 dealing, transaction; trade, commerce, traffic: We've never done any business with that company. 4 concern, establishment, organization, company, firm, house, enterprise; corporation, partnership, proprietorship: Rodney wants to sell the business and retire to Spain.

busy adj. 1 occupied, engaged, employed, involved: I can't talk to you now, I'm busy. 2 working, industrious, active, diligent; bustling, hectic, lively, hustling, energetic: Are you very busy at the office these days? The diamond district is certainly a busy place. 3 ornate, elaborate, detailed, complicated, complex, (over-)decorated, intricate, Baroque, Rococo: Some of the late Victorian architecture is far too busy for my taste.

--v. 4 occupy, involve, employ, divert, absorb, engross: She has busied herself with charity work to get her mind off the tragedy.

busybody n. pry, snoop(er), peep(er), gossip, meddler, Paul Pry, Colloq Nosy Parker, Slang US buttinsky: If he so much as sees us talking together, that busybody will probably cook up some sex scandal.

butcher n. 1 murderer, slaughterer, killer, ripper, cutthroat, executioner, annihilator: That cold-blooded butcher dismembered his victims after strangling them. 2 destroyer, bungler, muddler: Look what that butcher of a tailor has done to my suit!

--v. 3 slaughter, massacre, murder, cut or hack or hew to pieces, dismember, disembowel, exterminate, annihilate, kill, liquidate: The entire crew was butchered by the islanders. 4 botch, bungle, foul up, Colloq mess up, make a mess or hash of;

Slang louse up, screw up, Brit bollocks or ballocks up, US bollix up; Taboo fuck up: He butchered the restoration of my antique cabinet.

butt° n. target, end, object, prey, victim, dupe; gull, Colloq pigeon, sucker; Brit Aunt Sally, Slang US and Canadian patsy: He was always the butt of their jokes.

buttý v. 1 abut, join, meet: This wall butts up against my garage. 2 butt in or into. interfere, intrude, interrupt, Colloq US kibitz; meddle: Please let me finish a sentence without butting in. Don't butt into my affairs.

buttocks n. bottom, behind, derriŠre, seat, rear, rear end, backside, posterior, hindquarters, fundament, Colloq Brit bum, arse , US hinie, can, tush or tushy or tushie, tokus or tochis or tuchis, keister or keester, butt, tail, prat, ass; Slang cheeks, duff: A person with large buttocks should not wear tight shorts.

buttonhole

v. 1 corner, detain, accost, importune, waylay: A reporter buttonholed one of the senators for details of the new tax bill.

--n. 2 corsage, US boutonniere or boutonniŠre: He wore a rose for a buttonhole.

buttress v. sustain, support, strengthen, prop (up), brace, reinforce, shore up: Huge beams were needed to buttress the walls after the bombing.

buxom adj. 1 hearty, healthy, vigorous, lusty, attractive, comely, plump, Colloq hefty: Sylvia was a buxom serving-wench at the Bugle Horn. 2 busty, bosomy, chesty, well-endowed, big-busted: The centrefolds in this magazine usually show quite buxom women.

buy v. 1 purchase; acquire, obtain, get, procure, gain, come by, secure: Where did you buy that hat? 2 accept, allow, take, believe, swallow, go for: Did you buy his story about having his car stolen? 3 bribe, suborn, pay off, buy off, corrupt: That customs man must have been bought or he wouldn't have let the package through.

--n. 4 purchase, acquisition: We made a bad buy at the last auction. 5 Also, good buy. bargain, Colloq US and Canadian steal: If you paid only œ2,000, that was a real buy.

buyer n. customer, consumer, client, purchaser: Is it likely that you will find many buyers of Basque dictionaries in this country?

buzz n. 1 hum, murmur, drone: I lay and listened to the buzz of the bees. 2 stir, ferment, talk, undercurrent: A ringing could be heard above the buzz of conversation. 3 phone call, ring: I think I'll give him a buzz to see if our appointment is still on. 4 thrill, feeling of excitement, sensation, stimulation, kick, Colloq high: I got quite a pleasant buzz from that drink.

--v. 5 hum, murmur, drone: The flies were buzzing around the dead squirrel. 6 fly down on, zoom on to: The pilot was grounded for a month for buzzing the airfield. 7 telephone, ring (up), call (up), phone; summon, signal, buzz or ring for: She said she'd buzz me if she needed anything.

2.8 by...
=-

by prep. 1 near, beside, next to, close to, alongside: I park my car by my house. 2 via, by way of, through; past: I go home by High Wycombe. 3 by means of, on: I often travel by train. 4 before, not later than, sooner than: I have to leave by Monday. 5 during, at: We travel only by night.

--adv. 6 Often, close by. near, nearby, at hand, close, about, around, Literary nigh: When she is close by I get a tingling sensation. 7 past, nearby: When he walked by I nearly died. 8 away, aside: We put by a little for a rainy day.

bygone adj. past, former, olden; of old, of yore: In bygone times, the fashion was for high-button shoes.

bypass v. 1 avoid, evade, circumvent, sidestep, skirt, go or get round, detour; ignore, Slang give the go-by: I shall bypass many problems if I take that route.

--n. 2 detour, alternative (way, route, etc.), alternate way or route: Take the bypass and avoid the town traffic.

bystander n. spectator, onlooker, observer, witness, non-participant, passer-by, eyewitness: He has always claimed he was an innocent bystander, but I'm not so sure.

byword n. proverb, proverbial saying, parable, maxim, adage, motto, slogan, apophthegm or apothegm, aphorism, catchword, catch-phrase: My byword has always been, Honesty is the best policy.

3.0 C

=-

3.1 cab...

=-

cab n. taxi, taxi-cub, Obsolete (horse-drawn) hackney, hansom (cab); Old-fashioned US hack: A cab picked me up and dropped me at the hotel.

cabal n. 1 intrigue, plot, conspiracy, scheme: The cabal against Washington found supporters exclusively in the north. 2 junta or junto, clique, set, coterie, faction, band, league; unit, party, caucus, club; ring, gang: A cabal of artists was formed.

--v. 3 intrigue, plot, conspire, connive, machinate: The barons began to sow dissension and to cabal against his succession.

cabaret n. 1 nightclub, club, nightspot: The ever-popular entertainer Mimi opened at the Golden Palm cabaret last night. 2 floor show, show, entertainment, amusement: The dinner was poor, but the cabaret was marvellous.

cabin n. 1 hut, shack, cottage, cot, shanty; bungalow, lodge, chalet; Scots bothy: The old trapper lives in a cabin in the forest. You are welcome to come skiing with us and stay in our cabin. 2 stateroom, compartment, berth: We had a cabin on the starboard side.

cabinet n. 1 cupboard, bureau, chifferobe, commode, chiffonier, chest (of drawers), chest-on-chest, tallboy, US highboy, lowboy: The aspirin is in the medicine cabinet. Our china cabinet is, unfortunately, not a genuine Chippendale. 2 council, ministry, committee, advisors, senate: At the age of thirty, he became the youngest member of the cabinet.

cable n. 1 wire, line, rope, hawser, chain, mooring, strand, guy: The cable broke and we were set adrift. 2 telegram, wire, cablegram, radiogram, US Mailgram: Send a cable to Jones about the meeting.

--v. 3 telegraph, wire; radio: Cable Jones to come at once.

cache n. 1 hiding-place, hole, vault, repository: There was a small cache concealed by the panelling in the library. 2 store, hoard, supply, reserve, nest egg, stockpile, Colloq US and Canadian stash: The wise hunter keeps a cache of supplies buried along his route.

--v. 3 hide, store, conceal, squirrel away, secrete, bury, Colloq stash (away): I cached the money in a biscuit tin.

cachet n. 1 stamp, feature, distinguishing mark, identification: The cachet of good taste is simplicity of design. 2 distinction, prominence, importance, prestige, dignity: Her new job doesn't pay much, but it has a certain cachet.

cadaver n. corpse, (dead) body, remains, Slang stiff: The medical students and doctors once paid to have cadavers exhumed for anatomical study.

cadence n. measure, beat, rhythm, tempo, accent, pulse, metre, lilt, swing: The snare drum marked the cadence for the marching band.

caf, n. coffee-house, coffee bar, coffee-shop, bistro, snack bar, brasserie; tearoom, lunch-room, restaurant, eating-house, canteen; cafeteria, US diner, Colloq eatery; Slang Brit caff, US greasy spoon: We stopped at a caf, for refreshment.

cage n. 1 crate, enclosure, pen, pound, coop, hutch: He keeps rooks in a cage.

--v. 2 Also, cage up or in. confine, enclose, pen, impound, shut up, or in, coop (up), imprison; restrict, restrain, hem in: They keep the kitten caged like a wild animal. I don't like to stay caged up in my office all day.

cajole v. wheedle, coax, beguile, jolly (along), cosy along, seduce, inveigle, persuade, Colloq soft-soap, butter (up), stroke, sweet-talk: Robert's wife always has to cajole him to go and visit her mother.

cajolery n. wheedling, coaxing, blandishment, beguilement, jollying, persuasion, seduction, inveigling, inveiglement, Colloq soft soap, buttering-up, sweet talk: She uses cajolery rather than threats to get what she wants.

cake n. 1 pastry, bun, Brit gateau: Right now, I should like to have a glass of milk and a piece of chocolate cake. 2 piece, chunk, bar, block, cube, lump, loaf, slab: Barbara gave me a cake of fancy perfumed soap for my birthday.

--v. 3 harden, solidify, thicken, congeal, dry, coagulate, encrust, consolidate: You can see where the paint has caked.

calamitous
adj. distressful, dire, tragic, disastrous, destructive, awful, devastating, fatal, deadly, pernicious, cataclysmic, catastrophic, ruinous, dreadful, terrible: They seemed unaware of the calamitous consequences of what they were doing to the environment.

calamity n. 1 disaster, destruction, ruin, catastrophe, cataclysm, devastation, tragedy, misadventure, mischance, mishap: Calamity befell the town when it was engulfed in a landslide. 2 distress, affliction, trouble, hardship, misery, tragedy, misfortune, adversity, reverse, ruin, ruination, desolation, wretchedness: So full is the world of calamity that every source of pleasure is polluted.

calculate v. compute, reckon, add up, assess, evaluate, count, figure (out), estimate, gauge, determine, ascertain, work out: Bradley was able to calculate the velocity of light. They calculated where the sun would come up at the equinox and built their temple accordingly.

calculated

adj. 1 arranged, designed, planned, prepared, adjusted, adapted, fit, fitted, intended, suited: The coach was calculated to carry six regular passengers. 2 deliberate, purposeful, intentional, premeditated, planned: The so-called accident was really a calculated attempt to kill me.

calculating

adj. shrewd, conniving, crafty, sly, scheming, designing, Machiavellian, manipulative, canny, contriving: She is a calculating woman, who knows what she wants and manoeuvres people to help her get it.

calculation

n. 1 computation, reckoning, counting, estimation, figuring, determining: We needn't number them one by one, for the total can be arrived at by calculation. 2 answer, product, result, figure, count, estimate, amount: This calculation is wrong, so please do it again. 3 estimate, forecast, expectation, prediction, deliberation; circumspection, cautiousness, wariness, caution, prudence, forethought, discretion: His attack was not the inspiration of courage but the result of calculation.

calculator

n. computer, adding machine; abacus: According to my calculator, the answer should be 7.1592.

calendar n. 1 appointment book, schedule, slate, Brit diary, US date-book, US law docket: I have next week's lunch date in my calendar. 2 almanac, chronology, chronicle, annal(s): The ecclesiastical calendar lists today as St David's Day.

calibrate v. adjust, graduate; standardize: This balance has been dropped on the floor, and you'll have to calibrate it again.

calibre n. 1 diameter, size, bore, gauge: You need a .38 calibre bullet to fit a .38 calibre pistol. 2 merit, ability, talent, capability, competence, capacity, quality, strength, stature: They should be playing against a team of their own calibre. 3 degree, measure, stamp, quality: I doubt that you will find anyone of equal calibre to Julia in artistic sensibility.

call v. 1 shout, cry (out), hail, yell, roar, bellow, call out, Colloq holler: I heard someone calling my name. 2 name, designate, denote, denominate, term, style, nickname, label, title, entitle, tag, identify, dub, christen, baptize: My real name is Angus, but they call me Scotty. A person from Glasgow is called a Glaswegian. 3 call up, telephone, phone, ring (up), dial, Colloq buzz: As it's her birthday, I must call my mother in Australia. Don't call us, we'll call you. 4 summon, invite, assemble, convoke, convene, bid, gather, collect, muster, rally: From the minaret, the muezzin was calling the faithful to prayer. Many are called but few are chosen. 5 visit, attend; call in; call on: My great aunt Frederica came to call last Sunday. 6 awake, awaken, wake up, rouse, Colloq Brit knock up: Please call me at six. 7 call down. a appeal to, invoke, petition, request, entreat, supplicate: He called down the wrath of God on the Philistines. b reprimand, chastise, castigate, upbraid, scold, reprove, rebuke: He was called down for having left the house after curfew. 8 call for. a demand, request, ask for, order, require, claim: The people in room 429 have called for clean towels. The problem calls for your urgent attention. b pick up, fetch, come for, get, accompany, Colloq collect: I'll call for you at seven o'clock. 9 call forth. summon, invoke, draw on or upon, evoke; elicit, inspire: Susan called forth all her courage and faced her accusers. He failed to call forth much enthusiasm in his listeners. 10 call on or upon. a request of, entreat, ask, address; apostrophize: The teacher called on me today to recite Hamlet's soliloquy. b supplicate, apostrophize, appeal to: He called on ’olus, god of the winds, for a fair breeze to carry his ship home. c visit: The vicar called on us when we first moved in. 11 call off. cancel; discontinue; postpone: The picnic has been called off because of rain. 12 call up. a summon, enlist, recruit, conscript, US draft: Father was called up as soon as war was declared. b call, telephone, phone, ring (up): Call me up sometime.

--n. 13 shout, cry, yell, whoop, Colloq holler: I'll be out in the garden, so give me a call if you want me. 14 summons, invitation, bidding, notice, notification, order, request, demand, command; telephone call, phone call, Brit ring; Colloq tinkle: She received a call to report at once for duty. 15

reason, justification, cause, need, occasion, right, excuse; requirement: You have no call to be abusive, regardless of what you think about him. 16 on call. ready, on duty, standing by, on stand-by, awaiting orders: They had to remain on call from midnight till eight o'clock. 17 within call. within earshot or hearing or (easy) reach: Please stay within call in case I need you.

calling   n. vocation, occupation, profession, business, trade, employment, work, line, job, m‚tier, pursuit, career, area, province, (area of) expertise, Brit speciality or US specialty, Colloq racket: He found his calling as a veterinary surgeon very satisfying.

callous   adj. hardened, thick-skinned, unfeeling, uncaring, insensible, insensitive, hard, hard-hearted, tough, hardbitten, cold, cold-hearted, heartless, indifferent, unsympathetic, apathetic, Colloq hard-boiled, hard-nosed: It was callous of Gerry to go off to the snooker club right after the funeral.

callow   adj. inexperienced, immature, juvenile, na‹ve, green, guileless, unsophisticated, innocent, raw, unfledged, untried, Colloq (still) wet behind the ears: It was a mistake to let a callow youth take out the boat alone.

calm   n. 1 quiet, stillness, tranquillity, serenity, hush, peace, peacefulness: A storm raged outside, but in the harbour was a breathless calm. 2 calmness, composure, placidity, placidness, peace, repose, sang-froid, coolness, self-control, equanimity, self-possession: The calm exhibited by the passengers during the hijacking was admirable.

--adj. 3 quiet, still, tranquil, serene, peaceful, balmy, halcyon, mild, undisturbed, unagitated, placid, pacific; motionless, smooth, even; windless: The sea is never calm in the same sense as a mountain lake. 4 composed, cool, cool-headed, self-controlled, impassive, dispassionate, unmoved, unruffled, serene, tranquil, sedate, staid, stoical, Colloq together: She remained calm while the others panicked.

--v. 5 Also, calm down. quiet, quieten, still, soothe, hush, lull, pacify; mollify, appease, placate, become or make quiet or pacified or less agitated, Colloq cool off or down: The arbitrator did his best to calm the two litigants by suggesting a compromise. After everyone had calmed down, the speaker continued.

camouflage

n. 1 disguise, concealment, cover-up, cover, guise, cloak, mask, screen, blind, (false) front, show, fa‡ade, pretence, trickery, deception; protective colouring or coloration, Technical apatetic or aposematic or cryptic colouring or coloration: Camouflage prevented the enemy from seeing our tanks.

--v. 2 disguise, cloak, mask, cover (up), hide, conceal, screen, veil; misrepresent, falsify: We camouflaged our movements by fastening twigs and leaves to our helmets.

camp° n. 1 camping-ground, camp-ground, bivouac, encampment, camp-site; settlement; camping-site, Brit caravan site: The name 'Chester' derives from Latin castrum, meaning 'camp', for the city was originally the site of a Roman camp. Is there a camp where we can stay overnight? 2 faction, set, coterie, clique, group, party, body: On this issue, the politicians are divided into two camps.

--v. 3 encamp, pitch camp, tent: Our family likes to go camping in the mountains during the summer. 4 lodge, bivouac, settle: The platoon camped by the river. 5 camp out. Slang crash: Mind if I camp out in your pad tonight?

campý adj. 1 outr,, outrageous, exaggerated, artless, affected, inartistic, extravagant, artificial, Dadaistic, theatrical, mannered, flamboyant, showy, ostentatious, effeminate, Colloq campy: Some of the kitsch produced in the 1930s was the epitome of camp. His manner is a bit too camp for my taste.

--v. 2 exaggerate, show off, strut, flaunt, flounce, prance, posture, Colloq ham: Clarence just loves to camp it up whenever there are women around.

campaign n. 1 operation(s), manoeuvre(s), crusade, action; drive, offensive, push, effort; struggle: Napoleon's Russian campaign ended in disaster. Our next sales campaign will be aimed at teenagers. 2 competition, contest, rivalry, race: Presidential campaigns last for more than a year.

--v. 3 run, electioneer, compete, Brit stand; US and Canadian stump; Colloq throw or toss one's hat in the ring: Next week the Labour candidate will campaign in Yorkshire.

cancel v. 1 void, annul, invalidate, nullify, quash; revoke, rescind, redeem, repeal, abolish, retract, withdraw, recall, repudiate, abrogate, countermand, deny: The bonds have been cancelled and are worthless. She cancelled the incorrect cheque. 2 delete, obliterate, cross or strike or blot out, dele, rub out, erase, expunge, efface, eradicate, quash, deracinate; eliminate, do away with: I was forced to cancel the chapter of my book that dealt with M.I.5 activities. 3 Sometimes, cancel out. neutralize, nullify, counterbalance, countervail, compensate (for), make up for, offset, counteract: His later kindnesses cancel his previous injustices.

cancellation
n. 1 cancelling, annulment, nullification, rescinding, voiding, rescission, revocation, abolition, abandonment, withdrawal, abrogation; repeal: We found a hotel room in the end because of a late cancellation. 2 invalidation, revocation, abolition, discontinuance, termination, suppression: If you fail to pay the premium, the policy is subject to cancellation. 3 elimination, abolition; stoppage, cessation: Owing to the storm, some trains are subject to cancellation.

candid adj. 1 frank, open, plain, sincere, ingenuous, straight, straightforward, truthful, forthright, direct, unequivocal, plain-spoken, plain-speaking, outspoken, honest, artless, blunt, guileless, open-hearted, above-board, undeceitful, undeceiving, undeliberative, uncalculating, uncalculated, unpremeditated, uncontrived , Colloq upfront: Henry offered a very candid account of his feelings. Let us be candid and speak our minds. 2 just, impartial, objective, fair, equitable, unbiased, unprejudiced, even-handed; unbigoted: The speaker expressed a candid view of all of the proposals. 3 unposed, informal, impromptu: Here is a candid photo of the two of us in Rome.

candidate n. aspirant, seeker, office-seeker, runner, nominee; applicant, entrant; prospect, possibility: There are quite a few candidates for the post.

candour n. 1 openness, frankness, ingenuousness, simplicity, na‹vety, outspokenness, unreservedness, forthrightness, honesty, sincerity, directness, straightforwardness, unequivocalness: I admire her candour, but the truth sometimes hurts. 2 impartiality, fairness, justice, objectivity, open-mindedness: In criticism candour is as rare as bigotry is frequent.

candy n. sweet(s), bon-bon(s), sweetmeat(s), confectionery: Eating candy can be bad for your teeth.

cannibal n. anthropophagite, man-eater: They were said to have been captured by cannibals living in remote regions.

cant n. 1 hypocrisy, insincerity, sham, pretence, humbug, sanctimony, sanctimoniousness, lip-service, affectedness, pretension: He wasn't really enthusiastic - all that talk was just cant. 2 jargon, shop, shop-talk, argot, vernacular, slang, dialect, patois, Creole, pidgin, gobbledegook or gobbledygook, Colloq lingo: The criminals use a cant not understood by those outside their fraternity.

cantankerous
adj. ill-natured, quarrelsome, perverse, cross, choleric, cross-grained, crabby, curmudgeonly, crusty, grumpy, surly, irascible, snappish, bad-tempered, ill-tempered, bearish, bilious, peevish, testy, irritable, touchy, disagreeable, tetchy, contrary, Colloq crotchety, grouchy, US cranky: Simon used to be so friendly, but he's become a cantankerous old codger.

canvass v. 1 solicit, electioneer, campaign, poll, US and Canadian stump: The candidates will be canvassing in farming areas next week. 2 survey, poll, study, analyse, examine, investigate, interview, question: The statisticians are not satisfied that enough women were canvassed to provide an accurate sample.

--n. 3 solicitation, campaign: The party's canvass of rural areas for new supporters was not very successful. 4 survey, study, investigation, poll, examination, tally: A canvass of editors shows they have a conservative view of the language.

canyon n. gorge, ravine, gully or gulley, pass, defile, Brit dialect gill or ghyll, US and Canadian coul,e, gulch; US gap, arroyo: The canyon created by the river is more than a thousand feet deep.

cap n. 1 hat, head covering: The plumber took off his cap and scratched his head. 2 lid, top, cover: Screw the cap on tight. 3 cap in hand. humbly, meekly, servilely, submissively, subserviently, docilely, respectfully: He went cap in hand to ask for a pay rise.

--v. 4 surpass, outdo, outstrip, better, beat, exceed, top, excel: Betty capped her earlier triumphs by winning the semifinals. 5 cover, protect: As it's begun to rain, you'd best cap the camera lens.

capability
n. ability, power, potential, capacity, means, faculty, wherewithal; talent, proficiency, aptitude, adeptness, skill, competence: Deirdre has the capability to be first in her form.

capable adj. 1 able, competent, efficient, proficient, qualified, talented, gifted, skilled, skilful, accomplished, apt, adept, clever, effective, effectual; expert, masterly, masterful: Halliwell is quite capable of speaking for himself. He is a capable violinist, but scarcely a virtuoso. 2 capable of. disposed to, inclined to, predisposed to: Though violent, he is not capable of murder.

capacity n. 1 volume, content, size, dimensions; room, space: What is the capacity of this bottle in litres? The car is of sufficient capacity to hold only four adults. 2 potential, ability, capability, competence, intelligence, wit, brain(s), talent, aptitude, acumen, understanding, sense, judgement, perspicacity, perceptiveness, perception, mother wit, intellect, genius, skill, gift, faculty, power, potential, Colloq chiefly US right stuff, the goods: They don't yet have the capacity to absorb advanced theory. 3 position, condition, character, place, post, role, job, office, duty, responsibility, province, sphere, function; Law competency, qualification: She has every right to sign cheques in her capacity as director.

cape° n. headland, promontory, peninsula, neck, point, Archaic ness: We sailed round the cape and made for the harbour.

capeý n. mantle, shawl, stole, cloak: His black cape reached to the floor.

caper n. 1 skip, leap, spring, frolic, hop, gambol, frisk, curvet, gambado: He can dance, though he does not cut capers. 2 escapade, stunt, mischief, prank, high jinks, US crime, burglary, robbery, Colloq shenanigan, dido, lark, Slang US and Canadian job: The capers we used to get up to after lights-out in the dormitory!

--v. 3 skip, hop, frolic, leap, jump, frisk, romp, gambol, prance, cavort, curvet: She capered about like a lamb in a meadow.

capital n. 1 head, top, crown, cap: The column was surmounted by a finely carved capital. 2 seat (of government): Winnipeg is the capital of Manitoba. 3 money, assets, funds, finance(s), cash, wherewithal; wealth, means, property, resources, savings, principal: My capital is invested in land at the moment. 4 majuscule, upper case, large letter, initial, Colloq cap: The chapter titles should be set in capitals.

--adj. 5 chief, main, major, important, cardinal, central, principal, prime, primary, paramount, pre-eminent, foremost, leading: Our capital responsibility is to ensure the passengers' safety. 6 first-class, first-rate, excellent, superior, matchless, peerless, choice, select, outstanding, fine, superb, splendid, marvellous, extraordinary, Colloq smashing, great, super, Brit brill, Old-fashioned topping, top-hole, ripping, ripsnorting: Eating out tonight was a capital idea.

capitulate
v. 1 surrender, yield, give up, submit, succumb: Want of provisions quickly obliged the fortress to capitulate. 2 acquiesce, concede, relent, give in, yield: He begged so piteously that the king finally capitulated and allowed him to live.

capricious
adj. whimsical, erratic, flighty, fickle, mercurial, unsteady, variable, unstable, wayward, unpredictable, undependable,

changeable, impulsive, crotchety, quirky, unreliable, inconstant, fanciful, wanton: His decisions are capricious and not based on sound judgement. The weather in March is capricious: as Mark Twain said, if you don't like it, just wait five minutes.

capsize v. upset, overturn, turn turtle or upside down, tip (over), keel over, invert: When the wind capsized the boat, we lost all our gear overboard.

captivate v. enthral or US enthrall, enslave, fascinate, hypnotize, entrance, beguile, charm, enamour, enchant, bewitch, enrapture, dazzle, infatuate, attract, allure, seduce, win: Her beauty captivated film-goers everywhere.

captive n. 1 prisoner, convict, hostage, detainee, internee; slave, bondman or bondsman, bondservant: The captives were kept in a wretched hole.

--adj. 2 imprisoned, incarcerated, confined, caged, locked up, under lock and key: Captive animals lose their free spirit.

captivity n. confinement, imprisonment, internment, detention, custody, incarceration, restraint; bondage, slavery, thraldom or US also thralldom, enslavement, servitude; Archaic durance: Some wild creatures do not survive in captivity. Entire populations of conquered territories were taken into captivity in ancient times.

capture n. 1 seizure, taking, catching, arrest, apprehension, Slang pinch, collar: They celebrated the capture of the Spanish galleon. The State has offered a reward for the capture of the bank robbers.

--v. 2 seize, take, catch, lay or take hold of, grab, apprehend, arrest, Slang pinch, collar, nab, Brit nick: Eventually, they captured the thief on the roof.

car n. 1 (motor) vehicle, motor car, automobile, passenger car, Old-fashioned or slang motor; Chiefly US auto; Colloq jalopy, heap, pile, crate, machine, buggy, transport; Slang wheels: Borrow a car and drive down for the weekend. 2 (railway) carriage: The body was found in a sleeping car of the Orient

Express.

card n. 1 playing-card, Slang pasteboard: The winning card was the ten of diamonds. 2 calling-card, visiting-card, carte de visite, business card: Visitors used to leave their cards on the silver tray at the front door. 3 greetings card, Christmas card, birthday card, anniversary card, condolence card, Easter card, New Year card: I sent Jacquelyn a card for her birthday last year. 4 postcard, US postal card: Drop me a card when you get there, just so I'll know you're all right. 5 index card, file card: The names and addresses of our members, formerly held on cards, are now stored in the computer. 6 membership card; press card; union card: I showed my card at the door and they let me in without any problem. 7 dance-card: She told me that her dance-card was full - and was likely to be for the next ten years. 8 US car-card, window-card, show-card: At the cost of a card on the New York buses, we'd never get our money back. 9 credit card; bank card: You may pay by card or cheque. They won't accept your cheque without a card. 10 identity or identification card, I.D. (card): The police asked to see my card. 11 joker, prankster, practical joker, wag, humorist, comedian, funny man: That Oscar - he's quite a card, isn't he? 12 on or esp. US in the cards. destined, fated, slated, in the offing; likely, probable, possible, liable: I doubt that a change of government is on the cards for some time to come. 13 play one's cards right, well, badly, etc. act, behave, take action; plan, use strategy: If Francis plays his cards right, he may be made head of department when Mark leaves. 14 put or lay one's cards on the table or show one's cards. act openly, reveal all, be forthright, be direct, be open, be honest, be unsecretive, Colloq come clean: I'm going to put my cards on the table, and let you know all my plans.

cardinal adj. important, chief, key, special, main, central, principal, prime, primary, essential, necessary, fundamental; supreme, paramount, highest, first, foremost, leading, pre-eminent: The cardinal virtues are justice, prudence, temperance, and fortitude, to which some writers add faith, hope, and charity.

care n. 1 anxiety, worry, trouble, anguish, disquiet, distress, grief, sorrow, dolour, sadness, suffering, misery, woe, tribulation: His haggard look reflected a life of care. 2 concern, regard, vigilance, mindfulness, heed, solicitude;

heedfulness, attention, pains, carefulness, meticulousness, punctiliousness; caution, circumspection: The essence of public-spiritedness is care for the common good. He looks after his moustache and beard with great care. Open with care. 3 responsibility, charge, protection, guardianship, custody, keeping, safe keeping; control, direction, supervision: The child has been released into our care. 4 take care of. look after, attend to, be responsible for, take charge of, take responsibility for; tend, nurse: You should take care of your money. Does she have enough experience to take care of someone who is ill?

--v. 5 be concerned, trouble oneself, feel interest, worry, fret, trouble, Brit mind: Do you care whether Arnold gets the job he wants? I don't care who you are, you can't come in here! 6 care for. a look after, tend, attend (to), watch over, protect, take care of, provide for; nurse: He cared for his ailing parents for about twenty years. b like, fancy, be attracted to, be fond of, love, be keen on, be enamoured of: Jennifer admitted last night how much she cares for David.

careen v. heel over, keel over; US loosely career, sway, tip, pitch, veer, swerve, lurch: We hauled out the boat, careened her, and proceeded to caulk her seams.

career n. 1 employment, occupation, calling, vocation, pursuit, (life's) work, job, business, livelihood; profession, trade, craft, m,tier: She has made a career out of helping others. He is undecided whether to pursue a career in accountancy.

--v. 2 speed, race, rush, dash, fly, tear, hurtle, bolt, shoot, Colloq zoom: A bicycle came careering around the corner and knocked him down.

carefree adj. nonchalant, easy, easygoing, insouciant, light-hearted, blithe, happy-go-lucky, breezy, airy; blas,, indifferent, unconcerned, unworried, trouble-free, worry-free, contented, happy: Till he graduated from university, he had lived an entirely carefree life.

careful adj. 1 cautious, wary, circumspect, chary, prudent, watchful, aware, alert, vigilant: These days one cannot be too careful about walking in the city at night. 2 meticulous, painstaking, attentive, punctilious, (well-)organized, systematic, precise, fastidious, thorough, scrupulous, conscientious, particular, finicky, finical, fussy: The police conducted a careful search for weapons.

careless adj. 1 unconcerned, untroubled, unworried, casual, indifferent, heedless, thoughtless, inconsiderate, uncaring, devil-may-care, irresponsible, cursory, lackadaisical, perfunctory: No one could approve of the careless way he treats his family. 2 inattentive, negligent, thoughtless, absent-minded, neglectful, remiss; unobservant, unthinking, imprudent, unmindful, incautious, unwary, reckless, slapdash, rash: Many of the errors come from being careless. 3 inaccurate, imprecise, inexact, incorrect, wrong, error-ridden, erroneous, Colloq sloppy: You won't get a good mark for such a careless paper. 4 unstudied, ingenuous, artless, casual, nonchalant: I dislike his careless way of dressing, but it does show some style.

caress   n. 1 pat, stroke, fondling, blandishment; cuddle, embrace, hug; nuzzle, kiss: He submitted willingly to her caresses.

--v. 2 touch, pat, pet, fondle, stroke; cuddle, embrace, hug; nuzzle, kiss: The kitten approached warily and Isabella caressed it.

cargo   n. shipment, consignment, shipload, truckload, wagon-load, load, trainload, US carload; freight, goods, merchandise: The cargo of rifles was delivered to the warehouse. The ship was lost with all its cargo.

caricature

n. 1 cartoon, parody, burlesque, lampoon, satire, pasquinade, Colloq take-off, spoof, Brit send-up: The cartoon in the newspaper showed a caricature of the Prime Minister.

--v. 2 parody, satirize, lampoon, burlesque, ridicule, mock, distort, Colloq take off, Brit send up: Hogarth caricatured Churchill in the form of a bear.

carnage   n. slaughter, butchery, massacre, blood bath, holocaust, killing, Shoah, Churban or Hurban: The battle was fought with much carnage on both sides.

carnal adj. fleshly, sensual, animal, bodily, lustful, voluptuous, libidinous, lecherous, concupiscent, sexual, erotic, lascivious, licentious, lewd, prurient: She is intent on satisfying her carnal desires.

carouse v. 1 make merry, revel, Colloq party, pub-crawl, make whoopee, go on a bender or tear or binge or toot, paint the town red, binge, booze: After the cup final, we all caroused till the wee hours.

--n. 2 revel, spree, fling, wassail, carousal, drunk, bacchanal, Colloq binge, bender, booze, boozer, Brit knees-up, US tear, toot: They go on a carouse on Burns Night every year, then need a day to sleep it off.

carp v. find fault, criticize, cavil, complain, nag, pick at, pick on, bully, bullyrag or ballyrag, Colloq knock, pick holes (in), gripe, Brit whinge: She said that she would leave him if he kept on carping at her about her cooking.

carriage n. 1 (railway) coach, US car: We moved our belongings into the next carriage. 2 bearing, mien, air, manner, deportment, conduct, demeanour, attitude, posture, stance, presence, behaviour, comportment: His upright carriage immediately identified him as a military man. 3 freight, freightage, transportation, cartage, shipping; postage: Carriage is free within mainland Britain.

carrier n. 1 bearer, porter; transporter, drayman, shipper, haulier or US hauler; carter: The company we use as a carrier is expensive. 2 transmitter, Immunology vector, US Typhoid Mary: She couldn't have caught the disease directly, only through some carrier.

carry v. 1 transport, convey, bear, lug, drag, cart, move, Colloq tote, Slang US schlep: He shouldn't carry such heavy packages at his age. 2 conduct, convey, lead, take, transport, transfer, transmit: This cable carries the power to the town. 3 drive, impel, conduct, convey, take, move: He travelled aimlessly, wherever the wind carried his ship. 4 support, maintain, finance: I had a wife and four children and was unable to carry my brother's family as well. 5 bear, hold up, uphold, maintain: Despite her troubles, she carried her head high. 6 win, take, sweep, capture, gain, secure: She carried the election easily. 7 stock, sell, offer; display: We don't carry purple shoes in this shop, Madam. 8 broadcast, disseminate, offer, release; communicate, present, read, report, announce; give: The news is carried on this station every night at nine. 9 carry away. transport, excite, enrapture, delight: He was quite carried away by her attentions. 10 carry off. a win, gain, capture, secure: She managed to carry off the first prize for the third year running. b abscond with, kidnap, take, purloin, Colloq Brit pinch, nick: I'm afraid that some of your chickens have been carried off by a fox. c accomplish, perform, effect, do, succeed, handle or manage successfully, bring off, carry out: We carried off the raid without loss of a single man. d kill, be or cause the death of, cause to die: He was carried off by yellow fever in his eightieth year. 11 carry on. a continue, proceed, go on, persist, keep on or at, persevere: Don't stop - just carry on with what you were doing. b manage, conduct, operate: Despite the fire, we are carrying on our business as usual. c misbehave, Colloq act up, fool around, Brit play up: The children are carrying on so, I can't get any work done. 12 carry out or through. perform, effect, implement, complete, execute, accomplish, continue, conclude: Henry is carrying out his father's wishes according to the terms of his will.

cart n. 1 handcart, pushcart, trolley, barrow, wagon or Brit also waggon: You'll need a cart to carry all these things to the car.

--v. 2 carry, convey, move, lug, drag, tote, transport, bring, haul, Colloq US schlep: Why do you cart that heavy bag everywhere you go?

carte blanche

n. licence, permission, sanction, free rein, authority, discretion: She was given carte blanche to spend the money any way she wished.

carve v. 1 hew, cut, sculpt, sculpture, shape, chisel, model, fashion, engrave, incise, grave, whittle, chip: The bust is carved out of solid marble. 2 Often, carve up or out. divide (up), cut (up), subdivide, apportion, parcel out, allot, partition: The gang-leaders carved up the territory, and the killings stopped for a while.

case°   n. 1 instance, example, event, occurrence; happening, occasion, circumstance, state, situation: In a recent case a farmer was attacked by a man-eating tiger. Holmes is investigating a case of a missing necklace. 2 action, suit, lawsuit, dispute; cause: I lost my case. 3 patient, invalid, victim: Four new cases were admitted to the hospital yesterday. 4 specimen, instance, example: Howard is an odd case, isn't he? 5 in any case. in any event, come what may, at all events, anyhow, anyway: In any case, your decision won't affect me. 6 in case. a lest, for fear that: He was worried in case his wife found out where he had been. b if, in the event that, if it happens or proves or turns out that, if it should happen or prove or turn out that: In case you were thinking of leaving, remember that we have your car keys. 7 in case of. in the event of; for fear of: In case of fire, you must use the staircase. We insured the house in case of fire. 8 the case. the fact, the actuality, the truth, the reality, what really happened or took place: She said he was drunk, but that's not the case.

caseý   n. 1 box, container, carton, crate; chest, holder, receptacle; trunk, suitcase, casket: Please order two cases of paper for the copying machine. The cosmetics came in a fitted case lined in velvet. 2 covering, cover, protection, casing, envelope, wrapper: The engraving was on the inside of the watch-case. The book came in a case of fine calfskin.

--v. 3 encase, box, crate, pack, package, containerize: The computer arrived, completely cased in rigid foam.

cash   n. 1 money, currency, bills, notes, banknotes, change, hard cash or money, specie, coin of the realm, legal tender, Slang moolah, dough, bread, loot, spondulicks or spondulix, Brit lolly, ready, readies, US scratch, gelt, mazuma: The shop accepts only cash, no charge cards.

--v. 2 Also, cash in. change, sell, liquidate, exchange; realize: She cashed some bonds to pay off the overdraft.

casket   n. 1 chest, box, container, case, coffer, receptacle: She keeps her jewels in a leather casket on the dressing-table. 2 coffin; sarcophagus: After the funeral, the pallbearers carried the casket from the church.

cast n. 1 throw, toss, pitch, shy, lob, thrust, chuck: In his next cast, the bowler lightly struck the jack. 2 dramatis personae, actors and actresses, players, performers, troupe, company: We invited the cast to a party after the show. 3 form, shape, mould; formation, formulation, arrangement: She can appreciate the turn of the phrase, the happy cast and flow of the sentence. 4 model, casting, mould; stamp, type: The Ming vase was copied from a cast. There are not many men of the cast of Crocker. 5 twist, turn, irregularity, warp; squint: The mare had a cast in her gallop. The pirate had a cast in his left eye. 6 turn, inclination, bent, hint, touch; tinge, tint, colouring: He has a melancholy cast of mind.

--v. 7 throw, toss, pitch, fling, sling, hurl, dash, send, Colloq chuck, shy: She tore off the gold necklace and cast it into the lake. 8 assign, delegate, appoint, designate, name, nominate, choose, pick, select: He has cast me as the villain in his little drama. 9 form, mould, found: The king's death-mask, cast in plaster, was on the floor of the tomb. 10 cast about for. search for, look for, seek: He was casting about for an excuse to avoid going to the Fordyces' for dinner. 11 cast aside. reject, discard, cast or throw away or out, get rid of: The expensive toys had been cast aside and the children were playing with the boxes and wrappings. 12 cast away. maroon, shipwreck: Jim O'Shea was cast away upon an Indian isle. 13 cast off. throw off, shed, doff: One's upbringing cannot be cast off like an old overcoat. 14 cast out. expel, drive out, throw out, evict, eject, oust, exile, remove, cast aside: She was cast out of the house by her mother, who had married a biker.

castaway n. reject, cast-off, outcast, pariah, exile: She always looked after the moral well-being of the castaways of society.

caste n. (social) class, rank, order, level, stratum, standing, position, station, status, estate: The women of her caste practised suttee.

castigate v. chastise, punish, correct, penalize, discipline, rebuke, reprimand, read (someone) the riot act, keelhaul, chasten, criticize, Colloq tell off, dress down, Chiefly Brit tick off, Brit carpet, haul over the coals, US and Canadian chew out, rake over the coals, put or call on or on to the carpet: They were castigated in the press for their extravagant lifestyle.

castle   n. 1 fortress, stronghold, citadel: The king moved to Windsor Castle during the winter. 2 mansion, palace, manor-house, hall, chƒteau: Mr Mooney lives alone in his castle and has nothing to do with his neighbours.

casual   adj. 1 accidental, chance, random, fortuitous, unexpected, unforeseen, unpremeditated, unplanned, unforeseeable, unpredictable, serendipitous: It was only a casual remark, but it was taken very seriously. We interviewed casual passers-by. 2 uncertain, unsure, haphazard, occasional, random, irregular, unsystematic, sporadic, erratic: The budget includes provision for both certain and casual revenues. 3 indifferent, nonchalant, offhand, insouciant, apathetic, cool, unconcerned, uninterested, pococurante, dispassionate, blas,, relaxed, lackadaisical: He may seem casual, but he is genuinely concerned about the patients. 4 informal; lounge: Dinner dress is not required: you may come in casual clothes. 5 offhand, happy-go-lucky, natural, easy, easygoing, devil-may-care, unconcerned, relaxed, d,gag,, unconstrained: Phil is quite casual about losing money at roulette.

casualty n. 1 disaster, catastrophe, calamity, accident, mischance, misadventure, mishap: The company insures against casualties at sea. 2 a victim, fatality, Colloq statistic: I'm afraid that Jeff was a casualty of last year's cut in personnel. She was only one of thousands of casualties of the earthquake. b Usually, casualties. Chiefly military wounded, injured, missing, missing in action, dead, fatalities, US MIA(s), body count: The casualties were mounting.

catastrophe

n. 1 disaster, calamity, cataclysm: The eruption of Vesuvius was one of the major catastrophes in recorded history. 2 misfortune, bad luck, shock, blow, tragedy, disaster; mishap, mischance, misadventure, accident, fiasco, failure: Cook reported a catastrophe with the layer cake.

catch   v. 1 capture, seize, apprehend, take or get (hold of), grab, grip, grasp, take captive, hold, arrest, take prisoner, Colloq nab, pinch, collar, Brit nick: The police caught him when he returned to the scene of the crime. 2 trap, ensnare, entrap, snare, net, bag, hook, round up, corral: We caught three trout this morning. I caught all the horses that had broken through the fence. 3 take, get on or on to, board: You can catch the London train at Aylesbury. 4 surprise, discover, find: They fired him after catching him with his hand in the till. 5 be seized or taken hold of by or with, come down with, be afflicted by or with, contract, get, suffer from: You'll catch a cold if you don't wear a hat. 6 strike, hit, deliver, fetch, box: She caught him a great blow on the ear and he went down. 7 tangle, become entangled or stuck or trapped or hooked: His foot caught in the stirrup when he fell, and he was dragged along. 8 restrain, stop, check, curb: She caught herself before telling the police where the thief was hiding. 9 intercept, grab, seize, snatch: He caught the ball before it touched the ground. 10 understand, see, comprehend, grasp, apprehend, fathom, perceive, discern, follow, take in, gather, Colloq figure out, get, catch on (to), get the drift (of), Brit twig: I didn't quite catch what you said - please can you repeat it? 11 captivate, charm, bewitch, enchant, fascinate, seduce, attract, entice, allure: She knows how to use her charms to catch a man. 12 attract, draw: A very slight movement caught my eye. 13 catch on. a understand, grasp, see (through), comprehend, get (it), Brit twig: I didn't catch on to what she planned to do it till it was too late. The joke's on you and you still don't catch on, do you? b take hold, succeed, become popular or fashionable: Do you think the hula hoop will catch on again? 14 catch up. a absorb, involve, enthrall, immerse: He was completely caught up in the plot of the new novel. b reach, overtake, overhaul: I finally caught up with her as she neared the house.

--n. 15 capture, take, bag, prize, trophy: The catch of the day was a 20-pound pike. 16 acquisition; conquest: She was considered quite a catch. 17 clasp, hook, pin, clip, fastening, fastener: The catch on the necklace opened and pearls spilt all over the floor. 18 trick, disadvantage, hitch, snag, fly in the ointment, catch-22, trap, problem, drawback , Colloq US hooker: The first book is free, but the catch is that you have to buy four more at the regular price.

catching adj. 1 contagious, infectious, transmissible, transmittable, communicable: The doctor said that what I have is not catching. 2 attractive, captivating, fascinating, enchanting, bewitching, entrancing, winning, enticing, alluring, fetching: The strange object in the shop window was most catching to the eye of a passer-by.

categorical
adj. direct, explicit, express, unconditional, firm, positive, unreserved, unrestricted, absolute, outright, downright, unequivocal, unambiguous, specific; emphatic, unqualified, authoritative, dogmatic, Technical apodeictic or apodictic: His denial was clear and categorical.

categorize
v. classify, class, sort, organize, assort, rank, order, section, departmentalize, group, arrange: Should plankton be categorized under zoology or botany?

category n. class, classification, type, sort, kind, variety, group, grouping, listing, rank, ranking, list, grade, department, division, section, sector, area, sphere; head, heading: Into which category would you put the partially disabled?

cater v. 1 provision, victual; purvey, provide: We cater exclusively for housebound gourmets. 2 cater for or to. indulge, humour, serve, dance attendance on, pamper, baby, coddle, minister to, spoil, mollycoddle, cosset, pander to: She caters for him night and day. Our music group caters for all levels of ability.

catholic adj. universal, general, inclusive, all-inclusive, broad, wide, comprehensive, widespread, all-embracing, eclectic, liberal: Her musical tastes are catholic - they range from Bach to Berry (Chuck, that is).

cattle n. livestock, stock, beef; cows, bulls, bullocks, steers, bovines, oxen: He spent 20 years as a cowboy, herding cattle in Texas.

cause n. 1 origin, occasion, source, root, genesis, agent, prime mover, well-spring: The cause of the train crash is not yet known. 2 originator, creator, producer, agent, agency: His indecision was the cause of many of our problems. 3 ground or grounds, justification, reason, basis, call, motive: You have no cause to be dissatisfied. 4 case, matter, issue, concern; movement, undertaking; ideal, belief: We appealed the miners' cause to the high court.

--v. 5 make, induce: What causes hot air to rise? 6 effect, bring on or about, give rise to, result in, produce, create, precipitate, occasion, lead to, induce, generate, provoke, promote; engender; motivate, compel: Overeating causes indigestion.

caustic adj. 1 burning, corrosive, destructive, mordant, astringent: Sulphuric acid is the caustic agent that eats away the metal. 2 sarcastic, biting, acrimonious, sharp, bitter, biting, sardonic, cutting, trenchant, critical, scathing, acid, harsh, pungent, virulent: His caustic remarks do not earn him many friends.

caution n. 1 warning, admonition, admonishment, caveat, monition, advice, counsel, injunction: A word of caution is needed before you go ahead. 2 wariness, prudence, care, vigilance, forethought, heed, watchfulness, alertness, circumspection, discretion: Drivers should exercise extra caution in bad weather.

--v. 3 warn, admonish, forewarn, tip (off); advise, counsel: Some employees had to be cautioned about arriving on time.

cautious adj. wary, heedful, careful, prudent, circumspect, watchful, vigilant, alert, circumspect, discreet, guarded: They were very cautious about letting their children go out on their own.

cave n. 1 cavern, grotto, hollow, hole, cavity, den: In the cave were prehistoric wall paintings.

--v. 2 cave in. a collapse, break down, give way, subside, fall in or inwards: The earthquake caused the walls of the house to cave in. b yield, submit, give way; surrender; Colloq buckle, knuckle under: After eight hours of questioning, he caved in and told them everything.

cavil n. 1 quibble, complaint: There is a minor cavil at the wording of the statutes.

--v. 2 carp, quibble, split hairs, complain, find fault, censure, criticize, dispute, object, demur, Colloq nit-pick: They cavilled at a mere misspelling.

cavity n. pit, hole, hollow, opening, crater, gap; space: The limestone is marked with a pattern of cavities. Vowel sounds resonate in the oral cavity.

cavort v. curvet, prance, caper, frisk, bound, gambol, romp, skip, leap, jump, dance: Stop cavorting about and settle down.

3.2 cease...
=-

cease v. 1 stop, end, finish, leave off, terminate, halt, discontinue, desist (from), break off (from), refrain (from): Will that noise never cease?

--n. 2 without cease. ceaselessly, endlessly, unendingly, incessantly, interminably, continuously, continually, constantly, ad infinitum, infinitely, perpetually, forever, eternally, everlastingly, non-stop, unremittingly: Sisyphus was condemned to roll his burden uphill without cease.

cede v. yield, give way, give up, grant, give, surrender, deliver up, turn or make or hand over, convey, transfer, relinquish, abandon, renounce, abdicate: Let private concerns always cede to the common good. The territory was ceded to our government in 1792.

celebrant n. officiant, official; priest: The celebrant at High Mass was the archbishop.

celebrate v. 1 hold, perform, solemnize, ritualize, observe, keep, honour, officiate at; sanctify, hallow, consecrate, dedicate: The archbishop himself celebrated holy communion. 2 rejoice (in or at), memorialize; have a party, revel, make merry, wassail, Colloq party, paint the town red, whoop it up: The entire town celebrated the opening of the bridge with a huge party. 3 extol, praise, exalt, glorify, laud, eulogize, honour; lionize: She was widely celebrated for her achievements. 4 publicize, advertise, broadcast: The stones themselves would find a Voice, To celebrate his Praise.

celebrated

adj. famous, renowned, well-known, famed, prominent, noted, eminent, noteworthy, distinguished, illustrious, acclaimed: Their son became a celebrated brain surgeon.

celebration

n. 1 observance, observation, performance, solemnization, hallowing, sanctification, memorialization, commemoration: The celebration of the Eucharist was delayed because the vicar had been called to a sickbed. 2 praising, extolling, honouring: The ceremony was a celebration of their achievements in space exploration. 3 party, fˆte, gala, festivities, frolic, revelry, merrymaking: The New Year's celebration is planned at Jill's house this year.

celebrity n. 1 renown, fame, repute, reputation, prominence, eminence, distinction, prestige, famousness, popularity, notability, stardom; notoriety: Dr Johnson was not enriched in proportion to his celebrity. 2 notable, dignitary, star, luminary, toast of the town, personage, name, personality, superstar: The hotel lobby was packed with celebrities from show business.

celestial adj. 1 heavenly, divine, spiritual, godly, paradisiac(al) or paradisaic, sublime, empyrean, Elysian, ethereal, immortal, supernatural: They worshipped Jupiter and other celestial beings. 2 astronomical, astral: We studied celestial navigation and how to use a sextant.

celibacy n. 1 bachelorhood, spinsterhood, singleness: People who say they enjoy celibacy may simply have not met the right partner. 2 chastity, virginity, continence, (self-)restraint, abstinence, purity: They have to take a vow of celibacy before entering the priesthood.

celibate adj. 1 unmarried, single, unwed: Both brother and sister remained celibate all their lives. 2 abstinent, abstemious, continent, ascetic; virgin(al), pure, chaste, unsullied, undefiled, virtuous, immaculate: He led the celibate life of a monk for twenty years.

--n. 3 bachelor, spinster: She belonged to an order of female celibates.

cell n. chamber, room, apartment, cubicle; stall: As a friar, he lived in a small, plain cell for most of his life.

cellar n. basement, vault: She led me down to the cellar to show me her wine collection.

cement n. 1 mortar, bond, glue, gum, paste, solder; adhesive: You'll need a special kind of cement to stick metal to glass.

--v. 2 stick, glue, paste, solder, weld, braze, bond; join, bind, combine, unite; cohere, hold, cling, adhere: First cement the tiles to the wall. The ashes and cinders cement readily into a compact mass.

central adj. 1 middle, medial, median; inner, inside: The central reservation between the carriageways will be planted with bushes. 2 main, principal, important, chief, key, leading, dominant, prime, primary, pre-eminent, cardinal, significant, essential: Odysseus is the central figure of the poem.

centre n. 1 middle, core, heart; nucleus, focal point, hub, pivot, nave; mid-point: He stood in the centre of the road. We journeyed to the centre of the earth. The tower is at the centre of the market square. The amount to be paid was at the centre of the controversy. Mark the centre of the line.

--v. 2 focus, converge, meet, concentrate, cluster: The business of the meeting centred on the nomination of a chairperson. All my hopes were centred on getting the job as supervisor.

ceremonial
adj. 1 ritual, celebratory, commemorative: We followed the ceremonial procession. 2 formal, solemn, stately, dignified; ceremonious, august: The ceremonial robes of his office were white. The ceremonial rites of passage involve many participants.

--n. 3 rite, ritual, formality, ceremony, service, observance: These are the ceremonials prescribed in the Anglican service.

ceremonious
adj. 1 ceremonial, formal, dignified, solemn, Colloq stuffy, stiff, starchy: There are many ceremonious procedures involved

in a coronation. 2 courtly, courteous, polite, civil, correct, proper, conventional, punctilious, careful: He entered the room and made a ceremonious bow.

ceremony n. 1 rite, observance, solemnity, service, ceremonial, ritual, formality, function; obsequies: I had to attend my grandmother's funeral ceremony and was absent from school. 2 motions, formalities or formality, conventions or convention, niceties, proprieties, form, protocol; lip-service, appearances, pro formas, etiquette, decorum: Going through the ceremony is all they want - they don't care what you believe. Please sign even if only for ceremony's sake.

certain adj. 1 determined, set, fixed, predetermined, decided, settled, firm, stable, invariable, established, standard, constant, unchanging, steady, unfluctuating, non-fluctuating, traditional: He agreed to pay a certain yearly rent. She met him there every day at a certain time. 2 sure, unerring, definite, dependable, trustworthy, unfailing, infallible, reliable, assured, guaranteed: How do you know that the dividend is certain? 3 sure, inevitable, inescapable, destined, predestined, ineluctable, inexorable, unavoidable, definite, firm; unchanging, changeless, infallible, permanent, Colloq on the cards, a sure thing, US in the cards: It is not always certain that justice will triumph. Nothing is certain but death and taxes. 4 indubitable, indisputable, undisputed, undoubted, sure, doubtless, unequivocal, incontestable, undeniable, incontrovertible, absolute, irrefutable, unquestionable, unquestioned, unarguable, valid: It is certain only that we exist, according to Descartes. 5 confident; assured, sure, positive, definite: I am certain that she did not steal the money. 6 specific, particular, definite; unnamed, unspecified, non-specified, non-specific: He gave us certain information which we now have reason to doubt.

certainty n. 1 fact, actuality, reality, truth, Colloq sure thing: I would not advise you to neglect a certainty for something doubtful. 2 assurance, self-assurance, definiteness, confidence, conviction, faith, authoritativeness, positiveness, certitude: The certainty with which he played the card showed he expected it to be a winner. 3 for a certainty. assuredly, definitely, certainly, surely, positively; undoubtedly, indubitably, without (a) doubt, undeniably, unquestionably, absolutely, Colloq for sure: I know for a certainty that I cannot fly.

certify v. 1 confirm, attest (to), verify, testify (to), affirm, aver, asseverate, corroborate, substantiate, endorse, guarantee, warrant; swear (to), bear witness (to), vouchsafe, vouch (for): I will certify the accuracy of the report. She certified that she was the owner of the car. 2 declare, classify, establish, confirm: The magistrate certified the man insane.

3.3 chafe...

=-

chafe v. 1 rub, warm (up), heat (up): I took the chill off my hands by chafing them a bit. 2 rub, abrade, fret, gall, irritate, make sore: The skin is very tender where it was chafed. 3 fume, rage, seethe; ruffle, vex, fret, irritate: I chafed in impotent rage and exasperation at the ridiculous regulations. To chafe and vex me is a part of her nature.

--n. 4 sore, abrasion, bruise, soreness, irritation: The saddle caused a chafe on the inside of my thigh.

chaff n. 1 banter, raillery, ridicule, badinage, joking, teasing, twitting, Colloq kidding, ragging, Chiefly US and Canadian joshing: After the speech, he had to put up with a lot of good-natured chaff from the audience.

--v. 2 banter, tease, twit, rail at, Colloq kid, rag, Chiefly US and Canadian josh: When he was in the navy, his family chaffed him for having a girl in every port.

chain n. 1 string, series, combination; sequence, succession, train, course, set, concatenation: He owns a chain of bookshops. Interruption of the food chain can cause serious ecological consequences. A curious chain of circumstances led me to a small hotel at Torquay in February. 2 restraint, check, trammel, control, confinement, fetter, bond, manacle, shackle, gyve: The family finally threw off the chains of poverty.

--v. 3 shackle, secure, fasten, bind, gyve; confine, fetter, restrain, confine, restrict, tie, limit: Prometheus was chained to a rock as punishment for having brought fire to man. Marguerite felt chained after twenty years of marriage.

chair n. 1 seat, armchair, stool, bench, easy chair, rocking-chair: He offered me a chair so I sat down. 2 throne, bench, position, cathedra, authority; professorship, directorship: Sue has been offered a chair on the board. 3 chairperson, chairman, chairwoman, presiding officer, leader, moderator: The chair ruled on the matter after due consideration.

--v. 4 preside, lead, govern, moderate, run, direct, manage, oversee: Katherine will chair the meetings during the absence of the president.

challenge v. 1 question, dispute, defy, object to, take exception to, contest, doubt, call into doubt, call into or to question, impugn: I challenge the validity of your accusation. 2 invite, dare, summon, call out, provoke: The duke was challenged to a duel. 3 brave, dare, confront, defy, contest: We could challenge criticism with an easy confidence.

--n. 4 question, dispute, doubt: His opinions are open to challenge. 5 invitation, dare, summons, provocation, confrontation, defiance; ultimatum: An older opponent might not have issued such a challenge. 6 problem, demand, stimulation, trial, test: Are you sure that Mr Wilson will be able to meet the challenge of the new position?

chamber n. 1 assembly, body, legislature, judicature, house, congress, judiciary, senate, diet; consortium: She is entitled to sit in the Upper Chamber. 2 meeting-hall, reception room, assembly room: The council chamber was packed with people. 3 compartment, niche, nook, cavity: We hid the gold in a small chamber in the cave. 4 room, apartment; bedroom, bedchamber: On the first floor are the magnificent royal chambers.

champion n. 1 victor, winner, conqueror, title-holder, prizewinner, titleist: She is the women's singles champion for the fourth year in a row. 2 defender, guardian, protector, hero, supporter, backer, protagonist, advocate: He acquired a reputation as champion of the low-paid. 3 fighter, combatant, hero, warrior, campaigner, veteran: A stouter champion never handled a sword. The boar is often regarded as the champion among beasts.

--v. 4 defend, protect, guard; support, back, stand up for, fight for, maintain, sustain, uphold; espouse, forward, promote, advocate: He has always championed the cause of the underdog.

chance n. 1 fortune, luck, fate: We met, as chance would have it, at the supermarket. Life is but a game of chance for those who cannot control their destiny. 2 opportunity, time, turn; occasion: You have had your chance to return the money, now it is too late. 3 Also, chances. likelihood, probability, prospect, odds, certainty, predictability; conceivability, possibility: Chances are that he'll be late. The chance of winning the lottery is pretty remote. 4 Also, chances. risk, speculation, gamble: You are taking a chance going out there without a weapon. I'll take my chances. 5 by chance. a accidentally, unintentionally, inadvertently: By chance the witness saw him talking to the suspect. b perhaps, maybe, possibly, conceivably: Have you by chance a match?

--adj. 6 casual, incidental, accidental, unintentional, inadvertent; unplanned, unpremeditated, unexpected, unforeseen; unlooked-for: The affair began with a chance meeting at a pub.

--v. 7 happen; occur, come to pass, take place, come about; befall, betide: We chanced to see him jogging in the park. It chanced that a passer-by called the police. 8 risk, hazard; imperil, endanger, jeopardize, stake, bet, wager: Few would chance severe penalties or jail by lying on a tax return. Don't chance everything you've worked for!

change n. 1 substitution, replacement, exchange, interchange, switch: You have five minutes for a change of costume. This sunny weather is certainly a change for the better. 2 variation, difference, switch, variety, novelty: We prefer to live where there is a change of the seasons, not in the tropics. 3 variation, alteration, change-over, mutation, shift, modulation, modification, transformation, metamorphosis, revolution: I can't believe the change that has come over Betty since the divorce. 4 coin(s), coppers, silver; (hard) cash: I need some change for the coffee machine.

--v. 5 exchange, interchange, switch, trade; replace (with), substitute, Colloq swap or swop: I won't be a minute, I just want to change my shoes. I'd like to change this shirt for a larger size. 6 modify, alter, modulate; mutate, transform, metamorphose: Antoinette has changed since her marriage. I never thought anyone would be able to make her change her mind. 7 fluctuate, shift, vary; vacillate: The temperature often changes very rapidly here. 8 change to or into. turn into, become, transform, mutate, transmute, convert, metamorphose: The alchemists tried to change base metal into gold. Every winter changes into spring - sooner or later.

changeable

adj. 1 variable, mutable, protean, inconstant, unstable, unsettled, shifting, uncertain, irregular, uneven, unpredictable, labile, capricious, erratic, fickle, unreliable, undependable, mercurial, volatile: The weather has been changeable for the past week. 2 alterable, modifiable, transformable, convertible: Their meeting-places were changeable and known only to them.

changeless

adj. 1 unchanging, unvaried, eternal, permanent, fixed, stable; unchangeable, immutable, unalterable, inevitable, uniform: We studied photographs of the changeless Martian landscape. The fundamental truths of the Gospel are changeless. 2 abiding, permanent, constant, perpetual, everlasting, steadfast, unvarying, unchanging: Nothing could alter my changeless love for you.

channel n. 1 watercourse, canal, waterway, ditch, aqueduct, sluice, trench, trough, gutter, moat; river-bed, stream-bed: The engineers dug a channel to drain the swamp. 2 strait, narrows, neck: The English Channel connects the North Sea with the Atlantic Ocean. 3 furrow, groove, flute: The channels cut into this column are not straight. 4 course, means, way, approach, avenue, medium, path, artery, conduit: We have to open a new channel of communication with the terrorists.

--v. 5 direct, convey, pass, guide, lead, conduct: Their grievances are being channelled through the information officer.

chant n. 1 song, psalm, hymn, canticle, plainsong, plainchant, mantra, paean, dirge, monody, descant, carol; singsong: The war chant of the natives, echoing over the water, struck fear into their enemies.

--v. 2 sing, intone, descant, carol: The choir chanted the verses of a lugubrious threnody.

chaos n. formlessness, disorder, confusion; pandemonium, bedlam, turmoil, tumult; entropy: The universe arose out of chaos. If you want to see chaos, look in any teenager's bedroom. There was chaos as the bank closed its doors and ceased trading.

chaotic adj. 1 formless, shapeless, incoherent, disordered, disorderly, disorganized, unorganized, unsystematic, unsystematized, unmethodical, haphazard, irregular, helter-skelter, confused, topsy-turvy, jumbled, higgledy-piggledy, Brit shambolic: The present solar system is thought to have condensed from a chaotic mass of nebulous matter. The rules may seem chaotic at first sight. 2 tumultuous, noisy, clamorous, uproarious, wild, riotous, frenzied, hectic, turbulent, unstuck: The press conference became chaotic when the president announced his resignation.

chap n. fellow, lad, man, boy, Colloq guy, geezer, customer, gink, Brit bloke, Australian cove, US buddy, gazabo or gazebo; Old-fashioned Brit (old) egg, (old) bean, (old) crumpet, (old) boy; Slang US bozo: I went with some of the chaps from the club.

character n. 1 brand, stamp, mark, symbol, monogram, insigne, badge, emblem, sign, seal, label; letter, number, figure, type, sort, arbitrary, peculiar, rune, hieroglyphic or hieroglyph: They used to brand the character of a horse on the forehead of their slaves. We shall need to obtain a set of Cyrillic characters if we are going to print Russian texts. 2 characteristic, quality, distinction, trait, feature, mark; sort, kind, type, nature, description, attribute; idiosyncrasy, peculiarity: He now tried to give the war the character of a crusade. It is the character of some people to be curious. 3 morality, honesty, integrity, respectability, rectitude, honour, courage, goodness: Everyone agrees that she is a person of outstanding character. 4 person, personage, personality, individual: Cobbett had more sagacity and foresight than any other public character of his time. 5 role, part, personality, characterization, dramatis persona: He played the character of Caesar. 6 eccentric, card, Colloq oddball, nut, nutter, loony, bat, weirdo, nutcase, screwball, crackpot, fruit cake, Australian and old-fashioned Brit cove: She was regarded as quite a character because of her many strange habits. 7 role, position, status, capacity: He assumes the character of a Dutch uncle when he speaks to me. 8 in character. fitting, proper, suitable, in keeping, typical, normal, expected, characteristic: It is completely in character for Len to criticize everything he encounters. 9 out of character. untypical, atypical, uncharacteristic, abnormal, unexpected, unfitting: It would be out of character for Janet to refuse help to someone in need.

characteristic

adj. 1 typical, representative; emblematic, symbolic, distinctive, idiosyncratic, symptomatic: How characteristic it is of them to refuse to go to the dance! These subjects are characteristic of the early Impressionists.

--n. 2 mark, trait, attribute, feature, quality, property, peculiarity, idiosyncrasy, character, earmark: It is a characteristic of bees to swarm.

characterize

v. delineate, describe, portray, depict, represent, define, brand, label, mark, note, identify: She has consistently characterized him as a buffoon. 'Virago' is the term that would best characterize Felicity.

charade n. travesty, absurdity, mockery, farce, parody: He has made a charade of what could have been a serious relationship.

charge n. 1 load, burden, weight, onus, impediment; care, concern, obligation: She feared that she would become a charge on her children. 2 price, fee, cost: What is the charge for admission? 3 debt, debit, expense, assessment, liability: Any charge against the estate of the deceased will be paid in full. 4 care, custody, protection, guardianship, wardship, supervision, jurisdiction, control, responsibility, safe keeping: We left the children in the charge of Nanny and Nanny in charge of the children. 5 order, mandate, injunction, precept, command, dictate, direction, instruction, demand, exhortation: The judge's charge to the jury was to ignore the evidence given by the caretaker. 6 accusation, imputation, indictment, allegation: The charge is murder. The police decided to drop the charges against him. 7 attack, onset, action, assault, sally, raid, foray, sortie: At the signal the cavalry began their charge.

--v. 8 fill, imbue, load, instil, pervade, permeate, saturate, suffuse: The air was highly charged with a stench from the kitchen. 9 burden, entrust, commission, assign; afflict, tax: He was charged with the supervision of all the military schools. 10 command, order, bid, enjoin, exhort, urge, require, instruct, direct: I charge you not to speak of this matter to anyone. 11 blame, censure, accuse; indict, cite, name; allege, assert: She charged him with being a hypocrite. He has been charged with assault. It is charged that she was present at the commission of the crime. 12 bill, invoice, assess, debit: Please charge these items to my account. Do not charge me for merchandise not shipped. 13 ask, demand, claim, require, expect: How much do they charge for asparagus at the supermarket? 14 attack, assault, storm, assail, do battle (with): Four thousand horsemen stood ready to charge the enemy.

charitable

adj. 1 generous, liberal, bountiful, munificent, unselfish, open-handed, magnanimous, philanthropic, public-spirited, unsparing, eleemosynary: Despite her income, Irena has always been most charitable when it comes to worthwhile causes. 2 well-disposed, kindly, kind, beneficent, benevolent, well-wishing, lenient, tolerant, forgiving, indulgent, understanding, compassionate, humane, sympathetic, considerate, well-meaning, good: They took a charitable view of the matter and decided not to press charges.

charity   n. 1 generosity, alms-giving, munificence, liberality, open-handedness, magnanimity, beneficence, philanthropy, unselfishness, humanity, humanitarianism, good will: Your charity towards this hospital has been unequalled by any other donor, Sir Keith. 2 leniency, big-heartedness, large-heartedness, benevolence, magnanimity, indulgence, considerateness, consideration, compassion, understanding, sympathy, kind-heartedness: We are all urged to show charity towards those who wrong us. 3 alms, donation, contribution, largesse, Colloq Brit dole, US welfare, relief: I want the opportunity to work, not the government's charity.

charm n. 1 amulet, talisman, fetish, rabbit's foot, good-luck piece: She wears a charm to ward off evil spirits. 2 attractiveness, appeal, fascination, allure, magnetism, desirability, elegance, urbanity, sophistication, sophisticatedness, suavity, grace, refinement, cultivatedness, cultivation, culture, polish; magic, enchantment, spell, sorcery: To Diderot we go not for charm of style but for a store of fertile ideas. To get ahead Colin relies more on his charm than on his ability. 3 charms. beauty, attractiveness, pulchritude, prettiness, handsomeness, appeal, allure, magnetism, pull, draw: For all her charm, I would not trust her one inch. 4 like a charm. successfully, perfectly, miraculously, marvellously, extraordinarily, especially well: His appeal to their egos worked like a charm.

--v. 5 influence, control, subdue, bind, put a spell on, bewitch, enchant, seduce, hypnotize, mesmerize, enthral or US enthrall, captivate, delight, fascinate, Literary enrapture: He charmed them with some tale and they gave him their money. 6 overcome, subdue, calm, soothe, allay, assuage, hypnotize, mesmerize: Music is said to have qualities capable of charming savages.

charmed adj. 1 bewitched, spellbound, enchanted, magical: Apollonius considered the use of charmed rings essential to quackery. 2 fortified, protected: He must lead a charmed life to have survived all those battles. 3 pleased, delighted, enchanted, happy: I am charmed to meet you at last, Madam President.

charmer n. enchanter, enchantress, sorcerer, sorceress, magician; vamp, siren, Circe, Cleopatra, Lorelei, temptress, seductress; seducer, Romeo, Valentino, Don Juan, Lothario, Casanova, lady-killer, ladies' man; flatterer; smooth talker, Colloq (big-time) operator, con artist or man, Old-fashioned smoothie, wolf: Charlotte has run off with some charmer she met at a party.

chart n. 1 sea-chart, map: According to the chart, we are fifty miles west of the Lizard. 2 map, table, tabulation, graph, diagram; blueprint: A weather chart appears on page 23. Here is a chart of the highest-yielding unit trusts. She drew up a genealogical chart of the descendants of Queen Victoria.

--v. 3 plot, plan, map (out), design: He charted a course of action for the company. Have you charted the shortest route between Gibraltar and Cyprus?

charter n. 1 document, contract, compact, agreement, covenant: This year we again commemorate the signing of the United Nations charter. 2 permit, permission, licence or US license, authority, franchise, right, privilege, concession: He was given an exclusive charter to export furs in 1679. 3 lease, contract: We have the yacht under charter for the summer.

--v. 4 license, authorize, document, commission, approve, certify, franchise, qualify; recognize: He is a chartered accountant, she a chartered surveyor. 5 let, lease, rent, hire, engage, contract: I chartered the sloop for three weeks.

chase n. 1 hunting, hunt, pursuit: Police dogs entered the chase and the prisoner was finally caught. 2 run after, follow, pursue, track, go (out) after; court, woo: The police were chasing a man down the street. Stop chasing women and settle down. 3 chase away, off, out, etc. rout, put to flight, hound; drive away, off, out, etc.: I chased the cat away from the birdcage.

chaste adj. 1 pure, virginal, virgin, celibate, abstinent, continent, virtuous, undefiled, stainless, unstained, unsullied, unblemished, decent, clean, good, wholesome, moral: Only a knight who was wholly chaste would find the Grail. 2 subdued, severe, restrained, unadorned, austere, unembellished, simple, pure, undecorated, clean: In some respects, modern architecture emulates the chaste style of the ancient Egyptians.

chasten v. 1 discipline, correct, chastise, punish, castigate: He used every means to chasten the unruly and disobedient. 2 moderate, temper, subdue, curb, restrain, repress, tame, suppress: I am not as sanguine as I was - time and experience have chastened me.

chastise v. punish, beat, thrash, belabour or US belabor, spank, whip, flog, scourge, birch, cane; discipline, chasten, correct, censure, berate, scold: Pupils are not being chastised as in the old days.

chastity n. purity, continence, virginity, maidenhood, maidenhead, virtue, celibacy, abstinence, abstention, abstemiousness, restraint, self-restraint, forbearance: She was a nun and had taken a vow of chastity.

chat n. 1 conversation, colloquy, talk, small talk, gossip, palaver, chit-chat, tˆte-…-tˆte, heart-to-heart, Colloq gab, Chiefly Brit chin-wag, confab, Brit witter, natter, US and Canadian rap, gabfest, bull session: We'd get together for a chat every now and then.

--v. 2 converse, gossip, talk, chit-chat, Colloq gab, chew the fat or the rag, jaw, Brit witter, natter; Slang US and Canadian rap, bullshit: We were just chatting when I smelt something burning. 3 Brit chat up. flirt or dally with, persuade, induce, prevail upon, tempt, lure, entice, inveigle, seduce, proposition: Rick chats up every girl he meets.

chatter v. 1 prattle, gabble, jabber, prate, patter, gibber, cackle, jibber-jabber, Brit chaffer, Colloq gab, jaw, Brit natter, witter, rabbit on or away, waffle: He just kept chattering on about nothing. 2 clatter, rattle: It was so cold my teeth were chattering.

--n. 3 prattle, prate, patter, gossip, cackle, jabbering, chattering: I don't want to hear any more chatter in the library.

cheap adj. 1 inexpensive, low-priced, bargain-priced, low-cost, sale-priced, cut-price, reasonable; economy, budget(-priced): He was chewing on a cheap cigar. Everything used to be a lot cheaper when I was younger. 2 economical; reduced: Eggs are cheaper by the dozen. 3 shoddy, base, shabby, tawdry, sleazy, tatty, seedy; inferior, low-grade, poor, second-rate, trashy, worthless, Brit twopenny or tuppenny; Colloq tacky, Brit tinpot, Slang US two-bit, lousy, chintzy: Those cheap pictures ruin the look of the place. 4 stingy, miserly, penurious, niggardly, penny-pinching, cheese-paring, frugal, tight, tight-fisted, Scrooge-like, skinflinty: That cheap brother of yours wouldn't give even a penny to a beggar.

--adv. 5 inexpensively, cheaply, for a song, Brit for twopence or tuppence: You can buy those cheap from any street vendor. 6

cheaply, easily, reasonably, for a song, Brit for twopence or tuppence: She has sold cheap that which she holds most dear.

--n. 7 on the cheap. inexpensively, reasonably, cheaply, at or below cost, for a song, Brit for twopence or tuppence; Slang for peanuts: We buy these watches on the cheap and sell them to tourists.

cheat   n. 1 swindler, deceiver, impostor, fraud, faker, fake, swindler, trickster, confidence man, con man, operator, charlatan, mountebank, rogue, shark, Colloq phoney or US also phony, US snake-oil artist: It is amazing how many cheats are out there waiting to take advantage of you.

--v. 2 swindle, deceive, bilk, trick, con, take, fleece, defraud, euchre, hoax, hoodwink, Colloq con, take in, rook, flimflam, finagle, diddle, fiddle, move the goalposts, bamboozle, take for a ride; Slang rip off: His own solicitor cheated him out of his inheritance. If you paid ten pounds for that painting, you were cheated.

check   v. 1 stop, arrest, stay, halt, obstruct, block, limit; retard, slow, brake, curb, hinder, hamper, impede, thwart: They are trying to check the spread of the disease in West Africa. 2 restrain, control, repress, stay, inhibit, contain, curb, restrict: The animal population is checked only by availability of food. 3 authenticate, verify, confirm, substantiate, validate, corroborate, check into, check out, check up on: Please check his story to make sure he's not lying. 4 enquire about or after or into, check into, check (up) on, examine, investigate, inspect, make sure of, verify, monitor, test, study, scrutinize: You'd best check the temperature in the kiln. 5 correspond, coincide, agree, jibe, tally, conform, check out, fit, mesh; compare: His alibi doesn't check with the witness's statement. 6 check in. arrive, report: We check in for work at 0800. 7 check in or into. register, sign in or on, enrol, log in: We checked into the hotel. 8 check into. investigate, check out, check up on, verify, check: The detective checked into the backgrounds of all applicants. 9 check off. tick (off), mark, check: Check off the names in red. 10 check out. a depart, leave; go: He checked out of the hotel and took a taxi to the airport. b investigate, research, explore, enquire into, look into or at or over, scrutinize, examine, inspect, probe, survey, check up on, check, check into, check over: You had best check out her references before hiring her. c pass, pass muster or scrutiny, meet approval, be verified, check: According to our records, his story checks out. d Slang cash in one's checks or chips, kick the bucket, croak: Sam checked out last week - heart attack, I think. 11 check over or out. review, verify, authenticate, check: Please check over my figures before I submit them to the accountant. 12 check up (on). a investigate, do research, probe, explore, check: I don't know her name, but I'll check up and let you know. b determine, discover, find out, look into, check: I want you to check up on where they eat lunch.

--n. 13 stop, stopping, cease, surcease, hesitation, cessation, stoppage, interruption, break, pause, balk or baulk, discontinuity, discontinuation, discontinuance, suspension: The visitors continued to arrive without check, far into the night. 14 restraint, repression, inhibition, limitation, curb, restriction, control, constraint, hindrance, obstruction, impediment, damper: He keeps a good check on the foreman. This tax will serve as a check against free trade. 15 control, test, inspection, examination, scrutiny, verification, substantiation, authentication, confirmation, validation, corroboration: We do a thorough check on the quality of every product. 16 US tick, mark, dash, X: Place a check in the box alongside your choice. 17 token, receipt, counterfoil, stub; voucher, chit, certificate: Don't lose your baggage check. 18 chip, counter: Let's cash in our checks and go home. 19 Chiefly US bill, tab, charge(s): In the U.S.A., people generally add 15 per cent to the check for a tip.

cheeky adj. impudent, impertinent, insolent, audacious, disrespectful, rude, uncivil, forward, brazen, pert, saucy: That cheeky little brat told me to get lost!

cheer n. 1 disposition, frame of mind, spirit: They were of good cheer, considering their predicament. 2 cheerfulness, gladness, mirth, joy, gaiety, blitheness, happiness, buoyancy, light-heartedness, merrymaking: There wasn't much cheer at the pub when we learnt of what had befallen poor Grover. 3 comfort, solace, encouragement, consolation: She brought in a little breath of cheer from the outside world. 4 shout, cry, hurrah, rah, huzzah, hurray or hooray: Three cheers for Penelope!

--v. 5 comfort, console, solace, encourage, inspirit, warm, Colloq buck up: Your friendly note cheered me considerably. 6 gladden, enliven, cheer up, hearten, buoy up, brighten, elate, brighten, uplift, lift up: Let thy heart cheer thee in the days of thy youth. 7 applaud, shout, hurrah, clap, yell; Colloq Brit and Australian and New Zealand barrack for: The crowd cheered for five minutes when Mr Flews stood to speak.

cheerful adj. 1 joyous, glad, gladsome, blithesome, blithe, happy, cheery, of good cheer, joyful, jolly, exuberant, jubilant, gleeful, gay, light-hearted, merry: I am pleased to see that Agatha is so cheerful. Why do you cry at weddings, which are supposed to be such cheerful occasions? 2 cheering, gladdening, animating, bright, enlivening, cheery, gay, buoyant, invigorating: She has redecorated the bedroom in more cheerful colours.

chequered adj. 1 chequer-board, checked; patchwork; plaid, tartan: You cannot use a chequered tablecloth for a formal dinner. 2 variegated, diversified, alternating, variable, good and bad, varying, fluctuating, up and down; uncertain: David Williams had a rather chequered career in the army.

cherish v. 1 treasure, hold or keep dear, prize: I know that she cherishes every moment you were together. 2 foster, tend, cultivate, preserve, sustain, nurture, nourish, nurse, cosset: For their sweetness gillyflowers are cherished in gardens. We cherish little Edward and probably spoil him a bit too much.

chest n. 1 box, coffer, trunk, strongbox, caddy, casket, case: It took four men to carry the chest outside, where we could open it. Martha kept her jewels in a small chest on the dresser. 2 breast; thorax: The wrestler was pounding his chest and shouting 'I am the greatest!'

chew v. 1 masticate, grind, munch; bite, gnaw: Make sure to chew each mouthful thoroughly. The puppy chewed up my slipper. 2 chew the fat or rag. gossip, palaver, chat, converse, talk, Slang US and Canadian bullshit: We sat round the fire and chewed the fat all evening. 3 chew out. scold, rebuke, reprimand: The sergeant chewed out the recruit because his boots were dirty. 4 chew over. think about or on or over, consider, review, ponder, ruminate on, meditate on or over: I'll chew over your proposal and let you know.

chic   adj. 1 stylish, fashionable, … la mode, modish, smart, tasteful, elegant; sophisticated; Colloq trendy: Susanna was always a chic dresser.

--n. 2 style, fashion, good taste, tastefulness, elegance, stylishness, modishness: There is an air of chic about him that repels many men but attracts many women.

chicanery n. trickery, sophistry, deception, quibbling, sharp practice, cheating, deviousness, duplicity, pettifoggery, double-dealing, artifice, skulduggery: They lost the case because of the chicanery of their lawyers.

chief   n. 1 head, leader, principal, superior, supervisor, superintendent, manager, overseer, captain, master, ringleader, chieftain, Dialect himself, Colloq boss, bossman, Brit governor, gov., supremo, US man, kingpin, (head or chief) honcho, number one, numero uno, headman, big White Chief, big Chief, Great White Father, big Daddy, super; Slang big cheese, Brit gaffer, Chiefly US Mr Big: You'd best ask the chief for permission to fly to Rome.

--adj. 2 head, leading, ranking, superior, supreme, foremost, premier, first, greatest, outstanding: Terry is your chief competition for the singles trophy. 3 principal, most important, essential, key, paramount, (first and) foremost, primary, prime, main: The chief reason I came was to see you. Here is a list of the chief crimes committed in the area last year.

chiefly   adv. mainly, in particular, especially, particularly, above all, most of all, pre-eminently, principally, primarily, mostly, predominantly, largely, by and large, on the whole, in the main, generally, in general, usually, as a rule: Inflation affected chiefly the price of food. The Anatomy of Melancholy consists chiefly of quotations.

child   n. 1 offspring, descendant, son or daughter, little one, youngster, Formal progeny, issue, Colloq kid, nipper, Slang Brit sprog: How many children do you have? 2 foetus, newborn, neonate, infant, baby, babe, toddler, boy or girl, lad or lass, stripling, youngster, youth, juvenile, adolescent, teenager, young man or woman, young gentleman or lady, Chiefly Scots laddie or lassie: No children were born in the village for five years. These miscreants are mere children, who should not be punished as adults.

childhood n. infancy, babyhood, boyhood or girlhood, youth, puberty, minority, adolescence, teens: During her childhood the family moved to Kent. She spent most of her childhood dreaming about travelling to the moon.

childish adj. childlike, juvenile, puerile, infantile, babyish; immature, inexperienced, na‹ve, undeveloped, underdeveloped, retarded; silly, US sophomoric: They thought his reaction to their criticism was childish and petulant.

childlike adj. youthful, young, innocent, trustful, ingenuous, unsophisticated, na‹ve, trusting, credulous, open, undissembling, unassuming, guileless, artless: There is a childlike simplicity to some primitive paintings.

chill   n. 1 coldness, cold, coolness, sharpness, nip: We put on our jackets to ward off the chill of the evening. 2 cold, flu, influenza, (la or the) grippe, ague, Technical coryza, Colloq (the) sniffles, sneezles and wheezles: Take off those wet clothes before you catch a chill. 3 coolness, iciness, frigidity, aloofness; unfriendliness, hostility: Mrs Marlow felt the chill in the stare of her husband's ex-wife.

--adj. 4 cold, cool, numbing, chilling, chilly, raw, penetrating, icy, frigid, wintry, frosty, arctic, polar, glacial: A chill easterly wind made me shiver. 5 shivering, chilled (through), numb, numbed, numbing, benumbed: She kissed me with a lip more chill than stone. 6 cold, cold-blooded, aloof, indifferent, insensitive, unemotional, unsympathetic; chilly: The prison commandant viewed the corpses with chill detachment.

--v. 7 cool, freeze, refrigerate, ice: The fruit tastes better if it has been chilled. 8 dampen, dispirit, depress, deject, dishearten, distress: The news of mother's illness chilled us all.

chilly adj. 1 cool, coldish, cold, frigid, nippy, frosty, icy, crisp, chill: The weather has been quite chilly for May. 2 chill, unenthusiastic, unresponsive, unreceptive, frosty, unwelcoming, crisp, cool, cold, unfriendly, hostile; distant, aloof: The suggestion that the charity fair be held in her garden met with a chilly response from Lady Griffiths.

chime n. 1 bell, set of bells, carillon, ring, peal: Our church has a full chime of eight bells. 2 ringing, peal, chiming, tolling, tintinnabulation, clanging, ding-dong, striking; tinkle, jingle, jangle: We could hear the chimes of Big Ben from our hotel room.

--v. 3 ring, peal, toll, sound, tintinnabulate, clang, strike: The clock chimed on the hour. 4 mark, denote, indicate, announce: The carillon chimed the hour at noon. 5 chime in. a join in, blend, harmonize: When singing this round, chime in at the third bar. b interrupt, intercede, intrude, interfere, break in, Colloq chip in; Slang butt in: I was about to speak when he chimed in with some silly remark.

chink n. fissure, rift, crack, crevice, gap, opening, cleft, slit, aperture, cranny: We could see daylight through a chink in the fence.

chip n. 1 fragment, piece, shard or sherd, splinter, flake, sliver, scrap, morsel, bit: A chip of slate rattled down off the roof. 2 counter, marker, token; plaque, US check: He put his chip on number 14.

--v. 3 chisel, whittle, hew: He chipped away at the stone till it fitted perfectly into the hole. 4 chip in. a contribute; participate: All the neighbours chipped in to pay for the street decorations. b interrupt, break in, intrude, interfere, intercede, interpose, Colloq chime in: Clive chipped in with his usual silly comment.

chirp v. 1 tweet, peep, twitter, chirrup, warble, trill, cheep, chitter, chirr, pipe: I was awakened by the birds, chirping away in the forest.

--n. 2 tweet, peep, twitter, chirrup, warble, trill, cheep, chitter, chirr: The canary gave two chirps and jumped onto its perch.

chisel   v. 1 carve, cut, pare, groove, shape, engrave, grave: He was chiselling the figure of an eagle out of the board. 2 cheat, defraud, swindle, bilk, trick, fool, dupe, gull, Colloq bamboozle: The gamblers chiselled him out of a week's wages.

chivalrous

adj. courtly, gracious, courteous, polite, gallant, noble, knightly, gentlemanly, considerate, kind, charitable, magnanimous: It was quite chivalrous of you to drive me home.

chivalry n. knight-errantry; honour, bravery, courage, courtesy, politeness, courtliness, gallantry, nobility, virtuousness, righteousness, justness, fairness, impartiality, equitableness: All the noble sentiments blended together constitute chivalry.

choice   n. 1 selection, election, preference, choosing, pick, acceptance: I don't care for his choice of language. 2 option, realm of possibilities; alternative, voice, determination: She was given no choice in selecting her husband. 3 pick, ,lite, flower, best, select, cream, crŠme de la crŠme: The king's guard is made up from the choice of the kingdom.

--adj. 4 select, exquisite, special, superior, prime, high-quality, excellent, pre-eminent, best, prize, first-rate, exceptional, preferred, desirable, ideal, rare, Colloq Brit plummy: She has the choicest wines in her cellar. 5 selected, select, hand-picked, well-chosen, fit, appropriate, fitting: The eulogy was disposed of in a few choice words.

choke   v. 1 suffocate, asphyxiate, smother, stifle, strangle, throttle, garrotte or garrote or garotte, burke: He choked his elderly victims, then stole their money. 2 stop, fill (up), block (up), obstruct, congest, clog, dam (up), constrict: The channel is completely choked with weeds. 3 Also, choke off. smother, suppress, stifle, prohibit, frustrate, deny, obviate, cut off, stop, put a stop to; dissuade, discourage: His policies choked off any chance for innovation. 4 choke back or down. suppress, repress, stifle, restrain: He choked back the tears when he saw the gravestone.

choose v. select, elect, pick (out), determine, judge; decide, prefer, opt, settle upon or on: She had the right to choose the course that seemed the best to her. Given the options, I chose to stay.

choosy adj. selective, discriminating, discerning, fastidious, finicky or finical, particular, fussy, demanding, exacting, difficult, hard to please , Colloq picky: If you weren't so choosy, you wouldn't have to pay so much.

chop v. 1 Also, chop away or down or off. cut, hack, hew, lop, crop, cleave, sever: Chop away that underbrush. I tried to chop off the end. Don't chop down that tree! 2 Also, chop up. mince; dice, cube; hash: Chop up the parsley very fine before adding it to the sauce.

--n. 3 cut, blow, stroke: With a quick chop of the axe, the branch was severed.

christen v. 1 baptize, anoint: They are going to christen the baby next week. 2 name, call, dub: The child was christened Madelaine. The highest peak in Wales is christened Snowdon.

chronic adj. 1 long-lasting, long-standing, lingering, inveterate, persistent, continuing, lasting, long-lived: The doctor said that the condition, for which there is no cure, is chronic. 2 inveterate, persistent, dyed in the wool, confirmed, habitual, hardened: Abby is a chronic liar.

chronicle n. 1 record, history, diary, chronology, account, narrative, description, report, register, annal(s), archive: She has written a chronicle of the events leading up to the War of Jenkins' Ear.

--v. 2 record, register, list, enter, archive, document, describe; tell, recount, narrate, report, relate, retail: In the Iliad Homer chronicled the legends of the Trojan War.

chronology

n. account, record, calendar, almanac, journal, log; sequence: Describe the chronology of events preceding your discovery of the body.

chubby adj. podgy or US pudgy; stumpy, stubby, chunky, tubby, plump, dumpy, thickset, heavy-set, heavy, ample, overweight: She was a bit chubby when a teenager but became a professional model when she was 21.

chuckle v. 1 laugh, chortle, crow, snigger, giggle, titter: Robin always chuckled when the subject of embezzlement came up.

--n. 2 chuckling, laugh, chortle, crowing, giggle; laughter, snigger, sniggering: It was hard to resist a chuckle when we saw the looks on their faces.

chum n. 1 friend, comrade, companion; confidant(e), familiar; fellow, colleague, Colloq pal, sidekick, Chiefly Brit and Australian and New Zealand mate, Chiefly US and Canadian buddy: I invited a chum of mine for the weekend.

--v. 2 Often, chum around. associate, Colloq pal (around): Yes, we used to chum around together in the army. 3 chum up with. ally (oneself) with, be friendly with, go with, associate with, Colloq pal (up or about or around) with, US team up with: Lionel chummed up with Ashley to go swimming.

chummy adj. friendly, sociable, intimate, close, thick, Colloq pally, US palsy-walsy, buddy-buddy: You were very chummy with Peter once, weren't you?

chute n. 1 waterfall, rapid: The canoe skimmed down the chute with lightning speed. 2 slide, shaft, channel, ramp, runway, trough, incline: The parcels come down this chute and you have to sort them by postcode.

3.4 circle...
=-

circle n. 1 disc or chiefly US disk, ring, hoop, loop, band, wheel, annulus, ringlet; cordon: Using a compass, he carefully drew a circle. We formed a circle around the speaker. 2 set, coterie, clique, class, division, group, crowd; society, fellowship, fraternity, company: John and I don't move in the same circles.

--v. 3 encircle, circumambulate, go round or around, tour; circumnavigate: For exercise, I circle the lake in the park every morning. 4 encircle, surround, gird, enclose, circumscribe: Twenty small diamonds circle each star sapphire.

circuit   n. 1 compass, circumference, perimeter, periphery, girth, border, boundary, edge, limit, ambit, margin, outline, confine(s), bound, pale: The circuit of the area amounts to 72 miles. 2 round, tour, ambit, circle, orbit, course, lap: The rider completed the circuit of the ranch, mending the fence as he went.

circular adj. 1 round, disc-shaped or chiefly US disk-shaped, disc-like or chiefly US disk-like, discoid; ring-shaped, ring-like, annular: Notice the circular pattern of growth of this ivy. 2 roundabout, indirect, circuitous, tortuous, twisting, twisted, anfractuous; periphrastic, circumlocutory; devious: We had to take a circular route because the road was closed. Why can't she say what she means instead of being so circular? 3 illogical, inconsistent, redundant, fallacious, irrational, Formal sophistic or sophistical: To say that you exist because you think and that you think because you exist is an example of circular reasoning.

circulate v. 1 move or go about or round or around, orbit, flow, course, run, circle: The blood circulates from the heart through the arteries and veins and back to the heart. 2 spread, distribute, disseminate, issue, publish, air, announce, proclaim, make known, noise abroad, bruit about, report, broadcast, reveal, divulge, advertise, publicize, promulgate, put about, bring or put out, pass out or round or around: He has been circulating the story that his ex-wife cheated on her income tax. 3 spread, go round or around, be bruited about, come out: A rumour has been circulating about your behaviour at the office party.

circulation

n. 1 circuit, course, orbit, flow, flowing, motion: It was Harvey who discovered the circulation of the blood. 2 spread, spreading, dissemination, transmission, passage, distribution, diffusion, publication, advertisement, announcement, issuance, issuing, pronouncement, proclamation, promulgation, broadcast, broadcasting: The state has again forbidden the free circulation of information.

circumstance

n. 1 Often, circumstances. situation, condition(s), state (of affairs); status, station, resources, income, finances: In the circumstances, all leave is cancelled. Each person will be helped according to the individual circumstance. 2 event, incident, episode, occurrence, affair, happening, occasion: Any unforeseen circumstance could set off a shooting war.

circumstantial

adj. 1 indirect, presumptive, evidential or evidentiary, interpretive, deduced, presumed, presumptive, presumable, implicative, implied, inferred, inferential: Some circumstantial evidence is very strong, as when you find a gun in the suspect's house. 2 accidental, incidental, hearsay, indirect, unimportant, adventitious, provisional, secondary, unessential, non-essential, fortuitous, chance, extraneous: Such circumstantial trivia have no bearing on the case. 3 detailed, particular, precise, explicit, specific: We cannot believe that he invented so circumstantial a narrative.

citizen n. 1 voter; native; householder, resident, inhabitant, denizen, dweller, freeman; Brit patrial, ratepayer; US taxpayer: All citizens are entitled to certain rights. 2 city-dweller, town-dweller, townsman, townswoman, villager, burgess, oppidan: She considers herself a citizen of Oxford.

city n. metropolis, municipality, borough, burgh; conurbation, megalopolis; Brit urban district; see, diocese, bishopric; New Zealand urban area; Colloq town, US burg, big apple: We gave up our flat in the city and moved to the country.

civil adj. 1 civilian, non-military, lay, laic, laical, secular: There is a distinction between civil law and canon law. 2 domestic, internal; public: The economic conditions have led to civil strife. 3 polite, courteous, respectful, well-mannered, proper, civilized, cordial, formal, courtly, urbane, polished, refined: They are civil enough, but I always have the feeling they really despise tourists.

civility n. courtesy, politeness, respect, comity, urbanity, amiability, consideration, courteousness, cordiality, propriety, tact, diplomacy, politesse, protocol: Despite his rude behaviour at her dinner-party, she treats him with great civility.

civilization
n. 1 culture, refinement, cultivation, enlightenment, edification, sophistication, polish: The Romans brought civilization to many peoples who had been quite barbarous. 2 culture, mores, custom(s): He has studied Egyptian civilization all his life.

civilize v. 1 enlighten, refine, polish, edify, educate, acculturate: Civilized people do not behave in such a boorish way. 2 tame, domesticate; broaden, elevate, acculturate: The claim that they civilized the Aborigines means only that they forced them to conform to the White man's notion of civilization.

3.5 claim...
=-

claim n. 1 demand, assertion, request, requisition, petition, application; requirement: As far as the land is concerned, his claim has been denied. 2 right(s), call, title: What possible claim could the Miss Dashwoods have on his generosity?

--v. 3 demand, seek, ask or call (for), exact, insist (on or upon), require, command, be entitled to: She has every right to claim a share in the estate. 4 declare, assert, allege, state, put or set forth, affirm, contend, maintain: These measurements lack the degree of accuracy claimed for them. She claims that she was the first person to ring the police.

clammy adj. 1 moist, sticky, gummy, pasty, viscous, slimy: In the swamp the police found a clammy pistol that they believe to be the weapon. 2 moist, damp, humid, close, muggy, wet, misty, foggy: It was the kind of clammy summer's day when your shirt sticks to your back.

clamp n. 1 clasp, vice, brace, clip, fastener: Use a clamp to hold the pieces together till the glue dries.

--v. 2 fasten (together), clip (together), bracket, make fast, clasp: You should clamp the planks together and plane the edges of both.

clan n. 1 tribe, family, dynasty, line, house: There had been a feud of long standing between the two clans, which culminated in the massacre of Glencoe. 2 fraternity, brotherhood, party, set, clique, coterie, circle, crowd, group, fellowship, society, faction, family, tribe; band, ring, gang: He regards social scientists as a clan quite separate from other scientists.

clap v. 1 applaud; cheer, acclaim: Everyone clapped when the boxer climbed into the ring. 2 slap, strike, pat: He clapped me on the shoulder in the friendliest way. 3 put, place, slap, fling, toss, cast , Colloq stick: He had no sooner set foot in the town when he was clapped in jail. 4 impose, lay, apply: The magistrate clapped a severe fine on me for speeding.

--n. 5 crack, slap, report, crash, bang, snap: There was a loud clap of thunder, making the house shake.

clapper n. tongue: We attached a rope to the clapper of the bell.

clarify v. 1 elucidate, make clear, simplify, make plain, clear up, explain, shed or throw light on or upon, illuminate, explicate: She offered to clarify any points about which we had questions. 2 clear, purify, clean: The trout should be lightly basted with clarified butter.

clarity n. 1 clearness, transparency, limpidity, pellucidity: The clarity of the sea in the tropics is owing to a lack of plankton. 2 lucidity, definition, definiteness, distinctness; comprehensibility, understandability, intelligibility, unambiguousness: One cannot argue with the clarity of her explanation of Hegelianism.

clash n. 1 crash, clang, clank, clangour: The concerto ends with a clash of cymbals. 2 collision, smash, (hostile) encounter, conflict, engagement, fight, battle, disagreement, difference, argument, dispute, altercation, quarrel, squabble: He has witnessed many a clash between the prime minister and parliament.

--v. 3 conflict, fight, battle, disagree, differ, argue, dispute, quarrel, squabble, feud, wrangle, cross swords: My brother and I always clash on the question of who should pay our father's hospital bills. 4 conflict, disharmonize, jar, be at odds or out of keeping: The pink of the blouse and the fuchsia of the skirt clash badly.

clasp n. 1 fastener, fastening, hook, catch, clip, pin, brooch: The ends were fastened together with a diamond clasp. 2 embrace, hug, hold, grasp, grip: He held her tight in his clasp.

--v. 3 fasten, secure, close, hold, hook, clip, pin, clamp: The robe was clasped by an emerald pin. 4 hold, embrace, take hold of, hug, enclose, envelop: The beggar clasped my hand, his eyes seeking mine in piteous supplication. 5 grab, grasp, seize, clutch, grip: They clasped hands in friendship.

class n. 1 rank, grade, level, order, stratum; caste, lineage, birth, pedigree, stock, extraction, descent: He was born in the l940s into a family of the middle class. 2 category, division, classification, group, genre, league, realm, domain; kind, sort, type: As a dancer, she in a class by herself. 3 excellence, merit, refinement, elegance, prestige, importance, taste, discernment, distinction, bearing, presence, savoir faire, savoir vivre, breeding: He may be a good drinking companion, but he has no class whatsoever. 4 year, form, US grade: We were in the same class at school.

--v. 5 classify, group, arrange, assort, type, categorize, rank, grade, rate, order: They are classed as self-employed for these purposes.

classic adj. 1 standard, leading, outstanding, prototypical, definitive, model, ideal, archetypal, paradigmatic: His military career is a classic example of what family connections can achieve. 2 legendary, immortal, enduring, deathless, ageless, timeless, undying, venerable, time-honoured; outstanding, first-rate, superior, excellent, noteworthy, notable, exemplary: By the time she was ten, she had read most of the classic works of English literature. He collects classic cars.

--n. 3 paragon, epitome, outstanding example, exemplar, model, paradigm, prototype: When it comes to comedians, Ronnie is a classic. 4 masterpiece, master-work: The Rolls-Royce Silver Ghost is regarded as a classic by collectors.

classical adj. 1 standard, model, exemplary, traditional, established, influential, authoritative, serious, weighty: Classical authors are those who are regarded as being of good credit and authority in the schools. Montaigne is the earliest classical writer in the French language. 2 Greek, Latin, Roman: Architectural styles of the 18th century harked back to Classical designs.

claw   n. 1 talon, nail: The cat had scratched her badly with its claws.

--v. 2 scratch, tear, scrape, rake, slash: She clawed at his face to break his grip on her throat. 3 grapple, grab, catch, scrape, scrabble: He tried to climb up the embankment, clawing at the steep wall.

clean   adj. 1 pure, undefiled, unsullied, unmixed, unadulterated, uncontaminated, unpolluted, uninfected, unspoiled or unspoilt, sanitary, disinfected; antiseptic, decontaminated, purified, sterile: The laboratory reports that our well water is absolutely clean. You must use a clean bandage. 2 unsoiled, untainted, unstained; unsullied; cleansed, cleanly, (freshly) laundered or washed, scrubbed; spotless, immaculate: She puts on clean underwear every day in case she's involved in an accident. 3 clean-cut, neat, simple, definite, uncomplicated, smooth, even, straight, trim, tidy: The edges of the fracture are clean and will mend quickly. 4 innocent, blameless, inoffensive, respectable; decent, chaste, pure, honourable, good, undefiled, virtuous, moral: The suspect was completely clean - he was out of town at the time of the robbery. 5 non-radioactive: They say they've produced a clean bomb, but I don't believe it. 6 unarmed, weaponless: Frisk that suspect and make sure he's clean.

--adv. 7 completely, entirely, thoroughly, fully, totally, wholly, altogether, quite, utterly, absolutely: Geoff's clean out of his mind if he believes that. With one blow he cut the orange clean through. 8 come clean. confess, acknowledge, make a clean breast, admit, make a revelation, reveal, Colloq own up, spill the beans; US dialect fess up; Slang sing: In the end he saw that he was trapped and decided to come clean.

--v. 9 cleanse, wash, lave, (take a) shower, sponge, mop, scrub, scour, sweep, dust, vacuum, polish, launder, dry-clean, Brit hoover; tidy, neaten, do up, straighten up or out, unclutter; Brit bath; US and Canadian bathe: When we cleaned the urn, we could read the inscription. I have told Richard a thousand times to clean his room. 10 clean out. a exhaust, deplete: The gambler cleaned her out of every penny she had in the world. b empty, leave bare, clear out, evacuate: We must clean out the larder before it can be painted. 11 clean up. a clean, cleanse, wash, (take a) shower, Brit bath; US take a bath, bathe, wash up: Clean up, please, dinner is almost ready. It took us a week to clean up the stables. b purge, purify, disinfect, depollute, decontaminate, clear, sanitize: The council has led the way towards cleaning up the wetlands of chemical waste.

cleanse v. 1 clean, absterge, deterge, wash, scour, scrub: You need a scrubbing brush to cleanse the tub. 2 purify, depurate; purge, wash away, expiate: Each prayer repeated has a certain value in cleansing away sin.

clear adj. 1 unclouded, cloudless, sunny, fair, sunlit, fine: On a clear day, you can see the lighthouse several miles away. 2 transparent, limpid, crystalline; translucent, uncloudy, unclouded, pellucid: The water was clear enough to see the bottom. 3 bright, lustrous, shining, shiny, sparkling, Formal nitid: We painted the bathroom a lovely clear blue. 4 bright, fresh, unblemished, unscarred: She has a lovely clear complexion. 5 distinct, sharp, well-defined, definite; legible, readable; acute, vivid: The notes were written in a large clear hand. 6 understandable, intelligible, perspicuous, lucid, comprehensible, apprehensible, discernible, plain, obvious, unambiguous, unequivocal, explicit, definite, unmistakable, indisputable, undisputed, unquestionable, incontrovertible: He has made himself very clear on that point. 7 distinct, unclouded, unconfused, explicit, plain, definite, clear-cut, palpable: I have a clear recollection of her words. 8 evident, plain, obvious, patent, manifest, apparent: It became clear that someone was trying to compromise her. 9 perceptive, acute, sensitive, perspicacious, discerning, keen: It was only his clear vision of the situation that saved us all. 10 certain, sure, convinced, confident, positive, determined, definite, assured: I am not clear that the subject was a good one. 11 pure, unwavering, well-defined, distinct, clarion, bell-like: We heard father's clear voice calling from below. 12 pure, guileless, unsophisticated, innocent, blameless, faultless; not guilty: I still cannot look her in the eye with a clear conscience. 13 unencumbered, free, net: In our first year we made a clear profit of 25 per cent. 14 unlimited, unqualified, unquestioned, unquestionable, absolute, complete, entire; pure, sheer, perfect: You must allow three clear days for the ascent. 15 disengaged, disentangled, unentangled, free, freed, rid, quit, loose, unencumbered, released: When the line is clear of any obstruction, hoist sail and let's be off. 16 open, unencumbered, free, unblocked, unobstructed, unimpeded, direct: There is a clear view of the park from here.

--adv. 17 brightly, effulgently, radiantly, luminously, lambently: The stars were shining clear in the night sky. 18 distinctly, clearly, starkly, perceptibly, discernibly, understandably, prominently: When you see the reef, sing out loud and clear. 19 completely, utterly, entirely, cleanly, clean, wholly, totally: The thief got clear away in the confusion.

--v. 20 clarify, cleanse, clean, purify: The chemical soon cleared the water of all sediment. 21 exonerate, absolve, acquit; excuse, forgive: He has been cleared of all charges and released. 22 Also, clear up. explain, elucidate, explicate, clarify, make plain or clear, disambiguate: We should be able to clear up the mystery by this evening. 23 Also, clear up. become fair or cloudless or sunny: I hope the weather clears in time for the game. 24 open (up), free; unblock, unclog, unstop; disencumber, dislodge: We were able to clear a path through the jungle. He cleared his throat and began to speak. 25 empty: Clear the land of trees before farming it. 26 Also, clear away or out. remove, eliminate, take; cut away or down: Clear those branches from the paths. 27 disburden, unburden, purge, free, rid: He has cleared his conscience of any responsibility in the matter. 28 leap or jump over, vault: She cleared the fence easily. 29 Also, clear up. settle, discharge, pay, square, defray, satisfy: The company has cleared all its debts. 30 clear off or out. leave, depart, decamp, go or run off, get out, withdraw, Slang beat it, scram, Taboo Brit sod off, Chiefly Australian shoot through, US and Canadian take a (run-out) powder: I told them to clear off and stop bothering me. 31 clear up. a eliminate, remove, settle; clarify: I hope we can clear up any misunderstanding between us. b tidy (up), neaten (up), put or set in order, clear: I'll clear up after dinner.

--n. 32 in the clear. innocent, not guilty; exonerated, forgiven, absolved; unburdened, disburdened, unencumbered, free: The other chap confessed, leaving me in the clear.

clearance n. 1 space, gap, hole, interval, separation, room, margin, leeway, allowance: You must allow a clearance of 2 millimetres. 2 approval, endorsement, authorization, consent; licence, leave, permission: He cannot get security clearance with his prison record.

clearly adv. 1 distinctly; starkly, plainly: With spectacles, I can see everything more clearly. 2 evidently, apparently, manifestly, obviously, certainly, definitely, positively, unequivocally, unquestionably, incontestably, without doubt, undoubtedly, indubitably, demonstrably, absolutely, utterly: His statement is clearly untrue. 3 audibly, distinctly, understandably: I wish she would speak more clearly.

cleave v. split, divide, cut, cut or chop or hew in two or asunder, bisect, halve, separate, slit, rive: With a mighty blow the log was cleaved cleanly in two.

clergyman n. 1 ecclesiastic, churchman, cleric, reverend, divine, man of the cloth, holy man, priest, minister, chaplain, father, rabbi, pastor, parson, rector, vicar, dean, canon, presbyter, prebendary or prebend, deacon, sexton, sacristan, guru, ayatollah, imam: In his black frock coat he looked like a clergyman. 2 monk, friar, brother, monastic, religious: A clergyman was responsible for his religious education. 3 preacher, gospeller, evangelist, revivalist, missionary, sermonizer: She was moved by the clergyman's sermon.

clerical adj. 1 ecclesiastical, churchly, pastoral, sacerdotal, priestly, hieratic, rabbinical, ministerial, monastic, apostolic, prelatic, papal, pontifical, episcopal, canonical: He was wearing his clerical vestments. 2 white-collar, office, professional, secretarial, stenographic, accounting, bookkeeping: He runs the shop and his wife has the clerical responsibilities.

clever adj. 1 skilled, talented, skilful, adroit, dexterous, gifted, agile, quick-witted, intelligent, perceptive, discerning, sharp,

sharp-witted, adept, able, Colloq brainy: She was very clever at mathematics. 2 shrewd, cunning, guileful, canny, artful, crafty, sly, wily, foxy: It was a clever move to sound out the chairman before the meeting. 3 intelligent, wise, sage, sagacious; ingenious, original, resourceful, Daedalian, inventive, creative, smart, imaginative: It was very clever of her to memorize the record-book for the competition. 4 deft, adroit, nimble-fingered, dexterous, handy, skilful: The old woman is clever with her hands.

clich, n. stereotype, bromide, trite saying, old saw or maxim, truism, platitude, commonplace, banality, Colloq chestnut: The report was full of clich,s and convinced no one.

client n. customer, patron, shopper; patient: She opened a law practice and already has a number of clients.

clientele n. clients, patrons, customers; custom, business, trade, patronage, following: What sort of clientele do you expect to attract?

cliff n. precipice, bluff, escarpment, scarp, crag, rock-face, cuesta, scar or Scots scaur: The commandos are trained to scale a 100-foot cliff.

climate n. 1 weather, Literary clime: We are retiring to the Maldives because we like a sunny climate. 2 atmosphere, ambience or ambiance, air; feeling, mood, aura, milieu, feel: In the present climate of opinion, we'd best delay introducing the bill.

climax n. 1 culmination, height, acme, apex, summit, zenith, apogee, peak, high point, maximum, supreme moment: The war reached its climax at the battle of Arbela. 2 turning-point, crisis, crossroads: The climax of the play occurs in the third act. 3 orgasm: She told her psychiatrist that she had never reached a climax with her husband.

--v. 4 culminate, peak, crest, come to a head: The week's events climaxed with the presentation of the gold medal.

climb v. 1 Also, climb up. mount, ascend, go up, scale, shin (up), clamber up, US shinny (up): In one of the games we had to climb a greased pole. Two Japanese teams have climbed Mount Everest. 2 creep, trail, twine; grow: The ivy has climbed all over the garden wall. 3 rise, arise, ascend, go up, mount; advance: Watch the smoke climb into the sky. 4 climb along. creep, edge, clamber, crawl, inch: The cat burglar climbed along the ledge till he reached the window. 5 climb down. a descend, go down: We shall need a rope to climb down from here. b Usually, climb down from. retreat (from), withdraw (from), back away (from), give up, abandon, renounce: He has climbed down from his earlier position regarding women in the priesthood.

--n. 6 grade, incline, route, pitch; ascent; descent: It was a steep climb to Camp Four.

clinch v. 1 secure, settle, confirm, determine, conclude, dispose of, complete, wind up, finalize Colloq sew up: He clinched the argument by resigning.

--n. 2 close quarters, hug, clasp, embrace; cuddle: The boxers went into a clinch to regain their breath.

clincher n. finishing touch, pay-off, punch-line, coup de grƒce, final or crowning blow: The point about saving costs proved to be a clincher, and we were given the go-ahead.

cling v. 1 stick, adhere, attach, fasten, fix: The detectives found that one of the victim's hairs had clung to the suspect's lapel. 2 favour, be or remain devoted or attached to, embrace, hang on to, retain, keep, cherish: He still clung to his old-fashioned notions of honour. 3 cling together or to one another. embrace, hug, cleave to one another, clasp one another, clutch one another, hold (fast) to one another, grasp one another: The children clung together in the darkness.

clip° v. 1 clasp, fasten, fix, attach, hold, clinch; staple: Please clip these papers together.

--n. 2 clasp, fastener: That clip isn't strong enough to hold all these papers.

clipý v. 1 trim (off), lop (off), cut (off), crop, bob, snip: The barber clipped my hair short. Roger has clipped two seconds off the record. 2 shorten, reduce, abbreviate, diminish, cut (short): The film was clipped by fifteen minutes for television. In her rapid-fire way of speaking, she clipped each word. 3 strike, hit, punch, smack, box, cuff, whack, Colloq wallop, clout; Slang sock: He was clipped on the jaw and knocked out. 4 cheat, swindle, bilk, overcharge, Slang rook: They clipped him out of a week's wages. She was clipped for a ten per cent 'service fee'.

--n. 5 segment, interval, section, part, portion, extract, cutting, excerpt, cutting, bit, snippet, scrap, fragment: We were shown a film clip of the cheese-making process. 6 blow, cuff, punch, hit, strike, smack, whack, box, Colloq wallop, clout; Slang sock: She gave him a clip at the side of the head and he went down. 7 pace, rate, speed: I was riding along at a good clip when my horse shied and I was thrown off.

clique n. set, coterie, crowd, circle, group: There was the usual clique from the Sales Department standing round the bar.

cloak n. 1 mantle, cape, robe, wrap, poncho; coat, overcoat: She pulled her cloak around her in the chill night air. 2 mantle, concealment, cover, screen, shroud, veil: He stole away under the cloak of darkness.

--v. 3 conceal, hide, mask, screen, veil, shroud, cover up; disguise: All of the spies' activities were cloaked in secrecy.

clod n. 1 lump, mass, gob, wad, hunk, chunk; piece of sod or turf; Colloq glob: A clod of earth was stuck between the spikes of my golf shoes. 2 idiot, fool, dolt, blockhead, simpleton, dunce, dope, oaf, Neanderthal, lout, ass, boor, clown, ninny, ninny-hammer, bumpkin, clodhopper, Slang vegetable, US and Canadian jerk: He felt a bit of a clod standing there with no idea which way to go.

clog v. hamper, encumber, impede; obstruct, choke (up), block, congest, jam: The road was clogged with returning holiday-makers. A piece of orange peel had clogged the sink drain.

close v. 1 shut, close up, seal; close off, lock, padlock, secure, fasten: I closed my eyes. Please close the door behind you. 2 make inaccessible, shut, Chiefly US place off limits: The

Bodleian Library will be closed for a week. 3 conclude, end, finish, complete, bring to a close or end, terminate, climax, Colloq wind up: A brilliant flourish closes the first movement of the symphony. 4 conclude, sign, seal, make, settle, clinch, agree, arrange, work out, establish: Union and management closed a deal, and the strike was called off. 5 Also, close down. discontinue, terminate, stop, suspend, shut down, go out of business, cease operations, close (up), Colloq wind up, shut up shop, put up the shutters: Competition from the supermarket forced the greengrocer to close down. 6 Also, close off. seal, make inaccessible, shut (off), obstruct, obturate: This wing of the museum has been closed off temporarily. 7 close one's eyes to. ignore, overlook, disregard: You have always closed your eyes to his faults. 8 close up. a close, shut (up), lock up, close (down): It's time to close up for the night. b close, come or draw or bring together, unite, join; connect: We closed up ranks and stood at attention.

--adj. 9 near; adjacent, proximate, proximal: He claims to have had a close encounter with an extraterrestrial. There certainly is a close resemblance between Kathy and her daughter. 10 closed, shut (up), fixed, fast, secure, tight: The hostages spent a month in close confinement. 11 dense, compact, tight, cramped, compressed, tiny, minuscule, minute: I could hardly read the close writing on the matchbox. 12 stuffy, musty, stale, fusty, confining, oppressive, airless, unventilated, confined, stifling, suffocating: They locked me in a room that was so close I could hardly breathe. 13 nearly equal or even, close-matched, neck and neck, tight: It was a close race, but Flanagan won by a hair. 14 careful, assiduous, precise, detailed, concentrated, strict, rigorous, minute, searching, attentive, alert, intent, intense, thorough, painstaking: Close analysis has revealed that the handwriting is that of a left-handed adult. 15 attached, intimate, devoted, familiar, inseparable, close-knit, solid, confidential; fast; Colloq thick, thick as thieves, pally, US and Canadian palsy-walsy, buddy-buddy: They are a very close family. She and her father are very close. 16 private, privy, secret, guarded, closely guarded, confidential: Although it should have been a close secret, the press managed to get hold of it. 17 secretive, reticent, taciturn, reserved, close-mouthed, tight-lipped, silent: She is very close about the whereabouts of her husband. 18 stingy, mean, miserly, niggardly, tight-fisted, close-fisted, parsimonious, penurious, penny-pinching, cheese-paring, Scrooge-like, skinflinty, Colloq near, Brit mingy: He's so close he charges his own mother rent. 19 secluded, concealed, shut up or away, hidden: The fugitives decided to lie close till nightfall.

--adv. 20 near, in the neighbourhood (of), not far (from), adjacent (to); alongside; at hand, nearby, close by: The murder took place close to my house. I'm frightened, so please stay close by. 21 close to or on or onto. nearly, almost, about, practically, approximately, nigh unto, approaching: For close to two thousand years the site lay untouched.

--n. 22 end, termination, conclusion, finish, completion, cessation; culmination: By the close of trading, share prices had risen again.

cloth   n. 1 fabric, material, textile, Chiefly Brit stuff: The curtains are made of cloth, not plastic. 2 the cloth. the clergy, the (religious) ministry, the priesthood: He is a man of the cloth.

clothe   v. 1 dress, attire, garb, apparel, outfit, fit out or up, accoutre or US also accouter, Brit kit out or up, Colloq tog up or out: He earns barely enough to clothe and feed his family. 2 endow, invest, caparison, endue: They tried to clothe their transactions with the raiment of honesty.

clothes   n.pl. clothing, apparel, attire, wear, dress, garments, raiment, wardrobe, outfit, ensemble, vestment(s), Old-fashioned duds, Colloq togs, gear, get-up Slang glad rags, Brit clobber; Slang US (set of) threads: Put on some old clothes and make yourself comfortable.

clown   n. 1 jester, fool, zany, comic, comedian, funny man: Of all the performers at the circus, I like the clowns best. 2 buffoon, boor, rustic, yahoo, oaf, lout, clod, dolt, bumpkin, clodhopper, provincial, peasant, yokel, Colloq lummox; Slang chiefly US jerk; Old-fashioned galoot or galloot; Slang chiefly US and Canadian hick: That's the kind of language we expect to hear only from the most ignorant clowns.

--v. 3 Often, clown around or about. fool (around), play the fool, horse around or about, caper, cut a caper or capers, engage in high jinks or hijinks, US cut up, cut didos: Stop clowning around with that hose and help water the garden.

club n. 1 cudgel, bat, bludgeon, mace, billy, truncheon, baton, staff, stick; cosh, Chiefly US and Canadian blackjack: The blow from the club required six stitches. 2 association, society, organization, fraternity, sorority, fellowship, brotherhood, sisterhood, federation, union, guild, lodge, alliance, league, order, consortium, company: Our sailing club holds an annual race. 3 clubhouse: The society's club is near Pall Mall. 4 nightclub, cabaret, Colloq nightspot: After the theatre, we stopped at Oscar's club for a nightcap.

--v. 5 beat, cudgel, bludgeon, bat, belabour or US belabor; lambaste, baste, thrash, trounce: The guerrillas caught the traitor and clubbed him to death. 6 Often, club together. band or join or league (together), team (up), join forces, combine, ally, associate, confederate, cooperate: We clubbed together to purchase the antique clock.

clue n. 1 hint, suspicion, trace, intimation, suggestion, inkling, indication, pointer, lead, tip, tip-off, evidence, information, advice; key, answer, indicator: There is no clue pointing to anyone in particular. Any clue to the solution of the mystery disappeared in the fire.

--v. 2 clue someone in or Brit also up. hint, suggest, imply, intimate, inform, advise, indicate: She clued us in as to who might have sent the letter.

clump n. 1 lump, mass, clod, chunk, hunk, wad, gob, Colloq glob: As the soup cooled, clumps of fat formed on its surface. 2 bunch, cluster; thicket, copse; wood, Chiefly Brit spinney: The deer disappeared into a clump of trees. That clump will provide good cover for us.

--v. 3 lump, mass, heap, collect, gather, bunch, pile: She wore her hair clumped on top her head.

clumsy adj. awkward, ungainly, unwieldy, ungraceful, gawky, maladroit, unhandy, unskilful, inept, bungling, bumbling, cloddish, ox-like, bovine, uncoordinated, lubberly, oafish; gauche, Colloq butter-fingered, ham-fisted, ham-handed, cack-handed: He made a clumsy attempt to put the key in the lock. She gave a clumsy excuse for being in the bank after hours.

cluster n. 1 collection, bunch, clutch, tuft, bundle: Notice that cluster of flowers near the top of the plant. 2 collection, bunch, group, knot, body, band, company, gathering, crowd, assembly, congregation, throng, flock, assemblage, swarm: A cluster of well-wishers stood talking with the minister.

--v. 3 collect, bunch, group, band, gather, crowd, congregate, throng, assemble, accumulate, mass, aggregate: A number of people clustered round the new sculpture. Why do these flowers cluster at this tree?

clutch v. 1 seize, snatch, grab, grasp, take or lay hold of; hold; US snag: She clutched feebly to the rope before losing her grip and plunging into the abyss below. He clutched the child to his bosom.

--n. 2 clutches. a grasp at, hold; embrace: We watched as the gazelle deftly eluded the cheetah's clutches. b influence, control, power, domination, dominance, possession: He fell into the clutches of the Triads.

clutter n. 1 mess, litter, jumble; mishmash, olla podrida, confusion, hash, gallimaufry, hotchpotch or US also hodgepodge, muddle, farrago, medley: I must insist that you clear up the clutter in your room at once. That philosophy is a clutter of competing ideas. 2 confusion, tangle, chaos, disarray: The town was a clutter of narrow, crooked, dark, and dirty lanes.

--v. 3 Often, clutter up. mess up, litter, strew, make a shambles of: Please don't clutter up my desk with newspaper cuttings.

3.6 coach...

=-

coach n. 1 carriage, bus, omnibus, motor coach: The sightseeing coach broke down near Exeter. 2 tutor, trainer, instructor, teacher, mentor, Brit crammer: Her voice coach says she's not yet ready for grand opera.

--v. 3 tutor, train, instruct, guide, direct, drill, prepare, prompt, school, exercise, Brit cram: Her lawyers have coached her in what to say in court.

coagulate v. congeal, gel, jell, clot, curdle, set: The white of the egg had coagulated, but the yolk was still runny.

coarse adj. 1 rough, uneven, scratchy, prickly, bristly; crude, rough-hewn, unfinished, unrefined: He has a three-day coarse growth of beard. The surface on the furniture is still too coarse. 2 rude, boorish, loutish, crude, ill-mannered, unpolished, rough, uncouth, impolite, uncivil, unrefined: Nigel's behaviour is coarse, and he spits when he talks. 3 rude, indecent, improper, indelicate, obscene, lewd, vulgar, gross, smutty, dirty, filthy, foul, offensive, lascivious, ribald, bawdy; foul-mouthed: Don't use that kind of coarse language with me. 4 inferior, low-quality, second-rate, shoddy, tawdry, trashy; kitschy: That shop stocks only the coarsest merchandise.

coast n. 1 seaside, seashore, shore, sea-coast, strand, beach, littoral, coastline, seaboard: Be careful of rocks if you sail near the coast.

--v. 2 glide, skim, slide, sail: The children coasted down the hill on the toboggan.

coat n. 1 overcoat, greatcoat; jacket, anorak, parka, Brit cagoule, Colloq Brit cag: Put on your coat, it's cold out. 2 coating, layer, covering, overlay; film: Two coats of paint ought to be enough. There was a coat of dust on everything.

--v. 3 cover, paint, spread: We coated the floor with three layers of varnish.

coax v. persuade, urge, wheedle, cajole, beguile, charm, inveigle, jolly, manipulate: She coaxed me into spending a weekend with her at Blackpool.

cocky adj. overconfident, arrogant, haughty, conceited, self-important, egotistical, proud, vain, prideful, cocksure, saucy, cheeky, brash: Since she won the beauty contest, Claire has been entirely too cocky.

coddle v. pamper, baby, cosset, mollycoddle, indulge, humour, spoil, Brit cocker: Give him a cold bath and don't coddle him so much.

code n. 1 law(s), regulation(s), rule(s), jurisprudence, jus canonicum 'canon law', jus civile 'civil law', jus divinum 'divine law', jus gentium 'universal law', jus naturale 'natural law', corpus juris, pandect, lex non scripta 'common law, unwritten law', lex scripta 'statute law': In the present code there is no statute that forbids keeping a pet gnu. 2 cipher or cypher, cryptogram: Our agents send all their messages in code. 3 system, practice(s), convention(s), standard(s), criterion (criteria), principle(s), rule(s), maxim(s), custom(s), pattern(s), structure, tradition(s), organization, protocol, orthodoxy: Our code of behaviour is completely foreign to the islanders.

--v. 4 encode, encipher or encypher, encrypt: It took an hour to code the information.

coffin n. casket, pall, (pine) box; sarcophagus: The coffin was slowly lowered into the grave.

cog n. 1 tooth, gear-tooth, sprocket, ratchet: Stripping the gears means breaking the cogs off them. 2 underling, pawn, subordinate, nonentity, zero, cipher or cypher, nothing, nobody, small fry: He's only a small cog in the organization - we're after the big wheel himself.

cognizance
n. knowledge, awareness, knowledge, perception, notice, consciousness, mindfulness: They ran the gambling den with the full cognizance of the police.

coherent adj. 1 consistent, orderly, organized, well-organized, logical, rational, reasonable, well-ordered: The MP set forth a coherent argument against an excise tax. 2 understandable, sensible, comprehensible, intelligible, articulate, lucid, clear: He was so frightened and hysterical that he was unable to tell a coherent story.

cohort n. 1 troop, squad, squadron, platoon, brigade, unit, cadre, wing, legion, detachment, contingent: Ten select Roman cohorts were sent against the Mitanni. 2 company, band, group, faction, set, body, corps: She was a member of a small cohort of suffragettes. 3 companion, confederate, accomplice, associate, fellow, comrade, friend, confrŠre: Gerald then arrived with a few of his cohorts.

coil v. 1 wind, twist, coil, snake, wrap, enwrap, spiral, Nautical fake or flake (down): The rope is coiled round a capstan.

--n. 2 winding(s), circle(s), loop, whorl, spiral, helix, twist: His foot caught in the coil of rope and he was carried overboard.

coin n. 1 specie, money, currency; change, cash, silver: I have only a few coins in my pocket. As he had no notes he had to pay in coin.

--v. 2 mint, stamp: The US government has stopped coining silver dollars. 3 invent, create, conceive, originate, start, make up, fabricate, frame, concoct, think or dream up: James Joyce coined the word 'quark'. 4 coin it in or US only coin money. earn or make money, become wealthy, enrich oneself, Colloq rake it in: Those rock stars really coin it in from their record sales.

coincide v. fall or come or go together, line up, co-occur, correspond, synchronize, match, tally, agree, (be in) accord, equal, jibe: This year, Easter and Passover coincide. The southern boundary coincides with the Thames.

coincidence
n. 1 co-occurrence, simultaneity, correspondence, concurrence, consistency, contemporaneity, synchronism, synchrony, coextension, coevality, coinstantaneity: The coincidence of twelve by the clock with noon by the sundial is exact only four times in the year. 2 congruence, matching, jibing, agreement, concord, accord, harmony, accordance, conformity, congruity, consonance, concomitance: Fortunately there was a coincidence of views on the main issues. 3 chance occurrence, fluke, chance, accident, luck, fortuity, fortuitousness, US and Canadian happenstance: By sheer coincidence, I met my next-door

neighbour on the train from Glasgow.

coincidental
adj. chance, lucky or unlucky, fortuitous, accidental, unexpected, unpredicted, unpredictable, unforeseen: It was entirely coincidental that we were on the same train.

cold adj. 1 chill, chilly, frosty, icy, keen, nippy, freezing, frigid, ice-cold, stone-cold, bitter, bitter-cold, raw, biting, biting-cold, numbing, gelid; wintry, hibernal, brumal; arctic, glacial, polar, hyperborean or hyperboreal, Siberian: It was so cold that the canal had completely frozen over. 2 chilly, chilled; unheated, heatless: The room is cold; we'd better put the heating on. 3 indifferent, apathetic, chilly, chilling, cool, icy, dispassionate, unsympathetic, aloof, unresponsive, spiritless, frigid, unfriendly, uncordial, lukewarm, frigid; cold-blooded, insensitive, uncaring, unemotional, undemonstrative, reserved, unmoved, spiritless, callous, remote, distant, standoffish, unapproachable, stony-hearted, emotionless, unfeeling, cold-hearted: My ideas received rather a cold reception. Because she had offended him, he was quite cold to her. 4 depressing, cheerless, chilling, gloomy, dispiriting, deadening, disheartening, bleak, dismal, discouraging: The sweat stood out on his brow in cold apprehension. 5 unmoving, stale, trite, stereotyped; dead: The coldest word was once a glowing new metaphor. 6 weak, faint, stale, old, dead: The trail of the tiger had grown cold. 7 unprepared, unready: She hadn't studied and went into the exam cold. 8 Often, getting cold. far, distant, remote, off the track: As I searched for the weapon, I felt I was getting cold the further I went from the kitchen.

--n. 9 coldness, frigidity, iciness: Last winter, the cold killed off many of our shrubs. 10 head or chest or common cold, influenza, ague, (la or the) grippe, Technical coryza, gravedo, Colloq sniffles, the flu, bug, sneezles and wheezles: I caught a cold waiting for you in the rain.

--adv. 11 completely, thoroughly, entirely, absolutely, unhesitatingly, promptly, immediately, unreservedly, abruptly: His application to join the police was turned down cold.

cold-blooded

adj. 1 Technical poikilothermic or poikilothermal: Reptiles are cold-blooded. 2 unexcited, unemotional, cool, unimpassioned, unfeeling, callous, thick-skinned, insensitive, heartless, uncaring, stony, steely, stony-hearted, cold-hearted, imperturbable, unmoved, indifferent, unresponsive, unsympathetic, apathetic, dispassionate: The murder appeared to be the act of a cold-blooded killer. 3 cruel, brutal, savage, inhuman, barbarous, vicious, barbaric, merciless, pitiless, ruthless: They were victims of a cold-blooded policy of repatriation.

cold-hearted

adj. insensitive, unsympathetic, apathetic, indifferent, unfeeling, uncaring, callous, thick-skinned, cold, cool, frigid, hard-hearted, heartless, unkind, thoughtless, unthoughtful, uncharitable, ruthless, pitiless, unmerciful, cruel, merciless, mean: Putting that kitten out on a snowy night is the most cold-hearted thing you ever did.

collaborate

v. cooperate, join (forces), work together, team up: We collaborated in writing both the lyrics and music.

collapse v. 1 fall (down or in or apart), crumple, cave in, deflate, crumble, tumble down, break down, go: When he opened the valve, the balloon collapsed. Hundreds of buildings collapsed in the earthquake. 2 fail, (come to an) end, fall through, peter out, disintegrate, dissolve, fall flat, founder, come to naught or nought, break up or down; decline, diminish; disappear, evaporate, go up in smoke, go bankrupt, go under, Brit go to the wall, Colloq fizzle out: After the imprisonment of their leader, the entire movement collapsed. Owing to the recession, many businesses collapsed. 3 pass out, faint, drop, Colloq keel over; Old-fashioned or literary swoon: He collapsed on-stage and they took him to his dressing-room. 4 break down (mentally), have a (nervous) breakdown, go to pieces, come or fall apart , Colloq crack up, US also crack: She finally collapsed from overwork and is now in a sanatorium.

--n. 5 cave-in, breakdown: The collapse of the house was attributed to termites. 6 failure, downfall, ruin; disappearance, disintegration, dissolution, bankruptcy: Will he be able to survive the collapse of his financial empire? 7

(mental) breakdown, prostration, Colloq crack-up: He suffered a mental collapse when his family was killed in a car crash.

colleague n. team-mate, fellow-worker, co-worker; associate, comrade, ally, confrŠre, mate, consociate, Chiefly Brit and Australian mate, US buddy: I have asked some of my colleagues from the office to join us for dinner.

collect v. 1 gather (together), get or bring or come or together, amass, accumulate, assemble, compile, pile up, heap up, rack up; convene, congregate, converge, rally, meet: A crowd had collected outside the mayor's home. They were collecting evidence for their case. 2 summon (up), draw (up), muster, gather (up), concentrate: She collected all her courage to ask for an increase in salary.

collected adj. calm, serene, controlled, cool, sedate, composed, nonchalant, poised, unruffled, unperturbed, at ease, comfortable, tranquil, unexcited; imperturbable; confident: Considering what she's just gone through, Tanya seems quite collected.

collection

n. 1 collecting, gathering, solicitation, garnering, gleaning, accumulation, amassment, aggregation, Colloq Brit whip-round: The collection of donations in this neighbourhood is going well. 2 accumulation, hoard, store, assemblage, omnium gatherum; anthology, chrestomathy: Would you like to come up to see my collection of etchings? They have published some very interesting collections.

collector n. gatherer, accumulator; connoisseur, art-lover: The rent collector is coming tomorrow. We are collectors of paintings by unknown artists.

collide v. 1 crash, strike or dash together: The cars collided at the bridge. 2 collide with. crash into, smash into, run into, bump into, smack into: The car collided with the bus at the crossing.

collision n. smash-up, smash, crash, wreck, pile-up, Colloq Brit prang; US crack-up: There has been a major collision on the Tring road.

colossal adj. 1 huge, vast, enormous, gigantic, giant, mammoth, massive, gargantuan, Cyclopean, Brobdingnagian, immense, monumental, titanic, Herculean, elephantine, jumbo: Mystery surrounds the exact methods used in moving the colossal stones used in the pyramids. 2 spectacular, stupendous, wonderful, awe-inspiring, staggering, extraordinary, incredible, overwhelming, unbelievable: The old Hollywood extravaganzas were described by press agents as 'colossal'. I think you have made a colossal mistake in failing to hire Cynthia.

colour n. 1 hue, tint, tincture, shade, tone, cast, tinge, pigmentation; pigment, dye: The colours of the curtains don't match the wall. 2 colours. a flag, ensign, standard, pennant, banner, burgee: The sloop hoisted the British colours. b device, badge, emblem, insigne or pl insignia, symbol(s), identification; identity, appearance, face; loyalties: The investigators found he'd been operating under false colours. She has shown her true colours at last.

--v. 3 tint, dye, stain, paint, crayon, tincture, tinge; pigment: These sections will stand out better if you colour them red. 4 influence, affect, distort, falsify, taint, warp, twist, slant, pervert, bias: Jealousy colours his opinion of his supervisor. 5 blush, redden, flush: After their affair, she visibly coloured whenever they met. 6 falsify, distort, misrepresent, disguise, mask, conceal: He feigns confusion when he wishes to colour his true feelings.

colourless
adj. 1 pale, pallid, blanched, white; wan, ashen, sallow, waxen, sickly, washed out: You could see from his colourless complexion that he had not been outside for months. 2 dull, drab, uninteresting, vacuous, vapid, lifeless, boring, tedious, spiritless, dry, dry-as-dust, dreary, characterless, insipid, bland, namby-pamby, lacklustre, uninspiring, uninspired: She has led a colourless life. Few people have so colourless a personality as he.

combat n. 1 fight, encounter, engagement, duel, battle, conflict, war, warfare; skirmish: The two men were locked in single combat. 2 struggle, contest, strife, controversy, dispute, quarrel, disagreement, altercation, vendetta, feud: There was endless combat between father and son. 3 opposition, difference, confrontation: The combat between good and evil can never end. 4 action, fighting, battle, war: He was in combat on three occasions. Have you seen any combat?

--v. 5 fight, (do) battle, war, clash, contend, duel, joust, wrestle, come to blows, spar, grapple (with): The soldiers are combating hand to hand in the trenches. 6 fight, struggle or strive against, contest, oppose, defy, enter the lists against, withstand: There was broad support for measures to combat crime and pollution.

combination
n. 1 union, conjunction, mixture, mix, grouping, set, array: They always serve the same combination of foods. 2 association, alliance, coalition, union, federation, confederation, combine, syndication, syndicate, consortium, trust, bloc, cartel, party, society, organization, league, cabal, conspiracy, clique; claque: When they get together they form an unbeatable combination. 3 mixture, amalgam, compound, compounding, mix, alloy, conglomerate, conglomeration, aggregate, aggregation, amalgamation, blend, emulsion, suspension, colloid, solution, composition, Technical parasynthesis, parathesis; mosaic, patchwork: From a combination of ingredients the witch made a slimy love potion. A combination of every colour of the rainbow covered the walls.

combine v. 1 unite, unify, join, connect, relate, link, conjoin, band, ally, associate, integrate, merge, pool: Combine forces, and we'll win. 2 blend, mix, amalgamate, mingle, consolidate, compound, incorporate, put together: Combine the water, butter, and salt in a saucepan. 3 blend, fuse, synthesize, bind, bond, compound, unite, coalesce, come together, commingle, mingle: When heated, the silver combines with the chlorine.

come v. 1 approach, advance, (draw) near, move, Archaic or literary draw nigh: The car came towards us. She has come to me for comforting words. Winter is coming. 2 arrive, appear, make or put in an appearance, Colloq blow in, report (in), turn or show up, check in, sign in, clock on or in, roll in: Winter has come. When Cora comes, we'll ask her. 3 enter: Come into the light, where I can see you. 4 come about. a occur, happen, take place, come up; befall, Loosely transpire: I cannot imagine how this state of affairs came about. b Nautical tack, go about: After the marker, come about and hoist the spinnaker. 5 come across. a find, discover, encounter, meet (up or up with), run across or into, happen or chance upon or on, hit or light on or upon, stumble upon or on, Colloq bump into: I came across some information about Charles. b pay (up), settle; yield, give up, submit: Frank owes me money but refuses to come across. c be communicated or understandable, penetrate, sink in: I am not sure that my points came across. 6 come along. fare, do, progress, move along: How is William coming along at his new school? 7 come apart. disintegrate, crumble, fall or fly to pieces, separate, break (apart or up or down): The carburettor came apart in my hands. 8 come at. attack, assault, charge, rush (at), fly at, descend upon or on, Colloq go or make for: She came at me waving her umbrella. 9 come by. a acquire, obtain, get, procure, secure, find, take or get possession of, get or lay hold of, get or lay or put (one's) hands or US also fingers on; be given: The tax inspector wondered how she came by such valuable property. b win, earn, attain; be awarded: I came by that trophy fair and square. 10 come clean. See clean, 8, above. 11 come down on or upon. pounce on or upon, rebuke, criticize, revile, reprimand, bear down on, blame: Mother really came down on us when she discovered who had taken the pie. 12 come down with. succumb to, contract, catch, be stricken or afflicted with, acquire: He's come down with pneumonia. 13 come in. a win, succeed; Colloq finish (in the money): My horse came in. b be, prove, turn out or prove to be: Knowing someone on the council can come in handy. c finish, end up, arrive: Donald came in first in the backstroke. d enter: Don't come in, I'm dressing. 14 come off. a occur, happen, come to pass, take place , Loosely transpire: I doubt that the performance will ever come off. b emerge, result as: We came off the winners in Saturday's game. 15 come out. a be revealed, become public or known or common knowledge, get about or around, get or leak out, emerge: The story has come out that he tried to bribe the inspector. b be published or issued or produced or distributed, be shown, be in print, premiŠre: The new edition of the dictionary has just come out. c end, conclude, turn out, terminate, finish: How did the chess match come out? 16 come over. a go over, communicate, come across, be communicated, succeed, be received: How did my speech come over? b affect, influence, possess: I can't imagine what's come over Louis. c visit, drop or stop by or in: Quentin and his wife came over for dinner last night. 17 come through. a recover (from), recuperate (from), get well or better: He came through his operation with flying colours. b conclude or end (up) or finish or wind up successfully or satisfactorily, succeed, arrive, not fail or disappoint: I knew he'd come through. 18 come to. a amount to, add up to, total, aggregate: My bill came to more than I had with me. b regain or recover consciousness, awake(n), revive, wake up, come (a)round: When I came to, I was on the floor with a terrific headache. c regard, concern, relate to, be a question of, involve, be relevant to, be involved: When it comes to real ale, Mario is the expert. 19 come up. a arise, surface, present itself, be brought up, be broached, come about, turn up, rise, Colloq crop up: The question of religion never came up. b grow, thrive, appear: None of my tulips came up this year. c rise, arise: The moon came up just as the sun was setting.

comedian n. humorist, comic, wit, wag, jokesmith; clown, buffoon, funny man, funster, jester, fool, zany, merry andrew: The new comedian at the variety show is very funny.

comely adj. good-looking, pretty, bonny, lovely, fair, beautiful, handsome, attractive, appealing, wholesome, winsome, buxom: She is a comely woman who has had no shortage of suitors.

come-on n. lure, attraction, enticement, inducement, temptation, bait; loss-leader: The free glassware is a come-on to buy a tankful of petrol.

comfort v. 1 console, solace, soothe, assuage, reassure, relieve, hearten, cheer, gladden: It might comfort you to know that Roderick has recovered completely. He comforted her when the pain became unbearable.

--n. 2 consolation, solace, relief, cheer: I derived some comfort from knowing that my attacker had been caught. 3 ease, luxury, security, abundance, plenty, opulence: Cordelia lived out her days in comfort after inheriting a fortune from her aunt.

comfortable

adj. 1 at ease, easy, tranquil, serene, relaxed, contented, untroubled, undisturbed: After the operation, the nurses did everything they could to make me comfortable. 2 well off, carefree, insouciant, contented, satisfied; self-satisfied, complacent, smug: They don't have a lot of money, but they're comfortable enough. 3 likeable, easy, congenial, amiable, cordial, warm, pleasant, agreeable, enjoyable, relaxing: Daphne is a very comfortable sort of person to be with. 4 suitable, acceptable, adequate, satisfactory, reasonable: The radio was on very loud, so I turned down the volume to a more comfortable level.

comic   adj. 1 funny, droll, comical, humorous, hilarious, side-splitting, mirthful, jocose, jocular, witty, waggish, clever, facetious, amusing: Barry's comic routines have made him a popular performer for years.

--n. 2 See comedian.

command   v. 1 order, direct, bid, enjoin, charge, request, require, demand, instruct; say, prescribe, decree: What the Queen commands must be done. 2 control, dominate, have or maintain or wield authority or control or sway or influence over, hold sway over; lead, rule, govern, have under one's thumb, call the tune; head (up): Whoever commands the sea commands the town. He commanded a battalion during the war. 3 master, draw upon or on, control, summon: The work required all the skill the sculptor could command. 4 attract, earn; exact, compel, demand: Gunga Din's bravery commanded the respect of the entire regiment. 5 dominate, control, overlook, look down on; have, enjoy, possess: The tower commands a view of the entire valley.

--n. 6 order, direction, behest, mandate, charge, bidding, instruction: Your wish is my command. 7 control, authority, power, sovereignty, dominion, regulation, direction, management, government, oversight, leadership, charge, sway, stewardship, jurisdiction: The unit is under the command of the colonel. 8 mastery, control, (thorough) grasp or knowledge: He has a good command of three languages.

commemorate

v. memorialize, remember, celebrate, observe, dedicate, consecrate, solemnize, sanctify, hallow, reverence, revere, honour, venerate, pay tribute or homage to, salute; immortalize: We are here to commemorate deeds of valour and the men who performed them.

commence v. 1 begin, enter upon, start, initiate, launch, embark on or upon: Tomorrow morning, we commence the ascent of Mont Blanc. 2 begin, start, open: The ceremonies are about to commence. 3 begin, start, initiate, launch, inaugurate, establish: We commenced operations at this plant last year.

comment n. 1 remark, reference, animadversion, note, annotation, criticism, exposition, explanation, expansion, elucidation, clarification, footnote: The author's comments on his sources appear in the appendix. 2 commentary, opinion, remark, view, observation, reaction: The judge's comments are not for publication.

--v. 3 remark, observe, opine, say: He commented that he knew nothing about the minister's private life. 4 comment on or about. discuss, talk about, remark on; reveal, expose: She declined to comment on what had happened the previous night.

commerce n. trade, business, mercantilism, marketing, merchandising, traffic, trafficking: All commerce consists in the exchange of commodities of equal value. My husband is in commerce.

commit v. 1 entrust, consign, transfer, assign, delegate, hand over, deliver, give; allot, pledge, allocate: They committed the goods to traders with strong distribution facilities. 2 sentence, send (away), confine, shut up, intern, put away, imprison, incarcerate: The judge committed her to prison. You can be committed for such behaviour. 3 perpetrate, do, perform, carry out: They committed murder for money. 4 commit oneself. pledge, promise, covenant, agree, assure, swear, give one's word, vow, vouchsafe, engage, undertake, guarantee, bind oneself: He committed himself to buying the company after seeing the books.

committee n. council, board, cabinet, panel, body, commission: They have set up a committee to oversee park planning.

common adj. 1 ordinary, everyday, commonplace, prosaic, usual, familiar, customary, prevalent, frequent, run-of-the-mill, general, normal, standard, conventional, regular, routine, stock, average, proverbial; plain, simple, garden-variety, common or garden, workaday, undistinguished, unexceptional: Intermarriage is a common occurrence among the members of the sect. We planted a common variety of carrot. 2 mutual, reciprocal, joint, shared: Our common heritage must be protected. 3 low-class, ordinary, plain, simple, plebeian, bourgeois, proletarian, run-of-the-mill, vulgar, unrefined: Kings avoid dealing with the common people. 4 inferior, low-grade, mean, cheap, base: He was smoking a cigar of the commonest type. 5 public, general, community, communal, collective, non-private, universal; well-known: The contents of the library are the common property of everyone. Their romance is common knowledge in the village. 6 trite, stale, hackneyed, worn out, banal, tired, overused, stereotyped, clich‚d, stereotypical: The term 'yuppie' has become too common to have much impact any longer.

communicate

v. 1 make known, impart, confer, transmit, transfer, hand on or down, share, pass on or along, send on, spread; tell, divulge, disclose, reveal, announce, transmit, promulgate, proffer, tender, offer, convey, deliver, present, give, yield, supply: Moral qualities are sometimes thought to be communicated by descent. I communicated to them the information that I had about the missiles. 2 Also, communicate with. be in communication (with), converse (with), talk (with), chat (with); correspond (with); associate (with), be in contact or touch (with), reach: Donald and I haven't communicated in years. Instead of communicating with him by telephone, she did so via personal notices in the newspaper. 3 get or put across, make understandable; get through to, reach, be of one mind, be in tune, relate, be in or en rapport, make oneself understood , Slang be or vibrate on the same frequency or wavelength: He has difficulty in communicating his ideas to his students. We might talk, but are we communicating?

compact adj. 1 packed, compacted, closely-knit, condensed, concentrated, consolidated, compressed; dense, solid, firm, thick: The sesame seeds are mixed with honey and pressed into a compact block. 2 tight, small, snug, little: The table folds up into a compact unit for storage. 3 condensed, terse, laconic, close, pithy, succinct, concise, brief, compendious, laconic, epigrammatic, aphoristic: The information is given in a compact form with many abbreviations and symbols.

companion n. 1 fellow, associate, comrade, colleague, confrŠre, Colloq chiefly Brit and Australian mate, US and Canadian buddy: For ten years they had been constant companions. 2 vade-mecum, manual, handbook, guide, reference book, enchiridion: They publish a pocket companion listing the month's events. 3 escort, chaperon(e), attendant, (in Spain, Portugal) duenna: Aunt Dinah is too old to be alone, so we have engaged a companion for her.

companionship
n. fellowship, camaraderie, comradeship, company, society, amity, friendship, fraternity: I often enjoy the companionship of an older person.

company n. 1 companionship, society, fellowship; attendance, presence; associates, friends, companions, comrades: It was a stormy night, and I was only too glad to have his company. A man is known by the company he keeps. 2 assemblage, party, band, group, retinue, entourage, suite, train, coterie, ensemble, troop, followers, following, flock; circle, assembly, gathering, convention, body, crowd, throng, Theatre troupe, cast, players, actors, performers: The king arrived with his company at the gate of the city. The speaker addressed the assembled company. The company leaves today for a month on the road. 3 guest(s); visitor(s), caller(s): Are you having company for dinner tonight? 4 firm, business, house, concern, institution, establishment, enterprise; proprietorship, partnership, corporation, Brit public limited company, plc, Australian and New Zealand and South African private limited company, Pty: The company was founded in 1867.

compare v. 1 liken, associate, make (an) analogy (with), refer, analogize: How can you compare your collection to mine? 2 compare with. resemble, be or look like, be on a par with, be in a class or the same class with, correspond, match, parallel, approach, approximate, bear or merit comparison (with); rival, compete with or against, be a match for: Your paintings compare well with Picasso's. The new recordings don't begin to compare with the old ones. 3 contrast, measure against, weigh, juxtapose, set side by side, relate, correlate: We need to compare the results of the two surveys.

comparison

n. 1 contrasting, contrast, juxtaposing, juxtaposition, balancing, balance, weighing: His comparison of the candidates is prejudiced. 2 match, similarity, resemblance, likeness, comparability, relation, relationship, commensurability, kinship, point of agreement or correspondence: There is no comparison between a racing car and a family car.

compartment

n. division, section, partition, part, space, chamber, bay, alcove, cell, pigeon-hole, locker, cubby-hole, niche, cubicle, slot: Each specimen is in its own separate compartment.

compensate

v. 1 recompense, make up (for), make restitution or reparation, offset, make good, indemnify, repay, reimburse, redress, requite; expiate, atone, make amends (for): The company compensated us for the loss of the car. Arriving at school early today, Gerard, does not compensate for having been late yesterday. 2 balance, counterpoise, counterbalance, equalize, neutralize, even (up), square, offset: Deduct six ounces to compensate for the weight of the container. 3 pay, remunerate, reward, repay, recompense: Two pounds does not compensate me adequately for an hour's work.

compensatory

adj. compensative, remunerative, restitutive or restitutory, expiatory, reparative or reparatory, piacular: His huge donation to the church was a compensatory offering for his past sins.

compete v. contend, vie, struggle, strive, conflict, joust, fence; fight, battle, clash, collide: They are competing to see who will become chairman of the company. These two designs compete with one another for the viewer's attention.

competent adj. 1 adequate, suitable, sufficient, satisfactory, acceptable, all right, Colloq OK or okay: Colquhon will make a competent bureau chief. 2 qualified, fit, capable, proficient, able, prepared: Do you really think that fellow Johnson competent to write a dictionary?

competition

n. 1 rivalry, contention, striving, struggle: The competition for newspaper circulation becomes keener every day. 2 contest, match, meet, game, tournament, event; championship: We entered the competition as underdogs. 3 See competitor.

competitor

n. rival, opponent, competition, opposition, adversary; antagonist, contestant, contender: Our main competitor has just announced a new product.

compile v. collect, put together, gather, accumulate, assemble, amass, collate, organize, order, systematize; anthologize, compose: He has compiled a large butterfly collection. Every year she compiles a volume of the best stories.

complain v. grumble, moan, groan, wail, grouse, carp (at), whimper, cry, lament, bemoan, Colloq gripe, squawk, grouch, Brit whinge, Slang bitch, beef, US kick: What are you complaining about now?

complaint n. grumble, grievance, grouse, Colloq gripe, squawk , Slang beef, US kick: I have no complaints about my treatment while I was in hospital.

complement

v. 1 completion, perfection, confirmation, finishing touch, consummation: The grand tour was considered the necessary complement of an English education in the 18th century. 2 crew, team, company, band, outfit; quota, allowance, quorum: The regiment's full complement was attained by selecting from among the recruits.

--v. 3 complete, perfect, round out or off, set off, top off; flesh out: The setting was complemented by a huge floral arrangement. His argument was complemented by evidence from rare documents. 4 supplement, enhance, add to: These are facts that complement but do not contradict her story.

complete adj. 1 entire, whole, intact, uncut, unbroken, undivided, unabridged, full, undiminished, unabated, unreduced: The complete works of Dickens are available in paperback. They performed the complete opera, a six-hour marathon. 2 finished, ended, concluded, over, done, accomplished, terminated; settled, executed, performed: The company's figures are not yet complete. When will your building plan be complete? 3 entire, total, thorough, absolute, utter, unqualified, unmixed, unalloyed, pure, unmitigated, rank: I attribute the disaster to a complete breakdown of communication, together with the complete incompetence of the site manager. 4 perfect, consummate, exemplary, ideal, model, superior, superlative, superb, faultless, flawless: Her dissertation is a work of complete scholarship.

--v. 5 conclude, finish, end, bring to an end, accomplish, achieve, do, Colloq wrap up; finalize: He stopped after completing ten ciruits of the track. Have you completed the prospectus? 6 round out, round off, perfect; crown, culminate: The unit was completed by the addition of five platoons. A golden cupola completed the top of the dome.

completely

adv. 1 entirely, fully, quite, wholly, totally, altogether, in toto, thoroughly, perfectly, exactly, precisely, down to the ground, from start to finish, from beginning to end, from A to Z, from the word go, in full; lock, stock, and barrel; hook, line, and sinker; heart and soul; root and branch; en masse: The currency does not completely represent the wealth of the country. 2 unqualifiedly, unconditionally, thoroughly, utterly, totally, absolutely, quite, altogether, unreservedly: He's completely mad if he thinks that thing will fly. 3 clearly, expressly, explicitly, unambiguously, entirely, fully, totally, wholly, altogether, unequivocally, truly, categorically, flatly: I am completely in agreement with your policy.

completion

n. 1 conclusion, end, close, termination, fulfilment, culmination, realization, accomplishment, finish: The completion of the building phase is scheduled for next July. 2 finishing, finalization, wind-up, finishing-off, completing: The completion of the house is scheduled for next October.

complexity

n. 1 complication, convolution: We are finding it difficult to understand the complexities of the agreement. 2 intricacy, involvement, complicatedness; inscrutability: The complexity of her theory makes it difficult to interpret.

complicate

v. 1 mix up, entangle, snarl, tangle, confound, muddle, confuse: You only complicate matters by bringing up the question of religion in a discussion of money. 2 make complicated or complex, make involved or intricate, make a shambles or mess or muddle of, mess up, Colloq screw up: The phenomena of tides and currents greatly complicate coastwise navigation.

complicated

adj. involved, intricate, complex, compound, elaborate; ornate, Byzantine, Daedalian, tangled, knotty, confused, labyrinthine: In birds the eye is a more complicated organ than in our own species. His plan is too complicated to understand.

complication

n. 1 complexity, involvement, intricacy, convolution: The complications of the diagram make it almost impossible to understand. 2 difficulty, problem, predicament, dilemma, obstacle, obstruction, snag, drawback: Asking for more money might create complications.

compliment

n. 1 praise, homage, commendation, honour, tribute, flattery, bouquet, favour: The greatest compliment given to my work has been its success. 2 Usually, compliments. respects, regards, good or best wishes, felicitations, salutations, greetings: I stopped by to pay my compliments to your mother.

--v. 3 honour, praise, pay homage or tribute to, commend, laud, congratulate, felicitate; flatter: She came backstage to compliment me on my performance.

complimentary

adj. 1 laudatory, commendatory, encomiastic, panegyrical, eulogistic, congratulatory, flattering: The duke was most complimentary about my sculpture. 2 free, gratis, on the house: The shoehorn is complimentary when you buy a pair of shoes.

comply v. agree, obey, conform, consent, acquiesce, concur, submit, yield, accede; accord: They require your signature and I hope you'll comply.

compose v. 1 constitute, form, make (up), be a constituent or ingredient or component or element of, be a part of: Clouds are composed of countless particles of water. 2 write, create, imagine, think up, originate, frame, formulate, make (up), author, devise; contrive; set to music, arrange: He composed the poem while travelling on the Flying Scotsman. That symphony was composed in 1873. 3 be composed of. consist of or in, comprise, be formed or made (up) of, be constituted of: The new government is composed of a coalition of three parties. 4 compose oneself. calm (down), quiet or quieten (down), pacify, control oneself, get control of or over oneself: They stopped crying and composed themselves.

composition

n. 1 theme, essay, article, paper, story: The teacher required each of us to write a thousand-word composition every week. 2 combination, make-up, structure, form, assembly, set-up, organization, layout, arrangement, configuration, shaping; balance, harmony, proportion, placement, placing, construction: Notice the composition of the various elements in this painting. 3 combination, aggregate, mixture, compound, compounding, mix, formulation, formula, composite, amalgam, alloy, m,lange, medley: The medication was a composition of several odd ingredients. 4 creation, origination, formulation, fashioning: The composition of the opera was begun in 1837. 5 make-up, constitution: What goes into the composition of brass?

compound v. 1 put together, combine, mix, concoct, compose, make (up), formulate, blend: They compound curry powder from different spices. 2 blend, merge, coalesce, combine, unite, fuse or US also fuze, come or go together: Sometimes two words compound to form one, as in 'ingrown', 'outgrow', and 'uptake'. 3 aggravate, intensify, exacerbate, heighten, augment, add to, worsen, increase; enhance, multiply: Demanding your money back now will only compound the problem.

--adj. 4 intricate, complex, involved, complicated; composite, multiple, multiform, multifaceted, Technical parasynthetic, parathetic: The compound eye of the fly / Lets it see far better than I. A compound sentence is composed of two or more clauses joined by one or more coordinating conjunctions, express or understood.

--n. 5 composite, blend, synthesis, combination, consolidation, Technical parasynthesis, parathesis; mixture, amalgam, alloy, merging, merger, mix: Table salt is a compound of the metallic element sodium and the gaseous element chlorine. 'Slithy' is a compound of 'slimy' and 'writhe'.

comprehend
v. understand, see, grasp, conceive, take in, apprehend, realize, fathom, perceive, discern, absorb, assimilate, appreciate: Do you comprehend how serious the matter has become?

comprehensive
adj. inclusive, encompassing, thorough, extensive, full, exhaustive, complete, sweeping, wide, broad, encyclopedic or encyclopaedic: We hope to give comprehensive coverage to all aspects of the subject in our new book.

compulsive
adj. compelling, obsessive, coercive, urgent, forceful, overwhelming, constrained: She is such a compulsive workaholic that she double-checks everything done by her staff.

compunction
n. 1 remorse, contrition, regret, uneasiness of mind, pang or pricking of conscience, self-reproach: He has no compunction about hurting your feelings. 2 hesitation, reluctance, reserve, disinclination, qualm, misgiving, unwillingness, fear: She has no compunction about speaking her mind.

compute v. calculate, reckon, figure (out), work out, determine, ascertain, estimate: My accountant computed my income tax for this year and told me that I was entitled to a refund.

comrade n. colleague, associate, friend, companion, chum, crony, confrŠre, Colloq pal, chum, Chiefly Brit and Australian mate, Australian cobber, US buddy: None of my comrades from the old regiment attended the reunion this year.

conceal v. 1 hide, secrete, bury, cover, disguise, camouflage: Packets of a white powdery substance were concealed inside each doll. 2 keep secret or hidden, keep quiet about, disguise, not reveal; dissemble: He concealed his true identity even from his wife.

concede v. 1 admit, allow, grant, acknowledge, confess, own (up or to or up to), accept: I conceded that I had no business in the bank after closing. 2 grant, yield, surrender, cede, give up, submit, resign, relinquish, abandon, waive: In chess, upon the loss of a queen, many players will concede. She has conceded any right to the estate of her uncle.

conceit n. 1 vanity, pride, egotism, self-esteem, self-admiration, self-love, narcissism, vainglory, amour propre; arrogance: His conceit is matched only by his incompetence. 2 fancy, whim, caprice: Some have a conceit their drink tastes better / In an outlandish cup than their own. 3 elaborate figure (of speech), affectation, strained or far-fetched metaphor: A conceit would be calling the waves 'nodding hearse-plumes'.

conceited adj. vain, egotistical, self-centred, egocentric, self-admiring, narcissistic, prideful, proud, arrogant, self-involved, self-important, self-satisfied, smug, complacent, vainglorious, snobbish, Colloq stuck-up; Slang snotty: That conceited ass really thinks the world of himself.

conceive v. 1 have, bear, beget, sire, father, give birth to; become pregnant (with): After the twins, they conceived three boys. 2 formulate, devise, plan, contrive, create, plot, hatch, develop, evolve, fabricate, think or make up, form, frame, design: He conceived a scheme for swindling that poor woman out of her life savings. 3 think (up), imagine, speculate (on), perceive, see, understand, realize, comprehend, envision, envisage, conjure up, dream up, hypothesize, postulate, posit, suggest, suppose: I cannot conceive of any reason why she shouldn't be allowed to take part.

concentrate

v. 1 focus, direct, centre, centralize, converge, consolidate: The council concentrated its efforts on refurbishing the schools. 2 condense, reduce, distil, intensify, refine, strengthen: The sap of the sugar maple is concentrated by boiling. 3 gather, collect, congregate, draw or bring together, crowd, cluster, group: Much of the population is concentrated around the large cities. 4 think, focus one's thoughts or attention, apply oneself: I cannot concentrate with the radio on.

conception

n. 1 birth, beginning, genesis, inception, commencement, emergence, start, inauguration, initiation, launch, launching, origin, origination, formation, formulation, introduction: We were excited to be in at the conception of the scheme. 2 idea, notion, inkling, clue, concept; id‚e re‡u; understanding, knowledge, appreciation, comprehension: He has no conception of what is involved in maintaining a yacht. 3 design, plan, scheme, proposal, outline: Transporting a building from another site instead of constructing one was a bold conception.

concern v. 1 refer or relate to, have relation or reference to, be about, pertain or appertain to, be pertinent or relevant to, regard, apply to, be connected or involved with, bear on, be germane to, be connected with, involve, apply to, touch (on): The matter concerns your inheritance, Cosgrove. 2 affect, have (a) bearing or (an) influence on, involve, touch; interest, be of importance or interest to: This war concerns us all. 3 worry, trouble, disturb, bother, perturb, unsettle, upset, distress: He doesn't let anything concern him.

--n. 4 business, affair, problem; responsibility, duty, charge, task, involvement, Colloq thing; Slang bag, shtick: What she does is no concern of yours. The safety of the passengers is his concern. 5 interest, regard, consideration, care, thought, awareness, attention: You should show more concern for those less fortunate than you. 6 anxiety, worry, solicitude, apprehension, distress, apprehensiveness, uneasiness, malaise, disquiet, disquietude: It's only a cold, and no cause for concern. 7 business, firm, company, house, establishment, enterprise, organization: The business is being sold as a going concern. 8 matter, affair, issue: The preservation of wildlife is an international concern.

concerned adj. 1 involved, responsible, interested, active; caring, solicitous: The best governments are run by a concerned citizenry. 2 troubled, vexed, anxious, worried, distressed, uneasy, perturbed, bothered, upset, disturbed: They were not at all concerned about the state of my health.

concerning

prep. about, regarding, relative or relating to, referring to, with or in reference to, as regards, in or with regard to, with an eye to, with respect to, respecting, apropos (of), as to or for, in the matter of, on the subject of, re, Formal anent: Concerning your recent application, please phone this office.

concise adj. brief, terse, laconic, compact, direct, succinct, epigrammatic, cogent, pithy, compendious, summary, epigrammatic, trenchant, compressed, condensed, short; shortened, abridged, curtailed, abbreviated: He gave a concise summary of the findings. This is a concise edition of the dictionary.

concrete adj. real, actual, literal, realistic, authentic, valid, genuine, bona fide, reliable; specific, particular, definite, definitive, clear-cut, material, physical, tangible, substantial: Have you any concrete evidence for the existence of UFOs?

condemn v. 1 censure, blame, criticize, remonstrate with or against, denounce, disparage, reproach, rebuke, reprove, scold, reprimand, upbraid: The council was condemned for failing to provide adequate health care. 2 convict, find guilty; sentence, doom: The judge condemned them to twenty years imprisonment. 3 Usually, condemned. doomed, damned, destined, fated, ordained, foreordained; consigned: He has been condemned to wander forever.

condescend
v. stoop, deign, lower or humble or demean oneself, come down off one's high horse: She wouldn't condescend to talk to the stable-boy directly.

condescending
adj. patronizing, belittling, disdainful, contemptuous, pompous, overbearing, high-handed, imperious, snobbish, haughty, Colloq snooty, Brit toffee-nosed; Slang snotty: He thinks he's better than everyone, and I can't stand his condescending manner.

condition n. 1 state; circumstance(s), shape: What condition is the house in? My bank account is in a poor condition. 2 stipulation, proviso, demand, requirement, term, qualification, contingency, requisite, prerequisite: The terrorists have announced their conditions for releasing the hostages. 3 working order, fitness, shape, form, fettle; health: He's in good condition, but his car isn't. 4 conditions. circumstances; quarters; environment: The ship's crew live in very crowded conditions.

--v. 5 ready, get or make ready, prepare, equip, outfit, fit (out or up), adapt, modify: The mechanics are conditioning the plane for high-altitude flights. 6 train, educate, teach; brainwash; influence, mould, persuade: The children were conditioned to avoid talking to strangers. 7 accustom, inure, adapt, acclimate, acclimatize: At this training base, we condition the commandos to all kinds of hardships.

conduct n. 1 behaviour, actions, demeanour, manners, deportment, comportment, attitude: Such conduct will not be tolerated in this school. 2 guidance, direction, management, supervision, leadership, administration, government, running, handling, control, command, regulation, operation: Had the conduct of the war been left up to him, we should have lost.

--v. 3 guide, direct, supervise, manage, carry on, run, control, administer, regulate, operate: They conduct a remarkably successful business. 4 lead, guide, escort, show (in or out), usher: We were conducted through the gallery by the curator herself. 5 channel, carry, transmit, convey; direct: Electrical power is conducted by the cable. 6 conduct oneself. behave, act, demean, deport, comport, acquit: For a six-year-old, he conducted himself very well.

confer v. 1 converse, consult, deliberate, talk (over), discuss, take counsel: I shall have to confer with my colleagues on that matter. 2 When transitive, confer on. give, grant, present, award; bestow (on): The prizes will be conferred after the dinner. He was bewildered by the honours conferred on him.

conference

n. meeting, convention, symposium, congress, seminar, forum, colloquium; discussion, talk, colloquy, US bull session: In 1988, the conference was held in Budapest.

confess v. disclose, acknowledge, admit, own (up or to or up to), declare, avow, make a clean breast (of); reveal, divulge, confirm, concede, affirm, aver, testify; disbosom oneself, Colloq come clean: She confessed her part in the swindle. Confronted with the evidence, he confessed.

confidence

n. 1 trust, reliance, faith; belief: Your parents have a great deal of confidence in you. 2 assurance, self-confidence, self-assurance, self-reliance, poise, aplomb, coolness; conviction, certitude, boldness, courage, nerve: We admire the confidence she shows in her daring plan. 3 in confidence. in secrecy, in privacy, privately, confidentially, intimately, Colloq on the q.t. or Q.T.: I am telling you this in confidence.

confident adj. 1 secure, sure, certain, assured, positive, convinced: I feel confident that we shall get the contract. 2 self-confident, self-assured, self-possessed, reliant, self-reliant, dauntless, bold, cool, cocksure, fearless, courageous, Colloq cocky: He strode into the room with a confident air.

confidential

adj. private, secret, intimate; classified; Colloq hush-hush: These confidential papers must never be out of your possession.

confirm v. 1 ratify, sanction, authorize, endorse, support, sustain, approve, uphold, back up, validate, verify, recognize; authenticate, accredit: By-laws shall not take effect unless confirmed by the local authority. 2 establish, settle, affirm, ensure, clinch, substantiate, guarantee, bind, seal: The king thereby confirmed his control over the islands. 3 strengthen, encourage, fortify, reinforce, corroborate, substantiate, buttress, prove: Later events confirmed his opinion.

confiscate

v. appropriate, seize, impound, sequester, sequestrate, expropriate, take (away), commandeer: The police confiscated my car to use as evidence.

conflict n. 1 fight, battle, combat, engagement, struggle, war, fray, fracas, affray, brawl, Donnybrook: Gurkha troops entered the conflict. 2 dispute, argument, controversy, wrangle, contention, disagreement, altercation, feud, quarrel, row; squabble, tiff, Colloq spat: The counsellor was unable to resolve the conflict between the sisters regarding the will. 3 clash, antagonism, difference, opposition, disagreement, variance, discord: There is a basic conflict between the interests of labour and of management.

--v. 4 clash, disagree, differ, be incompatible or at odds or at variance, be in opposition (to): The plans conflict on only one point.

conform   v. 1 comply (with), follow, observe, obey, respect, abide by, adapt or adjust (to): We agree to conform to the rules of the club. 2 accord (with), agree (with), concur (with), coincide (with), correspond (with), harmonize (with), square (with), match, tally (with), fit (in with), be consistent (with), be in accord or in accordance (with): Their behaviour did not conform with what is expected in such circles. The two plans do not conform.

confuse   v. 1 disconcert, perplex, puzzle, bewilder, mystify, baffle, bemuse, befuddle, discomfit, confound, fluster, flummox, upset, disorient, embarrass, abash, shame, dismay, Colloq rattle, throw, Chiefly US discombobulate , US and Canadian buffalo: She was completely confused by his offer to help. 2 disorder, confound, disorganize, throw into disarray, muddle, mix up, snarl (up), ensnarl, tangle (up), entangle, botch, Colloq mess up, make a mess of, screw up, Brit make a balls-up of, US ball up: He has done more to confuse the situation than to clear it up. 3 mix up, confound, muddle, jumble, snarl (up), ensnarl; blur: The identities of the children were confused at birth.

confused adj. 1 mixed up, jumbled, disordered, disorganized, disorderly, muddled, muddle-headed, snarled (up), messy, baffling, confusing, mystifying, puzzling, perplexing; contradictory, ambiguous, misleading, inconsistent, mixed up, botched (up) , Colloq higgledy-piggledy: The accountants have provided a confused set of figures. 2 bewildered, perplexed, puzzled, baffled, (be)fuddled, mystified, disoriented, discomposed, at sea, flummoxed, dazed, muddled, bemused, mixed up, nonplussed, disconcerted, abashed, put off, put out, disturbed, flustered, ill at ease, upset, at sixes and sevens, at a loss, Rare metagrobolized, Colloq screwed-up, muzzy, out of it, not with it, Chiefly US discombobulated, fouled up; Slang (all) balled up, Brit (all) bollocksed or ballocksed (up), US (all) bollixed (up), US and Canadian snafu: I have never seen anyone so confused about a simple question of astrophysics. 3 jumbled, mixed up, muddled, disorderly, confusing, messy, disorganized, topsy-turvy; miscellaneous, motley, Brit shambolic: The books lay in a confused heap on the floor.

confusion n. 1 disorder, mix-up, mess, jumble, muddle, disarray, disarrangement, chaos, shambles: The files are in complete confusion. 2 tumult, commotion, disorder, turmoil, pandemonium, bedlam, chaos: Untold confusion resulted from sounding the alarm. 3 mix-up, confounding; ambiguity, ambiguousness, misunderstanding, contradiction, inconsistency: There is often some confusion between the name of a thing and the thing itself. 4 mixing, combining, mixing up, intermingling: The removal firm is responsible for the confusion of your books with mine. 5 assortment, mixture, pot-pourri, gallimaufry, hotchpotch or US and Canadian also hodgepodge: A confusion of products lines the shelves. 6 embarrassment, discomfiture, mortification, abashment, shamefacedness, chagrin: He felt terrible confusion when confronted with the evidence.

congested adj. (over)crowded, blocked (up), jammed, crammed, plugged, stopped or stuffed (up), choked: The police are trying to deal with traffic at congested intersections.

congratulate

v. felicitate, compliment: Her friends congratulated her on winning the award.

congratulations

interjection. Felicitations!, Best wishes!, Well done!, Many happy returns!, Colloq Nice going!, Good show!: Heartiest congratulations! You've come in first!

connect   v. 1 join or link or tie (together), unite: An old road connects the two towns. 2 associate, affiliate, link, relate, league, tie (in): The police connected him with the break-in. The institute is connected with a pharmaceuticals company. 3 fasten, bind, unite, tie, link, join, attach, couple, put together, secure, fit, fix, affix, stick, anchor, lock; rivet, weld, braze, solder, screw, nail, stitch, sew, pin, hook, staple, tack, glue, cement, fuse, seal, buckle, strap, bolt, lash, chain, moor: Connect the parts to the frame.

connection

n. 1 uniting, joining, linking, connecting, coupling; union, bond, joint, link: The US constitution forbids a formal connection between Church and State. The connection between the fittings has broken. 2 link, tie, (inter)relation(ship), interplay, bearing, reference, relevance, appropriateness, correlation, tie-in; coherence, consistency, association: Your answer had no connection with the question. 3 Often, connections. contact, ally, acquaintance, friend (at court); influence, Colloq pull; Slang US drag: With their connections, they can get away with anything. 4 connections. relatives, relations, family, kin, kith and kin: They have connections in Australia.

conquer v. 1 overcome, vanquish, beat, defeat, subdue, crush, subjugate: The Moors conquered most of Spain. 2 capture, seize, win, gain, acquire, obtain; occupy, annex, overrun: They conquered the territory by force of arms. 3 overcome, triumph or prevail over, beat, surmount, master, win out (over): He has finally conquered the habit of biting his fingernails.

conquest n. 1 vanquishment, subjugation, defeat, domination, subjection: Hernando Cort,s is famous for his conquest of Mexico. 2 victory, triumph, mastery, win: He is credited with the conquest of a number of diseases by means of this drug.

conscience

n. morality, morals, judgement, fairness, sense of right and wrong, ethics, honour, standards, principles, scruples: In such matters, your conscience must be your guide.

conscientious

adj. 1 scrupulous, principled, fair, moral, ethical, strict, righteous, right-minded, upstanding, upright, honourable, just, responsible, high-minded; incorruptible: Fetherby is a conscientious arbitrator. 2 cautious, careful, scrupulous, exacting, meticulous, punctilious, painstaking, diligent, particular, rigorous, thorough: A conscientious effort was made to restore the painting to its original condition. 3 prudent, discreet, politic, careful, circumspect, heedful, attentive, serious: Fred is conscientious about keeping secrets.

conscious adj. 1 aware, awake, alert: I was conscious of an eerie presence. The victim of the attack is now conscious. 2 deliberate, intentional, purposive, purposeful, wilful, studied: Lydia has been making a conscious effort to be friendlier to me.

consent v. 1 agree, comply, concur, accede, acquiesce, concede, yield, submit, cede, conform, give in: He asked for payment in advance and I consented. 2 consent to. permit, allow, agree to, give in to, approve, authorize: Richard's parents consented to his going on the outing.

--n. 3 approval, assent, permission, sanction, authorization, imprimatur, seal of approval, Colloq OK, okay, go-ahead: Have Richard's parents given their consent? 4 agreement, acceptance, acquiescence, compliance, approval, concurrence: Taxes cannot be raised without the consent of Parliament.

consequently
adv. so, therefore, as a result or consequence, accordingly, ergo, hence, thus: He was found guilty and, consequently, sentenced to death.

conservation
n. preservation, protection, safe keeping, maintenance, upkeep, management, safeguarding; husbandry, economy: The conservation of natural resources must be a priority.

conservative
adj. 1 reactionary, right, right-wing, rightist, Tory: In his conservative view, no change is ever for the better. 2 cautious, careful, prudent, moderate, temperate, middle-of-the-road, sober, stable; unprogressive, orthodox, traditional, conformist, hidebound, conventional, standard, fundamentalist, true-blue, dyed in the wool: The conservative approach would be to study the problem before making a change. The conservative members voted against electing certain members to the club.

--n. 3 reactionary, rightist, right-winger, Tory, fundamentalist; moderate, middle-of-the-roader: He's a conservative and favours a classical education.

conserve v. 1 keep, preserve, hold on to, save, spare, reserve:

Conserve your energy for later, when we get near the top. 2 preserve, maintain, keep up, take care of: These buildings should be conserved for later generations.

consider v. 1 think about or over, take into or under consideration, deliberate (over or about), contemplate (on or over), weigh, ponder, mull over, cogitate on, meditate (on or upon or over), reflect (on or upon), ruminate (on or over), chew over, study, examine: The council will consider your proposal. 2 heed, mark, take into account or consideration, reckon with, bear in mind, note, observe, make allowance for; esteem, respect, have regard for: Consider your mother's feelings in the matter. 3 regard, look upon; judge, deem, take to be, think, believe, gauge, rate, estimate, reckon: Consider yourself under arrest. I don't consider Simon the best person for the job.

considerable

adj. 1 sizeable, substantial, large, big, great; appreciable, respectable, noticeable, largish, biggish, goodly, decent, fair, Colloq tidy: A considerable crowd were gathered outside. 2 important, worthy, of consequence, of distinction, distinguished, illustrious, noteworthy, notable, remarkable, estimable, influential, respectable: Some of the most considerable citizens were banished.

considerate

adj. thoughtful, kind, kindly, kind-hearted, good-hearted, helpful, friendly, neighbourly, gracious, obliging, accommodating, charitable, generous, unselfish; sympathetic, compassionate, sensitive; attentive; solicitous: It was very considerate of you to offer your car.

consideration

n. 1 regard, concern, attentiveness, solicitude, thoughtfulness, compassion, kindness, kindliness, kind-heartedness, considerateness, respect, caring, care: Out of consideration for your father, you should complete your studies. 2 reward, compensation, remuneration, fee, payment, recompense, emolument, tip, gratuity, pourboire, baksheesh or backsheesh; honorarium: The boy will look after your luggage for a small consideration, madam. 3 thought, deliberation, reflection, contemplation, rumination, cogitation, study, examination: After some consideration, we have decided that we will finance the project.

considering

prep. in view of, in (the) light of, bearing in mind, making allowance for, taking into consideration or account, looking at, all in all, all things or everything considered, inasmuch as, insomuch as: Considering your background, I doubt that you are qualified.

consistent

adj. 1 agreeing, in agreement, in harmony, in keeping, harmonious, in concordance, conforming, in conformance, accordant, compatible, in accord or accordance, consonant: Her story is not consistent with the facts. 2 dependable, regular, predictable, undeviating, steady, steadfast, unchanging, uniform, unswerving, constant: His behaviour, even under pressure, has been quite consistent.

consistently

adv. 1 steadily, constantly, regularly, uniformly, daily, day by day: Her piano technique is improving consistently. 2 dependably, unswervingly, staunchly, devotedly, firmly, resolutely, faithfully, uniformly, unfailingly: The courts have consistently upheld her claim to custody of the children.

console v. comfort, soothe, calm, assuage, solace, cheer (up): Ivan made an effort to console the grieving widow.

conspicuous

adj. 1 obvious, clear, evident, plain, palpable, perceptible, patent, prominent, apparent, clear-cut, unquestionable, incontestable, incontrovertible: The sultan played a conspicuous role in the kidnapping of the envoy. 2 obvious, unmistakable, prominent, outstanding, noticeable, impressive, vivid, obtrusive; striking, showy, garish, gaudy, loud, tawdry, blatant, lurid, vulgar, flashy, ostentatious: The silhouette of the castle was conspicuous against the sky. Fingal was again conspicuous, this time in a green wig and bowler. 3 notable, noteworthy, exceptional, outstanding, eminent, unusual, marked, extraordinary, remarkable, distinguished, impressive, awesome, awe-inspiring, glorious: The medal is awarded for conspicuous bravery.

conspiracy

n. plot, scheme, stratagem, intrigue, collusion, cabal, connivance, foul play, dirty work: He suspected them of a conspiracy to defraud their clients.

constable n. policeman, policewoman, (police) officer, US patrolman, Colloq cop, copper , Brit bobby; Slang flatfoot, fuzz: A constable was standing on the corner, and we asked him the way.

constant adj. 1 resolute, immovable, steadfast, firm, dependable, unshakeable or unshakable, determined, unswerving, undeviating, persevering, unwearying, unwearied, untiring, indefatigable, tireless, unflagging, unwavering, unfailing, unfaltering, persistent; loyal, true, tried and true, devoted, staunch, trusty, faithful: He was her constant companion during her troubles. 2 incessant, unceasing, ceaseless, perpetual, persistent, uninterrupted, steady, regular, invariable, unremitting, unvarying, relentless, unrelenting, continuous, continual; unending, endless, never-ending, non-stop, perennial, eternal, everlasting, Literary sempiternal: The constant pain almost made me cry out. Their constant bickering is getting on my nerves. 3 unchanging, unchanged, invariable, unvarying, fixed, uniform, unalterable, immutable, changeless, persistent: The numbers might change, but the ratio is constant.

construct v. 1 build, erect, make, put together, frame, set up, put up, assemble: We constructed a summer-house in the garden. 2 fabricate, devise, create, forge, invent, formulate, compose, shape, set up, fashion: He has constructed a complex argument to support his theory.

constructive

adj. 1 helpful, useful, practicable, advantageous, practical, productive, beneficial, positive: She provided much constructive advice on how to design the factory. 2 virtual, inferential, implicit, inferred, derived, deduced: As it turned out, the shareholders were the constructive victims of the fraud.

consult v. 1 Often, consult with. confer (with), discuss (with), deliberate (with), talk over (with), inquire or enquire of, seek advice from, ask (of), question, interrogate, take counsel (with or of): I shall have to consult a doctor about my headaches.

You should consult with your lawyer. 2 refer to, look up, seek information from: If in doubt, consult the dictionary.

consultant

n. 1 physician, doctor, specialist, expert: You ought to get the opinion of another consultant. 2 adviser or advisor, expert, counsellor or US counselor: Our financial consultant tells us how to handle the company funds.

consume   v. 1 devour, eat (up), gulp (down), swallow, drink (up), put away, gobble (up); digest: When those teenagers come home, they consume everything in sight. 2 use up, exhaust, deplete, drain, expend, diminish, reduce: The new car has consumed all our savings. 3 waste, occupy, squander, fritter away, dissipate, absorb, lose, throw away, lavish, Slang blow: Too much of your time has already been consumed by that problem. 4 destroy, ruin, (lay) waste, demolish, wreck, gut, raze, Slang US and Canadian total: Fire consumed the entire house. 5 overcome, overwhelm, devastate, destroy, annihilate, ravage, (lay) waste, wear out, ruin, eat up, devour, do in; preoccupy, obsess: He is consumed by jealousy.

consummation

n. 1 completion, accomplishment, fulfilment, finish, end, realization, attainment, achievement, success; completing, accomplishing, fulfilling, finishing, ending, realizing, attaining, achieving: Owning a Rolls Royce was the consummation of her dreams. 2 acme, perfection, peak, culmination, finishing touch, conclusion, grand finale, climax: The Nobel prize was the consummation of an arduous life of research.

contact   n. 1 junction, conjunction, connection: If the wires make contact, the fuse will blow. 2 acquaintance, friend, connection, Colloq US in: I have a contact on the board of directors. 3 touch, communication, association: Are you still in contact with Georgina?

--v. 4 get in touch with, communicate with, reach, get hold of; phone, ring (up), telephone, speak to or with, write to, correspond with: Try to contact the manager at his home.

contain   v. 1 hold, have in it; bear, carry: The capsule contained a deadly poison. 2 hold, have the capacity for, accommodate, admit, carry; seat: This bottle contains no more than a quart. The theatre can contain 200. 3 restrain, restrict, confine, repress, control, hold back or in, curb, bridle, keep under control, suppress, check, stifle: He could hardly contain himself when he learnt he had passed the examination.

contaminate

v. defile, sully, pollute, corrupt, rot, stain, soil, taint, infect, poison, foul, spoil, befoul; debase, adulterate, vitiate: The river has been contaminated by effluent from a nearby factory.

contemplate

v. 1 look or gaze at or on or upon, behold, view, survey, observe, regard, eye; scan, scrutinize, inspect: I contemplated the scene of the Grand Canal from my hotel room. 2 ruminate (over), ponder (on or over), deliberate (over), muse (on or over), meditate or reflect (on), think (about or over), mull over, cogitate (over), turn over in one's mind, brood on or over, chew on or over, consider, study, examine: She was contemplating the events of the past night. Give me a moment to contemplate. 3 plan, intend, think of or about, consider, entertain the idea or notion of: After we broke up, I contemplated emigrating to Australia.

contemporary

adj. 1 of the time, contemporaneous, coeval, coexistent, concurrent, concomitant, parallel, synchronous, synchronic, coincidental, coetaneous: We examined some of the documents contemporary with his reign. 2 modern, current, present-day, new, up to date, stylish, fashionable, modish, … la mode, latest, in; novel, newfangled, Colloq trendy: She always keeps up with contemporary fads in dress and make-up. I find much of the contemporary metal-and-glass architecture rather boring.

contempt n. loathing, abhorrence, hatred, odium, hate; scorn, disdain, contumely, disgust: She has nothing but contempt for cowards.

contemptible

adj. despicable, loathsome, detestable, scurvy, low, mean, base, inferior, currish, wretched, vile, abject, ignominious, unworthy, shabby, shameful: It was contemptible of you to give away my secret.

contemptuous
adj. scornful, disdainful, sneering, derisive, insulting, contumelious, insolent: The maestro was contemptuous of my piano-playing.

content° n. 1 capacity, volume, size, measure: The content of the barrel is exactly 55 gallons. 2 Usually, contents. ingredients, components, constituents; load: The bottle broke and its contents spilt on the floor. 3 substance, subject-matter; significance, purport, import, essence, text, theme, topic, thesis: The book is amusing but its content is quite trivial.

contentý n. 1 pleasure, satisfaction, gratification, happiness, contentment, contentedness, felicity, delight: He kept on singing to his heart's content. 2 ease, comfort, tranquillity, serenity, peace, peacefulness, contentedness: I have a feeling of such content merely being with you.

--adj. 3 pleased, satisfied, happy, delighted, contented, gratified, glad, cheerful; comfortable, fulfilled: I was quite content to be home once more.

--v. 4 satisfy, please, gratify, soothe, cheer, gladden, delight: It contented him to be near her.

contest n. 1 competition, match, tournament, championship, tourney, meet, game, rivalry, trial: The contest was won by a woman from Shropshire. 2 strife, controversy, dispute, contention, debate, altercation, argument, velitation; conflict, struggle, fight, battle, combat, war: The contest is between those for and those against capital punishment.

--v. 3 contend, argue, dispute, debate; challenge, (call into) question, oppose, counter, confute, object to, refute: David has decided to contest his father's will.

contestant
n. contender, competitor, opponent, rival, adversary, entrant, player, participant: The winner is the contestant from Chearsley.

context n. structure, framework, environment, situation, circumstance(s); ambience or ambiance, surround, surroundings, frame (of reference), setting, background: It is often hard to understand something taken out of its context.

continual adj. constant, incessant, perpetual, non-stop, persistent, uninterrupted, regular, steady, unbroken, unceasing, ceaseless, constant, eternal, unremitting, interminable, endless, unending; Loosely continuous: She has this continual ringing in her ears.

continue v. 1 carry on, proceed (with), keep up or on or at, go on (with), pursue, persist (in), persevere (in): Please continue whatever it was you were doing. 2 endure, last, go on, persist, be prolonged, remain: How long will the curfew continue? 3 maintain, keep (on), prolong, perpetuate, carry on (with), persist in or with, sustain, extend: My mother continued her career throughout my childhood. 4 resume, pick up, take up, carry on (with): Allow me to continue my story and don't interrupt again. 5 proceed, go (on), extend: The road continues for about a mile, ending at the sea.

continuous

adj. 1 connected, unbroken, uninterrupted: The wall is continuous except for one gate. 2 incessant, persistent, perpetual, non-stop, unceasing, ceaseless, constant, unremitting, interminable, endless, unending; Loosely continual: A continuous stream of refugees passed through the camp.

contract n. 1 agreement, understanding, deal, bargain, arrangement, pact, commitment, obligation, compact: We have just signed a contract to supply office equipment to a new electronics company.

--v. 2 engage, agree, promise, covenant, undertake: Our company contracted to maintain the roads in this area. 3 catch, acquire, get, come down with, develop, become infected with, Brit go down with: Eunice contracted diphtheria. 4 diminish, shrink, draw together, roll (oneself), narrow, squeeze, constrict, compress, condense, decrease, reduce: When disturbed, the animal contracts itself into a ball. 5 wrinkle, knit, crease, corrugate, pucker: His brow contracted into a frown.

contradict

v. 1 deny, gainsay, dispute, controvert, argue against; oppose: He is very opinionated, and doesn't like to be contradicted. 2 contravene, belie, refute, disallow, forbid, disaffirm, counter, abrogate, nullify, annul, reverse, counteract: The evidence yields nothing that contradicts my argument.

contradictory

adj. inconsistent, paradoxical, incongruous, conflicting, incompatible, discrepant; ambiguous, ambivalent: The witnesses' descriptions of the robbers are contradictory.

contraption

n. contrivance, device, gadget, mechanism, apparatus, Colloq widget, thingumabob or thingamabob, thingumajig or thingamajig, thingummy, whatsit, doodah, thingy, US gizmo or gismo, Rube Goldberg (invention), whatchamacallit, Colloq Brit gubbins: People began to build all sorts of contraptions that they hoped might fly.

contrary adj. 1 opposite, opposing, opposed, different, contradictory, conflicting, antagonistic: Set aside enough time to hear the contrary side of the argument. 2 antagonistic, perverse, contrarious, hostile, unfriendly, inimical, cross-grained, refractory, contumacious, self-willed, argumentative, unaccommodating, antipathetic, Literary froward: He can disagree, but why must he be so contrary? 3 adverse, unfavourable, inauspicious, unlucky, unfortunate, unpropitious, untoward, inopportune, bad, foul: We ran into contrary winds and were delayed.

--n. 4 opposite, reverse: Her present position is the direct contrary of the one she took yesterday.

--adv. 5 perversely, oppositely, contrariwise, contrarily, in opposition to: The rat in the maze acted contrary to the expected pattern.

contrast v. 1 juxtapose, oppose, compare, distinguish, differentiate, discriminate, set or place against; set off: Contrast life in the 18th century with life today. 2 conflict, differ or diverge or deviate (from): The two styles contrast sharply. Australian speech contrasts with that of Canada in many respects.

--n. 3 comparison; difference, distinction, disparity, dissimilarity: The author emphasizes the contrasts between the two economic policies.

contribute
v. 1 give, furnish, donate, bestow, grant, present, provide, supply: He contributed three paintings by Longchamp to the museum. They contributed generously to the restoration fund. 2 contribute to. add to, promote, advance, help, aid, support, forward, have a hand in, play a part or role in: They believe that poor parental supervision contributes to juvenile delinquency.

control v. 1 command, dominate, direct, steer, pilot, hold sway over, rule, exercise power or authority over, govern, manage, lead, conduct, be in control (of), call the tune, guide, oversee, supervise: Does she really control the future of the company? 2 check, hold back or in check, curb, repress, contain: Try to control yourself. 3 suppress, put down, master, subdue, restrain, curb, manage: They were totally unable to control the unruly teenagers.

--n. 4 command, direction, power, authority, leadership, management, guidance, supervision, oversight, charge; sway, rule, jurisdiction: Turn control of the mission over to Mrs Beale. The court is under the control of the State. 5 restraint, check, curb, mastery, command, dominance, domination: You must get better control over your emotions. 6 knob, button, dial, handle, lever, switch; device, mechanism: This control opens the door to the safe.

controversial
adj. 1 debatable, disputable, questionable, moot, doubtful, unsettled: Who will run the department is a controversial matter. 2 polemical, dialectic, litigious, factious: She has studied the controversial writings of the 19th-century feminists. 3 disputatious, argumentative, contentious; provocative: Race relations have remained a controversial issue for centuries.

controversy
n. 1 dispute, debate, contention, argument, argumentation, disputation, wrangling, confrontation, questioning,

disagreement: The inquest went ahead without controversy. 2 argument, dispute, disagreement, quarrel; squabble, tiff, Colloq spat: Controversy still rages over the theory of natural selection.

convalesce

v. recover, improve, get better, recuperate: The doctor said I needed only a week to convalesce after the operation.

convenient

n. 1 suitable, commodious, useful, helpful, handy, serviceable, expedient, opportune, advantageous: The bus is quite convenient for getting to and from the airport. 2 handy, nearby, within (easy) reach, at one's fingertips, close at hand, available, accessible; (at the) ready: There's a convenient post office round the corner.

convention

n. 1 assembly, meeting, gathering, congregation, congress, conference, symposium, council, conclave, diet, synod, seminar: The annual convention of cat fanciers will take place in June. 2 rule, practice, custom, tradition, usage, formality, conventionalism: According to convention, this year's vice-president becomes president next year.

conventional

adj. customary, habitual, usual, normal, regular, standard, orthodox, traditional, established, ordinary, everyday, common, commonplace, accustomed, received, agreed; reactionary, old-fashioned, stodgy, stuffy, old hat: Conventional methods of teaching mathematics are being criticized.

converge v. come or go together, meet, join, unite, merge, coincide; blend: The roads converge in the valley.

conversation

n. discussion, talk, chat, dialogue, colloquy, parley; chit-chat, gossip, discourse, palaver, Colloq chiefly Brit chin-wag: The conversation about the situation in the Middle East ended abruptly. I want action, not conversation.

conversationalist

n. deipnosophist: It was a pleasure to have dinner with an intelligent conversationalist for a change.

converse v. discuss, talk, speak, chat, parley, discourse, gossip, chatter: The men were conversing about her over dinner.

convert v. 1 change, modify, alter, transform, transmute, mutate, transfigure, transmogrify, remodel, remake, metamorphose: We converted our rowing-boat into a sailing dinghy. 2 proselytize, switch, change (over): To avoid the horrors of the Inquisition, many Spanish Jews converted to Catholicism.

--n. 3 proselyte; neophyte, catechumen, disciple: Converts are often the most passionate believers.

convict v. 1 find or prove guilty: She was convicted of theft.

--n. 2 prisoner, captive, Slang con, jailbird orBrit also gaolbird, Brit lag: The rioting convicts burnt down two prison buildings.

conviction

n. 1 proof of guilt: After his conviction, he was sentenced to life imprisonment. 2 belief, opinion, view, persuasion, position: It is her conviction that the painting is by Titian. 3 certainty, sureness, positiveness, confidence, assurance, certitude: He doesn't have the courage to back up his convictions.

convince v. win over, talk into, persuade, bring (a)round, sway: I have at last convinced them of the need for more resources.

cool adj. 1 chilly, chill, chilling, cooling, unheated; chilled, cold, refreshing, fresh: It's rather cool outside today. I'd prefer some cool lemonade. 2 calm, serene, collected, level-headed, quiet, unexcited, unemotional, undisturbed, unexcitable, unruffled, unflappable, cool-headed, relaxed, controlled, under control, self-possessed, self-controlled, unperturbed, phlegmatic, composed, imperturbable: He remains cool even in a crisis. 3 dispassionate, cold, cold-blooded, emotionless, deliberate, cold-hearted, calculated, wilful, premeditated, purposeful, purposive: It was clearly the cool act of a professional criminal. 4 uninvolved, distant, remote, aloof, detached, removed, uninterested, unconcerned, unsympathetic, apathetic, cold, cold-hearted, cold-blooded: How can you be so cool where human lives are concerned? 5 lukewarm, distant, uncordial, unfriendly, unsociable, unapproachable, standoffish, forbidding, unwelcoming, cold, frigid: After the affair, she was distinctly cool towards him. 6 bold, audacious, brazen, overconfident, presumptuous, shameless, unabashed, impertinent, impudent, insolent: I cannot account for the cool way he insulted his host.

--n. 7 coolness, chill, chilliness, Colloq coolth: I shall have a sherry to ward off the cool of the evening. 8 aplomb, poise, sedateness, control, self-control, composure, sang-froid: He really lost his cool when she told him he was a lousy driver.

--v. 9 chill, refrigerate, ice: Cool the pudding before serving. 10 diminish, reduce, lessen, abate, moderate: Her interest quickly cooled when she discovered he was married.

cooperate v. 1 collaborate, work together, join, unite, interact, team up, join forces, act jointly or in concert: If we cooperate, the work will be done in half the time. 2 participate, contribute, lend a hand, help, assist: You must learn to cooperate and not just sit there.

cooperation

n. 1 collaboration, teamwork, interaction, synergism or synergy: Only through cooperation will we be able to achieve success. 2 support, help, aid, assistance, patronage, backing, advocacy, favour, helping hand, friendship, blessing, sponsorship, auspices, backup: We needed the cooperation of people like you to mount the exhibition.

coordinate

v. 1 organize, classify, order, arrange, systemize, systematize, codify, categorize, group, match (up), dispose, rate, rank, grade: Coordinate the information before preparing the report. 2 harmonize, correlate, unify, mesh, synchronize, integrate, Colloq pull together: We must coordinate our efforts for the best results.

--adj. 3 equivalent, parallel, correspondent, complementary, correlative, equal, reciprocal, coordinating, coordinative, Technical paratactic: The two systems are coordinate and operate in parallel.

cope v. 1 manage, get along or by, make do, survive, subsist, come through: Even with seven children to care for, she copes very well. 2 cope with. be a match for, withstand, contend with or against, handle, deal with, dispose of: I cannot cope with all the work I have been given to do.

copy n. 1 reproduction, replica, facsimile, likeness, imitation, double, twin, duplication, duplicate, transcript, replication, carbon (copy), photocopy, print: She found a copy of the lost manuscript. 2 example, sample, specimen: How many copies of the book have been sold? 3 text, writing: The copy is ready; we are waiting for the illustrations.

--v. 4 reproduce, duplicate, replicate, transcribe: Don't copy others' work - they might be wrong. 5 imitate, mimic, impersonate, emulate, ape, parrot, echo: Ted copies the rock stars in every possible detail of their dress and behaviour.

cord n. string, line, twine; rope: Tie the cord around the parcel twice.

cordial adj. friendly, warm, affable, amiable, kindly, genial, gracious, welcoming, pleasant, good-natured, nice; courteous, polite: After a cordial greeting at the door, the guests were served champagne.

core n. 1 centre, heart, middle, nucleus, inside(s): Remove the core of the apple first. 2 essence, marrow, heart, pith, gist, quintessence, sum and substance: The core of the problem is her refusal to consider any alternative.

--v. 3 pit, seed: The pie might have tasted better if you'd cored the apples first.

corps n. body of men or women, troop, cadre, unit, detachment, cohort, division, battalion, brigade, platoon, squad, column, squadron: We delivered supplies to the medical corps.

corpse n. body, remains, cadaver, Slang stiff; (of an animal) carcass: The corpses were buried in a mass grave.

correct v. 1 right, set or put right, amend, redress, rectify, remedy, repair, fix; cure: A good mechanic will be able to correct the faults in the engine. 2 scold, admonish, rebuke, reprimand, berate, chide, reprove; censure, blame: You mustn't correct people for their bad manners. 3 punish, chastise, chasten, discipline, castigate: The boys were corrected for swearing at the teacher. 4 reverse, offset, counteract, counterbalance, neutralize, nullify, make up for, annul, cancel; adjust, change, modify: Adding this fertilizer should correct the acid content of the soil. 5 mark, grade: The exam papers haven't yet been corrected.

--adj. 6 proper, decorous, decent, appropriate, suitable, fit, right, meet, fitting, befitting, apt, de rigueur, comme il faut, Old-fashioned Brit tickety-boo: I have found her behaviour correct at all times. 7 conventional, established, set, standard, normal, orthodox, approved, in order, de rigueur, comme il faut, usual, natural, customary, traditional, done, right, Old-fashioned Brit tickety-boo: Sending flowers to the funeral parlour would be the correct thing to do. 8 accurate, right, precise, exact, factual, valid, true, proper, fitting, apt, suitable, appropriate; faultless, perfect, unimpeachable: Joanna gave the correct answer.

correction

n. 1 improvement, emendation, rectification, redress, remedy, reparation, amendment; corrigendum: With these corrections, the work will be vastly better. 2 punishment, castigation, chastisement: He resented her continual correction of him for trivial things.

correspond

v. 1 agree, conform, tally, comply, accord, harmonize, be congruous, match, coincide: The results of the surveys correspond. 2 write, communicate, be in touch or contact: We have been corresponding for years.

correspondent

n. newspaperman, newspaperwoman, pressman, presswoman, journalist, reporter, stringer, newsman, newsperson: Here is a report from our correspondent in Sydney.

corridor n. hall, hallway, passage, passageway: We met in the corridor outside my room.

corrupt adj. 1 dishonest, untrustworthy, dishonourable, underhand(ed), venal, Colloq crooked: He got off by bribing a corrupt judge. 2 debased, depraved, perverted, subverted, evil, wicked, degenerate, degraded: The inhabitants practised a corrupt form of Christianity.

--v. 3 debase, pervert, subvert, degrade, deprave, warp: A funds manager could easily be corrupted by all that money. 4 adulterate, contaminate, pollute, taint, defile, infect, spoil, poison: Drainage from the site has corrupted the purity of the water. 5 bribe, suborn, buy (off): He thought he knew a juror who might be corrupted.

cost n. 1 price, outlay, payment, charge, expense, expenditure, rate, tariff: The gold strap will double the cost of the watch. If the cost increases, the selling price must go up.

--v. 2 sell for, get, fetch, bring in, Colloq set (someone) back: This would cost twice as much in London.

costume n. dress, clothing, attire, clothes, garb, apparel, raiment, garments, outfit, vestment, livery, uniform, kit, Colloq gear, togs, get-up; Slang rags, US threads: What kind of costume is Celia wearing to the fancy-dress ball?

cosy adj. 1 comfortable, snug, warm, restful, secure, relaxing, easy, US cozy, Colloq comfy: They bought a cosy little rose-covered cottage in the Cotswolds. 2 convenient, expedient, self-serving, underhand(ed): He has a cosy arrangement with the planning board.

cot n. bed, crib; cradle, bunk: The baby is asleep in his cot.

cottage n. hut, shack, cabin, bungalow, shanty, Literary cot; US and Canadian lodge, chalet: She's going to stay at our cottage for a week.

couch n. 1 sofa, settee, settle, divan, love-seat, chaise (longue); day-bed; tˆte-…-tˆte, vis-…-vis, siamoise; US Davenport: Come and sit by me on the couch.

--v. 2 embed, frame, style, express, phrase: Her warning was couched in friendly words.

council n. 1 assembly, meeting, conclave, conference, synod, consistory, convention, congress, congregation, gathering, convocation, US caucus: The council voted to ban nuclear arms. 2 board, ministry, directors, cabinet, panel, committee, body, directorate, directory, caucus: She was elected to the council last year.

counsel n. 1 advice, judgement, direction, opinion, guidance, instruction, recommendation, exhortation, Technical par‘nesis: Your counsel has always been wise in the past. 2 consultation, discussion, deliberation, consideration: We took counsel with the cabinet on the matter. 3 adviser or advisor, guide, counsellor; lawyer, Brit barrister; US attorney: My counsel suggests we settle out of court.

--v. 4 advise, recommend to, suggest to, instruct; guide: I have counselled her to pursue the matter.

counsellor

n. adviser or advisor, counsel, lawyer, Brit counsellor-at-law, barrister, US counselor, counselor-at-law, attorney: We have retained Vestley and Stock as our counsellors.

count v. 1 count up or off, enumerate, number, calculate, add up, total, reckon, compute, tally, figure up, quantify, Colloq figure out: Maddie counted the number of pencils in the box. 2 include, consider, regard, deem, judge, look on or upon: You can count me among those who favour the idea. 3 count on or upon. rely on or upon, depend on or upon, be sure of, trust, bank on, be confident of, Chiefly Brit or US dialect reckon on or upon, Chiefly US figure on or upon: I knew I could count on Moira to do the right thing.

counter n. 1 token, disc, chip, piece, marker: She placed three counters on the number 14. 2 table, bar: We do not serve beer at this counter.

counteract

v. counterbalance, neutralize, correct, annul, nullify, cancel, oppose, mitigate: The coffee counteracted the effect of the sleeping-pill.

counterfeit

adj. 1 forged, fake, fraudulent, imitation, bogus, spurious, Colloq phoney or US also phony: The bank reported the counterfeit money to the police. 2 make-believe, sham, pretended, pretend, feigned, insincere, fake, faked, false, artificial, meretricious, pseudo, factitious, synthetic, unreal, simulated: You were warned about his counterfeit sincerity.

--n. 3 fake, imitation, forgery, reproduction, Colloq phoney or US also phony: This is the original deed, that one is a counterfeit.

--v. 4 forge, copy, reproduce, falsify, imitate; Slang hang paper: He made a living counterfeiting passports. 5 feign, pretend, simulate, put on, fake: The suspects have shown signs of wealth that are difficult to counterfeit.

counterfeiter

n. Slang paper-hanger: The counterfeiter, who forged only five-pound notes, was arrested today.

country n. 1 nation, state, power; territory, realm: How many countries belong to the British Commonwealth? 2 (native) land, homeland, fatherland, motherland, mother country: I would gladly fight for my country. 3 countryside, rural area or surroundings, provinces, hinterlands; mountains, woods, wilderness, outback, Colloq sticks, US boondocks, boonies: We are spending our holiday in the country.

couple n. 1 pair, duo, twosome; brace, span, yoke, team: They certainly make a nice couple. 2 a couple of. a few, several, a handful (of), one or two, three or four: I'll be with you in a couple of minutes.

--v. 3 join, link, yoke, combine, unite, match up, connect: The two carriages are easily coupled together.

courage n. bravery, valour, boldness, intrepidity, gallantry, dauntlessness, daring, fearlessness, heroism, nerve, Colloq grit, guts, pluck, spunk, US moxie, sand, Slang Brit bottle: She had the courage to face the two of them alone.

courageous
adj. brave, valiant, valorous, bold, intrepid, gallant, dauntless, daring, fearless, heroic, Colloq plucky: The soldiers were very courageous and fought against tremendous odds.

course   n. 1 path, way, orbit, route, run, track, ambit, line, circuit, passage: We continued on our course. The sun pursued its fiery course across the heavens. 2 movement, progress, headway, advance, progression; speed: The driver slackens his course at the curves. 3 procedure, process, performance, routine, conduct, order, practice, dispatch or despatch, execution: In the course of her duties, she handles a great deal of money. 4 direction, tack: If we stay on this course we'll run aground. 5 class, lecture, seminar, programme: You should sign up for a course in English grammar. 6 of course. naturally, surely, certainly, positively, obviously, definitely, assuredly, by all means; undoubtedly, indubitably, without (a) doubt, no doubt, Colloq US sure: Of course I'll go to the theatre with you!

courteous adj. polite, well-mannered, well-behaved, gentlemanly, ladylike, well-bred, polished, urbane, civilized, respectful, civil, courtly, proper, decorous, tactful, considerate, diplomatic: He might have been rude to you, but he was always quite courteous to me.

courtesy n. politeness, elegance, courtliness, politesse, courteousness, respect, respectfulness, good manners, formality, civility, ceremony: I much appreciated the courtesy with which they treated me.

cover   v. 1 protect, shelter, shield, screen; guard, defend, command: The guns covered the approaches to the town. 2 Also, cover up or over. conceal, hide, bury, mask, shroud, obscure; dissemble; enclose, envelop: I was unable to cover my embarrassment. Her face was covered by the hood of the cloak. 3 overlie, spread over, overspread, lie on, layer, coat, blanket: Oil covers the surface of the lake. 4 wrap, swaddle: Mother covered us with warm blankets. 5 dress, clothe, garb, attire, robe, sheathe: She was covered in silk from neck to ankle. 6 extend or stretch over, occupy, engulf, inundate, submerge: A lake has covered the original site of Abu Simbel. 7 include, comprehend, provide for, comprise, extend over, contain, embody, incorporate, account for, take into account, take in, deal with: This report covers our activities over the past year. 8 act, take responsibility or charge, stand or sit in, substitute, take over, run things, double: Go and get some coffee - I'll cover for you. 9 traverse, complete, pass or travel over, travel, cross: With frequent stops, we could not cover more than 50 miles a day. 10 compensate for, defray, be enough or sufficient for, counter, offset, counterbalance, make up for, insure or protect against: The policy covers losses of up to a million.

--n. 11 lid, top, cap, covering: I can't find the cover for this pot. 12 binding, boards, wrapper, dust-jacket, jacket: You can't tell a book by its cover. 13 Often, covers. blanket, quilt, eiderdown, duvet, bedclothes, bedding, (bed) linen; coverlet, counterpane; US comforter: I crept into bed and pulled the covers over my head. 14 shelter, protection, concealment, hiding-place, hide-out, retreat, refuge; hide, US and Canadian blind; Colloq Brit hidey-hole: We tried to find some sort of cover till the sun went down. 15 cloak, screen, disguise, concealment, pretence, front, camouflage, smokescreen, cover-up, mask, covering: His bluster and bullying were only a cover for his cowardice.

coward n. poltroon, craven, dastard, sissy or cissy, baby, mouse, milksop; Scaramouch or Scaramouche; Colloq chicken, Slang yellow-belly; US and Canadian milquetoast: He's such a coward that he's afraid of his own shadow.

cowardice n. cowardliness, chicken-heartedness, faint-heartedness, timidity, timorousness, pusillanimity: Owing to the cowardice of the lieutenant, the troop surrendered without a shot being fired.

cowardly adj. timid, fearful, frightened, afraid, scared, faint-hearted, timorous, chicken-hearted, chicken-livered, lily-livered, white-livered, craven, namby-pamby, dastardly, pusillanimous, vitelline, Slang yellow, yellow-bellied: The cowardly rascals ran from the battle.

coy adj. shy, modest, diffident, demure, timid, bashful, self-conscious, sheepish, timorous, unassuming, unpretentious; reserved, self-effacing, retiring, evasive, reluctant, recalcitrant: She was so coy she would disappear whenever we had guests.

3.7 crack...
=-

crack n. 1 break, fracture, chink, crevice, rift, gap, flaw, split, fissure, slit, cleft, split, check, rupture, breach: The crack in the dam was caused by an earthquake. 2 snap, report, bang, clap, shot: I ducked when I heard the crack of the rifle. 3 moment, instant, time, second: She gets up at the crack of dawn.

--v. 4 snap: He cracks the whip and the horses start up. 5 break, fracture, rupture; shiver, shatter, smash: He fell backwards on the pavement and cracked his skull. 6 fissure, craze, crackle, US alligator: The heat of the sun caused the paint to crack.

craft n. 1 skill, ability, artisanship, handiwork, ingenuity, skilfulness, art, talent, dexterity, cleverness, mastery, expertness, expertise, flair, genius , Colloq know-how: Considerable craft is required to make that kind of jewellery. 2 deceit, guile, cunning, fraud, trickery, wiliness, foxiness, artfulness, craftiness, duplicity: He exhibits that crooked wisdom called craft. 3 trade, occupation, calling, vocation, m,tier; profession: He was a member of one of the medieval craft guilds. 4 vessel, ship, boat; hovercraft; aircraft, aeroplane, plane; spaceship, spacecraft, rocket: One day there will be at least as many craft in space as there now are in the air.

--v. 5 make, fashion, fabricate: She crafted the figures out of solid wood.

crafty adj. artful, cunning, clever, shrewd, foxy, canny, wily, sly, scheming, calculating, designing, plotting, tricky, sneaky, deceitful, shifty, dodgy, guileful, insidious, double-dealing, two-faced, duplicitous, treacherous: That crafty beggar has made off with my life's savings.

crag n. cliff, bluff, tor, peak, rock, escarpment, scarp, precipice, US palisade: Soaring above us was a huge crag that we still had to climb.

cram v. 1 pack, stuff, overstuff, overcrowd, jam, fill: The car was crammed to the top with suitcases. 2 study, burn the midnight oil, Literary lucubrate, Colloq grind, Brit swot: Bob can't go out because he's cramming for an exam.

cramped adj. tight, crowded, incommodious, uncomfortable, close: The tiny cabin was too cramped to hold all of us at once.

crank n. 1 eccentric, character, oddity, Colloq nut; Slang Brit nutter, nutcase: Pay no attention to Jason, he's just a crank. 2 monomaniac, zealot, fanatic: The restaurant is patronized mainly by health-food cranks.

cranky adj. 1 eccentric, odd, weird, strange, queer, peculiar, quirky, capricious, whimsical: He's a cranky old bird who hardly goes out at all. 2 testy, grouchy, crabby, short-tempered, surly, irascible, waspish, churlish, gruff, curmudgeonly, cantankerous, choleric, snappish, petulant, peevish, contentious, querulous, irritable, splenetic, Colloq crotchety: He's always cranky before breakfast.

cranny n. chink, crevice, crack, fissure, check, fracture, break, furrow, split, cleft: Flowers grew from the crannies in the ancient wall.

crash v. 1 fall, topple: The vase crashed onto the stone floor. 2 force, drive, run, smash: He crashed the car into a wall. 3 bang, boom, explode: The thunder crashed all around us.

--n. 4 boom, bang, smash, explosion, blast: We heard a great crash as the building collapsed. 5 disaster, collapse, failure: The stock-market crash has had a devastating effect.

crawl v. 1 creep, worm, wriggle, wiggle, squirm; edge: A spider is crawling on your collar. 2 inch, creep, drag: For a solid hour the cars just crawled along at a snail's pace. 3 cower, cringe, grovel, toady, fawn: Don't worry, he'll soon come crawling, begging you to take him back. 4 teem, abound, swarm, be overrun or swamped: The scene of the crime crawled with police.

craze n. fad, fashion, trend, enthusiasm, rage, mania, thing, obsession; last word, dernier cri: The craze for printed T-shirts goes on and on.

crazy adj. 1 mad, insane, demented, deranged, unbalanced, unhinged, lunatic, non compos mentis, daft, certifiable, mental, touched (in the head), out of one's mind or head, mad as a March hare or hatter, maddened, crazed, Colloq barmy or balmy, cuckoo, cracked, crackers, crack-brained, dotty, daffy, dippy, gaga, goofy, crackpot, loony, off one's rocker, have a screw loose, screwy, batty, bats, bats in the belfry, Brit barmy (in the crumpet), potty, bonkers, round the bend or twist, off one's chump, doolally, US off one's trolley, out of one's gourd, screwball, nuts, nutty (as a fruit cake); Slang bananas, US out to lunch, meshuga, flaky, flaked-out, (plumb) loco: His wife thinks he's crazy to want to walk around the world. 2 silly, absurd, foolish, nonsensical, inane, ridiculous, preposterous, laughable, risible, ludicrous, asinine, stupid, moronic, imbecile or imbecilic, idiotic, feeble-minded, hare-brained, Colloq crackpot: Someone came up with a crazy idea of a square tennis ball to slow down the game. 3 impractical, impracticable, unworkable, unsound, pointless, imprudent, rash, reckless, ill-considered: Columbus' plan to sail round the world was thought to be crazy at the time. 4 enthusiastic, eager, avid, zealous, keen, excited: I'm really crazy about windsurfing. 5 infatuated, keen on or about, wild, mad, Colloq dotty, US nuts, nutty; Slang US ape: Marjorie, I'm absolutely crazy about you.

create v. 1 make, produce, form, bring into being, originate, conceive; sire, father: The question remains whether God created Man or vice versa. 2 engender, beget, spawn, generate, invent, imagine, think up, frame, forge, fashion, fabricate, manufacture, develop, design, contrive, devise, produce, dream up, initiate: Here is where they create many of the most successful television advertisements.

creation n. 1 beginning, origin, birth, start, inception, genesis, making, formation: The creation of the lake began with the damming of the stream. 2 the world, the universe, the cosmos: He was the most wicked man in the history of all creation.

creative adj. imaginative, inventive, originative, artistic, original, ingenious, resourceful: A truly creative artist seldom lacks for inspiration.

creator n. 1 originator, author, initiator, founder, father, inventor, architect, designer, framer, maker, prime mover: The creator of this painting must have been a genius. 2 God, Supreme Being, the Deity: Some day you will have to answer to your Creator for your sins.

creature n. 1 being, organism, entity, living thing: The hound had the saddest face I have ever seen on any creature. 2 creature comforts. (physical or bodily or material or mundane or superficial or non-spiritual) luxuries: He has the money to enjoy all the creature comforts.

credit n. 1 belief, faith, trust, credence: I don't give much credit to what they say. 2 creditation, acknowledgement or acknowledgment, attribution, ascription: Credit for inventing the telegraph goes to Guglielmo Marconi. 3 trust, confidence, faithfulness, reliability, trustworthiness, honesty, probity, dependability; solvency: Her credit rating at the bank is excellent. 4 honour, commendation, praise, tribute, acclaim, esteem, recognition, merit: The team's victory in the finals has brought credit to the school.

--v. 5 believe, trust, hold accountable, put or place one's faith or confidence in, have faith or confidence in, rely on, accept, depend on or upon: If you credit the Bible, the world was created in six days. 6 ascribe, acknowledge, attribute, assign; impute: The goal was credited to Barnes.

creed n. tenet, dogma, doctrine, credo, teaching, principles, belief, set of beliefs: She adheres to the creed of the Golden Rule.

creek n. 1 Brit inlet, bay, cove, harbour: Overnight we moored in a little creek, sheltered from the sea. 2 US and Canadian stream, streamlet, brook, rivulet, rill, runnel, run, burn: We used to fish in the creek behind the house.

creep v. 1 crawl, slither, inch, squirm, wriggle, wiggle: A tiny lizard was creeping up the wall. 2 crawl, drag: The hours creep by slowly when you have nothing to do. 3 steal, sneak; slink, skulk, tiptoe, Colloq pussyfoot: The thief must have crept in through the kitchen window. Someone is creeping about

out there in the dark.

crescent n. 1 demi-lune, semi-lune, lune, lunette: The moon's crescent hung low in the western sky.

--adj. 2 crescent-shaped, demi-lune, semi-lune, biconcave, concavo-concave: For chopping, the chef uses a crescent blade that just fits into a curved wooden bowl.

crest n. 1 top, summit, pinnacle, peak, head, ridge: The surfers rode in on the crest of a wave. 2 seal, device, figure, badge, emblem, insigne, symbol, design: The school crest shows an inkpot and a scroll.

--v. 3 top, crown, surmount, cap: The ancient walls were crested with ivy. 4 culminate, reach, top, US top out: The flood-waters crested at nine feet.

crevasse n. gorge, chasm, abyss, ravine, fissure, crack, furrow: One of the climbers fell into a crevasse in the glacier.

crevice n. crack, fissure, chink, cleft, cranny, groove, furrow, break, split, rift: Water ran down the crevices in the rocks.

crew n. group, company, band, troupe, party, gang, team, corps, body: We shall need a crew of twenty for tomorrow's job.

crime n. offence, violation, misdeed, wrong; felony, misdemeanour; lawlessness: The number of crimes of violence is increasing.

criminal adj. 1 illegal, unlawful, illicit, lawless, dishonest, Colloq crooked: Arson is a criminal act. We have to weed out the criminal element. 2 wicked, evil, bad, wrong, corrupt, vile, black, immoral, amoral, sinful, villainous, iniquitous, flagitious, depraved; disgraceful, reprehensible: The way they treat their children is absolutely criminal.

--n. 3 felon, convict, lawbreaker, outlaw, culprit, offender, miscreant, malefactor, wrongdoer, villain, scoundrel, knave, blackguard; gangster, Mafioso, desperado, racketeer; hoodlum, thug, hooligan, tough, ruffian, terrorist, Colloq roughneck, bad guy, black hat, bad hat, baddie or baddy, crook; Slang hood, US mobster: He was arrested for consorting with known criminals.

cringe v. 1 cower, wince, flinch, quail, recoil, blench, tremble, quiver, quake or shake in one's boots or shoes, shrink: That dirty little coward cringed even when they called his name. 2 defer, kowtow, grovel, crawl, fawn, boot-lick, US apple-polish; Slang kiss someone's arse or US and Canadian ass, Taboo slang brown-nose: The man cringed before the magistrate, his eyes downcast, tugging his forelock.

cripple n. 1 amputee, paralytic: He has been a cripple since the accident.

--v. 2 disable, lame, incapacitate, handicap, maim; impair, damage, weaken, debilitate, emasculate, enervate: She was crippled when a child. The dictator's power was crippled by the revolt.

crippled adj. 1 disabled, lame, handicapped, incapacitated; weakened, weak, debilitated: He takes care of his crippled mother. The crippled party platform succumbed to attack from the far left. 2 damaged, immobilized, inoperative: The crew stayed with the crippled vessel.

crisis n. 1 turning-point, critical time or moment: She has passed the crisis and will be better tomorrow. 2 disaster, emergency, calamity, catastrophe, danger: The storm has created a crisis and the residents are being evacuated.

crisp adj. 1 brittle, crunchy, friable, breakable, crumbly, frangible: Keep the biscuits crisp in this special jar. 2 curly, crispy, crinkly, frizzy, frizzled: His hair is brown and crisp, just like his father's. 3 US chip: I'll bet you can't eat just one potato crisp.

critical adj. 1 carping, fault-finding, censorious, disparaging, depreciatory or depreciative, depreciating, deprecatory or deprecative, deprecating, judgemental: The article was highly critical of the council. 2 crucial, important, essential, basic, key, decisive, pivotal, vital, momentous: The meeting at the bank will be critical for us. 3 grave, serious, dangerous, uncertain, perilous, severe, touch-and-go, ticklish, sensitive, touchy, Colloq parlous: His illness has reached the critical stage.

criticism n. 1 judgement, evaluation, appraisal, analysis, assessment, estimation, valuation: Their criticism was generally favourable. 2 censure, disapproval, condemnation, disparagement: I was very upset by her criticism of my behaviour. 3 critique, review, commentary: My sister writes the theatre criticisms for the local paper.

criticize v. 1 judge, evaluate, value, assess, appraise, estimate; discuss, analyse: He criticizes books for the quarterly. 2 censure, find fault (with), carp (at), cavil (at), condemn, attack, denounce, disapprove (of), put down, impugn, blast, lambaste, Colloq pan, knock, Brit slate: His book was criticized because of its poor scholarship. Why must he constantly criticize, even when there's nothing wrong?

crooked adj. 1 criminal, dishonest, illegal, unlawful, illicit, wrong, perverse, Slang Brit bent: Selling a stolen painting is crooked. 2 bent, bowed, askew, awry, deformed, distorted, contorted, lopsided, twisted, misshapen, disfigured, warped, gnarled: Because of the constant west wind, the trees are all crooked.

cross n. 1 crucifix, rood: In ancient times, it was common to execute certain criminals by nailing them to a cross. 2 hybrid, cross-breed, mongrel; blend, combination: This fruit is a cross between a plum and a pear.

--v. 3 cross off or out. strike out, erase, cancel, rub out, delete, wipe out: After that remark, I'm crossing you off my list. 4 meet, intersect, join: The roads cross further on. 5 cross over, go across, pass over, span, traverse: The bridge crosses the river here.

--adj. 6 peevish, irritated, annoyed, piqued, irritable, testy, snappish, irascible, surly, choleric, splenetic, grouchy, huffish or huffy, pettish, cranky, grumpy, touchy, moody, fractious, vexed, curmudgeonly, petulant, waspish, querulous, cantankerous, crusty, short-tempered, on a short fuse, Colloq crotchety, Slang Brit shirty: He's cross because he has a headache. 7 annoyed, irritated, angry, irate, furious: I was very cross that you took the car without permission.

crouch v. bend (down), squat (down), hunker down, stoop (down): If you crouch down, no one will see you in the bushes.

crowd n. 1 throng, multitude, horde, swarm, mass, press, flood, mob, flock, pack: A huge crowd descended on the village square. 2 company, set, circle, lot, bunch, group, coterie, clique, claque, faction: She doesn't associate with our crowd any longer.

--v. 3 throng, swarm, herd, pour, pile, press, cluster, gather, get together, flood, flock, assemble, congregate: People crowded into the stadium. 4 push, press, drive, shove, thrust, force, load, pack, cram, jam, corral: The police crowded the hooligans into vans. 5 compress, squeeze, pack, jam, cram, collect; stuff: We were so crowded in the cabin we could hardly breathe.

crown n. 1 coronet, diadem, wreath, fillet, circlet, tiara: The princess wore a golden crown set with jewels. 2 sovereignty, rule, dominion, authority, government, realm, rulership, jurisdiction: They discovered many lands and annexed them to the Crown. 3 monarch, ruler, sovereign, potentate; king, queen, emperor, empress, His or Her Majesty, His or Her Highness: The Crown has very little real power these days.

--v. 4 enthrone, Colloq US coronate: He was crowned on the death of his father. 5 cap, top, surmount, culminate, climax, consummate, fulfil, reward: All her years of practising the violin were finally crowned with success.

crucial adj. critical, decisive, pivotal, vital, momentous, major, important, essential: It is crucial that you press the right button.

crude adj. 1 unrefined, raw, natural, original, unprocessed: Those are the prices of crude oil, not the petrol used in cars. 2 rough, unpolished, rudimentary, immature, undeveloped, primitive, unrefined, unfinished: At this stage, she has only a crude idea of the design. 3 rough, coarse, rude, unrefined, uncouth, crass, gross, rustic, uncivil: Don't you despise his crude manners? 4 blunt, brusque, unsophisticated, inconsiderate, tasteless, indelicate, offensive, improper, vulgar: How crude of him to ask her how long since her husband had 'croaked'!

cruel adj. 1 merciless, pitiless, hard-hearted, harsh, stony-hearted, heartless, unsparing, callous, beastly, cold-blooded, ruthless, unkind, hard: It was cruel of you to refuse to help. 2 ferocious, inhuman, barbaric, barbarous, brutal, savage, bloodthirsty, vicious, sadistic, fiendish, diabolical, hellish, atrocious, Neronian or Neronic or Neroic: His captors subjected him to the cruellest tortures.

cruise v. 1 sail, coast, travel, journey, voyage; yacht: We cruise in the Caribbean during the winter.

--n. 2 sail, voyage, journey, boat or yachting trip: I took a three-day cruise around the Isle of Wight.

crumb n. fragment, morsel, bite, scrap, particle, shred, snippet, sliver, bit, speck, scintilla, mote, molecule, atom: There isn't a crumb of food in the house.

crumble v. disintegrate, fragment, break apart, break up, shiver, come to pieces: Acid rain has caused the stone fa‡ade to crumble. In the face of the attack, his resolve crumbled.

crumple v. wrinkle, crush, crease, rumple, mangle, crinkle: Your jacket is all crumpled.

crunch v. 1 chew, bite, crush, grind, munch: He crunched the nuts between his teeth.

--n. 2 moment of truth, decision time, crisis, critical moment, showdown, crux, juncture: You can count on me when it comes to the crunch.

crusade n. 1 campaign, expedition, holy war; jihad or jehad: He joined the crusade against the Saracens.

--v. 2 campaign, war, battle; take up a cause, lobby, fight: She is crusading for equal rights for women.

crush n. 1 break, smash, crunch, pulverize, shiver, splinter, pound, grind: The vandals crushed the statue to bits with hammers. 2 crumple, wrinkle, crease, crinkle, rumple, mangle: The shirts came back crushed from the laundry. 3 squash, pulp, mash, squeeze, compress, press: The machine crushes the oranges and extracts the juice. 4 overcome, defeat, conquer, vanquish, beat, thrash; subdue, put down, quash, quell, overwhelm, squelch, suppress, repress: The title-holder crushed the challenger. The junta crushed the uprising without bloodshed. 5 abash, embarrass, shame, mortify, depress, devastate, humiliate, disgrace: She was really crushed when he refused to see her.

--n. 6 press, pressure, crowd: When the fire alarm sounded, I was almost caught in the crush of the people trying to escape.

cry v. 1 weep, sob, wail, keen, bawl, shed tears: Paul cried when they took his mother away. 2 whimper, snivel, pule, mewl, whine, moan, groan, fret, Colloq turn on the waterworks, Brit grizzle: Don't cry over spilt milk. 3 cry out for. demand, need, call for, beg for, plead for: Her hair is so untidy it cries out for trimming. Wanton murder cries out for vengeance.

--n. 4 scream, shriek, wail, howl, yowl: I heard the mournful cries of those being tortured. 5 shout, whoop, yell, howl: Uttering blood-curdling cries, the rebels attacked. 6 call, sound, note: The noise was the cry of the lesser grebe to its mate. 7 war cry, battle-cry, slogan, watchword: 'Down with the king!' was the cry used to rally the rabble. 8 a far cry. a long way, quite a distance, remote, distant, not, not quite, very different (from): This report is a far cry from what I had expected.

crypt n. tomb, vault, mausoleum, sepulchre, grave, catacomb; cellar, basement: He is buried in the crypt of St Paul's.

cryptic adj. 1 secret, occult, mystical, hidden, esoteric, mystic, cabbalistic: The sarcophagus was covered with cryptic symbols. 2 obscure, mysterious, unclear, nebulous, vague, inscrutable, recondite, arcane, enigmatic, puzzling: I cannot make head or tail of her cryptic remarks.

3.8 cuddle...
=-

cuddle v. 1 snuggle up (to), nestle or huddle (against): She cuddled the baby closer to her. 2 caress, embrace, fondle, hug, pet, bill and coo, make love (to), Colloq neck, smooch, Australian and New Zealand smoodge or smooge, Slang US make out (with), watch the submarine races: The couple were cuddling in the back seat.

--n. 3 hug, embrace, snuggle: Give us a cuddle, Janie.

cue n. 1 prompt, hint, reminder, signal, sign: Give her the cue to start singing.

--v. 2 signal, prompt, remind: She was cueing me to begin, but I'd lost my voice.

culprit n. 1 accused, prisoner: How does the culprit plead? 2 offender, criminal, malefactor, wrongdoer: They caught the culprit red-handed.

cultivate v. 1 till, plough, farm, work: These lands have been cultivated since time immemorial. 2 grow, raise, tend, produce: What crops can be cultivated in this climate? 3 develop, promote, further, encourage, foster, advance: She's been cultivating a friendship with her boss. 4 woo, make advances to, ingratiate oneself with, court, pay court to, curry favour with, Colloq work on, Slang suck up to, butter up, US shine up to; Taboo slang brown-nose: He is cultivating Trevor only because he wants something from him.

cultivated

adj. sophisticated, cultured, educated, refined, elegant, soign,(e), civilized, polished, aristocratic, urbane, suave, cosmopolitan: She prefers to go out with cultivated older men.

culture n. 1 cultivation, refinement, sophistication, urbanity, suavity, elegance, (good) breeding, background, erudition, education, enlightenment, learning, taste, discrimination, savoir faire, savoir vivre, discernment: She is a lady of considerable culture as well as beauty. 2 civilization, mores, customs, lifestyle, way of life, (sense of) values: In their culture, biting someone is a sign of love and respect.

curb n. 1 check, restraint, control: You should put a curb on your tongue.

--v. 2 check, restrain, bridle, control, contain, repress, subdue, suppress: Try to curb your exuberance.

cure n. 1 course of treatment, therapy, remedy, medication, medicament, medicine, drug, prescription; cure-all, nostrum, panacea: The doctor said there was no cure for her illness.

--v. 2 heal, mend, restore to health or working order, remedy, rectify, correct, repair, fix: What can't be cured must be endured. 3 smoke, pickle, dry, salt, preserve, corn, marinate: That cured ox tongue is simply delicious!

curiosity n. 1 inquisitiveness, interest: His insatiable curiosity next led him to study astronomy. 2 snooping, prying, peeping, intrusiveness, meddlesomeness, interference, Colloq nosiness, Nosy Parkerism: Curiosity killed the cat. 3 curio, oddity, rarity, conversation piece, objet de virtu or vertu, objet d'art, found object; bric-…-brac or bric-a-brac, knick-knack, bauble, trinket, gewgaw: The shop sells curiosities, like goblets made from ostrich eggs. In those days, every house had a curiosity cabinet.

curious adj. 1 inquisitive, inquiring, interested: I am curious to know what you were doing in there all night. 2 snooping, prying, intrusive, meddlesome, interfering, Colloq nosy: Our neighbours are entirely too curious about our activities. 3 odd, peculiar, eccentric, strange, outr,, queer, unusual, outrageous, offbeat, weird, bizarre, unconventional, freakish, exotic, singular, out of the ordinary, extraordinary, erratic, pixilated, quaint, outlandish, grotesque, aberrant, abnormal, singular, irregular, deviant, deviate, Colloq kinky, nuts, nutty; Slang Brit barmy: How do you explain Frieda's curious behaviour?

current adj. 1 contemporary, ongoing, present, contemporaneous, simultaneous, coeval: The current issue of the magazine came out last week. 2 prevalent, prevailing, common, popular, accepted, known, widespread, reported, in circulation, going round or around, bruited about, widely known, in the air, present-day: The current theories reject those of a decade ago. 3 fashionable, stylish, … la mode, modish, in vogue, latest, up to date, Colloq trendy: The current trend is towards shorter skirts. 4 US up to date, in the know, informed, advised, in touch, aware, posted, au courant, au fait, on the qui vive: The Financial Journal keeps me current on stock prices.

--n. 5 stream, flow, undercurrent: The canoe was caught in the current and carried away. 6 course, progress, tendency, tenor, drift, trend, inclination, mainstream: The current of public opinion is turning in favour of policies that are more environmentally responsible.

curse n. 1 malediction, imprecation, denunciation, damnation, execration, oath: He heaped curses on all those who opposed him. 2 evil, bane, misfortune, affliction, torment, harm, scourge, cross to bear: The curse of our generation is that so few of us deeply believe anything. 3 profanity, oath, blasphemy, obscenity, bad language, dirty word, swear-word, curse-word: A stream of curses issued from the bathroom when Joe cut himself shaving.

--v. 4 damn, execrate, blast, denounce, anathematize, excommunicate: He was cursed by the priests and forbidden ever to enter a temple again. 5 swear at, blaspheme at: The muleteer was cursing his team. 6 burden, saddle, weigh down, handicap: She was cursed with bad eyesight and had to wear thick glasses.

cursory adj. superficial, hasty, hurried, passing, quick, slapdash, perfunctory, rapid, summary: She gave the note a cursory glance and threw it away.

curt adj. abrupt, short, terse, brief, laconic, concise; blunt, gruff, harsh, brusque, unceremonious, snappish, crusty, rude: His answer was a curt 'No', without any explanation.

curtail v. shorten, abbreviate, cut short, abridge, diminish, reduce, cut, cut back, cut down: Both our working week and our salaries were curtailed.

cushion n. 1 pillow, bolster, pad: The women of the harem sat on cushions on the floor.

--v. 2 soften, absorb, mitigate, reduce, buffer, insulate, mollify, lessen: They offered me a month's paid holiday to help cushion the blow of being transferred.

custody n. 1 care, custodianship, safe keeping, protection, charge, guardianship, keeping: She was granted custody of the children. 2 imprisonment, detention, incarceration, confinement: The police took three troublemakers into custody.

custom n. 1 practice, habit, usage, fashion, way, wont, tradition, routine, convention, form: According to custom, the warriors of the tribe paint their bodies. 2 customs. toll, duty, impost, tax, excise, levy, dues, tariff: He was assigned to collect customs and port duties. 3 patronage, support, business, trade: The new butcher needs as much custom as possible.

--adv. 4 specially, especially, expressly, exclusively, particularly; to order: All her clothes are custom-made.

customary adj. 1 usual, normal, conventional, routine, everyday, common, commonplace, ordinary: Is it customary for them to eat lunch on the premises? 2 accustomed, habitual, regular, traditional, wonted: I took the customary way home.

customer n. 1 client, patron, buyer, purchaser; consumer: Mrs Morris is one of our regular customers. 2 chap, fellow, character, person, guy, Colloq Brit bloke: She would never go out with an ugly customer like that.

cut v. 1 gash, slash, slit; open: I cut my finger on the glass. 2 slice, cut off, carve: Please cut me a thick piece of steak. 3 Often, cut up. hurt, wound, pain, upset, grieve, distress, aggrieve, slight, insult, offend, affront: I was really all cut up by her nasty remarks. 4 trim, snip, lop, clip, crop, shorten, shear, chop off; mow; dock: The barber has cut too much off the sides. 5 abbreviate, shorten, crop, condense, abridge, edit, cut back, reduce, cut down; epitomize, abstract, digest, summarize, curtail: Cut this script to make it fit into the allotted time. 6 dilute, thin, water (down), weaken; degrade, adulterate: They cut the rum with water to make grog. 7 avoid, fail to attend, eschew: Cynthia cut classes three days this week. 8 lower, reduce, lessen, cut back (on), cut down (on), slash, diminish, decrease, retrench (on), curtail: We shall have to cut expenses if the company is to survive. 9 conclude, settle, agree: Once the deal was cut, there was no going back on it. 10 prepare, draw, write, sign: We'll have

accounting cut your cheque and send it at once. 11 cut back. a
See 5, above. b See 8, above. 12 Often, cut dead. snub,
slight, spurn, shun, ignore, give the cold shoulder (to):
Cornelia had the gall to cut Jason dead at his own party. 13
cut down. a fell, chop or hew down: Don't cut down that tree!
b kill, cut off, murder, assassinate: He was cut down in his
prime. 14 cut in. interrupt, intrude, interfere, Colloq butt
in: Please don't cut in on our conversation. 15 cut off. a
cleave, sever, chop or lop or hack off: Cut the branch off near
the trunk. b intercept, interrupt, discontinue, end, stop,
terminate, break off: There was a click and our phone
conversation was cut off. c separate, sever, split, estrange:
He's been cut off from the family for years. d disinherit,
disown, reject: She was cut off with a shilling. 16 cut out.
a delete, remove, excise, strike or cross out, edit out, omit,
cut, kill, Technical dele: The publishers made me cut out parts
of the book that they were advised might be libellous. b
extract, excise, remove, resect: My appendix was cut out years
ago. c stop, cease, desist (from), quit: Whenever it rains the
engine cuts out. Cut out the clowning around. d suit, equip,
fit: I don't think Cyril's cut out to be a lumberjack. e plan,
prepare, ready, organize, destine: He certainly has his work
cut out for him! 17 cut up. a chop (up), dice, cube, mince,
cut, divide (up), carve (up): Cut the celery up very small. b
misbehave: The football supporters began to cut up rough. 18
cut up rough. get angry, lose one's temper, show resentment:
The driver began to cut up rough when I refused to pay.

--n. 19 gash, slash, incision, nick, wound: I got a nasty cut
from that razor. 20 share, portion, percentage, piece,
dividend, commission: Blatchley gets a cut on every car we
sell. 21 reduction, cut-back, curtailment, decrease: The
government's cuts in spending affect us all. 22 deletion,
excision, omission: The author refuses to approve the cuts in
the script. 23 affront, insult, offence, slight, snub, dig,
jibe, slap in the face, cold shoulder: The unkindest cut was
the accusation of cheating. 24 engraving, plate: This cut is
too badly worn for use now. 25 artwork, picture, illustration,
plate, drawing, line cut, line engraving, half-tone: The book
has 300 cuts and only 20 pages of text.

--adj. 26 separated, detached, severed: I prefer cut flowers
to a plant. 27 abridged, abbreviated, cut-down, shortened,

edited, curtailed: The magazine published a cut version of the novel. 28 reduced, diminished, lowered, discounted: This shop sells everything at cut prices. 29 cut and dried. a clear-cut, settled, arranged, decided, predetermined, prearranged: Unfortunately, the solution to this problem is not cut and dried. b stale, unoriginal, trite, hackneyed, old; dull, boring: His suggestions for improvement are always cut and dried. c manufactured, automatic, unchanging, unchanged: Mr Mackay will again present his old cut and dried plan.

cute   adj. 1 pretty, attractive, adorable, dainty, lovely, beautiful, Colloq US cunning: There were a lot of cute children at the beauty competition. 2 clever, shrewd, ingenious, adroit, crafty, cunning: It was very cute of him to suggest his brother for the job.

cutthroat n. 1 murderer, pirate, killer, thug, hatchet man, gunman, assassin, Slang US gunsel, torpedo, hit man: Those streets are frequented by thieves and cutthroats.

--adj. 2 merciless, ruthless, unmerciful, unprincipled, relentless, pitiless, brutal, cold-blooded, cold-hearted: Her cutthroat tactics call for dismissing all executives. 3 murderous, homicidal, lethal, deadly, barbaric, fierce, cruel, barbarous, savage, inhuman, brutal, brutish, violent, ferocious, bloodthirsty, sanguinary, bloody, feral, vicious, truculent: He was once a member of a gang of cutthroat hoodlums.

cutting   adj. 1 severe, biting, chill, cold, icy, frigid, freezing, raw, piercing, penetrating: A cutting wind seemed to go right through me. 2 sarcastic, sardonic, bitter, scornful, sneering, acid, scathing, acerb(ic), wounding, stern, harsh, caustic, mordant, acrimonious, contemptuous; malevolent, malicious, invidious, vicious, venomous: Her cutting remarks completely devastated me.

--n. 3 scion, slip, clipping: Mrs Galloway allowed me to take a cutting from her rose bush.

3.9 cycle
=-

cycle n. 1 round, rotation, circle, course; series, sequence, run, succession, pattern: We must learn to break the continuous cycles of war and peace.

--v. 2 recur, return, rotate, recycle, circle: The water from the fountain is cycled back to the reservoir.

4.0 D

=-

4.1 dab...

=-

dab v. 1 daub, pat, tap, tamp, touch: Dab a little more paint into the crevices.

--n. 2 touch, drop, trace, bit, mite, hint, suggestion, pinch, dash, spot, tinge, Colloq dollop, smidgen or smidgin: Add just a dab of mustard to the sauce. 3 daub, poke, pat, tap, touch: Wipe it away with a dab of a damp cloth.

dabble v. 1 dip, splash, spatter, sprinkle, bespatter, besprinkle, bedabble: I sat on the rock, dabbling my toes in the pool. 2 dabble in or with or at. tinker, trifle (with), potter or US putter, dally, Colloq fool (around or about or with or about with): She's not seriously interested in music - she just dabbles in it.

dab hand n.phr. past master, expert, master, adept, authority, wizard, Colloq ace: Oscar is a dab hand at wood-carving.

daft adj. 1 foolish, silly, giddy, senseless, absurd, ridiculous, stupid, nonsensical, fatuous, fatuitous, imbecile or imbecilic, idiotic, moronic, obtuse, cretinous, boneheaded, fat-headed, dim-witted, witless, asinine, attocerebral, weak-minded, simple-minded, brainless, feeble-minded, feather-brained, rattle-brained, hare-brained, slow-witted, halfwitted, fat-witted, addle-pated, addle-brained, Brit gormless; Colloq dumb, dopey or dopy, daffy; Slang cock-eyed, US cockamamie or cockamamy, running on 'Empty': He has the daft idea that he will be appointed managing director. 2 See crazy, 1, above. 3 daft about. mad about, infatuated with, besotted by or with, sweet on, Colloq nuts about, crazy about: Those two are daft about each other.

dagger   n. knife, poniard, skean, short sword, stiletto, dirk, blade, kris, bowie knife, bayonet: It was his dagger that was sticking out of the man's back.

daily   adj. 1 diurnal, circadian, everyday, quotidian: The daily papers reported nothing about the fire. 2 ordinary, common, commonplace, everyday, routine, regular: Her trip to the market has become a daily occurrence.

--adv. 3 constantly, always, habitually, day after day, regularly, every day, continually, continuously: The trains run daily between here and London.

dainty   adj. 1 delicate, graceful, fine, elegant, exquisite, neat: The value lies in this dainty border painted round the edge of the cup. 2 fastidious, sensitive, squeamish, finicky or finical, over-nice, overrefined, genteel, mincing: He seems somewhat dainty in his choice of words. 3 choice, delicious, delectable, tasty, appetizing, palatable, toothsome: They were given a few dainty morsels to nibble while waiting.

--n. 4 delicacy, sweetmeat, treat, comfit, titbit or US tidbit, morsel: A plate of dainties was placed beside the bed each night.

damage   n. 1 harm, injury, hurt, impairment, mutilation, destruction, devastation: Fortunately, there was little damage from the storm. 2 expense, price, cost; bill, invoice, US check: At the restaurant, the damage came to œ50. 3 damages. compensation, reparation, indemnity: We won the suit and were awarded damages of œ10,000 for defamation of character.

--v. 4 harm, hurt, injure; wound; mutilate, disfigure, mar, deface; wreck, ruin, spoil, impair: Although the car was badly damaged, the passengers escaped unharmed. Will this news damage your chances of a promotion?

damn   v. 1 condemn, criticize, find fault with, berate, castigate, upbraid, attack, blast, reprimand, reprove, remonstrate, denounce; blame: Some would damn him for saving the murderer from drowning, others would damn him if he didn't. 2 doom, condemn, sentence: Sisyphus was damned for all eternity to roll a heavy stone up a hill. 3 curse (at), swear (at), execrate: I damned the day I first set foot in that house.

--n. 4 jot or tittle, brass farthing, Slang hoot, two hoots (in hell), Slang tinker's damn or cuss: His opinion isn't worth a damn. 5 give a damn. care, mind, be concerned, worry, Slang give a hoot: Why should he give a damn if the critics panned his play?

damnable adj. awful, terrible, horrible, horrid, atrocious, abominable, dreadful, hideous, execrable, accursed, cursed, detestable, hateful, abhorrent, despicable, loathsome, wicked, sinful, offensive, heinous, pernicious, infernal, malicious, malevolent, outrageous, foul, rotten, base, vile, odious: He has been telling the most damnable lies about her since they broke up.

damp adj. 1 clammy, moist, wettish; humid, dank, misty, dewy, steamy, muggy: Wipe off the table with a damp cloth. Nothing dries out in this damp weather.

--n. 2 moistness, moisture, dampness, clamminess, humidity: The mould on the walls is the result of the damp.

dampen v. 1 damp, moisten, sprinkle, bedew: Dampen the clothes before ironing them. 2 stifle, deaden, damp, check, chill, cool, restrain, retard, lessen, diminish, reduce, suppress, abate, moderate, allay, subdue, temper, dull, discourage: His constant chattering on about himself dampened her ardour.

dance v. 1 cavort, gambol, caper, skip, leap, romp, trip the light fantastic (toe), US cut a rug, sashay, Colloq bop, hoof it: We danced for joy when we heard the news. Would you care to dance?

--n. 2 ball, social, dancing party, th, dansant, US tea dance, promenade, Colloq shindig or shindy, hop, bop, US and Canadian prom: I have invited her to the dance on Saturday evening.

dandy n. 1 fop, coxcomb, (gay) blade, beau, gallant, lady-killer, ladies' or lady's man, rake, Colloq swell, clothes-horse, Brit toff, blood, US dude: He was a great dandy, and spent hours dressing every day.

--adj. 2 fine, splendid, first-rate, great, marvellous, neat, spectacular: Penny's father bought her a dandy new car.

danger n. 1 peril, risk, threat, hazard, jeopardy: The danger of an avalanche is too great to go skiing. 2 in danger of. likely (to be), liable (to be): If you drink and drive, you are in danger of causing a road accident.

dangerous adj. 1 risky, perilous, hazardous, unsafe, precarious, rickety, Colloq chancy, iffy: Rock-climbing is very dangerous. 2 threatening, menacing, harmful, treacherous: He is a dangerous criminal, wanted for murder.

dangerously
adv. 1 perilously, hazardously, unsafely, precariously, recklessly: He's a mountain-climber who likes to live dangerously. 2 ominously, alarmingly: She is standing dangerously close to the edge.

dangle v. 1 hang (down), droop, depend, swing, sway: The rope dangled from the top of the flag-pole. 2 flaunt, brandish, wave, flourish: Competitors often dangle big salary increases in front of those who agree to leave our company. 3 wait, Slang cool one's heels: They have kept me dangling for weeks for their decision.

dapper adj. neat, spruce, smart, trim, well-dressed, well turned out, stylish, fashionable, elegant, chic, dressy; Colloq got up or dressed to the nines, dressed to kill, swanky or swank, ritzy; Slang snazzy, nifty, spiffy, sharp, swell, classy: Tony looks very dapper in his new Savile Row suit.

dapple adj. 1 spotted, dotted, mottled, speckled, flecked, dappled; brindled; pied, piebald, skewbald, paint, flea-bitten, US pinto: Take the chestnut mare - I'll ride the dapple grey.

--v. 2 spot, dot, mottle, speckle, bespeckle, stipple: Dapple paint on the wall with a sponge to get a mottled effect.

dare v. 1 challenge, defy, provoke; throw down the gauntlet: She dared me to jump, so I jumped. 2 risk, hazard, gamble, venture, face, make bold, be so bold as: I would never dare to talk to my father that way.

--n. 3 challenge, provocation, taunt; ultimatum: She took the dare and swam across the lake.

daredevil n. 1 exhibitionist, showman, stunt man, stunt woman; adventurer, soldier of fortune, Colloq show-off: William finally got a job as a daredevil in the circus.

--adj. 2 reckless, rash, death-defying, impulsive, daring, dashing, impetuous, incautious, imprudent, wild, foolhardy, madcap, devil-may-care; audacious, bold, brave, fearless, gallant, courageous, intrepid: Do you consider ski-jumping a sport or an example of daredevil madness?

daring   n. 1 courage, boldness, bravery, valour, intrepidity, fearlessness, grit, pluck, spirit, mettle, adventurousness, derring-do, Colloq guts, spunk, nerve; Slang Brit bottle: Diving from a cliff into the sea takes a lot of daring.

--adj. 2 bold, audacious, courageous, brave, valorous, intrepid, fearless, unafraid, plucky, mettlesome, adventurous, venturesome, hardy; rash, reckless, Colloq gutsy, US nervy: In the 19th century, a few daring explorers penetrated the jungles of Africa.

dark   adj. 1 unlit, unlighted, unilluminated, ill-lighted, ill-lit, sunless; black, Stygian, pitch-dark, inky, jet-black: We cowered in a recess in the dark cave. 2 dim, murky, tenebrous, shady, shadowy: I could scarcely see ahead of me in the dark forest. 3 gloomy, dismal, dreary, dull, drab, subfuscous, subfusc, bleak, cheerless, mournful, dour, pessimistic, sombre, doleful, joyless, grim, sad, melancholy, sorrowful: Why do you always look at the dark side of things? 4 evil, wicked, vile, base, foul, iniquitous, nefarious, black-hearted, villainous, sinister, satanic, devilish, hellish: Nostradamus predicted that dark forces would overrun the world. 5 murky, overcast, cloudy, threatening, black, dusky, louring or lowering; foggy, misty; US glowering: Another dark day on the moor and I thought I'd go mad. 6 mysterious, deep, profound, incomprehensible, enigmatic, puzzling, impenetrable, unfathomable, abstruse, recondite, arcane, obscure: She took her dark secret to the grave. 7 hidden, concealed, secret, occult, mystic(al), cryptic: The true reason for his leaving was always kept dark in the family. 8 brunette; black, swarthy, brown; (sun)tanned, Old-fashioned swart: One is fair with dark hair, the other has dark skin. 9 ignorant, unenlightened, benighted: Our culture passed through a dark phase before the Renaissance.

--n. 10 night, night-time, nightfall: We waited till dark to make good our escape. 11 darkness, blackness, gloom, gloominess, murk, murkiness: At fifty, isn't he a bit old to be afraid of the dark? 12 obscurity, ignorance: She was always kept in the dark about his true identity.

darling   n. 1 sweetheart, beloved, love, dear, dearest, true-love: She insists on buying all her darling's clothes. 2 pet, favourite, apple of one's eye, Brit blue-eyed boy; US fair-haired boy: Frank might have been the black sheep of the family, but he was always his mother's darling.

--adj. 3 beloved, loved, cherished, adored, dear, precious, treasured: He travelled everywhere with his darling niece. 4 pleasing, fetching, attractive, adorable, enchanting, lovely, alluring, engaging, bewitching, charming: Josephine was wearing a darling frock she'd just bought at the Corner Boutique.

dash   v. 1 crash, smash, shatter, break, shiver, fragment, split; destroy, ruin, spoil, frustrate, obliterate: The mirror was dashed to smithereens when it fell. The ship didn't see our raft, and our hopes of rescue were dashed. 2 hurl, toss, throw, fling, cast, pitch, Colloq chuck: We drank a toast, then dashed our glasses into the fireplace. 3 rush, run, dart, spring, bolt, bound, race, sprint; hasten, fly, hurry, speed: I'll have to dash to catch my train. 4 dash off. scribble: I've just dashed off a note to mother.

--n. 5 dart, bolt, rush, run, spurt, spring, bound, sprint: He made a dash for the door but it was too late. 6 flourish, ,lan, flair, liveliness, style, panache, spirit, brio, verve, zest, spice; ardour, fervour, vigour, energy: She is known for her beauty as well as her dash and courage. 7 bit, pinch, soup‡on, hint, suggestion, touch, trace, tinge, taste, drop, piece, Colloq smidgen or smidgin, US tad: Add a dash of nutmeg at the end.

dashing adj. 1 spirited, lively, impetuous, energetic, vigorous, dynamic, animated, Colloq peppy: She is now going out with a dashing young fellow from the City. 2 fashionable, stylish, chic, … la mode, modish, smart, elegant, dapper, Colloq Brit swish: That's a dashing coat, Felicia. 3 flamboyant, showy, ostentatious, pretentious: George Hutton was a bit too dashing for her taste.

data n. facts, information, statistics, figures, details, matter, observations, material(s); text; evidence: We shall process the data on the computer and print out the results.

date n. 1 time, year, season, period, day; age, era, epoch, stage, phase: These artefacts are from an earlier date than was first supposed. 2 appointment, meeting, engagement, rendezvous, assignation, tryst; fixture: She already has a date for Saturday night. 3 escort, companion, friend, boyfriend, girlfriend, girl, woman, boy, man, swain, beau, lover, Colloq steady: Bob is Sally's date for the dance. 4 out of date. old-fashioned, old, ancient, archaic, antiquated, dated, pass,, outmoded, obsolete, obsolescent, Colloq old hat: This timetable is out of date. Why do you wear those out of date clothes? 5 up to date. modern, latest, current, contemporary, … la mode, fashionable, Colloq trendy: Her taste in music is quite up to date. Use this up-to-date edition of the encyclopedia.

--v. 6 show one's age, make obsolete or obsolescent or old-fashioned: That pompadour hair-do really dates her. 7 entertain, escort, go out (with), go steady (with): Does Michael still date Patsy? Those two are still dating.

daunt v. intimidate, cow, discourage, dishearten, dispirit, unnerve, shake, upset, disconcert, discomfit, put off, awe, overawe, appal, alarm, threaten, frighten, terrify, scare, terrorize: He was daunted by the prospect of facing the entire council.

dauntless adj. fearless, undaunted, unafraid, unflinching, stalwart, brave, courageous, bold, audacious, intrepid, valorous, daring, gallant, heroic, venturesome, plucky, stout-hearted, valiant: Dauntless, the knight rode into the thick of the fray.

dawdle v. linger, loiter, straggle, delay, procrastinate, dally, lounge, laze, idle, lag, lie about, waste time, Colloq dilly-dally, shilly-shally: We have to catch the next train, so stop dawdling.

dawn n. 1 daybreak, sunrise, break of day, crack of dawn, first light, dawning, cock crow, Literary aurora, day-spring, US sun-up: We shall attack the castle at dawn. 2 dawning, beginning, commencement, start, birth, awakening, inception, genesis, outset, onset, origin, appearance, arrival, advent, emergence, inauguration, rise, first occurrence: The dawn of western civilization has been placed in Anatolia.

--v. 3 gleam, break, brighten, lighten: The day dawned on the deserted beach. 4 begin, originate, commence, arise, appear, emerge, start, arrive, develop, unfold: The day of the computer had not yet dawned when I was a child. 5 dawn on or upon. occur to, come to mind, become apparent or evident to: It slowly dawned on me that he had been lying all along.

day n. 1 daytime, daylight, broad daylight, light of day: Sunrise quickly turned night into day. 2 time, hour, age, period, era, epoch, date, prime, heyday; lifetime: Her day will come. In his day, there was no telephone.

day-dream n. 1 reverie, wool-gathering, fantasy, fancy, dream, musing, castle in the air or in Spain, pipedream: The realities of life have cured me of many day-dreams.

--v. 2 fantasize, imagine, fancy, envision, dream: She still day-dreams that a knight in shining armour will come and carry her away.

daylight n. 1 sunlight, sun, sunshine, light: Coming from the cave, we were blinded by the daylight. 2 open, broad daylight, light of day, full view, full knowledge, clarity: We must bring his treachery out into the daylight.

daze v. 1 stun, stupefy, blind, dazzle, bedazzle, shock, stagger, startle, astonish, astound, amaze, surprise, overcome, overpower, dumbfound, benumb, paralyse, Colloq bowl over, floor, flabbergast; Slang blow one's mind: She was dazed to learn her husband was still alive. 2 befuddle, confuse, bemuse, bewilder, puzzle, mystify, baffle, perplex, nonplus, blind: He was dazed by the difficulty of the examination.

--n. 3 confusion, flurry, spin, whirl: The entire week was a continuous daze of cocktail parties and dinner parties. 4 in a daze. stupefied, in a trance, bewildered, confused, perplexed, disoriented, dizzy, dazzled, bedazzled, overcome, overpowered, nonplussed, befuddled, flustered; startled, surprised, shocked, stunned, astonished, astounded, amazed, staggered; bemused, baffled, puzzled, mystified, Colloq flabbergasted, bowled over, floored: Arthur was in a daze to find himself the centre of attention.

dazzle v. 1 impress, bewitch, enchant, charm, beguile, intrigue, captivate, fascinate, spellbind, entrance, hypnotize, mesmerize: Every man in the room was dazzled by Mrs d'Arcy's brilliant wit and good looks. 2 See daze, def. 1.

--n. 3 brilliance, splendour, magnificence, sparkle, glitter, Slang razzle-dazzle, razzmatazz: Many actors are lured to New York by the dazzle of Broadway.

dazzling adj. bright, brilliant, resplendent, blinding, bedazzling, radiant, splendid, magnificent, glorious, sparkling, scintillating; stunning, overwhelming, overpowering, stupefying, dizzying; gorgeous; Colloq splendiferous, mind-boggling: In the chest was a dazzling collection of the finest jewels.

4.2 dead...

=-

dead adj. 1 deceased, defunct, extinct, gone, departed, late, lifeless, no more, Colloq done for, Slang Brit gone for a burton: Both his parents are dead, and his only brother lives in Australia. Lycidas is dead, dead ere his prime. 2 insensate, insensible, numb, paralysed, benumbed, unfeeling: After the accident, my left thumb was completely dead. 3 insensible, unconscious, out, dead to the world, deathlike, deathly: At the news of her son, she fell in a dead faint. 4 insensitive, unemotional, unfeeling, emotionless, apathetic, lukewarm, cool, cold, frigid, unresponsive, unsympathetic, indifferent, unconcerned, uninterested; numb, wooden, callous, hardened, impervious, inured, inert: He has always been dead to others' problems. 5 out, smothered, extinguished: The fire is dead. 6 inanimate, lifeless, inert, inorganic: Dead stones speak volumes to the geologist. 7 extinct, obsolete, perished, past, outmoded, disused, expired, pass,: Latin is a dead language. 8 barren, unfruitful, infertile, unproductive: That area off the coast is dead as far as fishing goes. 9 tired (out), exhausted, worn out, fatigued, tired out, spent, collapsing, in a state of collapse, Slang bushed, beat, Brit knackered, US and Canadian pooped: We were completely dead after the hike into town. 10 dull, lustreless, flat, neutral, vapid, empty, bland, colourless, grey, beige, dun: The walls of the prison were painted a dead white. 11 stagnant, motionless, still, standing, static, inert, unmoving, inactive, quiet, calm: There were small pools of dead water covered with a green slime. Without a breath of air stirring, the boat was dead in the water. 12 boring, dull, tedious, tiresome, monotonous, prosaic, uninteresting, run-of-the-mill, ordinary, commonplace, dry, insipid, bland, flat, two-dimensional, lifeless, stiff, rigid, stony: The play was bad, the performance dead. 13 dull, muffled, deadened, anechoic, unresounding, non-resonant: One room in the laboratory was built to be dead to all sound. 14 complete, entire, total, absolute, downright, thorough, through and through, utter, all-out, out-and-out, unqualified, unrelieved, unbroken, categorical, outright: My investment in the anti-gravity pill has so far been a dead loss. 15 profound, deep: I fell into a dead sleep. 16 sudden, abrupt, complete, full: The train came to a dead stop. 17 certain, sure, unerring, exact, precise, accurate, crack: According to the records, Calamity Jane was a dead shot.

--adv. 18 completely, entirely, absolutely, totally, utterly, categorically, thoroughly, unconditionally, unqualifiedly: You are dead right about Pontefract. 19 completely, entirely, absolutely, totally; abruptly, suddenly: He stopped dead in his tracks and stared at me. 20 directly, exactly, precisely: An enormous maelstrom lay dead ahead of the fragile craft.

--n. 21 depth(s), extreme, midst, middle: She used to visit his room in the dead of night.

deaden   v. 1 numb, benumb, paralyse, anaesthetize, desensitize, dull; damp: This injection will deaden your hand and you'll feel no pain. 2 weaken, moderate, soothe, mitigate, assuage, reduce, lessen, diminish, alleviate, cushion, soften, mollify, blunt, dull: He took to drink to deaden the shock of losing his only son.

deadlock n. 1 standstill, impasse, stalemate, stand-off, draw, stoppage, Colloq US Mexican stand-off: Union and management negotiators have reached a deadlock on the pension issue.

--v. 2 bring or come to a standstill or impasse, stall, stop, halt: The Congress is likely to deadlock on the question of expanding national health benefits.

deadly adj. 1 lethal, fatal; dangerous, pernicious, poisonous, noxious, toxic; baleful, harmful, nocuous: This drug is deadly if taken in large doses. 2 mortal, implacable, ruthless, savage: They were deadly enemies long after the war was over. 3 murderous, homicidal, bloodthirsty, brutal, vicious, ferocious, barbarous, barbaric, savage, inhuman, cold-blooded, heartless, ruthless, pitiless, merciless: Two deadly killers have escaped from Dartmoor prison. 4 deathly, deathlike, pale, pallid, ghostly, cadaverous, ghastly, wan, white, livid, ashen: He turned a deadly hue, as if he had seen a ghost. 5 boring, excruciating, dull, tiresome, tedious, dreary, humdrum, lacklustre, wearying, wearisome: It was a deadly play put on by deadly actors. 6 exact, precise, accurate, true, unerring, unfailing: Each arrow hit the bull's-eye with deadly accuracy.

deaf adj. 1 hard of hearing, stone-deaf: Sean is slightly deaf in his left ear. 2 unhearing, unheedful, heedless, insensible, insensitive, impervious, indifferent, oblivious, unresponsive, unmoved, unconcerned, unyielding: The judge was deaf to all appeals for clemency.

deal v. 1 distribute, dole out, give out, parcel out, mete out, allot, apportion, administer, dispense: Deal thirteen cards to each of the four players. She dealt out her own brand of justice to criminals. 2 buy and sell, handle, stock, do business, trade, traffic: This shop deals only in the most expensive linens. 3 behave, act, conduct oneself: Simon has never dealt openly, so you mustn't trust him. 4 deal with. treat, handle, take care of, have to do with, attend to, see to, reckon with, grapple with, act on; practise, administer, engage in: I shall deal with the matter tomorrow.

--n. 5 transaction, arrangement, negotiation, agreement, contract, bargain, understanding: The deal to sell the textbook division is off. 6 Often, great deal. (large or great) amount, lot, (large or huge) quantity; extent: There's been a great deal of crime in that neighbourhood.

dealer n. trader, businessman, businesswoman, merchant, tradesman, retailer, shopkeeper, vendor, merchandiser; wholesaler, jobber, distributor, stockist, supplier; broker, agent, salesman, US storekeeper: He has been a dealer in precious gems for years.

dealings n.pl. business, commerce, exchange, trade, traffic, transactions, negotiations; relations, relationships, affairs: All his business dealings are reviewed by his solicitor.

dear adj. 1 beloved, loved, adored, darling, precious, cherished, prized, valued, treasured, favoured, favourite, pet, esteemed, admired, venerated, honoured: He was my nearest and dearest friend. 2 expensive, costly, high-priced, highly priced, Colloq pricey: Tomatoes are much too dear at this time of the year.

--n. 3 darling, sweetheart, beloved, love, true-love, sweet, honey, precious, pet, favourite, treasure, precious, Colloq sweetie, sweetie-pie, Slang baby: My dear, I hope we'll be together always.

--adv. 4 dearly; at great cost or expense, at a high or excessive price: That little error will cost you dear, my friend.

dearly adv. 1 greatly, very much, indeed, sincerely: I should dearly like to go, but I cannot. 2 affectionately, fondly, lovingly, tenderly: He loves his mother very dearly. 3 expensively, dear, at great cost or expense, at a high or excessive price, punitively: The victory at Thalamos was dearly bought.

dearth n. scarcity, want, need, lack, deficiency, sparseness or sparsity, scantiness, insufficiency, inadequacy, shortage, paucity, exiguity, poverty, exiguousness; absence: There is a dearth of major roles for black actors.

death n. 1 demise, decease, passing, dying, end: She was overcome with grief at the news of his death. 2 end, termination, cessation, expiration, expiry: Nobody mourned the death of the bill in the lower house. 3 end, finish, termination; extinction, destruction, extermination, annihilation, eradication, obliteration, eradication, extirpation, liquidation, ruin, downfall, undoing: The invasion marked the death of the Roman Empire.

deathless adj. eternal, everlasting, immortal, undying, imperishable, permanent, unending, timeless, never-ending: In his opinion, his novel was another example of his deathless prose.

debase v. 1 lower, degrade, devalue, depreciate, depress, demote, deprecate, belittle, diminish, reduce, disparage: Words which denote fine qualities are in time debased. 2 adulterate, contaminate, taint, pollute, corrupt, mar, spoil, impair, vitiate, abase, defile, bastardize; poison: To increase profits, the manufacturer has debased the traditional formula.

debatable adj. controversial, arguable, questionable, doubtful, dubious, problematic or problematical, disputable, open or subject to dispute or doubt or question, in dispute or doubt or question, moot, polemic or polemical, unsure, uncertain, unsettled, undecided: Whether he is the best person for the job is debatable.

debate n. 1 discussion, argument, dispute, altercation, controversy, wrangle, contention, polemic; argumentation: I refuse to take sides in the debate over social services. 2 deliberation, consideration, (careful) thought, reflection, cogitation, meditation, contemplation: Payment of reparations to the victims of the disaster is a matter for debate.

--v. 3 argue, wrangle, dispute, contest, contend; discuss, moot, question: We debated only the most important issues. 4 deliberate, consider, reflect (on), mull over, ponder (over), weigh, ruminate (over), meditate (on or over), think (over or on), think through: I have often debated in my own mind the question of capital punishment.

debonair adj. 1 suave, soign,(e), elegant, urbane, refined, dapper, genteel, well-bred, courteous, civil, mannerly, gracious, polite, affable, obliging, pleasant, Colloq smooth: Despite his vicious temper, he was most debonair in company. 2 carefree, insouciant, gay, nonchalant, light-hearted, dashing, charming, cheerful, buoyant, jaunty, sprightly: Being handsome and debonair, he was much sought after by hostesses.

debt n. 1 obligation; due, indebtedness, liability, responsibility, accountability, encumbrance: He owes a debt of gratitude to his wife for her moral support. The company takes care of all debts promptly. 2 in debt. under obligation, owing, accountable, beholden, indebted, responsible, answerable for, liable, encumbered, in arrears, straitened, in dire straits, in (financial) difficulty or difficulties, in the red, Colloq US and Canadian in hock: I shall always be in debt to you for your help. The London branch is in debt for ten million pounds.

d,but n. 1 premiŠre, introduction, initiation, inauguration, launch or launching, coming out: The young soprano's d,but at La Scala was a triumph.

--v. 2 launch, come out, enter, appear: His plan is to d,but with a zither accompaniment.

decadent adj. 1 declining, decaying, deteriorating, debased, degenerating, falling off, on the wane, withering, degenerative: The decadent literature of the period was a reflection of the decline in moral standards. 2 corrupt, dissolute, immoral, debauched, dissipated, self-indulgent, degenerate: His decadent behaviour brought him to the attention of the police.

decay v. 1 a decline, wane, ebb, dwindle, diminish, decrease: The magnetic field rapidly decays when the power is removed. b decline, waste away, atrophy, weaken, wither, degenerate, deteriorate, disintegrate; crumble: Her great beauty decayed quickly. 2 rot, decompose, moulder, putrefy, spoil; turn, go bad, go off: The flesh has decayed and only a skeleton remains.

--n. 3 decline, weakening, failing, fading, deterioration, decadence, degeneration, wasting, atrophy, dilapidation, disintegration, collapse; downfall: The buildings were in an advanced state of decay. 4 rot, rotting, decomposition, mould, putrefaction, mortification: The decay has weakened the timbers supporting the bridge.

deceit n. 1 deception, deceitfulness, fraud, fraudulence, cheating, trickery, chicanery or chicane, dissimulation, dishonesty, misrepresentation, double-dealing, duplicity, hypocrisy, treachery, underhandedness, guile, craft, slyness, craftiness, cunning, knavery, funny business, Colloq hanky-panky, monkey business: Inside traders on the Stock Exchange profit enormously from deceit. 2 trick, subterfuge, stratagem, ploy, ruse, manoeuvre, artifice, wile, hoax, swindle, double-cross, misrepresentation, pretence, sham, contrivance, shift, confidence trick, subreption, gloze, Brit dialect or colloq US flam; Colloq flimflam; Slang scam, con, con trick, con game: She was sick of all his lies and deceits.

deceitful adj. dishonest, underhand(ed), untrustworthy, misleading, crooked, insincere, false, fraudulent, counterfeit, disingenuous, lying, mendacious, untruthful; wily, crafty, sly, cunning, scheming, guileful, artful, sneaky, double-dealing, two-faced, hypocritical, duplicitous, Colloq phoney or US also phony: It was deceitful of you to pretend you loved her when all you wanted was her money.

deceive v. mislead, delude, impose on or upon, fool, hoax, trick, cheat, swindle, betray, double-cross, lead on, lead up or down the garden path, lead astray, pull the wool over (someone's) eyes, inveigle, cajole, Archaic cozen; Colloq con, bamboozle, take in, take for a ride, two-time, move the goalposts; Slang US take: He deceived even his friends and family into believing he had been a war hero.

decent adj. 1 becoming, suitable, appropriate, proper, seemly, fitting: Despite the life she led, the woman should have a decent burial. 2 seemly, decorous, tasteful, dignified, mannerly, nice, clean, respectable, polite, modest, presentable, acceptable: Hereafter, you will use only decent language when speaking to me! 3 adequate, acceptable, passable, fair, competent, mediocre, middling, fair to middling, moderate, respectable, not bad, ordinary, so so, not outstanding, unimpressive, average, neither here nor there, all right, reasonable, tolerable, satisfactory, good enough, Colloq OK or okay: Sales in the first quarter were decent but hardly outstanding. 4 courteous, proper, right, fair, honest, honourable, friendly, considerate, gracious, nice, thoughtful, obliging, kind, generous, accommodating: You can count on David to do the decent thing. 5 chaste, pure, virtuous, modest, well-bred, decorous, well brought up, nice, respectable: Caroline is a decent girl, but no great brain or beauty.

deception n. 1 duplicity, deceit, intrigue, hypocrisy, fraud, cheating, trickery, chicanery or chicane, dissimulation, double-dealing, subterfuge, sophistry, treachery, knavery, tergiversation; see also deceit 1, above: He practised deception even in his family relationships. 2 trick, ruse, artifice, stratagem, subterfuge, manoeuvre, wile, imposture, hoax, sham, pretence; see also deceit 2, above: He tried every deception in the book to separate her from her money.

deceptive adj. 1 misleading, false, illusory, deceiving, unreliable: He has the look of an athlete, but appearances can be deceptive. 2 fraudulent, deceitful, dishonest, untruthful, fake, false, shifty, fallacious, specious, spurious, bogus, counterfeit, pseudo, sophistical; tricky, dodgy, evasive, elusive, slippery, Colloq phoney or US also phony: The bank is being deceptive about his credit rating.

decide v. 1 determine, settle, resolve, conclude, take or reach or come to a decision or conclusion, make up one's mind, arbitrate, judge, adjudicate, referee, umpire: She decided that you were right. They decided the case in my favour. 2 decide on or upon. fix or fasten or settle on or upon, choose, select, pick (out), elect, opt (for), commit oneself (to): I have decided on a British-made car.

decided adj. 1 definite, pronounced, marked, unmistakable, unambiguous, unequivocal, certain, sure, absolute, obvious, clear, evident, unquestionable, unquestioned, indisputable, undisputed, undeniable, irrefutable, incontestable, unqualified, unconditional, incontrovertible, solid: The party was a decided success. 2 fixed, firm, resolute, determined, adamant, stony, unhesitating, decisive, definite, unfaltering, assertive, asseverative, unswerving, unwavering: They are decided in their approval of her plan.

decipher v. 1 decode, decrypt; unravel, unscramble, disentangle, translate, work out, explain, solve, Colloq figure out: It was Champollion who deciphered the Rosetta Stone. 2 read, interpret, make out, Colloq figure out: I can't decipher Theresa's handwriting or what she's trying to say.

decision n. 1 settlement, determination, resolution, settling, resolving, arbitration: The decision is the umpire's responsibility. 2 judgement, conclusion, resolution, verdict, sentence, ruling, finding, decree, settlement, outcome: According to the decision, the victims will receive compensatory damages. 3 determination, firmness, decidedness, resolve, decisiveness, conclusiveness, steadfastness, purpose, purposefulness: She asserted her position with decision.

declaration
n. 1 statement, assertion, attestation, deposition, asseveration, affirmation, avowal, announcement, proclamation, pronouncement, profession: Henrietta desperately wanted to believe Henry's declaration of love. 2 proclamation, announcement, pronouncement, promulgation, pronunciamento, edict, ukase, manifesto, notice: The colonists issued a declaration of independence.

declare v. 1 assert, say, offer, submit, affirm, state, aver, asseverate, avow, avouch, profess, protest, swear, claim, proclaim; confirm, certify, ratify: I solemnly declare that the testimony I am to give is true, so help me God. 2 announce, make known, pronounce, decree, rule, proclaim, herald, promulgate, publish, broadcast, trumpet (forth): Robert has declared his intention to make Marianne his wife.

decline v. 1 refuse, turn down, deny, reject, demur, forgo, veto, avoid, abstain from: She declined help with the packages. Roger was offered a professorship at the university but he declined. 2 diminish, lessen, decrease, wane, flag, go down, fall or taper off, subside, ebb, abate, dwindle, shrink, fade, Colloq peter out, run out of steam, US run out of gas: Demand for hula hoops declined. 3 slope or slant (downwards), descend, drop or fall off, dip, sink: The meadow declines towards the river. 4 deteriorate, degenerate, worsen, fail: My health has declined over the last year. 5 go or drop down, settle, dip, sink, set: The sun was declining as I went home.

--n. 6 diminution, decrease, lessening, ebb, downturn, fall-off, reduction, abatement, slump, descent: There has been a steady decline in the value of the pound. 7 degeneration, deterioration, loss, diminution, weakening, debility, weakness, worsening, decay, failing: We noted a decline in the physical condition of those living nearby. 8 declivity, (downward) slope or slant, descent, downgrade, incline: The path led down a steep decline towards the pond.

decompose v. 1 disintegrate, separate, fall or come apart, break up or down, take apart, dissect, anatomize, atomize, resolve, decompound, analyse: By absorption the scientists decomposed the green light into yellow and blue. 2 rot, disintegrate, decay, moulder, putrefy; spoil, go off or bad, turn sour: The meat will decompose if it is left outside the fridge.

decorate v. 1 embellish, adorn, ornament, garnish, embroider, elaborate, bedeck, deck (out), trim, dress (up), spruce or smarten up, beautify, Literary caparison, Colloq Brit tart up: We decorated the pub for the Christmas holidays. 2 Brit paint, wallpaper, redecorate, furbish, refurbish, renovate, fix up, restore: All the bedrooms have been decorated.

decoration
n. 1 garnish, trim, trimming, adornment, embellishment, ornament, ornamentation, garnishment: There's a bit too much decoration on the cake. 2 medal, laurel, award, badge, colours, order, ribbon, star, garter: Captain Harder won many decorations in the war.

decorous adj. becoming, dignified, decent, correct, mannerly, seemly, refined, elegant, polite, well-behaved, genteel, demure, polished, gentlemanly, ladylike, seemly: Your behaviour was less than decorous at last night's party.

decorum n. 1 etiquette, proper behaviour, propriety, good form, mannerliness, politeness, dignity, gentility, good manners, respectability, courtliness, deportment: The decorum of the meeting was disturbed by rabble-rousers. 2 correctness, propriety, protocol, punctilio, conformity: Please observe proper decorum when visiting the embassy.

decoy n. 1 bait, lure, trap, attraction, enticement, inducement, stool-pigeon: The hunters set out their decoys and waited for the ducks.

--v. 2 lure, entrap, entice, attract, induce, seduce, bait, trick, tempt, ensnare, inveigle, allure: He was decoyed into a dark alley and robbed.

decrease v. 1 diminish, reduce, decline, lessen, lower, abate, fall off, shrink, shrivel (up), contract, dwindle, ebb, subside, wane, taper off, de-escalate, slacken, let up, ease (off or up), curtail, cut (down or back), Colloq run out of steam, US run out of gas: Demand for tickets to rock concerts has decreased over the years. The number of applicants for work is decreasing.

--n. 2 diminution, reduction, decline, lessening, lowering, abatement, falling off, shrinking, shrivelling, contraction, decrement, dwindling, ebb, subsidence, tapering off, wane, de-escalation, slackening, easing (off or up), curtailment, cut, cut-back: There has been no noticeable decrease in the price of houses in the south-east. Have you noticed the decrease in arrests for dangerous driving?

decree n. 1 order, mandate, directive, ordinance, edict, law, statute, regulation, enactment, act, ruling, dictum, dictate, injunction, sanction, manifesto, proclamation, promulgation, determination, decision, judgement, rescript, prescription, pronunciamento, firman, ukase, Rom Cath Ch decretal: The star chamber issued a decree restricting the freedom of the press.

--v. 2 order, command, direct, rule, mandate, ordain, dictate, charge, enjoin, proclaim, pronounce, prescribe, decide, determine, adjudge, Scots law decern: The council has decreed that no spirits can be sold on Sundays.

decrepit adj. 1 feeble, enfeebled, weak, weakened, frail, infirm, wasted, worn out, unfit, debilitated, enervated, disabled, incapacitated, crippled, doddering; out of shape, in bad shape; aged, old, elderly, ancient, superannuated, senescent, senile, Colloq gaga: The old man was so decrepit he was unable to lift the cup to his lips. 2 dilapidated, deteriorated, crumbling, decayed, decaying, withered, wasted, antiquated, tumbledown, broken-down, rickety, unstable, shaky, ramshackle, derelict, creaking, creaky, run-down: The barn was so decrepit we had to tear it down.

decrepitude
n. 1 feebleness, weakness, infirmity, debilitation, enervation, incapacity, old age, superannuation, senescence, senility, caducity, dotage: Her decrepitude was so extreme that she could neither walk nor understand what was said to her. 2 dilapidation, deterioration, decay, ruin: The house is in an advanced state of decrepitude.

dedicate v. 1 devote, consecrate, give (up or over), yield, offer, surrender, commit, pledge, assign: She dedicated her life to helping the poor. 2 consecrate, bless, sanctify, hallow: There stands the temple dedicated to Apollo. 3 inscribe; address, assign: This book has been dedicated to you.

dedication
n. 1 devotion, assignment, pledge, commitment, allegiance, adherence, faithfulness, fidelity, loyalty, devotedness, wholeheartedness, single-mindedness, fixedness, fealty: I admire Rudolph's dedication to duty. 2 inscription, address; message: The dedication reads, 'To my mother and father'. 3 consecration, sanctification, hallowing: The ceremony for the dedication of the youth centre will be held tomorrow.

deduce v. conclude, infer, understand, gather, assume, presume, derive, draw, work out, divine, glean, take it, suppose, surmise, suspect, Slang Brit suss out: From the tone of his letter she deduced that he was going to change his mind.

deduct v. subtract, take away or out or off, take from, remove, withdraw, Colloq knock off: Deduct six from ten and you're left with four.

deduction n. 1 subtraction, diminution, decrease, reduction, withdrawal, removal, abstraction: After deductions for expenses, you'll be left with nothing. 2 conclusion, inference, finding, reasoning, result: After considering the evidence, my deduction is that the butler didn't do it.

deed n. 1 act, action; performance: Their deeds did not match their promises. 2 exploit, feat, achievement, accomplishment: We are here to honour her for her many deeds, both on and off the tennis court. 3 title(-deed), document, instrument, indenture, contract, agreement: The bank holds the title-deed until the mortgage is paid off.

deep adj. 1 extensive, bottomless, abyssal, unfathomable, profound; wide, broad, yawning, chasmal or chasmic: All our supplies were lost in a deep crevasse in the glacier. 2 profound, arcane, recondite, difficult, abstruse, obscure, esoteric, incomprehensible, beyond or past comprehension, impenetrable, unfathomable, inscrutable, mysterious, mystic(al), occult, weighty, serious, Colloq heavy: Religious philosophy is too deep a subject to discuss at breakfast. 3 wise, learned, sage, sagacious, astute, perspicacious, profound, discerning, acute, intense, penetrating, knowledgeable, knowing: Margaret is one of the deepest thinkers on the subject. 4 rapt, absorbed, engrossed, occupied, preoccupied, intent, intense, involved, engaged, immersed, lost, Colloq into: Don't disturb him when he's deep in thought. 5 devious, cunning, shrewd, crafty, canny, clever, knowing, scheming, artful, designing: He thinks there is a deep plot against him. 6 profound, intense, sincere, serious, heartfelt, earnest, ardent, fervent, poignant, deep-rooted: I know of your deep concern for her. 7 low, resonant, booming, resounding, sonorous, rumbling: The deep sound of thunder rolled across the valley. 8 rich, dark, intense, strong: The sky was a deep blue.

--n. 9 the deep. the ocean, the main, the sea, the waters, the high seas, the briny (deep), the wave(s), Davy Jones's locker, Neptune's or Poseidon's kingdom or domain: It was midnight on the waters and a storm was on the deep.

--adv. 10 deeply, far down, profoundly, intensely, earnestly, heavily: We drank deep of the cooling liquid.

deepen v. 1 dig out, burrow, sink, dredge, excavate, scoop (out): We'll have to deepen the hole to support the flag-pole. 2 intensify, increase, concentrate, strengthen, expand, magnify: The programme reflects a deepening interest in education.

deeply adv. 1 deep, (far) downwards or inwards, way down, deep down: The glacier was deeply fissured. She swam to the surface and inhaled deeply. 2 profoundly, intensely, strongly, powerfully, very much, acutely, keenly, gravely, greatly, to a great extent, extremely, thoroughly, completely, entirely, seriously, severely, irrevocably, unreservedly; passionately, heavily, emotionally: She is deeply involved with a man from Kent. They were deeply committed to the labour movement.

deface v. mar, disfigure, spoil, ruin, deform, blemish, damage, mutilate, harm, impair, injure, destroy: Nothing should be allowed to deface the beauty of these buildings.

default n. 1 failure, fault, defect, neglect, negligence, dereliction, lapse, oversight, non-performance, non-fulfilment, inaction: We won the case because of their default on the contract. The other contestant failed to appear, so Gordon won the match by default. 2 non-payment, delinquency: Default in the rent may result in eviction.

--v. 3 fail, neglect, dishonour, lapse, fall short, come (up) short: He has defaulted on a car payment.

defeat v. 1 overcome, conquer, vanquish, be victorious over, get the better of, beat, subdue, overwhelm, overpower, prevail over, triumph over, bring down, worst, thrash, rout, repulse, overthrow, trounce, whip, crush, destroy, do in, best: The champion defeated the contender in a ten-round match. 2 thwart, frustrate, disappoint, check, balk, stop, terminate, end, finish, foil: He never let his handicap defeat his hopes of winning.

--n. 3 conquest, overthrow, beating, repulse, trouncing, rout, vanquishment: The defeat of our team must be charged to lack of training. 4 frustration, undoing, failure, miscarriage, set-back; Waterloo: The stock market crash spelled the defeat of the company's plan for a share issue.

defecate v. void (excrement), move the bowels, excrete, eliminate, evacuate (the bowels), have a (bowel) movement or bm, open the bowels, relieve oneself, Babytalk do number two , Euphemistic go to the men's or ladies' (room), go to the toilet or bathroom or lavatory, excuse (oneself), wash (one's) hands, go to the bathroom, go to the powder-room; Mincing go to the little boys' or girls' room; Colloq Brit spend a penny, Colloq Brit go to the loo, pass a motion, Taboo slang (take a) crap or shit: The first symptoms of bowel disease are problems when defecating.

defect n. 1 shortcoming, deficiency, lack, want, inadequacy, insufficiency, shortfall, failure, weakness, frailty, weak point, imperfection, irregularity, liability: See the doctor about that hearing defect. 2 blemish, imperfection, failing, weakness, flaw, fault, mark, stain, irregularity, mistake, error: The products should be inspected for defects before shipping.

--v. 3 desert, change sides or loyalties, turn traitor, go over; escape: Ropovich tried to defect, but the Albanians sent him back.

defective adj. 1 imperfect, faulty, flawed, deficient, broken, out of order, impaired, marred, Colloq on the blink, US on the fritz: The brakes on his car were defective. 2 retarded, simple, feeble-minded, (mentally) deficient or incompetent, backward, subnormal, Brit education ESN ('educationally subnormal'), US education exceptional: Found to be defective, he could not stand trial.

defector n. deserter, apostate, turncoat, traitor, renegade, Colloq rat: Some political defectors were suspected of being spies.

defence n. 1 shelter, protection, cover, guard, safeguard, shield: There is no defence against certain illnesses. 2 fortification, armour, barricade, screen, bulwark, rampart: Shore defences were set up, including barbed wire entanglements and concrete pillboxes. 3 excuse, apology, reason, apologia, explanation; justification, vindication, argument, plea, advocacy, support: His defence for decreasing welfare payments was inadequate. She spoke in defence of nationalizing industry.

defenceless
adj. unprotected, exposed, vulnerable, unguarded; helpless, weak, powerless, impotent: Would you take advantage of a poor, defenceless creature?

defend v. 1 protect, watch over, guard, safeguard, keep (safe), shelter, shield, screen, preserve; fight for: We must defend our civil rights. 2 fortify, arm, secure; fend or ward off, parry: Can you defend your position from attack? 3 plead for, speak or stand up for, stick up for, go to bat for, support, uphold, stand by, champion, stand with or behind or beside, argue for or in behalf of, hold a brief for, espouse: The lawyers defended her right to free speech.

defer° v. put off, postpone, delay, shelve, lay or put aside, adjourn, US table; Colloq Brit kick into touch: The judge has deferred his decision.

deferý v. Often, defer to. give in (to), give ground or way (to), yield (to), submit (to), bow (to), capitulate (to), cede (to), accede (to), acquiesce (to); comply (with), agree (to): I'll defer to your decision in the matter.

deference n. 1 respect, regard, politeness, civility, courtesy, consideration, esteem: They treated him with deference owing to his age. 2 obeisance, submission, acquiescence, obedience, compliance: Considering her accomplishments, she is paid little deference.

defiant adj. challenging, bold, brazen, audacious, daring; rebellious, disobedient, stubborn, recalcitrant, obstinate, refractory, unyielding, insubordinate, mutinous, unruly, self-willed, aggressive, headstrong, contumacious, pugnacious, hostile, belligerent, antagonistic, Slang gutsy, spunky: His defiant attitude towards authority often gets him into trouble.

deficient adj. 1 wanting, lacking, defective, incomplete, unfinished, short, insufficient, inadequate, sketchy, skimpy, scarce: Some foods are deficient in vitamins. 2 faulty, impaired, flawed, imperfect, incomplete, defective, inferior, unsatisfactory: Many have a deficient knowledge of their legal rights.

deficit n. loss, deficiency, shortfall, shortage, default: At the end of the year there was a considerable deficit.

define v. 1 determine, establish, fix, demarcate, mark off or out, delimit, limit, lay or set down, circumscribe, specify,, identify, delineate, describe: You must first define the subjects to be covered. 2 describe, explain, interpret, spell out, detail, clarify, delineate, expand on, expatiate on or upon, delineate; characterize, state, name: No one dictionary defines all the words of a language. Please define exactly what you want me to do.

definite adj. 1 specific, particular, exact, pronounced, explicit, express, precise: She came here with a definite purpose. 2 sure, positive, certain, assured, fixed, settled, confirmed: Then we have a definite appointment for two o'clock? 3 clear, plain, well-defined, unambiguous, unequivocal, distinct, clear-cut, obvious: The plans for revision are definite.

definitely

adv. positively, absolutely, surely, to be sure, assuredly, certainly, indubitably, undoubtedly, categorically, unequivocally, unquestionably, decidedly, finally, once and for all; plainly, clearly, obviously, patently: Then you're definitely not going to the dance with Waldo? That was definitely the worst movie of the year.

definition

n. 1 delineation, delimitation, demarcation, outlining; acutance, resolution, distinctness, clarity, sharpness, focus, precision: The definition at the edge of the photograph is fuzzy. 2 description, explanation, explication, clarification, statement (of meaning), sense, meaning: How many definitions are there for the word 'good'?

definitive

adj. 1 decisive, final, conclusive, ultimate: My definitive answer will be given tomorrow. 2 thorough, through and through, exhaustive, ultimate, consummate, complete, authoritative, reliable: She has written the definitive work on the axolotl. 3 clarifying, unambiguous, categorical, absolute, unqualified, accurate, exact, precise: We expect a definitive statement from the union regarding their claims.

deflect v. avert, turn away or aside, deviate, change, swerve, switch, divert, shy, veer, sidetrack; fend off: The trajectory of a bullet is deflected by gravity. By deflecting a bit to their left, they managed to regain their original course.

deformed adj. 1 misshapen, malformed, distorted, twisted, grotesque, gnarled, crooked, contorted, awry, warped, bent: This tree is deformed because of the constant wind. 2 disfigured, crippled, lame, misshapen; abnormal: He was born with a deformed foot. 3 distorted, warped, bent, perverted, twisted, grotesque; abnormal: The deformed personalities of his patients are the subject of my book.

defraud v. cheat, swindle, trick, beguile, cozen, dupe, delude, fool, bilk, fleece, victimize, take in, deceive, humbug, hoodwink, flimflam, Colloq do, diddle, con, slip one over on, put (something) over on, pull a fast one on, fast-talk, rope in,, US take; Slang take for a ride, gyp, rob, rip off, rook; Dialect flam: Shareholders are defrauded by insider trading schemes.

defray v. pay, settle, meet, discharge, liquidate, clear, cover, reimburse, Colloq pick up the bill or tab or US check (for), foot the bill (for): The company defrays the cost of all travelling expenses.

defunct adj. 1 dead, deceased, extinct: The dinosaurs have been defunct for millions of years. 2 inoperative, inapplicable, unused, unusable, invalid, expired, obsolete, pass,, dead, expired, non-existent, outmoded, out: Although still on the books, that law is defunct.

defy v. 1 challenge, dare, face, confront, brave, stand up to, flout, brazen out, thumb one's nose at, Colloq Brit cock a snook at: The defendant defied the prosecutor to prove the allegations. 2 frustrate, thwart, baffle, resist, withstand, repel, disobey, repulse: Her feats of legerdemain defy the imagination. Copeley has invented a device that defies the law of gravity.

degenerate

adj. 1 debased, degraded, corrupt, corrupted, vitiated, decadent, depraved, reprobate, dissolute, ignoble, base, low, inferior, vile: He was a degenerate descendant of a once noble lineage. Ben sank into the depths of a degenerate existence after Penelope left him.

--v. 2 decline, deteriorate, decay, sink, worsen; backslide, regress, retrogress, weaken, go to the dogs, go to rack and ruin, Colloq go to pot: He felt that art had degenerated since the days of Rembrandt.

--n. 3 reprobate, debauchee, wastrel, profligate, rake, rakehell, rou,; pervert, deviate: The detective said that only a degenerate could have committed such a crime.

degradation
n. 1 degeneracy, degeneration, deterioration, corruptness, corruption, vitiation, baseness, depravity, turpitude: History records the moral degradation of a whole society. 2 disrepute, discredit, shame, humiliation, ignominy, dishonour, disgrace, abasement, debasement: He had to face the degradation of an accusation of child molestation.

degrade v. 1 downgrade, demote, break, Military cashier, Ecclesiastical unfrock, Law disbar; depose, unseat; disfranchise or disenfranchise; Military drum out (of the corps), Chiefly naval disrate; US military bust: They degraded him from captain to lieutenant. 2 disgrace, dishonour, humble, shame, discredit, debase, demean, abase; humiliate, mortify, belittle, deprecate, depreciate, cheapen, reduce, lower: He has been degraded to mopping the floor. 3 dilute, adulterate, weaken, thin, water (down), alloy: Cologne is, essentially, degraded perfume.

degrading adj. demeaning, humiliating, shameful, shaming, debasing, lowering, discreditable: Why should you deem selling a degrading occupation?

degree n. 1 grade, level, stage, class, caste, rank, order, scale, standing, status, station, position, situation, estate, condition: He is entertaining a lady of high degree. 2 measure, magnitude, extent, limit, point; lengths, step: All our needs, desires, and goals are biologically determined to some degree. 3 by degrees. little by little, bit by bit, step by step, inch by inch, inchmeal, gradually, slowly, (almost) imperceptibly: By degrees, her health has improved. 4 to a degree. a rather, somewhat, quite: She is to a degree a better dancer than he. b substantially, considerably, highly, decidedly, exceedingly, to a considerable extent: She must be stupid to a degree if she believes in levitation.

deign v. condescend, stoop, vouchsafe, concede; yield, agree: Lord Worthington deigned to say good morning to us.

deity n. god, goddess, Supreme Being, creator, demiurge: Deities in various religions are represented as men, women, or animals.

dejected adj. downcast, downhearted, depressed, dispirited, discouraged, despondent, down, low, chap-fallen, crestfallen, melancholy, sad, unhappy, gloomy, glum, miserable, blue, low-spirited, in low spirits, forlorn, woebegone, disconsolate, sorrowful, morose, heartbroken, heavy-hearted, in the doldrums, Colloq down in the dumps, down in the mouth: She was bound to feel dejected when she couldn't find a job.

delay v. 1 postpone, put off or aside, defer, temporize, suspend, shelve, hold off or up (on), put on hold, hold in abeyance, put or keep in a holding pattern, pigeon-hole, put on ice, put in or into the deep-freeze, Colloq put on the back burner, Brit kick into touch, US hold off or up (on), table: We shall delay our decision till next month. 2 hold up or back, detain, impede, hinder, retard, keep, bog down, set back, slow (up or down); stop, arrest, halt, check; obstruct: Delivery of the mail has been delayed by the strike. We were delayed by traffic. 3 loiter, procrastinate, hesitate, poke or drag (along), tarry, wait, lag (behind), dawdle, hang back, stall, linger, dally, mark time, potter or US putter; vacillate; Colloq dilly-dally, shilly-shally, drag one's feet: Stop delaying and get to work.

--n. 4 postponement, deferral, deferment, wait, hold-up; set-back: There will be a ten-day delay in paying the rent. 5 lull, interlude, hiatus, interruption, gap, interval, lacuna, stop, stoppage, wait, waiting, hold-up, suspension: After an hour's delay, service was resumed. 6 tarrying, loitering, dawdling, Colloq dilly-dallying, shilly-shallying: There should be no further delay in shipping the order.

delectation
n. delight, enjoyment, amusement, entertainment, diversion, pleasure, satisfaction: For your delectation, Le Moulin Rouge presents La Goulue!

delegate n. 1 envoy, agent, legate, representative, ambassador, plenipotentiary, minister, emissary, commissioner, (papal) nuncio, (papal) internuncio, spokesperson, spokesman, spokeswoman, go-between: They kowtowed to the delegate from His Imperial Highness.

--v. 2 depute, commission, appoint, designate, assign, name, nominate, accredit, authorize, empower, mandate: The president delegated Ambassador Foxley to represent him at the meeting. 3 assign, give, hand over or on, pass over or on, depute, transfer, entrust, relegate, Colloq pass the buck for, US buck: She has delegated the responsibility to one of the directors.

delete v. erase, cancel, rub or cross out or off, remove, blot out, expunge, efface, eliminate, obliterate, wipe out, eradicate, strike out, cut or edit (out), Publishing blue-pencil; Printing dele: Delete the old address and insert the new one.

deliberate

adj. 1 intentional, planned, studied, wilful, intended, premeditated, calculated, conscious, prearranged, purposeful, preconceived, considered; cold-blooded: The insult was deliberate, not a slip. 2 slow, methodical, careful, unhurried, paced, measured, regular, even, steady, sure, unhesitating, unfaltering, confident: He moved across the room with a deliberate step and tore the medals from the general's tunic. 3 careful, prudent, cautious, painstaking, discreet, considered, considerate, thoughtful, well thought out, thorough, methodical, systematic, fastidious, orderly, punctilious, dispassionate, cool, composed, collected, calm, serene, unruffled: A deliberate speaker, he chose his words with care.

--v. 4 consider, ponder, think (about or over), weigh, debate, meditate (on or over), reflect (on or over), cogitate (on or over), study: I shall need a few days to deliberate on that question.

deliberately

adv. intentionally, on purpose, purposely, wilfully or US willfully, consciously, wittingly, calculatedly, calculatingly, knowingly, pointedly, resolutely, of one's (own) free will, on one's own, with one's eyes (wide) open: She did that deliberately, not by accident.

delicacy n. 1 fineness, exquisiteness, gracefulness, beauty, lightness, daintiness: Notice the delicacy of the tracery in the rose window. 2 fragility, fragileness, frailty, frailness, weakness, infirmity, feebleness, tenderness; susceptibility: Because of the delicacy of his constitution, even a cold might be fatal. 3 sensitivity, difficulty, ticklishness, finesse, nicety, sensibility: The delicacy of the situation demands the utmost diplomacy. 4 luxury, sweetmeat, dainty, titbit or US tidbit, savoury: The table was laden with delicacies from all over the world.

delicate adj. 1 fragile, breakable, frail, tender, frangible, dainty; perishable, flimsy: This filament is extremely delicate, so be careful. 2 fine, exquisite, dainty, graceful, elegant, subtle: A delicate border of lace sets off the collar. 3 feeble, weak, sickly, frail, debilitated, weakened, enfeebled, unhealthy: Her condition is too delicate for her to be moved. 4 critical, ticklish, sensitive, dangerous, tricky, precarious, touchy, Slang hairy; Colloq sticky: Rescuing the survivors of the avalanche was a delicate operation. 5 dainty, squeamish, queasy, fastidious, prudish, Victorian, finicky, finical, refined, discriminating, discerning, sensitive, puristic, proper, coy, modest, demure: In those days ladies were thought to be too delicate to mention such matters. 6 gradual, subtle, nice, precise, muted, soft, faint, subdued: The delicate shading at the horizon is characteristic of this artist.

delicious adj. 1 delectable, luscious, ambrosial, savoury, mouth-watering, toothsome; choice, flavourful, tasty, appetizing, palatable, Colloq scrumptious; Slang yummy: Larry's fried chicken is quite delicious. 2 enjoyable, delightful, pleasurable, pleasing, pleasant, choice, enchanting, fascinating; agreeable, charming, engaging; amusing, entertaining: I heard the most delicious bit of gossip about the Browns.

delight v. 1 please, gratify, satisfy, gladden, cheer, tickle, amuse, entertain, divert, excite, thrill, captivate, entrance, fascinate: We were delighted to hear the Mighty Allen Art Players once again. 2 delight in. enjoy, appreciate, like, relish (in), savour, revel in, glory in; love, adore; Colloq get a kick from or out of; Slang get off on: She delights in any kind of jazz.

--n. 3 pleasure, gratification, joy, satisfaction, enjoyment, delectation; bliss, ecstasy, rapture: She takes great delight in playing practical jokes on her guests. In his dreams he visited the garden of earthly delights.

delighted adj. pleased, happy, charmed, thrilled, enchanted, enchant,(e): I am delighted to meet you. 'Miss Smith, meet Mr Brown.' 'Delighted!'

delightful

adj. 1 pleasing, agreeable, pleasurable, enjoyable, joyful, pleasant, lovely, amusing, entertaining, diverting, exciting, thrilling: We spent a delightful evening together. 2 attractive, congenial, winning, winsome, charming, engaging, exciting; captivating, ravishing, fascinating, enchanting: Georgina is one of the most delightful people I have met in a long time.

delinquent

n. 1 malefactor, (young or youthful) offender, wrongdoer, lawbreaker, culprit, criminal, miscreant; hooligan, ruffian, roughneck: The police rounded up six juvenile delinquents and charged them with rowdyism.

--adj. 2 neglectful, negligent, derelict, remiss, failing, defaulting: I have been delinquent in my obligations to my mother. 3 overdue, past due, in arrears, late, unpaid: All these delinquent accounts should be collected as soon as possible.

delirious adj. 1 wild, hysterical, distracted, incoherent, rambling, irrational, raving, ranting, frenzied, frantic, disturbed, demented, deranged, unhinged, mad, insane, crazy, lunatic: He is still delirious and doesn't know what he's saying. 2 wild, excited, crazed, thrilled, ecstatic: She was delirious with joy that Ken was coming home.

deliver v. 1 carry, bring, convey, distribute, give or hand out; purvey, take round; cart, transport: Only in a few places in the world do they still deliver milk to the door. 2 hand over, give, surrender, cede, yield, make over, relinquish, give up or over, commit, transfer, turn over, resign: We were forced to deliver our children to the enemy as hostages. 3 set free, liberate, enfranchise, extricate, release, save, rescue; emancipate, manumit, redeem; disencumber, disburden, ransom: They were delivered from certain death by the arrival of the helicopter. Modern appliances have delivered millions of women from the drudgery of housework. 4 give, present, utter, read, broadcast; proclaim, announce, declare, set forth, communicate, make known, express, publish, hand over, hand out, promulgate, pronounce, enunciate: He has to deliver a speech tonight. The police delivered an ultimatum to the terrorists. 5 give, administer, inflict, deal, direct, send, launch, impart, throw; cast, hurl, shoot, discharge, fire: He delivered a blow on the chin that knocked me out. The ball was delivered with enormous speed. 6 bring forth, bear, give birth to, bring into the world: In the next three years, she delivered three more girls. 7 produce, perform, put one's money where one's mouth is: Roger had better deliver, or we shall have to take drastic measures.

delivery n. 1 distribution, delivering, deliverance, conveyance, transportation, transport: The strikers have caused delivery of newspapers to stop. 2 liberation, release, deliverance, emancipation: His delivery from poverty was still a few years away. 3 childbirth, parturition; confinement: Many women find that their second child is an easier delivery. 4 presentation, performance; utterance, enunciation, articulation, pronunciation, expression, execution: He is an accomplished orator, with a spellbinding delivery.

delusion n. 1 deception, trick, stratagem, artifice, ruse, pretence: It was a snare and a delusion to represent the painting as genuine. 2 false or mistaken impression, fallacy, illusion, mistake, error, misconception, misbelief, hallucination: He suffers under the delusion that he is a great pianist.

demand   v. 1 require, order, bid, call (for); insist, command: I demand that you retract that remark! She demanded to know where he was going. 2 claim, ask (for), require, insist on; exact: They had paid for tickets and demanded entrance. 3 require, call for, need, want, necessitate, cry out for: This superb dish demands an excellent claret. 4 ask (for), inquire or enquire, request; requisition: We demanded help from the police.

--n. 5 request, bid, behest, requisition, order, insistence; outcry: Our demand for service went unheeded. 6 want, need, requirement, desire; market (demand), marketability; consumer or customer acceptance: The demand for our products is low at the moment. 7 in demand. wanted, needed, requested, coveted, popular, sought after, desired, desirable, Brit in request, US on request: Bright graduates are always in demand. 8 on demand. on call, on request, on presentation, when requested or required; at once, immediately, without delay: These notes are payable on demand.

demanding adj. 1 difficult, hard, exigent, tough, exacting, trying, taxing: Edwards is a demanding boss. Diamond cutting is demanding work. 2 insistent, clamorous, urgent, nagging, persistent: Your demanding fans want another encore.

democratic
adj. egalitarian, classless; republican, representative, popular, self-governing, autonomous: The colonists voted for a democratic form of government.

demolish v. 1 tear or pull down, dismantle, reduce to ruin(s), smash, pull to pieces, knock down, raze, topple, destroy, level: This building will have to be demolished to make room for the new shopping mall. 2 destroy, end, bring to an end, make an end of, put an end to, devastate, terminate, annihilate, overturn, overthrow, crush, defeat, refute, disprove, dispose of, suppress, squelch, quash: With just one phrase he demolished their entire argument.

demon n. 1 devil, evil spirit, fiend, cacodemon or cacodaemon; monster, ghoul, ogre, harpy, vampire: Medieval demons are generally depicted as having horns, hoofs, and tails. 2 fanatic, fiend, enthusiast, addict, Colloq freak: He's a real speed demon when he gets onto the motorway.

demonstrable
adj. provable, confirmable, attestable, verifiable; evident, self-evident, obvious, undeniable, apparent, manifest, indisputable, unquestionable, positive, certain, conclusive: The judge showed a demonstrable bias against my client.

demonstrate
v. 1 show, prove, make evident, establish, evince, evidence, exhibit, manifest: The increase in arrests demonstrates the efficiency of the police. 2 display, explain, expose, describe, present; illustrate: The salesman demonstrated the new camera for us. 3 picket, march, parade, rally, protest: More than 5000 people demonstrated against the fraudulent election.

demonstration
n. 1 proof, evidence, testimony, confirmation, verification,

substantiation; manifestation, exhibition, display, illustration, indication: I have seen sufficient demonstration of her ineptitude. 2 presentation, display, show, explanation, description, clarification, elucidation, exposition, Colloq demo: The student gave an excellent demonstration of how a computer works. 3 picketing, march, parade, protest, rally, sit-in, Colloq Brit demo: There have been numerous demonstrations against the government's policies.

demonstrative
adj. 1 open, unrestrained, unconstrained, unreserved, expansive, effusive, emotional, warm, tender, affectionate, loving: Pat is quite demonstrative, often causing me to blush. 2 illustrative, indicative, representative, probative, evidential; provable, evident: Her point was proved by several demonstrative arguments. The hostility of these few is demonstrative of what to expect of the entire group.

demoralize
v. 1 dispirit, daunt, dishearten, discourage, defeat; weaken, cripple, enervate, devitalize, depress, subdue, crush: The party's crushing defeat in the election thoroughly demoralized its supporters. 2 corrupt, pervert, deprave, vitiate, debase, debauch: The committee consider him a demoralizing influence and insist he should resign. 3 bewilder, discomfit, unnerve, shake (up), confuse, fluster, disconcert, unnerve, perturb, disturb, upset, Colloq rattle: The demonstrators were completely demoralized when arrested for loitering.

denial n. 1 contradiction, negation, repudiation, refutation, disavowal, disclaimer, disaffirmation: Her denials notwithstanding, she was found guilty. 2 retraction, recantation, renunciation, withdrawal: The arbitrary denial of civil rights to some is unconscionable. 3 refusal, rejection, negation; veto: The boy's persistent denial of authority went into his record.

denizen n. inhabitant, dweller, occupant, frequenter, resident; citizen: The depths of the seas harbour some strange denizens. Carl is a denizen of The Bottle and Glass.

denomination
n. 1 sect, persuasion, school, church, order: He is a member

of the Mormon denomination. 2 sort, kind, type, nature, variety, unit, size, value; grade, class, genus, species, order, classification: The kidnappers demanded the ransom money in used notes of small denomination. 3 designation, appellation, name, identification, style, title, tag, term; designating, naming, identifying, styling, classifying, titling, entitling, tagging, terming, denominating: The denomination of people by race, creed, colour, or sex is discriminatory.

denote v. 1 indicate, specify, designate, distinguish, signify, mark, note: Hypothetical linguistic forms are denoted by an asterisk. 2 mean, name, symbolize, represent, betoken: The word mother denotes 'female parent', but its connotations are far more extensive.

denounce v. 1 accuse, brand, stigmatize, charge, blame, incriminate, implicate, complain about: He has been denounced for the blackguard he is. 2 betray, inform against, report, reveal: He denounced his own son to the authorities. 3 criticize, condemn, decry, denunciate, attack, assail, censure, impugn, declaim or rail (against), vituperate, revile, vilify, inveigh against; ridicule, (hold up to) shame, pillory, (heap) scorn (upon), cast a slur on: The playwright was denounced as a neo-Nazi.

dense adj. 1 compact, thick, compressed, condensed, close, solid, heavy, impenetrable: The fox escaped into a dense thicket. 2 crowded, packed, tight, impenetrable, impassable: There was a dense crowd blocking the exit. 3 stupid, slow, slow-witted, thickheaded, dull, thick-witted, obtuse, stolid, dim, dim-witted, foolish, Colloq thick, dumb: He may be a gifted artist but he is dense when it comes to money matters.

deny v. 1 contradict, gainsay, refute, controvert, disaffirm, disclaim, confute, negate, dispute: She denies ever having met the defendant. 2 reject, refuse, withhold, forbid, turn down, decline, disallow; recall, revoke, recant: He asserts that his right to counsel was denied. 3 disavow, repudiate, renounce, disown, forswear, disclaim: The witch-doctor demanded sacrifices, saying that the angry gods would not be denied.

depart v. 1 go, go away or out or from or off, leave, quit, retire (from), retreat (from), withdraw (from), exit (from), set out or forth or off, decamp, abscond, fly, cut and run, skip (out), run off or away or out, take to the road, take one's leave, check out, disappear, vanish, evaporate, Jocular toddle off, Imperative Begone!, Colloq beat it, scram, shove off, make oneself scarce, Brit scarper, US hit the road, be out of (someplace), Slang split, Imperative get lost, US cut (on) out, vamoose, take a (run-out) powder, lam (on) out, take it on the lam, Brit do a moonlight flit, Usually imperative bugger off, buzz off , Taboo, imperative fuck off: Our bags are packed and we depart at noon. 2 Often, depart from. deviate (from), change, diverge (from), turn (aside or away) (from), differ (from), vary (from), break away (from), leave, abandon, stray (from), veer (from): She refused to depart from established practices.

department
n. 1 division, subdivision, branch, office, bureau, section, segment, unit, part: Some departments are in another building. 2 responsibility, concern, worry, sphere, bailiwick, jurisdiction, domain, control, area or sphere of influence or activity: He was only responsible for the launch of the missiles - where they came down was not his department.

depend   v. 1 depend (on or upon). be contingent or dependent or conditional on, turn on, hinge on, pivot on, hang on, be subject to, rest on, be influenced or determined or conditioned by: The plans for our picnic depend on the weather. 2 depend on or upon. trust (in), rely on, count on, reckon on, bank on, be sure of, put one's faith or trust in: I knew we could depend on you, Giles, to do the right thing.

deplorable
adj. 1 lamentable, regrettable, sad, woeful, grievous, wretched, miserable, unfortunate, awful, distressing, disturbing, troubling, upsetting, grave, serious, oppressive, difficult, desperate, hopeless, tragic, disastrous: Orphaned at six, he had a deplorable childhood. 2 shameful, disgraceful, scandalous, disreputable, awful, bad, appalling, dreadful, abominable, execrable, terrible, reprehensible: What did you think of Annie's deplorable behaviour at last week's dance? That's a deplorable painting.

deposit   v. 1 place, leave, set or put or lay (down), drop, Colloq US plunk down: You are requested to deposit litter in the bin. 2 entrust, leave, lodge, consign, keep, place, put; store, save, set aside, bank, lay or put away, Brit pay in, Colloq stash away: Each morning she deposits the children at the day nursery and goes to work. He deposits money every week in a pension fund.

--n. 3 down payment, part or partial payment, advance payment: A small deposit will hold your purchase until you are ready to pay for it in full. 4 precipitate, sediment, silt, alluvium, dregs, lees, accumulation, deposition: There is a dark deposit at the bottom of the coffee-pot.

depreciate
v. 1 devalue, devaluate, decrease, diminish, lessen, reduce, lower, depress, cheapen, mark down: The abundant harvest has depreciated the price of commodities. 2 disparage, diminish, deride, decry, underrate, undervalue, underestimate, minimize, belittle, slight, derogate, deprecate, discredit, denigrate, run down, vilipend, Colloq play down, US talk down: When he depreciates another's work he adds nothing to the value of his own.

depredation
n. plunder, plundering, pillage, pillaging, despoliation, despoiling, ravaging, sacking, laying waste, devastation, destruction; ransacking, robbery, looting; ravages: The depredation caused by ten years of war is unimaginable.

depress v. 1 deject, dispirit, oppress, sadden, grieve, cast down, dishearten, discourage, dampen, cast a gloom or pall over, burden, weigh down: He's very depressed right now because he failed to get a promotion. 2 weaken, dull, debilitate, enervate, sap; depreciate, cheapen, devalue, devaluate; diminish, lower, bring down, reduce: The news about a new oil field depressed the market today. 3 press (down), push (down) (on), lower: If the pressure gets too high, just depress this lever.

depression
n. 1 indentation, dent, dimple, impression, pit, hollow, recess, cavity, concavity, dip: When the box fell, its corner left a small depression in the top of the metal cabinet. 2 dejection, despair, gloom, downheartedness, sadness, melancholy,

discouragement, despondency, gloominess, glumness, the blues, unhappiness; Colloq the dumps: A general feeling of depression came over us at the doctor's words. 3 recession, slump, (economic) decline, downturn, US and Canadian bust: The analysts are unable to predict accurately either booms or depressions.

deprive   v. withhold, deny, refuse; withdraw, remove, strip, dispossess, take away, expropriate, divest; mulct: They deprived him of the right to have visitors.

deprived adj. needy, in want, in need, impoverished, badly off, destitute, poor, poverty-stricken, Euphemistic underprivileged, disadvantaged: As a deprived family, they are entitled to a number of benefits.

depth   n. 1 deepness, extent, measure, profundity, profoundness: The depth of the cavern was at least three miles. 2 profundity, profoundness, abstruseness, obscurity, reconditeness, complexity, intricacy: There is great depth of meaning in many proverbs. 3 profundity, wisdom, sagacity, sageness, understanding, perception, astuteness, perspicacity, perspicaciousness, insight, intuition, acumen, penetration: One would scarcely characterize Mickey Mouse as possessed of great depth. 4 intensity, profundity, strength; vividness, brilliance, brilliancy, brightness, richness: It is hard for me to express the depth of my feeling for you. The depth of colour is much better in this picture. 5 depths. deep(s), abyss, abysm, chasm, bowels of the earth, (bottomless) pit, nethermost reaches or regions, nadir: As we descended into the depths the temperature increased. She is in the depths of despair and needs your moral support. 6 in depth. thoroughly, comprehensively, in detail, profoundly, deeply, extensively, intensively, concentratedly, probingly: The specialists have looked into the problem in depth and have no answer yet.

deputy   n. substitute, replacement, surrogate, stand-in, reserve, proxy; agent, operative, representative, go-between, intermediary, spokesperson, spokesman, spokeswoman, delegate, ambassador, minister, emissary, envoy, legate, (papal) nuncio; Chiefly US alternate: She excused herself from the meeting, leaving her deputy in charge.

deranged adj. mad, insane, demented, lunatic, unhinged, unbalanced, berserk, crazy, crazed, psychotic, irrational, non compos mentis, out of one's mind or senses or head, not all there, of unsound mind, crack-brained, mad as a hatter or March hare, off the rails, Colloq touched, dotty, daft, cracked, bats, cuckoo, Brit potty, US have nobody home (upstairs), out to lunch, off-the-wall; Slang bonkers, dippy, barmy or balmy, batty, screwy, loony, nuts, nutty, wacky, bananas, off one's rocker, off one's trolley, mental, missing a few marbles, not having all one's marbles, kooky, with a screw loose, Chiefly Brit off one's chump, Chiefly US (plumb) loco, meshuga: Police said that the killer was completely deranged and should be approached with caution.

derelict adj. 1 deserted, abandoned, forsaken, neglected; ruined, dilapidated, run-down, tumbledown: The council has a scheme for the renovation of derelict buildings in the inner city. 2 negligent, remiss, neglectful, delinquent, dilatory, careless, heedless, lax, slack, irresponsible, slipshod, slovenly, Colloq sloppy: He was accused of having been derelict in his duty.

--n. 3 vagrant, tramp, outcast, pariah, loafer, wastrel, good-for-nothing, ne'er-do-well, malingerer, vagabond, slacker, down-and-out, US and Canadian hobo, Colloq US bum: Because of alcohol, he ended up as a derelict.

deride v. mock, ridicule, scoff (at), jeer (at), laugh (at), make fun or sport (of), tease, taunt, twit, poke fun (at), make a laughing-stock (of), sneer (at), scorn, flout, disdain, pooh-pooh, belittle, diminish, disparage, laugh off, Brit rally, Colloq knock, Brit take the mickey or micky out of: His classmates had always derided his attempts at getting anywhere with the girls.

derision n. ridicule, mockery, raillery, laughter, sarcasm, scoffing, contempt, scorn, contumely, disrespect; satire, lampoon, pasquinade, burlesque, caricature, travesty: Her suggestion was greeted with derision.

derisory adj. mocking, ridiculing, scornful, derisive, disdainful, contemptuous, taunting, insulting, contumelious, jeering; sardonic, sarcastic, ironic(al), satirical: He felt crushed by their derisory laughter.

derivation

n. origin, descent, extraction, source, beginning, foundation, ancestry, genealogy, etymology, root: The derivations of many words are unknown.

derivative

adj. 1 derived, borrowed, procured, obtained, acquired; unoriginal, second-hand, copied, imitative, plagiarized, plagiaristic: He created nothing of his own - all his compositions were highly derivative.

--n. 2 derivation, offshoot, development, spin-off, by-product: French, Italian, and other Romance languages are derivatives from Latin.

derive v. 1 draw, extract, get, obtain, acquire, procure, receive, secure, gain, elicit, deduce, educe, infer, gather, collect, harvest, glean, cull, winnow: I derive no pleasure from punishing you. I derived from her remark that she didn't like the play. 2 derive from. arise from or out of, originate in or with or from, emerge from or out of, come (forth) from or out of, arrive from, issue from, proceed from, develop from, spring from, flow from, emanate from, stem from, be traceable or traced to: The word delicate derives from Latin. All our knowledge is derived from experience.

derogatory

adj. depreciatory, depreciating, depreciative, disparaging, abasing, debasing, lowering, denigrating, belittling, diminishing, demeaning, detracting, deflating, minimizing, mitigating; uncomplimentary, offensive, insulting: The family took a somewhat derogatory attitude towards commerce. He said something derogatory about my wife, so I punched him.

descend v. 1 come or go down, move down, climb down, get down: The sun was setting as he descended from the mountain. 2 decline, incline (downwards), slope, slant, dip, drop, fall, plunge, plummet: Beyond the curve, the road descends suddenly for a mile. 3 stoop, condescend, sink, lower oneself: If you start shouting, you're just descending to Basil's level. 4 descend on. attack, assault, invade, pounce on or upon, swoop down on or upon: Fighter planes descended in droves and destroyed the base entirely.

descendant
n. offspring, progeny, issue, heir, posterity, family; child, son, daughter, grandchild, scion; offshoot: They claim to be descendants of Tsar Nicholas.

describe v. 1 tell (of), recount, relate, give an account (of), narrate, recite, report, chronicle; retail: He described his adventures in Rio. 2 detail, define, explain, specify, delineate: Please describe exactly where you found the body. 3 characterize, portray, paint, depict, identify, label, style; represent: I would describe her as careless rather than uncaring. 4 trace, mark out, outline, traverse, draw: The trail of the comet described a perfect arc in the black sky.

description
n. 1 portrayal, characterization, depiction, (thumbnail) sketch, portrait: Her description of her boss was far from flattering. 2 account, narrative, story, report, representation, statement, definition; explanation, commentary; chronicle, history, record, narration; memoir: I want your detailed description of what led up to the argument. 3 sort, kind, nature, character, type, variety, brand, breed, species, category, genus, ilk, genre, class; stripe, kidney, feather: Carstairs is a rou, of the worst description.

desecrate v. profane, defile, blaspheme (against), dishonour, degrade, debase, befoul, contaminate, pollute, corrupt, violate, pervert, vitiate: Vandals desecrated the temple of Minerva.

desert° n. 1 waste, wilderness, wasteland, dust bowl: The nearest oasis was fifty miles away across the desert.

--adj. 2 barren, desolate, uninhabited, unpeopled, lonely, deserted; arid, bare, vacant, empty, wild, uncultivated: I was marooned on a desert island.

--v. 3 forsake, leave, abandon; jilt, throw over; maroon, strand, leave to twist (slowly) in the wind; Colloq run or walk out on, leave flat or in the lurch, leave high and dry: His courage deserted him when he saw the child's eyes. He has deserted his wife for some floozie. 4 abscond, quit, run away (from), defect, abandon; Military slang go over the hill: He deserted and will be court-martialled.

desertý n. Often, deserts. payment, recompense, requital, compensation, due, right; retribution, justice, Slang comeuppance, what's coming to one: She'll get her just deserts one of these days.

deserted adj. abandoned, desolate, forsaken, neglected, uninhabited, unpeopled, vacant, vacated, unfrequented, unvisited, unoccupied, empty; stranded, rejected, God-forsaken, isolated, solitary, lonely, friendless: At that hour the streets are completely deserted.

deserter n. runaway, fugitive, escapee, absconder, defector, renegade, outlaw; traitor, turncoat, Colloq rat: Deserters are shot when caught.

deserve v. merit, earn, be entitled to, be worthy of, rate, warrant, justify: You ought to be nicer to him - he really doesn't deserve such unkind treatment.

deserved adj. merited, earned, just, rightful, suitable, fitting, fit, appropriate, proper, right, fair, equitable, meet, warranted, condign: Carla was never given her deserved credit for catching the thief.

deserving adj. meritorious, worthy, merited, commendable, laudable, praiseworthy, creditable, estimable: Perhaps you should leave your money to a deserving charity.

design v. 1 plan, draw up, think of, conceive of, contemplate, devise, lay out, visualize, envisage, envision, sketch (out), pattern, set up: The building was originally designed as the centre-piece for a whole new development. 2 plan, sketch (out), delineate, outline, draft, work or map or block out, lay out, devise, invent, contrive, create, conceive, originate, think up, develop, organize, frame, shape, mould, forge, make, construct, form, fashion: John Smithers has designed a new sales strategy for the company. 3 sketch, draft, lay out, draw; form, devise: Who designed the company's new logo? 4 intend, mean, plan; purpose, destine; scheme, plot: The building was originally designed to be a school. The book was designed for children.

--n. 5 plan, scheme, conception, study, project, proposal, undertaking, enterprise; blueprint, pattern, chart, diagram, layout, map, drawing, draft, sketch, model, prototype: The grand design for rebuilding the city was not approved. 6 form, shape, configuration, pattern, style, motif, format, layout, make-up, delineation, arrangement, organization, composition, structure, construction: I don't much care for her new design of my monogram. 7 aim, purpose, intention, objective, object, goal, point, target, intent: My design had been to go at once to London. 8 designs. plot, intrigue, stratagem, cabal, conspiracy, conniving, manipulation, connivance, evil intent or intentions: His designs against me have borne bitter fruit.

designate v. 1 indicate, specify, pinpoint, particularize, delineate, point out, identify, state, set forth, write or put down, name: You should designate your heirs in your will. 2 appoint, nominate, name, identify, denominate, select, pick, choose, elect, assign, appropriate, delegate, depute: She has not yet designated her successor. 3 mean, stand for, symbolize, denote, represent: The Greek letter pi designates the ratio of the circumference of a circle to its diameter. 4 call, name, style, term, label, christen, dub, nickname, entitle: Elvis was publicly designated 'The King of Rock 'n' Roll'.

designer n. 1 creator, originator, architect, artificer, author, deviser, inventor; (interior) decorator, artist; draughtsman: Raymond Loewy was a designer of locomotives and fountain pens. Lady Mendl was the best-known interior designer of the 1920s. 2 intriguer, schemer, conniver, plotter, conspirator: He is a cunning designer who has wormed his way into favour with the management.

designing adj. scheming, plotting, conniving, conspiring, intriguing, calculating, wily, tricky, cunning, sly, underhand(ed), crafty, artful, shrewd, Machiavellian, guileful, deceitful, double-dealing, devious, treacherous, Colloq crooked: The prince has fallen prey to designing courtiers.

desirable adj. 1 sought-after, wanted, coveted, longed-for, looked-for, desired: Few things are more desirable than security in old age. 2 attractive, pleasant, pleasing, agreeable, winning, winsome, captivating, seductive, alluring, fetching: Their daughter had grown up into a most desirable young lady. 3 good, goodly, excellent, choice, fine, superior, superb, Colloq Brit plummy: The company has produced some very desirable motor cars. 4 profitable, worthwhile, beneficial, advantageous, valuable, worthy, estimable, commendable, admirable: Lady Chelm's plan possesses many desirable attributes.

desire v. 1 crave, want, fancy, covet, wish for, hope for, long or yearn for, pine or sigh for, hanker after, have an eye or taste for, hunger or thirst for or after, die for, have one's heart set on, give one's eye-teeth for, Colloq have a yen for, Slang US have the hots for: I desire nothing but your happiness. He desired her more than anything else in the world. 2 ask for, request, order, demand, solicit, importune, summon, require: Do you desire anything further, sir?

--n. 3 longing, craving, yearning, hankering, hunger, thirst, appetite; passion, lust, libido, lustfulness, concupiscence, lecherousness, lechery, lasciviousness, salaciousness, prurience, Slang hot pants, US the hots; Colloq yen: He felt desire rising in him like a fever. 4 wish, request, urge, requirement, order, requisition, demand, desideratum; appeal, entreaty, petition: He fulfils her every desire.

desirous adj. wishful, desiring, longing, yearning, hopeful, hoping: I was desirous to learn more about his whereabouts.

desolate adj. 1 solitary, lonely, isolated, deserted, forlorn, forsaken, friendless, alone, abandoned, neglected; desert, uninhabited, empty, unfrequented, bare, barren, bleak, remote: He felt desolate after his wife's death. Tristan da Cunha is a group of four desolate islands in the Atlantic. 2 laid waste, ruined, devastated, ravaged, destroyed: The explosion left the surrounding countryside desolate. 3 dreary, dismal, wretched, joyless, cheerless, comfortless, miserable, unhappy, down, disconsolate, sad, melancholy, sorrowful, forlorn, mournful, woebegone, gloomy, broken-hearted, heavy-hearted, inconsolable, dejected, downcast, downhearted, dispirited, low-spirited, depressed, melancholy, spiritless, despondent, dismal, distressed, discouraged, hopeless: He has brought some happiness into her desolate existence.

--v. 4 depopulate: The country was desolated by famine. 5 destroy, devastate, ruin, lay waste, despoil, ravage, demolish, obliterate, annihilate, raze, gut: Invaders desolated the countryside. 6 dismay, dishearten, depress, daunt, dispirit, sadden, deject, dispirit, discourage: He was either buoyed up by renewed hope or desolated by despair.

desolation
n. 1 destruction, ruin, devastation, waste, spoliation, despoliation, sack, depredation, extirpation, obliteration, ravagement, barrenness, havoc, chaos: We had to shape a new life from the desolation left by the war. 2 grief, sorrow, dreariness, despair, gloom, distress, melancholy, sadness, misery, woe, anguish, wretchedness, dolour, dolefulness, unhappiness: She felt the desolation of loneliness after her husband's death.

despair   n. 1 hopelessness, desperation, discouragement, disheartenment, despondency, dejection, depression, gloom, gloominess, misery, melancholy, wretchedness, distress, miserableness, anguish; resignation: The despair of the prisoners was evident in their ravaged faces.

--v. 2 give up or lose hope; surrender, quit: We despaired of ever seeing our children again.

desperate adj. 1 reckless, foolhardy, rash, impetuous, frantic, frenzied, panic-stricken: Desperate measures are required in such a desperate situation. 2 careless, hasty, devil-may-care, wild, mad, frenetic, furious: They made a last desperate attack on the fort. 3 anxious (for), craving, hungry (for), thirsty (for), needful (of), desirous (of), covetous (of), eager (for), longing or yearning (for), wishing (for), hoping (for), aching (for), pining (for): She is desperate for attention. 4 urgent, pressing, compelling, serious, grave, acute, critical, crucial, great: There is a desperate need for medicines at the disaster site. 5 precarious, perilous, life-threatening, hazardous, dangerous, tenuous, hopeless, beyond hope or help: Avalanches are making the climbers' situation even more desperate. 6 at one's wits' end, forlorn, despairing, despondent, wretched, at the end of one's tether, frantic: With no one to turn to for help, he was truly desperate.

desperation
n. 1 recklessness, impetuosity, rashness, foolhardiness,

imprudence, heedlessness: Penniless and half-starved, he was driven to desperation and stole a loaf of bread. 2 despair, anxiety, anguish, anxiousness, despondency, depression, dejection, discouragement, defeatism, pessimism, hopelessness, distress, misery, melancholy, wretchedness, gloom, sorrow: In a final act of desperation, he attempted suicide.

despicable
adj. contemptible, below or beneath or beyond contempt or scorn or disdain, mean, detestable, base, low, scurvy, vile, sordid, wretched, miserable, ignoble, ignominious, shabby; shameful, shameless, reprehensible: He is a thoroughly despicable person and you should have nothing more to do with him.

despise v. disdain, scorn, look down on or upon, be contemptuous of, sneer at, spurn, contemn; hate, loathe, detest, abhor: She despised her servants and treated them badly. He despised anyone who had not been to university.

despite prep. in spite of, notwithstanding, undeterred by, regardless of, in the face or teeth of, in defiance of, without considering, without thought or consideration or regard for, ignoring: We went sailing despite the fact that gales had been forecast.

despondent
adj. dejected, sad, sorrowful, unhappy, melancholy, blue, depressed, down, downcast, downhearted, low, morose, miserable, disheartened, discouraged, dispirited, low-spirited, down in the mouth, Colloq down in the dumps: He's been despondent since she went away.

despot n. absolute ruler, dictator, tyrant, oppressor, autocrat: History has painted Ivan the Terrible as one of the cruellest despots of all time.

despotic adj. dictatorial, tyrannical, oppressive, authoritarian, imperious, domineering, totalitarian, absolute, autocratic, arbitrary: The country was under the despotic rule of a callous tyrant.

despotism n. autocracy, monocracy, autarchy, totalitarianism, absolutism, dictatorship, tyranny, oppression, suppression, repression: She denounced the new laws as another instance of the brutal despotism of the regime.

dessert n. sweet, Brit pudding, Colloq Brit pud, afters: For dessert, I had ice-cream and she had a fruit tart.

destination
n. journey's end, terminus, stop, stopping-place; goal, end, objective, target: Our destination is Bristol.

destine v. 1 fate, predetermine, predestine, ordain, foreordain, preordain; doom: His only ambition was to be a successful farmer, but the gods destined him for greater things. 2 design, intend, mean, devote, assign, appoint, designate, purpose, mark, earmark, set aside: He beheld the chariot destined to carry him heavenwards.

destined adj. 1 meant, intended, designed, predetermined, foreordained, predestined, fated; doomed, written; US in the cards: His destined end was to be shot while escaping. Oliver was destined to fail at everything he tried. It was destined that the boy would become king. 2 certain, sure, bound, ineluctable, unavoidable, inevitable, inescapable: Being devoured by monsters is the destined demise of all who dare to enter there.

destiny n. fate, doom, fortune, lot, kismet, karma: It is my destiny to be ignored when living and forgotten when dead.

destitute adj. 1 in want, impoverished, poverty-stricken, poor, indigent, down and out, needy, on one's uppers, badly off, penniless, penurious, impecunious, insolvent, bankrupt, Colloq hard up, broke, US on skid row: Why distribute food to destitute families only at Christmas? 2 Usually, destitute of. bereft of, deficient in, deprived of, devoid of, lacking (in), wanting (in), in need, needful (of), without: The landscape was entirely destitute of trees.

destroy v. 1 demolish, tear or pull down, raze, wipe out, ravage, wreck, smash, ruin, break up or down, annihilate, crush, eradicate, extirpate, exterminate, devastate, commit mayhem, lay waste, vandalize, Slang US trash: The invading hordes destroyed everything, leaving desolation in their wake. The storm destroyed fifty houses. 2 ruin, do away with, end, make an end of, bring to an end, bring or put an end to, terminate, finish, kill: Realizing what he had done, he destroyed himself. The trial destroyed his career. 3 counteract, neutralize, nullify, annul, cancel (out), reverse; stop, interfere with: Caught embezzling, Martin destroyed everything he had worked for. Sunspot activity destroyed radio transmission this week. 4 disprove, refute, confute, deny, contradict, negate, overturn, overthrow, ruin, spoil, undermine, weaken, enfeeble, devitalize, exhaust, disable, cripple: By pointing out just one flaw, she destroyed his entire argument.

destruction

n. 1 demolition, razing, wrecking, ruin, ruining, ruination, breaking up or down, mayhem, havoc, annihilation, devastation, tearing or knocking down, laying waste, ravagement; rack and ruin, Colloq wiping out: The destruction of the city took place in 1942. 2 slaughter, annihilation, killing, eradication, murder, extermination, holocaust, liquidation, massacre, extinction, genocide, assassination, slaying, putting to death, putting an end to, making an end of, doing away with, putting away, Colloq doing in, wiping out; Slang US rubbing out, rub-out: They were bent on the destruction of an entire people. 3 undoing, end, ruin, ruination, downfall, termination, breakup, breakdown, collapse: The imprisonment of the bosses spelt the destruction of the entire crime network.

destructive

adj. 1 harmful, injurious, baneful, pernicious, dangerous, hurtful, toxic, poisonous, virulent, noxious, bad, malignant, baleful, unwholesome, damaging, detrimental, deleterious, devastating; deadly, fatal, lethal, fell, killing, internecine: The spray keeps away insects but is destructive of the plant life. 2 negative, adverse, opposing, opposed, contrary, contradictory, antithetical, conflicting, unfavourable, condemnatory, derogatory, disparaging, disapproving, critical: The playwrights feared and disliked him because of his destructive criticism.

desultory adj. shifting, devious, unsteady, irregular, wavering, inconstant, fitful, spasmodic, unmethodical, disconnected, unsystematic, disorderly, disordered, unorganized, disorganized, inconsistent, random, haphazard, chaotic, erratic, shifty: He made no more than a desultory effort to stop smoking. The countries engaged in intermittent, desultory warfare for decades.

detach v. separate, uncouple, part, disjoin, disengage, disunite, disconnect, disentangle, free, unfasten, undo, cut off, remove: She carefully detached the printer lead from the back of the computer.

detached adj. 1 disconnected, unattached, separate(d), free, isolated, disentangled, unfastened, removed, cut off, divided, disjoined: He suffered from a detached retina. Their new house is detached. 2 disinterested, aloof, uninvolved, unemotional, dispassionate, d,gag,(e), reserved, impersonal, impartial, neutral, objective, unbiased, unprejudiced: She seemed rather detached and did not get involved in the discussion.

detachment

n. 1 separating, unfastening, disconnecting, detaching, disengaging; separation, disconnection, disengagement: Most young birds cannot survive a prolonged period of detachment from their parents. 2 aloofness, unconcern, indifference, coolness, inattention, insouciance: He viewed the carnage of the battle with regal detachment. 3 See detail, 3, below.

detail n. 1 particular, element, factor, point, fact, specific, technicality, component, item, feature; aspect, respect, count: He gave us a general idea of the plan but not a single detail. 2 details. particulars, minutiae, niceties, fine points, specifics, technicalities: Must we go into all the details of his dismissal? 3 detachment, squad, party, cadre, duty, fatigue, group: The sergeant appointed a detail to police the area. 4 in detail. specifically, particularly, thoroughly, in depth, item by item, point by point, exhaustively, comprehensively, inside out, perfectly: We examined the report in detail.

--v. 5 specify, spell out, itemize, delineate, catalogue, list, tabulate, enumerate, particularize, recount, cite (chapter and verse): She detailed every little move I was to make. 6 assign, appoint, charge, delegate, name, specify, send: We have been detailed to act as your bodyguard during your visit.

detailed adj. 1 itemized, exhaustive, comprehensive, thorough, full, complete, inclusive, particularized, precise, exact, minute, blow-by-blow, circumstantial: He kept a detailed report of everything that happened on D-Day. 2 intricate, complex, complicated, elaborate, ornate: Note the detailed scrollwork on this screen.

detect   v. 1 uncover, find (out), discover, locate, learn of, ascertain, determine, dig up, unearth: The pathologist detected the presence of prussic acid in the victim's bloodstream. 2 perceive, note, notice, identify, spot, observe, sense, read, scent, smell, discern, feel, catch, find: Did I detect a tone of sarcasm in your reply, young man?

detective n. investigator, private investigator, CID man, policeman, constable, Colloq private eye, sleuth, Sherlock, snoop, snooper, Brit tec, US P.I., dick, Hawkshaw; Slang cop, copper, US and Canadian gumshoe, peeper: Detectives have at last solved the case of the missing weapon.

detention n. custody, confinement, imprisonment, captivity, internment, incarceration, restraint, Archaic or literary durance: The culprit was kept in detention for a week.

deter   v. dissuade, discourage, inhibit, intimidate, daunt, frighten off or from or away, scare off or from; prevent, stop, obstruct, check, hinder, impede: I was deterred from entering by three large dogs. Regular spraying of plants helps to deter aphid infestation.

detergent n. 1 cleaner, cleanser, soap (powder or flakes or liquid); surfactant, surface-active agent, detersive: You put too much detergent into the washing machine and it overflowed.

--adj. 2 cleaning, cleansing, washing, purifying, detersive: The detergent effect is reduced if too much soap is used.

deteriorate

v. 1 worsen, decline, degenerate, degrade, spoil, worsen, get worse, depreciate, slip, slide, Colloq go to pot, go to the dogs, go downhill: We have watched their relationship deteriorate over the years. 2 decay, decline, disintegrate, fall apart, decompose, crumble, erode: The building slowly deteriorated and is now uninhabitable.

determination

n. 1 resoluteness, resolution, firmness, resolve, steadfastness, tenacity, perseverance, fortitude, doggedness, persistence, constancy, single-mindedness, will (power), Colloq grit, guts: The idea is a good one, if only she has the determination to see it through. 2 settlement, resolution, resolving, decision, solution, judgement, verdict, outcome, result, upshot, conclusion, end, termination: None of us could live in peace till the determination of the border dispute. 3 fixing, settling, ascertainment, ascertaining, delimitation, definition: The determination of our position is critical in setting our course.

determine v. 1 settle, decide, clinch, arbitrate, judge, adjudge, conclude, terminate, end: The ambiguity must be determined one way or the other. 2 ascertain, find out, discover, conclude, infer, draw, learn, detect; verify: From the evidence, they determined the identity of the intruder. 3 decide, choose, select, resolve, make up one's mind, settle on or upon, fix on or upon: You alone can determine which candidate you want to vote for. 4 affect, influence, act on, shape, condition, govern, regulate, dictate: There were many factors determining my choice.

determined

adj. 1 decided, resolute, resolved, purposeful, dogged, strong-willed, strong-minded, single-minded, tenacious, intent, firm, unflinching, unwavering, fixed, constant, persistent, persevering, steady, unfaltering, unhesitating, unyielding, stubborn, obstinate, adamant: He was determined not to go. We made a determined effort to locate the wreck. 2 fixed, determinate, definite, exact, precise, distinct, predetermined, ascertained, identified: They worked to a previously determined plan. They agreed to pay a percentage of the determined price.

deterrent n. hindrance, impediment, discouragement, disincentive, dissuasion, check, hitch, obstacle, obstruction, stumbling-block; catch, snag, rub, fly in the ointment, bar, drawback: Some experts hold that the death penalty is no deterrent to murder. The only deterrent to your plan is that we are likely to be caught.

detest v. despise, loathe, hate, abhor, execrate, abominate: They served turnips, which I detest, and sat me next to Ida, whom I also detest.

detour n. 1 diversion, deviation, circuitous route or way, roundabout way, bypass: The detour took us five miles out of our way.

--v. 2 deviate, turn (away) from, divert, bypass: I detoured from the main road and took a short cut.

detract v. detract from. diminish, reduce, take away from, subtract from, lessen, depreciate, disparage: Once you are in the public eye, your slightest fault detracts from your reputation.

detriment n. disadvantage, drawback, liability; damage, harm, ill, impairment, injury, hurt, loss: He has a tendency to support lost causes, to his own detriment. Seeds survive without detriment where their plants would perish.

detrimental
adj. disadvantageous, harmful, injurious, hurtful, damaging, deleterious, destructive, prejudicial, adverse, unfavourable, inimical, pernicious: I know nothing detrimental about either one of them.

devastate v. 1 lay waste, ravage, destroy, waste, sack, raze, ruin, desolate, spoil, wreck, demolish, level, flatten, gut, obliterate: The island was completely devastated by the tidal wave that followed the typhoon. 2 disconcert, confound, discomfit, take aback, nonplus, shatter, overwhelm, abash, shock; humiliate, mortify, embarrass, chagrin, Colloq floor, US discombobulate: She was devastated by the news of Bertie's expulsion from college.

devastating
adj. 1 keen, incisive, mordant, penetrating, trenchant, telling; sardonic, sarcastic, bitter, acid, caustic, savage, satirical, virulent, vitriolic: Because of his bland manner, his devastating wit often caught people by surprise. 2 ravishing, captivating, enthralling, stunning, overpowering, bewitching, spellbinding; spectacular: Kathy was wearing a devastating black silk dress.

develop v. 1 bring out or forth, advance, expand (on or upon), broaden, enlarge (on or upon), amplify, evolve, expatiate (on or upon), elaborate (on or upon), reveal, lay open, expose, unfold, disclose, bare, (cause to) grow, realize the potential (of); cultivate, improve, promote, exploit, strengthen: The plot is fine, but the characters need to be developed more fully. It is the aim of the school to develop the students' natural abilities. 2 (make) grow, mature, ripen, age, expand; flower, blossom, bloom, increase: You can't develop that idea without financial backing. These shrubs will be fully developed next year. 3 exhibit, display, show, demonstrate, manifest: She has recently developed an interest in cooking. 4 emerge, arise, appear, come out, come to light, evolve, originate, begin, commence, happen, occur, come about; come forth, result: A serious fault has developed in the rocket's fuel line. His natural talent for music developed when he joined the school band.

development

n. 1 occurrence, happening, event, incident, circumstance, situation, condition, phenomenon: William Nye will report new developments from the scene. 2 evolution, growth, evolvement, maturation, unfolding, maturing, maturity, increase, expansion, enlargement, increment; advance, advancement, progress; improvement: She has studied the region's economic development.

deviant adj. 1 deviating, divergent, different, abnormal, strange, uncommon, unusual, odd, peculiar, curious, aberrant, eccentric, idiosyncratic, deviate, queer, quirky, weird, bizarre, offbeat, singular, Slang kinky, freaky, Chiefly Brit bent: They have been observing his deviant behaviour for some time. 2 See homosexual, 2, below.

--n. 3 See homosexual, 1, below.

deviate v. 1 turn aside or away, swerve, veer, wander, stray, drift, digress, diverge; divert: He has chosen a path that deviates from the straight and narrow.

--adj., n. 2 See deviant, 1, 3, above.

device n. 1 contrivance, mechanism, machine, machinery, implement, utensil, apparatus, instrument, appliance, tool, gadget, gimmick, Colloq contraption, widget, thingumajig or thingamajig, Brit gubbins: She has patented a device for peeling hard-boiled eggs. 2 stratagem, scheme, trick, artifice, ruse, plot, ploy, gambit, strategy, manoeuvre, machination; machinery, apparatus, mechanism, contrivance, gimmick, tool, weapon: They resorted to a variety of devices in order to achieve their ends. That lawyer used every device he could think of to separate Cornelia from her inheritance. 3 design, emblem, figure, (heraldic) bearing, insigne, cadency mark, mark of cadency, hallmark, trade mark, symbol, badge, coat of arms, seal, crest, colophon, logotype, logo, monogram, charge, cognizance, signet; motto, slogan, legend: The device - a closed eye - is that of Lord Boring. 4 devices. pleasure, disposition, will, inclination, fancy, desire, whim: Left to his own devices, he'll survive very well indeed.

devil n. 1 Satan, Lucifer, Mephistopheles, Beelzebub, Asmodeus, Abaddon, Apollyon, Belial, Lord of the Flies, prince of darkness, spirit of evil, evil spirit, cacodemon or cacodaemon, evil one, wicked one, archfiend, Fiend, deuce, Scots Clootie; Colloq Old Harry, (Old) Nick, US (Old) Scratch: In medieval times the devil was given horns, a tail, and cloven hooves. 2 brute, fiend, demon, beast, ogre, monster, rogue, scoundrel, rake, knave, rakehell, villain, ghoul, hell-hound, vampire, barbarian; witch, hell-cat, shrew, termagant, vixen, virago, ogress, harpy, hag, Xanthippe or Xantippe, crone: If you hit me again I'll phone the police, you devil! 3 fellow, person, chap, wretch, bloke, guy, beggar, unfortunate, Colloq bugger, Brit sod: The poor devil lost an arm at Gallipoli. 4 imp, scamp, rascal, fox, slyboots, sly dog, rapscallion, confidence man, trickster, Colloq operator, smoothie, smooth or slick operator, con man, con artist: The little devil has stolen our hearts. The devil wormed his way into our confidence and then made off with our money. 5 like the devil. exceedingly, extremely, excessively, violently, speedily, confoundedly, deucedly: The car was going like the devil when it hit the tree. She fought like the devil to protect the house. 6 - the devil. in heaven's name, the dickens, in the world, on God's green earth, in hell: What the devil do you think you are doing? Who the devil is she? Where the devil have you put my trousers?

devilish adj. diabolic(al), satanic, Mephistophelian, fiendish, demonic, cacodemonic, demoniac(al), infernal, hellish, villainous, sinister, wicked, evil, iniquitous, sinful, flagitious, heinous, malign, malevolent, malignant, cruel, maleficent; impish, mischievous, prankish, naughty, crazy, madcap: He has come up with a devilish plan for stealing the secret formula.

devilry n. 1 deviltry, mischief, mischievousness, roguery, naughtiness, rascality, roguishness, diablerie, archness, knavery, knavishness: His latest bit of devilry is hiding father's bedroom slippers. 2 deviltry, devilishness, wickedness, evil, fiendishness, diablerie, cruelty, malice, malevolence, viciousness, perversity, iniquity, hellishness, villainy: That traitor is up to some devilry.

devious adj. 1 deceitful, underhand(ed), insincere, deceptive, misleading, subreptitious, sneaky, furtive, surreptitious, secretive, double-dealing, treacherous, dishonest, shifty, smooth, slick, slippery, scheming, plotting, designing, foxy, vulpine, wily, sly, crafty, tricky Colloq crooked: The plot to poison the queen was the product of a devious mind. 2 indirect, roundabout, zigzag, evasive, circuitous, crooked, rambling, serpentine, tortuous, sinuous, anfractuous: That is about the most devious bit of reasoning I have ever heard!

devise v. 1 concoct, make up, conceive, scheme, contrive, dream up, design, draft, frame, form, formulate, plan, arrange, work out, think up, originate, invent, create, Colloq cook up: He devised a method for making sandals out of leather scraps. 2 bequeath, will, convey, hand down, give, assign, dispose of, transfer, bestow: I devise to my nephew, Ian Ferguson, my property in Yorkshire.

devote v. 1 apply, appropriate, assign, allot, commit, allocate, set aside or apart, put away or aside, dedicate, consecrate: Each of the chapels was devoted to a separate sect. 2 apply, pledge, dedicate, commit, give up: She has devoted her life to helping others.

devoted adj. faithful, true, dedicated, committed, devout, loyal, loving, doting, staunch, tender, staunch, steadfast, constant; ardent, loving, caring, fond, earnest, zealous, enthusiastic: Your brother was my most devoted friend throughout his life.

devotee n. fan, aficionado, adherent, votary, enthusiast, addict, Colloq buff, fiend, US hound; Slang bug, nut, freak, US head, junkie, groupie: The band was followed about on tour by scores of screaming devotees of rock music.

devotion n. 1 devotedness, devoutness, reverence; earnestness, religiousness, piety, religiosity, pietism, godliness, holiness, spirituality, sanctity; worship, prayer, observance, ritual: The sect was noted for its devotion to martyrs and their relics. It is gratifying to see such devotion amongst the younger members of the congregation. They interrupted the holy man at his devotions. 2 dedication, consecration, attachment, loyalty, devotedness: His devotion to duty will be remembered by his fellow soldiers. 3 zeal, ardour, fervour, ardency, intensity, fanaticism, eagerness, enthusiasm, earnestness, readiness, willingness; love, passion, infatuation, fondness, affection, attachment, adherence, loyalty, allegiance: They would dedicate themselves with slavish devotion to some brutal master.

devour v. 1 wolf (down), gulp (down), bolt, swallow (up), gorge, gobble (up), gormandize, cram, stuff, eat (up) greedily, Archaic gluttonize; Colloq Brit pig, US and Canadian pig out (on): He was so hungry when he came in that he devoured two whole pies and a plate of chips. 2 consume, waste, destroy, wipe out, ravage, annihilate, demolish, ruin, wreak havoc (up)on, devastate, obliterate, eradicate: A quarter of Europe was already devoured by the plague. 3 relish, revel in, absorb, be absorbed by; engulf, consume, drink in, eat up, swallow up, take in; swamp, overcome, overwhelm: He eagerly devoured all of Dickens's novels. The sea devoured its victims silently.

devout adj. 1 devoted, pious, religious, reverent, worshipful, faithful, dedicated, staunch, churchgoing; holy, godly, saintly, pure: When I last saw him, he had become a devout Christian. 2 devotional, reverential, religious, solemn: Through devout prayer one might see the kingdom of heaven. 3 earnest, sincere, genuine, hearty, heartfelt, devoted, ardent, zealous: You have my devout best wishes for your happiness.

dexterity n. 1 touch, nimbleness, adroitness, deftness, facility, knack, skill, proficiency; sleight of hand: Much fine rug-weaving is done by little children because of the dexterity of their small fingers. 2 cleverness, ingenuity, ingeniousness, tact, astuteness, keenness, sharpness, shrewdness, cunning, guile, canniness, artfulness: I admire his dexterity in arguing the case in court. He exercised great dexterity in eluding capture.

dexterous adj. 1 dextrous, deft, lithe, nimble, supple, agile, quick, skilful: He was a dexterous archer. 2 clever, ingenious, astute, keen, sharp, shrewd, cunning, guileful, canny, artful, crafty, slick: She was devout in religion, decorous in conduct, and dexterous in business. He was the most dexterous of our political leaders.

4.3 diabolic...

=-

diabolic adj. 1 diabolical, devilish, satanic, Mephistophelian, demonic, demoniac(al), fiendish, hellish, infernal: His interest in the supernatural included participation in diabolic rituals of the most repulsive kind. 2 diabolical, cruel, wicked, iniquitous, evil, fiendish, appalling, dreadful, inhuman, atrocious, execrable, abominable, awful, terrible, damnable, accursed, horrid, horrible, hideous, monstrous, odious, vile, base, corrupt, foul, depraved, flagitious, heinous, malicious, malevolent, malign, maleficent, sinister, sinful, impious, bad: The prisoners suffered the most diabolic treatment.

diagnose v. identify, name, determine, recognize, distinguish, pinpoint, interpret; analyse: The doctor diagnosed the symptoms as those of rheumatoid arthritis.

dialect n. speech (pattern), phraseology, idiom, accent, pronunciation, patois, vernacular; jargon, cant, slang, argot, language, tongue, Creole, pidgin; brogue, burr, Colloq lingo: Some of the regional dialects are hard to understand.

dialogue n. 1 duologue, conversation, discussion, conference, talk, chat, colloquy, communication: I wrote down that dialogue - it was hilarious! 2 parley, conference, meeting, huddle, tˆte-…-tˆte, colloquy, Colloq US and Canadian rap session: A meaningful dialogue between labour and management could easily settle the question.

diary n. appointment book, date-book, calendar, engagement book; journal, chronicle, log, record, annal(s): According to my diary, the date we dined was the lst.

dicey n. risky, tricky, dangerous, difficult, ticklish, unpredictable, uncertain, unsure, doubtful, Colloq iffy, chancy or chancey, hairy: Asking for another pay rise could be pretty dicey, Daniel.

dicker v. 1 bargain, trade, barter, deal, haggle, negotiate: If I dicker with him, he may drop his price.

--n. 2 bargain, deal, haggle, negotiation: We had a bit of a dicker but finally settled on a figure.

dicky adj. dickey, shaky, unreliable, unsteady, unsound, faulty, Colloq dodgy: The engine sounds a bit dicky to me - you'd better have it seen to.

dictate v. 1 say, prescribe, ordain, decree, demand, command, lay down (the law), order, direct, pronounce, impose: It is our leader who dictates what we may say and do.

--n. 2 decree, demand, command, order, direction, instruction, charge, pronouncement, edict, fiat, ukase, mandate, caveat, injunction, requirement, bidding, behest: Each must act in accord with the dictates of his conscience.

dictator n. autocrat, absolute ruler or monarch, despot, overlord, oppressor, tsar or czar, tyrant, Fuehrer or F•hrer: Among monarchs, Henry VIII certainly could have been characterized as a dictator.

dictatorial

adj. 1 absolute, arbitrary, totalitarian, authoritarian, autocratic, all-powerful, omnipotent, unlimited: The peoples of some countries often confer dictatorial powers on their leaders. 2 despotic, tyrannical, authoritarian, iron-handed, domineering, imperious, overbearing, Colloq bossy: The dictatorial way she runs the department makes those who work there miserable.

diction n. 1 language, wording, (verbal or writing) style, expression, usage, expressiveness, terminology, word choice, vocabulary, phraseology, phrasing, rhetoric: Please go over my paper and correct the diction. 2 articulation, pronunciation, enunciation, delivery, elocution, oratory, presentation, speech, intonation, inflection: That course in public speaking, improved Brian's diction enormously.

dictionary

n. lexicon, glossary, wordbook; thesaurus: My dictionary gives the pronunciation, etymology, and meanings of hundreds of thousands of words.

die   v. 1 lose one's life, lay down one's life, perish, expire, decease, suffer death, Euphemistic depart, give up the ghost, be no more, (go to) meet one's Maker, breathe one's last, go to the happy hunting-grounds, go to one's reward, go to one's final or last resting-place, go west, pay the debt of nature, pay one's debt to nature, pass through the pearly gates, pass away or on, join the majority, go the way of all flesh; Slang pop off, bite the dust, kick the bucket, croak, Brit snuff it, go for a burton, pop one's clogs, US turn up one's toes, cash in one's chips or checks: He died of tuberculosis, a rare affliction these days. 2 Often, die down or out or away. dwindle, lessen, diminish, decrease, ebb, decline, wane, subside, wither (away), wilt, melt (away), dissolve, peter out, fail, weaken, deteriorate, disintegrate, degenerate, fade (away), droop, moulder, sink, vanish, disappear: We lost the race because the breeze died down. After the third try, her enthusiasm died. The sound of the flute died away among its echoes. 3 expire, end, stop, cease: Your secret will die with me. 4 Usually, die off or out. become extinct, perish: By about 200 million years ago, all the dinosaurs had died out. 5 long, pine, yearn, crave, hanker, want, desire, hunger, ache: He said he was dying to meet a real movie star.

diet°   n. 1 fare, food, nourishment, nutriment, sustenance, subsistence, victuals, intake, aliment: A well-balanced diet is very important. 2 regimen, regime: She is on a diet of bread and water.

--v. 3 fast, abstain; slim; reduce: I am dieting to lose weight.

dietý   n. council, congress, parliament, senate, legislature, house, chamber, assembly: In Japan, the legislature is called a diet .

differ v. 1 diverge, deviate, be separate or distinct, be dissimilar or different, contrast; depart: Even the leaves of the same tree differ from one another. These substances differ in their magnetic properties. 2 disagree, conflict, contradict, be contradictory, vary, be at variance, take issue, part company, fall out, quarrel, argue: Opinions differ as to the best way to bring up children. She differed with me on many subjects.

difference
n. 1 distinction, dissimilarity, discrepancy, unlikeness, disagreement, inconsistency, diversity, variation, imbalance; inequality, dissimilitude, incongruity, contrast, contradistinction, contrariety: Difference of opinion can be constructive in a business partnership. Being colour-blind, he cannot tell the difference between red and green. 2 Often, differences. dispute, quarrel, argument, disagreement, dissension, conflict: We were able to settle our differences amicably. 3 change, alteration, metamorphosis, reformation, transformation, conversion, adjustment, modification: Since her operation, the difference in Philippa is surprising. 4 idiosyncrasy, peculiarity, characteristic, character, nature: There are important differences between socialism and communism. 5 rest, remainder, leftovers, balance: After each had taken his share, the difference was 12, which we divided equally among the four of us.

different adj. 1 unlike, unalike, dissimilar, conflicting; contrary, discrete, contrastive, contrasting, disparate, divergent, diverse, distinct, opposite, separate, distinguishable; another or other: We both enjoy boating but in different ways. When modelling, she assumes a different pose every few seconds. 2 unique, unusual, peculiar, odd, singular, particular, distinctive, personal, extraordinary, special, remarkable, bizarre, rare, weird, strange, unconventional, original, out of the ordinary; new, novel, exceptional, unheard-of: And now, for something completely different, we present a juggling trick cyclist. 3 assorted, manifold, multifarious, numerous, abundant, sundry, various, varied, divers, many, several: Different kinds of breakfast cereal are now available.

differentiate
v. 1 distinguish, discriminate, contradistinguish, separate, contrast, oppose, set off or apart, tell apart: They must learn

how to differentiate one species from another. 2 modify, specialize, change, alter, transform, transmute, convert, adapt, adjust: All organisms possess the power to differentiate special organs to meet special needs.

difficult adj. 1 hard, arduous, toilsome, strenuous, tough, laborious, burdensome, onerous, demanding: He found it difficult to work the longer hours. The first birth is sometimes difficult. 2 puzzling, perplexing, baffling, enigmatic(al), profound, abstruse, obscure, recondite, complex; thorny, intricate, sensitive, knotty, problematic(al), ticklish, scabrous: Some of the questions in the exam were very difficult. The analyst raised a lot of difficult issues which I had to confront. 3 intractable, recalcitrant, obstructive, stubborn, unmanageable, obstinate, contrary, unaccommodating, refractory, unyielding, uncompromising; naughty, ill-behaved; Colloq Brit bloody-minded: Tessa has three difficult teenagers in the house these days. 4 troubled, troubling, tough, burdensome, onerous, demanding, trying, hard, grim, dark, unfavourable, straitening: We have been through some difficult times together. 5 fussy, particular, demanding, finicky, finical, fastidious, critical, troublesome, difficile, awkward, Colloq nit-picking: I'll go wherever you like; I don't want to be difficult about it. Sharon can be a very difficult person to be with.

difficulty

n. 1 strain, hardship, arduousness, laboriousness, formidableness, tribulation, painfulness: Despite much difficulty she succeeded. 2 hardship, obstacle, problem, distress, pitfall, dilemma, predicament, problem, snag, hindrance; Gordian knot: He has encountered difficulties during his career. 3 Often, difficulties. embarrassment, plight, predicament, mess, strait(s), trouble, scrape, Colloq hot water, jam, pickle, fix; hot potato: She always seems to be in financial difficulties.

diffuse   adj. 1 spread (out or about or around), scattered, dispersed, widespread; sparse, meagre, thin (on the ground): A few diffuse clouds could be seen on the horizon. 2 wordy, verbose, prolix, long-winded, loquacious, discursive, digressive, rambling, circumlocutory, meandering, roundabout, circuitous, periphrastic, ambagious, diffusive, pleonastic: The style of the book is very diffuse, being extravagantly uneconomic of expression.

--v. 3 spread, circulate, distribute, dispense, disperse; dispel, scatter, broadcast, sow, disseminate; dissipate: The colour rapidly diffused, turning the liquid crimson. She has successfully diffused her ideas of female equality throughout the community.

dig v. 1 excavate, burrow, gouge, scoop, hollow out; tunnel: He dug a hole in which to set the post. 2 nudge, thrust, stab, jab, plunge, force, prod, poke: I dug my spurs into my horse and rode off. He kept digging me in the ribs with his finger. 3 appreciate, enjoy, like, understand: They really dig the jazz of the big-band era. 4 notice, note, look at, regard: Hey, man, dig that crazy gear! 5 dig into. probe (into), delve into, go deeply into, explore, look into, research, study: We dug into many books of forgotten lore to find the words of the magic spell. 6 dig out or up. unearth, disinter, exhume, bring up, find, obtain, extract, ferret out, winkle out, discover, bring to light, expose, dredge up, extricate, come up with, Australian fossick: I dug out an old book on witchcraft. She has dug up some interesting information about your friend Glover.

--n. 7 thrust, poke, jab, stab, nudge: She playfully gave him a dig in the ribs. 8 insult, insinuation, gibe, slur; taunt, jeer; Colloq slap (in the face), wisecrack, crack, US low blow: Referring to him as a Dartmoor graduate was a nasty dig.

digest v. 1 assimilate: She has trouble digesting milk. 2 bear, stand, endure, survive, assimilate, accept, tolerate, brook, swallow, stomach: The attack was too much for even him to digest. 3 comprehend, assimilate, understand, take in, consider, grasp, study, ponder, meditate (on or over), reflect on, think over, weigh: I need a little time to digest the new regulations. 4 abbreviate, cut, condense, abridge, compress, epitomize, summarize, reduce, shorten: Her assistant had digested the report into four pages by noon.

--n. 5 condensation, abridgment or abridgement, abstract, pr,cis, r,sum,, synopsis, summary, conspectus, abbreviation: I never did read the original novel, only a digest.

dignified adj. stately, noble, majestic, formal, solemn, serious, sober, grave, distinguished, honourable, distingu,, elegant, august, sedate, reserved; regal, courtly, lordly, lofty, exalted, grand: Despite the abuse, he maintained a dignified demeanour.

dignify v. distinguish, ennoble, elevate, raise, exalt, glorify, upraise, lift, uplift, enhance, improve, better, upgrade: The critic wrote that he wouldn't deign to dignify the book by calling it a novel.

dignitary n. personage, official, notable, worthy, magnate, power, higher-up; celebrity, lion, luminary, star, superstar, Colloq VIP, bigwig, big shot, big wheel, big name, big gun, hotshot, hot stuff, big noise, big White Chief, big Chief, big Daddy, Brit Lord or Lady Muck, high-muck-a-muck, Slang big cheese, Chiefly US Mr Big, biggie, fat cat: Anyone with a lot of money is treated today as a dignitary.

dignity n. 1 nobility, majesty, gravity, gravitas, solemnity, courtliness, distinction, stateliness, formality, grandeur, eminence; hauteur, loftiness: She entered and walked with dignity to the throne. 2 worth, worthiness, nobility, nobleness, excellence, honour, honourableness, respectability, respectableness, standing, importance, greatness, glory, station, status, rank, level, position: The real dignity of a man lies not in what he has but in what he is. 3 self-respect, self-regard, amour propre, self-confidence, self-esteem, pride, self-importance: It was beneath her dignity to speak directly to a footman.

digression
n. 1 aside, departure, deviation, detour, obiter dictum, parenthesis, apostrophe, excursus: His numerous digressions made it difficult to focus on the main points of the speech. 2 digressing, deviating, divergence, going off at a tangent, rambling, meandering, straying, wandering, deviation: Digression from the main theme of his speech only diluted his argument.

dilapidated
adj. ruined, broken-down, in ruins, gone to rack and ruin, wrecked, destroyed, falling apart, decrepit, derelict, battered, tumbledown, run-down, ramshackle, crumbling, decayed, decaying, rickety, shaky, shabby, Brit raddled: We shall have to fix up

that dilapidated barn if we expect to use it.

dilemma n. predicament, quandary, double bind, catch-22, impasse, deadlock, stalemate; plight, difficulty, trouble; stymie, snooker; Colloq bind, box, fix, jam, spot, pickle, squeeze: He was faced with the dilemma of killing the injured animal or allowing it to die in agony.

dilettante
n. dabbler, trifler, aesthete, amateur: You know art like a curator; I am a mere dilettante.

diligent adj. persevering, persistent, industrious, assiduous, sedulous, intent, steady, steadfast, focused, concentrated, earnest, attentive, conscientious, hard-working, indefatigable, tireless, constant, painstaking, careful, thorough, scrupulous, meticulous, punctilious: Only through diligent application was she able to get through law school.

dilute v. water (down), thin (down or out), cut, weaken, doctor, adulterate; mitigate, lessen, diminish, decrease: For the table, wine was often diluted with water. He dilutes his argument by citing irrelevancies.

dim adj. 1 obscure, obscured, vague, faint, weak, weakened, pale, imperceptible, fuzzy, indistinct, ill-defined, indiscernible, undefined, indistinguishable, foggy, clouded, cloudy, nebulous, blurred, blurry, unclear, dull, hazy, misty, dark, shadowy, murky, tenebrous, gloomy, sombre, dusky, crepuscular: Her beauty made The bright world dim. We could barely see in the dim light of the cave. 2 stupid, obtuse, doltish, dull, dull-witted, foolish, slow-witted, dim-witted, dense, Colloq thick, dumb: Anyone who can't understand that is really quite dim.

--v. 3 obscure, dull, becloud: His natural feelings of compassion had been dimmed by neglect. 4 darken, bedim, shroud, shade: Twilight dims the sky above. The stage-lights dimmed and the curtain fell.

diminish v. 1 decrease, decline, abate, lessen, reduce, lower, shrink, curtail, contract, lop, crop, dock, clip, prune, cut, truncate, cut down, abbreviate, shorten, abridge, compress, condense, pare (down), scale down, boil down: As the height increases, the pressure diminishes. The need for police patrols was diminished when we hired security guards. 2 belittle, disparage, degrade, downgrade, discredit, detract (from), vitiate, debase, deprecate, demean, derogate, depreciate, vilipend, devalue, cheapen, put down, dismiss, humiliate, demean, reject: His abuse by the authorities did not diminish him in her eyes. 3 wane, fade, dwindle, ebb, die out or away, peter out, recede, subside; slacken, let up, wind down, slow (down), ease (off), Colloq run out of steam: Soaking in the hot water, I felt the tensions of mind and body gradually diminishing. The campaign finally diminished to a negligible effort.

diminutive

adj. small, tiny, little, miniature, petite, minute, minuscule, mini, compact, undersized, pocket, pocket-sized, pygmy, elfin, Lilliputian, midget, wee, microscopic; micro, infinitesimal; US vest-pocket, vest-pocket-sized, Colloq teeny, teeny-weeny or teensy-weensy: The bride and groom appeared with their diminutive page-boys and bridesmaids behind them.

din   n. 1 noise, clamour, uproar, shouting, screaming, yelling, babel, clangour, clatter, commotion, racket, row, hullabaloo, hubbub, hurly-burly, rumpus, hollering, blare, blaring, bray, braying, bellow, bellowing, roar, blast, roaring, pandemonium, tumult: We couldn't hear the speech above the din of the crowd.

--v. 2 instil, drum, hammer: The names and dates of the British monarchs were dinned into me in childhood.

dine   v. eat, banquet, feast, sup, break bread, breakfast, lunch, have a bite or snack, nibble, Colloq feed, Slang nosh: We'll dine at 8.00, so don't be late.

dingy   adj. dark, dull, gloomy, dim, lacklustre, faded, discoloured, dusky, drab, dreary, dismal, cheerless, depressing, gloomy, shadowy, tenebrous, smoky, sooty, grey-brown, smudgy, grimy, dirty, soiled: He was a dingy man, in dingy clothes, who lived in a dingy house.

dip   v. 1 immerse, plunge, duck, dunk, douse, bathe, submerge: He dipped each dish into the soapy water. 2 decline, go down, fall, descend, sag, sink, subside, slump: The road dips after the next curve. The price of shares has dipped again. 3 dip in or into. dabble in, play at; skim, scan: I haven't had time to read it, but I dipped into it here and there.

--n. 4 swim, plunge; immersion; Brit bathe: We are going for a dip in the pool before dinner. 5 lowering, sinking, depression, drop, slump, decline: This dip in the price of oil means nothing.

diplomacy n. 1 tact, tactfulness, adroitness, discretion: She was able to get rid of that rude boor with her customary diplomacy. 2 statecraft, statesmanship, negotiation; intrigue, Machiavellianism, machination, manoeuvring or maneuvering: Cardinal Richelieu is considered the founder of modern diplomacy.

diplomatic

adj. tactful, discreet, prudent, wise, sensitive, politic, courteous, polite, discerning, perceptive, perspicacious, thoughtful: How diplomatic it was of you to have invited Frances's husband!

direct v. 1 manage, handle, run, administer, govern, regulate, control, operate, superintend, supervise, command, head up, rule; Colloq call the shots: She directs the company with an iron hand. 2 guide, lead, conduct, pilot, steer, show or point (the way), be at the helm; advise, counsel, instruct, mastermind; usher, escort: He has directed the company for 40 years, through good times and bad. Can you direct me to the post office? 3 rule, command, order, require, bid, tell, instruct, charge, dictate, enjoin; appoint, ordain: He directed that the attack be launched at dawn. 4 aim, focus, level, point, train; turn: That bullet was directed at my heart. Direct your attention to the front of the room. 5 send, address, post, mail: Please direct the letter to my home.

--adj. 6 straight, unswerving, shortest, undeviating, through: We turned off the direct road to take in the view. 7 uninterrupted, unreflected, unrefracted, without interference, unobstructed: She cannot remain in direct sunlight for very long. 8 unbroken, lineal: He claims to be a direct descendant of Oliver Cromwell's. 9 straightforward, unmitigated, outright, matter-of-fact, categorical, plain, clear, unambiguous, unmistakable, to the point, without or with no beating about the bush, unqualified, unequivocal, point-blank, explicit, express: I expect a direct answer to my direct question. Have you direct evidence of his guilt? That was a gross insult and a direct lie! 10 straightforward, frank, candid, outspoken, plain-spoken, honest, blunt, open, uninhibited, unreserved, forthright, honest, sincere, unequivocal; undiplomatic, tactless: She is very direct in commenting about people she dislikes.

direction n. 1 directing, aiming, pointing, guiding, guidance, conducting, conduct, instructing, instruction, managing, management, administering, administration, governing, government, supervising, supervision, operating, operation, running, leadership, directorship, directorate, control, captaincy, handling, manipulation, regulation, rule, charge: The Freedom Party's direction of the country has led to many reforms. 2 Often, directions. instruction(s), information; bearing, road, way, route, avenue, course: To assemble the appliance, follow the directions printed in the leaflet. Can you give me directions to the nearest filling-station?

directly adv. 1 straight, in a beeline, unswervingly, undeviatingly, as the crow flies: This road should take me directly to the beach. 2 immediately, at once, straight away, right away, quickly, promptly, without delay, speedily, instantly, Colloq US and Canadian momentarily: She called and I went directly. 3 soon, later (on), anon, presently, in a (little) while, shortly: The doctor will be here directly. 4 exactly, precisely, just; completely, entirely: My garage is directly opposite. The cricket pitch is directly at the centre of the park.

--conj. 5 as soon as, when: The police arrested him directly he entered the building.

director n. 1 executive, administrator, official, principal; chairman, president, vice-president; governor; head, chief, boss, manager, superintendent, supervisor, overseer, foreman, headman, Colloq kingpin, number one, numero uno, Mr Big, the man; Slang top dog, top banana, Brit gaffer, US big cheese, head or chief honcho: The sale of the company was announced at the meeting of the board of directors. 2 guide, leader; steersman, helmsman, pilot, skipper, commander, commandant, captain; cicerone; maestro, concert-master, conductor; impresario: We were lucky to have a director who really knew what he was doing.

dirt n. 1 soil, mud, muck, mire, grime, slime, sludge, ooze, slop; dust, soot; excrement, ordure; filth, waste, refuse, trash, garbage, rubbish, offal, junk, dross, sweepings; leavings, scrap, orts; Slang Brit gunge, US grunge: This vacuum cleaner is guaranteed to pick up any kind of dirt. 2 soil, earth, loam, ground, clay: Hydroponics is the technique of farming without dirt, using only liquid nutrients. 3 indecency, obscenity, smut, pornography, foulness, corruption, filth, vileness: Customs confiscated much of the dirt before it could enter the country. 4 gossip, scandal, talk, rumour, inside information , Colloq low-down, dope, Slang US scuttlebutt: I got the dirt from David about what really happened at the party.

dirty adj. 1 foul, unclean, befouled, soiled, begrimed, sooty, grimy, filthy, mucky, besmeared, besmirched, befouled, polluted, squalid, sullied, stained, spotted, smudged, slovenly, unwashed, bedraggled, slatternly, untidy, Slang Brit gungy, US grungy: If you think his shirt was dirty, you should have seen his body! 2 smutty, indecent, obscene, ribald, off colour, prurient, risqu,, salacious, lewd, lascivious, salacious, pornographic, coarse, licentious, rude, blue, scabrous: His parents were shocked to hear him telling dirty jokes. 3 unfair, unscrupulous, unsporting, dishonest, mean, underhand(ed), unsportsmanlike, dishonourable, deceitful, corrupt, treacherous, perfidious, villainous, disloyal; malicious, malevolent, rotten, filthy: It was a dirty trick of Sue's to tell the teacher. 4 bad, foul, nasty, stormy, rainy, windy, blowy, blowing, squally, sloppy: We're in for some dirty weather, Mr Christian, so you'd best reduce sail. 5 bitter, resentful, angry, furious, wrathful, smouldering: She gave me a dirty look when I said anything about her sister. 6 sordid, base, mean, despicable, contemptible, ignoble, scurvy, low, low-down, ignominious, vile, nasty, infamous: That villain has done his dirty work and now we must all suffer. He's nothing but a dirty coward!

--v. 7 stain, sully, befoul, soil, begrime, besmirch, pollute, muddy, smear, defile; blacken, tarnish: She refused to so much as dirty her hands to help us. Are you afraid it will dirty your reputation to be seen with me?

disability

n. 1 handicap, impairment, defect, infirmity, disablement:

James is unable to play tennis owing to his disability. 2 inability, incapacity, unfitness, impotence, powerlessness, helplessness: The teacher helped her to overcome her disability.

disabled adj. incapacitated, crippled, lame; damaged, ruined, impaired, harmed, non-functioning, inoperative, Slang Brit scuppered: Disabled ex-servicemen ought to receive compensation. No parts could be found for the disabled machines.

disadvantage
n. 1 deprivation, set-back, drawback, liability, handicap, defect, flaw, shortcoming, weakness, weak spot, fault: Being colour-blind has not been a disadvantage in his kind of work. 2 detriment, harm, loss, injury, damage; prejudice, disservice: Failure to send in a tax return will be to your distinct disadvantage.

disagree v. 1 differ, dissent, diverge: She disagrees with most of my ideas. I said the painting was by Hockney, but he disagreed. 2 conflict, dispute, quarrel, argue, contend, contest, bicker, fight, fall out, squabble, wrangle, debate: Those who agree on major principles often disagree about trifles, and vice versa.

disagreeable
adj. 1 unpleasant, unpleasing, offensive, distasteful, repugnant, obnoxious, repellent, repulsive, objectionable, revolting, odious: He found the heat and humidity in the tropics most disagreeable. 2 offensive, noxious, unsavoury, unpalatable, nauseating, nauseous, nasty, sickening, disgusting, revolting, repellent, abominable, objectionable: A disagreeable odour arose from the beggar on the doorstep. 3 bad-tempered, ill-tempered, disobliging, uncooperative, unfriendly, uncivil, abrupt, blunt, curt, brusque, short, uncourtly, impolite, bad-mannered, ill-mannered, discourteous, rude, ill-tempered, bad-tempered, testy, grouchy, splenetic, cross, ill-humoured, peevish, morose, sulky, sullen: Brian became quite disagreeable, and I did not see him again.

disagreement
n. 1 difference, discrepancy, discord, discordance, discordancy, dissimilarity, disaccord, diversity, incongruity, nonconformity, incompatibility: Can you resolve the

disagreement between the results of these experiments? 2 dissent, opposition, conflict, contradiction, difference, disparity: The problem arises from a basic disagreement in their principles. 3 quarrel, strife, argument, dispute, velitation, altercation, controversy, contention, dissension, debate, clash, Colloq US rhubarb: Their mother had to settle the disagreement between the brothers.

disappear v. 1 vanish, evaporate, vaporize, fade (away or out), evanesce, Poetic evanish: After granting my wish, the genie disappeared, laughing diabolically. 2 die (out or off), become extinct, cease (to exist), perish (without a trace): The dinosaurs, though enormously successful as a species, suddenly disappeared from the earth.

disappoint

v. 1 let down, fail, dissatisfy: Miss Sheila disappointed her public by refusing to sing. 2 mislead, deceive, disenchant, Colloq stand up: She disappointed me by saying she would be there and then not arriving. 3 undo, frustrate, foil, thwart, balk, defeat: How can I answer you truthfully without disappointing your expectations?

disappointed

adj. 1 frustrated, unsatisfied, dissatisfied, disillusioned, disenchanted, discouraged, downhearted, disheartened, downcast, saddened, unhappy, dejected, discontented, let down: There will be a lot of disappointed children at Christmas this year. 2 foiled, thwarted, balked, defeated, undone, failed, let down: Though she campaigned energetically, Theodora was among the disappointed candidates.

disappointing

adj. discouraging, dissatisfying, unsatisfactory, unsatisfying, disconcerting; poor, second-rate, sorry, inadequate, insufficient, inferior, pathetic, sad: The former champion turned in a disappointing performance yesterday evening.

disappointment

n. 1 frustration, non-fulfilment,unfulfilment, unsatisfaction, dissatisfaction, set-back, failure, let-down, defeat, blow, fiasco, calamity, disaster, fizzle, Brit damp squib, Colloq wash-out: Recently he has had one disappointment after another.

2 dejection, depression, discouragement, disenchantment, distress, regret, mortification, chagrin: I cannot tell you the disappointment your father and I felt when you failed to get into university.

disapproval

n. disapprobation, condemnation, censure, criticism, reproof, reproach, objection, exception, disfavour, displeasure, dissatisfaction: The council voiced their disapproval of holding a carnival in the village square.

disapprove

v. condemn, criticize, censure, object to, decry, denounce, put or run down, deplore, deprecate, belittle, look down on, frown on or upon, Colloq knock, look down one's nose at, tut-tut: I don't care if you disapprove of my marrying Eustace. The monopolies commission has disapproved the merger.

disarm v. 1 unarm; demilitarize, demobilize, disband, deactivate: After the war, most - but not all - European countries disarmed. 2 win over, put or set at ease, mollify, appease, placate, pacify, reconcile, conciliate, propitiate, charm: I was completely disarmed by her friendly disposition. Many people found his na‹vety disarming.

disaster n. catastrophe, calamity, cataclysm, tragedy, misfortune, d,bƒcle, accident, mishap, blow, act of God, adversity, trouble, reverse: The flooding of the river was as much of a disaster as the earlier drought.

disastrous

adj. 1 calamitous, catastrophic, cataclysmic, tragic, destructive, ruinous, devastating, appalling, harrowing, awful, terrible, dire, horrendous, horrible, horrifying, dreadful, fatal: There has been a disastrous earthquake which killed thousands. 2 awful, terrible, unlucky, unfortunate, detrimental, grievous, harmful: The postal strike has had disastrous effects on the mail-order business.

disband v. disperse, disorganize, scatter, break up, dissolve, demobilize, deactivate, retire: After the war, the special spy force was disbanded.

discard v. 1 get rid of, dispense with, dispose of, throw away or out, toss out or away, abandon, jettison, scrap, Colloq trash, dump, Slang ditch: We discarded boxes of old photographs when we moved house.

--n. 2 reject, cast-off: I felt like a discard from the lonely hearts club.

discernible

adj. 1 perceptible, visible, seeable, perceivable, apparent, clear, observable, plain, detectable; conspicuous, noticeable: A small sailing-boat was discernible on the horizon. 2 distinguishable, recognizable, identifiable, distinct: To me there is a discernible difference between puce and burgundy.

discharge v. 1 release, let out, dismiss, let go, send away; pardon, exonerate, liberate, (set) free, acquit, let off, absolve: She was discharged from hospital yesterday. He was discharged from police custody last week. 2 expel, oust, dismiss, cashier, eject, give notice, Colloq sack, give (someone) the sack, fire, kick out: He was discharged from his job yesterday. 3 shoot, fire (off); set or let off, detonate, explode: It is illegal to discharge a firearm or other explosive device in this area. 4 emit, send out or forth, pour out or forth, gush; disembogue; ooze, leak, exude; excrete, void: The sore in his leg continued to discharge pus. We can ill afford to discharge those effluents into the sea. 5 carry out, perform, fulfil, accomplish, do, execute: He faithfully discharges the duties of his office. 6 pay, settle, liquidate, clear, honour, meet, square (up): Before going off on holiday, we discharged all our financial obligations. 7 unload, offload, disburden, empty: After discharging its cargo, the vessel rode high in the water.

--n. 8 release, dismissal: What is the date of his discharge from the clinic? 9 expulsion, ouster, dismissal, ejection, notice, Colloq the axe or US ax, the sack, the boot, Chiefly US and Canadian walking papers, Slang US and Canadian the bounce, the gate: Her discharge from the firm was rather ignominious. 10 shooting, firing (off), report, shot; salvo, fusillade, volley; detonation, explosion, burst: The discharge of a pistol could not be heard at that distance. I heard the discharge from the guns of the firing squad in the courtyard below. The discharge of the bomb maimed three children. 11 emission, release, void, voiding, excretion, excreting, emptying, flow; ooze, oozing, pus, suppuration, secretion, seepage: The discharge of blood from the wound continued. 12 performance, fulfilment, accomplishment, execution, observance, achievement: The discharge of my family responsibilities will have to await my return from the front. 13 payment, settlement, liquidation, squaring (up), clearance: The bank expects full discharge of all debts before they lend any money. 14 unloading, disburdening, offloading, emptying: The customer will pay in full after the discharge of his cargo.

disciple n. 1 apprentice, pupil, student, proselyte, learner, scholar: Pietro Zampollini was a disciple of the great artist Ravelli. 2 follower, adherent, devotee, admirer, votary; partisan, fan, aficionado: She is a disciple of Louis Armstrong's.

disciplinarian

n. taskmaster, martinet, drill-sergeant; tyrant, despot, dictator: The headmaster at Briarcliffe was a stern disciplinarian who regularly used to beat us.

discipline

n. 1 training, drilling, regimen, exercise, practice, drill, inculcation, indoctrination, instruction, schooling: Strict discipline is good for young people, according to my father. 2 punishment, penalty, chastisement, castigation, correction: The discipline meted out to senior students was very harsh. 3 order, routine, (proper) behaviour, decorum: The sergeant is there to maintain discipline among the recruits. 4 direction, rule, regulation, government, control, subjection, restriction, check, curb, restraint: There was far too much discipline during my childhood, both at school and at home. 5 subject, course, branch of knowledge, area, field, speciality or chiefly US and Canadian specialty: Latin is a discipline which is fast disappearing from our schools.

--v. 6 train, break in, condition, drill, exercise, instruct, coach, teach, school, indoctrinate, inculcate; edify, enlighten, inform: The aim of his education is to discipline him to respond to orders. 7 check, curb, restrain, bridle, control, govern, direct, run, supervise, manage, regulate, hold or keep in check, US ride herd on: You have to discipline those children or they will always misbehave. 8 punish, chastise, castigate, correct, penalize, reprove, criticize, reprimand, rebuke: Discipline that boy or he will just do it again.

disclose v. 1 reveal, impart, divulge, betray, release, tell, blurt out, blab, leak, let slip, report, inform, Colloq spill the beans, blow the gaff, Slang squeal, snitch, squeak, rat, peach, US fink: To get a shorter sentence, he disclosed all to the police. 2 bare, reveal, expose, uncover, show, unveil: When the pie was opened, twenty-four blackbirds were disclosed.

discomfit v. 1 embarrass, abash, disconcert, disturb, confuse, make uneasy or uncomfortable, discompose, fluster, ruffle, confound, perturb, upset, worry, unsettle, unnerve, Colloq rattle, US faze, discombobulate: Being short, she was discomfited by references to her height. 2 frustrate, foil, thwart, baffle, check, defeat, trump, outdo, outwit, overcome: Discomfited by her violent reaction, her attacker fled.

discomfort

n. 1 uneasiness, hardship, difficulty, trouble, care, worry, distress, vexation: She hasn't known the discomfort of being the wife of a miner. 2 ache, pain, twinge, soreness, irritation; bother, inconvenience, nuisance: Some discomfort persisted in my legs long after the accident.

disconcerted

adj. discomposed, discomfited, ruffled, uneasy, put out or off, uncomfortable, queasy, flustered, agitated, upset, shaken, unsettled, perturbed, confused, bewildered, perplexed, baffled, puzzled, US thrown off, Colloq rattled, US fazed, discombobulated; Slang (all) shook (up): They were really disconcerted by the arrival of the police.

disconcerting

adj. awkward, discomfiting, off-putting, upsetting, unnerving, unsettling, disturbing, confusing, confounding, bewildering, perplexing, baffling, puzzling: I found his persistence quite disconcerting.

disconnect

v. separate, disjoin, disunite, uncouple, detach, unhook, undo, disengage, unhitch; cut or break off; cut or pull apart, part, divide, sever: They disconnected the engine after pushing the carriages onto a siding. Disconnect the power before changing the light-bulb.

disconnected

adj. 1 unconnected, separate, apart, unattached; split, separated: A totally disconnected thought suddenly occurred to me. 2 incoherent, irrational, confused, illogical, garbled, disjointed, rambling, mixed-up, unintelligible, uncoordinated, random: He lost the debate because his argument was disconnected and lacked cogency.

discontent

n. displeasure, unhappiness, dissatisfaction, discontentment, distaste, uneasiness; malaise: He felt discontent at being barred from the club.

discontented

adj. displeased, dissatisfied, discontent, annoyed, vexed, fretful, irritated, testy, piqued, petulant, disgruntled, exasperated, Colloq fed up, Slang browned off, pissed off, Brit cheesed or brassed off: The umpire's decision made many fans quite discontented.

discontinue

v. cease, break off, give up, stop, terminate, put an end to, quit, leave off, drop; interrupt, suspend: Please discontinue newspaper delivery until further notice.

discord n. strife, dissension, disagreement, conflict, disharmony, contention, disunity, discordance, division, incompatibility: The seeds of discord between the families were sown generations before.

discordant

adj. 1 contrary, disagreeing, divergent, opposite, opposed, adverse, contradictory, incompatible, differing, different, conflicting, at odds, incongruous, in conflict, in disagreement, at variance, dissimilar: The testimony of the fossils is discordant with the evidence in the legend. 2 inharmonious, dissonant, jarring, cacophonous, unmelodious, unmusical, harsh, strident, jangling, grating: He struck some discordant notes on his zither.

discount v. 1 reduce, mark down, deduct, lower, take or knock off: As I was buying a dozen, he discounted the price by ten per cent. 2 diminish, lessen, minimize, detract from: One must discount what she says when she's angry. 3 disregard, omit, ignore, pass or gloss over, overlook, brush off, dismiss: Those statistics are old and can be discounted.

--n. 4 reduction, mark-down, deduction, rebate, allowance: The shop overstocked the item and is offering it at a big discount.

discourage

v. 1 dispirit, dishearten, daunt, unman, dismay, cow, intimidate, awe, overawe, unnerve: We were discouraged by the arrival of more enemy troops. 2 deter, put off, dissuade, advise or hint against, talk out of, divert from; oppose, disapprove (of), Colloq throw cold water on: They discouraged me from applying again. 3 prevent, inhibit, hinder, stop, slow, suppress, obviate: This paint is supposed to discourage corrosion.

discourteous

adj. uncivil, impolite, rude, unmannerly, ill-mannered, bad-mannered, disrespectful, misbehaved, boorish, abrupt, curt, brusque, short, ungentlemanly, unladylike, insolent, impertinent, ungracious: He had been discourteous and would not be invited again.

discover v. 1 find (out), learn, perceive, unearth, uncover, bring to light, turn or dig up, smoke or search out, root or ferret out; determine, ascertain, track down, identify; locate: He discovered the ninth moon of Saturn. We discovered why the tyre had gone flat. 2 see, spot, catch sight or a glimpse of, lay eyes on, behold, view, encounter, meet (with); notice, espy, descry, detect, discern: He discovered Madagascar lying right on their course. 3 originate, conceive (of), devise, contrive, invent, make up, design, pioneer; come or chance or stumble upon: She discovered a method for tin-plating gold.

discovery n. 1 finding, recognition, uncovering, determining, ascertaining, unearthing; origination, invention, conception, idea; development: Who is credited with the discovery of Christmas Island? That year marks the discovery of a vaccine against smallpox. 2 exploration, disclosure, detection, revelation: He's off on a voyage of discovery.

discredit v. 1 detract, disparage, defame, dishonour, disgrace, degrade, bring into disfavour or disrepute, deprecate, demean, lower, devalue, depreciate, devaluate, belittle, diminish, reduce; slur, slander, vilify, calumniate, sully, smear, blacken, taint, tarnish, besmirch, smirch, stigmatize, asperse, malign, libel: Both of them were thoroughly discredited by the scandal. 2 disbelieve, deny, dispute, doubt, question, raise doubts about, distrust, mistrust, give no credit or credence to: As he's a known liar, you can discredit whatever he tells you. 3 disprove, reject, refute, invalidate; mock, ridicule: The phlogiston theory is generally discredited by most modern chemists.

--n. 4 dishonour, degradation, disfavour, disrepute, ill repute, disgrace, ignominy, infamy, odium, stigma, shame, smear, slur, scandal, obloquy, opprobrium, humiliation: Her performance has brought discredit to all female saxophonists. 5 damage, harm, reflection, slur, aspersion, slander, defamation, blot, brand, tarnish, blemish, taint: The discredit to her reputation is irreparable. 6 doubt, scepticism, dubiousness, doubtfulness, qualm, scruple, question, incredulity, suspicion, distrust, mistrust: The new evidence throws discredit on the validity of the previous testimony.

discreet adj. careful, cautious, prudent, judicious, considerate, guarded, tactful, diplomatic, circumspect, wary, chary, heedful, watchful, circumspect: She has always been very discreet in her business dealings with me.

discrepancy
n. gap, disparity, lacuna, difference, dissimilarity, deviation, divergence, disagreement, incongruity, incompatibility, inconsistency, variance; conflict, discordance, contrariety: There is a great discrepancy between what he says and what he means.

discrete adj. separate, distinct, individual, disconnected, unattached, discontinuous: These items must be treated as discrete entities and not taken together.

discretion

n. 1 tact, diplomacy, prudence, care, discernment, sound judgement, circumspection, sagacity, common sense, good sense, wisdom, discrimination: You can rely on my discretion not to reveal the club's secrets. 2 choice, option, judgement, preference, pleasure, disposition, volition; wish, will, liking, inclination: Buyers may subscribe to insurance cover at their own discretion.

discriminate

v. 1 distinguish, separate, differentiate, discern, draw a distinction, tell the difference: He cannot discriminate between good art and bad. 2 favour, disfavour, segregate, show favour or prejudice or bias for or against, be intolerant: It is illegal here to discriminate against people on the basis of race, creed, or colour.

discriminating

adj. discerning, perceptive, critical, keen, fastidious, selective, particular, selective, fussy, refined, cultivated: From the wine you chose, I see you are a lady of discriminating tastes.

discrimination

n. 1 bigotry, prejudice, bias, intolerance, favouritism, one-sidedness, unfairness, inequity: In Nazi Germany discrimination was practised against everyone except the Nazis. 2 taste, perception, perceptiveness, discernment, refinement, acumen, insight, penetration, keenness, judgement, sensitivity; connoisseurship, aestheticism: He exercises excellent discrimination in his choice of paintings.

discursive

adj. wandering, meandering, digressing, digressive, rambling, circuitous, roundabout, diffuse, long-winded, verbose, wordy, prolix, windy: Frobisher was again boring everyone with his discursive description of life in an igloo.

discuss v. converse about, talk over or about, chat about, deliberate (over), review, examine, consult on; debate, argue, thrash out: We discussed the problem but came to no conclusion.

discussion

n. conversation, talk, chat, dialogue, colloquy, exchange, deliberation, examination, scrutiny, analysis, review; confabulation, conference, powwow; debate, argument; Colloq chiefly Brit chin-wag, US and Canadian bull session: The subject of your dismissal came up for discussion yesterday.

disdainful
adj. contemptuous, scornful, contumelious, derisive, sneering, superior, supercilious, pompous, proud, prideful, arrogant, haughty, snobbish, lordly, regal; jeering, mocking, insolent, insulting, Colloq hoity-toity, high and mighty, stuck-up, highfalutin or hifalutin; Slang snotty: She was most disdainful of our efforts to enter the cosmetics market.

disease n. 1 sickness, affliction, ailment, malady, illness, infection, complaint, disorder, condition, infirmity, disability, Archaic murrain, Colloq bug: The colonel contracted the disease while in Malaysia. 2 blight, cancer, virus, plague; contagion: Panic spread through the Exchange like an infectious disease.

diseased adj. unhealthy, unwell, ill, sick, ailing, unsound, infirm, out of sorts, abed, infected, contaminated; afflicted, abnormal: We must care for the diseased patients before those with broken bones.

disembark v. land, alight, go or put ashore, get or step off or out, leave; debark, detrain, deplane: Tomorrow we disembark at Tunis.

disembodied
adj. incorporeal, bodiless; intangible, immaterial, insubstantial or unsubstantial, impalpable, unreal; spiritual, ghostly, spectral, phantom, wraithlike: She wafted before his eyes, a disembodied spirit.

disenchanted
adj. disillusioned, disabused, undeceived, disappointed; blas,, indifferent, jaundiced, sour(ed), cynical: I'm afraid she's now thoroughly disenchanted with her job.

disengage v. loose, loosen, unloose, detach, unfasten, release, disconnect, disjoin, undo, disunite, divide, cleave (from), separate, uncouple, part, disinvolve, extricate, get out (of), get away (from), cut loose, throw off, shake (off), get rid of, break (with or from), break (up) (with); unbuckle, unhitch, unclasp, unlatch, unbolt, unlock, unleash, unfetter, unchain, unlace, unhook, unbind, untie; (set) free, liberate, disentangle: She was holding on to me so tenaciously that I could hardly disengage myself.

disfavour n. 1 disapproval, dislike, displeasure, disapprobation, unhappiness: Katerina regards your decision with disfavour. 2 disesteem, discredit, dishonour, disgrace, disrepute: After last night's events, we are really in disfavour with the management.

--v. 3 disapprove (of), dislike, discountenance, frown on or upon: We strongly disfavour the merger.

disfigured
adj. marred, damaged, scarred, defaced, mutilated, injured, impaired, blemished, disfeatured, deformed, distorted, spoilt or spoiled, ruined: Plastic surgery has repaired her disfigured face.

disgrace n. 1 ignominy, shame, humiliation, embarrassment, degradation, debasement, dishonour, discredit, disfavour, disrepute, vitiation, infamy; disesteem, contempt, odium, obloquy, opprobrium: His conduct has brought disgrace on his family. 2 blemish, harm, aspersion, blot, scandal, slur, stigma, vilification, smirch, smear, stain, taint, black mark: The way she has been treated by the company is a disgrace.

--v. 3 shame, humiliate, embarrass, mortify: He has been disgraced by his son's cowardice. 4 degrade, debase, dishonour, discredit, disfavour, vitiate, defame, disparage, scandalize, slur, stain, taint, stigmatize, sully, besmirch, smirch, tarnish, smear, asperse, vilify, blacken, drag through the mud, reflect (adversely) on: Once again his actions have disgraced the family name.

disgraceful
adj. 1 shameful, humiliating, embarrassing, dishonourable, disreputable, infamous, ignominious, degrading, debasing, degraded, debased, base, low, vile, corrupt, bad, wrong, sinful, evil, low, mean, despicable, contemptible, opprobrious: He was forced to submit to the most disgraceful punishment. 2

shameless, outrageous, notorious, shocking, scandalous, improper, unseemly, unworthy; indecent, rude, flagrant, lewd, lascivious, delinquent, objectionable: Your drunken behaviour at the party last night was a disgraceful performance.

disgruntled

adj. displeased, dissatisfied, irritated, peeved, vexed, cross, exasperated, annoyed, unhappy, disappointed, discontented, put out; malcontent, discontent, testy, cranky, peevish, grouchy, grumpy, moody, sullen, sulky, ill-humoured, bad-tempered, ill-tempered, Colloq fed up, Slang browned off, Brit cheesed off: He was disgruntled at the thought of having to go shopping in the pouring rain.

disguise v. 1 camouflage, cover up, conceal, hide, mask: The van was disguised as a hay wagon. 2 misrepresent, falsify, counterfeit, fake, deceive: They have disguised the true profits to avoid paying taxes.

--n. 3 guise, identity, cover-up, camouflage, appearance, semblance, form, outfit, costume: She appeared in the disguise of a policewoman. 4 pretence, deception, dissimulation, fa‡ade, semblance, Colloq front: Disguise is seldom resorted to by spies these days.

disgust v. 1 sicken, offend, nauseate, repel, revolt, put off, outrage, appal, Slang gross out: His patronizing attitude disgusts those who work for him.

--n. 2 revulsion, nausea, sickness, repugnance, fulsomeness, outrage, distaste, aversion: One look at the food filled me with disgust. 3 loathing, contempt, hatred, abhorrence, odium, animus, animosity, enmity, antagonism, antipathy, dislike: Some feel disgust at the thought of eating insects.

disgusted adj. nauseated, sickened, nauseous, queasy; offended, outraged, Colloq fed up (with), sick (of), sick and tired (of); Slang US grossed out: Disgusted customers complain about delays in service.

disgusting

adj. nauseating, sickening, offensive, outrageous, sick-making, fulsome, repulsive, revolting, repugnant, off-putting, repellent, obnoxious, loathsome, gross, vile, foul, nasty; unappetizing, unsavoury, objectionable, distasteful: Spitting in public is now considered a disgusting way to behave.

dishonest adj. untrustworthy, underhand(ed), dishonourable, fraudulent, fake, counterfeit, deceiving, deceptive, unfair, double-dealing, thieving, thievish, knavish, cheating, deceitful, lying, untruthful, mendacious, treacherous, perfidious, corrupt, unscrupulous, unprincipled; two-faced, hypocritical; Colloq crooked, shady; Chiefly Brit slang bent: He was so dishonest he stole from his mother's purse.

dishonour v. 1 insult, abuse, affront, outrage, slight, offend, injure: His slaughter of the prisoners has dishonoured our flag. 2 disgrace, degrade, shame, debase, humiliate, mortify, abase, vitiate, humble: We were all dishonoured by our colleague's defection. 3 defile, violate, ravish, rape, seduce, deflower, debauch: The general learned that his wife had been dishonoured by one of his adjutants.

--n. 4 disesteem, disrespect, irreverence, slight, indignity, ignominy, disgrace, shame, disrepute, discredit, insult, offence, affront, loss of face, depreciation, belittlement, disparagement, detraction, derogation, obloquy: You cannot retreat without dishonour. 5 aspersion, defamation, libel, slander, blot, slur, smear, smirch, black mark, blemish, denigration: His actions have brought us dishonour.

dishonourable
adj. 1 disgraceful, degrading, inglorious, ignominious, shameful, shaming, base, debased: After the court martial, he received a dishonourable discharge. 2 unprincipled, shameless, corrupt, unscrupulous, untrustworthy, treacherous, traitorous, perfidious, dishonest, hypocritical, two-faced, duplicitous, disreputable, discreditable, base, despicable; disloyal, unfaithful, faithless: A double agent is considered dishonourable by both governments. 3 improper, unseemly, unbecoming, unworthy, outrageous, objectionable, reprehensible, flagrant, bad, evil, vile, low, mean, contemptible, below or beneath criticism, foul, heinous, dirty, filthy: Informing on your classmates is the most dishonourable thing you can do.

disillusion

v. disabuse, disappoint, disenchant, disenchant, break the spell, enlighten, set straight, disentrance, disenthral, undeceive: When I saw her without make-up, I was thoroughly disillusioned.

disinclined
adj. averse, indisposed, reluctant, unwilling, loath, opposed, unwilling; hesitant: I was disinclined to try skydiving.

disinfect v. clean, cleanse, purify, purge, sanitize, fumigate, decontaminate, sterilize: The bedding will have to be disinfected before it can be used.

disinfectant
n. germicide, antiseptic, sterilizer, bactericide, sanitizer, fumigant, decontaminant, decontaminator, purifier, cleaner, cleanser: Most disinfectants are poisonous.

disingenuous
adj. clever, artful, crafty, sly, on the qui vive, cunning, insidious, foxy, wily, slick, smooth; insincere, false, dishonest, tricky, devious, deceitful, underhand(ed), guileful, shifty; double-dealing, two-faced, duplicitous, hypocritical, scheming, plotting, calculating, designing, contriving: It is disingenuous to ask for advice when what you want is assistance.

disintegrate
v. break up or apart, shatter, come or fall apart, come or go or fall to pieces, crumble; decompose, rot, decay, moulder: The fossil disintegrated in my hands.

disinterested
n. unbiased, impartial, unprejudiced, altruistic, objective, fair, neutral, open-minded, equitable, just, dispassionate, detached, even-handed, impersonal, uninvolved: The judge is supposed to be a disinterested party.

disjointed
adj. 1 disjoined, separate(d), disconnected, unconnected, dismembered, disunited, divided, split (up): The disjointed parts of the building were kept in a warehouse. 2 ununified, loose, incoherent, confused, aimless, directionless, rambling, muddled, jumbled, mixed up, fitful, discontinuous, disorganized,

unorganized, disorderly: His speech was disjointed - total gibberish.

dislike   v. 1 be averse to, mind, turn from, disfavour, disesteem, be put or turned off by; hate, loathe, scorn, despise, contemn, detest, abominate, execrate: I no longer dislike spinach.

--n. 2 aversion, displeasure, distaste, disfavour, disesteem, disrelish, disaffection, disinclination; loathing, hatred, animus, animosity, antipathy, detestation, contempt, execration, ill will; disgust, repugnance; hostility, antagonism: I took an instant dislike to the fellow. She feels an intense dislike for her father.

disloyal adj. unfaithful, faithless, untrue, false, untrustworthy, recreant; treasonable or treasonous, treacherous, traitorous, unpatriotic, subversive, perfidious, deceitful; renegade, apostate, heretical: It would be disloyal of you not to vote along party lines.

dismal   adj. depressing, gloomy, cheerless, melancholy, sombre, dreary, sad, bleak, funereal, lugubrious, forlorn, morose, solemn, dark, grim, wretched, woebegone, woeful, black, blue, joyless, doleful, dolorous, unhappy, miserable, lowering; pessimistic: She was alone, alone on the dismal moor. The prospects for the company looked very dismal.

dismay   v. 1 alarm, frighten, scare, terrify, appal, panic, horrify, petrify, intimidate, cow, disconcert, unnerve: We were dismayed when the motor-cycle gang came to the house. 2 unsettle, discompose, upset, discourage, take aback, startle, shock, put off, dishearten: I was dismayed to hear she was still married to Grimsby.

--n. 3 consternation, alarm, anxiety, agitation, terror, panic, horror, shock, fright, fear, trepidation, apprehension, dread, awe: The thought of the children alone in the boat filled me with dismay.

dismiss   v. 1 discharge, oust, release, give notice (to), let go, lay off, throw out, toss out, remove, Chiefly military cashier, Old-fashioned military drum out, Brit politics deselect, Colloq fire, send packing, kick out, Brit sack, give (someone) the sack, boot (out), turn off, US give (someone) his or her walking papers, give (someone) a pink slip, can; Slang give (someone) the (old) heave-ho: Gabney has been dismissed without notice. 2 reject, set aside, repudiate, spurn, discount, disregard, lay aside, put out of one's mind, think no more of, write off, banish, have or be done with, scorn, discard, ignore, shrug off; belittle, diminish, pooh-pooh: She dismissed the story as just so much gossip. 3 disperse, release, disband, send away: After returning from the mission, the commando unit was dismissed.

dismissal n. 1 discharge, expulsion, notice, Colloq firing, bounce, marching orders, Chiefly US and Canadian walking papers, Brit sack, sacking, one's cards, US pink slip; Slang the (old) heave-ho , Brit the boot: Cholmondley got his dismissal yesterday. 2 cancellation, adjournment, discharge, end, release; cong,: The judge ordered dismissal of the charge of murder.

disobedient
adj. 1 insubordinate, unruly, naughty, mischievous, bad, ill-behaved, badly behaved, obstreperous, unmanageable, refractory, fractious, ungovernable, uncomplying, unsubmissive, wayward, non-compliant, incompliant, intractable, defiant; delinquent, derelict, disregardful, remiss, undutiful: Disobedient children will be kept in after school. 2 contrary, perverse, wilful, headstrong, stubborn, recalcitrant, obdurate, obstinate, contumacious, wayward, cross-grained, opposed, mutinous, rebellious, revolting, anarchic, Colloq pigheaded: We cannot tolerate disobedient recruits.

disobey   v. defy, break, contravene, flout, disregard, ignore, resist, oppose, violate, transgress, overstep, go counter to, fly in the face of, infringe, thumb one's nose at, snap one's fingers at, Brit cock a snook at; mutiny, rebel, revolt, strike: You cannot play because you disobeyed the rules. If anyone disobeys, throw him in irons.

disorder n. 1 disarray, confusion, chaos, disorderliness, disorganization, untidiness, mess, muddle, jumble, hash, mishmash, tangle, hotchpotch or US and Canadian also hodgepodge, derangement, shambles, clutter: After the party, the place was in terrible disorder. 2 tumult, riot, disturbance, pandemonium, upheaval, ferment, fuss, unrest, uproar, hubbub, hullabaloo, commotion, clamour, turbulence, turmoil, turbulence, violence, bedlam, free-for-all, rumpus, brouhaha, fracas, affray, fray, brawl, Donnybrook, scuffle, fight, mˆl,e or melee, battle royal, battle, civil disorder, breach of the peace, Colloq Brit kerfuffle or carfuffle or kurfuffle, Slang Brit bovver: The army had to be called out to quell the disorder. 3 ailment, illness, sickness, affliction, malady, affection, complaint, disease: The doctors diagnosed it as a liver disorder.

--v. 4 upset, disarrange, muddle, confuse, confound, unsettle, disorganize, discompose, shake up, disturb, mix (up), befuddle, jumble, scramble, tangle, snarl: You obscure the sense when you disorder the words.

disorderly

adj. 1 confused, chaotic, scrambled, muddled, disordered, irregular, untidy, messy, messed-up, disarranged, disorganized, unorganized, jumbled, cluttered, haphazard, in disarray, pell-mell, helter-skelter, Colloq topsy-turvy, higgledy-piggledy: The books lay about in disorderly array. 2 unruly, uncontrolled, undisciplined, ungoverned, disobedient, mutinous, rebellious, lawless, obstreperous, refractory, turbulent, violent, tumultuous, unrestrained, boisterous, noisy, rowdy, wild; unmanageable, ungovernable, uncontrollable, intractable: He was charged with being drunk and disorderly.

disorientated

n. confused, bewildered, lost, adrift, (all) at sea, mixed up, uncertain, unsure, insecure, disoriented, Colloq out of it, in a fog, Brit off (the) beam, US off the beam: I left by another door and was completely disorientated for a moment.

disparage v. 1 belittle, diminish, depreciate, devalue or devaluate, cheapen, talk down, discredit, dishonour, decry, demean, criticize, denigrate, deprecate, derogate, underrate, undervalue, downgrade, reduce, minimize: She keeps making remarks that disparage her husband. 2 run down, slander, libel, defame, traduce, malign, backbite, vilify, insult, stab in the back, US back-stab; Colloq poor mouth; Slang US and Canadian bad-mouth: A loving person never disparages others.

disparity n. difference, discrepancy, gap, inequality, unevenness, imbalance, dissimilarity, contrast, imparity, inconsistency, incongruity: Our interests differ owing to the disparity in our ages.

dispassionate
adj. 1 cool, calm, composed, self-possessed, unemotional, unexcited, unexcitable, unflappable, level-headed, sober, self-controlled, even-tempered, unruffled, unmoved, tranquil, equable, placid, peaceful, serene: You can count on Henry for a dispassionate treatment of the subject. 2 fair, impartial, neutral, disinterested, detached, equitable, even-handed, unbiased, just, objective, unprejudiced, open-minded, candid, frank, open: The judge is known to be completely dispassionate in his decisions.

dispatch v. 1 send off or away or out, send on one's way: We dispatched a messenger with the parcel. 2 send, mail, post, transmit, forward, ship, express, remit, convey , Chiefly US and Canadian freight: Please dispatch this letter as quickly as possible. 3 kill, murder, slay, dispose of, put to death, execute, do away with, do in, assassinate,- liquidate, finish (off), put an end to, put away (for good), Slang polish off, bump off, eliminate, gun down, silence, get, erase, rub out, knock off, bury, US ice, hit, take for a ride, waste, zap: The gang soon dispatched all their rivals. 4 hasten, hurry, speed up, accelerate, get done, accomplish, get through, conclude, finish off, complete, execute, do: The task was dispatched in just two days.

--n. 5 haste, speed, promptness, quickness, expedition, expeditiousness, celerity, alacrity, swiftness, hurry, rapidity: She concluded the interview with dispatch and sent me away. 6 communiqu,, report, bulletin, story, news (item), communication, message, piece: document, instruction, missive: Here is a dispatch from our correspondent on Pitcairn Island. 7 execution, killing, murder, disposal, assassination, dispatching, slaying: The dispatch of the consul left us without a representative.

dispensable
adj. disposable, non-essential, unessential, inessential, unnecessary, unneeded, expendable, superfluous, needless, useless: He said that a dishwasher was a luxury and entirely dispensable.

dispense v. 1 distribute, give out, hand or pass out, furnish, supply, provide, give away, deal (out), dole out, parcel out, disburse, mete out, share (out), issue, apportion, allocate, allot, assign, Colloq dish out: The Red Cross dispensed medicines to the stricken villagers. 2 administer, conduct, direct, operate, superintend, supervise, carry out, execute, discharge, apply, implement, enforce: It is the governor who dispenses justice in these islands. 3 dispense with. a do without, forgo, give up, eschew, relinquish, refuse, waive, forswear, abstain (from), renounce, reject: Can we dispense with the jokes and get to work? b do away with, get rid of, eliminate, do without, dispose of, abolish, manage or do without, remove, cancel, ignore, render unnecessary or superfluous: Building on solid rock will dispense with the need for a foundation.

disperse v. 1 spread (out), scatter, broadcast, distribute, circulate, diffuse, disseminate: The practice is now widely dispersed throughout Asia. 2 disband, spread out, scatter, dissipate, break up; disappear, vanish; dispel, dismiss, rout, send off or away: The crowd dispersed quietly.

displace v. 1 move, transfer, shift, relocate, dislocate, misplace, disturb, disarrange, disorder, unsettle: The entire population of the village was displaced when the dam was built. 2 expel, unseat, eject, evict, exile, banish, depose, remove, oust, dismiss, discharge, cashier, Colloq fire, kick or throw out, Brit sack: The voters displaced the corrupt council. 3 take the place of, supplant, replace, supersede, succeed: Watching television has displaced reading in many modern homes.

display v. 1 show, exhibit, air, put or set forth, make visible, expose, evince, manifest, demonstrate, betray, reveal, unveil, disclose; advertise, publicize: Her paintings are being displayed at the gallery today. 2 unfurl, unfold, spread or stretch or open out, present: The ship suddenly displayed the Jolly Roger. 3 show off, flaunt, parade, flourish, vaunt, Colloq flash: He goes on those quiz programmes only to display his knowledge.

--n. 4 show, exhibition, exhibit, presentation, array; demonstration; exposition, manifestation, revelation: We visited a display of weapons at the armoury. I have seldom seen such a display of ignorance. 5 ostentation, spectacle, flourish, show, parade, ceremony, pageantry, pageant, splendour, array, panoply, magnificence, grandeur, pomp, splash, ,clat, ,lan, dash: The display put on for Queen Victoria's jubilee was truly lavish.

displease v. offend, put out, dissatisfy, upset, provoke, exasperate, worry, trouble, vex, annoy, irritate, pique, irk, nettle, peeve, chafe, rile, ruffle, anger, infuriate, frustrate, get (someone's) goat, Colloq miff; Slang US bug: Having to listen to rock 'n' roll on your damned hi-fi is what displeases me most.

displeasure
n. 1 dissatisfaction, disapproval, disfavour, discontentment, distaste, dislike, discountenance: Your parents view your giving up college with displeasure and disappointment. 2 annoyance, irritation, vexation, chagrin, indignation, dudgeon, ire, anger, exasperation: He incurred the king's displeasure and was banished from the land.

disposable
adj. 1 discardable, throw-away, non-returnable, paper, plastic, biodegradable: The new product is packaged in a disposable container. 2 available, liquid, spendable, usable, expendable, obtainable: Her disposable assets include valuable government bonds.

dispose   v. 1 place, arrange, move, adjust, order, array, organize, set up, situate, group, distribute, put: She is planning how to dispose the furniture in the room. 2 incline, influence, persuade, induce, bend, tempt, move, motivate, lead, prompt, urge: Her actions disposed me to cut her out of my will. 3 dispose of. a deal with, settle, decide, determine, conclude, finish (with): I hope we can dispose of these matters quickly. b throw away or out, discard, get rid of, jettison, scrap, Colloq dump, junk, US trash: Dispose of the remains of the broken chair. c distribute, give out, deal out, give (away), dispense, apportion, parcel out, allot, part with, transfer, make over, bestow, sell: My grandfather disposed of his wealth before he died. d do away with, finish off, put away, demolish, destroy, consume, devour, eat, Slang kill (off), knock off, polish off: She could dispose of four hamburgers at one sitting. The boys disposed of Louie because he knew too much.

disposed adj. likely, inclined, apt, liable, given, tending or leaning towards, prone, subject, of a mind to, minded, willing, ready, predisposed: She was still awake when he got home and seemed disposed to talk.

disposition

n. 1 character, temper, attitude, temperament, nature, personality, bent, frame of mind, humour, make-up, spirit: Alan's son David has a cheerful disposition. 2 arrangement, organization, placement, disposal, ordering, grouping, set, placing: I don't care much for the disposition of the furniture. 3 transfer, transference, dispensation, disposal, assignment, settlement, determination, bestowal, parcelling out, distribution: The disposition of father's assets is not your affair. 4 determination, choice, disposal, power, command, control, management, discretion, decision, regulation: Distribution of favours is at the disposition of the crown.

dispossess

v. evict, expel, oust, eject, turn or drive out, dislodge, Colloq kick or throw out, Brit boot out, US bounce: The landlord dispossessed them for non-payment of rent.

disproportion

n. inequality, unevenness, disparity, imbalance, asymmetry, irregularity, lopsidedness, dissimilarity, inconsistency, incongruity: Now that we're older, there isn't such a disproportion in our ages.

disproportionate

adj. unbalanced, out of proportion, asymmetrical, irregular, lopsided, dissimilar, inconsistent, incommensurate, incongruous; unfair, unequal, uneven, disparate: The windows are disproportionate to the size of the house. The contractor was paid a disproportionate amount for his work.

disprove v. refute, confute, invalidate, contradict, negate, rebut, discredit, controvert, puncture, demolish, destroy, Colloq shoot or poke full of holes: Modern science has disproved the phlogiston theory.

disputable

n. debatable, moot, doubtful, uncertain, dubious, questionable, uncertain, undecided, unsettled, controversial; arguable: His claim to ownership of the property is disputable.

dispute v. 1 argue with or against, question, debate, challenge, impugn, gainsay, deny, oppose, fight (against), object to, take exception to, disagree with, contest, confute, quarrel with, doubt, raise doubts about, dissent (from): The council dispute his right to build a hotel on that land. 2 argue (about), debate, discuss, quarrel about, wrangle over, differ (on or about): A bill of rights has occasionally been disputed in Parliament.

--n. 3 argument, debate, disagreement, difference (of opinion), controversy, polemic, conflict, quarrel, wrangle, velitation; discussion; Colloq Brit argy-bargy or argie-bargie or argle-bargle: There is a dispute about the runner's eligibility for the race. 4 conflict, disturbance, fight, altercation, row, disagreement, brawl, Donnybrook, feud, rumpus, fracas; strife, discord; tiff, velitation, US spat: Four people have been injured in the dispute.

disqualify

v. declare ineligible or unqualified, turn down or away, reject, exclude, bar, debar, rule out: He was disqualified from voting because of his age.

disregard v. 1 ignore, overlook, pay little or no heed or attention to, take little or no notice or account of, dismiss from one's mind or thoughts, turn a blind eye or deaf ear to, brush aside, pass up, wink or blink at, make light of, let go by, gloss over, Rare pretermit: I shall disregard those insulting remarks. 2 snub, slight, turn up one's nose at, disparage, despise, contemn, disdain, scorn, (give the) cold shoulder (to), cut; underrate, underestimate, take little or no account of, undervalue, minimize, dismiss, sneeze at, Slang brush off, give the go-by: Visitors often disregard the cultural attractions of Las Vegas.

--n. 3 disrespect, contempt, indifference, inattention, non-observance, neglect, heedlessness, Rare pretermission; disdain, low regard, disesteem: Some drive with a profound disregard for the law.

disrepair n. decay, ruin, collapse, dilapidation, deterioration, ruination: The house is in a terrible state of disrepair.

disreputable

adj. 1 low, base, abject, contemptuous, unrespectable, disrespectable, untrustworthy, discreditable, dishonourable, disgraceful, reprehensible, shameful, despicable, ignominious, bad, wicked, heinous, vicious, iniquitous, vile, opprobrious, scandalous, louche, questionable, dubious, Colloq shady: She keeps disreputable company. 2 dishevelled, unkempt, slovenly, untidy, shabby, disordered, messy, dirty, bedraggled, scruffy, seedy, threadbare, tattered, Brit down at heel, raddled, US down at the heel(s), Colloq sloppy, Slang Brit grotty: That disreputable beggar is your brother?

disrespect

n. rudeness, impoliteness, discourtesy, incivility, unmannerliness, irreverence, impudence, impertinence, insolence, indecorum, Colloq cheek: I meant no disrespect by keeping my hat on, ma'am.

disrespectful

adj. impolite, rude, discourteous, uncivil, unmannerly, ill-mannered, bad-mannered, irreverent, impudent, insolent, indecorous, pert, saucy, forward, Colloq fresh, cheeky: Sara is sometimes disrespectful to her elders.

disrobe   v. undress, strip, bare oneself: She disrobed and put on a swimsuit.

disrupt   v. 1 disorder, upset, disorganize, disturb, unsettle, shake up, disconcert, agitate: You've disrupted my plan completely. 2 interrupt, break in or into, interfere (with): They disrupted the meeting with their loud outbursts.

dissatisfaction

n. 1 discontent, discontentment, unhappiness, displeasure, non-fulfilment, disappointment, frustration, discomfort, uneasiness, disquiet, malaise: I was left with a feeling of dissatisfaction at the end of the play. 2 annoyance, irritation, dismay, displeasure: Complaints concerning dissatisfaction with the food plagued the hospital administrators.

dissatisfied

adj. discontented, displeased, disappointed, unsatisfied, discontent, disgruntled, unhappy, unfulfilled, ungratified, frustrated: We return the full purchase price to any dissatisfied customer.

dissension

n. disagreement, dissent, discord, contention, strife, conflict, discordance, friction: The issue has sown dissension among the members.

disservice

n. harm, damage, injury, wrong, unkindness, bad turn, disfavour, injustice: It was a disservice to tell my boss about my expense account.

dissident n. 1 dissenter, nonconformist, protester or protestor, heretic, rebel, apostate, recusant; revolutionary: Many dissidents were released and allowed to leave the country.

--adj. 2 disagreeing, nonconformist, nonconforming, dissenting, dissentient, apostate, non-compliant, heterodox, discordant, conflicting, contentious: The couple spent ten years in Siberia for promoting their dissident philosophy.

dissimilar

adj. different, unlike, unalike, distinct, separate, contrasting, diverse, unrelated, heterogeneous: The styles are entirely dissimilar.

dissimilarity

n. difference, dissimilitude, unlikeness, disparity; discrepancy: The dissimilarities between art deco and art nouveau are too numerous to mention.

dissimulate

v. pretend, dissemble, feign, disguise, camouflage, cover up, conceal, deceive, misrepresent, fake, counterfeit: She's dissimulating her real attitude towards the wealthy.

dissimulation

n. deception, misrepresentation, dissembling, deceit, deception, hypocrisy, sham, pretence, duplicity, double-dealing:

There can be no dissimulation between honest people.

dissipate v. 1 scatter, spread (out), disperse, be dispelled, diffuse; disseminate, sow, distribute; break up: The crowd had dissipated by noon. 2 spread thin, evaporate, vanish, disappear, vaporize, peter out, diminish: By the time we were ready to go, the clouds had dissipated. 3 squander, waste, fritter away, throw away, burn up, use up, exhaust, run through: By the time he was twenty, he had dissipated a huge fortune. 4 revel, carouse, party, sow one's wild oats, burn the candle at both ends, roister, make merry, debauch, go on a spree: Before their marriage, he was seen dissipating in the fleshpots of Europe.

dissipation

n. 1 squandering, waste, wastefulness, profligacy, abandon, abandonment, self-indulgence, self-gratification, overindulgence, intemperance, hedonism, fast or high living, dolce vita, voluptuousness, sensualism, sybaritism, dissoluteness, dissolution, excess(es), wantonness, debauchery, carousing, prodigality, recklessness, extravagance, rakishness: Owing to my dissipation, I had become an alcoholic vagrant. 2 disappearance, dispersion, dispersal, diffusion, scattering, vanishing: The dissipation of the tear-gas was rapid in the strong breeze. 3 distraction, amusement, diversion, entertainment: Reading, once a dissipation, had become an obsession.

dissociate

v. separate, cut off, sever, disassociate, disjoin, disconnect, abstract, disengage, detach, isolate, distance, break off (from), break up (with), divorce, set apart, segregate: I have carefully dissociated myself from any political party.

dissolute adj. dissipated, debauched, abandoned, corrupt, degenerate, rakish, profligate, wanton, rakehell, intemperate, incontinent, loose, licentious, overindulgent, carousing, self-indulgent, hedonistic, pleasure-bound, immoral, amoral, libidinous, unrestrained, depraved: He has paid dearly for his dissolute life.

dissolution

n. 1 disintegration, separation, breakup, breakdown, separation, breaking up, breaking down, collapse, undoing: Much ill will attended the dissolution of our marriage. 2 destruction, decomposition, decay, ruin, overthrow, dissolving, disbandment, dismissal, dispersal, disorganization, discontinuation; adjournment, ending, end, termination, conclusion, finish: A vote of no confidence led to the dissolution of Parliament.

dissolve v. 1 melt (away), liquefy, disperse, disintegrate, diffuse, decompose, thaw (out), fuse, deliquesce; sublime; vanish, disappear, fade (away), diminish, decline, peter out: Dissolve one tablet in water. The sugar dissolved in the tea. 2 collapse, break into, melt into: She dissolved into tears whenever he shouted at her. 3 break up, disperse, dismiss, terminate, finish, conclude, adjourn, recess, disband, wind up; liquidate: We took a vote and dissolved the meeting.

distance n. 1 remoteness, space, gap, interval, mileage, footage, stretch: What is the distance from here to your house? 2 aloofness, detachment, reserve, coolness, haughtiness, hauteur, stiffness, rigidity: He maintains a distance between himself and the servants.

--v. 3 separate, detach, dissociate, disassociate: She distanced herself from her students.

distant adj. 1 far, far-off, remote, far-away, long-way-off; removed: The creature said he had come from a distant star. 2 away, off: The ship is ten miles distant. 3 aloof, detached, reserved, cool, cold, haughty, standoffish, unapproachable, inaccessible, withdrawn, reticent, ceremonious, formal, stiff, rigid, frigid, unfriendly: You find him warm, but I think him very distant.

distaste n. 1 dislike, disfavour, antipathy, disrelish, disinclination; dissatisfaction, displeasure, discontentment: You know of my distaste for cocktail parties. 2 aversion, revulsion, disgust, nausea, abhorrence, loathing, repugnance, horror: She has a distinct distaste for avocado pears.

distasteful

adj. disgusting, revolting, sick-making, nauseating, nauseous, repugnant, repulsive, loathsome, fulsome, nasty, disagreeable, foul, off-putting, unpalatable, obnoxious, objectionable, offensive, unpleasing, unpleasant, displeasing: I found their children's table manners quite distasteful.

distinct adj. 1 clear, perceptible, plain, understandable, vivid, definite, well-defined, precise, exact, unmistakable or unmistakeable, noticeable, recognizable, obvious, patent, marked, manifest, evident, apparent, explicit, unambiguous, clear-cut, palpable, unequivocal, lucid, sharp, pellucid, limpid, transparent: There is a distinct outline of a figure on the Turin shroud. 2 separate, detached, discrete, different, dissimilar, distinguishable, distinguished; individual, sui generis, unique, special, singular; peculiar, unusual, uncommon, contrasting: The government of Puerto Rico is distinct from that of the US. He has been charged with three distinct offences.

distinction

n. 1 differentiation, discrimination, difference, contrast, separation, division, dividing line; distinctiveness: Any distinction between them is difficult to discern. 2 honour, credit, prominence, eminence, pre-eminence, superiority, uniqueness, greatness, excellence, quality, merit, worth, value, prestige, note, importance, significance, consequence, renown, fame, repute, reputation, celebrity, glory, account: We all know her as a scholar of distinction.

distinctive

adj. distinguishing, characteristic, unique, singular, distinct, individual, typical, idiosyncratic, peculiar: She has developed a distinctive style of her own.

distinguish

v. 1 differentiate, discriminate, tell the difference, tell apart, determine, judge, decide, tell who's who or what's what: He is still unable to distinguish between his own twin daughters. 2 classify, categorize, characterize, individualize, mark, identify, define, designate, denote, indicate, separate, single out, set apart; grade, group: The male is distinguished by his brighter colouring. 3 sense, make out, perceive, discern, pick out, recognize, identify, detect, notice; see, espy, descry; hear; smell; taste; feel: I could distinguish two people in the dark. 4 call attention to, identify, mark, set apart, separate, segregate, indicate, particularize: She distinguished herself by her great beauty and her awful voice.

distinguished
adj. 1 celebrated, famous, illustrious, noted, renowned, notable, noteworthy, pre-eminent, eminent, prominent, honoured, respected, honourable: Churchill was one of the most distinguished men of his day. 2 dignified, noble, grand, stately, distingu,, royal, regal, aristocratic: What is he doing in this distinguished gathering?

distort v. 1 twist, warp, deform, misshape, contort, gnarl, bend, disfigure, wrench: The car was completely distorted in the crash. 2 twist, warp, slant, tamper with, colour, varnish, torture, pervert, misrepresent, fabricate, falsify, misstate, alter, change, bend, garble, violate: She distorted the facts if she said it was Bill who had a gun.

distract v. 1 divert, deflect, sidetrack, turn aside, draw away: Sorry, I was distracted for a moment - where were we? 2 divert, amuse, entertain, gratify, delight, occupy, interest, absorb, engross: We found the belly-dancers quite distracting. 3 bewilder, confuse, confound, perplex, puzzle, discompose, befuddle, mystify, disconcert, fluster, rattle, bemuse, daze, disturb, agitate, trouble, bother: I am distracted with doubts about whether to phone the police.

distraction
n. 1 bewilderment, befuddlement, disorder, disturbance, upset, confusion, agitation: The princess loves you to distraction. 2 diversion, entertainment, amusement: I was never really interested in him, he was merely a temporary distraction.

distraught
adj. distracted, agitated, troubled, disturbed, upset, perturbed, wrought or worked up, excited, frantic, at (one's) wits' end, overwrought, frenetic, nervous, frenzied, feverish, wild, hysterical, delirious, irrational, crazy, mad, insane, berserk, run(ning) amok: He is distraught with grief.

distress n. 1 anguish, anxiety, affliction, angst, grief, misery, torment, ache, pain, suffering, agony, torture, woe, woefulness, wretchedness; unhappiness, sorrow, sadness, depression, heartache, desolation: It is impossible to imagine the distress of a bereaved parent. 2 calamity, trouble, adversity, catastrophe, tragedy, misfortune, difficulty, hardship, straits, trial, disaster: Has he no sympathy for the distresses that have beset his people?

--v. 3 bother, disturb, perturb, upset, trouble, worry, harrow, harry, vex, harass, plague, oppress, grieve, torment, torture, afflict: The thought of Miss Camberley as a hostage distressed us all.

distribute

v. 1 deal or dole out, parcel out, give (out), mete out, dispense, apportion, allot, share (out), partition, divide up, assign, issue, circulate, pass out, pass round or around, hand out, deliver, convey, Colloq dish or spoon out: Emergency rations were distributed to the flood victims. 2 disperse, scatter, strew, spread (round or around or about), diffuse, disseminate: Mammals are uniformly distributed over the globe. 3 sort, classify, class, categorize, assort, arrange, group, file, order: Distribute the packages according to their size.

distribution

n. 1 apportionment, allotment, allocation, assignment, parcelling or US also parceling out, sharing; deployment: She supervised the distribution of the prizes. 2 issuance, circulation, dissemination, giving (out), dispersal, dispensation; deployment: The distribution of food parcels is being handled by charities. 3 arrangement, disposition, grouping, classification, order, ordering, division, cataloguing, codification; deployment: What is the distribution of scientists among the population?

district n. territory, region, section, sector, division, partition, part, precinct, locality, area, locale, department, province, community, quarter, neighbourhood, ward: We need a new hospital in our district.

distrust v. 1 mistrust, doubt, question, be sceptical of, be circumspect or cautious about, suspect, be suspicious or wary of, discredit, disbelieve, Colloq smell a rat; Colloq be leery of: I distrusted her motives from the very beginning.

--n. 2 mistrust, doubt, doubtfulness, uncertainty, misgiving(s), scepticism, suspicion, disbelief, incredulity, incredulousness, hesitation, caution, wariness, qualm, hesitancy: His claims were greeted with distrust.

distrustful

adj. distrusting, untrusting, mistrustful, doubting, chary, wary, cautious, suspicious, sceptical, doubtful, dubious, cynical, disbelieving, unbelieving, uneasy, nervous, hesitant, hesitating, unsure, uncertain, Colloq leery: She is distrustful of men who bring her flowers.

disturb   v. 1 interrupt, disrupt, intrude (on), inconvenience, put out, interfere (with); bother, pester, annoy, irritate, irk, upset, plague, hector, harry, harass, worry, vex, provoke, pique, peeve, get on (someone's) nerves, Colloq bug, miff, get under (someone's) skin, get in (someone's) hair, drive nuts or crazy or bats or batty or bananas or up the wall, hassle: The sound of dripping water disturbed me. Please do not disturb the animals. 2 agitate, stir or churn (up), shake (up), unsettle, roil, disorder: The lake's surface was violently disturbed by an enormous creature. 3 unsettle, affect, upset, damage, harm, destroy: We put the delicate mechanism where it wouldn't be disturbed by curious visitors. 4 trouble, disconcert, discomfit, perturb, ruffle, fluster, upset, agitate, put off, bother, discommode, put out, unsettle, distress; alarm, Colloq shake (up): He was greatly disturbed by the death of his father. 5 affect, upset, confound, confuse, change, put off, ruin, destroy, cancel, make ineffectual or ineffective, negate: Any change in temperature will disturb the results of the experiment.

disturbance

n. 1 disruption, disorder, disorganization, disarrangement, disarray; upheaval, interruption, upset, intrusion, interference: She won't tolerate any disturbance to her schedule. 2 commotion, disorder, upset, outburst, tumult, turmoil, turbulence, violence, hubbub, hullabaloo, hurly-burly, uproar, brouhaha, rumpus, brawl, mˆl,e or melee, breach of the peace, Donnybrook, fray, affray, fracas, trouble, Colloq ruckus, Brit spot of bother, Slang Brit spot of bovver: There was a disturbance at the pub yesterday.

disturbed adj. 1 upset, uneasy, uncomfortable, discomfited, troubled, worried, bothered, agitated, anxious, concerned, apprehensive, nervous: He's disturbed that Marie didn't come home last night. 2 psychoneurotic, neurotic, unbalanced, psychopathic, psychotic, maladjusted, mad, insane, out of one's mind, depressed, Colloq crazy, unable to cope, Brit bonkers, Slang nuts, screwy, batty, off one's rocker, off the deep end, messed-up, screwed-up: She looks after her sister, who is disturbed.

disturbing
adj. upsetting, off-putting, perturbing, troubling, unsettling, worrying, disconcerting, disquieting, alarming, distressing: There is disturbing news from the front.

disused adj. abandoned, neglected, unused; discontinued, obsolete, archaic: We had to sleep in a disused railway carriage.

diurnal adj. daily, circadian; day-to-day, regular, everyday, quotidian; daytime: Jet lag is a disturbance of the body's diurnal rhythms. Are these animals nocturnal or diurnal?

dive v. 1 plunge, nosedive, sound, descend, dip, submerge, go under, sink; jump, leap, duck; swoop, plummet: The submarine dived at once.

--n. 2 plunge, nosedive: The plane went into a dive. 3 bar, saloon, nightclub, bistro, club, Colloq nightspot, Slang joint, US dump, honky-tonk, juke-joint: He met the woman in a dive in Limehouse.

diverge v. 1 separate, radiate, spread (apart), divide, subdivide, fork, branch (off or out), ramify, split: The roads diverge further on. 2 deviate, turn aside or away, wander, digress, stray, depart, drift, divagate: Our policy diverges from that set up by the committee.

divergent adj. differing, different, dissimilar, disparate, variant, separate, diverging, disagreeing, conflicting, discrepant: There are divergent theories about the origin of the universe.

divers adj. various, several, sundry; miscellaneous, multifarious, manifold, varied, assorted, variegated, differing, different; some, numerous, many: We have the divers statements of the witnesses.

diverse adj. different, varied, diversified, multiform, various, assorted, mixed, miscellaneous; distinctive, distinct, separate, varying, discrete, dissimilar, differing, divergent, heterogeneous: Diverse subjects are available for study.

diversify v. vary, variegate, change, mix, change; spread, distribute, divide, break up, separate; branch out: We must diversify our investments to hedge against losses. Perhaps this is not a good time to diversify into other areas.

diversion n. 1 digression, deviation, departure, distraction: George created a diversion, while we robbed the safe. 2 detour, sidetrack, deviation, bypass, deviation: Owing to roadworks, we had to take a diversion off the main road. 3 amusement, distraction, entertainment, pastime, recreation, divertissement, game, play, relaxation: She prefers chess for diversion.

diversity n. 1 difference, dissimilarity, dissimilitude, unlikeness, disparity, deviation, divergence, departure, distinctiveness, diverseness, variation, variety, individuality, inconsistency, contrariety, discrepancy, contrast: Flowers are impressive in their diversity. 2 variety, range, extent, heterogeneity, multiplicity, multifariousness, variegation, multiformity: Democracy encourages diversity of opinion.

divert v. 1 switch, rechannel, redirect; change, alter, deflect: Funds for the new civic centre have been diverted to housing. We must divert the course of the river. 2 turn away, turn aside, avert, re-route, deflect; change course, swerve (off or away), shift, sidetrack, depart, deviate: Cars were diverted to avoid flooded areas. We diverted from our route because of the roadworks. 3 entertain, amuse, distract, interest, beguile, engage, occupy, absorb: We found the stand-up comedian mildly diverting but not really funny.

divest v. 1 strip, denude, rid, get rid, relieve, disencumber, deprive, dispossess; despoil, mulct: The company has been divested of all its assets. 2 divest oneself of. take or put off, doff, remove; disrobe,unclothe, undress: She divested herself of her fur coat.

divide v. 1 separate, split (up), break up, cleave, cut up or asunder, partition, segregate, subdivide; disconnect, disjoin, detach, sever, sunder, part: Argyle divided his mountaineers into three regiments. A divided nation cannot stand. Some would like to see Britain divided from continental Europe. 2 Sometimes, divide up. distribute, share (out), measure out, parcel out, partition, dole (out), deal (out), mete out, allocate, allot, apportion, dispense, give (out): The remaining food was divided among us. 3 separate, split, cause to disagree, alienate, disunite, set at odds, sow dissension (among), pit or set against one another, disaffect: Racial issues still divide the people. 4 branch (out), ramify, split, separate: The road divides there and passes on each side of that huge rock. 5 categorize, classify, sort, assort, grade, group, (put in) order, rank, organize, arrange: You have to divide the books into several piles according to size.

divine adj. 1 godlike, godly, holy, deiform, deific, angelic, seraphic, saintly; heavenly, celestial; sacred, sanctified, hallowed, consecrated, religious, spiritual: They believe in the divine right of kings. He receives divine inspiration at divine services. 2 superhuman, supernatural, gifted, pre-eminent, superior, excellent, supreme, exalted, transcendent, extraordinary: Even the divine Homer nods. 3 great, marvellous, splendid, superlative, glorious, superb, admirable, wonderful, awesome, perfect, excellent, beautiful, Colloq super, great, terrific, smashing, fantastic, splendiferous, Colloq Brit ace, magic: They say that the new musical is simply divine.

--v. 4 intuit, imagine, conjecture, guess, assume, presume, infer, suppose, hypothesize, surmise, suspect, understand, perceive, speculate, theorize, predict, foretell, have foreknowledge of; determine, discover: He had divined that she might be there.

--n. 5 holy man, priest, clergyman, cleric, ecclesiastic, minister, pastor, reverend, churchman, prelate: At his club, he enjoys the company of bishops, archbishops, and other divines.

division n. 1 dividing, split, splitting (up), breaking up, partition, partitioning, partitionment, separation, separating, diremption, segmentation, segmenting, compartmentation, sectioning, apportioning, apportionment, allotment: In England a division between Church and State is not recognized. 2 section, compartment, segment; partition, separation: Egg crates have 144 divisions. 3 branch, department, sector, section, unit, group, arm; part, set, category, class, classification: The textile division of the company lost money last year. 4 boundary (line), border, borderline, frontier, margin, line, dividing line: Where is the division between good and evil? 5 discord, disagreement, upset, conflict, strife, disunity, disunion: The issue of equal rights has led to much division within the movement.

divorce n. 1 separation, split, split-up, dissolution, severance, disunion, break-up: Their divorce after twenty years surprised everyone.

--v. 2 separate, divide, split (up), part, sever, detach, dissociate, disassociate; dissolve: A splinter group has divorced itself from the main party. We were divorced last year.

dizzy adj. 1 giddy, vertiginous, light-headed, faint, dazed, tottering, unsteady, reeling, tipsy, Colloq woozy: I felt dizzy after going down the helter-skelter. 2 confused, silly, giddy, empty-headed, scatterbrained, muddled, befuddled, flighty, feather-headed, feather-brained, rattle-brained, hare-brained, frivolous: He is dizzy with power.

4.4 dock...

=-

dock n. 1 wharf, pier, berth, jetty, quay: We went to the dock to see them off.

--v. 2 (drop) anchor, berth, tie up, moor, land, put in: The ship docks at noon.

doctor n. 1 physician, medical practitioner, M.D., general practitioner, G.P., Colloq medic, medico, doc, sawbones, bones: You ought to see a doctor about that cough.

--v. 2 treat, attend, medicate; cure, heal; practise medicine: She knows very little about doctoring children, in spite of having worked as a general practitioner. 3 mend, repair, patch (up), fix: We doctored the tyre as best we could. 4 falsify, tamper with, adulterate, disguise, change, modify, alter; cut, dilute, water (down); spike; drug, poison: This sauce has been doctored.

doctrine n. teaching, body of instruction, precept; principle, tenet, dogma, article of faith, canon, conviction, creed, belief, credo, opinion, idea, concept, theory, proposition, thesis, postulate: Few believe the doctrine that all men are created equal.

document n. 1 paper, certificate, instrument, report, chronicle, record: All the legal documents are at my lawyer's office.

--v. 2 record, chronicle, particularize, detail, describe; verify, validate, certify, authenticate, corroborate, substantiate: Detectives have documented every move you made since the murder.

doddering adj. shaking, quaking, palsied, trembling, trembly, quivering, quavering, reeling, unsteady, shaky, staggering, shambling, decrepit, faltering; feeble, weak, frail, infirm; aged, old, superannuated, senile, anile: Once a vigorous sportsman, his illness has reduced him to a doddering octogenarian.

dodge   v. 1 dart, shift, move aside, sidestep, duck, bob, weave, swerve, veer: He dodged here and there across the traffic. 2 avoid, elude, evade, escape from: He neatly dodged the punches of his opponent. 3 escape from answering, sidestep, duck, evade, hedge; quibble, tergiversate, double-talk, Colloq waffle: She dodged the questions put to her by the interviewer.

--n. 4 trick, subterfuge, ploy, scheme, ruse, device, stratagem, plan, plot, machination, chicane, deception, prevarication, contrivance, evasion, Slang wheeze, racket: Crenshaw worked out a new dodge to avoid paying tax.

dodgy   adj. tricky, dangerous, perilous, risky, difficult, ticklish, sensitive, delicate, touchy; uncertain, unreliable; rickety, Colloq chancy, hairy, Brit dicky, dicey: Climbing up the sheer face of that rock could be a bit dodgy. You shouldn't be exerting yourself with your dodgy ticker.

dogmatic adj. arbitrary, categorical, dictatorial, imperious, peremptory, overbearing, doctrinaire, authoritarian, emphatic, insistent, assertive, arrogant, domineering; obdurate, stubborn; opinionated, positive, certain, Rare thetic(al), Colloq pushy: Patrick tends to be quite dogmatic when he is sure of his ground.

dole n. 1 portion, allotment, share, quota, lot, allowance, parcel; compensation, benefit, grant, award, donation, gift, largesse, alms, gratuity; Slang hand-out: The prisoners received a daily dole of bread. If you've lost your job, are you eligible for the dole? 2 distribution, apportionment, allocation, dispensation: The money was given to the disaster victims by dole.

--v. 3 give (out), deal (out), distribute, hand out, mete out, share (out), dispense, allot, allocate, apportion, Colloq dish out: They dole out the reparations on the basis of need.

doleful adj. sad, sorrowful, melancholy, gloomy, mournful, cheerless, joyless, sombre, depressed, disconsolate, blue, down, distressed, dejected, downhearted, forlorn, unhappy, lugubrious, dolorous, wretched, miserable, woebegone, dreary, woeful, Colloq down in the mouth, down in the dumps; distressing, funereal, depressing, grievous, harrowing: From his doleful expression I thought he would cry any minute. She lives in the most doleful surroundings.

dolt n. fool, ass, blockhead, dunce, dullard, idiot, nitwit, ignoramus, numskull or numbskull, donkey, nincompoop, ninny, ninny-hammer, simpleton, dunderpate, dunderhead, bonehead, simpleton, twit, fat-head, goon, moron, imbecile, Colloq dope, dumb-bell, dim-wit, chump, dummy, halfwit, birdbrain, pinhead, clot, clod, chucklehead, Brit muggins, US thimble-wit, jerk, knuckle-head, lunkhead, meat-head, lame-brain, dingbat, ding-a-ling, flake: The dolt actually tried to buy striped paint!

domain n. 1 realm, dominion, territory, property, land(s), province, kingdom, empire: At one time his domain included most of Europe. 2 province, realm, territory, field, bailiwick, area, department, sphere, discipline, speciality, specialization, concern: As a dentist, he considered diseases of the throat outside his domain.

domestic adj. 1 home, private, family, familial; residential, household: Her domestic life is a shambles. This toaster is for domestic use. 2 tame, domesticated, house-trained, house-broken: Tenants are forbidden to keep domestic animals. 3 home, native, indigenous, internal, autochthonous: The domestic market accounts for most of the company's income.

--n. 4 servant, (hired) help, housekeeper, major-domo, steward: Her domestics left and she now does the cleaning herself.

domicile n. 1 dwelling (place), residence, abode, home, habitation, (living) quarters, housing, accommodation(s), lodging(s), Colloq Brit digs, diggings, Slang pad: Domiciles in south-east England have increased enormously in value.

--v. 2 locate, quarter, lodge, settle, establish, situate, domiciliate: She is domiciled abroad, hence pays no income tax here.

dominant adj. 1 commanding, authoritative, controlling, governing, ruling, leading, reigning, influential, assertive, supreme, superior, ascendant: He has taken a dominant role in promoting foreign language teaching. 2 predominant, chief, main, principal, primary, prevailing, outstanding, pre-eminent, paramount: A large nose is a dominant characteristic in their family.

dominate v. 1 command, control, govern, rule, direct, lead, reign (over), exercise command or authority or control or rule over, have the whip or upper hand (over), run (things), be in or have under control, rule the roost or roast, Colloq call the shots or the tune, wear the trousers or US the pants, be in the driver's seat, rule with an iron hand, have under one's thumb: She clearly dominates the board of directors. 2 overlook, look (out) over, tower over or above, rise above, overshadow; predominate: The Eiffel Tower dominates the Parisian skyline.

domination

n. 1 authority, control, rule, power, command, influence, sway, supremacy, ascendancy, hegemony, the whip or upper hand, pre-eminence, mastery: The tsar's domination lasted for more than thirty years. 2 oppression, subjection, repression, suppression, subordination, enslavement, enthralment; dictatorship, despotism, tyranny: The Allies finally brought to an end the Fascist domination of Europe.

domineering
adj. overbearing, imperious, officious, arrogant, autocratic, authoritarian, high-handed, high and mighty, masterful, arbitrary, peremptory, dictatorial, despotic, tyrannical, oppressive, strict, hard, harsh, tough, Colloq bossy, pushy: A classic character in humorous writing is the domineering spouse.

dominion n. 1 rule, authority, control, dominance, domination, grasp, mastery, grip, command, jurisdiction, power, sovereignty, sway, ascendancy, pre-eminence, primacy, supremacy, hegemony: The magician claimed dominion over the entire universe. 2 domain, realm, territory, region, area, country, kingdom: For six generations the dynasty ruled over its dominions on five continents.

donate v. give, provide, supply, present, contribute, subscribe (to or for), pledge, award, bestow, confer, grant, vouchsafe, will, bequeath: Lady Crayford donated two silver candlesticks to our charity drive.

donation n. 1 gift, contribution, largesse, present, grant, award, alms, offering, bequest: Donations have exceeded our expectations. 2 giving, contribution, bestowal, allotment, provision, offer: We are seeking the donation of a piano for our theatre group.

donor n. giver, provider, supplier, benefactor or benefactress, contributor, supporter, backer: Blood donors receive a suitably inscribed certificate.

doom n. fate, karma, destiny, fortune, lot, kismet; downfall, destruction, death, ruin, extinction, annihilation, death, end, termination, terminus: The young warrior had defied the Snake God, and his doom was sealed.

doomed adj. 1 fated, cursed, condemned, damned, destined, ordained, foreordained, predestined: She was doomed to live for ever. 2 accursed, bedevilled, ill-fated, luckless, star-crossed, bewitched, condemned: The doomed ship sank to the bottom of the sea.

dope n. 1 See dolt. 2 narcotic, drug, opiate, hallucinogen, psychedelic, Slang upper, downer: He was caught trying to smuggle dope past customs. 3 information, data, facts, news, details, story, scoop, Slang info, low-down, score, Brit gen, US and Canadian poop: The real dope on the minister is sensational!

dormant adj. 1 asleep, sleeping, slumbering, resting, at rest, quiet, inactive, still, inert, unmoving, motionless, stationary, immobile, quiescent, comatose, torpid, hibernating, slumberous, somnolent, sleepy, lethargic, dull, sluggish: The bears are dormant during much of the winter. 2 latent, potential, hidden, concealed, undisclosed, unrevealed, unexpressed: The theory lay dormant for centuries and has only recently been revived.

dose n. 1 portion, quantity, amount, measure, dosage: How big a dose of the medication did the doctor prescribe?

--v. 2 dispense, administer, prescribe: I was dosed with medicine and slept all day.

dot n. 1 spot, speck, point, jot, mark, iota, fleck, dab; decimal point, Brit full stop, US period: Use three dots to denote text omissions. 2 on the dot. exactly, precisely, punctually, to the minute or second, on time, Colloq on the button: She arrived at noon on the dot.

--v. 3 spot, fleck, speckle, stipple, bespeckle: The wallpaper is dotted with tiny squares of colour.

dote v. Often, dote on or upon. be fond of, be infatuated with, love, idolize, hold dear, adore, make much of; coddle, pamper, spoil, indulge: I think she dotes on her husband at the expense of the children. What we need is a doting grandmother to babysit when we want to go out.

double adj. 1 twofold, paired, coupled, duplicate(d), doubled: The forms banned and banning are spelt with a double n . 2 folded or doubled or bent over, overlapped, two-ply: This wound needs a double bandage. 3 dual, twofold, ambiguous, double-barrelled: He pronounced it 'de-seat', giving deceit a double meaning. 4 twice: The plant had grown to double its size. 5 deceitful, dishonest, treacherous, traitorous, insincere, hypocritical, double-dealing, false: It was Maria who exposed Fernando as a double agent.

--v. 6 duplicate, replicate; copy; increase, enlarge; magnify: We'll have to double our milk order.

--n. 7 twin, duplicate, copy, replica, facsimile, clone, copy, counterpart, doppelg„nger, look-alike, stand-in, understudy, Slang (dead) ringer, spitting image or spit and image: He could be Clint Eastwood's double. 8 at or on the double. quickly, on the run, at full speed or tilt, briskly, immediately, at once, without delay, Slang p.d.q. (= 'prety damned quick'): Put down that book and come over here on the double!

double-cross

v. cheat, defraud, swindle, hoodwink, trick, betray, deceive, mislead, play false with, Colloq two-time: He swore he'd give me the money but he double-crossed me and kept it himself.

doubt v. 1 disbelieve, discredit, mistrust, distrust, have misgivings (about), question, suspect: I doubted his ability to beat the record. 2 hesitate, waver, vacillate, fluctuate, scruple, be uncertain, entertain doubts, have reservations: Who ever doubted about her honesty?

--n. 3 uncertainty, hesitation, misgiving, reservation(s), qualm, anxiety, worry, apprehension, disquiet, fear: He has harboured doubts about the success of the enterprise. 4 distrust, mistrust, suspicion, incredulity, scepticism, dubiousness, dubiety or dubiosity, lack of faith or conviction, irresolution: Her doubts about his intentions have evaporated. 5 in doubt. See doubtful, below.

doubtful adj. 1 in doubt, dubious, questionable, open to question, problematic, debatable, disputable, uncertain, unpredictable, indeterminate, unsettled, unresolved, conjectural, indefinite, unclear, obscure, vague, anybody's guess , Colloq up in the air: The result is very doubtful. 2 sceptical, unconvinced, distrustful, mistrustful, suspicious, uncertain, unsure, hesitant, hesitating, vacillating, indecisive: I am doubtful whether an investigation will yield anything. 3 dubious, questionable, shady, louche, disreputable, controversial: Those are people of doubtful reputation.

doubtless adv. 1 doubtlessly, undoubtedly, no doubt, indubitably, indisputably, unquestionably, surely, for sure, certainly, for certain, naturally, without (a) doubt, beyond or without (a shadow of) a doubt, truly, positively, absolutely, Colloq absotively, posolutely, US make no mistake: You doubtless remember my aunt? 2 probably, most or very likely, in all probability, supposedly, presumably: He will doubtless be refused entry into the country.

dour adj. 1 sullen, sour, unfriendly, cold, gloomy, morose, dreary, grim, cheerless, dismal, forbidding: We went to Spain, away from the dour northern climate. 2 hard, tough, austere, severe, hardy, inflexible, obstinate, stubborn, unyielding, uncompromising, strict, rigid, obdurate, stern, harsh, adamant, Colloq hard-nosed: Her father was a dour Scot who wouldn't let me in the house.

dowdy adj. frowzy, frumpy, drab, dull, seedy, shabby, unseemly, unbecoming; slovenly, sloppy, messy, unkempt; old-fashioned, unfashionable, Colloq US tacky: Aunt Patience looked particularly dowdy in her dressing-gown and slippers.

down and out

adj. 1 indigent, poverty-stricken, poor, penniless, destitute, impoverished, Colloq broke, US on the skids, on skid row, on the bum, Slang Brit skint: Those vagrants are down and out and need help, not pity.

--n. 2 down-and-out. derelict, beggar, outcast, tramp, vagrant, vagabond, US bum: He took to drink and ended up a complete down-and-out.

downfall n. ruin, undoing, d,bƒcle, collapse, degradation, defeat, overthrow, breakdown: Selling the company to the conglomerate spelt its downfall.

downgrade v. 1 demote, dethrone, humble, lower, reduce, displace, depose, dispossess, disfranchise or disenfranchise, US military bust; Colloq bring or take down a peg: He was downgraded from supervisor to foreman. 2 belittle, minimize, play down, disparage, decry, denigrate, run down, US and Canadian downplay:

How could she downgrade her own sister?

--n. 3 descent, decline, declension, (downward) slope, gradient, grade, inclination: Apply the brake as you approach the downgrade. 4 on the downgrade. on the wane, waning, declining, falling, slipping, falling off, losing ground, going downhill, US and Canadian on the skids: After the drug scandal, her popularity was on the downgrade.

downhearted
adj. discouraged, depressed, low-spirited, miserable, blue, sad, downcast, dejected: Don't be so downhearted, we know you can win the gold medal.

downpour n. rainstorm, deluge, inundation, cloudburst, thunder-shower, thunderstorm, torrential rain, torrent; monsoon: We got caught in that downpour without an umbrella.

downright adj. 1 direct, straightforward, plain, frank, open, candid, plain-spoken, explicit, blunt, brash, bluff, not roundabout or circuitous, unambiguous, out-and-out, outright, categorical, flat, unequivocal, outspoken, unreserved, unabashed, unrestrained, unconstrained, bold: She speaks with a downright honesty you have to admire.

--adv. 2 completely, entirely, totally, thoroughly, certainly, surely, (most) assuredly, definitely, absolutely, unconditionally, unequivocally; very, extremely, unqualifiedly, perfectly, uncompromisingly, unmitigatedly, utterly, unquestionably, profoundly, undoubtedly, indubitably: It's downright stupid of you to leave in this weather.

downtrodden
adj. subjugated, oppressed, burdened, plagued, afflicted, exploited, overwhelmed, cowed, overcome, beaten, abused, mistreated, maltreated, tyrannized, Colloq beat: This poor, downtrodden wreck of a man had once been on top.

downward adj. declining, sliding, slipping, spiralling, descending, going or heading or moving down: This downward trend in the market will soon be reversed.

downwards adv. down, downward, below, lower: We moved downwards, towards the centre of the earth.

doze v. 1 Often, doze off. (take or have a) nap, catnap, drowse, sleep, slumber, Colloq snooze, have forty winks, drop or nod off, grab some shut-eye, Chiefly Brit (have or take a) zizz, Brit kip, US catch or log a few zees (Z's): I was dozing in the sun when the phone rang.

--n. 2 nap, catnap, siesta, sleep; rest; Colloq snooze, forty winks, shut-eye, Brit zizz, kip, lie-down: I'll have a short doze before dinner.

4.5 drab...
=-

drab adj. dull, colourless, dreary, dingy, lacklustre, lustreless, dismal, cheerless, grey, sombre: She wore drab clothes and no make-up.

draft n. 1 plan, sketch, drawing, outline, rough (sketch), blueprint, diagram, prospectus: We must have the draft of the new design by morning. 2 bill of exchange, cheque, money order, postal order; letter of credit: Our customer issued a draft in full payment.

--v. 3 sketch, delineate, outline, design, plan, frame, block out, compose, diagram, draw (up): The art department has drafted the layout for the new encyclopedia.

drag v. 1 pull, draw, haul, tow, tug, trail, lug: It took the two of us to drag the desk into the other office. 2 pull, distract, draw; induce, persuade, coax, wheedle: She's been unable to drag him away from the TV. 3 trudge, slog, crawl, creep, inch, shuffle, shamble: He's looking for a job and just drags along from one employment agency to another. 4 trail (behind), linger, dawdle, lag (behind), straggle, draggle, potter, loiter, poke (along), dilly-dally, US lallygag: She just drags along after us wherever we go. 5 (be) prolong(ed), (be) extend(ed), (be)draw(n) out, (be) protract(ed), (be) stretch(ed) out, spin out or be spun out: Why drag out the agony of uncertainty any longer? His speech dragged on for another hour. 6 drag one's feet or heels. delay, procrastinate, hang back; obstruct, block, stall: The committee is dragging its feet on the housing issue.

--n. 7 bore, nuisance, annoyance; pest; Colloq drip, pain (in the neck), headache: That course in botany is a real drag.

drain   n. 1 ditch, channel, trench, culvert, conduit, pipe, gutter, outlet, watercourse, sewer, cloaca: The storm drains have overflowed. 2 depletion, reduction, sapping, sap, exhaustion, strain, drag; outgo, outflow, withdrawal, disbursement, expenditure: The cost of the new roof was a drain on our resources. 3 down the drain. wasted, gone, thrown away, lost, Slang up the spout: All that money spent on his education went down the drain.

--v. 4 draw off, tap, extract, remove, take away, withdraw, pump off or out; empty, evacuate, drink up or down, quaff, swallow, finish: After washing the lettuce, drain off the water. He drained the glass in one gulp. 5 consume, use up, exhaust, sap, deplete, bleed, strain, tax, spend; weaken, debilitate, impair, cripple: The car repairs drained my bank account. After climbing to the top of the mountain, we were completely drained. 6 seep, trickle, ooze, drip, leave, go or flow from or out of, disappear (from), ebb: Let the pus drain from the boil. The blood drained from his face when he saw her.

drama   n. 1 play, stage play, photoplay, screenplay, (stage) show, (theatrical) piece, (stage) production; scenario: He plays only in dramas, never in musicals. 2 dramaturgy, stagecraft, theatre art(s), Thespian or histrionic art(s), acting, theatre, dramatic art: She has studied drama at RADA. 3 histrionics, dramatics, theatrics, theatricalism, play-acting: There's always a drama over who's going to wash up.

dramatic adj. 1 theatric(al), dramaturgic(al), Thespian, histrionic, stage: She was studying the dramatic works of Shakespeare. There will be a festival of dramatic arts at the centre next week. 2 vivid, sensational, startling, breathtaking, sudden, striking, noticeable, extraordinary, impressive, marked, shocking, expressive, graphic, effective; complete, considerable, radical, major: A dramatic change has come over him since meeting her. 3 flamboyant, melodramatic, colourful, showy, stirring, spectacular; theatrical, histrionic, exaggerated, overdone: His presentation was quite dramatic, well staged and with much arm-waving.

dramatist n. playwright, dramaturge, screenwriter, scriptwriter, scenarist, tragedian, melodramatist: The actors failed to carry out the dramatist's intentions.

dramatize v. exaggerate, overplay, overstate, overdo, make a production or show (out) of, Colloq lay it on (thick), pile it on, ham (something or it) up: He always dramatizes everything way out of proportion.

drape v. 1 hang, festoon, swathe, deck, array, bedeck, adorn, ornament, decorate: The coffin was draped with the national flag.

--n. 2 drapery, curtain; hanging, tapestry: The drapes match neither the carpet nor the wallpaper.

drapery n. drape, curtain; hanging, valance, pelmet, tapestry, arras, portiŠre, lambrequin, drop: Which colour will you choose for the drapery?

drastic adj. violent, severe, extreme, strong, powerful, potent, puissant, fierce, forceful, vigorous, rigorous, harsh, radical, Draconian, desperate, dire: I shall have to take drastic measures if this misbehaviour continues.

draught n. 1 breeze, breath (of air), (light) wind, current (of air), puff (of air or wind): You'll get a cold sitting in the draught. 2 dose, portion, measure, quantity, drink, swallow, sip, nip, tot, potation, dram, gulp, Colloq swig, tipple: The doctor recommended a draught of this tonic before meals.

draw v. 1 pull, tug, tow, drag, haul, lug: The gypsy caravan was drawn by two horses. 2 pull or take out, extract; unsheathe, unholster: The cowboy drew his gun and began firing. 3 draw off; pour; drain off or out: She drew two pails of water for the horses. 4 attract, gather, allure, lure, bring out or forth, elicit, Colloq pull: Anything will draw a crowd in New York. 5 depict, sketch, portray, outline, delineate, design, limn, paint: The artist was drawing pictures in chalk on the pavement. 6 devise, draw up, draft, create, contrive, frame, compose, prepare: The plans for the new civic centre have not yet been drawn. 7 inhale, breathe (in), inspire; suck in: She's very ill and may draw her last breath any minute. 8 draw out, withdraw, take, receive, get, acquire, obtain, secure, procure, extract, remove: I have to draw some money from my bank account for groceries. 9 choose, pick, select, take: It is your turn to draw a card. 10 draw back. retreat, recoil, shrink (from), withdraw: He drew back quickly when he saw the snake. 11 draw in. arrive, pull in: The train drew in to the station. 12 draw off. a tap, pour: The barmaid drew off two large beers from the keg. b withdraw, draw or go away, depart, leave: The Indians drew off and waited to see what we would do. 13 draw on. a employ, use, make use of, exploit, have resort or recourse to, resort to, fall back on, rely or depend on: She drew on her years of experience as a doctor. b come close or near, near, draw nigh, approach, advance: With the cold season drawing on, we had to get in the crops. 14 draw out. a extend, drag out, prolong, protract, lengthen, stretch, spin out: Her visit has been drawn out to a week. b elicit, evoke, induce to talk: I drew him out on his feelings about social security. c See 8, above. 15 draw up. a halt, stop, pull up or over: A taxi drew up and I got in. b draft, compose, prepare, put down (in writing), frame, compile, put together, formulate: We drew up the agreement only yesterday. c arrange, deploy, position, order, rank, marshal: The troops were drawn up in full battle array.

--n. 16 magnetism, attraction, lure, enticement, Colloq pull, drawing power: The draw of the rock concert was extraordinary. 17 tie, stalemate, dead heat, deadlock: The race ended in a draw for second place.

drawback n. disadvantage, hindrance, stumbling-block, obstacle, impediment, hurdle, obstruction, snag, problem, difficulty, hitch, catch, handicap, liability, flaw, defect, detriment, Colloq fly in the ointment; Taboo nigger in the woodpile: Lack of education is a serious drawback to getting a good job.

drawing n. picture, depiction, representation, sketch, plan, outline, design, composition, black-and-white, monochrome: The book is illustrated by some delightful pen-and-ink drawings.

drawn adj. haggard, worn out, tired, fatigued, strained, pinched, tense, exhausted: Sidonia looks a bit drawn after her ordeal.

dread v. 1 fear, be afraid of, apprehend, anticipate, flinch, shrink or recoil from, cringe or quail or blench or wince at, view with horror or alarm: She dreads any kind of surgery.

--n. 2 fear, fright, fearfulness, trepidation, apprehension, apprehensiveness, uneasiness, anticipation, alarm, nervousness, qualm, queasiness, misgiving, dismay, worry, anxiety, consternation, concern, distress, perturbation, disquiet, aversion, horror, terror, panic, Colloq cold feet, butterflies (in the stomach), the jitters; Slang the heebie-jeebies, the willies, the collywobbles: I regarded the history exam with dread.

--adj. 3 feared, dreaded, dreadful, terrifying, terrible: Before us, breathing fire, was the dread dragon of the Druids.

dreadful adj. 1 bad, awful, terrible, Colloq rotten, Slang lousy: That TV soap opera is simply dreadful. 2 grievous, dire, horrible, horrendous, horrifying, horrid, monstrous, fearful, feared, frightful, dread, frightening, shocking, alarming, appalling, fearsome, hideous, ghastly, atrocious, heinous, wicked, evil, iniquitous, villainous, flagitious, fiendish, diabolical, devilish, demonic, malevolent, maleficent, malefic, Colloq scary: They did the most dreadful things to political prisoners.

dream n. 1 reverie, day-dream, delusion, fantasy, hallucination, illusion, vision, mirage, pipedream, (flight of) fancy, speculation: When I awoke I realized that my winning the lottery had just been a dream.

--v. 2 imagine, fancy, conjure up, hallucinate: I dreamt I dwelt in marble halls.

dreamer n. fantasizer, visionary, idealist, romantic, romanticist, idealizer, Utopian; day-dreamer, escapist, fantasizer, star-gazer: If you think people change, you're a dreamer.

dreamlike adj. unreal, fantastic, unbelievable, phantasmagoric(al), hallucinatory or hallucinative or hallucinational, surreal, delusionary or delusional, illusionary or illusional, delusive or delusory, illusory or illusive, insubstantial or unsubstantial, imaginary, chimeric(al), fanciful, fancied, visionary: His plans have a dreamlike quality about them that make them impractical.

dreamy adj. 1 dreamlike, vague, indefinite, indistinct, undefined, intangible, misty, shadowy, faint: He has a dreamy recollection of being awakened in the middle of the night. 2 absent-minded, absent, far-away, abstracted, pensive, thoughtful; day-dreaming, musing, occupied, in a reverie, in a brown study, in the clouds; Colloq off somewhere: I was in a dreamy mood, my mind wandering through old memories. 3 relaxing, soothing, calming, lulling, gentle, tranquil, peaceful, peaceable, quiet; lazy, sleepy, drowsy: It was one of those dreamy, hot midsummer days.

dreary adj. 1 dismal, joyless, cheerless, gloomy, bleak, drear, sombre, doleful, depressing, wretched; sad, melancholy, downcast, depressed, funereal, glum, unhappy, forlorn, mournful, morose, blue, miserable: One more day on these dreary moors and I shall go mad. Caroline was again in a dreary mood. 2 boring, lifeless, colourless, ennuyant, drab, dull, arid, dry, uninteresting, dead, monotonous, prosaic, tedious, tiresome, tiring, wearisome, wearying, humdrum, ordinary, vapid, run-of-the-mill, unstimulating, unexciting: Do you mean to tell me that that dreary book is a best seller!

dregs n.pl. 1 sediment, grounds, lees, deposit, residue, solids, remains; precipitate: Filter the coffee to remove the dregs. 2 outcasts, pariahs, rabble, riff-raff, scum, tramps, down-and-outs, losers: That park is frequented by the dregs of society.

drench v. soak, saturate, wet, flood, inundate, immerse, drown: She had no coat or umbrella and got completely drenched in the storm.

dress v. 1 clothe, put on (clothing or clothes), attire, apparel, outfit, fit out, garb, accoutre or US also accouter; array, bedeck, deck out, rig out, smarten up: They dressed him to look like a prince. 2 array, equip, adorn, decorate, deck out, arrange: He has a job dressing shop windows. 3 bandage, treat, medicate, doctor: After dressing my wound they gave me a sedative. 4 dress down. reprimand, scold, berate, castigate, rebuke, reprove, upbraid, Colloq tell off, haul (someone) over the coals, Brit tear (someone) off a strip, US and Canadian chew out, US rake (someone) over the coals, tee off on (someone): The colonel dressed us down and cancelled all leave. 5 dress up. a put on dinner or formal clothes, put on one's (Sunday) best (clothes), Colloq put on one's best bib and tucker or one's glad rags: On the cruise, we dressed up in our dinner-jackets every night. b (put on a) costume, disguise, masquerade, camouflage, put on fancy dress: The children dressed up as goblins for Hallowe'en.

--n. 6 frock, gown, outfit, costume, Colloq get-up: Why not wear your new dress to the dance tonight?

dressmaker
n. seamstress, tailor, couturier or couturiŠre, modiste: She's at the dressmaker's having a ball gown fitted.

dressy adj. 1 formal, dressed-up, elegant, fancy, chic: A black suit is too dressy to wear tonight - it's not a dressy party. 2 elegant, smart, stylish, Colloq classy, ritzy, Brit swish: That's a very dressy outfit, I must say!

drift v. 1 coast, float, waft: A log drifted by on the tide. 2 wander, roam, meander, stray, rove, ramble, Colloq mosey: He seems just to drift through life, without a purpose.

--n. 3 trend, tendency, direction, course, current, bias, inclination, flow, sweep, bent: The drift of the conversation seemed to be towards politics. 4 intention, meaning, purport, purpose, aim, object, tenor, tone, spirit, colour, essence, gist, significance, import: Offended by the drift of her remarks, I excused myself. 5 accumulation, pile, heap, mass, bank, mound, dune: After the snowstorm, a huge drift blocked the door.

drifter n. vagrant, tramp, vagabond, beachcomber, rambler, wanderer, Colloq knight of the road, US bum, hobo: A drifter, he had no place to call home.

drill v. 1 bore, penetrate, pierce, cut a hole: The thieves drilled into the safe. 2 rehearse, train, practise, exercise, teach, instruct, school, tutor, coach, indoctrinate; discipline: We were thoroughly drilled in the Latin conjugations and declensions.

--n. 3 auger, (brace and) bit, gimlet: The bit for this drill is no longer sharp. 4 practice, training, repetition, exercise, rehearsal; discipline: Tomorrow there will be a complete drill of the parts of speech.

drink v. 1 quaff, imbibe, sip, gulp, swallow, swill, guzzle, toss off, lap (up), Colloq wet one's whistle, swig, knock back, US belt: She prefers not to drink beer. 2 tipple, nip, indulge, tope, chug-a-lug, carouse, Colloq booze, bend the elbow, hit the bottle, go on a binge or bender, drown one's sorrows, US and Canadian go on a toot, Chiefly Brit pub-crawl: He threatened to leave her if she continued to drink. 3 drink to. toast, salute, celebrate, pledge: Let's drink to friendship!

--n. 4 beverage, potation, liquid refreshment, liquid, potable, draught: After the match I was dying for a drink. 5 alcohol, spirits, liquor, the cup that cheers; stirrup-cup; Colloq booze, the bottle, hard stuff, mother's ruin, eye-opener, nightcap, US hooch; Slang rot-gut, US the sauce, red-eye: After the accident, he took to drink. 6 tot, nip, draught or US also draft, schooner, pint, bumper, jigger, snifter, sip, taste, glass, gulp, swallow, Scots (wee) deoch an doris or doch an dorris, (wee) dram, Brit sundowner; Colloq snort, slug, swig: Granny likes a drink before retiring. 7 the drink. the sea, the ocean, the main, the deep, Nautical Davy Jones's locker, Colloq the briny: The canoe tipped and our picnic went right into the drink!

drip v. 1 dribble, trickle, drop; drizzle, sprinkle: The tap began to drip and kept me awake all night.

--n. 2 dribble, trickle, drop, dripping: Yes, it was the drip from the tap that kept me awake. 3 milksop, bore, wet blanket, killjoy, damper, Colloq Brit wet, weed, Colloq wimp, Slang pill, drag, US and Canadian milquetoast: Must you invite that drip George?

drive v. 1 push, propel, impel, urge, press, thrust, move, motivate, actuate, prod, spur, goad, urge, force, make, compel, coerce, constrain, oblige, pressure or Brit pressurize, high-pressure, induce, require; demand: What drove you to become a traitor? 2

operate, conduct, manoeuvre, manipulate, handle, steer, control; pilot: Have you a valid licence to drive this car? 3 ride, travel, motor, go, move, proceed, journey, tour, Colloq tool along: Luckily, when the tyre blew out, we were driving at only 20 m.p.h. 4 stab, plunge, thrust, sink, push, send, dig, ram: He has driven the dagger deep into the monster's heart. 5 herd, drove, shepherd, ride herd (on): We used to drive the cattle up the old Chisholm Trail to market in Abilene. 6 drive at. hint (at), suggest, imply, intimate, allude or refer to, intend, mean, have in mind, indicate, Colloq get at: He was so na‹ve he had no idea what she was driving at.

--n. 7 ride, trip, outing, journey, run, tour, excursion, Colloq spin, whirl: On Sundays we would go for a drive in the country. 8 energy, effort, impetus, vigour, vim, spunk, enterprise, industry, initiative, ambition, ambitiousness, determination, persistence, urgency, zeal, enthusiasm, keenness, aggressiveness, Colloq get-up-and-go, pep, zip, push, hustle: She owes her success to her drive as well as her talent. 9 driveway, approach, (private) road or street, lane, byway, (scenic) route: The drive up to the house is lined with trees. 10 campaign, effort, appeal, crusade: The club has had a successful membership drive this year.

drivel v. 1 dribble, drool, slobber, slaver: You're drivelling all over the front of your shirt! 2 babble, prate, prattle, gibber, jabber, burble, gabble, chatter, blether or US blather, Colloq jibber-jabber, gab, Brit rabbit or witter or natter on, US run off at the mouth: She keeps drivelling on about her family.

--n. 3 gibberish, rubbish, (stuff and) nonsense, twaddle, balderdash, hogwash, Colloq eyewash, tripe, garbage, malarkey, hooey, hot air, bosh, boloney or baloney, Slang crap, bull, bilge (water), codswallop, US horse feathers, Taboo bullshit, balls, Brit (load of old) cobblers: I've never heard so much drivel from a candidate in my entire life!

droop v. 1 sag, hang (down), wilt, dangle: Flags drooped in the windless heat. 2 languish, weaken, flag, wilt, wither, be limp, slump, sag: Halfway through the marathon she began to droop a bit.

drop n. 1 globule, bead, drip, droplet, tear: A drop of sweat hung from his nose. 2 bit, spot, particle, taste, dram, sip, nip, pinch, dash, dab, Colloq smidgen or smidgin: Add a drop of milk before kneading the dough. 3 descent, fall: There was a sheer drop of a thousand feet from the ledge into the chasm below. 4 decline, slope, fall-off, drop-off, declivity, incline: The drop is about 15 feet in 100.

--v. 5 drip, trickle, dribble: As the water drops, filling the tube, the float rises. 6 fall, descend, sink, drop away or down or off, dive, plunge, plummet, decline, collapse: The barometer dropped 10 millibars in 10 minutes. Near that rock, the road drops to the beach. At the first shot, we dropped to the ground. 7 desert, forsake, give up, abandon, leave, quit, throw over, jilt, discard, reject, repudiate, renounce, Colloq chuck, ditch, dump; relinquish, let go, discontinue, stop, cease, end: After what he said, she dropped him like a hot potato. I wish you'd drop the subject of my disability. 8 release, let go of, shed, cast off, discard, doff: Deciduous trees drop their leaves in winter. 9 omit, leave out, exclude, eliminate: To avoid confusion with his father, he dropped his middle initial. 10 dismiss, let go, fire, discharge, oust, Colloq chiefly Brit sack, give (someone) the sack: They dropped her after a week's trial. 11 decline, decrease, drop or fall off, diminish, slacken, slack or taper off, subside, lessen: Demand for swimsuits drops during the winter. 12 drop in (on). visit, call (on), pop in (on), come by, stop in: Viola dropped in for tea yesterday. 13 drop out. withdraw (from), leave; rusticate, depart, decamp, go away or off, take off, turn off: She dropped out of school. After winning the award, Crater dropped out and hasn't been seen since.

drown v. 1 flood, inundate, swamp, deluge, drench, immerse, submerge, engulf: The village was completely drowned in the tidal wave. 2 overwhelm, overcome, overpower, engulf, swamp, deluge, inundate: We were almost drowned by the responses to our advertisement.

drowsy adj. sleepy, heavy-lidded, groggy, somnolent, dozy, oscitant; nodding, yawning; torpid, sluggish, tired, weary, listless, lethargic, lazy: We all felt a bit drowsy after that big dinner.

drudgery n. toil, labour, moil, travail, (hack) work, donkey-work, chore, slog, slogging, slavery, Colloq grind, sweat, Brit skivvying, fag: She wanted some relief from the sheer drudgery of housework.

drug n. 1 medication, medicine, medicament, pharmaceutical, remedy, cure, treatment; cure-all, panacea: My doctor prescribes too many drugs. 2 opiate, narcotic, stimulant, tranquillizer, antidepressant, hallucinogen(ic), psychedelic, hypnotic, soporific, sedative, analgesic, painkiller, Slang dope, downer, upper: Can they control the traffic in drugs?

--v. 3 dose, medicate, treat: I was drugged with antihistamines and unable to drive. 4 anaesthetize, dope, deaden, knock out, sedate, stupefy, numb, benumb, dull, narcotize; poison, Slang slip (someone) a Mickey (Finn): The victim had been drugged and kidnapped.

druggist n. pharmacist, apothecary, Brit chemist: Only a druggist is qualified to dispense this medication.

drunk adj. 1 drunken, intoxicated, inebriated, besotted, tipsy, groggy, sotted, crapulent or crapulous, in one's cups, under the weather, under the influence, maudlin, ebriate, ebriose, ebrious, Colloq soused, pickled, high (as a kite), tight, boozed, boozy, lit (up), half-seas-over, three or four sheets to the wind, out (cold), under the table, Brit squiffy; Slang pie-eyed, loaded, stoned, stewed (to the gills), (well-)oiled, bombed (out of one's mind), crocked, plastered, tanked, sloshed, polluted, stinko, smashed, blotto, pissed: He was so drunk he tried to fly. 2 exhilarated, excited, exuberant, invigorated, inspirited, animated, ecstatic; flushed, feverish, inflamed, aflame, fervent, fervid, delirious: Since he became a director, he's been drunk with power.

--n. 3 drunkard, drinker, toper, tippler, sot, soak, bibber, winebibber; dipsomaniac, alcoholic, problem drinker; Colloq guzzler, swiller, sponge, Slang wino, boozer, dipso, lush, souse, alky, US juicer, juice-head, rummy: The drunks who volunteered were registered for treatment. 4 carouse, bacchanal, carousal, bacchanalia, revel, Slang bender, tear, jag, bat, US and Canadian toot, Chiefly Brit pub-crawl: I went off on a wild drunk the night before my wedding.

drunkenness

n. intoxication, insobriety, intemperance, sottishness, bibulousness, inebriety, crapulence, crapulousness, tipsiness, ebriety; dipsomania, alcoholism, ebriosity; Colloq boozing, Slang hitting the bottle or US the sauce: Only a psychiatrist could help cure his drunkenness.

dry adj. 1 dehydrated, desiccated, arid, sear, parched, waterless, moistureless; barren, bare, fruitless: With no rain for a month, the dry earth yielded no crops. 2 dreary, boring, tedious, tiresome, wearisome, wearying, tiring, dull, uninteresting, monotonous, prosaic, commonplace, stale, uninspired; plain, unadorned, unembellished: The minister's speech was as dry as could be, a litany of dry statistics. 3 witty, droll, wry, cynical, biting, sarcastic, cutting, keen, sly, ironic: Oscar Wilde was known for his dry witticisms.

--v. 4 dehydrate, desiccate, parch: As the rainfall subsided, the land dried and changed into a desert. 5 dry up or out, wither, shrivel, shrink, wilt: The plants dried because they weren't watered.

4.6 duck...

=-

duck v. 1 bob, dodge, dip, dive, stoop, bow, bend, crouch: I ducked to avoid hitting my head on the beam. 2 plunge, submerge, immerse, dunk: In the pool, she ducked me when I least expected it. 3 avoid, sidestep, evade, dodge, elude, shun, steer clear of, shy away from; shirk: He is known for ducking his responsibilities.

dud n. 1 failure, Colloq flop, lead balloon, lemon, washout, Colloq US and Canadian dog, clinker: Her second novel certainly proved a dud - it sold only ten copies.

--adj. 2 worthless, valueless, broken, unusable, useless, inoperative, non-functioning, inoperative, malfunctioning, Colloq kaput, bust(ed), Brit duff: They deliberately supplied us with dud ammunition.

dude n. 1 dandy, fop, fancy dresser, Beau Brummell, popinjay, boulevardier, man about town, Archaic coxcomb, macaroni; Slang swell, Brit toff: He dressed like a real dude - zoot suit and all. 2 man, fellow, chap, Colloq guy: Hey, man, who's that dude in the tartan suit?

due adj. 1 payable, owed, owing, unpaid, outstanding, in arrears: The rent is due tomorrow. 2 fitting, right, rightful, correct, proper, appropriate, apropos, apposite, suitable, apt, meet; deserved, (well-)earned, merited, just, justified: Was she treated with due respect? 3 necessary, needed, adequate, sufficient, enough, satisfactory; ample, plenty of: I do not think my case was given due consideration. 4 expected, scheduled, anticipated: He was due on the two o'clock plane.

--adv. 5 directly, exactly, precisely, straight: Go due east to the river, then turn north.

dues n.pl. (membership) fee, charge(s): If you have not paid your dues, you may not use the club's facilities.

duff adj. bad, useless, worthless, unworkable, inoperable, inoperative, broken; fake, false, counterfeit, Colloq dud, phoney or US also phony: We couldn't get that duff radio to work. We were provided with duff papers for crossing the border.

duffer n. incompetent, blunderer, bungler, oaf, Colloq ox, lummox: He may be an expert at computers but he's a duffer at golf.

dull adj. 1 stupid, slow-witted, dense, stolid, bovine, cloddish, clod-like, backward, obtuse, doltish, crass, dumb, Colloq thick, dim, dim-witted, Brit dim as a Toc H lamp: He might be a dull student but he's a brilliant artist. 2 insensitive, numb, insensible, imperceptive or impercipient, unresponsive, indifferent, unfeeling, unsympathetic, callous, hardened, hard, inured, obtundent: He knew that he could expect only a dull response to his pleading. 3 lifeless, indifferent, unresponsive, sluggish, slow, listless, inactive, torpid: The market for luxury cars is a little dull now. 4 boring, tiresome, tedious, monotonous, uninspired, uninspiring, unoriginal, uninteresting, humdrum: All work and no play make Jack a dull boy. 5 dismal, dreary, depressing, sombre, grey, dark, murky, gloomy, cloudy, clouded, overcast, sunless: If the day is dull, the photographs will show it. 6 blunted, blunt;

obtuse: I nicked myself with that dull razor. 7 hazy, blurry, opaque, drab: Rub the dull film off that silver goblet. 8 muffled, numbing, deadened, muted, indistinct: I've had a dull pain in my arm all day.

--v. 9 allay, assuage, relieve, mitigate, lessen, reduce: Weeping dulls the inner pain. 10 dim, tarnish, obscure, bedim, blur, cloud, becloud: A mist dulled the rich colours of the glen. 11 stupefy, narcotize, numb, benumb, desensitize, deaden, blunt, obtund: His war experiences had dulled his feelings towards others.

duly   adv. 1 properly, fittingly, deservedly, appropriately, suitably, befittingly, rightly, correctly, accordingly: Those elected were duly installed in office. 2 punctually, on time: The train duly arrived.

dumb   adj. 1 mute, speechless, voiceless; silent, quiet, taciturn, mum, wordless; inarticulate: She was struck dumb with astonishment. 2 dull, stupid, Colloq thick: He's too dumb to understand what you are saying.

dumbfound v. dumfound, amaze, shock, surprise, startle, astonish, astound, bewilder, stagger, stun, floor, nonplus, confuse, confound, Colloq flabbergast, bowl over: Their offer for the house dumbfounded us.

dumbfounded

adj. dumfounded, amazed, shocked, surprised, startled, astonished, astounded, bewildered, staggered, floored, nonplussed, overwhelmed, speechless, stunned, thunderstruck, dazzled, dazed, dumbstruck, taken aback, confused, confounded, bemused, perplexed, baffled, disconcerted, Colloq bowled over, flabbergasted, knocked out, thrown (off), US thrown for a loss, Brit knocked for six, knocked sideways: She is dumbfounded that he proposed marriage.

dummy   n. 1 mannequin, manikin or mannikin, model, figure: I saw the coat on a dummy in the shop window. 2 sample, copy, reprint, reproduction, likeness, substitution, imitation, sham, mock-up, simulation, Colloq phoney or US also phony: Those aren't the real crown jewels, they're just dummies. 3 fool, idiot, dunce, blockhead, ninny, ass, dolt, numskull or numbskull, simpleton, Colloq dim-wit, US thimble-wit: They're such dummies they don't know that you're joking. 4 US pacifier: Give the baby the dummy to suck.

dump v. 1 unload, offload, empty, drop, deposit, throw or fling down, tip: They dumped the topsoil all over the path. 2 get rid of, throw away, scrap, discard, ditch, jettison, dispose of, reject, tip, toss out or away, Colloq junk, chuck out or away: We dumped all the food when the fridge broke down.

--n. 3 junk-yard, rubbish heap or Brit tip, US garbage dump: You'll have to take this garden refuse to the dump.

dumpy adj. stocky, pudgy, squat, chunky, chubby, tubby, stout, plump, portly, fat: No one with a dumpy figure looks good in shorts.

dun v. press, importune, solicit, plague, nag, pester, Slang US bug: The gas company has been dunning me to pay the bill.

dung n. manure, muck, droppings, cow-pats, fertilizer, guano, excrement, faeces or US feces, US cow or buffalo-chips, horse-apples, Taboo shit: The dung is spread on the fields.

dungeon n. donjon, keep, cell, prison, lock-up, oubliette, black hole, stronghold: Throw the infidels into the dungeon and give them twenty lashes!

dupe n. 1 fool, gull, victim, fair game, Colloq chump, Chiefly US and Canadian fall guy; Slang sucker, sap, boob, pushover, pigeon, mark, Brit mug, Chiefly US and Canadian patsy: Swindlers often choose tourists as likely dupes. 2 cat's-paw, pawn, tool, puppet, Slang stooge: I'm not going to be the dupe in your little game!

--v. 3 deceive, fool, outwit, cheat, trick, take in, defraud, humbug, hoax, swindle, hoodwink, bilk, gull, cozen, delude, mislead, snooker, victimize, Colloq bamboozle, flimflam, put one over on, pull a fast one on; Slang con, rip off, rook, take, US and Canadian snow, do a snow job on: She was duped into believing she had won the lottery.

duplicate adj. 1 identical; twin, matching: They sent me duplicate tickets by mistake.

--n. 2 (exact or carbon) copy, photocopy, machine copy, double, clone, (perfect) match, facsimile, twin, reproduction, replica, replication, look-alike, Trade Mark Xerox (copy), Slang (dead) ringer: This painting looks like a duplicate of the one you bought.

--v. 3 copy, photocopy, clone, match, replicate, imitate, reproduce, double, Trade Mark Xerox; repeat, equal: Would you please duplicate this letter for me? Can he duplicate his performance in the Commonwealth Games?

durable adj. enduring, long-lasting, stable, wear-resistant, heavy-duty, hard-wearing, long-wearing, lasting, persistent, indestructible, substantial, sturdy, tough, stout, strong, firm, sound, fixed, fast, permanent, dependable, reliable: The product is durable, guaranteed to last a lifetime.

duress n. 1 coercion, threat, pressure, constraint, compulsion; force, power: The boys wash the dishes only under duress. 2 confinement, imprisonment, incarceration, captivity, restraint, Literary durance: There were workhouses, prisons, and other forms of duress.

dusk n. twilight, sundown, nightfall, evening, sunset, dark, eventide: The workers came in from the fields at dusk.

dusky adj. 1 dark, black, ebony, sable, jet-black; swarthy, swart, dark-complected, dark-complexioned: 'Dusky diamonds' is another name for coal. A dusky gentleman offered to see her home safely. 2 shadowy, shady, dim, dark, unilluminated, unlit, murky, subfusc, subfuscous, gloomy, obscure: An ominous figure was lurking in the dusky area under the stairs.

dutiful adj. obedient, compliant, willing, obliging, filial, faithful, conscientious, reliable, responsible, diligent, attentive, punctilious, respectful, polite, considerate, deferential, submissive, yielding, acquiescent, malleable, flexible, pliant, accommodating, Formal or archaic duteous: A dutiful son, he visits his parents weekly.

duty n. 1 responsibility, obligation, burden, onus, devoir, office, work, task, assignment, job, stint, chore, occupation, calling, function, role, part, bit, charge: Every man is expected to do his duty. 2 respect, deference, loyalty, fealty, fidelity, faithfulness, allegiance: I think she did it out of a sense of duty to her family. 3 tax, excise, tariff, impost, levy, customs: You will have to pay duty on that whisky.

4.7 dwarf...

=-

dwarf v. overshadow, dominate, diminish, minimize: The new tower dwarfs the older buildings.

dwell v. 1 reside, abide, live, lodge, stay, remain, rest, Formal domicile: After the father's death, the mother dwelt with her daughter. 2 dwell on or upon. harp on, persist in, emphasize, stress, focus on, linger or tarry over, elaborate (on); labour: Why must you always dwell on a person's shortcomings?

dwelling n. abode, habitation, dwelling-place, house, domicile, lodging, quarters, home, residence, homestead: His dwelling is a shanty in old shanty town.

dwindle v. diminish, decrease, shrink, lessen, wane, fade, contract, condense, reduce, peter out, waste away, die out or down or away, ebb, decline, subside, taper off, shrivel (up or away): The last days of summer dwindled away. His funds have dwindled until today he has nothing.

4.8 dying...

=-

dying adj. expiring; sinking, slipping away, going, failing, fading (fast), at death's door, on one's deathbed, with one foot in the grave, in extremis; moribund: The doctor said the dying man was in no pain.

dynamic adj. dynamical, vigorous, active, forceful, energetic, potent, powerful, high-powered, lively, spry, vital, electric, spirited, zealous, eager, emphatic: We are seeking a dynamic salesman for our Reading office.

dynamism n. energy, vigour, pep, vitality, liveliness, spirit, spiritedness, forcefulness, power, drive, initiative, enterprise, Colloq get-up-and-go, zip, push: That woman has the dynamism needed to get ahead in this organization.

dynasty n. line, family, heritage, house: The Ming dynasty ruled China for more than 300 years.

5.0 E

=-

5.1 eager...

=-

eager adj. avid, zealous, ardent, earnest, keen, enthusiastic, hot, hungry, fervent, fervid, passionate, spirited, inspirited, energetic, energized, vehement, animated, excited, vitalized, stimulated; desirous, yearning, desiring, craving, wanting, longing, itchy, impatient; anxious; Colloq dying, Slang US hot to trot: We were particularly eager to spend our holiday in Spain.

eagerness n. 1 avidity, zeal, earnestness, keenness, enthusiasm, fervour, hunger, vehemence, animation, vitality, appetite, zest, relish, spirit, spiritedness, gusto, verve, dash, ,lan, vim, vigour, energy, Colloq get-up-and-go, zip, go: Such eagerness for learning is rare. In his eagerness to please everyone he satisfies no one. 2 desire, longing, wishing, yearning: He observed the eagerness, the open hunger, with which she now waited for Mr Browning.

eagle-eyed
adj. sharp-eyed, sharp-sighted, keen-eyed, keen-sighted, lynx-eyed, hawk-eyed; perceptive, perspicacious, discerning, sharp, watchful, alert: It would be impossible to deceive our eagle-eyed supervisor.

ear n. 1 attention, heed, notice, regard, consideration: See if you can get his ear for a moment between meetings. 2 sensitivity, appreciation, taste, discrimination: She has an excellent ear for the right expression.

early adv. 1 beforehand, ahead (of time), prematurely: I arrived too early and had to wait. 2 anciently, initially, originally, at or near the start or beginning: Plants appeared early in the development of life forms on earth. 3 betimes, at cock crow or cock's-crow, at (the crack or break of) dawn, at daybreak: You're up early this morning!

--adj. 4 untimely, premature; inopportune, inappropriate: The early fruit isn't as sweet. 5 initial, beginning, original, first, pioneer, advanced: He was one of the earliest writers on the subject. 6 primeval, primitive, primordial, ancient, old, prehistoric, antediluvian, original; antique, antiquated: The Olduvai Gorge has yielded up many early humanoid fossils.

earn v. 1 merit, deserve, be worthy of, be entitled to, win, warrant, rate, qualify for, have a claim or right to: Peter has earned everyone's respect. 2 make, pocket, gross, net, clear, realize, receive, get, procure, collect, reap, bring in, take home; draw, Colloq US pull down: It is still the case that most men earn more than their wives.

earnest adj. 1 serious, solemn, grave, sober, intense, steady, resolute, resolved, firm, determined, assiduous, sincere, dedicated, committed, devoted, thoughtful: He made an earnest promise to do his best. 2 zealous, ardent, diligent, assiduous, industrious, hard-working, devoted, eager, conscientious, keen, fervent, fervid, enthusiastic, passionate: Burbridge is an earnest pupil. 3 earnest-money. deposit, down payment, binder, handsel, guarantee, security, pledge: The company paid œ10,000 earnest-money to secure the bid.

--n. 4 in earnest. serious, sincere: She said she would come, but I doubt whether she was in earnest.

earnings n.pl. wages, salary, income, compensation, pay, stipend, emolument, proceeds, return, revenue, yield, takings, Slang take: The interest from tax-free bonds was not included in my earnings.

earth n. 1 globe, mother earth, planet, world, blue planet, Terra: Ozone depletion in the upper atmosphere may be threatening life on earth. 2 soil, dirt, loam, sod, clay, turf, ground, mould: Pack the earth firmly around the roots.

earthly adj. 1 terrestrial, terrene, telluric: Extraterrestrial beings might be unable to survive in our earthly atmosphere. 2 worldly, mundane, material, materialistic, physical, non-spiritual, sensual, carnal, fleshly, corporeal, base, natural: He has forsaken earthly pleasures in favour of spiritual pursuits. 3 human, temporal, secular, profane, mortal, physical, non-spiritual, material: His earthly remains were committed to the sea. 4 conceivable, imaginable, feasible, possible: What earthly reason could she have had for kissing me?

earthy adj. ribald, bawdy, unrefined, coarse, crude, shameless, wanton, uninhibited, abandoned, vulgar, lusty, rough, dirty, indecent, obscene: She found Henry Miller's books a bit too earthy for her tastes.

ease n. 1 comfort, repose, well-being, relaxation, leisure, rest, contentment, calmness, tranquillity, serenity, peacefulness, peace, peace and quiet: After 50 years of hard work, she felt entitled to a few years of ease. 2 easiness, simplicity, facility, effortlessness, adeptness: He passed the other runners with ease. 3 affluence, wealth, prosperity, luxury, opulence, abundance, plenty: He has always led a life of ease, never having had to work. 4 naturalness, informality, unaffectedness, ingenuousness, casualness, artlessness, insouciance, nonchalance, aplomb; unconcern: I admire the ease with which she converses with complete strangers.

--v. 5 comfort, relax, calm, tranquillize, quieten, still, pacify, soothe, disburden: It eased his mind to learn that there was a reserve budget for emergencies. 6 lessen, diminish, abate, mitigate, reduce, decrease, allay, alleviate, assuage, mollify, appease, palliate, quiet, relieve: Her anxiety was considerably eased by the news that John would not need an operation after all. 7 manoeuvre, manipulate, inch, guide, steer, slip: The helmsman eased the ship into dock. 8 facilitate, expedite, simplify, smooth, further, clear, assist, aid, advance, forward, help: Having a wealthy father eased her way in life.

easily adv. 1 smoothly, effortlessly, readily, simply, handily, without a hitch, hands down, without even trying, comfortably, with no or without difficulty, Colloq easy as pie: You can easily tackle the job yourself. 2 by far, beyond or without doubt or question, indisputably, indubitably, undoubtedly, doubtless(ly), unquestionably, clearly, far and away, definitely, definitively, conclusively, certainly, surely, undeniably, obviously, patently: He is easily the best lawyer in the firm. 3 probably, most or very likely, well, almost certainly: We may easily be the first in Hampton to have plaster flamingos on the lawn.

easy adj. 1 simple, effortless, plain, clear, straightforward, hands down, uncomplicated, elementary, foolproof; easy as pie, easy as can be: Feeding goldfish is an easy job that children can undertake for themselves. 2 carefree, easygoing, casual, lenient, undemanding, relaxed, quiet, serene, restful, tranquil, peaceful, untroubled, undisturbed, unoppressive, gentle, mild, calm, comfortable, cosy, unhurried, leisurely: He has a pretty easy life now that he's retired. 3 light, lenient, undemanding, mild, flexible, indulgent, tolerant: You really should be easy on him after what he's been through. 4 tractable, pliant, docile, compliant, submissive, acquiescent, amenable, accommodating, soft, suggestible, credulous, trusting, weak, easygoing: He was an easy victim for confidence tricksters. She has the reputation of being a woman of easy virtue. 5 unstrained, gentle, moderate, unhurried, leisurely, even, steady, undemanding, comfortable, unexacting: They kept up an easy pace of about five miles a hour. 6 affable, friendly, amiable, amicable, agreeable, outgoing, informal, unceremonious, down-to-earth, unreserved, relaxing, natural, relaxed, easygoing: We found them easy to be with.

--adv. 7 effortlessly; calmly, unexcitedly, temperately, peacefully, tranquilly, serenely, nonchalantly, casually: Take it easy and don't get so worked up about things.

easygoing adj. relaxed, casual, mellow, carefree, undemanding, easy, even-tempered, forbearing, lenient, tolerant, permissive, over-tolerant, over-permissive, lax, weak, Colloq wishy-washy, laid-back: He's an easygoing sort of person.

eat v. dine, lunch, breakfast, sup, break bread, snack, have a bite; consume, devour, take (in) nourishment, Colloq put or pack away, Slang nosh, put or tie on the nosebag or US and Canadian feed-bag: I'm not hungry, thank you: I've already eaten.

eavesdrop v. listen in, tap, overhear, snoop; spy, pry: They were eavesdropping on our conversation, that's how they knew about Martha.

5.2 ebb...

=-

ebb v. 1 recede, flow back, subside, go out, go down; fall back or away, retreat, retrocede, retire: The tide ebbed, leaving the boat stranded. 2 decline, flag, decay, wane, diminish, decrease, drop, slacken, fade (away), drain (away), dwindle, peter out, waste (away), deteriorate: His enthusiasm for exercise is beginning to ebb.

--n. 3 low tide, low water, ebb tide, low point: The rocks appear when the sea is at its ebb. 4 decline, decay, decrease, diminution, wane, drop, slackening (off), dwindling, lessening, deterioration, degeneration: She was no longer willing to contend with the ebb and flow of his temper.

ebullient adj. bubbling, overflowing, effervescent, excited, effusive, exhilarated, elated, buoyant, exuberant, enthusiastic, zestful: The crowd was ebullient at the news from Mafeking.

5.3 eccentric...

=-

eccentric adj. 1 unconventional, unusual, uncommon, idiosyncratic, anomalous, unorthodox, out of the ordinary, irregular, atypical, incongruous, errant, aberrant, exceptional, individual, singular, unique; abnormal, odd, peculiar, strange, curious, bizarre, outlandish, queer, quaint, quirky, weird, offbeat, Colloq far-out, kinky, cranky: Yes, I would agree that walking a canary is a bit eccentric.

--n. 2 original, individualist, nonconformist, queer fellow, odd fish, Colloq character, card, freak, (nut) case, crank, oddball, weirdo or weirdie, US oner: In today's conformist society, anyone who isn't a carbon copy of his neighbour is regarded as an eccentric.

eccentricity
n. 1 unconventionality, unusualness, uncommonness, irregularity, nonconformity, individuality, individualism, singularity, uniqueness, strangeness, oddness, bizarreness, distinctiveness, capriciousness, weirdness: Why should someone be criticized for eccentricity? 2 idiosyncrasy, quirk, peculiarity, mannerism, crotchet, aberration, anomaly, oddity, curiosity, caprice: Eating crackers in bed is only one of her eccentricities.

echo n. 1 reverberation, repercussion, repetition, iteration, reiteration: The echo of the church bells could be heard throughout the valley. 2 imitation, copy, replica or replication, duplication, reproduction, simulation, facsimile; reflection, mirror image, repetition: Modern Rome is but a feeble echo of its glorious past.

--v. 3 resound, reverberate, ring: The hall echoed with children's laughter. 4 imitate, ape, parrot, mimic, copy, duplicate, reproduce, simulate, repeat, emulate, mirror, reflect: The poems are unoriginal and merely echo the works of others.

eclipse v. 1 conceal, hide, blot out, obscure, block, veil, shroud, cover, darken: A black cloud eclipsed the moon. 2 overshadow, obscure, surpass, top, outshine: His career was eclipsed by his wife's brilliant successes.

--n. 3 concealment, covering, hiding, blocking, blockage, occultation, obscuring, obscuration, darkening, shading, dimming: Though good may suffer an eclipse, it can never be extinguished. 4 decline, downturn, slump; recession: After the scandal, her career went into eclipse.

economic adj. 1 financial, fiscal, pecuniary, monetary, budgetary; commercial, mercantile, trade: The economic indicators for July affected the markets. 2 profitable, cost-effective, money-making, remunerative, productive; solvent: Increased demand for our products has made the company economic.

economical

adj. 1 cost-effective, money-saving, thrifty, unwasteful; cheap, inexpensive, reasonable; economic: This car is very economical to run. 2 provident, thrifty, sparing, economizing, prudent, conservative, frugal; parsimonious, penurious, stingy, cheap, miserly, niggardly, tight, close-fisted, tight-fisted, mean, penny-pinching, scrimping: Aunt Gertrude was always a very economical housekeeper.

economize v. save, cut back, husband, retrench; tighten one's belt, cut corners or costs, scrimp, skimp, pinch pennies: Without the extra income, we'll have to economize on something.

economy n. 1 thrift, husbandry, thriftiness, conservation, conservatism, saving, restraint, control, frugality: We'll have to exercise economy to get through the winter. 2 brevity, briefness, succinctness, terseness, conciseness, concision, compactness, restraint, curtness: He manages to get his ideas across with an admirable economy of language.

ecstasy n. 1 delight, joy, rapture, bliss, transport, nympholepsy or nympholepsia, happiness, gladness, elation, pleasure, enjoyment, gratification; heaven on earth: The prospect of being with her again filled me with ecstasy. 2 exaltation, frenzy, thrill, elation, paroxysm, excitement: The ecstasy of space flight is impossible to describe.

ecstatic adj. exhilarated, thrilled, exultant, blissful, euphoric, rapturous, enraptured, nympholeptic, enchanted, transported, rhapsodic, excited, elated, delighted, joyful, gleeful, overjoyed, happy, glad, beside oneself, delirious, orgasmic, Colloq on cloud nine, Brit over the moon, in the seventh heaven, cock-a-hoop, US in seventh heaven, flying: Our team had won an Olympic gold medal, and we were truly ecstatic.

5.4 eddy...

=-

eddy n. 1 swirl, whirl, vortex, gurgitation; whirlpool, maelstrom, Charybdis; dust devil, whirlwind, twister, tornado, cyclone, typhoon, hurricane; waterspout: These treacherous eddies are caused by tidal changes.

--v. 2 swirl, whirl, turn, spin: The wind eddied round us, driving the dinghy this way and that.

edge n. 1 brink, verge, border, side, rim, lip, brim; fringe, margin, boundary, bound, limit, bourn, perimeter, periphery: I was hanging on to the very edge of the cliff. The edge of the handkerchief was trimmed with lace. 2 acuteness, sharpness, keenness: That hunting knife has quite an edge. 3 harshness, sharpness, acrimony, pungency, force, urgency, effectiveness, incisiveness, causticity, virulence, vehemence: There was an edge to her voice when she told me not to bother her. 4 advantage, head start, superiority, lead, upper hand: You're holding the gun, so I guess you have the edge on me. 5 on edge. on tenterhooks, nervous, touchy, sensitive, prickly, itchy, tense, irascible, crabbed, irritable, peevish, apprehensive, with one's heart in one's mouth, edgy, anxious, ill at ease, restive, restless, fidgety, Colloq uptight, like a cat on a hot tin roof: She was on edge waiting for the exam results.

--v. 6 inch, move, sidle, crawl, creep, steal, worm, work (one's way): The burglar was edging along the wall, 30 storeys above the street.

edible adj. eatable, esculent, palatable, good or fit (to eat), wholesome, Rare comestible: After the sell-by date, fresh food is no longer considered edible.

edification

n. enlightenment, improvement, uplifting, enlightening, guidance, education, information, tuition, teaching, schooling, instruction: The exhibition is designed for both edification and enjoyment.

edit v. 1 redact, copy-edit, rewrite, rephrase, modify, alter, adapt, change, revise, correct, emend, style, restyle, polish, touch up: His job is to edit the stories into idiomatic English. 2 Often, edit out. blue-pencil, cut (out), delete, censor, erase, bleep, blip; bowdlerize, expurgate, clean up: They edited out all his slanderous asides before broadcasting the interview. 3 cut, condense, compress, shorten, crop, reduce: The story has to be edited so that it fits on one page. 4 prepare, compile, assemble, select, arrange, organize, order, reorganize, reorder: Margoliouth edited the collected letters of Andrew Marvell.

edition   n. number, issue, printing, print run; copy; version: The first Monday edition carried the news of the break-in, and a later edition reported the detention of a suspect.

editor   n. rewrite man or woman, rewriter, copy editor, redactor, reviser; writer, columnist, journalist, editorial writer, Brit leader-writer; editor-in-chief, managing editor, senior editor; compiler, collector: The editor sent the reporter out to check the facts of the story.

editorial n. Brit leader, leading article; op-ed article, think-piece, opinion piece, position statement; essay, article, column: Did you see the editorial about the Middle East situation in today's paper?

educate   v. teach, train, instruct, edify, tutor, school, inform, enlighten, indoctrinate, inculcate, coach, drill, prepare, ready, rear, bring up, cultivate, develop, civilize: It is the responsibility of the state to educate the people.

educated adj. 1 cultivated, cultured, erudite, well-read, lettered, literary, scholarly, learned; (well-)informed, knowledgeable, enlightened: There is no real evidence that educated people enjoy greater job satisfaction than those who leave school at 16. I haven't got the answer, but I could make an educated guess. 2 refined, polished, cultivated, civilized; discerning, critical, sensitive: She has an educated palate and really knows her wines.

education n. 1 teaching, schooling, training, instruction, tuition, tutelage, edification, tutoring, cultivation, upbringing, indoctrination, drilling: His education was in the hands of monks until he was twelve. 2 learning, lore, knowledge, information, erudition: Education is gained from the experience of others. 3 lesson, course (of study): The inhabitants gave her an education in how to survive in the wilderness.

educational

adj. 1 academic, scholastic, pedagogical, instructional: This is one of the best educational centres in the world. 2 informative, instructive, enlightening, edifying, eye-opening, revelatory, educative: A year spent abroad is always educational.

5.5 eerie

=-

eerie adj. frightening, weird, strange, uncanny, ghostly, spectral, dreadful, unearthly, frightful Poetic or Scots eldritch, Scots mysterious, Colloq scary, creepy, spooky: I had the eeriest feeling I was being watched.

5.6 effect...

=-

effect n. 1 result, consequence, outcome, conclusion, upshot, aftermath, impact: The effects of the storm could be seen everywhere. 2 effectiveness, efficacy, force, power, capacity, potency, influence, impression, impact, Colloq clout, punch: His threats had no effect. 3 significance, meaning, signification, purport, sense, essence, drift, implication, import, tenor, purpose, intent, intention, object, objective: She said 'Get lost', or words to that effect. 4 impact, impression, form, sensation: He didn't mean that, he just said it for effect. 5 in effect. effectively, virtually, for (all) practical purposes, so to speak, more or less; actually, in (point of) fact, really, essentially, basically, at bottom, in truth, truly, to all intents and purposes, at the end of the day, any way you look at it: She always spoke of him as her adopted son and this, in effect, was what he was. 6 take effect. become operative or operational, come into force, begin or start to work or function or operate: The regulation doesn't take effect till next week.

--v. 7 bring about, cause, make happen or take place, effectuate, achieve, accomplish, secure, obtain, make, execute, carry out, produce, create: The opposition was unable to effect any change in the law.

effective adj. 1 effectual, efficacious, productive; capable, useful, serviceable, competent, operative, able, functional, efficient:

The effective life of the battery is six months. 2 impressive, remarkable, noticeable, conspicuous, outstanding, striking, powerful, compelling, moving, telling, effectual: The stage setting was very effective. 3 operative, operational, in operation, functioning, real, actual, essential, basic, true: The monthly interest may seem low, but the effective annual rate is much higher.

effects n.pl. belongings, (personal) property, gear, possessions, stuff, things, paraphernalia, chattels, goods, Colloq junk, crap, Brit clobber, Taboo slang US shit: His personal effects were left scattered around the house.

effectual adj. 1 effective, efficacious, efficient, functional, productive, useful, telling, influential, powerful, forcible, forceful; capable, adequate: What is the most effectual way of stopping a take-over of the company? 2 effective, in force, legal, lawful, binding, sound, valid: You must register the agreement for it to be effectual.

effectuate

v. bring about, effect, carry out, implement, accomplish, do, execute, realize, achieve; cause, make happen: It is unclear just how she will effectuate her escape.

effeminate

adj. unmanly, womanish, womanly, sissy, weak, campy; gay, homosexual; Slang Brit bent, poncey, US limp-wristed, faggy, faggoty: He's too effeminate to play the part of Othello.

effervescent

n. 1 bubbling, fizzy, carbonated, sparkling, fizzing, gassy; foaming, foamy, frothing, frothy, bubbly: I prefer effervescent mineral water to still. 2 bubbling, bubbly, high-spirited, vivacious, ebullient, lively, exuberant, buoyant, animated, lively, exhilarated, excited, enthusiastic, irrepressible: Jeanette's effervescent personality endeared her to everyone who met her.

efficacious

adj. effective, effectual, productive, competent, successful, efficient, useful, serviceable; capable: He was not very efficacious in getting the council to change their policy.

efficiency
n. 1 effectiveness, efficacy, competence, capability, adeptness, proficiency, expertness, expertise, know-how, experience, skill, skilfulness, dexterity, adroitness: The efficiency of the staff has been greatly improved. 2 productivity, effectiveness, efficaciousness: How does the efficiency of a diesel compare with that of other engines?

efficient adj. unwasteful, economic, thrifty; effective, efficacious, effectual, competent, productive, proficient, operative: The technique for producing electrical power from tidal action has not yet proved efficient.

effort n. 1 exertion, striving, struggle, strain, labour, pains, energy, toil, application, trouble, travail, work, Colloq elbow-grease: He's gone to a lot of effort to please her. Getting the place cleaned up took a great deal of effort. 2 attempt, endeavour, essay, try, venture, Colloq stab, crack: Her efforts to be pleasant met with a stony response. 3 achievement, accomplishment, creation, feat, deed, attainment, exploit: Last year's fund-raising fair was a superb effort.

effortless
adj. easy (as pie or as A, B, C, or as 1, 2, 3), simple, painless, smooth, trouble-free, uncomplicated: She admired the apparently effortless grace of the dancer.

effrontery
n. impertinence, impudence, audacity, nerve, presumption, presumptuousness, brazenness, boldness, insolence, temerity, brashness, rashness, arrogance, front, indiscretion, Archaic frowardness, Colloq gall, brass, nerve, cheek, lip, mouth, Slang Brit side: He had the effrontery to call her 'Queenie'!

effusive adj. demonstrative, gushing, (over)enthusiastic, unrestrained, unchecked, unreserved, expansive, emotional, exuberant, rhapsodic, ebullient, lavish, voluble, profuse; fulsome: Her aunt greeted her with an effusive outpouring of affection.

5.7 egoistic...

=-

egoistic adj. egoistical, self-centred, egocentric, narcissistic, self-seeking, self-absorbed, selfish, self-serving, self-indulgent, self-important: She is too egoistic to consider anyone but herself.

egotistical
adj. egotistic, conceited, proud, overweening, bragging, boastful, boasting, swelled-headed or swell-headed or swollen-headed, vain, vainglorious, self-worshipping, self-admiring, vaunting, crowing: Considering his poor track record, he has nothing to be so egotistical about.

5.8 eject...
=-

eject v. 1 force or drive out, expel, oust, remove, get rid of, evict, Colloq throw or kick or boot out: They were ejected for causing a disturbance. 2 expel, emit, throw up or out, spew (forth), discharge, spout, disgorge, vomit (up or forth), send out or forth; ooze, exude, extravasate: The volcano ejected boulders the size of houses. 3 discharge, dismiss, cashier, drum out, lay off, declare or make redundant, Colloq fire, sack, boot out, axe, give the sack or boot or axe, give (someone) his or her marching orders or US also walking papers, send packing: He was ejected for stealing paper clips.

ejection n. 1 expulsion, casting out or up, disgorgement, vomiting forth, throwing out or up, discharge, emission, disgorging: The ejection of lava was preceded by loud rumblings. 2 exile, expulsion, banishment, deportation, ouster, removal; eviction, dispossession: His ejection from the meeting angered his supporters. My ejection by the landlord was illegal. 3 dismissal, discharge, cong,, cashiering, lay-off, Colloq firing, sacking, Slang the sack, the boot, the axe, the (old) heave-ho, US the bounce: Business was bad, and the entire staff was faced with ejection.

5.9 elaborate...
=-

elaborate adj. 1 detailed, painstaking, meticulous, punctilious, comprehensive, thorough, complete, exhaustive, intricate, involved, minute, precise, exact: The escape had been worked out in elaborate detail. 2 complicated, complex, convoluted, ornate, fancy, Byzantine, laborious, laboured, extravagant, showy; ornamented, decorated, baroque, rococo, busy, fussy, gingerbread: We marvelled at the elaborate mosaics. His plan is too elaborate and should be simplified.

--v. 3 ornament, decorate, complicate, embellish, garnish, adorn: Later craftsmen elaborated the earlier Greek motifs. 4 enlarge, expand (upon or on), expatiate, develop, cultivate, flesh out, enhance, refine, enrich, improve, better, ameliorate, emend, polish: Later on, I shall elaborate on the recruitment methods we used.

elaboration

n. 1 enhancement, refinement, enrichment, improvement, amelioration, melioration, betterment; embellishment, adornment, garnish, garnishment, decoration, over-decoration, gingerbread, Slang bells and whistles: The customers always welcome elaboration of the equipment. 2 enlargement, development, amplification, expansion: The argument requires further elaboration.

elapse v. pass (by), go (by), slip by or away, pass away, slide by, glide by, transpire: Three weeks have elapsed since I last saw her.

elastic adj. 1 flexible, stretchable, stretchy, stretch, bendable, pliable, springy, plastic, extensile, extensible, expansible, expandable, contractile, resilient, bouncy, compressible: Is it elastic enough to stretch round that box? 2 adjustable, adaptable, accommodating, flexible: The schedule for our main project is elastic, so we can fit in additional tasks at very short notice.

elasticity

n. 1 flexibility, resilience, rubberiness, plasticity, ductility, springiness, stretchability, stretchiness, stretch, suppleness, pliancy, Colloq give: Dry hair has no elasticity: it's brittle and breaks easily when brushed or combed. 2 flexibility, adjustability, adaptability, tolerance, suppleness:

Their plan lacks the elasticity needed to accommodate changes.

elated adj. exhilarated, uplifted, elevated, gleeful, joyful, jubilant, joyous, exultant, ecstatic, blissful, happy, delighted, euphoric, overjoyed, excited, thrilled, transported, pleased (as Punch), on top of the world, on cloud nine, Colloq tickled, tickled pink, Brit chuffed, over the moon, in the seventh heaven, US in seventh heaven: We were elated to learn that our daughter had won first prize.

elder adj. 1 older, senior: My elder brother was born in 1930. 2 venerable, respected, (pre-)eminent; experienced, veteran: Clemenceau was an elder statesman at the Geneva Convention.

--n. 3 senior, superior; patriarch, elder statesman, dean, doyen or doyenne: Everyone paid great respect to the elders of the tribe.

elderly adj. 1 old, past middle age, oldish, advanced in years, of advanced age, along in years, grey, ageing, aged, venerable; hoary, ancient, senescent, decrepit, superannuated; senile, anile; Colloq over the hill, past it, long in the tooth, having one foot in the grave, old-fogyish or old-fogeyish: Today, a person isn't considered elderly till he's past 65.

--n. 2 the elderly. the retired, the old, senior citizens, pensioners, O.A.P.'s, old-age pensioners, golden-agers, Colloq old-timers, (old) geezers, (old) fogies or fogeys, Brit wrinklies: The elderly constitute an increasingly large body of voters.

elect v. 1 choose, select, pick, vote (for), determine, designate: We must elect a new chairperson at the next meeting.

--adj. 2 chosen, elected, selected, picked out: The president-elect takes office next month. 3 select, choice, first-rate, first-class: An elect few make up the executive committee.

election n. poll, vote, referendum, plebiscite; selection, choice, choosing, nomination, designation, appointment; voting, electing: They held an election and Michael lost. The election of a new social secretary is required.

electioneer

v. campaign, canvass, support, back, promote: They are busy electioneering for their candidate.

electric adj. charged, tense, energized, stimulating, exciting, thrilling, galvanizing, electrifying, moving, stirring: As the jury filed in, the atmosphere in the courtroom was electric.

electricity

n. excitement, verve, energy, tension, tenseness, fervency, intensity, ardour; vibrations: I could feel the electricity between us.

electrify v. 1 startle, shock, stun, jolt, stagger, astound, jar, astonish, amaze: We were electrified by the news of the disaster. 2 excite, galvanize, animate, move, rouse, stir, stimulate, vitalize, fire, thrill, arouse: His fiery oratory electrified the audience.

elegance n. 1 refinement, grace, tastefulness, good taste, gentility, polish, courtliness, culture, politeness, politesse, propriety, dignity: Where but in 18th-century France could one find such elegance? 2 luxury, grandeur, luxuriousness, sumptuousness, exquisiteness, splendour, beauty: The overwhelming elegance of the palace took our breath away.

elegant adj. 1 tasteful, exquisite, handsome, beautiful, comely, dapper, smart, well turned out; graceful, choice, superior, fine, select, refined, delicate, discerning, artistic; dignified, genteel, sophisticated, cultivated, polished, urbane, Chesterfieldian, suave, soign,(e), debonair, courtly, to the manner born, well-bred, well-born, high-born: Desmond and Elizabeth are such an elegant couple! 2 artistic, stylish, modish, … la mode, chic, fashionable, Colloq in, with it: The newly refurbished rooms are very elegant. 3 luxurious, sumptuous, grand, opulent, plush, Colloq posh, swank, swanky, ritzy, fancy: We stayed in a very elegant West End hotel. 4 apt, clever, ingenious, neat: What is needed is a more elegant solution to the problem.

element n. 1 component, constituent, ingredient, essential, fundamental, part, unit, piece, segment, feature, factor, detail, particular: Each element was carefully designed with a view to its place in the whole. 2 environment, atmosphere, situation, locale, territory, sphere, habitat, medium, domain: Ordway is really in his element at a party. 3 elements. a (adverse or unfavourable) weather, climatic conditions: Stay here tonight - there's no need to brave the elements. b rudiments, basics, fundamentals, foundations, essentials, principles: It was she who taught me the elements of flying a helicopter.

elemental adj. basic, fundamental, primal, original, primordial, primitive: Elemental religion focused on worship of the sun and fertility.

elementary

adj. 1 simple, rudimentary, easy, straightforward, uncomplicated, clear, understandable, plain: This is an elementary mistake which most beginners make. 2 basic, fundamental, primary, introductory, initial, beginning; elemental: She received her elementary education in France.

elevated adj. 1 raised, upraised, uplifted, lifted (up): Only three hands were elevated in opposition and the motion was carried. 2 uplifted, noble, lofty, high, grand, exalted, dignified, eminent, pre-eminent, ennobled, prominent, notable, illustrious, distinguished, imposing, impressive, sublime: He has rather elevated notions of morality. 3 elated, cheerful, happy, exhilarated, animated, joyful, glad: Her elevated spirits and pleasant countenance make her a welcome guest.

elevation n. 1 altitude, height: The elevation of Denver, Colorado, is one mile above sea level. 2 swelling, lump, wen, eminence, prominence; hill, height, rise: From this elevation, you can see seven counties. The doctor noticed a slight elevation in the skin near the eye. 3 advancement, promotion, uplifting, enhancement, advance: Since her elevation to the peerage, she has had less time for local community work. 4 grandeur, nobleness, loftiness, exaltation, sublimity, distinction, dignity, refinement, cultivation: The elevation of his style means that his work is not accessible to a mass readership.

elfin   adj. 1 elvish, elfish, elf-like, impish, puckish, frolicsome, sprightly, arch, playful, mischievous, tricky: I suppose she has a certain elfin charm, but I don't like her. 2 small, wee, diminutive, tiny, little, dainty, Lilliputian: This is a delightful tale of elfin folk and magic birds.

elicit v. draw out, call forth, evoke, bring out or forth, bring to light, extract, wring, wrest, wrench: They finally elicited the fact that she had been lying about his whereabouts.

eligible adj. 1 fit, worthy, qualified, proper, suitable, appropriate, fitting: Is he an eligible candidate for the post? 2 single, unmarried, unwed, available: He is one of the few eligible bachelors in the town.

eliminate v. 1 remove, exclude, rule out, reject, drop, leave out, omit: Police have eliminated him from their enquiries. 2 take out or away, omit, get rid of, dispose of, expel, knock out: He was eliminated in the first heat of the 100-metre run. 3 erase, eradicate, expunge, obliterate, strike (out), cross out or off, cut (out), excise, delete, throw out, edit (out), blue-pencil, cancel: The censors have eliminated all references to sex. 4 kill, murder, assassinate, slay, terminate, exterminate, dispose of, liquidate, finish off, annihilate, stamp out, destroy, Slang bump off, polish off, US rub out, take for a ride, bury, ice, waste: They used a sub-machine gun to eliminate the competition.

,lite n. 1 elite, gentry, aristocracy, aristocrats, elect, upper class, nobility, privileged class, blue bloods, crŠme de la crŠme, haut monde, jet set, jet-setters, US Four Hundred, F.F.V., First Families of Virginia, Colloq upper crust, beautiful people, Brit nobs: The economic collapse had barely touched the wealthy ,lite.

--adj. 2 elite, aristocratic, elect, upper-class, privileged, blue-blooded, noble, exclusive, choice, best, top: She socializes with rather an ,lite group of people.

elixir n. 1 panacea, cure-all, nostrum, wonder drug, miracle drug, sovereign remedy: In the Middle Ages alchemists sought a universal cure, an elixir. 2 essence, potion, extract, tincture, compound, mixture: Ophidia's Elixir was the name of a patent snake-oil medicine. 3 pith, core, kernel, heart, essence, quintessence, principle, extract, base, basis, soul:

The elixir of life is wisdom and its mystic ingredient is not knowledge but understanding.

eloquent adj. 1 expressive, articulate, silver-tongued, fluent, well-spoken, effective, persuasive, convincing, cogent, trenchant, incisive, graphic, vivid, striking, facile, smooth, glib, oratorical, rhetorical: He was an eloquent speaker. He rose and gave an eloquent speech. 2 suggestive, meaningful, pregnant: His eyebrow was raised in eloquent scepticism.

elsewhere adv. somewhere else, to another place; in another place, abroad, absent, away: She's not in the office so I assume she's gone elsewhere. Elsewhere, winds have died down and temperatures are slowly rising.

elude v. 1 evade, escape, avoid, dodge, slip away from, Colloq duck, give the slip, shake off: The suspect has eluded the police for a year. 2 evade, escape; baffle, puzzle, confuse, bewilder, confound; frustrate, stump, thwart: The point of your argument eludes me.

elusive adj. 1 evasive, slippery, tricky, shifty: One of the world's most elusive guerrilla leaders was spotted in public yesterday. 2 evasive, evanescent, fleeting, fugitive, transitory, indefinable, elusory, intangible, impalpable: The notion of truth has always been elusive.

5.10 emaciated...
=-

emaciated adj. emaciate, atrophied, shrivelled, wizened, shrunken, haggard, gaunt, drawn, pinched, bony, skeletal, cadaverous, withered, wasted, consumptive, phthisic, anorexic or anorectic, wasting (away), scrawny, skinny, thin, lean, spare, undernourished, underfed, starved, half-starved: The inmates of the camp were so emaciated they could scarcely stand.

emanate v. 1 issue, come (out), emerge, proceed, flow, ooze, exude; radiate: Black smoke emanated from the mouth of the idol. 2 radiate, give off or out, send out or forth, disseminate, discharge, put out, emit; exhale, ooze, exude: The idol's eyes emanated a blue light.

emancipate

v. release, set free, liberate, enfranchise, manumit, loose, let loose, let go, set free, disenthral, unfetter, unchain, unshackle; deliver: Britain emancipated the slaves almost 50 years before Lincoln's Emancipation Proclamation.

embargo n. 1 restraint, block, blockage, bar, ban, stoppage, cessation, proscription, prohibition, interdiction, check, restriction, barrier; hindrance, impediment: The government placed an embargo on the export of oil.

--v. 2 restrain, block, bar, ban, stop, cease, proscribe, prohibit, interdict, check, restrict, hold back, prevent; hinder, impede, retard, hold up: They may embargo oil shipments in case of war.

embark v. 1 board, go aboard; entrain; emplane or enplane: We embarked and the ship sailed. 2 Often, embark on. commence, begin, enter (upon), initiate, launch, start, go into, set about, take up or on, engage in, assume, tackle: He will embark on the new enterprise next month.

embarrass v. disconcert, discomfit, chagrin, abash, shame, mortify, humble, humiliate, discountenance, discompose, fluster, upset, distress, disgrace, Colloq show up: He embarrassed his colleagues by his bad manners.

embarrassed

adj. 1 ashamed, shamefaced, blushing, disconcerted, discomfited, chagrined, abashed, shamed, mortified, humiliated, discountenanced, discomposed, flustered, distressed, red-faced, uncomfortable, self-conscious, sheepish, red in the face; humbled, disgraced: She was extremely embarrassed by all the attention. 2 in debt, in the red, straitened, insolvent, Colloq short, hard up, broke, Brit skint: I'm financially embarrassed now but I'll pay you later.

embarrassing

adj. awkward, humiliating, mortifying, shaming, shameful, uncomfortable, discomfiting, disconcerting, touchy, distressing, worrying: I had a very embarrassing moment when I forgot the client's name.

embarrassment
n. 1 bashfulness, awkwardness, clumsiness, discomposure, abashment, uneasiness, discomfort, self-consciousness, mortification, chagrin: My embarrassment made me blush. 2 difficulty, mess, predicament, dilemma, problem, trouble, Colloq hot water, pickle, fix, scrape, bind: Finding them together presented me with a real embarrassment. 3 excess, superfluity, superabundance, over-abundance, embarras de richesse, embarras de choix, oversupply, surplus, profusion: An embarrassment of options was open to me.

embellish v. 1 beautify, improve, titivate or tittivate, dress (up), trick out or up, enhance, elaborate, enrich, embroider, gild, furbish (up), garnish, decorate, adorn, ornament, deck, bedeck, trim, elaborate, caparison, rubricate, varnish; gild refined gold, paint the lily, Misquote gild the lily: The saddles are embellished with silver studs. 2 elaborate, exaggerate, overdo, embroider, enhance, dress up: His reports are so embellished that you cannot separate fact from fiction.

embellishment
n. 1 decoration, ornamentation, ornament, elaboration, adornment, embroidery: The basic design, which is shoddy, is unimproved by embellishment. Good pasta needs minimal embellishment. 2 exaggeration, enhancement, tinsel, garnish, gilding, frill: All the embellishments make her story totally unbelievable.

embers n.pl. live coals; cinders, ashes; remains, remnants: The dying embers of the fire symbolized her waning love for Darrin.

embezzle v. misappropriate, peculate, misapply, misuse, steal, make off or away with, filch, pilfer, purloin, Law defalcate; Colloq have one's hand in the till: The treasurer had embezzled half a million from the company.

embezzlement
n. misappropriation, peculation, misapplication, misuse, misusing, abstraction, stealing, theft, thievery, larceny, filching, purloining, pilferage, pilfering, Law defalcation: Wanted for embezzlement, he fled to Brazil.

embittered
adj. bitter, resentful, sour, soured, caustic, acrimonious, acid, envenomed; angry, choleric, rancorous: His conviction for fraud left him an embittered man.

emblem n. badge, insigne, symbol, representation, device, seal, crest, token, sign; trade mark, logotype or logo: The white knight's emblem was a pair of crossed flaming swords.

emblematic
adj. emblematical, symbolic(al), representative, representational: The white dove is emblematic of peace.

embodiment
n. 1 incarnation, realization, concretization, manifestation, expression, personification, materialization, actualization, reification, substantiation: The golden section is the embodiment of an ancient principle of proportion. 2 consolidation, collection, unification, incorporation, inclusion, integration, combination, concentration, systematization, organization, codification, synthesis, epitome: This book is the embodiment of Arnolfo's theories of aesthetics.

embody v. 1 concretize, realize, manifest, express, personify, materialize, reify, actualize, externalize, incarnate: Her feminist convictions are embodied in her lifestyle. 2 exemplify, typify, represent, symbolize, stand for: Note how this painting embodies Longchamp's unique notions of form. 3 consolidate, collect, unite, unify, incorporate, include, integrate, combine, concentrate, systematize, organize, comprise, codify, epitomize, synthesize: The teachings of the sect are embodied in their scriptures.

embrace v. 1 hug, clasp, grasp, hold, enfold, cuddle, cleave together, Archaic clip: She embraced him warmly when they met again. 2 adopt, espouse, take up or in, avail oneself of, use, make use of, employ, accept, receive, welcome: They embraced Christian ideals. 3 include, comprise, embody, incorporate, comprehend, encompass: Their tribal territory embraces all areas south of the mountains.

--n. 4 hug, squeeze, clutch, Slang clinch: He gave her a tender embrace and left.

emerge v. 1 appear, come out, come forth, come up, rise; arise, surface, come into view or notice, come to light, be revealed, crop up, turn out, develop, become known, become apparent, transpire, happen, evolve: It emerged that she had bought a pistol that morning. 2 issue, emanate, come forth, proceed: The train emerged from the tunnel.

emergence n. rise, surfacing, appearance; development, materialization, manifestation: They were surprised by his emergence as leader.

emergency n. crisis, exigency, danger, predicament, difficulty, pinch: In an emergency, put on lifebelts.

emigrant n. ,migr,, expatriate, displaced person, DP, refugee, boat person; colonist, settler: For millions of European emigrants, their first sight of the promised land was the Statue of Liberty in New York harbour.

emigrate v. migrate, move, relocate, resettle; leave, quit, depart, forsake: Her parents emigrated from Turkey and settled in Scotland.

eminent adj. 1 distinguished, esteemed, exalted, respected, revered, honoured, dignified, notable, noteworthy, important, noted, outstanding, prominent, pre-eminent, conspicuous, superior, great, illustrious, famous, renowned, well-known, celebrated: McLeod is an eminent meteorologist. 2 conspicuous, outstanding, marked: His suggestion made eminent good sense.

eminently adv. very, exceedingly, extremely, exceptionally, remarkably, singularly, notably, signally: This man is eminently well suited for his job.

emit v. discharge, eject, expel, emanate, send out or forth, pour out or forth, give off or out, issue, vent, radiate; exhale; exude, ooze: The factory has been emitting toxic gases into the atmosphere.

emotion n. feeling, passion, sentiment, sensation: They say there is a fine line between the emotions of love and hate.

emotional adj. 1 passionate, impassioned, ardent, enthusiastic, heated, zealous, heartfelt, excited, fervent, fervid: She reacted in a very emotional way to the suggestions. 2 tense, nervous, excitable, highly-strung, high-strung, temperamental, volatile, hotheaded, demonstrative: He is a very emotional person, who should not be driving a bus. 3 sensitive, warm, sentimental, tender, moving, poignant, stirring, emotive, affective, touching: Their meeting after 50 years was certainly emotional. 4 frantic, agitated, irrational, hysterical, wild, ranting: She became very emotional when the police took away her son.

emphasis n. importance, stress, significance, prominence, attention, weight, gravity, force, moment, pre-eminence, priority, underscoring, underlining, Technical paralipsis: They place too much emphasis on the social aspects of school.

emphasize v. stress, accentuate, accent, underscore, point up, underline, call or draw attention to, mark, highlight, play up, spotlight, feature: The new procedures emphasize safety.

emphatic adj. firm, uncompromising, determined, decided, resolute, dogged; earnest, definite, unequivocal, unambiguous, distinct, dogmatic, categorical, peremptory, explicit, incisive, insistent, affirmative, positive, sure, certain, unmistakable or unmistakeable, specific, definitive, direct; forceful, vigorous, energetic, assertive, intense; express, pronounced, strong: She was emphatic about leaving then and there.

empirical adj. empiric, experiential, practical, observed, pragmatic, experimental: He has been there and has empirical knowledge of the system.

employ v. 1 hire, engage, enlist, recruit, enrol, sign (up), take on, retain, commission: I have employed a solicitor to look after my affairs while I am away. The company employed 120 engineers. 2 use, make use of, utilize, apply: We plan to employ the most modern equipment. 3 occupy, take (up), engage, involve: He is employed with his stamp collection.

employee n. worker, staff member, wage-earner; hand: The employees are on strike.

employer n. 1 proprietor, owner, patron, manager, director, chief, head, Colloq boss, Brit gaffer, governor, Eye dialect guv'nor, guv:

My employer comes in late every day. 2 company, firm, corporation, business, establishment, organization, Colloq outfit: She took her employer to court for unfair dismissal.

employment

n. 1 occupation, job, trade, work, business, profession, vocation, calling, livelihood, pursuit, m,tier, skill, craft, Colloq line, Slang racket: My employment for many years has been restoring antique furniture. 2 hire, hiring, engagement, engaging, employing, taking on, retaining, enlistment, enlisting: The employment of 50 people by the new firm will help the town. 3 use, utilization, application, operation, implementation: The job involves the employment of specialized techniques.

emptiness n. 1 voidness, hollowness, vacantness, vacancy, vacuity, blankness, bareness, barrenness, desolation, desertedness, vacuum, void: He was again alone in the vast emptiness of space. After she left, I felt a terrible emptiness. 2 senselessness, meaninglessness, pointlessness, aimlessness, purposelessness, futility, uselessness, worthlessness, hollowness: The emptiness of the candidate's words was apparent to all. 3 vacuity, vacuousness, vacantness, blankness, expressionlessness, emotionlessness: The emptiness of her facial expression told me that she hadn't understood a word.

empty   adj. 1 void, unfilled, hollow, bare, barren, vacant, unfurnished, unadorned, undecorated; emptied, drained, spent, exhausted: That empty space on the wall needs a painting. 2 vacant, unoccupied, uninhabited, untenanted: He finally found an empty flat with two bedrooms. 3 deserted, desolate, uninhabited, wild, waste, bare, barren; forsaken: He wandered for days on the empty moor. 4 trivial, insincere, hypocritical, hollow, cheap, worthless, valueless, meaningless, insignificant, insubstantial, unsatisfying, idle: His promises were merely words, empty words. 5 vacant, blank, deadpan, expressionless, poker-faced; vacuous, fatuous, stupid, foolish, inane: He looked at me with that empty expression of his. 6 blank, clean, new, unused, clear: On an empty page write your name and the date. 7 empty of. devoid of, lacking (in), wanting, in want of, deficient in, destitute of, without, sans: Their hearts are empty of compassion.

--v. 8 clear, remove, take out or away, put out, cast or throw out, eject; vacate, evacuate; dump, drain, exhaust, pour out, void, discharge, unload: Thieves emptied everything from the house. The police are emptying the building because of a bomb scare. Empty these bottles outside.

5.11 enable...
=-

enable v. 1 qualify, authorize, entitle, permit, allow, sanction, approve, empower, license,commission, entrust, depute, delegate, assign, charter, franchise: An act was passed to enable them to build the railway. 2 capacitate, facilitate, expedite, help, aid, assist: The grant enabled me to continue my studies. 3 permit, allow, approve, assent to, go along with, agree to, give the go-ahead or green light, Colloq OK or okay: Her press pass enables her to get through police lines.

enact v. 1 pass, legislate, ratify; ordain, decree, rule, command, order, authorize: The law was enacted to protect consumers. 2 act (out), represent, play, portray, depict, perform, appear as: She enacted the role of a modern Lady Macbeth.

enchant v. 1 bewitch, cast a spell on, ensorcell or ensorcel, spellbind, hypnotize, mesmerize, voodoo, Brit magic, US hex, Colloq hoodoo: Circe enchanted Ulysses' men and turned them into swine. 2 charm, fascinate, beguile, captivate, enthral, enrapture, attract, allure, delight, entrance: With her sultry looks she has enchanted the most cynical of men.

enchanted adj. pleased, delighted, happy, thrilled, French enchant,(e): I am enchanted to meet you at last, Mrs Thompson.

enchanting
adj. beguiling, bewitching, entrancing, spellbinding, charming, fascinating, captivating, intriguing, enthralling, alluring, delightful, hypnotic, attractive, appealing, winsome, ravishing, seductive: Caesar found Cleopatra utterly enchanting.

enchantment
n. 1 witchcraft, sorcery, magic, wizardry, thaumaturgy, conjuration or conjury; spell, charm, jinx, US hex: Stories of

enchantment and magic fail to interest today's sceptical five-year-old. When she worked her enchantment on me, I succumbed completely. 2 charm, beguilement, allure, fascination, rapture, mesmerism, bliss: She was completely carried away by the enchantment of the moment.

encircle v. surround, gird, circle, enclose, ring, encompass, compass, confine, hem or hold in; wreathe: When the horde encircled the castle we thought we were doomed.

enclose   v. 1 inclose, confine, shut in, close or hem in, surround, pen, encircle, encompass, bound, envelop, hedge in, wall in, immure, fence in or off, US and Canadian corral: A high wall encloses the garden. 2 insert, include, contain; wrap: The cheque was enclosed in the same envelope.

enclosure n. 1 fold, pen, cote, run, sty, yard, farmyard, barnyard, courtyard, quadrangle or quad, square, compound, Brit close, US and Canadian corral: We had trouble keeping the dogs in the enclosure. 2 fence, wall, rail, railing, barrier, hedge, barricade, boundary: The buildings serve as an enclosure.

encounter v. 1 meet, come upon, run into or across, happen upon, chance upon, hit upon, light upon, stumble upon, Colloq bump into: She encountered him again in the supermarket. 2 face, experience, meet with, contend with, be faced with, come into contact with, wrestle with: She encounters such problems every day. 3 come into conflict with, contend with, assail, cross swords (with), grapple with, engage, joust with, do battle with, confront, clash with, join, meet: The ballad tells how he encountered the black knight in single combat.

--n. 4 meeting: It was a chance encounter that brought us together. 5 confrontation, brush, quarrel, disagreement, dispute, altercation, engagement, action, battle, fight, clash, conflict, skirmish, contest, competition, duel, contention, struggle, war, Colloq dust-up, scrap, run-in, set-to: My uncle took part in the bloody encounter in the Ardennes.

encourage v. 1 hearten, embolden, reassure, buoy (up), stimulate, animate, support, inspirit, inspire, cheer (up), urge or spur on or onward(s), incite, Colloq egg on, pep up: She encouraged him in his study of medicine. 2 promote, advance, aid, support, help, assist, abet, foster, forward, boost, Colloq give a shot in the arm: The continued success of the team encouraged attendance at the games.

encouragement
n. 1 heartening, reassuring, reassurance, buoying up, stimulating, stimulation, stimulus, animating, animation, supporting, support, promoting, promotion, inspiring, inspiration, cheering, urging, spur, spurring, exhorting, exhortation, prodding, urging, innervation, inciting, incitement: Without her encouragement, I could never have won. 2 boost, stimulus, help, aid, support, Colloq pep talk: The team gets a lot of encouragement from local merchants.

encroach v. Often, encroach on or upon. intrude, trespass, infringe, invade, make inroads: When you mention arctophily, you're encroaching on my territory.

encumber v. 1 burden, weigh down, load (up or down), overload, overburden, strain, oppress, saddle, tax, overtax: Encumbered with intolerable taxes, the people revolted. She almost drowned because she was encumbered with her numerous petticoats. 2 hamper, impede, hinder, handicap, inconvenience, trammel, retard, slow down: Though encumbered by an invalid husband, she managed to qualify as a barrister.

encumbrance
n. weight, burden, onus, cross (to bear), albatross, millstone, handicap, impediment, hindrance, obstacle, obstruction, liability, disadvantage, drag: The children were regarded merely as an encumbrance.

encyclopedic
adj. encyclopaedic, comprehensive, inclusive, broad, extensive, universal, thorough, exhaustive, wide-ranging, complete: She has an encyclopedic knowledge of Chinese art.

end   n. 1 extremity, extreme, extent, bound, boundary, tip, limit, terminus: That fence marks the southern end of the property. At the end of the garden was a large shed. 2 close, termination, conclusion, cessation, expiration, finish, completion, finale, ending, wind-up; denouement or d‚nouement: At the end of the film, the lights came on. 3 aim, purpose, intention, intent, objective, object,goal, point, reason, raison d'^tre, destination, motive, motivation, aspiration: To what end does she persist so vehemently? 4 consequence, result, outcome, effect, upshot: The end of the affair was that he had to leave town. 5 destruction, death, ruin, extermination, annihilation, death, termination, conclusion: That would spell the end to all life on earth. 6 at a loose end or US and Canadian at loose ends. unsettled, unoccupied, unemployed, uncommitted, undecided, indecisive, ambivalent, vacillating, purposeless, aimless, adrift, drifting, betwixt and between, neither here nor there: My wife has gone off to visit her mother and I'm at a loose end. 7 on end. a upright, erect, standing: He can balance a ruler on end. b continuously, uninterruptedly, unceasingly, incessantly, consecutively: It rained for days on end. 8 the end. a the worst, the last straw, the final blow, Colloq the limit, too much: Brian's winning first prize is the absolute end. b the best, the greatest: That disc by The What is the living end.

--v. 9 terminate, conclude, bring to an end, stop, halt, cease, wind up or down, settle, put an end to, discontinue, break off, cut off, close, finish, culminate, end up, Brit put paid to; die (out), expire, climax, peter out, vanish: We have ended our relationship. The book ends with her returning to him. The year ends on December 31st. 10 kill, put to death, annihilate, exterminate, terminate, extinguish; destroy, ruin: He ended his life last night with a bullet. 11 surpass, outdo, outclass, outshine, outstrip, supersede: It is a disaster film to end all disaster films.

endanger v. imperil, threaten, jeopardize, risk, put at risk, hazard, expose (to danger), put in jeopardy, tempt fate: She endangered her life while trying to save his.

endangered
adj. imperilled, threatened, near extinction: Every effort must be made to protect endangered species.

endearing adj. attractive, engaging, likeable, appealing, winsome, captivating, winning: He has a few endearing qualities, I suppose.

endeavour v. 1 try, attempt, strive, make an effort, do one's best, struggle, exert oneself, undertake; aim, aspire; Colloq take a stab at, have a go or crack or whack or shot at: For years he's endeavoured to see her.

--n. 2 effort, pains, attempt, try, striving, struggle, venture, enterprise, Colloq stab, crack, whack, shot: Her endeavours to be published have come to naught.

endless adj. 1 limitless, unlimited, boundless, unbounded, infinite, immeasurable, eternal, unending: They found themselves in the endless reaches of outer space. 2 ceaseless, uninterrupted, incessant, unceasing, unending, constant, perpetual, interminable, unremitting, non-stop, continuous, continual, everlasting: I wish you two would stop your endless bickering.

endorse v. 1 indorse, approve, sanction, authorize, advocate, support, back, subscribe to, sustain, confirm, countenance, put one's stamp or seal (of approval) on, set one's seal (of approval) to, give (something) one's imprimatur, Colloq OK, okay: The council endorsed our application for planning permission. 2 indorse, countersign: Endorse the cheque to cash it.

endorsement

n. 1 indorsement, approval, affirmation, sanction, authorization, confirmation, ratification, support, backing, approbation, seal or stamp of approval, imprimatur, Colloq OK, okay: He is acting with the full endorsement of his union. 2 counter-signature: His endorsement is on the back of the cheque.

endowment n. 1 grant, (financial) aid, subsidy, subvention, allowance, allotment, contribution, donation, gift, present, award; bequest, inheritance, dowry: The endowment was enough to support me for a year. 2 gift, presentation, bestowal, award, awarding, settlement: The endowment of the grant was approved by the college. 3 endowments. qualities, talents, gifts, abilities, aptitudes, capabilities, capacities, qualifications, strengths; attributes, properties, characteristics: She is a woman of considerable endowments.

endurance n. 1 stamina, staying power, perseverance, persistence, resolution, fortitude, tenacity, patience, tolerance, Colloq US stick-to-it-iveness: He showed remarkable endurance in the pentathlon trials. 2 lasting quality, durability, longevity, lifetime, continuation: In this film, he uses the river as a symbol of endurance and timelessness.

endure v. 1 last, persist, stay, remain, abide, prevail, survive, continue, hold, live (on), Colloq go the distance: Her fame as a poet will endure. 2 stand, abide, tolerate, face, survive, withstand, bear, weather, take (it), suffer, stomach, undergo, hold out (against), Colloq hang in (there), stick or sweat (it or something) out: He endured the pressure of his job as long as he could. 3 suffer, undergo, bear, face, stand, put up with, stomach, take: Consider the tyranny that Europe endured under Hitler.

enduring adj. lasting, long-lasting, durable, abiding, continuing, long-standing, persisting, persistent, remaining, steady, steadfast; eternal, immortal, permanent: Their enduring faith carried them through the ordeal.

enemy n. foe, antagonist, adversary, opponent, rival, competitor, contestant, contender; the opposition, the other side: His enemies were running a smear campaign against him.

energetic adj. lively, active, vigorous, invigorated, dynamic, animated, spirited, untiring, tireless, indefatigable, sprightly, spry, vital, high-powered, brisk, vibrant, zesty, zestful, Colloq hot, peppy, full of pep, full of get-up-and-go, zippy, on one's toes, zingy, full of beans: I feel most energetic at the start of the day.

energize v. enliven, liven up, stimulate, animate, invigorate, activate, actuate, move, motivate, galvanize, electrify, inspire, inspirit, pep up, waken, rouse, stir, arouse, excite, egg on, urge: Max's enthusiasm energized the whole of the research team.

energy n. vitality, forcefulness, vivacity, liveliness, vigour, animation, spirit, force, dynamism, drive, verve, dash, ,lan, intensity, power, determination, puissance, strength, might, Colloq pep, vim and vigour, US stick-to-it-iveness, get-up-and-go, zip, zing: At seventy, she just couldn't put as much energy into her performance as she once did.

enervate v. weaken, tire, strain, enfeeble, debilitate, fatigue, exhaust, drain, sap, wear out, devitalize, break, defeat: I have always found the tropics quite enervating.

enforce v. 1 insist upon or on, stress, require, impose, support, put into effect, apply, administer, carry out, inflict, bring to bear, implement, prosecute, discharge; reinforce; Colloq crack or clamp down: The police will enforce the curfew tonight. 2 force, compel, pressure or Brit pressurize, press, coerce, lay stress upon or on, impose upon or on, impress upon or on, insist upon or on, demand, require; intimidate, browbeat, bully, railroad; Colloq lean on, twist (someone's) arm: They hired thugs to enforce their claim.

engage v. 1 employ, hire, enrol or US also enroll, enlist, retain, sign (up), contract with or for, indenture; rent, book, reserve, secure, bespeak: She was engaged on a part-time basis. We engaged rooms for the night. 2 occupy, engross, busy, absorb, involve, tie up, preoccupy, employ: This task will engage all available resources until the end of next month. 3 pledge, undertake, bargain, agree, covenant, promise, guarantee, contract: I engaged to complete the work by Tuesday. 4 attract, hold, capture, catch, draw: The museum has many exhibits that will engage the interest of children. 5 join (in) combat or battle with, meet, encounter, fight, combat, attack, battle, clash with, grapple with: The enemy was engaged at dawn. 6 engage in. participate (in), partake in, take part (in), enter (into), undertake, embark on: She engages in many out-of-school activities.

engaged adj. 1 betrothed, affianced, plighted, pledged, promised; spoken for: They got engaged on St Valentine's Day. 2 busy, occupied, tied up, involved, employed, absorbed, preoccupied, wrapped up: He is otherwise engaged and cannot meet me today.

engagement
n. 1 appointment, meeting, date, rendezvous, arrangement, commitment: I'm sorry, I have a previous engagement. 2 betrothal: Their engagement was announced in all the papers. 3 agreement, bargain, obligation, promise, pledge, covenant, contract: The company undertook an engagement to provide the steel. 4 job, position, post, commission, booking; employment, work; Colloq spot, Slang (of a musician) gig: He has an

engagement with the newspaper. 5 fight, battle, conflict, encounter, combat: The naval engagement lasted three days and nights.

engaging adj. charming, pleasant, attractive, winsome, winning, appealing, agreeable, delightful, pleasing, likeable, friendly, open: With her engaging personality, it is no wonder she has so many friends.

engine n. motor, machine, mechanism, appliance, apparatus; locomotive: The invention of the internal combustion engine revolutionized modern transport.

engineer n. 1 designer, originator, inventor, contriver, architect, planner, mastermind: The engineer of this scheme was one David Jones. 2 (engine-) driver, conductor, operator: He was the engineer on the afternoon train out of Washington. 3 mechanic, technician, repairman: The telephone engineers will be here on Monday to install a new phone system.

--v. 4 devise, plan, develop, originate, contrive, invent, mastermind, construct, build, make: It is said that Daedalus engineered the first man-made wings. 5 manipulate, scheme, plot, machinate, intrigue, connive, conspire, manoeuvre, rig, set up, organize, arrange, put over, Colloq finagle, wangle, swing: She tried to engineer the laundering of the money, but was caught.

engrave v. 1 cut, carve, chisel, inscribe; etch: The ring was a plain gold band, engraved with daisies. 2 impress, stamp, set, lodge, fix, embed, imprint, ingrain: The horror of that night was forever engraved in his mind.

engraving n. 1 intaglio, cameo, etching, dry-point, woodcut, linocut, wood or steel engraving, anaglyph, block or US also cut: She uses a burin to make these engravings. 2 print, impression, etching, dry-point: The exhibition of D•rer engravings closes tomorrow.

enhance v. improve, better, augment, boost, raise, elevate, lift, heighten, exalt, enlarge, swell, magnify, increase, add to, amplify, intensify, enrich, embellish, complement, reinforce, strengthen: His public image was greatly enhanced by his support of charities.

enigma n. puzzle, conundrum, mystery, riddle, poser, problem: How he escaped is an enigma to the police.

enjoy v. 1 delight in, appreciate, like, take or derive pleasure or satisfaction in or from, relish (in), fancy, take to, Slang dig, get a kick or lift or charge out of, get high on, get off on: Bernard really enjoys Wagner. 2 benefit or profit from, take advantage of, use, utilize, make use of, use to advantage, have, possess: He cannot be charged because he enjoys diplomatic immunity. 3 enjoy oneself. have a good time, make merry, Colloq have a ball or the time of one's life: I enjoyed myself at your party.

enjoyment n. 1 pleasure, delight, joy, gratification, satisfaction, relish, zest, delectation, recreation, entertainment, diversion, amusement: The public has derived much enjoyment from Shaw's plays. 2 use, utilization, exercise, possession; benefit, advantage: As a member, you are entitled to the enjoyment of all club privileges.

enlarge v. 1 increase, expand, magnify, amplify, extend, swell, dilate, spread, wax, widen, broaden, lengthen, elongate, stretch, distend; add to, supplement, augment; inflate; Colloq blow up: The government will enlarge the area devoted to public parks. Enlarge the photographs and details appear. 2 enlarge on or upon. expand on, expatiate on, amplify, expound; detail, elaborate (on): The speaker was asked to enlarge on her plans for building new hospitals.

enlighten v. inform, edify, instruct, teach, tutor, educate, coach, apprise, make aware, advise, counsel: You must enlighten George on how to behave in public.

enlightened
adj. well-informed, informed, educated, aware, knowledgeable, literate, rational, reasonable, sensible, common-sense, commonsensical, broad-minded, open-minded, liberal; cultivated, civilized, sophisticated, Colloq in the know: In a democracy, the press serves an enlightened public.

enlist v. 1 enrol, register, join (up), volunteer, sign up or on;

engage, recruit, induct, muster, conscript, impress, call up, US draft: He enlisted in the navy at 17. 2 employ, hire, engage, retain, make available, secure, obtain, get, procure, gather, drum up, mobilize, Colloq organize: We must enlist all the help we can.

enliven   v. 1 invigorate, inspirit, animate, pep up, stimulate, energize, vivify, vitalize, quicken, exhilarate, arouse, rouse, awaken, wake up, spark (off), kindle, enkindle, fire (up), inspire: Enlivened by the coach's talk, we were determined to win. 2 brighten, cheer (up), buoy (up), gladden, uplift: The room was considerably enlivened by the new curtains.

enormity n. outrageousness, outrage, atrociousness, atrocity, wickedness, heinousness, flagitiousness, horribleness, horror, barbarity, savagery, monstrousness, horridness, evil, viciousness: The enormity of the crime shocked us all.

enormous adj. huge, immense, gigantic, elephantine, gargantuan, mammoth, titanic, colossal, tremendous, vast, massive, stupendous, Brobdingnagian, gross, monstrous, prodigious: An enormous dragon blocked their way out of the cave.

enormousness

n. immensity, hugeness: I was staggered by the sheer enormousness of the building.

enough   adj. 1 sufficient, adequate, ample: There isn't enough food to go round.

--n. 2 sufficiency, adequacy, ample supply, plenty: I have enough for myself.

--adv. 3 sufficiently, adequately, reasonably, satisfactorily, tolerably, passably: Your word is good enough for me.

enquire   v. 1 inquire, ask, question, query: The police enquired whether we had noticed any strange goings-on next door. 2 See inquire.

enrage   v. anger, infuriate, madden, incense, provoke, inflame, make (someone's) blood boil, Colloq get (someone's) back or Irish or hackles or dander up, make (someone) see red, wave a red flag before (someone), make (someone's) blood boil, US burn (someone) up, Slang US tick (someone) off, Taboo piss (someone) off, Brit put (someone's) monkey up, US tee (someone) off: Lord Thimble was enraged at being made to wait his turn.

enrapture v. enchant, entrance, transport, thrill, bewitch, spellbind, fascinate, charm, enthral, captivate, beguile, delight: The soprano quite enraptured her audience.

enrich v. 1 endow, enhance, improve, upgrade, better, ameliorate, refine, add to: His novels have enriched our literature. 2 ornament, adorn, decorate, embellish; beautify, grace: Before us rose a lofty dome enriched with precious stones.

enrol v. 1 enlist, register, sign up or on (for), join; volunteer; recruit; Colloq join up: He enrolled at the university. 2 record, register, chronicle, put down, list, note, inscribed, catalogue: Their names will be enrolled forever in the Book of Heroes.

ensemble n. 1 outfit, costume, clothing, clothes, attire, apparel, garb, garments, coordinates, Colloq get-up: A black hat, gloves, and shoes completed the ensemble. 2 band, combination, orchestra, group; chorus, choir; Colloq combo: A new chamber music ensemble is performing tonight at the town hall. 3 assemblage, composite, aggregate, collection, set, whole, entirety, totality; agglomeration, conglomeration: A strange ensemble of objects was on display.

enslave v. subjugate, yoke, fetter, enchain, shackle, trammel, dominate; bind, indenture, Archaic enthral: The enslaved masses rose and overcame their masters.

ensure v. 1 insure, assure, make sure or certain, confirm, certify, guarantee; secure, effect: He must ensure that there is no leak. 2 insure, protect, make safe, safeguard, guard, secure: The captain is responsible for ensuring the safety of the passengers.

entail v. involve, require, call for, necessitate, demand, occasion, give rise to, impose; lead to, cause: The post has entailed working an average 60-70 hours a week.

entangle v. 1 tangle, ensnarl, snarl, enmesh, catch (up), entrap, snag, foul, implicate, knot (up), twist; impede; involve, embroil: The propeller became entangled in the seaweed so that the boat couldn't move. 2 confuse, mix (up), twist, snarl, ensnarl, ensnare, hamper, complicate, confound, bewilder, perplex, embarrass: He became entangled in a web of social and business liaisons.

enter v. 1 go or come (in or into), pass (into): Please enter at the left. 2 penetrate, pierce, stick (into), stab (into), puncture; invade, infiltrate: The nail entered the tyre here. The iron entered into his soul. 3 insert, inscribe, write, set or write or put down, note, record, take or jot down, register; log, document, minute: Enter your name on the dotted line. 4 enter on or upon, begin, start, commence, undertake, set out on, take up: I didn't want to enter the marathon if I couldn't finish. 5 enrol, enlist, sign on or up, join, become a member of: He has entered the ranks of the unemployed. 6 present, offer, proffer, tender, submit: More than 100 poems were entered in the competition. 7 file, register, record, submit: The defendant entered a plea of 'Not guilty'. 8 enter into. engage or participate in, sign, be (a) party to, co-sign, countersign: We entered into an agreement to buy the house.

enterprise
n. 1 undertaking, project, venture, adventure, effort, programme, plan, scheme: His latest enterprise involves establishing a chain of pizza shops. 2 boldness, daring, courage, mettle, adventurousness, audacity, enthusiasm, zeal, energy, spirit, drive, vigour, ambition, initiative, push, eagerness, determination, resolve, purposefulness, purpose; aggressiveness; Colloq get-up-and-go, zip, pep, gumption, guts, US starch: It takes a lot of enterprise to start your own business. 3 business, operation, firm, company, concern, establishment: We began this enterprise on a shoestring.

enterprising
adj. resourceful, venturesome, adventurous, daring, courageous, bold, brave, mettlesome, audacious, enthusiastic, eager, keen, zealous, energetic, spirited, vigorous, ambitious, determined, resolved, resolute, earnest, purposeful, purposive, goal-oriented; aggressive, hard-working, indefatigable, tireless, diligent, assiduous, industrious, persevering; Colloq

pushy, go-ahead: She is an enterprising young lawyer with her own practice.

entertain v. 1 amuse, divert; delight, please; occupy: While we waited the boy entertained us with his juggling. 2 receive, accommodate, treat, be host (to), cater (for or to); have or see people or guests or visitors or company; Colloq host: We entertain on Tuesdays only. 3 contemplate, consider, have, hold, harbour, foster, tolerate, allow, maintain, sustain, support: They felt that they could not entertain the idea of their daughter marrying the gardener's son.

entertaining
adj. amusing, diverting, delightful, enjoyable, pleasant, fun, pleasing, pleasurable, interesting, engaging; funny, comic, humorous, witty: We find Laurel and Hardy films entertaining.

entertainment
n. 1 amusement, diversion, distraction, pastime, recreation, sport, play, fun, pleasure, enjoyment, relaxation, relief: What do you do for entertainment? 2 performance, presentation, diversion, amusement, divertissement, exhibition, pageant, spectacle, show, production, spectacular, extravaganza: They put on a lavish entertainment for the queen.

enthralling
adj. captivating, entrancing, spellbinding, enchanting, bewitching, beguiling, fascinating, gripping, absorbing, intriguing, hypnotizing, mesmerizing, riveting: There was an enthralling melodrama on TV last night.

enthusiasm
n. 1 eagerness, keenness, earnestness, fervour, avidity, zeal, excitement, passion, ardour, interest, relish, devotion, devotedness, gusto, exuberance, zest; fanaticism, mania, rage: No one matches her enthusiasm for grand opera. 2 rage, passion, craze; hobby, interest, pastime, diversion, amusement; Colloq fad: His current enthusiasm is acid rock.

enthusiast
n. fan, devotee, aficionado, lover, admirer, zealot, addict, fanatic, promoter, supporter, champion, follower, disciple, adherent, US booster, Colloq teeny-bopper, bug, hound, buff,

fiend, Slang nut, freak, groupie, US head: They are model railway enthusiasts.

enthusiastic
adj. eager, keen, fervent, fervid, hearty, ardent, avid, energetic, vigorous, devoted, earnest, passionate, spirited, exuberant, zealous, fanatic(al), unqualified, unstinting, irrepressible: He's an enthusiastic supporter of the prime minister's policies.

entice v. lure, allure, tempt, attract, draw, seduce, coax, persuade, prevail on, beguile, cajole, blandish, wheedle; decoy, lead on, inveigle, Colloq sweet-talk, soft-soap, Slang suck in: The prospectus enticed 3.15 million people to buy shares in the company.

enticement
n. 1 temptation, allurement, beguilement, seduction, cajolery, wheedling, blandishment, coaxing, persuasion: Do you approve of the system of enticement used to get you to buy time-share holidays? 2 lure, bait, decoy, trap, inducement, attraction, temptation, Colloq come-on, soft soap: Among the enticements offered was a free weekend in Paris.

entire adj. 1 complete, whole, total, full, undivided, absolute, thorough, unreserved, unrestricted, undiminished, unconditional, express, unexceptional, unmixed, unalloyed: That problem has occupied my entire attention all week. 2 intact, whole, sound, unbroken, undamaged, unimpaired, inviolate, without a scratch, unscathed, in one piece: Twelve amphorae were recovered entire from the wreck. 3 continuous, full, whole, complete, uninterrupted: She has lasted an entire year in her new job.

entirely adv. 1 completely, wholly, altogether, fully, totally, utterly, unreservedly, unqualifiedly, unexceptionally, in every respect, in all respects, thoroughly, to a T, in toto, exhaustively, all out, from head to toe or foot, (right) down to the ground, from A to Z, lock, stock and barrel, root and branch, without exception or reservation: She was entirely satisfied. I agree with that entirely. 2 solely, exclusively, only, unambiguously, unequivocally; positively, definitely, clearly: It was entirely my fault.

entirety n. 1 completeness, unity, totality, wholeness, fullness, integrity, perfection: Any chance of completing his mission in its entirety had vanished. 2 whole, sum total, everything, all: The entirety of the bequest amounted to a million francs.

entitle v. 1 allow, permit, qualify, make eligible, authorize, fit; enfranchise, license, empower: This document entitles her to half of the estate. 2 name, title, call, label, nickname, dub, designate, term; christen, baptize: His first novel was entitled Out of the Depths .

entity n. 1 thing, object, being, existence, quantity, article, individual, organism: The emergence of the youth movement as a separate entity posed problems for the party leadership. 2 essence, real nature, quiddity, quintessence, Metaphysics ens: Every living creature has a distinct entity.

entrance° n. 1 (right of) entry, access, admission, admittance, entr‚e, introduction: You need security clearance to gain entrance. 2 entry, entry-way, access, door, gate, passage, way (in); ingress: The entrance is locked after midnight. 3 arrival, appearance; coming, entry, coming or going in: Her entrances were accompanied by cheers. He opposed our entrance into the war. 4 beginning, start, commencement: Today marks his entrance into his new duties.

entranceý v. enchant, enrapture, fascinate, bewitch, spellbind, transport, delight, charm, captivate, enthral, overpower, mesmerize, hypnotize: He was entranced by her beauty.

entrenched
adj. rooted, deep-rooted, embedded, fixed, (firmly) planted, established, set, deep-seated, unshakeable, ineradicable, ingrained: We were unable to combat their entrenched opposition to the proposals.

entrust v. intrust, trust, charge, assign, delegate, confide: I entrusted her with my secret.

entry n. 1 access, entrance, entr‚e, admittance, admission: The burglar gained entry through the skylight. 2 access, entrance, entry-way, door, inlet, passage, way in: Both entries were blocked. 3 entrance, arrival, coming or going in: His entry was met with jeers. 4 record, item, memorandum, note, account, listing; registration; Colloq memo: There is no entry in his diary for the 15th of April. 5 competitor, contestant, player, entrant, participant, candidate; rival, adversary, opponent: Dennis was a late entry in the marathon.

entwine   v. intwine, interlace, braid, interweave, intertwine, weave, knit, plait, twist, coil, twine, splice; entangle, tangle: Her hair was entwined with wild flowers.

enumerate v. 1 list, name, itemize, specify, detail, spell out, catalogue, tick off, take stock of, cite, quote, recite, recount, relate, narrate , US check off: I shall enumerate the reasons why you may not go. 2 count, calculate, compute, reckon, tally, add, number: The researcher could enumerate only seven different species.

enunciate v. 1 articulate, pronounce, utter, voice, say, speak, vocalize, express, deliver, present, Formal enounce: Foreign names should be enunciated clearly. 2 state, proclaim, declare, promulgate, announce, broadcast, pronounce, propound: The party platform was enunciated in last night's speech.

envelop   v. 1 wrap, enclose, enfold, enwrap, cover, engulf, swathe, shroud, enshroud, swaddle: The body was enveloped in a white robe. 2 shroud, enshroud, cover, conceal, hide, screen, shield, obscure, veil, cloak: The motive for the murder was enveloped in a mass of misleading clues.

enviable adj. desirable, wanted, desired, sought-after, covetable, in demand: He is in an enviable financial position.

envious   adj. jealous, covetous, resentful, begrudging, green-eyed, green (with envy), desirous: He is envious of his wife because she has a better job.

environment

n. surroundings, environs, atmosphere, ecosystem, conditions, habitat, circumstances, medium, milieu; territory, locale, setting, mise en scŠne, situation: Car exhaust fumes are ruining our environment.

environmentalist

n. ecologist, conservationist, naturalist, preservationist, nature-lover, green or Green: We have environmentalists to thank for clean-air laws.

envisage v. 1 visualize, contemplate, imagine, picture, conceive (of), fancy, think or dream or conjure up, Chiefly US envision: Envisage a city built entirely of glass. 2 foresee, see, predict, forecast, anticipate: I envisage a time when all people will be free.

envision v. envisage, visualize, imagine, conceive of, foresee, anticipate, predict, forecast, prophesy: I envision great success for you.

envoy n. delegate, legate, ambassador, diplomat, minister, (papal) nuncio, attach,; representative, emissary, agent; Formal envoy extraordinary, minister plenipotentiary: The government sent an envoy to discuss trade.

envy n. 1 jealousy, enviousness, resentment: She was consumed with envy of anyone who had more money than she did. 2 covetousness, desire, longing: Success excites my envy.

--v. 3 covet, begrudge, resent: He envies his brother and his new car.

5.12 epicure...

=-

epicure n. gourmet, connoisseur, aesthete, epicurean, sybarite, hedonist, gastronome, bon viveur, bon vivant, Lucullus; gourmand: An epicure, he refuses to eat any food not prepared by his own chef.

epicurean adj. 1 sensual, sybaritic, luxurious, voluptuous, carnal, self-indulgent, pleasure-seeking, pleasure-oriented, hedonistic, gluttonous, intemperate, overindulgent, crapulent or crapulous, swinish, porcine, piggish, immoderate, orgiastic, libidinous, wild, unrestrained, unconfined, dissolute, dissipated, Bacchanalian, Saturnalian: The king's epicurean lifestyle contrasted with that of his starving subjects. 2 Lucullan, gourmet: That was truly an epicurean repast.

--n. 3 epicure: It was a meal that would have won the approval of the greatest epicureans.

epidemic adj. 1 widespread, universal, prevalent, prevailing, rampant, general, wide-ranging, pandemic: The disease has reached epidemic proportions.

--n. 2 plague, pestilence, scourge, rash, growth, upsurge, outbreak, spread: An epidemic of anthrax has affected the cattle.

epigram n. 1 witticism, bon mot, quip, mot, turn of phrase, jeu d'esprit, Atticism; pun, double entendre, jeu de mots, play on words, equivoque; paronomasia: His epigram characterizing Eskimos as 'God's frozen people' was widely quoted. 2 proverb, aphorism, maxim, saw, saying, adage, apophthegm or apothegm: 'Nothing succeeds like success' is his favourite epigram.

epigrammatic
adj. pithy, terse, laconic, concise, succinct, compendious, piquant, pungent, trenchant, sententious, witty, pointed, proverbial, aphoristic, apophthegmatic or apothegmatic, Colloq snappy, punchy: Oscar Wilde is known for his epigrammatic sayings.

episode n. 1 event, incident, occurrence, happening, experience, adventure, affair, matter: Please do not remind me of the episode with the chicken. 2 chapter, scene, instalment, part: Don't miss tonight's episode of your favourite soap opera.

epitome n. 1 essence, quintessence, embodiment, personification, archetype, exemplar, (typical) example, model, prototype: My secretary is the epitome of laziness. 2 summary, abstract, condensation, synopsis, digest, compendium, abridgement, abbreviation, conspectus, r,sum,, contraction; outline, pr,cis, syllabus: The chairman wants an epitome of the report by lunch-time.

5.13 equable...
=-

equable adj. 1 even-tempered, easygoing, serene, calm, placid, composed, cool, imperturbable, collected, unruffled, tranquil, peaceful, level-headed, Colloq unflappable: With his equable temperament, Edgar is the man for the job. 2 uniform, unvarying, unvaried, consistent, stable, steady, regular, even, unchanging, invariable, constant: We moved to the Caribbean because of its equable climate.

equal adj. 1 identical, the same (as), interchangeable, one and the same, coequal, selfsame; like, alike, tantamount, similar (to), equivalent, commensurate: This year's sales figures are equal to last year's. 2 uniform, regular, corresponding, correspondent, congruent, congruous, (evenly) balanced, (evenly) matched, matching; equivalent, even; commensurate, comparable, proportionate, (evenly) proportioned, harmonious, symmetrical; Colloq fifty-fifty, Brit level pegging, US even Steven: Women are entitled to equal employment opportunities. The scores are equal. 3 equal to. up to, capable of, fit(ted) or suited or suitable for, adequate for, Archaic or literary sufficient unto: Are you sure that Renwick is equal to the responsibility?

--n. 4 peer, colleague, fellow, brother, mate, counterpart, equivalent, alter ego, compeer: Constance is certainly anyone's equal in intelligence.

--v. 5 match, meet, even, correspond (to), square (with), tally (with), tie (with), parallel, come up to; rival: He will never be able to equal the world record.

equality n. 1 parity, sameness, identity, coequality, uniformity: The equality of the two bids was very suspicious. 2 similarity, likeness, resemblance, equivalence, correspondence, conformity, congruence, similitude, analogy, comparability, comparison, coincidence: The equality between their performances is surprising. 3 impartiality, fairness, justice; egalitarianism: Surely we all deserve equality of treatment under the law.

equalize v. regularize, even up, square, balance, equate, match, standardize, (make) equal: Equalize the amounts of liquid in all the containers.

equip v. furnish, provide, supply, stock, outfit, fit (out or up), rig (out or up), accoutre, array, attire, dress, deck (out), caparison, clothe, Chiefly Brit kit out or up: We can equip you with any scuba gear you may require.

equipment n. gear, apparatus, furnishings, accoutrements, appurtenances, paraphernalia, kit, materiel or mat,riel, tackle, outfit, trappings, tack, equipage, Colloq Brit clobber: They spent a fortune on mountain-climbing equipment.

equitable adj. fair, even-handed, just, impartial, objective, unbiased, unprejudiced, square, fair-minded, open-minded, disinterested, dispassionate, neutral, tolerant, unbigoted, reasonable, judicious, ethical, principled, moral, proper, right-minded, Colloq fair and square: Suspects have the right to equitable treatment.

equity n. fairness, impartiality, even-handedness, justice, fair play, objectivity, disinterest, fair-mindedness, equitableness, open-mindedness, disinterestedness, neutrality, tolerance, judiciousness, right-mindedness, high-mindedness: This court recognizes the equity of your claim.

equivalent

adj. 1 tantamount, commensurate, alike, similar, close, comparable, corresponding, interchangeable, equal, synonymous, of a piece or a kind: He didn't really believe that women's rights should be equivalent to men's.

--n. 2 match, equal, peer, counterpart, twin: The garage could not supply the same part but they offered an equivalent.

equivocal adj. 1 evasive, misleading, roundabout, hedging, suspicious, duplicitous, questionable, oblique, circumlocutory, ambagious, ambivalent, amphibolic or amphibolous, Colloq waffling, wishy-washy: When asked about the guarantee, they gave an equivocal answer. 2 ambiguous, vague, hazy, indefinite, unclear, indistinct, enigmatic(al), puzzling, perplexing, indeterminate, uncertain, Colloq waffling: Just say Yes or No - none of your equivocal responses.

equivocate

v. evade, mislead, hedge, deceive, quibble, dodge, weasel out (of), double-talk, fence, sidestep, skirt, avoid, tergiversate, prevaricate, Colloq waffle, beat about the bush, pussyfoot: I wish she'd confirm or deny it and stop equivocating.

5.14 era...
=-

era n. age, period, time(s), day(s), epoch, stage; generation, cycle, date: They lived in an era of peace.

erase v. 1 expunge, rub or scratch or blot or wipe out, delete, cancel, efface, scratch, cross or strike out or off, obliterate: The scribe erased one line and substituted another. 2 abolish, destroy, obliterate, remove, eliminate, (get) rid of, eradicate, efface: We erased every trace of evidence that we had been there.

erect adj. 1 upright, standing, upstanding, straight, vertical, perpendicular, plumb: There was a slight stoop now in what had previously been a notably erect body.

--v. 2 build, construct, put up, raise; pitch: I could swear that they erected that building overnight! 3 establish, found, set up, form, institute, organize, create: Their religion was erected on the principles of utilitarianism.

erode v. wear (down or away), eat away, grind down, abrade, gnaw away (at), consume, corrode, wash away; deteriorate, destroy, deplete, reduce, diminish: Water has eroded the rock. Their continued lying has eroded my confidence in their honesty.

erosion n. wear (and tear), wearing (down or away), wasting away, washing or grinding or rubbing away, corroding, corrosion, abrading, abrasion, eating or gnawing away, chafing, fraying, weathering, attrition: Erosion by rainwater has washed away the topsoil.

erotic adj. 1 sensual, stimulating, suggestive, titillating, risqu,, bawdy, ribald, seductive, voluptuous, lustful, Colloq sexy: Some insist that there is a difference between pornographic and erotic literature. 2 amatory, venereal, amorous, anacreontic: Many classical poets wrote erotic verse. 3 erogenous, naughty, carnal, arousing, rousing, aphrodisiac, libidinous, lubricious or lubricous, prurient, lascivious, lewd, concupiscent, salacious, obscene, pornographic, dirty, filthy, nasty, Colloq blue: He has a collection of photos that he calls erotic art.

err   v. 1 be wrong, be in error, be mistaken, be inaccurate, be incorrect, be in the wrong, go wrong, go astray, make a mistake, miscalculate, (make a) blunder, bungle, botch, fumble, muff, make a mess of, make a faux pas, mess up , US bobble; Colloq goof (up), slip (up), drop a clanger, foul up, Brit drop a brick, blot one's copybook, Slang screw up, Brit boob, Taboo slang fuck up: The referee erred in ruling that the ball was out. 2 misbehave, sin, transgress, trespass, lapse, fall, do wrong: She has erred many times in her long life.

errand   n. 1 trip, journey: She was on an errand of mercy. 2 mission, charge, assignment, commission, task, duty: Francis is out running some errands for me.

erratic   adj. 1 irregular, unpredictable, inconsistent, unreliable, capricious, changeable, variable; wayward, unstable, aberrant, flighty: The buses run on an erratic schedule. 2 peculiar, abnormal, wayward, odd, eccentric, outlandish, strange, unusual, unorthodox, extraordinary, queer, quaint, bizarre, weird, unconventional: He thinks that his erratic behaviour marks him as an individualist. 3 wandering, meandering, directionless, planetary, aimless, haphazard, discursive, errant, divagatory: Their course was erratic, following the loss of their compass.

erroneous adj. wrong, mistaken, incorrect, inaccurate, inexact, imprecise, amiss, awry, false, faulty, misleading, flawed, botched, bungled, unsound, invalid, untrue, fallacious, spurious, counterfeit, Colloq off the mark, off course, Brit off beam, US off the beam: He gives the erroneous impression of being intelligent. 'Seperate' is an erroneous spelling of 'separate'.

error   n. 1 mistake, inaccuracy, fault, flaw, blunder, slip, gaffe; misprint, typographical error, erratum, solecism; Brit literal, Colloq slip-up, goof, clanger, fluff, boo-boo, howler, Brit bloomer, Slang foul-up, boner, Brit boob: I cannot accept a report so full of errors. 2 sin, transgression, trespass, offence, indiscretion, wrongdoing, misconduct, iniquity, evil, wickedness, flagitiousness: He seems to have seen the error of his ways. 3 in error. a wrong, mistaken, incorrect, at fault:

She was in error about the date of the conference. b mistakenly, incorrectly, by mistake, erroneously: I caught the earlier train in error.

erupt v. 1 eject, discharge, expel, emit, burst forth or out, blow up, explode, spew forth or out, break out, spout, vomit (up or forth), throw up or off, spit out or up, belch (forth), gush: The volcano erupted ash and lava. 2 appear, come out, break out: A boil erupted on his chin.

eruption n. 1 outbreak, outburst, discharge, expulsion, emission, bursting forth, explosion, spouting, vomiting (up or forth), belching forth: The eruption of Vesuvius killed thousands in Pompeii. 2 outbreak, rash: The doctor said the eruption would disappear in a day.

5.15 escape...

=-

escape v. 1 get away, break out or free, bolt, flee, fly, run away or off, elope, decamp, abscond, steal or slip off or away, take to one's heels, take French leave, disappear, vanish, Brit levant, Colloq take off, clear out, cut and run, duck out, make oneself scarce, do a disappearing act, Brit do a moonlight flit, US vamoose, hightail it, skedaddle, US and Canadian skip (town), fly the coop, cut out; Slang vamoose, Brit do a bunk, bugger off, mizzle off, US and Canadian scram, blow, lam out, take it on the lam, take a (run-out) powder, Chiefly Australian shoot through: They escaped when I wasn't looking. 2 evade, elude, avoid, dodge: They escaped detection for years by hiding in a deserted monastery. 3 drain, leak, issue, seep, discharge, emanate: Steam was escaping through a hole. 4 elude, evade, baffle, stump, mystify, puzzle, be forgotten by, be beyond (someone): How the thing started escapes me for the moment.

--n. 5 flight, getaway, departure, decampment, bolt, jailbreak, prison-break, Colloq break, break-out: The escape was planned for midnight. 6 distraction, relief, diversion, recreation: He watches westerns as an escape. 7 leakage, leaking, seepage, seeping, drainage, draining, leak, discharge, outpouring, outflow, effluence, efflux, effluxion: An escape of radioactive waste from the nuclear power station had been reported earlier.

escort n. 1 guard, convoy, bodyguard, protection, guardian, protector, chaperon, cortege or cortŠge, retinue, entourage, safe conduct, usher, companion: The king rode in with his armed escort. 2 guide, attendant, conductor, leader, cicerone: The curator acted as our escort through the museum. 3 companion; date, boyfriend, beau: Donald is Thea's escort to the ball.

--v. 4 accompany, shepherd, squire, usher, conduct, guide, attend: Would you please escort Denise in to dinner? 5 guard, convoy, protect, watch over: The oil tankers were escorted by destroyers.

especially

adv. 1 particularly, specially, specifically, exceptionally, conspicuously, singularly, remarkably, extraordinarily, unusually, uncommonly, peculiarly, outstandingly, uniquely, notably, strikingly, noticeably, markedly, signally: She was especially good at mathematics. 2 chiefly, mainly, predominantly, primarily, principally, first, firstly, first of all, above all: He is especially interested in music.

essay n. 1 article, composition, paper, theme, piece; thesis, dissertation, disquisition, tract: Her essay is on the life cycle of the flea. 2 attempt, effort, try, endeavour, venture; Colloq shot, go: This is his first essay into the financial world.

--v. 3 try, attempt, endeavour, strive, make an effort, undertake, venture, tackle, test, go about, Colloq take a crack or whack or stab at, Slang have a go at, give (it or something) a shot, have a go or bash (at): Let him essay to do better.

essence n. 1 quintessence, quiddity, (essential) nature, substance, spirit, being, heart, core, pith, kernel, marrow, soul, significance, (active) principle, crux, cornerstone, foundation-stone, Colloq bottom line: The essence of her argument is that animals have the same rights as people. 2 extract, concentrate, distillate, elixir, tincture: The room smelled faintly of essence of roses. 3 in essence. essentially, basically, fundamentally, materially, substantially, at bottom, in the final analysis, au fond; in effect, virtually: In essence, there is little to choose between Trotskyism and

Stalinism. 4 of the essence. essential, critical, crucial, vital, indispensable, requisite, important: In this job, time is of the essence.

essential adj. 1 indispensable, necessary, requisite, required, important, imperative, vital, material, quintessential: A strong defence is essential to peace. 2 fundamental, basic, intrinsic, elemental, elementary, principal, primary, key, main, leading, chief: Yeast or baking powder is an essential ingredient of bread.

establish v. 1 found, create, institute, set up, start, begin, inaugurate, organize, form, constitute; decree, enact, ordain, introduce: The company was established in 1796. A new law was established to protect consumers. 2 secure, settle, fix, entrench, install or instal, seat, ensconce; lodge, locate; station: Hitler became established as dictator in 1933. Are you established in your new house? 3 prove, confirm, certify, verify, affirm, determine, authenticate, demonstrate, show, substantiate, corroborate, validate, support, back (up): It will be difficult to establish exactly how the crime was committed.

establishment
n. 1 foundation, founding, formation, organization, construction, creation, origin, origination, institution, inauguration, setting up: We look forward to the establishment of a democratic government. 2 business, concern, firm, company, enterprise, institution, organization; office; shop, store, market: He works for a retail establishment. 3 the Establishment. the system, the government, the authorities, the administration, the power structure, the ruling class, the (established) order, the conservatives,the powers that be; the Church: The press must not be under the control of the Establishment.

estate n. 1 property, holdings, domain, demesne, land, landed estate, manor, mansion: They live on a large estate in the south of France. 2 property, holdings, assets, capital, resources, wealth, fortune; belongings, possessions, chattels: The estate was divided among the heirs. 3 estate of the realm, class, caste, order, standing, position, (social) status, state, station, place, situation, stratum, level, rank: By virtue of her high estate, she is entitled to certain privileges. 4 development, Brit (housing or industrial or trading) estate: They live in a council house on an estate near Reading.

esteem v. 1 respect, value, treasure, prize, cherish, hold dear, appreciate, admire, look up to, regard highly, venerate, revere, reverence, honour, defer to; like, love, adore: The novels of Virginia Woolf were greatly esteemed by a small intellectual group. 2 consider, judge, deem, view, regard, hold, estimate, account, believe, think, rate, rank, reckon, evaluate: The Duke was esteemed throughout Europe as 'the perfect knight'.

--n. 3 estimation, (high) regard, respect, (high) opinion, favour, admiration, appreciation, approval, approbation: He holds her talents in very high esteem. My esteem for your father's accomplishments is undiminished.

estimable adj. esteemed, respectable, respected, admirable, admired, valuable, valued, creditable, worthy, meritorious, reputable, honoured, honourable, laudable, praiseworthy, commendable, excellent, good: I want you to meet my estimable friend, Esterhazy.

estimate v. 1 approximate, gauge, determine, judge, guess; assess, appraise, value, evaluate, reckon, calculate, work out, Colloq guestimate or guesstimate: Experts estimated the cost of restoration at œ10,000. 2 consider, think, believe, guess, conjecture, judge: I estimate our chances of success as very low.

--n. 3 approximation, gauge, guess, conjecture, assessment, appraisal, evaluation, reckoning, calculation, Colloq guestimate or guesstimate: What is your estimate of the company's value? 4 estimation, belief, opinion, judgement, thinking, feeling, sentiment, sense, (point of) view, viewpoint: My estimate of his abilities is that he is not the man for the job.

estimation
n. 1 opinion, judgement, view, (way of) thinking, mind: In my estimation, the scheme will fail. 2 esteem, regard, respect, admiration: Her estimation of his talent is unflagging. 3 estimate, approximation, guess, gauge: You must make an estimation of the value for insurance purposes.

estranged adj. alienated, divided, separated, withdrawn, disaffected, driven apart, dissociated, disassociated: Iain Carstairs has had a lot of trouble with his estranged wife.

5.16 etch...
=-

etch v. 1 engrave, incise, carve, inscribe, grave, cut, score, scratch, corrode, eat into: After the design has been painted on, acid is used to etch the metal plate. 2 impress, imprint, engrave, ingrain: The scene will be etched into my memory forever.

eternal adj. 1 everlasting, timeless, infinite, endless, immortal, limitless: They pledged eternal love for one another. 2 unending, endless, ceaseless, unceasing, incessant, perpetual, constant, continuous, interminable, uninterrupted, non-stop, unremitting, persistent, relentless; continual, recurrent: I'm sick and tired of my neighbours' eternal arguing. 3 unchanged, unchanging, immutable, invariable, unvarying, unalterable, permanent, fixed, constant, everlasting, enduring, lasting, undiminished, unfaltering, unwavering: To the north there was only the eternal silence of the greatest desolation.

eternity n. endlessness, everlastingness, unendingness, boundlessness, perpetuity, timelessness, infinity: Many religions believe in the eternity of the soul.

ethical adj. moral, upright, righteous, right, just, principled, correct, honest, proper, open, decent, fair, good, virtuous, straightforward, high-minded, noble: It wasn't ethical of him to disclose details of the report.

etiquette n. code (of behaviour), form, convention, ceremony, formalities, protocol, rules, custom(s), decorum, propriety, politesse, politeness, courtesy, (good) manners, civility, seemliness: Etiquette requires that you address me as 'Sir'.

5.17 eulogize...
=-

eulogize v. praise, extol, laud, applaud, compliment, sound or sing the praises of, acclaim; appreciate, honour; flatter: Kirk was eulogized for his contribution to space travel.

eulogy n. praise, commendation, acclaim, acclamation, tribute, compliment, applause, homage, plaudits, encomium, accolade, paean, panegyric: The eulogy listed Wotton's many achievements.

euphemism n. amelioration, mollification, mitigation, cushioning, Technical paradiastole: Euphemism is saying 'not too good' when you mean 'bad' or 'awful'.

5.18 evacuate...
=-

evacuate v. 1 empty, clear (out), exhaust, drain, deplete, purge, get rid of, void, discharge, vent; divest, deprive: In cases of poisoning, they first evacuate the stomach. 2 vacate, desert, leave, depart (from), withdraw or retire (from), go away (from), quit, relinquish, abandon, decamp (from), move or pull out (of or from): When the enemy approached, the troops evacuated the area. 3 relocate, move: Thousands were evacuated to a safe distance when the bomb was discovered.

evade v. 1 avoid, elude, dodge, sidestep, escape (from); get away (from), get out of, duck, circumvent, shirk, Colloq chiefly US and Canadian weasel out (of): The prisoner evaded capture. Don't evade your responsibilities. 2 quibble, equivocate, tergiversate, manoeuvre, hedge, shuffle, fudge, fence, parry, Colloq waffle, Slang cop out: The witness continued to evade the barrister's questions.

evaluate v. 1 value, appraise, assess: You must be an expert to evaluate netsuke. 2 judge, rank, rate, gauge, estimate, approximate, calculate, reckon, compute, figure, quantify, determine, ascertain: How can they evaluate your importance to the project?

evaluation
n. 1 appraisal, valuation, assessment: The insurance company refused to accept a higher evaluation on my house. 2 estimate,

estimation, approximation, rating, opinion, ranking, judgement, reckoning, figuring, calculation, computation, determination: The committee meets annually to discuss the evaluation of each employee's contribution.

evaporate v. 1 vaporize; boil off or out; dehydrate, desiccate: Much of the surplus liquid will evaporate during cooking. 2 disappear, disperse, dissipate, vanish, evanesce, evanish, dispel; fade (away), melt away, dissolve: Opposition to his appointment seems to have evaporated.

evaporation

n. 1 vaporization, drying (up or out), dehydration, desiccation, exsiccation, parching, searing: Clouds are formed by the evaporation of terrestrial water. 2 disappearance, dispersion, dispelling, dissipation, evanescence, dematerialization, dissolution, fading (away), melting (away): He was pleased to note the evaporation of all serious opposition.

evasion n. 1 escape, avoidance, shirking, dodging: They disapproved of his evasion of his civic duties. 2 subterfuge, deception, deceit, chicane or chicanery, artifice, cunning, trickery, sophistry, excuse, dodging, prevarication, lying, fudging, evasiveness, quibbling, equivocation, double-talk: All the interviewers' questions were met with evasion.

evasive adj. devious, indirect, equivocating, equivocal, misleading, oblique, ambiguous, sophistical, casuistic, shifty, dissembling, cunning, tricky, deceitful, Colloq cagey, Jesuitical: When asked if he had visited her, he gave an evasive reply. She too was evasive about how she had spent the evening.

eve n. 1 evening or day or night before, time or period before; vigil: It was Christmas Eve, and we went out carolling. 2 verge, threshold, brink: We met on the eve of my departure for Hungary.

even adj. 1 smooth, flat, plane, level, regular, uniform, flush, straight, true: Sand the edges till they are even. 2 Sometimes, even with. level or uniform (with), coextensive (with), flush (with), parallel (with or to): Make sure that the lines at the bottom of the columns are even. Is that board even with the others? 3 steady, regular, consistent, constant, uniform, unvaried, unvarying, methodical, unchanging, set, equable, stable, measured, metrical, rhythmical, orderly, ordered, monotonous, unbroken, uninterrupted: We walked along at an even pace. 4 even-tempered, calm, equable, composed, placid, serene, peaceful, cool, tranquil, unruffled, imperturbable, undisturbed, impassive, steady, temperate, equanimous, self-possessed, sober, staid, sedate, sober-sided: People of even disposition are unexcited, unexcitable, and unexciting. 5 balanced, equal, the same, identical, coequal, level, drawn, on a par, tied, neck and neck; equivalent, Colloq fifty-fifty, Brit level pegging, US even Steven: At half-time the scores were even. I have an even chance of getting the job. 6 square, quits, equal: If I pay for this round, we'll be even. 7 fair (and square), square, impartial, disinterested, neutral, just, even-handed, equitable, straightforward, on the level, honest, upright, unbiased, unprejudiced: See that you make an even distribution of the food parcels. 8 exact, precise, round, rounded off or out or up or down: The bill came to an even fifty pounds. 9 get even (with). repay, revenge oneself (on), even or settle accounts or the score (with), requite, reciprocate, retaliate, be revenged: I'll get even with her for telling my mother. Whenever he feels that he's been insulted, he wants to get even.

--adv. 10 still, yet; all the (more), indeed, (more) than ever: He is even dumber than I thought. He is in debt to everyone, even his daughter. 11 Sometimes, even with or though. notwithstanding, despite, in spite of, disregarding: Even with delays, we arrived on time. 12 even so. nevertheless, nonetheless, still, yet, notwithstanding, all the same, in spite of that, despite that: He refused to attend; even so, we sent him an invitation.

--v. 13 Usually, even up or out. smooth, flatten, level, equalize; align: This road will be fine when they even out the bumps. 14 even out or up. equalize, balance (out), settle; compensate: Unfortunately, our profits and our expenses evened out.

evening n. nightfall, eventide, dusk, sunset, sundown, p.m., Literary gloaming: The Klincks will join us for dinner this evening.

event n. 1 occurrence, happening, incident, episode, occasion, circumstance, affair, experience: An event then took place that changed the course of his life. 2 issue, outcome, consequence, result, conclusion, upshot, end, effect: There is no merit in preparing for a disaster after the event. 3 at all events or in any event. come what may, in any case, at any rate, regardless, anyhow, anyway: At all events, we were ready and waiting when the raid started. 4 in the event. in the reality or actuality, as it or things turned out, at the time, when it happened: In the event, we left as soon as we could.

eventful adj. busy, full, active, lively, exciting, interesting; important, significant, signal, consequential, notable, noteworthy, momentous, memorable: What with your wedding and the birth of your son, it certainly has been an eventful week.

eventual adj. 1 ultimate, final, last, concluding, resulting: The eventual cost is impossible to forecast. 2 due, expected, anticipated, inevitable, likely, consequent, resulting, resultant, foreordained, preordained, unavoidable, destined, predestined, unavoidable, ineluctable, probable: As they cannot afford the mortgage payments, they are faced with the eventual loss of their home.

eventuality
n. circumstance, contingency, event, occurrence, happening, case; likelihood, chance, possibility, probability: We must prepare for the eventuality of war.

eventually
adv. ultimately, finally, at last, in the end or long run, at the end of the day, sooner or later, when all is said and done, in the final analysis, in due course, in (the course of) time, after all: We must all die eventually.

ever adv. 1 at all, (at) any time, at any point or period, on any occasion, in any case, by any chance: Do you ever visit London? 2 always, for ever, yet, still, even, at all times, in all cases, eternally, perpetually, endlessly, everlastingly, constantly, continuously, continually, for ever and a day, till the end of time, till the cows come home, till doomsday; all the time: He is ever the one to make us laugh. Literacy is becoming ever more important.

everlasting
adj. eternal, deathless, undying, immortal, infinite, timeless; never-ending, perpetual, constant, continual, continuous, permanent, unceasing, incessant, interminable, endless: They believed in everlasting punishment after death. I wish that dog would stop its everlasting barking.

everyday adj. 1 daily, day-to-day, quotidian, diurnal; circadian: In our family a big breakfast was an everyday occurrence. 2 commonplace, common, ordinary, customary, regular, habitual, routine, usual, run-of-the-mill, unexceptional, accustomed, conventional, familiar: She found herself unable to cope with everyday tasks that she used to take in her stride. 3 prosaic, mundane, dull, unimaginative, unexciting, mediocre, inferior: These are very everyday paintings of little value.

everyone pron. everybody, all (and sundry), one and all, each and every one or person, the whole world, everybody under the sun, every Tom, Dick, and Harry: Everyone will want to come to my party.

everything
pron. all, all things, the aggregate, the (whole or entire) lot, the total, the entirety, Colloq the whole kit and caboodle, the whole shooting match, Chiefly US and Canadian the whole shebang: Everything was destroyed in the earthquake.

everywhere
adv. in all places, in or to each or every place or part, in every nook and cranny, high and low, far and wide, near and far; ubiquitously, universally, globally; throughout: She went everywhere searching for clues. The smell of jasmine was everywhere. Errors occur everywhere in his writings.

evict v. oust, dislodge, turn out (of house and home), expel, eject, remove, dispossess, put out, Law disseise or disseize, Colloq toss or throw or kick or boot out, Brit turf out: The landlord evicted us for non-payment of rent.

eviction n. ouster, dispossession, dislodgement, expulsion, ejection, removal, Law disseisin or disseizin, Colloq the boot: His eviction from the club was for refusing to wear a tie.

evidence n. 1 proof, ground(s), fact(s), data, basis, support, verification, attestation, affirmation, confirmation, validation, corroboration, substantiation, documentation, certification: Have we enough evidence to convict the suspects? 2 testimony, statement, deposition, affidavit, averment, assertion: The prosecution will present its evidence tomorrow. 3 indication, sign, mark, token, manifestation, demonstration, hint, suggestion, clue, trace, smoking gun: There is evidence that there are mice in the house.

--v. 4 demonstrate, show, display, manifest, signify, exhibit, reveal, denote, attest, prove, evince, testify, (bear) witness: The destruction of the forests is evidenced by the open plains.

evident adj. clear, obvious, plain, apparent, manifest, patent, palpable, conspicuous, clear-cut, express, unmistakable, incontrovertible, understandable, comprehensible, recognizable, perceptible, perceivable, discernible, noticeable: It was evident that someone had been tampering with the mechanism.

evidently adv. 1 clearly, obviously, plainly, manifestly, palpably, apparently, patently, indubitably, undoubtedly, doubtless(ly), without a doubt, indisputably, incontestably, incontrovertibly, undeniably, unquestionably, surely, certainly, to be sure: He is evidently the culprit. 2 apparently, outwardly, seemingly, it would seem, so it seems, as far as one can see or tell, to all appearances, ostensibly: Evidently, there were two people here, not just one.

evil adj. 1 bad, awful, wrong, immoral, wicked, sinful, nefarious, iniquitous, base, corrupt, vile, accursed, damnable, villainous, heinous, infamous, flagitious, foul, nasty, abominable, atrocious, horrible, horrid, ghastly, grisly, dreadful, depraved, vicious, malevolent, maleficent, malefic, black-hearted, evil-minded: He was an evil tyrant who killed anyone who opposed him. 2 treacherous, traitorous, perfidious, insidious, unscrupulous, unprincipled, dishonest, dishonourable, crooked, criminal, felonious, knavish, sinister, underhand(ed), dirty, corrupt: He thought up an evil plan for getting rid of his wife. 3 harmful, destructive, hurtful, injurious, mischievous, detrimental, ruinous, deleterious, disastrous, catastrophic, pernicious, noxious, malignant, malign, virulent, toxic, poisonous, deadly, lethal: Evil policies were promulgated against minority groups, and racist attacks abounded. 4 unfortunate, unlucky, ominous, inauspicious, dire, unpropitious, calamitous, infelicitous, woeful: Their business had fallen on evil times. 5 bad, offensive, disgusting, repulsive, awful, nasty, mephitic, noxious, foul, pestilential, putrid, vile; disagreeable, unpleasant: An evil odour permeated the crypt.

--n. 6 badness, sin, vice, wickedness, iniquity, turpitude, immorality, profligacy, depravity, degeneracy, corruption, degradation, devilry or deviltry, villainy, nefariousness, viciousness, vileness, heinousness, flagitiousness, baseness, foulness: The evil that men do lives after them, the good is oft interred with their bones. 7 harm, hurt, injury, mischief, damage, ruin, calamity, misfortune, catastrophe, destruction, disaster, cataclysm; ill, misery, suffering, pain, sorrow, woe, agony, anguish: Evil befell the residents of Pompeii.

evil-minded
adj. 1 dirty(-minded), smutty, obscene, depraved, lewd, lascivious, lecherous, salacious, licentious, filthy, nasty; foul-mouthed: Those anonymous phone calls were made by some evil-minded degenerate. 2 wicked, sinful, flagitious, vicious, hateful, malicious, spiteful, malevolent, evil, bad: The evil-minded old witch grabbed Hansel and Gretel.

evoke v. summon (up), call up or forth, elicit, conjure up, invoke, recall, reawake(n), (a)wake, wake(n), (a)rouse, raise: Seeing her again evoked fond memories.

evolution n. development, advance, growth, progress, progression, phylogeny, evolvement, developing, growing, evolving, formation, maturation, production: This book traces the evolution of the aeroplane. His treatise is on the evolution of insects.

5.19 exact...
=-

exact adj. 1 precise, accurate, correct, faithful, true, faultless, identical, literal, perfect, consummate: This is an exact copy of the original. Were those her exact words? 2 careful, meticulous, strict, rigorous, accurate, exacting, severe, fastidious, scrupulous, thorough, painstaking, rigid, punctilious: He has conducted the most exact experiments.

--v. 3 demand, extort, require, enforce, insist on or upon, extract, impose, wrest, compel, enjoin, call for, requisition, claim: The chief exacted tribute before releasing the prisoners.

exacting adj. demanding, rigorous, difficult, rigid, stern, hard, tough, severe, harsh, burdensome, taxing, stringent, imperative, unsparing, oppressive, tyrannical: I know of no more exacting job than that of air traffic controller.

exactly adv. 1 accurately, precisely, strictly, perfectly, correctly, unerringly, faultlessly, faithfully, scrupulously, literally, to the letter, word for word, verbatim, closely; methodically, systematically: She translated the passage exactly, with no errors. 2 definitely, absolutely, positively, undeniably, surely, certainly, unequivocally, completely, in every respect, in all respects, particularly, specifically, explicitly, just, quite, expressly, precisely, accurately, truly, Colloq Brit bang on: This is exactly the kind of house we want.

exaggerate

v. overstate, magnify, inflate, overdraw, embroider, embellish, elaborate, enlarge, stretch, romance, overemphasize, overstress, overplay, overdo, exalt, hyperbolize, paint, Colloq lay it on thick, play up, pile it on: She exaggerates when she claims to be the best actress in the world. He believes the health risks are exaggerated.

exaggeration

n. overstatement, magnification, inflation, embroidery, embellishment, elaboration, enlargement, stretch, romanticization, extravagance, overemphasis, excess, exaltation, enhancement, hyperbole; empty talk, bombast, bragging, boasting, boastfulness, magniloquence, Literary gasconade, rodomontade, Colloq fish story, puffery, Slang bull(shit), hot air: It was a press agent's exaggeration to call the movie a 'colossal epic'.

exalt v. 1 elevate, raise or lift (up or on high), upraise, uplift, upgrade, boost, promote, advance: The goalkeeper was exalted to heroic status by the fans. 2 praise, honour, extol, glorify, idolize, dignify, ennoble, revere, reverence, venerate, pay homage or tribute to, celebrate; lionize: O magnify the Lord with me, and let us exalt His name together. 3 stimulate, excite, animate, (a)rouse, fire, inspire, electrify, awaken, spur, stir (up), inspirit: Certain drugs have the effect of exalting the imagination.

exalted adj. 1 elevated, lofty, high, eminent, notable, noted, prominent, famous, famed, celebrated, distinguished, dignified, honoured, prestigious, glorified, sublime, grand: During his later life he enjoyed an exalted reputation. 2 elevated, noble, lofty, superior, uplifting, heightened, high-flown; exaggerated, pretentious, overblown, inflated: His writing is euphuistic, that is, flowery or exalted. She has an exalted notion of her importance. 3 elated, excited, exultant, ecstatic, jubilant, overjoyed, joyful, rapturous, transported, blissful, happy, joyous, in seventh heaven, uplifted, Colloq on cloud nine, Brit over the moon: They were in too exalted a mood to be interested in such mundane matters.

examination

n. 1 investigation, scrutiny, study, analysis, inspection, inquiry or enquiry, probe, search, exploration, research, survey, going-over, check-up, check(out), appraisal, assessment: Examination of the finances revealed a secret Swiss bank account. 2 testing, test, quiz, exam: There will be a written examination on Friday. 3 interrogation, inquisition, inquiry or enquiry, catechism, cross-examination, Colloq third degree, grill(ing): Examination of the prisoners is left to intelligence officers.

examine v. 1 investigate, scrutinize, study, peruse, scan, pore over, analyse, sift, inspect, inquire or enquire into, go over or through or into, look over or into, probe, search, explore, research, survey, check up on, check (out), appraise, assess, weigh, Brit vet, Slang case: The theory will be examined thoroughly. 2 test; interrogate, quiz, catechize, cross-examine, question, sound out, Colloq grill, pump: The director closely examined all applicants for the position.

example n. 1 instance, case, sample, specimen, illustration: If this is an example of your work, I'm afraid we aren't interested. 2 model, prototype, standard, archetype, exemplar, pattern, benchmark, norm, criterion: You should set an example to the children. 3 warning, admonition, lesson: The judge made an example of him by giving him the maximum sentence. 4 for example. for instance, as a case in point, as an illustration or example, by way of illustration, to illustrate, e.g. or eg, exempli gratia: Consider, for example, the following poem by Wordsworth.

exasperate
v. 1 anger, infuriate, enrage, incense, madden, rile, drive mad; embitter; inflame; Colloq drive crazy, drive up the wall: Dealing with a bureaucracy can be exasperating for anyone. 2 irritate, irk, annoy, bother, harass, pique, gall, nettle, rankle, provoke, vex, pester, torment, plague; hector, badger, Colloq bug, needle, peeve, get, get under (someone's) skin, rub (up) the wrong way, aggravate, Slang get (someone's) goat, piss (someone) off: The child's constant questions were beginning to exasperate me.

excavate v. 1 dig (out or up), hollow or gouge (out), scoop out, burrow or cut (out): They are excavating a great hole in the centre of the site. 2 unearth, uncover, expose, clear, lay bare, dig up, disinter, bring up, exhume: A large part of Pompeii has been excavated.

excavation
n. cavity, hole, pit, crater, cut, ditch, trench, trough, burrow, hollow, shaft, tunnel; mine, quarry: Concrete for the foundations will be poured into the excavation.

exceed v. 1 surpass, top, excel, be superior to, go beyond, beat, overwhelm, better, outdistance, pass, overtake, outstrip, outrank, outrun, outdo, outpace, transcend, outshine, outreach, overshadow, eclipse: The success of the new product exceeded our expectations. 2 overstep, go beyond, overextend: His behaviour exceeded the bounds of decency.

exceeding adj. great, huge, enormous, extraordinary, excessive, exceptional, surpassing: The exceeding poverty of the people is heart-rending.

exceedingly
adv. very, extremely, especially, exceptionally, considerably,

incomparably, immeasurably, extraordinarily, remarkably; excessively, greatly, hugely, enormously: She plays the violin exceedingly well. Even for a dog, that is an exceedingly ugly dog.

excel   v. surpass, be superior (to), dominate, top, exceed, go beyond, beat, outstrip, outrank, outdo, outpace, outshine, overshadow, eclipse; shine, be pre-eminent: Few places excel the Caribbean islands for beauty. He really excels when it comes to swimming.

excellence

n. superiority, merit, (high) quality, goodness, fineness, greatness, prominence, eminence, pre-eminence, distinction, value, worth, supremacy: Those who attain excellence often devote their lives to one pursuit.

excellent adj. superb, outstanding, exceptional, superior, matchless, peerless, unequalled, without equal, nonpareil, supreme, superlative, sterling, capital, first-class, first-rate, prime, choice, select, distinguished, noteworthy, notable, worthy, the best, tiptop, admirable, splendid, remarkable, marvellous, extraordinary, Colloq A-1 or A-one, great, smashing, super, terrific, fantastic, Brit magic, Dialectal champion, Old-fashioned top-hole, ripping, tickety-boo, US A number 1, major, Australian bonzer, Slang cool, ripsnorting: Thank you for an excellent dinner. He is an excellent pianist.

except   prep. 1 Sometimes except for. excepting, save, but, excluding, exclusive of, barring, bar, with the exception of, omitting, not counting, apart from, but for, other than, saving: There was no one there except us. Except for us, no one came.

--conj. 2 except that. except or but (for the fact) that, but, save that: He would have gone except that he has no car.

--v. 3 exclude, omit, leave out, excuse: As usual, the wealthy were excepted from the tax increase.

exception n. 1 exclusion, omission: With the exception of those who are absent, all members are entitled to a free T-shirt. 2 debarment, blockage, lockout, shut-out: His wife was deeply offended by his exception from membership of the country club. 3 departure, anomaly, irregularity, special case; oddity, freak, rarity, peculiarity, quirk: The exception proves the rule. Why does Viv always have to be an exception? 4 take exception (to). make or raise (an) objection (to or against), object (to), demur (at), find fault (with), take offence or umbrage (at), be offended (at); (call into) question, cavil, quibble, challenge, oppose, disagree (with): She takes exception to everything I suggest. If you propose to ban smoking at the meeting, will some people take exception?

exceptionable

adj. objectionable, disputable, questionable, criticizable, unacceptable, unsatisfactory: We found nothing exceptionable about the service.

exceptional

adj. 1 special, unusual, especial, out of the ordinary, extraordinary, uncommon, rare, singular; strange, irregular, aberrant, odd, peculiar, anomalous: The candlesticks turned out to be of exceptional value. He insisted that rainstorms in the Sahara were not exceptional. 2 gifted, talented, superior, outstanding, above average, excellent, prodigious, extraordinary: Your child is exceptional, Mrs Einstein. 3 handicapped, below average, deficient, Brit ESN (='educationally subnormal'): The boy attends a school for exceptional children.

excerpt n. 1 extract, selection, quotation, citation, passage, pericope: The speaker read excerpts from well-known writers.

--v. 2 extract, select, quote, cite, cull (out), pick (out), take: Parts of this book were excerpted from his earlier writings.

excess n. 1 surplus, over-abundance, overflow, superabundance, nimiety, superfluity, surfeit, plethora, glut, redundancy, over-sufficiency, supererogation, leftovers; overkill: The excess of income over expenses constitutes profit. There is an excess of water on the road after a rainstorm. 2 Often, excesses. debauchery, extravagance, immoderation, prodigality, overindulgence, intemperance, dissipation, dissoluteness: Because of their excesses they have been shunned by their friends.

--adj. 3 surplus, extra, superfluous, excessive, leftover, residual, remaining: After paying the bills, any excess money goes into savings.

excessive adj. 1 immoderate, inordinate, disproportionate, extravagant, exorbitant, superfluous, excess, undue, enormous, extreme, unreasonable, unwarranted, unjustifiable, outrageous, unconscionable: This job is making excessive demands on my time. 2 overdone, fulsome, cloying, nauseating, disgusting: I was sickened by her excessive sweetness.

exchange v. 1 trade, barter, switch, change, interchange, reciprocate, return, Colloq swap or swop: We exchange gifts every Christmas.

--n. 2 trade, barter, change, traffic, commerce, dealing, truck, transfer, interchange, reciprocity, reciprocation, switch, quid pro quo, tit for tat, Colloq swap or swop: An exchange of prisoners was negotiated. What can I do for you in exchange? 3 altercation, argument, quarrel, disagreement, unpleasantness: We had a brief exchange, then he struck me. 4 market, stock market, Stock Exchange, securities exchange, the Market, the Board, the Big Board, the Exchange, the Bourse, Wall Street, US the Street: The exchange reported little activity in anticipation of the finance minister's speech.

excitable adj. volatile, jumpy, apprehensive, nervous, restive, restless, fidgety, edgy, touchy, highly-strung, high-strung, mercurial, emotional, quick-tempered, testy, hot-blooded, feverish, hysterical, US on a short string: The director becomes very excitable before each performance.

excite v. 1 (a)rouse, spur (on), stir (up), move, animate, enliven, activate, motivate, invigorate, energize, stimulate, cause, provoke, prod, agitate, incite, quicken, urge, (a)wake, (a)waken, call forth, summon (up), elicit, inspire, inspirit, rally, galvanize, electrify, foment, fire (up), inflame, kindle, ignite, initiate, instigate, generate, occasion, begin, start, bring about, effect, set in motion, Colloq get going, spark, wind up, get (someone) (all) steamed up, hop up, US kick-start, light a fire under: The speech excited the crowd's patriotic fervour. 2 agitate, disturb, perturb, stir up, discompose, fluster, ruffle, upset, disconcert: Don't excite the horses. 3 thrill, stir up, titillate, work up, arouse, inflame: Risqu, films are intended to excite viewers.

excited adj. 1 (a)roused, stirred (up), stimulated, agitated, disturbed, perturbed, upset, worked up, wrought up, wound up, keyed up, overwrought, discomposed, disconcerted, discomfited, nervous, edgy, on edge, uneasy, flustered, ruffled, fidgety, frantic, frenetic, aflame, feverish, frenzied, hysterical, beside oneself, Colloq itchy, (all) hot and bothered, high, on a high, off the deep end, out of one's mind: Turner was in a very excited state by the time the police arrived. Don't get so excited just because he called you a name. 2 ardent, zealous, impassioned, passionate, eager, energized, energetic, active, brisk, animated, lively, spirited, fervid, fervent, vehement, stimulated, enthusiastic, galvanized, electrified, intoxicated, Colloq turned on: The excited children scrambled into the boat. She becomes excited listening to rock 'n' roll.

excitement

n. 1 restlessness, disquiet, disquietude, tension, agitation, unrest, malaise, discomfort, jumpiness, nervousness, freneticness, excitation: He had to give the patient an injection to quell her excitement. 2 perturbation, upset, action, ado, activity, ferment, furore or US furor, turmoil, tumult, to-do, stir, commotion, hubbub, brouhaha, fuss, hurly-burly, Colloq fireworks: The robbery caused a lot of excitement at the bank. 3 animation, eagerness, enthusiasm, exhilaration, ebullience: She could hardly contain her excitement at winning the lottery.

exciting adj. 1 stimulating, intoxicating, heady, thrilling, stirring, moving, inspiring, rousing, exhilarating, electrifying, galvanizing, energizing, invigorating; overwhelming, overpowering, astounding, astonishing, amazing, mind-boggling, Colloq far-out, rip-roaring, mind-blowing: Orbiting the world in the space shuttle was the most exciting experience of my life. 2 seductive, sensuous, voluptuous, ravishing, captivating, charming, tempting, enticing, alluring, provocative, titillating, Colloq sexy: Fenella is truly an exciting young woman.

exclaim v. call or cry (out), proclaim, vociferate, utter, declare, ejaculate, shout, yell, bawl, bellow, burst out (with), blurt out, Colloq holler: 'It's a girl!' he exclaimed.

exclamation

n. outcry, call, cry, utterance, ejaculation, interjection, vociferation, shout, yell, bellow, Colloq holler: She gave an exclamation of surprise at seeing me there.

exclude v. 1 Often, exclude from. keep out or away, lock or shut out, ban, bar, debar, prohibit, interdict, forbid, proscribe, deny, refuse, disallow: Women are excluded from participating in certain religious ceremonies. Must we exclude Maria, too? 2 eliminate, leave out, reject, omit, except, preclude, repudiate, count out: Exclude them from consideration as candidates. 3 eject, evict, expel, oust, get rid of, remove, throw out, Colloq toss out, Slang bounce: He was excluded from the club because of his behaviour.

exclusion n. 1 lockout, shut-out, ban, bar, prohibition, interdiction, forbiddance, denial, refusal, disallowance, proscription: He would not join a club that supported the exclusion of women members. 2 elimination, rejection, omission, repudiation, exception, preclusion: We must ensure the exclusion of unqualified candidates. 3 ejection, eviction, expulsion, ouster, removal, riddance: The exclusion of rowdies and hooligans is in the club's best interests.

exclusive adj. 1 incompatible, inimical; unshared, unique, absolute, restricted, limited: Exclusive concepts, like 'animal' and 'vegetable', do not coincide save in their both being 'alive'. Our newspaper printed the exclusive story of the disaster. 2 chic, clannish, choice, upper-class, aristocratic, closed, restricted, restrictive, private, snobbish, fashionable, elegant, stylish, select, Colloq trendy, Slang classy: They are seen in the most exclusive nightclubs. 3 only, single, one, sole, singular, unique: Boats are the exclusive means of transport here. 4 Usually, exclusive of. excluding, excepting, except for, omitting, ignoring, leaving aside, apart from, (de)barring, not counting, eliminating: Charges range from $220 to $350 a night, exclusive of meals.

excruciating

adj. tormenting, torturing, torturous, agonizing, painful, racking, intense, extreme, unbearable, unendurable, severe, acute, exquisite, harrowing, distressful, distressing, piercing, insufferable: She was racked with excruciating pain.

excursion n. 1 trip, tour, outing, airing, expedition, voyage, cruise, journey, junket, jaunt; ramble, stroll, walk, hike, trek, drive, ride, sail: We left the city and took an excursion into the mountains. 2 detour, deviation, side-trip, diversion, digression, excursus: Forgive the excursion, but I'll return to the subject in a minute.

excuse v. 1 forgive, pardon, overlook, absolve, clear, exonerate, acquit, exculpate, pass over, disregard, wink at, ignore, be blind to, look the other way, pay no attention or heed (to), find or prove innocent (of): Please excuse my tardiness. 2 release, let go or off, liberate, free, relieve, exempt, absolve; dismiss, Colloq let off the hook: She was excused from attending class today. You may be excused. 3 condone, allow, permit, defend, apologize for, justify, warrant, explain, vindicate, rationalize, mitigate, extenuate, palliate: Poverty does not excuse your stealing.

--n. 4 apology, explanation, story, reason, justification, defence, plea, vindication, condonation, rationalization, extenuation, mitigation, palliation; basis, grounds, foundation, cause: Can you think of any excuse for your behaviour? 5 forgiveness, remission, pardon, indulgence, reprieve, clearing, exculpation, absolution, exoneration, acquittal, disregard, heedlessness, vindication, clearance, acquittance: Ignorance of the law is not an excuse. 6 evasion, subterfuge, pretence, pretext, makeshift, escape, loophole, way out, Colloq alibi, stall, Slang cop-out: He always uses his grandmother's illness as an excuse for missing school.

execute v. 1 accomplish, do, carry out or off or through, perform, discharge, dispatch or despatch, bring about or off, implement, engineer, cause, Colloq pull off, put over, Slang US swing, cut, hack (out): She executes her duties satisfactorily. 2 complete, finish, deliver; achieve, consummate, fulfil, effect, effectuate; sign, seal, validate, countersign: He executed the portrait in an hour. The contract was executed yesterday. 3 put to death, kill, put to the sword, butcher; liquidate, assassinate, murder, remove, slay, Slang bump off, rub or wipe out, snuff (out), knock off, US waste, ice: Convicted murderers are no longer executed in this country. The mob executed the rival gangleaders.

execution n. 1 accomplishment, performance, carrying out, doing, discharge, dispatch or despatch, implementation, prosecution, realization, enactment: His drinking interferes with the execution of his responsibilities. 2 completion, fulfilment, consummation, achievement, attainment, implementation, bringing about, administration, pursuance: The company will pay ten thousand dollars upon execution of the agreement. 3 killing, capital punishment; assassination, murder, removal, liquidation, slaying: The traitor's execution is tomorrow. There has been another gangland style execution. 4 skill, art, mastery, technique, style, manner, mode, touch, approach, delivery, rendering, rendition, production: The cellist's execution was superb.

executive n. 1 chairman (of the board), director, managing director, chief executive, president, chief (executive officer), CEO, manager, head, leader, principal, administrator, official; supervisor, foreman, superintendent, overseer, boss, master, Colloq Mr Big, (chief or head) honcho, number one, kingpin, Slang top banana, big cheese, numero uno, top dog: She is an executive in the local power company. 2 administration, management, directorship, directorate, government, leadership, supervision: Five people form the executive of the society.

--adj. 3 administrative, managerial, supervisory, official, governing, governmental, gubernatorial, regulatory: He works in the executive department of the government.

exemplary adj. 1 illustrative, typical, characteristic, representative, archetypal; paradigmatic: The text contains passages exemplary of good writing. 2 model, meritorious, outstanding, noteworthy, admirable, commendable, praiseworthy, excellent, superior: Private Jones is an exemplary soldier. 3 cautionary, admonitory, warning, monitory: In addition to payment for the damage, we were awarded exemplary damages.

exemplify v. 1 illustrate, typify, represent, epitomize, instance; embody, personify: This painting exemplifies Picasso's blue period. 2 demonstrate, display, show, exhibit, model, depict: Early Mediterranean civilization is exemplified at Knossos.

exempt v. 1 Often, exempt from. free or liberate or release from, excuse or relieve from, spare from, let off, absolve, except, Colloq let off the hook: The doctor exempted Becker from strenuous activity.

--adj. 2 exempted, free, liberated, released, excused, relieved, spared, let off, excepted, immune, Colloq off the hook: It seems that Becker is now exempt from doing any work.

exemption n. exception, immunity, freedom, release, impunity, dispensation, exclusion: This document confirms his exemption from jury service.

exercise v. 1 employ, use, apply, practise, bring to bear, put to use or effect; discharge, exert, wield, execute; utilize, effect: Try to exercise better judgement next time. The chairman exercises too much authority. 2 work out, limber up, warm up, train, drill: She exercises for an hour every day. 3 harass, annoy, irritate, vex, harry, distress, worry, concern, burden, try, trouble, perturb, disturb, agitate, make nervous, Colloq drive crazy, drive up the wall: We have been much exercised over the issue of acid rain.

--n. 4 activity, workout, working-out, warm-up, warming up, callisthenics, aerobics, isometrics, gymnastics; training, drill, drilling: Exercise is good for the heart. 5 action, application, practice, performance, discharge, use, utilization, employment, execution, operation: We expect the exercise of your best endeavours.

exert   v. 1 exercise, use, utilize, put to use or work or effect, employ, wield, bring to bear, bring into play, expend: Please exert your influence to have his conviction quashed. 2 exert oneself. attempt, try, endeavour, make an effort, apply oneself, strive, do one's best, work, strain, struggle, toil, push, drive (oneself), go all out, give one's all, Colloq knock oneself out, cudgel one's brains, beat one's brains out, do one's damnedest, Slang bust a gut: If Peter exerted himself a bit more, we might see some results.

exertion n. action, effort, striving, strain, work, struggle, toil, drive, push, diligence, industry, assiduity, assiduousness, sedulousness, sedulity, Colloq US stick-to-it-iveness: By considerable exertion, we finished on time. He was tired after all his exertions.

exhalation

n. 1 expiration, exhaling, breath, respiration, suspiration: The doctor could detect the wheezing only on exhalation. 2 vapour, breath, air, puff, whiff, exhaust, emission, steam, mist, gas, fog, fume, emanation, effluvium, evaporation: Poisonous exhalations from vents on the side of the volcano had destroyed all vegetation.

exhale v. breathe (out), blow, puff, huff, gasp, evaporate, pass off, discharge, emit, emanate, issue (forth), respire, suspire, give forth, blow off, eject, expel, exsufflate: Please exhale into this balloon. The volcano continued to exhale noxious fumes.

exhaust v. 1 use (up), expend, consume, finish, deplete, spend, dissipate, run through, squander, waste, fritter away, Slang blow: In less than a year, he had exhausted all his funds. 2 tire (out), fatigue, weary, wear out, enervate, fag, overtire, sap, strain, tax, weaken, prostrate, debilitate, disable, Colloq frazzle: Working sixty hours a week would exhaust anyone. 3 empty, drain, evacuate, void, clean or clear out: The pump is used to exhaust the chamber of air. 4 overdo, overwork, treat thoroughly, deplete, drain, empty: I think we've exhausted that topic. 5 empty (out), drain (off or out), vent, issue, escape, discharge, run out: The fumes exhaust through this tube.

--n. 6 emanation, effluent, emission, fumes, gas: Car exhausts are polluting the atmosphere.

exhausted adj. 1 (dead) tired, fatigued, weary, wearied, worn out, enervated, debilitated, overtired, weak, weakened, prostrate, worn or fagged or played or burnt-out, spent, all in, out on one's feet, Colloq dog-tired, dead (on one's feet), wiped out, drained, knocked out, all in, done in, frazzled, Slang (dead) beat, Brit knackered, US and Canadian pooped: I must sleep: I'm exhausted. 2 empty, emptied, bare; depleted, consumed, done, gone, at an end, finished: Our supply of paper-clips is exhausted. 3 spent, worn out, depleted, impoverished, poor, infertile, barren: It is impossible to grow anything in this exhausted soil.

exhausting

adj. 1 tiring, fatiguing, wearying, enervating, wearing, debilitating: Proofreading these figures can be exhausting. 2 arduous, laborious, back-breaking, strenuous, hard, gruelling, crippling, difficult, burdensome, onerous: Harvesting sugar is exhausting work.

exhaustion
n. 1 emptying, drawing out or forth, discharge, draining, evacuation, voiding, depletion, consumption, finish(ing): The exhaustion of air from the cylinder is accomplished by a powerful pump. 2 tiredness, fatigue, enervation, debilitation, weariness, lassitude: The survivors were suffering from exposure and exhaustion.

exhaustive
adj. complete, comprehensive, all-inclusive, thorough, all-encompassing, encyclopedic or encyclopaedic, extensive, thoroughgoing, far-reaching, sweeping, full-scale, in-depth, maximal, maximum, Colloq all-out: The police conducted an exhaustive investigation of the company's finances.

exhibit v. show, display, present, offer, expose; show off, parade, brandish, flaunt; demonstrate, reveal, betray, manifest, exemplify, evince, evidence, disclose, express: Her paintings are widely exhibited. Such behaviour exhibits poor judgement.

exhibition
n. exposition, fair, show(ing), display, demonstration, presentation, offering, US exhibit, Colloq expo, demo: The craft exhibition will be held at the civic centre.

exhilarating
adj. 1 invigorating, bracing, stimulating, vivifying, enlivening, rejuvenating, refreshing, vitalizing, fortifying, restorative, tonic: We took an exhilarating walk round the lake. 2 cheering, uplifting, gladdening, elating, inspiriting, heartening, comforting, reassuring; happy, good, delightful: We received the exhilarating news of Phoebe's complete recovery.

exile n. 1 expatriation, banishment, expulsion, deportation, transportation; separation: Napoleon was sentenced to exile on Elba. 2 expatriate, ,migr,(e), emigrant, outcast, deportee, pariah, displaced person, DP; alien, foreigner, outsider: Many of the exiles from Nazi Germany settled in Britain.

--v. 3 deport, expel, alienate, banish, expatriate, oust, eject, displace, transport, drive or run or cast out, outlaw, exclude, oust, evict, bar, ban; extradite; maroon: Many criminals were exiled to Australia.

exist v. 1 be, continue, prevail, endure, abide; live, breathe: Some believe that the universe exists only in our imagination. 2 survive, subsist, eke out a living or an existence, stay alive, get by or along: How can the family exist only on his pension? 3 occur, happen, be found, be present, remain, persist; obtain, prevail: A two-foot gap exists between the wall and the roof. 'Status quo' refers to the circumstances that exist.

existence n. 1 being, presence, actuality, fact: Most cultures believe in the existence of one god or more. 2 life, living; continuance, continuation, persistence, permanence, duration, endurance: The early settlers had to struggle for existence. 3 entity, being, creature; ens, quiddity, essence: In Hindu philosophy, there is no limit to the number of existences.

exit n. 1 way out, egress, door, gate; outlet, vent: Everyone left by the emergency exit when the alarm rang. This is the exit for the smoke. 2 departure, leave-taking, withdrawal, leaving, retreat, retirement; flight, exodus, evacuation, escape: Terribly embarrassed, they made their exit. The villain's exit from the stage was marked by catcalls.

--v. 3 go (out or away), (take one's) leave, depart, take or make one's departure, retire, (beat a) retreat, bid adieu, withdraw, run, (take a) walk, walk out (on), quit, escape, take to one's heels, show a clean pair of heels, vanish, disappear, Colloq take off, skedaddle, kiss goodbye, US cut out; Slang beat it, US and Canadian take it on the lam, lam (on) out of or from, take a (run-out) powder: He exited from the party as soon as he could.

exorbitant
adj. extraordinary, excessive, extravagant, outrageous, immoderate, extortionate, extreme, unreasonable, inordinate, disproportionate, unconscionable, preposterous, undue, unwarranted, unjustifiable, unjustified: The price of petrol in

Britain is exorbitant.

exotic adj. 1 foreign, alien, non-native, imported: She raises exotic plants. 2 strange, unfamiliar, unusual, bizarre, odd, peculiar, unique, singular, extraordinary, remarkable, out of the ordinary, different, outlandish, weird, crazy: His exotic clothes make him stand out in a crowd. 3 striptease, belly, go-go, topless, bottomless, nude: Her daughter is an exotic dancer at the new disco.

expand v. 1 enlarge, spread (out), extend, increase, open (out or up), swell, inflate, distend; unfold: His waistline began to expand as he approached middle age. 2 prolong, lengthen, stretch, dilate: An elastic valve expands easily. 3 increase, extend, amplify, magnify, broaden, widen, augment, heighten, develop: The minister sought to expand his influence. 4 Often, expand on. detail, enlarge on, embellish, develop, amplify, expatiate on or upon, elaborate (on); flesh out: The speaker expanded on the topic of health insurance.

expanse n. stretch, extent, area, space, range, sweep, reach, length and breadth, spread: The vast expanses of space are yet to be explored.

expansion n. 1 increase, augmentation, development, enlargement, extension, burgeoning or bourgeoning, flourishing, growth, spread: How will the company finance its expansion in other markets? 2 dilatation or dilation, stretching, distension or distention, inflation, swelling: The animal moves by the alternate expansion and contraction of the muscle.

expansive adj. 1 expansible or expandable or expandible, inflatable, dilatable, extensible or extendible or extendable; extending, expanding, enlarging, spreading, opening or stretching (out): Increased temperature causes the enlargement of expansive materials. 2 effusive, open, free, easy, genial, amiable, friendly, warm, affable, sociable, outgoing, communicative, outspoken, extrovert(ed) or extravert(ed), talkative, loquacious, garrulous, frank, unreserved: William became relaxed, almost expansive over the meal. 3 broad, extensive, far-reaching, wide-ranging; comprehensive, widespread, all-embracing, (all-)inclusive: We stood on the edge of an expansive desert. The company has expansive interests in Europe.

expect v. 1 anticipate, look forward or ahead to, have or keep in view, await, envisage, watch or look for, wait for, contemplate, foresee, US envision: She expects to leave. He was expecting her at noon. 2 assume, presume, suppose, imagine, believe, think,trust, surmise, conjecture; foresee, US and Canadian guess: I expect you will be hungry when you return. 3 look for, want, require, wish, need, demand, reckon on or upon, hope for, calculate or count on or upon: What did you expect me to do?

expectant adj. expecting, (a)waiting, ready, eager, apprehensive, anxious, with bated breath, hopeful, looking, watchful, anticipating: The understudy waited, expectant, in the wings.

expectation

n. 1 anticipation, confidence, hopefulness, watchfulness, apprehension, apprehensiveness, expectancy, suspense: There was an air of expectation in the room. 2 hope, assumption, presumption, surmise, supposition, belief, conjecture, US and Canadian guess: Our expectation is that he will come on the next train. 3 demand, requirement, wish, desire, want, insistence, reliance: I think your expectations might be too optimistic. 4 prospects, outlook: He had great expectations from his rich uncle.

expecting adj. pregnant, gravid, with child, in a family way, enceinte, Brit in the family way, US in a family way, Colloq in the club, Brit preggers, Slang US with a bun in the oven: Monica is expecting and will give birth any day.

expedient adj. 1 suitable, appropriate, fitting, fit, befitting, proper, apropos, right, correct, meet, pertinent, applicable, practical, pragmatic, worthwhile, politic: To cross the river, a bridge would prove expedient. 2 advantageous, beneficial, advisable, desirable, recommended, useful, practical, utilitarian, prudent, wise, propitious, opportune, helpful, effective: Count on him to do what is expedient and ignore what is honest.

--n. 3 device, resource, means, measure, contrivance, resort, recourse: Life jackets are a useful expedient if the boat sinks.

expedite v. 1 hasten, rush, hurry, speed or step up, accelerate; dispatch or despatch: The shipment has been expedited and should reach you tomorrow. 2 advance, facilitate, promote, forward, ease, enable: The growing process can be expedited by adding this chemical.

expedition

n. 1 exploration, journey, voyage, field trip, trip, tour, excursion; enterprise, undertaking, mission, quest: She went on an expedition up the Amazon to research herbal medicines. 2 speed, promptness, celerity, alacrity, dispatch or despatch, haste, rapidity, swiftness, quickness: He was ordered to complete his chores with expedition.

expeditious

adj. ready, quick, rapid, swift, fast, brisk, speedy, fleet, efficient, diligent: We made an expeditious passage round Cape Horn. The problem requires an expeditious solution.

expel v. 1 eject, dislodge, throw or cast out, drive or force out, evict, put or push out, remove, run (someone) off or out, displace, dispossess, show the door, suspend, dismiss, let go, Colloq fire, Brit sack, turf out: They will expel the tenant at the earliest opportunity. 2 banish, deport, exile, expatriate, outlaw, maroon; proscribe, ban, bar, debar, dismiss, exclude, blackball, drum out, cashier, discharge, oust: The leader of the opposition was expelled from the country. The committee voted to expel Horace from the club.

expend v. 1 pay out, spend, disburse, use, employ, Slang lay or dish out, fork or shell out: Reduce the money expended on entertainment. 2 use up, consume, exhaust, deplete, finish (off), dissipate, sap, drain: I expended all my energies eking out a bare living.

expendable

adj. dispensable, disposable, non-essential, inessential or unessential, unnecessary, replaceable; unimportant, insignificant: In terms of military strategy, the commando unit was expendable.

expenditure

n. outlay, outgoings, disbursement, spending, payment, expense, cost; price, charge, fee: The financial director must closely examine all expenditures. I cannot justify that kind of expenditure for a car.

expense n. 1 Often, expenses. payment, costs, outlay, outgoings, disbursement, expenditure, spending, out-of-pocket (expenses); cost, price, charge, fee, rate: Keep your expenses to a minimum. Expenses for travel and entertainment will be reimbursed by the company. 2 detriment, sacrifice, cost, loss, impairment, ruin, destruction: They continue to smoke at the expense of their health.

expensive adj. costly, dear, high-priced, up-market, valuable, precious, priceless, extravagant; overpriced: Richard and Elizabeth flew off for an expensive holiday in the sun.

experience

n. 1 knowledge, contact, involvement, practice, familiarity, acquaintance, exposure; participation, observation: Her book on nursing is based on personal experience. 2 incident, event, happening, affair, episode, occurrence, circumstance, adventure, encounter; trial, test, ordeal: He has lived through some harrowing experiences. 3 common sense, wisdom, sagacity, knowledge, know-how, savoir faire, savoir vivre, sophistication, skill, judgement, Slang savvy: She is a woman of experience.

--v. 4 undergo, live or go through, suffer, endure, sustain, face, encounter, meet (with), feel, sense, taste, sample, be familiar with, know: Your problem is that you have never experienced genuine hunger.

experienced

adj. 1 adept, skilled, skilful, accomplished, practised, proficient, knowledgeable, knowing, wise, sage, sagacious, shrewd, prepared, (well-)informed, trained, (well-)versed, expert, master, masterly, qualified, professional, competent, efficient, capable, au fait; Slang on the ball, US savvy: She is an experienced surgeon. 2 mature, seasoned, sophisticated, battle-scarred, seasoned, veteran; Slang in the know, US savvy: We need an experienced leader.

experiment

n. 1 test, trial, investigation, inquiry or enquiry, examination, experimentation, research, proof: Experiment has shown that the ointment cures many minor skin ailments. 2 procedure, policy: Totalitarianism seems to have failed as a political experiment.

--v. 3 experiment on or with. test, try, examine, investigate, research, probe: The time has come to experiment on human subjects. Artists now experiment with many media, from canvas to computers.

experimental
adj. 1 hypothetical, theoretical, tentative, speculative, conjectural, exploratory: Man's first attempts at flying were purely experimental. 2 empirical, experiential: She has profound experimental knowledge of what is involved.

expert n. 1 authority, professional, specialist, scholar, master, connoisseur, pundit, Colloq wizard, whiz, pro, ace, Brit dab hand, boffin, Slang US maven or mavin: We rely on experts to verify the age of works of art.

--adj. 2 skilful, skilled, trained, knowledgeable, learned, experienced, practised, qualified, adept, proficient, accomplished, au fait, adroit, dexterous, polished, finished, masterful, masterly, first-rate, excellent, superb, wonderful, superior, champion(ship), A-one, A-1, virtuoso, Colloq top-notch, Brit whizzo, wizard, US crackerjack, crack: Davis is an expert snooker player.

expertise n. expertness, skill, knowledge, know-how, judgement, mastery; dexterity, adroitness, Slang savvy: You need a great deal of expertise to be a museum curator.

expiration
n. expiry, finish, (coming to an) end, termination, running out, ending, conclusion, concluding, close, closing, discontinuance, discontinuation: The expiration of the option is in March.

expire v. 1 cease, (come to an) end, close, finish, terminate, run out, conclude, discontinue: Your subscription expires with the next issue. 2 die, breathe one's last, decease, perish, pass away: His grandmother expired only last year, at the age of

110. 3 exhale, breathe out, expel: In the daytime we expire more carbon dioxide than during the night.

explain v. 1 interpret, define, explicate, detail, delineate, make plain, simplify, spell out, resolve, get across, clarify, clear up, elucidate, illustrate, expound, describe, disclose, unfold, unravel, untangle: The teacher explained the theory so that even I could understand it. 2 Also, explain away. justify, account for, excuse, rationalize, legitimate, legitimatize, extenuate, palliate: You will be required to explain your absence.

explanation
n. 1 interpretation, definition, explication, delineation, simplification, resolution, clarification, elucidation, description, illustration, exposition, account, disclosure; exegesis, commentary, criticism, analysis: The encyclopedia contains detailed explanations of how machines work. 2 excuse, rationalization, justification, vindication: What is your explanation for such outrageous behaviour? 3 cause, motive, reason, key, signification, solution: The explanation for aberrant behaviour often lies in hormonal imbalance.

explanatory
adj. explanative, elucidative, revelatory, interpretive or interpretative, expository, descriptive; critical, exegetic(al): Please read the explanatory notes below.

expletive adj. 1 wordy, verbose, prolix, repetitious, redundant, tautological, iterative, reiterative, pleonastic; unnecessary, unneeded, needless, unessential, non-essential, gratuitous, superfluous: Her speech is punctuated by expletive words and phrases, like 'like, you know', and so forth.

--n. 2 oath, swear-word, curse, obscenity, epithet, Colloq cuss-word, dirty word, four-letter word: Expletives sometimes lend an air of naturalness to written dialogue. 3 filler, padding, redundancy, tautology, pleonasm: Some grammarians term the 'It' in 'It is raining' an expletive.

explicit adj. 1 specific, categorical, (crystal-)clear, definite, well-defined, distinct, unambiguous, precise, exact, unequivocal, express, stated, plain, manifest, unmistakable, positive, absolute, final, peremptory, unqualified, unconditional: The children had explicit instructions to keep away from the canal. 2 open, outspoken, unreserved, unrestrained, candid, frank, direct, forthright, straightforward, definite: She was explicit in her orders.

explode v. 1 blow up, burst, blast, fly apart, go off, erupt, fulminate; set off, detonate: Police exploded the bomb after clearing the area. Rockets exploded in the night sky. 2 reject, discredit, refute, repudiate, disprove, debunk, belie, give the lie to, Slang pick holes in, poke or shoot full of holes: Ptolemy's geocentric theory has been thoroughly exploded. 3 lose one's temper, rant, rave, rage, storm, throw a tantrum, Colloq get into a tizzy, blow one's top, fly off the handle, go through or hit the roof, hit the ceiling; Slang lose one's cool, go up the wall, US blow one's stack or cool, flip (one's lid), freak out: He exploded when he learned his car had been smashed up.

exploit n. 1 achievement, deed, feat, attainment, accomplishment: The speaker regaled them with tales of his exploits as an explorer.

--v. 2 use, take advantage of, manipulate, make capital out of, profit from, utilize, turn to account, manoeuvre, work: Far from being your friends, they are exploiting you for their own purposes. They need capital to exploit the country's natural resources.

exploration

n. examination, investigation, search, probe, inquiry or enquiry, study, research, analysis, review, scrutiny, inspection, survey, reconnaissance, observation; expedition: Exploration of the intestine revealed the presence of polyps. He is noted for his exploration of the sources of the Nile.

explore v. 1 survey, tour, travel, reconnoitre, traverse: They are on safari, exploring the Congo. 2 investigate, scrutinize, examine, inquire or enquire into, inspect, probe, search, research, look into, study, analyse, review, observe: We ought to explore the possibility of your working for us.

explosion n. 1 blast, bang, report, burst, boom, clap, crack, eruption, crash, outburst, fulmination; detonation: The explosion shook the entire house. 2 outburst, outbreak, paroxysm, upheaval, flare-up, eruption, burst, fit, spasm, tantrum, Colloq Brit paddy or paddywhack or paddywack, wax: The unrest among the people is building up to an explosion. 3 increase, burgeoning or bourgeoning, expansion, welling up, mushrooming: The population explosion has caused a housing shortage.

explosive adj. 1 volatile, sensitive, delicate, tense, anxious, fraught, touch-and-go, touchy, inflammable, (highly) charged, unstable, uncertain, unsound, shaky, hazardous, chancy, unpredictable, precarious, dangerous, perilous, critical, nasty, ugly, Colloq dicey, iffy: The explosive situation between the strikers and management may lead to bloodshed.

--n. 2 dynamite, TNT, gunpowder, gelignite, plastic, plastique: The car was blown up by a powerful charge of explosive.

expose v. 1 (lay) bare, reveal, uncover, show, exhibit, present, display, disclose; divulge, unveil, unmask, discover, air, ventilate, let out, leak, betray, bring to light, make known: He unbuttoned his shirt, exposing his hairy chest. The facts of the case will be exposed tomorrow. Will he expose the names of his accomplices? 2 risk, imperil, endanger, jeopardize, hazard: Do not expose your house to danger of flooding by building it so close to the river. 3 expose to. subject to, introduce to, acquaint with, bring into contact with: Today children are not taught, but 'exposed to education'.

exposition

n. 1 exhibition, show(ing), presentation, display, demonstration, US exhibit , Colloq expo: There is a special exposition of medieval farming implements in the museum. 2 description, declaration, statement, explanation, explication, clarification, interpretation, exegesis: The exposition of his argument was remarkably lucid. 3 paper, theme, article, essay, thesis, dissertation, treatise, disquisition, study, critique, commentary: She received high marks for her exposition on Zoroastrianism.

exposure n. 1 baring, uncovering, laying open, unveiling, disclosure, disclosing, unmasking, revealing, revelation, expos,, airing, publication, publishing, communicating, communication, leaking, leak, divulging: The exposure of the spy was part of the plan.

2 jeopardy, risk, hazard, endangerment, vulnerability, imperilment; danger, peril: By diversifying your investments, you reduce your exposure to a loss in just one. 3 familiarity, knowledge, acquaintance, experience, contact, conversancy: My exposure to Chinese philosophy has been negligible. 4 aspect, view, outlook, orientation, frontage; setting, location, direction: She said that she preferred a bedroom with an easterly exposure.

express v. 1 articulate, verbalize, phrase, utter, voice, state, word, put (into words), set or put forth, put or get across, communicate, depict, portray; say, speak, tell: She expressed her thoughts on the subject very clearly. 2 show, indicate, demonstrate, manifest, exhibit, evince, evidence, reveal, expose, disclose, divulge, make known, intimate, betoken, signify, embody, depict, designate, denote, convey: His tone of voice expressed his resentment. 3 symbolize, represent, signify, stand for, denote, designate: The ratio can be expressed in the form of a fraction. 4 press or squeeze or wring or force out, expel, extract: The oil is expressed from ripe olives.

--adj. 5 explicit, clear, plain, unambiguous, unmistakable, unqualified, outright, definite, out-and-out, downright, straightforward, categorical, direct, specific, well-defined, distinct, precise, accurate, exact, positive: We had an express understanding not to enter into competition with one another. 6 specific, special, particular, clear-cut; true: Our express purpose in coming was to see you. 7 quick, speedy, swift, fast, rapid, prompt, immediate; direct, non-stop: The documents must be sent by express delivery.

expression

n. 1 verbalization, airing, representation, declaration, utterance, assertion, enunciation, asseveration, pronouncement, communication, voicing, announcement: Any expression of criticism of government is forbidden in many countries. 2 representation, manifestation, sign, token, symbol, show, demonstration, indication, evidence: A curled lip is an expression of scorn. 3 look, mien, air, appearance, face, aspect, countenance: He had long straight hair and a completely blank expression. Her smile twisted into an expression of frustration. 4 tone, note, nuance, intonation, accent, touch, nuance, shading, loudness, softness; expressiveness, emotion, feeling, sensitivity, passion, spirit, depth, ardour, intensity, pathos: There was much expression in her playing of the fugue. 5 word, term, phrase, idiom, turn of phrase, locution, saying: Some find the expression 'Have a nice day' to be irritating. 6 wording, phrasing, phraseology, language, style, diction, usage, speech, delivery: Writers are not the only ones who should study effective expression.

expressive

adj. 1 indicative, suggestive, allusive, eloquent, revealing, meaningful, significant, denotative: Her frown is expressive of her disapproval. 2 pointed, pithy, explicit: Leave it to him to make some expressive remark about Frieda's hat. 3 striking, vivid, telling, pregnant, loaded, forceful, moving, emotional, poignant, provocative, thought-provoking: His poetry contains much expressive language.

expressly adv. 1 distinctly, definitely, categorically, explicitly, absolutely, positively, directly, unambiguously, unequivocally, unmistakably, plainly, pointedly, exactly, clearly: He expressly denied the rumour. 2 purposely, especially, purposefully, particularly, specifically, specially; on purpose: The gift was intended expressly for you.

expulsion n. expelling, ejection, eviction, repudiation, ouster, removal, dismissal, discharge; Colloq the (old) heave-ho, Brit the boot, the sack, sacking, US the bounce: His expulsion from the pub was accompanied by cheers from the patrons.

exquisite adj. 1 delicate, fine, elegant, graceful, excellent, choice, well-crafted, well-made, well-executed, refined, elaborate: They have a collection of exquisite miniature portraits. 2 ingenious, detailed, recherch,, rare, subtle, deep, abstruse; far-fetched: He is expert in the exquisite points of seduction. 3 beautiful, perfect, lovely, attractive, handsome, comely, good-looking; smart, chic, elegant, striking: In her youth, she was an exquisite blonde goddess. He wore an exquisite silk costume. 4 acute, sharp, keen, excruciating, agonizing, intense; elaborate: The most exquisite pain I have known is occasioned by gout. Spies, subjected to exquisite torture, usually revealed their secrets. 5 superb, superior, peerless, matchless, incomparable, unequalled, rare, precious, choice, consummate, outstanding, superlative, excellent, select, flawless, perfect, wonderful, splendid, marvellous: She wore a tiara of exquisite diamonds.

extemporaneous
adj. unstudied, unpremeditated, extempore, extemporary, impromptu, improvised, spontaneous, unrehearsed, extemporized, unprepared, unplanned, unscripted, offhand, ad lib, extempore, Colloq off the cuff: Though extraordinarily well-organized, Charlotte's speech was entirely extemporaneous.

extend v. 1 stretch or spread (out), outstretch, outspread, open (out), unroll, unfold; reach, range; carry on, draw out, continue, develop: The carpet extends from wall to wall. Her reputation extends worldwide. The city walls extended to the river. 2 lengthen, elongate, widen, continue; broaden, enlarge, add to, augment; increase, stretch (out), supplement: We are planning to extend the sitting-room. They asked the mortgage company to extend the repayment period. 3 last, stretch, continue, go or carry on; perpetuate, drag on or out, keep up or on, prolong: Their visit extended until the following week. 4 offer, proffer, give, present, hold out, stretch forth, tender; bestow; grant, impart, confer, accord, advance: She extended her hand. The store does not extend credit to any customers.

extension n. 1 stretching, expansion, increase, enlargement, augmentation, development, amplification, broadening, widening, lengthening, spread, spreading: The extension of the plan is scheduled for next year. 2 range, extensiveness, scope, extent, magnitude, gauge, compass, sweep, reach, size, volume, dimension(s), proportions, capacity, span; breadth, width, height, length, spread, stretch: The extension of the mind seems almost limitless. 3 addendum, addition, annexe, wing, adjunct, ell, appendage; appendix, supplement: We have built an extension to the house.

extensive adj. 1 broad, wide, expansive, far-reaching, far-ranging, wide-ranging, far-flung, sweeping, widespread, comprehensive, all-embracing; national, nationwide, international, intercontinental, cosmopolitan, worldwide, global, universal, vast; cosmic; catholic: The storm is responsible for extensive crop damage. He has extensive business connections. 2 large, big, great, huge, substantial, considerable, sizeable, immense, enormous, vast, gigantic, massive; voluminous, spacious, commodious, capacious: The extensive gold deposits were soon depleted. The cave contains several extensive chambers.

extent   n. 1 magnitude, dimensions, compass, size, range, scale, sweep, scope, expanse, immensity, enormousness, capaciousness, spaciousness, space, amplitude: The extent of space is unimaginably vast. 2 limit, bounds, limitation, lengths; range, scope: To what extent will he go to see justice done? 3 area, region, tract, territory, compass: In the whole extent of Europe you could find no better mushroom.

extenuating
adj. mitigating, lessening, tempering, palliating, moderating, diminishing, qualifying: Owing to extenuating circumstances, he could not be tried for murder.

exterior adj. 1 outer, outside, external, outward, superficial, surface: The exterior covering of the capsule becomes very hot on re-entry into the earth's atmosphere. 2 external, extrinsic, extraneous, foreign, alien, exotic, outside: The problem can be overcome without exterior help.

--n. 3 outside, surface, covering, coating, facing, face, front, skin, shell, fa‡ade: The exterior is of pink stucco.

exterminate
v. destroy, root out, eradicate, extirpate, annihilate, eliminate, weed out, get rid of, wipe out, obliterate, put an end to, terminate, liquidate, massacre, murder, kill (off), butcher, slaughter, Slang bump off, US rub out, waste: It is his avowed intention to exterminate all the vermin of the criminal fraternity.

external adj. 1 outer, outside, outward, exterior: This medication is for external use only. 2 outside, exterior, extrinsic, extraneous, alien, foreign, exotic: Do not ignore the external influences on the nation's economy. 3 apparent, visible, perceptible, superficial, surface: The external features of the planet barely suggest what lies within.

extinct   adj. 1 defunct, dead, died out, gone, departed, vanished: These are the bones of an extinct species of flying mammal. 2 dated, outmoded, old-fashioned, antiquated, obsolete, archaic, out of date, antediluvian, ancient, old hat, pass,, d,mod,: High-button shoes and bustles have been extinct for almost a century. 3 out, extinguished, quenched, burnt- or put or snuffed out; inactive, dormant: The lake is in the caldera of an extinct volcano.

extinguish

v. 1 put or snuff or blow out, quench; turn off or out: We are landing shortly, so please extinguish all smoking materials. Extinguish the lights before leaving. 2 kill (off), annihilate, destroy, obliterate, abolish, exterminate, eliminate, do away with, nullify, eradicate, remove, banish, wipe or blot out: The potion contained a drug that extinguished all memory of unhappiness. 3 obscure, eclipse, dim, outdo, put in the shade, overshadow, adumbrate, Colloq show up: His personality is completely extinguished by the dazzle of his wife.

extol v. exalt, elevate, uplift, glorify, praise, laud, applaud, commend, acclaim, cheer, celebrate, pay tribute or homage to, sing the praises of, make much of, honour, congratulate, compliment: William is always extolling the talents of some dancer or other.

extort v. exact, extract, blackmail, bully, coerce, force, wring, wrest, Colloq milk, bleed, put the arm on (someone): Threatening to swear that it was my fault, she extorted a promise from me to keep silent about the body.

extra adj. 1 additional, added, auxiliary, accessory, supplementary, supplemental, further, ancillary, subsidiary, collateral, adventitious: We had an extra person for dinner. Zenobia has an extra toe on each foot. 2 leftover, excess, spare, surplus, unused, superfluous, supernumerary, reserve: After all were served, we had two extra desserts.

--n. 3 addition, addendum, accessory, appurtenance, supplement, bonus, premium, dividend: As an extra, each customer receives a free ball-point pen. 4 supplement, US mark-up, surcharge, Slang US and Canadian kicker: There is an extra if you want bread and butter. 5 supernumerary, walk-on, Colloq super, spear-carrier: One could scarcely call being an extra a 'Hollywood career'.

--adv. 6 uncommonly, unusually, exceptionally, unexpectedly, extraordinarily, remarkably, notably, surprisingly, amazingly, very, particularly, especially, extremely, strikingly: Teacher said that Philip was extra good today. 7 additionally, again, more, in addition: They charge extra for room service.

extract v. 1 draw or pull (out), remove, withdraw, pluck or take out, draw forth, extricate: The dentist extracted two teeth. I extracted some important papers from your waste-paper basket. 2 draw, derive, deduce, develop, glean, extricate, distil, get, obtain: I could extract little sense from her ramblings. 3 wrench, wring, wrest, extort, draw (forth), evoke, elicit, extricate, winkle out, worm (out), prise (out), force (out): Using torture, they finally extracted a confession from him. She extracted money from her victims by threatening to tell their wives. 4 copy, quote, cite, abstract, select, choose, glean, cull: We extracted useful material from some old encyclopedias.

--n. 5 concentrate, distillate, essence, distillation, quintessence, concentration, extraction, decoction: We boiled off the water and used the extract as a salve. 6 excerpt, abstract, quotation, citation, clipping, cutting, passage, selection: Extracts from other works are printed in smaller type.

extraction

n. 1 removal, extrication, withdrawal, uprooting, eradication, extirpation, deracination: The extraction of my tooth was completely painless. 2 extract, concentrate, distillate, essence, distillation, quintessence, concentration, decoction, separation, derivation: This syrup is an extraction from coffee beans. 3 origin, birth, ancestry, descent, lineage, derivation, blood, parentage, breed, strain, race, stock, pedigree: The family is of Scandinavian extraction.

extraneous

adj. 1 unessential, non-essential, inessential, peripheral, superfluous, unnecessary, unneeded, extra, added, additional, adventitious, supernumerary, incidental, needless: Filter out all the extraneous substances. 2 not pertinent, impertinent, inapplicable, inapt, unapt, unfitting, inappropriate, unrelated, irrelevant, inapposite, unconnected, remote, alien, foreign, exotic, strange, outlandish, external, extrinsic, external, out of place, off the mark or point or subject, beside the point or mark: Why must you constantly bring up extraneous matters?

extraordinary

adj. 1 unusual, uncommon, remarkable, exceptional, particular, outstanding, special, rare, unique, singular, signal, unheard-of, curious, peculiar, odd, bizarre, queer, strange, abnormal, unprecedented, unparalleled: She showed extraordinary courage in coming here. 2 amazing, surprising, astonishing, astounding, remarkable, notable, noteworthy, marvellous, fantastic, incredible, unbelievable, impressive, fabulous, miraculous, unparalleled, Colloq super, smashing, lovely, gorgeous, Slang far-out, unreal: This is an extraordinary example of the bookbinder's art.

extravagance

n. 1 wastefulness, waste, lavishness, profligacy, prodigality, squandering, dissipation, improvidence, exorbitance, recklessness, overspending, excess: Our present debts are the result of extravagance. 2 immoderation, immoderateness, excessiveness, outrageousness, unrestraint, superfluity, superfluousness, over-sufficiency, preposterousness, unreasonableness, irrationality, absurdity; capriciousness, whim, fantasy, flightiness: His tawdry life belied the extravagance of his dreams.

extravagant

adj. 1 wasteful, lavish, profligate, prodigal, improvident, reckless, excessive, spendthrift, profuse, extreme, immoderate: She cannot afford to maintain her extravagant way of life for long. 2 unrestrained, uncontained, wild, outrageous, preposterous, immoderate, ridiculous, foolish, fanciful, unreasonable, absurd, impractical; undeserved, unjustified, unjustifiable: The speaker lavished extravagant praise on the award winners. 3 expensive, costly, extortionate, unreasonable, overpriced, exorbitant, high; dear; Colloq steep: That trip to Istanbul by private jet was extravagant to say the least. 4 gaudy, garish, ostentatious, showy, ornate, flashy, loud, flamboyant; exaggerated, high-sounding: She appears at parties wearing the most extravagant costumes.

extravaganza

n. spectacular, spectacle, pageant, production, show, exposition: An extravaganza was staged to celebrate the opening of the Channel Tunnel.

extreme adj. 1 unusual, uncommon, exceptional, outstanding, notable, noteworthy, abnormal, different, extraordinary, remarkable: We experienced extreme difficulty driving home. 2 immoderate, excessive, severe, intense, acute, maximum, worst: This equipment is made to withstand extreme arctic conditions. 3 outermost, endmost, farthest, ultimate, utmost, uttermost, remotest, last, far-off, far-away, distant, very: She walked to the extreme end of the pier. 4 rigid, stern, severe, strict, conservative, hidebound, stiff, stringent, restrictive, constrictive, uncompromising, Draconian, harsh, drastic: Grandfather favoured taking extreme measures against terrorists. 5 unconventional, radical, outrageous, wild, weird, bizarre, queer, outrageous, offbeat, exotic, eccentric, different, outr,, Slang far-out, way-out, US and Canadian kooky: I find your outfit too extreme to wear in public. 6 beyond the pale or limits or bounds, extravagant, inordinate, excessive, disproportionate, outrageous: Because of your extreme behaviour, you will be confined to the house for a week.

--n. 7 Often, extremes. limit(s), bounds, utmost, maximum, Colloq swing: Try to be more moderate and to avoid extremes. 8 Often, go to extremes. limit(s), bounds, maximum, acme, zenith, pinnacle, summit, height, apex, apogee, peak, extremity; depth, nadir: Thea's moods varied between the extremes of joy and grief. 9 in the extreme. extremely, very, exceptionally, exceedingly, extraordinarily, unusually: His table manners are rude in the extreme.

extremely adv. very, exceedingly, outrageously, extraordinarily, unusually, uncommonly, exceptionally, damned, hellishly, to the nth degree, Colloq Brit bloody, US darned: The service was extremely bad. They are extremely stupid.

extremity n. 1 end, termination, limit, edge, boundary, bound, border, margin; periphery; frontier: A fence marks the eastern extremity of our land. 2 extremities. fingers, fingertips, toes; hands, feet; arms, legs, limbs; paws, trotters, hooves, wings: His extremities were numb with frostbite. 3 extreme, utmost, maximum, limit(s), bounds: The situation tested the extremity of my patience. They were driven to extremities in their search for food.

extricate v. unravel, disentangle, untangle, disengage, (set) free, turn loose, release, liberate, rescue, save, deliver: You helped extricate me from a terrible predicament.

extrinsic adj. external, extraneous, irrelevant, exterior, unrelated, outside; outer, outward: Such extrinsic factors may be excluded from the discussion.

exuberance
n. 1 cheerfulness, joy, joyfulness, ebullience, effervescence, exhilaration, buoyancy, animation, spirit, spiritedness, sprightliness, liveliness, vitality, vivacity, enthusiasm, excitement, zeal, zest, energy, vigour: It is hard to imagine the dog's exuberance when he saw his master. 2 abundance, lavishness, effusiveness, flamboyance, copiousness, superabundance, superfluity, excess, profusion, prodigality, bounteousness, bountifulness: Everything attests to the exuberance of the author's genius.

exuberant adj. 1 cheerful, joyful, ebullient, effervescent, buoyant, animated, spirited, spry, sprightly, lively, vivacious, enthusiastic, zealous, energetic, vigorous: She enjoys exuberant good health. 2 happy, glad, delighted, overjoyed, joyful, ecstatic, Brit in the seventh heaven, US in seventh heaven, Colloq on cloud nine: She was exuberant at the news of Lyle's return.

exult v. rejoice, revel, glory (in), jump for joy, delight, celebrate, make merry: We exulted in our new-found freedom.

exultant adj. delighted, jubilant, overjoyed, elated, joyful, gleeful, glad, ecstatic, exuberant, in seventh heaven, cock-a-hoop, Colloq on cloud nine, Brit over the moon: We were exultant to learn that the war was over.

5.20 eye...
=-

eye n. 1 eyeball, orb, Colloq optic: The eye of the eagle is nearly as large as that of an elephant. 2 vision, (eye)sight, visual acuity, perception: Her eyes are weakened by so much reading. 3 discernment, perception, taste, judgement, discrimination, percipience, perspicacity, appreciation, sensitivity; knowledge, recognition, comprehension: Shirley has a good eye for Chinese antiques. Walmsley has the eye of an artist. 4 liking, affection, fondness, partiality, appreciation; lustfulness: Old Bisley still has an eye for the girls. 5 ogle, leer, look, wink, glad eye, sidelong glance: The barmaid gave me the eye as soon as I walked in. 6 view, respect, regard, aim, intention, purpose, design, plan, idea, notion: He lent me the money with an eye to asking a favour in return. 7 attention, regard, look, scrutiny, view, examination, observation; supervision: All our comings and goings were under the watchful eye of Scotland Yard. 8 guard, lookout, watch, vigil: The class monitor is expected to keep an eye on the younger children.

--v. 9 examine, scrutinize, look at, regard: My future mother-in-law eyed me up and down. 10 behold, gaze or look or peer at or upon, contemplate, study, regard, view, inspect; watch, observe: The doctor eyed the wound with concern.

eyewitness

n. witness, observer, spectator, viewer, watcher; bystander, onlooker, passer-by: The police sought eyewitnesses to the accident.

6.0 F

=-

6.1 fabric...

=-

fabric n. 1 cloth, textile, material, stuff: The chair is upholstered in traditional floral fabric. 2 construction, constitution, core, heart, foundation, structure, framework, organization, configuration, make-up: Extensive strikes threatened the very fabric of our society.

fabricate v. 1 erect, build, construct, frame, raise, put or set up, assemble, fashion, form, make, manufacture, produce: The basic structure was fabricated of steel. 2 invent, create, originate, make up, manufacture, concoct, think up, imagine, hatch, devise, design: Numerous lies, fabricated by politicians, were already in circulation. 3 forge, falsify, counterfeit, fake, feign, manufacture; trump up, Colloq cook up, Brit cook: He admitted to having fabricated the data in his application.

fabrication

n. 1 construction, assembly, assemblage, making, fashioning, production, manufacture, putting together, building, erection, formation, formulation, structuring, constructing, organization, forming, framing, architecture: The fabrication of thousands of parts took only a month. 2 invention, creation, origination, make-up, manufacture, hatching, concoction, contrivance, design: Only Vanessa could have been responsible for the fabrication of such a diabolical plot. 3 falsehood, lie, fib, prevarication, story, tale, untruth, fiction, yarn, fable; falsification, forgery, fake, sham, Colloq cock-and-bull story, Brit fairy story, fairy tale: His war record is a complete fabrication.

fabulous adj. 1 fabled, mythic(al), celebrated, legendary, storied, fictitious, fictional, unreal, fanciful, imaginary, story-book, fairy-tale: Greek mythology tells us of a fabulous winged horse called Pegasus. 2 fantastic, marvellous, incredible, unbelievable, inconceivable, wonderful, astounding, astonishing, amazing, wondrous, extraordinary, miraculous, phenomenal: Houses in London were selling at fabulous prices. 3 superb, marvellous, terrific, great, wonderful, Colloq great, super, smashing, thumping, whopping, thundering, rattling, howling, US neat, keen, Slang fab, hot, far-out, cool, Old-fashioned fantabulous, in the groove, groovy, ace, Brit magic, US and Canadian copacetic: I saw an absolutely fabulous new film the other night.

face   n. 1 visage, countenance, physiognomy, features, lineaments, Slang mug, mush, kisser, pan, puss, Brit phiz, phizog, dial, clock: I don't like the expression on your face. 2 look, appearance, aspect, expression, mien: He has the face of someone who is very proud of himself. Modern farming has changed the face of the countryside. 3 mask, veneer, fa‡ade, front, camouflage, pretence, disguise, (false) impression, semblance, masquerade: She puts on a bold face, but we know she was deeply hurt by your remarks. 4 dignity, image, self-respect, standing, reputation, repute, name, honour, status: You might lose face if you admit you were wrong. 5 boldness, daring, audacity, effrontery, impudence, impertinence, presumption, brashness, Colloq gall, brass, nerve, cheek, guts, gutsiness, Brit brass neck, Slang US balls: Who would have the face to name such a hotel 'The Palace'? 6 surface, exterior, front, outside, cover, facing, fa‡ade, skin: The building will have a face of white marble. 7 right side, obverse, front; dial: The card landed face up. The face of the clock is enamelled. 8 face to face. confronting, facing, opposite, en face, vis-…-vis, tˆte-…-tˆte, … deux, eye to eye, head to head, Colloq eyeball to eyeball: We met face to face for the first time in the courtroom. 9 in the face of. in defiance of, notwithstanding, despite, in spite of, confronting, in opposition to: Some experts attacked the report for flying in the face of received wisdom. 10 make a face. grimace, change one's expression, murgeon: When I said I would be there, she made a face. 11 on the face of it. to all or outward appearances, seemingly, apparently, superficially, evidently: On the face of it, I assumed that he was guilty. 12 show one's face. put in or make an appearance, appear, arrive, be seen, turn up, Colloq show up: I suppose I ought to show my face at the office party. 13 to one's face. directly, brazenly, eye to eye, face to face, candidly, openly, frankly: I told him to his face that he was a liar.

--v. 14 confront, brave, meet (with), encounter, experience, deal or cope with, come or go up against; appear before: In the jungle we faced grave danger from man-eating tigers. She faces her first audience tonight. 15 give (out) or front on or onto, front towards, overlook, look out on or over; be opposite: Our rooms face the lake. Facing page 22 is a map of the area. 16 coat, surface, cover, clad, dress, sheathe, overlay, finish; veneer: The collar is faced with velvet. 17 face down. confront, intimidate, cow, subdue, overawe, browbeat: I'll not be faced down by that impudent clerk. 18 face up to. a admit, accept, acknowledge, allow, confess: We must all face up to our own shortcomings. b confront, deal or cope with, come or go up against, brave, come to terms with; brazen through or out, bite (on) the bullet, grasp the nettle: You wouldn't be able to face up to your wife if you'd forgotten her birthday.

facilitate

v. ease, expedite, smooth, further, promote, advance; assist, aid, help: It would facilitate transport if you would bring your own car.

facility n. 1 ease, smoothness, fluency, effortlessness, readiness, easiness, skill, skilfulness, deftness, dexterity, adroitness, ability, aptitude, expertise, expertness, proficiency, mastery, masterfulness, masterliness, efficiency; quickness, alacrity, celerity, swiftness, speed: They praised her new-found facility with the Italian language. 2 Often, facilities. a plant, system, building(s), structure, complex: The company is building a new facility in France. b convenience(s), privy, equipment, lavatory, toilet, powder-room, Nautical head, Brit water-closet, WC, loo, US and Canadian rest room, men's room, ladies' room, Colloq the Gents, the Ladies('), Slang Brit bog, karzy, US and Canadian john: An American asked where he could find the facilities.

facing n. fa‡ade, front, cladding, surface, overlay, skin; coating: The houses all have a colourful stucco facing.

facsimile n. copy, reproduction, print, carbon (copy), replica, duplicate, photocopy, fax, Trade Mark Xerox (copy), Photostat, Colloq US dupe: Send a facsimile of the report to each field office.

fact n. 1 reality, actuality, truth, certainty: The fact of the matter is that she didn't do it. Is there a basis in fact for your allegations? 2 accomplishment, fait accompli; occurrence, event, happening, incident, episode, experience, act, deed: Supersonic travel has been a fact for many years. 3 Often, facts. data, information, particular(s), detail(s), point(s), item(s), factor(s), Colloq low-down, (inside) info, the score, Brit the gen, US and Canadian the poop: If I am going to defend you, I need all the facts of the case. 4 in fact. indeed, to be sure, as a matter of (actual) fact, in truth, truly, truthfully, actually, really, in reality, in point of fact, factually: He didn't come; in fact, he had gone abroad the week before.

faction n. 1 group, cabal, bloc, cadre, camp, splinter group, circle, camarilla, clique, set, coterie, lobby, pressure group, junta or junto, ring, gang, Brit ginger group, Colloq crowd: There is a small faction plotting to assassinate the finance minister. 2

dissension, intrigue, strife, sedition, disharmony, discord, disagreement, quarrelling, contention, controversy, infighting, rupture, split, rift, schism, clash: Faction within the party has no regard for national interests.

factious adj. contentious, disputatious, litigious, refractory, divisive, conflicting, discordant, argumentative, at odds, at loggerheads, quarrelsome, seditious, mutinous, rebellious: A factious Congress spells trouble for the President.

factitious
adj. fake(d), bogus, false, mock, falsified, artificial, insincere, unreal, synthetic, fabricated, engineered, manufactured, spurious, counterfeit, sham, simulated, imitation, unauthentic, set or got up, rigged, Colloq phoney or US also phony: We are all victims of factitious desires by which luxuries have become necessities.

factor n. 1 constituent, ingredient, element, part, particular, piece, component; circumstance, consideration, aspect, fact, influence, determinant, cause: Which factors contributed to the decline of Mayan civilization? 2 agent, representative, proxy, middleman, intermediary, deputy, go-between: Our company has a factor handling all our exports. 3 banker, financier, backer, moneylender, lender: The factors lent us money to buy the stock needed to fill the orders.

factory n. works, mill, plant: She has a job at the piano factory.

factual adj. 1 actual, real, true, authentic, verifiable, realistic, true to life, genuine, valid, bona fide: The report is a forgery, but the letters are factual. 2 accurate, correct, true, correct, faithful, precise, unbiased, undistorted, unvarnished, unexaggerated, objective, unprejudiced, straightforward: This is a factual account of the Battle of Marathon.

faculty n. 1 ability, capacity, skill, aptitude, potential, talent, flair, knack, gift, genius; dexterity, adroitness, cleverness, capability: She has a faculty for making people feel at home. 2 school, department, discipline: Her graduate studies were in the Faculty of Philosophy. 3 staff, personnel, members, Brit dons: Each member of the faculty has a doctorate. 4 power, authorization, dispensation, sanction, licence, prerogative, privilege, right, permission, liberty: The government has the faculty to judge treasonable acts.

fad   n. craze, mania, rage, fashion, trend, fancy, vogue: Do you remember the hula-hoop fad?

fade   v. 1 (grow) dim or pale, grow faint, cloud (over), dull; bleach, whiten, etiolate, wash out, blanch or blench, discolour: The scene faded in the distance. Look how the sun has faded the curtains! 2 droop, wither, decline, die out or away, perish, ebb, flag, wane, wilt, waste away, sag, diminish, dwindle, languish, deteriorate, decay, shrivel, peter out or away: As he aged, his lust for life faded.

fag   v. 1 Often, fag out. exhaust, weary, tire (out), fatigue, wear out, jade, Colloq Brit knacker, US poop: I am completely fagged out from studying all night.

--n. 2 Brit bore, nuisance, drag, chore, pain: It's a bit of a fag having to fetch water from the garden. 3 servant, menial, flunkey, drudge, lackey, underling: The seniors used to have fags to clean their shoes. 4 See homosexual, 1, below. 5 cigarette, smoke, Colloq butt, cig(gy), weed, coffin-nail, cancer stick, Old-fashioned gasper: Got a fag?

fail   v. 1 not succeed, be unsuccessful, miss, miscarry, misfire, fall short (of), fall flat, fall through, falter, be (found) lacking or wanting, be defective, be deficient, be or prove inadequate, come to grief or naught or nothing, go wrong, abort, meet with disaster, founder, run aground, Colloq flop, fizzle (out), go up in smoke, flunk: Guy Fawkes's plot failed utterly. Gloria failed her history examination. 2 let down, disappoint, forsake, desert, abandon, neglect, ignore, slight: I was really counting on Mary, but she failed me. 3 decline, peter out, dwindle, diminish, wane, deteriorate, weaken, decay, fade or die (out or away), disappear, flag, ebb, sink, languish, give out; gutter, go out: His health is failing. The light failed, leaving us in darkness. 4 go bankrupt, go out of business, go under, go into receivership, become insolvent, close up shop, close up or down, cease operation(s), Brit go to the wall, US file for Chapter Eleven, Colloq fold (up), go bust or broke, US drown in red ink: According to the statistics, hundreds of businesses fail every week.

failing n. 1 weakness, shortcoming, foible, flaw, fault, defect, weak spot, blind spot, blemish, imperfection: Bigotry and prejudice are her most serious failings.

--prep. 2 lacking, wanting, in default of, without, sans, in the absence of: Failing a favourable decision, we shall lodge an appeal.

failure n. 1 failing, default, non-performance, remissness; neglect, omission, dereliction, deficiency: His failure to do his duty resulted in a court martial. 2 breakdown, collapse, discontinuance, miscarriage, loss; decline, decay, deterioration: Power disruptions are caused by the failure of the national grid. 3 loser, non-starter, incompetent, also-ran, nonentity, Colloq flop, fizzle, damp squib, dud, lemon, washout, dead duck, US lead balloon: He was an utter failure as a violinist. 4 bankruptcy, ruin, insolvency, downfall, crash, Colloq folding: Bank failures increased owing to bad loans and other poor investments.

faint adj. 1 dim, dull, pale, faded, indistinct, vague, hazy, imperceptible, indiscernible, unclear, blurred, blurry, muzzy, wavering, faltering, ill-defined, weak, feeble, flickering, subdued; low, soft, slight, hushed, muffled, muted, inaudible, stifled: A faint light burned in the corridor. I heard a faint noise. 2 dizzy, light-headed, unsteady, vertiginous, giddy, Colloq woozy: I felt faint after climbing the stairs.

--v. 3 black out, pass out, lose consciousness, swoon, drop, collapse, Colloq keel over: She fainted when they told her the news.

--n. 4 loss of consciousness, blackout, unconsciousness, collapse, swoon, Medicine syncope: He dropped in a dead faint.

faint-hearted
adj. 1 cowardly, timorous, afraid, frightened, scared, faint, lily-livered, white-livered, pusillanimous; timid, shy, diffident; Colloq yellow(-bellied), chicken-hearted, chicken-livered, chicken: He's too faint-hearted to ask her to marry him. 2 irresolute, weak, ineffectual, feeble, puny,

feckless: She made only a faint-hearted attempt at reconciliation.

fair° adj. 1 impartial, even-handed, disinterested, equitable, just, unprejudiced, unbiased, objective, Colloq square: Judge Leaver is known for his fair decisions. We are counting on your sense of fair play. 2 honest, above-board, honourable, lawful, trustworthy, legitimate, proper, upright, straightforward: He won the trophy in a fair fight. 3 light, blond(e), fair-haired, flaxen-haired, tow-headed, tow-haired; light-complexioned, peaches and cream, rosy; unblemished, clear, spotless, immaculate: She has fair hair and fair skin. 4 satisfactory, adequate, respectable, pretty good, tolerable, passable, all right, average, decent, middling, reasonable, comme ci, comme ‡a, not bad; mediocre, indifferent, Colloq so so, OK or okay: The performance was fair but not outstanding. 5 favourable, clear, sunny, fine, dry, bright, cloudless, pleasant, halcyon, benign: Fair weather is promised for tomorrow's picnic. 6 unobstructed, open, clear, free: Every spectator has a fair view of the football field. 7 attractive, good-looking, handsome, comely, pretty, beautiful, pulchritudinous, lovely, beauteous: Faint heart never won fair lady. 8 civil, courteous, polite, gracious, agreeable: She was not deceived by his fair words.

fairý n. fˆte, festival, kermis or kirmess, exhibition, exposition, show; market, bazaar, mart, US exhibit: Ashby will judge the sheep at the annual fair.

fairly adv. 1 quite, rather, pretty, somewhat, tolerably, adequately, sufficiently, passably, moderately, Colloq sort of, kind of: I thought that the singing was fairly good. 2 equitably, impartially, justly, properly, honestly, objectively: Please make certain that everyone is treated fairly. 3 absolutely, totally, utterly, completely, positively, really, actually, veritably, virtually: The crowd fairly cheered themselves hoarse.

fairyland n. dreamland, wonderland, never-never land, happy valley, paradise, cloud-land, enchanted forest, cloud-cuckoo-land, Nephelococcygia, Shangri-La: Zuleika's thoughts are always off somewhere in fairyland.

faith n. 1 belief, credence, confidence, conviction, trust, certainty, certitude, assurance, assuredness, sureness, reliance, dependence: His faith in God is unassailable. I have great faith in her ability. 2 belief, religion, creed, persuasion, dogma, teaching, doctrine, denomination, sect: To which faith do you belong? She is of the Jewish faith. 3 duty, allegiance, obligation, promise, faithfulness, loyalty, fidelity, devotion, consecration, dedication, fealty, obedience: Don't break faith with your electorate by supporting the bill.

faithful adj. 1 true, loyal, devoted, steadfast, dedicated, attached, unswerving, firm, staunch, unwavering, constant: He has always remained faithful to his wife. 2 close, exact, accurate, true, correct, precise, perfect, valid; literal: Jowett's is a faithful translation from the Greek. 3 conscientious, dutiful, scrupulous, careful, meticulous, thorough, punctilious, finicky or finical, detailed, fastidious, rigorous, rigid, severe, particular: He received a gold watch for fifty years of faithful attendance to his duties. 4 reliable, dependable, trusted, trustworthy, trusty, honest, true, truthful, righteous, right, moral, virtuous, upright, veracious: He has remained my faithful friend for many years.

faithless adj. 1 sceptical, doubting, unbelieving, disbelieving, agnostic, atheistic, freethinking: Faithless wretches are called Doubting Thomases. 2 unfaithful, disloyal, treacherous, traitorous, perfidious, shifting, shifty, fickle, inconstant, untrustworthy, unreliable, false, hypocritical, insincere, dishonest, false, crooked, unscrupulous, conscienceless, recreant: With faithless friends like her, who needs enemies?

fake v. 1 falsify, doctor, alter, modify, counterfeit, fabricate, manufacture, forge: He faked the evidence in order to implicate his own sister. 2 pretend, make a pretence of, dissemble, feign, sham, make believe, simulate, affect: She faked a headache to avoid gym classes.

--n. 3 hoax, counterfeit, sham, forgery, imitation, Colloq phoney or US also phony: The experts agree that the painting is a fake. 4 faker, impostor, charlatan, fraud, hoaxer, mountebank, cheat, humbug, quack, pretender, Colloq phoney or US also phony: He isn't a doctor - he's a fake!

--adj. 5 false, counterfeit, forged, sham, fraudulent, imitation, pinchbeck, bogus, spurious, factitious, Colloq phoney or US also phony: He escaped the country using a fake passport.

fall v. 1 descend, sink, subside, settle, drop or come (down), plummet, plunge, dive, (take a) nosedive; cascade: The bucket fell to the bottom of the well. A meteorite fell on my house. The water falls 100 metres over the cliff at this point. 2 tumble, trip, stumble, slump, collapse, keel over, topple, crumple: Mother fell in the kitchen and hurt her knee. 3 diminish, (become) lower, sink, decline, fall or drop off, drop, decrease, dwindle, subside, come or go down: The price of oil fell today to a new low. 4 slope, fall away, decline: Beyond the spinney, the meadow falls towards the river. 5 succumb, surrender, yield, give up or in, capitulate, be defeated or conquered, be captured, be taken (captive or prisoner), be overthrown, come or go to ruin, be destroyed, be lost: The castle fell after a year's siege. 6 die, perish, drop dead, be slain or killed: His grandfather fell at the Battle of the Marne. 7 fall apart. disintegrate, crumble, collapse, fall or come or go to pieces, break up, be destroyed; break apart, fragment, shatter: I knew she would fall apart on the witness stand. The gadget fell apart as soon as we used it. 8 fall back. retreat, retire, withdraw, draw back; recede: As the enemy advanced, we fell back. 9 fall back on or upon. have recourse to, rely or depend on or upon, return to, count on or upon, resort to, call on or upon, make use of, use, employ: All the ready ammunition was gone and we had to fall back on our reserves. 10 fall behind. drop back, trail, lag; be in arrears: If you fall behind, I'll wait for you. We fell behind in our mortgage payments. 11 fall down. a collapse, drop: She hit me so hard that I fell down. b fail, be (found) wanting or lacking, be unsuccessful, be or prove inadequate or disappointing: He had to be replaced because he fell down on the job. 12 fall flat. collapse, fail, Colloq flop, US bomb (out), lay an egg, go over like a lead balloon: A hit in London might fall flat in New York. 13 fall for. a fall in love with, be infatuated with: Some people will fall for anyone who tells them the right time. b be fooled or duped or taken in or deceived by, accept, swallow, succumb to, Slang be a sucker for, US and Canadian be a patsy for: Did Beaseley really fall for that old confidence trick? 14 fall in. cave in, collapse, sink inwards: The walls were about to fall in on us. 15 fall in with. join, associate with, become associated or allied with, befriend; cooperate with, go along with, concur with, support, accept: He fell in with a gang of thieves and spent the next few years avoiding the police. She agreed to fall in with my plan. 16 fall off. diminish, decrease, decline, deteriorate: Business falls off immediately after Christmas. 17 fall on or upon. attack, assault, assail, set upon: Three muggers fell on me and stole my wallet. 18 fall out. disagree, differ, quarrel, clash, squabble, wrangle, dispute, fight: We fell out over politics. 19 fall short. prove or (turn out to) be inadequate or insufficient or deficient or lacking or wanting or disappointing, miss, fail, disappoint: The results of the sales campaign fell short of expectations. 20 fall through. fail, come to nothing or naught, miscarry, die, Colloq fizzle (out), flop: The deal to buy the company fell through. 21 fall to. start, begin, commence, set or go about, get under way, undertake, tackle, take on; get moving, attack, Colloq get the show on the road, get cracking, US get a wiggle on, move it: The washing-up had to be done so I fell to.

--n. 22 drop, descent, dive, nosedive, plunge, tumble, dropping, falling: How could he have survived a fall from such a height? 23 Chiefly US and Canadian autumn: They turn the clocks back one hour in the fall. 24 decline, decay, collapse, downfall, failure, destruction, ruin, failure, deterioration, eclipse: Have you read Poe's classic Fall of the House of Usher ? 25 Usually, falls. cascade, cataract, waterfall; rapids: How many falls are there along the Limpopo River? 26 depreciation, sinking, diminution, decrease, decline, lapse, downturn, down-swing, drop, drop-off, lowering, abatement, slump, collapse: On the Stock Exchange today, investors experienced sharp falls in share prices. 27 slope, declivity, descent, decline, drop, downhill, Chiefly US and Canadian downgrade: Note the smooth rise and fall of the land. 28 surrender, capitulation, submission, taking, seizure, capture, overthrow, defeat, conquest, downfall: The fall of Khartoum in 1898 marked the re-establishment of British rule in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan.

fallacy   n. misconception, miscalculation, misjudgement, mistake, error, non sequitur, solecism, delusion; paralogism; sophism: It is a fallacy to think that you could ever learn to play the violin as well as Susannah.

false adj. 1 untrue, unfactual, untruthful, wrong, amiss, mistaken, erroneous, incorrect, inaccurate, inexact, imprecise, faulty, flawed, invalid, unsound, unreal, imaginary, fictitious, spurious: The explorers gave a completely false picture of the local inhabitants. 2 untrue, untruthful, lying, misleading, fallacious, fabricated, made-up, concocted, mendacious, untrustworthy, fraudulent, meretricious, deceptive, deceitful, treacherous, Colloq phoney or US also phony: The testimony of this witness is completely false. 3 counterfeit, imitation, simulated, sham, forged, fraudulent, fake, artificial, synthetic, manufactured, unnatural, spurious, bogus, ersatz, factitious, mock, pseudo, Colloq phoney or US also phony: Your false teeth look almost real. 4 sham, feigned, affected, insincere, faked, manufactured, counterfeit(ed): Don't shed any false tears over me when I'm gone. 5 illogical, fallacious, unsound, invalid, flawed, faulty: That conclusion could come only from false reasoning.

falsehood n. lie, fib, prevarication, untruth, fabrication, misstatement, fiction, (fairy) tale, story, distortion, Colloq cock-and-bull story, Slang Brit load of codswallop: That was a complete falsehood about the goings-on in the attic, wasn't it?

falsify v. fake, alter, distort, misstate, misrepresent, twist, Colloq fudge, trump up, Brit cook: The tax inspector found that the accounts had been falsified.

falsity n. untruthfulness, mendacity, mendaciousness, fraudulence, deceptiveness, deceit, deceitfulness, dishonesty, spuriousness, speciousness, casuistry, hypocrisy, insincerity, falseness: The prosecution was unable to prove the falsity of her statement.

fame n. renown, repute, reputation, celebrity, illustriousness, superiority, pre-eminence, stardom, prominence, eminence, glory, name, notoriety, acclaim: Randolph's fame has spread far and wide.

familiar adj. 1 well-known, common, commonplace, everyday, ordinary, current: That's a familiar melody. 2 frequent, usual, customary, habitual, routine, traditional: He strolled along his familiar route through the trees. 3 friendly, affable, close, intimate, sociable, social, free, free and easy, relaxed;

over-friendly, overfree, overfamiliar, bold, forward, insolent, impudent, presumptuous, presuming, disrespectful, unreserved, unrestrained; informal, casual, cordial, unceremonious; Colloq chummy, Slang US and Canadian buddy-buddy, palsy-walsy: She began to get entirely too familiar. 4 familiar with. aware or conscious or cognizant of, knowledgeable about or of or in, conversant or acquainted with, no stranger to, on speaking terms with, up on or in, (well-)versed in, informed of or about, privy to, in the know about, au courant, au fait: Are you familiar with the latest theories in particle physics?

familiarity

n. 1 knowledge, acquaintance(ship), grasp, understanding, comprehension, cognizance, awareness, conversance, experience: I have no familiarity at all with particle physics. 2 friendliness, affability, sociability, neighbourliness, fellowship, intimacy, intimateness, closeness, openness, naturalness, ease, informality, unceremoniousness: He prided himself on his familiarity with celebrities. 3 boldness, presumptuousness, overfamiliarity, presumption, impudence, insolence, impertinence, impropriety: He put his arm round her waist with offensive familiarity.

familiarize

v. Usually, familiarize with. accustom (to), make familiar or acquaint (with), initiate (in), inform (about or on), enlighten (about or as to), teach (about), educate or instruct or tutor (in): I am trying to familiarize myself with the music of John Cage.

family   n. 1 (kith and) kin, kinsmen, kindred, kinsfolk or US and Canadian kinfolk, next of kin, relatives, relations, household, people, one's own flesh and blood, one's nearest and dearest, m‚nage, Colloq folks: We usually spend the holidays with my family. 2 children, offspring, progeny, issue, brood, Colloq kids: Large families were much more common in the 19th century. 3 ancestors, forebears, forefathers, progenitors; ancestry, parentage, descent, extraction, derivation, lineage, pedigree, genealogy, family tree, house, line, bloodline, dynasty; blood, stock, strain: He came from an old family of German bankers. 4 group, set, division, subdivision, classification, type, kind, class, genre, order, species, genus: English belongs to the Indo-European family of languages.

famine n. starvation; shortage, dearth, scarcity, deficiency, paucity, exiguity, barrenness, lack: In days of abundance, no one should die of famine.

famished adj. starving, starved, voracious, ravenous, ravening, craving, hungry: The survivors were famished after a fortnight in the lifeboat.

famous adj. renowned, celebrated, popular, famed, well-known, noted, eminent, pre-eminent, conspicuous, prominent, illustrious, notable, acclaimed, venerable, legendary, distinguished, praiseworthy, honoured, lionized: A famous architect has been invited to address the convention.

famously adv. excellently, (very) well, superbly, marvellously, splendidly, capitally, spectacularly, superlatively: The prince and I get on famously.

fan n. admirer, enthusiast, adherent, devotee, aficionado, follower, supporter, lover, zealot, Colloq buff, fiend, hound, bug, addict, nut, US booster, Slang junkie, freak, groupie: Avid fans of Ascot United, we go to all the matches.

fanatic n. maniac, extremist, zealot, Colloq fiend, nut, Slang freak: Religious fanatics killed 'heathens' or 'infidels' by the thousand.

fanatical adj. fanatic, extreme, distracted, maniacal, mad, rabid, zealous, frenzied, feverish, burning, frantic, frenetic, obsessive, fervent, compulsive, monomaniacal, fervid, perfervid, passionate, enthusiastic, agog, immoderate, excessive: The entire family are fanatical in their fundamentalism.

fanaticism

n. 1 devotion, dedication, devotedness; infatuation, enthusiasm, fervour, zeal, obsessiveness, franticness, frenzy, hysteria: Her fanaticism for rock musicians is getting a bit out of hand. 2 monomania, single-mindedness, mania, madness, extremism, intolerance, bigotry, bias, partiality, prejudice, narrow-mindedness, close-mindedness: Some religious sects are characterized by virulent fanaticism.

fancied adj. imaginary, unreal, fanciful, imagined, illusory, make-believe, mythical, fairy-tale: They support their king in the pursuit of his fancied rights.

fanciful adj. 1 whimsical, capricious, impulsive, inconstant, fickle, changeable, variable: Those graffiti are products of a fanciful mind. 2 extravagant, chimerical, fantastic, fabulous, mythical, fairy-tale, imaginative, fancied, make-believe, unreal, illusory, imagined, visionary, imaginary: Some of the more fanciful ideas of science fiction have become realities. 3 curious, odd, peculiar, bizarre, unusual, original: The chalice was decorated with fanciful curlicues.

fancy adj. 1 ornate, decorative, decorated, ornamental, ornamented, elaborate, embellished, embroidered, fanciful, extravagant, rococo, baroque, gingerbread, Byzantine, complicated, intricate, complex: The modern trend has been away from fancy architecture. 2 illusory, capricious, fanciful, extravagant, fantastic, far-fetched, delusive, whimsical, visionary, unrealistic, grandiose: He has some fancy ideas about building an undersea city. 3 de luxe, luxury, luxurious, choice, select, prime, special, elegant, superior, quality, high-class; posh: They stock only fancy fruits and vegetables. She has a fancy suite at the Cardigan Hotel. 4 high, exorbitant, inflated, outrageous: One has to pay very fancy prices for haute couture.

--n. 5 imagination, creation, conception, inventiveness, creativeness, creativity: These chimeras are entirely a product of his fancy. 6 imagination, fantasy, hallucination, delusion, illusion, unreality, make-believe, dream, day-dream, pipedream, mirage, phantasm, phantom, figment (of the imagination), impression: Our plans for the future must be based on fact, not fancy. 7 liking, inclination, fondness, taste, penchant, attraction, preference, partiality, predilection, yearning, craving, hankering, wish, desire, longing: Miss Crow's fancy for younger men often causes her some embarrassment. 8 idea, whim, caprice, whimsy, urge, impulse, notion, vagary, quirk, crotchet, peculiarity: His fancy today is that he invented electricity.

--v. 9 imagine, conceive, picture, visualize, envisage, think or make up, conjure up, US envision, Colloq dream up: He fancies himself on a big yacht in the Mediterranean. 10 think, imagine, understand, believe, suspect, guess, conjecture, presume, surmise, assume, take it, suppose, infer, reckon: From his costume I fancy he must be Superman. Fancy Kim winning the Nobel prize! 11 like, be attracted to, take (a liking) to, desire, want, crave, long or pine for, have a yen or craving for, have an eye for, wish for, hunger for, favour, prefer, lust after: Terry has always fancied tall women. I wouldn't fancy being 40 feet up a swaying ladder like that.

fanfare   n. 1 flourish, fanfaron, fanfaronade, (trumpet-)blast or blare: Following a loud fanfare, the toreador strutted into the ring. 2 hullabaloo, hubbub, brouhaha, commotion, stir, ado, show, fuss, Colloq to-do, ballyhoo: Despite the enormous fanfare, the film was a failure.

fantasize v. dream, imagine, day-dream, muse, mull (over), build castles in the air or in Spain, speculate, envisage, star-gaze; hallucinate, US envision: She often fantasized about the kind of man she would marry.

fantastic adj. 1 fanciful, strange, weird, peculiar, odd, eccentric, queer, bizarre, quaint, outlandish, exotic, extravagant, grotesque, nightmarish, alien, remarkable: She wore the most fantastic costume to the fancy-dress ball. 2 imaginary, illusory, illusive, unreal, visionary, fanciful, unrealistic, imagined, irrational: His books are inhabited by fantastic creatures. 3 unbelievable, incredible, preposterous, extraordinary, implausible, absurd, unlikely: At 85, he made the fantastic decision to enter the marathon. 4 marvellous, spectacular, splendid, wonderful, tremendous, overwhelming, Colloq great, fabulous, terrific: The Picasso exhibition is simply fantastic.

fantasy   n. 1 imagination, fancy, creativity, inventiveness, creativity, originality: We encourage the children to give free rein to their fantasy. 2 vision, hallucination, illusion, mirage, delusion, chimera, dream, day-dream, (flight of) fancy, pipedream: Her fantasy is to become prime minister. 3 make-believe, invention, cabrication, fiction, masquerade, fable, concoction, pretence: His story about being an orphan is pure fantasy.

far   adv. 1 afar, far-away or -off, a good or great or long way or distance off or away: We caught sight of a sail far to the south. 2 (very) much, considerably, decidedly, incomparably: She is a far better swimmer than George. 3 by far. (very) much, considerably, decidedly, incomparably, (im)measurably, by a long shot, far and away, clearly, plainly, obviously, doubtless(ly), indubitably, undoubtedly, definitely, beyond (the shadow of a) doubt, without a doubt, Colloq Brit by a long chalk: She's a better swimmer than George by far. He is by far the wealthiest person I know. 4 far and wide. everywhere, near and far or far and near, extensively, widely, high and low; here, there, and everywhere: We searched far and wide to find these specimens. 5 far gone. a beyond or past help, advanced, deteriorated, worn out, dilapidated, near the end: That shirt is too far gone to send to the laundry. My house is so far gone it's beyond repair. b drunk, besotted, Slang loaded, pissed, paralytic, paralysed: He's too far gone to walk. 6 go far. a progress, advance, succeed, go places, get ahead, rise (in the world), make a name for oneself, become successful, set the world on fire, Brit set the Thames on fire, US cut a swath: He is a very bright youngster and I'm sure he will go far in whatever profession he chooses. b help, aid, contribute, play a part: The new law will go far towards inhibiting child abuse. 7 go too far. go overboard or over the top, not know when to stop, go to extremes; exceed, overdo, overstep, transcend, go beyond: Ambition is one thing, but he went too far when he tried to get his boss's job. 8 so far. a thus far, (up) to or till or until now or the present or this point, to date, to this point in time: So far, we have been able to keep up with the mortgage payments. b to a certain extent or limit or point: She said she would go just so far and no further.

--adj. 9 (more) remote or distant, far-away, far-off; extreme, further, farther, farthest: She claimed the ability to see into the far future. He kicked the ball to the far end of the field.

far-away adj. 1 faraway, distant, remote, far-off, outlying, far-flung: People came from far-away places as news of the miracle spread. 2 faraway, dreamy, detached, absent, absent-minded, abstracted: When you have that far-away expression, I know you don't hear a word I say.

farcical adj. ludicrous, laughable, risible, funny, nonsensical, ridiculous, silly, preposterous, absurd, foolish; comical, humorous, droll, amusing: His farcical attempts at surfing fully dressed had us in hysterics.

fare n. 1 passenger, traveller: The taxi-driver deposited his fare at the hotel. 2 charge, price, cost: What is the fare from Oxford to London? 3 food, diet, victuals, meals, viands, eatables, provisions: Prison fare consisted of bread and water.

--v. 4 do, make one's way, manage, get on or along, make out, survive: The children didn't fare very well on their own.

farewell n. 1 adieu, goodbye: We said our farewells and left. 2 departure, leave-taking, cong,, parting, Colloq send-off: I want to avoid a tearful farewell.

--interjection. 3 Adieu!, Goodbye!, So long!, Godspeed!, Adios!, Hasta luego!, Hasta la vista!, Auf Wiedersehen!, Ciao!, Sayonara!, Aloha!, Vaya con Dios!, Colloq Brit God bless!, Old-fashioned Toodle-oo!, Pip! Pip!, Ta-ta!, US old-fashioned See you later (alligator)!, Don't take any wooden nickels!: I said farewell and we went our separate ways.

far-fetched
adj. strained, stretched, improbable, implausible, unlikely, doubtful, dubious, questionable, forced, unconvincing, unrealistic, fantastic, preposterous, hard to believe, unbelievable, incredible, Colloq hard to swallow, fishy: They told some far-fetched tale about being robbed by a gang of midgets.

farm n. 1 farmstead, farmhouse, grange, homestead, holding; land, farmland, acreage, arable; Brit steading, smallholding, allotment, Scots farm-toun, croft: My grandfather owns a farm in Yorkshire. 2 buy the farm. die, be killed: A MIG caught Johnson and he bought the farm.

--v. 3 cultivate, work the land, till the soil: His family has been farming this land for centuries. 4 farm out. contract, subcontract, lease, delegate, let (out): They cut staff and now farm out much of the work.

farmer n. husbandman, agriculturist, agronomist, yeoman, Brit smallholder, US dialect granger: The farmers here were hard hit by the drought.

farming n. agriculture, agronomy, husbandry, agribusiness, cultivation: Less than 8,000 years ago man turned from hunting and gathering to farming.

far-sighted

adj. 1 far-seeing, foresighted, prescient, provident, prudent, shrewd, perceptive, discerning, insightful, wise, sagacious, acute, sharp, astute, sensible, imaginative: The committee drew up a far-sighted plan for the redevelopment of the town centre. 2 long-sighted, hyperopic or hypermetropic, presbyopic: I'm far-sighted, so I wear glasses only for reading.

fascinate v. bewitch, enchant, cast a spell on or over, ensorcell, spellbind, hold spellbound, put or have under a spell, charm, captivate, intrigue, beguile, hypnotize, mesmerize, transfix, entrance, engross, enthral, enrapture, absorb, allure, attract: Desmond is utterly fascinated by Elizabeth.

fascination

n. enchantment, sorcery, magic, attractiveness, attraction, draw, pull, (animal) magnetism, charm, allure, captivation, influence, witchcraft, entrancement: Blondes always held a strange fascination for him.

fashion n. 1 style, mode, vogue, trend, look, taste: That year there was a fashion for stiletto heels. 2 the fad, mania, the craze, the rage, the latest (thing), dernier cri, Colloq Brit the go: He remembers when upswept hair-dos were the fashion. 3 manner, mode, way, approach, attitude: I'll always be true to you, darling, in my fashion. 4 in fashion. See fashionable, below.

--v. 5 make, model, style, shape, form, frame, mould, create, construct, forge, work, manufacture: She fashions the most beautiful vases out of shapeless lumps of clay.

fashionable

adj. in fashion, chic, … la mode, modish, stylish, smart, in vogue, up to the minute, up to date, Colloq trendy, in, with it, Colloq Brit all the go: The couturiers insist that black will be fashionable this year.

fast° adj. 1 quick, swift, fleet, speedy, brisk; brief, hurried, hasty, high-speed, accelerated, expeditious, rapid, express: She is very fast on her feet. We need a fast turn-round on this job. 2 loose, profligate, wild, extravagant, dissipated, intemperate, irresponsible, sybaritic, self-indulgent, dissolute, unrestrained, indecorous, rakish, licentious, promiscuous, immoral, wanton, lecherous, lustful: They led quite a fast life till their divorce. 3 firm, fastened, secure(d), fixed, tied, bound, connected, attached: The boat was fast to the pier. 4 firm, fixed, settled, stable, solid, immovable, unshakable or unshakeable, tight: The sword was fast in the stone. 5 firm, stable, steadfast, staunch, unwavering, constant, lasting, close, loyal, devoted, faithful, lasting, permanent: We maintained a fast friendship over the years.

--adv. 6 quickly, swiftly, rapidly, speedily, briskly, presto, hastily, hurriedly, with all speed or haste, expeditiously, apace, post-haste, like a flash, in the blink of an eye, in a wink, before you can say 'Jack Robinson', in no time (at all), Colloq like a bat out of hell, like a shot, p.d.q. (='pretty damned quick'), Brit like the clappers (of hell), US and Canadian quick like a bunny or rabbit, lickety-split: Don't talk so fast. He ran out of there very fast. I'll be back very fast. 7 firmly, fixedly, immovably, solidly, unshakeably or unshakably, tightly, securely, soundly: The rope held fast. He is fast asleep. 8 closely, close to, immediately, near, (close) on, right: Fast on the heels of the fugitive came the police. 9 loosely, wildly, recklessly, intemperately, irresponsibly, fecklessly, extravagantly, intemperately, sybaritically, self-indulgently, dissolutely, unrestrainedly, indecorously, rakishly, licentiously, promiscuously, immorally, wantonly, lecherously, lustfully: He's been living fast since inheriting that fortune.

fastý v. 1 abstain, go hungry, deny oneself, diet, starve (oneself): Do you fast during Lent?

--n. 2 abstention, abstinence, fasting, self-denial, diet; hunger strike: She went on a two-week fast.

fasten v. 1 attach, tie, bind, bond, stick, affix, anchor, fix, lock, hook (up), secure, join, connect, link, fuse, cement, clamp: Fasten your seat belts. The mussels fasten themselves by their byssi to underwater piles. 2 fix, rivet, focus, concentrate, direct, aim, point: He fastened his gaze on Kitty. She fastened her attention on the ceiling.

fastening n. fastener, catch, clasp, latch, lock, tie, bond: Can you see what kind of fastening is holding the cover?

fastidious
adj. squeamish, delicate, over-nice, fussy, meticulous, finicky, finical, pernickety or US also persnickety, particular, difficult, critical, hypercritical, supercritical, over-precise, punctilious, Colloq nit-picking, picky: The Prioress was too fastidious to allow a morsel drop from her lip.

fat adj. 1 obese, stout, overweight, heavy, plump, rotund, corpulent, portly, well-fed, chubby, podgy or chiefly US pudgy, roly-poly, tubby, bulky, fleshy, paunchy, pot-bellied, overfed, flabby, elephantine, Colloq broad in the beam, beamy, beefy, Slang US five-by-five: A fat man squeezed in beside me. 2 oily, oleaginous, unctuous, greasy, fatty, pinguid, sebaceous, adipose: His complexion is bad because he eats too much fat food. 3 rich, wealthy, prosperous, affluent, well-to-do, well off, Colloq well-heeled, loaded: They grew fat on their profits from the black market. 4 profitable, lucrative, fruitful, remunerative, Slang cushy: He has a fat job as a purchasing agent for the government.

--n. 5 obesity, corpulence, stoutness, overweight, heaviness, plumpness, rotundity, portliness, chubbiness, podginess or chiefly US pudginess, tubbiness, fleshiness, paunchiness, flabbiness: He leans a little towards fat because of lack of exercise. 6 riches, wealth, prosperity, fertility, yield, abundance, plenty, plenteousness: He's living off the fat of the land.

fatal adj. 1 fateful, deadly, murderous, lethal, mortal, toxic, terminal, final; baneful, poisonous: She drank the fatal potion without a word. Who dealt the fatal blow? 2 destructive, fateful, ruinous, calamitous, dreadful, disastrous, devastating, cataclysmic, catastrophic, harmful, mischievous, damaging: Discovery by the police would prove fatal to our plan. 3 fateful, fated, destined, predestined, decreed, ordained, foreordained, preordained, predetermined, inevitable, unavoidable, necessary, essential, inescapable, ineluctable: The events fell into their fatal sequence.

fatality n. 1 catastrophe, disaster, calamity, cataclysm: The eruption of Vesuvius was a relatively recent fatality. 2 death, casualty: Traffic fatalities are on the increase.

fate n. 1 fortune, lot, luck, chance, life, destiny, God's will, providence, doom, karma, kismet, toss or throw of the dice, Colloq US and Canadian the breaks, the way the cookie crumbles, the way the ball bounces: Fate has brought us together. Our meeting this way was just fate. 2 doom, destruction, downfall, undoing, ruin, disaster, collapse, death, nemesis, end, finish: The defenders of Masada met their fate bravely. 3 end, outcome, future, destination, disposition: There was no trace of the fate of the explorers. What is to be the fate of this obsolete equipment?

fated adj. 1 destined, predestined, predetermined, decreed, doomed, fateful, ordained, foreordained, preordained, decided: The fated day of my trial arrived. 2 sure, certain, doomed, damned, cursed: Was I fated to spend the rest of my life in this fetid dungeon? 3 fatal, fateful, unavoidable, inescapable, inevitable, ineluctable: Their fated punishment was to bail out the sea using sieves.

fateful adj. 1 significant, momentous, ominous, major, consequential, important, critical, crucial, decisive, weighty, portentous, earth-shaking, pivotal: The minister is faced with having to make a fateful decision. 2 deadly, lethal, fatal, destructive, ruinous, disastrous, catastrophic, cataclysmic: Failure to preserve the environment could have fateful consequences.

father n. 1 sire, paterfamilias, Colloq dad, daddy, pa, papa, pop, old man, old boy, Brit governor, pater: His father is a chemist. 2 forebear, ancestor, forefather, progenitor, primogenitor: The father of the dynasty fought at Hastings. 3 creator, founder, originator, inventor, author, architect, framer, initiator: He regards Lavoisier as the father of modern chemistry. 4 priest, confessor, cur,, abb,, minister, pastor, shepherd, parson, clergyman, chaplain, Colloq padre, Military slang sky pilot: We should see the Father about the funeral service.

--v. 5 sire, beget, get, engender, procreate, generate: He had fathered more than forty children in his harem. 6 originate, establish, found, invent, author, frame, initiate, institute, create: Galileo fathered modern astronomy by inventing the telescope.

fatherland
n. motherland, native land, mother country, homeland, (old) country, birthplace: They return to their fatherland for an annual visit.

fatherly adj. paternal, kindly, kind, warm, friendly, affectionate, protective, amiable, benevolent, well-meaning, benign, caring, sympathetic, indulgent, understanding; parental: My nephew used to come to me for fatherly advice.

fathom v. probe, sound, plumb, penetrate, search (out), investigate, measure, gauge, determine, ascertain, work out, get to the bottom of, delve into, understand, grasp, divine: I never quite fathomed the purpose of this device.

fatigue n. 1 weariness, tiredness, weakness, exhaustion, lassitude, listlessness, lethargy, languor, sluggishness, enervation: She kept on tending the wounded till fatigue finally overcame her.

--v. 2 weary, tire, weaken, exhaust, drain, enervate, Colloq fag (out): My morning's work had fatigued me.

fatigued adj. weary, wearied, tired, overtired, dead tired, weak, weakened, exhausted, listless, lethargic, languorous, sluggish, enervated, strained, wasted, Colloq whacked (out), knocked out, dead, beat, dead-beat, all in, Brit knackered, jiggered, buggered, US and Canadian pooped, bushed: The firemen were fatigued after being on duty round the clock.

fatness n. obesity, stoutness, corpulence, embonpoint, portliness, plumpness, chubbiness, rotundity, podginess or chiefly US pudginess: His fatness is owing to a glandular condition, not overeating.

fault n. 1 imperfection, flaw, defect, blemish, deficiency, shortcoming, failing, weakness; frailty, foible, peccadillo: The fault lies in this circuit. Using filthy language is only one of his faults. 2 mistake, error, blunder, lapse, failure, offence, oversight, slip(-up), indiscretion, gaffe, gaucherie, faux pas, Slang boner, howler, goof, boo-boo, Brit boob: People should be responsible for their faults. There are many faults in this manuscript. 3 responsibility, liability, culpability; blame, accountability, answerability: It wasn't my fault that the tree fell down. The fault lies with you, James. 4 sin, transgression, trespass, misdeed, offence, misdemeanour, vice, indiscretion, misconduct, misbehaviour: He will confess his faults to anyone who will listen. 5 at fault. to blame, blameable, blameworthy, in the wrong, responsible, answerable, accountable, liable, culpable, guilty: You were at fault for failing to report the crime. 6 find fault. criticize, censure, take exception (to), carp (at), cavil (at), pick at, pick on, pick apart, pick holes in, niggle, fuss, Colloq nit-pick, knock: She constantly finds fault with everything I do. 7 to a fault. excessively, extremely, to an extreme, in the extreme, unreasonably, exceedingly, unduly, disproportionately, immoderately, irrationally, US overly: She is modest to a fault.

--v. 8 find fault with, censure, blame, criticize, call to account, impugn, call into question, hold (someone) responsible or accountable or to blame, lay at (someone's) door, accuse: You cannot be faulted for not knowing the fuel tank was empty.

fault-finding
n. 1 criticism, censure, carping, cavilling, captiousness, hypercriticism, quibbling, fussiness, hair-splitting, pettifogging, Colloq nit-picking, pickiness: Why continue to put up with the foreman's fault-finding?

--adj. 2 critical, censorious, carping, cavilling, captious, hypercritical, fussy, hair-splitting, pettifogging, niggling, contentious, querulous, quibbling, Colloq nit-picking, picky: She could no longer abide his fault-finding attitude.

faultless adj. perfect, flawless, immaculate, ideal, exemplary, correct, accurate, foolproof, irreproachable, unimpeachable, Colloq Brit bang on, spot on: Their performance was faultless.

faulty adj. defective, unsound, imperfect, flawed, impaired, out of order, malfunctioning, broken, bad; damaged; Slang on the blink, Chiefly US on the fritz: The carburettor is faulty.

favour n. 1 good will, approval, support, approbation: Father looked with favour on my marriage to Leslie. 2 courtesy, good or kind deed, good turn, kindness, gesture, beau geste; service: As a favour, I'll walk your dog while you're away. 3 favouritism, partiality, prejudice, bias, preference, patronage: They show favour in repeatedly giving the contract to the same company. 4 grace, esteem, consideration, view, regard, opinion, account, (good or bad) books; disposition, taste, predisposition: How does Rochester stand in the favour of the king? 5 in favour (of). for, pro, on the side of, in support (of), at the back of, backing, behind, on or US and Canadian in behalf (of), in back of: Please vote in favour of the resolution. Are you in favour or against?

--v. 6 approve, prefer, like, have a liking or preference for, be partial to, advocate, espouse, back, endorse, support, champion, recommend, incline to or towards, side with, take the side or part of, go for, opt for, fancy, select, choose, elect, single out, sponsor, adopt, go in for: Which candidate do you favour? 7 pamper, coddle, baby, protect, indulge, be partial to: Notice how Billie favours his left leg when walking? 8 advance, forward, promote, facilitate, expedite, help, benefit, assist, aid, encourage, accommodate, smile upon: The warm, moist climate favours the growth of mould. 9 resemble, look like, take after: Little Jimmy favours his father, I think.

favourable
adj. 1 advantageous, promising, auspicious, fair, beneficial, suitable, fitting, appropriate, encouraging, facilitative, helpful, helping, supportive, supporting, convenient, useful, opportune, propitious, accommodating, accommodative; facultative: A favourable breeze sent our craft towards Cyprus. 2 good, promising, positive, encouraging, reassuring, affirmative, well-disposed, sympathetic; commendatory, laudatory, enthusiastic, eager, ardent, zealous: They concluded a very favourable deal to supply the army with boots. My latest book received favourable reviews.

favourably
adv. 1 graciously, indulgently, sympathetically, genially, positively, agreeably, enthusiastically, with favour: They

reacted favourably to my suggestion. 2 advantageously, affirmatively, positively, in favourable terms: Your application has been considered favourably.

favoured adj. 1 preferred, chosen, choice, selected, popular, favourite, pet: The favoured explanation is that he is the boss's son. 2 advantaged, privileged, blessed, prosperous, wealthy, rich, affluent, well off: She is one of the favoured few who can afford to travel.

favourite n. 1 choice, pick, preference, preferred, esteemed, darling, pet, ideal, apple of (someone's) eye, Colloq Brit blue-eyed boy or girl, flavour of the month, US white-haired or white-headed boy or girl, fair-haired boy or girl: Raising interest rates doesn't exactly make the chancellor everyone's favourite.

--adj. 2 beloved, chosen, picked, selected, preferred, best-liked, most-liked, favoured, choice, pet, ideal: Which is your favourite flavour?

favouritism

n. partiality, bias, predisposition, prepossession, prejudice, bent, partisanship, nepotism, preferment; preference, leaning, inclination, proclivity: He openly admits to favouritism in selecting employees.

6.2 fear...

=-

fear n. 1 dread, terror, fright, panic, horror, alarm, trepidation, apprehension, fearfulness, apprehensiveness, dismay, consternation, hesitation, qualms, diffidence, timidity, cravenness, cowardice, second thoughts: His fear of going into the jungle alone is understandable. 2 awe, respect, reverence, veneration: That'll put the fear of God into him! 3 horror, spectre, nightmare, bogey or bogy, phobia, bugbear, bˆte noire, misgiving(s), foreboding(s): When they came to break the news, her worst fears were realized. 4 solicitude, anxiety, angst, foreboding(s), distress, misgiving(s), concern, apprehension, worry, uneasiness, unease: Fear for her safety is shared by all of us.

--v. 5 be afraid or scared or fearful or frightened (of), dread, quail or tremble or quake at, shudder at, shrink from, quiver: What man cannot understand he often fears. 6 revere, respect, venerate, be or stand in awe of: If you fear the Lord as I do, you won't take his name in vain. 7 expect, anticipate, imagine, suspect, foresee: I fear we are too late for dinner.

fearful adj. 1 afraid, scared, frightened, terrified, alarmed, panic-stricken, terror-stricken: Of all disasters, I am most fearful of fire. 2 hesitant, timid, timorous, shy, diffident, unwilling, intimidated, jumpy, nervous, edgy, panicky, anxious, apprehensive, cowardly, pusillanimous, Colloq yellow, jittery: Why is she so fearful of meeting her prospective in-laws? 3 awful, dire, dreadful, frightful, frightening, terrifying, terrible, appalling, ghastly, atrocious, horrible, horrifying, horrendous, horrific, hideous, gruesome, grisly, grim, baleful, monstrous, unspeakable, loathsome, heinous, repugnant, repulsive, revolting, disgusting, nauseating, nauseous: The fearful monster blocked our only way out.

fearfully adv. 1 hesitantly, timidly, timorously, shyly, diffidently, unwillingly, nervously, edgily, anxiously, apprehensively: Fearfully, she approached the altar. 2 very, awfully, terribly, extremely, exceedingly, frightfully, tremendously: It was fearfully considerate of you to come.

fearless adj. brave, bold, intrepid, valorous, dauntless, courageous, valiant, plucky, daring, audacious, heroic, venturesome, gallant, chivalrous: These fearless commandos cared nothing for their personal safety.

fearsome adj. dreadful, awesome, appalling, formidable, daunting, frightening, frightful, awe-inspiring, menacing, terrible, terrifying, intimidating: Last week's typhoon was the most fearsome storm of the century.

feasibility
n. practicability, workability, applicability, viability, practicality: The feasibility of the scheme has yet to be assessed.

feasible adj. practicable, workable, doable, applicable, viable, practical, possible, realizable, achievable, attainable, sensible, usable, realistic: The world needs a feasible method for disposing of nuclear waste.

feast   n. 1 banquet, (lavish) dinner, (sumptuous) repast, (Lucullan or Epicurean) treat, Colloq spread, Brit beanfeast; Slang blow-out, Brit beano: Dinner at Patrick's is no mere meal - it is a feast. 2 observance, celebration, rite, ritual, solemnization, commemoration, memorialization, anniversary, birthday, jubilee, feast-day, festival, fˆte, holy day, holiday, red-letter day, occasion, event, gala: Church calendars list both movable and immovable feasts. 3 treat, delight, pleasure, gratification: Seeing you again was a feast for the eyes.

--v. 4 dine, wine (and dine), fare well or sumptuously, (over)indulge, gorge (oneself), gormandize, eat one's fill: We feasted on roast turkey with all the trimmings. 5 entertain, feed, wine and dine, treat, regale: Visitors to Arthur's court were feasted with the finest viands available. 6 delight, gratify, please, cheer, gladden: Ali Baba feasted his eyes on the vast treasure in the cave.

feat   n. exploit, deed, act, attainment, achievement, accomplishment, tour de force: Persuading your wife to let you go fishing was quite a feat.

feature   n. 1 characteristic, attribute, trait, mark, hallmark, earmark, property, character, quality, aspect, facet, peculiarity, quirk, idiosyncrasy: What are the identifying features of traditional Chinese architecture? 2 (main) attraction, draw, special attraction, high point or spot, best or memorable part; main film; US and Canadian drawing card; column, piece, article, item: The feature of the show was the appearance of Gracie Fields. He writes the gardening feature for a Sunday newspaper. 3 features. face, visage, physiognomy, countenance, looks, Slang mug, kisser, chips and plaice: Her features twisted into a frown.

--v. 4 present, promote, publicize, advertise, highlight, spotlight, put into the limelight, star, stress, emphasize, call attention to, play up, puff up, Colloq headline, hype: He was featured in many films. 5 be, act, perform, take or have a role or part, participate, be involved or drawn in: Novels feature prominently in our publishing programme.

federation

n. combination, confederacy, confederation, amalgamation, coalition, league, alliance, union, association, Bund, society: The central government consists of a federation of states.

fee n. 1 charge, price, cost, fare, bill, tariff, toll, Colloq damage(s): The membership fee is œ25. 2 pay, payment, emolument, compensation, recompense, honorarium, remuneration, rate, wage(s), stipend, salary: What is your fee per hour for proofreading?

feeble adj. 1 weak, infirm, frail, puny, slight, feckless; debilitated, enervated, decrepit, enfeebled, exhausted, weakened; effete, delicate, fragile, powerless, impotent, impuissant, languid, spiritless, sickly, ailing, unsound, faint, dizzy; Colloq woozy, Brit wonky: The survivors were suffering from exposure and too feeble to walk. 2 flimsy, weak, ineffectual, ineffective, namby-pamby, half-baked, lame, unconvincing, shoddy, thin, insubstantial, poor, unsatisfactory, insufficient, inadequate, unavailing, meagre, paltry, insignificant, Colloq wishy-washy, Brit wet: She gave her usual feeble excuse for being late. 3 weak, obscure, dim, imperceptible, faint, distant, indistinct, unclear: He could see little in the feeble light from the one candle. We heard a feeble cry from under the rubble.

feeble-minded

adj. stupid, dull(-witted), witless, moronic, idiotic, imbecilic, simple, slow (on the uptake), slow-witted, weak-minded, dim-witted, addle-pated, halfwitted, deficient, subnormal, mentally defective, retarded, attocerebral, Brit ESN (='educationally subnormal'), Colloq dumb, thick, soft in the head, boneheaded, empty-headed, vacant, Brit gormless, US exceptional: Why do you spend so much time with that feeble-minded twit?

feed v. 1 provision, cater or provide (for), victual, purvey, provender, supply, maintain, nurture, nourish, board, support, sustain, wine and dine: Is there enough to feed everyone? 2 eat, devour, graze, pasture: Cattle feed most of the day. 3 feed on or upon. subsist or survive or depend or thrive on or upon, be nourished or gratified or supported by: Swindlers feed on others' gullibility.

--n. 4 fodder, forage, pasturage, silage, food, provender: What kind of feed are you giving the sheep?

feel v. 1 touch, see, note, sense, perceive, experience, determine; handle, manipulate, finger: Feel how rough the skin is at this spot. 2 stroke, caress, pet, fondle: I like to feel a bare carpet with my toes. 3 sense, be conscious of, perceive, be aware or sensible of, experience: I could feel the heat of the fire across the room. 4 sense, believe, think, perceive, judge, consider, deem, know, discern, intuit, Colloq get or have the impression, have a hunch, guess, have a (funny) feeling, feel in one's bones: I feel I have outstayed my welcome. 5 undergo, sense, suffer, bear, endure, withstand, stand, abide, brook, tolerate, go through: Let the other team feel the agony of defeat for a change. 6 seem, appear, strike one, give the impression, have a or the feeling: It felt as if a great weight has been lifted from me. It feels like old times. That feels silky. 7 seem to be, be, regard or characterize oneself as, take oneself to be: I feel certain that we've met before. I felt a perfect fool. 8 feel for. sympathize or empathize with, commiserate with, bleed for, be sorry for, pity, have compassion for: She feels for all mothers whose sons have died. 9 feel like. incline or lean to or towards, prefer, fancy, want, desire, crave: I feel like a cup of hot tea.

--n. 10 texture, surface, sensation, touch, finish: This wood has the feel of satin. 11 feeling, air, atmosphere, climate, ambience, sense, note, tone, quality: It's so cosy here - it has the feel of home.

feeler n. 1 antenna, tentacle, palp, sensor: Those moths have long, feathery feelers. 2 overture, hint, suggestion, foretaste, probe, tester, sensor: The questionnaire is a feeler put out to test public opinion.

feeling n. 1 (sense of) touch, sensitivity, sense, perception, sensation, sensibility: I had no feeling in my left side. 2 intuition, idea, notion, inkling, suspicion, belief, hunch, theory, sense; premonition, hint, presentiment, sense of foreboding, sensation, impression, opinion, view; instinct, consciousness, awareness: I have a feeling you're fooling. Do you ever have the feeling of being watched? 3 regard, sympathy, empathy, identification, compassion, tenderness, appreciation, concern, understanding, sensitivity, sensibility: He has a genuine feeling for animals. 4 ardour, warmth, passion, fervency, fervour, ardency, intensity, heat, sentiment, emotion, vehemence: She said she loved me with so much feeling that I thought she meant it. 5 feelings. emotions, sensitivity, sympathies, sensibilities, susceptibilities: She hurt my feelings. 6 feel, mood, atmosphere, climate, sense, air, ambience or ambiance: There is a feeling of impending doom about this place.

--adj. 7 sentient, sensitive, tender, tender-hearted, compassionate, sympathetic: Their behaviour did the soldiers honour as feeling men.

feint n. distraction, mock attack, bluff, dodge, manoeuvre, false move, pretence, ruse, ploy, subterfuge, deception, tactic, stratagem, gambit, artifice: The attack on the flanks is merely a feint - the main thrust will be at the centre.

fell v. cut or knock or strike down, floor, prostrate, level, hew (down), flatten, demolish, mow (down); kill: He felled his opponent with one blow. All the trees in this area must be felled.

fellow n. 1 man, boy, person, individual, gentleman, one, Colloq guy, chap, customer, kid, Brit bloke, Slang geezer, gink, US old-fashioned gazabo: There was a fellow here asking for you today. 2 colleague, associate, comrade, companion, ally, peer, compeer: He is going to meet some of his fellows at the club. 3 mate, match, counterpart, partner, complement, concomitant, accessory: I lost one glove last week and now have lost its fellow. 4 boyfriend, man, sweetheart, love, young man; lover, paramour, Formal suitor, Old-fashioned beau, Archaic swain, Slang guy: Bailey has been Sue's fellow for years.

--adj. 5 associate(d), affiliate(d), allied, auxiliary, related: Ladies, not accorded membership in the men's club, belonged to a fellow organization. She shared her sandwiches with a fellow passenger.

fellowship

n. 1 companionship, camaraderie, comradeship, amity, brotherhood, fraternization, togetherness, association, friendship, amity, companionability, sociability, intimacy: I have always enjoyed the fellowship of my university colleagues. 2 society, club, association, alliance, guild, league, union, sisterhood, sorority, brotherhood, fraternity, congregation, circle, community, order, organization, consortium, partnership; lodge, clan, company, coterie, set, clique, coalition, bloc, cartel, trust: They belong to the worldwide fellowship of artists. 3 friendliness, clubbiness, sociability, intimacy, amicability, affability, kindliness, cordiality, familiarity, affinity, belonging, congeniality, warmth, hospitality: Being a club member gives him a feeling of fellowship.

felon n. criminal, outlaw, lawbreaker, offender, culprit, miscreant, malefactor, wrongdoer: Only if convicted of a certain class of crime is a person technically a felon.

feminine adj. 1 female, womanlike, womanly, ladylike, submissive, deferential, amenable, gentle, docile, tender, soft, delicate: She is much more feminine than her sister. 2 effeminate, womanish, unmanly, unmasculine, sissy or Brit cissy, sissified or Brit cissified, effete, affected: Barry's manner and behaviour seem to become more feminine every day.

fence n. 1 barrier, enclosure, barricade, confine, wall, rampart; railing(s), palisade: Maurice had a fence put up round his house. 2 on the fence. undecided, indecisive, vacillating, uncommitted, uncertain, irresolute; impartial, neutral, non-partisan, unbiased, unprejudiced, unaligned, non-aligned, independent: She is on the fence with regard to the issue of capital punishment.

--v. 3 enclose, encircle, surround, circumscribe, bound, coop, restrict, hedge, confine, fortify, protect, separate: The pasture is fenced both to keep the sheep in and the wolves out. Fence off this area for a garden. 4 parry, avoid, fend off, sidestep, dodge, evade, hedge, stonewall, equivocate, palter, tergiversate, vacillate, shilly-shally, quibble, cavil, beat about the bush, qualify, prevaricate, Colloq Brit waffle: Awkward questions were adroitly fenced by the chairman. Give a straight answer and stop fencing.

fend v. 1 fend for oneself. get or scrape along (on one's own), make out, get by, make do, shift for oneself, take care of or provide for or support oneself: Mother didn't believe I could fend for myself. 2 fend off. discourage, parry, keep or hold at bay, resist, repel, stave or ward or fight off, deflect, turn aside, avert, divert: We fended off our attackers for three days.

ferment v. 1 boil, effervesce, seethe, bubble, foam, froth, brew; rise, raise, work, leaven: A rebellion is fermenting in the northern counties. Adding yeast causes the bread to ferment. 2 excite, stir up, incite, instigate, agitate, foment, inflame, rouse, provoke: He helped to ferment a riot.

ferocious adj. fierce, savage, cruel, vicious, feral, fell, brutal, bestial, merciless, ruthless, pitiless, inhuman, barbaric, barbarous, violent, destructive, murderous, bloodthirsty, sanguinary, predatory, fiendish, diabolical, devilish, hellish, monstrous: Cerberus, a ferocious beast with three heads, guards the gates of hell.

fertile adj. fruitful, prolific, fecund, productive, bounteous, profuse, abundant, copious, fructuous, plenteous, generative, teeming, rich, luxuriant: The land was fertile enough to grow anything. This book is a fertile source of ideas.

fertilize v. 1 impregnate, inseminate, pollinate, fecundate, fructify: The flower should be fertilized by pollen from a different stock. 2 manure, mulch, feed, nourish, enrich, dress, compost: The earth can be fertilized at any time.

fervent adj. 1 fervid, fiery, burning, glowing, hot, intense, passionate, impassioned, ardent, hotheaded, inflamed, fanatic(al), excited, frantic, frenzied: Only the most fervent acolytes were ordained as ministers of the faith. 2 eager, earnest, enthusiastic, zealous, animated, intense, heartfelt, emotional: It is my fervent desire to see you happy. 3 ecstatic, transported, rapturous, rapt, enrapt, enraptured, captivated: The fervent crowds cheered wildly when Caesar arrived.

fervour n. fervency, ardour, warmth, passion, vehemence, glow, intensity, zeal, eagerness, earnestness, enthusiasm, animation, gusto, ebullience, spirit, verve: She went about her studies with a fervour we had not seen before.

fester v. 1 ulcerate, suppurate, run, ooze, putrefy, putresce, necrose, mortify, rot, decay, decompose: His entire body was covered with festering sores. 2 rankle, smoulder, gall, chafe, inflame: Bitterness over the way he had been treated festered inside him for years.

festival n. 1 holiday, holy day, fˆte, feast, commemoration, anniversary: He wanted to be with his family for the Christmas festival. 2 celebration, fˆte, festivities, carnival, entertainment, red-letter day, gala day, anniversary, birthday: The town organizes a festival every autumn.

festivity n. 1 rejoicing, gaiety, mirth, jubilation, conviviality, joyfulness, merriment, revelry, merrymaking, glee, jollity, jollification, felicity, Colloq Brit mafficking: There were laughter and festivity in the air. 2 festivities. celebration(s), festival, party, fun and games, entertainment, amusement, hilarity, boisterousness, frivolity: Come along and join the festivities at our house tonight.

fetch v. 1 get, go after or for, bring (back), retrieve, deliver, obtain, carry or convey (back): Would you please fetch my slippers? 2 summon, bring or draw forth, call, elicit: The doorbell fetched me from my bath. 3 sell for, bring (in), go for, yield, earn, make, cost, realize: These days a house near London fetches a high price.

--n. 4 reach, stretch, range, span, extent: It is quite a long fetch across the bay.

fetching adj. attractive, alluring, taking, winsome, winning, cute, enchanting, charming, captivating, intriguing: Fingal's sister is a fetching young lass.

fˆte n. 1 festival, entertainment, reception, levee, gala, rejoicing, celebration, party, festivities, get-together, social, amusement, revel, fair, ball, frolic, spree, jamboree, carnival, event, occasion, Colloq blow-out, shindig, bash, do, bust, Slang US and Canadian wingding, blast: You are invited to our annual fˆte on New Year's Eve.

--v. 2 entertain, feast, roll or bring out the red carpet for, wine and dine, celebrate, honour, lionize, fuss over, kill the fatted calf for: Fiona's book was a great success and she was fˆted all over Europe.

fetish n. 1 charm, amulet, talisman, totem, Rare periapt: Round his neck he wore the dreaded fetish of the fish god. 2 obsession, compulsion, fixation, mania, id‚e fixe: It's a fetish of hers to kiss only under the mistletoe.

feud n. 1 dispute, conflict, vendetta, hostility, strife, enmity, animosity, hatred, antagonism, rivalry, ill will, bad blood, hard feelings, contention, discord, grudge, dissension, disagreement, argument, quarrel, bickering, squabble, falling out, estrangement: A silly feud broke out over whose turn it was to bring the Christmas goose.

--v. 2 dispute, quarrel, bicker, disagree, conflict, row, fight, fall out, clash, be at odds, be at daggers drawn: The Hatfields and McCoys feuded for decades.

feverish adj. inflamed, flushed, burning, fiery, hot, ardent, fervent, hot-blooded, passionate, frenzied, frantic, excited, frenetic, zealous; Pathology febrile, pyretic, pyrexic: I was looking forward to our rendezvous with feverish excitement.

few adj. 1 hardly or scarcely any, not many, insufficient; infrequent, occasional: Few people came to my party. He is a man of few words.

--n. 2 handful, some, scattering: I invited a lot of people, but only a few came.

--pron. 3 (only) one or two, not many: Many apply but few are chosen.

6.3 fianc‚(e)...
=-

fianc‚(e) n. betrothed, wife- or bride- or husband-to-be, intended: He went out to buy a ring for his fianc‚e.

fiasco n. failure, disaster, muddle, mess, abortion, botch, Colloq fizzle, flop: My effort to help Donald with his maths homework was a complete fiasco.

fib n. 1 falsehood, (little) white lie, untruth, prevarication, fabrication, invention, misrepresentation, story, (fairy) tale, fiction; lie; Colloq tall story, US tall tale, cock-and-bull story, whopper: I told a little fib when I said my grandmother was ill.

--v. 2 prevaricate, misrepresent, fudge, falsify, misspeak, palter; lie; Colloq waffle: They admitted they had fibbed about who had thrown the egg.

fibre n. 1 filament, thread, strand, fibril, tendril: This fabric is woven from cotton fibre. 2 texture, structure, material, fabric: The fibre of this rock is granular. 3 essence, character, nature, mould, composition, constitution, substance, quality, stripe, cast, make-up: Love for him is wrapped up in the very fibre of her being.

fickle adj. flighty, capricious, frivolous, unpredictable, moody, giddy, fanciful, whimsical, fitful, mercurial, volatile, unstable, changeable, mutable, inconstant, changeful, unsteady, unsteadfast, indecisive, undecided, vacillating or rarely vacillant, unsure, uncertain, irresolute, wavering, erratic, unreliable, undependable, irresponsible, untrustworthy, faithless, unfaithful, disloyal, Colloq wishy-washy: That fickle woman has already taken up with someone else. You should know how fickle the tastes of the public are.

fictional adj. unreal, imaginary, invented, made-up, mythical, fanciful; legendary, fabulous: The newspaper article was a hoax - completely fictional. Lorna Doone is Janet's favourite fictional heroine.

fictitious

adj. 1 imagined, imaginary, non-existent, unreal, made-up, invented, fabricated, mythical, fancied, fanciful, fictive, untrue, apocryphal: The claim that an article had appeared was completely fictitious. 2 false, counterfeit, bogus, artificial, spurious; assumed, improvised, made-up, invented, make-believe, imaginary, Colloq phoney or US also phony: When arrested they gave fictitious names.

fiddle v. 1 Often, fiddle with. meddle (with), tamper (with), interfere (with), alter, falsify, fix; cheat, swindle, flimflam; Colloq finagle, Brit cook: The treasurer had been fiddling the accounts for years. 2 Often, fiddle with or about or around. toy or trifle or fidget (with), twiddle or play or tinker (with), fool or fuss (with), Colloq mess or muck (about or around) (with), frivol (away), monkey (around) (with): He sat there nervously fiddling with his ear. Stop fiddling about and get on with your work.

--n. 3 Brit swindle, fraud, racket, thimblerig, US shell-game, Slang skin game, funny business, monkey business: The tax inspector caught him in some fiddle with his business expenses. 4 violin, viola, viol, cello, violoncello, kit: He played fiddle for the tsar.

fiddlesticks

interj. Nonsense!, Rubbish!, Colloq Fiddle-de-dee!, Balderdash!, Stuff and Nonsense!, Poppycock!, Pish and tush!, Tommy-rot!, Hogwash!, Eyewash!, Boloney!, Bilge-water!, Moonshine!, Humbug!, Bosh!, Fiddle-faddle!, Bull!, Rot!, Brit Codswallop!, Taboo slang Bullshit!, Balls!, Crap!, Horseshit!, Brit Bollocks! or Ballocks!: When he said he'd pay what he owed, I just said, 'Fiddlesticks!'

fidget v. 1 squirm, twitch, shuffle, wriggle, wiggle, fiddle, fuss; fret, chafe: Stop fidgeting and tell me the truth!

--n. 2 fusspot, fuss-budget, cat on hot bricks, US cat on a hot tin roof, Colloq US nervous Nellie: If her conscience is clear, why is she such a fidget? 3 the fidgets. restlessness, fidgetiness, dither, uneasiness, the jitters, nervousness, itchiness, Colloq heebie-jeebies, jim-jams, ants in one's pants: Whenever he tells a lie he gets a bad case of the fidgets.

field n. 1 ground, land, arable, pasture, grassland, meadow, green, lawn, common, clearing, tract, area, acreage, Literary greensward, lea, sward; Archaic mead: The house looks out over the fields. 2 battlefield, battleground, airfield; (cricket) pitch, football or hockey or soccer field, American football gridiron: We marched onto the field prepared for anything. 3

competition, competitors, players, entrants, contestants, participants, candidates, possibilities, applicants: Who can match you among today's field? 4 area, domain, realm, department, territory, province, sphere, scope, division, interest, line, m,tier, discipline, bailiwick, speciality, specialization, expertise, forte, strength: She is certainly the leading expert in her field. My field is biochemistry.

--v. 5 catch, stop, return, retrieve, pick up: Did you see how Border fielded that ball? 6 answer, reply to, respond to, handle, manipulate, deal with, react to, cope with: The candidate adroitly fielded questions from the press.

fiend n. 1 See devil. 2 addict, maniac, fanatic; fan, aficionado, enthusiast, devotee, hound, follower, Colloq buff, nut, Slang freak: He's a Welsh rarebit fiend.

fiendish adj. cruel, savage, inhuman, monstrous, ghoulish, malignant, malevolent, malicious, wicked, evil, bad, black-hearted, satanic, devilish, Mephistophelian, demonic, demoniac(al), diabolic(al), cacodemonic, hellish, infernal: He sniggered with fiendish glee as he tightened the thumbscrew.

fierce adj. 1 ferocious, savage, wild, truculent, brutish, feral, bestial, tigerish, brutal, cruel, fell, murderous, bloodthirsty, sanguinary, homicidal, barbaric, barbarous, inhuman, dangerous: The fierce beasts will tear you limb from limb. 2 intractable, angry, furious, hostile, aggressive, vehement, frenzied, stormy, violent, turbulent, wild, tempestuous, tumultuous, raging, merciless, uncontrollable: The old curmudgeon is in a fierce mood again today. A fierce storm raged for three days. 3 severe, awful, dreadful, intense, keen, dire, bitter, biting, racking: Wear warm clothes to protect you from the fierce cold.

fiercely adv. very, extremely, exceedingly, vehemently, intensely, impetuously, violently, furiously, ferociously, viciously, savagely: She refuses to deal with anyone who is so fiercely competitive.

fiery adj. 1 burning, flaming, blazing, hot, red-hot, white-hot, overheated; afire, on fire, in flames, ablaze: Fiery lava burst from the volcano. 2 glowing, red, incandescent, brilliant, luminous, glaring, gleaming, radiant; aglow, afire: We watched the fiery sunset fade into azure hues. 3 ardent, eager, spirited, passionate, excited, excitable, peppery, irascible, touchy, irritable, edgy, hotheaded, fierce: I had best not be late as my boss has a fiery temper.

fight v. 1 contend (with), battle, conflict (with), encounter, war (against), engage, clash, take up arms (against), feud (with), combat, bear or take up arms (against), brawl, struggle or strive (with or against), cross swords (with), close (with), come to or exchange blows (with), go to or wage war (with or against), joust (with), grapple or wrestle (with), skirmish (with), tussle or scuffle (with or against); box, spar; Old-fashioned broil: He offered to fight anyone in the place. Why are the boys always fighting? 2 dispute, question, confront, contest, oppose, contradict, defy, confute, protest, resist, rail or struggle, against, withstand, refute, oppugn, make or take a stand against, contravene, confound: He has sworn to fight prejudice wherever he finds it. 3 rise up, make or take a stand, struggle, take up arms: It is better to fight for the good than to rail at the ill. 4 argue, dispute, bicker, quarrel, wrangle, squabble, spat, tiff, fall out (over), have words, disagree, row, altercate, debate: I hear the neighbours fight every night. 5 fight off. repel, repulse: Prepare to fight off anyone trying to come over the side! 6 fight shy of. avoid, keep or remain aloof from or of, keep away from: She usually fights shy of going to cocktail parties.

--n. 7 battle, conflict, bout, duel, (single) combat, monomachy, one-on-one, action, warfare, clash, hostilities, war, match, struggle, engagement, meeting, encounter, contest, fighting, brawl, Donnybrook, affray, fray, fracas, disturbance, riot, row, mˆl,e or melee, tussle, scuffle, scrimmage, skirmish, brush, Colloq free-for-all, set-to, scrap, Brit scrum, bovver, Slang US rumble, Old-fashioned broil: Three policeman were injured in the hour-long fight. 8 altercation, argument, quarrel, feud, dispute, run-in, disagreement, dissension, dissidence, dissent, difference (of opinion), squabble, bickering, spat, misunderstanding, row, discord, Colloq ruckus: Such fights between husband and wife happen all the time. 9 pugnacity, mettle, militancy, belligerence, truculence, spirit, pluck, zeal, enthusiasm, zest: She had enough fight left in her to go on to win.

figure n. 1 physique, build, shape, form, configuration, conformation, build, body, outline, silhouette; cut, cast; Slang bod, chassis: It's exercise that gives Kathy such a fine figure. 2 appearance, image, likeness, representation, semblance: The vision came to him in the figure of a dragon. 3 person, individual, human (being): A burly figure loomed up out of the fog. 4 statue, effigy, sculpture, bust, mould, cast, image, representation, idol, icon: Hundreds of figures are carved into the stone of the temple fa‡ade. 5 picture, illustration, diagram, drawing, sketch, plate: See Figure 12 for a graph showing the rate of inflation for the past decade. 6 personality, celebrity, somebody, leader, personage, worthy, notable, individual, presence, force, character: Chaplin looms large as a figure in the history of comedy. 7 number, numeral, cipher, digit; character, symbol, device, sign; design, pattern, motif, emblem: His salary is in six figures.

--v. 8 Often, figure up. calculate, compute, reckon, work out; count, enumerate, numerate, total, tot up, tally, sum: Please figure up how much I owe you. 9 picture, imagine, think, take, reckon, consider, calculate, judge, believe; assume, presume, suppose; accept, acknowledge, concede: I never figured her to be the guilty one. 10 act, participate, take or play a part or role, appear, feature, have a place; be included or mentioned, be featured or conspicuous: He does not figure in my plans. 11 figure on or upon. a rely or depend on or upon, count on or upon, trust in, put faith in: You mustn't figure on his help. b plan on or upon, take into consideration or account, consider, make allowance for: They were figuring on consumer demand for a better mousetrap. 12 figure out. a calculate, reckon, compute, work out: I haven't yet figured out last year's profits and losses. b decipher, translate, understand, interpret, solve, grasp, get, fathom, see, perceive, Colloq dig, make head(s) or tail(s) of, get through one's head, get the hang or drift of, catch on (to), get a fix on, Brit twig, suss out: Can you figure out what this article is trying to say?

figurehead
n. puppet, dummy, marionette, mouthpiece, Brit man of straw, US and Canadian straw man, Colloq front man, Chiefly US front: The king is a mere figurehead with no power at all.

file n. 1 document, documentation, dossier, case, data, folder, portfolio, information: Interpol has files on Cowdery's activities going back ten years. 2 line, queue, column, row, rank: The file of armoured vehicles stretched for miles.

--v. 3 classify, organize, systematize, categorize, alphabetize, chronologize, order, arrange, pigeon-hole, interfile, put or place in order, register, record, enter: Must all this correspondence be filed today? 4 submit, send in, complete, fill in or US and Canadian also fill out, enter: I have already filed my application for a transfer. 5 walk, march, troop, parade: Please file into the classroom and take your seats.

fill   v. 1 crowd, stuff, cram, jam, load, burden, pack, squeeze: A huge number of people filled the stadium. 2 top (off), top up, fill up, make full; inflate, swell, stretch, blow up, distend, expand: Pour in just enough to fill the bottle. See if you can fill the balloon. Wind filled the sails. 3 Sometimes, fill up. supply, provide, furnish: Irena has filled her house with paintings. 4 meet, satisfy, fulfil, answer: Will a dozen fill your needs for a while? 5 satisfy, satiate, bloat, sate, gorge, stuff; stock: The guests filled themselves with choice foods at the reception. 6 abound in, overflow, be abundant or plentiful in: Trout filled the lake. 7 close, stop (up), block, stuff, plug, caulk, seal: The dentist had to fill two cavities. 8 occupy, take over, discharge, carry out, do, execute: Can you fill her job while she's away? 9 fill in or US and Canadian also out. a make out, complete, answer: Please fill in this application. b take the place, stand in, substitute: Could you fill in during my secretary's absence? c inform, tell, advise, let in on, notify, bring up to date, share, let in on: Don will fill you in on the details later. 10 fill out. a swell, expand, grow, distend, stretch; fatten, increase: The sails filled out in the freshening breeze. b US fill in. See 9(a).

--n. 11 one's fill. plenty, enough; surfeit, sufficiency: We ate our fill and left.

filling   n. filler, stuffing, padding, wadding; contents, components, Colloq innards: What kind of filling do you like in a pie?

film   n. 1 coating, skin, coat, membrane, peel, integument, layer, overlay, covering, cover, sheet, dusting, veil, Technical pellicle: There is a film of grease over everything. 2 motion picture, movie, picture; videotape; Colloq flick, pic; video: Why do they show the same films every Christmas? 3 veil, screen, murkiness, blur, smokescreen, haze, mist, haziness, mistiness, cloud, vapour, fog, steam: I could barely make out the road through the film on the windscreen.

--v. 4 film over, coat, cover, dim, obscure, fade (away), veil, screen, blur, blear, mist, cloud, glaze,: The pond filmed over with bacteria. Her eyes filmed with tears. 5 photograph, shoot, take, (video)tape: If the director insists, then the scene must be filmed again.

filmy adj. 1 gauzy, gossamer(-like), sheer, delicate, diaphanous, transparent, translucent, flimsy, light, cobwebby, insubstantial, see-through, peekaboo: Phoebe looked very seductive in her filmy negligee. 2 murky, blurry, cloudy, hazy, misty, bleary, blurred, dim, clouded, beclouded, milky, pearly, opalescent: We inched down the cliff in the filmy light of the moon.

filter n. 1 sieve, colander, riddle, screen, strainer, gauze, cloth, cheesecloth, membrane: To allow the liquid to pass through, a clean filter must be used.

--v. 2 Sometimes, filter out. strain, screen, sift, winnow, clarify, refine, purify, clean; separate, weed out, exclude, eliminate: Some people filter tap water to improve its taste. This company would be improved if we could filter out the undesirable elements. 3 leach, percolate, drip, seep, dribble, trickle, drain, run or pass through, ooze: The rainwater is filtered through fine sand to purify it.

filth n. 1 sewage or sewerage, dirt, slime, muck, sludge, sullage, effluent, pollution, trash, rubbish, garbage, refuse, ordure, (night-)soil, excrement, faeces, excreta, manure, droppings, guano, dung, foul matter, filthiness, offal, leavings, carrion, decay, putrescence, putrefaction, Slang crud, Brit gunge, US grunge, Taboo slang shit: Cleaning the filth from the Augean stables was the fifth labour of Hercules. 2 corruption, vileness, baseness, foulness, rottenness, debasement, defilement, taint, pollution, adulteration, perversion, degradation, taint; sullying, besmirchment: Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed along with their filth. 3 indecency, obscenity, smut, pornography, corruption, nastiness, vulgarity, grossness: The censors forbade the showing of films with any hint of filth.

filthy adj. 1 defiled, polluted, tainted, foul, nasty, dirty, unclean, vile, putrid, rotten, fetid or foetid, maggoty, fly-blown, purulent, feculent, faecal, scummy, slimy, mucky, Slang cruddy, Brit gungy, US grungy: That city's public lavatories are the filthiest I have ever seen. 2 dirty, unwashed, begrimed, squalid, sordid, shabby, soiled, low, stained, grimy, bedraggled, unkempt, slovenly, sloppy, mean, scurvy, disgusting, miserable, wretched, Slang Brit gungy, US grungy: The filthy beggar turned out to be Holmes in disguise. 3 immoral, taboo or tabu, indecent, impure, obscene, smutty, pornographic, X-rated, depraved, corrupt, dirty, lewd, lascivious, licentious, gross, offensive, coarse, bawdy, ribald, blue, suggestive, foul-mouthed, dirty-minded, filthy-minded: Customs officers confiscated thousands of filthy books, magazines, films, and videos.

final adj. 1 ending, concluding, terminating, finishing, closing, last, terminal, ultimate, end: The final sentence needs rewriting. 2 conclusive, decisive, unalterable, irreversible, irrevocable, incontrovertible, irrefutable, indisputable, unchangeable, immutable, definitive; settled, fixed, absolute, certain, sure: Those are my final words on the subject. We made a final series of measurements.

finality n. conclusiveness, decisiveness, unalterability, irreversibility, irrevocableness, incontrovertibility, irrefutability, indisputability, unchangeability, immutability, definitiveness, certainty, certitude, sureness, fixedness: There is an air of finality in the way she gives orders.

finalize v. conclude, settle, complete, decide, Colloq wrap up, clinch, sew up: We finalized the agreement yesterday by signing the contract.

finally adv. 1 at (long) last, lastly, eventually, in the end, ultimately, at length, when all is said and done, in the long run, at the end of the day, at the last moment: We finally arrived in port. 2 conclusively, once and for all, decisively, irrevocably, in fine, completely, inexorably, absolutely, definitively, definitely, for good, for ever, for all time: I didn't want to commit myself finally till I'd seen the plans.

finance n. 1 resource(s), banking, accounting, economics, money (management), business, commerce, (financial) affairs, investment: Bendick is the officer in charge of finance for the company. 2 finances. capital, money, cash, funds, resources, assets, holdings, wealth, wherewithal: Have you the finances needed to buy the house?

--v. 3 fund, subvene, invest in, back, capitalize, underwrite, subsidize, pay for, Colloq US bankroll: The new enterprise is being financed entirely by small investors.

financial adj. monetary, pecuniary, fiscal, economic: We must get the financial affairs of the country in order.

financier n. capitalist, banker, plutocrat, investor, backer, US money-man, Colloq angel: The financiers suggest switching investment from shares to bonds.

find v. 1 discover, come across, happen or come on or upon, hit upon or on, chance or stumble on or upon; encounter, bump into: We've found a tiny bistro on the Left Bank where we like to go. 2 Often, find out. uncover, discover, unearth, lay one's hand(s) on, turn up, come up with, reveal, bring to light, light upon or on, catch sight of, see, espy, descry, detect, learn, spot, locate, track down; find out, identify, become aware of, determine, ascertain, put one's finger on, point to, Colloq tumble to, Brit twig; Slang finger, rumble, Brit suss out: The police are trying to find the murderer. Can you find who did it? 3 discover, perceive, see, understand, notice, mark, remark, note, distinguish, discern; realize: I find nothing odd about her attire. 4 consider, think, regard, view, feel or discover to be: I have always found Lady Sharpless exceedingly dull. He finds it impossible to refuse her demands. 5 get, obtain, procure, secure, acquire, win, gain; experience: We despair of finding customers for our services in these hard times. He found relief only in painkillers. 6 recover, locate, get back; repossess, recoup: I hope you find the earring you lost. 7 summon (up), call up, command, gather (up), muster (up), rouse, arouse, awaken: I tried to find the courage to ask her to marry me. 8 set aside, allot, assign, manage, get: Have you found the time to read Connie's new book? 9 judge, decide or determine to be, pronounce, declare: A jury found her guilty. The judge found in favour of the plaintiff.

--n. 10 discovery, catch, bargain, deal; boon, windfall: The gold doubloon was the find of a lifetime.

finding n. 1 discovery, find: The findings from Pompeii are in the Museum of Portici. 2 judgement, decree, verdict, decision, determination, pronouncement, declaration, conclusion: The findings of the Law Lords are final.

fine° adj. 1 superior, excellent, superb, magnificent, supreme, marvellous, exceptional, splendid, exquisite, elegant, first-class, first-rate, prime, choice, select, top-grade, high-grade, top-drawer, quality, admirable, great, good, satisfactory, Colloq out of this world, great, OK or okay, peachy, neat, keen, Brit tickety-boo, US neat, Australian bonzer, Slang swell, cool, Brit old-fashioned ripping, Dialectal champion: He is a connoisseur of fine paintings. She turned in a fine performance. 2 sunny, fair, bright, clear, cloudless, balmy, pleasant, dry, nice: It was a fine day for a picnic. 3 enjoyable, satisfying, entertaining, amusing, good, interesting, pleasant, nice: Thank you for inviting us to such a fine party. 4 accomplished, skilful, consummate, outstanding, masterly, brilliant, virtuoso: Ann-Sofie is a fine pianist. 5 delicate, subtle, exquisite, well-made, dainty, elegant; superior, excellent, outstanding: What a fine example of miniature-painting! 6 delicate, dainty, thin, gossamer, diaphanous, gauzy, sheer, slender, frail, flimsy, filamentous, threadlike: The sword hung over Damocles' head by a fine thread. 7 powdered, powdery, pulverized, comminuted, crushed, fine-grained: As soon as they touched the papyrus, it disintegrated into a fine powder. 8 sharp, keen, keen-edged, razor-sharp, pointed, acute: The points of the sea urchin's spines are so fine you don't feel them enter. 9 subtle, delicate, refined, acute, keen, discriminating, critical, precise, nice, hair-splitting: There is sometimes a fine distinction between pleasure and pain. 10 good-looking, handsome, attractive, striking, beautiful, pretty, lovely, seemly, fair, comely, Colloq US cute, Scots bonny: Jeanette married a fine young man. 11 meritorious, worthy, commendable, admirable, excellent, superb, splendid, good, Colloq great: She has displayed fine courage in the face of terrible family problems. 12 healthy, well, healthful, robust, all right, Colloq OK or okay: I told the doctor that I was feeling fine. 13 close: Arriving at the airport with only minutes to spare is cutting it pretty fine.

fineý n. 1 penalty, charge, fee, mulct, forfeit, amercement; forfeiture: He was unable to pay the parking fine.

--v. 2 penalize, charge, mulct, amerce: She was fined for parking at a bus stop.

finery n. decoration(s), ornaments, trappings, trinkets, frippery, showy dress, Colloq best bib and tucker, Sunday best, Sunday clothes, gear, glad rags: They were all dressed in their finery at the reception.

finesse n. 1 artfulness, subtlety, cunning, craftiness, cleverness, strategy, shrewdness, skill, style, dash, ,lan, panache, knack, skilfulness, talent, adroitness, expertness, expertise, adeptness, proficiency, ability, facility: I admire the finesse with which she persuaded him to give the painting to the museum. 2 trick, artifice, stratagem, wile, ruse, scheme, machination, intrigue, device, expedient, manoeuvre, deception, deceit: He used every finesse in the book to get her to work for him. 3 tact, diplomacy, discretion, grace, taste, delicacy, polish, refinement, elegance: With infinite finesse, Lord Lacey suggested that the duchess might like to stay the night.

--v. 4 manoeuvre, manipulate, bluff, trick, delude, deceive, fool, outwit, hoodwink, Colloq finagle, Slang con: She was finessed into making him heir to her fortune.

finger n. 1 digit: How many fingers am I holding up? 2 have a finger in. be or become or get involved in, figure in, have a hand in, influence, interfere in, tamper or meddle or tinker or monkey with: I knew that Lightfoot must have had a finger in the deal. 3 keep one's fingers crossed. hope or pray for the best, touch or esp. US knock wood: I'm sure you'll win, but I'll keep my fingers crossed just the same. 4 lay or put a finger on. (so much as) touch, strike, hit, punch: If you lay a finger on her, you'll have to answer to me! 5 lay or put one's finger on. a recall, remember, recollect, bring or call to mind, think of, pin down: I can't quite put my finger on the date when we met. b locate, find, discover, unearth, lay or put one's hands on, track down, get hold of, come by, acquire; buy, purchase: I was finally able to put my finger on the book you asked for. c indicate, identify, point to, pin down, Colloq zero (in) on: Frank put his finger on the problem at once. 6 (not) lift or raise (even) a (little) finger. make an attempt or effort, offer, make a move, contribute, do one's part, do anything or something: She didn't so much as lift a finger when I needed her. 7 pull or get one's finger out. get on with it, stop delaying or procrastinating, Colloq get cracking: He should have finished by now, and I wish he'd pull his finger out. 8 put the finger on. accuse, inform on or against, tell or tattle on, betray, bear witness, Slang snitch or squeal on, peach on: After Louise put the finger on the kingpin, the cops arrested him. 9 slip through one's fingers. elude, escape, get away, vanish, disappear: Despite the cordon round the house, the fugitive slipped through our fingers. 10 twist or wrap around one's little finger. control, dominate, lord it over, have under control, manipulate, manoeuvre, wield power or authority over, have under one's thumb, have the upper hand over, be master of, influence, make subservient: She has her father twisted around her little finger, and can do no wrong in his eyes.

--v. 11 touch, handle, feel; toy or play or fiddle with: He was quite nervous and kept fingering his tie. 12 identify, point out, put the finger on: It was too late, the mob had already fingered Slats for assassination.

finicky adj. 1 finical, fussy, fastidious, critical, difficult, meticulous, hard to please, (over-)delicate, (over-)dainty, (over-)particular, over-nice, over-precise, niminy-piminy, punctilious, (over-)scrupulous, Colloq pernickety or US also persnickety, choosy, nit-picking, picky: No one can work for him - he's too finicky. 2 fussy, elaborate, detailed, fine, delicate: Notice the tiny, finicky engraving on this watch-case.

finish v. 1 stop, conclude, end, cease: When you have finished eating, please clear the table. 2 complete, accomplish, perfect, achieve, carry out, fulfil, consummate, clinch, write 'finis' to, Colloq wrap up: We finished the work on time. 3 Sometimes, finish off. dispose of, dispatch or despatch, exhaust, consume, eat or drink (up), use (up), devour, drain, Colloq polish off: We finished the last of the beer last night. 4 Sometimes, finish off. kill, exterminate, annihilate, destroy, get rid of, dispose of, dispatch or despatch, put an end to, administer or deliver or give the coup de grƒce, bring down, overcome, beat, defeat, conquer, best, worst, Colloq polish off, terminate, Slang bump off, rub out, US waste, ice: The cavalry finished off the last of the enemy. The contender was finished in the third round. 5 Sometimes, finish up. conclude, close, terminate, wind up, end, culminate: He goes straight home when he finishes work. When will you finish? 6 Sometimes, finish up. end up, settle: Where did you finish up after the party? 7 Sometimes, finish off. perfect, put the final touches on, polish, put a finish on: He finishes fine furniture for a living. 8 finish with. release, let go, have or be done with, let loose, set free: I'll finish with you later, young man!

--n. 9 conclusion, termination, end, close, closing, completion, culmination, ending, finale, Colloq winding up, US wind-up: Tomorrow is the finish of the hunting season. 10 death, killing, annihilation, extermination, downfall, destruction, defeat: A major catastrophe spelt the finish of the dinosaurs. 11 polish, surface, texture: Just feel the finish on this gunstock!

finite adj. limited, bounded, bound, restricted, delimited, numerable, countable: It has been shown that there are a finite number of grains of sand in the universe.

fire n. 1 flame(s), blaze; conflagration, holocaust, inferno: We gathered round the roaring fire. 2 feeling, passion, ardour, ardency, fervour, fervency, intensity, vigour, spirit, energy, vim, vivacity, sparkle, animation, liveliness, verve, pep, ,lan, ,clat, dash, vitality, eagerness, enthusiasm, fever, feverishness: I have never seen the role of Carmen performed with such fire. 3 firing, fusillade, volley, barrage, bombardment, salvo, cannonade, shelling, broadside, flak: The fire from the guns shook the house. 4 hang fire. delay, be delayed, be in abeyance, be suspended, be shelved, be put off, be postponed, be up in the air, Colloq be put on hold, be (put) on the back burner: The decision is hanging fire till tomorrow. 5 on fire. afire, burning, blazing, alight, aflame, flaming; ardent, passionate, fervent, fervid, hot-blooded, intense, aroused, stirred, stimulated, enthusiastic, fired up, eager, inspired, excited: The building is on fire: you must leave at once. My very soul is on fire when I think of you. 6 play with fire. undertake a risk or hazard or peril, run a risk, risk (something or everything), imperil or endanger (something), tempt fate, live dangerously: He warned people not to play with fire by stirring up racial hatred. 7 set fire to. See 8, below.

--v. 8 a set fire to, set afire, set on fire, ignite, set alight, kindle, spark (off), put to the torch, burn, Slang US torch: Arsonists fired our headquarters last night. b Sometimes, fire up. inflame, impassion, incite, excite, provoke, foment, whip up, arouse, rouse, work up, fire up, enkindle, light a fire under, stimulate, inspirit, motivate, move, stir, animate, inspire, awaken, energize, vitalize, vivify: She fired the crowd's emotions with her impassioned speech. 9 discharge, shoot, let go (with), launch, propel, throw, catapult, hurl: He fired the missile towards the enemy. 10 detonate, set off, ignite, set fire to, light, let off: It is against the law to fire any explosives in this area. 11 discharge, dismiss, oust, let go, cashier, give (someone) notice, Brit make or declare redundant, Colloq Brit ask for or get (someone's) cards, US give (someone) a pink slip; Slang bounce, give (someone) the bounce, axe, give (someone) the axe, show (someone) the door, can, give (someone) the (old) heave-ho, give (someone) his or her (Brit) marching orders or (US) walking papers, Brit sack, give (someone) the sack, boot (someone) out, give (someone) the boot: They fired me last month and I can't find work.

firm adj. 1 compact, solid, dense, compressed, condensed, concentrated, rigid, stiff, hard, unyielding, inflexible, inelastic: I prefer a firm mattress. 2 stable, fixed, fast, secure, steady, solid, stationary, anchored, moored, unmovable, immovable: This pole is firmer than that one. 3 steady, strong, sturdy, tight, unwavering, unshakable or unshakeable, unswerving: What we need is a firm hand at the controls. 4 resolute, determined, dogged, definite, resolved, positive, decisive, decided, set on or upon, steadfast, constant, unflinching, staunch, unshaken, unshakeable or unshakable, immovable, inflexible, rigid, unwavering, undeviating, unchanging, unchangeable, obstinate, obdurate, stubborn, strict, unyielding, unbending, unalterable: Father was firm about my not staying out past midnight.

--v. 5 Often firm up. consolidate, establish, settle (down), solidify, resolve, determine, set up: We firmed up the terms of the contract. Sugar prices firmed today.

--n. 6 company, organization, corporation, limited company, public limited company, plc, partnership, proprietorship, business, enterprise, concern, house, conglomerate, multinational (company), cartel, Colloq outfit; US jargon CIA, Central Intelligence Agency: He works for a firm in the City.

firmament n. heaven, the heavens, sky, the skies, vault (of heaven), Literary welkin, empyrean: Sirius is one of the brightest stars in the firmament.

firmly adv. 1 solidly, strongly, securely, tightly, rigidly, fast, immovably: The column is set firmly into the concrete. 2 resolutely, steadfastly, determinedly, staunchly, unwaveringly, decisively, unhesitatingly, constantly: Jacquelyn firmly supports John in anything he says.

first adj. 1 foremost, leading, chief, head, premier, prime, primary, principal, pre-eminent: The Kennedys were regarded as among 'the first people of Boston'. I heard that your son is now first violinist in the Philharmonic. 2 earliest, original, senior, oldest; initial, beginning, maiden, opening: The first clock in England was made about 1288. The first assault resulted in great loss of life. 3 fundamental, elementary, basic, primary, cardinal, key, essential: It is necessary to return to first principles.

--adv. 4 before, in front, earliest, beforehand, ahead, sooner, foremost: Bannister came in first. 5 in the first place, firstly, before all or anything else, initially, at the outset or beginning, to begin or start with, from the start, Colloq first off: First, I want to thank you all for coming to my party.

--n. 6 beginning, start, inception, commencement, outset, Colloq word go: I knew you'd win from the first. 7 first place, blue ribbon, gold (medal), triumph, victory; win: Britain achieved three firsts in yesterday's athletics meeting. 8 at first. initially, in the beginning, at the start or outset, Colloq from the word go: I didn't believe him at first.

first-rate
adj. first-class, high-grade, prime, excellent, superior, superb, great, remarkable, admirable, fine, exceptional, outstanding, extraordinary, unparalleled, matchless, unsurpassed, Colloq A-1 or A-one, top-notch, tiptop, crack, top, ace, Brit whiz-bang or whizz-bang, wizard: Sarah is a first-rate pianist.

fiscal adj. financial, economic, budgetary, pecuniary, monetary: It is against our fiscal policy to deal in off-shore securities.

fishy adj. 1 piscine, fishlike, piscatory, piscatorial: On the fishmonger's slab lay an array of fishy offerings, only a few of which I could recognize. 2 dubious, doubtful, questionable, unlikely, far-fetched, suspicious, not kosher, peculiar, odd, queer, strange, suspect, improbable, implausible, Colloq shady, funny: There is something fishy about this deal.

fit° adj. 1 fitting, appropriate, fitted, suitable, suited, adapted, apt, meet, apropos, applicable; befitting, becoming, convenient, proper, right, correct, fitting: Those books are not fit for children. It's not a fit night out for man or beast. 2 prepared, ready, able, capable, qualified, worthy, right, adequate: The question is, is such a man fit to lead men into battle? 3 healthy, well, hale, hearty, stalwart, vigorous, strong, sturdy, robust, strapping, able-bodied, in good shape or trim or condition, in fine fettle: Is she fit enough to run in the marathon? 4 ready, angry, troubled, upset, inclined, disposed, ready or likely or about to, exhausted enough: I worked till I was fit to drop. Mr Barrett was coughing fit to burst.

--v. 5 befit, suit, become, be suited to, be suitable or appropriate for, answer, satisfy: This computer program does not fit my needs. 6 join, conform, go (together), match, correspond, dovetail, tally: I cannot make the parts fit. 7 adjust, modify, change, adapt, alter, accommodate, shape, fashion: You will just have to fit your schedule to conform to ours. 8 equip, supply, furnish, provide, outfit, fit out or up, install or instal, rig out, gear up: I am having my boat fitted with radar.

fitý n. 1 attack, seizure, convulsion, spasm, spell, paroxysm, bout, throe: She has periodic fits of severe depression. 2 outburst, outbreak, paroxysm, spell, period: Occasionally, Gurning would go into a fit of hysterical laughter. 3 tantrum; eruption, explosion: She throws a fit if I so much as mention Maria's name. 4 by fits and starts. sporadically, occasionally, fitfully, spasmodically, intermittently, erratically, haphazardly, now and then, irregularly, unsystematically; unreliably: The fridge works only by fits and starts.

fitful adj. irregular, sporadic, intermittent, occasional, periodic, erratic, spasmodic, haphazard, unsystematic, changeable, unstable, capricious, varying, fluctuating, variable, uneven: The dying torch emitted a fitful light. No true patriot pays merely fitful allegiance to his country.

fitness n. 1 aptness, appropriateness, suitability, suitableness, competence, pertinence, seemliness; eligibility, adequacy, qualification(s): There is some doubt about Henryson's fitness as a leader. 2 health, healthiness, (good) (physical) condition, vigour, well-being, (good) shape, (fine) fettle, tone, wholesomeness, salubriousness or salubrity: Tony is a fanatic about physical fitness and exercises daily.

fitted adj. custom-made, tailor-made; tailored, bespoke: The house boasts a fully fitted kitchen.

fitting adj. 1 fit, befitting, suitable, appropriate, meet, becoming, proper, comme il faut, seemly, apt, apropos, apposite, germane, relevant: Is it fitting to send flowers? It was a fitting end to the story.

--n. 2 fittings. fitments, attachments, accessories, elements, pieces, parts, units, fixtures; appointments, extras, installations, furnishings, trappings, furniture, equipment, accoutrements, paraphernalia, trimmings: Gold-plated bathroom fittings are available at extra cost.

fix v. 1 affix, pin, fasten, make fast, attach, secure, stick, connect, link, tie, couple, clasp, clamp, rivet, cement, weld, fuse: Fix this sign to the door. 2 establish, set, settle, agree to, determine, organize, stabilize, firm up, solidify, decide, conclude, arrive at, define, specify, resolve, arrange,

install or instal, institute: The new limits must be fixed by
tomorrow. 3 repair, mend, fix up, remedy, rectify, correct,
emend, adjust, patch (up), regulate, put or set to rights,
doctor, straighten out: My watch is at the jeweller's being
fixed. 4 hold, fasten, focus, direct, level, rivet,
concentrate, freeze; fixate: He fixed his attention on the
ice-cream. 5 hold, rivet, spellbind, mesmerize, hypnotize,
fascinate, freeze, immobilize: She fixed him with a baleful
stare. 6 concentrate, focus: Fix your thoughts on how we're
going to get out of here. 7 harden, congeal, thicken, set,
consolidate, solidify, rigidify, become rigid, stiffen, freeze:
Mould the clay before it becomes fixed. 8 establish, set,
settle, organize, install or instal, situate, locate, position,
place: Her family is comfortably fixed. 9 impose, assign,
allocate, attribute, ascribe, specify, pin, attach, fasten,
establish: They tried to fix the responsibility for the
accident. 10 settle, set, stabilize, freeze, solidify: The
introduction and spread of printing fixed many spellings. 11
bribe, suborn, buy (off), corrupt, influence, manipulate, Colloq
grease (someone's) palm: He attempted to fix a judge. 12
arrange, prearrange, predetermine, set up, contrive, Colloq
fiddle, pull strings, rig: We knew the winner as they had fixed
the race. 13 desexualize, desex, alter, cut; castrate,
emasculate, see to, eunuchize, geld, caponize; spay,
oophorectomize, ovariectomize: Animals that have been fixed are
usually more tractable. 14 retaliate against, wreak vengeance
on, hit or strike or get back at, get even with, even the score
with, make reprisal against, avenge oneself against, take
revenge or retribution on or against, repay, pay back, Colloq
settle (someone's) hash, cook (someone's) goose, sort (some)
out: I'll fix him for tattling to the teacher! 15 fix on or
upon. decide (on or upon), set, agree (on or upon), choose,
select, settle (on), determine, finalize: We can't fix on a
date till we know David's schedule. 16 fix up. a furnish,
supply, provide, accommodate, set up, Brit lay on: Her mother
fixed her up with a nice young man. Can you fix me up with a
room for the night? b (re)decorate, furnish, renovate, restore,
furbish, refurbish; straighten out or up, organize, do up, set
up: I like the way you've fixed up the basement. Please fix up
your room before the guests arrive. c clear up, resolve,
reconcile, sort out, settle: Have they fixed up their
differences yet? d repair, patch (up): Fix up my car so it
will run at least till I get home.

--n. 17 dilemma, predicament, difficulty, corner, double bind, catch-22, quandary, mess, (bad) situation, strait(s), Colloq pickle, jam, hole, (tight or tough) spot, pinch, US bind: You could help me get out of a terrible fix. 18 arrangement, prearrangement, fiddle; bribery, subornation; Slang chiefly US and Canadian set-up: The fix is on for her to win at roulette.

fixation n. mania, obsession, compulsion, fixed idea, id,e fixe, fetish, monomania, preoccupation, infatuation, Colloq hang-up, thing, kick: He has a health-food fixation.

fixed adj. 1 fastened, attached, anchored, set, secure(d), firm, stable, settled, immovable, immobile, stationary, rigid, rooted, solid; immobilized, stuck: While this part rolls, the other remains fixed. There was a fixed smile on her face. 2 established, secure, unalterable, steadfast, set, firm, unchangeable, unchanging, persistent, unfluctuating, unflagging, unwavering, inflexible, undeviating, unflinching, unblinking, rigid, rooted, immutable, definite, resolute, resolved, determined, intent; obstinate, stubborn: I admire Philip's fixed determination to persevere. 3 settled, resolved, agreed, regular, habitual, decided, arranged, prearranged, definite, established: We have a fixed date on which we meet each month. 4 arranged, prearranged, set-up, framed; crooked, dishonest, bent, Colloq rigged, put-up: He lost everything in a fixed poker game.

fixture n. 1 meet, meeting, event, match, occasion, occurrence: The Davis Cup tennis championship is an annual fixture. 2 appliance, accessory, fitting, equipment, apparatus, device, instrument, tool, gadget, contrivance, appendage, fitment: The landlord forbids the removal of any fixture.

fizz v. 1 bubble, effervesce, sparkle, froth, fizzle; hiss, sputter, sizzle: The champagne fizzed in my glass.

--n. 2 effervescence, sparkle, carbonation, bubbling, froth, fizzle, fizziness: All the fizz is gone from my drink! 3 hiss, hissing, sibilance: The steam escaped with a loud fizz. 4 US soda, soda water, club soda, seltzer, Dialect plain; soft drink, tonic: May I have a little fizz with my scotch? 5 champagne, Colloq Brit champers: We celebrated with oysters and a bottle of fizz.

fizzle v. 1 fizz: This headache powder makes the water fizzle. 2 Often, fizzle out. die (out or away), fizz out, expire, peter out, come to nothing or naught, fail, fall through, miscarry, abort, come to grief, misfire, collapse, cave in: Her grandiose plans for staging an extravaganza quickly fizzled out.

6.4 flabby...

=-

flabby adj. 1 limp, loose, lax, flaccid, slack, floppy, sagging, drooping, baggy, pendulous, quaggy, soft: After forty, he began to get a bit flabby around the middle. 2 weak, spineless, feeble, impotent, ineffective, ineffectual: The critics found the characterizations flabby and the plot non-existent.

flag° n. 1 banner, ensign, standard, pennant, banneret, pennon, streamer, bunting, jack, gonfalon, vexillum: Our flag was raised over the fort.

--v. 2 Often flag down. warn, signal, hail, inform, stop: A workman flagged us down because the bridge was out. 3 mark, tag, label, tab, identify, Brit tick (off), US and Canadian check (off): Flag the supplies you need that are listed here.

flagý v. 1 droop, sag, dangle, hang down, swag, festoon: In the doldrums the sails flagged soggily about the masts. 2 weaken, languish, falter, fail, dwindle, fade, deteriorate, waste away, degenerate, die, decline, diminish, decrease, lessen, abate, peter out, taper off, let up, ease (up), subside, slump, fall off, wane, ebb, sink, lag: When he reached eighty, he sometimes complained that his sexual appetite was flagging.

flagrant adj. blatant, brazen, bold, barefaced, audacious, arrant, glaring, outrageous, shocking, shameless, scandalous, atrocious, infamous, notorious, defiant, egregious, obvious, conspicuous, open, complete, out-and-out, utter, flagitious, monstrous, heinous, cruel, villainous, treacherous, nefarious, awful, gross, rank, inconsiderate, scornful, contemptuous; reprehensible; contemptible: Speeding shows a flagrant disregard for the safety of others.

flair n. 1 talent, ability, aptitude, feel, knack, genius, skill, mind, gift, faculty, propensity, bent, proclivity, facility: He showed a flair for music at an early age. 2 chic, panache, dash, ,lan, ,clat, style, stylishness, glamour, verve, sparkle, vitality, elegance, taste, Colloq savvy, pizazz or pizzazz, Old-fashioned oomph: She dresses with great flair.

flak n. flack, criticism, disapproval, censure, abuse, blame, aspersion, complaint(s), disapprobation, condemnation, Colloq brickbats: He took a lot of flak from the press for his comments.

flake n. 1 snowflake; scale, chip, bit, piece, scrap, particle, tuft, flock, scurf, fragment, shaving, sliver; wafer, lamina, Technical squama: A flake of slate caught him in the eye.

--v. 2 Often, flake off. scale, chip, fragment; Technical desquamate, exfoliate: The paint is flaking off on this side. 3 flake out. a collapse, go to or fall asleep, drop off (to sleep), pass out, keel over: After the game, I flaked out on the couch for ten hours. b become flaky, act crazy: He flaked out when he heard the new record.

flamboyant

adj. 1 elaborate, ornamented, ornate, decorated, embellished, baroque, rococo, florid: We chose a flamboyant wallpaper with purple peacocks. 2 extravagant, ostentatious, showy, gaudy, flashy, dazzling, brilliant, splendid, dashing, rakish, swashbuckling, jaunty; high, wide, and handsome: With a flamboyant display of swordsmanship, d'Artagnan dispatched his attacker.

flame n. 1 fire, blaze; conflagration: The flame began to lick about my feet. 2 passion, fervour, ardour, intensity, warmth, fire, zeal, feverishness, enthusiasm, eagerness: The flame of love is still burning. 3 boyfriend, girlfriend, lover, heartthrob, sweetheart, beau: Linda is an old flame of Trevor's.

--v. 4 burn, blaze, glow, flare: Flaming embers from the chimney set fire to the roof. Here and there civil unrest flamed up in the countryside.

flaming adj. obvious, conspicuous, blatant, flagrant, egregious, extravagant, Slang bloody, bleeding, blasted, damned, blooming: That flaming idiot was appointed to the Ministry of Defence!

flammable adj. inflammable, combustible, burnable: The warning on the tin says the contents are flammable.

flank n. 1 side, quarter; loin, haunch: The enemy was about to attack our flank. The pony drew back with trembling flanks.

--v. 2 edge, border, line: Armed guards flanked the entrance. 3 skirt, outmanoeuvre, outflank, circle, go (a)round: They have enough troops to flank our forces to the east.

flannel n. 1 flattery, humbug, nonsense, blarney, rubbish, prevarication, Colloq eyewash, hogwash, boloney, soft soap, weasel words, sweet talk, bull, crap, Brit waffle, cock, US bushwa; Taboo slang bullshit, horseshit, (load of) shit, Brit codswallop, bollocks or ballocks: Don't believe a thing Fordyce says - it's all flannel.

--v. 2 flatter, hedge, mislead, pull the wool over (someone's) eyes, Colloq soft-soap, sweet-talk, Taboo slang bullshit, horseshit, shit: They aren't sincere - they're just flannelling you.

flap v. 1 slap, slat, beat, flail, wave, wag, waggle, flutter, thresh, thrash, oscillate, vibrate: An ornithopter is an aeroplane that flaps its wings like a bird. The Union Jack was flapping in the breeze.

--n. 2 flapping, beat, wave, wag, waggle, flutter, oscillation: With a flap of its wings, the bird flew away. 3 fold, fly, lappet, lap, tail, tab: Leave a flap of cloth to cover the pocket. 4 upset, agitation, to-do, ado, commotion, panic, flurry, fuss, distress, Colloq state, tizzy, sweat, Brit kerfuffle: She's in a flap about what to wear to the dance. 5 quarrel, argument, dispute: There was a big flap over which car model to buy.

flare v. 1 Often, flare up. blaze or flame (up), flash, erupt, break out; dazzle, flicker, glimmer, shimmer, flutter: The fire flared up briefly when he tossed the paper onto it. 2 Often, flare out. spread (out or outwards), widen, broaden, expand, increase, enlarge, bulge, swell: The sides of the vase flare out near the top. 3 Often, flare up. anger, lose one's temper, chafe, seethe, fume, rage, throw a tantrum, become incensed or angry (etc.); blow up, burst forth, erupt, explode; Colloq get one's back up, get one's Irish or dander up, see red, get worked up, fly off the handle, lose one's cool, go out of or lose control, get hot under the collar, blow one's top: He flares up at the very mention of her name. Tempers flared when we touched on the subject of politics.

--n. 4 blaze, flame, burst, outburst, flash, glare, dazzle, incandescence, brilliance, luminosity: A bright orange flare erupted from the mouth of the cave. 5 beacon, light, signal, torch, flambeau, link: We prayed that the rescue party would see our flares. 6 spread, broadening, widening, expansion, swelling, bulge, increase, enlargement: I like that slight flare at the hem of the skirt.

flash n. 1 blaze, flame, flare, burst, dazzle, spark, sparkle, coruscation, fulguration, glitter, twinkle, twinkling, flicker, flickering, scintilla, scintillation, glint, shimmer, glimmer, gleam, beam, ray, shaft: There was a blinding flash of blue light and the little man was gone. 2 (sudden or momentary) display, stroke, show, manifestation, outburst, outbreak, sign, indication, exhibition; touch, hint, suggestion: She has occasional flashes of insight bordering on genius. 3 moment, (split) second, instant, twinkling (of an eye), trice, minute, Colloq two shakes (of a lamb's tail), jiffy, shake, before you can say 'Jack Robinson': In a flash he was at her side.

--v. 4 burn, blaze, flame, flare, burst (out), dazzle, spark, sparkle, coruscate, fulgurate, glitter, twinkle, flicker, scintillate, shimmer, glimmer, gleam, beam, glare, shine: The light flashed every eight seconds. 5 race, speed, dash, streak, flick, tear, rush, hurry, hasten, fly, zoom, shoot, bolt, whistle; run, sprint, dart, scuttle, scamper, Colloq scoot, skedaddle, take off, whiz or whizz: The train flashed by, doing about 100.

--adj. 6 dazzling, showy, ostentatious, smart, chic, Colloq swish, classy, ritzy, snazzy: Barbara's new car looks very flash. 7 See flashy, 1.

flashy adj. 1 flash, gaudy, flamboyant, glaring, fulgurous, showy, ostentatious, loud, garish, vulgar, cheap, meretricious, pretentious, tawdry, tasteless, Colloq tacky, Slang jazzy, US glitzy: He was attracted by her flashy appearance. 2 superficial, cosmetic, skin-deep, surface, shallow, glib, slick, facile, insubstantial, thin: The reviewer called it a flashy interpretation of the Bard.

flat adj. 1 level, horizontal, even, smooth, plane, unbroken, uninterrupted: I looked out over the flat surface of the frozen bay. 2 prostrate, prone, supine, lying (down), stretched out, recumbent, outstretched, reclining, spread-eagle(d), spread out, outspread: I lay flat on my back staring up at the sky. 3 collapsed, levelled, overthrown, laid low: The air raid had left all the buildings completely flat. 4 downright, outright, unqualified, unreserved, unconditional, absolute, categorical, explicit, unconditional, definite, firm, positive, out-and-out, unequivocal, peremptory, unambiguous, unmistakable, direct, complete, total: The request for clemency was met with the judge's flat refusal. 5 featureless, monotonous, dull, dead, uninteresting, unexciting, vapid, bland, empty, two-dimensional, insipid, boring, tiresome, lifeless, spiritless, lacklustre, prosaic, stale, tired, dry, jejune: The critics wrote that she turned in a very flat performance. 6 deflated, collapsed, punctured, ruptured, blown out: We had a flat tyre on the way. 7 unchangeable, unchanging, invariable, unvaried, unvarying, standard, fixed, unmodified, unmodifiable, Colloq US cookie-cutter: They charge the same flat rate for children, the elderly, and all between. 8 dead, insipid, stale, tasteless, flavourless, unpalatable; decarbonated, non-effervescent: My beer has gone flat. 9 exact, precise: It's a flat ten minutes from here to the railway station. 10 definite, certain, sure, irrevocable: I said I'm not going, and that's flat. 11 dull, slow, sluggish, inactive, depressed: Business has been a bit flat since Christmas. 12 dull, mat or matt or matte, unshiny, non-gloss(y), non-reflective, non-glare, unpolished: The table looks better with a flat finish. 13 lacking perspective, two-dimensional, lifeless, unrealistic: Some of his paintings seem pretty flat to me.

--n. 14 Often, flats. a US low shoes, loafers, sandals, Colloq flatties: Cynthia said that wearing flats makes her feet hurt.

b lowland(s), plain(s), tundra, steppe(s), prairie(s), savannah or savanna, heath, moor, pampas; mud-flat(s); shallow(s), shoal, strand; marsh, bog, fen, swamp: Before us was a large flat of barren ground. 15 rooms, suite, apartment: How can you afford to keep a flat in London?

--adv. 16 absolutely, completely, categorically, utterly, wholly, uncompromisingly, irrevocably, positively, definitely, directly; exactly, precisely, flatly: He has come out flat in favour of the status quo. When he started drinking, she left him flat. 17 flat out. a at maximum or top or full or breakneck speed, speedily, quickly, apace, on the run, rapidly, swiftly, at full speed or gallop, post-haste, hell for leather, like a bat out of hell, like a shot, like (greased) lightning, like the wind: Someone shouted 'Fire!' and we headed flat out for the exits. b flatly, unhesitatingly, directly, at once, immediately, forthwith, without delay; plainly, openly, baldly, brazenly, brashly: He asked to borrow some money and she told him 'No', flat out.

--n. 18 room(s), flat, suite (of rooms), chambers, tenement; garden flat, maisonette, penthouse, studio, Brit bedsitter, bedsit; accommodation, living quarters, Colloq Brit digs , US and Canadian apartment, furnished room, walk-up, duplex, triplex, garden apartment: We rented a two-bedroom flat in a good neighbourhood.

flatten   v. 1 level or even (off or out); smooth (out), press or iron (out), roll: The children's noses were flattened against the window of the toy shop. You will have to flatten the lawn if you want to play croquet on it. 2 knock down or over, knock out, floor, prostrate: Menges flattened the champion in the first round. 3 raze, tear down, demolish, level: The bomb flattened every house in the area.

flatter   v. 1 butter up, play up to, compliment, praise, fawn (on or upon), toady to, truckle to, court, curry favour with, Colloq flannel, soft-soap, oil; Slang shine or suck up to, boot-lick, Taboo kiss (someone's) arse, brown-nose: Flattering the boss won't get you a salary increase. 2 enhance, complement, suit, show to advantage: That colour flatters her complexion. 3 cajole, wheedle, coax, inveigle, beguile, sweet-talk: He was flattered into signing that contract.

flatterer n. toady, sycophant, fawner, wheedler, time-server, courtier, backscratcher, sponge, parasite, leech, hanger-on, sweet-talker, backslapper, truckler, lickspittle, Colloq yes-man; Slang bootlicker, Taboo brown-noser , Brit arse-kisser, arse-licker, bum-sucker, US ass-kisser, ass-licker: Don't believe anything that flatterer tells you.

flattering
adj. 1 complimentary, becoming, kind, enhancing: That is quite a flattering portrait of Dorian. 2 adulatory, laudatory, gratifying, fulsome, honeyed, sugary, fawning, ingratiating, unctuous, slimy, Chiefly Brit smarmy: Authors once wrote the most flattering dedications to their patrons.

flattery n. adulation, cajolery, blandishment, sweet talk, beguilement, wheedling, gloze, Colloq soft soap, Slang boot-licking, Taboo brown-nosing, Brit arse-kissing, arse-licking, bum-sucking, US ass-kissing, ass-licking: A judicious use of flattery moved him up the corporate ladder.

flaunt v. display, show (off), parade, flourish, exhibit, sport, disport, spotlight: They were like all the other nouveaux riches who flaunt their wealth in the stylish continental resorts.

flavour n. 1 taste, savour, tang, piquancy, zest; tastiness, savouriness; essence, extract, seasoning, flavouring, seasoning, spice; aroma, odour, scent; Rare sapor: Overcooking destroys the flavour of food. This sweet has a minty flavour. 2 character, spirit, nature, quality, property, mark, stamp, essence, characteristic, style, taste, feel, feeling, ambience or ambiance, sense, tinge, aroma, air, atmosphere, hint, suggestion, touch, soup‡on: We all agreed that the new play has a Shavian flavour.

--v. 3 season, spice: She flavours her teacakes with ginger.

flaw n. 1 fault, defect, imperfection, error, mistake, blemish, blot, stain, taint, (black) mark, damage, disfigurement, failing, weakness, weak spot; loophole: Flaws in the casting give this bell a dull sound. I can see flaws in your argument. 2 crack, break, breach, chink, chip, fracture, rupture, fissure, cleft, split, slit, cut, gash, rent, rift, tear, rip, puncture, hole, perforation: The tiniest flaw may reduce the value of a pot to a collector.

--v. 3 damage, harm, spoil, ruin, mark, weaken, disfigure: Careless workmanship has flawed many of the objects they produced. 4 discredit, stigmatize, damage, hurt, harm; taint, mar, stain, blot: Her reputation has already been flawed.

flawed   adj. damaged, harmed, marred, weakened, tainted, stained, tarnished, defective, imperfect, unsound, faulty: His flawed record prevented him from getting work.

flawless adj. 1 perfect, pristine, pure, uncorrupted, chaste, virgin, intact, whole, clean, immaculate, unsullied, unspoilt, unsoiled, impeccable, unblemished, faultless, undamaged, unimpaired, spotless, untarnished: Two flawless artefacts were found in the tomb. Many envied her flawless reputation. 2 undeniable, unassailable, unimpeachable, unquestionable, irrefutable, foolproof, sound, demonstrable: The prosecutor's evidence appears to be flawless.

flecked   adj. spotted, dappled, pied, (be)speckled, (be)sprinkled, dotted, marked, stippled, dusted, specked, spattered, freckled: His lank brown hair was flecked with grey.

flee   v. 1 quit, run away or off, escape, get away, fly, take flight, bolt, go (away), decamp, abscond, seek safety, avoid, make off, make an exit, make (good) one's escape, make a (clean) getaway, beat a (hasty) retreat, take to one's heels, show a clean pair of heels, turn tail, make tracks, make a run for it, cut and run, vanish, disappear, Brit levant, Colloq take off, scoot, make oneself scarce, beat it, clear out, fly the coop, skedaddle, scram, Brit scarper, Australian and New Zealand shoot through, US and Canadian take a (run-out) powder, skip (town), cut out, hightail it, Old-fashioned skiddoo; Slang split, Brit bugger off, do a moonlight flit, do a bunk, US and Canadian vamoose, lam out, take it on the lam, blow, bail out: He fled the town and was never seen again. When they saw what they had done, they fled. She fled to Brazil to avoid the tax authorities. 2 avoid, evade, shun, escape from, eschew: She fled the responsibilities of caring for her children.

fleece v. cheat, overcharge, swindle, bilk, defraud, victimize, plunder, strip, milk, rob, Colloq take, flimflam, gyp, diddle, bleed, take for a ride or to the cleaners, Slang rip off, chisel, pluck, rook, clip, soak: The gang stole credit cards and fleeced the companies out of millions.

fleet° n. armada, flotilla, navy, naval (task) force, task force, squadron, convoy, division: A fleet of submarines was sent to harass shipping in the Atlantic.

fleetý adj. swift, rapid, fast, speedy, quick, nimble, expeditious, agile: Nowadays, the fleetest transportation in a large city is by bicycle.

fleeting adj. transitory, fugitive, transient, temporary, passing, ephemeral, fugacious, evanescent, momentary, short-lived, fly-by-night, short, brief: I caught only a fleeting glimpse of the car as it sped by.

flesh n. 1 meat; tissue, muscle: We ate the flesh and threw away the fat, bones, and skin. 2 body, corporeality, flesh and blood, human nature, physicality; mortality: The spirit is willing but the flesh is weak. 3 flesh and blood. real, physical, corporeal, human, natural: He pointed out that he was flesh and blood, not a robot. 4 in the flesh. personally, in person, really, physically, bodily, alive, living, in life: She stood before me, in the flesh. 5 one's (own) flesh and blood. kin, kinsfolk or US and Canadian kinfolk, family, stock, blood, kith and kin, relatives, relations: How could she treat her own flesh and blood that way?

--v. 6 flesh out. substantiate, fill (in or out), give or lend substance or dimension to, incorporate, embody, colour: The idea is good, but it needs fleshing out.

flex n. 1 wire, lead, cord, cable, extension: Replace this flex before you have a short circuit.

--v. 2 bend, give, stretch, curve: The plastic tube can be flexed many times without breaking. 3 exercise, tense, tighten, contract: He flexed his muscles before lifting the weight.

flexibility

n. 1 pliability, pliancy or pliantness, elasticity, resilience or resiliency, suppleness, flexibleness, bendability, limberness, stretch, give, spring, springiness, ductility: Chemists improved the flexibility of the substance by adding more plasticizer. 2 conformability or conformableness, adaptability, versatility, adjustability or adjustableness, compliance or compliancy, manageability, tractability or tractableness, malleability, obedience, submissiveness, docility, agreeableness, conformity: Fletcher has the flexibility needed to move from one department to another.

flexible adj. 1 pliable, pliant, elastic, resilient, supple, bendable, limber, lithe, stretchy, stretchable, springy, extensible or extensile, ductile, flexile, tensile, yielding, willowy: The foil is a thin, flexible duelling sword. 2 modifiable, adaptable, conformable, compliant, malleable, obedient, tractable, manageable, cooperative, amenable, persuadable or persuasible: English seems to be an infinitely flexible language. Nicole is flexible in her attitude towards politics. 3 easy, facile, submissive, complaisant, docile: Discipline at the school might be a little too flexible.

flicker v. 1 twinkle, blink, waver, glimmer, glint, sparkle, shimmer, flare, gutter: A slight draught made the candles flicker. 2 flap, flutter, quiver, twitter, fluctuate, oscillate, shake, tremble, vibrate: Dozens of tiny flags flickered in the wind.

--n. 3 glimmer, glint, glimmering, sparkle, spark, twinkle, twinkling, gleam, flare, glare: With a dying flicker the torch went out. 4 hint, suggestion, trace, glimmer, vestige, scintilla, spark: I thought I detected a flicker of recognition when our eyes met.

flight° n. 1 flying, soaring, winging, excursion: The flight above the mountains was exhilarating. He is subject to wild flights of the imagination. 2 (air) voyage or journey or trip: We had a fine flight from New Delhi. 3 aeroplane, airliner, plane, aircraft: Our flight was delayed in Istanbul. 4 flock, swarm, cloud, covey (of grouse or partridge), bevy (of quail), skein (of geese), exaltation (of larks): A flight of migrating birds passed overhead. 5 feather: The flights on this dart are broken.

flightý   n. 1 escape, retreat, departure, exit, exodus, getaway, fleeing, bolting, Slang split: Mohammed's flight from Mecca to Medina in 622 is called a 'hegira'. 2 put to flight. chase or drive (off or away), disperse, send off or away, send packing, dismiss, rout, stampede: They put the Saracens to flight in a decisive battle. 3 take flight. flee, go or run away or off, abscond, desert, depart, (beat a) retreat, exit, bolt, decamp, withdraw, take to one's heels, show a clean pair of heels, Colloq light out, shove off, Brit scarper, US take a (run-out) powder, take it on the lam, lam out; Slang split, Brit do a bunk, do a moonlight flit, bugger off: The constable blew his whistle and the thief took flight.

flighty   adj. 1 fickle, frivolous, inconstant, capricious, fanciful, changeable, variable, mercurial, skittish, volatile, unstable, unsteady, giddy, wild: These flighty girls never stay in a job more than a month. 2 irresponsible, light-headed, rattle-brained, silly, hare-brained, dizzy, crazy, mad, reckless, thoughtless, Colloq nutty, screwy, dotty, dippy: It was flighty of Caroline to pour the brandy into the well.

flimsy   adj. 1 slight, frail, weak, insubstantial or unsubstantial, feeble, makeshift, fragile, frangible, breakable, rickety, ramshackle, dilapidated, jerry-built, gimcrack, slight, delicate: That flimsy ladder will never support me. He lives in a flimsy shack near the railway. 2 slight, trivial, paltry, feeble, unconvincing, weak, makeshift, implausible, unbelievable, unsatisfactory, insubstantial or unsubstantial, poor, inadequate: Her flimsy excuse was that she had a headache. 3 sheer, light, gauzy, transparent, thin, filmy, diaphanous, gossamer, delicate: She was wearing a flimsy pink blouse.

flinch   v. wince, draw back, withdraw, cower, cringe, recoil, start, quail, blench, shrink (from), shy (away) (from), dodge, duck: Each time he raised the whip, I flinched.

fling   v. 1 toss, pitch, throw, cast, hurl, heave, sling, propel, fire, let fly, send, Colloq lob, chuck: The smugglers had flung the contraband into the sea.

--n. 2 indulgence, debauch, binge, spree, party, Colloq blow-off: This will be my last fling before going into the army. 3 gamble, risk, venture, attempt, try, go, shot, Colloq crack, whirl, bash: Her brief fling at an acting career was unsuccessful.

flip v. 1 toss, flick, snap, flop, turn, twist, spin: Flip a coin to see who goes first. 2 anger, become angry or furious, go mad, go crazy, go berserk, US also flip out, Colloq go off the deep end, lose one's cool, Slang flip one's lid or Brit top, Brit freak, US freak out, lose it: Father flipped when I said I was quitting college.

flippancy n. 1 frivolousness, facetiousness, levity, light-heartedness, frivolity, jocularity, offhandedness, unseriousness: I was chagrined that she should treat my proposal of marriage with such flippancy. 2 disrespect, disrespectfulness, impudence, impertinence, irreverence, sauciness, rudeness, discourtesy, brazenness, brashness, pertness, insolence, Colloq cheek, cheekiness, lip, mouth, Slang Brit side: The headmaster will not tolerate flippancy on serious subjects such as religion and race relations.

flippant adj. 1 frivolous, facetious, light-hearted, jocular, offhand(ed), unserious, shallow, thoughtless, superficial; supercilious, belittling, scornful, dismissive: I don't appreciate your flippant remarks when I'm trying to be serious. 2 disrespectful, impudent, impertinent, irreverent, saucy, rude, pert, discourteous, brazen, brash, insolent, Colloq cheeky, flip: He disapproves of Charles's flippant attitude towards the royal family.

flirt v. 1 coquette, play or act the coquette, tease, tantalize, toy, lead on, dally, philander, Colloq Brit chat up; Slang US come on to: Amanda enjoys flirting with the boys. 2 flirt with. trifle or toy or play or tinker with, contemplate, consider, entertain, give a thought to, think about or of, Colloq Brit try on: Many teenagers flirt with the idea of leaving home.

--n. 3 coquette, tease, vamp, hussy, playgirl, minx; philanderer, playboy, Slang lady-killer, Old-fashioned wolf, sheik, masher, lounge lizard, Taboo slang cock-teaser, prick-teaser: They are both such flirts, I can't tell if their advances are genuine.

flirtatious
adj. coquettish, vampish, seductive, flirty, coy, philandering, provocative, enticing, alluring, amorous, come-hither: They exchanged many flirtatious looks across the table.

flit v. move, go, fly, flee, dart, skip, skim, flick, hop, whisk, flutter, flash: As a bee flits from flower to flower, she flits from man to man.

float v. 1 hover, poise, bob, waft, be suspended, hang; sail, drift, glide, swim: In the clear Caribbean waters, the boat seemed to float in mid-air. 2 launch, establish, set up, organize, found, initiate, get going or moving: The financiers are trying to float a new company. 3 negotiate, arrange, transact, bring or carry off, get, effect, consummate, Colloq pull off, swing: Were you able to float a loan on your house?

--n. 4 raft, Brit platform: I can swim out to the float. 5 buoy; pontoon: The bridge is supported by floats. 6 (parade) exhibit or display: Our parade float won first prize.

flock n. 1 body, company, group, band, pack, bunch, troop, set, collection, assembly, convoy, gathering, congregation, crowd, mass, mob, throng, gang, multitude, number, quantity, host, horde, swarm, drove; herd, flight, troupe, fleet, school; bevy: A huge flock of buyers sought bargains in the post-Christmas sales.

--v. 2 assemble, meet, collect, gather, come or go together, congregate, crowd, mass, mob, throng, pour, flood, swarm, herd (together), band together, go: People flocked around the speaker.

flog v. 1 whip, lash, horsewhip, strap, flagellate, flay, scourge, thrash, thresh, beat; chastise, castigate, punish: He will be flogged, then drawn and quartered. He was flogged for stealing a loaf of bread. 2 sell; promote, publicize: Her latest job is flogging encyclopedias door-to-door.

flood n. 1 inundation, deluge, overflow(ing), d‚bƒcle: The hurricane was accompanied by a devastating flood. 2 torrent, cataract, freshet, overflow, stream, spate: A flood of lava poured down the mountain. 3 abundance, deluge, overflowing, surge, outpouring, torrent, tide, tidal wave, stream, rush, flow, glut, surfeit, satiety, profusion, over-abundance, superabundance, nimiety, plethora, excess, surplus, superfluity: A flood of invective poured from her lips.

--v. 4 inundate, submerge, overflow, swamp, immerse, deluge, pour over, drown: The water flooded everything in the basement. 5 overwhelm, glut, oversupply, saturate, choke: The market is being flooded with cheap imitations. 6 sweep, flow, swarm, surge, rush, crowd, pour: As soon as the doors opened, the people flooded in. 7 permeate, fill, engulf, cover, pour into or throughout or over: I open the curtain and sunlight floods the room.

floor   n. 1 flooring, parquet, boarding, planking, Nautical or colloq deck: The floor is mopped once a week. 2 storey, level; deck: On which floor is your flat? 3 minimum, bottom, base, lower limit, lowest (level): Owing to inflation, the wage floor was raised. Share prices went through the floor in today's trading.

--v. 4 knock over or down, bowl over, prostrate, fell, overthrow, bring down, (make) fall; beat, defeat, conquer, destroy, rout, overwhelm, crush, whip, trounce, thrash, drub, best, worst: The champion was floored by a blow to the head. 5 stump, bewilder, baffle, dumbfound or dumfound, confuse, confound, disconcert, nonplus, perplex, puzzle, astound, astonish, amaze, surprise, shock: Alexandra was floored when she received a gift from her ex-husband.

flop   v. 1 collapse, drop (down), fall (down), tumble, topple, plump down, plop down, flounce down: I was so exhausted that I flopped into bed at once. 2 flap, wave, swing: The door, unfastened, flopped back and forth in the wind. 3 fail, fall flat, come to naught or nothing, founder, Colloq fold, US bomb: The musical flopped on the first night.

--n. 4 failure, fiasco, disaster, non-starter, d,bƒcle, US fizzle, Colloq dud, washout, clanger, US lead balloon, bomb; Slang lemon, Brit cock-up, damp squib: His idea for a new corkscrew was a complete flop.

flounce   n. 1 frill, furbelow, peplum, ruffle, ornament, valance, trimming: The dress has decorative flounces round the skirt.

--v. 2 fling, toss, bounce, twist, strut, toss, parade, march, storm, stamp, US sashay: She flounced out of the room in high dudgeon.

flounder v. grope, blunder, stumble, tumble, struggle, stagger, plunge about: We floundered about in the dark till someone found the light switch.

flourish v. 1 prosper, thrive, grow, develop, luxuriate, bloom, blossom, flower, bear fruit, fructify, boom, burgeon or bourgeon, mature, ripen, increase, succeed, get ahead, do or fare well, make good; go up or rise in the world; Slang go great guns: We understand that Amy's medical practice has flourished. 2 wave, wield, brandish, wag, swing, twirl, flaunt, vaunt, swagger, swish, shake: The band-leader flourished his baton.

--n. 3 decoration, embellishment, floridness, floweriness, ornamentation, elaboration, adornment, frill, embroidery, curlicue, furbelow: His signature is characterized by all these flourishes. 4 fanfare, display, show, showiness, dash, gesturing, wave: With a flourish of his hand, the king signalled the tourney to begin.

flourishing
adj. luxuriant, lush, thriving, prospering, blooming, blossoming, fruitful, flowering, burgeoning or bourgeoning, successful, prosperous, booming, growing, increasing: Patel runs a flourishing flower shop in Bicester.

flout v. deride, scorn, disdain, contemn, spurn, decry, denounce, misprize, blaspheme, depreciate, degrade, abase, belittle, minimize, deprecate, disparage, denigrate, mock, jeer, guy, ridicule, scoff, sneer, gibe or jibe (at), taunt, twit, insult, affront, Archaic fleer; Colloq put down, chaff, rag, knock: When introduced in the sixties, miniskirts brazenly flouted convention.

flow v. 1 stream, pour, run, rush, course, surge, move, go, proceed, progress, drift; gush, glide, purl, roll, ripple, trickle, gurgle, bubble; swirl, whirl, circulate: People continue to flow past the window. The Thames flows silently to the sea. 2 rush, gush, surge, well (forth), stream, spring, issue, spout, spurt, squirt, spew, flood, cascade, fall, rain; brim, overflow, spill, teem: Open the gates to allow water to flow into the lock. A stream of insults flowed from his lips. Her tears flowed like wine. 3 issue, originate, come, emanate, rise, begin: With the dam repaired, water will once again flow from the reservoir. The authority of the state constitutions does not flow from Congress. 4 spread, overspread, cover: The paint flowed effortlessly onto the canvas.

--n. 5 rush, gush, surge; current, course, stream, run, movement, drift: A dam blocks the flow of water here. The sound of a shot interrupted the flow of conversation. 6 abundance, superabundance, flood, plethora, excess, overflow(ing), deluge, tide, supply; plenty: London experiences an unending flow of tourists.

flower   n. 1 blossom, bloom, floret or floweret, bud, Technical efflorescence: He brought me flowers for my birthday. 2 cream, best, pick, ,lite, crŠme de la crŠme, finest, choicest: The flower of the city's youth were put to death by the wicked caliph.

--v. 3 blossom, bloom, bud, burgeon or bourgeon, come out, open, unfold, Technical effloresce: The century plant was so called because it was thought to flower only once every hundred years.

flowery   adj. florid, ornate, fancy, elaborate(d), decorated, ornamented, overwrought, embellished, rococo, baroque, arabesque, euphuistic, Gongoristic, Ossianic, grandiloquent, bombastic, inflated, pompous, affected, artificial, high-flown, showy: Many find his flowery style of writing difficult to stomach.

fluctuate v. vary, change, alternate, see-saw, swing, vacillate, undulate, waver, oscillate, shift: Prices fluctuate according to supply and demand.

fluctuation

n. Sometimes, fluctuations. variation(s), change(s), alternation(s), swing(s), vacillation(s), wavering(s), oscillation(s), undulation(s), ups and downs, instability, unsteadiness, inconstancy: We can expect fluctuation in temperatures during the coming week.

fluency n. articulateness, eloquence, control, command, ease, grace, effortlessness, facility, felicity, smoothness, polish, slickness, glibness, volubility: His extemporaneous speeches are marked by an enviable fluency.

fluent adj. articulate, eloquent, well-spoken, felicitous, graceful, facile, easy, natural, effortless, ready, smooth, polished, flowing, voluble, glib, slick; expressive: She is a fluent speaker of Spanish.

fluff n. 1 down, fuzz, feather(s), thistledown, floss, lint, dust, dust-ball, fuzz ball: Be sure you clean the fluff from under the beds. 2 bit of fluff. poppet, girl (friend), mistress, Slang bit of all right, (bit of) crumpet, (bit of) skirt or stuff, Old-fashioned Brit popsy: Bickerley keeps some fluff on the side. 3 blunder, error, slip, mistake, Colloq howler, Brit bloomer, US and Canadian blooper: They showed a video of the fluffs actors make during recordings.

--v. 4 muddle, spoil, ruin, make a mess of, bungle, botch, Colloq foul up, screw up, mess up, US snafu, Slang Brit cock up, balls up, US ball up, Taboo fuck up: I have a funny story about how Barrymore fluffed Hamlet's soliloquy. 5 fluff up. puff up, shake out or up, aerate: He doesn't like the pillows on his bed fluffed up.

fluffy adj. 1 soft, downy, puffy, whipped up, light, airy, puffy, feathery, wispy: Beat the egg whites till they are fluffy. 2 frivolous, superficial, trivial, unimportant, airy, thin, lightweight, light, insubstantial, gossamer, Brit airy-fairy: Mr Piffle is too fluffy-headed to offer anything useful.

fluid n. 1 liquid, solution, liquor, ichor; gas, vapour: It might surprise some to learn that physicists consider gases to be fluids.

--adj. 2 liquid, flowing, running, runny, watery, aqueous: Once the metal has become fluid, it is poured into the moulds. 3 changeable, mutable, flexible, adjustable, variable, pliant, unformed, formless, unfixed, unstatic or non-static, plastic, protean, mercurial, mobile, unstable, shifting, uncertain, indefinite, unsettled: The situation is fluid and the decision could go either way.

fluke   n. lucky or successful stroke, stroke of (good) luck, lucky or big break, (happy) accident, quirk or twist of fate, windfall, fortuity, serendipity: If he won first prize, it was by a fluke.

flummox   v. confuse, baffle, perplex, bewilder, confound, throw into confusion, stymie, stump, puzzle, mystify, fox, deceive, hoodwink, nonplus: We were completely flummoxed by the licensing requirements.

flunkey   n. 1 servant, retainer, lackey, footman, menial, minion, hireling, underling, subordinate, inferior; slave; Colloq dogsbody, Slang US and Canadian gofer: A company flunkey drove me to the airport. 2 toady, hanger-on, yes-man, jackal, doormat, stooge, lickspittle, sycophant, Colloq US and Canadian apple-polisher, Taboo brown-noser: He has a collection of flunkeys waiting about for hand-outs.

flurry   n. 1 activity, commotion, ado, to-do, fuss, upset, hubbub, pother, stir, excitement, disturbance, agitation, tumult, whirl, furore, bustle, hurry, hustle, flutter, fluster; burst, outburst; Colloq tizzy: I was happy to leave the worry and flurry of the city. There was a brief flurry of activity at the Stock Exchange today.

--v. 2 confuse, bewilder, agitate, put out, disturb, excite, fluster, disconcert, upset, perturb, unsettle, shake (up), Colloq rattle: He was quite flurried by the arrival of the police.

flush°   v. 1 blush, redden, crimson, glow, burn, colour (up): When he told her she was pretty she flushed a bit. 2 Often, flush out. rinse, wash (out or away), douse, douche, hose down, flood, drench, clean out, cleanse, purge, discharge, empty: Oil tankers are flushed out far from shore. 3 animate, stir, inflame, impassion, quicken, arouse, excite, elate, encourage, cheer, delight, thrill, gladden: Suzie was flushed with the success of having got the job.

--n. 4 blush, redness, bloom, rosiness, colour, blood, glow, radiance: When he was asked what had happened to the money, a flush rose to his cheek. 5 flood, deluge, drenching, soaking, overflow, inundation, rush, gush, surge, stream, flow: The flush of water washed away all the debris. 6 thrill, excitement, passion, quickening, arousal, stir, stirring, animation, elation, euphoria, delight, encouragement, thrill, tingle: In the first flush of success, they were overwhelmed with orders. He felt a flush come over him when he won the race.

flushý adj. 1 (on the same) plane or level (with), even, smooth, flat, square, true, continuous; adjacent, next to: See that the tabletop is flush with the countertop. The mirror should be flush against the wall. 2 full, overflowing, replete, abundant: Turn off the water when it is flush with the top of the basin. 3 solvent, well supplied, comfortable; well-to-do, well off, well-found, wealthy, rich, prosperous, affluent, moneyed, Colloq well-heeled, on Easy Street, in the money, US in the chips; Slang loaded, rolling (in money or it): He's flush enough to take us all out to dinner.

--adv. 4 even(ly), square(ly), levelly, plumb, directly: Cut this branch off flush.

fluster v. 1 agitate, stir (up), discompose, discomfit, discomfort, disconcert, shake (up), upset, disquiet, discommode, bother, put out or off, disturb, perturb, flurry, flutter, make nervous, throw off, distract, confuse, baffle, confound, puzzle, perplex, befuddle, bewilder, daze, dazzle, Colloq rattle, throw, discombobulate, hassle, faze: Don't be flustered by her rude manner.

--n. 2 agitation, upset, discomfort, disquiet, bother, disturbance, commotion, perturbation, dither, flurry, flutter, nervousness, distraction, confusion, bafflement, befuddlement, perplexity, bewilderment: All this fluster came about through the absence of a coherent plan.

flutter v. 1 flap, flop, fluctuate, vacillate, wave, waver, oscillate: The paper streamers fluttered in the breeze. 2 flit, flicker, flitter, hover, dance; fuss: We shall never get done if you keep fluttering about. 3 tremble, shake, quiver, dither, jump, vibrate, twitch: She is fluttering with anticipation waiting for the postman.

--n. 4 fluttering, flapping, flopping, fluctuation, fluctuating, vacillation, vacillating, wave, waving, oscillation, oscillating, trembling, quiver, quivering: The slightest flutter of her fan communicates volumes. 5 See fluster, 2.

flux n. instability, change, mutation, modification, fluctuation, unrest, swing, swinging, wavering, movement, motion, oscillation, indecision, indecisiveness: The economic indicators are in a constant state of flux.

fly v. 1 take wing, take flight, take to the air, wing, soar, sail, hover; flutter, flit, flap: A stork flew overhead. Daedalus taught Icarus to fly. 2 Also, fly away or off. take flight, depart, leave, flee, decamp, bolt, run away or off, escape, make (good) one's escape, take to one's heels, show a clean pair of heels, rush or nip off or out or away, (make a) run (for it), go or get away or off, abscond, make a getaway, cut and run, beat a (hasty) retreat, take off, scoot, Colloq light out, beat it, clear out or off, skedaddle, scram, US cut out, hightail (it), take it on the lam, take a (run-out) powder, lam out, take to the hills, take to the woods; Slang Brit scarper, bugger off, US vamoose, blow: She flew off before I could get her telephone number. 3 hasten, hurry, rush, run, race, dash, sprint, tear, scamper, scoot, Colloq make tracks: I must fly if I'm to catch the train. 4 pass (by), elapse, go (by), expire, run its course, slip or slide by or away: Time flies quickly when you're having fun. 5 aviate, pilot; jet: Parker flies his own plane. I flew down to Paris with him. 6 fly in the face of. flout, defy, go against, contemn, scorn, scoff at, oppose, go or run counter to, counter, counteract, countervail, countermine, contradict, contravene, thumb one's nose at, Colloq Brit cock a snook at: His actions fly in the face of conventional behaviour. 7 fly off the handle. fly into a rage or fury or temper or passion, lose one's temper, have a fit or tantrum, be fit to be tied, go berserk, go crazy or mad, explode, Colloq lose or blow one's cool, blow one's top, hit or go through the roof, US hit the ceiling, blow one's stack, get worked up (over); Slang blow a fuse or a gasket, flip (one's lid), have a haemorrhage, Brit flip one's top: Rudolf flies off the handle at the slightest provocation. 8 let fly. a throw, toss, cast, hurl, fling, heave, pitch, lob, sling, chuck, shoot, fire (off), let rip, discharge, launch, propel, let go or off: They let fly a volley of arrows. b let go with, let (someone) have it, lash out, vent one's spleen, lose one's temper, burst out or forth, burst into, Colloq pull no punches, tear into: That was the last straw, and she really let fly at him.

--n. 9 Often, Brit flies. flap, fly front, Brit zip, US zipper: He was embarrassed to find his flies were open. 10 fly in the ointment. hitch, snag, impediment, obstacle, obstruction, problem, difficulty, drawback, detraction, rub, hindrance, bugbear, bogey, bugaboo, Offensive nigger in the woodpile: The one fly in the ointment is that my mother won't give me permission to go.

fly-by-night
adj. 1 temporary, short-lived, transitory, fugitive, ephemeral, transient, fleeting, passing, brief, impermanent, here today, gone tomorrow: That fly-by-night operation was in business for less than a month. 2 unreliable, untrustworthy, disreputable, irresponsible, dubious, questionable; shifty, dishonest, sharp, crooked, Colloq shady, Brit cowboy: Guarantees on double glazing are worthless if installed by some fly-by-night company.

6.5 foam...
=-

foam n. 1 bubbles, froth, spume, lather, suds; effervescence, sparkle, carbonation, fizz: The foam leaves spots when it dries.

--v. 2 bubble, froth, spume, lather, suds, soap up: Watch the solution foam when I drop this tablet into it.

focal adj. central, focused, concentrated, convergent, centred, centralized: The light rays come together at this focal point. Harris's address was the focal point of the conference.

focus n. 1 centre, concentration, focal point, heart, core, target, convergence, hub, nave; cynosure: Why should Anita always be the focus of attention? 2 in focus. clear, distinct, well- or sharply defined: With the telescope in focus, you feel as if you can almost touch the distant shore. 3 out of focus. unclear, indistinct, blurred, blurry, fuzzy, woolly: The photos are so out of focus that I can't tell who's who.

--v. 4 concentrate, centre, converge, meet, pinpoint, spotlight; bring into focus; Colloq zero in: Without distractions, we can focus on the problem at hand.

fog n. 1 mist, haze, smog, vapour, cloud, Colloq pea-souper: Our flight was grounded because of fog. 2 trance, daze, stupor, brown study, confused state; coma: He's in a fog and didn't hear a word you said.

--v. 3 dim, obscure, cloud, bedim, becloud, blind, stifle: The purpose of all that verbiage is merely to fog the issue. 4 Usually, befog. bewilder, mystify, perplex, confuse, muddle, puzzle, nonplus: I was completely befogged by the technical language he used. 5 Also, fog up or over. mist over or up, cloud up or over, shroud: My bathroom mirror fogs when I take a hot shower.

fogy n. Also, fogey. Usually, old fogy or fogey. conservative, relic, Colloq fuddy-duddy, fossil, antique, stick-in-the-mud, back number, square: That old fogy still dances the foxtrot.

foible n. weakness, imperfection, weak point, fault, frailty, shortcoming, flaw, defect, failing, blemish, infirmity; peculiarity, idiosyncrasy, quirk, crotchet, eccentricity, preoccupation, kink, Colloq hang-up, bug: One of her foibles is that she loves junk food.

foil° v. thwart, offset, defeat, baffle, balk, parry, frustrate, counter, check, impede, hamper, outwit, circumvent, checkmate, daunt, disconcert, discomfit, disappoint, pull the rug out from under (someone), cut the ground from under someone's feet, nullify, nip in the bud, countervail (against), Brit put a spoke in (someone's) wheel, Colloq clip (someone's) wings, cut (someone) down to size, spoil (someone's) game, Chiefly US and Canadian faze: The villain and his evil plan were again foiled by the arrival of the sheriff.

foilý n. layer, lamina, lamination, sheet, membrane, film, coating, flake, scale, wafer: Cigarettes once came packaged in tin foil.

foist v. palm or pass off, impose, unload, put (off), push (off), Colloq lay (off), Brit fob off: Don't try to foist those fake paintings on me!

fold v. 1 bend, ply, double (over or up), overlap, crease, pleat, gather, crimp: Fold the letter before putting it into the envelope. 2 enclose, envelop, enfold, wrap, enwrap, clasp, clip, embrace, hug, gather: He folded her in his arms. 3 give way, collapse, fail, close (up or down), shut down, go out of business, go bankrupt, Colloq go under, go broke, go bust, Brit go to the wall: The company folded and ten employees were made redundant.

--n. 4 crease, wrinkle, crinkle, pucker, pleat, gather, crimp, overlap, lap: The folds will remain crisp if you use starch when ironing.

folk n. people, tribe, (ethnic) group, clan, race; society, nation, (general) public, populace, population, citizenry: Archaeologists refer to these people as the 'Beaker Folk'. Some folks disliked the performance.

follow v. 1 go or come after or next; go or walk or tread or move behind, bring up the rear, Colloq string or tag along: You go on ahead and I'll follow shortly. Please see the comments that follow. 2 adhere to, cleave to, support, believe in, accept, adopt, conform to, comply with, obey, be guided by, be modelled after or on, observe, heed, mind, go along with, reflect, mirror, echo, imitate, copy, mimic, ape: This newspaper follows strict party policy. 3 attend, accompany, escort, go (along) with; serve: Mary's little lamb followed her everywhere. 4 chase, pursue, dog, hunt (down), stalk, run down, track, trail, tail, trace, shadow: The detective swore to follow him to the ends of the earth. 5 succeed, supersede, step into the shoes of, take the place of, replace, supplant: Who followed Henry VIII on the throne? 6 practise, pursue, engage in, carry on, occupy oneself with, apply or dedicate or devote oneself to, cultivate: After the war he followed a career as a teacher. 7 result from, ensue, issue, flow, arise, develop: The conclusion follows logically from the premise. 8 understand, fathom, comprehend, get, grasp, see, catch, appreciate, take in, keep up with, Colloq dig: Were you able to follow everything in that lecture? 9 watch, be a fan or aficionado of, pursue, take an interest in, keep up with, keep abreast of, cheer or root for, admire: He follows international yacht racing. 10 follow through (on). persist or persevere, continue, perform, conclude, realize, consummate, pursue, carry out, see through, make good, discharge, adhere to, keep: I only hope she follows this through and delivers the goods. 11 follow up (on). a pursue, go after, track, investigate, pursue, check (out), check up (on), inquire, make inquiries, look into: MacGregor is very good at following up on the most obscure references. b pursue, prosecute, reinforce, consolidate, support, buttress, augment, bolster, ensure: The Romans followed up their success with an attack on Olbia.

follower n. 1 disciple, adherent, student, pupil, apprentice, prot,g,(e): They were followers of Buddha. 2 attendant, henchman, servant, retainer, bodyguard, myrmidon: Louie walked in with two of his followers. 3 supporter, devotee, fan, aficionado, promoter, enthusiast, booster, advocate, proponent, US rooter, Colloq groupie: She is a faithful follower of The Dirty Knees, a rock group.

follow-through
n. perseverance, diligence, persistence, steadfastness, endurance, stamina, indefatigableness, sedulousness, sedulity, pursuance, tenacity, resolve, determination, Colloq US stick-to-it-iveness: One needs imagination for new ideas but follow-through to make them succeed.

follow-up n. reinforcement, support, backup, bolstering; consolidation: The failure of the sales campaign was attributed to lack of follow-up.

folly n. 1 foolishness, nonsense, absurdity, daftness, silliness, preposterousness, absurdness, senselessness, fatuousness, fatuity, rashness, stupidity, asininity, inanity, nonsensicalness, idiocy, imbecility, irrationality, lunacy, insanity, madness, craziness, eccentricity, weak-mindedness, feeble-mindedness, simple-mindedness, muddle-headedness, thickheadedness, stolidity, stolidness, obtuseness, brainlessness, Colloq dumbness, dopiness, nuttiness, US and Canadian kookiness: They saw the folly of fighting against such enormous odds. It would be folly to leave in this storm. 2

absurdity, mistake, blunder, error, faux pas, gaffe, Colloq goof, fluff: What follies have been committed in the name of honour!

foment v. rouse, stir or whip up, awaken, waken, provoke, incite, instigate, initiate, prompt, start, motivate, inspire, work up, inflame, fan the flames (of), kindle, galvanize, rally, excite, stimulate, encourage, promote, foster, forward, further, advance, cultivate, sow the seeds of, spur, goad, egg on, urge: He is always fomenting ill will against the management.

fond adj. 1 tender, loving, affectionate, warm, adoring, caring: She clasped him in a fond embrace. 2 foolish, bootless, empty, vain, na‹ve: She had fond hopes of his being elected. 3 fond of. partial to, (having a) liking (for), soft on or about, affectionate towards, attached to, having a fancy or taste for, fancying, predisposed or inclined to or towards; addicted to, Colloq hooked on: She is inordinately fond of chocolate.

fondle v. caress, stroke, pet, pat, touch, cuddle, snuggle; handle, touch: See that couple over there fondling one another? He fondled his dagger.

fondly adv. affectionately, lovingly, tenderly, warmly, adoringly, caressingly: Martin regarded his wife fondly.

food n. nourishment, nutriment, aliment, sustenance, subsistence; foodstuffs, edibles, eatables, viands, bread, victuals, rations, provisions, comestibles, Brit commons, Colloq grub, eats, chow, Brit scoff, prog: Without any food for days, the survivors were near starvation.

fool n. 1 simpleton, ninny, ninny-hammer, nincompoop, ass, jackass, dunce, dolt, halfwit, numskull or numbskull, blockhead, bonehead, pinhead, silly, feather-brain, loon, goose, booby, jay, goon, mooncalf, idiot, ignoramus, dim-wit, nitwit, halfwit, imbecile, moron, clod, clodpole, clodpoll, clodpate, oaf, Psychology retardate, Scots gomerel, Colloq birdbrain, dumb-bell, fat-head, chump, twit, knuckle-head, chucklehead, nit, twerp or twirp, Brit pillock, US and Canadian jerk, retard; Slang sap, dope, Brit git, Australian boofhead: He's such a fool he'll believe anything. 2 (court) jester, clown, comic, comedian or comedienne, entertainer, zany, buffoon, merry andrew, farceur, joker, jokester, droll, Punch, Punchinello, pierrot, harlequin: In Shakespeare's plays, the fool is often the wisest character. 3 butt, dupe, gull, victim, cat's-paw, Colloq chump, greenhorn, (easy) mark, US fall guy; Slang pigeon, sucker, stooge, Brit mug: His co-workers liked to make a fool out of him.

--v. 4 trick, deceive, take in, swindle, defraud, hoax, cheat, fleece, cozen, hoodwink, bluff, dupe, gull, humbug, delude, mislead, make a fool of; pull the wool over (someone's) eyes, have (someone) on, pull (someone's) leg, tease, twit, Archaic chouse; Colloq kid, con, snow, do a snow job on, bamboozle, put one or something over on, pull something or a fast one on, Brit twist, Chiefly US and Canadian josh; Slang pluck, Brit nobble: When he said the diamond was fake, he certainly fooled me. I think she was fooling when she said she'd inherited millions. 5 joke, jest, banter, tease, twit, feign, fake, pretend, make believe, Colloq kid: She insists that she is not fooling but dead serious. 6 fool with or around or about (with). play (around or about) (with), toy or trifle (with), mess or fiddle (around or about) (with), monkey (around or about) with, meddle (with), tamper with, fribble (with): Please stop fooling with the dials on the radio. 7 fool around or about. a play or mess around or about, gambol, frolic, romp, cavort: Stop fooling around and get serious. b waste or fritter away or squander or kill time, fribble, loiter, dawdle, idle, Brit potter (about), lark or muck about or around, US putter around or about, Colloq footle: She's always fooling around instead of getting on with her work.

foolhardy adj. rash, imprudent, impetuous, reckless, brash, venturesome, bold, cheeky, daring, audacious, temerarious, adventurous, daredevil, incautious, hotheaded, careless, heedless, devil-may-care, hasty, thoughtless, unthinking, irresponsible, wild, madcap, Colloq US and Canadian nervy, Slang gutsy: It is foolhardy to go scuba diving without a companion.

foolish adj. 1 senseless, incautious, imprudent, impolitic, indiscreet, unwise, injudicious, ill-considered, ill-advised, misguided, short-sighted, impetuous, headlong, rash, brash, reckless, hasty, heedless, unwary, foolhardy, thoughtless, mindless: Standing under a tree in a thunderstorm is foolish. 2 nonsensical, stupid, asinine, inane, silly, fatuous, fatuitous, dim-witted, scatterbrained, hare-brained, crazy, mad, insane, demented, irrational, erratic, unstable, crack-brained, feather-brained, bird-brained, simple-minded, light-headed, muddle-headed, numskulled or numbskulled, addle-pated, rattle-brained, bemused, confused, feeble-minded, moronic, idiotic, imbecilic, halfwitted, dull-witted, slow-witted, witless, brainless, empty-headed, blockheaded, boneheaded, thickheaded, obtuse, stolid, Colloq dumb, balmy or Brit barmy, loony, nuts, nutty, batty, dopey or dopy, soft (in the head), dim, thick, dippy, dotty, dizzy, Brit potty, daft, Slang cuckoo, goofy, screwy, wacky: Tracy was foolish to believe him when he said he loved her. 3 preposterous, ridiculous, absurd, irrational, illogical, unreasonable, ludicrous, wild: They have some foolish idea about building a hotel in Antarctica.

foolproof adj. safe, certain, sure, trustworthy, dependable, reliable, infallible, unfailing, guaranteed, warranted, Colloq sure-fire: She claims to have a foolproof way of preventing unwanted pregnancies.

footing n. 1 foundation, basis, base, ground(s): The events put our entire relationship on a new footing. 2 standing, status, level, condition, position, terms, state, rank: The two departments are on an equal footing as far as funding is concerned. 3 foothold, toe-hold; balance, stability: She lost her footing on the icy pavement and down she went.

footstep n. 1 step, footfall, tread: I recognized her footstep. 2 Usually, footsteps. footprint(s), track, trail, trace, spoor, footmark(s); tradition, example, way of life: He followed in his master's footsteps.

for prep. 1 representing, championing; in favour of, Brit on or US and Canadian also in behalf of, on the side of, in support of, in the service of, as a service to, for the benefit of, pro: Are you for or against the candidate? She did it for herself. 2 in search or quest of, seeking, looking for or after, after, with a view or an eye to: We're just here for the beer. 3 instead of, in place of, representing, as a replacement for, Brit on or US and Canadian in behalf of; in return or exchange for, in compensation or recompense or payment or repayment for, in requital for: I am acting for my father. This cheque is for the toaster. Will you accept nothing for your pains? 4 for the treatment of, as a remedy for, against; for the purpose or object of: This medication is for skin infections only. It's for your own good. 5 for the sake of, Brit on or US and Canadian also in behalf of, in the interest of: Would you really do that for me? 6 in the direction of, to, towards, into: Head for the hills! 7 to save, in the interest or benefit of, for the sake or benefit of, conducive to; because of, on account of, by reason of: Every summer, they went to Carlsbad for their health. She hated him for what he represented. 8 to go to, destined for: I am leaving for Tierra del Fuego tomorrow. 9 suitable or suited for, fit or fitted or fitting for, appropriate for, proper for: I am not sure that this colour is for you. Is it right for me to speak out now? 10 for the duration of; over (the extent of), during, in the course of, throughout, through: She stayed for a week. 11 despite, in spite of, notwithstanding, allowing for: For all his complaining, he seemed satisfied. 12 as for. regarding, in regard to, as regards, respecting, concerning, as far as (something or someone) is concerned: As for Betty, let her do as she likes.

--conj. 13 because, since, as, inasmuch as, seeing that, owing or due to the fact that: I was unable to see him, for he was out of the office.

forbid   v. prohibit, ban, hinder, stop, exclude, debar, preclude, prevent; outlaw, interdict, disallow, proscribe, taboo; veto: I was forbidden from entering. They forbid smoking in the classrooms.

forbidding
adj. 1 repellent, repulsive, offensive, odious, abhorrent: In his long cloak and mask, he presented a forbidding appearance. 2 hostile, unfriendly, stern, harsh, menacing, threatening, ominous, dangerous, bad, nasty, ugly, unpleasant: The coast here is rocky and forbidding. The old crone gave him a forbidding look and we cringed.

force   n. 1 power, might, energy, strength, potency, vigour, intensity, violence, impact; dynamism, pressure: The force of the blow knocked me down. 2 coercion, pressure, constraint, duress, compulsion, arm-twisting: When persuasion failed, the guards resorted to force. 3 troops, soldiers, army: NATO forces are on manoeuvres. 4 weight, persuasiveness, persistence, cogency, effectiveness, efficacy, strength, validity, significance, value: The force of his argument was sufficient to convince us. 5 meaning, import, significance: Are they able to cope with the full force of the word 'God'? 6 in force. in effect, effective, in operation, operative, valid, binding, current: The ancient customs still remain in force. The law came into force at midnight.

--v. 7 make, oblige, require, compel, coerce, exact, constrain, enforce, impel, intimidate, pressure or Brit also pressurize, press, dragoon, twist (someone's) arm, Colloq bulldoze, put the squeeze on (someone): Each of us was forced to dig his own grave. 8 push, drive, thrust, propel; prise or prize, break, wrench, crack, jemmy, US pry: The tornado forced the chair through the wall. He forced open the safe and took the money. 9 exact, extort, extract, wrest, wring, drag: The CIA tried to force a confession from her.

forced adj. artificial, unnatural, contrived, stilted, calculated, studied, laboured, strained, stiff, false, feigned, fake(d), mannered, affected, self-conscious, Colloq phoney or US also phony: Her forced joviality failed to conceal her contempt for those present.

forceful adj. 1 vigorous, energetic, compelling, dynamic, intense, potent, strong, mighty, powerful, aggressive, weighty, effective, convincing, persuasive: The colonel was known as a forceful leader of men. 2 effective, efficacious, cogent, logical, impressive, telling, convincing, persuasive, strong, mighty, forcible, powerful, compelling, irresistible; pithy, meaty: The most forceful arguments came from Catherine towards the end of the discussion.

forcible adj. 1 See forceful, 2. 2 drastic, forceful, violent, aggressive, coercive, severe, stringent: The plan involves the forcible repatriation of refugees.

foreboding
n. 1 apprehension, apprehensiveness, feeling, sense, misgiving, dread, suspicion, intuition, anxiety, fear: An atmosphere of foreboding filled the crypt. 2 premonition, augury, prophecy, prediction, prognostication, warning, foretoken, foreshadowing,

presentiment, omen, sign, portent, intimation, forewarning, presage, advance word: I had a strange foreboding of horror as I entered the room.

forecast v. 1 predict, foretell, prophesy, prognosticate, foresee, augur, presage, vaticinate, anticipate; forewarn, calculate: Seers forecast coming events; meteorologists forecast the weather.

--n. 2 prediction, prophecy, prognosis, prognostication, foresight, augury, vaticination, anticipation; forewarning, calculation: Have you heard the weather forecast for tomorrow?

foregoing adj. preceding, above, former, previous, precedent, prior, antecedent; earlier, preliminary, anterior; aforementioned, aforesaid: The foregoing paragraph set forth the principles.

foregone adj. Usually in foregone conclusion. assumed, established, pre-established, predetermined, fixed, inevitable, set, accepted, cut and dried: His incarceration for the crime was a foregone conclusion.

foreign adj. 1 alien, imported, non-native; overseas, distant, tramontane, transalpine, transatlantic, transpacific: Duty is payable on foreign goods. We holiday in a different foreign country each year. 2 strange, outlandish, exotic, unfamiliar, peculiar, odd, curious: She regards anything except beans and toast as foreign food. 3 unknown, unfamiliar, strange, inappropriate, unrelated, unconnected, unassimilable, remote, extrinsic, extraneous: Their philosophy is completely foreign to my way of thinking.

foreigner n. alien, non-native, immigrant, newcomer, new arrival, outsider, outlander, stranger: The word xenophobia means 'dread of foreigners'.

foreman n. superintendent, manager, boss, supervisor, overseer, Brit shopwalker, US floor-walker, Colloq super, Brit gaffer, US straw boss: The foreman insists we use the time clocks.

foremost adj. 1 first, primary, prime, leading, pre-eminent, supreme; prominent, notable, noteworthy, noted, chief, paramount, main, best, superior: She is one of the foremost eye surgeons in her country.

--adv. 2 first, firstly, primarily, primarily, in (the) first place, before anything else: First and foremost, we must consider the matter of safety.

forerunner
n. 1 predecessor, precursor, foregoer; herald, harbinger, envoy; forebear, ancestor, forefather, progenitor: This dishwasher is better designed than its forerunners. The cuckoo is thought by many to be the forerunner of spring. 2 omen, portent, foretoken, premonition, sign, augury, token: A drop in the barometer is a forerunner of bad weather.

foresee v. presage, foretell, envisage, picture, forecast, predict, prophesy, augur, US envision: I don't foresee any problems.

foreshadow
v. presage, foretoken, portend, augur, indicate, prophesy, predict, bode, signal, signify, betoken: The surrender of Ghent foreshadowed the fate of Flanders.

foresight n. 1 providence, prudence, care, far-sightedness, watchfulness, caution, precaution, long-sightedness, perspicacity, wisdom, sagacity, insight, circumspection: The commander demonstrated foresight in ordering a retreat. 2 prevision, perception, prospect, vision, foreknowledge, prescience; expectation: A little foresight could have prevented the calamity.

forestall v. anticipate, prevent, obstruct, hinder, obviate, thwart, preclude, frustrate, avert, ward or stave or fend off, intercept, parry, stop, delay: The frigate effectively forestalled our plan to sail away secretly.

forethought
n. premeditation, planning, plotting, far-sightedness, long-sightedness: Much forethought went into the assassination scheme.

for ever adv. 1 forever, always, for good, ever, (for) evermore, forevermore, eternally, everlastingly, for ever and a day, undyingly, for eternity, till doomsday, till the end of time, Colloq till the cows come home, till hell freezes over: They swore to be true for ever. 2 constantly, continually, continuously, all the time, unceasingly, incessantly, without cease or surcease, endlessly, consistently, persistently, interminably, perpetually: She was forever watching soap operas on the telly.

foreword n. preface, prologue, prelude, prolegomenon, preamble, Literary proem; introduction: He set forth the purpose of the book in the foreword.

forfeit n. 1 penalty, fine, fee, charge, damages, forfeiture, sequestration, amercement, mulct: You will have to give me a kiss as a forfeit.

--v. 2 lose, yield (up), give up or over, relinquish, surrender, be stripped or deprived of, forgo, renounce, waive: You have forfeited your right to trial and you will be hanged at dawn.

--adj. 3 surrendered, lost, yielded, relinquished, forgone, waived, renounced: His life was forfeit the moment he volunteered to defuse the bomb.

forge v. 1 make, construct, fashion, fabricate, manufacture, shape, mould, cast, hammer out: This plant forges heavy steel tools. He forged a new life for himself in the American West. 2 create, invent, conceive (of), coin, devise, think up, frame: I have forged a new plan of escape. 3 counterfeit, copy, reproduce, imitate, falsify, fake, Slang US hang paper: She forged her employer's name on the cheque. The gang was caught because they forged three-pound notes.

forgery n. 1 counterfeiting, falsification, fraud, fraudulence: He was sent to prison for ten years for forgery. 2 counterfeit, fake, sham, imitation, Colloq phoney or US also phony: The police have found three forgeries of Dali paintings.

forget v. 1 fail or cease to remember or recall or think of, lose, draw a blank: I forgot what I was supposed to buy at the market. 2 leave (behind), omit or neglect (doing or taking): I forgot my umbrella this morning. 3 ignore, dismiss from (one's) mind or thoughts, disregard, overlook, consign to oblivion: Forget the fact that you ever met me.

forgetful adj. amnesiac; absent-minded, distracted, abstracted, inattentive, preoccupied, neglectful, negligent, careless, lax, dreamy, dreaming, in dreamland, in the clouds, in cloud-cuckoo-land or cloud-land or Nephelococcygia, remote, distrait(e), Colloq not turned on, turned off, out of it: Franklin is so forgetful he'd lose his head if it weren't stitched on.

forgive v. 1 pardon, excuse, allow, make allowance(s) for, indulge, condone, vindicate; overlook, ignore, disregard, pay no attention to, pass over, US slough over: Please forgive my curiosity, but where did you get that hat? 2 clear, acquit, absolve, exculpate, exonerate; spare; Colloq let off: Father, forgive them, for they know not what they do. 3 cancel, waive, abolish, void, nullify, erase, delete; Colloq let off (the hook): Her dream was to awake one day and find all her debts forgiven.

forgiveness

n. 1 pardon, reprieve, absolution, remission, acquittal, acquittance, amnesty, allowance, vindication, exculpation, exoneration, Archaic shrift: Oh, Lord, I ask forgiveness for my sins. 2 mercy, mercifulness, compassion, grace, leniency, clemency, indulgence, tolerance: He begged her forgiveness for the way he had treated her.

forgiving adj. tolerant, lenient, sparing, forbearing, merciful, compassionate, conciliatory, magnanimous, humane, soft-hearted, clement: In a forgiving mood, the judge gave her a light sentence.

forgo v. 1 give up, renounce, forswear, forsake, abandon, do or go without, sacrifice, eliminate, omit, leave out or alone, cede, waive; avoid, shun, eschew, abstain from, turn down, pass up, deny (oneself): His new diet requires him to forgo all dairy produce. 2 resign, give up, yield, surrender, relinquish, cede, waive, renounce, forswear, abdicate, abandon: Did he not forgo all right to the throne by marrying a commoner?

forlorn adj. 1 miserable, wretched, desolate, woebegone, lost, pitiable, pitiful, pathetic, woeful, cheerless, joyless, unhappy, depressed, sad, desolate, disconsolate, gloomy, lugubrious, glum, despondent, dismal, dejected, dispirited, low-spirited, comfortless, down, melancholy, dolorous, sorrowful, mournful, inconsolable: She looked so fragile and forlorn as she struggled to hold back her tears. 2 abandoned, forsaken, deserted, neglected, shunned, outcast, alone, lonely, lonesome, friendless, bereft: We came upon a forlorn little village.

form   n. 1 shape, configuration, conformation, order, organization, arrangement, formation, construction, structure, construct, frame, cut, cast, mould, pattern, appearance; manifestation: The equipment in the playground was in a variety of geometric forms. In what form will the jinnee appear next? 2 figure, body, build, shape, physique, anatomy; silhouette, aspect, look, appearance, profile, contour; carriage, bearing, attitude, pose, Slang US bod, built: She has the form of a wrestler. 3 type, kind, variety, sort, breed, species, genus, genre, character, make, brand, colour, tone, tint, texture, fabric, material, feather, description, manner, way, nature, style, stamp, manifestation: What forms of life are not of divine origin? He revelled in music in all its forms. 4 blank; model, format, frame, framework, course, procedure, order, regimen, method, system, ritual, formula, rule(s), practice, technique, way, means, approach, mode, fashion, manner, style: Fill in the application form in ink. Please follow the proper form when submitting articles. 5 condition, state, shape, trim, fettle: He seems in unusually good form tonight. 6 decorum, behaviour, deportment, formality, ceremony, convention, etiquette, manners, conduct, custom, protocol, propriety, ritual: Follow correct form when writing to the king. Spitting is considered bad form.

--v. 7 make, fabricate, forge, shape, mould, fashion, produce, turn out, manufacture, construct, assemble, put together, set up, put up, build, erect, elevate, raise, put up; organize, codify; develop: The architect takes the many elements and forms them into a coherent whole. Have you formed an opinion of the book? 8 create, originate, devise, invent, compose, formulate, give form or shape, coin, concoct, conceive, contrive, dream up, imagine, visualize, envisage, US envision: His ideas of religion were formed when he was very young. A picture of the battle was formed in my mind. 9 make up, constitute, be made up of, comprise, be composed of; serve as: This compound is formed of many elements. Six fugues formed the main part of the programme. 10 acquire, develop, cultivate, contract; get: In prison I formed the habit of rolling my own cigarettes. We formed a lasting friendship. 11 develop, grow, arise, appear, materialize, show up, take shape or form, accumulate: When the yeast is added, a barm forms on the surface.

formal adj. 1 standard, conventional, customary, established, prescribed, regular, normal, correct, proper; strict, formulaic, inflexible, punctilious, exacting, unchanging, methodical, orderly, systematic, set, pro forma, ritual, ritualistic, ceremonial, proper, official, routine, fixed, rigid, stiff, stilted, stately, starched, unbending, solemn; confining, straitened, limited; Colloq straight, square: Formal rules of behaviour are observed. 2 explicit, express, definite, spelled out, formalized, express, authorized, official, solemn, legal, lawful: Formal demands have been made for the withdrawal of our ambassador. 3 prim, ceremonious, dignified, stuffy, strait-laced, stiff, precise, exact: He made a formal bow and left our company.

formality n. 1 Often, the formalities. form, convention, conventionality, practice, procedure, custom, wont, observance, protocol, ceremony, rite, ritual: Observe the legal formalities by having this document witnessed. Formality requires that you walk backwards out of the room. 2 strictness, punctilio, exactness, precision, correctness, rigidity, stiffness, inflexibility: We must maintain the formality of Sunday service. 3 etiquette, politesse, decorum, punctilio, conformity, propriety: Formality prohibits casual conversation.

format n. 1 appearance, look(s), aspect, layout, plan, design, style, form, dimension(s), shape, size: In its present format, the magazine resembles an academic journal. 2 composition, content(s), make-up, constitution, arrangement, plan, organization, order, set-up: Her TV programme has the format of a chat show.

formation n. 1 development, appearance, materialization, shape, accumulation, generation, creation, crystallization, forming, genesis, production: The formation of bubbles indicates that the acid is working. 2 establishment, institution, creation, founding, set-up, organizing, organization, development, composition: We met to discuss the formation of a new company. 3 array, display, pattern, arrangement, structure, grouping, organization, configuration, disposition: The vast military formation covered the entire valley.

former adj. 1 previous, earlier, prior, ex-, one-time, preceding, erstwhile, late, latest, last, recent, ci-devant, quondam, Archaic whilom: I ran into a former girl-friend at the art show. 2 old, past, bygone; ancient, (pre)historic, departed, antediluvian: In former times, one could demand - and get - decent service.

formerly adv. once, before, previously, hitherto, long ago, at one time, in the old days, once upon a time, in days gone by, in days or time past, time was, back then, when the world was young(er), Colloq way back or US also way back when: Formerly, there were no tall buildings to block one's view.

formidable
adj. 1 alarming, appalling, dreadful, frightful, awesome, awe-inspiring, menacing, horrifying, frightening, intimidating, daunting, petrifying, terrifying: A formidable, fire-breathing dragon blocked our exit. 2 terrific, fantastic, unbelievable, incredible, impressive, prodigious, mind-boggling, awesome, Colloq mind-blowing, freaky: They are a formidable talent and will sell a million records this year. 3 arduous, indomitable, overwhelming, staggering, powerful, mighty, difficult, challenging, burdensome, onerous: She has formidable obstacles to overcome before becoming a doctor.

formula n. recipe, rubric, formulary; rule(s), prescription, directions, instructions, blueprint, method, technique, means, way, pattern, procedure, modus operandi, Colloq US MO: Ali Baba uttered the formula, 'Open sesame!', and the rock opened. Alchemists sought to discover a formula for making gold from lead.

formulate v. 1 systematize, codify, define, specify, articulate, particularize, denote: You must try to formulate your ideas more clearly. 2 devise, originate, create, think up or of, dream up, conceive, concoct, invent, improvise, Colloq cook up: I have formulated a plan in my mind to deal with the problem. 3 develop, forge, evolve, work out, design, map out, block out, draw up: You have three days to formulate a workable procedure.

forsake v. 1 abandon, desert, quit, leave, flee, depart, vacate: He forsook balmy California to dig for gold in the Klondike. 2 abandon, desert, leave, jilt, reject, throw over, jettison, cast off: She has forsaken Michael for another man. 3 give up, yield, renounce, repudiate, relinquish, forgo, forswear, surrender, resign, abdicate, recant, deny, have or be done with, turn one's back on: Would you forsake a throne for the love of a woman?

forte n. talent, strong point, gift, speciality, strength, aptitude, genius, Colloq long suit: His forte is carving ivory miniatures.

forthcoming
adj. 1 approaching, nearing, impending, imminent, coming, (close) at hand, upcoming; near or close (by), (near or close) at hand, in the offing, on the horizon, Colloq Brit on the cards, US in the cards: The forthcoming tax increase will affect everyone. A new regulation is forthcoming. 2 awaited, expected, anticipated, looked-for, watched for, prospective, foreseen: The forthcoming payment will be be a little late. 3 outgoing, friendly, amiable, affable, sociable, accessible, expansive, chatty, talkative, communicative, informative, open, free, revealing, unreserved: Barry was most forthcoming when questioned about his finances.

forthright
adj. straightforward, direct, blunt, candid, frank, above-board, unambiguous, unequivocal, open, outspoken, uninhibited, unreserved, unconstrained, unrestrained: She has always been forthright and honest in her dealings with me.

fortify v. 1 strengthen, reinforce, shore up, buttress, brace, bolster, secure: Steel plates were used to fortify the walls. 2 cheer, encourage, hearten, buoy, invigorate, energize, embolden, reassure, brace: Her enthusiasm fortified him to face what was coming. 3 supplement, enhance, enrich, boost, augment: The drink was fortified by the addition of whisky.

fortitude n. strength, mettle, backbone, courage, nerve, resolution, resoluteness, perseverance, endurance, tenacity, pertinacity, grit, determination, will-power, Colloq guts: His encouragement gave me the fortitude to carry on.

fortunate adj. 1 lucky, in luck, fortuitous, blessed: You were fortunate to have survived the crash. 2 favoured, advantageous, propitious, auspicious, providential, favourable, opportune, timely, well-timed: It was a fortunate time to be buying a house.

fortune n. 1 position, worth, means, assets, holdings, wealth, property, estate, possessions; wealth, riches, affluence, opulence, treasure, money, prosperity: Each member is liable to the full extent of his fortune. He acquired his fortune from oil. 2 luck, chance, fortuity; lot, fate, kismet, destiny, karma; future; US happenstance: It was just fortune that put me in the right place at the right time. She'll tell your fortune if you cross her palm with silver. 3 Usually, fortunes. circumstance(s), experience(s), adventures, expectation(s), lot: My fortunes of late have been poor.

fortune-teller
n. oracle, soothsayer, prophet, diviner, augur, seer, clairvoyant, prognosticator, sibyl, haruspex, crystal-gazer, tea-leaf reader, palmist, palm reader, star-gazer; futurologist: The fortune-teller said to beware the Ides of March.

forward adj. 1 advance, leading, foremost, front, head, first: The forward contingents of the army moved into the town. 2 bold, pert, impudent, brash, insolent, impertinent, disrespectful, brazen, audacious, rash, unashamed, unabashed, saucy, flippant, presumptuous, cheeky, Colloq flip, fresh, pushy: It was a bit forward of you to call the chairman by his nickname. 3 (well-)advanced, (well-)developed, progressive, precocious, forward-looking: She was quite a forward girl at fifteen.

--adv. 4 forwards, ahead, onward, along; clockwise, deasil: I moved forward to the head of the queue. Set the clock forward an hour tonight. 5 up, out, forth, to the fore, into consideration, into view, into the open, to the surface, on to the table: Cooper brought forward an interesting proposal.

--v. 6 advance, further, promote, back, foster, support, aid, assist, help; patronize, encourage, nourish, nurse along: He did his best to forward her career. 7 dispatch or despatch, send, ship, deliver, transmit, express, post, mail, consign, remit; send on: The shipment will be forwarded as soon as payment is received. The post office will forward mail to my new address. 8 speed (up), accelerate, advance, hasten, expedite, hurry, quicken, step up: This mixture is said to forward the flowering of plants.

foster v. 1 promote, encourage, stimulate, further, forward, advance, cultivate, nurture, nourish, support, back, assist, help, aid, succour, patronize: Cutting back these offshoots fosters growth of the main stem. Representatives have fostered acceptance of our products throughout Europe. 2 bring up, rear, raise, take care of, maintain, care for: The Cartwrights have fostered eight orphans in their home.

foul adj. 1 offensive, loathsome, disgusting, obnoxious, revolting, repulsive, repellent, repugnant, sickening, nauseous, nauseating, nasty, beastly, Archaic fulsome: The bartender makes a foul concoction he swears will cure a hangover. 2 filthy, unclean, nasty, polluted, putrid, putrescent, putrefactive or putrefacient, defiled, soiled, spoiled, rotten, decayed, decomposed, rancid, soured, turned, tainted, mouldy, impure, adulterated, contaminated, stale, bad, Brit off: The hamburger place was closed when public health inspectors found foul food in the freezer. 3 smelly, stinking, noisome, fetid or foetid, rank, evil-smelling, foul-smelling, malodorous, musty, mephitic, graveolent: A foul odour emanated from the cabinet. 4 wicked, vile, bad, base, abominable, low, sordid, iniquitous, evil, flagitious, atrocious, monstrous, nefarious, sinful, immoral, amoral, vicious, villainous, scandalous, infamous, dishonourable, shameful, disgraceful, ignominious; detestable: They were finally brought to justice for their foul deeds. 5 dirty, obscene, filthy, profane, scatological, gross, smutty, foul-mouthed, blue, licentious, salacious, lewd, indecent, improper, coarse, uncouth, vulgar, rude, scurrilous, rough, indelicate, immodest, risqu,, off colour, suggestive, bawdy, ribald, Rabelaisian, Fescennine, US raw, Slang raunchy: My mother forbids my reading books containing foul language. 6 abusive, offensive, affronting, insulting, disparaging, maligning, thersitical, calumnious or calumniatory, aspersive, slanderous, defamatory, libellous, denigrating, derogatory, deprecatory or deprecative, depreciatory or depreciative, denunciatory or denunciative, derisory, derisive, scornful, belittling, fulminous, objurgatory or objurgative, vituperative, invective: Keep your foul tongue to yourself. 7 dishonest, unfair, unjust, unsportsmanlike, dishonourable, fraudulent, underhand(ed), double-dealing, two-faced, corrupt, venal, dirty, treacherous, perfidious, traitorous, unscrupulous, Colloq crooked, shady, Slang chiefly Brit bent: Thrupp will get his way by fair means or foul. 8 nasty, dangerous, rough, disagreeable, unfavourable, sloppy, stormy, adverse; windy, blustery; snowy, sleety, wet, rainy: We ran into a spot of foul weather at Dover. 9 obstructed, blocked, choked, stopped (up), plugged (up), clogged (up): The drain is foul with all that rubbish. 10 tangled, entangled, caught, ensnared, enmeshed, snarled: A foul anchor is a common nautical symbol. 11 illegal, prohibited, forbidden, interdicted, not fair; dirty: In boxing a hit below the belt is a foul blow.

--v. 12 dirty, pollute, sully, befoul, defile, soil, contaminate, adulterate, taint: Effluent from the factory was fouling the river. 13 tangle, entangle, catch, snare, ensnare, enmesh, snag, snarl, jam, twist: We can't hoist the mainsail because the halyard is fouled. 14 disgrace, dishonour, sully, taint, besmirch, defile, soil, stain, smear, tarnish, blacken, denigrate, debase, degrade, abase, demean, disparage, defame, derogate, asperse, devaluate, depreciate, vitiate, belittle, discredit, bring or call into disrepute: That act of treachery will foul the family name for generations. 15 obstruct, block, choke, stop or plug or clog (up): Dead leaves fouled the downpipe. 16 foul up. a See def. 13. b mismanage, mishandle, botch, bungle, make a mess (of), mess up, spoil, ruin, Colloq muff, Brit throw a spanner in(to) (the works), US throw a monkey wrench into (the machinery); Slang muck up, goof (up), blow, screw up, louse up, Chiefly Brit bugger (up), US and Canadian snafu: Give him a chance and he's sure to foul up. She fouled up my hi-fi.

--n. 17 violation, infringement, infraction, illegality: The Rangers' forward has already been charged with two fouls.

--adv. 18 afoul, in conflict, in trouble, in violation: Curshaw has fallen foul of the law again.

foul play n. treachery, chicanery, perfidy, perfidiousness, duplicity, double-dealing, deception, guile, crime, sharp practice, skulduggery, dirty work or business, dirty trick(s); murder, homicide, manslaughter; Colloq hanky-panky: The travellers suspected foul play when the aeroplane failed to arrive. The hacked up corpse suggested foul play to Detective LemaŒtre.

found v. 1 establish, originate, institute, set up, organize, inaugurate, start, initiate, create, bring about, develop: The society was founded a hundred years ago. 2 base, ground, establish, set, build; rest: This charity was founded on love and concern for children.

foundation

n. 1 basis, base, substructure, understructure, underpinning, bottom, foot, basement, cellar: This foundation is of stone. 2 basis, base, fundamental, (underlying or fundamental) principle, grounds, groundwork, rationale, raison d'ˆtre, purpose: Their morality finds its foundations in Judaeo-Christian culture. 3 founding, establishment, instituting, institution, creation, origination, setting up, organizing, organization, inauguration, endowment: We voted for the foundation of an institute to study the English language.

founder° n. originator, creator, progenitor, author, framer, father, architect, designer, builder, initiator, establisher, institutor: Today we honour the founder of this great university.

founderý v. 1 sink, go down or under, go to Davy Jones's locker, be wrecked or destroyed: Many a proud vessel has foundered on this rock. 2 fail, miscarry, collapse, come to nothing or naught, fall through, abort, falter, break down, come to grief, die: After Alice left to get married, the business foundered. 3 trip, stumble, stagger, lurch, fall, topple (over or down), collapse; go lame: He drove the horse too hard and caused it to founder.

foundling n. orphan, waif; stray, outcast: We are trying to raise money for a hospital for foundlings.

fountain n. 1 fount, spring, font, jet, spout, spray, well, well-spring, well-head, fountain-head: Bathing in the city fountains is forbidden. 2 source, origin, genesis: Miss Corbell was a fountain of wisdom on the subject of basket-weaving.

foxy adj. 1 clever, sly, cunning, wily, crafty, tricky, guileful, shifty, devious, slippery, smooth, slick, artful, resourceful, ingenious, calculating, designing, plotting, scheming, disingenuous, knowing, shrewd, sharp, astute, wise; foxlike, vulpine; Colloq cagey or cagy: Be careful dealing with him, for he can be foxy. 2 attractive, alluring, seductive, vampish, Colloq sexy: Margo is a very foxy lady.

6.6 fracas...

=-

fracas n. 1 trouble, disturbance, commotion, rumpus, fuss, hubbub, pandemonium, hullabaloo, uproar, disorder, scramble, scuffle, brawl, rough-house, rough-and-tumble, turmoil, tumult, free-for-all, riot, fray, brouhaha, mˆl,e or melee, Law affray; Brit scrum, US brannigan; Colloq ruckus, punch-up, Slang Brit bovver: It was football hooligans who caused the fracas after the game. 2 argument, disagreement, quarrel, dispute, discord, wrangle, altercation, squabble, spat, tiff, fight, row, tussle, Donnybrook, brawl, Colloq barney, scrap: After the referee's ruling, a fracas broke out.

fracture n. 1 break, breakage, breaking: An old fracture makes him walk with a limp. 2 break, crack, split, rupture, breach, separation, cleavage, division, rift: We can permit no fracture in the united front we present to the voters.

--v. 3 break, rupture, crack, split, breach, separate, cleave: He fractured three vertebrae in the accident.

fragile adj. frail, breakable, brittle, frangible, delicate, dainty, thin, light, slight, weak, feeble, infirm, decrepit; tenuous, shaky, flimsy, rickety, unsubstantial or insubstantial: Because of her great age, her bones had become fragile. The argument in favour of acquittal is very fragile, indeed.

fragment n. 1 piece, portion, part, chip, shard or sherd, splinter, sliver, scrap, bit, speck, snippet, morsel, crumb, particle, remnant, shred, snatch: A fragment of the airliner was found twenty miles from the crash. 2 fragments. smithereens; debris, Literary disjecta membra: The car was blown into thousands of fragments. I tried to pick up the fragments of my former life.

--v. 3 shatter, splinter, break or split (up), explode, disintegrate, come or go to pieces, come apart: I picked up the skull and it fragmented in my fingers.

fragmentary
adj. disconnected, piecemeal, incomplete, scattered, disjointed, incoherent, sketchy: Accounts of the disaster are still fragmentary.

fragrance n. fragrancy, scent, aroma, smell, odour, redolence, perfume, bouquet, balm: The fragrance of orange blossom filled the room.

fragrant adj. aromatic, odorous, redolent, perfumed, balmy, odoriferous, ambrosial, sweet-scented, sweet-smelling: A fragrant breeze wafted over the meadow.

frail adj. 1 See fragile. 2 ailing, unwell, ill, sick, sickly, poorly, thin, skinny, slight, puny, scrawny, wasting or fading away, languishing, infirm, feeble; crippled, consumptive, phthisic: She is too frail to see visitors.

frailty n. 1 weakness, infirmity, delicate condition, feebleness, fragility, delicacy: The doctors are concerned about his frailty. 2 susceptibility, liability, suggestibility, impressionability, vulnerability; fallibility, foible, flaw, defect, imperfection, fault: You just said that to take advantage of my frailty. Her vanity is her greatest frailty.

frame n. 1 framework, shell, form, skeleton, support, chassis, framing, structure, fabric, scaffolding, construction: We made a frame of sticks over which the canvas was stretched. 2 border, casing, case-mounting, mount, edge, edging; setting: This picture would look best in a gold frame. 3 system, form, pattern, scheme, schema, plan, order, organization, framework, structure, construct, construction, arrangement, blueprint, design, layout, composition, context, make-up, configuration: The proposed new department does not fit into the present frame of the company. 4 physique, build, bone structure, body, skeleton, figure: He has an unusually large frame for a dancer. 5 frame of mind. mood, humour, state, condition, attitude, bent, disposition: I am not in the right frame of mind to put up with your nonsense at the moment.

--v. 6 construct, build, put together, assemble, set up, put up, erect, raise, elevate: We framed the entire house in two days. 7 make, fashion, form, mould, carve out, forge, originate, create, devise, compose, formulate, put together, conceive, draw up, draft, shape, block out, give form or shape to; contrive: The founding fathers met to frame a new constitution. 8 enclose, box (in); set off: I like the way you've framed that painting. 9 set up, incriminate (fraudulently), trap, entrap: Did Dr Crippen kill his wife or was he framed?

frank adj. 1 open, free, candid, direct, outspoken, unreserved, uninhibited, honest, sincere, genuine, truthful, plain-spoken, forthright, downright, explicit, unrestrained, unchecked, unconstrained, unrestricted, unabashed: I asked for a frank appraisal of my work and, unfortunately, he gave it. 2 candid, na‹ve, guileless, artless, ingenuous, innocent, (open and) above-board, on the up and up, Colloq upfront, on the level: The boy's description of the events was completely frank.

frantic adj. frenzied, excited, frenetic, nervous, overwrought, excitable, wrought up, distracted, distraught, beside oneself, hysterical, wild, berserk, mad, running amok; upset, agitated, perturbed, at one's wit's end, disconcerted, confused; hectic; Colloq in a state, in a tizzy, up the wall, in a dither, out of one's mind, Chiefly US and Canadian discombobulated: They are frantic because they haven't heard from Edmund in a week.

fraternal adj. brotherly, platonic, friendly, comradely, idealistic, intellectual: He insists that his interest in her is purely fraternal.

fraternity

n. 1 community, brotherhood, crowd, set, clique, coterie, circle, society, US club: Rumours have been circulating in the academic fraternity for months. 2 brotherliness, kinship, fellowship, camaraderie, sodality, comradeship, friendship, companionship, relatedness, closeness, association, affiliation, solidarity, unity, esprit de corps, clannishness: A sense of fraternity prevents them from betraying one another. 3 company, guild, clan, league, club, union, society, association: She has joined the fraternity of legal clerks.

fraternize

v. consort (with), associate (with), socialize (with), go (around or round) with or together, spend time with or together, keep company (with), hobnob with, mingle (with), mix (with), take up with or together, keep up (with), fall in with, rub shoulders (with), Colloq hang out (with or together), hang about or around with or together: Soldiers are forbidden to fraternize, which means they are not allowed to fraternize with local people.

fraud n. 1 deception, trickery, cheating, sharp practice, chicanery, deceit, swindling, double-dealing, duplicity, artifice, craft, guile, humbug, humbuggery, treachery, Colloq monkey business, funny business, hanky-panky: The company directors have been convicted of fraud. 2 trick, hoax, swindle, deception, cheat, wile, stratagem, dodge, bilk, ruse, sham, fake, subterfuge, Colloq flimflam, Slang gyp, rip-off, scam: The investigation exposed extensive fraud in the handling of local government funds. 3 deceiver, trickster, cheat(er), impostor, swindler, charlatan, humbug, sharper, shark, bilk(er), quack, mountebank, fake(r), pretender, bluff(er), confidence man, inveigler, defrauder; scoundrel, rogue, Archaic knave; Colloq con man or artist, phoney or US also phony, flimflam artist, flimflammer, US and Canadian four-flusher; Slang US barracuda: He is a fraud who extracts protection money from the elderly.

fraudulent

n. 1 fake, counterfeit, forged, false, falsified, spurious, imitation, sham, pinchbeck, Colloq phoney or US also phony: These banknotes are fraudulent. 2 deceitful, dishonest, criminal, deceptive, tricky, artful, crafty, double-dealing, duplicitous, shifty, guileful, sharp, Colloq shady, crooked, bent: Substituting paste for diamonds is a fraudulent act.

fraught adj. 1 Usually, fraught with. filled or charged or packed with, loaded with, teeming or replete or overflowing with, oversupplied with, abounding or abundant in, attended or accompanied by: The scene was fraught with emotion. 2 tense, taut, stressful, trying, anxious, distressing, distressful, upsetting, nerve-racking or nerve-wracking, fretful, strained, traumatic: Relations between the two countries became even more fraught following the incident.

fray° n. disturbance, skirmish, fight, battle, brawl, tussle, scuffle, fracas, mˆl,e or melee, Donnybrook, wrangle, rumpus, row, quarrel, dispute, altercation, Law affray, Colloq ruckus, punch-up: He leapt into the fray and fought like a tiger.

frayý v. shred, wear (thin or threadbare), wear out, rub, abrade, chafe, ravel, unravel, frazzle: He saves his frayed shirts to wear at home.

freak n. 1 monstrosity, monster, mutant, deformity: The show features freaks such as a two-headed calf and a bearded lady. 2 anomaly, rarity, abnormality, irregularity, oddity, curiosity, rara avis, rare bird, Brit one-off, Colloq one-shot: Biologists regard the albino giraffe as a freak of nature. 3 whim, caprice, vagary, crotchet, quirk, eccentricity, fancy, idiosyncrasy, peculiarity: The snow in New York in July was a freak. 4 enthusiast, fan, devotee, aficionado; fanatic, addict; Colloq buff, fiend, nut: She's been a jazz freak for years.

--adj. 5 freakish, freaky, abnormal, anomalous, extraordinary, unique, rare, atypical, unusual, odd, queer, strange, exceptional, bizarre, weird, unparalleled, unforeseen, unexpected, unpredicted, unpredictable, Brit one-off, Colloq one-shot: He claims he had a freak experience with a lion that had a thorn in its foot.

free adj. 1 at liberty, unfettered, unchained, unshackled, unconfined, untrammelled, unencumbered, unrestrained, unrestricted, unconstrained, uncontrolled, free-born, independent, self-governing, self-governed, self-ruling, autonomous, democratic, sovereign: These people want to be free. It's a free country. 2 liberated, at large, let go, let off, emancipated, delivered, manumitted, set free, unshackled, unfettered, released, freed, loose, out, Colloq sprung, on the loose: After ten years he was free at last. 3 unoccupied, unengaged, at liberty, not busy, available, accessible; unused, vacant, empty, spare, extra, uninhabited, untenanted: Are you free for dinner tonight? Here is a free room we can use for the meeting. 4 cost-free, free of charge, complimentary, gratis, for nothing, without cost (or obligation), unencumbered, Colloq for free, on the house: The food was free but we paid for our drinks. 5 unattached, unfastened, untied, loose: Tie the free end of the rope round your waist. 6 unasked for, unsolicited, gratuitous, unbidden, voluntary, spontaneous, unconditioned, unconditional: Let me give you some free advice. 7 generous, lavish, open, liberal, munificent, unstinting, bountiful, open-handed, unsparing; charitable: Fred is quite free with his donations to good causes. 8 relaxed, casual, informal, free and easy, easy, natural, unceremonious, Colloq laid-back: He is quite free about letting me use his car. 9 open, above-board, honest, direct, outspoken, uninhibited, unconstrained, unrestrained, relaxed: You can be free in your criticism. 10 unhindered, unimpeded, unencumbered, unhampered, unobstructed, allowed, permitted, able, clear, unrestricted, unregulated: She's free to do as she pleases. The two countries have signed a free-trade agreement. 11 free of. rid of, exempt(ed) from, relieved of, safe from, not liable or subject to, immune from, unaffected by, above, without, untouched by: He thinks he is free of her influence.

--adv. 12 freely, openly, at will, unrestrictedly, loose; loosely: Our dog runs free on the farm. Let the rope hang free. 13 gratis, at no cost, free of charge, without charge: They give new businesses advice free.

--v. 14 set free, set at liberty, enfranchise, release, let go, liberate, let out, let loose, unloose, unchain, unfetter, uncage; emancipate, disenthrall, manumit; pardon, parole, furlough: Bail was paid and we were freed. Lincoln freed the slaves. He was freed after six years in prison. 15 disengage, untie, unbind, loose, unfasten, undo, unshackle, unlock, open, release, disentangle, loosen, detach, extricate: Free the end of that rope. 16 relieve, rid, unburden, disburden, disencumber, unbosom; rescue, redeem: Free yourself of any preconceived notions on the subject.

freedom n. 1 liberty, independence, self-government, self-determination, self-direction, autonomy: Democracy is based on the freedom of the individual. 2 release, deliverance, liberation, emancipation, manumission: Will these people ever get their freedom? 3 exemption, immunity, deliverance, liberation, relief: All citizens should enjoy freedom from want. 4 range, latitude, scope, play, deregulation, non-interference, discretion, margin, free hand, discretion; facility, ease, licence, permission, right, privilege, authority, authorization, power, carte blanche: He must have the freedom to make decisions. I have the freedom to do as I wish. 5 free time, leisure, spare time: I like a lot of freedom to do things in my own time. 6 candour, honesty, openness, frankness, candidness, unrestraint, unconstraint, naturalness: Freedom of speech is practised here. 7 boldness, overfamiliarity, audacity, audaciousness, forwardness, brazenness, brass, impertinence, impudence, disrespect, arrogance, presumption, presumptuousness, nerve, gall: Where does she get the freedom to talk to you that way?

freely adv. 1 candidly, frankly, openly, unreservedly, without reserve, unrestrainedly, without restraint, unconstrainedly, without constraint, unceremoniously, plainly: Please speak freely. 2 willingly, spontaneously, readily, voluntarily, on (one's) own, independently, of (one's) own accord, of (one's) own volition or free will: I didn't send for her - she came to me freely. 3 unrestrainedly, unrestrictedly, without restriction, without let or hindrance, without interference: He was allowed to move freely about the island. 4 liberally, lavishly, unreservedly, generously, unstintingly, open-handedly, ungrudgingly, munificently, amply, plentifully, abundantly: He has no money to donate but he gives freely of his time. 5 readily, easily, smoothly, cleanly, unobstructedly: With the obstacle removed, the water ran freely through the pipes.

freeze v. 1 chill, refrigerate, ice, deep-freeze, flash-freeze, frost: If you freeze the leftovers, they keep better. 2 solidify, congeal, harden, stiffen, ice up or over: When the lake freezes, we can go skating. 3 fix, immobilize, paralyse, stop (dead or dead in one's tracks), stay, pin, transfix, Gorgonize; become fixed, stand (stock-)still or motionless; peg, stick, set: She froze him with an icy stare. He froze to the spot in horror. Rates of exchange are no longer frozen. 4 freeze out. exclude, debar, ban, reject, ostracize; eject, drive away or out, expel, force out: When he tried to join the club, he was frozen out.

--n. 5 frost, Brit freeze-up, US ice-up, deep-freeze: There will be a freeze tonight in northern counties. 6 fix, immobilization: The government has put a freeze on wages.

freezing adj. frigid, icy, arctic, frosty, boreal, hyperboreal, numbing, Siberian, polar, glacial, ice-cold, wintry, bone-chilling, bitter, biting, bitter(ly) cold, perishing, cold, chill, tooth-chattering; chilled to the bone, frozen, shivering, Archaic frore: The rescue was performed under freezing conditions. We were freezing in our thin jackets.

freight n. 1 transport, transportation, carriage, conveyance, shipping, shipment, freightage, delivery: The charges for freight are included. 2 goods, cargo, tonnage, freightage; load, boatload, shipload, lorry load, haul, consignment, payload: How much freight passes through here?

frenzy n. 1 excitement, agitation, fury, fever, Brit furore or US furor, passion, turmoil, transport: The crowd was whipped into a frenzy at the match. 2 distraction, paroxysm, seizure, outburst, bout, fit: She went into a frenzy of despair after the death of her family.

frequent adj. 1 recurrent, recurring, habitual, regular, familiar, everyday, customary, usual, ordinary, normal, common, repeated, iterative, reiterative, persistent, continuing, continual, constant; many, numerous, countless, innumerable: She was a frequent visitor at our house. She paid us frequent visits.

--v. 2 haunt, patronize, visit, resort to, go to or attend regularly, Colloq hang out or around at: Yes, Inspector, I used to frequent the pub called The Saracen's Head.

frequently

adv. 1 often, regularly, continually, repeatedly, over and over (again), again and again, a lot, many times, many a time, time after time, time and (time) again, Archaic oftentimes, oft-times: She has visited me frequently during the past weeks. 2 often, habitually, customarily, regularly, usually, ordinarily, generally, commonly, every so often, many a time, as often as not, Archaic oftentimes, oft-times: He frequently stops at The Golden Hind after work.

fresh adj. 1 new, today's, brand-new; (most) recent, late(st): Don't you love the smell of fresh bread? This is the product of fresh research. 2 new, modern, up to date, novel, original, newfangled, unusual, unconventional, different, alternative, unorthodox: We are seeking a fresh approach. 3 raw, inexperienced, untested, unsophisticated, green, untried, unfledged, immature, untrained, na‹ve, callow, (still) wet behind the ears, Brit still in nappies; US still in diapers: These troops are too fresh to send into battle. 4 additional, new, further, renewed, extra, supplementary: We need a fresh supply of paper towels. 5 alert, refreshed, vigorous, energetic, invigorated, spry, lively, full of vim and vigour, fresh as a daisy, keen, bright, brisk, active, Colloq bright-eyed and bushy-tailed: Put the horses through the dressage while they are fresh. 6 wholesome, healthy, well, refreshed, glowing, fair, rosy, ruddy, blooming, flourishing: She came back to work fresh from a week's rest. 7 moderate, brisk, strong; cool, clean, pure, clear, unpolluted: Sailing conditions were ideal: a fresh breeze and good visibility. Open the window for some fresh air. 8 bold, impudent, impertinent, brazen, brassy, forward, disrespectful, saucy, pert, cheeky, presumptuous, insolent, rude, Colloq smart-alecky or smart-aleck, US sassy, flip: That fresh kid called her an old bag.

freshen v. 1 strengthen, increase, blow harder: The wind began to freshen as we sailed past the headland. 2 Sometimes, freshen up. invigorate, revive, refresh, enliven, (re)vitalize, stimulate, titivate, rouse, liven up: I'll just freshen up before dinner. Freshen these flowers by changing the water. 3 ventilate, air out, deodorize, purify: We freshen the rooms by opening all the windows. 4 strengthen, spike, lace, fortify: May I freshen your drink?

fret v. 1 worry, be concerned, agonize, lose sleep, be upset or distressed or anxious or disturbed, grieve, brood, whine, fuss, complain, Colloq stew, tear one's hair: Your kitten is safe now, so stop fretting. 2 worry, concern, distress, vex, annoy, irritate, torment, provoke, US rankle: She fretted herself about Henry's health.

fretful adj. irritable, vexed, ill-tempered, bad-tempered, peevish, edgy, cross, petulant, testy, touchy, tetchy, splenetic, irascible, choleric, crabby, fractious, short-tempered, grumpy, sulky, moody, fault-finding, carping, querulous, whining, complaining, captious, ill-natured, disagreeable, impatient, snappish, waspish, short, abrupt, curt, US and Canadian cranky: Are you always so fretful before breakfast?

friction n. 1 abrasion, rubbing, abrading, chafing, fretting, attrition, scraping, grating, erosion: Friction is always accompanied by heat. 2 disagreement, discord, conflict, contention, dispute, dissension, disharmony, controversy, dissent, bickering, argument, wrangling, ill feeling, ill will, bad blood, animosity, rivalry, hostility, antagonism, strife: Politics have always been a source of friction between them.

friend n. 1 (boon) companion, partner, comrade, crony, familiar, confidant(e), intimate, Achates, alter ego, ally, compeer; acquaintance, playmate, pen-pal or Brit also pen-friend; Colloq chum, pal, Brit cocker, Chiefly Brit and Australian and New Zealand mate, Australian cobber, US and Canadian (bosom) buddy, SW US compadre; Slang Brit (old) china: She is spending the weekend with some friends. 2 ally, associate, fellow, confederate, colleague, co-worker, confrŠre, compatriot, consociate, US cohort: A friend from the office is coming to dinner. 3 room-mate, bunk-mate, flatmate, soul mate, bedfellow, lover, sweetheart, escort; girl, woman, girlfriend, concubine, mistress, Old-fashioned doxy; man, boyfriend, Old-fashioned beau; Colloq US alternative other, POSSLQ (= 'Person of the Opposite Sex Sharing Living Quarters'), roomie; Slang baby, moll, sugar-daddy, US squeeze, twist, Chiefly Brit bird: Chris, why don't you introduce us to your new friend? 4 benefactor, patron, supporter, advocate, adherent, backer, financier, Maecenas; angel, investor: He has long been associated with the Friends of the Library.

friendly adj. 1 amicable, congenial, sociable, companionable, comradely, convivial, familiar, well-disposed, close, on good terms, simpatico, comfortable, at home, neighbourly, clubby, fraternal, brotherly, sisterly, Colloq chummy, pally, thick, Brit matey, US palsy-walsy, buddy-buddy: We've always been friendly with the people next door. 2 amiable, affectionate, loving, demonstrative, cordial, warm-hearted, warm, genial, agreeable, good-natured, pleasant, kind, kindly, kind-hearted, agreeable, affable, approachable, accessible, unreserved, open, Brit clubbable: Clare can be very friendly when she wants to be.

friendship

n. 1 amity, congeniality, sociability, companionability, comradeship, fellowship, conviviality, familiarity, closeness, neighbourliness, harmony, clubbiness, fraternity, brotherhood, sisterhood, alliance: I hope that this affair will not affect the friendship between our countries. 2 friendliness, amiability, amicability, esteem, warmth, devotion, affection, fondness, attachment, (deep) regard, rapport, intimacy, love: What can I do to regain your friendship?

fright n. 1 fear, alarm, terror, dread, horror, panic, trepidation, dismay, consternation, apprehension, Colloq (blue) funk: He almost dies of fright at the sight of blood. 2 scare, shock: Here, sip this brandy; you've had a terrible fright. 3 spectre, monster, eyesore, Colloq sight, mess: He looked a perfect fright when I saw him after the accident.

frighten v. terrify, scare, alarm, panic, startle, shock, petrify, horrify, dismay, appal or US appall, unnerve, distress, daunt, cow, intimidate, Colloq scare out of one's wits, make one's hair stand on end, scare the (living) daylights [etc.] out of, scare stiff, Brit put the wind up (someone), put the frighteners on (someone): She was frightened by the neighbours' vicious dog. Are you frightened of aeroplanes?

frightening

adj. terrifying, alarming, startling, shocking, petrifying, horrifying, dismaying, appalling, unnerving, dire, distressing, daunting, intimidating, formidable, frightful, fearful, hair-raising, harrowing, dreadful, Colloq scary, spooky: Skydiving can be a frightening experience. The sight of their mangled bodies was frightening.

frightful adj. 1 See frightening. 2 awful, dreadful, terrible, disagreeable, atrocious, abhorrent, loathsome, grisly, ghastly, lurid, macabre, horrible, horrifying, horrid, horrendous, nasty, hideous, vile, unspeakable, nauseating, nauseous, repugnant, repulsive, shocking, revolting, abominable, offensive, ugly: Brixton police report a frightful crime of decapitation.

frightfully

adv. awfully, very, extremely; amazingly, surprisingly: We saw a frightfully good play last night.

frigid adj. 1 cold, arctic, frosty, frozen, glacial, icy, hyperboreal, polar, bone-chilling, boreal, Siberian, freezing, wintry, chilly, chill, Archaic frore: We were huddled in that frigid alpine hut for two days. 2 cold, cool, cold-hearted, forbidding, austere, unemotional, unfeeling, stiff, rigid, prim, strait-laced, stony, callous, steely, obdurate, thick-skinned, impervious, inaccessible, remote, unapproachable, unfriendly, standoffish, haughty, aloof, reserved: His behaviour to his ex-wife has always been frigid. 3 unapproachable, unresponsive, impassive, passive, indifferent, cold; impotent: She says he's impotent and he insists that she's frigid.

frill n. 1 trimming, decoration, ornament, furbelow, flounce, ruffle: This dress would be suitable without the frill. 2 ornamentation, frippery, falderal or fal de rol or folderol, frou-frou, showiness, ostentation, embellishment, luxury, trimming, extra, addition, superfluity, gewgaw, (bit of) paraphernalia, Colloq US foofaraw, bells and whistles, Slang jazz: They ordered a computer system that has every imaginable frill.

fringe n. 1 trimming, edge, edging, border, frill, flounce, ruffle, purfle, purfling, ruff, ruche or rouche, ricrac or rickrack, ornament, decoration, furbelow: The curtains would look better without that pink fringe. 2 border, perimeter, edge, boundary, bounds, periphery, limits, margin, outskirts, march(es); Technical fimbria: We live on the fringes of Oxford.

--v. 3 edge, border, trim, surround: The grounds are fringed with trees.

frisk v. 1 caper, gambol, cavort, frolic, skip, trip, romp, curvet, leap, dance, prance, play, rollick: She was frisking about like a lamb. 2 search, inspect, examine, check (out), go over: At the airport, we were frisked for weapons.

frisky adj. lively, frolicsome, rollicking, playful, active, animated, (high-)spirited, coltish: Tell Frances to calm down - she's getting a bit too frisky.

fritter v. fritter away. squander, waste, idle away, misspend, dissipate: Stop frittering away your time watching television. She frittered away every penny of her inheritance.

frivolous adj. 1 trifling, inconsequential, unimportant, trivial, nugatory, insignificant, minor, petty, paltry, niggling, peripheral, superficial, worthless, Colloq small-time, Brit twopenny, two a penny, US two-bit, penny-ante, nitty-gritty: Don't waste my time with frivolous details. 2 scatterbrained, bird-brained, silly, feather-brained, irresponsible, flippant, casual, flighty, giddy, foolish, childish, puerile; airy, light, slight, Brit airy-fairy, Colloq flip: Try to be serious and less frivolous about such important matters.

frolic n. 1 merriment, merrymaking, gaiety, sport, fun (and games), high jinks, jollity, mirth, jollification, festivity, celebration, revelry, play, horseplay, Colloq skylarking, partying: After we won the cup there was great frolic in the town. 2 romp, party, spree, revel, gambol, caper, gambado, antic; escapade, prank: The noise of our frolics echoed across the square.

--v. 3 frisk, cavort, caper, skylark, gambol, rollick, romp, cut capers, curvet, play, skip, sport, have fun, Colloq party, make whoopee, horse around or about: Gregory frolics about instead of getting on with his work.

frolicsome

adj. playful, merry, frisky, sportive, gay, lively, sprightly, animated, spirited, coltish: Irene may seem frolicsome but she has her sober side as well.

front n. 1 face, fa‡ade, facing, fore-part, anterior; obverse: The front of the door has a painting on it. This dress buttons up the front. 2 frontage, forefront: The front of the property measures only 40 feet. 3 beginning, head, fore, vanguard, forefront, van: At the front of the parade marched the mayor. 4 bearing, demeanour, mien, air, face, countenance, fa‡ade, mask, expression, show, appearance, aspect, look, exterior: Despite her grief, she put on a brave front at the wake. 5 disguise, cover, guise, mask, cover-up, show, pretext, fa‡ade: The restaurant was merely a front for a narcotics operation. 6 movement, organization, league, bloc, party, group, faction, wing: A new popular front was formed out of a coalition of several opposition groups. 7 haughtiness, overconfidence, effrontery: He frightens away potential clients by showing so much front. 8 in front. first, leading, ahead, to the fore, in the forefront, in the vanguard or van, in advance, in the lead, before; winning: In this picture the man in front is my father. My horse was in front all the way. 9 upfront. a See 8, above. b open, straightforward, honest, direct, forthright, frank, candid: Why can't you be upfront instead of conspiring against me?

--adj. 10 first, advance, foremost, leading, head; main: The front carriage was smashed in the train wreck. Enter by the front door.

--v. 11 overlook, face, look out on or towards, be opposite: Our house fronts the river. The flat fronts on the street. 12 front for. act for, represent; substitute for, replace: I hate formal affairs and hoped that you might front for me.

frontier n. front line; border, boundary, bound(s), marches, (far) reaches, limit(s), pale, extreme(s), bourn: We'll need our passports to cross the frontier into Italy.

froth   n. 1 foam, spume, suds, lather, bubbles; head: The froth tickles my nose. 2 trivia, rubbish, nonsense, twaddle, babble, gibberish, drivel, Colloq hot air, gas, gab, piffle: His sermons were just so much froth.

--v. 3 foam, spume, bubble, fizz, effervesce, aerate: You are supposed to drink the medicine while it is frothing. 4 foam, salivate; lather: He was so angry he began to froth at the mouth.

frown   v. 1 scowl, glower, glare, knit one's brows, grimace, give a dirty look, Brit lour or lower, US lower: Don't frown so much or you'll get wrinkles. 2 frown on or upon. disapprove (of), (look on or regard or view with) disfavour, discountenance, look down on or upon, look askance at, not take kindly to, not think much of, look disapprovingly upon, Colloq take a dim view of, be turned off by: My parents frown on my seeing you.

--n. 3 scowl, glower, glare, grimace, dirty look, Brit lour or lower, US lower: Her forehead is always furrowed by a frown.

frugal   adj. 1 thrifty, sparing, economic(al), careful, prudent, provident, saving, conservative, conservational, moderate: Mother had to become quite frugal when father fell ill. 2 parsimonious, penurious, penny-pinching, cheese-paring, mean, miserly, stingy, niggardly, tight(-fisted), close(-fisted), hand to mouth: He led a frugal existence on his earnings as an artist. 3 meagre, paltry, poor, skimpy, scant(y), small, negligible, piddling: His frugal meal consisted entirely of bread and water.

fruit n. Often, fruits. product(s), result(s), revenue(s), outgrowth, outcome, consequence(s), return(s), advantage(s), benefit(s), profit(s), emolument, payment, income, compensation, recompense, desert(s): He didn't live to enjoy the fruit of his work.

fruitful adj. 1 productive, fertile, prolific, fecund; fructiferous, frugiferous, fructuous: The soil in this valley is extremely fruitful. 2 effective, worthwhile, well-spent, profitable, successful, useful, rewarding, advantageous, beneficial, productive, fertile: We had a fruitful meeting and accomplished a great deal. 3 plentiful, abundant, bounteous, bountiful, prolific, plenteous, copious, luxurious, rich, flourishing: We expect another fruitful harvest this year.

fruition n. realization, fulfilment, consummation, achievement, success, materialization, maturity, ripeness, maturation, completion; perfection: I saw my plans for the town brought to fruition.

fruitless adj. barren, unfruitful, unproductive, worthless, bootless, futile, pointless, useless, vain, idle, unavailing, ineffectual, ineffective, unprofitable, for naught, to no avail, unsuccessful, unrewarding, abortive: Our search for a new manager has so far been fruitless.

frustrate v. 1 thwart, foil, stymie, block, baffle, check, balk or baulk, disappoint, discourage, forestall, prevent, stop, halt, cripple, hinder, hamper, impede, hamstring, defeat, counteract, neutralize, nullify, counter, fight off, repel, repulse: So far, we have been able to frustrate take-over bids for the company. 2 discourage, disappoint, upset, exasperate: I feel frustrated because mother won't let me help with the bills.

6.7 fuel

=-

fuel n. 1 tinder, combustible, kindling; fossil or nuclear fuel: You must pay a lot for fuel to heat that big house. 2 ammunition, encouragement, stimulus, incitement, provocation: Her teasing him only provided more fuel for his passion. 3 nourishment, nutriment, sustenance, food, nutrition: The body needs more fuel on a cold day.

--v. 4 nourish, feed, sustain; stimulate, encourage, incite, provoke, inflame, exacerbate, excite: U-235 is used to fuel the reactor. Frustration fuels the flame of desire.

fugitive n. 1 runaway, escapee, deserter, refugee, Archaic runagate: Many fugitives from political oppression seek asylum in the UK.

--adj. 2 fleeing, escaped, running away, runaway: They police are able to devote little time to tracing fugitive children. 3 fleeting, passing, brief, short-lived, transitory, transient, ephemeral, evanescent, momentary, volatile, fugacious: She once entertained the fugitive notion of becoming an opera singer.

fulfil v. 1 bring about, achieve, accomplish, bring or carry to completion, carry out, complete, consummate, discharge, live up to, abide by, observe, realize, effect, bring or carry off, carry through, keep, satisfy, do, perform, execute, effectuate, achieve: I trust that you will fulfil all your obligations. Will she ever fulfil her ambition to be a virtuoso pianist? 2 answer, satisfy, meet, implement, look or see to, conform to or with, comply with, obey: This hammer will fulfil my needs for the moment. Will your new assistant be able to fulfil your requirements?

fulfilment

n. completion, consummation, performance, carrying out or through, discharge, realization, implementation, execution, accomplishment, compliance, conformity or conformance, making good, meeting, satisfaction, answering, achievement: You will be paid upon fulfilment of the contract.

full adj. 1 filled, replete, brimming, brim-full, packed, jam-packed, congested, loaded, bursting, chock-a-block, chock-full or choke-full or chuck-full, jammed, crammed, solid, well supplied, crowded, stuffed; gorged, saturated, sated, satiated: The tank is full of petrol. Her Christmas stocking was full of toys. I'm full; I couldn't manage another bite. 2 complete, thorough, detailed, comprehensive, total, all-inclusive, broad, extensive, all-encompassing, exhaustive, plenary: The police are demanding a full investigation. 3 complete, entire, whole: The recipe calls for a full dozen egg yolks. 4 utmost, greatest, maximum, highest, top; extreme: Full speed ahead. 5 wide, ample, generous, broad, copious, loose(-fitting): The tight bolero jacket is offset by a full skirt. 6 occupied, engrossed, absorbed, immersed, preoccupied, obsessed, consumed, engaged, concerned: She's entirely too full of herself to pay any attention to us. 7 filled or rounded out, round(ish), well-rounded, plump; robust, shapely, well-shaped, curvaceous, buxom, busty, voluptuous, full-bodied, well-proportioned, well-built , Slang stacked, Brit well-stacked, US zaftig, built: His face is rather full, so wrinkles don't show. Her figure is what I'd call full. 8 unrestricted, non-restricted, unconditional, unqualified: Payment of dues entitles you to full membership privileges. 9 sentimental, emotional, overflowing: His heart was so full he could say no more. 10 unobscured, unshaded, undimmed, open, broad, bright, shining, brilliant, dazzling, glaring, intense, blazing, blinding; harsh, vivid, revealing: We emerged into full daylight. In the full light of day, the plan seems unworkable. 11 powerful, resonant, rich, deep, loud: His full bass voice was unmistakable. 12 complete, whole, entire; comprehensive, uncut, unabridged, intact, unshortened, unbowdlerized, uncensored: We were to receive full pay for a half day's work. Is this a full deck of cards? I have a full set of the original engravings.

--adv. 13 fully, completely, entirely, wholly, thoroughly, altogether: That is not a full-grown horse. 14 squarely, directly, right, precisely, exactly, bang, Colloq slap, smack: The ball hit him full in the eye. 15 very, perfectly, exceedingly, quite, Slang damned: You know full well why I am here.

--n. 16 maximum, greatest degree, fullest: The moon is at its full tonight. 17 in full. completely, fully, entirely, wholly, thoroughly, in its entirety, totally, in toto: Copy this report in full. 18 to the full or fullest. completely, fully, quite, thoroughly, to the utmost, to the greatest or fullest extent; a great deal, greatly, hugely, enormously: We enjoyed our visit to the full.

fumble   v. 1 grope, feel, stumble: She fumbled about for the light switch. 2 mishandle, drop, muff, bungle, botch, Colloq US bobble, flub: Bosworth fumbled the ball and Fernpath scored again.

fume   v. 1 seethe, smoulder, chafe, boil, rage, storm, rant, flare up, bluster, lose one's temper, explode, Colloq get steamed (up) (over or about), lose one's cool, flip one's lid, flip (out), fly off the handle, hit the roof, raise the roof, blow one's top or stack, get hot under the collar, blow a gasket, go off the deep end: She was fuming because I was five minutes late. 2 smoke: The mixture fumes if you add these ingredients.

--n. 3 Usually, fumes. smoke, vapour, effluvium, gas, exhalation, exhaust; smell, odour, aroma, fragrance, stench, stink, miasma; pollution, smog: The fumes from O. C. Cabot's cigar spread through the building.

fumigate v. disinfect, cleanse, purify, sanitize, sterilize, decontaminate: There have been no insects since the kitchen was fumigated.

fun   n. 1 merriment, merrymaking, gaiety, glee, jollity, mirth, cheer, high spirits, delight, frolic, festivity, high jinks; amusement, diversion, sport, enjoyment, recreation, entertainment, pastime, joy, pleasure, Colloq (making) whoopee: Your party was great fun. We always have fun when we're together. Want to have some fun? 2 tomfoolery, horseplay, joking, playfulness, clowning, pranks, sport, jesting, jocularity, nonsense, fooling around or about, Colloq skylarking: This is no time for fun - we have to catch a train. 3 in or for fun. jokingly, teasingly, in jest, facetiously, with tongue in cheek, playfully, as a lark, for a joke or gag; not seriously: In fun, we told him that he had missed the last ferry. 4 Like fun! Under no circumstances!, No way!, Colloq Like hell!, US No way, Jose!: Like fun will I go swimming in the nude! 5 make fun of. poke fun at, tease, deride, (hold up to) ridicule, scoff at, lampoon, parody, satirize, make sport or game of, taunt, gibe, rag, Colloq kid, rib, Brit send up: Kevin is always making fun of people by imitating them.

function n. 1 purpose, aim, use, role or r“le, raison d'ˆtre, responsibility, mission, charge, concern, business, province, duty, job, occupation, work, office, task, chore, assignment, commission, activity: A knife's function is to cut; a guard's is to stand watch. 2 reception, gathering, affair, party, dinner, banquet, gala, ceremony, formality, rite, ritual; occasion, event: We are attending a function at the embassy tonight.

--v. 3 act, operate, perform, behave, work, go, run: Are you sure the engine is functioning properly? 4 serve, take the role or r“le of, act the part of, act as, work as: Dunmow will function as host in my absence.

functional

adj. 1 utilitarian, useful, serviceable, practical, practicable, functioning, working; essential, important, effective: This gear is a functional part, not mere decoration. 2 working, operating, operational, running, going: Is this telephone functional?

functionary

n. official, commissioner, bureaucrat, office-holder, officer: She is some sort of functionary at the Ministry of Information.

fund n. 1 supply, stock, reserve, store, pool, cache, reservoir, repository, mine: Alison is a veritable fund of information about art. 2 Often, funds. money, (hard) cash, ready money, assets, means, wealth, resources, wherewithal, savings, capital, nest egg, endowment, Colloq loot, lucre, pelf, green, bread, dough, Brit ready, readies, lolly, US bucks, scratch: He has the funds to buy out his partners. Have you contributed to the fund for indigent lexicographers?

--v. 3 finance, back, capitalize, stake, support, pay for, endow, grant, subsidize: The company has funded a number of new businesses.

fundamental

adj. 1 basic, rudimentary, elementary, primary, main, prime, first, principal, underlying, cardinal, central, essential, quintessential, constitutional, inherent, intrinsic, important, crucial, critical, organic, vital: Our fundamental aim is to provide employment.

--n. 2 principle, law, rule, axiom, essential, element, sine qua non, cornerstone, keystone: Freedom of speech is a fundamental in a democracy.

funeral n. obsequies, exequies; burial, interment, sepulture, entombment, inhumation; cremation: It is fitting to wear black when attending a funeral.

funereal adj. grave, solemn, sad, unhappy, morose, sombre, mournful, doleful, sorrowful, melancholy, gloomy, lugubrious, dismal, grievous, depressing, dreary, woeful, dark, sepulchral: Why are you in such a funereal mood?

funny adj. 1 comical, humorous, comic, ludicrous, laughable, ridiculous, risible, waggish, side-splitting, hilarious, uproarious, jocular, jocose, merry, droll, facetious, witty, farcical, slapstick, zany; amusing, entertaining, diverting, Colloq hysterical: A comedian's material may be funny but he relies on timing for much of his effect. 2 peculiar, odd, unusual, curious, strange, mysterious, mystifying, puzzling, queer, weird, bizarre, remarkable, unconventional, eccentric, Slang off-the-wall: She had a funny expression on her face. If you do love me, you have a funny way of showing it.

furious adj. 1 angry, enraged, raging, infuriated, fuming, incensed, irate, maddened, mad, boiling, wrathful, provoked, beside oneself, up in arms, in high dudgeon, on the warpath, foaming at the mouth, Literary wroth, Colloq steaming, livid, in a tizzy, Slang up the wall, pissed off, browned off, Brit cheesed off: Mark was furious at Betty for leaving without him. 2 fierce, wild, violent, savage, intense, unrestrained, frantic, frenzied: A few made a furious attempt to jump off the burning ship.

furnish v. 1 supply, provide, afford, equip, outfit, fit (out or up), rig (out or up), provision, give, stock up, Colloq Brit kit out or up: The trading post furnished what we needed for a month in the wilderness. Can you furnish me with a blanket? 2 decorate, equip: She received a commission to furnish a ten-room house.

furniture n. 1 furnishings, household (goods); movables, chattels, paraphernalia, effects, possessions, belongings, Colloq gear, things, stuff, Slang shit: There wasn't any furniture in the room, not even a chair. 2 fittings, fitments, equipment, fixtures, apparatus, devices, tackle, tack, trappings, gear, accoutrements or US also accouterments, accessories, appliances, Colloq Brit clobber: The front door has some fine brass furniture.

furore n. 1 US furor, uproar, outburst, tumult, commotion, turmoil, brouhaha, ado, hurly-burly, to-do, hubbub, stir, fuss, disturbance, excitement: The deportation of the student caused a furore among his supporters. 2 rage, craze, mania, vogue, enthusiasm, obsession, fad: The furore for antiques has driven up prices enormously.

furrow n. 1 groove, channel, rut, trench, track, ditch, gutter, trough, fosse, fissure, sulcus, sulcation, flute, score, cut, gash, scratch, line; wrinkle, crease, corrugation, crow's-feet, Technical sulcus: He can't even plough a straight furrow. The furrows in his brow come from worry.

--v. 2 groove, channel, flute, score, cut, gash, scratch; plough, harrow: This rock was furrowed by glacial action. 3 wrinkle, crease, corrugate, knit, pucker, crinkle: A frown furrowed his forehead.

further adj. 1 more, additional, another, other, new, supplemental, supplementary, accessory, auxiliary, extra, spare, fresh: Further investment by our group is out of the question. 2 farther, more distant or remote: Some day, we may travel to the further reaches of the galaxy.

--adv. 3 furthermore, besides, moreover, too, also, additionally, in addition, over and above, beyond, above, what is more, to boot, yet, then (again), again: She told him he was rude and, further, ugly as well. 4 farther, at or to a greater distance or depth: She has looked into the matter much further than I.

--v. 5 advance, promote, favour, push or urge onward(s) or forward(s), forward, foster, back, patronize, support, help, assist, aid: What can I do to further your efforts?

furtherance

n. promotion, advancement, pursuit, backing, boosting, boost, fostering, championing, championship, advocating, advocacy, patronage, support, help, aid, assistance, succour: The furtherance of anti-pollution laws is all to the good.

furtive   adj. 1 secret, private, secretive, clandestine, surreptitious, stealthy, underhand(ed), covert, hidden, conspiratorial, skulking, deceitful, under the table, under the counter, hugger-mugger, Colloq sneaky: She gave me a furtive look to let me know she was on to me. 2 sly, foxy, cunning, crafty, wily, shifty, untrustworthy, Colloq sneaky: His furtive manoeuvres mark him as one not to be trusted.

fury   n. 1 anger, rage, wrath, indignation, ire, choler, rancour: Hell hath no fury like a woman scorned. 2 impetuosity, ferocity, savagery, vehemence, fierceness, tempestuousness, turbulence, violence: How can we stem the fury of his attack? 3 virago, shrew, spitfire, hell-cat, termagant, vixen,she-devil, hag, witch, bitch, Archaic beldam: Some of the furies from the women's liberation movement descended on him.

fuse   v. blend, merge, unite, combine, compound, mix, commingle, coalesce, flow or come together, consolidate, amalgamate; melt: The metals fuse at a relatively low temperature.

fuss   n. 1 bother, pother, dither, fluster, flurry, fret, commotion, ado, bustle, to-do, excitement, furore or US furor, unrest, (deal of) trouble, disquiet, upset, stir, uproar, disturbance, stir, hubbub, agitation, brouhaha, Colloq hoo-ha, flap, stink, Brit kerfuffle, Slang US hoop-la: Stop making such a big fuss over nothing.

--v. 2 make a fuss, rush about or around, flutter, Colloq kick up a fuss: I do wish she'd stop fussing - the party is going very well.

fussy   adj. 1 particular, finicky, finical, dainty, discriminating, difficult, fastidious, exacting, demanding, Colloq picky, choosy, nit-picking, pernickety or US also persnickety: He's so fussy that he'll wear only custom-made shoes. 2 fancy, elaborate, over-decorated, gingerbread, rococo, ornate, detailed, Byzantine: The style is a bit too fussy for my taste.

futile   adj. unsuccessful, unavailing, useless, unprofitable, vain, abortive, profitless, bootless, worthless, empty, sterile, barren, unproductive, impotent, ineffective, ineffectual; Chiefly literary sleeveless: After several futile attempts to get in touch with you, I gave up.

future   n. 1 days or time to come; tomorrow: Who knows what the future may bring?

--adj. 2 coming, tomorrow's, later, prospective, following, unborn, subsequent, expected, approaching; to be to come: Future generations will appreciate what we have done here.

fuzzy   adj. 1 woolly, downy, linty, fleecy, furry, fluffy, frizzy, flossy, flocculent, floccose, floccus; feathery: Tiny bits from her fuzzy pullover kept coming off on my suit. 2 dim, faint, hazy, foggy, misty, blurred, blurry, indistinct, unclear, vague, shadowy, indefinite, obscure, ill-defined, woolly, distorted: The picture was too fuzzy to make out any details.

7.0 G

=-

7.1 gab...

=-

gab   v. 1 jabber, gabble, chatter, gibber, blather or blether, prate, prattle, blab, gossip, Colloq Brit natter, witter, Slang jaw, yack, US run off at the mouth: Stop gabbing and get on with your work!

--n. 2 chatter, chit-chat, prattle, jibber-jabber, jabber, gossip, blarney, blather or blether, tittle-tattle; cackle, moonshine, nonsense, drivel, twaddle, rubbish, gobbledegook or gobbledygook, mumbo-jumbo, poppycock, bunk or bunkum, balderdash, stuff and nonsense, hogwash, eyewash, Colloq piffle, flummery, rot, bull, codswallop, Slang bullshit, horseshit, shit, crap, garbage, Chiefly Brit tosh, balls: He had nothing important to say - just a lot of gab.

gad v. Usually, gad about or around. gallivant, run around, flit about, traipse: He's never home, always gadding about, from one party to another.

gadget n. contrivance, device, appliance, creation, invention, machine, tool, utensil, implement, instrument, mechanism, apparatus, Colloq contraption, widget, thingumabob or thingamabob or thingumbob, thingumajig or thingamajig or thingummy, whatchamacallit, what's-its-name, Brit doodah, US hickey, doodad, doohickey, whosis, whatsis, dingus, Chiefly US and Canadian gismo or gizmo: He invented a gadget for resealing fizzy drink bottles.

gag° v. 1 silence, stifle, still, muffle, stop (up), muzzle, quiet, curb, suppress, repress, restrain, throttle, strangle, check, inhibit, discourage: The department gagged him, forbidding any press interviews. 2 retch, choke, heave; gasp for air, struggle for breath; US keck: That drink made me gag.

--n. 3 restraint, curb, muzzle, check: MI5 tried to put a gag on the revelations of the former spy.

gagý n. 1 joke, witticism, jest, quip, pun, gibe, Colloq wisecrack, Slang crack: He told some gags but nobody found them funny. 2 practical joke, hoax, prank, trick, Colloq fast one: For a gag, we put a snake in the sergeant's bed.

gaiety n. 1 cheerfulness, exhilaration, elation, glee, joie de vivre, buoyancy, light-heartedness, blitheness, happiness, felicity, pleasure, delight, joy, joyfulness, joyousness, exultation, merriment, mirth, mirthfulness, jubilation, good or high spirits, sprightliness, liveliness, joviality, jollity, hilarity: The gaiety of the celebration was becoming infectious. 2 Often, gaieties. merrymaking, festivity, festivities, celebration, revelry, revels, rejoicing, conviviality, Old-fashioned Brit mafficking: We all joined in the gaiety of Mardi Gras. 3 colourfulness, brightness, gaudiness, garishness, brilliance, brightness, cheeriness: The gaiety of her costume was offset by her lugubrious expression.

gaily adv. 1 showily, gaudily, brightly, splendidly, brilliantly, colourfully, flashily, flamboyantly, garishly: The dancers appeared in their gaily coloured dresses. 2 happily, cheerfully, cheerily, gleefully, joyously, joyfully, jubilantly, merrily, blithely, light-heartedly, airily, jauntily, insouciantly: The revellers came cavorting gaily down the street.

gain   v. 1 get, obtain, acquire, procure, attain, achieve, secure, earn, win, capture, bag, net, harvest, reap, garner, glean, collect, gather, come by, pick up: Any advantage we gain today may be lost tomorrow. 2 make, get, profit, gain ground, earn, benefit, realize, clear, bring in, produce, yield: Have you gained from the transaction? 3 improve, recuperate, progress, rally, get better, advance, gain ground: Her health has gained steadily since the cyst was removed. 4 catch up (to or on or with), approach, get nearer (to), overtake, close with, close in (on), narrow the gap, gain ground: As we came to the finish line, Tom was gaining on me. Though he kept gaining, I won. 5 leave behind, outdistance, draw or pull away (from), widen the gap, get or go or move further or farther ahead, get further or farther away (from), increase the lead: I kept gaining on him till I was a mile ahead. 6 reach, arrive at, get to, come to: After paddling for hours, we finally gained the shore. 7 increase, move ahead, improve, advance, progress, gain ground: Shares gained again on the exchange.

--n. 8 profit, advantage, margin, yield, return, revenue, income, dividend, benefit, emolument, payment, pay, money; proceeds, earnings, winnings; Colloq chiefly US take, payout, pay-off: What was your gain on the sale of the house? He has seen gains of 20 per cent on his investment. 9 increase, increment, improvement, rise, addition, enhancement, elevation, augmentation, upward or forward movement, advance, progress: Each month has seen a gain in share prices. 10 acquisition, achievement, attainment: My gain was at the expense of their sacrifice.

gainful   adj. advantageous, profitable, productive, fruitful, beneficial, useful, valuable, worthwhile, rewarding, remunerative, lucrative, moneymaking: Your father thinks it about time you sought gainful employment.

gala   n. 1 fˆte or fete, festival, festivity, feast, celebration, event, red-letter day, holiday, holy day, carnival, occasion, happening, event, pageant, party, ball; field-day: The annual gala is planned for Midsummer's Eve.

--adj. 2 merry, festive, joyful, joyous, gleeful, jovial, gay, celebratory, jolly, convivial, happy, cheerful, cheery: Her home-coming was a gala occasion.

gale n. 1 wind-storm, strong wind, (big or hard) blow, blast, turbulence, storm, tempest: I refuse to take the boat out in that gale. 2 outburst, burst, explosion, eruption; peal, roar, scream, shout, howl, shriek: Bea Lillie needed merely to raise an eyebrow to send her audience into gales of laughter.

gall° n. 1 bitterness, acerbity, acrimony, harshness, vitriol, asperity, bile, spleen, causticness or causticity, bite, mordacity or mordaciousness, sharpness, rancidness or rancidity; venom, poison, rancour: Once more he experienced the gall of disappointment. 2 impudence, insolence, impertinence, audacity, brashness, brazenness, sauciness, effrontery, temerity, overconfidence, front, Colloq brass, nerve, guts, cheek, lip, crust, sauce, US and Canadian chutzpah, moxie; Slang balls: One student had the gall to suggest that he would be a better teacher than I am.

gallý n. 1 sore (spot), abrasion, scrape, graze, scratch, chafe: This gall on my leg is from the saddle. 2 irritation, annoyance, nuisance, bother, exasperation, vexation, Colloq aggravation: One has to tolerate a lot of gall in this job.

--v. 3 irritate, chafe, abrade, fret, scrape, rub, grate, scratch: His shoe was galling his heel. 4 irritate, annoy, bother, vex, irk, exasperate, harass, harry, plague, provoke, goad, nag, pester, hector, badger, nettle, needle, ruffle, fret, anger, enrage, inflame, infuriate, incense, arouse, US rankle: It galls me to think of all the animals killed just to make fur coats.

gallant adj. 1 brave, courageous, bold, valiant, daring, dauntless, intrepid, plucky, fearless, valorous, unafraid, undaunted, manly, manful, plucky, mettlesome, stout-hearted, lion-hearted, heroic, dashing, (high-)spirited: Three gallant soldiers held off the enemy attack. 2 chivalrous, courtly, courteous, polite, attentive, gentlemanly, noble, gracious, considerate, thoughtful, well-bred, mannerly: What man is so gallant today as to give up his seat on a bus to a lady? 3 dignified, elegant, imposing, grand, noble, glorious, fine, splendid, majestic, stately, magnificent: Overwhelmed by four enemy men o' war, the gallant ship sank beneath the waves.

--n. 4 champion, hero, knight, cavalier, paladin: Which gallant wears her scarf on his sleeve in today's jousts? 5 lover, Romeo, sweetheart, beloved, paramour, boyfriend, beau, escort, suitor, admirer, Literary swain: In those days, gallants continually sent their ladies gifts and flowers.

gallows   n. gibbet: Another name for gallows was 'Tyburn tree', after that at Tyburn, in London.

galore   adv. in abundance, in large quantity or numbers or amounts, in excess, everywhere, aplenty, in profusion: There were prizes galore for everything from swimming to skittles.

gamble   v. 1 risk, venture, hazard, bet, wager, stake, chance, speculate; play, game, Brit punt: I wouldn't gamble that he'll be on time. I go to Monte Carlo to gamble. 2 gamble on. back, bet or wager on, stake or put money on, take a chance or flier on, try one's luck or fortune on, lay or place or make a wager or bet on; count on, rely on: We gambled on the horse to win. I was gambling on his having forgotten the debt.

--n. 3 chance, risk, venture; uncertainty, speculation, Colloq US crap-shoot: I had to take the gamble that the rope would hold. All of life is just a gamble. 4 bet, wager, stake, Brit punt: She took a gamble on number 14.

game   n. 1 amusement, pastime, diversion, distraction, recreation, play; sport: She regards love as just a game. 2 contest, competition, meeting or US also meet, tournament or US also tourney, match, encounter, engagement, event, round; regatta: Would you like to see a football game? The games are held annually. 3 scheme, plan, plot, design, stratagem, strategy, tactic, artifice, trick, device(s), ploy: Aha! I am on to your little game! 4 occupation, line (of work), job, position, field, business, trade, profession, Slang racket: She is in the advertising game. 5 quarry, prey; victim, target: Game has been plentiful this year, especially pheasant and quail. He is fair game for any unscrupulous swindler. 6 play games. dissemble, dissimulate, be deceitful or underhand, misrepresent, pretend, practise deceit or deception, fake, feign: She wasn't serious about selling, she was just playing games.

--adj. 7 ready, willing, prepared; plucky or spirited or daring or adventurous enough: She's game for anything: I'm sure she'll jump at the chance of scuba-diving lessons. 8 plucky, spirited, high-spirited, daring, devil-may-care, adventurous, unflinching, courageous, brave, bold, heroic, Colloq nervy, gutsy: Entering the cave to rescue the dog was a game thing for him to do.

--v. 9 gamble: He has taken up gaming as a hobby.

gamut n. range, scale, spectrum, compass, spread, sweep, field, series: Parker said that Hepburn's acting ran the whole gamut of emotions from A to B.

gang n. 1 group, band, crowd, company, pack, mob, ring: The police are looking for the gang that robbed the mail train. 2 clique, set, coterie, circle, party, company, team, troupe: A whole gang of my friends came over yesterday evening.

--v. 3 gang up (on or against.) conspire or plot against, combine or unite or unify or join (against), league or ally or club or band (against), join forces (against), overwhelm: When they all ganged up on me, I decided to change my mind.

gangster n. criminal, gang member, racketeer, Mafioso, soldier, hooligan, gunman, thug, mugger, robber, tough, ruffian, desperado, brigand, bandit, Brit skinhead, Australian and New Zealand larrikin, Chiefly US and Canadian hoodlum, gunslinger, Colloq crook; Slang hood, hit man, US gunsel, torpedo, mobster, goon: The gangsters were arrested for smuggling cocaine.

gap n. 1 opening, space, aperture, distance, hole, void, gulf, cavity, break, breach, crevice, chink, crack, split, division, cleft, rift, rip, tear, rent; interruption, interval, lacuna, hiatus, discontinuity, disruption; lull, pause, rest, recess, halt, stop, suspension, delay, wait, intermission, respite: The gap between the walls is just big enough for a child. I can see through a gap in the curtain. There is a gap in his payment record. 2 difference, divergence, disparity, disagreement, inconsistency, discrepancy; division, distinction: A gap exists between your ideas of justice and mine.

gape v. 1 stare, gawk, goggle, Slang rubberneck, Brit gawp or gaup: She gaped when they brought in the boar's head. 2 yawn, open wide, part; split: The jaws of the huge shark gaped to swallow the diver.

garbage n. rubbish, refuse, waste, muck, offal, sweepings, swill, filth, slops, dross, scraps, junk, litter, debris, detritus, Chiefly US and Canadian trash, Slang crap: The garbage in the river is a health hazard.

garble v. 1 warp, distort, twist, corrupt, adulterate, slant, colour, mangle, mutilate, pervert, doctor, falsify, misrepresent, belie, misstate, misquote, misreport, mistranslate, misrender; misunderstand, misconstrue, misread: She has garbled the story and it makes no sense. I've garbled your message completely. 2 confuse, mix up, jumble, mumble, mutter: He garbles his words so badly that I cannot understand him.

garish adj. gaudy, flashy, glaring, cheap, tawdry, florid, raffish, vulgar, harsh, loud, meretricious, Brummagem, showy, crude, tasteless, Colloq flash, Slang US glitzy: Their flat is filled with the most garish decorations.

garland n. 1 wreath, festoon, crown, chaplet, circlet: Diana crowned the sleeping Endymion with a garland of flowers.

--v. 2 wreathe, festoon, crown, decorate, coil, spiral, encircle, ring, circle: The columns were all garlanded with brightly coloured paper decorations.

garments n.pl. garb, clothes, clothing, raiment, dress, attire, apparel, costume, outfit, habit, vestments, habiliment; wardrobe; uniform, livery; Colloq duds, rig, togs, Slang rags, threads, gear: All his garments are custom-made in Savile Row.

garner v. gather, collect, accumulate, assemble, amass, store (up), stock (up), husband, lay in or up or down or by, heap or pile up, put away or by, stow (away), cache, store, save, reserve: He garnered what he could from the family estate.

gash n. 1 cut, slash, wound, score, cleft, incision, laceration, slit, groove, split: The chisel slipped, cutting a deep gash in the table.

--v. 2 cut, slash, wound, score, cleave, incise, lacerate, slit, groove, split: I've gashed my hand on a rusty nail.

gasp v. 1 pant, gulp for air, fight for air or breath; catch one's breath, snort, huff, puff: I gasped when I saw the condition of the room.

--n. 2 snort, puff, blow, gulp, wheeze: He gave a gasp of horror.

gate n. 1 gateway, barrier, doorway, door, access, entrance, exit, passage, opening: The garden gate sagged on its hinges. 2 admissions, attendance, crowd, audience, assemblage: We had the biggest gate of the year at yesterday's game.

gather v. 1 collect, assemble, accumulate, amass, muster, heap or pile (up), garner, pick, harvest, glean, get or bring together, stockpile, stock: I gathered all the firewood I could find. 2 collect, assemble, convene, meet, huddle, forgather or foregather, get or come together, congregate, turn out, flock or herd (together), group, cluster, throng, crowd, swarm, rally: We gathered round the old man's bed. 3 purse, shirr, pucker, tuck, ruffle, pleat, draw or pull together, contract, constrict: The fabric is gathered at the waist. 4 draw, conclude, infer, assume, deduce, understand, learn, hear, be led to believe: I gather that you'd prefer not to collect the award in person. 5 increase, grow, enlarge, expand, extend, wax, heighten, deepen, intensify, build, rise: He stood, menacingly, in the gathering shadows.

gathering n. assembly, convocation, convention, congress, assemblage, meeting, get-together, turnout, conclave, rally, aggregation: There is a gathering of the clan once a year.

gaudy adj. garish, flashy, glaring, tawdry, loud, cheap, florid, showy, ostentatious, raffish, vulgar, crude, tasteless, Brummagem, meretricious, tinselly, gimcrack, shoddy, trashy, Brit tatty, US and Canadian honky-tonk, Colloq US tacky, chintzy: The carnival stands were painted pink, purple, and other gaudy colours.

gauge v. 1 measure, determine, weigh, calculate, compute, reckon, figure, US technical also gage: Try to gauge the height of that building. 2 judge, evaluate, appraise, assess, rate, estimate, guess, US technical also gage: How can we gauge the strength of the opposition?

--n. 3 standard, yardstick, criterion, benchmark, basis, measure, norm, model, example, pattern, rule, touchstone, test, guide, guideline, US litmus test, Technical also gage: You cannot use your compulsive work habits as a gauge for others. 4 scope, capacity, amount, extent, measure, size, dimension(s), magnitude, degree, limit: There are a number of narrow-gauge railways in Wales. What will be the gauge of your involvement in the enterprise?

gaunt adj. 1 emaciated, scrawny, raw-boned, bony, angular, haggard, skeletal, wasted, starved-looking, cadaverous, scraggy, spindly, meagre, hollow-cheeked, spare, skinny, lank(y), pinched, thin, underweight: We were shocked by the gaunt faces of the famine victims. 2 dreary, dismal, bleak, bare, barren, deserted, desolate, harsh, hostile, unfriendly, inimical, stern, forbidding, stark, grim, forlorn: Under the low cloud, the moor looked even more gaunt than usual.

gawk n. 1 oaf, lout, bumpkin, clod, boor, churl, dolt, dunderhead or dunderpate, ninny, ninny-hammer, ignoramus, fool, simpleton, ass, bungler, bumbler, Colloq clodhopper, lummox, Slang chiefly US old-fashioned galoot or galloot, lug: You big gawk, get out of my way!

--v. 2 stare, goggle, gape, Colloq rubberneck, Slang Brit gawp or gaup: Stop gawking and help me get him to a hospital.

gay adj. 1 See homosexual, 1, below. 2 happy, blithe, jovial, light-hearted, carefree, debonair, cheerful, gleeful, bright, joyful, joyous, jubilant, high-spirited, merry, lively, vivacious, buoyant, effervescent, bubbly, bubbling, sparkling, US chipper: In those days our hearts were young and gay. 3 garish, gaudy, flashy, bright, brilliant, vivid, many-coloured: The gay decorations added to the atmosphere to the party.

--n. 4 See homosexual, 2, below.

gaze v. 1 look at or on or upon or over, view, regard, contemplate, stare; wonder, gape: She stood gazing out to sea. I gazed at the screen in disbelief.

--n. 2 fixed or steady or intent look, stare, look: His gaze faltered and he averted his eyes.

7.2 gear...

=-

gear n. 1 cog, cog-wheel; gearbox, mechanism, machinery; works: This gear operates the automatic doors. 2 equipment, apparatus, appliances, implements, tools, tackle, utensils, supplies, material(s), accessories, accoutrements or US also accouterments, appurtenances, paraphernalia, panoply, outfit, trappings, fixtures, materiel or mat,riel: Have you taken all the camping gear? 3 clothing, apparel, attire, clothes, garments, habit, habiliments, vestments, raiment, regalia, uniform, livery, Colloq duds, togs, Brit clobber: You should keep your gear in your locker. 4 belongings, things, stuff, effects, kit, effects, chattels, goods, impedimenta, (bag and) baggage, accoutrements, Colloq junk, Slang shit: Get your gear together and get out of here!

--v. 5 adjust, adapt, fit, suit, tailor, accommodate: You will have to gear your schedule according to our plans.

gem n. 1 gemstone, jewel, stone, precious or semiprecious stone: The crown was set with rubies and other precious gems. 2 ideal, quintessence, perfect example; pearl (of great price), marvel, flower, ,lite, cream, crŠme de la crŠme, pick, nonpareil, treasure, prize, masterpiece, chef-d'oeuvre: This is a perfect gem of a painting. The vale of Grasmere is a gem in the diadem of the Lake District.

general adj. 1 common, prevailing, accepted, popular, public, communal, community, widespread, shared, extensive, prevalent, universal, worldwide, global; comprehensive, inclusive, all-inclusive, non-exclusive, overall, unrestricted: The general feeling is that she should resign. We demanded a general revision of the law. 2 ordinary, common, normal, customary, habitual, regular, usual, run-of-the-mill, everyday, familiar, accustomed; non-specialized, unspecialized, non-specific, unspecific: Indoor plumbing became general only in the twentieth century. Within the general area of ceramics there are scores of specialities. 3 mixed, assorted, miscellaneous, heterogeneous, encyclopedic or encyclopaedic, diversified, extended, broad, comprehensive, inclusive, all-inclusive, non-exclusive, overall, blanket, across the board, sweeping, panoramic, catholic, composite, combined, blended, hybrid, mongrel: The plan is to prepare a general work of reference. 4 vague, indefinite, broad, ill-defined, loose, inexact, imprecise, undetailed, non-specific, unspecific, generalized, overall; approximate: This kind of general report fails to pinpoint problems.

generality

n. 1 generalization, abstraction, abstract, vague or loose or sweeping or indefinite statement, imprecise or vague notion: His talks are characterized by empty generality, without detailed facts. 2 Often, generalities. principle(s), law(s), abstraction(s), generalization(s), universality or universalities: You have given us the generalities, now we want the particulars.

generally adv. 1 usually, commonly, ordinarily, in general, customarily, habitually, conventionally, normally, typically, on average, as a rule, by and large, for the most part, mostly, mainly, on the whole, predominantly: Generally, people do not have a healthy diet. He is generally in the office at noon. 2 superficially, non-specifically, unspecifically, roughly, broadly, in a general way, loosely, approximately, largely, in the main, mainly, principally: He covered the subject generally, not dwelling on details.

generate v. 1 produce, create, originate, make, manufacture: At these stations we can generate 1000 megawatts of electricity. 2 spawn, father, sire, bring into being, procreate, breed, beget, engender, propagate: This one fish would generate millions of offspring if all survived. 3 produce, create, give rise to, inspire, whip up, cause, initiate: Her good fortune generated in him a feeling of envy. 4 produce, create, invent, coin, make up, fabricate, fashion, devise, develop, form, forge, mould, contrive, construct, put together: We must generate a new theory to account for these phenomena.

generation
n. 1 production, reproduction, propagation, procreation, begetting, fathering, siring: In the lower animals, the generation of offspring is asexual. 2 time(s), day(s), age, period, era, epoch: The trait did not appear till later generations. The 1950s and '60s spawned the yuppie generation of the '80s. 3 origination, creation, genesis, inception, initiation, start, beginning, institution, establishment, formation, formulation: The generation of legal systems can be traced to the oldest civilizations. 4 crop; age (group); contemporaries: This generation of Americans has a rendezvous with destiny. He prefers to be with people of his own generation.

generous adj. 1 bounteous, bountiful, magnanimous, charitable, eleemosynary, philanthropic, lavish, open-handed, free, liberal, unstinting, ungrudging, beneficent, benevolent, big-hearted, munificent: Not everyone who has money is generous with it. 2 magnanimous, benevolent, charitable, unselfish, humanitarian, humane, kindly, noble, high-minded, lofty, good, disinterested, unprejudiced: He was too generous in acknowledging the accomplishments of his political foes. 3 plentiful, full, lavish, overflowing, abundant, bounteous, handsome, copious, ample: They certainly serve generous portions at that restaurant.

genial adj. affable, amiable, cordial, warm, friendly, congenial, agreeable, good-natured, good-humoured, well-disposed, neighbourly, sociable, kindly, kind, hospitable, easygoing, relaxed, pleasant, nice, cheerful, cheery, convivial: And here is your genial host, Sonny Gegenschein!

genitals n.pl. genitalia, sexual or reproductive organs, sex organs, organs of procreation or generation, private parts, privates: They wore loincloths to cover their genitals.

genius n. 1 mastermind, master, virtuoso, intellect; maestro, expert, adept; Colloq brain, Einstein: At the age of nine, this genius entered university. 2 intelligence, brilliance, wit, ingenuity, brains, ability, aptitude: She is a woman of incredible genius.

3 talent, gift, knack, faculty, flair, aptitude, forte, capacity, ability, capability: He has a genius for saying the wrong thing.

genre   n. kind, sort, type, class, style, brand, character, category, genus, species, variety, fashion: Her paintings are in the classicist genre.

genteel   adj. 1 over-polite, unnatural, pretentious, affected, mannered, putting on airs, pompous, overdone, Colloq posh, la-di-da or lah-di-dah or la-de-da, phoney or US also phony, Brit county: The Brumfits are a bit too genteel for my taste. 2 courtly, polite, civil, well-mannered, well-bred, courteous, mannerly, gracious, proper, respectable, decorous, ladylike, gentlemanly, chivalrous, cavalier, debonair, suave, patrician, high-class, upper-class, aristocratic, thoroughbred, blue-blooded, noble, royal, Colloq classy, tony, upper crust, US silk-stocking: His son married a woman from an ancient, genteel house. 3 refined, polished, sophisticated, debonair, suave, urbane, cosmopolitan, cultivated, cultured, elegant, Colloq ritzy: Why small feet are considered genteel, I cannot say.

gentle   adj. 1 kind, kindly, mild, tender, benign, moderate, easy, quiet, calm, still, temperate, unruffled, untroubled, undisturbed, tranquil, restful, peaceful, pacific, placid, smooth, lenient, patient, indulgent, soothing, thoughtful, gracious, compassionate, humane, tender-hearted, merciful; soft, light, balmy: Amy is very gentle with the patients. A gentle breeze barely stirred the leaves. The gentle waves belied the terror that lurked below. 2 tame, tractable, docile, manageable, controllable; broken: As he's a beginner, he's been given a gentle mare to ride. 3 gradual, easy, moderate: The car rolled down the gentle slope and stopped.

gentry   n. ladies and gentlemen, upper classes, Šlite, aristocracy, landed gentry, gentlefolk, upper class(es) or strata, cream, crŠme de la crŠme; landowners, Brit squirearchy, Colloq upper crust or strata: He thinks he is privileged because he belongs to the gentry.

genuine   adj. 1 authentic, real, bona fide, veritable, legitimate, true, original, proper, not counterfeit or fake; pukka or pucka: Is that a genuine diamond? I know his feelings for her are genuine.

Armstrong is a genuine leader of men. 2 candid, frank, open, sincere, earnest, honest, unfeigned: His art is much more genuine than the pretentious output of his contemporaries.

germ n. 1 micro-organism, microbe, bacterium, virus, Colloq bug: Germs were not conceived of before Leeuwenhoek's invention of the microscope. 2 source, origin, fount, embryo, seed, root, rudiment, beginning, start, base, basis: The germ of romantic literature lies in folk-tales.

gesture n. 1 movement, motion, gesticulation, signal, indication, action, Colloq US high sign: She made a gesture of dismissal. 2 formality, move; gambit, ploy; token, indication, symbol: Sending her flowers was a friendly gesture. Their burning the flag was a gesture of defiance.

--v. 3 motion, gesticulate, signal, sign, indicate, Colloq US give (someone) the high sign: He gestured for me to step forward.

get v. 1 obtain, secure, acquire, come by or into (the) possession of, procure, pick up; collect; buy, purchase, book, retain, hire, engage, rent, lease; accede to, inherit, fall heir to, succeed to: Where did you get these beautiful prints? You had better get yourself a good lawyer. They got the furniture from his mother's estate. 2 receive; be given, come by: He got a bicycle from his grandma. I got a job at the carwash. 3 earn, receive, realize, make, take, gross, clear, net, pocket, be paid; win, Colloq take home, pull down: He gets a lot of money for just standing there and answering questions. 4 fetch, go (to or and) get, go for or after, pick up; bring (back), retrieve: Please get me a cup of tea. 5 catch, contract, have, suffer from, come down with, fall ill or sick with, be afflicted with, become infected with, acquire: You'll get pneumonia if you go out without your coat. 6 become, fall: We got ill from eating too much chocolate. 7 become, turn, grow: It got very cold last night. He got rich almost overnight. 8 capture, seize, arrest, take, apprehend, grab, pick up, lay hold of, bag, Colloq collar, nab, pinch: Are the police sure that they got the right person? 9 manage, arrange, come, succeed; contrive, fix it, manoeuvre, manipulate, Colloq wangle: How did you get to be chairman? 10 reach, arrive (at), come, go, travel, journey: She got home by taxi. 11 catch, take, enter, make, come or go by, travel or journey by: He got the midnight train. 12 reach, get in touch with, communicate with, get onto or through to, Colloq contact: We finally got him just before he left for the day. 13 receive, pick up, tune in to or on, listen to or watch: I cannot get that programme. 14 persuade, prevail upon, coax, induce, influence, cajole, wheedle, talk (someone) into, sway, bring (someone) round, make, cause: How did you ever get them to let you go? 15 put, place, set, fit, manoeuvre, manipulate, wiggle, wriggle: I can't get this knob back on. 16 affect, stir, move, touch, arouse, stimulate, excite, have an impact or effect on, make an impression on, impress, leave a mark on, get to, Colloq turn (someone) on: Those old romantic songs really get me. 17 get at, irritate, annoy, vex, irk, nettle, pique, provoke, anger, exasperate, bother, perturb, rile, Colloq bug, get (someone's) goat, rub (someone) (up) the wrong way, Sometimes non-standard aggravate: Doesn't it get you to see people going unpunished for their crimes? 18 baffle, confuse, confound, puzzle, perplex, bewilder: You've got me! I don't know where it is! 19 understand, appreciate, fathom, see, grasp, apprehend, perceive, follow, comprehend, take in, work out, make head(s) or tail(s) of: You just don't get the joke, do you? 20 catch, hear: I didn't get the name; please repeat it. 21 derive, learn, glean, absorb, take in: Did you get anything from yesterday's lecture? 22 have, place, put, fix, pinpoint: Eventually, I'll get him where I want him! 23 get even with, revenge oneself on, take vengeance on, pay (someone) back, settle or even the score with, get back at: I'll get him for betraying me if it's the last thing I do! 24 strike, hit, punch, smack; shoot; hurt, harm, damage, injure; Slang sock, slug: She got him right between the eyes. 25 get about or around. a spread, become known, leak (out), circulate, be bruited about or around, be noised abroad, go about or around: He let the news get about that he needed a secretary. b be socially active, socialize, go or get out; run about or around, gad about: Since his accident, he doesn't get around much any more. 26 get across. get or put over, put across, get through, communicate, make clear, impart: She is trying to get across to you the fact that she despises television. 27 get ahead. succeed, prosper, be or become successful, do well, flourish, thrive, make good, progress, rise (up) in the world, Colloq go places: With his contacts, he's bound to get ahead. 28 get along. a be friendly or compatible (with), associate (with), agree (with), be agreeable, get on

(with), Colloq hit it off (with): She gets along with most
people quite well. Do you think they'll get along? b manage,
cope, shift, fare, survive, make both ends meet, keep the wolf
from the door, keep one's head above water, get on, Colloq get
by, make out, make do: How are you getting along with your new
novel? c leave, depart, go or move away, get going, get on, go
along, proceed: I have to get along now or I'll miss my train.
d progress, proceed, get on, advance, move ahead or along or on:
How are you getting on with your new novel? e get on, age, get
or become or grow older, advance: They are getting along but
you wouldn't guess that they're eighty. 29 get around. a See
25, above. b See 46, below. 30 get at. a gain access to,
access, reach, put or lay one's hands on, get to: I can't get
at the lock from here. b intend, mean, suggest, hint (at),
insinuate, imply, have in mind or view, contemplate: She just
didn't understand what I was getting at. c get, tease, taunt,
criticize, find fault with, carp, nag, pick on, US get to: She
is really beginning to get at me with her persistent criticism.
d get to, influence, intimidate, corrupt, bribe, undermine,
subvert, suborn: They tried to get at the judge. e learn, find
out, ascertain, determine: The police said they were only
trying to get at the facts. 31 get away. a escape, leave,
break out or away, flee, depart, make good one's escape, elude
one's captors, break free, disappear: He will never be able to
get away now! b escape, take a holiday or US also vacation, get
or take a rest or respite: I must get away for a few days. c
start, get or take off: Black Flash got away from the starting
gate at top speed. 32 get back. a return, come or go back:
I'll try to get back before midnight. b reacquire, recover,
regain, retrieve, recoup, repossess: Can you get your money
back for that hat? 33 get back at. See 23, above. 34 get
behind. back, support, promote, finance, fund, push, Colloq
plug, hype: If you get behind the enterprise, I know it will
succeed. 35 get by. See 28 (b), above. 36 get down. a
dismount, alight, descend, come or go down, climb or step down,
get off: He got down from his horse and drew his gun. b write
(down), note (down), record, make a note of: She wasn't able to
get down everything Shaw said. c depress, dispirit, sadden,
dishearten, discourage, deject: Don't let a little thing like
that get you down. d swallow, eat: No sooner does he get some
food down than it comes right back up again. 37 get down to.
concentrate or focus on, turn attention to, attend to: Let's
get down to business. 38 get in. a enter, get into or on or

onto, embark, entrain, emplane or enplane, get or go aboard: We got in the car and were driven away. You can get in here. b enter, arrive, return, come or go in: I got in at eight today. c fit or squeeze in, insert, slip in, include: He got in my comment. The doctor got me in before anyone else. d arrive, come in, land: My flight got in at dawn. 39 get into. a put or put on, don, dress in, get dressed in: Here, get into this uniform. b go into, discuss, become involved in, pursue, treat, describe, delineate, detail, follow up on, penetrate: Do you really want me to get into the nasty details? c be into, be or become involved in, take up, pursue; enjoy, like, become enthusiastic about, Slang get off on, get or become high on: I could really get into farming. d See 38 (a), above. 40 get off. a alight, disembark, get down from, get out of, dismount, descend (from), climb or step down off or from, deplane, detrain: She got off her bike and came towards me. b leave, depart, go (off), set out or off: I hope to get off tomorrow morning. c remove, take off, shed, doff: Can you get those boots off easily? d cause to be set or go free, be or cause to be acquitted or liberated or released or set free: A clever lawyer could have got him off. He got off on a technicality. 41 get off on. See 39 (c), above. 42 get on. a See 28, above. b See 38 (a), above. c See 39 (a), above. d grow or become late: It's getting on and they'll be waiting. 43 get onto. a See 12, above. b See 38 (a), above. c discover, learn about, become aware of, find out about, Colloq Brit twig, US cotton (on) to: If they get onto the missing stores we're in for it. 44 get out (of). a leave, depart, go out or away, be off, retire: We got out as quickly as we could. b escape, extricate oneself; be released: She thought she'd never get out alive. c extract, draw, wrest, force, drag or pry out, wring or get from: They'll never get anything out of me! d gain, profit: Ask yourself what you will get out of the deal. e avoid, evade, sidestep, escape: Gabriela was somehow always able to get out of PE class. f See 25 (b), above. 45 get over. a surmount, cross, climb, pass, traverse: A dog can't get over a fence that high. b recover or recuperate from, survive: Which takes longer, getting over a love affair or the measles? c finish, complete, bring to an end: Let's get this over with as soon as possible. d See 26, above. 46 get round or around. a bypass, circumvent, skirt, avoid, evade, elude, outsmart, outwit, outmanoeuvre, outflank, steal a march on, Colloq give (someone) the run-around: Chris is always trying to get round the parking restrictions. b cajole, wheedle, flatter, persuade, coax, win over: I didn't want to propose, but she managed to get round me. c See 25.(b), above. 47 get round or around to. get or come to, reach, arrive at (finally), find time for: He said he would do the repairs if he got round to it. 48 get through. a (help to) succeed or complete: She got me through the ordeal. Without her help, I never could have got through. b reach, contact: The line is engaged and I cannot get through to mother. c finish, conclude: When you get through, please put away the dishes. d communicate (with): Parents sometimes have trouble getting through to their children. 49 get (to). a arrive at, come to; near, approach: What time did you get to the office? How did you get home? b See 28.(c), (d), above. 50 get together. a gather, accumulate, collect, assemble: Get your things together and leave at once! b assemble, convene, gather, meet, congregate, socialize: Have you time to get together on Friday? c arrive at or reach an agreement or settlement, come to terms, come to an understanding: I think we can get together on the question of wages. 51 get up. a arise, awaken, wake (up): I get up at dawn. b stand (up): Get up and you'll be able to reach it. c mount, climb (up), ascend: Can we get up the next hill? She got up on the table and started to dance. d create, devise, organize, arrange, prepare: We got up a cabaret for the after-dinner entertainment. e dress, clothe, apparel, outfit, attire, turn out, deck out, rig out, dress up, fit out or up: She got herself up as a cabaret dancer. f study, learn, US get up on: You'd best get up your history before the exam. 52 get up to. become or be involved in, be up to: If you don't watch her, she'll get up to no good.

getaway n. escape, flight, retreat: The prisoners made their getaway in a van. Lady Fenella was so boring I couldn't wait to make my getaway.

get-together
n. gathering; meeting, conference, convention: We had a get-together at my house. Can we arrange a get-together for all the members?

get-up n. 1 costume, outfit; rig: He came in a diver's get-up. 2 format, layout, arrangement, structure, look, style: Who is responsible for the magazine's new get-up?

gewgaw n. trinket, bauble, gimcrack, trifle, knick-knack, bagatelle, kickshaw, toy, novelty, bijou, vanity; bric-…-brac or bric-a-brac: She has a huge collection of worthless gewgaws.

7.3 ghastly...

=-

ghastly adj. 1 dreadful, awful, terrible, terrifying, frightful, hideous, horrible, horrendous, horrid, horrifying, grim, grisly, loathsome, gruesome, ugly, repellent, repulsive, shocking, appalling, Colloq gross, scary: He was involved in a ghastly accident. 2 grim, cadaverous, haggard, ashen, wan, pale, pallid, pasty(-faced), drawn, livid, ghostly, spectral, macabre: She looked ghastly after the surgery. 3 awful, bad, terrible, ill, ailing, sick: We felt ghastly after eating the undercooked chicken.

ghost n. 1 apparition, phantom, spectre, phantasm, shade, spirit, wraith, poltergeist, banshee, double-ganger, Doppelganger, ghoul, manes, No. Eng. dialect boggart; hallucination, illusion, vision; Colloq spook: The ghost of his uncle appeared before him. 2 hint, suggestion, shadow, trace, scintilla, glimmer: Vera hasn't the ghost of a chance of meeting anyone suitable at the office.

ghostly adj. 1 spectral, ghost-like, wraithlike, phantasmal, phantom, eerie, unreal, unnatural, supernatural, preternatural, unearthly, sinister, strange, uncanny, weird, Colloq spooky, scary, creepy: I heard a ghostly voice calling my name. 2 See ghastly, 2, above.

ghoulish adj. 1 devilish, demonic, satanic, diabolic(al), fiendish, demoniac(al), cacodemonic, Mephistophelian; infernal, hellish, malign: The coven engage in the most ghoulish practices. 2 macabre, grisly, morbid, gruesome, disgusting, monstrous, abominable, hideous, horrendous, horrible, horrifying, horrid, brutal, barbaric, savage, ruthless, pitiless, merciless, cruel, vicious, feral, inhuman, bloodthirsty, ferocious, Colloq sick: She has some ghoulish notions about being eaten alive by rats.

7.4 giant...

=-

giant n. 1 superhuman, titan, colossus, Goliath; giantess, Amazon, ogre; behemoth, monster, leviathan, mammoth: Blocking the road in front of Jack was a giant nearly thirty feet tall.

--adj. 2 See gigantic, below.

gibberish n. drivel, tripe, nonsense, rubbish, gibber, prattle, twaddle, gabble, jabber, balderdash, jibber-jabber, blather or blether, Jabberwocky, gobbledegook or gobbledygook, mumbo-jumbo, rodomontade, Gongorism, cackle, chatter, patter, chatter, jargon, babble, claptrap, poppycock, Colloq tripe, codswallop, crap, bunk, piffle, US garbage, horse feathers; Taboo slang balls, bull(shit), US crock (of shit): If one listens to such gibberish long enough, one begins to believe it.

gibe v. 1 jibe (at), jeer (at), scoff (at), flout, mock, deride, make fun of, poke fun at, ridicule, twit, taunt, sneer (at), chaff, tease, rag, heckle, No. Eng. dialect gird, Colloq kid, rib, US and Canadian razz: All of us at school used to gibe at David because he wore fancy clothes.

--n. 2 jibe, jeer, taunt, sneer, dig, cutting remark, thrust, chaff, raillery, scoffing, derision, ridicule, mockery, Rare mycterism, Slang crack, wisecrack: David paid no attention to his classmates' gibes.

giddy adj. 1 dizzy, faint, unsteady, light-headed, vertiginous, reeling, Colloq woozy: This medication may make you feel a bit giddy. 2 silly, frivolous, scatterbrained, flighty, capricious, irresponsible, erratic, fickle, volatile, impulsive, reckless, whimsical: You can't marry a giddy young girl like Peggy.

gift n. 1 present, donation, favour, grant, largesse, bounty, benefaction, offering, honorarium, contribution, give-away, premium, bonus, prize; alms, hand-out, dole, charity, benefit; tip, gratuity, baksheesh or backsheesh, pourboire, cumshaw: Before we left, our neighbours made a gift to us of some local pottery. 2 talent, ability, aptitude, genius, flair, knack, facility, forte, strength, strong point, bent, capability, capacity, power: Her family never recognized her special gifts.

gifted adj. talented, able, skilled, capable, skilful, outstanding, excellent, superior, superb, brilliant, expert, master, masterful, masterly, virtuoso, first-class, first-rate, top-drawer, top-flight, good, Colloq top-notch, ace, crackerjack, crack: Grants are available for gifted, indigent artists.

gigantic adj. big, large, huge, enormous, massive, giant, colossal, immense, mammoth, tremendous, stupendous, towering, staggering, vast, titanic, gargantuan, elephantine, Cyclopean, Herculean, Brobdingnagian; king-size, extra-large, Colloq jumbo, walloping, whopping, thumping, thundering, strapping, super-duper, US humongous: The gigantic tower, reaching to the heavens, appeared before us.

giggle v. 1 titter, snicker, snigger, chuckle, laugh, chortle, cackle, twitter: Stop that giggling at the rear of the classroom!

--n. 2 titter, snicker, snigger, chuckle, laugh, chortle, cackle, twitter: Did I hear a giggle? 3 joke, prank, laugh: Just for a giggle, we tied his shoelaces together.

gimmick n. 1 device, strategy, stratagem, ploy, trick, ruse, wile, subterfuge, manoeuvre, artifice, deception, trap, snare, US hook, Colloq dodge: We need some sort of gimmick to attract buyers. 2 device, contrivance, gadget, invention, Colloq contraption, widget, thingumbob or thingumabob or thingamabob, thingumajig or thingamajig or thingummy, whatchamacallit, what's-its-name, Brit doodah, US doohickey, doodad, hickey, whosis, whatsis, dingus, Rube Goldberg (invention), Chiefly US and Canadian gismo or gizmo: He uses some kind of gimmick to break into cars.

gingerly adv. 1 warily, cautiously, charily, carefully, delicately, fastidious, daintily, squeamishly, tentatively, nervously, cannily, circumspectly, guardedly, watchfully, timidly, timorously, shyly: Handle that nitroglycerine very gingerly.

--adj. 2 wary, cautious, chary, careful, fastidious, delicate, dainty, squeamish, tentative, nervous, canny, circumspect, guarded, watchful, timid, timorous, shy: Note the gingerly way he handles the nitroglycerine.

girl n. 1 female, woman, lass, (young) lady, miss, mademoiselle, wench, Fr„ulein, maid, maiden, damsel, demoiselle, Irish colleen, Australian and New Zealand sheila, Colloq chick, filly, gal, Slang bird, frail, skirt, piece, mouse, Brit crumpet, bit of skirt or stuff, Old-fashioned Brit popsy, US dame, broad, (bit of) San Quentin quail or jail-bait: His mother wants to introduce him to a nice girl. 2 girlfriend, sweetheart; betrothed, fianc‚e; mistress, lover, friend, live-in lover, inamorata, tally, US POSSLQ (= 'Person of the Opposite Sex Sharing Living Quarters'), Colloq Brit popsy, Slang moll, US twist, squeeze: She's his girl and she'll stick by him.

girth n. 1 circumference, perimeter, ambit, periphery, circuit: His girth steadily expanded as he approached fifty. 2 belt, girdle, border, cincture, waistband, cestus, cummerbund, Archaic zone, US and Canadian cinch: Tighten that girth or the saddle will come off.

gist n. essence, core, heart, substance, point, theme, quintessence, pith, meat, marrow, focus, nub, significance, (main or basic) idea; direction, drift: It will save time if I tell you the gist of the argument.

give v. 1 present, deliver, pass (over), turn or hand over, confer, vouchsafe, provide, supply, furnish, bestow, donate, accord, afford, award, hand out, contribute, distribute, grant, allow, transfer, make over, entrust: Please give me the envelope. I have given the files to the tax inspector. Give freely to charity. 2 exchange, pay, transfer, trade, barter, swap or swop: Philippa gave a week's salary for that dress. 3 impart, pass on, communicate, transmit, send, convey, express: Give my regards to Broadway. 4 afflict with, cause, occasion: Rock music gives me a headache. 5 sacrifice, devote, dedicate, yield (up), surrender, give up, cede, concede, consign, apply (oneself) to: Those monks have given their lives to the study of Scripture. 6 present, offer; announce, introduce: Ladies and gentlemen, I give you Madja Kiziamainska, the Polish Nightingale! 7 present, announce, offer, recite, sing, act, perform, read, put on: We were asked to give a performance for charity. 8 utter, emit, give out (with), issue: He gave a shout to warn us. 9 yield, relax, give way, fail, collapse, buckle, break down, fall or come apart: If that pillar gives, the balcony will come down. 10 cause, lead, induce, persuade, make, prompt, move, dispose: I was given to understand that I was not welcome. 11 cede, relinquish, concede, allow, surrender, yield: He gave me the first game but I lost the second. 12 give away. a See 1, above. b reveal, betray, let out, divulge, disclose, expose, inform on, uncover, leak, let slip; let the cat out of the bag; Colloq blow the whistle on, Slang rat on, US fink on: The traitor gave me away, and I was arrested. 13 give in. yield, submit, give up, give ground, back away (from), back off, capitulate, surrender, admit defeat: After trying for hours to make him change his mind, he finally gave in. 14 give off. give out, emit, exude, exhale, discharge, send or throw out, release, smell of: Her clothing gave off a scent of lavender. 15 give out. a See 14, above. b distribute, hand out, give, deal (out), pass out or around, disseminate, dispense, allot, apportion, allocate, assign, distribute, issue, mete or hand out, ration (out), dole (out), pay, Colloq dish or fork out, shell out: The prizes will be given out to the winners at a special ceremony. She was giving out handbills to passers-by. c publish, announce, make known, broadcast, impart, issue, make public, reveal: You shouldn't give out that kind of information. d become exhausted, be reduced or depleted, fail, run out: What will we do when the food gives out? e See 8, above. 16 give over. assign, resign, hand over, surrender, relinquish, pass or over, give up; assign, entrust: We gave our dog over to Lambert's for training. 17 give up. a abandon, stop, cease, quit, leave off, forgo, forsake, renounce, desist from, swear off, abstain from; reject; Colloq cut out, chuck: I am trying to give up smoking. b surrender, capitulate, yield, cede, concede, give in (to defeat), throw in the towel or sponge; despair: I've tried to convince him but finally gave up. c See 4, above. d See 13, above. e See 16, above.

--n. 18 slack, play, leeway, excess; flexibility, stretch: There is very little give in the rules governing working hours. Nylon is used for boat anchor rodes because it has some give.

give and take

n. compromise, cooperation, reciprocity, interaction, fair exchange, teamwork, joint effort, synergy: There is a lot of give and take in our relationship - I give and she takes.

given adj. 1 stated, accepted, agreed(-upon), delineated, confirmed, noted, affirmed, specified, settled, set, (pre)arranged, preordained, foreordained: You must solve the problem using the given information. 2 presupposed, assumed, understood, postulated, premised, conceded, acknowledged, allowed: I think we can take her honesty as given. 3 prone, accustomed, dedicated, addicted, inclined, disposed: Our headmaster is not exactly given to flights of fancy.

--n. 4 assumption, donn,e; fact, certainty, reality, actuality, gospel, the truth: Can we accept her interest in the job as a given?

7.5 glad...
=-

glad adj. 1 happy, pleased, contented, gratified, satisfied; delighted, thrilled, joyful, overjoyed, tickled, Colloq tickled pink or to death, pleased as Punch, Slang Brit chuffed: I am genuinely glad to see you. 2 (ready and) willing, happy, keen, eager, (well-)disposed, inclined, ready: I would be glad to help you, madam.

gladden v. cheer, enliven, brighten, delight, hearten, exhilarate, elate, buoy (up), animate: It certainly gladdened me to be home again.

gladly adv. cheerfully, happily, readily, willingly, with pleasure: I'd go with you gladly if I had the time.

glamorous adj. 1 alluring, fascinating, charming, attractive, magnetic, captivating, enthralling, desirable, appealing, enchanting, entrancing, intriguing, beguiling, bewitching, magical: Esm, designs clothes for the most glamorous women in the world. 2 chic, smart, stylish, fashionable, Colloq trendy: She always wears the most glamorous clothes.

glamour n. allure, fascination, charm, attractiveness, brilliance, glitter, attraction, magnetism, charisma, captivation, desirability, appeal, enchantment, bewitchment, witchcraft, sorcery, magic: Who today can match the glamour of the movie stars of the '30s?

glance v. 1 glimpse, peek, peep, scan, look, Colloq Brit have a shufti or shufty at, take a dekko at: I've only had time to glance at the report. 2 reflect, glint, glisten, shimmer, twinkle, gleam, shimmer, flicker, glimmer, sparkle, scintillate, glitter, flash: A ray of sunlight glanced off the windows opposite. 3 bounce (off), reflect, ricochet, rebound, carom: The stone glanced off the pavement and struck my leg.

--n. 4 glimpse, peek, peep, look, coup d'oeil, Colloq gander, Brit shufti or shufty, dekko: She turned and gave him a questioning glance, As he fingered the tip of his fer-de-lance. 5 gleam, glint, glimmer, shimmer, twinkle, sparkle, scintillation, glitter, flicker, flash: The silver light, with quivering glance, Played on the water's still expanse.

glare n. 1 dazzle, brilliance, brightness, splendour, resplendence, radiance, effulgence, lustre, shine, flame, flare, blaze: We had to shade our eyes from the glare. 2 frown, dirty or nasty or black look, scowl, stare, glower, lower or Brit also lour: She shrank from his fierce glare. 3 garishness, gaudiness, floridity or floridness, flashiness, tawdriness, showiness, ostentation, meretriciousness: His writing is filled with the pomp and glare of rhetoric.

--v. 4 frown, give a dirty or nasty or black look, scowl, stare, glower, lower or Brit also lour, look daggers (at): She simply glared at him and he withered.

glaring adj. 1 blatant, flagrant, egregious, conspicuous, obtrusive, prominent, evident, obvious, manifest, patent, overt, clear, visible, unconcealed, outrageous, gross, flagitious, atrocious, heinous, shameless, disgraceful, shocking, scandalous: They pointed out a glaring omission in the proposals. 2 garish, dazzling, brilliant, blinding, blazing, vivid, harsh, strong: I was blinded when we first walked out into the glaring sunlight.

glass n. 1 glassware, crystal: Use the best glass for the party. 2 mirror, looking-glass: He constantly looks at himself in the glass. 3 window, pane, window-pane, plate glass: The children pressed their noses against the glass of the toy shop. 4 tumbler, drinking-glass, beaker, goblet: May I have a glass of beer? 5 barometer: The glass fell as the storm approached. 6 lens, magnifying glass, telescope, spyglass, microscope: Look at this drop of water through the glass. 7 glasses. spectacles, eyeglasses, lorgnon, lorgnette, opera-glasses, binoculars, field-glasses, bifocals, trifocals, goggles, sun-glasses, Colloq specs: These are my reading glasses.

glassy adj. 1 shining, shiny, gleaming, smooth, slippery, slick, glossy, icy, mirror-like, US slick: We skidded on the glassy surface and crashed into a wall. 2 fixed, staring, trancelike, hypnotic, vacant, empty, expressionless, blank, void, vacuous, dazed, dull, glazed, cold, lifeless: His glassy stare made me very uncomfortable.

glaze v. 1 varnish, lacquer, shellac, enamel, coat, cover; polish, burnish, shine, gloss: Many of the works of art had been glazed for protection.

--n. 2 varnish, lacquer, shellac, enamel, coating, covering; polish, shine, gloss, lustre, patina: The glaze distorts the design beneath.

gleam n. 1 light, glimmer, glint, glow, flicker, shine, shimmer, glitter, twinkle, spark, flare, glare, flash; beam, ray, shaft: I could just make out the faint gleam of a candle. 2 hint, suggestion, indication, vestige, trace, scintilla, inkling, glimmer, ray, spark, flicker: There wasn't a gleam of hope of rescue. 3 look, glint: He got a strange gleam in his eye when he talked about his inventions.

--v. 4 glimmer, glint, shimmer, shine, twinkle, glitter, glisten, beam, sparkle: I could see the beast's eyes, gleaming in the dark. The shore was dotted with gleaming white houses.

glee n. delight, exuberance, cheerfulness, high or good spirits, cheer, exhilaration, elation, exultation, joy, happiness, rapture, gladness, felicity, pleasure, joyfulness, merriment, jubilation, joyousness, joviality, jollity, gaiety, mirthfulness; enjoyment, satisfaction, Schadenfreude: We watched with great glee as the villain was thwarted.

gleeful adj. happy, merry, joyful, delighted, exuberant, ecstatic, cheerful, in high or good spirits, exhilarated, elated, exultant, rapturous, overjoyed, pleased, jubilant, joyous, jovial, jolly, gay, mirthful: He wrote a gleeful report of the chairman's conviction for insider trading.

glib adj. ready, fluent, smooth, slick, facile, smooth-spoken, smooth-tongued, smooth-talking, fast-talking, fluid, easy, unctuous, suave, nonchalant, superficial: Why must obituary notices always be so glib?

glide v. slide, slip, coast, skate, soar, float, sail, glissade, stream, flow: The skiff glided peacefully down the river.

glisten v. shine, reflect, glint, glimmer, gleam, sparkle, glitter, wink, blink; glow, gleam, twinkle: The lamplight glistened on his wet coat. A tear glistened on her cheek.

glitter v. 1 See glisten, above.

--n. 2 See gleam, 1, above. 3 See glamour, above. 4 showiness, gaudiness, garishness, flash, flashiness, ostentation, floridity or floridness, spectacle, pageantry, splendour, refulgence, brilliance, Colloq pizazz or pizzazz, razzle-dazzle, razzmatazz, Slang US glitz: In those days, Hollywood was all glitter.

gloat v. Often, gloat over. exult (in), glory (in), relish (in), revel (in), crow (over or about), delight (in): He is still gloating over the misery he caused her.

global adj. worldwide, international, broad, extensive, wide-ranging, far-reaching, epidemic, pandemic, universal: Protection of the atmosphere is a global responsibility.

globe n. 1 earth, world, planet, Terra: Our family is scattered all round the globe. 2 sphere, ball, orb; globule: On the table was a lamp with a green glass globe.

gloom n. 1 shadowiness, gloominess, shade, shadow, murkiness, murk, dimness, dusk, dullness, dark, darkness, cloudiness, blackness, obscurity: We arose in the gloom of a midwinter's morning. 2 despondency, depression, sadness, dejection, downheartedness, melancholy, woe, sorrow, moroseness, desolation, low spirits, blues, doldrums, despair, dolour, misery, Colloq dumps: The team suffered the gloom of defeat.

gloomy adj. 1 shadowy, shaded, shady, murky, dim, dusky, dull, dark, cloudy, overcast, obscure, black, inky, Literary Stygian: It is too gloomy a day to have a picnic. 2 depressed, melancholy, sad, dejected, morose, glum, lugubrious, unhappy, cheerless, dismal, moody, down, downcast, desolate, doleful, sorrowful, crestfallen, chap-fallen, downhearted, forlorn, despondent, miserable, joyless, dispirited, despairing, dreary, sullen, blue, distressed, down in the mouth, in the doldrums, saturnine, Colloq (down) in the dumps: Both of them have been very gloomy since the divorce. 3 depressing, cheerless, dreary, dismal, dispiriting, sad, disheartening: The d,cor is much too gloomy for a doctor's waiting-room.

glorified adj. 1 overrated, pretentious, overdone, high-flown, high-sounding, affected, pompous, exalted, Colloq jumped-up: You say he is a scholar, but he behaves more like a glorified schoolboy. 2 sham, pretend, imitation, counterfeit, fake, substitute, ersatz, Colloq phoney or US also phony: In that outfit, she looks like a glorified chorus girl.

glorify v. 1 elevate, exalt, raise (up), upgrade, promote, advance, boost, enhance, dignify, ennoble, immortalize: Winning first prize glorified his reputation considerably. In her book she glorifies motherhood. These men are glorified by their heroism. 2 canonize, deify, idolize, revere, venerate, sanctify, worship, pay tribute or homage to, ennoble, idealize, apotheosize, eulogize, panegyrize, adore, honour, look up to, celebrate, extol, praise, laud, commend, hail, lionize, applaud, acclaim: The world glorified Lindbergh for the first solo flight across the Atlantic.

glorious adj. 1 illustrious, famed, famous, renowned, celebrated, distinguished, honoured, eminent, excellent: England may be proud of her glorious literary heritage. 2 outstanding, splendid, magnificent, marvellous, wonderful, spectacular, fabulous, dazzling: They announced another glorious victory over enemy forces. 3 enjoyable, delightful, fine, great, excellent, pleasurable, superb, Colloq heavenly: We had a glorious holiday in the Greek islands. 4 beautiful, splendid, brilliant, gorgeous, resplendent, admirable, superior, excellent, estimable: The walls are covered with frescos in glorious colour.

glory n. 1 honour, fame, repute, reputation, exaltation, celebrity, renown, eminence, distinction, illustriousness, prestige, dignity, immortality: Our soldiers fought for glory not for gain. Even today we sense the glory that was Rome. 2 honour, veneration, reverence, homage, gratitude, glorification, exaltation, worship, adoration, praise, laudation, thanksgiving; benediction, blessing: Glory be to God in the highest. 3 splendour, pomp, magnificence, grandeur, beauty, brilliance, radiance, effulgence, refulgence, excellence, pageantry, nobility, triumph, greatness: Her photographs depict the Amazonian rain forest in all its glory. 4 aureole, nimbus, halo; crown, circlet, corona: A glory surrounds the saint's head in the painting.

--v. 5 revel, relish, delight, exult, pride oneself, crow, rejoice, gloat; show off, boast: She sat by the window, glorying in the magnificence of the scenery.

gloss° n. 1 sheen, lustre, polish, glow, glaze, shine, gleam, burnish, brightness: I prefer a dull gloss to a high polish on furniture. 2 show, fa‡ade, mask, front, surface, veneer, disguise, camouflage, false appearance, semblance: She soon saw through the gloss, and the honeymoon was over.

--v. 3 glaze, polish, burnish, shine: Gloss up your shoes a bit. 4 Usually, gloss over. veil, cover up, smooth over, conceal, hide, disguise, camouflage, mask, Colloq whitewash: He tried to gloss over his voting record.

glossý n. 1 explanation, interpretation, exegesis, explication, definition, elucidation, comment, commentary, annotation, critique, criticism, analysis, footnote; translation: Some editions of Shakespeare give glosses of difficult words and phrases at the foot of each page.

--v. 2 comment on or upon, explain, interpret, explicate, define, elucidate, annotate, criticize, analyse, review, US critique; translate: Johnson was not the first to gloss the word 'pastern'. 3 See gloss°, 4, above.

glossary n. gloss, (specialized or special-subject) dictionary, wordbook, word-list: There is a useful glossary of terms at the end of the book.

glossy adj. 1 shining, shiny, smooth, polished, glazed, lustrous, burnished, smooth, sleek, waxed, glassy, glistening: Our magazine is printed on glossy paper. 2 slick, specious, put-on, artificial, meretricious, contrived, pretended, simulated, feigned, insincere, pseudo, false, unreal; bogus, counterfeit, fraudulent, imitation, Colloq phoney or US also phony: It is only a glossy remake of the original film.

glow n. 1 luminosity, phosphorescence, incandescence, light, lambency, lustre: The surface of the flying saucer emitted a faint green glow. 2 light, brightness, gleam, luminousness, brilliance, radiance, resplendence, splendour, effulgence: The glow in the east is from a forest fire. 3 flush, blush, redness, ruddiness, burning, excitement, warmth, fervour, fervency, enthusiasm, feverishness, thrill, Colloq rush: I can feel a glow just thinking of you.

--v. 4 shine, radiate, incandesce, phosphoresce, glimmer, gleam, light up: The numerals on the clock were glowing in the dark. 5 heat, overheat, burn; ablate: The spaceship began to glow as it entered the atmosphere. 6 flush, bloom, colour, blush: As you can see from her complexion, she simply glows with good health. 7 blush, flush, redden, colour, turn red or scarlet: My cheeks glowed with embarrassment.

glowing adj. 1 aglow, incandescent, burning, lambent, luminous, candent; smouldering: I stirred the glowing embers. 2 rich, warm, vibrant, bright, brilliant: Banners in glowing colours enlivened the hall. He is in glowing health. 3 laudatory, complimentary, enthusiastic, eulogistic, rhapsodic, favourable, encomiastic, panegyrical: The critics described her performance in glowing terms.

glue n. 1 cement, adhesive, mucilage, gum, paste: You need a specialist glue to mend a break like that.

--v. 2 cement, paste, stick, affix, fix, seal: Let's glue this picture into the album.

glum adj. gloomy, sullen, morose, dispirited, woebegone, dismal, sad, sulky, dour, moody, sour, crestfallen, doleful, down, low, pessimistic, lugubrious, saturnine: After Irena left, I was feeling rather glum.

glut n. 1 excess, surplus, over-abundance, superabundance, surfeit, oversupply, overflow, superfluity, nimiety: The glut of razor-blades in the market is due to increased production. 2 saturation, glutting, satiation: Glut leads to a lowering of prices.

--v. 3 oversupply, flood, saturate, swamp, inundate, deluge, overload, overstock, clog, stuff, gorge: The markets will soon be glutted with mobile telephones. 4 satiate, sate, choke, cram, overload, overfeed, gorge, surfeit, pall, cloy, jade, sicken, weary: Everyone was thoroughly glutted before the wedding reception was over.

glutton n. trencherman, gormandizer, gourmand or gormand, overeater, hog, pig, Grangousier, Colloq greedy-guts, Slang Brit gannet, US chowhound: Like the glutton that he is, he asked for more after eating an enormous meal.

gluttonous

adj. voracious, gormandizing, edacious, greedy, ravenous, insatiable, esurient, piggish, hoggish, swinish: She was so gluttonous that she ate my dinner after finishing her own.

gluttony n. overeating, gormandizing, gormandism or gourmandism, greed, hoggishness, piggishness, rapacity, voraciousness, greediness, voracity, insatiability, edacity, crapulence, crapulousness, intemperance, immoderation, Archaic gulosity: The Bible categorizes gluttony among the seven deadly sins.

7.6 gnarled...

=-

gnarled adj. twisted, knotty, lumpy, bumpy, knotted, bent, crooked, distorted, contorted, warped;, arthritic: I concealed myself in the gnarled branches of the old oak. The beggar reached out to me with her gnarled hand.

gnaw v. 1 chew, nibble, eat, bite, champ: The marks were made by deer gnawing the bark. 2 erode, eat away, corrode, wear down or away, fret, consume, devour: The acid continues to gnaw away at the metal till it is gone. 3 fret, irritate, harry, hector, pester, worry, bother, plague, trouble, torment, torture, distress, badger, harass, haunt, nag, vex, gall, nettle, irk, peeve, annoy: The feeling that something was very wrong continued to gnaw at her.

7.7 go...
=-

go v. 1 move (ahead or forward or onwards), proceed, advance, pass, make headway, travel, voyage, set off, tour, trek, wend, stir, budge: Would you go to the market for me? 2 leave, depart, go out, move (out or away), decamp, make off, withdraw, repair, retire, retreat, Colloq take off: I wish he would go at once. She went to her country cottage for the weekend. 3 function, operate, work, run, perform: I cannot get the engine to go properly. 4 lead, open to, give access to, communicate to or with, connect with or to: Where does this door go? 5 lead, communicate with, run: Does this road go to Oxford? 6 fit, belong (together), agree or conform (with each other), harmonize, blend, match, be appropriate or suitable (for or to), complement each other: These colours don't go. 7 become: He went mad when he learnt about the accident. 8 fit, extend, reach, span, stretch: My belt would never go round your waist! 9 be disposed of or discarded or thrown away, be dismissed, be got rid of or abolished, be given up, be cast or set or put aside, be done with: That out-dated computer has to go. 10 disappear (without a trace), vanish (into thin air), evaporate: Where has all the money gone? 11 pass, elapse, slip or tick away, fly: Time goes quickly when you're having fun. 12 fail, fade, decline, flag, weaken, degenerate, wear out, give (out); give way, collapse, fall or come or go to pieces, disintegrate, crack: I'm afraid the tyres are going. When that last support goes, the roof will come down. 13 die, expire, be gone, meet one's Maker, pass on or away, shuffle off this mortal coil, go to one's reward, go to the happy hunting-grounds, go to that great cricket-pitch in the sky, Slang kick the bucket, snuff it: By the time the doctor arrived, Graham had gone. 14 sound, pronounce, enunciate, articulate, say, utter: And this little pig goes 'Wee, wee, wee', all the way home. 15 survive, last (out), endure, live, continue: How long can we go without water? 16 be used up or consumed or finished: The last of our

food was gone. 17 go to the toilet or the lavatory or the
bathroom, move (one's) bowels, urinate, defecate, Slang pee,
take a leak or a crap, Chiefly Brit go to the loo, Chiefly US go
to the john, Taboo slang (take a) piss or shit: We stopped at a
motorway filling station because Jane had to go. 18 go about.
approach, tackle, set about, undertake, begin, start: I don't
like the way she goes about her work. How does one go about
establishing a business? 19 go ahead. proceed, continue, move or
go forward, advance, progress, go on: She told me I could go
ahead with the scheme. The policeman motioned to go ahead. 20 go
along (with). a escort, accompany: We asked if we could go
along with them to the cinema. b agree (to), concur (with),
acquiesce (to), assent (to), support: Beverly would never go
along with a plan like yours. 21 go around or about or round
(with). a move or go around, circulate: I wish he'd stop going
round telling everyone about me. There's a lot of flu going
around. b socialize (with), frequent or seek the company of,
spend time with, associate with, Colloq hang around or about
(with), hang out (with): The boy is going around with that
Collins girl. c wander or move around: He goes about picking
through rubbish bins. 22 go at. attack, assault, assail: We
went at the enemy with all the fire power we could muster. 23
go away. go (off), leave, depart, withdraw, exit; retreat,
recede, decamp: The clouds went away and the sun came out. We
are going away for the weekend. 24 go back (to). a return (to);
revert (to), change back (to): He went back to his old job
after the war. Can we go back to the way things were before we
were married? b originate (in), begin or start (with), date back
(to): Our friendship goes back to our childhood. 25 go back
on. renege (on), break, retract, repudiate, forsake: She's gone
back on our agreement. 26 go by. a pass (by), go past, move
by; elapse: We used to watch the goods trains go by. The months
went by quickly since our last meeting. b rely or count or
depend or bank on, put faith in(to), be guided by, judge from:
You cannot go by what Atherton tells you. 27 go down. a sink,
go under, founder, submerge: The ship went down within minutes
of striking the mine. b decrease, decline, drop, sink, drop:
The Nikkei Index went down 200 points. c fall, be defeated or
beaten, suffer defeat, lose, collapse: Our forces went down
under an onslaught from the attacking armies. d be remembered
or memorialized, or recalled or commemorated or recorded: That
day of infamy will go down in history. e find favour or
acceptance or approval, be accepted: His ideas have not gone

down well with the council. 28 go for. a fetch, obtain, get:
Please go for help. b apply or relate to, concern, involve:
The rule against smoking goes for you, too, Smedley. c fancy,
favour, like, admire, be attracted to, prefer, choose, Slang
dig: I can tell that Peter really goes for Maria. I could go
for a pint of beer right now. d attack, assault, assail, set
upon: The dog went for him as soon as he opened the gate. e
set one's sights on, aim for, focus attention or effort(s) on:
I decided to risk all and go for Drogheda Boy at 100-8. 29 go
in for. a enter, enrol, start, begin, embark on, pursue, take
up, embrace, espouse, undertake, follow, adopt, go into, US go
out for: He is going in for a career in boxing. b like, fancy,
favour, practise, do, engage in: I don't go in for
mountain-climbing. 30 go into. a See 28 (a), above. b delve
into, examine, pursue, investigate, analyse, probe, scrutinize,
inquire into, study: I want to go into the subject of your
absences with you, Fanshawe. c touch on, discuss, mention: I
should avoid going into the subject of money with Pauline if I
were you. 31 go off. a go out, cease to function: I saw the
lights go off at nine. b explode, blow up, detonate, erupt;
fire, be discharged: The bomb is set to go off in an hour. The
gun went off, killing the mouse. c occur, happen, take place:
The conference went off as planned. d depart, leave, go (away),
set out, exit, decamp, quit: She went off without another word.
e Brit deteriorate, rot, moulder, go stale, go bad, spoil, sour,
turn: After two days the milk goes off. f Usually, go off
into. start or break into or out in: He goes off into gales of
laughter whenever I mention your name. 32 go on. a continue,
proceed, keep on, carry on; persist, last, endure, persevere:
He went on coughing all night long. The party went on into the
small hours. b happen, occur, take place, come about, Colloq
come off: I have always wondered what went on in there. c come
on, begin or resume functioning: The lights went on at
midnight. d enter, make an entrance: She doesn't go on till
the third act. e going on. approaching, nearing, nearly,
almost, not quite: He's six going on seven. It's going on eight
o'clock. f gabble, chatter, drone on, Brit natter, Colloq Brit
witter (on), rabbit on: He goes on endlessly about his cars. g
rely or depend on, use: The detective had very little to go on.
33 go out. a fade or die (out), expire, cease functioning, go
off, be extinguished: The lights went out, throwing the room
into Stygian blackness. b depart, leave, exit: He went out at
six and has not been seen since. c socialize, associate; court,

go together, Brit walk out, US date: Harry is going out with Annabel. 34 go over. a review, skim (through or over), go through, scan, look at, read, study; inspect, examine, scrutinize, investigate: I went over your report last night. They are going over everyone's luggage with a fine-tooth comb. b be received: The first song went over very well. c clean, tidy or neaten (up): I've just gone over the entire flat. d rehearse, repeat, reiterate, review, go through: We keep going over the same things, again and again. 35 go round or US also around. a revolve, rotate, spin, whirl, twirl: The earth takes a year to go round the sun. b suffice, be sufficient or adequate or enough, satisfy: Are there enough life jackets to go around? c See 21, above. 36 go through. a experience, suffer, undergo, bear, take, stand, tolerate, put up with, brook, submit to, endure, live through, brave: I don't think I could go through another war. b be accepted or approved, pass (muster): The bill went through without a hitch. c See 34 (a), above. 37 go together. a harmonize, accord, agree, fit, go, suit each other, belong (with each other): I don't think that puce and vermilion go together. b See 33 (c), above. 38 go under. a See 27 (a), above. b fail, collapse, subside, go bankrupt, succumb, Brit go to the wall, Colloq fold, US go belly up: Statistics show that more than 500 companies go under every week in the USA. 39 go up. a rise, increase: If inflation goes up, the Chancellor will raise interest rates. b explode, blow up: The munitions factory went up, showering debris over the whole neighbourhood. 40 go with. a go together with, harmonize with, blend with, be suitable or suited for, fit (in) with, accord or agree with: That scarf does not go with the dress. b socialize with, associate with, date, accompany, court, Old-fashioned Brit walk out with, US date: I hear that Connie is going with Don. 41 go without. do or manage or get by without, lack, be deprived of, need; abstain from, survive or live or continue without: In the old days, if you could not afford something, you went without. She cannot go without a cigarette for more than an hour.

--n. 42 chance, turn, opportunity, try, attempt, Colloq whack, crack, whirl, shot, stab: I don't expect much, but I'll have a go anyway.

go-ahead n. 1 permission, approval, leave, authorization, sanction, Colloq say-so, okay or OK, green light, US the nod: I have the go-ahead to proceed with the project.

--adj. 2 ambitious, enterprising, progressive, forward-looking, resourceful: The directors, all under thirty, make it a real go-ahead company.

goal n. object, aim, purpose, end, objective, target, ambition, ideal, aspiration: Fletcher's goal is to be head of the company.

gob n. chunk, piece, blob, lump, gobbet, morsel, fragment, bite: She took a gob of peanut butter and spread it on the bread.

gobbledegook

n. 1 gobbledygook, jargon, nonsense, gibberish, moonshine, rubbish, tommy-rot, mumbo-jumbo, humbug, balderdash, eyewash, hogwash, poppycock, drivel, Colloq bunk, rot, garbage, bosh, pish and tush, piffle, bilge (water), Slang crap, malarkey, bull, bullshit, Brit (load of old) cobblers or codswallop: Can you make sense out of all that computer gobbledegook? 2 gobbledygook, equivocation, double-talk, deception, deceptiveness, vagueness, quibbling, circumlocution, obscurantism, obfuscation, ambagiousness, shiftiness: Ordinary people are often confused by the gobbledegook of official pronouncements.

go-between

n. intermediary, agent, middleman, medium, mediator, negotiator, messenger, internuncio, liaison; intercessor, interceder: David served as go-between in our negotiations with the rebels.

goblin n. elf, gnome, hobgoblin, imp, kobold, leprechaun, demon, brownie, pixie, nix or nixie: On Hallowe'en the ghouls and goblins will get you if you don't watch out!

god n. deity, demigod, demiurge, divinity, spirit, immortal, genius, power, tutelary, numen: Throughout man's sojourn on earth he has worshipped many gods.

godless adj. 1 wicked, evil, iniquitous, sinful, unrighteous, unholy, hellish; impious, blasphemous, profane, sacrilegious, ungodly: The prison was a godless place, where one was murdered for a crust of bread. 2 atheistic, nullifidian, agnostic, unbelieving, sceptical: In theory, communism is a godless ideology.

godlike   adj. 1 divine, godly, sacred, holy, saintly, angelic, seraphic, blest, blessed, sainted: The savages thought her a goddess and treated her with godlike reverence. 2 heavenly, celestial, blissful, rapturous, ecstatic, beatific, ethereal: For a decade, she lived a godlike existence among the savages.

godly   adj. religious, pious, devout, God-fearing, good, righteous, holy, virtuous, moral, pure, saintly, reverent, pietistic, devoted, faithful: The monks pursue a godly life in their mountain fastness.

godsend   n. gift, blessing, benediction, boon, windfall, bonanza, stroke of (good) fortune, piece or bit of (good) luck: The Red Cross parcels were a godsend to the prisoners of war.

goggle-eyed

adj. agog, awestruck, wide-eyed, thunder-struck, agape, open-mouthed, gawking, staring, dumbfounded or dumfounded, astonished, astounded, amazed, stupefied, dazed, surprised: His first time in the city, Eugene stood goggle-eyed at the skyscrapers.

going   adj. 1 thriving, successful, succeeding, prosperous, wealthy, affluent, booming, prospering, flourishing, growing: The Davises took over a failing business and turned it into a going concern. 2 current, present, contemporary, active, effective, accepted, prevailing, prevalent, universal, common, usual, customary: What is the going rate for a skilled cabinet-maker?

golden   adj. 1 yellow, yellowish, gold, blond or blonde, flaxen, aureate; tow(-haired): Her golden tresses fell about her shoulders. 2 gold, auriferous; gilded, gilt, aureate; Technical auric, aurous: They drank together from a golden bowl. 3 bright, shining, brilliant, sunny, gleaming, lustrous, shiny, glittering, dazzling, resplendent, radiant, glowing, sparkling: We emerged from the black tunnel into golden sunshine. 4 happy, blissful, delightful, joyful, glorious, joyous, exuberant: We can never recapture the golden days of our youth. 5 flourishing, halcyon, prosperous, thriving, favourable, excellent, outstanding, productive, fertile, blessed, blest, good, successful, palmy: After the golden age of Greece and Rome, Europe was plunged into the dismal gloom of the Dark Ages. 6 gifted, talented, favoured, special, exceptional, favourite, cherished, pet, Brit blue-eyed, white-headed, white-haired, US fair-haired: As long as the company's profits were increasing, Hamilton was the golden boy. 7 advantageous, propitious, auspicious, promising, rosy, opportune, optimistic, favourable: She missed a golden opportunity by turning down the job.

good adj. 1 agreeable, satisfactory, commendable, acceptable, fair, adequate, admissible, tolerable, all right, passable, Colloq okay or OK: According to the reviews, the new opera is good but not great. 2 admirable, outstanding, first-rate, first-class, fine, superb, superior, tiptop, extraordinary, exemplary, choice, excellent, capital, marvellous, wonderful, splendid, sterling, Colloq super(-duper), great, smashing, A1 or A-1 or A-one, Brit cracking, brilliant, amazing, ace, knockout, brill, fantastic, terrific, unbelievable, groovy, fab, fabulous, crucial, serious, US bad, Old-fashioned Brit tickety-boo, No. Eng. champion, Chiefly US A-OK: I thought that was a really good dinner. 3 correct, proper, decorous, orderly, right, seemly, fit, fitting, suitable, meet, appropriate, allowable, permissible, admissible, passable, satisfactory, tolerable: He should get time off for good behaviour. 4 obedient, well-behaved, proper, well-mannered: Why can't you be a good boy when we go out? 5 moral, high-minded, righteous, noble, wholesome, chaste, pure, honourable, ethical, upstanding, upright, virtuous, worthy, lofty, elevated, saintly, angelic, godly, godlike: Think only good thoughts and still you may not get to heaven. 6 kind, benevolent, beneficent, gracious, gentle, kindly, nice, considerate, friendly, solicitous, good-hearted, sympathetic, benign, charitable, humane, kind-hearted, well-disposed: Her parents have always been good to me. 7 fresh, unspoilt, edible, consumable, palatable: These eggs are good but the milk has gone off. 8 genuine, valid, legitimate, authentic, honest, proper, reliable, secure, dependable, safe, creditable, sound, solid, substantial, well-founded, trustworthy, honest, actual, real; credible, believable, convincing, compelling, cogent: Have you a good reason for saying that? 9 honourable, esteemed, respected, respectable, well-thought-of, reputable, established, solid: They say that he comes from a good family. 10 well-proportioned, shapely, attractive: Yes, I'd say that

Marilyn has a good figure. 11 thorough, complete, penetrating, careful: Has she had a good look at the defendant? 12 gifted, talented, competent, capable, skilful, clever, accomplished, proficient, adept, adroit, skilled: Am I a good enough actor to audition for the part? 13 advantageous, propitious, opportune, beneficial, profitable, favourable; safe, secure, reliable, sound, sensible: Are utilities a good investment? Is this a good time to buy shares? 14 healthy, salubrious, salutary, beneficial, wholesome: We'll have to put you on a good diet. 15 best, company, Sunday, special-occasion, most luxurious: Should we use the good glasses tonight? 16 ample, sufficient, adequate, considerable, full, extensive, sizeable, large, substantial: We have a good supply of food available. 17 approving, complimentary, flattering, positive, favourable, enthusiastic, laudatory, eulogistic, encomiastic: His book received a very good review in the Sunday supplement. 18 great, considerable, sizeable, substantial, fair: We are still a good distance away from land.

--n. 19 benefit, advantage, profit, use, usefulness, gain, worth, avail: What good does it do to complain? 20 goodness, morality, virtue, merit, righteousness, right, rectitude, worth, probity, virtuousness, integrity, nobility, high-mindedness, honourableness, honesty: The evil that men do lives after them, The good is oft interred with their bones. 21 goods. a possessions, (personal) property, chattels, things, gear, belongings, effects, paraphernalia, movables, stuff: He's gone and he's taken all his goods with him. b merchandise, commodities, wares, stock, produce, tangibles, assets: We shall pay on delivery of the goods. c US and Canadian (incriminating) evidence or proof or information or documentation or facts or data: The police have the goods on the murderer. d fabric, cloth, textile, material, yard goods, piece-goods: My tailor said he had made it from the best goods available. e freight: A goods train had broken down on the line between Oxford and Banbury.

goodbye   interjection. Farewell!, Hawaiian Aloha!; Italian Arrivederci!, Ciao!; German Auf Wiedersehen!; French Au revoir!, Adieu!; Japanese Sayonara!; Spanish -Adios!, -Hasta la vista!, -Hasta luego!; Latin Vale!; Colloq Bye! or 'Bye!, Bye-bye!, Toodle-oo!, So long!, Brit Ta-ta!, Cheers!, cheerio, Old-fashioned Pip! Pip!, US See you later (alligator)!: We said our goodbyes and went on our way.

good-for-nothing
adj. 1 worthless, useless: 'You are asking too much for that good-for-nothing old lamp', Aladdin told the pedlar.

--n. 2 ne'er-do-well, wastrel, waster, idler, loafer, layabout, lazybones, slugabed, sluggard, black sheep, Colloq US gold brick, goof-off: Why doesn't that lazy good-for-nothing get a job?

goodly adj. considerable, sizeable, substantial, ample, great, large, significant, consequential: The museum attracts a goodly number of visitors each year.

good-natured
adj. good-humoured, friendly, agreeable, genial, gracious, good-hearted, pleasant, mellow, easygoing, considerate, nice, kind, kindly, kind-hearted, tender-hearted, charitable, tolerant, generous, courteous, cordial, warm, warm-hearted, amiable, amicable, cooperative: He seems a good-natured fellow, but not too bright.

goody-goody
adj. smug, sanctimonious, self-righteous, priggish, prim, holier-than-thou, Pecksniffian, hypocritical: She's one of those goody-goody people who never do anything wrong.

gooey adj. 1 gluey, sticky, tacky, glutinous, mucilaginous, gummy: The pudding was accompanied by an unpleasantly gooey sauce. 2 sweet, sugary, saccharine, sentimental, unctuous, cloying, syrupy, mawkish, maudlin, Colloq mushy, slushy, sloppy: They like to watch those gooey soap operas.

gore° n. blood, carnage, butchery, slaughter, bloodshed: The current crop of horror films have too much gore for my taste.

goreý v. pierce, stab, poke, horn, penetrate, puncture, spear, gouge, spit, stick, impale, disembowel: The matador, severely gored by the bull, was carried away.

gorge n. 1 ravine, canyon, defile, pass, chasm, fissure, crevasse, gully or gulley, wadi or wady, gap, Brit gill or ghyll, US and

Canadian notch: Water runs in this gorge only during the rainy season. 2 vomit, vomitus: Injustice makes my gorge rise.

--v. 3 fill, stuff, glut, cram; gulp, gobble (down), devour, bolt (down), wolf (down), gormandize, swallow: She acquired the habit of gorging on cream cakes.

gorgeous adj. 1 resplendent, splendid, magnificent, glorious, exquisite, sumptuous, dazzling, grand, beautiful, splendorous, breathtaking, radiant, refulgent, brilliant, showy, colourful, Colloq splendiferous: The males are known for their gorgeous plumage. 2 great, terrific, fantastic, wonderful, marvellous, glorious, spectacular, superb, excellent, Colloq fantabulous, marvy, smashing, super, nifty, neat, swell: He married a gorgeous fashion model.

gory adj. bloody, sanguinary, blood-soaked, bloodstained; gruesome, grisly, horrific, blood-curdling: The scene was so gory as to turn the strongest stomach.

gospel n. truth, fact, certainty: He swears that his story is gospel.

gossip n. 1 chat, conversation, talk, chit-chat, small talk, palaver; tittle-tattle, prattle; Scots clishmaclaver; gup; Colloq Brit natter, chin-wag: I was just having a little gossip with my neighbour. 2 rumour, scandal, hearsay, information, on dit, word, Colloq grapevine, (inside) info, tittle-tattle, Slang dope, Chiefly US scuttlebutt, US and Canadian poop: The latest gossip is that she left him for another woman. 3 rumour-mill, rumour-monger, scandalmonger, gossip-monger, newsmonger, busybody, tattle-tale, quidnunc, blabber, blatherskite, tell-tale, talebearer, flibbertigibbet, Colloq big-mouth, chatterbox, blabbermouth, Nosy Parker: That old gossip will tell everybody your business.

--v. 4 Sometimes, gossip about. bruit, tattle, rumour, whisper, blether or US blather, gabble, Colloq blab, Brit natter, Slang jaw: I was just gossiping to my friend about your new job.

gouge v. 1 chisel, gash, incise, scratch, groove, dig; scoop or hollow (out): The screwdriver slipped and gouged a piece out of the table. She's so mad she wants to gouge out your eyes. 2 extort, extract, bilk, defraud, wrest, wrench, squeeze, blackmail, Colloq milk, bleed, skin, fleece, cheat, swindle: The gang gouged money from their classmates by threatening to tell the teacher.

--n. 3 groove, furrow, scratch, gash, hollow; trench, ditch: The retreating glacier cut a deep gouge in the landscape.

gourmet n. epicure, connoisseur, Lucullus, gastronome, gourmand, bon vivant, bon viveur: My dear, that was a dinner fit for a gourmet!

govern v. 1 rule, control, direct, reign, hold sway (over), lead, conduct, guide, manage, regulate, run, supervise, superintend, oversee, steer, captain, pilot, command, head (up), look after, sit on the throne, wield the sceptre, wear the crown, run the show, be in power, be in charge (of), exercise or wield power or control (over), have or hold the whip hand, Colloq wear the pants, be in the saddle or driver's seat: Catherine governed with an iron hand. 2 control, check, bridle, curb, master, subdue, restrain, contain, hold in, suppress, repress: You must govern the urge to scream out.

government

n. 1 rule, command, authority, regulation, control, management, direction, administration, sway, superintendence, supervision, oversight, guidance, domination: His government of the island has led to disorder. 2 administration, ministry, regime: The government intends to ban smoking in public places.

7.8 grab...

=-

grab v. 1 snatch, lay or catch hold of, fasten upon, grasp, seize; catch, grip, clutch; Colloq latch on to, get one's hands or fingers on, nab, US snag: The thief grabbed my purse and ran. She grabbed the railing to break her fall. 2 appropriate, expropriate, seize, commandeer, take over, usurp, arrogate: The general grabbed the reins of government in the coup. 3 arrest, capture, catch, Colloq nab, pinch, collar: The police grabbed him as he was leaving the scene of the crime.

--n. 4 snatch, clutch; grasp, grip: I made a grab for the rope.

grace n. 1 elegance, gracefulness, suppleness, finesse, refinement, ease, polish, poise: She rides well, with an unconscious grace. 2 tastefulness, (good) taste, cultivation, suavity or suaveness, culture, savoir faire, discernment, discrimination, (good) manners, politeness, breeding, consideration, decency, etiquette, tact, propriety, decorum, mannerliness: They had the grace to ignore my rough attire. 3 indulgence, forgiveness, mercy, mercifulness, leniency, compassion, clemency, charity, goodwill, goodness: We survived the fire only by the grace of God. The company gives you 30 days' grace to pay the bill. 4 kindness, favour, kindliness, benevolence, generosity, goodness, graciousness, becomingness, seemliness; excellence, virtue, strength of character, considerateness: At least he had the good grace to admit being wrong. 5 blessing, thanksgiving, prayer, benediction: Grace was said before each meal.

--v. 6 adorn, embellish, set off, decorate, ornament, beautify, enhance, garnish: The table was graced by a huge silver candelabrum. 7 dignify, enhance, distinguish, enrich, honour, favour: The dinner-party is graced by your presence.

graceful adj. 1 fluid, flowing, supple, lissom or lissome, lithe, facile, smooth, nimble, agile, deft: How graceful a dancer she is! 2 tactful, well-mannered, polite, courteous, mannerly, refined, tasteful, elegant, courtly, urbane, polished, refined, suave: In return for certain concessions, the chief was graceful enough to release the hostages.

gracious adj. kind, courteous, polite, well-mannered, kindly, benevolent, beneficent, indulgent, kind-hearted, warm-hearted, cordial, warm, friendly, sociable, good-natured, amiable, affable, benign, accommodating, obliging, agreeable, considerate: It was gracious of you to grant me an audience.

grade n. 1 degree, position, rank, status, stage, standing, station, gradation, echelon, class, level, category, condition, state, estate, situation, rung: She is a singer of the first grade. 2 rating, mark, score: What grade did you get in physics? 3 class, form, year: My daughter is in the third grade. 4 hill, slope, rise, gradient, acclivity, declivity, incline, decline, ascent, descent, upgrade, downgrade: The car coasted down a gentle grade into the lake. 5 make the grade. pass, measure up, succeed, qualify, Colloq US make it, Slang US and Canadian and NZ hack or cut it: Do you think that Simpson can make the grade?

--v. 6 classify, class, order, organize, rank, sort, size, group, categorize, rate: Her job is to grade pearls according to their size. 7 mark, rate, correct, evaluate: My teacher was up late grading our exams.

gradual adj. easy, gentle, even, moderate, slow, piecemeal, inchmeal, regular, steady: There is a gradual slope down to the garden wall. The acceleration was gradual. He became aware of a gradual erosion of his authority.

gradually adv. slowly, evenly, piecemeal, inchmeal, drop by drop, step by step, bit by bit, little by little, piece by piece, gradatim: The water gradually seeped through the filter. We advanced gradually through the forest.

graduate n. 1 bachelor, postgraduate, US alumnus (pl. alumni) or alumna (pl. alumnae): Even university graduates found it difficult to get a job.

--v. 2 gradate, mark, calibrate, grade, scale: This thermometer is graduated in increments of one tenth of a degree.

graft° n. 1 bud, scion, shoot, splice, implantation or implant, transplant: New varieties were created by the implantation of grafts that have desirable qualities.

--v. 2 implant, splice, insert, join: Fruit-bearing stems are grafted onto a sturdy rootstock.

graftý n. corruption, jobbery; bribery, extortion, Colloq payola, kickback: After only five years, he retired on the takings from graft.

grain n. 1 seed, kernel, stone, pip, pit: Grains from each crop are stored ready for sowing. 2 cereal, corn, grist: The grain harvest was sparse this year. 3 particle, bit, fragment, crumb, speck, granule, morsel, mote, molecule, atom, fleck, iota, ounce, scrap, trace, scintilla, hint, suggestion, whit, jot (or tittle), dab, soup‡on, taste, Colloq US and Canadian smidgen or smidgin: There's not a grain of truth in anything that's been said. 4 texture, pattern, fibre, weave, nap: Use a different kind of saw for cutting across the grain.

grand adj. 1 large, great, huge, immense, enormous, impressive, imposing, splendid, fine, majestic, stately, lofty, monumental, lavish, magnificent, opulent, luxurious, palatial, sumptuous, Colloq posh: We were led into a grand hall where thousands awaited the emperor. 2 dignified, distinguished, august, respected, eminent, pre-eminent, outstanding, celebrated, illustrious, renowned, notable, legendary, exalted, revered, venerable, immortal: He is regarded as the grand old man of chemistry. 3 flamboyant, overdone, histrionic, ostentatious, pretentious, grandiose, lordly: The abysmal performance was punctuated by the actors' grand strutting and gesturing. 4 complete, total, sum, comprehensive, (all-)inclusive; bottom-line: The grand total of expenses came to œ12,467.22. 5 marvellous, wonderful, outstanding, first-class, first-rate, splendid, excellent, superb, admirable, Colloq great, marvy, smashing, terrific, fantastic, fabulous, fantabulous, super: Isn't it grand that Freda will be able to go! 6 principal, chief, main, head, leading, foremost, highest: The grand vizier was second only to the caliph.

grandeur n. 1 splendour, magnificence, majesty, sublimity, luxuriousness, pomp: The grandeur of the French court was never to be equalled. 2 nobility, augustness, nobleness, eminence, majesty: The emperor received us with a grandeur befitting his station.

grandiose adj. 1 pretentious, ostentatious, showy, flamboyant, bombastic, histrionic, extravagant, pompous, fustian, high-flown, high-flying, overambitious, overdone, over-dramatic, melodramatic, Ossianic, inflated, affected, florid, flashy, Colloq highfalutin or hifalutin, flash: The council is unimpressed by your grandiose plans to redevelop the area, Mr Wren. 2 imposing, impressive, ambitious, grand, monumental, magnificent, lofty: She has some grandiose ideas for a national symphony orchestra.

grant v. 1 give, confer, bestow, present, award, offer; supply, furnish, distribute, donate; allocate, assign: She has been granted a sum that will enable her to complete the book. 2 concede, accede (to), cede, give (up), agree (to), consent (to), allow, permit, admit; let: They granted my request for clemency.

--n. 3 gift, present, endowment, bequest, subvention, subsidy, award, grant-in-aid, donation, contribution, concession, allowance: He received a government grant to study abroad.

granular adj. grainy, granulated, particulate, comminuted, gravelly, sandy, gritty: The sauce was somewhat granular and tasted too strongly of nutmeg.

grapevine n. rumour-mill, jungle telegraph, grapevine telegraph; rumour, gossip: According to the grapevine, you two are going to be married.

graphic   adj. 1 vivid, distinct, well-defined, detailed, explicit, particular, clear, lucid, plain, manifest, crystal clear, unmistakable or unmistakeable, unambiguous, accurate, precise, well-drawn, photographic, descriptive, telling, picturesque, pictorial, realistic, lifelike, true to life, Colloq gory: He described his injuries in graphic detail. 2 written, drawn, diagrammatic, delineated, visible: The magazine won a prize for graphic design.

grapple   v. 1 grasp, grab, grip, seize, clasp, catch, wrestle; hold, clutch, snatch: They grappled each other at the edge of the Reichenbach Falls. 2 grapple with. come to grips with, cope with, contend with, deal with, struggle with, tackle, face, take on: The government is grappling with the problem of unemployment.

grasp   v. 1 grip, grab, seize, clasp, clutch, snatch, hold, take or lay or catch hold of, Colloq nab: I grasped the rope and was pulled to safety. 2 understand, comprehend, appreciate, catch (on), get, get the drift or point of, follow, see, realize, apprehend, learn, Colloq make head(s) or tail(s) of, Slang dig: I am trying to grasp the full import of what you are saying.

--n. 3 hold, grip, clutches, clasp, embrace, lock: He loosened his grasp on my throat and I could breathe again. 4 possession, control, power, mastery, sovereignty, suzerainty, hold: By then, even the outer islands had fallen within his grasp. 5 understanding, comprehension, apprehension, awareness, perception, sense: He has a poor grasp of the basics of the subject.

grasping adj. greedy, avaricious, acquisitive, rapacious, mean, miserly, stingy, penurious, parsimonious, niggardly, tight, tight-fisted, penny-pinching, close-fisted, mercenary: If the company weren't so grasping, they'd have less difficulty hiring staff.

grass v. 1 inform, betray, give away, Slang peach, squeal, snitch, squeak, tattle, rat on, sell out, Brit blow the gaff, nark: He received a shorter sentence for grassing on his accomplices.

--n. 2 traitor, informer, Slang stool-pigeon, stoolie, squealer, snitch, squeaker, rat, Brit nark: A grass is treated roughly by fellow inmates.

grate v. 1 shred, rasp, scrape, rub, triturate: Peel six raw potatoes and grate them fine. 2 scrape, rasp, rub, grind, scratch, screech, stridulate: The cricket grates its legs against its wing covers to produce the 'singing' sound. 3 Often, grate on or upon. annoy, vex, irk, irritate, pester, set one's teeth on edge, jar, fret, chafe, rub (someone) (up) the wrong way, go against the grain, Colloq get on one's nerves: Her voice just grates on me.

grateful adj. thankful, appreciative: I am grateful for any help I can get.

gratification
n. satisfaction, fulfilment, enjoyment, pleasure, delight, compensation, recompense, reward, return, requital: She does it only for the gratification she gets from making the children happier.

gratify v. please, satisfy, fulfil, delight, compensate, recompense, reward, requite, cheer, gladden, favour: Albert would be gratified to see the good coming from his charitable bequests.

grating adj. 1 jarring, strident, raucous, harsh, discordant, dissonant, unharmonious, offensive, irritating, irksome, annoying, vexatious, galling: I find the noise of chalk squeaking on the blackboard very grating. 2 grinding, gritty, squeaky, jangling, screeching, creaking, shrill, piercing, squawking, croaking, rasping: The grating noise you hear is my fridge motor.

--n. 3 grate, grid, reticle or reticule, grille, lattice, trellis, screen, network, reticulation: When a beam of light is directed through the fine grating, odd patterns are formed.

gratitude n. thankfulness, appreciation, gratefulness; thanks, return, compensation, thanksgiving: Here is a box of chocolates in gratitude for looking after my cat.

gratuitous
adj. 1 gratis, free, complimentary, spontaneous: The earth is a machine which has, till now, yielded gratuitous service. 2 unasked for, unrequested, unsought for, wanton, unprovoked, unsolicited, unlooked-for, uncalled-for, unwelcome, unjustified, unwarranted, baseless, groundless, needless, unfounded, ungrounded, unjustifiable, irrational: He seems to derive some twisted pleasure from spreading gratuitous lies about me.

grave° n. crypt, sepulchre, tomb, vault, mausoleum, last or final resting-place, eternal rest: She began to sob as the coffin was slowly lowered into the grave.

graveý adj. 1 serious, sombre, solemn, earnest, unsmiling, staid, sedate, sober, dour, gloomy, grim, grim-faced, grim-visaged, Brit po-faced: The doctor, looking very grave, said that he had done all he could. 2 serious, critical, vital, dangerous, matter of life and death, crucial, urgent, weighty, important, pressing, pivotal, perilous: Fenwick is in intensive care in a grave condition.

graveyard n. burial-ground, churchyard, cemetery, God's acre, necropolis, potter's field, W US Boot Hill, Rare Golgotha, Slang bone-yard: Uncle Valentine is buried in the graveyard on the hill.

gravity n. 1 gravitation; attraction: After middle age, the body obeys the laws of gravity but not of mutual attraction. 2 seriousness, acuteness, immediacy, importance, significance, weight, magnitude, severity, urgency, exigency, momentousness, weightiness: When I saw mother's expression I realized the gravity of the situation. 3 solemnity, dignity, sombreness, staidness, sedateness, sobriety, gravitas, soberness, reserve; gloominess, grimness: The ceremony was conducted with suitable gravity.

greasy adj. 1 oily, sebaceous, fatty, fat, buttery, lardy, soapy, oleaginous, pinguid, butyraceous, saponaceous, waxy: Before curing, the hide is greasy with natural oils. 2 unctuous, oily, slippery, slithery, smooth, glib, fawning, slick, toadying, sycophantic, Slang Brit smarmy: Edna is so greasy, always trying to manoeuvre you into doing something for her.

great adj. 1 big, large, huge, immense, enormous, gigantic, giant, grand, extensive, prodigious, colossal, massive, vast, tremendous; spacious, capacious, mammoth, gargantuan, monstrous, titanic, Cyclopean, Brobdingnagian: Europe was covered by a great forest. A great castle loomed before me. 2 large, huge, immense, enormous, gigantic, prodigious, vast, tremendous, abundant, countless: Plague killed a great number of people. 3 extreme, considerable, marked, pronounced, inordinate, extraordinary, significant; excess, excessive: I have something of great importance to tell you. Your news created great confusion. 4 critical, important, crucial, momentous, significant, serious, weighty, consequential: Those were great days for the history of England. 5 important, prominent, major, eminent, celebrated, distinguished, famous, famed, renowned, notable, noteworthy, illustrious, outstanding, well-known, weighty, influential, Rare eximious: What of the great universities, like Oxford and Cambridge? Our mayor thinks of himself as a great man. 6 talented, gifted, excellent, outstanding, exceptional, major, superlative, superior, leading, best, incomparable, matchless, peerless, skilful, artistic, brilliant, first-rate, remarkable, top, accomplished: Flaubert was one of the greatest writers of his age. Tamara is a good dancer, but not a great dancer. 7 lofty, elevated, exalted, noble, high-minded, grand: Great thoughts come from great minds. 8 talented, skilled, skilful, adroit, clever, adept, able, proficient, expert: Daphne is really great at playing bridge. 9 keen, zealous, eager, active, enthusiastic, devoted, ardent, passionate: Frank is a great stamp collector. 10 close, devoted, dedicated, fast, faithful, true, loyal, intimate, loving: Graham and Pembroke quickly became great friends. 11 terrible, bad, awful, unforgivable, horrendous, heinous, grievous, horrific, horrible, terrific, huge, colossal, enormous, gigantic, significant, cardinal, egregious, basic, profound, flagrant, glaring, arrant, consummate, out-and-out: Inviting her at the same time as her ex-husband was a great mistake. 12 spectacular, marvellous, outstanding, excellent, superb, grand, wonderful, fine Colloq fantastic, terrific, stupendous, marvy, smashing, fantabulous, Old-fashioned Brit tickety-boo: He says that we missed a truly great show.

greed   n. 1 greediness, avarice, avariciousness, covetousness, acquisitiveness, cupidity, avidity, craving, yearning: Greed accounts for most of man's dishonesty. 2 meanness, stinginess, miserliness, selfishness, niggardliness, penuriousness, parsimony, close-fistedness, penny-pinching, tight-fistedness: From a life of greed he had accumulated enormous wealth. 3 gluttony, voraciousness, edacity, esurience, voracity, overeating, gormandizing, ravenousness, insatiableness: Obesity owes more to greed than to glandular disorder.

greedy   adj. 1 ravenous, voracious, gluttonous, piggish, hoggish, swinish, cormorant, edacious, esurient, insatiable, unquenchable: I'd love another slice, but I mustn't be greedy. 2 avaricious, acquisitive, covetous, grasping, craving; materialistic, money-hungry: If some people were less greedy, there would be plenty for everyone. 3 stingy, miserly, mean, selfish, niggardly, parsimonious, penurious, penny-pinching, mercenary, close-fisted, tight-fisted, close, Colloq near, tight, Brit mingy: He's so greedy that he asks beggars for receipts.

green   adj. 1 verdant, grassy, fresh, leafy; rural, country-like: Plans call for a green belt to be created around every major city. 2 immature, unripe, unripened; na‹ve, callow, untested, untrained, unversed, inexperienced, new, raw, unseasoned, unsophisticated, gullible, amateur, unskilled, unskilful, amateurish, non-professional, inexpert, Colloq wet behind the ears: This banana is still too green to eat. Isn't Piers a bit green to be given so much responsibility? 3 environmental, conservationist: The green activists appear to be gaining influence in governmental circles.

--n. 4 lawn, sward, common, grassland: Let us meet on the village green at noon. 5 environmentalist, conservationist, preservationist: The greens are opposed to draining the marshes.

greenhorn n. newcomer, beginner, novice, tiro or tyro, neophyte, novice, initiate, learner, tenderfoot, Colloq rookie: They send all the greenhorns off to fetch a bucket of steam and a can of striped paint.

greet v. 1 welcome, receive, usher in, meet: We were greeted warmly by the family. 2 hail, accost, address, salute: People greeted him in the street with a wave and a smile.

greeting n. 1 salutation, hail, hello, welcome, reception: She had a smile and a greeting for every passer-by. 2 greetings card, card, message, note: The Queen sent me a greeting on my 100th birthday. 3 greetings. regards, respects, best or good wishes, devoirs, compliments: I sent you greetings from Barbados, where I took my holiday.

grey adj. 1 ashen, leaden, colourless, pale, pallid, wan, livid, pearly, griseous, smoky, sooty, bloodless: The cadaver's skin was a dead, whitish grey. 2 gloomy, dismal, dull, depressing, glum, dreary, sombre, drab, cheerless, dark, murky, foggy, misty, cloudy, overcast, sunless: As if to mould her temperament, Kathleen was born on a grey December day in 1791. 3 aged, elderly, hoary, old, venerable, ancient: A stooped, grey crone inched along, muttering to herself. 4 mature, wise, experienced: Seventy years have spread their grey experience over his hoary head.

grief n. 1 anguish, suffering, agony, misery, wretchedness, pain, hurt, sadness, sorrow, dejection, depression, despondency, melancholy, unhappiness, woe, torment, desolation, heartbreak, remorse, regret, ruth, heartache: Nothing equalled the grief I felt at the death of my dog, Whiffler. 2 distress, trouble, difficulty, tribulation, trial, burden, load, onus, ordeal, travail, affliction, worry, bitterness, curse; adversity, misfortune, evil days, bad or ill fortune or luck, calamity, disaster, catastrophe, trauma: The death of her only child was a lasting grief to Millie. 3 come to grief. fail, go to rack and ruin, meet with disaster, miscarry, fall or come apart, Colloq come unstuck: Our plans for retirement came to grief when my husband went bankrupt.

grievance adj. 1 wrong, ill, injustice, disservice, unfairness, injury, damage, harm, outrage, affront, indignity, hardship, calamity: I had to listen to details of every grievance she had ever suffered. 2 complaint, objection, charge, plaint, allegation, grudge, Colloq gripe, bone to pick, Brit crow to pluck, Slang beef: Please register all your grievances at the office next door.

grieve v. 1 mourn, bemoan, lament, regret, rue, deplore, bewail, mope, eat one's heart out: Sylvia is still grieving over the loss of her husband. 2 weep, cry, mourn, moan, keen, suffer, sorrow; shed tears, complain: Go in and try to comfort the grieving widow.

grievous adj. 1 severe, heavy, painful, grave, serious, distressing, harmful; damaging, hurtful, acute, wounding: The church buildings suffered grievous damage from the storm. He was charged with causing grievous bodily harm. 2 egregious, awful, flagrant, terrible, outrageous, heinous, dreadful, atrocious, monstrous, appalling, shocking, deplorable, calamitous, lamentable, intolerable, shameful, unbearable: Missing that catch was a grievous error.

grim adj. 1 stern, severe, unrelenting, resolute, uncompromising, unyielding, inflexible, adamant, stony, iron, unbending, firm, intractable, unflinching, unmoving, unmoved, implacable, inexorable, determined, steadfast, (dead) set, fixed, decided, obstinate, headstrong, stubborn, obdurate, dogged, unwavering: By controlling the purse strings, she kept a grim hold over the family. 2 forbidding, formidable, harsh, ferocious, fierce, cruel, savage, merciless, heartless, ruthless, pitiless, vicious, brutal, brutish, feral, inhuman, fiendish, violent, bloodthirsty, murderous, homicidal, fell: A grim pack of howling wolves loped after our sledge. 3 dire, dreadful, ghastly, awful, frightful, frightening, sinister, hideous, horrid, horrific, horrible, horrendous, terrible, terrifying, terrific, harrowing, dread, alarming, appalling, grotesque, gruesome, eerie, macabre, flagitious, heinous, evil, wicked, iniquitous, atrocious, monstrous: Before me appeared the ghostly apparition of the Grim Reaper.

grime n. dirt, filth, soot, mud, muck, slime, scum: The lad began to rub the grime from the old oil lamp.

grind v. 1 pound, powder, pulverize, abrade, crush, granulate, mill, grate, rasp, crumble, kibble, mash, triturate, bray, comminute: The rock was soon ground to a fine powder. 2 sharpen, whet; file, smooth, polish: He is grinding the edge to be razor sharp. 3 gnash, grit, grate: He grinds his teeth when he's angry. 4 Also, grind away. labour, toil, slave (away); study, lucubrate, burn the midnight oil, Colloq cram, Brit swot: George has been grinding away at the same job all his life. Languages came easily, but he had to grind away at the sciences. 5 grind down. wear down or away, crush, oppress, subdue, suppress, tyrannize, persecute, maltreat, ill-treat, harry, harass, hound, hector, plague, badger: Dictators first grind down all opposition, then destroy it. 6 grind out. produce, generate, crank out, churn out, turn out: For 20 years he has been grinding out the daily gossip column.

--n. 7 toil, labour, drudgery, travail, exertion, task, chore: Working at the checkout counter hour after hour is a terrible grind.

grip n. 1 hold, grasp, clutch, handgrip, clasp, hand-clasp: Losing his grip on the rope, he plummeted into the abyss. 2 control, command, hold, mastery; authority, influence, power, rule, domination, sovereignty, tenure, dominion, suzerainty, custody: Peter is losing his grip on reality. The dictator kept a tight grip on the people right up to his death. 3 grasp, understanding, apprehension, comprehension, sense, sensitivity, feel, feeling, awareness, perception, view, Slang US handle: Skerry is having trouble getting a grip on what you plan to do. 4 handgrip, valise, (travelling or overnight) bag, case, satchel, suitcase, Brit holdall, US and Canadian carry-all: I got off the plane in New York, but my grip went on to Detroit. 5 come or get to grips with. tackle, confront, approach, handle, meet (head on), undertake, grapple or contend with, cope or deal with, face: We must come to grips with the problem of Cassandra.

--v. 6 grasp, clutch, clasp, hold, seize: He gripped the handle of the revolver more tightly. 7 engross, engage, hold, fascinate, enthral, entrance, absorb, mesmerize, hypnotize, spellbind, rivet: Just at the gripping climax, the reel broke and the film stopped.

gripe v. 1 complain, moan, grumble, whimper, whine, bleat, nag, cavil, carp, grouse, Colloq beef, Brit whinge, Slang bitch, bellyache: It's natural to gripe about the food in the army.

--n. 2 complaint, grievance, objection, protest; complaining, moaning, grumbling, whimpering, whining, nagging, cavilling, carping, grousing, Colloq beef, Brit whinging Slang bitching, bellyaching: I don't want to hear any more gripes about the food! 3 Usually, gripes. cramp, twinge, pang, pain, ache, colic, distress, Colloq bellyache: The gripes became so painful that he was sure he had appendicitis.

grisly adj. gruesome, gory, abhorrent, abominable, awful, appalling, hideous, shocking, nasty, dreadful, repulsive, repellent, repugnant, disgusting, sickening, nauseating, horrific, horrid, horrendous, horrifying, terrible, terrifying, terrific: A grisly scene greeted the soldiers who liberated the concentration camp.

grit n. courage, courageousness, valour, bravery, fortitude, resolution, resoluteness, resolve, toughness, mettle, pluck, spirit, backbone, nerve, gameness, intrepidity or intrepidness, dauntlessness, tenacity, determination, firmness, hardiness, hardihood, staunchness, stalwartness, doughtiness, fearlessness, Colloq guts, gutsiness, spunk, spunkiness, starch, Brit bottle, US and Canadian chutzpah, moxie, stick-to-it-iveness: Mountain-climbing requires more grit than you might think.

gritty adj. 1 sandy, gravelly, granular, grainy, rough, abrasive, rasping, arenose: The texture of the mud-pack felt somewhat gritty on her face. 2 courageous, valorous, brave, resolute, tough, mettlesome, plucky, spirited, game, intrepid, dauntless, tenacious, determined, persistent, firm, hardy, staunch, stalwart, doughty, fearless, Colloq gutsy, spunky: The band of gritty frontiersman was led by Sheriff Boswell.

groan v. 1 moan, sigh, murmur, wail, whimper, whine: Unattended patients were lying there, groaning in agony. 2 complain, grumble, grouse, object, protest, Colloq gripe, beef, yammer, Brit whinge, Slang bitch: Now that he's rich, he's groaning about taxes.

--n. 3 moan, sigh, murmur, wail, whimper, whine: I thought I heard a groan coming from the attic. 4 complaint, grumble, grousing, muttering, Colloq gripe, griping, beef, yammering, Slang bitching: His announcement that the whole class would be punished was met by groans.

groggy adj. unsteady, shaky, wobbly, weak-kneed, weak, staggering, stupefied, dazed, stunned, reeling, punch-drunk, numb, numbed, benumbed, faint, in a trance or stupor, muddled, addled, confused, bewildered, confounded, puzzled, baffled, befuddled, Colloq dopey, punchy, woozy, Brit muzzy: I was still groggy from the blow on the head.

groom n. 1 stable-boy, stableman, Brit stable-lad, Archaic ostler or hostler, equerry: The groom unsaddled the horses and began to curry them. 2 bridegroom: Let's drink to the bride and groom!

--v. 3 spruce up, dress, tidy or neaten up, smarten up, titivate or tittivate, preen, primp, refresh: Every time she passes a mirror Vivian stops to groom herself. 4 fit, train, prepare, coach, tutor, brief, drill, prime, (get or make) ready, adapt, shape: McCusker is being groomed for a directorship.

groove n. slot, cut, channel, furrow, gouge, trough; flute, scratch, striation or stria, rifling, rifle, Architecture glyph, Technical sulcus: The door slides in these grooves at the sides.

grope v. feel, fumble, fish, probe: I groped for the switch in the dark.

gross adj. 1 fat, obese, corpulent, overweight, big, large, bulky, great, heavy, ponderous, massive, cumbersome, unwieldy: The gross detective eased his bulk onto a tiny chair. 2 total, aggregate, entire, pre-tax, (all-)inclusive, overall, whole: The gross profit was up by 15 per cent this year. 3 coarse, vulgar, crude, unsophisticated, uncultured, uncultivated, earthy, crass, indelicate, indecent, inappropriate, unseemly, improper, unrefined, bawdy, ribald, Rabelaisian, raw, rude, offensive, obscene, lewd, dirty, smutty, pornographic, filthy: That was too gross a story for mixed company. 4 outrageous, flagrant, obvious, plain, glaring, shameful, blatant, monstrous, heinous, manifest, evident: Her conviction was a gross miscarriage of justice. 5 disgusting, repulsive, repellent, revolting, nauseating: His table manners are truly gross.

--v. 6 earn, bring or take in, make: We grossed over a million but netted only 50,000 after expenses.

--n. 7 (overall) total, take, intake, takings, receipts, gate: As I said, the gross was over a million.

grotesque adj. 1 distorted, bizarre, freakish, twisted, misshapen, malformed, deformed, gruesome, gnarled: Victor Hugo created the character of Quasimodo, the grotesque bell-ringer of Notre Dame. 2 absurd, incongruous, weird, odd, fantastic, strange, queer, peculiar, curious, outlandish, offbeat, abnormal, aberrant, anomalous, ludicrous, ridiculous, preposterous: The idea of marrying Leonard is too grotesque for even Gladys to contemplate.

ground n. 1 earth, soil, turf, sod, dirt, loam, clay; land, terrain: There is a great hole in the ground behind my house. 2 territory, area, range, scope, compass: We covered the ground quite thoroughly at our meeting. 3 Often, grounds. basis, foundation, base, reason, footing, justification, rationale, argument, cause, motive, excuse: What are her grounds for suing for divorce? 4 grounds. sediment, dregs, lees, deposit, settlings, Brit grouts: Filter out the grounds before drinking the coffee.

--v. 5 base, establish, organize, found; settle, set: The school's philosophy is grounded on the principles of Maria Montessori. 6 instruct, teach, train, coach, tutor, inform, prepare, initiate: The purpose of the course is to ground students in basic mathematics.

groundless

adj. baseless, without foundation, unsound, unfounded, unsupported, unjustified, unjustifiable, unwarranted, uncalled-for, gratuitous, unreasoned, unreasonable, speculative, suppositional, hypothetical, tenuous, flimsy, illusory, imaginary, chimerical: Assumptions that the boy is guilty are entirely groundless.

groundwork

n. basis, spadework, preparation(s), base, foundation, underpinning(s), cornerstone: The report provided the groundwork for the research.

group n. 1 assembly, assemblage, gathering, congregation, company, number, alliance, union, association, organization, league, society, coterie, clique, set, band, circle, club, party, body, faction, crowd, team, corps, guild, troupe, unit, troop, platoon, squad, gang: A group of revolutionaries meets nightly in a basement in Krakowskaya Street. 2 batch, aggregation, set, grouping, collection, assemblage, bunch, accumulation, conglomeration, agglomeration, assortment, series; pile, heap, bundle: The entire group of abstract paintings was auctioned at double their estimated value.

--v. 3 classify, class, sort, bracket, organize, order, rank, assort, categorize, catalogue: Books are grouped according to subject. 4 collect, assemble, arrange, place, dispose, gather, organize, bring or put together, set apart: Group oversized books together on the lowest shelves.

grovelling

adj. obsequious, fawning, toadying, toad-eating, sycophantish, subservient, slavish, servile, submissive, kowtowing, cringing, cowering, truckling, snivelling, scraping, tugging the forelock, abject, crawling, base, low, mean, sordid, Colloq boot-licking, US apple-polishing; Slang brown-nosing, Brit arse-kissing, arse-licking, US ass-kissing, ass-licking: The grovelling coward threw himself to the ground, begging forgiveness.

grow v. 1 flourish, develop, increase, become larger or greater, enlarge, wax, swell, expand, broaden, thicken, spread, lengthen, multiply, burgeon or bourgeon, thrive, luxuriate, prosper, mature, ripen, bloom, flower, blossom, fructify, bear or yield fruit: The seeds he had planted grew abundantly. The population continues to grow. 2 develop, evolve, arise, issue, stem, spring (up), originate: A great friendship grew out of their association. 3 plant, cultivate, breed, nurture, raise, propagate, produce; sow: Cathcart grows sorghum where he used to grow alfalfa. 4 become, get: I am growing fonder of you every day, Abbie. 5 grow on. get or become accepted by, come or begin to be liked by, to gain or increase in interest or attraction to, become more pleasing to: I didn't like her at first, but she grows on you. 6 grow up. mature, reach or attain maturity or adulthood, come of age, reach one's majority: Those who grew up in the Great Depression knew real poverty.

growth n. 1 development, evolution, evolvement, cultivation, nurturing, increase, expansion, broadening, extension, enlargement, spread, proliferation, flowering: The growth of education was a slow and painful process. 2 vegetation, crop: The area is covered with a dense growth of timber. 3 advance, advancement, success, improvement, expansion, rise, progress: The growth of the economy has slowed down in the last quarter. 4 wen, excrescence, wart, lump, tumour, swelling, intumescence: He developed an ugly growth on his nose.

grudge n. 1 bitterness, resentment, rancour, ill will, hard feelings, spite, grievance, pique, dislike, aversion, antipathy, animus, animosity, enmity, venom, malice, malevolence, hatred: He had harboured a grudge against her ever since she was promoted.

--v. 2 begrudge, resent, envy, mind, covet: She grudges other people their simple pleasures.

gruesome adj. ghastly, repugnant, horrible, horrid, horrific, horrendous, grisly, hideous, revolting, repellent, repulsive, loathsome, grim, grotesque, macabre, abominable, frightful, frightening, fearsome, shocking, terrible, awful: She told a tale too gruesome to repeat here.

gruff adj. 1 surly, crusty, grumpy, curmudgeonly, cantankerous, sour, peevish, churlish, rude, uncivil, bearish, testy, querulous, irritable, cross, petulant, crabbed, irascible, sullen, sulky, bluff, abrupt, curt, blunt, brusque, short, short-tempered, ill-humoured, ill-natured, bad-tempered, stinging, cutting, biting, acerb, acrimonious, acid, caustic, Colloq grouchy, crotchety: It is difficult to work for someone as gruff as he is. 2 throaty, deep, rough, guttural, rasping, low, husky, hoarse, harsh(-sounding): Instantly I recognized father's gruff voice on the telephone.

7.9 guarantee

=-

guarantee n. 1 guaranty, warranty, assurance, pledge, bond, obligation, promise; word (of honour), oath, undertaking: The guarantee expires one month from the sell-by date. Have I your guarantee that this battery will last a year?

--v. 2 guaranty, warranty, assure, ensure, pledge, promise, undertake, stand behind, vouch for, certify, make sure or certain, swear to, attest to: The manufacturer guarantees every car for three years or 50,000 miles.

guard   v. 1 protect, shield, safeguard, (keep or stand) watch (over), defend, convoy, escort, police, look after, tend, mind: Only three men will be guarding the bullion when we make our move. 2 control, mind: Guard your tongue - the walls have ears.

--n. 3 sentinel, watchman, sentry, security guard, custodian, guardian, protector, picket, watch, bodyguard; evzone, bashibazouk; Brit warder, wardress , Slang screw, Brit minder: The guards go to eat at noon. 4 protection, convoy, escort, patrol: A guard of six men will accompany the van along this route. 5 defence, protection, safety, safeguard, security, shield: This bandage will serve as a guard against infection.

guarded   adj. careful, cautious, heedful, prudent, circumspect, wary, noncommittal, restrained, mindful, suspicious, leery or Brit also leary, apprehensive; loath or loth, reticent, reluctant, Colloq cagey: He became very guarded under close questioning. When I asked where she had been, she gave a guarded answer.

guardian n. protector, defender, paladin, champion; trustee, custodian, keeper, preserver: She fancies him her guardian, her knight in shining armour. Do we really need guardians of the 'purity' of the language?

guerrilla n. guerilla, partisan or partizan, resistance or freedom or underground fighter, irregular; insurgent, saboteur, terrorist; US history Jayhawker, French history Maquis: The guerrillas continue to attack the government's supply convoys.

guess   v. 1 conjecture, estimate, hypothesize, speculate, postulate, Slang guestimate or guesstimate: We guessed that he might try to come in through the window. 2 think, suppose, conclude, assume, believe, dare say, surmise, judge, deem, reckon, imagine, fancy, feel, suspect, divine: I guess you were right about her.

--n. 3 conjecture, estimate, hypothesis, speculation, surmise, assumption, judgement, feeling, suspicion, supposition, postulate, theory; guesswork; Colloq shot in the dark, Slang guestimate or guesstimate: My guess as to which card would turn up was wrong.

guest   n. visitor, company, caller; patron, customer, lodger, boarder, roomer: Our guests get clean linen daily.

guidance n. 1 leadership, direction, management, government, conduct, control, regulation, charge, handling, rule, auspices: The company prospered under her guidance. 2 counsel, advice, counselling, advisement, instruction, teaching: I have turned to you for guidance in the matter.

guide   v. 1 lead, show or lead the way, conduct, shepherd, direct, usher, steer, orient or Brit orientate: She guided me to the proper office. What will guide your judgement in dealing with this situation? 2 steer, pilot, manoeuvre, navigate, direct: He carefully guided the boat between the shoals. 3 counsel, advise, influence, sway; supervise, oversee, handle, manage, superintend, direct, control, regulate, govern: Mr Thrall guided my artistic development from the beginning. 4 instruct, teach, tutor, train: From early youth we were guided by the elders of the community.

--n. 5 leader, conductor, director, cicerone, chaperon, mentor, counsel, counsellor, adviser or advisor, guru, master: He served as my guide through the financial jungle. Let your conscience be your guide. 6 model, criterion, exemplar, standard, ideal, example, inspiration: She looked upon the life of Mother Theresa as a guide. 7 beacon, light, signal, guiding light, landmark, lodestar, sign, marker: The Southern Cross was our constant guide sailing round the Horn. 8 handbook, manual, enchiridion, vade-mecum, guidebook, Baedeker: Can you recommend a good guide to English usage?

guilt   n. 1 culpability, guiltiness, criminality, blame, responsibility, blameworthiness; crime, sinfulness, feloniousness, wrongdoing, misconduct: Confronted by the evidence, Shillingworth admitted his guilt. 2 remorse, self-reproach, regret, sorrow, contrition, repentance, shame, contriteness, self-condemnation, bad conscience: That feeling of guilt would plague me for the rest of my life.

guilty adj. 1 responsible, culpable, answerable, blameworthy, at fault, delinquent, wrong; offending, reprehensible: Whoever was guilty will be prosecuted. First we must find the guilty party. 2 remorseful, contrite, regretful, sorry, apologetic, repentant, sorrowful, conscience-stricken, rueful, penitent; ashamed, shame-faced, sheepish, embarrassed, red-faced: Gavin felt terribly guilty for having insulted Tina.

guise n. 1 appearance, aspect, semblance, look, image, likeness, mien; air, behaviour, conduct, deportment, comportment, bearing, demeanour: This is nothing but an old political concept in a new guise. 2 semblance, disguise, fa‡ade, front, pretence: The treacherous Lothario assumed the guise of a knight in shining armour.

gulf n. 1 bay, bight, cove, inlet, sound, loch or sea loch, firth or frith, fiord or fjord, Irish lough, Brit creek: We sailed into the gulf to shelter from the wind behind the cliffs. 2 chasm, deep, depth, abyss, abysm, void, space, opening, rift, breach, gap, separation, rift, split: After the divorce, the gulf between us widened even further.

gullible adj. innocent, green, simple, credulous, unsophisticated, na‹ve, unsuspecting, unwary, unsuspicious, wide-eyed, born yesterday, inexperienced, immature: He was gullible enough to fall for the old con game, three-card monte.

gully n. gulley, channel, river-bed, watercourse, gorge, ravine, canyon, notch, cut, pass, defile, valley, corridor, wadi, Brit gill or ghyll, W US arroyo , US and Canadian gulch: We rode along in the gully so as not to be seen.

gulp v. 1 bolt, gobble, wolf (down), devour, gorge, swallow, throw down, toss off, quaff, guzzle, swill, Colloq knock back, swig, US chug-a-lug: The boy gulped his dinner and ran out to play. 2 swallow, suppress, stifle, choke (back), smother, strangle: She gulped back her tears as the coffin was lowered.

--n. 3 mouthful, swallow, draught, swill, Colloq swig: He took a gulp of his drink before making another bid.

gumption n. 1 resourcefulness, shrewdness, cleverness, (mother) wit, (common) sense, astuteness, judgement, Colloq horse sense, brains, Slang Brit nous: It takes a lot of gumption to run a good cattle auction. 2 backbone, grit, pluck, mettle, enterprise, initiative, courage, spirit, gameness, nerve, daring, vigour, energy, boldness, audacity, stamina, Colloq spunk, guts, get-up-and-go, US moxie, Slang Brit bottle, Taboo slang balls: He hasn't the gumption to go into business for himself.

gurgle v. 1 bubble, burble, babble, ripple, splash, plash, lap, murmur, purl: The cool brook gurgled merrily through the meadow.

--n. 2 babble, burble, bubbling, babbling, burbling, splash, gurgling, splashing, plashing, murmuring, purl, purling: I lay back, listening to the gurgle of the spring among the rocks.

gush v. 1 cascade, rush, flood, stream, spurt, jet, spout, burst; run, flow: The water gushed out of the pipe, soaking us all. 2 bubble over, overflow, be ebullient or effusive or effervescent, effervesce, make much of, fuss over, prattle, chatter, babble, jabber, blather or blether, Colloq Brit natter, witter: It was impossible to stop them from gushing on about the performance.

--n. 3 cascade, rush, flood, flow, stream, spurt, jet, spout, burst, torrent: A gush of water hit me right in the face. 4 exuberance, effusion, bubbling over, outburst: After the first gush of enthusiasm, everything quieted down.

gushy adj. gushing, fulsome, cloying, mawkish, excessive, effusive, overdone, (over-)sentimental, (over)enthusiastic, Colloq sloppy, slushy: It's another gushy film about a little girl and a lost kitten.

gust n. 1 puff, blow, wind, breeze, blast: A gust of wind blew my hat off.

--v. 2 puff, blow, blast, surge, increase: The wind gusted up to gale force overnight.

gusto n. enthusiasm, relish, zest, appetite, zeal, zealousness, avidity, eagerness, enjoyment, appreciation, pleasure, delight, satisfaction: We attacked the meal with great gusto and soon dispatched every scrap.

gut n. 1 Often, guts. bowels, intestines, entrails, viscera, stomach, offal, vitals, vital parts, gurry, Brit (of a deer) gralloch, Colloq insides, innards or inwards: As soon as the game is killed, the guts must be removed. 2 stomach, abdomen, belly; beer-belly, bay window, corporation: His enormous gut hung over his belt. 3 guts. a backbone, bravery, boldness, audacity, pluck, courage, determination, daring, spirit, grit, mettle, gumption, nerve, intestinal fortitude, Colloq spunk, gutsiness, Slang Brit bottle, Taboo balls: He hasn't the guts to tell the boss what he thinks of him. b integrity, will-power, stamina, endurance, forcefulness, dynamism: It takes real guts to stand up for your rights.

--v. 4 disembowel, eviscerate, draw, dress, clean: It will take hours to gut all these fish. 5 ransack, pillage, plunder, sack, despoil, strip, ravage, loot, rifle, Rare depredate; clean out, devastate, empty: The building was completely gutted by the fire.

--adj. 6 basic, heartfelt, instinctive, instinctual, intuitive, visceral, deep-seated, emotional: My gut reaction is to refuse the offer.

guttersnipe
n. waif, (street) Arab, (street) urchin, ragamuffin, brat, gamin, rogue, Colloq Brit rare mudlark: That little guttersnipe stole my wallet!

guy n. 1 man, lad, youth, boy, fellow, person, Colloq chap, geezer, Brit bloke, Slang gink, cat, customer, US dude, Old-fashioned gazabo or gazebo: Clarence is a pretty nice guy.

--v. 2 mock, ridicule, make fun of, caricature, satirize, poke fun at, lampoon, Colloq rib, take off, Brit send up: We put on a show at school in which we guyed the teachers.

7.10 gyrate

=-

gyrate v. rotate, spin, revolve, turn (round or about), whirl, twirl, swirl, pirouette; swivel: The dancers were gyrating to the deafening music.

8.0 H

=-

8.1 habit...

=-

habit n. 1 custom, routine, practice, convention, policy, pattern, usage, mode, rule, wont, praxis: Jogging every morning had become a habit. She is a creature of habit. 2 tendency, disposition, manner, practice, way, custom, inclination, bent, predisposition, second nature, frame of mind, attitude, penchant, propensity, proclivity; addiction, compulsion: This kettle has a habit of leaking. Try to control your bad habits. 3 attire, clothing, dress, apparel, clothes, garb, costume, garments, vestments, uniform, raiment, livery, regalia, habiliment(s), Colloq gear: She was disguised in a monk's habit.

habitable adj. liveable, inhabitable: With some effort, two rooms were made habitable.

habitat n. abode, home, haunt, domain, range, territory, bailiwick, realm, terrain, element, environment, surroundings, Colloq stamping-ground: The winter habitat of the monarch butterfly is in northern Mexico. Curtis doesn't function well outside his natural habitat.

habitual adj. 1 settled, fixed, customary, usual, conventional, accustomed, set, rooted, established, traditional, standard, routine, ritual, regular, normal, wonted, common, ordinary, natural: He follows his habitual practice of rising at dawn. 2 inveterate, established, chronic, confirmed, hardened, ingrained, frequent, persistent, constant, continual, perpetual: Many English people are habitual tea-drinkers.

habitu‚ n. frequenter, patron, regular customer, Colloq regular: Larry has been a habitu‚ of The Bell Inn for 20 years.

hack° v. 1 chop, hew, lacerate, gash, slash, cut; mangle, butcher, mutilate, ruin, destroy, smash, batter, damage, deface: He hacked the furniture to pieces with an axe. 2 bark, cough: She was disgusted by the man's hacking and spitting.

--n. 3 cut, gash, slash, chop: He took a hack at the log with his hatchet.

hacký n. 1 drudge, penny-a-liner, scribbler, Grub Street writer: We made a mistake hiring that hack as a feature writer. 2 plodder, drudge, toiler, menial, flunkey, lackey, slave, Brit fag, Slang grind, Brit swot: Fergus gets good grades because he's such a hack. 3 saddle-horse, riding-horse, hackney, Archaic palfrey: The hack was a fine bay mare.

--adj. 4 hackneyed, trite, banal, overdone, commonplace, routine, stereotyped, stock, tired, tedious, mediocre, overworked, stale, unoriginal, run-of-the-mill, humdrum, moth-eaten, mouldy, Colloq old hat: Haverstock keeps publishing hack romances.

hag n. crone, fury, witch, ogress, gorgon, harpy, fishwife, harridan, shrew, virago, termagant, vixen, hell-cat, maenad or menad, Xanthippe, Archaic beldam; dog, beast, monster; Colloq battleaxe, Slang bitch, bag, US two-bagger: Perseus met the Graeae, three old hags with one eye that they passed among them.

haggard adj. gaunt, drawn, wasted, emaciated, hollow-eyed, hollow-cheeked, scrawny, scraggy, ghastly, cadaverous, run-down, wearied, weary, careworn, spent, played out, exhausted, toil-worn, worn, shrunken, withered: She looked haggard, as if she hadn't slept for a week.

haggle v. wrangle, bargain, higgle, bicker, chaffer, palter, dispute, squabble, quibble, negotiate; barter, deal; Colloq US dicker: However little you ask for the lamp, she's sure to haggle over the price.

hail° v. 1 greet, accost, address, signal, call: Robert hailed us from across the road. 2 cheer, salute, applaud, approve, glorify, praise, laud, honour, acclaim, congratulate, felicitate, acknowledge: He was hailed by all for his charitable work.

hailý v. 1 rain or beat or shower (down) on, bombard, pelt, volley, barrage: Rocks and debris hailed down on us from the cliffs above.

--n. 2 volley, storm, shower, torrent, bombardment, barrage: They were greeted by a hail of abuse when they entered the meeting hall.

hair n. 1 tresses, locks, mane, curls, ringlets; braids, plaits: You will recognize her by her red hair. 2 hair's breadth, whisker, trifle, fraction, skin of one's teeth: He won the race by a hair.

hairdo n. coiffure, hairstyle, cut, coif: Your hairdo is very becoming.

hairless adj. bald, bald-headed, bald-pated, glabrous, calvous: She finds hairless men rather sexy.

hair-splitting

adj. quibbling, (over-)fussy, hypercritical, petty, captious, carping, fault-finding, finicky, (over)nice, fastidious, cavilling, niggling, Colloq nit-picking: His hair-splitting attention to detail gets on my nerves.

hairy adj. 1 hirsute, shaggy, downy, fleecy, fluffy, woolly, lanate or lanose, lanuginous or lanuginose, bristly, setaceous, setal, hispid, comate or comose, fringy, crinite, trichoid, strigose or strigous, strigillose; whiskered, bewhiskered, bearded, barbate, unshaven: The creature had a very hairy face. 2 tricky, dangerous, perilous, risky, uncertain, precarious, hazardous, frightening, worrying, nerve-racking or nerve-wracking, Colloq scary: The situation at the office has become very hairy. 3 tangled, intricate, knotty, complex, complicated, difficult, problematic, confused, confusing: The exam contained some hairy questions.

hale adj. healthy, hearty, fit (as a fiddle), sound, able-bodied, hardy, wholesome, robust, flourishing, in good or fine fettle, in the pink: Her grandmother was as hale and hearty as ever.

half-hearted
adj. indifferent, uncaring, unconcerned, lukewarm, uninterested, dispassionate, cool, unenthusiastic, half-baked, nonchalant, phlegmatic, lackadaisical, insouciant: The council has made only a half-hearted effort to solve the problem.

halfwit n. dunce, fool, idiot, simpleton, ninny, ass, ninny-hammer, moron, imbecile, dolt, dunderhead or dunderpate, rattle-brain, nincompoop, dullard, Colloq numskull or numbskull, nitwit, dim-wit, birdbrain, Brit nit, twit: He's such a halfwit, he can hardly expect me to give him a job!

halfwitted
adj. stupid, foolish, silly, simple, inane, asinine, moronic, imbecilic, doltish, rattle-brained, feeble-minded, attocerebral, cretinous, thick, non compos mentis, dim-witted, weak-minded, Colloq dumb, Brit dotty, barmy (in the crumpet): She had some halfwitted idea that she would win the lottery.

hall n. 1 corridor, hallway, passageway, passage; foyer, entry, entry-way, lobby, vestibule: Let us step out into the hall for a brief word. 2 auditorium, assembly or meeting or convention hall, theatre, amphitheatre, hired hall; lecture-room, lecture-hall, classroom: We hired a hall for the wedding reception.

hallmark n. 1 authentication, verification, seal or stamp (of authenticity or approval), mark, device, sign, symbol; plate-mark; assay-mark: From this hallmark we know when and where the piece was made, by whom, and its degree of purity. Surprise endings are the hallmark of O. Henry's short stories. 2 feature, stamp, mark, earmark, trade mark, characteristic, identification: From his hallmark, a tiny axe, you can tell that the painting is a genuine Fellworthy.

hallow v. 1 consecrate, bless, sanctify, dedicate, honour, enshrine, glorify: Englishmen look upon this battlefield as hallowed ground. 2 venerate, worship, revere, reverence, respect, honour, pay homage or respect or honour to, exalt: We must observe the hallowed traditions of the university.

hallucination
n. fantasy, mirage, day-dream, illusion, delusion, vision, dream, aberration, chimera, phantasm, phantom, figment of the imagination, apparition, spectre, ghost; par‘sthesia: Alone at sea for a fortnight, I began having hallucinations.

halo n. nimbus, aura, aureole or aureola, corona, radiance, Painting vesica, mandorla; ring, disc, circle, annulation, annulus: The saints can be identified by the golden halos round their heads.

halt n. 1 stop, standstill, end, termination, close, stoppage, cessation: We must call a halt to absenteeism in the factory.

--v. 2 stop, quit, end, terminate, cease, check, curb, stem, discontinue, desist, bring or come or draw to an end or close, put an end or stop to, conclude, shut or close down or up: We halted when we came to the river. The guerrillas halted the armoured column at the pass.

halting adj. hesitant, hesitating, wavering, shifting, uneven, faltering, stumbling, faulty, unsteady, awkward, stammering, stuttering: He told her in halting English that there was no news of her friend.

hamper° v. slow, balk or baulk, delay, hold up, retard, inhibit, encumber, hinder, obstruct, block, impede, prevent, interfere with, frustrate, restrict, curb, limit, handicap, restrain, trammel, bar, barricade, shackle, clog, curtail, lessen, reduce, diminish: Ice floes hampered their further progress.

hamperý n. basket, pannier, creel, Brit punnet; hanaper, Dialectal skep: A hamper arrived from Fortnum's, packed full of delicacies such as foie gras and peaches in brandy.

hand n. 1 Slang mitt, paw, US lunch-hook: Keep your hands off me, you oaf! 2 help, aid, assistance, helping hand, relief, boost; leg up: Please give me a hand with this trunk. 3 influence, agency, participation, involvement, part, share: Did you have a hand in my getting the appointment? 4 (manual) labourer, worker, workman, man, help, employee: It's getting harder to find hands for the farm. 5 pointer, indicator, index: The minute hand covers the hour hand at noon and midnight. 6 (round of) applause, ovation, clap: Give the lad a hand for trying. 7 handwriting, penmanship, script; calligraphy: The writing was in a hand that she could not recognize. 8 Often, hands. control, hold, grasp, possession, custody, clutches, keeping, power, disposal, jurisdiction, authority, supervision, management, guardianship, care: At last, the government is in the hands of the people. 9 at hand. nearby, close, near, close by, handy, (readily) available, to or on hand, at one's fingertips, convenient, within (arm's) reach, accessible, present; approaching, imminent, around the corner: He always kept a pistol at hand. The Day of Judgement is at hand. 10 hand in glove. hand in hand, in league, together, in collusion, collusively, connivingly, conspiringly, intimately, closely, jointly, Colloq in cahoots: An informer is working hand in glove with the police. 11 hand in hand. together, side by side, hand in glove: They walked hand in hand down the road. 12 hand-over-fist. quickly, speedily, rapidly, swiftly, steadily, like mad: He makes money hand-over-fist in the stock market. 13 hands down. easily, readily, effortlessly: He can win the marathon hands down.

--v. 14 give, pass, deliver, present to or with: Please hand me the hammer. 15 hand down or on or over. a bequeath, will, pass on; transfer, turn over: The farm has been handed down from father to son for seven generations. b See 18 (a), below. 16 hand in. submit, give in, tender, proffer, offer: I handed in my resignation. 17 hand out. distribute, disseminate, pass out or round or around, give out, deal (out), mete or dole out, dispense; disburse: She was handing out leaflets to passers-by. 18 hand over. a deliver, submit, yield, give up, surrender, turn over; transfer: The man produced a gun and told the cashier to hand over the money. b See 15 (a), above.

handcuffs n.pl. manacles, shackles, Colloq cuffs, bracelets, Slang Brit darbies: The police put handcuffs on them all.

handful n. 1 few, couple, sprinkling, small number; fistful: Only a handful of restaurants are open that late. He gave the beggar a handful of change. 2 (behaviour or disciplinary) problem, bother, mischief-maker, troublemaker, nuisance: Timothy was a real handful when he was five.

handicap n. 1 hindrance, restraint, encumbrance, restriction, limitation, impediment, barrier, bar, obstacle, (stumbling) block, constraint, check, curb, trammel, disability, disadvantage: Did Douglas Bader view the loss of his legs as a handicap?

--v. 2 hinder, hamper, restrain, encumber, restrict, limit, impede, bar, block, check, curb, trammel, disable, disadvantage: He was severely handicapped by the loss of his sword.

handily adv. 1 readily, easily, effortlessly, without strain, comfortably, with both hands tied (behind one's back): Donald handily won the first prize in the poetry competition. 2 skilfully, capably, deftly, cleverly, dexterously, adroitly, expertly, proficiently, masterfully: I could never do that intricate work as handily as she.

handle n. 1 grip, hilt, handgrip, haft, helve: Hold it by the handle, not the blade.

--v. 2 feel, touch, finger, hold; caress, fondle, pat: Be careful how you handle that knife. 3 manage, run, operate, direct, administer, supervise, oversee, control, command, guide: At the age of 26, she was handling all foreign business for the company. 4 steer, control, manage, cope with, manoeuvre, manipulate: Are you sure he can handle that horse? 5 deal or trade or traffic in, (buy and) sell, market: The gang was found to be handling stolen goods worth millions every month. 6 treat, control, deal with, cope with: She handled the customers with the utmost tact and respect. 7 treat, employ, use, utilize; deal with, wield, tackle, manipulate: Don't you admire how she handled the perspective in this painting?

handsome adj. 1 good-looking, fine-looking, attractive, fair, comely: He's handsome enough to be a movie star. 2 generous, sizeable, large, big, substantial, considerable, good, goodly, ample, abundant: She has made a handsome profit on the painting.

handy adj. 1 nearby, accessible, available, at or on or to hand, close (by), convenient, at one's fingertips, within (easy) reach, (at the) ready: Because of the recent break-ins, she keeps a pistol handy. 2 usable, serviceable, manoeuvrable, clever, useful, helpful, practical: A pair of pliers and a screwdriver are the handiest tools. 3 deft, clever, dexterous, adroit, adept, skilled, skilful, proficient, expert: Aunt Sara is very handy with a needle and thread.

hang   v. 1 suspend, depend, dangle; be poised or suspended, hover, swing: Hang the lantern from this branch. The laundry was hanging on the line. 2 gibbet, send to the gallows, lynch, execute, kill, Colloq string up, stretch: They hanged two murderers this morning. 3 drape, fall: The skirt isn't hanging straight. 4 hang about or around. a loiter, wait, linger, dally, idle, tarry , Colloq hang out: He hangs about after school every day, waiting for Susan. b Also, hang about or around (with). frequent, haunt, visit, spend time at; associate with, socialize with, hobnob with, rub elbows with, consort with, fraternize with, mix or mingle with, Colloq hang out (with): He hangs about the Golden Crown. I saw him hanging around with some pretty unsavoury characters. 5 hang back (from). be reluctant, recoil (from), shrink (from), hesitate, falter, stay away (from): Move to the front of the queue and don't hang back. 6 hang fire. be delayed, remain unsettled or unfinished, be in suspense or abeyance; stall, hold up, delay: The decision will hang fire till after the election. 7 hang on. a Also, hang on to. hold on (to), cling (to), clutch, grip, grasp, grab: Hang on to me when we're crossing the street. b wait, stay, stop: Hang on a minute - what did you call me? c wait, persist, remain, carry on, persevere, go on, hold out, endure, hold the phone, Colloq US hang in there: Hang on a minute, I have to put down the phone to get a pencil. d Also, hang on to or upon. listen carefully or attentively, give one's undivided attention, be rapt: She hung on every word the guru uttered. e depend or rely (on), be dependent or contingent (on), be subject (to), be conditioned or conditional (on): The entire project now hangs on their approval of the budget. 8 hang one's head. be ashamed or humiliated or abashed or humbled or embarrassed: She hung her head as the store detective confronted her with the stolen goods. 9 hang out. See 5 (a), above. 10 hang over. be put off or postponed or delayed: We must first deal with matters hanging over from our last meeting. 11 hang together. a unite, be united, be as one, stick together, join forces, cooperate, act in concert or harmony: We must hang together or we shall hang separately. b make sense, be logical, be consistent, correspond, match (up), cohere, be coherent: The statements issued yesterday and today just don't hang together. 12 hang up. break the connection, disconnect, cut off, put down the receiver: Whenever a salesman phones, I simply hang up.

hanger-on n. follower, dependant, leech, parasite, toady, sycophant, yes-man, Colloq scrounger, US freeloader, Slang groupie, sponger or sponge: The rock star came in, surrounded by his hangers-on.

hangman   n. executioner, Archaic Brit Jack Ketch: The hangman, a black hood concealing his identity, slipped the noose over the prisoner's head.

hanker   v. Usually, hanker after or for. yearn for, long for, thirst after or for, hunger after or for, itch for, pine for, lust after or for, covet, crave, have a hankering for, want, desire, fancy, Colloq have a yen for: She hankered after a big box of chocolates.

hanky-panky
n. mischief, trickery, double-dealing, legerdemain, deception, duplicity, chicanery, naughtiness, foolishness, tomfoolery, Colloq funny business, jiggery-pokery, monkey business, shenanigans, goings-on, antics: He'd best not try any of his hanky-panky with the tax inspector.

haphazard adj. 1 random, arbitrary, chance, fortuitous, aleatory, accidental, unforeseen, unlooked-for, unexpected, adventitious, serendipitous: Her fate was to be decided by a haphazard throw of the dice. 2 casual, offhand, hit-or-miss, unsystematic, slapdash, slipshod, careless, disorganized, disorderly: He took some haphazard shots at the target.

happen   v. 1 occur, take place, come about, go on, come to pass, develop; betide, chance, prove, materialize, Colloq transpire, come off, Slang cook: What is happening? As it happens, everyone has already left. 2 befall, become of: What will happen to me if I refuse? 3 happen on or upon. come upon, chance or hit on or upon, stumble on or upon, find, turn up, encounter, meet with: It was then that I happened on an old letter of his.

happening n. event, incident, occurrence, occasion, taking place, circumstance, chance, episode, phenomenon: Such a conjunction of the planets is a very rare happening.

happily   adv. 1 fortunately, luckily, propitiously, providentially, opportunely: Happily, she made a full recovery and was soon back at work. 2 joyfully, joyously, delightedly, gleefully, cheerily, cheerfully, gaily, merrily, blithely; enthusiastically, heartily: She waved happily as they drove off. 3 gladly, with pleasure, agreeably, contentedly, willingly, peaceably: And they both lived happily ever after.

happiness n. pleasure, delight, felicity, enjoyment, joy, joyousness, joyfulness, jubilation, cheerfulness, cheeriness, cheer, blithesomeness, gladness, light-heartedness, exhilaration, elation, exuberance, high spirits, glee, ecstasy: My happiness at seeing you again was unbounded.

happy   adj. 1 pleased, delighted, glad, joyous, joyful, overjoyed, jubilant, cheerful, cheery, blithe, blithesome, glad, light-hearted, contented, exhilarated, exultant, cock-a-hoop, elated, exuberant, thrilled, gleeful, euphoric, ecstatic, satisfied, gratified, Colloq on top of the world, on cloud nine, pleased as Punch, tickled pink, Brit in the seventh heaven, over the moon, US in seventh heaven: Her parents were happy that Georgina was married at last. 2 lucky, fortuitous, propitious, fortunate, auspicious, advantageous, beneficial, favourable, felicitous, opportune, timely, well-timed, apt, appropriate: By a happy chance, we were in Bermuda at the same time.

harangue n. 1 diatribe, tirade, oration, peroration, declamation, philippic, screed, exhortation, vituperation, rodomontade, speech, address, Colloq spiel: This morning he delivered a ten-minute harangue on the weakness of the coffee.

--v. 2 declaim, hold forth, preach, lecture, sermonize, pontificate, vituperate, rant and rave: Our neighbour is always haranguing her husband about trimming the hedges.

harass   v. badger, harry, hector, trouble, torment, bother, exasperate, hound, plague, persecute, vex, annoy, irritate, pester, worry, beset, bait, nag, pick on or at, tease, torture, Brit chivvvy or chivy or chevy: The police harass me by turning up at all hours for 'help with their inquiries'.

harbinger n. forerunner, herald, precursor, omen, foretoken, sign, portent, augury: The crowing cock is the harbinger of dawn.

harbour   n. 1 port, (safe) haven, anchorage, mooring: We sailed into the harbour just as the storm broke.

--v. 2 shelter, keep safe, protect, shield, guard, safeguard, conceal, hide: They were found guilty of harbouring a known fugitive. 3 cherish, foster, nurture, nurse, keep, retain, maintain, hold, cling to: She harbours a grudge against whoever set the fire.

hard   adj. 1 rigid, stiff, solid, inflexible, firm, dense, condensed, compressed, close, solidified, hardened; stony, rocklike, concrete, petrified, granite(-like), flinty, steely; tough, rugged, leathery, callous; unyielding, adamant(ine), impenetrable, obdurate, impervious, impregnable: The cement gets hard in an hour. This steak is as hard as shoe-leather. The metal was so hard that I broke three drills trying to make a hole in it. 2 difficult, laborious, arduous, back-breaking, burdensome, onerous, fatiguing, tiring, exhausting, wearying, strenuous, tough, toilsome: Laying track for the railway is a very hard job. 3 difficult, perplexing, knotty, puzzling, baffling, enigmatic, intricate, complicated, complex, tangled, involved, thorny, incomprehensible, inscrutable, unsolvable, insoluble, Colloq tough: There were a lot of hard questions in the exam. 4 stern, cold, callous, intractable, exacting, strict, demanding, hard-hearted, stony-hearted, severe, tyrannical, despotic, dictatorial, magisterial, oppressive, cruel, ruthless, pitiless, merciless, savage, brutal, brutish, inhuman, heartless, harsh, unkind, implacable, unsympathetic, dispassionate, uncompassionate, unfeeling, obdurate, indurate; unsentimental, insensitive, thick-skinned, tough, hard-boiled, stony, hardbitten, unfeeling, unsparing: Hemel is a hard taskmaster. Of the prison warders, each was harder than the next. He advocates taking a hard line against white-collar crime. 5 bad, difficult, grievous, calamitous, racking, disastrous, dark, grim, distressing, devastating, agonizing, painful, unpleasant, severe, austere, Colloq tough, rough: The years of the Great Depression were hard for everyone. 6 cool, unemotional, calculating, uncompromising, methodical, critical, systematic, practical, pragmatic, businesslike, realistic, penetrating, searching, hard-headed, Colloq tough, hard-nosed: Shareholders should take a hard look at the annual report. Chapelle drives a hard bargain. 7 sedulous, assiduous, devoted, conscientious, industrious, indefatigable, untiring, persistent, dogged, intent, eager, zealous, ardent, energetic, keen, avid: Galpin is a very hard worker who gets a lot done. 8 cold, bare, plain, straight, straightforward, blunt, unvarnished, unquestionable, verifiable, real, indisputable, undeniable, incontestable, incontrovertible, strict, inescapable, ineluctable, unavoidable, unalterable, immutable: The hard fact is that the bill has never been paid. 9 angry, bitter, acrimonious, hostile, antagonistic, harsh, unpleasant, unfriendly: I'm afraid there were some hard words between us. 10 spirituous, alcoholic, strong: She won't touch hard liquor. 11 addictive, habit-forming: He later changed from marijuana to hard drugs. 12 sharp, well-defined, clear, distinct, stark, definite: Note the hard edges of objects in Realist paintings.

--adv. 13 vigorously, forcefully, forcibly, energetically, mightily, arduously, laboriously, strenuously, earnestly, actively, dynamically, eagerly, intensely, ardently, heartily, zealously, intently, spiritedly, diligently, assiduously, sedulously, studiously, determinedly, steadfastly, conscientiously, industriously, devotedly, urgently, persistently, untiringly, indefatigably, perseveringly, unfalteringly, relentlessly, doggedly: They always had to work very hard just to scrape by. He's hard at work writing his new book. 14 violently, deeply, intensely, badly, distressingly, painfully, severely, agonizingly: Failing the examination hit him quite hard. 15 intently, carefully, earnestly: The judge thought long and hard before passing sentence. 16 harshly, severely, badly, ill: It's going to go hard with her if she doesn't change her ways. 17 hard up. poor, indigent, poverty-stricken, impoverished, penniless, impecunious, bankrupt, Colloq in the red, broke, bust(ed), on one's uppers, Slang Brit skint: He's so hard up he can't afford a decent meal.

harden v. 1 set, solidify, stiffen, freeze: The concrete will harden overnight. 2 intensify, strengthen, brace, fortify, toughen, reinforce, stiffen: The opposition have hardened their stand against privatization.

hardly adv. scarcely, barely, only, just, only just; not quite, by no means; seldom, rarely: I hardly knew her. There was hardly enough to eat. He hardly ever visits his old mum any more.

hardship n. want, privation, deprivation, suffering, misery, distress, affliction, adversity, austerity, misfortune, unhappiness, ill fortune, bad luck, difficulty, trouble: The hardship of frontier life has never been fully described.

hardware n. 1 tools, metal goods, Brit ironmongery: Go down to the hardware shop for some nails. 2 (computer) equipment, components, devices, machinery; arms, munitions, armament(s), mat‚riel: We need the personnel to operate the hardware.

hardy adj. 1 robust, sturdy, strong, rugged, tough, durable, sound, stalwart, stout, vigorous, able-bodied, red-blooded, fit, hale, healthy, Colloq husky: The pioneers were hardy souls. 2 bold, courageous, daring, valorous, valiant, brave, manly, intrepid, fearless, heroic, plucky: He was among the hardy sailors who went with Magellan.

hare-brained

adj. 1 rash, foolhardy, wild, madcap, reckless, heedless, improvident, visionary, fanciful, airy, Colloq crackpot: Don't put money into any of Zenobia's hare-brained schemes. 2 foolish, silly, inane, asinine, flighty, witless, brainless, mindless, giddy, frivolous, scatterbrained: Such hare-brained behaviour is not expected in two sober adults.

harm n. 1 injury, damage, mischief, hurt, abuse, misfortune: A bodyguard was hired to see that no harm would come to her. 2 evil, wrongdoing, wickedness, iniquity, wrong, badness: I meant no harm when I told Phoebe that her husband was having dinner with Kathy.

--v. 3 hurt, damage, injure, abuse, maltreat, wound: She insists that her pet viper would never harm her.

harmful adj. dangerous, pernicious, deleterious, destructive, damaging, bad, detrimental, injurious; unhealthy, noxious, baleful, toxic, poisonous, venomous, Archaic baneful: Do you really think that Barbara has had a harmful influence on him? That substance can be harmful if swallowed.

harmless adj. benign, innocuous, inoffensive, gentle, mild, innocent, safe; non-toxic, non-poisonous, non-venomous: Pay no attention to such harmless gossip. It is impossible to identify harmless snakes by sight.

harmonious
adj. agreeable, compatible, congruous, consonant, in accord, congenial, complementary, sympathetic, concordant, Colloq simpatico: Our careers have always been harmonious.

harmony n. 1 agreement, accord, concord, compatibility, rapport, unanimity, unity: The purpose is to promote harmony among the warring factions. 2 consonance, congruity, balance, orderliness, closeness, togetherness, consistency, fitness, parallelism: A sense of harmony can be felt among the European nations. 3 melodiousness, euphony, tunefulness: Their voices are in perfect harmony.

harrowing adj. distressing, vexing, alarming, unnerving, frightening, terrifying, horrifying, horrible, torturous, chilling, heart-rending, nerve-racking or nerve-wracking, traumatic, agonizing, painful; disturbing, upsetting, worrying, worrisome, disconcerting, daunting, dismaying, disquieting: Waiting for the rescue team to release me was a harrowing experience.

harsh adj. 1 rough, coarse, bristly, scratchy, hairy, crude; hoarse, grating, raucous, rasping, husky, guttural; clashing, inharmonious or unharmonious, discordant, atonal, dissonant, cacophonous, strident, shrill, grinding, sour; bitter, sour, acrid: He found harsh the sights, sounds, tastes, and smells of the Casbah. 2 stern, austere, bleak, dour, unkind, unfeeling, comfortless, uncompassionate, unfriendly, grim, hard, Spartan, stringent, over-exacting, Draconian, tyrannical, stark, severe, cruel, abusive, punishing, punitive, brutal, brutish, inhuman, merciless, ruthless, pitiless: Simon is a very harsh taskmaster. 3 unpleasant, disagreeable, impolite, discourteous, uncivil, rude, nasty, curt, abrupt, brusque, bluff, gruff, curmudgeonly, choleric, splenetic, surly, sullen, irascible, short-tempered, petulant, peevish, waspish, grouchy, bilious, cross, acrimonious, sarcastic, acerbic: Why is Maria so harsh to Alan?

harvest   n. 1 crop, yield, produce, output, fruit; vintage: If we get enough rain, the harvest should be good this year.

--v. 2 reap, gather, pick, glean, collect: The oranges are harvested while they are still greenish. 3 earn, make, take in, collect, garner, get, receive, obtain, procure, net: They harvest huge profits from slot machines.

hash   n. 1 mixture, confusion, hotchpotch or US and Canadian hodgepodge, pot-pourri, gallimaufry, farrago, mishmash, jumble, mess, shambles, olla podrida, m,lange, medley: The building is a hash of a dozen architectural styles. 2 fiasco, disaster, botch, mess, Slang Brit balls-up, US snafu: The council really made a hash of its housing policy.

--v. 3 Often, hash up. mangle, mess or mix up, make a hash or mess or jumble of, muddle, bungle, botch, mishandle, mismanage, ruin, spoil, butcher, Colloq foul or louse up, screw up, muff, Brit bugger up: Our plans for a holiday have been all hashed up.

haste   n. 1 swiftness, rapidity, quickness, speed, velocity, expedition, urgency, dispatch or despatch, alacrity, celerity, briskness: We must return to Baker Street with all haste, Watson. 2 hurry, rush, rashness, hastiness, hustle, bustle, impetuousness or impetuosity, recklessness, precipitancy: Haste makes waste.

hasten   v. 1 hurry, rush, make haste, fly, run, sprint, race, bolt, dash, scurry, scamper, scuttle, speed: He hastened forward to greet her. 2 hurry (up), speed (up), dispatch or despatch, send, move, quicken, accelerate, expedite, rush, impel, urge: Is there any way to hasten delivery of the mail?

hastily   adv. 1 quickly, speedily, swiftly, rapidly, at once, immediately, instantaneously, promptly, without delay, right away, straight away, post-haste, hurriedly, directly, suddenly, in haste, precipitately, on the spur of the moment, in a flash or wink, before you can say 'Jack Robinson', Colloq pronto, like a shot, like greased lightning, US lickety-split, Slang p.d.q. (= 'pretty damned quick'): She left hastily when I asked for the return of the loan. 2 impetuously, impulsively, rashly, recklessly, unthinkingly, thoughtlessly, heedlessly, incautiously: This is a trick question, so don't answer hastily.

hasty adj. 1 quick, speedy, swift, rapid, fast, brisk, prompt, immediate, instantaneous: He made a hasty departure so as not to be late. 2 careless, rash, precipitate, impetuous, impulsive, reckless, thoughtless, unthinking, incautious, heedless, ill-considered, inconsiderate: His was a hasty decision. 3 quick, speedy, cursory, superficial, fleeting, passing, slapdash, perfunctory, momentary, brief: I had a hasty look at the contract, which seemed all right. 4 irritable, quick-tempered, irascible, testy, passionate, impatient, hot-tempered, petulant, waspish, volatile, contentious, choleric, splenetic, bearish, short-tempered, US and Canadian and Irish cranky: Grandfather needn't have been so hasty with the poor child.

hatch v. 1 breed, brood, incubate, bring forth: The normal clutch of three eggs is hatched in a fortnight. 2 devise, contrive, concoct, design, formulate, originate, invent, dream up, Colloq cook up: Two of them hatched a scheme to discredit me.

hate v. 1 loathe, abhor, detest, have an aversion to, be averse to, abominate, dislike, execrate, despise, scorn: I hate the smell of petrol, it really turns my stomach. 2 be loath, be reluctant or unwilling or disinclined; resist, shrink or flinch from, dislike, shrink from: I hate to tell you what I really think. She hated revealing Bill's affair to his wife.

--n. 3 hatred, abhorrence, loathing, odium, animosity, animus, antipathy, aversion, hostility, antagonism, malice, enmity, detestation: He didn't believe he could feel so much hate for one person.

hateful adj. 1 loathsome, detestable, abhorrent, horrid, horrible, abominable, odious, execrable, despicable, scurvy, obnoxious, heinous, foul, contemptible, repugnant, repulsive, repellent, revolting, vile: No vice is universally so hateful as ingratitude. 2 malignant, malefic, malevolent, malicious, evil, mean, spiteful, contemptuous: She gave me a hateful glance.

haughty adj. arrogant, proud, superior, self-important, smug, self-satisfied, complacent, pretentious, conceited, egotistical, snobbish, overbearing, lofty, presumptuous, overweening, patronizing, supercilious, vain, condescending, contemptuous, belittling, derisive, disdainful, scornful, Colloq highfalutin or hifalutin, hoity-toity, stuck-up, swell-headed or swelled-headed or swollen-headed, high and mighty, on (his or her) high horse, snooty, la-di-da or lah-di-dah or la-de-da, Slang snotty, uppish, uppity: She's too haughty to have made any friends here.

haul v. 1 drag, pull, tug, tow, trail, lug, heave, draw: Are you sure that one horse can haul that load? 2 cart, transport, carry, convey, truck, move: The new vehicles are equipped to haul bulk dry goods.

--n. 3 pull, tug, drag, draw; heave; attraction: The tides are greater under the haul of both sun and moon. 4 catch, take, yield, harvest, bag: We returned with quite a good haul of cod.

haunt v. 1 visit, frequent, hang about or around, spend time at, US habituate: She haunts the yacht club, waiting for her ship to come in. 2 beset, obsess, plague, torment, trouble, possess, prey on: He is haunted by the fear that she told the police everything.

--n. 3 gathering-place, meeting-place, stamping-ground, Colloq hang-out: She returned to Abergavenny to visit the haunts of her youth.

have v. 1 possess, own, keep; maintain: Imelda had more shoes than you could count. 2 receive, take, accept, get, obtain, acquire, procure, secure, take: How many gifts did you say she had from him? 3 entertain, be struck by: I have an idea! 4 possess, bear, contain, include, comprise: The night has a thousand eyes. 5 suffer with or from, be suffering with or from, be experiencing, be undergoing, be enduring, be subjected to: My daughter was really ill when she had measles. 6 arrange, organize, set up, prepare; hold: If I have a party, will you come? We shall have our next meeting on Saturday. 7 partake of, participate in, experience, enjoy; eat; drink: I hope you have a good time. 8 give birth to, bear, deliver, bring into the world; beget, sire, father: She had three children in as many years. How many children has he had? 9 make, demand; force, oblige, cause, induce, press, require, compel: We'll have the caterers come at noon. 10 had better or best. ought to, must, should: I had better not drink as I'm driving. 11 had rather or sooner. prefer to, would rather or sooner: I'd rather be with you. 12 have on. a be wearing, be dressed or clothed or attired in: I'll have on the silk nightgown you like so much. b be committed to, have planned, have in the offing, have on the agenda: I have something on next Tuesday evening. c trick, tease, deceive, pull (someone's) leg, play a joke on, fool: Do you really love me or are you having me on?

havoc n. 1 ruin, devastation, destruction, desolation, rack or wrack and ruin, despoliation, spoliation, damage: Gales of more than 80 m.p.h. wreaked havoc right across the British Isles. 2 confusion, chaos, upset, disorder, mayhem, shambles, disruption: The railway slow-down created havoc with commuter schedules.

hazard n. 1 peril, danger, risk, endangerment, threat, jeopardy: The greatest hazard in sailing single-handed round the world is the loneliness. 2 chance, gamble, uncertainty, luck, fortune: They banned all games that depended on hazard.

--v. 3 venture, dare; gamble, risk, jeopardize, endanger, threaten, imperil, stake: May I hazard a guess as to the origin of the word? He hazarded his entire fortune on the turn of a card.

hazardous adj. unsafe, risky, fraught with danger, questionable, shaky, dangerous, precarious, uncertain, unpredictable, parlous, ticklish, tricky, Colloq chiefly Brit dicey, dicky or dickey, Slang hairy: It took three months to make the hazardous overland journey in those days.

hazy adj. 1 misty, foggy, smoggy, cloudy, overcast: It was so hazy that we couldn't see the town a mile away. 2 indistinct, blurred, blurry, dull, dim, faint, nebulous, vague, unclear, fuzzy, indefinite, muddled: He has only a hazy idea of the plot.

8.2 head...

=-

head n. 1 skull, pate, cranium, Colloq dome, Slang coco(nut), belfry, noggin, bean, nut, rocker, noodle, gourd, Brit conk, crumpet, noddle, loaf: She laid her head on the pillow and fell sound asleep. 2 chief, leader, administrator, chief executive officer, CEO, (managing) director, MD, president, chairman, chairwoman, chairlady, chairperson, chair, employer, principal, superintendent, supervisor, governor, prime minister, headmaster, headmistress, Colloq boss, headman, the man, Brit guv'nor, guv, US (chief) honcho; Slang big cheese, US Mr Big: The new head has called a meeting of the board of directors. 3 front, vanguard, forefront, van, fore-part: At the head of the column marched the general himself. 4 aptitude, intellect, intelligence, talent, perception, perceptiveness, mentality, faculty, flair, genius, brain, mind, wit, Colloq brains, grey matter: I have no head for figures. 5 crisis, apex, (critical or turning) point, peak, crest, (fever) pitch, climax, culmination, conclusion, crescendo: Matters have been brought to a head because of the coming elections. 6 source, origin, fount, font, fountain-head, well-spring: We were trying to reach the head of the stream before nightfall. 7 top, first place, leading position, leadership, forefront: Albert is at the head of his class in mathematics. 8 head over heels. completely, entirely, deeply, utterly, wholly, fully, Colloq madly, wildly: The two of them are head over heels in love.

--adj. 9 first, chief, main, principal, leading, premier, foremost, prime, pre-eminent, cardinal, paramount, supreme, superior, senior: Alphonse is our new head chef.

--v. 10 go, move, proceed, turn, steer, aim, point, head for, make a beeline for: I shall head home when I leave here. 11 head up, be in or take charge (of), direct, supervise, oversee, control, govern, run, (take the) lead, guide, manage, command, rule, administer, conduct: Who will head the organization if you resign? 12 lead, precede, top: Charlotte heads the list of candidates. 13 head off. a intercept, divert; cut off, stop, block: The cavalry will head them off at the pass. b stop, forestall, prevent, inhibit, avert, ward or fend off: What can we do to head off inflation?

headache n. 1 migraine, Technical cephalalgia: Hazel says she has a headache and cannot come to work today. 2 worry, bother, vexation, inconvenience, nuisance, annoyance, problem, difficulty, trouble, bane, Colloq pain (in the neck), Slang pain in the Brit arse or US ass: The balance of payments deficit is a perpetual headache.

headway   n. 1 progress, forward motion, improvement: Headway against that current was almost impossible. Any headway to report? 2 make headway. advance, progress, move forward, go, gain (ground), get or go ahead, proceed, get going: I tried to persuade her but haven't made much headway.

heal   v. 1 cure, repair, renew, revitalize, rejuvenate, restore; mend, recuperate, recover, improve: The wounds have healed. The ointment healed his wounds. I heal quickly. 2 reconcile, settle, patch up, put or set straight or right, remedy, repair, mend: His only wish was to heal the rift with his brother.

health   n. 1 condition, fitness, trim, fettle, form, constitution: My health has improved enough for me to return to work. 2 healthiness, haleness, healthfulness, robustness, vigour, vigorousness, salubrity, salubriousness, well-being, strength: The health of the economy is good.

healthy   adj. 1 well, fit, trim, in good or fine fettle or shape, in good health, robust, hale (and hearty), sturdy, strong, vigorous, thriving, flourishing, Colloq in the pink: How come he is so healthy if he smokes? 2 wholesome, healthful, salubrious, salutary, beneficial, nourishing, nutritious, tonic, bracing: The answer lies in eating healthy food and living in a healthy climate.

heap   n. 1 collection, pile, mound, stack, accumulation, aggregation, agglomeration, congeries, conglomeration, hoard, mass, store, mountain, stockpile, supply, Colloq US and Canadian stash: Donors contributed a huge heap of clothing for the sale. 2 Often, heaps. abundance, plethora, superabundance, lot(s), plenty, great deal, scores, peck, sea, Colloq lashings, load(s), piles, ton(s), raft(s), pots, oodles, scad(s), US and Canadian slew: It was served with heaps of chocolate sauce. Heaps of people bought your record. You're in for a heap of trouble.

--v. 3 collect, gather, harvest, reap, glean, garner, pile (up), accumulate, cumulate, aggregate, amass, stockpile, save (up), bank, lay by or up or in, set aside, Colloq stash (away): In autumn, squirrels heap up their supplies of nuts for the winter. 4 shower, load, bestow, give, provide, burden: The grateful prince heaped us with treasure beyond imagination.

hear v. 1 perceive, understand, listen (to), attend (to), pay attention (to), catch, heed, hark (to): Please hear what I have to say first. 2 understand, learn, discover, find out, gather, get wind of, pick up, ascertain, be told or advised or informed: I hear you're thinking of resigning. 3 hear of. entertain, consider; approve (of), sanction, condone, agree or consent or assent to: I won't hear of your leaving.

heart n. 1 Colloq ticker, pump: The doctor says I have a dicky heart. 2 stomach, nerve, courage, bravery, mettle, will, boldness, pluck, resolution, determination; callousness, insensitivity, heartlessness; Colloq guts, spunk: I haven't the heart to tell him that his hamster died. 3 (basic) nature, core, centre, focus, hub, middle, marrow, pith, essence, quintessence, nucleus, nub, crux, basics, fundamentals, Colloq nitty-gritty: Let's get down to the heart of the matter. 4 sincerity, sentiment(s), feeling(s), spirit, verve, enthusiasm: She's going through the motions, but her heart isn't in her work. 5 humanity, humanitarianism, sympathy, understanding, kindness, kindliness, compassion, empathy, goodness, consideration, concern, soul, tenderness, magnanimity, generosity, sensitivity, sensibility, sentiment, pity, (brotherly) love, affection: Mother Theresa is known for having a lot of heart. Have you no heart, Genghis?

heartbroken
adj. broken-hearted, downhearted, dispirited, unhappy, miserable, grief-stricken, upset, dejected, heartsick, crestfallen, despondent, depressed, disconsolate, distressed, woebegone, doleful, sorrowful, mournful, morose, disheartened, disappointed, crushed: Lucy was heartbroken over the loss of her locket.

heartfelt adj. sincere, honest, genuine, unfeigned, earnest, serious, wholehearted, deep, profound, dedicated, devoted, ardent, committed, fervent, fervid, hearty, passionate: It is my heartfelt wish that you should succeed.

heartless adj. cruel, hard-hearted, callous, unconcerned, inhuman, inhumane, unkind, unfeeling, unsympathetic, brutal, cold, merciless, pitiless, ruthless, cold-blooded: Taking away the child's toys was a heartless thing to do.

heart-rending
adj. agonizing, distressing, excruciating, bitter, painful, heartbreaking, harrowing, piteous, tragic, depressing, poignant: Her distress was heart-rending to behold.

heart-warming
adj. 1 moving, touching, warming, affecting, uplifting, inspiriting, cheering, encouraging: I heard the heart-warming news about Alan's recovery. 2 satisfying, gratifying, pleasing, comforting, pleasurable, rewarding: It was heart-warming to see the family together at Christmas.

hearty adj. 1 genial, warm, kind-hearted, affectionate, amiable, amicable, friendly, affable, cordial, open, convivial: I was greeted by a hearty welcome when I returned. 2 genuine, unfeigned, authentic, sincere, heartfelt, warm, wholehearted, honest, earnest, devout, stalwart, stout: Please give Desmond my hearty congratulations. 3 enthusiastic, vigorous, energetic, eager, zealous, exuberant, robust, active, animated, strong: They are hearty supporters of our cause. 4 abundant, ample, substantial, solid, sizeable, satisfying, square; nourishing, invigorating, strengthening: On Sundays, we had a hearty meal at midday when we could afford it. 5 healthy, hale, vigorous, robust, strong, sound: Well, Eric, now that you're over your malaria you appear to be quite hearty.

heat n. 1 warmth, warmness, hotness, fever, fieriness, torridity or torridness: The heat of the sun feels good after that cold swim. 2 passion, ardour, fervour, fervidness, intensity, fury, zeal, zealousness, earnestness, vehemence, eagerness, enthusiasm, excitement, tenseness, tension, stress, agitation, arousal, impetuosity, stimulation, exhilaration: If I shouted at you in the heat of the moment, I apologize.

--v. 3 warm (up): It costs a lot to heat this house. 4 Often, heat up. excite, intensify, impassion, inflame, kindle, ignite, quicken, inspirit, rouse, awaken or waken, stir, animate, stimulate, warm (up), activate, Colloq Brit hot up: It took a while for the debate to heat up.

heated adj. impassioned, excited, intensified, aroused, quickened, stimulated, inflamed, vehement, fiery, frenzied, frantic, frenetic, passionate, fervent, fervid, ardent, intense, furious, stormy, tempestuous, violent; angry, bitter: There was a heated dispute over animal rights, which finally led to blows.

heathen n. 1 unbeliever, infidel, pagan, idolater or idolatress, polytheist, atheist, nullifidian, sceptic, agnostic, heretic: One often finds more mercy in a heathen than in a brother Christian.

--adj. 2 infidel, pagan, atheist(ic), godless, nullifidian, sceptic(al), doubting, agnostic, heretical, irreligious: After the missionaries left, the tribe returned to their heathen practices. 3 savage, barbarian, barbaric, uncivilized, primitive, unenlightened, uncultured, Philistine; polytheistic, pantheistic: Each of these tribesmen carries with him a tiny sculptured image of the heathen god.

heave v. 1 raise, lift, hoist, haul, pull, draw, tug; move: We heaved in the anchor and made sail. 2 throw, toss, hurl, fling, cast, sling, pitch, let fly, send, launch, Colloq peg, chuck: When he heaved the sword into the lake a hand rose from the waters and caught it. 3 breathe, utter, sigh, groan, moan, gasp: We heaved a sigh of relief when we heard that they had been found. 4 gag, retch, vomit, be sick, regurgitate, disgorge, Colloq throw up, Slang puke, lose one's lunch, return one's dinner, US upchuck, spiff one's biscuits: The smell of petrol always makes me heave.

heaven n. 1 paradise, bliss, hereafter, nirvana, Abraham's bosom, Elysian Fields or Elysium, Valhalla, Zion, happy hunting-grounds, Avalon, Isles of the Blessed, the Blessed or Fortunate or Happy Isles or Islands: Will I go to heaven when I die? 2 heavens. sky, skies, firmament, Literary welkin, empyrean: The heavens opened and the rain started to pour down. 3 happiness, bliss, joy, rapture, ecstasy, paradise, contentment, seventh heaven, Eden, Garden of Eden, Utopia, heaven on earth, paradise on earth: Darby said that his years with Joan had been sheer heaven.

heavenly adj. 1 divine, angelic, seraphic, celestial, holy, immortal, blessed, beatific, beatified, spiritual, saintly; supernal, unearthly, other-worldly, ultramundane, extramundane, extraterrestrial: Alone on the mountain, she heard a heavenly voice calling her name. 2 delightful, wonderful, marvellous, sublime, paradisiac(al) or paradisaic(al), glorious, splendid, superb, exquisite, perfect, ideal, excellent, fantastic, rapturous, entrancing, blissful, Colloq gorgeous, divine, smashing, great: Andr,'s serves a perfectly heavenly lobster thermidor.

heavy   adj. 1 weighty, ponderous, massive, Literary massy; compact, dense: This box is much too heavy for me to lift. 2 abundant, overflowing, excessive, copious, profuse, prodigious, ample, unmanageable: We just crawled along in the heavy traffic. 3 serious, grave, important, crucial, critical, acute: You always bring up heavy topics at the end of the meeting. 4 burdensome, onerous, oppressive, weighty, unbearable, severe, grievous, distressful, sore, intolerable, insupportable or unsupportable, awful: Teenagers often feel that they are weighed down with heavy responsibilities. 5 sad, sorrowful, distressing, grievous, upsetting, depressing, gloomy, sombre, melancholy: Some heavy news has been received from the front. 6 unhappy, miserable, depressed, melancholy, grieving, sad, dejected, downhearted, disconsolate, downcast, despondent, gloomy, heavy-hearted, morose, crestfallen, cheerless: Heavy at heart, he returned to his cheerless home. 7 ponderous, tedious, monotonous, boring, uninteresting, leaden, dull, prosaic, dry, dry-as-dust, stodgy, staid, stuffy, stifling, stultifying: The critics found the style much too heavy for the subject being treated. 8 thick, coarse, broad, blunt, clumsy, ungraceful: These heavy brush-strokes prove that the painting is not a Turner. 9 gloomy, cloudy, overcast, bleak, dismal, dreary, leaden, grey, dark, louring or lowering, threatening: it was another of Scotland's heavy February days. 10 intense, concentrated, severe, forceful, violent, torrential: The snowfall was the heaviest of the year. 11 overweight, fat, obese, stout, chubby, plump, corpulent, portly, paunchy, tubby, Brit podgy or US pudgy, Colloq beer-bellied: The doctor did not say I was too heavy, only that I ought to be six inches taller. 12 weighty, difficult, complex, recondite, arcane, deep, profound, esoteric, incomprehensible, impenetrable, unfathomable: He specializes in some heavy subject like micro-palaeontology. 13 burdened, laden, encumbered, loaded, overloaded, weighed down: We spied two Indiamen, heavy with cargoes of spices, sailing towards us.

heavy-handed
adj. 1 awkward, clumsy, inept, maladroit, unskilful, ungraceful, graceless, bungling: She made a heavy-handed attempt to apologize. 2 autocratic, imperious, magisterial, overbearing, despotic, dictatorial, tyrannical, oppressive, domineering, iron-handed, harsh, severe: For more than 30 years he exercised heavy-handed control over the country.

heckle v. badger, pester, annoy, irritate, bother, nettle, bait, harass, harry, plague, hector, taunt, jeer, Colloq hassle, bug, Brit and Australian and New Zealand barrack: One man kept heckling the speaker with persistent interruptions.

hectic adj. feverish, excited, agitated, busy, bustling, rushed, hyperactive, over-active, frenzied, frantic, chaotic, wild, mad, frenetic, riotous: What with the new baby and everyone else having the flu, I've had a pretty hectic week.

heed v. 1 pay attention to, attend, (take or make) note (of), listen to, mark, consider, bear in mind; take, follow, obey, mind, respect, accept, abide by: I wish I had heeded her suggestions for redecorating the house. Heeding his advice, I joined the army.

--n. 2 attention, notice, ear, mind, notice, respect, consideration, thought: Let us give heed to the speaker's admonitions.

heedless adj. inattentive, uncaring, unmindful, neglectful, unobservant, regardless; oblivious, deaf, blind: Heedless of tradition, they replaced the older buildings with council housing.

heel° n. 1 end, butt or tail or fag (end), stump, remainder, remnant, rind, crust: You can always freeze the heel of a loaf to use at some later date for breadcrumbs. 2 cad, scoundrel, swine, rogue, scamp, philanderer, Old-fashioned worm, knave, Chiefly Brit blackguard, Colloq Brit rotter, Old-fashioned bounder, Slang bastard, Brit sod: He's an absolute heel - he got her pregnant and then left her. 3 down at heel. US also down at the heels; poor, destitute, impoverished, down and out, on (one's) uppers, in straitened circumstances; shabby, seedy, dowdy, run-down, slovenly, Brit out at elbows, US out at the elbows, Colloq broke, strapped: Farrington looked down at heel, so I slipped him a fiver. 4 take to (one's) heels. take flight, flee, escape, run off or away, show a clean pair of heels, Colloq split, Brit do a moonlight flit, US take a (run-out) powder, fly the coop, Australian and New Zealand shoot through: When I mentioned payment, she took to her heels.

--v. 5 dog, follow (closely), shadow, chase, pursue: We have taught our puppy to heel.

heelý v. list, lean (over), tilt, tip, incline: The boat heeled as we turned to beat into the wind.

hefty adj. 1 big, large, bulky, cumbersome, awkward, unwieldy, clumsy, substantial, massive: That's a pretty hefty box for one person to carry. 2 brawny, strong, powerful, burly, muscular, strapping, rugged, robust, Colloq husky, beefy: That hefty man over there is the Olympic weight-lifting champion. 3 substantial, considerable, sizeable, impressive, enormous, huge, Colloq thumping or Brit socking great: I've just received a hefty increase in salary.

height n. 1 altitude, elevation, level; tallness: At what height is the second camp on Mount Everest? The height of the skyscrapers impressed me. 2 acme, crest, pinnacle, top, zenith, apogee, peak, apex, maximum, high point, summit, climax, culmination, extreme: Popularity of that style reached its height in the 1930s. His remark reflected the height of arrogance. 3 Often, heights. elevation, mound, hill, eminence, prominence, mountain, peak, crag, summit; tor, cliff, bluff, promontory, escarpment, scarp, headland, No. Brit fell: As we gazed down from the heights, the villages seemed tiny.

heighten v. 1 raise, elevate, build up, increase, lift (up), upraise: A white ceiling gives the effect of heightening a room. 2 intensify, deepen, strengthen, reinforce, amplify, magnify, increase, enhance, augment, add to, supplement: Adding some blue heightens the effect. The bribery scandal has only heightened distrust of the ruling party.

heir n. heiress, beneficiary, inheritor, legatee, successor: What if you are not the rightful heir to the estate?

hell n. 1 Erebus, Hades, Acheron, Tartarus, Gehenna, Tophet, Abaddon, Pandemonium, Dis, Sheol, Avernus, underworld, infernal regions, abyss, abode of the damned, inferno, hell-fire, lower world, nether regions, bottomless pit, other place: For his sins he was condemned to everlasting hell. 2 chaos, misery, torment, agony, torture, ordeal, nightmare, trial: The office has been an absolute hell since you left. 3 anguish, pain, agony, torment, torture, misery, suffering, affliction: We have been through hell since Grenville's heart attack. 4 criticism, censure; scolding, castigation, reprimand, upbraiding: My mother gave me hell for getting home late.

helm n. 1 tiller, wheel, rudder, steering gear or apparatus: I had to put the helm over hard to avoid hitting the pier. 2 directorship, presidency, chairmanship, leadership, control, rule, command, Colloq driver's seat, saddle: Arthur remained at the helm of the company for 40 years.

help v. 1 aid, assist, lend a hand, support, serve; succour: Let me help you carry that package, Mrs Smith. His charitable efforts have long helped the poor. 2 relieve, alleviate, mitigate, improve, facilitate, ease, better, remedy, cure: Complaining about it won't help the situation. 3 stop, refrain from, avoid, eschew, resist, keep from, forbear, escape: I know it was a secret but I couldn't help telling Sam. 4 assist, serve, advise, inform: May I help you, sir? 5 help oneself. appropriate, take, arrogate, commandeer, expropriate; steal, purloin, usurp, plagiarize, pirate, Colloq pinch, lift, Brit nick, US boost: She helped herself to some money from the till.

--n. 6 aid, support, succour, assistance: I need help in solving this problem. 7 employee(s), worker(s), staff, helper(s), hand(s), assistant(s), labourer(s), domestic(s), servant(s), Brit daily (help): We have to hire more help to finish on time. 8 supporter, aide, assistant, helper: You have been a great help to me. 9 relief, remedy, cure, balm: This ointment has been a great help in stopping the itching.

helpful adj. useful, serviceable, practical, pragmatic, utilitarian, beneficial, valuable, profitable, advantageous, constructive, productive; supportive, reassuring, sympathetic, considerate, caring, accommodating, kind, considerate, cooperative, neighbourly, friendly, benevolent: A reference book might be helpful in answering that question. Mrs Carlyle gave me such helpful advice.

helping n. serving, portion, ration, plateful, Brit help, Colloq dollop: He has already asked for a third helping of potatoes.

helpless adj. 1 dependent, vulnerable, weak, helpless, feeble, infirm, lame, crippled, disabled: The disease has left him completely helpless. 2 confused, baffled, mystified, bewildered, perplexed, at sea, confounded, muddled, nonplussed: I am completely helpless when it comes to balancing my accounts. 3 weakened, weak, debilitated, faint, enfeebled, feeble, worn out, spent, exhausted, prostrate, enervated: All of us were simply helpless from laughing so much. 4 worthless, incapable, incompetent, useless, unavailing, inefficient, inept, unfit, unqualified: Dali was said to be helpless without Gala to manage his affairs.

helter-skelter

adj. 1 disorderly, disorganized, confused, muddled, haphazard, careless, jumbled, random, topsy-turvy, Colloq higgledy-piggledy: How can one find anything in this helter-skelter mess?

--adv. 2 confusedly, pell-mell, in all directions, recklessly, unsystematically, chaotically, erratically, aimlessly, US every which way, Colloq higgledy-piggledy: When the giant appeared, the children ran away, helter-skelter.

hence adv. 1 therefore, consequently, thus, accordingly, ergo, as a result, for that or this reason: She has homework to do, hence cannot go to the cinema. 2 away, from here or this place: Get thee hence, you wicked witch! 3 from now, in the future: Where will I be two years hence?

henceforth

adv. hereafter, henceforward, from now on, Colloq US from here on out: Henceforth, make no more personal remarks.

henchman n. (fellow-) mobster or gangster or hoodlum, gangster, bodyguard, myrmidon, right-hand man, associate, attendant, follower, supporter, confidant, crony, Colloq sidekick, hooligan, Brit minder, US buddy, cohort; Slang heavy, US torpedo, gunsel, goon: Mr Big strutted in with his henchmen and wrecked the place.

henpeck v. nag, harass, hector, pester, torment, bully, carp, cavil: She henpecked him so much that he finally left her.

herd n. 1 group, pack, bunch, cluster, flock, crowd, multitude, host, horde, throng, mass, swarm, press, crush; assemblage, collection: A herd of protesters gathered before the embassy. 2 common herd, rabble, hoi polloi, great unwashed, riff-raff, masses: How can you expect the herd to understand these principles?

--v. 3 gather, congregate, flock, assemble, collect: The reporters herded round to interview the minister. 4 round up, gather (together), shepherd, drive, W US and Canadian wrangle, corral: Herd those cattle into the pen.

hereditary

adj. 1 heritable, inheritable, transmissible, transferable or transferrable, inherited, genetic, congenital, inborn, innate; atavistic: Green eyes and red hair are hereditary in our family. 2 traditional, handed down, inherited, bequeathed, willed; ancestral: Priesthood was hereditary among Aaron's descendants. These are the hereditary lands that go with the castle.

heretical adj. unorthodox, heterodox, impious, freethinking, heretic, apostate or apostatical, iconoclastic, schismatic, sceptic, agnostic, atheist(ic), idolatrous, heathen, pagan, infidel, godless: The purpose of the Inquisition was to discover and suppress heretical views.

heritage n. 1 estate, inheritance, legacy, patrimony, birthright: The manor-house was included in the heritage that was passed on to me. 2 tradition: The documentary examines our cultural heritage.

hermetic adj. hermetical, airtight, sealed; impervious: If the hermetic seal is broken, sterility is not guaranteed.

hermit n. recluse, eremite, anchorite or anchoret or anchoress, solitary, stylite: He has retired from the world to become a hermit.

hero n. 1 heroine, champion, exemplar, star, superstar, idol, ideal, man of the hour, luminary, notable, celebrity; knight, paladin, warrior: She was a hero to every aspiring woman lawyer. She expects a hero in shining armour on a white horse to sweep her off her feet. 2 protagonist, (male) lead or star, leading man or actor, principal: G,rard Depardieu plays the hero in this lavishly produced film.

heroic adj. 1 brave, courageous, bold, valiant, valorous, undaunted, dauntless, stout-hearted, noble, intrepid, gallant, chivalrous, daring, plucky, audacious, fearless, manly, virile, manful: We published a book about Aylesworthy's heroic exploits. 2 noble, altruistic, magnanimous, generous, upstanding, honourable, virtuous, staunch, steadfast, stalwart, determined: This plaque commemorates Manzanilla's heroic work in curbing religious persecution. 3 desperate, drastic, extreme: Despite heroic efforts, it was impossible to rescue the entire crew. 4 grand, larger than life, exaggerated, magniloquent, grandiose, extravagant; giant, gigantic, enormous, huge, titanic, colossal, stupendous: The heroic phrases of the demagogue still ring in my ears. Statues of heroic proportions have been moved from Abu Simbel. 5 mythological, epic, Homeric, legendary, classical, fabulous, wonderful, miraculous: He enjoyed tales of heroic demigods like Hercules. 6 majestic, lofty, elevated, grand, august, towering, eminent, distinguished, prominent: The entire court was silent as the heroic figure of the emperor entered.

heroine n. (female) lead, leading actress or lady, prima donna or ballerina, premiŠre danseuse, diva: The heroine was played by Mme Kropeczka.

hesitant adj. 1 hesitating, undecided, uncertain, unsettled, irresolute, vacillating, shilly-shallying, dithering, fluctuating, wavering, unresolved, ambivalent, in or of two minds, indefinite, Brit havering: He was hesitant about whether to buy the blue or the green model. 2 halting, stammering, stuttering, faltering: From her hesitant speech I'd say she was nervous.

hesitate v. 1 delay, hold or hang back, pause, dilly-dally, wait, temporize, think twice, balk, boggle at, shrink from, demur, scruple, Brit haver, jib, Colloq stall: He who hesitates is lost. 2 fumble, equivocate, tergiversate, fluctuate, alternate, waver, dither, vacillate, shilly-shally: He hesitated between the doors - did this one conceal the lady or the tiger? 3 stammer, stutter, falter, sputter, splutter, stumble, hem and haw: She hesitated throughout the speech purely from stage fright.

8.3 hidden

=-

hidden adj. concealed, secret, obscure(d), occult, veiled, cryptic, recondite, arcane, covert, esoteric, unseen, private: Was this an ordinary shopping list or did it have some hidden meaning?

hide° v. 1 conceal, secrete, cache, squirrel away; go underground, take cover, lie low, go into hiding, lurk, go to ground, drop out of sight, go into hiding, hibernate, latibulize, Colloq hide out, hole up, lie low, Brit lie doggo: Hide the sweets where the children won't find them. I found a place to hide under the stair. 2 conceal, cover, mask, camouflage, disguise, veil, shroud, screen, cover up, keep secret: He managed to hide his embarrassment. 3 eclipse, blot out, obscure, block: The clouds hid the moon as we made good our escape. 4 suppress, hush (up), repress, silence, keep quiet or secret: She hid all knowledge of the crime.

hideý n. 1 pelt, skin, fell, leather, fur, fleece: Once tanned and dyed, the hide was made into clothing.

--v. 2 flog, whip, lash, flail, beat, thrash: The masters took great satisfaction in hiding the boys.

hideaway n. refuge, retreat, sanctuary, hide-out, hiding-place, lair, (safe) haven, Colloq hole, Brit hidey-hole or hidy-hole: My brother and I would crawl into our hideaway and pretend we were being held prisoner by pirates.

hidebound adj. strait-laced, conventional, ultra-conventional, conservative, reactionary, rigid, set (in one's ways), narrow-minded, close-minded, inflexible, intractable, uncompromising, restricted, cramped, bigoted, intolerant: She's too much of a hidebound disciplinarian to rescind the punishment.

hideous adj. 1 grotesque, ugly, repulsive, revolting, repellent, monstrous, beastly, gorgonian, unsightly, ghastly, disgusting, grisly, nauseating, nauseous, sickening, gruesome: Suddenly, a hideous face appeared at the kitchen window. 2 foul, abhorrent, heinous, horrifying, appalling, outrageous, abominable, vile, shocking, loathsome, contemptible, hateful, odious, atrocious, horrific, beastly, damnable, execrable: Two hideous crimes were committed here last night.

high adj. 1 tall, lofty, elevated, towering: High mountains surround the valley. 2 extreme, excessive, extraordinary, exorbitant, outrageous, Colloq steep, stiff: Houses in that district are fetching high prices. 3 costly, dear, expensive, high-priced: Shares are not as high as they were before the crash. 4 great, huge, enormous, considerable, strong; violent, turbulent: These wires carry high voltages. The high winds blew down trees. 5 exalted, elevated, lofty, superior, high-class: With insider trading, theft became a high art in the financial world. 6 consequential, important, grave, serious, weighty, momentous, heinous; capital: His activities constitute high treason. 7 high-pitched, high-frequency, squeaky, acute, treble, soprano; shrill, strident, sharp, penetrating, piercing, ear-splitting: The higher notes make my radio speaker vibrate. She has an irritatingly high voice. 8 cheerful, exuberant, elated, boisterous, exhilarated, hilarious, merry, excited: I find his persistent high spirits rather depressing. 9 euphoric, intoxicated, inebriated, drunk, drugged, Colloq loaded, tipsy, turned on, on a trip, Slang stoned, spaced out, Brit squiffy, US spacy, squiffed: They got high sniffing glue. 10 gamy, tainted, aged, ripe, Slang Brit pongy: He likes to hang venison till it is quite high. 11 chief, leading, important, principal, foremost: He regards himself as the high priest of women's fashion. 12 elaborate, luxurious, grand, extravagant, lavish, rich, prodigal, sybaritic: With her millions she can now enjoy the high life. 13 considerable, favourable, great: She is held in high esteem by her colleagues.

--adv. 14 far up; great in extent: Daedalus warned Icarus not to fly so high. I was willing to go as high as 20,000 for the painting.

--n. 15 peak, record, height, maximum, acme, apex: Employment is expected to reach a high next summer. 16 intoxication, altered consciousness: The high lasts till the drug wears off. 17 anticyclone: The high passing over the country will bring fair weather.

highbrow n. 1 scholar, intellectual, savant, sage, mastermind, genius; aesthete, connoisseur, Colloq egghead, brain: Many who pretend to deride highbrows secretly envy them.

--adj. 2 scholarly, intellectual, learned, erudite, deep, bookish, cultured, sophisticated, cultivated, aesthetic, Colloq brainy: Books on philosophy are too highbrow for the market we cater to.

high-class
adj. 1 first-rate, superior, better, top-drawer, Colloq tops, tiptop, A-one or A-1, super, great: He has had the benefit of a high-class education. 2 aristocratic, upper-class, ,lite, select, exclusive; upper crust, fancy, Brit county, US and Canadian tony, Slang classy: She says she comes from a high-class family.

highly adv. 1 greatly, much, tremendously, well, enthusiastically, warmly, immensely, hugely: Her play was highly praised by all the critics. 2 very, extremely, quite, exceptionally, extraordinarily, incomparably, decidedly: It is highly unlikely that I shall come to your party. 3 favourably, well, enthusiastically, approvingly, warmly, praisefully: They seem to think highly of him at the office. 4 well, influentially, powerfully, strongly, authoritatively, effectively, importantly: I have the information from a highly placed government official.

hilarious adj. funny, side-splitting, humorous, comical, amusing, entertaining, mirthful; merry, gay, jolly, jovial, cheerful, cheery, joyous, joyful, rollicking, uproarious; Colloq hysterical: Binky told me a hilarious story about his aunt's pet boa constrictor. We had a hilarious time at your party.

hilarity n. laughter, gaiety, joviality, jollity, merriment, mirth, exuberance, glee, boisterousness, cheerfulness, joyfulness, jubilation, elation, revelry, conviviality, high spirits, vivacity, exhilaration: Thurgood did not join in the hilarity of his retirement party.

hill   n. 1 elevation, rise, highland, mound, prominence, promontory, eminence, knoll, hillock, hummock, height, foothill, tor, mount, upland, downs or downland, Scots brae, No. Brit fell, W Brit tump, US and Canadian butte: The house is on a hill overlooking the valley. 2 heap, pile, mound, stack; mountain: By the autumn, the hill of compost had reached six feet in height. 3 slope, incline or decline, acclivity or declivity, gradient or esp. US grade, US upgrade or downgrade: Are you sure this car can make it up the next hill?

hinder   v. 1 hamper, delay, interrupt, impede, interfere with, foil, thwart, frustrate, forestall, bar, stymie, check, balk or baulk, encumber, obstruct, handicap, set or keep or put or hold back, defer, retard, restrain, slow, postpone: The difficulty of the task should not hinder the attempt. 2 stop, prevent, check, preclude, arrest; discourage, deter, inhibit, obviate: Does the threat of capital punishment hinder people from committing murder?

hindrance n. 1 obstruction, impediment, snag, check, obstruction, barrier, obstacle, restraint, drawback, hitch, stumbling-block, deterrent, encumbrance: The only hindrance to the plan is Phyllis's disapproval of it. 2 prevention, curb, limitation: The presence of police cars serves as a hindrance to speeding motorists.

hint   n. 1 suggestion, clue, implication, inkling, indication, tip, tip-off, intimation, allusion, innuendo, insinuation; pointer, help, advice: The quiz-master gave me a hint and I got the answer at once. 2 trace, suggestion, touch, taste, breath, dash, soup‡on, whiff, undertone, tinge, whisper: Which government has ever served without any hint of scandal?

--v. 3 suggest, imply, indicate, tip (off), intimate, allude, insinuate, mention, clue, cue, signal, refer, advert: She hinted that I might appeal to her sister.

hip   adj. informed, aware, knowledgeable, knowing, perceptive, alert, in or up on, onto, Colloq wise (to), with it, cool, Old-fashioned hep: He's not hip to what they're saying about him and Carrie.

hippie n. bohemian, Old-fashioned drop-out, beatnik, beat, longhair, flower child or person, hipster: A few hippies were playing their guitars at the street corner.

hire v. 1 engage, employ, take on, appoint, enlist, sign on: Alexandra had to hire more people to get all the work done. 2 rent, lease, engage, charter: We hired a car for the day. 3 hire out. rent (out), lease (out), let (out), charter (out): I hire out my boat by the day.

--n. 4 rent, lease, charter, letting: Do you have bicycles for hire by the day? 5 (hire) charge, cost, fee, price, rate, rent, rental: How much is the hire of a horse by the hour?

hiss n. 1 hissing, sibilance: Serpents and geese make a sound like a hiss. 2 catcall, jeer, boo, hoot, Slang raspberry, US Bronx cheer: The villain was greeted by hisses from the audience.

--v. 3 boo, hoot, jeer, deride, mock, taunt, decry, disparage: The workers hissed and booed the speaker.

historic adj. momentous, important, noteworthy, significant, red-letter, notable, celebrated, distinguished, prominent, great, consequential, signal, unforgettable, memorable: We are gathered here to commemorate a historic event.

historical

adj. factual, true, verifiable, reliable, real, authentic, recorded, documented: The historical truth of what actually happened on that day has been obscured by legends.

history n. 1 account, story, record, description, depiction, portrayal, representation, telling, retelling, recital, narration, narrative, relation, retailing: Washington Irving's Knickerbocker's History of New York begins with the creation of the world. 2 news, summary, recapitulation, report, intelligence, information: The history of these events is recounted in a book by Robinson. 3 past, background, life; experiences, adventures, story, biography: This woman appears to have had a rather curious history. The history of your years in Polynesia would make an interesting book. 4 record, experience, information, biography, CV or curriculum vitae, US r,sum,: Your entire work history should be included in your application. 5 chronicle, annals, record, account: The history of Parliamentary debate can be traced through Hansard. 6 ancient history, the past, yesterday, the (good old) days, days of yore, olden days, yesteryear, antiquity: What can history tell us about the future? 7 dead letter, yesterday's news, old hat: Any animosity I might have felt towards him is now history.

hit v. 1 strike, cuff, smack, knock, whack, bash, bang, thump, thwack, punch, buffet, slap, swat, bludgeon, club, smite; spank, thrash, beat, pummel, batter, flog, scourge, birch, cane, lash, belabour, flagellate, whip, horsewhip, cudgel, Archaic fustigate; Colloq belt, wallop, clobber, clout, sock, clip, crown, bop, conk, paste, lambaste, zap: She hit him on the jaw and he went down. 2 strike, bat, swat, knock, drive, propel: He hit the ball over the heads of the fielders. 3 strike, collide or impact with, run or smash or crash into, bump or bang into: The car went off the road and hit a tree. 4 affect, touch, stir, move, wound, hurt, strike or hit home, make or leave an impression or a mark on, (make an) impact (on): The new taxes hit the wealthy more than the poor. 5 dawn on, enter one's mind, occur to, strike: It finally hit Graham that he had been insulted. 6 reach, attain, arrive at, gain, achieve: Those who have hit eighty know the meaning of old age. She hit the jackpot this week. 7 experience, encounter, meet (with): It was at that point that we hit a snag in the negotiations. 8 Also, hit up. importune, beseech, petition, beg, implore, entreat, ask for: As usual, Guthrie hit me for a loan as soon as we met. 9 hit on or upon. a come or happen or chance or light on or upon, discover, find, uncover, unearth, stumble or blunder on or upon, arrive at: After years of experimentation, the Curies hit upon pitchblende as a source of radium. b devise, think of or up, invent, dream up, come up with, work out, see, perceive, detect, discern, find: I have hit upon a way to counteract the force of gravity.

--n. 10 impact, collision; blow, punch, knock, strike, swat, shot, smack, bump, bang, Colloq whack, thwack, conk, bop, sock: The weakness of the hit caused only a slight dent in my car door. The boxer reeled after a hard hit to the midriff. 11 success, triumph, coup, winner, sensation, Colloq smash (hit), sell-out: After opening in the West End the musical became a hit on Broadway. 12 kick, jolt, thrill, Slang charge, US rush, bang: Give me a hit off that reefer.

hitch v. 1 connect, couple, fasten, attach, join, harness, tie, unite, hook (up), link, fix: When I arrived, she was hitching the horses to the wagon. 2 Often, hitch up. raise, pull up, hike (up), tug (up), hoist, yank, jerk, Brit hoick: He hitched up his trousers, tucked in his shirt, and tightened his belt. 3 hitchhike, thumb a lift or ride, Colloq US bum a ride: I had no money and no car, so I hitched here from Newcastle.

--n. 4 snag, catch, difficulty, trouble, problem, mishap, handicap, entanglement, interference, impediment, hindrance, obstruction, obstacle: The entire plan went off without any hitch.

8.4 hoard...
=-

hoard n. 1 supply, stock, store, stockpile, reserve, fund, reservoir, accumulation, collection, cache: They kept a hoard of food in the shelter in case of attack. Occasionally, farmers turn up a hoard of gold coins buried by the ancient Romans.

--v. 2 amass, collect, accumulate, pile (up), assemble, gather, put away, stockpile, store, reserve, set aside, save (up), squirrel away, lay in or away or aside or up, Colloq stash away: Hoarding food was against the law during rationing.

hoax n. 1 deception, fraud, swindle, trick, flam or flimflam, imposture, cheat, humbug, Slang con (game), gyp, scam, game, US snow job: They perpetrated a hoax on you, and I am afraid there is no way of getting your money back.

--v. 2 deceive, defraud, swindle, trick, fool, dupe, take in, cozen, hoodwink, gull, bluff, Slang con, gyp, bamboozle: She was hoaxed into investing in Sicilian gold-mines.

hobble v. 1 limp, falter, dodder, totter, stagger, reel, weave, stumble, shuffle, shamble: I hobbled about on crutches for weeks. 2 shackle, fetter, restrain, restrict, hamper, hinder, impede, trammel: As hobbled horses do not stray, she tried to think of some way to hobble Clarence's errant ways.

--n. 3 limp, shuffle, shamble, claudication, stagger: With the leg-irons on, I could walk only with a jerking hobble.

hobby n. pastime, avocation, sideline, recreation, diversion, relaxation: Her hobby is collecting wedding rings.

hobnob v. associate, fraternize, socialize, consort, mingle, rub elbows or shoulders, mix, hang about or around, keep company: He hobnobs with the aristocrats.

hocus-pocus

n. 1 trickery, chicanery, deceit, deception, artifice, cheat, duplicity, mischief, hoax, humbug, trick, swindle, pretence, Colloq con (game), jiggery-pokery, flimflam, hanky-panky: He tried some hocus-pocus on the company books but was caught. 2 mumbo-jumbo, abracadabra, incantation, nonsense, rigmarole, gibberish, Colloq gobbledegook: The medicine man muttered some hocus-pocus over the body, which began to rise into the air. 3 sleight of hand, legerdemain, prestidigitation, magic, conjuring, jugglery: From the earliest days religion has had its share of hocus-pocus.

hoggish adj. piggish, greedy, avaricious, insatiable, gluttonous, voracious, edacious, acquisitive, possessive, self-seeking, selfish: Don't be so hoggish; share the cake with the others.

hoi polloi

n. riff-raff, rabble, mob, common herd, proletariat, populace, common people, crowd, masses, multitude, rank and file, plebeians, multitude, bourgeoisie, man in the street, Brit admass, man on the Clapham omnibus, US John Q. Public, Colloq great unwashed, proles, plebs, US silent majority: Much of what goes on in government is incomprehensible to hoi polloi.

hoist v. 1 lift (up), elevate, raise, heave, uplift, winch: The lifeboat with the survivors aboard is now being hoisted onto the rescue vessel.

--n. 2 crane, lift, elevator, davit, winch, tackle: The cable of the hoist broke, and the container dropped onto the pier.

hoity-toity

adj. haughty, arrogant, overweening, snobbish, disdainful, supercilious, conceited, lofty, superior, self-important, Colloq high and mighty, stuck-up, snooty, uppity or chiefly Brit uppish, Brit toffee-nosed, Slang snotty: Eleanor became very hoity-toity after her husband got his knighthood.

hold   v. 1 grasp, grip, clasp, seize, clutch, keep; carry, Colloq hang on to: She asked me to hold the baby for just a minute while she bought her railway ticket. 2 hug, embrace, clasp, cradle, clench, clutch, enfold: He held me in his arms briefly before the guards led him into the quad. 3 maintain, keep, put: Hold up your hands and kick the gun over here to me. 4 maintain, keep, sustain, absorb, occupy, engage, involve, engross, monopolize: You hold his attention while I try to get round behind him. 5 confine, restrain, detain, contain, coop up: Even a strait-jacket and chains couldn't hold Houdini. 6 imprison, detain, confine, place into custody, put behind bars, jail: He is being held overnight for questioning. 7 believe, deem, judge, consider, regard, look on or upon, maintain, think, esteem, take, assume: What do you hold to be important in life? Father holds me responsible for every little dent in his car. 8 accommodate, support, carry: That little nail won't hold this picture. 9 contain, include, comprise: This suitcase holds everything I own in the world. 10 call, convene, assemble, convoke; run, conduct, engage in, participate in, have, carry on, preside over, officiate at: The next meeting will be held on Tuesday, at noon. 11 apply, hold good, be in effect or in force, stand or hold up, hold or prove or be true, be the case, function, operate, be or remain or prove valid or relevant or applicable or operative, Colloq hold water, wash: What may be in order for Manchester may not necessarily hold for another city. 12 have, possess: She holds two engineering degrees. He was holding four aces. 13 remain or keep (fast), stay, stick: Screws are needed here - nails won't hold. 14 hold back. a restrain, repress, suppress, curb, inhibit, control, check, keep back, hinder: Many reasons hold me back from telling you what I think. b withhold, reserve, deny, keep back, refuse: We ought to hold back payment till the work is completed. 15 hold down. a control, restrain, check; reduce, diminish: We must hold down inflation. b keep, maintain, manage: He has to hold down two jobs to pay all the bills. 16 hold forth. a Often, hold forth on or upon. lecture (on), declaim, harangue, preach (on or about), orate, sermonize (on), discourse (on), speechify (on or about), expatiate or expand on or upon, Colloq go on (about), Brit rabbit or natter or witter on (about): As usual, Pinckley endlessly held forth on his pet subject, fishing. b hold out, offer, proffer, tender, submit, advance, propose, propound, hold out, extend: The company has held forth a profit-sharing plan that we cannot refuse. 17 hold in. a control, curb, check, hold back, restrain, contain: I could hold myself in no longer and a scream escaped my lips. b conceal, hide, suppress: How can I hold in my feelings for you? 18 hold off. a delay, defer, put off, refrain from, postpone, avoid: We held off buying till we had the money saved up. b repel, keep off, repulse, fend off, rebuff, resist, withstand: We held off the attackers till help came. 19 hold on. a grip, grasp, hold, clutch, cling: Hold on to the rope and I'll pull you up. b keep, maintain, cling, hang on, retain: Don't try to hold on to yesterday's dreams. c stop, wait, hold off, Colloq hang on: Hold on a minute! I'm not finished. 20 hold out. a last, carry on, persist, persevere, continue, hang on, stand firm or chiefly US pat, endure: I hope that the good weather holds out for our trip. Can we hold out till reinforcements arrive? b offer, proffer, extend, hold forth, present: I grasped the hand he held out. 21 hold over. a postpone, delay, defer, put off, hold off, suspend: The decision is to be held over till next year. b continue, retain, extend, prolong: The singer was popular enough to be held over a month. 22 hold up. a rob, waylay, Colloq mug, stick up; knock off or US over: Two men held up the bank courier last night. b delay, impede, hinder, slow (down or up), set back, detain: I was held up by the infernal traffic again. c last, survive, fare, bear up, endure: I am not sure that my car will hold up through another winter. d present, show, exhibit, display: Gibbons has been held up to ridicule since the scandal. 23 hold with. support, sustain, agree to or with, favour, countenance, approve (of), subscribe to, condone, concur with: Being married to her doesn't mean you have to hold with all her ideas.

--n. 24 grasp, grip, clasp, clutch: Take hold of the rope! 25 foothold, toe-hold, purchase: She lost her hold and fell. He has a good hold on the subject. 26 power, dominance, mastery, control, ascendancy, authority, influence, leverage, sway, Colloq pull, clout: She has a hold over him that makes him do her bidding.

hold-up n. 1 (armed) robbery, Colloq stick-up, mugging, US heist: The robbers escaped with my gold watch in the hold-up. 2 delay, set-back, hitch, snag, interruption, lacuna, gap, hiatus, break, stoppage: The cause of the hold-up was an overturned van.

hole n. 1 cavity, pit, hollow, excavation, burrow, crater, cavern, cave, recess, niche, nook, pocket, depression, indentation, dent, impression: The snake disappeared into a hole in the rock. 2 opening, aperture, orifice, perforation, puncture, slit, slot, breach, rip, tear, rent, break, crack, fissure: The water poured through a hole in the pipe. 3 hole in the wall, shack, hut, shanty, slum, hovel; Slang dump, dive, joint: How can anyone live in such a hole? She finally got a job dancing in some hole downtown. 4 cell, prison, dungeon, donjon, keep, jail, oubliette, brig, cage: When he refused to talk, they put him in the hole for a week. 5 difficulty, trouble, dilemma, predicament, situation, fix, corner, Colloq (tight) spot, hot water, scrape, box, bind, pickle, catch-22, mess, muddle: She really got herself into a hole with the tax man. 6 flaw, shortcoming, inconsistency, fault, error, mistake, fallacy, discrepancy, loophole: He never offers anything original but is always ready to pick holes in any suggestion you make.

--v. 7 puncture, pierce, perforate: A floating log holed the hull and the boat went down with all aboard.

holiday n. 1 time off, break, recess, respite, leave (of absence), furlough, sabbatical, Chiefly US vacation: We spent our holiday in Ibiza this year. 2 festival, feast, celebration, fˆte or fete; gala, fair, red-letter day, event: Where are you going over the Christmas holiday?

hollow adj. 1 vacant, empty, void, unfilled: A hollow space in the wall concealed a secret passage. 2 sunken, concave, indented, dented, sunken, recessed, depressed: Dust gathers in the hollow places of the floor. 3 hungry, ravenous, starved, empty, famished: I'm feeling hollow and should prefer to eat now, not later. 4 insincere, false, hypocritical, sham, artificial, counterfeit, feigned, fraudulent, spurious, deceitful, mendacious, deceptive, cynical: Politicians campaigning for office often make hollow promises they do not intend to keep. 5

empty, futile, costly, Pyrrhic, worthless, vain, unavailing, bootless, fruitless, profitless, unprofitable, valueless, ineffective, pointless, senseless, meaningless: Winning the lawsuit was a hollow victory, for the man was bankrupt. 6 muffled, dull, flat, low, sepulchral, toneless: His voice sounded hollow, as if he were speaking into a metal bowl.

--n. 7 hole, cavity, cavern, crater, basin, depression, excavation, pit, trough, furrow, indentation, dent, impression; valley, dale, dell, glen, dip: We dug ourselves in a hollow in the ground hoping not to be seen. The dog herded the sheep into the hollow near the stream.

--v. 8 excavate, dig (out or up), gouge, scoop, furrow, dredge: Huskies hollow out places for themselves to sleep in the snow.

holocaust n. 1 conflagration, fire-storm, inferno, fire; destruction, devastation: When the volcano exploded, few escaped the holocaust. 2 genocide, mass murder, massacre, blood bath, pogrom, butchery, carnage, annihilation, extinction, extermination, eradication, elimination: Survivors of the Nazi holocaust hold periodic memorial services.

holy   adj. 1 sacred, religious, consecrated, sanctified, blessed, hallowed, venerated, divine, heavenly, supernal, celestial: The holy relics are kept in a silver casket. 2 godly, godlike, saintly, saintlike, pious, devout, reverent, reverential, faithful, God-fearing, chaste, pure, unsullied, clean, sinless, spotless, immaculate, undefiled, uncorrupted, untainted: The holy men, in their saffron robes, sat in a circle, contemplating the master of the universe.

homage   n. obeisance, respect, deference, honour, esteem, admiration; loyalty, allegiance, fidelity, tribute: Today we pay homage to those who fought and died so that we might be free.

home   n. 1 dwelling-place, residence, domicile, abode, dwelling, house, (living) quarters, habitation, lodging(s), Brit accommodation or US accommodations, Colloq place, Chiefly Brit digs, diggings: He has been a guest in my home on many occasions. 2 (home) base, residency, territory, haunt, home ground, bailiwick, Colloq stamping-ground: As you travel so much, what do you call home these days? 3 hospice, retreat, nursing home, old folks' or people's home, retirement community, almshouse, poorhouse, refuge, haven, institution, shelter, rest-home, US snug harbor: His parents, who are very old and indigent, have been sent to a home. 4 at home. a comfortable, at ease, relaxed, cosy, composed, tranquil, placid, peaceful, serene, untroubled: The Harrises certainly do make one feel at home. b in, accessible, available, welcoming: You know that we are always at home to you, Frances. 5 at home with or in. comfortable with, conversant with, knowledgeable in or about, familiar with, well-versed in, competent in, expert in, proficient in, skilled in, up on, current in, adept in, adroit in, qualified in, (well-)informed in or on or about: Widely read, she is at home in almost any subject you can name.

--adj. 6 domestic, native, national, internal: Buying more foreign than home goods upsets the balance of trade. 7 domestic, household: She now sells home appliances for a big manufacturer. 8 family, domestic: What kind of home life has he had?

--adv. 9 homeward(s): When will you come home? 10 to the heart or core, to the quick; effectively, tellingly, profoundly, deeply, stingingly, cuttingly, harshly, severely, Colloq where it hurts, where one lives: That remark really hit home. 11 bring or drive home. stress, emphasize, impress upon, make clear: I am trying to bring home to you the hardships people suffered during the war.

homeless adj. 1 dispossessed, outcast, exiled, vagabond, derelict, unsettled; unhoused: Their houses destroyed in the war, homeless people wandered everywhere.

--n. 2 the homeless. knights of the road, vagrants, vagabonds, tramps, US bums, hoboes: There are not enough shelters for the homeless.

homely   adj. 1 homey, homelike, unpretentious, modest, unassuming, simple, unaffected, informal, plain, natural, everyday, unsophisticated, homespun, commonplace, ordinary, familiar, friendly, amiable, neighbourly, affable, congenial, Colloq chiefly US folksy: Her success as a doctor is traceable in part to her homely approach. 2 homey, homelike, warm, cosy, snug, domestic, comfortable, easy, serene, peaceful, restful, tranquil: I like staying here for the homely atmosphere. 3 ugly, plain, uncomely, unattractive, unlovely, ill-favoured: Peggy-Jo's rather homely face is redeemed by her good-humoured nature.

homesick adj. nostalgic, longing, pining, lonely, lonesome; wistful, reminiscent: I was homesick for the smell and taste of a good haggis.

homespun adj. rustic, plain, simple, unrefined, unpolished, unsophisticated, down-to-earth, coarse, rough, rude, crude, inelegant, amateur, amateurish, non-professional, unprofessional; handmade: The furniture is not of museum quality, but it has a homespun quality.

homicidal adj. murderous, lethal, deadly, death-dealing, mortal, blood-thirsty, sanguinary, ferocious, maniacal, berserk, amok or amuck, mad, insane: The doctors say he is homicidal and should be institutionalized.

homogeneous

adj. uniform, consistent, unvarying, identical, constant; similar, comparable, alike, akin: The rock is ground up to make homogeneous powder.

homosexual

n. 1 gay, homophile; lesbian, tribade, sapphist; All the following are offensive and derogatory pervert, invert, Slang queer, fairy, pansy, nancy, nance, queen, drag queen, homo; butch, (bull) dyke; Brit poof, poofter, ginger (beer), US fruit, auntie, fag, faggot: We suspected that he was a closet homosexual.

--adj. 2 (of either sex) gay, homoerotic, homophile; (of a female) lesbian, tribadic, sapphic; (of a male) effeminate; All the following are offensive and derogatory perverted, inverted, Colloq chiefly Brit bent, Slang queer, camp, campy, faggy, kinky, Chiefly US fruity, limp-wristed, faggy, swish, swishy: We never knew of her homosexual tendencies.

honest adj. 1 trustworthy, truthful, veracious, trusty, honourable, creditable, decent, law-abiding, uncorrupted, uncorrupt, incorruptible, ethical, moral, virtuous, principled, upright, high-minded, dependable, reliable, reputable, on the up and up: How often does one meet an honest person in politics? 2 above-board, straight, square, square-dealing, fair, just, on the up and up, straightforward, proper, genuine, bona fide, real, authentic, Colloq on the level, US square-shooting: I write because I cannot earn an honest living. Would Felix give me an honest deal on a used car? 3 candid, frank, open, plain, straightforward, forthright, direct, sincere, ingenuous, explicit, uninhibited, unreserved, unrestrained, unconstrained, above-board, plain-spoken, unambiguous, unequivocal, Colloq upfront: To be completely honest, I cannot stand the sight of you. 4 fair, just, equitable, legitimate, valid, rightful, sound, proper: He gets an honest day's pay for an honest day's work.

honestly adv. 1 truthfully, honourably, creditably, decently, ethically, morally, uprightly, dependably, reliably, in good faith, justly, fairly, equitably, even-handedly, disinterestedly, objectively, impartially: In general, the police deal honestly with suspects. 2 candidly, frankly, openly, straightforwardly, forthrightly, sincerely, truly, ingenuously, unreservedly, above-board, unambiguously, unequivocally, plainly, simply, straight (out), to one's face, in plain words or English, bluntly: I tell you honestly that I have never heard of the man.

honesty n. 1 trustworthiness, uprightness, rectitude, probity, integrity, virtue, virtuousness, honour: As he will deal with large amounts of money, his honesty cannot be in question. 2 truthfulness, veracity, candour, openness, frankness, forthrightness, directness, straightforwardness, outspokenness, sincerity, guilelessness, ingenuousness, bluntness: You might not like what he says, but you have to admire his honesty. 3 fairness, equity, equitableness, even-handedness, objectivity, impartiality, disinterestedness, justness, justice: We rely on the honesty of judges in meting out punishment to convicted felons.

honorarium

n. (token) fee, compensation, recompense, pay, payment, remuneration, emolument: Would you be willing to accept an honorarium in lieu of your usual fee?

honorary adj. nominal, titular, in name or title only, ex officio: She has several honorary doctoral degrees, which is not bad for someone who never went to university.

honour n. 1 integrity, honesty, fairness, justness, probity, uprightness, decency, goodness, righteousness, rectitude, justice, morality, principles, virtuousness, virtue: Doing the right thing is a matter of honour. 2 respect, esteem, reverence, veneration, approbation, deference, admiration, homage, regard, accolade, praise, kudos, fame, glory, celebrity, distinction, prestige, illustriousness: Great honour accompanies the award of a Nobel prize. 3 privilege, distinction, pleasure, joy, delight; credit, blessing: I have the honour to introduce tonight's speaker. It has been an honour to serve under you, Admiral. 4 virginity, chastity, virtue, purity, innocence: How did she manage to preserve her honour when fighting with the partisans?

--v. 5 respect, esteem, revere, venerate, adulate, adore, worship, approve, prize, value, defer to, admire, pay homage to: Albert Schweitzer was much honoured in the latter part of his life. 6 praise, laud, glorify, celebrate, eulogize, salute, hail, acclaim, ennoble, dignify, exalt: We have come together to honour those who have died for their country. 7 keep, maintain, carry out, live up to, discharge, fulfil, observe, meet: She has done her best to honour her obligations. 8 pay, redeem, accept, clear, cash: The bank refused to honour his cheque because of 'insufficient funds'.

honourable

adj. 1 upright, upstanding, trustworthy, trusty, honest, just, fair, moral, principled, uncorrupt, uncorrupted, incorruptible, high-minded, noble, virtuous: Mark Antony referred to Caesar as an honourable man. 2 right, correct, proper, fitting, appropriate, virtuous, ethical, worthy, respectable, reputable, decent, square: I think you can count on Cedric to do the honourable thing. 3 fair (and square), impartial, equitable, just, honest, unbiased, unprejudiced, non-prejudicial, even-handed, straight, disinterested, guileless, ingenuous, artless, open, sincere, above-board, on the up and up, undeceiving, undeceitful, Colloq upfront, on the level: Eleanor is too honourable to accept payment for work she did not do. 4 distinguished, prestigious, eminent, notable, noteworthy, noted, illustrious, famous, famed, honoured, exalted, respected, celebrated, renowned, acclaimed, well-thought-of: Ian enjoys an honourable reputation as a publisher.

hoodlum n. gangster, thug, racketeer, mobster, desperado, terrorist, ruffian, tough, rowdy, knave, Colloq hooligan, baddy, crook, US plug-ugly, Slang goon, Brit yob, yobbo, US mug, bad actor, roughneck, hood, gunsel, hit man, torpedo, French apache, Australian larrikin: He has a few hoodlums on the payroll who do the dirty work.

hoodwink v. fool, trick, deceive, delude, dupe, gull, hoax, defraud, mislead, humbug, outwit, Colloq bamboozle, pull the wool over (someone's) eyes, pull a fast one on, lead (someone) up or down the garden path, put one over on (someone), throw dust in (someone's) eyes, take (someone) for a ride, string (someone) along, Slang rook, con, suck in, US sucker in, snow: They are trying to hoodwink the voters into believing that the recession is over.

hook n. 1 hanger, peg, holder; fastener, catch, clasp, clip, pin: Hang your hat on that hook. I'm using a safety pin because the hook on my dress is gone. 2 snare, trap; fish-hook: What can we use as a hook to catch the fish? 3 by hook or by crook. somehow (or other), someway, come what may, by fair means or foul, (by) one way or another: I have to get out of this place by hook or by crook. 4 hook, line, and sinker. completely, entirely, all the way, through and through, thoroughly, entirely, totally, utterly, wholly: She actually fell for that old routine hook, line, and sinker. 5 off the hook. (set) free, (in the) clear, out of it; out of trouble, acquitted, exonerated, cleared, let off, vindicated, off: After paying them the extortion money, he still wasn't off the hook.

--v. 6 catch, trap, entrap, snare, ensnare; grab, capture, collar, nab, seize; Chiefly US and Canadian snag, Colloq pinch: The petty crooks have been caught but we now want to hook the big fish himself. 7 steal, pilfer, filch, palm, shoplift, rob, Slang snitch, rip off, Euphemistic liberate, remove, borrow, appropriate, Brit nick, Chiefly Brit pinch: They used to hook sweets from Woolies'.

hop v. 1 jump, leap, bound, spring, vault; skip, caper, gambol, dance: Here comes Peter Cottontail, Hopping down the bunny trail. 2 take a (short) trip or voyage, travel, come, go, proceed; fly: Those yuppies think nothing of hopping over to Paris just for dinner.

--n. 3 jump, leap, bound, spring, vault; skip, caper, dance: In a few hops the bird was off the branch and onto my finger. 4 (short) trip or flight or journey or voyage: The Bahamas are just a hop from Miami.

hope n. 1 desire, wish, expectation, yearning, hankering, craving, longing, fancy; ambition, (day)dream: It was always my hope that you would go to university. 2 prospect, promise, expectation, expectancy, confidence, anticipation, assumption, security, faith, conviction, belief, trust: We had given up hope of being rescued.

--v. 3 aspire, count or rely on or upon, anticipate, contemplate, foresee, look forward to, expect, await, wait: After all these years, he is still hoping to meet the girl of his dreams. 4 trust; wish, want, desire; Dialect expect: I hope my ship will come in soon. I hope to see the last of her tomorrow.

hopeful adj. 1 expectant, anticipating, optimistic, sanguine, confident, assured: We are hopeful of victory in the forthcoming election. 2 promising, bright, rosy, reassuring, heartening, encouraging, auspicious, propitious, inspiriting: Today was a disaster, but tomorrow looks more hopeful.

hopefully adv. 1 expectantly, optimistically, sanguinely, confidently: Jocelyn set off hopefully for the party. 2 with (any) luck, if things go well, all being well, it is hoped, expectedly: Hopefully, we shall arrive in time to catch the train.

hopeless adj. 1 desperate, beyond hope or saving, irreparable, beyond repair, irremediable, lost, gone, irretrievable; incurable, terminal, deadly, fatal, lethal: As their ship drifted into the intergalactic void, they saw that their situation was hopeless. They told me that her condition was hopeless. 2 bad, poor, incompetent, inferior, inadequate, inept, unqualified, unfit, unskilful, deficient: You might make a good surgeon, but as a judge of human nature you're hopeless. 3 despairing, despondent, forlorn, woebegone, disconsolate, inconsolable, depressed, dejected, melancholy, downcast, gloomy, miserable, discouraged, wretched, lugubrious, funereal, sorrowful, sad, unhappy: Utterly hopeless after his script was rejected by Hollywood, he moped in his room. 4 futile, vain, bootless, unavailing, impossible, impracticable, unworkable, pointless, worthless, useless: It would be hopeless to try to send out a lifeboat in this storm.

horizon n. view, purview, range, scope, vista, compass, perspective, prospect, ken, field of vision, limit(s): This is something that lies beyond the horizon of present-day knowledge.

horizontal
adj. level, flat, plane; prone, supine: Make sure that the plank is horizontal before fastening it down. They say that dancing is merely a vertical expression of a horizontal desire.

horrible adj. 1 awful, horrendous, horrid, horrifying, horrific, terrible, terrifying, dreadful, abominable, abhorrent, appalling, frightening, frightful, ghastly, grim, grisly, ghoulish, gruesome, loathsome, hideous, repulsive, revolting, disgusting, sickening, nauseating, nauseous, harrowing, blood-curdling, macabre, unspeakable, shocking: The horrible sight of her father's mangled body haunted her for the rest of her days. 2 awful, nasty, unpleasant, disagreeable, horrid, terrible, dreadful, obnoxious, offensive, atrocious, monstrous, contemptible, detestable, despicable, Colloq Brit beastly: The food was perfectly horrible at our hotel. Take that horrible little dog away.

horrify v. 1 terrify, frighten, scare, alarm, intimidate, panic, scare or frighten to death, petrify, Colloq scare or frighten the living daylights out of, scare stiff, make (someone's) hair stand on end, make (someone's or the) blood run cold, curl (someone's) hair, scare the pants off: I was horrified to see the attack dogs racing towards me. 2 shock, startle, upset, put off, outrage, dismay, appal, distress, discountenance, disconcert: I was horrified to hear that you weren't coming to my party.

horror n. 1 fear and loathing, repugnance, terror, dread, hatred, revulsion, detestation, abhorrence, distaste, dislike; aversion, antipathy, hostility, animosity, animus, rancour; odium, execration: She has a horror of bats. 2 fear, dismay, distress, dread, fright, alarm, upset, perturbation, panic, terror, fear and trembling, trepidation, anxiety, angst, apprehension, uneasiness, queasiness, nervousness, awe: The doctor helped me overcome my horror of flying.

hors-d'oeuvre

n. appetizer, ap‚ritif, antipasto, smorgasbord or sm”rg†sbord, relish; Chiefly Brit starter; Archaic warner: A Sauvignon was served with the hors-d'oeuvre, which was gravadlax.

hospitable

adj. 1 welcoming, gracious, courteous, genial, friendly, agreeable, amicable, cordial, warm, congenial, sociable, generous: It was most hospitable of you to invite me. 2 open-minded, receptive, amenable, approachable, tolerant: The director is always hospitable to suggestions for improving sales.

hospital n. medical centre, health centre, infirmary, clinic, polyclinic, dispensary, sickbay; asylum, sanatorium, nursing home, convalescent home or facility, US sanitarium: With that wound, you ought to be in a hospital.

hospitality

n. graciousness, courtesy, courteousness, friendliness, amicability, cordiality, warmth, congeniality, sociability, generosity: I am grateful for the hospitality you showed my sister during her visit.

host° n. 1 hostess, innkeeper, hotelier, hotel-keeper, hotelman, landlord or landlady, manager or manageress, proprietor or proprietress, Brit publican: As host, it is my responsibility to greet the guests. 2 entertainer, master or mistress of ceremonies, emcee, MC, announcer, Brit presenter, compŠre, US tummler: For twenty years he has been the host of popular TV quiz shows.

--v. 3 entertain, act or play the host or hostess, have: She hosts a dinner-party for close friends every Wednesday.

hostý n. army, swarm, crowd, horde, multitude, throng, mob, pack, herd, troop, legion, body, assembly, assemblage, drove: The rock group turned up with a host of followers, their so-called groupies.

hostage n. pledge, security, surety, pawn, captive, prisoner, gage: The terrorists threatened that if their demands were not met they would kill the hostages.

hostile adj. 1 opposed, antagonistic, contrary, against, anti, adverse; averse, loath: The government is hostile to curbs on business. 2 unfriendly, inimical, unsympathetic, cold, inhospitable; unfavourable: Why do many social workers seem hostile to the people they are supposed to help? The polar regions are very hostile environments to man. 3 warring, belligerent, bellicose, warlike, combative, militant, aggressive: The UN units function as a buffer between the hostile forces.

hostility n. 1 antagonism, opposition, enmity, animosity, antipathy, animus, ill will, malevolence, malice, aversion, unfriendliness: Do you still harbour the feelings of hostility towards them that you had during the war? The petty quarrels broke out into open hostility. 2 hostilities. war, warfare, fighting, combat, action, state of war, bloodshed: Hostilities ceased when the factions agreed to parley.

hot adj. 1 fiery, white-hot, red-hot, piping hot, burning, blistering, scorching, roasting, frying, sizzling, searing, boiling, scalding, steaming, simmering, torrid, sweltering, sultry, heated: The hot, molten steel is cast into ingots here. During the day it is hot, but it cools down at night. 2 spicy, peppery, sharp, piquant, pungent, biting, acrid: She likes very hot food, with plenty of chilli. 3 intense, fervent, zealous, ardent, enthusiastic, passionate, fervid, vehement, excited, animated; impetuous, fiery, fierce, inflamed, sharp, violent: He had some hot words with the foreman who had dismissed him. 4 eager, keen, avid, anxious, burning; intense, fervent, zealous, ardent, enthusiastic, passionate, fervid, vehement, excited, animated, earnest, Slang US gung-ho: Desmond set out in hot pursuit of the thief. 5 recent, fresh, new, latest, brand-new: The hottest gossip is that she is marrying for the seventh time. 6 popular, sought-after, commercial, saleable, marketable: The publisher believes Zenobia's Memoirs to be the hot property of the year. 7 lustful, lecherous, libidinous, lubricous or lubricious, sensual, concupiscent, prurient, licentious, oversexed, sex-crazed, sex-mad, Archaic lickerish, horn-mad, Slang horny, Chiefly Brit randy, US hard up: They were really hot, not having been with anyone of the opposite sex for months. 8 intense, vivid, striking, bright, brilliant, dazzling, loud: That hot pink lipstick looks good with your suntan. 9 electrified, live, charged, powered: The hot wire connects to the other terminal - I think. 10 dangerous, precarious, risky, sensitive, delicate, unstable, touchy, unpredictable: The situation is getting a bit too hot to handle.

--v. 11 hot up. intensify, build up, heighten, increase, worsen, warm up, heat up: The environment is hotting up as a political issue.

hot air n. blather or blether, bunkum, verbiage, talk, wind, pretentiousness, pomposity, bombast, grandiloquence, magniloquence, flatulence, gasconade, rodomontade, Colloq claptrap, bosh, gas, guff: Management's promises of pay increases were nothing but hot air.

hotbed n. breeding ground, fertile source: Slums are a hotbed of crime.

hotchpotch

n. miscellany, mixture, gallimaufry, jumble, farrago, m,lange, mishmash, mess, tangle, medley, hash, conglomeration, agglomeration, olio, olla podrida, pot-pourri, rag-bag, welter, US and Canadian hodgepodge, Colloq omnium gatherum, mixed bag: That hotchpotch of junk is scarcely what I should call an 'antiques collection'.

hotel n. hostelry, inn, lodging, caravanserai; motel, motor hotel, bed and breakfast or B & B, guest-house, pension, Australian and New Zealand pub, US tourist house: We are staying at a small hotel just outside of town.

hotheaded adj. impetuous, headlong, hot-tempered, quick-tempered, volatile, rash, hasty, wild, foolhardy, reckless, precipitate, thoughtless, heedless, madcap, daredevil, devil-may-care: He is too hotheaded to succeed in the diplomatic corps.

hothouse n. 1 hotbed, greenhouse, glasshouse, conservatory: These tomatoes were grown during the winter in our hothouse.

--adj. 2 dainty, delicate, sensitive, fragile, frail, pampered, overprotected, sheltered, shielded, spoiled, coddled, babied: She was glad to exchange the hothouse atmosphere of the university for the real world.

hotly adv. intensively, energetically, doggedly, persistently, zealously, fervently, fervidly, ardently, warmly, enthusiastically: Hotly pursued by the police, I managed to hide in a culvert.

hound v. bully, browbeat, persecute, nag, harass, annoy, pester, harry, badger: Although he was found innocent, his neighbours hounded him so much that he had to leave town.

house n. 1 residence, dwelling, dwelling-place, home, abode, household, homestead, domicile, lodging(s), quarters, building, edifice: We are playing bridge at my house next Saturday. 2 family, line, lineage, dynasty, clan, ancestry, strain, race, blood, descendants, forebears: She is a member of the royal house of Sweden. 3 legislature, legislative body, congress, parliament, assembly, council, diet: Both houses of the legislature passed the bill. 4 establishment, firm, concern, company, business, organization, enterprise, undertaking, Colloq outfit: He has gone from one publishing house to another with his manuscript. 5 auditorium, theatre, concert-hall: The house is sold out. 6 house of ill repute or ill fame or prostitution, brothel, whore-house, bagnio, bordello, Archaic bawdy-house, Colloq sporting house, crib, Slang US cat-house: She used to run a house in Lambeth. 7 on the house. free, gratis, for nothing, as a gift: Drinks will be on the house tonight to celebrate the tenth anniversary of our opening.

--v. 8 shelter, accommodate, domicile, lodge, quarter, put up, take in, board, billet, harbour: We have housed as many as ten people at a time in the cottage. 9 contain, accommodate, quarter: This building houses our computer operations.

housing n. 1 homes, houses, lodging(s), quarters, accommodation, habitation, dwelling; shelter, protection: The Council is trying to provide housing for the elderly. 2 case, casing, cover, covering, enclosure, container, box, shield: We keep the sensitive equipment in a dust-proof housing.

hovel n. hole, shack, shanty, (pig)sty, pigpen, coop, crib, hut, Colloq US dump: The beggar lives in a hovel near the railway station.

hover v. 1 drift, poise, float, hang, be or hang suspended, hang in the air: The humming bird hovers over a flower, drinking its nectar. 2 linger, loiter, wait, hang about or around: The waiter's constant hovering about is making me nervous.

however adv. 1 notwithstanding, regardless, nevertheless, nonetheless, despite (that), in spite of (that), still, but, though, yet, even so, be that as it may, come what may, no matter what; at any rate, anyway, anyhow, on the other hand, in all events, in any event, in any case, after all: He insisted the council should give their approval; however, that is not their responsibility. I was ready to move to Cardiff; she didn't offer me the job, however. 2 to whatever manner or extent or degree, howsoever, no matter how, in any way or manner or respect, anyhow, how, in whatever way or manner: However you view it, he is still the boss. Spend the money however you see fit.

--conj. 3 how, how on earth, how in the world, in what way or manner: However do you manage with only three to help, you poor thing? 4 no matter how, regardless how, putting or setting aside how, notwithstanding how: However much she earns, she is always short of money.

howl v. 1 yowl, cry, wail, ululate, bay; shout, yell, bellow, scream, roar, Colloq holler: The wolves were howling at the moon last night. He howled with pain when he caught his finger in the door.

--n. 2 yowl, yowling, ululation, ululating, wail, wailing, yelp, yelping, cry; shout, yell, bellow, scream, roar, Colloq holler: The wolf's howl is an eerie, chilling sound. I kicked him and he let out a howl.

howler n. blunder, mistake, error, gaffe; malapropism, Irish bull; Brit bloomer, US clinker, Colloq Brit clanger, US boner: One paper contained the howler, 'Money is the route of all evil', which the author explained should be corrected to, 'The love of money is the root of all evil'.

8.5 hub...
=-

hub n. centre, focus, focal point, pivot, heart, core, nucleus, nave: This is the hub of the city, around which everything else moves.

huddle n. 1 cluster, group, bunch, clump, pack, herd, crowd, throng, mass: Everyone got into a huddle, trying to keep warm. 2 meeting, conference, discussion, consultation: They were in a huddle, deciding what to do next.

--v. 3 cluster, gather, crowd or press together, throng or flock together, nestle, jam or cram together, squeeze together: We huddled in basements during air raids. 4 meet, discuss, confer, consult: Let's huddle on this question of the advertising schedule.

hue n. colour, tint, shade, tinge, tone, cast, tincture, Technical chroma: The dust in the atmosphere gives the sunsets a reddish hue.

huff n. 1 in a huff. piqued, peeved, testy, irritated, angered, vexed, annoyed, in high dudgeon, provoked, exasperated, petulant, in a pet, Colloq (all) het up: She went off in a huff because I didn't praise her painting.

--v. 2 puff, blow, bluster: When I complained about the food, the manager simply huffed and puffed and walked away.

hug v. 1 embrace, clasp, squeeze, cuddle, snuggle, Archaic or literary clip: They hugged each other warmly, then kissed goodbye. 2 follow closely, cling to, stay or keep near or close to: We hugged the ground as the bullets whizzed by overhead.

--n. 3 embrace, clasp, squeeze, Colloq clinch: She saw me, ran over, and gave me a big hug.

huge adj. large, great, enormous, gigantic, giant, immense, massive, tremendous, gargantuan, prodigious, mammoth, colossal, monumental, Brobdingnagian, titanic, stupendous, elephantine, leviathan, mountainous, vast, Colloq jumbo, whopping: The red spot on Jupiter is so huge it could swallow the earth several times over.

hulk n. 1 shipwreck, wreck, derelict, shell, skeleton: The rusting hulk of the once-proud ship is tied up at the dock. 2 oaf, clod, lout, ox, Slang US galoot or galloot, klutz: Don't tell me that hulk of a man painted these delicate miniatures!

hulking adj. clumsy, awkward, ungainly, lubberly, oafish, loutish; unwieldy, cumbersome, bulky, ponderous, massive, ungraceful, inelegant: Their great hulking son could no longer fit into his clothes. That hulking monolith of an office building dominates the entire neighbourhood.

hull n. 1 framework, skeleton, frame, structure, body: The hull of the ship completed, we added the superstructure. 2 shell, pod, case, husk, skin, peel, rind, US shuck: Squirrels carefully nibble through the hull of the nut to get at the kernel inside.

--v. 3 shell, peel, skin, husk, US shuck: We hulled all the nuts and they are now ready for the fruit cake.

hum v. 1 buzz, drone, thrum, murmur, whirr, purr, vibrate, Technical bombinate or bombilate: I want to smell the wild flowers and hear the bees hum once again. 2 bustle, stir, be active, move briskly, Colloq tick (over): Within three months of completion, the new plant was humming. 3 intone: I said, 'Do you know your rock guitar is keeping me awake?', and he replied, 'No, man, but if you hum it I'll try to play it.'

--n. 4 buzz, buzzing, drone, droning, thrum, thrumming, murmur, murmuring, murmuration, whirr, whirring, purr, purring, vibration: From the other room came the hum of conversation.

human adj. 1 mortal, anthropoid, hominoid, android; hominid; Possibly offensive manlike: The aliens from the spaceship had few human characteristics. It is human nature to think. 2 sensitive, defenceless, weak, fallible, vulnerable: She is human, too, and can be easily hurt. 3 kind, kindly, kind-hearted, considerate, charitable, compassionate, merciful, benign, benignant, tender, gentle, forgiving, lenient, benevolent, beneficent, generous, magnanimous, humanitarian, understanding, accommodating, sympathetic, good-natured, humane, sensitive: Human concern for others is in short supply these days.

--n. 4 human being, person, individual, woman, man, child, mortal, one, soul, someone, somebody: Humans have long maltreated many of the animals on which they depend.

humanitarian
adj. 1 See human, 3.

--n. 2 Good Samaritan, benefactor, philanthropist, altruist: Because of her charitable works, Lady Pendleton is thought of as a great humanitarian.

humanity n. 1 human race, people, society, humankind, Homo sapiens; the public, the masses, community; Possibly offensive man, mankind: From what we are told, humanity took millions of years to evolve. 2 humanness, human nature, mortality: On his first voyage to Mars, Kollworth began to doubt his own humanity. 3 kindness, kindliness, kind-heartedness, consideration, helpfulness, charitableness, open-heartedness, warm-heartedness, good will, benevolence, compassion, mercifulness, mercy, benignity, tenderness, warmth, gentleness, leniency or lenience or lenity, beneficence, generosity, unselfishness, magnanimity, understanding, sympathy, sensitivity: It was owing to the humanity of our neighbours that we survived the bombing.

humble   adj. 1 modest, reserved, unpretentious, unostentatious, self-effacing, unassuming, unpresuming: For someone who has accomplished so much, she is quite humble. 2 submissive, meek, servile, obsequious, deferential, mild, respectful, subservient, subdued: Usually pompous, Nigel became humble in the presence of the chairman. 3 lowly, low, inferior, mean, ignoble, ordinary, plebeian, common, simple, obscure, unprepossessing, unimportant, undistinguished, insignificant; low-born, base, base-born: He lives in a humble cottage. Though she came from a humble background, she rose to become prime minister.

--v. 4 chasten, bring or pull down, subdue, abase, debase, demean, lower, degrade, downgrade, reduce, make (someone) eat humble pie, lose face, shame, humiliate, crush, break, mortify, chagrin, Colloq put down, take (someone) down a peg or notch:

He found army discipline a humbling experience.

humdrum adj. dull, boring, tedious, tiresome, wearisome, monotonous, unvaried, unvarying, routine, undiversified, unchanging, repetitious, uneventful, unexciting, uninteresting, prosaic, mundane, ordinary, commonplace, common, banal, dry, insipid, jejune: They saw no way of escaping from their humdrum lives.

humid adj. damp, moist, muggy, clammy, sticky, steamy, soggy, sultry, wet: The weather has been oppressively hot and humid all week.

humiliate v. See humble, 4.

humiliation
n. disgrace, shame, mortification, dishonour, ignominy, indignity, discredit, loss of face, obloquy, abasement, depreciation, detraction, degradation, derogation, belittlement, disparagement, shaming, embarrassment, humbling: He had to suffer the humiliation of being drummed out of the corps.

humility n. modesty, meekness, self-effacement, shyness, diffidence, timidity, timorousness, meekness, bashfulness, mildness, unpretentiousness, submissiveness, servility, self-abasement, lowliness: She sees humility as dissatisfaction with oneself on account of some defect or infirmity.

humorous adj. funny, comical, facetious, laughable, risible, ludicrous, farcical, side-splitting, hilarious, merry; droll, whimsical, amusing, witty, waggish, jocular, jocose, playful, pleasant, Colloq hysterical: The humorous parts of the play sent the audience into gales of laughter.

humour n. 1 funniness, comedy, wit, facetiousness, ludicrousness, drollery, jocoseness or jocosity, jocularity, waggishness, raillery, banter: One writer defined humour as 'the happy compound of pathos and playfulness', another referred to the sense of humour as a 'modulating and restraining balance-wheel'. 2 comedy, farce, jokes, jests, witticisms, wit, Slang wisecracks, gags: Milton was scarcely known as a writer of humour. 3 mood, frame of mind, temper; spirit(s); disposition, nature, temperament: She is in a bad humour till after breakfast.

--v. 4 soothe, gratify, placate, please, mollify, indulge, appease, pamper, cosset, coddle, mollycoddle, jolly, baby, spoil: They are trying to humour him because he's in a bad mood.

hump n. 1 bulge, lump, bump, protuberance, protrusion, projection, knob, node, mass, hunch, enlargement, swelling, growth, excrescence, tumefaction, tumescence; mound, barrow, tell, hummock, hillock, tumulus, Brit dialect tump: Digging into the hump near the trees, we uncovered an ancient burial-ground.

--v. 2 hunch, arch, curve, crook, bend: Sulking in the corner, he humped his back and refused to speak to anyone. 3 drag, lug, haul, carry, heave: She had to hump two heavy suitcases all the way from the railway station.

hunch n. 1 (intuitive) guess, intuition, feeling, impression, suspicion, premonition, presentiment: I had a hunch they would be late. 2 See hump, 1.

--v. 3 See hump, 2.

hunger n. 1 hungriness, emptiness, appetite, ravenousness, voraciousness, voracity; famine, starvation: We ate leaves to stave off the pangs of hunger. Some optimists hope to eliminate hunger from the planet by the year 2000. 2 yearning, desire, craving, itch, thirst, longing, hankering, mania, cupidity, Formal cacoethes, Colloq yen: She felt an insatiable hunger for intellectual companionship.

--v. 3 Usually, hunger for or after. crave, yearn, desire, thirst, want, hanker, Colloq yen, have a yen: Blessed are they who hunger and thirst after righteousness.

hungry adj. 1 famished, starved, starving, ravenous, voracious, empty, hollow, Colloq chiefly Brit peckish: I'm hungry enough to eat a horse. 2 craving, covetous, eager, avid, greedy, keen, yearning, desirous, longing, hungering, thirsting, starving, dying, Colloq hankering: Marooned for years, Crusoe was hungry for the sight of another human being. 3 acquisitive, greedy, thirsty, insatiable, deprived: The parched, hungry earth drank up the rain.

hunt v. 1 chase, pursue, dog, hound, stalk, trail, track (down), trace; course: The jewel thieves were hunted across three continents. 2 Also, hunt for or up or out or through. seek (out), search (for), go in search of or for, look (high and low) for, quest after, go in quest of, scour, ransack, investigate, pry into, go over or through with a fine-tooth comb, examine, explore, Colloq US check out: Detectives hunted the carpet for clues. She is hunting a job in publishing. I have hunted for the ring but cannot find it. Can you hunt up someone to fill the vacancy? Hunt through your pockets again for the key.

--n. 3 chase, pursuit, tracking (down), stalking, hunting; course: The ten-year hunt for the thieves continues. 4 search, quest: My hunt ended when I found the ring.

hunter n. huntsman, huntswoman, stalker, tracker, Nimrod, Orion; huntress: An expert hunter, she bagged three tigers last year.

hurdle n. 1 barrier, obstacle, impediment, hindrance, obstruction, bar, handicap, restraint, snag, (stumbling) block, check, difficulty, complication, interference: Can she overcome the hurdle of prejudice against women?

--v. 2 leap (over), vault (over), jump (over): The fugitive easily hurdled the fence around the compound.

hurl v. throw, toss, shy, sling, fling, pitch, cast, send, fire, heave, propel, let fly, Colloq chuck: The fast bowler hurled the ball past the batsman.

hurricane n. cyclone, tornado, typhoon, whirlwind, twister, wind-storm, storm, gale, blow: The 1985 hurricane destroyed millions of trees.

hurried adj. 1 hasty, feverish, frantic, hectic, breakneck, frenetic, impetuous, rushed, precipitate, swift, quick, speedy; brief, short: We ate a hurried lunch before leaving to catch the train. 2 superficial, cursory, offhand, perfunctory, slapdash: Airport security guards made only a hurried examination of the hand luggage.

hurry v. 1 rush, hasten, make haste, speed, race, dash, hustle, scurry, tear, fly, run, shoot, scoot, scamper, scuttle, hotfoot (it), Colloq shake a leg, get cracking, get a move on, go hell for leather, skedaddle, step on it, step on the gas, Chiefly US hightail (it), go like greased lightning, get a wiggle on: You'll have to hurry to catch your bus. 2 speed up, accelerate, hasten, rush, push, press, expedite; urge, egg: Such changes take time and can't be hurried. She hurried the children along so that they wouldn't miss the bus.

--n. 3 haste, rush, urgency, eagerness; agitation, disquiet, upset, dither, fuss, bustle, ado, to-do, furore or US furor, commotion, turmoil, stir, pother; Colloq stew, sweat: Why all the hurry to finish before dark? He's in an awful hurry to get home.

hurt v. 1 harm, injure, wound; damage, impair, mar, spoil, vitiate, ruin: She's so gentle she wouldn't hurt a fly. The scandal hurt the candidate's chances of election. 2 ache, smart, pain, pinch, sting, burn, torment, gripe: My elbow really hurts where I hit it. 3 distress, grieve, affect, afflict, aggrieve, depress, upset, disappoint, pain, cut to the quick, affront, offend: Sticks and stones may break my bones but names will never hurt me. You always hurt the one you love. 4 injure, maim, wound, cripple, lame, disable, incapacitate, damage, mutilate, mangle: Three people have been badly hurt in a car crash on the motorway.

--n. 5 harm, injury, damage, detriment, disadvantage: How much more hurt can you cause beyond what you have done already? 6 ache, pain, pang, distress, discomfort, suffering, torment, torture, agony; anguish, misery, woe, dolour, sadness, depression: If you rub on this ointment, the hurt will go away. You cannot imagine the hurt we felt when he failed his examinations.

--adj. 7 injured, wronged, pained, rueful, grieved, unhappy, aggrieved, sad, wretched, woebegone, sorrowful, mournful, depressed, dejected, dismal, gloomy, melancholy: Whenever I mention getting a job she gets that hurt expression on her face. 8 damaged, defective, marred, impaired, broken, worn, dilapidated, shop-worn, scratched, bruised, scarred: They are holding a sale of hurt merchandise at the warehouse tomorrow.

hurtful adj. 1 harmful, injurious, detrimental, pernicious, prejudicial, disadvantageous, damaging, deleterious, destructive, noisome, noxious, baneful, mischievous: Efficient government is advantageous to many and hurtful to none. 2 nasty, cruel, cutting, malicious, mean, unkind, wounding, spiteful: He made some hurtful accusations about the librarian's efficiency.

hurtle v. rush (headlong), tear, shoot, race, speed; plunge: The car hurtled round the corner and crashed into a tree. Two bodies hurtled past me into the abyss below.

husband n. 1 mate, spouse, groom, bridegroom, partner, Colloq old man, hubby: My husband and I take turns cleaning the house.

--v. 2 save, keep, retain, hoard, conserve, preserve, store; budget, economize (on), manage: If we husband our resources, we shall have enough for a rainy day.

hush interj. 1 Shush!, Quiet!, Be or Keep quiet or silent or still!, Hold your tongue!, Mum's the word!, Slang Shut up!, Clam up!, Shut your trap!, Button your lip!, Shut your gob!, Brit Belt up!, US Hush up!, Shut your face!, US dialect Hush your mouth!: Hush! You're in a library.

--v. 2 shush, silence, still, quiet: I wish she'd hush the child's wailing. 3 suppress, mute, soften, soft-pedal, whisper: They spoke in hushed tones. 4 Usually, hush up. suppress, repress, quash, cover up, hide, conceal, keep quiet, Colloq squelch: They tried to hush up the news about his extramarital affairs. 5 soothe, allay, calm, quiet, mollify, pacify, placate, tranquillize: Our worst fears were hushed by father's comforting words.

--n. 6 silence, quiet, stillness, peace, tranquillity: A hush came over the crowd as she rose to speak.

husky adj. 1 brawny, strapping, sturdy, burly, well-built, robust, hefty, rugged, powerful, strong, stout, thickset, muscular, tough, Colloq beefy: Two husky men arrived to move the piano. 2 hoarse, gruff, dry, harsh, rasping, rough, raucous: She has a deep, husky voice I would recognize anywhere.

hustle v. 1 rush, push, hurry, hasten, run, dash, scamper, scuttle, scurry, sprint: Mrs Grumble hustles off to the market every morning. He said that one must really hustle to make a living these days. 2 shove, push, drive, force, hasten, expedite, press: The bill was hustled through the legislature in just one day. 3 shove, crowd, push, jostle, elbow, thrust, force: She tried to hustle her way to the front of the queue. 4 push, eject, force, coerce, drive, Colloq bounce: He was hustled out the back door.

--n. 5 pushing, jostling, buffeting, jarring, elbowing, shoving, nudging: We always take taxis to avoid the hustle in the underground. 6 activity, action, stir, movement: I can't concentrate with all the hustle and bustle going on in the office.

hut n. cabin, shack, shanty, shed, lean-to, shelter, cote, Literary cot, Australian gunyah: We found a tiny hut where we could keep out of the storm.

8.6 hybrid...
=-

hybrid n. mixture, cross-breed, half-breed, mongrel, cross, composite, combination, compound: The best wheat for this region is a hybrid developed in our laboratory.

hygienic adj. clean, sanitary, sterile, disinfected, germ-free, aseptic, pure: It is essential that hygienic surroundings be maintained in hospitals.

hypnotize v. fascinate, mesmerize, entrance, cast a spell over or on, captivate, enchant, charm, spellbind, bewitch, enrapture, ensorcell, transport: Greg is completely hypnotized by that singer at Felipe's nightclub.

hypocrisy n. deceit, deceitfulness, duplicity, double-dealing, deception, chicanery, guile, quackery, charlatanism or charlatanry, falseness, fakery, falseness, lying, mendacity, Pharisaism or Phariseeism, Tartuffery, insincerity, two-facedness, sanctimony, sanctimoniousness, Colloq phoneyness or US also phoniness: I loath hypocrisy and double standards.

hypocrite n. deceiver, double-dealer, quack, charlatan, impostor or imposter, mountebank, confidence man or trickster, faker, pretender, liar, Pharisee, whited sepulchre, Tartuffe, flimflammer, Colloq phoney or US also phony, con man, flimflam man or artist, two-face: It is incredible that so many were duped by that hypocrite.

hypocritical

adj. deceptive, deceitful, deceiving, insincere, dissembling, feigning, dissimulating, double-dealing, false, fake, faking, two-faced, pretending, lying, mendacious, Pharisaic(al), sanctimonious, dishonest, underhand, treacherous, perfidious, untrustworthy: He regards the Victorians as nothing but smug prudes and hypocritical moralizers.

hypothesis

n. theory, theorem, postulate, premise or premiss, proposition, assumption, supposition, speculation: Cadwallader's Hypothesis is that television sets watch viewers while viewers are watching them.

hypothetical

adj. assumed, supposed, conjectural, conjectured, hypothesized, putative, surmised, assumed, presumed, suspected, imagined, guessed, speculative, speculated, theoretical, suppositional, suppositious or supposititious: Let us take the hypothetical case of someone, for example, who refuses to pay income tax.

hysterical

adj. 1 raving, mad, beside oneself, crazed, irrational, distracted, rabid, frantic, frenzied, wild, berserk, uncontrolled, uncontrollable, unrestrained, unrestrainable: They are subject to violent, hysterical outbursts. 2 hilarious, side-splitting, uproarious, farcical, comical, funny: The absolutely hysterical sign in our Japanese hotel read, 'You are invited to take advantage of the chambermaid'.

9.0 I

=-

9.1 icing...

=-

icing n. 1 frosting, glaze, coating: Our favourite treat was chocolate cake with chocolate icing. 2 bonus, (fringe) benefit, reward, (extra) added attraction, extra, reward, dividend: He clinched a seventh victory with his partner, putting the icing on the cake of their shared world championship.

icy adj. 1 ice-cold, frigid, arctic, bitter, glacial, freezing, frozen, chill, glacial, hyperborean or hyperboreal, polar, Siberian, wintry, raw, cold, chilling, chilly: The icy wind cut through to the marrow of my bones. 2 cool, chill, chilly, frigid, distant, aloof, remote, freezing, ice-cold, unemotional, unimpassioned, stony, steely, callous, flinty, formal, reserved, forbidding, unfriendly, hostile: She fixed him with an icy stare.

9.2 idea...

=-

idea n. 1 concept, conception, construct, thought, notion, plan, design, scheme, suggestion, recommendation: Is that your idea of a good singing voice? Peter has an excellent idea for increasing sales. 2 notion, fancy, impression, picture, (mental) image, concept, conception, perception, understanding, awareness, apprehension, inkling, suspicion, hint, suggestion, approximation, clue, intimation, guess, estimate, estimation, impression: I haven't the slightest idea what you are talking about. Can you give us any idea of the cause of the delay? 3 belief, opinion, sentiment, feeling, teaching(s), doctrine, tenet, principle, philosophy, view, viewpoint, outlook, notion, conviction, position, stance: Western and Eastern ideas differ as to the role of women in society. 4 aim, goal, purpose, objective, object, end, point, reason, raison d'ˆtre: What was the idea of telling the teacher? The idea behind the scheme was to boost sales. The idea of the game is to capture your opponent's king. 5 hypothesis, theory, notion, dream, fantasy or phantasy: His invention is based on the idea of an anti-gravity device.

ideal n. 1 model, paragon, standard, criterion, paradigm, exemplar, pattern, example, epitome: She regarded Florence Nightingale as her ideal. 2 acme, (standard of) perfection, nonpareil: The ideal can rarely be achieved, so you had better settle for reality. 3 ideals. principles, morals, standards: Everyone's ideals are compromised sooner or later.

--adj. 4 perfect, excellent, supreme, consummate, complete, model, idyllic: This is an ideal home for a young couple. 5 conceptual, imagined, imaginary, unreal, visionary, idealistic, fictitious, Utopian, notional, mythical or mythic, fantasy, dream, romantic, chimeric(al), illusory, fanciful, fancied: In his ideal world there is no crime, so there is no need for police.

idealistic
adj. visionary, romantic, romanticized, optimistic, starry-eyed, quixotic, Panglossian, impractical, unrealistic: He is idealistic enough to believe that people are basically good.

idealize v. exalt, elevate, glorify, worship, ennoble, deify, apotheosize, put on a pedestal, romanticize: Because she idealizes him, she cannot see his true nature.

ideally adv. 1 under or in the best of circumstances, at best, in a perfect world, all things being equal: Ideally, February is the time to holiday in the Caribbean. 2 theoretically, in theory, in principle: Ideally, people ought to have money before they are too old to enjoy it. 3 perfectly: John and Marsha are ideally suited to each other.

identical adj. 1 same, twin, duplicate, indistinguishable, interchangeable; selfsame: The two leaves look identical to me. The duchess and I had the identical suite at the hotel, but a week apart. 2 similar, matching, like, alike, comparable, equal, equivalent, corresponding: The children are dressed in identical clothing.

identification
n. 1 connection, recognition, distinguishing, indication, perception, detection, selection, naming, labelling, pinpointing, designation, characterization, denomination; authentication, verification, establishment, certification,

substantiation, corroboration, Colloq fingering: Her identification of him as her attacker is not sufficient to convict him. 2 classification, classifying, cataloguing, categorization, categorizing, pigeon-holing: How much time is needed for the identification of the minerals in the moon rocks? 3 ID, ID card, identity card, badge, credentials: Only up-to-date identification will be accepted as proof of ownership. 4 connection, association, affiliation, empathy, sympathy, rapport, relationship: His continued identification with comic-book heroes is immature.

identify v. 1 classify, categorize, catalogue, pigeon-hole, sort (out), specify, pinpoint, home (in) on, name, label, tag, recognize, place, mark, label, tag, pinpoint, single out, point out, Colloq put one's finger on: We are unable to identify the butterfly you caught. 2 connect, associate, relate, ally: She is closely identified with the success of the enterprise. 3 diagnose, specify, name, recognize: From the symptoms, the doctor identified the disease as bubonic plague. 4 Usually, identify with. empathize (with), sympathize (with), relate (to), Colloq dig: His problem is that he identifies too closely with his dog.

identity n. 1 sameness, oneness, unanimity, indistinguishability, agreement, accord, congruence: Identity of purpose held them together under stress. 2 personality, individuality, distinctiveness, uniqueness, particularity, singularity: Many who join the army lose their identity.

ideology n. belief(s), convictions, tenets, credo, philosophy, principles, creed, dogma, teachings, doctrine: Buddhism had a great influence on his ideology.

idiom   n. 1 language, tongue, speech, vernacular, dialect, argot, patois, jargon, cant, idiolect, parlance, fa‡on de parler, phraseology: The play is written in a rather old-fashioned idiom. 2 expression, (set) phrase, phrasing, locution, clich,: The term red herring , an idiom meaning 'false trail', is used of something which is neither red nor a herring.

idle   adj. 1 unused, inactive, unoccupied, non-operative, stationary: The looms were idle for months. The devil finds work for idle hands. 2 unemployed, out of work, redundant, jobless, workless, Colloq at leisure, at liberty, between assignments, resting, US on the beach: Unable to find work, Gilbert has been idle for a year. 3 indolent, lazy, listless, lethargic, loafing, slothful, shiftless, lackadaisical, loitering, fain‚ant: Since winning the lottery, Crouch has become one of the idle rich. 4 bootless, fruitless, unproductive, abortive, unfruitful, pointless, vain, trifling, trivial, shallow, nugatory, superficial, insignificant, meaningless, senseless, unimportant, frivolous, worthless, useless, otiose, unavailing, futile: We were passing the time at the pub in idle chatter when Michael walked in. He had no factual information to offer, only idle speculation.

--v. 5 Often, idle away. waste, fritter away, while away, kill: They idle away the hours lying by the swimming-pool. 6 laze (about), loiter, kill time, loaf, loll, lounge, take it easy, Brit potter or US putter about or away, mess about, fool away, fool around or about, Colloq Brit muck about, bugger about, US lallygag or lollygag, goof off or around, Military slang US gold-brick: Stop idling and get down to work.

idleness n. 1 inactivity, inaction, lethargy, torpor, indolence, laziness, sluggishness, sloth, slothfulness, shiftlessness, inertia, lassitude, torpor, flƒnerie, dolce far niente; unemployment, Colloq US lallygagging or lollygagging, Military slang US gold-bricking: The strike created enforced idleness for non-union workers as well. 2 shirking, malingering, dawdling, loafing, time-wasting, lazing, Colloq dilly-dallying, shilly-shallying, Brit skiving: The foreman warned that he would not tolerate idleness.

idler   n. loafer, layabout, slacker, shirker, sluggard, lazybones, slugabed, laggard, dawdler, clock-watcher, drone, slouch, ne'er-do-well, fain‚ant, Colloq lounge lizard, Military slang US gold brick or gold-bricker: To fill out a crew we often recruited men from among waterfront idlers.

idly   adv. 1 unproductively, lazily, indolently: She wanders about the shops, idly whiling away the hours. 2 offhandedly, unconsciously, mechanically, thoughtlessly, unthinkingly, obliviously, insensibly, indifferently: He sat quietly, his fingers idly drumming on the tabletop.

idol n. 1 (graven) image, icon or ikon, effigy, fetish, tiki, symbol: Nebuchadnezzar's people worshipped golden idols. 2 hero or heroine, superstar, celebrity, luminary, matin,e idol, favourite, pet, darling: When he was a lad his idol was Quatermain, from the Rider Haggard novels.

idolize v. adore, admire, adulate, worship, revere, reverence, venerate, put on a pedestal, exalt, glorify, deify, lionize, look up to, apotheosize: She had always idolized her father, and his death came as a terrible blow to her.

idyllic adj. Arcadian, paradisaic(al) or paradisiac(al), heavenly, Edenic, halcyon, ideal, idealized, pastoral, rustic, bucolic, picturesque, charming, unspoilt or unspoiled, peaceful, pacific: He returned to the island to live out his life in idyllic repose.

9.3 ignorance...
=-

ignorance n. unfamiliarity, unawareness, unconsciousness, benightedness, unenlightenment, inexperience, greenness: Ignorance of the law is no excuse. Mistakes are often caused by ignorance rather than stupidity.

ignorant adj. 1 unknowing, uninformed, untaught, uneducated, unschooled, unread, unlearned, unlettered, illiterate: Is there anyone so ignorant as not to know who the Duke of Wellington was? 2 unaware, unfamiliar, unconscious, benighted, unenlightened, unwitting, in the dark, oblivious, Formal nescient: She knows many things about which we are ignorant. 3 inexperienced, green, na‹ve, innocent, unsophisticated: They used to tease ignorant young apprentices by sending them to find a left-handed hammer. 4 uncouth, ill-mannered, discourteous, impolite, uncivil, boorish: Don't be so ignorant and open the door for the lady!

ignore v. 1 disregard, overlook, pass over or by, turn a blind eye to, be blind to, turn one's back on, turn a deaf ear to, wink at, brush off or aside: If you are over 65, you may ignore this paragraph. 2 snub, give (someone) the cold shoulder, reject, send to Coventry, turn one's back on, Colloq give (someone) the brush-off or go-by, cut, turn one's nose up at: I don't care if you are cruel to me, just don't ignore me.

9.4 ill...
=-

ill adj. 1 ailing, unsound, sick, indisposed, infirm, unhealthy, in a bad way, diseased, afflicted, in bad health, sickly, unwell, not well, out of commission; invalided, valetudinarian; Colloq under the weather, in a bad way, poorly, not up to snuff, out of sorts, on the sick-list, off one's feed, Slang Brit dicky, seedy: Call a doctor - this man is ill. I was rather ill last night after eating that fish mousse. 2 bad, wicked, sinful, evil, iniquitous, immoral, depraved, vicious, vile, wrong, corrupt: Police raided several houses of ill repute. 3 hostile, unfriendly, antagonistic, belligerent, malevolent, malicious, ill-wishing, unkind(ly), harsh, cruel: The reading of the bequests sparked ill will amongst the heirs. 4 harmful, hurtful, injurious, detrimental, damaging, pernicious, dangerous, adverse, deleterious, baleful, bad, unfavourable, destructive, disastrous, catastrophic, ruinous, cataclysmic: He suffered no lasting ill effects from the accident. 5 bad, miserable, wretched, disastrous, unfavourable, unpropitious, untoward, disturbing, unfortunate, unlucky, inauspicious, ominous, unpromising, sinister, unwholesome: Ill fortune led Ulysses to our isle. It is an ill wind that blows nobody good. 6 ill at ease. uncomfortable, discomfited, uneasy, edgy, on edge, fidgety, nervous, anxious, disturbed, distressed, troubled, awkward, unsure, uncertain: I felt ill at ease in the presence of so august a personage.

--n. 7 evil, abuse: Speak no ill of her in my home! 8 harm, damage, injury, hurt, mischief, trouble, misfortune, misery, affliction, pain, distress, woe, woefulness, discomfort, unpleasantness, disaster, catastrophe, cataclysm, calamity, adversity, damage, suffering, ruin, destruction: You will be held responsible if any ill befalls the children. 9 injustice, inequity, wrong, evil, sin, transgression, abuse, mistreatment, maltreatment: He entered politics hoping to cure some of society's ills.

--adv. 10 badly, adversely, unfavourably, poorly, inauspiciously, unfortunately, unluckily: Don't speak ill of the dead. 11 badly, adversely, unfavourably, critically, harshly, unkindly: Please don't think ill of me for failing to attend your wedding. 12 unkindly, harshly, unfairly, unjustly, improperly, badly, wrongly, wrongfully, unsatisfactorily, poorly, malevolently, maliciously: He insists that he was ill-treated when in prison. 13 scarcely, hardly, by no means, in no way: It ill behoves you to criticize other people's English.

ill-advised

adj. 1 inadvisable, ill-judged, injudicious, ill-considered, misguided, unwise, imprudent, inappropriate, unpropitious, inexpedient, impolitic, wrong-headed, thoughtless; indiscreet: It would be ill-advised to sell your house at this time. 2 hasty, rash, reckless, impetuous, rash, foolhardy, incautious, short-sighted, improvident: Driving without a seat belt is ill-advised.

illegal adj. unlawful, illegitimate, criminal, felonious, outlawed, prohibited, interdicted, forbidden, proscribed, wrongful, unauthorized, verboten, illicit, Law actionable: The bookkeeper was prosecuted for illegal appropriation of funds.

illegible adj. unreadable, unintelligible, indecipherable or undecipherable, incomprehensible: An illegible message was scrawled on the wall.

illegitimate

adj. 1 See illegal. 2 bastard, natural, fatherless, born out of wedlock, born on the wrong side of the blanket, misbegotten: Illegitimate children were often offered for adoption in those days. 3 irregular, improper, incorrect, non-standard, invalid, unauthorized, spurious: Purists consider the reason is because an illegitimate usage.

ill-founded

adj. groundless, baseless, without foundation, unsupported, unsubstantiated, empty, unjustified, unproven, uncorroborated, unsound, erroneous: He wasted a great deal of time refuting her ill-founded accusations.

illicit adj. 1 See illegal. 2 wrong, improper, underhand(ed), secret, furtive, clandestine, back-door, Colloq US sneaky: They grew rich on the proceeds of illicit liquor.

illiterate

adj. unlettered, analphabetic; unschooled, untaught, uneducated, benighted, ignorant, unenlightened: She teaches illiterate people to read.

ill-mannered

adj. rude, discourteous, impolite, ill-bred, uncivil, disrespectful, uncourtly, ungallant, ungracious, indecorous, ungentlemanly, unladylike, impudent, insolent, insulting, impertinent, brazen: That ill-mannered oaf didn't even apologize for knocking me down.

illness n. sickness, disease, disorder, affliction, ailment, malady, complaint, infirmity, disability, indisposition, affection, Colloq bug: His illness is serious but not contagious.

ill-treat v. mistreat, maltreat, abuse, misuse, harm, hurt, injure, persecute, mishandle: He is at last being punished for those years he ill-treated his wife.

illuminate

v. 1 light (up), brighten, lighten, throw or cast or shed light on or upon: She had only a single candle to illuminate her sewing. 2 clarify, throw or cast or shed light on or upon, enlighten, clear up, elucidate, explain, explicate, reveal: The lectures on Heidegger illuminated his philosophy to some extent. 3 rubricate, decorate, adorn, embellish, ornament: The museum has the best collection of illuminated manuscripts.

illumination

n. 1 lighting, light, brightness, radiance, luminosity, incandescence, fluorescence, phosphorescence: The illumination from the fire was barely enough to read by. 2 enlightenment, insight, information, learning, revelation, edification, instruction, awareness, understanding, clarification: It is astonishing what illumination his lectures brought to his audiences.

illusion n. 1 deception, delusion, fancy, misconception, misapprehension, fallacy, error, mistake, mistaken or false impression: He is labouring under the illusion that he is a great pianist. 2 fantasy, day-dream, hallucination, phantasm, phantom, chimera, phantasmagoria, mirage, aberration, vision, spectre, figment of the imagination, will-o'-the-wisp, ignis fatuus: For years after he died, she had the illusion of seeing her father everywhere.

illusory adj. illusive, imaginary, fictional, unreal, untrue, fallacious, false, mistaken, imagined, fanciful, fancied, hallucinatory, deceptive, misleading, apparent,: Any financial gains that you perceive in the scheme are purely illusory.

illustrate

v. 1 instance, exemplify, demonstrate: Let me illustrate my point with the following example. 2 picture, illuminate, grangerize; decorate, embellish, emblazon, ornament, adorn: We are looking for an artist to illustrate the book.

illustration

n. 1 example, case (in point), instance, sample, specimen, exemplar, Colloq for instance: This film is an illustration of the film noir genre. 2 picture, depiction, representation, figure: An illustration of a jet engine appears on page 32.

illustrious

adj. distinguished, famous, noted, renowned, famed, eminent, well-known, prominent, important, notable, respected, esteemed, venerable, honoured, acclaimed, celebrated, great: He belongs in the same category as other illustrious generals, like Kitchener.

ill will n. dislike, animosity, hatred, hate, loathing, abhorrence, detestation, malevolence, malice, hostility, enmity, animus, antipathy, aversion, rancour, acrimony, spite, venom, vitriol, acerbity: I bear her no ill will for the way she treated me. She incurred his ill will by refusing him access to the children.

9.5 image...

=-

image n. 1 likeness, representation, picture, sculpture, statue, effigy, figure, portrait, simulacrum; icon or ikon, idol, graven image, fetish, tiki: Images of Bol¡var can be seen in every town square in Venezuela. The tribesmen still worshipped golden images of their gods. 2 epitome, duplicate, copy, counterpart, facsimile, replica, double, twin, Doppelg„nger, clone, Colloq spitting image or spit and image, (dead) ringer: He's the image of father. He stared at his image in the mirror. 3 impression, concept, conception, perception, idea, perception, notion, mental picture: You are quite different from my image of you. 4 epitome, representative, model, (typical) example, essence, archetype, embodiment, incarnation, personification, materialization, reification, corporealization: For us, she was the very image of what a leader should be. 5 figure (of speech), trope, metaphor, allusion, simile, symbol: The poem contains images that are obscure unless you know Greek myths. 6 form, appearance, likeness, guise, semblance, aspect, mould, cast: Man claims to be created in God's image.

imagery   n. figurativeness, allusion, symbolism: Constance's poems are filled with ornate imagery.

imaginary adj. fictitious, fanciful, fancied, chimerical, imagined, fictive, illusory or illusive, visionary, made-up, unreal, untrue, mythical or mythic, notional, abstract; legendary, mythological: When he was a boy, he had an imaginary friend called Carbonario.

imagination
n. 1 mind's eye, fancy; creativity, inventiveness, ingenuity, insight, inspiration, vision, imaginativeness, creative power(s): His fertile imagination conjured up all kinds of terrifying pictures. 2 thought, thinking, (mental) acuity, intelligence, wit: It doesn't take much imagination to see why you don't want to go to school this morning.

imaginative
adj. 1 creative, original, clever, ingenious, inventive, innovative, inspired, inspiring, enterprising, resourceful: Richard is a highly imaginative computer programmer. 2 fanciful, fantastic, visionary, poetic(al), whimsical, contrived, fictitious, fictional: The imaginative tale of Don Quixote sprang from the mind of Cervantes.

imagine v. 1 think of, contemplate, picture, envisage, consider, ponder, meditate on, envision, visualize, conceive (of), conceptualize, create, think up, concoct, devise, Colloq dream up, cook up: I cannot imagine what you are referring to. Imagine, if you can, a world without conflict. 2 suppose, guess, conjecture, assume, presume, take it, infer, take (it) for granted, take it as given, think, fancy, believe, gather, surmise, suspect, judge, deem: I imagine that you won't want a drink if you are driving. You are imagining things if you think she is trying to undermine your authority.

imitate v. 1 mimic, copy, ape, parrot, monkey, emulate, impersonate, do an impression of; echo, simulate: Cruikshank was imitating the boss, who walked in at that very moment. His style imitates that of Carlyle. 2 copy, mimic, mock, parody, satirize, burlesque, caricature, travesty, Colloq spoof, take off, Brit send up: In Hudibras, Samuel Butler imitated the style of the heroic epic.

imitation n. 1 copying, mimicking, mimicry, aping, parroting, emulating, emulation, impersonating, impersonation, impression: Imitation is the sincerest form of flattery. 2 impersonation, parody, satirization, burlesque, caricature, mockery, travesty, Colloq take-off, Brit send-up: In his nightclub act, he does scathing imitations of celebrities. 3 copy, fake, counterfeit, forgery: These are modern imitations of ancient coins. 4 copy, replica, replication, reproduction, simulation, facsimile, duplicate, duplication, simulacrum: We keep the original in a safe place and put the imitations on display.

--adj. 5 fake, synthetic, artificial, simulated, sham, ersatz, mock, factitious, reproduction, man-made, Colloq phoney or US also phony: It doesn't take an expert to see that this is an imitation diamond.

immaculate

adj. 1 spotless, stainless, unblemished, pure, clean, untarnished, unsullied, unsoiled, snow-white, spick and span, dapper, spruce; tidy, neat: Each morning he donned an immaculate uniform. 2 pure, chaste, innocent, virginal, virtuous, vestal, pristine, undefiled, untainted, unspoiled, unblemished, stainless, unadulterated: He remained convinced of his wife's immaculate reputation. 3 faultless, flawless, perfect, errorless, impeccable: His essay on Gibbon is an example of immaculate scholarship.

immaterial
adj. 1 unimportant, inconsequential, nugatory, trivial, trifling, petty, slight, insignificant, slight, flimsy, light, unessential, non-essential, of little account or value: Whether he stays or goes is immaterial to me. 2 airy, incorporeal, disembodied, ethereal, ephemeral, evanescent, unsubstantial: The concept of immaterial matter, such as a gas, is difficult to comprehend.

immature adj. 1 premature, undeveloped, unripe, rudimentary, half-grown, unformed, unfledged, fledgling, unfinished, young, new, fresh, incomplete: The immature growth in the spring is not hardy enough to survive a frost. 2 green, callow, unsophisticated, na‹ve, jejune, inexperienced, babyish, childish, childlike, puerile, juvenile, raw, Colloq wet behind the ears: She is a bit immature to assume so many responsibilities.

immeasurable
adj. vast, infinite, immense, huge, great, limitless, boundless, endless, interminable, unbounded, unlimited, measureless, inestimable, measureless, unfathomable; innumerable, numberless, uncountable, uncounted, incalculable: The tiny ship hurtled through the immeasurable vastness of space. An immeasurable quantity of angels can dance on the head of a pin. He accomplished immeasurable good during his lifetime.

immediate adj. 1 instantaneous, instant, abrupt, sudden, swift; spontaneous, instinctive, triggered, unhesitating, unthinking, automatic, reflex, knee-jerk: Why is your immediate reaction always to say 'It cannot be done'? 2 direct, nearest, next, closest, adjacent, proximate; nearby: Although he had cancer, the immediate cause of death was pneumonia. Is there a phone box in the immediate vicinity? 3 existing, present, current, actual, pressing, urgent: The immediate problem is to find a way of getting out of here.

immediately
adv. 1 at once, instantly, instantaneously, promptly, right away, right now, without delay, unhesitatingly, without hesitation, forthwith, this instant, directly, in a wink, in a

second, in a minute, tout de suite, instanter, Chiefly Brit straightaway or straight away, Colloq pronto, in a jiffy, in two shakes of a lamb's tail, before you can say 'Jack Robinson', at the drop of a hat: Come here immediately. I shall be there immediately. 2 directly, closely, intimately: These reactions are immediately concerned with the temperature.

--conj. 3 when, as soon as, the moment (that), Brit directly: Immediately he heard the news, he hurried to her side.

immense adj. enormous, gigantic, extensive, vast, huge, massive, voluminous, tremendous, staggering, stupendous, mammoth, colossal, giant, titanic, Cyclopean, jumbo, elephantine, Brobdingnagian, Slang US humongous: Our exit from the cave was blocked by an immense boulder.

immerse v. 1 plunge, sink, submerge, dip, dunk, duck, inundate: Immerse the device in the water before switching it on. 2 plunge, sink, submerge, bury, absorb, engross, engage, occupy, involve: I immersed myself in my work and never noticed the time.

immigrant n. newcomer, arrival, settler, Australian migrant; alien, foreigner, outlander, outsider: Her parents were immigrants from the Ukraine.

imminent adj. impending, looming, threatening, menacing, at hand, nigh, immediate, close (by or at hand), (forth)coming, drawing near or close or nigh, momentary: We face imminent disaster if steps are not taken now.

immoderate

adj. excessive, extreme, exorbitant, unreasonable, inordinate, extravagant, intemperate; outrageous, preposterous, exaggerated, unrestrained, undue: Their immoderate demands for reparations cannot be met.

immodest adj. 1 indecent, shameless, shameful, indecorous, titillating, revealing; indelicate, improper, wanton, loose, unrestrained, provocative, obscene, lewd, smutty, dirty, lascivious, bawdy, coarse, Colloq sexy: The striptease was, to say the least, immodest. The streakers will be punished for their immodest behaviour. 2 brazen, forward, bold, impudent, impertinent, brash, arrogant, insolent, presumptuous, disrespectful, Colloq fresh, cheeky: Carl's immodest demand for a private office was ignored.

immoral adj. 1 corrupt, bad, wicked, evil, iniquitous, sinful, impure, unethical, unprincipled, abandoned, base, wrong, vile, depraved, dissolute, degenerate, reprobate, unregenerate, nefarious, flagitious, villainous, treacherous, unscrupulous, dishonest: Is it immoral to avoid paying one's taxes? 2 immodest, debauched, indecent, wanton, libertine, lecherous, lustful, libidinous, carnal, concupiscent, salacious, licentious, lascivious, lewd, obscene, pornographic, dirty, smutty, filthy: He was convicted for living off immoral earnings.

immortal adj. 1 undying, eternal, deathless, everlasting, eternal, imperishable, sempiternal, never-ending, endless, ceaseless, perpetual, timeless, constant, permanent, indestructible: Did the Egyptian pharaohs believe themselves immortal? 2 divine, heavenly, godlike: The immortal wisdom of God guides man. 3 remembered, celebrated, unfading, famous, renowned, classic, lauded, praised, honoured, timeless: The immortal writings of Shakespeare inspire us still.

--n. 4 Olympian, god or goddess; hero or heroine, legend, genius, great: To be sure, we must consider Bach as one of the immortals.

immortalize

v. celebrate, honour, glorify, memorialize, commemorate, apotheosize, canonize, beatify, exalt, ennoble, extol: Dickens's father was immortalized as Mr Micawber.

immovable adj. 1 unmovable, fixed, fast, rooted, set, immobile, stationary, motionless, stable, riveted, anchored, frozen: What happens when an irresistible force meets an immovable object? 2 immutable, unchangeable, unalterable, settled, set, unmovable, fixed, inflexible; unshakeable or unshakable, unswerving, firm, determined, steadfast, staunch, rigid, dogged, obdurate, unyielding, unwavering, resolute, unflinching, adamant(ine), stony, impassive, unbending, impassive, emotionless, unmoved: Christmas day, which always falls on December 25th, is an immovable feast. Despite pleas for mercy, the judge was immovable and she was hanged the next day.

immune adj. inoculated, vaccinated; exempt, safe, protected, insusceptible or unsusceptible, invulnerable, untouched, unaffected: She never caught smallpox because a mild case of cowpox had made her immune. Rick mistakenly thought himself immune to Sally's charms.

immunity n. 1 exemption, non-liability, invulnerability, protection, excuse, release, exclusion, privilege, freedom, indemnity, amnesty, exoneration, absolution: In return for his testimony he was granted immunity from prosecution. 2 insusceptibility or unsusceptibility, protection, inoculation, vaccination: Immunity to a number of diseases is conferred by this one injection.

imp n. devil(kin), demon, sprite, evil spirit, hobgoblin, goblin, elf, pixie or pixy, leprechaun, puck, brownie, fairy; scamp, urchin, gamin, rogue, rascal, mischief-maker, brat: Sitting on my shoulder as I write is a tiny imp that inserts the misspellings. Give me a hug, you little imp!

impact n. 1 collision, contact, striking, crash, smash, bump, colliding, crashing, smashing, bumping: The impact of the car against the stone wall was heard a mile away. 2 effect, impression, influence, import, meaning, bearing, force, thrust, weight, burden, brunt, repercussions, results, consequences: It is becoming clear that technology is having an adverse impact on the environment.

--v. 3 strike, hit, collide with: When its orbit decays, the satellite will impact the surface of the moon. 4 affect, modify, change: I wonder how the news of the bankruptcy will impact share prices.

impair v. weaken, cripple, damage, harm, mar, injure, spoil, ruin: 'I understand that leading a wild life can impair your hearing.' 'What did you say?'

impairment

n. lessening, weakening, damage, harm, injury, flaw, imperfection, reduction, vitiation, deterioration, decrease, diminution, enfeeblement, debilitation, undermining, worsening, marring: The impairment to my eyesight was caused by reading in the dark.

impale v. spear, stab, pierce, skewer, spit, stick, transfix, spike: They impaled the heads of their enemies on poles as a warning.

impart v. 1 give, cede, lend, bestow, convey, confer, grant, afford, accord, contribute: The dyes impart different colours to the ink. 2 communicate, tell, relate, transmit, reveal, divulge, disclose, pass on, intimate, confide: I've had a hard week imparting knowledge to bored schoolchildren.

impartial adj. fair, just, even-handed, disinterested, neutral, unprejudiced, unbiased, objective, equitable: Judge Leaver can be relied on to render an impartial verdict.

impasse n. deadlock, dead end, stalemate, stand-off, block, blockage, Colloq blind alley: Negotiations reached an impasse and the meeting broke up.

impassioned

adj. passionate, inspired, spirited, stirring, fervent, emotional, fervid, ardent, heated, warm, rousing, aroused, vehement, zealous, eager, earnest, enthusiastic, vigorous, animated, fiery, inflamed, glowing: The barrister made an impassioned plea for the accused.

impassive adj. cool, apathetic, calm, serene, composed, unmoved, cold, cold-blooded, reserved, imperturbable, unimpressionable, unruffled, controlled, contained, phlegmatic, lackadaisical, stoical, unemotional, taciturn, unfeeling, stolid, emotionless, uncaring, indifferent, undisturbed, callous, unsympathetic, stony, dispassionate, detached, nonchalant, unconcerned, insouciant, remote: I could see nothing in the judge's impassive expression to hint at his decision.

impatient adj. 1 uneasy, nervous, fidgety, agitated, restless, restive, unquiet, eager, fretful, agog, chafing, impetuous, athirst, Slang itchy, US antsy: There is a short wait for seats, so please don't get impatient. 2 irritable, irascible, testy, short-tempered, querulous, waspish, brusque, curt, short, hot-tempered, snappish, indignant, demanding: I don't mean to be impatient, but I have been waiting for three hours.

impeach v. 1 charge, accuse, arraign, indict, incriminate, implicate, inculpate, blame, censure: They were impeached for crimes against the state. 2 (call into) question, challenge, attack, disparage, discredit, impugn, deprecate, belittle, asperse, cast aspersions on, declaim, slander, malign, vilify: My daughter's character had been impeached by the witness.

impeccable
adj. faultless, flawless, perfect, ideal, pure, correct, proper, spotless, immaculate, unblemished, spotless, unimpeachable, blameless: His lectures, though impeccable in content and style, lacked fire.

impede v. bar, obstruct, block, thwart, check, hinder, hamper, slow, retard, restrain, brake, hold up, delay, foil, confound, inhibit, curb, spike, stop: You can do nothing to impede the relentless march of time.

impediment
n. bar, barrier, obstruction, block, check, hindrance, encumbrance, restraint, hold-up, hitch, snag, restriction, stricture, bottleneck, delay, hang-up, inhibition, curb: What are the impediments to a happy marriage?

impending adj. imminent, approaching, (close or near) at hand, close, nearing, forthcoming, brewing, to come, in view, in prospect, in store, in the offing, on the horizon, in the air; looming, threatening, menacing; Colloq Brit on the cards, US in the cards: The impending deadline made us work all the faster. We had a feeling of impending doom.

imperative
adj. 1 mandatory, compulsory, necessary, required, requisite, demanded, obligatory, indispensable, essential, crucial, vital, urgent, pressing, exigent: It is imperative that we catch the 5.04 to London. 2 imperious, commanding, authoritarian, overbearing, peremptory, autocratic, domineering, magisterial, lordly, arbitrary, dictatorial, dogmatic, tyrannical, despotic, Colloq bossy: We were all shaken into obedience by her imperative tone.

imperceptible
adj. 1 invisible, indiscernible, indistinguishable,

undetectable, obscure, vague, ill-defined; inaudible: The differences between the twins are imperceptible. 2 indistinct, unclear, unnoticeable, slight, subtle, inconsiderable, inappreciable, minute, tiny, slight, minuscule, infinitesimal, microscopic: Her only response was an imperceptible flicker of her eyelid.

imperfect adj. wanting, unfinished, undeveloped, incomplete, deficient, defective, faulty, flawed, patchy: This is an imperfect translation of the poem.

imperfection
n. flaw, failing, fault, error, defect, blemish, damage; inadequacy, insufficiency, deficiency, frailty, weakness, foible, shortcoming, peccadillo, shortfall, fallibility, infirmity: We have reduced the price because of tiny imperfections in the weave. Imperfections in her character make her unsuitable for the job.

imperial adj. 1 kingly, kinglike, queenly, queenlike, princely, princelike, regal, royal, sovereign: The imperial court was rich and splendid. 2 majestic, royal, regal, lofty, exalted, supreme, august, noble, superior, imposing, splendid, magnificent, grand, excellent: Her imperial presence outshone all at the ball.

impermeable
adj. impenetrable, impassable, impervious, closed, sealed, hermetic: The floor has been damp-proofed by the insertion of an impermeable membrane under the concrete.

impersonal
adj. 1 detached, objective, disinterested, fair, equitable, dispassionate, unprejudiced, unbiased: The enforcement of the law should be entirely impersonal. 2 formal, stiff, strait-laced, wooden, rigid, prim, stuffy, cool, detached, unfriendly, cold, mechanical: Why does my bank manager have to be so impersonal?

impertinence
n. insolence, boldness, brazenness, impudence, presumption, presumptuousness, brashness, sauciness, pertness, incivility, forwardness, impoliteness, discourtesy, disrespect, audacity,

rudeness, effrontery, Colloq cheek, brass, brassiness, nerve, gall, Slang chutzpah: Why, the impertinence of that waitress to call you by your Christian name!

impertinent
adj. presumptuous, insolent, bold, brazen, impudent, brash, saucy, pert, uncivil, forward, impolite, discourteous, disrespectful, audacious, rude, Colloq cheeky, fresh, brassy, US nervy: That impertinent little upstart had the nerve to ask the lady's age!

impetuous adj. spontaneous, unpremeditated, impulsive, unplanned, hasty, abrupt, precipitate, quick, unthinking, unreasoned, offhand, rash, reckless, spur-of-the-moment, unreflective, headlong: Don't be impetuous and accept the first offer that comes along.

impetus n. drive, stimulus, push, impulse, goad, thrust, energy, momentum, stimulation, incentive, motivation, encouragement, inspiration: Roger's innovative ideas provided the impetus to develop new products.

impious adj. irreligious, irreverent, ungodly, sacrilegious, blasphemous, profane, unholy, wicked, sinful, iniquitous: The priest said that he would be punished for his impious remarks.

implacable
adj. unappeasable, unmollifiable, unpacifiable, unforgiving, intractable, uncompromising, inflexible, inexorable, unyielding, unrelenting, ruthless, cruel, pitiless, merciless, hard, rigid, unsympathetic, uncompassionate: Ever since that incident at school he has been my implacable enemy.

implant v. 1 introduce, instil, insinuate, inject; indoctrinate, inculcate, teach, impress, imprint: They spent months implanting that notion in his mind. 2 graft, root, embed, inlay: You must implant the scion nearer the main stem.

--n. 3 graft, scion, ingraft; insert: Are they really experimenting with brain implants to improve the memory?

implausible
adj. improbable, unlikely, doubtful, dubious, questionable, unbelievable, incredible, far-fetched, unconvincing, debatable,

unreasonable: He told an implausible tale of having been raised by apes.

implement n. 1 utensil, tool, instrument, apparatus, device, appliance, contrivance, mechanism, (piece of) equipment, Colloq gadget, contraption: You need the proper implement for measuring inside diameters.

--v. 2 carry out, execute, accomplish, perform, achieve, (put into) effect, bring about, cause, fulfil, realize: You will need our help to implement the plan.

implicate v. 1 involve, include, associate, embroil, ensnare, entrap, enmesh, entangle: Don't implicate me in your hare-brained schemes! 2 incriminate, inculpate, connect, involve, associate, suspect, concern: Wasn't he implicated in that fraud case last year?

implication

n. 1 involvement, connection, inclusion, association, entanglement: My implication in that affair was minimal. 2 suggestion, hint, insinuation, innuendo, intimation: I resent the implication that I had anything to do with the murder. 3 significance, purport, drift, meaning, denotation, conclusion, inference, import, connotation, sense, burden, substance, essence, pith: The implication of the article is that the government knew about the illegal exports all along.

implicit adj. 1 implied, indirect, inferable, understood, unspoken, undeclared, tacit, inherent, inferential, latent: Certain provisions are implicit in every legal contract and need not be expressed. 2 absolute, unquestioning, unquestioned, unqualified, total, sheer, complete, unmitigated, unalloyed, undiluted, unlimited, unconditional, unreserved, utter, full, wholehearted: I have implicit faith in Nicole's judgement.

imply   v. 1 suggest, hint (at), intimate, insinuate: Are you implying that I don't know what I'm talking about? 2 connote, allude to, refer to, advert to, signify, signal, betoken, denote, indicate, mean, express; involve, include, evidence, assume, presume, entail: Silence sometimes implies consent. Discovery of the tools implies a more advanced culture.

impolite adj. discourteous, ill-mannered, uncivil, rude, ungracious, ungentlemanly, unladylike, pert, disrespectful, saucy, boorish, churlish, crude, indecorous, indelicate, unrefined, ill-bred, vulgar, coarse: The waiter was so impolite that I refused him a tip.

imponderable
adj. unmeasurable, inestimable, inconceivable, incomprehensible, subtle: There are too many imponderable questions to give you a definite answer.

import v. 1 introduce, bring in: We import the raw materials and export the finished product. 2 convey, mean, signify, denote, imply, betoken: He was a dictator, in all the senses that word imports.

--n. 3 meaning, sense, denotation, signification, gist, drift, thrust, intention, implication, purport, connotation, suggestion, allusion, intimation: It was difficult for me to catch the import of her words. 4 importance, significance, weight, consequence, moment, substance: One could see at once that she was a personage of some import.

importance
n. 1 significance, consequence, import, value, worth, weight, account, concern, moment, substance, matter: How chemicals affect the ozone layer is of great importance to everyone. 2 eminence, distinction, esteem, standing, status, position, rank, prominence, pre-eminence, prestige, power, influence, note: His family is of considerable importance in the community.

important adj. 1 significant, consequential, critical, material, vital, urgent, portentous, weighty, grave, substantial, momentous, signal: If it is important, put it in writing. 2 leading, prominent, notable, noted, noteworthy, worthy, eminent, distinguished, respected, high-ranking, top-level, high-level, superior, outstanding, foremost, conspicuous, impressive: She is the most important member of the committee. 3 influential, effective, well-connected, powerful, formidable, mighty, impressive: With those important politicians supporting him, he might win.

impose v. 1 inflict, force, foist: Stop imposing your standards on others. 2 interrupt, interfere, intrude, interpose, insinuate: I hope I am not imposing? 3 levy, place, put, exact: A tax has been imposed on entertainment. 4 impose on or upon. a saddle, burden: He imposes on everyone with his demands for charity. b exploit, take advantage (of), misuse: I hope I am not imposing on your good will in what I ask.

imposing adj. grand, magnificent, impressive, stately, august, majestic, effective, commanding: In his dress uniform, the general was an imposing presence at the reception.

imposition
n. 1 inflicting, infliction; applying, application, enforcing, enforcement, levy, levying, promulgating, promulgation, introducing, introduction, placing, placement, laying on: People resent the imposition of a curfew. 2 burden, onus, weight; intrusion, misuse: A flat-rate tax is a terrible imposition on the poor. Walking the dog is an imposition on my time.

impossible
adj. 1 hopeless, impracticable, inconceivable, unimaginable, unthinkable, unattainable, unsuitable, out of the question, unachievable, unrealizable, unworkable, unresolvable, unsolvable: Reading of the cipher is impossible without a key. 2 absurd, ludicrous, preposterous, ridiculous, illogical, unworkable, outrageous, farcical, outlandish, crazy, weird: Inventors came up with the most impossible designs for aeroplanes.

impostor n. imposter, impersonator, pretender, deceiver, cheat, fraud, swindler, trickster, confidence man, shark, charlatan, mountebank, hypocrite, Colloq con man, phoney or US also phony, tricky Dick, flimflam man, US four-flusher: It wasn't the bank manager but an impostor.

impotence n. 1 weakness, powerlessness, helplessness, frailty, feebleness, enervation, debilitation: The doctor said that his impotence was caused by exhaustion. 2 impotency, inadequacy, inefficacy, ineffectualness, ineffectiveness, ineptness, incompetence: Georgiana was frustrated by her impotence in dealing with the situation. 3 sterility, infertility: Eating raw eggs and oysters does not cure impotence.

impotent adj. 1 weak, powerless, helpless, frail, feeble, enervated, debilitated, infirm: When it came to political influence, I was impotent. 2 inadequate, ineffective, ineffectual, inept, incompetent: The attempted robbery was a half-hearted, impotent effort. 3 sterile, barren, infertile, infecund: They never had any children because Dixon was impotent.

impoverished
adj. 1 destitute, poor, poverty-stricken, penurious, beggared, needy, necessitous, impecunious, in sore or bad straits, straitened, in distress, badly off, bankrupt, insolvent, ruined, Colloq (dead or flat) broke, stony-broke, bad off, pinched, up against it, on one's uppers, short, US strapped, wiped out, Slang Brit skint: A series of failed harvests left many farmers impoverished. 2 stripped, barren, desolate, wasted, empty, depleted, denuded, drained, exhausted: Two years of drought left the land impoverished.

impracticable
adj. 1 unworkable, infeasible or unfeasible, impossible, unattainable, unachievable: The new engine design proved impracticable because of its high fuel consumption. 2 unsuitable, unfit, unusable, useless, inapplicable: As we have no electricity, air conditioners are impracticable.

impractical
adj. 1 visionary, starry-eyed, unrealistic, romantic, quixotic, wild: Laura's solutions are very creative but quite impractical. 2 useless, ineffective, ineffectual, unworkable, unavailing, impracticable: The idea looked good on paper but proved impractical when we tried it.

imprecise adj. inexact, inaccurate, wrong, inexplicit, indefinite, ill-defined, indistinct, vague, hazy, cloudy, blurred, fuzzy, woolly, ambiguous: The readings are imprecise because the needle wavers so much.

impregnable
adj. invulnerable, impenetrable, inviolable, unconquerable, invincible, unbeatable, indomitable, secure, safe, mighty, well-fortified: The walls of the castle, sixteen feet thick, were impregnable.

impregnate

v. 1 fertilize, inseminate, fecundate, make pregnant: The female can be impregnated only during one ten-day interval each year. 2 imbue, suffuse, permeate, penetrate, pervade, infuse, saturate, drench, soak, steep, fill: The preservative must be allowed to impregnate the wood.

impress v. 1 affect, touch, move, reach, stir, strike, sway, influence, persuade, Colloq grab, get under one's skin: She was genuinely impressed by his sincerity. 2 print, imprint, stamp, mark, engrave, emboss: Before the bowl was placed in the kiln, the potter's seal was impressed in its underside. 3 Often, impress on or upon. stress, emphasize, urge, bring home (to): They tried to impress on him the gravity of the situation.

impression

n. 1 sensation, feeling, sense, suspicion, awareness, consciousness, idea, belief, fancy, notion: I have the impression that I have been here before. She gave me the impression that she didn't like me. 2 impact, effect, influence: Are you concerned about the impression of his speech on the crowd? 3 dent, indentation, depression, hollow, mark; stamp, impress, brand: Look here, where the chair has made an impression in the carpet. 4 printing, issue, print, copy, run: This is the third impression from the original plates. 5 impersonation, imitation; parody, satire, Colloq take-off, Brit send-up: After dinner, Gerry did his impression of Churchill.

impressionable

adj. suggestible, susceptible, persuadable or persuasible, impressible, receptive, responsive: They seek to enrol students who are at an impressionable age.

impressive

adj. evocative, moving, affecting, stimulating, exciting, stirring, powerful, provocative, arousing, awe-inspiring, awesome, imposing, formidable, portentous, redoubtable: She has many impressive talents.

imprison v. incarcerate, confine, detain, remand, jail or Brit also gaol, lock up, intern, shut up, put behind bars, put in or throw into irons, put away, Colloq Brit send down, US send up (the river): He was imprisoned for a crime he didn't commit.

imprisonment

n. incarceration, confinement, detention, remand, custody, Literary durance (vile): The sentence is imprisonment for not less than one year.

improbable

adj. doubtful, dubious, unlikely, questionable, unrealistic, far-fetched, remote, implausible, unthinkable, hard to believe or imagine, inconceivable, unbelievable, fanciful, incredible, ridiculous, ludicrous, absurd, crazy, mad, insane, wild, weird, peculiar, strange; impossible; Colloq fishy: It is improbable that they will marry. He gave the most improbable excuses.

improper adj. 1 wrong, mistaken, erroneous, false, incorrect, inaccurate, inexact, imprecise, amiss, faulty, untrue, irregular, abnormal: Sloppy research had led to improper conclusions. 2 unfit, unsuitable, inappropriate, inapt, inapplicable, infelicitous, incongruous, unsuited, unseemly, unbefitting, unfitting, uncalled-for, inapposite, malapropos, out of keeping, out of place, incompatible, inopportune: Do you think it improper for shops to open on Sundays? His wedding was an improper occasion for comments about his philandering. 3 indecorous, indecent, indelicate, immodest, unseemly, untoward, unbecoming, impolite, suggestive, risqu,, off colour, obscene, corrupt, immoral, sinful, wicked, lewd, lascivious: Do you see anything improper in sex education for children?

impropriety

n. 1 improperness, erroneousness, incorrectness, falsity, falseness, inaccuracy, inaccurateness, inexactitude, inexactness, imprecision, impreciseness, irregularity, abnormality: I fail to see the impropriety in refusing to support capital punishment. 2 unfitness, unsuitableness, inappropriateness, inaptness, inapplicability, infelicity, infelicitousness, incongruity, incongruousness, unseemliness, incompatibility, inopportuneness: The judge criticized the impropriety of allowing the child to testify. 3 indecorousness, bad or poor taste, indecency, indelicacy, immodesty, unseemliness, suggestiveness, immorality, sinfulness, wickedness, lewdness, lasciviousness: In those days, the impropriety in wearing a brief bathing costume was thought shocking. 4 slip, blunder, mistake, error, gaffe, gaucherie, faux pas: She admitted to many improprieties during her term of office.

improve   v. 1 better, ameliorate, upgrade, uplift, amend, enhance, fix up, reform, redeem, rehabilitate, redress, repair, correct, rectify, put or set right, emend; modernize, update, refurbish, recondition, renovate, repair, overhaul, remodel: We must improve procedures for dealing with small claims. The landlord refuses to spend any money to improve the property. 2 develop, increase, advance, promote, further, benefit; look up, recover, pick up, Colloq give a new lease of or US on life, take a turn for the better, US take a new lease on life: How can I improve my chances of winning at snooker? Business has improved considerably. 3 convalesce, recuperate, recover, get better, mend, rally, (make) progress, gain (strength or ground), revive: Mrs Costello is out of intensive care and improving daily.

improvement

n. 1 betterment, amelioration; reform, rehabilitation, upgrading, enhancement, repair: The committee is working for the improvement of the neighbourhood. 2 recovery, rise, increase, gain, advance, upswing, progress; recuperation, convalescence: There was an improvement in share prices after release of the trade figures. The patient shows considerable improvement. 3 advance, change for the better: This year's crop is an improvement over last year's.

improvident

adj. 1 short-sighted, imprudent, wasteful, profligate, prodigal, spendthrift, extravagant, lavish, profuse, happy-go-lucky, penny wise and pound foolish, uneconomic(al), thriftless: He who is improvident in his youth plans for a short life. 2 incautious, unwary, rash, reckless, impulsive, impetuous, headlong, heedless, careless, unthinking, unthoughtful, unmindful: The club's present financial straits are the result of having an improvident treasurer.

improvise n. 1 ad lib, extemporize, Colloq play (it) by ear, fake it, wing it: I like a comedian who improvises as he goes along. 2 invent, concoct, devise, contrive, jury-rig; make do: We had to improvise a mast from parts of the boom. When you have nothing to work with, you have to improvise.

imprudent adj. indiscreet, impulsive, rash, reckless, hasty, incautious, impetuous, improvident, careless, heedless, foolhardy, irresponsible, injudicious, ill-judged, thoughtless, ill-considered, ill-advised, inadvisable, unwise, inexpedient, foolish, mad, crazy, insane, inane, silly, perverse, wrong, wrong-headed: It would be imprudent to go out during the storm.

impudence n. impertinence, effrontery, insolence, disrespect, presumption, presumptuousness, audacity, shamelessness, pertness, sauciness, boldness, brazenness, incivility, rudeness, impoliteness, Colloq lip, gall, guff, sauce, mouth, Brit backchat, side, US back talk, Slang chutzpah: He had the impudence to suggest that I was too old for the job!

impudent adj. shameless, impertinent, insolent, disrespectful, forward, presumptuous, audacious, pert, saucy, bold, brazen, cocky, cocksure, arrogant, uncivil, ill-mannered, rude, impolite, Colloq fresh, brassy, cheeky: Asked the simplest question, she is always ready with an impudent response.

impulsive n. impetuous, emotional, unpredictable, unpremeditated, unplanned, spur-of-the-moment, extemporaneous, unconsidered, offhand, instinctive, involuntary, spontaneous, quick, sudden, precipitate, immediate, snap, rash, headlong, rash, reckless, devil-may-care, foolhardy, madcap, wild: You may say that it was impulsive of me to give her all that money, but I love her.

impure adj. 1 dirty, soiled, unclean, sullied, tainted, polluted, defiled, foul, filthy, feculent, infected, scummy, putrid, putrescent, rotten: The water is impure and not fit to drink. 2 mixed, alloyed, contaminated, adulterated, debased, unrefined: Impure ore contains other substances which are removed during processing. 3 unclean, unhallowed, forbidden, disallowed, Judaism tref or treif or treifa: Certain foods are considered impure in some religions. 4 unchaste, immoral, sinful, wicked, evil, vile, unvirtuous, unvirginal, corrupted, defiled, debased, vitiated, degenerate, depraved, loose, wanton, lustful, promiscuous, libidinous, dissolute, licentious, obscene, prurient, dirty, filthy, lubricious or lubricous, salacious, lascivious, lewd, lecherous: The book was condemned as 'likely to encourage impure thoughts'.

impurity n. 1 pollution, contamination, defilement, adulteration, dirtiness, uncleanness, foulness: The impurity of the water in our rivers is a cause for concern. 2 Often, impurities. dirt, contaminant, pollutant, pollution, smut, filth, foreign matter or body: This filter is guaranteed to remove impurities from the water. 3 unchastity, immorality, sinfulness, wickedness, evil, vileness, corruption, degeneration, depravity, looseness, wantonness, lust, lustfulness, promiscuity, promiscuousness, libidinousness, dissoluteness, licentiousness, obscenity, prurience, dirtiness, filthiness, lubricity, salaciousness, lasciviousness, lewdness, lecherousness: Children ought not be exposed to the impurity encountered on everyday television.

imputation

n. charge, indictment, accusation, allegation, challenge, censure, blame, reproach, slur, aspersion, attribution, ascription, insinuation, implication, innuendo: I resent the imputation that I broke the vase on purpose.

impute v. ascribe, assign, attribute, credit, charge, put or set down to; insinuate, imply, suggest, hint at: The critic imputed meanings to the book that the author had never intended.

9.6 inability...

=-

inability n. incapacity, incapability, incompetence, unfitness, ineptness, ineptitude, unqualifiedness, impotence: The inability of many school-leavers to perform simple arithmetical tasks is deeply worrying.

inaccessible

adj. 1 unavailable, unobtainable, unattainable, unreachable, unapproachable: The minister has made himself inaccessible for interviews. 2 impenetrable, impassable, out-of-the-way: The tomb lies in a part of the jungle inaccessible except by air.

inaccurate

adj. wrong, incorrect, erroneous, mistaken, inexact, imprecise, faulty, flawed, imperfect, amiss, awry, false, fallacious, illogical, unsound, Colloq off the mark, off the beam, cold, Chiefly US all wet, US (way) off base Slang cock-eyed, full of hot air: Reports of my death were obviously inaccurate.

inactive adj. 1 passive, placid, quiet, tranquil, quiescent, serene, peaceful, pacific, resting, unmoving, motionless, immobile, immobilized, still, inert, lifeless, inanimate, sluggish, listless, lethargic, lackadaisical, languid, indolent, lazy, torpid, somnolent, idle, slothful, supine: Although there was plenty to do round the house, he remained inactive all summer. 2 non-functioning, inoperative, dormant; unoccupied, idle, unemployed, jobless, out of work, out of a job: The volcano was inactive for a thousand years. These miners have been inactive for six months.

inactivity

n. 1 passiveness or passivity, placidity or placidness, quiet, tranquillity, serenity, peace, peacefulness; motionlessness, immobility, stillness, inertia, inertness, lifelessness, sluggishness, listlessness, lethargy, languidness, indolence, laziness, torpor, somnolence, idleness, slothfulness, sloth: She alternates between periods of activity and inactivity. 2 inaction, quiescence; hibernation, aestivation: During repairs, the reactor will be in a state of inactivity. Some animals have a period of inactivity during certain times of the year.

inadequate

adj. 1 insufficient, deficient, not enough, too little, scarce, meagre, scanty, skimpy, sparse, (in) short (supply); unsatisfactory, imperfect, incomplete, defective, unsuitable, disappointing, flawed, faulty: Funds are inadequate to meet her expenses. The terms of the agreement are inadequate. 2 inadequate to. unsuited to or for, unfit for, unqualified for, not up to, unequal to, unworthy of, inapt for, inept for, incapable of: He proved inadequate to the demands of the job.

inadmissible

adj. disallowed, unallowable, unallowed, forbidden, unacceptable, prohibited, unsuitable, unsuited, unqualified, inappropriate, inapplicable, improper, objectionable, exceptionable, incorrect, wrong: Such evidence is inadmissible in court.

inadvertent

adj. 1 unintentional, unintended, unpremeditated, accidental, unthinking, unwitting, chance; unconscious, unplanned, unstudied, undesigned, uncalculated: She was an inadvertent witness to the murder. I assure you that the error was entirely inadvertent. 2 careless, inattentive, negligent, heedless, unobservant: Inadvertent commentators failed to see the significance of her words.

inalienable
adj. untransferable, intransferable, absolute, inherent, unconsignable, sacrosanct, inviolable, non-negotiable, unnegotiable, unchallengeable, Law imprescriptible, entailed, indefeasible: People have an inalienable right to life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness.

inane   adj. silly, asinine, vapid, vacant, vacuous, absurd, fatuous, foolish, senseless, nonsensical, unreasonable, preposterous, ludicrous, ridiculous, laughable, risible, mad, lunatic, crazy, stupid, dumb, idiotic, moronic, imbecilic, Colloq nutty, nuts, daft, daffy, screwy, batty, dippy, wacky, cuckoo, loony, goofy, Brit bonkers, dotty: Students seem especially prone to inane behaviour.

inanimate adj. lifeless, motionless, immobile, unmoving, inactive, inert, still, spiritless, soulless, cold, dead, defunct: He just sits there, like an inanimate piece of furniture.

inapplicable
adj. inappropriate, unsuitable, unsuited, inapt, irrelevant, unrelated, unconnected, inapposite, beside the point or question, extraneous, off the mark, Colloq US off base: That law is inapplicable in your case.

inappropriate
adj. improper, unfitting, unfit, unsuitable, unsuited, unbefitting, incompatible, malapropos, ungermane, inapt, inapposite, out of keeping, incongruous, infelicitous, inopportune, untimely, irrelevant, inapplicable: Your facetiousness was quite inappropriate to such a solemn occasion.

inarticulate
adj. 1 disjointed, unconnected, incoherent, incomprehensible, jumbled, unintelligible, unclear, illogical, discursive, rambling, scrambled, wild, irrational, muddled, mixed-up,

confused, digressive: She sat through an inarticulate lecture on Joyce's use of the subjunctive. 2 mumbled, garbled, blurred, muffled, muttered, faltering, halting, indistinct, unclear, unintelligible: They communicate with each other in inarticulate grunts. 3 speechless, tongue-tied, (struck) dumb, mute, voiceless: Ed is inarticulate when it comes to describing Vera.

inattentive
n. unobservant, heedless, careless, negligent, neglectful, indifferent, uncaring, apathetic, slack, remiss, unconcerned, detached, unmindful, distracted, distrait(e), absent-minded, abstracted, in a brown study, day-dreaming, oscitant, wool-gathering, musing, oblivious, (with one's head) in the clouds, in a world of one's own: It was late and the children were getting restless and inattentive.

inaudible adj. unheard, imperceptible, indistinct, low, faint, muted, quiet, soft, muffled, stifled: The film was good, although some of the dialogue was inaudible.

inaugurate
v. 1 initiate, begin, commence, enter upon, start, introduce, usher in, institute, launch, originate, set up, get under way, get going: A new programme of health services has been inaugurated. 2 install or instal, induct, invest, establish, instate: The President was inaugurated last week.

inauspicious
adj. unpromising, unlucky, unfortunate, unfavourable, unpropitious, untoward, ill-starred, ominous, ill-omened, ill-fated, portentous, menacing, doomed, sinister, dark, gloomy, cloudy, clouded, black: The middle of a recession is an inauspicious time to set up a business.

inborn   adj. innate, congenital, inherent, inherited, hereditary, inbred, natural, native, constitutional, deep-seated, deep-rooted, ingrained, instinctive or instinctual, Technical connate: A gift for music is inborn.

incandescent
adj. glowing, red-hot, white-hot, alight, aflame, flaming, burning, fiery, candent, flaring: Light-bulbs contain an

incandescent filament.

incapable adj. 1 Often, incapable of. unable (to), powerless (to), incompetent (to), unfit (to), unqualified (to), impotent (to), unequal to, not up to: He seems incapable of completing his assignment. 2 incapable of. insusceptible to, resistant to, impervious to, ill-disposed to, disinclined to, not open to: He is incapable of dishonesty.

incapacitate
v. disable, cripple, paralyse, lame, wound, maim, impair, weaken, enfeeble, enervate, exhaust, devitalize; immobilize, inactivate, deactivate, put out of action, indispose: Severely incapacitated in the crash, John cannot walk without the aid of crutches. The power plant was incapacitated by one well-placed grenade.

incentive n. incitement, impetus, encouragement, goad, prod, provocation, spur, impulse, enticement, lure, inducement, stimulus, motivation, Colloq carrot: The discount is offered as an incentive to buy a new car.

incidence n. frequency, rate, degree, extent, occurrence, prevalence; quantity, amount, number: The incidence of heart disease is high in Britain.

incident n. 1 event, occasion, occurrence, proceeding, circumstance, fact, happening, experience, episode: A curious incident led to the discovery. 2 disturbance, scene, affair, upset, commotion, fracas, skirmish, set-to, Colloq to-do, do: The police were called because of an incident at the pub next door.

incidental
adj. 1 casual, chance, fortuitous, aleatory, random, haphazard, serendipitous, unpredictable, accidental, adventitious, unplanned, unlooked-for, Colloq fluky: Any good that came from the war was incidental. 2 subordinate, secondary, ancillary, minor, lesser, non-essential, unimportant, trivial, negligible, inconsequential, insignificant, petty, trifling, paltry: The incidental events were not covered by the press.

incidentally
adv. 1 by the way, by the by, apropos (of), parenthetically:

Incidentally, I won't be able to go the party tonight. 2 casually, as luck would have it, accidentally, by chance, perchance: In addition to being held for murder, he was incidentally charged with possession of an illegal weapon.

incision n. cut, gash, slit, slash: The surgeon made an incision in the abdominal wall.

incisive adj. 1 keen, sharp, acute, piercing, perspicacious, perceptive, percipient, penetrating, trenchant, canny, shrewd: Shirley offered some incisive observations on the matter. 2 sarcastic, biting, mordant, cutting, caustic, sardonic, ironic(al), sharp, acid, tart, acrid, acrimonious, bitter, acerbic, cynical, stinging, critical: Your incisive comments are not really appreciated, George.

incite v. stimulate, inspire, prompt, move, stir, stir or whip or work up, bestir, excite, fire, exhort, agitate, foment, inflame, provoke, rally, goad, spur, prick, prod, drive, push, egg on, encourage, urge, influence, wake, waken, awaken, rouse, arouse: Who was it that incited the crowd to violence?

incitement

n. 1 stimulation, instigating, spurring, urging, influencing, awakening, wakening, arousing, prodding, prompting, stirring, whipping, exciting, firing, exhorting, agitating, fomenting, inflaming, firing, provoking, rallying, goading, prodding, pricking, needling: Certain rabble-rousers have been accused of incitement of the crowds at the football stadiums. 2 stimulus, incentive, inducement, enticement, temptation, impulse, motivation, influence, instigation, provocation, inspiration, persuasion, exhortation, agitation, fomentation, inflammation, arousal, encouragement, excitement: Greed is a powerful incitement to dishonesty.

incivility

n. rudeness, boorishness, coarseness, discourtesy, uncourtliness, unmannerliness, indecorum, indecorousness, discourteousness, impoliteness, tactlessness, ungentlemanliness, bad breeding, ill breeding, bad manners, misbehaviour: The incivility with which the ambassador was treated is unforgivable.

inclement adj. extreme, intemperate, severe, harsh, rigorous; stormy, violent, rainy, squally, blustery, raw, bad, tempestuous: We are expecting inclement weather for the weekend.

inclination

n. 1 bow, bowing, bend, bending, nod, nodding, tilt, tilting: His tacit sign of recognition was an inclination of his head. 2 slope, slant, angle, bend, incline, tilt: The inclination of the track is far too steep for such a vehicle. 3 disposition, predisposition, tendency, bent, bias, leaning, preference, turn, cast, proclivity, propensity, attitude, proneness, susceptibility, predilection, partiality, affection, taste, liking, desire, velleity: His inclination in favour of the offer is largely instinctive. 4 desire, longing, craving, appetite, taste, stomach, sympathy, predilection, penchant, fancy, eagerness, enthusiasm, zeal, fervour, ardour: I have no inclination to watch open-heart surgery.

incline v. 1 tend, lean, bend, bow, slant, tilt, angle, bank, slope, ascend, rise, descend: The road inclines to the horizontal after a curve. 2 dispose, influence, persuade, predispose, make, lead, prejudice, bias: Their accents might incline you to think of them as foreigners. 3 tend, lean, gravitate, show favour or preference, be attracted to, be biased or prejudiced, have a mind; be disposed or predisposed, lean, tend: I incline towards the other candidate. He inclines towards corpulence.

--n. 4 slope, pitch, grade, gradient, slant, ramp, hill, dip, descent, declivity, rise, ascent, acclivity: The car picked up speed going down one incline and slowed going up the next.

inclined adj. 1 tending, disposed, predisposed, prone, willing, keen, eager, Colloq of a mind: Though she is inclined to believe she has doubts. 2 likely, apt, liable, minded, prone: He is equally inclined to kiss you as kill you. 3 sloping, slanting, leaning, bending, tilting, gravitating, bearing, verging: This wall is slightly inclined towards the river.

include v. 1 incorporate, embody, comprise, embrace, cover, encompass, take in, subsume, comprehend, contain: Staff changes are included in the plan for reorganization. 2 classify, categorize, group, file, list, catalogue, tabulate, register: Did you include psychology among the social sciences? 3

involve, count, number, allow for: Please don't forget to include me in the invitation list.

inclusion n. incorporation, involvement, counting, numbering, grouping, classification: The inclusion of her name among the culprits was an error.

inclusive adj. 1 comprehensive, general, all-encompassing, wide, broad, extensive, full, umbrella, blanket, across the board, all-in-one, unified: We have an inclusive insurance policy that covers the entire family. 2 inclusive of. including, embracing, comprising, taking in, covering, incorporating, embodying: Is this bill inclusive of service?

incognito adj. 1 unknown, disguised, concealed, unidentified, in disguise, unrecognizable, unrecognized: I did not tell them who I was; I wanted to remain incognito.

--adv. 2 unrecognizably, in disguise, secretly, on the sly, under cover, clandestinely: Why travel incognito if no one knows or cares who you really are?

incoherent

adj. confused, garbled, mixed up, disordered, jumbled, muddled, scrambled, rambling, illogical, irrational, wild, unstructured, disjoined, disconnected, disjointed, loose, unconnected, uncoordinated, unintelligible, inarticulate: He arrived late with an incoherent excuse involving measles, his car, and a policeman.

incombustible

adj. non-flammable, non-inflammable, fireproof, non-combustible; flame-proof: She has to wear incombustible clothing at her job.

income n. return, revenue(s), receipts, proceeds, profit(s), gain(s), takings: Most of his income is from investments.

incoming adj. 1 arriving, entering: Incoming passengers must pass through customs. 2 new, entering: They are trying to predict the likely policies of the incoming government.

incomparable

adj. beyond compare, unequalled, matchless, peerless, inimitable, unparalleled, unrivalled, nonpareil, transcendent, surpassing, supreme, superior, superlative, unsurpassed, unsurpassable: Her performance as Lady Macbeth was incomparable.

incompatible

adj. mismatched, unsuited, discordant, clashing, jarring, inconsistent, contradictory, conflicting, uncongenial, irreconcilable, incongruous; antithetic, opposed, opposite, contrary, antipathetic, antagonistic, hostile: The colours in the carpet are incompatible with those in the curtains. My sister and I are totally incompatible and can never meet without arguing.

incompetence

n. inability, incapacity, inadequacy, insufficiency, deficiency, ineptitude, inefficiency, uselessness, faultiness: The students' failure to perform well is often attributable to the incompetence of their teachers.

incompetent

adj. unqualified, unfit, unable, incapable, unskilled, unskilful, inept, maladroit, inexpert, awkward, floundering, clumsy, bungling, gauche, useless, inadequate, insufficient, ineffective, ineffectual, inefficient: Incompetent managers need competent secretaries in order to survive.

incomplete

adj. unfinished, undone, imperfect, undeveloped, deficient, defective, unaccomplished, partial, sketchy, crude, rough, fragmentary, fragmented, piecemeal: An incomplete manuscript of a new novel was found in his desk.

incomprehensible

adj. unintelligible, unfathomable, impenetrable, deep, abstruse, arcane, recondite, indecipherable, undecipherable, inscrutable, cryptic, obscure, opaque, dark, occult, perplexing, mysterious, mystifying, enigmatic, puzzling, over (someone's) head, baffling, unimaginable, inconceivable: They spoke in Swahili, an incomprehensible language to me.

inconceivable

adj. incredible, unbelievable, unthinkable, unimaginable, incomprehensible, unheard-of, undreamed of or undreamt of, unthought of, impossible, overwhelming, staggering, Colloq mind-boggling: Putting a man on Mars before 2000 is inconceivable.

inconclusive

adj. indecisive, unresolved, indefinite, unsettled, open, indeterminate, in limbo, Colloq up in the air: The test results are inconclusive, so we must continue our investigations.

incongruous

adj. inconsistent, inharmonious, disharmonious, discordant, dissonant, disconsonant, incoherent, incompatible, incongruent, conflicting, unbecoming, unseemly, unsuited, unsuitable, unapt, inappropriate, misallied, unfitting, unfit, improper, malapropos, unmeet, absurd, discrepant, disparate, different, divergent, disagreeing, contrary, contradictory, paradoxical, out of step, out of keeping, out of line: That jacket looks incongruous with those trousers. It was incongruous to see two octogenarians dancing at the disco.

inconsequential

adj. unimportant, insignificant, trivial, trifling, nugatory, inconsiderable, inappreciable, negligible, minor, paltry, petty, immaterial, slight, lightweight, worthless, Colloq piddling: Why dwell on inconsequential details?

inconsiderate

adj. thoughtless, unthoughtful, unthinking, unconcerned, uncaring, unmindful, heedless, unheeding, insensitive, unsympathetic, tactless, intolerant, rude, ungracious: How could you be so inconsiderate as to work late on my birthday?

inconsistent

adj. 1 See incongruous. 2 irregular, capricious, fickle, erratic, inconstant, uneven, unpredictable, unreliable, undependable, unstable, unsteady, changeable, variable: Their behaviour is so inconsistent that I can't tell what they'll do next.

inconsolable

adj. disconsolate, broken-hearted, heart-broken, desolate, forlorn, despairing, miserable, wretched, grief-stricken: They are inconsolable over the death of their dog.

inconspicuous

adj. unnoticeable, unnoticed, unobtrusive, unostentatious, insignificant, indefinite, indistinguishable, undistinguished; modest, unassuming, discreet: Wearing a grey coat and hat, he was quite inconspicuous in the crowd. He played an inconspicuous role in the entire affair.

inconstancy

n. changeableness, fickleness, irregularity, mutability, variability, unsteadiness, unsteadfastness, capriciousness, volatility, mercurialness or mercuriality, inconsistency, unreliability; faithlessness, unfaithfulness: How do you deal with inconstancy in one you thought a friend?

inconstant

adj. changeable, mutable, fickle, capricious, mercurial, volatile, vacillating, unsteady, unsteadfast, irresolute, unreliable, undependable, fluctuating, wavering, erratic, inconsistent, flighty, unstable, unsettled, fitful, vague, indefinite, variable, moody: His supporters proved inconstant, and he fell from power. The inconstant wind blew their craft hither and thither.

incontinent

adj. 1 unrestrained, unconstrained, unrestricted, uncontrolled, uncontrollable, ungoverned, ungovernable, unbridled, uncurbed: She must learn to suppress her incontinent tongue. 2 lecherous, libidinous, lascivious, libertine, lustful, lewd, debauched, wanton, dissolute, loose, lubricious or lubricous, salacious, profligate, obscene, dirty, filthy: Members of the Hell-Fire Club were well known for their incontinent behaviour. 3 self-soiling, bedwetting, Medicine enuretic: Some old people lose control and become incontinent.

incontrovertible

adj. irrefutable, indisputable, indubitable, undeniable, incontestable, unquestionable, sure, certain, definite, definitive, established, absolute, positive: The fingerprint was incontrovertible evidence that he had been there.

inconvenience

n. 1 disadvantage, discomfort, pain, trouble, bother, annoyance, nuisance, awkwardness, disturbance, disruption, burden, drawback, hindrance, impediment, difficulty, upset: How are you coping with the inconvenience of walking with crutches? 2 cumbersomeness, unwieldiness, burdensomeness, onerousness, troublesomeness, disadvantageousness, awkwardness, inappropriateness, untimeliness: The delay has led to considerable public inconvenience.

--v. 3 discommode, trouble, incommode, disturb, disrupt, upset, put out, bother, annoy, irritate, irk: Would it inconvenience you to meet me at the station?

inconvenient

adj. cumbersome, unwieldy, burdensome, onerous, troublesome, bothersome, annoying, irritating, irksome, unsettling, disturbing, upsetting, disrupting, disadvantageous, awkward, inappropriate; inexpedient, inopportune, untimely, ill-timed: Those large boxes of laundry soap are inconvenient because they're so heavy. It is inconvenient for me to go to the door now.

incorporate

v. embody, include, combine, comprise, embrace, integrate, consolidate, unite, amalgamate, assimilate, coalesce, unify; merge, mix, blend: The university incorporates several independent colleges. Gently fold in the egg whites, incorporating them into the mixture.

incorrect adj. wrong, mistaken, inaccurate, untrue, imprecise, inexact, erroneous, fallacious, specious; improper, false, faulty: Your method is right but the answer is incorrect. That is the incorrect key for this lock.

incorrigible

adj. bad, naughty, villainous, wicked, sinful, hopeless; intractable, unchangeable, unalterable, habitual, inveterate, incurable, stubborn, hardened, obdurate, inflexible, uncontrollable: When a teenager, Giles was absolutely incorrigible. Among other things, he was an incorrigible liar.

incorrupt adj. 1 moral, upright, righteous, pure, upstanding, honourable, good, virtuous, honest, straightforward, straight, unimpeachable, incorruptible, undefiled, impeccable, spotless, immaculate, faultless, flawless: Show me one nation run by a totally incorrupt government. 2 error-free, correct, uncorrupted: He possesses the only incorrupt manuscript of the play.

increase v. 1 grow, swell, enlarge, dilate, wax, expand, extend, distend, inflate, augment, snowball, enhance, heighten, raise, develop, multiply, burgeon or bourgeon, flourish, proliferate, spread, broaden, widen, lengthen: Since you left, my work has increased threefold. 2 prolong, advance, further, improve, better, strengthen: The more lottery tickets you buy, the more you increase your chances of winning.

--n. 3 growth, enlargement, expansion, extension, augmentation, enhancement, development, multiplication, proliferation, spread: The increase in scientific knowledge has been phenomenal. 4 addition, increment, escalation, inflation, gain, rise, boost: Increases in costs are reflected in increases in prices. 5 on the increase. waxing, developing, growing, expanding, increasing, escalating, on the rise, proliferating, spreading: Trade with the Far East will be on the increase next year.

incredible

adj. 1 unbelievable, beyond belief, inconceivable, unimaginable, unthinkable, improbable, implausible, far-fetched, absurd, preposterous, ridiculous, unlikely, impossible, unrealistic, unreal, fictitious, mythic(al): Incredible as it may appear, continents move a few inches a year. 2 extraordinary, astounding, astonishing, amazing, wonderful, awe-inspiring, awesome, tremendous, marvellous, prodigious, Colloq far-out, US humongous: The incredible amounts spent on arms could be better spent on medical research.

incredulous

adj. disbelieving, unbelieving, dubious, doubtful, sceptical, mistrustful, distrustful, suspicious: We were incredulous when we learnt who had won the award.

increment n. increase, addition, gain, accrual or chiefly Brit accrument, augmentation: The increment last year barely compensated for inflation.

incriminate
v. accuse, charge, blame, implicate, inculpate, indict, impeach, involve, entangle, Colloq point the finger at, Chiefly US put the finger on, Slang US finger: The suspect confessed and incriminated two others.

incubate v. hatch, brood; nurse, nurture, develop: How long have you been incubating this plan?

incumbent adj. 1 obligatory, necessary, required, mandatory, compulsory, binding, demanding, commanding, prescribed: As their father, you ought to feel it incumbent on you to talk to the children's teachers. 2 office-holding: The incumbent chairman is not responsible for his predecessor's mistakes.

--n. 3 office-holder, official, occupant: As the incumbent, you have a better chance of being re-elected.

incur v. bring upon or on (oneself), draw, attract, arouse, provoke, invite, expose (oneself) to, lay (oneself) open to: For some reason he incurred the displeasure of his manager.

incurable adj. 1 irremediable, terminal, inoperable, fatal, hopeless: The doctor told me yesterday that the condition is incurable. 2 hopeless, inveterate, habitual, incorrigible, dyed in the wool, unflagging, relentless, irredeemable; irreparable, unrectifiable: You are an incurable optimist if you think you will complete this book by the deadline.

indebted adj. obligated, owing, obliged, beholden, bound, liable, responsible: I am indebted to the Salvation Army for their help.

indecent adj. 1 indecorous, indelicate, immodest, improper, unbecoming, unsuitable, unfit, inappropriate; in bad taste: When he proposed marriage she accepted with indecent haste. 2 unseemly, shameless, shameful, offensive, outrageous, repellent, repulsive, distasteful, ill-mannered, rude, suggestive, coarse, risqu,, vulgar, blue, obscene, gross, rank, prurient, dirty, foul, filthy, pornographic, ithyphallic, scatological, salacious, lascivious, licentious, lewd, lubricious or lubricous, smutty, vile, degenerate, debauched: There are always a lot of complaints about indecent language on television.

indecision

n. hesitation, wavering, indecisiveness, vacillation, irresolution, uncertainty, ambivalence, shilly-shally or shilly-shallying, fluctuation, tergiversation: Her indecision stems from caution, not ignorance of the issues.

indecisive

adj. 1 hesitating, hesitant, wavering, doubtful, vacillating, undecided, irresolute, uncertain, of two minds, ambivalent, shilly-shallying, wishy-washy, namby-pamby, fluctuating, tergiversating: Why are you so assertive at the office yet so indecisive at home? 2 indefinite, indeterminate, undecided, inconclusive, open, unsettled, moot, doubtful: The battle was indecisive, with both sides incurring heavy losses.

indeed adv. 1 certainly, surely, to be sure, doubtless(ly), undoubtedly, undeniably, definitely, positively, absolutely, exactly, just so, actually, truly, truthfully, seriously, (all) joking aside, in (point of) fact, of course, really, in reality, to be realistic, naturally, upon my word, on my honour, on my oath, Brit rather, Colloq no kidding: Indeed, that is the news he has been expecting. 2 what is more, still, not to say, as a matter of fact, if the truth be known, to say the least: His had been a depressing, indeed miserable childhood.

--interj. 3 Is that so!, You don't say!, Really!, By George!, By Jove!, (Upon) my word!, My goodness!, Goodness!, Gracious!, Mercy!, Good Lord!, Good heavens!, My stars!, Fancy that!, Imagine (that)!, Well, I'll be (damned)!, Colloq Brit Blimey!, Cor!, Crikey!: 'I've torn up the winning lottery ticket.' 'Indeed!'

indefinite

adj. 1 uncertain, undetermined, undefined, imprecise, inexact, inexplicit, unspecified, unsettled, unfixed, unspecific, non-specific, vague, general, indeterminate, undecided, sub judice: The time of the meeting was indefinite. 2 vague, unclear, obscure, confused, confusing, puzzling, baffling, cryptic, bewildering, mystifying, equivocal, ambiguous, unspecific, non-specific, inexplicit, inexact, imprecise: Your directions for getting here were too indefinite. 3 ill-defined, undefined, blurred, blurry, hazy, indistinct, obscure, dim, fuzzy, unrecognizable, indistinguishable: Indefinite shapes loomed in the fog. 4 unlimited, unknown, uncounted, uncountable, undefinable, indeterminate, indeterminable, unbounded, boundless, immeasurable, incalculable, limitless, endless, infinite: He pondered the indefinite capacities of the mind. 5 hesitant, vague, shilly-shallying, vacillating, indecisive, undecided, inconstant, wavering, unsure, uncertain, Colloq wishy-washy: She is still indefinite about going to the party.

indelible adj. ineradicable or uneradicable or non-eradicable, inerasable or unerasable or non-erasable, ineffaceable, inexpungible, indestructible, uncancellable or non-cancellable, enduring, permanent, lasting, fixed, ingrained, inextirpable: The laundry marks are in indelible ink. Irena makes an indelible impression on everyone she meets.

indelicacy

n. coarseness, crudeness, roughness, vulgarity, boorishness, churlishness, offensiveness, rudeness, immodesty, indecency, shamelessness; incivility, indecorum, inelegance, uncourtliness, unmannerliness, impoliteness, unrefinement, unseemliness, tastelessness, bad or poor taste, grossness: She refuses to comment on the indelicacy of his proposal.

indemnity n. 1 compensation, repayment, reimbursement, remuneration, recompense, consideration, restitution, reparation(s), redress, indemnification, return, quid pro quo, restoration, award, reward, payment, disbursement, amends, requital, atonement, reckoning, quittance: The victors demanded indemnity for the losses they had suffered. 2 insurance, protection, security, safety, guarantee, assurance, underwriting, warrant, endorsement, certification; exemption, impunity, privilege: Am I covered for indemnity against third-party claims?

indentation

n. notch, dent, nick, cut, score, mark, depression, impression, hollow, dimple, pit; Typography indention: The chair legs had left small indentations in the parquet floor. The indentation of each paragraph should be five spaces.

independence

n. 1 freedom, liberty, autonomy, sovereignty, self-rule, home rule, self-determination, self-government, self-direction, autonomy, autarchy: The colony gained independence from Portugal. 2 confidence, self-confidence, self-sufficiency, self-reliance, self-assurance: Edwina asserted her independence by taking over the company herself.

independent

adj. 1 free, self-governing, autonomous, sovereign: In 1829 Greece was acknowledged as an independent state. 2 unrestrained, unrestricted, unfettered, untrammelled, unregulated, uncontrolled, separate(d), unconnected, disconnected, unrelated, distinct: Air is made up of independent particles. 3 self-reliant, self-sufficient, self-assured, (self-)confident, bold, individualistic, competent: For a six-year-old, he is very independent. 4 voluntary, non-partisan, spontaneous, unsolicited, unbidden, unprejudiced, unbiased, non-aligned, unaligned, disinterested, neutral: Four independent witnesses testified to seeing him at the scene of the crime. 5 unlimited, unrestricted, affluent, self-sufficient; unearned: She is a woman of independent means. 6 unallied, unaffiliated, uncommitted, individualistic, undecided: Independent candidates outnumber those of the two main parties in this election. 7 outside, external, unaffiliated, non-affiliated, unconnected, disinterested: An independent auditor was engaged to go over the company's books. 8 independent of. irrespective of, disregarding, notwithstanding, ignoring, excluding; exclusive of, except for, barring, apart from, besides, beyond, US aside from: He insists on doing things his way, independent of others' feelings. Independent of you and me, no one cares what he does.

--n. 9 individual, nonconformist, maverick, Colloq loner: He is an independent, not affiliated to any political party.

indestructible

adj. durable, long-lasting, everlasting, eternal, endless, perennial, permanent, fixed, unchanging, changeless, unchangeable, indelible, ineradicable, inextirpable, immutable, unalterable, constant, undying, non-perishable, imperishable; unbreakable, non-breakable, shatter-proof: The problem is that many plastics are virtually indestructible.

index n. 1 guide, directory, list, listing, table of contents, catalogue, key, thesaurus: To find synonyms for a word in this book, look first in the index. 2 mark, sign, clue, token, hint, pointer, indicator, indication, guide: An index to his feelings can be seen in the way he treats people. 3 index finger, forefinger, first finger; pointer, marker, needle, Chiefly Brit typography hand, Chiefly US typography fist: Use an index to emphasize important paragraphs. 4 ratio, measure, formula, factor: The cephalic index is the ratio of the width of a skull to its length multiplied by 100.

indicate v. 1 point out, point to, mark, specify, designate, indicate; call or direct attention to, show: The thermometer indicated that the temperature was 22øC. Sally indicated the place where the dam would be built. 2 imply, suggest, betoken, manifest, signify, bespeak, reveal, evince, evidence, denote: Measles is indicated by the presence of Koplik's spots. 3 suggest, hint, imply, intimate; say, express, state, disclose, tell, make known, make clear, register, show, display, exhibit: His frown indicated his doubts. She indicated her displeasure in a few, well-chosen words. 4 call for, require, demand, need, recommend: The doctor advised that a surgical procedure is indicated in such cases.

indication

n. 1 sign, signal, token, suggestion, hint, intimation, inkling, clue, implication, symptom: A bullet-riddled corpse, said the detective, is usually a good indication of foul play. 2 reading, measure, degree: The indication on the pressure gauge is reaching the danger point. 3 omen, portent, forewarning, warning, augury, foreshadowing, foretoken: Those black clouds are an indication that a storm is brewing. Can't you give us any indication of what will become of us? 4 indications. evidence, data, clues, signs: Indications are that she left on the last train.

indicative of

adj. signifying, indicating, indicatory of, suggesting, suggestive of, hinting (at), symptomatic of, denotative of, characteristic of, typical of, typifying: Repeated stalling is indicative of some fault in the fuel.

indicator n. pointer, needle; gauge, meter, display: The indicator reads exactly 67øC.

indict v. Often, indict for. charge (with), accuse (with or of), arraign (for), incriminate (in or for), inculpate (in or for), cite (for or with), denounce (for), blame (for or with); summon, summons, subpoena: She has been indicted for murder in the first degree.

indifference

n. 1 unconcern, apathy, listlessness, disinterest, coolness, nonchalance, insouciance, aloofness, detachment, disregard, inattention, pococuranteism or pococurantism, coldness, phlegm, stolidity, callousness, insensibility, impassiveness or impassivity: I cannot believe the indifference she showed on learning about the tragedy. 2 unimportance, insignificance, irrelevance, unconcern, inconsequence, triviality: Whether I go or stay is a matter of indifference to me. 3 dispassion, disinterestedness, impartiality, neutrality, objectivity, fairness, equitableness, even-handedness: The judges demonstrated their indifference by awarding first prize to a novice.

indifferent

adj. 1 unconcerned, apathetic, uncaring, listless, disinterested, uninterested, cool, nonchalant, lukewarm, lackadaisical, Laodicean, dispassionate, insouciant, aloof, detached, distant, removed, inattentive, pococurante, cold, phlegmatic, stolid, callous, unemotional, uncompassionate, insensitive, unfeeling, inconsiderate, unsympathetic, insensible, impassive: Joan remained totally indifferent to Charles's attentions. 2 impartial, neutral, just, even-handed, objective, fair, equitable, unbiased, unprejudiced, non-partisan, non-discriminatory, dispassionate, disinterested: The problem is in reaching an indifferent judgement. 3 neutral, average, mediocre, fair, undistinguished, uninspired, lightweight, passable, middling, ordinary, commonplace, everyday, so so, not bad; poor, inferior, not very or particularly or especially good, Slang Brit naff: He is a writer of indifferent quality. I held indifferent cards but lost little money. 4 unimportant, insignificant, trivial, trifling, nugatory, immaterial, inconsequential, minor, inappreciable, slight, neither here nor there: It is indifferent to him where she spends her money.

indigenous
adj. 1 native, local, autochthonous, endemic, natural, aboriginal, original: The indigenous inhabitants were displaced by marauding tribes. 2 innate, inborn, inbred, inherent: It is often difficult to distinguish between man's indigenous and his acquired characteristics.

indigent adj. needy, poor, destitute, poverty-stricken, in want, penniless, impoverished, penurious, impecunious, necessitous, Colloq (dead or flat) broke, stony-broke, hard up, short, on one's uppers, Brit skint, US strapped: The two brothers made certain that their indigent parents were well looked after.

indigestion
n. dyspepsia, upset stomach, stomach distress; stomach-ache, gastralgia: A bit of bicarbonate of soda cured my indigestion at once.

indignant adj. provoked, exasperated, disgruntled, piqued, irked, irritated, annoyed, vexed, angry, furious, irate, angered, enraged, incensed, wrathful, in high dudgeon, in a temper, in a rage, in a pet, Literary wroth, Colloq peeved, riled, in a huff, huffy, miffed, mad, livid, sore, US teed off, Slang pissed off: Peter was quite indignant to learn that the publisher had lost his manuscript.

indignation
n. anger, fury, rage, wrath, exasperation, irritation, annoyance, vexation, resentment, Literary ire, choler: She was filled with righteous indignation at the treatment she received.

indignity n. insult, affront, outrage, injury, offence, humiliation, disrespect, slight, dishonour, snub, obloquy, contumely, scorn, reproach, abuse, discourtesy, aspersion, Colloq slap (in the face): The duchess had to suffer the indignity of arrest for shoplifting.

indirect adj. 1 roundabout, circuitous, circumambient, devious, tortuous, zigzag, winding, rambling, roving, wandering, erratic, meandering, ambagious, crooked, oblique, twisted, twisting; circumlocutory, periphrastic: In an indirect way she told me that I was fired. 2 secondary, incidental, ancillary, collateral, accidental, side, subordinate, subsidiary, accessory, additional, accidental, adscititious, adventitious: An indirect effect of winning the prize was an offer of more work.

indiscreet

adj. imprudent, tactless, incautious, impolitic, undiplomatic, improvident, injudicious, ill-advised, ill-judged, ill-considered, rash, reckless, audacious, bold, temerarious, impulsive, hasty, impetuous, thoughtless, insensitive, heedless, careless, unthinking, mindless, unwise, na‹ve, foolish, foolhardy: Your reference to her plastic surgery was indiscreet to say the least.

indiscretion

n. 1 imprudence, tactlessness, improvidence, injudiciousness, rashness, recklessness, audacity, boldness, temerity, impulsiveness, hastiness, haste, impetuousness, impetuosity, thoughtlessness, insensitivity, heedlessness, carelessness, na‹vety, foolishness, foolhardiness, folly: He was guilty of indiscretion in talking to the press about the confidential report. 2 blunder, error, mistake, slip, lapse, misstep, gaffe, faux pas, peccadillo, Colloq boner, Brit bloomer: He spent much of his adult life paying for the indiscretions of his youth.

indiscriminate

adj. 1 undiscriminating, unselective, unparticular, uncritical, undiscerning, careless, promiscuous, random: Viola seems indiscriminate in her choice of companions. 2 confused, haphazard, unorganized, chaotic, disorganized, jumbled, disordered, disarranged, scrambled, mixed-up, casual, random, unsystematic, unsystematized, uncoordinated, unmethodical, wholesale, erratic, Colloq higgledy-piggledy: The Aztecs were victims of indiscriminate slaughter at the hands of the conquistadors.

indispensable

adj. 1 crucial, vital, essential, urgent, imperative, necessary, needed, needful, required, requisite, demanded, in demand, called-for, of the essence, important, compelling: A good television manner is indispensable in a national leader these days. 2 key, unavoidable, inescapable, ineluctable, compulsory, mandatory, sine qua non, obligatory: Are a black bowler and tightly furled umbrella still indispensable to doing business in the City?

indisposed

adj. 1 ill, ailing, unwell, sick, sickly, unsound, unhealthy, in bad health, valetudinarian, out of commission, Colloq on the sick-list, (doing) poorly, laid up, in a bad way, not up to snuff, off one's feed or Brit also grub, under the weather: Madam is indisposed and cannot have tea with you. 2 averse, disinclined, loath, unwilling, reluctant, resistant, hesitant: The judge was indisposed to leniency in such a serious case.

indisputable

adj. unquestionable, incontrovertible, incontestable, irrefutable, undeniable, indubitable, beyond doubt, sure, certain, positive, definite, definitive, absolute, fixed: It was indisputable that the outlook was grim. The show was an indisputable success.

indistinct

adj. 1 faint, dim, obscure, vague, blurred, blurry, filmy, hazy, misty, bleary, shadowy, fuzzy, foggy, murky, muddy, unclear, indiscernible, illegible, muffled, unintelligible, indistinguishable, indeterminate, confused, indefinite: I could barely make out an indistinct figure in the dark. The writing on the matchbox was indistinct. 2 indistinguishable, ambiguous, not distinct, equivocal, inseparable, ill-defined, undefined, nebulous, vague, confused: The identity of the three brothers is indistinct in my mind.

indistinguishable

adj. 1 Often, indistinguishable from. undifferentiated (from), identical (to), alike, like two peas in a pod, twin, inseparable: He is indistinguishable from his brother. Her fingerprints and those found on the dagger are indistinguishable. 2 indiscernible, imperceptible, indefinite, unclear, indistinct: His good qualities were indistinguishable to me.

individual

adj. 1 single, sole, particular, separate, distinct, discrete, solitary, lone: Consider the entire utterance, not just the individual words. 2 singular, special, specific, idiosyncratic, own, characteristic, distinctive, individualistic, unique, peculiar, personal, proper; unitary: She has her individual style of dressing.

--n. 3 person, human (being), (living) soul, mortal; one, party: In a democracy each individual is entitled to one vote.

individualist

n. independent, freethinker, nonconformist, maverick, loner, lone wolf: Nick is an individualist and seldom agrees with the majority.

individually

adv. one at a time, singly, one by one, separately, severally, apart: We must study each of these specimens individually.

indoctrinate

v. train, teach, instruct, school, discipline, drill, brainwash, propagandize; inculcate, imbue, instil, implant: The children were indoctrinated to believe that they were members of the master race. He indoctrinated them with the idea that they were capable of anything.

indolence n. laziness, slothfulness, sloth, sluggishness, idleness, lethargy, shiftlessness, languor, languidness, lassitude, listlessness, torpor, torpidity, inertia, inaction, inactivity, faineance, dolce far niente, oscitancy: After winning the lottery, he spent his days in indolence.

indolent adj. lazy, slothful, sluggish, idle, lethargic, shiftless, languorous, languid, torpid, inert, inactive, stagnant, fain,ant, listless: 'Peel me a grape', she said in her most indolent manner.

indomitable

adj. resolute, resolved, determined, steadfast, staunch, persistent, unstoppable, irrepressible, indefatigable, untiring, tireless, unflagging, unyielding, unswerving, unwavering, unflinching, undaunted, dauntless, fearless, unafraid, intrepid, brave, courageous, plucky, mettlesome; unconquerable, unbeatable, invincible: She survived the prison camp by dint of indomitable strength of character.

induce v. 1 lead, persuade, influence, prevail on or upon, sway, move, convince, get, talk into, prompt, incite, instigate, actuate, motivate, impel, encourage, inspire, stimulate, nudge, push, press, urge, prod, goad, spur, egg on, coax, cajole, lure, entice, inveigle, seduce: He was induced to sell the secret plans to the enemy for a large sum. 2 cause, bring about or on, produce, give rise to, engender, create, generate, lead to; effect, occasion, set in motion: Some drugs induce a state of euphoria.

inducement

n. attraction, lure, incentive, stimulus, enticement, bait, encouragement, incitement, provocation, spur, premium, consideration, reward, Colloq carrot, Chiefly US come-on: What inducement were you offered to take out that subscription?

induct v. 1 install or instal, inaugurate, invest, instate, establish, swear in: Crocker was inducted as president of the lodge last night. 2 call up, enlist, conscript, enrol, register, US draft: He was inducted into the army at 18.

indulge v. 1 Often, indulge in. yield (to), succumb (to), favour, gratify, humour, oblige (with), comply (with), minister to, cater to, pander to, treat (to), pamper (with): When it comes to chocolates, I indulge myself to the fullest. We indulge in an occasional beer. She indulges his every whim. 2 coddle, baby, pamper, cosset, mollycoddle, spoil: He doesn't believe in indulging children.

indulgence

n. 1 tolerance, sufferance, understanding, patience, good will, allowance, forbearance; acceptance, overlooking: Genevieve's behaviour is testing the limits of Tom's indulgence. 2 self-indulgence, luxury, extravagance, profligacy, self-gratification, self-satisfaction: A notorious pleasure-seeker, his capacity for indulgence is legendary. 3 treat, luxury, extravagance: My sole indulgence is vintage port.

indulgent adj. tolerant, permissive, patient, understanding, forbearing, lenient, easygoing, relaxed, liberal, lax, kind, kindly, well-disposed, agreeable: Tony and Hazel are extremely indulgent parents.

industrious
adj. sedulous, assiduous, hard-working, diligent, intense, conscientious, energetic, dynamic, aggressive, vigorous, untiring, tireless, indefatigable, unflagging, persistent, pertinacious, dogged, tenacious, US hustling: The business was built up only because she was so industrious.

industry n. 1 production, manufacture, trade, commerce, business: Competition in the car industry helps keep prices lower. 2 diligence, assiduity, sedulousness, energy, exertion, effort, application, perseverance, persistence, work, labour, toil: We were complimented on our industry by the teacher. 3 industriousness, energy, activity, vigour, hustle, bustle, dynamism, enterprise, earnestness, determination: The sales office is a hive of industry.

ineffable adj. 1 unutterable, unspeakable, unmentionable, taboo: In certain religions, the name of the deity is ineffable. 2 inexpressible, indescribable, indefinable or undefinable, indescribable or undescribable, beyond description, beyond words: The Royal Hotel had an ineffable air of serene affluence.

ineffective
adj. 1 unproductive, unfruitful, bootless, idle, vain, useless, ineffectual, inefficacious, inoperative, non-functioning, inadequate, insufficient, worthless: The anti-crime measures appear to have been ineffective. 2 inefficient, incompetent, incapable, unskilled, unskilful, inept, unfit, unproficient: The new office manager is totally ineffective.

ineffectual
adj. 1 unsuccessful, unavailing, futile, bootless, sterile, barren, fruitless, unproductive, ineffective, inefficacious, inoperative: Our efforts to deal with pollution have been largely ineffectual. 2 weak, feeble, effete, impotent, tame, lame, powerless, inefficient, incompetent, inadequate: We tried to read the inscription by the ineffectual light of a match.

inefficacious
adj. See ineffectual and ineffective.

inefficient

adj. 1 ineffective, incompetent, incapable, unqualified, inexpert, unskilled, unskilful, unfit, inept, ineffectual, deficient: Poorly paid labour is inefficient labour. 2 uneconomic(al), wasteful, disorganized, slipshod: For our purposes, the layout of the factory is quite inefficient.

ineligible

adj. unqualified, unacceptable, unfit, unsuited, unsuitable, inappropriate, improper: He is ineligible for benefit as he left his job voluntarily.

inept adj. 1 clumsy, awkward, bungling, maladroit, ungainly, bumbling, gauche, inexpert, unskilled, unskilful, incompetent, inefficient: If he is inept at sailing, he'd better become proficient. 2 inappropriate, inapt, unseemly, improper, unfitting, unfit, unsuitable, impolitic, undiplomatic, injudicious, imprudent, indiscreet, ill-considered, ill-judged, ill-advised, unadvised, unadvisable or inadvised, misguided, inexpedient, out of place, unwise: She made some inept comment and blushed furiously.

ineptitude

n. 1 ineptness, clumsiness, awkwardness, maladroitness, ungainliness, gaucherie, incompetence, inefficiency, unfitness, unsuitableness: He displays a remarkable ineptitude for the pronunciation of French. 2 inappropriateness, inaptness, absurdity, unsuitability, unseemliness: The ineptitude of her comments embarrasses everyone.

inequality

n. 1 disparity, difference, discrepancy, unevenness, nonconformity, incongruence, incongruity, inconsistency, dissimilarity, imbalance: The inequality between their incomes made him resentful. 2 bias, prejudice, partiality, unfairness, injustice, inequity: Why should they have to tolerate any inequality of treatment?

inert adj. 1 inactive, unreactive, unresponsive, neutral: Argon, xenon, and neon are inert gases. 2 motionless, immobile, inanimate, lifeless, still, quiet, quiescent, stationary, static: He was mute and inert: it was like talking to a zombie.

3 sluggish, slow, torpid, dull, inactive, idle, indolent, lazy, slothful, leaden, slack, passive, supine, dormant, otiose, listless, languid or languorous: I contemplated the inert bodies sunbathing around the swimming-pool.

inertia n. inertness, inactivity, sloth, sluggishness, torpor, dullness, idleness, indolence, laziness, slothfulness, passivity, apathy, lassitude, dormancy, listlessness, languor, immobility, motionlessness: Adele finds it difficult to overcome her feeling of inertia in the morning.

inestimable
adj. 1 incalculable, immeasurable, measureless, untold, incomputable; priceless, invaluable, precious: You have been of inestimable help in completing the project on time. 2 countless, innumerable, vast, immense, prodigious, boundless, unfathomable, infinite, incalculable, immeasurable, measureless, untold, incomputable: An inestimable number of organisms have inhabited the earth.

inevitable
adj. unavoidable, inescapable, ineluctable, unpreventable, certain, sure, destined, fated, assured, inexorable, irrevocable, unchangeable, absolute, ordained, decreed, authoritative, incontestable: The inevitable outcome of war is misery for all participants.

inexact adj. imprecise, inaccurate, erroneous, incorrect, wrong, false, faulty, indefinite, fallacious, fuzzy, muddled: This gauge is giving an inexact reading.

inexcusable
adj. unjustifiable, unjustified, indefensible, unpardonable, unforgivable, intolerable, inexpiable: Insulting your hostess was inexcusable.

inexhaustible
adj. 1 limitless, boundless, unlimited, unbounded, unrestricted, endless, measureless, indeterminate, infinite, incalculable: The supply of tasteless television programmes seems virtually inexhaustible. 2 untiring, tireless, indefatigable, unflagging, unfailing, unfaltering, unwearying, unwearied: Bartell is an inexhaustible practical joker.

inexpensive

adj. cheap, economical, low-priced, low-cost, reasonable, budget-priced: What might seem inexpensive to you is very costly for me.

inexperience

n. immaturity, innocence, na‹vety, greenness, callowness, unsophistication: I attribute his mistakes to inexperience.

inexperienced

adj. immature, innocent, na‹ve, green, callow, unsophisticated, unworldly, unfledged, raw, uninitiated, untrained, unschooled, uninformed, unseasoned, Colloq (still) wet behind the ears, born yesterday: Isn't she too inexperienced to take on such a great responsibility?

inexplicable

adj. unexplainable, unaccountable, unintelligible, inscrutable, puzzling, enigmatic, mystifying, perplexing, confounding, baffling, bewildering, incomprehensible: I find inexplicable their refusal to allow freedom of religion.

inexpressible

adj. unutterable, ineffable, unspeakable, indescribable, indefinable: I felt inexpressible joy at seeing my children again.

inextinguishable

adj. unquenchable, irrepressible, unsuppressible; enduring, undying, imperishable, eternal, everlasting: The teacher had to cope with inextinguishable giggling. Our hopes for freedom were inextinguishable.

inextricably

adv. inescapably, ineluctably, unavoidably, irretrievably, completely, inseparably, indissolubly, totally, complicatedly, intricately: I found myself inextricably caught up in her emotional problems.

infallible

adj. 1 unerring, faultless, flawless, perfect, oracular, unmistaken: The infallible logic of computers sometimes defeats their users. 2 unfailing, dependable, sure, secure, certain, reliable, foolproof: The vaccination provides infallible protection against the virus.

infamous adj. 1 notorious, disreputable, ill-famed, stigmatized, scandalous, discreditable, dishonourable, ignominious: So this is the infamous house where the murders took place! 2 bad, awful, wicked, evil, iniquitous, villainous, heinous, vile, abominable, outrageous, execrable, abhorrent, opprobrious, despicable, loathsome, detestable, odious, foul, scurvy, rotten, atrocious, flagitious, revolting, monstrous, egregious, base, low, shameful, disgraceful: A number of infamous criminals are portrayed in the Chamber of Horrors.

infamy   n. 1 notoriety, ill repute, ill fame, disrepute, shame, ignominy, obloquy, disgrace, dishonour, stigma, discredit: She has to suffer the infamy of her husband's treachery. 2 wickedness, evil, iniquity, villainy, heinousness, vileness, abomination, outrage, abhorrence, opprobrium, loathsomeness, detestation, hatred, odium, atrocity, revulsion, monstrosity, egregiousness, shame, shamefulness, disgrace, disgracefulness: The infamy of his profligate behaviour is widely known.

infancy   n. 1 babyhood, early childhood: His limp was the result of polio, which he had contracted in infancy. 2 beginning(s), inception, early or initial, stage(s), commencement, start, emergence, dawn, rise: When psychiatry was in its infancy it was marked by a notable lack of success.

infantile adj. childish, immature, puerile, babyish, juvenile: Ben behaves in the most infantile way whenever there are girls about.

infatuated
adj. fascinated, beguiled, enchanted, bewitched, spellbound, charmed, ensorcelled, enraptured, possessed, hypnotized, mesmerized, captivated, besotted, taken with, obsessed, smitten, enamoured, fond: Francis is completely infatuated with the girl who moved in next door.

infectious
adj. contagious, catching, communicable, transmissible: There is also a highly infectious variety of the disease.

infer v. deduce, derive, draw, conclude, understand, gather, surmise, guess, assume: From the evidence, I infer that you were not at home last night.

inference n. deduction, conclusion, understanding, surmise, assumption, presumption: If this man's father is my father's son, the inference is that this man is my nephew.

inferior adj. 1 lower, nether: We descended into the inferior regions of the cavern. The numeral in H2O is called an inferior character. 2 lesser, lower, subordinate, secondary, junior, minor, unimportant, insignificant, lowly, subservient, humble, servile: He occupies an inferior position in the company. 3 poor, bad, low-quality, mediocre, indifferent, imperfect, defective, second-rate, second-class, substandard, low-grade, shoddy, gimcrack, Colloq grotty, junky, crummy or crumby, lousy, Slang crappy, Brit naff: They tried to market an inferior product, but it was rejected by consumers.

--n. 4 subordinate, underling, junior, menial, lackey, flunkey, dogsbody, cat's-paw, doormat, stooge, yes-man, lickspittle, bootlicker: She is tired of being treated as an inferior.

inferiority

n. 1 unimportance, insignificance, lowliness: The inferiority of his position rankled with him. 2 inadequacy, deficiency, insignificance, unimportance, worthlessness: Do not confuse modesty with a sense of inferiority. 3 shoddiness, imperfection, mediocrity: Consumers are not fooled by the inferiority of a product for long.

infernal adj. 1 hellish, underworld, nether, Hadean: Virgil was Dante's guide in the infernal regions. 2 devilish, diabolic(al), demonic(al), demoniac(al), fiendish, satanic, Mephistophelian; damnable, damned, execrable, malicious, malevolent, maleficent, wicked, evil, iniquitous, flagitious, villainous, heinous, dire, sinister, dreadful: She tells everyone that there is an infernal plot against her.

infertile adj. sterile, barren, infecund, unproductive, unfruitful, non-productive: The stony, infertile earth yielded only cactus and scrub grass.

infest v. invade, plague, beset, overrun, overspread, flood, swarm over, inundate, pervade, permeate, penetrate, infiltrate: Mosquitoes infested this area before the swamp was drained.

infidel n. unbeliever, heathen, disbeliever, heretic, pagan, agnostic, atheist, nullifidian, freethinker: Thousands of the fanatics swarmed over the infidels, slaughtering them mercilessly.

infidelity
n. 1 unfaithfulness, faithlessness, treachery, traitorousness, disloyalty, perfidy, falseness, apostasy, heresy: The infidelity of his supporters brought about his downfall. 2 adultery, cuckoldry; affair, liaison, amour, Colloq cheating: Infidelity is a common cause of marriage break-up. She forgave him his many infidelities.

infinite adj. 1 boundless, vast, limitless, unlimited, illimitable, endless, interminable, indeterminable, indeterminate, inestimable, astronomical, numberless, multitudinous, uncountable, uncounted, innumerable, incalculable, inexhaustible, immense, enormous, immeasurable, measureless, bottomless, unfathomable: They hurtled through infinite space at the speed of light. We do what we can, but our resources are not infinite. In his infinite wisdom, God made the garden slug. 2 eternal, everlasting, perpetual, endless, unending, inexhaustible, undying, never-ending: It is difficult to conceive of time as being anything but infinite, without beginning or end. With infinite patience she reassembled the pieces of the vase.

infirm adj. 1 ill, indisposed, debilitated, frail, fragile, weak, feeble, weakened, ailing, decrepit, enfeebled, failing, wasted, on the decline, sick, sickly, unwell, lame, crippled: Campbell is infirm and unable to travel. 2 shaky, flimsy, wobbly, wobbling, doddering, unstable, faltering, vacillating, wavering, unsteady, unsteadfast, inconstant, changeable, irresolute: We must find stalwart recruits, recruits who are not infirm of purpose.

infirmary n. clinic, hospital, sickbay, first-aid station; dispensary, Brit nursing home, surgery: The infirmary is able to deal only with emergencies, not with long-term care.

infirmity n. 1 weakness, feebleness, frailness, frailty, debility, decrepitude, sickliness: At 100, she finally succumbed to infirmity, and ceased going out altogether. 2 sickness, ailment, disease, malady, affliction, disorder, defect, complaint: What infirmity struck him down?

inflame v. 1 arouse, incite, touch off, ignite, enkindle, provoke, rouse, excite, impassion, foment, incense, agitate, stir (up), fire (up), heat, anger, enrage, madden, infuriate, whip or lash up, work up, rile, exasperate, stimulate, animate, move, motivate, urge, prod, goad, spur (on), rally, drive: The speakers inflamed the crowd to riot against the police. 2 aggravate, intensify, deepen, heighten, fan, exacerbate, increase, augment, fuel: She inflamed his dislike of his brother into hatred.

inflamed adj. irritated, sore, angry, chafing, chafed, red, swollen, heated, hot, fevered, feverish, infected, septic: The wound became inflamed and we had no medicine to reduce the infection.

inflammable

adj. burnable, combustible, flammable: The plastic foam formerly used to stuff furniture is highly inflammable.

inflammation

n. irritation, redness, swelling, sore, infection: The inflammation subsided as the injection took effect.

inflammatory

adj. incendiary, fiery, inflaming, explosive, rousing, provocative, rabid, rabble-rousing, passionate, fervent, fervid, frantic, frenzied, fomenting, demagogic, insurgent, riotous, mutinous, seditious, rebellious, revolutionary, traitorous, treacherous: His inflammatory speeches at the university created tension between the students and the administration.

inflate v. 1 blow up, balloon, expand, dilate, enlarge, swell, pump up, puff up or out, distend: We inflated two plastic bags to use as floats. 2 boost, increase: The price of the company's shares was inflated by rumours of a take-over bid. 3 exaggerate, amplify, magnify, blow up: He tends to inflate to huge proportions the small contribution he made to the project.

inflated adj. 1 exaggerated, conceited, overblown, grandiose, puffed up, overstated, magnified, amplified, overdrawn, smug, egotistic, immodest, cocky, vain, self-important, Colloq Brit swelled-headed, US swell-headed: He has an inflated idea of the importance of his work. 2 grandiloquent, bombastic, orotund, high-flown, pompous, pretentious, extravagant, magniloquent: She always talks about her husband in such inflated terms.

inflexible
adj. unbending, stiff, rigid, firm, rigorous, unyielding, adamant, severe, Rhadamanthine, inelastic, hard (and fast), determined, fixed, obdurate, immovable, intractable, unvaried, unvarying, invariable, unchangeable, immutable, obstinate, stubborn, obstinate, pigheaded, mulish, dyed in the wool, headstrong, refractory, steely, stony, resolute, resolved, unadaptable, unaccommodating, uncompliant, uncompromising, unshakeable or unshakable: The committee remain inflexible about changing the rules of the club to admit women.

inflict v. impose, apply, visit, administer, levy, force on or upon; trouble, afflict: The new government is seeking ways of inflicting more taxes on us. You ought not to inflict punishment on such small children.

influence n. 1 power, pressure, weight, sway, impact, force, effect, leverage, potency; hold, control, mastery, ascendancy, Colloq pull, clout: Would you use your influence to see if you can get me a job? The boy is under the influence of his tutor. 2 connections, favour, favouritism, Colloq pull: He got his position through influence, not merit.

--v. 3 affect, move, change, modify, alter, bias, sway, persuade, induce, work on, impress (upon), play or act upon or on, incline; bring pressure to bear on or upon, move, motivate, manipulate, Brit pressurize, US pressure, Colloq pull strings or US also wires: She was able to influence the minister to drop the scheme.

influential
adj. powerful, weighty, strong, forceful, effective, effectual, efficacious, instrumental, telling, significant, persuasive, dominant, leading, guiding, authoritative, predominant,

important, substantial, prestigious, significant, controlling: He comes from an influential family. What factors were influential in reaching your decision?

inform v. 1 tell, apprise, advise, communicate, enlighten, notify, acquaint, brief; impart, disclose, divulge, reveal, report, Colloq tip (off): I have informed everyone about the storm warning. 2 Usually, inform against or on. betray, incriminate, implicate, identify, Colloq tell (on), blab (on), rat (on), US blow the whistle (on); Slang peach (on), snitch (on), squeal (on), put the finger on, sing, name names, Brit nark (on), grass (on), split on, US finger: He informed on his accomplices in return for a lighter sentence.

informal adj. 1 unceremonious, casual, natural, unstilted, familiar, ordinary, everyday, unaffected, unassuming, unpretentious, simple, relaxed, free, free and easy, Brit common or garden, US garden-variety: We had an informal dinner in the kitchen. 2 unofficial, unconventional, unconstrained, casual, everyday, simple: On duty he wore informal clothes - blue jeans and a denim jacket. 3 vernacular, colloquial, simple, unaffected, ordinary, unpretentious, everyday: He uses informal language devoid of scientific jargon.

information
n. knowledge, data, facts, intelligence, message, word, advice, news, tidings, report, communication, Colloq info, low-down, Slang dirt, dope, Brit gen, bumf, US poop: I have little information regarding her divorce.

informative
adj. communicative, instructive, educational, edifying, revealing, illuminating: We found his report about the missiles very informative.

informed adj. 1 intelligent, knowledgeable, enlightened, educated, learned, cultured, cultivated: An informed public is democracy's greatest asset. 2 alert (to), aware (of), advised, in touch, au fait, briefed, conversant (with), (well-)versed, up (on), up to date, Colloq in the know, wise: Keep me informed as to your whereabouts.

informer n. traitor, betrayer, tattle-tale, taleteller, informant, Slang stool-pigeon, snitch, squealer, weasel, Brit grass, Chiefly US rat, US stoolie, canary, shoo-fly: According to the informer, the secret meeting is scheduled for tonight.

infrequently
adv. rarely, seldom, sporadically, occasionally, now and then, irregularly, exceptionally: They were only infrequently seen in public in later years.

infringe v. 1 violate, contravene, break, disobey, transgress, overstep: Publication of this article has infringed her right to a fair trial. 2 infringe on or upon. intrude on, impinge on, trespass on, encroach on, invade: Never let pleasure infringe on the domain of duty.

infringement
n. violation, breach, contravention, infraction, disobedience, infraction, non-compliance, breaking, transgression: Publication without permission constitutes infringement of copyright. The inventor sued the company for patent infringement.

infuriate v. enrage, anger, madden, incense, make (someone's) blood boil, provoke, inflame, work or stir or fire up, rile, arouse, vex, pique, gall, annoy, irritate, bother, chafe, agitate, irk, nettle, exasperate, raise (someone's) hackles, make (someone's) hackles rise, Brit have or get (someone's) blood up, Colloq miff, bug, peeve, get under (someone's) skin, get or Brit also put (someone's) back up, make (someone) see red, Chiefly US get (someone's) Irish or dander up, US burn up, Slang piss (someone) off, brown (someone) off, Brit cheese (someone) off: It really infuriated him to see injustice done to anyone.

ingenious adj. clever, skilful, skilled, shrewd, cunning, crafty, canny, dexterous, adroit, acute, sharp, keen, resourceful, adept, apt, smart, gifted, bright, brilliant, talented, deft, handy, inventive, Daedalian, creative, imaginative, original, Colloq neat, keen, US crackerjack, Slang on the ball: My friend here has come up with an ingenious solution to our problem.

ingenuity n. ingeniousness, genius, brilliance, cleverness, skill, shrewdness, cunning, craft, art, knack, flair, dexterity, dexterousness, adroitness, acuteness, sharpness, keenness, resourcefulness, adeptness, aptness, smartness, canniness, gift, talent, ability, capability, faculty, deftness, handiness, inventiveness, creativity, creativeness, imagination, imaginativeness, originality: She displayed extraordinary ingenuity in preparing the case against the plaintiff.

ingenuous adj. 1 na‹ve, simple, innocent, unsophisticated, childlike, suggestible, artless, sincere, genuine, trusting, guileless, natural, straight, uncomplicated, (fair and) square, honest, fair, just, open, undeceitful, unaffected, undeceptive, undissembling, unfeigning, (open and) above-board, Colloq on the level: What ideas have you been implanting into the mind of this ingenuous young girl? 2 frank, candid, open, trustworthy, honourable, forthright, direct, straightforward, four-square, honest, outspoken, blunt, bluff, bold, unreserved, free, uninhibited, unabashed: I shall be ingenuous enough to confess that what you heard about me is true.

ingrained adj. engrained, deep-rooted, fixed, inveterate, deep-seated, fundamental, basic, essential, inherent, inborn, innate, inbred, inherited, hereditary, organic, intrinsic, native, natural: He has an ingrained fear of heights.

ingratiating

adj. fawning, grovelling, sycophantic, toadying, toad-eating, servile, obsequious, flattering, time-serving, wheedling, cajoling, unctuous, oily, buttery, sweet-talking, sugary, saccharine, US blandiloquent, Colloq boot-licking, slimy, Brit smarmy, US apple-polishing, Slang US brown-nosing: It is Crawley's ingratiating manner that none of us can abide.

ingratitude

n. unthankfulness, ungratefulness, thanklessness, unappreciativeness, non-recognition: Despite the favours they had received, they showed their ingratitude by refusing to contribute to the fund drive.

ingredient

n. constituent, element, part, component, factor; (pl.) makings: Humour is a necessary ingredient in any working relationship.

inhabit   v. dwell in, reside in, live in, abide in, occupy, settle;

locate in, populate, people; colonize: This bird inhabits northern Africa. North America was inhabited by emigrants from Europe.

inhabitant
n. resident, dweller, denizen, citizen, tenant, occupant, occupier: The inhabitants of the village refused to pay taxes.

inhale v. breathe in, inspire, draw or suck in: I stepped outside and inhaled the fresh spring air.

inherent adj. intrinsic, indwelling, essential, basic, innate, connate, ingrained or engrained, native, congenital, inherited, hereditary, inborn, inbred, indigenous, immanent, built-in: It is difficult to tell which characteristics are derived and which are inherent.

inherit v. come into, fall or be or become heir to, be bequeathed, succeed to, be left, receive, acquire, Colloq come by: She inherited the property when her father died.

inheritance
n. patrimony, heritage, legacy, bequest, birthright; property: He came into his inheritance when he was 21.

inhibit v. discourage, repress, frustrate, hold back, bridle, curb, control, govern, hinder, restrain, impede, obstruct, interfere with, check, prevent, bar, stop: Her sad look inhibited my expression of delight at seeing her again.

inhibited adj. reticent, restrained, repressed, reserved, self-conscious, shy, abashed, embarrassed, Colloq uptight: He is much too inhibited to appear on television.

inhibition
n. self-consciousness, restraint, constraint, impediment, hindrance, bar, barrier, defence, defence mechanism, blockage, interference, check, curb, stricture: Geoff overcame his inhibitions and went over to talk with Anne. She had no inhibitions about singing in public.

inhospitable
adj. 1 unwelcoming, unreceptive, uninviting, unsociable,

unsocial, aloof, cold, cool, standoffish, unfriendly, inimical, antisocial, hostile, xenophobic: They were most inhospitable and refused to let me in. 2 unfavourable, forbidding, hostile, barren, desert, uninviting, uninhabitable: They were marooned on an inhospitable reef in the middle of the Pacific.

inhuman   adj. 1 inhumane, merciless, cruel, pitiless, ruthless, heartless, severe, unsympathetic, unfeeling, unkind, unkindly, uncompassionate, cold-blooded, vicious, stony-hearted, hard-hearted, callous, insensitive, barbaric, barbarous, savage: Many refugees have suffered torture and other inhuman treatment. 2 animal, bestial, brutal, brutish, fiendish, diabolical, demonic: The spectre, assuming an inhuman form, loomed over them.

initial   adj. 1 original, primary, first; prime, beginning, incipient, inaugural, opening, introductory, commencing: His initial plan, to take the children, was vetoed by his wife. It is best to tread cautiously during the initial stages of the programme.

--v. 2 sign, approve, endorse: Please initial the clauses of the contract that we have changed.

--n. 3 monogram: The initial 'M' is on all their towels.

initiate v. 1 begin, commence, enter upon or on, originate, introduce, set in motion, start, give rise to, get under way, launch, get or set going, trigger, set off, actuate, activate, instigate, institute, inaugurate: The programme was initiated last spring with much fanfare. 2 admit, accept, introduce: The new members were initiated last night, with due ceremony. 3 teach, instruct, train, tutor, drill, coach: His responsibility is to initiate recruits in the rudiments of jungle warfare.

--n. 4 novice, beginner, new boy or girl, greenhorn, rookie, neophyte, tiro or tyro, newcomer, tenderfoot, fledgling, apprentice, (raw) recruit, abecedarian, noviciate or novitiate, catechumen, Brit fresher or US only freshman, Australian new chum: In the first weeks, initiates are drilled in the basics.

initiation
n. 1 beginning, commencement, inauguration, origination, debut, introduction, inception, establishment: April the first is the

date for initiation of the new system. 2 admittance, admission, entrance, induction, enrolment, instatement, investiture, ordination, installation; ceremony, rite, ritual: The initiation of new members is scheduled for tomorrow at midnight.

initiative

n. 1 first move or step, lead, opening move: Hogan took the initiative by winning the first set. 2 enterprise, aggressiveness, drive, ambition, ambitiousness, resourcefulness, leadership, dynamism, energy, vigour, hustle, ,lan, Colloq get-up-and-go, pep, snap, zip, zing: At least she had the initiative to get the company back on a profitable basis.

inject   v. 1 introduce, insert, drive or force (in), shoot (in), intromit; inoculate: The serum is injected into the upper arm. The doctor injected me with antibiotics. 2 introduce, insert, imbue, instil, bring in, interject, throw in: Can't you inject a little more enthusiasm into your work?

injunction

n. 1 prohibition, interdict, interdiction, restriction, restraint, US law restraining order: There is an injunction against picketing. 2 order, mandate, directive, command, direction, instruction, ruling, dictate, exhortation; warning, admonition: Mother's parting injunction was always to dress warmly.

injure   v. 1 harm, wound, hurt, damage, impair: He's sure to injure himself if he's allowed to play with a knife. 2 wrong, offend, abuse, hurt, wound, outrage, slight, insult, affront, mistreat, misuse, ill-treat, maltreat: She starts the arguments yet she invariably takes the role of the injured party.

injurious adj. 1 damaging, harmful, hurtful, bad, deleterious, unfavourable, detrimental, unhealthy, insalubrious, pernicious, destructive; adverse, ruinous: Smoking is said to be injurious to health. 2 abusive, insulting, scornful, slanderous, libellous, defamatory, scandalous, scurrilous, harsh, calumnious, disparaging, derogatory, deprecatory, contemptuous, denigrating, offensive: She speaks of her ex-husband in the most injurious terms.

injury   n. damage, hurt, harm, wound, impairment; wrong, abuse, maltreatment, mistreatment, mischief, offence, outrage; mayhem: The injury was less painful to his foot than to his self-esteem.

injustice n. 1 unfairness, favouritism, discrimination, bias, inequality, partiality, partisanship, prejudice, bigotry, one-sidedness, unjustness, inequity: Class privilege has always condoned injustice. 2 wrong, injury: You do me an injustice if you think me capable of dishonesty.

inkling n. hint, suggestion, glimmering, suspicion, whisper, intimation, indication, soup‡on, clue, notion, (faintest or foggiest) idea, tip, tip-off: Can you give me an inkling of what you are getting at?

inmate n. prisoner, convict, captive, jailbird or Brit also gaolbird, Slang Brit lag; patient, case; inhabitant, occupant, resident: The inmates were fed on bread and water in those days. Inmates at the sanatorium are well treated.

innocent adj. 1 not guilty, guiltless, blameless, honest, (in the) clear, unimpeachable, above suspicion, above reproach, faultless: We all believe her innocent of extortion. 2 pure, sinless, virtuous, chaste, virgin(al), undefiled, untainted, unstained, unsullied, pristine, incorrupt, uncorrupted, immaculate, spotless, unblemished, unpolluted: She is still a sweet child, innocent as the day she was born. 3 harmless, well-intentioned, safe, innocuous, inoffensive, unobjectionable: What began as an innocent stroll became a dangerous expedition. 4 na‹ve, unsuspecting, unsuspicious, unsuspecting, ingenuous, unsophisticated, trusting, trustful, gullible, credulous, green, inexperienced, childlike, unworldly, guileless, artless, simple, open, unartificial, sincere: Youngsters would arrive in London directly from the farm, entirely innocent and unaware of the perils of city life.

--n. 5 infant, babe (in arms or in the wood(s)), child; ing,nue, novice, beginner, newcomer, Colloq greenhorn: She's certainly no innocent when it comes to men.

innovation

n. 1 novelty; invention: The flush toilet was a 19th-century innovation. 2 modernization, alteration: Consumer product development is marked by a spirit of tireless innovation.

innuendo n. insinuation, imputation, suggestion, hint, intimation, implication, allusion, overtone; reference, animadversion: I resent your innuendo that I know more about the affair than I am letting on.

inoffensive
adj. harmless, unobjectionable, innocuous, unoffending, neutral, retiring, mild, tame: Bligh is so inoffensive, how could he possibly have upset you?

inopportune
adj. inappropriate, malapropos, ill-timed, untimely, inconvenient, unsuited, unsuitable, out of place, unpropitious, unfavourable, inauspicious, ill-chosen, unseasonable, unseemly, untoward, unfortunate: Your call came at a most inopportune moment, as we were just sitting down to dinner.

inordinate
adj. 1 immoderate, unrestrained, intemperate, excessive, disproportionate, extravagant, overdone, extreme, exorbitant, outrageous, preposterous, unconscionable, unreasonable, undue, uncalled-for, unwarranted: Her inordinate appetite for scandal has made her a successful gossip columnist. 2 irregular, disorderly, disordered, uncontrolled, unlimited, unregulated, unsystematic, erratic, haphazard: Laws have been passed to limit the inordinate hunting of deer.

inquire v. 1 Usually, inquire into. search, investigate, probe, examine, research, look into, inspect, study, explore, survey, scrutinize: Scientists are inquiring into the causes of the greenhouse effect. 2 See enquire.

inquiry n. 1 enquiry, investigation, probe, examination, research, search, inspection, study, exploration, survey, scrutiny, inquest; questioning, querying, interrogation, inquest, cross-examination, inquisition: The police have asked me to help them with their inquiry. They are conducting an inquiry into the cause of the accident. 2 enquiry, question, query, interrogation: Would you please repeat the inquiry?

inquisitive
adj. 1 inquiring, curious, probing, questioning, interested,

investigative, searching, exploring, analytical: Children have a naturally inquisitive nature. 2 prying, intrusive, Colloq snooping, snoopy, nosy or nosey: Don't be so inquisitive about things that don't concern you!

inroad n. 1 incursion, raid, attack, invasion, penetration, foray, encroachment, forced entry, intrusion: Our armoured units have made an inroad into enemy territory. 2 Often, inroads. advance(s), progress, breakthrough: Have researchers made significant inroads into the problem of AIDS?

insane adj. 1 mad, demented, psychotic, schizophrenic, schizoid, non compos mentis, manic, maniacal, lunatic, deranged, unbalanced, psychoneurotic, neurotic, eccentric, crazy, of unsound mind, crazed, unhinged, out of one's mind or head, mad as a hatter or a March hare, quirky, Colloq round the bend or twist, off one's rocker or chump, loopy, loony, certifiable, mental, screwy, dotty, cuckoo, not all there, not have all one's marbles, off-the-wall, out of it, Brit potty, Slang daft, nutty (as a fruit cake), nuts, spaced out, spacy, batty, have bats in one's belfry, not right upstairs, barmy (in the crumpet), crackers, have a screw loose, schizo, Brit bonkers, US bugs, bughouse, loco, crazy as a bedbug, (gone) off the deep end, kooky, kinky, out to lunch: Witney was certified insane and institutionalized. You're insane if you think I am going out on that ledge. 2 stupid, dumb, dull, silly, asinine, ridiculous, idiotic, irrational, absurd, fatuous, ludicrous, foolish, nonsensical, irresponsible, reckless, wild, imbecilic, moronic, feeble-minded, hare-brained, addle-pated, addle-brained, scatterbrained, thimble-witted, attocerebral, Brit gormless, Colloq nutty, screwy, crazy: People in love sometimes do insane things.

insanity n. 1 madness, lunacy, mental illness or disorder, dementia (praecox), psychosis, schizophrenia, (mental) derangement, mania; psychoneurosis, neurosis: Because of the plea of temporary insanity he never stood trial for the murders. 2 folly, foolishness, stupidity, idiocy, imbecility, lunacy, absurdity, fatuity, fatuousness, nonsense, senselessness, irresponsibility, irrationality, inanity: What insanity it was to think I could win the lottery!

insecure adj. 1 uncertain, afraid, unsure, unconfident, nervous, worried, anxious, disconcerted, apprehensive, uncomfortable, shaky, jumpy, unnerved, fearful: Harry is beginning to feel insecure about his job. 2 unsafe, dangerous, unprotected, vulnerable, unguarded, defenceless, undefended, exposed, open: The machine-gun position is insecure and will soon be taken. 3 unstable, shaky, wobbly, precarious, infirm, weak, flimsy, frail, rickety, unsubstantial, rocky, unsound, unsteady, unreliable, uncertain: The structure collapsed because the footings were insecure.

insensible

adj. 1 insensate, unconscious, insentient, numb, benumbed, senseless, torpid, anaesthetized, Colloq out, out of it: She was totally insensible for an hour after the blow on the head. 2 Often, insensible to or of. insensitive, callous, indifferent, impervious, impassive, apathetic, cool, unsusceptible; unaffected, unmoved, untouched; unaware, deaf, inconsiderate; hard-hearted, thick-skinned, unfeeling, emotionless, dispassionate, thoughtless, Colloq cloth-eared: He remained wholly insensible to her desires and needs.

insert   v. 1 introduce, place or put or stick in, intercalate; interpolate, interject, interpose: Please do not insert comments of your own.

--n. 2 insertion, addition, addendum, supplement, advertisement, broadside, brochure, tip-in, handbill, circular, Colloq Brit advert, US ad, flier or flyer; outsert, wraparound or wrapround: The postage will be higher with this eight-page insert.

inside   n. 1 interior, centre, core, middle, heart; contents; lining, backing: From the outside one could never guess what the inside looks like. Please paint the inside of the cabinet blue. 2 Usually, insides. bowels, entrails, viscera, gut(s), stomach, Colloq innards: He has had trouble with his insides for years. 3 inside out. everted, reversed; backwards: He is wearing his pullover inside out.

--adj. 4 favoured, advantageous, favourable, advantaged, privileged, preferred, preferential, propitious, exclusive; internal, private, secret, confidential, privy, clandestine: She has an inside track to the chairman. He claims to have inside information about the successful bidder. 5 internal, interior; arranged, prearranged: The police think it was an inside job.

--adv. 6 fundamentally, basically, at bottom, by nature: Despite her gruff exterior, inside she is quite sentimental. 7 in prison, in jail or Brit also gaol, imprisoned, incarcerated, Slang Brit in quod, US up the river: He'll be inside for another five years.

--prep. 8 within, US inside of: Because of rain, the party was held inside the building.

insight n. perception, percipience, sensitivity, perspicacity, perceptiveness, perspicaciousness, discernment, acuteness, acuity, acumen, sharpness, understanding, judgement, comprehension, vision: Chambers has brought his considerable insight to bear on this complex problem.

insignificant
adj. paltry, trifling, petty, inconsiderable, inconsequential, trivial, unimportant, non-essential, minor, negligible, nugatory, unessential, niggling, puny, insubstantial, unsubstantial , Colloq piddling: These insignificant differences can be ignored. What you and I might do with our lives is, in the larger sense, insignificant.

insincere adj. hypocritical, dishonest, dissembling, deceptive, disingenuous, deceitful, untruthful, false, artificial, ungenuine, treacherous, perfidious, faithless, double-dealing, duplicitous, two-faced, Janus-faced, lying, mendacious, sly, Machiavellian, cunning, crafty, slick, foxy, vulpine, wily, artful, evasive, shifty, time-serving, unctuous, slimy, slippery, tricky, underhanded, crooked, Colloq phoney or US also phony: From the first act I thought Iago insincere.

insinuate v. 1 impute, suggest, hint, intimate, imply, whisper, indicate; convey, signify: They insinuated that she married me for my money. 2 insert (oneself), inject (oneself), worm or work or inveigle or manoeuvre (oneself or one's way); infiltrate, intrude: She insinuated herself into our group uninvited. 3 inject, infuse, instil, introduce: Wild imaginings began to insinuate themselves into my mind.

insist v. 1 demand, require, call for, command, importune, urge, exhort, argue, remonstrate, expostulate: The chairman insisted that proper parliamentary procedure be followed. 2 assert, state, declare, emphasize, stress, maintain, persist, hold, dwell on, vow, avow, aver, asseverate: He insisted that he wanted to see the last act but she insisted on leaving.

insistent adj. firm, dogged, emphatic, persistent, tenacious, resolute, determined, assertive, uncompromising, unfaltering, unwavering, persevering, perseverant, unrelenting, inexorable, stubborn, obstinate, unyielding, compelling, urgent, importunate: The judges were insistent that we should follow the rules to the letter.

insolent adj. impertinent, impudent, pert, saucy, bold, presumptuous, brazen, brash, disrespectful, insulting, contemptuous, offensive, rude, crude, uncivil, insubordinate, Colloq fresh, brassy, cheeky, Slang Brit smart-arsed or US smart-ass(ed), US wise: That insolent boor had the gall to call her 'Queenie'!

insolvent adj. bankrupt, ruined, in receivership, penniless, impoverished, destitute, US in Chapter Eleven, Colloq broke, wiped out, in the red, on the rocks, (gone) bust, gone to the wall, Brit in Queer Street, skint: A business is insolvent if its liabilities exceed its assets.

inspect v. examine, scrutinize, study, scan, survey, vet, check (up (on) or out), investigate, pore over; peruse: The customs man inspected every last inch of our luggage.

inspiration

n. 1 awakening, arousal, stimulus, revelation, impulse, feeling, afflatus, enlightenment, insight, spur, incitement, incentive; spirit, energy, ,lan, passion, ardour, zeal, enthusiasm, vigour, gusto, ebullience, sparkle: Her extraordinary eyes gave me the inspiration I needed and I finished writing the song in an hour. 2 influence, stimulus, stimulation, encouragement, provocation, suggestion, guide, education: Kitchener's life was an inspiration to many a career soldier.

inspire v. 1 animate, activate, actuate, stimulate, invigorate, stir, move, waken, awaken, arouse, rouse, instigate, prompt, rally, energize, enliven, vitalize, vivify, galvanize, inspirit, excite, spark (off), quicken, kindle, fire, provoke: It was the inflammatory speeches that inspired the crowd to riot. His enthusiasm inspired her to take up writing as a profession. 2 encourage, strengthen, support, reinforce, buoy (up), uplift, boost, affirm, confirm, fortify, buttress: Your example has inspired many young people.

install v. 1 instal, invest, instate, initiate, establish, inaugurate, induct, institute; place, put, position, introduce, settle: The new bishop will be installed in office next week. 2 instal, fit, set up, connect, fix (in place): I installed our new air conditioner myself.

installation

n. 1 investiture, instatement, initiation, establishment, inauguration, induction, institution, placement, introduction, solemnization, swearing-in, consecration, Ecclesiastical ordination; crowning, coronation: Will you attend the installation of the new vice-chancellor? 2 fitting, placement, connection, positioning: The plumber will supervise the installation of the new heating system. 3 base, post, station, depot, camp, establishment: Military installations all over the country are being picketed.

instance n. 1 case (in point), example, exemplar, illustration, precedent, exemplification, occurrence, event: The damage to the bus shelter is yet one more instance of hooliganism. 2 for instance. for example, as an example, say, e.g.; in the event, as it happens or happened: Consider her, for instance: she managed to work and raise a family.

instant n. 1 moment, point, second, time: I was thinking of you at the very instant the phone rang. 2 moment, second, minute, flash, twinkling (of an eye), trice, Colloq jiffy: I'll be with you in an instant, sir.

--adj. 3 instantaneous, immediate, on the spot, overnight: His novel was an instant best seller. 4 urgent, crying, pressing, earnest, imperative, critical, exigent; split-second, direct: We have an instant need for a computer specialist. 5 ready-made, ready-mixed, prepared, ready-to-serve, precooked:

This is an instant soup - just add hot water to the powder.

instantaneously
adv. instantly, immediately, at once, (right) now, directly, forthwith, promptly, this minute or second or instant, without delay, tout de suite, instanter, Brit straight away or US right away; Colloq pronto, US momentarily: The results will be beamed instantaneously to 176 million people around the world.

instead adv. 1 as an alternative or a substitute: She wanted me to go but I stayed instead. 2 instead of. alternatively, preferably, in preference to, in place of, in lieu of, rather than, as a substitute for; as contrasted with, as opposed to: Instead of going to the cinema we went to the theatre.

instil v. instill, imbue, inculcate, infuse, ingrain or engrain, implant; insinuate, impart: From childhood a sense of justice was instilled in us.

instinct n. intuition, feel, feeling, empathy, sensitivity, tendency, propensity, leaning, bent, skill, talent, faculty, sixth sense, knack, predisposition, capacity, aptitude; subconscious: She has an uncanny instinct for finding the most interesting person in a crowd.

instinctive
adj. 1 instinctual, intuitive, natural, innate, native, inborn, inbred, congenital, constitutional, reflex, visceral, intestinal, intrinsic, intuitional, subconscious, Colloq gut: She has an instinctive flair for design. 2 immediate, involuntary, irrational, mechanical, automatic, spontaneous: Harvey took an instinctive dislike to Percy when they met.

institute n. 1 society, organization, association, league, alliance, guild: They tried to establish an institute for research on badgers. 2 See institution, 2.

--v. 3 establish, found, launch, organize: The principles of sportsmanship were instituted on the playing fields of England. 4 inaugurate, introduce, initiate, set up, start, begin, originate, commence, pioneer: If you do not pay, we shall be obliged to institute proceedings against you.

institution

n. 1 establishing, establishment, forming, formation, origination, founding, foundation, installation, introduction, creation, organization: Who was responsible for the institution of cricket as a national pastime? 2 establishment, institute, academy, foundation, university, college, school: He attended an institution of higher learning after leaving the army. 3 hospital, medical centre, sanatorium or US also sanitarium, home, asylum: They spent their last days in an institution. 4 custom, tradition, habit, practice, routine, rule, order (of the day), code (of practice); doctrine, dogma: Throwing the coxswain into the river after the race has become an institution.

instruct v. 1 teach, train, tutor, drill, educate, coach, inform, guide, edify, prepare, indoctrinate, inculcate: My parents employed a tutor to instruct me in Latin. 2 direct, order, bid, require, tell, enjoin, command, importune, charge: We were instructed to tell no one where we were going.

instruction

n. 1 Often, instructions. order, direction, brief, briefing, directive, guideline, advice, recommendation, rule; information; Colloq drill: The next instruction is to insert the plug into the back of the receiver. Follow the instructions carefully. 2 teaching, education, schooling, training, drill, drilling, tuition, guidance, indoctrination, preparation, lessons, classes, coaching, tutelage; tutorial: Where did you receive instruction in first aid?

instructive

adj. informative, informational, informatory, educational, instructional, helpful, revealing, edifying, enlightening, illuminating: Studying the mistakes of others can be highly instructive.

instructor

n. teacher, trainer, tutor, coach, mentor, adviser, educator, pedagogue, scholastic, academe, academician, doctor, docent, lecturer, professor, Brit master, mistress, don, preceptor, US docent: Charlotte was not spending time with the tennis instructor just to improve her backhand.

instrument

n. 1 implement, tool, device, apparatus, utensil, appliance, contrivance, mechanism, gadget, Colloq contraption, thingumabob, thingumajig, thingummy, thingy, whatsit, what's-its-name, whatnot, what-d'you-call-it, Brit gubbins, US gismo or gizmo: Which instrument should I use to loosen this bolt? The doctor extracted the splinter with some sort of instrument. 2 agency, means, way, factor, mechanism, instrumentality, wherewithal, (prime) mover, catalyst, agent: Summers refused to be the instrument of bringing free people into slavery. 3 contract, (legal) document, (written) agreement, pact, compact, paper: After the signing, copies of the instruments were exchanged.

instrumental

adj. helpful, useful, utilitarian, contributory, of service, supportive, supporting, advantageous, catalytic, conducive, beneficial, valuable, significant, important; accessory, ancillary: Your presence will be instrumental in effecting a favourable settlement.

insubordinate

adj. disobedient, rebellious, defiant, refractory, mutinous, insurgent, insurrectional, insurrectionist, revolutionary, seditious, incompliant or uncompliant, uncooperative, recalcitrant, contumacious, fractious, unruly, perverse, contrary, obstreperous, Colloq Brit stroppy: The insubordinate officers have been court-martialled.

insubstantial

adj. 1 unsubstantial, insignificant, meagre, diaphanous, small, flimsy, frail, weak, feeble, paltry, puny, slight, thin, tenuous, fragile, light, gossamer, wispy, wisp-like, fine: Though the spider's thread appears insubstantial, for its weight it is enormously strong. 2 illusory, unreal, illusive, imaginary, imagined, fanciful, fancied, visionary, immaterial, intangible, impalpable, incorporeal, airy, ethereal, spiritual, chimerical, phantom, phantasmal, phantasmagorical, hallucinatory, fantastic; false: Through the mist London seemed insubstantial, a dream city of vapours rising from the Thames.

insufferable

adj. unbearable, insupportable or unsupportable, intolerable, unendurable, impossible: The babysitter said she refused ever again to look after such an insufferable brat.

insufficient
adj. inadequate, deficient, unsatisfactory, meagre, scanty, scant, scarce; too little, not enough: This light is insufficient for me to read by. We have insufficient skill to play the Brahms concerto.

insulate v. 1 detach, separate, isolate, segregate, shelter, preserve, set or keep apart, sequester, sequestrate, quarantine: The rock star's aides did their best to insulate her from her screaming fans. 2 lag, protect, shield, cushion, wrap, cover: Insulate the pipes to prevent heat loss. Insulate the wire with this tape. Nitroglycerine must be insulated from shock.

insult v. 1 offend, affront, slight, outrage; abuse, dishonour, defame, injure; asperse, slander, libel: Don't be insulted if I arrive late and leave early. You insult her by suggesting that she has never heard of Keats.

--n. 2 offence, affront, indignity, slight, outrage, barb, dig, slur, dishonour, abuse, defamation, discourtesy; aspersion, slander, libel; Colloq slap (in the face), put-down: Refusing to bow at a Japanese funeral is taken as an insult.

insurance n. assurance, surety, indemnity, indemnification, guarantee or guaranty, warranty, bond, security, protection, cover: The cost of insurance is higher owing to the increase in crime.

intact adj. whole, entire, perfect, complete, integral, sound, unbroken, solid, (all) in one piece, undivided, uncut, together, untouched, unreduced, undiminished, unimpaired, inviolate, unblemished, unscathed, uninjured, unharmed, undamaged, unsullied, undefiled, untainted: The ancient city has been preserved virtually intact.

intangible
adj. impalpable, unperceivable, imperceptible, incorporeal, unsubstantial, insubstantial, imponderable, immaterial, ethereal, vaporous, airy, evanescent, vague, obscure, dim, imprecise, indefinite, shadowy, fleeting, elusive: The architect must deal with intangible ideas of design, how people work and live, etc.

integral adj. 1 basic, elementary, elemental, fundamental, essential, intrinsic: The rhythm is an integral part of the music. 2 See intact.

integrate v. combine, unite, blend, bring or put together, assemble, merge, amalgamate, join, knit, mesh, consolidate, coalesce, fuse; US desegregate: We must integrate all the parts into a coherent whole. Several cultures have been well integrated into our community.

integrity n. 1 honesty, probity, veracity, uprightness, honour, rectitude, principle, morality, goodness, trustworthiness, decency, virtue, incorruptibility, righteousness: He is a person of unimpeachable integrity. 2 wholeness, entirety, unity, togetherness, soundness, completeness, coherence, oneness, totality: Care should be taken not to disturb the integrity of the protective film.

intellect n. 1 rationality, reason, reasonableness, (common) sense, understanding, judgement, cleverness, intelligence, mind, Colloq brains: You have the intellect, my boy, but it wants developing. 2 See intellectual, 3.

intellectual

adj. 1 mental, cerebral: The greatest minds have brought their intellectual powers to bear on the problem. 2 thoughtful, thought-provoking, highbrow, academic, bookish, scholarly, Colloq brainy: The professor did not find the subject intellectual enough for a dissertation.

--n. 3 thinker, intellect, highbrow, mastermind, genius, Colloq brain, egghead: He enjoys associating with intellectuals at the university. 4 scholar, academician, professor, savant, sage, wise man, guru, polymath, pundit, authority: The editor of the journal is an intellectual who leaves the details of administration to her deputy.

intelligence

n. 1 intellect, understanding, aptitude, capacity, brainpower, cleverness, astuteness, quickness, alertness, keenness, brightness, shrewdness, wit, mother wit, (common) sense, insight, perspicacity, perception, discernment, discretion, percipience, perspicaciousness, wisdom, sagacity, Colloq brains, savvy, grey matter, Slang Brit nous: He may not know anything about computer programming but he has the intelligence to learn how to do it. 2 information, knowledge, word, data, facts, advice, news, tidings, findings, Colloq dope, low-down, info, Brit gen, US inside, poop: Our agents are trying to gather intelligence on the Bulgarian situation.

intelligent
adj. bright, smart, clever, discerning, perspicacious, perceptive, percipient, understanding, rational, apt, astute, quick, quick-witted, keen, sharp, alert, shrewd, canny, insightful, gifted, sensible, wise, sage, sagacious, enlightened, knowing, aware, knowledgeable, erudite, au fait, Colloq brainy, Chiefly US savvy: She is certainly intelligent enough to be first in her class, if only she would study harder.

intelligentsia
n.pl. intellectuals, literati, savants, illuminati, masterminds, highbrows, Colloq brains, eggheads, brains trust: The government stifled free speech and persecuted the intelligentsia.

intelligible
adj. understandable, comprehensible, fathomable, decipherable, legible, clear, plain, lucid, unambiguous: Crowther's notes are barely intelligible.

intend   v. mean, have in mind or in view, propose, contemplate, design, plan, aim, purpose, resolve, determine: I intend to give him a piece of my mind. She is intending to go, but I don't know if she will be able to.

intense   adj. 1 extreme, excessive, severe, strong, great, fierce, harsh, acute, powerful, profound, deep: The intense heat kept the firemen at bay. 2 eager, enthusiastic, keen, earnest, sincere, heartfelt, deep, passionate, impassioned, ardent, zealous, animated, burning, consuming, fervent, fervid, perfervid, vehement, frantic, fanatical, frenzied: I had an intense desire to see the culprit brought to justice. 3 highly-strung or chiefly US high-strung, emotional, temperamental, tense, touchy, testy, volatile, hysterical, hotheaded, feverish, nervous, (high-)spirited, impetuous, impulsive, Colloq uptight: I appreciate his enthusiasm, but I wish Henshawe were a bit less intense about his politics.

intensify v. concentrate, focus, sharpen, whet, strengthen, reinforce, heighten, escalate, deepen, quicken, emphasize, magnify, increase, augment, double, redouble, heat up, Colloq step up, Brit hot up: We must intensify our efforts to effect a settlement of the crisis. The war is intensifying.

intensity n. concentration, focus, strength, forcefulness, force, power; vigour, energy, vehemence, fervour, zeal, ardour, passion, sincerity: The storm is diminishing in intensity. Political partisanship is often attended by great intensity of emotion.

intensive adj. concentrated, focused, intensified, comprehensive, exhaustive, thorough(-going), all-out: The police have launched an intensive manhunt.

intent n. 1 intention, aim, goal, target, purpose, object, objective, end, design, plan, idea: Was it your intent that I should go with you? The charge is assault with intent to kill. 2 inclination, tendency, desire, intending: The mere intent to commit treason is often tantamount to treason. 3 to all intents and purposes. virtually, practically, for all practical purposes, (almost) as good as, (almost) the same as, more or less, in effect: Telling you that the position was being discontinued is, to all intents and purposes, the same as firing you.

--adj. 4 concentrated, focused, fixed, steady, intense, determined, earnest, engrossed, absorbed, rapt, steadfast, resolute, attentive: Her intent stare unnerved many of her lecturers. 5 bent, set, resolute, committed, decided, firm, keen; resolved, eager, firm, determined, zealous, avid, enthusiastic,: If you're intent on going, we won't try to change your mind.

intention n. aim, purpose, intent, design, goal, end, object, objective, target, ambition: Was it your intention to stay till the fat lady sings?

intentional
adj. deliberate, intended, premeditated, meant, wilful,

designed, planned, preconceived, studied, considered, contrived; purposeful, on purpose: That slur was intentional and not just a slip of the tongue.

intently adv. closely, attentively, concentratedly, earnestly, fixedly, unflinchingly, determinedly, searchingly, steadily, steadfastly, continuously, assiduously, doggedly, unremittingly, eagerly, keenly, studiously: They regarded one another intently across the table.

intercept v. interrupt, deflect, stop, arrest, check, interfere (with), head off, block, impede, cut off, seize, grab, catch, trap: He was intercepted as he was about to board a plane with the documents. Keeler intercepted the ball, preventing a goal.

intercourse
n. 1 commerce, traffic, trade, dealings, exchange, communication, contact, interaction: In normal business intercourse our paths often cross. 2 sexual intercourse, coitus, coition, sexual congress or union, mating, copulation, sexual relations, carnal knowledge, making love, lovemaking, intimacy, sexual connection, Colloq sex: The plaintiff admits engaging in intercourse with the defendant.

interest n. 1 attention, attentiveness, concern, regard, curiosity, scrutiny, notice, engagement: The way the puzzle fitted together drew my interest. She examined the books with interest. She shows interest in taking a writing course. 2 concern, significance, importance, weight, moment, note, consequence: Of what interest is a newly found painting by Tiepolo? 3 Often, interests. profit, advantage, benefit, good, avail, worth, value, consideration, behalf, behoof: Is it in our interest to sell the business? 4 share, portion, stake, investment, piece, cut, percentage, participation, involvement: I have a small interest in an emerald mine. 5 Often, interests. business, concern, affair, property; hobby, pastime, diversion, avocation, amusement, entertainment, pursuit, relaxation, occupation: She travels abroad to look after her interests. Caroline has many interests besides business. 6 (lending) fee or charge, percentage, rate, Slang US vigorish: How much interest would the bank charge on a œ40,000 mortgage?

--v. 7 engage, absorb, engross, attract, draw, catch, capture, captivate, hold, fascinate, intrigue, excite, incite, provoke, arouse, affect, quicken, infect, animate, kindle, fire: At that time, our daughter was interested only in boys. There is something about astronomy that interests me. 8 influence, induce, persuade, move, tempt, involve, enrol, enlist, dispose, incline, prevail upon, talk into, concern: Could I interest you in investing in my company?

interested

adj. 1 Also, interested in. engaged, absorbed, engrossed, drawn (to), attracted (by), involved (in), curious (about), fascinated (by), keen (on), stimulated (by), responsive (to), concerned (about): We talked about investing in my plastics company, and he seemed interested. She has become interested in designing jewellery. 2 concerned, involved, non-objective, partial, biased, prejudiced, prejudicial, partisan, predisposed: You cannot get an honest appraisal of the painting's value from an interested party.

interesting

adj. absorbing, engaging, gripping, riveting, engrossing, attractive, compelling, intriguing, provocative, stimulating, exciting, inviting, fascinating, enchanting, spellbinding, captivating: Nick has just told me the most interesting story about Tony.

interfere v. 1 meddle, intrude, butt in, intervene, intercede, interpose, interrupt, Colloq horn in, put or stick in one's oar or one's oar in, poke one's nose in, US kibitz: Stop interfering in things that do not concern you. 2 hinder, impede, hamper, block, obstruct, encumber, slow, retard, handicap, set back, get in the way of, frustrate, conflict, inhibit, trammel, subvert, sabotage: Allow nothing to interfere with the course of true love.

interference

n. 1 meddling, intrusion, intruding, intervention, interceding, intercession: This interference in our personal affairs has gone far enough. 2 hindrance, impediment, block, obstruction, encumbrance, impedance, difficulty, snag, hitch, handicap, set-back; frustration, inhibition, conflict, opposition: The lawsuit became an unwelcome interference in the smooth flow of our lives.

interior adj. 1 inside, internal, inner, inward: The interior surfaces are to be painted white. 2 internal, domestic, civil, national, local, home: We will not accept the interference of foreign governments in our interior affairs. 3 inner, private, intimate, personal, individual, secret, hidden, veiled: Some of Hamlet's great speeches are in the form of interior monologues, or soliloquies. 4 upland, inland, up-country, land-locked: The most beautiful scenery is in the interior part of the country, away from the marshy coast.

--n. 5 inside: The interior is coated with Teflon. 6 heart, centre, middle, core, depths: This is the story of a journey to the interior of the earth. 7 uplands, up-country, heartland, hinterland: The interior is covered with rocks and scrub pine.

interjection

n. exclamation, ejaculation, cry, interpolation, utterance: Grammarians regard expressions like 'Hello' and 'Goodbye' as interjections.

interlude n. interval, entr'acte, intermission, pause, stop, stoppage, respite, interruption, break, hiatus, lacuna, gap, halt, wait, breathing-space, recess, rest, spell, lull, Colloq let-up: There is a ten-minute interlude between the acts.

intermediary

n. go-between, middleman, agent, representative, broker, intermediate, third party, mediator, arbitrator, arbiter, referee, umpire, judge: Donaldson acted as intermediary and arranged the deal.

intermediate

adj. 1 middle, in-between, medial, midway, halfway, transitional, intervening, intermediary: Middle schools cater for the age-range intermediate between primary and secondary schooling. In sublimation a substance changes from a gas to a solid (or vice versa) , skipping the intermediate liquid state. 2 See intermediary.

intermission

n. See interlude.

intermittent
adj. irregular, discontinuous, disconnected, sporadic, occasional, random, spasmodic, fitful, broken, periodic, alternating, cyclic(al), rhythmic(al), pulsating, seasonal, on-and-off, on-again-off-again, stop-and-go, stop-go: Tomorrow, intermittent showers in the morning will yield to sunshine.

internal adj. See interior, 1, 2, 3.

international
adj. supranational, global, worldwide, universal, intercontinental, cosmopolitan, ecumenic(al) or oecumenic(al); foreign: An international conference is being held on disarmament. My father is engaged in international trade.

interpret v. 1 explain, explicate, clear up, clarify, elucidate, illuminate, throw or shed light on, simplify, decipher, decode, define, spell out, make sense (out) of, translate, paraphrase: Would you interpret this clause of the agreement for me? 2 understand, construe, take (to mean), read, figure or work out, sort out, unravel: I haven't any idea how to interpret this poem.

interpretation
n. 1 explanation, clarification, elucidation, simplification, decipherment, solution, working-out, unravelling, sorting out, decoding, definition, illustration, translation, paraphrasing: Sharon's detailed interpretation of the data is quite easy to understand. 2 analysis, diagnosis, examination, exegesis, explication, reading, construal, inference, understanding: These figures are subject to individual interpretation.

interrogation
n. questioning, examination, cross-examination, inquisition, investigation, Colloq third degree, grilling: Caught by the rebels, we were subjected to hours of interrogation.

interrupt v. 1 break in, cut in, intrude in, butt in, interfere in, punctuate, disturb, Colloq barge in, chime in, horn in: He keeps interrupting the discussion with his silly remarks. 2 discontinue, break off, cut off, cut short, interfere with, disrupt, suspend, hold up, halt, stop, end, terminate, cease: We interrupt this programme to bring you a news bulletin.

interruption

n. 1 break, intrusion, disturbance, interference, disruption: Please forgive this interruption, but you're wanted on the phone. 2 break, gap, interval, lacuna, hiatus, respite, rest, pause, pausing, intermission, stopping, stop, suspension, cessation, cease, ceasing, surcease, hesitation, Prosody caesura, Colloq let-up: She talked for an hour without interruption.

interval n. 1 intermission, interlude, entr'acte, break, pause; recess, rest (period), period, time, wait, spell, delay, lapse: The play was so bad we left in the interval. After a brief interval, the lights came on again. 2 meanwhile, meantime, interim: He returned later but found that in the interval she had changed her mind. 3 gap, opening, space, hole, void, lacuna, distance, interstice, Architecture intercolumniation: The interval between the columns is exactly three metres.

intervene v. 1 interfere, intrude, break in, interrupt, intercede, meddle, interpose, butt in, Colloq poke one's nose in, horn in, put in one's oar, step in: If I had not intervened you might have been killed. She intervened on my behalf. 2 come or go (between), pass, elapse: A week intervened before we saw each other again.

interview n. 1 meeting, (press) conference, discussion, conversation, talk, question period, audience: The reporter phoned to ask for an interview. 2 evaluation, appraisal, vetting, assessment: I have a job interview scheduled for tomorrow.

--v. 3 question, examine, interrogate, sound out, talk with or to: She interviewed the Prime Minister on television last night. 4 appraise, evaluate, check (out), vet: The headmaster himself interviews the teachers.

intimate° adj. 1 close, personal, warm, affectionate, loving, dear, bosom, cherished, familiar, intime: She had a party for intimate friends. 2 secret, confidential, private, personal, privy, hidden, intime; detailed, penetrating, deep, profound, thorough, exhaustive: In his autobiography he reveals intimate particulars of his marriage. 3 sexual; carnal: It is well known that Millie was on intimate terms with her chauffeur. 4

cosy, informal, snug, friendly, warm, comfortable; intime, … deux, tˆte-…-tˆte, Colloq comfy: The two of us had an intimate dinner at home last night.

--n. 5 friend, associate, comrade, crony, familiar, confidant(e), (constant) companion, Achates, alter ego, colleague, confrŠre, Colloq sidekick, chum, pal, Brit and Australian mate, US buddy, Slang Brit china (plate), mucker: He and a few of his intimates like to get together now and then for a game of snooker.

intimateý v. hint, imply, suggest, insinuate, indicate, refer to, allude to, communicate, make known, give (someone) to understand, warn, caution, Colloq tip (off): He intimates that my wife will be a widow if I tell the police.

intimidate

v. frighten, scare, alarm, cow, daunt, dismay, abash, appal, awe, overawe, browbeat, menace, threaten, terrify, petrify, terrorize, tyrannize; Slang have or get (someone) by the short and curlies: You can't intimidate me with your threats!

intolerance

n. bias, prejudice, bigotry, discrimination, partiality, illiberality, narrow-mindedness, dogmatism; racism, racialism, sexism, classism, ageism, xenophobia: The government has legislated against intolerance of minorities.

intolerant

adj. 1 unsympathetic, unforbearing, unindulgent, impatient, inconsiderate, inhospitable, uncharitable: The present system seems intolerant of the aged. 2 biased, prejudiced, bigoted, discriminatory, partial, illiberal, narrow-minded, parochial, provincial, jaundiced, warped, twisted, one-sided, opinionated, close-minded; racist, racialist, sexist, classist, ageist, xenophobic: How can some religions be so intolerant of other people's beliefs?

intonation

n. accent, accentuation, speech or sound pattern, delivery, modulation, articulation, pronunciation, vocalization, pitch, tone, inflection: You can tell the speaker's mood by his intonation.

intoxicate

v. 1 inebriate, make drunk, addle, stupefy, muddle, befuddle: He tried to intoxicate me with his home-made brew. 2 stimulate, excite, overwhelm, elate, exhilarate, animate, enliven, invigorate, inspirit, thrill, galvanize, electrify, make one's head spin, take one's breath away, infatuate, entrance, enchant, enrapture, fascinate, bewitch, cast a spell on, ensorcel: She was intoxicated by the atmosphere of the place.

intoxicating

adj. 1 alcoholic, spirituous, inebriant: Do not drink intoxicating beverages if you plan to drive. 2 exhilarating, invigorating, thrilling, exciting, heady, stimulating, electrifying, entrancing, fascinating: Making a film of the life of Lola Montez is an intoxicating idea.

intrepid adj. fearless, brave, bold, daring, dauntless, undaunted, steadfast, resolute, courageous, unafraid, plucky, gallant, valiant, valorous, doughty, audacious, heroic, manly, manful, dashing, adventurous, venturesome, stout-hearted, lion-hearted, game: Quatermain was known to the enemy as an intrepid soldier.

intricate adj. 1 involved, complicated, convoluted, entangled, tangled, knotty, complex, twisted, winding, tortuous, sinuous, anfractuous, labyrinthine, elaborate, Byzantine, fancy, ornate, rococo, Daedalian or Daedalean or Daedalic, Literary daedal or dedal: The plot was far too intricate and I became confused. 2 perplexing, puzzling, mystifying, enigmatic: The code was so intricate that even the computer needed hours to decipher the message.

intrigue v. 1 fascinate, beguile, captivate, attract, absorb, charm, pique, interest, titillate, arouse or excite the curiosity (of): It intrigues me to watch them put those ships into bottles. 2 conspire, plot, connive, scheme, manoeuvre: She was sure that everyone was intriguing against her.

--n. 3 conspiracy, plot, scheme, manoeuvre, collusion, stratagem, trickery, chicanery, double-dealing, guile, subterfuge, artifice, machination, deception: Many of those close to the government are engaged in intrigue of some kind. 4 affair, liaison, amour, romance, intimacy; adultery: We all knew about the intrigue he was carrying on with the duke's wife.

intrinsic adj. inherent, basic, fundamental, essential, proper, elemental, organic, natural, native, inbred, congenital, inherited, hereditary, innate, inborn, immanent, indwelling, underlying, constitutional; real, true, actual, genuine: As no painting has intrinsic worth, its value is arbitrary.

introduce v. 1 acquaint, present, make known: Sandy introduced Gerald and Daphne to each other. 2 bring in or up, advance, present, broach, put or set forth, put forward, suggest, offer, propose, mention: It was she who introduced the issue of bacteria in canned goods. 3 announce, present: Please introduce the next speaker. 4 start, begin, originate, launch, establish, set up, pioneer, initiate, usher in, institute, bring out or in, set up, organize: When was paper money first introduced? 5 insert, add, interpose, inject, put in, inject, interpolate: Why introduce irrelevant matters into the discussion?

introductory
adj. 1 opening, prefatory, preliminary, preparatory, beginning, inaugural, initial: His 'introductory' remarks lasted longer than the speeches! 2 primary, basic, fundamental, elementary, first, rudimentary: Take an introductory course before enrolling for more advanced study.

intrude v. interfere, break in, interrupt, intervene, push in, interpose, butt in, infringe, encroach, obtrude, Colloq horn in, barge in: They want to be alone and you are intruding. Forgive me for intruding into your conversation.

intruder n. 1 interloper, gatecrasher, uninvited guest, unwelcome visitor; trespasser, encroacher, invader, infiltrator, squatter; burglar, thief: The intruders were quickly expelled by the guards. 2 meddler, busybody, Colloq snoop(er), Nosy Parker, US kibitzer: You are an intruder into my private affairs.

intrusive adj. intruding, interfering, meddlesome, invasive, meddling, prying, inquisitive, obtrusive, importunate, officious, presumptuous, forward; unwelcome, uncalled-for, unwanted, unsought, Colloq nosy, pushy, snoopy: He said he apologized if he was being intrusive.

intuition n. instinct, insight, hunch, sixth sense, presentiment, premonition, foreboding; perception, perceptiveness, percipience, perspicacity, common sense, mother wit: Intuition told me I should find the answer here.

invalid° adj. 1 ailing, sick, sickly, ill, infirm, valetudinarian, disabled: His invalid sister is confined to a wheelchair.

--n. 2 patient, valetudinarian, victim, sufferer, incurable, cripple, Chiefly US and Canadian shut-in: Many invalids have claimed complete recovery after a visit to Lourdes.

invalidý adj. void, null (and void), nullified, annulled, repudiated, untrue, false, faulty, erroneous, wrong, spurious; incorrect, imperfect, impaired, unsound, untenable, ineffective: He was driving with an invalid licence. Your reasons for quitting school are invalid.

invaluable
adj. priceless, valuable, precious, of inestimable or incalculable value; irreplaceable, irredeemable; costly, expensive, high-priced, dear: The thieves made off with several invaluable paintings.

invariable
adj. 1 unchanging, changeless, unvarying, invariant, unwavering, constant, steady, stable, regular; fixed, fast, set, rigid, uniform, unfailing, unexceptional: She is invariable in her opinion of a woman's right to abortion. His invariable routine calls for a dawn swim, regardless of the weather. 2 immutable, unchangeable, unalterable, unmodifiable: The law of supply and demand is invariable. 3 permanent, fixed, enduring, abiding, eternal, unaltered, unvarying, unchanged, unvaried, unaltered, unmodified: The positions of the stars appear to be invariable.

invasion n. 1 incursion, raid, foray, intrusion, inroad, encroachment, trespass, infiltration; infringement, infraction, transgression, violation: The poachers were charged with invasion of private property. Unauthorized publication of that material is an invasion of your rights. 2 attack, assault, onslaught, aggression, offensive, drive, storming, blitzkrieg: The armoured divisions succeeded in stopping the invasion.

invent v. 1 create, devise, contrive, originate, think up, dream up, conceive, concoct, make up, imagine, formulate, improvise, design, hit upon; coin: He claims to have invented the toothpaste tube. 2 fabricate, make up, concoct, Colloq cook up: She invented that story about having been a lion-tamer.

invention n. 1 creation, origination, contriving, devising, conception, contrivance, introduction, development: The invention of the screwdriver has spared many a broken fingernail. 2 creation, contrivance, device, gadget, Colloq contraption, US gismo or gizmo: Thomas Edison held patents on a huge number of inventions. 3 fiction, figment, story, fantasy, fabrication, tale, fable, yarn, fib, tall story or tale, falsification, fake, sham, falsehood, lie, prevarication: Her claim that the accident was my fault is a flagrant invention.

invest v. 1 venture, lay out, put in, sink: She was persuaded to invest her life savings in unit trusts. 2 devote, allot, spend, contribute, supply, provide: We have invested a lot of time in cleaning up local government. 3 install or instal, inaugurate, induct, initiate, instate, establish, ordain, swear in, seat: He will be invested with the Order of Merit on Tuesday.

investigate

v. enquire or inquire into, examine, study, consider, explore, probe, look into, research, scrutinize, analyse, sift (through), winnow: The laboratory is investigating the nature of the strange phenomenon.

investigation

n. enquiry or inquiry, examination, study, review, exploration, quest, search, probe, research, discovery procedure, scrutiny, analysis, inquest, inquisition, interrogation, questioning: Has the investigation turned up any evidence of collusion?

invigorating

adj. stimulating, bracing, rejuvenating, tonic, vitalizing, restorative, energizing, vivifying, enlivening, exhilarating; fresh, healthful, healthy, salubrious, salutary: Each morning I go for an invigorating walk. The doctor recommended the invigorating mountain air.

invincible

adj. 1 unconquerable, unbeatable, indomitable, insuperable, undefeated, unstoppable: United look invincible, and are likely to retain the cup for a fourth successive season. 2 impregnable, invulnerable, impenetrable, indestructible, unassailable: The Romans believed the fortress to be invincible.

invisible adj. 1 unseeable, imperceptible, undetectable, imperceivable; unseen: The air we breathe is invisible. 2 concealed, hidden, disguised, camouflaged, masked, covered, unperceived, veiled, indiscernible: Once the part has been painted, the damage will be invisible.

invitation

n. 1 summons, request, call, bidding, Colloq invite: I am still waiting for my invitation to their wedding. 2 attraction, inducement, allure, allurement, enticement, temptation, magnetism, bait, lure, draw, pull: The possibility of going where no man had gone before was too great an invitation to ignore.

inviting adj. alluring, tempting, enticing, attractive, beckoning, appealing, captivating, engaging, intriguing, irresistible, winsome, beguiling, bewitching, entrancing, fascinating, tantalizing, seductive: She gave him an inviting smile but he still approached cautiously.

involuntary

adj. unconscious, unintentional, unthinking, impulsive, spontaneous, unpremeditated, instinctive, instinctual, unwitting; automatic, reflex, mechanical, conditioned, uncontrolled, uncontrollable: When I was struck, my involuntary reaction was to strike back at once. At the mention of his name she gave an involuntary start.

involve v. 1 include, contain, comprise, cover, embrace, incorporate, encompass, take in, subsume, embody, comprehend, number among, count in: The survey involved many people from all walks of life. 2 imply, entail, suggest, mean, betoken, require, necessitate, presuppose: Enrolling for a course involves doing homework as well as attending classes. 3 Often, involve in or with. implicate, concern, affect, touch, entangle, draw in; incriminate, inculpate; associate with, connect with, catch (up) in: I didn't know that Annette was involved. Are you involved in that murder investigation?

involved adj. 1 implicated, concerned, affected, interested, active: The public enquiry was attended by all involved members of the community. 2 tangled, complicated, complex, twisted, snarled, convoluted, confused, confusing, intricate, tortuous, elaborate, knotty, Byzantine, labyrinthine: The plot is too involved to be followed easily. The involved problems of adolescence cannot be treated in a one-day conference. 3 involved with. associated with, entangled with, embroiled with, enmeshed with, Colloq mixed up with: Dennis is still very much involved with that singer from the Green Dragon.

9.7 irk...

=-

irk v. irritate, annoy, vex, pester, provoke, chafe, nettle, exasperate, Colloq needle, miff, aggravate, bug, peeve, rub (someone) (up) the wrong way, put out: It really irks me to know that we lost because we didn't practise.

irksome adj. irritating, annoying, vexing, vexatious, chafing, nettling, exasperating, bothersome, troublesome, burdensome, tiresome, tedious, boring, wearisome, uninteresting, Colloq aggravating, pestiferous: The mosquitoes are particularly irksome on muggy, windless evenings.

irregular adj. 1 uneven, bumpy, lumpy, coarse, rough, unequal, unsymmetrical, asymmetric(al), pitted, potholed, jagged, craggy, lopsided: The irregular surface of the road bounced us about in the car. 2 sporadic, uneven, random, erratic, unequal, fitful, haphazard, unsystematic, unsystematized, disorderly, uncertain, unmethodical; occasional, casual: In the distance I could hear the staccato of irregular machine-gun fire. 3 extraordinary, unusual, eccentric, abnormal, anomalous, aberrant, unnatural, peculiar, queer, odd, weird, bizarre, strange, singular, nonconforming, nonconformist, exceptional, unconventional, offbeat, uncommon, freakish, Colloq freaky: Don't you think that keeping a Komodo dragon as a pet is somewhat irregular?

irrelevant

adj. inappropriate, inapplicable, impertinent, unrelated, alien, inapposite, malapropos, beside the point, inapt, non-germane, unconnected, extraneous, neither here nor there, out of place, gratuitous, uncalled-for, Colloq out of the blue, off the beam, Slang off-the-wall: The name of the person who asked the question is entirely irrelevant.

irrepressible

adj. unrestrainable, irrestrainable, uncontainable, uncontrollable, unmanageable, insuppressible or unsuppressible, unstoppable, ebullient, buoyant, effervescent, bubbling, boisterous: Nothing could dampen our irrepressible high spirits after winning the game.

irreproachable

adj. blameless, unimpeachable, beyond reproach, unreprovable, faultless, innocent, above suspicion, impeccable, inculpable, honest, pure: Till now, Forsyth's record in the army has been irreproachable.

irresistible

adj. 1 irrepressible, unconquerable, indomitable, overpowering, unbearable, overwhelming, overriding, unmanageable, ungovernable, uncontrollable: I had an irresistible desire to punch him in the nose. 2 unstoppable, inexorable, relentless, unavoidable, ineluctable, inescapable: What happens when an irresistible force meets an immovable object?

irresolute

adj. vacillating, wavering, faltering, indecisive, infirm of purpose, in or US only of two minds, undecided, hesitant, hesitating, shifting, changing, erratic, uncertain, unsure, undetermined, unresolved, half-hearted, Colloq wishy-washy: You must act; this is no time to be irresolute.

irrespective of

prep. regardless of, notwithstanding, despite, apart from, in spite of, without regard to, ignoring, discounting: We shall carry on irrespective of public opinion.

irresponsible

adj. careless, reckless, devil-may-care, unanswerable, unaccountable, non-liable, rash, unruly, wild; unreliable, undependable, untrustworthy, weak, feckless, ineffectual: Cyril is too irresponsible to take care of the children by himself.

irretrievable

adj. 1 non-retrievable, unretrievable, unrecoverable, irrecoverable, unsalvageable, unsavable, lost, irreclaimable: The data that was deleted is now irretrievable. 2 irreparable, irremediable, uncorrectable, unrectifiable, irredeemable, irreversible, irrevocable: The radiation from the atomic blast did irretrievable damage.

irreverent

adj. 1 blasphemous, impious, profane, sacrilegious, unholy, ungodly, irreligious: She was reprimanded for her irreverent attitude to morning prayers. 2 disrespectful, insulting, insolent, rude, discourteous, uncivil, derisive, impudent, impertinent, saucy, flippant, mocking, tongue-in-cheek, Colloq flip, cheeky: The prince did not appreciate being the butt of the irreverent skit.

irreversible

adj. unreversible, non-reversible, irrevocable, unchangeable, unalterable, permanent, fixed, final, unrepealable, irredeemable, irretrievable: Burning, essentially the chemical process of rapid oxidation, is irreversible.

irrevocable

adj. irreversible, unchangeable, immutable, changeless, fixed, unalterable, settled, unrecallable, irretrievable, irrepealable, not undoable; irreparable, permanent, enduring, everlasting: The colonel says that his was an irrevocable order. That speech did you irrevocable harm.

irritable adj. impatient, excitable, testy, touchy, quarrelsome, grouchy, fretful, peevish, cross, crabby, crusty, short-tempered, petulant, prickly, irascible, moody, temperamental, gruff, cantankerous, curmudgeonly, dyspeptic, bad-tempered, ill-tempered, ill-humoured, snappy or snappish, grumpy or Brit also grumpish, Colloq crotchety, US and Canadian and Irish cranky: Why are you always so irritable before breakfast?

irritate v. annoy, vex, nettle, pester, provoke, bother, anger, enrage, chafe, pique, exasperate, ruffle, hector, harass, harry, nag, plague, worry, fret, fluster, trouble, pick at or on, Colloq needle, get under (someone's) skin, get in (someone's) hair, hassle, peeve, get on (someone's) nerves, drive (someone) up the wall, get (someone's) hackles up, get (someone's) back up, drive (someone) crazy or mad, rub (someone) (up) the wrong way, Brit get up (someone's) nose, US burn (someone) up: All these stupid questions are beginning to irritate me.

9.8 island...

=-

island n. isle, islet, ait, cay, key; atoll; archipelago; Brit dialect eyot, holm: There are actually about 1500 islands in the Thousand Islands in the St Lawrence river.

isolate v. separate, segregate, sequester, cloister, detach, cut off, send to Coventry, ostracize, maroon, exclude, shut out, bar, debar, banish, deport, transport, exile, reject, eject, throw out, expel, shun, spurn, avoid, ignore, snub; quarantine; Colloq cut, give (someone) the cold shoulder: You cannot isolate a child from the pressures of modern society.

isolated adj. 1 lone, solitary, single, singular, unique, anomalous, separate, special, particular, individual, exceptional, unrelated: In one isolated case they recommended a suspended sentence. 2 alone, separated, segregated, secluded, sequestered, cloistered, unconnected, detached, (set) apart, removed, cut off, excluded; forlorn, lonely, hermitic(al), eremitic(al), anchoretic(al), troglodytic(al), monastic: Away from his friends and family, he felt totally isolated. After his wife died, he led an isolated existence. 3 secluded, remote, out-of-the-way, off the beaten track, unfrequented, lonely; secret, hidden: For twenty years we lived in that isolated shack in the wilderness.

issue n. 1 outflow, outgoing, exit, egress, issuance, emanation, efflux, debouchment, emergence, outlet: The river's colour changed abruptly at its point of issue into the sea. 2 outcome, conclusion, consequence, culmination, result, end, effect, consummation, event, climax, Colloq pay-off: Whatever the issue, it has been a brave effort. 3 point, topic, subject, matter, affair, problem, question: That is an issue you should take up with the mayor. 4 Usually, major issue. (major or big) problem or difficulty, controversy, fight, dispute, cause c,lŠbre: He turns even walking the dog into a major issue. 5 printing, edition, version; copy, number: I have a copy of the Sunday issue. See if you can buy an issue of today's paper. 6 publication, promulgation, issuance, issuing, distribution, delivery, dissemination, broadcasting, proclamation, circulation: There will be a special issue of stamps to commemorate his death. 7 offspring, child or children, descendant(s), progeny, young, scion(s), son(s), daughter(s): According to the records, your uncle died without issue, making you his sole heir. 8 at issue. in contention, in dispute, unresolved, unsettled, uncertain, up in the air, to be decided: The point at issue is which system will be the most efficient. 9 take issue. disagree, argue, contend, dispute, oppose, take exception: I feel that I must take issue with your conclusion.

--v. 10 proclaim, promulgate, declare, publish, put out, put or set forth, announce, circulate, distribute, get out, release, deliver, broadcast, disseminate, get out: The kidnappers have issued an ultimatum. 11 emerge, come or go forth, exit, emanate, discharge, stream, flow, pour; appear, originate, spring, stem, arise: The play ended, and people issued from the theatre. Where Pegasus stamped his foot the Pierian spring issued forth.

9.9 itch...
=-

itch   v. 1 tickle, tingle, prickle: These mosquito bites itch terribly. 2 desire, crave, hanker, hunger, thirst, yearn, pine, wish, want, die: I am itching to get my hands on whoever told you that I was dead.

--n. 3 tickle, tickling, tingle, tingling, prickle, prickling, irritation: My frustration is like having an itch I can't scratch. 4 desire, craving, hankering, hunger, thirst, yearning, longing, Colloq yen: I have a sudden itch to visit mother for the weekend.

item   n. 1 detail, article, point, particular, matter, thing, element, component, ingredient: There's one item I'd like you to keep in mind. 2 piece, mention, notice, note, memorandum, memo, filler, jotting: We often publish short items to fill out a column.

itemize v. enumerate, list, specify, particularize, detail, document, number, record, count, tabulate: Must I itemize every single book in the inventory?

10.0 J

=-

10.1 jab...

=-

jab v. 1 stab, thrust, poke, dig, prod; plunge; nudge; tap: The doctor jabbed a needle into my arm. 2 punch, hit, strike, belt, smack, rap, whack, thwack, cuff, thump, wallop; elbow; Colloq clip, sock, slug, biff: I jabbed him in the jaw with a quick left.

--n. 3 stab, thrust, poke, dig, prod, nudge: I felt the jab of her elbow signalling me to be quiet. 4 punch, belt, smack, rap, whack, thwack, cuff, thump, wallop, Colloq clip, sock, slug, biff: A hard jab in the stomach made the bully turn to pudding.

jabber v. 1 blether or US only blather, chatter, babble, gibber, gabble, prate, prattle, patter, drivel, rattle, Brit natter, Scots yatter, Colloq gab, gas, yap, witter: The couple behind me jabbered throughout the entire film.

--n. 2 See jargon, 2.

jade n. 1 nag, hack, Slang Brit screw, US plug: That old jade hasn't won a race in his last ten times out. 2 shrew, harridan, nag, hag, drab, witch, crone, hussy, minx, vixen, virago, termagant, beldam, slut, slattern, trull, trollop, baggage, tart, Slang battle-axe, broad, bitch, old bag, floozie or floozy or floosie: He was married to an expensive jade of a wife.

jaded adj. 1 exhausted, weary, tired, dead tired, bone-tired, bone-weary, dog-tired, fatigued, enervated, spent, Colloq (dead) beat, dead, bushed, fagged, US and Canadian pooped: The nightspot was full of jaded businessmen, who had gone there to relax after a heavy day at the office. 2 sated, satiated, cloyed, surfeited, glutted, gorged, fed up, sick (and tired) of, slaked; dull, bored: You need a little champagne and caviar to reawaken your jaded palate.

jag n. spree, carouse, orgy, bout, Colloq binge, US and Canadian toot: She was terribly hung-over after last night's jag.

jagged adj. rough, uneven, notched, sawtooth, ragged, toothed, spiked, indented, denticulate, serrated, chipped: I cut myself on the jagged edge of that broken window.

jail n. 1 Brit gaol, prison, lock-up, reformatory, Brit Borstal, US penitentiary, reform school, Nautical brig, Slang cooler, clink, can, jug, stir, slammer, Brit nick, quod, choky or chokey, US calaboose, big house, pen, coop, hoosegow, pokey: They were sent to jail for life.

--v. 2 imprison, lock up, incarcerate, detain, confine, Brit send down, US send up (the river): He was jailed for 30 days.

jailer n. Brit gaoler, turnkey, guard, Brit warder, governor, US warden, Slang screw: The jailers let us out for exercise for an hour each day.

jam v. 1 cram, force, push, wedge, stuff, press, ram, squeeze, shove, pack, crowd: We were jammed in so tightly that we couldn't move. 2 block, obstruct, congest, fill up, clog, plug, stop up: The toilet is jammed with paper again. 3 slam, activate, actuate: I jammed on the brakes.

--n. 4 obstruction, blockage, blocking, block, congestion, tie-up, bottleneck, stoppage: She was stuck in a traffic jam for an hour. 5 crush, squeeze, crowd, mob, swarm, multitude, throng, mass, horde, pack, press: You wouldn't believe the jam of football fans at the cup final! 6 trouble, difficulty, predicament, quandary, dilemma, Colloq bind, fix, hole, pickle, hot water, (tight) spot, scrape: Harry helped me out of a jam once, and I won't forget it.

jamboree n. gathering, get-together, party, celebration, fˆte, festival, festivity, carnival, frolic, revelry, spree, carouse, jubilee, revels, charivari: Everyone is invited to the annual jamboree in the village square.

jangle v. 1 clatter, clash, rattle, clang, clank, crash, ring, jingle: The chains jangled as the prisoners marched to their cells. 2 jar, upset, irritate: The continuous screaming of the sirens jangled my nerves.

--n. 3 jangling, clatter, clash, rattle, jarring, clang, clanging, clank, clanking, crash, clangour, noise, din, racket, clamour, dissonance, cacophony, reverberation, Literary stridor: I heard the jangle of the rag-and-bone man's cart in the next street.

jar° n. crock; receptacle, vessel, container, urn, pot, vase; jug, pitcher, ewer, flagon, carafe, bottle, amphora: We always keep some small change in that blue jar.

jarý v. 1 shake, agitate, disturb, stir, shock, jolt, jounce, bounce, jog, jerk, jiggle, joggle: Don't jar the oven or the cake will collapse. 2 disagree, conflict, clash, bicker, quarrel, wrangle, oppose, discord: She finds that her emotions about her ex-husband are jarring. 3 disturb, upset, disconcert, unsettle, disquiet, bother, trouble, vex, gall, offend, take aback, irritate, grate, irk, nettle, annoy: It jars me to think that they got off with light sentences.

--n. 4 shock, start, jolt, surprise: Seeing Sam after all those years gave me quite a jar.

jargon n. 1 cant, argot, parlance, idiom, vernacular, slang; patois, Creole, dialect, pidgin; Colloq lingo: In the jargon of philately, this is known as a 'first day cover'. 2 blether or US also blather, chatter, babble, gibberish, jabber, gabble, gobbledegook or gobbledygook, prattle, patter, drivel, cackle, jabberwocky, twaddle, (stuff and) nonsense, rubbish, codswallop, balderdash, bunk, humbug, palaver, bavardage, Colloq rot, garbage, hogwash, bosh, piffle, flapdoodle, chit-chat, gab, claptrap, Slang bull, crap: When I questioned my bank manager about the fee, he just gave me a lot of jargon.

jaundiced adj. 1 coloured, tainted, distorted, twisted, prejudiced, opinionated, biased, preconceived, untrustworthy, bigoted, partial, unfair, perverted; dishonest, corrupt: Even the most jaundiced view must acknowledge the merits of the plan. 2 splenetic, cynical, bitter, envious, resentful, jealous, hostile, spiteful, unfriendly, disapproving, critical, unfavourable, disparaging, denigrating: I can't say that I agree with Cartwright's jaundiced review of the play.

jaunty adj. 1 spirited, lively, high-spirited, buoyant, brisk, frisky, sprightly, free (and easy), blithe, jovial, happy, jubilant, jolly, merry, cheerful, gay: It is heartening to see those pensioners in such a jaunty mood. 2 chic, smart, stylish, dashing, debonair, elegant, colourful, spruce, flashy, flash, showy, flamboyant, Colloq sporty, natty: Tipping his hat at a jaunty angle, the old boulevardier strolled off, twirling his walking-stick.

10.2 jealous...

=-

jealous adj. 1 resentful, bitter, grudging, envious, covetous, green with envy, green-eyed: Brian is jealous of attention paid to anyone but himself. 2 distrustful, distrusting, mistrustful, mistrusting, suspicious; anxious, insecure, threatened, imperilled, vulnerable: Ken is very jealous of Kathleen. If anyone so much as looks at her, he feels jealous.

jealously adv. watchfully, carefully, guardedly, protectively, warily, vigilantly, scrupulously, zealously, eagerly, attentively, anxiously, suspiciously: Victor jealously keeps all details of his business to himself.

jeer v. 1 Often, jeer at. mock, laugh or scoff or sneer (at), flout, deride, ridicule, make fun of, thumb one's nose at, gibe or jibe, chaff, decry, twit, taunt, Colloq rag, bullyrag, roast, Brit cock a snook at, Brit and Australian barrack, Slang knock: Don't jeer at aromatherapy till you've tried it.

--n. 2 taunt, gibe or jibe, aspersion, hoot, hiss, boo, catcall; derision, ridicule, obloquy: Just because he was fat, Christopher had to suffer the jeers of his classmates.

jell v. 1 set, congeal, solidify, harden, coagulate, thicken, stiffen, gelatinize: The mixture won't jell till you add hot water. 2 (take) form, take shape, crystallize, materialize, come together, be set: Their plans for the shopping centre have not yet jelled.

jeopardize
v. endanger, imperil, threaten, menace, risk, hazard, venture: You may jeopardize your freedom if you stand up for your rights.

jeopardy n. Usually, in sometimes at jeopardy. danger, peril; threat, menace, risk, hazard, chance, uncertainty, vulnerability, exposure, liability: She put her life in jeopardy by going into the lion's cage.

jerk v. 1 yank, wrench, pluck, nip, tug, twist, tweak: I jerked the dagger out of his hand, leaving him defenceless. 2 twitch, lurch, jolt, jump, start, jig, jiggle, wriggle, wiggle: The creature jerked about convulsively, screaming, then lay still.

--n. 3 yank, pull, wrench, tug, twist, tweak: With a sharp jerk, he pulled the plaster from the child's leg. 4 lurch, jolt, start, bump: The train stopped with a jerk, throwing me off balance. 5 idiot, fool, moron, imbecile, Slang US dope, creep, yo-yo, nerd, dweeb: Why would she want to go out with a jerk like that?

jewel n. 1 gem, gemstone, brilliant, ornament, bijou, Colloq rock, sparkler: Thieves stole a diamond necklace and an heirloom brooch set with precious jewels. 2 treasure, marvel, find, godsend, gem, pearl, prize, boon, Colloq catch: What would you do without your secretary - she's an absolute jewel!

jewellery n. gems, precious stones, jewels, ornaments, finery, bijouterie: Alexandra keeps her jewellery in a bank vault.

10.3 jiggle...
=-

jiggle v. 1 jog, joggle, jig, shake, agitate, wiggle, wriggle, jerk: It's odd to see grown people jiggling about on the dance floor like that. Jiggle the key up and down - maybe then you can turn it.

--n. 2 jog, joggle, jig, shake, wiggle, jerk: I gave the line a few jiggles, hoping to attract a fish.

jilt v. throw over, reject, dismiss, drop, discard, desert, break (up) with, forsake, abandon, Colloq ditch, dump, brush off or give (someone) the brush-off, Chiefly US and Canadian give (someone) his or her walking papers: Angela met Tony and promptly jilted Mike.

jingle v. 1 tinkle, ring, tintinnabulate, clink, chink, chime: She wore a dozen bracelets, which jingled when she walked.

--n. 2 tinkle, tinkling, ring, ringing, tintinnabulation, clink, clinking, chink, chinking, chime, chiming: I like to feel the jingle of change in my pocket. 3 tune, ditty, melody, song, rhyme, verse, doggerel: The only thing he ever wrote was a jingle for a dog-food commercial.

jingoism n. chauvinism, flag-waving, superpatriotism, nationalism; hawkishness, warmongering, belligerence, bellicosity: 'Might makes right' is a basic tenet of jingoism.

jinx n. 1 (evil) spell, curse, evil eye, malediction, voodoo, US and Canadian hex: I felt I had lost at roulette because she had put a jinx on me. 2 nemesis, Jonah: If we don't throw that jinx overboard we shall all die.

--v. 3 curse, bewitch, damn, doom, sabotage, condemn, US and Canadian hex: My career was jinxed from the start.

jitters n.pl. shakes, fidgets, nerves, uneasiness, queasiness, nervousness, skittishness, restlessness, apprehension, apprehensiveness, Slang heebie-jeebies, willies US whim-whams: He always gets an attack of the jitters before an exam.

10.4 job...

=-

job n. 1 work, employment, position, berth, livelihood; career, occupation, calling, vocation, appointment, pursuit, field, trade, craft, profession, m,tier, area: What kind of job is she looking for? Harry has a new job. 2 assignment, responsibility, concern, chore, task, undertaking, function, duty, role, mission, province, contribution, charge: It is my job to see that the machines run properly. 3 task, undertaking, procedure, proceeding, affair, operation, project, activity, business, matter, chore: The job of changing the gasket will take only a few minutes. 4 problem, difficulty, burden, nuisance, bother; toil, grind, drudgery; Colloq headache, pain (in the neck), hassle, Slang pain in the Brit arse or US ass: It was a real job getting them to pay for the damage. 5 crime, felony; robbery, burglary, Slang US and Canadian caper: From the modus operandi, I'd say that the same gang did that job in Manchester.

--v. 6 Often, job out. let out, assign, apportion, allot, share out, contract, hire, employ, subcontract, farm out, consign, commission: They undertake to do the work, but then they job it out to others.

jog v. 1 trot, lope, dogtrot, run: I jog around the reservoir every morning for exercise. 2 jar, prod, nudge, arouse, stir, stimulate, prompt, activate, shake: I jogged his memory by referring to the time the dog bit him. 3 bounce, shake, jolt, joggle, jounce, jerk: I was being jogged about in the back of the van as we sped over the rocky terrain.

join v. 1 unite, connect, couple, link, marry, yoke, combine, fasten or tie or glue or weld or solder (together), unify: These two pieces should be joined for greater strength. 2 ally or league with, associate (oneself) with, team up with, throw (one's lot) in with, enlist (in), sign (up) (with), enrol (in), enter: She was invited to join the bridge club. 3 go or be with, associate with, accompany, attach (oneself) to, participate with: Would you care to join us for a game of bridge? 4 border (on or upon), meet, touch, abut, butt, adjoin, be adjacent (to), extend to, verge on, coincide (with), juxtapose, be contiguous or conterminous (with), be coextensive (with): The two properties join at the top of the ridge.

joint n. 1 seam, union, juncture, connection, junction, intersection: The joint won't show after the whole thing's been painted. 2 Slang dive, dump, US and Canadian honky-tonk: We went into a joint in Soho, looking for some action. 3 roast: Who carves the Sunday joint at your house?

--adj. 4 shared, mutual, combined, collective, cooperative, common, communal, collaborative: Our aims can only be achieved by joint effort.

jointed v. articulated, segmented, sectioned, sectionalized, hinged: The stick is jointed so that it can be folded for carrying in the pocket.

joke n. 1 jest, witticism, quip, bon mot, laugh, wordplay, pun, story, anecdote, Colloq gag, wisecrack, one-liner, crack: Ronnie comes up with the funniest jokes I have ever heard. 2 laughing-stock, butt, (fair) game, buffoon: After that incident, he became the joke of the regiment. 3 farce, mockery, absurdity, travesty, caricature: My efforts to play the piano became a joke.

--v. 4 jest, quip, pun, frolic, wisecrack, tease, taunt, banter, chaff, fool, Colloq kid, US crack wise: They joked about our predicament. You must be joking if you think I'm going to go out with him!

joker n. 1 jokester, comedian, comedienne, funny man, humorist, jester, comic, clown, wag, wit, punster, droll, zany, merry andrew, buffoon, trickster, prankster, Colloq card, gagster, gag man, kidder: Give him a drink and a funny hat and Roger thinks he's the greatest joker in the world. 2 US catch, hitch, snag, drawback, trap, twist, pitfall, fine or small print, Colloq catch-22, no-win situation, Taboo nigger in the woodpile: The joker is that whoever treats the patients catches the disease.

jolly adj. 1 merry, cheerful, frolicsome, gay, jovial, joyful, sportive, convivial, jocund, jocose, jocular, frisky, coltish, playful, festive, jubilant, cheery, exuberant, high-spirited, animated: Everyone was in a jolly mood at her birthday party.

--v. 2 Often, jolly along. humour, appease, deceive, string along, fool, hoax: They're just jollying him along because they want him to invest in their scheme.

jolt v. 1 jar, shake (up), jostle, bump, bounce, jerk: The cart jolted over the rough terrain. 2 butt, strike, hit, push, nudge, elbow, knock, jab: He jolted me so hard he actually cracked a rib. 3 shock, astonish, astound, amaze, surprise, startle, stun, dumbfound or dumfound, stupefy, strike dumb, daze, shake (up): I was jolted to learn that my husband had been arrested for murder.

--n. 4 lurch, jar, jerk, bump, jump, bounce, start: The train started with a jolt that almost knocked me over. 5 blow, shock, surprise, bolt from the blue, bombshell: It was certainly a jolt to discover that she had left me.

jot v. 1 Usually, jot down. make a note of, write or note (down), put or set or take down, record: Jot down this telephone number.

--n. 2 scrap, grain, (wee) bit, speck, mite, iota, whit, particle, tittle, Colloq slightest, US and Canadian tad, smidgen or smidgin: I don't care a jot what she thinks about the situation in Central America.

journal   n. 1 periodical, magazine, gazette, newspaper, paper, newsletter, review, tabloid; daily, weekly, monthly, fortnightly, quarterly, annual: The journal contains information about every building permit awarded in the entire country. 2 diary, chronicle, dossier, record, register, log, logbook, minute-book, minutes, documentation, album, scrapbook, memoir, almanac, annal, history, yearbook, record book; roll, catalogue, list: He kept a detailed journal of every event in his twenty-year exile.

journalist

n. reporter, newspaperman, newspaperwoman, correspondent, newsman, newswoman, member of the fourth estate, gentleman or lady of the press, stringer; columnist; hack; newscaster, anchorman, anchorwoman, commentator, broadcaster, Brit pressman, paragraphist; newsreader, Colloq scribe, newsmonger, US and Canadian legman, news-hawk, news-hound, news-hen: Journalists crowded round the minister, urging her to make a statement.

journey   n. 1 trip, voyage, excursion, tour, travel, outing, expedition, junket, cruise, jaunt, pilgrimage, peregrination, odyssey, trek: Did your wife accompany you on your journey to Tierra del Fuego?

2 way, passage, passing, transit, transition, progress, course, way, trip, route, career: On your journey through this life, Whatever be your goal, Keep your eye upon the doughnut, And not upon the hole.

--v. 3 travel, tour, voyage, go (abroad or overseas), make or take a trip, make or wend one's way, make a pilgrimage, peregrinate, trek, rove, range, wander, roam, tour, cruise, gad (about), gallivant or galivant or galavant: He journeyed to the far corners of the earth seeking an answer to life's mysteries.

joy n. 1 pleasure, gratification, satisfaction, happiness, contentment, enjoyment, gladness, delight, felicity, elation, exaltation, ecstasy, bliss, exhilaration, exultation, rapture: We felt indescribable joy at seeing the children safe and sound. 2 gaiety, cheerfulness, cheer, glee, buoyancy, joviality, jollity, jocundity, joyfulness, joyousness, jubilation, merriment, light-heartedness, blithesomeness: Let me wish you joy in this holiday season. 3 delight, pleasure, treat, blessing, gratification, satisfaction, prize: A thing of beauty is a joy forever.

joyful adj. 1 cheerful, happy, buoyant, gleeful, merry, jovial, jolly, jocund, joyous, jubilant, gay, light-hearted, blithe, blithesome, sunny: We are delighted that you have all come to help us celebrate this joyful occasion. 2 glad, pleased, gratified, delighted, happy, elated, ecstatic, exhilarated, exultant, overjoyed, jubilant, in heaven, Brit in the seventh heaven, US in seventh heaven, Colloq on cloud nine, tickled (pink), Brit over the moon: Mark was joyful at the news that he was father of a boy.

joyless adj. 1 sad, unhappy, miserable, depressed, dejected, mournful, downhearted, downcast, down, despondent, dispirited, melancholy, heavy-hearted, cheerless, doleful, grief-stricken, disheartened, saddened, crestfallen, wretched, disconsolate, inconsolable, morose, heartsick, sorrowful, woeful, woebegone: It was a joyless company that stood at the grave side. The cat died, the dog died, and my husband was ill - all in all, a joyless time. 2 gloomy, depressing, dispiriting, disheartening, dreary, lugubrious, cheerless, dismal, bleak, inhospitable, desolate, grim, austere, severe: The shuttered, joyless house loomed out of the misty moor ahead.

10.5 judge...

=-

judge n. 1 justice, magistrate, jurist, Isle of Man deemster or dempster, Slang Brit beak: The judge demanded order in the court. 2 arbitrator, arbiter, umpire, referee, adjudicator, judicator, mediator, moderator: She served as a judge at Crufts dog show last year. 3 connoisseur, expert, authority, arbiter, appraiser, evaluator, reviewer, critic, arbiter elegantiarum or elegantiae: Let me be the judge of which work I do best.

--v. 4 adjudicate, adjudge, arbitrate, decide, find, conclude, settle, determine, decree, pass judgement, deem, rule, pronounce or pass sentence: Do you think the jury will judge in Claus's favour? 5 assess, evaluate, appraise, estimate, rate, value, weigh, measure, review, consider, size up, appreciate: A ballistics expert is required to judge this evidence. 6 referee, umpire, mediate, moderate, arbitrate: Mr Farnsworth agreed to judge the essay competition. 7 believe, suspect, think, consider, suppose, guess, conjecture, surmise, conclude, infer: Palaeontologists judge the age of the specimens to be 400 million years.

judgement n. 1 judgment, discretion, discernment, discrimination, judiciousness, prudence, wisdom, wit, sagacity, perspicacity, clear-headedness, perception, perspicuousness, percipience, acumen, intelligence, (good) sense, common sense, level-headedness, understanding, shrewdness: Charlotte's judgement is often sought in such matters. 2 decision, ruling, verdict, conclusion, determination, opinion, adjudication, finding, decree, order; outcome, result, upshot: The judgement of the court is final. It was the judgement of Paris to award the golden apple to Aphrodite. 3 criticism, censure, disapproval, reproof, condemnation: They offered a moral, not a legal judgement. 4 opinion, view, belief, (way of) thinking, mind, perception; sentiment: In my judgement, she is innocent. 5 evaluation, valuation, appraisal, estimation, assessment: One critic's unfavourable judgement of a play can spell its doom.

judicial adj. 1 legal, judiciary, judicatory, juridic(al); official: forensic: A formal judicial procedure can be quite costly. 2

critical, analytical, discriminating, distinguishing, discerning, keen, sharp, perceptive, percipient, perspicacious, differentiating, discriminatory, discriminative, judicious: Her decisions have always been judicial. 3 judgelike, magisterial, impartial, fair: He brought judicial procedures to bear on the handling of the problem.

judicious adj. sensible, commonsensical, sound, sober, intelligent, aware, enlightened, wise, sage, sapient, thoughtful, reasonable, rational, sane, logical, discerning, discriminating, discriminative, astute, perceptive, percipient, perspicacious, well-advised, (well-)informed, prudent, discreet, tactful, diplomatic, politic, careful, considered, circumspect: The treasurer was considered not to have made judicious use of the club's funds.

jug n. pitcher, ewer, urn, carafe, bottle, flask, decanter, jar: She came in from the barn carrying a jug of fresh milk.

juggle v. manipulate, tamper with, falsify, fix, rig, distort, misstate, misrepresent, alter, arrange, Colloq doctor, cook: The accountant refused a bribe to juggle the company's books.

juice n. 1 extract, liquid, fluid: The recipe calls for the juice of one lemon. 2 essence, pith, extract, vigour, force, vitality, spirit, strength, power: He really squeezed the juice out of my argument.

juicy adj. 1 succulent, moist, lush: This is a very juicy pear. 2 interesting, sensational, lurid, colourful, vivid, exciting, stirring, thrilling, intriguing, fascinating, provocative, suggestive, racy, spicy, risqu,: I've got such a juicy piece of gossip for you!

jumble v. 1 disorder, mix (up), mingle, confuse, confound, muddle, shuffle, disarrange, disorganize, tangle, entangle: I found my belongings all jumbled together.

--n. 2 muddle, tangle, medley, mess; disorder, confusion, disarray, chaos, clutter: My clothes were in a jumble on the bed.

jumbo adj. huge, gigantic, enormous, elephantine, immense, oversized, king-sized, Colloq US humongous: Grandad brought us a jumbo box of chocolates.

jump v. 1 leap, bound, spring, pounce, hurdle, vault, hop, skip; caper, cavort, gambol: Jack, jump over the candlestick! Lambs were jumping about in the meadow. 2 start, jerk, wince, flinch, recoil: The sudden noise made me jump. 3 Sometimes, jump over. skip (over), omit, pass over or by, bypass, avoid, leave out, ignore, disregard, overlook, gloss over: Jump the boring parts and read me the sexy bits. 4 pass, move, leap, skip: She jumped from one subject to another so quickly that I couldn't keep track. 5 advance, increase, rise, gain, surge, escalate: The cost of living jumped again this month, causing fear of inflation. 6 jump at. accept, grab, snatch, swoop up, leap at, pounce on: Most people would jump at the chance to better themselves. 7 jump on. attack, swoop down on or upon; reprimand, rebuke: She jumps on anyone who suggests that she used influence to get her job.

--n. 8 leap, bound, spring, pounce, hurdle, vault, hop, skip: With one jump the cheetah was upon the gazelle. 9 rise, increase, boost, hike, advance, gain, surge, escalation, upsurge, increment, elevation: A jump in the Retail Price Index drove share prices lower again yesterday. 10 barricade, obstacle, hurdle, fence, rail, obstruction: My horse cleared the first jump easily. 11 start, jerk, spasm, twitch, recoil, lurch, jolt: When they called his name, he gave a little jump. 12 break, gap, hiatus, lacuna, space, hole, breach, rift, interruption: There's a jump in continuity at the end of the fourth chapter.

jumpy adj. nervous, agitated, anxious, jittery, fidgety, restless, edgy, on edge, tense, shaky, skittish, fretful, uneasy, queasy, restive, panicky: Do you think he was jumpy because we were approaching Count Dracula's castle?

junction n. juncture, union, combination, joining, conjunction, meeting, linking, connection, conjoining, intersection, confluence; crossroads, interchange: The train robbery took place at the junction of the two railways.

juncture n. 1 See junction. 2 point, time, moment, stage, period: At this juncture, suggesting a merger seems premature.

junior adj. secondary, lesser, lower, minor, subordinate, inferior; younger: Thompson has been offered a junior partnership in his firm.

junk n. 1 rubbish, waste, refuse, litter, debris, scrap; US garbage, trash: A man came to cart away the junk that we had cleared out of the garage.

--v. 2 Colloq discard, throw away, scrap, cast aside, jettison, US trash: We bought a new washing-machine and junked the old one.

junta n. junto, cabal, clique, faction, gang, coterie, band, set, camarilla: After the coup, the country was run by a military junta.

jurisdiction
n. authority, power, prerogative, dominion, sovereignty, say, control, rule, ascendancy, hegemony, influence; province, district, area, bailiwick, compass, realm, sphere (of influence), reach, clutches, range, orbit: Tierra del Fuego seems a bit far to go just to be outside the jurisdiction of the Inland Revenue.

just adj. 1 fair, equitable, impartial, unbiased, unprejudiced, reasonable, fair-minded, even-handed, neutral, objective: Do you think you can expect a just trial after all that publicity? 2 upright, righteous, right-minded, honourable, honest, ethical, moral, principled, straight, decent, good, upstanding, virtuous, lawful: In our system of law, one must believe that juries are basically just. 3 justified, justifiable, well-founded, well-grounded, legitimate, valid, reasonable, rightful, (well-)deserved, due, fitting, proper; condign: She has a just claim to her father's estate. His punishment was just.

--adv. 4 only, merely, nothing but, solely, simply, at best, at most, no more than: She said just that and nothing else. 5 exactly, precisely, perfectly; barely, only just, hardly, scarcely, by a hair's breadth, Colloq by the skin of one's teeth: My new car just fits into the garage, with only inches to spare. 6 (only or just) now, a moment ago, (very) recently, lately: We have just returned from a holiday in Tenerife.

justice n. 1 fairness, impartiality, objectivity, objectiveness, equity, equitableness, fair-mindedness, justness, even-handedness, neutrality, fair play: Justice triumphed on this occasion, and he was convicted of fraud. 2 the law, the police; punishment, prison, imprisonment, incarceration, detention: He is a fugitive from justice. 3 law, right, morality, lawfulness, rightfulness, legitimacy, judiciousness: His conviction was a miscarriage of justice. 4 See judge, 1.

justify v. vindicate, legitimate, legitimatize or legitimize, legalize, rationalize, substantiate, defend, support, uphold, sustain, validate, warrant, confirm; excuse, explain, absolve, acquit, exculpate: My worst fears were justified. How can you justify owning three cars?

jut v. extend, overhang, project, protrude, stick out, beetle: The balcony juts out over the lake.

juvenile adj. 1 young, youthful, under age, minor, teenage(d), immature, adolescent, childish, infantile, babyish, puerile, unsophisticated: What could be more juvenile than painting graffiti on public buildings.

--n. 2 youth, boy, girl, adolescent, minor, Law infant: The police have arrested two juveniles for attacking an old lady in her own home.

11.0 K

=-

11.1 keen...

=-

keen° adj. 1 enthusiastic, avid, zealous, devoted, ardent, fervent, fervid, earnest, impassioned, passionate, intense, active; agog, eager, itching, anxious: They are keen fans of TV soap operas. I was keen to go swimming. 2 sharp, sharpened, razor-sharp, razor-like, knife-edged; trenchant, incisive, cutting, rapier-like, pointed, mordant, acid, vitriolic, acerbic, astringent, biting, acrid, acrimonious, stinging, scorching, caustic, searing, withering, virulent, pungent, sarcastic, sardonic: This axe is very keen, so be careful. With his keen wit, the playwright answered his severest critics. His play is a keen satire on the government. 3 painful, bitter, acute, poignant, fierce, grievous, severe, distressing, distressful, strong, deep, profound, intense, extreme, heartfelt: She felt keen resentment at the way she had been treated. 4 vivid, detailed, specific, unmistaken, unmistakable or unmistakeable, distinct: He has a keen recollection of seeing the suspect on the bus. 5 sharp, acute, sensitive, penetrating, discriminating, fine: The bloodhound has an extremely keen sense of smell. 6 intelligent, sharp, acute, perceptive, perspicacious, percipient, sensitive, discerning, astute, smart, bright, discriminating, discriminative, quick(-witted), shrewd, clever, canny, cunning, crafty, wise: Philip has a keen understanding of what is required of him. 7 keen on or about. fond of, enamoured of, devoted to, interested in: Alan is almost as keen on Mary as on his stamp collection.

keený v. 1 weep, wail, moan, lament, mourn, grieve; bewail, bemoan: Finnegan's widow still keens over him.

--n. 2 dirge, elegy, knell, lament, lamentation, Requiem, monody, threnody, thanatopsis, epicedium , Scots and Irish coronach: The keens could be heard throughout the neighbourhood.

keep v. 1 retain, hold, hang on to, preserve, conserve, have, save, maintain, control: The difficulty is not in making money but in keeping it. 2 hold, have, take care or charge of, mind, tend, care for, look after, guard, keep an eye on, watch over, protect, safeguard; maintain, feed, nourish, victual, board, nurture, provide for, provision: Would you keep this parcel for me until I return? They keep chickens and ducks. 3 accumulate, save (up), amass, hoard (up), husband, retain, preserve, put or stow away: My brother has kept all the toys he ever had. 4 maintain, store, preserve: I keep woollen things in a cedar chest. 5 Often, keep on or at. continue, carry on, persist (in), persevere (in); prolong, sustain: How did you keep going after Elsa's death? She kept at it all night long. Keep on working till I tell you to stop. 6 keep to, abide by, follow, obey, mind, adhere to, attend to, pay attention to, heed, regard, observe, respect, acknowledge, defer to, accede (to), agree (to): Only a stickler would keep the letter of such a law. 7 stay, remain: Keep off the grass. Keep to the left. 8 support, finance, provide for, subsidize, maintain: He kept a mistress in Chelsea. 9 confine, detain; imprison, incarcerate, jail or Brit also gaol: The police have kept him overnight. 10 celebrate, observe, solemnize, memorialize, commemorate: We always kept Easter at my mother's house in the country. 11 last, be preserved, survive, stand up, stay fresh: Eggs keep longer in the refrigerator. 12 harbour, maintain, safeguard, keep dark: Can you keep a secret? 13 keep from. prevent, keep or hold back, restrain, (hold in) check, restrict, prohibit, forbid, inhibit, disallow, block, obstruct, deny, curb, deter, discourage: How can I keep my plants from dying while I'm away? 14 keep in. a keep or hold back, repress, suppress, stifle, smother, muzzle, bottle up, withhold, conceal, hide, shroud, mask, camouflage: She keeps in her true feelings. He could hardly keep in the tears. b confine, shut in or up, coop up, detain; fence in: Keith thought the teacher kept him in after school because she liked him.

--n. 15 upkeep, maintenance, support, room and board, subsistence, food, sustenance, living: He works hard to earn his keep. 16 donjon, tower, dungeon: He was imprisoned in the keep of the castle for twenty years.

keeper n. custodian, guardian, guard, warden, caretaker; warder, nurse, attendant, Brit minder: The keepers are very strict about not letting people feed the animals. How come they let you out without your keeper?

keepsake n. memento, souvenir, token, reminder, remembrance, relic: The locket is a keepsake from those happy days in Antibes.

keg n. cask, barrel, butt, hogshead, tun, puncheon: We bought a keg of beer for the party.

kernel n. 1 grain, seed, pip, stone; nut, meat, US nut-meat: Try to extract the walnut kernel without breaking it. 2 centre, core, nucleus, heart, essence, quintessence, substance, gist, pith, nub, quiddity: Let's get down to the kernel of the problem.

key n. 1 latchkey, skeleton key, passkey, opener: Have you lost your car keys again? You will need a key to open the air valve on the radiator. 2 clue, cue, guide, indication, indicator, explanation: The key to his behaviour can probably be found in the way his mother treated him in his childhood. 3 pitch, tone, timbre, level, tonality, frequency: The song was originally written in the key of C. 4 legend, explanation, description, explication, clarification, translation: A key to the symbols appears on every other page. 5 mood, tenor, tone, humour, style: In this passage there is a change to a more sombre key.

--adj. 6 important, essential, vital, necessary, crucial, critical, main, pivotal: Automatic reversal is a key feature of this cassette player. Roderick is a key man in the company.

keystone n. necessity, crux, linchpin, basis, principle, foundation, cornerstone: Predestination was the keystone of his religion.

11.2 kick...

=-

kick   v. 1 boot, punt: The basic aim in soccer is to kick the ball into the back of the net. 2 recoil, backlash, rebound: The shotgun kicked when I fired it.

--n. 3 punt, drop-kick: His kick sent the ball down the field. 4 recoil, backlash, rebound: That gun has quite a kick!

kickback n. rebate, refund, share, compensation, commission, percentage, reward; bribe, pay-off, Colloq chiefly US payola, US plugola: We get a kickback on every computer sold. Some disc jockeys were accepting kickbacks for playing particular records.

kidnap   v. abduct, capture, seize, carry off, Slang snatch: He was kidnapped by guerrillas and held prisoner for over two years.

kill   v. 1 execute, slay, murder, assassinate, do away with, put to death, cause the death of, liquidate, dispatch or despatch, take (someone's) life, finish (off), put an end to, write 'finis' to, silence, kill off, administer the coup de grƒce, eliminate, put (someone) out of (his or her) misery, exterminate, extinguish, obliterate, eradicate, destroy, annihilate, massacre, slaughter, decimate, butcher, (of animals) put down, put to sleep, Slang do in, bump or knock off, hit, polish off, snuff (out), take for a ride, US waste, rub out, ice, fit with concrete overshoes or a wooden kimono: He was the third police officer to be killed this year. 2 destroy, ruin, devastate, ravage, wreak or work havoc (up)on, kill off: The entire orange crop was killed by the sudden frost. 3 muffle, neutralize, deaden, damp, silence, nullify, dull, absorb, smother, stifle, suppress, still: This padding should kill the noise of the motor. 4 exhaust, tire (out), fatigue, weary, Colloq fag (out): Pushing that mower all day nearly killed me. 5 hurt, pain, torment, torture: These shoes are killing me. 6 quash, suppress, defeat, veto, cancel: The tobacco interests campaigned to kill the bill to ban smoking in public places. 7 consume, use up, spend, while away, occupy, fill, pass, idle: While waiting, I killed time doing a crossword puzzle.

--n. 8 game, prey; quarry: The lioness allowed her cubs to eat part of the kill. 9 death, killing, end, finish, deathblow, coup de grƒce; termination, denouement or d,nouement, conclusion: She wants to be in at the kill.

killer n. 1 murderer, assassin, slayer, cutthroat, butcher, exterminator, Bluebeard, (Jack the) ripper, Slang US torpedo, hit man, triggerman, gunsel, hooligan, gunfighter, iceman, hatchet man: What are the statistics on the number of killers who are not caught? 2 Slang old-fashioned bee's knees, US humdinger, doozy, killer-diller (from Manila), lallapalooza or lollapalooza, lulu, daisy, dilly: The new show at the Odeon is a killer.

killing n. 1 murder, carnage, butchery, execution, slaughter, bloodshed, death, massacre, genocide, liquidation, mass murder or destruction, decimation, extermination, blood bath, manslaughter; slaying, homicide, fatality: The killing of dissidents must stop. There has been another killing in the park. 2 coup, bonanza, success, windfall, stroke of luck, gain, profit, Colloq Brit bomb: They've made a killing on the Stock Exchange.

--adj. 3 devastating, ruinous, destructive, punishing, exhausting, debilitating, fatiguing, tiring, enervating, difficult, arduous: How can you keep up the killing pace of having two jobs?

killjoy n. spoilsport, damper, dampener, grouch, grump, malcontent, pessimist, cynic, prophet of doom, Cassandra, Colloq wet blanket, sourpuss, US party pooper, gloomy Gus, picklepuss: Go to the dance and stop being such a killjoy!

kin n. 1 family, relative(s), relation(s), kindred, kinsfolk or US and Canadian kinfolk, kinsman, kinswoman, stock, clan, blood-relation(s), blood-relative(s): We might have the same name, but he's no kin of mine. Grandmother says that too many people are thoughtless of their kin these days.

--adj. 2 related, akin (to), kindred, consanguineous, consanguine, cognate, agnate: One often forgets that all men are kin.

kind° adj. friendly, kindly, nice, congenial, affable, approachable, amiable, obliging, accommodating, amicable, well-disposed, courteous, good, good-natured, benevolent, well-meaning, well-wishing, thoughtful, well-intentioned, generous, big-hearted, humanitarian, charitable, philanthropic, gentle, understanding, sympathetic, considerate, lenient, tolerant, indulgent, compassionate, kind-hearted, gracious, warm, warm-hearted, cordial, tender-hearted, affectionate: It was kind of you to stop and help us. I never thought of him as a kind man.

kindý n. 1 sort, type, variety, style, genre, species, class, breed; brand, make: What kind of tree is the cypress? Do we always have to have the same kind of breakfast cereal? 2 nature, character, manner, description, sort, persuasion, stripe, feather, kidney: What kind of person is she? Today's students are of a totally different kind.

kindle v. ignite, light, set alight, set fire to, set afire, inflame, fire, foment, incite, instigate, provoke, prompt, prick, goad, spur, whip up, stir (up), work up, excite, agitate, shake up, jolt, arouse, rouse, (a)waken, inspire, inspirit, stimulate, animate, enliven, energize, innervate, galvanize: Kindling a fire in the rain is not easy. The wholesale pillaging kindled a feeling of deep resentment among the native population.

kindly adj. 1 See kind.

--adv. 2 cordially, graciously, obligingly, amiably, amicably, politely, genially, courteously, thoughtfully, considerately, hospitably, agreeably, pleasantly: He very kindly invited me in for a cup of tea. 3 please, be so kind as to, be good enough to: Would you kindly pass the salt?

kindness n. 1 friendliness, kind-heartedness, warm-heartedness, graciousness, goodness, good-naturedness, good-heartedness, good will, benevolence, benignity, humaneness, humanity, decency, tenderness, gentleness, kindliness, charity, charitableness, generosity, philanthropy, beneficence, compassion, sympathy, understanding, thoughtfulness, consideration, cordiality, hospitality, warmth, geniality, indulgence, tolerance, patience: We shall always appreciate the kindness shown to us by our hosts during our visit. 2 favour, good deed or turn, service, act of kindness; generosity, assistance, aid: She did me a great kindness in introducing me to you. How can I repay your kindness?

kindred adj. 1 close, associated, united, allied, analogous, like, similar, matching, parallel, common, related; akin: Because we both like sports, Samantha's interests are kindred to mine. 2 related, consanguineous, consanguine, cognate, agnate: Linguists regard the Romance languages as kindred tongues.

--n. 3 See kin, 1.

king n. prince, crowned head, majesty, sovereign, monarch, ruler, regent, Colloq Brit royal: In former times, the king had power of life and death over his subjects.

kingdom n. 1 realm, empire, sovereignty, principality, monarchy: He sought a suitable wife throughout the kingdom. 2 field, area, domain, province, sphere (of influence), territory, bailiwick, Colloq turf: The operating theatre is the surgeon's kingdom.

kink n. 1 twist, crimp, tangle, knot, wrinkle, curl, coil, curlicue, crinkle: Those kinks wouldn't occur if you had coiled the rope properly. 2 pang, twinge, stab, spasm, cramp, stitch, tweak, crick: I have a kink in my neck from constantly looking down. 3 difficulty, complication, flaw, hitch, snag, defect, imperfection, distortion, deformity: There were several kinks that had to be ironed out before the plan was presented to the board. 4 crotchet, quirk, whim, caprice, fancy, vagary, eccentricity, idiosyncrasy: He would win more support if he rid himself of certain kinks in his thinking.

kinky   adj. 1 outlandish, peculiar, odd, queer, quirky, bizarre, crotchety, eccentric, strange, idiosyncratic, different, offbeat, unorthodox, capricious, irregular, erratic, unconventional, unique, freakish, weird, fantastic, whimsical: This school is not interested in kinky notions of education. 2 perverted, unnatural, deviant, degenerate, warped, abnormal, depraved: There is a rumour that they engage in kinky sex. 3 crisp, frizzy, frizzed, frizzled, curly, crimped, wiry; knotted, tangled, twisted: He has kinky red hair.

kinship   n. 1 consanguinity, (blood) relationship, (family) ties, (common) descent, lineage, flesh and blood: At that time, several of the royal houses of Europe were connected by kinship. 2 connection, correspondence, parallelism, relationship, similarity, association, agreement, alliance; affinity: There is a clear kinship among the Germanic languages. She felt a kinship with other adopted children.

kiss   v. 1 osculate, peck, Colloq smack, smooch, neck, Old-fashioned spoon, canoodle: I kissed her on the cheek. A young couple were kissing on the park bench. 2 touch, brush, graze: The cue-ball barely kissed the black, toppling it into the pocket. 3 kiss goodbye. bid adieu, say farewell to, give up, relinquish, abandon, forsake, desert, renounce, repudiate, forget (about), dismiss, disregard, ignore: With those marks, you can kiss goodbye to any thought of winning a scholarship.

--n. 4 osculation, peck, Colloq smack, smooch, US and Canadian buss, Slang Brit smacker: He ran over and gave me a big hug and a kiss.

kit   n. apparatus, gear, equipment, paraphernalia, appurtenances, rig, accoutrements or US also accouterments, tackle, trappings, supplies, furnishings; instruments, tools, utensils, implements: Did you bring your tennis kit? The model aeroplanes were built from kits. The plumber left his tool kit behind.

kitchen   n. kitchenette, cookhouse; scullery, pantry, larder; Nautical galley, Brit caboose: He was in the kitchen getting dinner ready.

kittenish adj. coy, seductive, flirtatious, coquettish, sportive, playful: Barbara tends to get a bit kittenish when she's with men.

kitty n. pot, pool, collection: Has he contributed anything to the kitty?

11.3 knack...
=-

knack n. genius, intuition, talent, gift, talent, facility, skill, aptitude, bent; ability, flair, dexterity, capacity, adroitness, proficiency, skilfulness: He has an uncanny knack for saying the wrong thing. When it comes to gourmet cooking, Peggy certainly has the knack.

knife n. 1 blade: This knife couldn't cut through warm butter.

--v. 2 stab, pierce, slash, cut, wound: There was a struggle, and one youth was knifed in the chest.

knit v. 1 join or fasten or weave (together), interweave, interlace, interconnect, intertwine, link, bind, unite, tie (up or together), consolidate, combine, compact: He was the first king to succeed in knitting together the diverse elements of the empire. 2 grow (together), heal, mend, join: The broken bones will knit in about a month. 3 furrow, contract, wrinkle, knot, crease: He knit his brow and sighed.

knob n. boss, stud, protuberance, projection, protrusion, handle: Turn the knob, then pull the drawer open.

knock v. 1 strike, hit, rap, thwack, whack, thump, bang, tap: Knock on the door. He knocked the man on the head with his walking-stick. 2 Colloq criticize, deprecate, carp or cavil at, disparage, put down, run down: Don't knock something till you've tried it. 3 knock about or around. a wander, roam, ramble, rove, travel, gad about: She's going to knock about the world for a bit before settling down. b associate with, consort with: He was only knocking about with some of the boys. c discuss, debate, talk over, Colloq kick about or around: I have a business proposition that I want to knock around with you. d beat (up), maltreat, mistreat, maul, manhandle, batter, abuse, hit, strike: He's been known to knock his wife about. 4 knock down. a raze, demolish, destroy, level, wreck, lay in ruins, throw or pull down: They knocked down those beautiful old houses and erected an ugly office block in their place. b fell, floor, cut down: As soon as he got up, McCloskey knocked him down again. 5 knock off. Colloq a stop work(ing), quit, go home, clock off or out, terminate, lock up, close down: I think I'll knock off for a few hours' rest. b steal, pilfer, thieve, rob, Colloq lift, Brit pinch, Slang Brit nick, US knock over: Two men in balaclavas knocked off the bank in the High Street. c See kill, 1. d make quick or short work of, complete, finish, bring to an end, Colloq polish off: He knocked off that book in a week. e US copy, imitate: They knock off expensive items, then sell them for much less than the originals. 6 knock out. a knock or render unconscious, floor, prostrate, trounce, whip, Slang flatten, K.O. or kayo: The smart money says that the challenger will knock out the champion in the third round. b overwhelm, overcome, daze, stagger, astound, astonish, bewilder, stun, Colloq bowl over, blow (someone's) mind, Slang Brit knock for six: She'll really knock them out in that dress! 7 knock up. a knock or put together, improvise: I think I can knock up something quickly that will pass muster. b arouse, (a)waken, wake up: They knocked me up at dawn to go to work. c Slang impregnate, get with child, make pregnant: Her boyfriend knocked her up and then refused to marry her.

--n. 8 blow, rap, tap, thump, pounding, hammering: I was woken by a knock on the wall from my neighbour. 9 blow, punch, jab, smack, thwack, whack, right, left, cuff, Colloq clout, bop, biff, conk: He gave me a knock on the nose, and it started to bleed. 10 slap (in the face), censure, criticism, condemnation, slur, insult: My latest novel took quite a few knocks from the reviewers.

knock-off n. Colloq US imitation, copy, simulation, replica, facsimile, duplication: This cheap knock-off of a œ1000 watch is selling for œ50.

knockout n. 1 coup de grƒce, Slang K.O., kayo: Carnera won by a knockout in the first round. 2 success, sensation, triumph, Colloq hit, winner, smash, smash hit, stunner: She looks a knockout with her new hairstyle.

knoll n. hillock, hummock, mound, barrow, hill, elevation, rise: We climbed to the top of the knoll where we had a better view of the house.

knot n. 1 snarl, gnarl, tangle; tie, bond: I cannot loosen this knot. 2 collection, assemblage, aggregation, congregation, crowd, cluster, bunch, gathering, company, band, gang, crowd, throng: A small knot of people were standing in front of my painting.

--v. 3 fasten, tie, bind, secure, lash, tether, affix, fix, attach: I knotted the rope around his neck.

know v. 1 understand, comprehend, be familiar with, grasp, be acquainted with, be versed or skilled in: Do you know anything about nuclear physics? I know Italian fairly well. She knows how to dance the tango. 2 recognize, identify, recall, remember, recollect: I know him from somewhere. 3 be sure or certain or positive: I knew I was right! I just know I'm going to win the first prize. 4 distinguish, separate, discern, differentiate, recognize, identify: Charles doesn't know right from wrong. 5 be aware or conscious or cognizant of, be informed or advised of, have knowledge of: He knows that he cannot fire her because she knows too much.

knowing adj. 1 conspiratorial or conspiratory, secret, private; significant, meaningful, eloquent, expressive; shrewd, canny, artful, sly, wily, crafty: She gave him a knowing wink. 2 wise, clever, shrewd, (well-)informed, knowledgeable or knowledgable, aware, expert, qualified, astute, perceptive, intelligent, sagacious: Harold is quite knowing about horses, why not ask him?

knowledge n. 1 knowing, awareness, apprehension, cognition, grasp, understanding, discernment, consciousness, conception, insight: Miles's knowledge of history is extensive. 2 facts, information, data, intelligence: They had no knowledge of any defections to the enemy. 3 acquaintance, acquaintanceship, familiarity, appreciation, conversance, expertise, experience, adeptness, proficiency: Has he any knowledge of their work on the DNA molecule? 4 schooling, education, scholarship, instruction, learning, erudition: A little knowledge is a dangerous thing.

knowledgeable
adj. 1 knowledgable, aware, au fait, au courant, up to date, (well-)informed, (well-)acquainted, cognizant, familiar, enlightened, expert, knowing, Colloq in the know: She is knowledgeable about events in eastern Europe. 2 well-educated, erudite, learned, cultured, well-read, intelligent, sophisticated, worldly, wise, sage, sagacious: Professor Evans is one of the most knowledgeable people I have ever met.

11.4 kowtow
=-

kowtow v. Often, kowtow to. genuflect (before), salaam (to), prostrate oneself (before), bow (down) (to or before), pay court to, scrape before, cringe before, fawn (before), grovel (before), toady ((up) to), pander to, truckle ((up) to), dance attendance on, Colloq butter up, Slang suck up to, play up to, shine up to, Taboo slang US brown-nose: He kowtows to anyone who he thinks may be of use to him.

11.5 kudos
=-

kudos n. praise, acclaim, glory, fame, renown, honour, plaudits, applause, laudation, acclamation, accolade: They got a lot of kudos out of funding a new opera-house.

12.0 L
=-

12.1 label...
=-

label n. 1 identification, identifier, ID, mark, marker, earmark, tag, ticket, sticker, stamp, imprint, hallmark, brand, Brit docket: The label shows the weight, composition, and price of the contents. A proper shipping label should show both source and destination. 2 name, denomination, designation, appellation, nickname, epithet, sobriquet, classification, characterization, description: It is difficult to give a label to the kind of novels she writes. 3 trade mark, trade name, brand, logo, mark: Many supermarket chains market products under their own label.

--v. 4 identify (as), mark, tag, earmark, ticket, stamp, hallmark, imprint, brand, Brit docket: In those days, every liberal was labelled a communist. Prepared food packages must be labelled with their ingredients. 5 name, denominate, designate, call, term, dub, classify, categorize, pigeon-hole, class, characterize, describe, portray, identify, Colloq US peg: We cannot label Voltaire either spiritualist or materialist.

laborious adj. 1 arduous, burdensome, onerous, strenuous, gruelling, back-breaking, Herculean, exhausting, taxing, tiring, fatiguing, wearying, wearisome, toilsome, difficult, tough, hard, uphill, stiff: Few realize how laborious farm work can be. 2 painstaking, detailed, careful, thorough, diligent, scrupulous, exhaustive, steady, steadfast, relentless, unrelenting, dogged, assiduous, sedulous, persevering, persistent, untiring, tireless, indefatigable, unremitting: After laborious research the virus was finally identified. 3 industrious, hard-working, dogged, determined, unwavering, obstinate, stubborn, unflagging, obdurate: He made a laborious effort to get ahead. 4 laboured, strained, forced, ponderous, overworked: The book contains some of the most laborious prose ever written.

labour n. 1 toil, (hard) work, travail, exertion, effort, laboriousness, strain, drudgery, pains, industry, slavery, donkey-work, Colloq sweat, grind, elbow-grease, Brit swot: They know the labour involved in building a road. 2 employees, workers, wage-earners, labourers: A meeting between labour and management is scheduled for today. 3 effort, task, job, chore, undertaking: Raising funds for the museum was a labour of love. 4 travail, childbirth, parturition, labour pains, contractions, delivery: She went into labour at midnight, and the twins were born just after four.

--v. 5 work, toil, travail, drudge, strain, strive, struggle, slave, Colloq sweat, grind, Brit peg away (at), swot: We laboured hard to get where we are today. 6 dwell on, overdo, overemphasize, harp on, overstress, strain, Colloq belabour: I heard you the first time, so don't labour the point. 7 labour under. be burdened or troubled or distressed by, be deluded or deceived by, be disadvantaged by, suffer, endure: He is labouring under a misapprehension. She labours under the impression that she will not be affected by a lack of education.

laboured adj. 1 strained, forced, difficult, hard, laborious, heavy: His breathing became laboured. 2 overdone, excessive, overwrought, ornate, elaborate, overworked, over-embellished, contrived, affected, artificial, unnatural: Her writing style is very laboured and much too stiff.

labourer n. worker, workman, hand, blue-collar worker, working man, manual worker, drudge, Colloq Brit navvy: Get some labourers to clear away that rubble.

labyrinthine
adj. labyrinthian, maze-like, mazy, tortuous, sinuous, winding, convoluted, complicated, confusing, perplexing, puzzling, enigmatic, baffling, confounding, complex, Daedalian or Daedalean or Daedalic, daedal, intricate, Byzantine, twisted, gnarled, snarled, tangled, knotted, knotty, Gordian: The plot was so labyrinthine that the audience was unable to follow it.

lace n. 1 lace-work, tatting, openwork, filigree, mesh, web, webbing, net, netting, network: She wore a collar of handmade lace. 2 shoelace, shoestring, bootlace, cord, string, thong, tie, lacing: They made me remove my belt, tie, and laces before locking me in a cell.

--v. 3 thread, weave, string, twine, interweave, intertwine: First lace the cord through the eyelets, then draw it tight. 4 spike, fortify, strengthen: I saw her lace my punch with vodka, so I didn't drink it. 5 lace into. a attack, assault, beat, assail, thrash, belabour, fall on or upon, set upon, pounce on or upon, lay into, Colloq light into: The brothers laced into one another with a fury. b berate, scold, revile, attack, upbraid, castigate, rant or rave at: She really laced into me for being an hour late for dinner.

lacerate v. gash, cut, slash, tear, rip, claw, mangle; wound, rend, hurt: My feet were lacerated by the sharp stones. She suffered a lacerating attack from him for forgetting to pass on the message.

lack n. 1 want, deficiency, dearth, absence, scarcity, shortage, need, insufficiency, paucity, deficit, inadequacy: We suffered from a severe lack of water. The orchestra is experiencing a serious lack of talent at the moment.

--v. 2 want, need, require, be deficient in, be or fall short of, be without: He lacks the votes needed to win. Simon lacks the ability to paint any better.

lackadaisical
adj. 1 lethargic, languorous, languid, listless, lazy, sluggish, spiritless, idle, indolent, inactive, slothful, fain,ant: She's much too lackadaisical to go out and get a job. 2 unenthusiastic, dull, apathetic, insouciant, uncaring, unconcerned, indifferent, blas,, cold, cool, lukewarm, tepid, unexcited, phlegmatic, unemotional, unexcitable, uninterested, unimpressed, uninspired, unmoved, pococurante: How can you explain the government's lackadaisical attitude towards the greenhouse effect?

lacklustre
adj. drab, dull, lustreless, flat, dingy, colourless, dismal, dreary, unexciting, boring, prosaic, tiresome, tedious, wearisome, uninteresting, two-dimensional, insipid, vapid, bland, unimaginative, thick, slow, dense, Colloq wishy-washy, blah: He gave a very lacklustre performance as Shylock. She has been leading a lacklustre life since John left.

lad n. boy, young man, fellow, schoolboy, youth, juvenile, youngster, hobbledehoy, stripling, (street) urchin, (street) Arab, gamin, Colloq guy, (little) shaver, kid, US sprout: Round up a few of the lads for a game of football.

ladylike adj. well-bred, well-born, aristocratic, noble; refined, respectable, cultured, polished, elegant, mannerly, gracious, genteel, courteous, polite, courtly, dignified, proper, correct, decorous: I cannot believe that Mrs Gibson did not behave in a ladylike way.

lag v. 1 fall behind, linger, loiter, delay, straggle, trail, hang back, dally, dawdle, inch or poke along: If you lag behind too far, you'll never catch up. 2 diminish, decrease, slacken, abate, slow (down or up), flag, wane, ebb, falter, fail, let up, fall (off or away), ease (up), lighten: Contributions to the fund are lagging. Military preparations are lagging.

laggard n. straggler, idler, dawdler, loiterer, slouch, sluggard, loafer, snail, loller, Colloq Brit slowcoach , US slowpoke: As a young boy he was always the laggard, dragging along behind everyone else.

lair n. 1 den, burrow, hole, nest, tunnel, cave, hollow, covert: We cautiously approached the lair of the man-eating tiger. 2 hide-out, hideaway, retreat, hiding-place, refuge, asylum, sanctuary, Colloq hidey-hole or hidy-hole: Oliver will not emerge from his lair before tea-time.

laissez-faire
n. laisser-faire, laissez-faireism, free enterprise, non-intervention, non-interference, freedom, free trade, individualism, laissez-aller or laisser-aller, deregulation, decontrol, laxness: The government's policy of laissez-faire has spurred business on.

lambaste v. 1 beat, whip, scourge, flog, lash, maul, horsewhip, cane, birch, thrash, bludgeon, trounce, drub, pummel, batter, belabour, cudgel: Terry threatened to lambaste anyone who interfered. 2 censure, rebuke, scold, reprimand, chide, admonish, reprove, upbraid, berate, scold, revile, attack, castigate, flay, Colloq dress down, get on (someone's) back, rake or haul over the coals, US call down, Slang chew or bawl out: The press lambasted the company for its unfair employment policies.

lame adj. 1 crippled, disabled, handicapped, hobbled, limping, incapacitated, impaired, halting, halt, spavined, Colloq US gimpy: The mare was found to be lame after the previous day's hunting. 2 feeble, weak, flimsy, thin, unconvincing, unpersuasive, awkward, clumsy, poor, ineffective, Colloq half-baked: Refusing to go because you have a headache sounds like a pretty lame excuse to me.

lament v. 1 mourn, bemoan, bewail, wail, weep (over), grieve (for or over), keen (over), sorrow (for or over): A year later, and she is still lamenting the death of her hamster?!

--n. 2 lamentation, moaning, mourning; keen, dirge, elegy, knell, Requiem, monody, threnody, thanatopsis, epicedium, Scots and Irish coronach: Laments for Kitty's late husband were heard throughout the village.

lamentable
adj. deplorable, wretched, miserable, terrible, distressing, awful, regrettable, pitiful, despicable, intolerable, unfortunate: The hall was left in a lamentable state after the party. His death was presaged by a lamentable series of events.

lamentation
n. mourning, grieving, moaning, weeping, wailing, crying, sobbing, lamenting: The lamentation went on far into the night.

lampoon n. 1 burlesque, caricature, satire, parody, pasquinade or pasquil, squib, Colloq take-off, Brit send-up: The students published a hilarious lampoon of the teaching staff.

--v. 2 burlesque, caricature, satirize, parody, pasquinade or pasquil, mock, ridicule, squib, US skewer, Colloq take off, put or run down, Brit send up: The cows we hold most sacred are often lampooned by irreverent cartoonists.

lance n. 1 spear, pike, javelin, assegai; lancet: He transfixed the knight with his lance, and claimed victory in the joust.

--v. 2 pierce, stab, puncture, prick, incise, open, slit: The boil must be lanced at once to draw out the poison.

land n. 1 earth, (solid) ground, terra firma: After weeks in an open boat, Captain Bligh was relieved to have land under his feet again. 2 dirt, earth, soil, turf, sod, loam, mould: Trumble tilled the land as his ancestors had done for generations. 3 property, grounds, real property or realty or US and Canadian also real estate, acreage; estate: How much land goes with the house? 4 fatherland, motherland, nation, country, homeland, native land: The land of our fathers flowed with milk and honey.

--v. 5 arrive, alight, light, touch or come or go down, splash down, settle on or upon, come to rest, berth, dock, disembark, debark, go ashore, deplane, dismount: The plane was forced to land on the water. We land at dawn. 6 catch, capture, take captive, Colloq bag: He was unable to land the shark unaided. 7 Colloq get, secure, obtain, win, acquire: He finally landed a job with his father-in-law. Sadie finally landed a millionaire!

landing n. 1 touchdown, alighting, splashdown, docking: The fog made landing quite dangerous. 2 disembarkation, deplaning, arrival: After landing, passengers proceed through passport control. 3 landing-place, dock, pier, jetty, wharf, quay: We walked onto the landing to watch the ship come in.

landlady n. 1 proprietor or proprietress, lady of the house, mistress, manager or Brit manageress, hostess: My landlady owns three bed and breakfasts. 2 See landlord, 2, below.

landlord n. 1 host, publican, proprietor, innkeeper, hotelier, manager, restaurateur, Boniface: Landlord! Two pints of your best bitter! 2 landlady, landowner, householder, (property) owner, lessor, Brit freeholder: My landlord has raised my rent claiming that his expenses have increased.

landmark n. 1 feature, guide, guidepost; identification: The tower serves as a landmark for those seeking the castle. 2 turning-point, watershed, milestone, monument: His essay remains a landmark in philosophical thought.

--attributive 3 critical, crucial, pivotal, important, historic, significant, precedent-setting, momentous, notable, noteworthy, major: This stands out as a landmark decision in the annals of criminal law.

landscape n. prospect, view, scene, aspect, vista, countryside: Here and there the landscape is dotted with spinneys.

language n. 1 speech, tongue, idiom, parlance, dialect, idiolect, patois, jargon, cant, argot, vernacular, Colloq lingo: How many languages do you speak? 2 communication, intercourse, interaction: Karl von Frisch studied the language of the bees. 3 jargon, lingua franca, vocabulary, terminology, vernacular, Colloq lingo: In medical language, a head cold is called 'coryza'. 4 wording, words, phrasing, phraseology, style, diction: Guarantees, insurance policies, and other such things should be written in simple language.

lanky   adj. thin, loose-jointed, lank, lean, gaunt, gangling, rangy, long-legged: They recruited three tall, lanky youths for the basketball team.

lap°   v. 1 Often, lap up. lick up, tongue; sip, drink: In a moment, the cat had lapped all the cream from the saucer. 2 wash, splash, ripple, plash, purl: The water rose till it was lapping at the doorstep. 3 lap up. a consume, drink, eat: The dog lapped up every last scrap of food. b accept, believe, credit, fall for, Colloq swallow (whole), buy: She lapped up Felix's sob story and invited him in at once.

lapý   n. 1 circuit, orbit, ambit, circle, tour, trip, revolution: She runs four laps round the track every day for exercise. 2 flap, fold, lappet, projection, lapel, overlap: This lap hides the zip.

--v. 3 overlap, fold, enfold, envelop, wrap: Lap the fabric so as to cover the seam.

lapse   n. 1 slip, error, mistake, fault, failing, oversight, blunder, shortcoming, omission, Formal lapsus, Colloq slip-up, fluff, goof: Apart from a brief lapse, the child behaved very well. Owing to a lapse, your payment was not credited. 2 gap, break, interval, intermission, interruption, pause, lacuna, hiatus, Prosody caesura, Colloq hold-up: Listeners in Scotland experienced a lapse in transmission, for which we apologize. 3 decline, lowering, fall, deterioration, drop, diminution, descent: There has been a serious lapse in church attendance.

--v. 4 decline, lower, fall, drop, diminish, sink, slip, slump, subside, deteriorate: Despite the doctor's best efforts, he lapsed into a coma. 5 run out, expire, be discontinued, become void, terminate, end, cease, stop: Your option to sell the shares at the offering price lapses on Friday. 6 pass, elapse, go by, slip away: Three months had lapsed since she last saw him.

large adj. 1 big, great, broad, stout, heavy, thickset, chunky, stocky, heavy-set, brawny, husky, sturdy, hefty, muscular, strapping, burly, solid, weighty, corpulent, fat, obese, rotund, portly, adipose, beamy, overweight: Two large gentlemen came up and offered to help me find the door. 2 big, generous, bountiful, charitable, eleemosynary, philanthropic, open-handed, magnanimous, munificent, unselfish, big-hearted, large-hearted, substantial, considerable, ample, beneficent, liberal; goodly, kind, good; Colloq tidy: We have to thank Mr Wilson for large donations to our Christmas fund. 3 big, huge, ample, enormous, gigantic, immense, colossal, monumental, massive, mammoth, Brobdingnagian, gargantuan, elephantine, monstrous, staggering, sizeable, substantial, wide, broad, capacious, extensive, Colloq jumbo, US humongous, ginormous: The house has a large dining room. Supertankers are the largest ships afloat.

--adv. 4 big, prominently, overwhelmingly, imposingly, eminently, pre-eminently: The problem looms large in the history of biology.

--n. 5 at large. a free, unfettered, at liberty, on the loose, unconfined, unrestrained: One of the robbers is still at large. b generally, mainly, in general, chiefly, as a whole, in a body, altogether, in the main: The people at large support reductions in taxes.

largely adv. chiefly, mainly, as a rule, by and large, generally, in general, to a great extent, mostly, in great part, in great measure, in the main, on the whole, pretty much, essentially, at bottom, basically, fundamentally: The voters are largely in favour of keeping the present government.

largesse n. largess, gifts, alms, grants, bonuses, endowments, presents, contributions, donations, hand-outs; support, subvention, aid, subsidy, charity, philanthropy, generosity, munificence, bounty, liberality, open-handedness: The church depends on the largesse of its members.

lark n. 1 frolic, spree, escapade, caper, fling, romp, adventure, revel, jape, game, antic, horseplay, shenanigans, mischief, prank, practical joke: The boys say they took the horse just as a lark.

--v. 2 Often, lark about. frolic, caper, romp, revel, play, sport, cavort, gambol, Colloq skylark: We spent a lot of time larking about after our exams.

lascivious
adj. 1 lustful, randy, lecherous, licentious, lewd, prurient, salacious, libidinous, erotic, sensual, lubricious or lubricous, ruttish, goatish, hircine, satyr-like, wanton, Cyprian, debauched, Slang horny, hot: I wouldn't let that lascivious old man near my daughter. 2 pornographic, obscene, blue, lurid, indecent, smutty, dirty, Fescennine, filthy, vile, ribald, bawdy, gross, coarse, offensive: He said that such lascivious novels should be banned and certainly not read in schools.

lash° n. 1 whip, scourge, cat-o'-nine-tails, cat, quirt, knout, bull-whip, thong; rope's end: The bosun gave him twenty of the best with his lash. 2 stroke, blow, strike, slash, cut: Few could stand up after five lashes with his whip.

--v. 3 flog, beat, thrash, switch, whip, scourge, horsewhip, lambaste, flail, smite, thwack, Colloq whack: Any boy was liable to be lashed for the most trivial misdemeanour. 4 lash out. attack, flay, lambaste, belabour, punish; criticize, berate, scold: She often lashes out at her critics quite virulently.

lashý v. fasten, tie, bind, secure, rope, fix, strap, make fast: His crew lashed Odysseus to the mast as they sailed past the land of the Sirens.

lass n. girl, young woman, miss, mademoiselle, schoolgirl, Old-fashioned maiden, maid, damsel, demoiselle; Scots lassie, Irish colleen: He has married a young lass from Arbroath.

lasso n. 1 lariat, rope, SW US reata or riata: The cowboy tossed the lasso round the calf's neck.

--v. 2 rope: He lassoed steers to practise for the rodeo.

last° adj. 1 hindmost, rearmost, aftermost; final: I was the last person to board the plane. 2 latest, newest, most recent or up to date: What was the subject of his last novel? During the last week I have seen seven films. 3 final, concluding, terminal, ultimate, terminating: The last train to London leaves at eleven. She was the last speaker of Cornish. 4 definitive, conclusive, decisive, closing: That is my last word on the subject.

--adv. 5 behind, at or in the end, in or at the rear, after: My horse always seems to come in last.

--n. 6 end, termination, finish: That was the last we ever saw of Charlie. 7 at last. finally, eventually, ultimately, at length: At last we shall see the results of our work.

lastý v. 1 continue, endure, survive, keep on, persist, remain, stay, abide, carry on, hold out, Colloq go the distance: He wouldn't last a day in my job. 2 wear, stand up, endure, survive: This shirt has lasted through innumerable washings.

last° n. mould, matrix, form, model, pattern: These shoes were not made on the same last as those.

lasting adj. permanent, enduring, durable, everlasting, long-term, undying, eternal: She made a lasting contribution to ophthalmology.

late adj. 1 tardy, delayed, overdue, behindhand, dilatory, unpunctual; belated, US past due: He was even late for his own wedding. Better late than never. Your mortgage payment is late again. 2 recent, last, new, fresh, current, up to date: Have you got a copy of a late edition of today's newspaper? 3 deceased, departed, dead; former, past, ex-, recent, previous, preceding, old (See also 5., below.): Here is a song by the late, great Bing Crosby. He has a meeting with Lord Pamby, late chairman of United Oxidation. 4 of late. See 5., below.

--adv. 5 recently, lately, previously, formerly, once, heretofore, in recent or former time(s), of late, latterly (See also 3., above.): They are dining tonight with Sir Keith, late of Scotland Yard. 6 till or at an advanced hour or time: I was up late last night. She married late. 7 tardily, unpunctually, belatedly: We arrived too late for the first act. 8 recently, lately: As late as a week ago they were still holding the job open for her.

lately adv. See late, 5.

latest adj. 1 See last°, 2. 2 fashionable, current, modern, up to the minute, Colloq in: She drives the latest model.

--n. 3 most recent or up-to-date or modern development or news or example: What's the latest? Have you seen the latest in scuba gear?

lather n. 1 suds, froth, foam: He spread lather on his face and began to shave. 2 sweat; dither, fuss, pother, flutter, Colloq tizzy, state, flap: He got into a real lather when he missed the train.

--v. 3 soap (up); foam, froth: The barber lathered my chin thoroughly. 4 thrash, beat, belabour, maul, drub, flog, whack, pummel, buffet, whip, flail, lash: If he dared to swear, his father would lather him.

laud v. praise, commend, celebrate, sing or speak or sound the praises of, honour, acclaim, extol, glorify, promote, advance, recommend, exalt: Bramble's paintings have been lauded by leading art critics the world over.

laudable adj. praiseworthy, meritorious, creditable, admirable, outstanding, excellent, noteworthy, notable, commendable, estimable, creditable: He has made a laudable effort to keep up in his work.

laudatory adj. laudative, praiseful, eulogistic, panegyric(al), encomiastic(al), complimentary, favourable: None of the laudatory comments made in the introduction was true.

laugh v. 1 titter, giggle, snigger, snicker, chuckle, chortle, guffaw, split one's sides, Colloq break or crack up, roll on the floor, go into hysterics, roar with laughter, hoot: Whenever he wore his hat, they couldn't stop laughing. 2 Often, laugh at. a deride, ridicule, mock (at), jeer (at), make a mockery of, poke fun (at), make fun or sport (of), make an ass or a fool (out) of, tease, taunt, pull (someone's) leg, satirize, pasquinade or pasquil, parody, lampoon, jest (at), joke (about), scoff (at), scorn, Colloq Brit take the mickey out of, US roast: They laughed when I sat down - I didn't know the chair was broken. Why did the other children laugh at you? b laugh away or off, spurn, dismiss, brush aside, minimize, shrug off, reject, ignore, disregard, deny, belittle, Colloq pooh-pooh: He laughed off his injury and insisted on continuing to work.

--n. 3 titter, giggle, snigger, snicker, chuckle, chortle, guffaw, horse laugh: She would do anything for a laugh.

laughter n. laughing, tittering, giggling, sniggering, snickering, chuckling, chortling, guffawing: Children's laughter filled the air.

launch v. 1 start (off), set in motion, set or get going, begin, embark upon or on, initiate, inaugurate: The council is about to launch a scheme for dockside development. The attack was launched at dawn. 2 originate, establish, organize, set up, found, open, start: Robson is talking about launching a new company. 3 shoot, fire, discharge, hurl, throw, sling, pitch, fling, catapult, send, dispatch or despatch: The enemy launched ground-to-air missiles against our planes. 4 float, set afloat: Two frigates will be launched today.

--n. 5 inauguration, start, initiation, opening: The launch of the offensive is scheduled for noon tomorrow. 6 boat, skiff, tender, motor boat, runabout, gig, dinghy: The launch will shuttle passengers between the pier and the cruise ship.

launder v. 1 wash, clean, scrub, cleanse: The chambermaid laundered three shirts for me. 2 legitimize, legitimatize, legitimate, legalize: The money from heroin was being laundered through several car dealerships.

laurels n.pl. honour(s), distinction(s), fame, awards, tributes, rewards, acclaim, acclamation, glory, renown, celebrity, popularity, reputation; successes, accomplishments: With no new fields to conquer, he is resting on his laurels.

lavatory n. water-closet, WC, toilet, bathroom, Colloq Brit the Gents, the Ladies('), Men's (Room), rest room, privy, Chiefly military or institutional latrine; Nautical head; Brit (public) convenience, US equipment, outhouse; Colloq (little) boys' or girls' room, powder-room, Brit loo, lav, US can; Slang Brit bog: Our new house has two upstairs bathrooms and a downstairs lavatory.

lavish adj. 1 profuse, abundant, liberal, copious, plentiful, prolific, opulent: He wore a silk tunic with lavish gold embroidery. 2 generous, liberal, open-handed, unstinting, bountiful, unsparing, unselfish, effusive, free: She showered the most lavish gifts on her children. 3 extravagant, wasteful, exaggerated, prodigal, improvident, excessive, unreasonable, immoderate, profligate, uncurbed, unrestrained, intemperate: The council was accused of lavish overspending on the civic centre.

--v. 4 squander, waste, throw away, dissipate, spend, expend, sink: We lavished a fortune on the gardens. 5 shower, bestow, thrust, heap, pour: Granny always lavished gifts on us.

law n. 1 rule, regulation, ordinance, statute, act, enactment, by-law, measure, edict, decree, order, directive, injunction, command, commandment, canon, mandate, ukase: They have a law that forbids smoking on aeroplanes. 2 corpus juris, (legal) code, constitution, rules and regulations, charter, Law equity: The law must be applied equally to all citizens. 3 principle, proposition, theory, theorem, formula, axiom, deduction, corollary, postulate, conclusion, inference: Not every observable phenomenon obeys the laws of physics.

lawful adj. 1 legal, licit, legitimate, de jure, constitutional, just, rightful, valid, proper: I am the lawful heir. 2 permissible, allowable, justifiable, authorized, allowed, permitted: It is not lawful to let your dog foul the footpath.

lawless adj. 1 anarchic(al), anarchistic, chaotic, unruly, unregulated: There was a lawless period between the revolution and the establishment of government. 2 illegal, illicit, unlawful, criminal, felonious, larcenous, dishonest, corrupt, venal, Colloq crooked: Holding a demonstration without a permit is a lawless act. 3 villainous, nefarious, wicked, sinful, flagitious, iniquitous, treacherous: He was once a member of a lawless motor-cycle gang.

lawn n. sward, greensward, turf, sod, green: I lay back on the lawn and gazed at the sky.

lawyer n. counsel, advocate, member of the bar, legal practitioner, Brit solicitor, barrister, Queen's or King's counsel, bencher, US attorney(-at-law), counselor(-at-law), Slang US mouthpiece: We have turned the case over to a lawyer.

lax adj. 1 loose, slack, casual, slipshod, easygoing, careless, negligent, permissive, weak, indulgent, flexible, relaxed: Law enforcement has always been lax in that city. 2 imprecise, undefined, indefinite, non-specific, unspecific, vague, shapeless, amorphous, general, broad, inexact, hit-or-miss, careless, untidy, Colloq sloppy: His ideas about tactics are too lax for a military man.

lay° v. 1 place, put (down), set (down), position, deposit; spread: Lay the cloth on the table, then lay the book on top of it. 2 set, arrange: The table was laid for four. 3 Often, lay down. establish, build, construct: Before I can argue my case, I must lay a firm foundation of trust. 4 stake, bet, wager, gamble, hazard, risk: I'll lay ten to one that you won't be able to move that crate. 5 destroy, suppress, exorcize: Did Edward ever succeed in laying that ghost of a rumour that haunted his career for so long? 6 present, offer, submit, set or put forth, advance, bring or put forward, set out: We have laid our proposal before the board. 7 charge, impute, direct, lodge, prefer, aim, attribute, ascribe: There is no justification for laying the blame on Leonard. 8 copulate (with), couple (with), have (sexual) intercourse (with), sleep (with), lie (with), bed, go to bed (with), mate (with), have sex (with), go all the way (with), service, Slang screw, shack up (with), Brit roger, Taboo fuck. 9 lay bare. expose, reveal, uncover, disclose, divulge, bring to light, show, unveil, lift the veil from: She laid bare the most intimate details of their relationship. 10 lay down. stipulate, require, demand, insist on, dictate: She laid down the conditions on which he could return home. 11 lay hold of. seize, grab, snatch, nab, catch or get hold of, get: I have been trying to lay hold of that book for weeks. 12 lay in. See 19 (a), below. 13 lay into. attack, assault, set about, assail, lambaste, belabour: We laid into the gang and gave them a sound drubbing. 14 lay it on. exaggerate, overstate, embroider: Don't believe what Frank tells you - he really lays it on pretty thick sometimes. 15 lay low. See 18 (c), below. 16 lay off. a suspend; dismiss, discharge, fire, let go, cashier, drum out of the corps, Colloq (give the) sack, (give the) axe, kick out, (give the) boot, boot out, give (someone) his or her walking papers: Fifty workers were laid off because business was slack. b let up, quit (it), stop (it), cease, desist, leave off, leave alone, Colloq knock (it) off, cut (it) out, come off (it): I wish you'd lay off for a while and stop bothering me. You must lay off phoning your mother twice a day. 17 lay on. a provide, cater (for), supply: The company laid on quite a Christmas party. b impose, charge, assess; demand, require: In addition to enforcing payment of back taxes, they laid on a penalty of 20 per cent. 18 lay out. a design, plan, outline, sketch, arrange, set up: The art department laid out the advertisements for the new campaign. b advance, disburse, spend, expend, pay, give, contribute, Colloq shell out, ante up, kick in with, fork out: The salesmen often lay out the money for their expenses and are then reimbursed. c lay low, floor, prostrate, knock down or out, strike or cut down, flatten, fell, strike down, Colloq knock for six, kayo or K.O.: He laid out the challenger with a blow to the solar plexus. 19 lay up. a lay in, amass, accumulate, save (up), hoard, preserve, store, keep, put away, put by: We laid up a supply of canned goods for the winter. b hospitalize, incapacitate, disable, confine to bed, keep indoors: She has been laid up with a virus all week.

layý   adj. 1 secular, non-clerical, laic, non-ecclesiastical: He served as a lay preacher for many years. 2 amateur, non-professional, non-specialist: Members of the lay public did not immediately understand the dangers of the greenhouse effect.

lay°   n. ballad, song, air, refrain, strain, melody; poem, ode, lyric, rhyme, ballade: Macaulay wrote a book entitled Lays of Ancient Rome .

lazy   adj. 1 indolent, slothful, dilatory, idle, shiftless, inactive, listless, fain‚ant, otiose, slack, lax, lethargic: He's so lazy and so rich that he pays someone just to walk his dog. 2 slow, languid, easy, easygoing, sluggish, slow-moving, languorous: The hot lazy summer days were whiled away fishing.

12.2 lead...
=-

lead v. 1 conduct, escort, usher, guide, show the way, pilot, steer: If you lead, I'll follow. 2 cause, influence, prompt, bring, incline, induce, persuade, move, dispose, convince: What led you to suspect the butler? 3 head (up), direct, govern, command, supervise, superintend, preside (over), take the lead, take or assume command (of), manage, captain, Colloq skipper: The orchestra would like you to lead. Who is going to lead the men into battle? Nicole leads a weekly discussion group on alcoholism. 4 come or be or go first, excel, surpass, exceed, precede, be ahead (of), outstrip, distance, outrun, outdo: They lead the world in the production of sugar. 5 live, experience, spend, pass; while away: He is leading a life of ease on the French Riviera. 6 be conducive to, create, engender, cause, contribute to, result in, bring on or about, produce: Your stubbornness can lead only to frustration. 7 lead astray. lead on, mislead, misguide, misdirect, deceive; fool, decoy, hoodwink, Colloq bamboozle: She might have been led astray by that wolf in sheep's clothing. 8 lead off. start (off or in or out or up), begin, commence, get going or moving, get under way, initiate, inaugurate, Colloq kick off: The proceedings will lead off with the national anthem. Who is going to lead off the singing? 9 lead on. a See 7, above. b lure, entice, seduce, beguile, inveigle, tempt: They led me on with offers of a huge salary. 10 lead up to. a prepare or pave or clear (the way), do the groundwork or spadework, precede: The events leading up to the overthrow of the government may never be known. b approach, broach, bring up, present, introduce, work up or round or around to, get (up) to: I should lead up to the subject delicately, if I were you.

--n. 11 front, vanguard, van, lead or leading position or place, advance or advanced position or place: The horse that he had bet on was in the lead coming down the home straight. 12 advantage, edge, advance, supremacy, margin, priority, primacy, pre-eminence: She has the lead over all her competitors. Our team had a two-point lead at half-time. 13 direction, guidance, leadership, precedent, example, model, exemplar, pattern, standard: We decided to follow his lead. 14 tip, clue, hint, suggestion, cue, intimation; prospect, possibility, potential; Colloq tip-off: Barry is following up some leads for a new job. The advertisement produced some new sales leads. 15 leash, tether, restraint, cord, chain: The dog fetches his lead himself when he wants to go out. 16 protagonist, hero or heroine, leading or starring role or part, leading or lead actor or actress, leading lady or man, male or female lead, principal; prima donna, diva, prima ballerina, premiŠre danseuse, premier danseur: She has the lead in the new production of Giselle . 17 wire, cable, Brit flex: Connect this lead to the power source.

--adj. 18 leading, foremost, first; main, chief, principal, premier, paramount: The lead climber fell when the rope broke. The lead story in today's paper is about an American take-over bid for the longest-standing British car-manufacturing company.

leaden   adj. 1 heavy, onerous, ponderous, dense, burdensome: Exhausted, he dragged his leaden feet to the next meeting. 2 heavy, dull, numbing, oppressive: I was happy to escape the leaden atmosphere of the theatre. 3 grey, dull, dingy, gloomy, glowering, lowering, dreary, dismal, oppressive, dark, sullen, sombre: The leaden sky seemed to forebode disaster as he fled across the moor. 4 inert, lifeless, listless, sluggish, inanimate, inactive, lethargic, languid, languorous, torpid, spiritless, stagnant, static, dormant, soporific, sleepy: The refugees trudged along at a leaden pace.

leader   n. 1 chief, head, commander, ruler, superior, director, chairman, chairwoman, chairlady, chairperson, chieftain, captain, commandant, principal, Colloq boss, bossman, kingpin, big cheese, number one, numero uno, Brit gaffer, Chiefly US Mr Big, Slang US the man: The police can identify the leader of the gang. The leader of the assembly is elected for a year. 2 bandmaster, band leader, director, US and Canadian conductor, bandleader, concert-master: The leader tapped his baton for silence.

leadership
n. direction, guidance, management, directorship, administration, supervision, command, regulation, control, operation, influence, initiative; governorship, superintendence, running: The company made huge profits under Katherine's leadership. The leadership of the country at this time was in the hands of the privileged class.

leading   adj. 1 important, influential, chief, prime, cardinal, foremost, paramount, primary: A leading politician hinted today that interest rates might go down soon. 2 best, outstanding, pre-eminent, greatest, supreme, peerless, matchless, unequalled, unrivalled, unsurpassed: He was the leading writer of his time.

leaflet   n. folder, circular, brochure, handbill, bill, booklet, advertisement, US and Canadian throw-away, flier or flyer, Colloq Brit advert: The candidate gave out leaflets urging us to vote for him.

leafy   adj. green, verdant, bosky, woody, shady, shaded, arborescent: We lay beneath the leafy bowers and dreamed of summers past.

league   n. 1 confederation, association, alliance, combination, coalition, federation, confederacy, guild, society, fraternity, union, band, fellowship, club: The teams in the south favour forming a football league of their own. 2 in league (with). allied (with), united (with), associated (with), leagued (with), federated (with), collaborating (with), conspiring (with), in collusion (with), Colloq in cahoots (with): The suspects are said to be in league with saboteurs.

--v. 3 ally, unite, associate, band, combine, collaborate, join (forces), conspire, collude: Did most people league with the rebels or the official government?

leak   n. 1 leakage, leaking, discharge, trickle, escape, seepage, seeping, oozing, exudation: We have to stop leaks of radioactive waste from power plants. 2 hole, fissure, crack, chink, crevice, aperture, opening, puncture, cut, break, split, gash, rent, tear, gap, flaw: There was a leak in the balloon and it began to descend. 3 disclosure, revelation: The press knew about his defection because of a security leak.

--v. 4 escape, discharge, spill, trickle, drip, seep, ooze, exude, extravasate: Oil was leaking out through a hole in the container. 5 disclose, divulge, let slip, release, give away (the game), make known or public, let (something or it) be known, Colloq spill the beans (about); let the cat out of the bag: Someone as yet unidentified leaked the scandal to a reporter. 6 leak out. transpire, become known, come out, be revealed: Their secret relationship has leaked out.

lean° adj. 1 thin, slim, slender, rangy, spare, wiry, lanky, lank, skinny, angular, bony, raw-boned, gaunt, gangling, gangly, spare, meagre, skeletal, scraggy, scrawny, haggard, emaciated, pinched, wasted, shrunken, macilent: He has the lean leggy build typical of a runner. 2 unfruitful, unproductive, barren, infertile, poor, meagre, scanty, bare, arid, sparse, impoverished: The Kanes tried for years to eke a living from the lean soil. 3 impoverished, destitute, needy, poverty-stricken, penurious, indigent, necessitous, hard, bad, difficult: The Depression was a lean period for most people.

leaný v. 1 rest (against or on or upon), be held up or supported by: She leant her head on his shoulder. 2 incline, slant, tilt, bend, tip: Isn't that pole leaning over too much? 3 Often, lean towards. favour, gravitate towards, tend towards, be disposed towards, prefer, show a preference for, incline towards, be or lean on the side of, be biased towards, be (prejudiced) in favour of: She leans towards conservatism when it comes to morality. 4 lean on. a rely on, depend on, count on, believe or trust in, pin one's hopes or faith on or upon: You can lean on me if you need help. b pressure, bring pressure to bear on, intimidate, threaten, cow, terrorize, terrify, scare, frighten, warn, menace, endanger, imperil, Brit pressurize: Sometimes the gang would lean on a shopkeeper who refused to pay for 'protection'.

leaning n. bent, inclination, bias, prejudice, favouritism, partiality, predilection, liking, taste, preference, penchant, sympathy, tendency, tendentiousness: The judges' leanings in favour of short-haired dogs are well known.

leap n. 1 spring, bound, jump, vault (into); hurdle, clear, hop over, skip over, negotiate: He leapt into the saddle. Superman leaps tall buildings at a single bound. 2 jump, cavort, gambol, dance, frisk, caper, frolic, romp, prance, curvet: He leapt for joy at the news that he had won first prize. 3 jump, rush, hasten, form hastily, accept (prematurely or without question): The speaker kept leaping from one subject to another. Don't leap to conclusions about her strange behaviour. 4 leap at. jump at, accept, be eager for, move quickly, take: I leapt at the chance to apply for a scholarship.

--n. 5 spring, bound, jump, vault, hurdle, hop, skip: With one leap I was on the other side. 6 jump, increase, (up)surge, rise, upswing, growth, escalation: The figures show a leap in inflation for the month. 7 by leaps and bounds. rapidly, quickly, swiftly, speedily: The plans for the new theatre are progressing by leaps and bounds.

learn v. 1 Often, learn of. find out, discover, hear (of), chance or hit upon, understand, gather, have revealed to one; determine, ascertain, uncover: I learned today that you are leaving. I learned of your plans yesterday. 2 be taught, be instructed in, master, become proficient (in), acquire knowledge (of): I learned German at school. 3 understand, see the light, get the picture, Colloq catch on, get the idea, get it, Brit twig: No matter how often they are told, some people never learn. 4 memorize, commit to memory, learn by heart: Bolton was told to learn his part by the next day.

learned adj. (well-)informed, erudite, knowledgeable, au fait, cultured, intellectual, highbrow, (well-)educated, scholarly, academic, scholastic, lettered, experienced, skilled, practised, accomplished, expert, literate, well-read, (well-)versed, (well-)trained, (well-)grounded: The consultants to the encyclopedia are all learned people.

learner n. student, pupil, scholar, trainee, apprentice, novice, tiro or tyro, abecedarian, beginner, initiate, neophyte: Learners of English as a second language will benefit from this book.

learning n. knowledge, erudition, culture, scholarship, lore, information, wisdom: You have the advantage of being able to draw on centuries of learning.

lease n. 1 rental agreement or contract, sublease, sublet: A new ten-year lease will be signed tomorrow.

--v. 2 rent (out), let (out), sublet (out), sublease (out), charter (out), hire (out): They leased their home to us for the summer. We arranged to lease their boat for the weekend.

leave° v. 1 go (away or off), depart, set off, be off, get away or off, retire, retreat, withdraw, decamp, (make an) exit, run, be gone, bid (someone or something) goodbye, say goodbye or adieu (to), take (one's) leave (of), quit, desert, pull out, check out, fly, Colloq push or shove off, take off, skedaddle, flit, disappear, do a disappearing act, pull up stakes, up-anchor, Slang beat it, scram, vamoose, split, Brit beetle off, do a bunk, do a moonlight flit, hop it, Taboo slang Brit bugger off: Please leave at once. May I leave the room? She left him alone. 2 go or run off, deviate from: The car left the road and hit a tree. 3 forget, mislay, lose: I left my car keys somewhere in the house. 4 abandon, desert, take leave of, wash one's hands of, turn one's back on; quit, resign from, give up, renounce, drop (out of): She left him because he mistreated her. I left school at sixteen. 5 make, render, cause to be or become or remain: The beauty of the place left me speechless. 6 bequeath, will, hand down, devise, demise, transfer: Her aunt left some valuable paintings to my wife. 7 entrust, commit, assign, cede, relinquish, give over or up, consign, resign: They are leaving all the responsibility to me. 8 cause or allow to remain, have as a remainder, yield, give: Seven from eleven leaves four. 9 leave off. stop, cease, desist, forbear, give up, refrain from, discontinue, abstain (from), renounce: He won't leave off gossiping about her. 10 leave out. omit, disregard, ignore, neglect; count out, reject, exclude, eliminate, bar, except: You left out the best part. Don't leave me out of the fun!

leaveý n. 1 permission, authorization, consent, freedom, liberty, licence, sanction, dispensation: Who gave you leave to borrow my car? 2 furlough, leave of absence, time off, sabbatical, recess, holiday, vacation: I am overworked and badly in need of some leave. 3 departure: He took his leave of us at last.

lecherous adj. lewd, lascivious, salacious, libidinous, sensual, lubricious or lubricous, lustful, concupiscent, licentious, prurient, dirty-minded, filthy-minded, carnal, goatish, hircine, randy, libertine, wanton, profligate, depraved, degenerate, decadent, dissolute, Slang horny: The lecherous villain dared to proposition my wife.

lecture n. 1 speech, address, talk, discourse, disquisition, treatise, dissertation, paper, lesson, instruction, sermon, declamation, harangue, diatribe, philippic, screed: The preacher delivered a lecture on the evils of drink. 2 reproof, reprimand, rebuke, criticism, censure, reproach, scolding, upbraiding, chiding, berating, tongue-lashing, remonstration, Colloq dressing-down, telling-off, Slang Brit wigging, US and Canadian chewing-out: I had to listen to another lecture about staying out late.

--v. 3 make or deliver or give a speech or address or talk, discourse; sermonize, hold forth, moralize, pontificate, orate, preach, declaim, expound, go on about, harangue: She lectures on Chinese art of the 18th century. He insists on lecturing to everyone he meets. 4 reprove, reprimand, rebuke, reproach, scold, upbraid, berate, chide, tongue-lash, remonstrate with, rail at, fulminate against; admonish, warn; Colloq dress down, tell off, send (someone) away or off with a flea in his or her ear, Slang Brit wig, US and Canadian chew out: She is always lecturing me about keeping my room tidy.

ledge n. shelf, projection, step, mantel or mantle, mantelpiece or mantlepiece, overhang, sill: We stood on a small ledge of rock unable to move.

leer v. 1 ogle, eye: He leers at every pretty girl.

--n. 2 ogle, the eye, Colloq once-over, Slang glad eye: She was repelled when he gave her a leer.

leery adj. suspicious, sceptical, dubious, doubtful, doubting, distrustful, wary, cautious, chary, careful: I was very leery of his story.

leeway n. space, elbow-room, room, play, scope, slack, latitude, wide berth; freedom: We allowed him some leeway to make changes in the manuscript.

left adj. 1 left-hand, sinistral, Nautical port, (formerly) larboard, Heraldry sinister: In most countries, the driver sits on the left side. 2 leftist, left-wing, progressive, liberal, socialist(ic), pink; radical, communist(ic), red: The party's platform has become a bit too left for my taste.

--n. 3 left side or hand or fist, Nautical port, port side, (formerly) larboard: The fort is on the left as you enter the bay. The champion has a powerful left.

left-handed

adj. 1 clumsy, awkward, gauche, fumbling, maladroit, cack-handed: He has a left-handed way of doing things. 2 insulting, disparaging, derisive, uncomplimentary, insulting, paradoxical, ambiguous, questionable, dubious, doubtful: Calling her piano-playing 'not bad' was a left-handed compliment.

leftover n. 1 Usually, leftovers. remainder(s), remnant(s), rest, residue, residuum, balance, surplus, excess, superfluity, overage; scrap(s), leavings, crumbs, odds and ends, debris or d,bris, refuse, waste, rubbish, rubble, detritus, Archaic orts: I'm just having leftovers for dinner tonight.

--adj. 2 remaining, residual, extra, excess, unused, uneaten: Save some of the leftover ice-cream for later.

leg n. 1 limb, member, Colloq pin, peg, stump, Slang gam: I have a touch of arthritis in my left leg. 2 support, brace, prop, upright, standard, column, pillar: One of the legs of this table is about to collapse. 3 part, portion, segment, stretch, stage, section, length, lap: The first leg of my journey passed without incident. 4 a leg up. boost, assistance, push, help, helping hand, advance, support, US and Canadian assist: Let me give you a leg up over the wall. Gordon might give you a leg up in getting a job. 5 leg it. run, hurry, hasten, scurry, Colloq scoot, skedaddle: He legged it down the street to catch the bus. 6 not a leg to stand on. defenceless, unsupported, insupportable or unsupportable, indefensible, unjustifiable, untenable, invalid: She insists she's right, but she hasn't got a leg to stand on. 7 on one's or its last legs. decrepit, failing, exhausted, dying, worn out, run-down, falling apart or to pieces, broken-down, the worse for wear; dilapidated, rickety, shabby, ramshackle, crumbling, tumbledown: George looked as if he was on his last legs. My car is on its last legs. 8 pull (someone's) leg. tease, mock, jeer at, taunt, gibe, make fun of, chaff, guy, fool, deceive, Chiefly Brit twit, Colloq rib, kid, rag: We were just pulling his leg, but he took it seriously. 9 shake a leg. a hurry (up), hasten, rush, Colloq get going or moving or cracking, look alive or lively: You'll have to shake a leg to catch that train. b dance, trip the light fantastic (toe), Slang hoof it, US cut a rug: What do you say we go out and shake a leg tonight? 10 stretch one's legs. (take or go for a) walk, (take some) exercise: After sitting for so long, I have to stretch my legs.

legal adj. 1 lawful, licit, statutory, acceptable, permissible, permitted, admissible, authorized: The police officer was found to have exceeded his legal authority. 2 legitimate, proper, right, rightful, sound, constitutional, authorized, Slang legit: I question whether his business is legal. Who is the legal heir? 3 judicial, juridical, judiciary, forensic: The case is without legal precedent.

legalistic
adj. narrow(-minded), disputatious, contentious, litigious, literal, strict, niggling, hair-splitting, cavilling, quibbling, Jesuitical, pettifogging, nice, fine, subtle, Colloq nit-picking: Her argument is legalistic and ignores the spirit of the law.

legend n. 1 epic, saga, myth, story, (folk) tale, romance, narrative, fable, tradition, fiction, Scandinavian Edda: There are scores of legends woven into the cultural fabric of our lives. 2 celebrity, phenomenon, tradition, wonder, luminary, personage, somebody: Someone said that Rudolph had become a legend in his own mind. 3 key, table of symbols, code, explanatory note: Refer to the legend for explanations of symbols used in the map. 4 motto, slogan, inscription, caption, title: The legend reads, 'Dieu et mon droit'.

legendary adj. 1 fabled, storied, traditional; heroic, epic, mythic: Legendary tales have been identified in every culture. 2 fanciful, imaginary, fabulous, mythical, romantic, fictional: Was King Arthur a real person or a legendary figure? 3 famous, celebrated, noted, famed, well-known, renowned, illustrious, immortal, prominent, eminent, great, acclaimed, noteworthy: Irena became known for her legendary dinner parties.

legible adj. readable, decipherable, clear, understandable, plain, distinct: The handwriting is legible, but I don't know what language it's in.

legitimate
adj. 1 valid, proper, right, rightful, authorized, legal, genuine, real, true, authentic: Which one of them was the legitimate Anastasia? 2 lawful, licit, legal, by law, de jure, statutory: Bonnie Prince Charlie claimed to be the legitimate

ruler of Scotland. 3 commonsensical, sensible, reasonable, proper, correct, acceptable, valid, logical, justifiable, just, fair: The question is perfectly legitimate and deserves a proper answer.

--v. 4 legitimize, legitimatize, legalize, authorize, sanction, warrant, validate, certify: By signing before two witnesses, she legitimated her will.

leisure n. 1 spare or free time, time (off), liberty, freedom, opportunity: How many people these days have the leisure to do what they like? 2 holiday, vacation, respite, relief, rest, recreation, relaxation, ease, breathing-space, quiet, tranquillity, repose, US military rest and recreation, R and R: Everyone needs a few days of leisure now and then. 3 at leisure. a unoccupied, inactive, retired, resting, free, on holiday or chiefly US and Canadian vacation; at liberty, available, unemployed: I have been at leisure for a year now. b Often, at one's leisure. at one's convenience, when convenient, unhurriedly, in one's own time: I shall mow the lawn at my leisure.

--adj. 4 recreational: The 'leisure industry' is booming with theme parks opening throughout the country. 5 free, unoccupied, non-working, unencumbered, idle, holiday, vacation: How do you usually spend your leisure time?

leisured adj. wealthy, rich, affluent, prosperous, moneyed or monied, well-to-do, leisured: Yachts of that size are strictly for the leisured classes.

lend v. 1 make a loan of, loan, advance: The bank agreed to lend me the money for a boat. 2 impart, furnish, bestow, give, confer, contribute, add: The silk scarf lends cachet to the whole outfit. 3 lend itself to. suit, fit, be fitted or appropriate or suitable (to or for), be applicable or adaptable (to or for): The book lends itself well to film adaptation.

length n. 1 extent, measure, span, reach, size, magnitude, dimension, measurement: What is the length of a piece of string? The pool is 25 metres in length and 15 metres in width. 2 duration, stretch, term, period, space: What length of time did he spend in prison? 3 at full length. fully, completely, to the fullest extent: They were stretched out at full length on the floor. 4 at length. a finally, at (long) last, eventually, after a (long) time or while, ultimately; in the long run: At length, the doctor emerged from his office. b for a long time, interminably, for ages: He read to her at length, till she dozed off. c in depth, thoroughly, completely, exhaustively, extensively, to the fullest or greatest extent, in detail: I haven't the time to go into the story at length just now.

lengthen v. make longer, extend, elongate; stretch, drag out, draw out, prolong, protract, expand, continue: I need to lengthen the skirt an inch. The ten-minute interview lengthened into an hour. They lengthened the playing field.

lengthy adj. long, over-long, long-drawn(-out), protracted; endless, interminable, prolonged, long-winded, wordy, prolix, verbose, garrulous, talkative, loquacious, boring, dull, tedious: He underwent a lengthy operation for removal of the clot. She launched into a lengthy description of the life cycle of a frog.

lenient adj. gentle, kind, kindly, easy, sparing, merciful, tender, humane, tender-hearted, kind-hearted, indulgent, permissive, forgiving, easygoing, tolerant, patient, compassionate, forbearing, understanding, magnanimous, generous, charitable: Do you think they were lenient in their treatment of prisoners caught while escaping?

lesson n. 1 exercise, drill, reading, lecture, recitation; assignment, homework, task: The pupils are having an English lesson at the moment. You must finish your lessons before you can go out and play. 2 class, session; instruction, teaching, tutoring, schooling; practice: I take piano lessons on Tuesday afternoons. 3 example, exemplar, model, guide, maxim, paragon, message, deterrent, discouragement; warning, admonition; moral, precept: Norman's punishment should be a lesson to you. 4 punishment, chastisement, chastening, castigation, scolding, chiding, rebuke, reprimand, reproof: If she does that again, I'll give her a lesson she won't forget in a hurry!

let° v. 1 allow (to), permit (to), sanction (to), give permission or leave (to), authorize (to), license (to), suffer (to): Don't let him go alone. Let George do it. 2 cause (to), arrange for, enable (to): Let me know if you have any difficulty. Let me help you. Let the police know of any crime. 3 Sometimes, let out. rent (out), hire (out), lease (out), charter (out); contract (out), subcontract (out), farm (out), job (out): Mrs Finney lets rooms by the week. Much of the work is let out to people who work at home. 4 let down. disappoint, fail, frustrate; disenchant, dissatisfy, disillusion: He promised to be here at nine, but he let me down. 5 let in. admit, allow in; include, take in, receive, welcome, induct, install or instal: I'll just open a window and let in some fresh air. I wouldn't want to be a member of a club that would let in someone like me. 6 let off. a pardon, forgive, excuse, release, discharge, let go: They let him off with only a severe reprimand. b exonerate, absolve, clear, acquit, vindicate, Slang let off the hook: When the real culprit confessed, she was let off. c detonate, explode, detonate, discharge, fire, set off: Don't let off those fireworks so near the haystack. d emit, give out or off, release, throw off or out, let loose, exude: Some plastics let off an awful smell when they burn. 7 let on. a confess, admit, disclose, divulge, reveal, expose, let it be known, let out, say, tell, give away, let slip, betray; leak: I'll never let on that you are to blame. b feign, affect, pretend, fake, (put on an) act, simulate, dissemble, dissimulate: He let on that he had a bad leg and couldn't play in the match, when in fact he just wanted to go away for the weekend. 8 let out. a See 7 (a), above. b (let) loose, liberate, (set) free, release, let go, discharge: He served three years before being let out. Let the cat out, will you. c emit, give vent to, produce: She let out a scream that could have woken the dead. d end, stop, break up, finish, close, terminate: When does school let out for the Christmas holidays? 9 let up. decrease, abate, ease (up), slacken, diminish, lessen, mitigate, subside, moderate: Perhaps we can still go if the rain lets up soon. 10 let up on. ease up on, slack off on: He didn't let up on haranguing us for an hour.

letý n. hindrance, impediment, obstruction, obstacle: People can now cross the border without let or hindrance.

let-down n. disappointment, disillusionment, disenchantment: She had practised so hard that losing was all the more of a let-down.

lethal adj. deadly, fatal, mortal: The lethal blow was delivered by a blunt instrument.

lethargic adj. 1 lethargical, sluggish, slow, dull, heavy, lazy, indolent, phlegmatic, slothful, idle, languid, languorous, listless, fain,ant, inactive, torpid, stuporous, comatose; indifferent, apathetic: They were so lethargic that they did absolutely nothing about it. 2 weary, tired, fagged out, fatigued, enervated, weak, exhausted, drowsy, sleepy, somnolent: I have a bad cold and feel very lethargic.

lethargy n. 1 sluggishness, sloth, dullness, heaviness, laziness, indolence, phlegm, idleness, languidness, languor, listlessness, dolce far niente, inactivity, inertia, torpor, stupor; indifference, apathy: After taking the medicine, a feeling of lethargy overtook me. 2 weariness, tiredness, fatigue, weakness, exhaustion, drowsiness, sleepiness, somnolence: The strident persistence of my alarm clock dragged me out of my lethargy.

letter n. 1 character, symbol, sign: Epsilon is a letter in the Greek alphabet. 2 missive, epistle, communication, note, line, message, dispatch or despatch; correspondence: Write me a letter when you get there. 3 letters. literature, the humanities, belles-lettres, the classics; erudition, culture, the world of letters, learning, scholarship: He is a widely known man of letters. 4 to the letter. precisely, literally, exactly, accurately, strictly, sic, thus, letter for letter, literatim, word for word, verbatim: The document has been copied to the letter.

--v. 5 inscribe, write, spell (out): She carefully lettered the caption under the picture.

lettered adj. literate, literary, (well-)educated, erudite, scholarly, learned, well-informed, enlightened, knowledgeable, (well-)versed, well-read, cultured, cultivated: He was greatly influenced by the lettered men of his time.

let-up n. cease, stop, stopping, ceasing, cessation, surcease, break, interruption, pause, intermission, suspension, time out or off; moderation, lessening, abatement, diminution, relief, hesitation, respite, relaxation: I was nagged without let-up about getting the work done by the end of the month.

level adj. 1 even, smooth, plane, uniform, plain, flat, flush, straight, true: The plaster is not level enough to apply the wallpaper. 2 horizontal; prone, supine: Make sure the playing field is level. Try to keep the body level when doing this exercise. 3 uniform, constant, steady, consistent, invariable, unvarying, unalterable, unchanging, unfluctuating; very: I did my level best to warn him, but he wouldn't listen. 4 parallel, even, equal, equivalent, consistent: The top floor of my house is level with the roof of the one across the street. The problem arises because wages are not level with inflation. 5 up (on), informed (about or on), up to date (on or with), au fait (with), au courant (with): He does his best to keep level with what is going on in the world. 6 even, tied, equal, neck and neck: The scores are level. So at half-time, it's level pegging between Arsenal and Liverpool. 7 See level-headed, below.

--v. 8 level off, even, smooth (out), flatten (out): The concrete is levelled by dragging a straight-edge over it. 9 destroy, demolish, raze, lay waste, devastate, knock down, tear down, pull down, wreck, bulldoze: The building was levelled in a matter of minutes. 10 aim, point, draw a bead, direct, train, focus: He levelled his gun at her and she screamed. 11 level with. be or play fair with, be honest or straight with, be open or frank or straightforward with, Colloq be upfront with: I am going to level with you - I find you very difficult to work with.

--n. 12 plane, horizontal, elevation, height; altitude: The windows are at the same level. 13 floor, storey: On which level is Mr Stone's office? 14 plane, position, status, standing, rank, stage: She functions at a higher level, both administratively and intellectually. 15 on the level. straight, straightforward, honest, direct, sincere, square, open, above-board, Colloq upfront, on the up and up, US straight-shooting: You haven't been on the level with me about your plans for the company.

level-headed
adj. (well-)balanced, sensible, sane, reasonable, commonsensical, level, unruffled, undisturbed, unperturbed, imperturbable, even-tempered, composed, calm, cool, collected, tranquil, serene, unflappable, poised, relaxed, self-possessed: Even when she was a teenager, Fran was quite level-headed.

levity n. light-heartedness, lightness, frivolity, frivolousness, flippancy, trivialization, triviality, facetiousness: Politics is a weighty business and should not be treated with levity.

lewd adj. lascivious, salacious, lecherous, lustful, licentious, carnal, goatish, hircine, satyric(al), ruttish, concupiscent, libidinous, lubricious or lubricous, indecent, offensive, wild, debauched, obscene, smutty, crude, dirty, foul, filthy, rude, pornographic, prurient, gross, dissolute, Fescennine, bawdy, ribald, scurrilous, raw, blue, erotic, suggestive, unchaste, unvirtuous, Colloq randy, Slang hot, horny: He is said to have chronicled the lewd goings-on at the Hellfire Club.

12.3 liability...
=-

liability n. 1 answerability, responsibility, burden, onus, accountability: Who bears the liability for the company's losses? 2 obligation, debt, indebtedness, arrear(s), debit: Outstanding shares are treated as a liability of the corporation. 3 disadvantage, drawback, hindrance, impediment, encumbrance, snag, hitch, barrier, obstacle, obstruction, burden, onus: Her biggest liability is her inability to read. 4 exposure, susceptibility, vulnerability: The insurer's liability is spread amongst many underwriters.

liable adj. 1 likely, apt, prone, inclined, disposed: She is liable to want payment for her contribution. 2 answerable, responsible, accountable, obligated, blameable, blameworthy, Law actionable: An owner is liable for damage done by his dog. 3 exposed, susceptible, vulnerable, open, subject: Certain kinds of plants are more liable to disease.

liaison n. 1 connection, communication, contact, linkage, affiliation, relationship, relations: Liaison between the ministries is improving. 2 contact, intermediary, link, tie, medium, go-between, agent: She acts as liaison between the heads of research and manufacturing. 3 (love) affair, amour, relationship, affaire d'amour, affaire de coeur, intrigue, romance, entanglement, flirtation: David's wife soon found out about his liaison with the girl in the typing pool.

liar n. fabricator, prevaricator, perjurer, falsifier, teller of tales, false witness, Ananias, Baron von M•nchhausen, Colloq fibber: He's a liar if he says he saw me that night - I was ill in bed.

libel n. 1 defamation, vilification, denigration, denunciation, deprecation, depreciation, belittlement, disparagement, derogation, disgrace, ill repute, dishonour, obloquy, shame, humiliation, mortification: His entire conversation is a perpetual libel on his acquaintances. 2 slander, calumny, lie, falsehood, prevarication, untruth, misrepresentation, aspersion, innuendo, insinuation, slur, smear, blot, stain, smirch, stigma: For years he suffered the libels circulated by his ex-mistress.

--v. 3 defame, vilify, denigrate, denounce, deprecate, depreciate, belittle, disparage, derogate, disgrace, dishonour, shame, humiliate, mortify: He claims to have been libelled by an article in the newspaper. 4 slander, calumniate, lie about, misrepresent, asperse, insinuate, slur, smear, malign, stain, blacken, discredit, besmirch, stigmatize, traduce, vilify, Rare vilipend, Colloq chiefly US bad-mouth: There is often a fine line between libelling a person and exercising freedom of speech.

liberal adj. 1 generous, bountiful, free, open-hearted, open, open-handed, bounteous, charitable, philanthropic, munificent, magnanimous, big, big-hearted, unstinting, unselfish, unsparing; lavish, abundant, ample, large, handsome, plentiful, copious: Lady Browning is a liberal benefactor of our cause. Thank you for your liberal contributions. 2 progressive, libertarian, reformist, humanistic, left (of centre), latitudinarian, non-partisan, unaligned or non-aligned, individualistic, South African verligte: The liberal voters found little to attract them in the latest election. 3 free, not literal, flexible, lenient, loose, broad, open, disinterested, impartial, dispassionate, fair, broad-minded, open-minded, unprejudiced, unbigoted, unjaundiced, unopinionated, tolerant: Judge Reid is known for his liberal interpretation of the law.

--n. 4 progressive, libertarian, reformer, progressivist, latitudinarian, independent, freethinker, leftist, left-winger, South African verligte: They think of themselves as liberals, not as conservatives.

liberalize

v. 1 broaden, widen, extend, expand, stretch, enlarge: The purpose of the law is to liberalize the functions of solicitors. 2 loosen, ease, slacken, relax, modify, change, moderate, soften: The police really ought to liberalize the parking regulations in this area.

liberate v. 1 (set) free, release, set at liberty, disenthral, emancipate, manumit, deliver, enfranchise, (let) loose, let go, let out, let off: When the enemy retreated, the army liberated the prisoners of war. After her divorce, she felt like a liberated woman. 2 steal, pilfer, purloin, take, appropriate: She was caught liberating some books from the library.

liberation

n. freeing, liberating, deliverance, emancipation, enfranchisement, enfranchising, delivery, rescue, rescuing, release, releasing, loosing, unfettering, unshackling, unchaining: The liberation of the prisoners occurred on May Day, 1945.

libertine n. 1 lecher, reprobate, profligate, rake, rakehell, rou,, debaucher, womanizer, seducer, fornicator, adulterer, debauchee, whoremonger, philanderer, Don Juan, Lothario, Casanova, Colloq wolf, lady-killer, (old) goat, dirty old man: He fancied himself a libertine, but women shunned him like the plague.

--adj. 2 licentious, lecherous, reprobate, profligate, rakish, rakehell, philandering, dissolute, immoral, degenerate, depraved, debauched, decadent, dirty, filthy, amoral, wanton, lewd, lascivious, prurient, lubricious or lubricous, salacious, Paphian, libidinous, ruttish, goatish, hircine, satyric(al), carnal, bestial, Colloq randy, Slang horny: A paragon of prudery to his family, Viscount Guarnier secretly led a life of wild, libertine abandon.

liberty n. 1 freedom, independence, self-determination, autonomy, self-rule, self-government, self-direction, sovereignty: People have always been willing to die for their liberty. 2 right, freedom, franchise, carte blanche, privilege, prerogative, licence, leave, permission, authorization: I was given the liberty to go where I pleased. 3 freedom, licence, initiative, exemption, exception, privilege: On a strict diet, she allowed herself no liberties whatever. 4 at liberty. free, uninhibited, unfettered, unconstrained, unrestricted, unrestrained, liberated: I was at liberty to do as I pleased. 5 take a liberty or the liberty or often liberties. be unrestrained or presumptuous or bold or uninhibited or overfamiliar or forward or aggressive or impudent or impertinent or audacious or improper; display or exercise boldness or impropriety or presumption or presumptuousness or indecorum or unseemliness or boldness or arrogance: She thought he was taking liberties in asking her to dance. I took the liberty of asking her to accompany me.

licence n. 1 leave, permission, liberty, authorization, authority, entitlement, dispensation, right, carte blanche, freedom, latitude, free choice, privilege, charter: Merely being eighteen does not give you licence to do exactly as you please. 2 permit, certificate, credential(s), paper(s): Bring along your driving licence. 3 disregard, deviation, departure, nonconformity, non-compliance, divergence: Such grammatical abnormalities are an exercise of poetic licence.

license v. 1 authorize, allow, permit, certify, sanction, approve, commission: The government once had the power to license books for publication. 2 certify, document, accredit, entitle, validate, enable, empower: Whoever licensed him to drive a car made a grave mistake.

lie° v. 1 prevaricate, fabricate, misrepresent, invent, commit perjury, perjure or forswear oneself, Colloq fib: If he says that I ate the last cake, he's lying.

--n. 2 falsehood, untruth, falsification, misrepresentation, fiction, invention, prevarication, fib, fabrication, Colloq story, cock-and-bull story, (tall) tale, whopper, US fish story, fish tale: His claim of having been attacked was found to be a lie.

lieý v. 1 recline, stretch out, be prostrate or recumbent or prone or supine: I'm going to lie down for a nap before dinner. 2 rest, repose; can be found, be, be situated: The book is lying on the table. The land lies on the Berkshire-Surrey border. 3

rest, repose, be, reside, dwell, abide, remain, belong: The responsibility lies with you. 4 press, burden, weigh, rest, be: The onus for the crime lies heavily on him. 5 lie low. hide, remain concealed or in hiding, keep out of sight, Colloq Brit lie doggo: You'd better lie low till the affair is forgotten.

--n. 6 lie of the land. state, status, condition, situation, atmosphere, mood, spirit, temper, character: You ought to determine the lie of the land before submitting your proposal.

life n. 1 existence, entity, being; sentience, viability: Who can imagine the possible forms of life in the universe? 2 existence, survival, living, subsistence, sustenance: Certain nutriments are necessary to life on earth. 3 existence, living, way of life, lifestyle: What kind of life does he lead? I enjoy country life. 4 existence, lifetime, time; duration: She did much during her short life. The life of a light-bulb depends on how often it is switched off and on. 5 person, mortal, human (being), individual, soul: The new drug might save millions of lives. 6 biography, autobiography, memoir(s), (life) story: He has written a life of Mozart. 7 soul, spirit, spark of life, vital spark, moving spirit, life-force, ,lan vital; lifeblood; animation, vitality, liveliness, sprightliness, vivacity, sparkle, dazzle, dash, ,lan, vigour, verve, zest, flavour, pungency, freshness, effervescence, brio, flair, vim, energy, exuberance, enthusiasm, Colloq pep, zing, get-up-and-go: We must breathe some life into these people. Eva is always the life of the party. 8 obsession, preoccupation, passion, fixation, compulsion: Model railways are his life. 9 bounce, resilience, spring, elasticity: There's no life in this old tennis ball.

lifeless adj. 1 dead: I stared at the lifeless body of the man. 2 unconscious, inanimate, insensate, inert, unmoving, dead, insensible: At the news of the accident, she sank, lifeless, to the floor. 3 dull, boring, tiresome, heavy, lacklustre, torpid, tedious, flat, stale, uninteresting, colourless, uninspiring, vapid, wooden: The production was a success apart from Ellen's lifeless performance as Portia. 4 barren, desert, desolate, bare, sterile, bleak, empty, uninhabited, unoccupied, dreary, waste: We gazed at the lifeless landscape of the moon.

lifelike adj. authentic, realistic, natural, true to life, real, faithful, graphic, vivid: She painted a very lifelike picture of her cat.

lift v. 1 raise, elevate; hoist, heave (up): She lifted her eyes to the heavens. The pallbearers lifted the coffin to their shoulders. 2 Often, lift up. exalt, raise, elevate, uplift, boost, upgrade, promote, advance; improve, ameliorate, better, dignify, enhance, ennoble, enshrine, deify, immortalize: His unusual talents lifted him up from the ranks of ordinary mortals. 3 discontinue, end, terminate, stop: The siege was lifted after six months. 4 withdraw, cancel, confiscate, take away, rescind, void, annul: They charged him with driving while intoxicated and lifted his licence. 5 rise, disappear, dissipate, vanish: When the fog lifted, I saw that we were about to run aground. 6 steal, appropriate, pilfer, pocket, thieve, take, purloin; plagiarize, copy, Colloq pinch, crib, liberate, Slang Brit nick, Old-fashioned half-inch: He went into the supermarket and lifted a bottle of scotch. This passage was lifted from my book in its entirety.

--n. 7 ride: She looked tired so I gave her a lift home. 8 US and Canadian elevator: Take the lift to the tenth floor. 9 encouragement, boost, stimulus, inducement, inspiration, reassurance, cheering up, Colloq shot in the arm: Winning first prize has given Susan the lift she needed to continue with her writing.

light° n. 1 illumination, brightness, daylight, lamplight, candlelight, firelight, gaslight, torchlight, starlight, moonlight, sunlight; gegenschein, counterglow: There is just enough light for me to read the label. 2 lamp, light-bulb, torch, beacon, lantern, candle, flare, headlight or headlamp, street-light or street lamp, US and Canadian flashlight: I saw a light in the distance. Someone turned off the lights. 3 radiance, radiation, luminescence, glare, gleam, glow, reflection, luminosity, shine, sparkle, scintillation, incandescence, phosphorescence, fluorescence: The light of the full moon shone through the window. 4 daybreak, dawn, sunrise, US sun-up: We leave at first light. 5 clarification, enlightenment, insight, understanding, elucidation, simplification, explanation: After an hour's talk with his lawyer, he finally saw the light and confessed. Can you shed a little light on this problem, Robyn? 6 window, window-pane: The west wall has three windows of six lights each. 7 match, lighter, spill, taper, fire, flame, ignition: Can you give me a light for my cigarette? 8 highlight: Note the chiaroscuro effect from the lights and shadows in the drawing. 9 bring to light. reveal, unearth, find, uncover, unveil, discover, expose, disclose, make known: A vital fact has recently been brought to light. 10 come to light. be revealed, be unearthed, be uncovered, be unveiled, be discovered, be exposed, be disclosed, appear, come out, turn up, transpire, develop, evolve, emerge: The truth about her parents has finally come to light. 11 Brit in the light of or US in light of. considering, in view of, in consideration of, taking into account, keeping or bearing in mind: In the light of his condition, he has decided to pull out of the competition. 12 shed or throw (some, a little) light on. explain, elucidate, simplify, clarify: Perhaps you could throw some light on the reason why she refuses to leave the house.

--adj. 13 (well-)illuminated, bright, alight, (well-)lit, (well-)lighted, shining, luminous, effulgent, brilliant, beaming, incandescent, phosphorescent, fluorescent: The lightest room in the house is the kitchen. 14 pale, light-hued: Put the light blue chair over here.

--v. 15 ignite, set alight, set or put a match to, kindle; burn, touch off, set fire to, fire: It's getting chilly, so you'd better light the fire. When the bomb was in place, they lit the fuse. 16 illuminate, light up, lighten, brighten: Take this candle to light your way to the bedroom. 17 turn on, switch on, put on: Light the lamps. 18 light up. lighten, brighten, cheer up, liven up: The moment she walked in, the whole room lit up. Her face lit up when she saw him.

lightý adj. 1 lightweight, portable: I bought some light garden furniture. 2 underweight, skinny, slight: Isn't Ted a bit light for his height? 3 faint, dim, obscure, indistinct, unclear, faded, imperceptible: There is a very light pencil mark on the paper. 4 faint, gentle, mild, slight, delicate, insignificant: A light breeze rippled the surface of the pool. 5 dainty, graceful, delicate, gentle, slight: He felt the light brush of her lips on his. 6 not weighty, frivolous, unimportant, insignificant, inconsequential, inconsiderable, trivial, trifling, evanescent, unsubstantial, slight, superficial: The party was a very light affair. 7 nimble, agile, active, swift, spry, lithe, sprightly, lightsome, light-footed, limber, lissom or lissome: When dancing, he may be light on his feet, but he's not very light on mine. 8 simple-minded, light-headed, scatterbrained, rattle-brained, bird-brained, feather-brained, hare-brained, flighty, giddy, dizzy, silly, inane, foolish, frivolous, empty-headed, vacant, vacuous, shallow, superficial: Featherstone is a bit too light in the head to be a good manager. 9 cheerful, happy, gay, sunny, merry, light-hearted, happy-go-lucky, easygoing, joyful, jovial, jolly: No‰l has written another light drawing-room comedy. 10 easy, not burdensome, endurable, bearable, tolerable, supportable, undemanding, effortless, untaxing, moderate: After my surgery, I was able to resume light duties at the office. The tax on such a small income is very light. You should take some light exercise every day. 11 amusing, entertaining, witty, diverting: The book hasn't much substance, but it makes good light reading. 12 make light of. dismiss, write off, shrug off; trivialize; ridicule: The teacher made light of my attempts to play the concerto.

--v. 13 alight, land, come or go down, descend, settle; deplane, disembark or debark, detrain, dismount: The bird was so tame it lighted on my finger. 14 light into. attack, assail, lambaste, assault, pounce or fall on or upon, beat, belabour; abuse, tongue-lash, harangue, upbraid, scold, berate, Colloq lace into; Slang clobber: He really lit into the challenger in the third round. Her mother lit into her for not doing her homework. 15 light on or upon. chance or happen or stumble or hit on or upon, come across, encounter, find, meet up with: She claimed she lit upon the formula when reading some ancient hieroglyphics.

lighten° v. 1 illuminate, brighten, light up: Opening the curtains would lighten up the room. 2 cheer (up), brighten, gladden, shine; smile: Her face lightened when he said he would be home for the holidays.

lightený v. disencumber, disburden, relieve, alleviate, reduce, lessen, mitigate: To lighten my load, I had left my suitcase at the hotel.

like° adj., adv. 1 similar (to), akin (to), allied (to), parallel (to or with), comparable (to or with), equivalent (to), equal (to), identical (to), cognate (with), analogous (to), corresponding (to), correspondent (to), close (to), homologous (to or with), of a piece (with), (much) the same (as), along the same lines (as), not unlike: We hold like opinions. Her opinions are like mine. Her pies are like the ones my mother used to bake. Problems like this give me a headache. Opposite charges attract, like charges repel. 2 in the mood for, disposed to: Do you feel like a walk in the park? He felt like going with me.

--adv. 3 as if, as though: He ran like mad.

--prep. 4 similar to, identical to or with: Her daughter looks like her. He makes her feel like a perfect fool. 5 in the same way as, in the manner of, similarly to: Sometimes she acts like a maniac. The jacket fits him like a glove. He laughed like a drain. He treats his mother like a child. 6 such as, for example, for instance, e.g., that is (to say), i.e., in other words, namely, to wit, viz.: Mistletoe grows on various trees, like oaks and birches.

--n. 7 match, equal, peer, fellow, opposite number, counterpart, twin: It is doubtful that we shall see his like again. 8 same or similar kind or sort or ilk or type or kidney or breed or mould or cast or strain: The book deals with music, literature, theatre, painting, and the like.

likeý   v. 1 be fond of, approve of, appreciate, be partial to, have a fondness or liking for, have a weakness for, take to, delight in, take pleasure in, derive or get pleasure from, delight in, find agreeable or congenial, feel attracted to, be or feel favourably impressed by, relish, love, adore, adulate, Colloq take a shine to, Slang go for, dig, get a kick out of, US get off on, groove on, get a bang or a charge out of: She likes a day at the seaside. He likes chocolate ice-cream. I think she likes me. 2 Usually, would or should like. prefer, want, wish, ask: I would like you to try to get to work on time in future. I'd like a drink.

--n. 3 Usually, likes. preference, partiality, predilection, liking: We all have our different likes and dislikes.

likeable adj. likeable, genial, amiable, congenial, pleasant, simpatico, agreeable, pleasing, attractive, appealing, nice, friendly, winning, charming, engaging, good-natured, winsome: He is likeable enough, but not my ideal son-in-law.

likelihood
n. probability, strong or distinct possibility, good chance: We must consider the likelihood that she will refuse to go.

likely adj. 1 probable, liable, expected: Three o'clock is the likely arrival time. 2 probable, conceivable, reasonable, credible, plausible, tenable: It seemed likely that Holmes would solve the case. 3 fitting, able, suitable, probable, seemly, meet, right, proper, qualified, acceptable, appropriate, apposite; favourite, odds-on, favoured, promising: Peters is the likely man for the job. 4 disposed to, apt to, inclined to, liable to: It's likely to rain. You're likely to think me mad, but I have my reasons for going.

--adv. 5 probably, undoubtedly, indubitably, no doubt, in all probability, Colloq like as not: You would most likely say that I am wrong. He will very likely win the election.

liken v. compare, equate, match, juxtapose: How can you liken him to Mahatma Gandhi?

likeness n. 1 similarity, resemblance, correspondence, analogy, agreement, parallelism: The artist has caught her likeness in the second painting. 2 copy, replica, facsimile, duplicate, reproduction, model, representation, portrait, painting, picture, drawing, photograph, sculpture,statue, statuette, image, simulacrum, icon or ikon: He sells miniature likenesses of the Eiffel Tower to tourists. 3 appearance, face, figure, image: The premier's likeness appears on posters throughout the country.

likewise adv. 1 similarly, in the same or like manner or way: Penny is sitting quietly and you should do likewise. 2 as well, too, also, furthermore, further, besides, in addition, moreover, to boot: There are many ways to take exercise and, likewise, many ways to avoid it.

liking n. 1 affinity, fondness, affection, love, partiality, bias, preference, bent, predilection, predisposition, inclination, appreciation, penchant; eye, appetite, soft spot, weakness: He has a liking for good claret and beautiful women. 2 taste, pleasure, fancy, preference: The chef will prepare the steak to your liking.

limbo n. in limbo. up in the air, consigned to oblivion, in abeyance, suspended, hanging (fire), neither here nor there, Colloq on hold, treading water, holding one's breath, US in a holding pattern, on the shelf, on the back burner: My career is in limbo till I learn the result of the interview.

limit n. 1 Sometimes, limits. extent, bound(s), end, limitation, check, curb, restriction, restraint: Is there no limit to how far you will go to get your own way? 2 Often, limits. border, edge, end, extent, boundary, bound(s), (boundary or border or partition) line, frontier, perimeter, periphery: That row of poplars marks the limit of the property to the east. 3 Often, limits. area, territory, confines, zone, region, quarter, district, precinct(s): Stay outside the three-mile limit. We have jurisdiction only within city limits. 4 the limit. a the end, the last straw, the straw that broke the camel's back, all (that) one can take, enough, too much, Colloq it: Your presumption is the absolute limit - you can't seriously expect me to lend you money. b outrage, joke, surprise, Colloq caution: Wasn't Nigel the limit in that hat!?

--v. 5 check, curb, bridle, restrict, restrain, hold in check: We must limit spending on arms. The shackles limited my movements. 6 restrict, confine, delimit, narrow, focus, guide, channel: Please limit your questions to the subject at hand. 7 set, define, determine, fix: The bank manager has limited my overdraft to half what it was.

limited adj. 1 circumscribed, restricted, fixed, predetermined; small, little, reduced, minimal: The theatre seats a limited number of people. She was awarded limited access to the children. 2 narrow, restricted, restrictive, meagre: Few original ideas presented themselves to his limited imagination.

limitless adj. unrestricted, unrestrained, unconfined, unbounded, boundless, extensive, vast, immense, enormous, unlimited, illimitable; interminable, unceasing, incessant, undefined, immeasurable, innumerable, numberless, countless, myriad, unending, perpetual, everlasting, eternal: Dickens possessed a seemingly limitless capacity for characterization. In the depths of space exist limitless numbers of stars. God's love is limitless.

limp° v. 1 hobble, stagger, totter, dodder, falter: He limped slowly along the road.

--n. 2 hobble, hobbling, stagger, staggering, totter, tottering, dodder, doddering, falter, faltering, claudication, Slang US gimp: He was easy to recognize at a distance because of his limp.

limpý adj. 1 flaccid, flabby, lax, slack, soft, drooping, relaxed, unstarched, unstiffened, soft, flexible, pliable, floppy, loose: The banners hung limp in the still, sultry air. 2 exhausted, tired, fatigued, worn out, spent, enervated, wasted, debilitated, weak, feeble, frail: He felt limp with exhaustion after the day's hiking. 3 weak, feeble, ineffective, ineffectual, flimsy, half-hearted, lukewarm, spineless, thewless, namby-pamby, Colloq wishy-washy Slang gutless: Having to visit her grandmother seemed a pretty limp excuse to me.

line° n. 1 mark, pencil-mark, pen-mark, rule, score; stroke, underline, underscore; diagonal, slash, virgule, shilling-mark, solidus, separatrix, oblique: The lines on this paper are very faint. Draw a red line under your name. A line separates the numerator from the denominator. 2 strip, belt, stripe, band, border, edge, edging: Do you see that line of trees? Put a heavy black line round the obituary notices. 3 wrinkle, crease, crinkle, furrow, crow's-foot: He has many lines on his face. The palmist said I have a long lifeline. 4 border, borderline, frontier, limit, boundary; demarcation, threshold: We crossed the line into Italy. I don't mind cooking dinner, but I draw the line at washing the dishes. There is a fine line between genius and insanity. 5 outline, silhouette, contour, figure, profile: The line of the skirt is too straight. 6 row, rank, column, file, train, parade, cortege or cortŠge, procession, Brit queue, Colloq Brit crocodile, tailback: I stood in line for six hours for tickets. The line wound all the way round the block. 7 field, area, activity, forte, speciality or chiefly US and Canadian also specialty, specialization, business, profession, occupation, (line of) work, job, vocation, pursuit, trade, calling, employment, Colloq racket, game: Saying that he was a computer programmer, he asked me my line. 8 note, word, card, postcard, letter, US postal card: Drop me a line when you get there. 9 course, direction, path, way, route, road, track, procedure, tack, policy, strategy, tactic(s), approach, plan: What line will our competitors take to win the account? I adopted the line of least resistance. 10 information, data, word, lead, clue, hint: Interpol is trying to get a line on where he might be found. 11 cord, string, thread, twine, yarn, strand, filament, rope, cable, hawser: The anchor line became entangled. Hang the clothes out on the line. 12 track, railway or US and Canadian also railroad: The accident on the southern line is delaying all the trains. 13 telephone, wire, cable: We have three lines at the office. He tried all day to get you on the line. 14 front (line), vanguard, formation: These men have been in the line for weeks. Captain Hughes was given command of a ship of the line. 15 ancestry, descent, stock, lineage, succession, family, parentage, extraction, heritage, genealogy: She comes from a long line of horsewomen. 16 assortment, stock, merchandise, offerings, goods, brand, make, type, kind, variety: What line of lawnmower do you distribute? 17 Often, lines. part, role, speech, script, words, Theatre US sides: I know my lines by heart for the school play. She has one line in the third act. 18 story, (sales) pitch, blarney, Colloq spiel, song and dance, Slang con: He handed her a line about being lonely, but she soon found out why. 19 in or into line. a aligned, in alignment, true, straight, in a row, plumb: Bring the balusters for the railing in line. b in agreement, in accord, in accordance, in conformity, in step, in harmony, US lined up: We are bringing the staffing requirements into line with the council's recommendations. c Usually, into line. under or in control: Were you able to bring the other board members into line? 20 in line for. ready for, short-listed for, on the short list for, up for, being considered for, under consideration for, a candidate for, in the running for: We all think she's in line for a promotion.

--v. 21 rule, inscribe, score, underline, underscore: If you use lined paper, your writing wouldn't be so wavy. 22 edge, border, fringe: Millions lined the streets for the parade. 23 line up. a organize, prepare, ready, assemble, set up, put or set in place, develop, formulate, arrange (for), coordinate: Everything is all lined up for the big event. b arrange for, secure, get (hold of), obtain, contract for; uncover, dig up, acquire, engage, hire, sign (up), contract with, hire, employ:

We lined up an excellent after-dinner speaker. c queue (up), form a line, get in line, form ranks or columns: Hundreds of us lined up for meals three times a day. d align, array, straighten, order: These paragraphs should line up. Line up the troops for inspection at 0600.

lineý v. 1 interline, cover, face; ceil: The coat is lined with fur. 2 line one's pockets. accept bribes, graft, US sell out, Colloq US be on the take: He was secretly lining his pockets during his years on the council.

lineage n. 1 extraction, ancestry, family tree, pedigree, descent, stock, bloodline, parentage, genealogy: She has spent a lot of time tracing the lineage of the village's families. 2 forebears, forefathers, foremothers, family, people, clan; descendants, succession, progeny, offspring: Does Debrett list his lineage? Peerages were confined to the lineage of the person ennobled.

linen n. Often, linens. bedclothes, bed linen(s), sheets and pillowcases; table linen(s), napery, tablecloths and napkins; bath linen(s), towels and wash-cloths: The soiled linen is sent to the laundry.

linger v. 1 Sometimes, linger on. stay (behind), remain, tarry, loiter, persist, hang on, endure, persevere, survive, Colloq hang or stick about or around: The smell of tobacco lingered for hours after he had gone. He lingered on for a day, then died from his wounds. 2 pause, dawdle, dally, lag, idle: She lingered for a moment at the jeweller's window. 3 Often, linger on or over. dwell on, elaborate, harp on, labour: I shall not linger over the details of the crime. 4 procrastinate, dither, shilly-shally, temporize: You must stop lingering and decide today.

lingering adj. 1 long, persistent, protracted, remaining: I was left with the lingering feeling that I had forgotten to tell her something. 2 slow, long-drawn-out, gradual: She died a lingering, painful death.

lingo n. jargon, argot, cant, patois, pidgin, Creole, parlance, vernacular, dialect, idiom, language, talk, speech; gobbledegook or gobbledygook, gibberish, mumbo-jumbo: In medical lingo, he is suffering from coryza - in other words, a cold.

link n. 1 tie, bond, coupling, connector, vinculum; element, constituent, component: A chain is no stronger than its weakest link. 2 connection, tie-up, tie-in, relation, relationship, association, affiliation, interdependence: What is the link between her arrival and his sudden departure? He thinks he's identified the missing link.

--v. 3 Often, link up. couple, join, fasten (together), unite; concatenate: They linked arms to form a barrier. 4 connect, tie (up or in or together), associate, relate, identify with: I cannot help feeling that this murder links up with the others.

liquid n. 1 fluid, liquor, juice, solution: Mixing these two liquids could be dangerous.

--adj. 2 fluid, flowing, running, runny, fluent, liquefied, watery, molten, melted: Her hair was the colour of liquid gold. 3 bright, shining, brilliant, clear, transparent, translucent, limpid: The surface of the lake gleamed like liquid sunshine. 4 convertible; solvent, profitable: Government bonds are regarded as liquid assets. The company remains liquid despite losses.

liquor n. 1 spirits, alcohol, (strong) drink, intoxicants, John Barleycorn, schnapps, whisky or US and Irish whiskey, demon rum, moonshine, US white lightning, white mule; Colloq booze, pick-me-up, hard stuff, fire-water, juice, mother's ruin (= 'gin'), US Kickapoo mountain joy juice; Slang rot-gut, Chiefly US and Canadian hooch or hootch, US sauce, red-eye, mountain dew: I don't drink liquor, but I will have some tea. 2 liquid, fluid, extract, broth, stock, distillate, concentrate, infusion: After poaching the fish, pour off the liquor and save it.

list° n. 1 listing, roster, roll, rota, catalogue, directory, register, index, record, schedule, muster, slate, beadroll, laundry list, shopping list, inventory, file, tabulation; bibliography, liber veritatis, catalogue raisonn,: Select what you need from this list.

--v. 2 catalogue, register, index, record, note, itemize, enumerate, schedule, tabulate, chronicle, book, enter, enrol: Those eligible to vote are listed in this computer printout.

listý v. 1 lean (over), tilt, slant, heel (over), tip, careen, cant, incline: The ship suddenly listed to starboard and I was thrown onto the deck.

--n. 2 lean, tilt, slant, heel, tip, cant, slope, inclination: The leak caused a severe list to port.

listen v. 1 hear, pay attention (to), attend, lend an ear (to), prick up one's ears, keep one's ears open, Archaic hark (to), hearken or US also harken (to): I was listening to the radio when you phoned. 2 obey, heed, mind, pay attention (to), do as one is told: You wouldn't be in this trouble if you'd listened to me.

listless adj. sluggish, lethargic, weary, weak, enervated, spent, languid, lifeless, heavy, phlegmatic, unemotional, impassive; unenthusiastic, indifferent, apathetic, unconcerned, lukewarm, tepid, cool, uncaring, insouciant; pococurante, Laodicean: She was just over an illness and feeling quite listless.

litany n. 1 prayer, invocation, supplication, petition: The monks trudged through the streets, chanting their litany. 2 recitation, recital, enumeration, listing, list, cataloguing, catalogue, inventorying, inventory: We had to sit through an interminable litany of the names of contributors to the fund.

literal adj. 1 word-for-word, verbatim, line-for-line, letter-for-letter, literatim, exact, precise, faithful, strict: In a literal translation the spirit of the original is often lost. 2 denotative, etymological, semantic, dictionary, lexical, basic, essential, pure, simple, simplistic, real, objective, true, genuine, bona fide, unvarnished, unadulterated, unembellished, simple-minded, uncomplicated, unbiased, unprejudiced, Colloq honest-to-goodness, honest-to-God: 'Female parent' may be the literal definition of mother, but it doesn't convey the emotional and connotative senses of the word. 3 prosaic, matter-of-fact, colourless, dull, down-to-earth, literal-minded, unimaginative, humdrum, boring, tedious: His literal approach to everything spoils the conversation for those who have any spirit.

literally adv. 1 word for word, verbatim, line for line, letter for letter, literatim, faithfully, strictly, exactly, precisely, closely; thus, sic: Generally cordon sanitaire means 'buffer zone', but literally it means 'sanitary line'. 2 actually, truly, in fact, really: When I said he'd spilled the beans, I meant it figuratively, not literally.

literary adj. 1 erudite, well-read, cultured, learned, bookish, scholarly, lettered, cultivated, refined, educated; literate: Her latest book has been scorned by the literary ,lite. 2 written, formal, scholarly, pedantic, learned, academic, scholastic, school-marmish: His writing contains literary words rarely heard in ordinary conversation.

literature

n. 1 writing(s), letters, belles-lettres, creative writing(s): These works are representative of the literature of the period. 2 information, facts, data, publicity; propaganda; brochures, pamphlets, hand-outs, handbills, leaflets, circulars: As a member, you will be sent literature about future events. They print subversive literature.

litigant n. litigator, party, plaintiff, appellant, suitor, petitioner, suer, defendant, appellee, accused: The judge suggested that the litigants settle out of court.

litigation

n. lawsuit, suit, action, case, legal remedy: The costs of litigation are extremely high.

litter n. 1 rubbish, debris, refuse, fragments, odds and ends, US and Canadian trash, Colloq junk: The room was strewn with food wrappers, cigarette butts, and other litter. 2 brood, issue, offspring, young: Note the differences in the young of the same litter. 3 stretcher, palanquin or palankeen, sedan chair: The potentate was borne in on a litter carried by four huge Nubians.

--v. 4 clutter, strew, scatter: The streets were littered with bricks and broken glass.

little adj. 1 small, short, slight, tiny, minute, diminutive, miniature, mini, baby, doll-sized, undersized, dwarf, midget, pygmy, elfin, toy, bantam, petite, wee, infinitesimal, minuscule, Lilliputian, teeny, teeny-weeny, teensy-weensy, itty-bitty, itsy-bitsy, microscopic: I live in a little house.

A little red-faced man suddenly appeared. They sat drinking coffee out of little white cups. 2 young, small, youthful: You are asking a lot from a little boy. 3 small, sparse, skimpy, meagre, scant, insufficient, inadequate, not enough, scanty, barely or hardly any: A little crowd gathered round us. You will get little help from her. There's too little milk for us to make custard. 4 short, brief: We had only a little time together before he was sent overseas. 5 trifling, trivial, small, minor, petty, paltry, insignificant, inconsiderable, unimportant, inconsequential, negligible: He seemed to consider my safety of little importance. He does a little business on the side. You are too concerned about little things. 6 small(-minded), petty, picayune, mean, ungenerous, illiberal, cheap, narrow(-minded), unimaginative, shallow: What is going on in his cunning little brain?

--adv. 7 seldom, rarely, hardly ever, scarcely: I travel very little these days. 8 (but or only) slightly, barely, hardly, scarcely, no, not any, not much: She arrived with little more than what she was wearing. 9 scarcely, hardly: Little does he care whether he wins his wager.

--pron. 10 bit, dab, dollop, particle, spoonful, taste, thimbleful, speck, spot, scrap, crumb, particle, Colloq smidgen or smidgin: If you could spare me a little of your time, I'd be grateful.

live adj. 1 living, breathing, animate, viable, existent; material, physical, tangible, real, actual, palpable: She said she'd rather be a live beggar than a dead countess. My cat brought me a live mouse into the house the other day. 2 energetic, lively, spirited, vigorous, active, dynamic, busy; current, contemporary: Our new advertising agency seems to have some live ideas. The other party made nuclear disarmament a live issue in the election. 3 burning, glowing, flaming, alight, red-hot, white-hot: A live coal popped out of the grate onto the carpet. 4 loaded, explosive, unexploded, combustible: Builders have dug up a live bomb in London. 5 charged, electrified: Don't touch a live wire or you'll get a shock.

--v. 6 breathe, exist; function: There has never lived a more gifted scholar. She lives as a recluse. 7 survive, persist, last, persevere, endure; spend, continue, live out, complete, end, conclude, finish: He lived out his days happily in Torquay. 8 reside, dwell, be; abide, stay, remain, lodge, room: He normally lives in Acton, but at the moment he's living with his mother in Kent. 9 subsist, get along, survive, fare: Many old-age pensioners complain that they have barely enough to live on.

lively adj. 1 full of life, vigorous, energetic, vivacious, spirited, brisk, spry, active, animated, frisky, sprightly, agile, nimble, perky, chirpy, bouncy, buoyant, gay, cheery, cheerful, Colloq chipper, full of pep, peppy: His speech sparked off a lively discussion. The carriage was drawn by a pair of lively horses. 2 strong, intense, vivid, keen, pointed, eager, energetic, active: She takes a lively interest in current affairs. 3 active, busy, bustling, stirring, eventful, swarming, teeming; astir, alive: We joined the lively crowd at the antiques fair. The streets near the square were lively with people rushing to and fro. 4 vivid, bright, gay, cheerful, glowing, brilliant, gorgeous, rich: Some lively colours in the upholstery and curtains would brighten up the sitting-room.

liven v. Often, liven up. 1 brighten, cheer, enliven, perk up: You need some fresh paint to liven up the outside of the house. 2 invigorate, stimulate, energize, inspirit, activate, animate, fire, stir (up), put (some) life into, enliven, perk up, Colloq pep up: We need a good dance band to liven up the place in the evenings.

12.4 load...

=-

load n. 1 weight, burden; onus, pressure, encumbrance, millstone, cross, albatross, responsibility, care, anxiety, worry, trouble: He put down his load and rested. Seeing her safe is a load off my mind. 2 shipment, consignment, cargo, weight: That load is too heavy for the van.

--v. 3 pack, pile, stack, heap, fill, lade, stuff, cram, jam, squeeze: Load all the boxes you can in the truck. 4 Often, load down. weigh down, burden, encumber, saddle with, overwhelm: I was loaded down with too many responsibilities.

loaded adj. 1 overloaded, overwhelmed, burdened, laden, weighted (down), filled (up), chock-full, chock-a-block, stuffed, jammed, packed, crowded, brimming, brim-full, crammed: A fully loaded lorry has overturned near exit 5. The train was loaded with commuters. 2 charged, primed, ready: Be careful - the gun is loaded. 3 charged, tricky, manipulative, insidious, prejudiced, prejudicial, trap, devious: 'When did you stop beating your wife?' is what anybody would call a loaded question. 4 rich, wealthy, affluent, moneyed, well-to-do, well off, Colloq flush, well-heeled , US in the chips, Slang rolling in it: I hear that her new husband is really loaded. 5 drunk: He was loaded before he even went to the party.

loaf° n. 1 brick, cake, block, chunk; lump, cube: We could do with an extra loaf of bread. 2 head, sense, brains, Colloq noggin, noodle, block, bean, Brit noddle, Slang Brit chump: Use your loaf!

loafý v. 1 lounge (about or around), loiter, idle, laze, lie about or around, take it easy, vegetate, watch the grass grow, Colloq US lallygag or lollygag, Slang Brit skive, Military scrimshank, US goof off, US military gold-brick, Taboo slang US fuck off, fuck the dog: There are always some youngsters loafing about in the park. 2 loaf away. waste, fritter away, idle away: He loafs away all his time watching the telly.

loafer n. idler, layabout, wastrel, shirker, flƒneur, ne'er-do-well, tramp, vagrant, Old-fashioned lounge lizard, slugabed, Colloq lazybones, Brit drone, US bum, (ski or tennis or surf) bum, Slang Brit skiver, Military scrimshanker, US military gold brick or gold-bricker, Taboo slang US fuck-off: Why did she marry that good-for-nothing loafer?

loan n. 1 advance, allowance, credit, accommodation: We needed a loan to pay for Melissa's education.

--v. 2 lend, advance, allow, credit: The bank loaned us enough money to buy a car.

loath adj. loth, unwilling, reluctant, averse, disinclined, indisposed: I was loath to tell my wife where I had been.

loathe v. detest, hate, despise, abhor, abominate, execrate, shrink or recoil from, shudder at: I love broccoli but loathe cauliflower.

loathing n. hatred, abhorrence, aversion, hate, odium, detestation, antipathy, repugnance, horror, revulsion: She treated her critics with loathing.

loathsome adj. detestable, abhorrent, odious, hateful, disgusting, execrable, abominable, despicable, contemptible, noisome, offensive, horrible, repulsive, repugnant, nauseating, sickening, revolting, nasty, vile: Without warning, the loathsome beast attacked me. She died shortly of a loathsome disease.

lob v. 1 loft, toss, pitch, shy, heave, fling, chuck, hurl, throw: She lobbed the ball high in the air over the net.

--n. 2 toss, throw, bowl, pitch, hit, US fly: I misjudged the slow lob and swung too soon.

lobby n. 1 foyer, entrance-hall, vestibule, entry, US entry-way; reception (room or area), waiting-room, corridor, hall, hallway: We were to meet in the main lobby of the arts centre. 2 special-interest group, pressure group, lobbyist: A powerful lobby has been formed to influence farming legislation.

--v. 3 (bring) pressure (to bear), (exert) influence, persuade, pull strings or wires, put one's weight behind, sway, press, push, promote, urge, Brit pressurize: Environmentalists are lobbying for a ban on fluorocarbons.

local adj. 1 neighbourhood, neighbouring, nearby, close by; adjoining: She works for a local butcher. The law affects only the local area. 2 provincial, regional, district, state, county, shire, municipal, city, town, village, neighbourhood; restricted, limited, specific, particular, peculiar: Clean water is a general, not a local problem.

--n. 3 resident, native, townsman, townswoman, townsperson: The locals all voted against the proposition. 4 neighbourhood pub: He stopped in at his local on the way home.

locale n. site, location, spot, place, setting, venue, neighbourhood, situation, locality: We moved the locale of the film to Spain.

locate v. 1 situate, place, site, position, set (up), fix, pinpoint, establish, settle, base: Where is your office located? We located our warehouse close to the railway. 2 find, come across, discover, unearth, lay or put or get one's hand(s) or finger(s) on, chance or hit upon, turn up, track down: Where can I locate a good piano player?

location n. 1 site, place, locale, spot, setting, situation, position: We have just moved to a new location. 2 finding, discovery, laying or putting or getting one's hand(s) or finger(s) on, unearthing, turning up, tracking down: The location of the other half of the coin became an obsession with him.

lock° n. 1 padlock, hasp, bolt, latch, bar, hook, clasp, catch: Why put a lock on the door if there is nothing worth stealing inside? 2 hold; control, power, sway, authority, command, supervision: The bureau has a complete lock on the issue of licences.

--v. 3 Often, lock up. padlock, bolt, latch, bar, secure, seal: Lock the doors before leaving for the day. 4 clasp, entangle, engage, join, entwine, close; clutch, grasp, grapple: For six hours the knights were locked in battle. 5 lock away. See lock up or away, below. 6 lock in. a secure, retain, fix, plant, implant, stabilize: What does the maker mean by 'the flavour is locked in'? b commit, oblige, constrain, bind: We are locked in to the promises we made to our employees. c lock up or away, confine, restrain, coop up: You'd better lock in the dogs before you leave. 7 lock on. fix on or upon, track, follow, pursue, keep track of: Our sights are locked on the target. 8 lock out. exclude, shut out, close out, keep out, bar, debar: During the strike, the management locked out all employees. 9 lock up or away. confine, jail or Brit also gaol, imprison, coop up, incarcerate, detain, impound, put behind bars, restrict, cage: They threatened to lock him up and throw away the key.

locký n. tress, curl, ringlet: As a love token, she sent him a lock of her hair.

lodge n. 1 hunting-lodge, cabin, chalet, cottage, house; gatehouse, shelter, hut: I have a small lodge in the mountains. 2 branch, chapter: He belongs to the Manchester lodge of the Masons.

--v. 3 reside, live, dwell, abide, stay, stop, room, occupy rooms: For years they lodged together at 221B Baker Street. 4 accommodate, board, put up, billet, quarter, house, take in; shelter, harbour: Mrs Mulrooney is lodging a student in her spare room. Her house cannot lodge more than three. 5 stick, wedge, catch, deposit, become stuck or wedged or fixed or caught or deposited, embed itself, become embedded: I've got an apple pip lodged in one of my back teeth. 6 register, enter, record, submit, bring forward, set forth or out, file: We lodged a complaint against our neighbours because of the noise.

lodging n. Often, lodgings. accommodation(s), shelter, quarters, rooms, apartment, housing, house, dwelling, dwelling-place, residence: I found a night's lodging in Cranberry Street.

lofty adj. 1 tall, high, elevated, towering, soaring: The lofty skyscrapers of New York always impress visitors on first sight. 2 exalted, majestic, imposing, grand, magnificent, noble, regal, imperial, blue-blooded, thoroughbred, aristocratic, magisterial, august, stately, venerable, distinguished, dignified, elevated, eminent, celebrated, honoured, honourable, respected, renowned, famous, prominent, illustrious, notable, leading, pre-eminent, sublime, immortal: He is heir to one of England's loftiest peerages. 3 elevated, honourable, superior, exalted, noble: Public servants should adhere to lofty principles of morality. 4 grand, grandiose, haughty, arrogant, disdainful, condescending, contemptuous, scornful, supercilious, contumelious, patronizing, superior, overweening, vainglorious, pompous, snobbish, Colloq high and mighty, snooty, uppity, Brit uppish, Slang snotty, Brit toffee-nosed: Her lofty attitude made her unpopular with the voters.

logic n. 1 reasoning, deduction, dialectics, ratiocination, inferential or scientific reasoning: Mill defined logic as the science of proof, or evidence. 2 (good or common) sense, sound judgement, wisdom, presence of mind: According to Disraeli, England was not governed by logic. 3 reasonableness, intelligence, judiciousness, practicality, rationality: Your logic is valid, but you are forgetting the human factor.

logical adj. 1 syllogistic(al), inferential, deductive, inductive: Her argument follows basic logical criteria. 2 reasonable, plausible, sensible, sound, valid, intelligent, judicious, practical, rational, wise, proper: Is it logical to assume that people will believe you? 3 well-organized, sound, coherent, consistent, sensible, rational, reasonable, well-reasoned, well-thought-out: The proposal is set forth in a logical fashion, from premise to conclusion.

lonely adj. 1 single, solitary, sole, lone, one; unaccompanied, alone: The lonely survivor of the crash struggled out of the jungle. She walked for miles, lonely and desolate. 2 desolate, uninhabited, deserted, barren: Robinson Crusoe's world was a lonely place. 3 friendless, lonesome, abandoned, outcast, forsaken; solo, hermit-like, eremitic(al), reclusive, secluded, retiring, withdrawn, unsocial: He felt lonely in the strange city. She leads a lonely existence with only her cat for company.

lonesome adj. 1 alone, forsaken, friendless, rejected, unpopular, unwelcome, outcast, deserted, abandoned, estranged: She was terribly lonesome and homesick before meeting Patrick. 2 See lonely, 2.

long° adj. 1 extensive, extended, elongate(d), large, great, big: That is a very long snake! 2 lengthy, prolonged, protracted; extensive, extended, sustained: I waited for a long time.

longý v. wish, crave, want, yearn, desire, hunger, fancy, covet, dream of, hanker, eat one's heart out: I am longing for a good roast beef dinner. I long to see you once more.

longing n. craving, wish, yearning, hunger, fancy, desire, hankering, Colloq yen: I have a longing to be home again.

look v. 1 Usually, look at. see, observe, consider, contemplate, regard, view, survey, inspect, scrutinize, study, scan; pay attention, attend, notice, watch, witness; Literary behold, Slang US eyeball: Look at what you've done! Look at the way I do it. 2 seem (to be), appear (to be): That looks like a useful utensil. You certainly look healthy. 3 face, front (on), overlook, look out on: The house looks over the sea at the back. 4 look after. care for, take care of, be responsible for, attend, mind, watch, serve, wait on, nurse, protect: Rose will look after your house while you're away. I need someone to look after me. 5 look down on or upon or US at. disdain, despise, contemn, scorn, disparage, derogate, spurn, sneer, misprize, Colloq turn one's nose up at, look down one's nose at: They look down on anyone with less money. 6 look for. a seek, demand, require: We aren't looking for the same things in a person. b hunt for, forage for, search for: I am looking for a cup to match my set. c expect, hope, anticipate, count on, reckon on: I am looking for a better school report next term. 7 look forward to. a anticipate, await, wait for: I am looking forward to Sunday's match. b expect, count or rely on or upon: We were looking forward to your help. 8 look into. examine, study, investigate, inspect, delve into, dig into, probe, scrutinize, explore, go into, research, check (out), check into: I shall have to look into the matter. 9 look out. be careful, be alert, be vigilant, be on the qui vive, be watchful, watch out, beware, pay attention, be on guard: If you don't look out, you'll bang your head. 10 look over. look at, examine, read, scan, study, check (out or over), Slang US eyeball: I haven't had a chance to look over the material you gave me. 11 look up. a seek, search for, hunt for, try to find, track or run down: I meant to look up the etymology of 'picnic'. b get in touch with, (tele)phone, ring (up), visit, call on, call up, look or drop in on, go to see: I looked up a friend of mine when I was in Chicago. c improve, get better, pick up, show improvement, progress, gain, make headway or progress: He was pleased to see that business was looking up. 12 look up to. admire, regard highly, respect, esteem, honour, revere, extol, worship, idolize, venerate: The boy really looks up to you.

--n. 13 gaze, glance: Her look was inviting. He gave me a dirty look. Let me have a look at you. 14 looks, appearance, aspect, bearing, manner, air, demeanour; expression, countenance, face, mien: I just didn't like the look of the man. He had a nasty look.

look-alike

n. twin, double, exact or perfect likeness or match, clone, Colloq spitting image or spit and image; doppelg„nger; Slang (dead) ringer: She is such a perfect look-alike of Princess Di's that people follow her in the street.

lookout n. 1 guard, sentry, sentinel, watchman: The lookout reported that the fort was surrounded by Cochise's braves. 2 alert, qui vive; guard, watch: Be on the lookout for shoplifters. 3 responsibility, worry, concern, problem, difficulty, Colloq headache: How he wastes his free time is his lookout, how he spends his working time is ours.

loom   v. 1 appear, emerge, take shape or form, materialize, surface, arise: A huge figure loomed out of the fog. 2 menace, impend, threaten, overshadow, tower, dominate, hang or hover over: Count Dracula's dark castle loomed over us. 3 loom large. dominate, predominate, play a big or an important role or part: Sales to children loom large in your predictions.

loop   n. 1 hoop, noose, ring, circle, bow, eye, eyelet, coil, whorl, Nautical bend: I caught my toe in a loop of rope and fell on the deck.

--v. 2 twist, coil, wind, tie, circle, curl, entwine, turn, ring, Nautical bend: Loop the thread round the crochet hook and pull it through.

loophole n. outlet, way out, means of escape, escape, subterfuge, pretext, evasion, quibble, Colloq dodge: They couldn't prosecute him because he found a loophole in the law.

loose   adj. 1 unattached, unconnected, disconnected, detached, free, unsecured, unfastened, movable: I have a loose tooth. The vacuum cleaner will pick up any loose bits. 2 unconfined, untied, unfettered, released, freed, unshackled, unchained; free, at liberty, at large, on the loose, untrammelled: In Pamplona, they allow loose bulls to run through the streets to the arena. 3 unconfining, free-flowing, flowing, baggy, slack, hanging: That skirt is loose on you since you lost weight. 4 disordered, disorganized, unbound, untied, messy; strewn or spread or tossed or thrown about or around, scattered (about or around), in disorder, in disarray, dispersed: On the desk was a loose pile of papers. 5 rambling, disconnected, unstructured, unconnected, discontinuous, non-specific, unspecific, indefinite, imprecise, inexact, inaccurate, free, broad, rough, offhand, casual, careless, untidy, sloppy, slapdash, general, vague: He gave a loose description of his assailant. A loose translation does not convey the flavour of the original. 6 lax, relaxed, negligent, careless, sloppy: Discipline has been quite loose around here lately. 7 wanton, dissolute, debauched, immoral, promiscuous, abandoned, fast, libertine, profligate, licentious, lewd, perverted, corrupt: She was quickly gaining a reputation for being a loose woman.

--adv. 8 break loose. escape, flee: The boy broke loose from my grasp and ran to greet his mother. 9 hang or stay loose. relax, stay or keep calm or cool, cool off or down, sit back, take it easy: Hang loose and everything will be all right. 10 let or set or turn loose. discharge, let go (with); emit, give out (with), fire: They let him loose after questioning. She let loose a stream of invective like a fishwife.

--v. 11 let go, (set) free, release, let or set or turn loose; liberate, deliver: Ten thousand balloons were loosed in the celebration. 12 untie, undo, unfasten, let go, disengage, relax, ease, loosen, slacken;, cast off: Loose these ropes, please. 13 let go, let fly, fire, discharge, shoot, unleash, deliver: We loosed a devastating barrage at the enemy.

loosen v. 1 loose; undo, unfasten, unhook, unbutton, unlace, untie, unbind, unbuckle; unscrew: Quick! Loosen his collar! 2 weaken, detach, separate, sever, break or cut (apart): The vibration has loosened the rivets.

loot n. 1 booty, spoils, plunder, prize, haul, Slang swag, boodle: They divided up the loot amongst the gang.

--v. 2 plunder, sack, ransack, rob, pillage, despoil, raid, ravage, maraud, Rare depredate: The soldiers looted every house in the city.

lop v. Often, lop off. chop off, trim, top, head, crop, prune, dock, clip, trim, snip off, shear off, cut off, pare, shorten, hack off, amputate: Lop the lower branches off close to the trunk.

lopsided adj. 1 uneven, askew, one-sided, awry, unsymmetrical, asymmetrical, unequal, crooked, unbalanced, irregular, Colloq cock-eyed: That lopsided bookcase is the sole product of Ed's cabinet-making class. 2 uneven, unequal, one-sided, biased, disproportionate, unfair, warped, twisted: Four against two - I'd call that lopsided, wouldn't you?

lord n. 1 master, monarch, ruler, sovereign: Harry considers himself lord of all he surveys. 2 noble, nobleman, peer, aristocrat; earl, duke, count, viscount, baron: He was made a lord in recognition of his achievements. 3 The or Our Lord. God, the Almighty, God Almighty, the Creator, the Supreme Being, Christ, Jesus, Jehovah: The Lord moves in mysterious ways his miracles to perform.

--v. lord it over. domineer, swagger, be overbearing, Colloq boss (around), act big, pull rank: He lords it over everyone in the office.

lore n. 1 folklore, beliefs, culture, tradition(s), mythology, myths, mythos, ethos, teaching(s), doctrine, wisdom: According to their lore, the American Indians go to the Happy Hunting Ground when they die. 2 knowledge, learning, erudition: He was acquainted with medical lore through his reading.

lose v. 1 mislay, misplace, displace, part with; suffer the loss of, be deprived of: I lost my pen. He lost a leg in the war. 2 forfeit, yield: He says he lost the rent money gambling. 3 give up, yield, capitulate, admit defeat, succumb, bow to, be defeated or conquered, suffer defeat, be beaten or overcome or worsted or bested, Colloq lose out: It was a good game, but we lost. 4 waste, let slip, squander, dissipate, fritter or trifle away, run out of; consume, use (up), expend, spend: We lost a lot of time waiting for him to decide. 5 elude, evade, escape, throw or shake off, give the slip: I managed to lose the sinister-looking man who was shadowing me.

loser n. also-ran, misfit, failure, fiasco, non-starter, Colloq flop, dud, washout, bummer, lead balloon, lemon, born loser, Brit damp squib, Brit and Australian no-hoper, US clinker, nebbish, schlemiel or schlemihl or shlemiel, schlimazel or shlimazel or shlimazl, schnook, sad sack: Dick is a real loser and will never amount to anything. His idea for a company newsletter was a loser.

loss n. 1 deprivation, bereavement, privation, denial, sacrifice, forfeiture, disappearance: We must be constantly vigilant to watch for any loss of our liberty. 2 diminution, erosion, reduction, impoverishment, depletion, shrinkage: New policies are in place to stem the loss of parkland. 3 disadvantage, detriment, harm, impairment, injury, damage: I don't regard Wentworth's resignation as any great loss. 4 waste, wastage, wasting, squandering: The loss of time was owing to a train delay. 5 defeat, set-back, disadvantage, disappointment, failure, downfall, collapse, breakdown, ruin; drubbing, trouncing: His loss is my gain. 6 Often, losses. debit(s), liability (liabilities), negative cash flow: The company wrote off the losses. 7 Often, losses. death, dying, passing, demise, destruction, extermination, extinction, annihilation: The loss from disease was overwhelming. What losses did they suffer in the battle?

lost adj. 1 gone, departed, vanished, strayed; missing, mislaid, misplaced, irrecoverable: They found my lost dog. The airline told me that my bag was lost. 2 wasted, misspent, gone by the board, squandered, down the drain, spent, exhausted, Colloq out of the window: The new arrangement is resulting in a lot of time lost. I watched another lost opportunity slip by. 3 confused, baffled, perplexed, puzzled, mystified, bewildered, confounded, adrift, helpless, disoriented, at sea, astray: I am totally lost when it comes to high finance. 4 forgotten, bygone, extinct, past, obsolete, vanished, buried: Good writing needn't be a lost art. 5 dead, extinct, departed, fallen, late: We held a memorial service for our lost comrades. 6 destroyed, demolished, devastated, ruined, wrecked, irreparable, unsalvageable, irreclaimable, irremediable: After the expos, in the newspaper, his name was consigned to the limbo of lost reputations. 7 damned, cursed, accursed, abandoned, corrupt, fallen, wanton, unchaste, dissolute: Unrepentant sinners are lost souls. 8 hopeless, distraught, distracted, desperate, frantic, frenzied: He had the lost look of a cornered fugitive.

lot n. 1 collection, batch, consignment, assortment, group, portion, set, quantity, grouping, apportionment: They are expecting a new lot of furniture this afternoon. 2 luck, fortune, destiny, fate, kismet, plight, doom, end: It seems to be my lot to stay in the same place all my life. 3 lottery, drawing, raffle, drawing lots or straws: The winner will be decided by lot. 4 share, portion, division, interest, part, allotment, assignment, apportionment, ration, allowance: Marguerite was bequeathed the house, while my lot included the paintings. 5 a lot or lots. a a good or great deal: You have a lot of nerve! I'd give a lot to be able to paint like you. He got into a lot of trouble. b much, loads or a load, mountains or a mountain, tons or a ton, barrels or a barrel, stacks or a stack, piles or a pile, heaps or a heap, masses or a mass, oceans , Colloq oodles, scads, US gobs: She has lots of money. c many, myriad, numerous, countless, reams, infinite or an infinity, quantities or a quantity, enormous numbers or an enormous number, Colloq oodles, scads, loads, tons, masses,: There are lots of fish in the sea. 6 the lot. everything, Colloq the whole kit and caboodle, all: I'll give you a fiver for the lot.

lotion   n. cream, liniment, balm, salve, ointment, embrocation, unguent, pomade: The doctor said to rub in some of this lotion twice a day.

lottery   n. raffle, sweepstake, drawing, pool, Brit tombola: I've never known anyone who won anything in the national lottery.

loud   adj. 1 deafening, ear-splitting, booming, blaring, stentorian, thundering, thunderous, sonorous, noisy, clamorous, piercing, fortissimo: The hi-fi is so loud I can't hear myself think. A loud crash came from the kitchen. 2 tawdry, garish, flashy, gaudy, tasteless, extravagant, showy, ostentatious, Colloq splashy, snazzy, jazzy: He was wearing a check suit and the loudest shirt and tie I had ever seen.

lounge   v. 1 idle, loaf, laze, loll, languish, vegetate: After dinner, we lounged till midnight, sipping port.

--n. 2 sitting-room, salon, front room, parlour: Mother insisted that we entertain visitors in the lounge. 3 lobby, foyer, waiting-room, reception (room), vestibule: I was waiting in the lounge when the doctor returned. 4 cocktail lounge, (lounge or saloon) bar: We went into the lounge and ordered a drink. 5 sofa, couch, divan, studio couch, day-bed, settee, settle, love-seat, chaise longue; causeuse, tˆte-…-tˆte; US and Canadian Davenport: The psychoanalyst has a lounge on which you lie while talking to him.

lour   v. 1 lower, darken, threaten, menace, loom: The clouds loured: she suddenly began to feel afraid. 2 lower, frown, scowl, glower; sulk, pout, mope: He said nothing, but loured at me from beneath his beetled brow.

lousy adj. 1 awful, terrible, mean, contemptible, low, base, hateful, detestable, despicable, vile, wretched, miserable, scurvy, dirty, vicious, Colloq rotten: Telling tales to the teacher was a lousy thing to do. 2 bad, poor, awful, terrible, inferior; low-quality, shoddy, shabby, inferior, miserable, second-rate, wretched: We had lousy seats for the theatre last week. The dealer seems to have sold you a really lousy car. 3 pedicular, pediculous, Brit lice-infested, lice-ridden, US louse-infested, louse-ridden: Even lice are lousy - they have their own parasites. 4 lousy with. alive with, overloaded with, swarming with, teeming with, Colloq crawling with, knee-deep in: In five minutes the place was lousy with cops.

lovable adj. loveable, adorable, darling, dear, cherished, likeable, attractive, engaging, cute, fetching, taking, alluring, endearing, appealing, winsome, sweet, tender, cuddly, affectionate, charming, enchanting: She has the most lovable little baby boy.

love n. 1 warmth, affection, attachment, fondness, tenderness, devotion, attraction, friendship, amity, regard, admiration, fancy, adoration, adulation, ardour, passion, fervour, rapture, infatuation: Her love for him grew over the years. 2 liking, delight, enjoyment, pleasure, fondness, attraction, predilection, bent, leaning, proclivity, inclination, disposition, weakness, partiality, preference, taste, relish, passion: In his retirement, Charles has developed a love for golf. 3 darling, beloved, sweetheart, sweetie, sweet, honey, dear one, dearest, angel, turtle-dove, true-love, light of one's life, lover, paramour, mate, intended, betrothed; girlfriend, inamorata, lady-love, young lady, fianc,e; boyfriend, beau, inamorato, suitor, swain, young man, fianc,, Archaic leman, tally, US POSSLQ (= 'Person of the Opposite Sex Sharing Living Quarters'), Colloq girl, woman, guy, man: Let me tell you something, my love. Come live with me and be my love. 4 sympathy, tenderness, concern, charity, care, solicitude, affinity, rapport, harmony, brotherhood, sisterhood, fellow-feeling: He has great love for his fellow human beings. 5 love affair. a amour, liaison, affair, romance, relationship, affaire de coeur, intrigue: He's been having a love affair with his secretary. b passion, mania, Colloq thing: George allows nothing to interfere with his love affair with tennis. 6 make love (to) or (with). embrace, cuddle, caress, fondle, have sexual intercourse, Archaic take, know, Colloq neck, pet, canoodle, romance, have sex, make the beast with two backs, US and Canadian make out; Taboo slang screw, fuck, hump, bang, Brit roger, bonk: He still makes love to his wife even though they are both in their eighties.

--v. 7 cherish, admire, adore, be in love with, lose one's heart to, worship, idolize, dote on, treasure, be infatuated with, think the world of, adulate, hold dear, like, Colloq be hung up on, be crazy or nuts or wild or mad about, have a crush on: Only after ten years of friendship did she discover that she loved him. 8 delight in, take pleasure in, derive pleasure or enjoyment from, relish, be partial to, have a passion or preference or taste for, be attracted to, be captivated by, be fond of, like, enjoy, appreciate, value, Colloq get a kick from or out of, be wild about, be thrilled by, US get a bang or charge from or out of: She loves chocolates. I just love your new dress! Love me, love my dog.

love letter
n. billet-doux, Archaic mash note: She saved all his love letters.

lovely adj. 1 good-looking, pretty, handsome, attractive, comely, fair, fetching, engaging, captivating, alluring, enticing, bewitching, ravishing, gorgeous, beautiful, beauteous, pulchritudinous: Larry has two lovely daughters. The house has a lovely view of Lake Windermere. 2 satisfying, satisfactory, agreeable, enjoyable, gratifying, nice, pleasing, pleasant, pleasurable, engaging, delightful: What a lovely way to spend an evening!

lover n. See love, 3, above.

low° adj. 1 short, squat, little, small, stubby, stumpy, stunted; low-lying: The terrain has many low shrubs, not more than two feet tall. 2 inadequate, insufficient, deficient, down, short, sparse, scanty, scant, limited: The air in the tyres is a bit low. Our water supply ran low. 3 coarse, unrefined, indelicate, improper, naughty, risqu,, indecent, unseemly, vulgar, crude, common, rude, offensive, gross, ill-bred, lewd, obscene, ribald, bawdy, scurrilous, smutty, pornographic, dirty: The old burlesque acts were characterized by their low humour. 4 weak, frail, feeble, debilitated, enervated, sickly, unhealthy, infirm, shaky, decrepit, ill, sick: He's very low and sinking fast. 5 ineffectual, ineffective, weak: Her resistance to disease is low. I have a low pain threshold. 6 miserable, dismal, wretched, abysmal, sorry, abject, destitute: I seem to have reached a low point in my career. 7 humble, poor, low-born, lowly, base, inferior, base-born, plebeian, proletariat, ignoble: He rose from those low beginnings to a peerage. 8 unhappy, depressed, dejected, sad, gloomy, melancholy, miserable, despondent, disconsolate, blue, downcast, down, glum, wretched, morose, crestfallen, broken-hearted, heart-broken, tearful, lachrymose, sorrowful, mournful, heavy-hearted: I felt low for weeks after the death of my kitten. 9 inferior, second-rate, poor, bad, not up to par, worthless, shoddy, shabby, mediocre, substandard: Their products are of low quality. 10 inferior, lower, lesser, small, smaller: Play a low card. 11 low-cut, d‚collet‚, revealing, Colloq US low and behold in the front and vie de BohŠme in the back: Gilda wore a low, strapless black satin evening gown. 12 base, vile, abject, contemptible, despicable, mean, menial, servile, ignoble, degraded, vulgar, foul, dastardly, depraved, nasty, sordid: That was a low trick he played telling on his friends. I didn't know that anyone could sink to such a low level. 13 quiet, hushed, soft, subdued, gentle, muted, muffled, stifled, indistinct, whispered, murmured, murmurous: Her low voice was sweet. 14 unfavourable, critical, adverse: She has a rather low opinion of his singing.

lowý   v. moo, bellow; bawl: The lowing herd moved slowly into the pasture.

low-down n. information, intelligence, data, the facts, inside story, Colloq info, dope, dirt, Brit bumf: I have the low-down on the scandal.

lower°   v. 1 drop, reduce, decrease, mark down, discount, lessen, diminish, downgrade, cut, slash: Prices on all goods have been lowered. 2 let or move or bring or put down, drop: The drawbridge was lowered and the knights rode across. They lowered the coffin into the grave. 3 cut or lop off, cut or take down, reduce, diminish, crop, trim: We lowered the hedge by a foot.

4 abase, debase, degrade, discredit, shame, disgrace, demean, belittle, humble, humiliate; stoop, deign, condescend: I wouldn't lower myself to so much as speak to him. 5 turn down, quieten, moderate, modulate, soften, tone down: He lowered his voice to a whisper.

--adj. 6 further or farther down: My mother has a flat on a lower floor of the building. 7 earlier: These primitive amphibians are from the Lower Carboniferous. 8 lower case. small, minuscule: Use capitals for the first letters and lower case for the rest in these names.

lowerý v. See lour, above.

lowly adj. See low°, 7, above.

loyal adj. faithful, true, dependable, devoted, trustworthy, trusty, steady, steadfast, staunch, trusted, reliable, stable, unswerving, unwavering, dedicated, constant, patriotic: Give me twelve men loyal and true and we shall rout the enemy.

loyalty n. faithfulness, fidelity, dependability, devotedness, devotion, allegiance, patriotism, trustworthiness, steadfastness, staunchness, firmness, resolution, resolve, reliability, stability, dedication, constancy: I hope that we can rely on the loyalty of everyone in your unit, Colonel.

12.5 luck...
=-

luck n. 1 fortune, chance, destiny, fate, accident, fortuity, serendipity; fluke, stroke of luck, US happenstance: Luck brought us together. 2 good fortune, (good) break: It takes a lot of luck to get the kinds of roles you want as an actor. 3 chance(s), success rate, fortune(s): I hope that my luck improves soon.

lucky adj. 1 fortunate, blessed, favoured, charmed: She was very lucky to get the job. 2 providential, timely, opportune, propitious, favourable, auspicious, advantageous, convenient, fortuitous: It was lucky that you were at the swimming pool to save her.

ludicrous adj. ridiculous, laughable, absurd, farcical, nonsensical, preposterous, incongruous, asinine, foolish, silly, zany, crazy, comical, risible; funny, facetious, droll, waggish, jocular, witty, jocose: The explanations of the new tax laws have been carried to ludicrous extremes. You can count on Billy to come up with some ludicrous prank on April Fools' Day.

lug v. drag, tug, tow, haul, heave; carry, tote, transport: You're mistaken if you think I'm going to lug that case round everywhere.

luggage n. baggage, bags, gear, impedimenta, paraphernalia, things, belongings: When I arrived in Torremolinos, I found my luggage was missing.

lukewarm adj. 1 tepid, room temperature, warm: I like my bath-water lukewarm. 2 cool, indifferent, half-hearted, chill, chilly, phlegmatic, unresponsive, unenthusiastic, nonchalant, lackadaisical, apathetic, insouciant, Laodicean, unmoved, US half-baked, Colloq laid-back: My ideas for improving efficiency continued to receive a lukewarm reception from the board.

lull n. 1 pause, respite, interlude, intermission, interval, break, hiatus, interruption, stop, halt, lapse, delay, Literary caesura, Colloq let-up: After a brief lull, the hurricane resumed in all its ferocity. 2 quiet, quiescence, hush, calm, calmness, stillness, silence, peace, peacefulness, tranquillity: There was a lull, then the noise of the artillery again shattered the night.

--v. 3 soothe, calm, quiet, hush, pacify, mollify, tranquillize: Do not let her sweet words lull you into a sense of false security. I was lulled to sleep by the crickets and the bees.

lumber n. 1 odds and ends, junk, clutter, jumble, rejects, white elephants; rubbish, litter, Chiefly US trash: The small room off the kitchen is for lumber. 2 timber, wood, beams, planks, boards, wood: I have ordered the lumber for building the garage.

--v. 3 encumber, burden, load, overload, saddle, impose upon, land: We have been lumbered with looking after our neighbours' six cats.

luminous adj. 1 shiny, shining, bright, brilliant, lighted (up), lit (up), illuminated, radiant, alight, resplendent, lustrous, gleaming, shimmering, glistening, sparkling, dazzling, refulgent, effulgent: The moon shone with a luminous beauty. 2 glowing, aglow, luminescent, incandescent, phosphorescent, fluorescent: He had a watch with luminous hands. 3 clear, lucid, perspicuous, percipient, perspicacious, penetrating, discerning, perceptive, clear-eyed, clear-headed, keen, acute, sharp, explicit, incisive, specific, express; understandable, intelligible: His latest novel provides another example of his luminous style.

lump° n. 1 mass, piece, gob, gobbet, clod, chunk, clot, wad, clump, hunk, nugget; cube, wedge, cake: There was a lump of earth was clogging the drain. May I have two lumps of sugar, please? 2 bump, growth, swelling, protuberance, protrusion, prominence, bulge, excrescence, tumescence, nodule, knob; wen, cyst, boil, carbuncle, blister, wart, corn: You ought to see a doctor about that lump on your foot.

--v. 3 Often, lump together. combine, join, consolidate, collect, bunch, group, unite, mass, aggregate, blend, mix, throw or put together: Don't lump me together with everyone else, without even asking my opinion.

lumpý v. Usually, lump it. allow, tolerate, suffer, put up with, bear, stand, brook, endure: I'm afraid you'll just have to lump it, whether you like it or not.

lumpy adj. chunky, bumpy, uneven, granular, grainy: Mix the batter till it is no longer lumpy.

lunacy n. 1 madness, insanity, dementia, craziness, derangement, psychosis, mania: Formerly, it was believed that lunacy fluctuated in accordance with the phases of the moon. 2 folly, foolishness, bad or poor judgement, illogicality, illogic, senselessness, ridiculousness, irrationality, foolhardiness, stupidity: It would be sheer lunacy to confess to something you did not do.

lunge n. 1 thrust, jab,, strike: He was impaled by the first lunge of the sword. 2 dive, plunge, rush, leap, jump, spring, pounce: I made a lunge for the knife but missed.

--v. 3 dive, plunge, charge, pounce, dash, bound, jump; thrust, stab, strike, hit, jab, cut: He lunged at her with his machete.

lurch° n. leave in the lurch. desert, abandon, forsake; drop, jilt: He left her in the lurch, waiting at the church.

lurchý n. 1 stagger, sway, pitch; list, tilt, toss: The man gave a sudden lurch, knocking the vase from my hands.

--v. 2 stagger, sway, stumble; roll, tilt, veer, pitch, list, heel, wallow: He lurched into the room, a dagger protruding from his back. The ship lurched dangerously in a heavy sea.

lure v. 1 tempt, attract, induce, coax, inveigle, seduce, draw in, entice, lead on, decoy, charm, persuade, allure, catch: She lured me into the trap of believing that she loved me.

--n. 2 bait, decoy, attraction, temptation, inducement, magnet, siren song, charm, US drawing card, Slang come-on: Too many na‹ve people fall for the lure of easy money.

lurid adj. 1 sensational, vivid, shocking, startling, graphic, melodramatic: The tabloids delight in a lurid scandal. 2 ghastly, horrid, horrifying, horrendous, gory, grisly, gruesome, macabre, revolting, disgusting, appalling, frightful, terrible, awful: Every lurid detail of the massacre was shown on TV. 3 pale, ashen, sallow, wan, pallid, ghastly, baleful: From the lurid shade of his skin, I could see he had some horrible affliction. 4 glaring, fiery, flaming, burning, aglow, glowing, glowering: The burning city cast a lurid light in the sky.

lurk v. skulk, slink, prowl, steal, sneak, hide, (lie in) wait, lie low: The muggers were lurking in the shadows, waiting for a victim.

luscious adj. delectable, delicious, mouth-watering, tasty, toothsome, savoury, appetizing, rich, sweet, epicurean, ambrosial, palatable, pleasant; succulent, juicy, Colloq scrumptious, yummy: My grandmother used to make the most luscious pies and tarts.

lush adj. 1 luxuriant, thick, lavish, flourishing, verdant, green, dense, overgrown, thick, exuberant: The walls were covered with a lush growth of ivy. 2 juicy, succulent, mouth-watering, fresh, moist, ripe: We ate lush pears that we picked straight from the tree. 3 palatial, extravagant, elaborate, luxurious, opulent, sumptuous, Colloq ritzy, plush: The bridal suite is the lushest accommodation they offer.

lust n. 1 sensuality, libido, libidinousness, sexuality, lustfulness, concupiscence, sexual appetite, Slang horniness: The nouveaux riches spend much of their time and money satisfying their lust. 2 desire, drive, energy, voracity, avidity, avidness, ambition, ravenousness: Henry has an infectious enthusiasm and lust for life.

--v. 3 lust after. desire, crave, hunger or thirst or hanker for or after, ache for: Barney was lusting after the barmaid at The Two Magpies.

lustful adj. libidinous, carnal, concupiscent, licentious, lewd, prurient, lascivious, salacious, Colloq horny, randy: On her way to work she was forced to endure daily the lustful calls of the construction workers.

lustre n. 1 sheen, gleam, glow, gloss, luminosity, luminousness, radiance: A good waxing should restore the lustre to the table. 2 glory, renown, brilliance, celebrity, honour, distinction, fame, illustriousness: Winning first prize lent a little lustre to his tarnished reputation.

lustrous adj. glossy, shiny, shined, polished, burnished: French polishing gives the furniture a lustrous finish.

lusty adj. 1 vigorous, healthy, strong, energetic, robust, hale and hearty, lively; buxom: The sailors were accompanied by a couple of lusty young women. 2 vigorous, substantial, strong, husky, powerful: He sang in a lusty voice.

luxuriant adj. 1 abundant, profuse, copious, lush, rich, bounteous, overflowing, full, luxurious: Her luxuriant hair hung down to her waist. 2 lavish, full, rank, prolific, thriving, rife, exuberant, lush, abounding, plenteous, abundant, superabundant, dense, fruitful, teeming: The luxuriant orange groves are yielding a bumper crop this year. 3 ornate, elaborate, decorated, fancy, rococo, baroque, flowery, frilly, florid, overdone, flamboyant, showy, ostentatious, gaudy, garish, Colloq flashy: The elders disapproved of the luxuriant ornamentation of the churches.

luxuriate v. 1 Often, luxuriate in. wallow in, swim in, bask in, indulge in, delight in, relish, revel in, enjoy oneself, savour, appreciate, like, love: She luxuriates in her new-found wealth. 2 live in luxury or comfort, be in the lap of luxury, have a good or great or marvellous time, take it easy, enjoy oneself, live the life of Riley, live off the fat of the land, Colloq have the time of one's life, have a ball, US live high off the hog: Their postcard says that they are luxuriating on Capri for a week.

luxurious adj. 1 opulent, sumptuous, grand, extravagant, lavish, magnificent, splendid, de luxe, fancy; epicurean, gourmet; Colloq swanky, swank, ritzy, plush, posh: We had a luxurious room overlooking the sea and ate the most luxurious meals. 2 self-indulgent, voluptuous, voluptuary, sybaritic, hedonistic, pampered: We lived a truly luxurious life for two years till the money ran out.

luxury n. 1 opulence, splendour, sumptuousness, grandeur, extravagance, magnificence, richness, luxuriousness: I cannot describe the overwhelming luxury of the maharaja's palace. 2 indulgence, self-indulgence, hedonism, sybaritism, voluptuousness: He had been living a life of luxury in Tahiti. 3 security, confidence; gratification, satisfaction, enjoyment, pleasure, delight, comfort: He has the luxury of knowing that his dog will be well looked after. 4 frill, extravagance, extra, indulgence, non-essential, expendable, treat: He showered her with luxuries from the finest shops.

12.6 lying...

=-

lying n. 1 prevarication, fibbing, mendacity, mendaciousness, falsification, untruthfulness, perjury; dishonesty, deceit, duplicity: She was accused of lying while under oath.

--adj. 2 untruthful, false, mendacious, hypocritical, dishonest, deceitful, deceptive, duplicitous, treacherous, perfidious: Whoever told you they had found the solution is a lying scoundrel.

lyric adj. 1 melodic, song-like, musical, melodious, lyrical: Lyric drama is no longer fashionable. 2 personal, subjective, individual, idiosyncratic; sentimental, rhapsodic: He expresses his own feelings in the lyric poems. 3 sweet, dulcet, graceful, silvery, lilting, mellifluous, mellow, light: This song sounds best when sung by a lyric tenor.

--n. 4 lyrics. libretto, book, words: Ira Gershwin wrote the lyrics for much of George Gershwin's music.

lyrical adj. 1 See lyric, 1, above. 2 enthusiastic, ecstatic, encomiastic, rapturous, rhapsodic, effusive, impassioned, emotional, ebullient, exuberant, panegyrical: He waxed lyrical whenever he spoke of his children.

13.0 M

=-

13.1 macabre...

=-

macabre adj. grim, ghastly, grisly, gory, gruesome, grotesque, ghoulish, fiendish, dread, eerie, fearsome, frightful, frightening, terrifying, terrible, dreadful, dire, morbid; deathly, deadly, deathlike, ghostly, cadaverous: He told a macabre story of how they survived by resorting to cannibalism. The crypt had a macabre eeriness about it.

machiavellian

adj. deceitful, cunning, shrewd, crafty, wily, foxy, scheming, tricky, perfidious, nefarious, treacherous, sneaky: Mr Williams has concocted a truly machiavellian plan for getting the pensioners to move out.

machination

n. plotting, scheming, intriguing, manoeuvring, designing, manipulating; plot, scheme, intrigue, manoeuvre, design, stratagem, ruse, trick, trickery, artifice, dirty trick(s), wile, manipulation, ploy, tactic(s), move, gambit: He escaped from the machinations of his enemies. Must you resort to such machinations merely to get them to listen?

machine n. 1 mechanism, device, apparatus, contrivance, appliance, instrument, implement, tool, utensil, gadget, Colloq contraption, US gismo or gizmo: What kind of machine is used to make a corkscrew? 2 engine, motor, prime mover, vehicle; car, automobile, motor car, US auto: We used to get into the machine and go for Sunday picnics. 3 organization, system, ring, gang, cabal, clique, party, faction: The entire council is run by a political machine.

--v. 4 shape, make, manufacture: In this department we machine the castings to a tolerance of one ten-thousandth of an inch.

machismo n. masculine pride or arrogance, manliness, virility, masculinity, grit, Colloq guts, Slang balls: He is just trying to impress you with his machismo.

macho adj. manly, masculine, virile, proud, arrogant: He's afraid his macho image will be destroyed if he admits to enjoying ballet.

mad adj. 1 insane, deranged, crazy, crazed, demented, lunatic, unhinged, delirious, out of one's mind or head, psychotic, maniacal, (mentally) unbalanced, mentally ill, of unsound mind, non compos mentis, Chiefly Brit daft, Colloq out of one's head, touched (in the head), screwy, cuckoo, mental, certifiable, having a screw loose, dotty, cracked, mad as a March hare, mad as a hatter, not all there, off-the-wall, stark raving mad, Chiefly Brit potty, US nutty as a fruit cake; Slang nuts, loony, goofy, loopy, crackers, batty, off one's rocker or trolley, bananas, Brit round the bend or twist, twisted, off one's chump, barmy or balmy, bonkers, US out to lunch, bughouse, bugs, crazy as a bedbug or a coot, loco, wacky, out of one's tree, meshuga: You're mad if you think I'm going in there with that lion. 2 foolish, silly, childish, immature, puerile, wild, nonsensical, foolhardy, madcap, heedless, senseless, absurd, imprudent, unwise, indiscreet, rash, ill-advised, ill-considered, reckless, extravagant, irrational, fatuous: I did many mad things when I was a student. Hitching to Inverness is a mad idea. 3 wild, ferocious; rabid: Have they caught that mad dog yet? 4 furious, angry, infuriated, incensed, enraged, irate, fuming, berserk, irritated, provoked, wrathful, exasperated, Literary wroth: Will you get mad if I ask you a question? Please don't be mad with me - I wrecked your car. 5 like mad. madly, feverishly, in a frenzy, frenziedly, desperately, excitedly, violently, wildly, hysterically, furiously; enthusiastically, fervently, ardently; Colloq like crazy: He's been running about like mad trying to find her. 6 mad (about or for). crazy, infatuated, ardent, enthusiastic, eager, avid, zealous, passionate, fervent, fervid, keen, fanatical, wild, Colloq hooked, Brit dotty, Slang nuts: She's absolutely mad about cricket.

madden v. 1 infuriate, anger, enrage, incense, provoke, inflame, excite (someone) to (a) frenzy or rage, make (someone's) blood boil, raise (someone's) hackles, make (someone) see red, get (someone's) back up, drive someone crazy, Literary raise (someone's) ire, Colloq drive (someone) up the wall, Brit drive (someone) round the bend or twist, US tick (someone) off, burn (someone) up, tee (someone) off, bug, drive (someone) up the wall: Their getting away with something like that maddened us all. 2 irk, vex, pique, exasperate, irritate: He has the maddening habit of affecting a lisp. 3 bait, badger, torment, plague, bedevil, US rile, hassle: The dog was maddened into attacking anything that moved.

madly adv. 1 insanely, hysterically, dementedly, wildly, distractedly, frenziedly: The patient keeps screaming madly, day and night. 2 foolishly, stupidly, inanely, ridiculously, ludicrously, idiotically, absurdly, irrationally, senselessly: The king madly spurned the proffered aid and was soundly defeated. 3 furiously, wildly, ferociously, fiercely, energetically, desperately, like mad, vehemently, feverishly, excitedly, fanatically, violently, impetuously: He dashed about madly trying to get help. 4 excessively, extremely, desperately, intensely, passionately, wildly, ardently, fervently, fervidly, exceedingly: She was madly in love with George.

madman n. madwoman; lunatic, psychopath, psychotic, maniac, Colloq crackpot, psycho, loony, screwball, US kook, Slang nut, nutcase, Brit nutter: I am working like a madman to finish the book by the deadline.

madness n. 1 insanity, lunacy, mania, dementia, psychosis, mental illness: That form of madness is called schizophrenia. 2 craziness, lunacy, folly, foolishness, nonsense, senselessness, ridiculousness, pointlessness, illogicality, illogic, illogicalness, impracticality, preposterousness, futility: He soon realized the madness of trying to stem the tide of public opinion.

magazine n. 1 periodical, journal, publication: We publish a quarterly magazine about language. 2 arsenal, ammunition or munitions dump, armoury: Saboteurs infiltrated the camp and blew up the magazine.

magic n. 1 witchcraft, sorcery, wizardry, black magic, necromancy, black art, voodoo, obeahism, devilry or deviltry, diabolism, demonolatry, occultism; sortilege, theurgy, white magic; spell: As the magic began to work, he slowly changed into a horrible ghoul. 2 legerdemain, conjuring, prestidigitation, sleight of hand, illusion, hocus-pocus, trickery: He performs tricks of magic, including sawing a woman in half. 3 enchantment, allure, allurement, charm, bewitchment, spell, witchery, witchcraft, wizardry, glamour, fascination, magnetism, ensorcellment: She worked her magic on every man she met.

--adj. 4 magical, miraculous: The magic ointment made her young again. 5 necromantic, occult, mystic, shamanistic, theurgical: Using a magic spell, she turned him into a toad. 6 magical, enchanting, entrancing, bewitching, fascinating, hypnotic, mesmerizing, entrancing, spellbinding, charming, magnetic, ensorcelling: The music had a magic effect on them.

magician n. 1 conjuror or conjurer, illusionist, wizard, sorcerer, sorceress, magus, necromancer, enchanter, enchantress, Merlin, Houdini, Circe, witch, warlock; thaumaturge, theurgist: The court magician changed the pebbles into precious stones by a wave of his wand. 2 marvel, miracle-worker, virtuoso, wizard, genius, master, Colloq whiz: Mary Lou Williams is a magician on the boogie-woogie piano.

magnetic adj. attractive, attracting, engaging, captivating, enthralling, seductive, alluring, entrancing, bewitching, beguiling, arresting, spellbinding, irresistible, charismatic, winning, winsome, inviting: Because of Amy's magnetic personality, men flock about her.

magnetism n. attraction, draw, appeal, allure, magic, lure, attractiveness, charm, pull, seductiveness, irresistibility, drawing power, charisma, duende, likeableness, sex appeal: JFK's personal magnetism won him millions of votes.

magnification

n. enlargement, amplification; build-up, strengthening, enhancement, aggrandizement, raising, elevation, increase, expansion, heightening, glorification, ennoblement: The microdot can be read only at a magnification of 260X. The advertising agency worked on the magnification of the candidate's record of achievement.

magnificent

adj. great, excellent, splendid, superior, superb, marvellous, glorious, grand, fine, impressive, imposing, awe-inspiring, impressive, brilliant, commanding, august, noble, majestic, regal, distinguished, elegant, exalted, sublime, outstanding; sumptuous, resplendent, opulent, rich, luxurious, lavish: She lives in a magnificent country house.

magnify v. 1 enlarge, expand, amplify, inflate, increase, augment, exaggerate, heighten, build up, boost, dramatize, aggravate, worsen, exacerbate; overstate, Colloq blow up, make a mountain out of a molehill: Tiny errors in the beginning are magnified later on. I fear that he has magnified its importance out of all proportion. 2 enlarge, blow up: They had to magnify the photograph to read the registration number of the stolen car.

magnitude n. 1 greatness, size, extent, bigness, immensity, enormousness, dimensions: You cannot imagine the magnitude of the unemployment problem in our area. 2 importance, significance, consequence, note: This is a matter of sufficient magnitude to warrant a board meeting.

maid n. 1 girl, maiden, lass, miss, nymphet, nymph, wench, damsel, mademoiselle, demoiselle, Scots lassie; virgin, virgo intacta: A lovely young maid was milking the cow. 2 housemaid, maidservant, domestic, chambermaid, lady's maid, Archaic or literary abigail, Brit daily, Archaic colloq Brit tweeny: When she rang, the maid brought in the tea. 3 old maid. spinster, bachelor girl: She never married and now is an old maid.

maiden n. 1 See maid, 1, above.

--adj. 2 virgin, virginal, undefiled, intact, chaste, (virgo) intacta; unmarried, unwed: His maiden aunt was visiting for the weekend. 3 inaugural, first, initial, Colloq US shakedown: The Titanic sank on her maiden voyage.

mail n. 1 post, correspondence; letters: Has the mail arrived?

--v. 2 post, send, dispatch or despatch: Please mail this letter tonight.

maim v. cripple, mutilate, lame, disable, incapacitate, wound, wing, impair, hamstring, put out of action or commission; injure, harm, damage: Their daughter was badly maimed in the fire.

main adj. 1 chief, primary, prime, (most) important, principal, cardinal, paramount, first, foremost, leading, pre-eminent, predominant, predominating, dominant, ranking, major; outstanding: The main cause of traffic deaths is drunken driving. In Britain, the main street of a town is called 'the High Street'. We arrived late and missed the main entertainment. 2 largest, biggest, greatest, strongest: The main part of the strike force landed in Normandy. 3 necessary, essential, basic, particular, fundamental, critical, crucial, vital: Economic recovery is the main thrust of our programme for reform. 4 sheer, brute, utter, pure, out-and-out, absolute, mere, plain: He lifted that block by main force!

--n. 5 pipe, duct, channel, line, pipeline, water or gas main, Brit (electric) cable, mains, power (supply), conduit: Water reaches the city through a huge underground main. 6 strength, power, might, effort, energy, vigour: With all his might and main he tried to move the stone blocking the cave. 7 in the main. See mainly, below.

mainly adv. in the main, chiefly, principally, predominantly, generally, above all, on the whole, in general, mostly, most of all, effectively, essentially, at bottom, first and foremost, for the most part, largely, by and large, primarily,as a rule, usually, all in all, on balance, for all practical purposes, in the long run: We are concerned mainly with safety. The tourists are mainly from Italy.

mainstay n. main or chief or principal support, anchor (to windward), sheet anchor, bulwark, buttress, linchpin, main or greatest strength: David remains the mainstay of the sales force.

maintain v. 1 continue, preserve, persevere in, keep going, persist in, keep (up), carry on, retain, perpetuate, prolong, sustain, uphold: Sarah maintained friendly relations with her ex-husband. Try to maintain your composure. 2 look after, take care of, care for, preserve, (keep in) service, keep up, keep in repair; nurture, support: It is expensive to maintain a vintage car. Allison maintains an ancient aunt in Piddlington. 3 hold, state, say, declare, claim, assert, allege, testify, contend, aver, avow, announce, proclaim, vouchsafe, profess, insist (on), affirm: Despite evidence to the contrary, he maintains that he is innocent. 4 defend, stand by, keep, fight for; take up the cudgels for, make a case for, advocate, champion, take or make a stand for, plead for, back (up), support, vindicate, justify, Colloq go to bat for: He maintained his ground in the face of virulent attacks.

maintenance
n. 1 upkeep, care, preservation, conservation, support, sustention, sustentation: I can no longer afford the maintenance of a large country estate. 2 continuation, continuance, perpetuation, prolongation, persistence, maintaining: His maintenance of an untenable position will lose him votes. 3 upkeep, livelihood, subsistence, support, allowance, living, sustenance, stipend, subvention, contribution, alimony, keep: How much maintenance does he pay to his ex-wife and children?

majestic adj. 1 regal, dignified, grand, imperial, royal, noble, lordly, lofty, elevated, exalted, glorious, magnificent, monumental, impressive, striking, imposing, awesome, splendid, marvellous, kingly, queenly, princely: With majestic ceremony, the procession entered the cathedral. 2 pompous, supercilious, disdainful, superior, arrogant, haughty, magisterial, imperious, grandiose, affected: She dismissed him with a majestic wave of her hand.

major adj. 1 larger, greater, bigger, main, chief, important: Henderson grabbed the major portion of the credit. 2 vital, important, critical, crucial, principal, foremost, paramount, primary, prime, main, big, biggest, pre-eminent, notable, noteworthy, significant, outstanding, dominant, dominating; serious, grave, worst: The major problem in commercial kitchens is sanitation.

majority n. 1 bulk, preponderance, mass, more than half, the better or best part, the greater part or number, lion's share: The majority of shares were bought by existing shareholders. 2 adulthood, maturity, seniority, womanhood, manhood: They reach their majority in 1997.

make v. 1 build, assemble, construct, erect, put together, set up, fashion, form, mould, shape, frame, create, originate, fabricate, manufacture, produce, put out, forge, contrive, devise: She makes her own dresses. They make TV sets here. The Colossus of Rhodes was said to be made of bronze. 2 cause, compel, force, impel, coerce, provoke, urge, exhort, press, pressure, require, command, order, induce, persuade, prevail upon, insist upon, oblige, Brit pressurize: The devil made me do it. 3 bring about, occasion, cause, give rise to: The new regulation is going to make trouble for you. 4 make out or up, draw (up), create, write, sign, frame: I made a new will leaving everything to my children. 5 produce, cause, create, generate: The engine made a funny noise, then died. 6 enact, pass, frame, establish, institute: He thinks that laws were made to be broken. 7 earn, return, reap, garner, take in, get, procure, gather, clear, realize, gross, net, pocket, get, acquire, obtain, receive; win, gain, Slang US pull down: Has her invention made money? He makes a good living out of his shop. He made œ25 playing poker. 8 amount to, constitute, represent, add up to, total, come to: He knows how many beans make five. Three and two do not make four. One singer does not make an opera. 9 change, turn, alter, modify, transform, convert; transmute, mutate, metamorphose: He made her into a star. The alchemists tried to make base metal into gold. 10 become, be, change or turn or grow into, perform as: I think Quentin will make a brilliant surgeon one day. 11 serve as or for, be suitable for, be, prove to be, turn out to be, turn into, become: This cut of meat will not make a good roast. 12 fetch, realize, earn, return: The locket made œ1000 at the auction. 13 score, earn, secure: The West Indies made 654 in their first innings. 14 reach, arrive at, attain, get (to), win, achieve, accomplish; come in, Brit be placed, US place: Fran might make first place in the marathon. 15 prepare, arrange, rearrange, tidy (up), neaten (up): You have made your bed, now you will have to lie on it. 16 record, arrange, fix, decide (on or upon), agree (to): I made an appointment to see the doctor. 17 prepare, fix, cook: I made what you like for dinner. 18 deliver, present: Janet made a good speech. 19 traverse, cover, do, travel, navigate: We cannot make more than 100 miles a day over this terrain. 20 do, go, travel or move at, move: His old banger could hardly make 40 m.p.h. 21 judge, think, calculate, estimate, reckon, gauge, suppose: What do you make of Sidney's new book? 22 establish, set up, organize: We made our headquarters in the farmhouse. 23 appoint, name, select, choose, elect, vote (in as), designate, authorize, commission, delegate, depute, deputize, assign, sanction, approve, affirm, certify, confirm: They made him their leader. 24 seduce, make it with: Kenneth tried to make Sharon last night. 25 make as if or as though. pretend, feign, act as if or as though, affect, make a show or pretence of, give the impression of: He made as if to strike me. 26 make away. run off or away, flee, fly, make off, abscond, take to one's heels, decamp, beat a (hasty) retreat, Colloq run for it, make a run for it, beat it, clear out, cut and run, skedaddle, take off, cut out, skip (town), make tracks, US fly the coop, Slang scram, vamoose, US hightail it, take a (run-out) powder: Taking the jewels, he made away as fast as he could run. 27 make away with. steal, rob, filch, pilfer, purloin, walk away or off with, Colloq borrow, liberate, boost, Slang pinch, hook, swipe, rip off, lift, US boost: That boy has made away with my cherry tarts! 28 make believe. pretend, fancy, play-act, dream, fantasize, imagine, act as if: We used to make believe we were grown-ups. 29 make do. get by or along, cope, scrape by or along, manage, muddle through, survive, Colloq make out: We have to make do on the pittance Randolph gets from the university. 30 make for. a head for or towards, aim for, steer (a course) for, proceed towards, be bound for: After this is done, I am making for the nearest pub. b assault, attack, set upon, charge, rush (at), pounce upon, fall upon or on, go for, lunge at, storm, assail: The big fellow was making for me with a knife when the lights went out. c promote, contribute to, be conducive to, favour, facilitate: Good fences make for good neighbours. 31 make good. a make up (for), pay (for), compensate for, recompense (for), repay, offset, make restitution for, settle, square, rectify, put to rights, set right, remedy, correct, restore: He agreed to make good any losses. b succeed, prosper, flourish, thrive, Colloq make it: In later life he made good as a property developer. c fulfil, carry out, Colloq deliver (the goods): She made good on her promise to return my book. 32 make it. a succeed, prosper, triumph, win, make good, Colloq make the grade: Do you think she will make it as a doctor? b arrive, get (somewhere), show up, appear, turn up: They are hoping to catch the 5:03 to Ipswich but I doubt if they will make it. 33 make known. tell of, impart, disclose, reveal, divulge, mention, communicate, announce, declare, promulgate, publish, let slip, Colloq tip off: She made known her demands. 34 make much of. a exaggerate, overstate, colour, hyperbolize, Colloq make a big deal of, blow up: He made much of his new title. b coddle, cosset, baby, pamper, dote on, flatter, toady (up) to, cajole, humour, indulge, Colloq butter up: Henry makes much of his grandchildren. 35 make off. See make, 26, above. 36 make off with. See make, 27, above. 37 make out. a see, discern, descry, espy, detect, discover, distinguish, perceive: I made out a dim figure in the gloom. b complete, fill in, Brit fill up, US and Canadian fill out: I made out an application for the job. c draw (up), write (out or down), record, Colloq US cut: Please make out a list of your complaints. Make out the cheque to me, personally. d understand, fathom, comprehend, figure out, perceive, follow, grasp, see, decipher, read: She mumbles so, I cannot make out what she's saying. Can you make out this name? e suggest, imply, hint, insinuate, indicate, impute, intimate, make to appear, pretend, make as if or as though, represent; present, show, demonstrate, establish: She tried to make out that I was a fool. He made out a strong case for dog licensing. f get on, survive, manage, fare, thrive, succeed: How are you making out in your new house? 38 make over. a do over, remodel, redecorate, alter: We are making over our kitchen. b transfer, hand over, sign over, convey, assign, turn over: The property has been made over to me. 39 make up. a complete, fill out, finish (out), flesh out: We need another player to make up the team. b compose, form, constitute, be comprised of: The gang is made up of ex-convicts. c hatch, invent, concoct, devise, create, construct, dream up, originate, coin, compose, Colloq cook up: He made up that story about the murder. d be reconciled, make peace, settle amicably, come to terms, bury the hatchet: The litigants have kissed and made up. e construct, build: The shack is made up of scrap boards. 40 make up for. compensate, redress, make good, atone, make amends: How can I make up for all the bad things I said about you? 41 make way. move aside, clear the way, allow to pass, make room or space: Make way for the Lord High Executioner!

--n. 42 kind, brand, style, sort, type, mark: Foreign makes of car currently dominate the market-place. 43 on the make. aggressive, assertive, go-ahead, enterprising, vigorous, energetic, Colloq pushy: The book is about a young man on the make in today's financial world.

makeshift adj. 1 temporary, stopgap, expedient, emergency, temporary, jury-rigged, improvised, tentative, stand-by, slapdash: We were able to fashion a makeshift rudder out of an oar.

--n. 2 stopgap, expedient, improvisation, substitute: The heater broke down and we had to get along with a makeshift.

make-up n. 1 cosmetics, maquillage, greasepaint, Colloq warpaint: Do you think I am wearing too much make-up? 2 constitution, character, cast, disposition, personality: There is not an ounce of sympathy in Janet's make-up. 3 constitution, arrangement, construction, composition, format, configuration, build, form: What is the chemical make-up of the plastic?

male adj. masculine, man's; virile, manly, manful; Archaic spear: His is bound to be a male point of view.

malignant adj. 1 virulent, pernicious, deadly, fatal, toxic, poisonous, harmful, life-threatening: The tumour proved to be malignant. 2 malign, malevolent, evil, malicious, pernicious, vicious, invidious, spiteful, bitter, hateful, venomous: The expos, was full of malignant insinuations.

man n. 1 gentleman, male, fellow, Colloq guy, chap, Brit bloke, squire, Slang gink, geezer, US gazabo: Have you met the man she is going to marry? 2 people, human beings, mankind, mortals, Homo sapiens, humanity, humankind, the human race: Man wants but little here below. 3 valet, manservant, gentleman's gentleman, servant, retainer, houseboy, houseman: Humberson sent his man round with a note.

--v. 4 staff, people, crew; cover: Who will man the office while I am away?

manacle n. 1 manacles. shackles, fetters, handcuffs, gyves, chains, irons, Colloq cuffs, Slang bracelets, Brit darbies: The manacles are cutting into his wrists.

--v. 2 shackle, fetter, handcuff, restrain, put or throw or clap in irons, chain, Colloq US cuff: The manacled prisoner was led away. 3 confine, inhibit, restrain, curb, check, control, hamper: They felt manacled by the nine o'clock curfew.

manage v. 1 handle, administer, run, supervise, look after, watch over, direct, head, oversee, superintend, direct, preside over, be in charge (of), take care of, control; rule (over), govern, regulate: Mr Grant manages the glove department. 2 handle, cope or deal with, control, govern, manipulate: Will you be able to manage such a frisky horse? 3 conduct, carry on, carry out, bring off, control, undertake, take care of, look after, handle: Is she old enough to manage her own affairs? 4 succeed, function, make do, make it, shift (for oneself), get along or by or on, make out, muddle through, survive: Will you be able to manage from here on?

manageable
adj. controllable; tractable, compliant, amenable, docile, tameable, tame, trainable, teachable, manipulable, submissive: Keep your spending within manageable limits. The dog is quite manageable.

management
n. 1 managing, control, supervision, manipulation, handling, direction, directing, directorship, administration, government, conduct, governance, operation, running, superintendence, command, guidance, stewardship: The management of the company

is in your hands. 2 administration, executive(s), bosses, directors, board (of directors), directorate, Colloq (top) brass: The management believes that you are the right person for the job.

manager n. supervisor, superintendent, director, executive, head, proprietor, overseer, foreman, forewoman, administrator, Chiefly Brit manageress , US straw boss, Colloq boss, chief: The position of manager entails a lot of responsibility.

mandatory adj. compulsory, obligatory, requisite, required; essential, commanded, demanded, necessary, needed: The wearing of safety belts in cars is mandatory.

mangle v. destroy, mutilate, butcher, deform, disfigure, spoil, mar, ruin, wreck; cut, hack, lacerate, chop (up), crush, damage, cripple, maim: Don't you hate the way they mangle the English language? His hand was badly mangled in the accident.

mangy adj. scruffy, dirty, sleazy, wretched, miserable, repulsive, sorry, squalid, slovenly, unkempt, filthy, dingy, seedy, poor, shabby, mean, low, ignominious, base, abject, odious, disreputable, moth-eaten, contemptible, despicable, nasty, scurvy: The mangy beggar turned out to be our agent in Calcutta.

manhandle v. maul, paw, rough up, batter, beat (up), pummel, abuse, mistreat, maltreat, ill-treat, trounce, belabour, Slang knock about or around, clobber: His captors manhandled him into a car and drove off.

man-hater n. misanthrope, misanthropist: He says he prefers to live alone because he's a man-hater.

manhood n. 1 masculinity, manliness, manfulness, virility, Colloq machismo: He felt that looking after the children at home somehow compromised his manhood. 2 bravery, pluck, boldness, determination, resolution, fortitude, grit, spirit, force, US intestinal fortitude, Colloq guts: He joined the army to test his manhood.

mania n. 1 rage, craze, passion, obsession, compulsion, urge, fascination, preoccupation, furore or US furor, yearning, craving, desire, cacoethes, Colloq fad, yen: By that time, the hula hoop mania had died down. She has a mania for collecting apostle spoons. 2 madness, lunacy, insanity, dementia, derangement, hysteria, Technical manic disorder: The psychiatrists diagnosed his problem as a mania.

maniac n. 1 madman, madwoman, lunatic, psychopath, psychotic, Colloq crackpot, Slang nut, Brit nutter, loony, US kook: In former times, maniacs were scorned and maltreated. 2 fanatic, fan, enthusiast, zealot, Slang freak, fiend: Since his retirement, he has become a golf maniac.

maniacal adj. 1 manic, maniac, insane, lunatic, mad, demented, deranged, hysterical, mentally ill, of unsound mind, non compos mentis, psychotic: He had to be hospitalized because of his maniacal behaviour. 2 hysterical, berserk, wild, crazy, Slang loony: His maniacal outbursts frightened us.

manifest adj. 1 apparent, clear, evident, obvious, plain, patent, blatant, conspicuous, unmistakable or unmistakeable, discernible, recognizable, comprehensible, distinct, palpable, definite, explicit, unambiguous, unquestionable, indubitable, indisputable: He lost his job because of his manifest dishonesty.

--v. 2 show, demonstrate, exhibit, evince, reveal, disclose, display, betray; express, declare: Fitzsimmons had been manifesting signs of dissatisfaction with his assignment. 3 prove, corroborate, substantiate, attest: His distaste for cauliflower was manifested by the look on his face.

manifestation
n. display, exhibition, demonstration, show, disclosure, appearance, exposure, presentation, sign, indication, mark, expression, example, instance; declaration, avowal, publication, announcement: The police feared that the crime wave was a manifestation of civil unrest. The first manifestation of thought is speech.

manifestly
adv. evidently, clearly, obviously, plainly, apparently, patently, unmistakably or unmistakeably, palpably, unquestionably, indubitably, undoubtedly, indisputably: The

treaty is manifestly to England's advantage.

manifold adj. diverse, diversified, multifarious, varied, various, assorted, multiplex, miscellaneous, sundry, many-sided, many different, Literary divers; many, numerous, multitudinous: I have manifold reasons for wishing you to stay.

manipulate
v. 1 manage, handle, control, manoeuvre, orchestrate, choreograph, influence, use, exploit, play on, utilize: He knows how to manipulate people to make them do what he wants. 2 handle, control, operate, direct, work, use, employ, negotiate: The controls can be manipulated to make the robot imitate human motion. 3 rig, falsify, juggle, tamper with, doctor, Colloq cook, Chiefly Brit fiddle: He's been manipulating his expense account for years.

manly adj. manful, virile, courageous, bold, brave, intrepid, valorous, valiant, dauntless, fearless, plucky, daring, venturesome, stout-hearted, resolute, stable, steadfast, unflinching, unwavering, unshrinking, chivalrous, gallant, noble, heroic; masculine, male, Colloq macho, red-blooded: Emerson characterized the English as manly rather than warlike.

manner n. 1 way, mode, style, technique, procedure, method, fashion; means, approach: Her incisive manner of reporting is widely admired. 2 air, behaviour, mien, demeanour, bearing, deportment, comportment, conduct, attitude, aspect: His manner is overbearing and dictatorial. 3 manners. etiquette, decorum, (good) form, politeness, proprieties, protocol, politesse, civility, ceremony, social code, social graces, formalities, niceties, amenities, social conventions; behaviour, conduct: Can't you teach him some manners?

mannered adj. artificial, contrived, stilted, stiff, affected, insincere, pompous, pretentious, posed, unnatural, hypocritical, Colloq phoney or US also phony, pseudo, highfalutin or hifalutin, la-di-da or lah-di-dah or la-de-da, hoity-toity, on one's high horse, high-hat, uppity or Brit uppish: Alice's speech is too mannered for anyone to feel close to her.

mannerism n. quirk, peculiarity, idiosyncrasy, trait, characteristic, habit: She has the irritating mannerism of pulling on her ear lobe.

manoeuvre n. 1 move, stratagem, tactic, trick, gambit, ploy, subterfuge, ruse, dodge, artifice, device, wile, d,marche; strategy, plan, plot, scheme, intrigue, machination: That manoeuvre will never work on a clever woman. 2 exercise, operation, drill, war-game, operation, kriegspiel, training: We were out on manoeuvres for a week.

--v. 3 manipulate, contrive, plot, scheme, machinate, intrigue, trick, devise, engineer, finesse, manage, Colloq finagle, wangle: His manoeuvred his way out of going on that mission. 4 manipulate, operate, run, drive, guide, navigate, jockey: She manoeuvred the car into a surprisingly tiny space.

mantle n. 1 cloak, cape, wrap, shawl, pelisse, pelerine: Over his armour he wore a mantle embroidered with his bearing. 2 covering, cover, sheet, veil, blanket, screen, cloak, shroud, pall, canopy, curtain: A mantle of snow lay on the ground.

--v. 3 cover, clothe, envelop, surround, encircle, shroud, veil, screen, obscure, cloak, conceal, hide, mask, wrap, disguise: The mountains were brilliantly mantled and capped with snow.

manual n. handbook, vade-mecum, enchiridion; directions, instructions, guide: Follow the manual carefully to avoid mistakes.

manufacture

v. 1 make, (mass-)produce, construct, build, assemble, fabricate, put together, turn out, create, originate: The company manufactures windscreen wipers. 2 concoct, create, contrive, invent, make up, fabricate, think up, US and Canadian create out of or from whole cloth, Colloq cook up: She manufactured that tale about being an orphan.

--n. 3 making, (mass) production, construction, building, assembly, fabrication, turning or putting out, putting together, creation, origination: The manufacture of durable goods increased .02% in the last quarter.

manufacturer

n. maker, producer, industrialist, fabricator: Manufacturers of computers usually buy components from specialized firms.

many adj. 1 numerous, multitudinous, myriad, profuse, innumerable, numberless, uncountable: Many people have an irrational fear of spiders. 2 diverse, multifarious, varied, various, assorted, sundry, Literary divers: There are many kinds of courage.

--pron., (n.) 3 horde(s), crowd(s), lot(s), swarm(s), throng(s), mass(es), profusion, multitude(s), abundance, plenty, shoal(s), flock(s), drove(s), torrent(s), flood(s), number(s), score(s), hundred(s), (thousand(s), etc.); Colloq ton(s), scads: A great many will turn out to vote next week. Many are picked but few are chosen.

mar v. 1 damage, ruin, mutilate, deface, spoil, scar, disfigure: The surface of the table was marred by a deep scratch. 2 damage, wreck, ruin, impair, harm, hurt, blight, blot, taint, stain, tarnish: She claims that her reputation was marred by the article.

march v. 1 parade, step, stride, strut, tread, pace, walk: They marched from Baxter Street to the Town Hall.

--n. 2 parade, procession, demonstration, cortege or cortŠge, walk: The march was organized to protest against the government's nuclear arms policy. 3 walk, trek, slog, hike: We had a long march ahead of us to get to Hastings.

margin n. 1 edge, border, perimeter, periphery; rim, lip, side, brink, verge: Leave a one-inch margin at the left side of the page. Trees grew at the margin of the pond. 2 limit(s), bound(s), boundary (line), border, frontier, line, partition line: These streets form the margin of the inner city. 3 allowance, play, leeway, latitude, scope, freedom, room, space; compass: These calculations do not provide much of a margin for error.

marginal adj. 1 borderline, minimal, small, slight, negligible, insignificant, tiny, infinitesimal: There are marginal differences in policy on this issue. 2 borderline, on the edge, disputable, questionable, doubtful, dubious: His qualifications for the job are marginal.

marine adj. 1 maritime, nautical, naval, seafaring, seagoing, ocean-going, sea: Marine commerce has declined during recent decades. 2 maritime, sea, oceanic, aquatic, salt-water, pelagic, thalassic: Many groups are concerned about the conservation of marine life.

mark n. 1 spot, stain, blemish, smear, smudge, trace, impression, dent, nick, scratch, pock-mark or pock, streak, line, Brit splodge, US splotch: One of the children had made a mark on the newly painted wall. 2 sign, symbol, insigne, emblem, device, hallmark, earmark, fingerprint, badge, characteristic, token, brand, stamp, label, identification, indication, feature, attribute, trait, quality, property: This work bears the mark of true genius. 3 standard, criterion, norm, yardstick, level, measure: I'm afraid your son's work has not come up to the mark. 4 rating, grade, grading: I'd give her a low mark for originality but high marks for technique. 5 influence, impression, effect: Her innovations have left their mark on all music composed since 1900. 6 target, goal, objective, aim, purpose, end, object: Her criticisms fell wide of the mark. 7 marker, indicator, guide, signpost, landmark: The next mark, a bell-buoy, should be left to port. 8 consequence, importance, note, noteworthiness, notability, distinction, eminence, dignity, prestige, standing, account: Granada was a place of little mark as compared with Cordova. 9 make one's mark. succeed, get ahead, triumph, distinguish oneself, attain distinction, bring honour upon oneself, acquit oneself, bring credit to oneself, have an effect, Colloq make it big, make the grade: Randolph has made his mark in the world of scholarship.

--v. 10 Sometimes, mark up. spot, stain, blemish, smear, smudge, streak, dent, trace, pock-mark, nick, scratch, cut, chip, pit, bruise: That glass has marked the finish on the table. 11 signify, specify, indicate, designate, identify, tick, label: Mark your choice with an 'X' next to the candidate's name. 12 pay attention to, attend (to), pay heed to, note, notice, take notice of, watch, see, look at, observe; respect, mind, heed, obey: Mark the way she swings the golf club. Mark my words or you'll be sorry. 13 brand, stamp, identify, characterize, distinguish: His music is marked by long atonal passages. 14 correct; grade, evaluate, assess, appraise: The teachers are busy marking exam papers. 15 mark down. a write (down), record, register, make (a) note of, note (down): Mark down these numbers in your book. b decrease, reduce, devalue, devaluate, cut, slash, discount: We marked down the prices for a quick sale. 16 mark up. a See 10, above. b increase, raise, hike, up: Prices were marked up to keep pace with inflation.

marked adj. noticeable, conspicuous, decided, pronounced, considerable, remarkable, significant, signal, unmistakable or unmistakeable, prominent, obvious, patent, evident, apparent: There is a marked improvement in your work.

market n. 1 market-place, exchange, Stock Exchange: There are some excellent buys on the market. 2 shop, store, bazaar, supermarket, Chiefly US superstore: If you are going to the market, please buy some milk. 3 demand, customer base, call: The market for computers is still growing rapidly.

--v. 4 sell, merchandise, retail, vend, peddle, hawk, make available, furnish; trade (in), buy and sell, deal in: We market these computers worldwide.

maroon v. abandon, cast away, desert, strand, forsake; isolate, seclude: They were marooned on a desert island.

marriage n. 1 matrimony, wedlock: Their marriage has lasted over forty years. 2 nuptials, wedding: The marriage took place at noon. 3 association, alliance, confederation, federation, affiliation, connection, coupling, union, merger, amalgamation, integration, Colloq hook-up: Would a marriage of the companies benefit the shareholders?

marry v. 1 wed, join in matrimony or wedlock, become man and wife, Colloq get hitched or spliced, tie the knot: They married and lived happily ever after. 2 match (up), go or fit together, fit; unite, unify, bond, weld, fuse, put together, couple, join, link; league, affiliate, ally, amalgamate, combine: The marble head, found in London, married perfectly with the torso, found in Crete. The best qualities of each earlier model are married in this new product.

marsh n. swamp, bog, fen, slough, quagmire: The marsh teems with new life in the spring.

martial adj. 1 warlike, belligerent, bellicose, pugnacious, militant:

We had no suspicion of their martial intentions. He is an expert in the martial arts. 2 military, soldierly, courageous, brave, valorous, valiant, stalwart, staunch, stout-hearted: The speech was intended to rouse the soldiers' martial spirit.

marvel v. 1 wonder (at), gape (at), be awed or amazed (by), be agog or astonished (at), gape (at): We marvelled at the way the homing pigeons found their way home.

--n. 2 wonder, miracle, phenomenon: Tammy was a marvel at fixing electrical equipment.

marvellous

adj. wonderful, astonishing, amazing, astounding, surprising, remarkable, extraordinary, phenomenal, glorious, splendid, superb, excellent, spectacular, breathtaking, miraculous, unbelievable, incredible, sensational, mind-boggling, unparalleled, Colloq terrific, great, fantastic, fabulous, smashing, Slang far-out, crazy, wild, groovy, super, out of this world, fantabulous, Brit spot or bang on, US marvy: It was a marvellous show, and Renfrew is a marvellous actor.

mask n. 1 false face, domino: She wore a mask, and I don't know who she was. 2 disguise, guise, camouflage, show, semblance, pretence, cover, cover-up, false colours, false flag, concealment, cloak, fa‡ade, veil: He wormed his way into her confidence under the mask of friendship.

--v. 3 disguise, camouflage, cover (up), conceal, hide, obscure, veil, screen, shroud: She was unable to mask her true feelings for him.

masquerade

n. 1 masked ball, masquerade ball, costume party, ballo in maschera, bal masqu,: He went to the masquerade as Lorenzo di Medici. 2 disguise, deception, pose, dissimulation, bluff, subterfuge, false show, outward show, fakery, imposture, play-acting, false front, cover-up, camouflage, Colloq act, front, Slang put-on: How long will she continue her masquerade as a wealthy widow?

--v. 3 Usually, masquerade as. pretend (to be), pass oneself off (as), impersonate, simulate, pose (as), imitate, mimic: He is a conservative masquerading as a liberal to garner votes.

mass n. 1 pile, heap, mountain, load, stack, mound, bunch, bundle, lot, batch, quantity, hoard, store, collection, accumulation, aggregation, agglomeration, congeries, assortment, miscellany, assemblage, conglomeration: There was a mass of boulders at the bottom of the cliff. 2 abundance, quantity, profusion, volume, multitude, horde, host, mob, crowd, throng, drove(s), herd(s), swarm(s), legion(s), score(s), number(s), Colloq bunch(es), ton(s), mountain, piles, bags, barrels, oodles, lots, oceans, loads, scads, US mess, slew(s): A mass of bills awaited my return from a trip abroad. Masses of people greeted us at the airport. 3 block, concretion, chunk, lump, hunk, nugget: A mass of sludge was clogging the valve. 4 majority, best or better or greater part, bulk, body, preponderance, almost all, lion's share: The great mass of the votes was still uncounted. 5 dimension, size, magnitude, bulk, bigness, massiveness, enormousness, immensity: The very mass of the elephant made it a hard target to miss. 6 the masses. the common people, the (common) herd, the proletariat, the plebeians, hoi polloi, the lower class(es), the man or woman in the street, Brit the man or woman on the Clapham omnibus, A. N. Other, US John Q. Public, John or Jane Doe or Roe: The taxes became burdensome and the masses rebelled.

--v. 7 amass, pile or heap up, gather: Thunderclouds began to mass over the mountains. 8 aggregate, accumulate, collect, assemble, congregate, meet, get or come together, gather, forgather or foregather, throng, convene, flock together, rally, group, cluster, marshal, muster, mobilize: Thousands of people massed in front of the embassy. The massed bands made a tremendous noise.

massacre n. 1 slaughter, slaughtering, carnage, annihilation, annihilating, blood bath, killing, execution, extermination, exterminating, butchery, butchering, (mass) murder, murdering, slaying, liquidation, pogrom, genocide: The massacre of millions of innocent people followed the coup.

--v. 2 slaughter, annihilate, kill, execute, exterminate, butcher, murder, slay, liquidate, destroy, eliminate, obliterate, eradicate, put to the sword, decimate, Colloq mow down, Slang bump off: It was their policy to massacre all the men and take captive all the women and children.

massage n. 1 rub-down, rub, manipulation, kneading: I felt really relaxed after the massage and steam bath.

--v. 2 rub down, manipulate, knead, palpate: She gently massaged my temples with her fingertips. 3 manipulate, handle, manoeuvre, Colloq finagle, Brit fiddle: He massaged the figures to make it look as if the company was solvent.

massive adj. big, large, oversized, huge, bulky, enormous, hulking, immense, gigantic, towering, mammoth, colossal, titanic, vast, tremendous, prodigious, mountainous, gargantuan, Brobdingnagian, Cyclopean, elephantine, jumbo, stupendous, mighty, weighty, ponderous, Literary massy, Colloq walloping, whopping, monster, Brit whacking (great), US ginormous, humongous: They built a massive wall round the city. Massive beams support the roof.

master n. 1 owner, head, chief, leader, chieftain, commander, lord, governor, director, controller, employer, manager, overseer, supervisor, superintendent, taskmaster, slave-driver, principal, sovereign, monarch, ruler, Colloq lord high muck-a-muck, Pooh-Bah, kingpin, big fish, boss, skipper, Brit gaffer, US king-fish, the man, big fish, big boss, bossman; Slang US big cheese, big wheel, Mr Big, chief or head honcho: He is master of all he surveys. Decisions about punishment are referred to the master. 2 expert, authority, genius, craftsman, adept, maestro, mastermind, past master, old hand, virtuoso, ace, professional, Colloq pro, wizard, Chiefly Brit dab hand, US crackerjack; Slang US maven or mavin: He is a master in the art of chicanery. 3 teacher, tutor, instructor, guide, leader, guru, swami: She studied under the master for years.

--adj. 4 adept, ingenious, expert, masterful, masterly, skilful, skilled, proficient: After twenty years, he became a master craftsman. 5 overall, controlling, principal, main, prime, basic, chief: Only the leader knows the master plan for conquering the planet. This is the master switch that turns off all the power. 6 main, biggest, principal, owner's: The master bedroom had a bathroom en suite.

--v. 7 learn, grasp, become expert in, know inside out and backwards, know, understand: He claims to have mastered the art of levitation. 8 control, overcome, repress, suppress, subdue, bridle, check, quell, get the better of, Colloq get a grip on: You must learn to master your emotions.

masterful adj. 1 masterly, adept, expert, excellent, superior, superb, adroit, exquisite, superlative, supreme, consummate, accomplished, peerless, matchless, first-rate, proficient, dexterous, deft, skilful, skilled, Colloq crack: She gave a masterful performance of Bruch's violin concerto. 2 authoritarian, dictatorial, tyrannical, despotic, arbitrary, domineering, imperious, overbearing, arrogant, dominating, autocratic, high-handed, magisterial, overweening, self-willed, Colloq bossy: I dislike Ian's masterful attitude, always telling everyone what to do.

mastermind

v. 1 plan, devise, conceive, think up, engineer, design, generate, create, manage, organize, develop, work up or out: It was probably Fu Manchu who masterminded this diabolical plot.

--n. 2 planner, contriver, conceiver, creator, architect, genius, mind, intellect, Colloq brain(s): it would take a mastermind to get even a pass mark on that exam.

masterpiece

n. master-work, magnum opus, chef-d'oeuvre, tour de force, jewel, work of art, work of genius, piŠce de r‚sistance: Among his many fine paintings, I consider this his masterpiece.

match n. 1 equal, equivalent, peer, equivalent, fellow, mate; parallel, replica, copy, double, twin, look-alike, facsimile, counterpart: When it comes to punning, Crosby has finally met his match. 2 contest, competition, game, meet, tourney, tournament, bout, duel, rivalry, trial: The match was between the top-seeded players. 3 marriage, betrothal, alliance, combination, compact, contract, partnership, union, affiliation: It was a match made in heaven. 4 prospect, candidate: With his inheritance, he's considered a good match.

--v. 5 match up, join, marry, unite, link, combine, put together, pair up or off, juxtapose, conjoin: However did you manage to match names and faces? Glynis matched them up at the dinner table. 6 equal, be equivalent (to), resemble, compare (with), tie, measure up (to), compete (with), vie (with), rival: His skill on the flute will never match hers. 7 fit, go with, suit, accord, agree, harmonize, go (together), coordinate, blend, correspond: Who will notice that your socks match your tie? Your eyes don't match.

matching adj. 1 corresponding, homologous, comparable, equivalent, complementary: Birds' wings and fishes' fins are matching parts. 2 analogous, like, corresponding, identical: He wore a pink jacket and matching shoes. She bought a set of matching luggage.

matchless adj. unique, original, peerless, unequalled, without equal, inimitable, unmatched, incomparable, unparalleled, beyond compare: Stefania has a contralto voice of matchless quality.

mate n. 1 companion, associate, colleague, fellow, chap, co-worker, comrade, crony, ally, friend, alter ego, Colloq chum, pal, US buddy, cohort, Slang Brit cully, china: After work, my mates and I stop off for a beer or two (or three) . 2 spouse, partner, helpmeet, helpmate, consort, husband or wife, better half, Colloq hubby, old man or lady or woman, lord and master, US bride, Slang trouble and strife (= 'wife'): He scarcely seems a worthy mate for the winner of a Miss World contest. 3 fellow, twin, counterpart, parallel, one of a pair: Have you seen the mate to this sock anywhere?

--v. 4 pair (up), match (up), marry, wed, join, unite, couple, link (up): People should be free to mate with whom they wish. 5 breed, couple, copulate, pair (up): The zoo was able to get the rhinoceroses to mate. A lion was mated with a tiger to produce a tigon. 6 match (up), fit (together), synchronize, join: I cannot get these gears to mate.

material n. 1 substance, matter, stuff, fabric: It is hard to tell what material this is made of. 2 cloth, fabric, textile, stuff: This material is too sheer for a dress. 3 constituents, elements, components: We import the raw materials and make the finished product here. 4 information, data, facts, statistics, figures, documents, documentation, papers, notes, resources, means, research, apparatus, supplies: I have not yet gathered enough material for the article.

--adj. 5 physical, tangible, concrete, solid, real, substantive, substantial, palpable, corporeal, bodily: It was many years before scientists could persuade people that air is a material substance. 6 consequential, important, significant, serious, substantial: How could one horseshoe nail be material in the outcome of a battle? 7 worldly, earthly, mundane, temporal, non-spiritual, secular, lay, materialistic: He ponders the abstract, not the base, material things of everyday life.

materialistic

adj. expedient, money-oriented, possession-oriented, greedy, Slang yuppy: He's very materialistic and only married her for her money.

materialize

v. 1 appear, turn up, become visible, become manifest, be revealed, take shape or form, form, emerge: A hulking shape began to materialize out of the fog. 2 happen, come to pass, take place, occur, become manifest or real, be realized, become an actuality, be actualized: The dream of a united Europe is finally materializing.

materially

adv. substantially, palpably, significantly, seriously, essentially, basically, considerably, greatly, much, in the long run, at bottom: I doubt that his criticism will materially affect the success of the play.

maternal adj. motherly, warm, nurturing, caring, understanding, affectionate, tender, kind, kindly, devoted, fond, doting; maternalistic: Her interest in him is strictly maternal.

maternity n. 1 motherhood, parenthood, pregnancy: Maternity brings about great changes in a woman's life. 2 parenthood, motherhood: The maternity of the child was not questioned until the hospital revealed that there had been a mix-up in the nursery.

mathematical

adj. arithmetical; precise, exact, rigorous: He went about his plans with mathematical precision.

matrimonial

adj. marital, marriage, wedding, conjugal, nuptial; married, wedded, connubial: She obtained a court injunction banning him from the matrimonial home. They enjoy matrimonial bliss.

matter n. 1 material, substance, stuff, sum and substance: Some yellowish matter oozed out of the wound. It is a question of mind over matter. 2 situation, issue, question, affair, business, subject, topic, condition, thing, fact, concern; occurrence, episode, incident, event, occasion, proceeding: It was a matter of life and death. His loss of face is not a matter that need involve you. 3 problem, difficulty, trouble, complication, worry, upset, dilemma, quandary, enigma, puzzle: What is the matter? 4 content, essentials, pith, context, theme, argument, purport, implication; signification, meaning, meaningfulness, import, importance, significance, moment, weight, consequence: Pay attention to the matter in his speech, not his manner. It is of little matter to me whether you go or not. 5 amount, sum, quantity, question: It was only a matter of a few pennies' difference.

--v. 6 be important or of importance, count, be of consequence, make a difference, mean something: What you think matters a great deal.

matter-of-fact
adj. straightforward, direct, forthright, sober, factual, unimaginative, unartistic, prosaic, unpoetic, dry, dry-as-dust, dull, boring, tiresome, flat, mundane, lifeless, featureless, unvarnished, colourless, unembellished, unadorned: The report contained a matter-of-fact description of the events.

mature adj. 1 adult, grown (up), full-grown, fully grown, of age, fully fledged, full-fledged, fully developed, matured, experienced, knowledgeable, sophisticated: At twenty-two, she is mature enough to be on her own. 2 ripe, ready, ripened, mellow, aged,' seasoned: A good wine, like fruit, should not be consumed till it is mature. 3 complete, matured, perfect, perfected, polished, refined, ready, fully developed, consummated: Our plans are not yet mature.

--v. 4 grow up, age, develop, come of age; Brit be one's age, US act one's age: Has he matured sufficiently to be trusted alone in the house for the weekend? I wish he'd mature a bit more. 5 ripen, mellow, age, season; maturate: Fruit that has matured on the plant tastes best. 6 develop, perfect, refine, polish, maturate, bring to fruition: Their plans for major changes in company structure have not yet fully matured.

maturity n. 1 adulthood, majority, full growth or development: Maturity is as much a state of mind as a matter of age. 2 ripeness, readiness, mellowness; maturation: Different wines need ageing for different periods to attain maturity. 3 readiness, perfection, completion, fullness, consummation, operability, applicability; maturation: Their plans were brought to maturity.

maudlin adj. sentimental, (over)emotional, mawkish, romantic; tearful, lachrymose, weepy, teary(-eyed); Colloq mushy, slushy, Brit soppy, US soupy: He gets maudlin thinking about his childhood in the countryside.

maxim n. saying, proverb, axiom, aphorism, adage, byword, saw, apophthegm or apothegm, epigram, motto, slogan; mot, witticism; clich,, truism: Her maxim is, 'What you don't know, can't hurt you'.

maximize n. 1 increase, broaden, improve, magnify, augment, add to, expand, build up, enlarge: He maximizes his chances for winning by betting on several numbers. To compete, you must maximize your productivity. 2 inflate, overplay, overdo, overstate, exaggerate, oversell, make much of, overstress, (over)colour, enhance, embroider (on), embellish, elaborate, magnify: Roland tends to maximize his role while minimizing others'.

maximum n. 1 most, utmost, uttermost, greatest, peak, extreme, extremity, pinnacle, top, highest, (upper) limit: Turn the volume up to the maximum. 2 zenith, pinnacle, peak, limit, apex, acme, apogee, climax, crest, high(est) point, top, summit: Her career reached its maximum in the 1930s.

--adj. 3 maximal, greatest, most, utmost, uttermost, superlative, supreme, paramount, extreme, highest, top, topmost, climactic, crowning: The maximum amount that I can afford for a car is œ2000.

maybe adv. perhaps, possibly, Literary perchance, Archaic or dialect mayhap, Archaic peradventure: We could go and see a film tonight, or maybe have a meal somewhere.

mayhem n. maihem, violence, havoc, destruction, disorder, devastation, chaos; fracas, commotion, confusion: Someone screamed 'Fire!', and the ensuing mayhem was unbelievable.

maze n. labyrinth, complex, intricacy, twistings and turnings, convolutions: His application has been lost in the maze of bureaucratic bungling.

13.2 meadow...

=-

meadow n. field, meadow-land, pasture, pasture land, Archaic or literary lea, mead: The entire meadow was dotted with little puffy clouds of white sheep.

meagre adj. 1 scanty, scant, poor, paltry, inadequate, skimpy, scrimpy, sparse, spare, insufficient, bare, puny, piddling, trifling, pathetic, exiguous, Colloq measly: Angela scraped out a meagre living as a shop assistant. The meagre supplies wouldn't last another day. 2 spare, skinny, scrawny, bony, emaciated, gaunt, thin, lean, bare-boned, (half-)starved, underfed, undernourished, starving: The meagre faces of the survivors told of their ordeal. 3 spare, plain, bare-boned, unadorned, unembellished, unelaborate, unelaborated, simple, simplified, oversimplified, bare, inadequate, deficient, undetailed, indefinite, non-specific, general, broad, loose, vague: The police have only a meagre description to go on. 4 unfruitful, infertile, barren, deficient, poor, unproductive: This land is too meagre to provide the people with a living.

meal n. 1 food, repast, victuals, nourishment, spread, collation, refection; dinner, supper, breakfast, lunch, luncheon, Brit tea: Meals will be served in the main dining room. 2 make a meal of. overdo, overplay, go overboard, go or carry to extremes, carry or go too far, do to excess: Perkins is bound to make a meal of the slightest thing.

mealy-mouthed
adj. mincing, reticent, reluctant, hesitant, equivocal,

equivocating, ambiguous, indirect, unwilling to call a spade a spade, euphemistic, roundabout, vague, circumlocutory, periphrastic, hypocritical, deceitful, artful, slick, oily, unctuous: All you'll get from that mealy-mouthed hypocrite is platitudinous twaddle.

mean° v. 1 intend, design, purpose, plan, aim, have in mind, contemplate, have in view; want, wish, expect, hope; be motivated by, have as justification: I did mean to phone you but had no time. I am sure she meant nothing by her remark. 2 denote, signify, indicate, note, specify, designate, represent, betoken, signal, carry, convey, drive at, refer to, allude to, communicate, express, bring out, get over or across; imply, suggest, connote, intimate, hint (at): What does 'canicular' mean? It depends on what you mean by 'liberty'. The footprints meant that someone had already been here. 3 portend, show, foretell, foreshadow, promise, presage, augur, herald: Those clouds mean that it will soon rain. 4 carry or have the weight or significance or importance of: Money means little to someone in her circumstances.

meaný adj. 1 stingy, miserly, tight, close, cheap, parsimonious, penurious, stinting, niggardly, penny-pinching, tight-fisted, close-fisted, mercenary, uncharitable, ungenerous, mean-spirited, unaccommodating, small, petty, Colloq near, money-grubbing, measly, Brit mingy: He is far too mean to buy anyone a Christmas present. It seems rather a mean contribution to the fund, given his wealth. 2 lowly, low, base, inferior, abject, menial, servile, degraded, degenerate, undignified, ignoble, plebeian, proletarian, modest, humble, common: He rose to a position of great power in spite of his mean background. 3 disgraceful, run-down, poor, sorry, miserable, scruffy, seedy, scurvy, shabby, squalid, wretched, vile, mangy, sordid, contemptible, dismal, dreary, abysmal: They live in very mean circumstances. 4 unkind, malicious, cruel, unaccommodating, disobliging: It was very mean of you to steal that toy from the baby. 5 cantankerous, churlish, nasty, hostile, ill-tempered, bad-tempered, sour, unpleasant: That mean old lady would never even talk to us. 6 excellent, wonderful, marvellous, great, exceptional, effective, skilful, skilled, Slang far-out, US bad: The saxophonist in that combo is one mean cat.

mean° n. 1 average, middle, norm, (happy) medium: We are attempting to achieve the mean between the two extremes. 2 by all means. a absolutely, definitely, certainly, surely, assuredly, of course, positively: By all means, do tell us what you think is wrong. b in any event, at all events, no matter what, without fail, at any cost, in any case: By all means, you must do what you think is right. 3 by means of. by dint of, via, through, by way of, with the help or aid of, employing, using, utilizing: She gained access to her victims by means of the telephone directory. We entered by means of the front door. 4 means. a instrument, agency, method, process, technique, mode, manner, way(s), approach, course, procedure, avenue, medium, vehicle: If you can find the means, then get the job done at once. b resources, funds, money, wherewithal, capital, finances, backing, support: I wanted to go to Australia to see my brother, but I simply didn't have the means. c substance, wealth, property, position, financial stability: She is a woman of considerable means. 5 by no means. by no manner of means, in no way, not at all, definitely or absolutely not, on no account, not conceivably, not in one's wildest dreams or fantasies, not by any stretch of the imagination, Colloq no way, US no way Jos,: This is sometimes but by no means always the case. He is by no means a great artist.

--adj. 6 middle, centre, intermediate, medial, medium, median, average, middling: The mean temperature for the year has increased.

meander v. 1 wander, ramble, zigzag, snake, wind, twist, turn; stroll, amble, rove, Colloq mosey, Brit swan around or about: The river meandered with a mazy motion through the meadows. We meandered through the forest.

--n. 2 Often, meanders. meandering(s), turn(s), turning(s), twist(s), twisting(s), winding(s), curve(s), curving(s), loop(s), looping(s), bend(s), coil(s), zigzag(s), convolutions; tortuosities, flexuosities, anfractuosities: We followed the river's meanders till we came to the ruined church.

meandering

adj. wandering, roundabout, circuitous, sinuous, tortuous, winding, serpentine, indirect, flexuous, curvy, crooked, convoluted, labyrinthine, mazy, anfractuous: The meandering road followed the river through the valley.

meaning n. 1 sense, import, content, signification, denotation, message, substance, gist: The meaning of the word 'lucid' is clear. 2 purport, implication, drift, spirit, connotation, significance, intention: You understand my meaning, so I need not explain. 3 interpretation, explanation: What is the meaning of my dream about being attacked by my philodendron?

meaningful
adj. 1 significant, important, consequential, serious, sober, deep, substantial, pithy, substantive, telling, weighty, valid, relevant: Tired of casual encounters, he was ready for a meaningful relationship. 2 suggestive, pregnant, tell-tale, pointed, sententious, significant, expressive, eloquent: She gave him a meaningful look.

meaningless
adj. 1 empty, hollow, vacuous, unsubstantial, absurd, silly, foolish, fatuous, asinine, ridiculous, preposterous, nonsensical: He gave some meaningless excuse for having forgotten the appointment. This gibberish is entirely meaningless to me. 2 ineffective, ineffectual, inefficacious, bootless, unavailing, to no avail, trivial, nugatory, trifling, puny, paltry, worthless, not worth anything or a straw or a rap, valueless, inconsequential, unimportant, of no moment, insubstantial, vain, pointless, senseless, purposeless, undirected, irrelevant, insignificant: Considering the enemy forces, anything we could do would be meaningless.

means n. See mean°, 4, above.

meantime n., adv. See meanwhile, below.

meanwhile n. 1 interim, meantime, interval: In the meanwhile, you could study for the exam.

--adv. 2 in the meanwhile, meantime, in the meantime, in the interim, for the moment, temporarily, for now, for the time being, during the interval, in the intervening time: Ruth was watching TV; meanwhile George was washing up.

measly adj. sparse, scant, scanty, meagre, paltry, pathetic, skimpy, puny, piddling, miserly, niggardly, miserable, beggarly, stingy, Colloq Brit mingy: 'Nouvelle cuisine' is the name given to a restaurateur's design to serve decorative, but measly, portions.

measure n. 1 amount, quantity, magnitude, amplitude, size, bulk, mass, extent, reach, dimension, scope, proportions, range, spread; capacity, volume; width, length, breadth, height; weight: It is difficult to calculate the measure of an irregularly shaped object. 2 scale, gauge or technical gage, yardstick, rule, US litmus test: I cannot determine the length without a proper measure. 3 system, standard, criterion, rule, method; barometer, Richter scale: The measure by which ice-cream is sold ought to be weight, not volume. What sort of measure do you apply when judging character? 4 assessment, evaluation, valuation, appraisal, value, gauge or gage, rank, rating, measurement, stamp, estimation: It is not easy to get the measure of a man who wants to marry your daughter. 5 quota, allotment, ration, share, amount, degree, proportion, quantity, allowance; portion, part: He was accorded a measure of freedom in choosing the method for getting the job done. She has had her measure of praise. 6 Often, measures. step(s), procedure, proceeding, action, course (of action), plan, method, means, avenue, tactic(s), way, direction, approach, technique: They took measures to ensure that it never happens again. 7 bill, resolution, legislation, act, statute, law; plan, proposal: A measure to change the speed limit is before the council. 8 bound, limit, end, extreme, extent, limitation, moderation, control, constraint, restraint: Drug trafficking has gone beyond all measure in some countries. 9 beat, rhythm, cadence, metre, time; melody, tune, bar, theme, motif: The ambassador entered, and the band played in stately measures. 10 for good measure. to boot, in addition, additionally, as a dividend, into the bargain, besides, as or for a bonus, moreover, furthermore: The job includes a company car and, for good measure, free medical insurance.

--v. 11 rank, rate, gauge or gage, meter, weigh, calculate, reckon, compute, calibrate, determine, ascertain, figure out or up, assess, appraise, estimate, evaluate, judge, value; survey, find out: We must measure the effect of the new safety regulations on our equipment budget. Public acceptance of the new product may be difficult to measure. 12 proportion, pace, adapt, gauge, relate, tailor, fit, adjust, regulate, control: Teachers should measure homework assignments according to pupils' available time. Measure your words when speaking to young children. 13 measure off or out. mark off or out, limit, delimit, fix, pace off or out, lay off: Now measure off exactly 122.5 metres due north. 14 measure out. mete out, dole out, ration (out), parcel out, apportion, allot, share out, assign, allocate; give out, deal out, distribute, issue, pass out, hand out, dispense, disperse, spread around or about: The relief workers measured out food and water to the victims of the famine. 15 measure up (to). a meet, equal, fulfil, match, reach, attain: The first eleven have not measured up to their coach's expectations. Will they ever measure up? b qualify (for), be suitable (for), be equal to, be fit or fitted for, be adequate (to), be up to, Colloq make the grade, come up to scratch, be up to snuff, US cut the mustard: If Clive gets the assignment, are you sure that he'll measure up? No one else measures up to the job.

measured adj. 1 slow, regulated, unhurried, leisurely, stately, majestic, dignified, sedate, solemn: The silent procession moved through the streets at a measured pace. 2 careful, cautious, prudent, calculated, studied, considered, deliberate, systematic, sober, intentional, planned, regulated, premeditated, well-thought-out, reasoned: He planned the murder with the same measured deliberation he used in writing computer programs. 3 rhythmic(al), regular, cadenced, steady, uniform, even, monotonous: The measured marching of the soldiers echoed through the night. 4 precise, regulated, exact, predetermined, modulated, quantified; clockwork: A measured amount of each ingredient is automatically added at each stage of the manufacturing process.

measurement

n. 1 measuring, reckoning, gauging or gaging, ascertainment, determination, assessment, estimation, appraisal, evaluation, valuation, judgement, calculation, computation, mensuration, commensuration; metage: The measurement of astronomical distances can only be approximate. 2 dimension, extent, size, amount, magnitude, amplitude; length, breadth, height, width, depth; area; volume, capacity; weight, tonnage; (elapsed) time, period; (square or cubic) footage, (square) yardage, mileage, acreage,: I need the measurements of the room to order the fitted carpet.

meat n. 1 flesh; food, nourishment, sustenance, viands, victuals, nutriment, provisions, provender, comestibles, edibles, eatables, Colloq eats, chow, grub: She's turned vegetarian and won't touch meat in any form. 2 pith, core, heart, marrow, kernel, vital part, essence, gist, substance, basics, essentials, crux: The sub-plot seems to swamp the real meat of the play.

mechanical
adj. 1 automatic, automated, machine-driven; machine-made: Early mechanical toys are sometimes quite intricate. This is a mechanical, not a hand-crafted device. 2 automatic, reflex, involuntary, instinctive, routine, habitual, unconscious, perfunctory, machine-like, robot-like: Good manners ought to be mechanical. Blinking is a mechanical reaction to bright light. 3 impersonal, distant, cold, matter-of-fact, unfeeling, insensible, ritualistic, lifeless, spiritless, dead, inanimate, unanimated, unemotional, unartistic, mechanistic, colourless, uninspired, business-like: The girl at the check-out gave us a mechanical smile.

mechanism n. 1 device, appliance, contrivance, apparatus, instrument, machine: This mechanism will detonate the bomb at the right moment. 2 machinery, workings, works, structure, system, organization, arrangement: Astrophysicists can offer only an imperfect account of the mechanism of the universe. 3 way, means, method, procedure, approach, technique, medium, process, agency: We shall use every mechanism at our disposal to have the case heard by a different judge. 4 materialism, mechanicalism, physicalism, logical positivism, identity theory, monism: His notions of mechanism reject the idea of free-thinking individualism.

meddle v. interfere, intrude, butt in, pry, intervene, interlope, tamper, snoop, Rare intermeddle, Colloq stick or poke one's nose in, have a or one's finger in the pie, kibitz: Why are you always meddling in things that don't concern you?

mediator n. arbitrator, arbiter, referee, umpire, judge, negotiator, intermediary, go-between, middleman, moderator, liaison, intercessor, interceder, conciliator, appeaser, peacemaker: To avoid a lawsuit, they agreed to allow a mediator to settle their differences.

medicinal adj. healing, remedial, therapeutic, curative, restorative, sanative; medical, iatric(al), Medicine roborant, analeptic, alexipharmic: The doctor prescribed a medicinal ointment for the rash.

medicine n. medication, medicament, remedy, drug, pharmaceutical, prescription, Archaic physic; nostrum, panacea, cure-all: There is no medicine that can cure your affliction.

mediocre adj. middling, indifferent, ordinary, commonplace, average, medium, everyday, US garden-variety, run-of-the-mill, pedestrian, undistinguished, uninspired, unimaginative, unexceptional, tolerable, fair, not (that or too) good, not bad, second-rate, third-rate, inferior, poor, Brit common-or-garden variety, US garden-variety, Colloq so so, fair to middling, nothing to brag or to write home about, no great shakes: It was a mediocre play, and we couldn't be bothered to sit through it.

meditate v. 1 reflect, think, muse, ponder, study, ruminate, cogitate, contemplate, cerebrate, be lost in thought, be in a brown study: Please don't interrupt me while I'm meditating. 2 Often, meditate on or upon. consider, contemplate, mull over, reflect on or upon, ponder on or over, chew over, plan, scheme, devise, design, conceive, frame, think up, have in mind: She was meditating revenge, while I was meditating on how to discourage her.

meditative
adj. thoughtful, pensive, contemplative, reflective, studious, cogitative, excogitative, abstracted, rapt, engrossed, lost or deep in thought, ruminative, brooding: She suddenly stopped talking and became meditative, looking at me with a curious expression.

medium adj. 1 average, middle, mid, medial, median, normal, standard, usual, everyday, ordinary; mid-sized: His wife has an estate car of medium size - nothing extravagant. 2 See mediocre, above.

--n. 3 average, middle, mid-point, compromise, centre, mean, norm, mediocrity: Instead of going to extremes, try for the happy medium. 4 atmosphere, environment, ambience or ambiance, milieu: The air serves as a medium of sound. The light is refracted as it passes into a denser medium. 5 means, method, mode, approach, instrumentality, device, mechanism, intermediation, technique, contrivance, agency, expedient, way, course, route, road, avenue, channel, conveyance, vehicle: Latin and Greek were the media of the scholarship, the science, and the theology of the Middle Ages. Television is a powerful advertising medium.

medley n. mixture, assortment, combination, miscellany, m,lange, collection, conglomeration, agglomeration, hotchpotch or US and Canadian hodgepodge, olio, blend, gallimaufry, omnium gatherum, pastiche, pot-pourri, salmagundi, olla podrida, mishmash, jumble, mess, farrago, stew, goulash, Colloq mixed bag: The programme consisted of a medley of show tunes.

meek adj. 1 modest, humble, submissive, unassuming, unambitious, unpretentious, mild, bland, patient, deferential, shy, retiring, lowly: The meek shall inherit the earth. 2 tame, timid, weak, docile, compliant, submissive, yielding, acquiescent, docile, unaggressive, non-militant, tractable, manageable, subdued, repressed, spiritless, suppressed, broken, Colloq wimpish: The people are meek and will not offer any resistance to such dictatorial government.

meet° v. 1 encounter, come across, chance on or upon, happen on or upon, stumble on or into, see, Colloq run across or into, bump into: Guess who I met in the park this morning! 2 Often, meet with. rendezvous (with), get together (with); convene, assemble, gather, collect, forgather or foregather, congregate: I met with the mysterious stranger as arranged. The board meets at 9.00 am. 3 make the acquaintance of, be introduced to, first encounter, come across, find: Where did you meet your wife? 4 link up, join, come together, unite, adjoin, abut, touch, intersect: The horizon is where the sky meets earth. 5 answer, deal with, handle, satisfy, fulfil, take care of, dispose of, heed, observe, carry out; gratify, pay, settle, defray, liquidate: Will these precautions meet the requirements of the Department of the Environment? The police advised the parents not to meet the kidnapper's demands. 6 meet with. encounter, be met by, experience; undergo, endure, suffer, have, go through: All our efforts met with little or no response. Gary met with an accident yesterday.

--n. 7 competition, contest, meeting, match, tourney, tournament; muster, rally: The track meet was won by our team.

meetý adj. fitting, suitable, appropriate, proper, fit, congruous: It is meet to offer praises to God.

meeting n. 1 appointment, engagement, rendezvous, encounter, assignation, tryst, Slang US meet: She arranged a meeting with her ex-husband. 2 assembly, convention, conference, gathering, congress, conclave, session, congregation, convocation, US caucus, Colloq get-together: Nominations for next year's officers will be presented at the next meeting. 3 convergence, converging, confluence, joining, union, junction, conjunction, intersection: The earliest settlement was at the meeting of the two rivers. 4 See meet, 7, above.

melancholy

adj. 1 sad, morose, depressed, unhappy, dejected, despondent, blue, downhearted, glum, gloomy, woeful, woebegone, lugubrious, disconsolate, downcast, dispirited, low-spirited, cheerless, crestfallen, chap-fallen, forlorn, heartbroken, mournful, sorrowful, miserable, dismal, Colloq down in the mouth, (down) in the dumps, low: Harold has been melancholy ever since Lucy left.

--n. 2 sadness, sorrow, misery, woe, gloom, unhappiness, blues, moroseness, depression, dejection, dejectedness, despondence, despondency, downheartedness, glumness, gloominess, woefulness, lugubriousness, disconsolateness, dispiritedness, cheerlessness, mournfulness, sorrowfulness, miserableness, dolour, anguish: Getting Harold's mind off his problems may relieve his melancholy.

mellow adj. 1 soft, juicy, luscious, delicious, rich, sweet, flavourful, full-flavoured, ready, ripe, mature, ripened, aged: She set before us a dish of mellow peaches. Amontillado sherry is noted for its mellow taste. 2 musical, melodious, full, pure, rich, sweet, dulcet, mellifluous, euphonious, vibrant: Her voice was low, mellow, and suggestive. 3 soft, softened, subtle, muted, pastel: The mellow shades of this painting would fit well into the d‚cor. 4 easygoing, genial, gentle, good-natured, easy, cordial, friendly, warm, amiable, agreeable, pleasant, cheerful, happy, jovial, felicitous: Patrick seems to have become more mellow with age.

--v. 5 mature, ripen, age, season, sweeten, develop, improve (with age), soften: Frank has mellowed since taking up golf.

melodious adj. sweet(-sounding), dulcet, tuneful, euphonious, harmonious, melodic, lyrical, musical, mellifluous, mellisonant, silvery, golden: I agreed with her father that Sylvia has a most melodious voice.

melodramatic
adj. sensational, sensationalistic, dramatic, stagy, theatrical, emotionalistic, (over-)sentimental, (over-)sentimentalized, overdrawn, overworked, overwrought, overdone, exaggerated, blood-and-thunder, histrionic, Colloq hammy, US schmaltzy, hokey: The slightest thing that happened to him he blew up with melodramatic effect to elicit Maria's sympathy.

melody n. 1 song, tune, air, strain, measure, theme, refrain: Isn't that the melody from Mimi's aria in La BohŠme ? 2 tunefulness, melodiousness, euphoniousness, euphony, harmony, musicality, sweetness: The older music seems to be marked by so much more melody than rock 'n' roll.

melt v. 1 soften, thaw, liquefy, fuse, dissolve, liquidize, deliquesce: You'd better eat that ice-cream before it melts. 2 soften, thaw, mollify, assuage, touch, move, disarm, mellow: The look on the child's face melted his icy reserve. 3 Usually, melt into. blend, fade, merge, disappear, dissolve, shrink: As soon as the police arrived, Phyllis tried to melt into the background. 4 melt away. disappear, dissolve, vanish, evaporate, go away, fade, pass, decline, decrease, shrink, dwindle, diminish: When the company began to make a profit, all his previous reservations melted away.

member n. colleague, associate, fellow: I am going to propose Fred as a member of the club.

memento n. 1 souvenir, keepsake, remembrance, relic, trophy, token: I kept his medals as a memento of our time together. 2 mementos. memorabilia: There will be an auction of war mementos next week.

memoir n. 1 account, report, reportage, narrative, essay, dissertation, disquisition, paper, journal, record, biography, life: They found her memoir about life in the jungle very exciting. 2 memoirs. autobiography, reminiscences, recollections, memories, diary, confessions, letters, life story; annals, history, account(s), record(s), chronology: She was reading the memoirs of Henry Kissinger.

memorable adj. unforgettable, catchy, never-to-be-forgotten, noteworthy, notable, remarkable, significant, important, worthy, momentous, eventful, historic, illustrious, celebrated, great: His first book contains many memorable and quotable passages.

memorandum

n. note, record, minute, reminder, message, Brit chit or chitty, Colloq memo: Send a memorandum reminding them of the meeting.

memorial adj. 1 commemorative: A memorial plaque will be dedicated to him tomorrow.

--n. 2 monument, marker, plaque, cenotaph, statue, memento, remembrance, reminder, souvenir: Let this serve as a memorial to those who died in the wars. Wreaths were laid at the foot of the memorial.

memorialize

v. honour, commemorate, pay homage or respect or tribute to, remember, eulogize, celebrate, mark: His life, devoted to botany, is memorialized in these beautiful gardens.

memorize v. learn by heart or rote, commit to memory, learn word for word, retain; remember: He memorized the entire Rime of the Ancient Mariner .

memory n. 1 recall, recollection, retention: My memory of the incident is very vivid. She has a poor memory for faces. 2 recollection, reminiscence, thought: The interviewer was drawing on grandfather's memories of the 1920s. 3 remembrance, honour, homage, respect, tribute, celebration: He wrote a sequence of poems in memory of a dear friend.

menace v. 1 threaten, intimidate, daunt, terrorize, terrify, cow, bully, frighten, scare, alarm: The loan sharks menaced him when he refused to pay.

--n. 2 threat, danger, peril, hazard, risk: The sunken wreck is a menace to navigation. 3 intimidation, scare, threat, warning, commination: According to law, a menace alone does not constitute an injury.

menacing adj. threatening, looming, impending, ominous, frightening, terrifying, intimidating, minacious, minatory or minatorial, louring or lowering; dangerous, perilous, hazardous, risky, chancy: Menacing storm clouds scudded across the darkening sky.

mend v. 1 repair, fix, patch (up), rectify, correct, remedy, restore, rehabilitate; heal: When will you get round to mending the roof? 2 correct, improve, better, ameliorate, reform, revise, rectify, set or put right, emend: When are you going to mend your ways? 3 heal, improve, recover, convalesce, recuperate, get better: It took me a few months to mend after the accident.

--n. 4 repair, patch: You can hardly see where the mend is. 5 on the mend. recovering, recuperating, convalescing, convalescent, improving: The good news is that father is on the mend after his attack.

menial adj. 1 lowly, servile, humble, subservient, base, low, mean, slavish, demeaning, degrading, ignoble; routine, unskilled: He took a number of menial jobs to pay for his daughter's wedding. 2 servile, fawning, grovelling, toadying, sycophantic, obsequious, cringing, time-serving, flattering, snivelling, Colloq boot-licking, Taboo slang brown-nosing: His insecurity makes him surround himself with menial hangers-on.

--n. 3 lackey, flunkey, serf, slave, underling, minion, Brit fag, Colloq Brit dogsbody, skivvy, US gofer: He works as one of the menials in the hotel kitchen. 4 toady, sycophant, yes-man, lickspittle, leech, parasite, time-server, Colloq bootlicker, Taboo slang brown-nose(r): The film star was attended by a retinue of menials, all anxious to keep in her favour.

mental adj. 1 intellectual, cognitive, cerebral, perceptual, rational, conceptual, theoretical, noetic, abstract: The boy staggered us with his ability to perform rapid mental arithmetical calculations. 2 lunatic, mad, crazy, psychotic, demented, mentally ill, unstable, unbalanced, deranged, disturbed, daft, certifiable, Slang off one's rocker, nutty, batty, balmy or barmy, loony, screwy, bonkers, crackers, nuts, bananas, loco: My great-aunt has gone a bit mental in her old age.

mentality n. 1 intelligence, brain, capacity, intellect, wit, sense, judgement, acuity, acumen, I.Q., rationality, understanding: I'd say that Frank is a man of average mentality. 2 inclination, attitude, bent, mind-set, disposition, frame of mind, temperament, outlook, view: The news betrays little about what is actually happening, but much about the mentality of the leadership. They criticized Britain's 'island mentality'.

mention v. 1 speak or write about, refer to, allude to, touch on or upon, make mention (of), bring up or in, introduce, broach, call or direct attention to, note, name, cite, acknowledge; point out, indicate, make known, adduce, report, quote: Sergeant Payne was mentioned in dispatches from the front. He mentions the works of Conrad in support of his thesis. 2 divulge, reveal, intimate, disclose, impart, suggest, animadvert on or upon, hint (at), imply, insinuate: Did he mention that Liz was present?

--n. 3 reference, allusion, note, naming, citation, mentioning, Colloq cite: There was a mention of you in the newspaper today. 4 recognition, tribute, acknowledgement, kudos, praise: She won no prize but came in for an honourable mention. 5 announcement, reference, referral, remark: The speaker's mention of the conference reminded me of something.

mercantile

adj. commercial, business, trade, marketing, market: The book dealt with the mercantile affairs of the Hanseatic League.

mercenary adj. 1 money-oriented, grasping, greedy, acquisitive, covetous, predatory, avaricious, venal, Colloq money-grubbing: She objected that the 'financial world' ought to be renamed the 'mercenary world'. 2 venal, bribable, corrupt, bought, Colloq US on the take: They found themselves a mercenary judge and the indictment was quashed.

--n. 3 hireling, legionnaire, soldier of fortune: The highly trained task force was made up entirely of mercenaries.

merchandise

n. 1 goods, commodities, products, stock, staples, produce: The merchandise you ordered was shipped yesterday.

--v. 2 trade, deal in, traffic in, market, distribute, retail, (buy and) sell, promote, advertise: We are merchandising the new product line via direct mail.

merchant n. 1 dealer, retailer, seller, shopkeeper, store owner, trader, tradesman or tradeswoman, vendor: High Street merchants are complaining about a decline in sales. 2 pedlar, hawker; (travelling) salesman, (sales) representative, commercial traveller, huckster, door-to-door salesman, US old-fashioned drummer, Colloq (sales) rep: His work as an itinerant merchant took him away from home most of the week. 3 distributor, wholesaler, jobber, broker, agent, forwarder; businessman, merchant prince, mogul, tycoon, magnate, industrialist, US baron: She comes from a family of steel merchants.

merciful adj. compassionate, sympathetic, forgiving, kind, kindly, clement, kind-hearted, forbearing, sparing, lenient, tender, humane, liberal, mild, tender-hearted, soft-hearted, gracious, generous, magnanimous, benignant, beneficent, charitable, thoughtful, considerate, indulgent, big: She begged the governor to be merciful and to spare her life.

merciless adj. cruel, pitiless, ruthless, heartless, unmerciful, inhumane, inhuman, brutal, savage, barbarous, barbaric, barbarian, crude, rude, rough, harsh, tough, callous, hard, hard-hearted, illiberal, tyrannical, stony-hearted, cold, severe, unsparing, insensitive, indifferent, unsympathetic, unforgiving, ungracious, malevolent, thoughtless, uncharitable, inconsiderate, unmoved, unbending, inflexible, relentless, unrelenting, inexorable: Their captors proved to be utterly merciless. The merciless sun beat down on the desert outpost.

mercy n. compassion, pity, forbearance, quarter, tolerance, sympathy, favour, forgiveness, kindness, kindliness, leniency, tenderness, humanity, humaneness, liberality, kind-heartedness, tender-heartedness, soft-heartedness, graciousness, generosity, magnanimity, benignity, beneficence, charity, thoughtfulness, consideration, indulgence: May the Lord have mercy on your soul. We could expect no mercy from that slave-driver.

mere   adj. bare, basic, scant, stark, sheer; absolute, unmixed, only, just, nothing but, pure (and simple), unmitigated, undiluted: She was a mere slip of a girl. We need something more to go on than mere hearsay evidence.

merely   adv. 1 only, simply; basically, purely, essentially, fundamentally, at bottom: I was merely going to ask if you'd like to go to the cinema. 2 only, no more than; barely, scarcely, simply, solely, entirely: She was merely the scullery-maid. We can't unlock the safe merely on your authority.

merge   v. combine, coalesce, unite, join, amalgamate, consolidate, pool, blend, mix, mingle, commingle, fuse: If we merge our companies, we shall save on overhead costs.

merger   n. combination, coalescence, union, merging, amalgamation, consolidation, coalition, pooling, blending, mixing, mingling, commingling, fusing, fusion: A merger of the two firms might result in a monopoly.

merit   n. 1 worth, worthiness, value, excellence, quality, virtue, good, goodness: Philip's plan has a good deal of merit. 2 Often, merits. assets, strong point, advantage, rights and wrongs: What exactly are the merits of his approach over mine? The case should be tried on its own merits.

--v. 3 earn, deserve, warrant, rate, have a right or claim to, be entitled to, be qualified for, be worthy of: What gave you the idea that you merited any special consideration?

meritorious

adj. honourable, laudable, praiseworthy, commendable, creditable, admirable, estimable, excellent, exemplary, outstanding: Penny has won the company award for meritorious service five months in a row.

merriment n. jollity, joviality, merrymaking, revelry, gaiety, high or good spirits, mirth, mirthfulness, joyfulness, felicity, jubilation, festivity, exhilaration, buoyancy, exuberance, cheer, cheerfulness, glee, fun, hilarity, enjoyment, happiness, blithefulness, blithesomeness, frolicking: Everyone joined in the merriment at the office party.

merry   adj. 1 cheerful, happy, gay, cheery, jolly, jovial, in high or good spirits, mirthful, joyful, joyous, hilarious, jubilant, rejoicing, festive, exhilarating, exuberant, vivacious, convivial, buoyant, gleeful, blithe, blithesome, carefree, light-hearted, delighted: Didn't we have a merry old time at the Christmas party! 2 make merry. revel, celebrate, carouse, frolic: The guests made merry till the wee hours of the morning.

mesh   n. 1 mesh-work, network, netting, net, web, webbing, lattice, lattice-work, screen, screening, interlacing, lace-work, grid, grate, grating, grater, sieve, strainer, trellis, trellis-work, decussation, Technical rete, reticle or reticule or graticule, reticulation, plexus, plexure, reticulum; interstice: The mesh of the hammock broke and I fell to the ground. 2 Often, meshes. grip, clutches, grasp, toils, web, trap, entanglement, tangle, complex, complexity, intricacy: Her papers were lost in the meshes of the filing system.

--v. 3 catch, entangle, enmesh, grab, trap, entrap, snare, ensnare, involve: I became meshed inextricably in the complexities of her life. 4 engage, fit (together), dovetail, knit, enmesh, match, interlock: After they were aligned, the gears meshed perfectly.

mess   n. 1 chaos, disorder, disarray, disorganization, shambles, muddle, disarrangement, clutter, hotchpotch or US also hodgepodge, litter, tangle, jumble, confusion, mishmash; untidiness: Would you help me clean up this mess? Drugs have made a mess of her life. 2 concoction, mixture, medley, miscellany, hash, gallimaufry, farrago, olio, olla podrida, pot-pourri, smorgasbord or sm”rg†sbord, kedgeree: They presented us with a huge mess of things from which we must select what we want. 3 predicament, difficulty, plight, pinch, trouble, dilemma, quandary, imbroglio, Colloq foul-up, stew, fix, hot water, (pretty or fine) kettle of fish, pickle, jam, Slang screw-up, Brit balls-up, can of worms, US snafu: You have got yourself into a fine mess this time!

--v. 4 mess about or around (with). a potter, fool (around), dally, busy oneself, fiddle about or around, play: He enjoys messing about in boats. b philander, trifle, toy, flirt, seduce, sleep around, fool around, run around: She doesn't want him to mess about with other women. 5 mess up. a disarrange, disarray, dishevel, tousle, Colloq US muss (up): He always messes up my hair when he kisses me. b ruin, destroy, make a shambles of, wreck, bungle, botch, foul up, Colloq make a hash of, Slang muck up: Making that one little mistake messed up his whole career. c dirty, clutter up, make untidy, turn upside down, pull to pieces, upset: The police messed up my whole house looking for the pistol. 6 mess with. interfere in or with, intervene, meddle with or in, intrude in, butt in or into, tinker with, tamper with, get involved in or with: They ought to learn not to mess with things that don't concern them.

message n. 1 communication, bulletin, report, communiqu,, news, dispatch or despatch, information, word, intelligence, tidings; note, missive, letter, memorandum: The message reached us by carrier pigeon. 2 speech, address, presentation, statement, declaration: His message was delivered via television to people everywhere. 3 idea, point, import, meaning, essence, implication: The message that he isn't liked around here still hasn't penetrated his thick skull.

messenger n. envoy, emissary, legate, nuncio, intermediary, go-between; page, errand-boy, errand-girl, messenger-boy, messenger-girl, courier, runner, dispatch-rider, Pheidippides, Mercury, Hermes; herald, harbinger; Colloq US gofer: If you don't like the message, don't take it out on the messenger.

Messiah n. deliverer, liberator, emancipator, saviour, rescuer: They believe in a Messiah who will release them from earthly bondage.

metaphor n. figure (of speech), allusion, analogy, analogue, reference, image, trope, symbol; simile, parabole; metonymy, symbolism, imagery: When she said she was blue, she was using 'blue' as a metaphor. Poetry is rife with metaphor.

metaphoric

adj. metaphorical, non-literal, allusive, analogic(al), analogous, figurative, symbolic, referential, parabolic(al), metonymic, metonymous, tropological: I meant 'filthy' in a metaphoric, not a literal, sense.

mete v. Usually, mete out. deal (out), apportion, distribute, dole (out), allot, assign, allocate, parcel out, share (out), ration (out), measure out, dispense, hand out, give out, pass out, Colloq dish out: Punishment was meted out to those who deserved it.

meteoric adj. 1 brief, short-lived, temporary, transitory, transient, ephemeral, evanescent, impermanent, fleeting, momentary, swift, overnight: She enjoyed a meteoric rise as a singer, but after two years at the top she disappeared without a trace. 2 brilliant, dazzling, flashing, spectacular, sensational: His meteoric career was launched in 1974.

method n. 1 way, means, procedure, approach, route, avenue, road, mode, manner, technique, process, routine, modus operandi; plan, scheme, programme, course, routine, practice, pattern, system, methodology; Colloq US M.O.: What method was used to arrive at the answer? 2 arrangement, order, system, structure, organization, design, pattern, orderliness, neatness, regularity, discipline: There is a discernible, underlying method to what seems superficially chaotic.

methodical
adj. organized, ordered, systematic, structured, businesslike, orderly, neat, tidy, regular, routine, balanced, disciplined, painstaking, meticulous, deliberate, paced, laborious, plodding, laboured: The weaver resumed his methodical throwing of the shuttle, back and forth, back and forth.

meticulous
adj. careful, precise, accurate, exact, fastidious, scrupulous, thorough, particular, painstaking, punctilious, fussy, finicky, demanding, strict, critical, exacting, perfectionist: His work is noted for its meticulous attention to detail.

metropolis
n. capital, (capital) city; metropolitan area, urban sprawl, megalopolis, municipality: Street crime has become a problem in every major metropolis.

microbe n. micro-organism, microzoon, germ; bacterium, virus, Colloq bug: Only recently has science learnt that diseases are caused by microbes.

midday n. noon, noontime, twelve (o'clock) noon, US high noon: By midday, the temperature had reached 34ø Celsius.

middle adj. 1 central, centre, halfway, mid, midway, mean, medial, Technical mesial: We had reached the middle stage of our journey. Her index finger and middle finger are almost exactly the same length.

--n. 2 centre, mid-point, midst, halfway point; heart, bull's-eye: He lives in the middle of the city. The arrow found the very middle of the target. 3 midriff, waist, mid-section, stomach: She wore a red sash round her middle.

midst n. middle, centre, mid-point, halfway point: In the midst of life we are in death. They live in a fairy-tale chƒteau in the midst of beautiful Breton countryside. This proved a welcome boost in the midst of a difficult election campaign.

midwife n. accoucheur or accoucheuse: Most babies in the world are delivered by midwives.

might n. 1 strength, power, energy, force, muscle, potency, Literary puissance: I hit my attacker with all my might. Might doesn't always make right. 2 influence, authority, weight, sway, dominion, ascendancy, superiority, mightiness, capability, capacity, power, effect, effectiveness, Colloq clout: It was not till the 20th century that the might of the United States was felt outside its borders.

mighty adj. 1 powerful, strong, potent, influential, dominant, predominant, ascendant, weighty, doughty, authoritarian, autocratic, indomitable: The pen is mightier than the sword. He should have thought twice before challenging such a mighty opponent. 2 strong, muscular, powerful, robust, strapping, sturdy, brawny, burly, well-built, able-bodied, hardy, Colloq husky, hefty: The smith a mighty man was he, With large and sinewy hands. 3 big, large, huge, grand, great, enormous, gigantic, tremendous, towering, monumental, prodigious, massive, bulky: The giant plucked a mighty tree from the earth and flung it across the sea.

--adv. 4 very, extremely: It was mighty nice of you to visit me here in the Ozarks.

migrant n. 1 wanderer, rover, drifter, gypsy, nomad, itinerant, transient, migrator, wayfarer, bird of passage, peregrinator, traveller; vagrant; Colloq US wetback: The townspeople were having difficulty finding accommodation for the migrants.

--adj. 2 transient, migratory, itinerant, peripatetic, drifting, nomadic, travelling, gypsy, floating; vagrant: The farmers depend on migrant workers to bring in the harvest.

migrate v. 1 go, move, travel, settle, resettle, relocate, move house; emigrate, immigrate, expatriate: During the potato famine, many migrated from Ireland to America. 2 wander, roam, voyage, rove, drift, range: Some say that the American Indians migrated across the Bering land bridge from Asia.

mild adj. 1 placid, peaceful, calm, tranquil, bland, mellow, inoffensive, gentle, serene, good-natured, affable, amiable, kind, kindly, equable, easygoing, temperate, non-violent, conciliatory, indulgent, merciful, forgiving, compassionate, lenient, forbearing, peaceable, pacific, passive, submissive, yielding, tractable, meek, unassuming, modest, quiet, subdued: Judge Leaver is known for his mild disposition. 2 clement, balmy, warm, fair, pleasant, temperate, placid, moderate: We've had a succession of mild winters here. 3 bland, soothing, lenitive, mollifying, demulcent, emollient, gentle, calming, softening: The doctor recommended a mild laxative.

milieu n. environment, climate, surroundings, environs, background, ambience or ambiance, sphere, setting, atmosphere, medium, element, precincts: The British Library was the perfect milieu in which to pursue his research and writing.

militant adj. 1 aggressive, combative, pugnacious, belligerent, hostile, contentious, antagonistic, offensive, truculent, fierce, ferocious, warlike, bellicose, martial, jingoistic, hawkish: Those who have experienced war are not likely to be militant. 2 warring, fighting, combatant, combating, embattled; at war, up in arms: The militant members of the council refused to discuss terms.

--n. 3 fighter, aggressor, combatant, belligerent, warrior, soldier: Anyone who experiences the hardships of a long strike may think twice before being a militant.

military adj. 1 martial, soldierly, naval, army, fighting, service: The military machine was poised to strike.

--n. 2 (armed) services or forces, army, navy, air force, military establishment, soldiery: The military will oppose any reductions in spending for arms.

militate v. 1 Usually, militate against. discourage, work or go or operate against, foil, counter, countervail, cancel (out), reduce (possibility of), prevent, hinder, resist, oppose: His poor prison record militates against his early parole. 2 Usually, militate for or in favour of. be on the side of, favour, further, promote, help, aid: The same reasoning that militated in favour of lower taxes then persists today.

milk v. drain, bleed, extract, tap, exploit, wring, draw off or out, withdraw: The comic milked the joke for yet another laugh. The taxman is milking me dry.

milksop n. sissy or Brit also cissy, coward, weakling, namby-pamby, mollycoddle, cry-baby, nancy (boy), dastard, poltroon, caitiff, (little) Lord Fauntleroy, poltroon, Archaic caitiff, US milquetoast, Colloq chinless wonder, Brit mother's or mummy's boy, US mama's boy, pantywaist, Slang pansy: We want men, not milksops, in the Marines.

mill n. 1 grinder, quern, crusher, roller: In many parts of the world, corn is still ground by hand in a stone mill. 2 plant, factory, works, workshop, shop, foundry: This mill turns out rolled steel. 3 been through the mill. experienced, knowledgeable, sophisticated, toughened, hardened, seasoned, battle-scarred, Colloq been through the wringer, in the know:

He's been through the mill and knows what to expect. 4 run-of-the-mill. average, unexceptional, ordinary, common, unremarkable, everyday, basic, simple, Brit common-or-garden variety, US garden-variety: Critics found her voice pleasant but rather run-of-the-mill.

--v. 5 grind, crush, comminute, powder, pulverize, grate, granulate, pound, triturate, masticate, bray; crunch, mince: Flour milled to a very fine consistency is more suitable for pastries than for breads. 6 mill about or around. meander, wander, walk, stroll, amble, move about or around, crowd, throng, swarm: There were quite a few people milling about our stand at the trade fair.

mimic v. 1 imitate, ape, copy, simulate, mirror, echo: The image in the mirror mimicked every move I made. 2 reproduce, duplicate, copy: This frieze mimics one on the Parthenon. 3 mock, ridicule, satirize, caricature, parody, make fun of, lampoon, impersonate, Colloq take off: It is rude to mimic your elders.

--n. 4 impersonator, imitator, impressionist, caricaturist, parodist, Colloq copycat: Professor Eidolon, the greatest mimic in the world, is here to entertain you!

--adj. 5 imitative, imitation, mock, simulated, mimetic, sham, make-believe, pretend(ed); fake, counterfeit, feigned: Naumachia is the name given to the mimic sea battle staged in ancient Rome.

mincing adj. effeminate, dainty, delicate, niminy-piminy, foppish, dandyish, over-dainty, affected, put-on, pretentious, precious, Brit twee, Colloq la-di-da or lah-di-dah or la-de-da: His mincing speech sets my teeth on edge.

mind n. 1 intelligence, intellect, wit, wits, mentality, brain, brains, brainpower, sense, sagacity, wisdom, perception, percipience, reason, astuteness, insight, shrewdness, sapience, Colloq grey matter: There is nothing wrong with your son's mind, Mr Field; he just doesn't want to apply it to school work. 2 memory, recollection; remembrance: Keep in mind what I am about to tell you. 3 aptitude, head, perception, capacity, brain: She has a great mind for dates - for figures of all kinds. 4 intellect, intellectual, sage, genius, thinker, Colloq brain: There is no doubt that your daughter is one of the great minds of all time. 5 intention, disposition, temper, temperament, humour, fancy, tendency, bent, inclination, bias, persuasion: I was of a mind to let him have his own way. 6 opinion, sentiment, attitude, (point of) view, feeling, judgement, belief, viewpoint, position: She has a mind of her own. To my mind, the process could be greatly speeded up. 7 feeling, position, will, wish, desire, plan(s): Won't you change your mind and stay to dinner? 8 attention, thoughts, concentration, thinking: Try to keep your mind on your work. 9 bear or keep in mind. remember, do not forget or overlook, recall, retain, be aware or cognizant or mindful of, consider: Bear in mind that the post office is closed tomorrow. 10 give someone a piece of one's mind. castigate, scold, rebuke, reprimand, rail at, reprove, reproach, chastise, upbraid, berate, read (someone) the riot act, Colloq tell off, dress down, haul or rake over the coals, skin alive, US bawl out; Slang give someone hell, US chew out: This time my father really gave the maŒtre d'h“tel a piece of his mind. 11 in or of two minds. vacillating, undecided, ambivalent, uncertain, shilly-shallying, unsure, wavering: Sam was in two minds about ordering a new computer. 12 know one's (own) mind. be decided or resolved, be firm or resolute, be sure or certain or positive, be (self-)assured or (self-)confident, be in touch with oneself: He knows his own mind when it comes to his career. 13 make up one's (own) mind. decide, choose, conclude, form an opinion; determine, consider, weigh, judge, deem: Sally hasn't yet made up her mind about marrying Jan. Let her make up her own mind. 14 out of one's mind. insane, mad, crazy: You're out of your mind if you think I'll go swimming in that shark-infested bay!

--v. 15 object to, resent, take offence at, be offended by, dislike, be troubled or annoyed by, care, have any objection to, disapprove of, be bothered or affronted by: Do you mind not smoking? Yes, I mind very much. Would you mind moving your car, you're blocking the drive. 16 heed, attend to, pay attention to, obey, listen to, make or take note of, mark, note: Please mind what your mother says. 17 watch, be careful of, take care with, be cautious of: Mind your head at that low doorway! 18 watch over, take care of, care for, look after, sit with, babysit, guard, keep an eye on or out for, have or take charge of, attend: Suzie is minding the children so that we can get some work done. 19 never mind. ignore, disregard, forget, pay no attention to, do not think twice about, do not give a second thought to, erase or obliterate or cancel from the mind, slough off: Never mind what that naughty boy calls you!

minder n. 1 child-minder, babysitter, sitter, nanny, nurse, governess: The minder will put the children to bed. 2 bodyguard, escort, protector: Arthur hired an ex-fighter as his minder.

mindful adj. Often, mindful of. aware, alert, attentive to, alive, conscious, heedful, conscientious, watchful, vigilant, on the qui vive, on the lookout, circumspect, cautious: I am ever mindful of the way you like things done. She was always mindful of keeping the plants well watered.

mindless adj. 1 stupid, asinine, thick, thickheaded, obtuse, idiotic, imbecilic, moronic, thoughtless, witless, senseless, brainless, feeble-minded, fatuous, addle-brained, addle-pated, feather-brained, Colloq Brit gormless: Many of the programmes on television are mindless twaddle. 2 inattentive, unthinking, thoughtless, unaware: He plunged into the pool, mindless of any of the perils that awaited him.

mine n. 1 pit, excavation, lode, vein; colliery, coalfield: My father worked in a mine from the age of 14. 2 source, mother-lode, vein, store, storehouse, supply, deposit, depository or depositary, repository, reserve, hoard, treasure trove, reservoir, well-spring; abundance, fund, gold-mine, wealth, treasury: This encyclopedia is a rich mine of information.

--v. 3 excavate, dig, quarry, extract, scoop out or up, remove, unearth; derive, extract, draw: He claims to have mined coal in Wales and gold in South Africa. Analysis shows this ore was mined in Pennsylvania. 4 ransack, search, rake through, scour, scan, read, survey, look through, probe: Several directories were mined to compile our list of sales prospects.

mingle v. 1 mix, blend, intermingle, commingle, intermix, combine, amalgamate, merge, compound, marry, join, unite: The stories cleverly mingle gravity and levity, the mundane and the magical. There was loud applause, mingled with a few chuckles and gasps. 2 mix, socialize, associate, join, circulate, fraternize, hobnob, consort, go, spend time, Colloq hang about or around or out, rub shoulders, Brit pal up, US pal around: I asked Fred to mingle with the guests and make them feel at home.

miniature adj. small, small-scale, little, tiny, diminutive, minute, wee, minuscule, mini, microscopic, micro, midget, dwarf, bantam, baby, pygmy,pocket, Lilliputian, US vest-pocket, Colloq minimal: This miniature TV fits in the palm of your hand.

minimal adj. least, smallest, minutest, littlest, tiniest, slightest; minimum, nominal, token: As a house plant, the cactus requires minimal attention. There is a minimal charge for service.

minimize v. 1 reduce, shrink, lessen, diminish, prune, abbreviate, pare (down), cut (down), curtail, abridge, shorten, decrease, minify: Our stringent safety measures minimize the chance of an accident. 2 belittle, de-emphasize, downplay, play down, make little or light of, disparage, decry, deprecate, depreciate, misprize or misprise, devalue, devaluate, undervalue, underrate, underestimate, US talk down: Being modest, she minimizes her role in the organization.

minimum n. 1 least, lowest, nadir: The hotel offered the minimum of comfort for the maximum price.

--adj. 2 minimal, nominal, reduced, minutest, littlest, least, slightest, lowest: What is the minimum deposit the travel agent will accept? He refused to make even the minimum effort needed to save himself.

minister n. 1 cleric, clergyman, clergywoman, ecclesiastic, pastor, vicar, priest, father, reverend, churchman, divine, parson, preacher, man or woman of the cloth, evangelist, missionary, dean, curate, cur,, abb,, chaplain, Colloq padre, Slang US military sky pilot, Holy Joe: The marriage was performed by a visiting minister. 2 envoy, delegate, legate, diplomat, ambassador, emissary, plenipotentiary, minister plenipotentiary, envoy extraordinary, minister resident, consul, agent, charg, d'affaires, Brit cabinet officer or member: The minister himself signed the treaty.

--v. 3 Usually, minister to. attend (to or on or upon), wait on, care for, look after, see to, accommodate; serve, supply, aid, help, assist, support: In his last days, she ministered to him in every way.

ministry n. 1 priesthood, sacred calling, the church, the pulpit, the cloth; religion, holy orders: Burt retired from the ministry to write tracts. 2 clergy, clergymen or clergywomen, clericals, the cloth, church elders or elders of the church: During his regime, the ministry exercised great influence on the government. 3 department, office, bureau, agency: Military affairs are the responsibility of the Ministry of Defence.

minor   adj. 1 lesser, smaller, secondary, subordinate, subsidiary: The minor planets are bodies orbiting the sun in the asteroid belt. 2 insignificant, obscure, inconsequential, unimportant, trifling, trivial, negligible, inconsiderable, slight, petty, paltry, small, Colloq small-time, one-horse, Brit two a penny, US minor-league, bush-league, penny-ante, two-bit, picayune: It is a minor matter to me whether you stay or go. She is only a minor player in this game.

--n. 3 child, youngster, youth, stripling, teenager, adolescent, schoolboy, schoolgirl, boy, girl, lad, laddie, lass, lassie, Law ward, infant: At your age, you are still a minor in the eyes of the law.

minstrel n. bard, troubadour, balladeer, jongleur, skald or scald, minnesinger, Meistersinger: The medieval minstrels wandered the countryside, entertaining as they went.

mint   n. 1 (small) fortune, lot, king's ransom, millions, billions, Colloq bundle, pile, heap, wad(s), packet, pot(s), loads, ton, Slang Brit bomb, US (big) bucks: He lost a mint at roulette last night. She made a mint on her inventions.

--v. 2 make, coin, produce, earn: Special commemorative coins were minted to celebrate the Coronation.

minute°   n. 1 instant, second, split second, flash, moment, before you can say 'Jack Robinson', blink or wink or twinkling of an eye, coup d'oeil, trice, Colloq one sec, two secs, bat of an eye, shake, jiffy, tick, Brit half a mo, two shakes (of a lamb's tail): I'll be with you in a minute. 2 minutes. log, record, journal, transcript, notes, summary, r,sum,, proceedings, transactions, memorandum: Have you the minutes of the last meeting? 3 up to the minute. latest, newest, modern, up to date, trendy, fashionable, smart, all the rage, in vogue, stylish, in style, in fashion, … la mode, Colloq in, with it, hep or hip, hot, cool, US now: She always wears the most up-to-the-minute clothes.

--v. 4 record, transcribe, take down, write down, note, make (a) note of, document, log: We need someone to minute the meeting.

minuteý   adj. 1 small, little, tiny, tiniest, minuscule, miniature, wee, infinitesimal, microscopic, micro, diminutive, mini, baby, pint-sized, bantam, Lilliputian, Colloq teeny, teensy(-weensy), itty-bitty, itsy-bitsy: The minute furniture in the doll's house was made entirely by hand. 2 unimportant, petty, insignificant, least, slight, mere, meagre, trifling, trivial, minor, small, little, Colloq piddling, US picayune: The painting was a perfect copy, down to the minutest detail.

miraculous

adj. marvellous, wonderful, wondrous, incredible, unbelievable, inexplicable, unexplainable, extraordinary, spectacular, amazing, astounding, astonishing, mind-boggling, remarkable, phenomenal, fantastic, fabulous; magical, supernatural, preternatural, superhuman, Colloq out of this world, Slang far-out, crazy: Langley has made a miraculous recovery from yellow fever.

mire   n. 1 swamp, bog, fen, marsh, quagmire, morass, slough, Brit dialect sump: The horse stumbled into the mire and began to flounder. 2 mud, ooze, muck, slime, dirt: I had to wade through muck and mire to get to your front door.

--v. 3 enmire, bog down, become entangled or tangled, become enmeshed or meshed, become involved: Sorry I'm late; I got mired in a problem at the office. 4 dirty, soil, begrime, muddy, befoul, besmirch, sully, tarnish, smear, blacken, defile, smudge: My boots were badly mired. The scandal badly mired his reputation.

mirror   n. 1 looking-glass, glass, speculum, reflector: She stared at her reflection in the mirror, wondering whether she should grow her hair. 2 reflection, reproduction, picture, representation, replication, (mirror) image: Language is the mirror of society, reflecting every social change.

--v. 3 reflect, reproduce, represent, depict, repeat, echo, send back: The calm lake mirrored the moonlight. The people's misery was mirrored in their faces.

mirth   n. merriment, merrymaking, jollity, gaiety, fun, laughter, amusement, frolic, frolicking, joviality, joyousness, revelry, rejoicing, glee, high spirits, mirthfulness, hilarity, buoyancy, Formal jocundity: Life without mirth is a lamp without oil. Christmas is a time for mirth.

misalliance

n. m,salliance, mismarriage, mismatch, mismatchment, bad match, mismating: No one is surprised that John and Marsha's misalliance has ended in divorce.

misanthrope

n. misanthropist, mankind-hater; man-hater, woman-hater, misogynist; loner, hermit, recluse, anchorite or anchoret, Colloq lone wolf: The longer he lived and the more he learned of his fellow-man, the more of a misanthrope he became.

misanthropic

adj. man-hating; antisocial, unsocial, unfriendly, egocentric, egoistic: In his misanthropic moods, Joel disdains human company.

misappropriate

v. 1 embezzle, steal, filch, expropriate, pocket, Formal peculate, defalcate: He was found guilty of misappropriating club funds. 2 misapply, misuse, pervert, misemploy: The money intended for the health service was misappropriated for the war effort.

misbehave v. disobey, behave badly or improperly, be bad or naughty or mischievous, Colloq carry on, act up, Slang raise hell, raise Cain: The teacher sent for me because Robyn misbehaved in class.

misbehaviour

n. naughtiness, badness, misconduct, misdemeanour(s), disorderliness, disobedience, delinquency, disorderly conduct, rowdyism: She was severely reprimanded for persistent misbehaviour in class.

miscalculate
v. misjudge, err, misevaluate, misestimate, misreckon, miscompute, miscount, misappreciate, misread; underestimate, undervalue, underrate; overestimate, overvalue, overrate: She miscalculated the effect of her resignation.

miscarriage
n. failure, abortion, collapse, breakdown, failing, mismanagement, non-fulfilment, defeat, non-success, frustration: Her acquittal was a miscarriage of justice.

miscarry v. abort, fail, fall through, break down, go wrong, founder, come to nothing or naught or nought, go awry, come to grief, go amiss, misfire, go up or end up in smoke, perish, die: The plan to steal the crown jewels miscarried.

miscellaneous
adj. varied, heterogeneous, diverse, mixed, diversified, divers, motley, sundry, assorted, various, varying, multifarious, multiform, many-sided, multiplex, manifold: A large part of the exhibition is devoted to miscellaneous paintings and prints from his early period.

miscellany
n. mixture, assortment, variety, medley, diversity, mixed bag, job lot, rag-bag, m‚lange, pot-pourri, gallimaufry, motley, hotchpotch or US and Canadian hodgepodge, salmagundi, olio, olla podrida, smorgasbord or sm”rg†sbord, odds and ends, omnium gatherum, hash, mess, Brit lucky dip, jumble, US grab-bag: A miscellany of household goods was contributed for the jumble sale.

mischief n. 1 misbehaviour, naughtiness, impishness, elfishness or elvishness, roguishness, rascality, devilry or deviltry, mischievousness, playfulness, devilment, badness, Colloq monkey business, shenanigans, Brit monkey tricks or US monkeyshines: That boy is always up to some mischief. 2 harm, injury, damage, detriment, trouble, hurt, wrong, difficulty, disruption, destruction, misfortune, evil: He didn't realize the mischief a casual remark could do. She was accused of malicious mischief when she punctured his car tyres.

mischievous

adj. 1 naughty, impish, roguish, rascally, devilish, elfish or elvish, puckish, scampish, frolicsome, playful, sportive: Tying his cousin's shoelaces together was a mischievous prank and not malicious. 2 harmful, injurious, hurtful, damaging, pernicious, detrimental, destructive, deleterious, dangerous, spiteful, malicious, vicious, malign, baleful, baneful, noxious, wicked, evil, bad: The government regards as mischievous the detention of any Foreign Office personnel.

misconceive

v. misunderstand, misconstrue, misjudge, mistake, misapprehend, misinterpret, misread, get or have the wrong idea, get or have (hold of) the wrong end of the stick: He has misconceived the purpose in banning firearms.

misconception

n. false or wrong notion or idea, misunderstanding, misconstruction, misconstrual, misjudgement, miscalculation, misapprehension, mistaken belief, error, mistake, delusion: The confused wording of the warranty could result in a misconception of one's rights.

miscreant n. 1 villain, wretch, mischief-maker, scamp, rascal, criminal, evil-doer, felon, malefactor, rogue, reprobate, scoundrel, wrongdoer, good-for-nothing, ne'er-do-well, blackguard, hooligan, ruffian, hoodlum, thug, rowdy, Archaic knave, caitiff, varlet, rapscallion, Colloq crook, roughneck, scallywag or scalawag, Slang hood, Brit mug, rough, Australian larrikin, US baddy, bad actor: The police have apprehended the miscreant who had been attacking passers-by.

--adj. 2 villainous, wretched, mischievous, rascally, criminal, felonious, corrupt, malefic, malevolent, evil, depraved, base, nefarious, iniquitous, vicious, unprincipled, ne'er-do-well, reprobate, scoundrelly, wicked: The miscreant terrorists may be hiding in Greece.

misdeed   n. Often, misdeeds. offence, crime, felony, wrongdoing, misdoing, transgression, misdemeanour, fault, misconduct, sin, trespass, wrong, peccadillo: Who will punish him for his misdeeds now that he is safe in Argentina?

misdirect v. misguide, misadvise; misaddress: He misdirected us by saying the lavatory was downstairs. The letter, misdirected, was returned.

miser n. skinflint, hoarder, niggard, penny-pincher, pinchpenny, cheese-parer, Scrooge, Colloq cheapskate, US tightwad: For that old miser, charity begins and ends at home.

miserable adj. 1 wretched, unhappy, depressed, woeful, woebegone, sad, dejected, forlorn, disconsolate, despondent, heartbroken, sorrowful, broken-hearted, mournful, desolate, desperate, despairing, downhearted, melancholy, glum, low-spirited, gloomy, dismal, lachrymose, tearful, Colloq Brit cut up: Tanya is miserable because no one invited her to go to the dance. 2 unpleasant, inclement, inconvenient, untoward, bad, unfavourable, awful, terrible, adverse, Colloq rotten, lousy: The weather was miserable throughout the weekend. 3 inadequate, unworthy, poor, deplorable, contemptible, bad, despicable, sorry, pitiful, pathetic, lamentable, Colloq rotten, lousy: That was the most miserable play I have ever had the misfortune to sit through. 4 squalid, wretched, bad, abject, deplorable, shabby, mean, vile, shameful, scurvy, awful, disgraceful, contemptible: He lives in a cellar in the most miserable conditions.

miserly adj. stingy, penurious, niggardly, penny-pinching, parsimonious, mean, cheap, cheese-paring, tight, tight-fisted, close, close-fisted, mercenary, avaricious, greedy, covetous, Colloq money-grubbing, Brit mingy, US chintzy: Flynn is too miserly to lend you a penny.

misery n. 1 unhappiness, distress, discomfort, wretchedness, woe, sadness, melancholy, sorrow, dolour, heartache, grief, anguish, anxiety, angst, depression, despair, desperation, desolation, despondency, gloom: Worn out by grief and misery, she collapsed into a chair. 2 squalor, poverty, destitution, privation, indigence, penury, wretchedness, sordidness: The misery of those slums is unbelievable. 3 hardship, suffering, calamity, disaster, curse, misfortune, ordeal, woe, trouble, catastrophe, trial, tribulation, adversity, burden, affliction: She cannot bear the twin miseries of illness and poverty. 4 spoilsport, damper, killjoy, dampener, Job's comforter, grouch, grump, malcontent, pessimist, cynic, prophet of doom, Cassandra, Colloq wet blanket, sourpuss, US party pooper, gloomy Gus, picklepuss: How can you stand living with such a misery?

misfire v. 1 fail, abort, miscarry, go wrong, fizzle (out), fall through, Colloq flop, come a cropper, Brit go phut, US go pfft or phft: The plan to take over the conglomerate misfired when the shares soared in price.

--n. 2 miscarriage, failure, fizzle, dud, Colloq abort, flop: After two misfires, we gave up trying to buy a time-share in the Algarve.

misfit n. oner, eccentric, individual, nonconformist, maverick, square peg in a round hole: People regard him as one of society's misfits and tend to steer clear.

misfortune
n. 1 bad luck, ill luck, ill fortune, hard luck, infelicity, adversity, loss: He had the misfortune to marry the wrong woman. 2 accident, misadventure, mishap, calamity, catastrophe, mischance, disaster, contretemps, tragedy, blow, shock; reverse, stroke of bad luck, Colloq bad news: With the death of his father, then his illness, then the loss of his business, one misfortune followed another.

misgiving n. apprehension, mistrust, worry, concern, anxiety, qualm, scruple, disquiet, hesitation, doubt, question, uncertainty, suspicion, unease, uneasiness, discomfort; dread, premonition, foreboding, Colloq funny feeling: I had grave misgivings about driving all that way on my own.

misguided adj. misled, wrong, misdirected, foolish, unreasonable, erroneous, mistaken, misplaced, imprudent, unwise, impolitic, ill-advised, fallacious, uncalled-for, labouring under a misapprehension, wide of the mark, Colloq off (the mark), barking up the wrong tree: Her helpfulness is often misguided, ending in disaster for all concerned.

mishandle v. 1 abuse, mistreat, maltreat, ill-treat, beat (up), brutalize, maul, molest, injure, hurt, harm, handle or treat roughly, manhandle, Colloq knock about or around: The poor child was mishandled by her parents. 2 mismanage, bungle, botch, misconduct, mangle, mess up, muddle, wreck, ruin, destroy, Colloq muff, make a mess or hash of, Slang screw up, bugger up, Taboo fuck up: Forster mishandled the deal so badly that it cost the company millions.

mishap n. See misfortune, 2, above.

mishmash n. mess, medley, hash, gallimaufry, farrago, pot-pourri, jumble, pastiche, mixture, salmagundi, hotchpotch or US and Canadian hodgepodge, tangle, omnium gatherum, m‚lange, olio, olla podrida, goulash, stew: His paper is nothing more than a mishmash of other people's ideas.

misinform v. misguide, mislead, misadvise, misdirect, delude, deceive, dupe, defraud, fool, gull, lead astray, throw someone off the scent, Colloq con, slip or put something over on someone, pull a fast one on, US give (someone) a bum steer, throw someone a curve: If you think you have a right to compensation, you've been misinformed.

misinformation
n. disinformation, misintelligence; red herring, false trail, false scent: When we uncover an enemy agent in our midst, we allow him to collect misinformation.

misinterpret
v. misunderstand, mistake, misconstrue, misconceive, misread, misjudge, misapprehend, Slang screw up, bugger up: He misinterpreted what I said and stepped off the ledge.

mislay v. misplace, lose, mislocate; misfile: I have mislaid my reading spectacles.

mislead v. misinform, lead astray, misguide, misdirect, throw off the scent or track, pull the wool over someone's eyes, fool, outwit, bluff, hoodwink, trick, humbug, bamboozle, deceive, dupe, gull, cozen, Colloq con, take in, lead up the garden path, flimflam, slip or put or pass one over on, Slang take, US give someone a bum steer: I was misled into believing that she loved only me. He is misleading you if he says that the shares will soon increase in value.

mismatched
adj. mismated, ill-matched, ill-mated, incompatible, unfit, inappropriate, unsuited, unsuitable, incongruous, misallied, disparate, uncongenial, inconsistent, inharmonious, discordant: With her interest in art and his in football, they made a mismatched pair.

misprint n. error, mistake, erratum, typographical error, printer's or printing error, Brit literal, Colloq typo: We cannot publish a book containing so many misprints.

misrepresent
v. distort, twist, pervert, garble, misstate, mangle, falsify, belie, disguise, colour: In his report, he misrepresented everything I said.

miss° v. 1 skip, forgo, absent oneself from, be absent from, fail to keep; avoid, evade, escape, dodge, Colloq pass up: I missed my dentist's appointment. I missed school because my grandmother was ill. 2 long for, yearn for, pine for, feel nostalgia for, be nostalgic for or about, want, need, wish for: I miss those long summer evenings by the lake. 3 misunderstand, misinterpret, misconstrue, misapprehend, fail to understand or perceive, mistake: You have completely missed the point. 4 Sometimes, miss out (on). pass up, omit, leave out, slip up (on), overlook, let slip (by), let pass, pass over, disregard, ignore: You can be sure that Frobisher would never miss a free meal.

--n. 5 omission, oversight, slip, failure, mistake, error, blunder, Colloq slip-up: A miss is as good as a mile.

missý n. Ms., girl, lass, lassie, maid, maiden, young lady, young woman, schoolgirl, mademoiselle, nymphet, teenager, virgin, spinster, old maid, Brit bachelor girl, Irish English colleen, Literary nymph, Archaic demoiselle, damsel, Colloq old-fashioned gal, US coed, Valley girl, bachelorette, Slang teeny-bopper, groupie, Chiefly Brit bird, Old-fashioned US bobby-soxer: She's a pretty young miss, isn't she?

misshapen adj. distorted, twisted, contorted, crooked, deformed, crippled, malformed, grotesque, awry, warped, gnarled, ill-proportioned, ill-made, monstrous, Technical acromegalic: The misshapen bell-ringer in The Hunchback of Notre Dame was named Quasimodo.

missile n. projectile, brickbat; guided missile, ballistic missile: Bottles, stones, and other missiles were thrown at the police during the riot.

mission n. 1 task, duty, function, purpose, job, office, work, assignment, errand, charge, business, commission, undertaking, pursuit, activity, aim, objective: He accepted the mission to convert the natives to Christianity. 2 calling, occupation, vocation, trade, line (of work), profession, m,tier: It has become my mission in life to see that you learn how to do sums. 3 delegation, legation, deputation, commission, committee, group, ministry: She has been sent on a governmental trade mission to Botswana.

missionary n. evangelist, preacher, minister, proselytizer: During the 19th century, many missionaries were dispatched to spread the faith in Africa.

missive n. letter, communication, message, dispatch, note, line, postcard, card, epistle: I have just received a missive from great-aunt Cecilia that took me an hour to read.

misspent adj. wasted, squandered, idle, dissipated, thrown away, profitless, prodigal: Proficiency at billiards is a sign of a misspent youth.

misstatement n. 1 falsification, misreport, misquotation, miscitation, distortion, misrepresentation, misconstruction, misinterpretation, perversion, lie, falsehood, untruth, fabrication: The prosecutor's indictment is a misstatement of the charges against the defendant. 2 solecism, error, mistake, gaffe, faux pas, slip of the tongue, lapsus linguae, blunder, Slang howler, Brit bloomer, US and Canadian blooper: For an educated man his speech is sprinkled with too many grammatical misstatements.

misstep n. 1 false step, blunder, mistake, error, bad or wrong or false move, trip, stumble, slip: One misstep meant a fall into the abyss. 2 indiscretion, mistake, lapse, faux pas, oversight, error, gaffe, Colloq slip-up, Slang howler, Brit bloomer, US and Canadian blooper, goof: Her misstep was telling her fianc,'s mother that she had formerly been an artist's model.

mist n. 1 fog, haze, smog, (low-hanging) cloud, vapour; drizzle, Brit dialect mizzle: I could scarcely make out the road in the mist.

--v. 2 Usually, mist up or over. cloud (up or over), becloud, fog, befog, dim, blur, film, steam up: The mirror in the bathroom had misted up when I was having a shower.

mistake n. 1 misconception, misapprehension, error, fault, miscalculation, misjudgement, blunder, botch, fumble, bad move, misstep, slip, erratum, gaffe, faux pas, Colloq boo-boo, clanger, muff, howler, Brit boob, bloomer, US blooper, goof, goof-up, flub: Giving Aston a salary rise was a mistake. 2 indiscretion, misstep, false step, wrong move: It was a mistake not to stand up when she entered.

--v. 3 misunderstand, misinterpret, misjudge, misconstrue, take the wrong way, get wrong, misread, misapprehend: The fool mistook my remark as a compliment. 4 mistake for. mix up with, misidentify as, confuse with, take for: In the dark, she mistook him for her husband.

mistaken adj. 1 (all or completely) wrong, amiss, incorrect, in error, wide of the mark, in the wrong, inaccurate, out of order, Colloq barking up the wrong tree, off, (way) off the beam, on the wrong track, US full of hot air, Slang full of it (= Taboo 'full of shit'), US all wet: I may be mistaken, but I thought I saw your wife with Lord Cholmondley. 2 erroneous, faulty, false, fallacious, misinformed, incorrect, wrong, inaccurate, flawed, warped, distorted, twisted, misguided, Slang cock-eyed: You have a mistaken impression of me.

mistreat v. abuse, maltreat, ill-use, ill-treat, misuse, damage, manhandle, harm; hurt, injure, molest, maul, rough up, brutalize: He was found guilty of mistreating his dogs. She was mistreated by her husband for years.

mistreatment

n. abuse, maltreatment, ill use, ill-treatment, brutalization, misuse; manhandling, molestation, mauling, roughing-up, rough handling, battery, assault: This mistreatment of employees must stop at once. The children complained of their parents' mistreatment.

mistress n. 1 lover, girlfriend, live-in lover, kept woman, concubine, inamorata, paramour, Literary odalisque, Archaic doxy, Colloq US alternative other, POSSLQ (= 'Person of the Opposite Sex Sharing Living Quarters'): She was the mistress of a leading politician. 2 schoolmistress, instructress, governess; headmistress: She had a rewarding career as a mistress in a girls' school in Lancashire.

mistrust v. 1 suspect, distrust, be suspicious of, doubt, be or feel wary or suspicious or doubtful of or about, have (one's) doubts about, question, have reservations; beware; Slang be or feel leery of or about: He has not done anything specifically bad, but I mistrust his motives.

--n. 2 suspicion, distrust, doubt, scepticism, wariness, reservation, chariness, misgiving(s), uncertainty, unsureness, apprehension, apprehensiveness: Is there nothing I can say to dispel your mistrust of me?

misty adj. cloudy, foggy, hazy, murky; fuzzy, dim, blurred, blurry, unclear, indistinct, vague, dark, opaque, shadowy, obscure, unintelligible: It is very misty, so drive carefully. I have only the mistiest idea of what you mean.

misunderstand

v. misconceive, misconstrue, misinterpret, misapprehend, get (it or it all) wrong, get the wrong idea (about), misread, misjudge, miscalculate, miss the point (of): He understood your words but misunderstood your meaning.

misunderstanding

n. 1 misconception, misconstruction, misinterpretation, misapprehension, misreading, misjudgement, miscalculation, wrong idea, wrong or false impression, mistaking, Technical parasynesis: Misunderstanding of the law is no excuse for flouting it. 2 disagreement, discord, dispute, argument, difference, dissension, controversy, quarrel, rift, Colloq falling out: We had a slight misunderstanding about who was to pay the restaurant bill.

misuse n. 1 misapplication, misusage, misappropriation, misemployment, diverting, diversion, perverting, perversion: He was accused of the misuse of public funds for his personal gain. 2 misusage, abuse, corruption, solecism, malapropism, barbarism, catachresis, ungrammaticality, infelicity: His misuses of English have made him a laughing-stock. 3 See mistreatment, above.

--v. 4 abuse, misapply, misemploy, misappropriate; pervert: I broke the knife blade misusing it as a screwdriver. He was accused of misusing the courts to his own ends. 5 See mistreat, above.

mitigate v. moderate, temper, reduce, abate, lessen, decrease, relieve, ease, ease up (on), relax, alleviate, remit, assuage, allay, let up (on), slacken, slacken up (on), tone down, lighten, appease, palliate, mollify, calm, tranquillize, soothe, placate, quiet or chiefly Brit quieten, still, soften, dull, blunt, take the edge off, US lighten up (on): The pain was mitigated by taking aspirin. The relief organizations did their best to mitigate the effects of the disaster.

mitigating
adj. extenuating, justifying, excusatory, palliating, vindicating, qualifying: Were there mitigating circumstances in her taking the money?

mix v. 1 mingle, combine, intermingle, blend, incorporate, put together, merge, unite, alloy, commingle, amalgamate, coalesce: Mix the ingredients to a creamy consistency. 2 socialize, fraternize, consort, hobnob, go round or around or about (together), get together, keep company, join (with), associate (with), Colloq hang out or about or round or around (with): The Hatfields and the McCoys do not mix very well, so you'd best invite them separately. 3 mix in. add, stir in, combine, fold in: Mix in the chocolate at the very end. 4 mix up. a See mix, 1, above. b confuse, confound, bewilder, muddle, perplex, puzzle, fluster, upset; addle, disturb; Colloq US and Canadian discombobulate: She mixed me up so that I cannot decide what to do. c snarl, ensnarl, tangle, entangle, scramble, jumble: The treasures were all mixed up with the rubbish at the church sale. d confuse, interchange, exchange: Have they mixed up our room keys again? 5 mix up in. involve, implicate, include, connect, draw or drag into: Wasn't Wilcox mixed up in that scandal last year? 6 mix up with. confuse, mistake, misidentify, confound; interchange, exchange: I think you must have me mixed up with somebody else. The porter mixed up my bag with someone else's.

--n. 7 mixture, blend, compound; amalgam, combination, alloy, assortment, distribution: Was this cake made from a mix or from scratch? The centre party has a good mix of liberals and conservatives.

mixed   adj. 1 hybrid, half-bred, mongrel, interbred, cross-bred; impure, tainted, adulterated: This horse has mixed blood. 2 confused, muddled; varied, various, diverse; conflicting, contradictory, opposing, clashing, opposite: He had mixed feelings about ending his relationship with her. 3 mixed up in or with. involved, connected, associated: Wasn't she mixed up in that scandal last year? He doesn't want his children mixed up with people who take drugs.

mixture   n. 1 assortment, amalgam, amalgamation, medley, combination, mingling, intermingling, composite, blend, jumble, mix, miscellany, m,lange, mess, mishmash, hotchpotch or US and Canadian hodgepodge, gallimaufry, farrago, olio, olla podrida, hash, pot-pourri, ragout, goulash, omnium gatherum, salmagundi: The design is an unfortunate mixture of many incompatible styles. 2 mixing, amalgamation, amalgamating, combining, mingling, intermingling, combination, blend, blending, association, associating, compound, compounding, synthesis, interweaving, merging, merger, fusion, fusing, alloy, alloying: The mixture of household ammonia and bleach creates noxious fumes.

mix-up   n. confusion, mess, muddle, hotchpotch or US also hodgepodge, tangle, jumble, Colloq botch, mishmash, foul-up, Slang US screw-up, snafu , Taboo slang Brit balls-up: The mix-up in the files is due to a computer malfunction.

13.4 moan...

=-

moan n. 1 complaint, lament, lamentation, groan, wail, moaning, grievance: Disregard his moans about money - he has plenty.

--v. 2 complain, lament, groan, wail, bewail, grumble, bemoan, deplore, whine, whimper, Colloq grouse, gripe, beef, bitch, Brit whinge: She's always moaning about the way people take advantage of her. 3 sigh, mourn, weep, sorrow, cry, wail, keen, grieve, sob, snivel, bawl, mewl, pule, ululate: The women, all in black, moaned and tore their hair as they neared the coffin.

mob n. 1 horde, host, press, throng, crowd, pack, herd, swarm, crush, jam, multitude, mass, body, assemblage, collection, group: The mob surged forward, hurling sticks and stones at anyone in uniform. 2 rabble, riff-raff, proletariat, populace, the masses, great unwashed, hoi polloi, canaille, bourgeoisie, lower classes, scum (of the earth), dregs of society: The mob cheered when the king was beheaded.

--v. 3 crowd (round or around), jostle, throng, surround, beset, clamour over, swoop down on or upon: Thousands of screaming teenagers mobbed the singer.

mobbed adj. crowded, packed, thronged, congested, teeming, swarming, full, filled: They tried to leave by the emergency exit, but that was mobbed, too.

mobile adj. 1 movable, non-stationary, unstationary, unfixed, travelling, portable, transportable: A mobile display was designed for industrial fairs. 2 motorized, mechanical, transportable, movable: They live in a mobile home. The mobile library comes round every Wednesday. 3 expressive, sensitive, animated, plastic, flexible, US facile: Her mobile face at once reflected her thoughts. 4 agile, versatile, nimble, quick, alert, active, responsive: You need your wits about you to keep up with Randolph's mobile mind. 5 ambulatory, ambulant: After the artificial joint surgery, Keith was once again completely mobile.

mobilize v. assemble, marshal, conscript, enrol, enlist, organize, muster, levy, rally, activate, call up, prepare, ready, US draft: A huge army was mobilized, virtually overnight.

mock v. 1 deride, ridicule, make fun of, tease, taunt, tantalize, jeer (at), gibe (at), thumb one's nose at, chaff, laugh at, poke fun at, make sport of, guy, scorn, flout, abuse, defy, scoff (at), sneer (at), disdain, disparage, decry, Archaic fleer (at), Colloq rag, rib, kid, put (someone) on, Brit take the mickey out of, cock a snook at: He was taken in for questioning only because he mocked a police officer. Jealousy is the green-eyed monster that mocks the meat it feeds on. 2 ape, mimic, imitate, caricature, lampoon, satirize, parody, burlesque, travesty, Colloq spoof, take off, Brit send up: The political cartoonist mocks governments daily on the pillory of his pen.

--adj. 3 substitute, artificial, simulated, fake, synthetic, imitation, false, forged, ersatz, sham, feigned, counterfeit, fraudulent, bogus, make-believe, pretend, Colloq phoney or US also phony, pseudo: By means of a mock car accident they demonstrated how to rescue victims. Mock turtle soup, though good, does not taste like real turtle soup.

mockery n. 1 ridicule, derision, disdain, taunting, disparagement, abuse, scorn, contempt, contumely, decrial: John was expelled for his mockery of the headmaster. 2 semblance, imitation, impersonation; caricature, parody, burlesque, travesty, lampoon, satire, pasquinade, farce; miscarriage; Colloq spoof, take-off, Brit send-up: That wasn't a trial, it was a mockery of justice. 3 disappointment, joke, laugh, absurdity: It is a mockery to speak of that wretched sadist and humanity in the same breath.

mode° n. 1 way, manner, method, approach, form, course, fashion, procedure, technique, system, wise, modus operandi, methodology, standard operating procedure, SOP: What mode of teaching foreign languages do you use? 2 status, condition, state, configuration, set-up: The computer is now in printing mode.

modeý n. fashion, style, look, vogue; trend, rage, craze, Colloq fad: We went to the ball dressed in the mode of the 1920s.

model n. 1 representation, replica, mock-up, maquette, scale model, working model, miniature, dummy, image, likeness, facsimile, copy: This is a model of the house he is planning. 2 original, mould, archetype, prototype, pattern, paragon, ideal, exemplar, example, standard: When the wax model is finished, we cast it in bronze using the cire perdue process. Their government was established after the Roman model. 3 ideal, paragon, exemplar, epitome, beau id‚al, cream, crŠme de la crŠme, ne plus ultra, nonpareil, nonsuch or nonesuch: He is the very model of what a father should be. 4 subject, sitter, poser: Dali's wife served as his model for many paintings. 5 mannequin; dummy: She is tall and thin enough to be a fashion model. May I see the hat that is on that model in the window? 6 design, kind, type, style, version; variety, sort, form, fashion, configuration; brand, mark: I'm intending to trade my car in for a newer model.

--v. 7 fashion, mould, shape, form, sculpt, carve (out), make, fabricate, produce: She modelled these figures out of fine clay. 8 pose in, display, show (off), wear, Colloq sport: She makes a fortune modelling swimwear. 9 model after or on. imitate, copy, pattern on or after, emulate, follow: Architects often used to model public buildings after the temples on the Acropolis.

--adj. 10 copy, imitation, facsimile, representative, miniature: He enjoys building model aeroplanes. 11 ideal, exemplary, perfect, archetypal, unequalled, consummate, inimitable: Oliver has been a model student.

moderate adj. 1 temperate, calm, reasonable, cool, judicious, rational, balanced, unexcessive, modest, sober, sensible, commonsensical, controlled, deliberate, steady: In view of the conflicting interests expressed, the council has adopted a moderate policy regarding parking. 2 centre, middle-of-the-road, non-radical, non-reactionary: Bella's political outlook is said by some to be moderate. 3 fair, middling, average, ordinary, medium, middle, modest, mediocre, unexceptional, Colloq fair to middling: They have a good range of clothing, all sold at very moderate prices.

--n. 4 middle-of-the-roader, non-radical, non-reactionary, centrist: Where do the moderates stand on the issue of constitutional reform?

--v. 5 abate, calm, mollify, soothe, ease, relax, alleviate, mitigate, soften, dull, blunt, cushion, relieve, reduce, lessen, remit, slacken, diminish, decrease, defuse, temper, Colloq let up (on): He would get along better if he moderated the violence of his reactions and learned to relax. 6 mediate, arbitrate, referee, judge, chair, supervise, preside (over), coordinate, run, regulate, manage, direct: Professor Gill will moderate the panel discussion.

moderately
adv. somewhat, rather, quite, fairly, pretty, comparatively, slightly, passably, more or less; to some extent, within reason, to a certain extent, to a degree, to some degree, in some measure, in moderation, within limits; temperately; Colloq sort of, kind of: Clifford is moderately well off. It was a moderately hot day.

moderator n. mediator, arbiter, arbitrator, judge, referee, umpire; Chiefly US chair, chairperson, chairman, chairwoman, chairlady, presiding officer, president, coordinator, (discussion) leader; anchorman, anchorwoman; master of ceremonies, toastmaster, Brit compŠre, Colloq emcee, MC: Lady Felicia was chosen as the moderator of next year's panel.

modern   adj. up to date, current, contemporary, today's, new, fresh, novel, brand-new, up to the minute, present-day, latest, new-fashioned, newfangled; … la mode, modish, in vogue, fashionable, in fashion, stylish, in style, chic, Chiefly Brit flavour of the month, Slang trendy, in, with it, mod, hip, hot: Elaine has little patience with modern electronic gadgets.

modernize v. renovate, streamline, redo, redecorate, refurbish, refurnish, update, do over, rejuvenate, refresh, revamp, redesign, remodel, refashion, remake: We installed air conditioning when we modernized our offices.

modest   adj. 1 unassuming, unpresuming, humble, unpretentious, unobtrusive, reserved, retiring, diffident, shy, bashful, demure, coy, shame-faced, self-effacing, self-conscious, reticent, reluctant, timid, meek, timorous, Rare verecund: Caroline is quite modest about her accomplishments. 2 humble, simple, plain, ordinary, unpretentious, homely, lowly, unexceptional, unostentatious; inconspicuous, unobtrusive: They live in a modest little cottage. 3 moderate, limited, understated, unimportunate, unexaggerated, reasonable, sensible, constrained, restricted, restrained: The workers' demands seem modest enough.

modicum n. bit, trifle, jot, jot or tittle, atom, scintilla, spark, particle, iota, speck, grain, whit, scrap, shred, snippet, sliver, fragment, splinter, morsel, crumb, ounce, dram, drop, dash, spot, touch, tinge, hint, suggestion, Colloq smidgen or smidgin: One must exercise a modicum of judgement in affairs of the heart.

modify v. 1 adjust, adapt, change, transform, alter, revise, amend, redo, remake, remould, reshape, reconstruct, reform, revamp, refashion, remodel, rework, reword, reorient, reorganize: They are modifying the car to increase its performance. He should modify his views on censorship. 2 reduce, decrease, diminish, lessen, moderate, temper, soften, lower, abate, tone down, modulate; qualify, limit, restrict: The severity of the winter is modified by our proximity to the sea. We shall have to modify our demands.

modulate v. adjust, regulate, set, tune, balance, temper, moderate, modify; lower, tune or tone or turn down, soften: Modulate the volume to suit the size of the auditorium. Please modulate your voice - everyone can hear you!

mogul n. magnate, tycoon, baron, mandarin, Colloq big shot, big gun, big cheese, Pooh Bah, bigwig, big wheel, big (White) Chief, big Daddy, hotshot, VIP, big noise, nabob, Slang US Mr Big: In the old days, he was one of the moguls in Hollywood.

moist adj. 1 damp, wettish, dampish, dewy, dank, humid, clammy, muggy, steamy, misty, foggy: During the monsoon everything becomes so moist that your clothes never seem to dry. 2 damp, wet, rainy, drizzly, soggy, moisture-laden: The moist climate keeps Ireland green. 3 tearful, teary, misty, lachrymose: Every eye in the theatre was moist at the end of that scene.

molest v. 1 annoy, irritate, vex, disturb, pester, badger, needle, provoke, nettle, tease, harass, harry, worry, hector, irk, bother, gall, chafe, roil, torment, plague, beleaguer: For weeks people on the beach have been molested by green flies. 2 accost, meddle with, interfere with, annoy, abuse, bother, attack, ill-treat, maltreat, manhandle; paw: The police are looking for a man who has been molesting girls in the park.

moment n. 1 instant, second, minute, half a second, two seconds, flash, twinkling, blink or wink of an eye, twinkling of an eye, trice, Colloq jiffy, shake, two shakes (of a lamb's tail), before you can say 'Jack Robinson', Brit mo, half a mo, tick: I'll be with you in a moment, Madam. 2 instant, time, second, minute, hour, point (in time), juncture, stage: At that very moment, the phone rang. 3 importance, weight, consequence, significance, import, gravity, seriousness, prominence, concern, note, interest, consideration: What you decide to do is of no great moment.

momentary adj. fleeting, temporary, ephemeral, evanescent, impermanent, fugitive, passing, transitory, brief, short-lived, quick, short, hasty: The medicine afforded only momentary relief from the pain.

momentous adj. important, weighty, consequential, significant, grave, serious, decisive, crucial, critical, vital, pivotal, portentous, charged, laden, fraught, of concern: The Augustan Age was a momentous period in Latin literature.

momentum n. energy, force, drive, strength, impetus, power, inertia, impulse, thrust, push: The car's momentum carried it over the cliff. Her encouragement has given me the momentum needed to carry on.

monarch n. 1 ruler, sovereign, potentate, crowned head; queen, king, empress, emperor, tsar or czar: Mary was the monarch of Scotland from 1542 to 1567. 2 ruler, sovereign, chief, lord, master, owner, Colloq boss: He is monarch of all he surveys.

monarchy n. 1 kingdom, empire, domain, dominion, principality; state, nation, country: According to Gibbon, a hereditary monarchy presents the fairest scope for ridicule. 2 monocracy, autocracy, absolutism, royalism, monarchism, sovereignty, totalitarianism, authoritarianism; despotism, tyranny: Those who are discontented with monarchy call it tyranny.

monastery n. abbey, cloister, priory, friary, charterhouse, hospice, Buddhism vihara, Hinduism ashram, Tibetan Buddhism lamasery: In later life he retired to a monastery to contemplate the world.

monetary adj. pecuniary, cash, money, fiscal, financial, capital; numismatic, Technical nummular, nummary: Monetary shortages result from the government's tightening its hold on the economy by raising interest rates.

money n. 1 currency, legal tender, medium of exchange, specie, (hard) cash, ready money, banknotes, paper money, Brit notes, US bills, coin(s), change, small change, Derogatory (filthy) lucre, pelf, Colloq shekels, Brit lolly, readies, US folding money, cold (hard) cash, US and Canadian and Australian shin-plasters; Slang loot, dough, bread, spondulicks or spondulix, boodle, readies or the ready, moolah, Brit rhino, US (long) green, greenbacks, mazuma, wampum, simoleons, bucks, scratch, gelt, kale, cabbage, lettuce, spinach: He makes daily rounds to collect the money from the launderettes he owns. 2 resources, wealth, fortune, funds, capital, wherewithal, affluence, means, (liquid) assets, riches; Slang bundle: All the family money is invested in long-term bonds. 3 gain, profit, net, Colloq take, percentage, Slang rake-off: How much money does the shop take in at the end of the day? 4 in the money. rich, wealthy, affluent, moneyed or monied, well off, well-to-do, prosperous, Colloq flush, in clover, in or on Easy Street, Slang loaded, well-heeled, rolling in it or in money or in dough, filthy rich, stinking rich, fat: They have been in the money since their uncle died.

mongrel n. cur, mutt, cross-breed, mixed breed, hybrid, half-breed, Technical bigener; lurcher: There is little chance of that mongrel winning a prize in the dog show.

monitor n. 1 watchdog, supervisor, sentinel, guard, guardian, custodian; Brit invigilator, prefect, Rare prepositor or praepostor; US proctor: The government has appointed a committee to monitor oil prices. 2 (television) screen, cathode-ray tube screen, CRT, display, Chiefly Brit visual display unit, VDU: Do you prefer an amber, green, or black-and-white monitor?

--v. 3 watch, oversee, observe, check (out or up on), audit, supervise, superintend, scan, examine, study, follow, keep an eye on, survey, keep track of, track, trace, record, Brit vet: Before a drug is approved, it must be monitored through thousands of tests.

monk n. brother, religious, coenobite, monastic, Loosely friar: He was accepted into the Benedictine order, also called the black monks.

monkey n. 1 simian, ape, primate, Colloq monk: The monkeys' antics forever delight the children. 2 fool, ass, laughing-stock, butt, victim, target, (fair) game, Colloq goat, Slang sucker: The teacher should not have made a monkey out of Hubert in front of his classmates. 3 imp, devil, mischief-maker, rascal, scamp, rapscallion: She's a real little monkey: you wouldn't believe what she got up to this morning.

--v. 4 mimic, mime, imitate, impersonate, copy, ape, duplicate: He monkeys everything you do. 5 Usually, monkey around or about (with). fool around (with), play (with), fiddle (about or around) with, meddle (with or in), interfere (with or in), mess (about or around) (with), tinker (with), tamper (with), Colloq US screw around (with): Stop monkeying around with that switch or the light will fuse. Colin is always monkeying around in class.

monograph n. treatise, dissertation, disquisition, essay, paper: Entwhistle's monograph is the definitive work on Hawthorne.

monolithic
adj. massive, huge, enormous, monumental, imposing, colossal, gigantic, giant; featureless, uniform, undifferentiated, characterless; rigid, impenetrable, invulnerable, unbending, inflexible, solid, stolid, intractable, immovable: These monolithic international conglomerates, assembled with the aid of junk bonds, staffed by yuppies, and controlling markets worth hundreds of billions, resemble the monolithic glass towers that house them.

monopolize
v. corner (the market in), control, dominate, own, Slang hog: Till recently, one company monopolized the telephone business in the US.

monotonous
adj. boring, tedious, dull, tiresome, humdrum, sleep-inducing, soporific, wearisome, wearying, tiring, monotonic, repetitious, prosaic, banal, dry, dry-as-dust, uninteresting, dreary,

colourless, unexciting, run-of-the-mill, ordinary, commonplace, routine, uneventful, everyday, mechanical, banausic, Colloq ho-hum: Working in an assembly line became monotonous, so I took a job in advertising.

monster n. 1 beast, fiend, ogre, giant, dragon, brute, demon, troll, bogeyman: Why are so many children's fairy tales populated by monsters? 2 monstrosity, (living) abortion, mutant, mutation, freak, deformity, lusus naturae, eyesore, horror, miscreation, missing link: Monsters of every description were the main features of circus sideshows for centuries.

--adj. 3 See monstrous, 3, below.

monstrosity
n. 1 See monster, 2, above. 2 monstrousness, heinousness, horribleness, horridness, hideousness, awfulness, nightmarishness, dreadfulness, frightfulness, horror, hellishness, ghoulishness, fiendishness, barbarity: The monstrosity of the concentration camps was not widely known till after the war.

monstrous adj. 1 awful, horrible, horrid, horrific, horrendous, horrifying, hideous, ugly, nightmarish, dreadful, heinous, grisly, gruesome, disgusting, nauseous, nauseating, repulsive, repellent, revolting, frightful, grotesque, hellish, ghoulish, freakish, fiendish, barbaric, barbarous, savage, inhuman, merciless, ruthless, brutal, brutish, beastly: How could anyone treat another human being with such monstrous cruelty! 2 outrageous, shocking, scandalous, atrocious, appalling, wicked, villainous, evil, vile, insensitive, cruel, base, debased, shameful, shameless, infamous, disgraceful, nefarious, egregious, foul, vicious, flagitious, loathsome, depraved: It is monstrous to suggest that money could compensate for the loss of a child. It was a monstrous trick to make him think he had failed the exam when he'd got the top mark. 3 gigantic, giant, huge, vast, enormous, colossal, monster, gargantuan, jumbo, immense, tremendous, titanic, prodigious, massive, towering, elephantine, mammoth: They are planning to build a monstrous shopping mall in the town centre.

monument n. 1 marker, cairn, memorial, tablet, shrine, commemoration; sepulchre, gravestone, tombstone, headstone, tomb, mausoleum, cenotaph: Many monuments have been established in memory of those who died in the war. 2 testimony, testimonial, testament, token, witness, record, evidence, example, exemplar: The book will survive as a lasting monument to her scholarship.

monumental

adj. 1 staggering, awe-inspiring, outstanding, prominent, stupendous, vast, awesome, epoch-making, historic, history-making, memorable, lasting, permanent, unforgettable, significant, notable, noteworthy, impressive, marvellous, prodigious, wonderful, wondrous, spectacular, magnificent, grand, striking, glorious, enduring, classic: This work is a monumental contribution to linguistic theory. 2 massive, huge, gigantic, enormous, prodigious, colossal, immense, vast, tremendous: These monumental stones, each as big as a house, were dragged from a quarry hundreds of miles away. 3 commemorative, memorial: A monumental obelisk will be raised to mark the battle. 4 egregious, catastrophic, calamitous, huge, enormous, awful, abject, terrible, unforgivable, unbelievable, monstrous, Colloq whopping: Announcing our plans in advance could prove to be a monumental blunder.

mood n. 1 humour, attitude, inclination, disposition, nature, temper, frame of mind, spirit, atmosphere, sense, feeling: The mood of the people is rebellious. She's in a bad mood. 2 in the mood. ready, willing, eager, keen, (well-)disposed, inclined, sympathetic, minded: I'm not in the mood for a film tonight, but I am in the mood to go dancing.

moody adj. 1 sullen, melancholy, blue, sad, unhappy, dejected, depressed, crestfallen, downcast, despondent, chap-fallen, in the doldrums, downhearted, gloomy, glum, moping, mopy, mopish, sulky, sulking, morose, brooding, broody, heavy-hearted, dour, cheerless, dismal, desolate, disconsolate, lugubrious, disheartened, saturnine, Colloq down in the mouth, (down) in the dumps, out of sorts, US off (one's) feed: He's been moody the past few days, and I don't know how to cheer him up. 2 testy, crotchety, short-tempered, abrupt, short, curt, impatient, crabby, crusty, huffy, huffish, crabbed, cantankerous, curmudgeonly, ill-humoured, ill-tempered, cranky, petulant, waspish, temperamental, snappish, snappy, irritable, peevish, cranky, touchy, piqued; in a (fit of) pique, in high dudgeon: If I were you, I shouldn't ask her for a favour today as she's very moody. 3 fickle, volatile, capricious, mercurial, unstable, fitful, flighty, unsteady, changeable, erratic, uneven, inconstant, undependable, unreliable, unpredictable: Being artists, they are moody, and there's no telling if they will want to be interviewed today.

moonshine n. 1 moonlight, moonbeams: Her hair reflected silver in the moonshine. 2 (stuff and) nonsense, rubbish, taradiddle, humbug, drivel, twaddle, balderdash, blather or blether, Colloq hot air, claptrap, pack of lies, con, bosh, gas, eyewash, hogwash, bunk, guff, piffle, hokum, rot, malarkey, bilge (water), tripe, (the old) song and dance, line, Brit tommy-rot, US apple-sauce, razzmatazz, jive, Slang crap, bull, hooey, Brit tosh, US garbage, BS, Taboo slang horseshit, bullshit: He fed her a load of moonshine about owning a big yacht. 3 poteen, Colloq chiefly US and Canadian hooch or hootch, white lightning, white mule, home-brew, bootleg: Government agents raided a still that produced 100 gallons of moonshine a day.

moor° n. heath, moorland, wasteland, No. Eng. and Scots fell: The police pursued the escaped prisoner across the moor, but they lost him.

moorý v. secure, tie up, make fast, dock, berth, (drop) anchor; fix: The vessel was soon moored and the passengers disembarked. The huge aerial is moored by cables.

moot adj. 1 debatable, arguable, undecided, undetermined, controversial, doubtful, disputable, open to debate, at issue, indefinite, problematic(al), questionable, open (to question or to discussion), confutable, confuted, contestable, contested, unsettled, unresolved, up in the air, unconcluded: Whether he would be found innocent was still a moot point.

--v. 2 bring up or forward, introduce, broach, put forward, proffer, posit, propound, advance, submit, suggest: It has been mooted that she was with the victim just before the murder.

moral adj. 1 ethical; right, good, pure, honest, proper, upright, honourable, decent, moralistic, respectable, high-minded, virtuous, upstanding, righteous, principled, scrupulous, incorruptible, noble, just: She is one of the most moral people I have ever met. 2 ethical, moralizing, moralistic: Questions of right and wrong are a subject for moral philosophy. It is a moral, not a legal, issue.

--n. 3 lesson, homily, teaching, point, message; aphorism, maxim, precept, apophthegm or apothegm, adage, saw, proverb, epigram, motto, slogan: The moral of the story is, 'Do unto others before they do unto you'. 4 morals. behaviour, conduct, mores, belief, habit(s), custom(s), practice(s), principle(s), scruples, ethics, ideals, standards; probity, morality, rectitude, integrity: For this appointment, we require a person of the highest morals.

morale n. dedication, spirit(s), unity, esprit de corps, disposition, attitude, confidence, self-confidence, self-esteem: The team's morale improved after they won their first game in five weeks.

morality n. 1 ethics, morals, ethicalness, moralness, principle(s), mores, integrity, propriety, standards, ideals; honesty, right, rightness, righteousness, rectitude, justice, fair play, fairness, decency, uprightness, integrity: Morality should not be conditioned by expediency. 2 behaviour, conduct, habit(s), custom(s): Are you suggesting that utilitarianism is a guide for morality?

morass n. 1 bog, marsh, swamp, fen, quagmire, slough, marshland, moorland, No. Eng. and Scots moss: The land not under cultivation was morass or forest. 2 entanglement, confusion, muddle, mess, quagmire, tangle, quicksand: It took years to extricate the company from the legal morass of the bankruptcy courts.

moratorium
n. halt, hiatus, suspension, stay, respite, freeze, delay, waiting-period, postponement: The arts commission requests a six-month moratorium on sales to foreign purchasers.

morbid adj. 1 unhealthy, unwholesome, disordered, unsound, sick, pathological, pathogenic: Inhalation of fumes containing lead has caused this morbid condition. 2 grim, ghoulish, macabre, monstrous, ghastly, grotesque, grisly, gruesome: At an early age, Glynis exhibited a morbid interest in cadavers. Spare me the morbid details - please! 3 gloomy, lugubrious, glum, morose, sombre, blue, sad, melancholy, despondent, depressed, dejected, downcast: With Charley again in one of his morbid moods, we can anticipate another cheerless visit.

moreover adv. furthermore, further, besides, not only that, more than that, what is more; to boot, into the bargain, in addition, additionally, as well, too: She was pleased that I had brought some wine - it was, moreover, her favourite burgundy.

moribund adj. 1 dying, in extremis, at death's door, failing, fading, with one foot in the grave, half-dead, breathing one's last, expiring, on one's last legs, on one's deathbed: Apparently moribund for weeks, he suddenly revived when he saw her. 2 ending, declining, obsolescent, weak, on the way out, waning, on the wane, dying out; stagnating, stagnant: At the time, the Ottoman Empire was already moribund.

morning n. 1 forenoon, a.m., dawn, daybreak, sunrise, Literary morn, Archaic cock crow, day-spring, morrow, Chiefly US sun-up: The meeting will be at nine o'clock in the morning.

--adj. 2 matutinal, matinal, a.m., forenoon: I prefer a morning meeting.

morsel n. 1 mouthful, bite, gobbet, spoonful, forkful, chew, taste, sample, nibble, bit, drop, dollop, soup‡on: She delicately ate tiny morsels of the banana. 2 bit, crumb, fragment, scrap, sliver, splinter, shard or sherd, shred, remnant, particle, atom, speck, whit, fraction, grain, granule, pinch, piece, Colloq smidgen or smidgin: There wasn't the slightest morsel of evidence to connect me with the crime.

mortal adj. 1 human; transitory, temporal, transient, ephemeral: It finally dawned on him that the king was mortal, like other men. 2 physical, bodily, corporeal, corporal, fleshly, earthly, worldly, perishable: Her mortal remains are buried at Bognor Regis. 3 deadly, fatal, lethal, terminal, destructive, disastrous: The admiral lay dying from a mortal wound. 4 relentless, implacable, unrelenting, bitter, sworn, deadly, unremitting, unappeasable, unceasing: Halifax was the mortal enemy of despotism. 5 abject, extreme, awful, great, enormous, intense, terrible, inordinate, dire: Giles lived in mortal fear of offending his mother.

--n. 6 human (being), man, woman, person, soul, individual, creature, earthling: The novel depicts a lifestyle far removed from that of ordinary mortals. We mortals have nothing to fear from intergalactic aliens.

mortify v. 1 humiliate, shame, humble, embarrass, abash, chagrin, rebuff, crush, discomfit, deflate, bring down, degrade, downgrade, reduce, chasten, subdue, suppress, make someone eat humble pie, teach someone his or her place, Colloq put down: She was mortified to learn that she had been disqualified. 2 punish, castigate, discipline, control, subdue, subjugate: Repentance was considered insufficient penance, so the flagellants mortified the flesh with scourges. 3 gangrene, fester, necrose, putrefy, rot, decompose, decay, putresce: After a fortnight, the flesh mortifies and falls away.

mother n. 1 dam, materfamilias, (female) parent, Old-fashioned or formal or jocular mater, Formal progenitrix; matriarch, Colloq ma, old lady, old woman, Brit mummy, mum, US mom, mommy, mama, mamma, maw, mammy, mam: He runs crying to his mother whenever anyone teases him. 2 source, origin, genesis: Necessity is the mother of invention. 3 nourisher, nurturer, nurse: Poverty was the mother of anarchy.

--adj. 4 native, natural, innate: She has the mother wit to know better.

--v. 5 nurture, nourish, nurse, care for, look after, protect, shelter, watch over, take care of: She mothered me when I needed her, and I won't desert her now. 6 pamper, baby, coddle, spoil, indulge, fuss over, overprotect: You mother the child too much.

motif n. theme, idea, topic, subject, concept, leitmotif; pattern, figure, refrain, device, ornament, decoration, element, convention: The painter repeats the motif throughout his pictures in much the same way that a composer repeats a bar of music.

motion n. 1 movement, moving, change, shift, shifting, action, going, travelling, travel, progress, passage, transit; activity, commotion, stir, agitation, turmoil, turbulence: One could barely sense the slow motion of the train. The leaves of the aspen appear to be in constant motion. 2 mobility, movability, motility: I could feel the motion gradually returning to my numbed limbs. 3 gait, bearing, carriage, tread, walk, step: The machine works with alternate upward and downward motions. 4 gesture, gesticulation, signal, sign: She made a motion for me to come nearer. 5 proposal, suggestion, proposition, recommendation, offering, submission: A motion must be seconded by a member in good standing.

--v. 6 gesture, gesticulate, beckon, signal, sign, wave: The cashier motioned to me and I went over to the window.

motivate v. prompt, activate, move, inspire, incite, induce, actuate, stimulate, provoke, influence, encourage, occasion, bring about, cause; excite, egg (on), urge, prod, spur, galvanize, goad, rouse, arouse, stir (up), wheedle, coax, persuade, cajole, tempt, push, impel, drive, instigate: The biggest problem is motivating students to apply themselves to academic subjects.

motive n. 1 inducement, incentive, motivation, stimulus, motivating force, stimulation, incitement, influence, cause, reason, rationale, grounds; attraction, lure, enticement, goad, spur, urge, prod: It is thought that jealousy was his motive for murder. 2 purpose, aim, intention, intent, object, objective, goal, end, arriŠre pens,e (= 'hidden motive'); ambition, desire; Colloq angle: I asked the chairman what his motive was in trying to expand the company.

--adj. 3 driving, impelling, propelling, propulsive, moving, kinetic, activating, operative: The motive power used in the ultra-light aircraft is provided entirely by the pilot's pedalling.

mottled adj. dappled, brindled, marbled, streaked, splodgy or US splotchy, blotched, blotchy, freckled, spotted, spotty, patchy, speckled, flecked, sprinkled, spattered, splashed, streaky, stippled, pied, piebald; multicoloured, variegated, particoloured, Colloq splodged or US splotched: Do you like that mottled effect on the wallpaper?

motto n. maxim, proverb, saying, adage, saw, aphorism, apophthegm or apothegm, gnome, slogan, byword, catchword, battle-cry, guide, moral, principle, rule, precept: The motto of the Order of the

Garter is Honi soit qui mal y pense, 'Shame on whoever thinks ill of it'.

mould° n. 1 form, cast, matrix, die; template or templet, pattern, form: He broke the mould to prevent the casting of a duplicate statuette. 2 form, shape, pattern, format, structure, build, construction, design, arrangement, organization, configuration, kind, brand, make, line, type, stamp, cut: Was man made in the same mould as his God, or vice versa? 3 character, nature, stamp, type, kind, kidney, ilk, sort: Grandpa said that he wouldn't want someone of her mould in the family.

--v. 4 shape, form, make, work, fashion, configure, sculpture or sculpt, model, knead, construct: carve, cut: The artist moulded the original design in clay. 5 forge, cast, stamp, die-cast: These beads are moulded from solid gold. 6 influence, shape, form, affect, make, control, direct, guide, lead: The speech-writer's job is to mould the language to fit his client's ideas. The candidate is trying to mould public opinion in his favour.

mouldý n. mildew, fungus, blight, smut: A mild solution of bleach will clean that mould off the bathroom tiles.

mould° n. soil, earth, loam, topsoil, dirt, humus: Add some rich mould to the house-plants periodically and they will flourish.

mouldy adj. aged, ancient, outdated, old-fashioned, antediluvian, unused, stale, decayed, decaying, carious, mildewed, mouldering, musty; spoilt or spoiled, rotten, rotting, putrid, putrescent, putrefying, rancid, rank, decomposed, decomposing, mucid: Digging about in the files, he unearthed some mouldy old plans of the house. All the food in the fridge had gone mouldy while they were away.

mound n. 1 hillock, rise, hummock, hill, hump, bank, elevation, knoll, knob, swell, dune, slope, tor, Chiefly W US and Canadian butte,: We stood on a high mound from which we could see for miles. 2 heap, pile, stack, Archaeology tumulus, tell, barrow, (kitchen) midden: Excavation of the mound yielded scores of Iron Age artefacts.

mount n. 1 See mountain, 1, below.

--v. 2 climb (up), go up, ascend, scale, clamber up, make one's way up: We mounted the ladder to the roof. The speaker mounted the dais. 3 rise (up), arise, soar, fly (up), rocket (upwards): With the salmon in its grasp, the eagle mounted to the sky. 4 climb or get or clamber up on, bestride, straddle, bestraddle: The gunfighter mounted his horse and rode off. 5 (put on) display, (put on) exhibit, put on exhibition, present, install or instal, stage, prepare, ready, put on, put in place, set up; arrange, coordinate, compose, organize, set in motion, launch: The gallery will mount a show of John's sculpture next spring. They have mounted a major advertising campaign for their face cream. 6 frame, mat or matt, set off: This print should be mounted using an olive green paper. 7 increase, wax, rise, escalate, intensify, swell, expand, grow, mount up, multiply, pile up, build up, accumulate: Complaints have been mounting against the vulgar language heard on prime-time TV.

--n. 8 backing, setting, support, mounting, background, set, arrangement, backdrop, scene: This style of mount sets off the ruby to its best advantage. 9 horse, steed, charger, palfrey: Her mount was a grey mare.

mountain n. 1 height, elevation, mount, eminence, prominence, peak, alp, tor, summit, No. Eng. and Scots fell, Scots and Irish English ben: Her favourite sport is climbing mountains. 2 heap, pile, stack, mound, accumulation, abundance, mass, Colloq ton(s), heaps, piles, stacks: I have a mountain of laundry to do.

mountainous
adj. 1 craggy, alpine, Himalayan: It was very slow going through the mountainous parts of the country. 2 huge, towering, high, steep, enormous, immense, formidable, mighty, monumental, prodigious, staggering: Their tiny craft was almost engulfed by the mountainous seas.

mourn v. grieve (over), lament, sorrow (over), bemoan, bewail, keen, weep for or over, regret, rue, deplore: We all mourned the loss of a great leader. After his death, the nation mourned for a month.

mournful adj. 1 sad, sorrowful, dismal, melancholy, blue, afflicted, doleful, dolorous, grief-stricken, rueful, forlorn, woebegone, sombre, lugubrious, funereal, joyless, dispirited, cheerless, unhappy, downhearted, heavy-hearted, disconsolate, heartbroken, inconsolable, despondent, desolate, despairing, heartsick, overcome, prostrate: The mournful crowd filed past the bier to pay their last respects. 2 deplorable, sorrowful, grievous, distressing, upsetting, tragic, saddening, disheartening, depressing, lamentable, catastrophic, calamitous, disastrous: The mournful news of the great loss of life in the explosion was broadcast round the world.

mourning n. 1 grief, lament, grieving, lamentation, sorrowing, keening, weeping, wailing: The Highlanders are wont to mingle a degree of solemn mirth with their mourning. 2 bereavement, loss, anguish, sorrow, misery, grief, sadness, woe, woefulness, melancholy, heartache, despondency, despair, desolation: In China people wear white as a sign of mourning. 3 black, widow's weeds, sackcloth and ashes: It was customary at that time to spend at least one month in mourning.

mousy adj. 1 mousey, mouse-coloured, dun, grey, greyish-brown, brownish-grey, brownish, brown, dull, lustreless, lacklustre, drab, flat, plain, colourless: Her lank, mousy hair hung down over her shoulders. 2 timid, cowering, timorous, shy, self-effacing, diffident: Adrian is far too mousy to ask for an increase in salary.

mouth n. 1 lips; maw, jaws, oral cavity, Technical stoma, Slang trap, kisser, muzzle, gob, chops, yap, US bazoo: I want to hear that you don't love me from your own mouth. 2 opening, aperture, doorway, door, gateway, gate, access, entrance, inlet, entry, entry-way, way in, entr,e; passage, passageway, way, orifice; exit, way out, vent, outlet, outfall, Technical debouchment or debouchure, debouch or d,bouch,, embouchure: We stood at the mouth of the cave. An enormous delta formed at the mouth of the river. 3 bragging, boasting, braggadocio, empty or idle talk, bombast, rodomontade, fustian, Slang claptrap, hot air, gas: The fellow is all mouth and no action. 4 disrespect, impudence, insolence, sauciness, rudeness, impertinence, pertness, boldness, audacity, presumptuousness, brashness, flippancy, Colloq lip, cheek, backchat, sauce, freshness, US sass, back talk: He'd better not give me any of his mouth or I'll have his guts for garters. 5 grimace, pout, moue, face: She made a mouth when I said she couldn't go. 6 down in or at the mouth.

dejected, despondent, sad, sorrowful, unhappy, melancholy, blue, crestfallen, dispirited, disheartened, downcast, Colloq (down) in the dumps, broken up: He was very down in the mouth after seeing the results of the laboratory tests.

--v. 7 utter, say, speak, pronounce, announce, enunciate, articulate, voice, sound, express, vocalize; declaim, orate: He mouthed each word with excruciating care. Who wants to hear some pompous fool mouthing platitudes?

mouthful n. morsel, bite, spoonful, forkful, lump, chunk, gob, hunk: He took a mouthful of food.

mouthpiece

n. 1 embouchure; bit: I need a new mouthpiece for my clarinet. 2 spokesman, spokeswoman, spokesperson, agent, representative, intermediator, mediator, delegate: He is always quoted through his mouthpiece, never directly. 3 lawyer, attorney, Slang US shyster: A good mouthpiece could get me out of this fix.

movable adj. moveable, floating, variable, changeable, unfixed; portable, transportable, transferable or transferrable: Easter Sunday is a movable feast and has no fixed date on the calendar. Recent developments have produced computers that are smaller than an attach, case and easily movable.

move v. 1 shift, stir, budge, make a move, go; proceed, advance, progress: It is difficult to move in a strait-jacket. The train is moving at a rate of sixty miles an hour. Don't move - I have a gun. 2 move house, move out, remove, move away, relocate, decamp, depart, change residence, emigrate, go or make off, transfer, Colloq take off (for), pull up stakes, Brit up sticks, Slang US split (for): When did you say you were moving to London? 3 shake (up), disturb, stir (up), agitate, affect, touch: We moved heaven and earth to find a proper place for her to stay. 4 affect, touch, stir, shake up, agitate, hit (hard), upset, strike, smite, disturb, ruffle, disquiet, have an (or a profound) effect (on), make a (deep) impression (on): The pictures of starving children moved everyone. 5 provoke, arouse, excite, stir up, lead, rouse, stimulate: At the end of the film, when she died, I was moved to tears. 6 arouse, rouse, provoke, actuate, lead, prompt, spur, motivate, influence, impel, prod, remind, inspire, make: His mention of families moved me to ask when he had last seen his father. 7 propose, put forward or forth, forward, advance, submit, suggest, advocate, propound: The question of budget was moved at the last meeting.

--n. 8 change, change-over, relocation, transfer, shift, removal: My supervisor suggested a move to a different department. 9 manoeuvre, device, trick, caper, dodge, ploy, stratagem, artifice, ruse, action, act, deed, Colloq gimmick: Getting Diana to invite Colin was a very good move. 10 turn, time, opportunity: I have had my turn, now it's your move. 11 gesture, gesticulation, action, motion, stirring: One move and you're a dead man! 12 get a move on. a get moving, begin, start, commence, get going, get under way, get started, stir or bestir oneself, Colloq get or start the ball rolling, get the show on the road, break the ice, get cracking, step on it or the gas: He doesn't usually get a move on till noon. b hurry, hasten, make haste, rush, run: Get a move on down to the supermarket before it closes. 13 on the move. a travelling, in transit, on the way, on one's way, on the road, on the go, moving: She is always on the move and it is difficult to catch her. b on the go, working, on the run, busy, occupied: I have been on the move since six this morning. c proceeding, progressing, advancing, moving ahead, succeeding, on the go: It looks as if the industry is again on the move after a brief decline.

movement n. 1 repositioning, move, motion, relocation, moving, migration, shift, transfer, flow, displacement: Population movement increased dramatically in the Middle Ages. 2 action, activity, move, moving, stir, stirring: There was a sudden movement in the bushes. 3 gesture, gesticulation, move, flicker, sign, signal; manoeuvre, change of attitude or position: Only the slightest upward movement of his eyebrow indicated his surprise. Every little movement has a meaning all its own. 4 mechanism, works, workings, moving parts, machinery, action, gears, Colloq innards: Technically, the movement of a watch does not include the escapement. 5 campaign, crusade, drive; front, faction, party, group, wing: The 1960s saw many successes for the civil rights' movement in America. 6 change, activity, action, shift, advance or decline, increase or decrease, upward or downward movement, stirring; development, progress: Shares displayed little movement in today's trading. 7 drift, trend, tendency, course, swing: They have noted a growing movement towards religious fundamentalism.

movie n. 1 motion picture, film, moving picture, silent (picture), talking picture, Colloq talkie, flick: Her grandfather was one of the first actors in silent movies. 2 Usually, movies. picture show, cinema, flicks, Colloq big or large screen, silver screen: Why don't we go to the movies instead of watching television tonight?

moving adj. 1 touching, poignant, emotive, affecting, stirring, heart-rending, emotional, telling, effective, impressive, striking, compelling; pathetic, exciting, thrilling, inspiring, inspirational, impelling, persuasive: He related a moving story of his years in various concentration camps. 2 active, mobile, unfixed, unstationary, motile, going, operating, working, in motion, on the move: Be careful not to touch any of the moving parts inside the clock.

mow v. 1 cut (down), scythe, trim, shear: You don't need to mow the lawn so much during a dry spell. 2 mow down. annihilate, kill, massacre, butcher, slaughter, exterminate, liquidate, eradicate, wipe out, cut down, cut to pieces, destroy, decimate: The first platoon was mowed down by machine-gun fire.

13.5 muck...
=-

muck n. 1 ordure, manure, dung, excrement, faeces, droppings; guano: The muck is saved for use as fertilizer. 2 dirt, filth, bilge, slime, sludge, ooze, scum, sewage, mire, mud, feculence, Colloq gunge, gunk, US grunge: Give me a chance to get the muck off my shoes.

--v. 3 muck about. fool around, waste time, idle, loiter, mess around or about: She told me to stop mucking about and get a job. 4 muck up. ruin, wreck, destroy, make a mess of, botch, mess up, bungle, Colloq screw up, Slang bugger up, make a muck of: She's mucked up her own life, and, given the chance, she'll muck up mine.

mud n. muck, ooze, slime, mire, clay, sludge, silt, dirt, US and Canadian gumbo or gombo: The mud came up to my ankles.

muddle v. 1 bewilder, confuse, confound, mystify, baffle, mix up, disorient, befuddle, perplex, bemuse, puzzle, befog: I am totally muddled by your explanation of differential calculus. 2 confuse, mix up, jumble, scramble, entangle, tangle, mess up, disorder, disarrange, disorganize, bungle, mismanage, Colloq muff: My financial affairs got hopelessly muddled when I changed banks. 3 muddle through. (barely) manage, cope, make it, scrape through or along, contrive, make do, get by, get along: We were just muddling through when James was offered this wonderful job.

--n. 4 mess, confusion, mix-up, jumble, tangle, disorder, hotchpotch or US also hodgepodge, mishmash, chaos, disaster, Colloq stew, Slang US screw-up, snafu, Taboo slang Brit balls-up: A lot of muddles, mix-ups, and misunderstandings ensued.

muddy adj. 1 fouled, befouled, muddied, mud-spattered, dirty, grubby, grimy, soiled, mud-caked, slimy, mucky, miry; oozy, squelchy, squashy, boggy, fenny, marshy, swampy; Formal feculent; Colloq squishy, squushy: Take off those muddy boots before you come into the house. The walk up to the house has become all muddy in the rain. 2 confused, unclear, vague, obscure, dull, dim, fuzzy, muddled, addled, mixed-up: Greg has only a muddy idea of what you're talking about. 3 drab, subdued, blurred, dingy, flat, murky, mat, washed out: The colours in her paintings look very muddy to me.

--v. 4 obscure, dull, dim, confuse, mix up, befog, cloud: His explanation muddied the issue rather than clarifying it. 5 dirty, soil, begrime, smirch, besmirch, spatter, bespatter: A passing car muddied my new skirt.

muffle v. 1 Often, muffle up. wrap, swathe, swaddle, cloak, envelop, cover (up), enfold, shroud, enshroud, conceal, protect: Make sure your neck is muffled when you're out in that icy wind. 2 deaden, silence, suppress, stifle, subdue, damp, dampen, mute, hush, quiet, tone down, still: A few more thicknesses of flannel will muffle the noise of the motor.

muffler n. scarf, boa; shawl, wrap: Wrap this muffler round your neck for added warmth.

mug n. 1 jug, tankard, stein, toby (jug), pot, beaker, cup: The relief workers passed round mugs of hot coffee to the homeless. 2 face, visage, features, countenance, Slang puss, kisser, mush, Brit clock, dial, Archaic phiz or phizog, US pan: The ex-boxer has a mug that only a mother could love. 3 fool, duffer, simpleton, dupe, gull, innocent, Colloq chump, mark, soft or easy touch, Brit muggins, Slang sucker: The mug thought he had found a full wallet.

--v. 4 make a face or faces, grimace: Here are some pictures of the twins mugging for the camera. 5 attack, set upon, rob, assault; garrotte, throttle: Anyone who walks through the park at night risks getting mugged. 6 mug up (on). study, Formal lucubrate, Colloq cram, burn the midnight oil, get up (on), Brit swot, bone up (on): I have to mug up on my Latin for tomorrow's examination.

muggy adj. humid, damp, sticky, sultry, oppressive, clammy, steamy, close, stuffy, moist, soggy: It was so muggy that every night the bedlinen was completely soaked.

mull v. Usually, mull over. ponder, consider, study, think (over or about), cogitate (on or over or about), con, evaluate, turn over, weigh, deliberate (on or over), reflect (on), muse (on), review, examine, contemplate, meditate (on), chew over, ruminate (on or over),: I have been mulling over your suggestion that I should join the navy.

mum adj. 1 silent, mute, close-mouthed, quiet, tight-lipped: She swore she would keep mum about where the money was hidden.

--n. 2 Mum's the word. Don't tell a soul, Keep silent, Keep secret, Keep quiet, Keep (something) to oneself, Keep (something) under one's hat, Say nothing, Tell no-one, Play dumb: He told who stole the bell, but mum's the word.

mumble v. murmur, mutter, say inarticulately, utter indistinctly, swallow one's words: He mumbled the name of the person who had shot him, but she didn't catch it.

mumbo-jumbo
n. 1 gibberish, nonsense, rubbish, gobbledegook or

gobbledygook, drivel, humbug, bunkum, double-talk, rigmarole or rigamarole, jabberwocky, blather or blether, poppycock, Colloq eyewash, rot, tommy-rot, hogwash, bilge, bosh, bull, malarkey, claptrap, piffle, US hooey, moonshine, bunk Slang bull, crap, Brit tosh, Taboo slang bullshit: Before he would give me the cheque, the lawyer made me sign something full of legal mumbo-jumbo. 2 spell, incantation, chant, formula, charm, abracadabra, hocus-pocus, rite, ritual, conjuration, magic: She had to sit through all the mumbo-jumbo of her husband's investiture.

munch v. chew, crunch, masticate, champ, chomp, scrunch: He just sat there munching peanuts.

municipal adj. civic, civil, metropolitan, urban, city, town, village, borough, parish, Brit council: Voting takes place in the municipal elections next week.

municipality

n. city, metropolis, town, village, borough, district, township; suburb, exurb: The recreational facilities offered by the municipality are in need of refurbishing.

murder n. 1 homicide, manslaughter, regicide, patricide, matricide, parricide, fratricide, sororicide, uxoricide, infanticide; killing, slaying, assassination: In many countries, murder is a crime punishable by death. 2 slaughter, butchery, genocide, massacre, liquidation, decimation, extermination, eradication, wiping out, murdering, slaying, killing, bloodshed, carnage: Their wanton murder of thousands of prisoners of war has been proven.

--v. 3 kill, slay, assassinate, put to death, end the life of, put away or down, put out of one's misery, wipe out, destroy, butcher, massacre, liquidate, exterminate, eradicate, annihilate, extinguish, slaughter, lay low, Slang eliminate, bump off, knock off, do in, polish off, blow away, US rub out, waste, ice, take for a ride, fit with a concrete overcoat or with concrete overshoes, snuff (out): The drug dealers were murdered, one by one, by a rival gang. 4 spoil, ruin, mar, destroy, wreck, kill, mangle, butcher, mutilate: She murdered the song by singing it far too fast.

murderer n. murderess, killer, slayer, assassin, homicide, cutthroat, liquidator, executioner, butcher, Slang hit man: The police have arrested someone they are certain is the murderer.

murderous adj. 1 fatal, lethal, deadly, deathly, mortal, destructive, devastating, sanguinary, bloody, brutal, savage, bloodthirsty, barbarous, fell, cruel, inhuman: The tolling of the bell signalled that the murderous deed had been done. 2 killing, strenuous, stressful, difficult, arduous, exhausting, hellish, harrowing, rigorous, intolerable, unbearable: You cannot keep up such a murderous pace, without any rest, and remain healthy.

murky adj. dark, gloomy, threatening, dim, clouded, cloudy, overcast, grey, dismal, dreary, bleak, sombre, grim, funereal, shady, shadowy: I could barely make out her face in the murky corner of the chapel.

murmur n. 1 undercurrent, undertone, background noise or sound, rumble, rumbling, mumble, mumbling, drone, droning, buzz, buzzing, murmuration, murmuring, hum, humming, whispering, Formal susurration or susurrus: They spoke in low voices, barely audible above the murmur of the mourning doves. 2 muttering, complaining, complaint, grumble, grumbling, Colloq grousing, grouse: We have heard not any murmurs since everyone had an increase in salary.

--v. 3 mumble, mutter, whisper: He murmured into her ear something about being pleased to see her. 4 complain, grumble, mutter, moan, lament, wail, Colloq grouse: Employees will always find something to murmur about.

muscular adj. sinewy, brawny, burly, powerful, powerfully built, strapping, rugged, husky, robust, athletic, sturdy, well-muscled, broad-shouldered: We all envied Nick's muscular physique.

muse v. cogitate, meditate, reflect, contemplate, ruminate, think over, think about, consider, chew over, deliberate, revolve, weigh, evaluate, study, mull over, brood (over), ponder; be absorbed (in thought), be in a brown study, dream, day-dream, be in a trance or reverie: Asked for a decision, Michael mused for a while before answering.

mushy adj. 1 soft, pulpy, squashy, doughy, squidgy, spongy; swampy, boggy, miry; Colloq squishy, squushy, squashy: The peach was overripe and mushy. The bottom of the pond is all mushy and feels awful when you stand up. 2 mawkish, maudlin, sentimental, romantic, saccharine, sugary, syrupy, Colloq corny, sloppy, gooey, slushy, Brit wet, Slang schmaltzy: She cried three handkerchiefs-full over the mushy parts of Gone With The Wind .

musical adj. tuneful, melodic, harmonious, lilting, lyrical, melodious, mellifluous, dulcet, euphonious: Many modern compositions, while technically competent, are not as musical as the old-fashioned pieces.

must v. 1 ought (to), should, have to, be obliged or obligated to, be compelled or forced to, be required to: I must get this work done before lunch-time. Must you go? Yes, I must.

--n. 2 necessity, requisite, requirement, obligation, sine qua non, essential: Patience is an absolute must in this job.

muster v. 1 call or come together, assemble, convoke, convene, collect, mobilize, rally, round up, gather, marshal, summon (up): Within a month he had mustered a force of thousands to fight the invaders. I mustered up enough courage to ask Joan out to dinner.

--n. 2 rally, assembly, assemblage, convocation, meet, meeting, convention, congress, round-up, turnout, gathering, congregation, aggregation, aggregate: We attended the annual muster of bagpipe marching bands. 3 pass muster. come up to scratch, make the grade, measure up, be acceptable, Colloq come or be up to snuff: Are you sure that your new design will pass muster with the art director?

musty adj. 1 mouldy, damp, mildewed, mildewy, sour, rancid, spoilt, decayed, rotten, putrid, fetid or foetid, fusty, stale: Open the windows to get rid of that musty odour. 2 stale, old-fashioned, antiquated, antediluvian, ancient, out of date, bygone, pass,, old hat, obsolete, archaic, tired, hoary, worn out, trite, clich,d, stereotypical: I've heard all those musty jokes of his a thousand times before.

mutation n. 1 change, changing, alteration, altering, modification, modifying, transformation, transforming, metamorphosis, metamorphosing, transmutation, transmuting, transfiguration, transfiguring, evolution, evolving, variation, varying: For years he studied the mutation of the sweet pea. 2 variant, variation, deviation, deviant, mutant, anomaly, departure: The mutations exhibited marked differences over the generations.

mute   adj. 1 silent, dumb, speechless, voiceless, wordless, tight-lipped, taciturn, tacit, reserved, quiet, Colloq mum: Though I persisted in asking his name, he remained mute. 2 unspoken, unsaid, tacit, silent: The stain on the floor was a mute reminder of the crime.

--v. 3 deaden, silence, muffle, stifle, dampen, damp, subdue, suppress, quiet or Brit also quieten, hush, soft-pedal, turn down, tone down: The carpet muted her footsteps as she crept up behind him.

mutilate v. 1 maim, disfigure, mangle, cripple, lame, butcher, disable; dismember, amputate, hack off, cut off, lop off, tear off, rip off: Formerly, the hands of thieves were mutilated as an example to others. 2 spoil, mar, ruin, damage, deface, vandalize, destroy: As the book had been mutilated, he had to buy the library a replacement.

mutinous adj. 1 rebellious, revolutionary, subversive, seditious, insurgent, insurrectionary: The mutinous crew was finally subdued and clapped in irons. 2 recalcitrant, refractory, contumacious, obstinate, defiant, insubordinate, disobedient, unruly, unmanageable, ungovernable, uncontrollable: Whenever we told Clare to work harder at school she became mutinous.

mutiny   n. 1 revolt, rebellion, revolution, subversion, subversiveness, insurgency, insurgence, insurrection, uprising: The crew are threatening a mutiny.

--v. 2 rebel, rise up (against), strike, revolt; disobey, subvert, agitate (against): The crew of the Bounty mutinied and set Captain Bligh adrift.

mutter   v. 1 mumble, murmur, grunt: He was muttering something to himself that I didn't catch. 2 grumble, complain, Colloq grouch, grouse, Brit chunter: She has been muttering about cuts in the postal service ever since I can remember.

mutual adj. 1 reciprocal, reciprocated, requited, interactive, complementary: I love her and I hope that the feeling is mutual. 2 common, communal, joint, shared: Gerald is our mutual friend.

13.6 mysterious...
=-

mysterious
adj. 1 puzzling, enigmatic, baffling, insoluble, unsolvable, bewildering, confounding, confusing, perplexing, mystifying, weird, bizarre, strange, uncanny, curious: A mysterious force makes the saucer rise off the ground and fly at incredible speeds. 2 cryptic, arcane, secret, inscrutable, covert, hidden, furtive, unclear, dark, concealed, occult, inexplicable, incomprehensible, mystic(al), unknown, unfathomable, mystical, recondite, abstruse: It is mysterious how the agency accomplishes its ends.

mystery n. 1 puzzle, enigma, conundrum, riddle, question: How he escaped from the locked room is a mystery. 2 obscurity, secrecy, indefiniteness, vagueness, nebulousness, ambiguity, ambiguousness, inscrutability, inscrutableness: The identity of the beautiful lady in the green dress is shrouded in mystery. 3 detective story or novel, murder (story), Colloq whodunit: Joel, who once fancied himself an intellectual, now reads nothing but mysteries.

mystical adj. 1 allegorical, symbolic(al), mystic, cabbalistic, arcane, unrevealed, secret, occult, supernatural, esoteric, other-worldly, preternatural, cryptic, concealed, hidden, clandestine, private, veiled, ineffable, mysterious: A mystical spirit dwells in the raven that sits on his shoulder. 2 See mysterious, 2, above.

mystify v. fool, hoax, humbug, confuse, confound, mix up, bewilder, stump, puzzle, baffle, Colloq bamboozle, stump, flummox, Slang beat: We were totally mystified by the unfamiliar symbols on the wall.

mystique n. mystery, magic, charisma, aura, inscrutability, supernaturalism, preternaturalism, strangeness: She has a certain mystique about her.

myth n. 1 legend, fable, allegory, parable, tradition, saga, epic, (folk) tale, story, mythos; history: The ancient myths have provided sources for much of modern literature. 2 fable, lie, (tall) tale, fib, prevarication, fiction, untruth, falsehood, fabrication, cock-and-bull story, Colloq whopper: He told her some myth about his being a multimillionaire and she believed it.

mythical adj. 1 mythic, mythological, fabled, legendary, traditional, folkloric, storied, romantic, fairy-tale, story-book; allegorical, symbolic, parabolic(al): Campbell has demonstrated astounding similarities amongst the mythical tales of unrelated cultures. 2 mythic, fanciful, imaginary, fictitious, make-believe, made-up, chimerical, untrue: When she was about seven, my daughter had a mythical friend named Theodosia.

mythology n. (body of ..) myths, folklore, tradition, lore, stories, mythos: After only one generation, an extraordinary mythology has been created about Marilyn Monroe.

14.0 N

=-

14.1 nab...

=-

nab v. catch, capture, arrest, put or place under arrest, seize, apprehend, pick up, bring in, take into custody, Colloq pinch, collar, run in, nail, Brit nick: They finally nabbed that cat burglar in Hampstead.

nag° v. 1 Sometimes, nag at. annoy, irritate, irk, pester, criticize, ride, scold, carp (at), upbraid, badger, harass, harry, vex, henpeck, torment, hector, pick at, goad, pick on, find fault with, berate, nettle, bully, provoke, plague, worry, bother, Brit chivvy or chivy or chevy, Colloq needle: He nags her day and night about going on a diet.

--n. 2 scold, harpy, pest, shrew, virago, termagant, fishwife: You certainly can be a terrible nag, can't you?

nagý n. jade, Rosinante; horse, hack, pony, dobbin, racehorse, Thoroughbred, Slang gee-gee, US hayburner, plug, bangtail, gee-gee: That old nag wouldn't be able to clear the fence.

nagging adj. distressing, chronic, continuous, continual, persistent, unrelenting, relentless, recurring: He complains of a nagging pain in his shoulder. I have a nagging feeling that I have an appointment to be somewhere.

nail n. 1 fastener, fastening, spike, pin: The pieces were held together by several nails. 2 fingernail, toenail, claw, talon: The detective found some fibres under the victim's nails. 3 bite one's nails. worry, agonize, fret, lose sleep (over), chafe, suffer, Colloq stew (over or about): Carl is biting his nails over the result of his cholesterol test. 4 hard or tough as nails. a tough, vigorous, hardy: After years of mountain-climbing, Ren, is as hard as nails. b cold, unsentimental, unsympathetic, unfeeling: The boss, as hard as nails, doesn't care what you sacrifice to get the job done. 5 hit the nail on the head. be accurate, be correct, be precise, be right, put (one's) finger on it: When you said they were fools, you really hit the nail on the head. 6 on the nail. immediately, at once, straight or right away, promptly, without delay, on the spot, Colloq US on the barrel-head: He has always paid his bills right on the nail.

--v. 7 attach, secure, join, pin, tack, clinch or clench; fasten, fix, focus, rivet, glue: The door to the mysterious room was nailed shut. His eyes were nailed to the pressure gauge. 8 See nab, above. 9 hit, strike; punch; shoot: She nailed him with a left hook and he sank like a stone. 10 nail down. settle, secure, resolve, complete, conclude, make final; finalize: Let's celebrate: I nailed down the order for 10,000 air-conditioning units.

na‹ve adj. naive or na‹f, ingenuous, innocent, credulous, childlike, born yesterday, unaffected, unsophisticated, inexperienced, green, unworldly, unsuspecting, unenlightened, unsuspicious, trusting, trustful, gullible, artless, guileless, simple, simplistic, simple-minded, unpretentious, unpretending, candid, natural: Is Chatterley na‹ve enough to believe that the gamekeeper's meetings with his wife were to discuss fox-hunting?

na‹vety   n. naivety, na‹vet, or na‹vet,, ingenuousness, innocence, credulity, credulousness, inexperience, (blind) trust, gullibility, artlessness, callowness, guilelessness, simplicity, unpretentiousness, candour, naturalness, frankness, openness, sincerity: I hope that no one takes advantage of her na‹vety.

naked   adj. 1 stark naked, unclothed, undraped, bare, exposed, stripped, undressed, unclad, uncovered, bared, nude, in the nude, Colloq in the altogether, in one's birthday suit, in the buff, in the raw, au naturel, in a state of nature, Brit starkers, in the nuddy: The two of them stood there, completely naked. 2 unaided, unassisted: Stars of the seventh magnitude or brighter are visible to the naked eye. 3 plain, unadorned, unembellished, stark, overt, patent, obvious, conspicuous, manifest, sheer, undisguised, unvarnished, unmitigated, evident, palpable, unconcealed, in plain sight or view, blatant, barefaced, undeniable, glaring, flagrant, unmistakable or unmistakeable, unalloyed, unmixed, blunt, unadulterated, pure: He told her the naked truth about how he felt. 4 unsheathed, unprotected, bare, exposed: How dare he show a naked sword in the presence of the Emperor?!

name   n. 1 designation, label, appellation, term, tag, style, Colloq moniker or monicker, handle: His name is Chauncy but they call him Rusty. 2 reputation; repute, honour, esteem, (high) regard, respect, rank, standing, rating, pre-eminence, superiority, eminence, notability, prominence, prestige, favour, distinction, renown, fame, popularity, celebrity: She has made a name for herself as a clever business executive. He thinks he has to protect his name as a ladies' man. 3 personage, somebody, celebrity, star, superstar, hero, VIP, dignitary, luminary, Colloq big shot, bigwig, big cheese, big name: The programme included some well-known names in the entertainment world.

--v. 4 label, tag, style, entitle; call, dub, christen, baptize: They named their book 'The Alien Tongue'. Why would people want to name their child 'Quercus'? 5 choose, elect, select, delegate, nominate, designate, appoint; identify, denominate, pinpoint, specify: She has been named 'Woman of the Year'. I asked her to name our wedding day. She refuses to name her attacker. 6 name names. identify, specify, mention, cite: In exchange for a lighter sentence, the witness agreed to name names.

nameless adj. 1 unnamed, innominate, unidentified, anonymous, pseudonymous, incognito, unknown, unheard-of, unsung: How much we owe the nameless inventor of the wheel! 2 inexpressible, indefinable, unidentifiable, unspecified, unspecifiable: A nameless dread seized him as he entered the cave. 3 ineffable, unutterable, unspeakable, unmentionable, abominable, horrible, indescribable, repulsive: Paganism allowed man to sink beneath a flood of nameless sensualities.

namely adv. specifically, to wit, that is (to say), id est, i.e., videlicet, viz., scilicet, sc.; for example, for instance, exempli gratia, e.g. or eg or eg.: We visited three countries, namely, France, Italy, and Switzerland.

nap° v. 1 doze, nod (off), catnap, Colloq catch forty winks, drop off (to sleep), get some shut-eye, snooze, zizz, US catch or log a few zees (Z's): I nap every afternoon.

--adv. 2 napping. unawares, off guard, unexpectedly, in an unguarded moment: The ball, hit to his backhand, caught him napping.

--n. 3 doze, catnap, siesta, Colloq forty winks, shut-eye, snooze, zizz, Brit lie-down: Take a short nap before dinner.

napý n. pile, fibre, texture, weave, down, shag: Choose a carpet with a short nap for areas of heavy wear.

narcotic adj. 1 soporific, stuporific, hypnotic, sedative, somnolent, sleep-inducing, opiate, dulling, numbing, anaesthetic, stupefacient, stupefying, stupefactive, tranquillizing, Lethean: Most narcotic drugs may be sold only with a doctor's prescription.

--n. 2 drug, soporific, stuporific, hypnotic, sedative, opiate, anaesthetic, stupefacient, tranquillizer: Many doctors are reluctant to prescribe narcotics.

narrate v. relate, tell, recount, report, give an account (of), recite, rehearse, repeat, review, unfold, chronicle, describe, detail, reveal, retail: She narrated a bone-chilling story of intrigue and murder. Please narrate the events leading up to your finding the body, Mrs Easton.

narration n. 1 telling, relating, unfolding, recounting, chronicling, recording, describing; report, recital, recitation, rehearsal, relation, chronicle, description, portrayal, detailing, revelation, story, tale, narrative: His narration was accompanied by nervous gestures. Her narration disagrees with her husband's in certain essential respects. 2 reading, voice-over: The narration did not seem to be coordinated with the pictures on the screen.

narrative n. 1 story, tale, chronicle, description, revelation, portrayal, account, report, record, history, recital, statement: The characterizations were poor, but the narrative was fascinating.

--adj. 2 storytelling, chronicling, anecdotal: One of her long, narrative poems has been published in a collection.

narrator n. reporter, storyteller, raconteur, taleteller, teller of tales, anecdotist or anecdotalist, relator, annalist, chronicler, describer, author; voice-over: We sat spellbound waiting for the narrator to continue.

narrow adj. 1 constricted, slender, slim, thin, restricted, straitened, attenuated, narrowed; narrowing, tapering: We squeezed through the narrow passage to freedom. 2 confined, confining, limited, cramped, close, meagre, pinched, tight, incommodious: I awoke in a cell so narrow I could scarcely move. 3 strict, careful, close, precise, exact, exacting, demanding, finicky, finical, sharp, meticulous, scrupulous, fussy, rigid, searching, critical: The suspected forgeries were submitted to the narrow scrutiny of several experts. 4 restricted, limited, circumscribed, proscribed, denotative: I learnt the meaning of charity in its narrowest sense. 5 See narrow-minded, below. 6 close, hairbreadth, lucky: I'd had a very narrow escape, for the bullet just grazed my scalp. 7 stingy, niggardly, parsimonious, miserly, tight, sparing, tight-fisted, mean, mercenary Brit mingy, Dialectal near, Colloq close: He was so narrow he barely allowed himself the essentials.

--v. 8 constrict, limit, qualify, reduce, lessen, diminish, decrease: She narrowed her chances of winning by buying only one lottery ticket. 9 limit, restrict, focus, confine, concentrate, narrow down: They have narrowed the search for the boy to the area near Chester.

--n. 10 narrows. strait(s), channel, passage: The vessel approached the narrows at dead slow speed.

narrowly adv. 1 barely, (only) just, scarcely, hardly, by a hair's breadth; by the skin of one's teeth, Colloq by a whisker: The speeding lorry narrowly missed those children. 2 closely, carefully, meticulously, scrupulously, searchingly, critically: She regarded him narrowly before speaking.

narrow-minded
adj. bigoted, prejudiced, illiberal, narrow, biased, opinionated, one-sided, intolerant, non-objective, conservative, reactionary, parochial, ultra-conservative, stiff-necked, conventional, hidebound, fundamentalist, literal-minded, narrow-spirited, mean-minded, mean-spirited, petty, pettifogging, small-minded, puritanical, unprogressive, old-fashioned, old-fogyish or old-fogeyish, strait-laced, Colloq stuffy, US close-minded, square, screed-bound, red-necked: The vote reflected a reasonable balance between broad-minded and narrow-minded factions.

nasty   adj. 1 foul, filthy, dirty, unclean, offensive, disgusting, nauseating, revolting, horrible, loathsome, repugnant, repellent, vile, odious, obnoxious, objectionable, nauseous, sickening, vomit-provoking, fetid or foetid, noisome, mephitic, rank, malodorous, rancid, noxious: The nasty stench of rotting vegetation assailed our nostrils. 2 unpleasant, disagreeable, unsavoury, painful, objectionable, annoying, untoward, awkward, difficult, bad, serious: Lord Petherbridge had some very nasty experiences in the war. 3 obscene, dirty, pornographic, blue, smutty, lewd, vulgar, sordid, indecent, licentious, gross, coarse, crude, rude, ribald, bawdy, risqu,, off colour, suggestive, Colloq X-rated, raunchy: The shops are selling some rather nasty videos that I don't want the children to watch. 4 unpleasant, disagreeable, ugly, bad-tempered, vicious, currish, surly, abusive, spiteful, irascible, ill-natured, ill-tempered, cruel, inconsiderate, rude, churlish, obnoxious, crotchety, curmudgeonly, cantankerous, crabbed, cranky, US and Canadian mean: Why is your father so nasty to everyone who wants to go out with you? 5 bad, severe, acute, painful, serious; dangerous, critical: I got a nasty shock when I opened the cupboard door. That's a nasty wound you have there.

nation n. country, state, land, political entity, polity, domain, realm: The countries of Europe are unlikely to become one nation.

national adj. 1 nationwide, country-wide, state, governmental, civil; public, popular, US federal: It took years to enact national clean-air laws. 2 nationalistic, nationalist, patriotic, jingoistic, chauvinistic: During the war, national feelings ran high.

--n. 3 citizen, subject, inhabitant, resident; native: Stephenson left England years ago and is now an Australian national.

nationalistic
adj. nationalist, patriotic, jingoist(ic), chauvinist(ic), xenophobic, isolationist: As communications improved, nationalistic feelings were eroded.

nationality
n. 1 citizenship: Some countries allow their citizens dual nationality. 2 race, nation, ethnic group, ethnos, clan, tribe; strain, stock, pedigree, heritage, roots, extraction, bloodline, breed: The country became a melting-pot of myriad nationalities.

native adj. 1 innate, natal, inborn, natural, inherent, congenital, indwelling, inherited, hereditary, in the blood, intrinsic, constitutional: Early in life, Carla demonstrated a native ability for music. 2 domestic, local, home-grown; indigenous, autochthonous, aboriginal: The native oysters in this area are superb. 3 basic, first, best, original, exclusive: Can you tell that my native language is Hungarian? 4 national, ethnic, clan, tribal: We visited a Dutch town where the people wear traditional native dress. 5 aboriginal, provincial, local: We soon fell in with the native custom of taking a siesta. 6 born; by birth: Are you a native Glaswegian?

--n. 7 aborigine, indigene, autochthon; national, citizen, resident, inhabitant: It is not difficult to distinguish the natives from the tourists in London.

natural adj. 1 ordinary, common, commonplace, normal, standard, regular, usual, customary, unexceptional, routine, habitual, typical, everyday; reasonable, logical, reasonable, sensible, accepted: They say that Count Dracula could not die a natural death. The natural thing to do in case of attack is to defend oneself. 2 normal, ordinary, regular, expected; spontaneous: The natural motion of the waves carried the bottle out to sea. 3 simple, basic, fundamental, real, unartificial, genuine, unembellished, unadorned, unpretentious: She has great natural beauty and needs no cosmetics. 4 unstudied, unconstrained, candid, frank, spontaneous, unaffected, easy, honest, straight, straightforward, artless, guileless, impulsive, unpremeditated, unaffected, ingenuous, unsophisticated, unsophistic(al): His kindness is quite natural. 5 See native, 1, above: She has a natural gift for painting. 6 true, real, genuine, actual, authentic, bona fide: That, believe it or not, is his natural hair. 7 lifelike, true to life, realistic: Note the natural colours of the sea in this painting by Whistler. 8 illegitimate, bastard: He was the duke's natural son and had no claim on the estate. 9 consistent, consonant, consequent, logical, reasonable, fitting, appropriate, proper, expected, not incongruous, understandable: In the circumstances, it would have been natural for her to despise Jonathan. 10 organic, organically grown, non-chemical, health: They eat only natural foods, which they grow themselves.

--n. 11 genius, artist, talent: When it comes to chess, Boris is a natural. 12 Archaic idiot, imbecile, simpleton, fool, halfwit: One would have to be a natural to give money to that crook.

naturally adv. 1 (as a matter) of course, needless to say, to be sure, certainly, surely, not unexpectedly, as expected or anticipated, obviously, clearly, logically, consequently, as a consequence or result: He treated her badly, so, naturally, she refuses to see him again. 2 normally, by nature, by character, really, actually, genuinely; inherently, instinctively, innately, congenitally: My hair is naturally curly. He is not aloof, just naturally shy. 3 unaffectedly, unpretentiously, easily, candidly, openly, simply, plainly, honestly, straightforwardly, uncomplicatedly: If only politicians expressed themselves naturally and not pompously.

nature   n. 1 quality, properties, features, character, personality, make-up, essence, constitution, identity, attributes, disposition, temperament, complexion: Only detailed analysis will reveal the nature of this compound. It is not in his nature to be envious. 2 universe, cosmos, world, creation, environment: Science fiction deals with phenomena and contrivances that defy the laws of nature. 3 scenery, countryside, wildness, primitiveness, simplicity: I often enjoyed sitting by the river, communing with nature. 4 kind, variety, description, sort, class, category, type, genre, species; stamp, cast, mould, feather, kidney, colour, stripe: The duties of the position are largely of a ceremonial nature. 5 by nature. See naturally, 2, above.

naught   n. nought, nothing, nil, zero, aught or ought; ruin, destruction, disaster, collapse, failure: All my efforts had come to naught.

naughty   adj. 1 mischievous, impish, puckish, roguish, scampish, devilish; frolicsome, playful: The children would get naughty the minute the teacher turned her back to the class. 2 disobedient, refractory, insubordinate, bad, perverse, wicked, fractious, unruly, wayward, unmanageable, ungovernable, undisciplined, defiant, obstreperous: Naughty pupils in this school are birched. 3 improper, offensive, vulgar, indecent, immoral, risqu,, off colour, ribald, bawdy, blue, pornographic, smutty, lewd, obscene, dirty, Colloq X-rated, raunchy: The teacher caught Keith reading a naughty book.

nauseate v. sicken, disgust, repel, revolt, offend: Your hypocrisy nauseates me. When you get used to it, eating snails no longer seems nauseating.

nauseated adj. sickened, disgusted, repelled, revolted, offended, sick (to one's stomach), queasy, squeamish; seasick, carsick, airsick: They were nauseated when they saw the cadavers. I became nauseated by the rocking of the boat.

nauseous adj. nauseating, loathsome, sickening, disgusting, repellent, vomit-provoking, offensive, revolting, repugnant, repulsive, abhorrent, nasty, foul, unpleasant, stomach-turning, Technical emetic: A nauseous odour emanated from the crypt.

nautical adj. maritime, marine, seafaring, seagoing; naval; boating, yachting, sailing; navigational: Britain has always been a nautical nation. One must observe the nautical rules of the road.

navel n. Technical umbilicus, omphalos, Colloq belly button: The dancer wore a ruby in her navel.

navigable adj. 1 passable, traversable, negotiable, unblocked, unobstructed, clear: The Thames is not navigable above Lechlade. 2 manoeuvrable, sailable, controllable, steerable, yare: My boat is navigable when under way at about four knots.

navigate v. 1 sail, voyage, cruise, journey; cross, traverse: After navigating the Indian Ocean for a month, we reached the Seychelles. 2 manoeuvre, handle, sail, guide, pilot, steer, direct, skipper, captain, Nautical con: It was tricky navigating through the shoals. Richard has navigated the company through rough waters over the years.

navigation
n. pilotage, helmsmanship, seamanship, steersmanship, steering, sailing: The navigation of a small vessel in such a storm is no mean task.

navigator n. pilot, helmsman, seaman, tillerman, wheelman, steersman, skipper: The navigator without knowledge of local waterways must engage a pilot.

navy n. fleet, flotilla, naval force(s), armada, Literary argosy: The entire navy sailed across the Channel to Le Havre.

naysayer n. denier, refuser, disdainer, rejecter or rejector; prophet of doom, pessimist, sceptic, dissenter, defeatist: Don't expect any encouragement from a naysayer like Raymond.

14.2 near...
=-

near adv. 1 close (by or at hand), not far (off or away), nearby, nigh, in or into the vicinity or neighbourhood, within (easy) reach: Draw near and listen to my tale. 2 close to, next to: Don't go near the edge! 3 nearly, almost, just about, wellnigh, close to being; not quite, virtually: She was damn near killed in the car crash.

--adj. 4 close, imminent, immediate, impending, looming, coming, approaching, forthcoming; in the offing, at hand: We hope to settle the pollution problem in the near future. The time is near for me to go. 5 nearby, close, adjacent, next-door, close-by, adjoining, abutting, neighbouring, contiguous: My nearest neighbours live a mile away. 6 stingy, mean, niggardly, miserly, parsimonious, penurious, cheap, penny-pinching, cheese-paring, selfish, close, tight-fisted, close-fisted: He is so near he begrudged me even a cup of tea. 7 close, intimate, connected, related, attached: In case of emergency, list the name and address of a near relative. 8 close, narrow, hairbreadth: Although I escaped, it was a near thing.

--prep. 9 close to, in the vicinity or neighbourhood of, next to, adjacent to, within reach of, within a mile of; a stone's throw from, not far (away) from: She wouldn't allow the doctor to come near her. I live near the railway.

--v. 10 approach, draw near or nigh, come close or closer, verge on, approximate on, lean towards: As summer nears, I think of going on holiday. The ship neared port. His estimate is beginning to near mine.

nearby adv. 1 close by, close at hand, not far-off or -away, in the vicinity or neighbourhood, within (easy) reach, about, around: Hyenas loitered nearby waiting for the lions to leave the kill.

--adj. 2 close, within reach, handy, accessible, at or to hand, adjacent: Nearby villagers helped put out the fire. We always kept a gun nearby because of pirates.

nearly adv. 1 almost, not quite, about, approximately, all but, just about, virtually, wellnigh, practically, as good as, more or less; around, approaching, nearing, barely, hardly, scarcely, close to: We were nearly there but couldn't make it. She was nearly ninety when her first book was published. 2 closely, identically, exactly, precisely: Her opinions agree most nearly with his. His painting most nearly resembles Picasso's.

near-sighted
adj. 1 myopic, short-sighted: Being near-sighted, I must wear spectacles for driving. 2 Chiefly US short-sighted, narrow-minded, blinkered, narrow, close-minded, illiberal, unthinking, heedless, insular, partial, one-sided, parochial, unsophisticated, unimaginative, biased, unobjective, opinionated, dogmatic, prejudiced, intolerant, bigoted: They maintain a near-sighted attitude towards associating with anyone outside their immediate clique.

neat adj. 1 tidy, orderly, clean, uncluttered, trim, spruce, natty, fastidious, spick and span, shipshape (and Bristol fashion), organized, well-organized, well-ordered, systematic, Brit dialect trig, Colloq neat as a pin, Brit dinky: His room was always neat - very odd for a teenager. 2 straight, unadulterated, unmixed, undiluted, uncut, unblended, pure; on the rocks: He drinks his whisky neat. 3 unembellished, unadorned, unornamented, simple, elegant, graceful, smart, uncomplicated, regular, precise, copperplate; calligraphic: An invitation in her neat handwriting awaited my return from abroad. 4 deft, adroit, clever, efficient, ingenious, expert, practised, skilful, dexterous: He contrived a neat plan to avoid paying taxes. 5 fine, wonderful, marvellous, great, splendid, excellent, exceptional, capital, grand, first-class, Colloq cool, smashing, keen, nifty, top-notch, A1 or A-1 or A-one, Brit top-hole, Chiefly US A-OK or A-okay, Slang swell, far-out, boss, Brit topping, US and Canadian spiffy: She found a really neat way to get boys to ask her out. Gordon has a neat new car.

neaten v. Often, neaten up. tidy (up), straighten (up or out), clean (up), spruce up, (put in) order, Brit dialect trig: If you don't neaten up your room, Mandy, you may not borrow the car.

nebulous adj. vague, hazy, clouded, unclear, obscure, indistinct, fuzzy, muddy, ill-defined, shapeless, amorphous, blurred, indeterminate, murky, opaque, turbid, dim, foggy, faint, pale: He has only the most nebulous idea of what the lecture was about.

necessarily
adv. inevitably, unavoidably, inescapably, axiomatically, inexorably, ineluctably, irresistibly, incontrovertibly, automatically, naturally, (as a matter) of course, as a result, certainly, surely, to be sure, like it or not, willy-nilly, perforce, of necessity, by definition: If you accept his premise, then you must, necessarily, accept his conclusion. You don't necessarily need to be rich to be happy.

necessary adj. 1 indispensable, essential, required, needed, compulsory, requisite, vital, demanded, imperative, obligatory, needful, of the essence, important, of the utmost importance, top-priority, high-priority, urgent, exigent, compelling, life-and-death or life-or-death: A good diet is necessary for good health. It is necessary that you come at once. Take the necessary steps to get the job done. 2 inevitable, unavoidable, inescapable, ineluctable: In the circumstances, we find it necessary to ask for your resignation. 3 sure, certain, predetermined, predestined, fated, inexorable; resulting, resultant: The necessary outcome of the affair was that the child was returned to her natural parents.

--n. 4 See necessity, 1, below.

necessity n. 1 requirement, essential, necessary, requisite, need, prerequisite, basic, fundamental, sine qua non, desideratum, constraint: I was marooned for a year with only the bare necessities of life. We regard honesty as a necessity in a bank manager. 2 indispensability, unavoidability, needfulness, inexorability: The necessity for exercise is often met by private health clubs. 3 poverty, want, indigence, need, destitution, penury, straits, difficulty, difficulties, pauperism, neediness: The extreme necessity of the unemployed demands that the government act quickly. 4 urgency, emergency, crisis, misfortune, exigency, pinch, extreme, matter of life and death: She has made a virtue of necessity. Electric power is no longer a matter of choice but of necessity.

need v. 1 require, demand, want, be in want of, call for, have need of or for; lack, miss, have occasion for: This room needs a coat of paint. Although she may want more money, she doesn't need it. Do you need anything to make you more comfortable?

--n. 2 necessity, requirement; call, demand, constraint: There's no need to shout - I can hear you. There is a need to keep this matter confidential. This facility will meet our electricity needs for decades. 3 essential, necessary, requisite, prerequisite, necessity, basic, fundamental, sine qua non, necessary, desideratum: I am perfectly capable of taking care of my family's needs. 4 distress, difficulty, trouble, (dire or desperate) straits, stress, emergency, exigency, extremity, neediness, needfulness; poverty, penury, impecuniousness, destitution, privation, deprivation, indigence, beggary: She was very supportive in his hour of need. The need of the people in that district is heart-rending. 5 want, lack, dearth, shortage, paucity, scarcity, insufficiency, desideratum: The need for medical supplies was most sharply felt in areas that were already ravaged by famine.

needless adj. 1 unnecessary, non-essential, unessential, unneeded, unwanted, useless, uncalled-for, gratuitous, superfluous, redundant, excess, excessive, tautological, dispensable, expendable, supererogatory, de trop, pleonastic: He went to a lot of needless trouble to change the tyre. It is needless to raise further questions. 2 needless to say. naturally, (as a matter) of course, obviously, it goes without saying: Needless to say, he will have to resign when this comes to light.

needy adj. poor, indigent, poverty-stricken, destitute, impoverished, penniless, impecunious, necessitous, underprivileged, deprived, disadvantaged, below the poverty level, in dire straits, in or on the way to the poorhouse, in reduced circumstances, down-and-out, insolvent, Colloq on one's uppers, dead or flat or stony-broke, hard up, strapped, pinched, on the breadline, up against it, Brit on the dole, US dead broke, on welfare, on relief: It is not enough to look after needy families only at Christmas time.

negative adj. 1 contradictory, anti, contrary, dissenting, dissentious, disputing, disputatious, argumentative, adversarial, adversative, antagonistic, antipathetic, adverse, US adversary: He has adopted a very negative attitude towards his job. Few negative voices were heard on the issue. 2 pessimistic, unenthusiastic, cool, cold, uninterested, unresponsive: The reaction to our offer has been largely negative. 3 nullifying, annulling, neutralizing, voiding, cancelling: The laws are mainly negative, listing only things one must not do. 4 negating, refusing, denying, gainsaying, opposing: The judge came to a negative decision regarding bail. 5 in the negative. negatively, 'No': Asked if she wanted to go, she replied in the negative.

neglect v. 1 disregard, ignore, slight, pay no attention to, be inattentive to, overlook, pass by, spurn, rebuff, scorn, disdain, contemn, Colloq cold-shoulder: Scholars neglected his work for years. 2 fail (in), omit; disregard, let slide or pass, be remiss (about or in or regarding), abandon, lose sight of, forget, shirk: Have I neglected telling you how much I love you? Sybil has neglected her obligations.

--n. 3 disregard, disrespect, inattention, indifference, slighting, unconcern, oversight, heedlessness, neglectfulness, carelessness, inadvertence: We lost business to our competitor through simple neglect. 4 negligence, laxity, laxness, slackness, neglectfulness, passivity, passiveness, inactivity, inaction, dereliction, default, failure, failing, remissness: She has been accused of neglect in looking after her children properly.

negligence

n. inattention, inattentiveness, indifference, carelessness, unconcern, dereliction, failure, failing, heedlessness, laxity, laxness, disregard, oversight, omission, inadvertence, neglect, remissness, forgetfulness, oscitancy or oscitance: The car crash was attributed to the lorry driver's negligence.

negligible

adj. insignificant, minor, unimportant, trifling, trivial, inconsequential, piddling, inappreciable, small, slight, paltry, nugatory, worthless, petty, niggling, not worth mentioning or talking about: The differences between the two plans are negligible.

negotiate v. 1 deal, bargain, dicker, haggle, chaffer, palter; discuss, debate, mediate, consult, parley, speak, talk, transact, come to terms: A conglomerate is negotiating to buy our company. The company asked me to negotiate on our behalf. 2 arrange (for), organize, orchestrate, conduct, handle, manoeuvre, manage, engineer, work out, settle, get, obtain, bring off or about, carry off, accomplish, do, execute, effect, complete, conclude, Colloq pull off: Will you be able to negotiate a loan for the car? 3 manoeuvre, clear, get through or past or round or over, pass, cross, Colloq make (it (through or past or round or over)): Will you be able to negotiate the barbed-wire fence?

negotiation

n. 1 discussion, mediation, arbitration, bargaining, parley, parleying, talk, coming to terms: The disarmament negotiations have dragged on for years. 2 deal, bargain, transaction, agreement, arrangement, understanding, determination, decision, settlement; contract, pact, compact, covenant, concordat, treaty: All parties seem pleased with the final negotiation.

negotiator

n. arbitrator, arbiter, mediator, moderator, diplomat, ambassador, go-between, middleman, intercessor, interceder, intervener, agent, broker: An independent negotiator was invited to the bargaining table with the union and management representatives.

neighbourhood

n. 1 locality, area, region, vicinity, vicinage, environs, quarter, district, precinct(s), purlieus, locale; surroundings, confines: Houses in the neighbourhood of the blast were levelled. 2 in the neighbourhood of. approximately, about, around, nearly, practically, close to, almost, more or less, Colloq in the ballpark of, in the region of, Brit getting on for, not far off, US within an eyelash of, Slang as near as dammit to: The playground will cost in the neighbourhood of œ5,000.

neighbouring

adj. nearby, near, around, adjacent (to), surrounding, adjoining, contiguous (to), touching, bordering (on), next (to), nearest: Owners of properties neighbouring the nuclear power plant worry about radiation. The neighbouring villages will participate in the fˆte at Long Norton.

neighbourly
adj. friendly, cordial, warm, amiable, agreeable, affable, companionable, well-disposed, kindly, kind, well-wishing, genial, sociable, social, harmonious, considerate, thoughtful, helpful, gracious, courteous, civil: It was quite neighbourly of the Constables to look after our cat.

neologism n. neoterism, coinage, neology, nonce-word; blend, portmanteau word: Lexicographers must decide the neologisms to be added to their dictionaries.

nerve n. 1 courage, coolness, boldness, bravery, intrepidity, determination, valour, daring, fearlessness, dauntlessness, pluck, mettle, spirit, fortitude, will, tenacity, steadfastness, staunchness, firmness, doughtiness, resoluteness, Colloq guts, grit, gumption, spunk, US sand, Brit bottle, US moxie , Taboo slang balls: It took a lot of nerve to go back into that burning building. 2 effrontery, brazenness, gall, impertinence, brass, impudence, insolence, audacity, brashness, presumption, presumptuousness, temerity, Colloq cheek, sauce, chutzpah, Slang crust: You have a lot of nerve, talking to your mother that way! 3 get on someone's nerves. annoy, irritate, upset: That loud rock music gets on my nerves. 4 nerves. tension, nervousness, hysteria, anxiety, fretfulness, stress, worry, apprehension, fright, Colloq the jitters, Slang the willies, the heebie-jeebies, US the whim-whams: I had a bad case of nerves before learning the doctor's diagnosis.

nerve-racking
adj. nerve-wracking, harrowing, agonizing, distressing, trying, vexing, vexatious, troublesome, worrisome, irksome, irritating: Waiting for the names of the survivors was the most nerve-racking experience of my life.

nervous adj. 1 highly-strung, excitable, sensitive, tense, agitated, wrought up, worked up, upset, flustered, ruffled, disturbed, perturbed, distressed, worried, anxious, troubled, concerned, disquieted, edgy, on edge, on tenterhooks, fidgety, fretful, uneasy, apprehensive, frightened, fearful, shaky, scared, skittish, US on a tightrope, Colloq jumpy, jittery, flappable, in a stew, in a dither, in a sweat, in a tizzy, in a flap, uptight, Brit nervy, US on pins and needles, Slang strung out: Thomas is nervous because he has to give a speech. 2 difficult, tense, critical: There were a few nervous moments before we knew if the rope would hold.

nest n. 1 roost, perch, eyrie or US also aerie, den, lair: The birds, which mate for life, return to the same nest each year. 2 snuggery, retreat, refuge, haunt, hideaway, hide-out; resort: We have a little nest in the country which we escape to at weekends.

nestle v. cuddle (up), snuggle (up), huddle, curl up, nuzzle (up): They nestled close together to keep warm.

net° n. 1 network, netting, mesh, mesh-work, web, webbing, openwork, lattice, lattice-work, trellis, trellis-work, lace-work, reticulum, reticle, rete, plexus, grid, grid-work, grille, grate, grating, fretwork; sieve, screen, strainer, sifter: They watched the fishermen mending their nets.

--v. 2 catch, capture, trap, entrap, snare, ensnare, bag: As I bring the fish close to the boat, you net it with this.

netý n. 1 nett, (net) profit, gain, earnings, return(s), Colloq US take: The net for the first quarter was 15 per cent higher than last year's.

--adj. 2 clear, after deductions, after taxes, take-home, final, bottom-line: The tax increase was greater than my salary increase, so my net income was lower this year. 3 final, end, closing, concluding, conclusive, effective, ultimate: The net result of the advertising campaign was a sales increase of 18 per cent.

--v. 4 make, realize, clear, take home, bring in, earn, pocket, take in, get: How much did you net last year - after taxes, that is.

network n. 1 See net°, 1, above. 2 system, arrangement, structure, organization, complex, grid, criss-cross, web, plexus; maze, labyrinth, jungle, tangle: She has developed a worldwide network of contacts for her business. Before transistors, the back of a radio was a network of multicoloured wires.

neurotic adj. psychoneurotic, unstable, disturbed, confused, irrational, disordered, maladjusted, distraught, overwrought, anxious, nervous, obsessive, deviant, abnormal: Many people are neurotic about something.

neuter adj. 1 asexual, sexless, epicene: Worker bees are neuter, neither male nor female.

--v. 2 desex or desexualize, doctor; castrate, emasculate, geld, capon or caponize, eunuchize; spay, ovariectomize, oophorectomize; Colloq fix, cut, US alter: We had our cat neutered after her first litter.

neutral adj. 1 non-belligerent, non-combatant, unaligned, non-aligned, unaffiliated, uninvolved, unallied, non-allied, non-partisan, impartial, disinterested, indifferent, dispassionate, unbiased, uncommitted, noncommittal, aloof, withdrawn, detached, remote, removed: Switzerland has remained neutral during both world wars. 2 dull, drab, colourless, achromatic, toneless, indeterminate, washed out, pale, indefinite, indistinct, indistinguishable, indeterminate, vague, drab, beige, ecru: A neutral wallpaper colour won't clash with the paintings.

neutralize
v. void, annul, cancel (out), nullify, invalidate, negate, delete, undo, make or render ineffective, counterbalance, counteract, offset, equalize, even, square, compensate for, make up for: The forces on both sides of the sail, being equal, neutralize each other.

never adv. 1 at no time, not ever, not at any time, on no occasion, under no circumstances or condition(s), on no account, not at all, Colloq not in a million years, not till hell freezes over: You are never to use such language again! 2 in no way, not in any way, not in the least, not in any degree, not under any condition, not: Never fear, for I am near.

nevertheless
adv. still, notwithstanding, yet, in spite of that, despite that, nonetheless, regardless, be that as it may, for all that, even so, but, however, just or all the same, everything considered, at any rate, anyway, in any case, in any event, at

all events, Literary withal: He said he dislikes sweets; nevertheless, he ate a whole bar of chocolate.

new adj. 1 novel, original, unique, unusual, different, fresh, creative, imaginative, brand-new: Ruth has a new idea for the sales campaign. 2 latest, late, modern, contemporary, modish, stylish, fashionable, chic, recent, advanced, up to date, brand-new, late-model, Colloq trendy, Slang mod, hip: MacGregor buys a new car every year: it has to be equipped with the newest gadgets. 3 fresh, further, additional, supplemental, supplementary: Has the new issue of Verbatim come out yet? 4 unfamiliar, unknown, strange, different; unique, unheard of: I hear there's a new girl in your office. I want to introduce my new friend, Dan Hammond. Every year they discover a new virus. 5 revitalized, reborn, renewed, rejuvenated, changed, altered, redone, restored, redesigned, remodelled: I saw before me a new Marie. They published a new version of the Bible. 6 inexperienced, green, fresh, callow, unfledged, budding, immature, unripe, untrained: Let us look over the new recruits, Sergeant. 7 late, young, recent: We found newer fossils at higher levels. 8 uncharted, unexplored, untrodden, unknown, experimental: Astronomers are breaking new ground in the analysis of pulsars.

newcomer n. 1 alien, immigrant, foreigner, outlander, stranger, settler, colonist, outsider: The newcomers quickly established themselves and became self-sufficient. 2 beginner, amateur, novice, proselyte, neophyte, tiro or tyro, initiate, trainee, learner, fledgling or Brit also fledgeling, US freshman, Colloq greenhorn: Though experienced in book publishing, he was a newcomer to magazine publishing.

news n. 1 tidings, word, information, advice, intelligence; rumour, talk, gossip, hearsay, dirt, scandal, expos,, Colloq info, low-down, scoop, US scuttlebutt, Slang dope: What's the latest news about the situation in the Middle East? 2 dispatch or despatch, report, account, story, communication, bulletin, communiqu,, announcement, information, message, word, statement, (press) release, (news)flash: The news from our correspondent contains no mention of finding a cache of arms. 3 newscast, news broadcast or telecast, news programme; newsflash: Please be quiet so that I can listen to the news. 4 (good) copy, front-page news, (hot) item: The royal family is always news.

nice adj. 1 pleasant, agreeable, amiable, amicable, friendly, cordial, warm, gracious, warm-hearted, kind, kindly, outgoing, charming, genial, delightful, courteous, polite, refined, gentlemanly, ladylike, winsome, likeable, attractive: They are one of the nicest couples I have ever met. 2 good, satisfactory, commendable, worthy, worthwhile: The manager said that I had done a nice job in preparing the specifications. 3 good, fine, superb, superior, attentive, sharp, acute, keen, careful, exact, exacting, rigorous; precise, accurate, unerring, scrupulous, meticulous, punctilious, discriminating, discriminative, perceptive, delicate, fastidious, flawless, faultless, subtle, strict, close, small, slight, minute, complex, complicated, intricate: A diamond cutter must have a nice eye for detail. It is difficult to maintain nice distinctions of meaning among certain words, given that people are so careless with their speech these days. 4 delicate, subtle, sensitive, exquisite, hair-splitting, over-nice, fine, critical, ticklish, dangerous, precarious, perilous, Colloq hairy: The matter of Hong Kong requires some nice political negotiations. 5 trim, well turned out, tidy, neat, fine: Don't you want to look nice for your birthday party? 6 nice and - pleasantly, delightfully, pleasingly, agreeably, enjoyably, gratifyingly, satisfyingly, comfortably: It's nice and warm by the fire.

niche n. 1 recess, hollow, alcove, nook: A small statue of Buddha stood in a niche in the wall. 2 place, position, Colloq slot, pigeon-hole: Humphrey has finally found a niche for himself working as a tax inspector.

nick n. 1 cut, notch, chip, gouge, gash, scratch, dent, indentation, flaw, mark, blemish, defect: Be careful of that nick in the rim of the glass. 2 jail or Brit also gaol; police station: The police took him to the nick to help them with their inquiries.

--v. 3 steal, purloin, take, appropriate, make off with, Colloq pinch: Who nicked my biro? 4 arrest, nab, take in, Colloq collar: Alan was nicked for possession of marijuana. 5 nick off. depart, go or run off or away, take off, take to one's heels, show a clean pair of heels, beat a (hasty) retreat, Colloq scarper, make tracks, beat it: The cops were coming so I nicked off.

nickname n. 1 pet name, sobriquet, epithet, agnomen, Colloq moniker or monicker, handle: Her real name is Josephine, but her nickname is Dusty. 2 diminutive: A common nickname for Terence is Terry.

nifty   adj. 1 smart, stylish, modish, chic, spruce: I borrowed a nifty outfit from Grandma for the flapper's costume ball. 2 healthy, in good form, spry, energetic, agile, quick: I'm not as nifty as I was in 1950. 3 excellent, neat, great, splendid, fine, clever, skilful, apt, suitable: Having a picnic was a nifty idea. That was as nifty a bit of bargaining as I 've ever seen. 4 satisfactory, satisfying, good, profitable, substantial, considerable: He made a nifty profit on the sale of his house in Chelsea.

niggle   v. find fault, nag, carp, fuss, cavil, criticize; complain, Colloq grouse, Slang bitch, US kvetch: I do wish she would stop niggling when we cannot do anything about the situation.

niggling adj. 1 irritating, worrying, worrisome, irksome, vexing, vexatious, annoying, troublesome: There are a few niggling matters that I must see my accountant about. 2 petty, nugatory, trifling, trivial, fussy, insignificant, unimportant, inconsequential, frivolous, Colloq piddling, nit-picking, US and Canadian picayune: Bill always ignores the core of a problem and occupies himself with the niggling details.

night   n. 1 (Stygian or Cimmerian) dark or darkness or blackness or gloom; night-time, shades of night, Formal tenebrosity or tenebrousness or tenebriousness: The strange creature slunk off into the night. 2 nightfall, gloaming, twilight, dusk, eventide, evening, evensong, edge of night, sunset, sundown, end of day, vespers: When night comes, one can hear the frogs calling from the pond. 3 night and day. all the time, continually, incessantly, unceasingly, continuously, unendingly, endlessly, round-the-clock, ceaselessly, non-stop: Those animals keep up their caterwauling night and day.

nightly adj. 1 every night, each night, each and every night, night after night: The watchman does his nightly rounds. 2 night-time, nocturnal, bedtime: A nightly glass of warm milk promotes sound sleep.

--adv. 3 every night, each night, nights, after dark, after sunset; nocturnally: The bird sings nightly outside my window.

nightmarish
adj. frightening, terrifying, alarming, horrific, horrible, dreadful, awful, ghastly, dismaying, agonizing, worrisome, exasperating, frustrating, Kafkaesque, Colloq creepy, scary: Dealing with officialdom can be a nightmarish experience when abroad.

nil n. nothing, zero, nought or naught, aught or ought, Tennis, table tennis, etc. love, Cricket duck, US goose-egg, Slang US zip: Oxford United: 4; Queens Park Rangers: Nil.

nimble adj. 1 agile, lively, active, light, lithe, limber, spry, sprightly, brisk, smart, energetic, rapid, quick, swift, adroit, deft, dexterous; nimble-fingered; nimble-footed: She's as nimble as a cat on a hot tin roof. 2 agile, alert, acute, nimble-witted, quick-witted, ready-witted, intelligent, keen, sharp; smart, brilliant, sparkling, scintillating, coruscating: Despite his inability to make decisions, Desmond has quite a nimble mind.

nip° v. 1 bite, nibble; pinch, snip, clip, cut, snap, tweak, twitch, trim, lop, crop, shear; grip, squeeze: The dog nipped the postman's ankle. Nip off the suckers to promote healthy growth of the tomatoes. 2 nip in the bud. stop, arrest, check, thwart, frustrate, stymie, forestall; quash, squelch, suppress, extinguish, put down: The revolt of the army officers was nipped in the bud.

--n. 3 bite, nibble, morsel, pinch, snip: The deer had taken nips off the tips of the shrubbery. 4 chill, coldness, iciness, sharpness, tang, bite: There's a definite wintry nip in the air tonight.

nipý n. taste, drop, sip, soup‡on, portion, swallow, gulp, mouthful, finger, Brit peg, tot, draught, Scots dram, US draft, Colloq snort, shot: I had a few nips of brandy to ward off the cold.

14.4 nobility...
=-

nobility n. 1 nobleness, dignity, grandeur, illustriousness, greatness, glory, influence, authority, leadership, distinction, probity, integrity, excellence, goodness, character, rectitude, righteousness, ethics, honesty, honourableness, decency, justness, high-mindedness, magnanimity, prestige, loftiness, primacy, significance: The man's nobility was evident from his mien and bearing. 2 rank, position, class, birth, blue blood: Their nobility is recognized only at court and in fashionable society. 3 the nobility. the gentry, the ,lite, the aristocracy, Colloq the upper crust, the ruling class(es), the Establishment, US the Four Hundred: With a name like Hohenzollern, her family must be from the European nobility.

noble n. 1 nobleman, noblewoman, aristocrat, patrician, lord, lady, peer; gentleman, gentlewoman, Colloq blue blood: The nobles united and forced King John to sign the Magna Carta.

--adj. 2 high-born, high-class, upper-class, aristocratic, titled, high-ranking, lordly, patrician, Colloq blue-blood(ed): She came from a noble Austrian family. 3 dignified, eminent, distinguished, august, grand, lofty, elevated, illustrious, prestigious, pre-eminent, noted, honoured, esteemed, celebrated, renowned, acclaimed, respected, venerated: The noble Knights of the Round Table have become legend throughout the world. 4 upright, righteous, honourable, honest, virtuous, incorruptible, chivalrous, staunch, steadfast, true, loyal, faithful, trustworthy, true, principled, moral, good, decent, self-sacrificing, magnanimous, generous: The qualities that make a noble friend make a formidable enemy. 5 splendid, magnificent, imposing, impressive, stately, exquisite, sublime, grand, striking, stunning, superb, admirable, elegant, rich, sumptuous, luxurious: The Taj Mahal is probably one of the noblest works of man.

nobody pron. 1 no one, not anyone, no person: We had to wait because nobody was in the shop when we entered.

--n. 2 nonentity, unknown, zero, cipher, Colloq nothing: Overnight, Tony went from being a celebrity to being a nobody.

nod v. 1 greet, acknowledge, recognize: The maŒtre d'h“tel nodded to me as I entered the restaurant. 2 say yes; consent, assent, agree, concur, acquiesce: Asked if she had seen Nick, the barmaid nodded. I asked permission to leave the room and the teacher nodded. 3 doze (off), nap, drowse, drop off, fall asleep: Exhausted travellers nodded in their chairs waiting for their flights to be announced. 4 slip (up), err, make a mistake, be mistaken or wrong; be careless or negligent or lax or inattentive: Sometimes, even Homer nods.

--n. 5 signal, sign, cue, indication, gesture: I saw him give a nod to the barber, who suddenly held a cutthroat razor to my throat. 6 approval; consent, acquiescence, concurrence, assent, agreement, Colloq OK or okay: The company has given me the nod to open an office in Acapulco.

nodding adj. casual, slight, superficial, distant; incomplete: I know Graham slightly - he's a nodding acquaintance. It was clear that the violinist had only a nodding acquaintance with Mozart's concerto.

noise n. 1 sound, clamour, crash, clap, clash, clangour, din, thunder, thundering, rumble, rumbling, outcry, hubbub, uproar, hullabaloo, racket, charivari or US and Canadian also shivaree, rattle, caterwauling, rumpus, blare, blast, blasting, bawling, babel; commotion, bedlam, fracas, tumult, pandemonium, turmoil; discordance, dissonance, cacophony; Archaic alarms or alarums and excursions, Colloq ruckus, ruction, ballyhoo: I couldn't sleep because of the unbearable noise from the party next door. You may call acid rock music, but she calls it noise. 2 sound, disturbance: Did you just hear that strange noise? It's only the noise of the crickets.

--v. 3 Often, noise about or around. circulate, spread, rumour, bruit (about): It is being noised about that John and Marsha are getting a divorce.

noiseless adj. muted, quiet, soft, hushed, muffled, deadened, dampened, damped; silent, mute, still, inaudible, soundless: We watched the noiseless boats gliding past.

noisy adj. loud, deafening, ear-splitting, jarring, grating, harsh, piercing, shrill, discordant, unmusical, dissonant, cacophonous or cacophonic, resounding, clarion, clamorous, clangorous, thunderous, uproarious, blaring, blasting, obstreperous, vociferous, boisterous, tumultuous, riotous: I could hear nothing over the noisy aeroplane engines. When she arose to speak, the noisy crowd fell silent.

nominal adj. 1 titular, in name only, formal, pretended, so-called, self-styled, soi-disant, professed, purported, supposed, would-be, representational, represented, supposititious; proposed, propositional; puppet: Elliot is the nominal chairman, but Foster actually runs the company. 2 insignificant, trivial, trifling, minor, minuscule, tiny, small, insubstantial, minimal, inconsiderable, token: We charge a nominal fee for the analysis if you refuse our recommendation.

nominate v. choose, select, name, appoint, designate, suggest, offer, submit, recommend, propose, present, put up or forward; forward; Formal put forth: Baker has been nominated for the presidency.

nominee n. candidate, office-seeker, designee, selectee, appointee, assignee: We must choose a nominee to run in the next election.

non-aligned

adj. uncommitted, non-allied, non-affiliated, unaligned, unaffiliated, unallied; neutral, impartial: There are several non-aligned nations that remain independent of the influence of the superpowers.

non-believer

n. unbeliever, disbeliever, cynic, doubting Thomas, doubter, sceptic, freethinker, agnostic, atheist, nullifidian; infidel, heathen, pagan: During his reign, thousands of non-believers were put to the sword.

nonchalant

adj. cool, unexcited, unexcitable, unperturbed, imperturbable, undisturbed, untroubled, unflappable, unruffled, dispassionate, unemotional, detached, distant, unconcerned, indifferent, pococurante, insouciant, uninterested, aloof, blas,, offhand, calm, collected, composed, easygoing, free and easy, happy-go-lucky, casual, relaxed, at ease; unenthusiastic, apathetic; Colloq laid-back, together: How can you be so nonchalant about important issues that affect all our lives?!

noncommittal

adj. wary, cautious, careful, gingerly, guarded, (playing it) safe, circumspect, watchful, prudent, canny, tentative, on guard, reserved, cool; precautionary or precautional, precautious; Colloq playing it cool, playing it safe, playing it or one's cards close to the chest: The company is still noncommittal about the take-over of the American company.

non-completion

n. non-fulfilment, unfulfilment, non-performance, incompleteness, deficiency: We regret the non-completion of the work on your house and will refund in full the amount already paid.

non-compliance

n. disobedience, nonconformity, non-observance, disregard, disregarding, failure, non-cooperation, uncooperativeness, unresponsiveness, rejection, refusal, denial: If you fail to provide the records requested by the tax inspector, you can be charged with non-compliance.

nonconformist

n. 1 nonconformer, renegade, maverick, rebel, radical, individualist, heretic, dissenter, dissident, iconoclast, loner, exception, anomaly: In the 1960s, Alastair counted himself among the nonconformists who wore unconventional clothes and flouted conventional behaviour.

--adj. 2 nonconforming, renegade, maverick, rebellious, radical, individualist(ic), heretical, dissentient, dissident, iconoclastic: Suffragists were ridiculed for their nonconformist ideas.

nondescript

adj. indescribable, unclassifiable, unclassified, ordinary, common-or-garden variety, common, commonplace, unremarkable, colourless, drab, everyday, bland, uninteresting, insipid, characterless, undistinctive, unexceptional: He was wearing nondescript clothing and blended into the crowd.

none pron. no one, not anyone, nobody, no person; not one; not any; nil: Of all the people I met, none impressed me more than Kathy. I'd give you a sweet if I had one, but I have none. I'd even give you money, but I have none.

non-essential

adj. 1 non-vital, unessential, unneeded, unnecessary, needless, inconsequential, insignificant, unimportant, superfluous, dispensable, expendable, gratuitous, uncalled-for, extraneous, peripheral, extra, de trop, adventitious, additional, supplemental, adscititious, redundant, accessory, subordinate, secondary, subsidiary: The non-essential industries were converted to the war effort during the 1940s.

--n. 2 unessential, inessential, nonentity, cipher, zero, nobody; extra, supernumerary, spear-carrier, Colloq nothing, Slang US nebbish: She used him as a lackey, a non-essential whom she could dispose of at will.

nonetheless

adv. See nevertheless, above.

non-event n. anticlimax, Colloq non-starter, lead balloon, dud, Brit damp squib: Jeremy's party turned out to be the non-event of the year.

non-existent

adj. unreal, imaginary, imagined, fictional, fictive, fanciful, fancied, mythical, fabulous, fabled, illusory, chimerical, delusive: Although the entire Graeco-Roman pantheon became non-existent overnight, its gods and goddesses continue to pervade our culture.

non-flammable

adj. non-combustible, incombustible, non-inflammable, unburnable; fire-retardant: The government recently passed regulations requiring that non-flammable materials be used in upholstered furniture.

no-nonsense

adj. serious, unfrivolous, businesslike, practical, non-trivial, untrivial: Customs officials take a no-nonsense approach to drug trafficking.

nonpareil n. paragon, model, standard, ne plus ultra, exemplar, ideal, Literary nonsuch or nonesuch, Colloq oner, one in a million, Brit one-off: Annabelle was a nonpareil among the artists of her day.

non-partisan

adj. 1 non-partizan, non-aligned, unaligned, unaffiliated, independent, non-committed, uncommitted, neutral, uninvolved, free, (sitting) on the fence: Choose between non-partisan and coalition candidates. 2 impartial, even-handed, fair, just, objective, unbiased, unprejudiced, equitable, dispassionate, disinterested: One could not find a more non-partisan judge than Sir Ronald.

--n. 3 independent, neutral, mugwump: I am a non-partisan on the subject of privatization of public utilities.

nonplus v. confound, perplex, puzzle, confuse, dismay, baffle, stop, check, stun, shock, dumbfound or dumfound, take aback, astonish, astound, US faze, Colloq bring up short, flummox, stump: She was nonplussed to learn that Simpson had been arrested.

non-productive

adj. 1 unproductive, barren, sterile, infertile, unfertile, unfruitful, infecund: Non-productive land was left uncultivated. 2 ineffectual, bootless, ineffective, impractical, unavailing, pointless, useless, worthless, wasteful, time-consuming, time-wasting: Executives should spend more time working and less in non-productive meetings discussing the work to be done.

nonsense n. 1 rubbish, drivel, gibberish, gobbledegook or gobbledygook, twaddle, trash, babble, balderdash, moonshine, bombast, fustian, rodomontade, puffery, flummery, blather or blether, bunkum, poppycock, stuff and nonsense, double-talk, jargon, mumbo-jumbo, jabberwocky, cackle, gas, palaver, Colloq bunk, piffle, rot, bosh, eyewash, hogwash, malarkey, bilge (water), boloney or baloney, claptrap, hot air, Brit tosh, Old-fashioned Brit gammon, waffle, US apple-sauce, horse feathers, garbage, bushwa; Slang crap, tripe, bull, hooey, double Dutch, Taboo slang bullshit, horseshit, Brit (a load of old) cobblers: Watson's speech on the benefits of tobacco was unmitigated nonsense. 2 mischief, clowning, antics, capering, horseplay, pranks, tricks, jokes, silliness, foolishness, inanity, frivolity, tomfoolery, joking, jesting, waggishness, buffoonery, shenanigans, Colloq monkey business, Brit monkey tricks, US monkeyshines: Keep up this nonsense and you'll get into a lot of trouble!

nonsensical

adj. senseless, meaningless, absurd, ridiculous, ludicrous, laughable, preposterous, irrational, warped, askew, crazy, mad, silly, foolish, hare-brained, asinine, idiotic, moronic, imbecilic, stupid, dumb, Colloq nutty, screwy, cock-eyed, fool, screwball, Slang loony: What is your nonsensical excuse for being late this time?

non-stop adj. 1 uninterrupted, continuous, unbroken, direct: Is this a non-stop flight to New York? 2 unending, endless, interminable, unceasing, ceaseless, continual, continuous, uninterrupted, unbroken, persistent, relentless, constant, unremitting, steady, round-the-clock, ongoing, continuing, unhesitating, unfaltering, tireless,; regular, habitual: I told my neighbour that his non-stop rock 'n' roll music was driving me mad.

--adv. 3 unendingly, endlessly, interminably, unceasingly, ceaselessly, continually, continuously, uninterruptedly, persistently, relentlessly, constantly, unremittingly, steadily, round-the-clock, day in and day out, tirelessly; regularly, habitually: He continues to play his hi-fi non-stop.

nook n. 1 cranny, recess, niche, alcove, corner, cavity, crevice, crack, opening: Flowers grew from the nooks in the wall. 2 retreat, hide-out, hideaway, nest; inglenook: I curled up with a book in my nook next to the fireplace.

noon n. twelve o'clock (noon), midday, 1200 hours, noontime, high noon, Archaic noontide; noonday: We sit down to lunch promptly at noon. The noon sun is terribly hot in the tropics.

norm n. 1 usual, average, mean, normal: The norm for the day is 12 degrees Celsius. 2 model, standard, type, pattern, criterion, rule, measure, gauge, yardstick, benchmark: That style of window became the norm for many years.

normal adj. 1 standard, regular, average, conventional, usual, run-of-the-mill, ordinary, routine, universal, general, common, customary, natural, typical, conformist, orthodox; healthy: If living in this mess seems normal to you, we clearly have different standards. His temperature and pulse are normal. 2 sane, stable, rational, reasonable, well-adjusted: After he had set fire to his school, Julian's parents began to wonder if he was quite normal.

normalize v. regularize, standardize, regulate, control; conform: The program is directed at normalizing the codes used in keyboarding text.

nosy adj. nosey, curious, inquisitive, prying, meddlesome, spying, peeping, eavesdropping, Colloq snooping, snoopy: Mind your own business and don't be so nosy.

notable adj. 1 noteworthy, noted, famous, famed, well-known, renowned, illustrious, important, prominent, eminent, outstanding, great, distinguished, celebrated, acclaimed: Many notable people attended my college. 2 remarkable, different, distinctive, singular, unusual, uncommon, pre-eminent, peerless, matchless, unmatched, unequalled, unparalleled, extraordinary, conspicuous, outstanding, memorable, unforgettable, striking: She enjoyed a notable reputation as a cellist. Last night's notable performance was enjoyed by a capacity audience.

--n. 3 dignitary, personage, worthy, VIP; celebrity, luminary, Colloq (big) name, big shot: Many notables attended the charity ball.

notably adv. 1 particularly, especially, markedly, noticeably, signally, distinctly, remarkably, unusually, uncommonly, outstandingly, conspicuously, clearly, obviously, evidently, manifestly, specifically, distinctly, curiously, oddly, uniquely, strangely, strikingly, shockingly, surprisingly, stunningly: In the temperate zones, the seasons vary notably in length. 2 meaningfully, significantly, importantly, prominently: The viruses changed in notably different ways.

notation n. 1 note, memorandum, jotting, record, reminder, minute(s), abstract, Colloq memo: I shall make a notation of that in my diary. 2 symbols, signs, code, characters, symbolism: In musical notation, a minim represents two beats.

notch n. 1 nick, cut, dent, indentation, groove, cleft, score, mark, gouge, gash: For every man he killed, the gunfighter cut a notch in the barrel of his gun. 2 step, grade, level, rung, peg, degree, stage, gradation: Gillian's promotion moves her up another notch towards the chairmanship.

--v. 3 nick, cut, dent, indent, groove, score, mark, gash, gouge: You notch the end of the arrow to admit the bowstring. 4 notch up. gain, win, accomplish, achieve, score, register, mark (up): The All-India cricket team has notched up another win.

notched adj. serrate(d), sawtooth(ed), crenellate(d), crenate, serriform, pinked, scalloped, zigzag, toothed, dentate, denticulate(d), dentiform: The flower has notched yellow petals. The vase was decorated with a notched pattern.

note n. 1 See notation, 1, above. 2 message, letter, communication, (piece of) correspondence, memorandum, epistle, postcard or (postal) card, fan letter, love-letter, billet doux, bread-and-butter letter, word, line, thank-you note, Colloq memo, US old-fashioned mash note: She sent Rob a note only last week asking him to attend the meeting. 3 comment, commentary, remark, observation, explanation, annotation, footnote, side-note, marginalia (pl.), gloss, critique, criticism, Literary scholium, exegesis, eisegesis, Technical shoulder-note: Her notes on insect behaviour are of great interest. 4 banknote, money, bill, currency, treasury note; promissory note, demand note, bill of exchange, letter of credit, (bank) draft, note of hand; Colloq folding money: I found a packet of notes dropped by the bank robbers. The bank is holding my note for œ10,000. 5 theme, characteristic, motif, element, quality, mood, tone, tenor: There is a note of angry frustration that runs through her writing. 6 signal, cue, intimation, hint, inkling, suspicion, clue, suggestion, idea, tip, Slang tip-off: Her greeting, though warm, contained a note of suspicion. On that note, I decided to leave. 7 heed, attention, notice, regard, respect, thought, Colloq US mind: Note of the prosecutor's objection to that line of questioning has been taken. 8 mark, consequence, substance, importance, moment, weight, distinction, merit, prestige, (high) rank or standing, eminence, prominence, repute, reputation, renown: People of note have been entertained at our table. 9 tone, sound; key: He knows the music but gets the notes wrong. 10 notes. jottings, impressions, record(s), report, (thumbnail) sketch, (rough) draft, outline, synopsis: The entire account is based on the notes she made during the trial.

--v. 11 notice, observe, perceive, see, mark, think about, give thought to, consider, contemplate, study, pay attention to, attend to; look into, investigate, check out: Have you ever noted how people try to avoid you because of your bad temper? Note how quickly the days seem to grow shorter towards the end of summer. A detective has been assigned to note every move the suspect makes. 12 record, register, write down, put or set down, put on record, jot down, put in writing, chronicle: The traffic warden noted down the number-plate of the car. 13 call attention to, remark on or about, mention, report, touch on, comment on or about: The report failed to note the disappearance of the murder weapon.

noted adj. respected, eminent, distinguished, illustrious, esteemed, acclaimed; well-known, famous, famed, prominent, celebrated, notable, popular; notorious: We are pleased to welcome the noted violinist, David Popov. Was it his aunt or his mother who ran the noted house of ill repute near Brighton?

noteworthy
adj. notable, exceptional, extraordinary, out of the ordinary, unusual, rare, uncommon, singular, unique, different: Miss Byrne has made many a noteworthy contribution to our knowledge of local Roman sites.

nothing n. 1 naught or nought, nothing at all or whatsoever, no thing, not anything, Taboo slang Brit bugger-all, (sweet) Fanny Adams or F.A., SFA: Nothing that you tell me can be held against you in court. You may think it important, but I tell you it is nothing. 2 cipher, zero, nobody, nonentity: If it weren't for her, he would be nothing. 3 trifle, bagatelle, Colloq peanuts: A million is nothing to him.

notice v. 1 note, take or make note (of), take notice (of), pay or give attention to, attend (to), heed, take heed (of), give heed to, mark, remark, mind, observe, perceive, see: Notice how quickly he retracted his remarks when challenged. I waved to them, but they didn't notice me. 2 mind, observe, perceive, discern, see, detect, make out, identify, recognize, Colloq spot: I noticed signs of illness when I visited her.

--n. 3 attention, awareness, consciousness, perception, observation, cognizance: Let me bring to your notice the second paragraph on page six. 4 regard, consideration, respect, observation, attention, note, heed: They have published many books worthy of notice. He considers matters of money beneath his notice. 5 notification, announcement, information, advice; warning, intimation: A notice showing the currency exchange rates is posted in the bank. The company let Corbett go without notice. 6 criticism, critique, review, comment, commentary: The play has enjoyed excellent notices in the London newspapers. 7 give notice. warn, admonish, notify, announce, advise, inform: British Rail gave notice of a curtailment of service to this station. Barry gave notice today of his resignation.

noticeable
adj. 1 discernible, perceivable, observable, perceptible, recognizable, distinguishable, visible, palpable, manifest, distinct, evident, clear, clear-cut, conspicuous, obvious; patent, unmistakable or unmistakeable, undisguised, unconcealed: Is the scratch noticeable? Wrinkles around the eyes are one of the first noticeable signs of ageing. 2 noteworthy, notable, significant, signal, remarkable, important, singular, exceptional, pronounced, distinct, especial, considerable, major: After the reprimand, there was a noticeable improvement in his work.

notify   v. 1 inform, tell, advise, alert, apprise, warn: She notified us that she might come in late today. They wrote to notify shareholders of the new share offer. 2 announce, publish, declare, proclaim, give notice of; intimate, hint: The arrival of the first salmon notified to us the change of season.

notion   n. 1 idea, thought, concept, conception, image, impression, general idea, (mental) picture, inkling: She has a pretty good notion of who did it. I haven't the slightest notion of what you are talking about. 2 fancy, whim, crotchet, whimsy, caprice, impulse, inclination, vagary, conceit, quirk, kink: She suddenly took a notion to fly to New York and left.

notoriety n. notoriousness, disrepute, dishonour, disgrace, infamy, shame, discredit, scandal, stain, blot, obloquy, ignominy, opprobrium: The notoriety attending his latest escapades displeased the prime minister.

notorious adj. 1 disreputable, dishonourable, disgraceful, infamous, shameful, shaming, embarrassing, discreditable, scandalous, naughty, flagrant, ignominious, opprobrious: Charles was yet again seen in public with a notorious arms dealer. 2 celebrated, renowned, famous, well-known, fabled, legendary, memorable: Annie was notorious for riding her horse to victory in every event.

notwithstanding

adv. 1 nevertheless, nonetheless, despite that, in spite of that, yet, anyway: He was refused permission to go but he left notwithstanding.

--prep. 2 despite, in spite of, regardless of, in the face of, against: Notwithstanding his mother's objections, George married Marsha.

--conj. 3 although, though, even though, despite the fact that: The product was almost totally unknown, notwithstanding it had been on the market for years.

nourish   v. 1 feed, sustain, support, maintain, keep, provide for, care for, take care of, look after, nurture, nurse: The child seems to be thriving and well nourished. 2 foster, cherish, nurse, maintain, harbour, keep, nurture, sustain: Iago nourished a terrible hatred for Othello. 3 strengthen, fortify, encourage, promote, stimulate, cultivate, help, advance, aid: These malcontents continue to nourish trouble in the party ranks.

nourishment

n. food, sustenance, nutriment, nutrition, victuals: You must take nourishment to maintain your strength.

novel   adj. 1 new, unusual, unfamiliar, unconventional, fresh, different, original, creative; untested, untried: I have a novel idea for the design of an ultralight aircraft.

--n. 2 story, tale, narrative, romance; novella, novelette, best-seller, Colloq blockbuster: The members of our company board behave like characters out of a novel.

novelty n. 1 originality, newness, uniqueness, freshness, innovativeness: We are enthusiastic about the novelty of the new sales campaign. 2 gimmick, gimcrack, trifle, gewgaw, bauble, knick-knack, toy, trinket, ornament, plaything, Brummagem, kickshaw: New subscribers receive as a premium some novelty, like a ball-point pen or a cheap clock.

novice n. beginner, neophyte, newcomer, proselyte, tiro or tyro, noviciate or novitiate, learner, amateur, initiate, apprentice, trainee, probationer, fledgling or Brit also fledgeling, US freshman, Colloq greenhorn, rookie: She is a mere novice at parachuting.

now adv. 1 at present, just now, right now, at the present time or moment, at this (very) moment or minute or second or instant: He's in the shower and cannot come to the phone now. 2 these days, nowadays, today, in these times, at the moment, in this day and age, under or in the present circumstances or conditions, in the present climate, things being what they are, contemporarily, any more, any longer; for the time being, for the nonce: What makes you say that the minimum wage is enough to live on now? Selling now might bring the highest price. 3 at once, immediately, right away, without delay, instantly, promptly, Chiefly law instanter, Chiefly Brit straight away: I want you here now - not in five minutes, but now! 4 now and then or again. occasionally, from time to time, at times, on occasion, sometimes, sporadically, once in a while, every now and then or again, randomly, intermittently; infrequently, seldom, rarely, once in a blue moon: There was a power cut now and then. He visits his mother only now and then.

--adj. 5 contemporary, up to date, modern, stylish, fashionable, trendy, Colloq in, with it: Advertisers must appeal to the yuppies of the now generation.

nowadays adv. See now, 2, above.

14.5 nub...

=-

nub n. 1 projection, protuberance, knob, boss, lump, bump, knop, protrusion, bulge, node, knot; excrescence, swelling, tumescence: Press the small nub on the side to open the door. 2 essence, core, heart, nucleus, crux, point, gist, pith, kernel, nucleus, meat, (sum and) substance, main issue, gravamen: Let's get to the nub of the argument.

nuclear adj. atomic: He joined the protest march against nuclear weapons.

nucleus n. core, heart, centre, kernel, pith, focus, nub: We already have the nucleus of a very good team. The market square was the nucleus around which many towns were built.

nude adj. unclothed, undressed, uncovered, au naturel, bare, naked, in the nude, stark naked, undraped, without a stitch (on), Colloq in the buff, in the altogether, in one's birthday suit, Brit starkers, Brit and Australian in the nuddy: A nude man streaked across the football pitch.

nudge v. 1 jog, poke, elbow, jab, dig, bump, prompt, shove; prod, push, US encourage: I had to nudge him to stay awake for the film's thrilling climax.

--n. 2 jog, poke, elbow, jab, dig, bump, shove; prod, push, encouragement: Nigel just needs a nudge in the right direction.

nuisance n. 1 annoyance, inconvenience, trial, ordeal, burden, irritation, irritant, thorn in the flesh or side, difficulty, bother, US bur under the saddle, Colloq pain (in the neck or rear), headache, hassle, Slang US and Canadian pain in the butt, Taboo slang pain in the Brit arse, or US ass: Having to paint the room again was a terrible nuisance. 2 bore, pest, nag, tease, tormentor or tormenter: James has made a nuisance of himself by telephoning every fifteen minutes.

numb adj. 1 numbed, benumbed, insensible, insensate, dead, deadened, without feeling, sensationless, senseless; asleep: My feet are numb from the cold.

--v. 2 benumb, anaesthetize, drug, deaden, dull, freeze, paralyse, immobilize, stun: The doctor numbed my hand before removing the wart. Fear numbed her, and she felt nothing as the monster approached.

number   n. 1 numeral, integer, figure, digit: The columns of numbers were entered in a neat hand. 2 few, handful, crowd, slew, gang, bunch, party, bevy, covey, troop, company, platoon, swarm, horde, multitude, mob, host, army, mass, hundred, thousand, million, billion; several, many, numbers, legions, US and Canadian slew(s) or slue(s), Colloq loads, tons: A number of people attended the meeting. An enormous number of viruses could fit on the head of a pin. 3 issue; edition, copy: The fourth number of the quarterly is published at the end of the year.

--v. 4 count, enumerate, compute, calculate, tally, figure (up), add (up), include, total, tot (up), reckon, sum (up): Who can number the stars?

numberless

adj. uncountable, uncounted, countless, innumerable, incalculable, immeasurable, numerous, untold, myriad, infinite: Although seemingly numberless, the number of grains of sand in the universe is calculable.

nuptial   adj. bridal, matrimonial, wedding, spousal, wedded, marital; connubial, conjugal, Literary hymeneal: The nuptial arrangements have been made.

nurse   n. 1 angel of mercy, Florence Nightingale, Brit sister: I awoke to see two nurses bending over me.

--v. 2 care for, look after, tend, attend, minister to, treat; nurture, foster, coddle, baby, pamper, cherish, preserve, keep alive, cultivate, develop: During his illness, she nursed him night and day. We nursed the company along through the first year. 3 wet-nurse, suckle, breast-feed, nourish: Nursing mothers must be careful about what they eat. 4 preserve, harbour, keep alive, nurture, foster: She has nursed a grudge against him for ten years.

nutritious

adj. healthful, healthy, nutritive, wholesome, life-giving, beneficial, salutary, nourishing, alimentary, nutrimental: Be sure you eat a nutritious breakfast every day.

15.0 O

=-

15.1 oar...

=-

oar n. 1 paddle, scull: The ancient galleys sometimes had six men on each oar. 2 oarsman, oarswoman, bencher, sculler, rower, paddler: With Hanson out because of his back, we'll need a new oar for tomorrow's race.

oasis n. 1 fertile patch, watering-hole: In the desert, you cannot always be sure whether you are looking at an oasis or a mirage. 2 haven, refuge, (safe) harbour, sanctuary, retreat, asylum, resort, sanctum: We escaped to the cottage, a tiny oasis away from the city's frenetic activity.

oath n. 1 vow, avowal, pledge, promise, word (of honour), promise, plight, guarantee or guaranty, warrant or warranty, (sworn) statement, Archaic troth: She has taken an oath to tell the whole truth. 2 curse, profanity, blasphemous language or expression or word, imprecation, malediction, swear-word, expletive, four-letter word, obscenity, dirty word: The door slammed on his finger and he muttered a foul oath.

15.2 obedience...

=-

obedience n. compliance, dutifulness, observance, respect, respectfulness, tractability, conformity or conformance, yielding, conformability, adaptability, agreement, agreeability, agreeableness, acquiescence, submissiveness, submission, subservience, docility, passiveness, passivity: The abbot demanded unquestioning obedience with regard to every rule of the monastic order.

obedient adj. compliant, dutiful, duteous, observant, respectful, tractable, yielding, conformable, adaptable, agreeable, amenable, acquiescent, submissive, subservient, docile, passive, timid, biddable, pliant: Prunella was always an obedient child. All matter and energy is obedient to the laws of physics.

obeisance n. deference, respect, respectfulness, homage, submission, reverence, honour: As she entered the chamber, she made obeisance to the king.

obese adj. fat, overweight, stout, fleshy, gross, corpulent, heavy, plump, portly, tubby, pudgy, chubby, paunchy, rotund, pot-bellied, Rare abdominous: I sat down next to an obese person who occupied nearly two chairs.

obesity n. corpulence, plumpness, tubbiness, chubbiness, grossness, embonpoint, rotundity, portliness, paunchiness, size, bulk, weight, avoirdupois: Risk factors with respect to heart disease include smoking, bad diet, obesity, and family history of heart disease.

obey v. 1 comply (with), agree (to), consent (to), submit (to), abide (by), observe, respect, adhere to, follow, conform (to or with), acquiesce (to or in), mind, accept, heed, defer to, yield (to), knuckle under (to), give way (to), surrender (to), succumb (to), give in (to), truckle to, bow to, bend to, take or accept orders from: Unfortunately, Ogilvy has obeyed his baser instincts in making the punishment fit the crime. Everything must obey the laws of nature. Harold obeys Millie's slightest whim. 2 discharge, execute, effect, carry out, fulfil, meet, satisfy, do, perform; serve, act: We obeyed the colonel's orders to the letter. It is your function to command, mine to obey.

obituary n. necrology, death notice, eulogy, necrologue, Colloq obit: Mark Twain is one of the few people ever to have read his own obituary.

object n. 1 thing, tangible, item; reality, entity, fact, phenomenon: A number of objects lay on the table. Thoughts may be considered as objects of the imagination. 2 focus, target, butt, aim, destination, quarry, goal: The object of my affection has married someone else. 3 purpose, end, intention, objective, reason, intent, idea, goal: The object of our visit is to ask you a few questions.

--v. 4 protest (to or against), interfere (with), raise objections (to), argue (against), oppose, be against, take exception (to), disapprove (of), draw the line (at), complain (about), remonstrate (over or about), take a stand (against), refuse: I won't object if you want to bring the wine. Would you object to rereading that passage? If they ask me, I cannot object.

objection n. protest, opposition, exception, argument, challenge, interference, demur or demurral or demurrer, question, doubt, disapproval, interference, complaint, remonstration, remonstrance, stand, refusal, dislike, antipathy: The meeting proceeded without further objection from the audience. If you have no objection, I'd like to leave now. The secretary has raised an objection to the method of procedure.

objective adj. 1 fair, impartial, just, judicious, equitable, neutral, disinterested, dispassionate, open-handed, open-minded, detached, unbiased, unprejudiced, unbigoted, even-handed, uncoloured, unjaundiced: How can you be objective about the guilt or innocence of your own child?

--n. 2 target, goal, object, aim, purpose, end (in view), intent, intention, design, aspiration, ambition, hope: If we capture the flag, we shall have gained our objective. My objective is to win the pentathlon.

objectivity
n. impartiality, fairness, fair-mindedness, equitableness, equitability, even-handedness, neutrality, disinterest, detachment, indifference, dispassion: The jury's objectivity was never in doubt.

obligate n. oblige, pledge, commit, bind; require, compel, constrain, force: I feel deeply obligated to her for her kindness to our children. We are obligated to do what we are told.

obligation
n. 1 responsibility, duty, charge, burden, onus; accountability, liability, trust; demand, requirement, compulsion, Literary devoir: It was Frank's obligation to get

the children home safely. Civil servants have an obligation to serve the people. I could never fulfil all my obligations. 2 constraint, requirement, contract, promise, pledge, bond, agreement, covenant: The company is under no obligation to replace a product because the customer dislikes its colour. I am under an obligation to her for introducing us. 3 debt, liability: Denby may be unable to meet all his obligations.

obligatory
adj. required, demanded, necessary, requisite, compulsory, mandatory; incumbent; indispensable, essential: Has she been able to meet all the obligatory qualifications?

oblige   v. 1 accommodate, indulge, favour, serve, please, cater to, gratify: The hotelier obliged us with every luxury he had to offer. Please oblige us by keeping your dog on a lead. 2 make, require, demand, force, compel, coerce, bind, obligate: What hold has she over you that obliges you to do her housework?

obliged   adj. 1 thankful, grateful, appreciative, beholden, indebted, obligated: We are deeply obliged to you for lending us your car. 2 bound, required, compelled, forced, made, obligated: Under the terms of the agreement, I am obliged to repay the debt by May.

obliging adj. accommodating, willing, indulgent, gracious, courteous, civil, considerate, polite, agreeable, amenable, kind, kindly, helpful, friendly, amiable, neighbourly, supportive: It was very obliging of you to look after my cat while I was gone.

oblique   adj. 1 slanting, slanted, sloping, aslant, inclined, diagonal, inclining, angled, angling, canted, canting, banked, banking, cambered, crooked, askew, divergent, diverging, tilted, atilt, tilting: The roof joins the wall at an oblique angle. 2 awry, devious, roundabout, indirect, circuitous, circumlocutionary, evasive, sly, sidelong, offhand, surreptitious, furtive, implied, clandestine, underhand(ed), deceitful, devious, deceptive, false: She made some oblique comments about the candidate's wife.

obliterate
v. 1 erase, expunge, rub out, efface, eradicate, wipe out, delete, dele, strike off or out, strike from, rule out,

eliminate, write off: After the scandal, that name was obliterated from the roll of honour. 2 annihilate, destroy, kill, exterminate, wipe out, eliminate, blot out, eradicate, extirpate: The entrance to the cave was completely obliterated by the explosion.

oblivion n. 1 blankness, blackness, darkness, obscurity, nothingness, nihility, anonymity, extinction, non-existence, void, limbo: The rock band enjoyed brief fame, then sank into oblivion. 2 unawareness, obliviousness, forgetfulness, heedlessness, disregard, unconsciousness, insensibility: I sank back into the sweet oblivion of deep sleep.

oblivious adj. unaware, unconscious, unmindful, disregardful, insensible, insensitive, distant, unconcerned, detached, removed, unfeeling, abstracted, absent-minded, forgetful, Lethean: Many are completely oblivious to the plight of the starving millions in Africa.

obnoxious adj. revolting, repulsive, repugnant, disgusting, offensive, objectionable, fulsome, noisome, vile, repellent, nauseous, nauseating, sickening, foul, noxious, mephitic, unsavoury, execrable, abominable, abhorrent, loathsome, detestable, hateful, odious, scurvy, base, obscene, despicable, awful, terrible, unpalatable, distasteful, unlikeable, unpleasant, nasty, Colloq chiefly Brit beastly: Mary's obnoxious sister even has obnoxious table manners.

obscene adj. 1 inelegant, improper, rude, impure, unchaste, shameless, shameful, indecent, immodest, off colour, indecorous, indelicate, risqu,, vulgar, immoral, degenerate, amoral, dissolute, broad, suggestive, erotic, sensual, ribald, debauched, wanton, loose, libertine, bawdy, blue, scabrous, coarse, dirty, filthy, smutty, pornographic, libidinous, lewd, licentious, lecherous, lustful, goatish, carnal, ruttish, lascivious, filthy, salacious, prurient, disgusting, offensive, repulsive, foul, abominable, vile, loathsome, gross, foul-mouthed, scurrilous, scatological, vile, Literary Cyprian, Paphian, Fescennine, thersitical: In the cinema business, 'adult' and 'obscene' seem to be synonyms. 2 evil, wicked, heinous, atrocious, awful, outrageous, repulsive, shocking, repellent, obnoxious, off-putting, objectionable, beastly, intolerable, insufferable, unpalatable, distasteful, nauseous, nauseating, sickening, execrable, despicable, nasty: The obscene monster dashed the brave warriors to the rocks far below.

obscure adj. 1 dark, unlit, gloomy, sombre, dismal, murky, dusky, black, Cimmerian, tenebrous, dim, faint, blurred, veiled, shadowy, subfusc, subfuscous, umbral, shady, hazy, foggy, befogged, clouded, nebulous, overcast, cloudy: The traveller's lantern was barely seen in the obscure reaches of the wood. 2 unclear, uncertain, ambiguous, vague, hazy, doubtful, dubious, equivocal, indefinite, indistinct, fuzzy, blurred, confused, confusing, Delphic, puzzling, enigmatic, perplexing, baffling, mystifying, mysterious, cryptic, incomprehensible, unfamiliar, foreign, strange: The sorcerer muttered some obscure words, and a golden horse stood prancing before them. 3 secret, concealed, hidden, remote, out-of-the-way, inconspicuous, unnoticeable, secluded, unnoticed: The caped figure scurried down the alley and disappeared into some obscure doorway. 4 unknown, unheard-of, anonymous, unnamed, insignificant, unimportant, inconsequential, humble, lowly, mean, inglorious, inconspicuous, undistinguished, unnoticed, unsung, minor, little-known: Though extremely popular, the song was written by an obscure composer. 5 abstruse, arcane, recondite, esoteric, intricate, complex, occult, out of the ordinary, unfamiliar, Colloq far-out: He is an authority on some obscure subject like Coptic calligraphy.

--v. 6 cover, conceal, hide, veil, shroud, cloak, mask, screen, disguise, keep from: Her link with military intelligence was obscured from her family. 7 dim, bedim, cloud, becloud, dull, shroud, shade, adumbrate, overshadow, darken, obfuscate, block, eclipse: The street lamp was obscured by trees.

obscurity n. 1 dimness, darkness, gloom, murk, murkiness, duskiness, dusk, blackness, faintness, blurriness, shade, shadow, haze, fog, cloudiness, nebulousness: The two of them vanished into the obscurity of the night. 2 abstruseness, ambiguousness, intricacy, complexity, unintelligibility; mystery, arcanum, secret, esoterica (pl.): Can he truly believe that he has fathomed all the obscurities of Scripture? 3 insignificance, unimportance, ingloriousness, inconspicuousness, anonymity, namelessness, limbo: After a fleeting surge of popularity, punk rock sank into obscurity.

obsequious

adj. low, cringing, toadying, toadyish, sycophantic(al), sycophantish, unctuous, truckling, grovelling, crawling, fawning, deferential, ingratiating, menial, flattering, servile, slavish, subservient, submissive, abject, mealy-mouthed, slimy, Colloq boot-licking, Chiefly Brit smarmy, Taboo slang brown-nosing, Brit arse-kissing, arse-licking, US ass-licking, ass-kissing: He is surrounded with obsequious followers who cater to his every whim.

observable

adj. perceptible, perceivable, noticeable, discernible, recognizable, detectable, visible, apparent, distinct, evident, manifest, plain, obvious, clear, explicit, transparent, patent, tangible, unmistakable or unmistakeable: A marked change in public sentiment became at once observable.

observance

n. 1 observation, observing, obedience, obeying, compliance, complying, conformity, conforming, adherence, adhering, keeping, accordance, regard, recognition, recognizing, respect, respecting, heed, heeding, attention: Observance of the rules by everyone makes for a happier community. 2 ceremony, celebration, ceremonial, practice, rite, ritual, service, performance, form, custom, convention, tradition, formality, usage, habit, wont, institution: Almost all the fine arts derived their origin from religious observances. 3 observation, examination, inspection, scrutiny, looking, watching: His observance of the passing scene was chronicled in his diary.

observant adj. 1 watchful, alert, attentive, vigilant, on the lookout, on the qui vive, on guard, wide awake, regardful, mindful, aware, keen, keen-eyed, sharp-eyed, eagle-eyed, perceptive, sharp, shrewd: Hannay was observant of all who passed him on the way to the train. How very observant of you to spot the man in the crowd! 2 Usually, observant of. obedient (to), compliant (with), respectful (of), heedful(of), attentive (to or of), conformist (to), adherent (to): One must be always be observant of the rules of the road.

observation

n. 1 watching, examination, scrutiny, inspection, viewing, survey, surveillance; notice, discovery, attention, awareness:

The police put the house under 24-hour observation. The smuggled weapon escaped the guard's observation. 2 comment, remark, note, reflection, opinion, sentiment, point of view, impression, feeling, commentary, criticism; utterance, word, announcement, pronouncement, proclamation, declaration: She made a number of trenchant observations concerning life in Britain today.

observe   v. 1 obey, abide by, comply with, be heedful of, attend to, conform to, regard, keep, follow, adhere to, respect, pay attention to: We observed the prohibition against swimming. 2 watch, look at, examine, monitor, scrutinize, study, regard, view, inspect, pore over, contemplate, consider , Colloq check (out or up on), check over, size up, Slang case: The naturalists went to the Arctic to observe the polar bears. 3 see, mark, notice, look, perceive: Observe how swiftly the skin forms pustules when this substance is applied. 4 Sometimes, observe on or upon. comment (on or upon), remark (on or upon), mention, say, note, refer (to), make reference to, animadvert on or upon or to; state, declare: It is impolite to observe on others' manners. He couldn't help observing to his cell-mate how easy it would be to escape. 5 celebrate, keep, solemnize, respect, keep holy, mark, commemorate, memorialize, remember, recognize: We always observe the sabbath.

observer n. witness, eyewitness, spectator, viewer, onlooker, beholder, watcher, looker-on; non-participant: UN observers reported that the battle was over.

obsess   v. haunt, harass, plague, bedevil, torment, take over, preoccupy, dominate, control, grip, possess, hold: He was obsessed by the conviction that he could design a successful flying machine.

obsession n. fixed idea, id‚e fixe, fixation, conviction, preoccupation, prepossession, passion, mania, phobia, Colloq hang-up, thing: Thoughts of death became his constant obsession.

obsessive adj. haunting, harassing, tormenting, dominating, controlling, possessing, all-encompassing, passionate, unshakeable or unshakable: She has an obsessive fear of heights.

obsolescent
adj. fading, waning, on the wane, declining, dying, on the way

out, on the decline, going or passing out of use or fashion or style: Much of yesterday's newest slang is obsolescent today.

obsolete adj. out of date, out of fashion, out-dated, pass,, out, dead, outmoded, old, antiquated, antediluvian, ancient, superannuated, dated, archaic, old-fashioned, d,mod,; unused, disused, discarded, superseded, extinct, Colloq old hat: The expression 'tickety-boo' is obsolete. He plays his 78-rpm records on an obsolete gramophone.

obstacle n. impediment, hindrance, obstruction, hurdle, hitch, catch, snag, stumbling-block, barrier, bar, check: The obstacles in the road prevented our proceeding further. One must often overcome many obstacles before achieving success.

obstinacy n. obstinateness, stubbornness, doggedness, tenacity, persistence or persistency, mulishness, pigheadedness, wilfulness, contrariness, perverseness, perversity, cantankerousness, recalcitrance, uncooperativeness, rebelliousness, contumacy, contumaciousness, refractoriness, intractability, intransigence, pertinacity, pertinaciousness, obduracy, fixedness, stolidity, inflexibility, firmness, Archaic frowardness, Colloq Brit bloody-mindedness: His obstinacy and narrow-mindedness made it impossible to work in any cooperative way with him.

obstinate adj. stubborn, dogged, tenacious, persistent, mulish, perverse, headstrong, pigheaded, single-minded, wilful, strong-willed, self-willed, contrary, recalcitrant, uncooperative, rebellious, contumacious, refractory, intransigent, pertinacious, obdurate, fixed, inflexible, stony, adamant, set, unmoving, immovable, inexorable, intractable, unchangeable, resolute, steadfast, unyielding, persevering, stiff, rigid, hard, Archaic froward, Colloq Brit bloody-minded: The obstinate man does not hold opinions - they hold him.

obstreperous
adj. vociferous, clamorous, noisy, loud, raucous, riotous, uproarious, tumultuous, boisterous, rowdy, rumbustious, tempestuous, unruly, disorderly, unmanageable, uncontrollable, uncontrolled, unrestrained, irrepressible, out of control, undisciplined, roisterous, wild, turbulent, Colloq rambunctious, Brit mafficking: The party was getting rough and some of the

guests a bit too obstreperous.

obstruct v. 1 block, bar, check, prevent, stop (up), arrest, halt, clog, make impassable; bring to a standstill: The vein is obstructed by a large blood clot. A clogged drain is obstructing the water. 2 hamper, slow, impede, interfere with, retard, hinder, interrupt, delay, stay, stall: An overturned truck obstructed traffic on the motorway. 3 preclude, prevent, debar, block, prohibit, forbid, stop, stand in the way of: They are manoeuvring to obstruct her from taking over the company.

obstruction

n. 1 obstacle, barrier, bar, check, stumbling-block, hindrance, impediment, hurdle, hitch, snag, catch, bottleneck, limitation, constraint, restriction: The fallen trees created an almost impassable obstruction. 2 checking, stopping, cessation, proscription, forbidding, forbiddance; hindering, impeding, limiting, halting, slowing: The obstruction of the bill's passage can be blamed on the Tories.

obtain v. 1 get, procure, acquire, come by, come into (the) possession of, secure, get hold of or one's hands on, grasp, capture, take possession of, seize; buy, purchase: She has been unable to obtain the job she wants. You can obtain that kind of soap at the supermarket. 2 earn, gain: We talked to the manager about obtaining an increase in wages. 3 prevail, be in force, be in vogue, exist, subsist, have (a) place, be prevalent, be established, be customary, apply, be relevant, relate: A different set of regulations obtains here.

obtrude v. thrust (oneself) forward or forth, intrude, impose (oneself), force (oneself): The best writers never obtrude between the reader and the story.

obtrusive adj. interfering, intrusive, meddling, officious, meddlesome, importunate, forward, presumptuous, forceful, Colloq pushy: She found him somewhat obtrusive - always giving advice when she least needed it.

obtuse adj. 1 rounded, unpointed, blunt: When mature, the leaves become more obtuse. 2 dull, insensitive, unfeeling, imperceptive, thick-skinned, stolid, thick, dense, doltish, cloddish, thickheaded, dull-witted, dim-witted, slow-witted, (mentally) retarded, boneheaded, lumpish, loutish, oafish, simple, simple-minded: Luke is a bit too obtuse to get the point of the story.

obvious adj. clear, plain, apparent, patent, perceptible, evident, self-evident, clear-cut, manifest, palpable, (much) in evidence, conspicuous, open, visible, overt, ostensible, pronounced, prominent, glaring, undeniable, unconcealed, unhidden, unsubtle, distinct, simple, bald, bald-faced, straightforward, direct, self-explanatory, indisputable, unmistakable or unmistakeable: There are obvious flaws in the fabric. The reason you were refused seemed obvious to me.

obviously adv. clearly, plainly, apparently, patently, evidently, simply, certainly, of course, undeniable, unmistakably or unmistakeably, indubitably, doubtless(ly): You are obviously the right person for the assignment.

15.3 occasion...

=-

occasion n. 1 time, moment, circumstance, incident, occurrence, opportunity, chance, opening, advantage: I took the occasion of the inquiry to leave town. 2 reason, cause, call, justification, ground(s), warrant, provocation, prompting, impulse, stimulus, incitement, inducement: Tom gave David no occasion to doubt his honesty. 3 event, function, happening, affair, observance, commemoration, ceremony, celebration, gala, party,: Grandpapa's ninetieth birthday was a great occasion. This hall is saved for important occasions. 4 on occasion. See occasionally, below.

--v. 5 give rise to, bring about, cause, bring on, effect, prompt, provoke, evoke, call forth, elicit, call up, induce, impel, create, generate, engender, produce, make (for): An increase in the inflation rate occasions a decrease in the value of money.

occasional

adj. 1 intermittent, irregular, periodic, random, sporadic, infrequent, casual, incidental: They staged occasional raids on the arsenal. He works as an occasional farm hand. 2 additional, extra, spare, supplementary, incidental, auxiliary, accessory: We bought a few occasional chairs in case we have company. 3 special, particular, ceremonial, ritual: She writes occasional verses for memorial services.

occasionally

adv. sometimes, on occasion, (every) now and then, from time to time, at times, (every) now and again, once in a while, every so often, periodically, intermittently, sporadically, irregularly, off and on: We go up the Lake District for a weekend occasionally. Trevor occasionally drops in at the local pub for a beer.

occult adj. 1 secret, dark, concealed, private, privy, hidden, obscure, veiled, obscured, shrouded, vague, abstruse, shadowy, mystical, mysterious, cabbalistic, esoteric, recondite, arcane: Printing was kept an occult art for generations. 2 magical, mystical, alchemic(al), unexplained, unexplainable, inexplicable, puzzling, baffling, perplexing, mystifying, mysterious, incomprehensible, inscrutable, indecipherable, impenetrable, unfathomable, transcendental, supernatural, preternatural, mystic: They dress in odd clothes and participate in occult rituals at peculiar times of the day and night.

--n. 3 Usually, the occult. the supernatural, the unknown, the black arts; arcana, cabbala or cabala or kabbala; cabbalism or cabalism or kabbalism, occultism, sorcery, witchcraft, black magic: Keith has studied the occult for many years.

occupant n. resident, inhabitant, occupier, tenant, lessee, leaseholder, renter, owner, householder, indweller, dweller, denizen, lodger, roomer, boarder; addressee; incumbent: The occupant of the flat upstairs is rarely home.

occupation

n. 1 job, position, post, situation, appointment, employment, vocation, line (of work), career, field, calling, trade, m,tier, craft, skill, profession, business, work: Claverton pursued his occupation as a miniaturist for some fifty years. 2 possession, tenure, occupancy, rule, control, suzerainty, subjugation, subjection, oppression, bondage: Terrible atrocities were committed while the land was under the occupation of the

Mongols. 3 conquest, seizure, appropriation, take-over: Francisco Pizarro was responsible for the occupation of Peru.

occupy v. 1 capture, seize, take possession of, conquer, invade, take over, overrun, garrison, dominate, hold: Rebel forces had occupied the capital and toppled the governor. 2 live or reside or dwell in, tenant, be established or ensconced or situated in, establish or ensconce or situate oneself in, inhabit, be settled in or into, settle in or into, take up residence in, make one's home in, move in or into; be located in: She occupies a luxurious flat in Belgravia. 3 engage, busy, absorb, monopolize, hold, take up or over, catch, grab, seize, grip; divert, amuse, entertain, distract, beguile, preoccupy, hold (someone's) attention, interest, engross, involve: Other matters occupied my attention last Sunday. While one man was keeping the shopkeeper occupied, the other man was robbing the till. 4 fill (in or up), take up, cover, extend over, consume, use (up), Colloq eat up: The car occupies more garage space than I thought it would. Housework occupies very little of my time.

occur v. 1 happen, take place, arise, come about, befall, come to pass, chance, appear, surface, materialize, develop, become manifest, manifest itself, Colloq transpire, crop up, come off, turn up: We reported to the police all that had occurred. What occurred to make you late this time? 2 occur to. dawn on, strike, hit, come to, suggest itself to, cross (someone's) mind, enter (someone's) head, be brought to (someone's) attention: Has it occurred to you that she might not like opera?

occurrence
n. 1 happening, event, incident, phenomenon, affair, matter, experience: Earthquakes are frequent occurrences in California. 2 existence, instance, manifestation, materialization, appearance, development: The occurrence of mutations diversifies the species. 3 frequency, incidence, rate; likelihood, chance: What is the recorded occurrence of typhoons in the South China Sea?

ocean n. 1 (deep blue) sea, (bounding) main, high seas, the deep, Davy Jones's locker, the depths, Colloq the briny, the drink: The sails filled, and our tiny craft was swept out into the open ocean. 2 Often, oceans. flood, abundance, multitude, profusion, plethora, Colloq scads, loads, tons, lots, oodles, gobs, zillions: The direct mail campaign yielded oceans of responses.

oceanic adj. marine, pelagic, thalassic; salt-water, deep-water, aquatic, maritime, sea, ocean: These creatures are chiefly oceanic, coming ashore only to breed.

15.4 odd...
=-

odd adj. 1 strange, peculiar, unusual, uncommon, different, unexpected, unfamiliar, extraordinary, remarkable, atypical, untypical, exotic, out of the ordinary, unparalleled, unconventional, exceptional, unique, singular, individual, anomalous, idiosyncratic, rare, deviant, outlandish, uncanny, queer, curious, bizarre, weird, eccentric, funny, quaint, fantastic, freak, abnormal, freakish, Colloq offbeat, screwy, kinky, freaky, Slang Brit barmy, bent, rum, US and Canadian kooky or kookie: Ebenezer is an odd name for a dog. Where did you get that odd hat? I cannot account for his odd behaviour. 2 occasional, casual, part-time, irregular, random, sporadic, discontinuous, disconnected, various, varied, miscellaneous, sundry, incidental: After being made redundant, he worked at odd jobs for a year or so. The odd shower can be expected during the afternoon. 3 leftover, surplus, remaining, unused, spare, superfluous, extra: After the patterns were cut, we were allowed to take the odd scraps of fabric. 4 uneven, unmatched, unpaired: This gallery has an odd number of columns.

oddity n. 1 peculiarity, strangeness, unnaturalness, curiousness, incongruity, incongruousness, eccentricity, outlandishness, extraordinariness, unconventionality, bizarreness, weirdness, queerness, oddness, unusualness, individuality, singularity, distinctiveness, anomalousness, anomaly, Colloq kinkiness, US and Canadian kookiness: What caught my attention was the oddity of the clothes worn by the students. 2 peculiarity, curiosity, rarity, freak, original, phenomenon, character, eccentric, nonconformist, fish out of water, odd bird, rara avis, misfit, square peg in a round hole, maverick, Colloq card, crank, weirdie or weirdo, oner, Brit odd fish, US and Canadian kook, oddball, screwball: The townspeople thought Albert an oddity, but we knew he was a genius. 3 peculiarity, irregularity, anomaly, idiosyncrasy, eccentricity, deviation, quirk, mannerism, twist, kink, crotchet: I suppose people all have their own oddities when it comes to food.

odds n.pl. 1 chances, likelihood, probability: The odds are that Janet will finish the job in time. 2 edge, advantage, lead, superiority: We have won before against greater odds. 3 difference, inequality, disparity, unevenness, discrepancy, dissimilarity, distinction: It makes no odds who you are, you may not go in there. 4 at odds. at variance, at loggerheads, at daggers drawn, at sixes and sevens, at cross purposes, at each other's throats, in disagreement, in opposition, on bad terms, not in keeping, out of line, inharmonious, conflicting, clashing, disagreeing, differing: Teenagers have been at odds with their parents since time immemorial. 5 odds and ends. oddments, fragments, debris, leftovers, leavings, remnants, bits (and pieces), particles, shreds, snippets, scraps, rubbish, litter, Colloq Brit odds and sods: We managed to pack everything into boxes except for a few odds and ends.

odour n. 1 smell, scent, aroma, bouquet, fragrance, perfume, redolence; stench, stink, fetor or foetor: The air was filled with the odour of orange blossoms. The odour of rotting vegetation assailed our noses. 2 air, breath, hint, suggestion, atmosphere, spirit, quality, flavour, savour, aura, tone: She would never allow the odour of scandal to touch her family.

15.5 off...

=-

off adv. 1 away, out, elsewhere: His secretary said that he'd gone off for the weekend. 2 distant, away, afar, far-off: The U-boat was a mile off. Christmas is only a month off.

--adj. 3 incorrect, wrong, inaccurate, in error, mistaken, misguided, misled, off the mark: I'm afraid you're off on the question of the best way to approach him. 4 mad, insane, crazy, eccentric, touched (in the head), Colloq dotty, dippy, nutty, potty: Underwood's aunt is slightly off. 5 remote, distant, improbable, unlikely: He went to the station on the off chance that she would be on the midday train. 6 off work, at leisure, idle, free, open; on holiday: Can you get the day off tomorrow to go on a picnic with me? 7 sour, mouldy, bad, rotten, rancid, turned, high: The cream smells a bit off. 8 bad, unpropitious, disappointing, unsatisfactory, disheartening, displeasing, slack, slow, substandard, below par, below average, quiet: It has been an off year for the local football team. 9 cancelled, postponed: The meeting is off till next week. 10 situated, fixed, supplied: Is he really that well off? She was much worse off when they were married.

offbeat adj. strange, eccentric, bizarre, weird, peculiar, odd, queer, unconventional, unorthodox, Bohemian, idiosyncratic, unusual, unexpected, outr,, outlandish, deviant, novel, innovative, Colloq kinky, way-out, far-out, off-the-wall, freaky, weirdo: Jasper's offbeat, satirical humour has made him a popular comedian.

off colour
adj. 1 unwell, ill, off form, out of sorts, queasy, sick, run down, awful, seedy, Colloq under the weather, poorly, Slang lousy, rotten: I have been feeling off colour since eating that fish. 2 indelicate, risqu,, ribald, bawdy, indecent, suggestive, broad, indelicate, inelegant, improper, inappropriate, unseemly, blue: My mother does not tolerate off-colour remarks at the dinner table.

offence n. 1 violation, breach, crime, felony, misdemeanour, infraction, transgression, trespass, wrong, wrongdoing, sin, peccadillo, misdeed, fault, infringement, malefaction; dereliction, lapse, slip, error: He was accused of offences against the rights of others. Some regard the splitting of an infinitive an offence against the Queen's English. 2 give offence. incur displeasure, create annoyance or irritation or resentment or pique, evoke indignation or anger; slight, injure, hurt, harm, offend, insult, outrage, Colloq put (someone) down: He denied that he meant to give offence in his criticism of the play. 3 take offence. take umbrage, feel displeasure or annoyance or resentment or pique or indignation, be angered or enraged: Why should you take offence at what a fool says?

offend v. 1 hurt (someone's) feelings, affront, insult, slight, snub, give offence, hurt, pain, displease, disgruntle, chagrin, humiliate, embarrass; pique, fret, gall, vex, annoy, irritate, nettle, needle, rankle, provoke, ruffle, outrage, rile, anger , Colloq miff, put (someone's) back up, put (someone's) nose out of joint, tread or step on (someone's) toes, put (someone) out, rattle: I hope you weren't offended by my saying that you could do with losing some weight. 2 disgust, sicken, turn (someone's) stomach, nauseate, repel, repulse, revolt, Colloq turn (someone) off: I, for one, am offended by seeing explicit sex on television.

offender n. criminal, malefactor, lawbreaker, outlaw, wrongdoer, culprit, miscreant, transgressor, sinner, evil-doer, Slang crook: I don't know if they apprehended the offender.

offensive adj. 1 antagonistic, hostile, contentious, quarrelsome, attacking, aggressive, threatening, provocative, combative, martial, belligerent, warlike, bellicose: The minute the enemy made an offensive move, we attacked. 2 insulting, rude, disrespectful, uncivil, insolent, discourteous, impolite, unmannerly, impertinent, impudent, objectionable, displeasing: Nigel has been asked to leave because of his offensive behaviour. 3 disgusting, unsavoury, unpalatable, nauseating, nauseous, noisome, noxious, obnoxious, repugnant, repulsive, repellent, revolting, abominable, foul, loathsome, vile, sickening, fetid or foetid, rank, malodorous, mephitic, putrid, putrescent, putrefying, rancid, rotten: An offensive stench emanated from the stagnant pond.

--n. 4 attack, offence: At last, our team was on the offensive. 5 attack, onslaught, drive, assault, offence, push: The offensive to capture the arsenal will be launched at dawn tomorrow.

offer v. 1 proffer, propose, tender, bid: They offered twice what I had paid for it. She offered to buy my old car. 2 make available, present, tender, put on the market, sell, put up for sale, put up, furnish: The supermarket is offering lettuce at half price. 3 proffer, provide, submit, put forward or forth, advance, tender, extend, make; suggest: Can you offer a suggestion for improving office efficiency? He offered to forget the whole thing if I paid him œ1000. 4 volunteer, present oneself, step or come forward: I offered to help with her luggage.

--n. 5 proposal, bid, tender, offering: She said she would double any offer we have already had for the painting. 6 proposal, presentation, proffer, proposition: The company said they could entertain no offers past the deadline. My offer to lend the money was contingent on being repaid.

offering n. sacrifice, oblation, contribution, donation, gift, present: They made offerings to the gods in order to propitiate them.

offhand adj. 1 offhanded, casual, informal, nonchalant, cool, distant, aloof, easygoing, blas,, unceremonious, relaxed, easy, smooth, unconcerned, insouciant, light-hearted, uninterested, superficial, cursory, cavalier, careless: His offhand reaction shows that he doesn't care as much about her as we thought. 2 curt, brusque, abrupt, perfunctory, ungracious, glib, smooth: When asked when he expected to pay, he gave an offhand reply. 3 extempore, impromptu, unpremeditated, unstudied, extemporaneous, informal, off the cuff, ad lib: She rose to make some offhand comments about the accomplishments of the guest of honour.

--adv. 4 extempore, impromptu, extemporaneously, informally, off the cuff, ad lib, on the spur of the moment, at the drop of a hat: That was a pretty good speech considering it was made offhand. 5 casually, informally, incidentally, by the way, offhandedly, by the by, parenthetically, in passing, en passant, cursorily, superficially: Offhand, I'd say that the two of them deserve each other.

office n. 1 business, organization, department, firm, house, establishment, company, corporation: Whenever I'm travelling, I always try to phone the office once a day. 2 commission, department, branch; section, division: He was with the overseas office for years. 3 workplace, offices; room, area: Our new office is completely air-conditioned. My office is next to the board room. 4 duty, obligation, responsibility, charge, commission, service, employment, occupation, position, post, appointment, assignment, chore, task, job, place, berth, work, role, function, purpose, part, bit, Colloq thing, Slang shtick: He was appointed to the office of Minister of Health. In her office as Minister of Finance, she wields great power. 5 offices. indulgence, intermediation, auspices, support, advocacy, aegis, help, aid, intercession, mediation, patronage, favour, backing, backup: She appealed to the police chief's good offices to allow her to visit her son.

officer n. 1 (public) official, dignitary, office-holder, public servant, office-bearer, (political) appointee, (government) agent, bureaucrat, functionary, commissioner, administrator, manager, director; apparatchik: He was stopped by customs officers who demanded to search his baggage. The bailiff is an officer of the court. 2 policeman, policewoman, police officer, officer of the law, constable, Old-fashioned catchpole, US lawman, peace officer, G-man, T-Man, Colloq gendarme, Slang cop, copper, fuzz, US dick, narc, Brit Old Bill, tec: The officer standing at the door was there to serve a writ.

official adj. 1 authorized, legitimate, lawful, legal, authentic, bona fide, proper, true, accredited, valid, documented, licensed, sanctioned, endorsed, certified, verified, recognized, accepted: I won't believe I've won till I hold the official notification in my own hands. 2 ceremonial, formal, solemn, ritualistic, ceremonious, pompous, stiff, proper, seemly, decorous: She has to make an acceptance speech at the official dinner.

--n. 3 See officer, 1, above.

officiate v. preside, direct, manage, chair, conduct, oversee, head (up), run, lead, supervise, superintend; umpire, referee, judge, adjudicate, moderate, mediate: Who will officiate at the annual meeting? Dennis has been invited to officiate at the football match on Saturday.

officious adj. dictatorial, intrusive, intruding, meddlesome, meddling, obtrusive, forward, bold, interfering, aggressive, insistent, persistent, demanding, importunate: Hamish is one of those officious little men who are always ready to give unasked-for advice.

offset v. 1 compensate, counterbalance, countervail, counterpoise, counteract, balance (out), equalize, even (out or up), square, cancel (out), neutralize, nullify, make up (for), atone (for), redress; recompense, repay, make amends or restitution, make good, reimburse, indemnify: The votes from the Centre offset those lost to the Far Left. How are you going to offset losses resulting from pilferage by shop assistants?

--n. 2 compensation, counterbalance, counteraction, check, equalizer, neutralizer: The bank manager considered the money owed to the company as sufficient offset for the money owed by it.

offshoot n. 1 branch, spur; shoot, limb, bough, twig, stem, appendage, sucker, sprout, sprig, tendril, scion: There is an offshoot of this road that goes up the hill. The offshoots are trained to grow along the arms of the espalier. 2 descendant, relation, relative, kin, kindred, offspring, scion, heir: One offshoot of the family later emigrated to the United States. 3 outgrowth, development, branch, spin-off; by-product, derivative: An offshoot of the company manufactures optical instruments. The sale of gravel for concrete is an offshoot of our mining operations.

offspring n. (Often used as plural) child, progeny, issue, seed, youngster, brood, young, successor, heir: None of the earl's offspring ever amounted to much.

often   adv. frequently, regularly, much, many times, usually, habitually, commonly; ordinarily, again and again, over and over again, time after time, repeatedly, time and (time) again, in many cases or instances, on numerous occasions, day in (and) day out, continually, Literary oftentimes, oft: How often do you visit your mother? We often went to the seaside for our summer holiday. She was often warned not to go too near the edge.

15.6 ogle...

=-

ogle   v. 1 leer, eye, make eyes at, Colloq give (someone) the glad eye, give (someone) the once-over, make sheep's eyes at: The old lecher is always ogling the pretty young secretaries. 2 gape, gaze, goggle, gawk, stare, Slang Brit gawp or gaup: We took turns ogling the rings of Saturn through the telescope.

--n. 3 leer, stare, gape, goggle, oeillade, Colloq once-over, glad eye: They all crowded round the paper for an ogle at the pin-ups.

ogre   n. ogress, monster, giant, fiend, demon, troll, man-eater, bogey, bogeyman, bugbear, spectre, Minotaur, Cyclops, Gorgon, Caliban; brute, sadist, villain, cad, scoundrel: The ogre chased Jack to the beanstalk. The persistent ogre of poverty threatened him all his life.

15.7 oil...

=-

oil n. 1 lubricant, grease, lubricator, unguent: A little oil will stop that squeak. 2 fuel: Miraculously, the lamp burned for eight days with only one day's supply of oil.

--v. 3 lubricate, grease: Oil the bearings or they will burn out.

oily adj. 1 greasy, oleaginous, fat, fatty, adipose, pinguid, sebaceous, soapy, saponaceous, buttery, butyraceous, lardaceous; slippery, slimy, slithery, smooth, unctuous: The cars slid about as the tyres failed to grip the oily surface. 2 glib, smooth, unctuous, servile, obsequious, sycophantic, ingratiating, flattering, hypocritical; suave, urbane, sophisticated, Colloq smarmy: Sarah found Curtis's approach sickeningly oily.

ointment n. unguent, balm, salve, emollient, embrocation, demulcent, pomade, pomatum, petrolatum; lotion, cream: A little ointment will keep the sore moist till it heals.

15.8 OK

=-

OK interj. 1 O.K.!, Okay!, Fine!, Yes!, Definitely!, Agreed!, Very well!, All right!: 'Would you have dinner with me?' 'OK!' 'I think you ought to leave.' 'OK!'

--adj. 2 satisfactory, acceptable, correct, suitable, all right, fine, good, in order: Is it OK if I go the cinema tonight? That dress is OK to wear to the dance. 3 adequate, mediocre, fair, middling, passable, tolerable, Colloq so so, pretty good, not bad, not great: The film was OK, I suppose. 4 well, healthy; sound, in good condition, in fine fettle, fine, all right: Now that he's on the proper medication, Sam is OK.

The mechanic assured me that my car would be OK.

--v. 5 approve, sanction, ratify, authorize, endorse, support, agree to, allow, consent to, agree to, Colloq give the go-ahead or green light to, give the thumbs up or the nod to, rubber-stamp: A department head must OK your expense account before you can be reimbursed.

--n. 6 approval, sanction, ratification, authorization, endorsement, agreement, support, permission, consent: You need an OK from the security guard to enter the restricted area.

--adv. 7 all right, satisfactorily, well (enough), adequately: She can get along OK without me.

15.9 old...

=-

old adj. 1 elderly, ageing, aged, advanced in years or age, long-lived, past one's prime, grey, full of years, getting on (in years), hoary, superannuated, Colloq over the hill, past it: Bill is too old to continue working in the mine. 2 ancient, antiquated, antediluvian, fossil, prehistoric, Noachian, obsolete, antique, outdated, out of date, old-time, dated, archaic, stale, out-moded, pass,, Literary Ogygian: The archaeological dig has turned up some interesting old artefacts. 3 time-worn, decayed, dilapidated, ramshackle, disintegrated, crumbling, shabby, worn out, dusty, broken-down, tumbledown, disused, unused, cast off, cast aside: They have torn down the old mill near the river. 4 long-standing, well-established, enduring, lasting, age-old, time-honoured: It is hard to see an old friendship die. 5 former, olden, bygone, early, primordial, primitive: In the old days, it took a week to travel from London to Edinburgh. 6 previous, preceding, prior, former, quondam, erstwhile, one-time, ex-: The West End was my old stamping-ground when I lived in London. 7 experienced, veteran, practised, (well-)versed, knowledgeable, proficient, accomplished, adept, skilled, expert, old-time: Charles is an old hand at steam engines. 8 dear, beloved, loved, esteemed, valued, precious, well-known, intimate, close, familiar: Penelope is an old friend of the family's.

old-fashioned
adj. antiquated, antique, pass,, out-moded, out-dated, unfashionable, stale, out-dated, dated, out of date, tired, old-time, obsolete, obsolescent, dead, superseded, replaced, disused, out, old-fangled, old hat: Whoever thought we would see the day when miniskirts were old-fashioned?

15.10 omen...
=-

omen n. portent, augury, sign, token, foretoken, indication, harbinger, forewarning, premonition, foreshadowing, writing on the wall, prognostic, presage: Solar eclipses were once regarded as omens, sometimes good, sometimes bad.

ominous adj. 1 foreboding, threatening, fateful, dark, black, gloomy, lowering or louring, menacing, sinister; unpropitious, unfavourable, ill-omened, ill-starred, unpromising, star-crossed, inauspicious: With ominous solemnity, the judge placed a black cloth square on his head before passing the death sentence. 2 minatory, warning, admonitory, cautionary: The whispering had taken on ominous overtones. 3 portentous, prophetic, oracular, vaticinal, predictive, prognostic, augural, mantic, sibyllic, meaningful, premonitory, foreshadowing, foretelling, foretokening, indicative: Virtually everything was regarded as ominous in ancient times.

omission n. 1 non-inclusion, omitting, leaving out or off, excluding, eliminating, dropping, skipping; exclusion, exception, deletion, elimination, excision: The omission of your name from the list was a mistake. Allowing for inadvertent omissions, the inventory is complete. 2 failure, default, neglect, dereliction, oversight, shortcoming, negligence: She is being punished for her innocent omission in failing to notify the police while he is at liberty despite his deliberate commission of a crime.

omit v. 1 leave out, exclude, skip, except, pass over; delete, erase, cancel, eradicate, edit out, strike (out), dele, cut (out), cross out, obliterate: She was offended because he omitted any mention of all that she had contributed. 2 neglect, disregard, fail, forget, overlook, let slide, ignore: I omitted to tell you that your sister telephoned yesterday.

once adv. 1 once upon a time, formerly, (at) one time, on a former occasion, previously, before, in days gone by, in olden days, in the (good) old days, long ago, some time ago, years or ages or aeons ago, in days of yore: Your hair is as long as mine once was. He was once a famous film star. That once revered leader has fallen. 2 one time, on one occasion, a single time: He has visited his family only once in all these years. 3 once and for all. finally, positively, definitely, decidedly, conclusively, for good: We must settle the itinerary once and for all before we can make the bookings. 4 once in a while. occasionally, (every) now and then, now and again, at times, sometimes, periodically, from time to time, at intervals, sporadically: We go to the theatre once in a while.

--conj. 5 (if) ever, as soon as, at any time: Once the bus comes, you'd best get on it straight away.

--n. 6 at once. a immediately, straight away, right away, directly, without delay, promptly, instantly, post-haste; in a wink, in the twinkling of an eye, in a minute or moment or second or split second, in no time (at all), before you can turn around, before you can say 'Jack Robinson', in a trice, Colloq in a jiffy, in two shakes of a lamb's tail: Watson, come here at once. I'll be there at once. b together, at the same time, simultaneously, at a stroke, in the same instant, in the same breath, Colloq at one go, at a go, in one go: You cannot be in two places at once.

oncoming adj. 1 advancing, arriving, coming, nearing, approaching, onrushing, imminent: He swerved and just managed to avoid the oncoming lorry.

--n. 2 onset, beginning, nearing, arrival, advance, approach: With the oncoming of spring, the birds returned.

one adj. 1 single, lone, solitary, individual, sole, only: The one time I kissed Margie it was heaven. 2 unified, united, inseparable, joined, undivided, one and the same, identical, equal, at one, harmonious, in unison, whole, entire, complete: When he went into a trance, he felt one with his God. 3 a particular, a certain, a given, a specific: I recall one occasion when she brought all her dogs into work.

--pron. 4 a person, an individual, a man or a woman, everybody, everyone, anybody, anyone; people; Possibly offensive man: One ought to treat others as one would like to be treated. One cannot be too careful these days.

--n. 5 joke, story, anecdote, chestnut, one-liner; limerick, rhyme, ditty, song; bromide: Have you heard the one that begins, 'There was a young man from Loch Ness'?

one-sided adj. 1 partial, biased, partisan, prejudiced, bigoted, unfair, unjust, inequitable, close-minded, narrow-minded, intolerant: His is a one-sided view of the problem. 2 lopsided, unbalanced, unequal, unequalized, uneven, disproportionate, Slang cock-eyed: The swelling on his left cheek made Tom's face look very one-sided. 3 unilateral, independent, exclusionary, exclusive: They made a one-sided decision to halt production of nuclear weapons.

ongoing adj. 1 continuing, continued, continuous, continual, ceaseless, unbroken, uninterrupted, constant, perpetual, non-stop, relentless, persistent, unending, endless, interminable, running: There has been an ongoing dispute with the museum over the authenticity of the sculpture. 2 developing, evolving, growing, successive, unfolding, progressing, progressive: Rather than come to a hasty decision, we decided to monitor ongoing developments.

onlooker n. spectator, observer, looker-on, eyewitness, witness, watcher, viewer; bystander, passer-by: She was merely an onlooker, not a participant. Onlookers reported that the driver had run away from the accident.

only adj. 1 sole, single, solitary, lone, one and only, exclusive: He is the only one who can identify the murderer.

--adv. 2 solely, just, exclusively, alone: He has a face that only a mother could love. They have been here only twice. She gets her own way only because she has a tantrum if anyone crosses her. Harry was correct in one respect only. 3 merely, simply, barely, at best, at worst, at most, just, purely, not or no more than, not or no greater than: She is only seventeen. I received your note only today. Don't get excited, it's only a small present.

--conj. 4 but, however, on the other hand, on the contrary, contrariwise: The flowers are lovely, only they have no scent.

onset   n. 1 attack, assault, onrush, onslaught, charge, strike, hit, raid, storming, sally, sortie: These troops had to bear the brunt of the onset. 2 beginning, start, outset, initiation, inauguration, commencement, inception, dawn, birth, origin, genesis, appearance, debut: We must leave before the onset of the monsoon season. The sudden onset of a new policy will throw the ministers into a panic.

onward   adj. forward, advancing, progressive, progressing, moving onward or forward: They resumed their onward march, laying waste to the countryside as they went.

onwards   adv. onward, forwards or forward, ahead, in front, on, forth: They marched onwards through the dismal valley. From this day onwards afternoon visiting hours will be from two to four o'clock.

15.12 ooze

=-

ooze   n. 1 slime, muck, mud, mire, silt, sludge, sediment, slush, Colloq goo, gunk, guck, Slang US glop, goop: I stepped into the bog and the ooze rose over the tops of my shoes.

--v. 2 exude, weep, seep, secrete, bleed, leak, drain, trickle; emit, discharge: Sap continues to ooze from the gash in the tree.

15.13 opacity...

=-

opacity   n. 1 opaqueness, darkness, murkiness, dimness, obscurity, impermeability, impenetrability: The opacity of the lens increases automatically in the presence of sunlight. 2 obscurity, density, impenetrability, unintelligibility, indefiniteness, vagueness, reconditeness, abstruseness, ambiguity, equivocation, mystification: For centuries scientists were unable to penetrate the opacity of the question of what occurred when substances burned. 3 stupidity, dullness, denseness, thickness, obtuseness: A light finally dawned through the thick opacity of his brain.

opalescent
adj. opaline, iridescent, nacreous, pearly, lustrous: The sea was opalescent in the moonlight.

opaque adj. 1 dark, murky, dim, turbid, muddy, cloudy, obscure, obscured, obfuscated, black, impermeable, impenetrable, clouded, non-transparent, untransparent, non-translucent, hazy, blurred, blurry, smoky: Solar eclipses should be viewed directly only through special opaque glass. 2 unclear, vague, indefinite, obscure, unfathomable, unplumbable, baffling, mystifying, ambiguous, equivocal, impenetrable, cryptic, enigmatic, puzzling, perplexing, mysterious, elusive, abstruse, arcane, recondite: Despite years of study, the inscriptions on the tomb have remained opaque to scholars. 3 unintelligent, dense, thick, dull, obtuse, stupid, dull-witted, stolid, thickheaded, dunderheaded, dunderpated, slow, doltish, backward, cloddish: He was too opaque to notice the jeers of his colleagues.

open adj. 1 ajar, gaping, agape, unfastened, unlocked, unbarred, unbolted, unlatched, unclosed: Come on in - the door is open. 2 yawning, agape, uncovered, revealed, unsealed, exposed, bare: Her uncle escaped by hiding for three nights in an open grave. 3 unwrapped, unsealed, unfastened: The package was open and the contents gone. 4 free, accessible, public, available; obtainable; unrestricted, unobstructed, unencumbered or unincumbered, unimpeded, unhindered, unhampered, unregulated, unconditional, unqualified: The parks are open to all. We were allowed open access to the library stacks. 5 unprotected, unenclosed, unsheltered, bare; uncovered, exposed: They spent a week in an open boat before being rescued. The roof can be retracted, leaving the interior completely open to the sky. 6 unsettled, unagreed, unsigned, unsealed, unclinched, unestablished, unconcluded, undecided, pending: As far as I am concerned, the deal is open till the contract is signed. 7 undecided, unsettled, unresolved, debatable, arguable, problematic, moot, US up in the air: Whether they should get married is a question that will remain open until he returns from abroad. 8 unscheduled, unbooked, unspoken for, unreserved, uncommitted, free, unpromised: The doctor has an hour open at noon on Friday. 9 clear, unobstructed, wide open, uncluttered, roomy, spacious, extensive, expansive; treeless, uncrowded, unfenced, unenclosed; ice-free, navigable, unblocked, passable: We travelled through open country for days. In the spring the shipping lanes will again be open. 10 available, unfilled, vacant, untaken: There are not many jobs open in this part of the country. 11 receptive, open-minded, flexible, amenable, persuasible or persuadable, pliant, willing, responsive: The management is open to suggestions for improving its products and services. 12 exposed, public, well-known, widely known, unconcealed: That they are living together is an open secret. 13 evident, obvious, conspicuous, manifest, clear, unconcealed, unequivocal, plain, palpable, apparent, patent, downright, out and out, blatant, flagrant, glaring, brazen: He operates with open disregard for the law. 14 generous, liberal, charitable, unreserved, open-handed, liberal, munificent, magnanimous, big-hearted, beneficent, bounteous, unselfish, unstinting, humanitarian, altruistic: They are quite open when it comes to giving to charity. 15 unreserved, candid, frank, outspoken, straightforward, forthright, direct, honest, sincere, guileless, artless, fair: He found it difficult to be open with his wife. 16 free, unrestrained, unconstrained, uninhibited, unreserved, unrestricted: They have an open marriage, each aware of the other's affairs. 17 unfolded, extended, spread (out), outstretched, outspread: She ran into my open arms. 18 liable, subject, susceptible, exposed, inclined, predisposed, disposed: These fraudulent shipping documents may well leave the captain open to prosecution for barratry. 19 unprotected, undefended, unfortified, exposed: With the invaders at the gates, Paris was declared an open city.

--v. 20 begin, start, initiate, commence, get under way, inaugurate, launch, put in or into operation, activate, get going, set in motion; establish, set up; Colloq get or start the ball rolling, get or put the show on the road, kick off: The minister opened the proceedings with an interminable speech. Jeremy is planning to open a restaurant in Pebble Lane. The show opens in Manchester next week. 21 unlock, unbar, unlatch, unbolt, unfasten; uncover; uncork, unseal; undo, untie, unwrap; pull out: Open the door. Open the box. Open the bottle. Open your present. He opened the drawer. 22 unblock, clear, unobstruct, unclog, unstop: They had to dig up the yard to open the drain. The new law has opened the way for increased exports. 23 disclose, unveil, uncover, expose, display, show, exhibit, reveal, divulge, bring to light, communicate, bring out, unbosom, explain, present, announce, release, publish, air, make known, advertise: The wonders of the language were opened to me by my first dictionary. 24 expand, spread (out), stretch out, open up or out, unfurl, extend: The flag opened to the breeze. 25 present, offer, furnish, provide, afford, yield, reveal, uncover, raise, contribute, introduce: Expansion of technology opens new business opportunities every day.

opening n. 1 break, breach, rent, rift, cleft, crack, crevice, fissure, cranny, chink, pit, gap, split, slit, slot, aperture, hole, orifice, separation: Flowers grew from openings in the wall. 2 opportunity, chance, occasion, toe-hold, foothold, Colloq break, toe or foot in the door, Brit look-in: I was waiting for an appropriate opening to make my presentation. 3 job, position, opportunity, vacancy: Is there likely to be an opening in the art department of your company? 4 beginning, commencement, start, birth, origin, outset, onset, inauguration, launch, send-off, initiation, presentation, debut; vernissage, US start-off, start-up: The opening of the autumn social season was marked by Malcolm's birthday party. Aren't you going to the opening at the museum tonight?

openly adv. 1 brazenly, brashly, flagrantly, unabashedly, unashamedly, unreservedly, boldly, audaciously, flauntingly: She has openly defied the direct orders of her employer. 2 frankly, unreservedly, plainly, forthrightly, candidly, directly, outright, freely, outspokenly: The man admitted openly that he had stolen the plans for the missile.

operable adj. workable, practicable, serviceable, usable, functional, fit, operational, in working order or condition: Aircraft engines that rely on oxygen for burning fuel are not operable where the air is too thin.

operate v. 1 go, run, perform; work, function, serve, act: This watch operates even under water. The drug operates to reduce blood pressure. 2 manage, run, direct, conduct, control, carry on, ply, manipulate, handle; US drive: Katherine has been operating as an antiques dealer for years. It is unsafe to operate this machinery without goggles.

operation n. 1 function, functioning, working, running, performance, action, motion, movement: The operation of the internal combustion engine is very simple. 2 manipulation, handling, direction, running, control, management, managing; manoeuvring: The operation of the aircraft is under the control of the captain. 3 undertaking, enterprise, venture, project, affair, deal, procedure, proceeding, (day-to-day) business, transaction: Who will be in charge of the operation while the president is abroad? 4 Often, operations. action, manoeuvre, mission, task, campaign, exercise: The generals directed military operations from positions close to enemy lines. 5 in or into operation. functioning, operative, in effect, in force, operating, operational, functional, effective, efficacious: Is the factory in operation yet? The new regulations went into operation last week.

operative adj. 1 See operation, 5, above.

--n. 2 worker, hand, employee; craftsman, craftswoman, artisan, mechanic, machinist: We hired two more lathe operatives today. 3 private detective, (private) investigator, Colloq private eye, sleuth, Brit sleuth-hound, US P.I., gumshoe, Slang (private) dick, US shamus, eye: Our operatives reported that Jones had been seen in the company of a known enemy agent. 4 espionage or intelligence agent, counter-espionage or counter-intelligence agent, spy, counter-spy, undercover agent or man, (FBI or CIA) agent, US G-man, Colloq US company man, member of the firm: We had an operative at the top level of the NKVD.

operator n. 1 (bus or taxi or train) driver; worker, operative, manipulator, practitioner: These operators are required to take safety courses. 2 director, administrator, manager, supervisor, superintendent: Shaughnessey is the operator of a roofing business in Tring. 3 machinator, faker, fraud, manipulator, manoeuvrer, Colloq finagler, wise guy, Slang smooth or slick operator, smoothie, wheeler-dealer, big-shot, big-time operator, Chiefly US and Canadian big wheel: Claude is a cunning operator who always gets what he goes after.

opinion n. 1 belief, judgement, thought, sentiment, (point of) view, viewpoint, conviction, way of thinking, perception, idea, impression, notion, conception, theory, id‚e re‡u; mind: It is my opinion that sickness benefits ought to be increased. In her opinion all men are chauvinists. 2 evaluation, estimation, estimate, appraisal, appreciation, impression: Myra has a very low opinion of Ray's taste in architecture.

opinionated
adj. 1 stubborn, pigheaded, obstinate, doctrinaire, inflexible, dogmatic, single-minded, cocksure, obdurate, dictatorial, dogged, mulish, bull-headed, overbearing: Felix is too opinionated to change his mind even if he knows he is wrong. 2 prejudiced, biased, bigoted, one-sided, jaundiced, coloured, partial, partisan: You can count on Joan for an opinionated view of social values.

opponent n. antagonist, adversary, disputant, contestant, competitor, contender, rival, foe, enemy; the opposition: He may be my opponent in the chess competition, but we are the best of friends.

opportune adj. 1 favourable, advantageous, auspicious, good, felicitous, happy, propitious, beneficial, helpful, fortunate, lucky, profitable: As I need money, and you have it to invest, our meeting is most opportune. 2 timely, well-timed, seasonable, apt, appropriate, germane, pertinent, convenient, fitting, suitable, becoming: If this is not an opportune time to bring up the matter of the money you owe me, just say so.

opportunistic
adj. expedient, selfish, taking advantage, exploitive or exploitative, unprincipled, Machiavellian, opportunist: Don't you agree that it was opportunistic of him to inform on his own brother for a reward?

opportunity
n. chance, occasion, opening, possibility, moment, time, Slang break: She has taken advantage of every opportunity to vilify her ex-employers.

oppose v. 1 resist, counter, object (to), defy, take a stand against, withstand, resist, combat, contest, attack, counter-attack, fight, grapple with, contend with or against: If it comes to that, we must oppose force with force. 2 check, bar, obstruct, block, hinder, impede, stop, slow, curb, restrain, inhibit, interfere with, restrict, prevent, obviate, preclude, thwart, foil, frustrate: Labour seeks to oppose the privatization of industry. 3 match, offset, counterbalance, contrast, pit or set against, play off (against), set off: What can they call upon to oppose the power of the Devil?

opposed adj. Often, opposed to. against, in opposition (to), opposing, in conflict (with), antipathetic, conflicting, contrary (to), at variance (with), antithetical (to), hostile (to), inimical (to), opposite (to), contrasting: Harvey is among those opposed to abortion. All those who are opposed to the motion raise your hands.

opposing adj. opposite, conflicting, contrary, antithetical, antagonistic, antipathetic, hostile, inimical, contrasting, rival, contradictory, incompatible, irreconcilable, dissident, discrepant: Those with opposing views will be heard from later.

opposite adj. 1 facing, vis-…-vis, en face: The sniper was on the roof of the building opposite. 2 opposing, conflicting, contrary, contrasting, contradictory, antithetical, differing, different, divergent, diverse, antagonistic, inconsistent, irreconcilable: William and his wife hold diametrically opposite political views.

--n. 3 reverse, converse, contrary, antithesis: Whatever you tell teenagers to do, their first reaction is to do the opposite.

opposition

n. 1 hostility, antagonism, unfriendliness, resistance, counteraction, disapproval, objection, conflict, defiance, contrast, antipathy, adversity, Colloq flak: There is strong opposition to plans for an amusement arcade. 2 competition, opponent, adversary, competitor, antagonist, enemy, foe, rival, other side: We must overcome the opposition in order to win. 3 in opposition. competing, competitive, antagonistic, hostile, conflicting, in conflict, antithetic(al), opposed, at daggers drawn, in deadly embrace: Although they agree on some points, the parties are in opposition on others.

oppress v. 1 burden, afflict, trouble, weigh down, overload, encumber, wear (down), press, weary, overburden, overwhelm, Brit pressurize, US pressure: He was oppressed by the heavy burden of responsibility. 2 crush, repress, put down, suppress, subjugate, tyrannize (over), subdue, overpower, enslave, persecute, maltreat, abuse, harry, harass, trample underfoot, ride roughshod over: The Russian serfs had been oppressed for centuries before they finally rose up against tyranny.

oppression

n. repression, suppression, subjugation, subjection, tyranny, despotism, enslavement, persecution, maltreatment, abuse, torment, torture, hardship, injury, pain, anguish, injustice: People who have not known oppression cannot imagine the agonies suffered by the oppressed who once were free.

oppressive

adj. 1 burdensome, overpowering, overwhelming, onerous, heavy, cumbersome, exhausting, racking, unbearable, intolerable, agonizing, unendurable, harsh, brutal, severe, tyrannical, repressive; dispiriting, depressing, disheartening, discouraging, grievous, distressing, dolorous, miserable, harrowing, wretched: The conquerors resorted to oppressive measures to keep the people subjugated. 2 suffocating, stifling, stuffy, close, airless, unventilated, uncomfortable: The atmosphere in the tiny cell quickly became oppressive, and a couple of people fainted.

oppressor n. bully, tyrant, taskmaster, taskmistress, despot, autocrat, persecutor, slave-driver, dictator, overlord, iron hand, scourge, tormentor, torturer, intimidator: The citizens finally banded together and overthrew their oppressors.

optimistic

adj. sanguine, positive, cheerful, buoyant, bright, hopeful, expectant, confident, bullish, idealistic, Pollyannaish: We have every reason to be optimistic that the venture will succeed.

optimum n. 1 best, finest, most favourable, ideal, perfection, model, paragon, exemplar: In all work, the optimum is difficult to achieve.

--adj. 2 best, finest, most favourable, ideal, perfect, choicest, optimal, first-rate, first-class, sterling, prime, capital, excellent, exceptional, superlative, extraordinary, unique, peerless, unequalled, unexcelled, unsurpassed: These instruments keep the chamber at the optimum temperature. After months of training, Guy is in optimum condition to win the marathon.

option   n. 1 choice, selection, alternative, recourse, opportunity, way out: There are fewer employment options open to the uneducated. 2 choice, privilege, election, opportunity, chance: Investors pay for the option to buy at a fixed figure if the price of the shares goes up.

optional adj. voluntary, discretionary or discretional, elective, facultative, free, spontaneous, uncoerced, unforced, non-compulsory, uncompulsory, non-mandatory, unmandatory, non-requisite, unrequisite: Life insurance is optional for those who have our hospitalization policy.

opulent   adj. 1 wealthy, affluent, rich, prosperous, well-to-do, well off, comfortable, Colloq flush, well-heeled, loaded, rolling in it, made of money, in clover, on Easy Street, Brit on velvet, US in velvet, in the chips: Timothy was fortunate in having met and wed an opulent widow. 2 luxurious, lavish, sumptuous: That poor little rich girl was raised in the most opulent of surroundings. 3 abundant, copious, bountiful, plentiful, prolific, profuse, plenteous: We enjoyed a most opulent harvest this year.

opus   n. work, composition, production, oeuvre, creation; magnum opus: Her most important opus will be performed at the Albert Hall next week.

15.14 oracle...
=-

oracle   n. 1 prophet, sibyl, seer, soothsayer, augur, fortune-teller, diviner, prognosticator, US reader (and adviser or advisor), Cassandra, Nostradamus; authority, guru, mastermind, mentor, wizard: He insists on consulting his oracle before making any final decision. 2 prophecy, augury, prediction, divination, advice, prognostication, answer, message, divine utterance: According to the oracle, the travellers would survive the perils of the journey.

oral adj. spoken, said, verbal, uttered, voiced, vocal, vocalized, enunciated, pronounced, articulated, word-of-mouth, viva voce: Tomorrow James must make an oral presentation of his plan to the entire staff.

oration n. speech, declaration, address, lecture, recitation, discourse, monologue, declamation; valedictory, eulogy, homily, panegyric; Colloq spiel: Bentley delivered a long oration on the future of the economy.

oratory n. public speaking, speech-making, eloquence, rhetoric, way with words, command of the language, fluency, glibness, grandiloquence, magniloquence, declamation; elocution, diction, enunciation, articulation, address; Colloq gift of the gab: The crowds who thronged to hear Churchill's oratory were seldom disappointed.

orb n. sphere, ball, globe: The golden orb of the sun sank into the sea.

orbit n. 1 circuit, course, path, track, revolution, circle, round, cycle: The earth's orbit round the sun is elliptical.

--v. 2 revolve, go round, circle, encircle, turn: The earth orbits the sun in a year. Electrons orbit the nucleus of an atom.

ordeal n. trial, test, tribulation(s), hardship, affliction, trouble(s), suffering, distress, anguish, nightmare, misery, grief, misfortune, adversity, tragedy, disaster: She never fully recovered from her ordeal at the hands of the kidnappers.

order n. 1 organization, arrangement, grouping, disposition, form, structure, categorization, systematization or systemization, classification, codification, disposal, layout, array, sequence, Colloq set-up: The order of the library is of crucial importance if we are to find anything. 2 organization, uniformity, regularity, system, pattern, symmetry, harmony, tidiness, orderliness, neatness: Some believe that there is an order of things in the universe, others that the universe tends to chaos. 3 category, class, caste, level, kind, sort, rank, group, scale, importance, hierarchy, position, status, degree, Colloq pecking order: Gregory's musical talents are of a very high order. 4 command, direction, directive, instruction, commandment, dictate, mandate, edict, behest, request, demand, ukase, decree, fiat, proclamation, pronouncement, pronunciamento; rule, regulation, law, ordinance, statute, requirement: The police have issued an order to surrender all hand guns. 5 procedure, proceeding(s), discipline, conduct: The order of the meeting was breached by some rowdies. 6 condition, state (of affairs): Please leave everything in the order in which you found it. 7 purchase order, request, requisition, commitment, commission, instruction: We received a large order for office furniture. 8 calm, peace, peacefulness, tranquillity, quiet, serenity, law and order, discipline, lawfulness: After a brief commotion, order was restored. 9 brotherhood, fraternity, sisterhood, sorority, fellowship, sodality, association, organization, society, guild, sect, company, community, lodge, body, knighthood: One of her ancestors was a Knight of the Teutonic Order. 10 in order. a neat, clean, tidy, shipshape, orderly, (well-)organized, ready, prepared, arranged: Is everything in order for the wedding tomorrow? b fitting, suitable, appropriate, correct, right, apt, called-for; required, demanded, needed: I think that an apology is in order for the way you behaved. 11 in order that. so (that), with the aim or purpose that, to the end that: We invited him in order that you might meet him. 12 in order to. to, for the purpose of: In order to get there, you have to drive up the hill. 13 out of order. a disordered, non-sequential, out of sequence, non-alphabetical, disorganized, unorganized, in disorder: The cards in this catalogue are out of order and I cannot find anything. b unseemly, out of place, improper, uncalled-for, unsuitable, indecorous, Colloq chiefly Brit not cricket: Your remark about her religion was completely out of order. c out of commission, broken, in disrepair, non-functioning, non-functional, not working, broken-down, inoperative, out of kilter or Brit also kelter, Colloq (gone) haywire, kaput, bust(ed), US out of whack, on the fritz, shot; Slang on the blink, Brit wonky, gone phut: The telly is out of order again.

--v. 14 direct, command, instruct, charge, tell, bid, require, enjoin; demand, ordain; force, make: The sergeant ordered the men to run around the drill field with full packs. The council ordered that garden rubbish should be packed in special bags. 15 requisition, ask for, send (away) for, call for, apply for, reserve, engage, commission, contract for; purchase, buy: Have you ordered breakfast for tomorrow? Let's order a take-away from the Chinese restaurant. 16 organize, systematize, arrange, classify, categorize, codify, lay out, sort (out), straighten (out or up): The bottles were ordered in neat rows along the wall.

orderly adj. 1 in (good) order, (well-)organized, neat, shipshape, tidy, arranged, methodical, systematic, systematized or systemized, harmonious, symmetrical, regular, uniform: Before you leave, make sure that your room is orderly. 2 well-behaved, disciplined, decorous, law-abiding, well-mannered, peaceable, tranquil, mannerly, polite, courteous, civil, civilized, non-violent: Everyone left the burning theatre in an orderly fashion.

--n. 3 assistant, adjutant, attendant, messenger; menial, servant; nurse's aide; Brit military batman; US candystriper; Slang US and Canadian gofer: An orderly arrived with dispatches from the general. She has a job as a hospital orderly.

ordinarily
adv. usually, normally, as a rule, commonly, generally, in general, customarily, routinely, typically, habitually, by and large, for the most part: Ellie is ordinarily at her desk by nine o'clock.

ordinary adj. 1 usual, normal, expected, common, general, customary, routine, typical, habitual, accustomed, traditional, regular, everyday, familiar, set, humdrum: This wine is quite good for ordinary drinking. Just display ordinary good manners when you meet the queen. 2 common, conventional, modest, plain, simple, prosaic, homespun, commonplace, run-of-the-mill, everyday, average, unpretentious, workaday, mediocre, fair, passable, so so, undistinguished, unexceptional, unremarkable, uninspired, pedestrian, bourgeois, peasant, provincial, unrefined, Colloq

Brit common or garden, US common-or-garden variety, garden-variety: They bought a rather ordinary house in an inferior neighbourhood.

--n. 3 standard, norm, average, status quo, convention, expected: Saint-Gaudens' architectural designs are far from the ordinary. 4 out of the ordinary. extraordinary, unusual, uncommon, strange, unfamiliar, different, unexpected, unconventional, curious, eccentric, peculiar, rare, exceptional, original, singular, unique, odd, bizarre, weird, offbeat, outlandish, striking, quaint, picturesque: She was looking for a gift that was a little out of the ordinary, so I suggested a pet tarantula.

organ n. 1 device, instrument, implement, tool; member, part, element, unit, component, structure, Technical process: The eye, come to think of it, is a truly miraculous organ. 2 medium, vehicle, voice, mouthpiece, forum, publication, paper, magazine, newsletter, house organ, newspaper, annual, semi-annual, quarterly, monthly, fortnightly, weekly, hebdomadal, daily, journal, periodical: The official organ of the Society is published in Abergavenny.

organic adj. 1 living, natural, biological, biotic, animate, breathing: Though coal may seem to be a mineral, it is organic, for it was formed from plants. 2 basic, elementary, essential, innate, inborn, natural, native, ingrained, primary, fundamental, visceral, constitutional, inherent, structural, integral: The organic differences between the styles of writing are obvious. 3 organized, systematic, coherent, coordinated, integrated, structured, methodical, orderly, consistent: The various elements of the painting blend into an organic whole.

organism n. living thing, structure, body; being, creature: It is the work of natural scientists to classify all kinds of organisms.

organization

n. 1 organizing, structuring, assembling, assembly, putting together, coordination, systematizing, systematization, classifying, classification, categorizing, categorization, codifying, codification: The organization of the school timetable took hours to complete. 2 structure, pattern, configuration, design, plan, scheme, order, system, organism, composition, arrangement, constitution, make-up, grouping, framework, format, form, shape: One must consider the organization as a whole, not merely its constituent elements. 3 body, system, institution, federation, confederacy, confederation, society, group, league, coalition, conglomerate, combine, consortium, syndicate, organism: The organization is a coherent structure made up of an enormous number of disparate elements.

organize v. 1 structure, coordinate, systematize, systemize, order, arrange, sort (out), classify, categorize, codify, catalogue, group, tabulate, pigeon-hole, standardize: These files ought to be organized so that you can find something when you need it. 2 form, found, set up, establish, institute, start, begin, create, originate, initiate, put together, build, develop, US pull together: In 1969, we organized a company to publish reference books.

orgy   n. 1 bacchanalia, bacchanal, Saturnalia, Dionysia, debauch, carousal, carouse, spree, revel, party, Colloq binge, bender, drunk, bust, Slang jag, US and Canadian toot, tear: The journalist represented the earl's party as a wild orgy. 2 overindulgence, splurge, spree, fling, Slang US bender: Trying to lift himself out of depression, Roger went on a spending orgy.

orient   n. 1 east: Harriet is in the orient on business.

--adj. 2 Literary oriental, eastern: The grass was sown with orient pearls.

--v. 3 adjust, adapt, acclimatize or acclimate, habituate, accommodate, condition, accustom, familiarize, feel one's way, assess, get one's bearings, Colloq orientate: It is a new job and she needs a few days to orient herself.

orientation

n. 1 placement, bearings, attitude, alignment, lie, placing, situation, layout, location, position, positioning, arrangement, set-up: The orientation of the buildings is such that the windows face south. 2 introduction, training, initiation, briefing, familiarization, assimilation, acclimatization, preparation, instruction: The orientation of the new employees is scheduled for next week. We were given orientation lectures.

origin n. 1 source, derivation, rise, fountain-head, foundation, basis, base, well-spring, fount, provenance, Chiefly US provenience: The origins of many English words are unknown. 2 creation, genesis, birth, birthplace, cradle, dawning, dawn, origination, start, beginning, commencement, outset, launch, launching, inception, inauguration: The origin of the notion of democracy can be traced to ancient Greece. 3 Often, origins. parentage, ancestry, extraction, descent, lineage, pedigree, genealogy, stock, heritage: We have traced our family's origins back to the Middle Ages.

original adj. 1 initial, first, earliest, primary, beginning, starting, basic: The original report made no mention of any missing jewellery. 2 native, indigenous, autochthonous, aboriginal, primordial, primeval, primitive: At first, we could find only slight traces of the original inhabitants. 3 master, actual, primary, authentic, true, genuine, real, basic; prototypic(al), archetypal, source: I have the original document and my lawyer has a copy. 4 creative, novel, innovative, unique, imaginative, unusual, inventive, ingenious; firsthand, fresh, underived, unprecedented: The film is based on a highly original story by Daphne du Maurier. The author has some original insights into Hamlet's relationship with Ophelia.

--n. 5 prototype, archetype, source, model, pattern; master: The original hangs in the National Gallery. 6 eccentric, nonconformist, individualist, Colloq case, card, character, Brit queer fish: True to his reputation as an original, Wilde sauntered down the Strand with a lily in his hand.

originality

n. creativeness, creativity, inventiveness, ingenuity, innovativeness, innovation, novelty, newness, unorthodoxy, unconventionality, cleverness, daring, resourcefulness, independence, individuality, uniqueness, nonconformity: One must admire Dali for his originality.

originally

adv. in or at or from the beginning, (at) first, from the first, initially, to begin with, at or from the outset, at or from the start, in the first place or instance, Colloq from the word go, from day one: Originally, we were to have gone in Patrick's car.

originate v. 1 create, bring about, engender, give birth to, beget, conceive, initiate, inaugurate, start, begin, introduce, launch, found, set up, institute, establish, invent, coin, devise, pioneer, design, contrive, concoct, mastermind, compose, organize, formulate, form, generate, produce, develop, evolve: Wasn't it the Chinese who originated free public health schemes? 2 arise, rise, begin, start, come, spring, stem, flow, issue, emerge, emanate, proceed, grow, develop, evolve, derive, result: Where did the idea of the democratic form of government originate?

ornament n. 1 enhancement, embellishment, adornment, decoration, ornamentation, gingerbread, trimming, garnish, garnishment, frill, embroidery, beautification, accessory; frippery; knick-knack, furbelow, bauble, gewgaw, Slang US tchotchke: We spent a pleasant afternoon putting ornaments on the Christmas tree. The ornaments on the mantelpiece needed dusting.

--v. 2 decorate, embellish, enhance, adorn, trim, garnish, embroider, elaborate, beautify, accessorize, deck (out), dress up: The cabinet is ornamented with ormolu fittings in the Empire style.

ornamental
adj. decorative, beautifying, adorning, garnishing, embellishing: Nothing in the house is ornamental, everything is functional.

ornate adj. elaborate, florid, overdone, laboured, rococo, baroque, gingerbread, arabesque, fancy, lavish, rich, flowery, busy, fussy, frilly, intricate; high-flown, euphuistic, Ossianic, bombastic, pompous, pretentious, affected, grandiose, fulsome, highfalutin or hifalutin, grandiloquent, flamboyant: Louis Quinze style is far too ornate for my tastes. We find his writing, with its contorted artificialities, far too ornate to appeal to the modern reader.

orthodox adj. conformist, accepted, authoritative, authorized, recognized, received, official, standard, prevailing, prevalent, common, regular, popular, ordinary, doctrinal, established, traditional, traditionalist, accustomed, conventional, customary, conservative: The orthodox view is that he was killed by an assassin acting on his own.

15.15 oscillate...
=-

oscillate v. fluctuate, vibrate, waver, see-saw, swing, sway; vacillate, equivocate, shilly-shally, hem and haw, tergiversate: The needle is oscillating between the 'Safe' and 'Danger' marks. I wish he'd stop oscillating and make up his mind.

ostensibly
adv. outwardly, externally, superficially, patently, ostensively, demonstrably, apparently, evidently, seemingly; clearly, plainly, manifestly, conspicuously, obviously, patently, noticeably, prominently: Ostensibly, he was visiting his aunt, but we all know he went to see Stella.

ostentation
n. show, display, exhibition, exhibitionism, showing off, pretension, pretentiousness, flaunting, flashiness, flourish, flamboyance, parade, window-dressing: His clothes are elegant without ostentation.

ostentatious
adj. showy, boastful, braggart, vaunting, vain, vainglorious, flaunting, pretentious, flamboyant, theatrical, Colloq flash: It's terribly ostentatious of Lady Penny to wear her diamond tiara to the disco.

ostracize v. blackball, blacklist, banish, exile, boycott, isolate, segregate, exclude, excommunicate, snub, shun, avoid, Chiefly Brit send to Coventry, Colloq cut, cold-shoulder, give (someone) the cold shoulder: Marcus has been ostracized at the club ever since the court case.

15.16 otherwise
=-

otherwise adv. 1 if not, or else, under other circumstances, in another situation, on the other hand: I learned something about you tonight that otherwise I should never have guessed. 2 differently, in another manner or way: You may travel unless the doctor advises otherwise.

15.17 out...
=-

out adv. 1 outside, outdoors, in or into the open air: If you go out take an umbrella. 2 away (from), abroad, elsewhere, not (at) home, gone (from), gone away (from), absent (from): She was out of the house when I phoned. 3 in or into the open, to or into public notice, for all to see, out of the closet: Everything will be brought out at the trial. 4 revealed, exposed, visible, discernible, manifest, in sight, in view: Are the stars out tonight? 5 short, minus, missing, in default, out of pocket: He is out the œ2000 he invested in a Welsh diamond mine. 6 free, at liberty, at large, loose, unconfined: They let Matilda out after she served her sentence. 7 completely, thoroughly, effectively, entirely: I was tired out after that long swim.

--adj. 8 unconscious, senseless, insensible, Colloq out cold, out like a light: He has been out for almost an hour. 9 dated, out-dated, out-moded, pass,, old-fashioned, antiquated, old hat, d,mod,, obsolete, unfashionable: Longer skirts were out in the mid-1960s. 10 outlying, distant, far-off, peripheral: He was planning to travel to the outer reaches of his empire. Let's sail to some of the out islands. 11 exhausted, gone, finished, ended; over, completed: Our food was out. Rescue came before the day was out. 12 inaccurate, incorrect, wrong, at fault, faulty, off, wide of the mark: Your figures are out by a factor of four. 13 unacceptable, forbidden, prohibited, not allowed, Colloq not on: Smoking is out in the dining room. 14 extinguished, unlit; off, doused; inoperative, non-functioning, out of order or commission, unserviceable, broken: Make certain that all camp-fires are completely out. The light is out in the corridor.

--n. 15 alibi, excuse, escape, loophole, evasion: She used your visit as an out to avoid calling on her mother.

out-and-out
adj. complete, unmitigated, unalloyed, undiluted, pure, utter, perfect, consummate, outright, total, downright, unqualified, thorough, thoroughgoing, through-and-through, dyed in the wool: She was an out-and-out fool to turn down his marriage proposal.

outburst n. outbreak, eruption, explosion, blow-up, flare-up, fulmination; upsurge, surge, outpouring, welling (forth), upwelling, outflow(ing), rush, flood, effusion, effluence or efflux; fit, access, attack, spasm, paroxysm, seizure, tantrum: Another outburst like that, young man, and you'll be sent home.

outcast n. pariah, exile, reject, persona non grata, leper, untouchable, expatriate, refugee, displaced person, DP, evacuee: In 1946, Europe swarmed with outcasts, the detritus of the war.

outcome n. result, consequence, end (result or product), after-effect, effect, upshot, sequel, development, outgrowth, aftermath, wake, follow-up, Medicine sequela (usually pl. sequelae), Colloq pay-off, bottom line: One outcome of the new safety regulations will be higher fares. We eagerly awaited the outcome of the race.

outcry n. protest, protestation, decrial, complaint, indignation, uproar, vociferation, clamour, clamouring, commotion, outburst, noise, hullabaloo, howl, howling, hoot, hooting, boo, booing, hiss, hissing: The public outcry against terrorism was heard round the world.

outdo v. exceed, surpass, excel, transcend, beat, outstrip, outshine, top, cap, trump, overcome, defeat, outweigh: Their prices are lower because they outdo us in cheapness of labour.

outdoor adj. outside, out of doors, alfresco, open-air: Both of them enjoy outdoor activities like hiking and bicycling.

outfit n. 1 gear, rig, equipment, equipage, apparatus, accoutrements or US also accouterments, paraphernalia, trappings, tackle, tack, utensils: His mountain-climbing outfit turned out to be extremely expensive. 2 clothes, costume, ensemble; attire, garb, clothing, dress; Colloq get-up, togs: She was wearing a very weird outfit that attracted a lot of stares. 3 firm, concern, business, organization, company, (military) unit, corporation; party, set, group; Colloq set-up: I joined the outfit when it consisted of only a hundred people.

--v. 4 fit (out or up), equip, kit out, provision, stock, accoutre or US also accouter, rig (out or up), supply, furnish: The shop is prepared to outfit anyone for anything from a walk in the country to an African safari or an Arctic expedition.

outgoing adj. 1 departing, retiring, ex-, former, past, emeritus, leaving, withdrawing: It is our custom to honour the outgoing president with a banquet. 2 genial, friendly, amiable, cordial, warm, expansive, approachable, affable, accessible, amenable, easygoing, amicable, sociable, congenial, extrovert, familiar, informal, communicative: Because of his outgoing attitude, Keith gets along well with most people.

outing n. jaunt, junket, excursion, trip, expedition, tour, ride, Colloq spin: This year, the annual church outing will again be to Torquay.

outlandish

adj. unfamiliar, strange, odd, queer, offbeat, peculiar, curious, exotic, foreign, alien, unknown, unheard-of, different, exceptional, extraordinary, quaint, eccentric, bizarre, outr,, weird, fantastic, unusual, singular, unique; freakish, grotesque, barbarous; Colloq far-out, camp(y), kinky: Those youngsters wear the most outlandish hair-dos you have ever seen.

outlast v. survive, outlive; outwear; weather: Considering her condition, it seems doubtful that she will outlast her husband.

outlaw n. 1 criminal, gangster, robber, desperado, bandit, highwayman, brigand, footpad, picaroon, pirate, fugitive (from justice or the law), renegade, US road-agent: In Westerns, the sheriff always wins out over the outlaws.

--v. 2 forbid, disallow, ban, interdict, bar, exclude, prohibit, proscribe: Some countries have outlawed prostitution, but with little effect.

outlay n. expense, cost, expenditure, spending, disbursement, payment: The city council refused to approve the outlay for a new swimming-pool.

outlet   n. 1 way out, exit, egress, loophole, relief, escape, escape hatch, vent, opening, release, safety-valve, discharge: There seemed to be no outlet for his anger but to throw the cushion at her. The main outlet of the Great Lakes is the St Lawrence river. 2 retailer, shop, store, market: The company is having difficulty finding outlets that will stock its products.

outline   n. 1 profile, silhouette, contour, periphery, boundary, footprint: This outline is of the desk area occupied by the keyboard and monitor. 2 pr,cis, synopsis, r,sum,, summary, digest, abstract, conspectus, survey, overview, run-down, recapitulation, review, (thumbnail) sketch, skeleton, (overall) plan, layout, framework, draft, scenario: O'Brien presented an outline of what his company planned to do after the take-over.

--v. 3 trace, draft, sketch, rough out, profile, block (out), plan (out), lay out, define, delineate: None of the divers was particularly enthusiastic about the procedure outlined for bringing up the wreckage.

outlook   n. 1 view, position, point of view, viewpoint, prospect, perspective, slant, angle, standpoint, attitude, opinion: His outlook on the situation in the Middle East is bound to be somewhat biased. 2 prospect, forecast, expectation(s): What is the outlook for the value of the pound sterling over the next year?

outlying adj. distant, far-off, far-flung, outer, outermost, out-of-the-way, remote, far-away, peripheral, furthest or farthest: In those days it took weeks for the news to reach the outlying parts of the empire.

out-of-the-way

adj. 1 untravelled, unfrequented, isolated, lonely, outlying, obscure, hidden, secluded, inaccessible: She now lives in some out-of-the-way village in the Himalayas. 2 unusual, odd, peculiar, extraordinary, far-fetched, remarkable, outr,, exceptional, outlandish, strange, rare, uncommon, exotic, unheard-of, unconventional, queer, weird, bizarre: His latest book is a treatise on some out-of-the-way subject.

outpouring

n. effusion, outflow, flow, outburst, flood, deluge, torrent, spate, emanation, spouting, spurt, gushing, efflux, effluence, outrush, tide, cascade, cataract, Niagara, Technical debouchment: We scarcely expected such an outpouring of grief at her death. This writing appears to reflect the outpourings of his soul.

output n. 1 production, result, yield, crop, harvest: Nobody was quite ready for such a massive output. 2 productivity, achievement, efficiency: Job insecurity has diminished her output.

--v. 3 put out, produce, generate, create, manufacture, yield, achieve: Our new laser printer outputs about ten pages a minute.

outrage n. 1 violence, atrocity, inhumanity, barbarism, enormity, evil, barbarity, savagery, brutality, malignity, malefaction, wrongdoing, evil-doing, maltreatment, abuse, cruelty, injury, harm, damage: Wherever there is war there is misery and outrage. 2 resentment, affront, bitterness, indignation, hurt, shock, anger, wrath, ire: The minister felt outrage at being given a parking ticket. 3 insult, indignity, slight: Contributors to the charity considered it an outrage that the fund-raisers should keep so much of the money.

--v. 4 offend, insult, affront, vex, displease, distress, nettle, chafe, infuriate, anger, enrage, madden, make one's blood boil, raise (someone's) hackles, rile: He was outraged to discover that the wretch had proposed to his daughter. 5 violate, desecrate, defile, do violence to, injure, harm, abuse, damage: Such deeds outrage human feelings. 6 rape, violate, ravage, ravish, deflower, attack: He seized the unhappy girl and outraged her.

outrageous
adj. 1 excessive, extravagant, immoderate, exorbitant, enormous, unreasonable, preposterous, shocking, extreme, unwarranted, exaggerated, unconscionable, inordinate, intolerable, disgraceful, shameful, scandalous: The prices at that restaurant are absolutely outrageous. 2 vicious, cruel, heinous, atrocious, barbaric, inhuman, abusive, beastly, horrible, horrid, horrendous, iniquitous, villainous, wicked,

evil, egregious, flagrant, grievous, infamous, execrable, abominable, grisly, hideous, monstrous, vile, unthinkable, foul, awful, unspeakable, appalling, offensive, indecent: The captives suffered the most outrageous treatment at the hands of their conquerors. 3 indecent, offensive, immoral, rude, indelicate, obnoxious, profane, obscene, dirty, filthy, lewd, salacious, foul, smutty, scatological, pornographic, objectionable, repellent, repulsive, nauseating, nauseous, nasty, gross, revolting, shocking, repugnant, disgusting, fulsome, perverted, depraved, dissolute, degenerate, dissipated, debauched, profligate; explicit, unrestrained; foul-mouthed, thersitical, insulting; unseemly, inappropriate, indecorous, improper, naughty, appalling, embarrassing; Literary Fescennine, US shy-making: The sermon denounced the outrageous films, books, magazines, and television programmes to which children are exposed. Warren sometimes says the most outrageous things.

outr, adj. unconventional, unusual, extravagant, bizarre, weird, strange, odd, peculiar, grotesque, outlandish, freakish, out-of-the-way: The attention of the media was turned upon the singer's outr, behaviour on stage.

outright adj. 1 unqualified, total, unreserved, unrestricted, full, complete, unconditional, unequivocal, clear, direct, definite, unmistakable or unmistakeable: The duke is the outright owner of the property. 2 undisguised, unmitigated, utter, consummate, pure, out-and-out, all-out, sheer, absolute, stark, bald, thorough, arrant, thoroughgoing, through-and-through, downright, direct, definite, unmistakable or unmistakeable: Her outright refusal to provide further help was met with dismay.

--adv. 3 directly, at once, immediately, instantaneously, instantly, then and there or there and then, straight or right away, on the spot, right off: One passenger was killed outright, the other died later in hospital. 4 completely, entirely, exactly, precisely, totally, in toto, utterly, baldly, starkly, consummately, purely, thoroughly, directly, unhesitatingly, quite, absolutely, explicitly, categorically, straightforwardly, plainly, openly, forthrightly, unequivocally, unambiguously, candidly: I wish that Henry wasn't so reticent and would say outright what he means. 5 unrestrictedly, unqualifiedly, unreservedly, unconditionally: The duke owns the property outright.

outset n. beginning, start, inauguration, inception, first, Colloq kick-off: Had you let them know who you were at the outset, this wouldn't have happened.

outside n. 1 exterior, face, facing, shell, skin, case, casing, surface, front; fa‡ade: What is that on the outside of the box? The outside of the house is painted white. 2 aspect, appearance, look, demeanour, face, front, fa‡ade, mien, mask, disguise, false front, pretence: One cannot tell what people are really like from the outside they present to the world. 3 extreme, limit, most, maximum, utmost, best, worst, longest: At the outside, you shouldn't pay more than half your income for housing. I'll wait for her for an hour at the outside. 4 the world at large: We had to bring in someone from the outside to complete the work.

--adj. 5 exterior, external, out of doors, outdoor: They have added an outside swimming-pool to the house. 6 maximum, maximal, highest, best, worst, greatest, most, largest, longest, furthest or farthest: What was their outside estimate for replacing the roof? The outside time for driving here from London is about an hour. 7 private, home, cottage, secondary, peripheral, independent, freelance: Her outside job pays more than her regular work. 8 unlikely, remote, faint, Colloq slim: He has an outside chance of beating the world record. 9 foreign, alien, outward; unconnected, excluded, uninvolved, disinvolved, independent, separate, different: I'm worried that Phil might be subject to outside influences. An outside contractor is doing the work.

--adv. 10 outdoors, out of doors: Perhaps you'd like to step outside to discuss the matter further?

outsider n. non-member, non-initiate, foreigner, alien, outlander, stranger, newcomer, guest, visitor, trespasser, interloper, intruder, squatter, invader, Colloq gatecrasher: The others always treated Peter as an outsider. Why do I feel an outsider in my own home?

outskirts n.pl. periphery, edge, environs, outer reaches, vicinity, border(s), suburb(s), exurb(s), general area or neighbourhood, purlieus, fringes, vicinage, faubourg(s): The university is on the outskirts of the city.

outsmart v. outwit, outfox, out-think, outmanoeuvre, outmanipulate, outplay, steal a march on, get the better or best of, trick, dupe, hoodwink, fool, deceive, hoax, gull, make a fool of; swindle, cheat, defraud, cozen, Colloq put one over on, pull a fast one on, take in, make a monkey (out) of, bamboozle, con, Brit nobble, Slang slip or put one or something over on (someone): 'I have been outsmarted by bigger fools than you!', Mr White shouted.

outspoken adj. candid, frank, open, free, direct, unreserved, unreticent, straightforward, forthright, explicit, specific, plain-spoken, plain-speaking, unequivocal, unceremonious, unambiguous, unsubtle, uninhibited, unshrinking, blunt, bold, brusque, brash, undiplomatic, tactless, crude: Linda was always quite outspoken in her opinions of her neighbours. Her outspoken observations are a fruitful source of gossip.

outstanding

adj. 1 prominent, eminent, renowned, famous, famed, unforgettable, memorable, celebrated, distinguished, special, choice, noteworthy, notable, noted, important, conspicuous, exceptional, excellent, superior, first-class, first-rate, superb, remarkable, extraordinary, marvellous, sensational, Colloq smashing, super: Liszt was the outstanding pianist-composer of his time. 2 unsettled, on-going, unresolved, unpaid, due, owed or owing, receivable or payable; remaining, leftover: The company has a few outstanding debts.

outstrip v. overcome, surpass, outdo, outperform, outshine, outclass, better, beat, transcend, best, worst, exceed, excel, outdistance, overtake, top, cap, put in the shade, eclipse: Bannister again outstripped everyone in the race.

outward adj. external, exterior, outer, outside, outlying, manifest, obvious, evident, apparent, visible, observable; superficial, surface, extrinsic, skin-deep, shallow, pretended, false, ostensible, formal, physical, bodily, fleshly, carnal, mundane, worldly, secular, temporal, terrestrial, material, non-spiritual: She gave every outward sign of being the bereaved widow. Whatever outward trappings money may buy, A man's true wealth lies deep inside.

outwardly adv. externally, apparently, visibly, superficially, ostensibly, evidently, seemingly, on the surface, to all appearances, to all intents and purposes: Though the town was outwardly quiet, we had a feeling of ominous foreboding.

outwards adv. outward, outside, away, out, without: The towns of the early twentieth century centred on the railway station and radiated outwards.

outweigh v. overcome, outbalance, overbalance, overweigh, tip the scales, preponderate (over), surpass, prevail (over), override, take precedence (over), compensate (for), make up for: His feeling for his wife outweighed all else in his life.

outwit v. See outsmart, above.

15.18 oval...
=-

oval adj. egg-shaped, ovoid, ovate, oviform, obovoid, obovate; elliptical, ellipsoid(al): His mother's picture hung in an oval frame over the mantel.

ovation n. applause, acclamation, acclaim, plaudits, cheers, cheering, clapping, laudation, praise, kudos, Colloq (big) hand: At the conclusion of the concerto, the pianist was given a standing ovation.

over prep. 1 above, on, upon, on top of, atop (of): She spread a tarpaulin over the boat to protect it. 2 more than, greater than, upwards or upward of, in excess of, (over and) above, (over and) beyond; exceeding: Of the 2000 people questioned in our survey, over half said they think prunes are funny. The thieves took over œ50,000-worth of paintings. 3 across, to or from or on the other side of; beyond: The children crossed over the river to play in the woods on the other side. 4 for, during, in or over or during the course of, through, throughout: Over the next week she will be working in the Paris office. 5 (all) through, throughout, (all) about, all over: We travelled over the entire country in the course of our holiday. Have you gone over the manuscript I left with you?

--adj. 6 done (with), finished, terminated, concluded, ended, past, settled, closed, at an end, over with: I'm afraid it's all over between us, Carrie.

--adv. 7 to, onto, past, beyond, across: This room looks out over the sea. 8 remaining, as a remainder, as surplus, outstanding: When we finished eating, there wasn't much left over. 9 (once) again, once more, one more time: This pot will have to be cleaned over again. 10 down, to the ground or floor: You almost knocked over the lamp.

overall adj. total, complete, comprehensive, all-inclusive, inclusive, whole, entire, all-embracing, blanket: The overall cost, including materials and labour, came to more than I had expected.

overawe v. overwhelm, intimidate, cow, daunt, awe, bully, hector, browbeat, dominate, domineer, frighten, scare, terrify, disconcert, discomfit, upset, abash: The children were overawed by their father's slightest sign of displeasure.

overbearing
adj. repressive, domineering, bullying, imperious, officious, high and mighty, high-handed, overweening, magisterial, lordly, authoritarian, wilful, despotic, dogmatic, autocratic, tyrannical, dictatorial, peremptory, arbitrary, assertive, arrogant, cavalier, haughty, superior, supercilious, pretentious, Colloq bossy, pushy, hoity-toity, highfalutin or hifalutin, snooty, Slang snotty: His temper was harsh and severe, his manner haughty and overbearing.

overcast adj. cloudy, clouded, sunless, moonless, starless, murky, grey, louring or lowering, dull, dark, darkened, dreary, sombre, gloomy, dismal, threatening, menacing: The sky was overcast this morning, but the sun is now beginning to shine through.

overcome v. 1 beat, defeat, conquer, overpower, subdue, worst, best, triumph over, win (out) (over), prevail (over), overthrow, overwhelm, vanquish, get the better or best of, whip, drub, rout, break, subjugate, suppress, crush, master, Colloq lick: If we do not overcome these temptations, they will overcome us. The superior force easily overcame the tiny group of defenders.

--adj. 2 beaten, defeated, overwhelmed, subdued, worsted, bested; affected, speechless, swept off one's feet, rendered helpless, overpowered, moved, influenced, at a loss (for words), Colloq bowled over: The victim's parents were overcome with grief when the casualty list was published. Colin was too overcome to speak at the award presentation.

overconfident
adj. 1 brash, arrogant, cocksure, cocky, brazen, hubristic, swaggering, audacious, overbearing, vainglorious, Colloq pushy: It is harmful for a sportsman's morale to be overconfident of winning. 2 heedless, foolhardy, thoughtless, short-sighted, hasty: Rock-climbers should not be overconfident and rely entirely on their ropes.

overcritical
adj. supercritical, hypercritical, captious, carping, niggling, cavilling, querulous, fault-finding, finicky, fussy, hair-splitting, difficult, fastidious, harsh, severe, demanding, exacting, small, small-minded, US and Canadian picayune, Colloq picky, nit-picking, pernickety or US also persnickety: You should not be overcritical of Maddy - she's only a child.

overcrowded
adj. jammed, packed, congested, populous, over-populous, jam-packed, overpopulated; swarming, crawling, choked, packed to the gunwales: The planet is becoming overcrowded. We squeezed into an already overcrowded train.

overdo v. 1 carry to excess, overindulge, be intemperate, go or carry to extremes, overact, exaggerate, carry or go too far, overreach, not know when to stop, paint the lily, gild refined gold, out-Herod Herod, Colloq go overboard, do to death, lay it on thick, lay it on with a trowel; go off the deep end: Exercise a little judgement and try not to overdo it. 2 overwork, do too much, overtax, exhaust, fatigue, overload, overburden, Colloq bite off more than one can chew, burn the candle at both ends: Don't overdo it or you'll feel the results tomorrow.

overdue adj. late, tardy, behindhand, behind, unpunctual, belated, US past due: As it is now December, payment is long overdue. I've got an overdue library book to return.

overeat v. gorge, binge, gormandize, stuff oneself, overindulge, guzzle, feast, wolf down, overfeed, do the gavage, Colloq pack away, Brit pig, US pig out: People not only overeat but they tend to eat the wrong foods.

overgrown adj. covered, overrun, overspread, luxuriant, weedy, abundant: The walls are all overgrown with ivy.

overhang v. 1 jut (out), beetle, bulge (out), project (out), protrude, stick out, loom (out), extend (out), hang (out) over: The balcony overhangs the sea. 2 impend, threaten, menace, imperil, loom: His life was overhung by the threat of blackmail.

--n. 3 ledge, projection, bulge, protrusion, extension: A swallow nested under the overhang of the roof.

overhaul v. 1 overtake, pass, gain on or upon, draw ahead of, catch up with, get ahead of, outstrip, outdistance, leave behind, lap: We overhauled the ketch and were beginning to close on the yawl when the squall hit us. 2 renovate, refurbish, recondition, rebuild, restore, repair, service, adjust, patch (up), mend, fix (up): The car engine needs to be thoroughly overhauled.

--n. 3 reconditioning, overhauling, refurbishing, rebuilding, renovation, servicing, adjustment, mending, fixing (up): The overhaul of the die-stamping machine will require two months to complete.

overhead adv. 1 (up) above, (up) in the air or sky, high up, on high, aloft, skyward: The aeroplanes passed overhead at dawn.

--adj. 2 elevated, raised, upper: The crane travels on an overhead track.

--n. 3 Brit overheads, US overhead. (basic or fixed) costs, operating cost(s), expense(s), outlay, disbursement(s), running cost(s), expenditure(s), maintenance, cost(s) of doing business: One way to increase profits is by reducing overheads.

overjoyed adj. delighted, ecstatic, elated, happy, rapturous, euphoric, jubilant, thrilled, cock-a-hoop, transported, Colloq tickled pink, in seventh heaven, on cloud nine, Brit over the moon: We were overjoyed to hear your news and to receive the invitation to your wedding.

overlap v. 1 lap (over), overlie, overlay, shingle, Technical imbricate, strobilate: Note how the upper tiles overlap the lower to keep the rain out. 2 coincide, correspond, intersect: Our work shifts overlap by four hours.

--n. 3 lap, flap, overlay, fly (front) or Brit flies, imbrication: The overlap conceals the buttons that close the skirt on the side.

overload v. 1 weigh down, burden, overburden, load (up), overtax, saddle with, tax, strain, impede, handicap, oppress, encumber, cumber, overcharge: They overloaded me with so much work that I'll never finish.

--n. 2 surcharge, overcharge, overburden, dead weight, oppression, handicap, tax, load, encumbrance, impediment, hindrance: We had to hire extra people at Christmas to help deal with the overload.

overlook v. 1 miss, slip up on, omit, neglect, slight, disregard, fail to notice, ignore, pass over, leave out, forget, Colloq pass up: You overlooked an error on the first page. 2 blink at, wink at, let go (by), let pass, let ride, turn a blind eye to, shut (one's) eyes to, pretend not to notice, take no notice of, ignore, disregard, forgive, pardon, excuse, permit, allow, forget about, write off, condone, make allowances (for), let bygones be bygones, gloss over: I shall overlook your slowness if you will work late to compensate for it. 3 front on (to), face, give upon, command or afford a view of, look out on or over, have as a vista or view: My room overlooks the lake.

overly adv. excessively, too, exceedingly, immoderately, disproportionately, unduly, inordinately, extraordinarily, very, Colloq damned: She seemed overly anxious for us to leave.

overpower v. 1 overcome, overwhelm, beat, vanquish, conquer, defeat, crush, put down, worst, best, prevail, master, quell, subdue, subjugate: The thugs easily overpowered the elderly couple and took their money. 2 overcome, overwhelm, dumbfound or dumfound, daze, stagger, amaze, stun, stupefy, nonplus, strike, Colloq floor: I was quite overpowered by the grandeur of the house.

overpowering
adj. overwhelming, irresistible, powerful, telling, compelling, unendurable, unbearable, oppressive: They presented an overpowering argument against the use of asbestos as an insulator.

overrate v. overvalue, make too much of, exaggerate the worth or value of, attach too much importance to, overprize, assess too highly: They insist that his value to the company is overrated and that he should be dismissed.

overreact v. exaggerate, make much ado about nothing, make too much of (something), make a mountain out of a molehill, lose all or one's sense of proportion, blow (up) out of (all) proportion: I'd say that she overreacted by leaving him because he forgot her birthday.

overriding
adj. dominant, dominating, predominant, predominating, compelling, prevailing, primary, prime, most important, overruling, overwhelming, paramount, preponderant, principal, cardinal, main, chief: His overriding reason for buying the larger dictionary was that it made a better doorstop.

overrun v. invade, defeat, attack, ravage, destroy, overwhelm, conquer, harry, vandalize, plunder, maraud, scourge, despoil, sack, strip, pillage, storm, Colloq blitz: Within a week the armies had overrun the country and captured the capital city.

overseas adv. abroad: Did you serve overseas during the war?

oversee v. direct, manage, watch (over), keep an eye on, administer, superintend, run, supervise, operate, manipulate, handle, control: We employed Gertrude to oversee our offices in Frankfurt.

overseer n. superintendent, supervisor, manager, foreman, forewoman, superior, Colloq boss, chief, super, Brit gaffer, US straw boss, (head or chief) honcho: Simon is too hard a taskmaster to be overseer of that sensitive operation.

overshadow
v. 1 dominate, outshine, eclipse, dwarf, diminish, minimize, put in or throw into or leave the shade, steal the limelight from, tower over or above, excel: The Crown, overshadowed by the great barons, turned for aid to the Church. 2 spoil, blight, ruin, mar, take (all) the pleasure from, put a damper on, take the edge off, impair, take the enjoyment out of: The news from the east overshadowed everyone's spirits at the party.

oversight n. 1 omission, inadvertence, neglect, laxity, laxness, fault, failure, dereliction, error, mistake, blunder, carelessness, heedlessness: It was owing to an oversight by a clerk that the flight booking was not made. 2 supervision, superintendence, surveillance, management, direction, guidance, administration; charge, care, custody, keeping, hands, protection, auspices: The matter of expenses must be left to the oversight of the committee established to deal with such things.

overstate v. exaggerate, magnify, hyperbolize, embroider, overstress, colour, make (too) much of, overdraw, overemphasize, stretch, enlarge, inflate, blow up: They might have overstated the problem by asking for a 24-hour police guard.

overstep v. exceed, transcend, surpass, go beyond: Again Hortense has overstepped the bounds of propriety by inviting herself to the reception.

overt adj. apparent, evident, plain, clear, obvious, manifest, clear-cut, unconcealed, patent, open, visible, observable, public: Moving the troops to the border may be considered an act of overt hostility.

overtake v. 1 catch (up with or to), reach, draw level or even with, overhaul, gain on or upon, move by or past, pass, leave behind, outstrip, outdistance: The express train overtakes the local one at Amersham. 2 come upon, seize, catch (unprepared), befall, strike, hit, overwhelm: The weaknesses of old age overtook the actress before she could finish writing her memoirs.

overthrow v. 1 defeat, beat, rout, conquer, overpower, master, bring down, depose, oust, overwhelm, unseat, unhorse, topple, overturn, dethrone, thrash, worst, best: The new leader was overthrown by the partisans in two weeks. Cotswold Rangers overthrew Kent United in last night's match at Hurley.

--n. 2 defeat, rout, conquest, deposing, ousting, unseating, toppling, overturn, overturning, downfall, end, ruin, fall, collapse, destruction, suppression, quashing, crushing, subjugation, US ouster: The overthrow of the military regime was followed by weeks of rioting and looting.

overtone n. undertone, connotation, hint, suggestion, innuendo, insinuation, intimation, indication, implication: Do I detect overtones of regret now that you are finally leaving?

overture n. Often, overtures. approach, advance, offer, proposal, proposition, tender: While they were winning, they rejected all peace overtures.

overturn v. 1 turn over, knock down or over, tip over, capsize, up-end, upset, turn turtle, turn upside down, turn topsy-turvy, invert: The tanks overturned when they tried to drive past the huge concrete barriers. On his first day as a waiter, he overturned the soup in a guest's lap. 2 bring down, overthrow, throw over, upset, depose, unthrone, unseat, oust, eject: The dictatorship was overturned and the country returned to being a democratic republic.

--n. 3 overturning, overthrow, unseating, ousting, toppling, fall, destruction, ruin, defeat, US ouster: Could the overturn of the present regime be effected without force of arms?

overwhelm v. 1 overpower, overcome, overtax, devastate, stagger, crush, defeat, destroy, subdue, suppress, quash, quell, conquer, beat, bring down, prostrate, weigh down, oppress: Overwhelmed by grief, she dissolved into tears. 2 inundate, overcome, engulf, submerge, flood (over); deluge, swamp, bury, immerse: A feeling of terror suddenly overwhelmed me as I watched my safety rope fray and break. In only a few hours the rising waters had completely overwhelmed the house. 3 overcome, stagger, astound, astonish, dumbfound or dumfound, shock, stun, bewilder, confuse, confound, nonplus, surprise, take aback, Colloq bowl over, knock off one's feet or pins, blow one's mind, discombobulate, Brit knock for six: We were overwhelmed by the friendly reception that awaited our return.

overwhelming
adj. 1 overpowering, uncontrollable, irresistible, devastating, unendurable, unbearable, crushing, burdensome, formidable: He had an overwhelming sense of shame for what he had said. 2 awesome, awe-inspiring, stupefying, astounding, astonishing, staggering, bewildering, mind-shattering, prodigious, mind-boggling, Colloq mind-blowing: When I first went to live in London, I found its sheer size totally overwhelming.

overwork v. 1 overexert, overstrain, overburden, oppress, overtax, overload, overuse: We were so overworked that the quality had to suffer. 2 slave (away), burn the midnight oil, lucubrate: She insisted on overworking in order to get the project finished on time.

--n. 3 overexertion, overstrain, strain: I was ready to drop from overwork.

overwrought
adj. 1 tense, nervous, jittery, jumpy, fidgety, touchy, in a dither or twitter, all a-twitter, overexcited, on edge, over-stimulated, frantic, frenetic, distracted, Brit strung up, US strung out, Colloq (all) worked up, edgy, in a tizzy, wound up, uptight: They were quite overwrought worrying about the children's safety. 2 overworked, ornate, elaborate, baroque, rococo, florid, flowery, fussy, ostentatious, busy, gaudy, garish: Some of the Victorian houses were characterized by overwrought gingerbread decoration. A few of his poems are overwrought and difficult to digest.

15.19 owe...
=-

owe v. 1 be in debt to, be indebted to, be beholden to: It must be a good feeling not to owe anyone any money at all. 2 owing to. because of, on account of, thanks to; through, as a result of, resulting from, Colloq due to: Owing to my schedule, I cannot stay the night. The higher tides are owing to the positions of the sun and moon.

owner n. possessor, holder; proprietor, proprietress: The papers have been returned to their rightful owner. Who is the owner of the property?

16.0 P

=-

16.1 pace...

=-

pace n. 1 step, stride: Please walk forward two paces. 2 rate (of speed), tempo, speed, velocity, Colloq clip: We were proceeding at a pace of five miles per hour.

--v. 3 walk, stride, tread; traverse: Alistair paced up and down nervously, waiting for word from the surgeon. 4 measure, gauge or gage, judge, rate, estimate, determine, reckon, figure, compute: I was trying to pace myself to conserve some energy for a sprint finish.

pack n. 1 parcel, package, packet, bundle, bale, backpack, knapsack, rucksack, haversack, kitbag, kit, duffle or duffel bag: The stranger hoisted his pack onto his shoulder and loped off. 2 load, lot, bunch, multitude, heap, pile, accumulation, mass, amassment, mess, barrel, peck: She told the jury a pack of lies. 3 group, collection, assembly, assemblage, congregation, gathering, crowd, number, throng, horde, mass, crew, gang, body, lots, loads, band, company, party, set, flock, herd, drove, mob, swarm, bevy, covey, circle, coterie, clique: A huge pack of people were waiting at the stage door for the star to emerge. 4 deck: We ought to have two packs of cards for bridge.

--v. 5 Often, pack in or into. package, bale, bundle, compact, crowd, cram, jam, fill, stuff, squeeze, ram, press, wedge, tamp: They packed us into the train like sardines. I packed as much as I could into the short time I had left. 6 pack it in. stop, cease, end, finish, quit, wind up, terminate, give up, call it a day, Colloq chuck: Edward finally packed it in because they were giving him too much trouble. 7 pack off. dismiss, send off or away, bundle off or out, hustle off or out or away, get rid of, drive off or away, order off or away or out, send (someone) about his or her business: At the beginning of the war, Sally's mother packed her off to America to stay with her aunt. 8 pack up. a get or gather together, put away, store: Pack up your troubles in your old kit bag and smile, smile, smile. b quit, stop, break down, fail, give out, stall, die, give up the ghost, Colloq conk out, have had it: After three days crossing the desert, the engine finally packed up.

package   n. 1 packet, parcel, box, container, case, carton, bundle: I am donating a package of clothing to the relief fund. 2 combination, unit, package deal: Included in the package from the car dealer are several luxury features.

--v. 3 wrap, pack, containerize, carton, case, encase, enclose, include; combine, unite, coupled, incorporate: More and more merchandise comes packaged in plastic these days. A special sponge is packaged with the cleaning liquid.

packed   adj. filled, full, loaded, crowded, stuffed, jammed, crammed, brim-full, chock-a-block, chock-full, jam-packed, overloaded, overflowing, loaded or filled to the gunwales, up to there, bursting, groaning, swollen, replete, Colloq wall-to-wall: The gallery was packed with the soprano's relatives, who cheered every note. The publicity for the show promised a packed programme of mirth and merriment.

packet   n. 1 package, parcel, pack, batch: We found a packet of your old love-letters in a trunk in the lumber room. 2 loads, lot(s), great deal, fortune, mint, Colloq bundle, pretty penny, pile(s), tidy sum, king's ransom, Brit bomb: He lost a packet on that property when they built a sewage plant alongside it.

pact   n. agreement, treaty, bargain, alliance, contract, compact, concord, covenant, concordat, entente, understanding, arrangement, deal: The companies entered into an illegal pact not to compete in the same markets.

pad   n. 1 cushion, pillow, wad, wadding, stuffing, padding, filling, filler: Wrap a soft cotton pad over the wound to protect it. 2 writing-pad, note-pad, memo pad, block (of paper), jotter, US filler: You'd best take a pad with you to make notes at the lecture. 3 flat, apartment, room(s), home, place, quarters, Colloq hang-out, Brit digs or diggings, Slang US flop: A few friends are crashing at my pad while they're in town.

--v. 4 cushion, wad, stuff, fill; upholster: The chair seats are padded with foam rubber, but the arms are bare. 5 Sometimes, pad out. expand, inflate, stretch, dilate, lengthen, protract, extend, blow up, flesh out, puff up, augment, spin out, amplify: He pads his weekly newspaper column with trivia in order to fill the space.

paddle n. 1 oar, sweep, scull: A 'crab' occurs when you catch the water with the paddle blade on the return stroke.

--v. 2 row, scull, oar: Deftly she paddled the canoe over to the pier. 3 wade: The children were paddling at the water's edge. 4 spank, paddywhack, thrash, beat, whip, flog: Dad threatened to paddle me if he caught me playing hookey again.

paddy n. rage, (fit of) temper, fit, tantrum, Colloq Brit paddywhack or paddywack, wax: She was in a proper paddy when she found out what you'd done.

pagan n. 1 heathen, unbeliever, idolater, polytheist, infidel, Gentile: He joined the religion of the pagans and worshipped the golden calf.

--adj. 2 heathen, infidel, idolatrous, polytheistic, heathenish, Gentile: Many churchmen condemned Renaissance scholars for their interest in pagan and pre-Christian writers.

page° n. 1 leaf, folio, side, sheet, verso or recto: On which page does the index begin? 2 episode, phase, period, time, stage, point, era, epoch, age, chapter: The early 1940s were among the darkest pages in Britain's history.

--v. 3 paginate, folio, number: Roman numerals were used in paging the preface to the book.

pageý n. 1 attendant, page-boy, servant, errand-boy, messenger, Brit foot-boy, US bellman, bellhop, Offensive used of an adult bellboy: Please have a page deliver this message to Mr Simmonds.

--v. 2 announce, summon (forth), send for or after, call, call for, call out: They are paging your wife now to give her your message.

pageant n. spectacle, display, grandeur, tableau, show, parade, procession, ceremony, formality, ritual, event, affair, extravaganza, presentation, gala: The children stage a medieval mystery play as a part of the annual Christmas pageant.

pageantry n. pomp, ceremony, display, magnificence, extravagance, panorama, showiness, show: The pageantry of the Oberammergau passion play should be experienced at least once.

pain n. 1 hurt, suffering, discomfort, soreness, ache, aching, pang, spasm, smarting, cramp: I feel the pain in my back from lifting that box. 2 anguish, agony, affliction, distress, grief, woe, suffering, misery, travail, wretchedness, despair, torment, tribulation, trial, torture, dolour, discomposure, ordeal, disquiet: No one who has not experienced it can imagine the pain of losing a child. 3 irritation, vexation, annoyance, bother, nuisance, pest, Colloq pain in the neck, headache, drag, bore, Taboo slang pain in the Brit arse or US ass: What a pain it is that you have forgotten your keys again! David can really be a pain when he goes on about the book he's writing. 4 pains. effort, trouble, exertion, toil, labour: She went to great pains to make our stay comfortable.

--v. 5 hurt, distress, grieve, wound, injure; trouble, depress, sadden, sorrow, cut to the quick: It pained us to learn of Mrs McArthur's illness.

painful adj. 1 hurting, grievous, hurtful, sore, distressing, distressful, excruciating, torturous, agonizing, smarting, stinging, aching, achy, throbbing, burning, piercing, stabbing, sharp, tender, sensitive, raw, bitter, Formal nociceptive: The bullet caused a painful wound in the knee. Mother's arthritis can be quite painful at times. 2 vexing, vexatious, annoying, harassing, irritating, irksome, aggravating, galling, exasperating, unpleasant, afflictive, harrowing, worrisome, worrying, troubling, disquieting, disturbing, distressing: Fighting in the front lines was a painful experience for Rupert. 3 painstaking, laborious, careful, rigorous, arduous, assiduous, sedulous, diligent, earnest, conscientious, meticulous, scrupulous, detailed, thorough, thoroughgoing, exacting, demanding: A great deal of painful research went into discovering the cause of yellow fever.

painfully adv. agonizingly, distressingly, disagreeably, unpleasantly, unfortunately, sadly, woefully, lamentably, ruefully, unhappily: I became painfully aware that much of the relief destined for the poor never reached them.

painkiller

n. anodyne, analgesic, anaesthetic, sedative, palliative: When he wrenched his back, the doctor gave him a painkiller so that he could walk.

painless adj. trouble-free, easy, simple, comfortable, effortless, Colloq easy as 1, 2, 3 or as ABC, easy as pie, a piece of cake, pushover, child's play, Slang cinch, no sweat: The procedure for assembling the bicycle is relatively painless.

painstaking

adj. See painful, 3, above.

paint n. 1 colour, tint, dye, colouring, pigment, stain: I bought the paint and brushes, and started work on the kitchen walls. 2 coating, coat, surface; enamel: The rust has come through the paint here and there. 3 make-up, cosmetics, maquillage, greasepaint, Colloq warpaint, face: Sheila is in her room putting on some paint before we go out.

--v. 4 depict, portray, picture, show, represent, delineate, render, draw, limn, characterize, describe: Whistler painted a portrait of my grandmother. Correspondents painted a very grim picture of the plight of the hostages. 5 coat, brush, apply, cover, daub: The doctor painted the area with some medication that soothed the pain. 6 colour, tint, dye, stain, decorate: We are planning to paint the nursery pale blue. 7 paint the town red. make merry, carouse, revel, go on a spree, go out on the town, Colloq whoop it up, live it up, (go on a) pub-crawl, step out, Slang make whoopee, go on a bender or drunk or binge, booze it up: Saturday nights a few of the boys would go out and paint the town red till the wee hours.

pair n. 1 couple, twosome, two of a kind, set of two, matched set, duo, dyad, twins, double, doublet; brace, span, yoke, team, tandem: A pair of silver candelabra disappeared during the party.

--v. 2 match (up), mate, pair off or up, team (up), put together, partner, twin, double, join, unite, yoke; wed, marry, join in wedlock or in holy matrimony: Pair these gloves for me, would you? Husbands may not pair off with wives for the next dance.

pal   n. 1 friend, consort, comrade, alter ego, crony, companion, amigo, playmate, classmate, Colloq chum, sidekick, mate, Chiefly US and Canadian buddy: Jim left a little while ago with a few of his pals.

--v. 2 pal (up) with or about or US around (with). associate (with), be or become friendly or friends (with), be or get or become on friendly or intimate terms (with), go (around or about) with, fraternize (with), consort (with), spend time together or with, keep company (with), Colloq hang out or about or around (with), knock about or around (with): Fiona and Isabel palled up last year. Do you still pal about with Timothy?

palace   n. mansion, castle, stately or palatial home or residence, manor (house), (country) estate, chƒteau, palazzo, villa: After the wedding, they went to the prince's palace and lived happily ever after.

palatial adj. luxurious, de luxe, magnificent, splendid, stately, sumptuous, opulent, majestic, magnificent, grand, elegant, palatine, Slang posh, ritzy, swanky, classy: After winning the pools, they moved into a palatial house in Belgravia.

palaver   n. 1 nuisance, procedure, red tape, to-do, rigmarole or rigamarole, Colloq song and dance, bother, nonsense, business, carry-on, performance: He lost the certificates, so she now has to go through all the palaver of getting new ones. 2 chatter, babble, jabber, (empty or small) talk, blather or blether, gossip, prating, prattle, prattling, palavering, Brit natter, nattering, Scots clishmaclaver, Colloq jawing, hot air, Colloq Brit witter, wittering: There is so much palaver at the annual meeting that nothing important ever gets said. 3 parley, talk, conference, discussion, colloquy, conversation, confabulation, meeting, get-together, round table, powwow, Colloq confab, huddle, chin-wag: The annual palaver of the regional general managers is scheduled for next week.

--v. 4 chatter, babble, jabber, blather or blether, gossip, prattle, prate, chit-chat, gabble, Brit natter, witter, Colloq jaw, chin-wag, US and Canadian shoot the breeze, Slang yack, yackety-yack: Peter and I were palavering outside the supermarket when Sophie came along. 5 confer, consult, discuss, parley, talk, converse, powwow, meet, get together, sit down (together), confabulate, negotiate, Colloq confab, huddle, chew the fat or the rag: Management and union representatives will palaver tomorrow.

pale°   adj. 1 colourless, white, wan, sallow, waxen, livid, ashen, ashy, pallid, bloodless, whitish, pasty, whey-faced, washed out, anaemic, blanched, drained, ghostly, ghastly, peaky or peakish, peaked, cadaverous: If you had been through an ordeal like that, you'd look pale, too. 2 faint, light, dim, washed out, pastel: She was wearing a pale green evening gown tonight. 3 feeble, weak, flimsy, meagre, enfeebled, ineffective, ineffectual, puny, insignificant, paltry, lame, poor, inadequate, half-hearted, tame, spiritless, whey-faced, empty, sterile, lifeless, uninspired, anaemic, Colloq half-baked: The sequel was a pale imitation of the original film.

--v. 4 blanch, blench, dim, whiten: He paled when they told him of the car crash. 5 diminish, lessen, fade (away), decrease, abate: The works of most modern writers pale in comparison with those of the Elizabethans.

paleý   n. 1 paling, palisade, picket, upright, post, stake: The pales are attached to horizontal rails to form a fence. 2 boundary, limit(s), restriction, bounds, border(s), confines: Nothing is outside the pale of the imagination of a great novelist. 3 beyond the pale. improper, irregular, unseemly, unsuitable, indecent, unacceptable, inadmissible, forbidden, anathema, disallowed, prohibited, verboten, interdicted; US unusual, bizarre, peculiar, outr,, weird, abnormal, strange: The committee have found your behaviour to be beyond the pale, Frances, and we demand your resignation.

pall°   n. 1 shroud, covering, mantle, cloth, veil: A black velvet pall covered the coffin. 2 gloomy or melancholy or sombre or grave or depressing air or mood or atmosphere; damper, cold water, Colloq wet blanket: The recently uncovered scandals have cast a pall over his successes in office.

pallý v. 1 Often, pall on or upon. bore, tire, weary, jade, irk, irritate, sicken: His position lost all its charm when the work began to pall on him. 2 sate, satiate, cloy, glut, surfeit, gorge: I had reached the point where even the finest foods began to pall me.

paltry adj. trifling, trivial, petty, small, insignificant, worthless, pitiful, pathetic, pitiable, puny, sorry, wretched, miserable, inconsequential, inconsiderable, unimportant, meagre, mean, beggarly, base, low, contemptible, Colloq piddling, Brit twopenny, twopenny-halfpenny, mingy, US penny-ante, Slang Mickey Mouse: Despite his wealth, his charitable contributions are paltry. We all recognize Denison for the paltry pedant he is.

pamper v. baby, coddle, cosset, (over)indulge, spoil, mollycoddle, cater to, pet, Rare cocker, Irish cosher: The Simpsons pamper their children far too much.

pamphlet n. booklet, brochure, tract, essay, folder, leaflet, circular; handbill, bill, notice, bulletin, advertisement, hand-out, ad, Brit advert, US flyer, throw-away: He was arrested for printing a pamphlet that denounced the government's repression of free speech. Yesterday we received our sixteenth pamphlet promoting replacement windows.

pan n. 1 saucepan, frying-pan, skillet, pot, casserole, US spider: Melt a teaspoonful of butter in the pan, add the mixture, and stir briskly over a medium heat. 2 face, visage, mien, fa‡ade, Slang kisser, mug, puss: The worst part of Alf's not working is that I have to look at his ugly pan all day. 3 depression, indentation, concavity, cavity, hollow, pit, hole, crater: In a rain-shower, the pans fill with water and the desert blooms.

--v. 4 wash, separate, sift: For years prospectors have panned for gold in these hills. 5 criticize, censure, find fault, put down, reject, flay, excoriate, Brit hammer, Colloq knock, roast, slate, Slang Brit rubbish, US trash: The critics panned the play and it closed after a week. 6 pan out. succeed, thrive, prosper, flourish, fare well, make it; work out, turn out, result, come out, end (up), conclude, culminate, eventuate: Your grandiose plans for irrigating the Sahara didn't pan out, either! How did the election pan out?

panache n. flourish, dash, ,lan, ,clat, chic, sophistication, savoir faire, savoir vivre, flamboyance, verve, style, cultivation, (good) taste, flair, smartness, boldness, self-assurance, swagger, vigour, liveliness, spirit, brio, gusto, zest, animation, enthusiasm, energy: Whatever needs to be done, you can count on Irena to carry it off with panache.

pandemonium

n. bedlam, chaos, turmoil, disorder, tumult, frenzy, uproar, Brit furore or US furor, confusion: Pandemonium reigned after the first bomb struck.

pander v. 1 Usually, pander to. satisfy, gratify, humour, indulge, fulfil, bow to, yield to, truckle to, cater to: She is tired of pandering to his every wish. 2 procure, pimp, solicit: I didn't believe he would sink so low as to pander for his business clients.

--n. 3 panderer, pimp, procurer, solicitor, whoremonger, White slaver, Slang flesh-pedlar or US also flesh-peddler or flesh-pedler, Brit ponce, mack: The word pander is an eponym for Pandarus, who acted as a sycophantic go-between for Troilus in Chaucer's Troilus and Criseyde .

pane n. panel, sheet, glass, window-pane, light, quarrel, bull's-eye: Ring up the glazier and have that pane replaced in the door.

pang n. 1 pain, stab, ache, pinch, twinge, stitch, spasm: I felt a sharp pang of hunger. 2 qualm, hesitation, scruple, misgiving, remorse, regret, contrition, contriteness, self-reproach, mortification, guilt, anguish, discomfort, malaise: Does Claire feel the slightest pangs for treating him badly?

panic n. 1 terror, alarm, fear, fright, dread, horror, dismay, consternation, hysteria; anxiety, apprehension, apprehensiveness, nervousness: As the speeding car veered towards us, a feeling of panic gripped me.

--v. 2 be terrified or alarmed or fearful or frightened or terror-stricken or terror-struck, dread, fear, lose one's nerve; frighten, scare; Colloq go to pieces, fall apart, Brit lose one's bottle: I panicked, turned the wheel the wrong way, and crashed the car into a tree. Gregory panics at the slightest sign of danger. 3 frighten, scare, alarm, terrify, unnerve: Something panicked the horses and one kicked out his stall door.

panic-stricken
adj. panic-struck, terrified, alarmed, horrified, aghast, terror-stricken or terror-struck, panicky, frenzied, in a frenzy, hysterical, besides oneself with fear or terror, fearful, afraid, scared (stiff), petrified, horror-struck or horror-stricken, frightened or scared out of one's wits, appalled, stunned, stupefied, perturbed, unnerved, nervous, distressed, upset, jittery, jumpy, (all) worked up, Colloq in a cold sweat, in a flap, in a tizzy, Taboo slang scared shitless, shitting green: At the news of the leak at the nuclear plant, hundreds of panic-stricken people fled from the area.

panoramic adj. sweeping, commanding, extensive, comprehensive, wide, overall, scenic, far-reaching, all-embracing, far-ranging, all-encompassing, inclusive, bird's-eye, general: This room affords a panoramic view of the sea-coast.

pant v. 1 gasp, huff (and puff), blow, heave, breathe hard, wheeze: He was panting when he came into the room, having run up the stairs. 2 Usually, pant for or after. crave, hanker after, hunger or thirst for or after, yearn for, ache for, want, desire, covet, wish for, long or pine or sigh for, have one's heart set on, die for, be dying for, Colloq have a yen for, give one's eye-teeth or right arm for: Margery was the girl that all the boys panted after when we were ten.

pants n.pl. 1 In Britain (men's) drawers, small-clothes, smalls, drawers, underpants, boxer shorts, trunks, undershorts, Y-fronts, briefs, Colloq smalls; (women's) knickers, camiknickers, panties, drawers, bloomers, pantalettes, tights, pantihose, undies: The baby was dressed in a frilly dress and matching pants. 2 In US: trousers, slacks, breeches, (Oxford) bags, knickerbockers, flannels, shorts, Bermuda shorts or Bermudas, pedal pushers, bell-bottoms, peg-tops, hip-huggers, (blue) jeans, dungarees, denims, Trade Mark Levis, Scots trews; Scots and No. Eng. breeks, US knickers, Colloq cut-offs: Americans who go into British shops asking for a pair of pants are embarrassed to be offered only underwear.

paper n. 1 newspaper, tabloid, daily, weekly, journal, gazette, publication, periodical, newsletter, organ, Colloq rag, sheet: She is feature editor of a paper in Manchester. 2 Often, papers. a document(s), instrument, legal papers, form, certificate, deed, ownership papers; credential(s), identification: Bring the papers to my office for signing. His papers are not in order. Many people lost their papers during the war. b docket, files, dossier, record(s), archive(s): Your papers seem to have disappeared from our office. 3 stationery, letterhead, writing-paper, letter-paper, notepaper; foolscap; scrap or US also scratch paper; wrapping paper; gift-wrapping, gift-wrap; wallpaper: She wrote to me on the most beautiful engraved paper. We buy our Christmas paper from a museum shop. 4 article, composition, essay, assignment, report, thesis, study, tract, analysis, critique, exegesis, treatise, dissertation, disquisition, manuscript, MS or ms, autograph, holograph, typescript, script, speech: Adelaide will present her paper at the meeting of the Royal Academy this year.

--v. 5 (hang) wallpaper, line; post, distribute: The entire area was papered with posters announcing the meeting.

par adj. 1 standard, normal, average, expected: A success rate of two per cent is par for these candidates.

--n. 2 level, rank, standing, scale, standard: How can you place yourself on a par with her as a tennis player? 3 above par. above average, superior, outstanding, excellent, exceptional; choice, select, prime: Since I stopped taking that medication, I've been feeling above par. I am pleased to announce that the test results were above par for the school as a whole. 4 at par. average, level, even, equal, equivalent, standard; par value: The shares are selling at par, or below their true market value. 5 below or under par. a below average, substandard, inferior, second-rate, mediocre, middling, not up to par, poor, inadequate, unsatisfactory, wanting, bad, wretched, miserable, awful, terrible, Colloq lousy, not up to snuff or scratch: Ian's goal-keeping has been below par all season. b ill, sickly, unhealthy, unwell, not (very) well, not oneself, not in good or the best shape, in bad shape, Brit off form, off colour; Colloq under the weather, poorly, not up to snuff: I was feeling below par. 6 up to par. all right, adequate, average, satisfactory, good enough, passable, acceptable, Colloq OK or okay, up to scratch or snuff, fair to middling: If your game had been up to par, Davis would not have won.

parable n. allegory, fable, lesson, morality tale: When we first read Aesop's Fables we didn't know they were parables.

parade n. 1 procession, march, train, file, promenade, cortŠge, column; entourage: They held a parade to celebrate the soldiers' safe return from the war. 2 exhibition, (ostentatious) display, show, spectacle, array, pomp, splash: She often makes a parade of her knowledge of architecture. 3 promenade, walk, (pedestrian) way, mall, esplanade: Let's meet in the Parade when you have finished shopping.

--v. 4 march, pass in review, promenade, walk, file: The generals saluted smartly as the troops paraded past. 5 strut, flaunt, show (off), brandish, wave, vaunt, display, air: Why does he feel it necessary to parade every new girlfriend in front of all the neighbours?

paradise n. 1 heaven, City of God, Zion, Elysium, Elysian Fields, happy hunting-grounds, Abraham's bosom, heavenly kingdom, Promised Land, Celestial City, New Jerusalem, Avalon, Valhalla, Hesperides, Isles or Islands of the Blessed, seventh heaven: People all have their own ideas of paradise, but everyone agrees it's a nice place to be. 2 heaven on earth, (Garden of) Eden, (land of) Goshen, Utopia, Shangri-La, Land of Beulah: Early settlers of California thought it a paradise. 3 bliss, happiness, rapture, heaven, delight, blessedness, ecstasy, seventh heaven, joy, dreamland, nirvana: Being with you has been sheer paradise.

paradox n. contradiction, self-contradiction, incongruity, inconsistency, absurdity, ambiguity, enigma, puzzle, mystery, quandary, problem, dilemma: Can you explain away Zeno's paradox of Achilles and the tortoise? The paradox was that although it was Edward's fifth birthday, he was 20 years old.

paradoxical

adj. contradictory, self-contradictory, conflicting, oxymoronic, impossible, improbable, incongruous, illogical, inconsistent, absurd, ambiguous, confusing, equivocal, enigmatic, puzzling, baffling, incomprehensible, bewildering, perplexing, mysterious, problematic: It would be true, though it might sound paradoxical, to say that the Norman Conquest made England Saxon.

paragon n. epitome, archetype, model, prototype, quintessence, pattern, standard, exemplar, ideal, beau id‚al, criterion: He had previously regarded Michael as a paragon of virtue and was deeply shocked by the revelations.

parallel adj. 1 similar, corresponding, congruent, analogous, analogic(al), correspondent, like, matching, homologous, coordinate, equivalent, coequal, proportional, proportionate, pari passu, mutatis mutandis, in proportion, uniform; contemporary or cotemporary, contemporaneous or cotemporaneous: The situation in Northern Ireland could be compared with a parallel situation in Lebanon.

--n. 2 analogue, match, homologue, equivalent, complement, counterpart, equal, coequal: Campbell found many parallels among the legendary heroes of other cultures. 3 analogy, parallelism, equivalence, complementarity, relationship, kinship, correspondence, resemblance, likeness, similarity, symmetry, equality, coequality, parity, correlation; proportion, balance, equiponderance, equipoise, counterbalance, offset: One can draw parallels between the human arm, the fish's fin, and the bird's wing. By way of parallel, consider the flood in the Bible and that in the Gilgamesh epic.

--v. 4 correspond to or with, match, equate to or with, be likened to, correlate to or with, compare with or to, imitate, repeat, echo, iterate, reiterate, duplicate, follow, agree with; keep pace with, conform (to), balance, set off, offset, even off or up, be accompanied by, coincide with, Colloq jibe with: In many respects, your attitudes towards life parallel mine when I was your age. A decrease in the rate of inflation supposedly parallels a rise in interest rates.

paralyse v. 1 immobilize, inactivate, deactivate, transfix; halt, stop: The stroke paralysed his entire left side. As the thing approached, the children became paralysed by fear. 2 deaden, numb, freeze, anaesthetize, benumb, render insensible: This injection will paralyse your thumb so that we can operate on it. 3 disable, cripple, incapacitate, disenable: His left leg was paralysed in the accident.

paramount adj. pre-eminent, chief, supreme, dominant, main, predominant, cardinal, first, prime, primary, principal, essential, vital, requisite, basic: The company feel that the independence of researchers is paramount. It is of paramount importance that you study trigonometry before calculus.

paramour n. lover, love, inamorato or inamorata, amorist, mistress, gigolo, concubine, cicisbeo, kept woman, Colloq flame, sugar-daddy, US POSSLQ (= 'Person of the Opposite Sex Sharing Living Quarters'), Slang fancy man or woman: At eighty, she liked to reminisce about her many paramours.

paraphernalia

n. usually pl equipment, apparatus, accessories, outfit, appliances, utensils, gear, rig, material(s), mat,riel, things, tackle, equipage, accoutrements, effects, chattels, possessions, belongings, appurtenances, trappings, property, baggage, impedimenta, supplies, stuff, Colloq junk, Brit rubbish, clobber, Slang crap, Taboo slang US shit: Bring along your scuba paraphernalia. It took us a month just to pack up all the paraphernalia we had in the flat.

paraphrase

n. 1 rephrasing, rephrase, rewording, restatement, rewriting, rewrite, rehash, rendition, rendering, version, Technical paraphrasis: The editor wanted a revision, not merely a paraphrase of the original.

--v. 2 rephrase, reword, restate, rewrite, explicate, explain: Please paraphrase the specialized jargon to make it understandable to non-professionals.

parasite n. leech, hanger-on, Colloq freeloader, sponger or sponge, bloodsucker, cadger, scrounger or scrounge, barnacle, jackal, hyena or hyaena: That parasite lives off Gemma's money and has never worked a day in his life.

parcel n. 1 package, packet, carton, box, container, case: We are sending food parcels to the needy. 2 portion, plot, plat, lot, piece, section, tract: We have bought a small parcel of land and plan to build on it next year. 3 lot, group, batch, collection, pack, bundle, set: She gathered a parcel of drawings and published them as a travel sketchbook.

--v. 4 Often, parcel out. apportion, allot, deal (out), dole (out), mete (out), hand out, distribute, share (out), divide, Colloq divvy (up): Before he died he parcelled out his fortune amongst his grandchildren.

parch v. dry (out or up), desiccate, dehydrate, exsiccate; scorch, sear, burn, bake; shrivel (up), wither: The earth was parched by the unrelenting sun.

pardon n. 1 forgiveness, forgiving, amnesty, remission, release, reprieval, absolution, indulgence, excuse, excusal, allowance, overlooking, condonation, exoneration, exculpation: Should there be any pardon for crimes against humanity?

--v. 2 forgive, remit, release, reprieve, absolve, indulge, allow, overlook, let off, excuse, condone, exonerate, exculpate: There are some crimes that ought not be pardoned.

pare v. 1 trim, peel, skin, shave (off), shuck; decorticate, excoriate: Pare the apples and then grate them coarsely. 2 Often, pare down. reduce, diminish, decrease, cut (back or down), curtail, slash (back), lower, lessen: Since his illness, Bob has pared down his time at the office. We'll have to pare our prices to stay competitive in the present climate.

parent n. 1 father or mother, progenitor, progenitrix, procreator, begetter, materfamilias or paterfamilias; foster-parent, stepmother or stepfather, guardian, Colloq old lady or old man, Brit old-fashioned or facetiousmater or pater: Most teenagers clash with their parents sooner or later. 2 source, origin, originator, well-spring, fountain-head, root: The liturgy of St James is undoubtedly the parent of the Armenian Rite.

parentage n. lineage, ancestry, line, family, extraction, descent, origin, pedigree, stock, birth, strain, bloodline, heritage, roots: As he was separated from his mother at birth, he knows nothing of his royal parentage.

parenting n. (of children) rearing, upbringing, raising, nurturing: Brian and Betty take their parenting very seriously.

parity n. 1 equality, equivalence, consistency, uniformity, par, likeness, similarity, analogy, congruity, similitude, conformity, congruence: The ministers agreed that they would observe parity of power amongst themselves at the conference. 2 proportion, parallelism, analogy, balance, correspondence: We are trying to maintain parity between the Deutschmark and the pound sterling.

park n. 1 garden, green(s), common(s), preserve, reserve, greensward, parkland, woodland, estate, Chiefly Brit reservation: Twice a day he strolls through the nearby park. 2 Brit car park, US and Canadian and New Zealand parking-lot: I shall meet you in the car park at the railway station.

--v. 3 leave, put, deposit, store: It is illegal to park in this street.

parlance n. way or manner of talking or speaking, fa‡on de parler, phrasing, phraseology, speech, wording, language, idiom, dialect, jargon, Colloq lingo: In the parlance of the yuppies, that's a ballpark figure.

parley n. 1 conference, discussion, dialogue, palaver, deliberation, meeting, colloquy, colloquium, confabulation, powwow, talk(s), Colloq huddle, confab: The issue will be decided at the executive council's parley.

--v. 2 confer, discuss, palaver, deliberate, talk (over), negotiate, deal, Colloq huddle: Would Sitting Bull parley with General Custer?

parliament
n. 1 Parliament. Houses of Parliament, House of Lords and House of Commons, Westminster, the House, Mother of Parliaments: The new health bill got its second reading in Parliament today. 2 legislature, council, congress, diet, council, assembly, Upper

and Lower House or chamber: The United States parliament consists of the Senate and the House of Representatives.

parliamentary
adj. formal, ordered, orderly, procedural, conforming, conformist, US according to Roberts Rules of Order: The debate must follow parliamentary procedure.

parlour   n. living-room, Old-fashioned or Brit drawing-room, Chiefly Brit sitting-room, reception (room), lounge: She invited us into the parlour where tea was laid out.

parlous   adj. perilous, risky, precarious, uncertain, dangerous, hazardous, difficult, ticklish, awkward, Colloq chancy, iffy, Slang hairy: These are parlous times in the Middle East.

parochial adj. regional, provincial, narrow, local, insular, isolated, limited, restricted, narrow-minded, petty, short-sighted, hidebound, conservative, conventional, illiberal, bigoted, prejudiced, intolerant, one-sided, partial, biased, stubborn, opinionated, dogmatic, rigid, stiff, stiff-necked, immovable, intractable, unchangeable, unchanging, close-minded, unsophisticated, unworldly, uncultivated, uncultured: Uneducated and untravelled, Mr Shriver maintained a very parochial view of the world.

parody   n. 1 burlesque, lampoon, satire, caricature, mockery, mimicry, Colloq take-off, spoof, Brit send-up: The more serious the intent of the original author's work, the easier it is to write a parody of it. 2 travesty, mockery, feeble or poor imitation, distortion, perversion, corruption, debasement: The Inquisition was a parody of justice and of religion.

--v. 3 burlesque, lampoon, satirize, caricature, mock, mimic, ape, ridicule, deride, laugh at, poke fun at, guy, scoff at, sneer at, rib, tease, twit, roast, pillory, make a laughing-stock (of), make sport of, make fun of, make a monkey (out) of, Archaic fleer, Colloq take off, spoof, kid, Brit send up: Swift parodied English political figures and policies of the day in Gulliver's Travels .

paroxysm n. fit, convulsion, spasm, throe, seizure, spell, outburst, eruption, explosion, Colloq flare-up: At the sight of George dressed as Madame Pompadour Melissa rolled on the floor in a paroxysm of hysterical laughter.

parrot n. 1 imitator, mimic, Colloq copycat: She never has an original idea of her own: she's a mere parrot of others' fashions and fancies.

--v. 2 imitate, mimic, ape, copy, echo, repeat, reiterate: Mick doesn't understand the issues and just parrots what he hears on TV.

part n. 1 piece, portion, division, allotment, share, percentage, participation, interest; parcel, fragment, scrap, shard; some: I bought a part of the company when it was available. I want no part of the deal now. 2 portion, component, factor, constituent, element, ingredient: A part of her problem is that she doesn't speak Japanese. 3 role, function, duty, responsibility, share; say, voice, influence, participation, involvement, business: Every man must do his part. Don't thank me! I had no part in your getting the contract. 4 role, character: He plays the part of Tweedledum in the school play. 5 side, interest, cause, behalf, faction, party: Which part did you support in the argument? No explanation has been offered on either part. 6 neighbourhood, quarter, section, district, region, area, corner, vicinity, vicinage, Colloq neck of the woods: I come from the same part of the country as you. 7 piece, portion, segment, section; department, division, component, unit: Which part of the turkey do you prefer? In which part of the company do you work? 8 for the most part. mostly, generally, usually, mainly, in the main, by and large, on the whole, chiefly, principally, essentially, for all practical purposes, to all intents and purposes, in most cases or instances: The shops are for the most part closed on Sunday. 9 in part. partly, partially, to some extent or degree, in some measure, relatively, comparatively, somewhat: He is himself in part responsible for the present state of affairs. 10 on the part of (someone) or on (someone's or one's) part. by, on or US also in behalf of, (as) for, as regards, as far as (someone) is concerned, in the name of, for the sake of, in support of: Tyrannical acts on the part of the king were not condoned. For my part, I want nothing to do with it. 11 take (a) part (in). participate (in), join (in), be (a) party to, play a part or role (in), be involved (in or with), associate oneself (with), have or take a hand in, partake (of), contribute (to): Why insist that she take part in your nefarious plot? People began to sing, but she didn't feel like taking part.

--v. 12 separate, part company, split up, go his or her (or their) separate way(s), break up, say or bid goodbye (or adieu, etc.); leave, depart, go (away or off): We parted on the best of terms. 13 separate, divide, put or pull apart, put asunder: I saw a pale hand part the curtains for a brief moment. A fool and his money are soon parted. 14 part with. give up, yield, relinquish, release, sacrifice, forgo, renounce, forsake, let go, surrender: I doubt that you'll persuade Rover to part with his bone.

--adj. 15 partial, fractional, limited: Ronald is a part owner of the company.

partake v. 1 Usually, partake in. share (in), participate (in), take (a) part (in), enter (in or into): We share each other's burdens and partake in each other's joys. 2 Usually, partake of. a receive, get, have a share or portion or part (of), share: We were invited to partake of a meagre repast. b evoke, suggest, hint at, intimate, imply, possess or have the quality of: Greater knowledge often partakes of insolence.

partial adj. 1 incomplete, fragmentary, not total or whole, imperfect: They were able to afford only a partial restoration of the house. There will be a partial solar eclipse at noon. 2 prejudiced, biased, partisan, inclined, influenced, one-sided, jaundiced, unfair, discriminatory: It will be difficult to find a judge who is not partial. 3 partial to. in favour of, predisposed to, fond of, having a soft spot or weakness for, having a liking or taste or predilection for, having a fondness for, feeling an attraction or affinity to or toward(s), finding enjoyment in: She used to be partial to punk rockers. I am partial to Scotch beef.

partiality

n. 1 prejudice, bias, inclination, favouritism, predilection, predisposition, leaning, preference: The losers of the contest accused the judges of partiality. 2 preference, taste, relish, liking, fondness, appreciation, fancy, love, eye, weakness, soft spot, penchant; fetish or fetich: Alas, my wife has acquired a partiality for emeralds.

partially adv. partly, in part, to some extent or degree, to a limited or a certain extent or degree, not totally or wholly or entirely, restrictedly, incompletely, in some measure, relatively, comparatively, moderately, (up) to a (given or certain) point, somewhat: Jon found the meal only partially satisfying and ordered another bread pudding.

participant

n. 1 participator, partaker, sharer, party, contributor, prime mover: The chief participants in the recent terrorist attack are in custody.

--adj. 2 Usually, participant in or of. participating, partaking, sharing: As a shareholder, he will be participant in the profits.

participate

v. Often, participate in. take part (in), share (in), partake (in or of), join (in), engage (in), get or become involved (in), be or become associated (with), enter (in or into), contribute (to): We invited her to join the group, but she refuses to participate. I would like to participate in the venture.

particle n. atom, molecule, scintilla, spark, mote, suggestion, hint, suspicion, gleam, bit, crumb, jot, tittle, whit, mite, speck, dot, spot, iota, grain, morsel, shred, sliver, scrap, Colloq smidgen or smidgin: There isn't the slightest particle of evidence linking them with the murder.

particular

adj. 1 certain, specific, special, peculiar, singular, single, isolated, individual, distinct, discrete, separate, definite, precise, express: These are not his particular sentiments but those of thousands of his followers. In this particular instance your theory does not apply. 2 marked, special, especial, exceptional, remarkable, noteworthy, notable, outstanding, unusual: The commendation is for her particular contribution to the treatment of nervous disorders. Vintage port is a particular favourite of mine. 3 detailed, itemized, item-by-item, thorough, minute, precise, exact, exacting, painstaking, nice, rigorous, close, blow-by-blow: The inscriptions reveal the particular care taken in keeping daily records. 4 fussy, meticulous, finicky, finical, fastidious, discriminating, selective, demanding, hypercritical, critical, Colloq pernickety or US also persnickety, choosy, picky: Daphne is very particular about whom she invites to dinner.

--n. 5 Usually, particulars. detail, minutia, fine point, item, specific, element, fact, circumstance, information: The particulars may never be revealed, but we know in general what took place that fateful night. 6 in particular. particularly, specifically, precisely, exactly, especially, specially; particular, specific, special, definite: I told mother that I was just going out, not anywhere in particular.

particularly

adv. 1 especially, specially, exceptionally, peculiarly, singularly, distinctively, uniquely, unusually, uncommonly, notably, outstandingly, markedly, extraordinarily, very, extremely, strikingly, surprisingly, amazingly: Susannah went through a particularly bad patch but she's better now. Holroyd is a good writer, particularly of biography. 2 in particular, specifically, especially, principally, mainly, exceptionally, expressly, explicitly, notably, markedly; only, solely: Maeterlinck was particularly interested in bees.

parting   n. 1 separating, splitting, dividing, breaking (up or apart), sundering, cleaving; separation, split, division, break-up, rift, rupture: The high point of the film was the parting of the Red Sea. The parting between Harriet and Sam after twenty turbulent years was to be expected. 2 leave-taking, farewell, saying goodbye, departure, leaving, going (away), making one's adieus or adieux; valediction: Parting is such sweet sorrow.

--adj. 3 closing, final, concluding, last, departing, valedictory; deathbed, dying: Her parting comment was, 'If you're leaving, take the rubbish'.

partisan n. 1 partizan, devotee, follower, supporter, adherent, backer, champion, enthusiast, fan, zealot, fanatic, Chiefly US and Canadian booster, Colloq US rooter: He has long been a partisan of surrealism. 2 guerrilla or guerilla, freedom fighter, underground or resistance fighter, irregular: During the war the Yugoslav partisans were led by Marshal Tito.

--adj. 3 one-sided, factional, biased, tendentious, sectarian, opinionated, partial, bigoted, prejudiced, parochial, myopic, short-sighted, near-sighted, narrow, narrow-minded, limited: She refuses to become involved in partisan politics. 4 guerrilla or guerilla, freedom, underground, resistance, irregular: They were both members of the Maquis, the French partisan group who fought against the Nazis.

partition n. 1 separation, division, splitting (up), split-up, partitionment, break-up, breaking up, segmenting, segmentation: One of the results of World War II was the partition of Germany. 2 allotment, allotting, apportionment, apportioning, distribution, distributing, meting out, doling out, rationing (out), sharing (out), dividing (up), giving or handing or passing out, parcelling out, Colloq divvying up: The partition of the estate is in the hands of our solicitors. 3 (room) divider, (dividing) wall, barrier, screen, separator: Let's put up a partition to divide this office into two. 4 compartment, room, chamber, section, part, area, division, subdivision, cell, stall, booth: In open floor planning, furniture, plantings, and other movables are used to create the partitions where people work.

--v. 5 divide (up), separate, cut up, subdivide, split (up): It is always a mistake to partition a country into smaller, potentially quarrelsome units. 6 Often, partition off. divide, separate, subdivide, wall off, screen (off), fence off: We must partition off the machine room so that the office staff are not disturbed by the noise.

partly adv. See partially, above.

partner n. 1 sharer, partaker, associate, colleague, participant, accomplice, accessory, confederate, comrade, ally, collaborator, companion, team-mate, fellow, alter ego, friend, Colloq pal, sidekick, mate, US and Canadian buddy, cohort: His partner in the bank robbery was arrested this morning. 2 wife or husband, spouse, mate, helpmate, helpmeet, consort: She became my life partner more than 50 years ago. 3 companion, fellow-dancer: Won't you change partners and dance with me?

party n. 1 (social) gathering, (cocktail or dinner) party, celebration, fˆte or fete, function, reception, soir‚e, levee, festivity, festivities, festival, frolic, spree, romp, carousal or carouse, saturnalia, bacchanalia, debauch, orgy, Colloq get-together, bash, bust, shindig or shindy, ball, at-home, do, Brit beanfeast, beano, knees-up, US blow-out, Slang Brit rave or rave-up, Chiefly US and Canadian wingding, bust-up, US hop: Campbell said he had a marvellous time at your birthday party. 2 group, company, band, body, corps, gang, crew, team, squad, troop, platoon, detachment, detail, cadre, unit, Colloq bunch, outfit: A small party of men is trapped on the other side of the river. 3 side, interest, faction, league, club, coalition, bloc, division, sect, denomination, clique, coterie, set, cabal, junta or junto, partisans, adherents, confederacy, confederation, federation, Chiefly US and Canadian caucus: The proliferation of political parties confuses the electorate. 4 participant, participator, confederate, associate, ally, accomplice, accessory, approver, ratifier, upholder, contributor, supporter, advocate, backer, aid, helper, seconder, promoter, partisan, defender, exponent, proponent, champion: I refuse to be a party to any illegal act. 5 individual, person, litigant, plaintiff, defendant, side, interest, signer, signatory, co-signatory, participant, US co-signer: The party of the first part accuses the party of the second part of infidelity. How many parties are there to this contract?

parvenu   n. 1 parvenue, upstart, arriviste, nouveau riche, intruder, adventurer, social climber: Usually one generation has to pass before a parvenu is accepted by the class with which his money associates him.

--adj. 2 nouveau riche, upstart, intrusive: This parvenu industrialist tried to use his wealth to make up for his lack of refinement.

pass   v. 1 Often, pass by. proceed or move past, go by or past: She passed me in the street. I didn't recognize her till she had passed. We met like ships that pass in the night. 2 proceed, move (onwards), go (ahead), progress, extend, lie, run, flow, fly, roll, course, stream, drift, sweep: A flock of geese passed overhead. 3 let pass, let go (by), overlook, disregard, ignore, pay no heed, omit, skip: I think I'll pass on making a decision till the proper time comes. 4 qualify (in), pass muster (in), get or come through, succeed: Deirdre didn't believe she would pass chemistry, but pass she did. 5 spend, devote, use (up), expend, employ, occupy, fill, while away, take (up); dissipate, waste, fritter away, kill: He passed his time on Devil's Island planning ways to escape. 6 surpass, exceed, outdo, transcend, go beyond, overshoot, outstrip, outrun, surmount, outdistance: She passed her own expectations in winning the scholarship. How Alan ever got a degree passes all comprehension. 7 allow, tolerate, permit, approve, sanction, accept, authorize, endorse, carry, agree to, confirm: The customs inspectors passed my luggage without question. The bill passed the committee and came up for voting. 8 give, hand round or along or over, transfer, pass on or over, deliver, convey, Sports US hand off, Colloq toss, throw, reach: Please pass the salt. The sweeper passed the ball back to the goalkeeper. 9 utter, express, issue, declare, pronounce, deliver, set forth, offer: Who is she to pass judgement on abstract paintings? 10 go away, disappear, vanish, evaporate, fade away, melt away, evanesce, cease (to exist), (come to an) end, die out, go by the board, terminate, Literary evanish, Colloq blow over: For an instant I was gripped by a horrible fear, but the feeling passed. 11 go (by), expire, elapse; slip by or away, fly; crawl, creep, drag: Weeks have passed since we last met. Time passes quickly when you're having fun. 12 evacuate, void, eliminate, excrete, defecate, urinate: The tests showed that he had passed some gravel in his urine. 13 come to pass. befall, happen, occur, take place, come about, arise, Colloq come off: And it came to pass that a great pestilence was abroad in the land. 14 pass away. a die, expire, perish, succumb, breathe one's last, pass on, go to one's reward, go to one's final or last resting-place, (go to) meet one's Maker, Colloq go west, give up the ghost, Slang croak, kick the bucket, Chiefly US bite the dust, turn up one's toes: He was the sole beneficiary when she passed away. b vanish, disappear, go away, stop, cease, end: The feeling of vertigo simply passed away when the plane landed. 15 pass by. See 1, above: The strikers were urging people to pass by the shop. 16 pass for or as. a be taken for, be mistaken for, be regarded as, be accepted as: He wrote a book about being a man who passed for a woman. b impersonate, imitate, mimic, pass (oneself) off as, come or go as, be disguised as, disguise oneself as, assume the guise of, masquerade as, pose as, assume the role of, act the part of, act like, pretend to be, play: Using her best cockney accent, she tried to pass as a Londoner. 17 pass off. evaporate, disappear, evanesce, be emitted: The water passes off as steam, leaving the distillate in the flask. 18 pass on. a proceed, continue, progress: Let us now pass on to the next lesson. b bequeath, hand down or on, transfer, make over, will, cede, give: The old gambler passed on to me the secret of never losing - Don't gamble. c See 14, (a), above. 19 pass (oneself) off as. See 16, (b), above. 20 pass out. a faint, collapse, swoon, black out, drop, Colloq conk out, keel over: When they told her of the accident, she passed out on the spot. b distribute, dole out, mete out, deal (out), hand out: After we took our seats, the cabin staff passed out glasses of champagne. 21 pass over. See 3, above: I shall pass over his latest misdeeds without comment. 22 pass up. reject, decline, refuse, waive, turn down, dismiss, spurn, renounce; deny (oneself), skip, give up, forgo, let go (by), abandon, forswear, forsake, let pass, ignore, pay no heed, disregard, pay no heed, omit: If you don't buy this car, you are passing up an opportunity of a lifetime.

--n. 23 defile, gorge, col, cwm, cut, canyon or ca¤on, notch, gap, gully, couloir; passage, opening, way, route, road: We had mined the pass to prevent the enemy's advance. 24 authorization, permit, licence, approval, safe conduct, green light, go-ahead; permission, freedom, liberty, authority, clearance; Colloq OK or okay: He bribed an official for a pass to leave the country. 25 free pass, complimentary ticket, Slang US twofer, Annie Oakley: I have two passes to the opera tonight - Want to go? 26 state (of affairs), condition, situation, stage, juncture, status, crux; predicament, crisis: At that critical pass, it was too late to change policy. Things had come to a pretty pass. 27 attempt, trial, try, effort, endeavour: Anita's first pass at a perfect score resulted in disaster. We made a pass at docking while under sail. 28 (sexual or indecent) overture or advance(s), proposition, indecent proposal: That lecher has made a pass at every secretary he's ever had. 29 manoeuvre, approach; passage, flight, fly-by, transit: The pilot's first pass over the airfield was at 500 feet. 30 transfer, toss, throw, US hand-off: A forward pass is illegal in rugby.

passable adj. 1 satisfactory, acceptable, tolerable, all right, adequate, admissible, allowable, presentable, average, fair (enough), fair to middling, fairly good, middling, not bad, unexceptional, sufficient, indifferent, Colloq OK or okay, so so: I thought the play passable, but not up to his usual standard. 2 traversable, navigable, open, unobstructed, unblocked: The channel is passable till October, when the river freezes over.

passage   n. 1 movement, moving, going, transition, transit, traversal, traverse, progress, crossing, passing: The queen's passage through the town was attended by much jubilation. We observed the passage of Mercury across the sun's disc. 2 extract, excerpt, selection, section, part, portion, text, paragraph, canto, stanza, verse, line, sentence, phrase, citation, quotation: I recognize this passage from The Faerie Queene . 3 way, route, avenue, course, channel; road, thoroughfare: Amundsen found a navigable passage between the Atlantic and Pacific across North America. 4 corridor, hall, passageway, hallway, vestibule, lobby, foyer: As I stepped into the passage outside my room I heard a door slam. 5 change, mutation, shift, conversion, progression, passing: In sublimation, the passage is directly between the solid and gaseous or vaporous states, without an intermediate liquid stage. 6 passing, elapse, progress, progression, flow, march, advance: She may become more tractable with the passage of time. 7 voyage, trip, journey, cruise, crossing, sail, run, travel, travelling; Brit accommodation or US accommodations, arrangement(s), facilities: In 1942 the trans-Atlantic passage was fraught with danger. The refugees were guaranteed safe passage to the border. We have been unable to book a passage to Majorca for tomorrow. 8 safe conduct, permission, privilege, liberty, freedom, visa, authorization, allowance: Our troops were denied passage through Nepal. 9 enactment, ratification, sanction, approval, acceptance, passing, adoption, endorsement, endorsing, legitimatization or legitimization, legalization, legislation, constitutionalization, ordainment: It appears that there is enough support to ensure passage of the bill. 10 traffic, trafficking, dealing, shipment, shipping, commerce, trade, exchange, transaction: Representatives of several governments discussed putting a halt to the passage of narcotics from Colombia. 11 aperture, hole, orifice, opening; entry, access, inlet; exit, outlet: We found a tiny passage through which the termites were entering and leaving.

pass,   adj. old-fashioned, unfashionable, dated, out of date, behind the times, outmoded, obsolete, obsolescent, antiquated, archaic, d,mod,, quaint, antique, superseded, Colloq out, not or no longer in, old hat, back number: She persisted in dressing in a style that had been pass, at the turn of the century.

passenger n. rider, fare, traveller, voyager, commuter: The cruise ships have very comfortable accommodation for their passengers.

passing adj. 1 disappearing, vanishing, ephemeral, brief, going, fading (away), slipping away, short-lived, expiring, transient, transitory, temporary, momentary, fleeting, transitional, impermanent: I hope that Anne's obsession with acid rock is a passing fancy. 2 hasty, superficial, cursory, casual, quick, fleeting, brief, summary, abrupt, dismissive; glancing: The speaker paid only passing attention to those he disagreed with. 3 in passing. by the way, incidentally, by the by, parenthetically, en passant: I might mention, in passing, that my train was late owing to the strike.

--n. 4 death, dying, demise, end, loss, expiry, expiration, dying out, extinction, disappearance, vanishment: Her passing is a great sorrow to all of us. Who thought we would live to see the passing of the steam engine?

passion n. 1 Often, passions. ardour, ardency, eagerness, intensity, fervour, fervency, fervidness, zeal, zealousness, avidity, avidness, zest, zestfulness, vivacity, vivaciousness, gusto, verve, emotion, feeling, animation, spirit, spiritedness, vigour, enthusiasm, eagerness; zealotry, fanaticism, feverishness: The passions of the mob are uncontrollable. Passion and prejudice govern the world. Passions ran high at the political convention. 2 fit, outburst, frenzy, paroxysm, seizure, spasm, convulsion, eruption, whirlwind, tempest, storm, ferment, fury, furore or US furor: Henry fell on his knees in a passion of grief. 3 infatuation, mania, obsession, craze, craving, lust, (unquenchable) thirst, (insatiable) hunger, itch, yearning, longing, desire, concupiscence, love, affection, enthusiasm, compulsion, fondness, predilection, keenness, fancy, fascination, partiality, liking, interest, weakness, Colloq yen: Would the world be a better place if the passion for spiritual values were as great as for material things? She has a passion for chocolates. 4 love, heart's desire, beloved, idol, hero or heroine, obsession, Colloq heartthrob, dream-girl or dream-boy: He may not look much to you but he is the passion of every teenage girl. 5 Usually, Passion. pain, suffering, agony, martyrdom: Christ underwent his Passion at Calvary.

passionate

adj. 1 ardent, eager, intense, fervid, zealous, avid, eager, earnest, zestful, feverish, fanatic(al), vehement, impassioned, emotional, animated, spirited, enthusiastic, vigorous, invigorated, energetic: Passionate environmentalists campaign for better governmental control of carbon dioxide emissions. 2 aroused, lustful, lecherous, erotic, sexual, amorous, sensual, Colloq hot: She tried to resist his passionate advances. 3 quick-tempered, irascible, hotheaded, fiery, testy, huffy or huffish, peevish, cranky, peppery, choleric, touchy, bilious, snappish, volatile, cross, temperamental, irritable, quarrelsome, pugnacious, argumentative, contentious, belligerent, Rare atrabilious or atrabiliar: Valerie gets into a passionate mood whenever she thinks she is being treated unjustly.

passive adj. 1 inactive, non-aggressive, inert, motionless, unresponsive, quiet, calm, tranquil, serene, placid, still, idle, unmoving, unmoved, impassive, untouched, cool, indifferent, phlegmatic, uninterested, uninvolved, dispassionate, apathetic, lifeless, listless, quiescent, unperturbed, unaffected, imperturbable, unshaken, Colloq laid-back, out of it: The comic was unable to get a reaction from the passive audience. 2 submissive, repressed, deferential, yielding, compliant, complaisant, receptive, flexible, malleable, pliable, tractable, docile, subdued, sheepish, ovine, lamblike, cow-like, bovine, tame, gentle, meek, patient, unresisting, unassertive, forbearing, tolerant, resigned, long-suffering, Colloq US excuse-me-for-living: People tend to bully those of a more passive nature. 3 unexpressed, tacit, unrevealed, undisclosed, implicit, unasserted: We can no longer take a passive position regarding crime. Your passive support, while welcome, is not as effective as active campaigning.

password n. watchword, shibboleth, open sesame, countersign: If you don't know the password, the guard won't let you in.

past adj. 1 over, done, finished, (over and) done with, gone (and forgotten), dead (and buried or gone), defunct: The day of the horse and carriage is past. 2 late, former, one-time, sometime, previous, prior, erstwhile, quondam, whilom; last, recent: Past owners of the house had no idea that this treasure was buried in the basement.

--adv. 3 on, (close) by, nearby: I was standing here when he ran past. 4 ago, before, heretofore, since: The previous owners moved out two years past.

--n. 5 history, background, life, lifetime, existence, career, lifestyle, biography: She reveals all about her past in her new book. 6 days or years or times gone by, days of yore, old times, olden times or days, former times, (good) old days, days of old, days beyond recall: In the past, life proceeded at a more leisurely pace.

pastiche n. mixture, medley, blend, compound, composite, patchwork, olla podrida, pot-pourri, motley, miscellany, omnium gatherum, m,lange, gallimaufry, farrago, mishmash, hotchpotch or US and Canadian hodgepodge, tangle, Colloq mess: The room was furnished in a pastiche of styles from every imaginable period.

pastime n. hobby, avocation, recreation, diversion, distraction, amusement, entertainment, fun, play, leisure-time activity, relaxation, leisure, sport, divertissement: As a pastime, she collects books.

pastor n. vicar, clergyman, clergywoman, parson, minister, churchman, churchwoman, rector, canon, reverend, father, divine, ecclesiastic, priest, bishop: The pastor led the congregation in prayer.

pastoral adj. 1 bucolic, idyllic, Edenic, innocent, simple, tranquil, serene, quiet, restful, peaceful, peaceable, placid, pacific, harmonious, simple, uncomplicated, Literary Arcadian, georgic: After a week in those pastoral surroundings, she felt inspired. Theocritus is noted for his pastoral poetry. 2 country, rural, rustic, provincial, farming, agricultural, agrarian; humble: He has chosen a pastoral setting for the play, which contrasts sharply with the emotional intensity of the characters. 3 clerical, ministerial, ecclesiastic(al), church(ly): Our vicar discharges his pastoral duties with energy and sincerity.

--n. 4 idyll, eclogue, georgic: Flambeau did these marvellous engravings for a book of pastorals.

pasture n. meadow, meadow-land, pasture land, grassland, grass, lea, range; pasturage: How much pasture is needed for 200 head of cattle?

pasty adj. wan, pallid, pasty-faced, sallow, pale, pale-faced, whey-faced, sickly, anaemic: He had the pasty complexion of a child raised in an industrial city.

pat° v. 1 tap, touch, dab, pet, stroke, caress: Being short, he hated it when people affectionately patted him on the head. Pat down the coverlet to smooth out the wrinkles. 2 pat on the back. congratulate, commend, praise, compliment, encourage, reassure: The sales manager patted me on the back for clinching the contract.

--n. 3 tap, touch, dab, stroke, caress: Give the dog a pat and he'll leave you alone. 4 (small) piece, patty, lump, cake, portion; patty: The waiter put a pat of butter on my plate. 5 pat on the back. commendation, praise, compliment, flattery, encouragement, credit, reassurance, approval, endorsement, recognition; honeyed words: I was expecting a big bonus, but all I got was a pat on the back.

patý adv. 1 perfectly, exactly, precisely, faultlessly, flawlessly, just so or right, Brit off pat: She has the new technique pat. 2 aptly, suitably, appositely, readily, appropriately, fittingly, relevantly: His reply came out a little too pat.

--adj. 3 apt, suitable, apposite, ready, appropriate, fitting, relevant: The poet made a very pat comparison.

patch n. 1 piece, scrap, reinforcement; shred, snip, snippet, tatter; pad: Mother sewed colourful patches over the holes in my jeans. 2 area, section, segment, plat, plot, lot, tract, ground, parcel, field: All he ever wanted was a little house on a little patch of land. 3 responsibility, area, bailiwick, territory: The handling of customer complaints is in your patch, Gordon. 4 period, interval, spell, stage, episode, time; experience: She went through a bad patch shortly after Starkey died.

--v. 5 patch up or over, mend, repair, vamp, revamp, darn, sew (up), reinforce, cover: I had my trousers patched where the dog bit me. Her father always wore the same patched jacket to the club. 6 Often, patch up. fix (up), doctor, jury-rig, improvise, knock together or up: Can you patch it up so I can drive it home? 7 patch up. settle, set right or straight, straighten out, reconcile, resolve, heal; come or bring to terms, bury the hatchet, kiss and make up, call a truce: Will the two girls ever patch up their differences?

patchwork n. pastiche or pasticcio, mixture, confusion, hotchpotch or US also hodgepodge, gallimaufry, olio, olla podrida, mishmash, jumble, m,lange, medley, hash, US crazy quilt, Colloq mixed bag: The landscape is a patchwork of ploughland and pasture, with little copses and rivers. The concerto by Lindslade is 'derivative' - that is, it is a patchwork.

patent n. 1 certificate of invention, letters patent, trade name, trade mark, copyright, US service mark; licence, permit, charter, franchise, grant; control: My brother holds the patent on a new piece of laboratory equipment. You think you have a patent on misery, but I have news for you.

--adj. 2 obvious, clear, transparent, manifest, apparent, plain, evident, self-evident, unmistakable or unmistakeable, unequivocal, explicit, palpable, tangible, physical, conspicuous, flagrant, blatant, prominent: The results are as patent as the fact that two and two make four.

paternal adj. 1 fatherly, kindly, indulgent, solicitous, fond, concerned, devoted, loving; patriarchal: Uncle Charles takes a paternal interest in the welfare of his nieces and nephews. 2 patrilineal or patrilinear, patriclinous or patroclinous or patriclinal or patroclinal or patriclinic or patroclinic, patrilateral, patrimonial: She resembles her paternal grandmother. His fortune is partly paternal, partly acquired.

paternity n. fatherhood, fathership; parentage, descent, heritage, line, lineage, extraction, family, stock, strain, blood, patrilineage: The child's paternity was established through DNA tests.

path n. 1 footpath, pathway, tow-path, track, trail, walk, walkway, Brit footway: A little kitten was sitting on the garden path. 2 way, course, track, route, road; orbit, trajectory, circuit: She had to overcome many obstacles in her path to the directorship. The path of the missile will take it outside the atmosphere. 3 course, approach, channel, direction, procedure, process, way, avenue, means, method, technique, strategy, scheme, plan, Colloq US game plan, scenario: What path would you follow to accomplish your ends?

pathetic adj. 1 moving, stirring, affecting, affective, touching, emotional, emotive, poignant, tragic, heart-rending, heart-breaking, pitiful, pitiable, piteous, plaintive, wretched, miserable, sorrowful, grievous, sad, doleful, dolorous, mournful, woeful, lamentable: The boat people told a pathetic tale of the hardship of weeks in the open sea. 2 meagre, paltry, feeble, inadequate, poor, petty, puny, sorry, piddling, Colloq measly, Slang crummy: He made a pathetic effort to pull himself together. A return of three per cent a year is pathetic.

patience n. 1 tolerance, forbearance, restraint, toleration, sufferance, leniency, submission, resignation, self-control, imperturbability, even temper, unflappability, composure, calmness, serenity, equanimity: Many parents lose their patience when dealing with children. 2 diligence, tenacity, doggedness, indefatigability, endurance, assiduity, perseverance, constancy, persistence, steadfastness, pertinacity, determination, resolve, resolution, firmness, stoicism, fortitude, Colloq US stick-to-it-iveness: Where do you get the patience to wait in those long queues?

patient adj. 1 resigned, submissive, stoical, long-suffering, compliant, acquiescent, passive, self-possessed, philosophical, serene, unaggressive: The staff who handle complaints must be extremely patient. 2 diligent, dogged, tenacious, persistent, assiduous, sedulous, steadfast, staunch, perseverant, unwavering, unswerving, constant, unfaltering, unfailing, untiring, tireless, indefatigable, pertinacious, determined, resolved, resolute, firm, unyielding: Be patient, and don't do anything rash. 3 forbearing, tolerant, forgiving, lenient, accommodating: We have been patient long enough and must now put a stop to the vandalism.

--n. 4 invalid, sufferer, case, valetudinarian: Doctors were called in to treat patients who developed the symptoms.

patriot n. nationalist, loyalist; flag-waver, jingo, jingoist, chauvinist: She was among the patriots ready to do battle for their country.

patriotic adj. nationalist(ic), loyalist; flag-waving, jingoist(ic), chauvinist(ic): The fact that they criticize the government may show that they are more rather than less patriotic.

patrol n. 1 guard, sentry, watch, watchman, sentinel, patrolman: The patrol passes here once every hour. 2 rounds, policing, patrolling, beat; protecting, protection, guarding, safeguarding, defending, watchfulness, vigilance: The patrol must be maintained night and day.

--v. 3 police, guard, protect, defend, watch over, walk a beat, make (the) rounds, stand or keep guard or watch (over), keep vigil: Some of the local residents have taken to patrolling the neighbourhood at night.

patron n. 1 patroness, benefactor, benefactress, philanthropist, Maecenas, protector, supporter, defender, advocate, champion, guardian (angel), sponsor, backer, promoter, sympathizer, friend, US booster; friend at court; Colloq angel: Lady Agnes is a well-known patron of the arts. 2 customer, client, purchaser, buyer, patronizer, habitu,, regular, frequenter: The patrons habituate her shop because of the bargains to be found there.

patronage n. 1 sponsorship, support, backing, promotion, encouragement, boosting, aid, help, sympathy, financing, auspices, protection, guardianship, aegis: The exhibition was organized with the duke's patronage. 2 trade, business, custom, trading, traffic: The shop could never succeed with our patronage. 3 condescension, disdain, scorn, contempt, contumely, superiority, patronizing, stooping, deigning, humiliation: There is an air of patronage about him when he finally does allow me a visit. 4 favouritism, partiality, preference, bias, nepotism, political patronage, granting of indulgences, US spoils (system): Politicians have always used patronage to reward support.

patronize v. 1 look down on, scorn, look down one's nose at, treat condescendingly, talk down to, treat as (an) inferior, disdain, demean, put down, humiliate, Formal contemn: He patronizes people by patting them on the head. 2 bring trade to, deal or trade or do or transact business with, buy or purchase from, frequent, shop at, be a customer or client of: You should patronize the local merchants in your town. 3 sponsor, support, back, promote, encourage, boost, aid, assist, help, fund, contribute or subscribe to, underwrite, foster: The fund has patronized the arts in this town for many years.

patter° v. 1 tiptoe; scurry, scuttle, skip, trip: I could hear the squirrels pattering across the metal roof. 2 spatter, pitter-patter, tap, pit-a-pat; beat, pelt: The rain pattered on the tent with increasing intensity.

--n. 3 spatter, spattering, pit-a-pat, pitter-patter, tattoo, drum, thrum, beat, beating, tap, ratatat, tap-tap: The rhythmical patter of the rain lulled me to sleep.

patterý n. 1 pitch, sales talk, spiel, line: Anyone listening to his patter might be inclined to buy a time-share holiday. 2 chatter, prattle, prate, babbling, babble, gabble, gabbling, cackle, cackling, palaver, jabber, jabbering, chit-chat, small talk, gossip, blather or blether, gibberish or gibber, Chiefly Brit natter, nattering, Scots clishmaclaver, Colloq gab, gabbing, Slang gas, hot air, yackety-yack, yack: The chap tapping our phone had to listen to the teenagers' patter for hours on end.

--v. 3 chatter, prattle, prate, babble, gabble, cackle, palaver, jabber, rattle (on), chit-chat, chaffer, gossip, blather or blether, gibber, Chiefly Brit natter, witter (on), Colloq gab, Slang gas, yackety-yack, yack, jibber-jabber: They just patter on about nothing in particular.

pattern n. 1 model, original, archetype, prototype, exemplar, paragon, ideal, standard, yardstick, criterion, gauge, measure: Their life together could serve as a pattern for any couple. 2 figure, motif, design, device, decoration, ornament: The pattern of the wallpaper clashes with that of the curtains. 3 system, order, arrangement, plan, theme; repetition, consistency, orderliness, regularity, sequence, cycle: By carefully noting the movements of the heavenly bodies, ancient observers were able to detect a pattern. 4 blueprint, diagram, plan, layout, design, draft, guide, template or templet, stencil, mould, matrix: These new lighting fixtures are made to a 19th-century pattern. 5 sample, example, instance, specimen, representation: Were you able to match up your fabric pattern with one of those in the tailor's book? 6 layout, configuration, figure, formation, composition: The geese often flew in a V-shaped pattern.

--v. 7 Often, pattern on. model on, imitate, copy, mimic, duplicate, follow, emulate, simulate: She tried to pattern her behaviour on that of her older sister. 8 decorate, figure, ornament: Cynthia's gifts were wrapped in a beautifully patterned paper.

paunch   n. belly, pot-belly, Colloq corporation, US bay window, Slang beer-belly: Capitalism is often conventionalized as a top-hatted older man, in tails, with a huge paunch and a cigar.

pauper   n. have-not, indigent, down-and-out(er), bankrupt, insolvent; beggar, mendicant; tramp, hobo, vagrant, US bum: The mortgage payments on such a lavish house soon made him a pauper.

pause   v. 1 hesitate, interrupt, delay, hold up, discontinue, break, wait, mark time, suspend, intermit, falter, rest: He paused for a moment to allow late-comers to take their seats.

--n. 2 hesitation, interruption, delay, lull, lapse, moratorium, hold-up, wait, break, breather, breathing-space, discontinuity, lacuna, hiatus, abeyance, discontinuation, discontinuance, Prosody caesura, Music fermata, Colloq let-up: There was a brief pause, then the altercation in the neighbouring flat resumed.

pave   v. 1 macadamize, tarmac, asphalt, tile, flag, concrete, cover, surface: Europeans thought that the streets of America were paved with gold. 2 pave the way for or to. prepare or smooth the way for, open the door for, make easy or easier for; facilitate, ease: If I talk to him first, perhaps I can pave the way for you to make your proposal.

pawn°   v. 1 pledge, mortgage, hypothecate, plight, deposit, Formal pignorate, Archaic gage, Colloq Brit pop, Chiefly US and Canadian hock: I had to pawn my watch to get enough money to eat. 2 venture, stake, risk, gamble, hazard, chance, jeopardize: By agreeing to donate one of his kidneys, he pawned his life to save hers.

--n. 3 collateral, guaranty or guarantee, pledge, surety, security, assurance, bond, bail, deposit: She gave her jewels as pawn for the safe return of the children.

pawný n. tool, cat's-paw, puppet, instrument, dummy, dupe, Colloq stooge: He's not important: he's just being used as a pawn by the powerful interests involved.

pay v. 1 recompense, compensate, remunerate, reward, indemnify; repay, refund, reimburse; pay off, pay out, pay up, satisfy, clear, remit, discharge, liquidate, settle, honour, meet: Do you think that nurses are poorly paid? You have 30 days to pay this invoice. 2 reward, benefit, recompense, requite, compensate: Thurlew has been amply paid by having his name engraved on the roll of honour. 3 extend, bestow, transmit, pass on, give, deliver: Please pay my respects to your wife. 4 benefit, profit, avail, (turn out to) be or prove profitable or worthwhile, yield a return, be advantageous, produce results, pay off: It no longer pays to complain about the service in the shops. Honesty pays. 5 pay back, repay, retaliate, settle (accounts) (with), even the score or a score, reciprocate, requite, take or get revenge on, avenge oneself for or on, treat in kind, hit or strike or get back (at), settle or pay off or even a score or the score (with), exact one's pound of flesh (from), make (someone) pay (for), punish, chastise, castigate, Brit pay out, Colloq get even (with): If I catch him, I'll pay him for turning informer. 6 suffer (the consequences), answer (for), make amends (for), atone (for), get one's (just) deserts, undergo punishment (for), be punished (for): If I catch him, I'll make him pay. Society requires that he pay for his crime. 7 produce or make or generate or earn money, yield a return, pay off: His vending-machine business certainly pays well. 8 pay back. a recompense, compensate, remunerate, reward, indemnify; repay, pay off, refund, reimburse: I paid back every penny I borrowed from the bank. I'll pay her back if it's the last thing I do. b See 5, above. 9 pay for. See 6, above. 10 pay off. a See 4 and 7, and 8(a), above. b bribe, suborn, buy off, grease (someone's) palm, give (someone) a bribe or a rebate, Colloq give (someone) a kickback, slip (someone) something: Did he really pay off the judges to select his daughter as Miss Tyneside? 11 pay out. a distribute, deal out, give out, disperse, disburse: The managing director paid out bonuses to the entire staff. b disburse, expend, spend, contribute, Colloq shell out, lay out, US and Canadian and Australian and New Zealand kick in with, Slang cough up, fork out or over or up: In the office, we are forever paying out for leaving presents. c release, loosen, let out, slack or slacken off (on): Pay out more rope so that he can reach it. d See 5, above: We'll pay him out for everything he's done to you, never fear!

--n. 12 payment, compensation, recompense, settlement, return; remuneration, consideration, reward, money, wages, salary, fee, honorarium, remittance, stipend, income, takings, take-home (pay), gain, profit, Colloq US take: His sole pay for painting the kitchen was a big hug and a kiss. The work is tedious, but the pay isn't bad.

payable adj. due, owed, owing, outstanding, unpaid, receivable, mature: This bill is payable at the end of the month.

payment n. 1 See pay, 12, above. 2 expenditure, disbursement, distribution, outlay, fee, contribution, charge, expense, payout: You are not authorized to make payment of any amount over œ100.

pay-off n. 1 See pay, 12, above. 2 result, outcome, upshot, conclusion, wind-up, settlement, final reckoning, Colloq punch-line, crunch, grand finale, Slang US and Canadian kicker: The pay-off was that permission to march on Sunday was denied. 3 bribe, graft, rebate; ransom, blood-money, Colloq kickback, hush money, Chiefly US payola, US plugola: The pay-off was always made in cash, in used notes.

16.2 peace...

=-

peace n. 1 serenity, tranquillity, calm, calmness, placidity or placidness, peace of mind, quiet, peacefulness, peaceableness, stillness: For a summer holiday, we enjoy the peace of the Lakes. 2 harmony, accord, harmoniousness, concord, amity, peacefulness, peacetime; cease-fire, armistice, truce: Since the Second World War, Europe has enjoyed more than 45 years of relative peace.

peaceable adj. 1 See peaceful, 1, below. 2 pacific, inoffensive, dovish, peace-loving, mild, non-violent, non-belligerent, unbelligerent, unwarlike, non-warring, non-combative, temperate, agreeable, compatible, congenial, genial, friendly, amiable, amicable, cordial, civil: Despite cultural differences, the two countries maintained peaceable relations.

peaceful adj. 1 peaceable, serene, placid, calm, quiet, quiescent, gentle, restful, tranquil, untroubled, undisturbed, unruffled: After our week-end guests left, the house was again peaceful. 2 See peaceable, 2, above.

peacemaker

n. conciliator, pacifier, reconciler, propitiator, placater, pacificator, mediator, arbitrator, intermediator, intermediary, diplomat, appeaser, interceder, go-between, referee, umpire, adjudicator; peacemonger: The ambassador was called upon to act as peacemaker between the warring nations.

peak n. 1 top, pinnacle, crest, ridge, tor, mountain top, summit, mountain, eminence, elevation, hill: We were just able to make out the snow-capped peaks in the distance. 2 top, tip, tiptop, apex, acme, culmination, apogee, zenith, high point, crown, extreme, utmost, uttermost, perfection, ne plus ultra, consummation, climax: Irene has brought the office to a peak of efficiency. 3 visor, brim, US bill, nib: The peak of the fisherman's cap serves as an eyeshade.

--v. 4 rise, crest, culminate, (reach a) climax, top (out): Prices peaked during the Christmas shopping season.

peaky adj. peakish, pinched, unhealthy, sickly, ailing, ill, unwell, infirm, unwholesome, pale, pallid, wan, waxen, anaemic, pasty, sallow, whey-faced, ashen, washed out, drained, emaciated, wasted, gaunt, hollow-eyed, haggard, drawn, weak, feeble, US peaked: Paul has been looking a bit peaky of late.

peal n. 1 ringing, ring, carillon, chime, chiming, toll, tolling, clang, clangour, tintinnabulation, clamour, reverberation; knell; clap, crash, roar, rumble, thunder: The constant peal of the bells nearly drove him mad. The doleful peal rang out for yet another fisherman lost at sea. A resounding peal of thunder shook the house.

--v. 2 ring, toll, chime, clang, tintinnabulate, reverberate, resonate, resound; knell; boom, crash, roar, roll, rumble, thunder: The cowbells pealed plaintively, reminding me of my youth in the Alps. Lightning flashed, and the echoing thunder pealed through the valley.

pearl n. gem, treasure, prize, cream, flower, wonder, nonpareil: Wasn't Cuba once called the Pearl of the Antilles?

pearly adj. nacreous, pearl-like, perlaceous, lustrous, mother-of-pearl: The dress was trimmed with pink lace and little pearly buttons.

peasant n. rustic, countryman, countrywoman, farmer, provincial, (farm) worker, (country) bumpkin, bucolic; peon, fellah, muzhik or mouzhik or mujik; Historical esne, serf, Archaic swain, hind, churl, Derogatory yokel, hill-billy, bog-trotter, oaf, lump, lout, boor, churl, clod, clodhopper; Colloq US and Canadian hick, galoot or galloot, Derogatory hayseed, rube, Derogatory and offensive US poor white (trash): Regimes came and went, but the life of the medieval peasant endured.

peccadillo

n. slip, error, lapse, mistake, infraction, violation, misdeed, shortcoming, misstep, blunder, faux pas, indiscretion, gaffe, botch, stumble, fault, petty sin, (minor) transgression, trespass, Colloq slip-up, goof: We have to forgive the occasional peccadillo.

peculiar adj. 1 odd, curious, strange, queer, bizarre, weird, unusual, abnormal, anomalous, aberrant, deviant or deviate, eccentric, uncommon, outlandish, exceptional, extraordinary, out of the ordinary, offbeat, unorthodox, atypical, idiosyncratic, unconventional, out-of-the-way, quaint, unique, singular, one of a kind, sui generis, distinct, distinguished, special, particular, quirky, funny, freakish, Slang far-out, freaky, Brit rum: Don't you agree that anyone who by choice goes barefoot in winter is a bit peculiar? She enjoys a peculiar immunity to colds. 2 Usually, peculiar to. typical of, characteristic of, characterized by, natural to, symptomatic of, appropriate to or for, distinctive of, restricted to, specific to, indicative of, denotative of, limited to, individual to, personal to, special to, unique to; seen or observed (only) in, local to, native to, indigenous to: Such behaviour is peculiar to those who have served long prison sentences.

--n. 3 Typography arbitrary, sort: Characters with diacritical marks are called 'peculiars' in the printing trades.

peculiarity

n. 1 idiosyncrasy, oddity, eccentricity, abnormality, irregularity, quirk, kink, crotchet, caprice: Keeping alligators was only one of Jess's peculiarities. 2 feature, characteristic, property, quality, trait, attribute, earmark, hallmark, mark, particularity, singularity, Brit speciality, US specialty: One of the peculiarities of the books is their wide margins.

pedantic adj. 1 didactic, doctrinaire, donnish, pedagogic, pedantical, preachy, professorial, bookish, ostentatious, pretentious, sententious, pompous, vain, stuffy, stilted, stiff, dry: A pedantic approach to marketing may be all right in the classroom, but it doesn't sell products. 2 perfectionist, scrupulous, overscrupulous, finicky or finical, fussy, punctilious, fastidious, meticulous, exact, chop-logic, hair-splitting, quibbling, Colloq nit-picking: His secretary left because of his pedantic criticisms of her work.

peddle v. sell, hawk, market, vend, huckster, Colloq push, flog: He is a publishing tycoon today, but he started by peddling books door-to-door.

pedestal n. 1 foundation, base, platform, stand, substructure, mounting, pier, foot, mounting, support, Technical plinth, socle, dado: The statue crumbled away and only its pedestal remained. 2 put or place or set on a pedestal. glorify, exalt, worship, deify, revere, idolize, dignify, apotheosize, ennoble, elevate, raise: No woman is worth putting on a pedestal.

pedestrian

n. 1 walker, stroller, ambler, rambler, footslogger; itinerant, peripatetic: A special crossing has been installed for pedestrians.

--adj. 2 boring, dull, banal, tiresome, commonplace, mundane, tedious, unimaginative, uninteresting, monotonous, run-of-the-mill, humdrum, stock, prosaic, insipid, dry, flat, jejune, colourless, dreary, pale, ordinary, hackneyed, trite, (as) dull as ditch-water or US also dishwater, vapid, stale, uninspired, uninspiring, spiritless, lifeless, dead: The dean delivered his customary pedestrian lecture to the new students. 3 walking, strolling, ambulatory, on foot, rambling, peripatetic: We were exhausted after taking a pedestrian tour of London.

pedigree n. (line of) descent, ancestry, genealogy, blood, bloodline, line, extraction, lineage, stock, heritage, family, derivation, birth, parentage, strain, roots: His pedigree is all right, but does he have brains as well as money?

pedlar n. hawker, (door-to-door) salesman or saleswoman or salesperson, vendor, huckster, seller, colporteur, US peddler, drummer, Archaic chapman, Colloq cheapjack: How can you expect the watch to work if you bought it from a street pedlar?

peek v. 1 peer, peep, glimpse, look, squint (at), squinny (at), Scots keek, Colloq take or have a gander (at), Brit take a dekko (at): A small boy peeked out from under the blanket.

--n. 2 look, glimpse, peep, glance, Scots keek, Colloq gander, look-see: I've had a peek at what Father hid in the cupboard.

peel v. 1 Sometimes, peel off. skin, strip (off), pare, flay, flake off, descale, decorticate; shuck, hull, bark, scale; desquamate: Beulah, peel me a grape. 2 strip, undress, disrobe; do a striptease: In the last act, everyone peels to the bare skin. 3 peel off. take off or doff, strip off: I peeled off my coat and dived into the canal to save her.

--n. 4 skin, rind, coating, peeling: Don't you like candied orange peel?

peep v. 1 chirp, tweet, cheep, squeak, twitter, pipe, chirrup: The birds peeped excitedly when they saw the cat.

--n. 2 chirp, tweet, cheep, squeak, twitter, pipe, chirrup, chirr or chirre or churr: The night was filled with the peep of the frogs at the pond. 3 sound, complaint, outcry, protest, protestation, grumble, murmur: The students didn't let out a peep when ordered to remain after class.

peer° n. 1 noble, nobleman or noblewoman, lord or lady, aristocrat; duke or duchess, marquess or marchioness, earl or countess, viscount or viscountess, baron or baroness: As a peer of the realm, she had certain rights. 2 equal, coequal, compeer, like, match, confrŠre, associate, colleague: Under law, he is entitled to trial by a jury of his peers.

peerý v. 1 peep, peek, squint (at), squinny (at), look, examine; spy: Scrooge peered closely at the accounts ledger. 2 appear, peep through or out, break through, show, become visible, emerge: Now and then, the moon peered through the clouds.

peerless adj. without equal, unequalled, matchless, unmatched, unrivalled, unique, incomparable, beyond compare, unparalleled, nonpareil, inimitable, unexcelled, unsurpassed, superior, superb, excellent, supreme, superlative, finest, best, ne plus ultra, sovereign, consummate, pre-eminent, paramount: James's mother was a peerless beauty and the toast of her generation.

peevish adj. irritable, testy, touchy, fretful, ill-humoured, waspish, petulant, crabbed, churlish, querulous, short-tempered, ill-natured, tetchy, cross, bad-tempered, ill-tempered, fault-finding, captious, carping, cavilling, crusty, curmudgeonly, crotchety, cantankerous, grumpy or grumpish, pettish, acrimonious, splenetic, Colloq bilious, US and Canadian and Irish cranky: He's very peevish today, so don't get on his wrong side.

peg v. 1 pin, dowel, rod, stick, bolt; thole or thole-pin; clothes-peg, hook: Pegs and glue are often used for fastening good furniture together. Hang your coat on the peg. 2 off the peg. ready-made, ready-to-wear, stock: As bespoke clothing is so dear, I buy mine off the peg. 3 take down a peg (or two). humble, diminish, lower, subdue, suppress, downgrade, dishonour, mortify, humiliate, put down, abase, debase, devalue or devaluate: He was acting a bit high and mighty, so she took him down a peg or two.

--v. 4 fasten, secure, make fast, fix, attach, pin: They pegged the tent firmly to the ground. 5 fix, attach, pin, set (by), control by, limit by, restrict, confine, freeze, bind, regulate, govern: In indexing, the rate of inflation is often used for pegging wages. 6 toss, throw, shy, flip, sling, cast: I'll bet a fiver you can't peg that stone across the river. 7 peg away or US also along. work (away) (at), persevere (at), apply oneself (to), persist (in or at), go to or at (it), keep at (it), stick to or with or at (it), stay with or at (it), carry on (with or at), Colloq plug away (at), beaver away (at), hammer or bang or peck away (at): Trevor pegs away at his homework every evening.

pell-mell adv. 1 helter-skelter, slapdash, rashly, feverishly, incautiously, confusedly, chaotically, wildly, impulsively, recklessly, slap-bang, impetuously, hastily, hurriedly, precipitately, spontaneously: The ice-cream vendor pedalled down the street with the children running pell-mell after him.

--adj. 2 helter-skelter, slapdash, rash, feverish, incautious, confused, disordered, disorderly, disorganized, wild, mad, chaotic, tumultuous, panicky, impulsive, reckless, precipitate, impetuous, hasty, hurried: Quick action by the soldiers was responsible for the pell-mell rout of the attackers.

--n. 3 confusion, disorder, chaos, tumult, pandemonium, turmoil, mˆl,e or melee, furore or US furor, commotion, bedlam, brouhaha, hubbub, excitement: In the pell-mell that followed, several bystanders were injured.

pelt° v. 1 bombard, shower, bomb, pepper, strafe, batter, shell, assail, assault, attack, US pummel or pommel, belabour, pound, Old-fashioned lay about, Slang US clobber, wallop, paste, work over: The hooligans pelted the crowd with sticks and stones. 2 Often, pelt down. beat, dash, pound, hit; come down, teem, pour, Colloq rain cats and dogs, bucket down, US rain pitchforks: The rain came pelting down just as we were ready to go out. 3 pelt along or over. hurry, rush, run, dash, shoot, scoot, scurry: The constables pelted along after the escaping thief.

--n. 4 stroke, blow, whack, hit, smack, slap, thwack, bang, thump, Colloq wallop, belt: Chris received a pelt on the head from a rock.

peltý n. skin, hide, coat, fur, fleece: The trappers traded the fox pelts for supplies.

pen° n. 1 writing instrument, fountain-pen, ball-point (pen), Brit trade mark Biro, Old-fashioned quill: Dearest, I have finally found time to put pen to paper. I prefer a pen with a fine point.

--v. 2 write (down or up or out), jot down, (make a) note (of), draft, draw up, compose, put on paper, commit to paper, commit to writing, put in writing, scribble, scrawl, scratch, Formal indite: While he was in prison, he penned letters to many men of influence.

pený n. 1 coop, enclosure, hutch, (pig)sty, pound, fold, stall, confine, US and Canadian corral: We kept the geese in a pen by the barn.

--v. 2 Often, pen up. enclose, confine, coop up, shut up, impound, round up, US and Canadian corral: It took three of us to pen the sheep. During the blockade, the ships remained penned up at Gibraltar.

penal adj. correctional, punitive, disciplinary: Crime and its punishment are covered in the penal code. He was sent to a penal colony for life.

penalize v. punish, discipline, mulct, amerce, fine, handicap, impose or invoke a penalty against, impose a penalty on, Formal amerce; sentence: This judge penalizes speeders mercilessly.

penalty n. punishment, discipline, penance, sentence; forfeit, fine, handicap, price, mulct, Formal amercement; imprisonment, incarceration: The prosecution demanded the maximum penalty allowable under law for the crimes.

penance n. 1 punishment, penalty, reparation, amends, atonement, self-punishment, self-mortification, regret, repentance, contrition, suffering, penitence: A year of public service was fair penance for the offence. 2 do penance. pay, suffer, make amends or reparation(s), atone, wear sackcloth and ashes or a hair-shirt: She has done penance enough for her crime.

penchant n. inclination, bent, proclivity, leaning, bias, predisposition, predilection, partiality, proneness, propensity, tendency, affinity, liking, preference, fondness, taste: Agnes has a penchant for tennis and for men who play tennis.

pendant n. ornament, tassel, lavaliere or lavaliŠre, medallion, locket, necklace, riviŠre, ear-drop, tear-drop, drop, Old-fashioned carcanet: I recognized the pendant she wore at her neck as my mother's.

pending prep. 1 awaiting, waiting (for), depending on, till, until, 'til, till such time as; while, during: Pending the outcome of the trial, he was remanded in custody.

--adj. 2 unsettled, undetermined, undecided, unconfirmed, unfinished, inconclusive, up in the air, hanging fire, in the balance, in abeyance; forthcoming, imminent, impending, in the offing, Colloq US in a holding pattern, on hold: The pending negotiations on the rent will determine whether we stay or move house. While the matter is pending, we can do nothing.

pendulous adj. 1 pendent, hanging, drooping, sagging, dangling, suspended, pensile: The weaver-bird's pendulous nest is a marvel of engineering. 2 swinging, swaying, waving, undulating, undulatory, oscillating, oscillatory: I was hypnotized by the pendulous motion of the bell.

penetrate v. 1 enter, go or pass through or into, pierce, bore (into), lance, spear, go through or into, probe, stab, puncture, perforate, drill: The shell penetrated the tank's heavy armour. 2 permeate, diffuse, suffuse, pervade, filter or seep through, percolate through: The soothing balm penetrated my aching body and I relaxed into a deep sleep. 3 reach, get to, get at, touch, affect, hit, strike: Her cruel words penetrated the darkest recesses of my soul. 4 sink in, be absorbed, be understood, register, come or get through, become clear, come across, be realized, Colloq soak in, seep in: It took a while for it to penetrate that she did not wish to see him again. 5 understand, sense, become aware or conscious of, see (through), gain insight (in)to, discern, uncover, discover, find (out), comprehend, grasp, work out, unravel, fathom, perceive, Colloq get, figure out, dig, Brit suss out: Will we ever penetrate all of nature's secrets?

penetrating

adj. 1 incisive, trenchant, keen, searching, deep, acute, sharp, perceptive, perspicuous, percipient, quick, discriminating, intelligent, sensitive, clever, smart, discerning: This is a penetrating analysis of the situation which clarifies many of the issues. 2 piercing, shrill, strident, ear-splitting, ear-shattering, pervasive; pungent, harsh, biting, mordant, strong, stinging: I was awakened by a penetrating scream. The penetrating odour of ammonia assailed my nostrils.

penetration

n. 1 piercing, perforation, puncturing, incision, puncture, penetrating; inroad, entry, entrance: Penetration of the skull required great effort on the part of the surgeon. Tentatively we attempted the penetration of the jungle. 2 insight, keenness, perception, percipience, intelligence, perspicacity, perspicuity, perspicaciousness, perceptiveness, acuteness, incisiveness, sensitivity, sentience, understanding, acuteness, discernment, discrimination, cleverness, shrewdness, wit, quick-wittedness: We all admired the penetration that was shown by the examiner in the questions she asked.

penitence n. penance, contrition, regret, repentance, regretfulness, compunction, remorse, sorrow, sorrowfulness, ruefulness, grief, sadness, shame, self-reproach: Brendan's penitence for his former misdeeds was shown by his selfless devotion to good causes.

penitent adj. contrite, regretful, repentant, remorseful, sorrowful, sorry, rueful, grief-stricken, sad, shame-faced, self-reproachful, apologetic, conscience-stricken: He said that he was truly penitent for all the heinous crimes of his youth.

penmanship

n. calligraphy, hand, fine Italian or Italic hand, handwriting, script, writing, longhand, chirography: One must admire the penmanship of the medieval scribes.

pennant n. flag, banner, pennon, streamer, banderole, gonfalon, ensign, colours, standard, labarum, Chiefly nautical jack, Nautical and yachting burgee, Technical vexillum: We saw from her pennant that she was a Spanish frigate.

pension n. 1 benefit, allowance, annuity, subsistence, superannuation, allotment, old-age pension, US social security, Colloq golden handshake: She finds that her pension is not enough to live on.

--v. 2 Usually, pension off. (cause to) retire, superannuate; dismiss; Colloq shelve, put out to pasture: The company cut back on staff by pensioning off everyone over 60.

pensioner n. retiree, veteran, senior citizen, Brit OAP (= 'old-age pensioner'), US golden-ager, Colloq Brit wrinkly: The housing units were specially designed for pensioners' needs.

pensive adj. thoughtful, meditative, musing, in a brown study, cogitative, contemplative, reflective, preoccupied, ruminative, wistful, day-dreaming, in a trance, in a reverie, brooding, sober, serious, grave: I found the professor in a pensive mood, staring out the window.

pent-up adj. restrained, constrained, repressed, stifled, bottled-up, corked-up, held in, checked, held back, curbed, inhibited, restricted: After weeks of frustration, he wanted to release his pent-up emotions in a scream. They went jogging to try to work off their pent-up energy.

penurious adj. 1 stingy, mean, penny-pinching, miserly, tight, tight-fisted, close-fisted, cheese-paring, niggardly, cheap, ungenerous, parsimonious, skinflinty, thrifty, begrudging, grudging, Scrooge-like, Colloq near, Brit mingy, US chintzy: Even today, he is so penurious that he gives his children an allowance of only 50 pence a week. 2 poor, poverty-stricken, destitute, impoverished, penniless, indigent, needy, impecunious, necessitous, beggarly, bankrupt, Colloq (dead or flat) broke, stony-broke, hard up: They lived in penurious circumstances.

people n.pl. 1 persons, individuals, men and women, ladies and gentlemen, males and females, living souls; mortals; bodies: How many people can this aeroplane carry? 2 relations, relatives, kin, kinsmen, kinsfolk or US and Canadian kinfolk, family, kith and kin; ancestors, forebears: His people left Russia in 1917. 3 masses, (general) public, hoi polloi, consumers, multitude, populace, common people, common man, commoners, subjects, citizenry, plebeians, grass roots, proletariat, rank and file, the crowd, commonalty or commonality, mobile vulgus, bourgeoisie; man or woman in the street, Everyman, Everywoman, Mr or Mrs Average, Brit A. N. Other, Joe Bloggs, man or woman on the Clapham omnibus, US John Doe, Mary Doe, Richard Roe, John Q. Public; Colloq and often derogatory proles, the rabble, ragtag and bobtail, silent majority, common herd, Brit plebs, admass: Politicians unable to communicate with the people are seldom elected.

--n.sing. 4 race, community, clan, tribe, folk, nation, population, society: On the subject of religion, they were a people divided. The anthropologists were studying the peoples south of the Sahara.

--v. 5 populate, colonize, settle, occupy: The area was once peopled with Berber tribesmen.

pep n. 1 vigour, vim (and vigour), spirit, animation, vivacity, energy, verve, zest, fire, sprightliness, life, effervescence, sparkle, ebullience, dash, enthusiasm, brio, ,lan, Colloq zip, zing: He certainly has a lot of pep for an octogenarian.

--v. 2 pep up. stimulate, invigorate, animate, enliven, vitalize, vivify, energize, exhilarate, quicken, arouse, breathe (some) life into, inspire, activate, actuate, fire, cheer up, Colloq buck up, spark, work or fire up, US wind up: After those defeats, the team needed to be pepped up.

pepper v. sprinkle, scatter, dot, speckle, fleck, spot, spray, bespeckle, speckle, spatter, stipple, mottle: The letter was peppered with ink-spots. Their speech was peppered with swear-words.

perceive v. 1 see, make out, discern, catch sight of, glimpse, spot, espy, apprehend, take in, notice, note, discover, descry, observe, mark, remark, identify, distinguish, detect: I perceived his hesitation when a solo flight was suggested. She perceived a strange odour emanating from the cupboard. 2 appreciate, grasp, feel, sense, apprehend, understand, gather, comprehend, deduce, infer, figure out, ascertain, determine, conclude, decipher, Colloq dig, catch on: She perceived that he was going to renege on his promise to take her to the Riviera. 3 Often, perceive of. regard, view, look on, consider, contemplate, judge, deem, believe, think: Calthorpe perceives of himself as a great actor, but he is dreadful. This gesture is often perceived as threatening.

percentage
n. share, part, portion, proportion, interest, piece, Colloq cut: We are to get a percentage of the profits in return for our investment.

perceptible
adj. discernible, detectable, observable, perceivable, noticeable, distinguishable, recognizable, apparent, evident, notable, obvious, patent, manifest, palpable, plain, clear, prominent, unmistakable or unmistakeable: There are perceptible differences between your playing and Heifetz's.

perception
n. 1 appreciation, grasp, apprehension, understanding, comprehension, knowledge, perspective, view: Mrs Hart's perception of the situation is quite different from mine. 2 intuition, insight, instinct, feel, feeling, sense, impression, awareness, idea, notion, consciousness, realization: Norton hasn't the slightest perception of what is going on behind his back at the office.

perceptive
adj. astute, alert, attentive, quick, alive, quick-witted, intelligent, acute, sharp, sensitive, sensible, percipient, discerning, observant, perspicacious; on the qui vive; Colloq on the ball: No one was sufficiently perceptive to predict the full extent of the recession. She is perhaps the most perceptive journalist writing on French politics today.

perch n. 1 roost, rest, seat; spot, location, position, place, site, vantage point, perspective: From his perch at the top of the cliff, Martin had a clear view of the cave entrance.

--v. 2 roost, rest, sit, nest; place, put, set, situate, locate, position, site: The owl was perched in the tree, waiting for the vole to appear from its burrow.

percolate v. seep, steep, transfuse, leach, drip, drain, strain, filter, pervade, infuse, ooze, transude, filtrate, trickle, permeate, suffuse, penetrate: The earth is too hard for the rainwater to percolate to the roots below. It slowly percolated through to me that Clare had told the police where I was hiding.

perdition n. damnation, hell, hell-fire, doom, ruin, condemnation, destruction, ruination, downfall: If what divines call lust be punished with perdition, who is pure?

peremptory
adj. 1 commanding, imperative, compelling, obligatory, mandatory, irrefutable, incontrovertible, decretal: After the sound of marching came a peremptory knock at the door. 2 decisive, final, preclusive, arbitrary, categorical, unequivocal, dogmatic, unconditional, unreserved, flat, out-and-out, outright, unqualified, unmitigated: The juror was subject to peremptory dismissal because he was the defendant's cousin. 3 imperious, authoritative, tyrannical, despotic, dictatorial, autocratic, emphatic, positive, firm, insistent, Colloq bossy: How dare you take such a peremptory tone when speaking to your father!

perennial adj. 1 durable, lasting, continuing, enduring, constant, stable, lifelong, persistent, incessant, uninterrupted, continual, continuous, chronic: Once we expected our rivers to yield a perennial supply of fresh water. Bing Crosby has been a perennial favourite since the 1930s. 2 permanent, unfailing, never-failing, endless, unending, ceaseless, unceasing, imperishable, undying, perpetual, everlasting, timeless, eternal, immortal, Literary sempiternal: The artificial flowers at her grave symbolize Ingrid's perennial youth.

perfect adj. 1 complete, absolute, finished, (fully) realized, fulfilled, consummate, pure, entire, whole, perfected, best, ideal: Many have called the building a perfect example of the Palladian style. 2 sublime, ideal, superb, supreme, superlative, best, flawless, faultless, pre-eminent, excellent, exquisite, unexcelled, unrivalled, unequalled, unmatched, matchless, incomparable, nonpareil, peerless, inimitable: At her throat she wore the most perfect emerald I had ever seen. 3 blameless, righteous, holy, faultless, flawless, spotless, immaculate: Nobody's perfect. 4 fitting, appropriate, (just) right, apt, suitable, correct, proper, made-to-order, best, Brit spot on: Arthur would be perfect for the role of Quasimodo. 5 precise, exact, accurate, correct, unerring, true, authentic, lifelike, right on, excellent, superlative, superb, reliable, Brit spot on: These copies are perfect replicas of the original. 6 utter, absolute, complete, mere, thorough, out-and-out, through-and-through; 24-carat, categorical, unqualified, unalloyed, unmitigated: We were perfect strangers at the time. Once again, he's shown himself to be a perfect idiot. 7 expert, proficient, accomplished, experienced, practised, skilful, skilled, gifted, talented, adept, deft, adroit, polished, professional, masterly, masterful: The admirable Crichton was the perfect butler.

--v. 8 complete, finish, realize, fulfil, consummate, accomplish, achieve, effect, execute, carry out or through, bring (to perfection): The design of the bicycle was not to be perfected for several years. 9 rectify, correct, emend, (put or set) right, improve, refine, polish, cultivate, better, ameliorate: Viniculture has been perfected in the Bordeaux region of France.

perfection

n. 1 purity, flawlessness, faultlessness, sublimity, superiority, excellence, pre-eminence, transcendence: Though we strive for perfection, we never can achieve it. 2 completion, completeness, achievement, fulfilment, realization, consummation, accomplishment, attainment: The building doesn't reach perfection till the last roof-tile is in place. 3 ideal, paragon, model, archetype, pattern, mould, standard, idealization, essence, quintessence, acme, pinnacle, summit: Machiavelli probably achieved the perfection of political cunning.

perfectionist

n. 1 purist, pedant, precisian, precisionist, stickler, Colloq fusspot, US fuss-budget: The foreman is such a perfectionist that there's no satisfying him.

--adj. 2 meticulous, precise, punctilious, scrupulous, exacting, particular, demanding, fastidious, fussy; obsessive;

Colloq picky, nit-picking: She takes a perfectionist attitude towards everything she does.

perfectly adv. 1 completely, purely, entirely, absolutely, utterly, totally, wholly, consummately, thoroughly, quite, definitely, positively, unambiguously, unequivocally, unmistakably or unmistakeably, explicitly, truly, very, extremely, extraordinarily, remarkably: Your instructions for finding the house were perfectly clear. 2 superbly, superlatively, flawlessly, faultlessly, impeccably, inimitably, incomparably, sublimely, exquisitely, marvellously, admirably, wonderfully: Sally plays that Chopin ,tude perfectly. 3 exactly, precisely, flawlessly, faultlessly, accurately, literally, line for line, word for word, verbatim, letter for letter, to the letter, literatim: He knows the entire Koran perfectly. 4 very, full, quite, Dialect right, Brit jolly, Slang damned, bloody: You know perfectly well that I hate cauliflower.

perfidious
adj. treacherous, deceitful, traitorous, treasonous, treasonable, disloyal, faithless, false, unfaithful, untrue, insidious, hypocritical, two-faced, Janus-faced, corrupt, dishonest: His perfidious brother betrayed him to his enemies.

perfidy n. perfidiousness, treachery, deceit, traitorousness, treason, disloyalty, faithlessness, falseness, falsity, unfaithfulness, infidelity, insidiousness, hypocrisy, betrayal: The name of Judas is a byword for perfidy.

perforate v. riddle, puncture, pierce, honeycomb, drill, bore, punch; enter, penetrate, pass into: A perforated metal screen let through a pattern of light. The bullet perforated his lung but he survived.

perform v. 1 execute, complete, bring off or about, accomplish, effect, carry out, discharge, dispatch, conduct, carry on, do, fulfil, Colloq pull off, knock off, polish off; put up or shut up: Postmen perform their duties despite hazards such as vicious dogs. 2 do, act, behave, operate, function, run, work, go, respond: How does your new car perform? 3 present, stage, produce, put on, mount, do; act, depict, take, play, appear as: The repertory group performs six shows weekly. He is performing the role of Scrooge.

performance

n. 1 execution, completion, bringing off or about, accomplishment, effectuation, carrying out, discharge, dispatch, conduct, carrying-on, doing, fulfilment: The soldiers acquitted themselves nobly in the performance of their duties. 2 show, exhibition, exhibit, play, playing, engagement, act, appearance, Colloq gig: She does three performances nightly at the Blue Angel. 3 playing, acting, interpretation, presentation, portrayal: His performance in the courtroom scene was outstanding. 4 behaviour, conduct, deportment, demeanour: Her performance in the pub last night was outrageous. 5 scene, show, exhibition, display: The lad put on quite a performance till threatened with punishment by the headmaster.

performer n. actor or actress, artiste, Thespian, trouper, player: They received their training as performers in a repertory company.

perfume n. 1 essence, extract, parfum, eau-de-Cologne, toilet water, scent, fragrance; aroma, odour, smell, bouquet, nose: What is that wonderful perfume you're wearing? The perfume of the wine wafted over to me.

--v. 2 scent: Orange blossoms perfumed the air.

perfunctory

adj. 1 routine, mechanical, automatic, robot-like, unthinking, businesslike, unspontaneous, formal, dismissive, inattentive, uninvolved, apathetic, indifferent, unconcerned, removed, distant, d,gag,, offhand, heedless, uninterested, hasty, hurried, superficial, cursory, fleeting, rushed: I don't care for the perfunctory service in those fast-food restaurants. 2 careless, slipshod, slovenly, negligent, sketchy, spotty: The bill, made out in a perfunctory fashion, was incorrect.

perhaps adv. maybe, possibly, it is possible that, conceivably, as the case may be, it may be, Archaic or literary perchance, peradventure, Archaic or dialect mayhap: Perhaps she'll be on the next train.

peril n. danger, threat, risk, jeopardy, exposure, vulnerability, susceptibility, uncertainty, insecurity: You enter there at your peril. It was a time of peril for us all. The child's life was in peril.

perilous adj. dangerous, risky, hazardous, vulnerable, susceptible, uncertain, insecure, unsafe, unsure: Why undertake such a perilous journey alone?

perimeter n. boundary, border, borderline, margin, periphery, limit(s), bounds, ambit, circumference, edge, verge, fringe(s), Archaic or literary bourn or bourne: The perimeter of the military base is patrolled by sentry dogs.

period n. 1 interval, time, term, span, duration, spell, space, stretch; while; Colloq chiefly Brit patch: During the period of his absence, his children had grown up. I waited a short period, then phoned again. We went through a bad period last year. 2 era, days, epoch, aeon, age, years: During the Old English period, very little was written down. 3 full stop: Place periods at the ends of sentences.

periodic adj. periodical, intermittent, regular, recurrent, repetitive, iterative, cyclic(al), repeated; episodic, sporadic, occasional: We called in the plumber because of the periodic hammering in the pipes. The next periodic return of Halley's comet is expected in 2061-62.

periodical

n. magazine, journal, paper, publication, newsletter, organ, serial, weekly, fortnightly, semi-monthly, monthly, bi-monthly, quarterly, semi-annual, annual, yearbook, almanac, Rare hebdomadal or hebdomadary: Nicole's story will soon be published in an important literary periodical.

peripheral

adj. 1 incidental, unimportant, minor, secondary, inessential or unessential, non-essential, unnecessary, superficial, tangential, irrelevant, beside the point: Let's ignore the peripheral issues for the time being and concentrate on the important ones. 2 circumferential, external, perimetric, outside, outer: The peripheral measurement of the figure is seven inches.

periphery n. 1 perimeter, circumference, border, edge, rim, brim, ambit, boundary, bound, margin: Trees will be planted along the periphery of the car park. 2 surface, edge, superficies: Your analysis deals with the periphery, not the core, of the problem.

perish v. die, expire, lose (one's) life, be killed, be lost, meet (one's) death, be destroyed: Three gnus perished in the fire at the zoo.

perjury n. lying, mendacity, mendaciousness, forswearing, prevarication, bearing false witness: The defendant was acquitted and the prosecution witnesses charged with perjury.

perk n. See perquisite, below.

perk up v. cheer up, become jaunty, brighten, liven up, invigorate, smarten up, quicken, (re)vitalize, pep up, revive, inspirit, Colloq buck up: The old lady perks up when her grandchildren come to visit. To perk up the party, Peter suggested we should all play a game.

perky adj. lively, cheery, cheerful, jaunty, bouncy, bright, invigorated, vigorous, vitalized, peppy, spirited, sprightly, frisky, animated, vivacious, effervescent, bubbly, buoyant, gay, Colloq bright-eyed and bushy-tailed, full of pep: Sue's been quite perky since she started going with Trevor.

permanence
n. permanency, stability, durability, fixedness, changelessness, lasting quality, longevity, endurance, persistence, dependability, reliability, survival: The new roofing material is being tested for permanence.

permanent adj. 1 everlasting, eternal, unending, endless, perpetual, unceasing, constant, undying, imperishable, indestructible, stable, abiding, long-lasting, lasting, enduring, perennial, long-lived, durable: The satellite is in permanent orbit around the earth. 2 unchanging, invariable, changeless, fixed, unchangeable, immutable, unalterable, stable, persistent: This stain is permanent and will not come out in the wash. Bonham is a permanent member of the executive committee.

permanently
adv. forever, for good, once and for all, forevermore, always, eternally, everlastingly; perpetually, constantly, incessantly,

non-stop, continuously, endlessly, ceaselessly, unendingly, interminably: Is the boy permanently disabled? According to one theory the universe will not continue to expand permanently.

permeate v. imbue, diffuse, penetrate, pervade, infiltrate, enter, spread through(out), saturate, seep through(out), percolate through, soak through: He felt the warmth permeate every limb. Greed seemed to permeate every level of society.

permissible

adj. allowable, admissible, acceptable, allowed, permitted, tolerable, legal, licit, lawful, legitimate, authorized, proper, (all) right; pardonable, excusable, venial, Colloq OK or okay, kosher, legit: Some things that are permissible are not necessarily honourable.

permission

n. consent, assent, leave, acquiescence, sufferance, tolerance, laxity, leniency or lenience, leave, licence, sanction, acceptance, authorization, approval, approbation, countenance, allowance, liberty, indulgence, sufferance; franchise, enfranchisement: Have you permission to watch television? She eats anything she likes with the doctor's permission.

permissive

adj. assenting, consenting, indulgent, lenient, latitudinarian, acquiescent, lax, easygoing, liberal, tolerant, non-constraining, non-restrictive, libertarian: Allison grew up in the permissive society of the 1960s.

permit   v. 1 Often, permit to. allow, agree (to), consent (to), give permission or leave (to), authorize, sanction, license, tolerate, countenance, suffer, brook, admit, grant, enable, empower, franchise, enfranchise; let: He permitted me to use his name as a reference. Do they permit smoking here?

--n. 2 licence, authority, authorization, franchise, warrant; pass, passport, visa: Your parking permit expired last week. Shirley has a permit to visit Tibet.

perpendicular

adj. 1 erect, upright, vertical, plumb, straight (up and down): The plumb-line shows that the wall isn't perpendicular. 2

Often, perpendicular to. at right angles (to), at 90 degrees (to): The two paths are perpendicular to one another.

perpetrate

v. commit, execute, perform, carry out or through, effect, effectuate, accomplish, do, be responsible for, practise, Colloq pull (off): Atrocities were perpetrated on both sides in the war.

perpetual adj. 1 eternal, infinite, everlasting, never-ending, unending, perennial, ageless, timeless, long-lived, permanent, unceasing, lasting, enduring, unvarying, unchanging, immutable, invariable, undeviating, Literary sempiternal: They declared their perpetual love for each other. 2 constant, uninterrupted, continuous, unfailing, incessant, persistent, unremitting, unending, non-stop, endless, recurrent, continual, repetitive: Why should we have to listen to the neighbours' perpetual bickering?

perpetuate

v. continue, maintain, extend, keep (on or up), keep going, preserve, memorialize, immortalize, eternalize: Thoughtless jokes can perpetuate damaging stereotypes.

perpetuity

n. permanence, constancy, timelessness; eternity: The estate was bequeathed to the townspeople in perpetuity.

perplex v. confuse, bewilder, puzzle, mystify, distract, baffle, befuddle, confound, muddle, disconcert, stump, nonplus, stymie, stupefy, stun, daze, dumbfound or dumfound, flabbergast, Colloq bamboozle, hornswoggle, Chiefly US and Canadian discombobulate, throw for a loop: The more I tried to understand bathymetric semiotics, the more perplexed I became. Anne-Marie's reticence perplexed us all.

perplexing

adj. confusing, bewildering, puzzling, mystifying, baffling, confounding, disconcerting, stupefying, flabbergasting, enigmatic, paradoxical, incomprehensible, unfathomable, impenetrable, recondite, arcane, labyrinthine, complex, complicated, Byzantine, intricate, involved, convoluted, twisted, knotty, Gordian: The writing is filled with perplexing references to the author's personal experiences, of which the reader is told nothing.

perplexity

n. 1 confusion, bewilderment, bafflement, distress, doubt, difficulty: My perplexity grew as he related his version of the event. 2 intricacy, complexity, complicatedness, arcaneness, reconditeness, impenetrability, impenetrableness, involvement, unfathomability, obscurity, difficulty: The more deeply the enigma was probed, the greater its perplexity. 3 puzzle, enigma, mystery, dilemma, problem, paradox, catch-22, quandary, predicament, bind: Because of the interlocking directorships of the companies, we faced many perplexities in trying to sort out what had happened to the funds.

perquisite

n. consideration, emolument, bonus, (fringe) benefit, extra, bonus, dividend, gratuity, tip, douceur, baksheesh, token (of appreciation), US lagniappe or lagnappe, Colloq perk: It was traditional to provide each director with a company car as a perquisite.

persecute v. 1 oppress, suppress, subjugate, maltreat, ill-treat, abuse, outrage, molest, victimize, tyrannize, afflict, punish, martyr, torment, torture: For years black people had been persecuted. 2 bother, annoy, pester, plague, hector, bully, badger, harry, harass, irritate, worry, vex, trouble, worry, importune, hound: Her lawyers continually persecuted him for non-payment of alimony.

persecution

n. 1 oppression, suppression, subjugation, maltreatment, ill-treatment, abuse, outrage, molestation, victimization, tyranny, affliction, punishment, torment, torture: They suffered persecution because of their difference of religion. 2 bother, annoyance, hectoring, bullying, badgering, harrying, harassing, irritation, worry, vexation, trouble: The press is often guilty of the persecution of famous people.

perseverance

n. persistence, steadfastness, determination, resolution, resolve, decisiveness, decision, firmness, purposefulness, pertinacity, staying power, stamina, sedulousness, assiduity, grit, pluck, tirelessness, indefatigableness, indefatigability, patience, endurance, diligence, devotion, tenacity, doggedness, stubbornness, inflexibility, obstinacy, obstinateness, obdurateness, Colloq guts, US stick-to-it-iveness: Perseverance is essential for success in the theatre.

persevere v. Often, persevere in or with or at. persist, resolve, decide, endure, continue, carry on or through, keep at or on or up, be steadfast or staunch or constant, keep going, stand fast or firm, see through, be or remain determined or resolved or resolute or stalwart or purposeful or uncompromising, be tenacious or persistent or constant or pertinacious or assiduous or sedulous, be tireless or untiring or indefatigable, show determination or pluck or grit, be plucky, be patient or diligent or stubborn or inflexible or adamant or obstinate or obdurate, show or exhibit or demonstrate patience or diligence or stubbornness or inflexibility or obstinacy or obduracy, remain dogged, pursue doggedly, be intransigent or intractable, cling to, stick to, support, stop at nothing, sustain, Colloq stick with, stick (it) out: We must persevere if we are to win. I shall persevere in my loyalty.

persist v. 1 Often, persist in or at. persevere, be persistent, insist (on), stand firm or fast, be steadfast or staunch, strive, toil, labour, work (hard) (at): She persists in arguing her innocence. Only those who persist will succeed. 2 remain, continue, endure, carry on, keep up or on, last, linger, stay: The bad weather persisted through the weekend.

persistence
n. perseverance, resolve, determination, resolution, steadfastness, tenacity, constancy, assiduity, stamina, tirelessness, indefatigability, indefatigableness, tirelessness, pluck, grit, patience, diligence, pertinacity, doggedness, stubbornness, obstinacy, obduracy: By sheer persistence he got his own way.

persistent
adj. 1 persisting, persevering, tenacious, steadfast, firm, fast, fixed, staunch, resolute, resolved, determined, unfaltering, unswerving, undeviating, unflagging, tireless, untiring, indefatigable, dogged, unwavering, stubborn, obstinate, obdurate, inflexible, rigid: He was persistent in

his demands for justice. The inspector never gave up his persistent pursuit of criminals. 2 continuing, constant, continuous, continual, unending, interminable, unremitting, unrelenting, perpetual, incessant, unceasing, non-stop: The persistent rainy weather began to depress us. At last he gave in to her persistent complaints and bought a washing machine.

person n. 1 individual, human (being), being, man or woman or child, (living) soul; mortal: Not a single person knew the answer to my question. 2 in person. physically, personally, bodily, actually, myself or yourself or himself or herself or ourselves or yourselves, or themselves, Colloq in the flesh: The correspondent visited the battlefield in person to see for himself the extent of the carnage. I know their records, but I have never seen them in person.

persona n. face, front, fa‡ade, mask, guise, exterior, role, part, character, identity, self: Her office persona is quite different from the one she displays at home.

personage n. celebrity, luminary, VIP, name, notable, somebody, personality, star, superstar, magnate, mogul, Colloq big-shot, big wheel, hotshot, hot stuff, Brit big noise, Theatre US headliner: My cousin is fast becoming a personage in the financial world.

personal adj. 1 individual, physical, bodily, actual, live; in person, in the flesh: The star is scheduled to make a personal appearance on tonight's chat show. 2 intimate, exclusive, private, special, particular: Would you do me a personal favour? I hear they are having personal problems. 3 intimate, close, dear, bosom, familiar, special: Wendy happens to be a personal friend of ours. 4 intimate, individual; disparaging, slighting, offensive, derogatory, critical, deprecating, belittling, adverse, unfriendly, insulting: He should confine his criticism to her acting and avoid personal remarks.

personality
n. 1 character, nature, temperament, disposition, make-up, persona; identity, psyche: Miles has an extremely abrasive personality that has upset many people. 2 celebrity, luminary, star, superstar, name, headliner, somebody: Whom shall we get as a personality to attract the crowds?

personalized

adj. monogrammed, initialled, individualized; signed: They ordered personalized stationery with their new address on it.

personally

adv. 1 in person, alone, by oneself, on one's own, myself or yourself or himself or herself or ourselves or yourselves or themselves, Colloq in the flesh: She has not met them personally, but we have. They will see to the matter personally. 2 in one's own view or opinion, for one's part, for oneself, as far as one is concerned, from one's own viewpoint, from where one stands, as one sees it or things, as for oneself: Personally, I wasn't sure I would make it. 3 as an individual, as a person, privately, in private: I like him personally but would never have him as my dentist.

personify v. 1 embody, typify, exemplify, epitomize, be the embodiment of, manifest, represent, stand for, symbolize, Archaic impersonate, personate: In my view, he personifies everything that is evil. 2 humanize, personalize: In literature, personifying inanimate things in nature with human attributes is called the pathetic fallacy.

perspective

n. 1 (point of) view, viewpoint, standpoint, prospect, vantage point, position, angle, Colloq where one is coming from: I can see that my view would be illogical from his perspective. 2 attitude, position, angle, approach, sentiment, outlook, lookout: Management has a different perspective on what is good for the company.

perspiration

n. sweat, dampness, wetness; sweating; Technical sudor; diaphoresis: I could feel the perspiration stand out on my forehead. They say that perspiration makes one cooler on a hot day.

persuade v. 1 urge, induce, prevail upon, influence, exhort, importune, dispose, incline, prompt, sway, press: The officer persuaded him to surrender. 2 bring round, convince, win over, talk or argue into, convert: We persuaded her to open the door. He was persuaded to vote Labour.

persuasion
n. 1 inducement, inducing, influence, influencing, exhortation, exhorting, persuading: At the bank's persuasion, the company tightened up its cashflow management. She has extraordinary powers of persuasion at her command. 2 opinion, belief, creed, faith, set of beliefs, faith, religion, (religious) conviction; sect, denomination, faction, school (of thought), affiliation: Till he met Maggie, he had always been of the Baptist persuasion.

persuasive
adj. convincing, telling, influential, effective, productive, impressive, efficacious, cogent, weighty, compelling, forceful, valid, winning, authoritative, dynamic: His most persuasive argument for our leaving was that if we stayed we'd be shot.

pert adj. 1 forward, brash, brazen, cheeky, insolent, impertinent, flippant, saucy, bold, presumptuous, impudent, disrespectful, audacious, rude, impolite, uncivil, ill-mannered, unmannerly, Archaic malapert, Colloq fresh, flip, out of line, brassy, big-mouthed, wise-guy, Slang Brit smart-arsed, US smart-ass(ed), wise-ass(ed): He's a clever child, but I don't like his pert manner. 2 lively, jaunty, ebullient, vivacious, enthusiastic, bouncy, sprightly, brisk, cheerful, jolly, bright, perky, animated, nimble: She is usually quite pert in the morning, becoming depressed as the day wears on.

pertain v. Often, pertain to. concern, refer to, regard, have reference or relation (to), apply (to), relate (to), include, cover, affect, appertain (to), be appropriate (to), be fitting (for), befit, bear on, have bearing (on): The sign, 'Keep Off the Grass', does not pertain to the people who mow the lawn, Morris.

pertinent adj. pertaining, appropriate, fitting, suitable, apt, relevant, germane, apropos, apposite: Try to keep your comments pertinent to the subject under discussion.

perturb v. upset, disturb, fluster, ruffle, unsettle, disconcert, make uneasy, discomfit, vex, worry, agitate, shake up, alarm, disquiet, confuse, discompose, unnerve, addle, disorganize: He became quite perturbed when the police asked him to help with their inquiries.

perusal n. reading, scrutiny, check, examination, study, inspection, scanning, review: I saw nothing blasphemous in my perusal of the text.

peruse v. read, study, scan, scrutinize, examine, inspect, review, browse, run one's eye over: As Gregory was perusing the ancient manuscript, a sudden draught blew out the candle.

pervasive adj. penetrating, pervading, omnipresent, general, inescapable, prevalent, universal, widespread, ubiquitous, permeating, permeative: A pervasive sense of doom in the castle made everyone feel uneasy.

perverse adj. 1 wrong, wrong-headed, awry, contrary, wayward, incorrect, irregular, unfair, improper, contradictory: It was most perverse of you to change your mind after all the arrangements had been made. 2 cantankerous, testy, curmudgeonly, churlish, crusty, bad-tempered, petulant, captious, cross, cross-grained, peevish, waspish, snappish, bilious, splenetic, fractious, ill-tempered, quarrelsome, irascible, sullen, contentious, touchy, obstreperous, crabby, crabbed, irritable, surly, Colloq grouchy, Brit stroppy, US and Canadian cranky: With everything going wrong, Catherine feels particularly perverse today. 3 stubborn, self-willed, wrong-headed, intractable, wilful, obdurate, obstinate, pigheaded, adamant, inflexible, unbending, refractory, unyielding: I refuse to give in to a perverse child just because he has a tantrum.

perversion
n. 1 deviation, irregularity, misdirection, corruption, subversion, distortion, twisting, falsification, misrepresentation, diversion, sidetracking: The conduct of this trial has been a perversion of the course of true justice. 2 unnatural act, deviation, deviance or deviancy, abnormality, depravity, vice, aberration, debauchery, Colloq kinkiness, Brit kink: Every kind of perversion flourished in ancient Rome.

pervert v. 1 deflect, divert, sidetrack, turn aside or away, subvert, misdirect, distort, twist, abuse, falsify, misapply, misconstrue, misrepresent, corrupt: By withholding evidence, you have perverted the course of justice. 2 seduce, lead astray, debauch, degrade, corrupt, demoralize, subvert: He was accused of perverting young girls. 3 deviant, degenerate, debauchee, US deviate, Colloq weirdo: I worry about your being out late, when there are so many perverts about.

perverted adj. deviant, deviate, abnormal, amoral, unmoral, immoral, bad, depraved, unnatural, warped, twisted, profligate, dissolute, delinquent, degenerate, evil, wicked, malign, malicious, malefic, malevolent, evil-minded, sinful, iniquitous, base, foul, corrupt, unprincipled: Members of the Hell-Fire Club yielded themselves up to the most perverted, abandoned behaviour.

pessimistic

n. gloomy, negative, despairing, hopeless, inauspicious, depressed, despondent, dejected, melancholy, downhearted, heavy-hearted, defeatist, glum, sad, blue, unhappy, cheerless, joyless, cynical, bleak, forlorn: The bears in the Stock Exchange take a pessimistic view of share prices.

pest n. nuisance, annoyance, nag, irritant, bother, gadfly, bane, trial, heckler, vexation, curse, thorn in one's flesh, Colloq pain (in the neck), Slang US (Yiddish) nudge or noodge or nudzh, nudnik, Taboo slang pain in the Brit arse or US ass: That man is such a pest, I wish he'd leave me alone.

pester v. annoy, nag, irritate, irk, bother, get at or to, badger, plague, vex, fret, hector, harass, harry, heckle, nettle, chafe, peeve, pique, provoke, exasperate, bedevil, get or grate on (someone's) nerves, get under (someone's) skin, get in (someone's) hair, try (someone's patience), torment, persecute, Brit chivvy, Colloq drive (someone) up the wall, needle, give (someone) the needle, hassle, ride, give (someone) a hard or bad time, bug: Please stop pestering me about going to the football game.

pestilence

n. 1 plague, epidemic, pandemic, Black Death, Rare pest: The pestilence raged throughout all Europe, killing 50 million people. 2 scourge, blight, curse, cancer, canker, bane, affliction: How are we to overcome the pestilence of greed?

pet° n. 1 darling, favourite, idol, apple of (one's) eye, Colloq Brit blue-eyed boy, US fair-haired boy: You know that you were always Father's pet.

--adj. 2 tame, trained, domesticated: Doesn't the landlord take a dim view of your keeping a pet alligator in the bath? 3 favourite, favoured, preferred, cherished, special, particular; indulged, prized, treasured, precious, dearest, adored, darling: Building the summer-house was Desmond's pet project. Elizabeth's pet pupil is Anne.

--v. 4 caress, fondle, stroke, pat; cuddle, nuzzle, nestle, snuggle, Colloq neck, smooch or Australian and New Zealand also smoodge or smooge, Chiefly US and Canadian make out: Small children need to be petted a lot. Two teenagers were petting in the back seat of the car. 5 humour, pamper, favour, baby, coddle, cosset, mollycoddle, cocker, spoil, indulge, dote on: His mother pets him far too much.

petý n. (bad or ill) temper, pique, sulk, (bad) mood, fume, Colloq Brit paddy or paddywhack or paddywack: He's in a terrible pet because they forgot to cancel the milk when they went on holiday.

peter out v. diminish, evaporate, wane, come to nothing or naught or US also nought, die out, disappear, fail, fade (out or away), dwindle (into nothing), run out, give out, flag, melt away: The path petered out after a mile or so and they realized that they had lost their bearings.

petite adj. delicate, dainty, mignon(ne), diminutive, small, little, slight, tiny, small-boned, Colloq Brit dinky: It was incongruous to see the basketball player with a petite blonde.

petition n. 1 request, application, solicitation, suit, entreaty, supplication, plea, appeal: An anti-pollution petition, signed by thousands of people, was delivered to the Department of the Environment.

--v. 2 request, ask, apply to, apply for, solicit, sue, call upon, entreat, supplicate, plead, appeal (to), appeal (for), beseech, implore, importune, Rare obsecrate: The shopkeepers petitioned the council for better police protection.

petrified adj. 1 horrified, horror-stricken, terrified, terror-stricken, panic-stricken, frightened, afraid, paralysed, numbed, benumbed, frozen: The maiden stood petrified as the dragon, breathing fire, approached. 2 shocked, speechless, dumbfounded or dumfounded, dumbstruck, stunned, thunderstruck, astonished, astounded, confounded, stupefied, appalled, aghast, Colloq flabbergasted: The firemen rescued three petrified children who were huddled in a corner. 3 ossified, fossilized: These were not stones but the petrified remains of ancient trees.

petrify v. 1 frighten, scare, horrify, terrify, paralyse, numb, benumb: I was petrified by the noise of the explosion. 2 shock, dumbfound or dumfound, stun, astonish, astound, amaze, confound, disconcert, stupefy, appal, Colloq flabbergast: The sight of so much destruction petrified even hardened reporters. 3 ossify, fossilize, turn to stone: Over thousands of years the desert conditions petrify the wood.

petty adj. 1 insignificant, trivial, paltry, minor, inferior, niggling, trifling, negligible, puny, inessential, non-essential, inconsequential, unimportant, slight, nugatory, of no account, US dinky, Colloq piddling, measly, no great shakes, no big deal, small-time, Brit twopenny-halfpenny or tuppenny-halfpenny, US and Canadian picayune: He has been convicted only of petty crimes. 2 miserly, mean, mingy, stingy, cheese-paring, grudging, small-minded, cheap, niggardly, parsimonious, tight, tight-fisted, close, close-fisted: It was very petty of you to refuse the beggar a few pence.

petulant adj. peevish, pettish, impatient, ill-humoured, testy, waspish, irascible, choleric, cross, captious, ill-tempered, bad-tempered, splenetic, moody, sour, bilious, crabby, crabbed, irritable, huffish, huffy, perverse, snappish, crotchety, cantankerous, curmudgeonly, grouchy, grumpy: With a petulant gesture she hurled the rose away.

16.3 phantom...
=-

phantom n. 1 apparition, spectre, ghost, spirit, phantasm, shade, wraith, revenant, vision, Formal eidolon, phantasma, Colloq spook: The so-called phantom of the opera turned out to be a real person. 2 figment (of the imagination), illusion, delusion, chimera or chimaera, hallucination, fancy, mirage: She was a phantom of delight When first she gleamed upon my sight.

Pharisaic adj. Pharisaical, hypocritical, insincere, self-righteous, pretentious, holier-than-thou, sanctimonious, pietistic(al), formalistic, canting, unctuous, oily, slimy, Literary Tartuffian, Pecksniffian, Colloq goody-goody , Chiefly Brit smarmy: I cannot tolerate his Pharisaic preaching.

Pharisee n. hypocrite, pretender, dissembler, humbug, fraud, whited sepulchre, pietist, formalist, canter, Literary Tartuffe, Pecksniff, Colloq phoney or US also phony: She is such a Pharisee with her pious little anecdotes.

pharmacist

n. pharmacologist, Rather old-fashioned or formal apothecary, Brit (pharmaceutical) chemist, US and Canadian druggist, Formal posologist, Colloq pill pusher, US pill roller: The pharmacist said that those pills have bad side-effects.

pharmacy n. 1 dispensary, Rather formal or old-fashioned apothecary, Brit chemist's (shop), US and Canadian drugstore, druggist's: Stop off at the pharmacy and get me something for this headache, please. 2 pharmaceutics, pharmacopoeia: Research has vastly expanded modern pharmacy.

phase n. 1 stage, period, development, step: The boy is just going through a phase. 2 time, moment, juncture, occasion: At this phase of the discussion, I should like to introduce a new subject. 3 state, form, shape, configuration, aspect, appearance, look, condition, status: Here is a diagram of the phases of the moon at various points in its orbit. 4 facet, side, angle, viewpoint, point of view, Colloq slant: Only one phase of the argument has so far been presented.

--v. 5 phase in. (gradually) introduce, usher in, work in, inject, insert, insinuate, include, incorporate: The new work schedules will be phased in over the next month. 6 phase out. ease out or off, taper off, wind up, put a stop to, (gradually) eliminate, remove, withdraw, discontinue, end: The use of non-biodegradable and non-recyclable packaging is being phased out.

phenomenal

adj. outstanding, remarkable, exceptional, extraordinary, unusual, freakish, rare, uncommon, singular, unorthodox, unprecedented, unheard-of, unparalleled, unbelievable, incredible, marvellous, wonderful, amazing, astonishing, astounding, staggering, stunning, prodigious, miraculous, fantastic, Colloq mind-boggling, mind-blowing,: She made a phenomenal recovery and can walk again.

phenomenon

n. 1 event, happening, occurrence, incident, occasion, experience, fact: Everyone knows the phenomenon of the souring of milk. 2 wonder, curiosity, spectacle, sight, sensation, marvel, rarity, exception, miracle, Slang stunner: An eight-year-old chess champion is truly a phenomenon, even in Russia.

philanderer

n. flirt, gallant, rou,, rake, Casanova, Lothario, Don Juan, Romeo, lover, playboy, gay dog, Colloq lady-killer, womanizer, Old-fashioned wolf, Slang stud: In his memoirs it emerged what a philanderer he had been, often dallying with six women at once.

philanthropic

adj. charitable, eleemosynary, generous, magnanimous, munificent, benevolent, open-handed, ungrudging, unstinting, beneficent, humanitarian, altruistic, humane: Finlay was always philanthropic, and spent much of his fortune on worthy causes.

philanthropist

n. contributor, donor, benefactor or benefactress, patron or patroness, sponsor, Maecenas, Good Samaritan, humanitarian, altruist: Some anonymous philanthropist provided the funds for the new school swimming-pool.

philanthropy

n. 1 generosity, benevolence, charity, patronage, magnanimity, charitableness, public-spiritedness, big-heartedness, thoughtfulness, alms-giving, kind-heartedness, beneficence, benignity, liberality, open-handedness: Carnegie's philanthropy was focused on libraries and education. 2 donation, contribution, largesse, aid, grant, assistance, help: Mrs Ander's recent philanthropy allows us to offer six new scholarships.

philistine

n. 1 boor, barbarian, yahoo, lowbrow, Boeotian, vulgarian, ignoramus, bourgeois, US Babbitt: Charlotte never could abide the philistines who put love of money above love of culture.

--adj. 2 uncultured, uncultivated, tasteless, commonplace, unenlightened, unrefined, unread, unlettered, uneducated, untutored, unlearned, narrow-minded, anti-intellectual, boorish, lowbrow, dull, prosaic, boring, bourgeois, crass, commercial, materialistic: The television companies were accused of pandering to the basest appetites of the philistine viewer.

philosophical

adj. 1 philosophic, abstract, esoteric, learned, scholarly, erudite, theoretical, rational, logical, impractical: The person who is out of a job cares nothing about philosophical reasons for unemployment. 2 detached, unconcerned, unemotional, unimpassioned, composed, thoughtful, reflective, meditative, cogitative, contemplative, judicious, sober, level-headed, realistic, practical, pragmatic(al), down-to-earth, cool, calm, serene, placid, stoical, patient, unruffled, cool-headed, tranquil, unperturbed, even-tempered, temperate, moderate, equable, equanimous, imperturbable: Over the years, Evelyn had learned to take a philosophical attitude towards her husband's shortcomings.

philosophy

n. 1 metaphysics, epistemology, logic, natural or moral or metaphysical philosophy, rationalism, thinking, aesthetics: He views philosophy as the attempt to describe and codify universal truths. 2 viewpoint, (point of) view, outlook, opinion, attitude, feeling, sentiment, idea, notion, ideology, (set of) beliefs or values, tenets, Weltanschauung, world-view: Harold's philosophy of life is 'Live and let live'. 3 stoicism, sang-froid, control, self-control, restraint, coolness, composure, calmness, serenity, placidity, cool-headedness, equanimity, thoughtfulness, imperturbability, self-possession, aplomb, dispassion, patience, resignation: You may be sure that Paul allows nothing to disturb his philosophy.

phlegmatic

adj. 1 phlegmatical, stoic(al), unemotional, unenthusiastic, unanimated, sluggish, apathetic, uninvolved, lethargic, unfeeling, uncaring, cold, unresponsive, stolid, unmoved, insensitive, unaffected, insensible, indifferent, unconcerned, uninterested, listless, torpid, indolent, inactive, passive, Rare hebetudinous: Hutton is far too phlegmatic to be stirred by the fervour of the revolutionaries. 2 phlegmatical, self-possessed, self-controlled, controlled, restrained, composed, calm, serene, tranquil, placid, cool-headed, equanimous, cool, undisturbed, unperturbed, unruffled, imperturbable, even-tempered, philosophical, temperate, moderate: One has to learn to be phlegmatic about things going wrong at the office.

phobia n. fear, horror, terror, dread, hatred, detestation, abhorrence, loathing, execration, aversion, revulsion, repugnance, dislike, distaste, antipathy; disquiet, nervousness, qualm, distrust, suspicion, apprehension, worry: He suffers from claustrophobia, which means that he has a phobia for enclosed places, and he avoids lifts and telephone booths.

phoney adj. 1 unreal, fake, synthetic, artificial, factitious, false, fraudulent, imitation, bogus, spurious, counterfeit, mock, ersatz, paste, trumped up; sham, pretended, insincere, hypocritical, dissimulating, deceitful, dishonest; US also phony, Colloq pseudo or Brit pseud: They were caught trying to collect insurance on the theft of a string of phoney pearls. Every time she wanted something, she'd turn on the phoney charm.

--n. 2 fake, fraud, imitation, counterfeit, forgery, hoax, sham, US also phony: The diamond she's wearing is a phoney. 3 trickster, faker, humbug, impostor, pretender, charlatan, mountebank, double-dealer, counterfeiter, quack, deceiver, US also phony, Colloq Brit pseud, Slang US paper-hanger: Madame Tatiana claims to be able to communicate with the dead, but I think she's a phoney.

photograph

n. 1 snapshot, print, picture, slide, transparency; negative, positive, Colloq photo, snap, shot, pic (pl. pix): Heinrich has taken some marvellous photographs of the children.

--v. 2 take a picture (of), shoot, film, take, Colloq snap: He photographed Jennifer holding her kitten.

photographer

n. lensman, lenswoman, cameraman, camerawoman, cinematographer, paparazzo (pl., paparazzi), Old-fashioned photographist: The photographers clustered round the prime minister.

photographic

adj. 1 vivid, natural, realistic, graphic, accurate, exact, precise, faithful, detailed, lifelike, true to life: Many such neo-realist paintings are virtually photographic. 2 cinematic, filmic, pictorial: Uncannily, a photographic image appeared on the Shroud under certain light.

phrase n. 1 clause, noun phrase, verb phrase, prepositional phrase, adverbial phrase, adjectival phrase: When asked for an example of a verb phrase, the student responded, 'Shut up'. 2 expression, word-group, collocation, locution, idiom, idiomatic expression, collocution, proverb, motto, slogan, saying, catch-phrase, adage, maxim, axiom, saw, colloquialism, clich,, platitude, commonplace, Colloq chestnut: Do you know the source of Churchill's famous phrase, 'Blood, sweat, and tears'? 3 phraseology, phrasing, wording, language, usage, way or manner of speaking, diction, parlance, fa‡on de parler, modus loquendi, modus scribendi, speech habit, style, choice of words, word choice, syntax, vocabulary: He was to 'let slip', to use Shakespeare's phrase, 'the dogs of war'.

--v. 4 express, term, word, put, frame, formulate, couch, put into words, put or set forth, verbalize, articulate, voice, utter, say, write; describe, delineate: I am pondering over the best way to phrase this example.

physical adj. bodily, corporeal, corporal, fleshly, incarnate, carnal, mortal, earthly, natural, somatic; material, tangible, palpable, real, actual, true, concrete, manifest, solid: Curtis doesn't have the physical strength to lift that weight. As a chemist, James deals with the physical, not the spiritual universe.

physician n. doctor, medical doctor, M.D., doctor of medicine, medical practitioner, general practitioner, G.P., medical man or woman, specialist, diplomate, Brit navy surgeon, Colloq doc, medico, medic, US man, Slang sawbones, bones: You ought to see a physician if the pain persists.

physique n. build, figure, body, frame, shape, bodily structure, form, Slang chassis, US bod, built: She has the physique of an Amazon but the disposition of a lamb.

16.4 pick...
=-

pick   v. 1 Often, pick out. select, choose, cull, sort out, hand-pick, single out, opt for, fix or decide upon or on, elect, settle upon or on, screen (out), sift (out): Melanie was picked to succeed Hubert as president. 2 pluck, gather, collect, harvest, bring or take in, garner: Scores of extra workers were brought in to pick apples. 3 provoke, foment, incite, start, initiate, work or stir up: He tried to pick an argument with me about who is taller. 4 pick at. a criticize, carp at, find fault with, cavil (at or about), quibble (at or about), pick on, nag (at), niggle (at), harass, pester, annoy, irritate, bother: Stop picking at your brother! b nibble (at), peck at: We can't get him to eat a thing, he just picks at his food. 5 pick off. shoot (down), kill: We picked them off one by one as they emerged from the trench. 6 pick on. bully, ride, intimidate, abuse, browbeat, badger, harry, hector, harass, tease, taunt, needle, torment: Robert must learn not to pick on the smaller boys. 7 pick out. a See 1, above. b discern, distinguish, tell apart, make out, recognize, separate, discriminate: I was able to pick out a distant rider, approaching swiftly. From amongst the forest sounds she picked out the song of the nightingale. 8 pick up. a raise (up), lift (up), heft, hoist, take up: The stone is too heavy to pick up. Please pick up that piece of paper. b gather, collect, glean, take up: I wish you would pick up your clothes. c tidy (up), neaten, straighten up or out, clean (up): She refuses to continue to pick up after him. d acquire, learn, become acquainted with; master; Colloq get the hang of: We picked up a little Spanish on our holiday. e acquire, find, come by, get hold of, obtain; buy, purchase, get: Basil picked up a few bad habits in the army. Let's pick up a bottle of wine on the way. f improve, get better, gain, make headway, recover, perk up, rally, recoup, (make) progress, move ahead, increase, Colloq make a comeback: Business usually picks up before Christmas. g accelerate, speed up: The pace picked up as they approached the finish line. h arrest, apprehend, take into custody, Colloq pinch, collar, nab, bust, run in, pull in, Brit nick: Two men were picked up trying to break into the bank. i call for, give a lift or ride to, collect, go for or US also after, go to get: I'll pick you up at the railway station at noon. j meet, introduce oneself to, strike up an acquaintance with, accost, make advances to: I think she picked him up in a wine bar. k catch, come down with, contract, get: He picked up a mystery virus in the Tropics.

--n. 9 selection, choice, option, preference: She could have had the pick of any man in the place. Take your pick. 10 choicest, best, crŠme de la crŠme, cream: The early shoppers had already taken the pick of the crop.

picket n. 1 stake, pale, post, peg, stanchion, upright, vertical, palisade, paling: The walls of the fort were of strong pickets tapered to a point at the top. 2 demonstrator, protester, striker: The police prevented the pickets from attacking workers who entered the factory. 3 picquet, sentinel, watchman, guard, observer, patrol, vedette or vidette or vedette boat: The picket reported no unusual activity.

--v. 4 enclose, shut in, wall in, fence (in), hem in, box in: We picketed the camp for the night. 5 protest, demonstrate, blockade: Strikers picketed the factory 24 hours a day.

picnic n. 1 garden party, fˆte champˆtre, meal alfresco, barbecue, US clam-bake, US and Canadian cookout: The clouds had gone, and it was a great day for a picnic. 2 child's play, Colloq pushover, snap, cinch, piece of cake, walk-over, US and Canadian breeze, lead-pipe cinch: Sailing home with a quartering wind - it was a picnic all the way. 3 no picnic. difficult, arduous, torture, torturous, agony, agonizing, painful, disagreeable, discomfiting, misfortune, Colloq tough, tough luck, tough going, rough, a pain in the neck, US tough sledding, Taboo slang pain in the Brit arse or US ass: Being marooned on a desert island for a month was no picnic, I assure you.

pictorial adj. 1 graphic, picturesque, vivid, telling, striking, expressive, plain, explicit, clear, lucid: Many of the poet's images are amazingly pictorial. 2 illustrated: They published a pictorial history of biblical lands just for children.

picture n. 1 drawing, painting, representation, portrait, depiction, artwork, illustration, sketch, photograph: Here is a picture of our cottage in the Cotswolds. 2 image, (perfect or exact) likeness, (carbon) copy, double, duplicate, twin, (exact) replica, look-alike, facsimile, Colloq spitting image or spit and image, Slang (dead) ringer: Isn't she just the picture of her mother? 3 impression, idea, notion, understanding, image: I think I have a pretty good picture of the situation. 4 model, prototype, epitome, essence, embodiment, incarnation, personification, perfect example: From her autobiography, you might believe her to be the picture of sweet innocence. 5 put (someone) in or into the picture. inform or advise fully, Colloq fill (someone) in: Put me into the picture about what went on here last night.

--v. 6 envision, envisage, visualize, imagine, fancy, conceive of, see in the mind's eye: Picture yourself lying on a beach in the Bahamas. 7 depict, draw, portray, paint, represent, show, illustrate, display: In this fresco, Salome is pictured dancing before Herod Antipas.

picturesque
adj. 1 colourful, interesting, intriguing, unusual, unique, original, charming, idyllic, fetching, attractive, pretty, lovely, quaint, delightful, pleasing, scenic: We came upon a picturesque village in which all the houses were half-timbered Tudor style with thatched roofs. 2 colourful, graphic, realistic, vivid, striking: Bernard has written a picturesque account of a walking trip through Bavaria.

piece n. 1 bit, morsel, scrap, chunk, hunk, sliver, lump, portion, particle, fragment, shred, shard or sherd, remnant, quantity: All the beggar wanted was a piece of bread. A piece of shrapnel is still embedded in my arm. 2 wedge, slice, serving, helping, portion: You may not have a piece of pie till you've eaten your vegetables. 3 share, portion, fraction, part, division, segment, section, interest, holding, percentage, proportion: It turned out that a piece of the company had been sold without shareholders' approval. 4 (short) story, article, essay, report, theme, draft; poem; music, opus, (musical) number, composition, arrangement, tune, melody, song, air, jingle, ditty; production, play, drama, sketch, show: I read that piece about cholesterol in yesterday's paper. He wrote a piece for the flute. Which piece by Strindberg will you put on next? 5 man, token, chessman, chess-piece, chequer, Brit draughtsman: Once you have touched a piece you must move it. 6 go to pieces. fall apart, disintegrate, crumble, shatter; be shattered, be upset, be disturbed, have a nervous breakdown, go out of or lose control, break down, Colloq crack up: Another earthquake and this wall will go to pieces. At the news of his son's death, Joe simply went to pieces. 7 in pieces. smashed, destroyed, ruined, shattered, broken, in smithereens, smashed: The vase lay in pieces at my feet. Though I had won the case, my life was in pieces. 8 of a piece (with). similar, similarly constituted, alike, of the same sort or kind or type, uniform, the same, part and parcel (of the same thing), identical; in harmony, in agreement, harmonious, in keeping: This book is of a piece with the others in the same series. All his paintings are of a piece. 9 piece of cake. Colloq snap, cinch, US and Canadian lead-pipe cinch, breeze: The French exam was a piece of cake. 10 piece of (one's) mind. Colloq scolding, rebuke, lecture, reprimand, tongue-lashing, chiding, rap over or on the knuckles, Colloq hell, what for, dressing-down, US bawling-out, chewing-out: She gave him a piece of her mind about the amount of time he spent in the pub. 11 piece of the action. share, portion, interest, stake, percentage, holding, quota: For œ1000 you can have a piece of the action. 12 speak (one's) piece. have (one's) say, express (one's) opinion, say what is on (one's) mind; vent (one's) spleen, Colloq get a load off (one's) mind or chest: All were given a chance to speak their piece.

--v. 13 piece together. assemble, put together, connect, gather, compose; fix, unite, restore, mend: We pieced together what happened from the witnesses' accounts. You'll never be able to piece together the bits of that lamp.

piŠce de r,sistance

n. highlight, (special or main) feature or attraction, sp,cialit, (de la maison), masterpiece, chef-d'oeuvre, Brit speciality, US specialty: The piŠce de r,sistance of the meal was a magnificent gateau.

piecemeal adv. 1 piece by piece, little by little, inch by inch, bit by bit, inchmeal, gradually, by degrees, slowly, in bits and pieces, by fits and starts, fitfully, intermittently, sporadically, disjointedly: The ministry insisted that the plans should remain as one package and not be introduced piecemeal over the next two years. 2 into fragments or shreds or pieces: He angrily took the cheque and tore it up piecemeal.

--adj. 3 fragmentary, bit by bit, inchmeal, gradual, disjointed, sporadic: The South-east could become one huge traffic jam unless the Government drops its piecemeal approach to planning.

pier n. 1 wharf, landing (stage or place), jetty, quay, floating dock, Technically inaccurate dock: The ship is tied up at the pier. 2 pile, piling, post, upright, column, support, buttress: Owing to lack of maintenance, the piers supporting the building have crumbled.

pierce v. 1 stab, puncture, penetrate, thrust or poke into, lance, spear, spit, run through or into, skewer, impale, fix, transfix: The arrow pierced his heart and he dropped down dead. 2 bore into or through, penetrate, drill, perforate, riddle, punch through, hole, tunnel into: The wall is pierced to provide ventilation. 3 penetrate, fathom, see, understand, comprehend,, grasp, discover, realize: His keen analytical mind allowed him to pierce the mysteries of nature. 4 affect (keenly), touch, move, melt, stir, rouse, pain, cut to the quick, wound, strike: It pierced my heart to hear the child weep.

piercing adj. 1 strident, shrill, harsh, ear-splitting, ear-shattering, high-pitched, screaming, shrieking, screeching, loud, blaring: The piercing sound of the police siren made me sit bolt-upright in bed. 2 probing, searching, penetrating, sharp, keen; arresting, gripping, spellbinding, enthralling, fascinating, entrancing: I was completely transfixed by her piercing green eyes. 3 penetrating, icy, frosty, frigid, chilling, freezing, cold, numbing, keen, wintry, arctic, raw, bitter, fierce, biting, nipping, nippy: Shivering in that piercing wind I thought I'd never be warm again. 4 stabbing, shooting, excruciating, exquisite, acute, sharp, severe, agonizing, fierce, intense, painful, racking: I suddenly felt a piercing pain in my left ear.

piety n. 1 devotion, devotedness, respect, deference, dedication, dutifulness, loyalty, affection: In filial piety he hung the painting of his parents prominently over the mantelpiece. 2 piousness, reverence, veneration, devoutness, holiness, godliness, pietism, devotedness, devotion, observance, religiousness, grace, sanctity: His life of piety had marked him out as a likely candidate for sainthood.

pile° n. 1 heap, mound, stack, accumulation, stockpile, mass, supply, deposit, collection, assemblage, batch, hoard, aggregation, congeries, conglomeration, assortment, agglomeration, concentration, amassment: A huge pile of gravel was delivered today for the builders. 2 money, fortune, wealth, holdings, Colloq bundle, loot, mint, Slang packet, tidy sum, US bankroll, roll, wad: She made her pile selling arms to terrorists. 3 Usually, piles. abundance, over-abundance, superabundance, plenty, great deal, quantity, ocean(s), lot(s), stack(s), plethora, Colloq oodles, ton(s), bag(s), heap(s), bundle(s): He made piles of money in the black market. 4 See pier, 2, above.

--v. 5 Often, pile up. stack (up), heap (up), mound, accumulate, stockpile, amass, collect, assemble, hoard, aggregate, cumulate: Please pile the cartons in the corner. 6 pile in or into. enter, get in or into, crowd in or into, pack in or into, flood in or into, jam in or into, crush in or into, Colloq jump in or into: All of us piled into my car to go to the cinema. 7 pile it on. exaggerate: Ronnie was really piling it on about how much his new job pays. 8 pile on or onto. a get in or into or on or onto, crowd on or onto, jump on or onto: We piled on the train after the game. They piled onto the hay wagon for a ride home. b attack, assault, jump on, overwhelm: They all piled on me and I had to give up. 9 pile out. leave, get out (of) or down (from), exit: When we arrived, we all piled out of the bus. Hordes of people piled out of the theatre. 10 pile up. accumulate, amass, collect: The rubbish kept piling up during the strike.

pileý n. nap, shag, plush; fuzz, bristles, fleece: The feet of the chairs have left marks in the carpet pile.

piles n.pl. haemorrhoids.

pile-up n. 1 (road) accident, smash, crash, (multiple) (rear-end) collision, Colloq smash-up: Thirty cars were involved in that pile-up on the motorway. 2 accumulation, heap, stack, mass, Colloq mountain: How will you ever get through that pile-up of work on your desk?

pilfer v. steal, rob, plunder, thieve, filch, embezzle, misappropriate, purloin, take, walk off with, palm, Colloq appropriate, pinch, snatch, grab, lift, borrow, Brit nick, snaffle, US boost, Slang hook, snitch, swipe, rip off: The auditors found that he had pilfered small sums from the company for years.

pilgrim n. hajji or hadji or haji, Medieval history palmer; crusader: The pilgrims visited holy places in and near Jerusalem.

pilgrimage

n. hajj or hadj, holy expedition, crusade; expedition, journey, trek, voyage, tour, trip, excursion: Every year the entire family made a pilgrimage to grandfather's grave.

pill n. 1 tablet, capsule, bolus, pellet, pilule; medicine, medication, medicament, drug, pharmaceutical, remedy, cure; cough drop, pastille, lozenge, troche: Doctor, can't you give me some kind of pill for this headache? 2 nuisance, bore, pest, Colloq pain (in the neck), crank, drag: I don't understand what she sees in Leonard - he's such a pill.

pillage v. 1 plunder, raid, ravage, sack, despoil, rob, loot, ransack, rifle, maraud, depredate, devastate, vandalize, ruin, demolish, raze, level, strip: The Goths pillaged every community they conquered and carried off the booty.

--n. 2 plunder, rapine, despoliation, looting, robbery, sack, sacking, ransacking, marauding, brigandage, piracy, freebooting, buccaneering, banditry, depredation, devastation, vandalization, defilement, destruction, laying waste, destruction, razing, demolition, levelling, ruin, stripping: Pirates from Tripoli were responsible for the pillage of one coastal town after another. 3 plunder, loot, booty, spoils: In the cave Ali Baba found the pillage from a thousand robberies.

pillar n. 1 column, pilaster, pile, piling, pier, upright, post, shaft, prop; atlas, caryatid: The roof is supported by a single pillar. Lot's wife was turned into a pillar of salt. 2 mainstay, supporter, worthy, upholder, backbone, (tower of) strength, leader: Cummings has been a pillar of strength in our community.

pilot   n. 1 aviator, aviatrix, flier, airman, airwoman, aeronaut, captain: The pilot announced that we would land in five minutes. 2 steersman, helmsman, navigator, US wheelman or wheelsman; guide, leader, cicerone, conductor: The pilot knows his way through the shoals. A student acted as our pilot in our tour of Oxford.

--v. 3 guide, steer, run, direct, shepherd, control, lead, navigate, drive; fly: Only someone with local knowledge can pilot the ship into that harbour. The chairman piloted the company through turbulent times.

pimp   n. 1 procurer, panderer or pander, White slaver, whoremonger, Slang US hustler: The police rounded up the pimps and prostitutes for questioning.

--v. 2 procure, pander, solicit, Slang US hustle: He was well known as having pimped for three generations of the nobility.

pimple   n. pustule, papula, boil, swelling, eruption, blackhead or technical comedo, excrescence, Brit spot, Scots plouk or plook, US whitehead, Old-fashioned US hickey: The old witch had a pimple at the end of her nose.

pin   n. 1 peg, dowel, bolt, thole, thole-pin, spike, rivet; Brit drawing-pin, US push-pin: The table is held together by wooden pins. We need some more pins for the notice-board. 2 brooch, clip; stickpin, tie-pin, scarf-pin, US tie tack: She is wearing the cameo pin that her mother gave her. I had George's pin made into a brooch.

--v. 3 attach, fix, affix, fasten, secure, tack; hold, staple, clip: Let's play 'Pin the tail on the donkey'. Pin these papers together. 4 pin down. a force, make, compel, coerce, constrain, press, Brit pressurize, US pressure: We must pin him down to give his decision by tomorrow. b define, specify, pinpoint, name, identify, determine, name, put or lay one's finger on, home or zero in on, focus on: The doctor was unable to pin down what is wrong with her. c confine, hold (down), fix, immobilize, tie down, constrain: We were pinned down by enemy fire. 5 pin on. blame, hold responsible or accountable, point the finger at, accuse; lay at (someone's) door: They'll never be able to pin the murder on Drayton.

pincers   n.pl. pliers, nippers, tweezers: Can you get the nail out with these pincers?

pinch   v. 1 squeeze, nip, tweak, press, compress, grip, grasp: I pinched my finger in the drawer. 2 squeeze, cramp, confine, crush, hurt: These shoes really pinch badly. 3 steal, thieve, rob, take, shoplift, filch, pilfer, purloin, Colloq lift, Brit nick, US boost, Slang swipe, knock off: I think it was Andrew who pinched my book. 4 arrest, apprehend, take into custody, Colloq nab, run in, collar, bust, run in, Brit nick: She was pinched for driving while under the influence. 5 pinch pennies. scrimp, save, skimp, economize: We're pinching pennies now so that we can afford a nice holiday later.

--n. 6 squeeze, nip, tweak, twinge: Montrose gave the girl's cheek an affectionate pinch. 7 touch, (tiny or wee) bit, soup‡on, jot, mite, taste, Colloq US tad, smidgen or smidgin: Add a pinch of salt to the boiling water. 8 predicament, emergency, crisis, difficulty, dilemma, (ticklish or delicate) situation, complication, Colloq pickle, jam, scrape, Chiefly Brit crunch: Sue will help me out in a pinch.

pink°   n. 1 in the pink. at one's best, healthy, hearty, in the best of health, in top form, in good shape, Colloq US up: I saw Rob the other day, and he's in the pink.

--adj. 2 rosy, rose, rose-coloured, pinkish, flesh-colour(ed), salmon(-colour(ed)): The designer suggests pink curtains for the bedroom.

pinký   v. serrate, notch, scallop; perforate, puncture, prick: Pink the edge of the fabric to prevent fraying.

pinnacle n. top, peak, apex, acme, summit, zenith, maximum, climax, crowning point, consummation, utmost, extreme, perfection; tip, cap, crest, crown: Being elected chairman was the pinnacle of Mark's career. The climbers reached the pinnacle, where they will rest overnight.

pioneer n. 1 pathfinder, frontiersman, frontierswoman, trail-blazer, explorer, colonist, (early) settler; ground-breaker, forerunner, precursor, predecessor, innovator, leader, trend-setter, pacemaker, pace-setter: The pioneers who explored and settled the American west were daring men and women. Marconi was a pioneer in the development of radio.

--v. 2 create, originate, invent, initiate, take the first step, introduce, institute, actuate, trigger, set off, inaugurate, start, begin, launch, establish, found, set up, develop, lay the groundwork or foundation, set or put in motion, take the lead, lead or show the way, blaze the trail, be a prime mover, open up, Colloq kick off, get the ball rolling: Our company has pioneered systems for automatic typesetting.

pious adj. 1 devout, religious, reverent, reverential, worshipful, dutiful, God-fearing, godly, faithful, holy, dedicated, devoted, spiritual, moral, good, virtuous, right-minded, saintly, holy, angelic, seraphic, Christ-like, godlike: Francis is a pious boy who attends church regularly. 2 hypocritical, sanctimonious, pietistic, self-righteous, Pharisaic, mealy-mouthed, pretended, fraudulent, goody-goody, unctuous, oily, Colloq Brit smarmy: You are rationalizing your bad behaviour with a lot of pious cant.

pipe n. 1 pipeline, tube, duct, hose, line, main, conduit, passage, conveyor, channel: The pipes are inspected regularly for corrosion. 2 briar, meerschaum, corn-cob, calabash, clay pipe, water-pipe, hookah, narghile, chibouk or chibouque, peace-pipe or pipe of peace or calumet, Colloq Irish briar, Brit hubble-bubble, US bong: He slowly tamped down the tobacco in his pipe, then lit it. 3 pan-pipe, whistle, boatswain's pipe, tooter, horn, wind, wind instrument, woodwind, brass: They play the pipes in the London Symphony.

--v. 4 tootle, tweet, skirl, warble, whistle, peep, cheep: One was piping away on a flute, the other was dancing a jig. 5 transmit, deliver, channel, conduct, convey, supply: The gas is piped directly into our homes. 6 US look at, notice, spot, note, look at, Colloq get a load of: Pipe the guy trying to climb up the outside of that building. 7 pipe down. become quieter, quieten down, make less noise, hush (up), shush (up), whisper, Colloq belt up, shut up: I wish they'd pipe down, I can't sleep. 8 pipe up. speak (up), say, raise one's voice, make oneself heard, offer, volunteer: Sally piped up with the correct answer from the back of the classroom.

pipeline n. 1 pipe, tube, duct, hose, line, main, conduit, passage, conveyor, channel: Pipelines carry gas from the North Sea throughout Britain. Very little information was flowing through the pipeline from Beirut. 2 in the pipeline. on the way, under way, in the offing, ready, imminent, coming, Colloq in the works, cooking, US in work: They said that the contract was in the pipeline and should arrive soon.

pirate   n. 1 buccaneer, sea rover, corsair, privateer, freebooter, sea-robber, filibuster, Archaic picaroon: Captain Kidd and Blackbeard were actual pirates who looted shipping in the Americas in the 17th century. 2 plagiarist, plagiarizer, infringer: Some of these pirates offer unauthorized cheap reprints of expensive textbooks.

--v. 3 plagiarize, infringe, copy, reproduce, steal, appropriate, poach, Colloq lift, pinch, crib: Our government has no jurisdiction over those who pirate books in countries with which we have no treaty.

pirouette n. 1 spin, whirl, twirl, turn, revolution, pivoting: Antoinette did a beautiful pirouette followed by a pas de chat.

--v. 2 spin, whirl, turn (round), revolve, pivot: He was so happy that he fairly pirouetted round the room.

pistol   n. gun, handgun, revolver, automatic, Slang rod, piece, shooting-iron, Chiefly US gat, US Saturday-night special, heater, roscoe: In the United States, law enforcement officers are required to carry a pistol.

piston   n. plunger: The piston in a bicycle pump is worked by hand.

pit°   n. 1 hole, excavation, shaft, cavity, mine, mine-shaft, quarry, working, ditch, trench, trough: Pits had been dug for the extraction of gravel. 2 pothole, hollow, depression, dent, indentation, dimple, pock-mark: His face was disfigured by the pits left by teenage acne. 3 abyss, chasm, well, crevasse, crater: We found a bottomless pit that led to the centre of the earth. 4 the pits. awful, terrible, the worst, Slang lousy: That TV show last night was the pits. He thought that going to school was the pits.

--v. 5 dent, pock-mark, dig, scar, hollow out, gouge: The salt air has pitted the metal parts of my car. 6 Often, pit against. match, oppose, set against; contrast: Shirley doesn't stand a chance if they pit her against Maria.

pitý n. stone, seed, pip: I prefer seedless grapes, the ones without pits.

pitch° v. 1 toss, throw, cast, fling, hurl, heave, sling, fire, launch, shoot, send, let fly, Cricket bowl, Colloq chuck, peg, lob, Brit bung: He rolled the paper into a ball and pitched it into the basket. 2 erect, raise, set or put up, position, fix, place: We ought to pitch the tent in a level area. 3 plunge, fall (headlong), dive, drop, plummet, (take a) nosedive: I caught my toe on the kerb and pitched forward onto the pavement. 4 Chiefly nautical toss about, lurch, plunge, flounder, go head over heels, go keel over truck, US pitchpole or pitchpoll: The wind reached force ten as we pitched and rolled and yawed in the heavy seas. 5 pitch in. contribute, cooperate, help, assist, Colloq chip in: Everyone pitched in to make the church fair a success. 6 pitch into. a attack, lay into, assail, lash out at, abuse, rail against, Colloq lace into, tear into, jump down (someone's) throat, jump on: Reggie's wife really pitched into him about going out with other women. b attack, assault, set upon, belabour, Colloq light into, sail into, tear into: They pitched into each other and fought like Kilkenny cats. 7 pitch on or upon. determine, decide on, select, pick, choose, opt for, elect, nominate, name, Colloq light on: They pitched on Carrie to be the best candidate for treasurer.

pitchý n. tar, bitumen, asphalt: Peter patched potholes with pitch.

pitch-black
adj. black, dark, ebon(y), Stygian, inky(-black), unlit, unlighted, pitch-dark, coal-black, jet-black; raven, sable: The cellar was pitch-black. Her pale complexion was in stark contrast to her pitch-black hair.

pitched adj. organized, planned, deliberate, coordinated, arranged, systematized: The two armies fought a pitched battle on the plain.

piteous adj. pitiable, pathetic, pitiful, plaintive, miserable, heart-rending, poignant, distressing, grievous, heart-breaking, mournful, sad, doleful, dolorous, tearful, lamentable, deplorable, regrettable, rueful, woeful, moving, emotional: We heard the piteous wailing of the mothers who had lost children in the disaster.

pitfall n. 1 trap, pit: Pitfalls were often used in Burma for trapping tigers. 2 danger, peril, hazard, catch, difficulty, snag: You might well encounter pitfalls, but don't be discouraged.

pith n. 1 core, heart, kernel, nucleus, crux, gist, focus, focal point, essence, meat, marrow, nub, point, spirit, substance, quintessence: As usual, Randolph came immediately to the pith of the argument. 2 weight, burden, gravamen, gravity, force, moment, import, importance, significance, substance, depth, matter: I have something of great pith to tell you about.

pitiable adj. See piteous, above.

pitiful adj. 1 See piteous, above. 2 small, little, insignificant, trifling, unimportant, beggarly, sorry, mean, contemptible: Does Hodges seriously expect us to praise him for that pitiful contribution of his?

pittance n. mite, shoestring, Slang peanuts, chicken-feed, small potatoes: The miserable pittance that she receives does not even cover the necessities of life. He's trying to run that business on a pittance.

pitted adj. eaten away, corroded, eroded, pock-marked, defaced, marred, pierced, perforated: The chrome plating is all pitted where the acid splashed.

pity n. 1 sympathy, commiseration, sorrow, condolence, compassion, tenderness, Archaic ruth: I really feel pity for Betty, being married to such a brute. 2 (crying or damned) shame, sad thing, disgrace, misfortune, sin, sacrilege, Colloq crime: It's a pity that no one can do anything.

--v. 3 sympathize, feel for, commiserate with, feel sorry for, feel or have compassion or tenderness for, bleed for, weep for: I pity any mother whose son goes off to war.

pivot n. 1 pintle, gudgeon, hinge, swivel, pin, kingpin, spindle, fulcrum: Use this stone as a pivot for the lever to lift the rock. 2 centre, heart, focal point, hub, nave, crux: The finance minister regards the interest rate as the pivot on which the economy turns.

--v. 3 rotate, revolve, turn, spin, twirl, whirl, swivel: The flywheel pivots on a bearing that requires constant lubrication. 4 hinge, depend, hang, be contingent, revolve around, rely: The whole deal pivots on the cooperation of the banks.

pivotal adj. critical, central, focal, crucial, significant, important, essential, vital, pressing, urgent, radical: The attitude of the judge is pivotal in the jury's decision.

16.5 place...

=-

place n. 1 location, site, position, point, spot, locus, area, locale, scene, setting: This looks like a nice place for a picnic. She likes to see a place for everything and everything in its place. 2 locale, area, neighbourhood, vicinity, district, section, part of the country, quarter, region; city, town, village, hamlet: She comes from some place near Glasgow. 3 status, station, standing, grade, rank, position, niche, slot, situation, estate, state, circumstance(s): Angela was just saying how difficult it is today to find a servant who knows his place. 4 function, role, part, purpose, duty, obligation, task, responsibility, charge, chore, burden, concern, mission: It is scarcely my place to remind you of your appointments with the dentist. 5 position, job, post, berth, appointment, livelihood; employment, occupation, Colloq billet: Is there a chance of my earning a place in your new company? 6 home, house, flat, apartment, room(s), quarters, lodgings, Rather formal residence, domicile, dwelling, abode, Colloq digs or diggings, pad: Why not stop by my place for tea on Sunday? 7 stead; lieu: As I cannot go, would you go in place of me? 8 position, situation, circumstances, condition: Put yourself in my place and I think you would have done exactly the same. 9 seat, chair, position: Kevin, please take your place at the head of the table. 10 go places. succeed, become successful, get ahead, advance, prosper, thrive, flourish, go up in the world, make good, strike it rich, Colloq arrive, make a splash, US and Canadian hit pay dirt, luck out: That boy will go places one day. 11 in place. a fitting, suitable, appropriate, right, proper, correct, good form: I don't think it in place for you to tell me what to do. b in situ, in (the right or proper or correct) position, ready, all set, set up, in order, all right, Colloq OK or okay: Is everything in place for tonight's party? 12 out of place. awkward, uncomfortable, unsuitable, inappropriate, wrong, improper, misplaced: Compassion is out of place when dealing with war criminals. 13 put (someone) in his or her or their place. humble, mortify, bring down, embarrass, squelch, Colloq cut down to size, take down a peg (or two): Aunt Agatha used to put Uncle Wilfred in his place by reminding him who held the purse-strings. 14 take place. happen, occur, go on, come about; arise, Colloq transpire: We shall never know what took place behind those locked doors.

--v. 15 put (out), position, situate, locate, dispose, arrange, order, set (out), lay, deposit; station, post, spot, pinpoint, Colloq stick, Brit bung: Place the forks on the left and the knives on the right. They placed guards at the door of my room. 16 class, classify, sort, order, arrange, rank, group, categorize, bracket, grade; regard, view, see, consider: She places love of family above love of country. Critics place him among the best writers of the century. 17 identify, put one's finger on, recall, remember, recognize; associate: I just can't place her for the moment. He finally placed me with those who had ragged him at school. 18 put, set, assign, give: People place too much importance on material things.

placement n. 1 arrangement, placing, position, distribution, array, disposition, deployment, positioning, stationing, organization, order, ordering, location, locating, arraying, emplacement, emplacing: The placement of the chairs is all wrong for tonight's meeting. 2 employment, appointment, engagement, hiring: Placement of qualified engineers has not been a problem.

plagiarism

n. plagiarizing, plagiary, piracy, pirating, theft, purloining, stealing, copying, appropriating, appropriation, thievery, usurpation, infringing, infringement, imitation, Euphemistic borrowing, Colloq lifting, cribbing: The similarities between the two books could only be explained by plagiarism.

plague n. 1 scourge, epidemic, pestilence, affliction, pandemic, calamity, curse, evil, bane, blight, visitation: The inhabitants turned a plague of locusts to advantage by eating them. 2 irritation, annoyance, nuisance, pest, vexation, bother, thorn in one's side or flesh, torment, torture, Colloq pain (in the neck), headache, aggravation, Slang drag, bitch, hassle, Taboo slang pain in the Brit arse or US ass: It's a plague trying to find a place to park the car.

--v. 3 badger, harry, hound, pester, annoy, vex, irritate, bother, harass, nag, nettle, exasperate, gall, annoy, irk, torment, torture, anguish, distress, Brit chivvy or chivy or chevy: I wish the police would stop plaguing me with questions about Jonathan's whereabouts.

plain adj. 1 flat, smooth, even, featureless, level, plane: I'd rather have a paper with a plain surface, not an embossed one, for the bedroom walls. 2 clear, evident, simple, distinct, crystal clear, lucid, vivid, transparent, apparent, obvious, patent, self-evident, manifest, distinct, unmistakable or unmistakeable, unequivocal, unambiguous, understandable, intelligible, graphic, direct, in black and white: His intentions regarding my daughter are plain enough. The plain fact is that she despises him. 3 open, honest, straightforward, forthright, direct, frank, candid, blunt, outspoken, ingenuous, sincere, guileless, artless, unreserved: I want to see some plain talk between the two of us. 4 simple, unadorned, undecorated, unembellished, basic, austere, stark, unostentatious, colourless, drab, bare, unvarnished, Spartan: Don't you find the average business suit a very plain affair? 5 homely, unattractive, ordinary-looking, unlovely, ugly: Who would believe that such a plain child could become such a beautiful woman?

--n. 6 prairie, grassland, pasture, meadow-land, veld or veldt, pampas, campo, llano, savannah or savanna, steppe, tundra, champaign or campagna; heath; moor, moorland; plateau, flatland; down, downland, Literary wold, Archaic or literary mead: The plain stretched out before us as far as the eye could see.

plan   n. 1 design, layout, blueprint, scheme, method, procedure, system, arrangement, programme, project, formula, pattern, Colloq script, scenario: The plan called for monthly progress meetings. The best laid plans of mice and men gang aft agley. 2 drawing, sketch, design, layout, blueprint, chart, map, diagram, representation: This plan shows where the furniture will be placed.

--v. 3 lay out or down, design, arrange, devise, outline, organize, plot, map out, delineate, develop: She has been invited to plan the new shopping mall. 4 intend, expect, envisage, envision, foresee, aim, contemplate, propose: Were you planning to go to the cinema tonight?

plane   n. 1 flat or level (surface): The lines meet in the same plane. 2 aeroplane, aircraft, airliner, jet (plane): I caught the next plane for Marrakesh.

--adj. 3 flat, even, level, smooth, plain, regular, unbroken, uninterrupted, uniform, horizontal: We landed on the plane surface of the glacier.

--v. 4 glide, skim, skate, skid, slip, slide: I swiftly planed along on my sailboard.

plank   n. board, timber, slab: The flooring was made up of wide planks laid side by side.

plant   n. 1 flower, vegetable, herb, bush, shrub, tree, vine, weed: Because of all the rain, the plants are flourishing this summer. 2 factory, mill, shop, works, workshop, foundry: The new plant in Crawley is hiring lathe operators. 3 equipment, machinery, apparatus; gear, fixtures: The plant includes heavy cranes, JCBs, earth movers, and bulldozers. 4 spy, (undercover or secret) agent, informer, informant: The new assistant is a plant, sent in by management to report on union activities.

--v. 5 bed (out), sow, seed, set (out), transplant: We planted a herbaceous border along the south wall of the garden. 6 implant, establish, root, fix, ingrain, lodge, instil, insinuate, inject, introduce, impress, imprint: Who planted the idea in your mind that you were a gifted writer? 7 place, put, position, station, assign, situate: Watch-towers are planted at 50-foot intervals around the prison. 8 hide, secrete, conceal: The company has planted detectives in the store to watch out for shoplifters.

planter n. flowerpot, cache-pot: He poured the drugged wine into a nearby planter.

plaque n. 1 tablet, medallion, plate, panel, marker, slab, plaquette: The plaque on the house marks it as the birthplace of Thomas Carlyle. 2 badge, brooch, pin, patch, medallion, medal, insignia or insigne: The plaque shows him to be a member of the Royal Yacht Squadron. 3 prize, honour, award, trophy: At the annual dinner, she was presented with a plaque to mark her many years of service.

plaster v. smear, daub, bedaub, spread, coat, cover, overlay, superimpose: The mud was plastered all over my boots. They plastered the walls with posters.

plastic adj. 1 mouldable, shapable or shapeable, fictile, soft, malleable, workable, ductile, flexible, soft, pliant, supple, pliable, clayey, waxy: The clay must be worked into the desired form while it is still plastic. 2 impressionable, receptive, open, persuadable or persuasible, susceptible, tractable, compliant, responsive, manageable, unformed, inexperienced: One encounters the children at an age when their minds and personalities are still plastic enough to be influenced. 3 artificial, synthetic, imitation, fake, counterfeit, ersatz, paste, bogus, meretricious, sham; cheap, pinchbeck, shoddy; Colloq phoney or US also phony, crummy, US chintzy: She was wearing a tawdry plastic brooch.

plate n. 1 platter, dish, Archaic trencher, charger: I left the cold mashed potato on my plate. 2 course, serving, portion, dish, platter: I ordered their speciality, a plate of spaghetti. 3 layer, leaf, sheet, pane, panel, lamina, slab: In the condenser, insulation separates the thin metal plates. 4 coating, coat, plating, layer, lamination: The plate on our cutlery is wearing thin. 5 illustration, picture, print, US cut: The book contains many beautiful colour plates of flowers.

--v. 6 cover, coat, overlay, face, laminate: All the serving dishes were plated with gold.

plateau n. 1 tableland, upland, highland, mesa: We climbed till we reached a grassy plateau. 2 level, lull, pause, levelling off: At 39, Julia seemed to have reached a plateau in her career.

platform n. 1 stand, dais, stage, podium, rostrum: After the introduction, the speaker mounted the platform. 2 policy, party line, principle(s), tenet(s), programme, plank: The main elements of our platform will be revealed at the party conference.

platonic adj. non-physical, asexual, non-sexual, celibate, chaste, dispassionate, detached, spiritual, ideal, intellectual: Some say that their relationship has not always been purely platonic.

platoon n. company, squad, squadron, group, patrol, team, cadre, body, formation, unit, Colloq outfit: A platoon of soldiers was marched to the barracks in close-order drill.

platter n. serving dish, server, salver, tray, plate, dish: Waiters walked among the guests with platters of hot hors-d'oeuvres.

plausible adj. 1 likely, believable, reasonable, credible, tenable, conceivable, thinkable, probable, imaginable, admissible, sound, sensible, rational, logical, acceptable, trustworthy, presentable: The police regarded our alibi as plausible. 2 specious, deceptive, meretricious, misleading, deceitful, casuistic, sophistical, Jesuitical, smooth, empty: He was a cunning, plausible sort of fellow.

play v. 1 amuse oneself, frolic, frisk, cavort, gambol, caper, sport, have fun, have a good time, enjoy oneself, disport (oneself), carouse: Ken's mother won't let him go out and play. 2 participate (in), take part (in), join (in), be occupied (in or with); engage in, contend in, take up, take part in, occupy oneself in or with, undertake: He was invited for a game of poker, but he refused to play. I understand that you play bridge. 3 engage, contend with, compete with or against,

challenge, vie with, pit oneself against, take on, rival: The stranger played me at snooker, and I lost three games out of three. 4 portray, depict, perform, act or take the role or part of, act: In the new production of Othello she plays Desdemona. 5 perform (upon or on); put on: Play 'Misty' for me. She plays the piccolo very well. Could you play that Caruso record? 6 operate: I wish they wouldn't play their hi-fi so loud. 7 gamble, bet, wager, stake, place, put: He played his last chip on number 14. 8 play along. a Often, play along with. cooperate, participate, go along (with), do or play one's part, be a party to: I agreed to play along with her charade. b manipulate, jolly along: She played him along till he bought her a car. 9 play around. a fool around, tease, Colloq monkey about or around, horse around or about: Stop playing around and get to work. b dally, flirt, be unfaithful; philander, womanize; Colloq fool around, run around, sleep around, play the field: She found out about his playing around and filed for divorce. 10 play at. pretend, make believe, fake, feign, simulate, affect: She's merely playing at enjoying skiing to please you. 11 play ball. cooperate, agree, work together, work hand in glove, play along: They want him to smuggle diamonds, but he won't play ball. 12 play by ear. improvise, extemporize, ad lib , Colloq wing it: She can't read music and just plays by ear. With no definite plan of action, I'll just play it by ear.
13 play down. belittle, minimize, diminish, disparage, make light of, deprecate, decry, de-emphasize: He has always played down his role in the affair. 14 play for time. delay, procrastinate, stall (for time), temporize, hesitate, Colloq drag one's feet: They don't yet have the money to pay, so they are playing for time. 15 play on or upon. use, misuse, abuse, trade on, exploit, take advantage of, impose on: He plays on women's affections then persuades them to give him money. 16 play the game. behave, conduct oneself, deport oneself, act: It makes no difference whether you win or lose, it's how you play the game. 17 play up. a stress, emphasize, underscore, underline, accentuate, call attention to, highlight, spotlight, dramatize, build up: Always try to play up your assets and play down your liabilities. b act up, misbehave, give or cause trouble, malfunction, Colloq go on the blink or US fritz, Brit be wonky: The bloody engine started playing up again, right in the middle of a rainstorm. 18 play up to. curry favour with, flatter, toady to, ingratiate oneself with, butter up, truckle to, court, Colloq soft-soap, suck up to, boot-lick, US

apple-polish, Taboo slang brown-nose: Ray is always playing up to the teacher, trying to get a better mark. 19 play with. a toy with, trifle with, treat cavalierly or lightly, make light of, think nothing of, dally with, amuse oneself with: He's just playing with her till he gets what he's after. b consider, think about, toy with, not treat seriously: We were playing with the idea of a winter holiday this year. c mess with, fiddle with, toy with, fidget with: Stop playing with your food!

--n. 20 drama, stage play, show, piece, production, entertainment: We have tickets to a different play for every night this week. 21 behaviour, actions, deportment, conduct, demeanour: In the game of life, many have no regard for the rules of fair play. The police suspect foul play. 22 amusement, frivolity, entertainment, recreation, fun, pleasure, sport, merrymaking, revelry, tomfoolery, Colloq horseplay, skylarking, monkey business, Brit monkey tricks or US monkeyshines: The time for play is past, and we must get down to serious business. 23 move, manoeuvre, action: That last play might have won you the game. 24 flexibility, looseness, freedom, leeway, margin, room, space, movement, motion, Colloq give: There's too much play in this gear lever. 25 treatment, coverage, attention: The newspapers gave Connie's new book a big play.

playboy n. man about town, rou,, rake, debauchee, gay dog, womanizer, Don Juan, Casanova, Lothario, Romeo, Colloq wolf, lady-killer: He fancies himself as a playboy, but no women seem to agree.

player n. 1 contestant, participant, competitor, contender; athlete, sportswoman, sportsman, Colloq US jock: Chess players from all over the world came together for the championship. The referee sent three players off. 2 actor or actress, performer, entertainer, trouper, Thespian: The local drama group is the Allen Arts Players. 3 gambler, better or especially US bettor, gamester, speculator, Brit punter: J.B. is a big player in the commodities market. 4 musician, instrumentalist, performer, virtuoso: Gladys is one of the best tuba players in the band.

playful adj. 1 (high-)spirited, cheerful, frisky, frolicsome, kittenish, sprightly, fun-loving, sportive, coltish, mischievous, puckish, impish, elfish, devilish: The cat didn't mean to scratch you, she was just being playful. 2 joking, facetious, teasing, roguish, waggish, jesting, humorous, tongue-in-cheek: Cleo's in a playful mood today, isn't she?

playmate n. playfellow, friend, comrade, Colloq pal, chum, US and Canadian buddy: Some of Molly's playmates are asking if she can come out to play.

plaything n. 1 toy, game, knick-knack, pastime: Please pick up your playthings before supper. 2 tool, cat's-paw, dupe, pigeon, pawn, Colloq US and Canadian fall guy: She had no use for Gerry except as a plaything.

playwright
n. dramatist, dramaturge or dramaturgist, scriptwriter, screenwriter, scenarist: The playwright has deftly caught the way people talk to each other.

plea n. 1 request, entreaty, appeal, petition, supplication, suit, cry, solicitation: Teenagers' mischievous behaviour is an earnest plea for attention. 2 answer, defence, argument: She entered a plea of 'not guilty' to the charge. 3 excuse, reason, explanation, justification; pretext: His plea was that he had not received the bill and therefore couldn't pay it.

plead v. 1 Often, plead for. request, appeal (for), cry (for), ask (for), seek, beg (for), pray (for), supplicate (for): It was a hot day and the children were pleading for ice-creams every half hour. 2 Usually, plead with. request (of), entreat, appeal to, petition, ask, apply to, implore, beseech, beg, importune, solicit; demand: Bryan pleaded with us to let him go to the rock concert. 3 assert, say, aver, allege, argue, maintain, offer, put forward, declare, affirm, avow, swear: She pleaded that she was unaware that the goods she was selling had been stolen.

pleasant adj. 1 pleasing, pleasurable, nice, enjoyable, satisfying, good, lovely, attractive, inviting, enjoyable, gratifying, delightful, charming, agreeable, suitable, fitting, appropriate; harmonious, euphonious, melodic, mellifluous; delicious, delectable, palatable, savoury, toothsome: Travelling on the Orient Express was a most pleasant experience. The bedroom is decorated in a combination of pleasant colours. He simply doesn't find sunbathing particularly pleasant. That sauce has a very pleasant taste. 2 friendly, affable, amiable, amicable, gregarious, companionable, sociable, engaging, attractive, winning, open, approachable, outgoing, welcoming, hospitable, agreeable, gracious, charming, congenial, genial, nice, likeable, urbane, cultivated, genteel, polite, courteous, well-mannered, suave, debonair, polished, well-bred, cultured: Murray always has a pleasant expression on his face. He is quite a pleasant fellow, once you get to know him. 3 fair, sunny, clear, bright, cloudless, balmy, nice, fine: What a pleasant day for an outing in the country!

please v. 1 delight, gratify, satisfy, suit, humour, content, cheer, gladden, amuse, divert, interest, entertain: I cannot tell you how much it pleases me to see you again. 2 like, prefer, choose, desire, want, see fit, wish, will, elect, opt: She may have her birthday party wherever she pleases.

pleased adj. happy, delighted, glad, gratified, satisfied, contented, thrilled; Colloq tickled pink, pleased as Punch, on cloud nine, in seventh heaven, on top of the world, walking on air, Brit over the moon, chuffed: His pleased look comes from his having won first prize.

pleasing adj. 1 See pleasant, 1, above. 2 See pleasant, 2, above.

pleasurable
adj. See pleasant, 1, above.

pleasure n. 1 enjoyment, happiness, delight, joy, satisfaction, fulfilment, contentment, gratification; comfort, recreation, amusement, entertainment, diversion: It is a pleasure to meet you at last. Fred derives so much pleasure from tinkering with his model railways. 2 choice, option, desire, wish, preference, fancy, inclination, discretion: Feel free to come and go at your pleasure.

plebeian adj. 1 proletarian, working-class, blue-collar, low-class, lower-class, lowly, low-born, common, mean, humble, inferior, peasant-like, Colloq non-U: What would you expect from someone with such a plebeian background? 2 unrefined, coarse, vulgar, ignoble, lowbrow, unpolished, uncouth, crass, brutish, gauche, provincial, rustic, popular, commonplace, undistinguished: The entertainment caters to the most plebeian tastes.

--n. 3 proletarian, common man or woman, commoner, man or woman in the street, (any or every) Tom, Dick, or Harry, Brit man or woman on the Clapham omnibus, Colloq pleb, prole: This art exhibition is not going to mean very much to the plebeians.

plebiscite
n. popular vote or ballot, referendum, poll: The plebiscite revealed that the people were in favour of joining the Common Market.

pledge n. 1 promise, oath, vow, word (of honour), covenant, assurance, guaranty, guarantee, warrant, warranty: They have our solemn pledge that we will return within the hour. 2 bail, surety, collateral, security, deposit, earnest (money), pawn, gage, bond, guaranty, guarantee: They wanted something besides my signature as a pledge for the money. 3 toast, tribute, cheer, health: They drank a pledge to the success of the voyage.

--v. 4 swear, vow, promise, give one's word (of honour), contract, undertake, agree, vouch, vouchsafe: I pledge allegiance to the nation. 5 deposit, pawn, mortgage, Archaic gage, Colloq US and Canadian hock: He pledged his gold watch to pay for her birthday present. 6 toast, drink (to), drink (someone's) health: Drink to me only with thine eyes And I will pledge with mine.

plentiful adj. 1 ample, abundant, profuse, copious, lavish, plenteous, bountiful, generous, bounteous: We found a plentiful supply of food in the markets. 2 fertile, fruitful, productive, bumper, luxuriant, thriving, prolific: We thanked the Lord for a plentiful harvest.

plenty n. 1 abundance, more than enough, great deal, mass(es), quantity or quantities, multitude(s), number(s), load(s), mess, scores, Colloq lot(s), mountain(s), heap(s), stack(s), pile(s), load(s), ton(s), ocean(s), oodles, US and Canadian slew(s): There is plenty of food, so it is just as well that plenty of people are coming. There's plenty of time before your bus arrives. 2 plentifulness, fertility, copiousness, abundance, plenteousness, wealth, profusion, lavishness, prodigality, plenitude, bountifulness: It was a land of plenty, a land of milk and honey.

pliable adj. 1 flexible, pliant, elastic, plastic, fictile, malleable, workable, bendable, bendy, ductile, flexuous, supple; lithe, limber: This substance remains pliable only while it is warm. 2 tractable, adaptable, flexible, pliant, compliant, persuadable or persuasible, impressionable, susceptible, responsive, receptive, docile, manageable, yielding: The other directors may not be as pliable when it comes to improving employee benefits.

plight n. condition, state, circumstances, situation, case; difficulty, predicament, quandary, dilemma, catch-22, straits, trouble, extremity, Colloq hole, jam, pickle, spot, scrape, fix, bind, hot water, mess, fine kettle of fish, fine state of affairs: As soon as Elliott's sorry plight became known, we all rallied round to help.

plod v. 1 Often, plod along. trudge (along), tramp, slog, drag, tread, lumber, labour, Colloq stomp, galumph: We plodded wearily up the road carrying our heavy packs. 2 Often, plod along or away. labour, work, drudge, toil, moil, slave (away), grind (away or along), grub (on or along), plug (along or away), Brit peg away (at) or along: Plodding through the compilation of the Oxford Thesaurus, he was only halfway through the letter P.

plot° n. 1 scheme, plan, intrigue, machination, cabal; conspiracy: The plot to blow up the Houses of Parliament was uncovered at a late stage. 2 story (line), chain of events, theme, outline, scenario, thread, skeleton: Most operas have weak plots, but the music can be sublime.

--v. 3 scheme, plan, intrigue, machinate, cabal, collude, conspire, hatch, devise, design, arrange, organize, concoct, dream up, conceive, Colloq cook up: Martin's wife had been plotting to murder him since their wedding night. 4 draw, plan, diagram, lay down, outline, calculate, compute, figure, chart, map (out), find, determine, depict, show: The navigator plotted our position as being in the Strait of Malacca.

plotý n. lot, plat, patch or parcel (of land), tract, acreage, area, Brit allotment: I have a small plot by the canal which is ideal for growing potatoes.

plough v. 1 till, cultivate, furrow, harrow, Literary delve: They ought to finish ploughing the south field by tomorrow. 2 drive, plunge, push, bulldoze, lunge, dive, shove, hurtle, crash: Out of control, a bus ploughed through the fence and into my garden.

pluck n. 1 courage, spirit, bravery, grit, boldness, intrepidity, backbone, mettle, determination, gameness, resolve, resolution, steadfastness, hardiness, sturdiness, stout-heartedness, stoutness, fortitude, nerve, Colloq guts, spunk, US sand, Slang Brit bottle, US moxie: She certainly showed pluck standing up to the boss like that.

--v. 2 pick, remove, withdraw, draw out, extract: The children plucked flowers in the garden and made posies. 3 snatch, grab, yank, jerk, tear (away): She was plucked from the jaws of death by Tarzan, who happened to be swinging by on a vine. 4 tug (at), pull (at), catch (at), clutch (at); vellicate: An ancient crone plucked at his sleeve as he passed.

plug n. 1 stopper, stopple, bung, cork: If you pull the plug out, the water will run out. 2 chew, twist, quid, wad, pigtail, cavendish: As they forbade smoking, he would take snuff or chew a plug of tobacco. 3 publicity, mention, promotion, recommendation, puff, blurb, PR; advertisement, Colloq advert, hype: His book was given a plug on yesterday's evening news.

--v. 4 Often, plug up. stop (up), close (up or off), seal (off or up), cork, stopper, bung, block, jam, stuff, clog, obstruct, dam (up): A piece of soap has plugged the drain. 5 publicize, mention, promote, push, advertise, puff, commend, Colloq boost, beat the drum for: It wasn't right to plug her brother's company in her article on double glazing. 6 See plod, 2, above.

plum n. find, catch, coup, prize, treasure; bonus, cream: Harvey's landed a plum job as overseas buyer.

plumb n. 1 weight, (plumb-)bob, plummet, lead, sinker: The plumb holds the string taut and exactly vertical.

--adj. 2 vertical, perpendicular, straight up and down: Make sure the jamb is plumb before hanging the door.

--adv. 3 vertically, perpendicularly, straight up and down: The cord doesn't hang plumb because the shelf is in the way. 4 exactly, precisely, dead, right, accurately, Colloq slap, Brit bang, spot: The navigator checked our position and we were plumb on course.

--v. 5 sound, fathom, measure, probe, explore, measure, gauge, delve, penetrate: The bathyscaphe has plumbed the deeps of the Indian Ocean. I plumb the depths of depression thinking of starving people everywhere.

plummet v. See plunge, 1, below.

plump° adj. 1 chubby, stout, fleshy, ample, full-bodied, portly, tubby, rotund, squat, chunky, buxom, corpulent, roly-poly, fat, obese, overweight, steatopygous, Brit podgy or US pudgy, Colloq busty, beamy, hippy, beefy, well-upholstered: They went on a diet because they were getting a bit plump.

--v. 2 puff up or out: When you get up, please plump up the pillows on the sofa.

plumpý v. 1 drop, plummet, fall, plunge, dive, sink, collapse, flop: I was so tired that all I could do was plump down in an armchair and watch TV. 2 deposit, set or put (down), plunk, plop: She plumped down the defective mixer on the counter and asked for a refund. 3 plump for. support, choose, select, back, side with, campaign for: Given the choice, they plumped for a film rather than the circus.

--n. 4 drop, plunk, flop, thump, clunk, clump, thud, bump: He dropped the book on the floor with a plump.

--adv. 5 abruptly, suddenly, directly, unhesitatingly, at once, unexpectedly, surprisingly, without warning, (all) of a sudden, plunk, bang: As I came out of the bank, I ran plump into a policeman.

--adj. 6 direct, unequivocal, unmistakable or unmistakeable, unambiguous, definite, definitive, blunt, simple, plain, forthright, downright, straight, matter-of-fact: He asked her to marry him and she gave him a plump 'no'.

plunder v. 1 pillage, loot, rob, ravage, ransack, rifle, despoil, spoil, vandalize, sack, strip, maraud, devastate, desolate, lay waste: The attacking army plundered the villages. 2 prey on or upon, pirate, capture, seize: The buccaneers plunder the Spanish treasure ships on the high seas.

--n. 3 pillage, looting, robbery, depredation, rapine, despoliation, spoliation, vandalization, sack, vandalism, vandalizing, sacking: It is said that the plunder of Rome took no more than a fortnight. 4 booty, loot, spoils, prizes, Slang boodle: The police displayed an Aladdin's cave of plunder recovered from the thieves.

plunge v. 1 descend, drop, plummet, dive, pitch, nosedive, fall (headlong): They lost their footing, and both Holmes and Moriarty plunged into the abyss. 2 submerge, sink, immerse; engulf, overwhelm: I plunged my hand in the icy water to retrieve the keys. She plunged herself into her work to try to forget him.

--n. 3 dive, nosedive, fall, pitch, plummet, drop, descent; submersion, immersion: After the scandal his career took a plunge from which it never recovered. Every winter they take a plunge into the icy waters of the Serpentine. 4 gamble, wager, bet, risk: Are you taking the plunge with an investment in South America?

plus prep. 1 and, added to, increased by, with the addition of, with an increment of, (coupled) with, together with: Two plus three equals five. Your initial deposit plus accumulated interest will make a substantial sum.

--adj. 2 added, additional, supplementary, extra: One must take into account the plus value of the good publicity.

--n. 3 addition, bonus, extra, gain, benefit, asset, advantage, profit, return: Improvements constitute a big plus in evaluating the building.

plush adj. luxurious, posh, costly, (de) luxe, palatial, lavish, rich, opulent, sumptuous, regal, elegant, Colloq ritzy, classy, Old-fashioned swank(y): I had no idea that you lived in such plush surroundings.

ply n. layer, leaf, thickness, fold: These seams are sewn through two plies of fabric.

16.6 pocket...
=-

pocket n. 1 pouch, sack, bag, receptacle, reticule, satchel: You should always have a clean handkerchief in your pocket. 2 cavity, pit, hollow, crater: We found water that had collected in pockets in the surface of the rock. 3 area, island, camp, centre, cluster, concentration: Leaders encountered pockets of resistance to the new policies among the farmers.

--v. 4 take, appropriate, keep; filch, embezzle, steal, purloin, thieve, pilfer, help oneself to, palm, Colloq walk off or away with, pinch, swipe, rip off, hook, lift, snitch, Brit nick, snaffle: While collecting for charity, Johnson was known to have pocketed occasional contributions.

poem n. verse, lyric, rhyme or archaic rime, song, ode, rhapsody, jingle, ditty: The anthology contains poems by politicians.

poet n. poetess, versifier, metrist, lyricist or lyrist, versemaker, sonneteer, elegist, bard, minstrel; rhymester or rimester or rhymer or rimer, poetaster: A widely published poet, Constance is often invited to give readings.

poetic adj. 1 poetical, lyric(al), metrical, musical, melodic; idyllic, elegiac, georgic, rhapsodic, epic, dithyrambic: She bought a volume of the poetic works of John Keats. 2 artistic, aesthetic, Parnassian, Hippocrenian, melodious: The novel contains some poetic passages of surpassing quality.

poetry n. verse, versification, metrical composition, metrics, rhyme, Archaic poesy: Modern poetry is often rather obscure.

po-faced adj. stern-visaged, austere, dour, disapproving, frowning, grave, saturnine, solemn, sombre, humourless, grim, forbidding, severe, strait-laced, uncompromising, puritanical, prim, prudish, gruff, bluff, curmudgeonly: Despite having a po-faced approach to his work, William has a keen sense of humour when off duty.

poignant adj. 1 distressing, upsetting, agonizing, grievous, painful, woeful, melancholy, blue, sad, sorrowful, tragic, disastrous, heart-rending, heart-breaking, excruciating, bitter, pathetic, pitiable, piteous, pitiful, miserable, moving, touching: The biography also covers the poignant early years, spent largely in orphanages and foster homes. 2 keen, acute, intense, incisive, sharp, stinging, pointed, piercing, penetrating, barbed, cutting, caustic, acid, acerbic, bitter, biting, mordant, sarcastic, sardonic, severe: The headmaster's poignant remarks about honesty and loyalty really hurt. 3 sincere, earnest, heartfelt, deep, profound, dramatic, deeply felt, stirring, moving, touching, emotional: The reunion of the little boy and his dog was the most poignant moment in the film.

point n. 1 dot, mark, speck; (full) stop, period; decimal point: The writing is smudged, but that looks like a point at the end of the line. 2 tip, peak, apex, spike, spur, prong, sharp end: Be careful of the point of that knife. 3 spot, place, stage, position; site, station, location, locale: We have reached the point of no return on that subject. I stopped at a few points along the way to admire the view. 4 time, moment, instant, juncture: At that point, we were summoned by the dinner bell. 5 focus, essence, meat, pith, quiddity, substance, heart, nucleus, crux, nub, core, bottom, details, Colloq guts, nitty-gritty: I wish he would stop all the palaver and get to the point. 6 purpose, intent, intention, aim, goal, object, objective, sense: What was the point of bringing that piece of gossip into the discussion? 7 thrust, drift, theme, purport, burden, import, implication, significance, signification, sense, meaning; application, applicability, relevancy, appropriateness: We found it difficult to see the point of the argument. 8 promontory, projection, headland, cape, peninsula: It may take us a day to sail round the point. 9 brink, verge: We were on the point of leaving when the guest of honour finally arrived. 10 detail, particular, item, element, nicety, aspect, facet, matter, issue, subject, question; specifics: Some of the points in her speech need clarification. 11 pointer, hint, suggestion, piece of advice, tip: The golf pro at the club gave me some good points on improving my swing. 12 thought, idea, consideration; notion, view, plan, tactic; something: That's a point to keep in mind if you buy another sailing-boat. 13 unit, tally, score: She made her point and went on to win the match. 14 attribute, characteristic, feature, aspect, trait, quality, side, property: I suppose he has his good points, too. 15 beside the point. irrelevant, inapt, inappropriate, malapropos, incidental, immaterial, unimportant, pointless, inconsequential: The fact that she's my sister is beside the point. 16 in point of. in reference to, regarding, as regards, in the matter of, concerning, with respect to: In point of date, the two events coincide perfectly. 17 make a point of or US also make (it) a point to. make an effort (to), put or place emphasis on, go out of one's way (to); emphasize, single out, stress: He made a point of apologizing to the hostess for his behaviour. She made a special point of forgiving him. 18 to the point. relevant, pertinent, appropriate, fitting, apropos, germane, apt, applicable, apposite: The speech was short and to the point.

--v. 19 Often, point to. indicate, call or direct attention to: Desir,e pointed to the building and asked what it was. 20 direct, level, aim, train: I awoke to find her pointing a gun at my head. 21 point out. a designate, call or direct attention to, show, exhibit, indicate, identify: The taxi driver pointed out all the sights as we drove along. b say, bring up, mention, allude to, bring up, emphasize, stress, point up, single out; allude to, call attention to, remind: I'd like to point out that you have rarely won at bridge. She pointed out the fallacy in his argument. 22 point up. emphasize, stress, accentuate, underline, underscore, accent, spotlight: Such errors point up the need to double-check everything.

point-blank

adj. 1 direct, straight, blunt, flat, straightforward, abrupt, categorical, explicit, uncompromising, unmitigated, unalloyed, downright, outright, to the point, straight from the shoulder, (open and) above-board, unreserved: I asked her out to dinner and got a point-blank refusal. 2 close, short, nearby: He was shot at point-blank range.

--adv. 3 directly, straight (away), right away, bluntly, flat, flatly, abruptly, categorically, unqualifiedly, explicitly, uncompromisingly, unmitigatedly, outright,, unreservedly, plainly, frankly, openly, candidly: He turned her down point-blank when she offered him the job. 4 directly, straight: He fired point-blank at the target.

pointed adj. 1 needle-shaped, sharp, acute, barbed, peaked, spiked, spiky, Technical acuminate, cuspidate, aciform, acicular, aciculiform, aculeous, apiculate, spiculate, serrate(d), acuminate, mucroniform, mucronulate, mucronate(d), muricate, hebetate: The child was poking holes in the sand with a pointed stick. 2 incisive, piercing, cutting, sharp, pungent, keen, penetrating, telling, trenchant, biting, unmistakable or unmistakeable: The critic made a few pointed remarks about the actors' reading of the lines.

pointer n. 1 indicator, rod, stick; index, sign, arrow, Typography fist: The pointer is used to call attention to something important. 2 tip, advice, hint, suggestion, recommendation, piece of advice: McLeod gave me a few pointers on how to improve the restaurant service.

pointless adj. purposeless, aimless, worthless, ineffective, meaningless, ineffectual, futile, unproductive, fruitless, bootless, useless, vain, senseless, absurd, silly, stupid, inane, asinine, fatuous, preposterous, nonsensical, ridiculous, empty, hollow: After her paper, someone rose and wasted half an hour making pointless remarks.

point of view

n. 1 viewpoint, perspective, approach, position, angle, slant, orientation, outlook, stance, standpoint, vantage point: From his point of view, I can see why Fred thinks the research is a waste of time. 2 opinion, view, belief, (way of) thinking, principle, doctrine: Shouldn't everyone be entitled to express a point of view?

poise n. 1 balance, equilibrium, equipoise, equiponderance, parity, par: The chariots of the gods in even poise, obeying the rein, glide rapidly. 2 composure, control, self-possession, aplomb, assurance, dignity, equanimity, sang-froid, cool-headedness, imperturbability, presence of mind, coolness, staidness, reserve, sedateness, calmness, serenity, tranquillity, Colloq cool: Jane's poise is remarkable, despite the heckling by the audience.

--v. 3 balance, be balanced, hover, hang, float; make or be or get ready, prepare: The boulder was poised on the edge of the cliff.

poised adj. 1 composed, controlled, self-possessed, unflappable, (self-)confident, (self-)assured, dignified, cool-headed, imperturbable, unruffled, cool, staid, reserved, sedate, calm, serene, tranquil, Colloq together: For a lad of eleven, Richard is quite poised. 2 ready, standing by, waiting, prepared: Our commando unit is poised to attack at your signal. 3 teetering, hovering, tottering, wavering, suspended, trembling, wobbling, balanced: In the present business climate, the company is poised on the brink of bankruptcy.

poison n. 1 toxin, venom, bane; miasma, mephitis: The chemical plant was found to be releasing poisons into the atmosphere. He kills rats using poison. 2 virus, bane, cancer, canker, corrupt or evil influence, pestilence, plague, blight: The drug barons continue to spread their poison throughout the world.

--v. 3 defile, adulterate, infect, taint, pollute; contaminate, debase, pervert, vitiate, subvert, warp, envenom: Chemicals from the nearby plant have poisoned the drinking-water. Why have you poisoned the child's mind against eating spinach? 4 murder, kill, do away with, destroy, dispatch or despatch: Lucrezia Borgia poisoned her enemies in ingenious ways.

poisonous adj. 1 lethal, deadly, fatal, mortal, toxic, septic, virulent, noxious or rare nocuous, venomous, malignant, pernicious, miasmic, mephitic: Poisonous effluents were leaked into the rivers by the chemical plant. 2 malicious, malevolent, malignant, corruptive, vicious, baleful, evil, foul, diabolic(al), defamatory, libellous, slanderous, dangerous, deleterious,: They have been spreading poisonous gossip about him again.

poke v. 1 jab, stick, prod, dig, goad, stab, thrust, push, elbow, nudge, jog, jostle, butt, shove: Be careful not to poke someone in the eye with your umbrella. He tells a joke, then pokes me in the ribs to make sure I've got it. 2 punch, hit, strike, box, cuff, smite, smack: I made a suggestive remark and she poked me in the jaw. 3 pry, nose (about or around), stick one's nose into, intrude, dig, probe, investigate; meddle, interfere, butt in, tamper; Colloq snoop: I wish they would stop poking into my affairs. 4 poke fun (at). tease, ridicule, mock, make fun of, jeer (at), chaff, taunt, twit, make sport of, needle, Colloq kid, rib, Brit send up, take the mickey out of: People who don't understand something often poke fun at it. Stop poking fun at my hat.

--n. 5 jab, prod, dig, stab, thrust, push, elbow, finger, nudge, jog, jostle, butt, shove: Every time Rodney wants to emphasize a point, he gives you a poke. 6 punch, hit, box, jab, cuff, smack, blow: If anyone says anything bad about you, I'll give him a poke in the nose.

polar   adj. 1 Arctic, Antarctic, frigid, icy, glacial, freezing, frozen, numbing, Siberian, hibernal, hyperborean, brumal, wintry: It is positively polar in the house without the heat turned on. 2 opposite, opposed, antithetical, contrary, contradictory, diametric, antipodal, antagonistic, hostile: Dante felt Good and Evil to be the two polar elements of the Creation, on which it all turns.

pole°   n. rod, stick, staff, spar, shaft, mast, standard, upright; flag-pole, flagstaff, jackstaff; beanpole, hop-pole: We had to use a long pole to get the kite down from the tree.

poleý   n. 1 extremity, end, limit, extreme: Their views are at opposite poles and they cannot agree. 2 from pole to pole. everywhere, all over, far and wide, high and low, leaving no stone unturned, throughout the world or the length and breadth of the land, Colloq US everyplace: He searched for her from pole to pole. 3 poles apart. (very or completely) different, worlds apart, at opposite extremes, at opposite ends of the earth, at odds, irreconcilable: I'm afraid that the union and management remain poles apart on the issue of working hours.

police   n. 1 constabulary, policemen, policewomen, police officers, Colloq boys in blue, the (long arm of the) law, the cops, the gendarmes, Slang the coppers, the fuzz, Brit the (Old) Bill, US the heat: There was a bit of an argument, so we called the police.

--v. 2 patrol, guard, watch, protect: Additional officers were assigned to police the neighbourhood. 3 enforce, regulate, administer, oversee, control, observe, supervise, monitor: A unit was established to police the terms of the agreement.

police officer
n. officer, policeman, policewoman, constable, Brit police constable, PC, WPC, Chiefly US peace officer, patrolman, patrolwoman, Colloq cop, gendarme, Brit bobby; Slang copper, fuzz, flatfoot, Brit rozzer, Old Bill, Offensive and derogatory pig, Historical peeler, US bull, fuzz ball: The police officers then asked if I wouldn't mind helping with their inquiries.

policy n. approach, procedure, (game) plan, design, scheme, programme, method, system, management, conduct, behaviour, strategy, tactic(s), principle(s), protocol, regulation, rule, custom, way, practice, ways and means, action: What policy should we follow regarding interest rates?

polish v. 1 shine, brighten, burnish, buff, furbish, wax, clean, smooth, rub, gloss: He polished up the handles so carefully That now he is the ruler of the Queen's navy. 2 Often, polish up. refine, improve, perfect, finish, cultivate, ameliorate, enhance; correct, emend: If you polish up the article we might consider it for publication. 3 polish off. a conclude, end, terminate, finish: Ned polished off his homework in less than an hour. b kill, slay, murder, dispatch or despatch, destroy, dispose of, do away with, liquidate, eliminate, Slang bump off, rub out, do in, take for a ride: Three platoons were polished off quickly. c dispose of, put away, eat, consume, wolf (down): In a few minutes, MacGregor had polished off the entire meal. 4 polish up. study, review, learn, Archaic con, Colloq bone up (on), Slang Brit swot up (on): If you're going to M laga, you'd better polish up your Spanish.

--n. 5 gloss, shine, lustre, sheen, glaze, smoothness, brilliance, sparkle, gleam, glow, brightness, radiance: You cannot imagine what a fine polish she put on that old table. 6 wax, oil: The new polish really put a shine on the desk.

polished adj. 1 accomplished, adept, proficient, expert, fine, outstanding, skilful, gifted, masterful, masterly, virtuoso, excellent, superior, superb, superlative; flawless, faultless, perfect, impeccable: Edna is quite a polished cellist. She gave a polished performance. 2 refined, elegant, cultivated, graceful, debonair, sophisticated, urbane, soign,(e), courtly, genteel, cultured, civilized, well-bred, well-mannered, polite:

Under her guidance, James has become a polished gentleman.

polite adj. 1 civil, respectful, well-mannered, mannerly, courteous, deferential, diplomatic, tactful, formal, proper, cordial: We asked our new neighbours to tea but were met with a polite refusal. 2 See polished, 2, above.

politic adj. 1 ingenious, shrewd, crafty, canny, cunning, designing, scheming, clever, wily, foxy, tricky, artful, Macchiavellian, evasive, shifty, Colloq cagey: Daniel is politic enough to know how to manoeuvre situations to his benefit. 2 tactful, diplomatic, discreet, prudent, judicious, wise, sage, sagacious, sensible, intelligent, percipient, discriminating, far-sighted, expedient, perceptive: It was politic of the winner to share the prize with those who had helped him most.

political adj. 1 governmental, civic, civil, public, state, national, federal; administrative, bureaucratic: The movement began as an attempt to gain political freedom. 2 partisan, factious, factional: A coalition government was formed by the major political parties.

politician

n. legislator, lawmaker, statesman, stateswoman; minister, Brit Member of Parliament, MP, US public or civil servant, administrator, official, bureaucrat, office-bearer, senator, congressman, congresswoman, representative, assembly-man, assembly-woman, selectman; Colloq US derogatory politico, (political) boss or hack, machine politician, ward-heeler, wirepuller: Some politicians have given a bad name to the art of politics.

politics n. 1 public affairs, political science, civics, civil affairs, government, statecraft, diplomacy, statesmanship: Hume viewed politics as people united in society and dependent on each other. 2 manoeuvring, manipulation, wirepulling, machination: Office politics are such that they wouldn't dare dismiss that department head.

poll n. 1 voting, vote, returns, tally, figures: The poll shows that the incumbents are not as secure as they thought. 2 opinion poll, survey, canvass, census, ballot, count: A poll of home-owners shows that most would like to own washing machines.

--v. 3 sample, survey, question, canvass, ballot, ask, interview; count, enumerate, tally, register, record: We polled teenagers to determine their reaction to a youth centre; those in favour polled 73 per cent. 4 receive, get, win, register, tally: Cavendish polled more than 60 per cent of the votes cast.

pollute v. 1 contaminate, adulterate, befoul, foul, soil, spoil, taint, stain, dirty, sully, blight, poison: These factories must be prevented from continuing to pollute the atmosphere. 2 corrupt, desecrate, profane, defile, violate: The altar was polluted because it had been touched by a non-believer.

pollution n. contamination, adulteration, corruption, polluting, fouling, befouling, soiling, spoiling, tainting, staining, dirtying, sullying, blighting, poisoning, vitiation: Laws were passed to prosecute those responsible for the pollution of the environment.

pomp n. glory, grandeur, magnificence, splendour, show, extravaganza, pageantry, ceremony, spectacle, brilliance, ceremoniousness: The Chinese court's pomp and display of wealth had never before been seen by a westerner.

pompous adj. 1 vain, vainglorious, proud, arrogant, pretentious, ostentatious, showy, grandiose, haughty, overbearing, conceited, egotistical, self-important, boastful, braggart, inflated, snobbish, magisterial, imperious, pontifical, affected, exhibitionist, Colloq uppity, highfalutin or hifalutin, hoity-toity, high-hat, Slang snooty, snotty: Don't you despise the pompous way Marshall struts about in that ridiculous uniform? 2 bombastic, flowery, grandiloquent, pedantic, stuffy, fustian, orotund, ornate, embroidered, flatulent, windy, turgid, inflated, high-flown, euphuistic: He's always making long-winded, pompous speeches because he loves the sound of his own voice.

ponder v. consider, muse (over or on), brood (over or upon or on), mull over, deliberate (over), meditate (upon or on), think (over or on or about), weigh, ruminate (over), chew over, cogitate, excogitate, reflect (on or over), contemplate: I shall need a while to ponder the answer to that question. Give me a little more time to ponder.

ponderous adj. 1 weighty, unwieldy, heavy, massive, huge, big, large, awkward, clumsy, cumbersome or cumbrous: A ponderous juggernaut bore down on us, completely out of control. 2 dull, tedious, laboured, laborious, tiresome, turgid, boring, dreary, pedestrian, stilted, windy, inflated, long-winded, wordy, verbose, prolix, elephantine, pompous, grandiloquent, overdone: Many students faced with textbooks written in ponderous prose become disenchanted with learning.

pool n. 1 pond, lake, tarn, mere, lagoon; swimming-pool, leisure pool, wading pool, Brit paddling pool, US wading pool, Formal natatorium: We found an icy mountain pool where we went for a swim. 2 collection, fund(s), purse, stakes, reserve(s), bank, Colloq pot, jackpot, kitty: So far we have too little money in the pool for an office party at Christmas. 3 syndicate, trust, group, consortium, cartel, combine: The object of the pool was the private regulation of market prices, which is illegal.

--v. 4 accumulate, collect, gather, combine, merge, consolidate, amalgamate, league, bring or come or band or get together, team (up) with: We would do better if we pooled our resources.

poor adj. 1 needy, destitute, indigent, in want, in need, penniless, poverty-stricken, impoverished, badly off, necessitous, poor as a church-mouse, straitened, pinched, in reduced circumstances, impecunious, financially embarrassed, down and out, out of pocket, ruined, insolvent, bankrupt, Colloq broke, hard up, on one's uppers, short, US wiped out, Brit in Queer Street, Slang Brit skint: They were poor and didn't know where their next meal was coming from. 2 low, bad, skimpy, meagre, scant, scanty, inadequate, deficient, insufficient, sparse: How can a family of five survive on such a poor salary? These days, 3 per cent would be considered a poor return on investment. 3 barren, unproductive, unfruitful, fruitless, infertile, sterile; depleted, exhausted, impoverished: This is poor soil, and no amount of cultivation is likely to make it productive. 4 bad, awful, inadequate, unsatisfactory, unacceptable, bumbling, inefficient, amateurish, unprofessional, inferior, second-rate, third-rate, low-grade, shabby, shoddy, mediocre, defective, faulty, flawed, substandard, sorry, not up to par or snuff, slipshod, below or under par, Colloq rotten, lousy: They did a poor job repairing my car. Her latest recital was pretty poor. 5 insignificant, slight, paltry, inconsequential, mean, modest, trivial, trifling: They made only a poor attempt to correct the problem. 6 unfortunate, unlucky, pathetic, luckless, pitiful, pitiable, ill-fated, miserable, wretched, ill-starred, star-crossed, jinxed, hapless: The poor chap lost his entire family in the disaster. 7 bad, ill: Aunt Theresa has been in poor health lately.

poorly adv. 1 badly, inadequately, unsatisfactorily, incompetently, inexpertly, improperly, crudely, unprofessionally, amateurishly: The decorators you recommended have done their work very poorly indeed.

--adj. Colloq 2 unwell, indisposed, ailing, sick, below par, Colloq rotten, under the weather: Charles is rather poorly, I'm afraid.

pop v. 1 burst, explode, bang, go off: The balloon popped, making me jump. 2 Often, pop in or out or by. visit, stop, call, appear, Colloq drop in, Brit nip in: Guess who popped in to see me on his way to the airport. 3 bulge, protrude, stick out, US bug out: The little boy's eyes popped when they brought in the birthday cake.

--n. 4 explosion, bang, report, crack: The Christmas cracker went off with a loud pop. 5 soft drink, soda (water); cola, Brit fizzy drink, lemonade, US soda (pop): A bottle of pop for my daughter and a pint of bitter for me, please.

populace n. people, masses, commonalty, (general) public, commoners, multitude, hoi polloi, crowd, throng, rabble, peasantry, proletariat, common folk, rank and file, working class, bourgeoisie, mob, Derogatory great unwashed, riff-raff, rabble, canaille, ragtag and bobtail: Some MPs act on behalf of their own constituencies rather than the populace at large.

popular adj. 1 favourite, favoured, in favour, accepted, well-received, approved, (well-)liked, fashionable, in fashion, stylish, in vogue, celebrated, renowned, acclaimed, famous, in demand, sought-after, all the rage, Colloq trendy, in, hot: You would become a millionaire overnight if you could accurately predict the popular music of the coming year. 2 conventional, stock, commonplace, public, normal, standard, general, universal, average, everyday, ordinary, routine, common, habitual, prevalent, current, prevailing, dominant, predominant, predominating, customary: His films cater to popular tastes in science fiction. 3 lay, non-professional, amateur, understandable, accessible, popularized, simplified: He presents a popular astronomy programme on TV.

popularity
n. favour, acceptance, approval, esteem, regard, repute, reputation, vogue, trend, stylishness, renown, acclaim, fame, celebrity, lionization, (hero-) worship, Colloq trendiness: The immense popularity of her novels in America has made her very rich.

popularly adv. commonly, generally, ordinarily, usually, universally, widely, regularly, customarily, prevalently, habitually: It is a popularly held belief among the French that their wine is the best in the world.

populate v. colonize, settle, people, occupy; inhabit, dwell in, reside in, live in: Shiploads of families braved the voyage to populate the New World.

population
n. people, populace, inhabitants, residents, natives, denizens, citizenry, citizens, folk: In those days there was no one to look after the legal rights of the population.

populous adj. crowded, (heavily) populated, peopled, teeming, thronged, crawling, swarming, jammed, jam-packed, packed: The populous cities contrast with the sparsely inhabited rural areas.

pore° v. pore over. study, examine, scrutinize, peruse, read, go over, Colloq con: Hamilton sits in the library, day after day, poring over books of forgotten lore.

poreý n. opening, orifice, hole, aperture, vent, perforation, Technical spiracle, stoma: A hot bath opens the pores in the skin.

pornographic

adj. obscene, lewd, offensive, indecent, prurient, smutty, taboo, blue, dirty, salacious, licentious, nasty, X-rated, Colloq porno, US raunchy: Some prudes consider anything concerning sex to be pornographic.

pornography
n. obscenity, smut, filth, dirt, erotica, Colloq porn: The council voted to forbid the sale of pornography within the town precincts.

porous adj. spongy, spongelike, permeable, pervious, penetrable: The rainwater runs through the porous rock and collects in the pools below.

port n. harbour, haven, seaport; mooring, anchorage; refuge: We were bound east for the port of Cardiff.

portable adj. transportable, manageable, carriable, handy, light, lightweight, compact, pocket, pocket-sized, little, small, US carry-on, vest-pocket, shirt-pocket: He needs a van just to transport his portable television, portable radio, portable hi-fi, portable typewriter, portable computer, and portable calculator.

portentous
adj. 1 ominous, threatening, momentous, sinister, fateful, alarming, menacing, foreboding, ill-omened, inauspicious, unfavourable, ill-starred, ill-fated, star-crossed, lowering or louring, gloomy, unpromising, unpropitious: Precisely at midnight they appeared with the most portentous news. 2 extraordinary, amazing, astonishing, astounding, prodigious, awesome, awe-inspiring, remarkable, marvellous, phenomenal, fabulous, fantastic, mind-boggling, wondrous, miraculous: The coronation of a British monarch is truly a portentous event.

porter° n. bearer, (baggage) carrier or attendant, US airports skycap, US railways redcap: I tipped the porter to carry our bags to a taxi.

porterý n. 1 concierge, cleaner, caretaker, Chiefly US and Canadian janitor, superintendent, Colloq US super: When we are away, the porter keeps our mail for us. 2 door-keeper, watchman, doorman, gatekeeper, concierge, US tiler: He went to my club, but the porter would not let him in.

portico n. porch, veranda or verandah, gallery, colonnade, galilee: At the front of the mansion, six corinthian pillars support a wide portico.

portion n. 1 segment, part, section, division, subdivision, parcel, piece, hunk, chunk, lump, wedge, slice, sliver, fraction, fragment, bit, morsel, scrap: A portion of the masonry fell into the street in the earthquake. 2 share, part, allotment, quota, ration, apportionment, allowance, allocation, assignment, percentage, measure, division, quantity: The size of an investor's portion depends on the amount invested. 3 helping, serving; ration, plate, platter: He complained that the portions in nouvelle cuisine are too small.

--v. 4 Often, portion out. apportion, share out, allocate, ration, allot, partition, assign, consign, dole out, deal (out), parcel out, distribute, administer, dispense, disperse, divide, split up, carve up, cut up, break up, section, Colloq divvy up: The conquered territories were then portioned out among the victors.

portrait n. picture, likeness, image,sketch, rendering, vignette; representation, description, profile, thumbnail sketch, portrayal, picturization, depiction; account, story, characterization, study, record, file, dossier: We have the culprit's portrait in our rogues' gallery. We need a more accurate portrait of the kidnapper.

portray v. 1 represent, picture, show, depict, paint, render, characterize, describe, delineate: She is portrayed wearing the Castelli tiara. Why must I always be portrayed as the villain? 2 act or play (the part or role of), take the part or role of, represent, pose as, impersonate: She portrays an aged crone who regains her youth in the last act.

pose v. 1 sit, model; position, place, arrange, set (up), put: Would you let your husband or wife pose in the nude? She posed the model standing, looking out of the window. 2 Usually, pose as. portray, act or play (the part or role of), take the part or role of, represent, impersonate, be disguised as, masquerade as, pretend or profess to be, pass (oneself off) as, pass for, imitate, mimic; attitudinize, posture, put on airs, Colloq show off: She posed as an art expert from Switzerland. She thinks him a rou,, but he's only posing. 3 set, put, ask, submit, broach, posit, advance, present, predicate, postulate: The interviewer posed some questions that were quite embarrassing.

--n. 4 position, attitude, posture, stance: Her profile is not shown to best advantage in that pose. 5 affectation, act, pretence, attitudinizing, affectedness, display, fa‡ade, show, ostentation: His interest in art is just a pose to impress her.

poseur n. posturer, exhibitionist, pretender, impostor, masquerader, attitudinizer; fake, faker, dissembler, fraud, Colloq show-off, phoney or US also phony: He talks about literature, but he's a poseur who just spouts the opinions of others.

posh adj. (de) luxe, luxurious, elegant, sumptuous, lavish, opulent, rich, royal, regal, luxury, grand, fashionable, Colloq swank(y), classy, ritzy, Slang snazzy: You ought to see what a posh office my son has!

posit v. postulate, hypothesize, propound, put or set forth, put forward, advance, propose, pose, offer, submit, predicate: If we posit a downturn in prices next year, how does that affect our profit forecasts?

position n. 1 posture, attitude, stance, pose; disposition, arrangement, disposal: Once in a while, he would change his position so that he faced the sun. With the pieces in this position the chess game is a draw. 2 site, placement, situation, whereabouts, placing, emplacement, location: Those bearings put his present position about 20 miles west of C diz. 3 viewpoint, point of view, outlook, attitude, angle, slant, stance, stand, opinion, inclination, leaning, bent, sentiment, feeling, way of thinking: My solicitor is pessimistic about my position in this case. 4 status, condition, state, circumstances, situation: Our financial position vis-…-vis investment in gilt bonds has changed. 5 class, caste, place, rank, standing, station, status, importance: They insist on knowing the social position of the girl's family. 6 job, occupation, situation, post, office, function, appointment, capacity, place, role, Colloq billet, berth, Australian possie or possy My mother's position as managing director had nothing to do with my getting a promotion.

7 hypothesis, thesis, principle, contention, assertion, predication, belief, proposition, postulate: His position is based on the implications of the third law of thermodynamics.

--v. 8 put, place, situate, site, set, fix, settle, dispose, arrange: The pointer is again positioned at zero. Position your forces along this ridge and stay on full alert. 9 place, locate, establish, determine, fix, localize: The scientists positioned the seismic activity as being along the San Andreas fault.

positive adj. 1 sure, certain, definite, unequivocal, categorical, absolute, unqualified, unambiguous, unmistakable or unmistakeable, clear-cut, clear, explicit, express, decisive, indisputable, indubitable, unquestionable, unquestioned, incontestable, uncontested, undeniable, reliable, persuasive, convincing, irrefutable: The police have positive evidence that the men are innocent of any crime. Spending this evening with you has been a positive delight. 2 definitive, emphatic, decided, forceful, firm, peremptory, definite: He gave a positive denial when asked if he had agreed to let the hostages go. She made a positive commitment to meet me here at noon. 3 sure, certain, confident, convinced, satisfied: Are you positive that the last train is at midnight? 4 beneficial, favourable, complimentary, productive, useful: I heard many positive things about the way she handled herself at the interview. 5 overconfident, dogmatic, doctrinaire, pontifical, opinionated, pigheaded, stubborn, obstinate, obdurate, arbitrary, overweening, arrogant, assertive, dictatorial, despotic, imperious, Rare thetic(al): His problem is that he is quite positive about things that simply are not so. 6 practical, realistic, utilitarian, productive, functional, pragmatic(al), realistic, matter-of-fact, Colloq hard-nosed: They have taken a positive approach to studying the economics of small businesses. 7 encouraging, supportive, constructive, reassuring, enthusiastic, favourable, affirmative, yes, confirming: Our plan to buy out the company has received a positive reaction from our bankers. Asked if they would buy our product, businessmen gave a positive response. 8 auspicious, promising, propitious, encouraging; optimistic, favourable, cheerful, confident; Colloq bullish, upbeat: In the long run, the picture for home-owners looks positive. It pays to maintain a positive outlook and not get depressed. 9 complete, utter, total, perfect, out-and-out, consummate, unmitigated, thorough, thoroughgoing; egregious, glaring, stark, sheer, outright, unqualified, unequivocal: You were a positive idiot not to let me know you needed help. All attempts at reconciliation ended in positive disaster.

positively

adv. definitely, absolutely, unquestionably, certainly, (most) assuredly, undeniably, undoubtedly, surely, to be sure, emphatically, unmistakably or unmistakeably, unqualifiedly, categorically, indisputably, beyond or without (a shadow of) a doubt, indubitably, beyond question: The wine list at Le MaŒtre's is positively the best in the area.

possess v. 1 be possessed or in possession of, have, own, enjoy, be blessed or endowed with: In the 19th century, the family possessed great wealth. 2 have, be born or gifted or endowed with, contain, embody, embrace, include: He possesses a talent to amuse people. Man does not possess as keen a sense of smell as many animals. 3 dominate, control, govern, consume, take control of, preoccupy, obsess; charm, captivate, enchant, cast a spell over, bewitch, enthral: What possessed her to think that I could help? He behaves as if he is possessed by the devil. 4 be possessed with or of. have, be held or influenced or dominated by, be imbued or inspired or permeated or affected with: She became possessed with the notion that she could sing. Fiona believes herself the only person possessed of reason. 5 possess oneself of. acquire, achieve, get, come by, gain, come into, win, obtain, procure, secure, take, seize, take or gain possession of: Kevin has possessed himself of the only comfortable bed in the place.

possessed adj. obsessed, driven, controlled, dominated, ridden, bedevilled, consumed, haunted, pressed, maddened, crazed, demented, frenzied, Colloq eaten up: He behaved like a man possessed.

possession

n. 1 ownership, title, proprietorship, control, hold, tenure, keeping, care, custody, guardianship, protection: The paintings are now in my possession. 2 holding, territory, province, dominion, colony, protectorate: How long will the Falkland Islands remain a possession of the Crown? 3 possessions. belongings, property, effects, chattels, assets, worldly goods, things: The prison clerk placed all my possessions in an envelope, explaining that they would be returned when I was released. 4 take or gain possession of. seize, capture, take, conquer, occupy, acquire, win, possess oneself of, secure, obtain; repossess: The raiding party gained possession of the port and surrounding area. The finance company has taken possession of my car.

possessive

adj. 1 greedy, unyielding, selfish, ungiving, ungenerous, stingy, niggardly, materialistic, covetous, acquisitive: He refuses to see anyone, as he is very possessive of his time. 2 overprotective, controlling, grasping, dominating, domineering, overbearing: Anyone with a possessive parent finds it difficult to leave home.

possibility

n. 1 chance, odds, prospect, conceivability, feasibility, plausibility, likelihood, admissibility: There is a possibility of my leaving work early to meet you. What is the possibility that he might be honest? They deny even the possibility of God's existence. 2 Often, possibilities. opportunity, potentiality, potential, capacity, promise: The old house has many large rooms and offers great possibilities.

possible adj. 1 feasible, plausible, imaginable, conceivable, thinkable, credible, tenable, reasonable, admissible: It is remotely possible, though improbable, that she committed the crime. 2 realizable, practicable, workable, practical, doable, achievable, attainable, reachable, accomplishable, viable, Colloq on: In the present state of the art, a fully interactive computer, operating in real time, is still not possible.

possibly adv. 1 maybe, perhaps, God willing, Deo volente, if possible, Archaic or literary perchance, mayhap, peradventure: She is possibly the best person for the job. 2 in any way, under any circumstances, by any chance, by any means, at all: Could you possibly help me find my contact lens? The weather forecast couldn't possibly be correct.

post°   n. 1 pole, stake, upright, column, pillar, pale, picket, shaft, standard, newel, pier, pylon, pile, piling, strut, shore, stanchion, leg, prop, stay, support, brace: A huge central post held up the roof.

--v. 2 advertise, announce, proclaim, publish, circulate, propagate, promulgate; put or pin or tack or stick or hang up, affix: The notice of the meeting has been posted for all to see.

postý n. 1 assignment, appointment, position, situation, job, place, duty, role, function, employment, work, task, chore: Clarke was given a post as consul in some forgotten country.

--v. 2 place, put, station, assign, appoint, position, situate, set, locate: Guards have been posted around the enclosure.

post° n. 1 postal service, mail; delivery; collection: I am expecting an important letter in the post. It hasn't come in the first post.

--v. 2 send, dispatch or despatch, transmit, Chiefly US and Canadian mail: I posted your cheque this morning. 3 record, enter, register, list: We post the daily receipts in this ledger. 4 keep (someone) posted. inform, advise, brief, notify, Colloq fill (someone) in on: Our observers have kept me posted as to your whereabouts every step of the way.

poster n. placard, notice, bill, advertisement, announcement, broadside, broadsheet; circular, flier: Who designed that striking poster for the new play?

posterior adj. 1 hind, rear, back, after, hinder, rearward, Nautical aft: The posterior legs are somewhat longer. 2 later, after, latter, ensuing, following, succeeding, subsequent: Analysis has yielded evidence of the posterior origin of the lava.

--n. 3 buttocks, bottom, rump, seat, derriŠre, Colloq behind, rear, backside, tail, Colloq hinie, Slang Brit bum, Taboo slang Brit arse, US ass, butt, Yiddish tokus or tochis or tuchis: The term describing a person with a fat posterior is 'steatopygous'.

posterity n. descendants, successors, heirs, children, offspring, issue, progeny: It is good that these buildings will be preserved for posterity. Posterity will be the judge of our success.

post-haste

adv. quickly, at once, without delay, immediately, directly, straightaway, right away, promptly, speedily, swiftly, instantly, before one can say 'Jack Robinson', before you can say 'knife', rapidly, at full tilt, in a wink, in a trice, in the twinkling of an eye, Colloq pronto, chop-chop, p.d.q. (= 'pretty damned quick'), US and Canadian lickety-split, like greased lightning: He got me the report post-haste.

post-mortem

n. 1 autopsy, necropsy: We'll know the cause of death after the post-mortem. 2 review, analysis, Slang US Monday-morning quarterbacking: We can do without the post-mortem on every bridge hand.

postpone v. delay, adjourn, defer, keep in abeyance, put off or aside, lay aside, suspend, shelve, put or keep on ice, temporize, dally, Colloq put on the back burner, US table: We ought to postpone further discussion till we have the facts.

postponement

n. delay, adjournment, abeyance, suspension, stay, deferment, deferral, moratorium: There has been a postponement of the meeting till Monday.

posture n. 1 pose, position, attitude, stance, appearance, carriage: She stood there in a defiant posture, with arms akimbo. 2 position, condition, situation, state, disposition; arrangement, organization, layout, array, format: The government adopted a conciliatory posture in the matter. 3 attitude, stance, position, feeling, sentiment, outlook, (point of) view, viewpoint, orientation, disposition, frame of mind, mood: The interviewer tried to determine the general's posture on disarmament.

--v. 4 pose, attitudinize, affect, put on a show, do for effect, Colloq show off: Despite all her posturing, we believe her to be sincere.

pot n. 1 pan, saucepan, cauldron, cook-pot, stewpot; kettle: How many politicians have promised the people 'a chicken in every pot'? 2 jackpot, bank, kitty: You will have to add œ5 to the pot to see my hand. 3 pot-belly, paunch, gut, Colloq corporation, beer belly, spare tyre, US bay window: If he exercised more, Patrick wouldn't have such a pot.

potent   adj. 1 powerful, strong; mighty, vigorous, forceful, formidable, authoritative, influential, Literary puissant: A potent poison will kill those weeds. We have to reckon with an enemy that is quite potent. 2 effective, convincing, cogent, persuasive, compelling, efficacious, telling, sound, valid, impressive: Their argument is potent enough to convince the biggest sceptics.

potential adj. 1 possible, likely, implicit, implied, imminent, developing, budding, embryonic, dormant, hidden, concealed, covert, latent, quiescent, passive, future, unrealized, undeveloped: We are dealing with a potential threat to our liberty.

--n. 2 capacity, capability, possibility, aptitude, potency, Colloq the (right) stuff, what it takes: All teenagers have potential; the problem is to teach them to exploit it to the best advantage.

potion   n. draught, brew, beverage, drink, philtre, potation, elixir, tonic, cup, dose, concoction, decoction: The old crone gave him a tiny bottle containing the love potion.

pot-pourri

n. mixture, medley, miscellany, assortment, olla podrida, smorgasbord or sm”rg†sbord, gallimaufry, salmagundi, patchwork, collection, hotchpotch or US and Canadian hodgepodge, m‚lange or melange, motley, pastiche or pasticcio, mishmash, jumble, mess: What a pot-pourri of styles is represented in that art gallery!

potter   v. Chiefly Brit dabble (in or with), toy with, trifle with, fribble, fool (with or about or around), fritter (away), mess (about or around or with), tinker (with), meddle (with), monkey (about or around or with), fidget (with), US putter (around or with), Colloq fiddle (about or around or with), footle (around or about): On Sundays I like to potter about in the garden.

pottery   n. earthenware, ceramics, terracotta, crockery, stoneware, porcelain, china, delftware: Ornamented pottery has been found in pre-Columbian digs.

pouch n. pocket, sack, bag, purse, reticule, Dialect poke: A Highlander's pouch is called a sporran. As I was going out, I filled my tobacco pouch.

pounce v. 1 Often, pounce on or upon. spring (on or upon), leap (at or on), swoop down (on or upon), fall upon, jump (at or on), strike, take by surprise or unawares, attack, ambush, Colloq mug: As I rounded the corner, three youths pounced on me, stole my bag, and ran off.

--n. 2 spring, leap, swoop, jump: The cat was on the mantel shelf in a single pounce.

pound° v. 1 beat, batter, pelt, hammer, pummel; thump, belabour, thrash, bludgeon, cudgel, maul, strike, Colloq lambaste, Slang paste, clobber, work over, give (someone) the works or a pasting: She pounded on the door till someone came. It was satisfying to see him pound the class bully into submission. 2 crush, powder, pulverize, bray, comminute, triturate, mash, pulp: The corn must be pounded into a fine meal before use. 3 beat, throb, hammer, pulse, pulsate, palpitate: My heart was pounding, waiting to see if the tiger would attack. 4 pound into. instil, din into, drill into, drub into, hammer into, beat into: Her parents have pounded into her that she must show respect to her elders. 5 pound out. rid, expel, clear, cleanse, empty, purge, beat out, hammer out: The last bit of stubbornness was pounded out of me at school. 6 beat out; hammer out, produce: The jungle drums pounded out the message that Tarzan was coming.

--n. 7 pounding, beat, beating, thump, thumping: The pound of horses' hooves heralded the arrival of the cavalry.

poundý n. enclosure, pen, compound, confine, yard: My car was towed to the pound, and it cost a fortune to retrieve it.

pour v. 1 flow, run, gush, rush, flood, stream, course, spout, discharge, spurt, spew out, cascade: Water was pouring from a crack in the dam. 2 empty, discharge, let out: Pour the boiling water over the tea leaves and let them steep for a few minutes. 3 rain, teem, Colloq come down in buckets or by the bucketful, bucket down, rain cats and dogs, US rain pitchforks:

It poured all night. 4 stream, swarm, crowd, throng, teem, emerge, sally forth, issue (forth), go (forth): The show over, people poured into the streets.

pout v. 1 mope, brood, sulk, make a moue, pull a long face, frown, lour or lower, knit one's brows: Don't pout - I'll buy you an ice-cream.

--n. 2 frown, moue, long face: Her pout was occasioned by her father's scolding.

poverty n. 1 want, penury, indigence, insolvency, destitution, pauperism, impecuniousness, neediness, beggary: Her childhood was spent in poverty. 2 scarcity, scarceness, want, need, lack, meagreness, insufficiency, shortage, dearth, paucity, inadequacy: They criticized the poverty of talent among the current crop of actors.

powder n. 1 dust; talc: I couldn't remember whether the jar contained cornflour or baking powder. She dabbed her body all over with scented powder. 2 take a (run-out) powder. run away, abscond, escape, vanish, disappear, Slang Brit scarper, do a moonlight flit, US take it on the lam: The cops are coming, so I'm taking a powder.

--v. 3 pulverize, bray, grind, crush, pound, granulate, triturate, comminute, levigate: The rocks must first be crushed, then powdered. 4 sprinkle, besprinkle, dust, dredge, cover, coat: Lightly powder the top of the cake with icing sugar, and it is ready to serve.

power n. 1 Sometimes, powers. capacity, capability, ability, potential, faculty, competency or competence, faculty, potentiality, Colloq what it takes, US the (right) stuff, the goods: Fishes have the power to change their buoyancy. He has remarkable powers of observation. 2 control, dominance, authority, mastery, rule, influence, sway, command, ascendancy, sovereignty, dominion, weight, clout, Colloq pull, US drag: He maintains a Svengali-like power over her. The prime minister has the power to appoint and dismiss cabinet ministers. 3 control, command, authority: The party might not be in power for very long. 4 strength, might, vigour, energy, force, mightiness, potency, forcefulness, brawn, muscle, Literary puissance: His speech was delivered with great power and a certain wit. Has she the power it takes to toss the caber? 5 talent, skill, ability, faculty, gift, aptitude, genius, knack: They say that she has the power to see into the future. 6 authority, licence, right, authorization, privilege, warrant, prerogative: By the power vested in me, I now declare you man and wife. It is within her power to grant a stay of execution. 7 Often, powers. activity, effectiveness, effect, ability, capacity, active ingredient(s): This mushroom has hallucinogenic powers. 8 energy, momentum, impetus, drive, force, inertia: The car rolled halfway up the next hill under its own power. 9 (mechanical or electrical or atomic) energy, electricity, fuel: Yesterday there was another demonstration against the use of nuclear power. 10 powers that be. government, administration, authorities, incumbents: It is up to the powers that be to investigate corruption.

powerful adj. 1 potent, strong, mighty, vigorous, robust, energetic, sturdy, stalwart, tough, resilient, dynamic: Leslie has a powerful physique. The cities of the Hanseatic League had powerful economies. 2 influential, strong, compelling, forceful, potent, substantial, weighty, authoritative, effective; important, impressive, telling, effectual, formidable, persuasive: Powerful arguments have been brought to bear against taking such action. She has many powerful friends. 3 strong, potent; intense, substantial, great, high: The drug is too powerful to be taken regularly. A powerful electrical charge was sent through the wire to test the connection.

powerless adj. 1 helpless, incapable, unable, unfit, incompetent, ineffectual, ineffective: Without his wand, the magician was powerless. 2 incapacitated, helpless, weak, feeble, debilitated, crippled, paralysed, disabled: He is completely powerless without the use of his right hand.

16.7 practicable...

=-

practicable

adj. doable, feasible, workable, performable, achievable, attainable, accomplishable, possible, viable: We climbed up the glacier as far as was practicable. At last we had a practicable flying machine.

practical adj. 1 pragmatic, useful, usable or useable, functional, realistic, reasonable, sound, utilitarian, applicable, serviceable, empirical, efficient: Whether the device is practical will depend on its cost effectiveness. 2 sensible, reasonable, common-sense or common-sensical, everyday, ordinary, down-to-earth, expedient, matter-of-fact, mundane, business-like, hard-headed, judicious, Colloq hard-nosed: Put theory aside and focus on a practical solution to the problem. 3 applied, field, hands-on, personal, everyday: She has had practical experience in nursing the elderly.

practically

adv. 1 almost, (very) nearly, wellnigh, virtually, in effect, just about, essentially, fundamentally, at bottom, basically, when all is said and done, at the end of the day, to all intents and purposes: We are practically there. I have practically finished the ironing. 2 realistically, matter-of-factly, clearly, simply, reasonably, rationally, sensibly: Practically, there was nothing to be done except let the fire burn itself out.

practice n. 1 custom, wont, habit, routine, convention, tradition, rule, procedure, usage, mode, style, way, modus operandi, technique or technic, Formal praxis, Colloq MO (= 'modus operandi'): She makes a practice of swimming for an hour every day. It is our practice to get patients out of bed as soon as possible after surgery. 2 exercise, discipline, drill, practising, repetition, rehearsal, training, preparation; workout, warm-up; application, study: She needs more practice on the beginner's slope before going down the main piste. 3 pursuit, exercise, work, profession, career, vocation, conduct; business, office: He genuinely enjoys the practice of law. I heard of a veterinary practice for sale in Yorkshire. 4 in practice. practically, actually, day-to-day, realistically, in real life: In practice no one would ever treat an injury the way this book recommends. 5 out of practice. inexperienced, unpractised, unaccustomed, rusty: I once played a good game of chess, but I'm out of practice now.

practise v. 1 drill, exercise, work out, train, prepare, rehearse, run through, repeat, study, US practice: I am practising for Sunday's tennis tournament. She practises the piano every day.

You should practise your routine for the show. 2 carry on, make a practice of, perform, do, act, carry out, put into practice, US practice: She practises law. You should practise what you preach.

practised adj. 1 accomplished, proficient, expert, skilled, experienced, capable, adept, seasoned, able, qualified, gifted, talented, skilful, masterful, consummate, superb, superior, US practiced: She is a practised liar. 2 trained, rehearsed, versed, cultivated, schooled, finished, perfected, US practiced: He greeted them with the practised air of an veteran diplomat.

praise n. 1 acclaim, approval, approbation, applause, plaudits, kudos, endorsement, acclamation, tribute, accolade, compliments, commendation, encomium, eulogy, panegyric, ovation: Sheila has received well-deserved praise for her work with paraplegic children. Would you expect me to sing the praises of my rival? 2 honour, glorification, adoration, exaltation, devotion, homage, worship, veneration, adulation, reverence, glory, hymn or song of praise, paean, hosanna: The king rejoiced and said, 'Praise be to God'.

--v. 3 acclaim, approve, laud, applaud, endorse, pay tribute to, compliment, commend, eulogize, extol, honour, sing the praises (of): The speaker praised Read for his many contributions to linguistics. 4 worship, revere, reverence, exalt, glorify, adore, pay homage to, venerate, give thanks to, hallow: Praise the Lord and pass the ammunition.

praiseworthy
adj. commendable, laudable, admirable, creditable, worthy, meritorious, deserving, exemplary: However praiseworthy your motives were, you did not stop to consider the consequences.

prance v. caper, dance, gambol, skip, cavort, romp, leap, frisk, jump, spring, bound, Dressage curvet, capriole: Ahead of the royal coach came a dozen riders on prancing horses.

prank n. trick, (practical) joke, frolic, escapade, antic, caper, stunt, lark, jest, jape, monkey tricks or esp. US monkeyshines, mischief: Those schoolboy pranks we once thought hilarious now seem quite silly.

prattle v. 1 prate, babble, blather or blether, blither, gibber, jabber, jibber-jabber, palaver, tattle, twaddle, gabble, chatter, patter, drivel, twitter, rattle on, go on (and on), maunder, Brit natter, Colloq witter (on), gas, gab, spout, gush, run (on), US run off at the mouth, Slang jaw, ya(c)k, ya(c)kety-ya(c)k, shoot off one's mouth: Do I have to listen to him prattle on and on about his grandchildren?

--n. 2 prate, prating, babble, babbling, blather or blether, blathering or blethering, gibber, gibbering, jabber, jabbering, palaver, palavering, tattle, tattling, twaddle, chatter, chattering, gabble, gabbling, patter, drivel, twitter, twittering, rattling on, going on, maundering, cackle, US jibber-jabbering, twattle, clack, Colloq gas, gab, running off at the mouth, Slang jawing, ya(c)kety-ya(c)k: We were treated to constant prattle about eating healthy foods. 3 jabberwocky, gobbledegook or gobbledygook, mumbo-jumbo, rubbish, balderdash, (stuff and) nonsense, humbug, bunkum, tommy-rot, trash, rot, foolishness, Colloq pish and tush, hot air, flapdoodle, rigmarole or rigamarole, bunk, piffle, moonshine, poppycock, claptrap, bull, hogwash, swill, Brit tosh, fiddle-faddle, boloney, Chiefly US garbage, horse feathers, Slang crap, hooey, guff, Taboo slang bullshit, US crock (of shit): What they told you about guaranteeing your job is just a lot of prattle.

pray v. 1 beseech, ask, call upon or on, entreat, implore, request, appeal to, plead (with), beg (for), importune, solicit, petition, supplicate, Rare obsecrate: I pray you to find it in your heart to approve my work. 2 say one's prayers, offer a prayer: We prayed for her safe return.

prayer n. 1 petition, supplication, request, entreaty, plea, suit, appeal, Rare obsecration: Our prayers were answered, and she returned safely. 2 devotion, praying, invocation, (divine) service, Literary orison: Man ascends to God through prayer.

preach v. 1 deliver a sermon, evangelize, spread the Word or the Gospel; catechize: The Most Reverend John Attwood will preach next week at Winchester. 2 moralize, sermonize, advise, counsel, admonish, reprimand, lecture, harangue, pontificate; urge, inculcate, advocate: Mother used to preach to us about being charitable. Father preached restraint in all things.

preacher n. minister, evangelist, clergyman, clergywoman, cleric, ecclesiastic, reverend, divine, Colloq tub-thumper: He studied for many years to become a preacher.

preamble n. introduction, foreword, prologue, preface, Formal proem, prolegomenon, exordium: As a preamble to today's proceedings, I should like to welcome our honoured guests.

precarious
adj. uncertain, unreliable, unsure, risky, hazardous, unpredictable, insecure, unstable, unsteady, unsettled, shaky, doubtful, dubious, questionable, tricky, delicate, ticklish, sensitive, slippery, touch-and-go, (hanging) in the balance, hanging by a thread, Damoclean, perilous, treacherous, dangerous, difficult, problematic, Colloq chancy, Brit dodgy, dicey, US iffy, Slang hairy: If sales continue to drop, the company will be in precarious condition. We followed a precarious trail down the mountainside.

precaution
n. 1 provision, preventive measure, safety measure, safeguard, insurance, protection, cover, escape: Unfortunately, he had failed to take any precautions against storm damage. 2 foresight, prudence, providence, forethought, caution, cautiousness, circumspection, care, attention, watchfulness, vigilance, alertness, wariness, chariness, apprehension, far-sightedness, anticipation: Precaution is wiser than hindsight.

precede v. come or go or proceed before or first, go ahead or in advance (of), lead (the way), pave the way (for), herald, usher in, introduce, antecede; foreshadow, antedate, predate: His wife preceded him into the room. The Decameron preceded The Canterbury Tales by about fifty years.

precedence
n. precedency, priority, pre-eminence, superiority, supremacy, preference, privilege, prerogative, importance, rank, position, primacy: Your school work must take precedence over football practice.

precedent n. prototype, model, example, exemplar, pattern, paradigm, yardstick, criterion, standard, lead: The French considered the

War of American Independence a precedent for their revolution.

preceding adj. foregoing, former, previous, above, prior, earlier, above-mentioned, aforementioned, above-stated, above-named: The defendant in the preceding action was remanded in custody for a week.

precept n. 1 rule, guide, principle, unwritten law, canon, guideline, dictate, code, injunction, law, commandment, instruction, injunction, directive, prescription, mandate, charge; statute, regulation, edict, ukase, decree, order, fiat, ordinance: The Ten Commandments provide basic precepts of moral behaviour. 2 maxim, proverb, axiom, motto, slogan, saying, byword, aphorism, apophthegm or apothegm: Does anyone follow the precepts set forth in Scripture?

precinct n. 1 Usually, precincts. area, territory, region, province, environs, purlieus, borders, bounds, confines: Does he have any authority outside the precincts of the city? 2 sphere, neighbourhood, zone, sector, section, quarter, district, locale: In some US cities, the area covered by a police station is called a precinct.

precious adj. 1 dear, dearest, costly, expensive, high-priced, valuable, invaluable, prized, priceless, irreplaceable, Colloq pricey: The entire cabinet was filled with precious jewels. 2 esteemed, choice, cherished, beloved, idolized, adored, loved, valued, prized, revered, venerated, venerable, hallowed: The church keeps its most precious relics in a special vault. 3 precise, exquisite, overrefined, chichi, over-nice, studied, artificial, effete, affected, overdone, pretentious, euphuistic, alembicated, Colloq Brit twee, Slang US cutesy: His style is characterized by somewhat precious language.

precipice n. cliff, escarpment, bluff, crag: We looked nervously over the edge of the precipice at the raging sea below.

precipitate

v. 1 accelerate, hasten, speed (up), advance, hurry, quicken, expedite, bring on or about, trigger, provoke, instigate, incite, facilitate, further, press, push forward: The rise in interest rates precipitated many bankruptcies. 2 hurl, fling, cast, launch, project: The force of the impact precipitated him through the windscreen.

--adj. 3 headlong, violent, rapid, swift, quick, speedy, meteoric, fast: A powerful counter-attack brought about the enemy's precipitate rout. 4 sudden, abrupt, unannounced, unexpected, unanticipated: Today's fall in share prices was as precipitate as yesterday's rise. 5 rash, impetuous, hasty, volatile, hotheaded, careless, reckless, incautious, injudicious, foolhardy, impulsive, unrestrained: The selection of a career should not be a precipitate decision.

precipitation
n. showers, drizzle, downpour, rain, rainfall, snow, snowfall, hail, sleet: Precipitation can be expected in advance of the low-pressure area pushing down from the north.

precipitous
adj. 1 abrupt, steep, perpendicular, sheer, bluff, acclivitous, declivitous: I cannot see how anyone can climb up the precipitous face of that crag. 2 See precipitate, 5, above.

pr‚cis n. outline, summary, synopsis, aper‡u, r‚sum‚, conspectus, survey, overview, abstract, abridgement, digest, compendium, recapitulation; table of contents: As I haven't the time to read the entire study document, let me have a pr‚cis of it.

precise adj. 1 correct, exact, definite, well-defined, explicit, word-for-word, verbatim, literal, letter-for-letter, literatim, faithful, specific, unambiguous, unequivocal, strict, authentic, perfect, true, veracious, truthful, unerring, error-free, accurate: Errors show that medieval scribes did not always succeed in making precise copies. 2 strict, meticulous, scrupulous, careful, conscientious, exact, unconditional, rigorous, rigid, puritanical, unbending, inflexible, unyielding, demanding, severe, prim, absolute: He has been very precise about dates and facts. Margaret is precise in insisting on obedience to her orders. 3 fastidious, particular, finicky, finical, fussy, meticulous, scrupulous, careful, conscientious, nice, exacting, critical, demanding: Painting miniatures is very precise work. 4 exact, very: This is the precise spot where I found the body.

precisely adv. 1 exactly, just, strictly, Colloq on the nail, smack, slap, on the nose, Brit bang on, spot on: His view is precisely the opposite of hers. We left precisely at five o'clock. You phoned, and that is precisely why I came. The two paintings are not precisely the same. 2 exactly, exactingly, correctly, rigorously, absolutely, punctiliously, minutely, carefully, meticulously, scrupulously, conscientiously, strictly, rigidly, inflexibly; in all respects, in every way: This judge follows the letter of the law precisely.

precision n. 1 correctness, exactness, fidelity, faithfulness, exactitude, preciseness, accuracy, rigour, perfection, flawlessness, faultlessness, literalism, faithfulness, unerringness: This copy follows the original with precision. 2 definiteness, care, nicety, meticulousness, rigorousness, rigour, fastidiousness, punctiliousness, scrupulousness, unambiguousness, nicety, strictness, explicitness: The precision of the wording leaves no doubt about what the writer intended.

preclude v. obviate, bar, prevent, stop, exclude, prohibit, shut out, forestall, rule out, debar, check, block, obstruct, avert, avoid, thwart, frustrate, impede, inhibit, hinder, interfere with: To preclude misunderstanding, please repeat what you said. They may not engage in activities that preclude them from performing their regular duties.

precocious

adj. advanced, mature, bright, gifted, intelligent, smart, quick: It is hard to believe that Oliver was a precocious child.

preconceived

adj. beforehand, predisposed, prejudged, predetermined, prejudiced, biased, anticipatory: He has many false preconceived notions about people.

preconception

n. predisposition, prejudgement, predetermination, prejudice, bias, presumption, presupposition, assumption, id,e fixe, prepossession, preconceived notion or idea: This production of King Lear will challenge your preconceptions of the play.

precondition

n. prerequisite, stipulation, condition, essential, must, sine qua non, imperative, requirement, proviso, provision, qualification, necessity: The release of the prisoners is a precondition for talks. Is great humanity a precondition of great music, or is it just a matter of the notes?

precursor n. 1 harbinger, herald, vanguard: The glow on the eastern horizon is the precursor of another day. 2 See predecessor, 1, below

predatory adj. 1 predacious or predaceous, carnivorous, preying, raptorial: Despite domestication, dogs and cats are predatory animals. 2 rapacious, ravenous, plundering, robbing, pillaging, marauding, despoiling, looting, piratical, vulturine, avaricious, greedy, voracious, larcenous, thieving, extortionate, usurious: Predatory pirates once ravaged the Mediterranean. Keep out of the hands of predatory money-lenders, my son.

predecessor

n. 1 forerunner, predecessor, antecedent: I could not match the accomplishments of my predecessor in this post. 2 forebear, forefather, ancestor, antecedent: Can you name the Tudor predecessors of Elizabeth I?

predestination

n. destiny, future, lot, fortune, kismet, karma; doom, fate; foreordainment, foreordination: Meeting like this must have been predestination.

predetermined

adj. 1 fixed, prearranged, pre-established, set (up), foregone, preplanned, pre-set: A predetermined amount of milk is automatically poured into each cup of coffee. 2 fated, doomed, destined, ordained, foreordained, Colloq cut and dried, Brit on the cards, US in the cards: One gets the feeling that the outcome was predetermined.

predicament

n. dilemma, quandary, difficulty, trial, situation, state, condition, imbroglio, emergency, crisis, impasse, Colloq pickle, jam, fix, pinch, scrape, spot, bind, corner, hole, mess, US box: I was hoping that you might help me out of a very awkward predicament.

predict v. foretell, prophesy, forecast, foresee, augur, prognosticate, forewarn, presage, vaticinate; portend, foreshadow, foretoken, forebode; intimate, hint, suggest: My mother predicted that there would be moments like this. If only I could predict the winner of the 2.30!

predictable
adj. foreseeable, foreseen, probable, likely, liable, expected, anticipated, (reasonably) sure or certain, Colloq Brit on the cards, US in the cards: Her angry reaction at being dismissed was quite predictable.

prediction
n. forecast, prophecy, augury, prognosis; intimation, hint, suggestion: The weatherman's predictions are more accurate than one might think. The prediction that he might be released the next day did not come true.

predominance
n. predominancy, superiority, influence, dominance, pre-eminence, preponderance, ascendancy, precedence, power, supremacy, hold, sway, hegemony, leadership, mastery, control, dominion, sovereignty, transcendence or transcendency, authority, the upper hand, the whip hand, advantage, the edge: We must re-establish the predominance of intellectual vigour over crass commercialism.

predominant
adj. dominant, predominating, controlling, sovereign, ruling, pre-eminent, preponderant, ascendant, superior, supreme, leading, paramount, main, chief, transcendant, important, telling, influential, primary, prevailing, prevalent: England was the predominant power in the world during the 19th century. The phlogiston theory was once predominant among scientists.

predominate
v. Often, predominate over. dominate, control, rule, reign, preponderate, outweigh, obtain, prevail, overshadow, get or have the upper hand, lord it over, hold sway, overrule: Though the American president is a Republican, the Democrats predominate in Congress.

pre-eminence

n. 1 See predominance, above. 2 peerlessness, magnificence, excellence, distinction, eminence, inimitability, superiority: There is no gainsaying the pre-eminence of Shakespeare as a poet and playwright.

pre-eminent

adj. 1 See predominant, above. 2 peerless, excellent, distinguished, eminent, inimitable, superb, unequalled, matchless, incomparable, outstanding, unique, unrivalled, unsurpassed, supreme, superior: In her opinion, Craig is the pre-eminent authority on the subject.

pre-eminently

adv. primarily, principally, by far, far and away, manifestly, eminently, notably, conspicuously, prominently, signally, uniquely, extraordinarily, supremely, superbly, matchlessly, incomparably, outstandingly: There is no doubt that Nathalie is pre-eminently qualified to direct the play.

pre-empt v. appropriate, usurp, arrogate, take over, assume, take possession of, seize, acquire, take, possess, expropriate: All the seats on the committee had been pre-empted by the ruling faction.

preen v. 1 trim, clean, plume, groom: The gliding swans stopped now and then to preen their feathers. 2 primp, dress up, titivate or tittivate, prettify, beautify, prink, spruce up, deck (out), Colloq doll up, Brit tart up: He made Sonia wait while he preened himself before the mirror.

preface n. 1 introduction, foreword, prologue, preamble, Formal proem, prolegomenon, exordium: By way of preface, I should like to say how happy I am to be here. The preface to the book is far too long.

--v. 2 precede, introduce, prefix, begin, open: The speaker prefaced his acceptance speech with a tribute to his predecessor.

prefatory adj. opening, introductory, preliminary, preparatory: Would you like to make a few prefatory remarks introducing this evening's speaker?

prefer v. 1 favour, like better, fancy, lean or incline towards or on the side of, be inclined, be partial to, pick, select, opt for, choose, single out, take a fancy to, embrace, espouse, approve, esteem: Which flavour do you prefer, chocolate or coffee? I should prefer to take my own car. 2 present, offer, propose, proffer, advance, submit, tender, put forward, file, lodge, enter: They preferred charges against the hooligans for criminal damage.

preference
n. 1 favourite, choice, selection, desire, option, pick: My preference is the Dover sole meuniŠre. 2 partiality, proclivity, prejudice, favouritism, predilection, liking, fancy, predisposition, bent, inclination, leaning: She shows a marked preference for short men.

preferential
adj. advantageous, biased, prejudiced, favourable, privileged, partial, better, favoured, superior: What entitles her to preferential treatment?

pregnant adj. 1 gravid, parturient, expectant, (heavy) with child, enceinte, Colloq expecting, in a family way, Brit preggers, Slang having a bun in the oven, Brit in the (pudding) club, up the spout: Her twins are only seven months old and now she's pregnant again. 2 charged, fraught, loaded, weighty, significant, meaningful, suggestive, eloquent, expressive, pointed: Although she said nothing, her smile was pregnant with meaning. 3 fruitful, teeming, fertile, fecund, rich, abounding, replete, productive: My mind was so pregnant with ideas that I couldn't wait to get down to work.

prehistoric
adj. 1 primordial, primal, primeval, primitive, earliest, early, antediluvian, Noachian or Noachic, fossil, ancient: The prehistoric remains of yet another skeleton have been found in the peat bogs. 2 antiquated, out-dated, old-fashioned, pass,: My mother makes me wear these absolutely prehistoric clothes to school.

prejudice n. 1 partiality, preconception, prejudgement, bias, leaning, warp, twist, preconceived notion, predisposition, predilection, jaundiced eye, jaundice: The judge showed an unfortunate prejudice against my client. 2 bigotry, unfairness, bias, partisanship, favouritism, cronyism, discrimination, intolerance, inequality; racism, racialism, apartheid, Jim Crowism, sexism, (male) chauvinism: There is still prejudice against many minority groups in society.

--v. 3 bias, influence, warp, twist, distort, slant; colour, jaundice, poison: Stop trying to prejudice me against the book, and let me form my own opinion. Are you prejudiced in favour of Anita's getting the job?

prejudiced

adj. 1 unfair, one-sided, biased, jaundiced, opinionated, predisposed, partial, partisan, non-objective, unobjective: The prosecution objected to him as a prejudiced witness. 2 bigoted, intolerant, narrow-minded, closed-minded, parochial, sexist, racist, chauvinistic: We have no room in our organization for people who are prejudiced.

prejudicial

adj. injurious, damaging, detrimental, harmful, unfavourable, inimical, deleterious, disadvantageous, counter-productive, pernicious: Such an investment decision might prove prejudicial to her financial security.

preliminary

adj. 1 advance, prior, introductory, beginning, initial, opening, preparatory, prefatory, preceding, antecedent, forerunning; premonitory; Formal or technical prodromal or prodromic: The preliminary design for the swimming-pool is ready. After some preliminary remarks, the ceremonies got under way.

--n. 2 introduction, beginning, opening, preparation, groundwork, prelude, precedence; overture: We insist on rigorous training as a preliminary to working in the field. 3 prelims. Rarely, preliminaries. introduction, preface, foreword, preamble, prologue, front matter, Formal proem, exordium, prolegomenon, prodromus, prodrome: The manuscript is finished and we are waiting for the prelims.

premature adj. 1 immature, undeveloped, underdeveloped, unfledged, untimely, unready, early, unripe, green: Much premature fruit has been blown down in the winds. 2 hasty, untimely, ill-timed, too early, too soon, beforehand, unseasonable, overhasty, impulsive, inopportune: The post may be slow, but still I think September a bit premature to send Christmas cards. The discovery that money was missing accounts for his premature departure.

prematurely

adv. 1 untimely, too soon, too early: He died prematurely at the age of 46. 2 rashly, (over-)hastily, at half-cock, half-cocked: She dismissed him prematurely, before he had the time to prove himself. The gun went off prematurely, with no chance to aim it.

premeditated

adj. planned, conscious, intentional, intended, wilful, deliberate, studied, purposive; contrived, preplanned, calculated, preconceived: The murder was coldly premeditated. I admit to being wrong, and I have no premeditated excuses.

premier n. 1 prime minister, PM, head of state, chief executive, president, chancellor: The premiers of the Commonwealth met at Kuala Lumpur in 1989.

--adj. 2 first, prime, primary, chief, principal, head, main, foremost, top-ranking, highest-ranking, ranking, leading, top, pre-eminent: He is the premier expert in his field.

premiŠre n. 1 premiere, first night, opening (night), debut: The premiŠre of A‹da was at the opening of the Suez Canal.

--v. 2 open, debut: The film will premiŠre at the Festival Cinema tomorrow.

--adj. 3 opening, debut, first, original, initial: The premiŠre West-End performance is scheduled for May after a provincial tour.

premise n. 1 premiss, assumption, proposition, postulate, hypothesis, conjecture, assertion, supposition, thesis, presupposition, proposal, theorem, surmise, basis, ground: He started out with the premise that time had a beginning and will have an end.

--v. 2 assume, propose, postulate, hypothesize, hypothecate, conjecture, posit, assert, suppose, presuppose, theorize, surmise, put or set forth, predicate, argue: If you accept what Einstein premised in the Special Theory of Relativity, then you accept that space is curved.

premium n. 1 bonus, extra, dividend, prize, award, reward, perquisite: In our slimming competition, a premium will be paid for each pound that you lose beyond five. 2 incentive, inducement, stimulus, incitement, lure, bait, spur, goad, reward, Colloq come-on, Slang US and Canadian freebie: Many Building Societies offer premiums to first-time buyers. 3 value, importance, regard, stock, store, appreciation: We place a premium on the way our staff treat customers. 4 at a premium. a scarce, rare, scant, scanty, sparse, hard to come by, in short supply, Colloq scarce as hen's teeth, Chiefly Brit thin on the ground: Proficient, literate, experienced editors are at a premium these days. b costly, expensive, dear, high-priced, Colloq steep, stiff: The convertible model of this car is at a premium.

premonition

n. intuition, foreboding, presentiment, forewarning, suspicion, feeling, hunch, Colloq funny feeling, sneaking suspicion: I had a premonition that something terribly evil was lurking in store for me.

preoccupied

adj. 1 engrossed, lost in thought, rapt, thoughtful, pensive, absorbed, cogitating, cogitative, meditating, musing, reflecting, reflective, contemplative, contemplating, pondering, brooding, ruminating, in a brown study: John is preoccupied, thinking about the speech he has to deliver tonight. 2 vague, offhand, far-away, absent-minded, abstracted, oblivious, unaware, wrapped up, immersed, inattentive, distracted, distrait, Colloq turned off, US out of it: From her preoccupied air it was obvious that something was wrong.

preparation

n. 1 Often, preparations. a groundwork, spadework, provision(s), foundation, preparing, measures, proceedings: Nothing will interfere with our preparation for the royal visit. b plans, arrangements: We are making preparations to leave tomorrow. 2 fitness, readiness, readying, preparing, training, education, teaching, instruction, instructing, tuition, briefing, grooming, Colloq gearing up, prep, US prepping: The preparation of the students was your responsibility. 3 drawing up, draughting, planning, setting up, putting together, organizing, organization, composing, making: How is your preparation of the new proposal coming along? 4 work, preparing, getting ready, study, studying, practising, practice, Colloq cramming, Brit swotting: All my preparation for the exam was to no avail. 5 substance, compound, concoction, mixture, product, material, stuff, composition: This preparation is a furniture wax, not a suntan lotion.

preparatory
adj. 1 preparative, preliminary, introductory, prefatory, opening: After some preparatory warnings about safety, the scuba-diving lessons began. 2 elementary, basic, essential, fundamental, primary, rudimentary: His preparatory training left him ill equipped to deal with such a major problem. 3 preparatory to. before, in preparation for, preceding: Preparatory to the mission, we were briefed by MI5.

prepare v. 1 (get or make) ready, prime, arrange, (put in) order, organize, provide for, make provision(s) for, lay the groundwork (for), (make) fit, fit (out), equip, outfit, adapt: Have you prepared adequately for the meeting? We prepared the house to receive guests. 2 train, (get or make) ready, study, practise, Colloq cram, Brit swot, get up: He is preparing to take an exam. 3 train, educate, teach, (get or make) ready, groom, brief, develop: Her mother is preparing her for the next Olympics. 4 cook (up), make, do, Colloq whip up, US and Canadian fix: I shall prepare dinner for eight o'clock. 5 manufacture, fabricate, produce, make, put out, build, construct, assemble, put together, turn out, fashion, forge, mould: Our company prepares components for the printing industry. 6 brace, strengthen, steel, fortify, ready: When I saw the doctor's face, I prepared myself for bad news. 7 process, produce, make, treat, change, modify, transform: This fabric has been specially prepared to repel stains.

prepared adj. 1 ready, set, advance, prearranged, planned: We have six prepared questions for the interview. 2 treated, processed, modified, changed: Using an etching needle, incise the lines on the prepared surface of the steel plate. 3 willing, disposed, predisposed, able, inclined, of a mind; ready, (all) set: Are you prepared to apologize? 4 oven-ready, microwave-ready, microwavable, instant, convenience, ready-to-eat, ready-to-serve, precooked, ready-made: He lives alone and usually buys prepared dinners that just need reheating.

preparedness

n. vigilance, alertness, readiness, fitness: The armed forces were kept in a continuous state of preparedness.

preponderance

n. 1 majority, greater part, bulk, mass, lion's share: The preponderance of voters want a change of government. 2 weight, influence, weightiness, superiority, supremacy, predominance, primacy, ascendancy, sway, strength, force, power, advantage, control, authority, hegemony, leadership, rule: Good has always appeared to have an incontestable preponderance over evil.

prepossessing

adj. attractive, appealing, pleasing, favourable, engaging, charming, captivating, fascinating, winsome, winning, magnetic, alluring, bewitching, taking, fetching, inviting, good-looking, handsome, lovely, beautiful: She is a woman of prepossessing appearance and a delightful nature.

preposterous

adj. absurd, ridiculous, ludicrous, laughable, risible, asinine, foolish, senseless, irrational, nonsensical, fatuous, fatuitous, mindless, insane, crazy, crack-brained, mad, idiotic, moronic, imbecilic, incredible, unbelievable, outrageous, extravagant, extraordinary, extreme, exorbitant, outlandish, outr,, weird, bizarre, Slang barmy, nutty, screwy, batty, dotty, wacky, loony, cuckoo, US balmy: To claim that it is all my fault is simply preposterous!

prerequisite

adj. 1 essential, necessary, requisite, imperative, indispensable, obligatory, required, called-for, demanded: Naval service is a prerequisite condition for joining the club.

--n. 2 precondition, requirement, qualification, requisite, condition, sine qua non, proviso, provision, necessity: A thorough grounding in mathematics is a prerequisite for the study of advanced physics.

prerogative
n. privilege, right, liberty, power, due, advantage, licence, franchise, claim, sanction, authority, authorization: As managing director, she exercises her prerogative to park her car closest to the door.

prescribe v. ordain, order, direct, dictate, demand, decree, require, enjoin, rule, set (down), stipulate, command, instruct, define, specify, impose, lay down, exact, constrain: The doctor prescribed rest. An independent journalist, Healey would not let anyone prescribe what he could or could not write.

prescription
n. 1 formula, recipe, instruction, direction: The prescription is for three tablets a day, and this dose must not be exceeded. 2 remedy, medication, medicine, drug, preparation, medicament: That prescription had no effect at all on my headache.

prescriptive
adj. dictatorial, constrictive, didactic, restrictive, dogmatic, authoritarian, overbearing, autocratic, imperious: As grammar is a description of how language works, it cannot be prescriptive.

presence n. 1 proximity, nearness, closeness, adjacency, vicinity, Formal propinquity: The presence of a hospital near her home made Aunt Mary feel more secure. 2 attendance, company, companionship, society, association, existence, manifestation, manifestness, being: The Queen honoured us by her presence at the unveiling of the plaque. 3 poise, self-assurance, bearing, self-possession, confidence, mien, carriage, comportment, deportment, air, personality, aspect, aura, appearance: When Geoffrey entered, his presence created quite a stir. 4 spirit, wraith, spectre, shade: I had the vague but pervading sense that a unidentifiable presence was with me in the empty room. 5 presence of mind. aplomb, sophistication, coolness, cool-headedness, composure, imperturbability, phlegm, sang-froid, self-possession, self-assurance, calm, equanimity, level-headedness, quick-wittedness, alertness, Colloq cool: With great presence of mind, Grainger walked up to the man and took the gun from him.

present° adj. 1 current, contemporary, present-day, existing, existent, up to date, Colloq now: Do you understand the present generation? 2 nearby, nearest, immediate, closest, adjacent, proximate, propinquitous; close, remaining; accounted for: Everybody has been awful to me - present company excepted. All those present heard what she said to me.

--n. 3 at present. (right or just) now, for the time being, for the present, today, these days, Non-Standard presently, Colloq at this point in time: I am not ready to invest at present. 4 the present. the time being, the moment, the hour, the nonce, this juncture, these days, our times; today, (right) now, nowadays; Colloq this point in time: She lives for the present, and never thinks of the consequences.

presentý n. 1 gift: May I open my birthday presents now? 2 donation, offering, bounty, grant, largesse, contribution, endowment: I'll make you a present of the painting if you like it. 3 tip, gratuity, pourboire, baksheesh or backsheesh, bonus; alms, hand-out, dole, aid, allowance: She gave the maŒtre d'h“tel a present for looking after us so well.

--v. 4 introduce, acquaint with, make known: I'd like to present my wife, Cordelia, who has been looking forward to meeting you. 5 offer, give, stage, show, exhibit, put on (show), mount, produce: The local players will present a new production of Blithe Spirit tonight. 6 give (out), award, confer (on), bestow (on), turn or hand over, grant, provide, furnish; dispense, distribute, dole out, pass out, deal out, mete out: They presented her with a prize for the best poem. Is it tonight that they present the awards? 7 offer, bring (in or up), proffer, tender, introduce, produce, submit, set or put forth, put forward, adduce; register, file, record: The lawyer for the defence presented evidence of his client's alibi. 8 introduce, announce, Brit compŠre, Colloq emcee: And here, to present our show, is the inimitable Reginald Norton!

presentable
adj. 1 fit, fitting, suitable, acceptable, satisfactory, adequate, passable, tolerable, admissible, all right, allowable, up to par or standard or the mark, good enough, Colloq up to

scratch, OK or okay, up to snuff: Whether that argument is presentable in a court of law is disputable. 2 decent, proper, polite, decorous, respectable, well-bred, well-mannered, fit to be seen: After a bath, shave, and change of clothing he looked quite presentable.

presentation
n. 1 giving, bestowal, offering, proffering, presenting, award, awarding, conferral, conferring, delivery; donation: The presentation of the prizes will be at the annual dinner. 2 appearance, image, display, visual(s), spectacle, show, performance, demonstration, production: The text of the proposal was fine, but the presentation could be improved. 3 debut, launch, introduction, unveiling, disclosure: We attended the presentation of the latest electric car.

presently adv. soon, by and by, in a little while, shortly, after a short time, in due course, after a while or a time, before long, in a moment or a minute or a while, Archaic or literary anon, Colloq in a jiffy, in two shakes (of a lamb's tail), Non-Standard now, at present: The show opens presently in the West End. I shall be with you presently.

preservation
n. 1 upkeep, maintenance, care, conservation: The preservation of old paintings has become an art in itself. 2 keeping, retention, retaining, perpetuation, perpetuating, continuation, safe keeping, security, safeguarding, protection, protecting, conservation: Several charities are dedicated to the preservation of our heritage.

preserve v. 1 keep safe, protect, guard, take care of, care for, safeguard, watch over, shield, shelter, defend, spare: What can we do to preserve ourselves from this terrible pestilence? May God preserve me, I never expected to see you again! 2 keep (up), maintain, conserve, spare, perpetuate; continue, support, sustain, save: We developed a technique to preserve antique furniture. The sea preserves much of the heat it absorbs in the summer. It is difficult to preserve one's sanity in this madhouse. 3 conserve, put up, pickle, cure, smoke, kipper, salt, corn, marinate, can, freeze, freeze-dry, refrigerate, dry, dehydrate, vacuum-pack; embalm, mummify: The berries were preserved by bottling and freezing. Some of the remains were preserved for hundreds of years.

--n. 4 Often, preserves. conserve(s), jam, jelly, confiture, marmalade: Susan likes thick toast with butter and preserves for tea. 5 (game) reserve, reservation, sanctuary, Brit park: No hunting is allowed in this preserve.

preside v. supervise, run, oversee, direct, operate, lead, head (up), govern, rule, manage, handle, control, direct, chair, administer, administrate, regulate, officiate: Melissa presides over the meetings of the board.

press v. 1 subject to or exert pressure or force, force, push, impel, thrust, bear (on), weigh on or upon, jam, cram, crush; pressure or Brit also pressurize: The crowd was pressing against the door. Although hard pressed at first, we eventually won. 2 squeeze, compress, depress, push: When the picture is in focus, press this button to release the shutter. 3 squeeze, crush, compress, mash: After harvesting, the grapes are pressed to extract the juice. 4 iron, smooth, flatten, put through a mangle; steam: I shall have to press my jacket before going out to dinner. 5 clasp, embrace, hug, hold (close or tight(ly)), take in one's arms, throw one's arms about or around, cleave to, Archaic clip: She pressed the child to her with great affection. 6 constrain, urge, force, pressure, compel, demand, persuade, induce, prod, provoke, importune, beseech, ask, request, beg, entreat: They pressed me to tell where the money was hidden. 7 crowd, flock, gather, mill, swarm, throng, seethe, cluster, congregate, meet, converge, huddle: The reporters pressed round the chancellor to catch every word.

--n. 8 crowding, gathering, thronging, converging, convergence, crowd, throng, swarm, cluster, huddle, pack, herd, host, multitude, horde, mob, crush: When the doors opened, the huge press of people pushed onto the train. 9 urgency, haste, hurry, hustle, bustle, pressure, stress: The press of business required me to postpone my trip to Paris. 10 the press. a newspapers, the papers, Fleet Street, the fourth estate, the media, the wire or news services, broadcasting, television, radio: The press will have a field-day when this news gets out. b newspaper people, newspapermen or newspaperwomen, newsmen or newswomen, reporters, correspondents, ladies or gentlemen of the press, journalists, commentators, paparazzi, Brit leader-writers, US editorial writers, Colloq news-hounds, Brit journos: The doors were opened and the press were invited in.

pressing adj. urgent, compelling, crucial, pivotal, burning, grave, serious, major, important, vital, high-priority, critical, portentous, momentous, profound, significant: Some pressing matters kept me late at the office.

pressure n. 1 force, compression; weight, power, strength: The air pressure in your tyres is low. The pressure of the water burst the pipe. 2 compression, pressing, squeezing, compressing, tension, stress, crushing: The pressure of a tourniquet has to be loosened now and then. 3 affliction, oppression, press, weight, burden, load, albatross, strain, stress, urgency, demands, exigency or exigencies, vexation, distress, trouble(s), adversity, difficulty or difficulties, straits, constraint(s), problem(s): Pressure of work prevents me from taking any time away from the office. When interest rates increase, we all feel financial pressure. 4 influence, power, sway, constraint, insistence, coercion, intimidation, arm-twisting; inducement, persuasion, urging, pressing: Without more pressure from local residents, the roadworks will not be completed in time.

--v. 5 persuade, influence; prevail upon or on, press, urge, sway, intimidate, bring pressure to bear (on), apply pressure (on or to), coerce, force, compel, constrain, require, demand, make, insist upon or on, Brit pressurize, Colloq twist (someone's) arm, lean on, turn the heat on, Slang put the screws on or to: They pressured him to take the assignment in New Zealand.

prestige n. status, reputation, standing, rank, stature, importance, significance, eminence, esteem, pre-eminence, prominence, predominance, primacy, superiority, supremacy, ascendancy, distinction, renown, regard, fame, cachet, repute, celebrity, glamour, stardom: To raise money, someone with prestige must be found to serve as director of the charity.

prestigious

adj. important, significant, eminent, estimable, imposing, impressive, pre-eminent, prominent, distinguished, august, dignified, renowned, famous, famed, well-known, illustrious, acclaimed, respected, celebrated, noted, notable, noteworthy, outstanding, glorious, honoured, glamorous: She may be a prestigious author, but she does not live at a very prestigious address.

presumably

adv. probably, in all likelihood, (very or most) likely, in all probability, seemingly, doubtless(ly), indubitably, no doubt, undoubtedly, unquestionably, without a doubt, surely, certainly, on the face of it, all things considered, all things being equal: Presumably, you have heard the one about the colonel's poodle.

presume v. 1 assume, take for granted, suppose, surmise, infer, suppose, presuppose, take it, gather, understand, think, believe, imagine, suspect, fancy, conjecture, postulate, posit, theorize, speculate, hypothesize, hypothecate, US and Canadian guess: For some unaccountable reason, we presumed that your train would arrive on time. Dr Livingstone, I presume? 2 dare, take the liberty, be so presumptuous as, make (so) bold (as), have the audacity or effrontery, go so far as, venture: Who is he to presume to judge others? 3 Often, presume on or upon. encroach (on or upon), impose (on or upon), take liberties (with), intrude (on or upon or into): I hate to presume on our friendship, but could you lend me some money?

presumption

n. 1 arrogance, pride, effrontery, audacity, boldness, brazenness, impudence, impertinence, insolence, temerity, overconfidence, presumptuousness, forwardness, immodesty, Colloq pushiness, cheek, cheekiness, nerve, gall, chutzpah, brass, Brit brass neck: He had the presumption to ask my age. 2 assumption, supposition, presupposition, preconception, premise or premiss, surmise, proposition, postulation; probability, likelihood, plausibility, feasibility: The presumption of the innocence of a person accused of a crime is established in law. 3 assumption, stand, position, inference, feeling, deduction, conclusion, conviction, bias, guess, theory, hypothesis, conjecture, belief, thought; suspicion: Having examined the evidence, the pathologist's presumption was that the victim had died of natural causes. 4 ground(s), reason, basis, evidence: What is your presumption for thinking that you might win the lottery?

presumptive

adj. 1 likely, reasonable, plausible, tenable, believable, credible, conceivable, acceptable, justifiable, sensible, rational, sound: There is strong presumptive evidence, but we need proof. 2 inferred, presumed, assumed, supposed, understood, predicted, predicated: As King Richard was childless, his brother was heir presumptive to the Crown.

presumptuous

adj. arrogant, proud, prideful, audacious, bold, brazen, saucy, impudent, impertinent, insolent, temerarious, brash, overconfident, overweening, forward, presuming, immodest, egotistical, Colloq pushy, cheeky, too big for one's boots, Brit uppish: He is presumptuous enough to think he can do no wrong.

presuppose

v. See presume, 1, above.

presupposition

n. See presumption, 1, 2, above.

pretence n. 1 show, display, pretension, ostentation, airs, front, fa‡ade, appearance, make-believe, fiction, hypocrisy, fakery, faking, feigning, humbuggery, humbug, deception, artifice, pretext, posturing, pretentiousness, pretending, camouflage, cover-up: Her charming manner was all pretence, for in reality she despised him. 2 hoax, humbug, artifice, pretext, sham, show, pose, fa‡ade, front, cover-up, cover, cloak, veil, mask, masquerade, disguise, guise, deception, ruse, dodge, blind, fabrication, invention, fiction, story, fable, make-believe, fairy tale, figment, falsification, impression: His loyalty was a pretence under which he carried on many liaisons. 3 excuse, pretext, pretension: They would ring for the butler on the slightest pretence, just to impress us.

pretend v. 1 feign, profess, represent, allege, make believe, make out: Let's pretend that we are royalty. Often, he pretends to be me. 2 try, attempt, endeavour, venture, presume, undertake: I could not pretend to guess the number of people attending last night's meeting. 3 make believe, act or play, play-act, fake, feign, put on an act, dissemble, sham, sail under false colours: Is she serious about wanting you to leave or was she just pretending?

pretended adj. so-called, alleged, asserted, reputed, professed, ostensible, purported, so-called, imaginary, make-believe, fictitious, fictional, sham, false, fake, feigned, bogus, counterfeit, spurious, Colloq phoney or US also phony, pseudo, pretend: So this is the pretended hero of yesterday's battle!

pretender n. claimant, aspirant, candidate, suitor, rival, seeker: He was the pretender to the Scottish throne.

pretension

n. 1 Often, pretensions. claim(s), pretence(s), aspiration(s), ambitiousness, ambition(s): He is known to have pretensions to the chancellorship. 2 pretext, pretence, pretentiousness, ostentation, pretending, affectation, hypocrisy: Gladys has behaved without pretension and with great sincerity.

pretentious

adj. 1 ostentatious, showy, superficial, pompous, arrogant, bombastic, inflated, high-flown, exaggerated, vainglorious, fastuous, grandiose, grandiloquent, extravagant, magniloquent: The minister's pretentious language is a bit too much to take. 2 snobbish, lofty, haughty, flaunting, Colloq high and mighty, highfalutin or hifalutin, hoity-toity, high-hat, Slang snotty, Brit toffee-nosed: That new couple next door are so pretentious - they think that nobody is good enough to associate with them!

pretext n. 1 pretence, excuse, camouflage, guise, disguise, cover, veil, cloak, colour: They carried on the surveillance under pretext of working on the sewer. 2 ruse, red herring, cover (story), rationale, pretence, rationalization, explanation: What pretext did the thief use that made you let him in?

pretty adj. 1 comely, attractive, good-looking, nice-looking, appealing, lovely, cute, mignon(ne), graceful, fair, bonny, fetching, charming, winsome, beautiful, pulchritudinous, Colloq easy on the eye(s): A pretty girl is like a melody. That's a very pretty cottage. 2 tuneful, melodic, melodious, dulcet, musical, lyrical, harmonious, catchy, mellifluous, euphonious: He played a pretty tune on the piano.

--adv. 3 rather, quite, fairly, moderately, reasonably, tolerably; somewhat; very, extremely, unbelievably, incredibly: The children put on a pretty good performance, I thought. He had become pretty fat since we last saw him.

prevail v. 1 hold sway, win (out), predominate, succeed, triumph, gain or achieve a victory, prove superior, gain mastery or control: It is sometimes disappointing to learn that right does not always prevail. 2 predominate, be prevalent or widespread or current, preponderate, dominate, be the order of the day: As usual during Oktoberfest in Bavaria, revelry prevailed. 3 prevail on or upon. persuade, induce, influence, sway, dispose; incline, win over, bring round, convince: We prevailed on the guard to let us through the gate.

prevailing

adj. 1 dominant, predominant, prevalent, main, chief, principal, common(est), usual, customary, universal: The prevailing winds are westerlies. 2 influential, effective, effectual, dominating, affecting, powerful, potent, forceful, ruling, telling, main, principal: The prevailing religion there is Buddhism.

prevalence

n. 1 prevalency, frequency, commonness, currency, universality, ubiquitousness, ubiquity, pervasiveness, omnipresence, extensiveness; predominance, practice, acceptance, popularity: The prevalence of disease among the population is distressing. 2 sway, control, rule, primacy, ascendancy, mastery, predominance: The prevalence of bushido in Japan has diminished little since 1945.

prevalent adj. universal, catholic, common, frequent, prevailing, current, ubiquitous, pervasive, omnipresent, general, usual, customary, commonplace, extensive, widespread, established, ascendant, dominant, predominant, governing, ruling: A desire for change is prevalent throughout the country.

prevent v. anticipate, preclude, obviate, forestall, avert, avoid, prohibit, ban, bar, forbid, interdict, taboo, enjoin, proscribe, foil, frustrate, obstruct, debar, intercept, nip in the bud, abort, thwart, check, block, ward or fend or stave off, baffle, balk or baulk, (put a) stop (to), arrest, (bring to a) halt, hinder, impede, curb, restrain, hamper, inhibit, delay, retard, slow, mitigate, control: Some diseases can be prevented by inoculation or vaccination. There is nothing to prevent us from leaving. The barrier was built to prevent flooding.

prevention

n. preventing, anticipation, preclusion, obviation, forestalling, avoidance, avoiding, prohibition, prohibiting, ban, banning, bar, barring, forbiddance, forbidding, interdiction, interdicting, taboo, tabooing, enjoining, injunction, proscription, proscribing, foiling, frustration, frustrating, obstruction, obstructing, debarment, debarring, interception, intercepting, abortion, aborting, thwarting, checking, check, blocking, block, warding or fending or staving off, balk or baulk, balking or baulking, stopping, arrest, arresting, halt, halting, hindrance, hindering, impedance, impeding, curb, curbing, restraint, restraining, hampering, inhibition, inhibiting, delay, delaying, retardation, retarding, slowing, mitigation, mitigating, control, controlling: The first item on the agenda is the prevention of cruelty to children. As the total prevention of crime is impossible, we must at least try to curb it.

preventive

adj. 1 preventative, preventing, hindering, impeding, restraining, hampering, inhibitive or inhibitory, inhibiting, restrictive: We must take preventive steps to ensure the stability of the rate of exchange. 2 preventative, prophylactic, precautionary, anticipatory or anticipative, protective, counteractive: Preventive means are available to limit heart disease.

--n. 3 preventative, hindrance, curb, inhibition, impediment, block, barrier, obstacle, obstruction: Caffeine is one of the most powerful preventives of sleep that exists. 4 preventative, prophylactic, protection, shield, safeguard, prevention, countermeasure, counteractant, counter-agent, inoculum or inoculant, vaccine, serum, antidote, remedy: Heart specialists have recommended an aspirin every other day as a preventive to arterial blood clotting.

preview n. advance showing, private showing; opening, vernissage: We saw the Picasso exhibition at a preview held for friends of the gallery.

previous adj. 1 former, prior, past, earlier, one-time, foregoing, sometime, erstwhile, preceding, Literary quondam, Archaic whilom: A previous owner of the house filled in the fish-pond. 2 prior, former, foregoing, above, preceding, Formal antecedent, anterior, aforementioned, above-mentioned, before-mentioned, aforesaid, above-named: Please see the previous examples in the Foreword. 3 premature, untimely, too soon or early: Isn't putting up Christmas decorations in October being a bit previous? 4 previous to. previously to, before, prior to, preceding, anterior to, antecedent to: Previous to the advent of motor cars, we had traffic jams of horse-drawn vehicles.

previously

adv. before, once, formerly, earlier, at one time, then, beforehand, heretofore, theretofore, hitherto, thitherto, in the past, in days gone by, in days of old, in days or time past, in the old days, some time ago, a while ago, once upon a time, yesterday, Literary in days of yore, in olden days or times: The same thing had happened previously when I was in London. Previously, people lived more relaxed lives - or so we like to think.

prey   n. 1 quarry, kill, game, objective, target: The lioness singled out her prey from the herd of zebra. 2 victim, target, objective; dupe, Colloq mark, Slang fall guy, pushover, Brit mug: A public company with huge cash reserves, United Vector seemed easy prey for a take-over bid.

--v. 3 prey on or upon. a live off, feed on or upon, eat, consume, devour, kill, destroy, stalk, pursue, hunt, seize: These snakes prey mostly upon other snakes. b victimize, go after, exploit, use, take advantage of, intimidate, bully, cheat, dupe, swindle, gull, trick, snooker, defraud, outwit, outsmart, outfox, hoodwink, Literary cozen, Colloq rook, bamboozle, flimflam: An unscrupulous gang is preying on the elderly, persuading them to invest in non-existent properties. c oppress, weigh on or upon, burden, depress, distress, strain, vex, worry: His wretched condition preyed very much on her mind.

price   n. 1 charge, cost, expense, expenditure, outlay, payment, amount, figure, fee; quotation, appraisal, value, valuation, evaluation, worth: The price of this lamp is too high. What is the price of that box? Can he afford the price of a ticket? The current price of a London flat is out of my reach. 2 sacrifice, toll, penalty, cost, consequence: Loss of his freedom was too high a price for standing by his principles. 3 reward, bounty, premium, prize, payment, bonus, honorarium, Literary guerdon: The gunfighter had a price of œ1000 on his head. 4 without price. See priceless, 1, below.

--v. 5 value, evaluate, rate, assay, assess, cost (out): How would you price a piece of furniture like this chair?

priceless adj. 1 costly, dear, expensive, high-priced, valuable, invaluable, precious, inestimable, incalculable; irreplaceable, unique: The vaults in the Vatican contain a king's ransom in priceless jewels. 2 hilarious, riotous, (screamingly) funny, side-splitting, hysterical, droll, comical, amusing: The expression on his face when he realized it was a joke was priceless.

pricey   adj. pricy, expensive, dear, costly, exorbitant, outrageous, excessive, extortionate, Colloq steep, Brit over the odds: The restaurant where she took him was certainly pricey, but the food was excellent.

prick   n. 1 puncture, pinhole, pinprick; hole, perforation: For the blood test, the doctor made a tiny prick in my finger with a needle. 2 sting, pinch, twinge, prickle, tingle, pain: The teacher leapt from her chair the instant she felt the prick of the tack.

--v. 3 puncture, pierce, stab, jab, punch, perforate, riddle; lance: Using a pin, prick tiny holes in the paper to let the steam escape. The doctor pricked a boil on my neck. 4 stab, sting, hurt, prickle, pinch, bite, smart: The hypodermic needle really pricked me when it went in.

prickle   n. 1 spine, bristle, barb, thorn, bur, needle, tine, spike, spur, prong: The prickles make the brambles cling to your clothes. 2 pricking, prickliness, itch, itchiness, sting, tingling, tingle: I felt the prickle of the rough wool against my skin.

--v. 3 tingle, sting, itch, smart: Sloane complained that the beard he had to grow for the pirate role made his face prickle.

4 stick, jab, prick: The child's hands had been prickled by the chestnuts.

prickly   adj. 1 bristly, thorny, brambly, spiny, barbed, briery, spinous, spiky, Technical setaceous, setose, acanthoid, aciculate, aculeate, muricate, spiculate: Dad's face is all prickly when he hasn't shaved. 2 tingling, stinging, pricking, prickling, itchy, crawly, crawling: The squeak of the chalk on the blackboard gives me a prickly feeling. 3 touchy, irritable, petulant, cantankerous, testy, waspish, bad-tempered, peevish, fractious, short-tempered, curmudgeonly, Colloq cranky: Moira gets a bit prickly if you ask her why she married Noel. 4 nettlesome, thorny, ticklish, touchy, troublesome, intricate, complicated, complex, knotty, hard, difficult, contentious: The prickly problem of how to pay for the university must still be faced.

pride   n. 1 honour, proudness, self-esteem, self-respect, amour propre, dignity: It is gratifying to be able to look with pride on one's children's achievements. 2 conceit, egotism, self-importance, vanity, hubris, arrogance, overconfidence, overweeningness, self-admiration, self-love, self-importance, smugness, haughtiness, hauteur, snobbery, snobbishness, Colloq uppitiness: Pride goeth before a fall. Her pride stems from an exaggerated notion of her own worth. 3 boast, flower, best, prize, pride and joy, treasure, jewel, gem: Those model railway trains are Eustace's pride and joy.

--v. 4 Usually, pride oneself on. be proud of, take pride in, delight in, revel in, celebrate, glory in: Irena prides herself on having made her own way in life, without anyone's help.

priest   n. priestess, clergyman or clergywoman, ecclesiastic, cleric, churchman or churchwoman, reverend, vicar, divine, man or woman of the cloth, man or woman of God, curate, confessor, minister (of the Gospel), servant of God, father, mother, holy man or woman, preacher, missionary, evangelist, abb,, abbot or abbess, Colloq padre: The high priest muttered some incantations over the body of the sacrificial victim.

priestly adj. clerical, ecclesiastic, pastoral, hieratic, sacerdotal; ministerial, canonical, missionary: She has taken her priestly vows.

prig n. (ultra-)conservative, prude, purist, pedant, school-ma'm, puritan, (Mrs) Grundy, Grundyite, Grundyist, precisionist, precisian, conformist, formalist, Colloq stuffed shirt, stick-in-the-mud, goody-goody: A terrible prig, the headmaster forbade even the slightest hint of slang usage.

priggish adj. (ultra-)conservative, prim, demure, prudish, purist, puristic, pedantic, school-marmish, strait-laced, hidebound, stiff-necked, puritanical, conformist, (Mrs) Grundyish, punctilious, formal, formalistic, strict, severe, fastidious, fussy, particular; precious, pr,cieux or pr,cieuse, niminy-piminy, over-nice, Colloq stick-in-the-mud, goody-goody, prissy, old-maidish, stuffed-shirt, stuffy, uptight, nit-picking, Brit twee: Victorians were less priggish in their private behaviour than in their public image.

primarily adv. 1 principally, mainly, chiefly, especially, at bottom, particularly, first of all, pre-eminently, basically, essentially, fundamentally, on the whole, for the most part, mostly, predominantly or predominately, generally: The rain in Spain falls primarily in the plain. 2 initially, originally, from or at the start, first (and foremost, in the first instance, ab initio: The colonists, primarily refugees from England, began to settle the New World in the 17th century.

primary adj. 1 first, prime, principal, chief, main, leading, pre-eminent, cardinal, fundamental, basic, essential, predominant, elementary, elemental, underlying: The primary reason I want to see you is to discuss your future with the company. The primary meaning of a word is given first. 2 earliest, first, original, initial, primitive, primeval, primordial, embryonic, germinal, beginning, ultimate: The primary source of life was possibly a sort of soup containing proteins and other molecules. 3 firsthand, direct, immediate: Bauxite is the primary source of aluminium ore. 4 elementary, basic, rudimentary, fundamental: One of the primary lessons we are taught is consideration for others. 5 unmixed, unadulterated, pure, simple, rudimentary, fundamental, principal: The primary colours in art are red, yellow, and blue.

prime adj. 1 See primary, 1, above. 2 best, foremost, chief;

first-rate, first-class, choice, select, superior, pre-eminent, leading, ranking, predominant, unparalleled, matchless, peerless, noteworthy, outstanding, admirable, worthy, exceptional, excellent, extraordinary, exceptional: She is a prime example of the results of a modern education. Arthur is certainly a prime candidate for the position. 3 original, fundamental, basic, elemental, elementary: The prime cause of scurvy is lack of fresh fruit and vegetables.

--n. 4 youth, springtime; best years, heyday, pinnacle, acme, peak, zenith: Some people reach the prime of life at 60.

--v. 5 (make or get) ready, prepare, educate, teach, instruct, coach, train, tutor, drill: Has Sonia been fully primed to take over the chairmanship when Sir William steps down? 6 inform, advise, notify, apprise, brief: Having read your book, I am fully primed on American history.

primitive adj. 1 first, original, aboriginal, earliest, primordial, primal, primeval or Brit also primaeval, pristine, prehistoric; antediluvian, Noachian or Noachic, old, ancient: In its most primitive state, life probably originated from some random strings of molecules. The most primitive farming tools date from some 10,000 years ago. 2 crude, rude, unrefined, raw, barbaric, uncultured, barbarian, coarse, rough, uncivilized, savage, uncultivated, unsophisticated, uncouth: I cannot tolerate Nigel's primitive table manners. 3 simple, basic, simplistic, na‹ve, childlike, unsophisticated, uncultivated, unrefined, unpolished, rough, untutored, untaught, untrained, unschooled, undeveloped: Gary collects paintings of the primitive school and has one by Grandma Moses.

primp   v. preen, prink, prettify, titivate or tittivate, plume, dress up, groom, Colloq doll up, get (all) dolled up, spruce up, put on one's best bib and tucker, Chiefly Brit tart up, get (all) tarted up, Slang deck out, trick out or up, put on one's glad rags, Brit fig out, US gussy up, get (all) gussied up, dude up: She was primping before the mirror, awaiting the arrival of her beau.

princely adj. 1 lavish, bountiful, generous, liberal, ample, substantial, huge, enormous: They paid a princely sum for their stately home in Surrey. 2 lavish, magnificent, splendid, luxurious, majestic, royal, regal, sumptuous, superb, Colloq ritzy, swank(y), posh, plush: The hotel laid on princely accommodation for us with rooms overlooking the sea. 3 royal, noble, regal, sovereign, of royal or noble blood or rank: Who would have thought that our humble home would ever shelter a princely guest?

principal adj. 1 chief, primary, prime, paramount, main, first, foremost, ranking, pre-eminent, predominant, dominant, prevailing; leading, starring: The principal reason I'm here is to see you. The principal food of the people is corn. The principal role was sung by Pavarotti. 2 important, prominent, leading, key, cardinal: Cuba is a principal source of sugar.

--n. 3 owner, proprietor, chairman, chairwoman, chairperson, (managing) director, head, president, chief, chief executive officer, CEO, manager or Brit manageress, superintendent, supervisor, Colloq boss, US (head or chief) honcho: We should talk to the principals about buying that company. 4 dean, director, Chiefly Brit headmaster, headmistress, master, rector, (vice-)chancellor: His appointment as principal is for a two-year period. 5 (working) capital, capital funds, resources, investment, backing, (cash) reserve(s), assets; money: She is fortunate to be able to live on the income from her investments, without touching the principal. 6 star, lead, heroine, hero, leading lady or man, leading role, main part; diva, premiŠre danseuse, premier danseur, prima donna, prima ballerina: The principal in the ballet company was a Russian.

principally
adv. chiefly, mainly, first (and foremost), primarily, above all, in the main, mostly, for the most part, largely, predominantly, on the whole, at bottom, in essence, essentially, basically, fundamentally; especially, particularly: He seems to be interested principally in money, with little regard for anything else.

principle n. 1 truth, given, precept, tenet, fundamental, grounds, law, rule, dictum, canon, doctrine, teaching, dogma, proposition, (basic) assumption, postulate, axiom, maxim, truism, guide, standard, criterion, model: The perpetual-motion machine violates a basic principle of physics. 2 Often, principles. philosophy, code, attitude, (point of) view, viewpoint, sentiment, belief, credo, creed, idea, notion, ethic, sense of right and wrong: He cynically conducts his life on the principle, 'Do unto others before they do unto you'. I am not sure I can condone his principles. 3 (sense of) honour, uprightness, honesty, morality, morals, probity, integrity, conscience: If you don't think him a man of principle, don't do business with him. 4 in principle. on principle, in theory, theoretically, basically, fundamentally, at bottom, in essence, essentially, ideally: I like your plan in principle, but in practice it cannot be accomplished that way.

principled
adj. moral, righteous, right-minded, virtuous, noble, high-minded, ethical, honourable, proper, correct, right, just, upright, honest, scrupulous: Michael is too highly principled to take bribes.

print v. 1 impress, imprint, stamp, publish, issue, run off, put out; copy; (pull a) proof: We decided to print 500 copies of the book. You may have your name printed on the cover for an additional amount.

--n. 2 reproduction, copy, replica, facsimile; positive, photograph, etching, (steel or wood-)engraving, lithograph, woodcut, linocut, silk screen, rotogravure, Trade Mark Xerox; picture, illustration; Colloq photo, cut, pic (pl. pix): Today, a good print of a Picasso costs more than an original did fifty years ago. 3 text, printed matter, type, writing; language, wording, (choice of) words, phrasing: You'd be well advised to read the small print before signing the agreement.

prior adj. 1 former, previous, earlier, one-time, ex, erstwhile; old, last, late, latest, Literary quondam, whilom: If you overdraw your account without prior arrangement, you will automatically be charged a higher rate of interest. 2 prior to. before, previous to, previously to, till, until, preceding: Prior to the earthquake, Valdivia was a river port.

priority n. precedence, precedency, primacy, urgency, immediacy, predominance, pre-eminence, preference, rank, superiority, prerogative, right, seniority, importance, weight, immediacy: The applications for aid will be processed in order of priority.

prison n. jail or Brit also gaol, dungeon, oubliette, lock-up, penal institution, house of correction, correctional institution, reformatory, house of detention; confinement, detention; Old-fashioned reform school, Military guardhouse; Brit remand centre, detention centre, remand home, community home, Military glasshouse, Formal CHE (= 'community home with education on the premises'), Old-fashioned approved school; US penitentiary, Military brig; Archaic Brit bridewell; Slang clink, can, cooler, jug, stir, Brit quod, chokey or choky, US and Canadian pokey or poky; US pen, calaboose, slammer, hoosegow, Old-fashioned big house: He was released from prison last Friday after serving six months for burglary.

prisoner n. convict, trusty; internee, detainee; Colloq jailbird or Brit also gaolbird, lifer, Slang con, Brit (old) lag, Old-fashioned ticket-of-leave man, US two-time or three-time loser: Prisoners' letters were censored.

prissy adj. fussy, precious, over-nice, finicky or finical, strait-laced, school-marmish, prim (and proper), prudish, squeamish, fastidious, Colloq old-maidish: He is awfully prissy about changing on the beach.

pristine adj. 1 original, primal, basic, primeval or Brit also primaeval, primitive, primordial, earliest, first, initial: It is impractical to try to return the world to what some regard as its pristine purity. 2 uncorrupted, pure, unsullied, undefiled, virginal, virgin, chaste, untouched, unspoiled, unpolluted, untarnished, spotless, immaculate, natural: One must travel far today to experience the pristine beauty of nature. The car was in pristine condition.

privacy n. 1 seclusion, retirement, solitude, isolation, retreat, sequestration, reclusiveness, reclusion, solitariness; monasticism: Coleman very much enjoys the privacy of living alone. 2 secrecy, secretiveness, clandestineness, confidentiality, surreptitiousness, covertness, concealment: Many feel that the questions on census forms invade their privacy.

private adj. 1 (top) secret, confidential, undisclosed, hidden, clandestine, concealed, covert, surreptitious, off the record, not for publication, unofficial, Colloq hush-hush: I think our relationship should be kept private for the time being. What I am about to tell you is strictly private. 2 privileged, restrictive, restricted, exclusive, special, reserved, personal, inaccessible, non-public; hidden, secluded, concealed, secret, sneaking: The house is situated on a private road. I had a private suspicion that they would cancel their trip. 3 personal, individual, own, intimate, particular: My private affairs are none of your business. 4 solitary, seclusive, reclusive, withdrawn, retiring, reticent, ungregarious, non-gregarious, unsocial, unsociable, antisocial, reserved, uncommunicative, hermitic(al), hermit-like, eremitic(al); sequestered, secluded, retired: You have to bear in mind that Edmund is a very private person.

--n. 5 private soldier, infantryman, foot-soldier, US enlisted man, Colloq Brit Tommy, Tommy Atkins, squaddie, US GI (Joe), Slang US grunt: Before cashiering him, they reduced him from colonel to private. 6 in private. in secret, secretly, privately, sub rosa, personally, confidentially, behind closed doors, in camera, off the record, US on the q.t. or Q.T.; clandestinely, secretively, sneakily, sneakingly, surreptitiously, furtively, covertly, on the sly: Family matters should be discussed only in private. They met in private with agents of the rebel forces. 7 private parts or privates. genitals, sexual or sex organs, genitalia. The natives wore loincloths to cover their private parts.

privation n. need, neediness, want, deprivation, hardship, indigence, necessity, poverty, penury, destitution, strait(s), pauperism, beggary; distress, misery: The lower classes in Victorian England suffered terrible privation.

privilege n. benefit, advantage, right, prerogative, concession, allowance, indulgence, immunity, exemption, dispensation, freedom, liberty, franchise, permission, consent, leave, authorization, sanction, authority, licence, carte blanche: The children were given the privilege of choosing where the family should go on holiday.

privileged

adj. 1 favoured, advantaged, indulged, entitled, ,lite, special, honoured: John was one of the privileged few to be told her private telephone number. 2 protected, exempt(ed), immune; licensed, empowered, admitted, permitted, sanctioned, authorized, enfranchised, chartered: This is a privileged institution as far as the dispensation of grants is concerned. 3 powerful, ruling; wealthy, rich: He despised the privileged class till he became wealthy enough to be a member of it. 4 confidential, secret, private, privy, inside, off the record, not for publication, restricted, Colloq hush-hush: What I am about to tell you is privileged information.

privy adj. 1 See privileged, 4, above. 2 privy to. aware of, in on, on to or onto, sharing (in), cognizant of, apprised of, informed or advised about or of, informed on, knowledgeable about, Colloq in the know about, Slang hip to, wise to, Old-fashioned hep to: Was the minister's wife privy to what was discussed at cabinet meetings?

--n. 3 lavatory, (outside or outdoor) toilet, latrine, water-closet, WC, US outhouse, Colloq chiefly Brit loo, Slang Brit bog, US crapper, Taboo slang US shithouse: In those days, almost every home had an outside privy, as there was no interior plumbing.

prize° n. 1 reward, award, trophy, premium; honour, accolade, Literary guerdon: The first prize was a week's holiday in the Bahamas. 2 winnings, jackpot, purse, receipts, gain, windfall, stakes, Colloq haul, Chiefly US take: He used his prize from winning the lottery to buy a new car. 3 aim, goal: The prize they all strove for was a grant to carry on lexicographic research. 4 loot, booty, spoil(s), trophy, plunder, pickings: The pirates took the galleon as their prize.

--adj. 5 choice, excellent, (prize)winning, best, champion, outstanding, select, superior, superlative, first-rate: This dairy owns a prize herd of Guernseys.

prizeý v. value, treasure, esteem, cherish, appreciate, rate highly, hold dear: I prize your friendship above all things.

probability
n. likelihood, likeliness, odds, expectation, chance(s), (distinct) possibility, presumption: There is a high probability that it will rain.

probable adj. (most) likely, apt, (quite) possible, presumed, plausible, undoubted, indubitable, apparent, unquestionable, evident, ostensible, odds-on, feasible, believable, credible: The probable cause of the flooding was a blockage in the drains. It is probable that most medieval churches had paintings round the walls.

probably adv. (very) likely, in all likelihood, in all probability, undoubtedly, doubtlessly, indubitably, unquestionably, presumably, quite, all things considered, to all intents and purposes, possibly, perhaps, Colloq as likely as not, quite: She is probably the best tennis player in the world at the moment.

probe v. 1 explore, examine, scrutinize, investigate, search (into), look into, go into, study, dig into, delve into, poke about or around, Colloq poke into: They probed his background thoroughly but found nothing unusual. 2 poke, prod, explore, examine; plumb, dig: Snipe use their long bills to probe for worms in soft mud.

--n. 3 investigation, examination, exploration, scrutiny, search, study, inquiry or enquiry, inquest: There will be a governmental probe into the mismanagement of the department.

probity n. integrity, uprightness, honesty, morality, rectitude, virtue, goodness, decency, righteousness, right-mindedness, sincerity, trustworthiness, honour, equity, justness, justice, fairness: Lord Chancellors have consistently been men of unquestioned probity.

problem n. 1 difficulty, trouble, question, dilemma, quandary, predicament, complication, hornet's nest, imbroglio, mess, muddle, stew, Colloq can of worms, fine kettle of fish, (pretty) pickle, Brit facer: The Chancellor must constantly deal with the problems of the country's economy. 2 puzzle, conundrum, poser, riddle, question, enigma, puzzler, Colloq mind-boggler, hard or tough nut to crack: The problem is how to get the yolk out without breaking the shell.

--adj. 3 unruly, unmanageable, intractable, uncontrollable, difficult, ungovernable, refractory, incorrigible, obstreperous, delinquent, maladjusted, disturbed, emotionally upset: He teaches at a school where most of the students are problem children.

problematic

adj. problematical, difficult, uncertain, questionable, questioned, doubtful, doubted, debatable, disputable, disputed, unsettled, moot, undecided, controversial, tricky, touchy, sensitive, Colloq hairy, iffy: The value of treating colds with massive doses of vitamin C is problematic.

procedure n. way, conduct, course, action, course of action, method, methodology, mode, form, system, approach, strategy, plan (of action), scheme, modus operandi, operation, policy, ways and means; routine, tradition, practice, custom, wont, standard operating procedure, Colloq MO (= 'modus operandi'), SOP (= 'standard operating procedure'), Chiefly Brit drill: What procedure will you follow to regain the stolen property? The procedure in ballroom dancing has always been for the man to lead.

proceed v. 1 Sometimes, proceed with. go or move (on or ahead or forward), advance, continue, progress, carry on, get or move along, get going or moving or under way, start, pass on, make progress or headway, push or press on or onward(s), forge ahead; resume, renew, go on with, pick up (where one left off): Proceed to the T-junction, then turn left. If the membership committee has finished, let us proceed to the report of the finance committee. After the break, the performance will proceed. 2 Often, proceed from or out of. result from, arise (from), come (from), stem from, spring from, develop (from), issue (from or forth), derive from, be derived (from), descend from, emerge (from), grow (from or out of), originate (in or from or with), begin (with), start (with or from): The outcropping proceeds from glaciation and erosion. They say that more than half of a person's happiness proceeds from hope.

--n. 3 proceeds. profit(s), gain, yield; income, receipts, return(s), gate, box office, US take: The proceeds from the charity auction were better than ever this year.

proceeding

n. 1 measure, act, (course of) action, move, step, undertaking, deed, procedure, process, operation, transaction, manoeuvre, feat, accomplishment: Grace Darling's rescue of the shipwrecked men was truly a heroic proceeding. 2 proceedings. a transactions, report(s), minutes, record(s), annals, affairs, dealings, business, account(s), archives, Formal acta: The proceedings of the Society are published annually. b events, goings-on, doings; celebration(s); performance(s): The proceedings were briefly interrupted while the hecklers were ejected from the hall.

process   n. 1 procedure, proceeding, operation, system, method, approach, technique; course of action: I am sure you understand how the process works. What process do they use to make paper out of wood? 2 activity, function, development: The process of photosynthesis is the means by which plants synthesize carbohydrates.

--v. 3 treat, prepare, (make or get) ready, change, modify, transform, convert, alter: This is the room where the ingredients are processed before mixing. 4 handle, take care of, organize, deal with, manage; dispose of, answer, manipulate: After the earthquake the insurance companies processed thousands of claims.

procession

n. 1 parade, march, cavalcade, motorcade, cortege or cortŠge, column, line, file, train, march past: A strange procession of thousands of beggars silently wound its way through the city. 2 succession, cycle, sequence, string, train, chain, series, course, run, progression, cavalcade: He began to recount the procession of events that led up to the murder.

proclaim v. 1 announce, advertise, circulate, declare, broadcast, pronounce, make known, bruit (about), trumpet, publish, promulgate, herald; profess, protest, enunciate, articulate: Edgar was proclaimed king. She proclaimed her innocence. 2 brand, accuse of being, stigmatize as, pronounce, rule, decree, characterize, report: She found herself proclaimed a traitor.

proclamation

n. 1 announcement, advertisement, declaration, publication, promulgation, statement, manifesto, pronunciamento, notification, notice: A proclamation was issued granting amnesty to all political prisoners. 2 proclaiming, announcing, advertising, declaring, broadcasting, publishing, promulgating, heralding, making known, bruiting about: The proclamation of his appointment as Chancellor came at a bad time.

procrastinate

v. 1 temporize, act evasively, play for time, dally, delay, stall; postpone, defer, put off or aside, shelve, US table: I wish he would stop procrastinating and say what he plans to do. 2 hesitate, pause, waver, vacillate, be undecided, equivocate, tergiversate, shilly-shally: Helen procrastinates every time she is faced with making a decision.

procure v. 1 obtain, acquire, get, come by, secure, get or lay one's hands on, get (a) hold of, gain, win, come into, pick up, find, appropriate, requisition; buy, purchase: I have been trying to procure early editions of Defoe's works. 2 accomplish, bring about, effect, cause, produce: Using every resource available to her, she finally procured his release.

procurer n. pander or panderer, pimp, White slaver, flesh-pedlar or US also flesh-peddler or flesh-pedler, Archaic whoremaster, bawd; madam, procuress: He became a procurer for the wealthy men in the village.

prod v. 1 jab, dig, poke, nudge, elbow: Every time the comedian said something risqu,, Aunt Flora would giggle and prod me in the ribs. 2 spur, urge, impel, egg on, push, thrust, prompt, rouse, stir, incite, move, motivate, actuate, activate, provoke, encourage, stimulate: My uncle keeps prodding me to continue with my studies. 3 incite, goad, needle, irritate, irk, annoy, pester, harass, hector, badger, plague, nag, hound, carp at, cavil; henpeck: My parents are constantly prodding me to go out and get a job.

--n. 4 jab, dig, poke, nudge, elbow, push: I was quite black and blue from those prods I was getting from Aunt Flora. 5 goad, spur; needle, rowel: These days electrified cattle prods are available. 6 stimulus, push, prompt, reminder, signal, cue: Calvin needed that prod to make him finally go home after the party.

prodigal adj. 1 wasteful, extravagant, spendthrift, lavish, excessive, profligate, squandering, immoderate, intemperate, wanton, improvident, reckless: If the government were less prodigal, it would be possible to have a balanced budget. 2 generous, bountiful, copious, profuse, bounteous, lavish, liberal, luxuriant, sumptuous, abundant, abounding, rich, plentiful, plenteous, superabundant, thriving, swarming, teeming: He was prodigal of both compliments and criticism.

--n. 3 wastrel, spendthrift, profligate, squanderer, waster, big spender: That prodigal went through his inheritance in less than a year.

prodigality
n. 1 wastefulness, waste, extravagance, excess, excessiveness, immoderation, intemperateness, wantonness, recklessness, profligacy, improvidence, dissipation, squandering: Surely his contemporaries must have condemned Shah Jehan's prodigality in building the Taj Mahal. 2 lavishness, profuseness, luxury, luxuriousness, luxuriance, abundance, plenty, bounty, bountifulness, bounteousness, copiousness, profusion, profuseness, sumptuousness, richness, plentifulness, plenteousness, superabundance, exuberance: The prodigality of Nature is unbounded.

prodigious
adj. 1 vast, immeasurable, colossal, enormous, huge, giant, gigantic, immense, mammoth, monumental, tremendous, stupendous, titanic, Brobdingnagian, gargantuan, Herculean, cyclopean, leviathan, monstrous, extensive, Colloq US ginormous, humongous: There is a prodigious amount of water vapour contained in a cloudy sky. You may accuse her of being a workaholic, but consider the prodigious amount she gets done in a day. 2 amazing, astonishing, astounding, startling, extraordinary, exceptional, marvellous, wonderful, wondrous, fabulous, miraculous, phenomenal, spectacular, fantastic, sensational, unusual, staggering, striking, dumbfounding or dumfounding, remarkable, noteworthy, notable, Colloq flabbergasting, mind-boggling, mind-blowing: In those days, running a mile in four minutes was considered a prodigious feat.

prodigy   n. 1 (child or girl or boy) genius, wonder child, Wunderkind, mastermind, talent, intellect, intellectual or mental giant, wizard, virtuoso, Colloq brain, Einstein, whiz-kid or whizz-kid, whiz or whizz, walking dictionary or encyclopedia or encyclopaedia: She was a prodigy at the age of six and went on to become a great concert performer. 2 wonder, marvel, phenomenon, sensation, miracle: Some regarded the painting Nude Descending a Staircase a prodigy of cubist art.

produce v. 1 make, develop, turn out, put or bring out, manufacture, fabricate, generate, create; construct, assemble, put together, compose; mould, cast; extrude: This machine is capable of producing 10,000 units an hour. 2 yield, give rise to, cause, bring up, bring forth, spark, initiate, occasion, bring about, prompt, evoke, start, create, generate, beget, originate: He was unprepared for the laughter produced by his slip of the tongue. 3 generate, beget, create, put out or forth, breed, propagate, bear, give birth to, hatch, grow: See how the plant is producing buds at these nodes? 4 bring forward or in or out, introduce, present, offer, show, exhibit, display, stage, put on, mount: She was the first to produce Japanese Noh drama in the west. 5 disclose, reveal, bring to light, show, display, draw: When I refused to give him the money, he produced a gun. 6 supply, furnish, provide, deliver, distribute: They are accused of continuing to produce fluorocarbons despite the government ban.

--n. 7 vegetables, fruit, Chiefly Brit greengrocery: The produce is delivered to the markets from the farms at the crack of dawn.

producer n. 1 maker, manufacturer, fabricator, processor, creator; grower, farmer: That company is the largest producer of microchips in the world. 2 (in Britain) director, auteur, impresario, regisseur; (in US and Canada) entrepreneur, (business or financial) manager, organizer, impresario: He was a producer of TV soap operas.

product n. 1 result, consequence, output, outcome, issue, effect, fallout, yield, upshot; spin-off, offshoot, by-product: It is evident that this work is the product of much thought. One product of her interest in literature is a new publishing company. 2 artefact or US artifact, good(s), produce, commodity, output, merchandise, offering, work: It doesn't matter how good the product is if nobody knows about it.

production

n. 1 producing, manufacture, manufacturing, making, fabrication, preparation, origination, creation, output, putting out, development; formation, forming, forging, shaping, moulding, casting, assembly, building, construction: Our business is the production of insulating materials. 2 product, (end) result, work, effort, handiwork, output, opus, oeuvre: These paintings are clearly productions of a fertile imagination. 3 (in Britain) artistry, direction, staging; (in US and Canada) display, presentation, staging, mise en scŠne, setting: Both the acting and the production were superb. 4 drama, play, (stage or television or radio) show, performance; film, motion or moving picture, movie: Our repertory company is putting on a production of Othello next week.

productive
adj. 1 fruitful, fertile, rich, fecund, plentiful, plenteous, abundant, bountiful, bounteous, prolific, dynamic: Owing to a perfect balance of rain and sunshine, the earth has proved productive this year. 2 imaginative, creative, inventive, resourceful, generative, ingenious, fertile, vigorous: Her latest science-fiction trilogy is certainly evidence of a highly productive mind. 3 profitable, remunerative, rewarding, valuable, worthwhile: Years ago he made an investment in computer shares that has turned out to be very productive. Discussing sales strategy is not as productive as getting out there and selling.

profane adj. 1 irreverent, sacrilegious, blasphemous, idolatrous, irreligious, infidel, heathen, unbelieving, disbelieving, pagan, atheist(ic), impious, godless, ungodly, sinful, wicked, iniquitous, contemptuous, disrespectful: The faithful attacked anyone who was seen to perform a profane act. 2 unsanctified, unholy, unconsecrated, defiled, impure, unclean, unhallowed, non-religious, non-sacred, unsacred; lay, non-clerical, secular, temporal; Judaism tref or treif or treifa, non-kosher: The missionaries persuaded them to abandon their profane rites and practices. 3 bad, dirty, filthy, smutty, foul, foul-mouthed, obscene, vulgar, coarse, uncouth, low, taboo, blasphemous, bawdy, ribald, scurrilous, off colour, immodest, improper, naughty, indecent, unprintable, unmentionable, indecorous, indelicate, common; abusive, vituperative, venomous, thersitical, Literary Fescennine, Colloq blue: The boy was sent home from school for using profane language.

--v. 4 debase, contaminate, pollute, taint, vitiate, degrade, defile, desecrate, violate, pervert, corrupt: They swore undying retribution against those who had profaned their temple.

profanity n. blasphemy, obscenity, cursing, curse-word(s), swearing, swear-word(s), foul or bad or dirty or vulgar or coarse or filthy or smutty or taboo language, four-letter word(s), billingsgate: The film was held to be unfit for broadcasting as it contained so much obscenity and profanity.

profess v. 1 assert, claim, aver, asseverate, state, affirm, confirm, confess, declare, say, hold, maintain, present, offer, proffer, tender, set forth, put forward, pronounce, enounce, enunciate, announce, utter, vow, avow: He professed himself satisfied with the judge's decision. 2 pretend, lay claim, make a pretence, purport, act as if, simulate: They professed to be legitimate businessmen, but I was always suspicious.

professed adj. 1 pretended, ostensible, apparent, alleged, purported, so-called, would-be, self-styled, soi-disant(e): He was a professed wine 'expert' but the bottle he recommended turned out to be awful. 2 confessed, avowed, sworn, admitted, acknowledged, confirmed, certified, declared: What do you do when a professed friend betrays you?

profession
n. 1 occupation, calling, work, field, vocation, employment, m,tier, trade, business, craft, line, sphere, speciality or US specialty, job, position, post, situation, Slang racket: I know that she's a doctor, but what is her husband's profession? 2 confession, affirmation, statement, avowal, assertion, asseveration, declaration, acknowledgement, testimony, averment, admission, announcement: I was uncertain whether to believe his professions of love.

professional
adj. 1 trained, educated, practised, veteran, experienced, seasoned, able, skilled, skilful, gifted, talented, qualified, knowledgeable, licensed, official, expert, masterful, masterly, master, efficient, adept, proficient, competent, polished, finished: He is a professional ambulance driver who has to work as a plumber to make ends meet. 2 excellent, proficient,

efficient, skilful, masterly, thorough, prompt, conscientious, authoritative, businesslike: She did a very professional job of repairing my car.

--n. 3 master, expert, maestro, virtuoso, past master or mistress, specialist, authority, Colloq wizard, pro, whiz or whizz, US maven or mavin, Brit dab hand: You can always tell when the work has been done by a professional.

proficiency
n. facility, skill, talent, adeptness, expertise, expertness, skilfulness, aptitude, capability, ability, dexterity, capability, competence or competency, ingenuity, knack, savoir faire, Colloq know-how: The proficiency he displayed as a racing-car driver was second to none.

proficient
adj. skilful, skilled, talented, adept, gifted, expert, experienced, practised, au fait, veteran, well-versed, (highly) trained, professional, qualified, capable, able, accomplished, dexterous, competent, knowledgeable, top-notch, first-rate, Colloq ace, crack, whiz-bang or whizz-bang, Brit wizard: She is an extremely proficient surgeon.

profile n. 1 outline, silhouette, contour, side-view: His aquiline nose shows up prominently in this profile. 2 biography, (biographical or thumbnail or character) sketch, life, portrait, vignette: That profile of Allen in a well-known magazine did not do him justice. 3 analysis, study, survey, examination; graph, diagram, chart, list, statistics: The profile of the average newspaper reader revealed some interesting anomalies.

--v. 4 describe, draw, sketch, limn: The editor phoned to say that they want to profile you in the Gazette's Sunday colour supplement.

profit n. 1 Often, profits. gross or net profit, net or Brit also nett, return(s), gain, yield, revenue, proceeds, bottom line, surplus, excess, US take, Slang gravy, US vigorish: The profits are down in the third quarter owing to the higher interest rate. 2 advantage, avail, good, benefit, welfare, gain, value, interest, use, usefulness, Archaic or literary behoof: Let me recommend a book that you will find of some profit.

--v. 3 advance, further, be of profit to, benefit, promote, aid, help, be advantageous or of advantage, serve, avail, improve: A few lessons from the club professional could profit your golf game. 4 Often, profit from. take advantage of, use, turn to advantage or account, exploit, utilize, make (good) use of, make capital (out) of, capitalize on, maximize, make the most of, Slang cash in on: I hope you profit from the experience. 5 clear, realize, earn, gain, Colloq make a killing, clean up, rake it in, make a bundle or a packet: Ernestine profited to the tune of œ100,000 on the sale of her house.

profitable

adj. 1 beneficial, productive, lucrative, fruitful, (well-)paying, well-paid, worthwhile, effective, cost-effective, gainful, remunerative, money-making, rewarding: I had never thought of being a pavement artist as a profitable enterprise. Playing professional golf can be very profitable - if you win tournaments. 2 beneficial, helpful, useful, utilitarian, valuable, worthwhile, advantageous, productive, rewarding: She gave me a lot of good advice that I found profitable in my professional life.

profiteer n. 1 racketeer, exploiter, extortionist, blackmarketeer: The profiteers turned to selling sugar at exorbitant prices.

--v. 2 overcharge, fleece, exploit, milk, make the most of; extort; US gouge: The arms dealers are profiteering by selling banned mat,riel to the guerrillas.

profligacy

n. 1 debauchery, vice, immorality, sin, sinfulness, wickedness, evil, dissipation, dissoluteness, degeneracy, licentiousness, depravity, corruption, promiscuity, lechery, lasciviousness, lewdness, indecency, perversion, carnality, libertinism, wantonness, unrestraint, eroticism, sybaritism, voluptuousness, sensuality: Soho's reputation for profligacy is now much less deserved. 2 prodigality, extravagance, excess, waste, wastefulness, recklessness, exorbitance, lavishness, improvidence, squandering: The profligacy of the French court at the end of the 17th century was remarkable.

profligate

adj. 1 debauched, vice-ridden, immoral, unprincipled, sinful, shameless, evil, iniquitous, wicked, dissipative, dissolute, degenerate, loose, licentious, depraved, corrupt, promiscuous, lecherous, lascivious, lewd, indecent, perverted, carnal, libertine, wanton, unrestrained, erotic, sybaritic, voluptuous, sensual, wild, abandoned: The duke suddenly gave up his profligate life and became a monk. 2 extravagant, prodigal, wasteful, reckless, squandering, improvident, spendthrift, immoderate, excessive: As the family fortunes waned, my aunt had to curb her profligate ways.

--n. 3 debauchee, sinner, degenerate, pervert, sodomite, reprobate, rake, rakehell, libertine, lecher, whoremonger, rou,, wanton, sybarite, voluptuary, sensualist: With the restraints removed, the profligate abandoned himself to every excess imaginable. 4 prodigal, spendthrift, wastrel, waster, squanderer: Such are the extravagances indulged in by the profligates who never learnt the value of money.

profound adj. 1 deep, unfathomable, abstruse, recondite, arcane, esoteric, intricate, knotty, involved, tricky, inscrutable, indecipherable, cabbalistic, incomprehensible, obscure, subtle, occult, secret, cryptic, puzzling, enigmatic, mystifying, mysterious: Some aspects of the theory of thought are even too profound for many specialists. 2 learned, scholarly, intellectual, erudite, discerning, astute, sagacious, sage, wise, penetrating, sharp, keen, insightful, analytical, knowledgeable, informed, well-informed, well-read: Russell was one of the most profound thinkers of his day. 3 deep, great, intense, sincere; heartfelt, keen, acute, utter, extreme, overpowering, overwhelming: He gave a profound sigh and fell asleep at once. It is with profound regret that I must tender my resignation. 4 utter, complete, total, perfect, absolute, thorough, thoroughgoing, out-and-out, downright, consummate; awful, terrible: Her casual attitude stems from her profound lack of awareness of how important the work is. I was immediately struck by the profound silence in the house. Profound changes are under way.

profoundly

adv. very, extremely, deeply, greatly, keenly, acutely, intensely, sincerely; terribly, awfully: We are profoundly sorry to have been so much trouble to you.

profundity
n. 1 depth, profoundness, abstruseness, reconditeness, arcaneness, intricacy, subtlety, complexity, complicatedness, difficulty, inscrutability, involvement, involvedness; indecipherability, incomprehensibility, incomprehensibleness, obscurity: I wouldn't claim to have fully grasped the profundity of his ideas. 2 erudition, discernment, scholarship, scholarliness, sagacity, wisdom, sharpness, keenness, astuteness, acumen, insightfulness, knowledgeableness, knowledgeability: I was amazed by the profundity of the argument of one so young.

profuse adj. 1 abundant, ample, plentiful, copious, unstinting, unsparing, ungrudging: My profuse apologies if I have offended you in any way. 2 extravagant, lavish, bountiful, bounteous, prolific, luxuriant, abundant, exuberant, superabundant, lush, thick, teeming, overflowing, bursting, thriving, productive, fruitful, rich: From the seventh year onwards, the trees yielded profuse crops of pears and plums. 3 excessive, copious, considerable, prolific, liberal, lavish, free, abundant, ample: This stage of the fever is accompanied by profuse sweating. 4 generous, abundant, plentiful, copious, unsparing, unselfish, unstinting, exuberant, magnanimous, liberal: The audience was profuse in its applause and cries of 'Bravo!' and 'Encore!'

profusion n. profuseness, quantity, abundance, plenty, plentifulness, plenteousness, bounty, copiousness, superabundance; mass, host, hoard, number, multitude, lot, mountain, load, mess, stack, pile, heap, agglomeration, conglomeration, accumulation, wealth, glut, surplus, oversupply, surfeit, plethora, superfluity, Formal nimiety: Ivy grew in profusion over the front of the house. We had never seen such a profusion of bric-…-brac as they had collected.

progenitor
n. 1 progenitrix, ancestor, forefather, forebear: They regarded the snake god as the progenitor of the human race. 2 predecessor, forerunner, precursor, antecedent, foregoer, source, originator; origin, original, prototype, archetype, pattern, guide: The ancient philosophers were progenitors of many modern ideas. Some regard da Vinci's designs as the

progenitors of some of today's machines.

progeny n. offspring, children, descendants, issue, young, posterity, heirs, scions, successors, sons and daughters, Colloq kids, spawn, fry, US sprouts: He dreamed that his progeny might have a freer, healthier life than his.

prognosis n. forecast, forecasting, prediction, prophecy, prognostication, projection: The doctor has recorded his prognosis for the course of the disease.

prognosticate
v. 1 predict, foretell, prophesy, forecast, presage, divine, forebode: Those prophets of doom are always prognosticating disaster. 2 betoken, augur, herald, foreshadow, foretoken, announce, harbinger, signal, portend: The freshening breeze from the east prognosticates some rainy periods ahead.

programme n. 1 schedule, plan, scheme, agenda, order of the day, routine, protocol, slate, list, listing, description, outline, abstract, pr,cis, calendar, menu, bill of fare, curriculum, syllabus, synopsis, summary, prospectus: The programme shows the sequence of events. You cannot tell what is being offered without a programme. 2 performance, production, show, presentation, (radio or television) play, telecast, broadcast, recital, concert: Television programmes seem to cater to lower levels of taste and intelligence every year. 3 proceedings, events, affairs, activities: The programme includes an hour of exercise before breakfast every day.

--v. 4 organize, arrange, prearrange, plan, lay out, map (out), design, formulate, set (up), schedule, book, US slate: The solo pianist is programmed to follow the chamber orchestra.

progress n. 1 (forward) movement, going forward, progression, advance, headway, advancement: Progress through the dense underbrush was very slow. 2 advancement, advance, promotion, improvement, betterment, elevation, rise, development, furtherance: Her progress in the company might have been impeded by the fact that she was a woman. 3 advancement, course, development, growth, expansion, increase, evolution, maturation, ripening, burgeoning or bourgeoning, amplification, enlargement, spread, extension, broadening, promotion, furtherance, advance, encouragement: Our publishing credo is that every book must contribute to the progress of culture or knowledge. 4 in progress. under way, ongoing, going on, happening, occurring, taking place, at work, in operation, being done, proceeding, Colloq in the works: Some of the plans for reorganization are already in progress.

--v. 5 advance, move or go (forwards or onwards), proceed, continue, go or forge ahead, go or move along, make (one's) way, make headway, travel, go or push or press on: Throughout the 19th century wagon trains of pioneers progressed across the prairies to settle the American West. I haven't progressed far enough in my reading to say whether I like the book or not. 6 advance, improve, get well, get better, develop, grow, expand, increase, evolve, mature, ripen, burgeon or bourgeon, amplify, enlarge, spread, extend, broaden, rise, move up, upgrade: Sarah's condition progressed to the point where she could get out of bed. Christmas sales of the new toy are progressing nicely. In only ten years, Michael progressed to a directorship in the company.

progression

n. 1 movement forward or forward movement, advance, advancement, (making or gaining) headway, progress, ascension, rise, elevation: This mode of progression requires enormous effort. It was interesting to watch her progression through the corridors of power. 2 progress, development, advance, advancement, spread, spreading, extension, extending, broadening, enlargement, headway, intensification, rise: It seemed impossible to halt the progression of the disease. 3 order, sequence, succession, train, chain, concatenation, course, flow: The report traces the progression of events leading up to the war.

progressive

adj. 1 advancing, continuing, developing, increasing, growing, ongoing, continuous, step by step, gradual: The doctors noted the progressive deterioration in his condition. With the onset of spring, we shall see progressive improvement in the weather. 2 reformist, revisionist, liberal, radical, revolutionary, avant-garde, advanced, dynamic: Carrie was soon regarded as one of the more progressive thinkers of her day.

--n. 3 reformist, reformer, revisionist, liberal, leftist, left-winger: Once a conservative, he did a complete volte-face after the war and became a progressive.

prohibit v. 1 bar, ban, forbid, disallow, interdict, outlaw, taboo, debar, proscribe: Fishing without a permit is prohibited. 2 prevent, stop, preclude, rule out, obstruct, block, impede, hinder, hamper, inhibit, frustrate, foil, thwart, restrain, check: A turnstile prohibits entry through the exit doors.

prohibition

n. 1 forbiddance, barring, bar, banning, ban, disallowance, disallowing, interdiction, interdicting, outlawing, outlawry, taboo, debarment, debarring, proscription, proscribing: Did the members vote for the prohibition of smoking on club premises? 2 bar, interdict, injunction, debarment, embargo, proscription, ban: Imposition of an excessively high tariff on imported computer components has amounted to the prohibition of their use in this country.

prohibitive

adj. 1 discouraging, suppressive, repressive, restrictive, prohibitory, inhibitory, restraining: Prohibitive legislation has forced capital out of some profitable areas and into others less productive. 2 excessive, exorbitant, outrageous, dear, high, outlandish, abusive, extortionate, insupportable, criminal: The prices of new designer dresses are prohibitive.

project   n. 1 proposal, plan, scheme, design, layout: The project for housing low-income families had to be modified to allow for car parking. 2 activity, enterprise, programme, undertaking, venture, assignment, commitment, obligation, contract, engagement; occupation, job, work: What project will you move on to when you complete this one?

--v. 3 plan, scheme, prepare, devise, conjure up, concoct, think up, contemplate, contrive, invent, work up or out, propose, present, outline, design, draft, draw up, delineate, describe, put forth or forward, Colloq cook up: In his theory, he projects a quite different causal relationship. 4 cast, hurl, fling, throw, toss, launch, propel, discharge; shoot, transmit; Colloq chuck, lob: A body projected into space will keep on travelling unless it strikes something. This device projects stereoscopic pictures on a screen. 5 jut out, stick out, protrude, stand out, bulge (out), extend (out), poke out, beetle (out), overhang: The cornice projects a full six feet over the street. 6 estimate, reckon, calculate, predict, forecast: The economists projected a decline in inflation over the coming months.

projectile

n. missile, shell, bullet, rocket: Projectiles rained down on the enemy gun emplacement.

projection

n. 1 protrusion, protuberance, bulge, extension, overhang, ledge, flange; ridge, eminence, prominence, spur, crag, outcropping: The safety line caught on a projection of the building, and the man was saved. That projection off to the north is covered with ice all year long. 2 proposal, outlining, mapping, mapping out, presenting, presentation: The projection of the plan for the new development must be effective for the council to accept it. 3 plan, scheme, blueprint, programme, design, proposal, outline, diagram, map, representation, planning: The council has approved the projection for the development of the waterfront. 4 estimate, prognostication, forecast, prediction, calculation, reckoning: These sales projections for next year are quite optimistic.

proliferate

v. grow, increase, burgeon or bourgeon, multiply, mushroom, snowball; breed, reproduce: Fast-food restaurants are proliferating everywhere. Failure to disinfect the wound allows germs to proliferate.

proliferation

n. growth, increase, burgeoning or bourgeoning, expansion, spread, escalation, build-up, rise: Some attribute the increase in violent crime to the proliferation of hand-guns.

prolific adj. 1 fertile, fecund, productive, fruitful, abundant, copious, bountiful, bounteous, profuse, plentiful, plenteous, lush, rich, rife: The more perilous its natural survival, the more prolific a species is likely to be. 2 productive, creative, fertile: He is a prolific author, and has more than 200 novels to his credit.

prolong v. extend, lengthen, elongate, stretch (out), draw or drag out, drag (on), keep up, string out, protract: Not wishing to prolong the agony, we left after the first act. Aunt Caroline prolonged her visit by yet another week.

promenade n. 1 walk, parade, esplanade, boulevard: We strolled along the promenade as far as the pier. 2 walk, stroll, saunter, ramble, turn, constitutional, airing, turn: After a brief promenade round the garden, she returned to the house.

--v. 3 walk, stroll, saunter, amble, ramble, parade, perambulate, take a walk or stroll: Every Sunday, regardless of the weather, he promenades for an hour in the park. 4 flaunt, show (off), display, parade, strut: Why he promenaded that awful person before all his friends is beyond me!

prominence

n. 1 celebrity, eminence, fame, distinction, notability, reputation, pre-eminence, standing, position, rank, prestige, renown, repute, importance, weight, influence, account, name, consequence: They are a family of considerable prominence in the county. She rose to prominence as an actress just last year. 2 hill, hillock, rise, hummock, outcrop, outcropping, spur, tor, crag, arˆte, spine, ridge, peak, mount, pinnacle; headland, point, promontory: We planted our flag on the prominence and constructed a small cairn. 3 protuberance, projection, protrusion, growth, excrescence, swelling, tumefaction, tumescence, extrusion, outshoot, outgrowth, spur, bulge: If that prominence on your elbow doesn't disappear in a day or so, I should see a doctor.

prominent adj. 1 conspicuous, obvious, evident, recognizable, pronounced, discernible, distinguishable, identifiable, noticeable, remarkable, noteworthy, eye-catching, striking, outstanding, chief, main, principal, significant, important; apparent, unmistakable or unmistakeable, patent, glaring, salient, flagrant, egregious: The most prominent peak in the region is Annapurna. Some of the prominent shortcomings of the plan can be rectified easily. 2 eminent, pre-eminent, distinguished, notable, noteworthy, noted, leading, foremost, first, outstanding, eminent, well-known, famed, illustrious, famous, celebrated, renowned, acclaimed, honoured, honourable, respected, well-thought-of, prestigious, reputable, creditable:

A prominent politician is to be invited to cut the ribbon opening the new bridge. 3 protuberant, protruding, protrusive, projecting, jutting (out); excrescent, bulging, raised, elevated: She has a rather prominent chin. There is one prominent spot on the tabletop that needs more sanding.

promiscuous

adj. 1 indiscriminate, undiscriminating, unselective, non-selective, non-discriminatory, unconscientious, heedless, haphazard, indifferent, uncaring, uncritical, unfussy, unfastidious, disregardful, neglectful, negligent, slipshod, slovenly, irresponsible, careless, cursory, perfunctory, unthinking, thoughtless, unconsidered: The promiscuous massacre of civilians caused an international outcry. 2 lax, loose, unchaste, wanton, wild, uninhibited, unrestrained, ungoverned, uncontrolled, unbridled, uncurbed, immoderate, abandoned, amoral, immoral, indecent, libertine, licentious, dissipated, dissolute, depraved, profligate, debauched, fast; unfaithful, faithless, dishonourable: Nothing you say could persuade me to condone your promiscuous behaviour. 3 mixed, miscellaneous, heterogeneous, random, intermixed, jumbled, disorderly, disordered, confused, chaotic, motley, intermixed, intermingled, scrambled, unorganized, disorganized, unsystematic, unsystematized, helter-skelter, higgledy-piggledy, hotchpotch or US also hodgepodge: There is a somewhat promiscuous collection of books in his library that well reflects the eclecticism of his tastes.

promise   n. 1 assurance, (solemn) word (of honour), pledge, vow, oath, undertaking, engagement, bond, commitment, guaranty, guarantee, warranty; agreement, contract, covenant, compact: You have my promise that the book will be completed by the deadline. She broke her promise to marry him. Unlike a contract, a promise does not imply a mutual commitment. 2 expectation, potential, capability; likelihood, probability: This first novel shows a lot of promise. There is little promise that compensation will be paid to the victims by the government.

--v. 3 assure, give one's word (of honour), pledge, swear, vow, take an oath, undertake, engage, commit oneself, guarantee or guaranty, warrant, cross one's heart (and hope to die): Harold promised to do what cannot be done. We were promised a free ride on the roundabout. She promises she will repay the loan promptly. Make him pay for the damage as he promised. 4 give indication of, hint at, suggest, foretell, augur, indicate, show signs of, be in store for, look like, seem or appear likely or probable, Brit be on the cards, US be in the cards, Literary bid fair, betoken, bespeak: Though the economic situation promised to improve, many were disappointed that it took so long.

promising adj. hopeful, encouraging, favourable, auspicious, positive, rosy, optimistic, propitious, cheering, full of promise, reassuring, heartening: I see a promising future for you as a dancer.

promote   v. 1 help, further, encourage, assist, advance, support, forward, back, sanction, abet, aid, boost, foster, patronize, nurture, develop, inspirit, strengthen, stimulate, inspire: Their continual bickering did little to promote domestic harmony. The sale of portable appliances has done much to promote the battery business. 2 advance, move up, raise, upgrade, elevate, exalt, Colloq kick upstairs: He is to be promoted to floor manager next month. 3 recommend, endorse, sponsor, support, espouse, commend, advocate, advance, champion, talk up, speak for, side with, present, call attention to: She is promoting the cause of ecology in her campaign. 4 advertise, publicize, push, sell, Colloq beat the drum for, plug, Slang hype, Chiefly US ballyhoo: They are promoting the new chewing-gum by giving out free samples in Trafalgar Square.

promotion n. 1 furtherance, advancement, advance, encouragement, support, backing, sanction, sanctioning, abetting, aiding, helping, assisting, boosting, fostering, nurturing, cultivation, development, developing, improvement, improving, inspiration, inspiriting, strengthening, stimulation, stimulating: The Society exists for the promotion of learning in a number of subjects. 2 advancement, advance, upgrading, upgrade, rise, elevation, preferment, exaltation: He was envied for his promotion to the highest ranking post in the department. 3 promoting, recommendation, presentation, espousal, commendation, advocacy, championing: I am grateful for your promotion of my name for the job. 4 advertising, publicity, public relations, propaganda, selling, hard or soft sell, fanfare, plugging, Colloq puffery, Slang (media) hype, Chiefly US ballyhoo, hoop-la: The manufacturer spent millions on the promotion of the new cola. 5 advertisement, advertising, circular, brochure, handbill, bill, hand-out, leaflet, poster, affiche, placard, publicity, space, (publicity) release, hoarding, US and Canadian flier or flyer, billboard, broadside, Colloq US puff piece, poop sheet: The promotions for the new detergent use the celebrity endorsement technique.

prompt adj. 1 quick, ready, immediate, instantaneous, unhesitating, rapid, fast, swift, speedy, punctual, timely, on time, instant, summary, brisk, alacritous: No matter what the question, Gemma gave a prompt response. 2 alert, eager, ready, quick, expeditious, ready and willing, disposed, predisposed, unhesitating, keen, avid: Slow to praise, Alan was always prompt to criticize.

--v. 3 urge, egg (on), prod, nudge, spur, exhort, incite, induce, impel, provoke, rouse, arouse, encourage, work or stir or fire up, move, motivate, cause, influence, put (someone) up to (something), coax, persuade, cajole, prevail upon or on, talk (someone) into (something): If he hadn't prompted her, she never would have apologized. 4 cue, remind, feed lines (to), help: She never could remember her lines and needed to be prompted. 5 bring about, inspire, occasion, give rise to, elicit, evoke, provoke, call forth, stimulate, awaken: The mention of hostages prompted a question about what was being done to gain their release.

--n. 6 reminder, cue, hint, stimulus: He always needs a prompt to remind him to send his mother flowers on her birthday.

promptly adv. quickly, at once, straightaway or straight away, directly, right away, immediately, without delay or hesitation, unhesitatingly, swiftly, speedily, readily, instantly, instantaneously, punctually, expeditiously, with celerity, with alacrity, Colloq US and Canadian momentarily: If this bill is not paid promptly, we shall have to discontinue your credit arrangements.

prone adj. 1 face down or downwards or chiefly US downward, prostrate, lying down, reclining, recumbent, horizontal, procumbent, Formal or technical decumbent, accumbent: She was lying prone, resting between push-ups. 2 inclined, apt, likely, liable, disposed, predisposed, of a mind, subject, given, tending, leaning: They are prone to petty squabbles.

pronounce v. 1 declare, utter, say, voice, express, articulate, enunciate, vocalize, put into words: He pronounced a curse on the family. Try to pronounce it one syllable at a time. 2 declare, affirm, proclaim, announce, decree, judge, aver, state, asseverate, assert, say to be: I now pronounce you man and wife. The doctor pronounced mother to be out of danger. 3 announce, proclaim, promulgate, publicize, publish, deliver, broadcast, make known, let (something) be known, put out or forth, set forth; pass: The judge will pronounce sentence tomorrow.

pronounced
adj. 1 definite, clear, plain, well-defined, decided, conspicuous, noticeable, recognizable, identifiable, obvious, striking, prominent, notable, distinct, unmistakable or unmistakeable, marked, strong: There was a pronounced odour of bitter almonds in the room. Sophie spoke with a pronounced lisp. 2 definite, distinct, unequivocal, unambiguous, specific, unqualified, undisguised, downright, outright, out-and-out, decided, complete, total, unmitigated, strong, utter, unalloyed, unmixed, clear, clear-cut, unmistakable or unmistakeable: A pronounced prejudice against fuzzy thinking emerges from his writings.

pronouncement
n. 1 statement, assertion, observation, comment, opinion, announcement, proclamation, pronunciamento, manifesto, declaration, avowal, affirmation, asseveration, averment, promulgation: Occasionally he would issue a pronouncement on the sad state of English usage. 2 judgement, decree, edict, proclamation, dictum, command, ukase, (papal) bull, imperative, order, ordinance: The authorities made several official pronouncements regarding travel restrictions.

pronunciation
n. enunciation, articulation, elocution, diction, speech, speech pattern, manner of speaking, delivery, accent, accentuation, intonation, inflection, modulation: Standard pronunciations of English are so diverse that it is sometimes difficult for one native speaker to understand another. Rock singers seem always to imitate a Texan pronunciation.

proof n. 1 evidence, verification, corroboration, confirmation, validation, authentication, ratification, substantiation; documentation, document, facts, data, certification, testimony, Colloq ammunition: Is there any proof that she was with you? The prosecution claims to have enough proof of his guilt to convict him of embezzlement. 2 test, trial, measure, standard, touchstone, criterion: Do you intend to put his loyalty to the proof? The proof of the pudding is in the eating.

--adj. 3 impervious, impenetrable, able to withstand or resist, protective, strong, tough, impregnable, resistant, tempered: They maintain that this armour is proof against a nine-inch shell.

prop v. 1 Often, prop up. support, brace, hold (up), buttress, stay, bolster, uphold, bear, sustain, shore up, keep up: A longer post is needed to prop up this end of the roof. 2 lean, stand, rest: Do you mind if I prop my crutches against the desk while I sit down?

--n. 3 support, brace, truss, stay, buttress, mainstay, upright, vertical, shore: Can you use this broomstick as a prop to support the shelf temporarily?

propaganda
n. 1 agitprop, disinformation, Newspeak, rumours, lies: The state-controlled media spread propaganda about minorities to foster nationalism. 2 advertising, promotion, publicity, public relations, puff, fanfare, Colloq puffery, ballyhoo, Slang hype, US hoop-la, whoop-de-do or whoop-de-doo: All that propaganda was merely to launch a new washing-powder!

propagate v. 1 breed, generate, reproduce, multiply, proliferate, deliver, bring forth, bear, procreate: Biologists are studying ways of making the species propagate at a faster rate. 2 multiply, increase, spread, grow, develop: These plants propagate very rapidly. 3 publicize, promote, disseminate, dispense, distribute, spread, publish, broadcast, circulate, make known, transmit, disperse, propagandize, proclaim, promulgate, bruit about, noise abroad, herald: The purpose of the organization is to propagate information about the state of the environment.

propel v. drive, impel, move, actuate, set in motion, get moving, move, push, thrust, force, send, launch, start: Each galley was propelled by huge oars. The capsule is propelled by a rocket. Job opportunities propelled her to move to Bristol.

proper adj. 1 right, appropriate, apropos, apt, suitable, fit, fitting, befitting, becoming, suited, apposite, de rigueur, comme il faut, adapted, Literary meet: Is this the proper time to ask for a salary increase? 2 correct, accurate, exact, right, precise, orthodox, formal, expected, normal, usual, accepted, established, Old-fashioned Brit tickety-boo: Some insist that the only proper way to pronounce 'controversy' is with the stress on the first syllable. 3 decorous, dignified, genteel, fitting, right, de rigueur, appropriate, becoming, suitable, decent, seemly, due, correct, apt, comme il faut, conformist; gentlemanly, ladylike, polite, refined, punctilious, respectable: Jeans are not proper attire for dinner at La Hacienda. Do you call that proper behaviour for the president of a learned society? 4 fitting, suitable, correct, right, satisfactory, good, sensible: The kitchen is a proper place for the dishwasher, not the garage. Proper nutrition is very important. 5 complete, perfect, utter, thorough, thoroughgoing, out-and-out, unmitigated: He felt a proper fool for having locked his keys inside his car. 6 own, individual, separate, distinct, correct, specific, special, particular, respective; characteristic, distinctive, peculiar, singular, unique: When you have finished, return each book to its proper place.

--quasi-adv. 7 strictly speaking or so-called, in the strict(est) or narrow(est) sense, only, solely, alone, on (its or someone's) own: Does the deed refer only to the house proper or are the outbuildings also included?

properly adv. 1 appropriately, fittingly, correctly, well, becomingly, suitably, politely, decently, decorously, nicely: If you cannot behave properly I shall have to ask you to leave. 2 duly, appropriately, well, suitably, rightly, correctly, aptly: Are they properly equipped for the rescue mission?

property n. 1 possessions, belongings, effects, gear, paraphernalia, chattels: All his worldly property fitted into the small Gladstone bag he carried everywhere. 2 assets, means, resources, holdings, capital (goods), fortune, riches, estate, worth: We look on all our shares, personal belongings, and real estate as part of our property. 3 land, acreage, realty, real estate or property: That property on the high street was recently sold to developers. 4 characteristic, attribute, quality, feature, trait, mark, hallmark, idiosyncrasy, peculiarity, oddity, quirk, Formal haecceity, quiddity: A property of iodine is that it changes directly from a solid to a vapour - and vice versa - without first liquefying.

prophecy n. 1 forecasting, foretelling, prediction, fortune-telling, divination, soothsaying, augury, prognostication, crystal-gazing, Formal vaticination: The prophecy of future events lies outside the realm of science. 2 prediction, forecast, prognosis, revelation: Her prophecy warned of ice storms that would ravage the earth.

prophesy v. 1 predict, foretell, forecast, forewarn, prognosticate, vaticinate: His father prophesied that he would come to no good if he quit college. 2 augur, foretell (of), presage, foreshadow, portend, bode, harbinger, herald, promise, vaticinate: The early disappearance of the swallows prophesies a long, cold winter.

prophet n. prophetess, oracle, forecaster, seer, soothsayer, clairvoyant, prognosticator, fortune-teller, augur, diviner, witch, warlock, sibyl, haruspex, vaticinator; (of doom) Cassandra: Statistically, the weather prophets have a fair record of accuracy.

prophetic adj. predictive, prognostic, divinatory, oracular, inspired, prescient, sibylline, Literary fatidic, vatic: His warnings of a drought proved to be prophetic.

propitiatory
adj. 1 conciliatory, pacifying, appeasing, expiatory, placative, propitiative, pacificatory, placatory: He said that he was truly sorry and held out a propitiatory hand. 2 deferential, ingratiating, obliging, obeisant, acquiescent, compliant, tractable: He was most propitiatory in his treatment of his stepchildren.

propitious
adj. advantageous, timely, well-timed, opportune, lucky,

fortunate, happy, providential, favourable, bright, encouraging, auspicious, promising, rosy: It was not a propitious moment to ask her to marry him,.

proponent n. proposer, promoter, supporter, upholder, backer, subscriber, patron, espouser, adherent, enthusiast, champion, friend, partisan, defender, advocate, exponent, pleader, apologist, spokesman, spokeswoman, spokesperson: Ashley is a staunch proponent of the literacy movement.

proportion

n. 1 ratio, (comparative) relation, relationship, comparison: The proportion of men to women on the course is three to one. The demand is out of all proportion to the supply. 2 balance, agreement, concord, harmony, suitableness, symmetry, congruity, correspondence, correlation, arrangement, distribution: The beauty of the building is at once apparent in the elegant proportion of its parts. 3 portion, division, share, part, percentage, quota, allotment, ration, Colloq cut: Water covers a large proportion of the surface. 4 proportions. size, magnitude, dimensions, measurements, extent; volume, capacity, mass, bulk, area, expanse, scope, range, degree: The dragon suddenly assumed gigantic proportions.

--v. 5 adjust, modify, change, modulate, poise, balance, shape, fit, match, conform, equate: The punishment should be proportioned to the crime.

proportional

adj. proportionate, proportioned, comparable, analogous, analogical, relative, related, correlated, balanced, symmetrical, corresponding, compatible, harmonious, consistent, commensurate, in accordance with: The zeal with which their ideals are defended is directly proportional to the fierceness with which they are attacked.

proposal n. 1 offer, presentation, bid, tender, proposition, recommendation, suggestion, Literary proffer: Her proposal was to provide the funding if we would do the work. 2 plan, scheme, outline, draft, design, layout; programme, proposition, project: The proposal for the new civic centre was rejected as too expensive.

propose v. 1 offer, tender, proffer; present, introduce, submit, advance, set forth, put forward, propound, bid, recommend, suggest, come up with, call attention to, broach, Brit table: Management proposed a wage increase of five per cent. The architect proposed that we consider an addition to the north wing. 2 offer, mean, intend, plan, expect, aim: We propose to make a start on the decorating once we have had our lunch. 3 nominate, name, put forward or forth, suggest, introduce, submit, put up: His boss proposed him for membership of the golf club.

proposition

n. 1 See proposal, 1, above. 2 See proposal, 2, above.

--v. 3 accost, solicit, make an indecent or sexual advance or proposal or overture, Colloq make a pass at: She said she had been propositioned by him, but we never learnt if she accepted or not.

propound v. put or set forth or forward, propose, offer, proffer, suggest, postulate: It was she who first propounded the idea of a unified country.

proprietor

n. 1 proprietress, owner, landowner, landlady, landlord, landholder, title-holder, deed-holder, property owner: He is the proprietor of a large house in Chiswick. 2 owner, partner, landlord, restaurateur, innkeeper, hotel-keeper, hotelier, licensee, manager, Brit publican: The proprietor greeted us warmly and showed us to our rooms.

propriety n. 1 correctness, properness, conformity, suitableness, appropriateness, suitability, aptness, fitness, seemliness, decorum; advisability, wisdom: I questioned the propriety of concealing this information from shareholders. 2 protocol, good or proper form, punctilio, etiquette, politeness, courtesy, politesse, refinement, sedateness, dignity, modesty, decorum, decency, breeding, respectability, gentility, grace, mannerliness: He always behaved with the utmost propriety in the presence of his aunt. 3 the proprieties. the social graces, the amenities, the civilities, formality or the formalities, social convention or the social conventions, social procedure or codes, accepted practice, tradition, ceremony, ritual: He only observes the proprieties when he wants to make a good impression.

propulsion

n. drive, impulse, impetus, thrust, power, driving or propelling or propulsive force, pressure, momentum, push: Enormous propulsion is required to lift the space shuttle into orbit.

prosaic adj. dull, banal, overdone, tedious, clich‚d, commonplace, stereotyped, pedestrian, flat, stereotypical, hackneyed, stock, routine, everyday, ordinary, common, workaday, mediocre, undistinguished, bland, characterless, homely, plain, trite, stale, threadbare, tired, lifeless, dead, dry, jejune, boring, tiresome, unimaginative, unpoetic, unromantic, uninspiring, uninspired, insipid, uninteresting, humdrum, monotonous, Literary ennuyant, Colloq ho-hum, run-of-the-mill, mouldy: She found the law too prosaic and trained to become a jockey.

prose n. (expository) writing, text, language: It came as a great revelation to learn that he had been speaking prose all his life.

prosecute v. 1 arraign, indict, charge, put on or bring to trial, try, take to court, sue, bring suit or action against, accuse, Brit put in the dock: She threatened to prosecute him for slander. 2 pursue, follow up or through, see or carry through, persist, go on with: Will the same policy will be prosecuted in other countries? 3 carry on or out, perform, do, exercise, conduct, follow, engage in, practise, continue: The government needs popular support if it is to continue to prosecute the war successfully.

prospect n. 1 view, scene, panorama, landscape, seascape, outlook, vista, sight, spectacle, perspective, aspect: The sitting-room window offered a splendid prospect of the sea and cliffs below. 2 anticipation, contemplation, outlook, promise, plan, design, intention, expectancy, expectation, thought, likelihood: The prospect of spending the Christmas holidays with your family is quite daunting. 3 Often, prospects. future, outlook, chance(s), hope(s), possibility or possibilities, likelihood, opportunity or opportunities: The prospects for her advancement are excellent. 4 in prospect. in sight or view, in the offing, on the horizon, in store, in the wind, projected, in store, likely, probable, possible, Brit on the cards, on the table, US in the cards: As a doctor, he has a number of opportunities in prospect.

--v. 5 Often, prospect for. explore, search (for), look (for): In 1896, his grandfather went to the Klondike to prospect for gold.

prospective
adj. anticipated, expected, awaited, looked-for, future, forthcoming, coming, approaching, imminent, nearing, pending, impending, destined, potential, incipient: Jane's prospective wedding had excited the entire family.

prospectus
n. announcement, plan, scheme, programme, outline, conspectus, description: According to the prospectus for the fund, the minimum investment is œ1000.

prosper   v. flourish, thrive, succeed, fare well, progress, get ahead, grow, develop; profit, gain, become wealthy, grow rich, make one's fortune, make good, Colloq make it, make one's pile: With hard work, thrift, and perseverance, MacIntosh prospered and was soon able to buy the house he wanted.

prosperity
n. success, (good) fortune, wealth, riches, affluence, money, luxury, plenty, prosperousness, opulence, bounty, Colloq life of Riley: The basis of the family's prosperity was huge land holdings in Australia.

prosperous
adj. 1 rich, wealthy, moneyed or monied, affluent, well-to-do, well off, Colloq well-heeled, loaded, flush, in the money, rolling in it or wealth or money, in clover, on Easy Street, Slang stinking rich: Anyone who owns six houses and four yachts must be prosperous. 2 successful, thriving, flourishing, booming, prospering: Frank owns a prosperous chain of video shops.

prostitute
n. 1 whore, call-girl, streetwalker, strumpet, trollop, harlot,

lady of the night or US also evening, fallen or loose woman, demi-mondaine, cocotte, fille de joie, painted woman, woman of ill repute, camp-follower, Archaic catamite, Literary hetaera or hetaira, courtesan or courtezan, Brit rent-boy, toy boy, US boy toy, Archaic bawd, quean, trull, cotquean, Colloq tart, hustler, Slang pro, moll, Brit brass, hooker, US bimbo, working girl, chippy or chippie, roundheels: There was a terrible scandal when the MP was found to have consorted with prostitutes.

--v. 2 Often, prostitute oneself. degrade, demean, lower, cheapen, debase, profane, defile, desecrate, pervert, abuse, misuse, devalue, Colloq sell out: To ward off starvation, he prostituted his talent by drawing comic strips.

prostitution

n. 1 whoredom, harlotry, the oldest profession, Mrs Warren's profession, streetwalking, vice: They argued strongly against the legalization of prostitution, saying that it would lead to a decline in public morals. 2 degradation, debasement, profanation, defilement, desecration, misuse, abuse, devaluation, lowering, perversion, corruption: Don't you regard pornography as a prostitution of the principle of freedom of expression?

prostrate v. 1 Usually, prostrate oneself. lie down, kowtow, bow (down), bow and scrape, grovel, kneel, fall to or on one's knees, truckle, crawl, cringe, submit, abase oneself: The captives were forced to prostrate themselves before the emperor. 2 overwhelm, overcome, overpower, crush, lay or bring low, paralyse, fell, bowl over, floor, bring down, humble, make helpless, ruin; exhaust, fatigue, weary, wear down or out, tire (out): They were prostrated by grief at the loss of their son. Having been prostrated for months by glandular fever, she finally recovered and returned to work.

--adj. 3 prone, horizontal, lying down, laid low, stretched out, procumbent, recumbent, Formal or technical accumbent, decumbent: The prostrate bodies of the worshippers in their multicoloured garb resembled a huge patchwork quilt. 4 overwhelmed, overcome, overpowered, crushed, brought or laid low, paralysed, felled, bowled over, brought down, humbled, helpless, ruined, brought to one's knees, powerless, impotent, defenceless, disarmed, Colloq floored: She was prostrate at the news of the car crash. After the long war, the countries were struggling to revitalize their prostrate economies. 5 exhausted, drained, fatigued, spent, worn out, wearied, weary, tired (out), dead tired, dog-tired, played out, Colloq fagged out, knocked out, all in, beat, bushed, US wiped out, Slang shagged out, US and Canadian pooped (out): We were prostrate after the long climb.

prostration

n. 1 genuflection or Brit also genuflexion, kowtowing, kowtow, kneeling, bowing, bow, salaaming, salaam, submission: Prostration before a superior was a mark of honour. 2 servility, veneration, worship, humiliation, respect, adulation, deference, obeisance, homage: Their silence betokened the profound prostration they felt before her superior intellect. 3 despair, misery, desolation, desperation, dejection, depression, despondency, wretchedness, unhappiness, grief, woe, woefulness: Years of poverty created in him a spiritual prostration from which he never recovered. 4 weariness, exhaustion, weakness, debility, feebleness, enervation, lassitude, paralysis, collapse, breakdown: The diagnosis was nervous prostration and the treatment was bed rest for a week or more.

protagonist

n. 1 hero, heroine, anti-hero, anti-heroine, principal, leading character; lead, leading role, title role: Mother was always the protagonist in our little domestic dramas. 2 leader, supporter, advocate, backer, prime mover, moving spirit, champion, mainstay, standard-bearer, exponent: He is considered the chief protagonist of reformist policies in the party.

protean adj. variable, ever-changing, multiform, variable, mutable, changeable, labile, polymorphous or polymorphic, kaleidoscopic: The magic ring gave him protean powers to appear now as an eagle, now as a serpent.

protect v. 1 defend, guard, safeguard, keep safe, shield, cover, screen: Company rules require the wearing of safety goggles to protect the eyes when operating any machine. 2 care for, preserve, keep, shelter, watch over, safeguard, take care of, conserve, take under one's wing, foster, nurture, tend, mind: The best way of protecting wildlife is to conserve natural habitats.

protection

n. 1 defence, screen, shield, barrier, guard, safeguard, immunity, bulwark, buffer, shelter, refuge, haven, sanctuary, security, safe keeping, safety, preservation: They have not yet developed any protection from the common cold. How can we offer these fledglings protection against predators? 2 care, guardianship, aegis, custody, charge, safe keeping, patronage, sponsorship, keeping: Even under the protection of the government, elephants continue to be slaughtered. 3 extortion, blackmail, protection money: If we refuse to pay protection, they say that they will bomb the restaurant.

protective

adj. defensive, jealous, vigilant, watchful, heedful, careful, possessive; preservative, shielding, sheltering, safeguarding: She is fiercely protective of her independence and will not accept help. Many animals rely on protective colouring as a defence against predators.

protector n. protectress, defender, benefactor, benefactress, patron, patroness, guardian (angel), champion, knight in shining armour, paladin, bodyguard, Slang Brit minder: She came to regard him as her friend and protector.

prot,g,   n. prot,g,e, ward, charge, dependant; discovery, student, pupil: He became her prot,g, and she has taught him everything he knows.

protest   n. 1 objection, opposition, complaint, grumble, grievance, dissent, disapproval, protestation, exception, disagreement, demur or demurral, demurrer, disclaimer, denial, scruple, compunction, qualm, Colloq gripe, grouse, squawk, US kick, Slang beef, bitch: The Home Office has received many protests about the treatment of prisoners. 2 under protest. unwillingly, reluctantly, involuntarily: I paid the fine under protest.

--v. 3 object, oppose, complain, grumble, dissent, disapprove, take exception, take issue with, disagree, demur, disclaim, deny, scruple, Colloq gripe, grouse, squawk, Brit kick (against), US kick, Slang beef, bitch: Bank employees protested at being expected to work on Saturday mornings. 4 assert, confirm, declare, aver, asseverate, affirm, announce, profess, insist on, avow, avouch: The convicted man went to the gallows protesting his innocence.

protocol n. 1 rule(s) or code(s) or standard(s) of behaviour or conduct, convention(s), custom(s), diplomacy, formality, formalities, form, etiquette, politesse, manners, practice, usage, authority: According to protocol, the lady stands at the right of the gentleman. Which protocol are you following, the British or the French? 2 treaty, pact, compact, covenant, agreement, concordat; memorandum, minute, note, draft, outline: The original protocol must be checked before the ministers attach their signatures.

prototype n. 1 model, archetype, first, original, pattern, exemplar, precedent, mould: Many improvements were made as a result of tests on the original prototype. 2 example, instance, illustration, sample, norm, paragon, epitome, model, standard, analogue, referent, metaphor: Mrs Grundy is a common prototype for narrow-mindedness and prudishness.

protracted

adj. long, long-drawn-out, interminable, prolonged, over-long, never-ending, extended, stretched out, marathon, endless, everlasting, long-winded: The protracted union negotiations delayed the start of the work by six months.

protrude v. stick out, jut (out), project, extend, poke out, stand out, thrust out or forward, start (from), exsert, Rare extrude; bulge, balloon, bag (out), belly (out); (of the eyes) pop, goggle, Colloq US bug (out): Only the very tops of the plants protruded from the snow.

protrusion

n. projection, protuberance, prominence, swelling, excrescence, tumescence, bump, lump, knob, bulge; (condition of the eyes) Technical exophthalmic goitre: I can feel the slight protrusion of the nail-heads above the smooth surface.

protuberant

adj. protrusive, protruding, bulging, gibbous, jutting, bulbous, swelling, swollen, turgid, tumescent, distended, tumid, extrusive, excrescent, extruding, projecting, beetling, overhanging, prominent: She has large brown eyes that are a little protuberant.

proud adj. 1 Often, proud of. pleased (with), satisfied (with), contented (with), glad (about), happy (with or about), delighted (with or about), elated (with or about); honoured, gratified: He is very proud of his children and what they have achieved. I am proud to be your friend. 2 conceited, boastful, self-satisfied, narcissistic, self-important, egotistical, vain, vainglorious, prideful, self-centred, complacent, snobbish, haughty, supercilious, smug, arrogant, cocky, cocksure, boastful, braggart, Colloq high and mighty, snooty, stuck-up, Slang snotty, Brit toffee-nosed: She's far too proud to have anything to do with the likes of us. 3 lofty, dignified, lordly, noble, great, respected, honoured, honourable, important, glorious, august, illustrious, estimable, creditable, eminent, prominent, distinguished, reputable, worthy, notable, noted, noteworthy: His will always be a proud name in British military history. 4 stately, majestic, magnificent, splendid, grand: Proud Edinburgh earned the sobriquet, 'Athens of the north'.

prove v. 1 verify, authenticate, confirm, make good, corroborate, demonstrate, show, validate, establish, substantiate, certify, affirm; support, sustain, back (up), uphold: Prove that he lied under oath, and we shall have him for perjury. If you cannot prove her guilt, she must be presumed innocent. 2 try, test, examine, check, analyse, assay: Division can easily be proved by multiplication, and vice versa. The proving ground for military vehicles is off limits to the public. Come live with me and be my love, And we shall all the pleasures prove. 3 turn out, be found, be shown, be established, end up; develop, result: The child proved to be his long-lost grandson. 4 show, evince, demonstrate: He proved his love many times over during their fifty years of marriage.

provender n. 1 provisions, food, supplies, victuals, rations, foodstuffs, groceries, eatables, edibles, comestibles, aliment, nourishment, sustenance, Colloq grub, eats: The armies relied for their provender on farms they passed on the march. 2 fodder, forage, feed, hay, silage, corn, grain: Provender for the livestock was running low because of the long winter.

proverb n. saying, maxim, aphorism, saw, adage, apophthegm or apothegm, axiom, moral, moralism, homily, dictum, gnome, epigram, commonplace, platitude, truism, clich,, bromide: According to the old proverb, 'A fool and his money are soon parted'.

proverbial
adj. 1 axiomatic, aphoristic, epigrammatic, apophthegmatic or apothegmatic, homiletic, moralistic; acknowledged, well-known, accepted, time-honoured, traditional: The language is full of proverbial sayings reflecting popular wisdom. 2 typical, archetypal, exemplary: The humanitarianism of Albert Schweitzer is proverbial.

provide v. 1 supply, furnish, equip, outfit, fix up (with) provision, contribute, accommodate, purvey, cater, stock (up), victual, provender: After providing us with a map and a compass, they sent us off across the moor. 2 produce, yield, afford, lend, give, present, offer, accord: The fertile land provided food in plentiful abundance. During those bleak years, the radio provided us not only with news but also entertainment. 3 stipulate, lay down, require, demand, specify, state: The lease provided that the rent be reviewed every five years. 4 provide for. look after, care for, support, take care of, take under one's wing, minister to, attend (to): The bequest ensured that his widow would be amply provided for. 5 provide for or against. arrange for, prepare for, anticipate, forearm, make or get ready for, plan for, take precautions, take measures: It would seem that you have provided for any eventuality.

providence
n. 1 foresight, forethought, preparation, anticipation, readiness, far-sightedness, caution, precaution, discretion, prudence, care; thrift, frugality, husbandry, thriftiness, conservation, economy: Because of the providence of our founders, we were able to weather severe financial set backs. 2 Usually, (divine) Providence. protection, care, concern, beneficence, direction, control, divine intervention, guidance; destiny, fate, lot, fortune, karma, kismet: Providence is always on the side of those who help themselves.

provident adj. 1 cautious, wary, discreet, canny, prudent, careful, vigilant, prepared, far-sighted, thoughtful, wise, shrewd, sagacious, sage, judicious: In the fable, the grasshopper learns from the ant what it means to be provident. 2 frugal, economic(al), thrifty, prudent: Because he is not a provident man, he will always be poor.

providential
adj. fortunate, lucky, blessed, felicitous, happy, opportune, timely: It is providential that we left the house just before the earthquake.

providing conj. Sometimes, providing that. provided (that), on (the) condition (that), if (only), only if, as long as, in the event (that), with the proviso (that), in case, with the understanding (that): Simon is always ready to go out to dinner, providing someone else pays for it.

province n. 1 territory, state, zone, region, quarter, area, district, domain, dependency or US also dependancy, division, section, district: Quebec is one of the administrative provinces of Canada. 2 country, territory, region, dominion, realm, strand, tract: During the war, those who escaped fled to distant provinces. 3 sphere or area (of responsibility), responsibility, bailiwick, concern, function, charge, business, field; Colloq thing, headache, worry: The payroll falls within the province of my department. 4 provinces. outlying districts, countryside, hinterland(s), Chiefly US exurbia, Slang US and Canadian boondocks, boonies, hicksville: Once a year, people flock into London from the provinces to do their Christmas shopping.

provincial
adj. 1 local, regional: Provincial administration is the responsibility of the sheriff. 2 uncultured, uncultivated, unsophisticated, limited, uninformed, na‹ve, innocent, ingenuous, unpolished, unrefined, homespun, rustic, rude, country, parochial, insular, narrow-minded, boorish, loutish, cloddish, awkward, ungraceful, oafish, backwood(s), Brit parish pump, US small-town, Colloq US and Canadian hick, hick-town: These paintings are unlikely to appeal to provincial tastes.

--n. 3 rustic, country cousin, (country) bumpkin, yokel, US and Canadian out-of-towner, hick, hayseed: One could tell they were provincials by the cut of their clothes.

provincialism
n. 1 dialectalism, localism, regionalism; idiom, patois,

dialect: His northern speech is peppered with provincialisms unfamiliar to those who live in the south. 2 narrow-mindedness, insularity, parochialism, narrowness, benightedness; unsophisticatedness, simplicity, lack of awareness, na‹vety, ingenuousness, innocence, inexperience: Their provincialism made them suspicious of city people. There was something charming about the provincialism of this rough man from the outback.

provision n. 1 providing, supplying, furnishing; catering, victualling, provisioning, purveyance, purveying, furnishing, equipping, fitting out, outfitting, accoutrement, equipment: The school is responsible for the provision of textbooks. The provision of a cruise ship of that size requires days. 2 stipulation, proviso, condition, restriction, qualification, clause, term, exception, demand, requirement, prerequisite, Colloq catch, string, US hooker: This provision of the contract calls for a penalty for each day's delay beyond the guaranteed completion date. 3 preparation, prearrangement, arrangement, measures, steps: They had failed to make provision for so many customers and soon ran out of food. 4 Usually, provisions. supplies, stores, stockpile, stock(s), quantity; food, foodstuffs, eatables, edibles, drinkables, potables, victuals, viands, comestibles, rations, groceries, provender, staples: We had enough provisions to last a year.

--v. 5 stockpile, stock, supply, victual, cater, purvey: They provisioned the expedition for a three-month period.

provisional

adj. 1 temporary, interim, provisionary, transitional, stopgap, Colloq pro tem: The provisional government was expected to be in place for less than a month. 2 conditional, contingent, provisory, qualified, stipulatory, provisionary, probationary: The appointment is provisional and will be reviewed in six months.

proviso n. See provision, 2. above.

provocation

n. 1 grounds, reason, cause, justification, instigation, initiation, incitement, stimulus, incentive, motivation, motive, inducement: What was the provocation for that unpleasant outburst? 2 insult, offence, taunt, irritation: After a series of provocations, the final straw was his remark about my mother.

provocative

adj. 1 inviting, alluring, tempting, charming, tantalizing, teasing, intriguing, fascinating, seductive, stimulating, voluptuous, sensual, sensuous, suggestive, erotic, arousing, exciting, entrancing, irresistible, bewitching, Colloq sexy: The council found the film too provocative to be shown to schoolchildren. 2 irritating, annoying, galling, irksome, nettlesome, harassing, plaguing, exasperating, infuriating, angering, incensing, maddening, enraging, vexing, vexatious, disquieting, challenging, upsetting, distressing, disturbing, outrageous, wounding, stinging, offensive, humiliating, mortifying: She is given to making provocative remarks that drive him to distraction.

provoke   v. 1 stir (up), stimulate, move, motivate, push, impel, drive, get, spur (on), egg on, goad, force, compel, prompt, rouse, arouse, waken, awaken, enliven, animate, activate, induce, encourage: She did her best to provoke him to start his new novel. 2 start, incite, instigate, produce, promote, foment, kindle, work up: Are you trying to provoke an argument? 3 irritate, annoy, irk, pester, vex, pique, anger, enrage, madden, incense, infuriate, gall, rile, nettle, harass, hector, plague, badger, exasperate, get on one's nerves, try one's patience, frustrate, upset, disturb, perturb, distress, outrage, offend, insult, affront: If he continues to provoke me I shall punch him.

prowess   n. 1 ability, skill, skilfulness, aptitude, adroitness, dexterity, dexterousness, adeptness, facility, finesse, expertise, mastery, genius, talent, know-how, ingenuity, capability, proficiency: Her prowess as a sculptor is unquestioned. 2 bravery, valour, courage, boldness, daring, intrepidity, dauntlessness, mettle, stout-heartedness, valiance, lion-heartedness, fearlessness, gallantry, doughtiness, fortitude: He was famed for his prowess in single combat.

prowl   v. 1 lurk, sneak, skulk, steal, slink: I thought I saw someone prowling about in your back garden. 2 scour, scavenge, range over, rove, roam, patrol, cruise, cover: The police continued to prowl the waterfront looking for smugglers.

--n. 3 on the prowl. lurking or sneaking or skulking or stealing or slinking about or around, searching, seeking, hunting, tracking, stalking: The lioness was on the prowl for wildebeest. After a few drinks, the boys went on the prowl for some female companionship.

proximity n. nearness, closeness, adjacency, neighbourhood, vicinity, vicinage, contiguity, contiguousness, propinquity: The proximity of the airport kept housing prices relatively low.

proxy n. substitute, agent, delegate, surrogate, representative, factor: As I was unable to attend the owners' meeting, I sent Jane as my proxy.

prude n. prig, puritan, Mrs Grundy, Colloq goody-goody, US bluenose: He was a bit of a prude and disapproved of anything even slightly suggestive.

prudence n. 1 discretion, wisdom, sagacity, judgement, discrimination, common sense, canniness, presence of mind, awareness, wariness, care, tact, carefulness, caution, cautiousness, circumspection, watchfulness, vigilance, heedfulness: You should proceed with prudence in this hazardous business. 2 planning, preparation, preparedness, foresightedness, forethought, foresight, providence, precaution, far-sightedness; economy, husbandry, thrift, (good or careful) management: Owing to the prudence of her investments, Clara had accumulated a substantial nest egg.

prudent adj. 1 careful, cautious, discreet, discerning, wise, sage, sagacious, politic, judicious, discriminating, sensible, reasonable, canny, shrewd, cautious, circumspect, watchful, vigilant, heedful, wary, attentive, alert, guarded: James had always found it prudent to listen to others before speaking his mind. 2 provident, thrifty, economic(al), frugal, prudential: Father favours prudent, conservative management of the family business.

prudery n. prudishness, priggishness, puritanicalness, puritanism, squeamishness, Grundyism, primness, stuffiness, old-maidishness, precisianism: She said that censorship was the result of prudery rather than concern for moral welfare.

prudish adj. priggish, puritanical, old-maidish, prissy, prim, fussy, squeamish, strait-laced, stiff, rigid, over-nice, over-modest, over-coy, proper, demure, decorous, formal: Victorian society was both prudish and prurient.

prune v. clip, cut back, lop, dock, pare (down), trim: If you prune fruit trees, they bear more abundantly. We have to prune the entertainment budget.

prurient adj. 1 libidinous, lecherous, lascivious, lewd, lubricious or lubricous, salacious, lustful, concupiscent, licentious, carnal, debauched, rakehell, sensual, randy, voluptuous, loose, goatish, ruttish, Literary Cyprian, Paphian, Archaic lickerish or liquorish, Slang horny, hot: The press takes a prurient interest in the private lives of famous people. 2 dirty, lewd, filthy, pornographic, smutty, obscene, foul, scurrilous, vile, indecent, gross, lurid, blue, bawdy, ribald, titillating, suggestive, coarse, vulgar, low, crude, Literary Fescennine: The police raid uncovered a store of prurient literature, films, and videos.

pry v. 1 investigate, ferret about, examine, peer, peek, be inquisitive, inquire or enquire: They pried into her past but found nothing revealing. 2 intrude, meddle, interfere, Colloq poke or stick one's nose in or into, snoop, be nosy, nose about or around, poke about or around: They have no right to pry into my private affairs.

16.8 pseudonym...
=-

pseudonym n. nom de plume, nom de guerre, alias, pen-name, stage name, incognito: 'George Eliot' was the pseudonym of Mary Ann Evans.

psyche n. soul, spirit, mind, ,lan vital, divine spark, life-force, anima, self, subconscious, unconscious, personality, (essential) nature, inner man or woman or person, Philosophy pneuma: To Homer, the psyche was more like an alter ego, or conscience.

psychic adj. 1 psychical, mental, spiritual, psychologic(al), subjective, psychogenic, cognitive, metaphysic(al), intellectual, cerebral; philosophic(al): The psychic effect of losing a loved one can have physical repercussions. 2 psychical, extrasensory, supernatural, occult, magical, telepathic, telekinetic, preternatural, spiritualistic, unearthly, extramundane, supermundane: Many psychic phenomena have never been satisfactorily explained.

--n. 3 medium, spiritualist, clairvoyant, mind-reader, telepathist, seer, seeress, crystal-gazer, soothsayer, astrologer, fortune-teller, prophet, prophetess, sibyl: We were disturbed to learn that our political leaders consulted psychics.

psychological

adj. mental, intellectual, cerebral, cognitive, psychic(al), spiritual, subjective, subconscious, unconscious, subliminal, psychogenic; philosophic(al): He has plenty of money, so there must be psychological reasons for his stealing.

psychology

n. (mental) make-up, constitution, attitude, behaviour, thought processes, thinking, psyche, nature, feeling(s), emotion(s), rationale, reasoning: I cannot understand the psychology of fascism.

psychotic adj. 1 mad, insane, psychopathic, deranged, demented, lunatic, paranoiac or paranoid, abnormal, unbalanced, (mentally) ill or esp. US sick, disturbed, non compos mentis, of unsound mind, exceptional, certifiable, daft, unhinged, raving, Slang crazy, nuts, nutty, loony or looney or luny, off one's rocker or trolley or chump or head, cracked, crack-brained, mental, out to lunch, batty, bats, having bats in one's belfry, having a screw loose, not all there, touched (in the head), bonkers: The doctors diagnosed him as psychotic and insisted he be hospitalized.

--n. 2 madman, madwoman, maniac, psychopath, lunatic, paranoid or paranoiac, schizophrenic, bedlamite, Slang nut, nutter, screwball, crackpot, crazy, loony or looney or luny, schizo, US kook: How many psychotics do you think are wandering about loose?

16.9 pub...

=-

pub n. public house, alehouse, tavern, inn, bar, cocktail lounge, saloon, taproom, hostelry, Brit saloon or lounge bar, US bar-room, Colloq Brit local, Slang boozer, watering-hole, joint, dive, Chiefly Brit gin-palace, US barrelhouse, gin-mill, honky-tonk: We went down to the pub for a pint and a game of darts.

puberty n. pubescence, sexual maturity, adolescence, juvenescence, teens; nubility: The anxiety of parents for the health of an infant is as nothing compared with their concerns when their child reaches puberty.

public adj. 1 communal, community, common, general, collective, universal, catholic, popular, worldwide: One need only compare early and new films to see how public taste has changed. 2 civil, civic, social, societal, community, communal: Although they may seem restrictive, these laws are for the public good. 3 accessible, open, free, unrestricted, non-exclusive, communal, community, available: He does much of his research in the public library. 4 open, manifest, exposed, overt, projected, plain, obvious, apparent, patent, clear, clear-cut, acknowledged, known, admitted, visible, viewable, conspicuous: Her public image is quite different from her private persona. 5 visible, viewable, conspicuous, unconcealed, unshrouded, flagrant, blatant: Has Alfie made a public spectacle of himself again? 6 well-known, prominent, eminent, celebrated, famous, renowned, noted, notable, influential, illustrious; notorious, disreputable, infamous: Invite a well-known public figure to open the exhibition if you can. 7 make public. See publish.

--n. 8 community, people (at large or in general), citizenry, citizens, nation, populace, population, society, masses, multitude, hoi polloi, bourgeoisie, plebeians, proletariat, rank and file, middle class, third estate, commonalty, voters, man or woman in the street, Brit admass, US John Q. Public, Mr or Mrs Average, Colloq (any or every) Tom, Dick, and Harry: The public has responded generously to the charity appeal. 9 clientele or Brit also clientage, customers, custom, patrons, followers, supporters, buyers, consumers, purchasers, following, business, trade: How can you expect to attract the public without advertising? 10 sector, segment, special-interest group, portion: The commuting public will no longer tolerate these excessive train delays. 11 in public. publicly, openly, in the open, Colloq out of the closet: Jarvis has finally confessed in public what we long suspected privately.

publication
n. 1 dissemination, promulgation, publicizing, publishing, proclamation, issuance, reporting, announcement, advertisement, advertising, pronouncement, airing, putting out, revelation, declaration, appearance: The publication of the news about the sale of the company was no surprise to us. 2 book, booklet, pamphlet, brochure, leaflet, broadside or broadsheet, flier or flyer, handbill, hand-out; periodical, magazine, journal, newsletter, newspaper, paper, broadsheet, tabloid; annual, semi-annual, quarterly, bimonthly, monthly, semi-monthly, fortnightly, biweekly, weekly, hebdomadal or hebdomedary, semi-weekly, daily: He buys every publication he can find dealing with model railways.

publicize v. promote, advertise, give publicity to, Colloq beat the drum for, plug, puff, US push, Slang hype: They once hired an elephant to publicize a huge department-store sale.

publish v. make public, put out, broadcast, spread (about or around), advertise, make known, let (something) be known, announce, publicize, report, proclaim, promulgate, bruit about, reveal, divulge, disclose, break the news (about), Colloq leak: The minister resigned the day the news of the scandal was published.

pucker v. 1 gather, draw together, compress, purse, crinkle, ruck, shirr, ruffle, corrugate, furrow, wrinkle, crease, screw up, tighten, contract, squeeze: Pucker up your mouth and give me a kiss. The shirring is done by puckering up the fabric and stitching it through with decorative thread.

--n. 2 gather, tuck, pleat, pleating, shirr, shirring, ruffle, ruck, ruche, ruckle, wrinkle, wrinkling, fold, crinkle, crinkling: The curtains have some puckers that need ironing.

puerile adj. childish, immature, babyish, infantile, juvenile, silly, asinine, foolish, trivial, ridiculous, irresponsible, shallow, inconsequential, insignificant, US sophomoric: Stop that puerile horseplay and settle down.

puff n. 1 blow, breath, wind, whiff, draught, gust, blast, huff: A slight puff through the open window stirred the curtains. 2 draught, draw, pull, Colloq drag: She took a puff from her cigarette and blew the smoke in his face. 3 advertisement, praise, mention, word, item, review, notice, publicity, puffery, Colloq plug, blurb, Slang hype: The late editions of the papers carry puffs for your new restaurant.

--v. 4 blow, breathe, huff, pant, gasp, wheeze: Victor came huffing and puffing up to the finishing line. 5 draw, pull (at or on), inhale, suck, smoke, Colloq drag: Holmes was puffing silently on his pipe. 6 Usually, puff up or out. inflate, distend, bloat, swell (up or out), stretch, balloon, expand, pump up, enlarge: Calvin swaggered in, all puffed up with pride about his new job. 7 publicize, advertise, promote, push, trumpet, ballyhoo, extol, commend, praise, Colloq plug, beat the drum (for): He has been shamelessly puffing his book on every radio and TV show.

pugilism n. boxing, prizefighting; the manly art of self-defence, fisticuffs; Colloq the boxing or fight game: His career in pugilism came to an abrupt end in the second minute of the third round.

pugilist n. boxer, prizefighter, fighter, contender, contestant, battler, combatant, Colloq bruiser, scrapper, champ, Slang slugger, pug: The pugilists came out of their corners and at once started jabbing away at each other.

pugnacious
adj. aggressive, belligerent, combative, quarrelsome, bellicose, antagonistic, argumentative, hostile, litigious, contentious, disputatious, disagreeable, fractious, petulant, testy, irascible, hot-tempered, choleric, unfriendly, curmudgeonly, irritable, short-tempered: The Gothic tribes were very pugnacious, always ready to fight with little or no provocation.

pukka adj. 1 pukkah or pucka, well done or made, properly or perfectly done, first class: That was a pukka meal. 2 pukkah or pucka, genuine, good, authentic, reliable, honourable, fair, right, proper, thorough, out-and-out: They always referred to him as 'pukka sahib'.

puling adj. whining, wailing, querulous, whimpering, snivelling, weeping, caterwauling: The third-class carriage was filled with chickens, pigs, and puling infants.

pull v. 1 draw, haul, drag, lug, tow, trail: Do you think the car is strong enough to pull that load? 2 tug, jerk, yank, wrench, pluck: He suddenly pulled on the door and it opened. 3 Sometimes, pull out or up. pluck (out), withdraw, extract, uproot, pick (up or out), snatch out or up, tear or rip out or up, cull, select, draw out, take out, remove: We pulled out all the weeds and threw them on the compost heap. He has a collection of jokes pulled from his speeches. 4 Often, pull apart. tear or rip (up or apart), rend, pull asunder, wrench (apart), stretch, strain: This fabric is so weak it pulled apart as soon as I touched it. I think I pulled a muscle in my calf. 5 Often, pull in. attract, draw, lure, entice, allure, catch, captivate, fascinate, capture: We need something besides the 'Sale' sign to pull the customers into the shop. 6 pull apart. pull to pieces or shreds, criticize, attack, pick or take apart or to pieces, flay, run down, Colloq put down, pan, knock, devastate, destroy, slate, Slang slam: The critics really pulled apart her new play. 7 pull away. withdraw, draw or drive or go or move away; outrun, outpace, draw ahead of: She pulled away abruptly when he touched her hand. The green car is pulling away from the others. 8 pull back. a withdraw, draw back, back off or away, recoil, shrink (away or back) from, shy, flinch (from), jump, start: The burglar pulled back when he saw the ferocious dog. b withdraw, (beat a) retreat, take flight, flee, turn tail, drop or fall back, back out: We cheered when we saw the enemy troops pulling back. 9 pull down. a demolish, raze, level, destroy, wreck: It takes only hours to pull down a house that it has taken generations to build. b draw, receive, get, be paid, earn: He pulls down much more at his new job. c lower, debase, diminish, reduce, degrade, dishonour, disgrace, discredit, humiliate: When his fortunes declined, he pulled down all his friends with him. 10 pull for. hope or pray for, be enthusiastic for, be supportive of, support, campaign for, cheer for, encourage, boost, US root for: We are all pulling for you to win. 11 pull in. a drive up, arrive, come, draw up or in, reach: The train finally pulled in at midnight. We need petrol, so pull in at the next filling station. b arrest, apprehend, take into custody, Colloq pinch, nab, collar, nail, Brit nick, Slang bust: The cops pulled him in for possession of narcotics. 12 pull off. a detach, rip or tear off, separate, wrench off or away: When he was cashiered from the army, they pulled off all his insignia and medals. b accomplish, do, complete, succeed, carry out, bring off, manage, perform: Three men pulled off the robbery in broad daylight. 13 pull oneself together. recover, get a grip on oneself, get over it, recuperate, Colloq snap out of it, buck up: Try to pull yourself together and stop crying. 14 pull out. a uproot, extract, withdraw: In the ensuing scrap, someone tried to pull out his hair. Two survivors were pulled out of the rubble. b withdraw, retreat, beat a retreat, recede, draw back, leave, depart, go or run away or off, evacuate, Colloq beat it, do a bunk, Brit do a moonlight flit: The artillery unit pulled out yesterday. c leave, go, depart, take off: When that train pulls out, I want you on it! d withdraw, quit, abandon, resign (from), give up, relinquish: You can still pull out of the deal if you want to. 15 pull someone's leg. tease, chaff, rib, have on, rag, twit, poke fun at, make fun of, hoodwink, ridicule: He said that I'd just eaten a fly, but he was pulling my leg. 16 pull strings. use influence or connections, US use pull, pull wires: His uncle pulled strings to get him the job. 17 pull through. survive, recover, improve, get better, get over (it or some affliction), rally; live: Murphy was at death's door, but luckily he pulled through. 18 pull up. a stop, halt, come to a standstill: We pulled up in a lay-by for a few minutes' rest. b uproot, root out, dig out, deracinate, eradicate: Your dog has pulled up all the flowers in my garden. c draw even or level with, come up to, reach: On the fifth lap, Manson pulled up to, then passed Sabbatini.

--n. 19 draw, tug; yank, jerk: Give the bell-rope a strong, steady pull, and try not to yank it suddenly. 20 attraction, draw, magnetism, appeal, drawing or pulling power, seductiveness, seduction, lure: The pull that golf has on certain people is hard to explain. 21 influence, authority, connections, prestige, weight, leverage, Colloq clout, muscle: You'd better treat her nicely, for she has a lot of pull with the boss. 22 puff, draw, inhalation, Colloq drag: He took a long, meditative pull on his cigarette and blew some smoke rings.

pulley n. sheave, block: The rope is run through a system of pulleys, called a tackle, for lifting weights.

pulp n. 1 marrow, pith, heart, soft part, flesh: After removing the seeds, add two tablespoonfuls of sugar and mix into the pulp. 2 mush, paste, mash, pap, pomace, mass, Technical triturate: Water is added to the waste paper, which the machines then reduce to a pulp.

--v. 3 mash, squash, pulverize, Technical levigate, triturate: The entire print run of the book was pulped after she threatened to sue the publishers.

--adj. 4 lurid, sensational, trashy, cheap: What he considers great literature you would call pulp fiction.

pulsate v. beat, pulse, throb, pound, thrum, drum, thump, thud, reverberate, hammer, palpitate, vibrate; oscillate, quiver: Throughout the voyage, I could feel the ship's engines pulsating.

pulse n. 1 beat, beating, throb, throbbing, pulsing, pulsating, pulsation, pounding, thrumming, drumming, thumping, thudding, reverberation, reverberating, hammering, palpitation, palpitating, vibration, vibrating: The pulse of the jungle drums became louder and faster.

--v. 2 See pulsate, above.

pulverize v. 1 powder, comminute, grind, crush, mill, granulate, crumble, break up, bray, pound, Technical triturate, levigate: This machine pulverizes the rock, after which the binding agents are added. 2 devastate, destroy, demolish, crush, smash, shatter, ruin, wreck, annihilate: The four battalions were pulverized in the attack.

pump v. 1 send, force, deliver, push: The heart pumps blood around the body. 2 interrogate, question, examine, cross-examine, quiz, probe, Colloq grill, give (someone) the third degree: They pumped her for hours, but she told them nothing about my whereabouts. 3 pump out. pump dry or empty, empty, drain, bail out, draw or drive or force out, siphon (out): After the flood it took two days to pump out my basement. 4 pump up. a inflate, blow up; dilate, swell, bloat, expand, puff out or up: If you don't repair the tyre, pumping it up will accomplish nothing. b excite, inspire, stimulate, animate, inspirit, electrify, galvanize, energize, motivate, Colloq enthuse: The coach is talking to the team, trying to pump them up before the big game. c intensify, concentrate, emphasize, stress, increase: We ought to pump up our promotion campaign just before Christmas.

pun n. play on words, quip, (bon) mot, witticism, double entendre, Literary equivoque, Technical paronomasia: Dennis made some awful pun on 'nose' and 'knows' that nobody got.

punch° v. 1 hit, clip, jab, whack, thwack, knock, smack, box, pummel, strike, cuff, Colloq clout, bop, slug, wallop, thump, lambaste, slam, Slang sock, biff, plug, belt, lace (into), US paste: Anyone says anything about my girl, I'll punch him in the jaw!

--n. 2 clip, jab, whack, thwack, knock, smack, box, cuff, upper-cut, left or right, Colloq clout, bop, slug, wallop, thump, slam, Slang sock, belt, biff, haymaker, plug, paste: The punch knocked him down. 3 effect, impact, effectiveness, force, forcefulness, power, vitality, gusto, vigour, life, vim, zest, ginger, Colloq it, oomph, what it takes, Slang zing, zip: These advertisements are pretty, but they are lacking in punch.

punchý n. 1 awl, auger, bodkin, perforator; drill, brace and bit: Use the punch to make another hole in your belt.

--v. 2 pierce, stab, puncture, perforate; bore, drill: She uses a needle to punch a tiny hole in each end of the egg.

punctual adj. on time, timely, prompt, Colloq on the dot: Please be punctual, as I don't fancy waiting about in the street.

punctuate v. 1 interrupt, break, intersperse; pepper, sprinkle: The speeches were punctuated by frequent shouts from the audience. 2 accent, accentuate, underline, underscore, emphasize, stress, mark: He punctuated each element of his argument with a sharp rap of his pencil on the lectern.

puncture n. 1 hole, perforation, opening, leak; flat (tyre): I haven't the tools needed to patch the puncture in the tyre. 2

perforation, perforating, holing, puncturing, piercing, stabbing, punching: The puncture of the balloon means that we shall have to postpone our trip.

--v. 3 perforate, hole, pierce, stab, penetrate, go through, prick, nick, rupture: An arrow punctured the side of the tent. 4 deflate, disillusion, bring up short, discourage, humble, dash, destroy, ruin: Any hopes I had of winning the marathon were punctured when I tripped and fell, spraining my ankle.

pungent adj. 1 spicy, hot, sharp, strong, penetrating, aromatic, seasoned, peppery, piquant, tangy, flavourful, tasty, sapid: The pungent odours of devilled kidneys dominated the dining-room. 2 sharp, biting, stinging, caustic, severe, astringent, stern, acrid, harsh, sour, acid, tart, acrimonious, bitter, cutting, keen, barbed, trenchant, scathing, incisive, mordant, sarcastic: This week's Review carries a pungent criticism of his new novel. 3 distressing, upsetting, poignant, painful, hurtful, penetrating, piercing, stabbing, intense, severe, acute, agonizing, oppressive, excruciating, racking, consuming: Only when surgery eased the pressure was he relieved of the pungent pain.

punish v. 1 penalize, chastise, castigate, discipline, chasten, scold, rebuke, take to task, reprove, dress down, admonish, correct, teach someone a lesson, give a lesson to, throw the book at, rap (someone's) knuckles, slap (someone's) wrist, have or US call on the carpet, Colloq take it out on (someone): A child's first taste of injustice is being punished for something she did not do. 2 imprison, jail or Brit also gaol, incarcerate, lock up; fine, mulct, amerce; lash, flog, beat, scourge, spank, whip, cane, birch, put across or US also turn over (one's) knee, US paddle; pillory, crucify; tar and feather, exile, banish, excommunicate, cashier, drum out of the corps; hang, execute, electrocute, draw and quarter, send to the gas chamber, Colloq put away, Slang Brit send down, US send up: They were punished for their crimes. 3 hurt, harm, injure, damage, abuse, maltreat, rough up, knock about or around, maul, thrash, beat, trounce, manhandle, batter, Slang beat up: The challenger punished the champion so badly that he could not come out for the tenth round.

punishing adj. gruelling, hard, arduous, strenuous, laborious, exhausting, tiring, wearying, fatiguing, wearing, taxing, demanding, burdensome, back-breaking, torturous: Laying railway track was the most punishing job I ever had. This punishing schedule is beginning to tell on me.

punishment

n. 1 chastisement, chastising, castigation, castigating, discipline, disciplining, chastening, scolding, rebuke, reproof, dressing-down, admonishment, admonition, correction, punitive measures: Every society must continually revise its approach to the punishment of criminals. 2 penance, penalty, sentence, sentencing, just deserts; imprisonment, incarceration, jailing or Brit also gaoling; lashing, flogging, beating, whipping, scourging, spanking, caning, birching, US paddling; exile, banishment, excommunication, cashiering; hanging, execution, electrocution, drawing and quartering: Her punishment is to perform 20 hours a week of public service for a year. Stop whimpering and take your punishment like a man. 3 injury, harm, damage, abuse, maltreatment, mauling, beating, thrashing, trouncing, manhandling, battering, torture: How are professional wrestlers able to withstand so much punishment?

punitive adj. chastening, castigatory, disciplinary, retributive, punitory, retaliatory, correctional: A punitive expedition was sent there to quell the colonists' uprising.

punk   n. 1 ruffian, hoodlum, hooligan, delinquent, tough, thug, vandal, yahoo, barbarian, Colloq goon, mug: A couple of young punks were standing at the bar, trying to look important.

--adj. 2 inferior, rotten, unimportant, worthless, bad, poor, awful, Colloq lousy: I thought that the lead in the play was a punk actor.

punt   v. 1 bet, wager, stake, gamble, speculate, lay a bet or stake or wager: Herbert spends all the grocery money punting at the races.

--n. 2 bet, wager, stake, gamble: In roulette, Janet always placed her punt on number 14.

punter   n. 1 Brit better or US also bettor, gambler, gamester, player, speculator, backer, wagerer, Brit punt, Colloq crap-shooter:

The punters are putting all their money on United to win the cup. 2 fellow, chap, person, individual, man or woman in the street; customer, client, buyer, Colloq guy, Brit bloke, geezer: The average punter likes a beer now and then.

puny adj. 1 small, little, insignificant, petty, unimportant, inconsequential, paltry, trivial, trifling, minor, negligible, nugatory, of little or no account, inferior, worthless, useless, Colloq piddling, Slang Brit not much cop: Farr's contribution to the success of the business was really quite puny. 2 small, little, diminutive, tiny, minute: Mattson looks so puny alongside that sumo wrestler. 3 weak, feeble, frail, sickly, weakly, underfed, undernourished, undersized, underdeveloped, stunted, dwarf, midget, pygmy: You cannot expect such a puny chap to lift such a great weight.

pup n. puppy, whelp, upstart, whippersnapper, popinjay, cub, jackanapes, show-off, braggart: That young pup had the gall to tell me I was too old to be running the company.

pupil n. student, learner, scholar, schoolchild, schoolgirl, schoolboy, disciple, apprentice; beginner, novice, neophyte, tiro or tyro, Chiefly ecclesiastical catechumen: A number of Geoffrey's former pupils have organized a dinner to honour him.

puppet n. 1 hand puppet, finger-puppet, glove puppet, doll; marionette, string puppet: The children built a little theatre and put on a puppet show. 2 figurehead, cat's-paw, pawn, dupe, tool, hireling, yes-man Colloq front (man), Slang stooge, sucker, patsy: He is without authority and is merely a puppet of the drug dealers. The army of occupation set up a puppet government to rule the country.

purchase v. 1 buy, acquire, procure, obtain, get, secure, pay for: He recently purchased a new personal computer and cannot get it to work. Not long ago, a shilling purchased a loaf of bread. 2 win, gain, achieve, realize, attain, obtain: His liberty was purchased by the betrayal of his colleagues.

--n. 3 acquisition, acquiring, buying, purchasing, obtaining, securing, procurement: The purchase of books for the university library is the responsibility of Monica Turnbull. 4 buy, acquisition: Tom returned from the shop carrying his purchases.

5 grip, hold, support, toe-hold, foothold, grasp; leverage, position, advantage, edge: The climber was having trouble getting a good purchase on the icy ledge.

pure adj. 1 unmixed, unadulterated, unalloyed, simon-pure; 24-carat or US also 24-karat, sterling, solid; real, genuine, authentic, flawless, faultless, perfect, natural, true, simple: We have made every effort to keep the blood-line of these horses completely pure. Pure gold is not used for coins or jewellery because it is too soft. She wore a dress of the purest white. 2 uncontaminated, clear, clean, wholesome, sanitary, uninfected, disinfected, pasteurized, sterilized, sterile, antiseptic, unpolluted, spotless, immaculate, unsullied, unbesmirched, unblemished, unmarred, unstained, untainted: It was refreshing to breathe pure air again. Stringent tests ensure that the substances are pure before they go on the market. 3 chaste, virginal, virgin, intact, maidenly, vestal, undefiled, innocent, guileless, virtuous, modest, moral, correct, proper, decent, decorous, uncorrupted, blameless, sinless, impeccable: As far as we can tell, she led a totally pure life. 4 theoretical, hypothetical, conjectural, speculative, abstract, conceptual, notional, philosophical, academic(al): His field is pure science, and he cares little how the results of his work might be applied to everyday life. 5 unalloyed, simple, unmitigated, sheer, utter, absolute, unqualified, complete, total, perfect, thorough, outright, downright, out-and-out, mere: Many regarded the notion that man could ever fly as pure nonsense. Any resemblance to a living person is pure coincidence. 6 honourable, (highly) principled, righteous, upright, honest, straightforward, high-minded, pious, worthy, good, ethical, virtuous, sincere, above suspicion, above reproach, like Caesar's wife: Can anyone doubt that their motives in striving for international peace are pure?

pure-bred adj. full-blooded, thoroughbred, pedigreed: We raise only pure-bred Angus cattle.

purgative n. 1 laxative, cathartic, aperient, purge, physic, depurative: The doctor prescribed a mild purgative, and she felt much better next day.

--adj. 2 laxative, cathartic, aperient, evacuant, diuretic, depurative; abstergent: We were totally unprepared for the purgative effects of the spicy food.

purge v. 1 cleanse, purify, clean (out), clear, scour (out), depurate, deterge, wash (out): The tanks must be purged before filling them with the new fuel. 2 eject, eradicate, expel, eliminate, get rid of, dismiss, clear out or away, sweep away or out, oust, remove, rout out, weed out, root out; do away with, exterminate, liquidate, kill, destroy: After the coup, the old guard was purged from all the governmental agencies. The rebels purged the entire council of elders. 3 clear, exonerate, absolve, forgive, purify, pardon, exculpate: He was given every opportunity to purge himself of the charge of contempt of court.

--n. 4 ejection, eradication, expulsion, elimination, dismissal, clearing out or away, ousting, ouster, removal, routing out, weeding out, rooting out, unseating; defenestration; extermination, liquidation, killing, murder, slaughter: The bloody purge of dissidents was carried out by the secret police. 5 See purgative, 1, above.

purify v. 1 cleanse, clean, clarify, wash, sanitize, depurate, decontaminate, freshen, disinfect; fumigate: The water is then purified by passing it through sand. 2 exonerate, exculpate, absolve, clear, redeem, shrive, lustrate, acquit, pardon, forgive, excuse: Before the aspirants can be admitted to the church they must be purified.

purist n. pedant, precisian, formalist, stickler, blue-stocking, dogmatist, Pharisee, fanatic, Colloq die-hard, stuffed shirt: Language purists are often unaware of their own grammatical and semantic blunders.

puritan n. 1 moralist, pietist, religionist, fanatic, zealot, purist: It seems to me that all religions have their puritans.

--adj. 2 prudish, puritanical, prim, proper, strait-laced, ascetic, austere, moralistic, pietistic, intolerant, disapproving, bigoted, narrow-minded, stuffy, stiff-necked, rigid, uncompromising, hard-line, stern, severe, strict, Colloq uptight, hard-nosed: Puritan notions about women's clothing have often put propriety before practicality.

purity n. 1 pureness, faultlessness, correctness, flawlessness, perfection, spotlessness, cleanness, cleanliness, clarity; healthfulness, wholesomeness, salubrity; innocuousness, harmlessness: The purity of the drinking-water has been affected by the nearby chemical plant. 2 chastity, chasteness, virginity, virtuousness, virtue, morality, propriety, honesty, integrity, rectitude, properness, innocence, guilelessness, decency, decorousness, modesty, blamelessness, sinlessness: We never had any reason to doubt the purity of their character.

purpose   n. 1 object, intention, intent, end, goal, ambition, objective, target, aim, principle, point, rationale, reason; scheme, plan, design, motive, motivation, view: What purpose was served by her confession? If your purpose in inviting me was to insult me, I shall leave now. I fail to understand Laura's purpose in warning me against David. 2 resolution, firmness, determination, persistence, drive, single-mindedness, deliberation, deliberateness, purposefulness, steadfastness, tenacity, doggedness, will, resolve, resoluteness, perseverance, stubbornness: She admired the strong purpose behind his refusal to compromise with quality. 3 use, practicality, avail, effect, utility, usefulness, outcome, result; advantage, profit, gain, good, benefit: To what purpose are you planning to put this knowledge? I cannot see the purpose in pursuing this line of questioning. 4 on purpose. a purposely, intentionally, deliberately, wilfully, by design, consciously, knowingly, designedly, wittingly: That was no accident: you kicked me on purpose! b especially, specially, expressly, exactly, precisely, specifically, in particular: He kicked me on purpose, Mum, just to make me cry!

--v. 5 plan, intend, design, resolve, mean, aim, have in mind or view, have a mind, propose, consider, contemplate, aspire, long, yearn: They purpose to open an office of their own.

purposeful

adj. intentional, intended, planned, deliberate, resolved, settled, determined, resolute, decided, confirmed, affirmed, sure, certain, positive, definite, staunch, steadfast, persistent, strong-willed, dogged, tenacious, pertinacious, unfailing, unfaltering, firm, fixed: Her purposeful manner inclines other people to defer to her.

purposeless

adj. pointless, bootless, meaningless, empty, vacuous, senseless, aimless, rambling, discursive, wandering, disorganized, unorganized: He made what we thought was a purposeless trip to the branch office, but it ultimately proved invaluable.

purse n. 1 pouch, (money-)bag, wallet, pocket, Dialect poke, Highland dress sporran, US and Canadian (woman's) handbag, pocketbook, bag: The money goes out so fast I think there is a hole in my purse. 2 money, wealth, resources, funds, finances, exchequer, treasury, capital, revenue, income, means, cash, riches; pounds, shillings, and pence, L.S.D., dollars, shekels, Derogatory Mammon, pelf, (filthy) lucre, US almighty dollar, Slang Brit ready or readies, lolly, dosh, loot, dough, US and Canadian bucks, scratch: The spread of capitalism shows that the power of a man's purse can transcend his political idealism. 3 prize, reward, award, present, gift: The purse for the next race will be 5,000 guineas.

--v. 4 pucker (up), contract, wrinkle, compress, press together: Robert pursed his lips thoughtfully.

pursue v. 1 follow, chase, go or run after, hunt (after or down or for or up), trace, trail, track, run down, take off after, dog, stalk, shadow, Brit chivvy or chivy or chevy, Colloq tail: The police pursued the escaped convicts across the moor. 2 follow (up or on with), trace, carry on with, continue, conduct, devote or dedicate oneself to, cultivate, undertake, practise, persist or persevere in, maintain, exercise, proceed with, adhere to, stay with, apply oneself to, Colloq stick with: If you pursue such a course, you are certain to land in jail. 3 aspire to, aim for, work for or toward(s), try or strive for, purpose, seek, search for, go in search of, quest after or for, be intent on, be bent upon or on: Jonathan is pursuing a doctorate in history at Oxford. 4 woo, (pay) court (to), seek the hand of, set (one's) cap for, Formal press (one's) suit with, pay suit or court or (one's) addresses to, Colloq set one's cap for, Slang chase (after): Jack is pursuing Jacquelyn with matrimony in mind.

pursuit n. 1 pursuing, chasing, following, hunting, hunt, going or running after, tracing, trailing, tracking, running down, dogging, stalking, shadowing, Brit chivvy or chivy or chevy,

Colloq tailing: We all joined in the pursuit of the animal. The police set off in hot pursuit of the thieves. 2 pursuance, striving after, seeking, searching, search, looking for: Many think that the pursuit of wealth is the only worthwhile thing in life. 3 work, line (of work), employment, field, area, speciality or US and Canadian only specialty, specialization, business, profession, trade, vocation, calling, career, life-work, activity; hobby, pastime, avocation, interest; Slang racket: What pursuits are open to Jack Ketch now that hanging has been abolished?

push   v. 1 thrust, shove, drive, move, set in motion, get moving, propel; press: Push the boat away from the pier. He pushed the door shut. 2 press, depress: Push the button if you want anything. 3 shove, thrust, elbow, shoulder, force, jostle, nudge: We pushed our way through the crowd. 4 urge, encourage, press, induce, ask, persuade, get, egg on, press, prod, spur, goad, rouse, prompt, incite, move, motivate, stimulate, influence, impel, make, compel, force, dragoon, coerce, constrain; badger, hound, pester, harass, plague, nag, browbeat; beg, importune, entreat: His family is pushing him to find work. I'll soon have the work done, but stop pushing me. 5 force, strain, overstrain, tax, overtax, burden, overburden: You might have got away with it this time, but don't push your luck. 6 promote, publicize, advertise, boost, propagandize, puff, Colloq plug, Slang ballyhoo, hype: Because we have too much stock, we are pushing suntan oil this week. 7 push about or around. intimidate, bully, cow, domineer, tyrannize, bullyrag, torment, force, coerce: Don't push people about if you want them to do what you want. 8 push away. reject, deny, brush off or aside, give (someone) the cold shoulder, rebuff, distance oneself from: She pushes everyone away and then wonders why she has no friends. 9 push off. a shove off, sail away or off: We stepped into the dinghy and pushed off. b leave, depart, go away, Colloq light out, take off, hit the road, skedaddle, scram, make oneself scarce, Slang beat it: I have to push off now if I'm to make that train. 10 push on or forward or along. move onwards or onward or ahead or forward, continue, proceed, advance, press on or onwards or onward: If we stay the night here, we shall have to push on first thing in the morning. 11 push through. force, press, Colloq railroad: The bill was pushed through committee without delay. 12 push (up) daisies. be dead (and buried), be six feet under: Her husband's pushing up daisies.

--n. 13 shove, thrust, nudge: My car needs a push to get it started. 14 effort, energy, dynamism, drive, force, enterprise, ambition, vigour, determination, initiative, eagerness, spirit, enthusiasm, zeal, verve, Colloq get-up-and-go, zing, zip, gumption, go: If he had a bit more push, he might succeed. 15 campaign, attack, assault, advance, offensive, charge, onslaught, foray, sortie, invasion, incursion, raid, sally, blitzkrieg, blitz, strike: The troops were massed along the coast, ready for the big push inland. 16 the push. dismissal, notice, Colloq marching orders, Chiefly Brit the sack, the boot, Chiefly US and Canadian walking papers, a pink slip: He'd been with the company for twenty years, but they still gave him the push when sales fell.

pushover n. 1 sure thing, Colloq piece of cake, child's play, snap, cinch, picnic, walk-over, US breeze, Slang cinch, Brit doddle, US lead-pipe cinch: The Latin exam was a pushover. 2 Colloq walk-over, chump, soft touch, soft or easy mark, easy prey or game, Slang patsy, sucker, stooge, sap, Brit mug, US and Canadian milquetoast: I spotted him at once as a pushover for the find-the-lady con.

pushy adj. forward, (self-)assertive, forceful, aggressive, obnoxious, arrogant, bumptious, brassy, brazen, impertinent, insolent, pushing, presumptuous, officious, loud, showy, cocky, brash, offensive, bold, Colloq cheeky: I hate pushy salesmen who won't take 'No' for an answer.

pussyfoot v. 1 sneak, creep, slink, prowl, steal, tiptoe: I wish she'd stop pussyfooting about the house. 2 beat about the bush, hem or hum and haw, equivocate, hesitate, be evasive, evade the issue, prevaricate, tergiversate, be noncommittal, be or sit on the fence, blow hot and cold: Don't pussyfoot with me - just come out and say what you really think.

put v. 1 place, position, situate, set, lay, station, stand, deposit, rest, settle; locate: Please put all books where they belong. 2 assign, commit, cause, set, consign, subject: I joined the army to fight for my country, and they put me to work peeling potatoes. 3 subject, cause to experience or undergo or suffer, consign, send: He was put to death for his beliefs, not his actions. 4 express, word, phrase; say, utter, write: How did they put it? - 'We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal...' To put it to you straight, shape up or ship out! Can you put that into French? 5 offer, advance, bring forward, present, propose, submit, tender, set before: I put it to you that you have been lying to the court and that you did leave your house that night. 6 bet, gamble, wager, stake, play, chance, risk, hazard: I put two pounds on the horse to win. 7 throw, heave, toss, fling, cast, pitch, bowl, lob, send, shy, shoot, snap, catapult: How far did you say you can put a 10-pound shot? 8 place, assign, attribute, lay, pin, attach, fix: They try to put the blame on me for everything that goes wrong around here. 9 put about. broadcast, publish, make known, publicize, announce, spread about or around: They have been putting about some story linking the two of us romantically. 10 put across or over. make clear, get across, make (something or oneself) understood or understandable, explain, spell out, convey, communicate: She is quite adept at putting across her ideas. 11 put aside. set or lay aside, ignore, disregard, pay no heed to, push aside, shrug off: They put aside their differences and discovered they had much in common. Isn't it time you put aside childish things? 12 put aside or by or away. lay aside or by, set aside; save, store, stow or store or salt or squirrel away, lay away, cache, bank: You ought to put a little money aside for a rainy day. 13 put away. a See 12, above. b jail or Brit also gaol, imprison, incarcerate, Colloq send, jug, confine, commit, institutionalize, remand, Brit send down, US send up: She wants rapists and child molesters put away for a long, long time. c See 16 (d), below. d consume, gorge, gormandize or US also gourmandize: It is unbelievable how much that man can put away at one sitting. 14 put back. return, replace, restore: He insists that he put back all the money he took. Put the pictures back where they belong. 15 put by. See 12, above. 16 put down. a record, register, write down, set down, enter, list; log, note (down), jot down, make a note or notation of: You may put me down for a contribution of œ5. Please put down your name and address in the box provided. b depose, put an end to, topple, crush, overthrow, subdue, suppress, check, quash, quell: The loyalists put down the rebellion in short order. c ascribe, assign, attribute: The doctor put my feelings of fatigue and listlessness down to anaemia. d kill, exterminate, destroy, put to death, put to sleep, put away, do away with: We had to have our cat put down, which was very upsetting for us all. e abash, humiliate, crush, silence, mortify, lower, take down (a peg or a notch), shame, snub, deflate, slight, reject, dismiss: Waiters have a way of putting people down if they behave presumptuously. f take for, reckon, account, count, categorize, regard: Don't put Martin down as a dunce just because he acts the fool now and then. g belittle, diminish, disparage, deprecate, depreciate, criticize, disdain, look down on, despise, contemn: They deny being prejudiced, but they put down everyone who isn't exactly like them. 17 put forth. a propose, offer, set forth, advance: Several theories have been put forth on the function of mitochondrial DNA. b grow, produce, send out or forth, bud, flower: When the plant puts forth suckers, they must be pinched back. c begin, set out, set forth, start: We put forth on our voyage with great enthusiasm. d promulgate, issue, publish, make known, make public: The committee have not put forth any suggestions for improving traffic flow. 18 put forward. a propose, present, tender, nominate, name; recommend: Your name has been put forward as chair for next year's committee. b suggest, offer, propose, set forth, put forth, present, submit, tender, proffer, introduce, advance, propound, air, make known, announce: No new solutions to the problem were put forward. 19 put in. a insert, introduce: Why did you put in a reference to your mother? b spend, devote: During the holiday season I plan to put in a lot of time to reading. c make: So, you finally decided to put in an appearance. 20 put in for. a apply for, request, ask for, petition for: He has put in for a transfer twice and has been refused both times. b seek, apply for, pursue, file: Do you really think that Jamieson will put in for re-election? 21 put off. a postpone, delay, defer, put back, stay, hold off, shelve, put or set aside, Chiefly US put over, table: Consideration of your request has been put off till tomorrow. b dismiss, get rid of, send away, turn away; discourage, Colloq give (someone) the brush-off, US brush off: The manager put me off when I went in to ask about a salary increase. c dismay, disconcert, upset, confuse, disturb, perturb, abash, distress, Colloq throw, rattle: Curiously, Michael didn't seem a bit put off to learn about the murder. d repel, disgust, sicken, revolt, nauseate: That television programme on open-heart surgery really put me off. e leave, depart, go (off), set off: We put off tomorrow morning for Rockall. 22 put on. a don, clothe or attire or dress (oneself) in, get dressed in, change or slip into: We put on our best clothes to come to your party. b assume, take on, pretend, affect, feign, bluff, make a show of: She puts on an air of indifference, but she really does care. c add, gain: Bill put on quite a bit of weight when he stopped smoking. d stage, mount, produce, present, perform: Our local repertory group is putting on Hedda Gabler this weekend. e tease, mock, Colloq kid, pull (someone's) leg, rib, rag, Brit have on: When he told you that all holidays had been cancelled he was only putting you on. 23 put out. a inconvenience, discommode, disturb, embarrass, trouble, bother, impose upon or on, Colloq put on the spot: Her arriving an hour early didn't put me out one bit. b annoy, vex, irritate, anger, exasperate, irk, perturb, provoke, Slang bug: Donald was very much put out to discover that the appointment had gone to someone else. c snuff out, extinguish, blow out, douse, quench, smother: We put out the fire on the stove before it could spread. d exert, put forth, expend, use, exercise: We put out considerable effort moving the furniture before she decided she liked it the way it had been. e publish, issue, broadcast, make public, circulate, spread, make known, release: The information office put out the news that the summit meeting had been a great success. 24 put out of (one's) misery. release, relieve, free, deliver, rescue, save, spare: Just tell him what they said and put him out of his misery. 25 put over. a put or get across, convey, communicate, set or put forth, relate: I am trying to put the point over to you that I cannot leave now. b See 21 (a), above. 26 put (one or something) over on (someone). fool (someone), pull (someone's) leg, deceive (someone), mislead (someone), pull the wool over (someone's) eyes, trick (someone), hoodwink (someone): She really put one over on me when she said she loved me. I think that Manfred is trying to put something over on you. 27 put through. a carry out or through, execute, (put into) effect, bring off, accomplish, complete, finish, conclude, Colloq pull off: If they succeed in putting through their plan, the company will be bankrupt. b process, handle, organize, see to, follow up on: I will personally see that your application is put through the proper channels. c connect, hook up: I asked the operator to put me through to the chairman himself. 28 put up. a erect, build, construct, raise, set up, put together, fabricate: They demolished a row of Georgian houses and put up some ugly County offices in their place. b accommodate, lodge, board, house, take in, quarter, Chiefly military billet: As our house is small, we were able to put up only three people. c preserve, can; cure, pickle: There are many foods that can be put up for later consumption. d contribute, pledge, offer (as collateral), stake, mortgage, post: We put up the house as security for the loan. e contribute, give, supply, donate, ante (up), advance, pay, invest: We put up all our savings to secure our retirement pension. f increase, raise, boost, elevate: As soon as there is a hint of an oil shortage, they put up the price of petrol. g See 18 (a), above. h offer, tender, put or place on the market: They put their house up for sale and are planning to move to the Riviera. 29 put up to. incite, urge, goad, spur, egg on, encourage, prompt, instigate: Was it you who put Reggie up to playing that prank on the teacher? 30 put up with. tolerate, abide, take, brook, stand (for), stomach, accept, resign oneself to, bear, endure, swallow: Why do you put up with his outrageous behaviour?

put-down n. dig, sneer, snub, disparaging or denigrating remark, slight, offence, insult: The worst put-down was to tell her she looks like her sister, whom she hates.

put-on n. 1 deception, hoax, trick, leg-pull, jest, (practical) joke, prank, pretence, Colloq spoof: He was completely taken in by my put-on about being from the Nobel prize committee. 2 take-off, parody, satire, burlesque, caricature, act, Brit send-up, Colloq spoof: You shouldn't be offended, it was only a put-on.

putrefy v. rot, decompose, decay, moulder, go bad, spoil, deteriorate, go off: The battlefield was strewn with putrefying bodies.

putrid adj. rotten, rotting, decomposed, decomposing, decayed, decaying, mouldy, mouldering, spoilt or spoiled, putrefied, putrescent, putrefying, foul, fetid, rank, tainted, corrupt: Only the vultures continued to hover about the putrid carcass.

put-up adj. (secretly) preconceived, prearranged, plotted, preconcerted: If the butler had a hand in it, you know it was a put-up job.

put-upon adj. imposed upon, inconvenienced, put out, taken advantage of, exploited, abused: I shall be happy to help, and I don't feel put-upon at all.

puzzle v. 1 baffle, bewilder, confuse, confound, mystify, flummox, perplex, nonplus, stymie, stump: I am completely puzzled by what you wrote in your last letter. 2 Usually, puzzle over. study, ponder (over), mull over, contemplate, meditate on or upon or over, consider, muse over or on, reflect on or over, think about or over or on: If you puzzle over it long enough, the problem may vanish of its own accord. 3 puzzle out. solve, decipher, crack (the code), unravel, work out, figure out, think through, sort out, unlock: I finally puzzled out the inscription on this old coin. It might take a while, but I can puzzle out the solution to this crossword.

--n. 4 enigma, problem, question, paradox, poser, mystery, riddle, conundrum, Colloq brain-teaser: The puzzle is how the murder was committed when the door was locked from the inside.

puzzling adj. mystifying, enigmatic(al), bewildering, baffling, confounding, perplexing, confusing, ambiguous, contradictory, abstruse: It is a bit puzzling to see Catherine so often in the company of the husband she recently divorced.

17.0 Q

=-

17.1 quack...

=-

quack n. 1 charlatan, impostor, pretender, fake(r), fraud, Colloq phoney or US also phony: The quack diagnosed Franny as having appendicitis, but it turned out that she was pregnant.

--adj. 2 fake, fraudulent, sham, counterfeit, Colloq phoney or US also phony: Are you still going to see that quack doctor - the one who told you to take aspirin to relieve the pain from your ulcer?

quaint adj. 1 curious, odd, strange, bizarre, peculiar, unusual, queer, uncommon, singular, unorthodox, eccentric, whimsical, offbeat, fanciful, outlandish, unconventional, fantastic: Her sitting-room was furnished in a quaint mixture of Gothic and Victorian styles. 2 old-fashioned, archaic, antiquated, out-dated, picturesque, antique: A rotund little figure appeared, dressed in the quaint clothing of another era.

quake v. 1 tremble, shake, quiver, shudder; vibrate, stagger: The children were quaking with fear that their teacher would come back and catch them red-handed. 2 earthquake, tremor, temblor or trembler or tremblor, seismic(al) activity, Rare seism: In a few moments the quake levelled three cities that had stood for thousands of years.

qualification
n. 1 Often, qualifications. fitness, ability, aptitude, capability, competence or competency, capacity, suitableness, suitability, eligibility, proficiency, skill, knowledge, Colloq know-how: You cannot persuade me that Powell has the qualifications needed to do the job. 2 limitation, restriction, modification, reservation, caveat, condition, stipulation, proviso, prerequisite, requirement: The only qualification for use of the club's facilities is that one must be a member. My support for the proposal is without qualification.

qualified adj. 1 able, suitable, capable, competent, fit, fitted, equipped, prepared, ready, trained, proficient, accomplished, expert, talented, adept, skilful, skilled, experienced, practised, knowledgeable, well-informed: Is Kimble qualified to become foreman? 2 contingent, conditional, restricted, modified, limited, provisional: The chairman has given his qualified approval to the scheme.

qualify v. 1 equip, fit (out), ready, prepare, condition, make eligible; certify: His training in the air force qualified him to be a pilot. 2 be eligible, meet the requirements, be fit or suitable or equipped or ready or prepared, make the grade: Sue will qualify as a doctor if she passes just one more exam. 3 temper, mitigate, modify, moderate, modulate, restrict, limit: In light of their later behaviour, I shall have to qualify my recommendation that you accept them as students.

quality n. 1 property, attribute, characteristic, mark, distinction, je ne sais quoi, trait: Can you describe the qualities needed to be a good musician? 2 grade, calibre, rank, status, importance, value, worth: In the curiosity shop items of high and low quality are mixed together haphazardly. 3 Old-fashioned eminence, prominence, importance, excellence, superiority, distinction, standing, supremacy, dignity, grandeur, nobility, blue blood: Despite her shabby appearance, from her bearing and speech the woman was clearly a person of quality.

qualm   n. second thought, doubt, uncertainty, misgiving, hesitation, scruple, uneasiness, compunction, reluctance, disinclination, queasiness, apprehension, apprehensiveness, twinge, pang, worry, concern, Colloq funny feeling, sinking feeling: He had some qualms about leaving the town where he had lived for over thirty years.

quandary n. dilemma, predicament, difficulty, plight, cleft stick, uncertainty: The management is in a quandary: should it risk overstretching the company by making further capital investment, or should it risk being left behind by its competitors by playing safe?

quantity n. amount, extent, volume; sum, number, total; weight, measure: There seemed to be no limit to the quantity of gold in the mine. The person who most accurately guesses the quantity of beans in the jar wins a prize. What quantity of flour should I buy to make enough cakes for fifty people?

quarrel   n. 1 dispute, argument, disagreement, debate, controversy, discord, difference (of opinion), contention, misunderstanding; wrangle, tiff, row, squabble, altercation, set-to, scuffle, feud, fight, fray, fracas, brawl, Donnybrook, mˆl,e or melee, riot, battle (royal), Colloq dust-up, barney, scrap, US spat: I have no quarrel with my accountant - it's the tax man that's the problem. A quarrel broke out over whose turn it was to wash the dishes.

--v. 2 argue, disagree, dispute, altercate, have an altercation, differ, wrangle, be at odds or loggerheads, clash, squabble, feud, fight, brawl, battle, Colloq fall out, scrap: When we were children, my sister and I quarrelled all the time, but we still loved each other.

quarrelsome

adj. testy, petulant, irascible, irritable, disagreeable, fractious, querulous, peevish, cross, choleric, curmudgeonly, contrary, dyspeptic, cranky, grouchy, argumentative, combative, squabbling, disputatious, hostile, antagonistic, dissentious, dissentient, dissident, pugnacious, bellicose, belligerent, contentious: I have to listen to the continual bickering of my quarrelsome neighbours.

quarry° n. prey, game, prize, object: The hunter's dogs had run their quarry to ground. Wealthy widows were regarded as fair quarry by the swindlers.

quarryý n. 1 mine, pit, excavation: Only one quarry yielded the statuary marble needed by those sculptors.

--v. 2 mine, extract, obtain, get: Gault's ideas were all quarried from the jottings of obscure writers.

quarter n. 1 fourth: Statistics showed that a quarter of the population attended church regularly. 2 three-month period, three months, ninety days, thirteen weeks; fifteen minutes; phase (of the moon), quadrature: The first quarter's rent is now due. We waited a quarter of an hour. The moon is in its third quarter. 3 area, region, part, section, district, zone, division, territory, place, neighbourhood, locality, locale, location, point, spot; direction: The army was called in to patrol the quarter of the city where looting had occurred. It was difficult to tell from which quarter the wind was blowing. 4 mercy, compassion, mercifulness, clemency, leniency, forgiveness, favour, humanity, pity: The hostages expected no quarter from their captors. 5 quarters. living quarters, lodging(s), dwelling-place, dwelling, accommodation(s), rooms, chambers, residence, shelter, habitation, domicile, home, house, abode; Military billet, barracks, cantonment, casern or caserne: We found comfortable quarters in which we remained during our stay in the area.

--v. 6 lodge, accommodate, house, board, shelter, put up; Military billet, post, station: The tour guide stayed at the best hotel, while we were quartered in a youth hostel.

quarterly adj. 1 trimonthly, three-monthly: She is editor of a quarterly medical journal.

--adv. 2 every three months, every ninety days, every thirteen weeks, four times a year: The landlady insisted on being paid quarterly, in advance.

quash v. 1 annul, nullify, void, declare or render null and void, invalidate, revoke, vacate, set aside, rescind, cancel, reject, throw out, reverse, overthrow, discharge, overrule: When the real culprit confessed, my conviction was quashed and I was set free. 2 suppress, subdue, quell, put down, squelch, repress, overthrow, crush, overwhelm: The rebellion was quashed by the secret police.

quasi- adv. 1 Sometimes, quasi. as if, as it were, seemingly, apparently, partly, to some extent, to all intents and purposes, more or less, virtually, almost: Her apology seemed only quasi-sincere to me. His function in the proceedings was quasi-judicial.

--adj. 2 Often, quasi. so to speak, kind of, sort of; pretended, fake, pseudo, so-called, supposed, artificial, mock, sham, Colloq phoney or US also phony: His quasi excuse does not diminish the horror of what he did.

quaver v. 1 tremble, quiver, shake, shiver, vibrate, waver, shudder, fluctuate, oscillate, flutter: His voice quavered with emotion as he described his rescue.

--n. 2 trembling, tremble, quiver, quivering, tremor, shaking, vibration, wavering, break, fluctuation, oscillation: Only a slight quaver in her voice betrayed her feeling of panic.

queasy adj. 1 uncomfortable, uneasy, nervous, apprehensive, ill at ease, troubled, worried, discomfited; doubtful, hesitant: I had a queasy feeling that I was being watched. The manager was a bit queasy about giving Denis so much responsibility. 2 sick, nauseous, nauseated, ill, bilious, queer, Colloq green around or about the gills, groggy, woozy: Catherine felt very queasy after the ride on the roller coaster.

queen n. 1 sovereign, monarch, ruler; empress; queen consort; queen mother; queen dowager: She was absolutely thrilled when she was invited to a garden party at Buckingham Palace and met the Queen. 2 beauty queen, movie queen, star, prima donna, diva; epitome, model, idol, leading light, cynosure, leader: At the height of her career, she was known as 'the Queen of the Silver

Screen'. 'Queen of the Antilles' was once a nickname of Cuba.

queer adj. 1 odd, strange, different, peculiar, funny, curious, uncommon, unconventional, unorthodox, atypical, singular, exceptional, anomalous, extraordinary, unusual, weird, bizarre, uncanny, unnatural, freakish, remarkable, offbeat, irregular, unparalleled, incongruous, outlandish, outr,, exotic, eccentric, fey, quaint, absurd, ridiculous, ludicrous, unexampled: How do you explain Basil's queer behaviour at the office party? Her attire could only be described as queer, given her age and status. 2 questionable, dubious, suspicious, suspect, doubtful, puzzling, mysterious, Colloq fishy, shady: We had a feeling that something queer was going on when the clocks started running backwards. 3 (slightly) ill, queasy, sick, unwell, poorly, faint, uneasy, dizzy, giddy, vertiginous, light-headed: It's not surprising that you feel queer after drinking all that wine. 4 mad, unbalanced, unhinged, demented, deranged, insane, daft, touched, Colloq dotty, potty, nutty, nuts, loony, batty, cracked: Francis seems to have gone a bit queer - fancies himself a reincarnation of Cicero.

--v. 5 ruin, spoil, bungle, botch, muddle, muff, mar, wreck, destroy, Colloq make a hash or mess of, gum up (the works), Slang muck up, screw up, louse up, US ball up, Taboo slang Brit balls up: Grimstone queered the deal by telling the buyer the company was worth half what we were asking.

quell v. 1 suppress, put down, repress, subdue, quash, overcome, crush, squelch: The army arrived to quell the uprising at the prison. 2 moderate, mollify, soothe, assuage, alleviate, mitigate, allay, quiet, calm; pacify, tranquillize, compose: Any feelings of bitterness were quelled by her comforting words.

quench v. 1 satisfy, slake, sate, surfeit, satiate, allay, appease: My thirst isn't quenched by those sweet fizzy drinks. 2 put out, extinguish, douse, smother, snuff out, stifle, kill, destroy, suppress, squelch, repress, overcome, subdue: Even the most totalitarian regime cannot entirely quench the fire of freedom in the hearts of the oppressed.

querulous adj. complaining, carping, critical, criticizing, hypercritical, fault-finding, finicky, finical, fussy, over-particular, censorious, petulant, whining, murmuring, grumbling, peevish, testy, touchy, irritable, irritated, annoyed, piqued, in a pique, irascible, fractious, perverse, quarrelsome, ill-natured, ill-humoured, cantankerous, curmudgeonly, crusty, crotchety, fretful, bad-tempered, ill-tempered, waspish, crabby, cross, splenetic, choleric, sour, dyspeptic, grumpy, Colloq grousing, pernickety or US also persnickety, Slang bitching: He objected to almost all the television programmes and sent querulous letters to the broadcasters telling them so.

query n. 1 question, inquiry or enquiry: The information office will answer any query you may have about social security benefits. 2 doubt, uncertainty, scepticism, reservation, problem: She wants to see the manager about some query concerning her bank balance.

--v. 3 ask (about), inquire or enquire (about), question; challenge, doubt, dispute: I am writing to query the third item on your latest bill.

quest n. 1 search, pursuit, exploration, expedition, voyage (of discovery), pilgrimage, mission, crusade; chase, hunt: When a child, he was inspired by the legend of Sir Launcelot's quest for the Holy Grail.

--v. 2 Usually, quest after or for. seek (after or for), search after or for, hunt (for), track down, pursue, stalk: In 1928, joined by his father, he quested for gold along the Orinoco river.

question n. 1 query, inquiry or enquiry: I asked you a simple question, 'Where were you last night?', and I expect a civil answer. 2 problem, difficulty, confusion, doubt, dubiousness, uncertainty, query, mystery, puzzle: Is there some question about the qualifications of the new employee? 3 matter, issue, point, subject, topic, theme, proposition: Whether you stay is not the question. The question remains, How are you going to earn a living? 4 beyond (all or any) question. beyond (the shadow of) a doubt, without question, without a doubt, indubitably, undoubtedly, doubtlessly, definitely, certainly, assuredly: He is guilty beyond all question. 5 call in or into question. question, doubt, query, challenge, dispute, harbour or entertain or have doubts or suspicions about, suspect, cast doubt or suspicion on: I cannot see why he has called her loyalty into question. 6 in question. a under discussion or consideration: The person in question never worked for this company. b questionable, debatable, at issue, in doubt, doubtful, open to debate: Her honesty was never in question. 7 out of the question. unthinkable, impossible, absurd, ridiculous, preposterous, inconceivable, beyond consideration, insupportable: An increase in salary at this time is out of the question. 8 without question. See 4, above.

--v. 9 ask, examine, interrogate, query, interview, sound out, quiz, Colloq pump, grill, Slang give (someone) the third degree: He was questioned for six hours as to his whereabouts. 10 call in or into question, doubt, query, mistrust, distrust, cast doubt upon, dispute, suspect: Investigators have long questioned the relationship between the banks and the drug barons.

questionable
adj. doubtful, dubious, debatable, moot, disputable, borderline, suspect, suspicious, shady; open to question, in question, in dispute, problematic(al), uncertain, arguable, unsure, unreliable, ambiguous: The evidence shows that the defendant engaged in questionable banking practices while a director of Offshore Ltd. The advantages of quick divorce are questionable.

queue n. 1 line, row, file, column, string, train, cortege or cortŠge, retinue, procession, succession, chain, concatenation, series, order, cordon, Brit tailback, Colloq Brit crocodile, Military picket: There were dozens of people in the queue in front of me. 2 pigtail, braid, plait; tail, pony-tail: Not long ago, Chinese men wore their hair in a queue.

--v. 3 Often, queue up. line up, get in or into or form a line or queue or file, get into or in line, Military fall in: All he remembers about the war is that everyone had to queue up for everything and wait.

quibble v. 1 equivocate, split hairs, evade, be evasive, palter, chop logic, bandy words, cavil, pettifog, Colloq nit-pick: While people continued to be kept in slavery, the politicians quibbled over the difference between 'liberty' and 'freedom'.

--n. 2 quibbling, equivocation, hair-splitting, splitting hairs, evasion, paltering, sophistry, Colloq nit-picking: Lawyers often become involved in a quibble over the mot juste and forget their clients. 3 cavil, sophism, subtlety, nicety: It's a quibble whether you say 'either' and 'neither' to rhyme with 'peek' or 'pike'.

quick adj. 1 rapid, fast, speedy, swift, fleet; expeditious, express: We made a quick descent to reach the camp before dark. The hand is quicker than the eye. Can you arrange the quick delivery of this parcel to Aylesbury? 2 sudden, precipitate, hasty, brisk, short, abrupt, hurried, perfunctory, summary; immediate, prompt, timely, instantaneous: There is no quick answer to your question about the causes of World War II. Don't be so quick to criticize others. I had a quick response to my letter complaining about service. 3 agile, lively, nimble, energetic, vigorous, alert, animated, keen, sharp, acute, spry, spirited, vivacious, rapid, swift: In three quick steps she was at my side. Antonia is known for her quick mind. 4 intelligent, bright, brilliant, facile, adept, adroit, dexterous, apt, able, expert, skilful, deft, astute, clever, shrewd, smart, ingenious, perceptive, perspicacious, discerning, far-sighted, responsive; nimble-witted, quick-witted: You can rely on Rob's quick thinking to come up with a solution to the problem. 5 excitable, touchy, testy, petulant, irascible, irritable, impatient: She said that I have a quick temper because of my red hair.

quicken v. 1 accelerate, hasten, speed up: As we neared the house, our pace quickened. 2 expedite, hurry, accelerate, hasten, speed (up): We did everything we could to quicken her departure. 3 stimulate, arouse, kindle, spark, invigorate, excite, animate, vitalize, vivify, galvanize, enliven, awaken, energize, revive, resuscitate, reinvigorate: Olivia's inspiring lectures quickened the imagination of everyone who heard them.

quickly adv. 1 rapidly, swiftly, speedily, fast: Although share prices dropped in the morning, they recovered quickly during afternoon trading. 2 rapidly, swiftly, speedily, fast, with dispatch or despatch, apace, post-haste, at or on the double, with all speed, quick, Colloq US and Canadian lickety-split: Run quickly, and you'll get there before the shop closes. 3 instantly, promptly, hastily, at once, immediately, straight away, right away, shortly, without delay, (very) soon, hurriedly, quick, Colloq pronto: You'll have to leave quickly to catch your train.

quick-tempered

adj. excitable, impulsive, temperamental, hot-tempered, waspish, choleric, splenetic, impatient, short-tempered, touchy, irascible, irritable, snappish, abrupt, short, short-spoken, quarrelsome, testy, volatile, hot-blooded, bad-tempered, ill-tempered, churlish, highly-strung, US high-keyed: Len is very quick-tempered these days and flies into a rage at the slightest provocation.

quick-witted

adj. acute, sharp, clever, smart, nimble-witted, alert, keen, astute, perceptive, perspicacious: Hallam is known for his quick-witted responses to hecklers in the audience.

quiet adj. 1 silent, soundless, noiseless, hushed, still: We have to be very quiet so as not to wake the children. 2 still, serene, silent, peaceful, unperturbed, calm, tranquil, placid, pacific, smooth, mild, restful, unagitated: The sea was very quiet as we rowed towards the beach. 3 dormant, quiescent, inactive, retired, withdrawn, unobtrusive: His last days were spent living a quiet life in the Outer Hebrides. 4 still, motionless, unmoving, fixed, stationary, at rest, inactive, composed, temperate, unexcited, calm: There was a knock at the door and everyone suddenly became quiet.

--n. 5 silence, stillness, soundlessness, noiselessness, hush, quietness, quietude, ease, rest, calmness, serenity, tranquillity, peace, peace of mind, repose: In the quiet of the cave I could hear my heart beating.

--v. 6 See quieten, below.

quieten v. Often, quieten down. quiet (down), still, silence, hush, calm, tranquillize, lull: He gradually quietened down the audience, and the curtain rose.

quietly adv. 1 silently, soundlessly, noiselessly, inaudibly, in silence, softly: She tiptoed quietly out of the room. 2 in hushed tones, in whispers: In a corner of the room a young couple were quietly conversing. 3 peacefully, calmly, serenely, peaceably, meekly, mildly: When the police explained they only wanted him to help in their inquiries, he went with them quietly. 4 modestly, humbly, demurely, unpretentiously, unostentatiously, unobtrusively, unassumingly, sedately: The applicants sat quietly, waiting to be called in for the interview.

quintessence

n. essence, heart, core, quiddity, essentialness, essentiality, pith, marrow, sum and substance, epitome, nonpareil, embodiment, personification, model, prototype, exemplar, ideal, beau id,al, paragon: Hernandez considered the ancient Greek temple the quintessence of classic design.

quip   n. 1 (bon) mot, witticism, sally, jest, ad lib, joke, gibe, barb, aphorism, epigram, apophthegm or apothegm, pun, double entendre, equivoque or equivoke, Colloq gag, one-liner, crack, wisecrack, wheeze, chestnut: In his worst quip he attributed the breakdown of his computer to a slipped diskette.

--v. 2 joke, jest, gibe, Colloq wisecrack, US crack wise: As Mae West quipped, 'It's not the men in my life that count; it's the life in my men'.

quirk   n. peculiarity, caprice, vagary, eccentricity, fancy, twist, warp, aberration, idiosyncrasy, oddity, kink, characteristic, crotchet, whim, trick: By some strange quirk of fate, after weeks in an open boat I was cast ashore at Cap d'Antibes.

quit   v. 1 leave, depart from, go (away) from, get away from, decamp, exit, desert, flee, forsake, abandon, Colloq take off, beat it, skip: They think that he will try to quit the country if he is released on bail. 2 resign, give up, relinquish, leave, renounce, retire from, withdraw from: Would you really quit your job to sail around the world? 3 cease, stop, discontinue, leave off, desist from: They would always quit laughing when I walked into the room.

--adj. 4 free, clear, discharged, rid of, released (from), exempt (from): When my ex-wife remarried I was quit of the burden of paying alimony.

quite   adv. 1 completely, very, totally, utterly, entirely, from head to toe, from A to Z, fully, wholly, thoroughly, unequivocally, absolutely, perfectly, altogether, unreservedly: Her trouble is that she is quite certain of many things that are simply not the case. The last time I saw him, he was quite drunk. 2 rather, fairly, moderately, somewhat, relatively, to some or a certain extent or degree, noticeably: I thought that the paintings were quite well done. 3 rather: We had quite a good dinner last night. 4 very much, totally, entirely, wholly, altogether; really, actually, truly, definitely, positively, undoubtedly, indubitably, absolutely, unequivocally, certainly, surely, unreservedly, honestly: What you are talking about is quite another matter. Your home-made chutney is quite the best I have ever tasted.

quiver v. 1 shake, tremble, vibrate, shiver, quaver; shudder, tremor, oscillate, fluctuate, wobble: He felt his lips quivering as he told her that he was dying. The outcome of the contest quivered in the balance.

--n. 2 tremble, quaver, shudder, spasm, shake, tremor, shiver: Pierced by the dart, the tiny bird fell to the earth, gave a little quiver, and lay still.

quixotic adj. idealistic, impractical, impracticable, unrealistic, unrealizable, visionary, romantic, fantastic, chimerical, fanciful, dreamlike, dreamy, nephelococcygeal, starry-eyed, optimistic, rash, absurd, mad, foolhardy, reckless, wild, preposterous, ridiculous: When he was young, he had a quixotic notion that he could improve the world.

quiz n. 1 examination, test, Colloq exam: We have a ten-minute quiz every week on our reading assignment.

--v. 2 question, interrogate, ask, examine, Colloq grill, pump: The police have quizzed everyone in the neighbourhood about what they might have seen.

quizzical adj. curious, queer, odd, inquiring or enquiring, questioning, puzzled: The interviewer had a quizzical expression, as if he didn't quite understand his own questions.

quota n. apportionment, portion, allotment, allocation, allowance, ration, share, part, proportion, percentage, equity, interest, Colloq cut: Each shareholder is allowed a quota of the new shares based on the number now held.

quotation n. 1 quote, passage, citation, reference, allusion, extract, excerpt, selection: For many years Frances collected quotations from the speeches of politicians. 2 quote, (bid or asking or offer or market) price, charge, fixed price, rate, cost; value: The quotation for Universal General International stood at 486 pence at the close of the market on Friday.

quote v. 1 cite, mention, recite, repeat, retell, reproduce, duplicate, call up, bring up, bring in, instance, exemplify, refer to, reference, extract, excerpt: Let me quote to you the relevant passage from Paradise Lost .

--n. 2 See quotation, above.

18.0 R

=-

18.1 rabble...

=-

rabble n. 1 mob, crowd, horde, throng, swarm, gang: We narrowly escaped the wrath of the rabble fighting the police in the square. 2 the rabble. Derogatory masses, proletariat, hoi polloi, commoners, peasantry, ragtag and bobtail, vermin, outcasts, riff-raff, scum, dregs (of society), lower classes, canaille, commonalty, Colloq trash, the great unwashed: He always refers to blue-collar workers as 'the rabble'.

rabble-rouser

n. agitator, demagogue, instigator, inciter, firebrand, incendiary, radical, troublemaker, agent provocateur, revolutionary, insurrectionist, Colloq hell-raiser: The crowd was whipped into a frenzy by a rabble-rouser who was not identified.

rabid adj. 1 unreasonable, unreasoning, extreme, fanatical; raging, furious, violent, crazed, frenzied, maniacal, wild, mad,

infuriated, frenetic, berserk: Please don't mention politics to
Nigel - he gets rabid on the subject. 2 hydrophobic, mad:
Animals from abroad are kept in quarantine to make sure they are
not rabid.

race°   n. 1 foot-race, horse-race, marathon, rally or rallye;
competition, contest, rivalry, contention: How many will be
running in Saturday's race? Several countries had joined the
race to complete a workable anti-gravity device. 2 sluice,
flume, chute, watercourse, course, channel, bed, mill-race,
raceway, spillway; track: The water in the race enabled us to
wash the sand in order to extract the gold. The ball-bearings
don't fall out because they are retained in the race. 3 the
races. horse-races, dog-races, the dogs, the track, the turf,
Brit racecourse, race meeting, US racetrack: We're off to the
races at Newmarket.

--v. 4 speed, hurry, hasten, dash, sprint, fly, rush, scramble,
step lively, Colloq tear, rip, zip, step on the gas, step on it,
hop to it, get a move on, Brit hare, US get a wiggle on: You're
going to have to race to catch the last bus. 5 compete (with):
I'll race you to the gate and back.

raceý   n. 1 stock, line, lineage, type, tribe, nation, people, folk,
clan, family: The citizens constitute a mix of all imaginable
races. 2 blood, descent, breed, kin, family, stock, line,
lineage: You say you are liberal, but how would you feel about
your daughter's marrying someone of a different race?

racial   adj. ethnic, genetic, genealogical, ethnological, folk; tribal;
national: Bigots emphasize racial differences rather than
racial similarities.

rack   n. 1 framework, frame, trestle, holder, support; stand,
scaffold, scaffolding, structure, hat-rack, hatstand, coat-rack,
Technical stretcher, tenter, US hat-tree: The fish are hung out
on long racks in the sun to dry. Please take your luggage off
the seat and put it on the overhead rack. 2 suffering, torment,
torture, agony, anguish, pain, misery, distress, affliction,
scourge, adversity: Only those who have experienced it can know
the severe rack of gout.

--v. 3 distress, torment, torture, agonize, oppress, pain, persecute, anguish, beleaguer, plague, harass, harrow, hurt: Gruber was racked by the feeling that he had been responsible for the road accident. Quentin has been racked by the pain of arthritis for ten years. 4 beat, strain, wrench, tear at, lash (at), batter, shake, damage: Winds of hurricane force racked villages along the coast last night.

racket   n. 1 noise, din, uproar, disturbance, clamour, hubbub, row, rumpus, hullabaloo, fuss, ado, commotion, to-do, hue and cry, outcry, brouhaha, tumult, babel, pandemonium, Elizabethan theatre alarums and excursions, Colloq ballyhoo: How can you sleep through the racket from your neighbour's all-night parties? 2 (organized) crime, criminal or illegal activity or enterprise, trickery, trick, dodge, scheme, swindle, stratagem, artifice, game, ruse, Slang caper, scam, gyp: Their racket is selling 'protection' to shop-owners. 3 business, line, profession, occupation, trade, vocation, calling, job, employment, livelihood: I'm in commodities; what's your racket?

racketeer n. mobster, gangster, Mafioso: The Chicago racketeers of the 1930s seem tame compared with today's terrorists.

raconteur n. storyteller, anecdotalist or anecdotist, narrator, relater or relator, Colloq spinner of yarns: The after-dinner speaker was a marvellous raconteur with a wealth of stories about the theatre.

racy   adj. 1 fresh, lively, animated, spirited, sprightly, buoyant, vivacious, energetic, vigorous, dynamic, zestful, stimulating, mettlesome or mettled, Colloq full of vim and vigour, peppy, full of pep, full of beans: Tabloid journalists are told that their writing must be racy - straightforward reporting is out of fashion. 2 risqu,, ribald, bawdy, naughty, lusty, earthy, gross, off colour, salty, suggestive, sexual, immodest, indelicate, indecent, blue, smutty, lewd, salacious, vulgar, dirty, filthy, pornographic, obscene, sex-oriented, adult, rude, crude, coarse, Colloq raunchy, sexy, spicy, hot: By mistake my name got on the mailing list of some company selling racy videos. 3 spicy, piquant, tasty, flavourful, pungent, strong, savoury, sharp, zesty, tangy, tart, hot: That curry you served last night had quite a racy flavour.

radiance n. 1 radiancy, splendour, brightness, brilliance, resplendence, luminosity, luminousness, dazzle, sparkle, coruscation, scintillation, twinkle, effulgence, refulgence, incandescence, glow, phosphorescence, gleam, lustre, shimmer, shine: As Aladdin rubbed the ring, it began to glow with an inner radiance and then - suddenly - a genie appeared. 2 warmth, gladness, joy, pleasure, happiness, cheeriness, delight: It was good to see again the radiance of the family at Christmas dinner.

radiant adj. 1 shining, bright, beaming, burning, ablaze, blazing, brilliant, luminous, resplendent, splendid, splendorous, lustrous, gleaming, glowing, phosphorescent, shimmering, shiny, glossy, glistening, incandescent, alight, effulgent, refulgent, sparkling, dazzling, glittering, coruscating, scintillating, twinkling; aglow: In her hair she wore a diamond tiara, a radiant crown whose glory was diminished only by her beauty. The room was radiant with sunshine. 2 happy, overjoyed, ecstatic, rapturous, delighted, joyful, blithe, blithesome, blissful, beatific, glad, gleeful, joyous, gay, bubbling, bubbly, jubilant, elated, rhapsodic, exultant, exhilarated, in seventh heaven, in heaven, Colloq on cloud nine, Brit over the moon: Carrie was absolutely radiant when she learned she was pregnant.

radiate v. 1 shine, beam, burn, blaze, gleam, glow, shimmer, glisten, sparkle, dazzle, glitter, coruscate, scintillate, twinkle: The jewel seemed to radiate with an inner light. 2 emanate, disseminate, disperse, spread, diffuse, shed, send out, emit, give off or out, Rare irradiate: He radiated goodwill the way a fire radiates heat and light.

radiation n. emission, emanation, diffusion, dispersal, shedding: Because the night was cloudless, unhindered radiation of the earth's heat rapidly cooled the air.

radical adj. 1 basic, fundamental, elementary, inherent, constitutional, elemental, essential, cardinal, principal, primary, deep, deep-seated, profound, underlying, organic, natural, rudimentary: There is a radical error in your approach to the problem. There are radical differences in the ways we regard the English language. 2 thorough, thoroughgoing, complete, entire, total, exhaustive, sweeping, (all-)inclusive, comprehensive, all-embracing, out-and-out, drastic, severe, extreme, extremist, revolutionary: We have made radical changes in the way we live. Every political party that is not in power promises radical reform. 3 extremist, revolutionary, fanatic(al), militant, anarchist(ic), immoderate: A staunch conservative, Vincent regarded as radical anyone who disagreed with him.

--n. 4 extremist, revolutionary, fanatic, zealot, immoderate, anarchist, militant: The radicals favour reform, the conservatives the status quo - but there is nothing new in that. 5 communist, leftist, left-winger, red, Bolshevik, Bolshevist, pink, Slang US pinko: Carlo, recently arrested as a spy, had been a radical since his days at university.

radio n. 1 receiver, portable (radio), Old-fashioned crystal set, Brit and US old-fashioned wireless, Colloq transistor, Slang ghetto-blaster, Brit tranny or trannie, US boom box: He listens to BBC World Service on his short-wave radio.

--v. 2 transmit, broadcast, air, disseminate, announce, present: Weather reports are radioed continuously to ships at sea and aircraft.

raffle n. lottery, draw, sweepstake or US sweepstakes, sweep or US sweeps: The church is holding a raffle for a new car next week.

rag° n. 1 tatter, piece, shred, scrap, fragment, bit, Dialect clout: Take a clean rag and dust the bookshelves when you get the chance. 2 newspaper, periodical, magazine, publication, journal: You can't believe anything you read in that rag. 3 rags. Facetious clothes, clothing, attire, dress, garments, Old-fashioned duds: I bought some new rags at the post-Christmas sales. 4 rag trade. garment-industry, clothing business, fashion industry: Peggy has been a model in the rag trade for years. 5 chew the rag. a converse, talk, gossip, chat: We bought a bottle of wine and just sat about chewing the rag all evening. b Brit argue, wrangle: They are constantly chewing the rag over trivial nonsense.

ragý v. tease, taunt, belittle, twit, ridicule, mock, make fun of, pull (someone's) leg, Brit rally, Colloq kid: The boys at school were always ragging him about his lisp.

ragamuffin
n. (street) urchin, (street) Arab, waif, mudlark, gamin, little

lost lamb, babe in the wood, stray, guttersnipe, scarecrow: We took in a poor little ragamuffin who was shaking from the cold.

rage n. 1 anger, fury, wrath, ire, high dudgeon, exasperation, vehemence, passion: Imagine her rage when Simon phoned to say that he couldn't make it home for dinner! 2 fury, passion, frenzy, hysterics, tantrum, fit, temper, Brit paddy or paddywhack or paddywack, Colloq Brit wax: He flies into a rage if Grace is as little as five minutes late for an appointment. 3 fashion, craze, vogue, the (latest or newest) thing, last word, dernier cri, mode, Colloq fad: Miniskirts were all the rage in the 1960s.

--v. 4 rant, rave, storm, go mad or crazy or bonkers or wild or out of one's mind, go berserk, run amok or amuck, behave or act or be like one possessed, fret, be beside oneself (with anger or fury), lose one's temper, go berserk, have a tantrum, fulminate, explode; fume, foam at the mouth, stew, smoulder, boil, seethe, simmer, Colloq have kittens, lose one's cool, fly off the handle, go off the deep end, Slang get into or work oneself up into a lather or stew or sweat, get all worked up, blow one's top, blow a gasket, blow up, flip one's top or lid, hit the ceiling or roof, freak out, be fit to be tied, be ready for a strait-jacket, Brit throw a wobbly, US and Canadian blow one's stack, flip one's wig, blow a fuse, have a haemorrhage, go ape, do a slow burn, have a conniption fit: Father raged for hours when he found that Donald had borrowed the car without permission.

ragged adj. 1 rough, shaggy, shabby, seedy, tattered, unkempt, scraggy, torn, rent, ripped, frayed, worn (out), threadbare, patched, patchy, ravelled, Chiefly Brit tatty, Brit down at heel, US down at the heel(s), Colloq US frazzled, beat-up: On weekends, Charles put on his most ragged clothes to work in the garden. 2 rough, uneven, irregular, nicked, jagged; serrated, sawtooth(ed), zigzag, notched, toothed, denticulate(d), ridged: Every morning on his way to work, his first sight of the factory was the ragged edge of its roof. 3 worn out, tired, exhausted, on one's last legs, the worse for wear, dead tired, overtired, fatigued, weary, fagged out, spent, Colloq all in, dog-tired, Slang dead (on one's feet), (dead) beat, Brit knackered, US and Canadian pooped (out): The emergency crew was run ragged by thirty hours on duty without rest. 4 bad, rough, patchy, imperfect, shabby, messy, disordered, disorderly, run-down, battered, broken-down, neglected, deteriorated, dilapidated, Colloq beat-up: From its ragged condition, it's clear that the building isn't properly maintained. 5 rough, harsh, discordant, grating, rasping, hoarse, scratchy, croaking: His voice, once a beautiful lyric tenor, was ragged after years of alcoholism. 6 uneven, bad, poor, shabby, patchy: The guests gave a ragged rendition of 'Happy Birthday' as their host entered the room.

ragman   n. rag-dealer, rag-picker, scrap dealer, Brit rag-and-bone man, knacker, US junk dealer, junkman: When the ragman comes round, give him those old curtains.

raid   n. 1 (surprise) attack, incursion, invasion, onset, onslaught, blitz, sortie, sally, expedition, Slang (police) bust: The partisans made a raid on the arsenal last night and got away with guns and ammunition.

--v. 2 attack, invade, assault, storm, set upon, descend upon, swoop down on or upon, pounce upon, Military forage; sack, plunder, pillage, loot, ransack, rifle, strip, maraud, depredate, Slang bust: The commandos raided the enemy stronghold and destroyed it.

rail°   n. 1 bar, rod, handrail, foot-rail , towel-rail; railing, banisters, balustrade, baluster, fence: Don't lean on the rail or it will break. 2 by or via rail. by train, by railway or US also railroad: We travelled by rail from Paris to Geneva.

railý   v. Usually, rail at or against. vituperate, vociferate, fulminate, be or become abusive, revile, attack, berate, scold, upbraid, criticize, censure, decry, condemn, denounce: She continues to rage and rail against those who would deny equal rights to women.

raillery n. banter, badinage, persiflage, repartee, frivolity, joking, jesting, chaffing, teasing, ridicule, Colloq kidding: You shouldn't get upset over what was nothing more than some good-natured raillery.

railroad n. 1 See railway, below.

--v. 2 force, compel, expedite, coerce, intimidate, push (through), Brit pressurize, US pressure, bully, hector, tyrannize, dragoon, browbeat, bullyrag, Colloq bulldoze, squeeze, lean on: Clayton was railroaded into appointing Pinbury to head the committee to investigate corruption.

railway   n. train, rail, rolling-stock, Archaic iron horse, US railroad: Railway service could be improved on some suburban lines. Diamond Jim Brady, the American millionaire, made his money from the railway.

rain   n. 1 precipitation, drizzle, sprinkle, downpour, shower, thunder-shower, cloudburst, rainstorm, squall, deluge, US sunshower: After the rain the sun came out. 2 rainfall, precipitation: The rain in Spain falls mainly in the plain. 3 flood, torrent, shower, volley, stream, outpouring: Arriving home, she could barely shield herself from the rain of children's kisses.

--v. 4 come down, pour, teem, sprinkle, drizzle, spit, Brit dialect mizzle, Colloq come down in buckets, rain cats and dogs: The weatherman said it would rain today, so take an umbrella. 5 trickle, pour, run, fall: Tears rained down her sallow cheeks. 6 descend, shower: Blows rained on him from the tiny fists of the furious child. 7 bestow, lavish, shower: He rained kisses on her upturned face.

raise   v. 1 lift (up), elevate; hoist, pull up, haul up, run up, Literary upraise: She raised the glass to her lips. We raised the mainsail and sailed out of the harbour. 2 erect, put up, construct, build, produce, create, put together, assemble, frame: With the help of some neighbours, the barn was raised in less than a day. 3 farm, grow, cultivate, plant, bring up, nurture, harvest, propagate: During that year's mild winter, we were able to raise three crops. 4 bring up, nurture, rear; mother, father, parent: His grandmother raised ten children, six girls and four boys. 5 assemble, gather, bring or gather or get together, muster, mobilize, round up, rally, collect, convene, recruit, Colloq pull together: Do you think you could raise an army quickly enough to defend us against attack? 6 increase, boost, advance, put up, jack up, run up, inflate, escalate: Why are consumer petrol prices always raised at the vaguest hint of an increase in oil prices? 7 cultivate, foster, nurture, heighten, stimulate, buoy, lift, uplift, boost, arouse, quicken, encourage, develop: The news about the new company raised our hopes of finding jobs. 8 open, introduce, initiate, broach, bring up, bring or put forward, present, suggest, mention, moot: It is regrettable that you saw fit to raise such a delicate issue. 9 remove, relieve, lift, abandon, eliminate, discontinue, (bring to an) end, terminate: Restrictions on travel to south-east Asia were about to be raised. 10 cause, provoke, evoke, occasion, put or set in motion, institute, prompt, engender, stir up, instigate, inspire, give rise to, bring about, arouse, originate: Objections to the relaxation of safety regulations were raised by relatives of the victims of the earlier disaster. 11 utter, express, bring up, put forward, shout, call: Was it you who raised the alarm at the first sign of smoke? 12 assemble, obtain, get, collect, amass, solicit: We raised twice as much for charity as last year. 13 invigorate, animate, vitalize, vivify, buoy, lift, uplift, cheer (up), exhilarate, elate: Our spirits were raised considerably by the news from head office.

rake°   v. 1 Often, rake up. scrape together, gather (together or up), collect, draw together: You really must rake up the leaves from the lawn and burn them. 2 scrape, comb, scratch, grate, graze: Don't you just hate the sound of a fingernail being raked across a blackboard? 3 rake in. collect, gather (up or in), pull in, make: Pamela is raking in the royalties from her latest thriller. 4 rake it in. coin money, make money (hand-over-fist), Brit coin it in: The new record shop in the mall is really raking it in. 5 rake out. sift (out), screen, remove, clear, eliminate: Please rake out the cinders from the grate. 6 rake over or through. search, probe, ransack, scour, comb, rummage through, pick through or over, go through or over (with a fine-tooth(ed) comb), rifle (through): The police raked through her entire flat but found nothing incriminating. 7 rake up. a See 1, above. b revive, resuscitate, resurrect, raise, bring up, recall: Must you persist in raking up those bad memories? 8 rake up or together. gather, scrape up or together, collect, drag together, pick up, dig up, dredge up, find, unearth: Were you able to rake up the others for a game of poker tonight?

rakeý   n. libertine, womanizer, lecher, rou,, playboy, ladies' man, Don Juan, Casanova, Lothario, debauchee, voluptuary, profligate, prodigal; scoundrel, rascal, cad, Archaic rakehell, masher;

Colloq lady-killer, Colloq old-fashioned wolf, Brit bounder: Lady Anne was led stray by some young rake, a friend of the Prince Regent's.

rake-off n. kickback, commission; discount, mark-down, rebate, Colloq cut, piece: Does Mac get a rake-off for every buyer he sends to the shop?

rakish adj. dashing, jaunty, dapper, spruce, debonair, raffish, smart, breezy, flashy, chic, fashionable, elegant; dandy, foppish: Adjusting his trilby to a rakish angle, Peter strode along the boulevard.

rally n. 1 gathering, (mass) meeting, meet, convocation, convention, assemblage, assembly, muster: There is to be a political rally tonight in the town square. Are you taking your Daimler to the vintage car rally? 2 recovery, improvement, revival, turn for the better, recuperation, renewal: His doctors said that the rally might be only temporary.

--v. 3 Often, rally round. bring or call or get together, round up, assemble, convene, group, congregate, organize, come together, troop; marshal, mobilize, summon, gather, muster: All Sally's friends rallied round her when her father died. He rallied every last ounce of strength in the dash for the finishing line. 4 revive, rouse, recover, improve, get better, take a turn for the better, recuperate, perk up, pick up, Colloq snap out of it, make a comeback: According to the nurse, he rallied during the night and asked for something to eat.

ram v. 1 jam, force, drive, cram, crowd, pack, compress, stuff, squeeze, thrust, tamp, pound, hammer: We rammed as much filler as we could into the crevices. 2 butt, bump, strike, hit, collide with, dash, crash, slam: Their car rammed into mine in the garage.

ramble v. 1 amble, wander (off), stroll, saunter, walk, perambulate, go (off or away), travel, drift, range, rove, go or move about, hike, trek, Colloq mosey: Don't ramble too far as dinner will be ready soon. We used to ramble over those hills, but the area is now an industrial site. 2 meander, wander, digress, maunder: Fiona tends to ramble off the main topic of conversation. 3 Sometimes, ramble on. babble, chatter, gibber, rave, go on (and on), rattle on, Colloq Brit witter on, rabbit on or away: If you didn't stop him, Hugh would ramble on for ever about his grandchildren.

--n. 4 stroll, amble, saunter, walk, promenade, constitutional, walkabout, tour, tramp, hike, trek: We went on a short ramble through the park.

rambling adj. 1 discursive, roundabout, circuitous, tortuous, incoherent, diffuse, unsettled, disconnected, disjointed, disorganized, unorganized, illogical, maundering, aimless, confused, muddled, jumbled, scrambled, unintelligible, inarticulate, periphrastic, circumlocutory, circumlocutional, circumlocutionary, ambagious, wordy, verbose, prolix, endless, interminable: We couldn't make heads or tails of the professor's rambling lecture. 2 unplanned, straggling, irregular, sprawling, spread out, spreading, straggly: The Wilsons live in that big old rambling Victorian house down the road. 3 roving, wandering, travelling, peripatetic, itinerant, wayfaring, migratory, nomadic: For five years he led a rambling life as a folk-singing banjo player.

ramification
n. 1 consequence, result, effect, upshot, implication, subtlety; complication, difficulty: Have you considered the ramifications of your decision to retire? 2 branch, extension, outgrowth, subdivision, offshoot: Courier services may be considered a ramification of services that were once performed by the post office.

ramp n. slope, grade, gradient, incline; rise, ascent, acclivity; descent, dip, declivity: There is a special ramp in the theatre for wheelchair access.

rampage n. 1 excitement, agitation, recklessness, riot, tumult, uproar, frenzy, fury, rage, furore or US furor, turmoil: His latest rampage was prompted by their serving him a cup of cold coffee. 2 Brit on the rampage, US on a rampage. berserk, mad, crazy, amok or amuck, wild, out of control: Pete regularly drank too much whisky and then went on the rampage.

--v. 3 storm, rage, rant, rave, go berserk, run amok or amuck: He rampaged like a man possessed when he got his second parking ticket of the day.

rampant adj. 1 unchecked, uninhibited, unrestrained, wild, uncontrolled, out of control, out of hand, frenzied, unbridled, uncontrollable, violent: He was a victim of rampant jealousy. Jennie could hardly be described as a rampant feminist. 2 profuse, unbounded, abounding, flourishing, rife, widespread, everywhere, epidemic, pandemic, prevalent, unrestrained, unchecked, running wild, uninhibited, indiscriminate, wild, uncontrolled; in control, holding sway, in full sway, dominant, predominant; exuberant, rank, luxuriant: Before Masterson became sheriff, vice and crime were rampant in the town.

rampart n. defence, bastion, guard, fortification, security, stronghold, bulwark, barricade, wall; earthwork, breastwork, parados, gabion: The old town is surrounded by seven rows of ramparts leading up to the cathedral at the summit. They regard religion as an impenetrable rampart against immorality.

ramshackle
adj. dilapidated, tumbledown, crumbling, broken-down, rickety, unsteady, jerry-built, decrepit, flimsy, shaky, unstable, tottering, unsubstantial or insubstantial, ruined, in disrepair, beyond repair, run-down, neglected, derelict: He lives in a ramshackle hut on the outskirts of town.

rancid adj. stinking or reeking (to high heaven), foul-smelling, ill-smelling, evil-smelling, noisome, mephitic, miasmic or miasmal or miasmatic(al), smelly, rank, malodorous, fusty; nasty, disagreeable, odious, fetid or foetid, rotten, decayed, spoilt or spoiled, turned, bad, awful, sour, tainted, high, gamy, ripe, putrid, corrupt, stale: To rid your fridge of that rancid smell, wash it out with a solution of baking soda.

rancorous adj. hateful, spiteful, resentful, hostile, malign, malignant, bitter, malevolent, malicious, venomous, vindictive, vengeful, splenetic, acrimonious: Olivia felt rancorous towards her brother-in-law when he refused to lend her money.

rancour n. hatred, hate, antipathy, spite, resentment, resentfulness, antagonism, hostility, malignity, bitterness, malevolence, malice, venomousness, venom, vindictiveness, vengefulness, spleen, acrimony, animus, animosity, enmity, bad feeling, bad blood: Owing to the rancour between them, the brothers had not exchanged a word in forty years.

random adj. 1 haphazard, chance, fortuitous, serendipitous, aleatory, arbitrary, casual, stray, occasional, indefinite, indiscriminate, non-specific, unspecific, unspecified, unordered, unorganized, undirected, unpremeditated, unplanned, accidental, uncalculated, unsystematic, adventitious, incidental, hit-or-miss: He used a computer program to generate random numbers. A random selection of slips was drawn from the drum and Madelaine's name was on one of them. 2 at random. randomly, haphazardly, fortuitously, by chance, serendipitously, arbitrarily, casually, occasionally, (every) now and then, (every) once in a while, irregularly, indefinitely, erratically, indiscriminately, unsystematically, adventitiously, incidentally, unpremeditatedly: They picked names from a hat at random. They drove up and down the road, firing at random.

randy adj. aroused, lustful, lecherous, Brit on heat or US in heat, Brit in oestrus or US in estrus, Slang hot, horny, in rut, rutting, at stud: Seeing Betty always made Len feel terribly randy.

range n. 1 scope, sweep, reach, limit, extent, span, area, radius, distance, compass, latitude, stretch, sphere, orbit: The gun has a range of about 200 yards. This radio transmitter is effective only within a thirty-mile range. The minister is trying to broaden the range of his influence. 2 assortment, series, collection, lot, spread, selection, choice, number, variety, kind, sort, scale, gamut, register: The courses offered cater to a wide range of interests. 3 rank, row, tier, line, file, series, string, chain: From my window I could see the range of hills stretching away into the distance. 4 kitchen range, (cooking-) stove, Chiefly Brit cooker, Brit trade mark Aga, US cook-stove: In every French farmhouse there was always a pot of soup on the range.

--v. 5 line up, rank, order, align, order, array: The teacher ranged the children according to their height. 6 vary, fluctuate, spread, run the gamut, extend, stretch, run, go: The students range in age from eight to eighty. 7 organize, categorize, catalogue, arrange, classify, sort, class, group, rank, bracket, pigeon-hole, file, index, break down, grade, distribute: The books are ranged according to their subject-matter. 8 cover, traverse, roam, rove, travel over or across, go or pass over, drift, migrate, wander, move, extend: The wildebeest ranges far and wide over vast tracts of grazing land in Africa.

rank° n. 1 status, standing, position, place, level, stratum, class, caste, circumstances, echelon, grade: It is virtually impossible to determine rank simply by looking at a person. 2 weight, authority, power, superiority, seniority, ascendancy, priority, influence, eminence: Caldwell uses the privilege of rank to cover up some of his more questionable transactions. 3 nobility, title, high birth, aristocracy, dignity, prestige, (blue) blood; peerage: Gentlemen of rank should behave with honour, my boy. 4 line, row, column, queue, series, formation; sequence: We gazed on the serried ranks of warriors, golden shields glistening in the sun. 5 ranks. soldiers, workers, staff, employees: Smithers rose from the ranks to become chief executive officer.

--v. 6 grade, rate, classify, class, categorize; dispose, organize, order, sort, assort, arrange, array, align, range, graduate: He was ranked among the best in the school. The applicants are ranked according to their test scores. 7 rate, count, stand, have standing or value or prestige, be important or distinguished: To Janet, character ranks far above wealth. Phil is so mean that Scrooge would rank high on a list of charitable men in comparison with him.

ranký adj. 1 lush, luxuriant, abundant, flourishing, profuse, prolific, dense, superabundant, exuberant, fertile, productive, fructuous: The expedition could hardly make its way through the rank undergrowth of th jungle. 2 corrupt, foul, low, base, gross; downright, utter, sheer, absolute, complete, out-and-out, blatant, flagrant, unalloyed, unmitigated, undiluted: I cannot understand the rank treachery of the man after all that we have done for him. I ventured my opinion, even though a rank outsider. 3 offensive, loathsome, disgusting, gross, foul, corrupt, indecent, shocking, immodest, indecorous, shameless, risqu,, lurid, off colour, outrageous, blue, nasty, vulgar, vile, dirty, filthy, smutty, scatological, pornographic, obscene: Those bigots always resort to the rank vocabulary of malice and hate. In a secret cupboard was a collection of the rankest literature. 4 offensive, loathsome, disgusting, gross, foul, foul-smelling, smelly, rancid, noisome, stinking, reeky, reeking, mephitic, miasmic or miasmal or miasmatic(al), fetid or foetid, noxious, rotten, putrid, musty, stale, disagreeable, strong, pungent: The rank stench from the open sewers pervades the air in those pockets of poverty.

rank and file

n. (general) membership, members, majority: The union's rank and file must now vote on whether to accept management's pay offer.

rankle v. gall, fester, irk, vex, plague, chafe, grate, nettle, torment, pain, hurt, provoke, anger, exasperate, get (to), upset: Although she had forgiven him, the insult still rankled.

ransack v. 1 search, examine, go through or over (with a fine-tooth(ed) comb), comb, rake or rummage through, scour, explore, scrutinize, turn inside out: I ransacked the second-hand bookshops for a copy but had no success. 2 rob, plunder, pillage, sack, despoil, loot, strip; burgle, US and Canadian burglarize: The thieves who ransacked the shop apparently missed the most valuable jewel.

ransom n. 1 redemption, rescue, deliverance; release, liberation: The envoy was held to ransom by a fanatical band of zealots. 2 payment, payout, pay-off, price: The police refuse to reveal the amount of the ransom given to the kidnappers.

--v. 3 redeem, rescue, release, deliver: The boy was ransomed for œ10,000.

rant v. 1 declaim, hold forth, expound, expatiate, orate, perorate, pontificate, trumpet, preach, harangue, lecture, deliver (oneself of) a tirade or diatribe or speech, speak: The minister ranted pompously about his accomplishments. 2 vociferate, bluster, rave, rant and rave, bellow, rage: The master kept ranting on about his newspaper having been creased.

--n. 3 tirade, philippic, bluster, flatulence, rhetoric, bombast, pomposity, turgidity, gasconade, rodomontade, theatrics, histrionics, act: As he carried on his rant, the theatre gradually emptied till he was alone.

rap v. 1 knock, strike, tap, hit: The policeman rapped smartly at the door with his truncheon. 2 criticize, rebuke, scold, reprimand, rap over the knuckles, Colloq knock, Brit tick off: We were severely rapped for dropping litter on the pavement. 3 converse, talk, chat, gossip, Colloq gab, Slang chew the fat or the rag: That guy was so fascinating - we could rap with him for hours.

--n. 4 knock, tap, hit, blow, crack, stroke, cuff, whack, thwack, punch, Colloq belt, clout, Slang sock, slug, biff: The punishment for failing to complete the assignment was a severe rap on the knuckles. 5 conversation, discussion, chat, confabulation, talk, dialogue, discourse, colloquy, Colloq confab, Slang chiefly US and Canadian bull session, rap session: We used to get together for a nice long rap now and then. 6 responsibility, blame; punishment, sentence; charge, accusation, indictment: Why should he have to take the rap for something you did? The witness failed to show up, so Baxter beat the rap.

rapacious adj. greedy, covetous, grasping, avaricious, mercenary, usurious, acquisitive, predatory, predacious, ravenous, ravening, voracious, insatiable, insatiate, wolfish, wolflike, lupine, vulturine, raptorial: That rapacious swindler took everything they had in the world.

rapacity n. greed, greediness, cupidity, covetousness, avarice, acquisitiveness, predaciousness, ravenousness, voracity, voraciousness, insatiability, insatiableness, rapaciousness: The rapacity of the invading hordes of Mongols knew no bounds.

rape n. 1 ravishment, defloration, deflowering, violation, sexual assault, defilement: The police are investigating reports of rape by a masked man. 2 rapine, despoliation, spoliation, despoilment, pillage, depredation, ravagement, ravaging, plunder, plundering, sack, sacking, looting, ransacking: He travelled in disguise to document the rape of the war-torn areas. 3 abduction, carrying-off, kidnapping, seizure, capture, snatching: History debates whether the ancient Romans were truly responsible for the rape of the Sabine women.

--v. 4 violate, ravish, assault sexually, deflower, defile, force to submit to sexual intercourse, have one's way with, take advantage of: The defendant raped three women before he was caught. 5 despoil, spoliate, pillage, depredate, ravage, plunder, sack, loot: Throughout history the city has been raped by marauding tribes.

rapid adj. quick, fast, swift, speedy, high-speed, brisk, expeditious, prompt, express, fleet, lightning(-fast), alacritous; hurried, hasty, precipitate, impetuous, immediate, instantaneous, instant, sudden: The company we use offers rapid delivery service. What do you suppose occasioned Flannery's rapid departure?

rapidity n. quickness, swiftness, speed, speediness, briskness, expeditiousness, promptness, promptitude, alacrity, celerity, immediateness, dispatch or despatch, instantaneousness: The rapidity with which they responded to our request is truly commendable.

rapidly adv. 1 quickly, fast, swiftly, speedily, briskly, expeditiously, like a shot, at the speed of light, double-quick, at full speed, like one possessed, at a gallop, tantivy, Colloq like blazes, like (greased) lightning, US lickety-split, Slang like a bat out of hell, like mad: He cycled down the High Street as rapidly as he could go. 2 promptly, instantly, instantaneously, instanter, without delay, at once, straight away, right away, in a moment, in a trice, like a shot, in a wink, in (less than) no time, double-quick, in a flash, at the speed of light, before you (can) turn around, Colloq in a jiffy, in two shakes (of a lamb's tail), like (greased) lightning, before you can say 'Jack Robinson', US and Canadian (right) off the bat, lickety-split, Slang like a bat out of hell: When I mentioned that you were coming, she left rapidly.

rapport n. empathy, relationship, sympathy, harmony, affinity, accord, bond, relationship, (mutual) understanding, camaraderie: The minute we met we established a rapport.

rapprochement
n. reconciliation, understanding, settlement: The party needs to bring about a rapprochement between the radicals and the reactionaries.

rapt adj. 1 entranced, fascinated, spellbound, mesmerized, hypnotized, engrossed, enthralled, bewitched, absorbed, transported, captivated, delighted: She gave her last performance of 'Giselle' before a rapt audience. 2 enraptured, rapturous, delighted, elated, happy, ecstatic, blissful, overjoyed, joyous, joyful, beatific: You should have seen the rapt expression on the child's face when Santa Claus appeared.

rapture n. ecstasy, delight, joy, joyfulness, joyousness, pleasure, exaltation, elation, thrill, enchantment, euphoria, beatitude, transport, enchantment: Nothing could compare with the rapture he felt at seeing his daughter win the Nobel prize.

rapturous adj. ecstatic, delighted, joyful, joyous, elated, thrilled, enchanted, euphoric, in seventh heaven, overjoyed, rhapsodic, Colloq on cloud nine, Brit over the moon: He was rapturous over qualifying for the Olympics.

rare° adj. 1 uncommon, unfamiliar, unusual, exceptional, out of the ordinary, extraordinary, atypical; scarce, unparalleled, choice, recherch,, phenomenal, infrequent, few and far between, sparse, scanty, limited, seldom encountered or met with or seen; unique, singular, one of a kind; Chiefly Brit thin on the ground: It was rare to see Liz in such good humour. Specimens in such perfect condition are rare. A copy of the first edition in this condition is rare. 2 fine, good, admirable, excellent, choice, select, special, first-rate, first-class, exquisite, superior, superlative, peerless, unequalled, matchless, incomparable, in a class by itself or herself or himself or themselves, sui generis, outstanding; collectible or collectable: O, rare Ben Jonson! On exhibit was a black pearl of rare beauty and remarkable size. Consideration for others seems a rare quality these days.

rareý adj. underdone, undercooked, bleu(e), saignant(e): Do you want your steak rare, medium, or well-done?

rarefied adj. 1 thin, lean, attenuated, diluted, sparse, scant, scanty: As we climbed higher, the rarefied atmosphere made breathing more difficult. 2 exalted, lofty, elevated, high, sublime, noble, high: I feel out of place in the rarefied atmosphere of academia. 3 cliquish, clannish, exclusive, private, select, esoteric: Clarence copes well in the rarefied atmosphere of Whitehall's corridors of power.

rarely adv. seldom, infrequently, on rare occasions, hardly (ever), scarcely (ever), almost never, Colloq once in a blue moon: He rarely attends formal dinners at his club.

rarity n. 1 curiosity, oddity, curio, collector's item, find, treasure, conversation piece, Brit one-off, Colloq Brit oner: Among the rarities in his collection is a stuffed dodo. 2 unusualness, uncommonness, rareness, uniqueness, scarcity: The rarity of the first edition makes this book all the more valuable.

rascal n. imp, devil, scamp, mischief-maker; rapscallion, rogue, scoundrel, cad, villain, blackguard, knave, good-for-nothing, ne'er-do-well, wastrel, scapegrace, dastard, wretch, Colloq scallywag or scalawag, Brit rotter, blighter, bounder: That little rascal has eaten all the cherry tarts. They've caught the rascals who were vandalizing parked cars.

rash° adj. impetuous, impulsive, unthinking, thoughtless, foolhardy, unconsidered, ill-considered, ill-advised, injudicious, imprudent, indiscreet, precipitate, hasty, careless, heedless, reckless, headlong, wild, madcap, hare-brained, hotheaded, adventurous, quixotic, venturesome, audacious, bold, dashing, brash, devil-may-care: It was rash of him to try to sail round the world single-handed, but he did it.

rashý n. 1 eruption, eczema, redness, efflorescence, dermatitis: One of the symptoms of measles is a skin rash. 2 number(s), quantity, lot(s), multitude, profusion, outbreak, series, succession, spate, wave, flood, deluge, plague, epidemic: There's been a rash of burglaries in the neighbourhood.

rasp n. 1 grating, scrape, scraping, scratch, scratching, grinding, stridulation: One could hear the rasp of the file as they tried to cut through the door. 2 file, grater: The coarser rasp is for use on wood.

--v. 3 scrape, abrade, grate, file: First, rasp the horseradish, then combine the gratings with a little vinegar. 4 irritate, jar (upon), grate upon or against, rub (someone) (up) the wrong way, nettle, irk, annoy, vex, wear on, get, Literary gride: She has a rasping metallic voice that gets on my nerves.

5 croak, squawk, screech: The sergeant rasped out another command and the company marched forward.

rate°   n. 1 measure, pace, gait, speed, velocity, Colloq clip: We moved along at a pretty fast rate. Rates of production must increase. 2 charge, price, fee, tariff, figure, amount; toll: The rate for a hotel room has increased enormously in the past few years. 3 percentage, scale, proportion: What is the current rate of interest on government savings bonds? 4 Usually, -rate. rank, grade, place, standing, status, position, class, classification, kind, sort, type, rating, status, worth, value, valuation, evaluation: After a few years, he had improved from a second-rate typist to a first-rate secretary. 5 at any rate. in any case, in any event, anyway, at all events, anyhow, under any circumstances, regardless, notwithstanding: At any rate, with their last child out of university, they have no more worries about paying education costs.

--v. 6 rank, grade, class, classify, evaluate, estimate, calculate, compute, count, reckon, judge, gauge, assess, appraise, measure: How do you rate your chances of beating the champion? 7 merit, be entitled to, deserve, be worthy of, have a claim to: The play doesn't rate all the attention it's been getting in the press. 8 count, place, measure: She rates very high among her friends.

rateý   v. scold, berate, reprimand, rebuke, reproach, reprove, take to task, upbraid, censure, Colloq bawl out, dress down, US and Canadian chew out: I was rated severely for staying out after midnight.

rather   adv. 1 quite, very, somewhat, fairly, moderately, to a certain extent or degree or measure, to some extent or degree or measure, more or less, pretty, slightly, Colloq sort of, kind of: I suppose she was rather good-looking, but at that age I didn't pay much attention to girls. This coffee tastes rather strange. 2 preferably, sooner, instead, more readily or willingly: Given an option, I choose to live alone rather than marry. 3 would or Colloq US had rather. prefer, choose: Given a choice, I would rather live alone.

ratify   v. approve, sanction, endorse, support, corroborate, uphold, back (up), sustain, establish, validate, substantiate, verify, authenticate, guarantee, warrant, certify, affirm, ensure, clinch, settle: The pact was ratified by all members.

ratio n. proportion, relationship, correlation, correspondence: What is the ratio of male to female students at Oxford University? In that area, the ratio of tenants to home-owners is about two to one.

ration n. 1 share, quota, allotment, portion, helping, part, provision, measure, dole, percentage, amount: Each person is permitted a weekly fixed ration of butter, sugar, coffee, meat, etc. We shall have to go on short rations till we are rescued. 2 rations. supplies, provisions, food, provender, victuals, viands, eatables, edibles, comestibles, Brit commons: It was not till the third week with our rations running low that we really began to worry.

--v. 3 Often, ration out. allot, apportion, dole (out), give out, distribute, deal out, mete out, parcel out, measure out, hand out: As water was in short supply, we had to ration it. One cup was rationed out to each of us every morning. 4 budget, schedule, restrict, control, limit: Water had to be rationed to one cup a day for each of us.

rational adj. 1 well-balanced, sane, sound, normal, reasonable, reasoning, logical, ratiocinative, clear-headed, clear-eyed, sober; of sound mind, Colloq all there: Desmond is a rational human being who would be able to advise you about your problem. 2 discriminating, intelligent, thinking, enlightened, prudent, wise, knowledgeable, informed: We could not have elected a more rational representative for our cause than Robert Brown. 3 sensible, common-sense, commonsensical, practical, pragmatic, down-to-earth, everyday, acceptable, reasonable, logical: Philippa thinks she has a rational explanation for the strange light we saw in the sky last night.

rationale n. reason, explanation, logical basis, grounds, logic, reasoning, philosophy, principle, theory: Do you understand the rationale of a policy for curbing inflation that sets interest rates at a level where business, initiative, and productivity are stifled?

rationalize

v. 1 make plausible or believable or understandable or acceptable or reasonable, make allowance(s) or excuses for, vindicate, account for, justify, excuse, reason away, explain away: How can you rationalize taking my car without my permission? 2 think through, reason out; apply logic to, ratiocinate: He warps the statistics to rationalize his argument. The fundamentalists make no attempt to rationalize their literal interpretation of the Scripture.

rattle v. 1 clatter: An acorn dropped from an overhanging tree and rattled down the tin roof. 2 shake, vibrate, jar, joggle, jiggle: The wind was strong enough to rattle the windows in their frames. 3 unnerve, disconcert, discomfit, disturb, perturb, shake, discountenance, upset, agitate, put off, Chiefly US and Canadian faze: They are only trying to rattle us by saying that we might lose our jobs if we strike. 4 jounce, bounce, bump, jolt, speed, hurtle: The stagecoach came rattling down the road, swaying wildly. 5 rattle off. recite, list, utter, reel off, run through, enumerate, call off: The announcer rattled off a long list of trains cancelled because of the storm. 6 rattle on. chatter, babble, jabber, gibber, prate, prattle, blabber, cackle, blather, ramble, Chiefly Brit witter, natter, Slang US run off at the mouth: The speaker kept rattling on and on about the delights of collecting beer cans.

--n. 7 clatter, racket, noise; rale or rƒle, crackle, crackling; death-rattle: I heard the rattle of the beans and knew you were about to grind the coffee. The doctor said he didn't like the rattle in my chest. 8 clapper, sistrum, US noise-maker: Rattles have been used as musical instruments for thousands of years.

rattletrap

n. flivver, rattler, Colloq jalopy, tin Lizzie, US Model T: This old rattletrap won't get us all the way to Hawkhurst.

ratty adj. 1 irritable, cross, testy, touchy, annoyed, crabbed, irritated, angry, short-tempered, impatient, disagreeable: He's always ratty in the mornings when he has a hangover. 2 dirty, greasy, straggly, unkempt, matted: His hair was all ratty and he hadn't bathed in a month.

raucous adj. harsh, rasping, rough, husky, hoarse, grating, scratching, scratchy, discordant, dissonant, jarring; strident, shrill, noisy, loud, ear-splitting, piercing: You could hear Ramsay's raucous voice above the others. A raucous scream came from the parrot's cage.

ravage   v. 1 lay waste, devastate, ruin, destroy, demolish, raze, wreck, wreak havoc (up)on, damage: The hurricane ravaged outlying areas but did little damage in the city. 2 pillage, plunder, despoil, ransack, sack, loot: The police tried to prevent hooligans from ravaging the shops in the town centre.

--n. 3 Usually, ravages. destruction, damage, depredation(s), devastation, wrecking, ruin, demolition: All about us we saw the ravages of war.

rave   v. 1 rant, rage, storm, fulminate, roar, thunder, howl, yell, caterwaul, yowl, bellow, shout, scream, fly off the handle, Colloq flip one's top or lid, Slang raise hell: He kept raving on about his coffee mug having been pinched. 2 rave about. praise, laud, rhapsodize over, applaud, gush over: Bernard can't stop raving about that new Thai restaurant.

--n. 3 praise, acclaim, favour, enthusiastic reception, tribute, testimonial, encomium, bouquet, plaudits, accolade, admiration, US hosanna: The play got raves in all the newspapers when it opened. 4 rage, fashion, vogue, trend, thing, last word, dernier cri, craze, mania, Colloq fad: The rave that year was for stiletto heels. 5 party, fˆte, soir‚e, Colloq do, Slang bash, blow-out, Brit rave-up , US wingding, blast: Monica threw quite a rave to celebrate her new job.

ravenous adj. 1 hungry, famished, starving, starved: We were ravenous after the long hike. 2 voracious, gluttonous, greedy, insatiable, ravening, swinish, piggish, hoggish, edacious, wolfish: With my family's ravenous appetites, there are rarely any leftovers.

ravine   n. gorge, canyon or ca¤on, pass, cleft, defile, gully or gulley, valley, Brit dialect clough, Scots linn, US gap, gulch, arroyo: At the spring thaw, torrents filled the ravines.

raving   adj. 1 mad, insane, berserk, raging, crazy, crazed, irrational, manic, maniacal, frantic, frenzied, delirious, hysterical; out of one's mind or head: He stood there shouting and screaming, like a raving lunatic. 2 extraordinary, outstanding, unusual, rare, uncommon, phenomenal, great, striking, ravishing, Colloq stunning: Diana had been a raving beauty in her time.

--n. 3 Often, ravings. rant, ranting, bombast, pomposity, grandiloquence, magniloquence, rodomontade, rhetoric, bluster, blustering, claptrap, balderdash, puffery, bunkum, flatulence, hyperbole, vapouring, fustian, Colloq hot air, bunk: Why must we be subjected to the ravings of this politician? 4 gabble, babble, babbling, gibberish, Colloq gab: This is nothing more than the raving of a maniac.

ravish v. 1 enrapture, delight, captivate, enthral, fascinate, charm, entrance, spellbind, bewitch, transport: I was ravished at the prospect of seeing you again. 2 rape, violate, have one's way with, deflower, defile: The soldiers attacked the village and ravished the women.

ravishing adj. dazzling, beautiful, gorgeous, striking, radiant, charming, alluring, attractive, entrancing, captivating, enthralling, bewitching, spellbinding, Colloq stunning: Daphne was even more ravishing than her sister Diana.

raw adj. 1 uncooked, unprepared, fresh: Many vegetables can be eaten raw. 2 unprocessed, untreated, unrefined, unfinished, natural, crude: The raw sugar is shipped to the plant where it is refined. The raw statistics revealed that many women had refused to respond to the questionnaire. 3 new, inexperienced, unseasoned, immature, green, untried, fresh, untrained, unskilled, untested: They sent us raw recruits who had never seen battle. 4 exposed, unprotected, uncovered, open; sore, tender, inflamed, painful, sensitive: When he mentioned her name, it was as if he had touched a raw nerve. 5 chill, chilly, chilling, cold, damp, frigid, freezing, biting, stinging, nippy, nipping, sharp, keen, piercing, penetrating: You should wrap up warmly if you're going out in that raw wind. 6 brutal, frank, candid, blunt, direct, unvarnished, unmollified, unembellished, realistic, honest, plain, unreserved, unrestrained, uninhibited, bluff, straightforward: The producer felt that no domestic audience could stomach a raw depiction of the horrors of war.

--n. 7 in the raw. naked, stark naked, undressed, unclothed, nude, in the nude, Brit starkers, Colloq in the buff, in the altogether, in one's birthday suit: For punishment, they made us stand outside, in the freezing cold, in the raw.

raw-boned adj. gaunt, lean, gangling, thin, skinny, spare, meagre, scrawny, underfed, bony, emaciated, half-starved, wasted, hollow-cheeked, cadaverous: They'll take that raw-boned youngster into the army and put some meat on him.

ray   n. 1 beam, shaft, bar, streak, pencil, gleam, flash: A single ray from the setting sun illuminated the head of the statue. 2 glimmer, trace, spark, scintilla, flicker: As he had not ben rejected outright, there was still a ray of hope that he might be accepted.

raze   v. tear or pull or bring or knock or throw down, demolish, destroy, level, flatten, bulldoze: As usual, beautiful old buildings were razed to make way for a new shopping centre.

18.2 reach...
=-

reach   v. 1 Often, reach out. hold out, extend, stretch (out), stick out, thrust out, outstretch, outreach: He reached out his hand and graped mine warmly. 2 arrive at, get to, come to, go to, end up at or in; land at or in, Colloq make (it to): I won't reach the office till noon today. Have we reached the point of no return? 3 get, get in touch with, communicate with, establish or make contact with, get through to, get (a) hold of: I tried to reach her at home, but she was out. 4 attain, achieve, accomplish, make, get or go to, get or go as far as: Do you think that McClintock will reach the semi-finals? 5 come or go or get up to, amount to, attain, climb to, rise to, run to, equal, match: It looks as though the trade deficit might reach last year's figure. 6 get through or across to, register with, communicate with, reach into the mind of, impress, influence, sway, move, stir, carry weight with: It is very difficult for teachers to reach teenagers, who have a natural suspicion of adults.

--n. 7 range, ambit, scope, orbit, compass, sphere, territory: Those outlying areas are beyond our reach. Padua is within easy reach of Venice. 8 capability, capacity: Tragedy often occurs when one's ambition exceeds one's reach.

react v. 1 act, behave, conduct oneself, proceed; retaliate, reciprocate, get even: I wonder how you would have reacted if someone had insulted you! 2 respond, answer, reply, retort: The crowd reacted to the police presence by becoming very nasty. She reacted with surprise on learning of his arrest.

reaction n. 1 response, reply, answer, effect, feedback: Did you get any reaction when you told her I had been arrested? Her reaction was to turn over and go back to sleep. 2 repulsion, resistance, counteraction, counterbalance, compensation: A rocket derives forward thrust by reaction against its own exhaust, hence can operate in a vacuum. 3 retaliation, reciprocation, reprisal, revenge: He shot her in reaction to her announcement that she was leaving him.

reactionary
adj. 1 (ultra-)conservative, right, rightist, right-wing, blimpish; traditionalist; South African verkrampte: Reactionary governments tend to reduce social services.

--n. 2 (ultra-)conservative, rightist, right-winger, Colonel Blimp; traditionalist; South African verkrampte: As a reactionary, he feels that the status quo is fine and change unnecessary.

read v. 1 peruse, scan, skim, review, study, look over, pore over: I have read the article twice but still cannot understand it. 2 understand, know, be familiar with, comprehend, interpret, decipher: Can you read Greek? Madame Sonja reads tea leaves. 3 announce, present, deliver: Anna reads the news on TV at six o'clock every evening. 4 read into. assign to, impute (to), infer (from), assume (from), presume (from), conclude (from): You might be reading too much into that letter of commendation.

readable adj. 1 intelligible, comprehensible, understandable, easy to understand, easily understood, plain: Surprisingly, the instructions for operating the computer are fairly readable. 2 entertaining, easy to read, enjoyable, pleasurable, absorbing, interesting, engaging, stimulating, worthwhile: Her latest thriller is so readable that I stayed up all night to finish it.

3 legible, decipherable, distinct: The print on that microfiche is too small to be readable.

readily adv. 1 cheerfully, willingly, eagerly, ungrudgingly, unhesitatingly, freely, gladly, happily, agreeably, graciously, charitably: He always gave readily of his time to anyone who sought his help, and we shall miss him sorely. 2 effortlessly, easily, smoothly, without difficulty: I was able to get the wheel off readily enough, getting it back on was the problem. 3 promptly, quickly, speedily, swiftly, apace, at once, without delay, in no time, immediately, instantly, instantaneously, instanter, straight away, right away, at or on short notice, Colloq pronto: The police came readily but were unable to catch the thieves, who had already escaped.

readiness n. 1 willingness, cheerfulness, good will, eagerness, agreeableness, graciousness: Her readiness to help marked her as truly charitable. 2 promptness, quickness; facility, ease, skill, adroitness, expertness, proficiency: The readiness with which he gave expert advice on gardening made him very popular with his neighbours. 3 in readiness. See ready, 1, below.

ready adj. 1 prepared, (all) set, in readiness, in (proper) shape; up, primed, ripe, fit, in condition; Colloq psyched (up): The charge is ready for detonation. I'm ready for a good run in the park. Are these apples ready for eating? Are you ready to meet the girl of your dreams? 2 agreeable, consenting, acquiescent, willing, content, eager, keen, happy, cheerful, genial, gracious, cordial, friendly, well-disposed, enthusiastic, Colloq game: Tim was always a ready accomplice to any mischief devised by his brother. 3 apt, likely, inclined, disposed, given, prone: She was all too ready to believe anything she was told. 4 about, liable, likely, apt; on the verge of, subject to, in danger of, on the brink of, on the point of, close to: The volcano seemed ready to erupt at any moment. 5 prompt, rapid, quick, immediate, speedy, swift, punctual, timely: Alistair seems to have a ready answer for everything. 6 clever, keen, sharp, agile, deft, skilful, adroit, alert, bright, intelligent, perceptive, quick: It was Carlotta's ready wit that first attracted me. 7 on or at or to hand, handy, available, accessible, at (one's) fingertips, at the ready, close at hand, convenient: I don't have the ready cash for a new car at the moment.

--n. 8 readies. money, cash, wherewithal: If you have the readies, please pay me what you owe me. 9 at the ready. a waiting, on tap, expectant, in position, poised: Keep your pistol at the ready in case there's trouble. b See 8, above.

--v. 10 prepare, make or get ready, set, fit out, equip, organize, psych up: He readied himself as best he could for the ordeal.

ready-made
adj. 1 ready-to-wear, finished, prefabricated, Brit off the peg: Ready-made clothes fit me better than custom-made. 2 convenient, expedient, serviceable, usable, handy, useful, suitable, adaptable; plausible, credible, believable: The storm provided a ready-made excuse for cancelling the appointment. 3 stereotyped, stereotypic(al), hackneyed, time-worn, trite, stale, conventional, unoriginal, stock, pedestrian, routine, run-of-the-mill: His speeches are always full of ready-made clich,s.

real adj. 1 genuine, true, actual, authentic, verified, verifiable, legitimate, right, bona fide, official; legal, legitimate, licit, natural, valid, veritable: He says that his name is Smith, but what is his real name? Her diamonds are not real. It has been proved beyond the shadow of a doubt that he is the real father. 2 genuine, actual, true, existent, authentic, natural; material, physical, tangible, palpable, corporeal: How can one distinguish between the real object and what one sees, which is merely its image? 3 genuine, sincere, heartfelt, true, actual, unfeigned, unaffected, earnest, honest, truthful, legitimate, valid: Deirdre's face is so impassive that it is impossible to tell what her real feelings are. What's the real reason that you're here? 4 genuine, actual, true, loyal, trustworthy, trusted, honest: You are a real friend, and I know I can count on you. 5 intrinsic, actual, true, genuine, proper, essential: The œ150 million sale of the company fell significantly below its real value.

--adv. 6 See really, below.

realistic adj. 1 practical, matter-of-fact, down-to-earth, pragmatic, common-sense, sensible, reasonable, level-headed, rational, sane, hard-headed, business-like, no-nonsense, unromantic, unsentimental, tough, tough-minded, Colloq hard-nosed, hard-boiled: Kevin's realistic grasp of the problems may make the company profitable at last. 2 natural, lifelike, true to life, naturalistic, vivid, genuine, real, graphic: This painting is so realistic that it looks like a photograph. Harriet's description was so realistic that I felt I had actually been to Benidorm.

reality n. 1 actuality, fact, truth, genuineness, authenticity, Aristotelianism entelechy: It is important to deal with the reality not the potentiality of the situation. 2 in reality. See really, below.

realization
n. 1 conception, understanding, comprehension, apprehension, awareness, appreciation, perception, recognition, cognizance: Full realization of what he had done finally dawned on him. 2 actualization, consummation, accomplishment, achievement, establishment, fulfilment, materialization, effectuation: The realization of the dream of a united Europe seems possible in the last decade of the 20th century.

realize v. 1 make real, effect, bring about, make happen, make a reality, actualize, accomplish, produce, achieve, fulfil, materialize, effectuate: Many of Leonardo da Vinci's inventions were not realized in his lifetime. 2 understand, appreciate, comprehend, be aware of, conceive of, grasp, perceive, discern, be or become conscious or aware or appreciative of, recognize, see, Colloq catch on (to), cotton (on) to, Brit twig: Did Clare fully realize the consequences of her actions? 3 return, gain, clear, profit, make, earn, bring or take in, net, produce, get: We have realized a substantial profit on the sale of the shares bought when the company was privatized.

really adv. 1 genuinely, actually, truly, honestly, in reality, in actuality, in (point of) fact, as a matter of fact, surely, indeed, absolutely, definitely: Is he really going to do the high-wire act without a net? 2 indeed, actually, absolutely, unqualifiedly, positively, categorically, unquestionably, definitely, undeniably: She is really the musical one in the family. 3 in effect, in reality, actually, in fact, de facto, in the end, at bottom, in the final analysis, at the end of the day, Colloq deep down: Despite the sergeant's protests to the contrary, it was really Andrews who saved the platoon. 4 very, extremely, quite, exceptionally, remarkably, unusually, uncommonly, extraordinarily, exceedingly, Non-Standard real: I saw a really good film last night.

realm n. 1 domain, kingdom, empire, monarchy, principality, palatinate, duchy or dukedom: They searched the realm for a girl whose foot would fit into the glass slipper. 2 territory, area, bailiwick, department, responsibility, jurisdiction: Collecting taxes is not within the realm of our office. 3 area, confines, sphere, limits: Cooperation with foreign companies is certainly well within the realms of possibility.

ream v. drill (out), bore (out), open up, tap: The carpenter reamed three holes in the beam.

reap v. 1 harvest, garner, glean, gather (in), mow, take in or up: The land was fertile, and a bountiful crop was reaped. As ye sow, so shall ye reap. 2 profit, bring in, gain, procure, acquire, get, obtain, take in: It is impossible to reap much when there is so small a margin between cost and selling price.

rear° n. 1 back (part), end, hind part, Nautical stern, Colloq tail (end), fag-end, US and Canadian tag end: The rear of the column was attacked as it marched through the defile. We took seats at the rear of the auditorium. 2 hindquarters, posterior, rump, buttocks, Colloq bottom, behind, backside, rear end, Slang Brit arse, bum, US and Canadian ass, tokus, tochis; Babytalk US and Canadian tushie or tushy or tush, hinie: As he left, he felt someone give him a pat on the rear.

--adj. 3 back, last, end, rearmost, Nautical aft, after, stern: The rear window is all misted over. The troop was bringing up the rear echelon.

rearý v. 1 raise, bring up, care for, nurture, nurse; cultivate, educate, train; breed, produce: They reared six children in that tiny house. Is this where they rear Aberdeen Angus cattle? 2 erect, raise, build, put up, construct, fabricate, create: The family reared an elaborate mausoleum in memory of Lord Percy. 3 raise, lift, put up, upraise, uplift, hold up: He said that ,litism was rearing its ugly head again, and that equality of opportunity was proving a myth.

reason n. 1 justification, argument, case, explanation, rationale, ground(s), pretext, vindication, defence, why (and wherefore), Literary apologia, apology: What reason did they give for confiscating our luggage? 2 judgement, common sense, intelligence, sanity, sense(s), saneness, insight, perspicacity, percipience, understanding, rationality, reasoning, mind, intellect: He must have lost his reason to accuse you of embezzlement. 3 purpose, aim, intention, object, objective, goal, motive, end, point: His reason for leaving now is to be on time for the curtain. 4 excuse, rationalization: Ignorance of the law is not an accepted reason for breaking it. 5 by reason of. because of, on account of, owing to, by virtue of, as a result of; due to: He was declared unfit to stand trial by reason of insanity. 6 within or in reason. reasonable, sensible, justifiable, rational, fitting, proper, acceptable: We will consider any offer for the house that is within reason.

--v. 7 think, conclude, calculate, reckon, estimate, figure (out), work out, deduce, act or think rationally or logically, ratiocinate, use (one's) judgement or common sense, use (one's) head, put two and two together: I reasoned that she would be arriving at the station at that very moment. Roy certainly hasn't lost his powers of reasoning. 8 reason with. argue with, remonstrate with, debate with, discuss with, talk over with, plead with, convince; persuade, dissuade, urge, prevail upon: George is very stubborn and can't be reasoned with.

reasonable
adj. 1 sensible, rational, sane, logical, sober, sound, judicious, wise, intelligent, thinking: I had always thought Philip a reasonable man. 2 credible, believable, plausible, tenable, reasoned, arguable, well-thought-out, well-grounded: Her story about having found the child wandering in the street doesn't sound very reasonable to me. 3 moderate, tolerable, acceptable, within reason, equitable, fair; inexpensive, unexcessive, unextravagant, economical, conservative: Considering inflation, we thought the price increases were reasonable. 4 appropriate, suitable, proper, sensible, right: The car was travelling at a reasonable speed, considering conditions.

reasoning n. 1 thinking, logic, analysis, rationalization: The entire argument falls to pieces because of faulty reasoning. 2 reasons, arguments, premises, rationale, postulate, hypothesis, theory, explanation, explication: His reasoning had no effect on her - she simply refused to listen.

reassure v. comfort, encourage, hearten, buoy (up), bolster, cheer, uplift, inspirit, brace, support, restore confidence to, set or put (someone's) mind at rest, set or put (someone) at ease, settle (someone's) doubts: The minister reassured the public regarding the safety of public transport.

rebate n. 1 discount, reduction, deduction, allowance, mark-down, cut-back, refund, repayment, Colloq US rake-off: This coupon entitles you to a rebate of ten per cent on the purchase of four new tyres. 2 kickback, percentage, rake-off, commission, cut, bribe, graft, Colloq chiefly US payola, US plugola: He gets a rebate of five per cent on every client he refers to the solicitor.

--v. 3 discount, reduce, deduct, mark down, refund, repay; kick back: Periodicals rebate fifteen per cent of their gross advertising revenue to the agencies that place ads.

rebel v. 1 revolt, mutiny, rise up: The people will rebel if subjected to more oppression. 2 Often, rebel against. defy, flout, dare, challenge; disobey, dissent: It is in the nature of young people to rebel against authority and the status quo.

--n. 3 revolutionary, revolutionist, insurgent, insurrrectionist, mutineer, resister, resistance fighter, freedom fighter: We call ourselves fighters for justice, but the unjust call us rebels and traitors. 4 heretic, nonconformist, apostate, dissenter, recusant, schismatic: James's problem was that he was a rebel without a cause.

rebellion n. 1 uprising, revolution, mutiny, insurrection, revolt, insurgence or insurgency: Rebellion is the last recourse against tyranny. 2 insubordination, disobedience, defiance, resistance, rebelliousness, contumacy: Her rebellion against parental authority led her to leave home at sixteen.

rebellious

adj. 1 insubordinate, defiant, mutinous, revolutionary, contumacious, insurgent, insurrectionary, seditious: The more rebellious students organized mass meetings against the university authorities. 2 unmanageable, disobedient, incorrigible, ungovernable, unruly, difficult, refractory, stubborn, obstinate, recalcitrant: They resented being treated as rebellious children.

rebirth n. renaissance or renascence, revival, renewal, reawakening, resurgence, revitalization, resurrection, regeneration, rejuvenation, restoration, new beginning, reincarnation; metempsychosis, palingenesis: The 15th century marked the rebirth of learning in Europe after the so-called Dark Ages.

rebound v. 1 spring back, bounce, recoil, ricochet, resile: The ball rebounded from the goalpost.

--n. 2 bounce, recoil, ricochet, return, comeback, repercussion, backlash, reflex: Carter caught the ball on the rebound.

rebuff n. 1 rejection, snub, check, denial, repulse, refusal, dismissal, defeat, repudiation, slight, discouragement, Colloq cold shoulder, cut, put-down, brush-off, Slang US brush: Ellie's friendly approach was met with an abrupt rebuff.

--v. 2 reject, snub, check, deny, repel, drive away, spurn, repulse, refuse, dismiss, defeat, repudiate, slight, ignore, send (someone) to Coventry, Colloq give (someone) the cold shoulder, cut, put (someone) down, brush (someone) off, give (someone) the brush-off, tell (someone) where to go or get off, tell (someone) where to get lost, Slang give (someone) his or her walking papers, freeze (someone) out , US give (someone) the brush, show (someone) the door: She rebuffed everyone who proposed marriage to her, preferring to remain a spinster.

rebuke v. 1 scold, reproach, admonish, reprove, reprimand, lecture, censure, chide, reprehend, berate, castigate, criticize, take to task, upbraid, revile, Colloq dress down, bawl out, give (someone) a piece of one's mind, haul (someone) over the coals, let (someone) have it, give (someone) hell or what for, tell (someone) off, tell (someone) where to get off, Brit carpet, tear (someone) off a strip, tick (someone) off, wig, blow (someone) up, give (someone) a wigging, US and Canadian rake (someone) over the coals, give (someone) the business, chew out: The headmaster severely rebuked those boys who had violated the school curfew.

--n. 2 scolding, reproach, admonition, reproof, reprimand, lecture, censure, chiding, reprehension, berating, castigation, criticism, upbraiding, revilement, tongue-lashing, Colloq dressing-down, what for, Brit wigging, blow-up or blowing up, Slang hell: Rawlings was let off with nothing more than a rebuke.

rebut v. refute, deny, disprove, confute, invalidate, negate, discredit, belie, contradict, controvert, puncture, expose, destroy, ruin, devastate, Colloq shoot full of holes, knock the bottom out of, shoot down, blow sky-high: We have all the evidence needed to rebut the contention that our client was anywhere near the scene of the crime.

rebuttal n. answer, reply, retort, response, rejoinder, counter-argument, riposte, retaliation, denial, refutation, contradiction, confutation, Colloq comeback: In rebuttal, the defence tried to prove that the witness for the prosecution had been bribed.

recalcitrant

adj. stubborn, obstinate, wilful, defiant, refractory, headstrong, perverse, contrary, contumacious, mutinous, rebellious, fractious, unruly, unmanageable, ungovernable, uncontrollable, wayward, insubordinate, intractable, unsubmissive, unyielding, unbending, adamant, immovable, inflexible, stiff, firm: Recalcitrant students who refuse to obey the rules risk expulsion.

recall v. 1 remember, recollect, think back to, reminisce over or about, call to mind: I like to recall the happy days we had at Biarritz. 2 withdraw, retract, call back, summon: The legions guarding the frontier provinces were recalled to Rome. 3 rescind, cancel, annul, nullify, retract, withdraw, revoke, recant, take back, call back; disavow, disown, deny: Despite the fact that you might have been hasty, you cannot recall your promise.

--n. 4 memory, recollection, remembering, remembrance: He had a loving and near-photographic recall of their holiday in the Alps. 5 withdrawal, recantation, cancellation, revocation, annulment, nullification, recision, rescission, retraction, repeal, disavowal, denial: The decision was made without any possibility of recall. 6 withdrawal, retraction, return: The manufacturer's recall of the shipment of defective toasters was voluntary.

recant v. recall, forswear, deny, rescind, repudiate, disavow, disclaim, withdraw, revoke, retract, forsake, abandon, apostasize, renounce, abjure, take back: He was given three days to recant: otherwise, he would be executed for heresy.

recapitulate
v. summarize, sum up; repeat, go over (again), reiterate, restate, review; recount, enumerate, recite, relate, list, Colloq recap: I shall begin by recapitulating some of the issues which I covered in my last lecture.

recede v. 1 ebb, subside, fall or go or move back, abate, return, withdraw, retreat, back up: As the flood waters receded, people began to go back to their homes. 2 diminish, lessen, decline, dwindle, shrink, wane, fade, become more distant or less likely: The likelihood of our being rescued receded with each passing day.

receipt n. 1 sales receipt, register receipt, sales slip, ticket, stub, counterfoil, proof of purchase, voucher: Any request for a return or exchange must be accompanied by a receipt. 2 delivery, acceptance, reception, arrival: He has acknowledged receipt of the merchandise. 3 receipts. income, proceeds, gate, takings, gains, return, Colloq take: The receipts from ticket sales were below expectations.

receive v. 1 get, obtain, come by, collect, take (into one's possession), accept, be given, acquire, come into, inherit, gain, profit, make: She received a large sum of money from the sale of the house. What will he receive when his aunt dies? 2 earn, be paid, make, draw, gross, net, clear, pocket, Colloq take home, walk off or away with, US pull down: He receives a bigger weekly salary than I make in a year. 3 greet, meet, welcome; show in, give entr,e, let in, admit: We received our guests in the foyer. 4 experience, undergo, endure, suffer, bear, sustain, be subjected to, meet with: In return for helping him all I received was a punch in the nose. 5 gather, hear, learn, ascertain, be told, be informed or notified of, find out, pick up: We only received the information yesterday that you were coming to stay for a month.

recent adj. late, latest, new, just out, brand-new, fresh; current, modern, up to date, late-model: This feature is now supplied as standard on all our more recent models. Recent arrivals will be interviewed by the committee.

receptacle
n. container, holder, repository; box, tin, can, case, casket, chest, reliquary, vessel, bag, basket: Please put the rubbish into the receptacle. She kept the diamond in a velvet-lined receptacle which she always carried with her.

reception n. 1 welcome, greeting, treatment, reaction, response: My suggestion that we open a bottle of champagne met with a warm reception. 2 party, levee, social, soir‚e, function; opening, preview, vernissage, Colloq do: Would you like to go to a reception at the new art gallery next week?

receptive adj. 1 open, hospitable, amenable, pervious, persuasible, tractable, flexible, pliant, interested, willing, responsive: I have always found Peggy receptive to suggestions on improving productivity and efficiency. 2 quick, alert, perceptive, astute, intelligent, keen, sharp, bright, sensitive: Julia has a receptive mind.

recess n. 1 alcove, niche, nook, cranny, bay, hollow: The statuette fits perfectly in that recess outside the library. 2 respite, rest, interlude, time off, break, intermission, breather, breathing-spell, pause; holiday, vacation: A brief recess has been scheduled to allow us to relax before continuing. 3 recesses. innermost reaches, corners, secret places, depths, penetralia: I searched for her name in the recesses of my mind.

recession n. set-back, (economic) downturn, slump, decline, dip, depression: The slowing of the economy led to a recession which soon deepened into a depression.

recipe n. 1 formula, prescription: Elizabeth gave me a marvellous recipe for chocolate cake. 2 plan, procedure, method, approach, technique, way, means, system, programme, modus operandi, Colloq US MO: The minister insists that his recipe for conquering inflation will work.

recipient n. receiver, beneficiary, heir or heiress, legatee: Who is the current recipient of her favours?

reciprocal
adj. mutual, exchanged, returned, complementary, correlative, common, shared, joint, requited: The reciprocal courtesies enjoyed among our neighbours benefit us all.

reciprocate
v. repay, recompense, requite, exchange, return, trade, match, equal, correspond: You have always been very kind to me and I want to reciprocate in any way I can.

recital n. 1 (solo) concert, performance, musicale, presentation, show, entertainment: We have tickets to a recital for that night. 2 report, narration, account, recitation, description, relation, telling, recounting, narrative, rendition, interpretation, version, recapitulation, rehearsal, repetition, Colloq recap: A reporter who was on the flight provided us with a recital of the events leading up to the crash.

recitation
n. 1 reciting, performance, reading, monologue: At the age of four Simon delighted his parents with his recitation of 'The Charge of the Light Brigade'. 2 See recital, 2, above.

recite v. 1 quote, repeat, present: In the old days, children were often called upon to recite poems they had learned by heart. 2 report, narrate, recount, relate, tell, describe, detail, chronicle, list, share, recapitulate, repeat, Colloq recap: Again I recited every particular of the hold-up that I could recall.

reckless adj. careless, rash, thoughtless, incautious, heedless, foolhardy, imprudent, unwise, injudicious, impulsive, irresponsible, negligent, unmindful, foolish, devil-may-care, daredevil, wild, breakneck, dangerous, madcap, mad, hare-brained: I won't go with Oliver because he's a reckless driver.

reckon v. 1 Often, reckon up. calculate, compute, add (up), figure (up), tally (up), sum up, total (up), work out or up: If you reckon up the bill, I'll pay it at once. 2 include, count, number, enumerate, list, name, consider, account, judge, deem, look upon, regard, view, think of, hold, gauge, estimate, appraise, value, rank, rate, class: I have always reckoned Arthur as being among my closest friends. 3 suppose, think, assume, presume, dare say, venture, imagine, fancy, consider, conclude, be of the opinion, US or colloq guess: She reckoned that no one could accuse her of idle chatter. 4 reckon on or upon. count on, rely on, depend on, lean on, trust in, take for granted, Colloq bank on: I was reckoning on your help, and I hope you won't disappoint me. 5 reckon with. a settle (accounts) with, take care of, look after, see or attend to, deal with, handle, pay attention to, think about: I have to go now, but I'll reckon with you later. b take into account or consideration, consider, contemplate, account for, remember, bear in mind: He thought he had got away with it, but he failed to reckon with Inspector Harris of the CID.

reckoning n. 1 counting, calculating, calculation, computation, enumeration, addition: The reckoning of Old Style dates used the Julian calendar. 2 bill, account, invoice, US check, Colloq chiefly US and Canadian tab: If you let me have the reckoning, I'll pay it with my credit card. 3 (last) judgement, retribution, final account(ing) or settlement, doom: On the day of reckoning we must all face the music.

reclaim v. restore, recover, rescue, redeem, salvage, save, regain, retrieve, regenerate, rejuvenate: Much of the farmland was reclaimed from the sea.

recline v. lie (down), lie back, lean back, lounge, rest, repose, sprawl, loll, stretch out: Just recline on the sofa and make yourself comfortable.

recluse n. hermit, anchorite or anchoress, monk or nun, eremite: For the past ten years, he has been living the life of a recluse.

reclusive adj. solitary, lone, secluded, isolated, eremitic(al), hermitic, anchoritic, monastic, cloistered, sequestered, retiring, shut off: She insists that she enjoys her reclusive existence.

recognition
n. 1 identification, detection: Her recognition of the man on TV led to his arrest. 2 acknowledgement, notice, attention, cognizance, acceptance, awareness, perception, admission; honour, appreciation: The award was a recognition of his contributions to scientific knowledge.

recognize v. 1 identify, detect, place, recall, remember, recollect, know (again): I recognized him from seeing his picture in the newspaper. 2 acknowledge, perceive, understand, realize, see, admit, accept, own, concede, allow, grant, appreciate, respect, be aware of: He refuses to recognize that he is responsible for his own actions. 3 approve, sanction, endorse, accept, validate, ratify: A totalitarian government refuses to recognize the rights of the individual. 4 honour, give recognition to, salute, show gratitude or appreciation, reward, distinguish, pay respect, do homage: The society recognizes Dr Jackson for his many contributions to science.

recoil v. 1 jerk or jump or spring back, start, flinch, wince, shrink, blench, balk or baulk, shy (away) (from): He recoiled when confronted with the evidence of the gruesome experiments with live animals. 2 rebound, bounce back, resile, kick back: When fired, the gun recoiled, bruising his shoulder.

--n. 3 kick, rebound, repercussion, backlash: He was unprepared for the violent recoil of the old gun.

recollect v. recall, remember, call to mind: Now that you mention it, I do recollect your asking me to buy some milk when I went out.

recollection
n. memory, recall, remembrance, impression, reminiscence: My brother's recollection of our grandparents is quite different from mine.

recommend v. 1 counsel, advise, guide, urge, exhort, suggest, advocate, propose, (put) forward, propound, persuade: He recommended that the entire system should be changed. 2 endorse, praise, commend, mention favourably, vouch for, second, subscribe to, back, push, favour, approve, underwrite, stand up for, support, promote, Colloq tout, plug: I wish Charles would stop recommending his brother-in-law for a job with us. 3 make attractive or advisable or interesting or acceptable: Wendover has little to recommend it as a tourist spot.

recommendation
n. 1 counsel, advice, guidance, urging, exhortation, direction, encouragement, suggestion, prompting, advocacy, proposal: It was on your recommendation that we tried that restaurant. 2 endorsement, praise, commendation, favourable mention, backing, blessing, approval, approbation, support, promotion, good word, testimonial, say-so: The chairman of the board gave Caswell's brother-in-law his personal recommendation.

reconcile v. 1 get or bring (back) together, unite, reunite, settle or resolve differences between, restore harmony between, make peace between, placate, make compatible: Do you think that a marriage counsellor could help reconcile John and Martha? 2 resign, submit, accommodate, adjust: Lady Mary Wortley Montague wrote that she was reconciled to being a woman when she reflected that she was thus in no danger of ever marrying one.

reconciliation
n. 1 conciliation, appeasement, propitiation, pacification, placation, rapprochement, reconcilement, understanding, d‚tente, reunion, harmony, concord, accord, amity, rapport: It was with great effort that the reconciliation between the two families was finally arranged. 2 compromise, settlement, agreement, arbitration, conformity, compatibility, adjustment: Reconciliation of their differences seems difficult but not impossible.

recondite adj. abstruse, arcane, obscure, esoteric, deep, profound, incomprehensible, unfathomable, impenetrable, undecipherable, opaque, dark, occult, cabbalistic or cabalistic or kabbalistic, inexplicable, enigmatic: I have difficulty following the more recondite aspects of information theory.

reconnaissance
n. survey, examination, scouting, exploration, reconnoitring, investigation, inspection, scrutiny, Slang Brit recce: Their

reconnaissance showed that the enemy forces had withdrawn.

reconnoitre
v. survey, examine, scout (out), scan, explore, investigate, inspect, scrutinize, check out, check up (on), Slang Brit recce: We reconnoitred the territory and reported the enemy troop movements.

record v. 1 write (down), transcribe, document, register, note, make a notation (of), take down, put or set down, log, chronicle, report, itemize, list, enumerate: I recorded the events of the day in my diary. 2 tell of, relate, recount, narrate, recite: The chronicle records an eyewitness account of the battle.

--n. 3 recording, report, document, log, journal, memorandum, note, notation, minute(s), transactions, archive(s), annal(s), chronicle, diary, account, dossier, register, list, catalogue: Patricia has kept a careful record of all the men whose books she has ever read. 4 documentation, data, information, evidence; memorial, memento, souvenir: There is no record of your birth in the church archive. I took away a piece of the Berlin Wall as a record of my visit. 5 (best) performance, track record, accomplishment; time; distance; height: Her records for the 110-metre hurdles and the high jump still stand. 6 accomplishment(s), deed(s), history, reputation, curriculum vitae, CV, Colloq track record: He has a record of being late everywhere. His criminal record is none too savoury. 7 disc, recording, album, release, LP (= 'long playing'), 78, 331/3, 45, EP (= 'extended play'), maxisingle, compact disc, CD, Brit gramophone record, US phonograph record, Colloq single, Slang US platter: We put a jazz combo together and cut a few records last year. 8 off the record. confidential(ly), private(ly), not for publication, secret(ly), in confidence, unofficial(ly), sub rosa: We cannot publish his statement, which was off the record. Off the record, I'll tell you where Hazel is staying.

--adj. 9 record-breaking, extreme: Last week we had a record snowfall.

recount v. 1 relate, narrate, tell, recite, report, communicate, impart, unfold: The old man recounted for us the legend of the two-headed lamb. 2 particularize, review, detail, describe, enumerate, specify: Must I recount every particular all over again?

recoup v. regain, make good, make up, recompense, repay, recover; refund, redeem, reimburse, remunerate: From his profits on the Culpepper deal, he recouped all the losses he had sustained when Cranston Ltd failed.

recourse n. 1 resort, access, entr‚e, admittance, availability: They are completely isolated and without recourse to help from the outside world. 2 resource, backup, reserve, refuge, place to turn, alternative, remedy: The company has no recourse against the authorities.

recover v. 1 regain, get or take or win or make back (again), recoup, repossess, retake, recapture, restore, retrieve, reclaim, redeem: It was impossible to recover the time lost. After a fierce battle, the territory was recovered. 2 get well or better, recuperate, convalesce, mend, return to health, regain one's strength or health, be on the mend, heal, improve, revive, rally, take a turn for the better, get back on one's feet, pull through: It took me a week to recover from the operation. Lucy had a virus, but she's recovering now. 3 save, salvage, deliver, rescue, return, bring back, reclaim, retrieve: They never did recover the gold from the sunken ship.

recovery n. 1 recuperation, convalescence, restoration, improvement, healing, rally, turn for the better; rise, revival, increase, amelioration, bettering, betterment, advance, gain, advance, advancement, Colloq pick-up, comeback: After so serious an illness, Bentley has made a remarkable recovery. Share prices staged a recovery after the reduction in interest rates. 2 retrieval, recouping, repossession, retaking, restoration, reclamation; recapture, redemption: The recovery of the stolen gems was credited to excellent detective work. Hard fighting resulted in the recovery of the land west of the river. 3 salvage, delivery, deliverance, rescue, return, saving, reclamation, retrieval: Recovery of the climbers' bodies from the ravine was very hazardous.

recreation
n. entertainment, amusement, enjoyment, diversion, distraction, fun and games, leisure (activity), pastime, relaxation, sport, play: What do you like to do for recreation? His favourite

recreation is building model aeroplanes.

recrimination
n. counter-accusation, countercharge, retaliation, counter-attack, blaming, aspersion, reprisal: Recriminations for real and imagined ills were continually exchanged throughout their marriage.

recruit v. 1 draft, induct, enlist, enrol, muster, raise, call up, conscript, mobilize, impress, levy: Owing to the nefarious enemy attack, there was little time to recruit men for a strong fighting force.

--n. 2 conscript, trainee, beginner, apprentice, initiate, novice, neophyte, tiro or tyro, US draftee, enlistee, Colloq greenhorn, rookie: The new recruits have to be issued with their uniforms and other gear.

rectify v. correct, revise, redress, put or set right, cure, repair, remedy, improve, emend, fix, adjust, square, ameliorate: What do you intend to do to rectify the damage you have done?

rectitude n. propriety, correctness, morality, uprightness, probity, virtue, decency, goodness, honesty, integrity, incorruptibility, righteousness, principle, good character, respectability, unimpeachability: Fred's unquestioned moral rectitude makes him an outstanding candidate for membership.

recumbent adj. reclining, lying down, flat on one's back, horizontal, lying, reposing, accumbent, decumbent, supine, stretched out; leaning (back): Oscar resumed his recumbent posture, sprawled out on the cushions.

recuperate
v. improve, recover, convalesce, get better, rally, revive, mend, heal, get back on one's feet, regain one's health, pull through, survive, take a turn for the better: Paul went to Ibiza to recuperate from his illness.

recur v. return, happen or occur again, reoccur, repeat, come (back) again, reappear: The condition recurred after a year, and he was obliged to have another operation.

recurrent adj. repeated, recurring, returning, reoccurring, reappearing, frequent, periodic, cyclical, regular, repetitive, repetitious, persistent, incessant, continual, intermittent, habitual, iterative: She told the psychiatrist about her recurrent dream of flying.

redeem v. 1 reclaim, recover, regain, repossess, retrieve, get back, buy back, repurchase; pay off, Brit clear: He went into the pawn shop to redeem the gold watch. 2 rescue, ransom, deliver, free, save, liberate, set free, emancipate, release: He was able to redeem the boy only after paying the kidnappers. 3 exchange, cash (in), collect on, trade in: These coupons must be redeemed before the end of the month. 4 rehabilitate, save, reform, convert, absolve, restore to favour, reinstate: She can be redeemed only by atoning for her sins. 5 make amends for, make up for, atone for, redress, compensate for, offset, make restitution for: Do you think that 200 hours of community service was enough to redeem his crime of snatching handbags in the shopping centre? 6 perform, fulfil, keep, make good (on), discharge, satisfy, abide by, keep faith with, be faithful to, hold to, carry out, see through: Helen is here to redeem her promise to help at the charity bazaar.

red-handed
adj. in the (very) act, (in) flagrante delicto, Colloq with one's hand in the till, US with one's hand in the cookie-jar: There's no doubt that Rick did it - he was caught red-handed.

redolent adj. 1 fragrant, sweet-smelling, aromatic, perfumed, odorous, scented, savoury: The entire house was redolent with the odour of pine needles. 2 redolent with or of. reminiscent of, suggestive of, evocative of, remindful of, characteristic of, having the earmarks or hallmark of: The style of the film is redolent of 1930s Hollywood.

reduce v. 1 cut (back), cut down (on), decrease, diminish, moderate, abate, lessen, shorten, truncate, abbreviate, abridge, curtail, crop, trim, compress, restrict, limit, stunt: We must reduce expenses this year. 2 ease (up on), let up (on), decrease, mitigate, tone down, slacken up (on): It will reduce the burden of your costs if you share with me. 3 lose weight, slim (down), diet, trim down, Chiefly US slenderize: You'll have to reduce to fit into that dress, Betty. 4 change, modify, adjust, turn, convert; break down or up, grind, rub, triturate, pulp, powder: Payment of the debt reduced me to poverty. The first step is to reduce the liquid to a thick extract. 5 cut, decrease, trim, bring down, lower, drop, mark down, slash, Colloq knock down: The prices on these shoes have been reduced for a quick sale. 6 demote, degrade, lower, downgrade, break; humble; Military US and Canadian bust: He was reduced in rank from sergeant to private. 7 diminish, lessen, bring down, depreciate, subdue, belittle, minimize: He was reduced in her estimation when she saw the deprecating way his friends treated him. 8 Medicine set, adjust, reset: The doctor caused little pain when he reduced her dislocated finger.

redundant adj. 1 superfluous, unnecessary, surplus, inessential or unessential, non-essential, unneeded, unwanted, de trop, in excess, excessive: He was made redundant at the age of forty-five and was unable to find another job. 2 wordy, verbose, prolix, over-long, long-winded, repetitious, tautologic(al) or tautologous, circumlocutory, roundabout: The book would be improved if certain redundant passages were improved.

reek v. 1 stink or smell (to high heaven), Slang Brit pong, hum: Allie reeks from cleaning out the stable. 2 smoke, steam: It is because it used to reek so badly that Edinburgh acquired its nickname, 'Auld Reekie'.

--n. 3 stink, stench, fetor or foetor, miasma, mephitis, odour, smell, Slang Brit hum, pong: The reek of rotting vegetation permeated the atmosphere. 4 fumes, smoke, steam, vapour, exhalation, cloud, mist: He delighted in the redolent reek that arose from the haggis.

reel v. 1 stagger, totter, waver, stumble, lurch, falter, roll, rock, sway, flounder, pitch: Chris came reeling down the lane, dead drunk. 2 reel off. list, recite, rattle off, enumerate, review, itemize, name, read off, call off, run through, run over: Under questioning, the suspect began to reel off the names of his accomplices.

refer v. 1 Often, refer to. allude to, make reference to, mention, make mention of, touch on, bring up, advert to, speak of, turn or call or direct attention to, direct to, point to, indicate, specify, name, concern, quote, cite, make a note of, take note of, note: A footnote refers to the author's article on netsukes. 2 assign, hand over, pass on or over, send, direct, commit: I was referred to your office for information about rates. The question will be referred to committee. 3 Usually, refer to. look at, use, study, check, consult, resort to, have recourse to, turn to, appeal to, confer with; talk to, ask, inquire or enquire of, apply to: For information about words, you should refer to a dictionary. Refer to the departmental office for Professor Clarke's address. 4 Usually, refer to. mean, signify, denote, say: What are you referring to?

reference n. 1 allusion, mention, remark, referral, direction, indication, specification, naming, quotation, citation, note, notation, notification, hint, intimation, innuendo, insinuation: I can't find a reference in any footnote. Few readers make use of the bibliographical references in scholarly articles. Her persistent references to my baldness embarrass me. 2 regard, concern, connection, respect, relation, relevance, pertinence: People are selected without reference to race, creed, colour, sex, or age. 3 endorsement, recommendation, testimonial, certification; credentials: I relied on my former employer to give me a good reference. We shall not be needing to take up your references.

refine v. 1 purify, cleanse, clear, clarify, decontaminate: They continued to refine the liquid till all the impurities were gone. 2 cultivate, civilize, polish, improve, elevate, perfect: He is trying to refine his speech by getting rid of his country accent. 3 hone, sharpen, concentrate, focus, subtilize: We ought to refine our argument for higher wages before approaching the management.

refined adj. 1 cultivated, cultured, civilized, polished, sophisticated, urbane, elegant, well-bred, genteel, courtly, ladylike, gentlemanly, polite, courteous, mannerly, well-mannered, gracious, gentle, noble, aristocratic, dignified, elevated, Colloq posh: It is seldom that I find myself in such refined company. 2 subtle, discriminating, discerning, sensitive, fastidious, nice, precise, exacting, cultured, educated, cultivated, knowledgeable, advanced, sophisticated: Her taste in the visual arts is fairly refined, but she knows little about music. 3 exact, precise, fine, subtle, sensitive, nice, sophisticated: In his poetry one encounters an extremely refined use of metaphor. These new devices are far more refined than any previously available. 4 purified, clarified, cleansed, pure, clean; distilled: Only refined chemicals may be used in pharmaceuticals.

refinement

n. 1 culture, polish, elegance, sophistication, urbanity, urbaneness, breeding, cultivation, gentility, propriety, courtliness, civility, politeness, politesse, delicacy, tact, diplomacy, finesse, suavity, suaveness, taste, tastefulness, discrimination, discernment, sensitivity: He drank thirstily, with no pretence at refinement. 2 subtlety, nicety, nuance, distinction, detail, fine point, delicacy, minutia; fastidiousness, finickiness: The latest version contains refinements that are beyond the appreciation of all but a few. 3 refining, purification, purifying, clarification, clarifying, cleaning, cleansing; filtration, distillation: The sugar must undergo refinement before being sold commercially. 4 improvement, betterment, bettering, enhancement, development, perfection: She is working on the refinement of her technique before performing in public.

reflect v. 1 mirror, send or throw back, reproduce, return; echo: The smooth surface of the lake reflected the sunlight. The radio waves are reflected and focused by this parabolic dish. 2 show, demonstrate, exhibit, illustrate, exemplify, reveal, lay bare, expose, display, disclose, bring to light, uncover, point to, indicate, suggest, evidence: They say that your true emotions are reflected in your dreams. His crime reflects the depths of depravity to which a person can sink. 3 Often, reflect about or on. think (about or over or on), contemplate, muse (about or on), consider, ponder (about or over or on), deliberate (on or over), ruminate or meditate (about or on or over), cogitate (about or on or over); mull over, weigh, evaluate, examine: I was just sitting here reflecting. I was reflecting on what you said about wanting to quit your job. 4 reflect on or upon. result in, end in, bring, attract, cast, throw: The success of the team reflects credit on the coach.

reflection

n. 1 image, echo, Brit reflexion: Sonar works by detecting the reflection of generated sound waves. 2 thought, thinking, meditation, meditating, consideration, cogitation, rumination, deliberation, deliberating, pondering, study, cerebration: After a moment's reflection, I arrived at the same conclusion as you had. 3 aspersion, imputation; effect: Any reflection on his reputation might harm his career. 4 result, sign, token, symbol, mark; evidence, testimony, testament, proof, substantiation, corroboration: Her tears are a reflection of how she feels about having betrayed me.

reflective

adj. reflecting, thoughtful, pensive, contemplative, meditating, musing, meditative, cogitating, cogitative, ruminating, deliberative, deliberating, pondering: I found Alan in a reflective mood, staring out of the window.

reform v. 1 improve, better, ameliorate, meliorate, emend, rectify, correct, mend, repair, fix, remedy, redo, revise, revolutionize, rehabilitate, remodel, refashion, renovate, reorganize, rebuild, recover: The first thing to be done was to reform the political system. 2 mend one's ways, turn over a new leaf, Colloq go straight: After three convictions in as many years, there seemed little chance that he would reform.

--n. 3 improvement, betterment, amelioration, melioration, emendation, rectification, correction, rehabilitation, change, modification, perestroika, reorganization, renovation, recovery: Many believe that prison reform would reduce crime by second offenders. The many reforms introduced by the president were condemned by hard-line party members.

reform school

n. Brit youth custody centre, CHE (= 'community home (with education on the premises')), Formerly Borstal, approved school, US reformatory: He was sent to a reform school because of his persistent misbehaviour.

refrain° v. 1 Usually, refrain from. keep (from), forbear, abstain (from), eschew, avoid: Whatever you do, refrain from whistling on board his boat. 2 stop, cease, give up, discontinue, desist, quit, leave off, renounce: You must refrain from calling the headmaster, 'Pops', even if he is your father.

refrainý n. melody, song, tune, chorus, burden, reprise: It was one of those long boring folk songs with a refrain that we were all supposed to join in.

refresh v. 1 enliven, renew, revive, freshen (up), resuscitate, bring back to life, breathe new life into, invigorate, vitalize, energize, brace, fortify, exhilarate, revitalize, reinvigorate, reanimate: I felt fully refreshed after a short nap. 2 arouse, rouse, awaken, waken, reawaken, stimulate, jog, prod, activate: Would you mind refreshing my memory as to when and where we last met? 3 fix up, repair, redo, revamp, overhaul, spruce up, recondition, renovate, refurbish, refurnish; renew, restock, restore: All the rooms in the hotel have been recently refreshed. We took the opportunity of the ship's arrival to refresh our supplies.

refreshing
adj. invigorating, stimulating, bracing, exhilarating, fresh, inspiriting, fortifying, tonic, like a breath of fresh air, rejuvenating, enlivening, vitalizing, revitalizing; cooling, thirst-quenching, slaking: It's refreshing to be around young people. I would love a cool refreshing glass of beer right now.

refreshment
n. 1 Usually, refreshments. nourishment, nutriment, sustenance, restorative, food, drink(s), edibles, eatables, bite, snack(s), titbit(s), Slang grub, eats, chow, nosh: Will they be serving refreshments after the meeting? 2 stimulation, invigoration, exhilaration, tonic, rejuvenation, enlivenment, revival, restoration, renewal, resuscitation, fortification, reinforcement: The library provides an oasis of mental refreshment.

refrigerate
v. cool, chill, keep cool or cold or chilled, ice, freeze: The souffl, must be refrigerated for three hours to allow it to set.

refuge n. 1 sanctuary, shelter, haven, asylum, protection, cover, retreat, harbour, security, safe house, stronghold, citadel, bolt-hole, hideaway, hide-out, Colloq hidy-hole or hidey-hole: The abandoned mine served as a refuge from the storm. 2 excuse, pretext, resort, recourse, ruse, trick, stratagem, subterfuge, dodge, evasion, expedient: Patriotism is often the last refuge of a scoundrel.

refugee   n. fugitive, runaway, escapee, displaced person, DP, exile, ,migr,: The problem of the refugees was most acute after the war.

refurbish v. restore, refurnish, redecorate, clean (up), polish, renew, renovate, spruce up, remodel, refit, overhaul, repair, recondition, revamp, rebuild, Colloq do up, US fix up: The person who bought the house refurbished it completely, at enormous expense.

refusal   n. 1 denial, rejection, disapproval, turn-down: She pleaded against the grand vizier's refusal to grant amnesty to her brother. 2 option, choice, privilege, disposal: We were promised first refusal on the house should it come on the market.

refuse°   v. 1 decline, reject, spurn, repudiate, turn down, rebuff, give (something) the thumbs down, US turn thumbs down on, Colloq pass by or up: They refused our application to build a hotel here. Did he actually refuse a knighthood? 2 deny, deprive (of), withhold, disallow, not allow or permit: They refused me my right to vote.

refuseý   n. rubbish, sweepings, waste, litter, dust, dirt, dregs, dross, garbage, debris, detritus, cast-offs, junk, Chiefly US trash: Refuse collection is scheduled for once a week.

regal   adj. 1 royal, kingly, queenly, princely, fit for or befitting a king or queen, noble, lordly, sovereign, majestic, imperial, stately, splendid, magnificent, grand, resplendent, palatial, exalted: The regal throne was decorated with gold and precious stones. 2 disdainful, haughty, proud, scornful, contumelious, contemptuous, derisory, derisive, pompous, lordly: She was dismissed with a regal wave of the hand.

regale   v. entertain, amuse, delight, divert, indulge, please, gratify, captivate, fascinate, entrance, enchant, spellbind, bewitch, charm, enrapture: She regaled them with entertaining tales of her travels.

regalia   n. finery, decorations, insignia, emblems, accoutrements, furnishings, apparatus, gear, paraphernalia, trappings, tackle, appurtenances, equipment, equipage: The Bishop was dressed in full regalia with mitre and crook.

regard v. 1 view, look at or upon or on, observe, note, notice, watch, eye, keep an eye on, gaze at or upon, stare at: The children regarded the magician's performance with great interest. 2 contemplate, consider, perceive, view, look upon or on, treat: The lion looked at me as if he regarded me as his dinner. Smith appears to regard his appointment as treasurer as a licence to steal. 3 respect, esteem, value: Gwen's friends regard her very highly indeed. 4 consider, view, look upon or on, think (of), judge, deem, rate, believe (to be), gauge, see, pay heed or attention to, esteem, account, take into account, imagine, reckon, evaluate: I don't regard her as a likely suspect. He regards his professor as his mentor. 5 concern, relate to, be relevant to, pertain to, apply to, refer to, affect, have (a) bearing on, bear on or upon, involve, have to do with, go for: Our discussion regarded the disappearance of œ10 from petty cash.

--n. 6 reference, relation, relevance, relevancy, association, pertinence, application, bearing, connection, link, tie-in: We would like to talk to you with regard to your application for the post of assistant editor. 7 respect, consideration, attention, reverence, veneration, awe, deference, honour, favour, esteem, high opinion, approval, approbation, appreciation, admiration, affection, fondness: They have no regard for the law. 8 point, particular, respect, aspect, detail, matter: In this regard, I must take your past record into consideration. 9 care, concern, thought, consideration, respect, sympathy, feeling, sentiment; heed, attention, notice, mind: The police behave as if they have no regard for the safety of the hostages. This work reflects the artisan's regard for detail. 10 regards. best wishes, good wishes, compliments, greetings, respects, salutations, Archaic devoirs: Please give my regards to your father.

regarding adj. concerning, about, respecting, with regard to, with respect to, with reference to, on or in the matter of, pertaining to, on the subject of, apropos, re, Law in re, Archaic or Scots anent, Dialect anenst: We have received your letter regarding poor service. Regarding your claim, the processing of it has been delayed because you failed to sign the form.

regardless

adj. 1 Sometimes, regardless of. despite, notwithstanding; in spite of, heedless of, Non-Standard irregardless: Regardless of her father's protestations, she continued to go out with William.

--adv. 2 notwithstanding, nevertheless, no matter what, in any event, in any case, at all events, anyway, anyhow, Non-Standard irregardless: She heard his threats but is going out with William regardless.

regime n. r‚gime, regimen, reign, government, rule, regulation, administration, direction, order, leadership, management, system, discipline: Persistent offenders were given harsh penalties under the new regime.

regiment v. discipline, order, organize, systematize, whip into shape, standardize, regulate, control: I dislike the way management regiments people in this establishment, as if they were schoolchildren.

region n. 1 district, area, zone, territory, division, locality, sector, section, tract, part, dominion, precinct, province, quarter, department: Each region is under the suzerainty of a powerful dictator. 2 sphere, territory, domain, province, field, ambit, pale, jurisdiction, bailiwick: She is an expert in the region of climatology.

register n. 1 record, roll, roster, rota, catalogue, annal(s), archive(s), journal, daybook, diary, appointment book, calendar, chronicle, schedule, programme, directory, ledger, file, index, inventory, list, listing, poll, tally,: The council holds a register of all houses sold since 1900 with the names of both sellers and buyers. 2 cash register, till, money box, cash-box: The money in the register does not agree with the figures for receipts.

--v. 3 record, write or jot or take or put or set down, list, enrol, sign in or on or up, enter, catalogue, log, index, chronicle, note, make or take note (of): All transactions must be registered. 4 show, display, express, indicate, manifest, reveal, betray, divulge, record, reflect: James pretended to like my book, but his contempt for it was registered on his face. 5 make known, inform of, advise, transmit, communicate, record, note, make note of, report, write down, minute: I wish to register my disapproval of the way prisoners are treated here. 6 check in, sign in or on, log in: In the US, all aliens are required to register each year in January. We registered in the hotel as man and wife. 7 Sometimes, register with or on. sink in, impress, become apparent (to), make an impression (on), come home (to), get through (to); dawn on or upon, occur to: I heard what you said, but it just didn't register. The name didn't register with me at first, but I now know who you are. 8 indicate, read, mark, represent, measure, point to, specify, exhibit, show, manifest: The earthquake registered 7 on the Richter scale.

regret   v. 1 rue, mourn, lament, bemoan, bewail, repent, be or feel sorry for, feel remorse for, feel or be remorseful over, be or feel upset, never forgive oneself, deplore, deprecate, weep or cry over: You will regret speaking to me that way! The management regrets any inconvenience caused by the redecoration of the restaurant.

--n. 2 Sometimes, regrets. repentance, guilt, sorrow, disappointment, contrition, remorse, regretfulness, (pang or pangs of) conscience, self-reproach, self-condemnation, qualm, second thoughts, rue, ruefulness, grief, woe, sadness, mournfulness, Literary dolour: He felt no regret for his evil deeds. Do you ever have any regrets over the way you treated him? 3 regrets. refusal, non-acceptance, non-consent, US turn-down: Thank you for the invitation, but I must tender my regrets.

regretful adj. rueful, mournful, sad, repentant, guilty, sorry, sorrowful, disappointed, contrite, remorseful, apologetic, penitent: He was most regretful for the way he had behaved.

regrettable

adj. lamentable, deplorable, woeful, sad, distressing, upsetting, unhappy, unfortunate, unlucky, too bad, awful, terrible, execrable, reprehensible, wrong, shameful, shaming, Colloq tough, rough: It is regrettable that he had the car crash, but he had been warned about drinking and driving.

regular adj. 1 routine, ordinary, common, everyday, customary, accustomed, wonted, commonplace, normal, usual, traditional, time-honoured, conventional, typical, habitual, natural, familiar, standard, predictable, scheduled, fixed, unvarying, invariable, methodical: The attack occurred while Eric was taking his regular evening stroll. 2 scheduled, routine, systematic, ordered, steady, consistent, rhythmic(al), automatic, uniform, periodic, cyclic(al); hourly, daily, weekly, hebdomadal, semi-weekly, biweekly, fortnightly, semi-monthly, monthly, bimonthly, seasonal, quarterly, semi-annual, annual: The patrol made their regular rounds, as usual. The printers' strike might delay regular publication of the magazine. 3 symmetrical, uniform, even, even-sided, equal-sided, equilateral, equal-angled, equiangular; harmonious: Any six-sided plane figure is a hexagon, but if it has six equal angles and six sides equal in length, it is a regular hexagon. 4 undistorted, even, well-proportioned, proportional, symmetrical, classic: He was classically good-looking, with regular features. 5 even, smooth, level, straight, uniform, uninterrupted, unvarying, continuous, flat, plane, plumb: The surface of the wing is regular except for the spoilers. 6 dependable, methodical, (well-)regulated, (well-)ordered, orderly; proper, correct, legal, official, bona fide, legitimate, established, recognized, orthodox, approved, Colloq kosher, OK or okay: Everything about the council election was entirely regular. 7 usual, expected, normal, habitual, accustomed, familiar: Our regular doctor was on holiday, and we had to see a locum. 8 acceptable, accepted, estimable, fine, good, likeable, popular, pleasant: We all consider Bob to be a regular fellow and a friend. 9 complete, utter, thoroughgoing, unmitigated, unalloyed, unqualified, consummate, perfect, thorough, absolute, well-known, acknowledged: The man is a regular dunce when it comes to repairing cars. 10 permanent, career: She's in the regular navy. 11 conventional, usual, common, conformable, ordinary, systematic, Colloq US ruly: Regular English verbs form their past by the addition of -d or -ed to the infinitive.

--n. 12 fixture, habitu,, (steady) customer, patron, client, frequenter: Jan has been a regular at the Star and Garter pub for years.

regularity

n. 1 consistency, constancy, uniformity, evenness, sameness, symmetry, balance, harmony, harmoniousness, orderliness, order, stability, predictability: To the casual observer, nothing interferes with the regularity of planetary movement. 2 routine, reliability, dependability, steadiness, invariability; pace, rhythm, cadence: Mr Warbridge listens to the six o'clock evening news with unfailing regularity. Our business depends on the regularity of the postal service. The regularity of the ticking of the clock is driving me mad.

regulate v. 1 adjust, modify, modulate, control, balance, set, fix, order, govern, organize, maintain, manage: The mixture of air and fuel in modern cars is regulated by an injection system. The responsibility of this department is to regulate prices. 2 control, monitor, govern, run, operate, administer, handle, guide, steer, conduct, direct, supervise, superintend, oversee, manage: The foreman's job is to regulate the work on the assembly line.

regulation

n. 1 adjustment, modification, modulation, control, balance, balancing, setting, fixing, organization, maintenance: The regulation of the temperature is accomplished by the thermostat. 2 rule, ruling, law, code, by-law or bye-law, edict, order, ordinance, statute, decree, directive, dictate: There are strict regulations governing the sale, disposal, and movement of radioactive materials. 3 edict, ukase, pronouncement, fiat, (papal) bull, proclamation: A regulation was issued against meetings of more than five people.

--adj. 4 standard, accepted, official, required, prescribed, mandatory: The soldier was not wearing a regulation uniform. 5 usual, normal, ordinary, customary, typical: If you use anything but regulation accessories, the guarantee will be null and void.

regurgitate

v. vomit, disgorge, return one's dinner, spew up, (of birds of prey) cast; retch, gag; Colloq throw up, upchuck, Slang puke, US spiff one's biscuits, barf: The child regurgitated its dinner all over the inside of the car.

rehabilitate

v. 1 restore, save, reclaim, rescue, redeem, re-establish, reinstate, re-educate, reorient, reform, US straighten out, Colloq US rehab: They have had marked success at rehabilitating criminals. 2 renew, redecorate, renovate, refurbish, restore, fix (up), repair, reconstruct, rebuild, change, transform: Sam has plans to rehabilitate vintage cars for a living.

rehash v. 1 rework, go over again, restate, redo, rearrange, reshuffle, reuse: Heverton has nothing new to offer - he just keeps on rehashing the same old material.

--n. 2 reworking, restatement, redoing, rearrangement, reshuffle, reshuffling, reuse, rewording: Her speech was a mere rehash of what she's said scores of times already.

rehearsal n. 1 practice, exercise, dry run, drill, run-through, read-through, dress rehearsal, Technical undress rehearsal: Is there a rehearsal of the school play scheduled for tonight? 2 narration, recounting, relation, recital, telling, description, enumeration, account, repetition, repeat: Do we have to listen to yet another rehearsal of your great-uncle's exploits in the war?

rehearse v. 1 practise, exercise, run through, read through, study, repeat: Sorry, Annie, but we are going to have to rehearse the scene till you get it right. 2 repeat, relate, recite, tell, describe, recount, review, go through or over, review, report, recapitulate, Colloq recap: I shall go mad if I hear him again rehearse the events leading up to the final acceptance of his novel.

reign n. 1 rule, sovereignty, ascendancy, power, hegemony, influence, command, suzerainty, administration, jurisdiction, leadership, government, direction, control, domination, mastery; kingdom, monarchy, empire: During her reign, the kingdom saw its greatest prosperity.

--v. 2 rule, control, command, govern, lead, direct, dominate, supervise, manage, hold sway, wear the crown, wield the sceptre, occupy the throne, Colloq run the show, rule the roost, Slang call the shots: During the sixth Egyptian dynasty, Pepi II Nefektare reigned for 94 years, the longest in recorded history. 3 prevail, be or become prevalent, predominate, hold sway, obtain, be or become rampant, be or become universal: An argument broke out, which developed into a fist fight, and soon pandemonium reigned.

reimburse v. repay, recompense, refund, pay back, compensate, remunerate, indemnify: Don't worry - we'll reimburse you for any money you spent.

rein n. 1 check, curb, control, restraint, constraint, limitation, harness, bridle, brake: You are going to have to put a rein on your expenses. 2 reins. control, command, control, administration, running, leadership, power, rule, tiller, helm: He should hand over the reins to a younger person.

--v. 3 rein in. check, curb, control, restrain, limit, harness, bridle, restrict, pull back on: You will have to rein in your passions: it is not becoming to behave in this way at your age.

reinforce v. strengthen, buttress, bolster, support, fortify, prop (up), shore up, augment, brace, stay, steel: The bookshelf needs to be reinforced with another bracket, or it'll fall down.

reinforcement
n. 1 buttress, support, prop, brace, stay, bolster: This iron reinforcement ought to be strong enough to secure the wall. 2 strengthening, buttressing, bolstering, shoring (up), augmentation, bracing: This shelf is wobbly and in need of reinforcement. 3 reinforcements. reserves, auxiliaries, men, soldiers, forces, personnel: We cannot hold out till reinforcements arrive.

reiterate v. repeat, restate, iterate, labour, harp on, dwell on, rehash, recapitulate, Colloq recap: I must reiterate my warning to you to be careful.

reject v. 1 decline, refuse, disallow, spurn, veto, turn down, give (something) the thumbs down, set aside, US turn thumbs down (on); deny, repudiate, renounce, rebuff, shun, brush aside, turn a deaf ear to, will not hear of: Jim has rejected my plan for a holiday in Torremolinos. She rejects any suggestion that she might be wrong. 2 refuse, repel, repulse, spurn, rebuff, say no to, turn down, decline, brush aside; jilt, drop, dismiss, throw over, give (someone) the cold shoulder, show (someone) the door, send (someone) away or on his or her or their way, turn one's back on, Slang give (someone) the brush-off or US also the brush, give (someone) his or her walking papers, Brit give (someone) the boot: Ted proposed, but Alice rejected him. 3 throw away or out, discard, disown, jettison, eliminate, scrap, Colloq junk, scratch: The inspector rejects all defective merchandise.

--n. 4 second, irregular, discard, cast-off: The rejects are sold at reduced prices in the factory shop.

rejection n. refusal, denial, repudiation, rebuff, dismissal, spurning, renunciation, turn-down; cold shoulder, Slang brush-off or US also brush, the (old) heave-ho: The union voted for the rejection of management's offer of a 9.2 per cent increase. Her advances were met with rejection.

rejoice   v. delight, exult, glory, celebrate, revel, be happy or delighted or pleased or overjoyed or elated or glad, Colloq be tickled (pink): We all rejoiced to be home once again after the ordeal.

rejuvenate

v. restore, refresh, reinvigorate, revitalize, revivify, renew, reanimate, regenerate, recharge, breathe new life into: I think a week in Barbados would rejuvenate me.

relapse   v. 1 get back, backslide, fall back, lapse, slip back, regress, retrogress, recidivate; go back, return, retreat, revert: Lottie has relapsed into her bad habits. 2 decline, deteriorate, weaken, degenerate, fail, fade, sink, sicken, worsen, get or become worse: Just when we thought he was improving, he relapsed into a coma and died.

--n. 3 backsliding, falling or going back, lapse, lapsing, return, returning, reversion, reverting, regression, regressing, retrogression, retrogressing, recidivism, apostasy: The church's main concern was a relapse into idolatry. 4 decline, deterioration, weakening, degeneration, failing, failure, fading, sinking, worsening: Barry was getting better but has now suffered a relapse.

relate   v. 1 associate, connect, couple, link, tie, ally, correlate, coordinate: Volta first enabled us to relate the forces of chemistry and electricity. 2 recount, narrate, tell, report, present, describe, recite, detail, set forth, communicate, divulge, impart, reveal, delineate, make known, give an account of, rehearse: It was not till years later that Olivia related to me the strange events of that night. 3 apply to, coordinate with, respect, regard, bear upon or on, have a bearing on, have reference to, have to do with, pertain to, refer to, appertain to, belong with or to: Does your comment really relate to the matter in hand? 4 Often, relate to. be in or en rapport with, understand, empathize, sympathize, communicate with, identify with, grasp, comprehend, be in tune with, deal with, handle, cope with, Colloq dig, tune in to, be hip to, be turned on to, be or get into: I have been having trouble relating to my new psychiatrist. Your favourite music is reggae? - Man, I can relate to that.

related adj. 1 associate(d), affiliate(d), connected, coupled, linked, tied up, allied, correlated, coordinate(d), interconnected, interrelated, interdependent, mutual, reciprocal, common, joint, cognate: She and her husband work for related companies. 2 kin, kindred, consanguineous, cognate, agnate; akin: Just how are you two related? Are you cousins?

relation n. 1 relationship, connection, affiliation, association, bearing, link, tie, tie-in, reference, pertinence, interconnection, interdependence, correspondence, kinship: The relation between time and money is rarely disputed these days. 2 kinship, relationship: Just what is your relation to this lady? 3 relative, kinsman or kinswoman, blood relative, in-law, family member: Is she a relation of yours? 4 narration, narrative, telling, recounting, description, report, recital, recitation, delineation, portrayal, story, recapitulation: She amused them all with her relation of what had happened to her that night. 5 in relation to. concerning, about, regarding, respecting, pertaining to, with regard to, with respect to, referring to, with reference to, on or in the matter or subject of, apropos, re, Archaic or Scots anent, Dialect anenst: I should like to talk to you in relation to the matter of company expenses. 6 relations. a sexual intercourse, coitus, sex, criminal conversation; carnal knowledge: It is well known that he had relations with his secretary. b dealings, intercourse, link(s), association(s), liaison, relationship, Colloq doings, truck: We have no relations with that company.

relationship
n. See relation, 1, 2, above.

relative adj. 1 related, connected, associated, allied, affiliated, interconnected, interrelated, pertinent, relevant, germane, applicable; apropos: Your comments are not relative to the matter at hand. 2 Sometimes, relative to. comparative, comparable, proportionate, proportional, commensurate; analogous to, contingent on, dependent on, reliant on, conditioned by, subject to, attendant on, correspondent or corresponding to, provisional on, appurtenant to; subordinate to, ancillary to: Well, as they say, everything is relative. Relative humidity depends on the temperature of the air. The yield is relative to the effort.

--n. 3 See relation, 3, above.

relatively
adv. more or less, somewhat, comparatively, rather, to some degree or extent: Business has been relatively quiet lately.

relax v. 1 loosen, let go, release, let up (on), relieve, ease, reduce, moderate, slacken, remit, Colloq ease up on, slacken up on: He relaxed his grip on the rope and fell to his death on the rocks below. 2 diminish, decrease, lessen, reduce, abate, weaken, mitigate, modify, tone down, moderate, modulate, lighten (up on), check, temper, curb: We must not relax our vigilance. I hope that they don't relax the regulations concerning smoking in the office. 3 ease up, slow down, loosen up, put one's feet up, rest, unbend, Colloq take it easy, unwind: Why not come for a weekend and relax a bit? 4 calm down, cool down, quiet down, stay calm, cool and collected, Colloq take it easy, Slang cool it: You ought to relax and not get so excited.

relaxation
n. 1 ease, repose, rest, leisure, recreation, amusement, entertainment, fun, pleasure, diversion, Colloq R and R ('rest and relaxation'): For relaxation we usually charter a boat and go sailing. 2 easing (up or off), relief, alleviation, abatement, diminution, lessening, mitigation, moderation, slackening, remission, weakening, letting up, Colloq let-up:

What do you think about the proposed relaxation of the laws against pornography?

relaxed adj. nonchalant, easygoing, calm, peaceful, tranquil, serene, pacific, carefree, insouciant, blas,, languorous, languid, devil-may-care, free and easy, happy-go-lucky, mellow, at ease, composed, cool: Richard takes a relaxed view of life.

release v. 1 let go, (set) free, liberate, (set or let or turn) loose, unloose, untie, unchain, unfetter, unshackle, deliver, let out, disenthral, discharge, let off, emancipate, manumit, rescue, save: They kept up a strenuous campaign until all the political prisoners were released. 2 issue, publish, make available, put out, pass out, hand out, come out with, circulate, distribute, disseminate; launch, unveil, present: The government refuses to release information that is considered harmful to its interests. The band's new album will be released tomorrow.

--n. 3 freeing, releasing, liberating, loosing, unloosing, delivering, emancipating, manumitting, rescuing, saving, freedom, liberation, deliverance, discharge, emancipation, manumission, rescue, remission, salvation: The release of the prisoner is scheduled for noon. It would be a great release to be rid of housework. 4 press or publicity release, announcement, publicity, notice, story, report: The press office sent out a release to the media about Randolph's appointment.

relegate v. 1 consign, banish, exile, transfer, dispatch or despatch: Owing to his disagreement with the Foreign Office, Kendall was relegated to some outpost in the Indian Ocean. 2 downgrade, demote: I fear that Corporal Jones has been relegated to private. 3 assign, commit, hand over, refer, transfer, pass on: She relegates most of her everyday correspondence to her secretary for reply.

relent v. relax, soften, yield, give, give way or ground, bend, comply, acquiesce, compromise, capitulate, come round, be merciful, show pity or compassion, melt, show mercy, succumb: They finally relented and allowed me to have visitors.

relentless
adj. 1 unyielding, inexorable, unstoppable, unrelenting, dogged, implacable, inflexible, unbending, unmoving, unmoved,

unrelieved, stiff, hard, stiff-necked, rigid, obstinate, adamant, obdurate, intransigent, determined, unswerving, undeviating, intractable, persevering, steely, tough, intransigent, unsparing, uncompromising, pitiless, unforgiving, ruthless, merciless, cruel, unmerciful, remorseless: The novel is about the relentless horde of Mongols that swept across Europe in the 13th century. 2 non-stop, persistent, incessant, unrelenting, unremitting, unstoppable, perpetual, unfaltering, unfailing, unflagging, unrelieved, unabated, unrelieved, unbroken, continual, continuous, ceaseless, constant, unceasing, steady, habitual, regular: Won't you ever stop your relentless nagging?

relevance n. relevancy, appropriateness, aptness, pertinence, bearing, connection, affinity, tie-in, relation, significance, suitability, suitableness, applicability, application, applicableness: What you just said has no relevance whatsoever to the issue under discussion.

relevant adj. pertinent, appropriate, apt, related, relative, significant, suited, applicable, fitting, proper, germane, akin, allied, associated, apposite, to the point: Alan's suggestion is not strictly relevant to our plans.

reliable adj. dependable, trustworthy, honest, trusty, trusted, principled, conscientious, punctilious, honourable, credible, believable, safe, sure, certain, secure, sound, responsible, predictable, stable, unfailing, infallible, reputable: Would a reliable employee like Susan abscond with the money?

reliance n. confidence, trust, faith, dependence: You may be placing too much reliance on the smoke alarm.

relic n. 1 memento, keepsake, memorial, remembrance, souvenir, heirloom, token, artefact or artifact: It has been argued again and again that the Turin shroud, though old, is not a genuine relic of Christ. 2 remains; fragment, trace, scrap, shard or sherd, remnant: Deep in the jungle, archaeologists unearthed relics of a previously unknown civilization.

relief n. 1 ease, easing, abatement, easement, deliverance, remedy, redress, alleviation, release, remission, assuagement, liberation, recess: We would all welcome relief from this blistering heat. Contributions for the relief of famine in Africa would be most welcome. 2 aid, help, support, assistance, succour; comfort: How many troops can we send for the relief of the besieged garrison? 3 elevation, projection, contrast, prominence; bas-relief or basso-rilievo ('low relief'), mezzo-rilievo ('medium relief'), alto-rilievo ('high relief'): The Greek reliefs brought to England by Lord Elgin are on display at the British Museum. 4 substitute, surrogate, replacement, alternate, locum (tenens), stand-in; understudy, double: I wish that my relief would arrive so I could go home.

relieve v. 1 ease, lessen, reduce, diminish, abate, lift, raise, alleviate, mitigate, palliate, soften, soothe: Business will suffer if nothing is done to relieve the burden of high interest rates. The doctor gave me something to relieve the pain. 2 disburden, free, rid, liberate, disencumber, unburden, rescue, save, release: Winning the lottery relieved me of any immediate worries of poverty. 3 help, aid, assist, support, succour, rescue, save, deliver: Will the cavalry arrive in time to relieve the fort, which is under attack? 4 stand in (for), replace, substitute for, take over for or from, US spell, Colloq sub for: I thought you were coming to relieve me at noon.

religion n. creed, belief, faith; doctrine, dogma: People must be treated equally, regardless of their religion.

religious adj. 1 devout, churchgoing, pious, God-fearing, holy, spiritual-minded: You never struck me as a particularly religious person. 2 scrupulous, exact, precise, conscientious, rigorous, strict, fastidious, meticulous, faithful, punctilious, unerring, unswerving, undeviating: Edmund's work is characterized by religious devotion to detail.

relinquish
v. 1 yield, give up, cede, waive, leave, quit, abandon, drop, forsake, forswear, desert, abdicate, resign, renounce, let go, surrender, vacate, retire from: Richard was forced to relinquish the throne. 2 let go, give up, release, unloose, loose, free: He refused to relinquish his grasp on her arm.

relish n. 1 enjoyment, pleasure, delight, gusto, eagerness, avidity, anticipation, taste, appetite, zest, liking, appreciation, fondness, fancy, partiality, preference: The children attacked the birthday cake with great relish.

--v. 2 enjoy, delight in, take pleasure in, fancy, be partial to, appreciate, savour, look forward to, anticipate: After all that dining out, I'd really relish a home-cooked meal. I don't relish having to tell her she is being made redundant.

reluctance
n. unwillingness, disinclination, aversion, dislike, disrelish, hesitancy: Cooper's reluctance to leave before the end of the play was understandable.

reluctant adj. unwilling, disinclined, averse, hesitant, loath, unenthusiastic, indisposed, opposed, antagonistic; cautious, chary, wary, leery, circumspect, careful: I remember how reluctant you were to try raw oysters, and then you couldn't get enough of them.

rely v. rely on or upon. depend on or upon, lean on or upon, count on or upon, bank on or upon, have confidence in, bet on, trust in, swear by, be sure or certain of: You can rely on Philippa to come through when you need a friend. I am relying on the fact that interest rates are likely to stay at their present levels.

remain v. 1 stay (behind), be left, tarry, linger, wait, Colloq stay put: I remained to help with the washing-up. 2 be left, be there: How many days remain before your trip? 3 stay, continue, carry on, abide; endure, persist, last, persevere: She refuses to remain with him another minute. His last book will remain a monument to his scholarship.

--n. 4 remains. a leavings, remnants, crumbs, debris, detritus, remainder, balance, residue, leftovers, scraps, vestiges, traces, fragments, oddments, odds and ends: The remains of a half-eaten meal were on the table. b body, cadaver, corpse; carcass: The remains of the impala were being picked over by vultures.

remainder n. 1 rest, balance, remains, residue: He spent the remainder of his life in penury. 2 excess, overage, surplus, residue, residuum, leftovers: I have used all I needed and don't know what to do with the remainder.

remaining adj. 1 left (over), extant, outstanding: I did as much as I could in the time remaining. 2 leftover, surviving, residual; unused, uneaten, unconsumed: The remaining books will be sold at auction.

remark n. 1 note, notice, observe, perceive, regard, look at, take notice or note of: His friends remarked his tired and overworked appearance and suggested that he should take a holiday. 2 comment (on or upon), say, observe, reflect, mention, declare, state, assert: Carrie remarked that she had seen Ted the night before.

remarkable

adj. 1 extraordinary, unusual, singular, exceptional, noteworthy, notable, uncommon, incredible, unbelievable, impressive, phenomenal, astonishing, astounding, surprising: With remarkable swiftness the falcon dropped on its prey. 2 striking, distinguished, signal, special, wonderful, marvellous, out of the ordinary, special, unique, significant, outstanding, rare, memorable, unforgettable, never-to-be-forgotten: This novel is truly a remarkable achievement. 3 strange, different, odd, peculiar, curious: Contortionists can do truly remarkable things with their bodies.

remedy n. 1 cure, treatment, therapy, antidote, counteractant, countermeasure, medication, medicament, medicine, prescription, drug, pharmaceutical, cure-all, panacea, nostrum, restorative, specific: What remedy did the doctor recommend? 2 cure, antidote, cure-all, panacea, nostrum, countermeasure, relief, redress, answer, solution: Knowledge is the only remedy for superstition.

--v. 3 cure, treat, heal, mend, restore, relieve, soothe, control, ease, mitigate, alleviate: The ointment will remedy the itching but not the infection causing it. 4 correct, rectify, reform, improve, ameliorate, redress, repair, put or set right, straighten out: How can I remedy a situation that has already gone too far?

remember v. 1 call to mind, bear in mind; recall, recollect: Can you remember her funny little laugh? Yes, I remember. 2 muse (on or about), reminisce over or about, think back on or about, memorialize, commemorate, recognize: He will be remembered for his many achievements. 3 retain, keep in mind, recall: He was unable to remember his own name or where he lived. 4 tip, reward: The Elliotts always remembered the servants at Christmas.

remembrance
n. 1 memory, recollection; reminiscence: My remembrance of her is quite different from yours. 2 memento, reminder, souvenir, keepsake, memorial: I keep this piece of shrapnel as a remembrance of being wounded in the war.

remind v. prompt, cue, cause to remember, jog the memory, put in mind of: Remind me to set the clock back an hour tonight.

reminder n. mnemonic, refresher; cue, prompt: I tied this string round my finger as a reminder, but I don't know of what.

reminisce v. Sometimes, reminisce about. remember, recollect, think back, look back, turn one's mind or thoughts back; call to mind, hark back, return: Most of the time we just sit about and reminisce. The other day we were reminiscing about the time Alex was arrested for shoplifting.

reminiscence
n. Usually, reminiscences. anecdote(s), memory or memories, reflection(s), memoir(s): The Sunday Clarion has paid a six-figure sum to Charlotte for her reminiscences as a cleaner at Whitehall.

reminiscent
adj. Usually, reminiscent of. recalling, redolent of, evocative of, indicative of, suggestive of, similar to, comparable with or to: The odour of burning cabbage is reminiscent of my husband's cooking.

remiss adj. slack, careless, negligent, neglectful, heedless, unheeding, inattentive, unmindful, thoughtless, forgetful, unthinking, slow, indolent, lazy, dilatory, delinquent: You were remiss in failing to turn off the bath water.

remission n. 1 forgiveness, pardon, deliverance, amnesty, reprieve, exoneration, release, absolution, exculpation, indulgence, excuse, exemption, acquittal: As we were granted remission of our crimes, we were freed. 2 diminution, abatement, decrease, lessening, subsidence, alleviation, mitigation, assuagement, ebbing, relaxation, easing: Remission of the disease may occur, but most sufferers deteriorate rapidly.

remit v. 1 send, transmit, forward, dispatch or despatch; pay, compensate, settle, liquidate: We have remitted in full the amount requested. 2 abate, diminish, slacken, decrease, lessen, subside, alleviate, mitigate, assuage, ebb, dwindle, reduce, relax, ease (up or off), fall off: The fever ought to remit on the sixth day.

remittance
n. payment, settlement: allowance, consideration: Remittance was made regularly on the tenth of the month. He lives on remittances he receives from home.

remnant n. 1 scrap, shred, fragment, end, bit, piece, trace, vestige, relic: A silver button was the only remnant of the splendid uniform. 2 leftover, remainder, residue, rest, remains, part: The surviving remnant of the battalion made its way across the desert to Djibouti.

remorse n. regret, repentance, ruefulness, sorrow, woe, anxiety, guilty or bad conscience, pangs of conscience, humiliation, embarrassment, guilt, self-reproach, mortification, shame, contrition, contriteness, penitence, compunction, bitterness: It is impossible to describe the remorse he felt at having run over the little girl's puppy.

remorseful
adj. regretful, repentant, rueful, sorry, apologetic, sorrowful, woeful, anxious, guilty, bad, conscience-stricken, guilt-ridden, humiliated, humbled, embarrassed, mortified, shamefaced, shameful, ashamed, shamed, contrite, penitent, bitter: Harold made a remorseful confession of all his sins.

remorseless
adj. 1 cruel, heartless, callous, harsh, hard-hearted, stony-hearted, savage, merciless, unmerciful, pitiless, ruthless: The heavyweight champion administered a remorseless beating to the challenger. 2 relentless, unrelenting,

unremitting, unstoppable, inexorable, implacable: The remorseless storm thrashed at our tiny vessel, tearing away every last shred of rigging.

remote adj. 1 distant, far-away, far-off, removed, outlying, inaccessible: The more remote the transmitter, the weaker the signal. 2 lonely, isolated, God-forsaken, secluded, out-of-the-way, sequestered, tramontane, ultramontane: They spent their holiday on a remote island in the Indian Ocean. 3 unfamiliar, obscure, arcane, recondite, subtle, alien, far-fetched, unusual, unlikely: Her writing is scattered with references remote to the average reader's experience. 4 unrelated, irrelevant, inappropriate, unconnected, outside: Her conclusions were not remote from what we now know to be the truth. 5 slight, faint, foggy: I haven't the remotest idea what you're talking about. 6 slight, faint, slender, insignificant, slim, small, meagre, outside, poor, inconsiderable, negligible, improbable, unlikely, implausible: There is only a remote chance that the experiment will succeed. 7 aloof, detached, withdrawn, reserved, indifferent, standoffish, abstracted: He keeps himself quite remote from the hurly-burly of everyday life. 8 early, ancient, far-removed, distant: The archaeopteryx is a remote ancestor of modern birds.

removal n. 1 elimination, removing, eradication, taking away: The removal of the wallpaper revealed that the plaster underneath was in very poor condition. 2 extermination, murder, elimination, killing, slaying, assassination, execution, liquidation, eradication, massacre, slaughter, purge, doing away with, Slang bumping off, rubbing out, doing in, US rub-out, wasting: The removal of the finance minister was accomplished by the secret police. 3 dismissal, transfer, transference, transferral, shifting, discharge, throwing over, throwing out, deposition, unseating, dethroning, dethronement, displacement, expulsion, ouster, ousting, riddance, purge, Colloq firing, sacking: The company functions better since the removal of the former chairman. 4 move, transfer, departure, moving: Her removal to a branch office was requested by top management. 5 moving, house-moving: We hired a removal van when we moved to Shropshire.

remove v. 1 take off, doff, shed, cast off: Gentlemen are requested to remove their hats in her presence. 2 take away, get rid of, carry away or off, shift; transfer: When I arrived this morning, my desk had been removed. The threat of war has been removed. Kindly remove your elbows from the table. 3 obliterate, delete, erase, expunge, eradicate, efface, eliminate, take off, wipe or rub out, wipe or rub off, get rid of: Use chemicals to remove the graffiti from the wall. 4 murder, assassinate, kill, slay, execute, exterminate, eliminate, liquidate, eradicate, massacre, slaughter, do away with, dispose of, get rid of, purge, Slang rub or wipe out, do in, bump off, US waste: We brought in some of the boys to remove the competition. 5 discharge, dismiss, depose, unseat, displace, expel, oust, turn out, get rid of, purge, Colloq fire, sack, kick out: Andrews must be removed from his job before he does any more harm. 6 relocate, move, transfer, shift: I removed to a quieter place where I could write in peace. 7 take out, unfasten, detach, disconnect, separate, undo: They have to remove the transmission to overhaul it.

--n. 8 distance, space, interval, separation: They tried to keep the girls and the boys at some remove from one another.

remuneration

n. 1 payment, compensation, salary, wages, earnings, emolument, income, pay, stipend, consideration, reward: What remuneration will she expect to receive if appointed? 2 recompense, repayment, reimbursement, restitution, reparation(s), damages, indemnity, indemnification, redress: Have they received any remuneration for their loss of property during the earthquake?

renaissance

n. renascence, rebirth, revival, reawakening, restoration, resumption, renewal, resurgence, return, regeneration, rejuvenation, new dawn, new birth: The Renaissance is so called because of the return to classical tradition. Hugh seems to have undergone a renaissance since taking that rest cure.

rend v. 1 rip or tear or pull (to pieces or apart or asunder), wrench, mangle, shred: The bully threatened to rend me limb from limb. 2 split, tear, rip, rupture, cleave, split, rive, separate, slice, lacerate: When the balloon was rent from top to bottom, the basket fell to the ground. 3 pain, distress, pierce, stab, smite, wound, afflict, torment, wring, hurt: My heart was rent by conflicting emotions.

render v. 1 depict, picture, represent, reproduce, portray, create, produce, do, execute, make, accomplish, achieve: The artist rendered this portrait of the family from a photograph. 2 make, cause to be or become: The news of winning the lottery rendered me speechless. 3 give (up), yield (up), surrender, relinquish, resign, cede, deliver, hand over, tender, offer, proffer, present, furnish, provide: The inscription on the tomb has still not rendered up its secret. To Caesar will I render my legions and my horse. 4 play, perform: She rendered a fugue most beautifully on a harpsichord. 5 deliver, return: The jury rendered a verdict of Guilty. 6 translate, decode, decipher, transcribe, convert, explain, interpret, put, restate, reword, rephrase: She rendered the passage into idiomatic English. 7 deliver, hand in, present, offer, proffer, furnish, provide, tender: They rendered their invoice for the work already done. 8 Usually, Brit render down. melt, clarify, extract: The fat must be rendered down before it can be used for making soap.

rendering n. depiction, showing, presentation, interpretation, conception, version, rendition, representation, delineation, portrayal, picture: This is the architect's rendering of what the building will look like when completed.

rendition n. 1 performance, interpretation, execution, conception, concept, understanding, construction, reading, rendering: I have never before heard such an exquisite rendition of a Bach cantata. 2 See rendering, above.

renegade n. 1 deserter, turncoat, heretic, defector, traitor, apostate, Archaic renegado: The renegade has organized a conspiracy against us.

--adj. 2 traitorous, treacherous, perfidious, treasonous, apostate, heretical, disloyal: A renegade band of deserters has turned against the army leaders.

renege v. 1 Cards revoke: When you renege you fail to follow suit. 2 go back on, back out, default, repudiate, go back on or break (one's) promise or word, recant, abrogate, abjure, Slang welsh (on): You swore you would keep your word, and now you're reneging.

renew v. 1 restore, refresh, rejuvenate, revitalize, reinvigorate, resuscitate, revamp, redo, rehabilitate, transform, regenerate, refurbish, refurnish, renovate, refit, overhaul, recondition, modernize, redecorate, do over: The entire interior of the hotel has been renewed at considerable expense. 2 resume, resurrect, restart, pick or take up again, recommence, return to, reopen: They renewed their argument in favour of the teaching of Latin. 3 restore, replace, restock, replenish: We must renew our supply of claret. 4 repeat, reiterate, reaffirm, confirm, reconfirm, restate, reassert: Each autumn she renews her promise to return in the spring.

renounce v. give up, forswear, surrender, abandon, desert, abjure, reject, repudiate, spurn, swear off, abstain from, deny, forgo, forsake, eschew, disown, throw off or out, shun, avoid: He renounced his claim to the throne and retired to a monastery.

renovate v. redecorate, modernize, do over, refurbish, refurnish, refit, remodel; recondition, rehabilitate, restore, repair, revamp, overhaul, patch up, Colloq do up, US fix up: We are having the entire house renovated by an interior decorator. It was quite costly to have those paintings renovated.

renown n. fame, celebrity, glory, distinction, esteem, acclaim, reputation, prominence, eminence, note, mark, honour, prestige, repute, ,clat, lustre, illustriousness, stardom: She enjoys great renown as a rock star.

renowned adj. famous, famed, celebrated, distinguished, acclaimed, prominent, eminent, well-known, noted, notable, honoured, illustrious: He was one of the most renowned authors of the 19th century.

rent° v. 1 let (out), lease, hire (out), charter (out), farm out: Eric owns a three-bedroom house that he rents out. I should like to rent a yacht for a cruise this summer.

--n. 2 rental, hire, lease, fee: The rent comes to about a quarter of my salary.

rentý n. tear, rip, split, gash, slash, hole, slit: The skirt has a six-inch rent in it.

repair v. 1 mend, patch (up); renew, put or set right, restore, fix (up), service, put (back) in or into working order, vamp, revamp, adjust: Can you repair the tear in my trousers? I must remember to ask the garage to repair the brakes on my car.

--n. 2 mend, patch; restoration, fixing (up), servicing, improvement, adjustment, renovation, revamping, renewal: The cost of the repairs to our roof after the storm was covered by our insurance. 3 form, condition, fettle, state, working order, Colloq shape, Brit nick: The engine, I'm afraid, has not been kept in good repair.

repartee n. banter, badinage, persiflage, patter, (witty) conversation, wordplay, raillery, give and take, Literary deipnosophism: Simon's witty repartee makes him a most welcome dinner guest.

repay v. pay back, recompense, compensate, requite, reciprocate, return the favour or compliment, reward, square with, settle (up) with; refund, give back, return, reimburse, restore: How can I ever repay you for what you have done? Alan repaid the money he borrowed from me.

repeal v. 1 revoke, recall, rescind, reverse, cancel, annul, nullify, invalidate, void, set aside, abolish, abrogate, Law vacate: They have repealed the rule forbidding guests to wear shorts in the restaurant.

--n. 2 revocation, recall, rescission, rescindment, reversal, cancellation, annulment, nullification, invalidation, voiding, abolition, abrogation: Alcoholic beverages were forbidden in the US until the repeal of Prohibition.

repeat v. 1 reiterate, restate, echo, retell, recite, quote, rehearse, recount, recapitulate, Colloq recap: Would you please repeat to Anne what you told me? 2 duplicate, reproduce, replicate: History repeated itself on the playing field here today, when Queens Park Rangers defeated Manchester United, 2-0.

--n. 3 repetition, duplicate, copy, duplication, replication, reproduction, replica, rerun, rebroadcast, replay, encore, reprise: This is a repeat of a show we saw last year.

repeatedly

adv. again and again, over again, over and over, frequently, often, time and (time) again, time after time, recurrently, repetitively, repetitiously: The needle stuck, and the record player kept playing the same thing repeatedly.

repel v. 1 repulse, drive back or away or off, reject, fend off, parry, ward off, hold off, rebuff, resist, withstand, keep at bay or arm's length: They were completely defenceless and unable to repel attackers. 2 revolt, offend, disgust, sicken, nauseate, turn one's stomach, make one's skin crawl, Colloq give one the creeps, turn one off: The idea of eating sheep's eyes repels me.

repellent adj. repulsive, repelling, revolting, disgusting, nauseating, nauseous, stomach-turning, sickening, offensive, loathsome, repugnant, distasteful, vomit-provoking, sick-making, disagreeable, obnoxious, off-putting: He described some of the more repellent examples of vivisection he had encountered.

repent v. regret, feel contrition, lament, bemoan, bewail, be sorry, rue, feel remorse, feel remorseful or penitent, show penitence: She repented having reported him to the police. Now that the evil deed is done he can but repent.

repentant adj. regretful, contrite, rueful, remorseful, apologetic, sorry, ashamed, embarrassed, penitent: It was terrible that she wasn't the least bit repentant for what she had done.

repercussion

n. Often, repercussions. reaction, response, effect, outcome, consequence, reverberation, result, aftermath, after-effect, upshot, fallout, backlash, echo: We were dealing with the repercussions of that decision long afterwards.

repertory n. repertoire, store, reservoir, collection, hoard, cache, repository, stock, supply, inventory, stockpile: Cosgrove felt compelled to run through his entire repertory of jokes at dinner.

repetition

n. 1 Often, repetitions. reiteration(s), duplication(s), redundancy or redundancies, repeats, tautology or tautologies: The book is full of boring repetitions. 2 reiteration, repeat, echo, echoing, repeating, duplication, duplicating, rehearsal, recapitulation, restatement, replication, rereading, retelling, relisting, recital, reprise, rerun, rerunning: We sat through a repetition of every name for the benefit of any who might have missed it the first time.

repetitious
adj. tiresome, tedious, boring, redundant, prolix, windy, long-winded, wordy, tautological, pleonastic: Streatham's lectures are very repetitious - he makes the same point over and over again.

repetitive
adj. iterative, repetitious, incessant, monotonous, repeated, redundant, humdrum, unceasing, ceaseless, relentless, unremitting, persistent, recurrent, non-stop, uninterrupted, continual, constant, continuous: The repetitive beat of that rock music is driving me mad.

replace v. 1 change, put in place of, substitute, supplant, renew: If the toy won't work, try replacing the batteries. 2 succeed, supersede, substitute for, take over from, supplant: Tim will be replacing David as department head. 3 restore, return, put back, make good (on), repay, refund, make restitution for: Are you going to replace the money you took?

replenish v. refill, restock, restore, renew, replace, fill, top up; furnish, provide: They stopped off in Bordeaux to replenish their supplies.

replete adj. 1 Often, replete with. full (of), filled up (with), overflowing (with), well supplied or well provided or well stocked (with), chock-full (of), crammed or jammed or jam-packed (with), brim-full (with), chock-a-block, bursting, teeming, loaded, overloaded (with), gorged (with), stuffed (with), Colloq up to the eyes or ears (in), up to here or there (in), US up to the old wazoo (in), Slang lousy (with), Taboo slang up to the Brit arse (in) or US ass (in): His speech was replete with names, dates, and precise quotations, all delivered without a note of any kind. 2 satisfied, sated, satiated: After a meal like that, anybody would feel replete.

replica n. copy, duplicate, facsimile, reproduction, likeness, imitation, carbon copy, photocopy, duplication, Colloq dupe, US knock-off: The hall was dominated by a replica of Michelangelo's David.

reply   v. 1 answer, respond, rejoin, retort, return, come back, acknowledge: When I asked where he had been, he refused to reply and walked out of the room.

--n. 2 answer, response, rejoinder, retort, comeback, riposte, reaction, US rise: I have written to the prime minister but as yet have had no reply.

report   n. 1 account, description, story, article, write-up, piece, statement, dispatch or despatch, communication, communiqu,, announcement, narrative, record; news, information: Stanley hasn't yet sent in the full report of his meeting with John. Is there any report from the front? 2 explosion, bang, boom, shot, gunshot, gunfire, backfire, discharge, crack, blast, detonation: In the distance we heard the report of a gun, and later a muffled explosion.

--v. 3 relate, recount, describe, narrate, tell of, detail, give an account of, write up, document: Our man in Kuala Lumpur reported a disturbance in a remote village. 4 publish, promulgate, publicize, put out, announce, set forth, reveal, disclose, divulge, announce, circulate, make public, broadcast: Two newspapers and a television station reported the arrest of the suspect. 5 arrive, appear, surface, check in, sign in, clock in or on, turn up, come in, US report in: We were asked to report for duty at 0800 on Friday. 6 report on. investigate, cover, examine, explore, look into, inquire into, check into or on, check (up) on, research, study, probe, scrutinize, Slang check out, Brit suss out: The new journalist was assigned to report on allegations of bribery in the council.

reporter n. journalist, newspaperman, newspaperwoman, newsman, newswoman, correspondent, columnist, newswriter, gentleman or lady of the press, gentleman or lady of the fourth estate, Brit pressman, presswoman; newscaster, news-presenter, commentator, broadcaster, anchorman, anchorwoman; photojournalist, cameraman, camerawoman, Colloq news-hound, news-hawk, news-hen, stringer: Reporters swarmed around the footballers who had returned home with the World Cup.

repose n. 1 rest, inactivity, calm, respite, tranquillity, quiet, restfulness, peace, relaxation: A half hour's repose would be welcome after a long day coping with lively toddlers. 2 sleep, nap, doze, catnap, siesta, slumber, Colloq forty winks, snooze, Slang zizz, shut-eye: The short repose refreshed, and she felt ready to tackle anything. 3 composure, calmness, calm, serenity, equanimity, poise, self-possession: He became angry in a flash, his face changing from quiet repose to livid distortion.

--v. 4 lie, abide, be, lodge, rest: The power to make the modifications reposes with you.

represent v. 1 substitute for, stand (in) for, replace, act for: I have appointed her to represent me in all legal matters. 2 Often, represent oneself as. present (oneself), depict (oneself), put or set (oneself) forth, masquerade as, take (on) or assume the guise or role or part of, characterize as, impersonate, pretend to be, pose as, imitate, mimic: He represents himself as a plumber in order to get into houses to rob them. His wife was represented to me as a social worker. 3 describe, delineate, reproduce, report, assert, state, put or set forth, show, reflect, mirror, characterize, define, note, outline, sketch, depict, picture, portray, draw, paint; pretend: What took place that fateful day is not as represented in Inspector Taylor's testimony. 4 symbolize, stand for, typify, exemplify, embody, epitomize; illustrate: He represents all that is good in the world today.

representation

n. 1 reproduction, image, likeness, portrait, picture, depiction, portrayal, semblance, model, manifestation: This is an accurate representation of the town's appearance in the 18th century. 2 agency: The sales representation for this area is under Wright's direction. 3 statement, account, exposition, declaration, deposition, assertion, presentation, undertaking: Certain representations have been made concerning harassment by the police. 4 replica, reproduction, figure, figurine, statue, statuette, bust, head, model, effigy: This representation of the goddess Athena was found in Kios.

representative

adj. 1 symbolic, typical, characteristic, emblematic, archetypal, evocative, illustrative: Is this a representative sample? These poems are not representative of your best work. 2 elected, chosen, democratic: They are struggling to establish a representative form of government.

--n. 3 agent, deputy, legate, ambassador, (papal) nuncio, spokesman, spokeswoman, proxy, delegate, envoy, emissary, missionary, commissioner; Member of Parliament, MP, Councillor, Congressman, Assemblyman, Assemblywoman: We like to think that our representatives are acting on our behalf. 4 agent, (travelling) salesman or saleswoman, Colloq rep: We have hired a new representative to sell refrigerators in the north of the country.

repress v. suppress, put down, (keep in) check, curb, quash, stifle, overcome, squelch, (keep under) control, contain, restrain, constrain, limit, keep back, quell, hold back or in, subdue, inhibit, hamper, hinder, deter, frustrate, discourage, disallow: The government tried to repress freedom of expression.

repression

n. 1 restraint, suppression, subjugation: Increasing repression of their liberties finally led the people to revolt. 2 check, squelching, control, inhibition, hampering, hindering, hindrance, stifling, deterring, frustration, frustrating: The repression of the revolt was unsuccessful.

repressive

adj. tyrannical, oppressive, dictatorial, despotic, brutal, suppressive, authoritarian, totalitarian; Fascist(ic): In some countries, the people were unable to rebel against the repressive regime.

reprieve v. 1 respite, rescue, save; let off, spare: The Home Secretary reprieved the prisoner from execution pending further investigation.

--n. 2 delay, postponement, suspension, remission, respite, stay, amnesty: The governor granted the condemned man a reprieve at the eleventh hour.

reprimand n. 1 scolding, reproof, rebuke, admonition, upbraiding, castigation, reproach, lecture, censure, criticism, disapproval, remonstrance, remonstration, reprehension, tongue-lashing, Colloq dressing-down, talking-to, telling-off, ticking-off, rap over or on the knuckles, slap on the wrist, Brit slating, US and Canadian chewing-out, Slang Brit wigging: Brown received a severe reprimand for violating the curfew.

--v. 2 scold, chide, reprove, rebuke, admonish, upbraid, castigate, reproach, berate, lecture, censure, criticize, find fault with, attack, flay (alive), reprehend, read (someone) the riot act, slap on the wrist, rap over the knuckles, take to task, Colloq bawl out, dress down, give a dressing-down, tell off, tick off, haul over the coals, give (someone) a piece of (one's) mind, Brit slate, give (someone) a row, send (someone) away or off with a flea in his or her ear, tell (someone) a thing or two, carpet, wig, skin (alive), US and Canadian chew out, rake over the coals, call on the carpet, pin (someone's) ears back: Nigel deserves to be reprimanded for what he did.

reprisal n. retaliation, revenge, retribution, redress, requital, vengeance, repayment, recompense, vindication, getting even, indemnity: She refused to be named because she feared reprisals. How many hostages did they shoot in reprisal?

reproachful
adj. fault-finding, critical, censorious, disapproving, disparaging, upbraiding, reproving, scolding, admonitory, condemnatory, hypercritical: She was quite reproachful after seeing what I had written about her in my book.

reprobate adj. 1 unprincipled, immoral, amoral, abandoned, depraved, despicable, dissolute, low, low-life, base, mean, debased, damned, accursed, cursed, degenerate, profligate, shameful, shameless, vile, evil, wicked, villainous, sinful, irredeemable, foul, iniquitous, reprehensible: Such reprobate behaviour soon brought him to the attention of the church fathers.

--n. 2 scoundrel, blackguard, miscreant, rake, profligate, rou,, villain, wastrel, wretch, degenerate, unprincipled person, villain, evil-doer, debauchee, libertine, good-for-nothing, ne'er-do-well, cur, rapscallion, scamp, knave, rascal, US low-life, Colloq scallywag or scalawag: I can't understand what she sees in that old reprobate.

reproduce v. 1 duplicate, copy, replicate, match, recreate, repeat, imitate, simulate: The printer thinks he can reproduce successfully the colours of the original picture in a print. 2 breed, multiply, propagate, procreate, spawn, produce or bring forth or beget young; regenerate: These animals normally reproduce twice a year.

reproduction

n. 1 duplication, copying, printing: Unlicensed reproduction of this film is against the law. 2 duplicate, copy, print, clone, carbon (copy), facsimile, replica, look-alike, double, twin, imitation: The reproductions look better than the original. 3 propagation, breeding, spawning, proliferation, production: Today's lecture concerns reproduction and breeding habits of large sea-mammals.

reproof n. See reprimand, 1, above.

reprove v. See reprimand, 2, above.

repudiate v. reject, scorn, turn down, renounce, retract, rescind, reverse, abandon, abrogate, forswear, forgo, deny, disown, discard: The government has repudiated its earlier policy of refusing to negotiate with the strikers.

repugnant adj. repulsive, abhorrent, disgusting, off-putting, offensive, repellent, revolting, vile, abominable, loathsome, foul, distasteful, unpalatable, unsavoury, execrable, intolerable, obnoxious, noisome, nauseating, nauseous, sickening, unpleasant, objectionable: I find the very thought of seeing them again repugnant.

repulse v. 1 repel, rebuff, drive back, ward off, fight or beat off, check: With a mighty effort, they were able to repulse the attacking forces. 2 refuse, spurn, snub, reject, rebuff, fend off, resist, turn down, give the cold shoulder to: She repulsed his offer of marriage, and he left, never to see her again.

--n. 3 rejection, rebuff, refusal, denial, snub, cold shoulder, spurning: Alistair told himself he could not accept another repulse.

repulsive adj. disgusting, revolting, abhorrent, loathsome, repugnant, repellent, offensive, obnoxious, objectionable, gross, unsavoury, distasteful, nasty, unpleasant, displeasing, disagreeable, ugly, off-putting, sickening, nauseating, nauseous, beastly, vile, dreadful, awful, rotten, feculent, foul, odious, horrible, horrid, abominable, execrable, fulsome: I have seldom had so repulsive an experience as the tour of that abattoir. The repulsive sights and smells were more than I could bear.

reputable adj. respectable, honourable, well-thought-of, estimable, respected, trustworthy, trusted, honest, reliable, dependable, principled, virtuous, good, worthy: Alan is one of Aylesbury's most reputable businessmen.

reputation

n. 1 repute, name, standing, stature, position, status: Jean is a woman of excellent reputation in the community. 2 have a reputation for. be known or noted or notorious or famous for: The company has a reputation for dismissing employees without notice.

reputed adj. alleged, purported, supposed, assumed, presumed; rumoured, said, deemed, held, regarded, viewed, looked on or upon, judged, considered, thought, believed: The police arrested three reputed gang members. They are reputed to be international drug dealers.

request v. 1 ask for, seek, plead for, apply for, put in for, requisition, call for, demand, insist on, solicit, beg, entreat, beseech, importune: They request my cooperation. I requested to be excused. He requested her to open the door for him.

--n. 2 plea, petition, application, requisition, call, demand, solicitation, entreaty: We receive many requests for information.

require v. 1 order, command, ask (for), call (for), press (for), instruct, coerce, force; insist, demand; make: I am required to appear in court on Monday. The teacher required that I bring my mother to school. 2 need, want, lack, be lacking, be missing, be short (of); desire: We require one more trainee in order to fill our quota.

requirement

n. 1 requisite, prerequisite, demand, precondition, condition, qualification, stipulation, sine qua non, provision, proviso, demand, necessity, essential, desideratum, must: It is a requirement of the loan agreement that you maintain an account with this bank. 2 need, want, demand: We hope the new design will meet all your requirements.

requisition

n. 1 request, order, demand, call, authorization, mandate, voucher: A requisition was issued by headquarters for the delivery of 200 desks and chairs.

--v. 2 request, order, demand, call, authorize, mandate: Have you requisitioned the office furniture we need? 3 seize, appropriate, commandeer, confiscate, take possession of, take (over), occupy; expropriate: The army of occupation has requisitioned all available sleeping accommodation in the town.

requital n. 1 repayment, return, recompense, redress, restitution, reparation, remuneration, quittance, amends, satisfaction, compensation, payment: I look forward to an opportunity to make requital for all the favours you have done for me. 2 revenge, retaliation, retribution, reprisal, vengeance; quid pro quo, Roland for an Oliver: In requital for his shameful treachery, MacFallon was sent into exile.

requite v. 1 repay, reward, reciprocate, recompense, compensate for, respond to: Her years of tender care were requited with abuse and scorn. 2 retaliate for, revenge, avenge, make restitution for, redress, pay back for, give tit for tat for, make amends for: Who can requite the wrongs inflicted on these poor people?

rescue v. 1 save, deliver, (set) free, liberate, let go (free), release, (let) loose: We rescued all the men who were being held prisoner. Jane was rescued by a very handsome lifeguard.

--n. 2 deliverance, saving; freeing, liberating, release: The seaman's rescue was conducted by a navy helicopter team. Because of the heavy guard, the prisoners' rescue is out of the question.

research n. 1 investigation, investigating, exploration, delving, digging, enquiry or inquiry, fact-finding, scrutinization, scrutiny, examination, inspection, probing, analysis, experimentation: Her research into the causes of the disease have yielded good results. The government no longer supports much research.

--v. 2 investigate, explore, delve into, dig into, enquire or inquire into, scrutinize, examine, study, analyse, inspect, check in or into or (up) on, probe, experiment with, Colloq check out: We are researching ways in which the virus attacks the blood cells.

resemblance
n. likeness, similarity; correspondence, congruity, coincidence, conformity, accord, agreement, equivalence, comparableness, comparability, comparison: There is a striking resemblance between your wife and mine. Any resemblance is purely a matter of chance.

resemble v. look or sound or taste or seem or be like or similar to, bear (a) resemblance to, approximate, smack of, correspond to, have (all) the hallmarks or earmarks of, take after, Colloq favour: You are right, the taste does resemble that of liquorice. Does she resemble her mother?

resent v. feel embittered or bitter about, feel envious or jealous of, begrudge, have hard feelings about, be displeased or disgruntled at, be angry about: I resent having to go to work while you sit about the house all day.

resentful adj. embittered, bitter, acrimonious, spiteful, envious, jealous, begrudging, vindictive, indignant, displeased, disgruntled, dissatisfied, unsatisfied, unhappy, peeved, irritated, irked, annoyed, provoked, riled, angry, piqued, irate, furious, incensed, agitated, upset, worked up, antagonistic, hostile: Ronald is resentful because you got the promotion that he considered rightfully his.

resentment
n. bitterness, acrimony, rancour, envy, jealousy, grudge, indignation, displeasure, dissatisfaction, unhappiness, irritation, annoyance, provocation, pique, anger, ire, fury,

agitation, upset, anxiety, ill will, malice, antagonism, hostility, animosity, enmity, antipathy, hate: Some believe that inequality among people provokes resentment.

reservation

n. 1 keeping or holding back, withholding, reticence, reluctance, hesitation, hesitancy, hedging: It was not without some reservation that I gave the book my endorsement. 2 qualm, scruple, qualification, hesitancy, limitation, exception, objection, demur or demurral or demurrer, condition, proviso, provision: He has no reservations about revealing the most intimate details in his autobiography. 3 booking, appointment, arrangement: I'll make a reservation for dinner for the two of us. 4 preserve, sanctuary, reserve, area, tract, territory, region, section, plot: In North America, many Indians still live on reservations.

reserve   v. 1 keep or hold (back), withhold, save, set or put aside, conserve, preserve, retain, keep (to or for oneself), hold over, postpone, delay, put off, defer: Reserve judgement till you have heard all the facts. I shall reserve my answer to that question for another day. 2 hold, keep, book, register, save, put or set aside, charter, engage, secure, contract for: I have reserved two seats for the matinee.

--n. 3 Often, reserves. store, stock, stockpile, inventory, supply, nest egg, reservoir, fund, hoard, cache: We prayed for rain, as our water reserves were getting low. 4 reticence, (self-)restraint, (self-)control, taciturnity, aplomb, formality, coolness, aloofness, guardedness, standoffishness, remoteness, detachment: I had to admire Paul's reserve in the face of such insults. 5 Often, reserves. auxiliary, alternate, substitute, reinforcements, backup, spare: If battle goes badly, we shall have to call out the reserves. 6 See reservation, 4, above. 7 reservation, restriction, restraint, hesitancy, hesitation, limit, limitation, hedging, avoidance, evasion, dodging, fudging: The lawyer acknowledged without reserve that the case was weak. 8 in reserve. ready, in readiness, on hand, available, on call, accessible, as backup, in store, on tap, at (one's) fingertips: We have huge resources in reserve should we require them.

reserved adj. reticent, restrained, unresponsive, controlled, silent, taciturn, uncommunicative, unforthcoming, close-mouthed, unresponsive, undemonstrative, unemotional, poker-faced, cool, formal, aloof, guarded, standoffish, unsocial, antisocial, distant, remote, detached, retiring, withdrawn, sedate, demure, dignified, guarded, prim, rigid, strait-laced, icy, frigid, ice-cold: She was always very reserved, not showing any emotion.

residence n. 1 abode, home, domicile, dwelling, dwelling-place, place, house, habitation, (living) quarters: A crowd was waiting to greet them outside their residence. 2 residency, stay, sojourn, visit, tenancy: During his residence in Cape Province, he became bilingual in Xhosa. 3 mansion, villa, manor (house), stately home, estate, chƒteau, castle, palace, Brit hall: The ambassadorial residence was a very imposing structure.

resident adj. 1 in residence, residing, living, staying, abiding, dwelling, remaining: Is he resident in this country? 2 local, neighbourhood, district, regional, neighbouring: Our resident astronomer mentioned there would be an eclipse of the moon tonight.

--n. 3 denizen, dweller, inhabitant, citizen, householder, home-owner, tenant, local: Parking permits are available only to residents.

residual adj. remaining, leftover, surplus, spare, extra, residuary: Residual units of the army are still bivouacked in the field. How would we survive nuclear fall-out and the subsequent residual contamination?

residue n. remainder, leftover, surplus, remains, rest, excess, dregs, residuum: The residue of the tatterdemalion force escaped into the forest.

resign v. 1 quit, leave, go, abdicate, give notice; retire (from), abandon, give up, forsake, hand over, yield up, renounce, relinquish, let go, release, vacate, surrender, deliver up, turn over: Amanda resigned because she was offered a better job elsewhere. Anthony refused to resign the last of his responsibilities till he was ninety. 2 resign (oneself) (to). reconcile (oneself) (to), be or become resigned or reconciled (to), accommodate (oneself) (to), adjust (oneself) (to), adapt (oneself) (to), acclimatize or acclimate (oneself) (to), submit (oneself) (to): Knowing that no one had ever escaped from the prison, he resigned himself to his fate.

resignation

n. 1 notice; abandonment, abdication, resigning, renunciation, forgoing, relinquishment: After the incident in the boardroom, Kim was asked for her resignation. Stuart's resignation of his responsibilities led to a severe reprimand. 2 reconciliation, reconcilement, adjustment, adaptation, acclimatization or acclimation, submission, acceptance, compliance, capitulation, abandonment, acquiescence, passivity: His resignation to his fate won admiration from those around him.

resilience

n. rebound, recoil, bounce, elasticity, springiness, spring, buoyancy, flexibility, suppleness, ability to recover: The resilience of youth is astonishing, and William was soon on his feet again.

resist v. 1 stop, hinder, prevent, hold out (against), be proof (against), keep or hold at bay, hold the line (against), thwart, impede, block, obstruct, inhibit, restrain, preclude, check, control, curb, stem, bridle, hold back, withstand, weather, last (against), endure, outlast, stand up (to or against); combat, fight (against), battle, countervail (against), counteract, oppose, rebuff, defy: He was jailed for attempting to resist arrest. It is pointless to resist. 2 refuse, deny, turn down, forgo: I cannot resist a rich sweet for dessert.

resistance

n. 1 opposition, defiance, refusal, denial, obstruction, intransigence, rebelliousness, recalcitrance, stubbornness: The child puts up considerable resistance to any form of discipline. 2 defences: My resistance is low, I can deny you nothing. 3 Resistance. underground, partisans, freedom fighters, guerrilla or guerilla movement, guerrillas or guerillas, irregulars, Maquis, US resisters: During the war, he was a member of the Resistance and engaged in sabotage against the invaders.

resistant adj. 1 opposed, against, defiant, averse, unsubmissive; impervious, unaffected: The organisms are resistant to any change. 2 recalcitrant, stubborn, obstinate, intransigent, rebellious, immovable, intractable, refractory, wilful, ungovernable, unmanageable, unruly, uncompliant, uncooperative: We have run up against a highly resistant group of activists. 3 Often, resistant to. impervious (to), impenetrable (to), repellent (to); proof (against); shedding: You need a more resistant material. This fabric is resistant to rain and snow.

resolute adj. resolved, determined, purposeful, steadfast, firm, stubborn, adamant, set, decided, staunch, bold, dogged, undaunted, dauntless, persevering, persisting, persistent, perseverant, pertinacious, tenacious, single-minded, dedicated, devoted, bulldog, purposive, deliberate, inflexible, unwavering, unshakeable or unshakable, unshaken, unflagging, untiring, indefatigable, tireless, unfaltering, unhesitating, unhesitant, unswerving, irreversible, undeviating, unchanging, changeless, unchangeable, immutable, unalterable: We remain resolute in our determination to end injustice.

resolution

n. 1 resolve, resoluteness, determination, purpose, purposefulness, steadfastness, firmness, decidedness, decision, staunchness, boldness, doggedness, dauntlessness, stubbornness, obstinacy, perseverance, persistence, relentlessness, pertinacity, tenacity, single-mindedness, dedication, devotion, constancy, devotedness, deliberation, deliberateness, inflexibility, inflexibleness, unshakeability or unshakability, fixedness, indefatigability, indefatigableness, irreversibility, changelessness, unchangeability, immutability, immutableness, unalterability, Colloq US stick-to-it-iveness: The boys showed extraordinary resolution in deciding to continue despite the hardships. 2 promise, commitment, pledge, word (of honour), oath, vow, undertaking, obligation; intention: I find that my New Year's resolutions last till about January 5th. 3 motion, resolve, proposal, proposition, plan, suggestion, idea, notion; determination, verdict, decision, judgement: The committee votes today on the resolution to increase membership fees. 4 answer, answering, solution, solving, unravelling, disentanglement, sorting out, explication; outcome, issue, result, end (result): The resolution of a family problem is seldom easy. Can there be a final resolution of the question of a free market economy? 5 acutance, sharpness, precision, accuracy, exactness, exactitude, fineness, discrimination, detailing, distinguishability: The new optical system provides for a much better resolution.

resolve v. 1 determine, decide, make up one's mind, agree, undertake, settle, fix, conclude: When did you resolve to move to Australia? Let us resolve never to let this happen again. 2 work out, figure out, solve, clear up, answer: How have you resolved the problem of looking after the cats while you are away? 3 adopt, pass, approve, decide: It was resolved that membership fees should be raised. 4 resolve into. change into, convert into, alter into, transform into, transmute into, metamorphose into, be convert(ed) into, become, dissolve into, break down into, liquefy into, disintegrate into, reduce to or into: O, that this too too solid flesh would melt, Thaw, and resolve itself into a dew!

--n. 5 See resolution, 1, above. 6 See resolution, 2, above: She kept her resolve never to marry again.

resonant adj. vibrating, vibrant, resounding, (re-)echoing, reverberating, reverberant, pulsating, ringing, booming, thundering, thunderous, loud: The resonant pealing of the bells almost drove me mad.

resort n. 1 spa, retreat, Chiefly Brit watering-place: We go to a lovely resort in the Alps every summer. 2 resource, backup, reserve, refuge, place to turn, alternative, remedy: He will see a doctor only as a last resort.

--v. 3 resort to. have recourse to, turn to, look to, fall back on, repair to, take to, frequent, patronize, attend; visit, haunt, hang out in: I have to resort to father for a small loan. She was said to be resorting to the lowest dens in the Casbah.

resound v. boom, resonate, ring (out), boom (out), (re-)echo, reverberate, pulsate, thunder: The laughter resounded around the entire office.

resource n. 1 Often, resources. initiative, ingenuity, talent, inventiveness, imagination, imaginativeness, cleverness, quick-wittedness, capability, resourcefulness, aptitude, qualifications, strength, quality, forte, Colloq Brit gumption, Slang guts: Has he the inner resources for the job that lies ahead? 2 Often, resources. capital, assets, money, possessions, wealth, property, cash, funds: She has sufficient resources to retire at fifty if she wants to.

resourceful

adj. ingenious, inventive, imaginative, clever, Daedalian, creative, skilful, smart, slick: Sylvia is resourceful enough to get out of any situation.

respect n. 1 regard, consideration, admiration, esteem, (high) opinion, appreciation: We have great respect for Samuel Simpson, our president. 2 regard, consideration, courtesy, politeness, civility, attentiveness, thoughtfulness, etiquette, deference, reverence, veneration: Few treat Alastair with the respect he deserves. 3 reference, relation, connection, comparison, regard, bearing: What are they planning to do with respect to the flooding? 4 detail, point, element, aspect, characteristic, feature, quality, trait, particular, matter, attribute, property: Describe the respects in which the War of American Independence and the French Revolution were similar. 5 respects. regards, good or best wishes, greetings, compliments, Formal salutations, Formal or archaic devoirs: I went to pay my respects to my aunt on her 90th birthday.

--v. 6 consider, admire, esteem, honour, appreciate, value, defer to, pay homage to, think highly or well of, look up to, revere, reverence, venerate: I am not sure that I like Mrs Horne, but I certainly respect her for what she has done for the poor. 7 heed, obey, show consideration or regard for, pay attention to, attend to, be considerate or polite or courteous to, defer to: Children are no longer taught to respect their elders.

respectable

adj. 1 proper, demure, decorous, seemly, estimable, worthy, dignified, decent, upright, honest, respected, genteel, refined, reputable, above-board, unimpeachable, law-abiding: Patricia Smythe is a very respectable member of the community. I'll have you know that I run a respectable boarding house! 2 moderate, appreciable, goodly, reasonable, fair, not inconsiderable, considerable, tolerable, satisfactory, sizeable, good-sized, substantial, not insignificant, significant, Colloq tidy: She earns a respectable living. A respectable number of people showed up. Climbing Annapurna, though it is not Everest, is a respectable feat. 3 presentable, moral, decent, proper, modest, chaste, innocent, pure, clean: The board decided that the film is not respectable enough to be shown to schoolchildren.

respectful
adj. courteous, polite, well-mannered, well-behaved, mannerly, civil, cordial, gentlemanly, ladylike, gracious, obliging, accommodating, considerate, thoughtful: On entering, Captain Gregory made a respectful bow to the ladies.

respective
adj. separate, individual, particular, pertinent, specific, special, personal, own, relevant, corresponding, several: Each retired to his respective room for the night. All of you know your respective duties.

respectively
adv. separately, individually, singly, severally, mutatis mutandis, each to each: Ron and Daniel are, respectively, president and secretary of the association.

respite n. 1 interval, intermission, break, interruption, recess, breather, rest; holiday, Chiefly US and Canadian vacation: I haven't had a moment's respite since six o'clock this morning. We are planning a brief respite from work in August. 2 pause, delay, hiatus, stay, extension, reprieve, postponement: After a ten-minute respite, the infernal noise began again.

respond v. 1 answer, reply, come back, return, react, reciprocate, counter; rejoin, retort: When Sean insulted her, Una responded with a slap to his face. I said, 'Good morning!' and Adrian responded, 'What's good about it?' 2 Often, respond to. be responsive (to), react (to), empathize (with), sympathize (with), commiserate (with), feel for, pity, be affected or moved or touched (by): Many respond to those charity appeals for the crippled and disabled.

response n. answer, reply, retort, rejoinder; reaction, effect, feedback, return, Colloq comeback: Whatever you say to Ronnie Farrago, he always has a snappy response. The response to our advertising has been quite good.

responsibility

n. 1 accountability, liability, chargeability, answerability, obligation: Responsibility is one of the burdens a parent must undertake. 2 charge, duty, onus, burden, trust, job, role, task: Has Ted taken on more responsibilities than he can handle? It is your responsibility to see that the children are awakened in time for school. 3 blame, guilt, fault, culpability: Professor Davies assumed full responsibility for the failure of the experiment. 4 dependability, reliability, trustworthiness, stability, accountability, creditability: Before accommodating you with a loan, Mr Stokes, we must confirm your financial responsibility.

responsible

adj. 1 accountable, answerable, liable, chargeable: The court determined that she was not responsible for her actions. 2 reliable, trustworthy, dependable, stable, creditable, accountable, ethical, honest: If teenagers can show that they are sufficiently responsible, the bank will lend them money for their enterprise. 3 executive, leading, authoritative, administrative, important, decision-making, managerial, directorial, principal, chief, top, US front-office: Oliver played a responsible role in the running of the company. 4 guilty, to blame, at fault, culpable: We never found out who was responsible for putting the frog in the teacher's desk.

responsive

adj. alert, alive, (wide-)awake, reactive, communicative, sharp, keen, receptive, sensitive, open, sympathetic: I was delighted to find students who were so responsive to the ideas put forth in my lectures.

rest° n. 1 repose, sleep, nap, doze, siesta, slumber, Chiefly Brit lie-down, Colloq forty winks, zizz, snooze; shut-eye: I think I'll have a bit of a rest before dinner. 2 relaxation, intermission, interval, interlude, entr'acte, rest period, cessation, (tea or coffee) break, recess, breather, breathing-spell, respite, time off, holiday, Chiefly US and Canadian vacation: Why don't you take a rest for a while? 3 ease, relaxation, leisure, indolence, idleness, inactivity, loafing, dozing: His well-deserved rest was disturbed by an urgent request from Interpol to investigate a smuggling operation. 4 prop, support, holder, brace, trestle, shelf, bracket: Those old guns were too heavy to hold and fire without using a rest. 5 come to rest. stop, end up, turn up, arrive: The ball rolled down the slope and came to rest in a puddle.

--v. 6 (go to) sleep, doze, relax, take a rest, (take one's) repose, lie down, recline, go or take to one's bed, take one's ease, unwind, loll, languish, laze about, be idle, idle about, lounge, (take a) nap, put one's feet up, Colloq take it easy, snooze, count sheep, have a zizz, catch or grab some shut-eye, get or take forty winks, US catch or log a few zees (Z's), Slang Brit kip, doss down, hit the sack, hit the hay, US sack out: Rest now - you'll feel better tomorrow. 7 reside, be situated, be lodged, lie, be placed, hinge, be found, remain, stay: The responsibility for passenger safety rests with the captain and the crew. The blame for this fiasco rests on you. 8 place, position, put, lay, set, lean, prop: Rest your head on my shoulder. 9 lie, remain, stay: Can't you let the matter rest? 10 allay, calm, quiet, still, stay: Rest your fears - I shall let nothing happen to you.

restý n. 1 remainder, balance; remains, remnants, leftovers, residue, residuum, excess, surplus, overage: If you carry these bags, I'll take the rest. Martin bought up all the best books and left the rest for us.

--v. 2 (continue to) be, remain, keep on being: Rest assured, the situation is bound to get easier as we go along.

restful adj. 1 relaxing, soothing, comforting, tranquillizing, sedative, calming, sleep-inducing, hypnotic, soporific, somnolent: Don't you find the sound of the waves restful? 2 tranquil, calm, peaceful, quiet, still, serene, pacific, comfortable, relaxed, reposeful: After a hectic day in the city, I was happy to return to the restful atmosphere of the country.

restitution

n. 1 amends, compensation, redress, recompense, remuneration, reparation, requital, indemnification, indemnity: It was agreed that victims of the raids were entitled to restitution for what had been taken from them. 2 restoration, return, re-establishment, reinstatement, recovery: A commission is to investigate the restitution of plundered property.

restive adj. See restless, below.

restless adj. restive, uneasy, edgy, on edge, on tenterhooks, fidgety, nervous, skittish, excitable, highly-strung, high-strung, worked up, agitated, fretful, jumpy, apprehensive, itchy, Colloq jittery, Slang uptight, US antsy, hyper: The crowd in the square were becoming restless as they waited for the speeches to start.

restoration
n. 1 See restitution, 2, above. 2 renovation, refurbishment, rehabilitation, renewal, repair, rejuvenation, reconstruction, resurrection, reconversion, revival: The programme for the restoration of ancient buildings suffers from lack of funding.

restore v. 1 give or hand back, return, make restitution, bring back: We must restore to the people the land that is rightfully theirs. 2 revive, rejuvenate, re-establish, renew, bring back, give (someone) back, resuscitate, resurrect, rekindle, reinvigorate, refresh, stimulate, revitalize, strengthen: Your kindness has restored my faith in mankind. 3 renovate, refurbish, renew, repair, rejuvenate, resurrect, revive, reconstruct, rehabilitate, rebuild; mend, fix, retouch, touch up; Colloq US fix up: They live in a 17th-century cottage that has been lovingly restored. Antiques often lose their value entirely if they are restored. 4 replace, reinstate, put back; return, bring back: They said that they would not rest until they had restored the rightful king on the throne. The doctor said she would soon be restored to good health. 5 replace, reimburse, repay, return, pay or put or give back: Even though he has restored all the money he took, she refuses to forgive him.

restrain v. 1 (keep under or in) control, (keep or hold in) check, hold (back or in), curb, govern: A poor rider, he was unable to restrain his horse. Something must be done to restrain the general's power. 2 limit, restrict, inhibit, regulate, suppress, repress, bar, debar, curtail, stifle, hinder, interfere with, hamper, handicap: Trade between the two countries was restrained because of tariff disputes. 3 (place under) arrest, confine, imprison, incarcerate, detain, hold, lock up, jail or Brit also gaol, shut in or up: For his most recent offence, he was restrained for two months.

restraint n. 1 control, check, curb, rein, bridle, restriction, constraint, limit, limitation, curtailment, taboo, ban, interdict or interdiction, proscription, delimitation, bound(s), embargo: The law places restraints on executives' buying and selling shares in their own companies. In 1863, a bill for the restraint of the press was brought before the House of Commons. 2 control, restriction, constraint, confinement; bondage, bonds, fetters, shackles, handcuffs, gyves, bilboes, pinions, manacles, ball and chain, strait-jacket, Colloq cuffs, bracelets: Despite the restraints to his liberty, he felt a free man. He became violent and had to be put under restraint. 3 control, reserve, self-control, self-possession, poise, equanimity, self-discipline, self-restraint: Heather Gorse exhibited admirable restraint in remaining silent when teased her about her name.

restrict v. limit, confine, bound, circumscribe, delimit, mark off, demarcate, regulate; qualify, restrain, impede: Smoking is allowed only in restricted areas. The opposition party said that they would restrict the movement of heavy goods by road.

restriction

n. 1 condition, provision, proviso, qualification, stipulation: One restriction is that purchasers of shares in the utility must be resident in the UK. 2 See restraint, 1, above.

result n. 1 outcome, consequence, effect, end (result), fruit; conclusion, upshot, issue, development, sequel, follow-up, consequence, denouement or d‚nouement: It will take years to evaluate the results of the new educational curriculum. As a result of his speeding ticket, his driving licence was suspended.

--v. 2 Often, result from. develop, emerge, follow, happen, occur, come (about), come to pass, arise, evolve, be produced: Severe burns can result from allowing children to play with matches. The mixture that results may be highly volatile. 3 result in. end, conclude, culminate, terminate: The explosion resulted in a heavy loss of life. The experience gained often results in better safety devices.

resume v. continue, carry on, take up again, pick up (where one left off): After prison, it is not easy to resume one's life where it left off. When the audience quieted, the speaker resumed.

r,sum, n. 1 summary, digest, abstract, synopsis, pr,cis, outline, review, recapitulation, epitome, Colloq run-down, recap: Give me a r,sum, of what went on at the board meeting. 2 curriculum vitae, CV, summary, biography, work or job history, career description, Formal prosopography, Colloq bio, US vita: Suitably qualified candidates are invited to send their r,sum,s to the address below.

resurgence
n. renaissance, renascence, rebirth, revival, reawakening, restoration, renewal, resumption, return, resurrection, regeneration, rejuvenation, new dawn, new birth: Simone is banking her entire future on a resurgence of interest in seventies' fashion.

resurrect v. revive, bring back, return, reawaken, restore (to life), reintroduce, renew, regenerate, rejuvenate, raise (from the dead), resuscitate, breathe new life into, reanimate, reincarnate: Some antiquated law was resurrected in order to prevent their using the land for grazing.

retain v. 1 keep (possession of), hold (on to), save, preserve, Colloq hang on to: Retain the receipt in case you wish to exchange the merchandise. 2 engage, hire, employ, commission, take on: We have retained a caretaker to look after the estate. 3 hold, absorb, contain, soak up, preserve: This type of soil retains little water. 4 remember, keep or bear or have in mind, recall, remain aware of, memorize, impress on the memory, recollect: As he aged, he found it increasingly difficult to retain even the simplest information such as names and dates.

retaliate v. repay, pay back (in kind), counter, strike back (at), take revenge (on), wreak vengeance (on), revenge oneself (on), avenge, reciprocate, settle a score (with); give a Roland for an Oliver, give tit for tat, take an eye for an eye (and a tooth for a tooth), give as good as one gets, give (someone) a taste of his or her or their own medicine, pay (someone) back in his or her own coin; Colloq get even (with), get back (at): After government forces bombed their mountain headquarters, the guerrillas retaliated by destroying bridges and railway lines.

retard v. 1 slow (down or up), hold up or back, set back, hinder, impede, delay, keep back, stall, thwart, balk, block, restrict, hold in check, frustrate, interfere with: Growth of the economy was severely retarded by the war.

--n. 2 Offensive and derogatory idiot, moron, fool, imbecile, dunce, Slang chiefly US and Canadian jerk: Why she invites that retard to her parties I can't imagine.

reticent adj. quiet, shy, timid, retiring, reserved; taciturn, silent, unresponsive, tight-lipped, unforthcoming: If you are proud of your accomplishments, why be reticent about saying so? Colin is reticent about how he acquired his gold earring.

retinue n. entourage, escort, convoy, cortŠge, company, train, suite, followers, attendants, following, hangers-on, Colloq groupies: The rock band arrived at the airport accompanied by a retinue of flunkeys.

retire v. 1 withdraw, rusticate, go off or away, take off, retreat; hibernate, aestivate or US estivate, seclude or sequester or cloister oneself: I think I'll retire to some mountain-top to finish my book. 2 stop or give up work(ing), be pensioned off, (be) put out to grass or pasture, take the golden handshake, be given the gold watch, go on social security, go on a pension, be superannuated, go out of circulation: Gemma Frobisher has retired from her job in the bakery, and is now living with her daughter in Norfolk. 3 go or take to (one's) bed or bedroom, (go to) sleep, lie down, (take one's) repose, (take a) nap, put one's feet up, Colloq take it easy, snooze, count sheep, have a zizz, catch or grab some shut-eye, get or take forty winks, US catch or log a few zees (Z's), Slang hit the sack, sack out, hit the hay, Brit kip, doss down: I usually retire around midnight.

retiring adj. shy, bashful, coy, demure, modest, diffident, timid, unpretentious, unassuming, humble, self-effacing, timorous, meek, reticent, reserved, unsocial, unsociable, aloof, removed, standoffish, distant, reclusive, eremitic(al): Howard is of a retiring disposition, preferring to keep to himself.

retort n. 1 response, reply, rejoinder, answer, riposte, rebuttal, Colloq comeback: Faced with criticism of the novel, the author's retort was a four-letter word.

--v. 2 fling or hurl back, rejoin, answer back, riposte, rebut, counter, come back with, return, respond, answer, reply, retaliate: 'And don't expect a Christmas present from me, either!', she retorted vehemently.

retouch v. touch up, correct, restore, repair, recondition, refresh, brush up, adjust, improve, finish, put the finishing touches on: Only an expert restorer could have retouched the damaged painting so skilfully.

retract v. 1 withdraw, pull or draw back: The instant he felt the heat, he retracted his hand. 2 take back, withdraw, rescind, revoke, repeal, deny, disavow, recant, renounce, abjure, cancel, forswear, repudiate, disclaim, disown, reverse: If they refuse to retract their statement, I shall sue them for libel.

retreat n. 1 retirement, withdrawal, pulling or falling or drawing back, giving ground, evacuation, flight: The regiment's retreat in the face of overwhelming odds is complete. 2 retirement, seclusion, withdrawal, isolation, solitude, rustication: Since her retreat from public life, she has devoted herself to painting. 3 sanctuary, sanctum (sanctorum), refuge, shelter, den, haven, asylum, resort, hideaway, hide-out: Antonia insisted on having her own retreat where she could occasionally escape from the children.

--v. 4 withdraw, decamp, run (away), turn tail, depart, give or lose ground, pull or fall or draw back, retire, evacuate, flee, take flight: We must retreat to the shelter of the hills, where we can regroup. 5 ebb, draw or move back, recede: The waves, constantly advancing and retreating across the pebbly strand, lulled me to sleep.

retribution

n. vengeance, revenge, reprisal, retaliation, requital, redress, quid pro quo, satisfaction, punishment, justice, just deserts, recompense, compensation: It is a moral question whether society's treatment of malefactors should be an act of retribution or the setting of an example to others.

retrieve v. 1 bring or get (back), fetch, come back with: Simon trained his dog to retrieve his slippers. 2 recover, save, rescue, take back, recoup, regain, reclaim: I tried using a fishing line to retrieve my hat from the lake. 3 make up, make amends for, recover, cover, redeem, repay, pay for, return, get back, regain, be repaid or reimbursed for: Will we be able to retrieve our losses when we sell the business?

retrospect
n. hindsight, reconsideration, review, remembering, afterthought, recollection, looking back: In retrospect, I am not sure we did the right thing.

return v. 1 come or go back, revert, turn back: She is returning to her old habits. I shall return to this subject later if I have time. 2 come back, reappear, resurface, crop up again, turn or show up again, put in an appearance again; recur, reoccur, Colloq pop up again: Will he return before March? The symptoms returned. 3 replace, put back, restore, give back, bring or carry back: The missing books have mysteriously been returned. 4 exchange, bring back or carry back: You may return any merchandise, for any reason, for refund or exchange, within ten days of its purchase. 5 yield, earn, gain, profit, benefit: Where else can you find a secure investment that returns more than 15 per cent? 6 deliver, render, give, offer, turn in, proffer, report: The jury returned a verdict of Not Guilty.

--n. 7 recurrence, reappearance, repetition, renewal, recrudescence, resurfacing, re-emergence: There was a return of the symptoms when I stopped taking the medicine. 8 replacement, replacing, restoration, restoring, restitution: We shall see to the return of the stolen items to their rightful places. 9 Sometimes, returns. yield, earnings, profit, gain, benefit, income, revenue, proceeds, interest, takings, results: The return on my investment was almost 100 per cent! 10 arrival, advent, coming, home-coming: A small crowd had gathered to await his return. 11 reciprocity, reciprocation, repayment, recompense, reimbursement, compensation, payment, reparation, indemnity, indemnification, consideration, amends, redress, requital: If I give you my bike, what will I get in return?

revamp v. overhaul, redo, recondition, renovate, repair, fix, do up, refit, refurbish, restore, rehabilitate, US fix up: To bring it into line with the 21st century, the constitution may need to be revamped completely.

reveal v. expose, display, divulge, disclose, show; make known, let on, let out, let it be known, let slip, communicate, give vent to, air, ventilate, leak (out): The increasing light of dawn revealed a no-man's-land of utter devastation. The book is said to reveal everything you would prefer not to know about factory-farming.

revel v. 1 Usually, revel in. (take) delight (in), take pleasure (in), rejoice (in), luxuriate (in), bask (in), wallow(in), lap up, crow (about or over), glory (in), savour, relish: Gavin revelled in the news that his ex-wife was remarrying and he would no longer have to pay her alimony. 2 make merry, carouse, celebrate, cut loose, go on a spree, Colloq live it up, whoop it up, make whoopee, whoop it up, paint the town red, party, Brit push the boat out, Slang Brit have a rave or rave-up: The night after exams finish, the students traditionally revel till dawn.

--n. 3 spree, party, merrymaking, debauch, carouse, festival, fˆte, carousal, celebration, gala, ball, romp, fling, carnival, jamboree, bacchanal, saturnalia: Everyone joined in the revels on New Year's Eve, and had a good time.

revelation

n. news, information, proclamation, publication, bulletin, communiqu,, announcement, pronouncement, declaration, statement, leak; admission, confession; discovery, unveiling, uncovering, exposure, disclosure, expos,: We were shocked at the revelation that they had been married all these years. Scientists' revelations about the depletion of the ozone layer are causing widespread concern.

revelry n. merrymaking, fun, revelling, carousal, carousing, gaiety, festivity, jollity, mirth, celebration, ball, high jinks or hijinks, spree, Colloq partying, Slang Brit rave or rave-up: The revelry went on into the wee hours of the morning.

revenge n. 1 vengeance, retaliation, reprisal, retribution, vindictiveness, spitefulness, repayment, satisfaction: They think he set fire to the place in revenge for having been dismissed.

--v. 2 avenge, get even for, take revenge for, make reprisal for, exact retribution or payment or repayment for: She was seeking ways to revenge the murder of her brother. 3 revenge oneself (on). settle a score or an old score (with), pay (someone) back in his or her own coin, give a Roland for an Oliver, give tit for tat, take an eye for an eye (and a tooth for a tooth), punish, Colloq get, get even (with), give (someone) his or her or their comeuppance, give (someone) a taste of his or her or their own medicine: He found ways to revenge himself on them for all that they had done to him.

revenue n. (gross) income, proceeds, receipts, return(s), yield, interest, takings, net (income), gate; profits, gain, Colloq chiefly US take: The revenue from the drugs operation must run into billions.

revere v. adore, adulate, reverence, venerate, worship, idolize, enshrine, sanctify, beatify, glorify, esteem, admire, respect, honour: He was revered as the founding father of British psychology.

reverence n. 1 honour, respect, esteem, admiration, glorification, beatification, sanctification, idolization, worship, veneration, adulation, adoration, homage, fealty, obeisance, deference, awe: Their totalitarian discipline was able to succeed because of the people's reverence for authority.

--v. 2 See revere, above.

reverie n. day-dream, fantasy, brown study, wool-gathering, absent-mindedness; meditation, thought: I shouldn't disturb Kevin - he's deep in a reverie.

reversal n. 1 reverse, turn-about, turn-round, U-turn, change, volte-face, (complete) switch, Brit about-turn, US about-face: This represents a reversal of former policy, doesn't it? 2 See reverse, 8, below. 3 annulment, nullification, nulling, cancellation, revocation, repeal, rescission: The present case is an appeal against the reversal of an earlier judgement.

reverse adj. 1 opposite, contrary, inverse, converse; inverted, upside down, mirror, reversed, backward: Now try turning the wheel in the reverse direction. What appears on the retina is a reverse image, which the brain inverts.

--v. 2 invert, overturn, turn upside down, turn topsy-turvy, turn over, up-end; exchange, change, interchange, transpose: Using your finger to keep the mercury from running out, reverse the tube in the dish of mercury. Perhaps the car will start if you reverse the leads to the battery. 3 overturn, overthrow, upset, set aside, quash, override, annul, nullify, vacate, abandon, revoke, negate, veto, declare null and void, disaffirm, invalidate, cancel, repeal, rescind, overrule, countermand, undo: The superior tribunal reversed the decision of the lower-court judge. 4 alter, change, modify; renounce, recant, take back: Reverse the polarity of the wiring. I reversed my opinion after hearing her sing. 5 back up, move or go backwards or US also backward, backtrack, Nautical make sternway: You will be in the right spot if you reverse a yard or two.

--n. 6 opposite, contrary, converse, antithesis: Whatever she tells you, I suggest you do the reverse. 7 back, rear, wrong side, verso, underside; flip side, B-side; tail side: Read what it says on the reverse. 8 set-back, disappointment, misfortune, reversal, mishap, misadventure, trouble, problem, difficulty, vicissitude, adversity, defeat; disaster, catastrophe, d,bacle, rout, Colloq washout: We suffered a temporary reverse or two in business, but we're all right now. United suffered a humiliating reverse against Wanderers in the cup last week.

revert v. return, come or go back, take or pick up again, lapse, backslide, regress, relapse, retreat: He reverted to his old beliefs about male superiority.

review v. 1 survey, examine, regard, look at, study, con, consider, weigh, inspect, look over, scrutinize: Would you be good enough to review the work of the new employees? She is coming to review the troops this weekend. 2 re-examine, reconsider, go over again, look at or over again, reassess: Billings reviewed once more all the bad things he had done in his lifetime. 3 criticize, critique, assess, judge, evaluate, give one's opinion of, comment on or upon, discuss: Who reviewed your latest book?

--n. 4 criticism, critique, review article, assessment, judgement, evaluation, commentary, study, comment, notice: The play received rave reviews from almost all the critics. 5 survey, examination, study, consideration, inspection, scrutiny, analysis; reviewing, reading: After a detailed review of the circumstances, we have decided to let you off easy this time, Finnegan. 6 re-examination, reconsideration, rehashing or rehash, post-mortem, reassessment, rethinking, rethink: Why do you always insist on a review of all the bidding on every hand, whenever we play bridge? 7 periodical, journal, magazine: Have you read Stonehouse's article in the latest Birmingham Review? 8 parade, procession, array, cavalcade, march past, fly-past or chiefly US flyover: A great naval review was held at Spithead.

revise v. 1 edit, emend, improve, correct, rectify, modify, revamp, redact, rework, overhaul, update; rewrite: A revised edition of the dictionary has been published every ten years. 2 alter, change, amend: Since hearing him sing, I have been forced to revise my taste in music.

revision n. editing, revising, emendation, improvement, correction, rectification, modification, revamping, reappraisal, re-examination, reinterpretation, reassessment, redaction, reworking, overhaul, overhauling, updating, update; rewrite, edition, version, rendition: Her revision of the text is based on a newly discovered manuscript. The fourth revision will be available next April.

revival n. 1 resurrection, resuscitation, renewal, restoration, revitalization, resurfacing, return, returning: How much more often we see the revival of out-moded fashions than the introduction of new ideas! 2 rebirth, renaissance or renascence, resurgence, awakening, quickening, reanimation: Do you regard the current trend towards fundamentalism as a genuine revival of religion? 3 recovery, improvement, increase, upsurge, upturn, boost, upswing, advance, advancement, progress, rise, escalation, Colloq pick-up, comeback: This week saw a revival in the metals market.

revive v. 1 (re)awaken, wake (up), come or bring (a)round, waken, resuscitate; recover, (re)gain consciousness: Dashing cold water in his face revived him at once. I revived to find her leaning over me. 2 reawaken, stir up again, renew, resume, reopen, refresh: You can blame Andy for reviving the feud between our families. 3 bring back, reactivate, renew, resurrect, re-establish, resume, reopen, revitalize, breathe life into, reinvigorate, rejuvenate: Perhaps we ought to revive the practice of putting hooligans, vandals, and delinquents into stocks in the market square.

revoke   v. cancel, deny, invalidate, annul, declare null and void, void, nullify, negate, repudiate, renounce, rescind, repeal, recall, recant, quash, veto, set aside, abrogate, abolish, withdraw, take back, retract: He warned that if they refused to comply with local authority rulings he had the power to revoke their licence.

revolt   n. 1 rebellion, revolution, uprising, mutiny, insurrection, coup d',tat, putsch, take-over: The council ordered the secret police to suppress the revolt.

--v. 2 rebel, rise up, mutiny; protest, dissent: After years of oppression, the people revolted and deposed their leaders. 3 repel, offend, disgust, shock, horrify, repulse, nauseate, sicken: I was revolted by the poverty and sickness I saw in that country.

revolting adj. disgusting, sickening, nauseating, nauseous, stomach-turning, stomach-churning, vomit-provoking, sick-making, foul, loathsome, abhorrent, horrid, horrible, nasty, vile, obnoxious, repulsive, appalling, abominable, repellent, offensive, objectionable, off-putting, beastly, gross, rotten, rancid, inedible, disagreeable, unpleasant, Slang icky, yucky: Rick served up some revolting mess for dinner and then took offence when we didn't eat it.

revolution

n. 1 mutiny, revolt, rebellion, coup (d',tat), uprising, insurgency, insurrection, putsch, take-over, overthrow: If the government fails to ensure that the people have food, there will be a revolution. 2 upheaval, cataclysm, transformation, (drastic or radical or major) change, sea change, metamorphosis: Recent successes of capitalism have sparked a revolution in the political philosophies of communist nations. 3 rotation, turn, orbit, circuit, spin, lap, round, cycle, circle, gyration; wheel, whirl, pirouette: At each revolution of the gear (A) , the ratchet (B) moves one notch. The rapid revolutions of the ice-skater dissolved her into a blur of colour.

revolutionary

adj. 1 mutinous, rebellious, insurgent, insurrectionist, insurrectionary, radical, rebel, seditious, subversive: They had dreamed for years of the revolutionary overthrow of the government. 2 novel, innovative, creative, new, different, original, avant-garde: The firm hopes that its revolutionary new product will make a clean sweep in the market-place.

--n. 3 rebel, mutineer, insurgent, insurrectionist, insurrectionary, revolutionist, sansculotte or sansculottist, anarchist, radical, extremist, terrorist: In his younger days at university, Charles fancied himself a revolutionary, without quite knowing what he might rebel against.

revolve v. 1 spin, turn, pivot, rotate, gyrate, whirl, twirl, reel, wheel, go (a)round, circle, cycle, orbit; swivel: As the earth revolves on its axis, the moon revolves round the earth. 2 turn, depend, pivot, rely: His decision to buy a new car revolves on his finances. 3 turn over (in one's mind), ponder, weigh, consider, meditate upon or on, think about, reflect upon or on, ruminate over or on, chew over, contemplate: I have been revolving in my mind your most attractive proposal, but I regret I must turn it down.

revolver n. pistol, gun, side-arm, firearm, Chiefly US and Canadian handgun, Colloq US six-gun, six-shooter, Slang US rod, gat, roscoe, piece, Saturday-night special, shooting-iron: How do you explain the fact that your fingerprints were found on the revolver with which she was shot?

revulsion n. loathing, detestation, disgust, repugnance, abomination, abhorrence, aversion, hatred, antipathy, odium, execration: I cannot describe the revulsion I felt at seeing those elephants slaughtered for their ivory.

reward n. 1 award, favour, recompense, compensation, return, payment, pay, requital: For your good deeds you will have to seek your reward in heaven; dishonesty is recompensed here on earth. 2 prize, award, tribute, honour, Literary guerdon: The Victoria Cross was instituted as a reward for military valour in 1856. 3 retribution, punishment, just deserts, Colloq comeuppance: Hanging was the reward of treason.

--v. 4 recompense, compensate, pay, repay, remunerate, redress, requite, make (something or it) worth someone's while: Only if they reward him will Fuller give information leading to the capture of the thief.

rewarding adj. satisfying, gratifying, worthwhile, enriching, enriched, fruitful, worthwhile; profitable, advantageous, productive, gainful: Laurence says that his most rewarding experience has been seeing his children again.

reword v. paraphrase, rephrase, put into different words, put another way, express differently, revise, recast, rewrite: Perhaps if you reworded your request in politer terms it might get more sympathetic consideration.

18.3 rhapsodic...
=-

rhapsodic adj. rhapsodical, ecstatic, enthusiastic, elated, overjoyed, effusive, rapturous, thrilled, blissful, transported, orgasmic, intoxicated, euphoric, walking on air, delighted, intoxicated, happy as a sandboy, happy as a pig in clover, (sitting) on top of the world, Brit in the seventh heaven, US in seventh heaven, happy as a cow in clover, Taboo slang US happy as a pig in shit: What kind of society have we that is scornful of intellect and rhapsodic about celebrities?

rhetoric n. 1 eloquence, expressiveness, elocution, way with words, Colloq gift of the gab: His rhetoric, though it defied analysis, exactly reflected the emotions of the Labour movement. 2 bombast, bluster, fustian, rodomontade, grandiloquence, magniloquence, oratory, windiness, high-flown poppycock, wordiness, sesquipedality, verbosity, prolixity, long-windedness, turgidity, flatulence, gasconade, Colloq hot air, puffery: Her threats are mere rhetoric and I refuse to take notice of them.

rhetorical
adj. 1 stylistic, linguistic, poetic, expressive, oratorical: Zeugma, hysteron proteron, and anacoluthon are all terms for rhetorical devices. 2 artificial, contrived, for effect,

unanswerable, not literal: The question, 'Why don't you drop dead', was purely rhetorical. 3 pretentious, bombastic, flamboyant, extravagant, florid, fustian, high-flown, inflated, grandiose, euphuistic, turgid, grandiloquent, magniloquent, long-winded, windy, orotund, wordy, prolix, sesquipedalian, Colloq highfalutin or hifalutin: The rhetorical style of Crampton's parliamentary speeches appear to be doing the party more harm than good.

rhyme n. 1 rime, poem, poetry, verse, versification, metrical composition, song: The art of rhyme may well be coincident with the earliest stages of language. 2 rhyme or reason. (common) sense, logic, intelligence, meaning, wisdom, rationality, rationale, soundness, organization, structure: There appears to be no rhyme or reason behind the bombing of the library.

rhythm n. tempo, beat, cadence or cadency, throb, throbbing, accent, accentuation, time, timing, stress or rhythmic(al) pattern, measure, metre, pulse, lilt, Music downbeat, thesis, upbeat, arsis: The song is in samba rhythm.

rhythmic adj. rhythmical, measured, cadenced, throbbing, pulsing, pulsating, regular, steady, beating: The rhythmic sound of the waves soon sent me to sleep.

18.4 ribaldry...

=-

ribaldry n. vulgarity, immodesty, indelicacy, indecency, coarseness, bawdiness, earthiness, wantonness, raciness, naughtiness, shamelessness, lustfulness, rakishness, rascality, dissoluteness, lubricity, lasciviousness, looseness, scurrility or scurrilousness, lewdness, salaciousness, licentiousness, grossness, offensiveness, rankness, rudeness, smuttiness, smut, dirt, filth, foulness, obscenity: The ribaldry of some of Chaucer's tales makes them not altogether suitable for schoolchildren.

rich adj. 1 wealthy, affluent, prosperous, well-to-do, well off, well provided for, opulent, moneyed, in clover, on velvet, Colloq flush, loaded, on Easy Street, rolling in it or money or wealth, in the chips or the dough or the money, well-heeled, US well-fixed: A year ago Montmorency was a rich man, but that was before Blue Thursday on the Stock Exchange. 2 Sometimes, rich in. abundant (in), overflowing (with), fertile (in), fecund (in), productive (of), copious (in), abounding in, well supplied (with), well stocked (with), rife (with), replete (with), profuse (in or with): The rich prairie land was soon yielding abundant harvests. The surrounding mountains were rich in minerals of all kinds. 3 valuable, precious, invaluable, priceless: For centuries the islanders have enjoyed the rich bounty of the seas. The thieves who broke into the vaults got a rich haul. 4 costly, expensive, dear, valuable, invaluable, precious, priceless, lavish, sumptuous, lush, luxurious, palatial, elaborate, splendid, exquisite, superb, elegant: The caravans returned laden with rich treasures of the Orient - silks, jewels, spices, rare woods, and other luxuries. 5 intense, dark, deep, warm, vibrant, strong, lustrous: At the rajah's court the rich colours of the carpets and hangings dazzle the eye. 6 fat, fattening, heavy, creamy, succulent, savoury, mouth-watering, luscious, sapid, delicious: When Vicky complained that her sweet was too rich, Arthur ate hers, too. 7 mellow, mellifluous, resonant, sonorous, full: Edgar's rich basso filled the cavernous amphitheatre. 8 aromatic, ambrosial, savoury, fragrant, redolent, pungent, strong: The house was filled with the rich odour of freshly made coffee. 9 productive, plentiful, abundant, ample, bountiful, prolific, fruitful, fertile, fecund, copious, profitable, potent: The letters proved a rich source of intimate details about their private life. 10 laughable, funny, hilarious, comic(al), humorous, amusing, Colloq side-splitting: He had many rich anecdotes to relate about the practical jokes they used to play on one another. 11 ridiculous, preposterous, outlandish, ludicrous, absurd, nonsensical: One particularly rich episode involved a chimpanzee.

riches   n.pl. wealth, affluence, opulence, plenty, prosperity, abundance, fortune, means, resources; lucre, pelf: It was rumoured that the family had acquired its apparently endless riches in the slave trade, in the 18th century.

richly   adv. 1 sumptuously, lavishly, luxuriously, splendidly, elaborately, exquisitely, elegantly, superbly: The flat was richly appointed with Chinese antiques, thick oriental carpets, and silk hangings. 2 well, thoroughly, amply, fully, appropriately, fittingly, condignly: Shirley's work was at last given the recognition it so richly deserved.

rickety   adj. wobbly, unsteady, broken-down, decrepit, shaky, tottering, teetering, ramshackle, flimsy, frail, precarious, dilapidated, in disrepair, tumbledown, unsecure: Don't put such a heavy lamp on that rickety table!

rid   v. 1 rid of. deliver from, relieve of, free from or of, rescue, save: What can we do to rid ourselves of that appalling smell?

--adj. 2 be or get rid of. banish, exile, eject, expel, dispose of, throw out or away, eliminate, dispense with; refuse, reject, dismiss, shrug off: If she had wanted to be rid of him, she would have divorced him long ago. I am having a spot of bother trying to get rid of my old car: nobody wants to buy it.

-ridden   adj. afflicted or harassed or affected or dominated by, infected or infested with: They were shocked when they first came to this drought-ridden province of Northern Ethiopia. Only foreign aid can salvage the debt-ridden economy of this state.

riddle°   n. conundrum, puzzle, enigma, poser, question, mystery, problem, brain-teaser or Brit brain-twister: The cracker contained a whistle, paper hat, and the inevitable riddle.

riddleý   v. 1 perforate, pepper, puncture, pierce, honeycomb: The back of the bookcase was riddled with tiny worm-holes. 2 penetrate, infest, infect, pervade, permeate, fill, spread: An investigation revealed that the entire department was riddled with corruption.

--n. 3 sieve, colander or cullender, strainer, grating, screen, sifter, filter: He shovelled the dirt through the riddle to sift out the larger stones.

ride   v. 1 sit on or in, travel or journey or go or proceed on or in, be borne or carried or conveyed (on or in), take; propel or control or drive (a horse or a bicycle or a motor cycle): They ride the bus to work each day. The film began with a witch riding a broomstick. Do you know how to ride a motor bike? 2 float, lie: The yacht is riding at anchor off Portsmouth. 3 tyrannize, terrorize, intimidate, dominate, oppress; bully, rag, harry, harass, hector, nag, provoke, heckle, badger, plague, pester, annoy, irritate, Colloq hassle: He has been ridden by obsessive ambition all his life.

--n. 4 drive, journey, trip, excursion, tour, jaunt, outing, expedition, Colloq spin: Let's go for a ride in the country! 5 take for a ride. a delude, swindle, trick, deceive, defraud, humbug, defraud, gull, take in, cheat, bamboozle: Those tricksters with the loaded dice certainly took Charlie for a ride last night! b (kidnap and) murder or kill or execute or do in, Slang bump off, US (snatch and) rub out or waste: They said that if he identified them, they would take him for a ride.

ridge   n. crest, line, strip, top edge, arˆte: The mountain ridge was partly obscured by clouds.

ridicule n. 1 derision, deriding, jeer, jeering, taunt, taunting, mockery, mocking, gibe or jibe, gibing or jibing, raillery, Colloq ribbing, US and Canadian razzing, joshing: Nick was often subjected to ridicule because of his outlandish clothes.

--v. 2 deride, jeer at, taunt, tease, mock, gibe or jibe, guy, chaff, laugh at, caricature, poke fun at, make fun or sport of, lampoon, burlesque, travesty, parody, make a laughing-stock (of), Colloq rib, roast, Brit send up, take the mickey out of, US and Canadian razz, josh: In a democracy, it is an inalienable right of the people to ridicule their leaders and government.

ridiculous
adj. absurd, laughable, preposterous, weird, comical, funny, humorous, ludicrous, farcical, droll, amusing, mirthful, hilarious, side-splitting, risible; silly, inane, nonsensical, foolish, stupid, outlandish, bizarre, grotesque, queer, crazy, insane, zany, wild, Slang far-out: You look absolutely ridiculous in that outfit! Where did she ever get the ridiculous notion that she would marry a prince?

riff-raff n. rabble, hoi polloi, ragtag and bobtail, scum, canaille, masses, dregs (of society), Colloq great unwashed: I am shocked that you continue your membership in a club to which riff-raff like Trevor Barnes belong.

rifle v. 1 rob, loot, ransack, plunder, despoil, burgle, pillage, US burglarize: We caught the man who had rifled the till. 2 search, ransack, go through, rummage through: She rifled through the files till the will was found.

rift n. 1 separation, break, split, schism, cleft, gulf, gap; disagreement, conflict, disruption, difference, breach, break-up, division, distance, alienation: The continued bitterness served only to intensify the rift between them. 2 tear, rent, opening, hole, crack, chink, crevice, cleavage, fracture, flaw, fault: Water was pouring through an ever-widening rift in the dam.

rig v. 1 Often, rig out or up. fit (out or up), equip, set up, outfit, supply, provision, accoutre or US also accouter, caparison, set up, Chiefly Brit kit out: Good Sports was the shop that rigged us out completely for our Himalayan climbing expedition. 2 falsify, manipulate, doctor, juggle, fix, tamper with, fake, Colloq fiddle (with), cook: The accountants rigged the books to make the company appear profitable enough to merit a bank loan.

--n. 3 equipment, equipage, gear, tackle, apparatus, outfit, kit, accoutrements or US also accouterments, paraphernalia, appurtenances, Colloq things, stuff: It cost a fortune to transport his diving rig by plane.

right adj. 1 just, moral, good, proper, correct, legal, lawful, licit, honest, upright, righteous, virtuous, ethical, fair, true, honourable, right-minded, principled, open, above-board: There is no doubt in my mind that Simon can be relied on to do the right thing. 2 correct, fitting, suitable, proper, accurate, exact, precise, perfect; factual, truthful, veracious, valid, sound, Colloq Brit bang on, spot on: Have you bought the right kind of nail to go into plaster? Jennie had nine right answers out of ten. How many of yours are right? 3 propitious, convenient, strategic, advantageous, beneficial, favourable, auspicious, preferred, preferable, promising: It is critical for the mixture to reach the boiling point at exactly the right time. 4 sound, sane, normal, rational, lucid, healthy: Is she right in the head, letting him drive in his condition? 5 right-hand, dextral, dexter, Nautical starboard: In the United Kingdom, drivers sit on the right side. 6 rightist, right-wing,

conservative, reactionary, Tory: The right wing of the liberal
party is not so very different from the left wing of the
conservatives. 7 face, upper, principal, front: Have you laid
the tablecloth right side up? 8 utter, complete, perfect,
unmitigated, unalloyed, out-and-out, thorough, thoroughgoing,
24-carat or esp. US 24-karat, dyed in the wool, pure, absolute,
real, Brit proper: I've been a right idiot not to realize that
he loved only her.

--n. 9 privilege, prerogative, licence, power, claim, title,
freedom, liberty: We must allow nothing to interfere with our
democratic rights, such as our right to vote. 10 justice,
reason, fact, truth, fairness, equity, good, goodness,
integrity, virtue, virtuousness, honesty, honourableness,
morality, propriety, rectitude, right-mindedness,
high-mindedness, nobility, uprightness: He believes that he has
right on his side. 11 right side or hand or fist, Nautical
starboard: She stood on his right. She gave him a quick right
to the jaw. 12 by rights. properly, fairly, justly, to be just,
to be fair, in fairness, honestly, in all honesty, to be honest:
By rights, because I paid for it, the house is mine.

--adv. 13 directly, straight, straightaway, right away or off,
in a beeline, as the crow flies, forthwith; unhesitatingly,
immediately, promptly, at once, instantly, without hesitating or
hesitation, without delay, quickly, swiftly, speedily, Colloq
pronto, straight off: The minute he walked into the room, he
went right to the wall-safe. Please come over right now. 14
exactly, precisely, unerringly, accurately; just: She hung the
paintings right where they belonged. 15 just, only: I stopped
right now - when you walked in. 16 well, satisfactorily,
advantageously, profitably, favourably, opportunely: I hope
that everything turns out right for you. 17 correctly,
accurately, properly, precisely, well, sensibly, fittingly,
suitably, aptly: If you can't do it right, why bother doing it
at all!

--v. 18 straighten (up or out), set upright or aright: I
righted all the chairs the children had knocked over. 19 put or
set or make right, put or set to rights, correct, straighten
out, redress, amend, make up for, rectify, sort out, repair,
fix: She has always felt that her mission in life was to right
wrongs. 20 avenge, retaliate for, vindicate, repay, revenge,

settle, Colloq get even for: Langdon swore that he would right the injury done to his father's name.

righteous adj. 1 moral, just, virtuous, upstanding, upright, good, honest, ethical, honourable, fair, reputable, trustworthy: He insists that his father was a righteous man who had been unjustly accused. 2 right, correct, justifiable, justified, appropriate, condign, fitting, apt, self-righteous: Her righteous indignation at being criticized stems from her overweening pride.

rightful adj. 1 legal, lawful, legitimate, licit, de jure, correct, proper, bona fide, valid, true, authorized, right: If the deed is in his name, then he is the rightful owner. 2 just, fair, equitable, right: Emily has supported rightful causes all her life.

rigid adj. 1 stiff, unbending, unbendable, firm, hard, strong: Are those brackets rigid enough to support such a heavy shelf? 2 inflexible, inelastic, unyielding, undeviating, unalterable, set, firm, hard, adamant, hard-line, unbending, adamantine, steely, iron, strong, uncompromising, rigorous, unrelenting, intransigent, stringent, severe, strict, rigorous, stern, harsh, austere: Frank is known to favour rigid discipline in the classroom. 3 rigorous, exact, precise, unwavering, unqualified, unswerving, undeviating, demanding, strict, hard and fast, literal, nice, close, thorough, scrupulous, careful, conscientious, painstaking, meticulous, punctilious, exacting, strait-laced: Rigid observance of the regulations produced the desired results. Pinwell's rigid parsimony met little favour from his family. 4 obstinate, stubborn, pigheaded, inflexible, immovable, adamant, adamantine, fixed, set, obdurate, wilful, headstrong, dogged, persevering, determined, resolute, steadfast, resolved, tenacious, relentless, unrelenting, uncompromising, unadaptable, mulish, close-minded: Candida remained rigid in her opposition to birth control.

rigmarole n. rigamarole, motions, complication(s), formalities, red tape, bureaucracy, punctilio, ceremoniousness, ceremony, ritual, procedure, mess, mumbo-jumbo, gobbledegook or gobbledygook, bunkum or buncombe, bother, balderdash, rubbish, nonsense, foolishness, Colloq hassle, bunk, Slang crap, US meshugaas or mishegaas: Why must one go through such a rigmarole just to get a driving licence?

rigour n. 1 Usually, rigours. severity, harshness, hardship, inhospitableness, bleakness, inclemency or inclementness, bitterness, cold: I am not sure that my grandmother can endure the rigours of another Scottish winter. 2 strictness, rigidity, precision, preciseness, punctilio, literalness, exactness, meticulousness, stringency, inflexibility, rigorism, harshness, severity, hardship, asperity, austerity, sternness: If you work with radioactive materials, safety regulations must be observed with rigour. The rigour of monastic life has toughened him over the years.

rim n. edge, brim, lip, border, periphery, perimeter: To make a margarita, you first coat the rim of a cocktail glass with coarse salt.

rind n. peel, skin, husk: Cut the thin outer part of the rind of a lemon into thin strips and soak them in brandy.

ring° n. 1 loop, hoop, band, circle, ringlet, circlet, annulus, grommet, eyelet, quoit, noose, cincture, belt, girdle, cestus or cestos, border, halo, aureole, nimbus, corona, cuff, collar, necklace, neckband, bandeau, fillet, bracelet, armlet, torque or torc, crown, coronet, tiara, diadem, (laurel-)wreath, garland, Mechanics gland, bearing, US and Canadian bushing or Brit also bush, washer, O-ring, Nautical thimble, Architecture and heraldry annulet, Literary roundlet, Anatomy cingulum: The rings brought up from the wreck of the ancient Greek trading vessel are worth a great deal. 2 rink, enclosure, arena, circus, bullring, Spanish plaza de toros, boxing ring: I would no sooner get into the ring with him than with a bull! 3 circle, organization, gang, band, pack, cell, team, crew, confederacy, confederation, combination, cartel, mob, bloc, coterie, set, clan, clique, fraternity, brotherhood, sorority, sisterhood, guild, (secret) society, junta or junto, cabal, faction, group, league, alliance, federation, coalition, union, affiliation, camorra, camarilla, Bund: She was running an international ring of jewel thieves who worked only in the most exclusive resorts.

--v. 4 encircle, surround, bind, gird, girt, circle; loop, compass, envelop, encompass, embrace: The swimming-pool is ringed with dense shrubbery. After the vase is fired, I intend to ring the base with a gold band.

ringý v. 1 peal, chime, toll, knell, tintinnabulate, ding-dong, gong, sound, resonate, resound, echo, re-echo, reverberate; clang, jangle; tinkle, clink, jingle, ding-a-ling, ring-a-ding-ding, Archaic or dialect knoll: The bells rang out their joyous announcement of peace on earth. 2 telephone, ring up, phone, call, give (someone) a ring, Colloq (give (someone) a) buzz, give (someone) a tinkle, get (someone) on the blower or horn, US (give (someone) a) jingle: I'll ring you when I am next in town.

--n. 3 ringing, peal, pealing, chime, chiming, toll, tolling, tintinnabulation, knell, sounding, resonating, echo, echoing, re-echo, re-echoing, reverberation, reverberating; clang, clanging, jangle, jangling; tinkle, tinkling, clink, clinking, jingle, jingling, ding-a-ling, ring-a-ding-ding, Archaic or dialect knoll: I couldn't hear the ring at the door because the water was running. 4 (telephone or phone) call, Colloq buzz, tinkle, US jingle: Don't forget to give your mother a ring on Sunday.

rinse v. 1 wash (out or off), wash up, clean, cleanse, bathe, drench, flood, flush, irrigate, Chiefly Brit swill (out), Literary lave: Use plenty of fresh water to rinse all the soap out of the clothes. 2 tint, dye, touch up, highlight: The hairdresser rinsed a little blue into Martine's greying hair.

--n. 3 rinsing, wash, washing, bath, bathing, cleaning, cleansing, ablution, drenching, flood, flushing, irrigation, Medicine lavage, Literary laving: The softening agent should be added in the final rinse. 4 tint, dye: I had no idea that she used a rinse - I thought her hair was naturally reddish.

riot n. 1 rioting, riotous behaviour, disturbance, uproar, tumult, turmoil, (civil) disorder, lawlessness, hubbub, rumpus, turbulence, fracas, fray, affray, mˆl,e or melee, pandemonium, Donnybrook, brawl, row, unrest, commotion, bother, imbroglio, outburst, anarchy, disruption, violence, strife, Colloq ruckus, ruction, to-do, do, Brit bovver, punch-up: The government is unable to quell the food riots, which have become more frequent and more violent. 2 funny person or woman or man, comedian or comedienne, hilarious event or bit or shtick or thing or piece of business, Colloq gas, US panic, laugh-riot: Benny's closing routine with the model is an absolute riot.

--v. 3 mount the barricades, take to the streets, rebel, revolt, create or cause a disturbance, brawl, fight, (go on the or US also a) rampage, run riot, storm: The prisoners rioted to protest against the crowded conditions.

riotous adj. 1 tumultuous, unrestrained, wild, noisy, uncontrolled, uncontrollable, unmanageable, chaotic, disorderly, disordered, lawless, turbulent, violent, brawling, obstreperous: The headmaster warned that he would not tolerate such riotous behaviour. 2 rowdy, boisterous, unruly, uproarious, rollicking, roisterous, wild, rumbustious, unrestrained, uninhibited, Archaic robustious, Colloq rambunctious, no-holds-barred: Bernard's retirement party was certainly a riotous affair.

rip v. 1 tear (apart or asunder), rend, be torn or rent, split, cut (apart): I ripped my trousers on that nail. The paper ripped because you yanked it out of my hand. 2 rip off. a steal, purloin, rob, snatch, pilfer, filch, take, shoplift, Colloq pinch, Brit nick, Slang lift, swipe, US boost, promote: They broke into my car and ripped off my tape deck. b cheat, swindle, trick, fleece, bilk, dupe, deceive; defraud, embezzle, Colloq con, bamboozle, Slang skin, gyp, rook: A smooth couple got œ100 by using the old 'stuffed wallet' trick to rip me off.

--n. 3 tear, rent, split, gash, slash; rift, cleft, rupture: The vandals tore a foot-long rip in the top of my new convertible.

ripe adj. 1 mature, matured, seasoned, (fully) grown, (well-)ripened, developed, mellow, ready, fit, US (fully) aged, well-aged: The grapes are ripe for picking. 2 prepared, ready, fit, appropriate, experienced, veteran, seasoned, sage, wise, sophisticated, mature, informed, qualified, dependable, reliable: Henry is ripe in judgement and understanding. 3 ripe for. a timely, opportune, propitious, favourable, auspicious, ideal, right, suitable, apt, proper, suitably advanced: Is the time yet ripe for another revival of Heartbreak House ? b ready, eager, enthusiastic, prepared, fit, ready, in readiness: The mob is ripe for revolt.

ripen v. develop, mature, age, season, maturate, bring or come to maturity; perfect: The peaches need another day to ripen.

rip-off n. 1 stealing, purloining, robbing, pilfering, taking, filching, pilferage, theft, robbery, larceny; shoplifting, Colloq pinching, Brit nicking, Slang lifting, swiping, US boosting: The rip-off of books from the library is a disgrace. 2 swindle, confidence trick, swindling, cheating, cheat, fraud, deception, defrauding, defalcation; embezzlement, Colloq con (job or trick): A husband-and-wife team are being sought for executing a rip-off of thousands from the Outland Bank using a forged letter of credit. 3 overcharging, exploitation, Colloq highway or chiefly Brit daylight robbery: It's a rip-off to charge two pounds for something that costs only three pence to make.

ripping adj. Rather archaic fine, splendid, marvellous, excellent, exciting, thrilling, stirring, spine-tingling: Buchan and Henty and Haggard all wrote ripping adventure novels.

ripple n. 1 wavelet, wave, ruffle, ruffling, cat's-paw, purl, purling, undulation, US riffle, riffling: There wasn't even the slightest breath of air to cause a ripple on the mirror-like surface of the lake. 2 (slight) disturbance, upset, perturbation, agitation, flurry, flutter, suggestion, hint, soup‡on: The divorce occasioned only a ripple of dissent in the royal family.

--v. 3 ruffle, purl, undulate, wave; splash, wash, US riffle: I sat musing, watching the water ripple over the stones in the brook.

rise v. 1 get up, arise, stand (up), get to one's feet, Brit be upstanding: All rise when the judge enters the court. 2 get up, arise, awaken, waken, wake up, start or begin the day, Nautical or colloq hit the deck, Colloq turn out: We usually rise at about six o'clock. 3 ascend, be elevated, arise, climb, lift, go up, mount: The smoke slowly, almost furtively, rose from the camp-fire into the still night air. The morning star can be seen tomorrow rising in the sky just before dawn. Some of those skyscrapers rise to a height of 110 storeys. 4 Often, rise (up) (against). rebel, revolt, mutiny, kick over the traces, take up arms, mount the barricades, take to the streets: If the food shortages persist, the people are sure to rise up and overthrow the present regime. 5 swell, flood, increase, grow; wax: Owing to the heavy rains, the river is rising rapidly. 6 slant or incline or slope (upwards), ascend, climb, go uphill: The path rises steeply just beyond the cwm. 7 fly, take flight, take wing, take to the air, take off, arise, lift, climb, soar, mount: At the roar of the gun, tens of thousands of flamingoes rose from the lakes. 8 advance, improve one's lot or position, progress, get ahead, go or get somewhere, succeed, make something of oneself, be promoted, prosper, thrive, make good, Colloq make it, make the grade, go places: Fielding could well have risen in the company had his attitude been different. 9 start, begin, originate, arise, occur, happen, take place: I cannot explain how so much bad feeling rose between us. 10 increase, be elevated or lifted or boosted, grow, go up, move upwards, climb, escalate, ascend, snowball: When interest rates rise, they contribute to the inflation that raising them was supposed to reduce. 11 arise, be nurtured, be produced, be generated, be created, spring up, be engendered: The feelings that rose within him were spurred on by sheer hatred of the man. 12 rise to. a arise, come up, meet, be equal to, prove adequate to: If you need a good man, you can count on Michael to rise to the occasion. b come to get, take, swallow, react to, respond to, succumb to, be tempted by: Sue rose to the bait of a company car and accepted our offer.

--n. 13 ascent, hill, hillock, knoll, eminence, prominence, elevation, upland, highland, (upward) slope or incline, acclivity, US upgrade: As we climbed a slight rise, we saw the mountains gleaming in the distance. 14 increase, increment, gain, addition: In return for only a slight rise in wages, they are being asked to take on much more responsibility. 15 ascent, ascension, elevation, flight, climb, take-off: The balloon's rise was suddenly halted when the basket caught in a tree. 16 get or Brit also take a rise out of (someone). provoke, stimulate, incite, instigate, foment, goad, encourage, press, push, shake up, waken, awaken, move, motivate, activate, agitate, stir (up), inflame, impassion: We finally got a rise out of Sidney by threatening to charge him for cleaning his room. 17 give rise to. start, engender, generate, begin, commence, produce, bring out, cause, bring about, bring into being: We never discovered what gave rise to Tom's dislike of dogs.

risk n. 1 danger, peril, jeopardy, hazard, chance, gamble: I would take up skydiving, but my mother won't let me because of the risk.

--v. 2 endanger, imperil, jeopardize, hazard, chance, gamble: Would you really risk all your money on one roll of the dice?

risky adj. dangerous, perilous, hazardous, chancy, touch-and-go, precarious, Colloq iffy, dicey, dodgy, touchy: Futures trading is a very risky business, as many have discovered to their dismay.

risqu, adj. indelicate, unrefined, indecorous, indecent, improper, broad, naughty, spicy, salty, off colour, racy, bawdy, erotic, suggestive, wicked, blue, ribald, daring, salacious, gross, Colloq Brit near the knuckle: Some of those photographs of beauty contest queens are pretty risqu,.

rite n. ceremony, ritual, ceremonial, observance, formality, custom, practice, routine, procedure, solemnity, solemnization, liturgy: This weekend I have to perform the annual rite of having tea with great-aunt Elizabeth at the Ritz.

ritual adj. 1 ceremonial, ceremonious, sacramental: The celebrants undergo ritual washing before preparing the sacrifice. 2 procedural, formal, conventional, customary, habitual, routine, prescribed, usual, automatic, perfunctory: Each time they meet, Harold and Bill have to go through a ritual handshaking routine - a hangover from their school-days, I think.

--n. 3 formality, routine, custom, practice, convention, protocol: If everyone goes through this tea-drinking ritual twice a day, how do you get any work done? 4 See rite, above.

rival n. 1 competitor, opponent, contender, challenger, antagonist, adversary; opposition: This year there are many formidable rivals for the championship.

--v. 2 compete with or against, contend with or against, oppose, challenge, contest, struggle with or against, vie with, combat, compare with, equal, measure up to, (be a) match (for): Jan's prowess at tossing the caber rivalled that of anyone else in Craigie.

rivalry n. competition, competitiveness, contention, vying; dispute, feud, feuding, conflict, struggle, strife, controversy, dissension, discord, difference(s): Once again the two local teams meet in a rivalry that has been traditional for over a century. It appeared unlikely that the rivalry between the brothers would be settled amicably.

river n. 1 watercourse, branch, tributary, stream, waterway, estuary, rivulet, creek, brook, streamlet, runnel, rill, Scots and No. Eng. burn, Brit beck, US kill: We used to sail our toy boats on the river here when I was a lad. 2 stream, flood, torrent, quantity, cataract, flow, cascade: Rivers of sweat poured down me as I toiled in the humid heat of the jungle.

riveting adj. spellbinding, engrossing, hypnotic, hypnotizing, transfixing, fascinating, enthralling, gripping, captivating, absorbing: The programme was absolutely riveting - one of the best I have ever seen.

18.5 road...

=-

road n. 1 way, means, approach, route, procedure, technique, method, passage, street, avenue, course, track, entr,e, access, direction: Our researchers arrived at the identical results via a completely different road. 2 thoroughfare, way, byway, highway, roadway, high road, low road, avenue, boulevard, street, lane, alley(way), Brit motorway, carriageway, US turnpike, expressway, freeway, parkway, throughway or thruway, German Autobahn, Italian autostrada, French autoroute, Colloq US pike: The roads are jammed with traffic on Sunday evenings during the summer.

roam v. wander, rove, ramble, range, walk, drift, dally, dawdle, cruise, stroll, amble, meander, saunter, stray, prowl, perambulate, travel, voyage, peregrinate, circumambulate, traipse, gallivant, jaunt, Colloq mosey, swan: They spent a year roaming about the continent, staying wherever they pleased.

roar v. 1 bellow, thunder; howl, bawl, squall, cry, yell, yowl; bay, snarl, growl: A train roared by. The crowd roared appreciation. A lion roared once in the night. 2 laugh, guffaw, howl (with laughter), hoot: They fell about roaring when he told the joke about the egg and the taxi.

--n. 3 roaring, bellow, thunder, rumble, boom; howl, bawl, squall, cry, yell, yowl, clamour, outcry; snarl, snarling, growl, growling: The roar of the falls could be heard miles away. There was a roar of indignation at the proposal. The beast's roar was enough to strike terror into our hearts. 4 guffaw, outburst, howl, hoot: Everything she said was met by a roar of laughter from the gallery.

rob v. 1 burgle, loot, rifle, ransack, plunder, depredate, raid; hijack; pillage, sack; US burglarize, Colloq hold up, Slang stick up, rip off: They robbed a jeweller's shop last week. 2 prey upon or on, Colloq hold up, mug, Slang chiefly US stick up, rip off, Chiefly US and New Zealand roll: These hooligans rob old ladies in the street. 3 rob (someone) (of). deprive (of), cheat or swindle (out of), defraud (of), strip (of), fleece (of), bilk (of), victimize, mulct (of), US euchre ((out) of), Colloq rook ((out) of), do or diddle (out of), gyp (out of), Slang Brit nobble (of): I was robbed of my last penny by those confidence men. We were robbed by a taxi driver who offered to change our money. She robbed me of my self-respect.

robber n. thief, pickpocket, shoplifter, burglar, bandit, housebreaker, sneak-thief, cat burglar, safe-breaker, highwayman, gentleman of the road, brigand, pirate, freebooter, buccaneer, privateer, corsair, Colloq mugger, hold-up man, Slang cracksman, rip-off artist, safe-cracker, safe-blower, Chiefly US stick-up man, US second-story or second-storey man: The police were making every effort to catch the robbers.

robbery n. robbing, theft, thievery, thieving, burglary, burgling, pilfering, pilferage, stealing, plundering, plunder, looting, sack, sacking, ransacking, depredation, pillage, pillaging, hijacking, hijack, larceny, breaking and entering, Colloq pinching, hold-up, holding up, mugging, Slang rip-off, ripping-off, Chiefly US stick-up, sticking-up, Brit nicking, US heist: The robbery of the paintings took place in broad daylight. The robbery of the shop was aided by a former employee. The robbery of elderly persons is on the increase.

robe n. 1 cloak, dress, garment, vestment, habit, frock, cassock, caftan, muu-muu, surplice, bathrobe, dressing-gown, lounging robe, housecoat, kimono, house-dress, peignoir, wrapper, French robe de chambre, costume: A woman wearing a green robe came to the door and asked what I wanted. 2 robes. costume, habit, uniform, garb, attire, vestments, apparel, raiment, livery, clothing, garments, outfit, accoutrements or US also accouterments, regalia, finery, trappings, panoply, gear, paraphernalia, appurtenances, equipage, rig, Archaic vesture: She looked absolutely splendid decked out in the full robes of state.

--v. 3 cloak, garb, dress, cover, enrobe, clothe: The dish consists of ladyfingers topped with fresh strawberries robed in chocolate, with whipped cream spread over the top.

robot n. 1 automaton, mechanical man or monster, android: In the future, much of the drudgery will be taken over by electronic robots. 2 drudge, clod, tool, puppet, cat's-paw, myrmidon, mechanical man, automaton: The company has a number of robots on its payroll who carry out orders without question.

robust adj. 1 healthy, fit, sound, hale (and hearty), sturdy, hardy, hearty, strong, stout, tough, able-bodied, strapping, brawny, sinewy, rugged, muscular, powerful, well-knit, athletic, staunch, vigorous; in fine or good fettle, Colloq husky: Kelly was such a robust chap one might have thought he'd live forever. 2 pungent, strong, flavourful, sapid, rich, full-bodied, nutty, fruity: He gave me a glass of an excellent robust tawny port.

rock° n. 1 stone; boulder: In the avalanche, the rocks thoroughly destroyed the ski lodge. 2 crag, tor, escarpment, scarp, Brit outcrop, US outcropping: We used to go rock climbing when I had the strength. 3 on the rocks. a on ice: I'd like a whisky on the rocks, thanks. b in (a) shambles, destroyed, in ruins, ruined, finished, broken-down, beyond repair: He lost his job and his marriage went on the rocks. c destitute, poverty-stricken, indigent, penniless, bankrupt: Unable to find another job, he's been on the rocks for a year, now.

rocký v. 1 sway, swing, lull: Her father used to rock her to sleep in his arms. 2 roll, reel, lurch, toss, swing, sway, wobble:

The building rocked so during the earthquake that I thought it was going to fall down. 3 astound, astonish, shock, surprise, jar, stagger, amaze, stun, dumbfound or dumfound, daze, stupefy, overwhelm, disconcert, unnerve, Colloq set (someone) back on his or her or their heels, throw, rattle, shake up: I was really rocked by the news that Sue was marrying Craig.

rocket v. zoom, take off, sky-rocket, shoot up, climb, rise rapidly, soar, spiral upwards, Colloq go through the roof: The day controls were lifted, prices rocketed, almost doubling overnight.

rocky° adj. 1 stony, pebbly, shingly, boulder-strewn, craggy; bumpy, difficult, hard, uncomfortable, arduous: The beach at Nice might be romantic, but it's very rocky to lie on. The road to love can be very rocky indeed. 2 stony, adamant, adamantine, firm, unyielding, rocklike, tough, unbending, flinty, firm, solid, steadfast, steady, unfaltering, staunch, unflinching, determined, resolute, unwavering, unchanging, unvarying, invariant, invariable, reliable, dependable, sure, certain: I knew we could depend on Charles's rocky determination to see the project through. 3 stony, flinty, unfeeling, unsympathetic, unemotional, emotionless, impassive, cold, cool, apathetic, indifferent, uncaring, detached, d‚gag‚, callous, thick-skinned, tough, hard: Beneath that rocky exterior beats a tender heart.

rockyý adj. unstable, tottering, teetering, unsteady, shaky, rickety, unsure, uncertain, unreliable, weak, flimsy, wobbly, wobbling, vacillating, dubious, doubtful, questionable, Colloq iffy: The project will be very rocky till we are assured proper funding.

rod n. 1 bar, pole, baton, wand, staff, stick, dowel, cane, shaft: Steel rods are used to reinforce the concrete in modern buildings. 2 cane, birch, switch, scourge, lash; punishment, chastisement, castigation, discipline, chastening, correction: As they say, spare the rod and spoil the child.

rogue n. 1 trickster, swindler, cheat, cad, ne'er-do-well, wastrel, good-for-nothing, miscreant, Rather old-fashioned scamp, scoundrel, blackguard, knave, rascal, rapscallion, scapegrace, dastard, cur, churl, wretch, villain, charlatan, mountebank, Brit bounder; Colloq louse, stinker, rat, creep, Brit rotter, blighter, Chiefly US and Canadian son of a gun, Slang bastard, Chiefly US and Canadian son of a bitch, SOB or s.o.b., bum: She met some clever rogue in Capri who conned her out of fifteen thousand lire.

--adj. 2 independent, undisciplined, uncontrollable, ungovernable, unmanageable, unpredictable, disobedient, incorrigible, fractious, self-willed, unruly, intractable, unrestrained, wild, lawless, strong-willed, headstrong, refractory, contumacious, recalcitrant, cross-grained, rampageous: Part of the village was destroyed when a rogue elephant ran amok. Perkins quit the company to start up his own rogue concern.

role   n. 1 r“le, part, character, impersonation; lines: She had the role of Maria in a recent production of Twelfth Night . 2 function, position, situation, place, post, capacity, job, duty, task, responsibility: Hermione's role in the company is that of managing director.

roll   v. 1 rotate, cycle, turn (over (and over)), wheel, trundle; revolve, go (a)round, orbit, tumble, somersault or somerset or summersault or summerset: Th landlord rolled another barrel beer into the pub. The children loved rolling about in the ride at the fun fair. 2 pass, go, flow, slip, flit, glide, slide, move (on); expire, elapse, disappear, vanish, evaporate: The time certainly rolls by quickly when you're having fun. 3 move, drive, bowl, be carried or conveyed, cruise, sail, coast, ride, float, fly: We rolled down the road, singing and laughing. 4 undulate, billow, rise and fall: The countryside rolled away before us as far as the eye could see. 5 roar, echo, re-echo, rumble, reverberate, resound, sound, boom, peal, resonate, thunder: The roar of the explosion rolled over us as we ran for cover. 6 rob, steal from: They got their money by rolling drunks. 7 Often, roll out. flatten, level (off or out), smooth (out), even (out), grade: After cutting, the lawn ought to be rolled. 8 Usually, roll over. turn (over), rotate, spin: Roll onto your stomach so I can examine your back. 9 Usually, roll up. furl, coil, curl, wind (up), wrap (up); enwrap, swathe, enfold, envelop, shroud, enshroud: Every night he takes down the banner and carefully rolls it. Cleopatra was rolled up in a rug to be smuggled past the guards. 10 roll in. a arrive, come in, pour in, flow in, turn up, show up: The contributions really started to roll in after the appeal. b luxuriate in, revel in, wallow in, savour, bask in, delight in, take pleasure in, indulge in, rejoice in, relish: Basil has been rolling in unaccustomed wealth since his aunt died. 11 roll out. unroll, unfurl, spread (out), unfold, uncoil, uncurl, unwind, open (out): Roll out the bolt of cloth so that we can measure it.

--n. 12 reel, spool, cylinder, scroll; tube: The message was written on a long roll of paper. 13 list, rota, register, record, directory, listing, roster, slate, docket, catalogue, inventory, muster, index, census, annal(s), schedule, chronicle(s), Sports line-up: With great ceremony, the clerk read the roll. 14 rolling, billowing, waving, wave action, wave, billow, swell, undulation, pitching, rocking, tossing: With each roll of the boat, I felt more seasick. 15 peal, rumble, reverberation, boom, echo, thunder, roar: A roll of thunder drowned out her shouts. 16 rotation, spin, toss, whirl, twirl: I decided to bet everything on one last roll of the dice. 17 bun; scone, croissant; Brit bread-roll, bap, split: Waiter, would you please bring some more rolls? 18 bankroll, money, wad, bundle: He took out a roll of notes and peeled off five twenties.

roller n. 1 drum, cylinder, barrel, calender; tube; windlass; rolling-pin; mangle, wringer: Make certain that the roller is clean. 2 billow, wave, comber, breaker, swell: After the storm, the heavy rollers continued to pound the sea wall.

romance n. 1 (love) affair, amour, affair of the heart, affaire (de coeur or d'amour), liaison, relationship, dalliance, intrigue: Wasn't Rick the one from Canada with whom Diana had a romance? 2 (true) love: You are lucky if you find romance even once in your lifetime. 3 novel, narrative, fiction, story, mystery, thriller, horror story, ghost story, science fiction, fantasy, Western, melodrama, gothic or Gothic or Gothick novel or tale, (fairy) tale, love story, idyll, epic, legend: It is probably accurate to say that the romance is the most popular form of fiction. 4 sentiment, nostalgia, mystery, intrigue, fantasy, imagination, imaginativeness, adventure, excitement, fascination, exoticism, glamour, colour, colourfulness: It was the romance of Morocco that entranced me. 5 tall tale or story, fantasy, fabrication, fairy tale, exaggeration, prevarication, concoction, flight of fancy, fib, (white) lie, prevarication, balderdash, fiction, nonsense, imagination: That episode with the girl on the train that David told you about was all romance.

--v. 6 make love to; woo, court: Steve has been romancing Maria ever since they met. 7 pander to, flatter, curry favour with, toady (up) to, Colloq butter up, soft-soap, Taboo slang brown-nose: The new restaurant is romancing neighbourhood office executives, and luring them in for business lunches.

romantic adj. 1 imaginary, imagined, fictitious, fictional, ideal, idealized, fancied, fabulous, made-up, dreamed-up, dreamt-up, fantasized, fanciful, fairy-tale, mythical, idyllic, Utopian, illusory: Vivian isn't a real person - she's just Howard's romantic notion of the girl he wants to marry. 2 impractical, visionary, fictitious, unpractical, unrealistic, ideal, abstract, quixotic, chimerical, absurd, extravagant, wild, crackpot, mad: She had romantic notions of how she would be running her own international business by the time she was thirty. 3 nostalgic, sentimental, emotional, sweet, tender, picturesque, exotic, glamorous; mawkish, maudlin, saccharine, Colloq soppy, sugary, mushy, sloppy: I can think of a lot more romantic places than a hamburger bar to eat on our anniversary. Fred hates it when I get too romantic. 4 amorous, affectionate, aroused, impassioned, passionate, libidinous, lustful, over-friendly, Colloq lovey-dovey; fresh: After a drink or two Mike starts getting romantic - if you know what I mean.

--n. 5 romanticist, dreamer, Don Quixote, visionary, idealist, sentimentalist: I've never lost my taste for soft lights and sweet music - I suppose I'm just a romantic at heart.

room n. 1 space, area, scope, extent, allowance, latitude, elbow-room, range, leeway, margin: There is room for one more inside. 2 chamber, apartment, compartment, office, cell, cubicle: For years Pablo occupied a small room on the top floor. 3 rooms. quarters, lodgings, accommodation, flat, dwelling: We had rooms in an old house downtown.

--v. 4 live, lodge, dwell, abide, reside, stay: Did you really room with the daughter of a prime minister?

roomy adj. spacious, capacious, commodious, large, sizeable, big, ample: For what appears to be a small car, it has a surprisingly roomy interior.

root°   n. 1 base, basis, foundation, source, seat, cause,
fountain-head, origin, fount, well-spring: Love of money is the
root of all evil. 2 rootstock, rootstalk, tap root, rootlet;
tuber; Technical radix, radicle, radicel, rhizome, rhizomorph:
When transplanting seedlings, special care should be taken not
to damage the roots. 3 root and branch. radically, completely,
utterly, entirely, wholly, totally: The Romans sought to
destroy Carthage root and branch. 4 roots. origins, heritage,
family, lineage, house, antecedents, forefathers, foremothers,
descent, genealogy, family tree, forebears, ancestors,
predecessors, stock, pedigree; birthplace, motherland,
fatherland, native land or country or soil, cradle: Carlotta
spent years tracing her roots to ancient Rome. The roots of
civilization first appeared in Mesopotamia. 5 take root. become
set or established or settled, germinate, sprout, grow, develop,
thrive, burgeon, flourish, spread: Good work habits should take
root at an early age; then they will last a lifetime.

--v. 6 plant, set, establish, found, fix, settle, embed or
imbed; entrench, anchor: The cuttings failed to grow because
they were not properly rooted. Hilary's fear of heights is
rooted in a childhood fall from a tree. 7 root out. a
Sometimes, root up. uproot, eradicate, eliminate, destroy,
extirpate, exterminate: Any subversives in the organization
must be rooted out. b find, uncover, discover, dig up or out,
unearth, turn up, bring to light: The survey of accounts is
aimed at rooting out customers who are slow in paying.

rootý   v. rootle, forage, dig, pry, nose, poke, ferret, burrow,
rummage, delve, search, ransack: Harvey has been rooting about
in the garage looking for his tennis racket.

root°   v. Usually, root for. cheer (for), applaud (for); boost,
support, encourage, urge on: I'm rooting for our side to win.

rooted   adj. firm, established, set, fixed, fast, settled, deep-rooted,
deep-seated, entrenched, ingrained or engrained, (firmly)
embedded or imbedded, implanted, instilled; chronic, inbred,
inherent, intrinsic, essential, fundamental, basic, radical:
Have you any rooted objections to the principle of living with
someone of the opposite sex without being married?

rope n. 1 line, cord, cable, hawser; strand, string: This rope is too light for mooring the boat. She wore a rope of baroque pearls. 2 the ropes. the routine, the procedure, one's way around, the ins and outs; the truth, the (real) situation; Colloq what's what, the score, Brit the gen: It didn't take her long to learn the ropes.

--v. 3 tie, bind, lash, hitch, fasten, secure; tether, attach: Rope these two crates together. The horses were roped to the post. 4 rope in. attract, draw (in), tempt, entice, lure, persuade: They are going to use a lottery to rope the customers in to supporting our cause.

ropy adj. 1 ropey, viscous, stringy, viscid, glutinous, mucilaginous, gluey, gummy, thready, fibrous, filamentous: The plastic resin emerging from the vat looks somewhat ropy, like mozzarella cheese. 2 questionable, inadequate, inferior, deficient, indifferent, mediocre, substandard, unsatisfactory, poor, sketchy: Greenwood's plan for increasing profit margins looks pretty ropy to me. 3 sickly, ill, unwell, hung-over, below par, out of sorts, Colloq under the weather, poorly, rough, not up to snuff, off one's feed: I was feeling pretty ropy on Saturday morning after that do at your place on Friday.

rostrum n. platform, stage, dais, podium, stand; pulpit; lectern, reading-stand: As the crowd hooted and booed, the speaker descended from the rostrum.

rosy adj. 1 pink, rose-coloured, red, roseate, reddish, pinkish, cherry, cerise, ruddy, flushed, glowing, blushing, ruby, rubicund, florid; rose-red: During the skiing holiday, they all developed healthy rosy complexions. 2 optimistic, promising, favourable, auspicious, hopeful, encouraging, sunny, bright: Caldwell has a rosy future ahead of him.

rot v. 1 decay, decompose, fester, spoil, go bad or off, be tainted, be ruined, mould, moulder, putrefy; corrode, rust, disintegrate, deteriorate, crumble or go or fall to pieces: When the power went off, all the food in the freezer rotted. The piers holding up the far end of the bridge have all rotted away. 2 waste away, wither away, languish, die, moulder, decline, deteriorate, degenerate, decay, atrophy: Despite repeated appeals for clemency, he's been rotting away in jail all these years.

--n. 3 decay, decomposition, mould, putrefaction, putrescence, blight, corrosion, corruption, disintegration, deterioration: Once the rot has set in, the job of revitalization can be overwhelming. 4 (stuff and) nonsense, balderdash, rubbish, bunkum, tommy-rot, twaddle, drivel, hogwash, eyewash, trash, Colloq claptrap, bunk, boloney or boloney, bosh, malarkey, moonshine, poppycock, tosh, Slang crap, bull, codswallop, Brit (a load of (old)) cobblers, Taboo balls, bullshit: He knows nothing whatsoever about linguistics and is just talking a lot of rot.

rotate v. 1 turn, revolve, go round, spin, gyrate, pirouette, whirl, twirl, wheel, pivot, reel: As the gear rotates, its teeth mesh with those of the other gear, causing it to turn in the opposite direction. 2 change, exchange, alternate, interchange, switch, trade places; take turns, Colloq swap or swop: Rotate the positions of the tyres for more even wear. We rotate the chores in our family.

rote n. 1 routine, ritual: He acquired a rote knowledge of the words, without knowing what they mean. 2 by rote. a by heart, from memory: He can recite the entire Prologue of Canterbury Tales by rote. b unthinkingly, automatically, mechanically: She learned the French dialogue by rote but doesn't understand a word of it.

rotten adj. 1 rotted, decayed, decomposed, decomposing, putrid, putrescent, putrescing, mouldy, mouldering, spoilt or spoiled, mildewed, rancid, fetid or foetid, stale, rank, foul, feculent, tainted, contaminated, festered, festering, corrupt, bad, off, turned, overripe, soured, sour: One rotten apple in the barrel can spoil the rest. The stench of rotten meat filled the room. 2 rotted, rusted, corroded, deteriorating, disintegrating, crumbling, crumbly, falling to pieces, friable: He stepped on a spot where the wood was rotten and his foot went right through the stair. 3 immoral, corrupt, dishonest, deceitful, venal, shameless, degenerate, villainous, iniquitous, evil, wicked, vile, debased, base, perverted, depraved, unscrupulous, unprincipled, amoral, warped, Slang bent: These drug dealers are rotten at the core. 4 heinous, evil, vile, base, miserable, despicable, wretched, awful, terrible, horrible, horrific, nasty, contemptible, filthy, mean, low, Colloq lousy, stinking, low-down, dirty-rotten: Pairing me off with Vera at the dance was a rotten trick. 5 ill, unwell, sick, nauseated, awful; hung-over, Colloq lousy, ropy or ropey, rough: I feel really rotten - maybe it was those mushrooms I ate last night.

rotund adj. 1 round(ed), circular, orbicular, globular, spherical: His rotund, cherubic little face simply invited a pinch of the cheek. 2 full, full-toned, deep, resonant, reverberant, reverberating, sonorous, rich, round, mellow; pear-shaped: They thrilled to hear the rotund notes issuing from Caruso's lips as he sang 'Vesti la Giubba'. 3 chubby, podgy or chiefly US pudgy, (pleasingly) plump, portly, tubby, heavy, fleshy, corpulent, stout, fat, obese, overweight, Colloq roly-poly: Jack's rotund figure was easily recognizable waddling up the street.

rou, n. playboy, womanizer, ladies' man, rake, lecher, Lothario, Don Juan, Romeo, Casanova, charmer, flirt, libertine, debauchee, Old-fashioned masher, gay dog, Colloq wolf, lady-killer, dirty old man, Taboo slang gash-hound: Alistair was quite a rou, in his youth but has settled down since turning 50.

rough adj. 1 uneven, irregular, coarse, jagged, rugged, bumpy, lumpy, broken: The next mile or so we slogged over some very rough terrain. 2 agitated, turbulent, choppy, stormy, storm-tossed, tempestuous, roiled: We negotiated a very rough patch of water before sailing into the calm, sheltered bay. 3 brusque, bluff, curt, short, abrupt, unpleasant, churlish, discourteous, impolite, rough-spoken, ungracious, surly, disrespectful, rude, uncouth, loutish, unrefined, uncivil, uncivilized, uncultured, vulgar, unladylike, ungentlemanly, coarse, ill-mannered, ill-bred, inconsiderate: Ian can be a bit rough, I know, but underneath he is a true and loyal friend. 4 tough, rough-and-tumble, roughneck, rowdy: There are some very rough characters frequenting that pub. 5 harsh, violent, unfeeling, unjust, severe, cruel, tough, hard, brutal, extreme; ungentle: They were subjected to very rough treatment when being questioned by the police. 6 dirty, obscene, smutty, pornographic, vulgar, crude, raw, rude: After midnight they watch the rough shows beamed by satellite from Italy. 7 hard, tough, Spartan, difficult, arduous, laborious, rugged, unpleasant: It was pretty rough going with almost no money and all those expenses. 8 harsh, grating, cacophonous, discordant, jarring, strident, raucous, rasping, unmusical, inharmonious, gruff, husky: In acknowledgement he made a rough, growling noise. 9 unfinished, incomplete, uncompleted, imperfect, rudimentary, crude, rude, formless, unformed, raw, rough-and-ready, rough-hewn, roughcast, undeveloped, unshaped, unworked, unwrought, unprocessed, unrefined; uncut, unpolished; shapeless, unshaped, undressed: I only saw the sculpture in its rough state and cannot say how it looked when finished. The stones are rough, as they were when taken from the ground. 10 general, approximate, inexact, cursory, quick, hasty, sketchy, vague, hazy; foggy, Colloq ballpark: Can't you give me even a rough idea of how much you want for the house? 11 unfair, unjust, bad, tough; unlucky, unfortunate: We went through a spell of rough luck last year. This is a rough time for everyone. 12 See rotten, 5, above.

--n. 13 rowdy, tough, hooligan, ruffian, thug, brawler, yahoo, Slang roughneck, Australian larrikin, US mug: Phil will get into trouble if he continues to associate with those roughs at the Lantern. 14 sketch, (rough) draft, mock-up, outline: Let me see roughs of the presentation before the meeting with the client.

--v. 15 rough out or in. sketch, draft, mock-up, outline, mark out, trace, block out: Our escape plan was roughed out by Captain Gallagher. 16 rough up. beat (up), thrash, attack, batter, assault, pummel or pommel, lay on, knock about, belabour, lambaste, Colloq wallop: Some of the boys roughed him up a bit when they learned that he was an informer.

--adv. 17 violently, savagely, brutally, brutishly: You'd best not mention Cassie or Henry might cut up rough.

rough-house

n. 1 boisterousness, rowdiness, rowdyism, violence, brawling, disorderliness, disorderly conduct, ruffianism: The police were called in to quell the rough-house that broke out at the dance.

--v. 2 brawl: If you want to rough-house, do it outside!

roughly adv. 1 approximately, around; about, nearly: The British Museum is roughly in the same direction as Euston. It cost roughly two weeks' wages. Roughly two years later I saw her again. 2 harshly, unkindly, severely, sternly, unsympathetically, brutally, violently, savagely, inhumanly, mercilessly, unmercifully, ruthlessly, pitilessly, cruelly, heartlessly: The police were accused of dealing too roughly with those suspected of harming a fellow officer. 3 clumsily, rudely, crudely, awkwardly, primitively, inexpertly, amateurishly, maladroitly, heavy-handedly, ineptly, inefficiently, unskilfully, inartistically: This roughly hewn block of local granite is what the council paid a fortune for as 'sculpture'.

round adj. 1 circular; disc-shaped, discoid, disc-like: I prefer a round table to a square one. She made a round motion to demonstrate the shape. 2 ring-shaped, annular, hoop-shaped, hoop-like: The track is oval, not round. 3 spherical, ball-shaped, ball-like, globular, spheroid, spheroidal, globe-shaped, globelike, globate, orb-shaped, orb-like, orbicular: You will never convince me that the earth is round - I know what I see. 4 curved, curvilinear, rounded, arched: The round chisel is used to cut these grooves. 5 exact, precise, complete, entire, full: That makes a round hundred times you have asked me the same question. 6 approximate, rough, rounded (off or up or down), whole: In round numbers, that makes 40 per cent For and 60 per cent Against. 7 rounded, mellow, full, vibrant, reverberant, reverberating, sonorous, rich, mellifluous, orotund, pear-shaped: Couldn't you listen forever to those beautiful round tones sung by Fischer-Dieskau? 8 plain, honest, straightforward, direct, unvarnished, unembellished, unelaborated, outspoken, candid, truthful, frank, open, blunt, Colloq upfront: They delivered what they had to say in round, assertive statements. 9 Chiefly Brit return: We made the round trip to Bristol in less than three hours.

--n. 10 circle, disc; ring, hoop, annulus; ball, sphere, globe, orb, bead: The moulding has a repeated pattern of a round alternating with three vertical grooves. 11 cycle, series, sequence, succession, bout, spell: The current round of talks on the economy is expected to last for three days. There was the usual round of parties on New Year's Eve. 12 Often, rounds. beat, route, routine, circuit, course, tour, turn, ambit: The milkman still makes his daily rounds in England. 13 heat, stage, level, turn: After each round in the tournament, the losers are eliminated, reducing the competitors by half. 14

spell, period, run, spate, bout, outburst, burst, volley: Each new acrobat who added to the human pyramid got a round of applause. 15 bullet, cartridge, charge, shell, (single) shot: Each man was given only ten rounds of ammunition.

--v. 16 turn, go (a)round: The car rounded the corner on two wheels. 17 orbit, circumnavigate, go (a)round, circle, encircle: He rounded the earth in the fastest recorded time. 18 round off or out. complete, close, end, bring to an end or completion or a close, finish: Tim suggested we round off the evening with a rubber of bridge. 19 round up. gather, assemble, muster, draw or pull or get together, collect, herd, marshal, US and Canadian (of cattle or horses) corral, wrangle: The police are rounding up witnesses who might have seen the shooting. More than 10,000 head of cattle have been rounded up for the drive.

--prep. 20 about, around, encircling, enclosing; orbiting: The fence round the site ought to keep out the curious. The new bypass round town ought to reduce local traffic. 21 here and there in, about, around, throughout, all over, everywhere in: Dad used to smoke and kept dozens of ash trays round the house. 22 about, around, nearby, in the neighbourhood or vicinity or (general) area of: Whenever I want to see you alone, there are always people round you. Just look round you if you don't believe me.

--adv. 23 around, about, in a circle or ring, on all sides: Gather round and I'll tell you a story. Pass the hat round for Harry's farewell party. 24 from beginning to end, from start to finish, through: He now lives in France the year round. 25 in perimeter or periphery, around: The indoor track is exactly one fifth of a mile round. 26 about, around, in the neighbourhood or vicinity or (general) area: There isn't a soul for miles round. 27 around, in a circle or circuit, in or by a circular or circuitous route or path, circuitously: This road goes round to the other side of the lake.

roundabout

adj. 1 circuitous, circular, indirect, long: We had plenty of time so we came the more scenic, roundabout way. 2 devious, circuitous, evasive, indirect, oblique: If you wanted to borrow some money, asking me for tax advice was quite a roundabout way of asking.

--n. 3 merry-go-round, carousel or carrousel, Old-fashioned or dialect whirligig: The children weren't the only ones who enjoyed themselves on the roundabout. 4 Brit mini-roundabout, US and Canadian rotary, traffic circle: When you come to the roundabout, turn right and keep going till you come to a traffic light.

round-up n. 1 gathering, assembly, rally, collection, herding, US and Canadian (of cattle or horses) corralling, wrangling: The round-up of suspects by the police was focused on the Bournemouth area. 2 summary, synopsis, digest, outline, recapitulation, review, survey, Colloq recap: And now, with a round-up of the news, here is Moira Lawley.

rouse v. 1 arouse, call, waken, awaken, wake (up), get up, arise: I was roused from a deep slumber by a dog's barking. 2 stir (up), arouse, bestir, stimulate, inspirit, animate, invigorate, electrify, excite, provoke, prompt, goad, prod, galvanize, incite, whet, move, work up, fire up: Bruce's unquenchable enthusiasm roused many to become involved in the campaign.

rousing adj. stimulating, inspiriting, animating, enlivening, energizing, inspiring, invigorating, vitalizing, electrifying; fervent, vigorous, energetic, enthusiastic, spirited, brisk, lively, animated, Colloq peppy: The huge crowd gave the team a rousing cheer as they jogged out onto the field.

rout n. 1 defeat, trouncing, ruin, overthrow, subjugation, vanquishment, d,bƒcle, conquest, thrashing, drubbing, beating; dispersal, retreat, collapse; Colloq licking, hiding, US and Canadian shellacking: Owing to the government's overwhelming forces, there was a complete rout of the rebels.

--v. 2 defeat, win (out) over, trounce, ruin, overthrow, bring down, subjugate, subdue, suppress, vanquish, conquer, overwhelm, overpower, put to rout or flight, worst, best, trample, overrun, thrash, trim, whip, drub, beat, crush, batter, smash, shatter, cut to pieces or ribbons or shreds, destroy, devastate, wipe out, eliminate, put down, seal the doom or the fate of, eradicate, obliterate, Colloq lick, wipe the floor with, polish off, knock off, Hyperbolic sports jargon pulverize, make mincemeat of, ride roughshod over, demolish, mangle, ravage, mutilate, flatten, squash, topple, lay waste, wreak havoc (up)on, ravage, massacre, murder, exterminate, annihilate, liquidate, smother, stifle, do away with, Slang clobber, do in, US skunk, Chiefly US and Canadian cream: Queens Park Rangers routed Manchester United 6-0.

route   n. 1 way, itinerary, course, direction, path, road, avenue: If you have the time, take the scenic route. John's route to the chairmanship is strewn with his colleagues' corpses.

--v. 2 direct, convey, carry: Goods destined for Cleveland will be routed through Northampton.

routine   n. 1 custom, habit, procedure, practice, method, schedule, plan, programme, formula, pattern, way, usage, wont, Colloq chiefly Brit drill: Chalmers has always been a stickler for routine. What's the routine here when you want to order a new chair? 2 act, piece, bit, performance, number, part, Colloq thing, shtick: The fat lady doesn't sing till after Joe Miller finishes his routine.

--adj. 3 customary, habitual, usual, rote, accustomed,familiar, conventional, regular, ordinary, everyday; programmed, assigned, designated, scheduled: Her routine responsibilities include proofreading. 4 boring, tedious, tiresome, unimaginative, uninteresting; hackneyed, trite, stereotypic(al), clich,d, run-of-the-mill, ordinary; unvaried, unvarying, unchanging, monotonous, uneventful, rote, automatic, mechanical, perfunctory: He has a routine job on the assembly line.

rover   n. wanderer, bird of passage, itinerant, traveller, rolling stone, nomad, gypsy, wayfarer, gadabout, sojourner, tourist; drifter, tramp, vagabond, vagrant, US hobo, bum: He's a born rover and will never settle down.

row°   n. line, rank, tier, bank, string, series, file: A row of trees serves as a wind-break along one side of the farm.

rowý   n. 1 altercation, argument, dispute, quarrel, disagreement, squabble, spat, tiff, conflict, fracas, Colloq shouting match, scrap, falling-out, Brit slanging-match: We had a silly row about where we should spend the Christmas holidays. 2 commotion, disturbance, clamour, hubbub, racket, din, rumpus, tumult, uproar, brouhaha, fuss, stir, turmoil, hullabaloo; bedlam, pandemonium, chaos; US foofaraw, Colloq ruckus: There was a tremendous row over the increase in membership fees.

--v. 3 dispute, quarrel, argue, disagree, wrangle, cross swords, have words, bicker, tiff, Colloq scrap, fall out: They are constantly rowing over something, usually some insignificant detail.

rowdy adj. 1 boisterous, uproarious, disorderly, noisy, loud, obstreperous, unruly: It only takes a couple of rowdy youths to start trouble at a match.

--n. 2 ruffian, tough, hooligan, yahoo, brawler, lout, Brit lager lout, skinhead, Chiefly US and Canadian hoodlum, hood, Slang Brit bovver boy: The police arrested three of the rowdies involved in last night's fight.

rowdyism n. rowdiness, ruffianism, hooliganism, rough-house, barbarism, troublemaking, brawling, unruliness, boisterousness, Slang Brit bovver: Have you any suggestions about what to do to curb rowdyism at football matches?

royal adj. 1 queenly, kingly, queenlike, kinglike, regal, imperial, sovereign, princely, majestic: The Royal Family usually spend their summer holidays at Balmoral. The establishment proudly boasts royal patronage. 2 grand, splendid, stately, impressive, august, imposing, superior, superb, magnificent, majestic: She arrived at the ball in a royal coach drawn by six white horses.

--n. 3 king, queen, prince, princess, duke, earl, duchess, viscount, viscountess, baron, baroness, noble, nobleman, noblewoman, peer: Her greatest ambition is to meet a royal in the flesh. 4 royals. royalty, nobility, nobles, peerage: He writes the daily column reporting on the activities of the royals.

royalty n. 1 queenship, kingship, royal house or line or family, sovereignty: Royalty does have its privileges, doesn't it? 2 percentage, commission, share, payment, compensation: He receives a royalty every time his song is played or sung commercially, anywhere in the world. 3 nobility, nobles, peerage, Colloq Brit royals: It is ironic that Americans are more impressed than the British with royalty.

18.6 rub...

=-

rub v. 1 massage, knead, stroke; scour, scrub, scrape, abrade, chafe, clean; wipe, smooth, polish, shine, buff, burnish: Rub my back, would you? - Not there, a little lower down. You are not supposed to rub those plastic baths with abrasive cleansers. Before the guests arrived, we rubbed the silver till you could see yourself in it. 2 rub in or on. apply, smooth, smear, spread, put: The ache may be relieved a bit if you rub on some liniment. 3 rub (it or something) in. emphasize, stress, make an issue of, harp on, reiterate, dwell on, hammer away, dramatize: It's bad enough that Caroline did better than I did - you don't have to keep rubbing it in. 4 rub off or out. expunge, erase, remove, delete, cancel, eliminate, eradicate: It's a pity, Peter, that you rubbed out the right reply and wrote in the wrong one. The boys were released on the condition that they would rub the graffiti off the wall. 5 rub off (on). affect, be transferred (to), be communicated or transmitted (to), be passed on or along (to), be imparted to: Your mother and I had hoped that some of our love of music might have rubbed off on you. 6 rub out. murder, kill, execute, slay: The Godfather ordered all witnesses to be rubbed out. 7 rub shoulders with. rub elbows with, associate with, socialize with, mix with, fraternize with, keep company with, consort with, Colloq US run or pal or chum around with: Since getting his knighthood Charles no longer rubs shoulders with the likes of us. 8 rub (someone) (up) the wrong way. annoy, irritate, irk, anger, provoke, go against the grain, Colloq bug, get under one's or someone's skin, peeve: I don't know what it is about Underbridge, but every time we meet he manages to rub me up the wrong way.

--n. 9 wipe, stroke, rubbing: You will have to give that stain a good rub to make it come out. 10 massage, rub-down: After exercising, Jane always has an alcohol rub. 11 the rub. the or a catch or hitch or snag or hindrance or set-back, the or an obstacle or impediment, the or a difficulty or problem or trouble: The only rub I can see is that Warren may not agree to resign.

rubberneck

v. 1 gape, stare, goggle, gawk: They spent a weekend in New York, rubbernecking at the skyscrapers.

--n. 2 tourist, sightseer, rubbernecker, US out-of-towner: Buses for the rubbernecks leave Trafalgar Square every hour or so.

rubbish n. 1 refuse, waste, debris, rubble, detritus, litter, garbage, sweepings, dross, dregs, residue, leftovers, remnants, lees, scraps, fragments, leavings, residuum, junk, rejects, Chiefly US trash Slang chiefly US dreck: Private companies are now contracted to remove household rubbish weekly. 2 (stuff and) nonsense, balderdash, moonshine, gibberish, gobbledegook or gobbledygook, tommy-rot, bunkum, trash, garbage, twaddle, Colloq rot, flapdoodle, crap, hokum, codswallop, bosh, piffle, hooey, bunk, malarkey, poppycock, boloney or baloney, eyewash, hogwash, bilge-water, bull, Scots havers, Brit tosh, gammon, US a crock, horse feathers, gurry, Slang rot, Brit (a load of (old)) cobblers, Taboo slang bullshit, horseshit, US a crock of shit: What she told you about how I treated her is absolute rubbish.

--v. 3 criticize, attack, destroy, Colloq clobber, pan, Chiefly US trash, Slang jump on, Chiefly US and Canadian bad-mouth, jump all over: In his latest book he rubbishes the newspaper that had given his previous book a bad review.

rude adj. 1 impolite, discourteous, disrespectful, ungracious, ungallant, unmannerly, ill-mannered, uncivil, bad-mannered, ungentlemanly, unladylike, ill-bred, unrefined, unpolished, uncouth, boorish, churlish, oafish, loutish, coarse, uncivilized, uncultured, unceremonious: It was rude of him not to get up when she came in, but he doesn't know any better. 2 impertinent, impudent, discourteous, insulting, insolent, offensive, saucy, bold, disrespectful, uncivil, flippant, brusque, curt, gruff, tactless, outrageous, Colloq fresh: I simply asked the chambermaid to make up my room early and she responded with a rude remark. 3 naughty, unrefined, ribald, bawdy, indecent, indelicate, vulgar, obscene, dirty, filthy, lubricious or lubricous, lewd, gross, smutty, taboo, pornographic: Chris has an extensive collection of rude photographs. 4 crude, rough, clumsy, awkward, unskilful, unskilled, artless, inartistic, imperfect, unpolished, inaccurate, gauche, bumbling, raw, inelegant, makeshift, homespun, primitive, misshapen, ill-formed, unfinished, rough-hewn, simple, basic, bare: The replica on view in the local museum is only a rude approximation of the original.

rudimentary

adj. 1 basic, essential, elementary, fundamental, rudimental, primary, introductory, abecedarian, formative, first, initial, elemental, primal, seminal: The purpose of the course is provide students with a rudimentary knowledge of computer programming. 2 crude, coarse, unshaped, unfinished, imperfect, primitive, undeveloped, vestigial, embryonic, primordial, immature: These fish, which spend their lives in darkness, have only a rudimentary organ for an eye.

rudiments n.pl. basics, elements, essentials, fundamentals, first principles: She learnt the rudiments of musical composition from the maestro himself.

ruffle n. 1 trimming, flounce, frill, ruff, peplum, flare, smocking, ruche, ruching, gather, gathering: Doesn't that ruffle at the back of the skirt make it look a bit old-fashioned? 2 ripple, wavelet, disturbance, flurry, bustle, stir, perturbation, wrinkle: The news of the divorce caused a slight ruffle at court.

--v. 3 agitate, disconcert, confuse, discompose, discomfit, upset, disturb, stir up, perturb, unsettle, disorient, unnerve, fluster, affect, bother, intimidate, unstring, put out, vex, trouble, worry, Colloq rattle, throw, shake up, Chiefly US and Canadian discombobulate, voodoo, hex, psych out, Slang chiefly US and Canadian get (someone) all shook up, spook: She was ruffled by questions concerning her relationship with the deceased. 4 disarrange, dishevel, disorder, rumple, mix up, tousle, tangle, disorder, Colloq mess or muss (up): His unpleasant attitude ruffled quite a few feathers in the department.

rugged adj. 1 rough, uneven, broken, stony, rocky, irregular, bumpy, pitted, jagged, ragged: The horses picked their way slowly across the rugged terrain. 2 tough, rough, severe, hard, harsh, difficult, arduous, Spartan, rigorous, onerous, stern, demanding, burdensome: It is amazing how that small band of pioneers withstood the rugged life in the untamed West. 3 hardy, durable, strong, sturdy, hale, robust, tough, vigorous, hard, rough-and-ready, stalwart; independent, individualistic, self-reliant, self-confident, self-sufficient, bold: WANTED: Five rugged pioneering types to join an expedition to the source of the Amazon river. 4 rude, uncouth, uncultured, uncivilized, unrefined, unpolished, crude, ungraceful, churlish: I admit that Charlie's manners are a bit rugged, but he's one of the best men we have.

ruin n. 1 downfall, destruction, devastation, havoc, breakdown, breakup, d,bƒcle, collapse, fall, disintegration, ruination, dissolution, wiping out, failure, decay, undoing, end; conquest, defeat, overthrow; bankruptcy, liquidation, failure: Alexander was responsible for the ruin of the Persian empire. Overwhelming debts spelt Theo's financial ruin. 2 degradation, dishonour, debasement, defilement, corruption, vitiation, seduction, degrading, dishonouring, debasing, defiling, corrupting, vitiating, seducing; deflowering, defloration: Who was the libertine who brought about the ruin of Lord Harecombe's daughter? 3 nemesis, curse, end, bane, curse: That boy will be my ruin! 4 gin, mother's ruin, blue ruin, Slang rot-gut: After eating, we sat down and polished off a bottle of mother's ruin. 5 hag, witch, crone, beldam; dotard, (old) fogy or fogey, fossil, fuddy-duddy, antique, Brit OAP (= 'old-age pensioner'), Chiefly US retiree, Colloq (old) geezer, wreck, Slang dodo: It's hard to understand what those two old ruins see in each other. 6 ruins. debris, wreckage, fragments, rubble, remains: He stood among the ruins of the burnt-out house wondering what to do next. She was trying to piece together the ruins of her disastrous marriage.

--v. 7 destroy, devastate, demolish, annihilate, dissolve, wipe out, undo, overthrow, lay waste, raze, shatter, wreck, crush, flatten, wreak havoc (up)on, reduce to nothing or naught, pulverize, smash, bring to ruin: The bomb ruined the entire centre of the city. 8 spoil, disfigure, damage, botch, mess up, make a mess of, mar, uglify: The county office building completely ruins the Aylesbury skyline. 9 spoil, destroy, wreck, nullify, damage, harm, hurt, impair, poison, Slang louse up, screw up, put the kibosh on, US bollix up, Taboo slang chiefly Brit make a balls-up of: I think that your behaviour at the office party may just have ruined your prospects for promotion. 10 bankrupt, pauperize, impoverish, reduce to penury or poverty or destitution or indigence: Paying off the loan virtually ruined me. 11 violate, deflower, ravish, seduce, lead astray, dishonour, defile, corrupt, debase, defile: She claimed that it was the local squire who ruined her, despite evidence to the contrary.

ruinous adj. disastrous, destructive, catastrophic, calamitous, deleterious, pernicious, crippling, cataclysmic, baleful, fatal, toxic, poisonous, noxious, harmful, injurious, nasty, Archaic baneful: Smoking can be ruinous to your health. Who was behind the ruinous decision to move the factory to the north-east?

rule n. 1 regulation, order, law, ordinance, ruling, decree, ukase, statute, principle, direction, guide, guideline, precept: We go by the Golden Rule here, Jim, 'Do unto others before they do unto you'. 2 dominion, authority, control, sovereignty, sway, command, ascendancy, direction, oversight, supervision, mastery: How could such a despised monarch maintain rule over a people for so long? 3 fact, standard, customs, practice, form, routine, convention, policy, way things are: Honesty and integrity among our students are the rule rather than the exception. 4 as a rule. generally, usually, normally, customarily, for the most part, mostly, ordinarily, mainly, in the main, chiefly, on the whole, commonly, more often than not: As a rule, we require payment in advance.

--v. 5 Sometimes, rule over. reign (over), govern, be in control or charge or command (of or over), be in power (over), hold sway (over), wield the sceptre, wear the crown, run; prevail, hold sway, dominate, predominate, control: The hand that rocks the cradle rules the world. Supposedly, the majority rules in a democracy. 6 direct, guide, manage, control, lead, head (up), preside (over), superintend, oversee, supervise, regulate, govern, run: The company is ruled by a committee made up of employees and directors. 7 decide, judge, hand down a judgement or decision, decree, deem, resolve, settle, determine, find, declare, pronounce: The referee ruled that Jones had committed a foul. 8 rule out. ban, bar, prohibit, exclude, eliminate, forbid, preclude, proscribe, negate, dismiss, disregard, bypass, ignore, overlook: The programme committee ruled out Birmingham as the site of next year's conference.

rummage v. 1 search, hunt, comb, scour, scrabble, look through, sift through, turn inside out or upside down, examine, Colloq scrounge: We rummaged about in four dustbins before finding the discarded receipt.

--n. 2 jumble, miscellanea, knick-knacks, odds and ends, hotchpotch or US also hodgepodge: May we borrow your car to collect items for the church rummage sale?

rumour n. 1 rumour, news, gossip, hearsay, information, scoop, tidings, chat, chit-chat, tittle-tattle, on dit; grapevine, jungle telegraph, Colloq low-down, info, US and Canadian poop, Slang chiefly US nautical scuttlebutt: The rumour is that they are moving from Reading to Exeter. Rumour has it that you are not going with them.

--v. 2 bruit about, noise abroad, circulate, pass around, intimate, breathe, suggest, whisper, leak, reveal, make known, put about, say, report, tell: It has been rumoured that she is going to have his baby.

rumple v. Sometimes, rumple up. wrinkle, crumple, crush, crease, fold, crinkle, dishevel, ruffle, tousle, scrunch (up), pucker, muss (up), mess (up): When she stood up, the back of her dress was all rumpled.

rumpus n. commotion, disturbance, fuss, confusion, uproar, tumult, to-do, ado, mayhem, bedlam, brouhaha, stir, pother, affray, fracas, row, mˆl,e or melee, rough-house, brawl: You have no idea what a rumpus he created just because my dog went in his garden.

run v. 1 sprint, race, scamper, scurry, scud, dart, bolt, dash, flit, tear (along), scoot, scuttle, zip, whiz or whizz, gallop, jog, trot, lope; rush, hurry (up), hasten, scramble, hustle, step lively, hop (to) it, step on it, put on some speed, Archaic hie, Colloq get a move on, hoof it, leg it, hotfoot (it), stir one's stumps, Brit hare, US step on the gas, hump (it), Slang get cracking, US get the lead out (of one's pants or taboo ass), Chiefly US get a wiggle on: If you run, you might catch her before she gets on the train. 2 run away or off, flee, escape, take flight, take to one's heels, bolt, decamp, make off, clear out, show a clean pair of heels, abscond, cut and run, (beat a (hasty)) retreat, retire, make a getaway, (make a) run for it, Colloq beat it, scram, skedaddle, take off, skip (out), take French leave, fly the coop, Slang head for the hills, Brit scarper, do a bunk, US and Canadian take a (run-out) powder, lam out of (somewhere), take it or go on the lam, US vamoose: The minute the enemy appeared, the entire troop ran. Cavendish ran, hoping the police wouldn't catch him. 3 go, cover, pass over, sprint, race: He ran the mile in just under four minutes. 4 wander, rove, roam, meander, drift: Some farmers allow their animals to run free, rather than penning them up. 5 Often, run for. compete (for), be a candidate (for), vie, struggle, contend, fight (for), stand (for): As she has already said she would not stand again, I doubt that she will run for re-election in the council elections. 6 pass, flow, pour, stream, flood, gush, spill, dribble, spurt, issue, move, trickle, seep, discharge, cascade, spout: You can see where the rainwater has run down this crack in the roof and into the room below. 7 flow, diffuse: The colour ran when he washed his red underwear with some white shirts in very hot water. 8 melt, liquefy, dissolve, fuse: It was so hot that the icing on top of the cake began to melt and run down the sides. 9 keep, maintain, support, sustain, manage: It is very expensive to run a large house. 10 operate, manage, direct, supervise, oversee, conduct, superintend, control, handle, manipulate, head, carry on, lead, regulate, take care of, look after, administer, be in charge of, coordinate: She must be a terrifically high achiever to run a huge international conglomerate like that! 11 operate, perform, function, work, tick, go: Even after all that abuse, the watch kept running and kept good time. 12 extend, stretch, reach; amount, add up, total up, come (up): The balance of payments deficit is running to twice last year's figure. His bill at the restaurant last night ran to more than œ200. 13 convey, transport, give (someone) a lift, drive, take, bring: Tom said he would run me home in his new car. 14 bootleg, smuggle, deal or traffic in, Chiefly US and Canadian rustle: During Prohibition, his father ran whisky from Canada to the US. 15 be in effect or force, be effective, have force or effect: This lease has another year to run. 16 incur, invite, encourage, attract, be subjected to: Aren't you running a risk asking Sheila to handle your money? 17 propel, drive; steer, guide, navigate: If you are inept enough to run a boat aground, at least have the sense to do it at low tide. 18 unravel, come undone, Chiefly Brit ladder: My stocking ran just before I had to leave for the dance! 19 Sometimes, run off. print, offset, lithograph, reproduce, publish, display; imprint, position, place, locate, lay out: They are going to run his story in the next issue of The Londoner! We'll run the photographs of the fire alongside the article on page one. 20 run across. meet (up with), run into, come across, find, stumble on or upon, hit or chance or happen upon, Colloq bump into: Guess whom I ran across at Harrods yesterday. 21 run after. chase, pursue, go after, court, woo, Colloq set one's cap for: The City is filled with young men and women running after big money. Mick is running after this girl half his age, and he hasn't a clue that she's leading him on. 22 run along. go away, leave, Slang get lost: Sue wanted to get rid of Wayne and told him to run along. 23 run around. philander, be unfaithful, gallivant, Colloq sleep around, play the field: How does she cope with his constant running around? 24 run around with. associate with, spend time with, dally with, consort with: Cynthia is running around with a bad crowd these days. 25 run away. See 2, above. 26 run down. a trace, track, hunt, stalk, follow, pursue, dog, shadow; find, locate, track down, discover: We ran down the suspect in an abandoned barn in Little Fakenham. b criticize, decry, defame, vilify, disparage, deprecate, depreciate, denigrate, Colloq knock, pan: If you keep running him down like that he'll develop an inferiority complex before he's seven. c weaken, tire, expire, play (itself) out, burn out, run out, fail, Colloq peter out: Once the batteries have run down, we will no longer be able to transmit a distress-signal. d strike, hit, smash or crash or slam into, run over, knock over or down, collide with: On the way home, he almost ran down a boy on a bicycle. 27 run in. arrest, take into custody, jail, apprehend, take or bring in, Colloq pinch, nab, pull in, bust, collar, Brit nick: This is the third time this week that Minette has been run in for soliciting. 28 run into. See 20, above. 29 run off. a See 2, above. b duplicate, print, copy, turn out, produce, make, manufacture, generate, Colloq do, churn out: How quickly can you run off 1000 copies of this brochure? 30 run out. a be exhausted, expire, terminate, (come or draw to a) close, end, cease: The time for renewing your subscription has run out. b finish, go, be exhausted, be used up, Colloq peter out: The food had run out and we had no water when we were rescued. 31 run out of. use up, consume, eat up, exhaust, be out of: We've run out of milk - can you nip down to the shop and get some? 32 run out on. desert, abandon, leave high and dry, forsake, leave in the lurch, leave holding the baby: Despite all his promises, Edgar ran out on her when she became pregnant. 33 run over. a See 26 (d), above. b scan, run through, go over, look over, flip or leaf or thumb through, look at, skim (through), browse through, dip into, review: I promised Casey I would run over his article if I had the time. c overflow, spill (over), brim over, slosh over, pour over; extend, reach, spread over, stretch over; exceed, go beyond, overreach, overshoot, surpass, transcend: She accidentally let the bath run over, ruining the ceiling below. This article will run over onto the next page. McClelland always runs over the time allotted to his part of the proceedings. d rehearse, run through, repeat, practise, review, go over, study, learn, memorize: You'd best run over your speech again before the banquet. 34 run through. a pierce, stab, transfix, stick, spit: In the last scene, the hero runs the villain through with his sword before succumbing to his own wounds. b squander, consume, use up, waste, fritter away, exhaust, deplete, spend, dissipate, throw away, Slang blow: It didn't take Hugh more than a year to run through his inheritance. c See 33 (b), above.

--n. 35 sprint, dash, race, jog, trot: They go for a two-mile run every morning before breakfast. 36 trip, journey, visit, drive, expedition, trek, outing, excursion, jaunt, junket, sojourn, Colloq spin, joyride: He has to make a run over to Paris for the weekend, supposedly on business. 37 route, routine, circuit, passage, trip, cycle, round; beat: I was on the Murmansk run during the war. 38 period, spate, interval, time, spell, stretch, course; engagement, booking, Colloq patch: Roger has had a run of bad luck and could use some help. The show had a long run on Broadway. 39 access, freedom, liberty: The children had the run of the house for a week while their parents were away. 40 return, satisfaction, reward, recompense, compensation, requital, expiation, atonement, repayment, remuneration: Although the odds are never in your favour, you get a good run for your money at Diamond Lil's Gambling Emporium. 41 series, sequence, stream, spate, string, succession, progression: Will attributed his poor showing at the tournament to a bad run of cards. 42 stream, brook, runnel, creek, rill, rivulet, Brit beck, Scots burn, US branch, kill: There is a small run at the bottom of the hill. 43 demand, call, request: Bouillon cubes seem to have enjoyed quite a run lately. 44 type, category, class, kind, sort: Mark seems to be a bit more refined than the usual run of guest at Lisa's parties. 45 trail, track, piste, path, slope; way, runway: She skied down the north run in record time. 46 enclosure, yard, pen, compound, runway; paddock; pound: There is a good-sized run at the kennel where we board the dogs when we go on holiday. 47 Music roulade, cadenza, arpeggio, riff: The soprano treated us to a marvellous run in which each note was distinct and pure. 48 in the long run. eventually, finally, after all, ultimately, in (due) time, in due course, in fine, in the end, at the end of the day, in the final analysis, all things considered, when all is said and done: Regardless of early troubles, things always seem to turn out all right in the long run in his plays. 49 on the run. a hastily, in haste, hurriedly, while under way, in a hurry, at speed, in a rush: It isn't supposed to be good for you to eat breakfast on the run every day. b on the loose, fleeing, escaping, running, in flight, running (away), Slang US on the lam: He was on the run from the police and desperate to find Duncan. c running, retreating, on the move or the go: They kept the enemy on the run for a week. 50 the runs. diarrhoea, dysentery, upset stomach, Jocular tummy rot, Delhi belly, Aztec hop, turista or tourista, Mexican foxtrot or two-step or toothache, Montezuma's revenge, curse of Montezuma, Rangoon runs, Tokyo trots, Lambeth run(s): I came down with the runs when we got to Ankara.

run-around

n. evasive treatment; slip: Every time he applied for help he was given the run-around.

runaway   n. 1 fugitive, escapee, refugee, deserter, truant, absconder: The lad is a notorious runaway who has escaped four times before.

--adj. 2 wild, uncontrolled, unchecked, rampant, renegade, unsuppressed; driverless, riderless, loose; escaped: Runaway inflation is ruining the economy of the country. The runaway horses were finally brought back. 3 easy, effortless, overwhelming, uncontested: The incumbent enjoyed a runaway victory in yesterday's election.

run-down adj. 1 wearied, exhausted, debilitated, weakened, worn out, peaked, fatigued, enervated, tired, drained, spent, out of shape or condition, below par, in bad shape; unhealthy, sickly, ill: He was found in a badly run-down condition, but was soon back on his feet. 2 ramshackle, dilapidated, tumbledown, decrepit, rickety, broken-down: The family lives in a run-down cottage on the edge of the moor.

--n. 3 run-through, synopsis, summary, survey, pr,cis, r,sum,, (thumbnail) sketch, outline, rough idea, review, recapitulation, briefing; highlights, high points: Give me a quick run-down of what happened while I was gone.

run-in n. disagreement, argument, dispute, altercation, quarrel, confrontation, contretemps: We had a run-in with our neighbour about playing his hi-fi too loud.

runner n. 1 sprinter, racer, jogger, hurdler, miler: Gordon is one of our best runners and ought to make the Olympic team. 2 messenger, courier, errand-boy, errand-girl, messenger-boy, messenger-girl, page, dispatch-bearer or despatch-bearer, dispatch-rider or despatch-rider, Colloq US gofer: The runner said that the package fell off his motor cycle and he lost it. 3 sucker, tendril, creeper, shoot, branch, stem: Tie these runners to the frame in order to train the vine. 4 blade: The runners on your skates need sharpening.

running n. 1 operation, management, direction: Who attends to the everyday running of the business while you are away? 2 competition, contest, meet, tournament, race, match; event, game: If he is found to take steroids, he'll be out of the running.

--adj. 3 continuous, on-going, continual, perpetual, sustained, constant, uninterrupted, ceaseless, unceasing: Where do they get the energy to keep up a running argument on the same silly subject?

runt n. dwarf, pygmy, midget: Save the runt of the litter for me.

run-through
n. 1 rehearsal, practice, trial, test: Let's have one more run-through before tomorrow's dress rehearsal. 2 See run-down, above.

rupture n. 1 break, rift, split, fissure, fracture, cleavage, bursting; breaking, splitting, break-up, breach, schism, disunity, breaking up, severance, division, separation: The rupture was caused by the expansion of the water on freezing. There was no rupture in friendly relations between the families. 2 hernia: He is to undergo surgery for a rupture.

--v. 3 break (up or apart), split, fracture, cleave, divide, breach, separate; disrupt, part, sunder: The fabric of the balloon ruptured, the gas escaped, and the basket plummeted earthward.

rural adj. 1 country, pastoral, sylvan, bucolic, rustic, Arcadian, exurban; agricultural, agrarian, Literary georgic: They always preferred rural life to life in the city. Constable painted mainly rural scenes. He sells farm equipment, strictly a rural business. 2 See rustic, 2, below.

ruse n. trick, device, deception, manoeuvre or chiefly US maneuver, dodge, pretence, pretext, subterfuge, stratagem, ploy, hoax, wile, artifice, imposture: His feigned friendship was only a ruse to get them to reveal their next move.

rush v. 1 hurry (up), hasten, run, race, hustle, bustle, make haste, dash, speed, scurry, scramble, scoot, jump, sprint, scamper, scuttle, Colloq move (it), hotfoot (it), skedaddle, step on it, make it snappy, US hightail (it), step on the gas , Slang get moving, get cracking, get a wiggle on, go like a bat out of hell, shake a leg: If you want the job, you'll have to rush to send in your application. Don't rush - there's plenty for everyone. 2 attack, assault, charge, storm, blitz: If we rush them, we might take them by surprise.

--n. 3 hurry, haste, hustle, bustle, dash, speed, turmoil, turbulence, flurry, commotion, ferment, pother, ado, to-do, excitement, pell-mell, harum-scarum: What's the rush? 4 surge, sensation, thrill, charge: I felt a rush of pleasure when I saw her coming down the street.

--adj. 5 urgent, hurry-up, exigent, high-priority, top-priority, emergency: This is a rush job that must be completed today.

rustic adj. 1 See rural, 1, above. 2 peasant, plain, simple, uncomplicated, unsophisticated, na‹ve, ingenuous, guileless, artless, unrefined, unpolished, countrified, uncultivated, uncultured, boorish, crude, rough, unmannerly, hill-billy, backwoods, awkward, ungainly, cloddish, plodding, oafish, gawky, lumpen, loutish: Who could dream that such a rustic homebody would some day be famous for the most fashionable literary salon in London?

--n. 3 peasant, bumpkin, boor, yokel, hill-billy, countryman, countrywoman, country boy or girl, oaf, country cousin, Colloq clodhopper, Derogatory and offensive bog-trotter, US and Canadian hayseed, hick: In those days, few rustics ever even visited a city.

rustle v. 1 whisper, swish, sibilate, susurrate: Outside my window, the leaves rustled in the evening breeze.

--n. 2 whisper, whispering, rustling, swish, swishing, sibilation, sibilance, susurration, susurrus: I heard the faint rustle of satin and knew she was listening at the door.

rut n. 1 groove, furrow, wheel-mark, track, trough: In the winter the ruts in the lane fill with water and freeze, making driving difficult. 2 pattern, habit, routine, groove, grind, treadmill, dead end, Colloq rat race: After 27 years as a horse groom, I'm beginning to feel I'm stuck in a rut.

ruthless adj. pitiless, unpitying, cruel, unsympathetic, merciless, unmerciful, harsh, fierce, remorseless, uncompassionate, vicious, savage, ferocious, hard-hearted, callous, unfeeling, tough, severe, heartless, inhuman, brutal, brutish, unrelenting, relentless, Chiefly US and Canadian mean: The jail houses some of the country's most ruthless criminals. In all of history there was no more ruthless a tyrant.

19.0 S

=-

19.1 sabotage...

=-

sabotage n. 1 destruction, damage, wrecking, impairment: Enemy infiltrators were responsible for the sabotage of our radar. 2 subversion, treachery, treason: When the radar was found damaged, sabotage was suspected.

--v. 3 undermine, subvert, disrupt, spoil, ruin, cripple; damage, incapacitate, disable, destroy, wreck, Colloq Brit throw a spanner in(to) the works, US throw a monkey wrench into the machinery, Slang Brit queer (someone's pitch): Only someone who had something to lose would have sabotaged our plan for reorganization. The engine had been sabotaged by pouring sand into the fuel tank.

sack n. 1 pouch, bag, Scots and US dialect poke; Technical sac: She bought a 10-pound sack of potatoes. 2 hit the sack. retire, turn in, go to bed or to sleep, Slang hit the hay, Brit kip (down), US sack out: I need my beauty sleep so I'm going to hit the sack. 3 the sack. dismissal, discharge, firing, Colloq heave-ho, the axe, marching orders, US pink slip, bounce, Chiefly US and Canadian walking papers, Slang Brit the boot, the chop, the push: Ten of us got the sack when the new management took over.

--v. 4 dismiss, discharge, fire, let go, lay off, Brit make or declare redundant, Colloq give (someone) the axe or the (old) heave-ho, give (someone) his or her marching orders, Brit give (someone) the sack, US bounce, Slang Brit give (someone) the boot or the chop or the push: Now that he's been sacked, Norman will be able to spend more time with the children.

sacred adj. 1 consecrated, dedicated, hallowed, holy, blessed, blest, sanctified, revered, divine, awe-inspiring, venerable, venerated, sainted, heaven-sent: This is a most sacred Islamic site. 2 inviolable, inviolate, untouchable, protected, sacrosanct: They held nothing sacred as they ransacked the temple. 3 religious, spiritual, ceremonial, church(ly), ecclesiastical, priestly, hieratic, ritual, solemn, sacramental, liturgical: He continued to carry out his sacred duties despite the war.

sacrifice n. 1 immolation, surrender, forfeiture, forgoing, giving up, yielding up, offering (up), offer, Christian religion oblation: The Aztec religion demanded the sacrifice of human beings. 2 forfeiture, forgoing, giving up, relinquishment, loss: Mrs Clinton continues her charitable work at the sacrifice of much of her time.

--v. 3 immolate, offer (up), yield (up), give up: In their religion, they were required to sacrifice small animals to propitiate the gods. 4 give up, forgo, forfeit, relinquish, surrender, let go, lose, yield, renounce, forswear; forbear, desist, cease, stop, refrain from: She was quite ready to sacrifice her inheritance to see justice done. If you sacrificed smoking you could give the money you save to charity.

sacrificial

adj. 1 sacrificed, immolated, surrendered, given up, yielded: They led the sacrificial lamb to the slaughter. 2 atoning, expiatory, propitiatory, conciliatory: The solemn sacrificial ceremonies were carried out by the high priestess.

sacrilege n. 1 desecration, profanation, debasement, violation, prostitution, dishonouring, vitiation, defilement, befouling, fouling, contamination, befoulment, misuse, abuse, perversion, maltreatment: The horrendous Buckinghamshire county office building is an example of architectural sacrilege. 2 impiety, heresy, profanation, outrage, violation, profanity, blasphemy, impiousness, irreverence, disrespect, secularization: It was an unscrupulous sacrilege to appropriate to his own use the offerings to the gods.

sacrilegious

adj. profane, impious, heretical, blasphemous, irreverent, disrespectful: The inscription contains a curse on any who perpetrate any sacrilegious act against the remains of the pharaoh.

sad adj. 1 unhappy, melancholy, downcast, dejected, depressed, low, sorrowful, gloomy, morose, glum, lugubrious, mournful, heartsick, crestfallen, chap-fallen, disheartened, downhearted, blue, despondent, broken-hearted, heartbroken, woebegone, miserable, wretched: Danny was so sad when his dog died that he wept for a week. 2 depressing, gloomy, disheartening, dreary, dismal, funereal, sombre, lugubrious, saddening, heartbreaking, bleak, distressing, dispiriting, calamitous: It was a sad day for all of us here when the England team lost the semifinal. 3 unfortunate, unsatisfactory, awful, bad, shabby, dirty, lamentable, miserable, sorry, wretched, pathetic, pitiful, pitiable, deplorable, terrible, Colloq lousy, rotten: After two weeks under water, the sofa was in pretty sad shape.

sadden v. depress, deject, sorrow, dishearten, distress, dispirit, discourage, grieve, aggrieve: It saddens me to think of all the starving people.

sadistic adj. cruel, monstrous, brutal, brutish, beastly, ruthless, perverse, Technical algolagnic: She derives sadistic pleasure from reminding me of all my failures. The scars and bruises confirmed the sadistic treatment he had undergone.

sadly adv. 1 unfortunately, alas, unhappily, unluckily, lamentably, regrettably, deplorably, sad to relate: Sadly, all our oldest oaks were uprooted in the hurricane. 2 unhappily, gloomily, morosely, mournfully, despondently, miserably, wretchedly, dejectedly, dismally, sombrely, lugubriously: He told me sadly that he did not expect to return to England again.

sadness n. unhappiness, dolour, misery, sorrow, dispiritedness, grief, depression, dejection, dejectedness, sorrowfulness, despondency, melancholy, gloom, gloominess: It is hard to describe the sadness we all felt when she left.

safe adj. 1 unharmed, whole, uninjured, unhurt, (safe and) sound, secure, protected, shielded, sheltered, out of harm's way, all right, Colloq OK or okay: You'll be safe here with me. 2 harmless, non-toxic, non-poisonous, innocuous; unpolluted: This medication is safe if you do not exceed the recommended dosage. Is the water safe to drink? 3 sure, secure, sound, protected, risk-free, riskless, safe as the Bank of England, reliable, dependable, solid, bona fide, conservative, tried and true, Brit safe as houses: It was previously thought that an investment in Alfordyce Ltd was safe. 4 all right, allowable, permissible, acceptable, satisfactory, appropriate, suitable, timely, right, correct, proper, justifiable, justified, Colloq OK or okay: Is it safe to come out now? 5 secured, protected: The children are safe in bed. Your secret is safe with me.

--adv. 6 safely, securely: I won't breathe easy till he's safe behind bars.

--n. 7 vault, crypt, strongbox, safe-deposit or safety-deposit box, coffer, chest, repository: The necklace is kept in the safe and I never get a chance to wear it.

safeguard n. 1 protection, defence, security: Such a flimsy fence to is hardly a sufficient safeguard.

--v. 2 protect, defend, shield, shelter, keep safe, guard; conserve, save, keep, care for, look after: What is being done to safeguard the passengers from attacks by bandits?

safe keeping
n. charge, protection, keeping, custody, care, guardianship: The deed to the house is in the safe keeping of Mr Williams, my solicitor.

safety n. safeness, protection, aegis, cover, shelter, security, refuge; sanctuary, safe keeping: There's safety in numbers, so the more the merrier. We retreated to the safety of the castle dungeon.

sag v. 1 droop, sink, slump, bend, dip; swag, bag: The board sagged precariously under his weight. Without a breath stirring, the banners sagged in the humid air. 2 drop, decrease, decline, go or come down, fall, slide, slip, weaken, slump, descend, diminish, lessen, droop, subside, flag, falter, wilt: The value of the dollar sagged in world markets today.

--n. 3 sagging, drop, droop, sinking, sinkage, subsidence, dip; reduction, decrease, decline, fall, slide, weakening, slump, lessening, flagging, faltering: If you stand over here you can see a definite sag in the roof. The sag in profits was attributed to a poor response to the new model.

saga n. (heroic) legend, narrative, epic, Edda, chronicle, romance, roman-fleuve, story, tale, adventure: Are you really interested in the continuing saga of the inhabitants of Coronation Street?

sage adj. 1 wise, sagacious, prudent, sensible, perspicacious, profound, intelligent, discerning, reasonable, logical, judicious, common-sense, commonsensical: The old woman gave her some sage advice about men, which she promptly forgot.

--n. 2 wise man, savant, expert, elder, doyen or doyenne, guru, Nestor, pundit, Solomon, philosopher, oracle, authority: The sage whose counsel you seek lives deep in the forest.

sail v. 1 navigate, pilot, steer: Sail as close to the shore as possible to avoid the whirlpool. 2 go sailing or boating or yachting, cruise, set sail, put (out) to sea: Would you like to sail to the Isle of Wight for the weekend? 3 drift, move lightly, breeze, flow, waft, sweep, coast, float, scud, glide, slide, slip, plane, skim, fly, flit: It was delightful to watch the tiny boats sailing, tacking, beating, and running in the brisk wind.

--n. 4 canvas: The schooner was carrying all the sail she could.

sailor n. seaman, seafarer, seafaring man or woman, seagoing man or woman, mariner, (old) salt, sea dog, bluejacket, shellback, yachtsman, yachtswoman, boatman, boatwoman, deck-hand, captain, skipper, Literary Jack Tar, Colloq tar, Naval US swab, swabbie, gob: When she said she had married a sailor I didn't know she meant that he had a 100-foot yacht.

saintly adj. holy, blessed, blest, beatific, godly, sainted, angelic, seraphic, pure, righteous, virtuous, blameless: Donald was such a saintly man, it was impossible to think ill of him.

sake n. 1 benefit, welfare, well-being, good, advantage, behalf, profit, gain, account: Joe and I stayed together for the sake of the children. She felt pleased, for his sake, that he had managed to get away. 2 purpose(s), reason(s), objective(s): Just for the sake of comparison, let us now look at the situation in Taiwan.

salary n. income, pay, earnings, compensation, remuneration, emolument; wage(s): I can't afford a new car on my present salary.

sale n. 1 selling, traffic, vending, marketing, trafficking, trading; trade, exchange, transaction: The sale of alcoholic beverages on Sundays is prohibited. Provide a receipt for each sale. 2 trade, purchase; trading, buying, purchasing: We must do something to boost sales. The house is very reasonably priced for a quick sale. 3 sales event, mark-down, white sale, jumble sale, Brit car-boot sale, US rummage sale, garage sale, tag sale, yard sale, Colloq sellathon, sales marathon: We are having a sale to clear out things we no longer want or need. 4 transaction: She hasn't made a sale in a week. 5 on sale. US marked down, cut-price, bargain-priced; reduced (in price): Bacon is on sale this week at half price. 6 (up) for sale. on the market, available, in stock, Chiefly Brit on sale, on offer, US on the block: Their house is for sale to the highest bidder.

salesperson
n. salesman, saleswoman, saleslady, salesgirl, sales-clerk, clerk, Chiefly Brit shop-girl, Brit shop assistant, Old-fashioned counter-jumper: The shop is noted for its wide range of merchandise and the efficiency and courtesy of its salespeople.

salient adj. conspicuous, outstanding, pronounced, noticeable, prominent, significant, important, marked, impressive, striking, remarkable, distinguishing, distinctive, unique, eminent, noteworthy, notable, principal, chief, primary: A salient feature of this policy is that it can be converted at any time from a straight life to an endowment policy.

salt n. 1 common or table salt, sodium chloride, sea salt, rock-salt: A little salt will bring out the flavour. 2 spice, spiciness, zest, zestiness, pungency, vigour, vitality, liveliness, pep, pepper, poignancy, piquancy, relish, bite, savour, seasoning, taste, Colloq zip, zing, punch: Yes, do invite Randolph, for he can be relied on to add a little salt to the dinner conversation. 3 (Attic) wit, Attic salt, dry humour, sarcasm: Her conversation is sprinkled with the salt of clever aphorisms. 4 See sailor, above. 5 with a grain or pinch of salt. cum grano salis, warily, cautiously, qualifiedly, qualifyingly, doubtfully, sceptically, suspiciously, reservedly, with reservation(s) or qualification(s): You have to take what he says with a grain of salt.

--v. 6 season, spice, flavour, pepper: The pirate's speech was salted with expressions like 'Shiver me timbers!', 'Avast there!', and 'Blow me down!' 7 pickle, cure, preserve, corn, marinate, souse: The book gives several recipes for curing ham and salting beef. 8 salt away. save (up), hoard, put or lay or set by or aside, squirrel away, store up, stockpile, amass, accumulate, pile up, Colloq stash away, US and Canadian sock away: They were always terribly stingy, claiming they were salting something away for their old age.

--adj. 9 salty, saline, brackish, briny: The water had a salt taste. 10 pickled, kippered, marinated, soused; corned; cured: Do you like salt herring?

salute   v. 1 greet, hail, address, accost: The moment I stepped in at the door I was saluted with the peremptory question, 'Where have you been?' 2 pay respects or homage or tribute to, honour, recognize, acknowledge: Wherever she went she was saluted as a heroine.

--n. 3 greeting, address, salutation: He returned my salute with a nod.

salvage   v. 1 save, recover, rescue, redeem, deliver, retrieve, reclaim: Were you able to salvage anything of value after the fire?

--n. 2 recovery, rescue, retrieval, redemption, deliverance, reclamation, salvation: The salvage of a vessel or cargo at sea invests the salvager with legal rights under certain conditions.

salve   n. 1 balm, ointment, unguent, dressing, cream, lotion, demulcent, embrocation, liniment: The doctor applied a salve to the wound and bandaged it. 2 emollient, balm, palliative, tranquillizer, opiate, anodyne, narcotic, relief, assuagement: The money was more a salve to his conscience than a token of his charity.

--v. 3 mitigate, relieve, ease, alleviate, assuage, palliate, soothe, mollify, comfort, appease: There must be something you can do to allow them to save face and to salve their wounded pride.

same   adj. 1 identical, exact (same), selfsame; very: When I said they were wearing the same dress I meant that they were wearing identical dresses. That's the same tie you wore when we first met. 2 unchanged, unchanging, changeless, unmodified, unaltered, constant, uniform, unvaried, unvarying; word-for-word, verbatim: As you can see, it's the same old Charley you used to know and love. Professor Spicer is still giving the same lecture that he has given all these years. 3 all the same. at the same time, nevertheless, nonetheless, even so, yet, but, anyway, anyhow, in any case, in any event, at any rate, regardless, still (and all), in spite of or despite the fact, notwithstanding, for all that, that (having been) said, having said that, after all is said and done, just the same: Of course you have a right to go; all the same, I wish you had let me know.

sample n. 1 specimen, example, representative, representation, illustration, sampling, sampler, cross-section; swatch; bite, nibble, taste: I should like to see a sample before deciding whether to place an order with you.

--v. 2 test, try, taste, experience: Anyone is welcome to sample the merchandise on request.

--adj. 3 representative, specimen, illustrative, representational, trial, test: A sample copy of the book is available for examination.

sanatorium

n. rest-home, convalescent home, nursing home, clinic, health farm, US also sanitarium: After spending a month recuperating in a Swiss sanatorium, Gladys was as good as new.

sanctify v. 1 consecrate, hallow, make sacred or holy, glorify, exalt, canonize, enshrine; Rom Cath Ch beatify: The site was sanctified and is visited by pilgrims throughout the year. 2 purify, cleanse: According to Scripture, some are sanctified before birth. 3 confirm, sanction, ratify, justify, legitimate, legitimatize or legitimize, legalize, license: Her family insisted that the marriage be sanctified at the church in Suffolk, where they live.

sanctimonious

adj. hypocritical, self-righteous, canting, mealy-mouthed, holier-than-thou, Pharisaical, pietistic, unctuous, Tartuffian, Colloq goody-goody, Chiefly Brit smarmy Slang Brit pi: I wondered what happened to all that sanctimonious talk about putting his family first?

sanction n. 1 confirmation, ratification, secondment, authorization, legalization, legitimatization or legitimization, validation, licence, certification, approval, permission, imprimatur, seal or stamp (of approval), signet: If you get the sanction of the rest of the members, then I shall agree. 2 help, aid, encouragement, support, advocacy, backing, sponsorship, favour, countenance: You will need the sanction of the entire committee in order to win a vote of confidence. 3 agreement, concurrence, acceptance, affirmation, assent, acquiescence, compliance, approval, OK or okay: He would never have proceeded with the invasion without the sanction of his generals. 4 ban, penalty, punishment, retribution, discipline, retaliation, redress: The government decided to introduce sanctions against the regime on account of their atrocious record on human rights.

--v. 5 confirm, ratify, second, authorize, legalize, legitimatize or legitimize, validate, license, certify, approve, permit, allow, notarize, vouchsafe, subscribe to, commission, consent to: If the board sanctions the purchase of the company, it is then up to the shareholders to vote. 6 support, encourage, advocate, back, sponsor, favour, countenance, help: You know I cannot be seen to sanction your plan in preference to others.

sanctity n. piety, holiness, saintliness, divinity, grace, sacredness, godliness, devotion, dedication: The arguments of the anti-abortionists were based on a belief in the sanctity of all human life.

sanctuary n. 1 sanctum, shrine, chapel, temple, church, house of worship, house of God; synagogue, mosque, pagoda: All of us retire at this time to the sanctuary for evening prayer. 2 asylum, refuge, retreat, protection, shelter, safety: Formerly, criminals could seek sanctuary in churches. 3 (nature or wildlife) reserve or preserve, reservation, conservation area, national park: If housing is built here, it will destroy the bird sanctuary.

sanctum n. 1 sanctuary, holy of holies, shrine: No one is allowed into the sanctum except the high priestess. 2 sanctum sanctorum, den, study, retreat; hiding-place, hide-out, hideaway, cubby-hole: After dinner Roger goes to his sanctum to write.

sane adj. normal, of sound mind, rational, compos mentis, well-balanced, right-minded, level-headed, rational, reasonable, sensible, judicious, Colloq right in the head, all there: They decided that the killer was sane and fit to stand trial.

sang-froid
n. cold-bloodedness, coolness, cool-headedness, indifference, composure, phlegm, self-possession, self-control, poise, imperturbability, equanimity, Colloq unflappability, cool, coolth: What amazed us was the remarkable sang-froid displayed by even the smallest children in the face of bullying.

sanguinary
adj. 1 bloodthirsty, cruel, brutal, brutish, gory, merciless, remorseless, ruthless, pitiless, heartless, savage, barbarous, slaughterous, grim, fell, murderous, homicidal: The axe murder was the most sanguinary crime that the division had ever been required to investigate. 2 bloody, sanguineous, sanguinolent: I am unsure how I survived such a sanguinary battle.

sanguine adj. optimistic, rosy, confident, hopeful, forward-looking, anticipatory, expectant, enthusiastic, fervid, zealous: Some experts took a more sanguine view, saying that they expected to see the start of an economic upturn in the next few months.

sanitary adj. clean, sterile, hygienic, antiseptic, disinfected, aseptic, germ-free, bacteria-free; healthy, unpolluted, salubrious, healthful, salutary, wholesome: With such shortages of personnel and equipment, it was impossible to maintain a sanitary hospital environment.

sanity n. saneness, reason, mental health or soundness, normality, rationality, reason, reasonableness, stability, balance: Have you any reason for suspecting her sanity?

sap° n. 1 (vital) juice or fluid, bodily or US also body fluid, lifeblood, essence, Literary ichor: He apostrophized about how the sap of youth had shrunk from his veins. 2 fool, idiot, nincompoop, ninny, ninny-hammer, simpleton, ignoramus, nitwit, dim-wit, dunce, ass; dupe, gull, US thimble-wit; Colloq chump, drip, Brit (right) charlie, noddy, noodle, wet, Chiefly Brit twit, Slang patsy, sucker, (easy) mark, pushover, sap-head, Brit muggins, US schnook, schlemiel or schlemihl or shlemiel, fall guy: You certainly were a sap to fall for that old line!

--v. 3 bleed, drain, draw, tap, rob, milk: I could feel the strength being sapped from my body.

sapý v. undermine, sabotage, weaken, cripple, wreck, devitalize, deplete, drain, erode, enervate, debilitate: They did everything they could to sap my self-confidence.

sarcasm n. scorn, contumely, derision, ridicule, bitterness, acrimony, acrimoniousness, acerbity, harshness, acridity, acridness, asperity, venom, poison, venomousness, poisonousness, virulence, spite, spitefulness, malice, maliciousness, malevolence, satire, irony, cynicism, disdain: Kathy was too thick-skinned to appreciate the sarcasm of Tom's cutting commentary on her acting.

sarcastic adj. scornful, contumelious, derisive, derisory, ridiculing, bitter, biting, cutting, trenchant, incisive, acrimonious, acerbic, acid, acidic, acidulous, harsh, acrid, aspersive, venomous, poisonous, virulent, spiteful, malicious, malefic, malevolent, satiric(al), ironic(al), cynical, disdainful, mocking, contemptuous, critical, censorious, captious, carping, cavilling, sardonic, scathing, caustic, nasty: I don't think he knows how hurtful his sarcastic remarks can be.

sardonic adj. ironic(al), derisive, derisory, mocking, cynical, sarcastic: She said that she was leaving him, but his only response was a sardonic smile.

satanic adj. 1 diabolic(al), fiendish, devilish, Mephistophelian, demonic, demoniac(al), infernal, cacodemonic, ghoulish, hellish, infernal, evil, wicked, iniquitous, corrupt, depraved, perverted, perverse, godless, ungodly, impious, unholy, sinister, dark, black, immoral, amoral: They practise witchcraft and other satanic inventions. 2 dire, monstrous, heinous, atrocious, hideous, horrible, horrendous, horrid, horrifying, loathsome, vile, abhorrent, unspeakable, unutterable, damnable, despicable, abominable: The miners worked under positively satanic conditions.

satellite n. 1 moon, spacecraft, Old-fashioned sputnik: The sky is crowded with artificial satellites orbiting the earth. 2 follower, attendant, retainer, disciple, acolyte, aide, aide-de-camp, minion, lieutenant, assistant, helper, hanger-on, dependant, shadow, right-hand man, vassal, parasite, sycophant, Colloq sidekick: Boswell became the obsequious satellite of Samuel Johnson.

satiate v. 1 stuff, glut, gorge, cloy, surfeit, overfill, overstuff, glut, pall, overindulge, saturate, choke, deluge, flood, choke, suffocate, weary, exhaust, bore, tire, jade: The travellers were so satiated with food and drink that nothing could wake them. 2 slake, satisfy, quench, content, gratify, sate: I felt the it would take at least a gallon of water to satiate my thirst.

satiety n. surfeit, glut, superabundance, overindulgence, saturation, nimiety, excess, superfluity: The painting exudes a mood of sexual languor and satiety.

satire n. 1 ridicule, irony, sarcasm, mockery, spoofing, exaggeration, caricature: Often, the best way to comment on a distasteful political situation is through satire. 2 burlesque, lampoon, parody, travesty, pasquinade, spoof, cartoon, caricature, Colloq take-off, Chiefly Brit send-up: For several years he wrote mainly satires of life among the wealthy.

satirical adj. satiric, ironic, sarcastic, mocking, spoofing, irreverent, exaggerating, Hudibrastic, derisive, disparaging, abusive, scornful, flippant, ridiculing, chaffing: After a number of satirical plays, he returned to writing novels, which, he felt, reached a wider audience.

satirize v. lampoon, burlesque, parody, caricature, travesty, poke fun at, (hold up to) ridicule, make fun or sport of, pillory, deride, mock; mimic, imitate; Colloq take off, put down, Brit send up: Since ancient times writers have satirized the follies of their age.

satisfaction
n. 1 gratification, comfort, fulfilment, contentment, delight, joy, enjoyment, pleasure, happiness: They get a great deal of satisfaction out of seeing their children happily married. 2

payment, requital, repayment, compensation, recompense, remuneration, reparation, indemnity, indemnification, restitution, vindication, damages, amends, redress, atonement, expiation: The purpose of the lawsuit is to demand satisfaction for the wrongs done to our family.

satisfactory
adj. adequate, sufficient, acceptable, passable, all right, not bad, good enough, fair, Colloq OK or okay: I'd say that the food at Michelle's is satisfactory but not outstanding.

satisfy v. 1 gratify, fulfil, comfort, please, content, placate, appease, pacify: It takes a lot to satisfy him: he is one of the fussiest men I have ever worked with. 2 fill, meet, fulfil, provide for, look after or to, serve, answer, comply with, resolve, solve, gratify, indulge; slake, quench, sate, satiate: Your desire for better working conditions can probably only be satisfied by a change of job. What will it take to satisfy your thirst for adventure? 3 convince, persuade, reassure, assure, put (someone's) mind at rest, content: He was satisfied that emigration to Australia was the only option open to him. 4 pay, repay, redress, make good, indemnify, write off, liquidate: I shall see to it that the debt is satisfied at once.

satisfying
adj. gratifying, satisfactory, fulfilling, filling, satiating; comforting, pleasing, pacifying, pleasurable: That was a very satisfying meal. It is a satisfying feeling to know that you are happy.

saturate v. soak, wet, drench, steep, fill, imbue, souse, suffuse, impregnate, permeate; waterlog; Technical ret: I got caught in the rain and came home saturated. Make sure that you saturate the earth round the tree once you have finished planting.

sauce n. 1 gravy, condiment: That sauce on the meat was truly delicious. 2 impertinence, sauciness, impudence, audacity, insolence, brazenness, pertness, disrespect, disrespectfulness, Colloq cheek, cheekiness, lip, back talk, backchat, brass, nerve, gall, Slang crust, US and Canadian sass, sassiness: She had the sauce to tell me to pay at once or get out.

saunter v. walk, stroll, amble, meander, ramble, wander, Colloq mosey, traipse: An oddly dressed man sauntered over and asked if I had ever bet on a horse before.

savage adj. 1 wild, untamed, undomesticated, feral, unbroken: These savage beasts had never seen a man before. 2 vicious, ferocious, fierce, beastly, bestial, brutish, bloodthirsty, brutal, cruel, ruthless, pitiless, merciless, harsh, bloody, unmerciful, fell, barbarous, barbaric, murderous, demonic, demoniac, sadistic: The boy was subjected to a savage attack by the defendant's dog. The king's guards were selected for their savage nature. 3 wild, uncivilized, uncultivated, primitive, inhuman, bestial, barbaric, barbarous, untamed, rude: The savage behaviour of some New Guinea tribes included cannibalism.

--n. 4 wild man or woman, brute, barbarian; Caliban: When the explorers landed on the island, they were welcomed by the savages who lived there.

save v. 1 (come to someone's) rescue, deliver; (set) free, liberate, release, redeem, bail (someone) out; recover, salvage, retrieve: What can be done to save me from the drudgery of doing the laundry? She saved only one thing of value from the fire. 2 keep, preserve, guard, safeguard, protect, conserve, secure, shelter, shield: One way to save dried flowers is to press them between the leaves of a book. 3 lay or put aside, lay or put by, lay or put away, keep, retain, set apart, hold, reserve, preserve, conserve; economize, scrimp, scrape: Soon he had saved enough money to buy a new car. If you keep on saving, you may soon have enough for a new suit. 4 obviate, preclude, spare, prevent: A little extra care taken now will save a lot of trouble later on.

saving adj. 1 redeeming, redemptory or redemptive or redemptional, compensating, compensatory, qualifying, extenuating, extenuatory: His one saving grace is that he has a lot of money. 2 parsimonious, economical, thrifty, provident, frugal, sparing, prudent: It was only because of Alison's saving nature that we had enough to live on during the strike.

--n. 3 economizing, economization, economy, thrift, providence, frugality, prudence, scrimping, scraping, sparingness: It was only by her saving that we survived. 4 savings. resources, reserve, cache, hoard, nest egg: Our savings are to pay for your education, not for having a good time.

saviour n. 1 rescuer, salvation, friend in need, Good Samaritan, liberator, redeemer, deliverer, emancipator, champion, knight errant, knight in shining armour: Because he gave her a job when she most needed it, she regarded him as her saviour. 2 the or our Saviour. Christian religion Christ (the Redeemer), Jesus, the Messiah, Lamb of God, Our Lord, Son of God, King of Kings, Prince of Peace, Islam Mahdi.

savoir faire

n. tact, tactfulness, sophistication, finesse, urbanity, discretion, knowledgeability, diplomacy, urbanity, smoothness, polish, suavity or suaveness, poise, grace, style, skill, adroitness, knowledge, comprehension, Slang savvy: She felt a vague sense of social inferiority, an uneasy lack of savoir faire.

savoir vivre

n. breeding, upbringing, comity, knowledge, sophistication, polish: He has at least enough savoir vivre to know that one doesn't drink red wine with oysters.

savour n. 1 taste, flavour, zest, tang, smack, piquancy: These poached peaches have a savour of brandy about them. 2 hint, suggestion, odour, scent, fragrance, smell, perfume, redolence, bouquet, breath, trace, quality, soup‡on, dash: He preferred talking about the savour rather than the odour of sanctity, for alliteration's sake.

--v. 3 taste, sample, perceive, detect, sense, discern, mark, descry, observe, notice, note, identify; enjoy, luxuriate in, relish, indulge in, bask in, appreciate, revel in, delight in, value, cherish, Colloq lick or smack one's lips or chops over: One could savour a trace of honey in the wine. For a week we savoured the delights of the Costa Brava.

savoury adj. 1 palatable, delicious, delectable, tasty, toothsome, appetizing, flavourful, flavorous, flavoursome, ambrosial, luscious: Pettigrew bit greedily into the savoury flesh of the ripe melon. 2 tasteful, honest, proper, decent, reputable, respectable, honourable, creditable, upright, decorous, seemly, wholesome, innocent: I am not sure that Victoria is travelling in particularly savoury society.

--n. 3 appetizer, hors-d'oeuvre; dessert, sweet; morsel, dainty, titbit or US tidbit, Chiefly Brit starter, Archaic warner: I think I'd like the Welsh rabbit as a savoury.

saw n. proverb, maxim, (old) saying, aphorism, apophthegm or apothegm, axiom, adage, epigram, gnome; slogan, motto, catchword, catch-phrase, byword; dictum, platitude, truism, clich,, commonplace: She always quoted to him the old saw, 'A fool and his mother are soon parted'.

say v. 1 state, affirm, declare, maintain, hold, aver, remark, assert, claim, asseverate, announce: She said that I had to go at once, and I said, 'I shall never leave you!' 2 assert, allege, report, mention, rumour, reveal, bruit about, disclose, divulge, bring to light, put about, noise abroad, suggest, hint, whisper: It was said that spies had already infiltrated the party. 3 pronounce, articulate, utter; phrase, rephrase, translate: How do you say gem•tlich? How do you say it in English? 4 tell, put, express, verbalize, communicate, explain, reveal, bring up, break, impart: I don't quite know how to say this, Harry, but you have bad breath. 5 reply, respond, answer: What have you to say to her allegation that it is all your fault? 6 guess, estimate, conjecture, venture, judge, imagine, believe, think: I'd say you look about 60 years old. 7 mean or intend or try to say, think, contemplate, imply, suggest: Are you saying that you would steal if you had the opportunity? 8 predict, prognosticate, foretell: The newspaper says that shares will go down. 9 signify, denote, symbolize, communicate, indicate, convey, suggest, imply, mean: What does a red light say to you? 10 order, require, demand, bid, stipulate, command, give the word: If I say that you are to go, then you go - and quickly. 11 deliver, utter, speak: Say your lines and exit stage left without waiting for a reply.

--n. 12 voice, authority, influence, power, weight, sway, clout: Does she have that much say about how the money should be spent? 13 turn, chance, opportunity, vote: You've had your say, now let's hear from Ackroyd.

--adv. 14 approximately, about, roughly, circa, nearly: The snake was, say, twenty feet long. 15 for example, for instance, as or for an illustration, eg or US e.g.: Take any novel, say, Wuthering Heights, and analyse the characters.

say-so   n. authority, word, say, order, dictum; authorization: I shouldn't do it just on his say-so if I were you.

19.2 scale...
=-

scale°   n. Often, scales. balance: We need new bathroom scales: the old one gives too high a reading.

scaleý   n. 1 flake, imbrication; scurf, dandruff; Technical squama, plate, scute or scutum, lamina, lamella: Scrape the scales off the fish with a sharp knife before gutting it. 2 coating, encrustation or incrustation, crust, overlay, layer, cake, caking, tartar, plaque: The hardness of the water causes the scale inside the kettle.

scale°   n. 1 range, compass, rank, ranking, gradation, graduation, register, spectrum, calibration, progression, hierarchy, scope, gamut: As we ascend in the scale of life we rise in the scale of longevity. 2 proportion, ratio: The scale of these drawings is One Foot = One Centimetre.

--v. 3 climb, ascend, mount, clamber up, surmount, go up, escalade: Using grappling hooks and ropes, we scaled the wall in minutes. 4 regulate, adjust, proportion, Chiefly US and Canadian prorate: The size of the cable is scaled to the weight it must carry. 5 scale up or down. increase, enlarge, raise; decrease, reduce, diminish, lower: Depending on the expanse of the fa‡ade, the windows ought to be scaled up or down accordingly.

scaly   adj. 1 rough, imbricated, shingly, Technical lamellar, laminar, lamellate, scutate: The scaly covering of reptiles and fishes is related to the feathers of birds. 2 scabby, scabrous, squamous, squamulose, squamosal, squamose, scurfy, furfuraceous, scruffy: The medication causes the skin to dry and become temporarily scaly.

scan   v. 1 glance at or through, look over, skim, read over, flip or thumb or leaf through: I didn't have time to read it thoroughly, but I did scan it. 2 study, pore over, examine, investigate, scrutinize, inspect, delve into, research, explore (in depth), sweep, Archaic con: Scan the horizon for hostile planes.

--n. 3 look, survey, inspection, examination, overview: A microscopic scan revealed no trace of blood.

scandal n. 1 shame, disgrace, embarrassment, sin, outrage: It is a scandal how much of the money raised for charity goes into the pockets of the fund-raisers. 2 discredit, damage, calumny, ignominy, obloquy, dishonour, degradation, disrepute, infamy: The scandal resulting from their being found together could never be lived down. The breath of scandal never touched her. 3 slander, libel, aspersion, innuendo, insinuation, abuse, dirt, defilement, defamation, slur, smear, taint, blemish, spot, stigma, smirch, black mark or spot, blot (on the escutcheon), (badge of) infamy, skeleton in the cupboard, Brit blot on one's copybook: His cowardice brought scandal to the name that could never be lived down.

scandalize
v. appal, shock, outrage, affront, offend, horrify, upset, disturb; rankle, stick in (someone's) craw or throat, gall: They were scandalized to learn the truth about Cooksley's father.

scandalous
adj. 1 shocking, disgraceful, ignominious, improper, indecorous, unseemly, infamous, outrageous, shameful, immodest, dishonourable, disreputable, sordid, despicable, flagitious, wicked, sinful, evil, iniquitous, profligate, immoral, indecent, lewd, lascivious, lustful, licentious, lecherous, atrocious, heinous, disgusting, fulsome, taboo, unmentionable, unspeakable: The scandalous goings-on at the Hellfire Club are well documented. 2 defamatory, libellous, slanderous, calumnious, calumniatory, aspersive, abusive, scurrilous, injurious, defamatory: The newspaper published a scandalous article about him which they refused to retract.

scanty adj. 1 scant, sparse, scarce, little, meagre, minimal; barely adequate or sufficient, limited, restricted, Colloq measly: The news from the front was scanty. We received only scanty support from the Arts Council. 2 skimpy, short, small, sparse, minimal, meagre, in short supply, Colloq chiefly Brit thin on the ground: Investor interest in the new share offering seemed to be scanty.

scapegoat n. victim, front, dupe, gull, cat's-paw, whipping-boy, Brit man of straw, Aunt Sally, US straw man, Colloq fall guy, Slang sucker: We have to find a scapegoat to take the punishment for us.

scar n. 1 blemish, mark, damage, disfigurement, wound, injury, scratch, mar, cut, burn, brand, cicatrix: Fortunately, the cut is shallow and shouldn't leave a scar.

--v. 2 blemish, mark, damage, disfigure, wound, injure, scratch, mar, cut, burn, brand; dent: The blow scarred him for life.

scarce adj. scanty, scant, insufficient, inadequate, deficient, wanting, lacking, rare, unusual, at a premium, in short supply, meagre, few and far between, seldom met with, hard to come by, Chiefly Brit thin on the ground: Good editors are very scarce.

scarcely adv. 1 hardly, barely, (only) just, not quite: He had scarcely uttered the magic words when the rock split open. 2 (probably or certainly or surely or definitely) not, in no way, not at all, not in the least, by no means, on no account, under no circumstances, nowise, Colloq US noway: I scarcely need remind you that you are getting married tomorrow.

scarcity n. lack, want, need, paucity, dearth, insufficiency, shortage, inadequacy, inadequateness: The teaching of foreign languages is not improved by the scarcity of qualified teachers.

scare v. 1 frighten, alarm, startle, shock, dismay, daunt, appal, give (someone) a shock or a fright, terrify, terrorize, threaten, menace, cow, intimidate, horrify, US and Canadian spook, Colloq scare the pants off, scare the life or the living daylights or the hell out of, scare out of one's wits, make one's hair stand on end, make one's flesh creep or crawl, give one goose bumps or goose-pimples, US scare the bejesus out of, Taboo slang scare or frighten the shit out of, scare shitless, US scare shitty: A sudden noise scared me, and I ran out of the cave as fast as I could. 2 scare up. scrape together or up, find, gather, collect, raise, dig up, get, come by, scrounge (up): I can't scare up that much money in one day!

--n. 3 fright, shock, surprise, start: I had a terrible scare when I saw what I thought was blood.

scared adj. frightened, alarmed, afraid, appalled, shocked, terrified, horrified, startled: Don't be scared, I won't hurt you.

scary adj. frightening, eerie, terrifying, frightful, hair-raising, unnerving, blood-curdling, horrifying, spine-chilling, intimidating, daunting; horrendous, horrid, horrible, creepy, crawly, Colloq spooky: Aren't you afraid to watch scary movies on TV when you're home alone?

scathing adj. searing, withering, damaging, harmful, severe, harsh, stern, nasty, biting, acrid, acrimonious, mordant, incisive, cutting, sharp, keen, virulent, vitriolic, acid, scorching, burning, fierce, savage, ferocious: She was totally unprepared for the critics' scathing attack on her book.

scatter v. 1 spread, diffuse, shower, litter, sprinkle, strew, circulate, distribute, disseminate, sow, broadcast: As the seeds of dissent were scattered far and wide, we became aware of a ground swell of hatred for the regime. 2 disperse, separate, dissipate, dispel, disband, break up, go off: My notes were scattered all over the floor. Immediately after dividing up the loot, the gang scattered to the four winds.

scatterbrained
n. hare-brained, rattle-headed, rattle-brained, frivolous, flibbertigibbet, giddy, dazed, flighty, wool-gathering, Colloq dippy, dizzy, dopey or dopy, slap-happy: It irritates me to think that our lives might depend on such a scatterbrained fool.

scattering
n. smattering, sprinkling, trifle, bit, suggestion, soup‡on, hint: It is true, there was a scattering of rebellious sentiment in the town.

scenario n. 1 (master or ground or floor) plan, (grand) scheme, plot, schema, design, outline, layout, framework, structure; sequence of events, routine: According to this scenario, the bank will provide the financing and we shall organize the take-over. 2 (plot) summary, pr,cis, r,sum,, synopsis; (working or shooting) script, screenplay: The scenario for the film was a joint venture between the director and the author of the book on which it was based.

scene   n. 1 location, site, place, area, locale, spot, locality, whereabouts, sphere, milieu, backdrop, background: The scenes of my youth are always in my mind. 2 action, episode, part, chapter, section, segment; (stage) setting, mise en scŠne; scenery: The next scene takes place in Venice. Is the Venice scene ready? 3 commotion, upset, exhibition, display, row, brouhaha, disturbance, furore or US furor, tantrum, argument, altercation, uncomfortable or disagreeable situation, episode, incident: She made an unpleasant scene in the restaurant when he refused to sit next to her. 4 view, scenery, sight, landscape, seascape, panorama, vista, picture, view, prospect: The scene from the terrace was completely tranquil. 5 behind the scenes. secretly, privately, clandestinely, confidentially, surreptitiously, on the q.t. or Q.T.: Sigrid operated behind the scenes and her identity was never revealed to MI5. 6 make or do the scene. socialize, appear, get around or about, go out, participate: We used to make the scene in the Village back in the forties, but no more.

scenic   adj. picturesque, panoramic, pretty, beautiful, grand, awesome, awe-inspiring, impressive, striking, spectacular, breathtaking: The train passes through some incredibly scenic routes in Switzerland.

scent   n. 1 fragrance, aroma, perfume, redolence, smell, odour, bouquet, whiff, trace: The room was filled with the scent of wild flowers. 2 trail, spoor, track: In drag hunting, the scent is laid down by a sack dragged along the ground.

--v. 3 perceive, detect, find out, determine, discern, distinguish, recognize, sense, smell, sniff (out), get wind of, learn or hear about: Scenting possible trouble, he decided he had better take along my revolver. 4 perfume: She had left behind her handkerchief, scented with Chanel No. 19.

sceptic   n. doubter, questioner, doubting Thomas, disbeliever, nullifidian, agnostic, scoffer, cynic: You'll always find some sceptics who don't believe that a woman could be a good prime minister.

sceptical adj. doubting, dubious, doubtful, questioning, disbelieving, incredulous, agnostic, scoffing, cynical, mistrustful, distrustful: We were sceptical at first whether anything would come of it, but then things began to happen.

scepticism
n. doubt, dubiety, dubiousness, doubtfulness, disbelief, incredulity, incredulousness, agnosticism, cynicism, mistrust, distrust, mistrustfulness, distrustfulness: At first, the entire matter was greeted with some scepticism; but then the Berlin Wall came tumbling down.

schedule n. 1 programme, timetable, plan, calendar, agenda, outline, list, listing, record, register: I'd like a complete schedule of your work for the next month on my desk tomorrow.

--v. 2 programme, organize, plan, outline, list, record, register, arrange, book, time, slate, appoint, assign, allot, dedicate, earmark: Schedule the next meeting for the 15th of the month. Alistair is scheduled to speak tomorrow.

schematic adj. 1 diagrammatic(al), representational, graphic, charted: We have the schematic drawings showing the placement of the equipment.

--n. 2 diagram, blueprint, layout, (floor or game) plan, scheme, design, representation, graph, (flow or PERT) chart: Give copies of the schematics to the electricians so that they can plan where to put the wiring.

scheme n. 1 plan, plot, design, programme, system, course (of action), schema, outline, exposition, projection, draft, method, technique, approach, game plan, scenario: In my scheme, compensation would be dependent on productivity, merit, and length of service. 2 pattern, arrangement, layout, design, diagram, blueprint, chart, map, drawing, schematic, disposition, order, organization, schema: This alternative scheme shows the executive offices on the second floor. 3 plot, plan, ploy, manoeuvre, strategy, stratagem, tactic, machination, subterfuge, trick, device, dodge, wile, ruse, intrigue, Colloq racket, game, move: Ashton's scheme was to lure the security guards into the outer room, then lock them in.

--v. 4 plan, plot, devise, contrive, intrigue, organize, formulate, hatch, conspire, machinate, manoeuvre, connive, concoct, Colloq cook up: Clifton had been scheming to get his revenge on them ever since the Manchester episode.

scheming adj. conniving, plotting, nefarious, treacherous, crafty, cunning, artful, sly, wily, devious, Machiavellian, intriguing, slick, calculating, tricky, foxy, slippery, underhanded, duplicitous, deceitful: Wait till I lay my hands on the scheming little thief!

schism   n. split, rift, break, breach, division, rupture, separation, disunion: The schism was caused by a group of left-wing idealists.

schismatic

adj. schismatical, separatist, breakaway, divisive, dissident, heretical: The schismatic movement in art was marked by one faction's abandonment of realism.

scholar   n. 1 academic, professor, teacher, pedagogue, authority, expert, pundit, savant, bookman, book-woman, man or woman of letters, intellectual, highbrow, bookworm, Colloq egghead, brain, US longhair: Professor Read is one of the most respected linguistics scholars in the world. 2 student, pupil, schoolboy, schoolgirl, undergraduate: Cosgrove was a failure as a scholar, preferring football to physics.

scholarly adj. learned, erudite, lettered, scholastic, profound, deep, intellectual, academic, highbrow(ed), ivory-tower(ed), Colloq egghead, brainy, US longhair, long-haired: Her scholarly achievements are not limited to scholarly articles for learned journals.

scholarship

n. 1 learning, erudition, knowledge, lore, education, schooling, training, preparation, Colloq know-how: Elsa Cairn brings to her appointment as headmistress considerable scholarship and experience. 2 grant, endowment, award, fellowship, Brit exhibition, Chiefly Scots and New Zealand bursarship, bursary: Without the scholarship, I should never have been able to continue my education.

school n. 1 (educational) institution, kindergarten, nursery school, primary or grammar or secondary or high school, institute, college, university, seminary; Alma Mater; boarding-school, day-school; public school, private school, Brit State school; lyc,e; Lyceum, Brit first or middle school, US junior high school: His mother was very upset when he hinted that he might quit school. 2 set, coterie, circle, clique, group, denomination, faction, sect, followers, devotees, adherents, votaries, disciples; style, kind, form, manner, fashion: Burne-Jones belonged to the Pre-Raphaelite School of painters. 3 philosophy, principles, creed, set of beliefs, way of life, persuasion, credo, dogma, teaching, view, opinion, faction, approach: Regarding the creation of the universe, do you support the big-bang school or the steady-state school?

--v. 4 teach, educate, drill, inculcate, instil, indoctrinate, instruct, tutor, train, discipline, coach, prepare, prime, equip, ready; mould, shape, form; school in, imbue with, infuse with: Young ladies were schooled in all the social graces.

school-book

n. text(book), primer, grammar (-book), reader, manual, handbook, exercise book, notebook, copybook, Rare enchiridion, Old-fashioned hornbook, abecedarium: All I did was ask if I could carry her school-books!

schooling n. education, teaching, instruction, tutelage, tuition, guidance, training, preparation, indoctrination, edification, enlightenment; learning, study, research: How many years of schooling are needed to become a doctor?

schoolteacher

n. teacher, professor, instructor, tutor, pedagogue, schoolmaster, schoolmistress, Scots dominie, Colloq school-ma'm: It is not often realized what a profound influence schoolteachers have on one's entire life.

science n. 1 (body of) knowledge or information, (body of) laws or principles, discipline, study, branch, field, area, subject, realm, sphere: Many new sciences have sprung up even in the past fifty years. DNA research falls properly into the science of microbiologic genetics. 2 skill, art, technique, expertise, proficiency, method, system: He made a science of brewing tea.

scientific

adj. (well-)organized, (well-)regulated, (well-)controlled, (well-)ordered, orderly, systematic, methodical, precise, meticulous, thorough, painstaking, detailed: A scientific approach to the problem would start with a complete analysis of present conditions.

scintillating

adj. 1 sparkling, coruscating, flashing, dazzling, gleaming, glittering, twinkling, shimmering, glistening, shining, lustrous, radiant, effulgent, brilliant, Literary nitid: Madame Irena appeared wearing a scintillating silver lam, gown. 2 exciting, engaging, lively, effervescent, fascinating, entrancing, stimulating, invigorating, dynamic, vivacious: I cannot remember when I last found myself in such scintillating company.

scoff° v. Often, scoff at. deride, belittle, dismiss, disparage, mock, make light of, sneer (at), poke fun (at), ridicule, spoof, lampoon, jeer (at), chaff, tease, twit, rib, kid, Brit rag: It's easy for you to scoff at Clare's tantrums - you don't have to live with her. Don't scoff: your turn might come next.

scoffý v. 1 devour, put away, gorge oneself on, wolf (down), bolt, stuff (oneself with), gobble (up or down), guzzle, gulp (down), Brit gollop: The two of them scoffed every crumb they could find.

--n. 2 food, victuals, rations, edibles, provisions, Colloq grub, eats, chow, Slang Brit prog: In no time at all, they had cleared out every last bit of scoff in the larder.

scold v. 1 reprimand, chide, reprove, upbraid, criticize, censure, find fault (with), rebuke, reproach, lecture, berate, rate, castigate, take (someone) to task, find fault with, rap (someone's) knuckles, slap (someone's) wrist, Colloq bawl out, dress down, give (someone) hell, give (someone) what for, jump on (someone), jump down (someone's) throat, call (someone) to account, bring (someone) to book, let (someone) have it with both barrels, give (someone) a piece of (one's) mind, give (someone) a tongue-lashing or a talking-to, give (someone) a hard time, rake or haul (someone) over the coals, tell (someone) off, tick (someone) off, skin (someone) alive, call or have (someone) on the carpet, light or rip or tear or lace or sail into (someone), US chew out, jump all over (someone), Brit carpet: When their mother scolded them, they began to cry.

--n. 2 nag, shrew, termagant, virago, fishwife, beldam, harridan, hell-cat, fury, amazon, tigress, Xanthippe, Colloq battleaxe: In the old days, they used to take scolds, tie them in a chair at the end of a pole, and dunk them in a pond till they cooled off.

scoop   n. 1 ladle, dipper, bailer, spoon: Use the scoop to skim the fat off the soup. 2 exclusive: Fergus's story on the minister's illegal business dealings was a real scoop for the paper. 3 (latest) news, (inside) story, revelation, truth, Colloq latest, low-down, info, dope, Brit gen, US poop: What's the scoop on that man seen coming out of her bedroom?

--v. 4 Often, scoop up. bail, dip, ladle, spoon: They scooped up some sand and spread it on the ice for traction. 5 scoop out. gouge out, excavate, spoon out, hollow out, dig, cut: Scoop out some melon balls for the fruit salad. 6 scoop up. pick up, gather (up), sweep up or together, take up or in: He scooped up the money and ran out of the bank.

scope   n. 1 range, reach, field, area, extent, compass, expanse, breadth, sphere, orbit, span: The scope of her interests includes both the sciences and the arts. 2 leeway, space, room, elbow-room, freedom, opportunity, capacity, stretch, latitude, spread: Have you allowed enough scope for growth?

scorch   v. sear, blacken, burn, roast, singe, char: Though scorched in the fire, the papers were saved intact.

scorching adj. 1 hot, torrid, searing, parching, shrivelling, tropical, hellish, sizzling, broiling, boiling, sweltering: Scorching heat waves are dangerous for the very young and the elderly. 2 critical, caustic, scathing, mordant, vituperative, excoriating, harsh, acrimonious, bitter: The shadow minister for finance issued a scorching condemnation of the government's tax policies.

score n. 1 record, account, reckoning, register, tally, amount, number, count, sum, total; mark, grade: What was your best golf score? Chester got a score of 80 in the French test. 2 nick, groove, scratch, line, mark, stroke, notch, cut, Archery nock: Every time he won, he made a score on his walking-stick. 3 twenty: And the days of our lives shall be three score years and ten. 4 Often, scores. dozens, hundreds, (tens or hundreds of) thousands, millions, number(s), drove(s), horde(s), host(s), multitude(s), herd(s), legion(s), lot(s), mass(es), myriad(s), shoal(s), pack(s), covey(s), bevy or bevies, swarm(s), flock(s), army or armies, crowd(s), throng(s): Passengers by the score angrily protested against the airline's policy of overbooking flights. Scores of animals were fleeing before the forest fire. 5 music, accompaniment, Technical full or short or vocal score: Boito might have written the libretto, but the score was by Verdi. 6 situation, story, news, status (quo), condition, word, Colloq latest, scoop, US poop: What's the score on your applications to medical school? 7 dupe, gull, victim, greenhorn, Colloq fall guy, chump, goat, sitting duck, Slang sucker, patsy, mark, Brit mug: That fellow in the Hawaiian shirt looks a likely score for our little scam. 8 ground(s), basis, account, reason, rationale, provocation, cause: On what score can you justify eliminating him from the competition? 9 settle or pay off or even a score or the score or old scores. get revenge, retaliate, get even, avenge, repay, get an eye for an eye, give tit for tat, give measure for measure, pay (someone) back in his or her own coin, give (someone) a taste or a dose of his or her or their own medicine, Colloq get one's own back: He tried to find out where MacTavish moved had moved to as he had an old score to settle with him.

--v. 10 mark, line, incise, scratch, nick, notch, cut, groove, graduate; scrape, deface, mar, gouge, slash: The dipstick is scored at intervals to indicate how much oil is in the crankcase. 11 gain or make a point or points, record, tally, account for: George scored a hat trick in the game against Hotspurs. 12 count (for), reckon for or as: The ace scores either 1 or 11 in vingt-et-un. 13 succeed, be successful, triumph, win, make an impression, have an impact, Colloq make a hit: Your plan really scored with the boss. 14 succeed in seducing, Slang make out, get laid: Did you score with Ava last night?

scorn   n. 1 contumely, contempt, contemptuousness, disdain, deprecation; rejection, dismissal: He treated their demands with the utmost scorn. 2 mockery, derision, derisiveness, sneering, ridicule, scoffing, jeering, taunting: The crowd's scorn was directed at the politicians who failed to deliver what they had promised.

--v. 3 reject, rebuff, disown, disavow, disregard, ignore, shun, snub, flout, contemn, treat with or hold in contempt, have no use for, disdain, spurn, despise, turn up one's nose at, curl one's lip at, look down on or upon, look down one's nose at, thumb one's nose at, Colloq pooh-pooh, put down, Brit cock a snook at: His parents offered to finance his education, but he scorned their help. 4 mock (at), deride, sneer at, ridicule, scoff at, jeer at, taunt, poke fun at, make fun of, laugh at: People scorned him because he said the earth was round.

scornful adj. contumelious, contemptuous, disdainful, deprecative, disparaging, derisory, derisive, snide, supercilious, mocking, sneering, scoffing, haughty, overweening, high-handed, superior, Colloq snooty, Slang snotty: The people were scornful of his attempt to reassure them, and continued to demand action.

scoundrel n. villain, rogue, wretch, good-for-nothing, scapegrace, blackguard, rascal, scamp, cur, Old-fashioned bounder, cad, knave, Colloq heel, Slang louse, Brit rotter: Politicians tend to treat their opponents as liars and scoundrels.

scour   v. 1 scrub, clean, cleanse, wash, rub, abrade, polish, burnish, buff, shine: The pots were scoured until they shone. 2 scrape (about or around), rake, comb, turn upside down, search, ransack: I scoured the shops looking in vain for the coffee filters you wanted.

scourge   n. 1 curse, misfortune, bane, evil, affliction, plague, adversity, torment, misery, woe: He questions whether AIDS should be considered the scourge of the 20th century. Was it Attila who proved himself the scourge of Rome? 2 whip, lash, cat-o'-nine-tails, knout, quirt, horsewhip, bull-whip: They saw fit to punish themselves with scourges.

--v. 3 whip, flog, beat, lash, horsewhip, whale, belt, flagellate: Some medieval sects scourged themselves as they went in procession through the cities. 4 punish, castigate, chastise, discipline, afflict, torment: In the old days, students were scourged if they made a mistake.

scout v. 1 Often, scout about or around. reconnoitre, investigate, study, research, examine, explore, spy, search or look (about or around) (for), hunt (about or around) (for), cast around or about (for), Colloq check (about or around): I am going to scout about to find a key that fits. 2 scout up or out. discover, find, locate, uncover, Colloq dig up: I was finally able to scout up a key that fits.

scowl v. 1 glower, frown, grimace, glare, look daggers, lower or lour: It's hard to tell if he's ever pleased because he's always scowling.

--n. 2 frown, grimace, glare, dirty look: I do wish she would wipe that scowl off her face and try to look more pleasant.

scramble v. 1 climb, clamber, crawl, scrabble, struggle: We scrambled up the rocky hillside with the big cat in pursuit. 2 rush, hurry, scamper, run, hasten, race, scurry, scoot, scuttle, dash, hotfoot (it), hustle, Chiefly US and Canadian, hightail (it), Colloq skedaddle: When the siren sounded, we scrambled down to the air raid shelter. 3 Often, scramble up. mix up, confuse, jumble, intermingle, mingle, commingle: Contestants, spectators, and officials were all scrambled together.

--n. 4 scrimmage, struggle, tussle, contention, clash, competition, contest, race, rush, clash, conflict, disorder, commotion, riot, mˆl,e or melee, pandemonium, Colloq free-for-all, hassle, Brit scrum or scrummage: Thousands were involved in the scramble for tickets to the rock concert. In the scramble for a directorship Jeremy lost. 5 struggle, climb: She twisted her ankle in the scramble over the rocks.

scrap° n. 1 mite, bit, shred, bite, morsel, piece, fragment, shard or sherd, particle, sliver, snippet, snip, crumb, whit, iota, jot or tittle, snatch, drop, drip, grain, speck, molecule, atom, dab, trace, scintilla, hint, suggestion: There wasn't a scrap of evidence to link him with the crime. 2 scraps. remnants, remains, leftovers, leavings, residue, vestiges, traces, scrapings, discards, rejections, rejects: In the alley, two cats were fighting over some scraps of garbage. 3 waste, debris, rubbish, Colloq junk: Any computer more than five years old isn't even worth its weight as scrap.

--v. 4 discard, throw away, reject, abandon, give up, consign to the scrap heap, forsake, forget, get rid of, dispose of, dispense with, Colloq junk, US trash: If I were you, I would buy a new car and scrap this one.

scrapý n. 1 fight, brawl, fracas, fray, affray, rumpus, scuffle, Donnybrook, battle (royal); row, dispute, argument, quarrel, disagreement, wrangle, squabble, tiff, spat, Colloq ruckus, set-to, dust-up: A terrible scrap broke out in the pub last and the police were called in. Our neighbours were having a scrap about who should take the dog for a walk.

--v. 2 fight, brawl, spar, scuffle, battle, row, wrangle, argue, disagree, squabble, bicker: Let's not scrap over trifles - only important things.

scrapbook n. album, portfolio, collection: She keeps a scrapbook of reviews of her stage triumphs.

scrape v. 1 abrade, graze, scratch, bark, scuff, skin, bruise, damage, injure: I scraped my knee on the pavement when I fell. 2 Often, scrape off or away or out. remove, rub off or away, scour or scrub or clean (off or away), scratch off or away, claw (at or away or out), gouge out, scrabble (at), dig out or away at: As I scraped away the grime, a beautiful mosaic was revealed. Each sled dog scraped out a hole in the snow and snuggled into it. 3 skimp, scrimp (and scrape), save, stint, be frugal or stingy or parsimonious or thrifty, pinch and save or scrape, economize; struggle, US scrabble: Only by scraping were we able to pay the increased taxes. 4 bow and scrape. make obeisance, kowtow, salaam, genuflect, kiss the feet or hem or ring, grovel, demean or lower oneself, prostrate oneself, toady, Colloq boot-lick: He can bow and scrape all he likes, but Jones will get nowhere with the foreman. 5 scrape by or through. get by, cope, (barely) manage, survive, scrape or get along, Colloq squeak by, barely make it: We are just about able to scrape by on the little that Nigel is making. 6 scrape together or up. glean, garner, scratch or get or rake together or up, dredge up, scrabble for, gather, save (up), get hold of, marshal, amass, muster, accumulate, aggregate, compile, pile up, stack up, assemble, Colloq scrounge (up): By the time we finally managed to scrape up enough for a down payment on a house, the prices had gone up.

--n. 7 abrasion, bruise, scratch, graze, scuff, damage, injury: He was very annoyed when he found a scrape on his brand-new car. 8 predicament, difficulty, quandary, dilemma, plight, (fine) kettle of fish, muddle, stew, situation, position, pinch, Colloq pickle, fix, mess, the crunch, (tight or tough) spot: I got into a terrible scrape by forgetting our wedding anniversary. Can you lend me some money to help me out of a scrape?

scratch v. 1 mar, mark, gouge (out), gash, abrade, graze, scuff, grate against, bruise, damage, injure; claw: If you glue some felt to the bottom, the lamp won't scratch the table. 2 chafe, rub: If you scratch those mosquito bites you might get an infection. 3 Often, scratch out or off. erase, obliterate, rub out or off, cross out, delete, strike out or off, expunge; exclude, eliminate, US x out: You can scratch my name from the list of candidates. She scratched out what she had written and started again.

--n. 4 mark, gouge, gash, abrasion, scrape, graze, scuff, bruise, damage, injury; line: Where did you get that scratch on your face? 'It's only a scratch', Sandy protested as they tried to remove the spear from his shoulder. 5 up to scratch. up to standard or par, adequate, sufficient, good enough, competent, satisfactory, competitive, Colloq up to snuff: Cynthia's performance is not yet up to scratch, so she might not make the team.

--adj. 6 hasty, hurried, impromptu, unplanned, haphazard, rough, casual, informal, unprepared, unpremeditated, makeshift, extempore, Colloq off the cuff, US pick-up: We didn't have time to practise, so we are racing with a scratch crew.

scratchy adj. 1 itchy, irritating, prickly: The pullover was as scratchy as a hair shirt. 2 rough, hoarse, raw, grating, sore, raspy, dry: My throat feels a bit scratchy and I need something to drink.

scrawl n. 1 scribble, Colloq squiggle, US hen-scratch, chicken-scratch: I can't read that scrawl of his.

--v. 2 scribble, scratch, doodle: How do pharmacists read the prescriptions that doctors scrawl?

scrawny adj. bony, skinny, spare, drawn, reedy, haggard, lean, lank(y), scraggy, gaunt, raw-boned, angular, emaciated, cadaverous; anorectic or anorexic: She certainly has changed from that scrawny kid I used to know.

scream v. 1 shriek, screech, squeal, yowl, wail, caterwaul, howl, cry: She screamed when I applied iodine to the cut. 2 laugh, roar, hoot, howl, guffaw: The women screamed hysterically as the male stripper got down to the bare essentials.

--n. 3 shriek, screech, squeal, yowl, wail, caterwaul, howl, cry: When she saw what had happened, she let out a blood-curdling scream. 4 Colloq card, panic, riot, thigh-slapper: Phyllis is such a scream when she talks about the silly things that happen to her.

screen n. 1 partition, (room) divider, paravent, wall: In their one-room flat a bookcase serves as a screen to separate the living area from the sleeping area. 2 shelter, protection, shield, cover: A row of poplars acts as a screen against the wind. 3 curtain, blind, shroud, cloak, cover; concealment, camouflage: The gauze fabric was too transparent to act as a screen. 4 sieve, mesh, strainer, filter, colander, riddle: The sand has to be shovelled through a screen to get rid of the stones. 5 motion pictures, movies, silver screen; television, small screen, home screen, Colloq box, telly, US boob tube: She is a star of both the big and small screens.

--v. 6 partition (off), separate, divide, wall off: Why not use a beaded curtain to screen the kitchen area from the dining-room? 7 shelter, protect, shield, cover, guard, conceal, camouflage, mask, veil, hide: A decorative pierced wall screens the ladies of the harem from the prying eyes of visitors. 8 sift, separate (out), sort (out), filter, select, cull, process, interview, evaluate, grade, gauge, qualify, examine, scan, Chiefly Brit vet: The agency screens all candidates before sending them to see a client.

screw   n. 1 bolt, screw-bolt, machine screw, lag-bolt, lag-screw: This screw is too small to hold that door hinge. 2 helix, spiral, corkscrew: The screw of a spiral staircase should not be too small for safety. 3 sexual intercourse; sexual partner, Slang lay, Taboo slang fuck: When arrested for kerb-crawling, he said that he was just looking for a screw. 4 put the screws on (someone). pressure, influence, force, constrain, press, oblige, require, demand, coerce, compel, apply pressure, bring pressure to bear (on); insist; Chiefly Brit pressurize, Colloq twist (someone's) arm, put the squeeze on (someone): I believe that someone put the screws on him to leave town.

--v. 5 twist, turn, rotate: Screw the bolt in clockwise. 6 Often, screw out of. defraud, cheat, swindle, gull, bilk, do out of, Slang take, clip, fleece: They screwed him by convincing him that the bonds were real. He was screwed out of all his savings. 7 screw up. a raise, increase, stretch, strain; summon, call up, call upon, tap, draw on or upon: I screwed up my courage to ask for a salary increase. b ruin, destroy, make a mess of, botch, bungle, muddle, mismanage, mishandle, Colloq make a hash of, Slang louse up, Brit make a muck-up of, US bollix up, Taboo slang fuck up, Brit bugger up, ballocks or bollocks up, make a balls-up of: It is hard to see how they could have screwed up such a simple operation. c contort, twist, deform, warp: At the suggestion of cauliflower, Ambrose screwed up his face in displeasure.

scribe   n. 1 copyist, copier, transcriber, Archaic scrivener; amanuensis, clerk, secretary: Before the invention of movable type printing, copies of books and documents were prepared by scribes. 2 writer, author, penman, scrivener, wordsmith, scribbler, hack, penny-a-liner; dramatist, dramaturge, playwright, poet, novelist, essayist, columnist, technical writer; journalist, gentleman or lady of the press, newspaperman, newspaperwoman, reporter, rewrite man or woman or person, editor, reviewer, commentator, newswriter, sob sister, agony aunt or uncle, Miss Lonelyhearts, gossip columnist, member of the fourth estate, Brit paragraphist, leader-writer, US Grub Streeter, Colloq Brit journo: In a general way, he refers to all writers as 'scribes', but particularly those he considers a bit old-fashioned.

--v. 3 inscribe, incise, etch, engrave, mark, scratch, score, grave, scrimshaw, carve, chase or enchase: The shotgun was scribed with the most beautiful designs, some inlaid in gold.

scrimmage n. skirmish, scuffle, fray, affray, disturbance, brouhaha, mˆl,e or melee, riot, row, brawl, struggle, scramble, tussle, fracas, rumpus, Donnybrook, battle, fight, Colloq ruckus, set-to, dust-up, free-for-all, scrap, Brit scrum or scrummage, Slang Brit (bit of) bovver: The police were called when what started as a minor scrimmage began to develop into a riot.

script n. 1 handwriting, hand, (cursive) writing, penmanship; calligraphy: These love-letters are written in an unusually beautiful script. 2 manuscript, scenario, book, play, screenplay, teleplay, libretto, continuity: Stick to the script - I don't want you ad libbing!

--v. 3 write, pen, prepare, create: The new series was scripted by the same writer who wrote 'Out in the Outback'. 4 plan, organize, design, arrange, lay out, order, configure, pattern: The take-over of the company had not been scripted in their business forecasts.

Scripture n. Scriptures, sacred writings, Bible, Good Book, Holy Writ or Scripture(s), Word of God, Gospel(s); Book of Mormon; Koran; Upanishad(s), Bhagavad-Gita: Throughout his life, he did only those things approved in Scripture.

scrounge v. 1 ferret out, seek out, nose or smell out, come up with, scrape together or up, scratch up; importune, cadge, beg (, borrow, or steal), Colloq US freeload, bum: Did Hedley try to scrounge some money from you, too?

--n. 2 scrounger, cadger, parasite, Colloq sponger, US freeloader: Hedley, that scrounge, has just asked me for a cigarette.

scrub v. 1 See scour, 1, above. 2 cancel, call off, abort, scratch, drop, terminate, give up, end, abandon, stop, cease, discontinue, do away with: Something went wrong with the fuel computer, so they scrubbed today's satellite launch.

scruple n. 1 compunction, qualm, reluctance, misgiving, second thoughts, doubt, (twinge of) conscience, hesitation, uneasiness, discomfort, squeamishness: Peter hadn't the slightest scruple about taking the money from his aunt.

--v. 2 pause, falter, hesitate, vacillate, have doubts or compunction (about), demur, waver, shrink from or at, have misgivings or qualms (about or over), be loath or loth (to), think twice (about), stick at, be reluctant, balk (at), have scruples (about): Susan didn't scruple for a moment about keeping the money she found in the street.

scrupulous
adj. 1 careful, cautious, meticulous, exacting, precise, over-nice, strict, rigid, rigorous, severe, critical, fastidious, neat, conscientious, finicky or finical, fussy, painstaking, punctilious: Andrew has always been scrupulous about his toys, his books, his clothes, etc. 2 ethical, honourable, upstanding, moral, righteous, principled, high-minded, just: Meg was always scrupulous in her business dealings.

scrutinize
v. examine, analyse, dissect, investigate, probe, study, inspect, sift, go over or through, check: I have scrutinized the results of the blood tests and can find nothing abnormal.

scrutiny n. examination, analysis, investigation, probe, probing, study, inspection, sifting, inquiry or enquiry, exploration, check: The tax inspectors have subjected the company books to close scrutiny but have found nothing amiss.

scud v. fly, skim, race, scoot, speed, shoot: We scudded along in the catamaran at a good 30 knots.

sculpture n. 1 figure, figurine, statue, statuette, group, head, bust, relief; bronze, marble: His favourite sculpture is Rodin's Burghers of Calais .

--v. 2 sculpt or sculp, model, model, chisel, carve, cast, form, fashion: The students are learning how to sculpture in clay.

scurrilous
adj. foul-mouthed, thersitical, gross, indecent, profane, Fescennine, vulgar, obscene, licentious, Sotadean or Sotadic, foul, vituperative, low, coarse, scabrous, vile, nasty, defamatory, derogatory, disparaging, vilifying, calumnious or calumniatory, malign, aspersive, opprobrious, offensive, abusive, insulting: Clifford was an inveterate collector of scurrilous limericks.

scurry v. dash, scramble, scamper, scoot, dart, fly, race, sprint, scuttle, hurry, hasten, speed, hustle, rush, tear, zoom, zip, bolt, rip, scud: A rat scurried across the floor. We went scurrying round the shops on Christmas Eve.

scurvy adj. low, miserable, contemptible, vile, base, despicable, rotten, sorry, bad, ignoble, dishonourable, mean, worthless, shabby: Robbing poor old ladies is a pretty scurvy activity.

19.3 sea...

=-

sea n. 1 ocean, deep blue sea, high seas, Literary (briny) deep, (bounding) main, Neptune's or Poseidon's kingdom or domain, Nautical blue water, Davy Jones's locker, Colloq briny, drink, pond (= 'Atlantic Ocean'): For years he sailed the seas in search of adventure. 2 swell, breaker, wave: As the wind increased, huge seas began to wash over the boat. 3 plethora, quantity, abundance, surfeit, profusion, flood, multitude, spate, legion, mass, Colloq lot(s), heap(s), pile(s), ton(s), mountain(s), load(s), oodles, gobs, scads: Hamlet's sea of troubles was nothing compared to mine if this book isn't completed soon! 4 (all) at sea. confused, disoriented, at sixes and sevens, bewildered, perplexed, baffled, mystified, lost, adrift: They were clearly not expecting her and were completely at sea as to what to do.

sea-coast n. seashore, shore, coast, seaside, seaboard, shoreline, coastline, littoral, sand(s), beach, strand: The people in the villages along the sea-coast depend mainly on fishing for their livelihood.

seafaring adj. maritime, nautical, naval, marine: Britain was at one time the largest seafaring nation in the world.

seal n. 1 symbol, token, mark, insigne (pl. insignia), sign, signet, crest, bearing, coat of arms, escutcheon, emblem, badge, monogram, identification, cartouche, design, imprint, stamp: The seal on his ring showed a crouching lion. 2 authentication, confirmation, verification, validation, affirmation, attestation, ratification, corroboration, assurance, guarantee or guaranty, endorsement, substantiation, evidence, notice, notification: Management set their seal of approval on the plans.

--v. 3 Sometimes, seal off or up. close (off or up), shut (off), zip up, plug (up), stop (up), lock, bolt, secure, batten down, make airtight or waterproof; cork: All exits had been sealed off. They sealed up the windows so that no air could get in. 4 authenticate, confirm, verify, validate, affirm, attest, ratify, clinch, corroborate, assure, ensure, guarantee, endorse: The peace treaty was sealed by the marriage of the king to the emperor's daughter.

seam n. 1 junction, juncture, joint, suture, Technical commissure; scar, ridge, line, cicatrix: It is easy enough to see the seam where the parts meet. 2 lode, vein, stratum, bed, layer, thickness: The miners have been working on a new seam discovered at the end of Tunnel 4.

seamy adj. sordid, nasty, dark, disreputable, shameful, unwholesome, unpalatable, unsavoury, distasteful, unseemly, squalid, low, depraved, degenerate, degraded, foul, vile, odious, abhorrent, contemptible, scurvy, rotten, unattractive, ugly, repulsive, repellent: In his later work, he painted the seamy side of life in the slums.

search v. 1 Often, search through. examine, scrutinize, check, comb (through), explore, go through, investigate, scout out, inspect, look at or into, probe, scour, sift through, pry into, hunt or rummage through; inquire or enquire of, Colloq plough through: She searched through several encyclopedias but could not find the information she was looking for. Search your conscience to determine the best course. 2 Often, search for. look (about or around), cast about, seek, leave no stone unturned: I searched high and low but couldn't find my key.

--n. 3 hunt, pursuit, quest: The search for the killer went on for years. 4 researching, analysis; exploration, examination, scrutiny, probe, study, perusal, sifting, inspection, scouring, inquiry or enquiry: A thorough search of the documents failed to turn up anything useful. The police made a house-to-house search of the neighbourhood.

searchingly
adv. penetratingly, piercingly, intently, deeply, fixedly, concentratedly, eagerly: She looked searchingly into my eyes for some glimmer of hope.

season n. 1 time, period, occasion, opportunity: This is the season when the birds migrate north. Is the silly season upon us again so soon? 2 in season. ripe, ready, edible, seasoned, seasonable, available: Fresh strawberries will be in season soon.

--v. 3 spice, salt, flavour, pep up, enliven: One of the great things about chicken is that you can season it in many different ways. 4 ripen, mature, age, condition, mellow: The wood should be well seasoned before being made into furniture.

seasonable
adj. appropriate, opportune, suitable, apt, timely, fitting, providential, well-timed, proper, fit, propitious, welcome, well-suited, happy, lucky, fortunate, convenient, auspicious, favourable, advantageous, expedient: The success of the book was owing largely to its seasonable publication, just at the end of the cold war.

seasoned adj. experienced, trained, long-standing, long-serving, practised, well-versed, habituated, acclimatized or acclimated, accustomed, familiarized, prepared, established, veteran, tempered, hardened, toughened, inured: It was a pleasure to be working with so seasoned a performer as Margie.

seasoning n. spice, zest, flavour, relish, sauce: The fact that a former film star was running for office lent just the right seasoning to the campaign.

seat n. 1 place, chair, bench, sofa, settee, settle, stool, throne:

He found a seat and waited to be called. 2 focus, base, centre, heart, hub, site, capital, cradle, headquarters, fountain-head: In those days, Paris was the main seat of learning in western Europe. Istanbul was established as the seat of the Turkish empire. 3 membership, position, incumbency: His grandfather held a seat in the House of Commons. 4 bottom, buttocks, posterior(s), rump, hindquarters, fundament, derriŠre, Colloq behind, butt, backside, rear (end), Brit bum, US fanny, tushie, tush, tokus, hinie, Slang tail, Brit arse, US ass: He needs a swift kick in the seat to get him to move. 5 abode, residence, home, domicile, estate, mansion: The duchess used to spend the summer at her country seat in Norfolk.

--v. 6 hold, accommodate, have room or space or capacity for, contain, sit: The new auditorium will seat more than four thousand. 7 install or instal, enthrone, ensconce, instate, invest, establish, place, swear in: Once Lord Carter has been seated, it will be difficult to get rid of him.

seating n. accommodation, capacity, space, room: At present, the auditorium has seating for only 500.

secede v. withdraw or resign or retire (from), abandon, forsake, apostasize, break with or away (from), drop or pull out (of), turn one's back to or on, quit, separate from, leave, wash one's hands of, have nothing further to do with: The City of New York occasionally threatens to secede from the United States.

secession n. withdrawal, seceding, defection, break, breaking, disaffiliation, retirement, separation, splitting off or away, apostasy: The secession of the splinter group was welcomed by virtually all the other members.

secluded adj. 1 private, separate, isolated, lonely, cloistered, sequestered, detached, solitary, retired, eremitic, monastic: He lives a very secluded life on an island in the Outer Hebrides. 2 off the beaten track, out-of-the-way, remote, far-away, far-off, separate, segregated, private: He chose a secluded island in the Outer Hebrides for his vacation.

seclusion n. privacy, private, separation, isolation, loneliness: He prefers to live in complete seclusion.

second° adj. 1 subsequent, following, next: He let the first target go by and aimed for the second one. 2 subordinate, next: If the colonel isn't here, who is the second officer? 3 alternative, second-best: She refuses to settle for second choice. 4 alternate, other: The laundry is picked up and delivered every second Tuesday. His second language is Italian. 5 other, later, younger, newer, more recent: After his first wife died, he took her nurse as his second wife. 6 another, duplicate: The boy is a second Einstein.

--n. 7 defective or imperfect or damaged or faulty or deficient or flawed or impaired or marred or blemished or bruised or inferior merchandise: The prices of these shirts have been reduced because they are seconds. 8 subordinate, assistant, number two, lieutenant, aide-de-camp, man Friday, girl Friday, right hand; understudy, stand-in, substitute, surrogate, double, alternate, backer, supporter; Colloq US gal Friday: Not being ambitious, Helen would prefer to be a second to the person who runs the business.

--v. 9 support, back, aid, help, assist, approve (of), advance, promote, subscribe to, espouse, sponsor, patronize, favour, encourage, go along with: Madam Chairwoman, I would like to second this proposal. 10 transfer, move, assign, shift, relocate: After the Falklands War, he was seconded to fleet headquarters for a year.

--adv. 11 secondly, in the second place, secondarily, (number) two, b or B: I want to go: first, because it'll be interesting, and second, because Jake'll be there.

secondý n. moment, instant, flash, minute, twinkling or wink or bat (of an eye), split second, Colloq sec, jiffy, two shakes (of a lamb's tail), Brit tick, half a mo: I'll be with you in a second, as soon as I finish writing this letter.

secondary adj. 1 less important, unimportant, inessential or unessential, non-essential, non-critical, subsidiary, ancillary, minor, inferior, subordinate: These secondary matters can be dealt with after the important ones. 2 derivative, derived, indirect, second-hand, unoriginal, not original; copied, imitated: His biography of Queen Victoria was based entirely on secondary sources. 3 auxiliary, second-line, backup, extra, reserve, spare, provisional, supporting, supportive, alternate, alternative: We were forced to rely on our secondary defences after the enemy cavalry broke through.

second-hand

adj. used, old, worn, Colloq hand-me-down: When we were children our parents could only afford to dress us in second-hand clothes. His much-vaunted novels are for the most part based on second-hand ideas.

secrecy   n. 1 mystery, concealment, confidentiality, stealth, secretiveness, surreptitiousness, privacy, furtiveness, covertness, clandestineness: Why was there so much secrecy surrounding the publication date of Jennie's book? 2 in secrecy. secretly, mysteriously, confidentially, stealthily, secretively, surreptitiously, privately, furtively, covertly, clandestinely, sneakily: They carry on much of their business in secrecy.

secret   adj. 1 concealed, hidden, private, covert, shrouded, clandestine; confidential, covert, quiet, under cover, secretive, unpublishable, unpublished, Colloq hush-hush: There is a secret passageway leading from the cave to the cove. Keep secret what I shall tell you. She revealed to me her most secret desires. 2 cryptic, private, arcane, mysterious, incomprehensible, esoteric, recondite, abstruse; cryptographic, encrypted, encoded: We used to communicate by secret code. Did you receive my secret message?

--n. 3 private or confidential matter or affair, mystery: If I tell you my secret will you tell me yours? 4 in secret. privately, confidentially, secretly, on the q.t. or Q.T.; surreptitiously, under cover, by stealth, stealthily, furtively, quietly, on the sly, clandestinely: The office manager told me in secret that John was going to resign. They see one another in secret.

secrete° v. hide, conceal, cache, bury, cloak, shroud, enshroud, camouflage, mask, disguise, Slang stash away: They secreted the haul from the robbery in the cellar of a house in Balham.

secreteý v. yield, excrete, pass, generate, release, ooze, seep, exude, discharge, leak, drip, drop, dribble, trickle, run, drain, emit, give off, emanate, transude, Technical extravasate: The ants herd aphids for the substance they secrete. The wound will secrete pus for a while.

secretion n. secreting, release, escape, oozing, seeping, seepage, discharge, discharging, leak, leaking, leakage, drip, dripping, drop, dropping, dribbling, trickling, trickle, running, drain, draining, emission, emitting, giving off, exudation, transudation, excretion, excreting, emanation, emanating, generation, Technical extravasation; transudate, excreta, Technical extravasate: The secretion of perspiration may be profuse under such circumstances. The secretion is highly acid in content.

secretive adj. reticent, silent, close-mouthed, taciturn, uncommunicative, reserved, tight-lipped, close, Colloq mum: Robert is very secretive about where he goes every day at lunch-time.

secretly adv. surreptitiously, quietly, privately, covertly, on the q.t. or Q.T., furtively, stealthily, mysteriously, clandestinely, in secret, confidentially, on the sly, slyly, sub rosa, sub sigillo: I can tell you secretly that she is wanted by the police. Henry secretly rents videotape cartoons to watch at weekends.

sect n. 1 religious order or group or denomination or body or cult or persuasion or subdivision: At times it seems as if there are as many sects as worshippers. 2 school (of thought), faction, ism, set, clique, cabal: He belonged to a small sect that promulgated the Ptolemaic cosmogony.

sectarian adj. 1 cultist, cultish, clannish, cliquish, partisan, partial, dogmatic, doctrinaire, factional: They seldom mingle with others, maintaining their sectarian existence. 2 parochial, narrow, narrow-minded, limited, insular, provincial, rigid, fanatic(al), prejudicial, prejudiced, bigoted: Because they refused to consider ideas other than their own, they gradually became more and more sectarian in their views.

--n. 3 adherent, member, sectary, votary, cultist, partisan: They tried to banish Anabaptists, Lutherans, Calvinists, and other sectarians. 4 (true) believer, dogmatist, fanatic, bigot, zealot, extremist, Slang nut, bug, fiend: Some of the sectarians engage in the ritualistic handling of live rattlesnakes.

section n. 1 part, division, department, branch, sector, group, detachment, segment, portion, subdivision, component, element: Sadler has been assigned to work in the research section. I never read the the sports section in the Sunday papers. Which sections of the country will vote for you? The string section needs practice before tonight's concert. 2 sample, slice, cross-section, fraction: It can be faulty to assume that the characteristics of the whole are necessarily represented in a small section of it. I examined a section of tissue under the microscope. 3 part, stage, segment, portion, leg: The first section of the journey was more comfortable than the last.

--v. 4 cut (up), divide (up), segment, split, cleave, measure out, apportion, allot, allocate: The land was sectioned into four-acre parcels.

secular adj. worldly, terrestrial, mundane, temporal, material, lay, laic or laical, non-clerical, non-ecclesiastic(al), non-spiritual, non-religious, civil, state: Once he had taken his vows, he put aside secular matters.

secure adj. 1 safe, shielded, sheltered, protected, immune, unthreatened, unexposed, unimperilled, snug, cosy: Fiona feels quite secure in her new house. Considering the success of the company, Bill's job looks secure. 2 firm, steady, stable, fixed, fast, moored, anchored, immovable, closed, shut, fastened, locked (up), tight, sound, solid, sturdy, strong: That button on your jacket doesn't look very secure. Make sure that the house is secure before you go to sleep. 3 reliable, safe, good, profitable, healthy, solid: Telephone shares looked like a secure investment at the time. 4 sure, certain, assured, ensured, definite, inevitable, assumed, evident, obvious, unquestionable, established, probable, easy: With only two minutes left to play, victory seemed secure for Rangers.

--v. 5 obtain, get (hold of), come by, acquire, procure, win; gain, get or take possession of, arrogate: Tim has secured a responsible position at the bank. She always manages to secure the sympathy of older men. 6 guarantee, underwrite, hypothecate, collateralize: We used our house to secure the loan. 7

protect, shelter, shield, defend, guard, safeguard, preserve: It seems impossible to secure young children from bullying at school. 8 fasten, make fast, fix, affix, attach, anchor: Secure the cases to the roof-rack with strong rope.

security n. 1 safety, shelter, protection, fastness, refuge, safe keeping, sanctuary, asylum: During the air raids, we retired to the security of the basement. 2 confidence, certainty, surety, assurance, conviction: He has the security of knowing that he is right in this instance. 3 guarantee or guaranty, collateral, deposit, gage, pledge, insurance: What are you going to offer as security for the loan? 4 surveillance, safeguarding, guarding, safe keeping, protection, custody, custodianship, care: What plans does the company have for the security of the office building?

sedate adj. 1 composed, serene, peaceful, calm, tranquil, cool, collected, even-tempered, detached, imperturbable, unruffled, undisturbed, unperturbed, controlled, placid, grave, serious, sober, solemn, Colloq unflappable: Despite all the turmoil round her, Sarah remained quite sedate. 2 dignified, decorous, refined, formal, stiff, staid, proper, strait-laced, prudish, fussy, prim, conventional, old-fashioned: Donald prefers a sedate waltz to boogying and jiving.

sedative n. 1 narcotic, tranquillizer, opiate, sleeping-pill, soporific, calmative, anodyne, depressant, hypnotic, barbiturate, lenitive, Colloq downer, knock-out drop, Slang Mickey (Finn): The doctor has given him a sedative and he should sleep now.

--adj. 2 narcotic, tranquillizing, relaxing, soothing, calming, allaying, opiate, soporific, sleep-inducing, calmative, anodyne, lenitive, depressing, hypnotic: I found that listening to a recording of surf splashing on a beach has a sedative effect.

sedentary adj. seated, sitting, stationary, fixed, immobile, unmoving, housebound, desk-bound: You should find a more sedentary occupation to follow while you recover. As a writer, I lead a sedentary existence and get little exercise.

sediment n. lees, dregs, deposit, grounds, precipitate, remains, residue, settlings, residuum, detritus: Periodically, the sediment must be cleaned out of the filters.

sedition n. agitation, incitement (to riot), rabble-rousing, fomentation, instigation, firing-up, stirring up, whipping up; mutiny, insurrection, insurgency or insurgence, rebellion; treason, treachery: Because he had organized the strike in the munitions plant during wartime, he was accused of sedition.

seditious adj. rebellious, mutinous, revolutionary, insurgent, inflammatory, rabble-rousing, insurrectionist, insurrectionary, refractory, subversive, treacherous, dissident, disloyal, turncoat, unfaithful: One seditious action on the part of the colonists was to dump tea into the harbour at Boston, Massachusetts.

seduce v. 1 lure, entice, attract, allure, tempt, mislead, beguile, deceive, decoy, draw on, charm, captivate, vamp, entrap, ensnare, trap, Colloq sweet-talk: He was seduced into giving her his life's savings. 2 dishonour, ruin, corrupt, lead astray, defile, debauch, deflower, violate, ravish: How many girls have been seduced in the name of undying love?

seducer n. See also seductress, below. rake, libertine, rou,, playboy, lady-killer, lecher, debauchee, debaucher, lover, cicisbeo, Don Juan, Lothario, Casanova, Colloq wolf: She can't really be going out with that wretched seducer!

seductive adj. alluring, attractive, tempting, tantalizing, enticing, inviting, seducing, enchanting, entrancing, bewitching, fascinating, flirtatious, coquettish, captivating, beguiling, provocative, siren, irresistible, winning, appealing, prepossessing, Colloq sexy: He was lured into the whirl of the financial world by the seductive five-letter word - money. Never had Helena looked more seductive than on that night in Rio.

seductress

n. See also seducer, above. temptress, siren, femme fatale, enchantress, Circe, Lorelei, Jezebel, vamp: That clever seductress will soon have him eating out of her hand.

see v. 1 perceive, note, notice, mark, spot, watch, witness, recognize, behold, discern, distinguish, observe, look at, regard, sight, catch sight of, descry, espy, spy, make out, look upon, view, glimpse, catch a glimpse of, Slang get a load of, US glom: I saw him buy a bottle of whisky. We saw two yellow-bellied sapsuckers in one day! Can you see the sea from your suite? Did you see the Houses of Parliament when you were in London? 2 understand, comprehend, apprehend, perceive, appreciate, fathom, grasp, take in, realize, know, be aware or conscious of, get the idea or meaning of, Colloq dig, get, get the drift or the hang of: I see what you are saying, but I don't agree. After her speech, I saw Gladys in a new light. 3 foresee, foretell, imagine, envisage, envision, visualize, picture, divine, conceive (of), dream of, conjure up, accept: I can see a day when warming from the greenhouse effect will make the sea level rise. Ted said he can't see you as a married man. 4 determine, ascertain, find out, investigate, discover, learn: See if the bakery has any macaroons. I'll see what she thinks. 5 Often, see to it. ensure, assure, make sure or certain, mind, be vigilant: It's cold outside, so see that you dress warmly. 6 accompany, escort, show, lead, conduct, usher, take, convoy, bring, walk, drive: I was seeing Nellie home from a soir‚e at Aunt Dinah's. 7 go out with, socialize with, keep company with, consort with, associate with; court, woo; Colloq go steady with, Chiefly US date: Are you still seeing that boy you met at the school dance? 8 make up one's mind, think over, mull over, consider, ponder (on or over), contemplate, decide, reflect (on), meditate (on or over or about), ruminate (on or over), brood over: Mother said she'd see whether I could go. Then I asked father, and he said he'd see. 9 receive, meet (with), talk or speak with, confer with, consult (with), have a word with, sit down with, visit with, interview; welcome, greet: The ambassador will see you now. 10 undergo, experience, go through, endure, survive: He saw service overseas during the war. 11 help, aid, assist, support, finance, pay the way for; guide, shepherd: She saw three children through university without anyone's help. 12 see about. a see to, attend to, look after, take care or charge of, look to, organize, manage, do, undertake, sort out; think about, consider, give some thought to, pay attention or heed to: Could you please see about feeding the horses while I am away? I asked Martin and he said he'd see about it. b investigate, study, probe, look into, make enquiries or inquiries, enquire or inquire about: The teacher said she would see about letting us out early before the holiday. 13 see off. bid adieu or bon voyage: We went to the airport to see them off. 14 see through. a penetrate, detect, perceive, Slang be wise to: She saw through your subterfuge at once. b see (something) through. persevere, persist, manage, survive, last, ride out, Colloq stick out: Once you start on something, I wish you'd see it through. c see (someone) through. provide with help or aid or assistance, help, aid, assist, last: We'll give you enough money to see you through. 15 see to. See 12(a), above.

seed   n. 1 grain, spore, kernel, pit, tuber, bulb, corm, Technical ovum, ovule, embryo, egg, germ: Add water and the seeds will soon germinate. 2 origin, source, cause, root, provocation, reason, basis, grounds; motive, motivation, motivating factor: The seeds of suspicion were sown by the continuous police presence in the neighbourhood. 3 offspring, children, progeny, young, issue, descendants, heirs, successors: Yea, and verily I say unto you that his seed shall populate the earth. 4 go or run to seed. run down, become dilapidated or worn out or shabby, decay, go downhill, decline, degenerate, deteriorate, go to rack and ruin, Colloq go to pot: If he doesn't start to look after it, the entire place will go to seed.

--v. 5 scatter, sow, distribute: Don't walk on the freshly seeded lawn.

seedy   adj. 1 shabby, dilapidated, worn (out), decayed, deteriorated, run-down, broken-down, mangy, grubby, decaying, tatty, scruffy, squalid, sleazy, Colloq ratty: They live in a seedy little shack on the other side of town. 2 tired, weary, wearied, run-down, worn out, unwell, out of sorts, ailing, ill, sickly, Colloq poorly, under the weather, off one's feed: I begged off at dinner time because I was feeling a bit seedy.

seeing   conjunction. in view of (the fact that), whereas, in (the) light of, inasmuch as, since, considering: Seeing that you are here, you might as well tell her yourself.

seek   v. 1 look (for), search (for), hunt (for), go or be after, quest after, pursue: They are seeking a really good site for a grand luxury hotel. Seek and ye shall find. 2 hope, aim, aspire, try, essay, endeavour, undertake: They are seeking to recruit members for the new party. 3 ask for, request, beg, solicit, invite; demand: He sought her help and she refused him.

seem v. appear, look (as if or non-standard in US like), sound, feel, have (all) the hallmarks or earmarks of, give every indication or appearance of: He seems all right to me. She seems to have forgotten her key again. It seems as if I've never been away at all. He seemed frightened.

seeming adj. apparent, evident, ostensible, outward, superficial, surface, assumed, feigned, pretended, false, so-called, alleged, specious, purported, professed: She was shocked by his seeming indifference to her problems.

seemingly adv. apparently, evidently, ostensibly, outwardly, superficially, falsely, allegedly, speciously, purportedly, professedly, on the face of it, possibly, feasibly, conceivably, plausibly, believably: The purpose of this seemingly honest confession was to throw the detectives off the scent.

seemly adj. 1 proper, fitting, appropriate, becoming, suited, suitable, fit, befitting, apt, comme il faut, right, apropos, apposite, characteristic, meet, reasonable, sensible: You can count on Felix to do the seemly thing in such cases. 2 decent, decorous, proper, dignified, genteel, gentlemanly, ladylike, diplomatic, discreet, prudent, politic: She behaved in a seemly manner, in keeping with what was expected of a princess.

seer n. soothsayer, fortune-teller, sibyl, oracle, prophet, prophetess, augur, vaticinator, prophesier, clairvoyant, psychic, crystal-gazer, star-gazer: The seer foretold a grave famine and much suffering in the land.

see-saw n. 1 teeter: The children were playing on the see-saw.

--v. 2 teeter, totter, waver, vary, vacillate, oscillate, alternate, fluctuate, swing, switch: He couldn't make up his mind and kept see-sawing between staying and going.

seethe v. 1 boil, stew, simmer, foam: In the kitchen, a large pot of stew seethed on the stove. 2 stew, simmer, foam (at the mouth), fume, smoulder, burn, rage, rant, rave, become livid or feverish, be in ferment, be furious or incensed, Colloq blow one's stack or top, carry on, take on, get hot under the collar, get red in the face, get all steamed up: The ball sailed through Mr Griffiths' new greenhouse and he came out seething with rage.

see-through
adj. sheer, diaphanous, gauzy, transparent, translucent, gossamer, filmy, peekaboo: She was wearing a see-through neglig,e when she appeared at the door.

segment n. 1 section, part, division, portion, component, element; piece, fraction, fragment, length, joint, slice, wedge: Only a narrow segment of the population supports the new measures. She divided the orange into three equal segments.

--v. 2 divide, partition, section, separate, part, cleave, split, subdivide, fragment: The department was then further segmented into smaller units, each with its own manager.

segregate v. separate, segment, partition, isolate, seclude, sequester, set apart, compartmentalize, exclude, ostracize, discriminate against: In the sorting process, each size must be segregated into its own compartment. Their policy was to segregate the Blacks from the rest of the population.

segregation
n. separation, segmentation, partition, isolation, seclusion, sequestration, setting apart, compartmentalization, exclusion, ostracism, discrimination, apartheid, US Jim Crowism: No modern culture can long survive a segregation of the races.

seize v. 1 Sometimes, seize on. grab, grasp, clutch, take (hold of), grip, snatch: Robin felt that he had to seize every opportunity that presented itself. The dog seized the robber by the seat of the pants. 2 capture, catch, arrest, take into custody, take prisoner, apprehend, round up, Colloq pinch, nab, collar, pick up, Brit nick, Slang bust: The police seized him as he was trying to leave the country. 3 catch, transfix, stop, hold, possess, take possession of, afflict, beset, visit, subject: I was seized by a sudden desire to kiss those quivering, pouting lips. 4 take advantage of, make good use of: When their attention was diverted, I seized the opportunity to escape. 5 confiscate, take (away), commandeer, appropriate, capture, take possession of, impound: Ten tons of cannabis was seized in the raid. 6 seize up, bind, jam, stop, lock (up), stick, freeze (up): Because of the excessive heat, the gears seized and the engine stalled.

seizure n. 1 seizing, confiscating, confiscation, appropriation, impounding, commandeering, capture, taking, possession, annexation, sequestration, usurpation: Police today announced the seizure of a shipment of 2000 pounds of cocaine. 2 spasm, attack, fit, paroxysm, convulsion, Technical ictus: He has had another seizure and is not expected to live.

seldom adv. rarely, infrequently, not often, hardly ever, very occasionally: Since they moved away, we seldom see the Pattersons.

select v. 1 choose, pick, show (a) preference for, prefer, opt for, single out, hand-pick, distinguish: Select any two books from this pile. Anne was delighted to be selected from hundreds of candidates.

--adj. 2 selected, chosen, hand-picked, choice, special, preferred, preferable, favoured, favourite, exceptional, excellent, first-rate, first-class, superior, supreme, prime, better, best, finest, tiptop: We have set aside some of our select jewels for you to consider, Your Ladyship. 3 limited, restricted, restrictive, exclusive, privileged, ,lite, closed: He belongs to one of those select clubs that accept you only if your family can be traced back five hundred years.

selection n. 1 choice, pick, preference, option: Please make your selection from the merchandise in this display. 2 assortment, variety, collection, range, batch, number, set, series, group: Tonight I shall play for you a selection of jazz recordings made at the Savoy. 3 selecting, choosing, picking, singling out, electing, settling on, voting for, opting for, choice, pick, election: Selection has been delayed till tomorrow. 4 extract, quotation, excerpt, abstract, passage, piece, quote: I shall read you a selection from Blake's Songs of Innocence and Experience .

selective adj. particular, discerning, discriminative, discriminating, discriminatory, eclectic, exacting, demanding, choosy, Colloq picky: Thea has been very selective in her choice of partners.

self-abuse

n. masturbation, onanism, self-gratification, auto-eroticism or autoerotism, self-stimulation, self-manipulation, self-pollution, self-defilement, self-contamination, Technical manustupration: Victorian schoolboys were punished if suspected of self-abuse.

self-confidence

n. confidence, self-assurance, self-respect, self-esteem, assurance, poise, aplomb, self-reliance, self-sufficiency: Harrigan has demonstrated that he has the self-confidence to run the department.

self-confident

adj. confident, self-assured, assured, poised, self-reliant, secure, sure of oneself, positive, definite, assertive, independent: She seems much more self-confident, relaxed, and contented these days.

self-conscious

adj. embarrassed, coy, diffident, shy, modest, self-effacing, sheepish, shrinking, retiring, unsure, apprehensive, reserved, insecure, affected, awkward, nervous, uncomfortable, hesitant, timid, timorous: Phil felt a bit self-conscious about asking Maria to the dance.

self-contained

adj. 1 self-possessed, unemotional, self-controlled, in control, composed, serene, peaceful, calm, tranquil, cool, collected, even-tempered, detached, imperturbable, unruffled, undisturbed, unperturbed, controlled, placid, grave, serious, sober, solemn, Colloq unflappable: Sometimes I think Frank is a little too self-contained. 2 reserved, controlled, distant, aloof, formal, withdrawn, reticent, standoffish: Gregory is so self-contained that he did not tell anyone that he was ill, not even his wife. 3 whole, entire, complete, stand-alone, unitary: The house has been divided into five self-contained apartments.

self-control

n. 1 self-discipline, self-restraint, restraint, self-denial, control, will-power, strength (of character or of mind or of will), mettle, fortitude, moral fibre, determination, self-possession, resoluteness, resolve, will, constancy, steadfastness, perseverance, doggedness, obduracy, persistence, Facetious US won't-power: Can I exercise the self-control needed to stop smoking? 2 calmness, tranquillity, serenity, placidity, imperturbability, cool-headedness, coolness, poise, level-headedness, patience, aplomb, dignity, equanimity, forbearance, control, restraint, self-restraint, even temper: You exhibited marvellous self-control by not losing your temper when you were insulted.

self-denial

n. 1 self-sacrifice,self-abnegation, renunciation, selflessness, altruism, unselfishness, magnanimity: His contributions must have been made at the cost of some self-denial. 2 hardship, suffering, self-mortification, asceticism, privation, renunciation, renouncing, abstemiousness, abstinence, abstention, self-deprivation, keeping away from, refusal, refusing, giving up, desisting, Colloq swearing off: As far as certain foods are concerned, a little self-denial is good for one's health. 3 See self-control, 1, above.

self-esteem

n. 1 conceit, vanity, egoism, narcissism, self-centredness, egotism, amour propre, self-approbation, self-satisfaction, self-admiration, self-love, self-adulation, self-idolatry, smugness, self-importance, self-regard: The arrogant, overweening self-esteem of some of the club members is unbearable. 2 See self-confidence, above.

self-evident

adj. evident, obvious, patent, clear, incontrovertible, definite, express, distinct, clear-cut, apparent, unmistakable or unmistakeable, undeniable, inescapable, incontestable, plain, axiomatic, proverbial, manifest, true, palpable, tangible: Her guilt seemed self-evident at first. The gradual destruction of the beaches is self-evident.

self-government

n. 1 self-rule, independence, self-determination, home rule, autonomy, freedom: The satellite countries, one by one, voted for self-government. 2 See self-control, 1 above.

self-important

adj. conceited, self-centred, self-seeking, self-absorbed, vain, egotistic(al), self-satisfied, smug, pompous, swollen-headed, swell-headed, arrogant, overweening, overbearing, vainglorious, self-glorifying, self-engrossed, presumptuous, snobbish, haughty, Colloq snooty, Slang snotty, stuck-up: That self-important little cockalorum ought to be taken down a few pegs.

self-indulgent
adj. self-gratifying, selfish, self-gratifying, extravagant, sensual, intemperate, overindulgent, greedy, immoderate, hedonistic, sybaritic, epicurean, gluttonous, gormandizing, pleasure-bound, pleasure-seeking, dissolute, dissipating, licentious, profligate, debauching: David's self-indulgent habits take no account of his wife and children.

selfish adj. 1 greedy, covetous, grasping, avaricious, self-indulgent, self-aggrandizing, acquisitive, self-seeking, self-loving, self-centred, self-absorbed, self-interested, self-serving, egotistic(al), egoistic(al): They pursue success for their own selfish ends. 2 stingy, mean, mercenary, tight, tight-fisted, narrow, penurious, parsimonious, miserly, niggardly, penny-pinching, cheese-paring, ungenerous, illiberal, grudging, uncharitable, possessive, inconsiderate, thoughtless: He is so selfish that he won't even give you the right time.

selfless adj. open, charitable, unselfish, self-denying, generous, altruistic, ungrudging, magnanimous, considerate, thoughtful; self-sacrificing: Always ready to help anyone with a need, Archer is the most selfless man I know.

self-made adj. independent, self-reliant, entrepreneurial, self-sufficient: She is a self-made woman and has accomplished it all without anyone else's help.

self-possessed
adj. composed, cool, serene, placid, collected, self-assured, peaceful, calm, tranquil, even-tempered, detached, imperturbable, unruffled, undisturbed, unperturbed, controlled, dignified, refined, Colloq unflappable: Considering what she has been through, Tanya is quite self-possessed for a teenager.

self-respect
n. honour, dignity, integrity, self-regard, self-esteem, pride, amour propre, morale: He managed to maintain a semblance of his

self-respect despite the accusations hurled at him.

self-righteous
adj. Pharisaic(al), sanctimonious, holier-than-thou, pietistic, mealy-mouthed, hypocritical, complacent, smug, self-satisfied, priggish, superior, tartuffian, canting, Colloq goody-goody, Slang Brit pi: Butter would not melt in the mouth of that self-righteous hypocrite!

self-styled
adj. would-be, self-called, soi-disant, professed, self-appointed, self-christened, so-called, quasi-: The building has been designed by a firm of self-styled 'neo-traditionalist' architects.

self-sufficient
adj. independent, self-reliant, self-supporting, self-sustaining: Agriculture will soon reach the point where the country is self-sufficient for food.

self-willed
adj. headstrong, determined, forceful, refractory, stubborn, obstinate, pigheaded, wilful, ungovernable, uncontrollable, unruly, unmanageable, intractable, contrary, perverse, uncooperative, contumacious, recalcitrant, stiff-necked, vexatious, difficult, incorrigible, disobedient: That self-willed, overindulged little brat needs a good spanking.

sell v. 1 vend, transfer, convey (title), trade, barter, exchange, dispose of: Sorry, but I sold that car last week. 2 market, deal in, merchandise, trade in, traffic in, peddle, vend, hawk, handle, retail, carry, stock, furnish, supply, offer, Colloq push, Slang Brit flog: We no longer sell that model. She has a shop selling second-hand clothes. 3 Often, sell out. betray, inform against, deliver up, give away, Slang rat on, grass on, tell on, tattle on, sell down the river, blow the whistle on, double-cross, Brit shop: He swore he'd get the man who sold him. 4 promote, push, put across or over: He couldn't sell sand to a beach flea. 5 be sold on. persuaded,convinced, won over: After seeing that film, I was sold on a holiday in Mexico.

seller n. dealer, vendor, merchant, retailer, shopkeeper, salesperson, salesman, saleswoman, saleslady, sales agent, representative, traveller, travelling salesman, peddler, hawker, colporteur, sutler, chandler, Old-fashioned counter-jumper, Brit shop assistant, -monger (as in costermonger, ironmonger, fishmonger, etc.), US and Canadian sales-clerk, clerk, shop-girl, Colloq rep, US drummer: Time ran out on his job as a seller of water-clocks and hourglasses.

semblance n. 1 appearance, image, likeness, resemblance, form, figure, bearing, aspect, air, look, mien, exterior, mask, fa‡ade, front, face, show, veneer: Beneath that semblance of tranquillity lies a turbulent, tortured mind. 2 guise, face, front, fa‡ade, air, show, veneer, look, pretence, show, cloak, simulation, impression, affectation, Rare superficies: You might try to give the sculpture at least a semblance of reality.

seminal   adj. 1 original, basic, creative, primary, prime, formative, innovative, imaginative, new, unprecedented, precedent-setting, landmark, benchmark, important, influential, telling: Michaelson's paper is considered the seminal work on the subject. It sets forth many seminal ideas. 2 embryonic, germinal, potential, undeveloped, incipient: Each seed contains a seminal plant.

seminary n. academy, school, institute, institution, college, university, training ground: His three daughters had all attended an exclusive seminary on the East Coast.

send   v. 1 Sometimes, send off. dispatch or despatch, commission, charge, depute, delegate, assign: The pope sent an emissary to London. 2 communicate, transmit, convey, deliver, consign, address to, mail, post, fax, remit, ship, forward; broadcast, telecast, televise, radio, telegraph: The message is being sent to all concerned. 3 release, discharge, shoot, propel, fire, fling, project, hurl; cast, throw, toss, let fly: With a great burst of flame the satellite was sent into orbit. 4 delight, please, charm, enrapture, stir, thrill, move, electrify, Slang turn (someone) on: That saxophone solo really sends me. 5 send down. imprison, incarcerate, send away, jail or Brit also gaol Slang US send up (the river): If she doesn't mend her ways, she'll be sent down. 6 send for. call for, summon, order, request, ask for: I have sent for a taxi which should be here shortly. 7 send forth or out. emit, radiate, discharge, give off, exude, grow: The object sent forth a strange phosphorescent glow. In the spring, the vine sends forth tendrils. 8 send off. send (someone) away, send (someone) away or off with a flea in his or her ear, dismiss, discharge, send (someone) packing, send (someone) about his or her business, Colloq give (someone) his or her walking papers, Slang give (someone) the brushoff, US give (someone) the brush: I went to the office as you instructed, but they just sent me off with no explanation. 9 send up. a lampoon, satirize, burlesque, parody, make fun of, Colloq take off, spoof, Brit take the mickey out of: In Britain one of the enduring forms of humour is in sending up the government. b imprison, incarcerate, send away, jail or Brit also gaol, Slang US send up the river: He was sent up for insider trading.

senile adj. (of a woman) anile; senescent, decrepit, declining, failing, in one's dotage, doting, doddering, in one's second childhood, dotty, simple, feeble-minded; forgetful, Colloq past it: He's senile and needs constant care.

senility n. (of a woman) anility; senile dementia, Alzheimer's disease, senescence, decrepitude, decline, dotage, second childhood, loss of one's faculties: An increased life-span has created increased cases of senility.

senior adj. elder, older, Brit (postpositive) major; (higher-) ranking, superior, chief: The senior members of the club are impossibly stuffy. You must not address your senior officer in such a manner.

senior citizen
n. elderly person, retired person, pensioner, Brit OAP (='old-age pensioner'), grey panther, Chiefly US retiree, golden-ager: Special tax provisions have been made for senior citizens.

sensation n. 1 feeling, sense, impression, perception, foreboding, presentiment, prescience, awareness, suspicion, Colloq sneaking suspicion, funny feeling, hunch: I had the distinct sensation of having been there before. 2 commotion, stir, thrill, furore or US furor; excitement: The news of the wedding caused a sensation. 3 hit, coup de th,ƒtre, success, Colloq show-stopper, crowd-puller, crowd-pleaser: Edith Piaf was a sensation at Le Th,ƒtre de la Verdure in Nice.

sensational

adj. 1 exciting, stimulating, electrifying, galvanizing, shocking, hair-raising, spine-tingling, thrilling, stirring, breathtaking, amazing, astonishing, astounding, staggering, mind-boggling, unbelievable, incredible, spectacular, Slang mind-blowing: They certainly put on a sensational show - the best I have ever seen. 2 lurid, vivid, overdone, overdrawn, extreme, melodramatic, exaggerated, dramatic, extravagant: The weekly I worked for insisted that each issue's first page carry a sensational story - whether it was true or not. 3 (very) good, great, marvellous, wonderful, superior, superb, matchless, peerless, unequalled, nonpareil, extraordinary, terrific, phenomenal, splendid, fabulous, fantastic, stupendous, Colloq super, smashing, Slang far-out: Suzanne Peters's performance was sensational in Carmen .

sense n. 1 faculty: It's not always easy to tell if Brown's senses are all functioning. 2 common sense, intelligence, perception, quick-wittedness, quickness, (mother) wit, judgement, reason, wisdom, sagacity, discrimination, discernment; sanity, Colloq brains, Slang Brit nous: Fancy doing something like that! - she hasn't the sense she was born with! 3 See sensation, 1, above. 4 meaning, intelligibility, coherence, head or tail, drift, gist, import, purport, nuance, significance, message, substance: I was unable to get any sense out of what she was saying. Yes, I wasn't able to make sense out of it either. 5 sentiment, atmosphere, impression, intuition, sensation: I had a sense of being de trop - that I was not wanted.

--v. 6 feel, perceive, detect, divine, intuit, have a hunch or feeling, have or get or be under the impression that, suspect, Colloq have a funny feeling that, feel (something) in one's bones, pick up: I sensed a certain antagonism in that last remark. I sensed that he was getting bored with me.

senseless adj. 1 insensible, unconscious, (knocked) out (cold), stunned, insensate, comatose: Agatha's head hit the fire-grate and she was borne senseless to her room. 2 numb(ed), insensate, unfeeling, benumbed, unfeeling, insensible, anaesthetized, dead, deadened, insentient: My feet are senseless from the cold. 3 pointless, purposeless, ridiculous, ludicrous, unintelligent, illogical, irrational, incongruous, meaningless, absurd, wild, mad, crazy, demented, insane, asinine, nonsensical, imbecilic or imbecile, idiotic, moronic, simple-minded, fatuous, stupid, foolish, silly, dizzy, halfwitted, mindless, brainless, witless, empty-headed, thimble-witted, pea-brained, bird-brained, hare-brained, feather-headed, rattle-brained, addle-pated, muddle-headed, Colloq daft, US daffy, nutty, batty, Slang wacky, dippy: Many of the government's objections to the plan are just senseless posturing. He is promoting some senseless plan for double-decker motorways.

sensibility

n. 1 See sensitivity, 3, below. 2 Often, sensibilities. feelings, responsiveness, responsivity, emotions, sentiments: Personal events are more likely to affect our sensibilities than major disasters in which we are not involved.

sensible adj. 1 reasonable, realistic, logical, common-sense, commonsensical, rational, reasoned, sound, practical, prudent, judicious, discreet, intelligent, sage, wise, sane; down-to-earth, matter-of-fact, well-thought-out: Do you really think it sensible to go out in this storm? Andrew has a very sensible way of dealing with junk mail - he returns it to sender. 2 perceivable, perceptible, detectable, evident, discernible, recognizable, ascertainable, apprehensible, cognizable, manifest, palpable, physical, tangible, corporeal, substantive, material, visible, observable, seeable: Some maintain that in addition to the sensible world there is another world, an anti-world, that we do not normally encounter. 3 sentient, feeling, sensitive, live, conscious, aware: Who among us ever regards microbes as sensible creatures? 4 Usually, sensible of or to. conscious (of), aware (of), acquainted (with), cognizant (of), sensitive (to), alive to, mindful (of), understanding (of), in touch (with), observant (of), awake (to), alert (to), Slang wise (to), hip or old-fashioned hep (to): The people of the village are ever sensible to the needs of their neighbours. There are some things to which we are not at all sensible. 5 appreciable, significant, considerable, substantial, substantive, noticeable: The theory is that an increased interest rate will have a sensible effect on the rate of inflation.

sensitive adj. 1 delicate, tender, sore, susceptible: My arm is still sensitive where I got the injection. 2 touchy, susceptible, susceptive, reactive, responsive, attuned, impressionable, emotional, thin-skinned, vulnerable, supersensitive, hypersensitive, testy, irascible, quarrelsome, irritable, volatile, excitable, temperamental, petulant, hot-tempered, quick-tempered: Liz is very sensitive on the subject of being unmarried, and I shouldn't bring it up. 3 finely tuned, delicate, responsive, subtle, acute, reactive, receptive: We need a more sensitive test to detect neutrinos. This radio is not sensitive enough to receive distant stations.

sensitivity

n. 1 sensitiveness, delicacy, touchiness, over-sensitivity, hypersensitivity, supersensitivity; soreness, irritability: The sensitivity of teenagers to criticism is well known to teachers and parents. She complained of sensitivity and pain in the pelvic region. 2 compassion, concern, sympathy, tenderness, tender-heartedness, kind-heartedness, kindliness, warmth, feeling: The nurses exhibit a genuine sensitivity for the problems of the handicapped. 3 awareness, consciousness, acuteness, perception, understanding, intuition, feeling, sense, sensitivity, sensitiveness, receptivity or receptiveness, receptibility, appreciation, appreciativeness, susceptibility, susceptivity or susceptiveness: Harvey has a keen sensitivity for the feelings of others. Sometimes I think the duke lacks the sensitivity needed to sympathize with the needy.

sensual adj. physical, appetitive, voluptuous, carnal, bodily, fleshly, erotic, sexual, lustful, unchaste, abandoned, dissolute, profligate, dissipated, licentious, lewd, lascivious, lubricious or lubricous, goatish, hircine, lecherous, libidinous, salacious, prurient, rakish, wanton, debauched, Cyprian, loose, dirty, Slang randy: Cranston pursued his sensual pleasures with no regard for morality.

sensualist

n. lecher, profligate, wanton, debauchee, rou,, rake, Romeo, Don Juan, Casanova, Lothario, libertine; voluptuary, hedonist, sybarite, bon viveur, bon vivant, epicure, epicurean, gourmet, gourmand, gastronome, pleasure-seeker: The main character in the film is a self-seeking sensualist who betrays every woman in his life.

sensuous adj. sensory, sybaritic, epicurean, hedonist(ic), sumptuous, luxurious, rich: She felt sensuous delight in the scents and sounds of the island.

sentence n. judgement, decision, ruling, verdict, decree, determination; punishment, Slang rap: It is up to the judge to announce the sentence of the court. Asked by his teacher for an example of a short sentence, Johnny replied, 'Thirty days'.

sentiment n. 1 attitude, feeling, sensibility, emotion, susceptibility, tenderness, tender-heartedness, sentimentality, sentimentalism: He wanted to preserve the old village square more out of sentiment than because it was historically important. 2 Often, sentiments. view, outlook, opinion, position, attitude, judgement, thought, belief, feeling, emotion: His sentiments regarding apartheid are better left unexpressed.

sentimental
adj. 1 emotional, sympathetic, compassionate, tender, warm-hearted, tender-hearted: Has he returned for sentimental reasons or for practical and mercenary ones? 2 romantic, nostalgic, emotional, maudlin, mawkish, over-emotional, tender, tearful, weepy, sickening, nauseating, simpering, sweet, saccharine, Colloq sloppy, gooey, sticky, tacky, mushy, slushy, gushy, soppy, drippy, tear-jerking, ill-making, sick-making, Slang corny, schmaltzy, icky, yucky or yukky: His last tune is always some sentimental ballad like 'Good Night, Sweetheart'.

sentimentality
n. romanticism, nostalgia, pathos, emotionalism, maudlinism, bathos, mawkishness, over-emotionalism, tenderness, tearfulness, weepiness, sweetness, Colloq sloppiness, gooeyness, mushiness, slushiness, gushiness, soppiness, drippiness, US stickiness, tackiness, Slang corn, corniness, schmaltz, schmaltziness, ickiness, yuckiness or yukkiness: The role of the bereaved mother was overplayed with enough gushing sentimentality to make one sick.

sentinel n. sentry, guard, watchman, watch, picket, lookout, patrol: The sentinels measured out the ramparts of the fortress with their regular paces.

separable adj. distinguishable, segregable, detachable, divisible, severable, removable, fissile, scissile: Unfortunately, as history demonstrates, morality and religion are separable.

separate v. 1 disjoin, pull or take or break apart, come or fall apart, fall or take or break to pieces, split or divide or break (up), split or break (off or away), disconnect, disengage, part, partition, sort (out), uncouple, disarticulate, disassemble, unhook, detach, disunite, unyoke, disentangle, unravel: In order to clean it, I first have to separate all the individual elements of the motor. The glue didn't hold, and the vase separated into a dozen fragments. Separate this yarn into different piles. 2 distinguish, discriminate, analyse, sort, break down, classify, segregate, single out, sequester, type, codify, organize, split up; group, collate: What criteria are used to separate the men from the boys, the sheep from the goats, or the wheat from the chaff? 3 split or break up, part (company), divide (up), disband, divorce: After ten years we separated, and each went our own way. 4 fork, split (up or off), bifurcate, diverge, branch: Beyond the river, the road to Norton separates from the main road.

--adj. 5 divided, separated, disjoined, disconnected, detached, isolated, discrete, distinct, individual, independent, solitary, different: Sort these books by subject into separate piles. 6 different, independent, unrelated, other: How you behave when you are not at home is a separate matter. 7 withdrawn, solitary, alone, shut or closed off or away, apart, detached, removed, cloistered, secluded, sequestered, isolated, separated: He prefers a separate existence, far away from the rest of the world.

separately

adv. individually, independently, singly, one by one, one at a time, personally, alone, severally: Each child approached separately to wish her Bon Voyage.

separation

n. 1 rift, break, split, split-up, divorce, break-up, disunion, estrangement: Their separation, after forty years, was a surprise. 2 partition, division, split, schism, dividing line, dissociation, disassociation, severance: The United States constitution provides for the separation of church and state. 3 disintegration, shattering, break-up, fragmentation, dismemberment, taking or keeping apart, segregation, division, disjoining, disjunction, fission, scission, rupture, schism, splitting, split, fracturing, fracture, break: After a crash, investigators supervise the separation of the aeroplane into its tens of thousands of component parts.

sepulchre n. tomb, mausoleum, burial-vault, grave, crypt, pyramid, burial-place: Beneath the floor of the church are the sepulchres of important people.

sequel n. follow-up, upshot, issue, result, consequence, development, supplement: The ruling went against him, but there was a curious sequel when he was suddenly offered an out-of-court settlement. They are showing the film Jean de Florette , together with its sequel Manon des Sources .

sequence n. succession, progression, order, series, chain, string, course, cycle, arrangement, organization, train, line, set, run, concatenation, system: His description conflicts with the sequence of events as recorded by the video camera. Some of these dates are out of sequence.

sequential
adj. successive, ordered, orderly, serial, progressive, organized, systematic, cyclic, continuous: Would you please put these periodicals into sequential order?

seraphic adj. angelic, celestial, divine, heavenly, blissful, sublime, empyrean, Elysian, ethereal, holy, saintly, godly: In her later years, Anna's beauty took on a detached, seraphic quality.

serene adj. 1 peaceful, tranquil, calm, pacific, peaceable, restful, halcyon, idyllic, bucolic, pastoral, undisturbed, unruffled, imperturbable, unperturbed, untroubled, quiet, still: With the turmoil of the love affair behind her, Sharon looked ahead to a more serene life. 2 calm, cool, collected, placid, composed, self-possessed, poised, unexcitable, even-tempered, temperate, nonchalant, easygoing, cool-headed, easy, Colloq unflappable: Beneath William's serene exterior lay a seething, churning miasma of violent lust.

serenity n. 1 peacefulness, peace, tranquillity, calm, calmness, restfulness, quiet, stillness: The serenity of the warm summer's evening was shattered by an enormous explosion. 2 tranquillity, peacefulness, peaceableness, unexcitability, calmness, calm, composure, self-possession, poise, aplomb, even-temperedness, temperance, nonchalance, cool-headedness, placidity, Colloq unflappability: The serenity of her nature was like a safe harbour to the friends who sought comfort from the turbulence of their lives.

serious   adj. 1 grave, solemn, earnest, unsmiling, poker-faced, straight-faced, sedate, sober, pensive, thoughtful; humourless, sombre, grim, dour, severe: One should be wary of the person who is always serious, who cannot see the ludicrous side of life. 2 grave, important, vital, dangerous, weighty, significant, momentous, crucial, consequential, life-and-death or life-or-death, urgent, pressing; no laughing matter, of consequence or moment or importance: Things like the greenhouse effect and the hole in the ozone layer are serious concerns for all mankind. 3 sincere, straightforward, not joking or fooling, genuine, honest: Is he serious about wanting me to fetch him a left-handed wrench? 4 acute, critical, life-threatening, bad, dangerous, nasty, perilous, alarming, grave, severe, precarious: His condition is serious and we might have to operate tonight. She had no idea that measles could be such a serious illness.

seriously adv. 1 gravely, badly, severely, critically: Two men were seriously injured in the explosion. 2 really, honestly, Scout's honour, sincerely, truly, candidly, openly, Colloq joking or kidding aside, no joking or kidding or fooling, cross one's heart (and hope to die): Seriously, kids, I meant what I said about going to bed on time, or no treats tomorrow at the beach. 3 soberly, earnestly, unquestioningly, without a doubt, at face value: What teacher takes seriously that old story about a grandmother's illness as an excuse for absence?

sermon   n. 1 lecture, lesson, preaching, reprimand, reproach, reproof, remonstration, remonstrance, scolding, harangue, Colloq talking-to, dressing-down: Mother gave me a long sermon last night about getting home late. 2 homily, address, exhortation, lesson, lecture, speech, talk, discourse: We thought that Father Keiller's sermon on vanity was especially appropriate.

serpentine

adj. 1 evil, bad, diabolical, satanic, Mephistophelian, reptilian, devilish, wily, cunning, conniving, sneaky, shrewd, artful, crafty, slick, sly, insidious, shifty, tricky, scheming, plotting, Machiavellian: With serpentine deceit she swore that she had returned the ring. 2 twisting, winding, tortuous, snaking, snakelike, sinuous, anfractuous, roundabout, meandering, ambagious, indirect, devious, crooked, labyrinthine, vermicular, vermiculate, complex, complicated, Byzantine: The amulet was traced through a serpentine trail of ownership back to Xerxes.

serrated adj. sawlike, saw-shaped, sawtoothed, toothed, notched, zigzag, jagged, serrate, serriform, serratiform, serrulate(d), crenellated, crenulate, crenate, denticulate: A knife with a serrated edge would cut the meat more easily.

serried adj. ranked, tiered, row on row, ranged, assembled, packed, close, compacted, compact: The serried army of brightly clad warriors stretched as far as the eye could see.

servant n. 1 domestic (servant), help, retainer; maid, maidservant, parlour-maid, upstairs maid, lady's maid, cleaner, cleaning man, cleaning woman, amah; housekeeper, chatelaine, major-domo, factotum, steward, seneschal, butler, houseman, houseboy, boy, page; valet, man, gentleman's gentleman, manservant, serving-man, footman, foot-boy, chauffeur, driver, attendant, groom; governess, au pair (girl), nurse, nursemaid, ayah; cook, chef, waiter, waitress, stewardess, wine steward, sommelier (des vins); menial, lackey, dogsbody, Archaic servitor, Historical coachman, postilion, serving-woman, serving-girl, servant-girl, serving-wench, scullery-maid, scullion, Literary cup-boy, Ganymede, Chiefly Brit nanny, Brit boots, charwoman, charlady, daily, tweeny, US scrubwoman: Who can afford to keep domestic servants these days? 2 civil servant. civil-service employee or worker, public servant, (government or State) official, office-holder, government worker: In his capacity as a civil servant, Richard has worked for several different governments.

serve v. 1 attend (to), wait on or upon, minister to, look after (the needs of), be at (someone's) beck and call, assist, help, be of assistance or help, be in the service of, oblige, accommodate, gratify: After a patron is seated and settled, approach him and ask, 'May I serve you, Sir (or Madam, as the case may be) ?' We serve all customers with equal consideration. 2 fulfil or carry out or perform or discharge (a function or a duty or one's duty), work (for), do (duty) (as or for), do one's part, suffice, be used or of use or useful (to or for), function (as or to), act (as or to), fill the bill, be serviceable (as or for), be available (for), answer (for), be sufficient or adequate or suitable, suit, be advantageous or of advantage (to); fight (for), be obedient (to), take one's part: This catch will serve to keep the door closed. I had no screw driver, but a coin served just as well. They also serve who only stand and wait. 3 distribute, deal out, dole out, give out, present, set out, provide, supply, offer, pass out or about or around, make available, come (a)round with, dish up or out: They will serve hors-d'oeuvres at seven-thirty. Dinner is served, Madam. 4 be convenient or opportune or favourable (to): If the opportunity serves me, I shall repay you many times over. 5 not fail, not play tricks (on), work or function (for), be accurate or correct: If memory serves, he was last here about ten years ago. 6 go through, complete, spend, last, endure, survive: Henryson served ten years in Dartmoor for that crime.

service n. 1 help, assistance, aid, use, usefulness, utility, benefit, advantage: May I be of service to you? You could do me a great service by not saying anything of this to my mother. 2 maintenance, overhaul, servicing, checking, repair, mending: Must we send the copier out for service or can they do it in the office? 3 serving, accommodation, amenities, waiting, care: The food is good but the service leaves much to be desired. 4 employment, employ: How long have you been in my service, Jones? 5 use, utilization, usage, handling: This old teapot has seen much service. 6 assignment, post, appointment, Military Brit secondment: Oscar was on service in the Far East during the war. 7 rite, ceremony, ritual, worship: I shall be attending a memorial service for Grimes on Saturday. 8 Often, services. army, navy, air force, marines; armed forces or services, military: He was a pianist before joining the service. 9 Often, services. talents, help, professional care, work, advice: You will need the services of a good accountant. 10 serve, serving; putting into play: Clarke's tennis service is faster and more accurate than before.

serviceable
adj. 1 workable, working, functional, functioning, usable, useful, operative, operating: It seems unlikely that the old

tractor will still be serviceable. 2 hard-wearing, long-wearing, durable, utilitarian, long-lasting, tough, wear-resistant: I need to buy a serviceable pair of hiking boots.

servile adj. submissive, subservient, menial, craven, acquiescent, abject, cringing, slavish, mean, fawning, deferential, mean-spirited, vile, low, base, ingratiating, grovelling, obsequious, toadying, toadyish, sycophantish, sycophantic, truckling, wheedling, unctuous, slimy, flattering, time-serving, boot-licking, Colloq chiefly Brit smarmy, US and Canadian apple-polishing, Slang Brit arse-kissing, US ass-kissing, Taboo slang brown-nosing, Brit arse-licking, US ass-licking: Victor is constantly trying to gain favour with the directors in the most servile way.

servility n. submissiveness, submission, subservience, servileness, acquiescence, abjectness, abjection, cringing, slavishness, meanness, fawning, mean-spiritedness, vileness, baseness, grovelling, obsequiousness, obsequence, toadying, toadyism, sycophancy, sycophantism, truckling, wheedling, unctuousness, sliminess, flattery, boot-licking, Colloq chiefly Brit smarminess, US and Canadian apple-polishing, Slang Brit arse-kissing, US ass-kissing, Taboo slang brown-nosing, Brit arse-licking, US ass-licking: We are sick of the servility with which Victor treats the directors.

servitude n. bondage, slavery, thraldom, serfdom, subjugation, enslavement, subjection, vassalage: They were sentenced to ten years' penal servitude.

session n. 1 sitting, seating, assembly, conference, meeting, hearing: Parliament is in session at this very moment. 2 term, period: The bill will be introduced again at the next session of Parliament.

set v. 1 set down, place, put, situate, locate, site, plant, position, station, stand, lay, install or instal, lodge, mount, park, deposit, plump, drop, plunk or plonk (down): Please set that blue box over here. 2 go down, sink, decline, subside: The sun is setting. 3 jell or gel, congeal, freeze, solidify, stiffen, harden, clot, coagulate, thicken, cake: The concrete takes a long time to set in this weather. 4 establish, fix,

fasten on, appoint: The date of the wedding has been set for
May 23rd. 5 focus on, home or zero in on, pinpoint, pin down:
When Ivor sets his mind on doing something, it usually gets
done. 6 adjust, regulate, turn, synchronize, fix, calibrate,
coordinate: Set your watches to Greenwich Mean Time. Set the
counter back to zero. 7 present, introduce, establish,
determine, stipulate, lay down, define, indicate, designate,
specify; set or mark off, delineate: Who set the pattern for
such behaviour? You'll have to set the rules. 8 prepare, set up,
concoct, lay, arrange, fix: I think we ought to set a trap for
the burglar. 9 set forth, propound, present, devise, work out
or up, make up, select, choose, decide, settle, establish: Who
is going to set the questions for the examination? 10 arrange,
lay, spread: If you set the table, I'll serve dinner. 11
adjust, move, tilt, fix, place, position, lodge: He set his hat
at a jaunty angle and strode out of the restaurant. 12 set
about. a get or make ready, start, begin, get to work, set in
motion, get under way, start the ball rolling, break the ice,
undertake, launch, tackle, address oneself to, enter upon,
Colloq get cracking: It's time you set about deciding what you
want to do for a living. b attack, assail, assault, beat up:
The gang set about him with clubs. 13 set against. a compare,
evaluate, rate, balance, weigh, juxtapose, contrast: If you set
his assets against his liabilities, he comes off pretty well. b
antagonize, set at odds, alienate, divide, disunite: They
succeeded in setting brother against brother. 14 set apart. a
distinguish, separate, differentiate: His talent for language
sets him apart from the others. b reserve, put or set aside,
store, earmark, put away, lay away, set by, save, keep back: I
set apart this piece of chocolate just for you. 15 set aside.
a See 14 (b), above. b annul, cancel, nullify, declare or
render null and void, reverse, repudiate, abrogate, quash,
overturn, overrule, discard: The judge set aside the ruling of
the lower court. 16 set back. put back, hinder, slow, hold up,
retard, delay, impede, obstruct, stay, thwart, frustrate,
inhibit: Completion has been set back because the materials
failed to arrive. 17 set down. a write (down), put in writing,
put down, record, register, mark or jot down, list: The
secretary laboriously set down every word the official said. b
ascribe, assign, attribute, impute, charge: She set down her
failure to win promotion to prejudice on the part of management.
c put down, land: See if you can set the plane down in that
field over there. 18 set forth. a express, voice, propose,

propound, state, offer, submit, suggest, broach, make a motion,
move: Hugo set forth various proposals for the expansion of the
company. b set out or off, put forth or out, begin, start
(out), get under way, go, embark, sally forth, push off, depart,
leave: After much hemming and hawing, Clive finally set forth
on his big adventure. c set out, present, declare, describe,
propose, state, articulate, enunciate: Hermione's theory is set
forth in a lengthy report. 19 set in. begin, become
established, arrive, come: Winter has set in quite early this
year. 20 set off. a ignite, kindle, detonate, light, touch
off, trigger, trip: That little spark set off an explosion that
destroyed the entire plant. b dramatize, enhance, highlight,
throw into relief, show (off), display: The engraving is
beautifully set off by the new mat and frame. c See 18 (b),
above. 21 set on. set upon, attack, assault, pounce on or upon,
fall on or upon, fly at: You were set on by a pack of dogs in
the park? 22 set out. a See 17 (b) and (c), above. b put out,
lay out, arrange, dispose, display: The stallholders are all
setting out their wares for the jewellery fair this morning. 23
set up. a build, put up, erect, assemble, construct, raise,
elevate, put together, arrange, prepare: They are setting up
the Christmas displays over the weekend. b start, begin,
initiate, organize, establish, found; finance, fund, invest in,
back, subsidize: The Crockers are setting up their third shop
in Halsted. His father set him up in business. 24 set upon.
attack, assault, ambush, beat up, fall upon, set about Colloq
mug: The gang set upon him as he was getting home from work.

--n. 25 collection, group, combination, number, grouping,
assortment, selection, arrangement, series: Brackenhall bought
a set of Hogarth etchings from the gallery. 26 clique, coterie,
group, company, circle, ring, crowd, faction, sect, gang: The
set she associates with think nothing of flying to Rio for the
weekend. 27 kit, outfit, rig; equipment, apparatus: When I was
ten, my father bought me a chemistry set. 28 setting, stage set
or setting, scene, mise en scŠne, mounting, scenery: Hunter's
set for Waiting for Godot won a prize.

--adj. 29 fixed, established, determined, predetermined,
arranged, prearranged, decided, customary, usual, normal,
regular, agreed, conventional, habitual, definite, defined,
firm, unvarying, unvaried, unchanging, wonted, rigid, strict,
settled, scheduled: There is a set order in which these things

are done. 30 stereotyped, trite, hackneyed, routine, standard, traditional, unchanged, unvaried, invariable: He made his set welcoming speech, as usual dripping with condescension, to the incoming classes. 31 prepared, ready, fit, primed: Are you all set to go?

set-back n. hindrance, hitch, check, reverse, reversal, impediment, block, obstruction, defeat, hold-up, delay, check, rebuff, upset; relapse; Colloq hiccup: The reduction in arts funding has resulted in some severe set-backs in certain programmes. Derek has suffered a set-back and will remain in hospital for a while.

setting n. mounting, scenery, background, backdrop, locale, location, surroundings, habitat, home, environs, environment, milieu, frame, context, site, placement; stage set or setting, mise en scŠne, scene: It is quite interesting to see how the animals live in their natural setting. The setting of Hardy's novels is in the West Country.

settle v. 1 arrange, order, dispose, organize, straighten out, put in or into order, compose, sort out, classify, coordinate, resolve, set to rights, reconcile: Ben settled his affairs before undergoing surgery. 2 Often, settle on or upon. fix (on), decide (on), establish, appoint, set, confirm, affirm, conclude, make sure or certain (of), determine, agree (upon or on), pick, choose, select: Have you been able to settle on a suitable time to visit Max and Maddy? 3 decide, reconcile, resolve, put an end to, conclude, clear up, patch up, adjust, negotiate, mediate: We have settled our differences. 4 Often, settle down. take up residence, go or come or move to, dwell, reside, make one's home, abide, remain, stay, live, set up home or house,put down roots, locate, inhabit, US set up housekeeping, locate: They have decided to settle in Australia after George retires. 5 Sometimes, settle down. light, alight, land, come down, put down, set down, (come to) rest or (roost), descend, perch: The butterfly settled on the tip of Alice's nose. 6 populate, people, colonize, pioneer: That part of the country wasn't settled till late in the 19th century. 7 Usually, settle down. calm down, subside, quiet down, be or become tranquil, Chiefly Brit quieten (down): The class settled down and we began the lesson. I must settle down and get back to work. 8 calm, quiet, soothe, tranquillize, relax, Chiefly Brit quieten: He drank some camomile tea to settle his nerves. 9 subside, sink, decline, fall: A great crack appeared in the wall when the house settled a bit. 10 Often, settle up. pay, square, dispose of, clear, balance, liquidate, discharge: If you settle the bill, we can leave. 11 Often, settle out. gravitate, sink, fall, precipitate (out): Stop shaking the container and let the sand settle to the bottom. 12 clarify, clear: After about an hour, the particles will start to settle.

settlement

n. 1 colony, outpost, post, camp, community, encampment, village, hamlet: The first colonists established a small settlement on the bank of the river. 2 colonization, settling, populating, settling: The settlement of the valley was mainly by Scandinavians. 3 agreement, rapprochement, resolution, adjustment, elimination, reconciliation, working-out, accommodation, arbitration, arrangement: Settlement of the dispute was supervised by a union representative. 4 payment, defrayal, discharge, liquidation, satisfaction, settling, quittance, clearing, clearance: The settlement of our debts is of paramount importance. 5 deciding, settling, setting, decision, conclusion, confirmation, affirmation, establishment, stabilization, determination, agreement, choice, selection: The only thing on his mind was the settlement of their holiday destination - should it be France or Thailand?

settler n. colonist, frontiersman, frontierswoman, pioneer, immigrant: The early settlers cleared the land for farming.

set-up n. 1 arrangement, system, organization, layout, regime, structure, make-up, composition, framework, frame, construction; conditions, circumstances: This set-up of interlocking directorships makes it difficult to see who answers to whom and who owns what. What, exactly, is the set-up between you and Eustace? 2 prearrangement, trap, Slang put-up job: As soon as I saw the police car, I knew we had walked into a set-up.

sever v. 1 cut off or apart or in two, lop or chop or hew or hack off, slice or shear off, cleave, dock, bob, dissever, split, separate, divide, disjoin, detach, disconnect: The animal's foot was severed by the trap. 2 separate, disunite, dissolve, break off or up, terminate, end, cease, stop, discontinue, suspend, abandon, put an end to: The final divorce decree severed us from one another once and for all.

several adj. 1 some, a few, not too or very many, a handful or a sprinkling or a number of: Several people asked for you at the party last night. 2 various, sundry, a variety of, diverse, divers, different, respective, individual, distinct, disparate, particular, certain, specific, discrete, dissimilar: There are several stages one must go through before reaching the end.

severe adj. 1 strict, harsh, rigorous, austere, hard, stony, stony-hearted, hard-hearted, flinty, inexorable, iron-handed, oppressive, unbending, rigid, uncompromising, relentless, unyielding, obdurate, pitiless, punitive, merciless, unsympathetic, unfeeling, cruel, brutal, mean, savage, inhuman, beastly, ruthless, despotic, dictatorial, tyrannical, autocratic, demanding, exacting, painstaking, fastidious, exigent, taxing: Nicholas Nickleby was subjected to extremely severe treatment at Dotheboys Hall. Mr Bradshaw was a severe taskmaster. 2 stern, forbidding, dour, glowering, grave, grim, stiff, strait-laced, serious, unsmiling, sober, cold, frigid, aloof, austere: If he so much as dropped a spoon the master would give Nicholas a severe look. 3 dangerous, critical, dreadful, awful, life-threatening, acute, dire; mortal, fatal, terminal: She has had a severe attack of the flu. 4 stringent, punitive, harsh, punishing, burdensome, tough, onerous, grievous, painful, Draconian or Draconic: There are severe penalties for breaking the parking laws in this city. 5 harsh, bitter, cold, inclement, keen, violent, stormy, intense, turbulent, fierce, wicked: Granny couldn't live through another severe winter at Fort William. 6 stark, bare, plain, austere, Spartan, ascetic, primitive, simple, sparse, spare, monastic, modest, unadorned, unembellished, crude, undecorated, unembroidered: The severe d‚cor in the servants' quarters gave the appearance of a prison.

severely adv. 1 acutely, seriously, badly, dangerously, dreadfully; permanently, fully, entirely: The accident left him severely handicapped. 2 strictly, harshly, rigorously, austerely, oppressively, relentlessly, mercilessly, cruelly, brutally, savagely, inhumanly, tyrannically: The boys were severely maltreated at the school. 3 sternly, forbiddingly, dourly, gloweringly, gravely, seriously, grimly, unsmilingly, soberly, coldly, coolly, austerely: Mrs Gladwin regarded me severely over the top of her pince-nez. 4 stringently, punitively, harshly, onerously, grievously, painfully: One is punished severely for the slightest infraction of the law. 5 dangerously, acutely, critically, dreadfully, awfully; mortally, fatally, terminally: I am afraid to say that your mother is severely ill. 6 starkly, plainly, barely, modestly, austerely, ascetically, monastically, primitively, simply, crudely, sparsely, sparely: The room is furnished a bit severely for my taste.

severity n. 1 strictness, harshness, rigour, rigorousness, austerity, hardness, flintiness, inexorability, inexorableness, stringency, oppression, oppressiveness, rigidity, inflexibility, relentlessness, obduracy, obdurateness, pitilessness, mercilessness, cold-bloodedness, abusiveness, cruelty, brutality, meanness, savagery, inhumanity, beastliness, ruthlessness, despotism, tyranny, fastidiousness, exigency: The severity of the discipline was almost unbearable. 2 coldness, aloofness, sternness, gravity, grimness, frigidity, austerity, solemnity: The severity of his look froze me to the spot. 3 dangerousness, acuteness, seriousness, gravity, ferocity, fierceness, virulence, violence, intensity: The severity of the fits has diminished since we put the patient on new medication. 4 stringency, punitiveness, punishment, harshness, onerousness, grievousness, painfulness, burdensomeness, oppressiveness: The severity of the sentence is not inappropriate to the heinousness of the crime. 5 harshness, inclemency, violence, storminess, intensity, ferocity, fierceness, fury, furiousness, tempestuousness: The severity of the weather has interfered with our maintenance of the electrical power lines. 6 plainness, starkness, austerity, asceticism, bareness, modesty, simplicity, primitiveness, spareness, sparseness, monasticism, crudeness: The severity of the cells at the monastery was equalled by the austerity of the regimen.

sew v. sew up, stitch, darn, mend, repair; sew on, attach, fasten; tack, baste, hem: Would you sew up a hole in my sweater for me and, while you're at it, would you mind sewing a button on my shirt?

sex n. 1 gender: It is difficult to determine the sex of some of the lower animals. 2 sexual intercourse or relations, coitus, coition, mating, copulation, (sexual) congress or union, intimacy, lovemaking, making love, coupling, Colloq making out, going to bed, shacking up, Slang having it away, Taboo slang screwing, shafting, shagging, fucking, Chiefly Brit bonking: They feel that there is too much sex and violence on television these days.

sexual adj. 1 sex, reproductive, genital, procreative or procreant, sex, progenitive, propagative: Their current project is an investigation of sexual behaviour in young adults. 2 sensual, sensuous, erotic, carnal, fleshly, voluptuous, libidinous, earthy, bodily, physical, lustful, animal, Colloq sexy: They have a deep sexual attraction to one another.

sexy adj. 1 erotic, arousing, exciting, sensual, sensuous, seductive, suggestive, provocative, inviting, alluring, bedroom, flirtatious, appealing, fascinating, striking, tempting, captivating, enchanting, stunning, Colloq come-hither: She thought he had a sexy smile. 2 sex, dirty, pornographic, obscene, filthy, smutty, lewd, foul, lascivious, indecent, explicit, gross, X-rated, vulgar, rude, coarse, off colour, risqu,, titillating, bawdy, ribald, lusty, immodest, rough, indelicate, suggestive, unseemly, improper, indecorous, naughty, shameless, Slang raunchy: They sat there leering over a sexy magazine.

19.4 shabby...
=-

shabby adj. 1 worn, dingy, faded, worn out, threadbare, tatty, tattered, frayed, raggedy, ragged, scruffy, dilapidated, ratty, dirty, bedraggled, mangy, run-down, seedy, (much) the worse for wear, Brit down at heel, US down at the heel(s), Colloq grubby, scrubby, gungy, tacky, US grungy: He was wearing a shabby suit and down-at-heel shoes. 2 poor, peremptory, unpleasant, nasty, disagreeable, mean, contemptuous, demeaning, grudging, ungenerous, impolite, rude, unfriendly, unhelpful, shoddy, ungentlemanly, unladylike, dishonourable, unworthy, scurvy, Colloq rotten: We were subjected to very shabby treatment at the office where we applied for work. 3 dilapidated, tumbledown, broken-down, shattered, battered, run-down, ramshackle, seedy, neglected, dirty, squalid, slum-like, slummy, Colloq beat-up, crummy: Sam lives in a shabby little house near the canal. 4

mean, stingy, ungenerous, niggardly, contemptible, low, lowly, base, mean-spirited, despicable, vile, uncouth, discreditable, inferior, disreputable, infamous, abominable, dishonourable, ignoble, atrocious, ignominious, odious, detestable, opprobrious: The shabby apology for their behaviour fell on deaf ears.

shack   n. hut, hovel, shanty, cabin, lean-to, Colloq dump: The shack was built out of scrap lumber and cardboard boxes.

shackle   n. 1 Often, shackles. fetter(s), leg-iron(s), chains, iron(s), bilboes, gyve(s), ball and chain, manacle(s), handcuff(s), restraint(s), bond(s), trammel(s), Colloq cuff(s), Slang bracelet(s), Brit darbies: When those shackles went round his ankles, he thought he'd never see them taken off. 2 Usually, shackles. restriction, restraint, deterrent, impediment, check, obstacle, obstruction, barrier, hindrance, bar, encumbrance: When shall we throw off the shackles of ignorant prejudice and see a truly free world?

--v. 3 chain, fetter, manacle, handcuff, bind, restrain, tie, secure, truss, pinion, tether: He was shackled to the mast and whipped for disobedience. In this glorious spring weather I resent being shackled to a desk. 4 restrain, hold back, check, deter, hinder, discourage, hobble, handicap, restrict, curb, rein, bridle, control, fetter, inhibit, limit: Freedom of expression has been shackled during all those years of oppression.

shade   n. 1 shadow, shadiness, dimness, duskiness, semi-darkness, gloominess, murkiness, dusk, gloom, murk, darkness, obscurity, Literary shades: We rested in the shade of an old oak to get out of the hot sun. 2 tint, tinge, tone, colour, hue, intensity: The curtains should be of a lighter shade to match the wallpaper. 3 hint, intimation, tinge, suggestion, modicum, sprinkling, soup‡on, trace, suspicion, undertone, overtone, touch, speck, dash, nuance, atom, grain, scintilla, iota, jot or tittle: Did I detect a shade of sarcasm in your voice, Aloysius? 4 ghost, spectre, apparition, phantom, phantasm, spirit, wraith, vision, banshee, Colloq spook: As night came on, horrifying shades took shape amongst the leafless trees. 5 blind, window-blind, curtain, venetian blind; lampshade; screen, cover, covering, protection, veil, awning, canopy, shield, shelter, umbrella, parasol: We need shades to reduce the glare of the light. We had only a light tent as a shade against the broiling sun. 6 fraction, hair's breadth, bit, hair, Colloq smidgen or smidgin: Try moving the picture a shade to the left. 7 variation, variety, nuance, degree: Do you really think his approval would make a shade of difference to me? 8 put (someone) in or into the shade. overshadow, exceed, surpass, outstrip, outclass, eclipse, outshine, best, better, beat, put to shame, outplay, outperform, outdo, Colloq run rings or circles around, show up: Your record time in the 1000-metre put other contenders in the shade. 9 shades. sun-glasses: Take off those shades so I can see what you are thinking.

--v. 10 screen, protect, shield, shelter, cover: You should shade your eyes from the direct sunlight. 11 darken, opaque, black out, blacken: She shaded in parts of the diagram to give a better effect. 12 dim, shadow, veil, blot out, cloud, conceal, hide, obscure, shroud, screen, mask, camouflage, disguise: The house is shaded from view by trees on the south side.

shadow   n. 1 darkness, gloom, dimness, dusk, obscurity: In the shadow I could make out the dim outline of a figure. 2 cover, screen, covering, shield, veil, curtain, protection, concealment: He stole past the sentry under the shadow of darkness. 3 hint, intimation, suggestion, suspicion, trace, vestige; remnant: I do not have the slightest shadow of doubt that she is telling the truth. Martin is merely a shadow of his former robust self. 4 cloud, blight, curse: A terrible shadow has fallen upon the family name. 5 See shade, 4, above. 6 companion, alter ego, comrade, Colloq sidekick, crony, chum, (bosom) pal, US (bosom) buddy: Boswell was Johnson's shadow for almost twenty years.

--v. 7 follow, trail, track, dog, stalk, pursue, trace, Colloq tail, US and Canadian bird-dog: For a month detectives shadowed the suspect.

shadowy   adj. 1 dark, shady, bowery, leafy, shaded, gloomy, dusky, dim, Literary bosky: The hotel bar was a shadowy place with pink lights on the tables. 2 vague, dim, dark, obscure, faint, indistinct, indefinite, hazy, ill-defined, unclear, indeterminate: The photograph was too shadowy for us to identify anyone in it. The years before he came to London are part of his shadowy past. 3 spectral, ghostly, phantom, phantasmal, wraithlike, phantasmagoric(al), illusory, dreamlike, imaginary, visionary, chimerical, hallucinatory, unreal, unsubstantial, fleeting, impalpable, transitory, ethereal, immaterial: He saw shadowy figures lurking near the tomb. The plaintiff's case is shadowy, to say the least. 4 See shady, 2, below.

shady adj. 1 See shadowy, 1, above. 2 indistinct, indefinite, questionable, doubtful, uncertain, unreliable, suspicious, suspect, dubious, shifty, disreputable; devious, tricky, slippery, underhand(ed), unethical, unscrupulous, dishonourable, dishonest, Colloq fishy, crooked, bent, not (strictly) kosher: The minister's shady past will be revealed in the next issue of Tribune . She got involved with some shady character who had just come out of prison.

shaft n. 1 pole, rod, staff, stick, stem, shank, handle, helve; pillar, column, post, stanchion, upright: The shaft of the harpoon splintered as the whale suddenly plunged downwards. These shafts help support the upper storey. 2 beam, ray, gleam, streak, pencil: At exactly noon on the winter solstice a shaft of light struck the altar at the centre of the stone circle. 3 thrust, barb, sting, dart, gibe or jibe, barb, Colloq slap (in the face), knock, put-down: After the episode in the restaurant, Barbara had to suffer the shafts of her colleagues and their teasing. 4 mine-shaft, tunnel, adit, well, pit; air-shaft, duct, flue: How many men went down the shaft in the first shift? The screen over the ventilating shaft must be kept clean.

shaggy adj. hairy, woolly, unkempt, unshorn, uncut, hirsute, dishevelled, matted, untidy: They had a large black dog with shaggy hair and a great bushy tail.

shake v. 1 quiver, quake, shudder, waver, wobble, tremble, shiver: The poor child is shaking from the cold. 2 wiggle, wriggle, squirm, shimmy, twitch, joggle, jiggle, waggle, sway, swing, roll, bump, grind, vibrate, oscillate, pulsate, gyrate: When Lola shakes her hips the strongest men have been known to weaken. 3 weaken, undermined, impair, harm, damage, discourage; disenchant, disappoint, disaffect: The incident shook my faith in the political party I had supported all my voting life. 4

wave, brandish, flourish, display, show off, parade, exhibit, vaunt, waggle, flap, flutter: It was thrilling to see the once-banned flag being shaken under the noses of the deposed leaders. 5 Often, shake up. agitate, stir (up), mix (up); upset, distress, frighten, scare, shock, disturb, unnerve, unsettle, disconcert, discomfit, worry, fluster, disquiet, confound, confuse, perplex, puzzle, Colloq rattle, get to, US throw (for a loop): Shake the medicine before taking it. I was really shaken by the news that Sheila had quit. 6 shake down. a break in, condition, test, prove, Colloq debug: We shook down the submarine on a 30-day cruise. b blackmail, extort or extract or squeeze or wrest money from, hold up, squeeze, threaten: The shopkeepers were so frightened that the gang easily shook them down. 7 shake off. get rid of, discard, dislodge, drop, brush off, elude, evade, lose, throw off, rid oneself of, give the slip to: We finally shook off our pursuers: at last we felt safe.

--n. 8 shaking, quivering, quaking, shuddering, wavering, wobbling, trembling, shivering, quiver, quake, shudder, waver, wobble, tremble, shiver, wiggle, wriggle, twitch, joggle, jiggle, sway, swing, roll, gyration: The dog gave a shake of its tail and bounded towards them. 9 agitating, agitation, shaking, stirring (up), jolt, jar, jarring, jounce, jolting, jouncing: Give him a good shake and he'll wake up. 10 the shakes. trembling, tremors, delirium tremens, Colloq D.T.'s: She's had so much to drink that she's got the shakes.

shake-up n. reorganization, rearrangement, overhaul, revamp, restructuring, rehabilitation, make-over, realignment: With new owners you can expect a complete shake-up of top management.

shaky   adj. 1 uncertain, wobbly, unstable, precarious, unsound, flimsy, weak, unsteady, unsupported, unsubstantiated, undependable, unreliable, tenuous, untrustworthy, dubious, questionable, doubtful, Colloq iffy: The evidence against him is very shaky indeed. 2 wobbly, wobbling, unstable, precarious, dilapidated, ramshackle, on its last legs, decrepit, falling down or apart, rickety, flimsy, unsteady, insecure, unsound, unsubstantial, insubstantial, feeble: Surely, you can't expect that shaky old chair to support your weight!

shallow   adj. 1 surface, skin-deep, superficial, thin, empty, flimsy, trivial, unimportant, slight, frivolous, idle, foolish: If you read only comic books, your thoughts are bound to be shallow. 2 Often, shallows. shoal(s), sand bar, sandbank, bank, shelf: This boat draws too much water to go fishing in the shallows.

sham n. 1 fake, fraud, counterfeit, imitation, hoax, humbug, pretence, forgery, copy, imposture, Colloq phoney or US also phony: Their call for reform is a sham, as they have no intention of disturbing the status quo.

--adj. 2 fake, fraudulent, counterfeit, imitation, paste, simulated, false, make-believe, fictitious, made-up, bogus, spurious, mock, ersatz, artificial, synthetic, Colloq phoney or US also phony, pseudo: He sat there feigning interest, a sham smile on his face.

shambles n. chaos, devastation, mess, disaster, Augean stables, pigsty, muddle, pigpen: I can't find anything in this shambles. The campaign degenerated into a complete shambles.

shambling adj. shuffling, lumbering, dragging, scuttling, awkward, clumsy, lurching, unsteady, faltering: The old beggar hobbled off with a shambling gait.

shame n. 1 embarrassment, humiliation, mortification, chagrin, ignominy, shamefacedness, loss of face, abashment: Watts felt abysmal shame at being discovered stealing from petty cash. 2 disgrace, ignominy, dishonour, disrepute, degradation, opprobrium, vilification, calumniation, infamy, obloquy, odium, contempt, scandal, denigration, loss of face, defamation, discredit, disesteem, disfavour, derogation, disparagement: To think that one knight's single act of cowardice in 1249 could have brought such shame to all his descendants. 3 pity, calamity, disaster, catastrophe; outrage: What a shame that Gerry failed the exam! 4 humility, modesty, (sense of) decency or decorum or propriety, respectability, decorousness, diffidence, shyness, coyness, prudishness, timidity, shamefacedness: The people who wear bathing suits like that obviously have no shame at all. 5 put to shame. a surpass, eclipse, outclass, overshadow, cast into the shade, outdo, outstrip, outshine, show up: Cochrane put his opponents to shame when they failed to score a single point against him. b See 8, below.

--v. 6 embarrass, humiliate, mortify, humble, chagrin, disconcert, discountenance, put down, bring down, abash, chasten, Colloq bring (someone) down a peg, suppress, subdue: He hated the teacher because she had shamed him in front of his friends. 7 coerce, force, drive, bully, push; embarrass, humiliate, mortify, humble: The other boys shamed him into admitting that he had done it. 8 disgrace, embarrass, dishonour, scandalize, calumniate, degrade, debase, defame, discredit, stigmatize; smear, blacken, stain, taint, besmirch, tarnish: I am sure, son, that nothing you ever do would shame the family or me.

shamefaced

adj. 1 bashful, shy, modest, self-effacing, diffident, timid, meek, coy, sheepish, timorous: He felt shamefaced as a schoolboy when they awarded him a medal for bravery. 2 ashamed, shamed, abashed, embarrassed, humiliated, dishonoured, mortified, humbled, chastened, chagrined, uncomfortable, discomfited, remorseful, red-faced: Shamefaced, she finally admitted the truth about where she had been.

shameful adj. disgraceful, dishonourable, base, low, mean, vile, degrading, indecent, inglorious, deplorable, discreditable, corrupt, disreputable, infamous, ignominious, humiliating, embarrassing, mortifying, humbling, chastening, discomfiting, shaming, blameworthy, scandalous, outrageous, unprincipled: Quentin was known for his shameful behaviour both at school and in the army.

shameless adj. wild, flagrant, unreserved, uncontrolled, immodest, wanton, indecorous, indecent, rude, improper, forward, bold, unembarrassed, unblushing, audacious, brazen, brash, unabashed, unashamed, impudent, shocking, outrageous: He was roundly condemned for his shameless neglect of his responsibilities. Her behaviour was shameless, even wanton.

shape n. 1 form, figure, build, body, physique; lines, profile, silhouette, contours: I've never heard anyone complain about Marilyn Monroe's shape. 2 form, pattern, configuration, structure, aspect: The discussion is on the shape of things to come in the double-glazing trade. The new swimming-pool will be in the shape of a figure of eight. 3 form: Gradually, the shopping mall began to take shape. 4 state, condition, fettle, status, (state of) health, order, trim: When I saw Wayne yesterday, he seemed in very good shape indeed. 5 guise, disguise, form, appearance, likeness, image: Zeus visited Dan„e in the shape of a golden shower, and fathered Perseus on her.

--v. 6 form, fashion, mould, cast, make, model, sculpture, sculpt; cut, carve, hew, hack, trim: Using primitive tools, they were able to shape the clay into bowls. The topiary shrubs were shaped into the forms of birds. 7 determine, give form to, control, govern, regulate, affect, condition, influence, decree, frame, define,: There are many factors that shape our future. 8 word, express, embody in words, put, formulate, form: Perhaps you could shape your question differently. 9 change, modify, remodel, accommodate, fit, adapt, adjust: The box was shaped especially for this bottle. 10 shape up. a take form, take shape, develop, evolve, proceed: The plan is shaping up very nicely. b conform, improve, progress, go or move or come along, show improvement, come up to snuff; behave better: Those who cannot shape up will have to ship out.

shapeless adj. 1 amorphous, formless, nebulous, unformed, indefinite, unstructured, vague: Sculptors start with a shapeless mass of clay. 2 unshapely, deformed, misshapen, distorted, twisted, bent, battered: The wreckage was a shapeless tangle of steel and mortar.

shapely adj. curvaceous, comely, well-proportioned, graceful, neat, well turned out, good-looking, pleasing; voluptuous, Colloq sexy: That slinky black dress certainly sets off her shapely figure to advantage.

share n. 1 portion, allotment, division, apportionment, allocation, ration, appropriation, dispensation, allowance, part, due, percentage, interest, dividend, quota, portion, helping, serving, Colloq cut: Each of us is entitled to a share in the profits. We made sure that all participants got their shares. 2 interest, piece, part, stake, equity, slice: Do you own any shares in the stock market? My share in United Telephone is worth twice what I paid for it.

--v. 3 share out, divide up, allot, apportion, allocate, ration, appropriate, share in, split, partition, parcel or deal or dole out, pay out: Ownership in the company is shared equally among the employees. Let's just take one car, and share the expenses.

sharp adj. 1 acute, keen; razor-sharp, knife-like, knife-edged, sharpened; pointed, needle-sharp: How do you keep the telescope in sharp focus? You need an extremely sharp knife for boning fish. This pencil isn't sharp enough. 2 abrupt, sudden, precipitous, sheer, vertical, marked: Just round the corner is a sharp dip in the road. There was a sharp rise in prices on the London Stock Exchange today. 3 keen, keen-witted, keen-minded, sharp-witted, shrewd, intelligent, smart, alert, bright, quick, agile, astute, clever, on the qui vive, penetrating, observant: Penny has a very sharp mind and a good eye for detail. 4 caustic, bitter, biting, acrid, hot, spicy, pungent, piquant, tangy, harsh, sour, acid, acidulous, tart: That lemon sorbet is a little too sharp for my taste. 5 acid, acidulous, acerbic, vitriolic, acrimonious, cutting, piquant, biting, bitter, unkind, strict, hurtful, spiteful, virulent, sarcastic, sardonic, trenchant, severe, scathing, malicious, nasty, malignant, venomous, poisonous: How does one escape the sharp comments of the critics? She was unprepared for the sharp exchange between the guests on her chat show. 6 clever, shrewd, artful, crafty, sly, cunning, foxy, calculating, unscrupulous, dishonest, Colloq sneaky, fly: There is evidence that the stock manipulators were engaged in very sharp practice. 7 high-pitched, shrill, penetrating, piercing, strident, harsh, ear-splitting, loud: Jane gave a sharp cry when she felt the ice break under her feet. 8 poignant, severe, cutting, intense, sudden, piercing, extreme, acute, fierce: Complaining of a sharp pain in his chest, he fell down. 9 chic, dapper, spruce, stylish, smart, fashionable, dressy, Colloq snappy, natty, classy, nifty, swell, swanky: If you want to see the latest collection of sharp clothes, go to the disco.

--adv. 10 sharply, precisely, exactly, punctually, on the dot, Colloq on the button, US on the nose: Our appointment was for seven o'clock sharp. 11 sharply, suddenly, abruptly: I was pulled up sharp by her mention of the Black Rose. 12 sharply, alertly, attentively, vigilantly, watchfully, carefully: Listen sharp to what I tell you.

sharpen v. hone, grind, strop, whet: Of what use is a knife if you don't sharpen it periodically?

sharp-eyed
adj. sharp-sighted, eagle-eyed, hawk-eyed, lynx-eyed, gimlet-eyed, keen-sighted, wide awake, wakeful, watchful, observant, (on the) alert, on the qui vive, wary, circumspect, Argus-eyed, cautious, careful: It takes quite a sharp-eyed person to check the accuracy of these circuits.

sharply adv. 1 severely, sternly, harshly, cuttingly, acerbically, peremptorily, angrily, strictly, firmly: Her teacher sharply rebuked Hilary for smiling. 2 suddenly, quickly, abruptly, precipitously, precipitately: Prices increased sharply for the third day in succession. 3 acutely, distinctly, definitely, definitively: These new cameras automatically remain sharply focused on the object.

shatter v. 1 disintegrate, burst, pulverize, shiver, smash, demolish, break (to smithereens), splinter, fragment, fracture, dash to pieces: If you hadn't caught the vase, it would have shattered into a million pieces. 2 destroy, ruin, devastate, wreck, dash, crush, demolish, torpedo, undermine, blast: Any dreams he might have had of being published were shattered by the rejection letter. 3 upset, disturb, perturb, trouble, unnerve, overcome, overwhelm, crush, devastate, depress, deject, rattle, shake (up), unsettle, agitate, confound, confuse, stupefy, daze, stun, paralyse, Colloq throw: He was shattered by the news of Mill's death.

shave v. 1 shear (off), cut (off), trim, clip, crop, snip off, remove: He made a mistake in shaving off his beard, as it hid his weak chin. 2 pare, scrape, plane, whittle: If you shave just a hair off this side, it will fit into the hole.

--n. 3 close shave. narrow escape, Colloq narrow or near squeak, US squeaker: That was a close shave! - You almost fell out the window!

shed° n. lean-to, shelter, structure, addition, penthouse, hut, shack, stall, booth, pen, cote, hutch: The tools are in the shed alongside the barn.

shedý v. 1 spill: Much blood has been shed in the name of freedom.

2 shine, spread, scatter, throw, cast, let fall, impart, release, focus, pour forth, let fall, radiate: Can you shed a little light on a matter that has puzzled me for years? 3 pour or stream or flow or surge or spill (out or forth), discharge, emanate, emit, drop; exude, ooze, weep: The clouds shed their snow and the world below turned white. Don't shed any tears over me. 4 cast off, doff, drop, abandon; moult, defoliate, desquamate, peel (off), flake (off): The trees shed their leaves. She rushed into the bathroom, shedding her clothes as she went.

sheen   n. shine, gleam, polish, lustre, shininess, burnish, brightness, gloss, glow, glimmer, shimmer, radiance, glint, dazzle: The sheen of the horse's coat glistened in the sunlight.

sheepish adj. 1 timid, withdrawn, passive, docile, obedient, compliant, sheeplike, manipulable, tractable, pliable, meek, amenable: Dashworth might seem sheepish but he doesn't like to be bullied. 2 See shamefaced, above.

sheer   adj. 1 steep, precipitous, abrupt, perpendicular, bluff, vertical: There is a sheer drop of 2000 feet to the valley below. 2 absolute, unmitigated, unqualified, downright, out-and-out, unalloyed, unadulterated, pure, unmixed, plain, simple, rank, total, complete, arrant, thorough, thoroughgoing, utter: Johnson said that he had got his definition of 'pastern' wrong out of 'sheer ignorance'. 3 transparent, see-through, thin, diaphanous, filmy, gauzy, gossamer, translucent, peekaboo: Kathryn was wearing the sheer nightgown he had given her for her birthday.

sheet   n. 1 bed-sheet, crib-sheet, fitted sheet, flat sheet, US contour sheet: How often do you change the sheets on your bed? 2 leaf, folio, page: He tore a sheet of paper from the notebook. 3 pane, panel, plate, slab: The desk has a sheet of glass on top for protection. 4 lamina, lamination, layer, stratum, veneer, membrane: Plywood is made up of a number of thin sheets of pressed wood bonded together for strength. 5 area, expanse, stretch, layer, film, coat, coating, covering, blanket, cover, surface, skin, veneer: The sheet of ice on the road made driving hazardous. 6 newspaper, journal, paper, tabloid, gazette, daily, weekly, monthly, Colloq rag: Have you got a copy of the sheet that published the article about you?

shell n. 1 cartridge, projectile, shot: We huddled in the foxhole as the shells whistled overhead. 2 exterior, outside, fa‡ade, framework, frame, chassis, externals, skeleton, hull: After the earthquake, only the shell of the building was left standing.

--v. 3 shuck, husk, peel, hull, excorticate, decorticate: Would you mind shelling the peas while I peel the potatoes? 4 fire on or upon, bombard, barrage, attack, bomb, blitz, cannonade, Slang Brit prang: The enemy shelled our position relentlessly. 5 shell out. pay out, give out, disburse, spend, expend, hand over, hand out, Colloq lay out, fork out, dish out, Chiefly US ante up: I had to shell out a month's salary for that suit.

shelter n. 1 protection, cover, refuge, asylum, sanctuary, haven, safety, security: During the hailstorm, we sought shelter in a cave. 2 cover, covering, concealment, screen, umbrella: Under the shelter of a moonless night, they stole quietly past the guards. 3 dwelling-place, habitation, home, dwelling, housing, accommodation: He feels that everyone is entitled to food, clothing, and shelter.

--v. 4 protect, screen, shield, safeguard, guard, keep, secure, harbour: The parapet sheltered the guards from the icy wind. 5 seek or take refuge or shelter, hole up, Colloq lie or lay low: Mike sheltered in a mountain hut until the hue and cry died down.

shelve v. postpone, defer, put off or aside or on ice or on the shelf, pigeon-hole, lay aside, hold in abeyance, US table: We will have to shelve this matter until we have more information.

shepherd v. lead, convoy, escort, conduct, guide, usher, take, pursue: I want you, personally, to shepherd Miss Jones through the plant. As this project requires special care, I shall shepherd it through personally.

shibboleth

n. password, catchword, catch-phrase, buzz-word, byword, watchword, jargon: As Simon knew none of the shibboleths of teenagers' slang, he remained an outsider to his classmates.

shield n. 1 protection, guard, safeguard, defence, screen, bulwark, shelter: Education is a poor shield against poverty.

--v. 2 protect, guard, safeguard, keep, defend, screen, shelter: The mother bear will shield the cubs from harm or die in the attempt.

shift v. 1 move, change position; edge, budge, relocate, rearrange, transpose, switch: Shift the picture slightly to the left. Marla shifted over closer to me on the bench. I almost broke my leg because you shifted the chair as I was about to sit on it. 2 Usually, shift for (oneself). manage, succeed, make do, look after, take care of, get or scrape by or along, fend for (oneself), make it, paddle one's own canoe: Cyril prefers to live alone and shift for himself. 3 sell, market, move: The object of advertising is to shift merchandise.

--n. 4 hours, stint, schedule; workforce, relay, crew, cadre, staff, workers, squad, team, corps, group, party, gang: I prefer to work the morning shift. The night shift comes on at 1600. 5 change, movement, switch, transfer, swerve, deflection, veer: Owing to a wind shift, it became impossible to manoeuvre among the rocks. 6 smock, chemise, muu-muu; caftan or kaftan: A light cotton shift is the most comfortable thing to wear in such scorching weather.

shiftless adj. unambitious, lazy, indolent, uninspired, unmotivated, idle, lackadaisical, irresponsible, uncaring, unenterprising, aimless, slothful, otiose, ineffective, ne'er-do-well, good-for-nothing, fain‚ant, pococurante: He calls Geoff a shiftless vagabond, virtually a tautology.

shifty adj. tricky, artful, shrewd, canny, cunning, foxy, wily, sharp, devious, slick, evasive, smooth, slippery, scheming, designing, conniving, calculating, underhand(ed), conspiratorial, treacherous, traitorous, deceitful, deceiving, duplicitous, two-faced, Janus-faced, dishonest, crooked, untrustworthy, Colloq bent: The shifty scoundrel gave me a bad cheque and did a moonlight flit.

shilly-shally

v. hem and haw, dilly-dally, teeter-totter, see-saw, yo-yo, vacillate, waver, alternate, fluctuate, dither, falter, tergiversate, Brit haver, hum and haw, Scots swither; delay, hesitate, dawdle: Stop shilly-shallying and decide whether you want chocolate or strawberry!

shimmer   v. 1 shine, gleam, glow, glimmer, glint, glisten, ripple, flicker: The desert shimmered like a lake under the relentless sun.

--n. 2 shimmering, shine, gleam, glow, glimmer, glint, gloss, flicker, light: As Julia slunk up to the microphone, the spotlight picked up the shimmer from her black satin gown.

shin   v. Usually, shin up. climb, clamber up, scramble up, scale, US shinny up: The lad shinned up the flag-pole carrying the banner.

shine   v. 1 gleam, glow, shimmer, radiate, beam, glare, flare, glisten, glitter, coruscate, twinkle, sparkle, scintillate, glint, flash, flicker: The light of a candle shone from her window. The stars are shining brightly. I want that brass polished till it shines. 2 polish, burnish, rub (up or down), buff, brush, brighten: You'd best shine your shoes before going for the job interview. 3 excel, surpass, stand out, outshine, be outstanding or pre-eminent or excellent or prominent or conspicuous: She had shone at tennis from a very early age, and first entered Wimbledon when she was twelve.

--n. 4 gleam, glow, shimmer, sparkle, brightness, radiance, gloss, lustre, sheen, glaze, patina: That shine was achieved with a little wax and elbow-grease. 5 take a shine to. like, be attracted to, take a fancy to, fancy: Her Great Dane has taken a shine to me and likes to sit on my lap.

shiny   adj. gleaming, glowing, shimmering, glossy, shimmery, lustrous, glassy, radiant, bright, beaming, glistening, polished, burnished, glittering, dazzling, coruscating, twinkling, sparkling, scintillating, glinting, flashing, flashy, flickering, lambent, fulgent: She loves riding about in her shiny new car.

ship   n. 1 vessel, (ocean or passenger) liner, steamer, wind-jammer, cutter: The statue is dedicated to the men who go down to the sea in ships.

--v. 2 send, move, ferry, transport, deliver, carry, dispatch or despatch, freight, haul, truck, cart: You need a specialized company that ships computers and other delicate equipment. 3 ship out. leave, depart, embark, set sail, take off, get out, quit, Slang scram: You'll ship out if you know what's good for you.

shipshape adj. neat, trim, spotless, orderly, Bristol fashion, spick and span, tidy: Pick up your clothes and make this room shipshape at once!

shirk   v. avoid, evade, shun, dodge, get out of, shrink from, Colloq duck (out of), Brit skive, Military Brit scrimshank, US gold brick: Stop shirking your responsibilities and get to work! Is Callum shirking again?

shiver°   v. 1 shake, quake, tremble, shudder, quiver: We sat in our wet clothes, shivering in the cold. The old shack shivered in the wind. 2 vibrate, luff, flap, flutter, chatter, rattle, shake, wallop: The sails shivered violently in the stiff breeze.

--n. 3 shake, quake, tremble, shudder, quiver, thrill, frisson, trembling, tremor, flutter: She gave a little shiver and then snuggled into my arms. 4 the shivers. trembling, shivering, goose-pimples or goose bumps, Colloq the shakes, US the chills: He's had malaria and occasionally gets the shivers. Those horror films give me the shivers.

shiverý   v. shatter, fragment, splinter, disintegrate, rupture, explode, implode, smash (to smithereens), crash: The light-bulb fell and shivered into a million fragments.

shock   v. 1 startle, surprise, stagger, jar, jolt, shake (up), stun, numb, paralyse, daze, stupefy, dumbfound or dumfound, bowl over, appal, astonish, astound, frighten, scare, petrify, traumatize, horrify, outrage, disgust, nauseate, repel, revolt, sicken, upset, disquiet, disturb, perturb, discompose, unsettle, Colloq throw, US throw for a loop, flabbergast, give (someone) a turn: He shocked us when he announced his resignation. We were shocked to learn of the train wreck.

--n. 2 trauma, stupor, paralysis, prostration, breakdown, collapse, nervous exhaustion: He is in a state of shock after the accident. 3 surprise, thunderbolt, bolt from the blue, bombshell, revelation, shocker, eye-opener, jolt: It came as a shock to learn whom I had been talking to so casually. The death of her husband was a terrible shock. 4 tingle, jolt, impact: You'll get a nasty shock if you touch those wires.

shocking adj. 1 surprising, astounding, astonishing, amazing, striking, stupefying, numbing, sudden, unexpected, electrifying, startling, Colloq mind-boggling, mind-blowing: It was shocking to see the way the neighbourhood had deteriorated. 2 disgusting, revolting, nauseating, nauseous, sickening, repulsive, abominable, hideous, horrible, horrifying, horrific, horrid, foul, loathsome, abhorrent, ghastly, hideous, unspeakable, dreadful, distressing, outrageous, appalling, monstrous, scandalous: The conditions in the concentration camps were shocking.

shoddy adj. shabby, tatty, inferior, poor, rubbishy, cheap, pinchbeck, meretricious, tawdry, gaudy, Brummagem, plastic, artificial, tinsel, tinselly, second-rate, trashy, junky, Colloq crappy, cheapjack, tacky, US chintzy: They can't get away for long with selling such shoddy merchandise.

shoo interjection. 1 Scat!, Go away!, Away with you!, Be off!, Get out!, Begone!, Colloq Get lost!, Beat it!, Scram!: I shouted 'Shoo!' and the chickens scattered.

--v. 2 Often, shoo away or off. scare off, frighten away, drive away, force to leave: She shoos away anyone who disturbs her while she is painting.

shoot v. 1 scoot, dart, whisk, speed, bolt, run, race, rush, flash, fly, dash, hurtle, streak, scuttle, bound, leap, spring, Colloq zip, whiz: The instant the baby cried out, its mother shot over to protect it. 2 discharge, fire, open fire; let fly, launch, propel, project, fling, hurl, throw, toss: Don't shoot till you see the whites of their eyes! With all his strength he shot the arrow into the beast's neck. 3 wound, hurt, harm, injure; kill, slay, assassinate, execute, Slang fill or pump full of lead, plug, blast, zap, knock off, snuff (out): He insulted her, so she shot him. He's to be shot at sunrise. 4 sprout, germinate, burgeon, flourish, grow, spring up, mushroom, develop: Owing to the perfect weather, the corn shot up very quickly.

--n. 5 sprout, stem, bud, branch, offshoot, slip, scion, sucker: If you want fruit, the new shoots have to be pinched back.

shop n. 1 store, boutique, department store: Would you stop at the shop and buy some lettuce? 2 workshop, machine shop: Henry gained experience in operating a lathe at my father's shop.

--v. 3 betray, inform on or against, Slang peach on, rat on, snitch on, blow the whistle on: The police persuaded Luke to shop his accomplices in exchange for a lighter sentence. 4 shop for. buy, purchase, seek, look for, research: I've been shopping for a new dishwasher.

short adj. 1 small, little, slight, petite, diminutive, wee, tiny, elfin, minuscule; midget, dwarfish, squat, dumpy, runty, stubby, stunted, Colloq pint-sized, knee-high to a grasshopper, sawn-off: Did you know that Queen Victoria was quite short? 2 shortened, brief, concise, compressed, compendious, compact, pocket, US vest-pocket; abbreviated, abridged, cut: A short version of the book was published in paperback. 3 laconic, terse, succinct, pithy, sententious, epigrammatic: He made a few short remarks that were very much to the point. 4 abrupt, curt, terse, sharp, blunt, bluff, brusque, sharp, offhand, gruff, testy, snappish, discourteous, uncivil, impolite: It is unnecessary to be so short with the staff. 5 direct, straight, straightforward, short and sweet: In reply to your request for permission to leave early, the short answer is 'No'. 6 Usually, short of. deficient (in), lacking (in), needful (of), wanting, inadequate, shy (of), low (on): The hotel is short of clean linen because the laundry failed to deliver. 7 brief, limited; transitory, temporary, short-lived, momentary, quick, transient: HQ had a short life but a happy one. I'll just make a short stop in here and will join you in a moment. 8 impecunious, straitened, pinched, underfunded, poor, penniless, deficient: I'm a bit short today and wonder if you could lend me some money? 9 in short supply. rare, scarce, scanty, unplentiful, meagre, sparse, Colloq chiefly Brit thin on the ground: Good editors are in short supply these days. 10 short of. before, failing, excluding, exclusive of, barring, eliminating, precluding, excepting, except for, leaving out, apart from, setting aside: Short of killing him, I am not sure what she could have done in the circumstances.

--adv. 11 abruptly, suddenly, peremptorily, without warning, instantly, unexpectedly, hurriedly, hastily, out of the blue: She stopped short in the middle of the road and made me get out. 12 cut short. a trim, curtail, shorten, abbreviate, cut: I must cut my visit short because I have a train to catch. b stop, cut off, terminate, cut in on, break in on, interrupt; butt in: I am sorry to cut you short, but it is getting on for midnight. 13 fall or come short. fail, be or prove inadequate or insufficient: These grades fall short of our expectations, Bobby.

--n. 14 in short. briefly, in a word, all in all, to make a long story short, in a nutshell: He told me, in short, that there was no job and there never had been one. 15 shorts. Bermuda shorts, knee-breeches, knee-pants, hot pants: I usually wear shorts to play tennis.

shortage n. deficit, deficiency, shortfall, dearth, scarcity, lack, want, paucity: They are predicting a shortage of water again this summer.

shortcoming
n. failure, defect, deficiency, weakness, frailty, drawback, liability, imperfection, weak point, flaw: One might justifiably regard colour-blindness as a shortcoming in an interior decorator.

shorten v. 1 cut, curtail, cut off or down or short, reduce, diminish, trim; lop off, dock, prune; hem: Please shorten the time you spend in the bathroom in the mornings. This skirt has already been shortened. 2 condense, abridge, abbreviate, digest, compress: Can one shorten the book without losing too much of the characterization?

short-lived
adj. ephemeral, evanescent, temporary, fleeting, transitory, transient, passing, fugacious, volatile: He enjoyed a short-lived reputation that died with him.

shortly adv. 1 soon, presently, anon, before long, in a (little) while, by and by, Archaic ere long: I'll see you shortly. 2 just, immediately, soon, right: We had dinner with him shortly before he went abroad. 3 abruptly, briefly, peremptorily, curtly, brusquely, sharply, tersely, testily, gruffly, rudely, tartly: 'Leave me alone', said Bill shortly.

short-sighted
adj. 1 near-sighted, myopic, dim-sighted: He wears thick spectacles because he's so short-sighted. 2 unimaginative, unprogressive, improvident, imprudent, injudicious, rash, brash, impulsive, reckless, impolitic, limited, unwary, incautious, careless, thoughtless, unmindful: Lewis's short-sighted view makes no provision for the future.

short-staffed
adj. undermanned, short-handed, understaffed: We are usually short-staffed during the summer because of the holiday schedules.

short-tempered
adj. testy, irascible, short, curt, abrupt, gruff, peremptory, bluff, rude, tart, acid, acidulous, terse, brusque, crabbed, crabby, irritable, touchy, petulant, peevish, bearish, snappish, waspish, shrewish, curmudgeonly, crusty, surly, discourteous, grouchy, disagreeable, caustic, acrimonious, acerbic: Henry is often short-tempered if he has slept badly.

short-winded
adj. short of or out of breath, winded, breathless, panting, huffing (and puffing), gasping (for air or for breath), Technical dyspnoeal: He is very short-winded because he smokes too much.

shot n. 1 discharge, shooting: The town was captured without a shot being fired. 2 bullet, ball, slug, cannon-ball, buckshot, pellet, projectile, missile: A dumdum bullet is a piece of soft shot with a hollowed-out nose. 3 attempt, try, opportunity, chance, go, essay, endeavour, guess, conjecture, Colloq stab, crack, whack: You are allowed three shots at the answer. 4 marksman, markswoman, sharpshooter, sniper, rifleman: Geraghty is an excellent shot and favourite for an Olympic gold. 5 photograph, snapshot, picture, Colloq snap, photo: Miller took some excellent action shots using stroboscopic lighting. 6 injection, inoculation, vaccination: The doctor gave me a flu shot this morning. 7 drink, jigger, tot, dram, nip, spot, swallow, Colloq finger, swig, slug, snort: Will you have a shot of whisky with me, Muldoon? 8 (space) launch or launching: The moon shot scheduled for today has been postponed owing to technical difficulties. 9 call the shots. run or direct or manage or administer or control things or affairs or matters, run the show, rule the roost, be in command or the driver's seat: Ravelli calls the shots around here, and don't you forget it. 10 like a shot. quickly, swiftly, rapidly, speedily, hurriedly, hastily, at once, like a flash, immediately, instantly, instantaneously, Colloq in two shakes of a lamb's tail, like greased lightning, before you can say 'Jack Robinson': All I had to do was mention ice-cream, and the children were in here like a shot. 11 (not) by a long shot. no way, under no circumstances, by no means, on no account, by no chance, never: You ask if he can get elected and my response is, 'Not by a long shot'. 12 shot in the arm. boost, stimulus, encouragement, incentive, inducement, provocation, motivation: The team needs a shot in the arm to improve morale.

shoulder n. 1 side, edge, verge, margin; breakdown lane: If you have a flat tyre, drive onto the hard shoulder and phone for help. 2 give (someone) the cold shoulder. rebuff, snub, ostracize, send (someone) to Coventry, cold-shoulder, put (someone) down, reject, exclude, freeze (someone) out, shun, avoid, Colloq cut (dead): After his court case, they gave Nicholas the cold shoulder at his club. 3 put (one's or the) shoulder to the wheel. make every effort, make an effort, strive, work hard, pitch in, apply oneself, roll up one's sleeves, set or get to work, Colloq knuckle down, buckle down: If we put our shoulders to the wheel, we ought to be able to get our candidate elected. 4 rub shoulders (with). associate (with), hobnob (with), socialize (with), consort (with), mix (with), fraternize (with), keep company (with): Once in a while, she condescends to come down and rub shoulders with the common people. 5 shoulder to shoulder. side by side, united, as one, cooperatively, jointly, arm in arm, hand in hand, in partnership: If we fight shoulder to shoulder, we can defeat this menace and regain our freedom. 6 straight from the shoulder. directly, straightforwardly, candidly, frankly, honestly, openly, unabashedly, unashamedly, unambiguously, unequivocally, plainly, bluntly, man to man, (with) no holds barred, outright, Colloq without beating about the bush, without pulling (any) punches: I want to tell you, straight from the shoulder, Willie, you're the best pal in the world.

--v. 7 push, shove, jostle, hustle, thrust aside, elbow, force: She shouldered everyone aside roughly to fight her way to the bargain counter. 8 support, carry, bear, take upon oneself, take on, accept, assume: Are you ready to shoulder the responsibilities of caring for a family?

shout   v. 1 yell, scream, bellow, bawl, howl, roar, cry (out), call (out), whoop, Colloq holler: We lined up when the sergeant shouted out our names.

--n. 2 yell, scream, bellow, howl, yelp, roar, cry, call, whoop, Colloq holler: Nobody on shore could hear the boys' shouts when their boat capsized.

show   v. 1 display, present, expose, demonstrate, indicate, exhibit, manifest, (lay) bare, disclose, reveal, betray, make known, divulge, register, express, make clear or plain or manifest, elucidate, clarify, explain: Show your identification as you enter. Your persistent refusal to associate with Dominic shows how you feel very clearly. They showed me how the new machine works. 2 escort, accompany, conduct, usher, lead, guide, direct; steer: Please show Mr Sorenson to his table. 3 prove, demonstrate, confirm, corroborate, verify, substantiate, bear out, certify, authenticate: This signature shows that the will was signed personally by your father. 4 teach, instruct, tell, inform, let (someone) in on, give (someone) an idea of: Would you please show me how to use this washing-machine? 5 appear, become or be visible, peek through, can or may be seen: The floor was showing through a hole in the carpet. 6 exhibit, reveal, indicate, display, register: A thermometer shows the temperature, a barometer the atmospheric pressure. 7 make an appearance, appear, show up, arrive, come: Do you really think that the Jack Nicholson will show at the club tonight? 8 represent, symbolize, depict, portray, picture, illustrate: This drawing shows what happens to children who bite their fingernails. 9 present, play, put on, stage, screen; be (being) presented or played or playing or put on or staged or screened: They are showing The Maltese Falcon at the local cinema. What is showing there tomorrow? 10 grant, accord, bestow: They finally showed mercy and let the hostages go. 11 show off. make an exhibit or a spectacle of, flaunt, advertise, display, parade; pose, swagger, posture, boast, brag, US and Canadian grandstand: They invited us to show off their new house. Quilty shows off too much for my taste. 12 show up. a expose, give away, reveal: His collection of animal trophies shows him up for what he really is. b stand out, be conspicuous, be noticeable, contrast: The white dress shows up nicely against your suntan. c embarrass, (put to) shame, mortify, upstage, overshadow, outshine, eclipse: John only runs in the marathon to show me up.

--n. 13 display, demonstration, exhibition, exposition, fair, presentation, Colloq expo: There will be a computer show at the convention centre next week. 14 production, presentation, drama, musical, entertainment: We flew to New York for a week to see a few Broadway shows. 15 ostentation, display, appearance, pretentiousness, pretension, affectation: Those paintings are there just for show, not because they enjoy art.

showdown n. confrontation, climax, moment of truth, final settlement, moment of decision, US face-off: It's come to the point where we must have a showdown about who's boss.

shower n. 1 sprinkle, sprinkling, drizzle: Scattered showers are predicted for this afternoon. 2 deluge, torrent, flood, stream, barrage, overflow, abundance, profusion: Showers of confetti rained on the parade from the offices.

--v. 3 sprinkle, rain, pour, spray, bombard, fall, descend, drop: Debris and ash from the volcano showered down on the village. 4 lavish, inundate, overwhelm, heap, load (down): On return from her triumphant tour, Sylvia was showered with gifts and praise.

showman n. producer, impresario, director: P. T. Barnum was possibly the greatest showman in modern history.

show-off n. braggart, exhibitionist, swaggerer, egotist, boaster, Colloq blowhard, windbag: Sit down and stop being such a show-off, Tetsworth.

showy adj. flashy, garish, flamboyant, conspicuous, ostentatious, pretentious, bravura, gaudy, US show-off; elaborate, fancy, florid, ornate, fussy, intricate, baroque, rococo, Byzantine, arabesque: Their house is very showy, with gargoyles and lions and unicorns everywhere you look.

shred n. 1 scrap, fragment, bit, tatter, sliver, snippet, rag, remnant, chip, piece; atom, trace, whit, grain, jot or tittle, scintilla, trace, hint, suggestion, iota, speck: We found shreds from his shirt caught on the thorn-bushes. There isn't a shred of evidence to suggest that she killed him.

--v. 2 fragment, tear (up), tatter, rip (up); destroy, demolish; throw away, dispose of, scrap, US trash: At the news of the break-in, he dashed to his office and shredded the incriminating evidence.

shrew n. harridan, virago, termagant, vixen, scold, fishwife, nag, fury, spitfire, maenad, harpy, witch, hag, crone, hell-cat, beldam, bitch, banshee, Xanthippe, Thyiad or Thyad, Colloq battleaxe, dragon: His mother is an old shrew who does nothing but complain all the time.

shrewd adj. clever, smart, astute, cunning, canny, acute, sharp, keen-minded, keen, quick-witted, crafty, artful, manipulative, calculating, calculated, foxy, sly, wily, perceptive, percipient, perspicacious, discerning, wise, sage, sagacious, long-headed, intelligent, ingenious, Daedalian, inventive, resourceful: He is a shrewd politician, very good at knowing exactly what people want to hear him say.

shriek n. 1 scream, cry, screech, squeal, squawk, squall: The girls collapsed in shrieks of laughter.

--v. 2 scream, cry, screech, squeal, squawk, squall: It is very boring to listen to one's neighbours shrieking at each other day and night.

shrill adj. high-pitched, ear-splitting, piercing, ear-piercing, sharp, piping, screeching, screechy, penetrating: She let out a shrill cry when she saw what had happened.

shrink v. 1 wither, shrivel (up), contract: My woollen pullover shrank because you washed it in hot water. 2 Often, shrink from. withdraw (from), draw back, recoil (from), back away (from), retreat (from), cower, cringe, flinch, shy away (from), wince, balk (at): Once committed to a responsibility, nothing could persuade Ella to shrink from it.

shrivel v. Often, shrivel up. shrink, wrinkle, pucker (up), curl (up), wizen, contract; wither, wilt, dry up, desiccate, dehydrate: The soil had dried up and all the plants had shrivelled.

shroud v. 1 screen, veil, mask, disguise, camouflage, cover, shield, blanket, shade, hide, conceal, protect, cloak, swathe, wrap, envelop: The tanks were shrouded from view in the forest. His activities are shrouded in mystery.

--n. 2 winding-sheet, cerement, cerecloth, grave-clothes: They wrapped his body in a shroud and buried him in the churchyard. 3 veil, cover, shield, cloak, blanket, mask, mantle, pall, screen, covering, cloud: A shroud of secrecy descended over the Morocco affair.

shrubbery n. shrubs, planting(s), hedge(s), hedging, hedgerow, thicket, underbrush, brake, bracken, undergrowth, coppice or copse: The fox lay low in the shrubbery till the dogs flushed him out.

shudder v. 1 quiver, shake, tremble, shiver, jerk, convulse, quaver, quake; vibrate, rattle: I shudder to think what he might do next. Olive slammed on the brakes and the ancient car shuddered to a stop.

--n. 2 quiver, shake, tremble, twitch, shiver, convulsion, paroxysm, spasm, quaver, quake; vibration, rattle: He gave a shudder at the prospect of having to clean out the stable.

shuffle v. 1 mix (up), intermix, disarrange, rearrange, interfile, intersperse, jumble, confuse; shift (about), mess up, turn topsy-turvy, scatter, disorganize: I shall cut the cards after you have shuffled them. Osbert shuffled the papers on his desk. 2 scuff or drag (one's feet), scrape along, shamble: The boy shuffled into the headmaster's office, guilt written all over his face. 3 equivocate, hem and haw, bumble, shift, cavil, fence, be evasive or shifty, dodge, niggle, split hairs, quibble, prevaricate, Brit hum and haw, Colloq waffle: The suspect shuffled when asked the names of his accomplices.

--n. 4 shamble, shambling, scuffling, scraping: Whenever he was lying, he did a funny little shuffle with his feet. 5 sidestep, evasion, subterfuge, trick, dodge, shift, prevarication, quibble, shuffling: Tell me what you've done with the money - and no shuffle!

shun v. avoid, keep or shy away from, steer clear of, eschew, shrink from, fight shy of, run or turn (away) from, flee or escape from; forgo, give up; disdain, spurn, rebuff, reject, cold-shoulder, give the cold shoulder to: After her experience, Penelope shunned the company of men for several years.

shut v. 1 close, fasten, secure, shut up; lock, bolt, seal: Come in and shut the door. 2 shut down. close down, discontinue, cease, suspend, halt, leave off, shut up; switch or turn or shut off, stop: We shut down operations at the Enfield factory last week. Make sure you shut down the machinery before leaving. 3 shut in. a confine, seclude, keep in, pen, fence in, secure: We shut the dog in before we went out. b See 6, (a), below. 4 shut off. a switch or turn off, shut down, Colloq kill, douse, cut (off): They shut off the lights while I was shaving. b separate, isolate, seclude, segregate, sequester, bar, shut out, cut off, send to Coventry: The more violent cases are shut off in another wing. c close (off), shut (down): To save on heating, we shut off part of the house in the winter. 5 shut out. a exclude, eliminate, bar, debar, lock out, ban, keep out or away, disallow, prohibit: Aliens without work permits are shut out from employment. We shut out all hooligans and rowdies. b keep out, screen, exclude, block out, cut out: This window shade shuts out the direct sunlight. c screen, mask, hide, conceal, veil, cover: The house is shut out from view by the hedge. 6 shut up. a confine, shut in, coop (up), cage (in), bottle up, box in; imprison, jail, incarcerate, intern, immure: People suspected of being subversives were shut up during the war. b silence, keep quiet, stifle, mute, gag, shush, Chiefly Brit quieten: As soon as Colin wants to say something, Sidonie shuts him up. c See 1, above. d See 2, above.

--adj. 7 closed (up), sealed (up), locked (up), bolted, fastened: There is not much hope of penetrating their shut minds on this issue.

shuttle v. commute, alternate: He shuttles daily between London and Paris.

shy adj. 1 diffident, coy, bashful, retiring, withdrawn, withdrawing, reserved, timid, meek, modest, sheepish, unconfident, self-conscious, introverted, nervous, apprehensive, timorous, Rare verecund: Casey is quite shy and you have to draw him out gently. 2 timorous, cautious, wary, chary, leery, guarded, afraid, fearful, frightened, anxious, worried, suspicious, distrustful, cowardly, craven, uncourageous: The local people are shy of anyone or anything unfamiliar. 3 missing, lacking, deficient in, short of: The shipment is shy a few dozen shoelaces we ordered.

--adv. 4 fight shy of. avoid, be unwilling or reluctant or averse or loath or loth or disinclined or not disposed; be wary or cautious or watchful: The children fight shy of talking to strangers.

19.5 sick...
=-

sick adj. 1 Chiefly Brit nauseated, queasy, sick to one's stomach, squeamish, qualmish; seasick, carsick, airsick, Colloq green around the gills: Patrick felt a bit sick after the rough ferry crossing. 2 ill, unwell, unhealthy, sickly, indisposed, infirm, ailing, diseased, afflicted, Colloq under the weather, on the sick-list, poorly, laid up, not (feeling) up to snuff: If you feel sick, you'd best see a doctor. I've been sick for a week. 3 affected, troubled, stricken, heartsick, wretched, miserable, burdened, weighed down: I was sick with worry to learn of the problems you have been having with your business. 4 mad, crazy, insane, deranged, disturbed, neurotic, unbalanced, psychoneurotic, psychotic, Colloq mental, US off ((one's) rocker or trolley): Anyone who could have committed such a crime must be sick. 5 peculiar, unconventional, strange, weird, odd, bizarre, grotesque, macabre, shocking, ghoulish, morbid, gruesome, stomach-turning, sadistic, masochistic, sado-masochistic, Colloq kinky, bent, far-out, US off: In 30 years as a policeman, I've seen some sick things, but this is the end. 6 sickened, shocked, put out, upset, appalled, disgusted, revolted, repulsed, offended, repelled, nauseated; annoyed, chagrined, irritated: She was sick at what she saw in the army field hospital. The way you do things sometimes makes me sick. 7 Sometimes, sick of. (sick and) tired, bored, weary, Colloq fed up with: Don't you get sick of telling them the same thing so many times?

sicken v. 1 fall ill, take sick, contract, be stricken by, come down with or catch something or a bug, fail, weaken: After he seemed to be recovering so well, he suddenly sickened and died. 2 make ill or sick, afflict, affect, disgust, nauseate, turn one's stomach, upset, appal, shock, repel, revolt, repulse, offend, make one's gorge rise; put out: The scene in the abattoir sickened me.

sickly adj. 1 See sick, 2, above. 2 ailing, feeble, delicate, wan, weak, pallid, pale, drawn, peaked, peaky, peakish: Jennie looks sickly and must build up her resistance. 3 mushy, mawkish, maudlin, cloying, insipid, weak, watery: The sickly sentimentality of the episode about the boy and his lost puppy was unbearable.

side n. 1 Sometimes, sides. flank(s), edge(s), verge, margin(s), rim, brim, brink, border(s); bank; boundary or boundaries, perimeter, periphery, limit(s): This side of the road is in West Sussex, the other in East Sussex. The sides of the swimming-pool are tiled. 2 surface, face, plane; facet: The smallest possible number of sides of a pyramid is four. 3 faction, interest, party, part, sect, camp, (point of) view, viewpoint, aspect, opinion, standpoint, stand, cause, angle, position, attitude, school, philosophy: Which side do you support in the controversy? 4 team; string, squad; American football and Association Football or Soccer and Cricket eleven, Australian Rules football eighteen, Baseball nine, Basketball five, Gaelic football and Rugby Union fifteen, Rugby League thirteen: Whichever side Craig is on seems likely to win. The local side is now coming out onto the field. 5 affectation, pretension, haughtiness, arrogance, insolence, pretentiousness, airs: Chauncy puts on a bit too much side for my taste. 6 side by side. together, jointly, cheek by jowl: These paintings should not have been hung side by side. 7 take sides. show preference, be partial, show favouritism: A judge must avoid taking sides.

--adj. 8 secondary, incidental, subordinate, tangential, subsidiary, indirect, ancillary, marginal, lesser, minor, unimportant, inconsequential, inconsiderable, insignificant: The main point is that he refuses to cooperate, and his reasons are entirely a side issue. 9 auxiliary, secondary: We live in a quiet side-road just off the High Street.

--v. 10 side with. take sides with, show preference for, be partial to, show favouritism to or for, support, favour, prefer, go in or along with, join ((up) with), ally with, be or become allied with, Colloq US throw in with, team up with: You can be sure that Kenneth will always side with the favourite candidate.

sidelong adj. oblique, indirect, sideways, covert, surreptitious: He marched straight ahead, without so much as a sidelong glance in her direction.

sidestep v. avoid, dodge, circumvent, skirt, evade, shun, steer clear of, Colloq duck: The minister neatly sidestepped all questions about her retirement.

sidetrack v. divert, deflect, draw off or away, distract, turn aside; shunt: Where was I? I got sidetracked by your comment about being overweight.

sidewalk n. walk, Chiefly Brit pavement, footpath, footway: You may play on the sidewalk, but don't you dare step into the street.

sideways adv. obliquely, laterally, edgeways, edge on, sidelong, crabwise, indirectly, US and Canadian edgewise: The dresser will go through the door if you turn it sideways.

sidle v. edge: She sidled towards the door, opened it, and was gone.

siege n. 1 blockade, encirclement, beleaguerment, besiegement: The siege of Troy lasted ten years.

--v. 2 lay siege to, besiege, blockade, beleaguer, cordon off, encircle, box or pen or shut in, bottle up: They sieged the city and the inhabitants surrendered when they ran out of food and water.

sift v. 1 strain, sieve, riddle, filter, screen, bolt; winnow, separate, weed out, sort out, select, choose, pick: It is not easy to sift out the promising manuscripts. 2 examine, analyse, study, probe, screen, scrutinize, investigate: The police are sifting the evidence of the witnesses.

sigh v. 1 breathe, sough; suspire: Troilus sighed forth his soul to the tent where sleeping Cressid lay. 2 sigh for. bemoan, lament or mourn or grieve or weep for, bewail; yearn or pine for: Now and then, all of us sigh for the good old days.

--n. 3 murmur, exhalation, sound; suspiration: I gave a sigh of relief as the train left the station.

sight n. 1 eyesight, vision, eyes: His sight was completely restored by the operation. 2 field of view or of vision, range of vision, ken, perception, view, eyeshot, gaze: We turned a corner, and at last the welcoming lights of the pub came into sight. 3 spectacle, scene, show; rarity, marvel, wonder, phenomenon; pageant: I shall never forget the sight of Biffy Harbottle, stark naked, standing on that table in the officers' club. We went to Rome to see the sights. 4 mess, disaster, eyesore, monstrosity, Colloq fright, atrocity: The flat looked a sight after the boys finally moved out. 5 catch sight of. spot, notice, descry, spy, espy, glance at, (catch a) glimpse (of), (get a) look or peep or peek at, Colloq take a gander at, get a look-see at, Slang get a load of, US glom, pipe: We caught sight of a sinister-looking person slipping behind a pillar. 6 out of sight. a remote, distant, far-away, unseeable, imperceptible, invisible: She soon walked out of sight down the road. The mortar emplacement is out of sight, over the hill. b unusual, rare, extraordinary, outrageous, imaginative, awe-inspiring, incredible, shocking, unreal, moving, jolting, Colloq neat, cool, Brit brilliant, brill: The gig last night was out of sight, man.

--v. 7 look, view, (take) aim, peer, peek, peep, draw a bead: Sight along this stick and you'll see a cluster of stars called the Pleiades. 8 spot, see, catch sight of, mark, observe, behold, view, distinguish, discern, identify, note, notice, remark, glimpse, descry, espy, spy: A group of bird-watchers have sighted a golden eagle recently in the Grampians.

sightseer n. tourist, traveller, globe-trotter, Colloq rubberneck(er), Brit tripper, day-tripper: As usual, the streets of Oxford were crowded with sightseers and tourists.

sign n. 1 token, symbol, indication, mark, signal, indicator; notice: I interpreted the shouts of the crowd as a sign that I had won the race. 2 movement, gesture, motion, signal, cue, gesticulation: She made a sign motioning me to come over. 3 trace, indication, evidence, mark, clue, hint, suggestion, vestige: She waited for an hour but there was no sign of him. 4 device, mark, symbol, representation, emblem, trade mark, badge, brand, stamp, seal, ideogram, ideograph, lexigram, phonogram, grapheme, hieroglyph, cartouche, rebus, logo(type), colophon, ensign, standard, banner, flag; monogram, initials, cipher or cypher: Sir Roger fought under the sign of a rampant lion. 5 signboard, advertisement, placard, poster, US broadside; shingle, notice, announcement: You can't miss the huge supermarket sign at the corner. 6 omen, augury, warning, forewarning, foreboding, portent, indication, writing on the wall, prophecy, prognostication, foreshadowing: We took the rumbling as a sign of an imminent earthquake.

--v. 7 autograph, put one's signature on or to, inscribe, countersign, endorse, witness, put or set one's hand to, mark; sign on the dotted line; Colloq US put one's John Hancock on or to: I have already signed the petition, have you? The painting is valueless unless signed by the artist. 8 sign away. forgo, relinquish, give up, abandon, abandon or quit claim to, waive, release, surrender, dispose of, sacrifice, get rid of: With one stroke of the pen, he signed away most of his fortune. 9 sign off. close down, discontinue (broadcasting, writing a letter, etc.): It is midnight, time for us to sign off till tomorrow. 10 sign on or up. a enrol, enlist, sign up (for), register, volunteer, join (up), contract: I signed on to be a bodyguard, not a nursemaid. b enrol, enlist, hire, employ, put under contract, retain, engage, take on, Colloq take on board, bring aboard: We signed up three new engineers this week. 11 sign over. assign, consign, transfer, make over, deliver, give, donate, present, dispose of, turn over: Aunt June was persuaded to sign over the ownership of the business to her nephews.

signal n. 1 See sign, 1, above. 2 incitement, stimulus, spur, impetus, goad, prick: The waving of the flag will be the signal to advance.

--adj. 3 remarkable, conspicuous, striking, extraordinary, unusual, unique, singular, special, noteworthy, notable, exceptional, significant, important, outstanding, momentous, consequential, weighty: The British forces won a signal victory at Khartoum that day. Winning the competition is a signal accomplishment.

--v. 4 motion, indicate, gesture, gesticulate, communicate, announce, notify; whistle, wink, blink, nod, beckon, wave, sign: When your turn comes, a clerk will signal you to approach the counter. Peter raised his hand as a request to leave the room and the teacher signalled his assent.

significance

n. 1 meaning, sense, signification, denotation, message, idea, point, import, purport, implication, portent, content, pith, essence; gist, drift, vein, impression, connotation: The significance of words like God and love is different for almost everyone who uses them. 2 importance, weight, weightiness, consequence, moment, relevance, value: The significance of the agreement lay not in its wording but in the fact that it was drawn up at all.

significant

adj. 1 important, weighty, momentous, consequential, critical, substantial, substantive, noteworthy, notable, valuable, valued, meritorious, outstanding, impressive, historic, relevant, signal: Appleton made significant contributions to knowledge about the ionosphere. 2 meaningful, eloquent, pithy, expressive, pregnant, suggestive, informative: It is significant that they prefer the term Britain to England, Scotland, and Wales .

signify v. 1 sign, signal, indicate, communicate, make known, convey, symbolize, betoken, represent, express, announce, declare, denote, say, mean, specify; connote, intimate, suggest, reveal, disclose, impart: She signified her agreement by a nod. What does the phrase 'pursuit of happiness' signify to you? 2 matter, count, be significant or important or consequential, be of significance or of importance or of consequence, carry weight, impress, stand out, deserve or merit consideration: It signifies little that they were found innocent of a crime we all believe they committed.

silence n. 1 quiet, quietness, stillness, soundlessness, noiselessness, calm, calmness, hush, quietude, tranquillity, peace, peacefulness, serenity: The silence was so complete that I could hear my heart beating. 2 speechlessness, muteness, dumbness, reticence, taciturnity, uncommunicativeness: Do not construe his silence as agreement.

--v. 3 quiet, mute, hush, still, shush, calm, tranquillize, soothe, Chiefly Brit quieten: The audience was silenced by the start of the overture. 4 mitigate, temper, mollify, take the sting out of, propitiate, pacify, blunt, suppress, repress, restrain, subdue, draw the fangs or teeth of, inhibit, put down, damp, mute, squelch, quash, emasculate, muzzle, muffle, shut off, gag, stifle, smother, deaden (the effect of): Only a full account of what lay behind these events will silence criticism in the media.

silent adj. 1 quiet, still, soundless, noiseless, tranquil, hushed, shushed, mute; calm, serene, placid, peaceful, pacific, unagitated, unruffled, untroubled, undisturbed, Literary stilly: After the children left the house fell silent. Not a mouse stirred in the silent city. 2 uncommunicative, mute, close-mouthed, taciturn, reticent, reserved, mum, tight-lipped, secretive: Millie told me a great deal about her children but was silent on the subject of her own activities. 3 unspeaking, unspoken, mute, unexpressed, tacit, understood, implicit, implied, unstated, unsaid: There is a silent agreement among the islanders not to reveal where the whisky is hidden. 4 inactive, non-participating, passive, quiescent, Brit sleeping: Although John runs the company, he has several silent partners. 5 unpronounced, unuttered, not sounded, Technical aphonic: The g in sign is silent, like the k in know and the l in could .

silently adv. quietly, soundlessly, noiselessly, with catlike tread, as quietly as a mouse, stealthily; wordlessly, speechlessly, mutely: They fold their tents like the Arabs, And silently steal away. He stood by silently, allowing his brother to do all the talking.

silhouette

n. outline, profile, contour, form, figure, shape, shadow, configuration, periphery, perimeter: I could see the silhouette of a person on the window-blind.

silky adj. silken, silklike, delicate, sleek, soft, smooth, satiny, shiny, glossy, lustrous, Technical sericeous: Her long, silky black hair hung below her shoulders.

silly adj. 1 senseless, nonsensical, absurd, ridiculous, ludicrous, laughable, risible, asinine, inane, preposterous, idiotic, childish, puerile, foolish, foolhardy, irresponsible, unreasonable, illogical, irrational, pointless, fatuous, stupid, unwise, imbecilic, crazy, mad, insane: It would be silly to pay for it if you can get it for nothing. 2 stunned, stupefied, daze, giddy, dizzy, muzzy, benumbed: Culley said something rude and the girl knocked him silly with a karate chop.

--n. 3 fool, nincompoop, idiot, dunce, ninny, halfwit, simpleton, numskull or numbskull, dim-wit, booby, dolt, jackass, twit, dolt, blockhead, bonehead, nitwit, ignoramus, clod, US thimble-wit, Colloq dope, dummy, knuckle-head, goose, drip, silly billy, Brit clot, Slang US and Canadian jerk, nerd: Warren is such a silly to spend so much money on a girl who cares nothing for him.

silt n. 1 deposit, sediment, alluvium, ooze, sludge: The irrigation pumps get clogged up with silt.

--v. 2 Usually, silt up or over. become clogged or choked or obstructed or dammed or congested: The channel silts up and has to be dredged yearly so that the boats can pass through.

silver n. 1 silverware, sterling, (silver) plate; cutlery, US flatware; hollowware: Guests are coming so I'll have to polish the silver. 2 white, greyish, whitish-grey, greyish-white, grey: When your hair has turned to silver, I will love you just the same.

--adj. 3 silvery, shiny, shining, polished, burnished, lustrous, pearly, nacreous, bright, gleaming, Literary or heraldry argent; white: The moon's silver crescent hung low in the sky. Her hair is more silver than grey. 4 silvery, silver-toned, silver-tongued, sweet, pretty, euphonious, melodious, mellifluous, mellifluent, dulcet, musical: The silver tones of the muezzin echoed in the streets, calling the faithful to prayer.

similar adj. 1 like, almost identical, comparable, equivalent, nearly the same; alike: That brooch is similar to the one I bought for my mother. The two may be similar, but they are not the same. 2 be similar to. resemble, be like, correspond to, compare favourably with: This letter is very similar to the one I received yesterday.

simmer v. 1 seethe, stew, cook, boil, bubble: A huge cauldron of soup simmered on the fire. 2 chafe, seethe, stew, steam, smoulder, fume, rage, burn, Colloq US do a slow burn: Father is still simmering because you scratched his car. 3 simmer down. calm or cool down, cool off, calm oneself, become quiet, control oneself, get control of or over oneself, Chiefly Brit quieten down, Slang cool it: Yesterday he was in a towering rage, but he has simmered down a bit today.

simple adj. 1 uncomplicated, plain, uninvolved, unsophisticated, understandable, intelligible, (easily) understood, comprehensible, clear, lucid, straightforward, easy, elementary, basic: At the age of four, Jan was able to do simple mathematical calculations. 2 plain, unadorned, undecorated, unembellished, basic, fundamental, elementary, elemental, mere, unostentatious, unassuming, unpretentious, modest, classic, uncluttered, stark, clean, severe, austere, Spartan, homely; unvarnished, naked, honest: Thea was stunning in a simple black dress with a colourful scarf and gold jewellery. The simple truth is that he came home from work to find the house broken into and his wife gone. 3 sincere, frank, candid, open, unaffected, uncomplicated, unpretentious, straightforward, above-board, simple-hearted, uncontrived, direct, upright, square, forthright, four-square, righteous, honest, na‹ve, guileless, artless, undesigning, childlike, ingenuous, unsophisticated, innocent, green: The colonel was a simple man who was respected because he always said just what he meant. A simple heart may be its own best guide. 4 unsophisticated, na‹ve, slow, slow-witted, stupid, thick, thickheaded, simple-minded, feeble-minded, oafish, bovine, dense, obtuse, dull, dull-witted, witless, halfwitted, brainless, backward, imbecilic or chiefly Brit imbecile, cretinous, Colloq dumb, moronic: That chap Dawson is far too simple to understand what you are asking him. 5 lowly, humble, inferior, mean, base, subservient, common, subordinate: The lord of the manor regarded his tenants as simple folk, a breed apart from himself and his family.

simplicity

n. 1 uncomplicatedness; understandability, comprehensibility, lucidity, straightforwardness, clarity, intelligibility, decipherability: Consider the simplicity of some life forms in contrast to the complexity of others. The simplicity of the Bible can be deceptive. 2 plainness, cleanness, clarity, severity, starkness, austereness, asceticism, restraint, bareness, purity: She prefers the simplicity of classical or very modern design to baroque and rococo clutter. 3 sincerity, openness, artlessness, candour, guilelessness, frankness, unsophisticatedness, ingenuousness, straightforwardness, forthrightness, unaffectedness, unpretentiousness, modesty, na‹vety; plainness, directness, inelegance, rusticity, pastoralism: Many have been charmed by the simplicity of the local folk art. 4 stupidity, slow-wittedness, thickheadedness, simple-mindedness, feeble-mindedness, oafishness, cloddishness, obtuseness, dullness, dull-wittedness, witlessness, halfwittedness, imbecility, brainlessness: The simplicity of some of those yokels is incredible.

simplify v. clarify, clear up, make easy, paraphrase, explain, explicate, disentangle, untangle, unravel, streamline: Simplify your request and we shall be able to do what you ask.

simply   adv. 1 merely, barely, purely, only, solely, just, entirely, fully, totally, wholly, altogether, absolutely, really: Is it true that they met regularly simply to discuss politics? 2 totally, completely, altogether, entirely, just, plainly, obviously, really, unreservedly, unqualifiedly: If you believe that, you're simply too stupid for words! 3 na‹vely, artlessly, guilelessly, openly, innocently, ingenuously, unaffectedly, unpretentiously, plainly, naturally: He asked her very simply what she did as a 'working girl'. 4 plainly, modestly, starkly, severely, sparely, sparsely, austerely, ascetically: His home is simply furnished, without paintings or any other decoration. 5 distinctly, unambiguously, plainly, obviously, unmistakably or unmistakeably: The instructions must be written simply so that they are understandable to anyone.

simultaneous
adj. coincident, coinciding, concurrent, contemporaneous, synchronous; contemporary: The simultaneous appearance of two books on such an obscure subject was very unusual.

sin n. 1 trespass, transgression, offence, wrong, impiety, misdeed, profanation, desecration, iniquity, evil, devilry, sacrilege, crime, infraction, misdeed, dereliction, infringement, violation, misdemeanour, fault, foible, peccadillo: How many sins have been committed in the name of righteousness! It's a sin to tell a lie. The seven deadly sins are anger, covetousness, envy, gluttony, lust, pride, and sloth. 2 wickedness, sinfulness, vice, corruption, ungodliness, badness, evil, wrongfulness, iniquity, iniquitousness, immorality, depravity, impiety, irreverence, impiousness, sacrilege: His brother Edmund was conceived in sin, and sin ruled his entire life.

--v. 3 transgress, offend, fall (from grace), lapse, go wrong, stray, go astray, err, Biblical or archaic trespass: Strictly speaking, we can sin only against God.

sincere adj. honest, truthful, true, veracious, genuine, heartfelt, true-hearted, undissembling, unfeigned, open, (open and) above-board, straightforward, direct, frank, candid, guileless, artless, Colloq upfront, on the level, on the up and up: I took her criticism as a sincere desire to see improvement in my work. You have always been sincere in your emotional involvements.

sincerely adv. truly, honestly, really, wholeheartedly, candidly, frankly, unequivocally, seriously, earnestly, genuinely, deeply, fervently: When they say they love each other, they mean it sincerely.

sincerity n. honesty, truthfulness, straightforwardness, openness, forthrightness, frankness, candour, candidness, seriousness, genuineness, uprightness: Everyone appreciates sincerity in dealings with others.

sinew n. 1 ligament, tendon; muscle, thew: After the climb, I ached in every sinew. 2 Usually, sinews. strength, force, power, energy, brawn, vigour, might, stamina, vitality: The sinews of his argument were considerably weakened by her disarming candour.

sinewy adj. strong, powerful, muscular, mighty, stout, wiry, robust, tough; strapping, brawny, burly: She looked so tiny and fragile cradled in his huge sinewy arms.

sinful adj. corrupt, evil, wicked, bad, wrong, wrongful, iniquitous, vile, base, profane, immoral, profligate, depraved, criminal, sacrilegious, ungodly, unholy, demonic, irreligious, impious, irreverent: Anything that you like as much as you like chocolate must be sinful. They would never condone such sinful behaviour in our church.

sing v. 1 chant, intone, carol, vocalize, trill, croon, pipe, chirp, warble; chorus; yodel: It was a wonderful spring day and Barbara felt like singing. Can you sing On the Road to Mandalay ? 2 whistle, pipe, peep: I have just bought a singing kettle. 3 tell, tattle, name names, Slang rat, snitch, squeal, blow the whistle, peach, spill the beans: They found out that Johnny had been singing to the cops about the bank job.

singe v. char, blacken, sear, scorch, burn: Unfortunately, I singed the tail of my shirt while ironing it.

singer n. vocalist, soloist, songster, crooner, chanteuse, nightingale, minstrel, troubadour, balladeer, caroller, chorister, choirboy, choir girl, choir member, chorus-boy, chorus girl, chorus-member, Colloq songbird, canary, thrush: She used to be a professional singer.

single adj. 1 unmarried, unwed, unattached, free; celibate: She remained single till she was twenty-two. 2 singular, individual, distinct, solitary; one, only, sole, lone, unique, isolated: There wasn't a single person there who could think for himself. A single shot rang out. 3 separate, distinct, individual, solitary: Every single hair is rooted in its follicle.

--v. 4 single out. select, choose, pick, separate, take or put or set aside or apart, distinguish, cull, segregate, fix or fasten on: Why was she singled out for special treatment?

single-handed

adj. 1 solo, lone, solitary, independent, unaided, unassisted: Chichester was the first winner of the single-handed transatlantic sailing race.

--adv. 2 single-handedly, by oneself, alone, solo, on one's own, independently: He sailed round the world single-handed.

single-minded

adj. dedicated, devoted, resolute, steadfast, persevering, firm, determined, dogged, unswerving, unwavering, tireless, purposeful: Single-minded perseverance saw him through the completion of the work in eight years.

singly adv. one at a time, separately, individually, one by one, successively, one after the other, seriatim: Taken singly, the facts are not hard to assimilate.

singular adj. 1 unusual, different, atypical, eccentric, extraordinary, remarkable, special, uncommon, strange, odd, peculiar, bizarre, outlandish, curious, queer, outr,, offbeat, Slang far-out: Ideas that yesterday were considered singular have today become quite commonplace. 2 outstanding, prominent, eminent, pre-eminent, noteworthy, significant, important, conspicuous, particular, notable, signal, exceptional, superior: Stempel made a singular contribution to the development of microscopy. 3 lone, isolated, single, separate, uncommon, rare, unique, distinct, one of a kind: Some medieval philosophers denied the existence of general realities, and claimed that all things that exist were particular and singular.

singularity

n. 1 individuality, distinctiveness, uniqueness, idiosyncrasy: Personality demonstrates its singularity even in handwriting. 2 eccentricity, peculiarity, strangeness, oddness, queerness, outlandishness, uncommonness: The singularity of the marriage ceremony among these tribes was often remarked on by anthropologists. 3 Technical black hole: The ultimate collapse of the star results, theoretically, in a singularity.

sinister adj. 1 fateful, inauspicious, unfavourable, foreboding, threatening, menacing, minacious, minatory or minatorial, portentous, ominous, unpropitious, disastrous, dark, gloomy:

There was a sinister meaning in the look he gave her. 2 evil, bad, corrupt, base, malevolent, malignant, malign, harmful, pernicious, treacherous, nefarious, wicked, diabolic(al), baleful, villainous, insidious, sneaky, furtive, underhand(ed): The poor girl fell under the sinister influence of a real-life Svengali.

sink v. 1 founder, submerge, go down, go under, plunge, descend, be engulfed: The ship was struck below the water-line and sank in minutes. 2 subside, cave in, collapse, subside, settle, drop, fall in, go down, slip away: The earth suddenly sank beneath our feet. 3 descend, go down, drop, fall, move down or downward(s), go down to or on: The parachute slowly sank to the ground. When he saw the statue move, he sank to his knees, terrified. 4 decline, weaken, worsen, degenerate, subside, deteriorate, flag, fail, diminish, die, expire; languish; Colloq go downhill: Grandfather, sinking fast, summoned the family to his bedside. 5 disappear, vanish, fade away, evaporate; set, go down, descend, drop: After a meteoric rise, many rock stars sink into oblivion. As the sun sank slowly in the west, we returned to our hotel to reminisce about our day at the pyramids. 6 settle, precipitate, descend, drop: After a few minutes, the sand sinks to the bottom. 7 bore, put down, drill, dig, excavate, drive: A special shaft will be sunk just for ventilating the mine. 8 submerge, immerse, plunge: He sank his hand deep into the mud and came up with a small box. 9 stoop, bend, get, go, lower or humble oneself: I never dreamt that he would sink so low as to beg in the streets. 10 invest, venture, risk, put: He sank his life's savings into his son's business, only to see it go bankrupt. 11 sink in. be understood, penetrate, register, make an impression on, get through to: How many times do I have to tell you in order for it to sink in?

--n. 12 basin, wash-basin, wash-bowl, lavabo; Church font, stoup, piscina: The kitchen has a large double sink. 13 cesspool, cesspit, pit, hell-hole, den of iniquity, sink-hole, Colloq dive: We found him playing piano in some sink frequented by the worst element of society.

sinking adj. 1 queasy, nervous, uneasy, tense, apprehensive, unquiet, fretful, shaky, jittery, jumpy, anxious: Just thinking about the way they treat hostages gave me a sinking feeling in the pit of my stomach. 2 depressed, dejected, miserable, dolorous, doleful, mournful, forlorn, woeful, desolate, despairing, stricken, heavy-laden: I had a sudden sinking feeling when she announced that she had something important to tell me.

sinner n. transgressor, wrongdoer, miscreant, offender, evil-doer, malefactor, reprobate, Biblical or archaic trespasser: Few people nowadays believe that sinners are punished in hell for all eternity.

sip v. 1 taste, sample, sup: She was sitting on a bar stool, sipping a cocktail.

--n. 2 taste, sample, soup‡on, drop, bit, swallow, mouthful, spoonful, thimbleful, nip, dram, Colloq swig: She took a sip, savoured it, then turned to me with a smile.

siren n. 1 whistle, warble, wailer, horn, foghorn; signal, alarm, warning, alert, tocsin: The air raid siren sounded and everyone ran for shelter. 2 temptress, seductress, enchantress, charmer, sorceress, femme fatale, Circe, Lorelei, Colloq vamp, US mantrap: Have you seen the latest siren to whom John has fallen prey?

sissy n. milksop, mama's boy, mummy's boy, namby-pamby, weakling, baby, cry-baby, mollycoddle, US milquetoast, Colloq softie or softy, Brit wet: The boy you remember from school as a sissy is now a football star.

sit v. 1 be seated, settle, sit down, take a seat, rest, Colloq take the weight or a load off one's feet: Come in and sit with me for a while. If you sit on that chair it will break. 2 hold a session, be in session, assemble, meet, convene; gather, get together: The Supreme Court of the United States will be sitting next week. 3 Often, sit on. have or hold or occupy a seat (on), participate (in), be a member (of): Kathy sits on the board of directors. 4 remain, stay, lie, rest; relax, mark time, abide, dwell: Let the dough sit a while to rise. Anita sat in Vienna awaiting her instructions. 5 seat, contain, hold, accommodate, have seats or seating for, have room or space or capacity for seating: The auditorium sits only 600. 6 sit in. a Often, sit in on. play, join (in), participate (in), take part (in); observe, watch: Mind if I sit in on your poker game? We invited Mary Lou to sit in during our discussion. b substitute, fill in, stand in, double, Colloq cover, sub, US pinch-hit: Mary Lou often sat in for our pianist if he had another gig. 7 sit out. wait out, outwait, outstay, outlast, outlive, last through, live through: Will sat out endless dances. He sat out the whole evening merely waiting to walk home with Lily. 8 sit tight. wait, hang back, hold back, be patient, bide (one's) time, play a waiting game, take no action, delay, temporize, Colloq hold (one's) horses: Just sit tight till you hear from them - don't jump the gun. 9 sit up. awaken, pay attention, notice, become alert or interested or concerned: Jennie's performance in the hurdles made many track coaches sit up. 10 sit (with). Often, sit well or right (with). agree with, be agreeable to; seem, appear, look: The way Ashton handled the matter did not sit well with the directors.

site n. 1 location, place, plot, plat, spot, locale, area, milieu, neighbourhood, locality, purlieus, placement, position; situation, orientation: A site near that of ancient Pergamum has been acquired for the building. The site alongside the river has much to recommend it.

--v. 2 locate, position, place, put, situate, install or instal: The building has been sited to take maximum advantage of the sun.

situate v. place in a position or situation or location, place, position, locate, set, spot, put, install or instal: Harwood is very well situated to learn what the high command is planning. The greenhouse should be situated on the south side of the house.

situation n. 1 place, position, location, spot, site, locale, setting: The situation of the monastery, high on the mountain, makes it almost inaccessible. 2 state (of affairs), condition, circumstances, case, status (quo), lay of the land, picture; plight, predicament; Colloq ball game; kettle of fish: The present situation calls for careful planning. The chancellor's policies have done little to improve the economic situation. 3 position, place, job, employment, post, Colloq berth: Jenkins likes his new situation as Lord Fortescue's valet.

size n. 1 magnitude, largeness, bigness, bulk, extent, scope, range, dimensions, proportions, measurement(s), expanse, area, square footage, volume, mass, weight; hugeness, immensity, greatness, vastness, enormousness: How do astronomers determine the distance and size of stellar objects? A shape of extraordinary size suddenly loomed up in the darkness.

--v. 2 dimension, measure: The furnishings are sized in proportion to these miniature room displays. 3 size up. assess, judge, evaluate, measure, take the measure of, appraise, assay, make an estimate of, estimate, value, gauge, rate: She looked him up and down, sizing him up as a prospective husband.

19.6 sketchily...
=-

sketchily adv. cursorily, superficially, incompletely, patchily, roughly, perfunctorily, skimpily, vaguely, imperfectly, crudely, hastily, hurriedly: His account of the event was sketchily written.

sketchy adj. cursory, superficial, incomplete, patchy, rough, perfunctory, skimpy, imperfect, crude, hasty, hurried, vague, ill-defined, fuzzy, indistinct, inexact, imprecise, unrefined, unpolished, rough-hewn, unfinished: We received only sketchy reports of what was going on in the capital. This will do as a sketchy outline, but eventually the details will need to be filled in.

skilful adj. skilled, accomplished, adept, adroit, dexterous, expert, proficient, masterly, masterful, gifted, apt, able, clever, talented, capable, professional, trained, qualified, experienced, practised: Julio is a skilful enough driver to race tomorrow. I have to admire the skilful way he handles people.

skill n. 1 talent, ability, aptitude, expertness, expertise, facility, skilfulness, art, artistry, cleverness, adeptness, adroitness, mastery, dexterity, handiness, ingenuity, experience, proficiency, finesse, knack, quickness, deftness, technique: It requires great skill to operate this machine. 2 accomplishment, forte, strength, gift, capability, know-how, faculty: Her skill is in teaching others how to be skilful sales people.

skim v. 1 Often, skim off. separate, cream, scoop or ladle off, take off, remove: After the water has come to a boil, skim off the scum that has collected on top. 2 Often, skim through or over. scan, flip or thumb or leaf through, skip through, glance at or through, dip into: I only had time to skim through your report, but at a glance it looks good. 3 soar, glide, skate, slide, sail, fly: Along came Calabro on his sailboard, skimming along the tops of the waves.

skin n. 1 epidermis, derma, integument, hide, pelt, fleece, fell: Her skin reddens in the sun. How many skins are needed to make a coat? 2 coat, film, coating, crust, incrustation, husk, peel, rind, outside, shell, pellicle, veneer, outer layer, lamina, overlay: The frame is first covered with a tough plastic skin to make it waterproof.

--v. 3 flay, strip, decorticate, excoriate: I shall skin that boy alive if I catch him! 4 peel, hull, husk, shell: This machine skins the fruit automatically. 5 abrade, scrape, graze, bark: She skinned her knee on the edge of the coffee table.

skin-deep adj. superficial, shallow, surface, slight, external, unimportant, trivial, unprofound, insubstantial: The impression he makes on people is only skin-deep.

skinny adj. thin, underweight, gaunt, bony, scraggy, lank, lanky, gangly, gangling, raw-boned, meagre, spare, emaciated, half-starved, undernourished, spare, pinched, hollow-cheeked, wasted, shrunken: Two skinny children were clinging to their mother's skirts.

skip v. 1 leap, cavort, caper, gambol, frisk, prance, jump, hop, romp, bound, dance: Eleanor came skipping down the walk to the house. 2 omit, leave out, pass by, overlook, pass over, avoid, ignore, disregard, steer clear of, cut: In my haste, I skipped over your name. Please skip the reading of the roll today.

--n. 3 leap, cavort, caper, gambol, frisk, prance, jump, bound, dance, hop, romp: He had a curious way of walking, giving a little skip before each step. 4 lacuna, gap, omission, avoidance, disregard; miss, Colloq go-by: There was a skip of 32 pages after page 64. If you take my advice, you will give that restaurant a skip.

skipper n. captain, master, commander; boss, leader, chief: The skipper gave orders to put him in irons.

skirmish n. 1 fight, encounter, fray, brush, clash, engagement, confrontation, showdown, combat, battle, conflict, struggle, set-to, contest, scrimmage, fracas, tussle, mˆl,e or melee, Law affray, Colloq scrap, dust-up, Brit scrum: There was a brief skirmish when the troops met a band of partisans.

--v. 2 fight, clash, struggle, battle, tussle, clash: At the edge of the convoy a destroyer skirmished with a submarine.

sky n. 1 heaven(s), skies, arch or vault of heaven, firmament, (wild) blue (yonder), ether, Archaic or literary welkin, empyrean, azure: The dour, overcast sky gave the bleak moor a chilling sense of foreboding. 2 to the skies. overly, excessively, extravagantly, fulsomely, profusely, inordinately, highly: If I praise him to the skies people will get the idea that I benefit from his success.

19.7 slab...

=-

slab n. slice, wedge, piece, hunk, chunk, tranche, Colloq Brit wodge: The keeper threw a large slab of meat into the lion's cage.

slack adj. 1 remiss, careless, indolent, negligent, lax, lazy, idle, neglectful, delinquent, inattentive, otiose, dilatory, cunctatory, laggard, easygoing, slothful, sluggish, lethargic, shiftless, do-nothing, fain,ant, Colloq asleep at the switch or the wheel, asleep on the job: Production has fallen off because the workers are getting slack. 2 loose, flabby, flaccid, soft, limp, baggy, drooping, droopy, bagging, sagging, floppy: The flag hung down, slack in the still air.

--v. 3 Often, slack or slacken off or up. a let go, let run, let loose, release, slacken, loose, loosen, relax, ease (out or off), let up (on): Slack off the stern line a bit. b slow (down or up), delay, reduce speed, tire, decline, decrease, diminish, moderate, abate, weaken: Barnes could not keep up his terrific pace and is beginning to slack off. Business has slackened off since Christmas. 4 neglect, shirk, Colloq Brit skive (off), US goof off, Chiefly military gold-brick, Taboo slang US fuck the dog: Don't let the foreman find you slacking.

--n. 5 lull, pause, inactivity, cut-back, lessening, reduction, abatement, drop-off, downturn, diminution, decline, fall-off, decrease, dwindling: How do you compensate for the slack in sales of ski equipment during the summer? 6 room, looseness, slackness, play, give: There's too much slack in that mooring line.

slacker   n. shirker, loafer, idler, Slang Brit skiver, Military scrimshanker, US gold brick, goof-off: We have tight deadlines to meet, so there is no room for slackers on the team.

slake   v. satisfy, quench, gratify, allay, assuage, ease, relieve: Nothing would slake my thirst better right now than a pint of ice-cold lager.

slam   v. 1 shut, fling closed, bang: Gillian said that she hated encyclopedias, and slammed the door in the salesman's face. 2 crash, smash, smack, dash, ram, bang, slap: Not looking where he was going, Newland slammed his car into a street lamp. 3 criticize, attack, vilify, pillory, run down, disparage, denigrate, denounce, put down, flay, pounce on or upon, Colloq shoot down, pan, Chiefly Brit slate: The critics slammed his play because of the way it portrayed women.

slander   n. 1 defamation (of character), calumny, obloquy, misrepresentation, slur, vilification; libel: He spread lies about me and I am suing him for slander.

--v. 2 defame, calumniate, disparage, slur, traduce, malign, smear, vilify, decry; libel: He must be stopped from slandering people and ruining their reputations.

slanderous
adj. defamatory, calumnious, disparaging, smear, deprecatory, depreciative, discrediting, decrying; libellous: I understand that she made some slanderous remarks about your relationship with your ex-wife.

slant n. 1 angle, viewpoint, (point of) view, standpoint, approach, twist, idea, aspect, attitude: The article reflects a new slant on why governments are sometimes out of touch with the electorate. 2 bias, prejudice, partiality, one-sidedness, turn, bent: Carla's reporting has a feminist slant which occasionally distorts the facts. 3 slope, incline, tilt, ramp, gradient, pitch, lean, leaning, deflection, angle, rake, cant, camber: A window sill normally has an outward slant. The road has a slant downwards to the right on right-hand curves.

--v. 4 tilt, angle, incline, pitch, cant, slope, bend, lean, list, tip, bevel, shelve: The land slants downwards near the lake. Notice how his writing slants upwards at the ends of the lines. Cut the edges to slant outwards. 5 bend, distort, deviate, twist, warp, colour, weight, bias: The editor slanted the story to put the minister in a favourable light.

slap v. 1 smack, cuff, whack, rap; spank; Colloq clout, wallop: He said something extremely rude so she slapped him. 2 flap, slat, whip, beat, bat: Can't you stop that blind from slapping in the wind? 3 fling, toss, splash, hurl, throw, sling: If you slap some paint on it, no one will know the difference.

--n. 4 smack, blow, cuff, whack, rap, Colloq clout, wallop: He got a hard slap on the cheek for using foul language. 5 Often, slap in the face. reprimand, reproof, rebuff, criticism, censure, rebuke, shot, thrust, attack, put-down, insult, offence, smack in the eye: The speaker's reference to Anne's paper as 'trivial' was a severe slap in the face.

--adv. 6 slap on. exactly, directly, precisely, straight, point-blank, right, squarely, plumb, smack, bang: As usual, Barry's comments were slap on the mark.

slash v. 1 cut, gash, hack, score, slit, knife, lacerate; wound; scar: The guide slashed away at the undergrowth with his machete. 2 lash, whip, scourge, flog, beat, horsewhip, flail, flagellate, flay, lambaste, thrash, beat: In those days, a convicted felon was beaten and slashed in front of a crowd in the market-place. 3 cut, reduce, decrease, drop, mark down, trim, lower: Prices were slashed to clear out last season's styles.

--n. 4 cut, gash, incision, slit, slice, gouge, rent, rip, score, laceration: There is a slash in each sleeve that reveals the colourful fabric underneath. 5 cut, reduction, decrease, mark-down: The department stores continued their price slashes to the end of January.

slattern n. slut, tramp, sloven, trollop, hussy, wanton, whore, prostitute, harlot, streetwalker, lady of the evening, woman of ill repute, loose or fallen woman, trottoise, Colloq call-girl, pro, Slang tart, hooker, hustler, US roundheels, bimbo: His reputation will not be enhanced if he associates with slatterns.

slaughter n. 1 butchery, butchering, Rare abattage: Most of the cattle were sent for slaughter. 2 massacre, killing, bloodshed, blood bath, murder, homicide, manslaughter, carnage, extermination, execution, liquidation, slaying, blood-letting, butchery, pogrom, genocide, mass murder or execution or extermination, sacrifice, hecatomb: 1930 to 1945 saw the slaughter of millions in Europe and the Far East.

--v. 3 butcher, kill, murder, slay, execute, exterminate, massacre, put to the sword, put to death, liquidate, destroy: How many more must be slaughtered before war is made obsolete? 4 defeat, beat, win (out) over, vanquish, overcome, overwhelm, smash, crush, thrash, destroy, rout, upset, trounce, Colloq clobber: Our school soccer team slaughtered the visitors 10--0.

slave n. 1 lackey or lacquey, scullion, serf, slave-girl, slaveling, odalisque or odalisk, bondservant, bondslave, bondsman or bondman, bondswoman or bondwoman, bondmaid, vassal, Derogatory chiefly Brit skivvy, Archaic esne, helot, hierodule, Colloq Brit slavey: In ancient times, captured peoples and those of lower social status were kept as slaves. 2 drudge, workhorse, hack, grind, toiler, labourer, Chiefly Brit fag, dogsbody, Colloq US gofer: Susan was a slave to her job for years, only to be sacked without a pension by the new owners.

--v. 3 labour, toil, moil, grind, grub, drudge, sweat, burn the midnight oil, lucubrate, work one's fingers to the bone, work like a Trojan or a horse, Brit skivvy: He was slaving over an essay that was due the following morning.

slaver° v. 1 drool, salivate, slobber, drivel, dribble, spit, Dialect slabber: The wolf opened its slavering jaws.

--n. 2 drool, saliva, drivel, dribble, spit, spittle, Dialect slabber: The slaver formed on his lips as he raged on. 3 nonsense, drivel, rubbish, twaddle, piffle: The slaver spewed forth by the critics set her teeth on edge.

slaverý   n. 1 slave ship, slave-trader: Conditions were so bad aboard the slavers that many of the poor souls died before reaching their destination. 2 blackbirder, slave-trader; White slaver, pimp, panderer: He was ashamed that his grandfather had been a South Sea slaver.

slavery   n. 1 enslavement, bondage, thraldom, thrall, enthralment, servitude, serfdom, vassalage, yoke; subjugation, captivity, Historical US peculiar institution: All of those ancient cultures that we venerate practised slavery. 2 slave-trade, blackbirding: No one ever mentions that the family fortune had been made from slavery. 3 toil, moil, drudgery, travail, grind, strain, (hard) labour: She remembered the years of slavery she had spent at the kitchen sink.

sleazy   adj. 1 unsubstantial or insubstantial, flimsy, slight, shabby, poor, gimcrack, jerry-built, tawdry, cheap, tatty, ramshackle, rickety, slipshod, Colloq US chintzy: Her garish dress was made from some sleazy synthetic material. 2 disreputable, low-class, low-grade, squalid, dirty, base, seedy, sordid, contemptible, trashy, run-down, mean, cheap, Colloq crummy, slummy, Slang crappy, cheesy: He was lying low in a sleazy hotel while the police searched for him.

sleek   adj. 1 smooth, slick, velvety, lustrous, shiny, shining, glossy, silky, silken: The seals' sleek fur glistened in the sunlight. 2 graceful, trim, streamlined: For her birthday Edmund gave her a sleek convertible. 3 suave, unctuous, slimy, fawning, oily, specious, hypocritical, Chiefly Brit smarmy: His explanations sounded plausible enough, but we soon found out what a sleek rogue he really was.

sleep   v. 1 doze, (take a) nap, catnap, rest, repose, slumber, drowse, drop or nod off, be in the land of Nod, be in the arms of Morpheus, snore, Colloq snooze, saw wood, catch or log a few zees (Z's), take or have a zizz, catch forty winks: I was so tired, I slept for a full ten hours.

--n. 2 nap, doze, slumber, rest, siesta, Colloq forty winks, snooze, zizz, beauty sleep: As she grew older, she found she needed less sleep.

sleepless adj. 1 restless, wakeful, insomniac, disturbed: Your mother and I spent a sleepless night worrying about you. 2 alert, watchful, vigilant, unsleeping: Mark's wife kept a sleepless vigil at his bedside.

sleepwalking
n. 1 noctambulism, somnambulism, noctambulation, somnambulation: Because of his sleepwalking, he had to be strapped in at night.

--adj. 2 noctambulant, somnambulant: Proper drugs will control her sleepwalking activities.

sleepy adj. 1 drowsy, somnolent, tired, nodding, dozy, lethargic, torpid, slumberous, sluggish, oscitant; weary, fatigued, exhausted, Colloq dead on one's feet, (knocked) out, beat, US and Canadian pooped: All that exercise has made me sleepy. 2 boring, inactive, dull, quiet, soporific, slow, sluggish: He grew up in a sleepy little village in the Outer Hebrides.

slender adj. 1 slim, lean, willowy, sylphlike, svelte, lissom or lissome, lithe, graceful, snake-hipped, thin, spare, slight, lanky: By exercising regularly, she has retained her slender figure. 2 slim, narrow, slight, poor, unlikely, small, little, scanty, remote, meagre, weak, feeble: Prospects for a quick recovery of the stock market are slender. 3 slim, slight, little, scanty, inadequate, insufficient, insignificant, trifling: The evidence against the defendant was too slender for a conviction.

sleuth n. detective, (private) detective, (private) investigator, US P.I., Colloq private eye, Sherlock, snoop, Brit tec or 'tec, US hawkshaw, Slang US dick, shamus, US and Canadian gumshoe: Dissatisfied with the progress of the police, we hired a private sleuth to investigate the theft.

slice n. 1 slab, piece, rasher, collop, shaving, layer, Cookery scallop, escalope, scaloppine (pl. of scaloppina) or scaloppini (pl.): May I have another slice of ham? 2 portion, piece, part, wedge, share, sliver, helping: He wants to make certain he gets his slice of the pie. 3 spatula; slicer: The Cabots gave us a silver fish slice for a wedding present.

--v. 4 cut, carve, divide: They watched their mother slicing bread for sandwiches.

slick adj. 1 smooth, sleek, glossy, silky, silken, shiny, shining, glassy, slippery: His slick hair looked as if it had been greased. 2 smooth, urbane, suave, smooth-spoken, glib, smug, plausible; sycophantic, unctuous, Colloq smarmy: Thomas was a slick operator and managed to worm his way into a position of power. 3 smooth, clever, skilful, adroit, dexterous, professional, ingenious, imaginative, inventive, creative, Colloq neat: The performance was slick and well-rehearsed. 4 superficial, shallow, meretricious, specious, glib: They have made a lot of money publishing slick magazines for the yuppy market.

--v. 5 Often, slick down. smooth, plaster down, grease, oil: He likes his hair slicked down to look like Valentino's.

slicker n. 1 confidence man or woman, cheat, swindler, mountebank, Colloq con man, city slicker: That slicker she met in Paris tricked Harriet out of a lot of money before he disappeared. 2 oilskin (raincoat): Best wear your slicker if you're going out in this storm, James.

slide v. 1 glide, slip; coast, skim, glissade, skate, plane, skid, toboggan, slither: The drawer slid smoothly out on its runners. Terry came sliding down the icy hill, arms and legs flailing. 2 creep, steal, slip, slink, move: My contact slid into the seat beside me and slipped me a note. 3 decline, decrease, drop, fall: Shares slid to an all-time low on this morning's market. 4 let slide. forget, ignore, neglect, gloss or pass over, pay no heed or mind (to): When Mr Bartlett borrowed my lawnmower, I let the matter slide till he began to think of it as his own, and offered to lend it to me!

--n. 5 landslide, earth-slip, avalanche, mud-slide: A dozen houses were destroyed in the slides caused by the recent torrential rains.

slight adj. 1 small, little, minor, negligible, unlikely, insignificant, inconsequential: There is always a slight chance that you might be wrong, you know. 2 trifling, tiny, slender, minute, infinitesimal; trace, perceptible: He didn't attach the slightest importance to the rumours that were going round. You'd best wash it again, as there is still a slight odour of garlic. 3 small, short, petite, thin, slim, slender, delicate, diminutive, tiny, miniature, bantam, wee, pocket, pocket-sized, US vest-pocket, Colloq pint-sized: Charlotte's slight build seems totally unaffected by the amount she eats. 4 insubstantial or unsubstantial, weak, feeble, delicate, dainty, frail, unstable, fragile, flimsy, lightly made or built, precarious, inadequate, rickety, insecure: This table is too slight to support the computer and the printer. His arguments were far too slight to carry conviction.

--v. 5 disregard, ignore, disdain, scorn, snub, rebuff, cut, disrespect, cold-shoulder: He thought she had slighted him deliberately at the dance. 6 insult, offend, affront, mortify, diminish, minimize, depreciate, disparage: Siobhan felt slighted by Harry's inattention.

--n. 7 insult, affront, slur, indignity, outrage, offence, disrespect: It is hard to understand why she tolerates his persistent slights. 8 inattention, neglect, disregard, indifference, snub, cold shoulder, coldness, ill-treatment: Perhaps she misinterprets his obsessive occupation in his work as a slight to her.

slightly adv. a little, somewhat, to a certain or slight or minor extent or degree or measure, marginally: Yes, I do feel slightly better, thank you.

slim adj. 1 See slender, 1, above. 2 See slender, 2, 3, above.

--v. 3 reduce, lose or shed weight, diet, Chiefly US slenderize: I really must slim if I am to fit into my summer clothes.

slimy adj. 1 oozy, slippery, mucky, squashy, squishy, viscous, sticky, gluey, mucilaginous, uliginous, glutinous, mucous, clammy, mushy, US squushy or squooshy, Colloq gooey, gunky, US gloppy: He had cleverly buried the bag of diamonds in a mass of slimy waste where no one would want to look. 2 slippery, unctuous, obsequious, sycophantic, toadying, servile, creeping, grovelling, abject, Colloq smarmy: I don't mind his trying to sell me insurance, but why does he have to be so slimy about it?

sling   v. 1 toss, throw, cast, propel, hurl, shy, fling, fire, shoot, pitch, let fly, launch, heave, lob, Colloq chuck: He slung his briefcase onto the desk and flopped into a chair.

--n. 2 slingshot, catapult, trebuchet or trebucket: It is said that David slew Goliath with a stone from his sling. 3 support, strap, band; belt: The doctor ordered him to keep his sprained arm in a sling for a few days. The military rifles are supplied with leather slings.

slink   v. sneak, creep, steal, prowl, skulk: The dog slunk out of the room with its tail between its legs.

slip°   v. 1 slide, skid, glide, slither: Waxing the runners helps the sleigh slip along more easily. 2 stumble, lose one's footing or balance, miss one's footing, trip; fall, tumble: Mother slipped on the ice but luckily didn't fall down. 3 Often, slip up. err, blunder, make a mistake, miscalculate, go wrong, botch (up), Slang screw up: He slipped up again by failing to give you your telephone messages. 4 let slip. reveal, divulge, blurt out, leak, let out, disclose, expose, Colloq come out with, blab: He accidentally let slip the news that you were back in town. 5 slip away or by. pass, elapse, vanish, go by: The hours just slipped away when I was with Irena. 6 slip away or off or out. escape, disappear, leave, vanish, steal, go or run away or off or out, break away, get away, give (someone) the slip; sneak away or off or out: After the speech, he slipped away before we could interview him. 7 slip in. enter, get in, sneak in; put in: A field mouse slipped in past the wire netting. I managed to slip in my suggestion before the meeting was adjourned.

--n. 8 blunder, error, mistake, fault, oversight, slip of the tongue or pen, inadvertence, indiscretion, impropriety, transgression, peccadillo, faux pas, Colloq slip-up, Chiefly US blooper, Slang Brit boob, bloomer: She made so many slips in the letter that she had to retype it.

slipý n. 1 piece, scrap, strip, sliver; paper, note, chit, permit, permission, pass, document: I'll put my phone number on this slip of paper. To go on the outing, each child will have to bring in a slip signed by a parent. 2 shoot, scion, cutting, sprig, twig, sprout, runner, offshoot: After the slip is inserted, the branch must be bandaged up firmly.

slippery adj. 1 slick, sleek, slimy, icy, glassy, smooth, greasy, oily, lubricated, Colloq skiddy: Be careful! Those stairs can be slippery when they're wet. 2 evasive, devious, shifty, unreliable, undependable, questionable, untrustworthy, dishonest, treacherous, disloyal, perfidious, slick, crafty, sly, foxy, cunning, tricky, sneaky, false, reptilian, faithless, Colloq shady: I have dealt with some very slippery characters over the years, but this one is downright evil.

slipshod adj. careless, slovenly, slapdash, haphazard, messy, untidy, disorganized, lax, unorganized, Colloq sloppy: We refused to pay the bill because of the slipshod way they did the repairs.

slit v. 1 split, cut, slash, gash, knife, slice: The bark of the log is first slit OBopen, then carefully peeled back.

--n. 2 split, cut, gash, incision, fissure, groove, slash, cleft, aperture, opening: Off-stage, the rest of the actors were watching the audience through a slit in the curtain.

slither v. slide, worm, snake, slip, slink, glide, skitter, creep, crawl: After regarding me for a moment, the cobra turned and slithered away.

sliver n. fragment, piece, shard, shred, splinter, slip, shaving, paring, flake, chip, bit, scrap, snippet, snip: Two weeks later, we were still finding tiny slivers of glass from the broken vase.

slob n. oaf, boor, pig, lout, churl, yahoo, Slang Brit yob, yobbo, Chiefly US galoot or galloot, Slobbovian: He was a complete slob - he never tidied his room, and hardly ever washed.

slogan n. war cry, battle-cry, rallying cry, catchword, watchword; motto: The magazine's slogan was 'If you love words, you'll love Word '.

slope v. 1 incline, decline, ascend, descend, rise, fall, dip, sink, drop (off), angle, slant, pitch, tilt, tip: The lawn slopes downwards from the house, then upwards towards that grove of trees.

--n. 2 incline, decline, ascent, descent, acclivity, declivity, rise, fall, ramp, dip, sink, drop, angle, slant, pitch, tilt, rake, tip, camber, cant, grade, bevel, hill, bank, mount, gradient, US grade, upgrade, downgrade: Sheep can be seen grazing on the grassy slopes.

sloppy adj. 1 messy, dirty, slovenly, careless, slipshod, untidy, disordered, disorderly; draggle-tailed, bedraggled, dishevelled, unkempt, dowdy, frumpish, shabby, scruffy, Colloq US grungy: She is certainly a sloppy housekeeper. John's teacher complained about his sloppy work. 2 wet, slushy, watery, soggy, soppy, sopping, sodden, sloshy, muddy, rainy: The roads were sloppy after all the rain. You're lucky you don't have to go out in this sloppy weather. 3 sentimental, gushy, gushing, mawkish, maudlin, mushy, over-emotional, Colloq slushy, Brit wet, soppy: She starts to cry whenever she watches a sloppy film on TV.

slot n. 1 groove, fissure, notch, slit, opening, hollow, depression, channel, sulcus: Each of these pieces fits into its own slot. Drop a coin in the slot and watch what happens. 2 opening, position, vacancy, job, place, assignment, niche, space, spot, pigeon-hole: We filled that slot in the sales department. They scheduled the new programme into the half-hour slot after the six o'clock news.

--v. 3 groove, fissure, notch, slit, hollow out: We slotted the stanchions to accommodate the shelf brackets. 4 assign, schedule, place, position, pigeon-hole, fit: Can we slot this interview into the documentary on China?

sloth n. idleness, laziness, indolence, slothfulness, inertia, apathy, indifference, accidie, torpor, faineance, pococurantism, torpidity, sluggishness, languor, languidness, lethargy, phlegm, Rare hebetude: The maharajahs lived a life of sloth and luxury at the expense of their poverty-stricken subjects.

slothful adj. idle, lazy, indolent, apathetic, indifferent, torpid, inert, pococurante, slack, lax, shiftless, fain,ant, inactive, do-nothing, sluggish, sluggard(ly), slow, laggard, languorous, languid, lethargic, lackadaisical, phlegmatic, hebetudinous: One cannot pursue a slothful attitude and expect to get anywhere in life.

slouch v. 1 droop, sag, stoop, loll, slump, hunch: Sit up straight and stop slouching.

--n. 2 stoop, sag, droop, slump, hunch: He seems to have developed a slouch from the burden of his responsibilities. 3 Usually, no slouch. sloven, loafer, sluggard, laggard, loafer, idler, malingerer, lazybones: Nellie is certainly no slouch when it comes to exercising to keep fit.

slow adj. 1 lagging, laggard, dawdling, sluggish, sluggard(ly), slow-moving, leaden, ponderous, unhurried, plodding, snail-like, tortoise-like, torpid, leaden-footed, creeping, crawling; deliberate, slow-paced, leisurely, gradual, easy, relaxed, lax, lackadaisical, lazy, US lallygagging or lollygagging: They walked at a slow pace back to the house. Philip has become a little slower in his old age. 2 gradual, progressive, moderate, perceptible, almost imperceptible, measurable: The church elders have noted a slow decline in moral standards. 3 unhurried, slow-moving, slow-paced: The slow funeral cortege crept through the streets. 4 behindhand, unpunctual: I missed the train because my watch is five minutes slow. 5 late, tardy, behindhand, dilatory, delayed, unpunctual: You were so slow in getting here that everyone has gone. 6 slack, inactive, quiet, sluggish, unproductive: Business is always a bit slow after the holidays. 7 dense, dull, slow-witted, dull-witted, obtuse, backward, bovine, dim, dim-witted, stupid, unresponsive, blockish, cloddish, unintelligent, doltish, simple, stolid, unimaginative, Boeotian, Colloq slow on the uptake, thick, dumb: I'm afraid I'm a bit slow when it comes to particle physics. 8 conservative, unprogressive, old-fashioned, out of date, backward, old-fogyish or old-fogeyish, behind the times, Colloq square, not with it, past it, US out of it: The council has been rather slow in realizing the needs of the community. 9 boring, dull, tiresome, ennuyant, tedious, dead, sleepy, somnolent, torpid, soporific, wearisome, dry-as-dust, uninteresting, monotonous, tame, uneventful, humdrum, Colloq ho-hum, dead, Brit dead-and-alive: This town becomes really slow in the autumn, till the tourists reappear in the spring. 10 reluctant, not quick, unwilling, hesitant, disinclined, averse, loath or loth, indisposed: Even when provoked, Cassie tends to be slow to anger.

--adv. 11 slowly, unhurriedly, cautiously, carefully, circumspectly: He failed his test because he drove too slow. 12 behindhand, tardily, late, unpunctually: All the trains seem to be running a bit slow tonight. 13 slowly, easy, leisurely, easily: They told him to take things slower or he'd have another heart attack.

--v. 14 Often, slow down or up. slack or slacken off, reduce speed, hold back, put on the brakes, take it easy: You'd better slow down before you come to Deadman's Hill. 15 relax, take it easy, Colloq ease up: The doctor suggested that at my age I ought to slow down a little.

sludge n. muck, mire, ooze, mud, slime, dregs, silt, residue, precipitate, Colloq goo: The mechanic said that there was a lot of sludge in the engine.

sluggishness
n. sloth, laziness, slothfulness, languor, lassitude, lethargy, languidness, laggardness, torpor, phlegm, lifelessness, stagnation, shiftlessness, pococurantism, faineance, accidie, Rare hebetude: A few days' golfing in Scotland will help to shake off the sluggishness of your Caribbean holiday.

slum n. Often, slums. ghetto, warren, shanty town, US skid row or Skid Road: Many very famous men emerged from the slums of the Lower East Side in New York.

slump n. 1 dip, trough, depreciation, decline, downturn, downslide, recession, depression, falling-off, fall-off, fall, drop, plunge, descent, crash, collapse, failure; nosedive, tailspin: A slump in the housing market was one of the early signs of the impending recession. The market went into a slump this morning from which it barely recovered before closing.

--v. 2 decline, slip, recede, fall (off), drop, plunge, descend, sink, crash, collapse, dive, plummet, take or go into a nosedive or tailspin: Prices on the stock market slumped following announcement of a rise in interest rates. 3 See slouch, 1, above.

slur   n. 1 smear, insult, calumny, aspersion, affront, stigma, stain, blot, spot, (black) mark, discredit, insinuation, innuendo, imputation, slander, libel, slight, Colloq put-down: She resents any slur on her husband's character.

--v. 2 mumble, misarticulate, garble, stutter, lisp: Some people nowadays slur their speech so badly that one can hardly understand them. 3 slur over. gloss over, pass over, disregard, give short shrift to, ignore: The eulogies at the memorial service slurred over his faults and focused on his accomplishments.

sly   adj. 1 cunning, artful, crafty, clever, wily, guileful, underhand(ed), deceitful, treacherous, foxy, scheming, plotting, designing, conniving, furtive, shrewd, sneaky, stealthy, insidious, devious, disingenuous, tricky, shifty, sharp, canny, Colloq shady: It was devilishly sly of him to manoeuvre you into paying for his party. 2 impish, elfish, roguish, mischievous, puckish, devilish, scampish, naughty, arch, waggish: Even as he was flirting with Allison he was giving Antonia sly, conspiratorial winks.

--n. 3 on the sly. slyly or slily, quietly, surreptitiously, covertly, stealthily, furtively, sneakily, underhandedly, clandestinely, Colloq on the q.t. or Q.T., on the side: Although her parents had forbidden her to see him again, Antonia continued to meet Kevin on the sly.

19.8 small...

=-

small   adj. 1 little, tiny, short, diminutive, petite, mignon(ne), wee, teeny, elfin, Lilliputian, midget, miniature, minute, minuscule, baby, bantam, pocket(-sized), mini; undersized, immature, young, under age; Colloq pint-sized, US peewee: She was once small enough to fit into a size 7. When I was very small, my father took me to my first cricket match. 2 slight, secondary, insignificant, trivial, inconsequential, lesser, puny, negligible, minor, trifling, unimportant, paltry, nugatory: The opinions of other people were not of the smallest importance to him. 3 unimaginative, shallow, unoriginal, mundane, everyday, limited, unprofound, uninspired, commonplace, matter-of-fact, flat, two-dimensional: With their small minds they were incapable of fully appreciating the scope of the project. 4 skimpy, niggardly, stingy, uncharitable, ungenerous, scanty, meagre, cheap, petty, parsimonious, grudging, stinting, selfish, miserly, tight, tight-fisted, close-fisted, close; poor, insignificant, inadequate, insufficient, unsatisfactory, negligible, trifling, humble, small-scale, modest, unpretentious, Colloq piddling, measly: With all your money, it was very small of you not to contribute more to the scholarship fund. We all thought their cheque was too small. 5 insignificant, limited, negligible, trifling, tiny; little, minor, diminished, reduced, slight: Only a small number of people came to the opening night. It was small consolation to be told that he had come a good second. 6 feel small. feel embarrassed or ashamed or shamed or humiliated or foolish, feel discomfited or disconcerted or uncomfortable, feel mortified or chagrined, Colloq feel put down: Doreen always managed to make some remark that made Andrew feel small.

small-minded

adj. small, petty, selfish, stingy, grudging, niggardly, ungenerous, mean, narrow-minded, narrow, close-minded, uncharitable, hidebound, rigid, intolerant, unimaginative, short-sighted, near-sighted, myopic: Charging members of staff for local telephone calls seems rather small-minded.

small-time

adj. small, small-scale, unimportant, petty, piddling, minor, insignificant, trifling, trivial: In less than ten years he succeeded in building a small-time used-car business into a national chain.

smart adj. 1 intelligent, clever, bright, brilliant, quick-witted, sharp, acute, astute, capable, adept, apt, quick, ingenious: Emily is one of the smartest children in the class. 2 canny, perspicacious, perceptive, percipient, discerning, knowledgeable, au fait, well-educated, well-read, erudite, learned, well-versed, aware, shrewd, streetwise, Slang hip, tuned in, US savvy: Brendan is smart enough to avoid trouble.

3 elegant, chic, fashionable, stylish, modish, … la mode, well-groomed, trim, neat, dapper, spruce, soign,(e), Colloq snappy, natty: You must admit that both Della and Paul are smart dressers. 4 pert, pointed, saucy, witty, nimble-witted, poignant, trenchant, effective: I wish he would stop making smart remarks when I am trying to explain something. 5 brisk, vigorous, animated, active, energetic, spirited, lively; quick, alert, jaunty, perky, breezy: The enemy launched a smart counter-attack at dawn. He set off down the road at a smart pace. 6 quick, swift, stiff, smarting, stinging, sharp, severe: The mugger gave him a smart blow on the back of the neck.

--v. 7 sting, hurt, pinch, pain, ache, tingle, prickle, burn, throb, stab, pierce: The antiseptic may smart a bit when it is put on the cut. The smoky atmosphere made her eyes smart.

--n. 8 injury, harm, pain, pang, twinge, affliction, suffering, smarting: For years he silently endured the smart of his colleagues' ridicule.

smear v. 1 daub, rub, anoint, spread, cover, coat, wipe, plaster, bedaub; besmirch, dirty, smudge, stain, soil, begrime: The baby smeared ice-cream all over his face. The car windows were smeared with dirt from the road. 2 blacken, besmirch, soil, sully, calumniate, slander, discredit, tarnish, defile, vilify, scandalize, stigmatize, Colloq drag through the mud: Politicians regularly smear their opponents with all sorts of accusations.

--n. 3 smudge, daub, stain, splodge or chiefly US splotch, blot, taint, spot: These outrageous lies constitute a smear on my good reputation. There was a smear of blood on his collar. 4 slander, scandal, libel, vilification, mud-slinging, defamation, calumny, aspersion, reflection: The article contains several smears on the character of an MP.

smell n. 1 odour, scent, aroma, perfume, fragrance, bouquet, breath, whiff: Don't you love the smell of freshly brewed coffee in the morning? 2 stink, stench, fetor or foetor, fetidness, mephitis, effluvium, Colloq Brit pong: The smell from the rotting garbage was overpowering.

--v. 3 scent, sniff, Colloq get a whiff of: The moment I smelt that perfume I knew that Nicole had been there. 4 stink, reek, Colloq Brit pong, hum: The milk had gone off and smelled to high heaven.

smelly adj. malodorous, evil-smelling, foul-smelling, foul, mephitic, fetid, putrid, reeky, stinking, noisome, rank, offensive, miasmic or miasmatic or miasmatical or miasmal, odoriferous, rancid, high, gamy, Slang Brit whiffy: She hid the diamond in a washing basket full of smelly clothes.

smile v. 1 grin, beam: He smiled and said he was pleased to meet me.

--n. 2 grin: Georgina bestowed on me a sweet, wistful smile.

smirk n. 1 leer, sneer, grin, grimace, simpering smile: Wipe that conceited smirk off your face.

--v. 2 sneer, grimace, leer: Instead of saying, 'I told you so', he just stood there smirking.

smitten adj. 1 affected, afflicted, beset, stricken, troubled, distressed, burdened, crushed, plagued, haunted, worried, bothered, vexed: Offers of help for the smitten town came pouring in. 2 captivated, enthralled, struck, bewitched, enchanted, beguiled, charmed, enraptured, infatuated, enamoured, ensorcelled, swept off one's feet, Colloq bowled over, gaga: Anthea met some rock star and was totally smitten. They were so smitten by the beauty of the island that they returned every year.

smooth adj. 1 regular, even, flush, flat, level, plane, unruffled, unbroken, unwrinkled, undisturbed, tranquil, peaceful, calm, serene, glassy: A light breeze rose to ripple the smooth surface of Alan's martini. 2 slick, sleek, shiny, glossy, glassy, mirror-like, uniform, polished, burnished; silky, silken, velvety, satiny: Optical mirrors for telescopes must be as smooth as modern technology can made them. He ran his fingers over the smooth fabric. 3 unobstructed, easy, effortless, free, uncluttered, even, orderly, well-ordered, uneventful, flowing, fluent, unconstrained, uninterrupted: There were no obstacles in the way of a smooth return to normal operations. The road to ruin is short and smooth. 4 hairless, bald, bare, naked, clean-shaven, smooth-shaven, depilated, glabrous: His smooth pate shone in the moonlight. 5 soothing, mellow, pleasant, bland, mild, soft: That is a very smooth whisky indeed. 6 suave, slick, slippery, unctuous, silken, silky, glib, urbane, soign,(e), agreeable, winning, plausible, facile, nonchalant, courtly, eloquent, honey-tongued, smooth-spoken, persuasive, oily, slimy, syrupy, Colloq chiefly Brit smarmy: With his quick understanding and smooth manner, Edward was a very successful salesman. 7 sweet, dulcet, pear-shaped, mellow, well-modulated, silver-tongued: The smooth tones of his serenade wafted through the evening air. 8 slick, scheming, conniving, crafty, shrewd, cunning, tricky, shifty, sly, foxy, Machiavellian, sophistic(al), plausible, credible, believable, Colloq cagey: Robinson came up with a very smooth plan to bilk wealthy widows out of their money.

--v. 9 Often, smooth out or away. flatten, even, level, iron, press, mangle, calender: Please smooth the wrinkles out of this shirt so that I can wear it tonight. 10 prepare, lay, pave, ease, ready, clear, open, prime, lubricate, facilitate: What is your policy for smoothing the way for employees joining the firm? 11 sand, plane, polish, buff, burnish: The wood is smoothed to a glassy finish before being used for the cabinets. 12 Often, smooth over. ameliorate, assuage, allay, calm, gloss over, minimize, mitigate, lessen, soothe, reduce, temper, mollify, smoothen, soften, palliate, appease: An otherwise uncomfortable situation was smoothed over by her quiet words.

smother v. 1 suffocate, stifle, choke, asphyxiate; throttle, strangle, snuff (out), kill: He was accused of trying to smother his wife with a pillow. 2 be suffocated or stifled or asphyxiated, be choked or strangled, be killed: The infant apparently smothered in the blanket. 3 overwhelm, overcome, blanket, inundate, cover, shower; envelop, wrap, enshroud, surround: The children crowded round and smothered her with kisses. The banquet table was smothered in white roses. 4 repress, subdue, suppress, conceal, hide, keep or hold back, cover up, mask, choke back or down, check; stifle, muffle, blanket, blank out: He managed to smother his grief and put on a brave face. Our whispers were smothered by the noise of the hi-fi. 5 extinguish, put out, snuff out: The foam from the fire extinguisher smothered the blaze in a few moments.

smoulder v. burn; seethe, simmer, chafe, rage, fume, foam, boil, stew, fester, Colloq get hot under the collar, get (all) steamed up, see red, US do a slow burn, get (all) burnt up: The fire continued to smoulder, then flared up again a week later. He has been smouldering ever since his wife confessed she was going out with another man.

smug adj. self-satisfied, complacent, holier-than-thou, self-important, overconfident, conceited: She is a bit too smug about the security of her job and might get a nasty shock some day soon.

19.9 snack...
=-

snack n. 1 bite, nibble, morsel, titbit or chiefly US tidbit, refreshment(s), Brit elevenses, Colloq nosh: Have a little snack or you'll be hungry later.

--v. 2 bite, nibble, Colloq nosh: He gained all that weight just from snacking between meals.

snag n. 1 hitch, catch, problem, (stumbling) block, stricture, bottleneck, complication, obstacle, impediment, obstruction, hindrance, difficulty, US hang-up: A snag developed that prevented my keeping my promise to you.

--v. 2 catch, tear, rip: He snagged his new jacket on a nail.

snake n. 1 reptile, serpent, ophidian, viper: A specialist in snakes is called a herpetologist. 2 snake in the grass, traitor, turncoat, Judas, quisling, betrayer, double-crosser, informer, rat, US Benedict Arnold, Slang chiefly US and Canadian fink, ratfink: Eventually they caught the snake who was giving away their plans to the enemy.

--v. 3 slither, glide, creep, crawl, worm: To avoid being seen, he snaked along on his stomach for a few yards. 4 twist, wind, curve, bend, turn, zigzag, worm, wander, loop, crook, meander: The road snakes through the jungle for 50 miles or more.

snap v. 1 break (off), separate, crack; cleave, split, fracture, give way, part: The wind snapped off tree branches like matchsticks. The back legs of the chair snapped in two as she sat on it. 2 click; pop; crack: The door snapped shut. 3 Often, snap at. a bite (at), nip, gnash or snatch at: The postman ran down the street, the dog snapping at his heels. b attack, lunge at, lash out (at), snarl at, growl (at), bark (at), be brusque or short or curt (with), Colloq jump down (someone's) throat, fly off the handle (at): Robin is in a bad mood today, snapping at everyone. 4 Usually, snap up or US also off. grab (up), snatch (up), seize, pluck, pounce on or upon, make off with, take (away), capture, catch, get, secure: The people who arrived early at the sale had snapped up all the bargains. 5 shoot, snapshot, photograph, click, catch: He always has his camera with him so that he can snap anything interesting. 6 snap one's fingers at. disdain, scorn, flout, dismiss, contemn, disregard, ignore, defy, mock, deride, thumb one's nose at, Brit cock a snook at: He merely snapped his fingers at the dangers when I mentioned them. 7 snap out of it. recover, come round or around, revive, awaken, wake up, perk up, liven up, cheer up; get a grip or (a) hold on or of oneself, pull oneself together, (re)gain control of oneself: I was feeling very blue yesterday but managed to snap out of it.

--n. 8 crack, crackle, pop, click: The lid shut with a snap. 9 spell, period, interval, wave: During that cold snap we thought we were in for a terrible winter. 10 catch, spring catch, (snap-)fastener, fastening, clasp: Do you want snaps or buttons sewn on this shirt? 11 energy, vigour, animation, liveliness, vitality, bounce, alertness, sprightliness, ,lan, dash, sparkle, verve, Colloq zip, zing, get-up-and-go, pep, pizazz: Granny certainly has a lot of snap left in her. 12 easy job, Slang picnic, US and Canadian breeze: There had been no need for her to worry, for the exam turned out to be a snap.

--adj. 13 abrupt, sudden, precipitate, hurried, hasty, incautious, rash, unpremeditated, unplanned, not well-thought-out, quick, instantaneous, instant: This is too important a matter for a snap decision.

snappish adj. 1 short-tempered, testy, petulant, peevish, irritable, prickly, touchy, irascible, quick to anger, quick-tempered, hot-tempered, waspish, Brit snappy, US on a short string or tether: He fancies that being snappish goes with his 'artistic' temperament. 2 curt, short, abrupt, brusque, curmudgeonly, cantankerous, sharp, cross, grouchy, gruff, cranky, crusty, crabby, crabbed, acid, tart, acerbic, churlish, dyspeptic, choleric, splenetic, ill-humoured, ill-tempered, temperamental, moody, Brit snappy: Grandad tended to be snappish when he became impatient with our lack of experience.

snappy   adj. 1 quick, sharp, brisk, smart, crisp, lively, rapid, speedy: If you want to come with us, you'd better make it snappy. 2 fashionable, chic, sharp, smart, stylish, dapper, modish, Colloq natty, Brit trendy: Your new friend is a very snappy dresser, isn't he?

snare   n. 1 trap, net, springe, noose, gin: They had caught only a pigeon in the snare.

--v. 2 trap, catch, entrap, seize, capture, ensnare: Using a different bait, William snared some partridges.

snarl°   v. 1 growl; snap: I admit I found three snarling Dobermans a bit off-putting. The clerk snarled at me when I asked for a form.

--n. 2 growl: With a snarl the dog leapt at his throat.

snarlý   v. 1 Often, snarl up. tangle, entangle, complicate, confuse, scramble, muddle, twist, mix or mess up, Colloq ball up, screw up: This situation is so snarled up that we'll never straighten it out. 2 tangle, entangle, knot, twist, ravel, jam, kink: The rope won't feed through the pulley because it's all snarled.

--n. 3 tangle, entanglement, complexity, snag, problem, difficulty, complication, muddle, mess, predicament, fix, quandary, dilemma, Colloq snarl-up, tight spot, pickle: The situation was full of snarls and problems. 4 jungle, maze, labyrinth, knot: The drain was clogged by a snarl of hair.

snatch   v. 1 grab, grasp, seize, clasp, clutch, pluck, take (hold of), catch, lay hold of, wrest, latch on to, capture, snap up, win, get, lay or get one's hands on: The thief snatched her purse and ran away. One must snatch every available opportunity for happiness. 2 Chiefly US kidnap, abduct: They snatched the kid and are holding him for ransom. 3 save, rescue, deliver, remove: At the very last moment, we were snatched from the jaws of death.

--n. 4 grab, clutch, grasp: He made a snatch for her necklace, but she managed to duck out of the way. 5 scrap, bit, fragment, snippet, segment, morsel, specimen, sample: We were able to hear only brief snatches of their conversation through the closed door.

sneak   v. 1 lurk, slink, steal, creep, skulk, cower, lurk, pad, prowl, sidle, Colloq pussyfoot: We caught Francis sneaking about the house last night.

--n. 2 informer, Colloq tattle-tale, Brit grass, Slang stool-pigeon, snitch, Brit and Australian nark, US stoolie, Chiefly US and Canadian fink, ratfink, US shoo-fly: Frank picked up a little money acting as a sneak for the police.

sneaking adj. 1 persistent, lingering, lurking, nagging, worrying, worrisome, niggling, intuitive, deep-rooted, deep-seated, Slang gut: She had a sneaking suspicion that Stephen was a police informer. 2 innate, intuitive, inherent, private, secret, suppressed, hidden, unexpressed, undeclared, unvoiced, unavowed, unconfessed, unrevealed, unadmitted, undivulged, undisclosed, covert: I have a sneaking sympathy with the underdog.

sneaky   adj. underhand(ed), devious, furtive, sly, slippery, disingenuous, deceitful, dishonest, unscrupulous, shifty: He took a sneaky look at his friend's homework before starting his own.

sneer   v. 1 smirk, curl one's lip, sniff: Don't sneer - you might be the next to lose your job. 2 scorn, disdain, despise, contemn, turn up one's nose (at), sniff (at), jeer (at), laugh (at), deride, mock, ridicule; underrate; Colloq sneeze at, Slang knock: They sneered at her ambition to become a serious athlete.

--n. 3 scorn, jeer, disdain, contempt, derision, mockery, ridicule; sneering, jeering: Barry endured his classmates' sneers without a word.

sneeze   v. 1 sternutate: I was about to sneeze, so I grabbed a tissue.

2 sneeze at. See sneer, 2, above.

--n. 3 sternutation; sneezing: The sneeze is an involuntary convulsive action.

snicker v. 1 snigger, chuckle, giggle, titter, laugh up one's sleeve, mock, scorn, laugh (at), jeer (at): It was embarrassing when the audience began to snicker at the ineptitude of the juggler.

--n. 2 snigger, chuckle, giggle, titter: The villain gave a little snicker when he thought he had her in his clutches.

sniff n. 1 whiff, breath, odour, scent: I got a sniff of her perfume as she walked by. 2 hint, spirit, feeling, suggestion: There is the sniff of spring in the air.

--v. 3 smell, snuffle, snuff: Why is your dog always sniffing at my shoes? 4 sniff (at). See sneer, 2, above.

snip v. 1 nip, clip, crop, cut, lop, prune, dock: When the blossoms begin to fade, snip them off.

--n. 2 cut, slit, gash, slash, incision, nick: We could watch the audience through a small snip in the curtain. 3 bit, scrap, shred, snippet, fragment, cutting, clipping, remnant, morsel: You are welcome to the leftover snips of fabric. 4 snips. scissors, shears, tinsnips: This duct can be cut with the snips.

snipe v. Usually, snipe at. shoot at, fire at; attack, criticize, deride, find fault with, carp at, pick apart: Newby has been sniping at the organization for years and we simply ignore him.

snivel v. sniffle, snuffle, blubber, whimper, whine, mewl, pule; cry, Colloq Brit whinge: I'll buy some of your matches, little girl, but only if you stop snivelling.

snobbery n. snobbism, snobbishness, pretentiousness, pretension, hauteur, haughtiness, superciliousness, condescension, loftiness, contemptuousness, presumptuousness, lordliness, disdainfulness, disdain, pompousness, pomposity, affectation, inflatedness, self-importance, conceit, vainness, vanity, narcissism, self-admiration, self-centredness, egotism, smugness, Colloq uppishness, uppitiness, snootiness, snottiness: It is commonplace to criticize the nouveau riche for their snobbery.

snobbish adj. condescending, superior, patronizing, arrogant, haughty, lordly, lofty, putting on airs, disdainful, supercilious, contemptuous, pretentious, smug, scornful, self-important, affected, conceited, egotistic(al), vain, self-satisfied, complacent, pompous, Colloq snooty, snotty, highfalutin or hifalutin, on one's high horse, uppity, hoity-toity, high and mighty, stuck-up, Brit uppish, Chiefly US high-hat, Slang Brit toffee-nosed: Since he got his knighthood, Cathcart has become so snobbish he'll have nothing to do with us.

snoop v. 1 pry, spy, interfere, meddle, intrude, butt in(to), Colloq stick or poke one's nose; be nosy, nose around or about: He couldn't stop snooping into other people's affairs.

--n. 2 busybody, Paul Pry, meddler, spy, intruder, snooper, peeper; private detective or investigator; Colloq Nosy Parker, US buttinsky or buttinski; private eye, US shamus: There was a snoop here today, asking a lot of personal questions.

snug adj. cosy, comfortable, intimate, relaxing, restful, warm, sheltered, friendly, easy, homely, casual, Colloq comfy: Curled up on the sofa, Chris looks as snug as a bug in a rug.

snuggle v. cuddle, snug down, nestle, nuzzle: The puppies snuggled up close to their mother for warmth and protection.

19.10 soak...
=-

soak v. 1 drench, saturate, wet, immerse, souse, douse or dowse, bathe, steep, inundate, ret: You'd better let the tablecloth soak for a while to get out those wine stains. 2 soak up. absorb, take in, sponge up; assimilate, learn: The parched earth soaked up the water like a sponge. Let me just lie here and soak up some sunshine. She spent years soaking up the culture of the Cameroons.

--n. 3 alcoholic, drunkard, drunk, dipsomaniac, drinker, tippler, toper, sot, Slang sponge, souse, boozer, US dip, lush, juicer: You'll never get a straight answer out of that old soak.

soaking   n. 1 drenching, wetting, dousing or dowsing, immersing, saturating: We got a thorough soaking when we were caught in the storm.

--adj. 2 wet, sopping, drenched, dripping, saturated, soaked, wringing wet, streaming, sodden, waterlogged: Take off your soaking clothes and sit by the fire in this robe.

soar   v. 1 rise, fly, hover, float, hang: The glider soared over the hills, catching every updraught. 2 rise, increase, escalate, climb, spiral upwards, shoot up or upwards, rocket, sky-rocket: To counteract inflation, interest rates began to soar.

sob   v. cry, weep, blubber, shed tears, snivel, whimper, sniff, snuffle, pule, wail, moan, boohoo, mewl, pule, bawl, howl, yowl: The poor, lonely child sobbed quietly.

sober   adj. 1 teetotal, temperate, US dry, Colloq on the (water-) wagon: Because he was driving, he stayed sober at the party while everyone else got drunk. 2 serious, solemn, earnest, dispassionate, unruffled, unflustered, unexcited, unperturbed, steady, sedate, staid, composed, dignified, cool, calm, serene, tranquil, collected, cool-headed, level-headed, sane, balanced, practical, realistic, rational, clear-headed, Slang together: We invited you because we respect your sober judgement. 3 sedate, sombre, plain, simple, subdued, quiet, repressed, dreary, dark, drab, colourless, neutral: At the funeral the widow wore a sober black costume.

--v. 4 sober up. detoxify, recover, Colloq dry out: When she finally sobered up she awoke to find herself in custody.

sobriety n. 1 teetotalism, abstemiousness, abstention, abstinence, non-indulgence, temperance: Since taking the pledge, Oscar has been a model of sobriety. 2 seriousness, soberness, solemnity, staidness, gravity, temperateness, sedateness, formality, dignity: They made him promise to do nothing to upset the sobriety of the memorial service.

so-called adj. 1 styled, self-styled, designated, soi-disant, called, professed: They found themselves fighting for Kolchak, the so-called supreme ruler of all the Russias. 2 alleged, pretended, supposed, ostensible; misnamed, misdesignated; suspect: She bought it through the so-called Honest Used Car Dealers Association.

sociable adj. friendly, affable, approachable, social, gregarious, outgoing, extrovert(ed) or extravert(ed), companionable, accessible, amiable, amicable, genial, congenial, convivial, warm, cordial, neighbourly, hail-fellow-well-met, Colloq chummy, cosy: The people in this area are quite sociable, and we get together often.

social adj. 1 communal, community, common, collective, group, public, popular, societal: In many New England towns, the business of government is a social activity. Crime is a social, not an individual problem. 2 sexual, sexually transmitted, venereal: The clinic was established specifically to deal with social diseases. 3 See sociable, above.

socialize v. mix, get together, fraternize, keep company, go out, get out; associate: They haven't had much time for socializing since the birth of their baby.

society n. 1 fellowship, brotherhood, association, intercourse, companionship, company, camaraderie, friendship: Few people can be happy for long without the society of others. 2 mankind, people, the public: I fear that Bob is not yet ready to mingle with society again. Do you believe that society demands too much? 3 culture, civilization, community, way of life, world; organization, system: The hunting society was replaced largely by the agricultural some 10,000 years ago. 4 high society, haut monde, beau monde, upper classes, polite society, ,lite, gentry, Colloq upper crust: The purpose of the debutante ball is to introduce young ladies of about 18 to society. 5 organization, club, association, circle, league, institute, academy, alliance, guild, group, fraternity, sorority, brotherhood, sisterhood, fellowship, union, consociation, sodality, Verein, bund or Bund: The society, founded to advance and support linguistic scholarship, is now 100 years old.

soft adj. 1 yielding, cushiony, plushy, spongy, squeezable, compressible, squashy, squashable, flexible, plastic, pliable, pliant, supple, flexile, flexuous, unstarched: This mattress is much too soft for my back. 2 easy, comfortable, undemanding, Colloq cushy: His uncle got him a soft job at the Labour Ministry. 3 gentle, mild, balmy, pleasant, moderate, warm, halcyon, springlike, summery, restful, tranquil, relaxing, lazy: Alexandra was looking forward to a week in the soft Caribbean climate. 4 subdued, toned or turned down, muted, low, quiet, melodious, mellifluous or mellifluent, mellow, gentle, faint, softened, soothing, smooth: Riley thought she might succumb to the influences of the wine and the soft music and lights. 5 easygoing, tolerant, kind, compassionate, gentle, merciful, lenient, indulgent, permissive, liberal, lax, easy, docile, tame, submissive, deferential, benign, tender-hearted, sympathetic, kind-hearted, kind: Some believe that the jailers were too soft with the criminals. His parents were far too soft. 6 Usually, soft in the head. foolish, silly, simple, Colloq chiefly Brit daft, US off: Kevin must have gone a bit soft in the head if he thinks that Clara still loves him. 7 depressed, declining, in decline, in recession, slow, unprofitable, borderline, questionable, weak: Owing to the stormy, cold summer, the resort business has been soft this year. 8 downy, silky, silken, satiny, furry, fluffy, feathery, fleecy, fuzzy, velvety, smooth (as a baby's bottom): The wool from the lambs is much softer. 9 pastel, pale, delicate, fine, subdued, light, matte or matt, quiet, diffuse(d), soothing: He wanted the bedroom painted in soft shades of greenish blue. 10 harmless, non-addictive: Some consider cannabis a soft drug. 11 fuzzy, woolly, blurred, blurry, foggy, diffuse(d): The soft focus photos of the wedding looked very romantic. 12 weak, feeble, frail, effete, delicate, non-physical, non-muscular, puny, flabby, out of training or condition or shape, pampered; namby-pamby, effeminate, unmanly, unmanful, Colloq sissified, sissy: He had been out of the marines for so long they thought he had gone soft. 13 easy, luxurious, pampered, rich, opulent, plush, posh, Colloq ritzy, swank(y): Since selling his business, Aubrey Quinton has been living the soft life on the Costa del Sol.

soften v. 1 Often, soften up. melt, affect, mollify, mellow, palliate, soothe, relax, appease: Nothing would soften the heart of that cruel tyrant. 2 mitigate, assuage, diminish, moderate, reduce, cushion, lessen, weaken, allay, ease, lighten, abate, temper, relieve: Can't you think of some way to soften the blow of such bad news? 3 muffle, deaden, damp, soft-pedal, lower, still, quiet, tone down, lessen, diminish, lighten, turn down, quell, Chiefly Brit quieten: Try to soften the high notes and bring up the bass. 4 give in, succumb, surrender, yield, agree, consent, concur, assent, give way, relax, ease (up), let up: The committee finally softened and allowed the park to be used for games.

soft-hearted

adj. tender-hearted, compassionate, tender, warm-hearted, sentimental, charitable, generous, giving, sympathetic, indulgent, kind, kind-hearted, responsive: Alison is quite soft-hearted when it comes to animal causes and contributed willingly.

soil°   v. 1 dirty, stain, begrime, muddy, smear, spot: His shirts were returned by the laundry still soiled. 2 pollute, contaminate, sully, defile, foul, befoul, tarnish, besmirch, disgrace, muddy, smear, blacken; blot: The scandal soiled his previously spotless reputation.

--n. 3 dirt, filth, muck, mire, mud, sludge, dregs, refuse; excrement, waste (matter): The soil is carried away by these pipes into the main sewer.

soilý   n. earth, loam, dirt, ground, turf, humus; clay: The men who dug the swimming-pool took away the soil from the pit.

sojourn   n. 1 stay, stop, stopover, visit, rest, holiday, vacation: We had a very pleasant sojourn in Toronto on our way home.

--v. 2 stay, stop (over), visit, rest, holiday, vacation, tarry: Next year we plan to sojourn in Bermuda for a while.

solace   n. 1 comfort, consolation, condolence, relief, balm, support, help, succour; reassurance, cheer: The children brought her solace in her bereavement.

--v. 2 comfort, console, condole, support, help, succour, soothe, allay, alleviate, ameliorate, mitigate, assuage, relieve; cheer (up), reassure, hearten: There was little to solace James's misery.

soldier n. 1 serviceman, servicewoman, recruit, fighter, infantryman, foot-soldier, trooper, warrior, military man, man-at-arms, Brit Tommy (Atkins), US enlisted man or woman, Colloq Brit squaddie, US GI or G.I. (Joe), Old-fashioned (WWI) doughboy: Enemy soldiers had been reconnoitring our position during the night. 2 fighter, stalwart, supporter, militant: He has been a soldier in the fight against poverty all his life.

--v. 3 serve (in the army): In his family the men have been soldiering for generations. 4 soldier on. continue, persist, persevere, endure, drive, keep going, keep on or at, grind, drudge: Despite the set-backs, they soldiered on to complete the project in time.

sole adj. lone, only, singular, unique, solitary; particular, exclusive, individual, personal: As Susan is the sole surviving heir, she has the right to sell the house if she wishes.

solecism n. error, slip, impropriety, fault, breach, violation, lapse, mistake, misusage, incongruity, inconsistency, barbarism, blunder, gaffe, bungle, fumble, gaucherie, faux pas, botch or botch-up, Colloq boo-boo, US flub, Slang boner, Brit boob, bloomer, Chiefly US and Canadian blooper: Solecisms in his writing include failure of subject and verb to agree.

solemn adj. 1 serious, sober, reserved, grave, earnest, sedate, staid, taciturn; morose, morbid, mirthless, unsmiling, gloomy, sombre, grim; glum, long-faced, saturnine: We observed a moment of solemn silence in memory of our fallen comrades. They knew from their father's solemn expression that something was wrong. 2 ceremonial, ritualistic, liturgical, religious, ecclesiastical, holy, divine, sacred, hallowed, sacramental, reverential, devotional: We attended a solemn service to celebrate the return of the hostages. 3 ceremonious, ritual, formal, dignified, stately, grand, august, imposing, impressive, awe-inspiring, awesome, important, momentous: The Trobriand islanders regarded the rights of passage as most solemn.

solemnity n. solemnness, gravity, seriousness, soberness, reserve, sedateness, taciturnity, staidness, earnestness, impressiveness, grandeur, importance, momentousness, consequence: All who attended the service were affected by the solemnity of the lighting of the eternal flame.

solicit v. 1 entreat, beseech, ask (for), implore, petition, importune, appeal for or to, call on or upon, beg, supplicate, pray, crave: He has solicited my help on more than one occasion. 2 accost, approach, entice, lure, pander to, Slang hustle: You can't go out in that neighbourhood without being solicited.

solicitor n. lawyer, attorney, US counselor-at-law: I have turned the matter over to my solicitor.

solicitous
adj. 1 concerned, caring, considerate, uneasy, troubled, anxious, apprehensive, worried: She seemed genuinely solicitous over the state of my health. 2 eager, earnest, zealous, keen, anxious, desirous, ardent, avid: She seems sincerely solicitous to please the firm's customers.

solicitude
n. concern, consideration, regard, disquiet, disquietude, uneasiness, anxiety, apprehension, worry, nervousness, fear, fearfulness, alarm: As she had not yet made him her sole heir, his solicitude over her health was understandable.

solid adj. 1 three-dimensional, cubic: The perspective drawing is a representation of a solid object. 2 filled (in or up), packed, jammed, crowded, teeming, congested, crammed, swarming, compressed, concentrated, Colloq chock-a-block, jam-packed, chock-full: By the time I arrived, the gallery was solid with people. 3 compact, firm, hard, stable; unshakeable or unshakable, unshaky, substantial, concrete, sturdy, sound, stout, strong: The vessel floated through the air before coming to rest on solid ground. His theories rest on a solid foundation. 4 consistent, homogeneous, uniform, unalloyed, unmixed, pure, continuous, unbroken, real, authentic, true, genuine, 24-carat, unadulterated, Slang honest-to-God: This mountain seems to be solid iron all the way through. John gave me a solid gold necklace for my birthday. 5 law-abiding, upstanding, upright, decent, stout, substantial, powerful, reliable, regular, steady, steadfast, stalwart, straight, estimable, sure, trusty, trustworthy, true-blue, worthy, dependable, sober: Mr Hart is one of the solid citizens of this town. He has always been a solid defender of the underdog. 6

steady, stable, stalwart, dependable, sturdy, strong, substantial, sound, firm, well-built, well-constructed, well-made, tough, durable, rugged, stout: That chair is not solid enough for you to stand on. 7 cogent, sound, concrete, weighty, proved, provable, valid, reasonable, sensible, rational, sober, well-founded, authoritative, indisputable, incontrovertible, irrefutable, incontestable, good, powerful, potent, forceful, convincing, persuasive: He presents a solid argument for a sales tax. 8 firm, downright, vigorous, telling, effective, forceful, potent, powerful, mighty, dynamic, thorough, through-and-through, intensive: Jan struck a solid blow against the supporters of abortion. 9 See solvent, 1, below. 10 entire, complete, whole, continuous; uninterrupted, undivided, unbroken, unrelieved, blank, windowless: I had to wait at the dentist's for a solid hour. Around the park they erected a solid wall.

solidarity

n. unity, unanimity, unification, accord, concord, concordance, harmony, concurrence, like-mindedness, agreement, mutuality, single-mindedness, singleness (of purpose), community of interest, esprit de corps, camaraderie, comradeship, sodality, Solidarnosˆ'cˆ': It was through solidarity, not the pursuit of individual interest, that freedom was achieved.

solidify v. 1 harden, freeze, set, cake, compact, compress, crystallize; jell or gel, clot, congeal, coagulate, thicken, Technical inspissate; sublime: The lava flowed round the bodies of those who died and solidified, preserving them in their final attitudes. 2 consolidate, unite, unify, pull or draw together: Studying the speeches of politicians enables me to solidify my own views.

solitary adj. 1 lone, single, sole, individual; unattended, solo, companionless, friendless, lonesome, lonely, unsocial, cloistered, secluded, reclusive, separate, eremitic(al), hermitic(al), remote, withdrawn, distant, out-of-the-way, unfrequented, desolate: There is not a solitary exception to the rule. Flora's solitary style of living allows her to concentrate on her writing. There is a solitary little inn where we go for weekends.

--n. 2 solitary confinement: The prisoner has been in solitary for striking a guard.

solitude n. 1 solitariness, aloneness, isolation, seclusion, privacy: Peter enjoys the solitude of living on an island. 2 loneliness, remoteness; emptiness, wilderness: How long could one person survive in the solitude of interstellar space?

solo adv. 1 alone, unaccompanied, on one's own: Jack flew solo for the first time yesterday.

--adj. 2 individual, unaccompanied, solitary: Let Eugene play the solo trombone part.

solution n. 1 solving, working or figuring out, discovery, finding out, unravelling, explication, deciphering, decipherment, elucidation, revelation, clarification, explanation; answer, key: The solution of the problem should be left up to the experts. Several solutions have been found through computer analysis. 2 settlement, settling, resolution, result, denouement or d,nouement, outcome, conclusion: It seems unlikely that we shall be able to bring this matter to a solution in a one-day meeting. 3 mixture, blend, compound, infusion; liquid, fluid; Technical emulsion, suspension, colloid or colloidal solution or colloidal suspension: After mixing the powder with water, use the solution to bathe the wound. 4 dissolving, dissolution, mixing, mixture: The solution of these ingredients in alcohol was first accomplished in ancient times.

solve v. work or figure out, unravel, disentangle, untangle, clarify, clear up, make plain or clear, interpret, explicate, decipher, crack, explain, elucidate, reveal, answer, resolve: Oedipus' problems began in earnest when he solved the Riddle of the Sphinx.

solvent adj. creditworthy, (financially) sound, solid, reliable; debt-free; profitable: The auditors rate the business as solvent.

sombre adj. 1 gloomy, morose, lugubrious, funereal, morbid, louring or lowering, melancholy, sad, dismal, unhappy, cheerless, joyless, serious, sober, doleful, dolorous, mournful, depressed, depressing, grave, grim, grim-faced, grim-visaged, Literary melancholic, darksome: Despite his sombre appearance, Sid was one of the funniest men I've ever met. 2 dark, gloomy, foreboding, bleak, depressing, shadowy, murky, leaden, grey, black, dismal, dreary, overcast, dusky, dim, dingy, darkling, dull, subfusc or subfuscous: The sombre sky set the mood for the proceedings that were to follow. 3 staid, sedate, sober, solemn, dark, dull, subfusc: A young person like you ought to dress in less sombre colours.

somebody pron. 1 one, someone, some person: There must be somebody who will take you to the dance.

--n. 2 personage, celebrity, dignitary, VIP, luminary, notable, star, superstar, Colloq hotshot, bigwig, big wheel, big gun, big noise, big White Chief, big Daddy, big Chief, big-timer; hot stuff; Old-fashioned big cheese; US Mr Big: He must be a somebody to merit such treatment.

somehow adv. someway, in one way or another, in some way, somehow or other, by hook or by crook, by fair means or foul, Colloq come hell or high water: Somehow, we have to get into the vault for those papers.

sometime adj. 1 former, erstwhile, past, recent, one-time, quondam: Crawford was a sometime student of the occult.

--adv. 2 at some time or other, someday, one day, any time, on a future occasion, when or if the opportunity arises, soon, by and by, one of these days: Come up and see me sometime. 3 sooner or later, in (due) time, in the fullness of time, in the long run, one fine day, Un bel di, eventually, when all is said and done, before long, before you know it: You can be sure that the tax man will find out about it sometime.

sometimes adv. occasionally, on occasion, (every) now and then, now and again, off and on, at times, from time to time, every so often, (every) once in a while: Sometimes Ambrose used to visit his grandchildren twice a week.

somewhat adv. rather, quite, relatively, more or less, moderately, pretty, fairly, to some or a certain extent or degree or measure, slightly, a bit, a little, Colloq sort of, kind of: Ingrid was somewhat put out by my refusal.

song n. 1 tune, air, melody, ditty, number: Together, they wrote some of the most popular songs of this century. 2 for a song. cheaply, inexpensively, at a bargain price: That old book you wanted went for a song at the auction. 3 (old) song and dance. a fuss, to-do, commotion, bother, ado, Colloq flap, performance, Brit kerfuffle: I cannot see why they made such a song and dance of telling us they couldn't come. b evasion, tale, prevarication, (long) story, (long) explanation: To excuse his absence he gave me the old song and dance about his grandmother being ill.

soon adv. 1 before long, presently, ere long; in the near future, any minute (now), before you know it, in good time, in a little while, in a minute or a moment, momentarily, shortly, anon, in a second, Colloq in a jiffy: Soon another year will have passed. The doctor will be with you soon. 2 quickly, speedily, at once, promptly, immediately, directly, without delay, straightway, straight away, right away, forthwith, in short order, on the double, in two shakes (of a lamb's tail), in a wink, tout de suite, without delay, Colloq pronto, US and Canadian lickety-split: If he doesn't come soon, dinner will be spoilt. 3 quickly, speedily, promptly, swiftly: I'll be there as soon as I can. 4 willingly, lief, gladly, happily, readily: I'd just as soon be left alone, if you don't mind. 5 sooner or later. at some time or other, some time, one day, in time, in due course, eventually, ultimately, in the end, when all is said and done, at the end of the day, in the last or final analysis, at bottom: Don't worry, she'll come home sooner or later. Sooner or later they will have to yield.

soothing adj. 1 relaxing, restful, serene, peaceful, pacifying, calm, calming, quiet, soft, quieting: I put on some soothing music and offered her a cocktail. 2 mollifying, comforting, palliative, lenitive, demulcent, balsamic, emollient: The doctor prescribed a soothing ointment to relieve the pain.

sophistic adj. sophistical, specious, fallacious, deceptive, hypocritical, false, unsound, baseless, groundless, casuistic(al), Jesuitic(al), captious, misleading, bogus, sham, untenable: The politicians advanced their usual sophistic arguments for continuing a war that no one wanted to support.

sophisticated

adj. 1 cultivated, cultured, refined, experienced, worldly, cosmopolitan, polished, elegant, urbane, worldly-wise, knowledgeable, knowing, suave, soign,(e), blas,, chichi, slick, Slang hip or hep, cool, with it: The Gordons mix with a pretty sophisticated crowd. 2 advanced, complex, complicated, intricate, elaborate, subtle, refined, multifaceted: The desk-top computers of today are much more sophisticated than most older main-frame systems.

sophistication
n. 1 worldliness, urbanity, culture, refinement, knowledge, knowledgeability, cosmopolitanism, polish, elegance, poise, suavity or suavit,, savoir faire, savoir vivre, finesse, discrimination, discernment, awareness, taste, tastefulness, style: They want him on the board of directors of the museum because he lends it sophistication. 2 complexity, intricacy, subtlety, refinement: There is a staggering amount of sophistication built into modern integrated circuits.

sorcerer n. sorceress, magus, necromancer, wizard, witch, warlock, enchanter, enchantress, magician, thaumaturgist, shaman, witch-doctor, medicine man: The law demanded death for the sorcerers and for those who dealt with them.

sorcery n. witchcraft, enchantment, sortilege, necromancy, wizardry, (black or white) magic, shamanism, black art, diabolism: Once Vera works her sorcery on you, you obey her every whim.

sordid adj. 1 base, vile, corrupt, low, ignoble, debased, degraded, abased, mean, ignominious, dishonourable, despicable, disreputable, shabby, shameful, scurvy, rotten, execrable: He forced his family to do the most sordid things to raise money. 2 avaricious, greedy, grasping, mercenary, piggish, hoggish, selfish, rapacious, money-grubbing, stingy, parsimonious: His most sordid plan was to pretend he was collecting money for the handicapped. 3 dirty, foul, filthy, squalid, unclean, untidy, mean, slummy, seamy, seedy, wretched, unsanitary, insanitary, offensive, defiled, polluted, fetid, feculent, mucky, maggoty, putrid, fly-blown, slimy: The conditions of some of the homes the social workers visit are indescribably sordid. 4 wretched, miserable, poor, poverty-stricken, down-and-out, impoverished, ramshackle, hovel-like, tumbledown, dingy, seamy, seedy, slummy, deteriorated, sleazy, back-alley: When he first came to town, he lived in a sordid shack lent him by a farmer.

sore adj. 1 painful, sensitive, tender, raw, angry, burning, stinging, smarting, hurting; irritated, inflamed, chafed: My finger is still sore round the cut. 2 sensitive, delicate, tender, embarrassing, awkward, ticklish, touchy, thorny, prickly: Failing to complete medical school is a sore point with her. 3 dire, serious, acute, extreme, critical, urgent, pressing, desperate: He is in sore need of some good advice. 4 angry, angered, annoyed, irritated, vexed, irked, upset, Colloq peeved: Don't get sore at me because you got low marks in your exams. 5 painful, troublesome, grievous, aggrieved, distressing, distressful, harrowing, severe, agonizing, bitter, fierce, burdensome, onerous, heavy, oppressive: Melanie's marital troubles proved a sore trial for her friends. 6 sore straits. difficulty, trouble, distress, danger, dangerous or precarious condition: The business is in sore straits, I fear.

--n. 7 injury, damage, swelling, rawness, infection, inflammation, bruise, abrasion, cut, laceration, scrape, burn, canker, ulcer: If that sore on your arm doesn't heal, you'd better see a doctor.

sorrow n. 1 sadness, heartbreak, grief, unhappiness, dolour, misery, woe, anguish, distress, suffering, torment, agony, wretchedness, heartache, desolation, desolateness: How can one deal with the sorrow of the loss of a child? 2 affliction, trouble, trial, tribulation, misfortune, hardship, adversity, bad or hard luck, cares, pressure, strain, travail: It is unbelievable that anyone could survive a life filled with such sorrow.

--v. 3 grieve, lament, mourn, regret, keen, bemoan, agonize, moan, bewail: She is sorrowing over the loss of her nephew.

sorrowful adj. 1 sad, unhappy, regretful, sorry, depressed, dejected, crestfallen, chap-fallen, gloomy, downcast, blue, dispirited, melancholy, in the doldrums, wretched, woebegone, miserable, heartsick, disheartened, piteous, heavy-hearted, broken-hearted, rueful, woeful, tearful, disconsolate, inconsolable, grief-stricken, Colloq down in the mouth, down in the dumps: The entire family was sorrowful to learn of Carriston's death. 2 distressing, lamentable, doleful, unfortunate, bitter, distressful, troublous, grievous, unlucky, hapless, afflictive:

What a sorrowful life some of those miners' families have led!

sorry adj. 1 regretful, penitent, remorseful, contrite, conscience-stricken, guilt-ridden, repentant, apologetic, penitential: I am sorry if I offended you. 2 abject, miserable, depressing, wretched, pitiful, pitiable, pathetic, deplorable, stark, grim, sordid, dismal, base, star-crossed, ill-starred: Crackham has led a rather sorry life, most of it as a vagrant. Agnes again made a sorry spectacle of herself at the Christmas party. 3 See sorrowful, 1, above: I was indeed sorry to learn that you are moving away, Peggy.

sort n. 1 kind, variety, type, class, classification, group, category, brand, make, mark, stamp, description, mould, stripe, ilk, feather, kidney, character, nature; manner, species: A 1928 Alfa-Romeo coup, is not exactly the right sort of car for a family. Lewis is a person of a different sort. What sort of person is he? 2 kind, type, manner: This sort of behaviour must stop. 3 species, genus, family, phylum, subgenus, subspecies, race, breed, strain, stock, kind, variety, type: Aberdeen Angus is a better sort of beef for steaks. 4 person, individual, lot; thing: He is not really such a bad sort. 5 of sorts. of a sort, of a mediocre or passable or admissible or not (too) bad or fair or sufficiently good or adequate or undistinguished or indifferent kind or quality or proficiency: Yes, one might say that he is a violinist of sorts. 6 out of sorts. not oneself, not up to snuff, unwell, ailing, indisposed, (slightly) ill, low, Colloq off one's feed, under the weather: He is out of sorts after last night's revelries. 7 sort of. See somewhat, above.

--v. 8 assort, classify, file, order, rank, grade, class, categorize, separate, divide, combine, merge, arrange, organize, systemize, systematize, catalogue, group, sort out: Sort these names into alphabetical order. 9 describe, characterize, categorize, cast, throw, combine, mould, type: I did not enjoy being sorted together with thieves and murderers. 10 sort out. a organize, set or put straight, straighten out, resolve, tidy (up), clarify, clear up, solve; decide: Someone will have to sort out how we are to proceed. b choose, select, separate, divide: Sort out all the books that you want to keep from those to be donated to the library.

so so adj. mediocre, all right, average, undistinguished, passable, not (too) bad or good, adequate, fair (to middling), middling, indifferent, ordinary, tolerable, comme ci, comme ‡a, modest: Sabrina, whose singing is just so so, will never be a star.

soul n. 1 (vital) spirit or force, being, (inner or true) self, essence, psyche, heart, mind, intellect, reason, anima: He finally surrendered, body and soul. 2 person, individual, man, woman, mortal, (human) being: I won't tell a soul about our conversation. What a sweet old soul she is! 3 incarnation, embodiment, personification, typification, essence, quintessence: You can count on me as the soul of discretion. 4 emotion, feeling, sentiment, sincerity, fervour, ardour, warmth, dynamism, vivacity, energy, spirit, vitality, force: Alice puts a lot of soul into her singing, and that comes across to the audience.

soulful adj. sincere, deep, profound, moving, emotional, warm, ardent, intense, fervent, expressive: The lovers exchanged soulful looks.

sound° n. 1 tone; noise; din; cacophony; report: This piano has a tinny sound. We could hear the sound of laughter from below. I heard nothing over the sound of the crowd. Sounds of gunfire echoed in the valley. 2 ring, tone, impression, characteristic, quality, effect, aspect, look: I didn't like the sound of that remark. 3 hearing, range, earshot: Anyone within the sound of his voice could tell that he was angry.

--v. 4 resound, reverberate, echo, resonate: The noises sound very close. 5 seem, appear, look; strike one, give one the impression or feeling or sense (that); resemble, sound or seem or look like: It sounds as if you don't want to come to my party. That sounds like Russian to me. 6 ring, (be) activate(d), (be) set or touch(ed) off, signal: Anyone walking into the room sounds the alarm. The alarm sounds when the beam is broken. 7 Sometimes, sound out. articulate, pronounce, enunciate, utter; voice, vocalize: I was taught to speak clearly, to sound each consonant and vowel. 8 Sometimes, sound out or off. shout (out), cry out, yell (out): Sound out those numbers loud and clear! 9 sound off. vituperate, complain, bluster, grumble, Slang bitch: Today Mr Morrison was again sounding off about the service in the caf,.

soundý adj. 1 undamaged, uninjured, whole, unmarred, in good condition or shape, intact, unimpaired, unscathed: When the vase was sold to you it was sound. 2 healthy, hale (and hearty), fit (as a fiddle), robust, vigorous, blooming, rosy, ruddy: Old Tom is as sound as ever. 3 firm, solid, substantial, strong, sturdy, tough, rugged, durable, well-built, well-constructed, dependable: A business, like a building, must be built on sound foundations if it is to last. 4 sane, balanced, normal, rational, wholesome, reasoning, reasonable, clear-headed, lucid, right-minded, responsible, practical, prudent, politic, wise, sensible, logical, common-sense, commonsensical, astute, far-sighted, perceptive, perspicacious, percipient; valid, good, judicious, reliable, useful: As Juvenal said, 'Mens sana in corpore sano,' or 'A sound mind in a sound body'. My old teacher gave me a lot of sound advice. 5 safe, secure, good, conservative, non-speculative, solid, riskless; profitable: Are you sure that utilities are a sound investment now? 6 unbroken, uninterrupted, undisturbed, untroubled, peaceful, deep: I drank the potion and at once fell into a sound sleep.

sound° v. 1 Often, sound out. plumb, probe, test, check (out or into), fathom, inquire or enquire of, question, poll, canvass, investigate, examine, survey: Sound out the membership on their feelings about increasing the dues. 2 dive, plunge, submerge: The great whale sounded, almost taking the tiny boat down with it.

sound4 n. inlet, strait(s), fiord or fjord, bight, (sea) loch, bay, arm of the sea, cove, Scots firth: The breeze freshened as we sailed across the Sound of Mull.

sour adj. 1 acid, acidic, tart, vinegary, lemony, acidulous or acidulent, acidulated, acescent, acerbic: This apple has a pleasant, slightly sour taste. Do you like sour dill pickles? 2 turned, bad, (gone) off, fermented, curdled, rancid, spoilt or spoiled: If the food is sour, throw it away. 3 disagreeable, unpleasant, distasteful, bad, nasty, bitter, terrible: The poor service and facilities made the entire holiday a very sour experience. 4 acrimonious, bitter, embittered, unpleasant, churlish, ill-natured, ill-tempered, bad-tempered, crusty, curmudgeonly, crabbed, crabby, grouchy, cross, cranky, testy, petulant, impatient, abrupt, nasty, curt, caustic, brusque, peevish, snappish, edgy, sullen, morose, gloomy, discontented: The waitress's sour expression matched her sour disposition.

--v. 5 turn, spoil, curdle, go bad or off, ferment: Milk sours quickly in this climate if you don't refrigerate it. 6 embitter, acerbate, disenchant, exasperate, vex, Colloq peeve: Being forced to practise for hours when a child was what soured my enjoyment of playing the piano.

source n. 1 fountain-head, well-spring, origin, provenance, provenience, inception, start, outset, beginning, root(s), commencement, rise: We set out to find the source of the Blue Nile. The mineral bauxite is the source of aluminium. 2 originator, author, creator, begetter: Who is credited as the source of this quotation? 3 authority, documentation; informant, Colloq horse's mouth: To verify the information, go to the source.

sovereign n. 1 monarch, ruler, emperor, empress, king, queen, prince, princess, potentate, chief, master, mistress, shah, sultan; Akund (of Swat), Gaekwar (of Baroda), Nizam (of Hyderabad), Mehtar (of Chitral), Nucifrage of Nuremberg, Sheikh of Araby, Colloq supremo: She is the sovereign and must be obeyed.

--adj. 2 supreme, paramount, highest, principal, foremost, greatest, predominant, dominant, ranking, leading, chief, superior, pre-eminent, ruling, regnant, reigning, governing, all-powerful, absolute, unlimited: The first-born of the monarch is vested with sovereign authority upon the monarch's death. 3 royal, regal, majestic, noble, lordly, aristocratic, kingly, queenly: He was hailed as the sovereign ruler of all the islands.

sovereignty
n. suzerainty, hegemony, dominion, rule, pre-eminence, power, jurisdiction, authority, leadership, command, sway, supremacy, ascendancy, primacy: Anyone who doubted his sovereignty was seized and thrown into a dungeon.

sow v. seed, disseminate, broadcast, plant: The grand vizier sowed the seeds of dissension amongst the subjects of the caliph.

19.11 space...

=-

space n. 1 spaciousness, room, place, expanse, elbow-room, leeway, margin, latitude, play: There was no space for another desk. 2 blank: When the spaces are filled in, the puzzle is done. 3 interval, lapse, period, time, hiatus, lacuna, span, while, duration, extent, spell, stretch, pause, wait, intermission, gap, break, interruption: After a short space we were home again. 4 accommodation, seat, berth, room, place: Luckily, I got the last available space on the plane.

--v. 5 arrange, organize, array, set out, align, range, order, rank, lay out, measure (out): Space the trees about eight feet apart.

spacious adj. vast, large, extensive, enormous, wide, broad, commodious, ample, expansive, roomy, huge, sizeable, large, capacious, great, immense, outsize(d), voluminous, oversize(d): The house was more spacious than it looked from the outside. Siberia offers spacious territory, ripe for habitation over the next century.

span n. 1 bridge, link, stretch, overpass, Chiefly Brit flyover: We drove across the entire span in less than five minutes. 2 course, extent, interval, stretch, period, time, term, spell: In the short span of six hours we had crossed the Atlantic.

--v. 3 cross, stretch over, reach over, extend over, go over, bridge: A rude bridge spans the river at Lexington. Their lives spanned more than a century.

spank v. slap, smack, put or take over one's knee, thrash, paddle; chastise, punish, castigate; Colloq wallop, tan (someone's) hide, paddywhack, whack, give (someone) a (good) licking or hiding: In those days when you misbehaved you were spanked.

spanking adj. 1 spic and span, smart, bright, snappy, gleaming, brand-new, fine, remarkable, outstanding, big, large, great: You ought to see Jim Trowbridge's spanking new yacht. 2 brisk, lively, crisp, bracing, fresh, freshening, rattling, strong, invigorating, blustery: A spanking breeze blew up from the west. 3 quick, rapid, swift, lively, snappy, fast, smart, energetic, vigorous, brisk: The pony drew the dogcart at a spanking pace.

spar° n. Nautical mast, yard, yard-arm, boom, boomkin, gaff, jigger, mizen, Colloq stick, pole: The first gusts of the storm tore the remaining canvas from the spars.

sparý v. 1 fight, box, exchange blows; shadow-box: He was once the champion's sparring partner. 2 dispute, argue, bicker, squabble, wrangle, bandy words, have words; fight, Colloq scrap: I have better things to do than spar with you over breakfast every day.

spare adj. 1 extra, surplus, supernumerary, auxiliary, supplementary, additional; odd, leftover; in reserve, in addition: We got a puncture, so Dad stopped and put on the spare wheel. Give them the spare room. Have you a spare cigarette? 2 unoccupied, leftover, leisure, free, surplus, extra; not spoken for: Her demanding job left her very little spare time. 3 thin, skinny, scrawny, cadaverous, gaunt, raw-boned, meagre, gangling, lank(y), wiry, slim, slender; all skin and bones: The spare, ragged figure crouched in the shadows, his hand outstretched in supplication. 4 See sparing, below. 5 meagre, frugal, small, skimpy, modest, scanty: Their meals were spare but wholesome.

--v. 6 save, rescue, deliver, redeem: Bill spared me from a fate worse than death. Spare me the embarrassment of having to ask for my money back. 7 pardon, let go, release, have mercy on, let off, free, liberate: At the last moment, the judge spared him. 8 allow, relinquish, let go (of), give, award, bestow, let have, donate, part with, give, yield: She decided she could spare a couple of pounds for the disaster appeal. Buddy, can you spare a dime? 9 avoid, dispense with, manage or do without, give up, forgo, forsake, surrender, sacrifice: We spared a great deal of trouble by settling the dispute. Spare the rod and spoil the child.

sparing adj. 1 thrifty, saving, frugal, spare, careful, prudent, parsimonious, economical, penurious, mean; penny-pinching, stingy, niggardly, miserly, close, close-fisted, cheap, Colloq tight, tight-fisted, Brit mingy: As sparing in his praise as he was in his purse, General Waller rarely complimented his troops. 2 See sparse, 2 below.

spark n. 1 scintilla, flicker, glimmer, glint, sparkle, speck, hint, suggestion, vestige, atom, whit, jot (or tittle), iota: As long as a spark of life remained in his body he fought for freedom and justice.

--v. 2 Often, spark off. set or touch off, ignite, kindle, enkindle, electrify, animate, trigger, energize, galvanize, activate, excite, stimulate, set in motion, bring about, start (up), begin, initiate, inspire, inspirit, provoke, precipitate: Was there any single factor that sparked the Renaissance?

sparkle v. 1 glitter, scintillate, glint, flicker, shine, twinkle, wink, blink, glimmer, flash, coruscate, blaze, burn, flame: The setting sun sparkled on the sea. Brian's eyes sparkled with an inner fire. 2 effervesce, fizz, bubble: We ordered a jeroboam of sparkling Burgundy.

--n. 3 glitter, scintillation, twinkle, coruscation, dazzle, spark, gleam, brightness, brilliance, radiance: I fear that the sparkle has gone out of her smile. 4 vivacity, liveliness, fire, brightness, wittiness, effervescence, ebullience, excitement, animation, vigour, energy, spirit, cheer, joy, light-heartedness, ,lan, zeal, gusto, dash, life, gaiety, cheer, cheerfulness; certain something; Colloq vim, zip, zing, pizazz, oomph: It is easy to see that she gets her sparkle from her mother.

sparse adj. 1 thin (on the ground), few (and far between), meagre, scanty, (widely) dispersed or scattered, spread out, spotty, in short supply, scarce: Tourists are sparse in Scotland in January. Sparse blooms appeared on the rose-bushes this year. 2 little, limited, meagre, scant, sparing, inappreciable, not much, insignificant: Sparse use was made of the new tennis court because of the rain.

Spartan adj. austere, strict, severe, harsh, hard, stern, rigorous, rigid, ascetic, stringent, controlled, disciplined, self-denying, abstinent, abstemious: He gave up all luxuries and today lives a Spartan life in the forest.

spasm n. 1 convulsion, throe, fit, twitch, paroxysm: Deprived of his medication, Brian might go into spasms. 2 fit, seizure, convulsion, paroxysm, spell, outburst, burst, eruption: After that, every time he said 'furniture', the crowd went into spasms of laughter.

spasmodic adj. 1 spasmodical, paroxysmal, convulsive, jerky, jerking, sudden, Technical spastic: John was quite uneasy, unaware that Cynthia's spasmodic winking was due to a tic. 2 fitful, irregular, intermittent, arrhythmic, random, interrupted, sporadic, erratic, occasional, periodic, unsustained, discontinuous, pulsating, cyclic(al), broken: Spasmodic peals of thunder shook the house.

spate n. flood, inundation, onrush, onset, rush, deluge, outpouring, outflow, outflowing, flow: What did I say to provoke that spate of foul language?

spatter v. splash, splatter, speckle, bespatter, spray, dabble, daub, bedaub, sprinkle, besprinkle, Brit splodge, US splotch: When she dropped the pan the grease spattered all over my new white flannels.

spawn v. give birth to, yield, bear, bring forth, breed, beget, create, father, sire, produce, generate, engender, give rise to, bring about, cause: Donald's arrogance over his wealth spawned a great deal of resentment.

speak v. 1 talk, converse, discourse: We were not allowed to speak during lessons. 2 talk to, converse or discourse with, address, say (something or) anything to: She was speaking quietly to the children. That is no way to speak to your elders. 3 talk, communicate in, discourse or converse in, communicate in, utter in, articulate in, use: Can you really speak Chinese? 4 express, utter, say, state, tell, pronounce, enunciate, voice; articulate, make known, communicate, reveal, indicate: He is speaking the truth. 5 symbolize, betoken, signify, communicate, convey, indicate: Her refusal to return your love-letters speaks volumes. 6 so to speak. as it were, in a manner of speaking, figuratively or metaphorically (speaking): When it comes to employee benefits, the boss is Scrooge himself, so to speak. 7 speak for. a support, uphold, defend, stand up for, plead for, make a plea for, recommend, Colloq stick up for: Be quiet and let Simon speak for himself. b act on or in behalf of, act for, represent, act as agent for: He is speaking for the whole staff when he expresses worries about the cuts. c demand, require, beg, request, ask for: The situation speaks urgently for an effective drug rehabilitation programme. 8 speak for itself. be self-evident, be obvious, be significant: The fact that both your son and the ring are missing speaks for itself. 9 speak of. mention, advert to, allude to, refer to, make reference to, comment on, speak or talk about: I begged you not to speak of her again in my presence. 10 speak on. discuss, address, discourse upon or on, speak to, treat (of), deal with, examine, touch upon or on: In his presentation Dr Andrews spoke on the role of natural predators in pest control. 11 speak out or up. a talk (more) loudly or clearly, make oneself heard: I cannot hear you unless you speak up a bit. b talk freely or unreservedly, express one's opinion, speak one's mind, declare, come out, state one's position, take a stand: I heard a mother of ten speak out against birth control. 12 speak to. a reprove, scold, reprimand, rebuke, admonish, warn, lecture: After his father spoke to him, Nicholas stopped staying out so late. b be meaningful to, appeal to, influence, affect, touch: Constance's poetry effectively speaks to the heart. c accost, address, talk to, Formal apostrophize: I have to speak to the teacher after class. d See 10, above. 13 spoken for. reserved, engaged, bespoke, set aside, accounted for, chosen, selected: I'm afraid that the purple dress has already been spoken for, madam.

speaker n. orator, lecturer; keynoter; rabble-rouser, demagogue, Colloq tub-thumper, spieler: It was my function to introduce the speaker.

spearhead v. 1 launch, initiate, lead (the way), take the initiative, pioneer, blaze the trail, break the ice, take the lead, be in the van or vanguard: He spearheaded medical research into arthritis.

--n. 2 vanguard, advance guard, van, forefront, cutting edge: They claim to be the spearhead of space technology.

special adj. 1 particular, specific, exceptional, uncommon, especial, rare, unusual, out of the ordinary, extraordinary, different, unorthodox, unconventional, unique, precise, individual, singular, distinctive, specialized, certain, remarkable, inimitable, idiosyncratic, curious, peculiar, odd, strange, bizarre, weird, one of a kind; distinguished, notable, noteworthy: They have a special way of communicating with each other. I bought something very special for your birthday. A special relationship sprang up between us. 2 significant, important, momentous, earth-shaking, memorable, red-letter; gala, festive, celebratory: The fifth of September is a special day in our family. 3 pointed, concerted, deliberate, particular, extra, determined: After I had made a special effort to get there, nobody was home. 4 exclusive, express, individual, extra: Send the packet by special messenger. 5 dear, intimate, particular, good, close, bosom, staunch, loyal, faithful, devoted, steadfast; dearest, best, closest; esteemed, valued: I wasn't aware that John Spencer was a special friend of yours. 6 prime, primary, major, prominent, paramount: I shouldn't attach any special importance to her demands.

--n. 7 See speciality, 2 below.

specialist

n. expert, authority, professional, master, connoisseur, maestro, artiste, artist, adept: Pierre Legrand is a specialist in matching antique furniture finishes. Such work requires specialist knowledge.

speciality

n. 1 expertise, talent, genius, gift, skill, aptitude, trade, craft, accomplishment, ability, strength, forte, strong point, capability, adeptness, art, sphere, field, area, subject, concentration, specialization, m,tier, Chiefly US and Canadian specialty, Colloq bag, thing, cup of tea, baby, claim to fame: Dr Mann's speciality is tropical diseases. 2 piŠce de r,sistance, sp,cialit, de la maison, special, Chiefly US and Canadian specialty, US blueplate special: Today's speciality is calves' brains au beurre noir.

specially adv. especially, particularly, custom, expressly, exclusively: I had this suit specially made for me.

specific adj. 1 definite, precise, exact, particular, explicit, express, unambiguous, definitive, clear-cut, unequivocal, (well-)defined, determined, specified, individual, peculiar, certain, limited, indicated, predetermined, established, spelt or spelled out, delineated, set, distinct, fixed, circumscribed, restricted:

Each part has its specific function. 2 Often, specific to. characteristic (of), unique to, individual (to), sui generis, proper (to), typical (of), peculiar to, identified with, personal (to), discrete (to), special (to), associated with: The disease is specific to one area only. Are these problems group-specific?

specification
n. 1 identification, identifying, description, describing, particularization, particularizing, specifying, naming: The police were relying on a specification of the ringleaders by an informer. 2 itemization, itemizing, list, listing, check-list, inventory, list of particulars, detail, enumeration: When can you let me have the specifications for the new building? 3 requirement, qualification, condition, restriction, stipulation, consideration: The specification called for green marble and no substitute.

specify v. particularize, enumerate, itemize, name, denominate, list, indicate, mention, identify, cite, define, detail, stipulate, spell out, set out or forth, individualize, be specific about, delineate, determine, disambiguate, establish: You must specify the source of each quotation.

specimen n. sample, example, instance, exemplar, representative, representation; illustration, case (in point), type, model, pattern: This is a specimen taken from the Pre-Cambrian strata. Using this as a specimen, can you reproduce the entire fabric?

specious adj. deceptive, superficial, casuistic, ostensible, misleading, apparent, seeming, fallacious, sophistic(al), plausible, likely, conceivable, possible, supposed, purported, presumed, presumable, alleged, so-called: The candidate affected a specious show of liberality merely to attract votes. Do not be misled by specious reasoning.

speck n. spot, dot, fleck, mote, speckle, mark, bit, particle; crumb, iota, jot (or tittle), whit, atom, molecule, touch, hint, suggestion, suspicion, tinge, modicum, amount, grain, smidgen or smidgin: There's a speck of soot on your collar. Is there a speck of truth in what she says about you?

speckled adj. spotted, mottled, dotted, sprinkled, flecked, stippled, dapple(d), freckled, brindle(d); discoloured, spattered, bespattered: I can see by looking at it that it's a speckled trout.

spectacle n. 1 show, display, sight, performance, event, presentation, exhibition, exhibit, exposition, demonstration, extravaganza, marvel, wonder, sensation: Instead of criticizing everything in life, why not just sit back and enjoy the spectacle? 2 fool, laughing-stock, curiosity: Joan makes a spectacle of herself by her solo dancing when she gets a little tipsy. 3 spectacles. eyeglasses, glasses, Colloq specs: He wears spectacles only for reading.

spectator n. witness, eyewitness, observer, viewer, onlooker, looker-on, watcher, beholder: There were more spectators than participants at the spring dance.

spectral adj. ghostly, ghostlike, phantom, eerie, wraithlike, incorporeal, unearthly, supernatural, weird, Colloq spooky: I could have sworn there was a spectral figure, dressed in white, standing near the window.

spectre n. 1 ghost, phantom, wraith, apparition, vision, spirit, shade, revenant, Doppelg„nger, chimera, Colloq spook, bogeyman or bogyman: Each year the spectre appeared to her on Christmas Eve. 2 image, vision, (mental) picture: Again the horrible spectre of war and pestilence arose.

speculate v. 1 Often, speculate on or upon or about or over. reflect (on or about or over), consider, muse (on or about or over), meditate (on or over or about), contemplate (on or about), cogitate (on or about), think (about or over or on), ponder (over or about), mull over, chew on or over, ruminate (on or over or about), wonder (about), deliberate (over or on or about), weigh, judge, evaluate, theorize (on or about), conjecture (on or about), postulate, hypothesize: I have been speculating about whether I should take a holiday in the Algarve. Why not go and enjoy yourself instead of speculating on the world's injustices? 2 gamble, wager, take a chance, Colloq have a flutter, play the market, take a plunge: She is too conservative to speculate in the stock market.

speculation

n. 1 conjecture, guess, hypothesis, theory, guesswork, postulation, surmise, supposition, opinion: My speculations have often proved true. Both the steady-state and the big-bang theories of the origins of the universe are pure speculation. 2 thinking, rumination, cogitation, reflection, meditation, contemplation, consideration, cerebration, pondering, wondering, deliberation, evaluation: All serious philosophers engage in idle speculation. 3 gambling, gamble, wagering, wager, taking (a) chance(s) or risk(s), chance-taking: Her speculation on the market paid off handsomely.

speculative

adj. 1 intellectual, ideational, abstract, cogitative, notional, theoretical, hypothetical, conjectural, suppositional, supposititious or suppositious, suppositive, rational, ratiocinative, ideal, idealized, idealistic, unrealistic, unpractical, impractical, analytical: Frank's theories about climate change were entirely speculative and substantially wrong. 2 risky, hazardous, uncertain, unreliable, untrustworthy, doubtful, dubious, untested, unproven, unproved, Colloq iffy, chancy, Slang dicey: You ought to invest your money in less speculative enterprises.

speech n. 1 speaking, talking, articulation, diction, language, expression, enunciation, elocution, speech pattern; communication: His speech is marred by a lisp. Martha studied speech at a well-known drama school. 2 oration, address, lecture, talk, discourse, disquisition, sermon, homily; tirade, harangue, philippic; (sales) pitch, line, song and dance; Colloq spiel, blast: Her speech left her audience awed with her knowledge of the subject. When the householder opens the door, you launch into your speech about the encyclopedia. 3 dialect, idiolect, jargon, parlance, idiom, fa‡on de parler, language, tongue, Colloq lingo: English speech varieties range from Scots to Cockney to Texan to Jamaican.

speechless

adj. 1 mute, dumb, voiceless: He was speechless and in shock for two days following the accident. They claim to speak for animals who are, of course, speechless themselves. 2 dumbfounded or dumfounded, dumbstruck or dumbstricken, wordless, struck dumb, tongue-tied, thunderstruck, shocked, dazed, inarticulate, paralysed, nonplussed, Slang Brit gobsmacked: He was speechless with fury to find his car missing.

speed n. 1 rapidity, fleetness, quickness, speediness, swiftness, velocity, dispatch or despatch, hurry, hurriedness, haste, hastiness, celerity, alacrity, expeditiousness, expedition, briskness, promptness, timeliness; suddenness, precipitateness, precipitousness, abruptness: We reached a speed of Mach 2. What is the speed of your new computer? The speed of her reactions will be recorded during the experiment.

--v. 2 Often, speed up. accelerate, move, expedite, forward, advance, facilitate, boost, further, promote, help, assist, aid, Colloq give a leg up: He vowed to do anything he could to speed the troops' return from the battlefield. 3 hasten, make haste, hurry, rush, charge, dart, bolt, shoot, run, race, sprint, fly, streak, scurry, tear, hustle, scramble, scamper, career, bowl along, go or fly like the wind, Colloq go hell for leather, go like a bat out of hell, belt along, step on it, put one's foot down, zip, zoom, skedaddle, go like a shot, US hightail it, step on the gas, go like greased lightning, make tracks, Slang US burn rubber: Where the road is straight, cars speed along at up to 120 miles per hour.

speedy adj. 1 quick, rapid, swift, brisk, expeditious, fast, immediate, prompt: What happened to the form of justice under which the accused were guaranteed a speedy trial? 2 hasty, precipitate, precipitous, hurried, summary: Some of the townspeople favoured the wrong kind of speedy justice - by lynching. 3 fleet, nimble, wing-footed, winged, fast, quick, rapid, swift: Carol is one of the speediest sprinters on our team.

spell° n. 1 period, interval, time, term, season; stint, turn, run, course, shift, tour (of duty), watch, round: We had a spell of bad weather. Each of us had a spell at the tiller during the crossing.

--v. 2 relieve, replace, substitute for, take over for or from: After 36 hours of uninterrupted duty, I needed someone to spell me for a while.

spellý n. 1 enchantment, allure, charm, magic, witchcraft, witchery, fascination, captivation, enthralment: She had them all under her spell. 2 incantation, formula, charm: The priest uttered some spell and I found myself unable to move. 3 attraction, lure, allure, appeal, draw, pull, magnetism, fascination, influence, mesmerism, hypnotic effect: We were drawn ever onward by the spell of the jungle.

spell° v. 1 augur, portend, presage, promise, hold promise of, signify, point to, indicate, omen, bode, look like, amount to, mean: Harry's conviction will spell the end of his career as a bank robber. 2 spell out. specify, delineate, make clear or plain or explicit, clarify, elucidate: She despises you - I can't spell it out for you more plainly than that.

spellbinding
adj. fascinating, enchanting, enthralling, captivating, enrapturing, bewitching, mesmerizing, charming, overpowering: The preacher put on one of his most spellbinding performances.

spend v. 1 pay out, disburse, expend, lay out, Colloq fork out, dish out, shell out, Brit splash out: That man spends more for a suit than you earn in a year. 2 squander, throw away, fritter away, waste, go through, splurge, lavish, dissipate: He spends money as if it's going out of style. 3 devote, allot, assign, invest, put in, pass: If you don't spend more time with the children they'll forget they have a father.

spendthrift
n. 1 profligate, wastrel, (big) spender, squanderer, prodigal: Because her nephew is such a spendthrift, she put his inheritance in a trust fund.

--adj. 2 wasteful, free-spending, prodigal, profligate, squandering, extravagant, improvident: The chancellor's spendthrift budget will increase inflation.

spent adj. 1 drained, exhausted, prostrate, tired, fatigued, fagged out, weary, wearied, worn out, Colloq (dead) beat, done in, done for, all in, dog-tired, played out, burnt- or burned-out, used up, Brit knackered, done up, US pooped: He was totally spent after sitting in the airport all night during the storm. 2 exhausted, used up, emptied, gone, expended, finished, fini, consumed, depleted: At 70, he was wrong to feel that his life was spent.

spew v. Often, spew forth or out or up. belch (up or out or forth), vomit (up or forth), regurgitate, spit up or out, spout, discharge, emit, eject, send forth, spurt, gush, throw up or out, disgorge, Slang puke: The volcano spewed forth lava for six days and nights.

sphere n. 1 globe, orb, globule, spherule; drop, droplet, bubble: Flotation is provided by thousands of hollow plastic spheres. 2 society, class, level, caste, rank, domain, walk of life, station, stratum, position: They did not belong to the same social sphere. 3 area, field, province, subject, discipline, range, speciality or US specialty, forte, Colloq bailiwick, territory, department, thing, bag: Are Gregorian chants within Stanley's sphere of interest?

spherical adj. spheric, globular, round, ball-shaped, ball-like, globelike, globe-shaped, globose or globous, globoid, globate(d), spheroid(al): They chose simple, spherical lampshades for the sitting-room.

spice n. 1 condiment, relish, seasoning, flavour(ing); herb: Much of the purpose of early explorers was to search for spices. 2 zest, spiciness, piquancy, tang, pungency, bite, sharpness, poignancy, gusto, excitement, seasoning, dash, ,lan, colour, life, vigour, interest, stimulation, stimulant, spirit, Colloq vim, zip, pep, kick, pizazz, punch, ginger, pepper: A holiday in the Bahamas will add a little spice to our lives.

--v. 3 season, flavour: Highly spiced food does not agree with many people. 4 Often, spice up. enliven, inspirit, stimulate, invigorate: The proprietor felt that the new editor should try to spice up the magazine.

spicy adj. 1 zesty, zestful, piquant, tangy, (well-)spiced, (well-)seasoned, hot, peppery, sharp, pungent, snappy, biting, full-bodied, aromatic, savoury, flavoursome, flavourful: This curry is a little too spicy for my taste. 2 off colour, indelicate, suggestive, risqu,, improper, indecent, indecorous, ribald, racy, bawdy, unseemly, offensive, titillating, sexy, Colloq hot: This magazine often publishes spicy nude photos. 3 scandalous, sensational, outrageous, notorious, revealing, revelatory, intimate: She likes to read about the spicy goings-on in Hollywood.

spike n. 1 skewer, stake, prong, treenail, nail, peg, picket, pin, pike, spine: To subdue a vampire, drive a wooden spike through its heart.

--v. 2 impale, stab, stick, spear, pierce, spit, lance: He was spiked through the thigh by a bayonet. 3 disable, thwart, nullify, disarm, block, frustrate, foil, void, balk, check, cancel, annul: Our plans for the picnic were spiked by the weather. 4 strengthen; drug, poison, Slang slip in a Mickey (Finn): I passed out because my drink was spiked.

spill v. 1 pour (out or over), overflow, slop or run or brim over: The milk spilt all over the floor. 2 waste, throw out, lose: Don't cry over spilt milk. 3 spill the beans. reveal or tell or disclose or divulge all or everything, blab, tattle, let the cat out of the bag, confess, Slang squeal, be a stool-pigeon or stoolie, spill one's guts, sing (like a canary), Brit blow the gaff: Finnegan spilled the beans to the cops.

--n. 4 outpouring, flood, leak, leakage: Don't tell me there's been another oil spill! 5 fall, tumble, accident, Colloq cropper, header: Crutchley had a nasty spill at the third fence in the Grand National.

spin v. 1 revolve, turn, rotate, gyrate, twirl, whirl, twist, reel, pirouette, pivot: The car spun out of control on the ice. Fred spun Ginger around the dance floor. 2 invent, concoct, make up, devise, produce, fabricate; weave, relate, retail, recount, narrate, tell, unfold: Each night, father would spin a new chapter in the yarn of the vagabond princess. 3 be dizzy, suffer vertigo, swim, whirl, be giddy: My head was spinning from so much attention by the media. 4 spin off. separate, derive: The manufacturer spun off two new companies specializing in parts and service. 5 spin out. prolong, protract, drag or draw out, stretch out, perpetuate, continue, extend, keep alive, keep going: The case was spun out for years in the courts.

--n. 6 whirl, whirling, twirl, twirling, turn, turning, gyration, reel, pirouette, revolution, revolving, rotation, rotating: He puts a spin on the ball when he throws it. Is the spin of all planets in the same direction? 7 drive, whirl, joyride, ride, tour, excursion, outing, jaunt: On Sunday afternoons we sometimes went for a spin in the car.

spine   n. 1 backbone, spinal column, vertebrae: He can't stand up straight - he has curvature of the spine. 2 thorn, needle, barb, spike, spur, prong, quill, ray, barbel, bristle, prickle, Technical barbule, spicule or spiculum or spicula: The surface of the sea urchin is covered with needle-like spines.

spineless adj. 1 Technical invertebrate: There are more species of spineless creatures than those with internal backbones. 2 weak, feeble, flabby, irresolute, weak-willed, indecisive, ineffectual, ineffective, impotent, powerless: After her reign, any king would appear spineless. 3 cowardly, dastardly, pusillanimous, timorous, lily-livered, white-livered, craven, fearful, timid, spiritless, squeamish, Colloq yellow, chicken-hearted, chicken, yellow-bellied, wimpish: She said you were spineless because you refused to go into the lions' cage.

spiral   n. 1 helix, coil, corkscrew, screw, scroll; whorl, volute, turn, curl: In earlier Greek motifs, the spiral is commoner than the rectangular fret.

--adj. 2 helical, coiled, screw, corkscrew, cochlear or cochleate; scrolled, volute(d), whorled: A spiral staircase is attractive and space-saving, but hard to use.

spire   n. 1 column, tower, belfry; steeple, flŠche: The spire of the church was repeatedly struck by lightning that night. 2 top, pinnacle, apex, peak, summit, acme, tip, crest, crown, vertex: We climbed till we stood on the highest spire above the valley.

spirit   n. 1 anima, breath, life, vitality, vital spirit, pneuma, soul, consciousness, psyche, self, heart, essence: Though past eighty, Mr Wilkins has a great deal of spirit. Even though she is gone, Annabel's spirit is still with us. 2 character, temperament, temper, persona, disposition, mind, will, will-power, attitude, bent, inclination, energy, ardour, desire, impetus, drive, urge, eagerness, zest, zeal, zealousness, fire, passion(s), enthusiasm, motivation, mettle, resolution, resolve, intention, enterprise: We have always admired the spirit of the early pioneers. Bill has shown a lot of the right spirit. 3 zest, pungency, piquancy, warmth, fire, animation, life, liveliness, vivacity, vivaciousness, panache, ,lan, dash, spice, Colloq sauce, pepper: He needs to put more spirit into his sales presentation. 4 See spectre, 1, above. 5 bravery, courage, grit, backbone, valour, pluck, daring, stout-heartedness, manfulness, manliness, gameness, resoluteness, will, will-power, Colloq vim, spunk, get-up-and-go, (right) stuff, guts, US sand: Johnston has the spirit to be a marine. 6 meaning, sense, tenor, signification, purport, intent, intention, purpose, aim, implication, message, essence, quintessence, core, heart, meat, pith, substance, marrow: The spirit of the agreement is different from the way the lawyers worded the contract. Is it in keeping with the spirit of the law? 7 attitude, principle, thought, idea, inspiration, notion, feeling, inclination, impulse: Christmas is associated with the spirit of giving. 8 Often, spirits. temper, mood, sentiments, feelings, cheer, humour, frame of mind; morale: I hope he took my criticism in good spirit. You seem to be in pretty good spirits today. My spirits are quite low. 9 spirits. a feelings, mood, temper, sentiments; morale, esprit de corps, team spirit: Spirits were high at the annual boat races. b alcohol, liquor, whisky, strong drink, Colloq booze, fire-water, Slang chiefly US and Canadian hooch or hootch: It is illegal to sell spirits to minors.

--v. 10 spirit away or off. abduct, make off or away with, carry off, transport, take away, kidnap, steal (off or away with), whisk away, abscond with; make disappear: A thief spirited away a painting from the exhibition. She was spirited away by a band of elves.

spirited adj. lively, sprightly, energetic, vigorous, animated, sparkling, dynamic, buoyant, effervescent, vivacious, ardent, mettlesome: The horse I chose was a bit too spirited. The barrister presented a spirited defence for his client. The 1970s saw spirited revivals of art nouveau and art deco styles.

spiritual adj. 1 sacred, ecclesiastic(al), churchly, clerical, priestly, devotional, holy, divine, sacerdotal, religious, non-secular: Father Craig was in charge of the spiritual aspects of our lives. 2 non-material, incorporeal, psychic(al), mental, psychological, inner: Spiritual needs are less easily satisfied than physical needs.

spit v. 1 expectorate; dribble, salivate, drool, slaver, sputter, splutter; discharge, spew (forth), eject: Spitting is forbidden. Don't you hate people who spit when they talk? The volcano spat huge boulders into the sky. 2 spitting image or spit and image. twin, duplicate, clone, image, counterpart, likeness, copy: She is the spitting image of her mother.

--n. 3 spittle, saliva, drool, Technical sputum: A large gobbet of spit clung to his beard.

spite n. 1 spitefulness, maliciousness, malice, malevolence, malignity, ill will, venom, spleen, rancour, animosity, gall (and wormwood), resentment, bitterness, hostility, antagonism, hatred, hate, Colloq bitchiness: Just out of spite, Marian saw to it that he didn't get the job. 2 in spite of. despite, notwithstanding, regardless of, ignoring, in defiance of: In spite of his efforts to be helpful, she despises him.

--v. 3 annoy, irritate, vex, upset, disconcert, offend, provoke, discomfit, pique, put out, hurt, injure, wound, Colloq peeve, get under (someone's) skin, needle, US do a number on: He would cut off his nose to spite his face. He told her he was happy only to spite her for having divorced him.

spiteful adj. rancorous, bitter, acrimonious, malevolent, malicious, venomous, hateful, invidious, hostile, antagonistic, unfriendly, unforgiving, retaliative or retaliatory, punitive, retributive or retributory: Cutting off Colin's allowance because he forgot your birthday was a spiteful thing to do.

splash v. 1 spatter, bespatter, splatter, shower, spray, sprinkle, besprinkle, Brit splodge or US also splotch; mottle, spot: The painters splashed paint all over the floor. My freshly washed car was soon splashed with mud again. 2 blazon, spread, plaster: Was that your picture splashed across the front page of yesterday's paper?

--n. 3 spatter, spray, splatter, sprinkle, spot, stain, smear, smudge, Brit splodge or US also splotch: There's a splash of tomato sauce on the tablecloth. 4 impression, show, uproar, ado, brouhaha, sensation, commotion, excitement, US foofaraw, Colloq to-do: After all the advance publicity, he was sure to make a big splash in the theatre.

splendid adj. 1 splendorous, magnificent, resplendent, dazzling, gorgeous, showy, dashing, marvellous, spectacular, grand, glorious, lavish, ornate, sumptuous, majestic, brilliant, extraordinary, exceptional, superb, supreme, imposing, impressive, awe-inspiring, awesome, lush, plush, rich, luxurious, Colloq splendiferous, posh, swank(y), ritzy: The mausoleum built by Shah Jehan for his wife was far more splendid than his own palace. 2 impressive, marvellous, brilliant, eminent, prominent, superior, noteworthy, notable, celebrated, illustrious, famous, distinguished, exemplary, remarkable, admirable, conspicuous, outstanding, sublime, striking, extraordinary, successful, admirable, meritorious, creditable: His splendid victory at Waterloo was the climax of his military career. 3 excellent, superior, pre-eminent, fine, marvellous, extraordinary, exceptional, unbelievable, incredible, first-class, unequalled, unsurpassed, fabulous, peerless, matchless, nonpareil, superlative, praiseworthy, laudable, Brit brilliant, Colloq great, colossal, supercolossal, stupendous, fab, fantastic, super, smashing, A1 or A-1 or A-one, tiptop, capital, Brit brill, Slang far-out, way-out, dandy, cool, keen, US solid, out of sight, fantabulous, boss, neat, major: Bill is a splendid dancer.

splendour n. 1 magnificence, grandeur, brilliance, display, radiance, resplendence, sumptuousness, stateliness, majesty, panoply, spectacle, show, glory, pomp, gorgeousness, dazzle, refulgence, beauty, splendidness, exquisiteness, luxuriousness, richness, lavishness, luxury, Colloq swankiness, poshness, swank, ritziness: There was nothing to match the splendour of the court of Louis XIV. 2 brilliance, shine, lustre, light, effulgence, brightness, glitter, dazzle, refulgence, luminosity, luminousness, gloss: The splendour of the city's golden domes was reflected in the setting sun.

splice v. 1 join, unite, marry, bind, conjoin; knit, entwine, intertwine, braid, plait, twist, interlace: After the two rope ends are spliced together, they should be seized with marline.

--n. 2 joining, union, splicing, joint, connection or Brit connexion, tie, bond, binding, fastening, linking, linkage: A proper splice will probably be stronger than the single cable.

splinter n. 1 sliver, fragment, piece; scrap, shard, shred, chip: A splinter of glass is stuck in my finger.

--v. 2 shatter, break, fragment, split, disintegrate, smash to smithereens: The lamp hit the floor and splintered into a million pieces.

split v. 1 Often, split up or apart. divide, separate, cleave, cut or chop apart, cut or chop in two, pull or tear apart, rend, break or snap apart or in two, break up, come apart, rupture, partition, detach, become detached; bisect, dichotomize: He split the log with one blow of his axe. The ship split apart on the reef. The party may split on the tax issue. 2 Often, split up. divorce, separate, go separate ways, break up, part company: After 30 years, the Hitchcocks have decided to split up. 3 Often, split up. branch, fork, diverge, separate: The road splits to pass round the pond. 4 Often, split up. divide (up), apportion, deal out, dole out, distribute, allot, share or parcel out, carve up: Why don't we split the dinner bill five ways? 5 burst, crack or break up, fall apart or about, Slang bust: I laughed so much I thought I'd split! 6 leave, depart, go, Slang take a (run-out) powder, take it on the lam, beat it, scram, skedaddle: When they heard the sirens of the police cars, they split.

--n. 7 crack, cleft, fissure, chink, cranny, slit, slot, crevice, groove, furrow, channel, sulcus; gap, hiatus, lacuna, opening, separation, division, chasm; rift, break, rupture, fracture; slash, gash, tear, rip, rent: The edges of the tectonic plates mark splits in the earth's crust. Pressure caused the splits in these plaster columns. I had to borrow a tablecloth to cover up the split in my trousers. 8 division, dichotomy, schism, breach, rupture, partition, disunion, discord; break, separation: Don't you think that the issue will cause a split within the party?

--adj. 9 divided, separated; halved, bisected, cleft; cut, broken, fractured: The result was a split vote along party lines. Their first containers were of split bamboo.

splurge n. 1 display, show, ostentatiousness, extravagance, indulgence, access, splash, burst, outburst, spree: In his final splurge he bet everything on the number 14.

--v. 2 Often, splurge on. squander or dissipate or waste or burn (up) or throw away money (on), show off or flaunt one's money, Slang blow everything (on): Victor splurged on toys for the children.

spoil v. 1 ruin, destroy, wreck, queer, mess up, upset, demolish, harm, damage, Colloq kill: You really spoiled everything by telling Mum about my pet frog. Spare the rod and spoil the child. 2 damage, mar, injure, harm, deface, disfigure, scar, blemish: The painting was spoiled by some fanatic who slashed it. 3 baby, mollycoddle, coddle, indulge, pamper, dote on, spoonfeed, Rare cocker: Barbara really spoils her family terribly by indulging their every whim. 4 turn, go off or bad, curdle, moulder, decay, decompose, become addle(d), rot, putrefy, mildew: The milk will spoil if not refrigerated. 5 be spoiling for. itch (for or after), yearn (for), be eager (for), be keen (for), look for, be bent on, be desirous of, crave, be after: If you give Tom a drink he'll be spoiling for a fight. Oh, I thought he was always spoiling for a fight.

--n. 6 spoils. loot, booty, plunder, pillage, prizes, pickings, Slang swag, take, goods, boodle: The Nazis took the paintings as spoils of war.

spoilsport
n. killjoy, damper, dog in the manger, Colloq wet blanket, US party pooper: Some spoilsport tipped off Jane about her surprise birthday party.

spoken adj. 1 oral, vocal, verbal, viva voce: My spoken commentary was recorded for later broadcast. He has an excellent command of spoken French. 2 spoken for. See speak, 13, above.

sponsor n. 1 backer, supporter, promoter, angel, patron, Maecenas, subsidizer: Make a contribution and we will list you as a sponsor of the games. 2 (radio or television) advertiser: The American broadcasting catch-phrase 'A word from our sponsor' is not to be taken literally.

--v. 3 back, support, promote, fund, patronize, subsidize, finance, underwrite: Hughes agreed to sponsor a campaign to clean up the environment.

spontaneous

adj. 1 unannounced, unpremeditated, unplanned, impromptu, extemporaneous, extempore, unprepared, unrehearsed, offhand, ad lib, spur-of-the-moment, Colloq off the cuff: Miss Malkin's spontaneous speech could not have been better had it been written out. 2 natural, unforced, unbidden, instinctive, instinctual, unconscious, reflex, automatic, mechanical, immediate, offhand, unguarded, unthinking, unwitting, involuntary, impetuous, impulsive, Slang knee-jerk: How could you doubt the sincerity of such an outburst of spontaneous affection? My spontaneous reaction is to beg you not to take up sky-diving.

sporadic adj. occasional, intermittent, random, irregular, uneven, erratic, chance, unexpected; spasmodic(al), fitful, periodic(al): There has been sporadic unrest in that area of the city.

sport n. 1 recreation, diversion, pastime, amusement, entertainment, play, distraction, relaxation, divertissement, pleasure, enjoyment, fun: I fish for sport, not to earn a living. 2 jest, humour, fun, mockery: They often call him rude names, but only in sport. 3 make sport of. tease, deride, make a laughing-stock (of), (hold up to) ridicule, make a fool of: She doesn't like it when you make sport of her husband.

--v. 4 frolic, gambol, cavort, romp, caper, play, frisk, lark, rollick, skip about: These octogenarians are sporting about like young foals. 5 show off, exhibit, flaunt, display, wear: Keith arrived, sporting the latest in Italian footwear.

sportive adj. frisky, gambolling, cavorting, frolicking, romping, capering, rollicking, sprightly, coltish, spirited, frolicsome, buoyant, gamesome, gay, kittenish, merry, playful, gleeful, light-hearted, blithe, prankish, waggish: He watched a sportive group of children playing hide-and-seek.

sportsmanship

n. fair play, sportsmanliness, fairness, honourableness, honesty, honour, probity, scrupulousness, integrity, uprightness, justice, justness: Good sportsmanship requires that the loser congratulate the winner.

sporty adj. informal, casual; stylish, chic, smart, trendy, fashionable, modish, … la mode, up to date, showy, rakish, Colloq swank(y), loud, Slang classy, swell, flashy, snazzy, sharp, US and Canadian spiffy: He came to dinner wearing sporty clothes. Yes, I suppose you might call Fred a sporty dresser.

spot n. 1 mark, patch, speck, blot, blotch, blemish, speckle, fleck, particle, mote, macula, smudge, stain, stigma, discoloration, Brit splodge or US also splotch: There's a spot of ink on your shirt. 2 site, place, locale, location, locality, scene, setting, section, area, neighbourhood, quarter: The Coopers picked out a lovely spot to build their new house. 3 morsel, bit, bite, Colloq smidgen or smidgin: Let's stop in here for a spot of tea. 4 predicament, situation, quandary, mess: John said he was in a bit of a spot, and needed to borrow œ20 until the end of the week. 5 spots. eruptions, pimples, acne, pustules, blackheads, comedos or comedones, whiteheads; boils, blains, wens; pock-marks; Old-fashioned US and Canadian hickeys: Teenagers often get spots.

--v. 6 see, catch sight of, glimpse, discern, identify, pick out, distinguish, single out, detect, sight, recognize, make out, descry: I think I spotted Molly in the crowd. 7 mark, stain, fleck, speckle, spray, splash, spatter, bespatter, sully, soil, dirty, taint, besmirch, smudge: The car's shiny new paintwork was spotted with mud.

spotless adj. 1 immaculate, clean, gleaming, shiny, polished, unspotted, spick and span: The floor is so spotless you could eat off it. 2 pure, unsullied, unassailable, flawless, faultless, untarnished, blameless, irreproachable: Samantha has a spotless reputation.

spotlight n. 1 arc light, searchlight, US pin spotlight, Colloq US (pin) spot: I couldn't see the audience with the spotlight shining in my eyes. 2 focus (of attention), limelight, public eye: How does it feel to have been in the spotlight most of your life, Miss Hallward?

--v. 3 light (up), illuminate, focus (light) upon or on, shine or shed or throw or cast light upon or on, emphasize, highlight, draw attention to, feature, give prominence to, stress, accentuate, accent, point up, underscore, underline, point up: The students held a sit-in to spotlight the cuts in their grants.

spotty adj. 1 spotted, dotted, speckled, freckled, flecked, blotched, blotchy, stained, marked, pied, piebald, brindle(d), skewbald, mottled, motley, dapple(d), macular, foxed; soiled, dirty; Brit splodgy, splodged or US also splotchy, splotched: Pages of some old books are spotty with brown stains. 2 pimply, pimpled, blotched, blotchy, acned, pock-marked, pocky, bad, Scots plouky or plooky: Ian used to have a spotty complexion, but it's clear now. 3 patchy, irregular, uneven, erratic, sporadic, capricious, fitful: Radio reception in our area is spotty during electrical storms.

spout v. 1 discharge, emit, squirt, spurt, jet, shoot, gush, erupt, spew (up or out or forth), spit, eject, disgorge, vomit (up or forth), pour (out or forth), flow, stream: Steam spouts from many vents in Iceland. The water came spouting out of the hose and drenched me. 2 ramble on, rant, rave, carry on, pontificate, orate, declaim, hold forth, maunder (on), witter on, hold forth, expatiate, speechify, talk, Colloq go on, Brit rabbit on: Harry, as usual, was spouting about his golf handicap.

--n. 3 waterspout, gargoyle, downspout, duct, drain, outlet, conduit: The rainwater drains into the gutters, then into the spouts. 4 up the spout. gone, lost, destroyed, beyond hope or recovery, to be written off or abandoned: Our dream of finding the treasure was now up the spout.

sprawl v. 1 spread (out), stretch (out), straddle, ramble, meander, wander, straggle, branch out: Greater Los Angeles sprawls over a huge area of some 450 square miles. 2 spread out, stretch out, loll, lounge, slouch, slump, recline, lie about or around: A dozen guests were sprawled on blankets at the beach party.

--n. 3 spread, stretch, expansion, extension: Some suburbs of large cities have been swallowed up in urban sprawl.

spray° v. 1 sprinkle, spatter, scatter, shower, disperse, diffuse, atomize, spread: Try to spray the insecticide evenly over the plants.

--n. 2 shower, sprinkling, drizzle, mist, sprinkle, spindrift or spoondrift: The strong wind carried the spray from the whitecaps right up into the streets of the town. 3 atomizer, sprayer, sprinkler, vaporizer, aerosol: Richard bought me a cologne spray for Mother's Day.

sprayý n. flower or floral arrangement, nosegay, posy, bouquet, sprig, branch, bough: The scores of tiny roses were interspersed with sprays of baby's-breath.

spread v. 1 Often, spread out. diffuse, distribute, disperse, disseminate, broadcast, sow, scatter, strew, shed, dispel, dissipate: Spread the mulch as evenly as possible to a depth of several inches. 2 Often, spread about or around. broadcast, publicize, make known, bruit about, air, televise, circulate, publish, distribute, disseminate, trumpet, announce, pronounce, promulgate, advertise, enounce, make public, tell the world, herald, repeat, recite: Start spreading the news: I'm leaving today. 3 Often, spread out. unfold, draw out, display, stretch out, open out, extend, lay out, fan out, unroll, unfurl: Please spread the cloth on the table. 4 Often, spread out. stretch (out), extend, protract, prolong, drag out, distribute, disperse: The bank said I could spread the payments over twenty years. 5 Often, spread out. stretch, extend, separate, put apart or out, part: He spread his arms and Lorna rushed into them. 6 grow, develop, increase, broaden, expand, extend, widen, enlarge, mushroom, proliferate, sprawl, branch out; metastasize: To meet the demand for the pies, bakeries began to spread throughout the country. The cancer, unchecked, was bound to spread. 7 smear, apply, smooth, put, rub, cover, layer, plaster, plate, coat, wash, glaze, paint, varnish, overlay, overspread; cloak, mantle, swaddle, wrap, blanket: I was careful to spread the paint evenly, avoiding streaks. When the cake has cooled, spread the chocolate icing over it.

--n. 8 spreading, extension, extending, expansion, expanding, enlargement, enlarging, development, developing, increase, increasing, proliferation, proliferating, broadening, growth, widening, mushrooming, dispersion, dispersal, dispersing, dissemination, disseminating, distribution, distributing, dispensation, dispensing: The spread of the disease is uncontrolled. One of the functions of a university is to encourage the spread of knowledge. 9 extent, expanse, area, span, sweep, vastness, stretch, reach, breadth, depth, size, dimensions, compass, limits, bounds, boundary or boundaries: As our craft accelerated past the moon, we were awed by the spread of empty space that lay before us. 10 range, extent, scope, span, difference: There was too much of a spread between the cost and the selling price. 11 feast, banquet, meal, dinner, repast, barbecue; table; Colloq feed: I have never seen a spread like the one laid on for the returning champions. 12 butter, margarine, jam, jelly, preserve, conserve, confiture, paste, US old-fashioned oleo: What kind of spread do you like on your toast? 13 ranch, landholding, holding, property, place, plantation, farm, homestead, place: His spread in Texas eventually amounted to 10,000 acres. 14 bedspread, counterpane, coverlet, bed-cover, cover, quilt, eiderdown, duvet, afghan, US comforter, US and Canadian throw: Leave the spread off the bed, Carlotta, as I want to take a nap.

spree n. frolic, romp, lark, outing, escapade, revel, wild party, fling, debauch, orgy, bacchanalia; drinking-bout, carousal, Colloq bender, binge, jag: Bruce has gone off on another of his sprees.

sprightly adj. lively, chipper, spry, vivacious, cheerful, gay, brisk, animated, sportive, active, alert, nimble, agile, energetic, jaunty, perky, playful, spirited: She is quite sprightly for a grandmother of 78.

spring v. 1 leap, bound, jump, hop, vault, dart, fly, bounce: He sprang to his feet when she came into the room. When Tom came to the stream, he sprang over it. The leprechaun sprang out from behind a tree. 2 arise, appear, grow, come up, rise, come into being or existence, be born, emerge, sprout, shoot up, burst forth: Where the dragon's teeth were sown, an entire army sprang up. 3 Often, spring up or from. originate, begin, start, evolve; proceed from, stem from, descend from, derive from, come from, develop from: He learned how the practice of scratching the head in perplexity had sprung up. I wondered where the term horse latitudes sprang from. 4 start or begin or experience or cause to occur or appear or happen suddenly or unexpectedly, broach, pop, introduce or divulge or reveal or disclose suddenly or unexpectedly: The canoe sprang a leak and started to sink. He likes to spring trick questions at candidates in an interview. 5 spring for. pay for, treat (someone) to, assume the expense(s) of: If you go to a place I choose, I'll spring for dinner.

--n. 6 leap, bound, jump, hop, vault, bounce, skip: In one spring the cat cleared the garden wall and was off. 7 bounciness, bounce, resiliency, resilience, springiness, buoyancy, elasticity, sprightliness, airiness, flexibility: Despite her age, there's still a lot of spring in her step. 8 source, fount, fountain-head, well-spring, well, origin, beginning, root: From what secret spring does his understanding arise? 9 springtime, Eastertide, Maytime: At 35, James is still in the spring of life.

--adj. 10 vernal: We exulted in the spring sunshine.

sprout v. bud, germinate, come up, arise, begin, bloom, blossom, flower: With this warm weather, everything in my garden is beginning to sprout.

spruce adj. 1 neat, dapper, smart, trim, well turned out, well-groomed, elegant, Colloq natty: Peter Thornton turned up for dinner looking as spruce as can be.

--v. 2 spruce up. tidy (up), neaten (up), primp, clean (up), straighten out or up, smarten (up), titivate or tittivate: Some people are coming to dinner, so first spruce up your room and then spruce yourself up.

spunk n. nerve, courage, pluck, spirit, gameness, resolve, resolution, mettle, heart, grit, spunkiness, backbone, marrow, Colloq guts, gumption, Brit bottle, US sand: Frances has shown she has tremendous spunk to have got this far despite her handicap.

spur n. 1 goad, prod, urging, impulse, incitement, instigation, prompting, pressure, stimulus, stimulation, incentive, provocation, inducement, encouragement, motive, motivation: The company paid the workers a bonus for each piece they completed as a spur to productivity. 2 projection, prong, spike, spine, gaff, barb, quill, tine, barbel, barbule, process: The hook has a spur that prevents the fish from disengaging. 3 on the spur of the moment. impetuously, impulsively, unthinkingly, unpremeditatedly, impromptu, on the spot; rashly, thoughtlessly, recklessly, hastily, brashly, incautiously, unexpectedly, suddenly: On the spur of the moment, we decided to fly to Cap d'Antibes for the weekend.

--v. 4 goad, prod, urge, egg on, impel, incite, prompt, press, push, pressure or Brit pressurize, stimulate, drive, provoke, induce, encourage, motivate, excite, animate: The sales force are spurred on by the huge bonuses the company offers.

spurious adj. false, counterfeit, sham, fake, fraudulent, bogus, mock, imitation, simulated, unauthentic, ungenuine, forged, feigned, pretended, deceitful, meretricious, contrived, factitious, artificial, ersatz, synthetic, Colloq pseudo, phoney or US also phony: His brother was jailed for peddling spurious Egyptian burial artefacts to archaeologists.

spurn v. reject, disdain, scorn, contemn, despise, rebuff, repudiate, refuse, sneer at, snub, brush off, turn down, turn one's back on or upon, look down on or upon, Colloq cold-shoulder, turn one's nose up at, sneeze at: Judith spurned her father's offer of a loan.

spurt n. 1 burst, access, effort, outbreak, spell, interval, spate, moment, instant: With a sudden spurt of speed he caught up with me. 2 increase, advance, acceleration, rise, improvement: After a brief spurt in business in January, everything stopped.

--v. 3 gush, spew, squirt, jet, shoot, erupt, burst, surge: The minute the plumber left, water began spurting out of the drain again.

spy n. 1 double agent, foreign agent, secret(-service) agent, intelligence agent, undercover agent, mole, fifth-columnist, CIA man or woman or agent, MI5 or MI6 man or woman or agent; informer, informant, Colloq mole, Slang stool-pigeon, stoolie, fink, ratfink: In those days, everyone was a spy and you could trust no one.

--v. 2 Usually, spy on or upon. follow, shadow, trail, watch, observe, reconnoitre, keep under surveillance, US surveil, Colloq tail, check out, case: Why should anyone from a foreign government be spying on my mother? 3 espy, glimpse, spot, catch sight or a glimpse of, descry, note, notice, see, discern: I spied him getting into a yellow convertible.

spying n. espionage, undercover work, secret service; detection, intelligence, surveillance: Virtually every government engages in spying.

19.12 squad...
=-

squad n. unit, team, band, company, crew, force, troop, cadre, gang, section, group, squadron, platoon, party: They decided to call in the drugs squad. Has the work squad returned to base yet?

square adj. 1 equilateral, quadrangular, rectangular, right-angled, quadrilateral, four-sided, cubic, cubed, six-sided, boxy: She bought a work of art consisting of three square pieces of red plastic on a mauve ground. He keeps trying to put square pegs into round holes. 2 equal, on a par, even, on equal terms, settled, balanced: With this payment, our accounts are now all square. 3 even, true, exact, straight, accurate, precise, correct: Make sure that the corners are perfectly square. 4 honourable, upright, honest, straightforward, fair (and square), decent, ethical, open, (open and) above-board, right, (right and) proper, clean, just, equitable, Colloq on the level, on the up and up: I have never had anything but square dealings with Fred Latham. 5 healthful, healthy, nutritious, substantial, solid, full, generous, satisfying, filling, unstinting: You could always count on three square meals a day when staying at Auntie Maisie's. 6 na‹ve, innocent; bourgeois, conservative, conventional, unsophisticated, provincial, old-fashioned, conformist, strait-laced, unimaginative, predictable, Colloq antediluvian, uptight, out of it, not with it, not in the know, not hip or hep, unhip, stuffy, behind the times, straight, US L-7: We were at the age when anyone over 25 was considered square.

--n. 7 rectilinear figure, rectangle; cube, block: He took a square of wood and quickly carved it into the shape of a duck. 8 plaza, piazza, place, park, (village) green, market-place, market (square), agora, quadrangle: We like to sit on the benches in the square outside my house and chat with the neighbours. 9 bourgeois, conservative, conformist, traditionalist, (old) fogy or fogey, die-hard; outsider; Colloq stuffed shirt, fuddy-duddy, US longhair, L-7, Slang US nerd, dweeb: My parents did not understand me - they were real old squares.

--v. 10 stiffen, throw back, straighten (up), tense: I squared my shoulders and prepared for the worst. 11 Usually, square with. meet, match (with), conform to or with, obey, correspond to or with, tally with, accord with, agree with, reconcile with or to: These activities do not square with the plans set out by the directors. 12 adapt, adjust, change, modify, harmonize, accommodate, arrange, comply with, fit: Ronald was unable to square his beliefs with what they were teaching him at the seminary. 13 settle, arrange, come to terms, patch up, clear up, satisfy, fix: Don't worry about the customs officials - I'll square it with them later on.

squawk v. 1 cackle, screech, shriek, yell, yowl, whoop, hoot, scream, call, cry: The parrot kept squawking 'Where is the treasure? Where is the treasure?' 2 complain, grumble, whine, grouse, protest, object, (make a) fuss, yap, yowl, Slang bellyache, bitch, kick, beef, gripe, kick up a fuss: Oh, stop squawking and get on with your work!

--n. 3 complaint, grouse, grumble, protest, Colloq kick, beef, gripe: If you have a squawk, take it up with the sergeant.

squeamish adj. 1 dainty, delicate, prudish, punctilious, demanding, critical, exacting, difficult, fussy, scrupulous, fastidious, meticulous, painstaking, finicky or finical, Colloq persnickety or pernickety, fuddy-duddy: The museum directors were too squeamish to put on an exhibition of nudes. 2 nauseous, qualmish, easily disgusted or revolted or nauseated: Sam was too squeamish to watch open-heart surgery on the TV.

squeeze v. 1 press, compress, compact, crush, squash, wring, pinch, nip, grip, tweak: Each morning Anne squeezes an orange to make fresh juice for Edgar. Everyone knows that squeezing the nose between the thumb and forefinger means that something smells. 2 extract, wrest, exact, extort, milk, wrench, pry (out), tear, Colloq bleed: It is doubtful that they will be able to squeeze a contribution out of old Scrooge. 3 milk, Colloq shake down, bleed, lean on, put the screws to, put the squeeze on, twist (someone's) arm, US put the arm on: You'll have to squeeze Fletcher if you want to get paid. 4 ram, jam, pack, stuff, cram, crowd, force, press, wedge: We were squeezed into the train so tightly that I could hardly breathe. 5 clasp, clench, embrace, hug, hold, enfold, fold, clutch, Archaic clip: She squeezed him close as they bade goodbye. 6 squeeze through or by. get through or by, pass, (barely) succeed, Colloq squeak through or by, (barely) make it: He managed to squeeze through the exam with a pass mark, but it was touch-and-go.

--n. 7 clasp, embrace, hug, clutch, Colloq clinch: She gave me a little squeeze to signal her affection. 8 pressure: I was beginning to feel the squeeze between inflation and high interest rates. 9 crush, jam, crowd, squash, press: There was such a squeeze of people at the sale that I couldn't get in. 10 girlfriend, mistress, sweetheart, Colloq sweetie, Slang moll, broad, Archaic doxy: Willie showed up with his current squeeze. 11 put the squeeze on. press, bring pressure to bear on, urge, influence, Brit pressurize, US pressure: The bank was beginning to put the squeeze on me to repay my overdraft.

squelch   v. 1 suppress, subdue, put down, quell, quash, defeat, overcome, outdo, humiliate, Colloq shoot or slap down, take down a peg (or two), take the wind out of (someone's) sails, settle (someone's) hash: The slightest sign of disapproval from No‰l was enough to squelch the most arrogant toady.

--n. 2 riposte, retort, comeback, quip, sally, gibe or jibe, barb, Colloq wisecrack, put-down: One of the best squelches was when Oscar Wilde said, referring to a bon mot, 'I wish I'd said that', to which Whistler said, 'You will, Oscar. You will.'

squire   v. 1 escort, accompany, conduct, go with, take; convoy: Who will squire my sisters to the prince's ball?

--n. 2 esquire, gentleman, landowner, landholder, landed proprietor: The old squire held his head high among the county aristocracy.

squirm   v. wriggle, writhe, twist, flounder, shift, fidget, be (very) uncomfortable, agonize, Colloq sweat: The boy squirmed under the stern gaze of the headmaster.

19.13 stab...

=-

stab v. 1 stick, puncture, prick, lance, jab, pierce, run through, impale, gore, transfix, knife, bayonet, skewer, spike, spit, spear, pin; plunge, poke, thrust: In the melee, George was stabbed in the arm. It is said that she stabbed a fork into his hand. 2 stab in the back. harm, betray, sell out, double-cross, give the Judas kiss, play false with: As soon as he had left, they stabbed him in the back by phoning the authorities.

--n. 3 puncture, jab, thrust, (stab-)wound: The coroner's office reported that the body had six stabs in the abdomen. 4 attempt, try, essay; guess, conjecture: Even if you are wrong, you lose nothing by making a stab at the right answer. 5 pang, twinge, pain, ache, hurt, stitch: Doctor, I get a terrible stab of pain in my side when I turn that way. 6 stab in the back. treachery, betrayal, double-cross, Judas kiss, kiss of death, duplicity: Informing on someone to the tax inspector is a really nasty stab in the back.

stability n. 1 steadiness, solidity, firmness, soundness, sturdiness, strength: These flimsy structures are not known for their stability. 2 steadfastness, constancy, dependability, reliability, tenacity, resolve, resoluteness, perseverance, determination, persistence, durability, lasting quality, solidity, permanence: The stability of the government was in doubt as the crisis continued.

stable adj. 1 steady, solid, firm, sound, sturdy, strong, durable, well-founded, fast, sure, established, deep-rooted, stout: The building is designed to remain stable even in a severe earthquake. 2 lasting, enduring, long-lasting, long-standing, secure, steadfast, steady, strong, unchanging, unchanged, unchangeable, unalterable, fixed, invariable, unwavering, immutable, permanent: A stable relationship has existed between our countries for generations. The relationship you and I enjoy has remained stable all our lives. 3 sane, (well-)balanced, responsible, reasonable, sensible, competent, accountable: He seemed a nice, stable young man, and nobody would have guessed that he had a drugs habit.

stack n. 1 pile, heap, mound, mass, accumulation, hill, mountain, store, stock, bank, deposit, supply, stockpile, hoard, load, bundle, bale, Colloq US and Canadian stash: This stack of paper ought to be enough to last through the next printing. 2 haystack, cock, haycock, rick, rickle, hayrick, Brit clamp: The stacks were covered with a tarpaulin before it started to rain. 3 collection, aggregation, accumulation, agglomeration, amassment, mass, load, pack, amount, abundance, plenty, profusion, volume, array, sea, throng, multitude, swarm, host, number, quantity, pile-up: We have a huge stack of orders to process this morning. 4 smokestack, chimney, chimney-stack, funnel; Building soil stack: They built the stack very tall to carry the fumes away from the town below. 5 blow one's stack. anger, become angry, become furious or infuriated, rage, rant, lose one's temper, Slang blow or lose one's cool, get hot under the collar, blow one's top: The boss will blow his stack if we miss the deadline.

--v. 6 Often, stack up. pile (up), heap, accumulate, amass, store, stock, stockpile, hoard, collect, aggregate, agglomerate, Colloq stash (away), squirrel away: Stack those boxes neatly in the corner. Has he stacked up enough points to qualify? 7 stack up. a make sense, add up, agree, jibe, be verifiable, Colloq check out: The ledgers don't stack up with the cheque-book. The two sets of figures simply don't stack up. b compare, measure up, hold a candle to, be on a par (with), be as good as: He could never stack up to Olivier.

stadium n. arena, ground, amphitheatre, hippodrome, coliseum or colosseum, circus: The new football stadium can accommodate 60,000 spectators.

staff n. 1 stick, pole, standard, baton, rod, pikestaff, pike, stake, cane, stave, shaft, alpenstock, shillelagh, club, truncheon, mace, crook, crozier, sceptre, wand, caduceus: Carrying the ceremonial staff and dressed in full regalia, the officer impressively opened the royal court proceedings. 2 personnel, employees, help, workforce, crew, team, organization: Before we introduced computers, we had a staff of fifty doing nothing but filing.

stage n. 1 position, situation, grade, level, stratum, tier, echelon, step, station, place, point, spot, juncture, division, phase, lap; status, condition: We have to reach the third stage before going on to the fourth. 2 platform, dais, podium; rostrum: After the performance, the audience threw flowers onto the stage. 3 the stage. show business, the theatre, the boards, the footlights, Broadway, Chiefly Brit the West End; acting, Thespianism; Colloq showbiz: That first burst of applause decided her to make the stage her career.

--v. 4 put on, produce, present, mount, exhibit: If we can't get the theatre, why don't we stage the show in Mr Kimble's barn? 5 put on, contrive, organize, originate, devise, make up, concoct, fake, trump up, stage-manage, manipulate, manoeuvre: It seems that the enthusiastic reception given his wife had been staged solely for his benefit.

stagger v. 1 totter, reel, lurch, teeter, sway, walk unsteadily or shakily, pitch, rock, wobble: When he staggered in, they thought he was drunk till they saw the knife in his back. I was already staggering under the burden of a heavy mortgage and three children and two elderly parents to care for. 2 surprise, amaze, astound, astonish, overwhelm, overcome, dumbfound or dumfound, shock, stupefy, stun, nonplus, floor, confound, bewilder, startle, jolt, shake (up), take one's breath away, make one's head swim, take (someone) aback, throw (someone) off balance, tax, burden, Colloq flabbergast, flummox, bowl over, Slang blow (someone's) mind: The cost of cleaning up the oil spill will be staggering. He was staggered by her announcement. 3 alternate, space (out), vary, rearrange, zigzag, US change off: Working hours will be staggered during the holiday period. We could strengthen the structure by staggering the positions of the columns.

stagnant adj. motionless, standing, still, quiet, sluggish, unmoving, immobile, flat; stale, foul, putrid, putrescent, putrefied, polluted, dirty, contaminated, filthy: The malarial mosquitoes thrive in pools of stagnant water in the tropical swamps.

stagnate v. languish, idle, vegetate, deteriorate, degenerate, decline, go to seed or pot, decay, rust, moulder, decompose, spoil, rot: He felt he had stagnated in a backwater of civilization for far too long.

staid adj. sedate, rigid, stiff, prim, dignified, sober, calm, composed, quiet, restrained, solemn, serious, serious-minded, grave, sober-sided: One expects a judge to be rather staid in his behaviour.

stain n. 1 blot, mark, spot, discoloration, blotch, smutch, smirch, speck, Brit splodge or US also splotch: There's a stain on your tie. 2 mark, blot (on the escutcheon), stigma, blemish, Brit blot on one's copybook, Colloq US black eye: His cowardice in battle was a permanent stain on his reputation. 3 dye, colour, colouring, tint, tinge, pigment: An indigo stain was used to bring up certain features in microscopy.

--v. 4 blot, mark, spot, discolour, blotch, speckle, dye, spatter, splatter, tinge, smudge, smutch, splash: The tablecloth was stained red from the spilt wine. 5 spoil, defile, ruin, smirch, besmirch, taint, tarnish, stigmatize, shame, disgrace, sully, contaminate, soil, corrupt: Her reign was stained with the blood of the thousands she had tortured and executed.

stake° n. 1 stick, post, spike, picket, paling, pale, pole, pike, stave; palisade, pole, upright, pillar, column: They tied the goat to a stake and hid, waiting for the tiger to catch the scent. 2 pull up stakes. move (house), resettle, move on, migrate, emigrate, leave, depart: It was time to pull up stakes and find a new camp-site.

--v. 3 tether, tie (up), secure, fasten, picket, lash, leash, hitch, chain: The ponies were staked out in the pasture. 4 Usually, stake out. (a fence (in or off), confine, pen, enclose, close in or off, hem in, shut in, impound, enclose, cage, wall in: We hired a man to stake out a large enough area to keep the horses. b mark off or out, define, delimit, outline, demarcate, delineate, circumscribe: The pioneers had already staked out the land they planned to cultivate.

stakeý n. 1 bet, wager, ante, risk, hazard: If you want to make the game interesting, you'll have to raise the stakes. 2 investment, interest, share, involvement, concern: Myra has a considerable stake in the outcome of the shareholders' meeting. 3 at stake. at hazard, hazarded, at risk, risked, on the table, in jeopardy, jeopardized, concerned, involved: Don't take the matter lightly, as Tom's reputation is at stake.

--v. 4 risk, jeopardize, venture, put (money) on, chance, hazard, gamble, wager, bet: I had staked my last penny on that gold-mine.

stale adj. 1 old, past its prime, unfresh, dry, dried-out, hardened, limp, wilted, withered, flat, sour, turned, (gone) off, mouldy, musty, spoiled, rotten: All the food is stale because you failed to wrap it carefully. 2 old, banal, overused, antiquated, old-fashioned, threadbare, trite, clich,d, unoriginal, hackneyed, stereotyped, tired, weary, boring, tiresome, warmed-over, shop-worn, familiar, stock, well-known, Colloq hand-me-down, Brit reach-me-down: These comedians come up with the same old stale jokes year after year.

stalemate n. impasse, deadlock, stand-off, standstill, (dead or full) stop, tie; check, checkmate, mate; US Mexican stand-off: As both parties refused to back down, the situation was a stalemate.

stalk° v. follow, dog, haunt, shadow, trail, track (down), hunt (down), pursue, hound, chase, Colloq tail: The leopard stalked its prey in complete silence.

stalký n. stem, trunk, cane, main axis, leaf-stalk, shaft, spike: The leaves cluster at the very top, leaving the entire stalk of the plant bare.

stall° v. 1 stop, halt, die, quit, shut down, fail, cease operating, come to a standstill, Colloq conk out: My car stalled in the middle of rush-hour traffic - isn't that typical?

--n. 2 compartment, stand, booth, cubicle, alcove, section, space, area, slot, enclosure, quarters; counter, table: Several antiques dealers had hired stalls in the market. 3 shed, pen, cote, fold, coop, sty, corral, enclosure, cowshed, barn, stable: The animals belong in their stalls at night.

stallý v. 1 delay, dawdle, dilly-dally, dally, loiter, linger, temporize, equivocate, hesitate, prevaricate, play for time, waste time, stonewall, be obstructive, put (someone or something) off; vacillate, dither, hedge, procrastinate; Brit haver, Colloq beat about the bush, drag one's feet, give (someone) the run-around: He managed to stall for a while before handing over the money.

--n. 2 stalling, delay, hedge, hedging, pretext, subterfuge, wile, trick, ruse, artifice, stratagem, manoeuvre, move, stonewalling, obstructionism, playing for time, procrastination, procrastinating, Colloq beating about the bush, run-around, foot-dragging: Her claim that she was dressing was nothing but a stall to give her time to hide the pistol.

stalwart adj. 1 robust, stout, strong, mighty, powerful, rugged, staunch, hardy, sturdy, vigorous, lusty, indomitable, solid, able-bodied, brawny, sinewy, muscular, fit, healthy, hale, (hale and) hearty, Colloq husky, hefty, beefy: We shall need a dozen stalwart men to carry out the raid. 2 redoubtable, intrepid, undaunted, resolute, firm, determined, unbending, steadfast, tenacious, unswerving, unwavering, unfaltering, unflinching, uncompromising, unyielding, persevering, persistent, unflagging, relentless, tireless, untiring, indefatigable: Although they lost, their lawyers put up a stalwart defence. 3 brave, courageous, daring, intrepid, valiant, heroic, manly, manful, fearless, indomitable, stout-hearted, bold, audacious, game, red-blooded, plucky, mettlesome, lion-hearted, spirited: These stalwart knights met at dawn on the battlefield.

--n. 4 supporter, upholder, sustainer, partisan, loyalist, (party) faithful, trouper, hero, heroine: And most of all I want to thank those stalwarts who have supported me throughout this victorious campaign.

stamina n. ruggedness, vigour, vigorousness, (intestinal) fortitude, robustness, indefatigability, staying power, endurance, energy, power, might, mettle, (inner) strength, staunchness, stalwartness, courage, indomitability, Colloq grit, guts, starch, US stick-to-it-iveness, sand, Taboo slang balls: Even at the age of 70, she still had the stamina to run in the marathon.

stammer v. 1 stutter, hesitate, hem and haw, stumble, falter, pause, Brit hum and haw: Is he stammering from embarrassment or because he has a speech defect?

--n. 2 stutter: Many young people who have a stammer lose it when they get out of their teens.

stamp v. 1 trample, bring down one's foot; tread, step, tramp; Colloq stomp (on): He flew into a rage and stamped on the floor, like a petulant child. 2 impress, mark, imprint, print, record, document, register, log; engrave, emboss, inscribe; sign, initial: That last night in Rio is stamped forever in my memory. Their passports were stamped at the frontier. 3 brand, label, mark, tag, term, name, style, identify, categorize, classify, characterize, designate, denominate, show to be: The episode on Friday stamped him as someone not to be trifled with. 4 stamp out. eliminate, eradicate, abolish, get rid of, annihilate, exterminate, kill, snuff out, terminate, end, put an end to, destroy, put down, put out, extinguish, extirpate; quell, subdue, suppress, squelch, repress: Something must be done to stamp out the drug traffic.

--n. 5 mark, sign, hallmark, earmarks, traits, features, characteristics: Her work bears the stamp of genius. 6 die, block, punch, seal, matrix, plate, die-stamp, stereotype, mould; signet(-ring): The stamps for the binding are not quite ready. 7 seal, (trade or service) mark, brand, logo, logotype, symbol, representation, colophon, imprint, emblem, insigne (singular of insignia), label, monogram, sign, crest, coat of arms, escutcheon, cartouche, signature, initials: As it bears his stamp, it must belong to him. 8 character, kind, sort, make, fashion, type, cast, mould, grade, style, cut, genre, class, level, kidney, feather, stripe, classification, species, genus, variety, description: Men of Randolph's stamp are hard to find amongst gentlemen and scholars alike.

stampede n. 1 rout, flight, scattering, panic, rush, dash: When the store opened its doors for its annual sale, we were nearly trampled in the stampede.

--v. 2 panic, frighten, rush, scatter, rout: Millions of buffalo were killed by stampeding them off cliffs. 3 rush, run, race, charge, take to one's heels, flee, take flight: At the cry of 'Fire!', the audience stampeded for the exits.

stance n. carriage, bearing, deportment; position, posture, attitude, standpoint, stand, viewpoint, point of view: Legs apart and arms akimbo, she assumed a defiant stance at the door. Her stance was that she must protect the children at all costs.

stanch v. staunch, stop, stem, halt, check, arrest, stay, end, cease; prevent: Apply pressure with a pad to stanch the flow of blood from the wound.

stand v. 1 rise, arise, get up, Brit be upstanding: We all stood when the master of ceremonies proposed a toast to McArthur. 2 Sometimes, stand up. a set, place (upright), position, put, move; up-end: Please stand the cabinet in the corner. b stay, remain (standing): Just for that you can go and stand in the corner! 3 endure, survive, tolerate, brook, countenance, face, confront, last through, abide, allow, accept, take, suffer, bear, withstand, undergo, experience, cope with, brave, stand or bear up under, stand for, withstand, stomach, weather, handle, Colloq put up with: I could not stand another year in the tropics. She can stand neither hypocrites nor vanilla ice-cream. 4 continue, remain, persist, be or remain in effect or in force, prevail, obtain, apply, exist: The law will stand as it is till it is rescinded or modified by the court. 5 stand by. a support, defend, back, stand or stick up for, stand behind, be or remain loyal or faithful to, uphold, take the side of, side with, sympathize with, US go to bat for: No matter what he did, she always stood by him. b wait (in the wings), stand or wait or stay or remain on the sidelines, be or stand ready or available or accessible, be or stand in readiness: Would you mind standing by in case we need your help? c stick to, adhere to, support, maintain, persist in, affirm, reaffirm, confirm, abide by: We shall stand by every word of the agreement. 6 stand down. resign, quit, step aside, withdraw: When it was revealed that she was taking steroids, she agreed to stand down from the team. 7 stand for. a symbolize, betoken, represent, signify, mean, be emblematic of, exemplify, epitomize, illustrate, typify, refer to, allude to: The initials in P. G. Wodehouse's name stand for 'Pelham Grenville'. b support, advocate, favour, sponsor, promote, espouse (the cause of), subscribe to, back, champion, lend support or one's name to, second: Norma has always stood for the principles of democratic freedom. c campaign for, be or present (oneself) as a candidate for, US stump for, run for: Who will stand for chairman this year? d See 3, above. 8 stand in. substitute (for), understudy (for), replace, relieve, double for, take the place of, US and Canadian pinch-hit (for), Colloq cover for: If you can't get to the rehearsal, I'll stand in for you. 9 stand out. a be prominent or conspicuous or noticeable, be notable or noteworthy: With her green spike hairdo and a safety pin through her cheek, Kylie really stands out in a crowd. His farewell speech stands out in my mind as one of his best. b protrude, project, stick out, jut out, bulge, obtrude, beetle, overhang, extend: The balcony stands out over the village square. 10 stand up. a stand, rise, arise, get to one's feet, get up: The boys had been taught to stand up when a woman entered the room. b endure, last, wear (well), survive: Today's products, with their built-in obsolescence, don't stand up to long use. c jilt, break or fail to keep an appointment with: After waiting for two hours, he realized that he had been stood up. 11 stand up for. support, defend, take the side of, side with, champion, uphold, Colloq stick up for: I shall never forget how you stood up for me when they accused me of cheating. 12 stand up to. a confront, brave, challenge, encounter, dispute, question, resist, defy, withstand: He's a coward when it comes to standing up to authority. b resist, defy, withstand, endure, outlast, last through, suffer: This material will stand up to years of abuse.

--n. 13 position, attitude, stance, posture, policy, philosophy, point of view, viewpoint, standpoint, belief, opinion, sentiment, feeling, line: I disagree completely with the Chancellor's stand on the economy. 14 defence, resistance, effort: This campaign will be our last stand in trying to retrieve some of the market we lost. 15 stop, stopover, halt, stay; performance, show: We do some one-night stands in the country before returning to Manchester. 16 counter, booth, stall, table; wagon or Brit waggon, barrow, cart: He sells fruit from a stand in the street. 17 rack, frame, bracket; hatstand, coat-rack: This stand is for displaying a china plate. I left my hat on the stand in your office. 18 staging, platform, dais, stage, staging, bandstand, summer-house: We like to go to the stand in the park to hear the band play. 19 copse, grove, wood, thicket, brake, wood, Brit spinney, coppice: Near the house was a small stand of beeches.

standard n. 1 criterion, measure, benchmark, model, pattern, archetype, touchstone, yardstick, gauge, guide, guideline, paradigm, paragon, exemplar, example, sample, type, ideal, beau id‚al, rule, canon, law, requirement, precept, principle: The metric system has become the standard in many countries. People resent having imposed on them the standards of another culture. 2 mean, average, norm, par, level, rating: With many luxuries now necessities, the standard of living has improved enormously. The course was for students of intermediate standard. 3 flag, banner, ensign, emblem, pennant, burgee, insigne (singular of insignia), guidon, gonfalon or gonfanon, labarum: The black knight bore a curiously coloured standard into battle. 4 pole, post, stanchion, lamppost, column, pillar, support, pedestal, pier, footing, (upright) bar or rod or timber: The car went out of control and knocked down two lighting standards.

--adj. 5 accepted, approved, definitive, defined, authoritative, official, required, regulative, regulatory, textbook: Must we follow standard procedure? The tests were conducted according to the standard methods. 6 recognized, prevailing, prevalent, usual, customary, habitual, orthodox, set, established, regular, familiar, ordinary, traditional, classic, stock, typical, normal, staple, conventional, universal: People in the south usually regard themselves as speakers of standard English.

standardize
v. regiment, systematize, codify, normalize, homogenize: We could save money if we standardized the dimensions of the books we publish.

stand-by n. 1 supporter, defender, backer, upholder, partisan, sympathizer, adherent, stalwart: His mother had always been his stand-by against the severity of his father. 2 substitute, surrogate, replacement, backup, understudy, second, US and Canadian alternate: They had a second ambulance as a stand-by in case the first broke down or needed servicing. 3 resource, support, replacement: I knew I could always count on you as a stand-by in case I had trouble.

stand-in n. double, substitute, stunt man or woman; surrogate, replacement, stand-by, backup, understudy, second, US and Canadian alternate: Any time they had to shoot a dangerous scene, my stand-in went through the motions.

standing adj. 1 established, set, standard, conventional, customary, usual, normal, regular, fixed, permanent, continued, continuing, regular: The club has standing rules concerning use of the card-room. 2 stagnant, motionless, unmoving, stationary, still, static: Insects bred in the standing pools of rainwater. 3 continuous, fixed, ongoing, perpetual, unbroken: Michael placed a standing order for six cases of Beaujolais Nouveau every November. 4 erect, upright, on one's feet, vertical, unseated: Please remain standing till the signal is given to be seated.

--n. 5 status, rank, station, position, place, grade, order, level, stratum: Considering her standing in the party, Mrs Miller ought to win the nomination easily. 6 eminence, prominence, repute, reputation: Foster is a surgeon of considerable standing. 7 Usually, long standing. (considerable) age or longevity or experience or seniority or duration: Ivan is an art expert of long standing.

standoffish

adj. aloof, haughty, unsocial, reserved, cool, frosty, withdrawn, remote, removed, distant, detached, unapproachable, inaccessible, uncongenial, unfriendly, unsociable; Olympian, lordly, pompous, Colloq highfalutin or hifalutin, snooty: Oliver is much too standoffish to deign to come to my party.

standpoint

n. viewpoint, point of view, vantage point, perspective, position, angle, view: From the standpoint of mice, cats do not make good pets.

standstill

n. (dead or full) stop, halt: The car came to a standstill with the front wheels overhanging a cliff.

staple adj. 1 basic, elementary, essential, necessary, requisite, required, vital, indispensable, critical, fundamental, primary, principal, main, chief: These people cannot afford even staple commodities like flour and salt. 2 standard, usual, habitual, ordinary, customary, prevailing, normal, conventional, universal: The staple fare on television seems to consist of old and new sitcoms.

--n. 3 Often, staples. necessities, essentials, basics, fundamentals: Supermarkets disperse low-cost staples such as bread, tea, and milk to force shoppers to pass luxury items.

Marital and financial problems are the staples of soap operas.

star n. 1 celestial or heavenly body; evening star, morning star, falling star, shooting star, comet; nova, supernova: It was a beautiful clear night and the sky was full of stars. 2 celebrity, personage, dignitary, VIP, name, somebody, luminary, leading light, leading man or woman or lady, lead, principal, diva, prima donna, hero, heroine, idol, superstar, Technical slang top banana, headliner, Colloq big shot, (big) draw, celeb, big name: Clancy knows many of the big stars personally.

--adj. 3 principal, major, leading, important, celebrated, famous, famed, prominent, eminent, pre-eminent, distinguished, brilliant, illustrious, unequalled, peerless, matchless, incomparable, unrivalled, inimitable, unmatched, unparalleled, top, foremost: A new local rock band was the star attraction at the Hippodrome.

--v. 4 feature or be featured; play or act or take the lead or the leading part or role: He began his career starring in spaghetti westerns.

stare v. 1 gaze, gape, goggle, gawk, watch, Colloq rubberneck, Slang Brit gawp: The people were powerless to do anything but stare as the molten lava engulfed the city.

--n. 2 fixed or blank look; goggle, gaze: The teacher fixed her with a stare and she blushed with guilt.

stark adv. 1 completely, utterly, unqualifiedly, wholly, absolutely, entirely, totally, fully, altogether, plainly, obviously, clearly, certifiably: Is that an elephant on the beach, or am I going stark staring mad? The children were running around stark naked.

--adj. 2 plain, simple, Spartan, severe, unembellished, unadorned, cold, bare, harsh, hard, grim, bald, blunt: The room looks less stark with curtains. Just give me the stark facts without all the elaboration. 3 harsh, severe, bleak, austere, barren, desolate, dreary, grey, depressing, ravaged, empty, vacant, Literary drear, Colloq US spooky: As day dawned, I looked out over the stark landscape of the nuclear winter. 4 sheer, complete, utter, absolute, perfect, pure, thorough, thoroughgoing, arrant, unmitigated, out-and-out, downright, outright, total, unconditional, unqualified, clear, plain, evident, obvious, patent, flagrant, gross, rank: They were shocked by the stark poverty they saw in the rural areas.

start   v. 1 Often, start off or up. begin, commence, get (something) going, get off the ground, originate, initiate, open, set in motion, activate, embark on; set in motion, turn or switch on, crank up, Colloq kick off: They started operations at once. I can't start my car. 2 Often, start off or up or in. arise, come up, come to be or into being, emerge, crop up, develop, begin, commence, get under way, originate: How did this situation start? 3 Often, start off or up or in. go, leave, depart, get going, move (off or out or on), get under way, set off or out or forth, Colloq hit the road, get the show on the road: You start and I'll follow shortly. 4 Often, start in. begin, commence, get or start the ball rolling, get things under way, be on one's way, get going: When I went in I found that she had started without me. 5 jump, flinch, blench, quail, shy, recoil, wince, shrink, draw back: He started when he saw her suddenly behind him in the mirror. 6 cause to spring or leap or dart or jump or bound: Any abrupt movement will start the plovers from cover. 7 establish, found, begin, set up, initiate, institute, create, father, give birth to, beget: It was her ideas that started the current trend in mystery novels. 8 bulge, protrude, stick out; Colloq US bug out: Warping caused these boards to start from the floor. When he saw what was in his swimming-pool, his eyes started from their sockets.

--n. 9 beginning, opening, move: This is not very good, but it's a start. 10 beginning, commencement, opening, outset, onset, inception, start-up: The start of the race is set for ten o'clock. 11 beginning(s), inception, birth, initiation, onset, rise, genesis, creation, emergence, origin: The start of the blues can be traced to New Orleans. 12 opportunity, chance, beginning; help, assistance, aid, backing, financing, sponsorship, encouragement, Colloq break: Her father-in-law gave her the start she needed in business. 13 head start, advantage, edge, lead, Colloq (the) jump, US and New Zealand drop (on someone): Having the inside track gave her a start on the competition. If he has a ten-minute start, we'll never catch him. 14 inauguration, opening, beginning, initiation, Colloq kick-off: When is the start of the salmon fishing season this year? 15 beginning(s), founding, foundation, establishment, inception, birth, origin: This company had its start in 1781.

startle v. frighten, surprise, scare, disturb, unsettle, upset, discompose, make (someone) jump, jolt, jar, dismay, perturb, stun, take (someone) aback, shock, astound, astonish, Colloq shake up, give (someone) a turn, US discombobulate: He jumped out from behind the door and startled me. She was startled when she was told that she had to leave at once.

startling adj. shocking, terrifying, frightening, astounding, astonishing, awesome, staggering, jarring, disturbing, unsettling, upsetting, amazing, surprising: Monica fainted when told the startling news.

starved adj. 1 starving, (extremely) hungry, famished, ravenous: Harry came in from the fields, declaring he was starved and ready to eat a horse. 2 starved or starving for. yearning for, dying for, hankering for, hungry or hungering for, pining for, longing for, burning for, craving, thirsting for or after, desirous of, aching for, Colloq hurting for: I was starved for a pint of cold lager. 3 starved of. deprived of, in need or want of, lacking, be reft of: The children seemed starved of affection.

state n. 1 condition(s), circumstance(s), situation, state of affairs, status, shape, position: He was concerned about the state of the company's finances. 2 structure, form, constitution, shape, phase, stage: One does not see iodine in its gaseous state outside the laboratory. 3 grandeur, pomp, style, splendour, magnificence, glory, brilliance: The prince was met at the airport and escorted in state to the palace. 4 nation, country, land, body politic: No longer a colony, it became an independent state in 1952.

--adj. 5 governmental, government, national, federal: The State schools in the town had a good reputation. 6 ceremonial, formal, dignified, stately, solemn, official; royal, regal, imperial, majestic: We attended a state dinner at the White House. The Queen travelled in the state coach from Buckingham Palace to Westminster.

--v. 7 aver, assert, asseverate, declare, affirm, express, report, articulate, voice, specify, delineate, claim, maintain, allege, submit, confirm; say, testify, hold, have: He has often stated his firm belief in democracy. He stated firmly that he was not in the house on the night of the murder.

stately adj. dignified, august, solemn, distinguished, impressive, striking, imposing, awesome, grand, lofty, elevated, noble, majestic, regal, royal, imperial: The stately procession wound through the streets of the capital.

statement n. assertion, allegation, declaration, expression, report, account, affirmation, asseveration, averral, announcement, annunciation, proclamation, utterance, communication, communiqu,, disclosure: Your statement is subject to interpretation. He made a long and detailed statement about the future of the project.

static adj. 1 immovable, immobile, unmoving, motionless, stationary, fixed, stagnant, inert, still, unchanging, unchanged, changeless, unvarying, invariable, constant: The situation remained static for years. A living language is not static but dynamic.

--n. 2 interference, noise, atmospherics; difficulty or difficulties, trouble, problem(s), Colloq flak: With all the static, I couldn't understand what she was saying. You can expect some static about being late for your wedding.

station n. 1 place, position, spot, post, site, location: The sentry is not to leave his station till relieved. 2 position, place, status, rank, caste, standing, class, level: As a doctor, he attained a station in life far above that of his father. 3 railway station, train station, passenger station, bus station, US and Canadian depot: Let's meet in the waiting-room in the station.

--v. 4 position, place, spot, post, site, locate, assign, appoint, garrison, install or instal, Colloq billet: He was stationed in three different places in four years.

stationery
n. writing-paper, letterhead(s), paper and envelopes, writing implements or supplies; office supplies or equipment: We consider stationery costs as part of overheads.

statue n. sculpture, figure, figurine, statuette, carving, casting, model, bronze, image, icon or ikon, effigy, representation; bust, atlas, caryatid, colossus, figurehead, Biblical graven image: A statue of Disraeli stands in the market square of Aylesbury.

statuesque
adj. imposing, impressive, majestic, regal, stately, magnificent, noble, dignified, august, grand, well-proportioned, comely, handsome, queenly, Junoesque: Julie's statuesque figure was well set off by the draped silk gown.

status n. 1 eminence, prominence, pre-eminence, standing, stature, importance, significance, repute, reputation, rank, station: Few could approach Keith's status as a pathologist. 2 See standing, 5, above.

staunch adj. 1 steadfast, loyal, firm, unflinching, steady, unshrinking, unswerving, dependable, reliable, (tried and) true, devoted, true-blue, trusty, trusted, faithful, unfaltering, undeviating, unwavering: Charles has always been a staunch supporter of the party. 2 strong, solid, sturdy, sound, well-built, stout, substantial, well-constructed, well-made, tough, rugged, long-lasting; watertight, seaworthy: The ship's staunch oaken hull has withstood much abuse over the years.

stay° v. 1 remain, stop, continue, tarry, wait, stand, Colloq freeze: Stay where you are or I'll shoot! 2 remain, stop, lodge, sojourn, abide, reside, dwell, live, visit: I heard that Sheila was back in town, staying at her aunt's. 3 keep, remain, continue to be: I was having trouble staying awake. 4 stop, arrest, thwart, prevent, put an end to, halt, interrupt, block, check; curb, retard, slow, impede, foil, obstruct, hamper, hinder, discourage, deter; delay, postpone, put off, discontinue, defer, Technical prorogue: Only one man has the authority to stay the execution. What can be done to stay the advance of the killer bees? 5 linger, loiter, wait, tarry, stop, remain, Archaic bide: I like this part of the world and plan to stay here a while.

--n. 6 stop, stoppage, arrest, set-back, check, halt, prevention, discontinuance, discontinuation, interruption, blockage, delay, postponement, deferment, deferral, reprieve: Have you been able to arrange a stay in carrying out the sentence? 7 stopover, sojourn, visit, stop: We really enjoyed our stay at Fred's house in Fort Lauderdale.

stayý n. 1 guy, line, rope, cable, chain, support, brace, reinforcement; Technical head-stay, (running) backstay, forestay, mainstay, mizen-stay: If one of those stays gives way, the entire structure may fall.

--v. 2 support, strengthen, secure, reinforce, brace, buttress, gird, shore (up): The mast is stayed by two steel cables, fore and aft.

steadfast adj. resolute, determined, persevering, resolved, single-minded, steady, unflinching, unfaltering, unwavering, unswerving, indefatigable, dependable, immovable, stable, firm, fixed, constant, persistent, unflagging, tireless, enduring, dedicated, deep-rooted, faithful, true, loyal, staunch: For years Janet has been steadfast in supporting the cause. Stephen was a steadfast friend and will never be forgotten.

steady adj. 1 stable, firm, solid, substantial, sound, stout, strong: Is this chair steady enough to stand on? 2 even, regular, uniform, habitual, invariable, unvarying, unfluctuating, unwavering, undeviating, changeless, unchanging, continuous, constant; perpetual, non-stop, round-the-clock, persistent, uninterrupted, unbroken, unrelieved, unceasing, ceaseless, incessant, relentless, unremitting, never-ending, unending, endless: Steady trade winds could be relied on to carry vessels to the Caribbean. Inflation has remained steady for a year. How do the children manage to survive on a steady diet of junk food? The economists fear a steady rise in inflation. 3 unflinching, unblinking, fixed, constant, unfaltering, continuous, direct: The boy began to quail under the headmaster's steady gaze. 4 calm, cool, balanced, equable, controlled: Steady nerves are needed to handle this new breed of fighter plane. 5 devoted, firm, staunch, faithful, loyal, long-standing, inveterate, consistent, confirmed, persistent: The Pendergasts have always been steady supporters of the museum. 6 staid, sedate, sober, dignified, poised, sophisticated, civilized, sensible, down-to-earth, settled, serious, level-headed, reliable, Colloq unflappable: WANTED: Steady person as housekeeper to eccentric editor.

--adv. 7 firmly, solidly: His wife was holding the ladder steady while he mended the gutter. 8 go steady. keep company, date, socialize: Is Jane still going steady with Hubert?

--n. 9 boyfriend, girlfriend, (regular) fellow or girl, sweetheart, Colloq guy, gal, woman, man: Yes, Hubert is still Jane's steady. 10 regular, habitu,, customer, frequenter, familiar face: Gil has been a steady here ever since we opened.

--v. 11 stabilize, hold fast; brace, secure, support, strengthen: Prices steadied after the first hour of trading. To steady the table, merely tighten the screws holding the legs.

steal v. 1 take (away), appropriate, filch, shoplift, pilfer, purloin, make or walk off or away with, get away with; embezzle, misappropriate, peculate; Colloq lift, pinch, hook, snitch, borrow, US boost, liberate, heist, hijack, Slang swipe, Brit nick, prig, US hoist: The thieves stole only the emeralds, leaving the diamonds. The bookkeeper stole the money by diverting it into his own account. 2 plagiarize, pirate, copy, imitate, appropriate, usurp, take: He claims that the story of the film was stolen from his short story. 3 sneak, creep, slip, tiptoe, prowl, lurk, skulk, Colloq pussyfoot: Silently, we stole into the garden at the rear of the house.

--n. 4 bargain, (good) buy, Colloq give-away: At that price, the rug was a steal!

stealing n. theft, robbery, robbing, larceny, pilferage, shoplifting, poaching, embezzlement, peculation, thievery, thieving, filching, burglary, plagiarism, plagiarizing, piracy, pirating: Stealing from the church poor-box must be one of the lowest things a person can do.

stealth n. furtiveness, secrecy, clandestineness, surreptitiousness, sneakiness, slyness, underhandedness: What the thieves lacked in stealth they compensated for in knowledge of art.

stealthy adj. stealthful, furtive, secretive, secret, sly, clandestine, surreptitious, sneaky, sneaking, skulking, covert, undercover, underhand(ed), backstairs, hugger-mugger, closet: He was as stealthy as a cat in his movements. They were stealthy collectors of pornography.

steamy adj. 1 humid, steaming, damp, moist, muggy, sticky, dank, sweaty, sweltering, sodden, sultry, boiling, wet: We were not prepared for the steamy jungle of equatorial Africa. 2 steamed (up), fogged (up), befogged, misty, misted, hazy, clouded, cloudy, beclouded, dim, blurred: Every time I take a hot shower, the bathroom mirror gets all steamy. 3 erotic, passionate, (sexually) exciting, arousing, hot, Colloq sexy, Slang horny: The film was notorious for its steamy scenes.

steel n. 1 sword, dagger, blade, knife, dirk, stiletto: He saw the flash of the cold steel in the moonlight.

--v. 2 brace, nerve, stiffen, fortify, grit one's teeth, bear up, bite the bullet, screw up one's courage (to the sticking point); inure, insulate, protect: People must learn to steel themselves against criticism in this business.

steely adj. 1 greyish, grey: His steely blue eyes pierced deep into her soul. 2 iron, tough, indurate, adamant, adamantine, hard, strong, rugged, unyielding, flinty, sturdy: She was a woman of steely determination.

steep° adj. 1 sheer, abrupt, precipitous, bluff, sharp, nearly vertical or perpendicular or upright: In those days, a car had to be in first gear to climb such a steep hill. 2 expensive, dear, high, overpriced, exorbitant, excessive, extravagant, extortionate, Colloq stiff: The house prices in the city centre were much too steep for all but the highest-paid executives.

steepý v. 1 soak, submerge, souse, drench, immerse, saturate, douse, wet, ret; pickle, marinate: Before cooking, the meat has to be steeped in brine for at least six hours to tenderize it. 2 imbue, fill, saturate, immerse, inundate; bury: He learnt Japanese by steeping himself in the language for six months.

steer v. 1 guide, pilot, conduct, direct; manage, control, channel: Steer the boat closer to the pier. David has steered the company to greater profits than ever before. 2 steer clear of. avoid, dodge, keep away from, shun, circumvent, give (something or someone) a wide berth: You'd best steer clear of Melissa when she's angry.

--n. 3 Usually, bum steer. (bad or poor) tip or suggestion or hint; (bad or poor) guidance or advice or information: He avoids me because I once gave him a bum steer on a horse.

stellar adj. 1 astral, star, sidereal: The sidereal year is based on stellar calculations. 2 chief, starring, principal, leading, main, headlining: For years Lee has been a stellar performer on the golf circuit.

stem° n. 1 trunk, stalk, stock; Technical peduncle, pedicel, petiole, shoot: Three white blossoms are borne on each stem of the plant. 2 bows, prow, stem-post: The ship shook from stem to stern.

--v. 3 come, arise, develop, derive, issue, flow, generate, originate, spring, emanate, sprout, grow, descend, result, proceed: The dispute stems from basic differences in the ways the parties regard property.

stemý v. 1 check, stop, halt, stanch or staunch, arrest, stay, curb, control, quell, suppress; retard, slow, lessen, diminish, reduce, cut (back (on)): The government introduced legislation to stem immigration. I was able to stem the bleeding by applying the tourniquet. 2 stem the tide (of). resist, withstand, go or make headway or advance or make progress against, prevail over or against: They were unable to stem the tide of public opinion.

stench n. stink, reek, noisomeness, mephitis, fetor or foetor, foul odour, effluvium, Colloq Brit pong: A terrible stench emanated from the cupboard. For decades their government has wallowed in the stench of corruption.

stenographer
n. secretary, amanuensis, stenotypist, tachygrapher, phonographer: The court stenographer read back part of the testimony.

stenography
n. shorthand, stenotypy, tachygraphy, speedwriting: Her qualification in stenography proved most useful.

step n. 1 movement, move: The steps of the dance were very intricate. 2 footfall, footstep, tread: I think I hear father's step on the stair. 3 footstep, footprint, trace, spoor, track, trace, mark, impression; imprint, vestige: In his master's steps he trod, where the snow lay dinted. 4 action, initiative, measure, activity, procedure, move, motion: What steps are needed to improve the situation? 5 stage, move, gradation, degree, progression: Can we not proceed from one to the other in easy steps? 6 pace, footstep, stride: My mother's cottage is just a few steps away, at the bottom of the garden. 7 in step (with). in keeping (with), in harmony or agreement (with), harmonious (with), agreeable (with), according (with or to), concordant (with), attuned (to), in tune (with), consonant (with), consistent (with), appropriate (to), fitting (for); conventional, traditional, routine: Do you think that her ideas of discipline are in step with the times? I am not sure they are in step at all. 8 out of step (with). out of keeping (with), out of or not in harmony or agreement (with), not harmonious (with), not agreeable (with), not according (with or to), discordant (with), not concordant (with), not attuned (to), out of tune (with), not consonant (with), inconsistent (with), inappropriate (to), not fitting (for); offbeat, unconventional, eccentric, Slang kinky: You must admit that her views are out of step with the committee's. 9 step by step. gradually, a step at a time, slowly, steadily: The way to unravel the problem is to analyse it step by step. 10 steps. a course, way, route, direction, path, movement, passage; journey, journeying, travels, travelling: After leaving the village, I directed my steps southward, towards the coast. b stairway, stairs, stair, staircase, stepladder, US and Canadian stoop: Claire walked down the steps to greet me. 11 take steps. proceed, move, begin or start or commence to act or to take action, do something: We must take steps to prevent this from happening again. 12 watch one's step. tread carefully or cautiously, be cautious or careful, exercise care or caution, be wary or discreet, be on the qui vive, be or remain alert, be on one's guard, have or keep one's wits about one, take care or heed, Colloq pussyfoot about: You must really watch your step with Marnie to avoid upsetting her.

--v. 13 move, walk, look; pace, stride: Step lively or you'll miss your last chance to see the elephants. 14 step down. a resign, abdicate, quit, bow out, retire: Don't you think it time you stepped down from the chairmanship? b decrease, diminish, reduce: Using this transformer, we can step down the voltage gradually. 15 step in. intervene, interfere, intercede, become involved: It seemed the right time for us to step in and take over the company. 16 step on it. hurry (up), make haste, hasten, speed up: He'd better step on it if he is going to catch his plane. 17 step out. a go outside or out of doors, leave: Would you mind stepping out for a few minutes while we settle this in private? b go out, socialize: Notice how quickly Genevieve has started stepping out again after her bereavement. c become disinvolved, withdraw, secede: Our firm stepped out of the negotiations when we saw who was bidding. 18 step up. a improve, progress: George has certainly stepped up in the world since I knew him at university. b increase, accelerate, raise, intensify, boost, escalate, up, speed up: They stepped up the pace until she could no longer keep up with them.

sterile adj. 1 barren, fruitless, unfruitful, childless, unproductive, infertile, infecund: The first great disappointment of Napoleon's life was that Josephine was sterile. 2 pure, aseptic, uninfected, unpolluted, uncontaminated, disinfected, sanitary, sterilized, germ-free, antiseptic: Make sure that you always use a sterile bandage for a wound. 3 barren, unproductive, stale, effete: Vanessa's greatest fear was that her mind would become sterile and she would run out of ideas.

sterilize v. 1 purify, disinfect, cleanse, clean, fumigate, depurate, Technical autoclave: Sterilize the instruments before using them. 2 castrate (males), emasculate (males), geld (horses), spay (female animals), alter (animals), neuter (animals), caponize (male fowl), eunuchize (males), Technical ovariectomize (females), vasectomize (males), Colloq fix (animals), cut (male animals), Slang tie (someone's) tubes: Steers - that is, sterilized bulls - yield tenderer meat.

sterling adj. 1 genuine, authentic, real, true, pure: Is this candle-snuffer sterling silver? 2 excellent, superior, superb, superlative, first-class, exceptional, matchless, peerless, unequalled, nonpareil, incomparable, fine, very good, worthy, estimable, admirable: Commander Ian Johnston has acquitted himself as an officer of sterling character.

stern adj. 1 austere, severe, strict, stringent, demanding, critical, rigid, rigorous, flinty, steely, authoritarian, uncompromising, hard, tough, inflexible, firm, immovable, unmoved, unrelenting, unremitting, steadfast, resolute, determined, unyielding, adamant, adamantine, obdurate, hard-hearted, stony, stony-hearted, unsparing, unforgiving, unsympathetic, harsh: Discipline in the French Foreign Legion is said to be quite stern. 2 serious, frowning, grim, forbidding, grave, gloomy, dour, sombre, saturnine, lugubrious, gruff, taciturn, crabby, crabbed, crusty, churlish, sour: Beneath that terribly stern exterior he really is a pussy-cat.

stew n. 1 gallimaufry, goulash, salmagundi, hash, mess, olla podrida, olio, mixture, mishmash, Brit hotchpotch, US also hodgepodge: His book is a stew of many different opinions, none of them his own. 2 state of excitement or alarm or anxiety, dither, pother, bother, lather, sweat, Colloq tizzy, state: She really worked herself up into a stew over the boy Paula is engaged to.

--v. 3 simmer, seethe, agonize, fret, dither, chafe, burn, smoulder, Colloq get steamed (up) (over or about), work (oneself) (up) into a sweat or lather or state (over): Paula's father is all stewed up over her leaving school to get married.

stick° v. 1 pierce, thrust, stab, transfix, pin, spike, impale, spear, spit, run through, poke, gore, jab, prick, puncture, punch, penetrate, drill, bore, riddle, perforate: He stuck the wild boar with his spear. 2 put, drop, place, deposit, Colloq shove, plonk, plunk, plop: Stick another ice cube in my drink, would you? 3 put, poke, push, thrust, prod, dig; insert: She stuck her head out of the window to get a better look. Stop sticking your finger in my ribs! 4 attach, fasten, affix, fix, nail, pin, tack; glue, cement, paste, gum, weld, solder, bind, tie, tape, wire; bond, melt, fuse, unite, join: What shall we used to stick the poster to the wall? How can I stick the pieces of the vase together again? 5 Often, stick together. cohere, adhere, stay or remain or cleave or cling together: I cannot make these parts stick together. 6 hold, last, endure, go through, be upheld, be or remain effective, remain attached: The prosecutor was unable to make a charge of murder stick. 7 linger, dwell, remain (fixed), continue, stay; be or become lodged or stopped or fixed or fast or immovable or stationary, be or become entangled or enmired or bogged down: Something sticks in my mind about your leaving next week. We were stuck in the Sunday traffic for hours. The wheel is stuck in the sand. 8 burden, weigh down, encumber, saddle with, charge, impose on, force on: We stuck Tony with the nasty job of changing the tyre. 9 baffle, puzzle, bewilder, perplex, confuse, stump, stop, nonplus: I was totally stuck for a solution. 10 stand, abide, tolerate, endure, bear: I can't stick people watching me while I am painting. 11 stick around or about. wait, tarry, linger, stay, stand by, remain, Colloq hang around or about or on: Can you stick around for a few minutes after the meeting? 12 stick at. stop at, hesitate at, pause at, scruple at, be deterred or put off by, take exception to, shrink from or at, balk at: Barnes sticks at nothing to get his way. 13 stick by. support, be loyal or faithful to, stand by: Arnold will stick by you, come what may. 14 stick it (out). persevere, persist, stand fast, bear it, be resolute, soldier on, hold (one's) ground, grin and bear it, see it through, weather it, Colloq US tough it out: It was a very hard job, but I stuck it out to the very end. 15 stick out or up. protrude, jut (out), extend, project, poke (out); bulge, obtrude, stand out, overhang, beetle: Stick out your tongue. What is sticking out of your ear? Balconies stick out from all sides of the building. 16 stick together. a unite, unify, join (forces), consolidate, merge, confederate, amalgamate, cooperate, work together: The family always sticks together at times of crisis. b See 5, above. 17 stick up. a rob, mug, Colloq hold up, US heist: They stuck up a bank courier this morning, in broad daylight! b put up, post, affix, display: We went round town sticking up posters for our candidate. 18 stick up for. rally to the support of, support, stand by or up for, defend, speak for or in behalf of, take up the cudgels for; put one's money where one's mouth is, have the courage of one's convictions: A person must stick up for what he thinks is right. 19 stick with. persevere, persist, stay or remain or continue with, not change one's mind about: Stick with me, kid, and you'll wear diamonds. I'll stick with the smoked eel as a starter.

stický   n. 1 stake, twig, branch, baton, wand, staff, rod, cane, pole, pike, walking-stick: We put a stick in the ground to mark the place. 2 person, man, fellow, chap, Colloq guy, Brit geezer, bloke: Desmond isn't such a bad old stick after all. 3 the sticks. the country, the provinces, the countryside, the backwoods, the bush, Brit the hinterland or US the hinterlands, Australian the outback, US the boondocks, the boonies: He hates the city and now lives somewhere in the sticks. 4 wrong end of the stick. misunderstanding, misreading, misconstruction, misinterpretation: When it comes to understanding a regulation, Ed always seems to get hold of the wrong end of the stick.

stick-in-the-mud

n. (old) fogy or fogey, conservative, anachronism, Colloq fuddy-duddy, fossil, square, back number: Her husband was a terrible stick-in-the-mud and would never try anything new.

sticky adj. 1 gluey, gummy, viscous, tacky, glutinous, viscid, Colloq gooey: Children, please keep your sticky fingers off the car windows. 2 awkward, ticklish, tricky, sensitive, delicate, uncomfortable, discomfiting, discomforting, embarrassing, Slang hairy: Inviting Steve with his ex-wife might be a bit sticky, don't you think? 3 humid, clammy, dank, damp, muggy, close, sultry, oppressive, sweltering: The weather was oppressive and sticky, and they kept the fan on constantly.

stiff adj. 1 firm, rigid, inelastic, unbending, inflexible, hard, unbendable, tough, solid, solidified, stiffened, unyielding, brittle: The table napkins were so stiff with starch that I almost cracked one. 2 severe, harsh, punitive, hurtful, punishing, abusive, torturous, distressing, afflictive, painful, overwhelming, unbearable, tormenting, merciless, excruciating, cruel, drastic, US cruel and unusual: The government here has stiff penalties for drug traffickers. 3 strong, potent, powerful, overpowering, alcoholic: After that kind of an ordeal, you could use a stiff drink, I'm sure. 4 vigorous, energetic, staunch, dogged, tenacious, resolute, resolved, determined, stubborn, obstinate, unyielding, indomitable, relentless: They met with stiff opposition in trying to capture the fort. 5 strong, steady, powerful, fresh, brisk, spanking, gusty, forceful, howling: We had to reduce sail because of a stiff westerly wind. 6 excessive, exorbitant, high, steep, expensive, dear: They are asking a pretty stiff price these days for a bottle of good vintage port. 7 cool, haughty, rigid, wooden, stuffy, aloof, tense, intense, unrelaxed, forced, pompous, stilted, mannered, ceremonious, austere, formal, chilly, cold, unfriendly, standoffish, reserved, snobbish, Colloq snooty, Slang uptight: Vince is warm and friendly, but his wife is as stiff as a poker. 8 stilted, unrelaxed, wooden, forced, artificial, laboured, pedantic, turgid, formal, prim, Colloq stuffy: I have always found her writing to be rather stiff. 9 difficult, hard, steep, uphill, laborious, arduous, tiring, fatiguing, exhausting, harrowing, toilsome, rigorous, challenging, Colloq rough, tough: It is quite a stiff climb to the top of the pyramid of Cheops. That was a stiff homework assignment. 10 solid, semi-solid, firm, hard, thick, dense, compact: If you add a bit more water the next time, the jelly won't get quite so stiff.

--n. 11 corpse, body, cadaver: Barry had to go down to the morgue to identify some stiff they hauled out of the river. 12 skinflint, miser, Colloq cheapskate, Slang piker, US and Canadian tightwad: A stiff is a customer who fails to leave a tip.

stiffen v. 1 thicken, coagulate, clot, harden, jell, set, solidify, congeal, crystallize: Beat the egg-whites with a whisk until they stiffen. 2 brace, reinforce, tauten, rigidify, toughen, strengthen: The weak support was stiffened by means of a steel bar.

stifle v. 1 suffocate, smother, choke, strangle, throttle, asphyxiate: The firemen were almost stifled by the smoke from the chemical fire. 2 choke back, keep or hold back, withhold, repress, suppress, hold in, restrain, prevent, curb, cover up, control: I stifled a yawn as John went on about his grandchildren. 3 destroy, crush, demolish, extinguish, stamp out, kill, quash, silence, stop, check: Under his tyrannical rule all artistic creativity was stifled for fifty years.

stigma n. brand, (bad) mark, blot, smirch, stain, spot, taint, blemish, demerit, blot on the escutcheon, Brit blot in one's copybook: Bankruptcy is no longer the social stigma that it used to be.

stigmatize
v. brand, mark, scar, blemish, besmirch, sully, disparage, depreciate, denounce, condemn, calumniate, defame, pillory, slander: His foul treachery stigmatized his entire family.

still adj. 1 quiet, serene, placid, calm, tranquil, motionless, unmoving, peaceful, pacific, at rest, quiescent, even, flat, smooth, inert, stationary, undisturbed, unruffled: In the moonlight, the lake lay still and dark. 2 silent, quiet, noiseless, soundless; hushed, restful, Literary stilly: Be still or they'll hear you! In the still night I heard the distant sound of an owl.

--n. 3 stillness, hush, quiet, silence, tranquillity, noiselessness, peacefulness, calm: In the still of the evening came the call of the nightingale.

--adv. 4 even now, to or till or until this or that time, (up) till or until now, yet: Henry came for dinner five years ago, and he's here still. Do you still smoke? 5 even, in addition: Hugh weighed twenty stone when you last saw him, but he's heavier still today. 6 notwithstanding, yet, even then: Are you still going to Sue's party, despite what she said?. 7 motionless(ly), quiet(ly), silent(ly), stock-still: Lie still while I put on this bandage.

--conj. 8 however, but, notwithstanding, nevertheless, even so, in any event, in any case: She said she'd be here; still, you never know, she may come later.

--v. 9 calm, allay, assuage, alleviate, relieve, silence, lull, quiet(en), pacify, soothe, mollify, appease, subdue, suppress: A few kind words and she had stilled my fears.

stilted adj. awkward, ungraceful, graceless, clumsy, wooden, stiff, turgid, affected, artificial, unnatural, mannered, laboured; pretentious, formal, pompous, lofty, bombastic, grandiloquent, high-flown, inflated: Francis has a stilted way of expressing himself.

stimulant n. 1 stimulus, incentive, provocation, spur, prompt, goad, urge, prod, fillip, impetus, incitement, drive, impulse, push, pull, draw: She yielded readily to the stimulants of literature, science, and the fine arts. 2 energizer, antidepressant, tonic, restorative, Colloq bracer, pick-me-up, shot in the arm, Slang pep pill, upper, bennie, speed: He found he couldn't get through the day without a stimulant.

stimulate v. 1 rouse, arouse, waken, awaken, wake up, excite, incite, inspire, encourage, spur, quicken, fire, fuel, nourish, activate, whip or stir up, goad, galvanize, jolt, inspirit: What can be done to stimulate students to study history? Their teacher eventually found a way to stimulate their interest. 2 increase, encourage, prompt, provoke, quicken: This drug stimulates the circulation of the blood.

stimulating
adj. exciting, inspirational, inspiring, arousing, stirring, animating, exhilarating, provocative, thought-provoking: I cannot recall having spent a more stimulating evening in the theatre.

sting v. 1 prick, stab, pierce, stick; bite: Bees, wasps, scorpions, etc. sting you, but mosquitoes, spiders, and snakes bite. 2 hurt, wound, pain, injure, distress, nettle, cut to the quick: He was really stung by Maria's callous remarks. 3 See stimulate, 1, above: We were stung into action by the minister's inspiring speech. 4 cheat, overcharge, swindle, fleece, defraud, Slang rob, soak, rip off, take for a ride: You really were stung if you paid that much for such an old piano.

stinker n. wretch, villain, scoundrel, cad, heel, beast, cur, viper, snake in the grass, skunk, swine, polecat, Rather old-fashioned blackguard, rogue, Archaic knave, varlet, dastard, (base) caitiff, Colloq stinkpot, louse, creep, rat, Brit nasty piece of work, sod, Old-fashioned rotter, bounder, blighter, Slang (rotten) bastard, son of a bitch, Brit toerag, bugger, US SOB, bum, stinkeroo or stinkaroo, Taboo slang shit, Brit arse-hole, US ass-hole: They were a lovely couple, but their son was a real stinker.

stinking adj. 1 foul-smelling, smelly, fetid or foetid, mephitic, rank, noisome, malodorous, reeking, putrid, miasmal or miasmatic(al) or miasmic, rancid, gamy, Colloq Brit pongy, whiffy: They were kept in a stinking dungeon with little food for a month. 2 wretched, villainous, beastly, vile, contemptible, low, despicable, mean, nasty, disgusting, rotten, terrible, awful, Old-fashioned dastardly, Colloq lousy, Taboo slang shitty: Taking my clothes while I was swimming was a stinking thing to do. 3 drunken, drunk (as a lord or US also a skunk), intoxicated, inebriated, (be)sotted, under the influence, over the limit, high, maudlin, tipsy, woozy, Colloq pie-eyed, loaded, in one's cups, under the weather, three sheets to the wind, Slang sozzled, soused (to the gills), potted, plastered, smashed, bombed, pissed, boozed, boozy, tanked, stoned, canned, US in the bag: The last time I saw Bob, he was so stinking I had to pour him onto his train.

stint n. 1 share, quota, allotment, bit, assignment, stretch, shift, term, time, job, chore, task, routine, turn, tour, duty, responsibility, obligation, charge: She had done her stint of washing-up and refused to do any more. 2 control, curb, limit, limitation, restriction, check, restraint, constraint, condition, qualification, reservation: The committee is free to exercise without stint its power to raise membership fees.

--v. 3 control, curb, limit, restrict: Don't stint yourself, lunch is on the firm. 4 skimp, scrimp, be stingy or cheap or penurious or parsimonious or sparing or frugal, hold back (on), withhold, economize, pinch (pennies), cut corners, Colloq Brit be mingy: They certainly didn't stint on the food and drink at Andrea's party.

stipend n. pay, salary, payment, remuneration, remittance, recompense, compensation, reward, emolument, earnings, income; grant, subvention, scholarship, subsidy, allowance, allotment, (financial) support: His stipend barely covers his basic expenses.

stipulate v. specify, demand, require, covenant, set forth, agree (to), provide (for), guarantee, warrant, promise, insist (upon or on); call for: The agreement stipulates that the goods be received prior to payment. The compensation stipulated in the contract has been paid.

stipulation

n. condition, demand, essential, given, requirement, requisite, prerequisite, specification, undertaking, obligation, covenant, clause, proviso, term, agreement, provision, guarantee, warranty, promise: This stipulation calls for payment on delivery in full and in sterling.

stir v. 1 Often, stir up. agitate, shake (up), mix (up), scramble, amalgamate, mingle, commingle, intermingle, merge, blend, fold (in), churn (up), beat, whip (up): Stir all the ingredients together. 2 move, rise, arise, get up, bestir (oneself), be up and about, Colloq get a move on, get moving, get a wiggle on, shake a leg, look or step lively, look alive, stir one's stumps: It is about time you were up and stirring. 3 disturb, trouble, affect, upset, stimulate, activate: The play stirred the conscience of the king. Mention 'diet' to Roberta and you'll stir up a wasp's nest. 4 Often, stir up. motivate, encourage, stimulate, energize, galvanize, electrify, animate, excite, inspire, provoke, move, rouse, arouse, get, prompt, urge, incite, spur, prod, induce, persuade, convince: What will it take to stir the council to take action? The usual rabble-rousers were there, stirring up the crowd. 5 Often, stir up. awaken, rouse, (cause to) recall or call to mind, revive, resuscitate: Those photographs stir up so many old memories!

--n. 6 bustle, activity, movement, stirring, action, commotion, flurry, confusion, tumult, ado, to-do, fuss, disturbance, excitement, hubbub, Colloq Brit kerfuffle: There was a stir at the door, which was flung wide to allow Kitty to sweep in. The news of her marriage caused quite a stir. 7 prison, jail or Brit also gaol, jail-house, clink, penitentiary, lock-up, Military Brit glasshouse, US brig, Slang chiefly Brit quod, US big house, pen, slammer, can, calaboose: He claims he's in stir for something he didn't do.

stirring adj. moving, telling, emotional, emotive, emotion-charged, rousing, stimulating, inspiring, gripping, evocative, exciting, thrilling, melodramatic, dramatic, heady, intoxicating, spirited, inspiriting, exhilarating, awe-inspiring: He was treated to the stirring experience of hearing fifty thousand people shouting his name in unison, again and again.

stock n. 1 supply, store, inventory, stockpile, reserve, reservoir, cache, hoard; wares, merchandise, goods, selection, assortment, range, variety, array: One can select something suitable from the stock at the local wine shop. 2 pedigree, bloodline, house, dynasty, (line of) descent, genealogy, extraction, roots, lineage, family, ancestry, parentage, breeding, heritage: Her mother was concerned that she should marry someone of good stock. 3 source, progenitor, creator, father, begetter, forefather, ancestor, precursor, forerunner, forebear; founder: He might well provide the stock for a new line of kings. 4 livestock, (domestic or farm) animals, cattle, beasts; horses, cows, oxen, sheep, goats: Don't forget to water the stock before driving to the village. 5 share, ownership, investment, capital, funds; property, assets: He owned ten shares of stock in the corporation. The company's stock is worth next to nothing today. 6 take stock. weigh (up), estimate, review, appraise, look at, Colloq size up: We must take stock of the situation and decide what to do.

--adj. 7 routine, stereotyped, banal, clich,d, commonplace, usual, hackneyed, ordinary, stale, staple, run-of-the-mill, tired, old, everyday, customary, set, standard, traditional, trite, worn out, Colloq corny: Ask him how he is and you always get his stock reply, 'Fair to meddling'. 8 standard, ordinary, regular, routine, staple: The shop does not carry 'extra tall' or 'extra short', only stock sizes.

--v. 9 carry, have, have or make available, handle, deal in, market, sell, supply, furnish, provide, offer, trade in, keep: The shop stocked a wide range of hardware. 10 Often, stock up (on). accumulate, amass, pile up, stockpile, hoard, store (up), cache, lay in, inventory: Everyone stocked up on food in case the village was blocked by snow.

stocky adj. thickset, sturdy, chunky, dumpy, solid, stumpy, burly, beefy, heavy-set, squat, pyknic, mesomorphic: He is stocky and powerfully built.

stodgy adj. stuffy, dull, heavy, ponderous, elephantine, boring, tedious, humdrum, tiresome, turgid, uninteresting, unimaginative, dry-as-dust, jejune, vapid, dreary, flat, colourless, bland, Colloq ho-hum, blah, deadly: The speaker was boring and gave the stodgiest talk I have ever heard.

stoical adj. stoic, impassive, resigned, apathetic, cool, unemotional, emotionless, frigid, imperturbable, calm, dispassionate, indifferent, phlegmatic, long-suffering, stolid, disciplined, self-possessed, (self-)controlled, Colloq unflappable: Bertram remained stoical as the judge read out the sentence of death.

stoicism n. indifference, self-possession, austerity, self-control, fortitude, calmness, calm, coolness, imperturbability, longanimity, forbearance, patience, fatalism, resignation, Colloq unflappability: The people accepted the news of one defeat after another with increasing stoicism.

stole n. tippet, scarf, boa, shawl: Mandy was too embarrassed to wear her mink stole to the charity ball.

stolid adj. impassive, dull, doltish, obtuse, thick, dense, bovine, wooden, slow, lumpish, unemotional, clod-like, phlegmatic, lethargic, apathetic, indifferent, uninterested: He was a stolid character, very different from his dynamic younger brother.

stomach n. 1 abdomen, belly, gut, pot-belly, pot, paunch, Colloq corporation, bay window, tummy, bread basket, spare tyre: His huge stomach hung over and concealed his belt. 2 tolerance; taste, appetite, desire, hunger, thirst, craving, need, inclination, relish, longing, yearning, hankering: I have no stomach for those TV sitcoms featuring precocious four-year-olds.

--v. 3 abide, tolerate, endure, stand, bear, suffer, take, accept, swallow, resign or reconcile oneself to, put up with, countenance, brook, Brit stick: He walked out when he could no longer stomach her continual criticism.

stony adj. 1 stoney, rocky, pebbly, shingly, shingled: Some of the beaches along the Riviera are too stony to lie on directly. 2 stoney, hard, obdurate, adamant, adamantine, heartless, stony-hearted, hard-hearted, indifferent, unsympathetic, implacable, intractable, heartless, insensitive, insensible, unfeeling, unsentimental, merciless, pitiless, cold, cold-hearted, chilly, frigid, icy, tough, callous, steely, inflexible, unresponsive, Colloq hard-boiled: He listened to her pleadings in stony silence. 3 bankrupt, penniless, indigent, poverty-stricken, poor, Colloq broke, Chiefly Brit stoney, stony-broke or stoney-broke, skint: At the time, I was so stony I didn't have two pennies to rub together.

stoop v. 1 Sometimes, stoop down. bend (down), bow, duck (down), lean (down), hunch (down), hunker (down), crouch (down), scrunch down: She had to stoop down to talk to the child. 2 Often, stoop low. condescend, deign, lower or abase or degrade oneself, sink, humble oneself; be demeaned or diminished: She had to stoop pretty low to accept a job paying only half of what she had demanded.

--n. 3 hunch, slouch, scrunch, crouch, stooping, slouching, Technical lordosis, curvature of the spine, torticollis, wryneck: The orthopaedist thought his stoop could be corrected by a back brace.

stop v. 1 discontinue, halt, terminate, cease, break off, end, put an end or a stop to, bring to a stop or a halt or an end or a close, give up, quit, leave off, finish, conclude, desist (from), refrain (from), abandon; draw to a close, be over, come to a stop or a halt or an end or a close; Colloq cut (out), lay off, Brit pack in: Stop shouting, I'm not deaf. The car stopped suddenly. Will the fighting ever stop? 2 bring to a stop or a halt or a standstill, check, cut off; arrest, suppress, restrain, thwart; block, bar, obstruct, dam, keep or hold back, prevent, hinder; slow, impede, stem, stanch or staunch: The main problem was how to stop drug trafficking. Can we stop the river from flooding? This tourniquet will stop the bleeding. 3 Often, stop up. obstruct, block (up), jam (up), plug (up), clog (up), choke (up), stuff (up), fill (up), close (up or off): The drain was all stopped up with paper. 4 peter out, be over, end: He gave me an injection and the pain finally stopped. 5 pause, break, take a break, interrupt, tarry; sojourn, rest, stay, put up, lodge, visit, stop off or in or over; pull over, pull up: I'd like to stop for a cup of coffee. I stopped at The Bell Inn on my way here. We stopped short at the sign.

--n. 6 halt, end, cessation, termination, ban, prohibition; close, standstill, conclusion: The new law put a stop to door-to-door selling. We must bring that practice to a stop. 7 stay, sojourn, visit, break, rest, stopover, US layover: We thoroughly enjoyed our stop in Brighton. 8 stopping-place, station, terminal, stage, terminus, US and Canadian depot: There is a bus stop in the next street. 9 blockage, blocking, stopping (up), stoppage, closing up, obstruction, block: A stop in the water supply was soon cleared up.

stopgap n. 1 makeshift, improvisation, substitute: The wire served as a stopgap until they could get the proper part.

--adj. 2 makeshift, temporary, improvised, impromptu, substitute, emergency, provisional, stand-by; jury-rigged: A broomstick served as a stopgap mast for the dinghy's sail.

stopper n. stopple, cork, plug, bung: I had problems getting the stopper out of the barrel.

store v. 1 stock, collect, accumulate, put by, lay away, set aside, pile (up), aggregate, amass, cumulate; hoard; assemble: The corn is stored in huge silos. 2 keep, hold, stow (away), preserve, warehouse, stockpile: Apples should be stored in a cool, dry place.

--n. 3 supply, inventory, collection, accumulation, stock, stockpile, reservoir, cache, fund: We keep a large store of dry foods for an emergency. Grandfather has an endless store of tales about the sea. 4 shop, department store, market, retailer, outlet, cooperative (store), Colloq co-op: You might get a good fridge at a department store. 5 set or lay store by. give credence to, believe (in), have faith or trust in, trust (in), bank or rely on, depend on or upon, count on, value: I shouldn't set much store by what that old gossip tells you.

storehouse

n. warehouse, depository or depositary, repository, storeroom, bank, store, (In Asia) godown; arsenal, magazine, armoury: The company maintains storehouses in a dozen countries to better supply their customers.

storey n. floor, level, tier, Chiefly US story: The new building is five storeys high.

storm n. 1 tempest, disturbance, turbulence; wind-storm, mistral, gale, whirlwind, hurricane, tornado, typhoon, cyclone, US and Canadian williwaw; shower, cloudburst, downpour, rainstorm, deluge, monsoon, thunder-shower, thunderstorm, electrical storm; dust-storm, sandstorm, simoom or simoon or samiel, harmattan, khamsin, sirocco; snowstorm, blizzard; hailstorm, ice-storm: People were evacuated from the area where it was thought the storm would strike. 2 outburst, outcry, explosion, eruption, outpouring, furore or US furor: The proposed taxes were met by a storm of protest. 3 disturbance, rumpus, stir, commotion, agitation, furore or US furor; turbulence, strife, turmoil, disorder: I am not sure the company could weather another serious financial storm.

--v. 4 rage, rant, rave, bluster, fume, explode, thunder, roar, raise the roof, raise hell, raise Cain, Colloq fly off the handle, blow one's top, US blow one's stack: When she found out where Laura had gone, mother stormed round the house. 5 blow, rain, hail, snow, sleet, rage, bluster, squall, howl: It stormed for a week, and much property was destroyed. 6 attack, assault, assail, raid, blitz, blitzkrieg, bombard, barrage, fire upon or on, shell; besiege, lay siege to, siege: The enemy stormed the castle again and again without effect.

stormy adj. 1 violent, tempestuous, blustery, turbulent, wild, howling, raging, roaring, foul, nasty, bad, not fit for man or beast, inclement: It was always stormy along the eastern coast of the island. 2 violent, tempestuous, turbulent, fierce, fiery, frantic, frenetic, nerve-racking or nerve-wracking, frenzied, feverish, raving, wild: He and Kate enjoyed - if that is the right word - a stormy relationship for thirty years.

story n. 1 narrative, tale, recounting, anecdote, yarn; account, recital, chronicle, record, history; legend, myth, fairy tale or story, romance, gest or geste, fable, fabliau; epic, saga, Edda; joke, Colloq gag; mystery, detective story, whodunit, thriller; horror story; allegory, parable; piece, article: In olden days, the historians were the story tellers. George really knows how to tell a story. Have any of your stories been published? 2 contention, testimony, assertion, version, statement, representation, allegation: That's his story and he's sticking to it. 3 fib, confabulation, (white or black) lie, alibi, excuse, untruth, falsehood; tall tale, fishing or fish story: He told us some story about having sailed round the world single-handed in a dinghy. Did you believe her story about being of royal blood? 4 article, item, report, dispatch, news, tidings, release, information, copy, feature; scoop, exclusive: A story about China appears on page two. 5 story-line, plot, scenario, (plot) outline, summary, book: The story needs some revision before the dialogue can be rewritten. 6 biography, curriculum vitae, life (story); facts, experiences, adventures, fortunes: His story is going to be made into a film.

stout adj. 1 fat, obese, tubby, overweight, thickset, heavy-set, big, burly, corpulent, fleshy, heavy, plump, portly: She squeezed onto the seat between the door and a rather stout man. 2

valiant, brave, undaunted, dauntless, hardy, courageous, gallant, plucky, valorous, staunch, resolute, doughty, bold, gallant: 'Stout fellow!' exclaimed the colonel, the ultimate compliment he was ever heard to utter. 3 strong, tough, substantial, durable: Tie stout cord round the box before posting it. 4 brawny, sturdy, healthy, robust, strapping, stalwart, lusty, hulking, athletic, Colloq beefy, husky: Two stout bouncers flanked the entrance to the club.

stow v. pack, store, load, deposit, put (away), place; cram, stuff, wedge, bundle, jam; hide, secrete, conceal, cache, Colloq stash (away): We stowed our gear the moment we went aboard. They couldn't stow another thing in the basement. Where did he stow the pistol when the police searched the place?

straggle v. stray, ramble, loiter, rove, prowl, range, drift, wander, meander, (be) spread, Colloq mosey: Thousands of refugees straggled along the road away from the bombed village.

straight adj. 1 direct, unbending, undeviating, uncurved, regular, linear: The tracks are straight for as far as the eye can see. 2 erect, vertical, upright, upstanding, perpendicular; plumb: Stop slouching and stand up straight. He stood straight as a ramrod. 3 even, square, true, right, flat, smooth, horizontal, level: Are you sure that the billiard table is straight? 4 honest, frank, straightforward, direct, forthright, legitimate, (fair and) square, fair, equitable, just, above-board, upright, respectable, decent, trustworthy, honourable, dependable, reliable, Colloq upfront: Sternway seems to be perfectly straight in his business dealings. 5 unequivocal, unambiguous, straightforward, candid, plain, simple, explicit, blunt, unembellished, unelaborated, unqualified, outright, accurate: The straight facts are given in this article. The police cannot get a straight story out of him as to his whereabouts last night. 6 direct, point-blank, straightforward, straight from the shoulder, candid, outright, plain, frank, no-nonsense: Do you mind answering a straight question? 7 shipshape, orderly, neat, tidy, in order, arranged, organized, sorted out, spruce, straightened out: I wish Leonard would put his room straight before the guests arrive. 8 sober, staid, sedate, serious, unsmiling, unemotional, impassive, emotionless, taciturn, composed, mask-like: It was impossible to keep a straight face during the school play. 9 undiluted, neat, unmixed, pure, unadulterated, uncut, unmodified, unaltered, unalloyed: He likes his whisky straight. 10 even, square, settled, straightened out, agreed: The account will be straight when Dick makes the last payment. 11 heterosexual, normal, Slang hetero: Till Evelyn came out of the closet, I thought he was straight.

--adv. 12 directly, right, undeviatingly, unswervingly; as the crow flies, in a beeline: I should have known she would go straight to the police. 13 (straight) ahead: Go straight for a mile and you'll see it on the right. 14 Sometimes, straight out. directly, unequivocally, unambiguously, forthrightly, straightforwardly, point-blank, candidly, plainly, simply, in plain or simple English, explicitly, outright, honestly, accurately: Just give me the story straight, without beating about the bush. 15 Often, straight away or off. immediately, at once, without delay, instantly, summarily, directly, right (away or off), right off the bat, promptly, Colloq p.d.q. (= 'pretty damned quick'): She went back to work straight after having the baby. I told him straight off to leave town. 16 straight up. without ice: I like my gin straight up.

straighten

v. 1 Often, straighten out. uncurl, untangle, disentangle, unsnarl, unravel, unkink; clear (up), settle, resolve, sort out, set or put straight or right or to rights, correct, adjust, rectify: She decided to have her hair straightened. They are busy straightening out the matter of father's will. 2 Often, straighten out. reform, rehabilitate, organize, reorganize: Perhaps psychotherapy will straighten him out. 3 Often, straighten out or up. tidy (up), arrange, rearrange, neaten, spruce up, put in order, clean (up): Would you help me straighten up the place before you leave?

strain°   v. 1 stretch, force, tax, overtax, burden, overburden, overwork, push; exceed, surpass: His story that a bushy-haired intruder had shot her strained the jury's credulity. 2 push, pull, tug, heave, stretch, twist, wrench, struggle: As he strained at his bonds the rope cut more deeply into his wrists. 3 injure, hurt, harm, impair, damage, overwork, tax, pull, tear, twist, wrench: I strained my back lifting that box of books. 4 stretch, crane, twist; try (hard), struggle, strive, labour, toil, push, make an effort, exert oneself: She strained to catch a glimpse of the prince. They strained to hear every word. 5 filter, sift, drain, screen, sieve; winnow, draw off, separate; purify, seep, percolate: Strain the soup to remove the bones. Strain the dregs from the wine. The water is then strained through sand.

--n. 6 sprain, injury, damage, harm, wrench: Strains often hurt more than broken bones. 7 anxiety, worry; effort, exertion, stress, tension, pressure, burden; tax, demand, obligation: The strain began to tell on all of us. Another rope was needed to relieve the strain on the first. This advertising budget will put a great strain on our resources. 8 Often, strains. air, melody, tune, song, sound, music: In the distance I made out the faint strains of skirling bagpipes. 9 tenor, tone, drift, inclination, tendency, quality, spirit, mood, humour, character, complexion, cast, impression, thread, vein, theme: I detected a mellowing strain in her letters.

strainý   n. 1 family, stock, ancestry, roots, extraction, derivation, (family) background, heritage, descent, parentage, lineage, pedigree, bloodline, race, line, descendants: This sample of sweet pea came from an entirely different strain. 2 trace, hint, suggestion, suspicion, soup‡on, streak, trait, mark, indication, vestige, evidence, sign: There was a definite strain of ruthlessness in her character.

strained adj. laboured, forced, artificial, stiff, tense, awkward, uneasy, uncomfortable, difficult, tension-ridden, self-conscious, unnatural, insincere, put-on: His already strained relations with his wife scarcely improved when he met Lisa.

strait   adj. 1 narrow, tight, constricted, constricting, confining, confined, restricting, restricted, limited, limiting, rigorous, demanding, exacting; difficult, straitened: Strait is the gate and narrow is the way which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.

--n. 2 Usually (except in gazetteers), straits. narrows, channel: We coasted through the Straits of Magellan with all sails flying. 3 dire or desperate or sore straits. bad or poor state or condition, trouble, predicament, plight, mess, dilemma, tight spot, hot water, US bind Colloq pickle, jam, scrape, pretty or fine kettle of fish, US box: We shall be in dire straits if father's cheque doesn't come soon.

straitened
adj. inadequate, insufficient, reduced, oppressed, distressed, needy, necessitous, poor, poverty-stricken, indigent, impoverished, destitute, penniless, insolvent, Colloq hard up, US strapped: As a writer, he was accustomed to living in straitened circumstances between sales of his stories.

strait-laced
adj. priggish, prim, conservative, old-fashioned, Victorian, old-maidish, proper, prudish, puritanical, moralistic, strict, narrow-minded, (over-)scrupulous, fussy, Colloq pernickety or US also persnickety, stuffy, goody-goody: Her aunt has the strait-laced notion that girls ought to be home by ten o'clock.

strange adj. 1 odd, peculiar, bizarre, weird, curious, uncommon, unusual, rare, singular, exceptional, eccentric, weird, funny, quaint, fantastic, out of the ordinary, extraordinary, out-of-the-way, queer, outlandish, unheard-of, grotesque, abnormal, remarkable, surprising, inexplicable, unaccountable, uncanny, Colloq offbeat, far-out, Slang kinky, Brit rum, US kooky: I had a strange dream last night. 2 unfamiliar, unknown, unaccustomed: The children were warned not to get into strange cars. She was overwhelmed by the strange culture of her husband's country.

stranger n. foreigner, outlander, alien, newcomer, visitor: The people in these parts don't take kindly to strangers.

stratagem n. trick, artifice, device, dodge, subterfuge, lure, wile, ruse, plan, scheme, plot, intrigue, manoeuvre, ploy, tactic: What stratagem did they use to tempt you to attend this boring affair?

strategic adj. tactical, key, crucial, principal, cardinal, critical, vital, key: That line of supply is of strategic importance. Sending in the landing force was a strategic manoeuvre.

strategy n. plan, tactic(s), design, policy, procedure, scheme, blueprint, Colloq game or master plan, scenario: The enemy's strategy calls for quick air strikes by low-flying bombers.

stratum n. 1 layer, level, stratification, table, vein, seam; plane: These coal strata have been mined for hundreds of years. 2 level, caste, class, rank, station, standing, status, bracket, group, estate: She married someone from a higher stratum of society.

stray v. 1 wander, roam, rove, range, straggle, drift, meander: They found the ponies straying up the valley and across the moor. 2 deviate, diverge, wander, digress, ramble, divagate, get or go off the track or subject, go off on or at a tangent, get sidetracked: She let her mind stray from the matter in hand.

--n. 3 straggler, vagrant, waif, US dogie: They have always taken in and cared for strays.

--adj. 4 vagrant, lost, roving, roaming, wandering, homeless, derelict, abandoned: The problem with stray pets increases when people abandon them on returning home after the summer. 5 random, casual, chance, accidental, haphazard, singular, freak, accidental, unexpected: A stray bullet caught him in the leg. 6 isolated, separate(d), lone, odd, single: She brushed a stray hair from her face.

streak n. 1 stripe, striation, strip, stroke, bar, band, line, mark, smear, slash, dash, touch, daub, fleck, trace; vein, layer, seam, stratum: The male bird is marked with a streak of bright reddish-orange on its throat. A red streak marks the iron deposit. 2 flash, bolt: I saw the dark figure in the light from a streak of lightning. 3 spell, spate, period, stretch, run: They were celebrating their streak of good luck at the roulette table.

--v. 4 stripe, striate, line, bar, mark, smear, daub, slash: Dawn was beginning to streak the sky when she left the party. 5 race, run, rush, dash, sprint, dart, hurtle, fly, scoot, speed, hasten, hurry, tear, whistle, zip, zoom, Colloq whiz or whizz: The gang streaked through the village on their motor cycles and were gone.

stream n. 1 brook, brooklet, streamlet, rivulet, tributary, river, freshet, run, watercourse, waterway, channel, Chiefly literary rill, runnel, Literary or N Brit dialect beck, burn, Archaic NE

US except in placenames kill, US creek, branch: If the streams continue to swell, flooding can be expected in low-lying areas. 2 flow, current, outpouring, effluence or efflux, effusion, rush, spurt, surge, fountain, geyser, torrent, flood, deluge, cataract, cascade: A stream of bubbles showed where the diver was swimming. A stream of obscenities poured from his lips. 3 flow, rush, swarm, tide, flood, deluge, succession, series, row, line, string, chain, barrage, Brit queue: Simon has had a constant stream of visitors all morning.

--v. 4 run, flow, course, glide, rush, slide, slip, surge; pour, issue, emanate, gush, flood, spout, well up or out or forth, squirt, spurt, shoot, jet; cascade: The rain streamed down the windows. 5 issue, emanate; rush, surge, pour, flood, file, proceed, march, walk, move: People streamed in and out of the building all day long.

streamer n. pennant, banner, pennon, flag, bannerette or banneret, banderole or banderol or bannerol, gonfalon or gonfanon, jack, burgee: A long streamer fluttered from the mast.

streamlined
adj. 1 aerodynamic, hydrodynamic, curved, curvilinear; smooth, flowing: Streamlined design began to appear in cars and boats in the 1930s. 2 modern, ultra-modern, modernistic, modernized, up to date, time-saving, labour-saving, compact, (well-)organized, efficient, automated: Mother always dreamt about having a streamlined kitchen. 3 well-run, smooth, efficient, automated, labour-saving, time-saving, profitable, productive, simplified: He designed a fully streamlined manufacturing process for us.

street n. 1 thoroughfare, way, road, roadway, high road, avenue, concourse, boulevard, lane, drive, terrace, circle, row, passage, alley, byway: I don't know the name of the street where she lives. 2 up (someone's) Brit street or US alley. (someone's) cup of tea, in (someone's) bailiwick, suiting (someone) to a T: Crossword puzzles are very much up Eugene's street.

strength n. 1 power, might, force, mightiness, robustness, toughness, stoutness, sturdiness, brawn, brawniness, muscle, sinew: Do you have the strength to lift that by yourself? 2 fortitude, backbone, stamina, tenacity, tenaciousness, will-power, perseverance, persistence, resoluteness, resolution, pertinacity, nerve, grit, pluck, determination, gameness, intrepidity, firmness, stability, Colloq guts, gutsiness, spunk, US intestinal fortitude, stick-to-it-iveness: Sally was a tower of strength when I needed her the most. 3 talent, ability, aptitude, gift, strong point, asset: One of his strengths is being able to sight-read music. 4 concentration, concentratedness, intensity, potency: Coffee of that strength would keep me awake all night. 5 vigour, force, energy, power, potency, intensity: The strength of the wind was great enough to pick up cars and toss them about. 6 durability, power, toughness, stability, reliability, resistance, solidity, stamina, ruggedness, endurance, soundness: The manufacturer claims that his product has the strength to resist wear for a hundred years. 7 persuasiveness, cogency, weight, force, convincingness, incisiveness, soundness: There is no disputing the strength of the argument against smoking.

strengthen

v. 1 reinforce, renew, bolster, fortify, support, confirm, corroborate, substantiate, buttress, step up, boost: A thousand troops were sent to strengthen the garrison at Fort Old. 2 encourage, hearten, invigorate, fortify, rejuvenate, nourish, energize, vitalize, toughen, brace (up), steel, innervate, stiffen: Whatever she said seems to have strengthened his determination to succeed.

strenuous adj. 1 demanding, taxing, tough, arduous, laborious, toilsome, burdensome, tiring, exhausting, difficult, hard, uphill: Hauling in the fishing nets was strenuous work. 2 energetic, active, vigorous, enthusiastic, zealous, earnest, dynamic, intense, indefatigable, tireless, persistent, dogged, determined, tenacious, pertinacious, resolute, sincere, eager: He has made a strenuous effort to be more accommodating.

stress n. 1 emphasis, force, pressure, forcefulness, accent, accentuation, prominence, Technical ictus: Many people place the stress on the first syllable of 'controversy'. 2 emphasis, significance, importance, weight, force, insistence, urgency: She lays too much stress on looks. 3 (stress and) strain, burden, anxiety, worry, distress, pain, grief, suffering, anguish, pressure, tenseness, tension: She has four elderly people to care for, and the stress is beginning to show.

--v. 4 emphasize, accent, accentuate, lay stress or emphasis on, underscore, underline, mark, note, make a point of, bring home, focus on, bring into prominence, spotlight, feature, highlight: The conference succeeded in stressing the importance of a good home life. 5 strain, put under strain or stress, upset, disturb, burden, worry, distress, Brit pressurize or US pressure: Duncan was terribly stressed after a few months in the new job.

stretch v. 1 extend, reach; span, spread: Her memory stretches back to the first World War. His Texas ranch stretches as far as the eye can see. 2 distend, lengthen, elongate, widen, broaden, swell, draw or pull out, balloon, inflate, enlarge, expand, increase, dilate, blow up: Stretch the netting to cover the frame. 3 overtax, overextend; warp, strain, distort, bend, break: We like to stretch our employees in this company. He is stretching the rules by allowing undergraduates to take his course.

--n. 4 elasticity, give, resilience, resiliency, stretchability, stretchiness: There isn't much stretch left in this old rubber band. 5 extent, reach, span, spread, expanse, sweep, area, tract, US section: There is a stretch of desert just south of the coast. 6 time, stint, period, spell, term, tour (of duty), Colloq US and Canadian hitch: He signed up for a two-year stretch in the navy. He once did a six-month stretch in prison for assault.

strew v. scatter, bestrew, sprinkle, disperse, spread, toss, distribute; litter: Rubbish was strewn all over the floor.

stricken adj. 1 Usually, stricken by. struck (down) (by), hit (by), laid low (by or with), affected (by or with), afflicted (with), racked (by or with): He was stricken by pneumonia but is recovering. 2 affected (by), smitten (by), overwhelmed (by or with), overcome (by or with), plagued (by or with), tormented (by); broken, crushed, demoralized, broken-hearted, grief-stricken: He was stricken by her beauty. During the plague year, commerce virtually ceased with the stricken city of London.

strict adj. 1 rigorous, narrow, close, undeviating, confining, constricting, constrictive, rigid, defined, precise, exact, exacting, stringent, meticulous, compulsive, punctilious, finicky or finical, scrupulous, attentive, conscientious, faithful, thorough, complete: The judge's strict interpretation of the law left no room for leniency or sympathy. 2 severe, austere, authoritarian, autocratic, stern, firm, hard, tough, uncompromising, inflexible, cold-blooded, iron-fisted, tyrannical, harsh, ruthless, pitiless, unsympathetic: Miss Wells is remembered by all her students as a strict disciplinarian.

stricture n. 1 interdiction, blockage, restriction, restraint, constraint, deterrent, impediment: The strictures imposed on credit have throttled trade. 2 criticism, censure: He deplored conservative strictures against anything new in the arts.

strident adj. shrill, raucous, harsh, loud, grating, stridulous, stridulant, scraping, scratching, scratchy, grinding, hoarse, rough, guttural, husky, gravelly, rasping, jarring, discordant, unharmonious, unmelodious, unmusical, cacophonous, croaking, creaking: Her strident voice could be heard all over the building.

strife n. 1 discord, disharmony, disagreement, difference, conflict, rivalry, competition, contention, dispute, dissension, struggle, squabbling, bickering, arguing, quarrelling: The nation is torn by the strife of perpetual labour disputes. 2 animosity, friction, hard feelings, bad feeling(s), bad blood, antagonism, ill will, hatred, enmity, hostility, unfriendliness: The strife between us will continue because our philosophies differ so radically.

strike v. 1 hit, deal a blow to, knock, smack, thump, thwack, crown, cuff, punch, smite; beat, hammer, belabour, batter, pummel or pommel, pelt, buffet, thrash; cudgel, bludgeon, club, whip, horsewhip, scourge, lash, cane, flog, birch, slap, Colloq wallop, slug, whack, clout, sock, conk, belt, bash, lambaste, bop: Small wonder he struck you after what you called his wife. 2 deliver, deal, aim, direct: He struck a blow for freedom. 3 hit, collide with, land on or in or against, smash or bump or bang or crash or dash into, go or run into, impact: Mrs Humphrey's car went out of control and struck a tree. 4 remove, take away, take apart, dismantle, knock down; take or pull or haul down: Stage-hands struck the set. As the wind piped up we struck the mainsail. 5 Usually, strike off or from or out. obliterate, expunge, erase, eradicate, blot out, delete, scratch, eliminate, rub out, cross (out), cancel, wipe out, US x out: After the scandal, his name was struck off the register. Strike out any references that might be thought libellous. 6 light, ignite: He struck a match to see where he was going. 7 affect, impress, influence, afflict, Colloq hit: The death of her kitten struck Mandy to the heart. 8 make, reach, attain, conclude; agree or settle (on), ratify, confirm: We struck a bargain on the sale of the car. 9 occur or come to, dawn on or upon, Colloq hit, register (with): It suddenly struck me that you are leaving tomorrow. 10 impress, print, stamp, punch, mint, make: They have struck a new gold coin for collectors. 11 instil, implant, induce: Horror films struck fear into our hearts when we were children. 12 assume, adopt, put on, display, affect, take on, feign: He struck a supercilious pose of insouciant hauteur that annoyed her intensely. 13 Often, strike down. afflict, affect, attack, indispose, incapacitate, disable, cripple, invalid: Polio struck her down in the prime of life. 14 encounter, come or happen or hit upon, come across, chance upon, discover, stumble on, find: The news is that they've struck oil in the North Sea. 15 revolt, rebel, mutiny, walk out (of or off the job): The machinists struck at midnight, bringing the industry to a halt. 16 strike on or upon. dream up, devise, conjure up, improvise, work out, invent, contrive, come up with, hit on or upon, arrive at: The alchemist never did strike upon a way to turn lead into gold. 17 strike out. a fail, get nowhere, Colloq US miss the boat, flop, come a cropper, Slang US blow it, blow the gaff, come to nothing or naught or nought: Tim always strikes out when it comes to girls. b See 5, above. 18 strike up. (cause to) begin or start or commence: The band struck up. We struck up an acquaintance aboard ship.

--n. 19 attack, assault: A dawn air strike is planned. 20 walk-out, sit-down (strike), job action, slow-down, go-slow, work-to-rule: They will call a strike if negotiations break down.

striking adj. remarkable, astounding, astonishing, amazing, wondrous, awe-inspiring, awesome, stunning, impressive, imposing, fabulous, out of the ordinary, unusual, rare, exceptional, marvellous, extraordinary, magnificent, superb, splendid, stupendous, Colloq great, smashing, Slang old-fashioned Brit ripping, ripsnorting, top-hole, topping: I met the most striking girl at the golf club.

string n. 1 line, cord, thread, twine, fibre, rope, cable, ligament, strand, filament: To fly a kite one needs the right weight of string. 2 leash, lead, leader: Why does he let her drag him around on the end of a string? 3 line, row, series, sequence, succession, chain, procession, stream, train, file, Chiefly Brit queue: A string of coincidences led to their meeting again after twenty years. 4 necklace, chain, loop, strand, dog-collar, choker, chaplet, wreath, riviŠre, Archaic carcanet: In her hair was a string of pearls. 5 pull strings or wires. use or exert influence, Colloq throw one's weight around: He had to pull strings to get his son a job on the paper. 6 pull the strings. be in control, control, run, operate, dominate, be in command, be in the driver's seat, hold the reins, manipulate: She is the one who pulls the strings when it comes to new investments. 7 strings. conditions, stipulations, provisos, qualifications, requirements, prerequisites, terms, obligations, limitations, provisions, musts, Colloq catches: I might have known that there would be strings attached to their offer of a free holiday in Corfu.

--v. 8 thread, join: The children were busy stringing beads to make necklaces. 9 Often, string together or up. loop, festoon, link, drape, suspend, sling, hang, array, concatenate, chain together: At holiday time, coloured lights are strung round the town square. 10 string along. a follow, go along (with), agree, concur, collaborate: I said I would string along with the plan for the time being. b keep waiting or dangling, keep on a string, keep on tenterhooks, Colloq play fast and loose with (someone): She's just stringing you along till her boyfriend comes back. c fool, deceive, bluff, dupe, cheat, trick, hoax, Colloq take someone for a ride, put one or something over on (someone): They strung Harold along for months before they made off with his life savings. 11 string out. a stretch, reach, extend: The line of refugees strung out as far as one could see. b delay, postpone, drag out, protract, spin out: He strung out the repayment for as long as possible. 12 string up. hang, lynch: He knew that if the jury didn't convict him the townspeople would string him up.

stringy adj. fibrous, chewy, sinewy, gristly, ropy, leathery, tough: The beef was somewhat stringy and the potatoes were overcooked.

strip° n. band, ribbon, fillet, belt, swath or swathe, stripe: She wore a strip of embroidered silk tied round her head. They began farming the strip of land near the lake.

stripý v. 1 peel, skin, bare, uncover, denude, lay bare, decorticate, excoriate, flay: The woodwork will need stripping before you repaint it. 2 disrobe, undress, get undressed, unclothe, strip down to nothing or to the skin or to the buff or to (one's) birthday suit, take off or peel off or divest (oneself) of or shed (one's) clothes or clothing, get naked: The doctor told me to go behind the screen and strip. 3 (do a) striptease, US work the runway: Sugar Caine says she enjoys stripping for an appreciative audience. 4 remove, take away, confiscate, seize, expropriate, Slang rip off: He was accused of stripping the assets from the companies he purchased. 5 rob, pillage, despoil, plunder, ransack, loot, sack: Armies could be raised only by letting them strip the cities they conquered.

stripe n. 1 band, bar, striation, strip, streak, line, stroke, slash, length: Each railway car has a bright orange stripe along each side. 2 style, kind, sort, class, type, complexion, character, nature, description, persuasion, kidney, feather: These new students are of a completely different stripe.

striped adj. streaked, lined, striated: Why not wear your striped dress to the party?

stripling n. lad, boy, adolescent, juvenile, minor, schoolboy, youngster, teenager, youth, young fellow or man, fledgling, Dialect gossoon, young 'un, Archaic hobbledehoy: The police cadet was a callow youth, a mere stripling.

strive v. 1 endeavour, strain, struggle, make every effort, attempt, try (hard), do one's best or utmost, exert oneself, work at, Colloq give (it) one's all, go all out: Jim strove to keep his self-control. Jennie strives for perfection in all she does. 2 compete, contend, fight: One must often strive against unbelievable odds to achieve a goal.

stroke n. 1 blow, rap, tap, thump, knock, smack, whack, swipe, slam, strike, Colloq wallop: One stroke of the hammer and the nail went in. 2 action, motion, go, move, movement, feat, achievement: She won the leading role and defeated her shyness at one stroke. 3 flourish, movement, gesture; mark, dash, Colloq splash: With a stroke of the pen the man's fate was sealed. 4 beat, throb, pulse, pulsation, thump: His heart was beating at exactly 72 strokes a minute. 5 attack, seizure, fit, apoplexy, apoplectic fit, spasm, paralytic attack or fit; Technical embolism, thrombosis, cerebrovascular accident, aneurysm: Gerry has been incapacitated since he had a stroke. 6 pat, touch, caress: A few strokes of her fingers on my brow and the headache was gone. 7 achievement, accomplishment, feat, act, action, work; example; touch: Your idea of having a jazz concert to raise money is a stroke of genius. 8 bit, jot or tittle, scrap, iota, touch, stitch, hint, suggestion: You haven't done a stroke of work all morning. 9 occurrence, happening, matter: It was just a stroke of luck that I came along when I did.

--v. 10 caress, pet, pat, fondle; massage, rub, soothe: His heart beat faster when she stroked his hand lightly with her fingertips.

stroll v. 1 amble, saunter, ramble, walk, wander, promenade, meander, stray, Colloq mosey: I think I'll stroll over and buy a newspaper.

--n. 2 amble, ramble, saunter, walk, wander, promenade, meander, constitutional: Father rarely missed his Sunday stroll in the park.

strong adj. 1 powerful, muscular, mighty, brawny, strapping, robust, sturdy, stalwart, burly, stout, sinewy, athletic, wiry, Colloq beefy, hefty, husky: He was so strong he carried both wounded men 500 yards to safety. 2 powerful, concentrated, intense, pungent, potent, sharp, piquant, acrid, heady, penetrating, aromatic, fragrant, hot, spicy: There was a strong odour of ammonia. The flavour is a little too strong for my taste. 3 smelly, odoriferous, noisome, stinking, foul, mephitic, miasmic, putrid, putrescent, rotten: There is a strong smell of rotting flesh. 4 concentrated, undiluted, potent, intensified: How can you drink such strong coffee and still sleep? 5 vigorous, active, dynamic, energetic, eager, unflagging, tireless, unfailing, diligent, indefatigable, staunch, true-blue, steadfast, dedicated, enthusiastic, ardent, fervent, fervid, vehement, rabid, zealous, resolute, determined, unwavering, unswerving, firm, uncompromising, regular, persistent, tenacious, sedulous, assiduous, hard-working: We could use other strong party supporters like Sandy. 6 competent, talented, skilled, qualified, knowledgeable, able, experienced, well-versed, trained, efficient, capable: We are looking for someone who is particularly strong in writing advertising copy. 7 influential, persuasive, convincing, compelling, trenchant, unmistakable or unmistakeable, telling, great, profound; effective, efficacious, effectual, powerful, formidable: His evidence had a strong effect on the jury. She was taking very strong medicine for her migraine. 8 well-supported, irrefutable, well-substantiated, cogent, forceful, substantial, convincing, conclusive: The police made out a very strong case against her for premeditated murder. 9 well-established, well-founded, redoubtable, substantial, powerful, formidable: The position inside the fortress was quite strong. 10 likely, definite, substantial, good, better than average, reasonable, sizeable: There is a strong possibility that she will be elected. Sales of cars were strong during the first quarter. 11 stable, sound, solvent, prosperous, flourishing, thriving, affluent: The economists think that the economy will remain strong. 12 solid, sturdy, substantial, tough, well-built, reinforced, heavy-duty, durable; hard-wearing: Is the cage strong enough to hold the beast? 13 drastic, extreme, Draconian, high-handed, severe, forceful, rigorous, harsh, stringent, aggressive, strenuous, stiff, tough, Colloq hard-nosed: We had to resort to strong measures. 14 numerous, large, considerable, great; numerically, in number, in strength: They arrived on the battlefield with a strong force of ten thousand men. Their army was ten thousand strong. 15 vivid, graphic, etched, engraved, imprinted, impressed; definite, clear-cut, clear, pronounced, distinct, striking, marked: The memory of her embrace was still strong in my mind. He bears a strong resemblance to his brother. 16 wilful, aggressive, combative, defensive, difficult, assertive, incisive, dogmatic, doctrinaire, opinionated, self-willed, hard-headed, strong-minded, recalcitrant, stubborn, obstinate, emphatic, Colloq pushy: One cannot deny that Caroline has a strong personality. 17 vigorous, forceful, powerful, heavy: Strong winds lashed the west coast last night. 18 rugged, craggy, rough, weather-beaten: She was attracted by Martin's strong, suntanned good looks. 19 dazzling, glaring, bright, garish, brilliant, vivid, bold, blinding: The strong sunlight made her her blink. Shocking pink is too strong a colour for a small room. 20 urgent, strongly-worded, emphatic, assertive: A proposal to repeal the tax was met by strong protests. 21 unvarying, the same, steady, stable, firm, balanced: The market has remained strong all day. 22 emotional, deep-felt, deep-rooted, basic, intense, fervent, passionate, deep, earnest: Doris has very strong feelings on the subject of feminism.

--adv. 23 overbearingly, overenthusiastically, offensively, aggressively, antagonistically, truculently: He always comes on a bit strong when he's enthusiastic about something.

strong-arm

adj. threatening, menacing, bullying, high-pressure, thuggish, violent, brutal, brutish, aggressive, terrorizing, terrorist, intimidating, minacious: The gang use strong-arm tactics to force shopkeepers to buy protection.

stronghold

n. fortress, bulwark, bastion, fastness, fortification, citadel: The eastern district was one of the last strongholds of the Labour Party.

strong-minded

adj. strong-willed, obstinate, firm, determined, uncompromising, resolute, resolved, independent: He found he was dealing with a very strong-minded young woman.

structure n. 1 form, shape, configuration, organization, arrangement, make-up, framework, order, design, formation, system, nature, character: The career structure of the company has served as a model for similar firms. 2 building, edifice, house, construction: Planning regulations allow only a certain kind of structure in the residential areas.

--v. 3 construct, build, organize, design, form, shape, arrange, systematize: Their language seems to be structured in an unusual way.

struggle v. 1 strive, strain, expend energy, exert oneself, labour, endeavour, try, attempt: He struggled to keep his head above water. 2 contend, fight, wrestle, battle: They struggled against the twin odds of poverty and sickness. 3 wriggle, wiggle, squirm, writhe, twist, worm: She finally struggled free of the ropes.

--n. 4 effort, exertion, strain; toil, work, travail, labour, drudgery, striving, struggling: Earning even a humble living was a struggle in those days. Was the outcome worth the struggle? 5 contention, competition, contest, battle, fight, tussle, match, clash, encounter, strife: The struggle between good and evil continues.

strut v. swagger, parade, promenade, peacock, prance: She goes strutting about the office as if she were the boss.

stub n. 1 butt, end, stump, tail (end), remnant, Colloq Brit fag-end: He produced a stub of pencil from his pocket and began to make notes. 2 counterfoil; receipt: You will need your ticket stub for any claim.

stubborn adj. obstinate, unyielding, inflexible, intransigent, intractable, uncompromising, mulish, pigheaded, refractory, wayward, adamant, recalcitrant, bull-headed, persistent, tenacious, pertinacious, unrelenting, dogged, determined: He remains stubborn in his refusal to join the group.

student n. 1 pupil, learner, scholar, undergraduate, schoolboy, schoolgirl, schoolchild, trainee, apprentice, disciple; Colloq Brit swot or swotter or swat, US grind: Only students of advanced standing are admitted to this class. 2 devotee, follower, admirer, observer, evaluator, commentator, critic: Nicole is a perceptive student of human nature.

studied adj. premeditated, deliberate, calculated, planned, intentional, wilful, well-thought-out, conscious, contrived, feigned, forced, laboured: He treated even the greatest crisis with a studied air of insouciance.

studious adj. 1 assiduous, sedulous, diligent, industrious, attentive, careful, painstaking, thorough, tireless: Miniaturists must pay studious attention to detail. 2 scholarly, bookish, academic: She refused to allow her athletic achievements to interfere with her studious pursuits.

study v. 1 learn (about), read, con, memorize, burn the midnight oil, lucubrate, Colloq bone up (on), cram, Brit swot or swat, mug up: I want to study music. She has to study for an exam. 2 contemplate, consider, reflect on, think over or about, ruminate on, chew over, turn over, weigh, ponder, deliberate over or on or about, muse about or on, mull over, meditate on or about or over: I want to study the problem before deciding what to do. 3 look or go into or over, look at, scan, examine, analyse, inspect, investigate, scrutinize, survey, observe: The crime squad studied every square inch of the murder scene. Avoiding the issue as usual, Joyce silently studied her fingernails.

--n. 4 analysis, review, examination, survey, inquiry or enquiry, investigation, scrutiny, research, exploration: Government funds are paying for a study of the ecosystem of the Norfolk Broads. 5 learning, lessons, bookwork, work, reading, contemplation, investigation, Colloq boning up, cramming, Brit swotting or swatting: The study of anthropology is what led him to his theory of linguistic universals. 6 library, reading or writing-room, sanctum (sanctorum), haunt, studio, retreat, den, workroom, office: Let's go into the study and talk business.

stuff n. 1 substance, material, matter, fabric, ingredients, essence, essentials, fundamentals, building blocks, makings: This is the stuff that dreams are made on. Is hydrogen the basic stuff of the universe? 2 equipment, goods, gear, trappings, kit, tackle, accessories, paraphernalia, accoutrements or US also accouterments, effects, belongings, possessions, things, bits and pieces, impedimenta, baggage, property, chattels, furniture, Brit lumber, Colloq junk, rubbish, crap, Brit clobber, Taboo slang shit: Graham left all his stuff with his mother when he went west. 3 spirit, attitude, grit, substance, makings, talent(s), abilities, capabilities, qualities, attributes: Is Simon the stuff of which commandos are made? 4 nonsense, trash, rubbish, stuff and nonsense, twaddle, humbug, bunkum, tommy-rot, balderdash, Colloq rot, garbage, bunk, tripe, poppycock, crap, malarkey, boloney or baloney, bosh, hogwash, swill, claptrap, piffle, hot air, flapdoodle, fiddle-faddle, codswallop, bull, US horse feathers, Taboo slang bullshit, horseshit: You don't believe all that stuff you've been reading about me, do you? 5 creations, accomplishments, things, works, materials, matter:

Without the attributions, I'd have trouble telling their stuff apart.

--v. 6 jam, ram, cram, crowd, compress, pack, press, squeeze, squash, shove, thrust, force: You couldn't stuff another handkerchief into that suitcase. 7 line, fill, pack: Stuff the chicken with the following mixture. 8 overeat, gorge, overindulge, gormandize, gluttonize, Colloq make a pig or a hog of oneself: They really stuffed themselves at the wedding reception. 9 stuff up. clog, plug, obstruct, choke, block (up), stop or US also pack up: Phone the plumber: the drain is stuffed up again. The cold had given her a headache and a stuffed-up nose.

stuffy adj. 1 close, airless, unventilated, oppressive, stifling, suffocating, stale, musty, fusty, mouldy, mildewy, muggy, fetid or foetid, frowzy or frouzy or frowsy, Brit frowsty: It was stuffy in the ancient tomb. 2 pompous, pedantic, self-important, self-centred, stodgy, old-fogyish or old-fogeyish, old-fashioned, strait-laced, staid, conventional, prim (and proper), priggish, niminy-piminy, stilted, stiff, rigid, Colloq fuddy-duddy, uptight: What a bore to be trapped for an entire evening with those stuffy old codgers!

stumble v. 1 falter, blunder, slip, trip, miss one's footing, stagger, lurch, flounder: Minnie caught her heel in the grating and stumbled. 2 falter, pause, hesitate, trip, slip, blunder: He was very nervous and stumbled his way through his speech. 3 stumble on or upon. chance or come or happen on or upon, hit upon, come or run across, find, discover, encounter, Colloq bump into: I stumbled on a great new pub when I was out on Saturday.

stumbling-block

n. impediment, obstacle, bar, block, obstruction, hurdle, hindrance, barrier, difficulty, snag: It was often labour unions that proved the stumbling-blocks to technological progress.

stump n. 1 stub, butt, end: The branches were lopped off, leaving only the stumps.

--v. 2 mystify, confuse, perplex, bewilder, flummox, foil, puzzle, baffle, confound, dumbfound or dumfound, stop, stymie, nonplus, bring up short: I am completely stumped as to how the trick was done. 3 campaign, electioneer, canvass, US and Canadian barnstorm: The candidates are out stumping in the farm areas in Iowa. 4 stump up. pay up or out, contribute, donate, Colloq cough up, chip in, shell or fork out: Everyone at the office stumped up for Peter's leaving present.

stun n. 1 daze, numb, benumb, knock out: I was stunned by an unexpected blow to the solar plexus. 2 astonish, daze, paralyse, stagger, stupefy, overcome, overwhelm, astound, jar, shock, jolt, strike dumb, amaze, confound, bewilder, take (someone's) breath away, Colloq shake up, bowl over, discombobulate, flabbergast: The children were stunned to hear that their mother had been arrested.

stunning adj. 1 stupefying, paralysing, staggering, benumbing, numbing; knockout: Another stunning punch to the head and McGinty went down. 2 beautiful, dazzling, brilliant, gorgeous, spectacular, ravishing, sensational, extraordinary, remarkable, marvellous, stupendous, fabulous, wonderful, superb, grand, divine, heavenly, sublime, lovely, exquisite, glorious, astonishing, astounding, amazing, striking, splendid, staggering, overpowering, mind-boggling, earth-shaking, magnificent: There stood the most stunning creature I had ever laid eyes on. The team won a stunning victory in the county tournament.

stunt° n. caper, act, deed, feat, tour de force, exploit, trick, US dido: The dangerous stunts are done by a stand-in for the star.

stuntý v. stop, limit, delimit, restrict, check, arrest, put an end to, end; impede, hamper, hinder, slow, retard: My parents always told me that smoking would stunt my growth.

stunted adj. dwarfed, shrunken, undersized, small, tiny, diminutive, little, wee: We saw a bonsai - a stunted Japanese potted tree - that was hundreds of years old.

stupid adj. 1 unintelligent, fatuous, obtuse, bovine, dull, dense, lumpish, doltish, simple, simple-minded, moronic, imbecilic, cretinous, Boeotian, subnormal, feeble-minded, weak-minded, stolid, dull-witted, dim, dim-witted, halfwitted, thick, thick-witted, thickheaded, slow-witted, witless, brainless, mindless, empty-headed, bird-brained, feather-brained, feather-headed, rattle-brained, rattle-headed, ox-like, boneheaded, addle-pated, addle-headed, addled, Chiefly Brit imbecile, Chiefly US dumb, jerky, thimble-witted, Colloq dopey, Brit dozy: He seemed really stupid in comparison with his precocious younger sister. 2 foolish, silly, frivolous, asinine, hare-brained, crazy, insane, mad, crack-brained, scatterbrained, absurd, inane, idiotic, ridiculous, risible, laughable, ludicrous, nonsensical, senseless, bootless, irresponsible, irrational, ill-advised, foolhardy, half-baked, Colloq cuckoo, cock-eyed, damn-fool, Chiefly Brit daft, barmy or balmy, US cockamamie or cockamamy: He came up with one stupid plan after another. 3 insipid, dull, tedious, boring, tiresome, humdrum, prosaic, monotonous, unimaginative, uninspired, uninteresting, vapid, vacuous, Colloq ho-hum: Most sitcoms feature stupid characters doing stupid things.

stupidity n. 1 fatuity, obtuseness, dullness, denseness, lumpishness, doltishness, simplicity, simple-mindedness, imbecility, cretinism, feeble-mindedness, weak-mindedness, stolidity, dull-wittedness, dimness, dim-wittedness, halfwittedness, thick-wittedness, slow-wittedness, thimble-wittedness, witlessness, brainlessness, mindlessness, empty-headedness, feather-headedness, rattle-headedness, boneheadedness: In public affairs stupidity is more dangerous than knavery. 2 foolishness, folly, asininity, craziness, insanity, madness, absurdity, absurdness, inanity, idiocy, ridiculousness, risibility, ludicrousness, nonsense, senselessness, bootlessness, irresponsibility, irrationality, foolhardiness: The stupidity of such a venture is obvious when you consider the enormous risk and the minuscule return.

stupor n. insensibility, stupefaction, torpor, lethargy, listlessness, languor, laziness, lassitude, lifelessness, supineness, inertia; inertness, coma, trance, unconsciousness, numbness: His stupor might be caused by the medication he is taking for his cold.

sturdy adj. 1 strong, solid, stout, rugged, tough, well-built, substantial; strapping, muscular, powerful, brawny, burly, robust, well-muscled, athletic, hardy, Colloq husky, hefty: This ladder should be sturdy enough to hold you. James got that sturdy build from exercise. 2 stalwart, staunch, steadfast, resolute, firm, vigorous, determined, uncompromising, unyielding, unwavering, unswerving, unfaltering, enduring, indomitable: One must admire her sturdy independence in the face of all that criticism.

style n. 1 type, kind, variety, category, genre, sort, manner, mode, make, design, fashion, look, period, pattern, configuration, line, cut, shape, form: That style of jacket looks really good on you. They are planning to build the house in the pointed Gothic style. 2 fashion, trend, vogue, mode, look, rage, craze, Colloq fad, (latest) thing: The current style is for shorter skirts. 3 luxury, high style, comfort, opulence, splendour, elegance: Now that he's won all that money, they live in style on the Costa Smeralda. 4 chic, stylishness, taste, smartness, flair, dash, ,lan, panache, cachet, tastefulness, fashionableness, elegance, refinement, polish, sophistication, sophisticatedness, cosmopolitanism, Colloq pizazz; ritziness: Irena has more style in her little finger than you have in your whole body. 5 quality, character, mode of expression, approach, treatment, vein, colouring, spirit, mood, form, technique; tenor, tone, wording, phraseology, phrasing, language, vocabulary, word choice, diction, sentence structure: The pointillist style of painting appeals to many. His style of writing is reminiscent of Stevenson's. 6 in style. See stylish, below.

--v. 7 characterize, designate, denominate, call, name, term, label, tag, brand: The use of the indicative for the subjunctive is no longer styled a solecism in British English. 8 fashion, design, arrange, set, do, cut, tailor, shape, form: Antoine styled my hair in a page-boy for the reception.

stylish adj. chic, fashionable, smart, … la mode, modish, in style or fashion or vogue, elegant; chichi; Colloq in, with it, swanky, Chiefly Brit trendy, Slang swell, neat, classy, snazzy, US spiffy: Nicole always looks so stylish.

stymie v. thwart, obstruct, block, frustrate, snooker, defeat, spike, ruin, foil, confound, stump, nonplus, hinder, impede, Colloq flummox: The government has stymied all efforts to have him extradited.

styptic adj. astringent: The styptic effect of alum stops bleeding.

19.14 suave...

=-

suave adj. debonair, sophisticated, urbane, cosmopolitan, worldly, smooth, gracious, nonchalant, civilized, cultivated, courteous, diplomatic, polite, charming, agreeable, affable, bland: Fictional detectives range from the suave Simon Templar to the earthy Philip Marlowe.

subconscious
adj. 1 subliminal, unconscious, suppressed, hidden, latent, repressed, inner, innermost, underlying, deep-rooted, Colloq Freudian: Despite his belligerence, he has a subconscious desire to be loved.

--n. 2 (collective) unconscious, inner self; heart: Her subconscious tells her that all confined areas are dangerous.

subdue v. 1 put or beat down, quell, repress, suppress, quash, crush, control, master, overpower, gain mastery or control or the upper hand over, get the better of, dominate, triumph over, hold or keep in check, bridle, tame: Having subdued the uprising, government forces are again in control. 2 conquer, vanquish, defeat, overcome: The Mongol horde subdued all the people in their path. 3 quiet(en) or tone down, moderate, mellow, temper, soften, soft-pedal, check, curb, control: His anger was subdued by her calm words.

subdued adj. 1 quiet, mellow(ed), toned down, moderate(d), tempered, hushed, muted, low-key, unenthusiastic, repressed, restrained, peaceful, tranquil, placid, calm(ed), temperate, reserved: There was a little subdued criticism at first, but the bill was passed. 2 chastened, sober, sobered, solemn, saddened, dejected, sad, down in the mouth, crestfallen, downcast, grave, serious: He looked subdued when he emerged from the headmaster's office.

subject n. 1 (subject-)matter, topic; issue, theme, angle, thesis, gist, substance, business, affair, point: What is the subject of conversation today? The subject under discussion was of crucial importance. 2 course (of study), field, area, discipline, branch of knowledge: In which subject did Frank take his doctorate? 3 cause, ground(s), motive, reason, basis, source, rationale; excuse: Increased taxes are always a subject of complaint. 4 participant, case, guinea-pig, testee: The subjects of the experiment were all in their thirties. 5 citizen, national; taxpayer, voter; liegeman, vassal: She became a British subject after her marriage to Frank.

--adj. 6 Usually, subject to. exposed (to), open (to), vulnerable (to), susceptible (to), prone (to), disposed (to), at the mercy (of), liable (to suffer or undergo): She is subject to asthma attacks. This kind of wood is subject to worm infestation. 7 discussed, under discussion, referred to, above: The subject book was not returned before the due date. 8 subject to. a answerable to, responsible for, bound by, obedient to, subservient to, submissive to, controlled by, under the control of: You are subject to the same laws as everyone else. b dependent on, conditional on, contingent on: All leave is subject to the approval of the departmental head.

--v. 9 subject to. expose, lay open, submit, put through, impose on, cause to undergo: How could anyone subject another human being to such cruelty? 10 conquer, subjugate, dominate, subdue, enslave, enthral, crush, humble: The peoples subjected by the Romans sometimes fared better than when independent.

subjection

n. subordination, domination, conquest, subjugation, enslavement, enthralment, humbling, humiliation: Their goal was the subjection of all peoples in the Mediterranean area.

subjective

adj. 1 personal, individual, idiosyncratic; prejudiced, biased: His review of the play was entirely subjective. 2 self-centred, egoistic, egocentric, selfish, self-serving: Your approach is much too subjective to be of interest to others.

--n. 3 Technical nominative: The subjective of 'me' is 'I'.

subjugate v. dominate, enslave, enthral, crush, humble, subject, oppress, suppress, put down, tyrannize, subdue, reduce, quell, overcome, overpower, make subservient or submissive, humble, humiliate: Few peoples have been subjugated so ignominiously as the American Indians.

sublimate v. transmute, alter, transform; channel, divert: He sublimates his aggressions by jogging and marathon running.

sublime adj. 1 lofty, high, supreme, exalted, elevated, empyrean or empyreal, heavenly, noble, glorious, grand, high-minded; honourable, ennobled, eminent, glorified, beatified, canonized, sanctified, great, good: Her poetry evokes sublime emotions. 2 awesome, overwhelming, inspiring, mind-boggling, overpowering, humbling, awe-inspiring, majestic, splendid, empyrean: The architecture of the cathedral was truly sublime.

subliminal

adj. subconscious, unconscious, suggestive: Advertisers know that subliminal techniques can be very effective in TV commercials.

submerge v. 1 plunge, submerse, immerse, inundate, dip, wash, soak, drench, saturate, wet, douse, Colloq dunk: To cleanse, submerge the garment in a basin of warm water for ten minutes. 2 dive, plunge, go down, descend, sink, sound, plummet: The order to submerge was given as soon as the planes were spotted. 3 flood, immerse, inundate, swamp, bury, engulf, overwhelm, deluge, drown; conceal, hide, camouflage, obscure, cloak, veil, shroud: He was quickly submerged under an enormous pile of correspondence.

submission

n. 1 concession, acquiescence, capitulation, surrender, yielding, deference, giving in, obedience, compliance, resignation, submissiveness, tractability; meekness, docility, passivity, timidity, unassertiveness: After years of oppression their abject submission to a new tyrant was not altogether surprising. 2 submittal, offering, tender, contribution, entry: Submissions for the essay competition should be sent to the address given below.

submissive

adj. 1 yielding, acquiescent, deferential, compliant, obedient, tractable, amenable, agreeable, accommodating, passive, unresisting, pliant, flexible, manageable, unassertive, docile, meek, timid, resigned, uncomplaining: As a child she was very submissive but she rebelled in adolescence. 2 obsequious, abject, subservient, servile, humble, deferential, slavish, ingratiating, truckling, biddable, sycophantic, toadying, Colloq boot-licking, Taboo slang brown-nosing, Brit arse-kissing, arse-licking, US ass-kissing, ass-licking: She keeps a few submissive lackeys about to do her bidding.

submit v. 1 Often, submit to. surrender (to), yield (to), capitulate (to), give in or up (to), comply (with), agree (to), concede (to), consent (to), accede (to), defer (to), bow or bend (to), succumb (to), truckle (to), knuckle under (to), resign (oneself) (to), be or become resigned (to); respect, accept, Colloq put up with: Despite the threats, he refused to submit. The government eventually submitted to the union's demands. 2 offer, proffer, tender, enter, propose, present: Many of the suggestions that Alan submitted have been accepted.

subordinate

adj. 1 Often, subordinate to. minor; inferior (to), lower (than), lesser (than), secondary (to), second (to), junior (to), subsidiary (to); next to, below, beneath, under: He had to accept a subordinate position in the new company. His new job is subordinate to that of purchasing director.

--n. 2 assistant, aide, junior, subaltern, staff member; underling, hireling, inferior, lackey, servant, slave, vassal; Colloq US staffer: She is a subordinate to the editor-in-chief.

--v. 3 make (something) secondary: Too many subordinate community interest to personal greed.

subscribe v. 1 Often, subscribe to. endorse, support, underwrite, advocate, back (up), approve (of), agree (with or to), accept, consent (to), assent (to), countenance, tolerate, condone, allow, permit, brook: I sympathize with many of their arguments but I cannot subscribe to terrorism. 2 Often, subscribe to. contribute (to), support, give (to), donate (to), pledge, promise, sign (up) (for), Colloq chip in (to or for): Mrs Donaldson has subscribed thousands to Amnesty International.

subscription

n. 1 payment, remittance, investment; commitment, dues, fee, price, cost: The subscription is now œ100 a year. 2 obligation, pledge, promise, underwriting: If we get enough subscriptions, we shall be able to print the book.

subsequent

adj. 1 succeeding, following, ensuing, next, future, later, successive; resultant, resulting, consequent: Subsequent governments have failed to solve the problem.

--prep. 2 subsequent to. after, following, succeeding, in the wake or aftermath of: Further problems arose subsequent to their second term of office.

subsequently

adv. later (on), afterwards or US also afterward: Subsequently, the law was changed to protect witnesses.

subside v. 1 sink (down), drop (down), go down, recede, descend, decline; lower, settle: The waters of the swollen river subsided. The volcano's centre subsided, leaving a caldera. 2 abate, quiet(en) (down), calm (down), moderate, let up, decrease, diminish, lessen, die (down or off or out), pass (away), wear off: His enthusiasm for sky-diving subsided a bit after he broke both legs. When the clamour had subsided, the president rose to speak.

subsidiary

adj. Often, subsidiary to. ancillary (to), secondary (to), auxiliary (to), lesser (than), additional (to), supplementary or supplemental (to), complementary (to), accessory (to), subordinate (to), adjuvant (to): The company offers removal of hazardous waste as a subsidiary service.

subsidize v. fund, finance, support, aid, sponsor, subvene, maintain, underwrite; capitalize, Slang US and Canadian bankroll: Bill and Sue can only afford to live in that big house because her parents subsidize them.

subsidy n. funding, financing, subsidizing, sponsoring, sponsorship, assistance, aid, contribution, support, grant, subvention, maintenance, underwriting, capitalization: Farmers are hoping for increased subsidies.

subsistence

n. 1 existence, living, survival, subsisting, being: You are worried about buying beer when I feel my very subsistence threatened! 2 food, rations, victuals, provision, sustenance, board, nourishment, nutriment, aliment; maintenance, keep, upkeep: We depend on your salary for our subsistence, so forget about quitting your job.

substance n. 1 material, matter, stuff; fabric, composition, make-up: She couldn't recognize the substance in the bottle. The comet's substance is mainly ice and dirt. 2 essence, pith, heart, core, gist, burden, theme, meat, kernel, nub, crux, sum total, sum and substance, point, gravamen, haecceity, quintessence, quiddity: Explain, in 500 or fewer words, the substance of Hegel's dispute with Kant. 3 meaning, import, significance, purport, signification, point: Our visit to San Francisco gave substance to all we had read about it. 4 reality, corporeality, solidity, actuality, concreteness: You must learn to deal with the substance, not the shadows. 5 means, wealth, property, possessions, riches, resources, affluence, assets: John Culver was a citizen of some substance in this town.

substantial

adj. 1 material, considerable, significant, great, worthwhile, consequential, ample, goodly, respectable, abundant, generous, big, large, sizeable, major, Colloq tidy, healthy: We understand that he made a substantial payment to keep his name out of the papers. 2 strong, solid, well-built, durable, sound, stout, sturdy; big, large, massive, huge, sizeable, impressive, vast; numerous, numberless: A substantial mausoleum was constructed for his family. A substantial crowd had gathered. 3 well-founded, sound, weighty, solid, well-established, telling, good, valid, actual: Many economists produced substantial arguments in favour of another cut in interest rates. 4 wealthy, well-to-do, rich, affluent, prosperous, profitable, successful; landed, propertied: The Trevelyan Ironworks is a substantial business, and Mr Trevelyan is one of our more substantial businessmen.

substantially

adv. in substance, essentially, at bottom, fundamentally, basically, in essence, intrinsically, in reality, at heart, sincerely, truly, actually, in truth, veritably, indeed, in fact, as a matter of fact; largely, to a large extent, in large measure, materially, practically, in the main, for the most part, mostly, virtually, to all intents and purposes; Archaic verily: The article was substantially sound. Do you agree substantially with the ruling of the court?

substantiate

v. confirm, affirm, corroborate, support, sustain, back up, bear out, authenticate, show (clearly), prove, document, verify, certify, validate: Do not make accusations that cannot be substantiated by evidence.

substitute

v. 1 Sometimes, substitute for. replace, exchange, displace, relieve, supplant; switch; take the place of, stand in for, double for, Colloq sub for, cover for, swap or swop, US and Canadian pinch-hit for: She substituted the real diamond with a paste replica. I will substitute for you while you are away.

--n. 2 substitution, replacement, alternative, relief, representative, deputy, delegate, stand-in, stand-by, understudy, surrogate, succedaneum, Brit locum (tenens), US and Canadian alternate: In those days a man could hire a substitute to serve in his place in the militia.

substitution

n. 1 exchange, exchanging, change, changing, replacement, replacing, supplanting, switch, switching, interchange, interchanging, Colloq swap or swop, swapping or swopping: The substitution of certain words distorted the sense. 2 See substitute, 2, above.

substratum

n. substrate, foundation, underlayer, basis, fundament, base, substructure, groundwork: The agreement rests on a substratum of mutual trust and respect.

subterfuge

n. artifice, trick, device, stratagem, manoeuvre, ploy, evasion, deception, dodge, feint, shift, excuse, expedient, contrivance, intrigue: Although he told no lies, he used every subterfuge to avoid telling the truth.

subtle adj. 1 delicate, fine, refined, exquisite, nice, Archaic subtile: I became aware, almost subconsciously, of the subtle odour of jasmine. These subtle shades of green are so peaceful. 2 abstruse, arcane, recondite, remote, deep, profound, concealed, hidden, shadowy, nebulous, vague, obscure, veiled, thin, airy, insubstantial, elusive, faint; sophistic(al): The symbolism is so subtle as to be meaningful to the poet alone. A subtle hint gave me to understand that I ought to go. 3 tricky, shrewd, cunning, wily, sly, devious, crafty, smart, clever, foxy, artful, scheming, designing, underhand(ed), deceptive, Jesuitical, Machiavellian, ingenious, skilful, strategic, insidious, casuistic, shifty, slick, slimy, Chiefly Brit smarmy: You were a fool to allow that subtle serpent to insinuate himself into your confidence.

subtlety n. 1 refinement, nicety, delicacy, exquisiteness, intricacy, fineness, acuteness, elegance, sophistication: The subtlety of the detail in this work is quite unique. One must admire the subtlety of expression in her writing. 2 treachery, guile, insidiousness, casuistry, cunning, artfulness, craftiness, deviousness, slyness, deceptiveness: The subtlety of her deception was revealed only after the war.

subtract v. 1 deduct, take away, take off, take (something) from: First calculate the discount, then subtract it from the price. 2 Sometimes, subtract from. detract (from), diminish, take away (from): Nothing could subtract from the exhilaration of that moment.

subversion

n. overthrow, ruin, destruction, undermining, upheaval, displacement: The dictator used extreme tactics to avoid the subversion of his leadership.

subversive

adj. 1 subversionary, seditious, seditionary, treasonous, treacherous, traitorous, revolutionary, insurrectionary: The government regarded as subversive anything and anyone disagreeing with their policies.

--n. 2 traitor, insurgent, saboteur, fifth-columnist, collaborator, collaborationist, quisling, radical, revolutionary, insurrectionist, insurrectionary; dissident, defector: The security agencies were removing subversives from sensitive jobs.

subvert v. overthrow, ruin, destroy, undermine, topple, demolish, wreck, sabotage: The regime was subverted from within, not by outside forces.

subway n. 1 Brit underground (railway), tube: She takes the subway to work. 2 US tunnel, underpass: Use the subway to cross the road in safety.

succeed v. 1 follow, come after, supervene: The end of the war in the Pacific succeeded the surrender in Europe. 2 be successor (to), follow, be heir (to), replace, take the place of, inherit or take over from: Elizabeth I succeeded Mary in 1558. 3 Often, succeed in or at. make good, thrive, prosper, flourish, be a success, be successful, progress, advance, get ahead or on, attain or gain or achieve success, win, triumph, Colloq make it, arrive, get to the top: Has she succeeded in persuading you to sing? He always wanted to make a lot of money and now he has succeeded. They have succeeded at whatever they have tried.

success n. 1 good or happy result or outcome, good fortune, achievement, triumph, attainment, ascendancy, prosperity: The success of the fast food business is evident everywhere. 2 star, celebrity, (big) name, sensation: She was a great success as a singer, dancer, and actress.

successful

adj. 1 wealthy, rich, prosperous, fortunate, lucky, flourishing, thriving, prospering, well-to-do, affluent, Colloq loaded, well-heeled, flush, in the money, US well-fixed: He is a very successful investor. 2 lucrative, booming, profitable, fruitful, moneymaking, remunerative: The shares they bought proved to be a successful investment. How successful was last year for the company? 3 famous, well-known, famed, celebrated, renowned, eminent; prominent, pre-eminent, popular, leading, top, best-selling: Constance is one of our most successful poets. That book of mine was also successful. 4 victorious, triumphant; first; winning: Henry was successful in his bid for the chairmanship. I want to see a successful conclusion to the tour.

succession

n. 1 passing (on), handing down or on, transmittal, transmission, transfer, transferral, shift, conveyance, conveyancing: According to her will, the succession of the property is via her first-born. 2 sequence, progression, order, series, turn, course, flow, chain, train, procession: The succession of events was as he described. 3 accession, assumption, attainment, elevation, promotion; inheritance: What was the year of Charles II's succession to the Spanish throne? 4 lineage, descent, birthright, dynasty, ancestry, descendants, bloodline: The 18th century began with the War of the Spanish Succession. 5 in succession. one after or behind the other, at intervals, successively, consecutively, in a row, running, without interruption, uninterruptedly, in order, in line: They published several historical novels in quick succession.

successive
adj. uninterrupted, continuous, unbroken, continual, consecutive, succeeding: Last season he scored in sixteen successive matches.

succinct adj. compact, brief, concise, pithy, terse, short, compressed, condensed, epigrammatic: He prefers a succinct style of writing, one that gets to the point.

succulent adj. juicy, rich, luscious, mouth-watering, toothsome: He was eating a succulent peach with evident enjoyment.

succumb   v. yield, give up, give way, surrender, accede, submit, capitulate: I finally succumbed and agreed to their request for help.

sucker   n. dupe, goat, gull, victim, butt, cat's-paw, fool, Colloq (easy) mark, easy or fair game, chump, pushover, soft touch, Chiefly US and Canadian fall guy, Slang sap, pigeon, Brit mug, Chiefly US and Canadian patsy: He's asking far too much for his car, but some sucker will buy it.

sudden   adj. unexpected, unannounced, unanticipated, unforeseen; unwonted, surprising, startling; precipitate, abrupt, quick, immediate, rapid, swift, brisk; impetuous, hasty, rash, impulsive: His sudden turn caught us off balance. Your change of heart was quite sudden.

suddenly adv. 1 in a flash or a moment or a split second, all at once, instantly, instantaneously, momentarily, fleetingly, in the twinkling of an eye, in a trice; quickly, abruptly, swiftly, speedily, rapidly: Suddenly, my whole life flashed before me. He suddenly realized why the head of MI6 had summoned him. 2 all of a sudden, out of the blue, unexpectedly, without warning, on the spur of the moment, hastily, hurriedly, feverishly: Suddenly, she turned on her heel and stormed out.

sue v. 1 proceed or move or act (against), take (legal) action or bring suit or prefer charges (against); summon(s), charge, accuse: He threatened to sue. They are suing him for the injuries they sustained. 2 petition, beg, plead, entreat, pray, request, solicit, apply, beseech, implore, supplicate: After five years of constant warfare, the country is suing for peace.

suffer v. 1 Sometimes, suffer from or with. agonize, smart, hurt, writhe, sweat, ache: He is suffering with a stomach virus. How terribly they suffered when their child was kidnapped! 2 endure, undergo, experience, bear, live or go through, tolerate, withstand, sustain, take, submit to, abide, submit to, Colloq put up with: He suffered years of ill-health before he finally died. 3 allow, tolerate, permit, let, admit, humour, indulge: They suffer the storks to build their nests on their chimneys. 4 deteriorate, diminish, decline, go down, fall off, be reduced or diminished: If you discontinue advertising, sales will suffer.

suffering n. pain, agony, distress, misery, affliction, hardship, torment, torture, tribulation, trial: The man's suffering is written in his face.

suffice v. satisfy, serve, do, be sufficient or enough or adequate, answer, sate, satiate, quench: If you are merely thirsty, water should suffice.

sufficient

adj. adequate, enough: Have we sufficient food to last through the winter?

suffix n. 1 ending, desinence, addition; affix: The suffix -ness is added to many English adjectives to form nouns.

--v. 2 add (on), join, fasten to, subjoin, amend, Colloq tack on: One can suffix -ness to a huge number of adjectives to form nouns.

suffrage n. (right to) vote, voting right(s), franchise, voice, say, ballot, option, choice: They campaigned for universal adult suffrage.

suffuse v. overspread, imbue, pour or spread over, bathe, cover, permeate, pervade, flood, flush, penetrate, saturate, mantle, infuse, transfuse, imbrue or embrue: A rosy glow suffused her face.

suggest v. 1 propose, advance, recommend, urge, advocate, support, offer, proffer, put or set forward, present, mention, introduce: He suggested going out to a pub for dinner. Can you suggest an alternative? 2 call to mind, bring up, hint (at), imply, insinuate, intimate, make one think, lead one to believe, indicate: His silence suggested that this was not the right time to pursue the matter.

suggestible

adj. impressionable, susceptible, receptive, impressible, susceptive, open, mouldable, fictile: Patricia was very suggestible at that age and readily believed everything that she was told.

suggestion

n. 1 proposal, proposition, recommendation, plan, advice, counsel, idea, notion, opinion; prompting, urging: The committee rejected your suggestion that membership fees should be increased. 2 indication, trace, whisper, insinuation, innuendo, implication, intimation, hint, soup‡on, touch, tinge, suspicion, breath, iota, jot or tittle: There wasn't the slightest suggestion of animosity in her criticism.

suggestive

adj. 1 Often, suggestive of. reminiscent (of), evocative (of), indicative (of): To me, the smell of orange blossom is always suggestive of southern California. 2 provocative, naughty, risqu,, ribald, off colour, racy, bawdy, earthy, lusty, rude, indelicate, unseemly, immodest, improper, indecent, prurient, blue, offensive, vulgar, smutty, dirty, pornographic, lewd, salacious, Colloq sexy, spicy, Slang raunchy: He used to sing his suggestive songs in night clubs.

suit v. 1 adapt, accommodate, fit, adjust, tailor, make appropriate or suitable: It will require some reorganization to suit the office space to our needs. 2 please, satisfy, fill (someone's) needs, gratify, be acceptable or suitable or convenient to or for, befit; conform to: Choose whichever room suits you. The schedule does not suit my personal plans at all.

--n. 3 jacket and trousers or skirt, outfit, uniform, ensemble, costume, habit; garb, clothing, clothes, livery: He showed up wearing a new silk suit. 4 lawsuit, action, case, proceeding, process, cause, trial; litigation: I do not want to enter into a suit over the damage to my car. 5 petition, plea, request, entreaty, prayer, solicitation, application, appeal, supplication; courtship: The king rejected all suits for his daughter's hand in marriage.

suitable adj. appropriate, apt, fit, fitting, befitting, becoming, right, proper, correct, acceptable, satisfactory, applicable, meet, seemly; timely, opportune: John has at last found suitable employment. A chandelier is not suitable at all for such a low room. Is this a suitable time for me to ask you a favour?

suitcase n. bag, valise, overnight bag, holdall, grip or Brit handgrip, Brit formerly portmanteau: She packed enough for a week's holiday into one small suitcase.

suite n. 1 set, series, collection, number: They gave us a beautiful suite of rooms at the hotel. 2 set: She bought a new suite of dining-room furniture. 3 following, retinue, entourage, train, cortŠge, convoy, escort; followers, attendants, retainers: Her suite includes advisors, secretaries, hairdressers, and bodyguards.

suitor n. admirer, beau, wooer; boyfriend, paramour, lover, inamorato, cicisbeo, escort, Archaic swain: Madelaine has more suitors than I can count.

sulk v. mope, brood, pout, be sullen or moody or ill-humoured: I wish you'd get a job instead of sulking about the house all day.

sullen adj. sulky, sulking, morose, brooding, pouting, gloomy, moody, temperamental, dour, lugubrious, funereal, dismal, dreary, grim, depressing, depressed, churlish, ill-humoured, glum, grumpy, sombre, out of humour, antisocial, unsociable, cross, petulant, perverse, crusty, crotchety, choleric, crabby, ill-natured, ill-tempered, bad-tempered, splenetic, peevish, dyspeptic, out of sorts, US cranky: He remained quite sullen and refused to associate with anyone.

sully   v. besmirch, stain, smirch, blemish, mar, defile, soil, disgrace, dirty, tarnish, pollute, spoil, ruin, destroy, wreck: Sadly, his reputation was sullied when his company was found to be involved in insider trading.

sultry   adj. 1 hot, humid, sticky, stuffy, stifling, oppressive, close, muggy, steamy, steaming, moist, damp, sweltering, suffocating: I was happy to be languishing again in the sultry warmth of St Lucia. 2 lusty, lustful, passionate, erotic, seductive, voluptuous, provocative, sensual, Colloq sexy, hot: She continued her sultry, slow, sinuous dance.

sum   n. 1 total, aggregate, grand total, sum total, whole, totality; amount, quantity: The sum of money found in the satchel was not revealed by the police. He would give the neighbourhood children small sums to spend on sweets.

--v. 2 sum up. a recapitulate, summarize, encapsulate, synopsize, digest, abridge, condense, consolidate, epitomize, review: He summed up by reminding the children not to accept gifts from strangers. b reckon, add up, calculate, total, tot up, measure (up), take the measure of: They summed up their chances of escaping. c estimate, evaluate, size up, assess: She had summed him up the minute she saw him.

summarily adv. 1 immediately, at once, straightaway, directly, quickly, without delay, unhesitatingly, without hesitation, forthwith, promptly, swiftly, speedily, expeditiously, instantly, Colloq p.d.q. (= 'pretty damned quick'): Any dog caught without a muzzle will be impounded summarily. 2 suddenly, without warning, abruptly, peremptorily, precipitately: He was summarily dismissed, with no advance notice.

summary   n. 1 summarization, recapitulation, encapsulation, compendium, synopsis, digest, abridgement, condensation, shortening, consolidation, epitome, epitomization, review, distillate, conspectus, brief, outline, pr,cis, r,sum,: I want a summary of the meeting on my desk in the morning.

--adj. 2 abrupt, peremptory, short, quick, brief, laconic, perfunctory, curt, terse: My simple request for some time off was denied with a summary, 'No!'

summit   n. peak, top, apex, acme, pinnacle, zenith, crown; culmination, climax: The winds at the summit of Annapurna reached hurricane force. There was no doubt that I had reached the summit of my achievements.

summon   v. 1 call, assemble, convoke, convene, send for, invite, muster, get together, arouse, rouse: Why would he summon us to the office at midnight? 2 Often, summon up. call or draw on or upon, draw up, mobilize, muster (up), work up, gather, invoke: I had to summon up all my courage to ask Eve to go out.

sumptuous adj. expensive, costly, extravagant, exorbitant, dear, rich; lavish, luxurious, de luxe, opulent, palatial, royal, majestic, regal, magnificent, dazzling, splendid, showy, Colloq posh, plush, ritzy: The family treated us to a sumptuous repast to celebrate our 50th wedding anniversary.

sun   n. 1 (old) Sol, Helios, Phoebus (Apollo), Ra, Sunna, day-star: Many early cultures worshipped the sun.

--v. 2 tan, suntan, sunbathe, bask, bake, brown, bronze: They spent their holidays sunning themselves on the beach.

sundries n.pl. knick-knacks, trinkets, small items, notions, miscellanea, miscellany, kickshaws, Brummagem, frippery, bric-…-brac, odds and ends: We might find a button for your shirt in a shop that sells sundries.

sundry   adj. various, varied, miscellaneous, assorted, different, mixed, diversified, divers: In addition to food, supermarkets stock sundry other items.

sunken   adj. 1 hollow, hollowed-out, haggard, drawn: From her sunken cheeks the child looked as if she hadn't eaten for weeks. 2 submerged, undersea, underwater, submersed: The boat hit a sunken wreck and foundered. 3 buried, underground, in-ground, below-ground, settled, lowered: The old term for a sunken fence is 'ha-ha'.

sunless adj. dark, grim, cheerless, unhappy, joyless, funereal, depressing, dreary, drear, sombre, gloomy, grey, Stygian, black, pitchy, inky, shadowy, tenebrous, unlit, unlighted, dusky, subfusc or subfuscous, darkling: It was an overcast sunless day, with rain in the offing.

sunny adj. 1 sunlit, sunshiny, brilliant, bright, radiant, fair, fine, cloudless, clear, unclouded: The enchanting scenery and warm sunny climate makes it a perfect place for holidays. 2 cheerful, cheery, happy, joyous, joyful, light-hearted, smiling, beaming, buoyant, blithe, gay, mirthful, jolly, bubbly, ebullient, genial, warm, friendly, outgoing: Being with someone who has a sunny disposition was a pleasant change.

super adj. wonderful: A super collection of synonyms for this word appears under superb, below.

superb adj. wonderful, marvellous, excellent, superior, gorgeous, glorious, magnificent, outstanding, exquisite, fine, splendid, unequalled, sensational, noteworthy, admirable, peerless, matchless, unrivalled, first-rate, superlative, perfect, classic, exceptional, extraordinary, striking, brilliant, dazzling, miraculous, incredible, unbelievable, fantastic, fabulous, stupendous, staggering, mind-boggling, breathtaking, Woman's dialect divine, Colloq great, super, smashing, magic, terrific, fantabulous, unreal, out of this world, mind-blowing, super, Slang out of sight, far-out, boss, solid, cool, hot, bad: The curator said he had never seen such a superb collection. She does a superb Hedda Gabler. We were treated to a superb dinner.

supercilious
adj. haughty, contemptuous, superior, snobbish, disdainful, arrogant, condescending, patronizing, overbearing, scornful, lordly, high and mighty, pompous, lofty, stuffy, pretentious, Colloq hoity-toity, highfalutin or hifalutin, uppity, snooty, stuck-up, Brit toffee-nosed, uppish, la-di-da or lah-di-dah or la-de-da: She was very supercilious towards her customers.

superficial
adj. 1 surface, external, exterior, shallow, skin-deep, slight,

outside: I suffered a superficial wound to the forehead. 2 surface, slight, external, apparent, skin-deep, outward, cursory, insignificant, passing, unimportant, trivial, empty, insubstantial; paying lip-service, for appearances' sake, cosmetic: She bears a superficial resemblance to your sister. His interest in your welfare is entirely superficial. 3 cursory, slapdash, quick, hurried, hasty, perfunctory, nominal, meaningless, passing: The machinery is subjected to a superficial inspection before shipping.

superficies

n. (outer) surface, fa‡ade, face, externals, outside: The superficies may appeal to children, but adults appreciate the book's profundities.

superfluity

n. excess, superabundance, over-abundance, surplus, oversupply, surfeit, glut, superfluousness, profusion, plethora, oversupply, supersaturation: The middle and upper classes wallow in a superfluity of goods.

superfluous

adj. excessive, excess, superabundant, over-abundant, supererogatory, surplus, unneeded, uncalled-for, unnecessary, redundant, extra; needless, dispensable, gratuitous: The superfluous grain that remains unsold should be donated to third-world countries. They knew each other so well that words were superfluous between them.

superhuman

adj. 1 heroic, Herculean, godlike, legendary, valiant, courageous, brave, daring, dangerous, death-defying, extraordinary, miraculous, phenomenal, incredible, fabulous, fantastic, unbelievable, amazing: His superhuman feats would never be duplicated.

--n. 2 superman, hero, superhero, •bermensch, Hercules: They still believe that one day a superhuman will come along to lead them.

superintendent

n. supervisor, foreman, overseer, manager, administrator, chief, head, boss; governor, controller, director, conductor:

Alan has been appointed superintendent of the new project.

superior adj. 1 higher, higher-ranking, higher-level, higher-class, higher-calibre, upper, upper-level, upper-class, loftier, nobler, better; of a higher order or status or standing, Colloq classier, tonier: He was reported to his superior officer. 2 high-class, elevated, first-rate, distinguished, exceptional, excellent, preferred, choice, select, ,litist, outstanding, superlative, matchless, unequalled, peerless, nonpareil, sterling, supreme, fine, noteworthy, notable, worthy, estimable: Kenneth has had the benefit of a superior education. 3 See supercilious, above.

--n. 4 See supervisor, below.

superiority

n. 1 ascendancy, pre-eminence, supremacy, leadership, lead, dominance, predominance, primacy, hegemony: Her superiority in the field is unchallenged. 2 excellence, greatness, peerlessness, matchlessness, inimitability, superlativeness, prominence, eminence, importance, distinction, prestige, renown: All commented on the superiority of Mark's contribution.

superlative

adj. unsurpassed, paramount, supreme, consummate, superior, best, choicest, finest, matchless, peerless, unequalled, unrivalled, singular, unique, incomparable, excellent, superb, sterling, dazzling, first-rate, exceptional, extraordinary, marvellous, spectacular, capital, Colloq tiptop, super, smashing, great, ace, terrific, fantastic, Slang crack: Max turned in a superlative performance in the tournament.

supernatural

adj. preternatural, unusual, extraordinary, exceptional, unnatural, miraculous, remarkable, fabulous, preterhuman, ghostly, spectral, abnormal, inexplicable, unexplainable; metaphysical, other-worldly, unearthly, ultramundane, supramundane, extramundane, occult, mystic, paranormal, psychic, uncanny, weird, mysterious, arcane, unreal, magical, dark: Some claim to hear supernatural voices speaking to them. Many characters in children's stories have supernatural powers.

supersede v. replace, succeed, displace, supplant, oust, take the place of, substitute for: The 286 computers have been superseded by 386 models.

supervise v. oversee, overlook, watch (over), manage, run, control, superintend, govern, direct, be in or have charge (of), handle, keep an eye on, administer: They are moving you up to supervise the production department.

supervisor
n. overseer, foreman, manager, controller, superintendent, superior, governor, director, boss, chief, head, administrator: As supervisor, you are responsible for the work done in your department.

supervisory
adj. managerial, administrative, executive: Do you think that Len is ready for supervisory responsibilities?

supine adj. 1 flat (on one's back), lying (down), prostrate, recumbent, Formal or technical procumbent, accumbent, decumbent: When I found him, he was supine, staring up at the stars. 2 indolent, lazy, lethargic, idle, listless, indifferent, apathetic, unconcerned, uninterested, torpid, languid, languorous, sluggish, slothful, phlegmatic, lymphatic, lackadaisical, inert, inactive, passive, motionless, inanimate, spiritless, abject: During the entire crisis, the town council was completely supine and uncaring.

supplant v. replace, displace, oust, turn out, eject, remove, expel, dismiss, unseat, supersede, substitute, exchange: The council should be supplanted by a new group more sympathetic to the needs of the people.

supple adj. 1 flexible, flexile, pliant, bendable, elastic, resilient, pliable, tractile, fictile: He made a rug-beater out of some supple lengths of bamboo. 2 willowy, lithe, limber, nimble, pliant, lissom or lissome, graceful, athletic: She has the supple body of a dancer. 3 tractable, compliant, yielding, accommodating, obliging, complaisant, acquiescent, submissive, unresistant, unresisting, servile, obsequious, ingratiating, fawning, toadying: With supple words the miserable sycophant wormed his way into father's confidence.

supplement

n. 1 addendum, addition, appendix, epilogue, end-piece, postscript, appendage, extension, continuation, adjunct, annexe, appurtenance, accessory, codicil, insert, sequel; supplementation; Technical suppletion: The later version includes the 1909 supplement.

--v. 2 add (on or to), extend, augment; complement: Various scholars supplemented the earlier work with their own notes and comments. He supplements his income by working at a restaurant.

supplementary

adj. 1 additional, added, annexed, adjunct, new: The supplementary buildings increased the size of the hospital greatly. 2 supplemental, supportive, contributory, ancillary, secondary, subordinate, annexed, additional, attached, added, appended, subsidiary, adscititious; extraneous, adventitious, supervenient, extra, excess; Technical suppletive: The supplementary material expanded the original work five-fold.

supplicant

adj. 1 suppliant, supplicating, entreating, petitioning, supplicatory, beseeching, praying, imploring, solicitous, importunate, begging, mendicant: In 1897, he carved a supplicant group in white marble, now in the Fraser Museum.

--n. 2 suppliant, applicant, petitioner, beseecher, suitor, pleader, aspirant, appellant, plaintiff, beggar, mendicant: He came to me as a supplicant, begging forgiveness for what he had done.

supplication

n. 1 entreaty, petition, prayer, appeal, pleading, plea, suit, solicitation, obsecration, obtestation, impetration: Heeding the pitiful supplications of the beggars, they gave them some money. 2 supplicating, begging, pleading, soliciting, petitioning, entreating, beseeching: All his supplication could not wring a farthing from the old skinflint.

supply   v. 1 furnish, provide, give, endow, present, purvey, deliver, come up with, contribute, distribute, sell; stock, accommodate, afford, equip, outfit, gear (up), rig (out), fit (out), provision, cater to, Chiefly Brit kit out or up; victual: Her company supplies radios to the army. Her husband's firm supplies the navy with anti-fouling paint. 2 yield, give, contribute, come up with, deliver, provide, furnish: The farm supplies our basic foods. 3 satisfy, fulfil, replenish, fill: Can you supply the demand for clothing?

--n. 4 stock, stockpile, store, inventory, quantity, reservoir, reserve, cache, hoard, accumulation, fund: Our supply is big enough to serve the entire area. 5 furnishing, provision, providing, purveying, supplying, distribution, equipping, outfitting, provisioning, delivery, stocking, stockpiling: The supply of microchips on a large scale is beyond our capacity.

support v. 1 back (up), stand by, help, bolster, uphold, brace, strengthen, fortify, buttress, prop (up), shore up, reinforce, boost, champion, assist, take up the cudgels for, aid, promote, forward, second, advance, advocate, stand up for, be supportive (of or in), Colloq stick up for: Peterson agreed to support him in his bid for the presidency. 2 brace, hold up, carry, prop (up); strengthen, shore up, reinforce, fortify, buttress: You need a column to support this beam. 3 tolerate, bear, stand (for), suffer, submit to, undergo, brook, stomach, endure, abide, countenance, face, Brit stick, Colloq put up with: He cannot support the notion that she might be guilty. 4 pay for, fund, maintain, keep, finance, subsidize, underwrite, sponsor, Colloq US bankroll: I can no longer support myself or my family. 5 sustain, withstand, stand, take, bear, tolerate, hold up under, weather: His legs were too weak to support his own weight. 6 verify, corroborate, authenticate, vouch for, endorse, confirm, affirm, bear out, attest to, certify, substantiate, validate, ratify: Can anyone support his alibi?

--n. 7 help, backing, backup, reinforcement, bolstering, encouragement, reinforcing, fortifying, assistance, aid, succour, sustenance: Thank you for your support over the years. 8 brace, prop, stay, frame, foundation, underpinning, substructure, truss, beam, column, pillar, strut, guy, guy wire, mainstay, buttress, bolster, reinforcement, supporter: The supports failed under the grandstand and it fell, injuring a few. Alan was a tremendous support during my illness. 9 sustenance, (living) expenses, keep, maintenance, subsistence, upkeep; finances, funding: Mona is suing David for the support of their child. He lives mainly on government support.

supportable

adj. 1 tolerable, bearable, endurable, acceptable, sufferable: Thoughts of death are more supportable when it seems remote. 2 defensible, confirmable, verifiable, demonstrable, tenable, believable: The argument that we should keep the old tax structure is simply not supportable.

supporter n. 1 enthusiast, champion, promoter, fan, aficionado, devotee, admirer, backer, follower, support, advocate, exponent, adherent, aid, assistant, helper: I wish to thank my many supporters, who were there when I needed them. 2 See support, 8, above.

supportive

adj. helpful, sustaining, supporting, encouraging, sympathetic, understanding, reassuring: Among our many friends, Cleo was the most supportive during the recent trouble.

suppose v. 1 assume, presume, presuppose, surmise, take, take as given or as read, take for granted; believe, think, fancy, imagine; Colloq take it: Don't people usually suppose that civil servants are honest? I supposed her to be his wife. Do you suppose you could return my key today? 2 hypothesize, theorize, postulate, posit, assume: Supposing a reduced rate of inflation, will they reduce interest rates? Suppose that you have lost the election - what will you do?

supposed adj. 1 alleged, assumed, putative, reputed, presumed, hypothetical, theoretical, theorized, imagined, suppositious, supposititious: Her supposed drug addiction turned out to be a myth. 2 obliged, expected, required; meant, intended: You were supposed to return my key. What is that supposed to mean?

supposedly

adv. allegedly, reputedly, theoretically, hypothetically, presumably; rumour has it: The bridge was blown up, supposedly by terrorists.

supposing conj. if, even if, in the event that, despite the fact that, although, though: Supposing he says no, what will you do?

supposition

n. assumption, presumption, surmise, belief, thought, fancy, theory, hypothesis, postulate, proposal, proposition: On the supposition that your calculations are correct, we will have made a profit this year.

suppress v. 1 end, discontinue, cut off, cease, stop, terminate, put an end to, halt, prohibit, preclude, prevent, repress, censor, forbid, interdict, block, obstruct, withhold, stifle, inhibit, hinder, arrest: They have been unable to suppress the publication of the book. 2 put down, quell, crush, squelch, quash, subdue, check, stamp out, snuff out, smother, extinguish, quench, crack down on: The uprising was suppressed with the shooting of the students. 3 keep down, control, keep under control, keep or hold in check, restrain, hold in or back, repress, cover up, conceal, hide, keep quiet or secret, mute, muffle, quiet, silence: Objections to the guest speaker were suppressed at the request of the university's chancellor.

suppression

n. suppressing, ending, end, discontinuation, discontinuing, cutting off, cut-off, cessation, ceasing, surcease, stopping, stop, terminating, termination, halting, halt, prohibiting, prohibition, preclusion, precluding, preventing, prevention, repressing, repression, censoring, censorship, forbidding, forbiddance, interdicting, interdiction, blocking, obstructing, obstruction, withholding, stifling, hindering; putting down, put-down, quelling, crushing, squelching, quashing, subduing, checking, check, stamping out, smothering, snuffing out, extinguishing, extinction, elimination, quenching, cracking down on, crack-down; control, controlling, restraining, restraint, concealing, concealment, hiding, muting, muffling, quieting, silencing: That constitutes suppression of the freedom of speech. The suppression of heresy is a perennial church problem. Dictators confuse the suppression of ideas with the oppression of people.

supremacist

n. supremist, bigot, racist, racialist, dogmatist, zealot, fanatic: Supremacists' philosophies are based on hatred, not love.

supremacy n. 1 transcendency, pre-eminence, superiority, ascendancy, excellence, primacy, peerlessness, matchlessness, incomparability, inimitability: Colonialism depends on military supremacy. 2 sovereignty, dominion, sway, mastery, control, dominance, (supreme or absolute) rule or authority, autarchy, omnipotence, hegemony: They maintained their supremacy over the Iberian peninsula for centuries.

supreme adj. 1 highest, loftiest, topmost, greatest, first, foremost, principal, unsurpassed, top, uppermost, chief, paramount, sovereign: There is no appeal to a decision of the supreme tribunal. 2 greatest, maximum, extreme, uttermost, utmost, ultimate: I fear that your son has made the supreme sacrifice, Mrs Atkins. 3 best, greatest, first, outstanding, pre-eminent, first-rate, prime, primary, unexcelled, leading, crowning, consummate: Many regard her as the supreme artist of her day. 4 superb, marvellous, excellent, outstanding, superlative, matchless, peerless, incomparable, unparalleled, masterful, masterly, sublime, brilliant, transcendent, inimitable, choice: There is no doubt that she is a supreme artist.

supremely adv. very, extremely, completely, perfectly, superlatively, sublimely, transcendently: I have never been so supremely happy as I was in Capri in '38.

sure adj. 1 certain, assured, convinced, persuaded, positive, definite, unwavering, unswerving, unflinching, steadfast, steady, unshakeable or unshakable, confident, satisfied, undeviating, unfaltering: How can you be so sure in your opinion that Jack did it? I'm sure I've met you before. 2 established, firm, solid, trusty, stable, steadfast, secure, safe, trustworthy, reliable: I never travel without my sure companions, courage and caution. 3 accurate, reliable, dependable, tried and true, unfailing, infallible, foolproof, effective, Colloq sure-fire: A high temperature is a sure sign of illness. 4 certain, inevitable, indubitable, unavoidable, ineluctable, inescapable, guaranteed: He who enters the Devil's Cave meets sure death.

surely adv. 1 certainly, to be sure, positively, absolutely, definitely, undoubtedly, indubitably, unquestionably, beyond the shadow of a doubt, beyond question, doubtless, doubtlessly, assuredly, Colloq sure, US absotively-posolutely: He is surely one of the finest riders I've ever seen. 2 firmly, solidly, confidently, unfalteringly, steadily, unswervingly, unhesitatingly, determinedly, doggedly, securely: Slowly but surely, the Great Bamboni stepped out onto the tightrope stretched across the Reichenbach Falls.

surface   n. 1 exterior, covering, outside, top, skin, integument, fa‡ade, face, boundary, interface, superficies; side, plane: Most of the earth's surface is covered by water. How many surfaces on an icosahedron? 2 on the surface. superficially, to all appearances, at first glance, outwardly, to the casual observer, extrinsically, ostensibly: It looks pretty enough on the surface, but it is rotten underneath.

--v. 3 appear, show up, emerge, materialize, arise, rise, come up, Colloq pop up, crop up: Guess who surfaced after ten years in Tierra del Fuego! An enormous turtle surfaced near our boat. 4 pave, concrete, tarmac: They are surfacing the road in front of my house.

surfeit   n. over-abundance, superabundance, plethora, glut, excess, surplus, oversupply, overdose, satiety, overflow, flood, deluge, superfluity, nimiety: There has been a surfeit of those dolls on the market. She is suffering from a surfeit of rich food and alcohol.

surfeited adj. gorged, overfed, satiated, sated, stuffed, glutted, jaded: He passed the sleeping surfeited diners and stole into the library unseen.

surge   v. 1 swell, wave, billow, bulge, heave, roll, undulate, well forth or up, rise and fall, ebb and flow, pulsate; rush, gush, pour, flood, stream, flow: The sea surged through the narrow gorge with a roar. The crowd surged round their hero.

--n. 2 swell, wave, billow, roller, whitecap, white horse, breaker, comber, upsurge, eddy, rush, gush, flood, stream, flow: The raft was caught by a surge and tossed high up on the beach.

surly   adj. unpleasant, rude, crusty, cantankerous, curmudgeonly, churlish, crabby, crabbed, choleric, splenetic, dyspeptic, bilious, temperamental, cross, crotchety, grouchy, grumpy, bearish, testy, touchy, short-tempered, ill-tempered, bad-tempered, ill-natured, bad-natured, ill-humoured, peevish, quarrelsome, argumentative, obnoxious, uncivil, rough, obstreperous: I see no reason to shop where the sales staff are surly.

surmise v. 1 imagine, guess, conjecture, speculate, suppose, hypothesize, theorize, assume, presume, conclude, gather, infer, understand, fancy, suspect, feel, sense: I surmised that the treaty terms were arranged by deputies long before the summit.

--n. 2 guess, conjecture, speculation, notion, hypothesis, theory, supposition, assumption, presumption, conclusion, understanding, fancy, suspicion, feeling, sense: It was an early surmise of the experts that man could not survive passing through the Van Allen belts.

surpass v. exceed, excel, go or pass beyond, outdo, beat, worst, better, best, outstrip, outdistance, outperform, outclass, outshine, eclipse, overshadow, top, cap, transcend, prevail over, leave behind: He easily surpassed the statesmen of his time.

surpassing
adj. excessive, extraordinary, great, enormous, unrivalled, matchless, peerless, unmatched, unequalled, unsurpassed: I could not believe the surpassing gall of the man.

surpassingly
adv. exceedingly, extraordinarily, incomparably, Literary surpassing: The girls on the beach were surpassingly beautiful.

surplus n. 1 surplusage, overage, excess, leftover(s), surfeit, over-abundance, oversupply, overdose, glut: The price of oil dropped owing to the surplus in the market.

--adj. 2 excess, leftover, extra, spare, over-abundant, superfluous, unused, redundant: The surplus grain is sold abroad.

surprise v. 1 shock, astound, astonish, amaze, disconcert, nonplus, dumbfound or dumfound, stagger, take aback, strike, hit, Colloq floor, bowl over, flabbergast, rock or set (someone) back on his or her or chiefly Brit their heels, Brit knock (someone) for six, US knock (someone) for a loop: What surprised me was her coolness in the face of danger. 2 take or catch unawares, catch red-handed or in the act or in flagrante delicto, catch napping or off guard, discover: When Samuel Johnson's wife found him with a maid, she said, 'Dr Johnson! I am surprised!', to which he replied, 'No, madam: you are amazed. I am surprised.'

--n. 3 shock, astonishment, amazement, stupefaction, wonder, incredulity: Imagine my surprise to learn that I was being arrested. 4 blow, jolt, shocker, bolt from or US also out of the blue, bombshell, eye-opener: It came as a surprise to me that my sister was pregnant.

surrender v. 1 give up, yield, let go (of), relinquish, deliver (up), hand over, forgo, forsake, turn over, turn in, part with, cede, concede: We were forced at gunpoint to surrender our valuables. 2 give up, yield, quit, cry quits, capitulate, throw in the sponge or the towel, raise the white flag, throw up one's hands, succumb, submit, give way, acquiesce, comply, give in, concede, crumble: The argument is so overwhelming that I must surrender.

--n. 3 submission, capitulation, yielding, renunciation, relinquishment, yielding, transferral, transfer, transference, handing or turning over, conveyancing, ceding, cession, concession: The official surrender of the disputed territory took place in the following year.

surreptitious
adj. furtive, secret, clandestine, stealthy, underhand(ed), covert, (on the) sly, secretive, private, concealed, hidden, veiled, Colloq sneaky: She stole surreptitious glances at him.

surround v. 1 encompass, encircle, envelop, enclose, hem in, ring: She likes being surrounded by flowers. Troops surrounded the building.

--n. 2 environs, environment, surroundings, atmosphere, ambience or ambiance, setting: The formal gardens make a charming surround for the art gallery.

surrounding
adj. nearby, neighbouring, local, adjoining, neighbourhood, adjacent, bordering, abutting, circumambient, circumjacent: The surrounding countryside was bursting into bloom.

surveillance
n. observation, watch, scrutiny, reconnaissance: The police kept him under constant surveillance.

survey v. 1 examine, appraise, evaluate, take the measure of, inspect, study, scan, scrutinize, measure, size up, assess, investigate, look into or over, review: He surveyed the situation and found nothing wrong. 2 view, look at, get a bird's eye view of, contemplate: From the top of the tower I surveyed the surrounding countryside.

--n. 3 surveying, examination, appraisal, evaluation, measure, study, scan, scanning, scrutiny, inquiry or enquiry, measurement, investigation, inspection: Our survey of the company finances yielded some very interesting information.

survive v. 1 continue, last, live (on), persist, subsist, pull through, endure: The village was destroyed, but its people survived. 2 outlast, outlive,: At the age of 114, MacMurtagh has survived all his children and many of his grandchildren.

susceptible
adj. 1 Often, susceptible of or to. open (to), prone (to), subject (to), disposed (to), predisposed (to), receptive (to), affected by, responsive (to): Brass is susceptible of a high shine. Are you still susceptible to her blandishments? 2 impressionable, influenceable, vulnerable, reachable, accessible, credulous, suggestible, gullible, na‹ve: Susceptible youngsters need protection from commercial exploitation.

suspect v. 1 disbelieve, doubt, mistrust, distrust, harbour or have suspicions about or of, be suspicious of: Do you suspect the butler? 2 feel, think, believe, sense, have a feeling, fancy, imagine, theorize, guess, surmise, have a sneaking suspicion, think it likely or probable, Colloq expect: I suspect that the butler might have done it.

--adj. 3 suspicious, questionable, doubtful, dubious, shady, shadowy; suspected: If you ask me, his behaviour since boarding the Orient Express has been highly suspect.

suspend v. 1 hold up or off (on), withhold, put off, put or hold or keep in or into abeyance, shelve, postpone, delay, defer, interrupt, stop or check or cease or discontinue temporarily, US table: We suspended payment pending inspection of the work already done. Train services on this route will be suspended till further notice. Suspend your disbelief for a moment to consider the possible motive for stealing a prune. 2 hang, attach, fasten, dangle, swing: She suspended the cameo from a gold chain which she wore as a necklace. 3 debar, exclude, eliminate, reject, expel, eject, evict; deprive of the rights of, deny the privileges of; blackball: A member may be suspended if his dues are six months or more in arrears.

suspense n. 1 uncertainty, indefiniteness, insecurity, doubt, irresolution, expectancy, indecision, not knowing: May I have the envelope please? - I cannot stand the suspense! 2 anxiety, tension, apprehension, nervousness, agitation, anxiousness, anticipation, expectation, excitement: A story that creates suspense for the reader is often suitable for film treatment.

suspension

n. 1 debarring, disbarment, exclusion, elimination, rejection, expulsion, ejection, eviction, deprivation, denial: The suspension of privileges cannot last for more than a fortnight. 2 intermission, moratorium, deferment, hold-up, delay, delaying, interruption, postponement, postponing, discontinuing, discontinuation, stay: Luckily, the suspension of hostilities lasted till the summer.

suspicion n. 1 doubt, dubiousness, dubiety, misgiving, mistrust, distrust, scepticism, qualm, wariness, apprehension, apprehensiveness, cautiousness, hesitation, second thought(s), uncertainty, leeriness, Colloq funny feeling, bad vibes: We all had our suspicions about Edward's genuine intentions. My worst suspicions have now been confirmed. 2 notion, inkling, suggestion, hint, trace, flavour, soup‡on, taste, dash, glimmer, tinge, touch, shadow, shade, scintilla, Colloq chiefly US and Canadian tad: If you have even a suspicion of doubt, do not find the defendant guilty. Did I detect a suspicion of a sneer?

suspicious

adj. 1 doubtful, in doubt, dubious, questionable, debatable, suspect(ed), under suspicion, open to doubt or question or misconstruction, Colloq shady, fishy: There is something very suspicious about his behaviour. 2 mistrustful, distrustful, doubtful, in doubt, sceptical, suspecting, disbelieving, unbelieving, leery, apprehensive, wary, uncertain, uneasy: I was suspicious of Douglas from the very beginning.

sustain v. 1 uphold, support, keep up, maintain, continue, keep (someone or something) going, keep alive, preserve; prolong, persist in: He has been sustained on a life-support system for weeks. If Georgette can sustain the pretence of loving him, he won't change his will. 2 support, carry, bear, bolster, buoy (up), reinforce, keep (someone) going, strengthen, shore up, underpin, prop up, buttress: During those long months as a hostage, only prayer sustained him. 3 endure, stand, withstand, bear up under, put up with, suffer, undergo, experience, tolerate, weather, brave: It is amazing how much punishment the human body can sustain. 4 bear, carry, support: This column is supposed to sustain the weight of half the building. 5 uphold, recognize, allow, admit, approve, ratify, sanction, authorize, endorse, validate: The judge sustained the objection by the defence.

sustained adj. continued, continuous, continual, prolonged, unremitting, steady, ceaseless, unceasing, incessant, interminable; uniform, even, level, unchanged, unchanging: The neighbours keep up that sustained caterwauling every night. The audience was thrilled by her sustained top C.

sustenance

n. 1 nutriment, nourishment, food (and drink), daily bread, rations, victuals, provisions, provender, groceries, aliment, edibles, eatables, foodstuff(s), viands, meat, Colloq grub, eats, chow, nosh, Slang Brit prog, scoff: My first concern is sustenance for my family. 2 livelihood, support, maintenance, upkeep, keep, subsistence, living: The fur trade provided the sustenance of early Canadian settlers.

19.15 swagger...

=-

swagger v. 1 strut, prance, parade, Archaic swash, Colloq US sashay, cut a swath: Look at that Charlie swaggering down the street in his new suit! 2 boast, brag, show off, vaunt, crow, Colloq Brit swank: He is always swaggering on about his war experiences.

--n. 3 strut, prance, strutting, swaggering, show, display, showing off, ostentation, braggadocio, arrogance, boastfulness: Paul's outrageous swagger developed only after he was promoted.

swallow v. 1 eat, consume, devour, ingest, dispatch or despatch; drink, gulp, guzzle, down, Colloq put or pack away, swig, swill: Snakes swallow their prey whole. The amount that man can swallow at one meal is incredible. 2 accept, allow, credit, believe, take, Colloq buy, fall for: She swallowed that tale about an aeroplane hook, line, and sinker. 3 Often, swallow up. absorb, make disappear, engulf, consume, assimilate: The fugitive was swallowed up by the crowd. 4 Sometimes, swallow back. keep or choke back or down, repress, suppress, control, stifle, smother, overcome, conquer: Harriet swallowed back the tears. Try swallowing your pride just this once.

--n. 5 bite, nibble, morsel, mouthful; drink, gulp, guzzle, Colloq swig: Have a swallow of this to warm you up a little.

swamp n. 1 bog, fen, marsh, quagmire, morass, moor, Chiefly literary slough, Scots and No. Eng. dialect moss, So. US everglade: The draining of swamps destroys the breeding places of mosquitoes.

--v. 2 overwhelm, overcome, flood, inundate, submerge, immerse, deluge, overload, overtax, overburden, Colloq snow under: I'm so swamped with work I'm sleeping at the office. 3 scuttle, sink, founder: A huge wave swamped the boat and she sank quickly.

swanky adj. smart, stylish, fashionable, chic, chichi, fancy, luxurious, grand, elegant, Colloq swank, snazzy, neat, nifty, plush, posh, ritzy, Brit swish: Living in a swanky house and wearing swanky clothes - what else would anyone want?

swarm n. 1 throng, horde, army, host, multitude, hive, herd, mob, mass, drove, flood, stream, cloud, flock, pack, shoal, bunch: Swarms of people showed up for our garden party.

--v. 2 throng, mass, crowd, congregate, flock, gather, flood, stream, flow: The fans swarmed round the rock group. 3 swarm with. Often, be swarming with. crawl with, abound in or with, throng with, teem with, burst with, bristle with, be overrun with: In two minutes the place was swarming with police.

swarthy   adj. swart, black, ebon, ebony, sable, pitch-black, jet-black, coal-black, raven, dark: His swarthy complexion contrasted with her china-like pallor.

swashbuckling
adj. adventurous, daring, daredevil, swaggering, roisterous, bold, dashing, flamboyant: Those old swashbuckling films with Errol Flynn, Richard Green, and Douglas Fairbanks, formed a genre all their own.

swath   n. swathe, path, belt, strip: A flock of birds was feeding along the swath cut by the harvester.

swathe   v. tie, bind, bandage, wrap, enwrap, swaddle, bundle (up), envelop, shroud, muffle (up): I can't tell who he is as his head is swathed in bandages.

sway   v. 1 wave, waver, swing, sweep, oscillate, undulate, reel, totter, swing or move to and fro or back and forth or from side to side or backwards and forwards, rock, fluctuate; bend, lean: The reeds swayed in the breeze. 2 move, incline, divert, tend, veer, tilt, lean, slant, bias; influence, persuade, impress, win over, bring round, convince, talk into: The wind is causing the trees to sway towards the east. We tried to sway him to our way of thinking.

--n. 3 sweep, wave, swing, (period of) oscillation, libration: There must be a sway of twenty feet in the top of that skyscraper. 4 influence, control, power, command, authority, dominion, rule, sovereignty, leadership, mastery; grip, clutches, grasp: His ambition was to get the mountain people under his sway.

swear   v. 1 depose, aver, asseverate, declare, insist, assert, solemnly affirm or state, testify, promise, take an oath, undertake, vow, avow, vouchsafe, warrant, pledge, give one's word, agree: He swore he had not done any such thing. 2 curse, blaspheme, imprecate, use profanity, utter profanities, execrate, Colloq cuss: Priscilla stopped her ears at the men's swearing. 3 swear by. trust (in), believe in, rely on, have confidence in, count on: The colonel swears by the same old fountain-pen he has used for years and will use no other. 4 swear off. forswear, renounce, abjure, go off, forgo, shun, avoid, give up, eschew, forsake, throw over: Brian tells me he's sworn off alcohol for a while.

sweat v. 1 perspire, glow: That workout made me sweat. 2 Often, sweat out. worry, be anxious, agonize, anguish, bite (one's) nails, be on pins and needles, fret, fuss, stew, torture or torment oneself, lose sleep (over), Colloq sweat blood, be in a tizzy, US sweat bullets: The professors really like to make students sweat, don't they? Fiona is sweating it out till the results are posted. 3 slave (away), labour, drudge, grind, toil and moil, slog, work like a Trojan or a horse, Slang Brit swot or swat: I sweat over a hot stove all day while you're out and about town. 4 ooze, exude, squeeze out, transude: When a boy, he believed that dew came from flowers sweating water.

--n. 5 perspiration, Technical diaphoresis, sudor: In addition to body moisture, salt and other minerals are lost in sweat. 6 (hard) work, labour, laboriousness, grind, toil, drudgery, slogging, sweating, Slang Brit swotting or swatting: Nothing worthwhile is gained without some sweat. 7 state of confusion or upset or excitement or distraction or agitation or anxiety or distress or worry; pother, Colloq dither, tizzy, lather: Henry has really worked himself up into a sweat over this problem. 8 No sweat! No problem!, Don't worry!, Everything is taken care of!, All is well!, That presents no difficulty!: When asked to change a flat tyre, the stranger's response was, 'No sweat!'

sweep v. 1 brush, whisk, clean, clear, tidy up: This weekend I have to sweep out the basement. 2 Often, sweep away. carry or take (away or off), destroy, wipe out, demolish, remove, wash (away); blow (away): The raging torrent swept away the bridge. The wind swept the debris before it. 3 swoop, flounce, glide, sail, march, parade, skim, tear, dash, zoom: Hattie swept into the room majestically. 4 curve, arc, arch, bend, bow, circle, turn: The long drive to the house sweeps round the pond and gardens.

--n. 5 pass, clearance, stroke; purge: In one clean sweep the police rounded up all the suspects. 6 curve, arc, arch, bow, bend, curvature, flexure: Note the sweep of those main arches holding up the dome. 7 range, extent, compass, reach, stretch,

scope, swing, span: The Hubbell space telescope has a farther
sweep than any on earth.

sweeping adj. 1 comprehensive, (all-)inclusive, general, extensive,
universal, all-embracing, broad, widespread, wide(-ranging),
far-ranging, blanket, umbrella, catholic, exhaustive, radical,
thorough(-going), out-and-out, across the board, wholesale,
Colloq wall-to-wall: We must institute sweeping reforms of the
party before the election. 2 complete, total, overwhelming,
decisive: The first team enjoyed a sweeping victory in track
and field events.

sweet   adj. 1 sugary, honey-like, honeyed, sweetened: Sweet breakfast
cereals are bad for your teeth. 2 fragrant, perfumed, scented,
aromatic, ambrosial, sweet-smelling, sweet-scented, balmy,
redolent: The night air was sweet with jasmine. 3 harmonious,
melodious, sweet-sounding, euphonious, dulcet, musical, tuneful,
euphonic, mellifluous, mellow, lyric, silvery, bell-like,
golden: I could hear McCormick's sweet voice singing 'Danny
Boy'. 4 gentle, amiable, agreeable, genial, warm, friendly,
kind, nice, unassuming, easygoing; attractive, appealing,
charming, winning, pleasant, pleasing, lovely; cute, pretty:
Jane normally has such a sweet disposition. Old Mrs Hughes was
always sweet to me when I was little. Amy looks so sweet in her
new dress. What a sweet little kitten! 5 dear, beloved,
precious, prized, treasured, wonderful, marvellous, splendid,
Colloq great: How sweet life can be! 6 considerate, attentive,
solicitous, thoughtful, sympathetic, compassionate, kind,
kind-hearted, generous, gracious, accommodating: How sweet it
was of you to bring flowers! 7 cloying, sentimental, syrupy,
saccharine, treacly, precious, honeyed, sickening, Colloq
gushing, gushy, sloppy, soppy, maudlin, sticky, Brit twee,
Colloq icky: Claire is so sweet that she really overdoes it
sometimes. 8 sweet on. fond of, taken with, keen on, devoted
to, enamoured of, infatuated with, (head over heels) in love
with, Colloq wild or mad or crazy about, nuts about or over,
Slang gone on, stuck on, batty about: We were teasing Rick
about being sweet on Anne.

--n. 9 Often, sweets. bon-bon, chocolate, confection,
sweetmeat, Old-fashioned comfit, US candy: Harry always brings
a box of sweets for my mother when he comes to see me. 10
dessert, Brit pudding, afters: For a sweet we can offer you a

choice between chocolate gateau and gooseberry pie.

sweeten v. 1 sugar, sugar-coat: Can you think of nothing that would sweeten the bad news? 2 dress up, make more attractive or agreeable, sugar-coat, embellish, embroider; make less painful, mitigate, alleviate, assuage, lighten, soften, palliate, mollify, ease, allay, moderate, temper: Perhaps the shareholders would be more amenable to the take-over were the buyers to sweeten the offer.

sweetheart

n. girlfriend, boyfriend, friend, admirer, beau, darling, dear, love, beloved, lover, paramour, inamorato, inamorata, lady-love, betrothed, intended, fianc,(e), Archaic swain Colloq heartthrob, flame, sweetie, steady: She married her childhood sweetheart and lived happily ever after.

swell v. 1 Often, swell out or up. grow, increase, enlarge, expand, blow or puff up or out, distend, inflate, dilate, wax; mushroom, belly, balloon, bloat, bulge, billow, fatten, rise, tumefy: After cooking, the mixture swells to twice its original volume. 2 grow, increase, mushroom, snowball, accumulate, mount: Forgotten for years, her savings had swelled to become a small fortune. 3 increase, raise, augment, enlarge, boost, step up: Something must be done to swell the number of recruits.

--n. 4 enlargement, broadening, increase, extension, spread, swelling, inflation, expansion, rise, surge: Have you noted the swell in popularity of health foods? 5 wave, surge, billow: As we rose to the top of each swell, we could see the shore. 6 fop, dandy, gay blade, fashion plate, Beau Brummell, Archaic coxcomb, Historical macaroni, Colloq clothes-horse, US fancy Dan, Slang nob, Archaic lounge lizard, Brit toff: He frequented the clubs populated by the other London swells.

--adj. 7 smart, chic, stylish, fashionable, modish, grand, luxurious, de luxe, elegant, first-rate, first-class, top-grade, Colloq posh, swank, swanky, ritzy: Charlie always took Diane to the swellest places. 8 marvellous, thrilling, splendid, spectacular, first-rate, fine, Colloq great, super, terrific: I really had a swell time at your party.

swelling n. enlargement, distension, tumescence, protuberance, bump, prominence, bulge, lump, excrescence, protrusion, tumour, node, nodule: It is a good idea to have any unexplained swelling examined by the doctor.

sweltering

adj. hot, torrid, steaming, sultry, steamy, muggy, sticky, oppressive, stifling, stuffy, suffocating, clammy, humid, wet, broiling, boiling, scorching, roasting, baking, wilting, melting, tropical, Colloq close: I cannot live through another sweltering summer in the Amazon jungle.

swerve   v. veer, career, swing, diverge, deviate, sheer off, skew, stray, turn (aside): The car swerved wildly off the road and into a ditch.

swift   adj. fleet, fast, rapid, speedy, hasty, lively, nimble, expeditious; quick, brisk, sudden, abrupt: The postman was bent on the swift completion of his rounds. What Bill needs is a swift kick to jolt him out of his lethargy.

swiftly   adv. fast, quickly, speedily, rapidly, expeditiously; briskly, hurriedly, hastily, suddenly, abruptly, in a flash, in a trice, in the wink of an eye, before you can say 'Jack Robinson', before you can say 'knife', like a shot, in an instant, in (less than) no time, precipitately, unexpectedly, Colloq like greased lightning, US lickety-split, in a jiffy, Slang pronto, like a bat out of hell: The assembly is done much more swiftly by machine. Swiftly, I ducked into a doorway to avoid being seen.

swill   n. 1 hogwash, pigswill, refuse, pigwash, slop(s), garbage, waste: If you saw the swill that pigs eat, you might not eat pork. 2 nonsense, rot, rubbish, Slang crap: That novel of hers was the worst swill I've read in a long time.

--v. 3 drink, guzzle, quaff, swallow, Colloq swig, toss off or down, throw down, polish off, knock back or off, US chug-a-lug: They waste every evening swilling beer.

swimmingly

adv. smoothly, easily, effortlessly, well, successfully, without a hitch or a problem, like a dream, cosily, like clockwork, without difficulty, handily, readily: The plan has gone swimmingly thus far.

swindle v. 1 cheat, cozen, bilk, defraud, deceive, hoodwink, take in, fleece, dupe, fool, mulct, gull, make a fool or sucker (out) of, victimize, exploit, trick, Old-fashioned or literary euchre, Archaic chouse, Colloq bamboozle, chisel, diddle, pull a fast one on, flimflam, pluck, burn, take (someone) for a ride, Brit fiddle, US buffalo, Slang con, sting, screw, rook, gyp, rip (someone) off: The gang has swindled several elderly people out of their life savings.

--n. 2 fraud, confidence game or trick, cheating, swindling, defrauding, deception, racket, trickery, sharp practice, thimblerigging, chicanery, knavery, Colloq Brit fiddle, swizzle or swizz, Slang rip-off, scam, con (game), gyp, US bunco: Those old-time swindles are nothing compared with the activities of unscrupulous stock brokers.

swindler n. cheat, confidence man or woman, hoaxer, mountebank, charlatan, knave, scoundrel, sharper, fraud, trickster, thimblerigger, villain, Technical defalcator, Colloq flimflam man, Slang con man or woman, US bunco-artist, four-flusher: Swindlers tricked them out of all their cash and traveller's cheques.

swing v. 1 sway, move or go to and fro or back and forth or backwards and forwards, come and go, wave, fluctuate, flap, oscillate, vibrate, librate, waver, wobble, waggle, zigzag, wigwag, flourish: The branches swung in the wind. They swung their arms in time to the music. 2 hang, dangle; be hanged, be suspended: They watched the monkeys swinging from tree to tree. He will swing for his crime.

--n. 3 swinging, sway, swaying, toing and froing, coming and going, waving, fluctuation, fluctuating, flapping, flap, oscillation, oscillating, vibration, vibrating, libration, waver, wavering, wobble, wobbling, waggle, waggling, zigzag, zigzagging, wigwag, wigwagging, flourish, flourishing, stroke: Catch the rope on its next swing. He was caught on the shoulder by a wild swing of the bat. 4 sweep, scope, range, trend, limit(s); change, switch, shift: The swing of public opinion is unpredictable in these matters. There has been a small percentage swing to the Conservatives. 5 pace, routine, groove, pattern: Don't you find it hard to get into the normal swing of things after a long holiday? 6 in full swing. in (full) operation, under way, in business, animated, lively, on the move, moving, going, Colloq on the hop, cooking: The party was in full swing when we arrived.

swingeing adj. huge, immense, enormous, considerable, drastic, severe, harsh, stringent, punishing, devastating, painful, excruciating, major, daunting, Draconian, oppressive, exorbitant, excessive, violent, Colloq thumping: They have instituted a truly swingeing increase in commuter fares. She gives me a swingeing headache.

swinging adj. fashionable, chic, up to date, modern, Colloq …-go-go, in the swim, with it, Chiefly Brit trendy, Slang hip, groovy, in the groove: That's what the swinging '60s were like in London.

swipe v. 1 Usually, swipe at. swing at, strike at, hit at, lash out at: He swiped away at the golf ball but kept missing it. 2 steal, filch, pilfer, purloin, Colloq pinch, lift, snitch, Chiefly Brit nick, whip, snaffle: They caught Freddie swiping a bag of mints at Woolworth's.

--n. 3 swing, strike, clip: Ronald took a swipe at the ball with his racket.

swirl v. 1 whirl, spin, eddy, churn, circulate, gyrate, surge, boil, seethe: Faster and faster the water swirled round in the maelstrom. 2 twist, whirl, whorl, curl, roll, furl, spin, curve, spiral, twirl, wind (round): She swirled her hair round her head and fastened it with a large clip.

--n. 3 twist, whirl, curl, roll, twirl, spiral: At the fabric exhibition swirls of textiles were decoratively displayed.

swish v. 1 hiss, whisk, rustle, whisper, susurrate: I heard Elena swish up behind me in her red silk taffeta dress.

--n. 2 hiss, hissing sound, whoosh, swoosh, rustle, whistle: With a quick swish the machete knifed through the underbrush.

--adj. 3 elegant, fashionable, stylish, de rigueur, smart, Colloq posh, plush, ritzy, swell, swank(y): Liza bought a swish new outfit for the wedding. 4 homosexual, effeminate, swishy, camp(y), US fruity, limp-wristed, Colloq queer, gay, Chiefly Brit bent, US faggy, Slang kinky: He used to bring his swish friends here, but not lately.

switch n. 1 twitch, lash, rod, whip, birch (rod), scourge: He picked up the switch as if to hit me with it. 2 change, alteration, exchange, shift, change-over, reversal, deflection, trade, swap or swop: A switch of costume was done swiftly backstage, yielding the expression 'quick-change artist'.

--v. 3 twitch, lash, whip, birch, beat, strike, thrash, scourge, flog: The headmaster switched the boys for the slightest misdemeanour. 4 change, shift, exchange, divert, deviate: The colonel switched to another subject. They switched the two stones, leaving the fake emerald. 5 divert, turn, rechannel, redirect, direct: They switched the funds to another project.

swivel v. 1 pivot, turn, rotate, spin, revolve, pirouette, move freely: This joint allows the arm to swivel in all directions.

--n. 2 pivot, elbow-joint, gimbal, ball-and-socket joint: The stern-chaser is fitted with a swivel, allowing it to be fired at any angle.

swollen adj. enlarged, distended, inflated, bloated, bulging, puffed up or out, tumid, tumescent, expanded, turgid, puffy, oversized, outsized, Technical dropsical, hypertrophied, proud: My knee was swollen for three days after that knock.

swoop v. 1 descend, dive, sweep down, pounce, stoop: The eagle swooped down across the stream, catching a salmon in its talons.

--n. 2 descent, dive, sweep, pounce, stoop, stroke, blow, rush: The police raid caught several drug dealers in one fell swoop.

19.16 sybarite...
=-

sybarite n. epicure, epicurean, hedonist, voluptuary, sensualist, aesthete, gastronome, gourmet, bon vivant, bon viveur, pleasure-seeker, playboy, jet-setter: These sybarites spend all their time and their parents' money in the fleshpots of the world.

symbol n. representation, figure, metaphor, allegory, insigne (singular; plural is insignia), token, sign, emblem, badge, image, logotype, mark, trade mark, colophon, brand, code, abbreviation, phonogram, initialism, cryptogram, acronym, monogram, password, shibboleth, watchword, code word; arms, bearing, armorial bearing, crest, escutcheon, coat of arms, banner, flag, pennant, standard, Colloq logo: This jewel is a mere symbol of my devotion and love for you.

symbolic adj. Often, symbolic of. symbolical (of), tokening, betokening, emblematic (of), figurative, allegoric(al), typical (of), representative (of), symptomatic (of), characteristic (of), metaphoric(al), allusive (of), denotative (of), connotative (of), mnemonic (of): From ancient times the laurel, or bay, has been regarded as symbolic of praiseworthiness.

symbolize v. represent, stand for, denote, connote, suggest, express, imply, signify, mean, typify, exemplify, betoken, illustrate, embody, epitomize: Green symbolizes envy and jealousy, red anger, blue sadness, white purity, and so on.

symmetrical
adj. symmetric, (well-)balanced, proportionate, proportional, well-proportioned, orderly, (well-)ordered, in proportion, even, regular, congruous, congruent, uniform, harmonious; equal, mirror-image, mirror-like: The temple was exactly symmetrical, with a wing on each side. The two wings are symmetrical.

symmetry n. balance, proportion, evenness, order, orderliness, regularity, uniformity, congruity, congruousness, correspondence, agreement, harmony, consistency, equality: With the crudest of tools, the pyramid builders achieved incredible symmetry.

sympathetic
adj. 1 Often, sympathetic to or toward(s). compassionate (to or toward(s)), commiserating (with), commiserative (with), understanding (of), supportive (of), caring (to or toward(s)), concerned (about or with), solicitous (of or to or (toward(s)), warm-hearted (to or toward(s)), kind-hearted (to or toward(s)),

responsive (to or toward(s)), well-meaning, well-intentioned, good-natured (to or toward(s)), considerate (of or to or toward(s)), empathetic or empathic (with or to or toward(s)); sympathizing, kindly, comforting, consoling: The social workers are sympathetic to the people's problems. One should be more sympathetic. Julie takes a sympathetic outlook. 2 Often, sympathetic to or toward(s). agreeable, pleasant, friendly, well-disposed, favourably disposed, encouraging, like-minded, responsive, congenial, en rapport, simpatico: You will find a sympathetic ear at the council. The people are not sympathetic to a tax increase.

sympathize

v. 1 Often, sympathize with. suffer or grieve or mourn (with), feel (sorry) (for), have pity (for), empathize (with), condole (with), commiserate (with): I sympathized with you over the loss of your grandfather. Now that mine is gone, it is your turn to sympathize. 2 Often, sympathize with. harmonize (with), get along (with), relate (to), identify (with), go along (with), see eye to eye (with), agree (with), side (with), understand, be en rapport (with), be in sympathy (with), be simpatico (with), have (a) rapport (with), Colloq be or vibrate on the same frequency or wavelength (with), Slang dig: I can sympathize with anyone who despises terrorism.

sympathizer

n. condoner, approver, conspirator, co-conspirator, collaborator, accomplice, accessory, supporter, fellow-traveller, ally: At one time, they tried to incarcerate all suspected of being Fascist sympathizers.

sympathy n. 1 compassion, commiseration, pity, concern, tenderness, empathy, understanding, solicitousness, warmth, tender-heartedness, warm-heartedness, Archaic ruth: We feel great sympathy for any child who loses a pet. 2 agreement, harmony, compatibility, rapport, concord, accord, fellow-feeling, congeniality, affinity, closeness, unity, communion, fellowship, camaraderie: It is amazing that there can be so much sympathy between two such different people.

symptom n. manifestation, evidence, syndrome, mark, token, indication, cue, clue, (warning) sign, characteristic, trait, feature, earmark, marker: Esmeralda is extremely jealous - I recognize the symptoms.

symptomatic

adj. Often, symptomatic of. indicative (of), representative (of), suggestive (of), characteristic (of), emblematic (of), symbolic (of), peculiar (to), specific (to), idiosyncratic (of); indicating, suggesting: A high fever is symptomatic of many illnesses.

syndicate n. 1 trust, monopoly, bloc, cartel, syndication: They were part of a syndicate that controlled the worldwide sale of nickel. 2 (crime) family, Cosa Nostra, mafia: Guido used to be an enforcer for the syndicate.

--v. 3 affiliate, ally, associate, amalgamate, consolidate, league, confederate, synthesize: Mrs Cartwright was successful in syndicating the milk producers in the entire county. 4 serialize, distribute: His business is syndicating old movies to television stations.

synonymous

adj. Often, synonymous with or to. equal (to), equivalent (to), tantamount (to), identified (with), corresponding (to or with); transposable (with), exchangeable (with), identical (to or with), interchangeable (with), the same (as): A word is almost never truly synonymous with another in all respects. Even terms like 'salt' and 'sodium chloride' are not synonymous.

synopsis n. summary, condensation, abridgement, epitomization, outline, abstract, digest, pr,cis, epitome, compendium, conspectus, aper‡u, r,sum,: He was assigned to write a ten-page synopsis of a 600-page book.

synthesis n. blend, compound, merge, union, amalgamation, coalescence, integration, unifying, unification, composite, composition, mixture, combination; compounding, combining, blending, merging, union, amalgamation, coalescence, integrating, mixing, fusing, fusion, unifying, unification: This mixture is a synthesis of many different ingredients. How do they effect the synthesis of coal, water, and air to make nylon?

synthetic adj. artificial, man-made, manufactured, ersatz; fake, false, counterfeit, sham, bogus, spurious, mock, imitation, pseudo, plastic, Colloq phoney or US also phony: Because of the animal rights activists, many women today wear synthetic fur.

system   n. 1 organized whole, organization, set, group, combination; structure, arrangement, pattern, set-up: Some believe that the universe is a vast ordered system, others that it is chaos in which only man sees order. It took years to establish the banking system in this country. 2 scheme, method, approach, modus operandi, way, procedure, methodology, technique, plan, process, practice, routine: There is a proper system for doing the job and you should keep to it.

systematic
adj. organized, systematized, planned, methodical, businesslike, orderly, well-organized, well-ordered, regular, routine, standardized, standard: There are several systematic ways for cataloguing books.

20.0 T

=-

20.1 tab...

=-

tab   n. 1 flap, tag, loop, ticket, sticker, label, flag, lappet, strap, handle: Pull on the red tab and the life jacket inflates automatically. 2 charge, bill, account, reckoning, Chiefly US check: They left me to pick up the tab at the restaurant for everyone.

table   n. 1 food, victuals, provender, comestible, edibles, eatables, fare, board, provisions: One can rely on a fine table at Mrs McGuire's. 2 plain, flatland, mesa, tableland, plateau, steppe: The area is barren lava table from horizon to horizon. 3 (tabular or columnar) list or listing, register, record, tabulation, chart, catalogue, index, inventory, itemization, pr,cis, table of contents: The figures are easier to understand when arranged in a table.

--v. 4 submit, present, offer, proffer, bring forward, bring up, propose: The bill will be tabled for action today. 5 shelve, postpone, defer, suspend, put off, stay, pigeon-hole, mothball, Colloq put on ice: When the bill came up we tabled it for six months.

tableau n. scene, sight, spectacle, picture, image; composition, arrangement, grouping, effect: The children raptly listening to their father telling a story - what a charming tableau!

tablet n. 1 (scribbling or writing- or note- or memo) pad, (spiral(-bound)) notebook, US scratch pad: I write all my dreams in a little tablet in case I forget to relate them to my psychiatrist. 2 slab, plaque, plate, panel, plaquette: The tablet on the base of the statue says it is of Disraeli. 3 stone, gravestone, headstone, tombstone, memorial: We each contributed to the tablet that marks Croombender's grave. 4 pill, capsule, troche, pellet, pastille, drop, lozenge, bolus: Take three tablets twice a day.

taboo adj. 1 tabu, anathema, forbidden, interdicted, off limits, out of bounds, verboten, proscribed, banned, prohibited, restricted, unmentionable, unspeakable; censored, censorable, unacceptable, rude, impolite, indecorous, dirty, explicit; outlawed, illegal, illicit, unlawful: Our holiday in Benidorm is a taboo subject in my house. Many people dislike hearing taboo language used on radio or television.

--n. 2 tabu, anathema, interdict, interdiction, proscription, ban, prohibition, restriction: There is still a strict taboo against mentioning bodily functions in public.

--v. 3 tabu, forbid, interdict, proscribe, ban, prohibit: The hotel taboos the sharing of a room by unmarried couples.

tabulate v. systematize, organize, order, group, list, arrange, classify, categorize, rate, grade, catalogue, codify, pigeon-hole, sort, assort, index, itemize; record, note: We shall report the results of the poll as soon as they have been tabulated.

tacit adj. unspoken, undeclared, unsaid, unstated, unvoiced, unuttered, silent, understood, unexpressed, implied, implicit: The sisters have a tacit agreement not to poach each other's boyfriends. He gave me a look of tacit gratitude.

taciturn adj. silent, uncommunicative, mum, mute, reticent, reserved, uncommunicative, unforthcoming, tight-lipped, close-lipped, untalkative, quiet: Even when he was small, Chris was quite taciturn, saying little but evidently thinking much.

tack n. 1 pin, push-pin, nail, Brit drawing-pin, tin-tack, US thumbtack: Someone keeps stealing the tacks from the bulletin board. 2 fastening, stitch, baste: Could you put some tacks in the hem so I can try on the skirt? 3 direction, bearing, heading, course, approach; way, path, procedure, method, technique, attack, line: Our new tack was due east. They may have to take a different tack to win the contract. 4 tackle, gear, equipment, equipage, harness, saddlery, fittings, fitments, kit, outfit, rig, rigging, accoutrements or US also accouterments: He has ordered all new tack for his horse.

--v. 5 pin, attach, fasten, secure, join, couple, unite, combine, stick, fix, affix, staple, nail, skewer, peg, screw, bolt, rivet; baste, stitch, sew, bind, tie; paste, glue, cement, solder, braze, weld: You were only supposed to tack these together lightly, but now I can't pull them apart. 6 change direction or heading or course , Nautical go or come about; zigzag, veer off or away, Nautical beat: We tacked quickly to avoid striking the buoy. 7 tack on. add (on), append, annex, attach, tag on: When they tacked on a rider to the contract, we refused to sign it.

tackle n. 1 gear, rig, fittings, equipment, equipage, rigging, paraphernalia, outfit, tools, apparatus, trappings, accoutrements or US also accouterments, Colloq Brit clobber: The steeplejack brought along all his tackle and made ready for his climb. 2 block (and tackle), fall, hoisting gear, pulley, sheave: You'll need heavier tackle to lift this cargo.

--v. 3 come to grips with, grapple with, approach, take on, try to solve, (try to) deal or cope with, stand or face up to, face, confront, address oneself to, attend to, set about, pursue, Colloq take a crack at, have a go at: Perhaps you'd better tackle the parking problem yourself. I'll tackle the boss on the matter as soon as I see him. 4 attack, fall upon, devour, consume, demolish, destroy: You've seen nothing till you've seen Graham tackle a roast turkey.

tacky° adj. sticky, gluey, gummy, adhesive, ropy, viscous, viscid, Colloq gooey: The varnish is still tacky and must dry before sanding.

tackyý adj. tawdry, cheap, brummagem, gaudy, tasteless, vulgar, shabby, tatty, sleazy, chintzy, shoddy, seedy: Richard consistently buys the tackiest suits on the market.

tact n. discretion, diplomacy, sensitivity, savoir faire, judgement, politesse, delicacy, finesse, cleverness, prudence, care, carefulness, dexterity, dexterousness, discernment, judiciousness, adroitness, skill, acumen, acuteness, perception, understanding, consideration, thoughtfulness, politeness: You can count on Robert to handle such matters with consummate tact.

tactful adj. discreet, diplomatic, sensitive, politic, judicious, delicate, clever, prudent, careful, dexterous, discerning, adroit, skilful, acute, perceptive, considerate, understanding, considerate, thoughtful, polite: Even the people working in the complaints department are tactful.

tactic n. 1 move, manoeuvre, ploy, caper, plan, strategy, stratagem, device, ruse, plot, scheme, design: Inviting her husband along was a tactic merely to avert suspicion. 2 tactics. manoeuvres, strategy, plans, campaign, generalship, military science, military operation(s), orchestration, engineering, masterminding: Entirely different tactics must be employed in jungle fighting.

tactical adj. artful, clever, cunning, shrewd, adroit, strategic, skilful, adept, politic, smart, tactful: The general was noted for his dazzling strategies and tactical genius.

tactician n. strategist, campaigner, mastermind, intriguer, plotter, planner, schemer, manipulator, manoeuvrer, orchestrator, Colloq operator: Montgomery was regarded by some as a master tactician.

tactless adj. coarse, boorish, uncivilized, unsophisticated, rough, rude, uncouth, discourteous, ungentlemanly, unladylike, crude, gruff, bluff, abrupt, blunt, brusque, impertinent, disrespectful, uncivil, impolite, insensitive, awkward, bungling, clumsy, maladroit, inept, undiplomatic, thoughtless, gauche, unskilful, impolitic, imprudent, inconsiderate, injudicious, indiscreet, unwise: It was pretty tactless of him to ask her out in front of his ex-girlfriend.

tag n. 1 label, name or price tag, mark, marker, tab, ticket, sticker, stub, docket: The tag was clearly marked with a bar-code. 2 name, epithet, label, designation, title, appellation, nickname, Slang handle, moniker: Called 'Eddie the dip', he got his tag 'the dip' because he's a pickpocket.

--v. 3 label, mark, ticket, identify, earmark: Please tag all these cartons so we'll know what's in them without opening them. 4 label, name, call, dub, nickname, style, entitle, christen, baptize: I have already said that Eddie was tagged 'the dip' because he was a pickpocket. 5 tag along. follow, trail (along) after, tail, shadow, attend, accompany, drag along with or after: Does your little brother have to tag along wherever we go?

tail n. 1 appendage, brush (of a fox), scut (of a hare, rabbit, of deer), dock, caudal fin (of a fish), uropygium (of a bird), pope's or parson's nose, tailpiece, flag: I just caught a glimpse of the fox's tail as it leapt the fence. 2 rear end, tail-end, backside, buttocks, croup, rump, posterior(s), bottom, Colloq behind, hinie, Taboo slang Brit bum, arse, US ass: When I catch you, I'll kick your tail! 3 reverse: The obverse of a coin is the head, the reverse is the tail.

--v. 4 dog, follow, trail, stalk, shadow, track: We tailed the suspect from Newcastle to New Mexico.

tailor n. 1 couturier, couturiŠre, costumier, dressmaker, modiste, clothier, garment-maker, outfitter, seamstress: She has all her clothing made by her tailor.

--v. 2 fit, adapt, suit, adjust, alter, accommodate, modify, change, convert, cut, fashion, mould, stretch, accustom: Your telephone system can be tailored to your most exacting demands.

tailor-made

adj. 1 fitted, custom-made, made-to-order, bespoke; made to measure: He would not wear anything but tailor-made clothes. 2 ideal, perfect, customized, made-to-order, custom-made, suited, suitable, (just) right, Colloq right up one's Brit street or US alley: The job of lighthouse-keeper was tailor-made for a misanthrope.

taint n. 1 stain, blot, blemish, slur, tinge, tincture, (black or bad) mark, stigma, imperfection, flaw, scar, defect; discredit, dishonour: His writing suffers from the taint of pedantry.

--v. 2 sully, tarnish, stain, stigmatize, smear, harm, hurt, damage, debase, vitiate, blacken, foul, contaminate, pollute, dirty, muddy, smirch, besmirch, blemish, soil, corrupt, spoil, defile, ruin, destroy: It takes very little to taint one's reputation in a small village.

take v. 1 grip, seize, grasp, clasp, get, get or take hold of, grab, snatch, clutch, catch, capture, obtain, lay hold of, lay (one's) hands on, procure, acquire, gain (possession of), take possession of, secure, win, carry off, abduct, Colloq nab: The police took him into custody. He takes what he can get. When it comes to ineptitude, Sue certainly takes the prize. 2 pick, select, choose, opt for, settle or decide or fasten on or upon: When you get to the fork, take the road to the left. 3 appropriate, arrogate, extract, carry off or away, steal, purloin, pilfer, filch, palm, rob, shoplift, pocket, remove, walk off or away with, run or make off or away with; embezzle, misappropriate, peculate; plagiarize, pirate; Colloq lift, swipe, snitch, Chiefly Brit pinch, nick, Slang knock off, hook, rip off, liberate, US boost, crook: They took what didn't belong to them. 4 reserve, book, engage; hire, rent, lease: He took a room in a small hotel, where he began to write detective fiction. 5 acquire, get, adopt; assume, derive, obtain, draw, receive, inherit: He has taken his bad manners from you. The film takes its title from the book. 6 accept, receive, bear, withstand, stand, endure, weather, tolerate, abide, brave, go through, undergo, suffer, submit to, swallow, Colloq put up with, brook, stomach, Brit stick: She took the news about Leon's relapse quite well. I have taken quite enough from you already. 7 assume, bear, undertake, adopt, arrogate; acknowledge, accept: Kevin took full responsibility for the mistake. 8 believe, think, judge, deem, hold, feel; take for, assess (as), consider (as), regard (as), view (as), accept (for): I take people to be honest till proven otherwise. She took him for a fool when they first met. 9 carry, convey, bear, transport, bring, deliver, ferry; haul, cart: Will this train take me to Aylesbury? They took the bicycle to Old Lyme in a van. 10 take up, study, be involved or occupied in or with, apply oneself to, learn; read, Colloq tackle: I cannot believe that Doreen is taking home economics. He took a course in car maintenance. 11 prove or be effective or efficacious or operative or functional, take effect, take hold, operate, function, work, perform, Colloq do the trick: If the transplant fails to take, the doctors will have to operate again. 12 exact, extract, get: She took revenge by denying him certain privileges. 13 swallow, eat, consume, ingest, devour, gulp down, gobble up or down, wolf, bolt; drink, imbibe, quaff; inhale: Rudolf takes pills of every conceivable colour. The doctor said I could take a wee nip now and then. Sonya stepped out to take a breath of fresh air. 14 subtract, deduct, remove, take away, take from, take off: Take three from five. Five, take away two, leaves three. It's cheaper when you've taken off the discount. 15 end, terminate, annihilate, wipe out; kill: The assault on Leningrad took tens of thousands of lives. The Lord giveth and the Lord taketh away. 16 require, demand, need, necessitate, call for: Remember, it takes two to tango. It took him two years to complete the fresco. It takes six to sail his yawl. 17 hold, contain, accommodate, accept, fit in: This storage bin cannot take anything else, it's completely full. 18 convey, lead, conduct; escort, convoy, guide, accompany: This road takes you directly to the yacht club. He asked to be taken to the manager's office. 19 understand, gather, interpret, perceive, apprehend, deduce, conclude, infer, judge, deem, assume, suppose, imagine, see: I take it from your expression that you've had bad news. 20 charm, captivate, capture, attract, lure, allure: There was something about him that took her fancy. 21 use, employ, make use of, establish, put in(to) place, adopt, put into effect, effect, apply; resort to, have recourse to, turn to: The police have taken measures to ensure that it doesn't happen again. 22 clear, get or go over or past or round or through: Browning's Delight took the last jump easily. He must have taken that corner at 90! 23 experience, entertain, feel: She seemed to take an instant dislike to me. 24 express, voice, raise, put forth: I hope you will not take objection or exception to what I am about to tell you. 25 cause or make or induce or drive or persuade (someone) to go or be:

What takes you to Málaga in August? 26 act, assume, play, perform: I'm taking the part of the wicked witch in the local pantomime. 27 bilk, cheat, swindle, defraud, Colloq con, Brit fiddle: When he examined his wallet he realized he'd been taken. 28 take aback. astound, astonish, surprise, startle, shock: She was really taken aback at the news. 29 take after. a resemble, look like, be the spitting image or the spit and image of, favour, remind one of, Colloq be a chip off the old block: He takes after his grandfather. b Sometimes, take off after. chase, follow, run after, pursue: When the man stole the newspaper and ran, the shopkeeper took after him at a gallop. 30 take back. retract, withdraw, recant, disavow, repudiate: He now wants to take back what he said about you. 31 take down. a note, make a note or memo or memorandum of, write down, record, put or set down, put in writing, document, transcribe, chronicle: Please take down what I am about to tell you. b debase, deflate, lower, diminish, belittle, depreciate, deprecate, humble, humiliate, shame, disparage, degrade, disgrace: She certainly took that pompous ass down a peg or two. 32 take in. a accommodate, receive, let in, quarter, board, lodge: When her children grew up and left home, she decided to take in lodgers. b deceive, fool, trick, impose upon, overcharge, cheat, mulct, defraud, cozen, bilk, dupe, gull, hoodwink, swindle, Colloq bamboozle, con, pull the wool over (someone's) eyes, Slang Brit do: He was really taken in by that time-share deal. c include, subsume, embrace, comprise, cover, encompass, contain: Our sales figures take in all of North America, not just Canada. 33 take it. a withstand or tolerate or survive punishment or abuse, survive: The Marines are extremely tough and can take it. b See 20, above. 34 take off. a remove, doff, strip or peel off, discard, divest (oneself) of: Take off your hat in the house. b satirize, lampoon, caricature, mock, parody, travesty, burlesque, mimic, imitate, Colloq spoof, Brit send up: It is not always easy to take off members of the Cabinet. c depart, leave, go (away), decamp; fly off, become airborne, lift off, blast off; Colloq skedaddle, make (oneself) scarce, Slang hit the road, scram, beat it, split: You'd better take off before they find you here. The plane is due to take off at 18.35. 35 take on. a hire, engage, employ, enrol, enlist, retain: We are so busy that we have taken on ten new people. b challenge, rival, face, contend against, oppose, match or pit (oneself) against, vie with, fight: Are you in any condition to take on the champion? c assume, accept, undertake, tackle: You might be taking on more than you bargained for. 36 take out. entertain, escort, invite out; court, woo: He took her out to dinner at a Chinese restaurant. 37 take over. assume or take or usurp or gain control or possession or command of: A huge conglomerate is trying to take over our company. 38 take to. a like, find pleasant or pleasing, feel affection or liking or affinity for, find suitable: We took to each other the very first time we met. He took to computers as a duck takes to water. b leave or depart or take off for, run for, head for, flee to, make for: When the attack came, the villagers took to the hills. 39 take up. a pick up, accept, agree to, acquiesce to, accede to: She took up his offer, and they've been married for forty years. b assume, resume, carry on, continue, go on with, follow on with, pick up: After a pause, he took up the thread of the story once more. c espouse, embrace, become interested or involved in, support, sponsor, advocate: She took up the cause of women's rights at her age? d occupy, cover, use (up), fill (up): Bernard's exercise equipment now takes up half the living-room. e deal with, treat, consider, bring up, raise: Next week our panellists will take up the question, 'Who benefits from education?'

--n. 40 revenue, takings, yield, return, receipts, proceeds, gain, profit(s); gate, box office: How much was the take from the first day?

taken adj. captivated, entranced, enchanted, charmed, bewitched, infatuated: I was so taken with Lucinda that I started blushing like a teenager.

take-off n. 1 flight, flying, taking off, departure, leaving, going; launch, lift-off: The take-off was delayed by bad weather. 2 satire, lampoon, caricature, mockery, parody, travesty, burlesque, imitation, Colloq spoof, Brit send-up: The annual students' entertainment was as usual a take-off of the teachers.

taking adj. attractive, alluring, engaging, captivating, winning, winsome, charming, entrancing, enchanting, bewitching, fetching, fascinating, delightful, irresistible, compelling, intriguing, prepossessing: Cassie's taking ways won her many friends.

tale n. 1 story, narrative, report, account, record, chronicle, history, narration, recital, anecdote: We were brought up on tales of the supernatural. Her tale of what happened does not agree with the facts. 2 falsehood, lie, fiction, fib, fabrication, untruth, falsification, exaggeration, Colloq tall tale or story, (cock-and-bull) story, US fish story: He told some tale about having been captured by urban guerrillas. 3 rumour, gossip, slander, allegation, tittle-tattle, libel, story, US chiefly naval scuttlebutt: I have been hearing tales about wild parties at the neighbours' again.

talebearer
n. gossip, rumour-monger, gossip-monger, taleteller, talemonger, scandalmonger, tell-tale, troublemaker, quidnunc, tattler, informer, sieve, Chiefly US and Canadian tattle-tale, Slang bigmouth, blabbermouth, squealer, stool-pigeon, stoolie, rat, Brit sneak, nark, US fink, ratfink: The words, spoken in private, were repeated to him by some talebearer.

talent n. 1 ability, power, gift, faculty, flair, genius, facility, aptitude, capacity, knack, ingenuity, forte, strength; endowment: Bill's extraordinary talent for playing the trombone was widely acclaimed. 2 tendency, proclivity, propensity, penchant, predilection, predisposition, bent, inclination: Annabel certainly has a talent for saying the wrong thing.

talented adj. gifted, accomplished, brilliant, skilled, skilful, masterful, expert, adept, adroit, dexterous, deft, clever, good, polished, proficient, first-rate, top-drawer, excellent, Colloq ace, crack, top-notch, Brit wizard, whizzo, US crackerjack: Leslie is the most talented player in the school hockey team.

talisman n. amulet, charm, tiki, fetish or fetich, ju-ju, periapt, abraxas; wishbone, rabbit's foot, Brit merry thought: He was given a talisman that was supposed to protect its wearer from bad luck.

talk v. 1 Sometimes, talk in. speak (in), use, communicate in, converse in, express (oneself) in, discourse in: If you talk English I might understand. 2 confer, consult, parley, have a (little) talk, (have a) chat, confabulate, Colloq confab, Slang US rap: I think we ought to talk before you decide which offer to accept. 3 chatter, prate, prattle, jabber, blather or blether, gibber, jibber-jabber, cackle, babble, patter, rattle on, go on, Brit natter, witter, rabbit on, Colloq gab, Slang gas, jaw , US run off at the mouth: They talk continuously, mostly about nothing. 4 chat, gossip, palaver, Slang chew the fat or the rag, shoot the breeze, US chin, schmooze, rap, have a bull session, bat the breeze, shoot the bull: We were just sitting around talking when Tom suggested we go for a swim. 5 inform, confess, give the game away, blab, Colloq come clean, Slang rat, squeal, sing, spill the beans, Brit grass: If they give him the third degree, you can be sure he'll talk. 6 speak, give or deliver a speech or a talk or an address, lecture: I believe that Professor Hale is talking at the County Library tonight. 7 talk about or over or of. discuss, confer about or on, parley about: I don't want to talk about football all the time. Can't we talk it over? She talks only of you. 8 talk big. boast, brag, vaunt, crow, bluster, exaggerate, blow or toot (one's) own horn: He was never in the war - he just talks big. 9 talk down. a depreciate, deprecate, denigrate, disparage, belittle, minimize, diminish, criticize, Colloq knock, pan, put down: It's the only thing he's ever done, and you shouldn't talk it down. b Usually, talk down to. condescend to, patronize: I resent your talking down to me in that way. 10 talk into. convince, bring round, sway, persuade: We have been trying to talk him into running in the marathon. 11 talk over. discuss: We talked over the best way to prepare the advertising proposal. 12 talk to or with. speak to or with, communicate with, converse with: Since the episode with the monkey, she refuses to talk to me. I talked with him yesterday. 13 talk up. promote, support, sponsor, advertise, publicize, push, Colloq plug, hype, ballyhoo: She has been talking up the book on her radio show.

--n. 14 oration, lecture, address, presentation, speech, discourse, report, disquisition, dissertation; sermon; harangue, tirade, Colloq spiel: Claire delivered a talk on computational linguistics. Every week we have to listen to the same talk about sin. 15 conversation, conference, discussion, meeting, consultation, dialogue, colloquy, parley, palaver, chat, tˆte-…-tˆte, confabulation, Colloq confab, powwow, Slang chin-wag, head-to-head, US one-on-one, rap session: We must have a little talk about your school report. 16 subject or topic of conversation or gossip or rumour: Her behaviour at the wedding was the talk of the town for weeks. 17 gossip, rumour, hearsay, information, news, report, Colloq info, Slang dope: There is some talk that you might be leaving. 18 palaver, gossip, claptrap, prattle, prattling, chatter, verbiage, cackle, bunk, nonsense, rubbish, balderdash, poppycock, hot air, stuff and nonsense, twaddle, Colloq malarkey, piffle, hooey, hokum, bunkum, bosh, hogwash, horse feathers, Slang bilge(-water), crap, bull, tripe, Brit tosh, balls, US apple-sauce, Taboo slang horseshit, bullshit: That's just a lot of talk. 19 dialect, speech, way or manner of speaking, fa‡on de parler, language, jargon, argot, cant, patois, accent, Colloq lingo: Can you understand musicians' talk? My parents' talk is peppered with words long obsolete in standard English.

talkative adj. garrulous, loquacious, verbose, long-winded, voluble, prolix, wordy, chatty, gossipy, effusive, talky, logorrhoeic or logorrhoeal, Colloq gabby, blabby, Slang big-mouthed; US running off at the mouth: The children are so talkative I can't get a word in edgeways.

talker n. 1 speaker, lecturer, orator, speech-maker, keynoter, spellbinder, tub-thumper, rabble-rouser, demagogue, haranguer, ranter: You might disagree with what he says, but you must admit he's a great talker. 2 blusterer, blatherskite, swaggerer, show-off, Slang windbag, gasbag, lot of hot air, blowhard: He is a big talker, but he never gets anything done.

tall adj. 1 high, towering, big, soaring, lofty, giant, gigantic; multi-storey: The giant sequoias of California are the tallest trees in the world. There are many tall buildings in most major cities. 2 lanky, gangling, rangy, leggy, long-legged, big, giant, huge, gigantic, large: Some of those basketball players are unbelievably tall. 3 exaggerated, overblown, far-fetched, improbable, unbelievable, incredible, preposterous, outrageous, overdone, absurd, Colloq Brit steep: He told us some amusing tall tales about his fishing adventures.

tally v. 1 agree, coincide, accord, correspond, fit, compare, match (up), square, conform, concur, harmonize, Colloq US jibe: Nothing I could do would make my figures tally with those of the bank. 2 Sometimes, tally up. count (up or out), enumerate, record, register, reckon, add (up), total (up), tabulate, itemize, list, calculate, compute: Please tally up what I owe you.

--n. 3 count, enumeration, record, register, reckoning, addition, total, tabulation, itemization, listing, calculation, computation: According to my tally, you owe œ156.72. 4 ticket, label, mark, marker, tag, tab: Each plant can be identified by its own tally. 5 counterfoil, stub, counterpart, duplicate, mate: If you lose your tally you cannot get back your luggage.

tame adj. 1 tamed, docile, disciplined, obedient, domesticated, house-broken, trained, broken: He used to keep a tame fox in his back garden. 2 mild, gentle, fearless, unafraid: It is amazing how tame animals can be when they do not perceive man as a threat. 3 tractable, pliant, compliant, meek, submissive, mild, under (someone's) control or thumb, subdued, suppressed; unassertive, feeble, ineffectual, timid, timorous, cowardly, pusillanimous, chicken-hearted, faint-hearted, white-livered, lily-livered, yellow, Colloq wimpish: Charles is far too tame to defy Kate. 4 boring, tedious, tiresome, dull, insipid, bland, lifeless, flat, vapid, prosaic, humdrum, bland, unexciting, uninspired, uninspiring, run-of-the-mill, ordinary, uninteresting, dead, Colloq wishy-washy: As a nightclub, the place is much too tame for my tastes.

--v. 5 break, domesticate, train, house-train, gentle, master, subdue, subjugate: The brown bear is a most difficult animal to tame. 6 calm, subdue, control, mollify, pacify, mute, temper, soften, curb, tone down, moderate, mitigate, tranquillize: After a week the Lord tamed the violent sea and our tiny craft was allowed to continue.

tamper v. interfere, meddle, intermeddle, intrude, tinker, mess (about or around), Colloq fiddle or fool (about or around), monkey (around), muck (about): Anyone caught tampering with the machinery will be prosecuted.

tang n. 1 pungency, piquancy, bite, zest, zestiness, sharpness, poignancy, spiciness, nip, edge, spice, taste, flavour, savour, aroma, smell, odour, Colloq zip, kick: Ginger root gives the dish just the right tang. 2 tinge, flavour, hint, suggestion, soup‡on, trace, dab, smack, touch, smattering: The new version has the tang of the original without its obsolete words. 3 prong, tab, projection, tongue, strip, tine, shank, pin, spike: The tang of a good knife goes right through to the end of the handle.

tangential

adj. divergent, digressive, off or beside(s) the point, peripheral, irrelevant, extraneous, unrelated: The matter of cost is tangential to the main issue.

tangible adj. material, real, physical, corporeal, bodily, somatic, solid, concrete, touchable, tactile, manifest, palpable, evident, actual, substantial, visible, seeable, discernible, perceptible, ponderable, objective, ostensive: Leaving aside intangibles like taste, smell, and colour, the important tangible characteristic of food is texture.

tangle n. 1 confusion, knot, gnarl, mesh, snarl, twist, kink, entanglement, jam, snag, jumble, mess, skein, web, coil: It took hours to straighten out the tangle of ribbons. 2 muddle, complication, jumble, puzzle, medley, complexity, complication, scramble, mishmash, mix-up, hotchpotch or US and Canadian also hodgepodge, jungle, maze, labyrinth: She was rather bewildered by the vast tangle of information on the subject.

--v. 3 Often, tangle up. confuse, knot, mesh, snarl, gnarl, twist, kink, ravel, entangle, jam, snag, intertwist, intertwine, interlace, interweave, jumble, mess up, scramble, shuffle, muddle: Now you've tangled all the ribbons I carefully straightened out earlier. 4 Often, tangle with. wrangle (with), contend (with), fight (with or against), (come into) conflict (with), come or go up against, lock horns (with), dispute, cross swords (with), disagree (with): The sheriff is the last person I want to tangle with.

tantalize v. tease, taunt, provoke, torment, torture, bait, tempt, plague, frustrate: They tantalized him by hanging the keys to his cell just outside his reach.

tantamount to

adj. amounting to, as good as, virtually the same as, (pretty) much the same as, equal to, equivalent to, like, of a piece with, comparable to, commensurate with: His response, for all its politeness, was tantamount to a rejection.

tantrum n. fit (of anger or of passion), outburst, eruption, blow-up, explosion, flare-up, storm, rage, fury, Colloq Brit paddy, wax: He has a tantrum every time he fails to get his own way.

tap° v. 1 rap, knock, dab, strike, peck; drum, beat: Must you continually tap on the table with that blasted pencil?!

--n. 2 rap, knock, dab, strike, peck, pat; tapping, tap-tap, rapping, knocking, pecking, beat, beating, patter, pattering: I felt a tap on my shoulder. The tap, tap, tap of the dripping water was driving me mad.

tapý n. 1 cock, stopcock, pet-cock, sillcock, seacock, spigot, spout, valve, US faucet: Replace the washer in the tap to stop the leak. 2 bung, stopper, cork, spile, plug, stopple, peg: Move the tap from the empty barrel to the new one. 3 wire-tap, bug, listening device, electronic eavesdropper: I think there's a tap on my phone. 4 on tap. a on draught, out of the barrel or keg: They have real ale on tap. b ready, available, on or at hand, waiting, in reserve, on call: He promised to be on tap if I needed him for anything.

--v. 5 drain, draw (off), siphon off or out, extract, withdraw: We tapped the wine directly from the casks. 6 open, drain, unplug, sap, bleed, milk, broach, mine, use, utilize, make use of, put to use, draw on or upon, turn to account: Whenever she needed money, she tapped her savings. 7 bug, eavesdrop on, wire-tap: M.I.5 still taps her phone.

tape n. 1 strip, band, fillet, stripe, strap, belt, ribbon: She wore a colourful woven tape round her head to hold her hair. 2 (tape) recording, reel, spool, cassette, video: He played us the tape of the whole interview.

--v. 3 strap, band, bind; seal, stick: If you tape the packet, customs cannot open it for inspection. 4 record; tape-record, video: Programmes can be taped automatically when we are out.

taper v. 1 narrow (down), thin, diminish, come or go down: Note how the trousers taper towards the ankles. 2 Often, taper off. diminish, reduce, thin out, wind down, decrease, fade, lessen, peter out, fall off, wane, subside, let up, slacken, die away or down or off or out, decline, slow (down or up), weaken, abate, ebb, slump, drop (off), fall (off), plummet: Sales of ice skates can be expected to taper off during the summer.

tardy adj. 1 late, unpunctual, behind schedule, overdue, behindhand: Yet again you have been somewhat tardy in completing your assignments. 2 slow, dilatory, belated, slack, retarded, sluggish, reluctant, indolent, lackadaisical, listless, phlegmatic, slothful, lethargic, languid: They have been tardy in acknowledging the importance of Allen's work.

target n. goal, object, objective, aim, end; butt, quarry: The target of the charity drive is to raise œ30,000. Why make Peter the target of your ridicule?

tariff n. 1 tax, assessment, duty, excise, levy, impost, toll, Brit rate: The tariff on imported clothing may be increased. 2 schedule (of charges), price-list; bill of fare, menu: I stopped by the hotel to ask about their tariff.

tarnish v. sully, disgrace, taint, blacken, blemish, stain, blot, soil, spot, dirty, contaminate, defame, injure, spoil, ruin, damage, harm, hurt, stigmatize, debase, degrade, denigrate, dishonour, asperse, calumniate: By his behaviour, he has tarnished the reputation of his entire family.

tarry v. 1 delay, pause, wait, linger, loiter, stall, procrastinate, dawdle, bide one's time, temporize, hang back, Colloq hang on or about or (a)round: They tarried in the pub, and missed their train. 2 remain, sojourn, stay, stop, rest, dwell, bide (one's) time, settle: She plans to tarry at Eastbourne for a while.

tart° adj. 1 sour, acidic, acidulous, acidulated, lemony, citrusy, vinegary, acetous, acescent; sharp, tangy, astringent, acerb, acerbic, acrid, bitter, pungent, piquant, harsh: Those grapes are a bit tart for my taste. 2 biting, bitter, caustic, acid, corrosive, mordant, astringent, acrimonious, trenchant, harsh, scathing, stinging, acerbic, incisive, cutting, keen,barbed, nasty, curmudgeonly, testy, crusty, abusive, virulent, sarcastic, sardonic, satiric(al), vicious, cynical: You can rely on Henry for a tart rebuff every time.

tartý n. 1 pie, tartlet, pastry, turnover, flan, quiche, patty, Brit pasty: Three guesses who stole the tarts from the Queen of Hearts. 2 strumpet, streetwalker, prostitute, whore, harlot, fallen woman, trollop, wanton, working girl, fille de joie, call-girl, loose woman, slut, drab, jade, demi-mondaine, courtesan, woman of ill repute, hussy, doxy, lady of the evening or the night, woman of easy virtue, Slang floozy, hooker, US chippy, roundheels, bimbo: The paper claimed that the minister was involved with a woman that it described as 'a tart'.

task   n. 1 duty, assignment, business, job, charge, stint, mission, work, chore, undertaking: It will be your task to keep the others working. 2 (major) effort, test (of strength), piece of work, struggle, strain: Getting him to do anything at all was quite a task. 3 take to task. scold, reprimand, call to account, blame, censure, recriminate, reproach, reprove, rebuke, criticize, lecture, upbraid, chide, reprehend: I was taken to task for failing to notify the police of the break-in.

taste   n. 1 drop, soup‡on, dash, pinch, touch, hint, suggestion, grain, trace, bit; flavour, savour, relish, tang: I added just the tiniest taste of coriander to the sauce. 2 sample, morsel, bite, mouthful, bite, sip, nip, swallow: I had a taste of the sauce and it's superb. 3 palate, desire, inclination, leaning, partiality, disposition, penchant, liking, fancy, preference, fondness, appetite, relish, stomach, tolerance: She developed a taste for caviare and champagne while working in television. 4 discernment, discrimination, perception, judgement, cultivation, refinement, stylishness, grace, polish, elegance: Her unerring taste leads her to select only the best. 5 style, mode, fashion, manner, form, design, motif: The room was decorated in Moorish taste. 6 decorum, discretion, tactfulness, delicacy, refinement, politesse, politeness, correctness, propriety, tastefulness: Evan's taste would never allow him to say anything rude.

--v. 7 savour, sample, examine, try, test: Taste this and see if it's too salty. 8 experience, sample, know, have knowledge of, undergo, encounter, meet (with), come up against: As a young man he had tasted the pleasures of Paris.

tasteful adj. in good taste, decorous, refined, finished, tactful, polite, polished, restrained, correct, harmonious, fitting, fit, proper, discriminating, aesthetic, discriminative, fastidious, cultivated, comme il faut, elegant, graceful, charming: Though a bit shabby, her clothes were demure and tasteful.

tasteless adj. 1 in bad or poor taste, garish, gaudy, loud, tawdry, meretricious, cheap, flashy, unrefined, inelegant, unaesthetic; improper, wrong, indecorous, indelicate, uncultivated, uncouth, uncultured, gauche, boorish, maladroit, distasteful, unsavoury, coarse, crude, gross, vulgar, base, low: That is the most tasteless dress I have ever seen. He made a tasteless remark about her table manners. 2 insipid, bland, dull, flat, watery, vapid, flavourless, unsavoury, Colloq wishy-washy: The tea served there is completely tasteless.

tasty adj. delicious, delectable, luscious, flavorous, flavoursome, flavourful, savoury, toothsome, palatable, appetizing, sapid, mouth-watering, ambrosial, Colloq yummy, scrumptious: They serve a very tasty curry at that Indian restaurant.

tatter n. 1 Often, tatters. scrap(s), rag(s), shred(s), bit(s), piece(s): Tatters from the culprit's clothing were found on a thorn-bush. 2 in tatters. in ruins, in shreds, destroyed, ruined, shattered, in disarray, demolished: My life has been in tatters ever since she left me.

tattered adj. ragged, torn, shredded, rent, threadbare: Above the altar in the chapel hang the tattered standards of the regiment, dating from the Crimean War.

tattle v. 1 blab, tell, reveal or divulge, give away secrets, Slang squeal: Though sworn to silence, Davis tattled. 2 gossip, prattle, prate, babble, chatter, jabber, blather or blether, Brit natter, witter, Slang yack: The old crones were tattling away in the kitchen.

taunt v. 1 tease, jeer (at), flout, twit, mock, torment, annoy, make fun or sport of, poke fun at, deride, sneer (at), scoff (at), insult, ridicule, burlesque, lampoon, US ride, Colloq kid, rib, roast, put down, Brit guy, Slang bug, rag, hassle, US get on (someone's) case: The boys used to taunt him, calling him 'Shrimpo' because he was so short.

--n. 2 jeer, gibe, brickbat, insult, scoff, derision, sneer, slap (in the face), raspberry, Colloq dig, US Bronx cheer: At 17, he was six feet tall and no longer had to tolerate his classmates' taunts.

taut adj. 1 tight, tense, strained, stretched, rigid, stiff: When his jaw goes taut like that I know he's angry. 2 Nautical neat, tidy, Bristol fashion, shipshape, spruce, (in) trim, smart, orderly, well-organized; well-disciplined: Captain Scriven runs a taut ship, no doubt about it.

tautology n. repetition, redundancy, battology, pleonasm, iteration, tautologism; repetitiousness, repetitiveness, wordiness, prolixity, verbiage, verbosity, long-windedness: Clich‚s like 'null and void' and 'cease and desist' are tautologies. Tautology, when called 'repetition', is often used for rhetorical effect.

tawdry adj. gaudy, cheap, flashy, brummagem, showy, meretricious, garish, loud, tatty, tinsel, tinselly, plastic, tinny, shabby, US tacky, Colloq cheapjack: She was wearing a tawdry outfit picked up at a church jumble sale.

tax n. 1 levy, impost, duty, tariff, assessment, tribute, toll, excise, customs, charge, contribution, Archaic scot, tithe, Brit octroi, cess, rate(s), dues: Most people try to pay the lowest taxes they can get away with. 2 onus, burden, weight, load, encumbrance, strain, pressure: The admission of fifty new children put a heavy tax on the school's resources.

--v. 3 assess, exact, demand, charge, impose or levy a tax (on), Archaic tithe: If the government doesn't tax citizens, where will the money come from? 4 burden, strain, put a strain on, try; load, overload, stretch, exhaust; encumber, weigh down, saddle, Brit pressurize, US pressure: This misbehaviour is really taxing my patience. Our meagre resources were taxed to the limit. Mother was taxed with the responsibility of caring for us.

taxi n. 1 taxi-cub, cab, hackney, Colloq hack: Please hurry, as I have a taxi waiting.

--v. 2 drive, ride (on the ground): After landing, the plane taxied to the gate.

20.2 teach...

=-

teach v. instruct (in), inform (about), communicate (to), educate, guide, train, tutor, coach, enlighten, edify, indoctrinate, inculcate, instil, school in, demonstrate, show, familiarize or acquaint with, give lessons (in) (to); drill, discipline: She is qualified to teach chemistry. Captain Ross taught many youngsters to sail. She wants to teach when she completes her training.

teacher n. schoolteacher, educator, instructor, professor, doctor, tutor, fellow, lecturer, master, mistress, schoolmaster, schoolmistress, coach, trainer, guide, mentor, guru, cicerone, counsellor, advisor; educationist; Brit don, Scots dominie, US docent, Colloq schoolma'm: One can be counted extremely lucky to have inspiring teachers.

team n. 1 side, line-up, group, band, gang, body, crew, party, troupe: Which team does Lineker play for? 2 pair, yoke, span, duo, set, rig, tandem: They hitched a fresh team of horses to the coach and we were soon back on the road.

--v. 3 Often, team up. join (up or together), band or get or work together, unite, combine, link (up), cooperate, collaborate; conspire: If we team up, we'll get the job done better and in half the time.

tear v. 1 rip, rend, rive, rupture, pull apart, shred, mutilate, mangle, claw, split, divide, separate, sever: The tiger is tearing its quarry to shreds. He tore the contract in half and stormed out. 2 pull, snatch, wrench: The force of the blast tore the attach, case from my grasp. The child was torn from her mother's arms by the soldier. 3 dash, fly, run, gallop, race, sprint, rush, scoot, shoot, sprint, speed, bolt, dart, flit, scurry, scuttle, career, zoom, hurry, hasten, Colloq zip: He is tearing around trying to find the money to cover his loan.

--n. 4 rip, rent, rupture, hole, split, slash, gore, cut, score, slit, gash, fissure, rift, laceration: Nobody will see the tear in your trousers if you remain seated.

tearful adj. weeping, crying, in tears, sobbing, whimpering, dewy-eyed, blubbering, snivelling, lachrymose, Colloq weepy: She was tearful as she told him they could not meet again.

tease v. 1 bait, taunt, torment, harass, bedevil, bother, nettle, plague, chaff, pester, annoy, irritate, needle, goad, badger, provoke, vex, twit, tantalize, frustrate, Non-Standard aggravate, Colloq guy, pick on, rib, drive mad or crazy, drive up the wall, Brit take the mickey out of, Slang rag: Stop teasing the animals! Frances would tease me by agreeing to go out and then begging off with a headache. 2 coax, worry, winkle, work, manipulate: He was finally able to tease the broken piece of key out of the lock.

technical adj. 1 complex, complicated, detailed, intricate, specialized: This is a technical matter, not easily understood by the layman. 2 mechanical, applied, industrial, polytechnic, technologic(al): We thought he would be happier attending a technical school.

technique n. 1 technic, method, approach, manner, mode, fashion, style, procedure, system, tack, line, modus operandi, standard operating procedure, Colloq MO (= 'modus operandi'), SOP (= 'standard operating procedure'): After many years, he has developed his own technique for building hot-air balloons. 2 technic, art, craftsmanship, artistry, craft, knack, touch, skill, skilfulness, adroitness, adeptness, dexterousness, facility, competence, faculty, ability, aptitude, performance, proficiency, talent, gift, genius, know-how, knowledge, expertise: Jason's technique remains unsurpassed.

tedious adj. over-long, long-drawn-out, prolonged, endless, unending, monotonous, unchanging, changeless, unvarying, laborious, long-winded, wearing, wearying, wearisome, tiring, exhausting, fatiguing, tiresome, boring, dreary, dull, dry-as-dust, drab, colourless, vapid, insipid, flat, uninteresting, banal, unexciting, prosaic, prosy, soporific, humdrum, routine, repetitious, repetitive, mechanical, automaton-like, automatic, Colloq ho-hum, Slang dead, US blah: For almost fifty years my father had a tedious job on an assembly line.

tedium n. tediousness, monotony, changelessness, invariability, long-windedness, wearisomeness, tiresomeness, boredom, ennui, dreariness, dullness, drabness, colourlessness, vapidity, insipidity, insipidness, two-dimensionality, banality, routine, repetitiousness: How do you survive the tedium of getting up and going to an office every day?

teem° v. Usually teem with. proliferate (with), be prolific (with), abound, be abundant, swarm (with), be alive (with), crawl (with), bristle (with), overflow (with), overrun (with), be full (of), brim (with): When the panel was removed, the entire foundation was seen to be teeming with termites.

teemý v. pour, rain, stream (down), Colloq come down (in buckets), bucket down, rain or pour cats and dogs: It teemed with rain continuously when we were on holiday.

teenager n. adolescent, youth, boy, girl, young man, young lady, juvenile, minor, Colloq kid: The town ought to provide a place where teenagers can get together.

teeter v. balance, wobble, rock, sway, totter, waver, tremble, stagger: She screamed when she saw Bruce teetering on the edge of the precipice.

telegram n. cable, cablegram, radiogram, radio-telegram, wire, telex, (In France) bleu, pneu, Brit trade mark Telemessage, US trade mark Mailgram: She received a telegram from him, saying that he would be arriving on Monday.

telephone n. 1 handset, phone, Colloq blower, Chiefly US horn: Mr Fraser, the Managing Director is on the telephone for you.

--v. 2 phone, ring (up), call (up), give (someone) a ring or a call, Colloq get (someone) on the blower or chiefly US the horn, give (someone) a tinkle or a buzz, buzz: Telephone when you have a chance.

telescope n. 1 spyglass, Old-fashioned glass; refracting telescope, reflecting telescope, radio telescope: Through the telescope, he could just discern the American coastline.

--v. 2 shorten, compress, abbreviate, curtail, condense, summarize, pr‚cis, digest, tighten (up), boil down, abridge, truncate, abstract: Telescope the report into two columns for page 2. 3 concertina, squash, crush: The first three carriages of the train were telescoped in the crash.

television
n. TV, video (receiver), small screen, Colloq box, idiot box,

Brit telly, US boob tube, Slang tube, Brit goggle-box: My television was not working over the weekend.

tell° v. 1 relate, narrate, recount, recite: Tell me a story. 2 Sometimes, tell of. say, mention, hint at, refer to, touch on, utter, state, declare, proclaim, announce, publish, broadcast, communicate, make known, report, impart, indicate, release, break, let (something) be known, advertise, trumpet, herald, bring to light, disclose, divulge, intimate, leak, admit, betray, acknowledge, confess, disbosom oneself, get (something) off (one's) chest, unburden or disburden (oneself), blab, tattle, Colloq talk, let the cat out of the bag, spill the beans, let out, let slip, blow the whistle on, give away the (whole) show, US pull the plug on, Slang squeal, squeak, rat, peach, US spill (one's) guts: She told of her fears. He refuses to tell where the money is hidden. She talked a lot but told very little. 3 apprise, advise, inform, let (someone) know, notify, acquaint (someone) with (something): He has told me everything. Tell them that I shall be late. He told them nothing of his illness. 4 recount, describe, delineate, outline, portray, depict, express, put, word, explain: I am not sure how to tell you this. 5 order, command, require, demand (that), charge, direct, dictate (that), instruct, bid: Tell them I want no visitors today. She told him to go. 6 carry weight, be influential, be effective, have (an) effect: What we accomplished here today is bound to tell in our favour. 7 determine, say, confirm, aver, assert, asseverate, swear, take an oath, be sure or certain or positive, know (for sure or for certain): It just shows you never can tell. 8 ascertain, determine, perceive, understand, make out, discern, identify, recognize, distinguish, discriminate, differentiate: I cannot tell if that is George or not. I can't tell George from John in this photograph. 9 predict, prophesy, forecast, foretell, foresee, forecast, determine, ascertain, know: Who can tell what tomorrow will bring? 10 tell off. scold, reprimand, berate, chide, castigate, censure, take to task, rebuke, lecture, reproach, reprove, Colloq give (someone) a tongue-lashing, rake or haul (someone) over the coals, give (someone) a piece of (one's) mind, tick off, Slang tear a strip off, US chew out: He was told off for being late for dinner again. 11 tell on. tattle on, blab about, Brit grass on: Charlotte never forgave Tim for telling on her to Aunt Jane.

tellý n. tumulus, mound, barrow, hillock: Excavation of the tell exposed ancient skeletons.

telling adj. 1 effective, effectual, influential, weighty, important, powerful, forceful, potent, significant, considerable, striking: The new colour scheme in the office has had a telling effect on morale.

--n. 2 tattling, (too) revealing, Colloq letting the cat out of the bag, giving away the whole show: I cannot say why her key was found in his pocket - that would be telling.

temper n. 1 mood, disposition, temperament, humour, state or frame of mind, character, personality, nature, make-up, constitution: Practising law did not suit his temper, so he became a social worker. 2 composure, self-control, self-possession, calmness, equanimity, balance, sang-froid, coolness, Colloq cool: He would lose his temper if she ever mentioned another man. 3 ill humour, ill temper, foul temper, irascibility, irritability, petulance, volatility, peevishness, huffishness, surliness, churlishness, hotheadedness, hot-bloodedness: At the first sign of temper, just ignore him. 4 (temper) tantrum, fury, fit (of pique), rage, passion, Colloq Brit wax, paddy: She went off into a temper at the mere mention of his name.

--v. 5 modify, moderate, assuage, mollify, soften, cushion, tone down, allay, soothe, mitigate, palliate, reduce, relax, slacken, lighten, appease: The cold currents from the poles are tempered by the equatorial waters. She used all her wiles to temper his fury. 6 anneal, toughen, strengthen, harden: Plunge the heated blade into water to temper it.

temperamental

adj. 1 moody, sensitive, touchy, hypersensitive, volatile, irascible, irritable, petulant, testy, short-tempered, hot-tempered, hotheaded, hot-blooded, excitable, explosive, on a short fuse or US fuze, capricious, impatient, bad-humoured, curt, brusque, short, gruff, bluff, curmudgeonly, waspish, snappish, peevish, crabby, crabbed, grumpy, huffish, huffy, crotchety, US cranky, Colloq grouchy: He's not usually temperamental - must be something he ate. 2 erratic, uneven, unreliable, inconsistent, undependable, unpredictable: That car of mine is getting temperamental in its old age.

temperance
n. 1 (self-)restraint, moderation, (self-)control, forbearance, (self-)discipline, continence: Temperance is one of the four cardinal virtues, alongside justice, prudence, and fortitude. 2 abstemiousness, teetotalism, abstinence, sobriety, Rechabitism; prohibition: We have always preached temperance to our children.

temperate adj. 1 moderate, reasonable, (self-)restrained, disciplined, controlled, forbearing, reasonable, sensible, sane, rational, not excessive, composed, steady, stable, even-tempered, equable, sober, sober-sided, sober-minded, mild, dispassionate, unimpassioned, cool, cool-headed, unexcited, calm, unruffled, tranquil, imperturbable, unperturbed, self-possessed, quiet, serene: Even the most temperate of women would lose her cool when dealing with a man like that. 2 abstemious, teetotal, abstinent, continent, moderate, sober; chaste, celibate, austere, ascetic, self-denying, puritanical: Those who lead temperate lives seem to live no longer than those who yield to dissipation.

tempest n. 1 storm, wind-storm, hailstorm, rainstorm, hurricane, typhoon, tornado, cyclone, squall, thunderstorm: The Red Spot on Jupiter is the centre of a perpetual, violent tempest. 2 storm, commotion, disturbance, upheaval, disruption, furore or US furor, turbulence, ferment, tumult, agitation, perturbation, hurly-burly, disorder, outbreak, unrest, riot, chaos, uproar, brouhaha, Colloq hoo-ha: After the tempest of protest died down, a vote was taken and saner heads prevailed.

tempestuous
adj. stormy, wild, uncontrolled, uncontrollable, disrupting, disruptive, turbulent, tumultuous, riotous, chaotic, uproarious, boisterous, frantic, frenzied, frenetic, furious, wrathful, vehement, fiery, impassioned, fierce: They had a tempestuous relationship, and did not live together for very long.

template n. templet, pattern, mould, guide, model, die: The work on the lathe is matched to the template.

temple n. place or house of worship, holy place, house of God, church, synagogue, mosque, pagoda, cathedral, sanctuary, chapel, shrine, Yiddish shul or schul: Temples to gods are found throughout the world.

tempo n. cadence, rhythm, beat, time, pulse, metre, measure; pace, speed, rate: The melody should be played in waltz tempo. Living in the country, Tom is unaccustomed to the tempo of big-city life.

temporal adj. 1 earthly, terrestrial, terrene, mundane, worldly, non-spiritual, non-clerical, lay, laic(al), secular, non-religious, non-ecclesiastic(al), material, civil, profane, fleshly, mortal: He believed that his temporal miseries would be compensated for by an eternity in the seventh heaven. 2 See temporary, below.

temporarily

adv. 1 for the time being, in the interim, pro tem, in or for the meantime or the meanwhile, for now: Mr Peters is temporarily out of the office, and will contact you on his return. 2 briefly, fleetingly, for a (short or little) while or time, for the moment: Your size is temporarily out of stock, madam.

temporary adj. impermanent, makeshift, stopgap, stand-by, provisional; pro tem, transitory, transient, fleeting, fugitive, passing, ephemeral, temporal, evanescent, short-lived, momentary: I suppose it will have to do as a temporary substitute.

tempt v. 1 attract, entice, lure, allure, draw (in), invite, lead on, whet (one's) appetite, seduce, captivate, persuade, coax, cajole: They had a special offer to tempt new customers. 2 lead, induce, persuade, prompt, move, incline, dispose: I would be tempted to resign if they treated me that way. 3 provoke, dare, (put to the) test: I shouldn't tempt Providence if I were you.

temptation

n. 1 tempting, enticing, leading on, seducing, captivating, persuading, coaxing, cajoling: The temptation by advertisers never stops, does it? 2 enticement, seduction, captivation, persuasion, allurement, invitation, attraction, draw, lure, inducement, snare, Colloq pull, come-on: I could never resist a temptation like that.

tempting adj. 1 seductive, enticing, inviting, alluring, captivating, attractive, tantalizing, appealing, irresistible, titillating; fetching, winsome, prepossessing, ravishing, voluptuous, sensuous, Colloq sexy, US foxy: They made her a very tempting offer which she found hard to refuse. He was continually distracted by thoughts of tempting young girls. 2 appetizing, mouth-watering, delicious, savoury, delectable, succulent, luscious, toothsome: Why does food always look most tempting when I am on a diet?

temptress n. seductress, vamp, siren, femme fatale, coquette, flirt, enchantress, sorceress, Circe, Slang sexpot, man-eater, US foxy lady, fox, mantrap: You warned me against that temptress because you wanted her for yourself.

tenable adj. defensible, supportable, justifiable, maintainable, workable, viable, defendable, plausible, reasonable, rational, arguable, believable, credible, creditable, imaginable, conceivable, possible: Copernicus showed that Ptolemaic cosmology was no longer tenable.

tenacious adj. 1 persistent, dogged, unfaltering, pertinacious, unswerving, determined, diligent, resolute, staunch, stalwart, steadfast, strong, sturdy, unwavering, strong-willed, strong-minded, unshaken, unshakeable or unshakable, obstinate, intransigent, stubborn, adamant, obdurate, refractory, immovable, inflexible, rigid, firm, unyielding, uncompromising: Despite his age, Christopher maintains a tenacious grip on reality. 2 cohesive, strong, tough; adhesive, sticky, clinging; gummy, gluey, mucilaginous, glutinous, viscous, viscid: The bricks are then smeared over with a tenacious mud, which dries hard. 3 Often, tenacious of. clinging (to), grasping, maintaining, keeping (up), staying with, retentive (of), persisting or persistent (in), retaining: She is tenacious of the old ways of doing things. 4 retentive, good: Aunt Agatha has a very tenacious memory.

tenacity n. 1 tenaciousness, persistence, doggedness, perseverance, pertinacity, determination, grit, diligence, resoluteness, resolution, purposefulness, resolve, staunchness, steadfastness, stamina, assiduity, sedulousness, strength, strong-mindedness, unshakeability or unshakability, obstinacy, intransigence,

stubbornness, obduracy, inflexibility, rigidity, firmness, uncompromisingness, Colloq US sand, stick-to-it-iveness: He persisted with the tenacity of the English bulldog. 2 tenaciousness, cohesiveness, strength, power, toughness, resilience; adhesiveness, stickiness, gumminess, glueyness, mucilaginousness, glutinousness, viscousness, viscidity, US cling: The texture of the surfaces affects the tenacity of the bonding cement.

tenancy n. occupancy, occupation, possession, tenure: Our tenancy of the house expires next month. The tenancy of this position is a year.

tenant n. occupant, lessee, renter, leaseholder, occupier, resident, inhabitant: We could not redecorate the premises while the tenants were there.

tend° v. be inclined or disposed, be liable or apt or likely, incline, lean, have or show or exhibit or demonstrate a tendency, favour, verge, gravitate, be biased; be prone: The judge might tend towards leniency in your case. I tend to agree. Tree growth here tends towards the horizontal.

tendý v. care for, take care of, look after, look out for, watch over, see to, keep an eye on, attend (to), wait on, cater to, minister to, serve, nurse, nurture: Marie tended her father lovingly throughout his long illness.

tendency n. inclination, bent, leaning, disposition, propensity, predisposition, proclivity, predilection, susceptibility, proneness, readiness, partiality, affinity, bias, drift, direction, trend, movement: Brian has always had a tendency to being overweight. The particles exhibit a tendency to align themselves north and south.

tender° adj. 1 sensitive, delicate, fragile, frail, infirm, unstable, shaky, weak, feeble, unwell, sickly, ailing, unsound: His condition is still a bit too tender for him to go outside. 2 chewable, edible, eatable, soft: The steak will become more tender if it is marinated. 3 young, youthful, immature, juvenile, inexperienced, impressionable, vulnerable, green, new, raw, undeveloped, untrained, uninitiated, callow: At his tender age he could not have known about such things. 4 sensitive, touchy, ticklish, dangerous, troublesome, provocative, difficult, tricky: Please avoid mentioning the wedding, it's a tender subject around here. 5 gentle, soft, delicate, light, sensitive, soothing: Oh, how he yearned for her tender touch at his fevered brow. 6 kind, kind-hearted, loving, affectionate, fond, gentle, mild, compassionate, considerate, humane, benevolent, sympathetic, feeling, thoughtful, soft-hearted, warm, caring, merciful, solicitous, tender-hearted, warm-hearted, good-natured: Wounded and helpless, he succumbed to the tender care of the nurses. 7 touching, emotional, moving, stirring, soul-stirring, heart-rending, heartfelt, passionate, impassioned, impassionate, poignant, sentimental, mawkish, maudlin: Who could forget the tender scene as Cedric bade farewell to his mother and went off to war? 8 sore, raw, painful, sensitive, inflamed; smarting, burning, hurting, aching, agonizing: This spot, right here, is so tender that it hurts just to think about it. 9 loving, affectionate, amatory, amorous, adoring, romantic: They exchanged tender, knowing looks.

tenderý v. 1 offer, proffer, present, propose, put forward, extend, hold out, submit, advance, put up, set before: Donald tendered his resignation yesterday. She has tendered the committee an excellent proposal.

--n. 2 offer, bid, presentation, proposal, proposition: The city is accepting tenders for the construction of a new bridge. 3 currency, money, specie, (bank) notes, cash, bills; payment, compensation: Pound notes are no longer legal tender in England and Wales.

tender° n. 1 dinghy, gig, skiff, launch, boat, row-boat or rowing-boat, jolly-boat: The yacht moved easily through the water towing a tender. 2 wagon, truck, vehicle: The tender of Felix's toy train was filled with sweets for his birthday.

tenet n. belief, credo, creed, article of faith, ideology, precept, conviction, principle, dogma, idea, opinion, position, view, viewpoint, maxim, axiom, canon, teaching, doctrine: They accept the Golden Rule as a fundamental tenet of their organization.

tenor n. drift, tone, spirit, essence, character, gist, bias, import, substance, effect, significance, meaning, sense, connotation, theme, thread, implication, inference, intent, purpose, tendency, purport, direction: The general tenor of Mark's letters was unfriendly.

tense   adj. 1 taut, strained, stiff, under tension, rigid: One could see how tense the muscles were under the skin. 2 intense, nervous, anxious, under (a) strain, highly-strung, high-strung, strained, on edge, wrought up, keyed up, worked up, taut, on tenterhooks, apprehensive, distressed, upset, disturbed, worried, edgy, on pins and needles, jumpy, fidgety, overwrought, Colloq wound up, jittery, having a case of the jitters, Brit strung up, US strung out, Slang uptight, US antsy: Try to relax and not be so tense. 3 nervous, anxious, worrying, worrisome, distressing, disturbing, stressful, nerve-racking or nerve-wracking, fraught, disquieting: Those were tense moments while we waited for the winner's name to be posted.

--v. 4 tighten, stretch, strain, tauten, tension: The mast will be secure once the stays have been tensed.

tension   n. 1 stress, tightness, tautness, strain, pull, traction, pressure, tenseness, force: Can this cable withstand so much tension? 2 nervousness, anxiety, anxiousness, strain, edginess, apprehension, suspense, tautness, distress, upset, worry, jumpiness, fidgetiness, Colloq jitteriness, (a case of) the jitters: I could feel the tension building among the audience.

tentative adj. 1 experimental, speculative, exploratory, probative, trial, provisional: We have tentative plans for introducing a new work methodology. 2 unsure, hesitant, uncertain, indecisive, cautious, timid, shy, diffident, uneasy, apprehensive: The child gave him a tentative smile, not knowing what to expect.

tenuous   adj. 1 thin, slender, thin, fine, attenuated, delicate, gossamer, diaphanous, fragile: The spider descended slowly on its tenuous thread. 2 flimsy, insubstantial or unsubstantial, paltry, weak, feeble, frail, meagre, vague, negligible, insignificant, trifling, sketchy, hazy, nebulous, dubious, doubtful, shaky: Your case rests on very tenuous evidence.

tenure   n. 1 possession, holding, occupancy, incumbency, tenantry, tenancy, occupation, residency, residence: The laws on tenure are extremely complicated. 2 (job) security, permanence, permanency: After five years he was automatically guaranteed tenure.

tepid adj. 1 lukewarm, warmish: The gelatine should be tepid before refrigerating it. 2 lukewarm, unenthusiastic, cool, indifferent, apathetic, uninterested, unconcerned, nonchalant, uncaring, neutral, blas,: How can he remain tepid on an issue like apartheid?

term n. 1 name, title, designation, appellation; word, expression, locution, phrase: The term for that is venturi tube. Habeas corpus is a term of art in law. 2 semester; time, period (of time), interval, length of time, span (of time), duration, spell, stretch, while: During the summer term we played cricket every Saturday. He was sentenced to a long term of imprisonment. 3 sitting, stint, session, course; incumbency, administration: During their latest term of office, interest rates were raised twice. 4 Often, terms. condition(s), provision(s), article(s), clause(s), proviso(s); stipulation(s), qualification(s), assumption(s): According to the terms of the will, proceeds from the patent go into a trust fund. 5 come to terms. agree, come to or reach an agreement or an arrangement or an understanding, reconcile, arrange, settle, compromise: Can we come to terms on the price? He will simply have to come to terms with his conscience. 6 in terms of. concerning, regarding, as regards, with regard to, in relation to, relative to, relating to, in the matter of: The psychiatrist offered little in terms of direct solutions to my problems. 7 terms. a payment, schedule, rates: What terms have they offered to settle the debt? b standing, position, basis, relationship, relations, footing: I always thought you two were on good terms.

--v. 8 call, name, label, designate, denominate, entitle, title, style, dub; nickname: Abraham Lincoln was termed, among other things, 'The Great Emancipator'.

terminal adj. 1 closing, concluding, terminating, ending, final, ultimate, extreme; maximum, greatest: Spencer wrote that the human being is at once the terminal problem of biology and the initial factor of sociology. 2 deadly, mortal, fatal, lethal, incurable: The cancer was diagnosed as terminal.

--n. 3 terminus, (terminal) station, end of the line, depot: We arrived at the air terminal with five minutes to catch our plane. 4 keyboard, monitor, position, station, VDU (= 'visual display unit'), PC (= 'personal computer'), module, CRT (= 'cathode ray tube'), screen, (control) panel: The computer system supported a terminal for each member of the team. 5 connection, wire, connector, coupler, coupling, conductor: Do I attach the red cable to the positive or the negative terminal?

terminate v. stop, end, come to an end, finish; put an end to, cease, conclude, discontinue, drop, abort, bring to an end or a close, wind up or down, sign off, cut off: The railway line once terminated at the port. They said they wanted to terminate the contract.

termination

n. 1 end, ending, stop, stopping, stoppage, ceasing, cessation, discontinuation, abortion, Colloq wind-up, winding up, close, finish, finishing, conclusion: The rights revert to us at the termination of the agreement. Because of her condition, termination of the pregnancy was recommended. 2 suffix, desinence, ending: The English termination -ly usually denotes an adverb but is occasionally adjectival, as in sickly .

terminology

n. nomenclature, vocabulary, language, words, locutions, wording, terms, phraseology, phrasing, jargon, shop-talk, argot, cant, Colloq lingo: Medical terminology requires specialized dictionaries.

terrain n. topography, landscape, ground, territory: These vehicles are specially designed for rough terrain.

terrestrial

adj. 1 earthly, earthbound, worldly, terrene, tellurian or telluric, global, sublunary, subastral; mundane: He insists that we tackle our terrestrial problems before spending a fortune on space travel.

--n. 2 earth-man, earth-woman, earth-person, earthling, mortal, human: My experiences are beyond the imaginations of you mere terrestrials.

terrible adj. 1 bad, serious, grave, severe, acute, distressing, disagreeable, nasty, foul, unbearable, dreadful, loathsome, hideous, vile, intolerable, awful, Colloq rotten, lousy, beastly: I've had a terrible virus. 2 bad, remorseful, regretful, rueful, sorry, contrite, ashamed, conscience-stricken, guilty, distressed, dreadful, awful, Colloq rotten, lousy, beastly: I felt terrible having to tell the neighbours about their cat. 3 unhappy, unpleasant, disagreeable, awful, miserable, joyless, wretched, unfortunate, Colloq rotten, lousy, beastly: We spent an absolutely terrible evening at the theatre. 4 gruesome, grisly, macabre, gory, grotesque, brutal, savage, horrible, horrendous, terrifying, terrific, harrowing, horrid, horrifying, ghastly, frightening, frightful, unspeakable, monstrous, dread, terrible, appalling, shocking, alarming, awful, foul: The casualties that were arriving had the most terrible wounds. 5 disgusting, revolting, nauseating, nauseous, offensive, vomit-provoking, obnoxious, stomach-turning, stomach-churning, abominable, mephitic, noisome, noxious, loathsome, horrible, hideous, terrific, awful, evil, vile, rotten, awful: The compost heap was giving off the most terrible stench. 6 terrifying, frightening, frightful, fearsome, formidable, redoubtable, awesome, awe-inspiring, terrific: The animal gave a terrible roar and charged into the clearing.

terribly adv. very, extremely, exceedingly, thoroughly, decidedly, unbelievably, incredibly, monumentally, outrageously, awfully, fabulously, Colloq frightfully: They were terribly apologetic about being late. I missed him terribly when he left.

terrific adj. 1 See terrible, 4, 5, 6, above. 2 wonderful, marvellous, splendid, breathtaking, extraordinary, outstanding, magnificent, exceptional, unbelievable, incredible, mind-boggling, stupendous, superb, excellent, first-class, superior, Colloq great, ace, fantastic, fabulous, sensational, smashing, super: They really put on a terrific show.

terrify v. alarm, frighten, scare, terrorize, shock, make one's flesh crawl or creep, horrify, make one's blood run cold, make one's hair stand on end, stun, paralyse, petrify: Are you trying to terrify the child with those horror stories?

terrifying

adj. alarming, frightening, scary, shocking, horrifying, paralysing, petrifying: Being chased by a bull is a terrifying experience.

territory n. 1 area, region, district, neighbourhood, zone, sector, tract, land, precinct, quarter, vicinage, vicinity, purlieu: Each one of these animals stakes out its own territory and protects it. 2 area, bailiwick, domain, province, haunts, patch, Colloq stamping-ground, US turf: Richard would be best advised to stick to his own territory.

terror n. 1 fright, dread, fear, horror, panic, shock, alarm, anxiety, dismay, consternation, intimidation, awe: They felt a sense of terror when they caught sight of the enemy forces. 2 scourge, demon, brute, monster, fiend, devil, US mad dog: The gang of teenagers was the terror of the neighbourhood. Her daughter is a little terror.

terrorist n. subversive, radical, insurgent, revolutionary, anarchist, nihilist; bomber, arsonist, incendiary; desperado, gunman, thug, felon, criminal: The shooting was carried out by a previously unknown gang of terrorists.

terse adj. 1 concise, brief, short, compact, pithy, succinct, summary, laconic, short and sweet, to the point, sententious, crisp, epigrammatic, aphoristic; distilled, condensed, compendious, abbreviated, abridged, shortened, concentrated: He gave a terse account of what had happened. 2 abrupt, curt, short, brusque, blunt, gruff, bluff, ungracious, petulant, tart, rude: His answer was terse and unhelpful.

test n. 1 trial, examination, exam, proof, evaluation, assay, check, check-up, investigation, study, analysis: My physics test is tomorrow. Have you had a blood test lately?

--v. 2 try (out), check (up) (on), examine, evaluate, assess, assay, prove, probe: Someone ought to test the water for purity.

testify v. state, aver, assert, attest, swear, say, affirm, declare, give evidence or testimony, bear witness, avow, vouchsafe, proclaim, announce: He testified that he saw you there. Is your mother going to testify at the trial? The fingerprints testify to the fact that she was here.

testimonial

n. endorsement, certification, commendation, (letter of) recommendation, reference, Colloq blurb: I am happy to write a testimonial for you.

testimony n. evidence, attestation, affirmation, confirmation, verification, authentication, corroboration, avowal, deposition, statement, affidavit, declaration, assertion, claim, averral, asseveration, information: We have only his testimony that the woman caused the accident.

testy adj. irritable, bad-tempered, irascible, short-tempered, petulant, touchy, tetchy, querulous, peevish, hot-tempered, crusty, cross, grumpy, grouchy, bearish, crabby, crabbed, fretful, captious, waspish, snappish, quarrelsome, fractious, contentious, choleric, splenetic, ill-humoured, disagreeable, ill-tempered, edgy, on edge, quick-tempered, crotchety, cantankerous, US cranky, Colloq and US and Canadian dialect ornery: The old colonel made a few testy remarks about the boys' haircuts. Why make excuses for his being so testy?

tˆte-…-tˆte

n. 1 (cosy or personal) chat, dialogue, causerie, pillow talk, private talk or word, parley, interview, Colloq confab, US one-on-one: Will we have time for a brief tˆte-…-tˆte after dinner?

--adv. 2 intimately, privately, in private, face to face, confidentially, secretly, … deux, in secret, Colloq US one-on-one: Could we meet tˆte-…-tˆte some time?

--adj. 3 intimate, private, intime, cosy: I arranged a little tˆte-…-tˆte dinner at my flat.

tether n. 1 lead, leash, rope, cord, fetter, restraint, halter, tie, chain: The dog had broken loose from its tether and was running around in the yard.

--v. 2 tie (up or down), restraint, fetter, chain (up or down), leash, manacle, secure, shackle, fasten, picket, stake: Why don't you tether the goat where the grass is more plentiful?

text n. 1 wording, words, content, (subject-)matter; printed matter, (main) body (text), contents: The editor had no right to make changes in the text without consulting the author. The text is in 10-point roman type, the footnotes in 8-point. 2 extract, abstract, section, quotation, part, paragraph, passage, verse, line: What text from the Scripture are we discussing next week? 3 subject(-matter), topic, theme, motif, issue, focus: For today's talk I have chosen for my text the problem of alcoholism. 4 textbook, school-book, reader, manual, primer, workbook, exercise book, Archaic hornbook: Today's science texts are much more advanced than those of twenty years ago.

texture n. feel, surface, character, grain, features, consistency, weave; configuration, nature, structure, fabric, constitution, substance: The material has a rough texture. The texture of the plot is reinforced by the dialogue.

20.3 thank...
=-

thank v. 1 express or show (one's) gratitude or thanks or appreciation, say thank you or thanks, give or offer or tender thanks: Don't forget to thank your uncle for the gift, William. 2 blame, hold responsible, credit, acknowledge: You have your mother to thank for the present state of affairs.

--n. 3 thanks. gratitude, appreciation, gratefulness, acknowledgement, recognition, thanksgiving: I gave thanks that I was again on dry land. 4 thanks to. owing to, because of, as a result of, thanks be given to, in consequence of, as a consequence of, by reason of, through, Sometimes non-standard due to: Thanks to you, I have to commute to work by train.

thankful adj. grateful, appreciative, indebted, pleased, glad, obliged, obligated, under obligation, beholden to: I am most thankful that you came, doctor.

thankless adj. unappreciated, unacknowledged, useless, unrewarding, fruitless, unprofitable, profitless, unrequited, vain, futile, bootless: She always regarded housekeeping as a thankless task.

thaw v. 1 Sometimes, thaw out. melt, de-ice, liquefy, defrost, warm (up), heat (up), unfreeze: We cannot leave till the river thaws. Why not thaw out the shepherd's pie for dinner? 2 soften, warm, become (more) cordial or friendly, relax, yield, relent, bend, unbend, let (oneself) go: After he got to know some of us better he began to thaw.

theatre n. 1 playhouse, (opera) house, (music-) hall, auditorium, amphitheatre, theatre-in-the-round, coliseum, hippodrome, arena (theatre): A long run in a West End or Broadway theatre is every playwright's dream. 2 drama, stagecraft, dramaturgy, melodrama, theatrics, histrionics, staginess, acting, performing, performance: Even the way Mary serves dinner is pure theatre. 3 the theatre. drama, the stage, dramaturgy, dramatic or Thespian or histrionic art(s), the boards, show business, Colloq showbiz: The theatre is a risky profession. 4 area, arena, scene, sphere or place or field of action, setting: In which theatre of war did you serve?

theatrical
adj. 1 theatric, dramatic, stage, histrionic, Thespian; repertory: He joined a theatrical company and his family disowned him. 2 stagy, overdone, camp, campy, melodramatic, overwrought, exaggerated, forced, overacted, overacting, sensational, sensationalistic, fake, false, mannered, affected, unnatural, artificial, showy, ostentatious, spectacular, extravagant, Colloq phoney or US also phony, ham or hammy, grandstand: Does Fergus's theatrical behaviour ever embarrass you?

theft n. robbery, stealing, pilferage, pilfering, filching, shoplifting, thievery, purloining, embezzlement, hijacking, larceny, Colloq lifting, appropriation, pocketing, pinching, swiping, snitching, Chiefly Brit nicking, US boosting, Slang heist, knocking off, rip-off: The theft of the jewellery was reported to the police immediately.

theme n. 1 subject(-matter), topic, idea, notion, concept, thesis, text, thread, keynote, gist, core, substance, point, essence: What is the central theme of your article? 2 essay, paper, composition, review, article, story, piece, exposition, study, exercise, monograph, tract, thesis, dissertation, disquisition, treatise: I have to hand in two themes next week.

theorem n. 1 hypothesis, proposition, assumption, conjecture, thesis, postulate: He has set forth a clever proof of the binomial theorem. 2 statement, dictum, rule, deduction, formula, axiom, principle: After a lifetime of experience, his theorem is that honesty is the best policy.

theoretical
adj. 1 hypothetical, conjectural, speculative, untested, unproved, unproven, moot, putative, debatable, supposititious, suppositional: The theoretical trajectory will take it beyond Uranus. 2 impractical, unrealistic, pure, ideal, abstract, academic: The suggestion was purely theoretical, since we have no means of carrying it out.

theorist n. theoretician, speculator, hypothecator, hypothesizer, theorizer, philosopher, dreamer: Leave guesswork to the theorists: we need hard facts.

theorize v. guess, hypothesize, conjecture, speculate: It is logically illogical to theorize about articles of faith.

therapeutic
adj. therapeutical, healing, curative, remedial, restorative, salutary, health-giving, healthy, beneficial, corrective, salubrious, medical, medicinal: Primitive medicine men knew of the therapeutic powers of these herbs.

therapist n. psychotherapist, psychologist, analyst, therapeutist, psychiatrist, psychoanalyst, counsellor, advisor, Colloq shrink: For some problems it is best to seek the advice of a trained counsellor or therapist.

therapy n. 1 remedy, treatment, remedial programme; cure: As therapy, he suggested I swim a mile every day. 2 psychotherapy, psychoanalysis, analysis, group therapy: If it weren't for my weekly therapy sessions, I'd never see anyone.

therefore adv. consequently, so, thus, as a result or consequence, hence, ergo, for that reason, wherefore, accordingly, that being so or the case: Demand for our products has fallen dramatically, and we cannot therefore expect to make a profit this year.

thesaurus n. 1 treasury, treasure trove, storehouse, armoury, arsenal, repository, cache: It is hoped that this book will be regarded as a thesaurus of linguistic treasures. 2 synonym dictionary, synonymy, dictionary, lexicon: He checked in his thesaurus for a synonym of 'idea'.

thesis n. 1 argument, theory, proposition, point, contention, belief, idea, premise or premiss, assumption, view, assertion, precept, opinion, notion, theorem, axiom, postulate: Think how many centuries it took man to come to grips with the thesis that all men are created equal. 2 See theme, 2, above.

Thespian adj. 1 dramatic, theatrical or theatric, histrionic, acting, performing; Colloq ham, hammy: His Thespian talents went unnoticed until he appeared as an extra in a James Bond movie.

--n. 2 actor, actress, performer, trouper, player; supernumerary; matin‚e idol, star; Colloq ham: For many years she was one of the most beloved Thespians who ever trod the boards.

thick adj. 1 broad, wide, solid, thickset, burly, ample, solid, bulky, substantial, beamy: He sank his teeth into the thickest sandwich I have ever seen. She is a bit thicker in the mid-section than I had remembered, but a good ketch nonetheless. 2 Usually, thick with. dense, solid, compact, concentrated, condensed, packed, close-packed, compressed, crowded, choked, filled, full, deep, clotted, chock-full or choke-full or chuck-full, chock-a-block, teeming, swarming, alive, bristling, crawling, bursting, crammed, jammed, brimming, Colloq lousy with: The gallery was thick with visitors. 3 compact, condensed, compressed, choking, packed, impenetrable, impassable, dense; pea-soup, soupy, murky, misty, foggy, smoggy, smoky, opaque, obscure, obscuring, hazy: We plunged deeper into the thick jungle. A thick fog blanketed the valley. 4 abundant, plentiful, bushy, luxuriant: Her thick red hair tumbled down over her shoulders. 5 dense, viscid, viscous, gelatinous, mucilaginous, gluey, glutinous, ropy, coagulated, clotted, congealed, jelled, jellied, inspissated, stiffish; stiff, firm, rigid, solid: For a thicker sauce, use cornflour. 6 thickheaded, thick-witted, thick-skulled, dense, stupid, slow, slow-witted, dull, dull-witted, stolid, obtuse, gormless, boneheaded, fat-headed, pin-headed, wooden-headed, addle-pated, halfwitted, block-headed, doltish, Boeotian, cretinous, imbecilic, moronic, US thimble-witted; insensitive, thick-skinned; Colloq dim-witted, Slang dopey: How could anyone so thick have become an executive? 7 guttural, hoarse, throaty, raspy, rasping, rough, husky, grating, gravelly, indistinct, distorted, inarticulate; gruff, raucous: 'I need you,' he moaned, his voice thick with emotion. 8 close, friendly, like that, inseparable, devoted, hand in glove, on good terms, on the best (of) terms, intimate, Colloq chummy, pally, (as) thick as thieves, Brit matey, well in, US palsy-walsy: We were thick in the old days, going everywhere together. 9 marked, pronounced, strong, decided, obvious, typical: She speaks English with a thick Polish accent.

--n. 10 core, heart, centre, middle, focus, midst: If it's a fight, you can be sure that Timothy will be in the thick of it.

thicken v. coagulate, clot, congeal, jell, gel, set, solidify, stiffen, harden, firm up, cake, incrassate, inspissate: Cornflour can be used to thicken sauces.

thicket n. copse, brake, grove, covert, wood, Brit spinney: We concealed our horses in the thicket and stole ahead on foot.

thick-skinned
n. insensitive, insensate, dull, obtuse, stolid, callous, numb(ed), steeled, hardened, toughened, tough, unsusceptible, inured, unfeeling, case-hardened, impervious, pachydermatous, Colloq hard-boiled: You must be very thick-skinned not to realize that they were getting at you.

thief n. 1 robber, burglar, cat burglar, housebreaker, picklock, sneak-thief, safe-cracker, pilferer, shoplifter, purloiner; embezzler, peculator; pickpocket, cutpurse, purse-snatcher, mugger, highwayman, footpad, brigand, bandit, thug, dacoit, ruffian, outlaw, desperado, hijacker, gunman, plunderer; poacher; Technical kleptomaniac, Australian bush-ranger, US road-agent, Colloq hold-up man, crook, US second-story or second-storey man, bandito or bandido, Slang cracksman, box man, dip, stick-up man: They caught the thief who took the paintings. 2 cheat, swindler, confidence man, mountebank, charlatan, sharper, trickster, flimflam artist or man, thimblerigger, Colloq con man, con artist, shell-game artist, US highbinder: That thief cheated them out of their savings. 3 pirate, (sea) rover, picaroon or pickaroon, corsair, freebooter, buccaneer, marauder, filibuster, privateer: They might seem romantic in retrospect, but at the time, pirates were no more than common thieves.

thin   adj. 1 slim, slender, lean, spare, slight, lanky, spindly, skinny, thin as a rail or reed or rake, wispy, twiggy, skeletal, gaunt, gangling, bony, emaciated, cadaverous, meagre, scrawny, all skin and bones, scraggy, undernourished, underfed, underweight, undersized, puny, sparse, hollow-cheeked, (half-)starved, pinched, withered, shrunken, shrivelled (up): Douglas is quite thin as a result of his illness. 2 sparse, unsubstantial, poor, scant, insufficient, inadequate, slight, worthless, unimportant, deficient, skimpy, unplentiful, paltry, piddling: This year's harvest has been very thin. 3 attenuated, threadlike, stringlike, pencil-thin, fine; narrow: Draw a thin line between the columns. Please slice the bread thin. 4 flimsy, weak, feeble, slight, unsubstantial, insubstantial, fragile, frail, poor, lame; unbelievable, unconvincing: Harry gave some thin excuse for being late. 5 airy, filmy, diaphanous, gossamer, sheer, light, delicate, chiffon, silky, silken, gauzy, translucent, see-through, transparent: She had nothing but a thin negligee to protect her from the cold. 6 watery, watered down, dilute(d), weak, unsatisfying: My dinner, as usual, consisted of thin gruel and a dry crust. 7 thin on the ground. rare, uncommon, scarce, few (and far between), unusual, hard to come by or find, scant, scanty: Good managers are thin on the ground.

--v. 8 Often, thin down. draw out, attenuate, reduce, trim, cut down, prune; sharpen: At one end, thin the dowel to a point. 9 Often, thin down or out. dilute, water (down), decrease, reduce, diminish: They always thin the wine with some water. The crowd thinned out after a while.

thing   n. 1 item, (inanimate) object, article, possession: They went without leaving a thing behind. 2 item, subject, matter, detail, feature, aspect, affair, constituent, element, factor, point: There's one thing that I forgot to mention. It's a small thing, but I like coffee with my breakfast. 3 fad, trend, fashion: Let me show you the latest thing in sports cars. 4 feeling, reaction, attitude, sentiment, emotional attachment;

quirk, fixation, preoccupation, obsession; fetish or fetich, id,e fixe, affection, liking, partiality, predilection, fancy, love, passion, mania; phobia, fear, terror, aversion, loathing, horror, detestation, dislike, Colloq hang-up: A chocoholic has a thing about chocolate. Pet snakes are not Patricia's thing. Roger has a thing about going out in public. 5 device, item, gadget, object, entity, mechanism, contrivance, apparatus, instrument, utensil, Colloq dingus, doodad, whatchamacallit, thingumajig, whosis, whatsis, thingummy, thingumabob, Chiefly US and Canadian gismo or gizmo: Where's the thing that is supposed to hold the flywheel in place? 6 chore, task, responsibility, matter; act, action, deed, activity, proceeding: The first thing I must do is to phone home. 7 opportunity, chance, possibility: See me first thing tomorrow. 8 things. a affairs, matters, business, concerns: I have to take care of some things at the office today. b circumstances, events, happenings: Things are rarely what they seem. c belongings, luggage, baggage, impedimenta, possessions, paraphernalia, effects, clothes, clothing, goods; equipment, tools, utensils, implements, apparatus, Colloq gear, stuff, Slang Brit clobber, US crap, junk, Taboo slang US shit: Take your things and leave at once! The plumber left his things at the shop.

think v. 1 believe, imagine, expect, dream, fantasize, suppose: When do you think that you will retire? 2 judge, reckon, consider, deem, regard (as), characterize (as), believe, assume, mark: They thought him a fool for making such a fuss. 3 contemplate, cogitate (on or over or about), ruminate (over or about), reflect (on), meditate (on or over or about), muse (on or over or about), deliberate (on or over or about), think about or of or over: He likes to sit in the bath and think. I need time to think over your proposal. 4 Often, think of. recall, remember, recollect, call to mind: I simply cannot think of the name of that film we saw last week. 5 think of or about. a consider, ponder, weigh, contemplate, muse over, have in mind, mull over, entertain the idea or notion of, intend, have in mind, propose: Do you ever think of retiring? b assess, evaluate, value, judge: What do you think about their latest suggestion? 6 think up or of. devise, concoct, contrive, come up with, invent, conceive (of), dream up, create, make up, improvise: Who thinks up the plots for these dreadful TV series?

thinkable adj. conceivable, possible, imaginable, feasible, reasonable, tenable, not unlikely, plausible, believable, credible: It is hardly thinkable that they can be serious.

thinker n. sage, wise man, savant, Nestor, Solomon, pundit, mastermind, philosopher, scholar, learned person, mentor, expert: She has been looked on as one of the great thinkers of her time.

thinking adj. 1 rational, sensible, ratiocinative, intelligent, reasoning, reasonable; meditative, contemplative, reflective, philosophical, cogitative, pensive, thoughtful, intellectual: Any thinking person would have done the same as you.

--n. 2 opinion, judgement, belief, thought, point of view, viewpoint, assessment, evaluation, theory, reasoning, conclusion, idea, philosophy, outlook: There is nothing either good or bad, but thinking makes it so. Do you concur with the current thinking on education?

thirst n. 1 craving, desire, appetite, hunger, eagerness, avidity, ravenousness, voracity, voraciousness, lust, passion, enthusiasm, fancy, hankering, longing, yearning, Colloq itch, yen: It was the thirst for gold that drove them mad. She has an insatiable thirst for knowledge.

--v. 2 Often, thirst for or after. crave, desire, hunger for or after, lust for or after, fancy, hanker for or after, long for, yearn for, wish for: These men are thirsting for power.

thirsty adj. 1 parched, dry, dehydrated; arid: I need another drink - I'm really thirsty. The thirsty land welcomes the rain. 2 desirous, hungry, avid, eager, ravenous, voracious, burning, greedy, avaricious, hankering, yearning, craving, Colloq itching: The students are thirsty for knowledge and very hard-working.

thorn n. 1 barb, spine, spike, prickle, bristle, brier, bur or burr, point, bramble, cocklebur: My sleeve caught on the thorn and tore. 2 Often, thorn in (one's) side. bother, irritation, annoyance, nuisance, vexation, torment, torture, scourge, plague, affliction, irritant, bane, Colloq pain in the neck, Taboo slang pain in the Brit arse or US ass: His nagging brother has been a thorn in his side for years.

thorny adj. 1 prickly, barbed, spiny, spiked, brambly, spinous, Technical spinose, acanthoid, spiculose, spiculate, spinulose, aciculate, muricate, barbellate, setigerous, setaceous, setiferous, setose: The insect's feet have tiny thorny projections. 2 difficult, hard, tough, prickly, nettlesome, painful, ticklish, delicate, intricate, critical, complex, complicated, problematic, vexatious, knotty, tangled, involved, troublesome, controversial, nasty, worrying, Colloq sticky, Slang hairy: Many thorny questions have vexed us throughout the ages.

thorough adj. 1 thoroughgoing, complete, downright, perfect, through-and-through, total, unmitigated, undiluted, unmixed, unalloyed, out-and-out, unqualified, sheer, utter, arrant, absolute, proper: I have rarely encountered such thorough stupidity. 2 exhaustive, extensive, painstaking, meticulous, assiduous, careful, scrupulous, particular, conscientious, methodical: Police conducted a thorough search but found nothing. 3 extensive, exhaustive, detailed, in-depth, comprehensive, full, complete, all-inclusive, total, all-embracing, encyclopedic or encyclopaedic, universal, A-to-Z, Colloq all-out: We need someone who has a thorough knowledge of the terrain.

thoroughly
adv. 1 completely, downright, perfectly, totally, unqualifiedly, utterly, absolutely, entirely, extremely, unreservedly, wholly, fully, positively, definitely, quite: He is thoroughly stupid, as we all know. 2 carefully, painstakingly, exhaustively, extensively, assiduously, sedulously, methodically, conscientiously, scrupulously, meticulously, intensively, comprehensively, completely, throughout, from top to bottom, from stem to stern, backwards and forwards, in every nook and cranny: Police searched thoroughly again, but could still find no murder weapon.

though conj. 1 although, even though, while, in spite of or despite the fact that, notwithstanding that, albeit, granted, granting or conceding that, allowing or admitting that, even if, supposing: Though it is the right size, I hate the colour.

--adv. 2 however, nonetheless, nevertheless, yet, but, still, even so, be that as it may, all the same, notwithstanding, for all that: She lost the original; I kept a copy though.

thought n. 1 thinking, reflection, reflecting, meditation, meditating, contemplation, contemplating, cogitation, cogitating, musing, pondering, rumination, ruminating, brooding, mental activity, mentation, brown study; brainwork, cerebration, deliberation, deliberating, consideration, considering: She was deep in thought. The solution may require considerable thought. 2 idea, notion, brainstorm, observation: I have a thought that I'd like to share with you. 3 consideration, contemplation, planning, plan, scheme, design, intention, expectation, hope, prospect, anticipation, dream, vision: Any thought of taking a few days off had to be abandoned. 4 thoughtfulness, consideration, kindliness, kind-heartedness, concern, compassion, tenderness, kindness, sympathy, attentiveness, regard, solicitude: I don't need any help, but I appreciate the thought. 5 Often, thoughts. recollection(s), memory or memories, remembrance(s), reminiscence(s): Now and then he comforted himself with thoughts of his happy childhood. 6 intellect, intelligence, reasoning, rationality, ratiocination, reason: Some believe that only humans are capable of thought. 7 bit, trifle, touch, small amount, trace, soup‡on, little, tinge: This champagne is a thought too sweet.

thoughtful

adj. 1 considerate, kind, kindly, kind-hearted, compassionate, tender, sympathetic, attentive, solicitous, helpful, charitable: Wasn't it thoughtful of Simon to offer his help? 2 contemplative, pensive, reflective, musing, in a brown study, pondering, meditative, engrossed, introspective, rapt, wistful, brooding, wool-gathering, day-dreaming: Every time I mentioned Clarissa, he would become thoughtful. 3 prudent, wary, cautious, mindful, heedful, thinking, attentive, circumspect, careful, caring: The crew are ever thoughtful of the passengers' safety.

thoughtless

adj. 1 inconsiderate, rude, impolite, insensitive, tactless, undiplomatic, untactful, unthinking: It was thoughtless of you to mention her son, who is serving time for possession of drugs. 2 rash, imprudent, negligent, foolish, stupid, careless, neglectful, reckless, silly, unthinking, unreflective, absent-minded, forgetful, remiss, ill-considered, heedless, inadvertent, inattentive: How thoughtless of me to forget your birthday!

thrashing n. 1 beating, drubbing, whipping, flogging, assault, caning, belting, mauling, lashing, trouncing, basting, battering, pounding, Colloq hiding, tanning, lambasting, hammering, pasting: Every time he stepped into the ring he got a thrashing. 2 punishment, chastisement, disciplining, discipline, castigation: He dreaded the thrashing his father administered at any sign of disobedience.

thread n. 1 fibre, filament, strand, (piece of) yarn; string, line, cord, twine: Threads from his jacket were found clutched in the victim's hand. The glass is spun out into fine threads. 2 theme, plot, story-line, subject, motif, thesis, course, drift, direction, tenor, train (of thought), sequence or train or chain of events: It is difficult to follow the thread of the story when it has so many digressions.

--v. 3 string: Carefully thread the beads onto the wire. 4 file, wind, pass, squeeze (through), pick or make (one's) way (through), inch, ease: He threaded his way through the crowd to reach the dais.

threadbare

adj. 1 frayed, worn (out), worn to a frazzle, ragged, moth-eaten, tattered, tatty, scruffy, shabby, seedy, torn, wretched, sorry, slovenly: My old winter coat is looking a bit threadbare. 2 trite, hackneyed, overused, overworked, reworked, stale, tired, stereotyped, commonplace, clich,d, clich,-ridden, banal, prosaic, dull, monotonous, tedious, tiresome, boring, played out, Colloq old hat: You'll never make it as a comedian by relying on that threadbare material of yours.

threat n. 1 intimidation, menace, commination, warning, peril, risk, danger, Damoclean sword: It is not honesty but the threat of punishment that deters many from crime. 2 omen, presage, portent, foreboding, forewarning, intimation: The villagers lived under a constant threat from the smoking volcano.

threaten v. 1 intimidate, menace, terrorize, daunt, cow, bully, browbeat, warn, caution: The headmaster threatened those who misbehaved with the most dire punishment. 2 imperil, put at risk, endanger, jeopardize, put in jeopardy: All life is threatened if the environment is not better looked after. 3 impend, loom; augur, portend, presage, forebode: The creatures crawl into their burrows if danger threatens. The gathering clouds threatened rain.

threatening

adj. ominous, menacing, portentous, sinister, looming, inauspicious, minatory, minacious, comminatory, intimidating, foreboding, imminent, impending: Threatening storm clouds began to build in the western sky.

threshold n. 1 sill, door-sill, doorstep; doorway, entrance: He stood at the threshold and peered into the room. 2 brink, verge, edge, beginning, commencement, outset, start, dawn: The emigrants were at the threshold of a new life.

thrift n. economy, husbandry, care, carefulness, prudence, parsimony, frugality, thriftiness, sparingness, scrimping, skimping; penuriousness, close-fistedness, tight-fistedness, niggardliness, stinginess, miserliness: Only through our thrift were we able to save enough for a new car.

thrifty adj. economical, careful, prudent, parsimonious, frugal, sparing, scrimping, skimping; penurious, close-fisted, tight-fisted, niggardly, stingy, miserly, penny-pinching, cheap: He talked about the need to save money and be thrifty in every way.

thrill n. 1 excitement, titillation, frisson, tingle, tingling (sensation), stimulation, Colloq kick, bang, charge, buzz: Victor feels a tremendous thrill when his daughter wins a tennis match. 2 tremor, quiver, quivering, shudder, shuddering, tremble, trembling, flutter, throb, throbbing, tremor, pulsation, vibration: The only warning was a slight thrill in the earth just before the main quake.

--v. 3 excite, stimulate, animate, electrify, galvanize, enliven, stir, titillate, touch, strike, move, impassion, arouse, Slang send, give (someone) a kick: They were thrilled to discover that they had won an award.

thrilling adj. exciting, stimulating, animating, electrifying, galvanizing, enlivening, stirring, titillating, striking, moving, arousing, rousing, gripping, sensational, riveting, spine-tingling, soul-stirring: Last year's Cup Final was a thrilling match, with most sides playing their hearts out. I have never had such thrilling rides at the fun fair.

thrive   v. succeed, prosper, boom, advance, flourish, grow, bloom, burgeon, develop, wax, increase, fructify, ripen: They thrived in the invigorating mountain air.

throe   n. Usually, throes. pang, anguish, struggle, chaos, turmoil, tumult, paroxysm, spasm, fit, seizure, convulsion, Technical ictus: She was in the throes of despair at the dreadful news from home.

throng   n. 1 horde, crowd, host, assemblage, assembly, gathering, mass, crush, jam, multitude, congregation, press, swarm, herd, flock, bevy, drove: Throngs of people packed the shopping mall on Saturday.

--v. 2 crowd (into), fill, pack (into), cram (into), crush (into), jam (into), press (into), swarm (into), herd (into), flock (into or to); assemble (in or at), gather (in or at), mass (in or at), congregate (in or at): Thousands thronged the stadium to watch the tennis matches.

through   prep. 1 because of, on account of, owing to, as a consequence or result of, by virtue of, via, be means of, by way of, with the aid or help of, under the aegis or auspices of, Sometimes non-standard due to: It was through his good graces that I got the appointment. 2 during, throughout, in the course or middle of: The dog barked all through the night. 3 inclusive of, including: When I say 'the third through the sixth' I mean 'including the sixth'. 4 to; into: I went through a lot of trouble to find this book.

--adj. 5 Often, through with. done (with), finished (with); at the end of one's tether (with), washing (one's) hands (of): Let me know when you are through. How many times has she sworn she was through with him forever?

--adv. 6 by, past: I am just passing through. 7 entirely, through and through, completely, thoroughly, totally, wholly, utterly, fully, to the core, from head to foot or toe, from top to bottom, from stem to stern, from one end to the other, in every way, in all respects: By the time I got home, I was soaked through.

throughout

prep. 1 during, all (the way) through, from the beginning to the end of: We worked throughout the day and night. Throughout his life he felt the need for constant support. 2 everywhere in, all over, in every part of, in every nook and cranny of, from one end to the other of: I searched throughout the house for my keys.

--adv. 3 all (the way) through, everywhere, from one end to the other, wholly, entirely, completely, fully: They were busy tidying the house throughout before his mother came to stay.

throw   v. 1 toss, cast, hurl, fling, sling, pitch, dash, propel, project, shy, bowl, send, launch, Colloq chuck: He threw the ball to the batter with all his might. 2 cast, shed, project: I was hoping you might throw some light on the subject. Coming events throw their shadow before them. 3 throw or bring down, floor, fell, knock down or over, overthrow, upset, overturn: He threw the vase on the floor. 4 dismay, confound, confuse, dumbfound or dumfound, baffle, disconcert, unnerve, throw off or out, unsettle, put off, put (someone) off his or her or their stride or pace or stroke, Colloq discombobulate: Her frank questions about my private life really threw me. 5 throw away. a discard, cast off, dispose of, jettison, get rid of, scrap, throw out, dispense with, Colloq dump, trash, chuck out, Slang ditch: He is a hoarder, refusing to throw anything away. b waste, squander, lose, forgo, fritter away, fail to exploit or take advantage of, Slang blow: He threw away his last chance for a decent life when he left her. 6 throw off. a eject, expel, emit, throw up or out: The volcano throws off rocks every so often. b shake off, rid or free (oneself) of, get rid of, reject, renounce, repudiate: He finally managed to throw off his mother's pernicious influence. c deceive, mislead, decoy, misguide, misdirect, distract, divert, bewilder, confound, confuse, Colloq flummox, bamboozle: He doubled back to throw the dogs off. d See 4, above. 7 throw out. a radiate, emit, send forth, give out or off, diffuse, put out or forth, disseminate: The substance throws out a greenish light.

b expel, eject, force out, evict, Colloq Brit turf out, Slang bounce: Henry was thrown out of the pub for rowdy behaviour. c See 5 (a), above. d See 6 (a), above. 8 throw over. jilt, leave, abandon, desert, forsake, break or split up with, Colloq walk out on, chuck, drop: She was heartbroken when he threw her over and married her sister. 9 throw up. a vomit, spit up, puke, spew up, be sick; regurgitate, disgorge, Colloq heave (up): He felt as if he was going to throw up. b abandon, quit, leave, throw over, give up, relinquish, resign, renounce, Colloq chuck: He threw up a perfectly good job to go and live on a boat. c reveal, bring out or up, bring to the surface or the top, bring forward or forth, bring to light or to notice: Their treachery was thrown up in high relief by the events that followed. d throw or slap or knock together, jerry-build: The house was thrown up overnight - and it looks like it. e See 6 (a), above.

thrust v. 1 push, shove, drive, force, impel, ram, jam, butt, propel, prod, urge, press; shoulder, jostle, elbow: A stranger thrust this note into my hand. She thrust her way through the crowd. 2 stab, plunge, stick, jab, poke; lunge: He thrust the dagger into the man's back. She thrust at me with an ice pick. 3 Usually, thrust upon. press (upon or on), impose (upon or on), force (upon or on), urge (upon or on): They were willing to help, but rather thought the problem had been thrust upon them.

--n. 4 shove, push, drive, lunge, poke, prod, stab: He depended on his agility to avoid the thrusts of the rapier. 5 propulsion, force, power, energy: The thrust of the photon engines drives the space ship at nearly the speed of light.

thud n. clunk, thump, whomp, wham, clonk, bump: His head hit the wall with a thud.

thug n. hooligan, gangster, desperado, gunman, terrorist, hoodlum, robber, assassin, murderer, killer, cutthroat, ruffian, Mafioso, (In Paris) apache, tough, mugger, Technical p'hansigar, Brit rough, Slang tough, hood, crook, hit man, heavy, US goon, Australian larrikin: Some thugs roughed him up and took his wallet.

thumb n. 1 Technical pollex. 2 all thumbs. awkward, clumsy, maladroit, Colloq butter-fingered, ham-fisted, cack-handed: I am all thumbs when it comes to threading needles. 3 give (something) the thumbs down or turn thumbs down (on). disapprove (of), reject, rebuff, turn down: We turned thumbs down to the idea of a picnic. 4 turn or give thumbs up (to). approve (of), accept, welcome, Colloq OK or okay: The boss gave thumbs up to our request for a Christmas party. 5 under (one's) thumb. under (one's) control, wrapped (a)round (one's) little finger, in the palm of (one's) hand, eating out of (one's hand), at (one's) beck and call: She has the directors under her thumb.

--v. 6 hitchhike, Colloq hitch, US hook a ride: They thumbed their way across the country. 7 Often, thumb through. leaf (through), flick or flip (through), riffle (through), skim (through), browse (through): I was thumbing through City Life and came across your picture, Bernard! 8 thumb (one's) nose at. scoff at, deride, jeer at, mock, dismiss, scorn, flout, be contemptuous of, show contempt for, exhibit defiance for, be defiant of, contemn, Brit cock a snook at: He has thumbed his nose at authority all his life.

thumbnail adj. rough, undetailed, cursory, sketchy, superficial; brief, short, quick; compact, concise, pithy, succinct: His poetry is a chilling, thumbnail sketch of the way we live now.

thumping adj. 1 great, huge, colossal, stupendous, gigantic, enormous, immense, monumental, massive, titanic, elephantine, behemoth, gargantuan, mammoth, jumbo, Colloq whopping, thundering, walloping: That is the biggest thumping beach ball I have ever seen! That was a thumping lie. 2 complete, utter, unmitigated, 24-carat, perfect: Anyone who would turn down a salary increase must be a thumping idiot.

thunder n. 1 roll, reverberation, boom, booming, roar, roaring, pealing, rumble, rumbling; crash, crashing, crack, cracking, explosion, blast: We were deafened by the thunder of the tanks crossing the bridge above us.

--v. 2 roll, reverberate, boom, roar, rumble, resound; explode, crash, crack, blast: The noise of the jets thundered through the valley. 3 shout, yell, scream, bellow, bark, roar; denounce, fulminate against, swear (at), rail (at), curse (at), execrate; threaten, intimidate, menace: 'Fee, fie, foe, fum!' thundered the giant. No secretary will tolerate his thundering at her.

thunderous
adj. roaring, booming, thundering, tumultuous, noisy, loud, ear-splitting, deafening: They took curtain calls to thunderous applause.

thunderstruck
adj. dumbfounded or dumfounded, astonished, astounded, awestruck, awed, speechless, struck dumb, amazed, taken aback, staggered, stunned, shocked, dazed, numb, paralysed, aghast, open-mouthed, nonplussed, Colloq flabbergasted, floored, bowled over, Brit knocked for six: We were thunderstruck to learn that our team had been disqualified.

thus adv. 1 so, in this manner or way or fashion or wise, as follows, Non-Standard thusly: On receipt of the payment, I wrote thus to him. 2 therefore, ergo, consequently, as a consequence, as a result, accordingly, (and) so, then, for this or that reason, hence, in which case or event, that being the case, that being so: He has already decided; thus, your efforts to persuade him are useless.

thwart v. 1 frustrate, impede, check, stymie, baffle, stop, foil, stump, hinder, obstruct, balk, block, oppose, negate, nullify, Colloq short-circuit: They have thwarted all our efforts to become friendly.

--n. 2 brace, cross-brace; (rowing-)seat, bench: These canoes are fitted with two thwarts.

20.4 tickle...

=-

tickle v. titillate, delight, please, gratify, amuse, entertain, divert, captivate, thrill, tickle pink or to death: The show we saw last night really tickled my fancy. She was tickled to receive the flowers.

ticklish adj. 1 uncertain, unsteady, unsure, unstable, unsettled, fickle, touch-and-go, touchy: Power that relies on the sword has a ticklish basis. 2 delicate, precarious, risky, hazardous, dangerous, critical, thorny, fragile, awkward: As the canoe drifted towards the waterfall, we found ourselves in a very ticklish predicament. 3 delicate, sensitive, hypersensitive, difficult, touchy, prickly: Cornelia is a bit ticklish on the subject of her holiday plans.

tidy adj. 1 neat, orderly, trim, shipshape, spruce, spick and span, clean, well-kept, well-groomed: Change your clothes and come back when you're tidy. 2 well-organized, organized, well-ordered, methodical, systematic, trim: They refused to clean his office till he had made it tidy. 3 respectable, sizeable, significant, considerable, substantial, good, goodly, good-sized, ample, large, big, fair, generous, not insignificant; Colloq not to be sneezed at: They settled a tidy sum on their daughter when she was married.

--v. 4 Often, tidy up. neaten (up), straighten (out or up), clean (up), put in order, Colloq fix (up), spruce up, organize, reorganize, arrange, rearrange: You can't watch television until you've tidied up your room. Please tidy up the files by the end of the week.

tie v. 1 bind, fasten, make fast, tie up, lash, secure, truss, attach, tether, rope, chain, moor; connect, join, knot, link, couple, splice, unite: He keeps a vicious dog tied to a stake in his garden. Tie the ends of the rope together. 2 bind, truss (up), tie up, lash, pinion, restrict, confine, restrain; limit, tie down, curtail, curb, cramp, hamper, hinder: His hands are tied behind his back. According to the terms of the agreement, my hands are tied and I can do nothing. 3 connect, associate, unite, join, link, bind (up), affiliate, ally, league, team (up): Our business interests are tied to those of the major banks. 4 equal, even, be equal or even (with), match, be neck and neck (with): We tied them for first place. Yesterday, we were tied for second. 5 tie down. a clinch, secure, confirm, Colloq nail down: I tied down the PBT contract this morning. b restrict, restrain, constrain, confine, curtail: He won't marry because he doesn't want to feel tied down. 6 tie in. a be consistent, make sense, correspond, coincide, fit (in), be logical, coordinate: His alibi ties in with the witness's testimony. b relate, connect, link, associate, coordinate: They cleverly tie in concern for the environment with their product. 7 tie up. a occupy, engage, (keep) busy: This affair will tie me up till Tuesday. b use, take up, encroach on, impose on: I won't tie up your time any longer. c stop, halt, bring to a standstill: The traffic was tied up for hours. d commit, oblige, obligate, bind: We have tied up all their output for a year. e See 1, above. f See 2, above.

--n. 8 link, fastening, bond, band, connection, tie-up, relationship, affiliation, liaison, involvement, entanglement: Isn't there some tie between those two companies? 9 string, cord, lace, rope, thong, ribbon, band, ligature, shoelace, line, leash, stop: The tie of her dressing-gown came loose. 10 equality, dead heat, deadlock, draw, stalemate: When there is a tie, the game ought to go into 'sudden death' overtime. 11 cravat, US necktie: Please put on a tie for dinner. 12 railway tie, sleeper: Ties in Europe are now made of concrete.

tie-in n. tie-up, relationship, relation, association, connection, link, linkage: They say that there is a tie-in between smoking and lung cancer.

tier n. row, line, level, order, range, course, series, stratum, layer, echelon, file, rank, storey: The trireme is said to have had three tiers of oarsmen.

tie-up n. 1 US and Canadian slow-down, slow-up, entanglement, stoppage, jam, log-jam, traffic jam, delay, congestion: The tie-up was caused by fog on the highway. 2 See tie-in, above.

tiff n. (petty) quarrel, disagreement, misunderstanding, dispute, argument, difference (of opinion), squabble, bicker, row, wrangle, US spat: Clare and Geoff have had their first tiff.

tiffin n. luncheon, lunch, light repast, snack: The new arrivals were to join us for tiffin.

tight adj. 1 secure, firm, fast, fixed, secured, close-fitting, snug, sealed, hermetically sealed, leak-proof, hermetic, impervious, impenetrable, impermeable, airtight, watertight, waterproof,: Make sure that the lid is tight. 2 taut, stretched, tense, constricting, (too) small, ill-fitting: She was wearing a very tight dress. 3 strict, binding, restrictive, stringent, severe, tough, uncompromising, unyielding, rigorous, stern, austere, autocratic, harsh, hard and fast, inflexible: You can't get away with anything under such tight regulations. I have a tight schedule next week. 4 Chiefly nautical taut, (well-)disciplined, orderly, neat, well-organized, trim, tidy, smart: He runs a tight ship. 5 stingy, niggardly, mean, penurious, miserly, parsimonious, penny-pinching, tight-fisted, close-fisted, Colloq Brit mingy: Glenn is much too tight to buy anyone a drink. 6 close, (almost) even, (highly) competitive, neck and neck, evenly matched: It is going to be a tight race. 7 difficult, trying, dangerous, perilous, risky, hazardous, touchy, problematic, sticky, tricky, ticklish, precarious, touch-and-go: The strike has created a tight situation at the office. 8 tipsy, drunk, intoxicated, Colloq high, woozy, under the influence, Brit tiddly: When I saw her, she was too tight to drive. 9 scarce, scanty, hard to find or come by, rare; dear, expensive: Entrepreneurs have found investment money to be pretty tight this year.

--adv. 10 tightly, securely, firmly; closely: Keep this door closed tight. Hold me tight. Her hands were clasped tight in prayer. 11 compactly, densely, solidly, firmly, closely: We were packed so tight in the bus that no one could move.

tighten v. 1 Sometimes, tighten down or up. anchor, fasten, fix, tense, secure: Tighten those last two screws and you're finished. 2 make tighter or tenser or stronger, strengthen: He tightened his grip on my hand. 3 Sometimes, tighten up. make more rigorous or strict or stringent or severe or restrictive, close gaps in: We ought to tighten security at the warehouse. 4 Sometimes, tighten up. tauten, stiffen, tense, close: I felt the noose begin to tighten round my neck.

tight-lipped
adj. close-mouthed, silent, quiet, mum, mute, close-lipped, noncommittal, reticent, secretive, taciturn, unforthcoming, uncommunicative, reserved: He remained tight-lipped about his activities during the war.

tightly adv. closely, tensely, vigorously, rigorously: It was a tightly fought race.

tights n.pl. US and Canadian and New Zealand panty hose, Australian and US also pantihose: It was much too hot to wear tights.

till° v. plough or US also plow, cultivate, farm, work, dig, hoe, harrow, manure, Literary delve: My family has tilled this land for seven generations.

tillý n. money or cash-drawer, cash-box or register: He insists that the money was in the till when he left last night.

tilt v. 1 lean, slant, incline, slope, angle, tip, heel over, pitch, list, cant: She caught the lamp just as the table tilted. 2 tilt at. joust with, compete with, battle against, contend with, spar with, cross swords with, attack: In tilting at the media, he has chosen some formidable opponents.

--n. 3 lean, slant, incline, slope, angle, tip, heel, list, pitch, cant, inclination: The wall is at a perilous tilt and could easily fall. 4 joust, tourney, tournament, meeting, tilting, engagement, encounter, match, contest, test, trial, fight, combat; dispute, argument, difference, quarrel, altercation, squabble, tiff, US spat, Colloq set-to: I have enjoyed the various tilts I have had with the editor over the years.

timber n. 1 trees, forest, woodland: The standing timber has been seriously depleted in Brazil. 2 wood, beams, boards, planks, US and Canadian lumber: The timber for our new house arrived today. 3 material, potential, stuff, character, quality, talent, prospect: Agatha seems to be good management timber.

timbre n. tone (colour or quality), tonality, colour, resonance: Kurt's voice has a rich, full timbre.

time n. 1 period, interval, stretch, spell, patch: I was going through a bad time when we last met. 2 period, interval, stretch, while, span, space, term, duration: It is a long time since I have seen you. In the time I took to write this, she had vanished. 3 hour; point, moment: What time is it? At what time is our appointment? 4 age, period, epoch, era, lifetime, heyday, day(s): The novel is set in the time of the Caesars. 5 opportunity, chance, occasion: You must make time to visit your mother. 6 experience: I had a wonderful time at your party. 7 tempo, beat, rhythm, metre, measure: They are playing 'Teddy Bears' Picnic' in march time. 8 ease, leisure; convenience: He'll be there in his own time. 9 Often, times. life, things, circumstance, conditions, everything, culture, mores, habits, values: How times have changed since we were young! 10 ahead of time. (bright and) early, prematurely, beforehand, in good time: He arrived ahead of time and had to wait. 11 all the time. always, ever, constantly, continuously, continually, perpetually, at all times, without surcease, unceasingly: Mother is after me all the time to do my homework. 12 at one time. a once, once upon a time, on one occasion, previously, in days of yore, formerly, heretofore, in the (good) old days: At one time you thought me beautiful. b simultaneously, (all) at once, at the same time, together, all together, in unison: The car can only carry five people at one time. 13 at the same time. a all the same, nonetheless, yet, even so, but, however, be that as it may, nevertheless, notwithstanding, just the same: I love her; at the same time, I cannot live with her. b See 12 (b), above. 14 at times. from time to time, occasionally, (every) now and then, once in a while, on occasion, every so often, at intervals, sometimes, Colloq every so often: At times, Ingrid would come over and cook dinner for me. 15 behind the times. old-fashioned, outdated, dated, outmoded, antiquated, pass,, obsolescent, obsolete, Colloq old hat, dead: Isn't 'The Lambeth Walk' a bit behind the times? 16 for the time being. for now, for the present, for the moment, meanwhile, temporarily, pro tempore, pro tem, Archaic for the nonce: He has been appointed chairman for the time being. 17 in no time. at once, forthwith, straightaway, immediately, quickly, speedily, without delay, swiftly: The pizza we ordered was delivered in no time. 18 in time. a in timely fashion, early, in good time, in the nick of time: The doctor arrived in time to save the baby. b soon, one of these days, sometime, someday, one day, eventually, sooner or later, anon: In time, people might be living on the moon. 19 on time. a punctually, on the dot, in good time: He is never on time for his appointments. b in instalments, on terms, on account, on credit, Colloq Brit on the never-never, on hire purchase or h.p.: We bought the car on time. 20 take (one's) time. dawdle, dilly-dally, shilly-shally, delay, linger, loiter: He's certainly taking his time with his report. 21 time and again. again (and again), repeatedly, (over and) over again, time and time again, time after time, frequently, often, many times, on many occasions: Time and again I warned him he'd get a ticket if he parked there.

--v. 22 schedule, set, regulate, control: The trains are timed to arrive five minutes apart. 23 schedule, set, organize, adjust, fix: She timed her entrance to coincide exactly with the crash of the cymbals.

time-honoured
adj. established, traditional, habitual, customary, rooted, conventional, age-old, set, fixed; venerable, venerated, respected, revered, honoured: We observed the time-honoured custom of kissing the Blarney Stone.

timeless adj. eternal, everlasting, immortal, undying, endless, unending, ceaseless, abiding, deathless, ageless, changeless, unchanged, immutable, unchanging, permanent, indestructible: He was enraptured by the timeless beauty of the heavens.

timely adj. punctual, prompt, well-timed, propitious, opportune, convenient, favourable, auspicious: We welcomed the timely arrival of our rescuers.

time-serving
adj. self-seeking, self-serving, selfish, self-indulgent, ambitious, mercenary, venal, greedy, profit-oriented, fortune-hunting, gold-digging, opportunistic, hypocritical, obsequious, sycophantic, toadying, toad-eating, boot-licking, subservient, Colloq on the make, on the take, Slang US out for numero uno, Taboo slang brown-nosing: Members of the party were known to be time-serving and untrustworthy.

timetable n. schedule, calendar, curriculum, programme, agenda, Chiefly Brit diary: My timetable doesn't allow for long lunches.

time-worn adj. ageing, old, tired, worn, time-scarred, decrepit, dilapidated, tumbledown, ramshackle, run-down, dog-eared, ragged, moth-eaten, threadbare, seedy, shabby, archaic, antique, well-worn, worn out, pass,, broken-down, old-fashioned, out-dated, dated, antiquated, ancient, obsolescent, obsolete, stereotyped, stereotypic(al), hackneyed, stale, trite, overused, Colloq old hat: She went into her time-worn routine about two living as cheaply as one.

timid adj. shy, retiring, modest, coy, bashful, diffident, timorous, fearful, apprehensive, mousy, scared, frightened, nervous, cowardly, pusillanimous, craven, Colloq chicken-hearted, yellow,

yellow-bellied, chicken, chicken-livered, lily-livered, gutless: I knew this strapping marine when he was a timid little boy.

tinker v. trifle, dabble, meddle, mess (around or about), toy, fool or play (around or about), Brit potter or US putter (about or around), Colloq fiddle or monkey or muck (about or around): Graham has always enjoyed tinkering with engines.

tinny adj. 1 shabby, flimsy, flimsily or poorly made, shoddy, inferior, cheap, tawdry: He bought himself a tinny old rattletrap of a car. 2 metallic, harsh, twangy: She plays that tinny old trumpet day and night.

tint n. 1 tincture, wash, hue, colour, cast; tinge, touch, hint, trace, dash, colouring, shade, tone, suggestion: In the west a tint of pink lingered in the sky. I thought I detected a tint of anger in his voice. 2 dye, rinse, wash, stain, tincture, colourant, colouring, touch-up: What's the harm in granny's using blue hair tint?

--v. 3 dye, stain, colour, rinse, tinge, touch up: Sandra tints her hair to give it a coppery sheen. 4 tinge, colour, influence, affect, taint, stain: A deep pessimism tints all his writing.

tiny adj. microscopic, infinitesimal, minute, minuscule, diminutive, wee, small, little, miniature, micro, mini, pocket, pocket-sized, bantam, pygmy or pigmy, midget, Lilliputian, petite, delicate, dainty, elfin, slight, insignificant, negligible, trifling, paltry, inconsequential, puny, Colloq pint-sized, teeny, teeny-weeny, teensy-weensy, itty-bitty, itsy-bitsy: She wore the tiniest bikini I had ever seen. When I saw them together I realized how tiny she is. Forgetting my birthday was only a tiny thing.

tip° n. 1 end, extremity, peak, apex, summit, vertex, cap, top, pinnacle, tiptop, crown, head, terminal, ferrule or ferule, finial, nib or neb, point: The tip of the mountain showed above the clouds. He broke off the tip of the billiard cue.

--v. 2 top, cap, crown, surmount: The foil is tipped with a rubber button to prevent injury.

tipý v. 1 Often, tip over. upset, overthrow, knock or cast or throw down, up-end, knock over, overturn, topple (over), capsize: His elbow tipped the lamp, which fell with a crash. 2 slant, lean, incline, slant, tilt, cant: The statue is tipped a bit off the vertical. 3 empty, unload, dump, deposit, Slang Brit ditch: They tipped their load of gravel all over my driveway.

--n. 4 (rubbish or US garbage) dump, rubbish or refuse or trash heap, dumping-ground: This old chair belongs in the tip.

tip° n. 1 gratuity, baksheesh, pourboire, douceur, lagniappe or lagnappe, present, gift, Colloq little something: That waiter didn't deserve a tip. 2 tip-off, (inside) information, warning, advice, suggestion, clue, hint, pointer, forecast, prediction, Colloq Brit gen: Louie had a tip that the police were coming. Her tip was 'Flapdoodle' to win the fifth race.

--v. 3 reward: Why did you tip the barmaid? 4 Usually, tip off. advise, warn, caution, alert, forewarn, notify, let (someone) know, Colloq let (someone) in on: The thieves were tipped off and never arrived.

tirade n. declamation, harangue, diatribe, philippic, outburst, onslaught, screed, jeremiad, denunciation, stream of abuse, invective: He let loose with such a vituperative tirade that I walked out.

tire v. 1 weary, tire out, fatigue, exhaust, wear out, drain, sap, enervate, drain, wear out, debilitate, weaken, Colloq take it out of, fag (out), take it out of: The long climb tired me. 2 bore, exasperate, weary, irk, irritate, annoy, bother: I wish you wouldn't tire me with your accounts of your shopping expeditions.

tired adj. 1 exhausted, tired out, worn out, weary, fatigued, spent, drained, Colloq all in, (dead) beat, knocked out, fagged (out), dog-tired, ready to drop, dead tired, done in, Brit knackered, whacked, US bushed, pooped, wiped out: I was really tired after that ten-hour flight. 2 Usually, tired of. bored with, exasperated by, weary of, irked or irritated or annoyed or bothered by, sick (and tired) of, Colloq fed up (to here) with: Perhaps she's tired of your constant nagging. 3 overworked, overused, clich,d, stereotyped, stereotypic(al), hackneyed, unimaginative, trite, stale, worn out, unoriginal, commonplace, Colloq bromidic: The gossip columns are filled with the same old tired rubbish day after day.

tireless adj. energetic, vital, vigorous, dynamic, spirited, lively, indefatigable, hardworking, industrious, untiring, unflagging, unfaltering, unfailing, persistent, dogged, tenacious, pertinacious, persevering, staunch, sedulous, unwavering, unswerving, undeviating, steady, steadfast, resolute, determined: We all appreciate the honorary secretary's tireless efforts on behalf of our fund-raising this year.

tiresome adj. 1 boring, dull, fatiguing, humdrum, monotonous, flat, tedious, wearisome, tiring, uninteresting, insipid, bland, dry-as-dust, fatiguing, soporific, hypnotic: Ibsen wrote plays that actors love and audiences find tiresome. 2 irritating, irksome, vexing, vexatious, annoying, bothersome, exasperating, trying, disagreeable, troublesome, unpleasant: I wish she would take her tiresome problems elsewhere.

tissue n. fabric, network, web, interweaving, combination, chain, series, accumulation, conglomeration, concatenation, pile, mass, pack: Their entire testimony was a tissue of lies.

titbit n. delicacy, (dainty) morsel, treat, choice item, bonne bouche, US tidbit, Colloq goody: Sally likes to steal little titbits off my plate. I heard a juicy titbit of gossip this morning.

title n. 1 name: You cannot tell much from a book's title. 2 designation, appellation, epithet: Aubrey is now an earl, but he rarely uses his title. 3 caption, inscription, headline, head, subtitle, legend, subhead, rubric: The title on this picture has nothing to do with its subject. 4 championship, crown: He holds the world heavyweight boxing title. 5 right, interest, privilege, entitlement, ownership, possession, tenure; (title-)deed, documentation of ownership: My aunt has sole title to these lands.

--v. 6 name, call, designate, style, label, term, entitle, christen, baptize, nickname, denominate, tag, dub: Harold was titled King of the Revels.

titter v. 1 chuckle, snicker, chortle, giggle; snigger: He told the most awful jokes at which his staff would titter politely.

--n. 2 chuckle, snicker, giggle, (suppressed) laughter, chortle, snigger: A titter ran through the audience.

titular adj. nominal, so-called, so-designated, so-styled, self-styled, soi-disant, token, putative, theoretical: He may be the titular head of the company, but his brother is really the boss.

20.5 toast...
=-

toast n. 1 tribute, pledge, salutation(s), greeting(s), felicitations, honour, good wishes, appreciation, remembrance(s), cheers: The speaker proposed a toast to the editor-in-chief. 2 heroine, hero, favourite, darling, idol: Jenny was the toast of the town.

--v. 3 pay tribute to, salute, drink to, honour, greet, congratulate, felicitate: We toasted our fallen comrades.

toilet n. 1 (water) closet, WC, men's (room), ladies' (room), (public) convenience, facility or facilities, washroom, bathroom, lavatory, privy, outhouse, urinal, (in France) pissoir, vespasienne; Nautical head, Chiefly military latrine, Chiefly US rest room, New England necessary, Colloq the Gents, the Ladies('), powder-room, little girls' room, little boys' room, Brit loo, smallest room (in the house), Military ablutions, Slang Brit bog, karzy, US and Canadian john, can, crapper: They excused themselves to go to the toilet. 2 Formal or literary grooming, dressing, making up, Brit toilette: She was still at her toilet when we arrived.

toilsome adj. arduous, laborious, tough, hard, difficult, strenuous, burdensome, onerous, back-breaking, exhausting, fatiguing, tiring, enervating, wearying, draining: After a toilsome ascent we finally reached the first camp.

token n. 1 coin, disc: You need to buy a token to get through the turnstile. 2 symbol, sign, mark, marker, badge, emblem, indication, proof, evidence: The purple trim on a Roman toga was a token of its wearer's elevated status. 3 souvenir, memento, keepsake, reminder, remembrance, Archaic remembrancer: The miniature Statue of Liberty and Eiffel Tower are tokens of our trips abroad.

--adj. 4 symbolic, emblematic, representative: The panel was made up of three men and a token woman. 5 superficial, cosmetic, surface, perfunctory, minimal, slight, nominal: We encountered only token resistance when taking over the communications centre.

tolerable adj. 1 bearable, supportable, allowable, endurable, acceptable, sufferable: The heat and humidity are barely tolerable. 2 acceptable, unexceptional, common, fair, common-or-garden variety, middling, ordinary, average, so so, mediocre, adequate, run-of-the-mill, passable, indifferent, Colloq OK or okay, not (too) bad, pretty or fairly good: They serve a tolerable lunch in the hotel bar.

tolerance n. 1 open-mindedness, toleration, forbearance, broad-mindedness, permissiveness, magnanimity, indulgence, sufferance, patience, freedom from bigotry or prejudice: You must exercise more tolerance in dealing with people who are poorer than you. 2 play, clearance, allowance, variation: The tolerance between these parts is less than a ten-thousandth of a millimetre. 3 toleration, resistance, endurance, imperviousness; immunity, insensitivity: His tolerance of the outrages of stupidity seems limitless. She has a low tolerance for sugar.

tolerant adj. open-minded, objective, forbearing, unprejudiced, unbigoted, dispassionate, broad-minded, indulgent, magnanimous, patient, generous, charitable, catholic, latitudinarian, permissive, liberal, big-hearted, fair, even-handed, considerate: I am more tolerant of people than of their ideas.

tolerate v. 1 stand (for), allow, permit, bear, suffer, brook, countenance, abide, admit, indulge, concede, sanction, swallow, stomach, turn a blind eye to, Colloq put up with, Brit stick: The teacher refused to tolerate any more misbehaviour. 2 bear, stand, submit to, endure, weather, take, accept, undergo: Tests show that the product can tolerate considerable wear and tear.

toll° v. 1 ring, peal, chime, strike, sound: The clock tower bell tolled three.

--n. 2 ring, ringing, peal, pealing, chime, chiming, striking, sound, sounding, tolling, knell: Each toll of the bell marked the death of another victim.

tollý n. 1 charge, fee, dues, assessment, tariff; excise, duty, impost, levy, tribute: New motorways will be funded by means of a toll on traffic using them. 2 loss, penalty, cost, damage(s); exaction: The death toll from the earthquake reached 50,000.

tomb n. sepulchre, crypt, vault, mausoleum, grave, catacomb, burial-chamber, final or last resting-place: Every year his tomb is visited by a mysterious woman in black.

tombstone n. gravestone, headstone, marker, monument, cenotaph: The tombstones in the military cemetery stood in serried ranks.

tone n. 1 sound, note: Odd tones emanated from the electronic music-maker. 2 stress, emphasis, force, accent, intonation, modulation, phrasing, inflection, pitch, tonality, timbre, sound (colour), tone colour or quality, colour or colouring, resonance, sonorousness, sonority, fullness, richness: The tone of his voice is extraordinarily melodic. 3 manner, style, attitude, air, aspect, approach, note, tenor, tone of voice, mode of expression, temper, vein, spirit, air: Do not take that imperious tone with me! 4 tint, tinge, shade, hue, colour, colouring, cast: The fabric has a silvery tone that makes it shimmer.

--v. 5 tone down. temper, modify, reduce, moderate, modulate, soften, quiet(en), dampen, dull, subdue, mute, soft-pedal: Please tone down your voice or the neighbours will hear you. 6 tone up. (re)invigorate, tune (up), brighten (up), (re)vitalize, freshen (up), limber up, get into condition or shape: I really have to tone up my body before I put on a swimsuit this summer.

tongue n. 1 language, speech; dialect, patois,Creole, idiom, parlance, argot, talk, vernacular, fa‡on de parler: The people in that area speak a strange tongue. 2 (verbal) expression, utterance, voice, articulation: Michael is reluctant to give tongue to his real feelings. 3 hold (one's) tongue. be or remain or keep silent, keep mum, say nothing or nought, not breathe a word, keep (one's) counsel, not say a word, Slang shut up: Hold your tongue till you are spoken to! 4 slip of the tongue. slip, mistake, gaffe, blunder, faux pas, Freudian slip, Colloq Brit boob: Saying 'bald' when I meant 'bold' was a slip of the tongue. 5 (with (one's)) tongue in (one's) cheek. facetiously, whimsically, ironically, jocularly, jokingly, not seriously, in jest, jestingly, in fun, to be funny, Colloq kiddingly: As he is my older brother, I call him 'Dad' with tongue in cheek, of course.

tongue-lashing

n. scolding, berating, reproof, rebuke, reprimand; (verbal) abuse, castigation, chastisement, vituperation, revilement, Colloq dressing-down, telling-off, talking-to, Brit slating, ticking-off, wigging: For all his efforts to please, he only got a tongue-lashing for interfering.

tongue-tied

adj. speechless, at a loss for words, struck dumb, dumbfounded or dumfounded, mute, inarticulate: I was so nervous when the Prince of Wales spoke to me that I got tongue-tied.

tonic n. 1 stimulant, restorative, invigorant, boost, refresher; Obsolete or literary ptisan or tisane, Technical roborant, analeptic, Colloq bracer, pick-me-up, pick-up, shot in the arm, US picker-upper: His father made his money selling snake-oil tonic.

--adj. 2 stimulant, stimulating, restorative, invigorating, fortifying, bracing, strengthening, reviving, enlivening, refreshing, Technical analeptic, roborant: Seeing Maddie and Max again had a tonic effect.

tool n. 1 utensil, implement, instrument, device, apparatus, appliance, contrivance, aid, machine, mechanism, gadget, Colloq contraption, gimmick, Chiefly US and Canadian gismo or gizmo: The work would go faster if you had the proper tools. 2 means, way, agency, weapon, medium, vehicle, instrumentality, avenue, road: Education is the tool you need to get anywhere in life. 3 puppet, cat's-paw, pawn, dupe, Slang stooge, sucker: I had been used merely as a tool in her ambitious rise to the top.

--v. 4 work, carve, cut, embellish, decorate, ornament, dress, shape: This is the shop where the leather is tooled and gold-stamped.

top n. 1 summit, apex, peak, acme, crest, head, pinnacle, vertex, zenith, meridian, crown, culmination, high point, height, apogee: They reached the top of the mountain at dawn. For a change, I should like to be at the top looking down. Samantha remains at the top of her profession. 2 lid, cover, cap, covering, stopper, cork: Put the top back on the bottle when you're through.

--v. 3 surpass, better, best, outstrip, exceed, outdo, excel, beat, transcend: It would be impossible to top some of his achievements. 4 surmount, cover, cap, crown, tip; finish, complete, garnish: The entire concoction was topped by a maraschino cherry. 5 trim, crop, lop or cut off, clip, prune, nip, pinch (back): All the trees in this area have been topped to let in more sunlight. 6 scale, climb, ascend, surmount: The party topped Annapurna the next day. 7 top up. fill (up), refresh, refill, replenish, US freshen (up): He asked the barman to top up our drinks.

--adj. 8 best, greatest, foremost, leading, pre-eminent, eminent, first, first-rate, principal, prime, finest, choicest, topmost; excellent, superior, superb, top-drawer, top-grade, top-notch, supreme, peerless, unequalled, incomparable, Colloq crack, ace, A-1 or A-one: Is he the top man in his field? She is a top economics adviser to the government. 9 uppermost, topmost, highest: The top fruit is the best.

topic n. subject(-matter), matter, issue, question, point, thesis, theme, text, keynote, field or area of study or of inquiry: We need to decide on a topic for tonight's discussion.

topical adj. 1 contemporary, current, up to date, timely: Drug addiction is certainly a topical subject. 2 local, superficial: For a minor injury we give a topical, not a general anaesthetic.

topple v. 1 upset, up-end, knock down or over, bring down, fell, capsize, collapse: Scores of buildings were toppled by the tornado. 2 bring or throw down, overthrow, defeat, vanquish, overcome, overturn, unseat, oust: The leaders of the coup succeeded in toppling the government in a week. 3 fall (over or down), drop, collapse, keel over, tumble down: Seven guardsmen toppled over because of the heat on the parade ground.

topsy-turvy
adj. 1 upside down, wrong side up, head over heels, inverted, reversed, backwards, vice versa: The children were wearing their pyjamas topsy-turvy. 2 chaotic, muddled, jumbled, disorderly, disordered, disorganized, confused, mixed-up, messy, untidy, in a muddle, higgledy-piggledy, Colloq arsy-versy, every which way: The room was completely topsy-turvy and it was impossible to find anything.

torment v. 1 torture, abuse, maltreat, mistreat, distress, agonize, excruciate, crucify, harrow, rack, pain: Hunger tormented his weary body. 2 worry, trouble, plague, annoy, bedevil, vex, harry, badger, hector, harass, pester, nag, persecute, needle, nettle, irk, irritate, bother, torture, afflict, Brit chivvy or chivy or chevy: I was tormented by the suspicion that something was wrong.

--n. 3 agony, wretchedness, anguish, distress, misery, pain, woe, painfulness, torture, suffering, curse, hell: How can parents endure the torment of losing a child? 4 worry, vexation, annoyance, harassment, ordeal, persecution, needling, nuisance, bane, irritation, bother, affliction, scourge, torture: For yet another day I had to suffer the torment of their company.

torpid adj. sluggish, slow, slow-moving, slow-paced, tortoise-like, lethargic, apathetic, indolent, passive, slothful, dull, stupefied, sleepy, somnolent, inactive, inert, languid, languorous, phlegmatic, spiritless, lifeless, listless, fain,ant, lackadaisical, pococurante, indifferent, uncaring, unconcerned, insouciant: Johnson said that it is a man's own fault if his mind grows torpid in old age.

torpor n. sluggishness, sloth, lethargy, apathy, indolence, passivity, slothfulness, dullness, stupefaction, drowsiness, sleepiness, somnolence, inactivity, inertia, inertness, languor, laziness, phlegm, lifelessness, listlessness, idleness, fain,ance, pococurantism, indifference, unconcern, insouciance: The heat produced a certain torpor in all of us.

torrent n. stream, rush, flood, deluge, effusion, gushing, outburst, outpouring, spate, inundation, flow, overflow, tide, cascade: In minutes the brook became a rushing torrent. They assailed us with a torrent of abuse.

torrential
adj. rushing, streaming, copious, profuse, teeming, relentless, violent; fierce, vehement, vociferous, ferocious: The torrential monsoons inundated the land. I had never heard such a torrential outpouring of oaths.

torrid adj. 1 hot, fiery, sultry, stifling, sweltering, broiling, sizzling, roasting, blazing, burning, baking, cooking, boiling, blistering, blistery, scorching, scorched, parched, parching, arid; humid, steamy, steaming, muggy; tropical: It seemed impossible that any creature could survive in such a torrid climate. 2 fervent, fervid, passionate, intense, ardent, inflamed, impassioned, lustful, amorous, erotic, Colloq sexy, hot: The film was noted for its torrid love scenes.

tortuous adj. 1 twisted, twisting, winding, wandering, serpentine, turning, crooked, sinuous, bent, curled, curling, curved, curvy, curvilinear, flexuous, anfractuous, convoluted, involuted, zigzag, maze-like, mazy, labyrinthine: They followed a tortuous trail through the jungle. 2 roundabout, indirect, devious, intricate, involved, unstraightforward, complicated, ambiguous, ambagious, circuitous, warped, crooked, tricky, misleading, deceptive: We could not help being intrigued by the tortuous Machiavellianism of the scheme.

toss v. 1 throw, cast, lob, pitch, fling, hurl, heave, shy, launch, send, let fly, propel, catapult, sling, bowl, Colloq chuck: The goalkeeper tossed the ball into the middle of the field. 2 shake, jerk, stir up, agitate, fling: Lucy disdainfully tossed her head. 3 shake (up), stir (up), agitate, jiggle, tumble, joggle; wave, lash, thrash: Don't you put the dressing on before you toss the salad? The branches of the huge oak were being tossed about in the storm. 4 writhe, wriggle, squirm, toss and turn, thrash: I tossed all night, unable to get a moment's sleep. 5 pitch, yaw, wallow, roll, lurch, undulate, plunge: Our little boat was tossed this way and that in the heavy seas.

--n. 6 throw, lob, pitch, heave, shy: His toss went wild and the ball rolled over the cliff.

tot n. child, toddler, infant, baby: Can you recall when you were a tiny tot?

total n. 1 sum (total), totality, aggregate, whole, amount, total number: The total of wounded came to only fifteen.

--adj. 2 whole, entire, complete, full, gross, overall, comprehensive: Total rainfall in that area is only three inches per annum. 3 complete, unalloyed, unmitigated, unqualified, unconditional, utter, out-and-out, thorough, thoroughgoing, perfect, outright, downright, all-out, absolute: My son is a total failure in everything he attempts.

--v. 4 add (up), tot up, sum up, reckon, compute: Please total my bill. 5 amount to, add up to, come to, mount up to: The bill totals twice the amount I paid yesterday.

totalitarian
adj. absolute, absolutist, arbitrary, authoritarian, autocratic, dictatorial, Fascist(ic), undemocratic, illiberal, monolithic, Nazi, oppressive, despotic, tyrannical: Sooner or later, totalitarian governments get overthrown.

totality n. total, aggregate, sum (total), whole, entirety, beginning and end, alpha and omega, be-all and end-all: The totality of his interests lies in watching soap operas on TV.

totally adv. completely, utterly, entirely, fully, unqualifiedly, unconditionally, perfectly, absolutely, thoroughly, wholly, consummately: We then decided on a totally different approach. The weather was totally awful.

totter v. waver, topple, falter, tremble, teeter, sway, rock, stagger, stumble, wobble, quiver, shake, quake, shiver, dodder: He seemed to totter a bit as he left the pub.

touch v. 1 put (one's) hand on, feel, handle: She leant forward and touched my hand. 2 bring into contact with, apply, put, set: He touched a match to the fuse and ran. 3 Sometimes, touch (up) against. be in contact (with), border, adjoin, meet, come up or be (up) against, push or press or lean (up) against, brush or rub (up) against, come or be together, abut: The ladder is touching the freshly painted wall. 4 lay a hand or finger on; meddle with, have to do with, interfere with, come near, approach: If you touch me, I'll scream. 5 drink, eat, consume, partake of, take, use, taste, have to do with: He swore that he would never touch alcohol again. 6 affect, impress, influence, disturb, move, stir, arouse, excite, impassion, stimulate, strike, Colloq get to: We were touched by your sympathetic note. 7 rival, match, equal, compare with, come up to, be on a par with, be a match for, be in the same league or class as or with, be on an equal footing with, reach, come or get near or close to, hold a candle to, measure up to or against, Colloq US stack up to or with or against: No other car can touch our new model for speed and safety. 8 Usually, touch on or upon. refer to, have reference to, pertain to, relate to, have a bearing on, regard, mention, allude to, speak or write of, tell of, bring up or in, raise, deal with, cover: I must now touch upon a delicate matter. 9 have access to, access, use, employ, make use of, put to use, avail (oneself) of, take, get, take advantage of: I do not touch the principal, but try to live off the interest. 10 touch down. land, alight, come to earth: We touched down for fuel at Gander, Newfoundland. 11 touch off. a detonate, spark (off), set alight, set off, ignite, light, fire, put a match to: We touched off the gunpowder and blew up the arsenal. b instigate, initiate, begin, start, set in motion, ignite, set off, trigger, provoke, foment, cause, give rise to: Her offhand remark touched off a family row that lasted for years. 12 touch up. retouch, patch up; beautify, enhance, titivate, renovate, spruce up: She said that the painting had recently been touched up. Mandy is upstairs touching up her make-up.

--n. 13 feeling, feel, texture: She wants nothing but the touch of silk next to her body. 14 pat, tap, blow, hit, stroke, brush, caress: She hated him so much that she cringed at the touch of his hand. 15 dash, hint, intimation, suggestion, soup‡on, bit, intimation, pinch, jot, spot, trace, tinge, taste, suspicion, smattering, colouring, smack, speck, drop, whiff, odour, scent, smell: Cynthia has a touch of hypocrisy about her. The salad dressing could use a touch more garlic. 16 ability, deftness, expertise, dexterity, adroitness, facility, skill, skilfulness, knack, capability, genius, talent, gift, flair: Richard has a master's touch in everything he does. 17 response, feel, responsiveness, feeling, movement, operation, performance level: This piano action has an excellent touch. 18 signature, trade mark, characteristic, influence, approach, style, manner, technique, execution, method: I thought I recognized your touch in the furniture selection. A woman's touch might have helped.

touching adj. moving, stirring, emotional, tender, poignant, pathetic, soul-stirring, heart-rending, heart-breaking, sad, pitiful, distressing, distressful: The most touching scene is the one where the boy meets his father for the first time.

touchstone
n. standard, yardstick, criterion, reference, benchmark, test, norm, measure: His craftsmanship is the touchstone by which the others are judged.

touchy adj. 1 (over-)sensitive, supersensitive, hypersensitive, highly-strung, tense, thin-skinned, crabby, crabbed, testy, irascible, irritable, tetchy, temperamental, grouchy, peevish, querulous, petulant, pettish, splenetic, captious, bad-tempered, short-tempered, hot-tempered, quick-tempered, crusty, cross, curmudgeonly, cantankerous, choleric, dyspeptic, waspish, bearish, snarling, snappish, argumentative, disputatious, contentious, US high-strung, cranky: She is very touchy on the subject of her family. He's always touchy in the morning. 2 critical, touch-and-go, sensitive, ticklish, risky, precarious, hazardous, chancy, unsure, uncertain, close, hairbreadth, dangerous, hair-raising, frightening, terrifying, nerve-racking or nerve-wracking, Jocular parlous, Colloq hairy: There was a touchy moment when the fuel leaked into the astronauts' cabin.

tough adj. 1 hard, firm, durable, long-lasting, wear-resistant, substantial, strong, stout, rugged, sturdy, sound, well-built: Only one kind of material is tough enough to endure such conditions for so long. 2 stiff, hard, leathery, inflexible, chewy, fibrous, cartilaginous, sinewy, ropy, wiry, stringy: That steak was as tough as shoe-leather. 3 strong, stalwart, brawny, burly, muscular, powerful, virile, manly, sturdy, doughty, intrepid, stout, rough, vigorous, strapping, athletic: Two tough-looking characters moved towards us, so we left. 4 difficult, demanding, exacting, hard, troublesome; laborious, taxing, strenuous: We deal with tough complaints every day. It's a tough job. 5 baffling, thorny, puzzling, perplexing, mystifying, knotty, irksome, difficult: The examiners asked us some very tough questions. 6 stubborn, hardened, inured, obstinate, obdurate, hard, harsh, severe, stern, inflexible, refractory, intractable, adamant, unyielding, ungiving, rigid, unbending, unsentimental, unfeeling, unsympathetic, callous, hard-boiled, uncaring, cold, cool, icy, stony, Colloq hard-nosed: He's a tough man to work for, but he's fair.

--interj. 7 Colloq Too bad!, Tough luck!, Hard luck!, Brit Hard cheese!, Slang Tough titty!, Taboo slang Tough shit!: When I told him that my money had been stolen, he said 'Tough!'

--n. 8 bruiser, hooligan, bully (boy), rowdy, thug, ruffian, Colloq roughneck, bruiser, tough guy, gorilla: A couple of toughs who had been threatening the cashier disappeared when they saw our uniforms.

tour n. 1 journey, trip, excursion, outing, expedition, voyage, trek, peregrination, jaunt, junket: We went on a guided tour because we were short of time and wanted to see everything. 2 stroll, perambulation, walkabout, ramble, walk, drive; round, circuit, ambit: The government representatives are on a tour of all nuclear facilities. 3 spell, shift, assignment, turn, Military period of service or enlistment: His tour of duty is not finished till midnight.

--v. 4 journey, travel, voyage, visit, trip, trek, sightsee, cruise; Colloq globe-trot: On retirement we spent a year just touring around Europe.

tourist n. traveller, voyager, visitor, sightseer, Colloq rubberneck(er), out-of-towner, Brit tripper, day-tripper, holiday-maker: During the summer, this place is inundated with tourists.

tournament

n. tourney, competition, contest, match, meeting, event, meet: The tennis tournament was delayed by rain.

tousle v. dishevel, disorder, ruffle, disarrange, tangle (up), mess (up), rumple, disarray, US muss (up): Her hair was all tousled by the wind.

tout v. 1 hawk, peddle, sell, promote, talk up, Colloq push, plug: They tout these new headache tablets as miraculous.

--n. 2 tipster: He is often seen with racetrack touts.

tow v. pull, drag, draw, haul, lug, trail, tug, trawl: The boat was towing a long purse seine. I arrived just as the police were towing away my car.

towards prep. 1 toward, in the direction of, to; for, so as to approach or near, on the way or road to: She turned towards me. I'd appreciate a lift if you're going towards Aston Clinton. 2 toward, to, for, as a help to, supporting, promoting, assisting: We welcome any contribution towards the charitable works of our order. 3 toward, near, nearing, close to, approaching, shortly before: Towards the close of day, the cattle wander back to the barns.

tower n. 1 bell-tower, campanile, minaret, pagoda, obelisk; belfry, spire, turret, steeple, flŠche: There was a time when the church tower was the tallest building in the town. 2 fortress, citadel, stronghold, castle, fastness; keep, dungeon, prison: The princess was imprisoned in the tower for a year and a day.

--v. 3 Often, tower over or above. loom, soar, rise, ascend, rear: These ugly high-rise buildings tower over everything, blocking out the sun.

towering adj. 1 lofty, tall, high, soaring, outstanding, elevated, sky-scraping, sky-high, great, impressive, imposing, huge, gigantic, supreme, superior, paramount, extraordinary, unmatched, unequally, unrivalled, unparalleled, unsurpassed: The towering American economy dominated the world for decades after World War II. 2 violent, fiery, burning, passionate, excessive, vehement, intense, consuming, mighty, overwhelming, unrestrained, immoderate, inordinate, intemperate, extreme, colossal, enormous: Every time she mentioned Valentino, he went into a towering rage.

town n. township, village, hamlet, community; municipality, city, metropolis, borough, burgh: She was born in Stornoway, a small town in the Outer Hebrides. We have to drive into the town to do our shopping.

toy n. 1 plaything: Whenever he visited, Uncle Jed brought toys for the children. 2 trifle, trinket, bauble, gewgaw, gimcrack, knick-knack, bagatelle, kickshaw, bit of frippery: After marrying her, he treated her as a rich man's toy.

--v. 3 Usually, toy with. trifle (with), dally (with), play (with), sport (with), fool (with), fiddle (with), tinker (with): He kept toying with his watch chain. 4 Usually, toy with. flirt (with), dally (with), dilly-dally (with), play (with), deal with carelessly, amuse oneself with: The cad was only toying with her affections.

--adj. 5 miniature, tiny, diminutive, small, dwarf: She breeds toy poodles. 6 imitation, fake, phoney or US also phony, simulated, artificial: This is only a toy watch and doesn't work.

20.6 trace...
=-

trace n. 1 hint, intimation, sign, token, suggestion, touch, vestige, indication, mark, record, evidence, clue: There wasn't any trace of the intruders. 2 bit, spot, speck, jot, drop, dash, suspicion, remnant, tinge, soup‡on, iota, whiff, suggestion, trifle: The traces of mud on the suspect's shoes proved he had been there. 3 Often, traces. track(s), trail, spoor, footprint(s), print(s), footmark(s): They were following the traces of a buffalo.

--v. 4 dog, pursue, follow (in the footsteps of), stalk, track (down), shadow, trail, Colloq tail: We traced him to a seedy hotel in Caracas. 5 investigate, discover, ascertain, detect, determine, find, seek, search for, hunt down or up, unearth, track: Have you traced her whereabouts? I am able to trace my ancestry back to the time of the First Crusade. 6 delineate, outline, copy, draw, map, chart, mark (out), record, reproduce, sketch: We traced Marco Polo's route to China and back.

track n. 1 line, rail(s), way, railway, US railroad: New track was laid between London and Manchester. 2 path, trail, route, footpath, course, road, street, alley: A rough track leads over

Sty Head Pass. Are you sure you're on the right track? 3 spoor, trail, footprint(s), print(s), trace(s), footmark(s), scent, slot, wake: The last time I saw him he was following the track of a yeti. 4 keep track of. trace, track, keep an eye on, follow, pursue, monitor, supervise, oversee, keep up with or on, watch, keep a record of or on, record: Using an electronic tag, we were able to keep track of the animal's movements. 5 lose track of. lose, misplace, mislay, lose sight of, forget: She lost track of some important papers. I lost track of what I was saying.

--v. 6 follow, dog, pursue, trace, stalk, shadow, trail, hunt down, chase, Colloq tail: She was tracked to Istanbul, where they lost her. 7 See 4, above. 8 track down. find, seek out, ferret out, hunt down, trace, catch, apprehend, capture, smell or sniff out, run to earth or ground, Colloq run down: We finally tracked him down at his mother's house in Putney.

trackless adj. empty, pathless, untrodden, unexplored, uncharted, virgin, untrod: We found ourselves in the trackless wilderness of central Australia.

tract° n. region, area, stretch, territory, expanse, zone, portion, section, sector, quarter, district, patch, plot, parcel, US lot: The developers own a tract of land where they plan to build a shopping mall.

tractý n. treatise, monograph, essay, article, paper, dissertation, disquisition, homily, sermon, critique; pamphlet, booklet, brochure, leaflet: Daphne was distributing tracts to passers-by in front of the church.

tractable adj. 1 docile, amenable, tame, manageable, biddable, persuadable or persuasible, compliant, easygoing, willing, submissive, obedient, governable, yielding: It was a pleasure to teach a student who was so tractable. 2 manageable, handleable, workable, adaptable, malleable, pliable, plastic, ductile, fictile: The new materials are quite tractable and can be drawn or moulded with ease.

traction n. grip, gripping power, drag, purchase, friction, adhesion: Unable to get any traction on the ice, the car skidded off the road.

trade n. 1 commerce, business, traffic, exchange, barter, dealing(s), buying and selling, merchandising, marketing, mercantilism, truck: Have we any trade in shoes with South Korea? We are establishing trade with Eastern Europe? 2 calling, occupation, pursuit, work, business, employment, line (of work), m,tier, job, vocation, craft, career, profession: Just what trade are you engaged in? 3 swap or swop, exchange, interchange, barter: Was exchanging your microwave cooker for a hi-fi set a good trade? 4 customers, clientele, custom, patrons, following, patronage, shoppers: Her shop caters chiefly to the holiday trade.

--v. 5 transact or do business, buy, sell, deal, traffic, merchandise, have dealings: There are laws against Sunday trading in some areas. 6 exchange, swap or swop, interchange, switch, barter; return: Having traded his car for the boat, Sam has no way of reaching the marina.

trader n. dealer, merchant, businessman, broker, merchandiser, distributor, seller, salesman, saleswoman, salesperson, vendor, buyer, purchaser, retailer, wholesaler: All sorts of traders can be found in the covered market.

tradesman n. 1 merchant, dealer, shopkeeper, retailer, vendor, seller: A tradesman had been ringing at the door for several minutes. 2 artisan, craftsman, journeyman, handicraftsman: He is a tradesman, a skilled cabinet-maker by profession.

tradition n. custom, practice, habit, usage, convention, ritual, rite, unwritten law, institution, form, praxis, lore: Exchanging gifts on Christmas Eve has long been a tradition in our family.

traditional

adj. customary, usual, routine, habitual, standard, household, stock, time-honoured, established, well-known, conventional, ritual, unwritten, accustomed, historic, old, ancestral: Mazetta mocha tarts were the traditional birthday cakes at home when I was a child.

traffic n. 1 movement, conveyance, shipping, transport, freight, Chiefly US transportation: Traffic across the border has resumed. 2 See trade, 1, above: Drug traffic has increased greatly in recent years.

--v. 3 See trade, 5, above: The police think that Baines is trafficking in stolen goods.

tragedy n. catastrophe, calamity, disaster, misfortune, adversity, blow: The death of their dog was a terrible tragedy, especially for the children.

tragic adj. sad, depressing, lamentable, unhappy, funereal, forlorn, melancholy, cheerless, mournful, lachrymose, dolorous, grievous, morose, lugubrious, dismal, piteous, pitiable, pitiful, pathetic(al), appalling, wretched, dreadful, awful, terrible, horrible, deplorable, miserable, distressing, disturbing, upsetting, shocking, unlucky, unfortunate, hapless, ill-fated, inauspicious, star-crossed, ill-omened, ill-starred, calamitous, catastrophic, crushing, disastrous; tragical: It was really tragic that we couldn't get there in time to say goodbye.

trail n. 1 (beaten) path, way, footpath, route, way, track, course: There is a well-worn trail through the wood. 2 track, spoor, scent, smell, trace, footsteps, footprints, path, wake: The trail of the elephant herd was quite easy to follow. 3 See train, 2, below: She was always followed by a trail of admirers.

--v. 4 tow, draw, drag (along), haul, pull, tag along, trawl, bring along (behind), carry along (behind): We were moving slowly because we were trailing a dinghy. 5 drag, pull, move, be drawn, stream, sweep, dangle: I heard the whisper of silken gowns trailing across Persian carpets. 6 lag (behind), dawdle, loiter, linger, follow, straggle, bring up the rear, hang back, fall or drop behind: Our team was trailing three-five in the final. 7 follow, pursue, dog, trace, shadow, stalk, track, chase, hunt, Colloq tail: We trailed the suspect to Victoria Station, where we lost him. 8 trail off or away. diminish, decrease, fade away or out, disappear, dwindle, lessen, die out or away, peter out, subside, taper off, weaken, grow faint or dim: As they drove away, the noise of their blasting radio trailed off.

train n. 1 carriage, coach, Baby-talk choo-choo: Will this train take me to Newcastle? 2 retinue, entourage, cortŠge, suite, following, escort, guard, attendants, retainers, followers, trail; staff, court, household: After the duke's coffin came a train of several hundred hangers-on. 3 line, queue, procession, succession, string, set, sequence, chain, progression, caravan, cavalcade, parade, column, file: The baggage train of the advancing army stretched for miles.

--v. 4 discipline, exercise, tutor, teach, coach, drill, school, instruct, prepare, educate, edify, guide, bring up, indoctrinate, rear, raise: We had been trained to put things away and avoid clutter. 5 work out, exercise, practise: Hannah is training for the next Olympics.

trait n. feature, characteristic, attribute, quality, peculiarity, idiosyncrasy, quirk, lineament, mark, property: He has some unpleasant traits, like spitting when he talks.

traitor n. turncoat, Judas, quisling, betrayer, renegade, fifth-columnist, US Benedict Arnold, Colloq double-crosser, snake in the grass, double-dealer, two-timer: Some traitor in their midst had revealed their plans to the enemy.

traitorous
adj. treacherous, perfidious, seditious, subversive, insurrectionist, renegade, insurgent, disloyal, deceitful, untrue, unfaithful, faithless; treasonable, Colloq double-crossing, double-dealing, two-timing: They identified the traitorous wretch and hanged him. Consorting with the enemy is a traitorous act.

trajectory
n. flight path, course, track: The missile has a high trajectory.

tram n. tramcar, trolley bus, US and Canadian streetcar, trolley(-car): Most cities with a traffic problem have replaced trams with buses.

trammel n. 1 Usually, trammels. impediment(s), hindrance(s), shackle(s), handicap(s), check(s), restriction(s), restraint(s), curb(s), deterrent(s), constraint(s), hitch(es), snag(s), (stumbling) block(s), obstacle(s), bar: He managed to avoid the trammels of domesticity.

--v. 2 impede, hinder, handicap, check, restrain, curb, deter, constrain, block, obstruct, fetter, confine: Do not let the limitations of what's practical and possible trammel your imagination.

tramp v. 1 march, hike, trudge, plod, slog, plough, tread, trek, walk, US mush: I must have tramped across half of England looking for work. 2 Usually, tramp on or upon. See trample, 1, below.

--n. 3 march, trudge, plod, slog, trek, hike, walk: Every day we had to make the five-mile tramp into the village for water. 4 derelict, vagabond, vagrant, drifter, rover, gypsy, beachcomber, Brit dosser, down-and-out, Australian swagman, US hobo, bum, down-and-outer: The police do not allow tramps to sleep in public parks. 5 step, tread, footfall, footstep: She couldn't get to sleep until she heard her husband's tramp on the stair.

trample v. 1 trample on or upon, tramp (on or upon), stamp (on), tread (on), step on, crush, press, squash, flatten, Colloq stomp (on or upon), squish, squush or squoosh: After the harvest, we would take turns trampling the grapes. 2 Often, trample on or upon. violate, damage, harm, hurt, infringe or encroach on, ride roughshod over, set at naught, scorn, contemn, disdain, defy, disregard, ignore, fly in the face of, fling or cast or throw to the winds: The military regime trampled on the people's civil rights. 3 Usually, trample out. trample down, trample underfoot, stamp out, extinguish, put out, destroy, crush, break down: The left-wing parties were trampled in a military coup.

trance n. daze, stupor, semi-conscious or half-conscious or hypnotic or cataleptic or dream state, state of semi-consciousness or half-consciousness or catalepsy or suspended animation or stupefaction or abstraction or (complete) absorption or exaltation or rapture or ecstasy; brown study: He walked about all day in a trance, oblivious to what was going on around him.

tranquil adj. calm, serene, placid, quiet, peaceful, still, smooth, unagitated, halcyon, relaxed; unruffled, sedate, steady, regular, even, dispassionate, self-possessed, cool, self-controlled, cool-headed, unexcited, undisturbed, untroubled, unperturbed: He often thought back to the tranquil, sultry summer days of his youth. How can Eleanor be so tranquil when everything about her is so chaotic?

tranquillize

v. calm, soothe, pacify, still, quiet, relax, lull, compose, sedate: He soon fell asleep, tranquillized by the medication that had been administered to him.

tranquillizer

n. bromide, barbiturate, opiate, sedative, anti-psychotic, anti-anxiety drug, Slang downer, red: She had been prescribed tranquillizers, and developed severe side-effects.

transact v. do, carry on or out, conduct, manage, handle, negotiate, transact, administer, discharge, perform, enact, settle, conclude, complete, finish: We are flying to Frankfurt today to transact some business.

transaction

n. 1 deal, dealing, negotiation, matter, affair, business, action, proceeding, agreement, arrangement, bargain: This transaction must not be revealed to the stock market. 2 transactions. proceedings, record(s), acta, minutes, annals, Colloq goings-on, doings: The Society's transactions are published annually.

transcend v. surpass, outstrip, exceed, go beyond, outdistance, overstep, outdo, excel, overshadow, top, outdistance, outvie, rise above, outshine, beat: Her performance at La Scala transcended that of every other Mimi I have heard.

transcendent

adj. peerless, incomparable, unequalled, matchless, unrivalled, unparalleled, unique, consummate, paramount, superior, surpassing, supreme, pre-eminent, sublime, excellent, superb, magnificent, marvellous; transcendental: Can there be any doubt of Einstein's transcendent genius?

transcribe

v. 1 copy, reproduce, replicate, duplicate: I am busy transcribing my lecture notes. 2 translate, transliterate, write out, render, represent, show, interpret: The Rosetta Stone has the same text transcribed in Egyptian hieroglyphics and in demotic as well as in Greek.

transcript
n. 1 transcription, translation, transliteration, rendering, interpretation, representation: Most linguists regarded writing as a mere transcript of language. 2 (carbon or machine or Xerox or photostatic or xerographic) copy, carbon, duplicate, duplication, photocopy, reproduction, Photostat, Colloq dupe: I have requested a transcript of the court proceedings.

transfer v. 1 move, transport, convey, remove, carry, take, deliver, bring, transmit, cart, haul, shift, hand (on or over), turn over, give, pass (on or along or over): The documents will be transferred to you today.

--n. 2 move, conveyance, transmittal, transmission, delivery, change: The papers documenting the transfer of the property are here.

transfix v. 1 pin, fix, impale, skewer, nail, pierce, spear, spike, spit, stick: The shrike, or butcher-bird, transfixes its prey on a thorn, then picks its bones clean. 2 enrapture, galvanize, electrify, hypnotize, mesmerize, rivet,,fascinate, bewitch, enchant, ensorcel, engross, root to the spot, stun, paralyse, Colloq stop dead (in one's tracks): The felon stood transfixed with terror as the judge pronounced sentence.

transform v. change, modify, transfigure, alter, transmute, metamorphose, turn into, convert, transmogrify, mutate, permute: What will it take to transform these students into civilized human beings?

transformation
n. change, modification, transfiguration, transfigurement, alteration, transmutation, metamorphosis, conversion, transmogrification, mutation, permutation: The transformation in her appearance over a few short months was miraculous.

transfuse v. 1 instil, transmit, transfer, inject: Her greatest success was to transfuse a sense of history to her students. 2 infuse, permeate: An embarrassed blush transfused his face.

transgress
v. 1 sin, trespass, offend, err, lapse, fall from grace,

disobey, misbehave, go wrong or astray, do wrong: She knew she had transgressed and was ready to atone. 2 break or violate or contravene or go beyond or exceed or overstep or infringe or defy or disobey (the law): He had blatantly transgressed the laws of decency.

transgression

n. sin, trespass, offence, error, lapse, fall from grace, disobedience, misbehaviour, wrong, violation, fault, misdeed, misdemeanour, crime, wrongdoing, infraction: How should he be punished for his transgressions?

transgressor

n. sinner, offender, criminal, felon, culprit, lawbreaker, trespasser, wrongdoer, evil-doer, villain, miscreant, malefactor, delinquent: The majority of transgressors are apprehended within 24 hours of the crime.

transient adj. transitory, temporary, brief, fleeting, momentary, passing, ephemeral, fugacious, fugitive, evanescent, short-lived, short-term, impermanent, fly-by-night, volatile: The peace was transient, as the outbreak of civil war soon followed. A souvenir shop obviously sells more to the transient trade than to residents.

transit n. 1 moving, movement, travel, travelling, motion, passing, progress, progression, transition; passage, traverse, traversal, traversing: We were unable to mail any letters while we were in transit. The overland transit of the island took three days. 2 transport, transportation, carriage, haulage, cartage, conveyance, transfer, transference, transferral, transmittal: The transit of the merchandise will be handled by our regular shipping company.

--v. 3 cross, traverse, go or move or pass or travel across or over or through: They were advised to check with authorities of every country visited or transited during their journey.

transition

n. 1 change, alteration, metamorphosis, change-over, transformation, transmutation, mutation, development, evolution, conversion, modification, metastasis: Tracing the transition from tadpole to frog is exciting for young pupils. 2 See transit, 1, above.

translate v. 1 convert, paraphrase, change, rewrite, interpret, transcribe, render, decode, decipher, metaphrase: Can you translate this German document? 2 transform, convert, change, mutate, turn, transmute, metamorphose, transubstantiate, alter, transmogrify: Why are people always trying to translate the dross of reality into the gold of dreams? 3 interpret, rewrite, explain, reword, elucidate, spell out: Can you translate this technical legal jargon into plain English? 4 transfer, convey, carry, move, transport, forward, ship, send, dispatch or despatch: Soon after being made bishop of Worcester, he was translated to Winchester.

translation

n. 1 conversion, paraphrase, interpretation, transcription, transliteration, rendering, rendition, metaphrase, gloss, decipherment, decoding: It was Michael Ventris who was responsible for the translation of Linear B. 2 metamorphosis, change, alteration, transmutation, transfiguration, transformation, transmogrification, transubstantiation, conversion: The translation from the caterpillar to the butterfly is miraculous. 3 interpretation, rewriting, rewrite, explanation, rewording, elucidation: He is well known for his translation of abstract ideas into terms that an intelligent layman could cope with. 4 transfer, transference, transferral, conveyance, carrying, moving, movement, transportation, transport, forwarding, shipping, shipment, sending, transmission, dispatch or despatch: His translation to a minor consular post in the south Pacific was expected.

transmission

n. 1 transfer, transference, transferral, transferring, conveyance, carrying, moving, movement, transportation, transport, transporting, forwarding, shipping, shipment, sending, transmittal, transmitting, dispatch or despatch, dispatching or despatching: We were unable to arrange for the transmission of the papers in time for the meeting. 2 broadcast, broadcasting, sending, telecasting, dissemination, communication: Transmission of the new programmes begins next year.

transmit v. 1 send, transfer, convey, communicate, pass on, deliver, forward, dispatch or despatch; post, ship, cable, radio, telegraph, fax, telex, telephone, phone, Chiefly US and Canadian mail, Colloq wire: Your message was transmitted last night. 2 pass or go through, pass on, send, put, direct, conduct, channel: The mirror transmits the light through this filter.

transparent

adj. 1 (crystal) clear, pellucid, diaphanous, see-through, limpid, crystalline, sheer, transpicuous: I want completely transparent glass in this window, instead of that frosted glass. 2 plain, apparent, obvious, evident, unambiguous, patent, manifest, unmistakable or unmistakeable, (crystal) clear, as plain as day, as plain as the nose on (one's) face, undisguised, recognizable, understandable, transpicuous: The origin of many English words is transparent because of their spelling. 3 candid, open, frank, plain-spoken, direct, unambiguous, unequivocal, straightforward, ingenuous, forthright, above-board, artless, guileless, simple, na‹ve, undissembling, Colloq on the level, upfront: His transparent honesty makes Clive unsuited to a career in diplomacy.

transpire v. 1 become known, be rumoured, be revealed, come to light: It transpired that she had been seeing him while she was still married. 2 Sometimes non-standard happen, occur, take place, come about, come to pass, materialize, arise, turn out: No improvement has yet transpired in their living conditions.

transplant

v. displace, move, remove, relocate, shift, uproot, resettle, transfer: This is the third time the company has transplanted Harry in a year!

transport v. 1 carry, bear, convey, move, remove, transfer, deliver, fetch, bring, get, take, ship, haul, transmit, send, forward: The goods were transported by ship. 2 exile, banish, deport, send away: Australia was settled mainly by people who had been transported from England. 3 carry away, enrapture, captivate, delight, charm, spellbind, bewitch, fascinate, enchant, entrance, hypnotize, mesmerize, electrify, ravish: Flavia's parents were totally transported by her winning the decathlon.

--n. 4 transportation, carrier, conveyance, shipping, transfer, transferral, shipment, haulage, cartage, carriage, moving:

Can't you give me any idea of what the transport costs might come to? 5 Usually, transports. rapture, ecstasy, exaltation, exultation, euphoria, delight, (seventh) heaven, happiness, bliss, elation, exhilaration, thrill, Elysium, paradise; Elysian Fields, Colloq cloud nine: Helen succumbed to transports of delight at seeing her son receive such an important award.

transpose v. exchange, interchange, metathesize, switch, swap or swop, trade, commute, transfer: The bank transposed two figures on my statement, reducing my balance by œ500.

trap n. 1 snare, pitfall, gin, springe, deadfall, booby-trap: After the Pied Piper left, Hamelin had no further need for rat traps. 2 trick, subterfuge, wile, ruse, stratagem, ambush, deception, device, artifice, ploy: Oscar was the man for whom Esther set a neat trap. 3 mouth, Slang yap, gob, mush, face: Shut your trap or get out.

--v. 4 snare, ensnare, entrap, catch, net: We dug a pit to trap the marauding lion. 5 imprison, confine, lock, hold, keep: The boy was trapped in the cave without a means of escape. 6 trick, deceive, fool, dupe, beguile, inveigle: Esther finally trapped Oscar into marrying her.

trappings n.pl. accoutrements or US also accouterments, panoply, caparison, equipage, apparatus, equipment, paraphernalia, appointments, furnishings, furniture, gear, rig, habiliments, decoration(s), embellishment(s), accessories, frippery or fripperies, adornment(s), trimmings, raiment, fittings, finery: Many respect the trappings of office more than the office-holder.

trash n. 1 rubbish, (stuff and) nonsense, balderdash, moonshine, gibberish, gobbledegook or gobbledygook, tommy-rot, bunkum, garbage, twaddle, Colloq rot, flapdoodle, crap, codswallop, bosh, piffle, hooey, bunk, malarkey, poppycock, boloney or baloney, eyewash, hogwash, bilge-water, bull, Scots havers, Brit tosh, gammon, US a crock, hokum, gurry, horse feathers, Slang Brit (a load of (old)) cobblers, Taboo slang bullshit, horseshit, Brit balls, US a crock of shit: Don't believe him - he is talking trash. 2 (Chiefly US and Canadian) junk, brummagem, knick-knacks, gewgaws, trifles, bric-…-brac, frippery or fripperies, bits and pieces, odds and ends, trinkets, tinsel, 'Not Wanted on Voyage': There was mostly trash in the flea market, but there were one or two more valuable items. 3 (In US and Canada) rubbish, litter, garbage, waste, refuse, junk, debris, rubble, dregs, dross, scoria, slag, offscourings, dirt, sweepings, Slang crap: The service comes to remove the trash once a week.

--v. 4 Slang chiefly US destroy, ruin, wreck, vandalize, deface: The lodgers trashed the flat before doing a moonlight flit.

traumatic adj. shocking, upsetting, disturbing, painful, agonizing, distressing, harmful, hurtful, injurious, damaging, wounding, traumatizing: Few experiences are more traumatic than losing a child.

travel n. 1 travelling, tourism, touring, globe-trotting: Travel is an enriching experience. Travel by air is the commonest means of long-distance transport. 2 travels. trips, expeditions, journeys, excursions, tours, voyages, touring, treks, trekking, travelling, wanderings, peregrinations, junkets, pilgrimages: In all your travels, have you ever encountered an honest man?

--v. 3 journey, go, move, proceed, roam, rove, traverse, tour, take or make a trip or tour or excursion or junket or journey, trek, voyage: As one who has travelled far and wide, what is your favourite country? 4 go, move, socialize, fraternize, associate, Colloq hang around or about: Cordelia and I do not travel in the same circles.

traveller n. tourist, voyager, sightseer, globe-trotter, gypsy, wanderer, hiker, rover, wayfarer, Jocular bird of passage, Colloq rubberneck(er), jet-setter, Chiefly Brit tripper, day-tripper, holiday-maker: Travellers have been greatly inconvenienced by the strike of customs officials.

travelling

adj. itinerant, wandering, peripatetic, roving, mobile, nomadic, touring, wayfaring, migratory, restless: At fourteen, he joined a travelling circus.

traverse v. 1 cross, criss-cross, travel or pass or move over or through, walk, cover, travel (over), roam, wander, range, tramp, tour: He has traversed the country from end to end innumerable times. 2 cross, criss-cross, go across; lie or extend across or athwart, bridge, intersect: The road traverses the river several times at Newtown. 3 oppose, cross, thwart, go or act against, go or act in opposition or counter to, conflict (with), controvert, contravene, counter, obstruct, contradict, gainsay, deny: The policies of today seem to traverse those set forth only last year. 4 examine, look into, scrutinize, inspect, investigate, review, study, look at, consider, contemplate, scan, look over, check, survey, reconnoitre, observe: Certain areas of knowledge are seldom traversed by scholars.

treasure n. 1 wealth, riches, money, fortune, valuables, cash, cache, hoard: The existence of the treasure came to light only last week. 2 pride (and joy), delight, joy, darling, ideal, apple of (one's) eye, Colloq jewel, gem, prize, find, catch: Kathy is a treasure and I don't know what we did before we hired her.

--v. 3 hold dear, cherish, value, prize, esteem, rate or value highly: We treasure the signed letter that Churchill wrote to my father. I treasure every moment we can spend together.

treasury n. exchequer, bank, cache, resources, funds, money(s): There was not enough money in the treasury to pay for the scheme. The Treasury indicated their concern at the current state of the economy.

treat v. 1 handle, manage, behave or act toward(s), deal with; use: Why should we treat female employees any differently? 2 handle, manage, deal with, discuss, touch on or upon, consider, take up, study, examine, explore, investigate, scrutinize, analyse, go into, probe, survey, expound (on), criticize, review, critique: That subject is treated in Chapter VI. 3 nurse, doctor, attend, care for, look after, prescribe for, medicate: He is being treated for gallstones. 4 entertain, take out, pay for, regale, play host to; wine and dine: Our visitors treated us when we went out to dinner yesterday. 5 treat (someone) to (something). pay (the bill) for, buy (something) for: Edward treated us all to ice-cream.

--n. 6 favour, gift, present, boon, bonus, premium, Colloq US and Canadian freebie: Put your money away - this is my treat.

treatment n. 1 Often, treatment of. behaviour (towards), conduct (towards), action (towards), handling (of), care (of), management (of), dealing(s) (with), manipulation (of), reception (of); usage (of): I am not accustomed to such rude treatment. Your treatment of our customers must be more courteous, Miss Davidson. 2 therapy, care, curing, remedying, healing: They received extensive medical treatment for the injuries they had sustained.

treaty n. pact, agreement, alliance, concordat, entente, covenant, deal, contract, compact, accord: They entered into a treaty not to violate each other's borders.

tremble v. 1 quiver, shake, quake, shiver, shudder, quaver, quail; vibrate, rock: Her first big role and she was trembling like a leaf! The earth trembled as the tanks rolled past.

--n. 2 quiver, shake, quake, shiver, shudder, quaver, tremor; vibration: There was a little tremble, and then the building collapsed.

tremulous adj. 1 trembling, a-tremble, quivering, shaking, quaking, shivering, shuddering, quavering, hesitant, wavering, unsure, unsteady, faltering, doubtful, nervous, shaky, palpitating, jumpy, Colloq jittery: His tremulous hands revealed just how apprehensive he was. 2 timid, shy, bashful, anxious, worried, timorous, fearful, afraid, frightened, scared: I cannot remember when I felt so tremulous before meeting someone.

trenchant adj. cutting, keen, acute, sharp, pointed, poignant, penetrating, incisive, biting, mordant, mordacious, sarcastic, bitter, acerbic, acid, vitriolic, tart, acrid, acrimonious, acidulous, corrosive, caustic: The critics dismissed the play with a few trenchant remarks.

trend n. 1 tendency, leaning, bias, bent, drift, course, inclination, direction: The trend seems to be towards shorter skirts. 2 fashion, style, vogue, mode, look, rage, Colloq fad, craze, thing: Why is she so compulsive about keeping up with the latest trends?

--v. 3 tend, lean, be biased, bend, drift, incline, veer, turn, swing, shift, head: At the convention, the party leaders trended more to the left of centre.

trendy adj. 1 fashionable, stylish, … la mode, modern, up to date, up to the minute, in vogue, voguish, all the rage, Slang hot, now, with it, groovy, in the groove, in, flash: Sibyl travels with that trendy set from Belgravia.

--n. 2 show-off, clothes-horse, coxcomb, exhibitionist, Slang Brit pseud, grandstander: Don't you just hate those trendies down at Cole's wine bar?

trial n. 1 test, testing, experiment, proof, try-out, trying out, trial run, examination, check, checking, Colloq dry run: The trials of the new life-jackets are to be conducted soon. 2 hearing, enquiry or inquiry, examination, inquisition, litigation, judicial proceeding, lawsuit, contest: Throughout the trial, the accused protested his innocence. 3 try, attempt, endeavour, effort, venture, essay, Colloq go, shot, stab, fling, whirl, crack, whack: This was their first trial at climbing the north face. 4 trouble, affliction, tribulation, hardship, adversity, suffering, grief, woe, misery, distress, bad or hard luck, misfortune, hard times: Mona acknowledged the trial of having ten children and no husband. 5 nuisance, irritation, bother, bane, annoyance, pest, irritant, thorn in the flesh or side, US bur or burr under the saddle, Colloq plague, hassle, pain (in the neck), headache, Taboo slang pain in the Brit arse or US ass: William, who is full of mischief, is a constant trial to his mother.

--adj. 6 sample, experimental, exploratory, provisional, probationary, tentative, conditional, pilot: Will you consider a trial subscription to Verbatim, The Language Quarterly?

tribe n. race, stock, strain, nation, breed, people, seed, (ethnic) group, gens, clan, blood, pedigree, family, sept, dynasty, house; caste, class: It was important in that society to marry someone from the same tribe.

tribunal n. court (of justice), bar, bench, judiciary, Inquisition, Star Chamber: Should he be tried before a judicial tribunal or pilloried by the tribunal of public opinion?

tributary n. branch, offshoot, streamlet, feeder, brook, rivulet, run, rill, runnel, runlet, streamlet, Scots and No. Eng. burn, No. Eng. beck, US creek, NE US kill: The Teviot is one of the tributaries of the Tweed.

tribute   n. 1 honour, homage, recognition, celebration, respect, esteem, testimonial, compliment, encomium, acknowledgement, acclaim, acclamation, commendation, praise, kudos, laudation, panegyric, eulogy, glorification, exaltation: No greater tribute could be bestowed than recognition by one's fellows. 2 tax, exaction, impost, duty, excise, levy, dues, assessment, tariff, charge, surcharge, payment, contribution, offering, gift; ransom; tithe, Peter's or Peter pence: In exchange for their freedom, the king demanded an annual tribute of a thousand oxen.

trick   n. 1 ruse, artifice, device, stratagem, wile, deception, manoeuvre, deceit, fraud, hoax, imposture, intrigue, machination, conspiracy, subterfuge, dodge, confidence trick, sham, Slang con: The government's 'dirty tricks squad' perpetrated crimes against their political adversaries. 2 prank, frolic, antic, (practical) joke, hoax, tomfoolery, antic, caper, jape; sport, horseplay, mischief; Scots cantrip, Colloq leg-pull, gag, shenanigans, US dido: The boys meant no harm, they're just up to their tricks. 3 art, knack, technique, skill, secret, gift, ability, Colloq hang: He has developed the trick of persuading people to buy life insurance. 4 Usually, no mean trick. feat, accomplishment, deed: It was no mean trick to train a cat to fetch his slippers. 5 sleight of hand, legerdemain, magic, stunt: I have taught him all the tricks I know. 6 trait, characteristic, peculiarity, idiosyncrasy, eccentricity, quirk, practice, habit, mannerism, crotchet, weakness, foible: He has an odd trick of winking while giving a sly smile. 7 do the trick. work, answer, fulfil the need, suffice, be effective, solve or take care of the problem, do or accomplish the necessary, US turn the trick, Colloq fill the bill: Replacing the battery cable did the trick.

--v. 8 fool, hoodwink, dupe, mislead, outwit, outmanoeuvre, deceive, misguide, misinform, gull, bilk, cheat, defraud, cozen, take in, swindle, humbug, Colloq bamboozle, take, put something over on (someone), pull the wool over (someone's) eyes, Brit gammon, Slang rook: I knew I had been tricked when I missed my wallet. For years the couple made a living tricking tourists out of their money. She tricked me into taking her to dinner.

--adj. 9 See tricky, 3, below.

trickery n. chicanery, deception, deceit, guile, shrewdness, craftiness, slyness, shiftiness, evasiveness, artfulness, artifice, craft, imposture, swindling, knavery, duplicity, double-dealing, fraud, cheating, Colloq hanky-panky, skulduggery, funny or monkey business, jiggery-pokery: He separated her from her money by trickery.

trickle v. 1 drip, drop, dribble, drizzle, run, flow, spill; ooze, seep, leak, exude: The water trickled onto the floor. Blood is trickling from the wound.

--n. 2 drip, seepage, spill, dribble, runnel, runlet, rivulet: A tiny trickle of saliva appeared at the corner of his mouth.

tricky adj. 1 deceitful, shady, deceptive, shifty, dodgy, artful, guileful, crafty, duplicitous, shrewd, cunning, dishonest, devious, sly, wily, slippery, foxy, double-dealing, cheating: Arthur is a tricky chap and I shouldn't trust him. 2 ticklish, risky, hazardous, sensitive, delicate, touch-and-go, thorny, difficult, awkward, complex, complicated, knotty, uncertain, debatable, Colloq iffy, sticky: It is a tricky decision whether you tell a patient how ill he really is. 3 unfair, unjust, unsportsmanlike, deceptive, Colloq trick: There were some tricky questions in today's exam.

trifle n. 1 knick-knack, trinket, bauble, bagatelle, toy, gewgaw, nothing, plaything, bˆtise, Colloq doodah: Oh, it's nothing, just a trifle I picked up in the Seychelles. 2 little, bit, drop, iota, scintilla, suggestion, dash, dab, pinch, whiff, mite, whit, jot, tittle, Colloq smidgen or smidgin, US tad: I'd like a trifle more sugar in my coffee, if you don't mind.

--v. 3 Usually, trifle with. dally (with), flirt (with), wanton (with), mess about (with), toy (with); play (with), fiddle (with), dandle, tinker (with), fidget (with): I hated to see the way he trifled with my sister's affections. While trifling with this knob, I was able to get Radio Moscow.

trifling adj. trivial, insignificant, unimportant, puny, minor, paltry, slight, petty, inconsequential, frivolous, superficial, incidental, negligible, commonplace, inconsiderable, shallow, valueless, worthless, US and Canadian picayune, Colloq piddling: Their contribution to musical scholarship has been trifling.

trim adj. 1 neat, tidy, orderly, well-ordered, well-groomed, well turned out, well-kempt, smart, crisp, dapper, spick and span, spruce, shipshape (and Bristol fashion), Archaic or dialectal trig, Colloq natty, US spiffy: Nancy arrived wearing her trim new flight-attendant's uniform. 2 in good or fine fettle, fit (as a fiddle), athletic, slim, slender, clean-cut, shapely, streamlined, compact: Larry looks so trim that I asked him if he had lost weight. The new convertible model is a very trim little motor-car.

--v. 3 curtail, shorten, prune, pare, lop (off), crop, bob, clip, cut, shave, shear, snip, dock; barber: They trimmed the article by cutting two paragraphs from the end. He had shaved off his beard and trimmed his moustache. 4 decorate, embellish, dress up, embroider, adorn, ornament, deck out, caparison, beautify: When should we trim the Christmas tree?

--n. 5 trimming, edging, piping, purfling, ricrac or rickrack, embroidery, border, hem, frill, fringe, ornament, ornamentation, decoration, embellishment, adornment: The skirt was spoilt by a rather cheap trim round the hem. 6 condition, state, fettle, health, form, order, fitness, repair, Colloq shape: Sid's car seemed to be in good trim when I saw it yesterday.

trio n. threesome, trilogy, triad, triplex, triple, troika, triptych, triumvirate, triplet, trine, triune, trinity, three: An interesting trio showed up for dinner.

trip n. 1 stumble, slip, blunder, false step, misstep, fall: He sprained his ankle in that trip on the stair. 2 stumble, slip, blunder, false step, misstep, faux pas, error, mistake, indiscretion, lapse, slip of the tongue, lapsus linguae, erratum, oversight; Freudian slip; Slang Brit boob: If it hadn't been for that one trip, we would have had a perfect score. 3 tour, journey, excursion, outing, expedition, voyage, trek, peregrination, jaunt, junket, drive: We took a short side-trip to visit Khios.

--v. 4 dance, caper, skip, cavort, gambol, frisk, hop, spring:

Joanne came tripping gaily down the Champs •lys‚es. 5 stumble, slip, blunder, misstep, fall (down), tumble, topple, dive, plunge, sprawl, lurch, flounder, stagger, falter: I tripped on the doorstep and went head over heels. 6 Often, trip up. trap, trick, catch out, unsettle, throw off, disconcert: She has been trying to trip me up and confess to something I didn't do. 7 journey, travel, voyage, visit, tour, trek, sightsee, cruise; Colloq globe-trot: They have been tripping all over Europe this summer. 8 detonate, set off, trigger, operate, release, explode, spark off: When he touched the wire, he tripped the charge. 9 Often, trip out. hallucinate, Slang freak out, turn on: There's no talking to him when he's tripping out on coke.

triumph n. 1 victory, conquest, success, achievement, accomplishment, attainment, coup, ascendancy: The discovery of the drug was perhaps the greatest of his many triumphs. 2 exultation, rejoicing, exulting, elation, delight, rapture, exhilaration, jubilation, happiness, joy, celebration, glory: There was great triumph on winning the World Cup.

--v. 3 Often, triumph over. win, succeed, carry the day, be victorious, gain a victory, take the honours, thrive, dominate, prevail; defeat, beat, rout, vanquish, best, conquer, overcome, overwhelm, subdue: Does justice always triumph? The book is about how man triumphed over pain.

triumphal adj. celebratory, rapturous, jubilant, joyful, glorious, exultant; commemorative: A holiday was declared to celebrate her triumphal entry into the city. This triumphal arch commemorates Trajan's victory over the Dacians.

triumphant

adj. victorious, successful, conquering, winning; undefeated: The triumphant hero returns tonight!

triviality

n. 1 smallness, unimportance, insignificance, meaninglessness, inconsequentiality or inconsequentialness or inconsequence or inconsequentness, trivialness, pettiness, paltriness: I have difficulty coping with the triviality of some of my boss's requests. 2 trifle, technicality, non-essential, small matter, unimportant or insignificant or inconsequential or trivial or petty detail, bˆtise: He tends to get bogged down in trivialities, unable to see what is important.

trivialize
v. belittle, denigrate, lessen, minimize, undervalue, depreciate, underestimate, underrate, make light of, laugh off, underplay, dismiss, disparage, misprize, beggar, deprecate, slight, scoff at, scorn, run down, decry, Colloq put down, play down, pooh-pooh: Edward tends to trivialize the work of others.

trophy n. 1 prize, laurel(s), wreath, cup, award, reward, honour(s), medal, citation, palm, bays; booty, spoils, Colloq gold, silver, silverware: He has won trophies for more boat races than I have participated in. 2 memento, souvenir, token, record, reminder, remembrance, keepsake: That scar is a trophy of a hand-to-hand fight near El Alamein.

trot v. 1 jog, run; bustle, hustle, hurry, hasten, scamper, scoot, Colloq skedaddle: I trot round the park every morning for exercise. As I need some butter, I'd better trot down to the shop before it closes. 2 trot out. bring out, show, display, exhibit, flaunt, come out with; dredge up, drag out; recite, repeat: Our neighbour trotted out his new lawnmower for us to admire.

--n. 3 jog, lope, single-foot, pace; run: It was a delight to watch the young horses in a fast trot round the track. 4 translation, gloss, interpretation, crib, Colloq US pony, horse: He couldn't read Homer without a trot.

trouble v. 1 bother, upset, anguish, alarm, worry, afflict, agitate, disquiet, discomfit, make uncomfortable, grieve, perturb, discommode, inconvenience, discompose, discountenance, put out, burden, encumber, weigh down: I don't mean to trouble you with my problems, but I have no one else to turn to. 2 annoy, irritate, irk, vex, bother, plague, pester, torment, harass, hector, harry, provoke, nettle, exasperate, ruffle, Colloq get or grate on (someone's) nerves, give (someone) a hard time, get under (someone's) skin: Vincent keeps troubling me for advice on starting a new business. 3 discommode, incommode, impose on, inconvenience, put out, thank: I'll trouble you to turn off the light when you leave the room. 4 care, be concerned, take the trouble or the time, go to the trouble, bother, exert (oneself), concern (oneself), take pains: He never troubled to find out if his family was safe.

--n. 5 distress, worry, concern, difficulty, discomfort, unpleasantness, inconvenience, vexation, grief, woe, affliction, disquiet, suffering, tribulation, anxiety, torment, anguish, strife: Her trouble began when her ex-husband stopped paying for child support. How can someone so insignificant cause so much trouble? 6 annoyance, bother, tormenter, irritation, nuisance, nag, heckler, pest, Slang US nudnik: Ever since she lost her job, she's been a trouble to her family. 7 disorder, agitation, row, disturbance, turbulence, tumult, upset, dissatisfaction, unrest, discord, dispute, turmoil, rebellion, revolt, uprising, outbreak, fighting, fight, skirmishing, skirmish: The trouble began when workers refused to allow management to hire replacements. 8 affliction, defect, disability, disease, ailment, illness, sickness, disorder, complaint: With her trouble she ought to see a doctor. 9 in trouble. a in deep trouble, in a mess, in a predicament, in dire straits, Colloq in a pickle, in hot water, on the spot, in a scrape, Slang Brit in shtook or shtuk or shtuck or schtuck, Taboo slang in deep shit, up shit creek (without (the vestige of) a paddle): They will be in terrible trouble if the bank forecloses on the mortgage. b unmarried or unwed and impregnated or pregnant or with child or expecting or in a delicate condition or colloq in a family way: Most of the girls who are in trouble are teenagers.

troublemaker

n. mischief-maker, rabble-rouser, gadfly, firebrand, agent provocateur, stormy petrel, incendiary, gossip-monger, scandalmonger, malcontent, instigator, meddler, agitator: As far as the police were concerned, any protester was, by definition, a troublemaker.

troublesome

adj. worrisome, worrying, annoying, irksome, irritating, vexatious, bothersome, distressing, difficult, burdensome, Colloq pestiferous, US and Canadian pesky: We sometimes have to put up with troublesome motor-cycle gangs.

truant n. 1 malingerer, runaway, absentee, delinquent, dodger, shirker, idler, loafer, layabout, Slang Brit skiver, Brit military scrimshanker: Truants were warned that their parents would be required to visit the school.

--adj. 2 malingering, runaway, absent, absentee, delinquent, shirking, loafing, Slang Brit skiving: The officer brought in three truant boys found fishing at the lake.

truce n. 1 armistice, cease-fire, suspension of hostilities, lull, moratorium, respite, let-up, intermission, interval, interlude: It looked as if the truce might last. 2 pact, treaty, compact, agreement, cease-fire, armistice: If both sides abide by the truce the war might be over.

truck n. 1 merchandise, commodities, goods, stock, wares, stuff, odds and ends, sundries, junk, rubbish, US trash: There was no one in the shop and all the truck was stacked in the corner. 2 dealing(s), traffic, business, transaction, trade, commerce, communication, contact, connection, (business or social) relations: She refuses to have any truck with the likes of you.

truckle v. kowtow, be obsequious, toady, defer, bow, scrape, genuflect, salaam, drop to the ground or to (one's) knees or down on (one's) knees, submit, yield, cower, cringe, grovel, crawl, quail, fawn (on or upon), Colloq butter up, fall all over, lick (someone's) boots, boot-lick, US apple-polish, Slang suck up to, Taboo slang brown-nose, kiss (someone's) Brit arse or US ass: Just look how Caroline is always truckling to the boss, hoping for favours.

truculent adj. surly, sullen, bad-tempered, ill-tempered, unpleasant, nasty, obstreperous, rude, unpleasant, ferocious, fierce, savage, feral, barbarous, harsh, scathing, virulent, combative, belligerent, antagonistic, bellicose, hostile, contentious, warlike, violent, pugnacious, Colloq scrappy: I don't care enough for this job to endure the boss's truculent attitude a moment longer.

true adj. 1 accurate, correct, truthful, faithful, literal, authentic, veracious, actual, factual, realistic, genuine, right, valid, unelaborated, unvarnished, unadulterated, verified, verifiable: Do you swear that this is a true account of what actually took place? 2 staunch, faithful, devoted, dedicated, loyal, fast, firm, unswerving, steady, steadfast, trustworthy, trusty, dutiful, upright, honourable, constant, unwavering, stable, dependable, sincere, reliable, true-blue: D'Artagnan proved himself to be a true friend. 3 proper, exact, accurate, unerring, correct, precise, right, Slang Brit spot on: It is important that these matters be seen in their true perspective. If this is a true copy of the original, please sign it.

--adv. 4 truly, truthfully, honestly, accurately, candidly, frankly, sincerely, straightforwardly: Tell me true, do you love me? If the report speaks true, then we must find the culprit. 5 exactly, correctly; geographically: We sail true north to Iceland. 6 come true. come to pass, occur, take, place, happen, be realized, become a reality, be fulfilled: Her dreams finally came true when she bought a little house in Kent.

truism n. commonplace, platitude, bromide, axiom, clich,, maxim: You can rely on Vera to utter a truism like, 'It's a nice day', on a warm, sunny day.

truly adv. 1 truthfully, actually, really, honestly, in fact, in truth, in actuality, in reality, in all honesty, sincerely, genuinely: Are you truly giving up your job to get married? I truly believed her to be guilty. 2 properly, rightly, rightfully, justly, legitimately, justifiably, duly, well and truly, accurately: In the circumstances, can we truly condemn him for behaving as he did? 3 definitely, really, actually, undoubtedly, indubitably, beyond (the shadow of) a doubt, beyond question, without a doubt, indeed, unquestionably, absolutely, positively, decidedly, certainly, surely: I believed her to be truly guilty. 4 in truth, indeed, really, honestly, sincerely, genuinely, Archaic (yea,) verily, Usually ironic forsooth: I love you, darling, truly I do.

trunk n. 1 main stem, stalk, stock, Technical bole: After the tornado, only the trunks of the trees remained upright. 2 torso, body: All that was found of the corpse was the trunk. 3 chest, locker, foot-locker, box, case, bin, coffer, casket: We found a trunk full of old books in the attic. 4 snout, proboscis: The elephant reached for the food with its trunk. 5 (In US and Canada) luggage compartment, Brit boot: We cannot get all the luggage into the trunk of the car.

trust n. 1 confidence, reliance, faith, conviction, certitude, certainty, sureness, positiveness, assurance, belief: Place your trust in me. 2 credit, reliability, dependability, credibility, trustworthiness: The company will sell you the piano on trust. 3 custody, care, keeping, charge, guardianship, protection, safe keeping, trusteeship: The money is in trust for Gillian's grandchildren. 4 monopoly, cartel; group, corporation, conglomerate: An international trust controls the world market in diamonds.

--v. 5 rely (on or upon), have faith or confidence (in), confide (in), depend or bank or count (on or upon), pin (one's) faith or hopes on or upon: I trust that you will attend the meeting. In God we trust - others must pay cash. Can I trust you to keep a secret? Don't trust to luck. 6 entrust, commit, give, delegate, make or turn or sign or hand over, depute, assign, empower, consign: I shouldn't trust my money to her.

trusting adj. trustful, unsuspicious, confiding, confident, unsuspecting; na‹ve, innocent, gullible, incautious, credulous: It is a good thing that her husband has a trusting nature. Samantha might be a little too trusting and could easily be deceived.

trustworthy
adj. reliable, trusty, dependable, accurate; responsible, steady, steadfast, loyal, faithful, (tried and) true, honourable, honest, ethical, principled, moral, incorruptible: Is this thermometer trustworthy? Isaac's former employer said that he is completely trustworthy.

truth n. 1 genuineness, reality, actuality, correctness, accuracy, fact: The truth of the matter is that he's in love with you. 2 fact(s): To tell the truth, I came here to kill you. 3 in truth. in fact, truly, actually, really: In truth, his name is not Jack Armstrong at all but Ebenezer Braithwaite.

truthful adj. true, accurate, factual, veracious, true to life, honest, realistic, reliable, faithful, trustworthy, straightforward, candid, frank, sincere, earnest, forthright, unvarnished, unembellished: He gave a truthful account of his experiences in the jungle.

try v. 1 attempt, endeavour, essay, seek, undertake, venture, strive, struggle, make an effort, try (one's) hand at, Colloq have a stab or go or whack (at), take a shot or crack (at): He tried to help me with my homework. 2 test, try out, prove, evaluate, examine, inspect, check out, sample, appraise, assay, look over, analyse, scrutinize, assess, judge: I'll try your way of solving the problem. You won't know if it works till you try it. 3 test, prove, strain, tax: You are trying my patience with your silly questions. 4 hear, sit on, adjudicate, judge, adjudge: There are three more cases to try this month.

--n. 5 attempt, endeavour, essay, undertaking, venture, struggle, effort, turn, Colloq go, stab, whack, fling, shot, crack: You have three tries to pin the tail on the donkey.

trying adj. irritating, exasperating, frustrating, annoying, irksome, infuriating, maddening, bothersome, tiresome, vexing, troublesome, worrying, worrisome, distressing, disquieting, upsetting, dispiriting, taxing, demanding, tough, stressful, difficult, tiring, fatiguing: This must be a trying time for you, caring for eight small children.

20.7 tug...

=-

tug v. 1 pull, tow, yank, jerk, draw, drag, haul, wrench: The boy was tugging a little puppy along on a lead.

--n. 2 pull, tow, yank, jerk, drag, haul, wrench: I gave a tug and the doorknob came away in my hand.

tuition n. education, teaching, tutelage, training, schooling, instruction, guidance, preparation: The course fees cover tuition and accommodation.

tumble v. 1 fall (down), pitch, turn end over end or head over heels, roll, drop: Giggling hysterically, we tumbled in a heap on the lawn. 2 drop, toss, dump, jumble: The waiter tumbled several spoonfuls of berries on to my plate. 3 tumble to. understand, apprehend, perceive, comprehend, see the light, Colloq get the signal or message, catch on, Brit twig to, Slang get wise, wise up, dig: I finally tumbled to what she was trying to tell me.

--n. 4 fall, slip, stumble, Colloq header, spill: Joshua took a bad tumble on the stairs yesterday.

tumbledown

adj. ramshackle, dilapidated, ruined, in ruins, decrepit, rickety, shaky, falling apart or to pieces, disintegrating, tottering, broken-down, crumbling, gone to rack and ruin: He lived for years in a tumbledown shanty near the railway.

tumour n. neoplasm, cancer, melanoma, sarcoma, malignancy, carcinoma, growth, lump, swelling, protuberance, excrescence: The doctor found a tumour that he said ought to be removed.

tumult n. commotion, disturbance, upset, uproar, riot, disorder, disquiet, insurrection, agitation, bedlam, chaos, brouhaha, fracas, hubbub, stir, pandemonium, hullabaloo, furore or US furor, brawl, Donnybrook, affray, row, mˆl,e or melee, turbulence, ferment, ado, turmoil, confusion, rampage, frenzy, rage, excitement, rumpus, Colloq US ruckus: The tumult caused by the football hooligans spread through the city.

tumultuous

adj. clamorous, noisy, boisterous, disorderly, turbulent, violent, uproarious, chaotic, frenzied, furious, excited, agitated, hectic, riotous, rowdy, unruly, unrestrained, fierce, savage, wild, hysterical, frantic, rumbustious, boisterous, obstreperous, tempestuous, stormy: The heroes received a tumultuous welcome on their return.

tune n. 1 melody, air, song, strain, motif, theme: David presents a marvellous half-hour radio programme of show tunes every week. 2 euphony, pitch, harmony, accord, accordance, consonance, unison, correspondence, conformity: She cannot sing in tune. The guitar is out of tune with the piano. Her husband is out of tune with today's fashion.

--v. 3 tune up, calibrate, adjust, regulate, coordinate, adapt, attune, align, set: That garage charges too much for tuning an engine. 4 tune in (on). attend (to), pay attention (to), listen (to), understand, be aware (of), be on the qui vive, be alert (to), Slang be on the same wavelength or frequency (with): I am not sure that Bernard is tuned in to what his sister does for a living. 5 tune out. ignore, disregard, turn a blind eye to, be blind to, turn one's back on, turn a deaf ear to: Sally is able to tune out anything she doesn't like to hear.

tuneful adj. melodic, musical, sweet-sounding, melodious, euphonious, dulcet, mellifluent, mellifluous, harmonic, catchy, mellow, smooth, rich, rhythmic, Colloq easy on the ear(s): Irving Berlin wrote some of the most tuneful music that we have.

tunnel n. 1 shaft, subway, (underground) passage(way), underpass; burrow, hole; Channel Tunnel, Colloq Chunnel: The cat got out through this tunnel.

--v. 2 burrow, dig, hole, excavate, penetrate, mine: The prisoners tunnelled under the wall and escaped.

turf n. 1 sod, sward, green, grass, greensward, lawn: We bought some turf for the new lawn. 2 territory, bailiwick, area, neighbourhood, backyard, Colloq stamping-ground, home ground, (personal) space: You're on my turf now, so you'll do as I say. 3 the turf. horse-racing, racing, the racing world, racecourse, racetrack: The attractions of the turf keep them from other pursuits.

--v. 4 turf out. eject, dismiss, expel, throw out, oust, banish, exile, Colloq sack, bounce, give (someone) the boot or the sack or the (old) heave-ho, chuck or toss or kick or boot out, fire: The committee said he had brought the sport into disrepute and turfed him out of the team.

turn v. 1 rotate, revolve, spin, roll, reel, circle, gyrate, whirl, wheel, go (a)round or about, pivot, swivel: The earth turns on its axis. Turn the crank to raise the bucket. 2 move, shift, wheel, veer, swing, face: As she turned I noticed a horrible scar. 3 reverse, turn (a)round, alter, change, adapt, reorganize, remodel, modify, refashion, reshape, reform, transform, make over, convert, bring over: He has been trying to turn the business into a profit-making enterprise. He has turned defeat into advance. She managed to turn one of the most loyal membrs of the government. 4 go or pass or move (a)round, veer, drive, walk: Turn left at the corner. 5 go bad, become rancid, spoil, curdle, addle, sour, decay, moulder, rot, putrefy, Colloq go off: All the milk in the fridge had turned because of the power cut. 6 apply, put, use, employ: Is there any way we can turn this situation to our advantage? 7 Sometimes, turn aside or away. block, avert, thwart, prevent, balk or baulk, parry, deflect, fend off, check: He deftly turned aside the thrust of the dagger. 8 form, make up, fashion, formulate, construct, cast, create, coin, concoct, express: Donald certainly knows how to turn a felicitous phrase. 9 direct, aim, point: He turned the gun on himself and pulled the trigger. 10 twist, sprain, wrench: I have turned my ankle and cannot walk. 11 twist, wind, snake, curve, bend, arc, coil, loop, meander, zigzag: The road turned this way and that, following the river bank. 12 turn against. defy, mutiny, rebel, revolt, rise (up) against: The captain had not expected the first mate to turn against him, too. 13 turn back. a reverse, repulse, repel, rebuff, drive back, beat back: At last we turned back the enemy's advance. b go back, retrace (one's) steps, return: We must turn back before it is too late. 14 turn down. a refuse, reject, rebuff, decline, deny: My request for help was turned down. b decrease or diminish or lessen or lower or soften the sound of: Turn down the radio, I'm on the phone. 15 turn in. a go to bed or sleep, retire, withdraw, call it a day, Slang hit the sack or the hay: I usually turn in by eleven o'clock. b hand in or over, turn over, deliver, give in, submit, offer, proffer, tender, give back, return, surrender, yield: Please turn in your visitors' badges before you leave. c turn over, deliver (up), inform on, betray, Colloq squeal on, rat on, finger, tell on: For enough money, he'd turn in his own mother. 16 turn into. a turn to, become, change into or to, metamorphose into or to: Right before her, the prince turned into a frog again. b go or come into, drive into, pull into, walk into: They lost sight of the suspect when he turned into a side-street. 17 turn off. a stop, switch off, deactivate, discontinue; extinguish: First turn off the water, then the light. b disillusion, depress, cool (off), disenchant, disaffect, alienate, repel, repulse, bore, offend, put off, displease, sicken, nauseate, disgust: People who don't brush their teeth turn me off. c deviate, diverge: When you come to the fork, turn off to the right. 18 turn on. a start (up), switch on, energize, activate, set in motion, cause to function or operate: Turn on the light. b depend on or upon, be contingent on, hinge on or upon, be subject to: The success of the venture turns on our ability to capitalize it. c excite, thrill, arouse, stimulate, titillate, work up, impassion: He was really turned on by the girl in the bar. 19 turn on or upon. a concern, revolve about, relate to: The discussion turned on his ability to write music. b be hostile to, attack, assail, set upon, Colloq tear into: Oliver is so unpopular that his own dog turned on him and bit him. 20 turn out. a make, form, shape, construct, build, fabricate, put together, assemble, manufacture, produce, put out, bring out: The plant turns out a thousand cars a week. b develop, evolve, eventuate, happen, result, prove, occur, end up, arise: As it turned out, he lost anyway. It turns out that he knows my sister. c eject, evict, throw out, expel, oust, dismiss, terminate, cashier, Colloq fire, sack, kick out, axe, Brit turf out: When they found I wasn't a member, they turned me out. d dress, fit out, equip, rig out, accoutre or US also accouter: She was well turned out in a beautiful ball gown. e come, arrive, appear, attend, assemble, meet, Colloq show (up), surface: 55,000 turned out for the rock concert. 21 turn over. a consider, muse or ruminate over or about, revolve, ponder (over): I needed a while to turn over the job offer in my mind. b reverse, invert, turn upside down: Turn over the clock and read the inscription on the bottom. c overturn, upset, knock over: In my haste, I turned over the punch bowl. d sell, merchandise: A shop in that location ought to turn over a million a year. e rotate, revolve, spin, kick over: The engine turns over, but it won't start. 22 turn tail. run away, flee, bolt, scoot, show a clean pair of heels, cut and run, take to (one's) heels, beat a hasty retreat, Colloq take off, beat it, scram, skedaddle: He turned tail when I shouted for help. 23 turn to. a appeal to, apply to, resort to: She turned to me for help. b advert to, refer to, pick or take up, have recourse to: Please turn to your exercise books now. c get to work, pitch in, buckle or knuckle down: The neighbours turned to in helping clean up the mess after the storm. d turn into, change to, convert into, become: Lot's wife was turned to salt. 24 turn turtle. capsize, overturn, keel over, upset, up-end, Colloq go bottoms up: The overloaded barge turned turtle and sank in the river. 25 turn up. a surface, appear, arrive, Colloq show (up), show one's face: Guess who turned up at our wedding? b come up, arise, Colloq crop up, pop up: Something will turn up soon for you. c uncover, discover, find, unearth, come across, hit upon, dig up, expose, disclose, reveal, bring to light: We turned up a formerly unknown fact about the shipwreck. d increase or raise or amplify or intensify the sound of: Turn up the TV - I can't hear what they're saying.

--n. 26 revolution, rotation, cycle, spin, whirl, circuit, round, roll, twirl; pirouette: He gave the top another turn, just to make sure it was on securely. 27 curve, bend, turning, corner, sinuosity, dog-leg, hairpin bend or curve, irregularity, meander, twist, zigzag, Colloq toing and froing: There are many dangerous turns on that road. 28 loop, coil, spiral, twist: Take two turns of this rope round your waist, then knot it. 29 deviation, turning, detour, shift, change of direction or course: A turn to the right is not permitted at this corner. 30 opportunity, chance, say, round, spell, time, watch, shift, stint, tour (of duty), move, trick, Colloq whack, crack, shot, go: You have had your turn, now let someone else go. 31 drive, spin, ride; airing, constitutional, ramble, saunter, stroll, walk, promenade, amble: Let's take a short turn round the park. 32 trend, direction, drift: The conversation took a new turn. 33 change, alteration, switch: The doctor says that Valerie has taken a turn for the better. 34 Usually, bad turn. disservice, harm, injury, wrong: If you do someone a bad turn, what can you expect? 35 Usually, good turn. favour, (good) deed, act (of kindness), courtesy, boon, mercy: One good turn deserves another. 36 shock, fright, surprise, start, scare: You really gave me a turn, jumping out like that! 37 form, style, manner, mode: Each turn of phrase in her writing seems original and refreshing. 38 disposition, inclination, bent, bias, leaning, tendency: Alistair is of a rather dour turn of mind tonight. 39 at every turn. everywhere, constantly, always, all the time: In Scotland, we met with kindness and hospitality at every turn. 40 by turns. alternately, reciprocally, in rotation, successively, in succession: The book is fascinating and frustrating by turns. 41 in turn. sequentially, one after the other, in succession, successively, in (proper) order: Each patient will be treated in turn. 42 out of turn. a out of sequence, out of order: I don't want you answering questions out of proper turn, Jonathan. b imprudently, indiscreetly, improperly, disobediently, inappropriately: I apologize if I am speaking out of turn on this issue. 43 take turns. alternate, vary, rotate, exchange: Let's take turns looking through the telescope.

turn-about

n. reciprocity, exchange: Turn-about is fair play.

turncoat n. renegade, traitor, betrayer, deserter, fifth-columnist, double agent, apostate, tergiversator, defector, backslider, Vicar of Bray, US Benedict Arnold, Colloq snake in the grass: Labour members who voted with the Tories on the issue were branded turncoats.

turn-off n. 1 exit, side-road, feeder (road), auxiliary (road), ramp, Brit slip-road, US (exit or entrance) ramp: Our shop is at the first turn-off after the traffic light. 2 damper, killjoy, Colloq wet blanket, Slang US freeze-out: It was a real turn-off to discover that his hobby was model railways.

turnout n. 1 assemblage, muster, attendance, audience, crowd, gate, throng, gathering: The turnout for the first day of the sale was enormous. 2 output, production, out-turn, volume; gross national product, GNP, gross domestic product, GDP: Turnout has improved since the settlement of the labour dispute. 3 gear, outfit, clothing, apparel, apparatus, equipment, trappings, fittings, equipage: Have you seen Charlie in his mountain-climbing turnout?

turnover n. gross (revenue), (total) business, volume: Although turnover increased by ten per cent, profits were down by two per cent.

tutor n. 1 teacher, instructor, educator, coach, mentor, guru: Bernard engaged a tutor to coach him through the examinations.

--v. 2 teach, instruct, coach, educate, school, train, indoctrinate, drill, enlighten, advise, direct, guide, prepare, ground: Twitchell needs someone to tutor him in the fine art of going out with girls.

20.8 tweak...

=-

tweak v. 1 pinch, nip, twitch, squeeze, jerk, grip: I do wish that adults would refrain from tweaking my nose, though it is pretty cute.

--n. 2 pinch, nip, twitch, squeeze, jerk, grip: He gave her nose an affectionate little tweak.

twee adj. precious, sweet, sentimental, quaint, dainty, cute, mignon(ne), bijou: The tearoom atmosphere is a bit too twee for my taste.

twiddle v. 1 play with, twirl, fiddle (with), wiggle, juggle, toy with, fidget with, Colloq fool with, mess with, monkey with: Stop twiddling with the dial on that radio! 2 twiddle (one's) thumbs. do nothing, be idle, idle or while away (the) time, waste time, bide (one's) time: I sat there, twiddling my thumbs, while you were being entertained royally.

twig° n. sprig, stem, shoot, offshoot, branchlet, stick, sucker, sprout, withe or withy, tendril: Gather up some dry twigs for kindling.

twigý v. understand, grasp, fathom, get, comprehend, see, know, sense, divine, Colloq catch on, be or get or become wise to, tumble to, Slang rumble, dig: She twigged the situation at once but didn't let on she knew.

twilight n. 1 dusk, sunset, gloaming, sundown, half-light, crepuscule or crepuscle: We enjoyed dinner at twilight on the terrace overlooking the sea. 2 decline, wane, waning, ebb, downturn, down-swing, slump, decay, weakening, declination, diminution: Even at the twilight of his career, Jonas enjoyed the respect of his colleagues. 3 Twilight of the Gods. G”tterd„mmerung, Ragnar”k or Ragnarok: The world ends at the Twilight of the Gods, only to be born anew.

--adj. 4 evening, crepuscular, dimming, darkening, darkish, darksome, shadowy, shady, dim, dark, obscure, sombre, gloomy, Literary darkling: The Nymphs in twilight shade of tangled thickets mourn. 5 twilight zone. limbo: He lives in the twilight zone, unable to distinguish reality from fantasy.

twin n. 1 double, clone, duplicate, look-alike, counterpart, Slang ringer: I cannot distinguish these twins.

--adj. 2 identical, matching, matched, duplicate, corresponding, look-alike: The bedroom had twin beds with pink covers.

--v. 3 pair, match, yoke, join, link, couple, combine, connect, associate: Many towns in Britain are twinned with similar towns on the Continent.

twine n. 1 cord, string; rope, cable, yarn: Have you some twine for tying up this package?

--v. 2 entwine, braid, twist, intertwine, curl, wreathe, spiral, wind, weave, interweave, encircle, wrap: Annette's front door has roses twined all round it.

twinge n. 1 stab, pang, cramp, spasm, pinch, stitch, (sharp) pain, prick, bite, gripe: I get a terrible twinge in my back when I lift anything heavy. 2 pang, pain: I felt a twinge of remorse at leaving.

twinkle v. 1 scintillate, sparkle, coruscate, glitter, shimmer, wink, flicker, glisten, glint, flash, fulgurate, spark, dance, blink, shine, gleam: The stars were twinkling in the icy black sky. Nicole's eyes twinkled as she told me about Max's latest success.

--n. 2 twinkling, scintillation, scintillating, sparkle, sparkling, coruscation, coruscating, glitter, glittering, shimmer, shimmering, winking, flicker, flickering, glistening, glint, flash, flashing, fulguration, spark, sparking, dancing, blinking, shine, shining, gleam, gleaming, dazzle, dazzling: From far off, I caught the twinkle of the sun on car windscreens.

twinkling n. 1 (split) second, flash, twinkling or wink of an eye, instant, trice, Colloq jiffy, two shakes (of a lamb's tail), tick: Liza called out, and in a twinkling, Joseph was at her side. 2 See twinkle, 2, above.

twirl v. 1 spin, whirl, rotate, revolve, wheel, turn, gyrate, twist, wind (about or around): The windmills twirled in the breeze. Katherine absently twirled a lock of hair round her finger.

--n. 2 twirling, spin, spinning, whirl, whirling, turn, turning, revolution: He was hypnotized by each twirl of the roulette wheel. 3 whorl, winding, convolution, spiral, helix, coil, volute: The pattern consists of interlocking twirls of green and brown.

twist v. 1 plait, braid, weave, entwine, intertwine, twine, interweave, pleach, splice, wreathe, interlace: She twisted together some daisies to make a garland for her hair. 2 distort, warp, contort, pervert, alter, change, slant, bias, colour, falsify, misquote, misstate, garble, miscite, misrepresent, violate; misinterpret, mistranslate, misunderstand, misconstrue: He twisted her words so that she seemed to be saying the opposite of what she intended. 3 wriggle, worm, squirm, writhe, wiggle: The little beggar twisted out of my grasp and ran for his life. 4 wind, snake, meander, turn, zigzag, worm, bend, curve: I lost sight of the stream where it twisted through the undergrowth. 5 wrench, turn, sprain, rick or wrick: I twisted my ankle on a faulty step. 6 twist (one's or someone's) arm. force, coerce, make, persuade, bully, Brit pressurize, US pressure: I didn't want to go, but she twisted my arm.

--n. 7 coil, spiral, skew, zigzag, dog-leg, turn, curve, angle, bend, bow, meander: The road is full of twists and turns. 8 interpretation, analysis, understanding, slant, angle, construction, construal; treatment, approach, version, variation: This book puts a new twist on the fall of the Roman Empire. 9 distortion, misinterpretation, contortion, perversion, warping, alteration, change, departure, bias, colouring, falsification, misquotation, misstatement, garbling, misrepresentation; mistranslation, misunderstanding, misconstrual, misconstruction: It was a twist of fate that brought us together again. She gave everything he said such a twist that he scarcely recognized his own ideas. 10 quirk, idiosyncrasy, crotchet, peculiarity, oddity, trick, eccentricity, incongruity, inconsistency, irregularity; weakness, flaw, fault, foible, failing: Owing to a twist in his character, he has developed a hatred of women. 11 round the twist. mad, crazy, insane, eccentric, Colloq daft, Brit round the bend, Slang nuts, nutty, bonkers, cuckoo, batty, off (one's) rocker, Brit barmy or balmy: Kevin's gone round the twist if he thinks I am going out with his sister.

twister n. 1 cheat, swindler, confidence man or woman, rogue, scoundrel, swindler, trickster, mountebank, deceiver, fraud, impostor or imposter, Colloq con man or woman, crook: This particular twister preys on the elderly. 2 tornado, cyclone, typhoon, hurricane, whirlwind; waterspout: The twister picked up my bicycle and dropped it in my neighbour's garden.

twit° v. tease, cajole, taunt, jeer (at), make fun of, banter, tweak, gibe or jibe, chaff, ridicule, mock; blame, berate, deride, scorn, contemn, censure, revile, reproach, upbraid; Colloq kid, pull (someone's) leg: She never seemed to mind being twitted about her height.

twitý n. nitwit, nincompoop, ass, ninny, ninny-hammer, fool, imbecile, blockhead, halfwit, idiot, simpleton, Colloq chump, moron, Brit silly billy, Slang dope, US and Canadian jerk: That silly twit told the teacher what we were planning.

twitter v. 1 peep, cheep, tweet, chirp, warble, trill, chirrup, chatter: The birds twitter so loudly that they wake me every morning. 2 chatter, prattle, gossip, giggle, prate, titter, snicker, snigger, simper: I was embarrassed because my classmates always twittered when I did a recitation.

--n. 3 peep, peeping, cheep, cheeping, twittering, tweet, tweeting, chirrup, chirruping, chirp, chirping, warble, warbling, trill, trilling: The twitter of the birds was driving me mad. 4 ado, bustle, excitement, flutter, dither, whirl, agitation, Colloq stew, tizzy: The girls were in a twitter of apprehension.

two-faced adj. double-dealing, hypocritical, duplicitous, dissembling, deceitful, Janus-faced, treacherous, dishonest, untrustworthy, insincere, scheming, designing, crafty, Machiavellian, sly, perfidious, lying, mendacious: That two-faced liar told you one story and me another!

20.9 tycoon...
=-

tycoon n. mogul, magnate, baron, financier, (multi)millionaire, billionaire, merchant prince, potentate, Colloq big shot, (big-time) operator, wheeler-dealer, big-timer, US big wheel, big cheese: What makes you think that Castenado is an oil tycoon?

type n. 1 class, category, classification, kind, sort, genre, order, variety, breed, species, strain, group, genus, ilk, kidney: Just what type of person would you say the president is? 2 typeface, Brit fount, US font: The body text ought to be set in Bodoni Book type, the headings in Times bold. 3 prototype, paradigm, archetype, epitome, exemplar, model, specimen, pattern, personification, standard, quintessence: She doesn't consider him to be the usual type of businessman.

--v. 4 typewrite; keyboard; transcribe: She types at a speed of about sixty words a minute.

typical adj. 1 representative, characteristic, conventional, normal, standard, ordinary, regular: On a typical day I get up at 6.30. 2 orthodox, classic, conventional, in character, in keeping, usual, commonplace, run-of-the-mill, natural, customary, common, to be expected, ordinary: His way of looking at life is typical for someone of his educational and social background.

typify v. exemplify, instance, epitomize, personify, represent, characterize, embody, evince, symbolize, suggest: John's views typify the conservative approach.

tyrannical

adj. tyrannous, oppressive, dictatorial, Fascistic, despotic, autocratic, authoritarian, arbitrary, imperious, overbearing, unjust, high-handed, severe, harsh, iron-handed, heavy-handed: The people suffered under one tyrannical form of government after another for generations.

tyrannize v. Often, tyrannize over. domineer over, bully, subjugate, enthral, enslave, dominate, intimidate, dictate to, order about or around, ride roughshod over, browbeat, keep under (one's) thumb, oppress, subdue, suppress, keep down: The people have been tyrannized long enough.

tyranny n. autocracy, Fascism, authoritarianism, absolutism, despotism, dictatorship, Stalinism, Nazism; arbitrariness, oppression, suppression, subjugation, enslavement, enthralment, domination: Tyranny would not survive long were it not expedient for its supporters.

tyrant n. dictator, despot, autocrat, martinet, Hitler, bully, oppressor, authoritarian, hard taskmaster, slave-driver, Simon Legree, overlord: It seems that no people or part of the world is immune to tyrants.

21.0 U

=-

21.1 ugly

=-

ugly adj. 1 unattractive, unlovely, unprepossessing, unsightly, hideous, grotesque, gruesome, ghastly, offensive, repulsive-looking, plain, plain-looking, plain-featured, bad-featured, ill-favoured, dreadful-looking, awful-looking, terrible-looking, horrible-looking, frightful-looking, monstrous-looking, US and Canadian homely: The Georgian houses were demolished and replaced by ugly tower-blocks. 2 objectionable, disagreeable, unpleasant, offensive, nasty, loathsome, repellent, repugnant, repulsive, noisome, nauseating, nauseous, revolting, sickening, disgusting, obnoxious, mephitic, rotten, corrupt, filthy, vile, heinous, bad, sordid, evil, foul, perverted, immoral, depraved, degenerate, base, debased, detestable, hateful, abominable, execrable, despicable, odious: The East End murders were among the ugliest crimes of the century. He sprang from his seat with an ugly curse on his lips. 3 disquieting, uncomfortable, discomforting, troublesome, awkward, disadvantageous, ominous, dangerous, perilous, hazardous: He found himself in a very ugly position, with no apparent means of escape. 4 unpleasant, disagreeable, surly, hostile, nasty, spiteful, bad-tempered, ill-tempered, currish, irascible, curmudgeonly, cantankerous, crabby, crabbed, crotchety, cross, cranky, mean: He's in an ugly mood till he's had his coffee.

21.2 ulcer...

=-

ulcer n. 1 sore, lesion, abscess, ulceration, canker, chancre, boil, gumboil, eruption, carbuncle, inflammation: That ulcer should be treated before it gets any worse. 2 cancer, canker, festering spot, blight, scourge, poison, disease, pestilence, curse, bane, plague: We must purge this ulcer before it corrupts the entire organization.

ulcerous adj. ulcerative, cancerous, cankerous, festering, ulcerated, ulcerative, suppurating, suppurative, gangrenous, septic, Technical furuncular, furunculous, necrotic, necrosed, sphacelated: The wound is in an ulcerous condition and requires immediate surgery.

ulterior adj. 1 hidden, concealed, covert, secret, unrevealed, undisclosed, unexpressed, private, personal, underlying, surreptitious, underhand(ed): She had an ulterior motive for arriving early. 2 outside, beyond, further, remote, remoter: What you propose is ulterior to our immediate plan.

ultimate adj. 1 final, last, terminating, terminal, end, eventual, conclusive, concluding, decisive, deciding: The ultimate outcome will not be known till next week. Who is the ultimate authority in such matters? 2 final, maximum, highest, greatest, supreme, utmost, paramount: Her ultimate goal is to win the gold medal. 3 elemental, basic, fundamental, underlying, primary, essential, final: He believes that the ultimate truths were set down in Scripture. 4 remotest, furthest, farthest, extreme, uttermost, last, final: The ultimate stage of the experiment will be at a distance of five light-years.

ultimately

adv. finally, at long last, in the final or last analysis, in the end, at the end of the day, after all is said and done, at (the) last, in the long run; fundamentally, essentially, basically, at bottom: I thought it might ultimately come to this. He came to understand that ultimately people must depend on each other.

ultimatum n. demand(s), term(s), condition(s), stipulation(s), requirement(s): If we refuse to comply with his ultimatum, he'll kill the hostage.

ultra- adj. extreme, immoderate, excessive, drastic, radical, fanatic(al), unmitigated, outrageous, unqualified, sheer, blatant, out-and-out, complete, thorough, thoroughgoing, dyed in the wool, die-hard, rabid, opinionated, unregenerate, unrepentant, unreformed, fundamentalist, prejudiced, bigoted, Colloq hard-nosed: Ultra-conservativism marked his views till the day he died.

21.3 umbrage...

=-

umbrage n. Usually, take umbrage. feel or be offended, take offence, feel displeasure or annoyance or exasperation or indignation or vexation or bitterness or resentment, be piqued or displeased or annoyed or exasperated or indignant or vexed or resentful, harbour a grudge: She took umbrage at the way he seemed to ignore her.

umbrella n. 1 parasol; Colloq chiefly Brit gamp, Brit brolly, US bumbershoot: You will need an umbrella today. 2 protection, cover, coverage, aegis, shield, screen, patronage, agency: What benefits are included under the umbrella of this policy?

umpire n. 1 referee, arbiter, judge, moderator, adjudicator, arbitrator; official; Colloq ref, Australian umpy, US ump: The sides agree to abide by the decision of the umpire.

--v. 2 referee, arbitrate, judge, moderate, adjudicate; officiate: When Peter Jones umpires a game, the players know they will get a fair decision.

umpteen adj. a lot of, many, innumerable, unnumbered, countless, a huge number of, very many, numerous, hundreds of, thousands of, millions of, billions of, trillions of: You've been told umpteen times, 'Don't go near the water'.

21.4 unabashed...

=-

unabashed adj. unashamed, unblushing, unembarrassed, brazen, blatant, bold, undaunted, unawed, undismayed, unconcerned: I couldn't put up with his unabashed conceit for another moment.

unable adj. not able, powerless, unfit, unqualified, impotent: The company was unable to give guarantees about continuity of employment.

unabridged
adj. 1 uncut, whole, full-length, entire, complete, intact, uncondensed, unshortened; unbowdlerized, unexpurgated: This is the original, unabridged edition, with nothing removed. 2 extensive, thorough, comprehensive, exhaustive, all-encompassing, (all-)inclusive: That word is too rare to be listed in anything but an unabridged dictionary.

unaccented
adj. unstressed, unemphasized, unaccentuated, weak, Technical lenis: The first syllable of 'before' is unaccented.

unacceptable
adj. unsatisfactory, objectionable, wrong, bad, improper, unallowable, undesirable, not de rigueur, distasteful, disagreeable, unsuitable, inappropriate, unpleasant, tasteless: Murder is generally regarded as an unacceptable way to relieve oneself of unwanted company.

unaccompanied
adj. alone, solo, on (one's) own, unescorted, unchaperoned, unattended, Music a cappella, Colloq stag: We went to the dance unaccompanied.

unaccountable
adj. 1 unexplained, inexplicable, unexplainable, mysterious, inscrutable, incomprehensible, unintelligible, strange, puzzling, baffling, peculiar, odd, bizarre, unfathomable: I found it unaccountable that anyone would arrive for an appointment four hours early. 2 not answerable, not responsible: How can you have a governmental committee that is unaccountable to anyone? 3 weird, unheard-of, extraordinary, unusual, unorthodox, uncanny: Sophie has unaccountable powers of perception.

unaccustomed
adj. 1 unfamiliar, unusual, rare, unexpected, uncommon, unprecedented, unanticipated, curious, peculiar: They encountered unaccustomed hostility from local people. 2

unaccustomed to. unused to, inexperienced in or at, amateurish at, unpractised in or at, unfamiliar with, uninitiated in: Unaccustomed as I am to public speaking, I had better be brief.

unadorned adj. plain, simple, unembellished, undecorated, unornamented, stark, bare, austere: She prefers an unadorned style, without frills.

unaffected°
adj. genuine, real, sincere, natural, simple, plain, unpretentious, unassuming, ingenuous, unsophisticated, unstudied, honest, guileless, artless, unartificial, straightforward, unfeigned: He conveyed in simple unaffected language a clear impression of the nightmarish quality of that day.

unaffectedý
adj. Usually, unaffected by. impervious (to), immune (to), untouched (by), unmoved (by), unresponsive (to), aloof (to or from), uninfluenced (by), unimpressed (by), remote (to or from), cool or cold (to), unconcerned (by), unstirred (by): The duchess remained totally unaffected by the children's appeals for help.

unapproachable
adj. 1 distant, remote, aloof, reserved, standoffish, austere, withdrawn, unfriendly, forbidding, chilly, cool, cold, frigid: James seems unapproachable, but in fact he's a very warm person. 2 inaccessible, remote, unreachable, out-of-the-way, out of reach, beyond reach: Her house is unapproachable except from the sea.

unarmed adj. unprotected, defenceless, weaponless: The army began shooting unarmed civilians.

unasked adj. uninvited, unrequested, undemanded, unsolicited, unsought, unwanted, unprompted, gratuitous, unbidden, spontaneous, unwelcome, unasked for: I wish he would keep his unasked opinions to himself.

unattached
adj. 1 separate, unconnected, detached, independent, unaffiliated, self-governing, self-regulating, self-regulated,

autonomous, self-reliant, self-sustaining, self-sustained: The committee was established as an unattached body, not associated with any organization. 2 single, unmarried, uncommitted, unengaged, on (one's) own, unspoken for: I joined the club hoping to meet some unattached people.

unauthorized
adj. unsanctioned, unapproved, unofficial, unlawful, illegal, illicit, illegitimate: Unauthorized use of the company's parking spaces is prohibited.

unavoidable
adj. inescapable, ineluctable, inevitable, irresistible, inexorable, sure, certain, fated, destined, predestined, determined, predetermined, unchangeable, unalterable, settled, fixed, definite: Punishment is an unavoidable consequence of getting caught for something you shouldn't have done.

unaware adj. ignorant, oblivious, unknowing, unsuspecting, unconscious, uninformed, unenlightened, incognizant, inobservant, insensible, heedless, unmindful, unsuspecting: She was totally unaware of the huge spider dangling directly over her.

unawares adv. 1 unexpectedly, abruptly, by surprise, suddenly, off (one's) guard: We caught the sentry unawares. 2 inadvertently, unconsciously, unintentionally, unknowingly, unwittingly, by mistake, mistakenly, by accident, accidentally, in an unguarded moment: She had betrayed her closest friend unawares.

unbalanced
adj. 1 uneven, asymmetric(al), unsymmetric(al), lopsided, unequal, overbalanced, unstable, wobbly, shaky, unsteady: That stack of chairs is unbalanced and could fall any minute. 2 mad, demented, certifiable, crazy, insane, eccentric, non compos mentis, touched (in the head), unstable, unhinged, deranged, disturbed, of unsound mind, out of (one's) head, Colloq daffy, dizzy, Chiefly Brit daft, Slang nuts, batty, off (one's) rocker, Chiefly Brit bonkers, US out of one's gourd, loco: The boy is clearly unbalanced, but that doesn't excuse his appalling behaviour.

unbearable
adj. intolerable, unsupportable, unendurable, insufferable,

unacceptable, too much: The pain in her side was almost unbearable.

unbeatable

adj. unsurpassable, undefeatable, excellent, unexcelled, incomparable, matchless, unrivalled, peerless, unparalleled, superlative, supreme: She'll go far with such an unbeatable combination of looks and brains.

unbecoming

adj. 1 unsuited, unsuitable, inappropriate, ill-suited, unfitting, unfit, inapt, unapt, out of character, out of place: It is unbecoming to wear your mink coat to the Save the Animals fund-raising dinner. 2 indecorous, unseemly, indelicate, improper, ungentlemanly, unladylike, offensive, tasteless: Father said it was unbecoming for her to use such foul language.

unbelievable

adj. incredible, preposterous, inconceivable, unimaginable, mind-boggling, implausible, unthinkable: The amount of money they spend on clothes is unbelievable. He told an unbelievable tale about having been picked up by a flying saucer.

unbelieving

adj. incredulous, disbelieving, non-believing, doubting, mistrusting, distrusting, mistrustful, distrustful, suspicious, sceptical, unpersuaded, unconvinced: The unbelieving world thinks that the age of miracles is past.

uncertain adj. 1 unsure, indeterminate, unpredictable, undeterminable, unforeseeable, unascertainable, haphazard, chance, arbitrary, random, aleatory, serendipitous, hit-or-miss, casual: It is uncertain whether interest rates will rise again next month. 2 unsure, in or of two minds, vacillating, undecided, unclear, ambivalent, irresolute, indecisive, hesitant, hesitating, undetermined, shilly-shallying, Brit at a loose end, US at loose ends: Julia is uncertain about what to do next. 3 unsure, indeterminate, up in the air, indefinite, unpredictable, unresolved, unsettled, in the balance, conjectural, speculative, debatable, touch-and-go, unreliable, doubtful, dubious, questionable, vague, hazy: The future of the company is now uncertain. The results of the election are still uncertain. 4 variable, changeable, inconstant, unfixed, unsettled, irregular, fickle, erratic, fitful, unsteady, wavering, unreliable, sporadic, occasional; unmethodical, unsystematic: The pictures in the cave danced in the uncertain light of the torch. How can we make an appointment if your plans are so uncertain?

uncharted adj. unmapped, unknown, unexplored, undiscovered, unfamiliar, strange, virgin, trackless: For weeks he wandered lost in the uncharted jungle.

unchaste adj. impure, wanton, immoral, unvirtuous, promiscuous, immodest, Cyprian, debased, lecherous, lewd, lascivious: Her unchaste conduct was a topic of conversation throughout the school.

uncivilized

adj. 1 barbarous, savage, wild, uncultivated, barbarian, barbaric, crude, primitive, brutish: He was an uncivilized man living in uncivilized surroundings. 2 unrefined, uncultured, uncouth, loutish, coarse, uneducated, untutored, unpolished, churlish, boorish, philistine, provincial, rough, rude, unlearned, ill-mannered, incondite, unmannerly, unsophisticated, inelegant, gross, gauche: Anna's father forbade her to go out with the uncivilized boors in the nearby town.

unconscionable

adj. 1 conscienceless, unscrupulous, amoral, unprincipled, immoral, unethical, evil, criminal, unjust, wicked, arrant: This unconscionable thief stole from his own mother. 2 excessive, extortionate, egregious, extreme, unwarranted, unreasonable, outrageous, inordinate, immoderate, exorbitant, indefensible, unpardonable, inexcusable, unforgivable: When I questioned the unconscionable size of his bill, the plumber explained that he charges extra for house calls.

unconscious

adj. 1 insensible, out (cold), knocked out, senseless, numb, stunned, comatose, dead to the world, Colloq blacked-out: The patient was unconscious for hours. 2 Often, unconscious of. heedless (of or to), unheeding, unheedful (of), insensitive (to), mindless, unmindful (of), reflex, automatic, involuntary, unintentional, instinctive, subliminal, unthinking, unpremeditated, subconscious, unwitting; blind (to), unaware (of), oblivious (to or of), deaf (to): For Tim, scratching his head is an unconscious act. Tim is totally unconscious of how irritating his mannerisms are.

uncontrolled

adj. unrestrained, ungoverned, unchecked, untrammelled, undisciplined, wild, unruly, boisterous, riotous, out of hand or of control, rampant, frenzied, frantic; going berserk, running amok or amuck: He hit his brother in a moment of uncontrolled anger.

under prep. 1 beneath, below, underneath, covered by: What is under that blanket? The wreck lies a mile under the surface. 2 subordinate to, answerable to, inferior to, second to, secondary to, subservient to, below, beneath, underneath, junior to, directed or supervised or controlled by, under (the) control of, at the mercy of, at the beck and call of: The bashibazouks were under the sultan's top officers. 3 included or comprised in or under, subsumed under: This should be under the heading, 'What is the Stupidest Thing you have done Today?' Under which category is 'Software'? 4 under the aegis or protection or eye or guardianship or care of: The prince was trained under the grand vizier. 5 less than, lower than: I paid under œ200 for my VCR. 6 under the influence. drunk, tipsy, high, impaired: The police charged him with driving while under the influence.

--adv. 7 below, underneath, beneath: You looked on top of the bed, but have you looked under? 8 underwater, beneath the waves, down, out of sight: We watched helpless as he went under for the third time.

underclothes

n. underclothing, underwear, undergarments, lingerie, Old-fashioned unmentionables, Colloq underthings, undies, Brit smalls, Old-fashioned Brit small-clothes, US skivvies: When a salesman she met on the train said he was in ladies' underclothes, she moved to another carriage.

undercover

adj. secret, private, clandestine, confidential: He doesn't look much like an undercover agent.

undercurrent

n. 1 undertow, cross-current, rip tide, rip (current), underflow: Caught in the undercurrent, he was carried out to sea. 2 undertone, subcurrent, trend, tendency, overtone, tenor, suggestion, murmur, implication, connotation, sense, feeling, aura, tinge, flavour, atmosphere, ambience or ambiance; vibrations, Colloq vibes: There is a sinister undercurrent of gloom about this place.

undercut v. 1 undermine, excavate, hollow out, cut out or away, gouge out: If you undercut the roadway it will collapse. 2 underprice, undercharge, sacrifice, sell cheaply or at a loss, undersell: The supermarkets undercut prices and put the independent grocers out of business.

underdog n. loser, scapegoat, victim; vanquished, defenceless; Colloq fall guy, little fellow or guy: It has always been our policy to fight for the underdog.

underestimate

v. undervalue, underrate, discount, misjudge, miscalculate, misprize, minimize, depreciate, belittle, not do justice to, fail to appreciate, set (too) little store by, think (too) little of: No one should underestimate the physical and mental effort involved.

undergo v. suffer, bear, endure, experience, live or go through, be subjected to, subject oneself to, sustain, submit to, weather, stand, withstand: The hotel has recently undergone extensive refurbishing.

underground

adj. 1 subterranean, buried, below-ground, sunken, covered: They crept through the underground passage into the treasure room. 2 secret, clandestine, concealed, hidden, covert, undercover, surreptitious, stealthy, private: The secret service has a worldwide underground network of agents. 3 alternative, radical, experimental, avant-garde, nonconformist, revolutionary: Some underground newspapers that sprang up in the 1960s are still being published.

--n. 4 tube, metro, underground railway, US subway: Two more stops on the underground and we'll be there. 5 resistance, partisans or partizans, freedom fighters, (in France) Maquis, insurgents, seditionaries or seditionists, insurrectionists, guerrillas or guerillas, extremists, revolutionaries; fifth-columnists, fifth column, saboteurs, subversives: The underground helped the family to escape to England. The government blames the underground for the bombings.

undermine v. 1 sap, drain, disable, weaken, debilitate, threaten, sabotage, subvert, damage, hurt, harm, impair, ruin, dash, wreck, spoil, Slang queer, bugger (up): He said that the entire campaign would be undermined if the events of January 17th were ever revealed. 2 See undercut, 1, above.

undersized

adj. under-size, little, short, small, petite, tiny, elfin, bantam, slight, mignon(ne); stunted, underdeveloped, runty, runtish, dwarfish, dwarfed, pygmy, squat; underweight, undeveloped: These cattle are a bit undersized for market.

understand

v. 1 grasp, comprehend, see, perceive, discern, make out, get the drift or the hang of, appreciate, interpret, take cognizance of, recognize, be aware or conscious of, be conversant with, know, realize, conceive of, be aware (of), apprehend, penetrate, Colloq get (it), dig, catch on (to), tumble to, cotton on (to), Brit twig: I can understand what you are saying. I didn't think you understood. 2 accept, agree, arrange, covenant, take: I understand the terms of the agreement. 3 interpret, take, read, gather from, construe, surmise from, assume from, infer from, view, see: As I understand the regulation, only residents may use the facilities. 4 hear (of), gather, get wind (of), take it, be told or informed or advised, have found out or learnt, Colloq hear tell: I understand that you've applied for another job. 5 sympathize or empathize (with), be in sympathy (with), show compassion (for), commiserate (with); accept, tolerate, allow, forgive: Surely your employer will understand your being late because of the funeral.

understanding

n. 1 agreement, contract, arrangement, bargain, covenant, concession, pact, compact, accord, treaty, concordat, entente, alliance, truce, armistice, reconciliation, settlement: They reached an understanding with respect to nuclear weapons. 2 discernment, sensitivity, sensitiveness, sympathy, empathy, perception, insight, good sense, intuition, enlightenment, percipience, sagacity, sageness, sapience, wisdom, Colloq savvy: Georgianna brings so much understanding to her treatment of the aged. 3 Usually, understanding of. comprehension or, awareness or grasp or control or idea or conception or knowledge or mastery (of), acquaintance or familiarity or intimacy or dexterity or skilfulness or deftness or adroitness or adeptness (with), competence or skill or expertness or know-how or proficiency or expertise (in), Colloq US fix (on), handle (on): I know no one with a better understanding of medieval Welsh. 4 reading, interpretation, opinion, judgement, estimation, notion, view, perception, apperception, apprehension: My understanding of what took place is at odds with yours. 5 intellect, intelligence, mind, brain, brainpower, sense, reason, reasoning power, wisdom, Colloq brains: I'm afraid that he lacks the understanding needed to cope with the subtleties of the situation.

understated

adj. subtle, restrained, low-key, simple, basic, unembellished, unadorned: Alexandra was wearing an understated black dress with a string of pearls.

understood

adj. accepted, agreed, arranged, given, covenanted, settled, conceded: It was understood that we would be dining together that night. The terms of the agreement are now fully understood.

understudy

n. 1 second, substitute, stand-in, alternate, backup, double, sub, reserve, US pinch-hitter: The understudy got her break one night when the star fell ill.

--v. 2 substitute for, stand in for, back up, double for, second, replace, US pinch-hit for: He is understudying Hamlet as well playing the part of Laertes.

undertake v. 1 assume, take on or upon (oneself), accept, take or assume or bear the responsibility for, enter upon, begin, start, set about, embark on, tackle, try, attempt: Gates might be undertaking a bit too much, considering his condition. 2 promise, covenant, agree, contract, pledge, vow, swear, warrant, guarantee, bargain, commit (oneself), stipulate, engage: Is it not true that you undertook to complete the work in six months?

undertaker

n. mortician, funeral director: The body is available for viewing at the undertaker's tonight.

undertaking

n. 1 enterprise, affair, business, project, task, effort, venture, work, feat: The scope of the undertaking was far beyond her capacity. 2 doing, performing, performance, realization, achievement: Giles's undertaking of the work makes me feel more confident. 3 promise, pledge, commitment, assurance, contract, agreement, vow, guarantee or guaranty, warranty: You gave an undertaking to complete the work by Friday.

underworld

n. 1 Usually, the underworld. organized crime, the syndicate, the Mafia, the mob, Cosa Nostra, criminals, the criminal element, Colloq gangland: Lorenzo was fast becoming a well-known figure in the underworld. 2 nether regions, abode of the dead, Hades, Hell, Avernus, Dis, Orcus, Facetious Egyptian underground: I think I prefer contemplating the Happy Hunting Ground of the American Indian to the underworlds of Christianity and classical Mediterranean culture.

underwrite

v. 1 back (up), finance, support, invest in, subsidize, subvene, sponsor, uphold, approve, insure, guarantee, US subvene: The company has agreed to underwrite the development of your invention. 2 subscribe to, endorse or indorse, sign, countersign, consent to, agree to, confirm, accede to, sanction, ratify, approve, validate, Colloq OK or okay: The government underwrote the action one day, then denied knowledge of it the next.

undesirable

n. 1 persona non grata, pariah, outcast, exile, reject, leper: The police had many requests to run the undesirables out of town.

--adj. 2 unwanted, objectionable, offensive, unacceptable, obnoxious, unsavoury, unwelcome, disliked, distasteful, repugnant, unfit, unbecoming, unsuitable: The parks are filled with tramps, drug addicts, and other undesirable elements.

undeveloped
adj. embryonic, premature, immature, incipient, inchoate, potential, latent: His sense of beauty remained undeveloped till he visited Rome.

undiluted adj. pure, neat, straight, unmixed, uncut, unblended, unadulterated, unwatered, unalloyed: No ice, please - I like my whisky undiluted. How do you like the undiluted gall of the fellow walking in here uninvited!

undisciplined
adj. untrained, unschooled, unprepared, untutored, uneducated, untaught, unpractised, uncontrolled, disobedient, naughty, bad, wilful, wayward, unrestrained, erratic, unpredictable, unruly, wild: The sergeant has taken quite a few undisciplined recruits and knocked them into shape.

undisguised
adj. open, out-and-out, unmistakable or unmistakeable, overt, unconcealed, unreserved, unrestrained, unfeigned, unpretended, obvious, evident, patent, clear, explicit, transparent, sincere, heartfelt, unalloyed, unmitigated: They regarded the traitor with undisguised contempt.

undisputed
adj. unquestioned, unquestionable, beyond question, accepted, acknowledged, admitted, indisputable, indubitable, undoubted, certain, sure, unmistakable or unmistakeable, definite, explicit, clear, (self-)evident, obvious, uncontested, unchallenged, incontestable, irrefutable, incontrovertible, undeniable, conclusive: He proved once again that he is the undisputed heavyweight champion of the world.

undistinguished
adj. ordinary, commonplace, common, everyday, run-of-the-mill, pedestrian, unexceptional, plain, homespun, simple, prosaic, unremarkable; mediocre, middling, indifferent, unexciting, unimpressive, unpretentious, Brit homely, Colloq so so, no great shakes, no big deal, nothing to write home about, nothing special or unusual or extraordinary: It was an undistinguished

modern building near the roundabout.

undivided adj. 1 whole, entire, unbroken, uncut, intact, unseparated, complete, unsplit: The family lands remained undivided for generations. 2 undiverted, whole, entire, devoted, concentrated, full, complete, exclusive, undistracted: You have my undivided attention.

undo v. 1 loosen, loose, open, unfasten, unhook, unlace, unzip, unsnap, unbutton, untie, unpin; unlock, unbolt: Help me undo my blouse. Don't undo the gate - you'll let the dogs out. 2 unwrap, uncover, open, untie, unbind: Why have you allowed the children to undo their Christmas presents a week early? 3 cancel, annul, rescind, nullify, void, declare null and void, reverse, invalidate: If one could undo things there would be no such thing as regret.

undoing n. 1 ruin, ruination, destruction, devastation, defeat, downfall, overthrow, fall, collapse, descent, debasement, degradation, abasement, mortification, humiliation, shame, disgrace: It is not easy to identify the factors that brought about the demagogue's undoing. 2 curse, misfortune, bane, affliction, trouble, blight: As the novelists would have it, a beautiful woman was his undoing.

undone° adj. 1 ruined, lost, wrecked, crushed, destroyed, devastated, shattered, brought to ruin, defeated, prostrated, overcome: Brian was completely undone by that gold-digging heart-breaker he met in Caracas. If the headmaster finds out about the glue, we are undone! 2 open, loose, loosened, untied, unfastened, detached, unhooked, unlaced, unzipped, unsnapped, unbuttoned, unpinned, unstuck: Your shoelaces are undone. The knot came undone.

undoneý adj. unaccomplished, uncompleted, incomplete, unfinished, omitted, neglected, left (out), skipped, missed, passed over, forgotten, unattended to: From this list of chores, how many are still undone?

undoubtedly

adv. indubitably, without (a) doubt, indisputably, unquestionably, beyond (a or the shadow of a) doubt, certainly, definitely, surely, assuredly, unmistakably or unmistakeably, explicitly, clearly, obviously, incontestably, irrefutably, incontrovertibly, undeniably: If they win, they will undoubtedly go to the pub to celebrate.

unduly adv. 1 disproportionately, excessively, overly, unnecessarily, inordinately, unreasonably, irrationally, unjustifiably, improperly, inappropriately: He claimed that he was being unduly harassed by the police. 2 immoderately, lavishly, profusely, extravagantly: Don't be unduly generous in tipping our waiter - he did spill the soup in your lap.

unearth v. dig up, disinter, exhume; excavate, dredge up, mine, quarry, find, pull or root out, come across, discover, turn up, expose, uncover: The artefacts were unearthed at Boghazk”y, ancient Hattusas. They had unearthed some evidence that would put him away for years.

unearthly adj. 1 supernatural, unnatural, preternatural, unworldly, other-worldly, psychic(al), extramundane, extraterrestrial, extrasensory, supersensory, out-of-(the)-body, asomatous, incorporeal, sublime, celestial, astral: They speculated about what unearthly experiences space travel might lead to. 2 weird, bizarre, macabre, nightmarish, uncanny, eerie, strange, ghostly, spectral, unreal, Literary eldritch, Colloq spooky, creepy: An unearthly creature appeared in a mist before her. 3 strange, odd, peculiar, unusual, abnormal, absurd, out of the ordinary, extraordinary, outrageous; unheard-of, unreasonable, Colloq ungodly: The baby wakes up at the unearthly hour of three o'clock every morning.

uneducated

adj. unschooled, untaught, uncultivated, unread, uncultured, illiterate, unlettered, ignorant, unenlightened: It is debatable whether the fault for being uneducated lies with the student, the teacher, or the system.

unemployed

adj. out of work, jobless, idle, laid off, out of a job, out of work, unoccupied, inactive, Facetious resting, at liberty, at leisure, Brit redundant, Colloq Brit on the dole: He has been unemployed ever since he was made redundant.

unenthusiastic

adj. lukewarm, cool, cold, uninterested, indifferent, blas,, unresponsive, apathetic, unexcited, unimpressed: Bentley presented the new design, but the directors were unenthusiastic and turned it down.

unenviable
adj. uncoveted, undesirable, unwished for, unattractive: He was given the unenviable task of informing the victim's family.

unfamiliar
adj. 1 new, novel, unknown, unconventional, unusual, different, uncommon, strange, odd, peculiar, bizarre: The man spoke in a tongue that was totally unfamiliar to me. 2 Usually, unfamiliar with. unacquainted with, unaccustomed to, inexperienced in or with, unused to, unconversant with, uninformed about, ignorant of, unpractised or unskilled in, unskilled at, uninitiated in, unversed in: The Americans were as unfamiliar with cricket as the Englishmen were with baseball.

unflattering
adj. 1 harsh, unsympathetic; realistic, stark, candid: Her hairstyle was unflattering and made her face look rather heavy. 2 uncomplimentary, insulting, unfavourable: Saying that I look just like my grandmother is quite unflattering.

unfledged adj. undeveloped, immature, unmatured, inexperienced, green, callow, young, raw, ungrown: Take these unfledged recruits and turn them into men.

unfold v. 1 open (out or up), spread (out), unfurl, stretch out, expand, uncoil, unwind, straighten out: Emerging from the pupa, it unfolds its wings and becomes a beautiful butterfly. 2 develop, evolve, happen, take place, occur, be divulged, be disclosed or revealed: What will unfold next in our little drama?

unforeseen
adj. unexpected, surprising, unanticipated, unpredicted, unlooked-for, unsought, unhoped for, undreamed of or undreamt of, unthought of, startling, surprise, chance, fortuitous: The sales manager's resignation was an unforeseen event.

unfortunate

adj. 1 unlucky, luckless; cursed, out of luck, unblessed, Colloq down on (one's) luck: She was unfortunate enough to have married early and divorced late. 2 poor, miserable, wretched, woebegone, pathetic, dismal, unhappy, forlorn, pitiable, doomed, ill-starred, star-crossed, ill-fated: These unfortunate refugees have nowhere to go if we refuse them asylum. 3 deplorable, terrible, awful, catastrophic, disastrous, calamitous, tragic, lamentable, regrettable, distressing, upsetting, disturbing, inauspicious, grievous, ruinous: It was an unfortunate decision, and led to many problems. The flood was a most unfortunate sequel to the earthquake.

unfounded adj. baseless, groundless, unwarranted, unjustified, unsupported, unsupportable, unsound, unjustifiable, unattested, unproven: Reports of a typhoid outbreak are completely unfounded.

ungodly adj. 1 wicked, sinful, impious, blasphemous, heretical, irreligious, iconoclastic, atheist(ic), anti-religious, sacrilegious, demonic, demoniac(al), diabolic(al), satanic, fiendish, hellish, infernal; depraved, godless, corrupt, immoral, evil, iniquitous, bad, villainous, heinous, flagitious, profane, vile: The crusaders believed that they had a duty to deliver Jerusalem from the ungodly heathens. 2 awful, outrageous, indecent, monstrous, nasty, dreadful, terrible, appalling, frightful, shocking, Colloq God-awful, unearthly, Brit beastly: Margot and I were subjected to another ungodly evening at the Dawsons'.

ungovernable
adj. unruly, refractory, intractable, unmanageable, uncontrollable, rebellious, wild, disobedient, unrestrainable, incorrigible: The nursemaid was saddled with two ungovernable children whom she had to cosset.

ungraceful
adj. 1 awkward, clumsy, ungainly, lubberly, Colloq all thumbs, butter-fingered, Slang US and Canadian klutzy: People in the aerobics class are always ungraceful to start off with. 2 inelegant, graceless, coarse, crude, inartistic, vulgar, tasteless, unaesthetic, unrefined, barbarous, unlovely, ugly, unharmonious, unattractive, ill-proportioned, unsymmetric(al), asymmetric(al): Some regard the Albert Memorial as a paragon of

ungraceful Victorian design.

ungracious
adj. discourteous, overbearing, churlish, gauche, rude, uncivil, impolite, ill-bred, bad-mannered, unmannerly, ungentlemanly, unladylike, gruff, bluff, brusque, abrupt, surly, curmudgeonly: It was ungracious of him not to acknowledge the help of his staff.

ungrateful
adj. unthankful, unappreciative, rude; selfish, heedless: That ungrateful wretch never thanked me for all my help.

unguarded adj. 1 incautious, unwary, careless, inattentive, heedless, inobservant, inadvertent, unthinking, unwatchful, unvigilant: He let the intruder past him in an unguarded moment. 2 defenceless, unprotected, undefended, unfortified, open, uncovered, exposed, vulnerable: The sentry insisted that he had left his post unguarded for only a few minutes. 3 indiscreet, careless, imprudent, unwise, hasty, unthinking, thoughtless; guileless, incautious: He was anxious to restore good relations after his unguarded remarks about their associates.

unhappy adj. 1 sad, depressed, blue, dejected, melancholy, despondent, downcast, gloomy, downhearted, dispirited, heavy-hearted, long-faced, disconsolate, sorrowful, miserable, crestfallen, cheerless, forlorn, low-spirited, glum, distressed, tearful, Formal lachrymose, Colloq down, Slang US bummed out: Mary is very unhappy that John is to be away a whole month. 2 unlucky, unfortunate, unpropitious, inauspicious, unfavourable, luckless, hapless, cursed, wretched, ill-omened, ill-fated, ill-starred, star-crossed, jinxed, disastrous: Let me tell you how this unhappy state of affairs came about. 3 infelicitous, unfitting, inappropriate, unsuitable, unsuited, wrong, inexpedient, ill-advised, poor, unfortunate: Vivian was an unhappy choice as his successor.

unhealthy adj. 1 ailing, unwell, ill, sickly, infirm, feeble, frail, debilitated, unsound, sick, in poor or delicate health or condition, indisposed, invalid, valetudinary: The boys had pasty, unhealthy faces. 2 unwholesome, harmful, noxious, detrimental, insalubrious, damaging, injurious, destructive, malign: The doctor said that this climate is unhealthy for people with respiratory disorders. 3 risky, dangerous, perilous, life-threatening, touch-and-go: You might find it unhealthy to criticize the government here.

unheard-of

adj. 1 unknown, unfamiliar, obscure, unidentified, nameless, unsung: She is busy trying to promote some unheard-of sculptor. 2 unimaginable, undreamed of or undreamt of, unprecedented, unimagined, unbelievable, inconceivable, unusual: They took the unheard-of step of requiring that refunds be paid. Her starting salary is an unheard-of œ100,000. 3 shocking, offensive, outrageous, disgraceful, extreme, unthinkable, outlandish: The victims were subjected to unheard-of tortures.

unheralded

adj. unannounced, unpublicized, unadvertised; unexpected, surprise, unanticipated, unforeseen, unpredicted: Published by some obscure company, the book turned out to be an unheralded success.

unhesitating

adj. 1 swift, rapid, quick, immediate, instantaneous, prompt, ready, unhesitant: The response was an unhesitating 'No!' 2 unfaltering, unwavering, wholehearted, unqualified, unswerving, undeviating, staunch, steadfast, implicit, resolute: We appreciate your unhesitating devotion to duty.

unhurried adj. leisurely, unrushed, easy, easygoing, casual, gradual, deliberate, steady, sedate, calm: We proceeded at an unhurried pace, eventually arriving at dusk at the castle gates.

unidentified

adj. nameless, anonymous, unknown, unmarked, unnamed, unknown, unfamiliar, unrecognized, mysterious: The police found the body of a unidentified woman in the park.

uniform adj. 1 homogeneous, consistent, unvaried, unchanged, unaltered; unvarying, unchanging; invariable, unchangeable, unalterable, regimented, standard; ordered, orderly, equal, even, like, identical; alike: The mixture is uniform throughout. The rules are uniform for everyone. Line up in ten uniform rows of ten each. 2 even, unbroken, smooth, regular, flat: Not one irregularity marred the uniform surface of the plain.

--n. 3 livery, habit, regalia, costume, outfit; regimentals: When I next saw him, he was in the uniform of a Gestapo officer.

uniformity
n. 1 regularity, similarity, sameness, homogeneity, consistency, symmetry, evenness, invariability, unchangeability, similitude, conformity, agreement, concord, accord, harmoniousness; harmony, concordance, accordance, conformance, correspondence: One can easily see the lack of uniformity even in what is supposed to be a classless society. 2 dullness, monotony, drabness, sameness, tedium, featurelessness, flatness, invariability, lack of variety, changelessness: After a few days, the uniformity of the routine began to get on my nerves.

unify v. consolidate, unite, combine, amalgamate, coalesce, bring together, fuse, join, weld, merge, confederate, integrate: The separate elements were unified into a coherent whole. Successive Reform Bills unified the nation.

unimpeded adj. unblocked, unchecked, free, unconstrained, unrestrained, unhindered, unhampered, unencumbered, open, untrammelled, unrestricted: They insist on having unimpeded access to the files.

unimposing
adj. unimpressive, nugatory, trivial, trifling, minor, unimportant, puny, inconsiderable, negligible: It was an unimposing building sandwiched between two office blocks. A more unimposing little cockalorum has seldom assailed my sensibilities.

uninformed
adj. ignorant, nescient, unknowledgeable, unenlightened, uneducated, unschooled, untutored, untaught, uninstructed, unaware, incognizant: The problem is not that they are stupid, merely uninformed and misinformed.

uninhabited
adj. desolate, empty, abandoned, deserted, unoccupied, vacant, vacated, tenantless, untenanted; desert, unpopulated, unpeopled, trackless, depopulated, waste, barren: Tristan da Cunha, in the south Atlantic, is an uninhabited island.

uninhibited

adj. wild, unchecked, unbridled, uncurbed, intemperate, boisterous, unrepressed, unconstrained, unrestrained, uncontrolled, unselfconscious, unreserved, relaxed, casual, easygoing, free (and easy), open, frank, candid, outspoken, Colloq upfront: Their behaviour at the party was totally uninhibited. I will tell you what I think only if I can be totally uninhibited about it.

uninviting

adj. repulsive, repellent, offensive, unappealing, unattractive, unpleasant, disagreeable, distasteful, unappetizing, unsavoury, sickening, revolting, obnoxious, nasty, disgusting, Brit off-putting: The food he put on the table was cold and uninviting.

union n. 1 uniting, unity, combining, combination, joining, junction, conjoining, conjunction, allying, alliance, associating, association, coalition, amalgamating, amalgamation, fusing, fusion, marrying, marriage, confederating, confederation, confederacy, synthesizing, synthesis, mixing, mixture, federation, togetherness: Monarchies favour the union of Church and State. 2 alliance, association, organization, society, circle, fraternity, club, fellowship, team, ring, gang, syndicate, coalition, party, confederation, confederacy, federation, Bund, league, consortium, bloc, cartel, trust: The countries formed a union to control their joint economies. 3 joint, seam, splice, junction, conjunction, graft, weld; coupling: The union between the two pieces may be stronger than the material itself. 4 agreement, accord, harmony, harmoniousness, congruity, coherence, compatibility, unanimity, unity: The union of the various elements in the painting was skilfully effected.

unique adj. 1 single, lone, (one and) only, solitary, one of a kind, sui generis: Natural forces conspired to create this unique situation. 2 unequalled, unparalleled, unrivalled, incomparable, inimitable, peerless, unmatched, unsurpassed, unexcelled, second to none: Stimble's genius is unique in the annals of proctology.

unison n. in unison (with). in harmony, together, corresponding exactly, in (perfect) accord, consonant, harmonious: Why is his singing never in unison with ours? We all responded in unison with a rousing 'No!'

unit n. element, component, entity, part, item, constituent, piece, portion, segment, section, module: The units fit together like Lego blocks.

unite v. 1 combine, unify, merge, coalesce, amalgamate, mix, mingle, commingle, intermix, blend, consolidate, fuse: The splinter parties have united to form a coalition. 2 join (forces), unify, wed, marry, link, connect, merge: The two families are united by marriage. 3 bond, fuse or weld or solder or glue or stick or tie or bind or fasten or fix or fit (together): Unite these pieces and the job is done.

united adj. 1 unified, common, mutual, combined, merged, coalesced, pooled, shared, collective, joint, amalgamated, connected: The new law will serve our united interests. 2 joint, cooperative, common, communal, collaborative, synergetic or synergistic, collective, concerted, coordinated, allied; partnership: We must make a united effort if we are to survive. 3 agreed, unanimous, in agreement, of one mind, of like mind or opinion, like-minded, in accord, in harmony, harmonious: We are united in our assessment of last night's performance.

unity n. 1 consistency, unanimity, constancy, uniformity, sameness, consensus, agreement, concord, concordance, accord, solidarity, compatibility, concurrence, continuity, consentaneousness, rapport, sympathy, like-mindedness: All members of the association enjoy a unity of purpose. 2 oneness, singularity, integrity, singleness, congruity, uniformity, congruousness, homogeneity, identity, sameness, resemblance, likeness, similarity, similitude: If there is little unity between your ideas and those of the organization, perhaps you should resign. 3 unification, uniting, combination: In unity is strength.

universal adj. 1 prevalent, prevailing, general, worldwide, widespread, ubiquitous, omnipresent, limitless, unlimited, common, pandemic, epidemic: The end of the 20th century is marked by a universal preoccupation with greed. 2 cosmic, infinite, boundless, limitless, unlimited, measureless, endless, uncircumscribed, all-inclusive, all-embracing, all-encompassing, wide-ranging, comprehensive: Renaissance man was regarded as possessing universal knowledge.

universally
adv. in every case or instance, in all cases or instances, unexceptionally, without exception, uniformly, always, invariably: In those days, it was universally accepted that the earth was flat.

universe n. 1 cosmos, creation, macrocosm: What arrogance makes man believe that in all the vast universe God pays him any heed? 2 world, bailiwick, sphere, province, domain, circle, milieu, territory, corner, quarter, microcosm: Such behaviour may be acceptable in her tiny universe.

unkempt adj. dishevelled, uncombed, tousled, disarranged, ungroomed, wind-blown, untidy, disordered, mussed (-up), messy, messed-up, bedraggled, shaggy, scruffy, rumpled, slovenly, frowzy, blowzy, Archaic draggle-tailed, Colloq sloppy: Mother would refuse to allow us to the table if we were unkempt.

unkind adj. inconsiderate, unthoughtful, thoughtless, unfeeling, unconcerned, insensitive, unkindly, unsympathetic, uncharitable, unchristian, uncaring, hard-hearted, heartless, flinty, hard, rigid, callous, tough, inflexible, unyielding, unbending, severe, harsh, stern, cruel, mean, inhuman: It was very unkind of you to refuse the beggar.

unknown adj. 1 unrecognized, unfamiliar, strange, unnamed, anonymous, nameless, unidentified; obscure, unheard-of, little-known, humble, undistinguished, unsung: Some unknown person left this package for you. Bill is in some unknown place for the weekend. An unknown poet won the competition. 2 unfamiliar, unexplored, uninvestigated, unresearched, unrevealed, mysterious, uncharted, unidentified, dark: We were now going into unknown territory. 3 unbeknownst, untold, unrevealed: Unknown to me, the thieves were at that moment breaking in through the kitchen window.

unlamented
adj. unmissed, unmourned, unbemoaned, unbewailed, unloved: They destroyed a statue of the late, unlamented Joseph Stalin.

unlawful adj. illegal, illicit, against the law, illegitimate, under the table, under the counter, criminal, felonious; outlawed, banned, prohibited, forbidden, interdicted, disallowed, proscribed, verboten; unauthorized, unlicensed, unsanctioned: Unlawful payments had been made to councillors. Gambling has been declared unlawful in that county.

unlike adj. 1 different (from), dissimilar (to), unalike, distinct (from), opposite (from or to), contrasting or contrastive (with or to), separate (from), divergent (from), incompatible (with), distinguishable (from), far apart (from), far (from), distant (from), ill-matched (with), unequal (to), unequivalent (to): His notions of right and wrong are unlike those of other people. Although they're brothers, they look quite unlike each other. 2 atypical, uncharacteristic, untypical: It is unlike you to complain.

--prep. 3 different from, differing from, in contradistinction to, in contrast with or to, dissimilar to, distinct from, opposite from or to, contrasting with or to, divergent from, incompatible with, distinguishable from, ill-matched with, unequal to, unequivalent to: Unlike you, I've been there and know what it's like.

unlikely adj. 1 improbable, doubtful, dubious, remote, unthinkable, unimaginable, inconceivable, implausible: His story was unlikely, but she decided to believe him. It is not unlikely that he will come even if we ask him to stay away. 2 unseemly, inappropriate, unfit, unfitting, unsuitable, uncongenial, objectionable, unbecoming, unacceptable, unattractive, distasteful: Claire had seldom seen a more unlikely prospect for a husband. 3 unpropitious, unpromising, inauspicious: The tiny shop seemed an unlikely place to find a great treasure.

unlimited adj. 1 unrestricted, unrestrained, limitless, unconstrained, unqualified, full, absolute, unconditional, far-reaching, unchecked, uncontrolled: He has unlimited authority to issue all the paper money he wishes. 2 limitless, boundless, endless, vast, unbounded, immense, immeasurable, measureless, numberless, innumerable, inexhaustible, interminable, never-ending, infinite, myriad, extensive,: As the wealthiest woman in the world, she has unlimited resources to do as she pleases.

unload v. empty, dump, unpack, offload, discharge; disburden, unburden: We unloaded the cargo at Sulawesi. The camels must be unloaded every night.

unmarried adj. single, unwed(ded), bachelor, spinster, old-maid, maiden, unattached, unengaged, unbetrothed, unplighted, unpromised, free, uncommitted: He was thirty-five, unmarried, and lived alone in a tiny flat.

unmentionable

adj. 1 unspeakable, unutterable, ineffable, taboo, scandalous, forbidden, interdicted; inexpressible: I will not have Karen or her unmentionable boyfriend in this house again! 2 disgraceful, indecent, immodest, shameful, shocking, appalling, dishonourable, indescribable, obscene, filthy: In carnivals, geeks do unmentionable things with live chickens.

--n. 3 unmentionables. underclothes, underclothing, underwear, undergarments, lingerie, Archaic small-clothes, Colloq underthings, undies, Brit smalls, US skivvies: The woman next door insists on hanging out her unmentionables in full view of the whole street.

unmerciful

adj. merciless, pitiless, unsparing, unkind, relentless, unpitying, heartless, stony-hearted, hard-hearted, flinty, unfeeling, unsympathetic, unforgiving, mean, cruel, savage, brutal, brutish, vicious, barbarous: The boys gave him an unmerciful beating for cheating.

unmitigated

adj. undiluted, unalloyed, unmixed, untempered, unmoderated, unmodified, unabated, unlessened, undiminished, unreduced, unrelieved, oppressive, unalleviated, unmollified, unsoftened, relentless, unqualified, out-and-out, thorough, thoroughgoing, outright, downright, categorical, absolute, immoderate, sheer, complete, consummate, total, perfect, true, pure, arrant, utter, plain: That man is an unmitigated bore. The project was an unmitigated disaster.

unmoved adj. cool, aloof, calm, collected, unaffected, untouched, unsympathetic, unstirred, undisturbed, apathetic, stoic(al), impassive, dispassionate, unemotional, unfeeling, unconcerned, indifferent, unreactive, unresponsive, stolid, stony, adamant,

stony-hearted, hard-hearted: Despite her child's tears, she
remained totally unmoved.

unnatural adj. 1 Derogatory abnormal, perverse, perverted, monstrous,
unusual, peculiar, strange, aberrant, improper, unseemly; Slang
kinky , Chiefly Brit bent: There was a scandal when the senator
was found to have engaged in some unnatural act. 2
sodomitic(al), bestial, tribadic, tribadistic: They still coyly
referred to homosexual activities as 'unnatural acts'. 3
uncharacteristic, out of character, odd, peculiar, strange,
unexpected, abnormal, unusual: Isn't it unnatural for someone
who has won the sweepstakes to look so unhappy? 4 laboured,
forced, stilted, stiff, restrained, artificial, false,
insincere, feigned, contrived, affected, mannered,
self-conscious, theatrical, stagy: She has an irritating,
unnatural laugh. 5 outlandish, weird, uncanny, strange, odd,
unaccountable, supernatural, preternatural, queer, grotesque,
bizarre, extraordinary, eccentric, freakish: Let me tell you
about the unnatural events that took place in that house.

unnecessary
adj. unneeded, needless, unrequired, dispensable, disposable,
expendable, unwanted, surplus, superfluous, supererogatory,
inessential, unessential, non-essential: The children were
asleep, so we asked the workmen to avoid making any unnecessary
noise.

unnerve   v. upset, agitate, perturb, ruffle, fluster, rattle, discomfit,
unsettle, disconcert, dismay, intimidate, stun, stupefy, Colloq
shake (up), faze: Peter drove home slowly: the accident he had
seen had unnerved him.

unnoticed adj. unnoted, overlooked, unobserved, undiscovered, unremarked,
unmarked, unperceived; unseen, unheard: Fortunately, Martha's
nasty aside went unnoticed.

unobtrusive
adj. inconspicuous, unostentatious, low-key, retiring, modest,
self-effacing, unpresuming, unpretentious, unassuming, quiet,
humble, unaggressive, unassertive, non-assertive, subdued,
reserved, reticent, suppressed: Agatha may seem unobtrusive,
but she's a tigress when aroused.

unofficial

adj. informal, unauthorized, undocumented, off the record, private, secret, unpublicized, unannounced: The builder acknowledged having had unofficial meetings with the council.

unopened adj. closed, shut: The book lay, unopened, on the bedside table.

unorthodox

adj. irregular, unconventional, nonconformist, unconforming, nonconforming, aberrant, aberrational, deviant, heteroclite, unusual, abnormal, uncustomary, uncommon: Roebuck's unorthodox methods almost lost him his job.

unpaid adj. 1 payable, outstanding, owed, owing, due, unsettled: In the end he absconded, leaving a pile of unpaid bills. 2 unsalaried, voluntary, volunteer, honorary, US dollar-a-year: On retirement, she took an unpaid job with Oxfam.

unpalatable

adj. distasteful, disagreeable, unpleasant, unsavoury, unappetizing, unattractive, repugnant, nasty, offensive; rancid, sour, off, turned, bitter, inedible, uneatable: Without an education, they are often offered the unpalatable jobs. We found heavy claret totally unpalatable with the sole.

unparalleled

adj. unequalled, incomparable, matchless, peerless, unrivalled, unmatched, inimitable, unexcelled, superior, supreme, superlative, unsurpassed, unusual, special, singular, rare, unique, exceptional, consummate: In our experience, the food and service aboard the Normandie were unparalleled.

unperfumed

adj. unscented, plain, natural: This deodorant is available in sandalwood, forest pine, mint, or unperfumed.

unpopular adj. out of favour, in bad odour, unliked, disliked, shunned, avoided, snubbed, ignored, unsought after, unaccepted, unwanted, rejected, unwelcome, undesirable; unloved, friendless: New taxes are always unpopular. James had always been an unpopular boy at school.

unprejudiced

adj. unbigoted, unbiased, impartial, unjaundiced, just, fair, objective, disinterested, fair-minded, non-partisan, liberal, open-minded, undogmatic: An unprejudiced opinion would be difficult to find, since everyone has an axe to grind.

unpremeditated

adj. unprepared, unplanned, unarranged, uncontrived, unstudied, coincidental, spontaneous, spur-of-the-moment, last-minute, impromptu, extemporaneous or extemporary, extempore, ad lib, offhand, casual, impulsive, natural, involuntary, automatic, unconscious, Colloq off the cuff: I had no inkling of her plans, so my running into her was entirely unpremeditated. Her immediate, unpremeditated reaction was to run away.

unprepared

adj. 1 unready, surprised, taken aback, (caught) napping or off guard, dumbfounded or dumfounded, at sixes and sevens, Colloq (caught) with (one's) pants down, Brit caught on the hop, US asleep at the switch: The sudden squall found us unprepared and we lost a sail. 2 unfinished, incomplete, uncompleted: Dinner was still unprepared at eight o'clock. 3 unwarned, unreadied, not set up, not forewarned: I was unprepared for the strange events that followed. 4 See unpremeditated, above.

unprofessional

adj. 1 unbecoming, improper, unethical, unprincipled, unseemly, undignified, unfitting, unbefitting, unworthy, unscholarly, negligent, lax: The Medical Association is quick to act against doctors whose conduct might be judged unprofessional. 2 amateurish, amateur, inexpert, inexperienced, untrained, untutored, unschooled, incompetent, unskilled, unskilful, inferior, second-rate, inefficient, poor, shoddy, low-quality, sloppy: It was an astonishingly unprofessional way to audit accounts. 3 non-technical, unspecialized, non-specialist, lay, everyday, ordinary, plain (English), understandable: What does all that gobbledegook mean when translated into unprofessional language?

unprofitable

adj. 1 profitless, ungainful, unremunerative, unfruitful, non-profit-making; breaking even; losing, loss-making: The last quarter was unprofitable for car manufacturers. 2 bootless, pointless, purposeless, unavailing, futile, useless, unproductive, worthless, ineffective, inefficient: Having employees sitting about waiting for the telephone to ring is unprofitable.

unpromising

adj. inauspicious, unpropitious, unfavourable, gloomy, ominous, adverse, portentous, baleful, hopeless: The forecast for the economy looked unpromising yesterday but has suddenly brightened.

unqualified

adj. 1 ineligible, unfit, untrained, ill-equipped, unsuited, unequipped, unprepared: He was rejected as unqualified for the job of repairing computers. 2 unrestricted, unreserved, unconditional, categorical, outright, unmitigated, downright, out-and-out, pure (and simple), true, perfect, utter, absolute, consummate: If he told you that he flew jets in the RAF, he is an unqualified liar. Cato's unqualified 'Delenda est Cartago' was echoed in every speech he made in the Roman senate.

unquenchable

adj. insatiable, unslakeable or unslakable, unsatisfiable; inextinguishable, unsuppressible, irrepressible, indestructible: She had an unquenchable thirst for knowledge. Those principles have kindled an unquenchable fire in the hearts of the oppressed.

unquestionable

adj. unexceptionable, indubitable, undoubted, indisputable, incontestable, unimpeachable, undeniable, certain, sure, positive, irrefutable, manifest, obvious, patent, clear, definite, incontrovertible, unequivocal, unmistakable or unmistakeable, conclusive: Their integrity is unquestionable, and I have complete confidence in them.

unreal   adj. 1 imaginary, fantastic, chimeric(al), fanciful, fancied, illusory, make-believe, phantasmagoric(al), phantasmal, spectral, figmental, unrealistic, non-existent: Fear made the whole scene unreal to Martha. 2 theoretical, hypothetical, mythical, imaginary, made-up, fictitious, make-believe, fanciful: Although the example is unreal, it will serve its purpose in my argument. 3 artificial, synthetic, synthesized, mock, false, fake(d), counterfeit, fraudulent, dummy, spurious, falsified, pretend(ed), sham, pseudo, make-believe: The countryside looked a little unreal, too luxuriant and too sculptured.

unrealistic

adj. 1 impractical, illogical, unreasonable, unworkable, unrealizable, quixotic, romantic, fanciful, visionary, delusional, delusive, delusory: However exciting it is to think of travelling faster than light, the notion is unrealistic. 2 unreal, unlifelike, unnatural, unauthentic, non-representational, unrepresentative, inaccurate: The background paintings are poorly done and unrealistic.

unreasonable

adj. 1 irrational, illogical, unthinking, absurd, foolish, senseless, nonsensical, mindless, brainless, thoughtless, silly, mad, crazy, insane, idiotic, moronic, imbecilic, stupid, fatuous, ridiculous, ludicrous, laughable, preposterous, far-fetched, short-sighted, unperceptive, unperceiving, undiscerning, myopic, blind: Some people have an unreasonable aversion to anything scientific. Is it unreasonable to expect you to spend a little time with your mother? 2 excessive, outrageous, exorbitant, extravagant, immoderate, extortionate, inordinate, unconscionable, unjust, unwarranted, inequitable, unfair, unequal, improper, unjustified, unjustifiable, uncalled-for: The new tax puts an unreasonable demand on those with lower incomes. 3 inappropriate, unapt or inapt, unsuitable, unbefitting, impractical, unrealistic: His conduct was quite unreasonable for a man of the cloth.

unrefined adj. 1 coarse, rude, rough, unsophisticated, uncultured, uncivilized, uncultivated, unpolished, inelegant, ill-bred, impolite, discourteous, unmannerly, ill-mannered, bad-mannered, ignoble, plebeian, undignified, unladylike, ungentlemanlike, ungentlemanly, uncourtly, ungracious, boorish, loutish, gross, vulgar, uncouth, cloddish, bumbling, awkward, gauche: Consider their background before criticizing them for being unrefined. 2 impure, unpurified, unclarified, raw, crude, coarse, untreated, unfinished, natural, unprocessed: The unrefined ore is first washed thoroughly.

unrelated adj. independent, separate, distinct, different, dissimilar, incompatible, inappropriate, foreign, alien, unassociated, unaffiliated, unconnected, uncoupled, unlinked, unallied, uncoordinated: Why raise a totally unrelated issue?

unreliable
adj. irresponsible, disreputable; untrustworthy, undependable, uncertain, unstable, treacherous, flimsy, weak: He is unreliable and unlikely to be there when you need him. The equipment was expensive, slow, and unreliable.

unrepentant
adj. unrepenting, unremorseful, impenitent, unapologetic, unregretful, unashamed, unembarrassed, unselfconscious, remorseless, unreformed, unrehabilitated, unregenerate, recidivist or recidivistic or recidivous: They were quite unrepentant, though they had seen for themselves the harm they had done.

unresolved
adj. unsettled, open, up in the air, moot, pending, debatable, arguable, problematic(al), indefinite, vague, open to question, questionable, unanswered, unsolved; undetermined, undecided, uncertain, unsure, ambivalent, wavering, vacillating, irresolute: The matter of joining the monetary union remained unresolved. I am still unresolved on the issue.

unrest n. disquiet, uneasiness, distress, anxiety, anxiousness, nervousness, anguish, unease, worry, concern, agitation, turmoil, disturbance, trouble, strife, agony: The proximity of the huge army on our borders caused considerable unrest among the populace.

unruly adj. unmanageable, ungovernable, uncontrollable, undisciplined, unregulated, lawless, disobedient, insubordinate, rebellious, mutinous, fractious, refractory, contumacious, obstreperous, wilful, headstrong, stubborn, recalcitrant, intractable, defiant, uncooperative, wayward, disorderly, turbulent, riotous, tumultuous, violent, stormy, tempestuous: She had no idea of how to handle a capricious and unruly teenager. The first reading of the bill led to an unruly session of Parliament.

unsatisfactory
adj. insufficient, inadequate, inferior, poor, unacceptable,

displeasing, disappointing, unworthy, inappropriate, deficient, weak, wanting, lacking, unsuitable, imperfect, flawed, defective, faulty: The report was unsatisfactory in that it failed to meet the committee's demands. Why put up with unsatisfactory workmanship?

unsavoury adj. distasteful, objectionable, unpleasant, disagreeable, unappetizing, unpalatable, offensive, repugnant, obnoxious, repellent, nasty, repulsive, revolting, disgusting, nauseating, sickening: Her ex-husband is a totally unsavoury character. Even the most unsavoury swill tasted like ambrosia to the starving inmates.

unscathed adj. unharmed, unhurt, uninjured, unmarked, untouched, undamaged, unscarred, unscratched, safe and sound, in one piece, as new, Archaic scatheless, Colloq like new: Miraculously, he came out of the battle unscathed.

unscrupulous
adj. unconscionable, conscienceless, unprincipled, amoral, unethical, immoral, dishonourable, corrupt, dishonest, deceitful, sly, cunning, artful, insidious, shifty, sneaky, slippery, roguish, knavish, disingenuous, treacherous, perfidious, faithless, false, untrustworthy, wicked, evil, Colloq crooked: Some people are totally unscrupulous in the pursuit of their ambitions.

unseasonable
adj. unsuitable, inopportune, inappropriate, untimely, ill-timed, inexpedient: Unseasonable frosts in April caused severe damage to the flower buds.

unseemly adj. 1 improper, unrefined, unbecoming, indecorous, indelicate, unbecoming, unladylike, ungentlemanly, undignified, in poor or bad taste, disreputable, discreditable, risqu,, naughty, indecent, shameful, offensive, lewd, lascivious, obscene, rude, coarse: Out of desperation, they engaged in some unseemly activities. 2 impolitic, unwise, imprudent, inapt, inappropriate, inopportune, inconvenient, uncalled-for, unsuitable, improper, inadvisable, ill-advised, unbefitting, unfitting, out of place or keeping, awkward, inauspicious, inexpedient, unfortunate, ill-timed, untimely: It would be unseemly for you to become involved with such a notorious individual.

unselfish adj. generous, charitable, open-handed, ungrudging, unstinting, unsparing, giving, magnanimous, philanthropic, humanitarian, free, liberal, altruistic, selfless, self-sacrificing: We were all greatly impressed by her unselfish concern for the well-being of her colleagues.

unsettled adj. 1 unfixed, unstable, changing, varying, variable, changeable, inconstant, ever-changing, protean, unpredictable, inconstant, uncertain: The weather remained unsettled all week. They told me of their unsettled life as gypsies. 2 disturbed, turbulent, riled, agitated, disquieted, upset, perturbed, ruffled, rattled, flustered, restive, restless, unnerved, US roiled: It was being kept in the dark about Father that made us feel unsettled. 3 disoriented, confused, mixed up, unorganized, disorganized, disorderly, disordered, tumultuous: The unsettled situation in the east worried us. 4 See unresolved, above: Some questions about Ian remain unsettled.

unsettling
adj. unnerving, upsetting, disturbing, perturbing, discomfiting, disconcerting: Sorry for being a wet blanket, but I have had some unsettling news from home.

unsightly adj. ugly, hideous, awful-looking, horrible, frightful-looking, unattractive, unprepossessing, unlovely, unpretty, plain, US and Canadian homely: The property borders an unsightly junk-yard.

unsocial adj. unsociable, unfriendly, cool, cold, chilly, aloof, uncongenial, unamiable, unforthcoming, standoffish, inhospitable, withdrawn, reserved, solitary, retiring, distant, detached, reclusive, hermitic(al), eremitic(al), anchoritic or anchoretic; antisocial, misanthropic, hostile: Erwin, who prefers to be alone, is definitely unsocial. Donna, who despises other people, is unsocial for different reasons.

unsolicited
adj. unlooked-for, unsought, unsought after, unrequested, unasked for, uncalled-for, gratuitous, uninvited; Colloq US over-the-transom: Tanya is always offering unsolicited advice on every conceivable subject. The publishers receive scores of unsolicited book manuscripts each week.

unsophisticated
adj. 1 na‹ve, inexperienced, simple, childlike, unworldly, innocent, ingenuous, artless, guileless: Is the unsophisticated consumer sufficiently protected against unscrupulous traders? 2 simple, plain, uncomplicated, undetailed, uninvolved, unrefined: The computers of twenty years ago were unsophisticated compared with those of today.

unsound adj. 1 weak, feeble, frail, rickety, shaky, ramshackle, infirm, unstable, wobbly, tottering, unsteady, broken-down, crumbling, disintegrating, dilapidated, defective, imperfect, faulty, decayed, rotten: The building inspector condemned the structure as unsound and unsafe. 2 unhealthy, diseased, ill, afflicted, in poor health, ailing, sickly, sick, unwell, delicate, injured, wounded: The attack of flu left him unsound in wind and limb. 3 insane, mad, psychotic, unbalanced, unstable, demented, deranged: The doctors said that she was still of unsound mind and ought not be released. 4 illogical, faulty, flawed, fallacious, untenable, invalid, groundless, unfounded, erroneous, defective, specious: We thought that his arguments were unsound, so we rejected his recommendations.

unspoiled adj. unspoilt, unsullied, pristine, virgin, whole, untainted, unstained, immaculate, uncorrupted, unpolluted, spotless, stainless: The house has been preserved in its original condition, unspoiled by modern additions.

unstable adj. 1 changeable, variable, unsteady, inconstant, inconsistent, insecure, capricious, fickle, irregular, unpredictable, unreliable, erratic, volatile, fluctuating, flighty, mercurial, vacillating, tergiversating, indecisive, undecided, irresolute, indefinite, unsettled: He seems too unstable to maintain a long-standing relationship. 2 See unsound, 1, above.

unsuccessful
adj. 1 unfortunate, unavailing, vain, abortive, useless, bootless, fruitless, unfruitful, unproductive, ineffective, ineffectual, inefficacious, worthless, unprofitable, sterile: We made an unsuccessful attempt to regain control of the company. 2 unlucky, hapless, unfortunate, luckless, defeated, beaten, jinxed, cursed, foiled, frustrated, balked: Trevor

complained that he had been unsuccessful in business all his life.

unsung adj. uncelebrated, unrecognized, unglorified, unexalted, unpraised, unhonoured, unnoticed, disregarded, unknown, anonymous, unidentified, nameless, obscure, insignificant, inconspicuous: I have no wish to add to the long list of unsung authors of the twentieth century.

unsuspecting
adj. unsuspicious, unwary, unknowing, ignorant, unconscious, gullible, credulous, na‹ve, ingenuous, innocent, trusting; unaware, off guard: Martin became an unsuspecting dupe in Lambert's plot to embezzle money from the bank.

unsympathetic
adj. uncaring, unconcerned, callous, unfeeling, unaffected, untouched, unmoved, indifferent, unemotional, dispassionate, uncompassionate, unreactive, unresponsive, impassive, stolid, cold, cool, aloof, unstirred, apathetic, insensitive, stoic(al), stony, adamant, stony-hearted, hard-hearted, unpitying, pitiless, ruthless: We were unable to understand Taylor's unsympathetic attitude to the suffering around him.

untamed adj. undomesticated, wild, unbroken, unsubdued, uncontrollable, savage, fierce, feral, ferocious: In the story, the wolf boy behaves like an untamed beast.

untarnished
adj. unsoiled, unsullied, immaculate, spotless, unspotted, untainted, faultless, uncorrupted, unfouled, chaste, lily-white, undefiled, virginal: Despite the obloquy heaped on his colleagues, his own reputation remained untarnished.

untenable adj. insupportable or unsupportable, indefensible, unsustainable, unmaintainable, unjustified, unjustifiable, baseless, groundless, unfounded, flawed, faulty, weak, illogical, specious, implausible, unreasonable, unsound: It is beyond me why he holds so tenaciously to such untenable views.

unthinkable
adj. 1 inconceivable, unbelievable, unimaginable, incredible, incomprehensible, beyond belief, extraordinary, Colloq

mind-boggling, Slang mind-blowing: It seemed unthinkable that such a mild-mannered man could have been a mass murderer. 2 unacceptable, absurd, illogical, impossible, improbable, unlikely, out of the question, preposterous, ridiculous, laughable, ludicrous, Colloq not on: It is simply unthinkable for her to go to the ball unattended.

unthinking
adj. 1 thoughtless, mindless, undiscriminating, unconsidered, unwitting, unreflecting, unthoughtful, irrational, unreasonable, illogical, unperceptive, unperceiving, undiscerning, witless, brainless, foolish, senseless, nonsensical, rash, stupid, silly, mad, crazy, insane, idiotic, moronic, imbecilic, hasty, short-sighted: It was unthinking of me to ask her mother to go out to dinner with us. 2 inconsiderate, impolite, tactless, rude, thoughtless, undiplomatic, discourteous, uncivil, imprudent, unwise, indiscreet, neglectful: On the other hand, it would have been unthinking of me not to ask her mother.

untidy   adj. disorderly, messy, dishevelled, unkempt, slovenly, slatternly, bedraggled, rumpled, frowzy, sloppy, dirty; littered, cluttered, chaotic, helter-skelter, jumbled, Archaic draggle-tailed, Colloq US mussy, mussed-up: You should never go to the door looking so untidy. Ken's papers are always so untidy.

untiring adj. unflagging, determined, indefatigable, dogged, persevering, perseverant, tireless, unwearying, unwearied, dogged, dedicated, unfailing, unfaltering, steady: Kim has always been an untiring perfectionist.

untold   adj. 1 countless, uncounted, uncountable, unnumbered, numberless, innumerable, myriad, incalculable; immeasurable, measureless, unlimited: Untold millions are lost through tax fraud each year. 2 unrecounted, unnarrated, undescribed, unpublished, unrevealed, undisclosed, undivulged, unreported, private, hidden, secret: How many untold stories are there in the naked city? 3 inexpressible, unutterable, indescribable, unimaginable, inconceivable, unthinkable, unspeakable: The untold agony that man went through because of his family's illnesses!

untoward adj. 1 adverse, unfavourable, unpropitious, discouraging, inopportune, unpromising, bleak, inauspicious, bad, unfortunate: The rainstorm created untoward conditions, causing the river to rise dangerously. 2 unbecoming, unfitting, awkward, inappropriate, unapt, unsuitable, improper, impolite, rude, boorish, ungentlemanly, unladylike, indecorous, indelicate, unwarranted, uncalled-for, unrefined, unseemly, unwise, imprudent, undiplomatic, tactless, untactful, ill-conceived, silly, foolish, stupid, ill-timed, vexatious, vexing, irritating, annoying: Charles made some untoward remark about the size of Sandra's feet.

untried adj. untested, unproved or unproven, new: He may be good at homes, but he is as yet untried as the designer of a library.

untrue adj. 1 unfaithful, faithless, disloyal, fickle, capricious, undependable, unreliable, dishonourable, untrustworthy, false, hypocritical, dishonest, insincere, two-faced, duplicitous, devious, deceitful, treacherous, perfidious: Only when I saw her with Henry did I realize that Pauline had been untrue to me. 2 wrong, false, inaccurate, incorrect, erroneous, misleading, mistaken, distorted: What you said about Pauline was simply untrue. 3 inexact, non-standard, substandard, imprecise, imperfect: How unfortunate for legend had William Tell's aim been untrue!

unused adj. 1 (brand) new, untouched, pristine, original, intact, fresh, firsthand: He sold me his unused computer for half what it cost. 2 disused, abandoned, derelict, neglected, given up: We hid in an old unused factory building. 3 unconsumed, leftover, remaining, left: If dissatisfied with this product, return the unused portion for a full refund. 4 unused to. unaccustomed to, unfamiliar with, inexperienced in or at, amateurish at, unpractised in or at, uninitiated in: I am quite unused to doing that sort of thing.

unusual adj. uncommon, exceptional, atypical, untypical, different, unexpected, singular, out of the ordinary, extraordinary, odd, peculiar, curious, bizarre, strange, queer, remarkable, unique, freakish, unprecedented, unconventional, unorthodox, Slang off-the-wall: It takes an unusual person to be as charitable as Jean. Don't you agree that an egg-laying mammal is a bit unusual?

unvarnished
adj. plain, simple, pure, unembellished, straightforward, straight, direct, honest, unelaborated, naked, stark, sincere, frank, candid, outspoken: My dear, let me tell you the unvarnished truth about Marnie and Jim.

unveil v. reveal, expose, uncover, lay bare or open, bare, bring to light: They will unveil a rival bid at tomorrow's meeting. Only after William died did Cynthia unveil the truth about his double life.

unwarranted
adj. uncalled-for, unasked, unasked for, unjustified, indefensible, unjust, unfair, unconscionable, unworthy, improper, inexcusable, gratuitous, unmerited, undeserved, unprovoked, outrageous, excessive, unreasonable, unrestrained, intemperate, untempered, immoderate, undue, unnecessary: The police were accused of unwarranted use of force in ejecting the rowdies from the pub.

unwary adj. heedless, careless, hasty, incautious, unguarded, imprudent, rash, foolhardy, reckless, thoughtless, indiscreet, unthinking, mindless, unwise: Many perils await the unwary traveller. It was unwary of you not to lock the doors and windows.

unwashed adj. 1 dirty, uncleaned, unclean, uncleansed: Separate your personal things from the unwashed laundry in the hamper.

--n. 2 the (great) unwashed. Derogatory the rabble, the masses, the mob, the plebs, people (at large or in general), the population, the populace, the man or woman in the street, Mr (& Mrs) Average, the working class(es), most people, the (silent) majority, US John Q. Public: The effort to sell expensive brandy to the great unwashed failed miserably.

unwelcome adj. 1 uninvited, unsought for, unwished for, undesired, undesirable, displeasing, unpleasing, distasteful, unpleasant: My day was further ruined by the unwelcome arrival of all those bills. 2 unwanted, rejected, unaccepted, excluded; persona non grata, anathema: Following that episode, Curshaw was made to feel unwelcome at the club.

unwholesome
adj. 1 unhealthy, unhealthful, detrimental, deleterious, pernicious, insalubrious, unhygienic, insalutary, harmful, noxious, toxic, injurious, destructive: Fernthwaite finally succumbed to the unwholesome climate and had to be sent home. 2 corrupt, immoral, bad, wicked, evil, sinful, perverted; demoralizing, depraved, degrading, corrupting, perverting: The social worker said it was wrong for a child to be raised in such an unwholesome atmosphere. 3 ill, ailing, sickly, sick, pale, wan, anaemic, pallid, pasty: Their unwholesome complexion comes from malnutrition.

unwieldy adj. awkward, clumsy, bulky, oversized, cumbersome, ungainly, unmanageable, unhandy, unmanoeuvrable: The huge oil tankers, though economical, often proved unwieldy in the ports they visited.

unwonted adj. infrequent, unusual, uncustomary, uncommon, unfamiliar, unprecedented, rare, singular, atypical, abnormal, peculiar, odd, strange, irregular, unconventional, unorthodox: All this unwonted physical exercise made them exhausted by evening.

unworthy adj. 1 unequal, meritless, unmerited, substandard, inferior, second-rate, menial, puny, petty, paltry, unprofessional, mediocre, despicable, contemptible, dishonourable, ignoble, disreputable, discreditable, unqualified, ineligible, unfit, undeserving: I consider Patrick an unworthy opponent. 2 unworthy of. unbecoming to, inappropriate to, unsuitable for, unfit for, out of character for, inconsistent with or for, out of place with or for, incongruous with or for: That sort of petty haggling is unworthy of your position and of you.

21.5 upbeat...
=-

upbeat adj. positive, optimistic, sanguine, favourable, cheerful, encouraging, heartening, buoyant, light-hearted: Christopher has a very upbeat attitude towards life despite his age.

upbraid v. scold, rebuke, reprimand, reproach, berate, castigate, chastise, reprove, chide, censure, take to task, Colloq tell off, tick off, dress down, give a dressing-down, give (someone) a piece of (one's) mind, tell (someone) a thing or two, rake (someone) over the coals, jump on or all over, bawl out, US chew out: The boys were soundly upbraided for going near the railway tracks.

upbringing
n. rearing, raising, training, education, cultivation, nurture, breeding: The way one behaves through life is really a matter of upbringing.

upheaval n. upset, unrest, commotion, change, cataclysm, disruption, disturbance, disorder, confusion, chaos, furore, or US furor: Those were times of drastic political upheaval in Asia.

uphold v. support, maintain, sustain, preserve, hold up, defend, protect, advocate, promote, espouse, embrace, endorse, back, champion, stand by: All demagogues claim to uphold democratic principles.

upkeep n. 1 maintenance, repair, support, sustenance, preservation, conservation, subsistence, running, operation: The upkeep of the infrastructure came to ten per cent of the annual budget last year. 2 (operating) costs, (running) expenses, outlay, expenditure, Brit overheads, oncosts, US overhead: Have you included upkeep in the annual expenses?

upper adj. 1 higher (up), loftier, topmost, more elevated, uppermost: Air is less dense in the upper parts of the atmosphere. Our flat is on an upper floor. Her best notes are sung in the upper register. 2 higher, upland, more elevated; (more) northerly, northern: We visited the cataracts on the upper reaches of the Nile. We spent the holiday in upper Canada. 3 later, more recent: These strata were laid down in the Upper Cretaceous period. 4 upper case. capital letter(s), capital(s), majuscule (letters or characters): The heading ought to be in upper case. 5 upper crust. upper class, ,lite, aristocrats, nobles, blue bloods, wealthy, US Four Hundred: Gregory thinks of himself as a member of the upper crust and won't associate with us. 6 upper hand. advantage, control, authority, power, sway, superiority, supremacy, command, dominance, ascendancy, Colloq edge: Purvis kowtows to whoever has the upper hand.

--n. 7 on (one's) uppers. poor, indigent, destitute, poverty-stricken, Colloq broke: Stanley has been on his uppers since losing his job.

upper-class

adj. 1 ,lite, aristocratic, blue-blooded, well-born, noble, high-born, patrician, Colloq upper crust: Eunice comes from an upper-class Irish family. 2 high-class, elegant, fancy, luxurious, first-rate, de luxe, royal, regal, sumptuous, Colloq swank(y), ritzy, posh: I'll have you know that we stayed only in upper-class hotels on our tour.

uppermost adj. 1 highest, topmost, loftiest, highest, top: These curious animals live in the uppermost branches of the trees. 2 foremost, first, most important or prominent or influential or telling, principal, paramount, pre-eminent, predominant: Uppermost in my mind is the safety of the children.

uppish adj. affected, putting on airs, snobbish, conceited, overweening, self-important, Colloq uppity, snooty, high and mighty, hoity-toity, highfalutin or hifalutin, stuck-up, on (one's) high horse, Slang snotty, Brit toffee-nosed: Even if she is in charge she doesn't have to be so uppish.

upright adj. 1 erect, perpendicular, vertical, on end, straight up and down, plumb, stand-up, standing up, Brit upstanding: Few upright columns of the Greek temple remained. 2 moral, principled, high-minded, ethical, virtuous, upstanding, straight, righteous, straightforward, honourable, honest, just, trustworthy, unimpeachable, uncorrupt(ed), incorruptible, decent, good: David had long been an upright member of the church council.

--n. 3 post, pole, column, vertical, perpendicular: We need another upright to support the floor over here.

--adv. 4 perpendicularly, vertically, upward(s), straight up (and down): The javelin was sticking upright out of the ground. 5 right side up: Miraculously, the platter with the roast on it landed upright on the floor.

uprising n. rebellion, revolt, mutiny, revolution, insurrection, rising, putsch, coup (d',tat): The government quelled the uprising with water cannons and tear gas.

uproar n. clamour, hubbub, disturbance, commotion, hullabaloo, brouhaha, din, racket, pandemonium, tumult, turmoil, pother, outcry, outburst, bedlam, agitation, frenzy, broil, rumpus, fuss; affray, fracas, brawl; Colloq hoo-ha, to-do, US hoop-la, Brit kerfuffle or carfuffle or kurfuffle: The announcement of the new taxes caused a nation-wide uproar.

uproarious
adj. 1 clamorous, noisy, deafening, tumultuous, turbulent, tempestuous, excited, frenzied, rowdy, riotous, disorderly, wild: We had an uproarious party on New Year's Eve. 2 hilarious, hysterical, (screamingly) funny, side-splitting, Colloq too funny for words, killing: Leslie told his uproarious story about Colonel Cholmondley and the tiger.

uproot v. 1 transfer, transplant, move, displace; exile, banish: Finney has been uprooted five times in his career with the firm. 2 deracinate, extirpate, root out, dig out, pluck out, tear out; destroy, demolish, ruin, eradicate, annihilate, kill, ruin, devastate, ravage: Thousands of trees were uprooted by the hurricane.

upset v. 1 disturb, agitate, distress, unsettle, put off, put out, perturb, disquiet, fluster, ruffle, frighten, scare, disconcert, dismay, trouble, worry, bother, discompose, make (someone) nervous: We once had a nanny who told the children horror stories just to upset them. 2 overturn, capsize, topple, up-end, tip over, knock over or down, invert, turn topsy-turvy or upside down, spill: That is the third time this week you have upset the cream jug. 3 disturb, derange, disrupt, disarrange, mess up, disorganize, snarl up, jumble, muddle, Colloq Brit kerfuffle or carfuffle or kurfuffle: The boys upset the entire house with their horseplay. 4 overthrow, defeat, beat, worst, thrash, rout, conquer, overcome, win out over, get the better of, get or gain the advantage over, triumph over, be victorious over, vanquish: The question is whether the challenger will upset the champion in the Wimbledon finals. 5 defeat, ruin, spoil, thwart, interfere with, destroy, demolish, mess up, disturb, Colloq throw a Brit spanner in(to) or US monkey wrench into (the works), US discombobulate, Slang screw up, gum up, put the kibosh on, Taboo slang fuck up , Brit bugger up: Your coming early upset my plan to shampoo my hair.

--adj. 6 capsized, overturned, upside down, bottom side up, inverted, reversed, toppled, tipped over, topsy-turvy: We clung to the bottom of the upset boat till help arrived. 7 sick, queasy: Eve has an upset stomach and cannot go. 8 perturbed, disturbed, disquieted, disconcerted, agitated, distressed, worried, troubled, unnerved, distracted, apprehensive, nervous, frightened, scared, afraid: We found Valdimir in a terribly upset state at Natasha's disappearance. 9 disordered, confused, disorganized, messed-up, jumbled, muddled, disturbed, disarranged: The house is never so upset as after a party. 10 angry, irate, furious, beside oneself, mad, Colloq fit to be tied, Slang freaked out: Father was upset because I took the car without his permission.

--n. 11 defeat, upsetting, conquest, overthrow, rout, thrashing, triumph, victory: We celebrated the upset of Queen's Park Rangers by Manchester United. 12 surprise, unexpected event or occurrence: The upset of the season was when Carridoff won the Derby.

upshot n. result, end (result), outcome, ending, conclusion, termination, effect, after-effect, fallout, wake, backwash, repercussion, after-clap, feedback, resolution, culmination, denouement or d,nouement, issue, Colloq pay-off, US wrap-up: The upshot of the nasty business was that Bowles was sent to prison for life.

upstart n. parvenu(e), arriviste, nouveau riche, (social) climber, status-seeker, pretender, nobody: That upstart husband of Dora's tried to get me to invest in some scheme of his.

uptake n. comprehension, understanding, apprehension, grasp, perception, insight, perspicaciousness, perspicacity, perceptiveness, sensitivity: Billie was very quick on the uptake, and knew immediately what the man was after.

21.6 urge...

=-

urge v. 1 press, push, drive, force, impel, speed, accelerate, hurry, rush, hustle, move, goad, prod, egg on, spur: He urged his steed onward. 2 press, goad, prod, egg on, spur, prompt, induce, incite, constrain, exhort, encourage, demand, request, ask, plead (with), beseech, beg, entreat, importune: We've been urging the police for months to investigate the goings-on at that house. 3 coax, persuade, induce, prevail upon, campaign (with), sway, influence, talk into, advise, suggest, counsel: The agents urged them to sell their house while the market was good. 4 argue, set forth, affirm, state, allege, assert, hold, advise, advocate, demand: The residents urged that the planning board should deny permission for a supermarket.

--n. 5 pressure, impetus, desire, compulsion, impulse, itch, longing, yearning, drive, fancy, hunger, thirst, craving, Colloq yen: We stopped because Corey felt the urge to have some ice-cream.

urgency n. imperativeness, pressure, stress, extremity, importance, seriousness, importunity, necessity, need, insistence, exigency, emergency: She was told to ring back as a matter of some urgency.

urgent adj. 1 immediate, instant, imperative, pressing, compelling, vital, life-and-death or life-or-death, important, serious, necessary, exigent, rush, emergency, pressing, high-priority: There was an urgent need to do something at once, so she screamed. 2 supplicative, begging, solicitous, earnest, importunate, insistent, loud, clamorous, active, energetic, pertinacious, tenacious, forceful, firm: Both parties were urgent in pressing for tax reform.

urinate v. pass or make water, Technical micturate; Babytalk (make a) wee, (go) wee-wee, (have a or US also take a) pee, (make) pee-pee, do number one, tinkle, piddle; Euphemistic go to the men's or ladies' (room), go to the lavatory, excuse (oneself), wash (one's) hands, go to the bathroom, go to the powder-room; Mincing go to the little boys' or girls' room; Colloq Brit spend a penny, go to the loo, Slang (take or have a) piss, Brit have a or go for a slash: One symptom of cystitis is pain when urinating.

21.7 usage...

=-

usage n. 1 use, custom, habit, practice, routine, convention, form, tradition: British usage reflects decreasing use of the subjunctive mood. 2 treatment, use, management, handling, operation, manipulation: It would appear that the car has been subjected to some rough usage.

use v. 1 employ, make use of, put into practice or operation, practise, utilize, exercise, bring into play, have recourse to, resort to, put or press into service, put to use, avail (oneself) of; say, utter, speak: If you use a hammer you might damage the surface. Why do you have to use bad language? 2 capitalize on, turn to account, profit by or from, exploit, utilize, make use of, take advantage of, manipulate, manoeuvre, handle, abuse, misuse, play, work: She used her smile to lure men on. Dorothy never forgave Conrad for the way he used her and her contacts to get his job. 3 consume, eat, drink, smoke, take, partake of, ingest, inject, Slang shoot (up): He has never used a habit-forming substance. 4 consume, buy, purchase, employ, utilize: Which kind of detergent do you use? 5 use up. consume, exhaust, expend, run through, run out of, deplete; waste, squander, fritter away, pour down the drain, throw away: He used up all the toothpaste. She used up her entire inheritance gambling.

--n. 6 usage, application, employment, utilization; using: The use of unleaded fuel is recommended. 7 function, utility, application; advantage, benefit, good, service, interest, profit, avail: What's the use of a radio that doesn't work? 8 wear (and tear), utilization, treatment, usage, handling: Long use has worn the workbench smooth. 9 usability, usefulness, utility, utilization, usage, function, functioning, service(s), serviceability, power: He lost the use of his right arm in an accident at work. 10 licence, permission, permit, privilege: We paid a high fee for the use of this parking space. 11 consumption, purchases, buying, acquisition: The use of cigarettes has diminished in the last decade. 12 advantage, purpose, point, end, object, reason, basis, ground: I have tried to help him overcome his habit, but what's the use? Many are the uses of adversity. 13 demand, need, necessity, urgency, exigency: The world has as much use for art as for engineering. 14 See usage, 1, above. 15 have no use for. execrate, detest, abhor, hate, despise, scorn, contemn, spurn, reject, dislike:

We have no use for cowards in this regiment.

used adj. 1 second-hand, cast-off, old, worn, Euphemistic pre-owned, Colloq hand-me-down, Brit reach-me-down: You're better off buying a good used car, since new ones depreciate so quickly. 2 utilized, employed, occupied; in use: We slept in a rarely used room. 3 used to. accustomed to, habituated to, acclimatized or acclimated to, adapted to, hardened or toughened or inured to or against, tempered to, tolerant of; familiar or acquainted with: After all those years, Amanda was used to Bill's shouting.

useful adj. utilitarian, functional, serviceable, practical, usable, of use, beneficial, salutary, advantageous, expedient, profitable, valuable, gainful, helpful, fruitful, productive, effective, worthwhile: Does this knob serve any useful purpose? We had some very useful conversations with the bank manager.

usefulness
n. utility, applicability, practicability, purpose, purposefulness, point, practicality, benefit, advantage, expediency, profit, profitability, value, gain, help, fruitfulness, effectiveness, worth: I never could see the usefulness of all the forms one has to fill in.

useless adj. 1 ineffective, ineffectual, unserviceable, impractical, impracticable, unpractical, unavailing, vain, pointless, purposeless, idle, futile, unproductive, unsuccessful, impotent, effete, sterile, barren, abortive, unusable, bootless, worthless, Rare inutile: The treatment that she tried was quite useless. 2 inefficient, incompetent, unproductive, ineffectual, ineffective, hopeless, inept: My dachshund has proved totally useless as a watchdog.

user n. 1 consumer, buyer, purchaser, owner; operator: Users of the equipment report excellent results. 2 alcohol or drug or narcotic addict: The police have been interviewing users in order to obtain more information about the dealers.

user-friendly
adj. simple, practicable, usable, explicit, accommodating, understandable: The system is designed to be particularly user-friendly.

usual adj. same, customary, habitual, accustomed, familiar, well-known, common, everyday, established, traditional, set, time-honoured, old, conventional, workaday, stock, wonted, regular, ordinary, normal, expected, routine, typical, run-of-the-mill, stereotypic(al), hackneyed, trite, prosaic, worn out, shop-worn, predictable, unexceptional, unoriginal, unremarkable, unimaginative: The usual answer I get is 'Why?' I missed my usual train this morning. They still sing the usual drinking songs.

usually adv. customarily, as a rule, generally (speaking), most of the time, for the most part, most often, mostly, almost always, inveterately, on the whole, normally, commonly, regularly, predominantly, chiefly, all things considered, in the main, mainly, by and large, as usual, Colloq as per usual: I usually walk home from the office. Johnson usually interviews applicants in the morning.

21.8 Utopia...

=-

Utopia n. paradise, heaven, seventh heaven, (Garden of) Eden, bliss, cloud-cuckoo-land, Nephelococcygia, never-never land, Shangri-La, Cockaigne or Cockayne, heaven on earth, perfection: He dreams about a Utopia where everyone is rich and there are no taxes.

utterly adv. completely, perfectly, absolutely, thoroughly, fully, entirely, wholly, unreservedly, totally, unqualifiedly, out-and-out, altogether, overwhelmingly, unequivocally, categorically, definitely, properly; extremely, Brit dialect proper; (with) no holds barred, body and soul, head over heels: The proposal was utterly defeated in the Commons. That was an utterly foolish act. She gave herself to him utterly.

22.0 V

=-

22.1 vacancy...

=-

vacancy n. 1 emptiness, void, gap, lacuna, hiatus, blank, deficiency, opening, breach, vacuum: Only after she left did Hubert sense the vacancy in his life. 2 (job) opening, slot, position, post, situation: Her promotion created a vacancy in the personnel department. 3 blankness, emptiness, vacuity, absent-mindedness, inanity, vacuousness, incomprehension, fatuity, unawareness: I knew by the vacancy of his look that he hadn't any idea of what I was talking about.

vacant adj. 1 empty, void, hollow, unoccupied, untenanted, uninhabited, abandoned, deserted: The house remained vacant all summer. 2 blank, expressionless, deadpan, empty, vacuous, dull, absent-minded, inane, uncomprehending, fatuous, unaware: After the accident, she would just sit, for hours on end, with a vacant look on her face. 3 unoccupied, free, unused, unutilized, spare, extra, idle, unfilled, unengaged, unspoken for: The doctor has a vacant hour tomorrow at ten and could see you then.

vacate v. 1 leave, depart (from), withdraw from, quit, evacuate, get or go out of; desert, abandon: In a fire drill, employees must vacate the building in five minutes. 2 give up, relinquish, sacrifice, renounce, let go, resign, abdicate, cede, give up right or claim to, abandon: We vacated all claims to my aunt's property. 3 annul, declare null and void, nullify, void, repudiate, override, overrule, rescind, revoke, recall, quash, set aside, invalidate: The judge vacated the defendant's plea of diminished capacity.

vade-mecum
n. handbook, manual, ready reference, book, guide: She always had with her a vade-mecum on rare poisons.

vagabond n. 1 gypsy, tramp, vagrant, wayfarer, rover, wanderer, itinerant, migrant, bird of passage, rolling stone, beachcomber, derelict, Chiefly US and Canadian hobo, Australian swagman, Colloq US bum, Slang US bindle-stiff: The police interviewed every vagabond they could find for a clue to the murder.

--adj. 2 vagrant, wayfaring, roving, wandering, itinerant, migrant, derelict, nomadic, gypsy, rambling, roaming, drifting, peripatetic, transient, peregrinating: When will he give up his vagabond ways and settle down?

vague adj. 1 indefinite, indistinct, imprecise, inexact, unclear, confused, unspecified or non-specified, general, generalized, unspecific or non-specific, inexplicit or unexplicit, ill-defined, hazy, fuzzy, ambiguous, obscure, amorphous; shapeless, blurred, blurry, filmy, dim, shadowy, veiled, bleary, foggy, misty, cloudy, clouded, hardly or barely distinguishable or discernible: I have only a vague recollection of our having met. She must have had a vague idea of your intentions. Leon could almost make out the vague shape of an approaching figure. 2 undetermined, indeterminate, unfixed, indefinite, inexact, unspecified or non-specified, unspecific or non-specific, ambiguous, doubtful, in doubt, uncertain, equivocal, ambiguous: For security reasons, her time of arrival was left vague. 3 veiled, concealed, hidden, shrouded, obscure, ill-defined, unspecific or non-specific, inexplicit or unexplicit, ambiguous: There had been a vague threat of kidnapping, which should not have been ignored. 4 subliminal, subconscious, indefinable, unexplained: I had a vague sensation of being followed. 5 indefinite, ambiguous, wishy-washy, undecided, indecisive, irresolute, vacillating, wavering, inconstant, unsettled, uncertain, nebulous, up in the air: Leonore is vague about her plans to run for re-election. 6 vacant, empty, blank, expressionless, empty, vacuous, dull; puzzled: By their vague expressions I could see they hadn't understood a word.

vaguely adv. 1 distantly, remotely, indefinitely, dimly, subliminally, subconsciously, inexplicably: I became vaguely aware of another presence in the room. 2 ambiguously, imprecisely, inexactly, unclearly, confusedly, confusingly, hazily, fuzzily, nebulously, obscurely: Kenston claims that he expresses his theories vaguely to allow for broad interpretation. 3 idly, vacantly, detachedly, absent-mindedly, dreamily, absently, distractedly: Manton listened only vaguely to the judge's words.

vain adj. 1 proud, conceited, haughty, arrogant, boastful, egotistical, cocky, self-important, vainglorious, narcissistic, Colloq big-headed, swell-headed, stuck-up, swollen-headed: They are so vain that they have mirrors in every room. 2 worthless, profitless, bootless, pointless, unsuccessful, empty, futile, useless, unavailing, unproductive, fruitless, ineffective, abortive: Peter sent Carol flowers every day in a vain attempt to win her back. 3 in vain. a vainly, futilely, unsuccessfully, fruitlessly, bootlessly: In vain, we sought the help of the police. b irreverently, blasphemously, disrespectfully, improperly: Despite his mother's admonitions, he continues to take the Lord's name in vain.

valley n. glen, dale, dell, vale, dingle, hollow, coomb or coombe or combe or comb, No. Brit and Welsh cirque or corrie or cwm, Scots strath: Oh, to stroll once again the cool valleys and the heathered hills of home!

vanity n. 1 conceit, conceitedness, egotism, narcissism, arrogance, cockiness, self-importance, vainglory, haughtiness, pride, self-admiration, self-worship, Colloq swell-headedness, big-headedness: It is disgraceful what some people do to satisfy their vanity. 2 vainness, emptiness, hollowness, worthlessness, futility, unreality, bootlessness, pointlessness, uselessness, folly, vapidity, silliness, vacuousness, vacuity, foolishness, fatuity, frivolousness: The vanity of trying to complete the book in a year must be obvious by now.

vapid adj. insipid, flavourless, tasteless, bland, watery, watered down, wishy-washy, jejune, colourless, unpalatable, flat, tame, lifeless, boring, tedious, tiresome, uninteresting, trite, wearisome, wearying, humdrum, Colloq blah, ho-hum: The minister attacked green politics as vapid romanticism.

vapour n. 1 mist, fog, steam, cloud, smoke, smog, exhalation: There arose from the bog a suffocating, miasmic vapour. 2 the vapours. morbidity, hypochondria, hysteria, nervousness, depression, rheuminess, Archaic distemper, Colloq the pip: Charlotte suffered an attack of the vapours and retired to her room.

variable adj. changeable, protean, changing, inconstant, varying, wavering, mercurial, fickle, capricious, unsteady, unfixed, unstable, uncertain, undependable, unpredictable, fluctuating, vacillating, mutable, chameleonic, chameleon-like: The weather can be quite variable depending on the season.

variance n. 1 variation, difference, disparity, discrepancy, disagreement, deviation, inconsistency, divergence, incongruity: The monitor takes account of minute variance in blood pressure.

2 disagreement, misunderstanding, discord, difference (of opinion), dissension, contention, dispute, dissent, controversy, quarrel, conflict, argument, debate, lack of harmony, falling out, schism, rift: There has never been any variance between us about the disciplining of the children. 3 at variance. in dispute, in disagreement, quarrelling, in contention, in conflict: The workforce was at variance with management in the matter of day care.

variant n. 1 alternative, modification, variation: 'Labor' is an American spelling variant of 'labour'.

--adj. 2 varying, variable, changing, altering, unstable, deviant, deviating, different, differing; separate, distinct: It is claimed that the law is given variant interpretations depending on the social standing of the suspect.

variation n. 1 change, changing, alteration, altering, variety, varying, modification, modifying, difference, differing, diversification, diversity, diversifying, modulation, modulating, conversion, converting, permutation, permuting: We have to allow for variation in the intensity of the light. 2 variety, choice, novelty, diversity, departure (from the norm or usual), change of pace, divergence, variegation, deviation (from the norm): This restaurant offers considerable variation in its menu.

varied adj. 1 diverse, diversified, mixed, miscellaneous, assorted, heterogeneous: An insufficiently varied diet may lead to malnutrition. 2 See various, below 3 See variegated, below.

variegated
adj. multicolour(ed), particolour(ed), varicoloured, many-coloured, motley, pied, piebald, brindled, mottled, polychrome, polychromatic; nacreous, changeant, opalescent, opaline: Plants with variegated foliage always add interest to a garden.

variety n. 1 diversity, diversification, multifariousness, multiplicity, number, range, assortment, medley, mixture, mix, miscellany, heterogeneity, choice, selection, collection: Don't you find that the variety of foods in supermarkets today is astonishing? There was certainly a wide variety of people at their party. 2 difference, heterogeneity, discrepancy, diversity, disparity, variation, contrast: The flora and fauna of Australia display great variety. 3 sort, brand, make, mark, kind, class, category, breed, type, order, genre, species, genus, classification, strain: Which variety of washing powder do you prefer? Rex cultivated only the rarest varieties of orchid.

various adj. 1 different, a number of, a variety of, diversified, diverse, several, many, numerous, sundry, heterogeneous, miscellaneous, Literary divers: We are considering various offers for the painting. Catherine held various executive positions in the company. 2 different, distinct, individual: There are various ways of looking at the problem.

vary v. 1 change, alter, diversify, transform, reshape, remodel, restyle, modify, reorganize: We vary the programme each month to make it more interesting. 2 change, switch, alternate, fluctuate, vacillate: The manager's attitude varies from helpful to downright rude. 3 depart, deviate, differ, diverge, shift, veer: These results do not vary from the average by more than five per cent.

vast adj. infinite, unlimited, boundless, limitless, unbounded, interminable, endless, never-ending, inexhaustible, indeterminate, immeasurable, incalculable, measureless; immense, enormous, huge, tremendous, great, prodigious, stupendous, gigantic, massive, voluminous, capacious, colossal, monumental, mammoth, jumbo, elephantine, behemoth, Cyclopean, Brobdingnagian, titanic, Literary vasty, Colloq ginormous, humongous: It is difficult to comprehend the vast distances of space. There is a vast difference between the climates of California and the Midwest.

vastly adv. immensely, greatly, hugely, enormously, considerably, substantially, (almost) entirely, infinitely, exceedingly, extremely, very much, Colloq worlds: Their new house was vastly different from the way I had pictured it. Katy looks vastly better since she lost two stone.

22.2 vehicle...

=-

vehicle n. 1 conveyance: The police report that two vehicles were damaged in the crash. 2 means, channel, mechanism, carrier, conduit, agency, instrument: Water is the vehicle used in many sprays.

veil n. 1 covering, cover, screen, camouflage, cloak, curtain, mask, shroud: A veil of silence has been drawn over the meetings. He stole away under the veil of darkness.

--v. 2 cover, conceal, hide, camouflage, cloak, mask, disguise, shroud, shield, obscure: The writer's identity was veiled from us till recently.

veiled adj. concealed, hidden, masked, obscure, unrevealed, covert, disguised, secret, sub rosa, subtle: There seemed to be a veiled threat in the way he said goodbye.

vein n. 1 blood-vessel; nervure: He killed himself by opening a vein in his wrist. 2 streak, seam, stripe, striation, stria, thread, line: The reddish vein gives this marble a warm feeling. 3 seam, lode, stratum, course, deposit, bed: The prospector discovered a vein of almost pure gold in the old mine. 4 thread, hint, suggestion, touch, trace, streak, line, strain, mood, spirit, tone, note, tenor, feeling, attitude, disposition, humour, temper; tendency or inclination or proclivity toward(s): Underlying her apparent kindness is a vein of bitter hatred. 5 way, manner, course, fashion, style, mode, pattern: He would have continued in that same vein if the chairman hadn't stopped him.

velocity n. speed, swiftness, rapidity, fleetness, quickness, briskness, alacrity, celerity, pace, rate of speed, miles per hour, m.p.h., kilometres per hour, km/hr: Our velocity slowed as we neared the outer atmosphere.

venal adj. corrupt, corruptible, bribable or bribeable, buyable, purchasable, mercenary, unprincipled, dishonourable, rapacious, avaricious, greedy, simoniacal, Colloq crooked, Slang bent: All we had to do was to find a venal official, cross his palm with silver, and they would release our son.

vendetta n. (blood) feud, quarrel, dispute, conflict, rivalry, enmity, bitterness, hatred, ill will, bad blood: Fifty years after leaving Palermo, the vendetta between their families still persisted.

veneer n. gloss, fa‡ade, finish, pretence, (false) front, (outward) show or display, appearance, mask, guise, aspect, superficies: Beneath that veneer of elegance and refinement lie the heart and soul of a monstrous criminal.

venerable adj. respectable, honourable, estimable, respected, honoured, esteemed, august, sedate, impressive, revered, reverenced, worshipped: Venerable old military men were called on for advice.

venerate v. respect, honour, esteem, revere, reverence, worship, hallow, adore, admire, look up to: Schweitzer was widely venerated for his charitable works.

veneration
n. respect, honour, esteem, reverence, deference, homage, devotion, worship, admiration, adoration, idolization, awe: Their veneration for their hero turned to contempt when his past was revealed.

venereal adj. sexual; genital; social, sexually transmitted, gonorrhoeal or gonorrhoeic, syphilitic: Reports indicate that venereal disease has been on the decline since the advent of AIDS.

vengeance n. 1 revenge, retaliation, retribution, requital, reprisal: Her vengeance for what he had done was to disinherit him. 2 with a vengeance. a violently, fiercely, ferociously, wildly, vehemently, furiously, forcefully: The wind blew with a vengeance all night. b energetically, to the fullest extent, to the utmost or the fullest or the limit, (with) no holds barred, enthusiastically, wholeheartedly: Give Richard a job to do and he goes at with a vengeance.

venial adj. forgivable, excusable, pardonable, tolerable, tolerated, minor, petty, insignificant, unimportant, remittable or remissible: That hypocrite considers even his most heinous crimes to be venial.

venom n. 1 poison, toxin: The snakes are 'milked' of their venom, which is collected for research in antitoxins and pharmaceuticals. 2 malice, maliciousness, malevolence, ill will, malignity, animosity, hate, hatred, hostility, antagonism, spite, spitefulness, spleen, rancour, bitterness, embitteredness, gall, poison, poisonousness, virulence: Vinnie was totally unprepared for the venom of the attack.

venomous adj. 1 poisonous, deadly, toxic, dangerous, life-threatening, lethal: There are few venomous snakes in the British Isles. 2 poisonous, virulent, malicious, malevolent, malign, malignant, savage, baleful, envenomed, hostile, antagonistic, spiteful, splenetic, acerbic, rancorous, bitter, embittered, mean, vicious: That venomous little man caused me to lose my job.

vent n. 1 opening, slit, slot, hole, aperture, air-hole, blow-hole, spiracle, orifice, outlet, inlet, funnel, flue, duct, passage; fumarole, fissure, pipe, mofette or moffette: The tepee has a vent at the peak to let the smoke of the fire escape. 2 give vent to. See 3, below.

--v. 3 give vent to, express, verbalize, air, articulate, enunciate, declare, voice, announce, communicate, pronounce, proclaim, reveal, release, let go, let loose, allow to become known, make known, blurt out, make public, broadcast: Has Margie ever vented her true feelings about your work as a bomb disposal expert? Arnold vents his spleen on any unfortunate who will stand for it. 4 discharge, release, emit, eject, issue, empty, dump, expel, send or pour out or forth, throw out: It is illegal to vent poisonous fumes into the atmosphere.

venture n. 1 risk, chance, hazardous undertaking, experiment, speculation, gamble, plunge, fling: Their new publishing venture turned out to be quite a success.

--v. 2 dare(say), make bold, hazard, volunteer, tender, offer, broach, advance, proffer, put forward: Ambrose ventured some nasty remark and was asked to leave. 3 jeopardize, risk, endanger, hazard, imperil; gamble, bet, wager, plunge, put down: Thomas ventured his last chip on the number four.

venturesome
adj. 1 daring, bold, intrepid, adventurous, courageous, plucky, adventuresome, audacious, fearless, doughty, brave, spirited: Henderson felt that he was being truly venturesome by sailing

single-handed round the Isle of Wight. 2 risky, rash, reckless, sporting, game, daredevil: Taking one's family into the American West was truly a venturesome undertaking - even in the 20th century.

verbal   adj. 1 spoken, oral, vocal, said, uttered, expressed, enunciated, articulated, colloquial, conversational, viva voce, word-of-mouth, unwritten: We had a verbal agreement that you would behave yourself. 2 word-for-word, verbatim, literal: We have an accurate verbal transcript of the proceedings. 3 word, lexical, vocabulary: She did very well on the verbal parts of the examination but poorly on the mathematics.

verbatim adj. 1 word-for-word, verbatim et literatim (= 'word-for-word and letter for letter'), literal, exact, precise, accurate, faithful, strict: This verbatim translation may be accurate but all the poetic expressiveness is lost.

--adv. 2 word for word, verbatim et literatim, literally, exactly, precisely, accurately, faithfully, to the letter, strictly: To make certain there would be no misunderstanding, the speech was copied verbatim.

verge°   n. 1 edge, border, boundary, margin, brink, threshold, brim: Frances is jealous of John to the verge of insanity. 2 on the verge of. about to, ready to, on the (very) point of, preparing to, soon to: Many smaller companies are on the verge of bankruptcy.

--v. 3 Often, verge on. border (on), approach, come close or near (to), Technical be asymptotic to: Cathy's idea of comfort verges on what is more commonly thought of as luxury. Her charitable contributions last year verged on zero.

vergeý   v. incline, lean, tend, extend, stretch, turn; approach, draw, move: The road verges southwards after the bridge.

verify   v. affirm, confirm, testify to, attest (to), bear witness to, vouch for, corroborate, support, substantiate, clinch or clench, prove, demonstrate, show, bear out, authenticate, validate, certify, guarantee, back up, warrant: Can you verify the accuracy of his testimony?

veritable adj. real, true, virtual, genuine, actual, legitimate, authentic: Frank becomes a veritable monster if denied his daily doughnut.

vernacular

adj. 1 native, local, regional, indigenous, autochthonous: Old Hebrew fell out of use, to be replaced by vernacular Aramaic. 2 popular, informal, colloquial, conversational, ordinary, familiar, everyday, spoken, vulgar, vulgate; plain, simple, straightforward, easy: We have both the vernacular and the formal, literary, or clerical levels of language. Can you translate this scientific gobbledegook into vernacular English that we can understand?

--n. 3 jargon, patois, argot, cant, idiom, phraseology, language, talk, speech: Alf occasionally slips into the vernacular of a Billingsgate fishmonger (his former calling) .

versatile adj. 1 adaptable, resourceful, all-round, all-purpose, many-sided, multi-purpose, multifaceted, flexible, adjustable, protean, dexterous, handy, facile: Everett is a versatile painter who works in many media and styles. 2 variable, changeable, protean, changing, flexible, fluctuating: Any versatile organization should be able to accommodate staff losses.

versed adj. Usually, well-versed in. well-read or (well-)informed in or (well-)trained or (well-)grounded or (well-)schooled or (well-)educated or (well-)tutored or learned or cultured or lettered or cultivated or literate or competent or accomplished or skilled in, (well) posted on, knowledgeable in or about, proficient or experienced or practised or expert or good in or at, conversant or familiar or (well-)acquainted with: The applicant appears to be sufficiently well-versed in several subjects to be qualified to teach them.

version n. 1 form, variant, variation, type, model, style, kind, variety, manifestation, portrayal, adaptation, rendition, interpretation, adaptation, construct, construction, conception, idea: This is yet another modern designer's version of 1920s' and 1930s' art deco. 2 story, account, rendering, rendition, translation, interpretation, reading, understanding, view, side: Simon's version of what happened is completely distorted.

vertex n. top, tip, extremity, zenith, meridian, apogee, peak, apex, acme, summit, pinnacle, crest, crown, cap, height(s): The building is surmounted by a pyramidal dome at the vertex of which is a statue of Osiris.

vertigo n. dizziness, light-headedness, giddiness, instability, Colloq wooziness: Vertigo suddenly overcame me, and I grabbed a rail to steady myself.

verve n. spirit, vivacity, vivaciousness, vitality, life, liveliness, animation, sparkle, energy, vigour, exuberance, briskness, brio, esprit, ,lan, dash, flair, panache, flourish, enthusiasm, zeal, zest, gusto, Colloq pizazz, zip, vim, get-up-and-go, zing, oomph: Helen's verve adds much to this production of Carmen .

very adv. 1 extremely, truly, really, to a great extent, exceedingly, greatly, (very) much, profoundly, deeply, acutely, unusually, extraordinarily, uncommonly, exceptionally, remarkably, absolutely, completely, entirely, altogether, totally, quite, rather, hugely, vastly, Dialect right, Brit jolly, Colloq damn(ed), terribly, awfully, darned, US dialect danged, plumb, Slang Brit bleeding , Chiefly Brit bloody: The Bell Inn has a very fine wine list. Vicky was very attached to her pony. I shall be there very soon. 2 most, extremely, certainly, surely, definitely, decidedly, unequivocally, unquestionably, quite, entirely, altogether: If you ask her out, she is very likely to say no.

--adj. 3 exact, precise, perfect; same, selfsame, identical, particular: Her hopes were the very opposite of his. I arrived the very day she left. He is the very model of a hard-working student. 4 least, mere, merest, bare, barest, sheer, sheerest; utter, pure, simple: The very thought of war makes me ill. The very mention of her name strikes terror into the hearts of the local residents.

vessel n. 1 container, receptacle, utensil, holder: Food was stored in vessels neatly arrayed around the sarcophagus. 2 craft, boat, ship, ark, Literary barque or US also bark: The vessel docked gently at the airlock of the space station.

vestige n. trace, suggestion, soup‡on, hint, glimmer, inkling, suspicion, sign, evidence, mark, token, scent, whiff, tinge, taste; remnant, scrap, fragment, memorial, residue, relic, remains: Vestiges of an ancient city have been found in the sea off Cyprus.

vestigial adj. imperfect, undeveloped, underdeveloped, rudimentary, incomplete: Anatomists regard the coccyx in man and apes as a vestigial tail.

vet v. examine, review, investigate, scrutinize, inspect, check (out), look over, scan; validate, authenticate; Colloq give (something or someone) the once-over, size up: We engaged an expert to vet the definitions of culinary terms for the new dictionary.

veteran n. 1 old hand, past master, old-timer, trouper, Colloq warhorse: Barlow was a veteran of twenty years' experience in the service.

--adj. 2 experienced, practised, seasoned, mature, long-serving, battle-scarred: Did it never occur to this veteran politician that there are degrees of misconduct?

veto v. 1 stop, block, deny, ban, turn down, reject, disallow, rule out, quash, prevent, prohibit, interdict, taboo, outlaw, proscribe, preclude, Colloq put the kibosh on, kill, nix: Father vetoed the idea that we go to Brighton for the holiday. Any measure he proposed was summarily vetoed.

--n. 2 denial, ban, stoppage, block, embargo, turn-down, rejection, disallowance, quashing, prevention, prohibition, interdiction, taboo, proscription, preclusion, vetoing, Colloq killing, nixing: The home secretary's veto of the abortion measure greatly angered the women's groups.

22.3 viable...
=-

viable adj. sustainable, supportable, sensible, reasonable, practical, practicable, applicable, workable, feasible, possible: We have three days to come up with a viable plan for continuing the research project.

vibes n.pl. vibrations, feelings, sensations, resonance(s), rapport, empathy, sympathy: I felt the place had really good vibes the minute I walked in.

vibrate v. quiver, shiver, shudder, fluctuate, quake, shake, tremble, throb, pulsate, oscillate, pulse, reverberate, resonate, Brit judder: The house began to vibrate, the windows rattled, and the dishes danced off their shelves.

vicarious adj. surrogate, delegated, deputed, commissioned, assigned, indirect, substituted: He derived vicarious pleasure from seeing his children do the things that he no longer could.

vice n. 1 immorality, corruption, evil, badness, depravity, degradation, degeneracy, iniquity, villainy, venality, evil-doing, wickedness, profligacy, sin, sinfulness, transgression: She described the town as a den of indecency, exhibitionism, and vice. 2 flaw, defect, fault, imperfection, blemish, shortcoming, failing, weakness, frailty, foible, infirmity, deficiency: Rejection without due consideration is a prejudicial vice of editors.

vice versa
adv. conversely, contrariwise, to or on the contrary, reversed, the other way around: She made the facts fit her conclusions, instead of vice versa.

vicinity n. area, neighbourhood, locale, vicinage, environs, locality, precincts, purlieus, territory: All people living in the vicinity of the nuclear plant were tested for radiation poisoning.

vicious adj. 1 immoral, unprincipled, amoral, barbarous, corrupt, evil, bad, base, depraved, vile, atrocious, execrable, degraded, degrading, degenerate, venal, iniquitous, heinous, odious, perverted, nefarious, wicked, flagitious, devilish, diabolic(al), fiendish, monstrous, profligate, shameful, shameless, abominable, sinful: The vicious, bloody dictatorship on the island lasted only a dozen years. 2 malicious, spiteful, mean, nasty, hateful, malevolent, malignant, bitter, acrimonious, rancorous, venomous, vindictive, defamatory, slanderous, scandalous, Slang rotten, bitchy: When they argued, they said terribly vicious things to one another. 3 savage, wild, untamed, ferocious, fearful, brutal, fierce, fiendish, bestial, feral, brutish, ravening, Literary fell: The local children were terrified of his vicious Rottweiler.

vicissitude
n. 1 change, mutation, alteration, changeability, mutability, variation, variability, variety, alternation, flux, fluctuation, unpredictability: Who seeks stability in life often encounters its vicissitude. 2 vicissitudes. fluctuations, changes, variations, contrasts, inconstancy, unpredictability, uncertainties, Colloq ups and downs, flukiness: His success is amazing in light of the vicissitudes he survived.

victim n. 1 sufferer, martyr, casualty, scapegoat, sacrificial lamb, injured party: It is a pity that you had to be the victim of her greed. 2 dupe, gull, fool, butt, fair game, Colloq chump, fall guy, Slang sucker, sap, Chiefly US and Canadian patsy, US schnook, schlemiel or schlemihl or shlemiel: She was an easy victim for any confidence man.

victimize v. 1 prey on, pursue, go after, pick on, bully, take advantage of, persecute, exploit, use: Increasingly, older people are being victimized by unscrupulous relatives. 2 cheat, swindle, bilk, defraud, dupe, hoodwink, deceive, gull, fool, trick, outwit, outsmart, outfox, Colloq snooker, flimflam, Slang suck or sucker in, screw, shaft, take (in), rook: The confidence team used the old Spanish handkerchief trick to victimize unsuspecting tourists.

victor n. winner, champion, conqueror, prizewinner: They came home unchallenged victors by an overwhelming 11 point margin.

victorious
adj. triumphant, successful: Caesar was victorious over the Gauls.

victory n. triumph, conquest, supremacy, superiority, success, overcoming, mastery, winning, quelling, crushing: Alexander's victory over Darius at Arbela was one of the decisive battles of history.

vie v. compete, contend, struggle, strive: The brothers constantly vied for their father's affection.

view n. 1 outlook, aspect, prospect, scene, perspective, vista, panorama, spectacle, picture, tableau; landscape, seascape, cityscape: From the tower we had a view of the devastation below. 2 opinion, point of view, approach, position, judgement, belief, way of thinking, conception, understanding, impression, feeling, sentiment, notion: Denham's view is that the country's defences are inadequate. 3 aspect, angle, position, prospect, perspective, vision, representation, projection: Here is a termite's-eye view of the timbers in your house. 4 inspection, survey, vision, sight, observation, scrutiny, examination, contemplation, study: The shroud was pulled away, exposing the revolting object to our view. 5 aim, direction, intent, intention, purpose, objective, object, expectation, prospect, vision, hope, dream: We cultivated their friendship with a view to being invited aboard their yacht. 6 in view of. in light of, considering, in consideration of, because of, on account of: In view of your failure to respond to our letters, we must refer the matter to our lawyers.

--v. 7 look at or upon or over, see, take in, watch, observe, scrutinize, examine, regard, behold: From this vantage point one can view the entire valley. 8 witness, see, watch, observe, take in: We viewed the entire robbery as it took place. 9 regard, consider, think of, look on or upon, judge, deem, believe, hold, estimate, rate, gauge, assess: Control views Craven as a threat.

viewpoint n. standpoint, (point of) view, attitude, angle, slant, position, stance, vantage point, perspective, frame of reference, way of thinking, context: From our viewpoint, widening the road only encourages speeding.

vigilance n. watchfulness, alertness, observance, guardedness, circumspection, attentiveness, caution: While the dog remains loose, we must exercise vigilance.

vigilant adj. watchful, alert, sharp, observant, guarded, circumspect, attentive, wakeful, cautious, careful, wary, chary, on one's guard, on the alert, on the lookout, eagle-eyed, hawk-eyed, Argus-eyed, on the qui vive, on one's toes, with one's eyes open, Colloq with one's eyes skinned or peeled: As long as we remain vigilant, they will never be able to take us by surprise.

vigorous adj. energetic, active, vivacious, dynamic, brisk, lively, spirited, robust, strong, hardy, hale, hearty, vital, fit, lusty, stalwart, in good or fine fettle, spry, sprightly, resilient, Colloq peppy, full of pep, full of get-up-and-go, full of beans: At 63, he is just as vigorous as he was at 40.

vigorously
adv. energetically, actively, vivaciously, dynamically, briskly, spiritedly, robustly, strongly, hardily, heartily, lustily, stalwartly, eagerly, with might and main, with a vengeance, strenuously, Colloq like mad, like crazy, hammer and tongs: It may not be good for you to exercise vigorously every day.

vigour n. vitality, resilience, strength, power, energy, forcefulness, force, stamina, endurance, mettle, mettlesomeness, pith, dynamism, spirit, liveliness, animation, verve, vivacity, exuberance, brio, briskness, zest, zealousness, enthusiasm, gusto, eagerness, Colloq spunk, pep, pizazz, vim, oomph, zing, get-up-and-go: When attacked, they defended themselves with extraordinary vigour.

vile adj. 1 base, abject, contemptible, debased, degenerate, depraved, bad, iniquitous, execrable, atrocious, sordid, immoral, amoral, wicked, evil, sinful, hellish, fiendish, ignoble, revolting, despicable, horrid, horrible, dreadful, terrible, corrupt, mean, wretched, miserable, degrading, ignominious, disgraceful, shameful, shameless: In every age, the vilest specimens of human nature are to be found among demagogues. 2 disgusting, nasty, sickening, nauseous, nauseating, foul, loathsome, offensive, noxious, repulsive, repellent, repugnant: It is, indeed, a vile disease, but at least it is not contagious. She had prepared some vile cocktail that I refused to drink.

vilify v. depreciate, devalue, deprecate, debase, disparage, denigrate, diminish, traduce, defame, speak ill of, revile, slander, libel, abuse, defile, sully, smear, tarnish, malign, calumniate, asperse, run down, decry, Rare vilipend, Colloq US bad-mouth: His political and religious views became notorious and were often vilified.

villain n. wretch, evil-doer, criminal, miscreant, blackguard, rogue, rascal, cad, scallywag or scalawag, malefactor, scoundrel, dog, cur, viper, reptile, snake in the grass, rat, Archaic rapscallion, Literary knave, caitiff, Colloq Brit bounder, blighter, Slang bastard, son of a bitch, Brit rotter, US SOB or s.o.b. (= 'son of a bitch'): The villain of the film is a smooth-talking charmer who swindles old ladies out of their savings.

villainous
adj. 1 treacherous, perfidious, dishonest, unscrupulous, traitorous, corrupt, faithless, criminal, felonious, murderous, Colloq crooked, bent: Few activities are more villainous than being a double agent. 2 See vile, 1, above.

vindicate v. 1 clear, exonerate, absolve, acquit, exculpate, excuse: She was vindicated of any complicity in the affair. 2 justify, support, uphold, prove: Subsequent events vindicated his actions.

vindictive
adj. avenging, vengeful, vindicatory, revengeful, retaliatory, spiteful, unforgiving, splenetic, resentful, rancorous, implacable: She later turned vindictive, attacking everyone for real or imagined slights.

vintage n. 1 year, crop, harvest, origin, generation: Which vintage is the better for Bordeaux, 1949 or 1954?

--adj. 2 quality, choice, superior, better, good, select, best, classic; aged, seasoned, mature(d), mellow(ed): Mark has become an expert in vintage wines. 3 antiquated, old-fashioned, old-fogyish or old-fogeyish, antique, bygone, old-time, collector or collector's, Colloq over the hill: Claud used to drive his vintage car to work every day.

violate v. 1 break, breach, disobey, disregard, contravene, infringe, ignore: He habitually violated the law by carrying a pistol. 2 dishonour, desecrate, profane, defile, degrade, debase, treat irreverently: Vandals were found to have violated the sacred shrine. 3 rape, debauch, ravish, ravage, molest, attack, assault, outrage: The victim identified the man who had violated her.

violation n. 1 infringement, breach, disregard, disobedience, contravention, abuse; ignoring, infringing, breaching, disregarding, disobeying, contravening, abusing, violating: Parking here is a violation of the law. Violation of the rules will be dealt with summarily. 2 profanation, profaning, sacrilege, desecration, desecrating, defilement, defiling, degradation, degrading, dishonour, dishonouring, debasement, debasing, violating: The authorities take a serious view of the violation of a place of worship or a cemetery. 3 rape, ravishment, molestation, attack, outrage, assault, violating: The defendant is charged with the violation of three women.

violence n. 1 (brute or physical) force, might, mightiness, power, strength, severity, intensity, energy, vehemence, ferocity, ferociousness, fierceness, fury, vigour; destructiveness, virulence: The violence of the storm continued unabated throughout the night. The violence of the seizures diminished after she was given the medication. 2 bestiality, brutality, barbarity, savagery, cruelty, bloodthirstiness, wildness, ferocity, frenzy, fury, passion, fierceness, vehemence, murderousness: The marauders attacked with a violence that terrified the villagers. 3 do violence to. a harm, damage, injure: The scandal did violence to her reputation. Humphrey's singing could do violence to any melody. b warp, twist, distort: In reporting that her views are antifeminist, the newspaper did violence to the import of her speech.

violent adj. 1 wild, physical, destructive, vehement, brutal, brutish, beastly, nasty, cruel, mean, barbarous, inhuman, savage, fierce, ferocious, furious, frenzied, uncontrollable, untamed, ungovernable, raging, raving, irrational, insane, crazed, Colloq fit to be tied: Tony turned into a violent maniac when he suspected her of seeing another man. 2 harmful, injurious, damaging, detrimental, destructive, deleterious, catastrophic, cataclysmic, ruinous, devastating: This was the most violent earthquake to hit Mexico in recorded history. 3 acute, serious, severe, extreme, harsh, trenchant, virulent, intense, energetic, forceful, vehement, passionate, impetuous,tempestuous: The proceedings were interrupted by an outburst of violent abuse from the public gallery.

virtual adj. effective, essential; practical, understood, accepted: In rush hours, the motorway traffic comes to a virtual standstill.

virtually adv. essentially, effectively, practically, almost, to all intents and purposes, for all practical purposes, more or less, nearly, as good as, substantially, in effect, in essence: He had virtually won the Brisbane-London sailing race when he passed the Lizard, but then he hit a rock.

virtue n. 1 morality, high-mindedness, honour, goodness, justness, righteousness, fairness, integrity, right-mindedness, honesty, probity, uprightness, rectitude, decency, worth, worthiness, nobility, character, respectability: You will find the Billingses to be people of unassailable virtue. 2 virginity, chastity, chasteness, honour, innocence, purity: As Healey had six daughters, he was kept quite busy protecting their virtue. 3 quality, credit, strength, good point, asset: Opposing the seven deadly sins are the three theological virtues, faith, hope, and charity, and the four cardinal virtues, fortitude, justice, prudence, and temperance. 4 by virtue of. by dint of, owing to, thanks to, by reason of, because of, on account of: Gerry was a part owner by virtue of his investment in the company.

virtuosity

n. (technical) skill, technique, ability, expertise, mastery, excellence, brilliance, craftsmanship, craft, flair, dash, ,lan, ,clat, panache, pyrotechnics, showmanship, show, staginess, Colloq razzle-dazzle: The concerto was performed with signal virtuosity but little imagination or understanding.

virtuoso n. 1 master, maestro, expert, genius, talent, prodigy, old hand, Colloq wizard, whiz or whizz or wiz, whiz-kid or whizz-kid, Chiefly Brit dab hand, US maven or mavin: Walter is a veritable virtuoso on the harmonica.

--adj. 2 masterful, masterly, expert, talented, brilliant, dazzling, bravura, prodigious, excellent, superb, extraordinary, exceptional, superior, first-rate, superlative, matchless, peerless, sterling, marvellous, remarkable: His virtuoso performance of the B minor sonata won him a standing ovation.

virtuous adj. 1 moral, honourable, ethical, honest, good, upstanding, high-principled, upright, righteous, pure, uncorrupted, incorruptible, just, fair, right-minded, fair-minded, high-minded, scrupulous, trustworthy: Thomas has proved himself a virtuous young man. 2 chaste, innocent, virginal, virgin; decent, proper, unsullied, faithful, true, uncorrupted: A virtuous woman makes a virtuous wife.

virulence n. 1 virulency, poisonousness, venomousness, toxicity, noxiousness, deadliness, perniciousness, injuriousness, destructiveness, malignity, malignancy, violence, balefulness: The virulence of his affliction was not recognized till it was too late. 2 virulency, acrimony, acrimoniousness, bitterness, acerbity, rancour, spleen, poison, poisonousness, venom, venomousness, malignity, malevolence, maliciousness, malice, spite, hostility, resentment, antagonism, hatred: We were taken aback by the virulence of the priest's attack on Miss Thompson's morals.

virulent adj. 1 lethal, life-threatening, deadly, fatal, pernicious, septic, poisonous, toxic, baleful, noxious, dangerous, harmful, injurious, detrimental, deleterious, destructive, unhealthy, unwholesome: He died from a virulent form of dysentery that he caught in the tropics. 2 vicious, venomous, bitter, spiteful, malignant, malign, malicious, malevolent, poisonous, splenetic, acrimonious, acerbic, acid, mordant, sarcastic, nasty, trenchant, caustic, antagonistic, hateful, hostile: What did I do to the reviewer of The Herald to merit such a virulent review?

visible   adj. 1 seeable, perceivable, perceptible, discernible, detectable, discoverable, noticeable, unmistakable or unmistakeable, clear, obvious, observable; visual: The visible part of the energy spectrum is relatively small. The entrance holes to their burrows were clearly visible. 2 obvious, conspicuous, evident, apparent, prominent, manifest, distinct, patent, well-defined, identifiable: The consequences of the Act of Union of 1707 are still visible in Scotland today.

vision   n. 1 eyesight, perception, sight: The optician said there is nothing wrong with MacKenzie's vision. 2 far-sightedness, understanding, imagination, foresight, foresightedness, insight: MacKenzie has brought great vision to this scheme for developing the Australian outback. 3 view, perspective, perception, envisioning, envisaging, dream, idea, plan, scheme: MacKenzie's vision of making the desert bloom seemed impossibly remote. 4 phantom, apparition, chimera, delusion, hallucination, mirage, spectre, shade, eidolon, revenant, phantasm, materialization, illusion, ghost, wraith: A vision appeared to MacKenzie as he slept, telling him that her name was Alice Springs. 5 sight for sore eyes, (welcome) sight, dream, epitome: To MacKenzie Alice was a vision of great beauty, and he proposed marriage.

visionary adj. 1 dreamy, speculative, unpractical, impractical, fanciful, imaginary, unrealistic, unreal, romantic, idealistic, unworkable, Utopian: It is a pity that none of MacKenzie's visionary plans ever came to pass.

--n. 2 dreamer, idealist, romantic, fantast, wishful thinker, Don Quixote: The world needs more visionaries like MacKenzie.

visit v. 1 (go or come to) see, call (in or on or upon), look in on, stop in or by, Colloq pop in or by, drop in (on), take in: I plan to visit Leslie. Did you visit the Smithsonian Institution? 2 afflict, attack, befall, fall upon, assail, seize, smite, scourge, descend upon, inflict, affect: Horrible diseases and tortures were said to visit those who denied God.

--n. 3 stay, call, sojourn, stop, stopover: The minister will be here for only a brief visit.

visitation

n. 1 staying, calling, visiting, sojourning, stopping (over): The father has visitation rights to his children on weekends. 2 affliction, ordeal, trial, punishment, disaster, catastrophe, cataclysm, calamity, tragedy, curse, scourge, blight, plague, pestilence: In the story, the tyrant succumbed finally to a visitation from the Almighty.

visitor n. caller, guest, company; visitant: May I phone you back after my visitors have gone?

vital adj. 1 imperative, essential, necessary, needed, requisite, required, indispensable, mandatory, compulsory, cardinal, fundamental, basic, critical, crucial, central, pivotal: Air and water are vital for the existence of most known organisms. 2 important, key, central, critical, crucial, life-and-death or life-or-death, pivotal, paramount, main: In an emergency, the captain must make the vital decision whether to abandon ship. This is a matter of vital concern for us all. 3 lively, full of life, vivacious, spirited, vigorous, dynamic, alive, animated, brisk, energetic: We have lost a vital member of the community. She took a vital interest in community affairs. 4 invigorating, quickening, life-giving, animating, vitalizing, reviving, vivifying, enlivening, rejuvenating: I could feel the vital energies returning to my limbs.

vitality n. 1 energy, life, life-force, vigour, power, intensity, force, liveliness,, vivacity, vivaciousness, animation, sparkle, spiritedness, exuberance, Colloq zing, pep, pizazz, oomph, get-up-and-go, zip, vim: My great-grandfather has the vitality of a forty-year-old. 2 stamina, hardiness, endurance, energy, strength, robustness: Does this society have the vitality needed to take it into the next decade?

vitalize v. stimulate, activate, arouse, vivify, animate, awaken, inspirit, invigorate, enliven, inspire, revive, rejuvenate, innervate, energize, fortify, reinvigorate, renew, refresh, charge (up): The tonic vitalized him to the point where he felt young again.

vitiate v. 1 spoil, ruin, harm, impair, mar, sully, corrupt, pervert, contaminate, adulterate, weaken, degrade, downgrade, depreciate, diminish, depress, vulgarize, lower, reduce, undermine: Words appropriated from other languages tend to enrich rather than vitiate modern English. 2 debase, deprave, pervert, corrupt, demoralize, defile: Despite other strengths his entire character was vitiated by overriding avarice. 3 invalidate, destroy, delete, cancel, nullify, annul, revoke, void, abrogate, abolish, withdraw, quash, suppress: The invoice was effectively vitiated by the plaintiff's failure to deliver the goods.

vituperate
v. berate, rate, reproach, revile, vilify, execrate, abuse, denounce, decry, deprecate, disparage, devalue, diminish, put down, run down, devaluate, depreciate, blame, inculpate, censure, find fault with, attack, assail, castigate, scold, reprimand, upbraid, rebuke, chide, chasten: From the pulpit he continued to vituperate the vices of the court.

vituperative
adj. abusive, calumniatory, calumnious, scurrilous, derogatory, belittling, depreciatory, depreciative, detractory, contemptuous, damning, denunciatory, denigrating, deprecatory, censorious, aspersive, defamatory, slanderous, libellous, castigatory, condemnatory, malign, scornful, withering, harsh, sardonic, sarcastic, biting, acid, contumelious, opprobrious, insulting, Formal vilipenditory, Colloq down-putting: Why should he have directed this vituperative speech at the very person whom he loves?

vivacious adj. lively, spirited, sprightly, energetic, animated, brisk, ebullient, effervescent, bubbly, gay, cheerful, happy, blithe, jaunty, light-hearted, sunny, merry, high-spirited, buoyant, chipper, Colloq up, peppy, full of pep, full of beans, zippy: Had he not gone on the cruise, Michael would never have met the vivacious redhead who became his bride.

vivid adj. 1 intense, strong, brilliant, fresh, bright, dazzling, lucid, rich, clear, colourful, glowing: Michel looked splendid in a silk dress of vivid yellow. 2 clear, detailed, sharp, realistic, graphic, true to life, lifelike, distinct, powerful, strong, memorable, dramatic, striking: It brought back to me vivid memories of our first meeting in 1985. 3 prolific, fruitful, fertile, fecund, inventive, creative: That kiss, which never took place, is a figment of Bagley's vivid imagination.

22.4 vocalist...
=-

vocalist n. singer, soloist, choirboy, choir girl, choir member, chorus-boy, chorus girl, chorus-member, chorister, caroller; diva, prima donna, chanteuse; cantor, crooner; Colloq songbird, canary, thrush, nightingale: It was sung by a female vocalist with a high-pitched girlish voice.

vocation n. calling, trade, m,tier, business, profession, occupation, career, employment, job, pursuit, life's-work, life-work, line (of work), Slang bag, thing: I left university with no particular vocation in mind.

vogue n. 1 fashion, mode, style, look, taste, trend, rage, craze, last word, dernier cri, (latest) thing, Colloq fad, the latest: Black leather boots were in vogue once again. 2 popularity, favour, preference, acceptance, currency, prevalence, fashionableness: They are capitalizing on the vogue for torn jeans.

voice n. 1 speech, utterance, articulation, words, expression: Keith found it difficult to give voice to his innermost thoughts. 2 share, part, vote, participation, say, decision, option, turn, chance: As a junior member of the board, Nicholas had no voice in major decisions. 3 spokesman, spokeswoman, spokesperson, representative, agent, agency, instrument; organ, medium, vehicle, forum, publication: Throughout his time in government, Logan had served as the voice of the miners. The Clarion views itself as the voice of all the people, though it actually represents only a few.

--v. 4 express, utter, articulate, enunciate, present, verbalize, put into words, give utterance or voice or expression or vent to, communicate, convey, declare, assert, make known, reveal, disclose, raise, bring up, air: I must voice my misgivings about the step you are planning to take.

void adj. 1 null and void, invalid, not (legally) binding, inoperative, unenforceable, ineffectual, futile, ineffective, vain, unavailing, idle, useless, pointless, bootless: Owing to irregularities, the election was declared void. If a card is turned face-up, the deal is void. 2 empty, vacant, unoccupied, unused, unutilized, unfilled, blank, clear; deserted: It is up to the council to appoint new members as places become void. 3 void of. devoid of, without, lacking, destitute of: The man was utterly void of imagination. In a minute, the room was void of people.

--n. 4 emptiness, vacantness, vacuum, blankness, nothingness: Without a word, he leaped off the edge and plunged into the void. 5 space, niche, slot, opening, place, vacancy, gap, emptiness: Who will fill the void left by Edgar's departure?

--v. 6 nullify, annul, cancel, delete, disannul, declare or render null and void, invalidate, quash, vacate, discharge, abandon, disestablish, neutralize, disenact, set or put aside, rescind, reverse, abnegate, abrogate: They had to void the accusation for lack of evidence. 7 evacuate, discharge, expel, emit, purge, clear, empty, drain, eject; pass, excrete, urinate, defecate: The tanker went far out to sea before voiding its tanks. This medication will help in voiding the patient's bowels.

volatile adj. 1 vaporizing, evaporable, evaporative: A volatile solvent, which evaporates quickly, is the vehicle for thermosetting plastics. 2 changeable, fickle, flighty, inconstant, erratic, restless, unstable, variable, mercurial, capricious: She was so volatile that one could never predict what she would do next. 3 explosive, hair-trigger, sensitive, charged, eruptive, tense, tension-ridden: Be careful of Christine's volatile temper.

volition n. (free) will, choice, option, choosing, choice, discretion, preference: She pursued a course of her own volition.

volley   n. 1 salvo, bombardment, barrage, cannonade, fusillade, discharge, hail, shower: A volley of shot struck the tower, which collapsed. 2 outpouring, torrent, flood, deluge, inundation, burst, storm, outbreak: The cracks of the muleteer's whip were accompanied by a volley of abuse. 3 give and take, to-and-fro, interaction, reciprocity, exchange, volleying, crossfire, badinage, bantering: Samuel enjoyed the volley of haggling that accompanied every sale.

voluble   adj. talkative, glib, fluent, loquacious, garrulous, chatty, profuse, gossipy, exuberant, long-winded, bombastic, windy, wordy, Colloq blessed with the gift of the gab: He is the House of Commons' most voluble advocate of capital punishment.

volume   n. 1 amount, quantity, supply, mass, bulk, abundance, sum total, aggregate: The volume of ore from the mine created a pile hundreds of feet high. Her volume of output is greater than yours and mine together. 2 capacity, size, measure: The volume of this bottle is not more than a litre. 3 loudness: Turn down the volume on that ghetto-blaster. 4 book, tome: I bought a twenty-volume set of Dickens.

voluminous

adj. 1 large, extensive, great, spacious, capacious, expansive, roomy, loose, ample, big, ample, bulky, cavernous, copious, massive, huge, substantial, tremendous, enormous, gigantic, mammoth, vast: Rose's voluminous skirt was supported by a farthingale. 2 oversized, out-sized, ample, billowing: The voluminous spinnaker filled and we wafted down the estuary at hull speed.

voluntarily

adv. freely, willingly, spontaneously, of (one's) own free will, on (one's) own (initiative or recognizance or responsibility), without prompting, without being prompted or asked, gratis, gratuitously; by choice, intentionally, purposely, on purpose, deliberately: Some of the students spent their summer vacation voluntarily helping the needy.

voluntary adj. 1 free, elective, willing, spontaneous, unsolicited, unbidden, unasked, gratuitous, contributed: All work done on behalf of the cause is voluntary. 2 discretionary or discretional, unconstrained, intentional, wilful, deliberate, intended, premeditated, planned, volitional, optional: His confession was entirely voluntary, and he was not coerced in any way.

voluptuous

adj. 1 sensual, sensualistic, sensuous, luxurious, voluptuary, sybaritic(al), hedonist(ic), pleasure-seeking, pleasure-loving, luxury-loving, (self-)indulgent: He longed to taste once again the voluptuous delights of the Corinthian court. 2 seductive, attractive, desirable, beautiful, tempting, inviting, appealing, enticing, alluring, ravishing, luscious, delicious, gorgeous, shapely, buxom, well-proportioned, well-endowed, well-built, Colloq curvaceous, sexy, eye-filling, Slang (well-)stacked, busty, US built: As he lolled on silken cushions, voluptuous houris danced round him in tightening circles.

vomit   v. spew out or up, spit up, belch forth; regurgitate, throw up, gag, retch, heave, US keck, Colloq puke, return (food), Brit sick up, Slang chiefly Australian chunder, US barf, upchuck, toss (one's) cookies, spiff (one's) biscuits: The ancient steam engine vomited smoke and cinders from its huge stack. The very thought of going on a sea voyage almost made me vomit.

voracious adj. 1 insatiable, gluttonous, ravenous, ravening, rapacious, piggish, hoggish, cormorant, predacious, edacious, devouring, greedy, avaricious, esurient, uncontrollable, uncontrolled, unquenchable, enormous, prodigious, US cormorant: Is there no satisfying the man's voracious appetite? 2 thirsty, hungry, desirous, avid, eager, zealous, enthusiastic, fervent, fervid, ardent, earnest, passionate, devoted: It was becoming difficult to satisfy the public's voracious demand for gossip.

vote n. 1 ballot, ticket, show of hands; referendum, plebiscite: We must have a vote on the issue. 2 suffrage, franchise: Women did not have the vote in those days. 3 opinion; voter, elector: Do you think your platform can win over the liberal vote?

--v. 4 opt, choose, come out (for or against), express or signify (one's) opinion or preference or desire: Many people vote for a party rather than an individual.

vouch v. Usually, vouch for. support, guarantee, back (up), endorse, certify; uphold, sponsor, bear witness, attest to: My neighbour will vouch for me. Can she vouch for your not leaving the house all evening?

vouchsafe v. 1 offer, give (up), yield, accord, supply, grant, impart, bestow, deign or condescend to give: The minister vouchsafed no information regarding interest rates. 2 permit, allow, suffer: The government vouchsafed the hostages safe passage out of the country.

vow v. 1 swear, pledge, promise, assure, state, declare, give (one's) (solemn) word (of honour): I vowed to return after the war to care for those who had helped me escape.

--n. 2 oath, pledge, promise, agreement; (solemn) word (of honour): She will keep her vow, you may be certain.

22.5 vulgar...

=-

vulgar adj. 1 indelicate, boorish, uncultured, uncultivated, low, unrefined, common, plebeian, inelegant, unladylike, ungentlemanly, gauche, uncouth, coarse, tasteless, ostentatious, ignoble, low-class, Colloq flash: The boss's wife was known for her vulgar behaviour at the dinner table. 2 tasteless, indelicate, indecent, rude, crude, naughty, dirty, improper, off colour, risqu,, ribald, blue, indecorous, nasty, offensive, gross, lustful, obscene, lewd, lascivious, licentious, smutty, salacious, scatological, filthy, pornographic, Slang US raunchy: He made a lot of money through publishing vulgar magazines and videos. 3 popular, vernacular, ordinary, everyday, general, homespun, commonplace, household, average: Dictionaries should record the vulgar language as well as the literary.

vulgarity n. 1 coarseness, lack of refinement or sophistication, crudeness, rudeness, indelicacy, tawdriness, baseness, humbleness, unsophistication, gaucherie, gaucheness, ignobility: When you consider his upbringing you can scarcely blame him for his vulgarity. 2 impropriety, lewdness, grossness, foulness, vileness, filthiness, obscenity, Slang US raunchiness: The magazine was refused an import licence because of its vulgarity.

vulnerable

adj. exposed, defenceless, weak, sensitive, unprotected, unguarded, unshielded, helpless, powerless: She felt vulnerable to those who prey on the elderly.

23.0 W

=-

23.1 wad...

=-

wad n. 1 pad, mass, lump, clod, ball, plug, chunk, hunk, block, pack: He had a wad of cotton wool in each ear. 2 roll, pocketful, heap, quantity, load, Colloq US bankroll: Over coffee James handed him a wad of notes.

waddle v. toddle, shuffle, wobble or wabble, totter, paddle, pad, waggle, duck-walk, Brit dialect wamble: He waddled down the road, a shopping-bag on each arm.

wade v. 1 ford, cross, traverse, walk, make one's way: The water is only knee-deep, and you can wade across. 2 paddle, play, splash: There is a shallow pool where the little children can wade. 3 wade in or into. a enter, get in (or into), join (in): When the fight began, Patrick waded in with arms flailing. b attack, approach, get or set to work, plunge or dive into: I have to wade into an enormous pile of mail that accumulated while I was away. 4 wade through. plough through, work (one's) way through, hammer or pound away at, plod through, peg away at: You really have to wade through that entire book to write your report.

waffle v. 1 Often, waffle on. carry on, jabber (on), prattle (on), prate, blather (on or away), Colloq run on, Brit witter (on), natter (on), rabbit on, Slang run off at the mouth: He kept waffling on about his new computer and, frankly, I wasn't listening. 2 equivocate, hedge, quibble, shuffle, tergiversate, hem and haw, prevaricate, Brit beat about the bush, US beat around the bush, Colloq fudge: I wish he would stop waffling and say what he means.

--n. 3 talk, palaver, verbiage, prattle, twaddle, blather, prolixity, wordiness, jabber, jibber-jabber, Colloq hot air: All I got was a lot of waffle when I asked for the best interest rate on a loan.

waft v. 1 drift, float, blow, whiff, be borne or carried or transported: The scent of jasmine wafted towards me on the warm breeze.

--n. 2 breath, suggestion, puff, whiff, hint: A waft of cool, fresh air momentarily eased the stench of the dungeon.

wag° v. 1 wave, waggle, oscillate, fluctuate, sway, undulate, flutter, flap, flip, flicker, shake, vibrate, quiver, nod, rock, dance, wobble, bob, bobble, waver, Rare vellicate: Misty's tail wagged as I approached the house.

--n. 2 wave, waggle, oscillation, fluctuation, sway, undulation, flutter, vellication, flap, flip, flicker, shake, vibration, quiver, nod, wobble, bobble, waver: The dying animal recognized me and gave a feeble wag of her tail.

wagý n. comedian, wit, punster, pundit, joker, jester, comic, jokester, droll, merry andrew, clown, Colloq card: A wag said that tailors were like storks - known for their big bills.

wage n. 1 Often, wages. pay, compensation, emolument, remuneration, payment, fee, salary, stipend, recompense, reward, earnings; honorarium: The strikers wanted a ten per cent increase in their hourly wage.

--v. 2 carry on, pursue, conduct, engage in, undertake, practise, prosecute, proceed with: History shows that wars are often waged over trifling differences.

wait v. 1 tarry, linger, hold on, stay, bide (one's) time, mark time, stand by, Colloq cool (one's) heels, stick around, sit tight, hang on, Brit hang about, US hang around: If you wait till I've finished this, I'll join you for dinner. 2 be delayed or postponed or deferred or shelved or put off, US be tabled, Colloq be put on ice or on the back burner: The quarterly sales figures can wait - we haven't yet completed those for this month. 3 wait on or upon. serve, attend (to), minister (to): Rose made such a fuss that the restaurant staff refused to wait on her.

--n. 4 delay, pause, stay, hold-up, interval, halt, stop, stoppage, break, hiatus, lacuna, gap, respite, rest (period), intermission, discontinuation, recess: There was an extra long wait between trains because of track repairs further up the line.

waiter n. waitress, head waiter, maŒtre d'h“tel, host, hostess, sommelier (des vins), wine steward, stewardess; cup-bearer, Ganymede, Hebe: Marie asked the waiter to bring her a clean plate.

waive v. 1 give up, relinquish, renounce, resign, forsake, forgo, cede, sign away, surrender, abandon, yield, dispense with: I waived my right to the inheritance in favour of my daughters. 2 set or put aside, except, ignore, disregard, overlook, abandon, defer, postpone: We are happy to waive the rules in your case, madam.

waiver n. renunciation, relinquishment, forgoing, ceding, cession, resignation, surrender, abandonment, setting or putting aside, deferral, remission, postponement: Her waiver of all rights to the inheritance was duly recorded.

wake° v. 1 Often, wake up. awaken, awake, rouse, waken, bring around; stir, bestir (oneself), get up, come to, get going: Wake me when it is over. She didn't wake up till noon. 2 awake, waken, awaken, animate, stimulate, enliven, galvanize, fire, quicken, inspirit, inspire, activate, liven up, vivify, kindle, vitalize, stir, arouse, get (someone) going, bring to life: When I feel this tired, it takes a lot to wake me up. Seeing Margo woke a spark in me I thought had long since died.

--n. 3 vigil, watch, death-watch, funeral: If you have ever been to an Irish wake, you will know what I mean.

wakeý n. 1 track, trail, aftermath, path, backwash, wash, bow wave; trace, spoor, scent: The wake from the passing boats damages the docks. No matter where he went, they followed in his wake. 2 in the wake of. following (on or upon), after, subsequent to; as a result or consequence of, on account of, because of, owing to, by virtue of: In the wake of the law's enactment, scores of abortions were performed.

wakeful adj. 1 awake, sleepless, waking, unsleeping, restless, restive, insomniac: The children were wakeful the entire night in anticipation of a visit from Santa Claus. 2 watchful, (on the) alert, on the qui vive, sharp, attentive, vigilant, wary, cautious, observant, heedful, on the lookout: We remained wakeful, alert to any footstep.

walk v. 1 advance, proceed, move, go, wend, go or make (one's) way by foot, tread, step, perambulate, stalk, stride, tramp, stroll, amble, ramble, ambulate, shamble, pad, shuffle, saunter, trudge, trek, plod, slog, hike, parade, promenade, strut, swagger, prance, march, goose-step, pace, trip, sidle, tiptoe, sashay, flounce, stagger, lurch, limp, waddle, stamp, mince, slink, steal, prowl, skulk, sneak, creep, Colloq go by or ride by shanks's or shanks' mare or pony, hoof it, foot it, traipse, pussyfoot, Slang US boogie: Guthrie certainly has a peculiar way of walking. 2 take, convoy, accompany, escort, go with; conduct, lead; empty: Let me walk you to the station. I have to walk the dog twice a day. 3 patrol, trace out, stalk, cover, haunt, prowl, wander, roam, rove or range about in or on, frequent: Her mother could not understand why Maizie walked the streets nightly. 4 walk out. a leave, depart, desert; walk out on: She just walked out and no one has seen her since. b strike, go (out) on strike, protest, take industrial action, Brit down tools: Negotiations reached an impasse, so the employees walked out.

--n. 5 path, lane, pathway, pavement, footpath, promenade, esplanade, boardwalk, Brit footway, US sidewalk: We strolled along the pleasant walks that lead through the park. 6 gait, step, carriage, bearing, stride: He had great fun imitating Groucho Marx's slinky walk. 7 constitutional, stroll, amble; slog, tramp, hike: Lettie likes to take a walk in the park after dinner. We had a five-day walk through the jungle before reaching civilization.

wall n. 1 screen, partition, divider, enclosure, separator, bulkhead, barrier, obstruction, obstacle, impediment, block, fence: Marcie built round herself a wall of resentment which no one could penetrate. 2 barricade, fortification, protection, bulwark, breastwork, embankment, rampart, palisade, stockade: It was questionable whether the walls would withstand the cannon-balls. 3 drive up the wall. drive crazy or insane or mad, madden, exasperate, derange, try, irritate, infuriate, enrage: The constant caterwauling from the next flat is driving me up the wall. 4 go to the wall. fail, collapse, be ruined, face ruin, go bankrupt, lose everything, Colloq go broke, go under, fold (up), Slang go bust: Unicold went to the wall because of increased costs and decreased sales.

--v. 5 Often, wall up or off. enclose, partition (off), close (off), brick up, immure: A bricklayer was hired to wall up the openings where the windows had been.

wallet n. purse, pocketbook, Brit notecase, US billfold: An anonymous good Samaritan found my wallet and sent it to me intact, with all the money in it.

wallow v. 1 roll or loll about or around, welter, writhe, tumble, splash or plash: He enjoys watching the pigs wallowing in the mud. 2 Usually, wallow in. luxuriate in, bask in, revel in, glory in, indulge (oneself) in, give (oneself) up to, succumb to, take to, appreciate, fancy, enjoy, like, love, savour, Slang get a kick or a bang or a boot from or out of: Now that Gabriel is a big rock star, he simply wallows in all the attention he is getting. 3 stumble, stagger, lurch, flounder, teeter, totter, falter, pitch: Without its engines, the ship was lifted skyward by a wave one moment only to wallow in a trough the next.

wan   adj. 1 white, sickly, pale, pallid, livid, pasty, ashen, bloodless, waxen, whey-faced, sallow, colourless, deathly, ghostly, ghastly, cadaverous: I almost wept at seeing the child's wan face against the pillow. 2 weary, weak, hollow, feeble, frail, ineffectual, sorry, pitiful: She offered no more than a wan smile in response to questions about her family.

wand   n. baton, stick, staff, stick: The magician pointed with his wand and a bottle of gin appeared.

wander   v. 1 walk, go, roam, rove, range, stray, ramble, stroll, saunter, meander, drift, cruise, prowl, Colloq mosey: We wandered about the village square, chatting and window-shopping. 2 wind, meander, zigzag, turn this way and that: A trout stream wanders past our house. 3 digress, go off, become absent-minded, go wool-gathering, lose concentration or focus: My mind wandered as the speaker droned on. 4 deviate, digress, turn, divagate, stray, drift, depart, go off at a tangent, lose (one's) train of thought, lapse: The speaker tended to wander occasionally.

wane   v. 1 decrease, diminish, grow less, lessen, decline, die out, abate, ebb, subside, fade (away), dim, taper off, peter out, wind down, weaken: The waning moon cast its pale light on the dying knight. As his strength waned he could no longer lift his sword. 2 draw to a close, end, terminate: The day waned into a gloomy evening.

--n. 3 decrease, diminution, lessening, decline, abatement, ebb, subsidence, fading, tapering off, petering out, winding down, weakening, deterioration, degeneration: The 1970s saw the wane in popularity of large, gas-guzzling cars. 4 on the wane. on the decrease or decline or ebb, diminishing, decreasing, declining, abating, subsiding, fading, tapering off, petering out, winding down, weakening, deteriorating, degenerating: The economy is recovering, and inflation is on the wane. Since that latest illness, my energy has been on the wane.

wangle v. scheme, plot, work out, contrive, manoeuvre, engineer, manage, manipulate, machinate, Colloq fix, fiddle, work, pull off, finagle, swing: I hear that you were able to wangle an audience with the pope.

want v. 1 desire, crave, wish (for), long for, pine for, hope (for), fancy, covet, hanker after, lust after, hunger for or after, thirst for or after, yearn for, Colloq have a yen for: I want you near me. Ignore his crying - he just wants some ice-cream. Maybe he's crying because he wants to go. 2 need, lack, miss, require, call for, demand, be deficient in, be or stand in want or in need of, necessitate; be or fall short of: This engine wants proper maintenance. The bottle wants only a few more drops to fill it.

--n. 3 need, lack, shortage, deficiency, dearth, scarcity, scarceness, insufficiency, scantiness, inadequacy, paucity: For want of good writers, the literary quarterly diminished in size and finally disappeared. 4 appetite, hunger, thirst, craving, desire, fancy, wish, longing, yearning, hankering, demand, necessity, requirement, requisite, prerequisite, Colloq yen: She gave up trying to satisfy his wants. 5 poverty, need, indigence, homelessness, destitution, privation, pauperism, penury, neediness, impecuniousness: The civilized nations are trying to solve the problems of want, which seem to increase daily.

wanting adj. 1 deficient, inadequate, not up to par or expectations, insufficient, leaving much to be desired, unsatisfactory, unsatisfying, disappointing, second-rate, inferior, poor, shabby, shoddy, flawed, faulty, imperfect, incomplete, unfinished, defective, patchy, impaired, damaged, broken, unsound: These robots were tested at the factory and were found wanting. 2 absent, missing, lacking, short (of), US and Canadian shy (of): What good is a banjo wanting its strings?

wanton adj. 1 immoral, dissolute, profligate, dissipated, depraved, loose, promiscuous, lustful, licentious, lecherous, wild, libidinous, lewd, lascivious, unchaste: She is a wanton hussy who is no better than she ought to be. 2 abandoned, unrestrained, undisciplined, ungoverned, ungovernable, unmanageable, outrageous, immoderate, intemperate, untempered: It is not the boy's fault, it is the wanton company he keeps. 3

reckless, rash, uncaring, lavish, extravagant, wilful, heedless, irresponsible, careless: This situation arises from the parents' wanton disregard for their children's moral training. 4 wicked, evil, malevolent, malicious, merciless, inhumane, vicious, cruel, violent, unjustified, unprovoked, uncalled-for, purposeless, motiveless, unjustifiable, arbitrary, gratuitous: We were subject to wanton attacks by the hill people.

--n. 5 vamp, strumpet, whore, harlot, loose woman, prostitute, voluptuary, slut, trollop, Jezebel, Colloq tart, Slang hooker, working girl, call-girl: Who invited that wanton, with her tight-fitting, shamelessly low-cut dress?

war n. 1 warfare, combat, conflict, fighting, clash, hostilities, battle, struggle, engagement, encounter, strife, contention: The war, in which several millions died, lasted six years. 2 at war. fighting, battling, in combat, in conflict; in disagreement, in dispute, in contention, struggling, antagonistic, at daggers drawn: They are at war because an ambassador refused to retract some silly insult.

--v. 3 do battle or fight or struggle or (engage in) combat with or against, make or wage war with or against, take up arms or strive or campaign or tilt against, cross swords or contend or joust with: We must continue to war against the forces of evil.

ward n. 1 district, division, precinct, section, zone, quarter: Perkin was running for re-election as councillor of the Eastgate ward. 2 minor, dependant: The child was made a ward of the court.

--v. 3 ward off. fend off, repel, avert, avoid, block, thwart, keep away or off or at bay or at arm's length, check, repulse, chase away or off, forestall: This brandy should help ward off the night chill.

wardrobe n. 1 (collection or stock of) clothing or clothes or attire or apparel: At the time, my entire wardrobe consisted of a pair of jeans, a shirt, and a dinner suit. 2 clothes-press, closet, clothes-cupboard: In her wardrobe they found more than three thousand pairs of shoes.

warehouse n. storehouse, store, storeroom, depository, stockroom, depot, go-down: The books are kept in a warehouse and shipped to customers as needed.

wares   n.pl. merchandise, goods, commodities, manufactures, produce, stock-(in-trade), supplies, lines: A blind man peddled his wares on this corner for twenty years.

warlike   adj. combative, belligerent, bellicose, aggressive, pugnacious, hostile, bloodthirsty; hawkish, militaristic, jingoistic, warmongering: Violation of the border was a warlike act that must be punished. There are warlike factions in every government.

warm   adj. 1 heated, tepid, lukewarm, cosy, comfortable, not uncomfortable, balmy: We chose a beautiful warm day for our picnic. 2 passionate, impassioned, excited, animated, fervent, fervid, spirited, lively, ardent, zealous, keen, eager, emotional, heated, intense, irritated, annoyed, vexed, angry, irate, furious, testy, short-tempered, touchy, quick-tempered, irascible, irritable, stormy, turbulent, vigorous, violent, Colloq worked up, hot under the collar, steamed up: Charles occasionally became a bit warm on the subject of architecture. The debate grew warm as we joined in. 3 amiable, friendly, cordial, affable, pleasant, genial, cheerful, kindly, hospitable, hearty; affectionate, tender, mellow, loving, amorous: After a warm greeting from our host, we went in to meet the other guests. Her generous gifts to charity revealed that she really has a warm heart. 4 ardent, enthusiastic, earnest, eager, sincere: Our ideas for the new campaign met with warm approval from the client. 5 uncomfortable, awkward, unpleasant, strained, tense: The people in this town tend to make things a bit warm for strangers. 6 Often, getting warm. close or near to making a discovery, about to make a discovery: From her look as I approached the cabinet, I knew I was getting warm.

--v. 7 heat (up), warm up or over: I warmed myself by the fire. 8 Often, warm to. become less antagonistic or hostile to or toward(s), become enthusiastic or supportive of, become excited or animated about or over, be attracted to or toward(s), like, feel affection for: Martin never did warm to my idea of using the village notice-board for his message. 9 stir, move, please, delight, make (one or someone) feel good: It warmed me to know that she had at last found someone to love.

warm-blooded
adj. 1 Technical homoeothermic or homoeothermal or homoiothermic or homoiothermal or homeothermic or homeothermal: Birds and mammals are warm-blooded, reptiles and fish are cold-blooded. 2 passionate, ardent, fervid, hot-blooded, impetuous, Colloq randy: He tried to excuse his behaviour towards her by saying that he was just a normal, warm-blooded man.

warmly adv. 1 affectionately, tenderly, fondly, lovingly: Linda kissed him warmly to thank him for the gift. 2 cordially, amiably, amicably, solicitously, warm-heartedly: We were greeted warmly by the manager on our arrival and shown to our rooms. 3 earnestly, eagerly, fervently, enthusiastically, well, kindly: The directors are warmly disposed to your plan for reorganization. 4 vigorously, intensely, fiercely, intensively, intently, energetically, doggedly, persistently, zealously, fervently, fervidly, hotly, ardently, enthusiastically: We learned that she was being warmly pursued by Interpol. 5 heatedly, vehemently, vociferously, forcefully, energetically, vigorously, feverishly, frantically, furiously, angrily, violently: The sending of a peace-keeping force was being warmly debated in the UN.

warmth n. 1 heat: We basked in the welcome warmth of the sun. 2 cordiality, heartiness, friendliness, geniality, amiableness, kindliness, tenderness, affability, love: Mother thrives on the warmth of a family environment and should not be put in a nursing home. 3 ardour, effusiveness, enthusiasm, zeal, excitedness, fervour, vehemence, vigour, ebullience, passion: I was taken aback by the warmth of the stranger's greeting. The resolution was debated with considerable warmth. 4 irritation, annoyance, pique: The warmth of his reaction to the accusation is understandable.

warn v. 1 caution, admonish, advise, notify, apprise, inform, give (fair) warning, alert, give (prior) notice, put (someone) on notice or on guard or on the alert, make (someone) aware (of), forewarn, tip off, Rare premonish: The entire population has been warned about the imminent hurricane. 2 advise, counsel, caution: You did warn me against investing in llama farms.

warning n. 1 caution, admonition, advice, counsel, caveat, word (to the wise), tip, notification, notice, threat; lesson, example: Cyril never took seriously his doctor's warning about his cholesterol level. Let that be a warning to you not to drink and drive. 2 omen, sign, signal, indication, augury, foretoken, portent, foreshadowing, forewarning, prophecy: Sailors take that kind of sky and a falling barometer as warning of a hurricane.

warp v. 1 twist, contort, distort, deform, bend out of shape, wrench, pervert, misshape: Using steam, the timber was warped to fit the hull. You certainly have a warped idea of what Yvette does for a living.

--n. 2 twist, contortion, distortion, bias, deformity, deformation, bend, wrench, perversion, kink, idiosyncrasy, quirk, deviation: There is too much of a warp in this veneer to repair it. Harry has to overcome a serious warp in his attitude towards food.

warrant n. 1 authorization, sanction, reason, justification, approval, validation, licence, right, certification, entitlement, grounds, cause, rationale, basis, assurance, carte blanche, guarantee, pledge, security, charter, warranty: We demand to know what warrant may exist for such an action. 2 writ, order, affidavit, paper, document, credential, permit, entitlement, licence, permit, summons, subpoena, mandate, decree, fiat, edict, ukase: Do not let them search the premises without a warrant. A warrant has been issued for her arrest.

--v. 3 guarantee, promise, assure, ensure or insure, answer for, be answerable for, certify, vouch for, underwrite, back up, uphold, stand by or behind: All these products are warranted by the manufacturer for one year. 4 authorize, sanction, justify, explain, approve, verify, validate, permit, allow, provide or offer grounds or justification or cause or reason for, call for, necessitate, entitle, empower, excuse, license: What is it that warrants such accusations of malfeasance?

warranty n. guarantee, assurance, promise, commitment, covenant, undertaking, agreement, pledge, bond: There is a maker's warranty that repairs of any defects will be made at no cost to the buyer.

wary adj. cautious, careful, on (one's) guard, circumspect, prudent, apprehensive, chary, watchful, vigilant, on the qui vive, heedful, observant, on (one's) toes, Colloq cagey, Slang leery (of): Phoebe is wary of going out with someone she doesn't know.

wash v. 1 wash up, clean (up), cleanse, bathe, shower, douche, douse, scrub (up), shampoo, soap up, lather, launder, scour, soak, rinse, flush, wet, drench, deterge, sponge (off), Facetious perform (one's) ablutions, Archaic absterge, Formal or literary lave, Brit bath: Please wash the dishes when you have finished eating. I must wash before I do anything else. 2 Sometimes, wash away or out or off. remove, move, transport, carry, bear, convey, deliver, deposit, drive, sweep: The silt, with the gold dust, is washed downstream. In this process, the impurities are washed away. 3 splash, spatter, splatter, plash, dash, beat, pound, thrash, break, toss, surge, undulate, rush, run, lap, ripple, roll, flow: We stood watching the sea washing against the breakwater. 4 Usually, wash away or off. erode, wear off or away, remove, delete, erase, expunge, destroy, eradicate, obliterate, extinguish, blot out, wipe out: After 5000 years, the action of the waves had washed away all traces of the Vengorian civilization. 5 Often, wash away or out. erode, cut or dig or wear or eat or dredge (away or out), excavate, channel: The river eventually washed out a new course, fifteen miles to the west. 6 decontaminate, purify, sift, filter, depurate: The wastes are thoroughly washed in these tanks before being discharged into the ocean. 7 overlay, film, coat, paint, glaze; plate: What do you think of colour they washed the wall? 8 hold up, stand up, stand the test of time, carry weight, bear scrutiny, prove true, make sense, be believable or credible, Colloq hold water: I'm afraid that Helen's explanation of her whereabouts at the time of the murder simply won't wash. 9 wash down. swallow: Here, wash the pill down with this. 10 wash (one's) hands of. stay or keep away from, disown, repudiate, turn (one's) back on, have nothing more or further to do with, get rid of, rid (oneself) of, desert, abandon, leave: After Neil took the money, Violet washed her hands of him and his problems.

--n. 11 washing, cleaning, cleansing, scrubbing, scrub, scouring, shampoo, shampooing, bath, bathing, shower, sponge bath, tub-bath; laundering; Facetious ablutions; Colloq Brit tub, tubbing: He always likes a good wash and shave before breakfast. 12 wave, wake, surge, backwash: The wash from passing ships almost swamped our skiff. 13 lotion, rinse, liniment, salve, embrocation, emulsion, preparation; mouthwash, gargle; eyewash, collyrium: Use this wash twice a day till the condition disappears. 14 flow, wave, swell, welling, sweep, sweeping, ebb and flow, surge, surging, undulation, rise and fall: Shellfish in the gap cleanse themselves of impurities in the constant tidal wash running through there. 15 coat, coating, film, overlay, glaze; plating: There is a microscopic wash of gold over the tin to lend the bracelet a little cachet.

washed out

adj. 1 wan, pale, pallid, colourless, faded, lacklustre, flat; blanched, bleached, etiolated: Gene looks washed out because he never gets out in the sun. She was wearing washed-out jeans and a torn t-shirt. 2 exhausted, spent, tired, tired out, weary, worn out, fatigued, drained, Colloq dog-tired, bone-tired, done in, all in, fagged out, bushed, Brit knocked up, US knocked out, Slang beat, US and Canadian tuckered out, pooped: After a hard day in the office, I feel completely washed out.

washed up adj. finished, through, failed, done for, played out, over (and done with), Slang kaput, fini: After that last fiasco, he's no more than a washed-up has-been.

washout n. failure, disaster, d,bƒcle, (total) loss, fiasco, disappointment, Colloq flop, dud, Brit damp squib, US lead balloon: His attempts to revive the hula-hoop craze were a washout.

waspish adj. irascible, bad-tempered, foul-tempered, temperamental, testy, grouchy, sensitive, volatile, querulous, edgy, petulant, spiteful, peevish, cantankerous, curmudgeonly, cross, crabby, crabbed, crotchety, splenetic, grumpy, captious, cranky, crusty: Elaine is feeling very waspish today - no one can do anything right.

waste v. 1 squander, misuse, throw away, fritter away, misspend, splurge, dissipate, Slang blow: Why I wasted so much time on him I'll never know. Don't waste your money on such frivolities. 2 Often, waste away. diminish, deteriorate, dwindle, decline, decay, atrophy, wither, shrink, weaken, become debilitated, fade, become enervated or enfeebled, regress, ebb, sink: She is just wasting away, and I am seriously worried that she may not recover. 3 enervate, enfeeble, emaciate, gnaw, destroy, consume, debilitate, exhaust, disable: Arkwright contracted a terrible wasting disease while in the tropics. 4 assassinate, murder, kill, Slang put away, rub out, US ice: Don't worry, Boss, we'll waste Andy and you won't have no more trouble.

--n. 5 misuse, misapplication, squandering, dissipation, misemployment, abuse, neglect: What a terrible waste of talent to have such a person doing such lowly work! Do not let that genius go to waste. 6 wasting, extravagance, prodigality, wastefulness, squandering, indulgence, lavishness, profligacy, dissoluteness, improvidence, overindulgence: Government waste is one of our biggest problems. 7 refuse, rubbish, garbage, dregs, debris, leavings, scrap, offscourings, sweepings, litter, Archaic orts, US and Canadian trash: Techniques are being developed to process the waste in order to avoid using landfills, incineration, or dumping at sea. 8 wasteland, desert, wilderness, barrens, wilds, emptiness, vastness: Beyond that system were vast wastes of uninhabited space.

--adj. 9 extra, leftover, unused, superfluous, worthless, useless: The waste food was usually fed to the animals. 10 barren, unproductive, unusable, unsalvageable, useless, unrecyclable, unprofitable, worthless: The waste products of manufacture are a big problem. 11 lay waste. devastate, destroy, demolish, despoil, ruin, wreck, ravage, pillage, sack, plunder, loot, rob, strip, spoil, gut, ransack, wreak havoc (up)on, crush, raze, annihilate, eradicate, extirpate, wipe out: These lands and cities, laid waste by the invaders, have never recovered.

wasteful adj. extravagant, spendthrift, profligate, prodigal, lavish, improvident, unthrifty, uneconomical, overindulgent, open-handed, free-handed, penny wise and pound foolish: It was very wasteful of you to buy me that expensive jewellery.

wastrel   n. 1 spendthrift, profligate, waster, prodigal, big spender, squanderer: That wastrel went through his inheritance in a year. 2 idler, layabout, malingerer, loafer, shirker, good-for-nothing, ne'er-do-well, Chiefly Brit drone, Slang Brit skiver: The workhouse is the place for wastrels like you!

watch v. 1 observe, regard, look at, gaze at or on, take in, contemplate: Daniel loves to watch the bears at the zoo. 2 look after, tend, mind, keep an eye on, watch over, mind, guard, care for, take care of, safeguard, protect, shield, keep safe, supervise, superintend; chaperon, accompany, attend; Colloq babysit (for), sit (with): Could you please watch Suzie while I go shopping? 3 observe, note, notice, make or take note of, see, pay attention (to), attend (to), follow, (take) heed (of), examine, inspect, scrutinize, pore over; eye, peer at; ogle, make eyes at: Watch the way I bone this fish. Ted enjoys watching the girls going by. 4 Often, watch (out) for. look for, be on the watch or lookout or alert or qui vive (for), guard (against), keep an eye open (for), be watchful (for), note, take note or notice of, be vigilant (for or of), keep (one's) eyes open (for), keep a (sharp) lookout (for), be prepared or ready for, be careful of, anticipate, await, wait (for), look for, Colloq keep (one's) eyes peeled or skinned (for), keep a weather eye open (for): We were watching for irregularities in the test results. Watch where you're going! Watch out for that last step!

--n. 5 vigil, surveillance, observation, lookout: Our six-hour watch was rewarded by the appearance of a yellow-bellied sapsucker. 6 clock, timepiece, pocket watch, wrist-watch; chronometer: I always set my watch by the GMT time signal on the radio. 7 sentry, sentinel, guard, watchman: The midnight watch just returned from his rounds. 8 on the watch (for). on the alert (for), on the lookout (for), on (one's) guard (for), on the qui vive (for), alert (for or to), awake (to), observant (of), watchful (of), cautious (of), wary (of), vigilant, circumspect: We remained on the watch for the slightest movement in the bushes.

watchman n. (security) guard, sentinel, sentry, watch, night-watchman, custodian, caretaker; watchdog: After retiring from the police, he worked as a watchman.

water n. 1 H2O; distilled water, tap water, drinking-water, bottled water, spa water, still water, soda (water), effervescent water, mineral water; sea water, salt water; ditch-water, dishwater,

bath-water, US branch water, Facetious Adam's ale, Technical or Latin aqua; Technical heavy water or deuterium oxide or D2O; Brit fizzy water: Pure water is odourless, tasteless, and colourless. 2 not hold water. be illogical or unsound or invalid, not be sensible, be inconsistent, not make sense, be unbelievable or incredible, be indefensible, be unfeasible or unworkable, not work, not function, not hold up under or bear scrutiny or examination, not ring true, ring false, Colloq not wash: Her account of her whereabouts that day just doesn't hold water. 3 like water. lavishly, extravagantly, freely, wastefully, profligately, open-handedly, liberally, excessively, copiously, unstintingly, unreservedly: They've been spending money like water since they won the football pools. 4 make water. urinate, pass water, Colloq pee, piss: When a dog makes water, it marks off a territory bounded by its scent. 5 of the first water. of superior or excellent or first or top or A-one or the finest or the highest or the best quality or grade; first-grade, top-grade: These were not industrial stones but diamonds of the first water.

--v. 6 inundate, flood, drench, saturate, soak, douse, irrigate, hose, wet, shower, splash, spray, sprinkle, moisten, damp, dampen, bedew: If you don't water the garden, the vegetables will die. 7 Often, water down. dilute, weaken, thin out, adulterate; cut; mollify, modify, soften, tone down, qualify: We no longer go there because they water the drinks. They told the children a watered-down version of what had happened.

water-colour

n. aquarelle: John's water-colours sell as fast as he paints them.

waterfall n. cascade, cataract, fall(s), chute, Niagara, No. Brit force, Scots linn: In front of them, a waterfall tumbled down a rock-face into a deep pool.

watertight

adj. 1 sealed, waterproof: The escape hatch has been made watertight. 2 unassailable, impregnable, solid, airtight, flawless, faultless, incontrovertible; without loopholes: Landry has a watertight alibi for the night of the crime.

watery adj. 1 weak, dilute(d), watered down, tasteless, insipid, flavourless, bland, flat, dull, thin, runny, pallid, anaemic, Colloq wishy-washy: He asked me in, then gave me some watery tea to drink. 2 weeping, teary, tearful, running, weepy, lachrymose, rheumy: The child looked up at him with watery eyes and then collapsed, sobbing. 3 wet, swampy, boggy, marshy, aqueous, squelchy; soggy, moist, damp, humid; Colloq squushy or squooshy: It took days to make our way across that watery plain to the high ground.

wave n. 1 swell, undulation, billow, sea, heave, roller, whitecap, white horse; ripple, wavelet, breaker, comber: A huge wave tossed me up on the beach. 2 surge, swell, welling up, ground swell, movement, flood, upsurge, uprising, current, tide: The period is marked by a wave of materialism and greed that swamped all morality and integrity. 3 signal, sign, gesticulation, gesture: Was his wave intended for you or for me?

--v. 4 undulate, billow, move to and fro, flap, flutter, quiver, flip-flop, swing, sway, ripple, oscillate, zigzag, fluctuate, shake; wag, whiffle, wigwag, wiggle, waggle, brandish: The streamer waved slowly in the quickening breeze. Stop waving that knife at me! 5 signal, sign, indicate, signify; gesture, gesticulate: Hazel waved goodbye from the train.

way n. 1 manner, method, mode, fashion, means, system, course (of action), procedure, approach, scheme, technique, practice, modus operandi, Colloq MO (= 'modus operandi'): That's no way to talk to your mother! We have ways of making you talk. Is that any way to treat a lady?! It's the wrong way to deal with the problem. 2 manner, spirit, feeling, sense, character, approach, personality, temperament, disposition, modus vivendi (= 'lifestyle'), nature, technique, style, conduct, habit, behaviour pattern, custom: He has such a pleasant way about him. Lucinda certainly has a way with children and dogs. You city people may not approve of our down-to-earth country ways. 3 path, road, street, avenue, course, route, trail, direction: Show me the way to go home. The way to the village lies through dark woods. 4 distance; route, trail, course, road: You've come a long way since we last met. 5 progress, passage, advance, headway; speed, velocity, motion, (forward) movement: We made our way to the front of the crowd. Who has the right of way at the crossing? The tide was too strong for us to get any way on.

6 aspect, respect, particular, detail, point, sense, feature: In certain ways, you remind me of Attila the Hun. 7 clearance, pathway, avenue, scope, freedom, opportunity: When you hear a siren, drive to the side and give way. Make way for the Lord High Executioner! 8 condition, situation: She prefers the prissy 'in a family way' to the straightforward 'pregnant' and the vulgar 'have a bun in the oven'. I saw Luke yesterday and he was really in a bad way. 9 by the way. incidentally, moreover, by the by, parenthetically: By the way, have I told you how beautiful you look tonight? 10 by way of. a via, through, by means of: We drove from London to Oxford by way of Reading. b (functioning) as, in (the) way of, in the capacity of, equivalent to, more or less, something like: Richard is by way of being an expert on eccentric behaviour. 11 give way. a collapse, break (down), fail, cave in, fall (down), crumble, crumple, disintegrate, go to pieces: The cable gave way, causing the bridge to collapse. b yield, surrender, retreat, concede, withdraw, accede, make concessions, acquiesce, acknowledge: The trouble is that they both think they are in the right and neither will give way. 12 under way. proceeding, progressing, on the move, moving, advancing, going, begun, started, in progress, operating, functioning, at work, US in work, Colloq in the works, US in the pipeline: Once under way, it takes the ship three days to make the crossing. Plans are under way to reclaim the slum area for a park.

waylay v. 1 ambush, lie in wait for, await, intercept, pounce upon or on, swoop down on or upon, accost: You'll have to waylay him on his way to lunch if you want to speak to him. 2 attack, mug, seize, assault, accost, set upon: He was waylaid by a band of thieves and stripped of his belongings.

way-out adj. 1 bizarre, mad, weird, crazy, strange, odd, peculiar, freakish, freaky, eccentric, queer, abnormal, offbeat, outrageous, wild, exotic, esoteric, Colloq kinky, Slang kooky, off-the-wall, far-out, screwy, nutty, US flaky, screwball: The police did not take kindly to the boys' way-out behaviour after the party. 2 avant-garde, advanced, original, innovative, unorthodox, unconventional, experimental, precedent-setting, progressive, exploratory, ground-breaking, Slang far-out: Spencer thinks that the way-out art of the 1960s will have great value one day.

weak adj. 1 feeble, frail, fragile, unsubstantial, flimsy, breakable, frangible, delicate, rickety, unsteady, unsound, decrepit, shaky, infirm: That chair is too weak for you to stand on. 2 frail, infirm, debilitated, enervated, delicate, sickly, anaemic, wasted, decrepit, puny, effete, worn out, tired, exhausted: When I last saw Tindell he was so weak he could hardly lift his brandy glass. 3 unassertive, retiring, namby-pamby, spineless, irresolute, impotent, ineffectual, ineffective, incompetent, feckless, inept, wishy-washy, timid, meek, craven, timorous, cowardly, pusillanimous, lily-livered, chicken-hearted, Colloq chicken, yellow: We know which is the weaker partner in that marriage, don't we? 4 feeble, lame, half-baked, poor, miserable, unconvincing, unpersuasive, empty, shallow, flimsy, hollow, pathetic, pitiful, unbelievable, untenable: Edward made some weak excuse for being late. I found Mona's argument against birth control very weak indeed. 5 weak-minded, dim-witted, dull-witted, slow-witted, foolish, feeble-minded, simple, simple-minded, soft-headed, stupid, dull, moronic, imbecilic, Colloq dumb: They seek out people of weaker intelligence and make fools of them. 6 faint, dim, poor, dull, pale, faded, indistinct, vague, hazy, imperceptible, indiscernible, unclear, blurred, blurry, muzzy, wavering, faltering, ill-defined, feeble, flickering, subdued: I could hardly see her face in the weak light of the candle. 7 feeble, subdued, low, soft, hushed, muffled, muted, almost inaudible, stifled, indistinct: When the victim finally spoke, his voice was very weak. 8 See watery, 1, above. 9 weak point. See weakness, 3, below.

weaken v. 1 debilitate, enfeeble, enervate, emasculate, mitigate, moderate, dilute, deplete, diminish, lessen, depress, lower, reduce, sap, undermine, exhaust, impoverish: The continuous torture helped to weaken Errol's resolve. 2 fade, dwindle, tire, droop, sag, fail, give way, crumble, flag: My determination weakened when I saw what had happened to the children. 3 give in, relent, acquiesce, give way, yield, accede, consent, agree, assent, soften, bend, ease up, let up, ease off, relax: If you ask very politely, she might weaken and allow you to go out and play. 4 water (down), dilute, thin (out): Adding the water so weakened the soup that it tasted like dishwater.

weakling n. milksop, baby, mollycoddle, lightweight, namby-pamby, US and Canadian milquetoast, Colloq sissy or Brit also cissy, loser, cream puff, jellyfish, pushover, softie or softy, Slang wimp, twerp or twirp, US weak sister, schnook, schlemiel or schlemihl or shlemiel: If you count on a weakling like Geoffrey, nothing will ever get done.

weakness n. 1 feebleness, frailty, fragility, delicacy, delicateness, vulnerability, infirmity, decrepitude: They discovered a weakness in the structure of the bridge, so it had to be closed. 2 incapacity, irresolution, irresoluteness, impotence, powerlessness, puniness: He is ashamed of his weakness in being unable to stop smoking. 3 weak point, foible, failing, fault, shortcoming, flaw, Achilles' heel, defect, imperfection, liability: Her one great weakness is her inability to deny her children anything. 4 soft spot, fondness, affection, liking, preference, bent, leaning, inclination, fancy, penchant, predilection, proneness, proclivity, predisposition, partiality, appreciation, appetite, sweet tooth, taste, eye: The two of them share a weakness for good food and wine.

wealth n. 1 affluence, riches, money, opulence, prosperity, property, holdings, capital, assets, wherewithal, cash: Most of their wealth comes from illicit trade in diamonds. 2 profusion, abundance, bounty, plenteousness, bounteousness, copiousness, mine, plenitude, fullness, store, cornucopia, richness: Janet has a wealth of ideas for situation-comedy plots.

wealthy adj. rich, affluent, well off, prosperous, well-to-do, opulent, comfortable, moneyed, Colloq in the money, on Easy Street, flush, well-heeled, in clover, Slang loaded, stinking (rich), filthy rich, quids in, rolling in it: Bill has a wealthy aunt who sends him a little something now and then.

wear v. 1 be dressed or clothed in, dress in, put on, don, be in, step or get into or in, have on, sport: I shall wear my new suit tonight. 2 display, show, exhibit, have, adopt, assume: I wondered why she wore such a curious expression. 3 Often, wear down or away or off. damage, impair, harm, fray, erode, abrade, corrode, rub (off): The water has worn down the rocks till they are round and shiny. The inscription on the stone is worn away.

After years of use, the paint has worn off. 4 Often, wear well. last, endure, survive, hold up, bear up, stand up: I wrote to the makers telling them the shoes have worn well. 5 drag, pass slowly, creep by or along, go by gradually or tediously: The hours wore on as I waited for the test results. 6 Often, wear out. tire, fatigue, exhaust, debilitate, weary, enervate, drain, burden: You must be worn out from carrying those heavy books. 7 bore, exasperate, harass, vex, annoy, irritate, tax, strain: I find it wearing to listen to that music all day long.

--n. 8 wearing, use, utilization; attire, garb, clothing, clothes, apparel, dress, gear: Did you get much wear out of your new hat? Suzanne is modelling a silver lam, dress for evening wear. 9 wear and tear, attrition, deterioration, damage, fraying, chafing, abrasion, erosion, corrosion, friction: As the engine ages, heavier oil is needed to offset the normal wear.

weary adj. 1 tired, fatigued, exhausted, worn out, drained, spent, Colloq all in, ready to drop, fagged (out), done in, dead (on (one's) feet), frazzled, dead beat, dog-tired, Brit knocked up, US knocked out, Slang Brit whacked, knackered, US pooped, zonked (out), shot: He is so weary after work that he can scarcely eat his dinner. 2 boring, irksome, irritating, tedious, vexing, annoying, exasperating, burdensome, wearying, tiring, fatiguing, draining, taxing, wearisome: We walked many a weary mile before reaching the oasis. 3 bored, impatient, jaded, blas,, Colloq fed up, sick and tired, Taboo slang browned off: I wish he would wipe that weary expression off his smug face.

--v. 4 Often, weary of. tire (of), be or become bored (with or by) or impatient (with) or jaded (with or by), Colloq be or become fed up (with) or sick and tired (of): I soon wearied of her nagging. 5 exhaust, enervate, fatigue, tire, debilitate, drain, tax, wear or tire out: The long trek across country had wearied us all.

weather n. 1 (meteorological) condition(s), climate: The weather suddenly changed, and we arrived home cold and wet. 2 under the weather. ailing, ill, sickly, unwell, indisposed, out of sorts, sick, Colloq poorly, seedy: I didn't go sailing because I was feeling a bit under the weather.

--v. 3 stand, survive, suffer, bear up against, endure, withstand, rise above, ride out, live through, brave: Gemma didn't think she could weather much more sarcasm from the critics.

weave v. 1 loom; braid, plait, entwine, intertwine, interlace, interweave, knit (together): These fabrics were woven by hand. Weave these leather strands together to make a belt. 2 blend, combine, fuse, merge, unite, intermingle, mesh, splice, dovetail, join: The threads of their lives are inextricably woven together. 3 construct, make, contrive, build, create, fabricate, compose, spin, design: Oh, what a tangled web we weave When first we practise to deceive! 4 zigzag, criss-cross, wend or make (one's) way, dodge, bob and weave, shift: Look at that motor cyclist weaving in and out of the traffic! 5 get weaving. get started, get a move on, hurry (up), start, Colloq shake a leg, Brit get or pull (one's) finger out, Chiefly US get a wiggle on: If you're going to get to work on time, you'd best get weaving.

web n. spider's web, cobweb; net, network, entanglement, snare, trap: Don't you just hate getting those webs in your hair? She became entangled in a web of deception.

wed v. 1 marry, espouse, get married, become husband and wife, say or take (one's) (marriage) vows, join or unite in holy wedlock or matrimony; lead down the aisle, lead to the altar, Archaic wive; Colloq tie the knot, get hitched, get spliced: They were wed on the fourth of July, 1921. That was when Harry wed Annabel. 2 combine, unite, ally, marry, blend, merge, join, mingle, intermingle, commingle, coalesce, mix, intermix, amalgamate, compound, alloy, fuse, homogenize: As a chef, he is extremely fortunate to be able to wed business to pleasure.

wedded adj. Usually, wedded to. intimately or obstinately attached or connected (to), enamoured (of): He has always been wedded to the notion of living alone on an island.

wedding n. 1 marriage (ceremony), wedding ceremony, nuptials; confarreation: Our son's wedding was attended by members of the royal family. 2 combining, combination, uniting, union, joining, juncture, blending, blend, allying, alliance, associating, association, marrying, marriage, merging, merger, mingling, intermingling, commingling, coalescing, coalescence, mixing, mixture, intermixing, amalgamating, amalgamation, compounding, compound, alloying, alloy, fusing, fusion, homogenizing, homogenization: Through her wedding of vision to observation she has produced some truly remarkable paintings.

wedge   n. 1 block, chock: A shoe with a wedge heel is called a 'wedgie'. We forced wedges into the cracks in the stone to split it. 2 separation, separator, division, partition, split, fissure, cleavage: That woman tried to drive a wedge between me and my husband.

--v. 3 ram, jam, stuff, cram, crowd, force, squeeze, pack, thrust: You couldn't have wedged another person into the back seat of that Mini with a shoehorn.

wee   adj. 1 tiny, small, diminutive, little, minuscule, midget, minute, miniature, Lilliputian, microscopic, Colloq itty-bitty, itsy-bitsy, teeny(-weeny), teensy(-weensy): Johnny caught his wee little finger in the door. 2 unimportant, insignificant, trivial, little, puny: It was only a wee thing, of no interest to anyone but me.

weep   v. 1 cry, shed tears, bawl, blubber, keen, sob, lament, mourn, bemoan, bewail, moan, grieve, whine, whimper, mewl, pule, snivel, Colloq blub, boohoo, Brit and Australian whinge: A small child, sitting by herself, was weeping bitterly. 2 ooze, seep, exude, drip: The wound had started weeping and needed bandaging.

weigh   v. 1 Sometimes, weigh in at or out at. Colloq tip the scales at: The sailboard weighed in at 250 pounds. I weigh more than I should. 2 consider, ponder, contemplate, think on or over or about, mull over, turn over in the or (one's) mind, ruminate over, chew over, reflect on or upon, brood over, pore over, study, examine: After weighing the qualifications of the candidates, we voted for you. Weigh your words carefully before responding. 3 judge, estimate, assess, evaluate, value, determine: It is not easy to weigh each person's contribution to the effort. 4 Usually, weigh on or upon. lie heavy on, burden, depress, prey on, oppress, disturb, perturb, upset: Loneliness weighs heavily on Dave's widow. 5 matter, count, have (an) effect or influence, carry weight, be of value or account, Colloq cut any ice: Certain factors - like the sizes of the bribes - are likely to weigh heavily with the judges of this particular beauty contest. 6 weigh down. burden, overburden, load, overload, encumber, tax, overtax, strain, trouble, worry, depress, oppress: He's been weighed down by financial worries since losing his job.

weight n. 1 heaviness, avoirdupois, mass, tonnage, Dialect heft: They sell peaches by weight but melons are individually priced. The weight of these books must be enormous. 2 burden, load, millstone, onus, pressure, strain, albatross, cross: He has to support the weight of the entire family's expenses. 3 influence, authority, power, substance, force, moment, importance, consequence, impact, persuasiveness, value, worth, Colloq clout: Clyde brought down his full weight in favour of the liberal candidate. Clyde's opinion carries little weight with me. He must stop throwing his weight around. 4 mass, majority, preponderance or preponderancy, bulk, superiority: The weight of the voters is in favour of reducing taxes. The weight of the evidence is against us.

--v. 5 load, charge, ballast: The policemen's truncheons are weighted with lead. 6 arrange, manipulate, bias, incline, slant, Colloq rig: The statistics are weighted so as to make the advertiser's product look superior.

weighty adj. 1 heavy, ponderous, massive, huge, bulky, substantial, ample, large, mammoth, colossal, immense, enormous, gigantic, prodigious; corpulent, fat, obese, adipose, Colloq hefty: I found myself face to face with a rather weighty gentleman who was blocking the doorway. 2 important, consequential, significant, momentous, grave, crucial, portentous, thought-provoking, provocative: These are weighty matters and should be handled with circumspection. 3 influential, convincing, persuasive, impressive, telling, powerful, potent, leading; forceful: Weighty arguments have been put forward in support of these proposals.

weird adj. strange, odd, peculiar, bizarre, unnatural, eerie, queer, grotesque, freakish, outlandish, uncanny, unearthly, other-worldly, supernatural, preternatural, Literary eldritch, Colloq spooky, freaky, kinky, Slang far-out, way-out: There was something decidedly weird about the creature at the door.

weirdo n. eccentric, madman, madwoman, lunatic, psychotic, Colloq crazy, weirdie, nutcase, oddball, queer fish, crank, Slang freak, loony, psycho, Brit nutter, US screwball, nut, kook: Why belong to a club whose members are weirdos who refuse to talk to one another?

welcome v. 1 greet, hail, meet, receive, accept, offer hospitality (to): Everywhere she went she was welcomed with open arms.

--adj. 2 accepted, acceptable, well-received, desirable, agreeable, gratifying, appreciated: Norma is always a welcome guest at my house. Ice cream was a welcome relief from the perennial plum duff. 3 freely permitted or allowed, invited, entitled, suffered: At that hotel, guests are welcome to dine when they please.

--n. 4 reception, greeting, salutation: We gave the ambassador a warm welcome.

weld v. 1 unite, combine, merge, fuse, connect, link, join; solder, braze, cement, bond: We felt welded together in a brotherhood that would last forever. The brace must be welded all the way along the edge.

--n. 2 seam, joint, juncture, commissure: The weld must be filed down smooth.

welfare n. benefit, good, advantage, well-being, prosperity, (good) fortune, profit, interest, (good) health, happiness, felicity: It is up to the parents to look after their children's welfare.

well° adv. 1 satisfactorily, sufficiently, adequately, agreeably, nicely, (well) enough, Colloq OK or okay: Alan is doing well these days. 2 successfully, famously, marvellously, wonderfully, fabulously, incredibly, splendidly, admirably, spectacularly, excellently, superbly: Barbara and David really get along well together. 3 articulately, understandably, expressively, correctly, accurately, properly, proficiently, effectively, artistically, poetically; grammatically: Henry will make a good announcer because he speaks well. 4 comfortably, luxuriously, prosperously, extravagantly, showily, pretentiously, ostentatiously, sumptuously, grandly, opulently:

How can Rita live so well with no visible income? Living well is the best revenge. 5 graciously, kindly, highly, favourably, glowingly, approvingly, warmly, genially, cordially, amiably, kind-heartedly, warm-heartedly, affectionately, lovingly: Rudolph has always spoken well of you, Aileen. 6 skilfully, expertly, adeptly, proficiently, ably: Does Anne play well enough to compete professionally? Paul sings well. 7 far, by a long way, immeasurably, (very) much; far and away, definitely, positively, obviously, clearly, plainly, manifestly, evidently, unquestionably, decidedly, beyond (the shadow of a) doubt, Colloq by a long chalk: Keep well away from the fuel tank before lighting that cigarette. She is well beyond the beginner stage. This painting is well worth what you paid. 8 good-naturedly, equably, coolly, serenely, calmly, soberly, unexcitedly, sedately: Burt took the bad news about his car very well. 9 likely, probably, in all probability, doubtlessly, without doubt, not unexpectedly, indeed: He might well say he needs no help. 10 easily, without difficulty: Though he gave her the money, he could not well spare it. 11 completely, entirely, wholly: Before she could well finish her sentence, he was out of the house. 12 thoroughly (cooked), (cooked) through and through, completely (cooked): He likes his roast beef well done. 13 intimately, closely, familiarly, personally; thoroughly, profoundly, soundly, fully: Do you know Boris well? I learnt my lesson well. 14 fairly, justly, suitably, properly, adequately, reasonably, fully, generously, amply: James is well paid for his work. 15 happily, mercifully, fortunately, luckily: After the divorce, both said they were well rid of each other.

--adj. 16 healthy, fit, hale, robust, vigorous, hearty, in fine or good fettle, Colloq in good shape: Wendy felt really well after her holiday. 17 satisfactory, pleasing, agreeable, good, right, all right, fine, proper, OK or okay: When he phoned the office, they told him all was well.

wellý n. 1 well-spring, spring, fountain, well-head, fountain-head, fount, source, reservoir: The well provided a constant supply of cool clear water.

--v. 2 Often, well up or out or forth. flow, spring, surge, rise, stream, trickle, brim over, swell, start; gush, spurt, jet, spout; ooze, seep, leak: Tears welled up in the child's eyes when she saw the broken doll.

well-advised
adj. prudent, wise, sensible, intelligent, smart: You would be well-advised to avoid Chichicastenango at this time of year.

well-balanced
adj. 1 rational, sane, sensible, rational, reasonable, level-headed, sober, sound, well-adjusted, cool(-headed), Slang together: Ray is as well-balanced as people seem to be these days. 2 even, symmetric(al), harmonious, well-proportioned, orderly, well-ordered, well-disposed: Note the well-balanced arrangement of the windows in this Palladian fa‡ade.

well-bred adj. well brought up, well-mannered, polite, decorous, mannerly, refined, courteous, cultivated, polished, cultured, gentlemanly, ladylike, elegant, suave, urbane, sophisticated, gracious, courtly, genteel, gallant, chivalrous: Jane prefers bikers to the well-bred gentlemen her mother selects for her.

well-established
adj. long-standing, traditional, set, venerable, well-known, accepted, well-founded: He works for a well-established firm of solicitors. It's a well-established fact that the English discuss the weather a lot.

well-fed adj. plump, chunky, thickset, chubby, rounded, rotund, portly, stout, fleshy, overweight, adipose, fat, obese, gross, Brit podgy or US pudgy: On the westward crossing we were seated with a well-fed Austrian couple.

well-groomed
adj. neat, dapper, fastidious, tidy, trim, smart, clean-cut, spruce, natty, well-dressed, Colloq nifty, Slang US and Canadian spiffy: Well-groomed gentleman sought as escort to attractive widow. Hourly rate. Driving licence essential.

well-informed
adj. knowledgeable, learned, well-read, well-versed, well-educated, literate, educated, Colloq in the know, wise, US vibrating on the right frequency, Slang hip or hep: With access to all the media, what excuse have you for not being well-informed?

well-known
adj. 1 known, familiar, (well-)established, acknowledged, customary, everyday: Plain salt is a well-known remover of wine stains. 2 famous, noted, notable, celebrated, renowned, illustrious, famed, prominent, eminent, pre-eminent: The scandal linked a former Cabinet Minister with several well-known City names.

well off adj. comfortable, wealthy, rich, affluent, prosperous, well-to-do, Colloq well-heeled, US well-fixed: They are well off and live in a charming house on the edge of the Cotswolds.

well-thought-of
adj. admired, highly regarded, respected, reputable, venerated, esteemed, revered, looked-up-to, valued: Timothy is a well-thought-of member of the community.

well-timed
adj. timely, seasonable, opportune, auspicious, favourable, advantageous, beneficial: Tax incentives gave a well-timed boost to the economy.

welsher n. non-payer, cheat, cheater, swindler, Slang dead-beat, US welcher: That welsher never paid the money he lost to me at poker.

welt n. 1 bead, ridge, seam, edge, wale, stripe: The cushion has a welt of contrasting colour binding it. 2 bruise, contusion, bump, lump, scar, weal or wale or wheal: The boy's back was covered with red welts where he had been birched.

welter n. 1 mass, mess, jumble, tangle, confusion, mishmash, muddle, clutter, Brit hotchpotch or US also hodgepodge: Her assignment was to sort out a welter of discarded clothing for the poor. My mind was assailed by a welter of disorganized images.

--v. 2 be sunk or involved in, flounder, be bogged down in, be entangled or ensnarled in: Till I found a new secretary, I would have to continue weltering in a sea of correspondence and unfiled papers.

wet adj. 1 moist, moistened, damp, dampened, soaked, soaking, sopping, wringing, dripping, sodden, soppy, saturated, drenched: During the rainy season, the ground is far too wet for planting. 2 rainy, raining, teeming, pouring, drizzling, showery: We have had a very wet spring this year. 3 feeble, weak, irresolute, effet, namby-pamby, foolish, ineffectual, ineffective, spineless, timorous, cowardly: She considered some of her colleagues too wet to take the tough action needed.

--n. 4 moisture, water, wetness, dampness, damp, humidity, liquid: The wet stood out on his forehead. 5 rain, wetness, mist, dew, fog, damp, humidity: Come in out of the wet, and warm yourself by the fire. 6 milksop, softie or softy, lightweight, Colloq drip, loser, Brit weed, Slang wimp, US weak sister: Why is he such a wet about standing up for his rights?

23.3 wheedle...
=-

wheedle v. coax, cajole, inveigle, charm, beguile, persuade, talk; butter up; Colloq con, sweet-talk: Irena always managed to wheedle someone into taking her dancing.

wheel n. 1 disc, ring, annulus, circle, hoop: It seems odd that no culture in the western hemisphere ever invented the wheel.

--v. 2 spin, turn, veer, swivel, pivot, swing, whirl: Medusa wheeled to face him and he promptly turned to stone.

whereabouts

n.pl. or sg. 1 location, position, place, site, situation, locale, neighbourhood, vicinity: Her present whereabouts are unknown to me. The culprit concealed his whereabouts from the police.

--adv. 2 where, in or at or to what place, whither: Whereabouts are you going to spend your holiday? Whereabouts are you going?

whet v. 1 sharpen, hone, grind, file, put an edge on, strop: He whetted the knife on an oiled stone till it was razor-sharp. 2 pique, sharpen, awaken, arouse, stimulate, kindle, fire, increase, excite, enhance: The cruise on Bill's yacht whetted my appetite to own a small sailing-boat.

whimsical adj. 1 quaint, fey, fanciful, odd, curious, unusual, chimeric(al), queer, singular, peculiar, funny, fantastic(al), pixyish, playful, puckish, absurd, preposterous, Colloq offbeat: When Andrew's whimsical drawings caught on they were bought by greetings card makers. 2 capricious, erratic, eccentric, wavering, flighty, unsettled, fickle, mercurial, wavering, fluctuating, unpredictable, inconsistent, volatile, unsteady: The buses in our village run on what could best be termed a whimsical timetable.

whip v. 1 beat, thrash, lash, flog, horsewhip, scourge, switch, cane, birch, flagellate, leather, spank, strap; castigate, chastise, punish, discipline; Slang tan, US wale: They learnt right from wrong because father whipped them when they were wrong. 2 trounce, defeat, beat, conquer, overwhelm, rout, overcome, overpower, thwart, check, best, worst, drub, stop, outdo, Colloq lick, wipe the floor with, batter, Slang pulverize, clobber, destroy, ruin, murder, slaughter, kill, squash, smash, US cream: Karpilova whipped O'Meara 6-0, 6-2 at today's match. 3 run, scamper, scoot, race, scurry, scramble, hurry, flit, rush, dash, dart, Colloq zip, zoom, skedaddle: I whipped round the corner and dived behind a tree to hide. 4 beat, whisk, fluff up: Whip the egg-whites till they are stiff. 5 Nautical seize, bind, wind, fasten, tie: The end of the line is whipped to prevent its unravelling. 6 whip out. yank out, jerk out, pull (out), whisk out, present, exhibit, flash, produce: He suddenly whipped out a gun and started shooting. 7 whip up. a stir up, agitate, arouse, rouse, work up, excite, incite: The rabble-rousers whipped the crowd into a frenzy. b improvise, put together or assemble or prepare quickly or hurriedly, Colloq knock together, knock up, US slap together: Tina whipped up a snack while we were waiting for Ken to arrive.

--n. 8 scourge, knout, lash, cat-o'-nine-tails, rawhide, quirt, horsewhip, bull-whip, cane, birch, switch, thong, (riding-)crop, Colloq cat: We dreaded it when Dr Hazen eyed the whip hung behind the classroom door.

whipping n. 1 beating, thrashing, lashing, flogging, horsewhipping, scourging, switching, caning, birching, flagellation, spanking: Once he had had a whipping, the boy would not misbehave again.

2 Nautical seizing, binding, tying, winding, fastening: The whipping will prevent the end of the line from unravelling.

whirlpool n. maelstrom, vortex, eddy, whirl, swirl, Heraldry gurges: As we watched in horror, the canoe was drawn down into the whirlpool and disappeared.

whirlwind n. 1 waterspout, dust devil, cyclone, typhoon, anticyclone, hurricane, extra-tropical cyclone, tropical cyclone, Nontechnical tornado, Nautical white squall, Australian willy-willy, Colloq US whirly: A whole row of houses was destroyed in the whirlwind.

--adj. 2 speedy, quick, swift, sudden, precipitous, lightning, headlong, hasty, rash, impetuous: It was one of those whirlwind romances that last till the wind dies down.

whisk   v. 1 rush, dart, sweep, brush: Agatha whisked about the room, aimlessly moving small objects about on tables and shelves. 2 speed, rush, carry, whip, hasten, hustle, hurry: The taxi came and whisked Fran off to the airport. 3 See whip, 4, above.

--n. 4 sweep, wave, brush, flick: With a whisk of his hand he dismissed the servants. 5 brush, fly-whisk: The chief flicked his whisk to signal that the audience was ended. 6 beater, whip: It is quicker to whip cream with a whisk.

whisky   n. whiskey, alcohol, spirits, John Barleycorn, usquebaugh, Scotch, home-brew, mother's ruin (= 'gin'), Scots barley-bree, Brit Scotch, US rye, bourbon, white lightning, white mule, moonshine, Colloq booze, hooch, rot-gut, US corn, fire-water, Slang US Sneaky Pete, smoke: Peter is a welcome guest who always remembers to bring a bottle of whisky.

whisper   v. 1 breathe, murmur, mutter, mumble, hiss, speak or say softly or under (one's) breath, sigh, susurrate: He whispered sweet nothings in her ear. 2 gossip, bruit about, noise abroad, murmur, insinuate, hint, rumour, disclose, divulge, reveal, breathe a word: We have all heard Corin whispering of your wife's infidelities.

--n. 3 murmur, undertone, hushed tone(s): Why do you always speak in whispers when talking about Nesta? 4 hint, suggestion, soup‡on, suspicion: There was never the slightest whisper of gossip about Eleanor.

white adj. 1 snow-white, snowy, chalk-white, chalky, ivory, creamy, milky, milk-white, oyster-white, off-white; silver, hoary: Many buildings in the tropics are painted white. Do you believe that a person's hair can turn white overnight? 2 pale, pallid, pasty, wan, whey-faced, ashen, bloodless, drained, whitish, waxen, ghastly, ghostly, anaemic, dead white, deathly white, cadaverous, corpse-like: Her black dress contrasted starkly with her white complexion. 3 innocent, pure, unsullied, stainless, unblemished, spotless, immaculate, virginal, virtuous, undefiled, chaste: She came to you with white hands, which you have sought to dirty with your vicious accusations. 4 Caucasian, Caucasoid, light-skinned, fair-skinned, pale-complexioned: The American Indian was - and still is - treated very unfairly by the White man.

whitewash v. gloss over, cover up, sugar-coat, hide, camouflage, conceal, qualify, minimize, extenuate, diminish, play down, downplay, make light of, rationalize, excuse: We are being accused of whitewashing the dishonest actions of the previous administration.

whittle v. 1 pare (down or away), shave, trim, cut, carve, hew, shape: Remember when Grandpapa used to whittle those tiny figures of elves when we were children? 2 Usually, whittle away at or down. pare, shave, cut, trim, reduce, diminish, erode, eat away at: If he keeps whittling away at his trust fund, he might have to get a job.

whole adj. 1 entire, complete, uncut, full, intact, unbroken, total: I can't believe she ate the whole chicken. Were you here the whole time? 2 in one piece, intact, unharmed, undamaged, unscathed, unimpaired, unhurt, uninjured: How could anyone emerge whole from that smash-up? 3 well, healthy, sound, fit, strong: The surgeons have made him whole again.

--n. 4 everything, aggregate, (sum) total, totality, lot, entirety; ensemble; Colloq whole kit and caboodle: I look at the whole and don't bother about petty details. 5 on the whole. largely, mostly, usually, more often than not, for the most part, in general, generally, by and large, with few exceptions, all things considered, all in all, as a rule, chiefly, mainly, in the main, predominantly: On the whole, our clients collect only originals, not copies or prints.

wholehearted
adj. devoted, dedicated, committed, earnest, sincere, unqualified, unmitigated, unreserved, complete, entire, unstinting, real, true, genuine, hearty, heartfelt, serious, enthusiastic, zealous, warm, fervent, ardent, spirited, eager, energetic: Once I agree to help, you can rely on my wholehearted support.

wholesome adj. 1 healthful, healthy, health-giving, nutritious, nourishing, beneficial, tonic, salutary, salubrious, strengthening, bracing, stimulating: Everyone should regularly engage in wholesome exercise. 2 moral, ethical, righteous, upright, honourable, decent, principled, proper, fit, meet: I am not sure that the child is being brought up in a wholesome atmosphere.

wholly adv. 1 altogether, entirely, absolutely, quite, totally, thoroughly, completely, in toto, fully, in all respects, in every way, all in all, utterly, unqualifiedly, every inch, 100%; lock, stock, and barrel; root and branch; backwards and forwards; from the ground up; Colloq bag and baggage; hook, line, and sinker; to the nth degree; (the) whole hog, US up one side and down the other: We are wholly on your side in this matter. The company has been wholly reorganized. 2 only, exclusively, solely, unexceptionally, categorically, unequivocally, unambiguously, explicitly: The success or failure of the plan depends wholly on you.

whoop n. 1 shout, shriek, yell, roar, bellow, hoot, (battle or war) cry, war-whoop, outcry, scream, screech, squeal, yelp, yowl, howl, bark; cheer, hurrah, huzzah; Colloq holler: At his whoop of joy we knew he had passed the exam.

--v. 2 shout, shriek, yell, roar, bellow, hoot, cry (out), scream, screech, squeal, yelp, yowl, howl, bark; cheer, hurrah, huzzah; Colloq holler: He heard the tribesmen whooping as they descended on the fort.

whopping adj. 1 huge, great, enormous, colossal, gigantic, immense, tremendous, prodigious, monstrous, thumping, mammoth, massive, Brobdingnagian: With that whopping Great Dane of yours in the kitchen there's no room to move about. 2 flagrant, outrageous, extravagant, terrible, awful: Jones tells such whopping lies I don't know when to believe him.

23.4 wicked...
=-

wicked   adj. 1 evil, bad, immoral, amoral, unprincipled, sinful, impious, irreligious, blasphemous, profane, sacrilegious, ungodly, godless, diabolic(al), satanic, Mephistophelian, demonic, demoniac(al), hellish, infernal, accursed, damnable, fiendish, ghoulish: How wicked must one be to murder one's own child? She has done many wicked things, but this was the worst. 2 depraved, dissolute, villainous, black-hearted, iniquitous, horrible, horrid, hideous, heinous, beastly, base, low, vile, debased, degenerate, perverse, perverted, corrupt, foul, offensive, abominable, disgraceful, shameful, dreadful, awful, gross, gruesome, grim, appalling, grisly, loathsome, lawless, unrepentant, unregenerate, incorrigible, criminal, felonious, rascally, knavish, terrible, egregious, execrable: The Deluge was regarded as divine vengeance on a wicked world. He was a wicked man, in league with the devil himself. 3 dirty, pornographic, filthy, erotic, obscene, lewd, offensive, indecent, prurient, smutty, rude, taboo, blue, coarse, bawdy, vulgar, salacious, licentious, nasty, X-rated, Colloq US raunchy: The townspeople took the wicked books and burnt them all. 4 vicious, beastly, savage, nasty, bad, violent, mean, cruel: Graham has a wicked temper. The boys were subjected to the most wicked treatment. 5 naughty, mischievous, impish, sly, devilish, rascally, roguish, scampish, puckish; vexatious, exasperating, annoying, irritating, irksome, trying, galling, bothersome: What trouble have those wicked children got themselves into now? It is wicked of you to make pig noises every time I mention Bertha. 6 foul, offensive, pernicious, baleful, mephitic, disgusting, revolting, sickening, repulsive, repellent, nauseous, repugnant, rotten, pestilential, noxious: That liniment the doctor prescribed has a wicked odour. 7 expert, ingenious, superior, superb, superlative, outstanding, masterful, masterly, skilful, deft, adept: That chap Gough plays a wicked game of tennis.

wide adj. 1 spacious, roomy, ample, extensive, broad: The road is wide enough for two cars to pass. If the book is set in wider type, it will have more pages. 2 broad, extensive, comprehensive, encyclopedic or encyclopaedic, inclusive, far-reaching, wide-ranging, widespread: He has wide interests, from music to archaeology to sport. 3 extreme, considerable, substantial, sizeable, major, big, large; widespread: There have been wide fluctuations in market prices. 4 wide of the mark. off the mark, astray, deviant, deviating, off (the) target, not on target, inappropriate: Forecasts from analysts were based on erroneous assumptions and proved to be very wide of the mark.

--adv. 5 astray, afield, wide of the mark, off the mark, off (the) target, to one side: He took careless aim and the shot went wide. 6 all the way, as much as possible, fully, completely, to the utmost: The dentist said, 'Open wide'. When I heard the drill, I was suddenly wide awake.

widely adv. 1 extensively, thoroughly, universally, everywhere, generally, by many: In the days when it was widely believed that the earth was flat, perhaps it was. 2 to a large or a great extent, greatly, largely, very much, extremely, considerably, substantially: Opinions differ widely regarding the origin of the universe.

widen v. distend, dilate, spread, stretch, enlarge, increase, expand; extend, broaden, supplement, add to, augment: It will be necessary to widen the opening to allow insertion of the device. We are planning to widen the news coverage we provide our readers.

width n. 1 breadth, wideness, compass, broadness, span; diameter, calibre, bore; measure; Nautical beam: What is the standard width of railway track in this country? The width of the cannon-ball is three inches. 2 reach, scope, range, breadth, extent, extensiveness: There is an impressive width of choice at the restaurant.

wield v. 1 flourish, swing, brandish, wave, handle, use, employ: He wields that machete as if he means business. 2 exercise, have, employ, exert, use, utilize: Since Juan is the one who wields the power, he is the one to deal with.

wife n. mate, helpmeet, helpmate, spouse, bride, partner, Colloq better half, little woman, the missis or missus, old lady or woman, ball and chain, Slang trouble and strife: Doesn't your wife mind your going out every night?

wild adj. 1 undomesticated, untamed, unbroken, savage, feral: The only four-legged animals inhabiting the island were wild pigs. 2 uncultivated, uninhabited, waste, desert, desolate, virgin, unpopulated, empty, trackless, barren, lifeless; deserted: The cottage overlooks an expanse of wild moorland. 3 savage, uncivilized, barbarous, primitive, rude, uncultured, uncultivated, brutish, barbaric, fierce, ferocious: Some early explorers studied the wild people they encountered in far-off lands. 4 uncontrolled, unrestricted, unrestrained, untrammelled, unbridled, unfettered, unshackled, free, unchecked, lively, impetuous, unconventional, undisciplined, disobedient, insubordinate, self-willed, wayward, mutinous, rowdy(ish), boisterous, unruly, tumultuous, turbulent, tempestuous, uproarious; uncontrollable, unmanageable, ungovernable, intractable, unrestrainable: Peter led quite a wild youth. We cannot cope with their wild behaviour after they have had too much to drink. 5 mad, maniac(al), crazed, crazy, irrational, distracted, frenzied, frantic, distraught, hysterical, raving, raging, unhinged, demented, delirious; berserk; run amok or amuck: William had a wild look about him. Nellie has been driven wild by the pressures of business. 6 exciting, excited, vehement, passionate, romantic, turbulent, chaotic, tempestuous, reckless, madcap: At the time, Ernest was having a wild love affair with Charles's widow. 7 absurd, irrational, unreasonable, extravagant, fantastic, imprudent, foolish, foolhardy, impractical, impracticable, unpractical, unworkable, ridiculous, reckless, silly, giddy, flighty, madcap, outrageous, preposterous, bizarre, strange, odd, peculiar, Colloq offbeat: He lost thousands on some wild scheme for reducing shipping costs by filling bubble packing with helium. 8 tousled, wind-blown, unkempt, dishevelled, untidy, disordered, disorderly, messed-up, Colloq mussed-up: Her hair was in wild disarray. 9 enthusiastic, avid, eager, agog, Colloq crazy, mad, daft, dotty, Brit potty, Slang nutty, nuts: I'm just wild about Harry, And Harry's wild about me.

--n. 10 Usually, wilds. wasteland, wilderness, desert, vastness, emptiness, Colloq sticks, middle of nowhere, back of beyond: His idea of adventure was to trek through the wilds of Hyde Park.

wile n. Often, wiles. trick, stratagem, ruse, artifice, subterfuge, dodge, trap, snare, manoeuvre, ploy, contrivance, move, gambit, plot, scheme, machination, Colloq (little) game: You won't get far trying to work your wiles on me, young lady.

wilful adj. 1 intentional, deliberate, voluntary, conscious, intended, purposeful, premeditated, US willful: The jury decided that such a wilful act of vandalism must be punished. She is accused of wilful neglect of her children. 2 stubborn, headstrong, pigheaded, obstinate, mulish, inflexible, adamant, obdurate, intransigent, unyielding, self-willed, ungovernable, recalcitrant, unruly, immovable, intractable, dogged, determined, refractory, uncompromising, wayward, perverse, contrary: Jim is far too wilful, and tends to have a tantrum if he fails to get his own way.

will n. 1 desire, wish, longing, liking, inclination, disposition, drive, purposefulness, purpose, intent, intention, resolve, commitment, resolution, determination; will-power: Where there's a will there's a way. Some believe that taking medication is against God's will. Marguerite seems to have lost the will to live. 2 choice, wishes, desire, inclination: He was forced to submit against his will. 3 (last will and) testament, last wishes: In accordance with his will, Josiah was buried at sea. 4 at will. as or when (one) pleases or wishes or thinks fit(ting), at (one's) desire or whim or pleasure or discretion: If he brings his own car, then he can leave at will.

--v. 5 want, desire, wish, choose, see fit, make, compel, force, command, order, ordain, require: When she willed him to appear, there was a flash of lightning and he was there. 6 leave, bequeath, devise, hand down or on, pass on, transfer; settle upon or on: My great-uncle Philip willed me his collection of 19th-century theatre memorabilia.

willing adj. agreeable, acquiescent, compliant, amenable, consenting, assenting, passive, complaisant, docile, ready, well-disposed, happy, content, pleased, delighted, enthusiastic, avid, eager, zealous, Colloq game: Albert might not have thought up the pranks, but he was a willing accomplice.

willingly adv. readily, happily, contentedly, gladly, cheerfully, amenably, agreeably, freely, passively, docilely, of (one's) own accord or free will, on (one's) own, ungrudgingly, by choice, voluntarily, unhesitatingly, nothing loath, eagerly, enthusiastically, zealously, avidly, Colloq at the drop of a hat: We did not coerce him in any way - he went along quite willingly. You can rely on Hubert to give willingly and generously to support any good cause.

willowy adj. 1 lissom or lissome, pliant, lithe, flexible, supple, limber, loose-limbed: Everyone enjoys watching the willowy athletes training for the Olympics. 2 slim, slender, graceful, sylphlike, svelte, thin, long-limbed, clean-limbed: How does Jeanne keep her willowy figure without dieting?

willy-nilly

adv. 1 whether one likes it or not, inevitably, necessarily, of necessity, perforce, whether or no, like it or not, nolens volens, bon gr,, mal gr,: Having borrowed the money, you must, willy-nilly, repay it.

--adj. 2 necessary, unavoidable, inevitable, involuntary: He joked about a willy-nilly choice, meaning one offering no alternatives.

wilt v. 1 sag, droop, wither, shrink, shrivel (up or away), diminish: My house-plants wilted because they weren't watered. 2 sag, droop, bow, weaken, sink, wane, wither, lose courage or nerve, flag, dwindle, languish: The lad wilted under the stern glare of the headmaster.

wily adj. shrewd, cunning, crafty, sly, artful, guileful, clever, foxy, vulpine, disingenuous, shifty, scheming, plotting, calculating, designing, sharp, canny, deceitful, deceiving, deceptive, treacherous, perfidious, false, double-dealing, dishonest, underhand(ed), tricky, smooth, slick, slippery, oily, unctuous, Scots and No. Eng. pawky, Colloq cagey, crooked, two-timing, Slang chiefly Brit fly: Rats are wily and cunning, and have to be taken seriously.

win v. 1 come (in or out) first, carry the day, conquer, overcome; carry off (the palm), finish first (in), achieve first place (in), triumph (in), be victorious (in), be the victor (in), gain a victory (in), prevail (in), succeed (in), take first prize (in), Colloq bring home the bacon: Which team is more likely to win today? We seem to have won the battle but not the war. 2 gain, carry off or away, attain, acquire, get, obtain, secure, procure, receive, collect, net, bag, earn, realize, pick up, glean: Look at all those trophies Gillian has won playing golf! 3 win over. influence, sway, incline, persuade, charm, prevail upon, convert, induce, bring round or around, convince: Don't think that Gilbert can be won over without a strong argument.

--n. 4 victory, conquest, triumph, success: So far this season we have recorded six wins and one loss for the Surrey Scouts.

wind° n. 1 breeze, zephyr, puff, gust, breath, draught, light air, current (of air): A gentle wind wafted our little boat across the bay. 2 puffery, bombast, rodomontade, bluster, boasting, braggadocio, vain speech, blather, (idle or empty) talk, fustian, nonsense, twaddle, humbug, babble, gibberish, Colloq gab, hot air, claptrap, hogwash, rot, hooey, boloney, Slang Brit (load of (old)) cobblers: I went there for advice and all I got was a lot of wind. 3 gas, flatulence, windiness, flatus, borborygmus (= 'stomach rumbling (as from gas)'), heartburn, Taboo slang fart (= 'anal release of gas'): I have to take a pill to relieve this wind. 4 before the wind. Nautical downwind, off the wind: We were racing before the wind with every scrap of sail flying. 5 break wind. Taboo slang fart: It is considered rude to break wind. 6 get or have wind of. hear of, learn of, come to know, pick up, be made or become aware of, gather, understand, hear on the grapevine, Colloq hear tell of: We got wind of the company's plans to close this plant. 7 get or have the wind up. take fright, become frightened or afraid or apprehensive: When I heard a window being raised I got the wind up. 8 in the wind. around, about, rumoured, in the air, detectable, discernible, discoverable, imminent, impending, approaching, close (at hand), about to happen or take place or occur, afoot, in the offing, near, on the way, Colloq Brit on the cards, US in the cards: We knew that a change was in the wind, but never expected the chairman to resign. 9 off the wind. See 5, above. 10 on the or a wind. Nautical upwind, windward, to the wind, into (the teeth or the eye of) the wind; near the wind Because 'Syrena' was a sloop, she could sail closer on the wind than the schooner. 11 put the wind up. scare, frighten, alarm: The leakage at the nuclear plant really put the wind up everyone living in the area. 12 sail close or near to the wind. take risks, throw caution to the winds, play with fire, skate on thin ice, take (one's) life in (one's) hands, Colloq stick (one's) neck out, Slang go for broke: One nude scene is highly salacious, and we think the director is sailing very close to the wind by including it. 13 take the wind out of (someone's) sails. deflate (someone), disconcert (someone), destroy (someone's) advantage, ruin (someone's) superiority or supremacy or ascendancy: It rather took the wind out of her sails when he announced that he was leaving anyway.

windý v. 1 turn, bend, twist, snake, worm, twine, zigzag, slew, swerve, loop, coil, curve, meander, ramble, veer: The river winds along the valley floor. 2 reel, roll, spiral, turn, twist, curl, coil, wrap, twine, wreathe; crank (up), wind up: The streamers are wound around the columns for decoration. 3 wind down. a taper off, slow down, diminish, reduce, close out, slacken or slack off (on), ease (up on), decrease, cut back or down (on); wind up: They were going to wind down their sportswear department, but then business suddenly perked up. b relax, become calm or tranquil, calm down, cool off or down, regain (one's) equilibrium, ease up or off, Colloq unwind, let (one's) hair down, take it easy: It takes me a couple of days to wind down from the hectic activity in the office. 4 wind up. a terminate, conclude, come or bring to an end or a close or a conclusion, end (up), close down or up, finish (up), wrap up; liquidate, settle: After calmly winding up his affairs, Evan sailed off in his boat and was never seen again. b end up, finish (up), become ultimately: I understand that Sally wound up as a bar girl in Tampico. c excite, innervate, energize, stimulate, invigorate, stir up: After getting us all wound up about that weekend party in Paris, she called the whole thing off. d agitate, fluster, disconcert, ruffle: Don't let such trifles get you so wound up. e See 3 (a), above.

windfall n. bonanza, godsend, stroke of (good) fortune, serendipitous find, boon, piece of (good) luck, jackpot, (lucky) strike: The sale of the house provided a windfall that saved them from imminent bankruptcy.

windy adj. 1 blustery, blowing, blowy, breezy, gusting, gusty, wild, squally, tempestuous; windswept: It is quite windy today. I waited at that windy corner for you and you never showed up! 2 talkative, long-winded, garrulous, wordy, verbose, prolix, loquacious, rambling, voluble, fluent, effusive, glib, turgid, bombastic, pompous, longiloquent: Potter does tend to be windy at times.

winner n. victor, champion, prizewinner, title-holder, conqueror, conquering hero, Colloq champ: The winner will receive a new car.

winning adj. 1 engaging, attractive, alluring, captivating, endearing, prepossessing, winsome, bewitching, fetching, taking, enchanting, pleasing, delightful, charming, amiable, friendly, pleasant, sweet: Maggie's winning ways are a tremendous asset to making friends. 2 triumphant, conquering, victorious, successful: The winning team is invited to dine at the Red Lion.

wintry adj. 1 hiemal, brumal, hibernal; icy, snowy, freezing, frozen, frosty, cold, frigid, bitter (cold), chilly, chilling, piercing, cutting, glacial, Siberian, arctic, hyperborean: It was cold and the sky was clear and wintry with premonitions of frost. 2 cold, frigid, chilly, cool, chilling, glacial: She got a very wintry reception from Dan's parents, who disliked the idea of their living together. 3 forbidding, bleak, dismal, cheerless, dreary, harsh, unfriendly, ugly, menacing, ominous, threatening, dark: His comment about her age evoked only a wintry look from Margot.

wipe v. 1 Sometimes, wipe off or out or up. rub, clean (off or out or up), cleanse; dry (off or out or up), dust (off), mop (up), swab, sponge (off or up): For God's sake, wipe your nose! Please wipe the crumbs off the table when you've finished eating. Stop crying and wipe up the spilt milk. 2 Often, wipe off. remove, erase, take off or away, get rid of: Wipe that grin off your face, stranger. 3 wipe out. kill (off), annihilate, massacre, destroy, finish (off), dispose of, eradicate, obliterate, exterminate, do away with, stamp out, get rid of, remove, wipe off the face of the earth: Scientists have succeeded in wiping out smallpox.

wiry adj. muscular, sinewy, lean, lank, thin and strong, tough and flexible: He was a stocky and wiry little man, rather like a short-legged terrier.

wisdom n. 1 sagacity, sageness, judgement, discernment, reason, prudence, judiciousness, (common) sense, insight, penetration, sapience, understanding, rationality, clear-sightedness, clear-headedness, perspicacity, perspicuity, percipience, perception, perceptiveness, intelligence, acuteness, acumen, astuteness, sharpness, shrewdness, long-headedness: At least she had the wisdom not to shoot the intruder. Allen's wisdom stems from long experience in such matters. 2 knowledge, learning, erudition, lore, scholarship, enlightenment: The wisdom of the ages is locked away in these books.

wise adj. 1 sage, sagacious, judicious, reasonable, commonsensical, prudent, sensible, insightful, sapient, understanding, rational, sound, clear-sighted, clear-headed, discerning, perspicacious, perspicuous, percipient, perceptive, intelligent, acute, astute, sharp, shrewd, crafty, clever, bright, quick-witted, smart, brilliant, long-headed, Colloq brainy: Among the wisest of men were Solomon, Confucius, Buddha, and, perhaps, Aristotle. 2 knowledgeable, learned, enlightened, informed, erudite; (well-)educated, knowing, well-read, well-versed, lettered, scholarly: We saw to it that they escaped, and the police were none the wiser. Wise heads prevailed at the college on what constituted worthwhile research. 3 well-advised, advisable, judicious, sensible, expedient, reasonable, strategic, tactful, tactical, prudent, politic, discreet, diplomatic, well-thought-out, well-considered, proper, fitting, appropriate, meet: Do you think it wise to punish the child so severely? 4 put wise (to). inform or advise or warn (of or about): If you must know how he found out, it was Myrna who put him wise. Did she also put him wise to where the money is hidden? 5 wise to. aware or knowledgeable or informed of or about, sensitive to, on to or onto, Colloq in the know about: You are wrong if you think she isn't wise to your little tricks. Get wise to what's going on, Man.

--v. 6 wise up (to). become informed or aware (of or about), wake up (to), Colloq get wise (to) or in the know (about): If Cooley doesn't wise up, he'll be in deep trouble. Was it you who wised Meg up to the fact that Tom no longer cares?

wisecrack n. 1 joke, quip, rejoinder, witticism, pun, barb, jest, gibe or jibe, Colloq gag; dig: Everything is a potential subject for a wisecrack.

--v. 2 joke, quip, pun, gibe or jibe: Get serious and stop wisecracking for a change.

wise guy n. wiseacre, smart alec or aleck, Archaic witling, Colloq know-all or know-it-all, Brit Clever Dick or cleverdick, Slang smarty-pants, smarty, Brit smart-arse, US smart-ass, wisenheimer: There's always some wise guy waiting to make a clever remark.

wish v. 1 desire, want; yearn, crave, long, hope, hanker, have a mind, (have a) fancy, choose, care: I wish you'd go now. If you had Aladdin's lamp, what would you wish for? 2 require, request, demand, order, specify: Did you wish lemon or milk in your tea? 3 foist or force or thrust or impose upon, Colloq fob off on or upon, palm off on: The job of treasurer was wished on me when Jock left.

--n. 4 desire, request, whim, want, craving, longing, hankering: Your every wish is my command. 5 desire, longing, craving, need, yearning, hankering, passion, keenness, thirst, appetite, hunger, whim, urge, liking, fondness, fancy, preference, predisposition, disposition, inclination, Colloq yen, Slang itch: She expressed a wish for nightingale tongues, truffles, and champagne.

wishy-washy
adj. 1 neither here nor there, undecided, indecisive, irresolute, half-hearted, shilly-shallying, tergiversating, vacillating, uncertain, of or having mixed feelings, of two minds: Make up your mind and stop being so wishy-washy about everything! 2 feeble, weak, watery, watered down, thin, vapid, flat, bland, runny, diluted, tasteless, insipid, flavourless, stale: Isabel served me some wishy-washy tea and sent me on my way.

wisp n. shred, scrap, strand, thread, snippet, tuft, lock: The laboratory matched the wisp of hair found in the victim's hand with the hair of the suspect.

wistful adj. 1 melancholy, mournful, sad, morose, sorrowful, disconsolate, heartsick, forlorn, woeful, woebegone, desirous, longing, yearning: She gave a last, wistful look at the aeroplane as it rose into the clouds. 2 thoughtful, contemplative, pensive, absent-minded, detached, absorbed, in a brown study, preoccupied, meditating, meditative, reflective, ruminating, ruminative, dreamy, dreaming, day-dreaming, musing: Some might have misinterpreted his wistful gaze at her photograph.

wit n. 1 intelligence, brains, mind, (common) sense, judgement, understanding, discernment, wisdom, sagacity, insight, astuteness, cleverness, Slang savvy: He hasn't the wit to know when he's being insulted. 2 humour, drollery, levity, joking, repartee, raillery, facetiousness, waggishness, badinage, repartee, jocularity, wordplay, paronomasia; amusement, entertainment: Some say that sarcasm is the lowest form of wit. 3 comedian, comedienne, humorist, comic, wag, joker, farceur, farceuse, punster, madcap, zany; parodist, satirist, caricaturist; Colloq pundit, card, character: In the face of such a devastating remark, even the club wit was struck dumb.

witch n. 1 sorceress, enchantress, magician, sibyl, pythoness; warlock: The witches prophesied that Macbeth would be king. 2 hag, fury, battleaxe, crone, gorgon, Medusa, ogress, Xanthippe, shrew, virago, harridan, fishwife, termagant, Archaic beldam or beldame, Offensive old bag, bitch: How could you stand living with the old witch for so many years?

withdraw v. 1 draw back, retract, pull back, recoil, shrink back: He would suddenly withdraw into his cocoon whenever she said the name, 'Elsie'. 2 retract, recall, take back, cancel, rescind, recant, disavow, disclaim, abjure, void, annul, go back on, back down (on): If she doesn't withdraw that remark, I shall sue her for slander. 3 pull out, extract, remove, Technical retrude: Afterwards, she withdrew the knife, washed it, and replaced it in the rack. The dentist withdrew the bad tooth. 4 retire, retreat, go, repair: After dinner, we withdrew to the drawing-room for brandy and cigars. 5 leave, depart, go, make (oneself) scarce, absent (oneself), retire: We waited till the servants withdrew before exchanging news about Cora.

withdrawn adj. 1 reserved, detached, distant, standoffish, aloof, shy, diffident, bashful, timid, timorous, introverted, taciturn, reticent, silent, quiet, retiring, shrinking: Why is Henry acting so withdrawn tonight? 2 remote, distant, isolated, solitary, hidden, secluded, private, out-of-the-way, reclusive: Sarah and Ben have led a withdrawn existence since the children married and moved away.

withering adj. destructive, devastating, death-dealing, murderous, deadly: The enemy laid down a withering barrage of machine-gun fire.

withhold v. 1 hold or keep back, retain, reserve, restrain, control, repress, check, hide, conceal: He could withhold his anger no longer. 2 hold or keep back, deduct, retain, reserve: The company is required to withhold a percentage of wages and salaries for taxes.

withstand v. resist, oppose, stand (up to), face, defy, confront, combat, grapple with, fight (against), cope with, hold out against, weather, suffer, survive, tolerate, take, bear, last through, endure, brave, Colloq Brit stick: Can Brian withstand the pressure of his new job? Our small force withstood the attack for days.

witness n. 1 observer, onlooker, spectator, viewer, eyewitness, bystander, watcher, Rare earwitness: Were you a witness to what took place here? 2 deponent, testifier, corroborating witness, corroborator: The defence will call its witnesses today. 3 bear witness (to or of). testify (to), attest (to), be or give or provide or furnish or constitute evidence or proof or testimony (of or to), verify, confirm, corroborate, show, prove: The bent poker bears witness to the violence of the attack.

--v. 4 see, observe, watch, look on or at, view, behold, mark, note, notice, take in, Colloq spot, catch: I did witness the way they looked at each other. 5 countersign, sign, certify, endorse, substantiate, document, certificate: Would you mind witnessing our signatures, Miss Cabot? 6 See 3, above.

witticism n. pun, quip, play on words, bon mot, jest, joke, epigram, clever remark, sally, Archaic or literary conceit, Colloq gag, one-liner: Clive is just as likely to utter a witticism as say something excruciatingly banal.

witty adj. ingenious, subtle, clever, humorous, sarcastic, sardonic, piquant, humorous, comic(al), farcical, ludicrous, facetious, amusing, jocular, waggish, droll, funny: Corbett, not ready with his usual witty riposte, shouted an obscenity at the bus driver.

wizened adj. wrinkled, shrunken, shrivelled (up), withered, gnarled, dried up, wilted, faded, wasted: The wizened old crone is his grandmother.

23.5 woe...
=-

woe n. trouble, hardship, adversity, misery, anguish, tribulation, calamity, trial, wretchedness, grief, unhappiness, desolation, dolour, melancholy, gloom, depression, sadness, disconsolateness, misfortune, affliction, sorrow, distress: How much more woe could beset one small family?

woebegone adj. troubled, miserable, anguished, wretched, grief-stricken, unhappy, desolate, doleful, dolorous, melancholy, melancholic, gloomy, mournful, sorrowful, depressed, dejected, sad, glum, crestfallen, chap-fallen, lugubrious, downcast, disconsolate, unfortunate, star-crossed, afflicted, distressed, woeful, forlorn, downhearted, broken-hearted, heartbroken, disheartened, Slang US bummed out: Timmy has been so woebegone since his puppy was stolen!

woman n. 1 female, lady; girl: Elvira was the first woman to be elected to the board. 2 wife, spouse, bride, lady-love, sweetheart, lady, girl, girlfriend, mistress, concubine, mate, helpmeet, helpmate, partner, Colloq sweetie, better half, little woman, the missis or missus, old lady or woman, ball and chain, Slang trouble and strife: In this scene, Porgy tells Bess that she is his woman, now and forever. 3 lass, maid, maiden, miss, lassie, Slang gal, dame, bird, skirt, chick, bit of fluff, broad, piece (of work), number, baggage, moll, popsy: The soldiers went into town to try to find some women for an evening's entertainment. 4 domestic, housekeeper, maid, cleaning woman or lady, maidservant, chambermaid, handmaiden, abigail, lady-in-waiting, Brit charwoman, Colloq Brit char, daily: They have a woman who comes in every other day.

wonder n. 1 marvel, prodigy, phenomenon, spectacle, rarity, sight, curiosity, miracle, Slang knockout, stunner, mind-blower, mind-boggler, trip: Surely, the wheel must rank high among the wonders of technology. And still he gazed, and still the wonder grew, / That one small head could carry all he knew. 2 awe, astonishment, admiration, amazement, wonderment, surprise, stupefaction, fascination: Facsimile transmission, which used to excite so much wonder, is now used in offices all over the world.

--v. 3 ponder, muse, meditate, think, theorize, conjecture, puzzle, query, question, inquire, be inquisitive, be curious, ask oneself, speculate, cudgel (one's) brains: I wondered if I would be invited to the dance. Have you ever wondered what makes the world go round? 4 marvel (at), goggle, gawk, gape, stare, be awed, be thunderstruck, be amazed, be astonished: We wondered at the death-defying skills of the trapeze artistes. 5 wonder about. question or doubt the sanity or reason or reasonableness of: I wondered about Tammy after that streaking episode.

wooded adj. sylvan, forested, bosky, tree-covered, woody, timbered: We rested and had our lunch in the coolness of a wooded glen.

wooden adj. 1 wood, woody, ligneous, xyloid: The wooden cabinet for the kitchen is almost finished. 2 stiff, rigid, artificial, clumsy, stilted, unnatural, awkward, ungainly, spiritless, unanimated, dead, lifeless, dry, passionless, unimpassioned, impassive, vacant, empty, colourless, expressionless, deadpan: The understudy gave a wooden performance as Uncle Vanya. 3 unintelligent, block-headed, stupid, dull, insensitive, slow-witted, dull-witted, obtuse, oafish, doltish, tiny-minded, dim-witted, dunderpated, Colloq thick, wooden-headed, knuckle-headed: Clancy has some pretty wooden ideas about how to run a business.

woolly adj. 1 fleecy, woollen, wool-bearing, laniferous, lanate or lanose, lanuginose or lanuginous, downy, fuzzy, shaggy, flocculent or floccose, flocky: He was wearing a woolly hat. After two days one test tube contained a woolly precipitate. 2

hazy, fuzzy, unclear, obscure(d), foggy, indistinct, confused, vague, cloudy, clouded, nebulous, ill-defined: My recollection of the event is a bit woolly after all these years.

word n. 1 (little) talk, (brief) conversation, chat, discussion, consultation, dialogue, huddle, parley, tˆte-…-tˆte, chit-chat, confabulation, conference, interview, Colloq powwow, confab: Could I have a word with you before you leave for the day? 2 news, intelligence, information, facts, data, report, story, tidings, account, communiqu,, bulletin, dispatch or despatch, advice, message, Colloq low-down, Slang info, dope, Brit gen, US poop: Have you had any word about the situation in the Middle East? 3 name, term, designation, locution, appellation, expression, phrase: What is the word for 'write' in Greek? 4 promise, pledge, vow, oath, (solemn) word of honour, undertaking, assurance, warrant, guarantee or guaranty, warranty: You have my word that I won't mention this to anyone. 5 utterance, expression, declaration, statement: Let me give you a word of warning, my friend. 6 suggestion, hint, scintilla, bit: I promise that I won't breathe a word of this to anyone. 7 command, order, signal, direction, instruction, Colloq US high sign: I shall not press the red button till you give the word. 8 in a word. succinctly, briefly, in brief, in a few words, concisely, in short, in summary, in sum, not to mince words, to make a long story short, when all is said and done, in the final analysis, not to beat about the bush, Colloq in a nutshell: His bedside manner was, in a word, menacing. 9 words. a quarrel, dispute, argument, unpleasantness: Paul and Kitty had words and are not on speaking terms. b lyrics, book, libretto, text: Did Irving Berlin write the words as well as the music to his songs?

--v. 10 put (forth), say, couch, express, phrase, utter, state, term, style, set forth: Had you worded your complaint in politer language, you might have spared yourself a punch in the eye.

wording n. phraseology, language, phrasing, choice of words, word choice: From the confused wording of this note I cannot tell whether you are coming to my party or not.

wordy adj. verbose, prolix, rambling, long-winded; pleonastic, redundant, garrulous, windy, talkative, loquacious: This contract is too wordy and could be cut to two pages. Try to make your replies less wordy.

work n. 1 labour, toil, effort, drudgery, travail, exertion, industry: Few people make it to the top and stay there without hard work. 2 employment, business, occupation, vocation, calling, profession, trade, line, m,tier, career, livelihood, job, post, position, situation: Does your work as a test pilot interfere much with your home life? 3 task, function, duty, assignment, charge, responsibility, chore, commission, undertaking, stint: When you are finished with that work, clean out the cellar. 4 feat, achievement, creation, accomplishment, opus, handiwork, oeuvre, production, composition, piece, master-work, masterpiece, chef-d'oeuvre, magnum opus, output: Some of Edwin's recent works have won prizes. 5 in work. in production, under way, being done, in the works, being planned, in the planning stage(s): The budget has been approved and the project is already in work. 6 out of work. unemployed, idle, jobless, at liberty, between engagements, available, free, Brit redundant, Colloq Brit on the dole, US on or collecting unemployment: How long have you been out of work?

--v. 7 labour, toil, exert oneself, sweat, moil, slave (away), peg away, slog (away): His father worked in the mines from the age of nine till he died of black-lung disease at forty. 8 till, plough, farm, cultivate: Would he have been healthier and longer-lived had he worked the land? 9 have a job, hold (down) a post or position, earn a living, be employed: His wife works as a designer in a Parisian fashion house. 10 control, manage, manipulate, manoeuvre, wield, handle, operate, use, make use of, utilize, exploit, deal with, bring into play: Are you sure you know how to work all those dials and buttons? 11 function, operate, run, go, develop, turn out, Colloq pan out: Are you sure that the plan is working to your advantage? 12 function, operate, run, go: The drill works better if you turn on the power. 13 knead, mould, form, fashion, shape; mix, stir, incorporate: Work the clay into long, narrow strips. Try to work the colour in with your fingers.. 14 manoeuvre, manipulate, guide: See if you can work him over into a corner where you can grab him. 15 operate, use, employ, put to (good or effective) use, wield, manipulate, ply, apply, exploit: Tanya must have worked her magic on Eustace to make him that docile. 16 bring about, effect, accomplish, carry out or off, make, produce, achieve, engender, beget, create, do, put through, execute, fulfil, effectuate, implement, realize: I doubt that the new sports centre will work many changes in the area. 17 work in. find time or space for, include, insert, introduce, fit in, squeeze in, accommodate: I'll try and work in your comments when I write up my report. 18 work on. wheedle, coax, importune, press, Brit pressurize, US pressure; influence, persuade, act on, prevail upon, induce, dispose, urge: Keep working on him to try to change his mind. 19 work out. a exercise, do callisthenics, do aerobics, warm up, do setting-up exercises, do (one's) daily dozen, jog, lift weights, train, drill: I try to work out for an hour every day. b Often, work out at or to. equal, total (up to), result in, amount to, come to: Let's see - that works out at one car for every 4.7 people. c clear up, resolve, solve, Slang Brit and New Zealand suss out: Thaddeus is old enough to work out his own problems. Can they work out their differences? d evolve, develop, succeed, prosper, come out all right, prove satisfactory, go well, be effective, Colloq pan out: How can you be so sure that everything will work out? e formulate, work up, contrive, draw up, detail, plan, develop, devise, put together, elaborate, expand, enlarge (on): The captain worked out a way for them to escape. 20 work up. a excite, make excited, agitate, inflame, enkindle, arouse, rouse, stir, move, animate, incite, spur, Colloq fire (up), get (someone) (all) steamed or hopped or het up: Those fire-and-brimstone preachers used to get the people all worked up. b prepare, (make or get) ready, whip into shape, develop, come up with, write up, put together, produce, turn out: Can you work up that proposal in time for Monday's meeting? c advance, ascend, rise, move up or ahead or on: In no time at all, Greg worked his way up from assembler to foreman. d See 19 (e), above.

worker n. labourer, working man or woman, workman, hand, employee, artisan, craftsman, tradesman, white-collar worker, blue-collar worker, proletarian, breadwinner, wage-earner: It seems unlikely that the workers would strike for longer hours and less pay.

workmanship

n. handicraft, craft, craftsmanship, artistry, art, technique, handiwork, skill, skilfulness, mastery, US artisanship: One cannot help but admire the workmanship in those marquetry tabletops.

works n.pl. 1 plant, factory, workshop, shop, mill: We were taken on a tour of the works to see how the marble is carved. 2 mechanism, machinery, workings, (moving or working) parts; clockwork, Colloq innards, insides, Slang guts: We once had a clock with all the works exposed. 3 the works. a everything, the lot, Colloq the whole kit and caboodle, the whole shooting match, everything but the kitchen sink, Chiefly US and Canadian the whole shebang: We ordered two hamburgers with the works. b a thrashing, a beating, a drubbing, a battering, a flogging, a lambasting: When he refused to tell them where the money was hidden, they gave him the works.

world n. 1 earth, planet, sphere, globe, Terra; universe, cosmos, existence, creation, life: Do you believe the world is round? Buckland lives in his own, private world. 2 humanity, mankind, people, the human race, society, the public, men, humankind, everybody, everyone, the world at large: We know what he thinks of the world, but what does the world think of him? 3 area, sphere, domain, community, clique, crowd, circle, fraternity, faction, set, coterie: What value does the art world place on Longchamps' paintings? 4 period, time, age, era, epoch, time(s): They have produced an excellent series of programmes on the ancient world. 5 bring into the world. a deliver, have, give birth to, beget, Rare or dialect birth: Grandmother brought sixteen children into the world. b deliver, midwife: The town family doctor brought hundreds of children into the world in his long career. 6 for all the world. precisely, exactly, in all respects, in every respect, in every way, just: He behaved for all the world like a man possessed by the devil. 7 on top of the world. ecstatic, delighted, elated, happy, exultant, overjoyed, rapturous, Brit in the seventh heaven, US in seventh heaven, Colloq on cloud nine, Brit over the moon: George has been on top of the world ever since Prudence agreed to marry him. 8 out of this world. marvellous, wonderful, exceptional, unbelievable, incredible, excellent, superb, Colloq great, smashing, fantastic, fabulous, Slang out of sight, far-out, Brit magic, US to the max: The place we stayed at Ibiza was out of this world!

worldly adv. 1 mundane, earthly, terrestrial, temporal, physical, carnal, fleshly, corporeal, human; lay, non-spiritual, non-religious, civic, secular, profane: Theo indulged in worldly pleasures in the fleshpots of the continent. Veronica put aside worldly things and took the veil. 2 urbane, suave, sophisticated, cosmopolitan, worldly-wise, Slang with it, hip, cool: Behind that worldly manner is the heart of a peasant.

worn adj. 1 shabby, threadbare, tatty, tattered, ragged, frayed: Burt wears an old, worn tweed jacket when he's around the house. 2 haggard, drawn: He looked anxiously at his mother's thin, worn face. 3 worn out. tired, fatigued, exhausted, frazzled, spent, jaded, played out, haggard, drawn, the worse for wear, Colloq dog-tired, all in, done in, Slang dead (on one's feet), beat, US pooped: I was completely worn out from climbing those stairs.

worried adj. fearful, apprehensive, anxious, distressed, nervous, uneasy, anguished, disquieted, agonized, agonizing, distraught, on edge, on tenterhooks, ill at ease, troubled, fretful, agitated, perturbed, upset, suffering: The two worried mothers waited at the police station for news of their children.

worry v. 1 be anxious, be fearful, be concerned, fret, agonize, be distressed, be vexed, Colloq stew, bite or chew (one's) nails, go or get grey, get grey hair, Slang sweat blood, US sweat bullets: I worry about you when you stay out so late. 2 annoy, irk, pester, nettle, harry, harass, tease, bother, tantalize, torment, plague, hector, badger, nettle, gall, peeve, Colloq hassle: The police have been worrying me the way a dog worries a bone.

--n. 3 concern, care, responsibility; problem, bother, trouble, affliction, irritation, annoyance, vexation: I cannot see why that is your worry. I am sorry to hear about your financial worries. 4 anguish, anxiety, uneasiness, unease, nervousness, distress, apprehension, disquiet, perturbation, agitation, upset, misgiving: Your association with that crowd has caused your mother and me a great deal of worry.

worsen v. 1 increase, exacerbate, heighten, intensify, aggravate: The recent rains have worsened the drainage problem. 2 weaken, deteriorate, decline, degenerate, decay, slip, sink, slide, fail, disintegrate, take a turn for the worse, get worse, go from bad to worse, Colloq go downhill: Her condition continues to worsen.

worship v. 1 venerate, revere, reverence, extol, honour, exalt, praise, admire, adore, adulate, glorify, deify, idolize, be devoted to, pay homage to, bow down before, kneel before, put on a pedestal: When he arrived, he found the people worshipping huge stone idols.

--n. 2 veneration, reverence, adoration, devotion, homage, honour, respect, esteem, exaltation, praise, admiration, adulation, glorification, deification, idolatry: A healthy respect for security should not be confused with the worship of money.

worth n. quality, merit, value, advantage, benefit, good, importance, significance, usefulness: You have underestimated Roberta's worth to the community.

worthless adj. 1 valueless, unimportant, insignificant, inessential or unessential, dispensable, disposable, paltry: His contribution to the work of the committee proved utterly worthless. 2 pointless, bootless, silly, inane, vain, unavailing, useless, futile, fruitless, unproductive, unprofitable: It is worthless to try to salvage that wreck. 3 cheap, valueless, tawdry, poor, trashy, rubbishy, shabby, wretched, Colloq tinny, crappy, cheesy, Slang chintzy: The deceased's handbag contained only a few items of worthless jewellery.

worthwhile
adj. 1 profitable, justifiable, productive, gainful, rewarding, fruitful, cost-effective, remunerative: Would it be worthwhile to buy up that land as a long-term investment? 2 useful, valuable, good, helpful, beneficial, worthy, beneficent, desirable, exemplary, matchless, honourable, upright, sterling, irreproachable: Brian Smith is one of the most worthwhile people I met at university.

worthy adj. 1 worthwhile, deserving, meriting, meritorious, praiseworthy, good, estimable, qualified, creditable: He is a worthy recipient of the honour. 2 See worthwhile, 2, above.

--n. 3 dignitary, personage, notable, eminence, luminary: The dinner was attended by all the local worthies.

wound n. 1 damage, hurt, injury, trauma, traumatism; laceration, puncture, cut, gash, slash, lesion, bruise, contusion: We dressed and bandaged the wounds of the victims. 2 slight, damage, injury, harm, blow, distress, mortification, torment, torture, anguish, pain, insult: Hugh takes the slightest criticism as a deep wound to his self-esteem.

--v. 3 damage, harm, injure, hurt, traumatize; cut, slash, gash, lacerate, slit, stab, shoot, Colloq wing: He was wounded in the leg in the war. 4 slight, distress, damage, mortify, insult, hurt, pain, grieve, offend, aggrieve, wrong: I was terribly wounded by the things she said about me.

23.6 wrap...
=-

wrap v. 1 Sometimes, wrap up. swathe, swaddle, bind, cover, enwrap, envelop, wind, enshroud, shroud, enfold, fold, muffle, enclose, sheathe, encase; pack, package, do up, gift-wrap: Wrap up well - it's cold outside. I've just finished wrapping some Christmas presents. 2 wrapped up in. immersed in, submerged in, buried in, absorbed in, engrossed in, bound up in, involved in, occupied with or by or in, engaged in, dedicated to, devoted to: While Irma is completely wrapped up in her grandchildren, Henry is wrapped up in his books. 3 wrap up. a complete, conclude, finish, end, bring to a close, terminate, wind up, settle, tidy up: We'll be able to wrap things up in an hour and go home. b Wrap up! Be silent!, Be quiet!, Stop talking!, Hold your tongue!, Slang Shut up!, Shut your face!, Shut your trap!, Shut your mouth!, Brit Put a sock in it!: He would have kept on wittering away if she hadn't told him to wrap up.

--n. 4 stole, shawl, mantle, poncho, serape, cloak, cape: Sonia adjusted her evening wrap before going out to dinner.

wrapper n. 1 housecoat, robe, dressing-gown, bathrobe, kimono, negligee, lounging robe, peignoir, US house-dress: Peggy threw on a wrapper and went to answer the door. 2 envelope, package, packing, wrapping, covering, jacket, case, casing, container: Throw the wrapper in the dustbin.

wreak v. inflict, exercise, exert, carry out, bring (to bear), visit, effect, work, unleash, execute, impose, force, vent, let go: The tribesmen wreaked vengeance on the hill people for destroying their farms.

wreck v. 1 destroy, ruin, devastate, demolish, smash, shatter, spoil, dash (to pieces), reduce to nothing, turn into scrap, annihilate: He drove my motor-bike into a tree and wrecked it. 2 sink, scuttle, run aground, founder, capsize: The ship was wrecked on a reef near Rarotonga.

--n. 3 hulk, shipwreck, ruins: The wreck finally rusted away to nothing. 4 mess, disaster, ruin; havoc: That man made a wreck of her life. 5 destruction, loss, sinking, devastation, foundering, grounding, capsize, capsizing, disabling, disablement, wrecking; demolition, demolishing, levelling, tearing down, razing, pulling down, obliteration: The wreck of the Titanic was a major news event in 1912. The wreck of the old tower block is scheduled for next month.

wreckage n. debris, fragments, remains, rubble, ruin(s): The wreckage of the building is being searched for survivors.

wrench v. 1 yank, twist, jerk, force, pull, tug, tear, wring, rip, wrest: The gun was wrenched from my grasp, breaking my finger. 2 strain, sprain, twist, overstrain: After she wrenched her ankle on the ladder, Mary couldn't walk for a week. 3 extract, wrest, wring, force, pry, draw: The only way they could wrench the information from Michael was by torturing him.

--n. 4 yank, twist, jerk, pull, tug, rip: One wrench at the doorknob and it came off in my hand. 5 pang, pain, agony, torture, blow, ache, throe, anguish, sadness, grief, heartbreak: The severest wrench at my heartstrings came when we had to part. 6 Brit spanner, shifting spanner, adjustable spanner, US monkey wrench: We need metric wrenches to work on your car.

wrestle v. battle, fight, struggle, tussle, strive: After thirty years Garth wrestled his way to the top in the company.

wretch n. 1 scoundrel, blackguard, worm, villain, cur, beast, dog, swine, rogue, good-for-nothing, knave, varlet, scallywag or scalawag, rascal, rapscallion, Archaic caitiff, whoreson, Colloq rat, stinker, louse, creep, Slang bastard, Brit rotter, bounder, blighter, US bum: That wretch not only stole my wife but asked me for money to support her! 2 unfortunate, poor fellow or chap, miserable creature, poor devil, pilgarlic, Slang poor bastard or son of a bitch, Brit poor bugger or sod, US sad sack: The poor wretch cannot keep a job and lives off others' charity.

wretched adj. 1 miserable, awful, terrible, atrocious, deplorable, Colloq lousy, rotten: We had the most wretched weather throughout our holiday. 2 unhappy, sad, miserable, woebegone, woeful, dismal, downhearted, heartbroken, broken-hearted, heartsick, dejected, depressed, melancholic, melancholy, mournful, disconsolate, inconsolable, doleful, cheerless, crestfallen, joyless, desolate: If you want to see a wretched human being, look at a boy whose dog is lost. 3 pitiable, pathetic, sorry, pitiful, hapless, hopeless, unfortunate, miserable: The poor in these tropical paradises are some of the most wretched people on earth. 4 vile, shameful, scurvy, underhand(ed), treacherous, contemptible, despicable, base, low, mean, paltry, mean-spirited, detestable: It was hard to see how the people could support such a wretched little demagogue.

wriggle v. 1 wiggle, wobble, shake, tremble, quiver, jiggle, waggle, writhe, twist, fidget: She managed to wriggle free of the ropes and run away. The dog was wriggling with excitement at seeing its master. 2 twist, squirm, snake, worm, writhe, slither, crawl: He wriggled through the narrow opening into the strongroom.

--n. 3 wiggle, zigzag, wavy line, Colloq squiggle, squiggly line: The page had no writing on it, only a lot of wriggles. 4 wriggling, writhing, squirm, squirming, wiggle, wiggling, shaking, trembling, quiver, quivering, shimmying, waggle, waggling, twisting, twist: Don't confuse that rhythmic wriggle of the hips with dancing.

wrinkle° n. 1 crease, fold, line, furrow, crinkle, crow's-foot, corrugation, pucker, ridge: She hasn't a wrinkle on her face - but then she's only nine.

--v. 2 crease, fold, line, furrow, crinkle, corrugate, pucker, gather, ruck, crimp, screw up, rumple, crumple: I love the way you wrinkle your nose when you're perplexed.

wrinkleý n. dodge, gimmick, device, ploy, ruse, scheme, trick, idea, plan, plot, stunt, way, approach, technique, method, Slang chiefly Brit wheeze: Leave it to Edmund to come up with a new wrinkle for fleecing pensioners.

write v. 1 pen, scribble, get off, dash off; indite, inscribe, make out: I was writing you a note when you phoned. She wrote out a cheque for œ1000. 2 correspond (with), send a letter or a note or a postcard or US also a postal card, communicate (with): You don't write home often enough. Write and let me know when you get a job. 3 compose, create, make up, author: We saw the house in which Elgar wrote the 'Enigma' Variations. 4 write down. a register, list, catalogue, note, make a note or notation, record, transcribe, set or jot or take down, note, put in writing, put in black and white: The teacher was known for Irish bulls like, 'All absent students must write down their names'. b derogate, decry, disparage, put down, minimize, make little of, play down, detract, belittle: Cumberland's contributions have been written down by his critics. 5 write off. delete, cancel, disregard, ignore, forgive, forget (about), annul, eradicate, erase: The bad debts have been written off.

writer n. author, novelist, litt‚rateur, essayist, man of letters, scribe, scribbler, wordsmith, freelancer, penny-a-liner, hack, Grub Streeter, journalist, newsman, reporter, correspondent, member of the fourth estate, (gossip) columnist, stringer, Brit paragraphist, US paragrapher, Colloq pen-pusher, pencil-pusher, sob sister, Brit journo: These days all those who know how to write call themselves writers.

writing n. 1 handwriting, longhand, penmanship, script, calligraphy or chirography, scribble: I sometimes have trouble reading your writing. 2 Sometimes, writings. (literary) work(s), composition, theme, book, article, critique, criticism, review, editorial, column, expos‚, essay, poetry, poem, novel, non-fiction, fiction, document, letter, correspondence, publication, Chiefly Brit journalism leading article or leader, Chiefly US journalism op-ed article: Her writing has been widely published. Poe's writings are collected in this book. 3 literature, belles-lettres, letters: I don't agree that British writing has declined since 1900.

wrong adj. 1 improper, unjust, unfair, injudicious, unethical, terrible, foul, awful, bad, immoral, sinful, evil, iniquitous, villainous, wicked, vile, diabolic(al), infernal, fiendish, corrupt, dishonest, reprehensible, abominable, dreadful, dishonourable, blameworthy, naughty, shameful, disgraceful, opprobrious, criminal, felonious, illegal, illicit, unlawful, illegitimate, Colloq crooked: They believe that all war is wrong. It was wrong of you to come here while my husband was away. 2 mistaken, in error, erroneous, incorrect, inaccurate, imprecise, inexact, fallacious, askew, false, wide of the mark; strange, odd, peculiar, curious; Colloq off target or US also off the target, Brit off beam, US off the beam: The answers to these four questions were all wrong. You certainly have some wrong ideas about me. 3 incorrect, improper, unsuitable: They must have given us the wrong baby at the hospital. 4 inappropriate, inapt, improper, indecorous, unseemly, unfitting, unacceptable, undesirable, incongruous, unbecoming, out of place, ill-considered, wrong-headed, imprudent, misguided, inexpedient, impolitic, infelicitous, Colloq out of line: You saw nothing wrong in inviting girls to stay with you in your rooms? Your mother thinks she's the wrong girl for you. 5 out of order, not working, faulty, awry, amiss, the matter, defective, imperfect, unsound, flawed, deficient: Considering the noise my car makes, there must be something wrong. 6 opposite, reverse, incorrect, improper: That is the wrong direction to the post office.

--adv. 7 awry, imperfectly, incorrectly, improperly, inappropriately, amiss, badly, wrongly, Scots and No. Eng. and literary agley, Colloq out of sync: You've wired up the video all wrong. 8 go wrong. a go astray, falter, fail, lapse, err, fall from grace, go to the bad, deteriorate, go downhill, backslide, regress, retrogress, recidivate: Her father was convinced that she would go wrong if she went into the theatre. b fail, malfunction, break down, miscarry, backfire, fall through, Colloq flop, come to grief, go kaput, Brit go phut: The entire plan went wrong when Clara started screaming.

--v. 9 abuse, mistreat, injure, misuse, maltreat, ill-use, ill-treat, discredit, asperse, calumniate, malign, dishonour, impose upon, take advantage of, harm, damage, oppress: He believes he was wronged by his commanding officer.

wry adj. 1 distorted, contorted, twisted, lopsided, deformed, crooked, aslant, one-sided, askew, bent, tilted, off-centre: He is afflicted by a rheumatic disorder, which gives his neck a wry appearance. 2 dry, droll, witty, sardonic, sarcastic, ironic(al), amusing; perverse, fey; Scots pawky: Bill has a wry sense of humour that does not appeal to everyone.

24.0 Y

=-

24.1 yank...

=-

yank v. 1 jerk, jolt, tug, wrench, snatch, hitch: He yanked the chair from beneath me just as I sat down.

--n. 2 jerk, jolt, tug, wrench, snatch, hitch: Give two yanks on the rope when you want me to pull you up.

yap v. 1 bark, yelp: Their dog was yapping away all night. 2 gabble, babble, blither or blather, chatter, jabber, tattle, prattle, prate, Colloq chiefly Brit witter, natter, Slang jaw, run on, US run off at the mouth: I wish she'd stop her yapping and give me some peace.

--n. 3 mouth, Slang trap, gob, US bazoo: If only Sam would shut his big yap once in a while!

yardstick n. measure, benchmark, criterion, standard, gauge, basis, touchstone, scale, exemplar: We thought she sang beautifully, but then we had no yardstick against which to judge.

yarn n. 1 thread, fibre, strand: I haven't enough yarn to finish knitting these socks. 2 tale, story, account, narrative, anecdote; tall tale, fable, fabrication, fiction, cock-and-bull story, Colloq whopper, Brit fishing story, US fish story, fish tale: The old salt had many yarns to spin during the long evenings by the fire.

24.2 yearly...

=-

yearly adv. 1 annually, perennially, every year, once a year, year after year, year in (and) year out, regularly: We watch the Canada geese migrate north yearly. 2 per year, per annum, by the year, each year: What is the interest rate yearly?

--adj. 3 annual, perennial, once-a-year, regular: Those yearly migrations told us when to plant the first crop.

yearn v. long, pine, ache, hanker, itch, hunger, thirst, crave, have a craving, desire, wish, want, fancy, prefer: I yearn to see the green-clad hills of home once more, Before my vessel bears me from this mortal shore.

yell v. 1 shout, scream, bellow, howl, screech, yowl, roar, bawl, caterwaul, squall, yelp, Colloq holler: 'Stop yelling at your sister!', shouted my father.

--n. 2 shout, scream, cry, bellow, howl, screech, yowl, roar, caterwaul, squall, yelp, Colloq holler: I think I heard a yell for help.

yeomanly adj. yeoman, workmanlike, useful, staunch, courageous, loyal, dedicated, faithful, steadfast, unswerving, unwavering, firm, sturdy, reliable, solid: Carruthers certainly did a yeomanly job on reorganizing the system.

yes-man n. toady, sycophant, toad-eater, time-server, hanger-on, lickspittle, bootlicker, truckler, flunkey, courtier, jackal, spaniel, lap-dog, Taboo slang Brit arse-kisser, arse-licker, US ass-kisser, ass-licker, US brown-noser: He surrounds himself with yes-men, then says he refuses to take no for an answer.

yet adv. 1 as yet, (up) till or until now, so far, thus far, hitherto, to the present (time): She hasn't arrived yet. 2 still, up to this time, up to now, even now, till or until now, to this day: She was there earlier and I think she's there yet. 3 moreover, furthermore, besides, further, still: He made yet another excuse. 4 in the future, in time to come, later, eventually: Despite the life I've led, I might yet get to heaven. 5 still, notwithstanding, anyway, anyhow, nonetheless, nevertheless, regardless, in spite of or despite everything, just or all the same, even so, after all, US still and all: Despite the life I've led, I might get to heaven yet.

--conj. 6 notwithstanding, in spite of or despite it or that or the fact, still, nevertheless, but: He goes out every night, yet never oversleeps in the mornings.

24.3 yield...

=-

yield v. 1 surrender, give up (the fight or struggle), give in, knuckle under, submit, cede, cry quits, throw in the towel or the sponge, capitulate, succumb, raise the white flag: The captain of the enemy company asked if we would yield. 2 give up, surrender, give over, hand in or over, abandon, relinquish, renounce, cede: We agreed to yield our arms to the enemy. 3 agree, consent, comply, concede, relent, assent, give way, accede, concur: He did his best to persuade me, and I finally yielded. 4 earn, return, pay, bring in, supply, generate, produce, net: She has investments that yield more than 15% a year.

--n. 5 return, production, output, revenue, takings, gate, earnings, income, proceeds, profit, gain: The yield from that operation is not even enough to pay the rent.

yielding adj. 1 pliant, flexile, flexible, pliable, soft, plastic, fictile, elastic, resilient, supple, springy, bouncy, spongy, rubbery: The frame is of a yielding material that gives way under pressure. 2 accommodating, docile, submissive, amenable, tractable, compliant, obedient, flexible, acquiescent, agreeable, obliging, manageable, manipulable: He wanted a wife with a yielding temperament who would tolerate his foibles.

24.4 young...

=-

young adj. 1 youthful, teenage(d), adolescent, prepubescent, pubescent, juvenile, minor, junior, under age: Would you believe that she has young children? 2 boyish, girlish;

immature, callow, green, inexperienced, unfledged, uninitiated, unsophisticated, childlike, innocent, na‹ve: This programme may contain material unsuitable for young ears. 3 childish, puerile, infantile, babyish, US sophomoric: He's too young to invite to the party.

--n. 4 offspring, babies, issue, little ones, progeny, litter, brood; children: The cat's young should stay with her for a few weeks.

youth n. 1 childhood, boyhood, girlhood, young manhood, young womanhood, prepubescence, pubescence, adolescence, salad days; immaturity, minority: In our youth we do many foolish things we might later regret. 2 child, youngster, schoolchild, teenager, teen, minor, juvenile, adolescent; boy, schoolboy, stripling, young boy or man, lad, laddie, whippersnapper; girl, lass, lassie, schoolgirl, maid, maiden, Literary damsel, demoiselle, mademoiselle, Colloq kid, (little) shaver, US and Canadian tad, Slang teeny-bopper, Brit sprog: As youths, they used to spend time at rock concerts. 3 children, youngsters, juveniles, adolescents, young people, young, Colloq kids: The youth of today have little respect for their elders.

24.5 yucky...

=-

yucky adj. yukky or US also yuchy, disgusting, repugnant, repellent, unappetizing, vomit-provoking, sick-making, ill-making, nauseous, nauseating, revolting, foul, mucky, revolting, beastly, awful, Slang Brit grotty: We get this yucky mess at school that we call 'mystery meat'.

yummy adj. delicious, mouth-watering, luscious, appetizing, tasty, toothsome, savoury, delectable, ambrosial, Colloq scrumptious: At our school tuck shop we get the most yummy ice-cream.

25.0 Z

=-

25.1 zany...

=-

zany adj. 1 clownish, mad, wild, frolicsome, sportive, playful, gay, merry, slapstick, crazy, funny, comic(al), amusing, hilarious, absurd, nonsensical, ludicrous, silly, foolish, inane, Colloq wacky, loony, madcap, crackpot, nutty, goofy, US kooky: The buskers put on the zaniest show I have seen for some time.

--n. 2 clown, comic, jester, fool, joker, buffoon, wag, comedian, merry andrew, laughing-stock, Slang nut, US screwball: The two zanies kept the crowd in stitches while the pickpockets stole their wallets.

zap v. destroy, kill, slaughter, annihilate, murder, slay, assassinate, liquidate, erase; shoot, electrocute, Slang rub out, polish off, knock off, bump off, snuff (out), waste, hit, US ice: The baddies got zapped by the ray gun, one after the other.

25.2 zealot...

=-

zealot n. fanatic, extremist, radical, bigot, maniac, militant: We have to deal with ruthless zealots who are willing to die for their cause.

zealotry n. fanaticism, extremism, radicalism, bigotry, militantism, terrorism, single-mindedness, monomania, fervour, frenzy, hysteria, obsession, obsessiveness: Their attacks on innocent civilians show how far their zealotry can take them.

zenith n. meridian, summit, acme, apex, vertex, apogee, high point, top, peak, pinnacle: The dictator reached the zenith of his power very quickly.

zero n. 1 nil, null, nothing, nought or naught, aught, cipher, Cricket duck, Colloq nix, US goose-egg, nada, niente, Slang Brit (sweet) Fanny Adams or F.A., bugger-all, US zilch: Temperatures have remained below zero all day. The visiting team won three games, we won zero. 2 (rock) bottom, nadir: On a scale of one to ten, she is a zero. 3 nobody, nothing, nonentity, Slang US nebbish, bupkis: That fellow she married is a real zero.

--v. 4 zero in on. focus on, pinpoint, fix on, home in on, concentrate on, bring to bear on: We zeroed in on the problem and then rapidly found the answer.

zest   n. 1 spice, relish, gusto, tang, pepper, ginger, piquancy, pungency, edge, bite, flavour, Colloq zing, zip, pizazz: Put in a little of my home-made sauce to add some zest. 2 eagerness, zestfulness, exuberance, appetite, interest, enthusiasm, hunger, thirst: Where does Sidney get his zest for life?

25.3 zone...

=-

zone   n. area, quarter, district, region, sector, section, sphere, belt, territory, province, realm, domain, precinct, bailiwick, department, terrain, circle, locality, locale, Slang US turf: A duty-free zone will allow for quicker transshipment of goods. The northern and southern hemispheres each have a frigid, temperate, and torrid zone.

zoo   n. 1 zoological garden, menagerie, Tiergarten, (safari) park: When I was a child, I enjoyed going to the zoo almost as much as I do now. 2 madhouse, mess; chaos, pandemonium, bedlam, Colloq US three-ring circus, Chinese fire-drill: When my husband and the three children get ready in the morning the kitchen is like a zoo.

The Original Roget's

Roget's
INTERNATIONAL
THESAURUS®

The world's number-one bestselling thesaurus of synonyms, antonyms, and related words

REVISED & UPDATED

A sterling reference tool." —*Time*

6

SIXTH EDITION

MOST COMPREHENSIVE: more than 330,000 words and phrases in 1,075 categories DEFINITIVE: provides superior depth of information, efficiency, and ease of use UP TO DATE: includes the expanding vocabulary of today

Edited by Barbara Ann Kipfer, Ph.D.
Robert L. Chapman, Ph.D., Consulting Editor

CA

THE ORIGINAL ROGET'S— THE WORLD'S BESTSELLING THESAURUS

A classic reference book that has been used by millions all over the world, *Roget's International Thesaurus*® is the product of more than a century and a half of continuous expansion, reorganization, and improvement. Today, this book is not only the most time-tested and bestselling thesaurus ever, but, newly revised, it is also the most up-to-date and comprehensive reflection of the English language as it is currently used.

The revolutionary achievement of Dr. Peter Mark Roget's first edition in 1852 was the development of a brand-new principle: the arrangement of words and phrases according to their meanings. Dr. Roget's system brings together in one place all the terms associated with a single thought or concept; it allows a wide-ranging survey of language within a book of relatively modest size, without the space-consuming repetitions that so severely limit the scope of thesauruses arranged in a dictionary format with A-to-Z entries. This brilliant organization makes *Roget's International Thesaurus*® both *the* most efficient word finder and a cutting-edge aid in stimulating thought, organizing ideas, and writing and speaking more clearly and effectively.

This revised and updated sixth edition features thousands of new words and phrases, including the newest slang words and expressions that color and inform everyday language. At the same time, it retains all of the hallmarks that have made *Roget's International Thesaurus*® an enduring classic:

- More than 330,000 words and phrases organized into 1,075 categories.

(continued on back flap)

TH
THI

A
Roget's
more
expa
ment
time-
but,
date
Engli

Pete
the
the
acco
syste
term
conc
lang
size,
tion
saur
with
zatic
both
cutt
orga
mor

feat
incl
exp
lang
the
Inte

❁ N
org

Roget's
INTERNATIONAL
THESAURUS®

6

Edited by Barbara Ann Kipfer, Ph.D.

Robert L. Chapman, Ph.D., Consulting Editor

HarperResource
An Imprint of HarperCollinsPublishers

T
TH

A

Rog
mo
exp
me
tim
ut
dat
Eng

Pet
the
the
acc
syst
ter
con
lan
siz
tio
sau
wit
zat
bot
cut
org
mo

fea
inc
exp
lan
the
Int

⁂

org

Roget's
INTERNATIONAL
THESAURUS®

6

SIXTH EDITION

Edited by Barbara Ann Kipfer, Ph.D.

Robert L. Chapman, Ph.D., Consulting Editor

HarperResource
An Imprint of HarperCollins*Publishers*

Lithograph of Peter Mark Roget:
Edward Mansfield Burbank, *Sketches of the Lives & Work of the Honorary Medical Staff of the Manchester Infirmary, from 1752 to 1830,* Volume 1, 1904. Courtesy of the New York Public Library.

A hardcover edition of this book was published in 2001 by HarperCollins Publishers.

Roget's International Thesaurus® (Sixth Edition). Copyright © 2001 by HarperCollins Publishers. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. No part of this book may be used or reproduced in any manner whatsoever without written permission except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. For information, address HarperCollins Publishers, Inc., 10 East 53rd Street, New York, NY 10022.

HarperCollins books may be purchased for educational, business, or sales promotional use. For information please write: Special Markets Department, HarperCollins Publishers, Inc., 10 East 53rd Street, New York, NY 10022.

Designed by C. Linda Dingler

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data has been applied for.

ISBN
0-06-093544-8 (paperback)

---

02 03 04 05 RRD 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3

Contents

Biography of Peter Mark Roget vii

How to Use This Book xi

Peter Roget's Preface to the First Edition xv

Foreword by Barbara Ann Kipfer, Ph.D. xvii

Synopsis of Categories xix

Abbreviations Used in This Book xxvi

Thesaurus of English Words and Phrases 1

Index 787

How to Use This Index 788

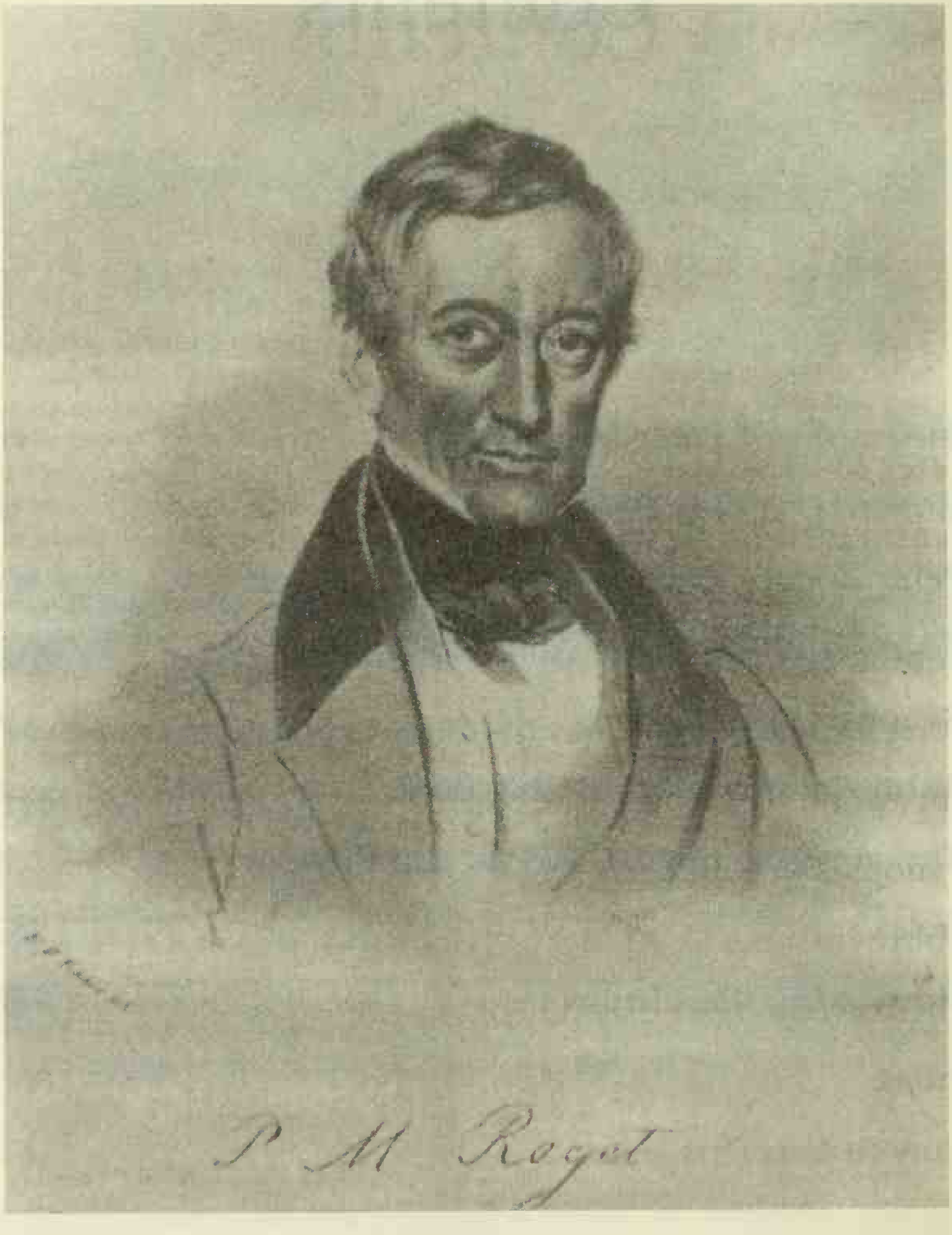

P M Roget

Peter Mark Roget

1779–1869

The author of the "Treasury of Words" could hardly have thought that his name would become forever associated with a particular book, even though he hoped that he was suggesting a unique way of utilizing the richness and flexibility of the English language. But for more than 150 years Roget's work has been the constant companion of all those who aspire to use the language most effectively.

The career of Peter Mark Roget prior to the publication of his *Thesaurus* in 1852, when he was seventy-three years old, while largely devoted to science and to medicine, required of him a facility with words in the delivery of ideas and concepts. A lifetime of secretaryships for several learned societies had thoroughly familiarized him with the need for clarity and forcefulness of expression. That he was justified in his concept is made obvious by the universal acceptance of his thesaurus as an indispensable tool for all those who wish to write and speak with eloquence.

Born in London the son of a Protestant pastor who died at an early age, Roget was raised by his mother. He studied at the University of Edinburgh from 1793 to 1798 and received an M.D. after his successful defense of his Latin thesis dealing with the laws of chemical affinity. He was, however, too late to share in that institution's happy days as a stunning example of the Scottish Enlightenment. He was not to know William Cullen, the great nosologist, nor Alexander Monro primus, who brought Hermann Boerhaave's ethos of a medical school from Leyden; but he did learn anatomy from Monro secundus and medicine from John Gregory. The bright stars of David Hume, denied professorship at the university for his radical thinking, and of Adam Smith had long since blazed across the Scottish intellectual world. Moreover, Roget was too early for Sir James Young Simpson and chloroform, or for the dexterous Syme, who was mentor and father-in-law to the great Lord Lister. While Roget was in Edinburgh, the soil was being prepared for the phenomenon of Paris Medicine, the next wave of medical advance, which would be built on the ruins of the French Revolution.

After his graduation, the young physician looked about for the connections he would need to launch a medical career. In this he was fortunate in having the concerned attention of his uncle, Sir Samuel Romilly, whose own promising political potential, shortened by his suicide, provided an entrée to certain segments of English scientific and intellectual life. Through his uncle, Roget was introduced to Lord Lansdowne, for whom he served briefly as personal physician, and to Jeremy Bentham. On his own initiative, Roget spent some time in Bristol in Thomas Beddoes's Pneumatic Institute, devoted to the treatment of human illness using various gases. There he may have met illustrious figures Humphry Davy, James Watt, Samuel Taylor Coleridge, William Wordsworth, and Robert Southey.

In the midst of his desultory round of attendance at lectures and dispensary duties, Roget learned that his uncle had maneuvered for him an opportunity to tutor two scions of a wealthy Manchester manufacturer on a grand tour of Europe. The Peace of Amiens had been signed in 1802, and Continental travel was once again open to English families anxious to provide their children with the advantages of foreign scenes.

Roget was twenty-three when he shepherded his charges across the English Channel and on to Paris, where they entered into the round of parties and dinners opened to them through letters from Sir Samuel and from the boys' family. But there was more than that. Roget hired a French tutor and supervised his charges' studies in mathematics, chemistry, and geology. He also saw to it that there were the obligatory trips to museums as well as to the theater and that the boys wrote their impressions and comments after each visit.

The little party pushed on to Geneva, not without encountering obstructions, delays, and disappointments injected by the French bureaucracy. In Geneva, although the city had recently been annexed by Napoleon, the group felt secure enough to settle down to a life of studies, parties, and local sight-seeing. The respite was short-lived, however. The Peace of Amiens was abrogated by Napoleon in 1803, and the position of any Englishman in French territory was in doubt. Warned by Madame de Staël that he faced internment, Roget undertook to establish for himself Genevan citizenship on the basis of his father's birth in that city. Through prodigious effort and resourcefulness remarkable in so young a man, Roget sneaked the party, dressed as peasants, into Germany. He was successful in making his way to Denmark and thence to England, delivering his charges back to their family.

Manchester now offered the best opportunity to establish a medical practice, since Roget could count on the support of the wealthy Philips family, whose sons had shared his French experience. He quickly became associated with the local infirmary and with the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society, before which body he gave a series of lectures on physiology that historians credit as forming the basis of what became the School of Medicine in that city. As D. L. Emblen points out in his biography of Roget, "[he] showed that his chief interest in the new science of physiology lay in the organization and order of several aspects of that subject and in the relationship of the subject to such kindred fields as anatomy" (D. L. Emblen, *Peter Mark Roget: The Word and the Man*, New York: Thomas Crowell, 1970, p. 96). It was Roget's meticulous, precise way of looking at order, at plan, and at interdependence in animal economy that would eventually find expression in his unique and practical lexicographic experiment.

But the great metropolis beckoned, and the young physician finally decided on a London career. Roget was never outstandingly successful as a medical practitioner. He had, however, become associated with the establishment of the Northern Dispensary, the quintessential Victorian expression of medical charity, to which he devoted a lifetime of practice. Roget's métier was teaching and institutional activities. He lectured in the Theory and Practice of Physic at the Great Windmill Street School, which served as the school of anatomy of Middlesex Hospital before that institution was eclipsed by the new University College on Gower Street. The Medical and Chirurgical Society, founded to bridge the gap between medicine and surgery, commanded much of Roget's attention during his London days. He served as the society's secretary for twelve years and contributed to its journal, *Transactions*. In 1814 he became a fellow in the Royal Society on the basis of a paper he wrote describing a forerunner of the slide rule. He contributed many articles to the *Encyclopaedia Britannica* that were carried through several editions. In those pages he crossed swords with George Combe, the ardent promoter of phrenology, a discipline which Roget could not support. While serving as secretary of the Royal Society he wrote the Bridgewater Treatise of Physiology, which demonstrated anew Roget's ability to organize and classify the essentials of a rapidly developing science.

Although extremely occupied during these years, as a list of his extensive memberships in scientific and cultural organizations shows, Roget seems never to have captured the attention of his peers to the extent that many of his contemporaries enjoyed. There is a hint that he was always just below the top rank, never in the front. It was, after all, an age of giants, and to be even in the midst of all that ferment was remarkable enough. His active public life came to an end when he was eased out of the secretaryship of the Royal Society after a conflict over the operation of the library, and was literally forced into retirement.

An inactive retirement was not compatible with Roget's lifestyle. Since childhood, putting ideas and concepts in writing had been second nature to him. He dwelt in a world of language, and his orderly, systematic mind lent itself to classification. More than a list of synonyms, more than a dictionary, the thesaurus Roget devised and constantly improved upon during this time was a unique ordering of the English language to be used by those desiring to impart an exacting and felicitous tone to written or spoken material. Grouped by ideas rather than by a mere alphabetical listing, the thesaurus enabled the user to find the exact word or phrase needed for a specific purpose. Roget had been keeping such a word list for many years. He now proposed to enlarge it and present it to the world of users of the English language.

The success of this venture was never in doubt. Roget supervised some twenty-five editions and printings of the thesaurus and was actively at work on his masterpiece when he died in 1869 at the age of ninety. *Roget's International Thesaurus*® continues to be issued. For all those who deal with words and with ideas as expressed in words it has become indispensable. It remains a monument of scholarship and a tribute to the industry and breadth of knowledge of one of the lesser-known Victorian greats.

DONALD F. KENT, M.D.

How to Use This Book

Like other great reference books, *Roget's International Thesaurus*® is the product of continuous improvement and long-term investment by its editors. The process began almost two centuries ago, in 1805, when Dr. Peter Mark Roget began compiling a list of useful words for his own convenience.

The revolutionary achievement of Dr. Roget was his development of a brand-new principle: *the grouping of words according to ideas*. If the user cannot find something in a reference book, it is often because of the restriction of searching alphabetically by "known" headwords. Dr. Roget's thesaurus reversed the access to allow the user to find a word from another word, or a concept or idea. When in 1852 Roget published the first book ever to realize this concept with thoroughness and precision, he called it a *thesaurus* (from the Greek and Latin, meaning "treasury" or "storehouse"). And *thesaurus* it has remained to this day.

So successful was Roget's *Thesaurus of English Words and Phrases, Classified and Arranged so as to Facilitate the Expression of Ideas and Assist in Literary Composition* that a second edition followed one year later in 1853. By Dr. Roget's death in 1869 there had been no fewer than twenty-eight editions and printings.

Each subsequent edition introduced more efficient and useful features, all of which have contributed to the quality of the present edition. Over the years, tens of thousands of new words and phrases were added, the coverage of foreign expressions increased, and the scope of the book expanded to include slang and useful quotations: a recent innovation was the numbering of the paragraphs for the user's convenience. By 1992, when the fifth edition was published by HarperCollins, *Roget's International Thesaurus*® had become a greatly expanded and improved book, yet one which still retained Roget's brilliant organization.

The sixth edition of *Roget's International Thesaurus®*, prepared by Barbara Ann Kipfer, Ph.D., along with consulting editor Robert L. Chapman, has a text of about 330,000 words and phrases, arranged in categories by their meanings, and a comprehensive index.

The search for a word that you need is a simple, two-step process that begins in the index. Suppose that you want a word to describe something that first occurred in the past:

Step 1. In the index, look up the word *first* and pick the subentry closest to the meaning you want, which would likely be "previous."

firmament 1072.2
first
  n baseball 745.1
  first ever 818.3
  adj leading 165.3
  front 216.10
  chief 249.14
  preceding 814.4
  beginning 818
  foremost 818.17
  previous 834.4
  novel 841.11
  adv before 216.12
  preferably 371.28
  firstly 818.18
first aid 91.14
first base 745.1
first-born
  n senior 304.5
  adj older 842.19
first-class
  superlative 249.13
  first-rate 999.17

Step 2. Follow its number (834.4) into the text of the thesaurus and you will find a whole paragraph of adjectives starting with **previous, prior, early.**

834 PREVIOUSNESS

NOUNS **1 previousness, earliness 845, antecedence** *or* antecedency, priority, anteriority, precedence *or* precedency 814, precession; *status quo ante* <L>, previous *or* prior state, earlier state; preexistence; **anticipation,** predating, antedating; antedate; **past time 837.1**

2 antecedent, precedent, premise; forerunner, **precursor 816,** ancestor

VERBS **3 be prior,** be before *or* early *or* earlier, come on the scene *or* appear earlier, **precede, antecede, forerun,** come *or* go before, set a precedent; **herald,** usher in, proclaim, announce; **anticipate,** antedate, predate; **preexist**

ADJS **4 previous, prior, early 845.7, earlier,** *ci-devant* or *ci-dessus* <Fr>, **former,** fore, prime, first, **preceding 165.3,** foregoing, above, anterior, **anticipatory,** antecedent; **preexistent;** older, elder, senior

Tracking down words in this way is the most obvious and direct use of the thesaurus. However, there are other ways in which the unique features of *Roget's International Thesaurus®* will help you solve word problems.

The thesaurus is a device for finding specific words or phrases for general ideas. A dictionary will tell you many things about a word—spelling, pronunciation, meaning, and origins. You use a thesaurus when you have an idea but do not know, or cannot remember, the word or phrase that expresses it best or when you want a more accurate or effective way of saying what you mean. A thesaurus gives you possibilities, and you choose the one that you think is best within your particular context. The range of possibilities includes not only meaning as we usually think of it, but the special sense and force given by nonformal words and phrases (slang and informal), of which many are included and labeled.

Roget's International Thesaurus® is an efficient word-finder because it has a structure especially designed to stimulate thought and help you organize your ideas. The backbone of this structure is the ingenious overall arrangement of the main categories. The plan is outlined in the "Synopsis of Categories," which begins on page xix. To make good use of the thesaurus's structure all you need to remember is that it contains many sequences of closely related categories. Beginning at 48, for example, you will see **HEARING, DEAFNESS, SOUND, SILENCE, FAINTNESS OF SOUND, LOUDNESS,** etc., a procession of similar, contrasting, and opposing concepts, all dealing with the perception and quality of sounds. So when you are not quite satisfied with what you find in one place, glance at nearby categories too; it may be that your original intention was not the best. If you are having trouble framing a thought in a positive way, you may find that it can be more effectively expressed negatively. Seeing related terms, and antonyms, often opens up lines of thought and chains of association that had not occurred to you.

You will already have noticed that the large categories of ideas are numbered in sequence; there are 1,075 of them in this edition of *Roget's International Thesaurus*®. Within each category the terms are presented in short paragraphs by basic meaning, and these are also numbered. References from the index to the text are made with two-part numbers such as 247.4, the first part being the number of the main category, the second the number of the paragraph within that category. This system, unique to this book, makes for quick and easy pinpointing of the place where you will find the words you need.

The terms within a category are organized also by part of speech, in this order: nouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections. When you are casting about for a way of saying something, rather than looking for a specific word, do not limit your search to the narrow area of the category suggested by the index reference, but examine the offerings in all parts of speech.

There is a further refinement of word arrangement. The sequence of terms within a paragraph, far from being random, is determined by close, semantic relationships. The words closest in meaning are offered in clusters that are set off with semicolons; the semicolon signals a slight change in sense or application. A close examination of the clusters will make you aware of the fine distinctions between synonyms, and you will soon recognize that few words are exactly interchangeable. As an aid in focusing on the *right* word, terms with special uses are identified by labels in angle brackets—such as the label <nf> for nonformal terms, <Fr> for French terms, or <pl> for plural. A full list of the abbreviations often used within brackets can be found on page xxvi.

The connector "and" is used to group things so as to avoid using a label (say, <nf>) for each individual item. The connector "or" is used similarly to avoid needless repetition of a term that can be used with several modifiers.

Cross references also are an important feature of the text. They suggest additional meanings of the words you are examining. Notice, too, that the paragraphs of text are highlighted with terms in boldface type. The boldfaced words are those most commonly used for the idea at hand.

"Word elements," such as prefixes, suffixes, and combining forms, are listed when helpful after the final text paragraph of the category, and before any word lists.

The use of an appropriate quotation often enlivens one's prose. Here, again, *Roget's International Thesaurus®* can help you, for it contains hundreds of such quotes on scores of subjects. Another useful feature of the thesaurus is its word lists. These contain the names of specific things—animals, plants, measurements, and many other entities—few of which have synonyms. The lists can save you many excursions to specialized reference books.

Thus, *Roget's International Thesaurus®* can help you in countless ways to improve your writing and speech and to enrich your active vocabulary. But you should remember the caution that very few words are true synonyms: use the thesaurus in conjunction with a good dictionary whenever a selected word or phrase is unfamiliar to you.

Peter Roget's Preface to the First Edition

(1852)

It is now nearly fifty years since I first projected a system of verbal classification similar to that on which the present work is founded. Conceiving that such a compilation might help to supply my own deficiencies, I had, in the year 1805, completed a classed catalog of words on a small scale, but on the same principle, and nearly in the same form, as the Thesaurus now published. I had often during that long interval found this little collection, scanty and imperfect as it was, of much use to me in literary composition, and often contemplated its extension and improvement; but a sense of the magnitude of the task, amidst a multitude of other avocations, deterred me from the attempt. Since my retirement from the duties of Secretary of the Royal Society, however, finding myself possessed of more leisure, and believing that a repertory of which I had myself experienced the advantage might, when amplified, prove useful to others, I resolved to embark in an undertaking which, for the last three or four years, has given me incessant occupation, and has, indeed, imposed upon me an amount of labor very much greater than I had anticipated. Notwithstanding all the pains I have bestowed on its execution, I am fully aware of its numerous deficiencies and imperfections, and of its falling far short of the degree of excellence that might be attained. But, in a work of this nature, where perfection is placed at so great a distance, I have thought it best to limit my ambition to that moderate share of merit which it may claim in its present form; trusting to the indulgence of those for whose benefit it is intended, and to the candor of critics who, while they find it easy to detect faults, can at the same time duly appreciate difficulties.

P. M. Roget

April 29, 1852

Peter Roget's Preface to the First Edition

(1852)

It is now nearly fifty years since I first projected a system of verbal classification similar to that on which the present work is founded. Conceiving that such a compilation might help to supply my own deficiencies, I had, in the year 1805, completed a classed catalog of words on a small scale, but on the same principle, and nearly in the same form as the Thesaurus now published. I had often during that long interval found that little collection, scanty and imperfect as it was, of much use to me in literary composition, and often contemplated its extension and improvement; but a sense of the magnitude of the task, amidst a multitude of other avocations, deterred me from the attempt. Since my retirement from the duties of Secretary of the Royal Society, however, finding myself possessed of more leisure, and believing that a repertory of which I had myself experienced the advantage might, when amplified, prove useful to others, I resolved to embark in an undertaking which, for the last three or four years, has given me incessant occupation, and has, indeed, imposed upon me an amount of labor very much greater than I had anticipated. Notwithstanding all the pains I have bestowed on its execution, I am fully aware of its numerous deficiencies and imperfections, and of its falling far short of the degree of excellence that might be attained. But, in a work of this nature, where perfection is placed at so great a distance, I have thought it best to limit my ambition to that moderate share of merit which it may claim in its present form; trusting to the indulgence of those for whose benefit it is intended, and to the candor of critics who, while they find it easy to detect faults, can at the same time duly appreciate difficulties.

Foreword

by Barbara Ann Kipfer, Ph.D.

In developing this new edition, I chose to focus on the modernity and scope of the language coverage. We live in the Internet age, making *Roget's International Thesaurus®* ever more valuable. It can now be used in the wording of queries for search engines accessing the World Wide Web. To this end, I have included as many new words and phrases as possible, from general vocabulary to scientific and technological terms.

The lists have been revised to add new terms, delete obsolete ones, and expand treatment. Quotations were retained if they could conceivably be valuable in a user's writings. Otherwise, unuseful quotations and outdated terms were set aside to make room for new synonyms, additional synonyms, and new lists.

I wish to acknowledge the help, support, and guidance of Dr. Robert L. Chapman. I am honored to have been his choice of successor.

I also thank John Atkins for his work in preparing the computerized manuscript. My editor, Greg Chaput, has worked hard to bring the project to fruition—and a successful publication. George Alexander and Donna Ruvituso have done a wonderful job putting this all together technologically and typographically. There was also a helpful list of errors in the previous edition, contributed by Dr. Tracy Mansfield of International Neural Machines.

No one is luckier than I to have the time and the environment I need to complete such a massive undertaking. To that I owe gratitude to my husband and frequent collaborator, Paul Magoulas. To him and to my sons, Kyle and Keir, I would like to repay their love and encouragement.

BARBARA ANN KIPFER, PH.D.

June 1, 2001

Foreword

by Barbara Ann Kipfer, Ph.D.

In developing this new edition, I chose to focus on the modernity and scope of the language coverage. We live in the Internet age, making *Roget's International Thesaurus®* ever more valuable. It can now be used in the wording of queries for search engines accessing the World Wide Web. To this end, I have included as many new words and phrases as possible, from general vocabulary to scientific and technological terms.

The lists have been revised to add new terms, delete obsolete ones, and expand treatment. Quotations were retained if they could conceivably be valuable in a user's writings. Otherwise, unuseful quotations and outdated terms were set aside to make room for new synonyms, additional synonyms, and new lists.

I wish to acknowledge the help, support, and guidance of Dr. Robert L. Chapman. I am honored to have been his choice of successor.

I also thank John Atkins for his work in preparing the computerized manuscript. My editor, Greg Chaput, has worked hard to bring the project to fruition—and a successful publication. George Alexander and Donna Ruvituso have done a wonderful job putting this all together technologically and typographically. There was also a helpful list of errors in the previous edition, contributed by Dr. Trudy Mansfield of International Neural Machines.

No one is luckier than I to have the time and the environment I need to complete such a massive undertaking. To that I owe gratitude to my husband and frequent collaborator, Paul Magoulas. To him and to my sons, Kyle and Keir, I would like to repay their love and encouragement.

Barbara Ann Kipfer, Ph.D.

June 4, 2007

Synopsis of Categories

Class One:
The Body and the Senses

1 Birth
2 The Body
3 Hair
4 Clothing Materials
5 Clothing
6 Unclothing

7 Nutrition
8 Eating
9 Refreshment
10 Food
11 Cooking

12 Excretion
13 Secretion

14 Bodily Development
15 Strength
16 Weakness
17 Energy
18 Power, Potency
19 Impotence

20 Rest, Repose
21 Fatigue
22 Sleep
23 Wakefulness

24 Sensation
25 Insensibility
26 Pain

27 Vision
28 Defective Vision
29 Optical Instruments
30 Blindness
31 Visibility
32 Invisibility
33 Appearance
34 Disappearance
35 Color
36 Colorlessness
37 Whiteness
38 Blackness
39 Grayness
40 Brownness
41 Redness
42 Orangeness
43 Yellowness
44 Greenness
45 Blueness
46 Purpleness
47 Variegation

48 Hearing
49 Deafness
50 Sound
51 Silence
52 Faintness of Sound
53 Loudness
54 Resonance
55 Repeated Sounds
56 Explosive Noise
57 Sibilation
58 Stridency
59 Cry, Call
60 Animal Sounds
61 Discord

62 Taste
63 Savoriness
64 Unsavoriness
65 Insipidness
66 Sweetness
67 Sourness
68 Pungency
69 Odor
70 Fragrance
71 Stench
72 Odorlessness

73 Touch
74 Sensations of Touch

75 Sex
76 Masculinity
77 Femininity
78 Reproduction, Procreation

79 Cleanness
80 Uncleanness
81 Healthfulness
82 Unhealthfulness

83 Health
84 Fitness, Exercise
85 Disease
86 Remedy
87 Substance Abuse
88 Intoxication, Alcoholic Drink
89 Tobacco
90 Health Care
91 Therapy, Medical Treatment
92 Psychology, Psychotherapy

Class Two:
Feelings

93 Feeling
94 Lack of Feeling
95 Pleasure
96 Unpleasure
97 Pleasantness
98 Unpleasantness
99 Dislike
100 Desire
101 Eagerness
102 Indifference
103 Hate
104 Love
105 Excitement
106 Inexcitability
107 Contentment
108 Discontent
109 Cheerfulness
110 Ill Humor
111 Solemnity
112 Sadness
113 Regret
114 Unregretfulness
115 Lamentation
116 Rejoicing
117 Dullness
118 Tedium
119 Aggravation
120 Relief
121 Comfort
122 Wonder
123 Unastonishment
124 Hope
125 Hopelessness
126 Anxiety
127 Fear, Fearfulness
128 Nervousness
129 Unnervousness

130 Expectation
131 Inexpectation
132 Disappointment
133 Premonition
134 Patience
135 Impatience
136 Pride
137 Humility
138 Servility
139 Modesty
140 Vanity
141 Arrogance
142 Insolence
143 Kindness, Benevolence
144 Unkindness, Malevolence
145 Pity
146 Pitilessness
147 Condolence
148 Forgiveness
149 Congratulation
150 Gratitude
151 Ingratitude
152 Resentment, Anger
153 Jealousy
154 Envy
155 Respect
156 Disrespect
157 Contempt

Class Three:
Place and Change of Place

158 Space
159 Location
160 Displacement
161 Direction
162 Progression
163 Regression
164 Deviation
165 Leading
166 Following
167 Approach
168 Recession
169 Convergence
170 Crossing
171 Divergence

172 Motion
173 Quiescence
174 Swiftness
175 Slowness
176 Transferal, Transportation
177 Travel
178 Traveler
179 Vehicle
180 Ship, Boat
181 Aircraft
182 Water Travel
183 Mariner
184 Aviation
185 Aviator
186 Arrival
187 Reception
188 Departure
189 Entrance
190 Emergence
191 Insertion
192 Extraction
193 Ascent
194 Descent

195 Container
196 Contents
197 Room
198 Top
199 Bottom
200 Verticalness
201 Horizontalness
202 Pendency
203 Parallelism
204 Obliquity
205 Inversion
206 Exteriority
207 Interiority
208 Centrality

209 Environment
210 Circumscription
211 Bounds
212 Enclosure
213 Interposition
214 Intrusion
215 Contraposition
216 Front
217 Rear
218 Side
219 Right Side
220 Left Side

221 Presence
222 Absence
223 Nearness
224 Interval

225 Habitation
226 Nativeness
227 Inhabitant, Native
228 Abode, Habitat
229 Furniture
230 Town, City
231 Region
232 Country
233 The Country
234 Land
235 Body of Land
236 Plain
237 Highlands
238 Stream
239 Channel
240 Sea, Ocean
241 Lake, Pool
242 Inlet, Gulf
243 Marsh

Class Four:
Measure and Shape

244 Quantity
245 Degree
246 Mean
247 Greatness
248 Insignificance
249 Superiority
250 Inferiority
251 Increase
252 Decrease
253 Addition
254 Adjunct
255 Subtraction
256 Remainder
257 Size, Largeness
258 Littleness
259 Expansion, Growth
260 Contraction
261 Distance, Remoteness

262 Form
263 Formlessness
264 Symmetry
265 Distortion
266 Structure
267 Length
268 Shortness
269 Breadth, Thickness
270 Narrowness, Thinness
271 Filament
272 Height
273 Shaft
274 Lowness
275 Depth
276 Shallowness
277 Straightness
278 Angularity
279 Curvature
280 Circularity
281 Convolution
282 Sphericity, Rotundity
283 Convexity, Protuberance
284 Concavity
285 Sharpness
286 Bluntness

287 Smoothness
288 Roughness
289 Notch
290 Furrow
291 Fold
292 Opening
293 Closure
294 Texture
295 Covering
296 Layer

297 Weight
298 Lightness

299 Rarity
300 Measurement

Class Five:
Living Things

301 Youth
302 Youngster
303 Age
304 Adult or Old Person

305 Organic Matter
306 Life
307 Death
308 Killing
309 Interment

310 Plants
311 Animals, Insects

312 Humankind

Class Six:
Natural Phenomena

313 Season
314 Morning, Noon
315 Evening, Night
316 Rain
317 Air, Weather
318 Wind

319 Cloud
320 Bubble

Class Seven: Behavior and the Will

321 Behavior
322 Misbehavior
323 Will
324 Willingness
325 Unwillingness
326 Obedience
327 Disobedience

328 Action
329 Inaction
330 Activity
331 Inactivity

332 Assent
333 Dissent
334 Affirmation
335 Negation, Denial

336 Imitation
337 Nonimitation

338 Compensation
339 Carefulness
340 Neglect

341 Interpretation
342 Misinterpretation
343 Communication
344 Uncommunicativeness
345 Secrecy
346 Concealment
347 Communications
348 Manifestation
349 Representation, Description
350 Misrepresentation
351 Disclosure
352 Publication
353 Messenger

354 Falseness
355 Exaggeration
356 Deception
357 Deceiver
358 Dupe

359 Resolution
360 Perseverance
361 Obstinacy
362 Irresolution
363 Changing of Mind
364 Caprice
365 Impulse
366 Leap
367 Plunge
368 Avoidance
369 Escape
370 Abandonment
371 Choice
372 Rejection

373 Custom, Habit
374 Unaccustomedness
375 Motivation, Inducement
376 Pretext
377 Allurement
378 Bribery
379 Dissuasion
380 Intention
381 Plan
382 Pursuit
383 Route, Path
384 Manner, Means
385 Provision, Equipment
386 Store, Supply
387 Use
388 Consumption
389 Misuse
390 Disuse
391 Uselessness

392 Improvement
393 Impairment
394 Relapse
395 Destruction
396 Restoration
397 Preservation
398 Rescue
399 Warning
400 Alarm
401 Haste
402 Leisure
403 Endeavor
404 Undertaking
405 Preparation
406 Unpreparedness
407 Accomplishment
408 Nonaccomplishment
409 Success
410 Failure
411 Victory
412 Defeat
413 Skill
414 Unskillfulness
415 Cunning
416 Artlessness
417 Authority
418 Lawlessness
419 Precept
420 Command
421 Demand
422 Advice
423 Council
424 Compulsion
425 Strictness
426 Laxness
427 Leniency
428 Restraint
429 Confinement
430 Freedom
431 Liberation
432 Subjection
433 Submission
434 Observance
435 Nonobservance
436 Promise
437 Compact
438 Security
439 Offer

440 Request
441 Consent
442 Refusal
443 Permission
444 Prohibition
445 Repeal
446 Promotion
447 Demotion, Deposal
448 Resignation, Retirement

449 Aid
450 Cooperation
451 Opposition
452 Opponent
453 Resistance
454 Defiance
455 Accord
456 Disaccord
457 Contention
458 Warfare
459 Attack
460 Defense
461 Combatant
462 Arms
463 Arena
464 Peace
465 Pacification
466 Mediation
467 Neutrality
468 Compromise

469 Possession
470 Possessor
471 Property
472 Acquisition
473 Loss
474 Retention
475 Relinquishment
476 Participation
477 Apportionment
478 Giving
479 Receiving
480 Taking
481 Restitution
482 Theft
483 Thief
484 Parsimony
485 Liberality
486 Prodigality

487 Celebration
488 Humorousness
489 Wit, Humor
490 Banter

491 Cowardice
492 Courage
493 Rashness
494 Caution

495 Fastidiousness
496 Taste, Tastefulness
497 Vulgarity

498 Ornamentation
499 Plainness
500 Affectation
501 Ostentation
502 Boasting
503 Bluster
504 Courtesy
505 Discourtesy
506 Retaliation
507 Revenge

508 Ridicule
509 Approval
510 Disapproval
511 Flattery
512 Disparagement
513 Curse
514 Threat

515 Fasting
516 Sobriety

Class Eight: Language

517 Signs, Indicators
518 Meaning
519 Latent Meaningfulness
520 Meaninglessness
521 Intelligibility
522 Unintelligibility
523 Language
524 Speech
525 Imperfect Speech
526 Word
527 Nomenclature
528 Anonymity
529 Phrase
530 Grammar
531 Ungrammaticalness

532 Diction
533 Elegance
534 Inelegance
535 Plain Speech
536 Figure of Speech
537 Conciseness
538 Diffuseness
539 Ambiguity

540 Talkativeness
541 Conversation
542 Soliloquy
543 Public Speaking
544 Eloquence
545 Grandiloquence

546 Letter
547 Writing
548 Printing
549 Record
550 Recorder
551 Information
552 News
553 Correspondence
554 Book
555 Periodical
556 Treatise
557 Abridgment
558 Library

Class Nine: Human Society and Institutions

559 Relationship by Blood
560 Ancestry
561 Posterity
562 Lovemaking, Endearment
563 Marriage
564 Relationship by Marriage
565 Celibacy
566 Divorce, Widowhood

567 School
568 Teaching
569 Misteaching
570 Learning
571 Teacher
572 Student

573 Direction, Management
574 Director
575 Master
576 Deputy, Agent
577 Servant, Employee

578 Fashion
579 Social Convention
580 Formality
581 Informality
582 Sociability
583 Unsociability
584 Seclusion
585 Hospitality, Welcome
586 Inhospitality

587 Friendship
588 Friend
589 Enmity
590 Misanthropy
591 Public Spirit
592 Benefactor
593 Evildoer
594 Jurisdiction
595 Tribunal
596 Judge, Jury
597 Lawyer
598 Legal Action
599 Accusation
600 Justification
601 Acquittal
602 Condemnation
603 Penalty
604 Punishment
605 Instruments of Punishment

606 The People
607 Social Class and Status
608 Aristocracy, Nobility, Gentry
609 Politics
610 Politician
611 Politico-Economic Principles
612 Government
613 Legislature, Government Organization
614 United Nations, International Organizations
615 Commission

616 Associate
617 Association

618 Wealth
619 Poverty
620 Lending
621 Borrowing
622 Financial Credit
623 Debt
624 Payment
625 Nonpayment
626 Expenditure
627 Receipts
628 Accounts
629 Transfer of Property or Right
630 Price, Fee
631 Discount
632 Expensiveness
633 Cheapness
634 Costlessness
635 Thrift

Class Ten: Values and Ideals

636 Ethics
637 Right
638 Wrong
639 Dueness
640 Undueness
641 Duty
642 Prerogative
643 Imposition
644 Probity
645 Improbity
646 Honor

647 Insignia
648 Title

649 Justice
650 Injustice
651 Selfishness
652 Unselfishness
653 Virtue
654 Vice
655 Wrongdoing
656 Guilt
657 Innocence
658 Atonement
659 Good Person
660 Bad Person
661 Disrepute
662 Repute
663 Sensuality
664 Chastity
665 Unchastity
666 Indecency
667 Asceticism
668 Temperance
669 Intemperance
670 Moderation
671 Violence
672 Gluttony
673 Legality
674 Illegality

675 Religions, Cults, Sects
676 Theology
677 Deity
678 Mythical and Polytheistic Gods and Spirits
679 Angel, Saint
680 Evil Spirits
681 Heaven
682 Hell
683 Scripture
684 Prophets, Religious Founders
685 Sanctity
686 Unsanctity
687 Orthodoxy
688 Unorthodoxy

689 Occultism
690 Sorcery
691 Spell, Charm

692 Piety
693 Sanctimony
694 Impiety
695 Nonreligiousness

696 Worship
697 Idolatry
698 The Ministry
699 The Clergy
700 The Laity
701 Religious Rites
702 Ecclesiastical Attire
703 Religious Buildings

Class Eleven:
Arts

704 Show Business, Theater
705 Dance
706 Motion Pictures
707 Entertainer
708 Music
709 Harmonics, Musical Elements
710 Musician
711 Musical Instruments

712 Visual Arts
713 Graphic Arts
714 Photography
715 Sculpture
716 Artist
717 Architecture, Design
718 Literature
719 History
720 Poetry
721 Prose
722 Fiction
723 Criticism of the Arts

Class Twelve:
Occupations and Crafts

724 Occupation
725 Exertion
726 Worker, Doer
727 Unionism, Labor Union

728 Money
729 Finance, Investment
730 Businessman, Merchant
731 Commerce, Economics
732 Illicit Business
733 Purchase
734 Sale
735 Merchandise
736 Market
737 Stock Market
738 Securities

739 Workplace
740 Weaving
741 Sewing
742 Ceramics

Class Thirteen:
Sports and Amusements

743 Amusement
744 Sports
745 Baseball
746 Football
747 Basketball
748 Tennis
749 Hockey
750 Bowling
751 Golf
752 Soccer
753 Skiing
754 Boxing
755 Track and Field
756 Automobile Racing
757 Horse Racing
758 Cardplaying
759 Gambling
760 Other Sports

Class Fourteen:
The Mind and Ideas

761 Existence
762 Nonexistence
763 Substantiality
764 Unsubstantiality
765 State
766 Circumstance
767 Intrinsicality
768 Extrinsicality
769 Accompaniment
770 Assemblage
771 Dispersion
772 Inclusion
773 Exclusion
774 Extraneousness

775 Relation
776 Unrelatedness
777 Correlation
778 Sameness
779 Contrariety
780 Difference
781 Uniformity
782 Nonuniformity
783 Multiformity
784 Similarity
785 Copy
786 Model
787 Dissimilarity

788 Agreement
789 Disagreement
790 Equality
791 Inequality
792 Whole
793 Part
794 Completeness
795 Incompleteness

796 Composition
797 Mixture
798 Simplicity
799 Complexity
800 Joining
801 Analysis
802 Separation
803 Cohesion
804 Noncohesion
805 Combination
806 Disintegration

807 Order
808 Arrangement
809 Classification
810 Disorder
811 Disarrangement
812 Continuity
813 Discontinuity
814 Precedence
815 Sequence
816 Precursor
817 Sequel
818 Beginning
819 Middle
820 End
821 Time
822 Timelessness
823 Infinity
824 Period
825 Spell
826 Interim
827 Duration
828 Transience
829 Perpetuity
830 Instantaneousness
831 Event
832 Measurement of Time
833 Anachronism
834 Previousness
835 Subsequence
836 Simultaneity
837 The Past
838 The Present
839 The Future
840 Imminence
841 Newness
842 Oldness
843 Timeliness
844 Untimeliness
845 Earliness
846 Lateness
847 Frequency
848 Infrequency
849 Repetition
850 Regularity of Recurrence
851 Irregularity of Recurrence

852 Change
853 Permanence
854 Changeableness
855 Stability
856 Continuance
857 Cessation
858 Conversion
859 Reversion
860 Revolution
861 Evolution
862 Substitution
863 Interchange

864 Generality
865 Particularity
866 Specialty
867 Conformity
868 Nonconformity
869 Normality
870 Abnormality

871 List
872 Oneness
873 Doubleness
874 Duplication
875 Bisection
876 Three
877 Triplication
878 Trisection
879 Four
880 Quadruplication
881 Quadrisection
882 Five and Over
883 Plurality
884 Numerousness
885 Fewness

886 Cause
887 Effect
888 Attribution
889 Operation
890 Productiveness
891 Unproductiveness
892 Production
893 Product
894 Influence
895 Absence of Influence
896 Tendency
897 Liability
898 Involvement
899 Concurrence
900 Counteraction
901 Support

902 Impulse, Impact
903 Reaction
904 Pushing, Throwing
905 Pulling
906 Leverage, Purchase
907 Attraction
908 Repulsion
909 Ejection
910 Overrunning
911 Shortcoming
912 Elevation
913 Depression
914 Circuitousness
915 Rotation
916 Oscillation
917 Agitation

918 Spectator
919 Intellect
920 Intelligence, Wisdom
921 Wise Person
922 Unintelligence
923 Foolishness
924 Fool
925 Sanity
926 Insanity, Mania
927 Eccentricity

928 Knowledge
929 Intellectual
930 Ignorance
931 Thought
932 Idea
933 Absence of Thought
934 Intuition, Instinct
935 Reasoning
936 Sophistry
937 Topic
938 Inquiry
939 Answer
940 Solution
941 Discovery
942 Experiment

943 Comparison
944 Discrimination
945 Indiscrimination
946 Judgment
947 Prejudgment
948 Misjudgment
949 Overestimation
950 Underestimation
951 Theory, Supposition
952 Philosophy

953 Belief
954 Credulity
955 Unbelief
956 Incredulity
957 Evidence, Proof
958 Disproof
959 Qualification
960 No Qualifications

961 Foresight
962 Prediction
963 Necessity
964 Predetermination
965 Prearrangement
966 Possibility
967 Impossibility
968 Probability
969 Improbability
970 Certainty
971 Uncertainty
972 Chance

973 Truth
974 Wise Saying
975 Error
976 Illusion
977 Disillusionment

978 Mental Attitude
979 Broad-mindedness
980 Narrow-mindedness
981 Curiosity
982 Incuriosity
983 Attention
984 Inattention
985 Distraction, Confusion
986 Imagination
987 Unimaginativeness

988 Specter

989 Memory
990 Forgetfulness
991 Sufficiency
992 Insufficiency
993 Excess
994 Satiety

995 Expedience
996 Inexpedience
997 Importance
998 Unimportance

999 Goodness
1000 Badness
1001 Bane
1002 Perfection
1003 Imperfection
1004 Blemish
1005 Mediocrity

1006 Danger
1007 Safety
1008 Protection
1009 Refuge

1010 Prosperity
1011 Adversity
1012 Hindrance
1013 Difficulty
1014 Facility
1015 Ugliness
1016 Beauty

Class Fifteen: Science and Technology

1017 Mathematics
1018 Physics
1019 Heat
1020 Heating
1021 Fuel
1022 Incombustibility
1023 Cold
1024 Refrigeration

1025 Light
1026 Light Source
1027 Darkness, Dimness
1028 Shade
1029 Transparency
1030 Semitransparency
1031 Opaqueness

1032 Electricity, Magnetism
1033 Electronics
1034 Radio
1035 Television
1036 Radar, Radiolocators
1037 Radiation, Radioactivity
1038 Nuclear Physics
1039 Mechanics
1040 Tools, Machinery
1041 Automation
1042 Computer Science
1043 Engineering

1044 Friction
1045 Density
1046 Hardness, Rigidity
1047 Softness, Pliancy
1048 Elasticity
1049 Toughness
1050 Brittleness, Fragility
1051 Powderiness, Crumbliness
1052 Materiality
1053 Immateriality
1054 Materials
1055 Inorganic Matter
1056 Oils, Lubricants
1057 Resins, Gums
1058 Minerals, Metals
1059 Rock

1060 Chemistry, Chemicals
1061 Liquidity
1062 Semiliquidity
1063 Pulpiness
1064 Liquefaction
1065 Moisture
1066 Dryness
1067 Vapor, Gas
1068 Biology
1069 Agriculture
1070 Animal Husbandry
1071 Earth Science
1072 The Universe, Astronomy
1073 The Environment
1074 Rocketry, Missilery
1075 Space Travel

Abbreviations Used in This Book

ADJS	adjectives
ADVS	adverbs
Anon	anonymous
Arab	Arabic
Austral	Australia, Australian
Brazil Pg	Brazilian Portuguese
Brit	British
Can	Canada, Canadian
Can Fr	Canadian French
Chin	China, Chinese
CONJ	conjunction
Cz	Czechoslovakian
Dan	Danish
E	East, Eastern
Eng	England, English
etc	et cetera
fem	feminine
Fr	France, French
Ger	Germany, German
Gk	Greece, Greek
gram	grammar
Heb	Hebrew
Hindu	Hinduism
Hung	Hungary, Hungarian
INTERJS	interjections
Ir	Ireland, Irish
Ital	Italy, Italian
L	Latin
masc	masculine
N	North, Northern
nf	nonformal usage
Norw	Norway, Norwegian
old	older usage
Pg	Portugal, Portuguese
PHRS	phrases
pl	plural
Pol	Poland, Polish
PREP	preposition
Russ	Russia, Russian
S	South, Southern
Scot	Scotland, Scottish
sing	singular
Skt	Sanskrit
Sp	Spanish
Sp Amer	Spanish American
Swah	Swahili
Swed	Sweden, Swedish
Turk	Turkey, Turkish
UN	United Nations
US	United States
W	West, Western

1 BIRTH

NOUNS 1 **birth,** genesis, **nativity,** nascency, **childbirth, childbearing, having a baby, giving birth, birthing,** parturition, biogenesis, blessed event, the stork <nf>; **confinement,** lying-in, being brought to bed, **childbed,** *accouchement* <Fr>; **labor,** travail, birth throes *or* pangs; **delivery,** blessed event <nf>; the Nativity; multiparity; **hatching;** littering, whelping, farrowing; active birth, alternative birth

VERBS 2 **be born,** have birth, come forth, issue forth, see the light of day, come into the world; **hatch;** be illegitimate *or* born out of wedlock, have the bar sinister; be born on the wrong side of the blanket, come in through a side door <nf>

3 **give birth, bear,** bear *or* have young, **have; have a baby,** bear a child, have children; drop, cast, throw, pup, whelp, kitten, foal, calve, fawn, lamb, cub, yean, farrow, litter, spawn, lay eggs; lie in, be confined, labor, travail

ADJS 4 **born,** given birth; **hatched;** bred, begotten, cast, dropped, whelped, foaled, calved, etc; "cast naked upon the naked earth"—Pliny the Elder; née; newborn; stillborn; **bearing,** giving birth

2 THE BODY

NOUNS 1 **body,** the person, carcass, anatomy, frame, bodily *or* corporal *or* corporeal entity, physical self, physical *or* bodily structure, physique, soma, somatotype, bod <nf>; organism, organic complex, flesh and blood <nf>; the material *or* physical part

2 **the skeleton, the bones,** one's bones, framework, frame, structure, bony framework, endoskeleton; axial skeleton, appendicular skeleton, visceral skeleton; rib cage; skeletology; **bone** <see list>; cartilage

3 **the muscles** <see list>, myon, voluntary muscle, involuntary muscle; **musculature,** physique; **connective tissue,** connectivum; sinew, tendon, ligament, cartilage

4 **the skin, skin,** dermis, integument, **epidermis,** scarfskin, ecderon; hypodermis, hypoderma; dermis, derma, corium, true skin, cutis, *cutis vera* <L>; epithelium, pavement epithelium; endothelium; mesoderm; endoderm, entoderm; blastoderm; ectoderm, epiblast, ectoblast; enderon; connective tissue

5 <castoff skin> slough, cast, desquamation, exuviae, molt

6 **membrane,** membrana, pellicle, chorion; basement membrane, membrana propria; allantoic membrane; amnion, amniotic sac, arachnoid membrane; serous membrane, serosa, membrana serosa; **eardrum,** tympanic membrane, tympanum, membrana tympana; **mucous membrane; velum; peritoneum;** periosteum; pleura; pericardium; meninx, **meninges;** perineurium, neurilemma; conjunctiva; **hymen** *or* maidenhead

7 **member, appendage, external organ; head,** noggin *and* noodle <nf>; **arm;** forearm; wrist; elbow; upper arm, biceps; **leg,** limb, shank, gam *and* pin <nf>, legs, wheels <nf>; shin, cnemis; ankle, tarsus; calf; knee; thigh, ham; popliteal space; **hand,** paw <nf>, finger; **foot,** dog *and* puppy <nf>, toe

8 **teeth,** dentition, ivories *and* choppers <nf>, pearly whites; periodontal tissue, alveolar ridge, alveolus; **tooth,** fang, tusk; snag, snaggletooth, peg; bucktooth, gagtooth *or* gang tooth <nf>; pivot tooth; cuspid, bicuspid; canine tooth, canine, dogtooth, eyetooth, carnassial, tush <nf>; molar, grinder; premolar; incisor, cutter, fore-tooth; wisdom tooth; milk tooth, baby tooth, deciduous tooth; permanent tooth; crown, cusp, dentine, enamel

9 **eye,** visual organ, organ of vision, oculus, optic, **orb,** peeper <nf>; clear eyes, bright eyes, starry orbs; saucer eyes, banjo eyes <nf>, popeyes, goggle eyes; naked eye, unassisted *or* unaided eye; corner of the eye; epicanthus, epicanthic fold; eyeball; retina; lens; cornea; sclera; optic nerve; iris; pupil; eyelid, lid, nictitating membrane; choroid coat, aqueous humor, vitreous humor

10 **ear,** auditory apparatus, hearing organ, lug <Scot>; external ear, **outer ear;** auricle, pinna; tragus; cauliflower ear; concha, conch, shell; ear lobe, lobe, lobule; auditory canal, acoustic *or* auditory meatus; helix; **middle ear,** tympanic cavity, tympanum; eardrum, drumhead, tympanic membrane; auditory ossicles; malleus, hammer, incus, anvil; stapes, stirrup; mastoid process; eustachian *or* auditory tube; **inner ear;** round window, secondary eardrum; oval window; bony labyrinth, membraneous labyrinth, utricle; perilymph, endolymph; vestibule; semicircular canals; cochlea; basilar membrane, organ of Corti; auditory *or* acoustic nerve

11 **nose,** nasal organ, snout, smeller, proboscis, beak, schnoz <nf>; nostril, naris, nasal cavity; olfactory nerve

12 **mouth,** oral cavity; lips, tongue, taste buds; mandible, jaw; gums, periodontal tissue; uvula; teeth

13 **genitals,** genitalia, sex organs, reproductive organs, pudenda, private parts, privy parts, privates *or* meat <nf>; **crotch,** crutch <Brit>, pubic region, perineum, pelvis; **male organs; penis, phallus,** *lingam* <Skt>, glans penis; gonads;

testes, testicles, balls *and* nuts *and* rocks *and* ballocks *and* family jewels <nf>, cullions <old>; spermary; scrotum, bag *and* basket <nf>, cod <old>; vas deferens; **female organs; vulva,** *yoni* <Skt>, cunt <nf>; **vagina;** clitoris, glans clitoridis; labia, labia majora, labia minora, lips, nymphae; cervix; ovary; uterus, womb, fallopian tubes; secondary sex characteristic, mons pubis, mons veneris, pubic hair, beard, breasts

14 **nervous system, nerves,** central nervous system, peripheral nervous system; autonomic nervous system; sympathetic *or* thoracolumbar nervous system, parasympathetic *or* craniosacral nervous system; **nerve; neuron;** nerve cell, sensory *or* afferent neuron, sensory cell; motor *or* afferent neuron; association *or* internuncial neuron; axon, dendrite, myelin *or* medullary sheath; **synapse;** effector organ; nerve trunk; **ganglion;** plexus, solar plexus; **spinal cord**

15 **brain,** encephalon; cerebrum, cerebellum

16 **viscera, vitals, internal organs, insides, innards** <nf>, entrails, inwards, internals, thoracic viscera, abdominal viscera; inner mechanism, works <nf>; peritoneum, peritoneal cavity; **guts** *and* kishkes *and* giblets <nf>; **heart,** ticker *and* pump <nf>, endocardium, atria, ventricles, aorta; **lung, lungs; liver;** gallbladder; spleen; pancreas; **kidney, kidneys;** urethra

17 **digestion,** ingestion, assimilation, absorption; primary digestion, secondary digestion, peristalsis; predigestion; salivary digestion, gastric *or* peptic digestion, pancreatic digestion, intestinal digestion; digestive system, alimentary canal, gastrointestinal tract; salivary glands, gastric glands, liver, pancreas; digestive secretions, saliva, gastric juice, pancreatic juice, intestinal juice, bile

18 <digestive system> mouth, maw, salivary glands; gullet, crop, craw, **throat,** pharynx; esophagus, gorge, weasand <old>, wizen <Brit nf>; fauces, isthmus of the fauces; **abdomen; stomach, belly** <nf>, **midriff,** diaphragm; swollen *or* distended *or* protruding *or* prominent belly, *embonpoint* <Fr>, **paunch,** ventripotence; underbelly; pylorus; **intestine, intestines,** entrails, **bowels;** small intestine, villus, odenum, jejunum, ileum; blind gut, cecum; foregut, hindgut; midgut, mesogaster; **appendix,** vermiform appendix *or* process; large intestine, colon, sigmoid flexure, rectum; anus

19 <nf terms> goozle, guzzle; tum, tummy, tum-tum, breadbasket, **gut,** bulge, fallen chest, corporation, spare tire, bay window, **pot,** potbelly, potgut, beerbelly, German *or* Milwaukee goiter, pusgut, swagbelly; **guts,** tripes, stuffings

20 **metabolism,** metabolic process; basal metabolism, acid-base metabolism, energy metabolism; **anabolism,** substance metabolism, constructive metabolism, assimilation; **catabolism,** destructive metabolism, disassimilation; endogenous metabolism, exogenous metabolism; pharmacokinetic metabolism; uricotelic metabolism; metabolic rate

21 **breathing, respiration,** aspiration, **inspiration, inhalation; expiration, exhalation;** insufflation, exsufflation; **breath,** wind, breath of air; pant, puff; wheeze, asthmatic wheeze; broken wind; gasp, gulp; snoring, snore, stertor; sniff, sniffle, snuff, snuffle; sigh, suspiration; sneeze, sternutation; cough, hack; hiccup; **artificial respiration,** kiss of life, mouth-to-mouth resuscitation

22 <respiratory system> **lungs,** bellows <nf>, lights <old>; diaphragm; **windpipe, trachea,** weasand <old>, wizen <Brit nf>; bronchus, bronchi <pl>, bronchial tube; epiglottis

23 **duct, vessel,** canal, passage; gland; vasculature, vascularity, vascularization; vas, meatus; thoracic duct, lymphatic; emunctory <old>; pore; urethra, urete; vagina; oviduct, fallopian tube; salpinx; eustachian tube; ostium; fistula; **blood vessel; artery,** aorta, pulmonary artery, carotid; **vein,** jugular vein, vena cava, pulmonary vein; portal vein, varicose vein; venation; **capillary;** arteriole, veinlet, veinule, venule

24 <body fluids> humor, **lymph,** chyle, choler, yellow bile, black bile; rheum; serous fluid, serum; plasma; **pus, matter,** purulence, peccant humor <old>; suppuration; ichor, sanies; discharge; gleet, leukorrhea, the whites; mucus; **phlegm,** snot <nf>; **saliva, spit** <nf>; **urine, piss** <nf>; **perspiration, sweat** <nf>; **tear,** teardrop, lachryma; **milk,** mother's milk, colostrum, lactation; **semen**; cerumen, earwax

25 **blood,** whole blood, lifeblood, venous blood, arterial blood, **gore;** ichor, humor; grume; **serum,** blood serum; blood substitute; **plasma,** synthetic plasma, plasma substitute, dextran, clinical dextran; **blood cell** *or* **corpuscle,** hemocyte; **red corpuscle** *or* **blood cell,** erythrocyte; **white corpuscle** *or* **blood cell,** leukocyte, blood platelet; **hemoglobin;** blood pressure; circulation; **blood group** *or* **type,** type O *or* A *or* B *or* AB; Rh-type, Rh-positive, Rh-negative; **Rh factor** *or* Rhesus factor; antigen, antibody, isoantibody, globulin; opsonin; blood grouping; blood count; hematoscope, hematoscopy, hemometer; bloodstream

ADJS **26** **skeleton, skeletal; bone,** osteal; **bony,** osseous, ossiferous; ossicular; ossified; **spinal,** myelic; **muscle, muscular,** myoid; cartilage, cartilaginous

27 **cutaneous,** cuticular; skinlike, skinny; skin-deep; **epidermal,** epidermic, ecderonic; hypodermic, hypodermal, subcutaneous; dermal, dermic; ectodermal, ectodermic; endermic, endermatic; cortical; epicarpal; testaceous; membranous

28 **eye, optic,** ophthalmic; visual; **ear,** otic; aural

29 **genital;** phallic, penile, penial; testicular; scrotal; spermatic, seminal; vulvar, vulval; vaginal; clitoral; cervical; ovarian; uterine; reproductive, generative, hormonal

30 **nerve, neural; brain, cerebral,** cerebellar, nervous, synaptic

31 **digestive;** stomachal, stomachic, abdominal; ventral, celiac, **gastric,** ventricular; big-bellied 257.18; **metabolic,** basal metabolic, anabolic, catabolic; assimilative, dissimilative

32 **respiratory,** breathing; inspiratory, expiratory; nasal, rhinal; bronchial, tracheal; **lung,** pulmonary, pulmonic, pneumonic; puffing, huffing, snorting, wheezing, wheezy, asthmatic, stertorous, snoring, panting, heaving; sniffy, sniffly, sniffling, snuffy, snuffly, snuffling; sneezy, sternutative, sternutatory, errhine

33 **circulatory, vascular,** vascularized, circulating; vasiform; venous, veinal, venose; capillary; arterial, aortic; **blood,** hematal, hematic; bloody, gory, sanguinary; lymphatic, rheumy, humoral, phlegmy, ichorous, serous, sanious; chylific, chylifactive, chylifactory; **pussy,** purulent, suppurated *or* suppurating, suppurative; teary, tearing, tearlike, **lachrymal,** lacrimal, lacrimatory; mucous; sweaty, perspiring; urinary

34 **bones**

acetabelum
aitchbone
alveolar bone
anklebone
anvil
astragalus *or* anklebone
backbone *or* spine *or* spinal column *or* myel
basilar *or* basioccipital bone
breastbone *or* sternum
calcaneus
calf bone *or* fibula
cannon bone
carpal *or* carpus
cheekbone
chin
clavicle
coccyx
collarbone
costa
cranial bones
cranium
cuboid
edgebone
ethmoid bone
femur
fibula
floating rib
frontal bone
funny *or* crazy bone
gladiolus
hallux
hammer
haunch bone
heel bone
hipbone
humerus
hyoid *or* lingual bone
ilium
incus
inferior maxillary
innominate bone
intermaxillary *or* premaxillary *or* incisive bone
interparietal *or* incarial bone
ischium
kneecap *or* patella *or* whirl bone
lacrimal bone
lenticular bone *or* os orbiculare
lentiform *or* pisiform *or* postular bone
malar *or* zygomatic bone
malleus
mandible *and* maxilla *or* jawbones
mastoid
maxillary
metacarpal *or* metacarpus
metatarsal *or* metatarsus
multangular bone large *or* trapezium
multangular bone small *or* trapezoid
nasal bone
occipital bone
palate bone
parietal bone
patella
pelvis
periotic bone *or* otocrane
petrosal *or* petrous bone
phalanx *or* phalanges <pl>
pterygoid bone
pubis
pyramidal bone *or* os triquetrum
rachidial
rachis *or* vertebral column
radius
rib
sacrum *or* resurrection bone
scaphoid bone
scapula
semilunar bone
sesamoid bones
shinbone
shoulder blade
skull
sphenoid bone
stapes
sternum
stirrup
sutural *or* wormian bone
talus
tarsal *or* tarsus
temporal bone
thighbone *or* femur
tibia
ulna
vertebra
vomer
wristbone
zygomatic

35 **muscles**

abdominal
anterior tibial
biceps brachii
biceps femoris
crural ligaments soleus
deltoid
erector
external oblique
extensor
fascia lata
flexor
gastrocnemius
gluteus maximus
gracilis
hamstring
latissimus dorsi
pectoralis major
pectoralis minor
quadriceps
rectus abdominis
rectus femoris
rotator cuff
sartorius
sternomastoid
tendon of Achilles
trapezius
triceps brachii

3 HAIR

NOUNS 1 **hairiness, shagginess,** hirsuteness, pilosity, fuzziness, frizziness, **furriness,** downiness, fluffiness, woolliness, fleeciness, bristliness, stubbliness, burrheadedness, mopheadedness, shockheadedness; crinosity, hispidity, villosity; hypertrichosis, pilosis, pilosism, pilosity

2 **hair,** pile, **fur** 4.2, coat, pelt, **fleece,** wool, camel's hair, horsehair; **mane;** shag, tousled *or* matted hair, **mat of hair;** pubescence, pubes, pubic hair; hairlet, villus, capillament, cilium, ciliolum 271.1; seta, setula; bristle 288.3

3 gray hair, grizzle, silver *or* silvery hair, white hair, salt-and-pepper hair *or* beard, graying temples, “hoary hair”—Thomas Gray, “the silver livery of advised age”—Shakespeare, “a crown of glory”—Bible

4 **head of hair,** head, crine; **crop,** crop of hair, mat, elflock, **thatch,** mop, **shock,** shag, fleece, **mane; locks, tresses,** crowning glory, helmet of hair; “her native ornament of hair”—Ovid

5 **lock, tress;** flowing locks, flowing tresses; **curl, ringlet,** “wanton ringlets wav’d”—Milton; earlock, *payess* <Yiddish>; lovelock; frizz, frizzle; crimp; ponytail

6 **tuft, flock,** fleck; forelock, widow’s peak, quiff <Brit>, fetlock, cowlick; **bang, bangs,** fringe

7 **braid,** plait, twist; **pigtail,** rat’s-tail *or* rat-tail, tail; **queue,** cue; coil, knot; topknot, scalplock, pigtail, bunches; bun, chignon; widow’s peak

8 **beard, whiskers;** beaver <nf>; full beard, chin whiskers, side whiskers; **sideburns,** burnsides, **muttonchops; goatee,** tuft; imperial, **Vandyke,** spade beard; adolescent beard, pappus, down, peach fuzz, “the soft down of manhood”—Callimachus, “his phoenix down”—Shakespeare; **stubble,** bristles, five o’clock shadow

9 <plant beard> awn, brush, arista, pile, pappus

10 <animal and insect whiskers> tactile process, tactile hair, **feeler, antenna,** vibrissa; barb, barbel, barbule; cat whisker

11 **mustache,** mustachio, soup-strainer <nf>, toothbrush, handle bars *or* handlebar mustache, Fu Manchu mustache, Zapata mustache, walrus mustache, tash <nf>

12 **eyelashes, lashes,** cilia; **eyebrows,** brows

13 false hair, hair extensions, switch, fall, chignon, rat <nf>

14 **wig, peruke, toupee,** hairpiece, rug *and* divot *and* doormat <nf>; **periwig**

15 **hairdo, hairstyle, haircut, coiffure,** coif, headdress; wave; marcel, marcel wave; **permanent,** permanent wave; home permanent; cold wave; blow-drying, finger-drying; hair dryer

16 **feather, plume,** pinion; **quill;** pinfeather; contour feather, penna, down feather, plume feather, plumule; filoplume; hackle; scapular; **crest,** tuft, topknot; panache

17 <parts of feathers> quill, calamus, barrel; barb, shaft, barbule, barbicel, cilium, filament, filamentule

18 **plumage, feathers,** feather, feathering; contour feathers; breast feathers, mail <of a hawk>; hackle; flight feathers; remiges, primaries, secondaries, tertiaries; covert, tectrices; speculum, wing bay

19 **down, fluff,** flue, floss, **fuzz, fur,** pile; eiderdown, eider; swansdown; thistledown; lint

VERBS 20 grow *or* sprout hair; whisker, **bewhisker**

21 **feather, fledge,** feather out; sprout wings

22 cut *or* dress the hair, trim, **barber, coiffure,** coif, style *or* shape the hair; pompadour, wave, marcel; process, conk; **bob, shingle**

ADJS 23 **hairlike,** trichoid, capillary; filamentous, filamentary, filiform; bristlelike 288.10

24 **hairy, hirsute,** barbigerous, crinose, crinite, pubescent; pilose, pilous, pileous; **furry,** furred; villous; villose; ciliate, cirrose; hispid, hispidulous, setal; **woolly, fleecy,** lanate, lanated, flocky, flocculent, floccose; woolly-headed, woolly-haired, ulotrichous; bushy, tufty, **shaggy,** shagged; matted, tomentose; mopheaded, burrheaded, shockheaded, unshorn; **bristly** 288.9; fuzzy

25 **bearded,** whiskered, whiskery, **bewhiskered,** barbate, barbigerous; mustached *or* mustachioed; awned, awny, pappose; goateed; unshaved, **unshaven;** stubbled, stubbly

26 **wigged,** periwigged, peruked, toupeed

27 **feathery, plumy;** hirsute; featherlike, plumelike, pinnate, pennate; **downy,** fluffy, nappy, velvety, peachy, fuzzy, flossy, furry

28 **feathered, plumaged,** flighted, **pinioned, plumed,** pennate, plumate, plumose

29 **tufted, crested,** topknotted

4 CLOTHING MATERIALS

NOUNS 1 **material, fabric** <see list>, **cloth, textile,** textile fabric, texture, tissue, stuff, weave, weft, woof, web, **goods,** drapery, *étoffe* or *tissu* <Fr>; thread, yarn, rope; napery, table linen, felt; silk; lace; cotton; wool; polyester; nylon; rag, rags

2 **fur, pelt, hide,** fell, fleece, vair <heraldry>; imitation fur, fake fur, synthetic fur; furring; peltry, skins; **leather** <see list>, rawhide; imitation leather, leather paper, leatherette

3 **leather**

alligator
buckskin
buff
cabretta
calf leather
capeskin
chamois *or* chammy
chamois skin
chevrette
Cordovan
cowhide
deerskin
goatskin
grain leather
horsehide
kid
lambskin
levant morocco
mocha
morocco
nappa
oxhide
patent leather
pebble leather
pigskin
pig suede
rawhide
Russian leather
saddle leather
shagreen
sheepskin
snakeskin
sole-leather *or* shoe-leather
stirrup leather

suede
tawed leather
whitleather *or* white leather

4 fabrics, fibers

acetate
acrylic
alpaca
angora
astrakhan
baize
balbriggan
baldachin
barathea
batik
batiste
bayadere
bengaline
bombazine
boucle
brilliantine
broadcloth
brocade
brocatel *or* brocatelle
buckram
bunting
burlap
byssus
calico
cambric
camel hair *or* camel's hair
candlewick
Canton crepe
canvas
cashmere
castor
challis
chambray
charmeuse
cheesecloth
chenille
cheviot
chiffon
chinchilla
chino
chintz
cire
cloque
cloth
combing wool
cord
corduroy
cotton
Courtelle
crash
crepe de Chine
cretonne
Crimplene
crinoline
Dacron
damask
denim
dimity
doeskin
Donegal tweed
drill
drugget
duck
duffel *or* duffle
dungaree
duetyn *or* duvetyne
ecru
faille
felt
flannel
flannelette
fleece
foulard
frieze
fustian
gabardine
galatea
gauze
Georgette
gingham
gossamer
grenadine
grogram
grosgrain
gunny
haircloth
Harris tweed
herringbone
homespun
honan
hopsack
horsehair
huckaback
jaconet
jacquard
jardiniere
jean
jersey
jute
Kendal green
kersey
khaki
lace
lamé
lawn
leatherette
leno
linen
linsey-woolsey
lisle
lisse
loden
Lurex
mackinaw
mackintosh *or* macintosh
madras
maline
marocain
marquisette
marseille *or* marseilles
mat
melton
merino
mesh
messaline
mohair
moire
moleskin
monk's cloth
moquette
mousseline
muslin
nainsook
nankeen
net or netting
ninon
nylon
oilcloth
oilskin
organdy
organza
organzine
paisley
panne
paramatta
percale
percaline
petersham
Pima
pique
plaid
plush
polyester
pongee
poplin
prunella
ragg
ratine
rayon
rep
russet
sackcloth
sacking
sailcloth
samite
sarcenet
sateen
satin
scrim
seersucker
serge
shalloon
shantung
sharkskin
Shetland wool
sheer
shoddy
shot silk
silk
spandex
stockinette
suede
surah
swansdown
swanskin
tabaret
tabby
taffeta
tapestry
terry cloth
ticking
tiffany
toile
toweling
tricot
tricotine
tulle
tussah
tweed
twill
velour
velvet
velveteen
Venetian cloth
vicuna
voile
webbing
whipcord
wool
worsted

5 CLOTHING

NOUNS 1 **clothing, clothes, apparel, wear, wearing apparel, daywear, dress,** dressing, **raiment,** garmenture, **garb, attire, array,** habit, habiliment, fashion, style 578.1, guise, **costume,** costumery, gear, toilette, trim, bedizenment; **vestment,** vesture, investment, investiture, canonicals, liturgical garment; **garments,** robes, robing, rags <nf>, drapery, finery, feathers; toggery *or* togs *or* **duds** *or* threads <nf>, sportswear; work clothes, fatigues; linen; menswear, men's clothing, womenswear, women's clothing; unisex clothing, uniwear, gender-crossing clothing; gender bender; latest fashion

2 **wardrobe,** furnishings, things, accouterments, trappings; **outfit,** livery, harness, caparison; turnout *and* getup *and* rig *and* rig-out <nf>; wedding clothes, bridal outfit, trousseau; maternity clothes

3 **garment,** vestment, vesture, robe, frock, gown, rag <nf>, togs *and* duds <nf>

4 **ready-mades,** ready-to-wear, off-the-rack clothes, store *or* store-bought clothes, wash-and-wear, dry goods

5 **rags, tatters,** secondhand clothes, seconds, old clothes, consignment clothes, Goodwill clothes; worn clothes, **hand-me-downs** *and* reach-me-downs <nf>, castoffs; slops; consignment clothes

6 **suit** <see list>, suit of clothes, **frock,** dress, rig <nf>, **costume, habit,** bib and tucker <nf>

7 **uniform** <see list>, **livery,** monkey suit <nf>; nurse's uniform, police officer's uniform, etc; athletic team uniform, baseball uniform, etc

8 **mufti,** civilian dress *or* clothes, **civvies** *and* cits <nf>, plain clothes

9 **costume,** costumery, character dress; outfit *and* getup *and* rig <nf>; masquerade, disguise, mask; tights, leotards; ballet skirt, tutu, bodysuit; motley, cap and bells; silks; buskin, sock

10 **finery, frippery, fancy dress,** fine *or* full feather <nf>, investiture, regalia, caparison, fig *or* full fig <Brit nf>; **best clothes,** best bib and tucker <nf>; **Sunday best** *and* Sunday clothes *and* Sunday-go-to-meeting clothes *and* Sunday-go-to-meetings <nf>, **glad rags** <nf>, ostrich feathers <nf>, party dress, dressy clothes

11 **formal dress,** formals, **evening dress, full dress,** dress clothes, evening wear, white tie and tails, **soup-and-fish** <nf>; dinner clothes; dress suit, full-dress suit, tail coat, tails <nf>; tuxedo, tux <nf>, dinner jacket; **regalia,** court dress; dress uniform, full-dress uniform, special full-dress uniform, social full-dress uniform; whites <nf>, dress whites; evening gown *or* dress, dinner dress *or* gown; morning dress, morning coat; semiformal dress; black tie, bow tie, cummerbund

12 **cloak,** overgarment <see list>

13 **outerwear; coat, jacket** <see list>; **overcoat,** overgarment <see list>, great-coat, **topcoat,** surcoat; **rainwear;** rain gear, raincoat, slicker, rainsuit, foul weather gear

14 **waistcoat,** weskit <nf>, **vest;** down vest

15 **shirt** <see list>, waist, **shirtwaist,** linen, sark *and* shift <nf>; **blouse,** bodice; pullover, shell, T-shirt; dickey; sweater <see list>

16 **dress** <see list>, **gown, frock; skirt** <see list>

17 **apron,** *tablier* <Fr>; pinafore, bib, tucker; smock

18 **pants, trousers** <see list>, pair of trousers *or* pants, **breeches,** britches <nf>, **pantaloons;** jeans, designer jeans, blue jeans, dungarees; **slacks;** khakis, chinos; corduroys *or* cords, flannels, ducks, pinstripes, bell-bottoms, hiphuggers, Capri pants *or* Capris, pegged pants, pedal pushers, leggings, overalls, knickers, breeches, jodhpurs, sweatpants; shorts, short pants, Bermuda shorts, hot pants, Jamaica shorts, surfer shorts, short shorts, cycling shorts, gym shorts

19 **waistband,** belt 280.3; **sash,** cummerbund; **loincloth,** breechcloth *or* breechclout, waistcloth, **G-string,** loinguard, dhoti, moocha; **diaper,** dydee <nf>, napkins <Brit>, nappies <Brit nf>

20 **dishabille,** *déshabillé* <Fr>, **undress,** something more comfortable; **negligee,** *négligé* <Fr>; **wrap,** wrapper; sport clothes, playwear, activewear, sportswear, casual wear, leisurewear, **casual clothes** *or* **dress,** fling-on clothes, loungewear, plain clothes, dress-down clothes, knock-around clothes, grubbies <nf>; dress-down day, casual day

21 **nightwear,** nightclothes <see list>, sleepwear; **nightdress, nightgown, nightie** *and* shortie nightie <nf>, negligee, nightshirt; **pajamas,** pyjamas <Brit>, pj's <nf>, baby doll pajamas; sleepers; robe, bathrobe, dressing gown, housecoat, caftan, bed jacket

22 **underclothes,** underclothing, undergarments <see list>, bodywear, **underwear, undies** <nf>, skivvies, body clothes, smallclothes, unmentionables <nf>, intimate apparel, **lingerie, linen,** underlinen; flannels, woolens

23 **corset,** stays, foundation garment, corselet; **girdle,** undergirdle, panty girdle; garter belt

24 **brassiere, bra** <nf>, bandeau, underbodice, *soutien-gorge* <Fr>, uplift brassiere; falsies <nf>

25 **headdress,** headgear, headwear, headclothes; **millinery;** headpiece, **chapeau, cap, hat,** helmet; bonnet, stocking cap, cowboy hat, visor, baseball cap; lid <nf>; headcloth, **kerchief,** bandanna, coverchief; **handkerchief**

26 **veil,** veiling, veiler; *yashmak* <Turk>, *chador* <Iran>; mantilla

27 **footwear,** footgear, *chaussure* <Fr>; **shoes, boots;** clodhoppers *and* gunboats *and* waffle-stompers *and* shitkickers <nf>; oxfords, saddle shoes, pumps, espadrilles, high heels, platform shoes, penny loafers; sandals, flip-flops, zoris, jellies; athletic shoes, tennis shoes, sneakers; wooden shoes, clogs; slippers, moccasins

28 **hosiery** <see list>, legwear, **hose, stockings; socks**

29 **swimwear; bathing suit,** swimsuit, swimming suit, tank suit, tank top, *maillot* or *maillot de bain* <Fr>, one-piece suit, two-piece suit; **trunks;** bikini, string bikini *or* string, thong; trunks, swimming trunks; wet suit; coverup

30 **children's wear;** rompers, jumpers; creepers; layette, baby clothes, infantwear, infants' wear, baby linen; swaddling clothes, swaddle

31 <clothing accessory> scarf, shoulder pads, belt, glove, mitten, handkerchief, sunglasses, jewelry; neckwear, tie, necktie; collar, dickey

32 garment making, **tailoring; dressmaking, the rag trade** <nf>, fashion design, haute couture, **Seventh Avenue, the garment industry**, Garment District; **millinery,** hatmaking, hatting; hosiery; **shoemaking,** bootmaking, **cobbling;** habilimentation

33 **clothier, haberdasher,** draper <Brit>, outfitter; costumier, costumer; glover; hosier; furrier; dry goods dealer, mercer <Brit>

34 **garmentmaker, garmentworker,** needleworker; cutter, stitcher, finisher

35 **tailor,** tailoress, *tailleur* <Fr>, sartor; fitter; busheler, bushelman; furrier, cloakmaker

36 **dressmaker, modiste,** *couturière* or *couturier* <Fr>; fashion designer; seamstress 741.2

37 **hatter,** hatmaker, **milliner**

38 **shoemaker,** bootmaker, booter, **cobbler**

VERBS 39 **clothe,** enclothe, **dress, garb, attire,** tire, array, **apparel,** raiment, garment, habilitate, **tog** *and* tog out <nf>, dud <nf>, robe, enrobe, invest, endue, **deck,** bedeck, dight, rag out *or* up <nf>; drape, bedrape; wrap, enwrap, lap, envelop, sheathe, shroud, enshroud, invest; wrap *or* bundle *or* muffle up; swathe, swaddle

40 **cloak, mantle;** coat, jacket; gown, frock; breech; shirt; **hat,** coif, bonnet, cap, hood; boot, shoe; stocking, sock

41 **outfit;** equip, **accouter,** uniform, caparison, rig, rig out *or* up, fit, **fit out,** turn out, **costume,** habit, suit; design; **tailor,** tailor-make, custom-make, make to order

42 **dress up, get up, doll** *or* **spruce up** <nf>, **primp** *and* prink *and* prank <nf>, gussy up <nf>, spiff *or* fancy *or* slick up <nf>, pretty up <nf>, deck out *or* up, trick out *or* up, tog out *or* up <nf>, rag out *or* up <nf>, fig out *or* up <nf>; dress to kill, titivate, bedeck, dizen, bedizen; overdress; put on the dog *or* style <nf>; **dress down,** underdress

43 **don, put on,** slip on *or* into, get on *or* into, try on, assume, dress in, adorn, dight <old>; change; suit up

44 **wear, have on,** dress in, be dressed in, put on, slip on, affect, sport <nf>; change into; try on

ADJS 45 **clothing; dress,** vestiary, sartorial; **clothed, clad, dressed, attired, togged** <nf>, tired, arrayed, **garbed,** garmented, habited, habilimented, decked, bedecked, decked-out, turned-out, tricked-out, rigged-out, vested, vestmented, robed, gowned, raimented, **appareled,** invested, endued, liveried, uniformed; **costumed,** in costume, cloaked, mantled, disguised; breeched, trousered, pantalooned; coifed, capped, bonneted, hatted, hooded; **shod,** shoed, booted, *chaussé* <Fr>

46 **dressed up, dolled** *or* **spruced up** <nf>; spiffed *or* fancied *or* slicked up <nf>, gussied up <nf>; spruce, dressed to advantage, dressed to the nines, dressed *or* fit to kill <nf>; in Sunday best, *endimanché* <Fr>, in one's best bib and tucker <nf>, in fine *or* high feather; *en grande tenue* <Fr>, *en grande toilette* <Fr>, in full dress, in full feather, in white tie and tails, in tails; **well-dressed, chic,** *soigné* <Fr>, stylish, modish, well-turned, well turned-out; **dressy; overdressed**

47 **in dishabille,** *en déshabillé* <Fr>, **in negligee; casual,** nonformal, sporty, in one's shirtsleeves; baggy, sloppy; skintight, decollete, low-necked, low-cut; underdressed, half-dressed

48 tailored, custom-made, tailor-made, made-to-order, bespoke <Brit>; ready-made, store-bought *and* off-the-rack <nf>, ready-to-wear; vestmental; sartorial

49 **suits**

bodysuit
boiler suit
business suit
camouflage suit *or* camo
casual suit
cat suit
coordinates
coveralls
double-breasted suit
dress suit
ensemble
flight suit
jogging suit *or* track suit
jumpsuit
leisure suit
livery
lounge suit
monkey suit
one-piece suit
pants suit *or* pantsuit
pinstripe suit
playsuit
rain suit
riding habit
romper suit *or* rompers
sack suit
separates
single-breasted suit
ski suit
slack suit
snowsuit
space suit
sports suit
summer suit
sun suit
sweat suit
swimsuit
tailored suit
tank suit
three-piece suit
track suit
tropical suit
trouser suit
tuxedo
two-piece suit
wet suit
zoot suit

50 **uniforms**

blues
continentals
dress blues
dress whites

fatigues
full dress
khaki
livery
nauticals
olive-drab *or* OD
regimentals
sailor suit
soldier suit
stripes
undress
whites

51 cloaks, overgarments

academic gown
academic hood
academic robe
afghan
bachelor's gown
burnoose
caftan
cap and gown
cape
capelet
capote
capuchin
cardinal
cashmere *or* cashmere shawl
cassock
chlamys
cowl
doctor's gown
domino
duster
frock
gaberdine
haik
houppelande
Inverness cape
judge's robe *or* gown
kaftan
kimono
kirtle
manta
manteau
mantelet
mantelletta
mantellone
mantilla
mantle
mantua
master's gown
military cloak
monk's robe
opera cloak *or* cape
pallium
pelerine
pelisse
peplos
peplum
plaid
poncho
robe
roquelaure
sagum
serape
shador
shawl
shoulderette
slop
smock
soutane
stole
tabard
talma
tippet
toga
toga virilis
tunic
wrap-around
wrapover
wrapper
wrap-up

52 coats, jackets, overcoats

anorak
balmacaan
benjamin
blazer
blouse
body-coat
bolero
bomber jacket
box coat
Burberry <trademark>
bush jacket
camelhair coat
capote
capuchin
car coat
chaqueta <Sp>
chesterfield
claw-hammer coat *or* claw hammer
cloth coat
coach coat
coatee
coolie jacket *or* coat
cutaway coat *or* cutaway
denim jacket *or* jean jacket
dinner coat *or* jacket
dolman
double-breasted jacket
doublet
down jacket
dreadnought
dress coat
dressing jacket
duffle coat
duster
Eton jacket
fearnought
fingertip coat
fitted coat
flack jacket
fleece jacket
frock coat *or* frock
fur coat
fur-lined coat
fur-trimmed coat
greatcoat
hacking jacket
happi coat
Inverness
jerkin
jumper
leather coat
loden coat
London Fog <trademark>
long coat
lounging jacket
mackinaw *or* mackinaw coat
mackintosh *or* mac
macfarlane
Mao jacket
maxicoat
mess jacket
midicoat
monkey jacket
morning coat
Nehru jacket
Newmarket *or* Newmarket coat
Norfolk jacket
oilskins
paletot
parka
peacoat *or* pea jacket
pilot jacket
Prince Albert *or* Prince Albert coat
raglan
raincoat
redingote
reefer *or* reefer jacket
sack *or* sack coat
safari jacket
sanbenito
shawl
shell jacket
shirtjac *or* shirt jacket
shooting jacket
single-breasted jacket
ski jacket
sleeve waistcoat
slicker
slip-on
smoking jacket
sou'wester
spencer
spiketail
sport coat *or* jacket
sports jacket
suit coat
surtout
swagger coat
swallow-tailed coat *or* swallowtail
sweater coat
swing coat
tabard
tail coat *or* tails
topcoat
topper
trench coat
tuxedo coat *or* jacket
ulster
watch coat
waterproof
Windbreaker <trademark>
winter coat
woolly
wrap-around *or* wrap
wraprascal

53 sweaters

bolero
boucle
bulky
cable-knit sweater
cardigan *or* cardigan jacket
cashmere sweater
crewneck sweater
Fair Isle sweater
fisherman's sweater
Guernsey
hand-knit
jersey
mohair sweater
polo sweater
poor boy sweater
pull-on sweater
pullover
rollneck sweater

shell
shoulderette
ski sweater
slip-on
slipover
sloppy Joe
sweatshirt
sweater vest
turtleneck sweater
twin sweater set *or* twin set
V-neck sweater
woolly

54 trousers and pants

bell-bottoms
Bermuda shorts
bloomers
blue jeans
breeches
buckskins
Capri pants
chaps
chinos
clam diggers
corduroys *or* cords
cutoffs
ducks
dungarees
gaiters
high-waters
hiphuggers
hot pants
jeans
jodhpurs
knee breeches
knickers *or* knickerbockers
lederhosen
Levi's <trademark>
loincloth
matador *or* toreador pants
moleskins
overalls
pantaloons
pedal pushers
pegleg trousers
plus fours
shorts
short shorts
slacks
stretch pants
trunk hose
waders

55 shirts

aloha *or* Hawaiian shirt
basque
benjamin
blouse
blouson
body shirt
body suit
bush shirt
bustier
button down
camp shirt
chambray shirt
coat shirt
crop top
denim shirt
dickey
doublet
dress shirt
evening shirt
flannel shirt
gipon
habit shirt
hair shirt
halter *or* halter top
hickory shirt
long-sleeved shirt
middy blouse
olive-drab *or* OD shirt
overblouse
oxford shirt
polo shirt
pourpoint
pullover
rugby shirt
sark
shell
shirt-jacket *or* shirt-jac
shirtwaist
short-sleeved shirt
sleeveless shirt
sport shirt
sweatshirt
tank top
tee-shirt *or* T-shirt
top
tube top
turtleneck
workshirt

56 dresses, skirts

A-line skirt
ballet skirt
backwrap
ball-gown
body dress
cheongsam
chiton
coat dress
cocktail dress
crinoline
culottes
dinner dress *or* gown
dirndl
divided skirt
evening dress
evening gown
farthingale
formal
full skirt
gown *or* evening gown
granny dress
grass skirt
harem skirt
hobble skirt
hoop skirt
housedress
hula skirt
jumper
kilt *or* filibeg *or* tartan
kirtle
little black dress
mantua
maternity dress
maxiskirt
microskirt *or* microminiskirt
midiskirt
miniskirt
Mother Hubbard
muu-muu
overdress
overskirt
pannier
pantdress
pantskirt
peplum
petticoat
pinafore
pleated skirt
sack
sari
sarong
sheath
shift
shirtdress *or* shirtwaist dress
skort
slit skirt
sundress
sweater dress
tank dress
T-dress
tea gown
tent dress
tube dress
tunic dress
tutu
wrap dress
wrap skirt

57 nightclothes

baby doll pajamas
bathrobe
bed gown
bed jacket
dishabille
dressing gown
dressing jacket
housecoat
jammies *or* p.j.'s <nf>
kimono
morning dress
negligee
nightgown
nightie <nf>
nightshirt
pajamas
peignor
robe
robe de chambre
romper
sleeper
smoking jacket

58 undergarments

all-in-one
athletic supporter *or* jockstrap
Balmoral
bloomers
bikini
bodice
body stocking
body suit
boxer shorts
brassiere *or* bra
breechclout *or* loin-cloth
briefs
bustle
BVD's <trademark>
cami-knickers
camisole
chemise
corselet
corset
crinoline
diapers
drawers
foundation garment
full slip
garter

garter belt
girdle
G-string
half-slip
Jockey <trademark> shorts
knickers <Brit>
leggings
leotard
lingerie
long underwear *or* long johns
napkins *or* nappies <Brit>
pannier
panties
pants
panty girdle
pantyhose
petticoat
push-up bra
scanties
shift
shorts
singlet <Brit>
skivvies
slip
smock
soakers
sport bra *or* sports bra
step-ins
string vest
support garment
tap pants
teddy
tee-shirt *or* T-shirt
thermal underwear *or* thermals
tournure <Fr>
underdrawers
underpants
undershirt
undershorts
underskirt
undervest
underwire bra
undies
union suit
unitard
unmentionables
woolens

59 **hosiery**

anklets *or* ankle socks
argyles
athletic socks
bobbysocks
boothose
boot socks
crew socks
dress sheers
fishnet stockings
footlets
full-fashioned stockings
garter stockings
hose
body stocking
knee-highs
knee-socks
leg-warmers
lisle hose
nylons
panty-hose *and* pantyhose
Peds <trademark>
rayon stockings
seamless stockings
sheer stockings *or* sheers
silk stockings
slouch socks
socks
stocking hose
stretch stockings
support hose
sweat socks
tights
tube socks
varsity socks
wigglers *or* toe socks
work socks

6 UNCLOTHING

NOUNS 1 **unclothing,** divestment, divestiture, divesture; **removal; stripping,** denudement, denudation; baring, stripping *or* laying bare, uncovering, **exposure,** exposing; indecent exposure, exhibitionism, flashing <nf>; decortication, excoriation; desquamation, exfoliation; exuviation, ecdysis

2 **disrobing, undressing,** undress, disrobement, unclothing; uncasing, discasing; shedding, molting, peeling; striptease, stripping; skinny-dipping <nf>, mooning <nf>, flashing <nf>

3 **nudity, nakedness,** bareness; **the nude, the altogether** *and* **the buff** <nf>, **the raw** <nf>; state of nature, **birthday suit** <nf>; not a stitch, not a stitch to one's name, not a stitch on one's back; full-frontal nudity; décolleté, décolletage, toplessness; nudism, naturism, gymnosophy; nudist, naturist, gymnosophist, exhibitionist; stripper, stripteaser, ecdysiast, topless dancer

4 **hairlessness, baldness,** acomia, alopecia; calvities; hair loss; beardlessness, bald-headedness *or* -patedness; baldhead, baldpate, baldy <nf>, skinhead; shaving, tonsure, depilation; hair remover, depilatory

VERBS 5 **divest, strip, strip away, remove; uncover,** uncloak, unveil, **expose,** lay open, bare, lay *or* strip bare, **denude,** denudate; fleece, shear; pluck; strip-search

6 **take off, remove, doff,** off with, put off, slip *or* step out of, slip off, slough off, cast off, throw off, drop; unwrap, undo

7 **undress, unclothe,** undrape, ungarment, unapparel, unarray, disarray; **disrobe;** unsheathe, discase, uncase; **strip,** strip to the buff <nf>, do a strip-tease; skinny-dip, flash <nf>, moon <nf>

8 **peel, pare, skin, strip,** flay, excoriate, decorticate, bark; scalp; depilate, shave

9 **husk, hull,** pod, **shell,** shuck

10 **shed, cast,** throw off, **slough, molt,** slough off, exuviate

11 **scale, flake,** scale *or* flake off, desquamate, exfoliate

ADJS 12 **divested, stripped, bared,** denuded, denudated, **exposed, uncovered,** stripped *or* laid bare, unveiled, showing; unsheathed, discased, uncased

13 **unclad, undressed, unclothed, unattired, disrobed,** ungarmented, undraped, ungarbed, unrobed, unappareled, uncased; **clothesless,** garbless, garmentless, raimentless; half-clothed, underclothed, *en déshabillé* <Fr>, in dishabille, nudish; low-necked, low-cut, décolleté, strapless, topless; **seminude,** scantily clad

14 **naked, nude; bare,** peeled, raw <nf>, **in the raw** <nf>, *in puris naturalibus* <L>, in a state of nature, in nature's garb; in one's birthday suit, **in the buff** *and* in native buff *and* stripped to the buff *and* **in the altogether** <nf>, with nothing on, without a stitch, without a stitch to one's name *or* on one's back; **stark-naked,** bare-ass <nf>, bare as the back of one's hand, naked as the day one was born, naked as a jaybird <nf>, starkers <Brit nf>; topless, bare-breasted, bottomless, bare-bottomed, "naked as a worm"—Chaucer; nudist, naturistic, gymnosophical

15 **barefoot,** barefooted, unshod; discalced, discalceate

16 bare-ankled, bare-armed, bare-backed, bare-breasted, topless, bare-chested, bare-faced, bare-handed, bare-headed, bare-kneed, bare-legged, bare-necked, bare-throated

17 **hairless,** depilous; **bald,** acomous; bald as a coot, bald as an egg; **bald-headed,** bald-pated, tonsured; **beardless,** whiskerless, shaven, clean-shaven, smooth-shaven, smooth-faced; smooth, glabrous

18 exuvial, sloughy; desquamative, exfoliatory; denudant *or* denudatory; peeling, shedding

ADVS **19** nakedly, barely, baldly

WORD ELEMENTS **20** de-, dis-, un-

7 NUTRITION

NOUNS **1** **nutrition, nourishment,** nourishing, feeding, nurture; alimentation; **food** *or* **nutritive value, food intake;** food chain *or* cycle; food pyramid, recommended daily vitamins and minerals

2 **nutritiousness,** nutritiveness, **digestibility,** assimilability; healthfulness

3 **nutrient,** nutritive, **nutriment** 10.3, food; nutrilite, growth factor, growth regulator; **natural food,** health food <see list>; roughage, fiber, dietary fiber

4 **vitamin** <see list>, vitamin complex; provitamin, provitamin A *or* carotene

5 **carbohydrate,** carbo *or* carbs <nf>, simple carbohydrate, complex carbohydrate; hydroxy aldehyde, hydroxy ketone, glycogen, cellulose, ketone, saccharide, monosaccharide, disaccharide, trisaccharide, polysaccharide *or* polysaccharose; **sugar; starch**

6 **protein** *or* proteid, simple protein, conjugated protein, protein structure; **amino acid**, essential amino acid; peptide, dipeptide, polypeptide, etc; globulin, collagen, gluten, immunoglobulin, hemoglobin

7 **fat,** glyceride, **lipid,** lipoid; lecithin; fatty acid; steroid, sterol; **cholesterol,** glycerol-cholesterol, cephalin-cholesterol; triglyceride; **lipoprotein,** high-density lipoprotein *or* HDL, low-density lipoprotein *or* LDL; polyunsaturated fat; saturated fat; unsaturated fat

8 **digestion,** ingestion, assimilation, absorption; primary digestion, secondary digestion; predigestion; salivary digestion, gastric *or* peptic digestion, pancreatic digestion, intestinal digestion; digestive system, alimentary canal, gastrointestinal tract; salivary glands, gastric glands, liver, pancreas; digestive secretions, saliva, gastric juice, pancreatic juice, intestinal juice, bile

9 **digestant,** digester, digestive; pepsin; **enzyme,** proteolytic enzyme

10 **enzyme,** apoenzyme, coenzyme, isoenzyme; transferase, hydrolase, lyase, isomerase, polymerase, amylase, diastase; pepsin, rennin; proenzyme, zymogen

11 **essential element,** macronutrient; carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, calcium, phosphorus, potassium, sodium, chlorine, sulfur, magnesium; trace element, micronutrient; iron, manganese, zinc, copper, iodine, cobalt, selenium, molybdenum, chromium, silicon

12 **metabolism,** basal metabolism, acid-base metabolism, energy metabolism; **anabolism,** assimilation; **catabolism,** disassimilation

13 **diet, dieting,** dietary; dietetics; **regimen,** regime; bland diet; soft diet, pap, spoon food *or* meat, spoon victuals <nf>; balanced diet; diabetic diet, allergy diet, reducing diet, weight-loss diet, obesity diet; high-calorie diet, low-calorie diet, watching one's weight *or* calories, calorie-counting; liquid diet; high-protein diet, low-carbohydrate diet; low-salt diet, low-sodium diet, salt-free diet; low-fat diet, fat-free diet; low-cholesterol diet; sugar-free diet; vegetarianism, lactovegetarianism, vegan diet; macrobiotic diet; crash diet, fad diet; diet book, calorie counter

14 vitaminization, **fortification, enrichment,** restoration; food additive

15 **nutritionist, dietitian,** vitaminologist, enzymologist

16 <science of nutrition> **dietetics,** dietotherapeutics, dietotherapy; vitaminology; enzymology

VERBS **17** **nourish,** feed, sustain, aliment, nutrify <old>, nurture, fatten up; **sustain,** strengthen; cook for, wine and dine, regale; force-feed

18 **digest, assimilate,** absorb; metabolize; predigest

19 **diet,** go on a diet; watch one's weight *or* calories, count calories

20 vitaminize, **fortify, enrich,** restore

ADJS **21** **nutritious,** nutritive, nutrient, **nourishing;** alimentary, alimental; digestible, assimilable

22 **digestive,** assimilative; peptic

23 **dietary,** dietetic, dietic <old>; regiminal

24 **health foods**

bran
brown rice
buckwheat flour
fiber
fruits
light *or* lite *or* low-calorie food
nonfat *or* low-fat food
nuts
soybeans
unrefined flour
vegetables
wheat germ
yogurt

25 **vitamins**

vitamin A
vitamin A_1 *or* antiophthalmic factor *or* axerophthol, retinol
vitamin A_2
biotin
carotene
choline

cryptoxanthin
vitamin B
vitamin B complex
vitamin B_1 *or* thiamine *or* aneurin *or* anti-beriberi factor
vitamin B_2 *or* vitamin G *or* riboflavin *or* lactoflavin *or* ovoflavin *or* hepatoflavin
vitamin M *or* vitamin Bc
vitamin B_6 *or* pyridoxine *or* adermin
vitamin B_{12} *or* cobalamin *or* cyanocobalamin *or* extrinsic factor *or* pentothenic acid *or* lipoid acid
biotin *or* vitamin H
choline
folic acid *or* pteroylglutamic acid *or* para-aminobenzoic acid *or* PABA
inositol
niacin *or* nicotinic acid
vitamin C *or* ascorbic acid
vitamin D_2 *or* calciferol
ergocalciferol
cholecalciferol *or* vitamin D_3
vitamin E *or* tocopherol
vitamin K *or* naphthoquinone
menadione
vitamin P *or* bioflavinoid

8 EATING

NOUNS 1 **eating, feeding, dining,** messing; the nosebag <nf>; ingestion, consumption, consuming, deglutition; **tasting,** relishing, savoring; **gourmet eating** *or* **dining,** fine dining, gourmandise, gastronomy; nibbling, pecking, licking, **munching;** snacking; **devouring,** gobbling, wolfing, downing, gulping; **gorging, overeating,** gluttony, overconsumption; **chewing,** mastication, manducation, rumination; **feasting, regaling,** regalement; **appetite,** hunger 100.7; nutrition 7; **dieting** 7.11; gluttony 672; carnivorism, carnivorousness, carnivority; herbivorism, herbivority, herbivorousness, grazing, browsing, cropping, pasturing, pasture; vegetarianism, phytophagy; omnivorism, omnivorousness, pantophagy; cannibalism, anthropophagy; omophagia *or* omophagy

2 **bite, morsel, taste,** swallow; mouthful, gob <nf>, piece, slice, tidbit; nibble, munchies; cud, quid; bolus, gobbet; **chew,** chaw <nf>; nip; munch; gnash; champ, chomp <nf>; appetizer, hors d'oeuvre

3 **drinking,** imbibing, imbibition, potation; lapping, sipping, tasting, nipping; quaffing, gulping, swigging <nf>, swilling *and* guzzling <nf>, pulling <nf>; winebibbing; compotation, symposium; drunkenness 88.1,3

4 **drink,** potation, beverage, potion, libation, oblation, thirst-quencher; draft, dram, drench, **swig** <nf>, swill *and* guzzle <nf>, quaff, **sip,** sup, suck, tot, bumper, snort *and* slug <nf>, pull <nf>, lap, gulp, slurp <nf>; nip, peg; toast, health; mixed drink, cocktail; nightcap <nf>

5 **meal, repast,** feed *and* sit-down <nf>, mess, spread <nf>, table, board, meat, *repas* <Fr>; **refreshment,** refection, regalement, collation, entertainment, treat; frozen meal

6 <meals> **breakfast,** *petit déjeuner* <Fr>, continental breakfast, English breakfast, American breakfast; meat breakfast, *déjeuner à la fourchette* <Fr>; **brunch** <nf>, Sunday brunch, elevenses <Brit nf>; **lunch, luncheon,** tiffin, hot lunch, light lunch, box lunch, brown-bag lunch; **tea,** teatime, high tea, afternoon tea, cream tea; **dinner,** *diner* <Fr>, evening meal; **supper,** *souper* <Fr>; buffet supper *or* lunch; box lunch, packed lunch <Brit>; takeout; precooked frozen meal, TV dinner; **picnic, cookout,** alfresco meal, fête champêtre, tailgate picnic, **barbecue,** fish fry, clambake, wiener roast *or* wienie roast; pot luck; midnight supper *or* snack

7 **light meal, refreshments,** light repast, light lunch, spot of lunch <nf>, collation, **snack** *and* nosh <nf>, **bite** <nf>, bite to eat <nf>, *casse-croûte* <Fr>; informal meal; coffee break, tea break

8 **hearty meal, full meal,** healthy meal, large *or* substantial meal, heavy meal, **square meal,** man-sized meal, large order; three squares; formal meal, sit-down meal

9 **feast, banquet,** regale, buffet, smorgasbord, festal board, groaning board, spread; Lucullan banquet, bacchanalia; blow *or* blowout <nf>, feeding frenzy <nf>; dinner party

10 **serving,** service; **portion, helping,** help; second helping, seconds; **course;** dish, plate; *plat du jour* <Fr>; antepast <old>; first course, starter, soup, entree, *entrée* <Fr>, main course, entremets, side dish; dessert

11 <manner of service> service, table service, counter service, self-service, curb service, take-out service; table d'hôte, ordinary; à la carte; cover, *couvert* <Fr>; cover charge; American plan, European plan

12 **tableware,** dining utensils; **silverware,** silver, silver plate, stainless-steel ware; **flatware,** flat silver; hollow ware; **cutlery,** knives, fish knife, carving knife, fruit knife, steak knife, butter knife; forks, fisk fork, salad fork, fondue fork; spoons, tablespoon, teaspoon, soup spoon, dessert spoon, coffee spoon, serving spoon; chopsticks; **dishware, china, dishes,** plates, cups, saucers, bowls, fingerbowls; glasses, glassware, tumbler, goblet, wineglass, flute; **dish,** salad dish, fruit dish, dessert dish; **bowl,** cereal bowl, fruit bowl, punchbowl; **tea service, tea set,** tea things, tea strainer, tea-caddy, tea-cozy

13 **table linen, napery,** tablecloth, table cover, tablemat, table pad, place mat; **napkin, table napkin,** serviette <Brit>

14 **menu, bill of fare,** carte

15 **gastronomy,** gastronomics, gastrology, **epicurism,** epicureanism

16 **eater,** feeder, consumer, devourer, partaker; **diner,** luncher; picnicker; mouth, hungry mouth, big

eater; diner-out, eater-out; boarder, board-and-roomer; **gourmet,** gastronome, epicure, gourmand, connoisseur of food *or* wine, bon vivant, Lucullus, foodie; **glutton,** overeater, pig *and* wolf <nf>, trencherman, **glutton** 672.3; light eater, nibbler, picky eater, fussy eater; omnivore, pantophagist; **flesh-eater, meat-eater, carnivore,** omophagist, predacean; **man-eater, cannibal; vegetarian,** lactovegetarian, vegan, fruitarian, plant-eater, **herbivore,** phytophagan, phytophage; grass-eater, graminivore; grain-eater, granivore

17 restaurant, eating place, eating house, dining room; eatery *and* beanery *and* hashery *and* hash house *and* greasy spoon <nf>; **fast-food restaurant,** takeout, hamburger joint <nf>; *trattoria* <Ital>; **lunchroom,** luncheonette; **café,** *caffè* <Ital>, roadside café; **tearoom,** *bistro* <Fr>; **coffeehouse,** coffeeroom, **coffee shop,** coffee bar; **tea shop,** tea-garden, teahouse; pub, tavern; chophouse; **grill,** grillroom, steakhouse; brasserie; pancake house, waffle house; cookshop; buffet, smorgasbord, self-service restaurant; **lunch counter,** quick-lunch counter; salad bar; hot-dog stand, hamburger stand, drive-in restaurant, drive-in; **snack bar,** sandwich bar, *buvette* <Fr>, *cantina* <Sp>; milk bar; sushi bar; juice bar; raw bar; pizzeria; **cafeteria,** automat; mess hall, dining hall, refectory; canteen; cookhouse, cookshack, lunch wagon, chuck wagon; **diner,** dog wagon <nf>; delicatessen, deli; ice-cream parlor, soda fountain; dining car; vending machine; **kitchen** 11.3, breakfast nook, dining room, dinette

VERBS **18 feed, dine,** wine and dine, mess; nibble, snack, graze <nf>; satisfy, gratify; regale; bread, meat; board, sustain; pasture, put out to pasture, graze, browse; forage, fodder; provision 385.9

19 nourish, nurture, nutrify, aliment, foster; **nurse, suckle,** lactate, breast-feed, wet-nurse, dry-nurse; fatten, fatten up, stuff, force-feed

20 eat, feed, fare, take, partake, partake of, *mange* <Fr>, take nourishment, subsist, break bread, break one's fast; refresh *or* entertain the inner man, feed one's face *and* put on the feed bag <nf>, fall to, pitch in <nf>; **taste,** relish, savor; hunger 100.19; get *or* have the munchies, **diet,** go on a diet, watch one's weight, count calories

21 dine, dinner; **sup,** breakfast; lunch; picnic, cook out; **eat out, dine out;** board; mess with, break bread with

22 devour, swallow, ingest, **consume,** take in, tuck in *or* away *and* tuck into *and* chow down <nf>, down, take down, get down, put away <nf>; **eat up;** dispatch *or* dispose of <nf>

23 gobble, gulp, bolt, wolf, gobble *or* gulp *or* bolt *or* wolf down

24 feast, banquet, regale; eat heartily, have a good appetite, eat up, lick the platter *or* plate, do oneself proud <nf>, do one's duty, do justice to, clean one's plate, polish the platter, put it away <nf>

25 stuff, gorge 672.4, pig out <nf>, engorge, glut, guttle, binge, cram, eat one's fill, stuff *or* gorge oneself, gluttonize, eat everything in sight

26 pick, peck <nf>, **nibble; snack** <nf>, nosh <nf>; pick at, peck at <nf>, eat like a bird, show no appetite

27 chew, chew up, chaw <nf>, bite into; **masticate,** manducate; ruminate, chew the cud; **bite,** grind, champ, chomp <nf>; **munch,** crunch; gnash; **gnaw;** mouth, mumble; gum

28 feed on *or* **upon, feast on** *or* **upon,** batten upon, fatten on *or* upon; prey on *or* upon, live on *or* upon, pasture on, browse, graze, crop

29 drink, drink in, **imbibe,** wet one's whistle <nf>; **quaff, sip, sup,** bib, swig *and* swill *and* guzzle *and* pull <nf>; **suck,** suckle, suck in *or* up; drink off *or* up, toss off *or* down, drain the cup; wash down; **toast,** drink to, pledge; tipple, **booze** 88.23

30 lap up, sponge *or* soak up, lick, lap, slurp <nf>

ADJS **31 eating, feeding, gastronomical, dining,** mensal, commensal, prandial, postprandial, preprandial; **nourishing,** nutritious 7.19; empty-calorie; **dietetic; omnivorous,** pantophagous, **gluttonous** 672.6; **flesh-eating, meat-eating, carnivorous,** omophagic, omophagous, predacious; **man-eating, cannibal,** cannibalistic; insect-eating, insectivorous; vegetable-eating, **vegetarian,** lactovegetarian, vegan, fruitarian; plant-eating, **herbivorous,** phytivorous, phytophagous; grass-eating, graminivorous; grain-eating, granivorous

32 chewing, masticatory, masticating, manducatory; ruminant, ruminating, cud-chewing; tasting, nibbling

33 edible, eatable, comestible, consumable, esculent, digestible, gustable, esculent; kosher; **palatable,** succulent, mouth-watering, **delicious,** dainty, savory; **fine, fancy, gourmet;** calorific, fattening, rich

34 drinkable, potable, quaffable

INTERJS **35** chow down!, soup's on!, grub's on!, come and get it!; *bon appétit!* <Fr>, eat hearty!, eat up!

WORD ELEMENTS **36** phag-, phago-, -phagia, -phagy; -phage, -vore, -vora

9 REFRESHMENT

NOUNS **1 refreshment,** refection, refreshing, freshening up, **bracing, exhilaration, stimulation,** enlivenment, vivification, **invigoration,** reinvigoration, reanimation, revival, revivification, revivescence *or* revivescency, renewal, recreation, rest and recreation, R and R; regalement, regale; **tonic,** bracer, breath of fresh air, pick-me-up *and* a shot in the arm *and* an upper <nf>; cordial

VERBS **2 refresh, freshen,** refreshen, freshen up, fresh up <nf>; **revive,** revivify, **reinvigorate,** reanimate; **exhilarate, stimulate, invigorate,** fortify, enliven, liven up, animate, vivify, quicken, brisk, brisken; brace, **brace up,** buck up *and* pick up <nf>, perk up *and* chirk up <nf>, set up, set on one's legs *or* feet <nf>; renew one's strength, put *or* breathe new life into, give a breath of fresh air, give a shot in the arm <nf>; renew, recreate, charge *or* recharge one's batteries <nf>, give a break, give a breather; **regale, cheer,** refresh the inner man

ADJS **3 refreshing,** refreshful, **fresh,** brisk, crisp, crispy, zesty, zestful, **bracing, tonic,** cordial; analeptic; **exhilarating, stimulating, stimulative, stimulatory, invigorating,** rousing, energizing; regaling, cheering; rejuvenating; recreative, recreational

4 refreshed, restored, invigorated, exhilarated, freshened up, enlivened, stimulated, energized, recharged, animated, reanimated, **revived,** renewed, recreated, ready for more, ready for another round

5 unwearied, untired, unfatigued, unexhausted

10 FOOD

NOUNS **1 food,** foodstuff, food and drink, sustenance, kitchen stuff, victualage, **comestibles, edibles,** eatables, viands, **cuisine,** tucker <Austral>, ingesta <pl>; soul food; fast food, junk food; **fare,** cheer, creature comfort; provision, provender; meat <old>, bread <see list>, daily bread, bread and butter, staff of life; health food; board, table, feast 8.9, spread <nf>; nouvelle cuisine, designer food

2 <nf terms> **grub,** grubbery, **eats, chow,** chuck, grits, groceries, nosh, the nosebag, scarf *or* scoff, tuck <Brit>, victuals *or* vittles; fast food

3 nutriment, nourishment, nurture; pabulum, pap; aliment, alimentation; **refreshment,** refection; **sustenance,** support, keep

4 feed, fodder, provender, animal food; forage, pasture, eatage, pasturage; grain; corn, oats, barley, wheat; meal, bran, chop; **hay,** timothy, clover, straw; ensilage, silage; chicken feed, scratch, scratch feed, mash; slops, swill; pet food, dog food, cat food; bird seed

5 provisions, groceries, provender, supplies, stores, larder, food supply, victuals; fresh foods, canned foods, frozen foods, dehydrated foods, precooked foods, convenience foods; commissariat, commissary, grocery

6 rations, board, meals, commons <chiefly Brit>, mess, allowance, allotment, food allotment, tucker <Austral>; short commons <chiefly Brit>; emergency rations; K ration, C ration, garrison *or* field rations

7 dish 11.1, culinary preparation *or* concoction; cover, **course** 8.10; casserole; grill, broil, boil, roast, fry; **main dish, entree,** main course, *pièce de résistance* <Fr>, culinary masterpiece, dish fit for a king; hors d'oeuvre, starter; side dish, salad, vegetables; dessert; dish of the day, soup of the day, specialty

8 delicacy, dainty, goody <nf>, treat, kickshaw, **tidbit,** titbit; **morsel,** choice morsel, *bonne bouche* <Fr>; savory; dessert <see list>; ambrosia, nectar, cate, manna

9 appetizer, whet, *apéritif* <Fr>; foretaste, antepast <old>, *antipasto* <Ital>, *Vorspeise* <Ger>; **hors d'oeuvre;** *crostato* <Ital>, starter, nibbles, tidbits; smorgasbord; crackers and cheese, crudites, **dip,** guacamole, salsa, pâté, cheese dip, nachos, potato skins, hummus; falafel; rumaki; **pickle,** dill pickle

10 soup, *potage* <Fr>, *zuppa* or *minestra* <Ital>, cream soup, clear soup, consommé, stock, bouillon, potage, bisque, borscht, gumbo, chowder, bouillabaisse

11 stew, olla, olio, *olla podrida* <Sp>; meat stew, *étuvée* <Fr>; Irish stew, mulligan stew *or* mulligan <nf>; goulash, Hungarian goulash; ragout; salmi; bouillabaisse, *paella* <Catalan>, oyster stew; fricassee; curry

12 sauce; tomato sauce, ketchup *or* catsup; brown sauce, Worcestershire sauce, soy sauce, Bordelaise; Tabasco sauce <trademark>, barbecue sauce; tartar sauce, horseradish; salsa, guacamole, pesto; applesauce; mayonnaise, salad dressing, vinaigrette; white sauce, veloute, Bearnaise, hollandaise, bechamel

13 meat, flesh, red meat, *viande* <Fr>, white meat; butcher's meat, *viande de boucherie* <Fr>; **cut of meat;** game, *menue viande* <Fr>; venison; **roast,** joint, *rôti* <Fr>; pot roast; chop, cutlet, grill; barbecue, boiled meat, *bouilli* <Fr>; forcemeat; mincemeat, mince; hash, *hachis* <Fr>; *civet* <Fr>; pemmican, jerky; sausage meat, scrapple; aspic; meat substitute, tofu, bean curd

14 beef, *bœuf* <Fr>; roast beef, *rosbif* <Fr>; chuck, rib roast, tenderloin, sirloin, steak, round, boneless rump, shank, brisket; hamburger, ground beef; corned beef; dried beef; chipped beef; jerky, charqui; pastrami; beef extract, bouillon; suet

15 veal, *vitello* <Ital>, *veau* <Fr>; veal cutlet, *côtelette de veau* <Fr>; shoulder, rib roast, chops, loin, rump, shank, leg, cutlet, escallop, breast, neck; *poitrine de veau* <Fr>; fricandeau; calf's head, *tête de veau* <Fr>; calf's liver, *foie de veau* <Fr>; sweetbread, *ris de veau* <Fr>; calf's brains

16 **mutton,** *mouton* <Fr>; muttonchop; **lamb,** *agneau* <Fr>; breast of lamb, *poitrine d'agneau* <Fr>; leg of lamb, leg of mutton, *gigot* <Fr>, *jambe de mouton* <Fr>; saddle of mutton

17 **pork,** *porc* <Fr>, pig, pigmeat <nf>

18 **steak,** *tranche* <Fr>, **beefsteak,** *bifteck* <Fr>, *tranche de bœuf* <Fr>, *bistecca* <Ital>

19 **chop, cutlet,** *côtelette* <Fr>; pork chop, *côtelette de porc frais* <Fr>; mutton chop, *côtelette de mouton* <Fr>, Saratoga chop; veal cutlet, veal chop, *côtelette de veau* <Fr>, *Wiener Schnitzel* <Ger>

20 <variety meats> kidneys; heart; brains; liver; gizzard; tongue; sweetbread <thymus>; beef bread <pancreas>; tripe <stomach>; marrow; cockscomb; chitterlings *or* chitlins <intestines>; prairie *or* mountain oyster <testis>; haslet, giblets, *abattis* <Fr>

21 **sausage,** *saucisse* <Fr>, *saucisson* <Fr>, *salsiccia* <Ital>, *Wurst* <Ger>; **pâté**

22 **poultry, fowl,** bird, edible bird, *volaille* <Fr>

23 <parts of poultry> leg, drumstick, thigh, wing, wishbone, breast; white meat, dark meat, giblets, pope's *or* parson's nose <nf>

24 **fish,** *poisson* <Fr>; seafood; fried fish, broiled fish, boiled fish, poached fish, smoked fish, fish cake *or* fish ball, fish stick, fish pie; fish and chips; food fish; finnan haddie; kipper, kippered salmon *or* herring, gravlax; smoked salmon, lox; smoked herring, red herring; eel, *anguille* <Fr>; fish eggs, roe, caviar; ceviche, sushi; squid, calamari; flatfish, sole, lemon sole, Dover sole, flounder, fluke, dab, sanddab

25 **shellfish,** *coquillage* <Fr>; **mollusc,** snail, *escargot* <Fr>

26 **eggs,** *œufs* <Fr>; fried eggs, *œufs sur le plat* <Fr>; hard- and soft-boiled eggs, *œufs à la coque* <Fr>, coddled eggs; poached eggs, *œufs pochés* <Fr>; scrambled eggs, buttered eggs, *œufs brouillés* <Fr>; dropped eggs, shirred eggs, stuffed eggs, deviled eggs; omelet *or* omelette; soufflé; Scotch egg, eggs Benedict; egg salad

27 **stuffing, dressing,** forcemeat *or* farce

28 **bread,** *pain* <Fr>, *pane* <Ital>, the staff of life; French bread, Italian bread, sourdough bread, ciabatta; loaf of bread; crust, breadcrust, crust of bread; breadstuff; **leaven,** leavening, ferment

29 **corn bread;** pone, ash pone, corn pone, corn tash, ash cake, hoecake, johnnycake; dodger, corn dodger, corn dab, hush puppy; cracklin' bread <nf>; *tortilla* <Sp>

30 **biscuit,** sinker <nf>; hardtack, sea biscuit, ship biscuit, pilot biscuit *or* bread; **cracker,** soda cracker *or* saltine, graham cracker, *biscotto* <Ital>, cream cracker, nacho, potato chip, potato crisp <Brit>, sultana, water biscuit, butter cracker, oyster cracker, pilot biscuit; wafer; rusk, zwieback, melba toast, Brussels biscuit; pretzel

31 **roll, bun, muffin;** bagel, bialy *or* bialystoker; brioche, croissant; English muffin; popover; scone; hard roll, kaiser roll, dinner roll, Parker House roll, Portuguese roll

32 **sandwich,** *canapé* <Fr>, *smörgåsbord* <Swed>; club sandwich, dagwood; hamburger, burger; submarine *or* sub *or* hero *or* grinder *or* hoagy *or* poorboy; veggieburger *or* vegeburger *or* gardenburger

33 **noodles,** pasta, Italian paste, paste; **spaghetti,** spaghettini, ziti, fettuccine, radiattore, vermicelli, **macaroni,** lasagne; ravioli, *kreplach* <Yiddish pl>, won ton; **dumpling;** spaetzle, dim sum, gnocchi, linguine; matzo balls, *knaydlach* <Yiddish>

34 **cereal,** breakfast food, dry cereal, hot cereal; **flour,** meal

35 **vegetables,** produce, *légumes* <Fr>, veg *and* veggies <nf>; **greens;** potherbs; **beans,** *frijoles* <Sp>, *haricots* <Fr>; leafy vegetable, stem vegetable, root vegetable, tuber, flower vegetable, seed vegetable, pulse; **potato,** spud <nf>, tater <nf>, *pomme de terre* <Fr>, Irish potato, pratie <nf>, white potato; **tomato,** love apple; mushroom; eggplant, *aubergine* <Fr>, mad apple; rhubarb, pieplant; cabbage, *Kraut* <Ger>; ratatouille, mixed vegetables

36 **rice,** white rice, long-grain rice, brown rice, wild rice, pilaf, orzo, risotto

37 **salad,** *salade* <Fr>; **greens,** *crudités* <Fr>, tossed salad, chef's salad, Caesar salad; fruit salad, pasta salad, potato salad

38 **fruit;** produce; stone fruit, drupe, berry, pome, pepo, sorosis, syconium, hesperidium; simple fruit, true fruit, composite fruit, aggregate fruit, multiple fruit, false fruit, succulent fruit; citrus fruit; dry fruit, dehiscent fruit, indehiscent fruit, fruiting body; fruit compote, fruit soup, fruit cup, fruit cocktail, fruit salad, stewed fruit

39 **nut,** *noix* <Fr>, *noisette* <Fr>; kernel, meat

40 **sweets,** sweet stuff, **confectionery; sweet, sweetmeat; confection; candy;** bonbon, comfit, confiture; **jelly, jam;** preserve, conserve; marmalade; toffee, butterscotch, caramel, chocolate, fudge; gelatin, Jell-O <trademark>; compote; pudding, custard, mousse; tutti-frutti; maraschino cherries; honey; icing, frosting, glaze; meringue; whipped cream

41 **pastry,** *patisserie* <Fr>; French pastry, Danish pastry; **tart;** turnover; timbale; **pie,** *tarte* <Fr>, fruit pie, tart, single-crust pie, double-crust pie, deep-dish pie, fruit pie, custard pie, meringue pie; *quiche* or *quiche Lorraine* <Fr>; cobbler, crisp, bread pudding; patty, patty cake; patty shell,

vol-au-vent <Fr>; rosette; dowdy, pandowdy; phyllo *or* filo, strudel, baklava; puff pastry, flake pastry; puff, cream puff, croquembouche, profiterole; cannoli, cream horn; éclair; tiramisu; croissant, scone, shortbread, brioche

42 **cake,** *gâteau* <Fr>, *torte* <Ger>; *petit-four* <Fr>; layer cake, Bundt cake, pound cake, sponge cake, upside-down cake, fruitcake, gingerbread, cheesecake, shortcake, cupcake, tiramisu, brownie; petit four, madeleine; doughnut

43 **cookie,** biscuit <Brit>, biscotti

44 **doughnut,** friedcake, sinker <nf>, cymbal <old>, olykoek <nf>; French doughnut, raised doughnut; glazed doughnut; fastnacht; **cruller,** twister; jelly doughnut, bismarck; fritter, *beignet* <Fr>; apple fritter, *beignet aux pommes* <Fr>

45 **pancake,** griddlecake, **hot cake,** battercake, flapcake, **flapjack,** flannel cake; buckwheat cake; *chapatty* <India>; **waffle;** blintz, cheese blintz, *crêpe* and *crêpe suzette* <Fr>, *palacsinta* <Hung>, *Pfannkuchen* <Ger>, Swedish pancake

46 **pudding,** custard, mousse, flan

47 **ice,** *glace* <Fr>, frozen dessert; **ice cream,** ice milk, French ice-cream; **sherbet,** water ice <Brit>, Italian ice, sorbet, bombe; gelato; tortoni; parfait; sundae, ice-cream sundae, banana split; ice-cream soda; frappé; ice-cream cone; frozen pudding; frozen custard, soft ice cream; frozen yogurt

48 **dairy products,** milk products; **cheese; tofu,** bean curd

49 **beverage,** drink, thirst quencher, potation, potable, drinkable <nf>, **liquor,** liquid, hard liquor, alcoholic drink, liqueur, mixed drink, cocktail <see list>, beer <see list>, wine <see list>; **soft drink,** nonalcoholic beverage; cold drink; carbonated water, soda water, sparkling water, tap water, spring water, mineral water, seltzer water; **soda,** pop, soda pop, tonic; milk shake *or* milkshake, shake *and* frosted <nf>; malted milk, malt <nf>, hot chocolate, cocoa; smoothie; **milk**, pasteurized milk, homogenized milk, skim milk, condensed milk, evaporated milk, low-fat milk, chocolate milk; **coffee**, cappuccino, espresso, decaffeinated coffee *or* decaf, latte, café au lait, java *and* joe <nf>; **tea**, iced tea; **fruit juice**, lemonade, vegetable juice, tomato juice; juice box

50 <food packaging terms> use-by date, best-before date

51 **breads**

bagel
brioche
brown bread
challah
corn bread
croissant
dinner roll
egg bread
English muffin
flatbread
French bread
Irish soda bread
matzo
nut bread
oatmeal bread
plain white roll
poppy-seed plait
potato bread
pumpernickel bread
raisin bread
roll
rye bread
sourdough bread
Vienna bread
white bread
whole-wheat bread

52 **cheeses**

American
Banon
Bel paese
bleu cheese
Bleu de Bresse
blue cheese
Blue Cheshire
Boursin
Brick
Brie
Caciocavallo
Caerphilly
Camembert
Cheddar
Cheshire
chevre
Chevret
cottage cheese
cream cheese
Danish blue
Dolcelatte
Dunlop
Edam
Edelpilzkase
Emmenthaler
Epoisses
Feta
Fontina
Fromage
Gloucester
goat cheese
Gorgonzola
Gouda
Gruyere
Havarti
hoop cheese
Jaalsberg
jack cheese
Jarlsberg
Lancashire
Leicester
Liederkranz
Limburger
Liptauer
Livarot
Maroilles
Mimolette
Monterey Jack
mozzarella
Muenster
Neufchatel
New England Sage
Parmesan
pecorino
Pont l'Eveque
Port Salut
pot cheese
provolone
Quargel
rat cheese
red Windsor
ricotta
Romano
Roquefort
Samsoe
sapsago
smoked cheese
St. Marcellin
St. Nectaire
Stilton
string cheese
Swiss
Teleme
Tillamook
Tilsiter
Tome au raisin
Vacherin
White Wensleydale

53 **desserts**

angel food cake
apple pandowdy
apple pie
baked Alaska
baklava
banana split
Bavarian cream
blancmange
bombe
Boston cream pie
brandy snap
bread pudding
brownie
cake
cannoli
charlotte
charlotte russe
cheesecake

chocolate chip cookie
clafouti
cobbler
coffeecake
compote
cookie
coupe
cream puff
crème brulee
crème caramel
crepe suzette
crisp
cruller
cupcake
custard
Danish
deep dish pie
devil's food cake
doughnut
eclair
egg cream
Eskimo pie
fig bar
flan
floating island
flummery
frappe
frozen custard
frozen yogurt
fruitcake
fruit cup
fruit pie
frumenty
galatoboureko
gateau
gelatin
gelato
gingerbread
gingersnap
granita
halvah
ice cream
ice cream bar
ice cream cake
ice cream float
ice cream sandwich
ice cream soda
Indian pudding
Italian ice
Jell-O
jelly roll
junket
key lime pie
kuchen
lady finger
layer cake
lemon meringue pie
macaroon
marble cake
marshmallow
mela stregata
milkshake
mousse
mud pie
napoleon
Nesselrode
pandowdy
parfait
pastry
peach Melba
pie
pound cake
profiteroles
pudding
rice pudding
sacher torte
scone
sherbert
shortbread
shortcake
s'mores
snow cone
snow pudding
sorbet
souffle
spice cake
sponge cake
strawberry shortcake
streusel
strudel
sugar cookie
sundae
sweet potato pie
sweet roll
tapioca
tart
tiramisu
Toll House cookie
torte
trifle
turnover
upside-down cake
vacherin
wafer
wedding cake
zabaglione
zuppa inglese

54 beers

abbey ale
ale
altbier
amber ale
barley wine
Berliner weisse
Biere de Garde
bitter
bitter stout
bittersweet
bock beer
brown ale
bruised beer
caramel malt
cask-conditioned ale
chicha
copper ale
craft-brewed beer
cream ale
crystal malt
dark beer
diat pils
doppelbock
dort
dortmunder
draft beer
draught beer
dry beer
dunkel beer
dunkel weissbier
eisbock
faro
festbier
fire-brewed beer
framboise
gueuze
hefe weizen
home brew
ice beer
India pale ale
kellerbier
kolsch
krausen
kriek
kristall weizen
kruidenbier
Kulmbacher beer
kumiss
kvass
lager
lambic beer
light beer
loster bier
maibock
malt liquor
marzen
mead
melomel
Munchener
near beer
needled beer
nonalcoholic beer
nut brown ale
oatmeal stout
obergarig
old ale
oscura
pale ale
pilsener
poker beer
porter
rauchbier
saison
Scotch ale
schwarzbier
specialty malt
spruce beer
starkbier
steam beer
stout
Trappist
tripel beer
ur-bock
Vienna beer
weiss
weizenbier
wheat beer
white beer
witbier
zwickelbier

55 cocktails, mixed drinks

Adam and Eve
after-dinner cocktail
Alabama slammer
Alaska cocktail
alexander
Allegheny
Americana
angel's kiss
Bacardi cocktail
B & B
Bahama mama
banshee
Basin street
bay breeze
beachcomber
bee stinger
Bellini
Bermuda Rose
Betsy Ross
B-52
bijou cocktail
black Maria
Black Russian
black velvet
bloody Caesar
Bloody Mary
blue Hawaiian
blue lagoon
blue margarite
blue whale

bocce ball
Bombay cocktail
Boston cocktail
bourbon on the rocks
brandy alexander
brandy fizz
brandy smash
Bronx cocktail
buck's fizz
bull and bear
bull's eye
bull's milk
bullshot
buttered rum
Cape Codder
caudle
cement mixer
champagne cocktail
champagne cooler
Chapel Hill
cherry blossom
chi-chi
clamato cocktail
cobbler
coffee grasshopper
cooler
Cooperstown cocktail
Cuba libre
daiquiri
Daisy Dueller
depth charge
dingo
dirty banana
dixie julep
dream cocktail
dry martini
eggnog
English highball
Fifth Avenue
firefly
fizz
flip
foxy lady
frappe
French connection
frozen daiquiri
frozen Margarita
fuzzy navel
gentleman's cocktail
Georgia mint julep
Georgia peach
Gibson
gimlet
gin and bitters
gin and sin
gin and tonic
gin fizz
gin highball
gin rickey
gin sling
gin sour
gluhwein
godfather
godmother
golden Cadillac
grasshopper
greyhound
grog
Harvard cocktail
Harvard cooler
Harvey Wallbanger
highball
hole-in-one
Hollywood
Honolulu cocktail
hot buttered rum
hot toddy
hurricane
income tax cocktail
Indian Summer
Irish coffee
Jack Rose
kamikaze
Kentucky blizzard
Kentucky cocktail
King Alphonse
Kir
Kir royale
liberty cocktail
Long Island iced tea
Louisville lady
lover's kiss
madras
mai-tai
Manhattan
Margarita
martini
Mary Pickford cocktail
melon ball
merry widow
Mexican coffee
mimosa
mind eraser
mint julep
morning cocktail
Moscow mule
mudslide
Narragansett
New York cocktail
nutcracker
nutty professor
old-fashioned
orange blossom
orgeat
passion mimosa
peach sangaree
peppermint pattie
Peter Pan cocktail
Pimm's cup
pina colada
pink lady
pink squirrel
planter's punch
posset
pousse cafa
prairie oyster
presbyterian
Princeton cocktail
punch
Ramos gin fizz
red death
rickey
Rob Roy
rum and coke
rum cooler
rusty nail
salty dog
sangria
San Juan cooler
Scarlett O'Hara
Scotch and Soda
scotch on the rocks
screwdriver
seabreeze
Seven and Seven
shandy
shrub
sidecar cocktail
Singapore sling
slam dunk
sloe gin fizz
smash
snake bite
snowball
sombrero
soother cocktail
southern lady
southern peach
spritzer
stinger
syllabub
tequila sunrise
Thanksgiving special
thoroughbred cooler
toasted almond
toddy
Tom and Jerry
Tom Collins
to the moon
tropical special
velvet hammer
virgin Mary
vodka and tonic
vodka gimlet
vodka martini
Wassail
whiskey sour
white lady
White Russian
white satin
white spider
wild thing
wine cooler
wu-wu
Yale cocktail
zombie

56 wines

Alsace
amontillado
amoroso
apple wine
Asti spumante
Aveleda
Barbera
Bardolino
Barolo
Beaujolais
Bergerac
blanc de noir
blush
Bordeaux
Bordeaux Blanc
Burgundy
Cabernet Sauvignon
California wine
Chablis
Champagne
Chardonnay
Chateauneuf-du-Pape
Chenin blanc
Chianti
Christi
claret
cold duck
Condrieu
Cote Rotie
Cotes de Nuit
Cotes du Rhone
dandelion wine
Dao
dessert wine
DolcettoFrascati
Douro
dry wine
Entre-deux-Mers
fortified wine
Frascati
Fume Blanc
German wine
Gewurztraminer
Graves
Grenache
Hermitage
hock
Johannisberg Riesling
jug wine
Lacrima

Lambrusco
Liebfraumilch
Macon
Madeira
Malaga
Marsala
Mateus Rose
Medoc
Merlot
Mosel
Moselle
Muscadet
Muscat
Muscatel
Napa Valley wine
Navarra
Nierstein
noble wine
Oporto
Orvieto
Pauillac
Pinot Blanc
Pinot Grigio
Pinot Gris
Pinot Noir
Pomerol
Pommard
port
Pouilly-Fuisse
Pouilly-Fume
red wine
retsina
Rhine
Rhone
Riesling
Rioja
rose
ruby port
sake
Sancerre
Sangiovese
Sauternes
Sauvignon Blanc
Sekt
sherry
Shiraz
Soave
sparkling wine
St. Estephe
St. Julien
sweet wine
Sylvaner
Syrah
table wine
tawny port
Tokay-Pinot Gris
Valdepenas
Valpolicella
vermouth
vinho verde
vintage wine
Vouvray
white cabernet
white wine
white zinfandel
zinfandel

11 COOKING

NOUNS 1 **cooking, cookery, cuisine, culinary art;** food preparation, food processing; home economics, domestic science, home management, culinary science; haute cuisine, *nouvelle cuisine* <Fr>; gastronomy; catering; nutrition 7

2 <cooking technique> manner of preparation, style of recipe; baking, toasting, roasting, oven-roasting, frying, deep-frying, pan-frying, stir-frying, searing, blackening, smoking, curing, sautéing, boiling, parboiling, simmering, steaming, stewing, basting, braising, poaching, shirring, barbecuing, steeping, brewing, grilling, broiling, pan-broiling, charbroiling, microwaving, pressure-cooking; canning, pickling, preserving

3 **cook, chef,** *cuisinier* or *cuisinière* <Fr>, kitchener, culinarian, culinary artist; **chief cook, head chef,** *chef de cuisine* <Fr>; sous chef, apprentice chef, fry cook *or* grease-burner <nf>, short-order cook; **baker,** *boulanger* <Fr>, pastry cook, pastry chef, *patissier* <Fr>; caterer

4 **kitchen, cookroom,** cookery, **scullery,** cuisine; kitchenette; **galley,** caboose *or* camboose; cookhouse; **bakery,** bakehouse; barbecue; **cookware, kitchen ware,** cooker <see list>; pots and pans; refrigerator, fridge <nf>, freezer; bowl, bin, cabinet, tin, jar; cookbook, recipe, receipt

VERBS 5 **cook,** prepare food, prepare, prepare a meal, do, cook up, fry up, boil up, rustle up <nf>; precook; boil, heat, heat up, stew, simmer, parboil, blanch; brew; poach, coddle; bake, fire, ovenbake; **microwave,** micro-cook, nuke <nf>; scallop; shirr; roast; toast; fry, deep-fry *or* deep-fat fry, griddle, pan, pan-fry; sauté, stir-fry; frizz, frizzle; sear, blacken, braise, brown; broil, grill, pan-broil; barbecue; fricassee; steam; devil; curry; baste; **do to a turn,** do to perfection, whip something up *and* throw something together <nf>

ADJS 6 **cooking, culinary,** kitchen, gastronomic, epicurean; mealtime, mensal; preprandial, postprandial, after-dinner; au naturel, a la mode, a la carte, table d'hote

7 **cooked,** heated, stewed, fried, barbecued, curried, fricasseed, deviled, sautéed, shirred, toasted; roasted, roast; fired, pan-fried, deep-fried *or* deep-fat fried, stir-fried; broiled, grilled, pan-broiled; seared, blackened, braised, browned; boiled, simmered, parboiled; steamed; poached, coddled; baked, fired, oven-baked; scalloped

8 **done, well-done,** well-cooked; *bien cuit* <Fr>, done to a turn *or* to perfection; overcooked, **overdone,** burned; medium, medium-rare, al dente; doneness

9 **underdone,** undercooked, not done, **rare,** red, raw, *saignant* <Fr>; sodden, fallen

10 **cookers**

baker
barbecue
boiler
brazier
broiler
camp stove
chafer
chafing dish *or* pan
coffee maker
convection oven
cook stove
cooktop
corn popper
Crockpot <trademark>
deep fat fryer
double boiler
Dutch oven
electric cooker
electric frying pan
electric roaster
electric toaster
field range
fireless cooker
fry-cooker
galley stove
griddle
grill
hibachi
hot plate
infrared broiler
infrared cooker
microwave oven
oven
percolator
pots and pans
pressure cooker *or* autoclave
range
roaster
rotisserie
samovar
slow cooker
smoker
steamer
stove
toaster
toaster oven
waffle iron
waterless cooker

12 EXCRETION

<bodily discharge>

NOUNS 1 **excretion,** egestion, extrusion, **elimination, discharge,** expulsion, call of nature <nf>; **emission;** eccrisis; **exudation,** transudation; extravasation, effusion, flux, flow; ejaculation, ejection 909; **secretion** 13

2 **defecation,** dejection, **evacuation,** voidance; movement, **bowel movement** *or* BM, number two <nf>, **stool,** shit *and* crap <nf>; **diarrhea,** loose bowels, flux; trots *and* runs *and* shits *and* GI's *and* GI shits <nf>; turistas *or* tourista *and* Montezuma's revenge *and* Aztec two-step <nf>; lientery; **dysentery,** bloody flux; catharsis, purgation, purge

3 **excrement,** dejection, dejecta, dejecture, **discharge,** ejection; matter; **waste,** waste matter; **excreta,** egesta, ejecta, ejectamenta; exudation, exudate; transudation, transudate; extravasation, extravasate; effluent; sewage, sewerage

4 **feces,** feculence; defecation, movement, bowel movement *or* **BM; stool, shit** <nf>, **ordure,** night soil, jakes <Brit nf>, crap *and* ca-ca *and* doo-doo *and* number two *and* poo-poo *and* poop <nf>; turd <nf>; dingleberry <nf>; **manure, dung, droppings;** cow pats, cow flops <nf>; cow chips, buffalo chips; guano; coprolite, coprolith; sewage, sewerage

5 **urine,** water, **piss** <nf>, number one, *pish* <Yiddish>, pee *and* pee-pee *and* wee-wee *and* whizz <nf>, piddle, leak, stale; **urination,** micturition, emiction, a piss *and* a pee *and* a whizz <nf>; urea, uric acid

6 **pus; matter,** purulence, peccant humor <old>, discharge, ichor, sanies; pussiness; **suppuration, festering,** rankling, mattering, running, weeping; gleet, leukorrhea

7 **sweat, perspiration,** perspiring, sweating, water; exudation, exudate; diaphoresis, sudor, sudation, sudoresis; honest sweat, the sweat of one's brow; beads of sweat, beaded brow; cold sweat; **lather,** swelter, streams of sweat; sudoresis; body odor *or* **BO,** perspiration odor

8 **hemorrhage,** hemorrhea, **bleeding;** nosebleed; ecchymosis, petechia

9 **menstruation,** menstrual discharge *or* flow *or* flux, catamenia, catamenial discharge, flowers <old>, **the curse** <nf>, the curse of Eve; **menses, monthlies,** courses, period, one's friend, time of the month, that time

10 **latrine,** convenience, **toilet,** toilet room, water closet *or* WC <nf>; **john** *and* johnny *and* **can** *and* crapper <nf>; loo <Brit nf>; **lavatory,** washroom, public convenience; **bathroom,** basement; **rest room,** comfort station *or* room; ladies' *or* women's *or* girls' *or* little girls' *or* powder room <nf>; men's *or* boys' *or* little boys' room <nf>, the ladies', the gents'; head; privy, outhouse, backhouse, shithouse <nf>, johnny house <nf>, earth closet <Brit>, closet *and* necessary <nf>; bog <Brit>; urinal

11 **toilet,** stool, **water closet; john** *and* johnny *and* **can** *and* crapper *and* thunderbox <nf>; latrine; commode, closetstool, potty-chair <nf>; **chamber pot,** chamber, pisspot <nf>, potty <nf>, jerry <Brit nf>, jordan <Brit nf>, thunder mug <nf>; throne <nf>; potty-chair; chemical toilet, chemical closet; urinal; bedpan

VERBS 12 **excrete,** egest, **eliminate, discharge,** emit, give off, pass, expel; ease *or* relieve oneself, go to the bathroom *or* toilet <nf>; **exude,** exudate, transude; weep; effuse, extravasate; answer the call of nature, pay a call, make a pit stop; **secrete** 13.5

13 **defecate, shit** *and* crap <nf>, **evacuate,** void, **stool,** dung, have a bowel movement *or* BM, move one's bowels, soil, take a shit *or* crap <nf>, ca-ca *or* number two <nf>; have the runs *or* trots *or* shits <nf>

14 **urinate, pass** *or* **make water, wet,** stale, **piss** <nf>, piddle, pee, tinkle; pee-pee *and* wee-wee *and* whizz *and* take a whizz *and* take a leak <nf>, spend a penny, pump bilge, do number one

15 **fester,** suppurate, matter, rankle, run, weep; ripen, come *or* draw to a head

16 **sweat, perspire,** exude; break out in a sweat, **get all in a lather** <nf>; sweat like a trooper *or* horse *or* pig, swelter, wilt, steam

17 **bleed, hemorrhage,** lose blood, **shed blood,** spill blood; bloody; ecchymose, extravasate

18 **menstruate,** come sick, bleed, come around, have one's period, have the curse, have one's friend, be on the rag <nf>

ADJS 19 **excretory,** excretive, excretionary; eliminative, eliminant, egestive; exudative, transudative; **secretory** 13.7

20 **excremental,** excrementary; **fecal,** feculent, shitty *and* crappy <nf>, scatologic *or* scatological, stercoral, stercorous, stercoraceous, dungy; **urinary,** urinative

21 **festering,** suppurative, rankling, mattering; pussy, purulent

22 **sweaty,** perspiry <nf>; sweating, perspiring; wet with sweat, beaded with sweat, **sticky** <nf>, **clammy;** bathed in sweat, drenched with sweat, wilted; in a sweat; sudatory, sudoric, sudorific, diaphoretic

23 **bleeding, bloody,** hemorrhaging; ecchymosed

24 **menstrual,** catamenial, menstruating; on the rag <nf>

13 SECRETION

NOUNS 1 **secretion,** secreta, secernment; **excretion** 12; external secretion, internal secretion; exudation, transudation; lactation; weeping, lacrimation

2 digestive secretion *or* juice, salivary secretion, gastric juice, digestive juice, pancreatic juice, intestinal juice; bile, gall; endocrine; prostatic fluid, seminal fluid, semen, sperm; thyroxin; autacoid, **hormone,** chalone; mucus; tears; rheum; sebum, musk, pheromone; milk, colostrum; gland

3 **saliva, spittle, sputum, spit, expectoration,** spitting; phlegm, sputum; salivation, ptyalism, sialorrhea, sialagogue, **slobber,** slabber, slaver, **drivel,** dribble, **drool;** froth, foam; mouth-watering

4 endocrinology, eccrinology, hormonology

VERBS 5 **secrete,** produce, give out *or* off, exude, transude, release, emit, discharge, eject; **excrete** 12.12; water; lactate; weep, tear, cry, lacrimate; sweat, perspire

6 **salivate,** ptyalize; **slobber,** slabber, slaver, **drool, drivel,** dribble; **expectorate, spit,** spit up; spew; hawk, clear the throat

ADJS 7 **secretory,** secretive, secretional, secretionary, secreting; **excretory** 12.19; exudative, transudatory, emanative, emanatory, emanational; lymphatic, serous; seminal, spermatic; watery, watering; lactational; lacteal, lacteous, lactating; lachrymal, lacrimatory, lachrymose; rheumy; salivary, salivant, salivous, salivating, sialoid, sialagogic; sebaceous, sebiferous; sweating, sweaty, sudatory

8 **glandular,** glandulous; **endocrine,** humoral, exocrine, eccrine, apocrine, holocrine, merocrine; **hormonal** *or* hormonic; adrenal, pancreatic, gonadal; ovarian; luteal; prostatic; splenetic; thymic; thyroidal

14 BODILY DEVELOPMENT

NOUNS 1 **bodily** *or* **physical development,** growth, development 861.1, maturation, maturing, maturescence, coming of age, growing up, reaching one's full growth, upgrowth; growing like a weed <nf>; plant growth, vegetation 310.32, germination, pullulation; sexual maturity, pubescence, puberty; nubility, marriageability, marriageableness; adulthood, manhood, womanhood; reproduction, procreation 78, burgeoning, sprouting; budding, gemmation; outgrowth, excrescence; overgrowth 257.5

VERBS 2 **grow, develop,** wax, **increase** 251; gather, brew; **grow up,** mature, maturate, spring up, ripen, come of age, **shoot up,** sprout up, upshoot, upspring, upsprout, upspear, overtop, tower; grow like a weed <nf>; burgeon, **sprout** 310.34, blossom 310.32, reproduce 78.7, procreate 78.8, grow out of, germinate, pullulate; vegetate 310.34; **flourish, thrive;** mushroom, balloon; outgrow; overgrow, hypertrophy, overdevelop, grow uncontrollably

ADJS 3 **grown, full-grown, grown-up,** developed, well-developed, fully developed, **mature, adult, full-fledged; growing,** adolescent, maturescent, pubescent; nubile, marriageable; **sprouting,** crescent, budding, flowering 310.38, florescent, **flourishing,** blossoming, blooming, burgeoning, fast-growing, thriving; overgrown, hypertrophied, overdeveloped

15 STRENGTH

<inherent power>

NOUNS 1 **strength, might,** mightiness, powerfulness, stamina; **force, potency,** power 18; **energy** 17; **vigor, vitality,** vigorousness, heartiness, lustiness, lustihood; **stoutness, sturdiness,** stalwartness, robustness, hardiness, ruggedness; **guts** *and* gutsiness <nf>, fortitude, intestinal fortitude <nf>, **toughness** 1049, **endurance, stamina,** staying *or* sticking power, stick-to-it-iveness <nf>; **strength of will,** decisiveness, obstinacy 361

2 **muscularity,** brawniness; beefiness *and* huskiness *and* heftiness *and* burliness <nf>, thewiness, sinewiness; **brawn,** beef <nf>; **muscle,** brawn, sinew, sinews, thew, thews; musculature, build, physique; tone, elasticity 1048; brute strength

3 **firmness, soundness,** staunchness, stoutness, **sturdiness, stability,** solidity, **hardness** 1046, temper

4 **impregnability,** impenetrability, **invulnerability,** inexpugnability, inviolability; **unassailability,** unattackableness; resistlessness, **irresistibility; invincibility,** indomitability, insuperability, unconquerableness, unbeatableness; invincibility

5 **strengthening, invigoration,** fortification; **hardening,** toughening, firming; case hardening, tempering; **restrengthening,** reinforcement; **reinvigoration,** refreshment, revivification; fortifying

6 **strong man, stalwart, tower of strength,** muscle man, piledriver, bulldozer, hunk <nf>; **giant,** Samson, Goliath; Charles Atlas, Mr Universe; superhero, Hercules, Atlas, Antaeus, Cyclops, Briareus, colossus, Polyphemus, Titan, Brobdingnagian, Tarzan, Superman; the strong, the mighty; bouncer

7 <nf terms> **hunk, powerhouse, muscle man,** man mountain, big bruiser, strong-arm man, bully, bullyboy, ape, tough, toughie, tough guy, bozo, **goon** 671.10, gorilla, meat-eater

8 <comparisons> horse, ox, lion; oak, heart of oak; rock, Gibraltar; iron, steel, nails

VERBS 9 **be strong,** overpower, overwhelm; have what it takes, pack a punch

10 **not weaken,** not flag; **bear up, hold up,** keep up, stand up; **hold out,** stay *or* see it out, not give up, **never say die,** not let it get one down, gird up one's loins

11 <nf terms> **tough it out, hang tough, hang in,** stick *or* take it, take it on the chin, sweat it out, go *or* stay the distance

12 **exert strength,** put beef *or* one's back into it <nf>; use force, get tough <nf>, muscle *and* manhandle *and* strong-arm <nf>

13 **strengthen, invigorate, fortify,** beef up <nf>, brace, buttress, prop, shore up, support, undergird, brace up; gird, gird up one's loins; steel, harden, case harden, anneal, stiffen, **toughen,** temper, nerve; confirm, sustain; **restrengthen, reinforce; reinvigorate,** refresh, revive, recruit one's strength; soup up, beef up

14 **proof,** insulate, weatherproof, soundproof, muffle, quietize, fireproof, waterproof, goofproof <nf>, etc

ADJS 15 **strong, forceful,** forcible, **mighty, powerful,** puissant <nf>, **potent** 18.12; **stout, sturdy, stalwart, rugged,** hale; hunky *and* husky *and* hefty *and* beefy <nf>, strapping, durable, doughty <nf>, **hardy,** hard, hard as nails, cast-iron, iron-hard, steely; **robust,** robustious, gutty *and* gutsy <nf>; strong-willed, obstinate 361.8; **vigorous, hearty,** nervy, **lusty,** bouncing, full- *or* red-blooded; bionic, sturdy as an ox, strong as a lion *or* an ox *or* a horse, strong as brandy, strong as strong; full-strength, double-strength, industrial-strength <nf>

16 **able-bodied, well-built,** well-set, well-set-up <nf>, well-knit, of good *or* powerful physique, broad-shouldered, barrel-chested, **athletic; muscular,** well-muscled, heavily muscled, thickset, burly, **brawny;** thewy, sinewy, **wiry;** muscle-bound, all muscle; strapping

17 **herculean,** Briarean, Antaean, Cyclopean, Atlantean, gigantic, gigantesque, Brobdingnagian, huge 257.20; amazonian

18 **firm, sound, stout,** sturdy, tough, hard-boiled <nf>, **staunch, stable,** solid; sound as a dollar, solid as a rock, firm as Gibraltar, made of iron; rigid, unbreakable, infrangible; braced, buttressed

19 **impregnable,** impenetrable, **invulnerable,** inviolable, inexpugnable; **unassailable,** unattackable, insuperable, unsurmountable; resistless, **irresistible; invincible,** indomitable, **unconquerable,** unsubduable, unyielding 361.9, incontestable, unbeatable, more than a match for; overpowering, overwhelming, avalanchine

20 **resistant, proof, tight;** impervious; foolproof; shatterproof; weatherproof, dampproof, watertight, leakproof; hermetic, airtight; soundproof, noiseproof; puncture proof, holeproof; bulletproof, ballproof, shellproof, bombproof; rustproof, corrosionproof; fireproof, flameproof, fire-resisting; burglarproof

21 **unweakened, undiminished,** unallayed, unbated, unabated, unfaded, unwithered, unshaken, unworn, unexhausted; **unweakening, unflagging, unbowed;** in full force *or* swing, **going strong** <nf>; in the plenitude of power

22 <of sounds and odors> **intense, penetrating,** piercing; **loud,** deafening, thundering 56.12; **pungent,** reeking 69.10

ADVS 23 **strongly, stoutly, sturdily,** stalwartly, robustly, ruggedly; **mightily, powerfully, forcefully,** forcibly; **vigorously, heartily,** lustily; **soundly, firmly,** staunchly; impregnably, invulnerably, **invincibly, irresistibly,** unyieldingly; resistantly, imperviously; **intensely; loudly,** at the top of one's lungs, clamorously, deafeningly; **pungently**

WORD ELEMENTS 24 muscul-, musculo-, my-, myo-; -eus

16 WEAKNESS

NOUNS 1 **weakness,** weakliness, **feebleness,** strengthlessness; **flabbiness, flaccidity,** softness; **impotence** *or* impotency 19; **debility,** debilitation, prostration, invalidism, collapse; **faintness,** faintishness, dizziness, lightheadedness, shakiness, gone *or* blah feeling <nf>; **fatigue** 21, exhaustion, weariness, dullness, sluggishness, languor, lassitude, **listlessness,** tiredness, languishment, atony, burn-out *or* burnout; anemia, bloodlessness, etiolation, asthenia, adynamia, cachexia *or* cachexy

2 **frailty,** slightness, **delicacy, daintiness,** lightness; **flimsiness, unsubstantiality,** wispiness, sleaziness, shoddiness; **fragility,** frangibility *or* frangibleness, brittleness, breakableness, destructibility; disintegration 806; **human frailty,** "amiable weakness"—Henry Fielding; gutlessness <nf>, cowardice 491; moral weakness, irresolution, **indecisiveness,** infirmity of will, velleity, changeableness 854; inherent vice

3 **infirmity, unsoundness,** incapacity, unfirmness, unsturdiness, **instability, unsubstantiality;** decrepitude; **unsteadiness, shakiness,** ricketiness, wobbliness, wonkiness <Brit nf>, caducity, senility, invalidism; wishy-washiness, insipidity, vapidity, wateriness

4 **weak point, weakness,** weak place, **weak side,** weak link, vulnerable point, chink in one's armor, Achilles' heel *or* heel of Achilles; feet of clay

5 **weakening, enfeeblement, debilitation,** exhaustion, inanition, attrition; languishment; **devitalization,** enervation, evisceration; fatigue; attenuation, extenuation; softening, mitigation, damping, abatement, slackening, relaxing, relaxation, blunting, deadening, dulling; **dilution,** watering, watering-down, attenuation, thinning, reduction

6 **weakling,** weak *or* meek soul, weak sister <nf>, hothouse plant, softy <nf>, softling, **jellyfish,** invertebrate, gutless wonder <nf>, **baby,** big baby, crybaby, chicken <nf>, Milquetoast, sop, **milksop, namby-pamby, mollycoddle,** mama's boy, mother's boy, mother's darling, teacher's pet; sissy *and* pansy *and* pantywaist <nf>, pushover <nf>, lightweight; **wimp,** poor *or* weak *or* dull tool <nf>; **nonentity,** hollow man, doormat *and* empty suit *and* nebbish *and* sad sack <nf>

7 <comparisons> kitten, reed, thread, matchwood, rope of sand; house of cards, eggshell, glass, house built on sand, sand castle, cobweb; water, milk and water, gruel, dishwater, cambric tea

VERBS **8** <be weak> **shake,** tremble, quiver, quaver, cringe, cower 491.9, totter, teeter, dodder; halt, limp; be on one's last leg, have one foot in the grave

9 <become weak> **weaken,** grow weak *or* weaker, go soft <nf>; **languish, wilt,** faint, **droop,** drop, dwindle, **sink, decline, flag, pine, fade, tail away** *or* **off**, fail, fall *or* drop by the wayside; crumble, go to pieces, disintegrate 806.3; go downhill, hit the skids <nf>, give way, break, collapse, cave in <nf>, surrender, cry uncle <nf>; give out, have no staying power, run out of gas <nf>, conk *or* peter *or* poop *or* peg *or* fizzle out <nf>; come apart, come apart at the seams, come unstuck *or* unglued <nf>; yield; die on the vine <nf>; wear thin *or* away

10 <make weak> **weaken, enfeeble, debilitate,** unstrengthen, unsinew, undermine, soften up <nf>, unbrace, unman, unnerve, rattle, shake up <nf>, **devitalize, enervate,** eviscerate; **sap,** sap the strength of, exhaust, gruel, take it out of <nf>; shake, unstring; reduce, lay low; attenuate, extenuate, mitigate, abate; blunt, deaden, dull, damp *or* dampen, take the edge off; draw the teeth, defang; cramp, cripple

11 **dilute, cut** <nf>, **reduce, thin,** thin out, attenuate, rarefy; **water,** water down, adulterate, irrigate *and* baptize <nf>; soften, muffle, mute

ADJS **12** **weak,** weakly, **feeble,** debilitated, imbecile; **strengthless,** sapless, marrowless, pithless, sinewless, listless, out of gas <nf>, nerveless, lustless; **impotent,** powerless 19.13; spineless, lily-livered, whitelivered, wimpy *and* wimpish *and* chicken *and* gutless <nf>, cowardly 491.10; unnerved, shookup <nf>, unstrung, faint, faintish, lightheaded, dizzy, gone; dull, slack; **soft, flabby,** flaccid, unhardened; **limp,** limber, limp *or* limber as a dishrag, floppy, rubbery; **languorous,** languid, **drooping,** droopy, pooped <nf>; asthenic, anemic, bloodless, effete, etiolated; not what one used to be

13 "weak as water"—Bible, weak as milk and water, weak as a drink of water, weak as a child *or* baby, weak as a chicken, weak as a kitten, weak as a mouse, "weak as a rained-on bee"—F R Torrence

14 **frail, slight, delicate, dainty**; puny; light, lightweight; effeminate; namby-pamby, sissified, pansyish; **fragile,** frangible, **breakable,** destructible, shattery, crumbly, brittle, fragmentable, fracturable; **unsubstantial, flimsy,** sleazy, tacky <nf>, wispy, cobwebby, gossamery, papery; gimcrack *and* gimcracky *and* cheap-jack *and* ticky-tacky <nf>; jerry-built, jerry; gimpy

15 **unsound, infirm,** unfirm, **unstable, unsubstantial,** unsturdy, unsolid, decrepit, crumbling, fragmented, fragmentary, disintegrating 806.5; poor, poorish; rotten, rotten to the core

16 **unsteady, shaky, rickety,** ricketish, wonky <Brit nf>, spindly, spidery, teetering, teetery, tottery, tottering, doddering, tumbledown, ramshackle, dilapidated, rocky <nf>; groggy, wobbly, staggery

17 **wishy-washy,** tasteless, bland, **insipid,** vapid, neutral, watery, milky, milk-and-water, mushy; halfhearted, infirm of will *or* purpose, **indecisive,** irresolute, changeable 853.7; limp-wristed, gutless

18 **weakened, enfeebled, disabled,** incapacitated, challenged <nf>; **devitalized,** drained, exhausted, sapped, burned-out, used up, played out, spent, *ausgespielt* <Ger>, effete, etiolated; **fatigued, enervated,** eviscerated; **wasted, rundown,** worn, worn-out, worn to a frazzle <nf>, worn to a shadow, reduced to a skeleton; stressed out; on one's last legs

19 **diluted, cut** <nf>, **reduced, thinned,** rarefied, attenuated; adulterated; watered, watered-down

20 **weakening, debilitating, enfeebling; devitalizing,** enervating, sapping, exhausting, fatiguing, grueling, trying, draining, unnerving

21 **languishing, drooping,** sinking, declining, flagging, pining, fading, failing; on the wane

ADVS **22** **weakly, feebly,** strengthlessly, languorously, listlessly; faintly; delicately, effeminately, daintily; infirmly, unsoundly, unstably, unsubstantially, unsturdily, flimsily; shakily, unsteadily, teeteringly, totteringly

17 ENERGY

NOUNS **1** **energy, vigor, force, power, vitality,** strenuousness, **intensity, dynamism,** demonic energy; **potency** 18; **strength** 15; actual *or* kinetic energy; dynamic energy; potential energy; energy source 1021.1, electrical energy, hydroelectric energy, water power, nuclear energy, solar energy, wind energy, alternative energy

2 **vim, verve,** fire, adrenalin, **dash, drive; aggressiveness, enterprise,** initiative, proactiveness, thrust, spunk; **eagerness** 101, zeal, heartiness, keenness, gusto

3 <nf terms> **pep,** bang, biff, get-up-and-go, ginger, gism, jazz, sizzle, kick, moxie, oomph, pepper, piss and vinegar, **pizzazz,** poop, punch, push, snap, spizzerinctum, starch, steam, zing, zip, zizz, sparkle, wallop, balls

4 **animation, vivacity,** liveliness, energy, **ardor,** vitality, glow, warmth, enthusiasm, lustiness, robustness, mettle, **zest,** zestfulness, **gusto, élan,** éclat, impetus, impetuosity, *joie de vivre* <Fr>, *brio* <Ital>, spiritedness, **briskness,** perkiness, sprightliness, pertness, sensibility, **life, spirit,** life force, vital force *or* principle, *élan vital* <Fr>; activity 330

5 <energetic disapproval or criticism> **acrimony,** acridity, acerbity, acidity, **bitterness,** tartness, **causticity,** mordancy *or* mordacity, **virulence; harshness,** fierceness, **rigor,** roughness, **severity, vehemence,** violence 671, stringency, astringency, stridency 58.1, **sharpness, keenness, poignancy,** trenchancy; edge, point; bite, teeth, grip, sting

6 **energizer, stimulus,** stimulator, vitalizer, arouser, needle <nf>, restorative; **stimulant,** tonic 86.8; **activator,** motivator, motivating force, motive power; **animator,** spark plug *and* human dynamo *and* ball of fire <nf>; life, life of the party

7 <units of energy> atomerg, dinamode, dyne, erg, energid, foot-pound, horsepower-hour, horsepower-year, joule, calorie 1019.19, kilogram-meter, kilowatt-hour, photon, quantum

8 **energizing, invigoration, animation, enlivenment,** quickening, **vitalization,** revival, revitalization; **exhilaration, stimulation**

9 **activation,** reactivation; viability

VERBS 10 **energize,** dynamize; **invigorate, animate, enliven, liven, liven up,** vitalize, quicken, goose *or* jazz up <nf>; **exhilarate, stimulate,** hearten, galvanize, enthuse, electrify, fire, build a fire under, inflame, warm, kindle, charge, charge up, psych *or* pump up <nf>, rouse, arouse, act like a tonic, be a shot in the arm <nf>, **pep** *or* snap *or* jazz *or* zip *or* perk up <nf>, put pep *or* zip into it <nf>

11 **have energy,** be energetic, be vigorous, **thrive,** burst *or* overflow with energy, flourish, tingle, feel one's oats, be up and doing, be full of beans *or* pep *or* ginger *or* zip <nf>, be full of piss and vinegar <nf>, champ at the bit <nf>; come on like gangbusters <nf>

12 **activate,** reactivate, recharge; step on the gas <nf>

ADJS 13 **energetic, vigorous, strenuous, forceful, forcible, strong, dynamic,** kinetic, intense, acute, keen, incisive, trenchant, vivid, vibrant; **enterprising, aggressive,** proactive, activist, can-do *and* gung ho *and* take-over *and* take-charge <nf>, go-getting; **active, lively,** living, **animated, spirited,** go-go <nf>, **vivacious,** brisk, bright-eyed and bushy-tailed <nf>, feisty, lusty, **robust,** hearty, enthusiastic, mettlesome, zesty, zestful, impetuous, spanking, smacking; pumped *and* pumped up *and* jazzed-up *and* charged up *and* switched on <nf>, snappy *and* zingy *and* zippy *and* peppy <nf>, full of pep *or* pizzazz *or* piss and vinegar <nf>, full of beans <nf>

14 **acrimonious, acrid,** acidulous, acid, **bitter,** tart, **caustic,** escharotic <med>, mordant *or* mordacious, **virulent, violent, vehement,** vitriolic; **harsh,** fierce, **rigorous,** severe, rough, stringent, astringent, strident 58.12, **sharp, keen,** sharpish, incisive, trenchant, **cutting,** biting, stinging, **scathing,** stabbing, **piercing, poignant,** penetrating, edged, double-edged

15 **energizing, vitalizing, enlivening,** quickening; tonic, bracing, rousing; **invigorating,** invigorative; **animating,** animative; **exhilarating,** exhilarative; **stimulating,** stimulative, stimulatory, vivifying; activating; viable

ADVS 16 **energetically, vigorously, strenuously, forcefully,** forcibly, intensely, like a house afire *and* like gangbusters <nf>, zestfully, lustily, heartily, keenly; **actively,** briskly; **animatedly, spiritedly,** vivaciously, with pep <nf>, *con brio* <Ital>

18 POWER, POTENCY

<effective force>

NOUNS 1 **power, potency** *or* potence, prepotency, **force, might,** mightiness, **vigor,** vitality, vim, push, drive, charge, puissance <old>; dint, virtue; moxie *and* oomph *and* pizzazz *and* poop *and* punch *and* bang *and* clout *and* steam <nf>; powerfulness, forcefulness; virulence, vehemence; **strength** 15; **energy** 17; **virility** 76.2, Viagra; cogence *or* cogency, validity, effect, impact, **effectiveness,** effectivity, effectuality, competence *or* competency; productivity, productiveness; power structure, corridors of power; **influence** 894, pull; **authority** 417, weight; **superiority** 249; power pack, amperage, wattage; main force, *force majeure* <Fr>, main strength, brute force *or* strength, compulsion, duress; muscle power, sinew, might and main, beef <nf>, strong arm; full force, full blast; power struggle; black power; flower power; mana; charisma

2 **ability, capability, capacity,** potentiality, faculty, facility, fitness, qualification, talent, flair, genius, caliber, **competence,** competency, adequacy, sufficiency, **efficiency,** efficacy; **proficiency** 413.1; the stuff *and* the goods *and* what it takes <nf>; susceptibility

3 **omnipotence, almightiness, all-powerfulness;** omnicompetence

4 manpower; horsepower, brake horsepower *or* bhp, electric power, electropower, hydroelectric power; hydraulic power, water power; steam power; geothermal power; solar power; atomic power, nuclear power, thermonuclear power; rocket power, jet power; **propulsion, thrust,** impulse

5 force of inertia, *vis inertiae* <L>; dead force, *vis mortua* <L>; living force, *vis viva* <L>; force of life, *vis vitae* <L>

6 centrifugal force *or* action, centripetal force *or* action, force of gravity

7 <science of forces> dynamics, statics

8 **empowerment, enablement;** investment, endowment, enfranchisement

9 **work force,** hands, men, manpower; **fighting force,** troops, units, the big battalions, firepower; **personnel** 577.11, human resources; **forces**

VERBS **10** **empower, enable;** invest, clothe, invest *or* clothe with power, deputize; enfranchise; endue, endow, **authorize;** arm; strengthen

11 **be able,** be up to, up to, **lie in one's power; can,** may, can do; make it *or* make the grade <nf>; hack it *and* cut it *and* cut the mustard <nf>; charismatize; **wield power,** possess authority 417.13; take charge 417.14, get something under one's control *or* under one's thumb, hold all the aces *and* have the say-so <nf>

ADJS **12** **powerful, potent,** prepotent, powerpacked, **mighty,** irresistible, avalanchine, **forceful,** forcible, dynamic; **vigorous,** vital, **energetic,** puissant, ruling, in power; **cogent,** striking, telling, effective, impactful, valid, operative, in force; **strong;** high-powered, high-tension, high-pressure, high-performance, high-potency, bionic; **authoritative;** armipotent, mighty in battle

13 **omnipotent, almighty, all-powerful;** plenipotentiary, absolute, unlimited, **sovereign** 417.17; **supreme** 249.13; omnicompetent

14 **able, capable, equal to,** up to, **competent,** adequate, effective, effectual, efficient, efficacious; productive; **proficient** 413.22

ADVS **15** **powerfully, potently, forcefully,** forcibly, mightily, with might and main, **vigorously, energetically,** dynamically; **cogently,** strikingly, tellingly, impactfully; **effectively,** effectually; productively; with telling effect, to good account, to good purpose, with a vengeance

16 **ably, capably, competently,** adequately, effectively, effectually, **efficiently, well; to the best of one's ability,** as lies in one's power, so far as one can, as best one can; with all one's might, with everything that is in one

17 **by force,** by main *or* brute force, by force majeure, with the strong arm, with a high hand, high-handedly; **forcibly,** amain, with might and main; by force of arms, at the point of the sword, by storm

PREPS **18** by dint of, by virtue of

WORD ELEMENTS **19** dynam-, dynamo-; -dynamia

19 IMPOTENCE

NOUNS **1** **impotence** *or* impotency, **powerlessness,** impuissance <old>, forcelessness, feebleness, softness, flabbiness, wimpiness *or* wimpishness <nf>, **weakness** 16; power vacuum

2 **inability, incapability, incapacity,** incapacitation, **incompetence** *or* incompetency, inadequacy, insufficiency, ineptitude, **inferiority** 250, inefficiency, unfitness, imbecility; disability, disablement, disqualification; legal incapacity, wardship, minority, infancy

3 **ineffectiveness, ineffectualness,** ineffectuality, inefficaciousness, **inefficacy,** counterproductiveness *or* counterproductivity, invalidity, **futility, uselessness,** inutility, bootlessness, failure 410; fatuity, inanity

4 **helplessness, defenselessness,** unprotectedness, vulnerability; **debilitation,** invalidism, effeteness, etiolation, enervation; wimpiness <nf>

5 **emasculation,** demasculinization, defeminization, effeminization, neutering, maiming, castration 255.4

6 **impotent,** weakling 16.6, invalid, incompetent; flash in the pan, blank cartridge, wimp *and* dud <nf>; eunuch, *castrato* <Ital>, gelding; pushover, easy mark <nf>

VERBS **7** be impotent, lack force; be ineffective, avail nothing, not work *or* do not take <nf>; **waste one's effort,** bang one's head against a brick wall, have one's hands tied, spin one's wheels, tilt at windmills, run in circles, get nowhere

8 **cannot, not be able,** not have it *and* not hack it *and* not cut it *and* not cut the mustard <nf>, not make it *and* not make the grade *and* not make the cut <nf>

9 **disable,** disenable, unfit, **incapacitate,** drain, de-energize; enfeeble, debilitate, **weaken** 16.9,10; cripple, maim, lame, hamstring, knee-cap, defang, pull the teeth of <nf>; wing, clip the wings of; **inactivate,** disarm, unarm, put out of action, put *hors de combat;* **put out of order,** put out of commission <nf>, throw out of gear; bugger *and* bugger up *and* queer *and* queer the works *and* gum up *or* screw up <nf>, throw a wrench *or* monkey wrench in the machinery <nf>, sabotage, wreck; kibosh *and* put the kibosh on <nf>; spike, spike one's guns, put a spoke in one's wheels

10 <put out of action> **paralyze,** prostrate, shoot down in flames <nf>, put *hors de combat* <Fr>, knock out <nf>, break the neck *or* back of; hamstring; handcuff, tie the hands of, hobble, enchain, manacle, hog-tie <nf>, **tie hand and foot,** truss up; throttle, strangle, get a stranglehold on; muzzle, gag, silence; **take the wind out of one's sails,** deflate, knock the props out from under, undermine, cut the ground from under, not leave a leg to stand on

11 **disqualify; invalidate,** knock the bottom out of <nf>

12 **unman, unnerve, enervate,** exhaust, etiolate, **devitalize; emasculate,** cut the balls off <nf>, demasculinize, effeminize; desex, desexualize; sterilize; castrate 255.11, neuter

ADJS 13 **impotent, powerless, forceless, out of gas** <nf>; feeble, soft, flabby, **weak** 16.12, weak as a kitten, wimpy *or* wimpish <nf>

14 **unable, incapable, incompetent,** inefficient, ineffective; **unqualified,** inept, unendowed, ungifted, untalented, **unfit,** unfitted; **outmatched,** out of one's depth, in over one's head, outgunned; **inferior** 250.6

15 **ineffective, ineffectual, inefficacious,** counterproductive, feckless, not up to scratch *or* up to snuff <nf>, **inadequate** 250.7; **invalid, inoperative,** of no force; nugatory, nugacious; fatuous, fatuitous; **vain, futile, inutile, useless,** unavailing, bootless, fruitless; all talk and no action, all wind; **empty,** inane; **debilitated,** effete, enervated, etiolated, barren, sterile, washed-out <nf>

16 **disabled, incapacitated; crippled,** hamstrung; disqualified, invalidated; disarmed; paralyzed; hog-tied <nf>; prostrate, **on one's back,** on one's beam-ends; challenged

17 **out of action, out of commission** *and* out of it <nf>, out of gear; *hors de combat* <Fr>, out of the battle, off the field, out of the running; laid on the shelf, obsolete, life-expired

18 **helpless, defenseless, unprotected;** vulnerable, like a sitting duck <nf>, aidless, friendless, unfriended; fatherless, motherless; leaderless, guideless; **untenable,** pregnable, vulnerable; disenfranchised

19 **unmanned, unnerved, enervated,** debilitated, **devitalized;** nerveless, sinewless, marrowless, pithless, lustless; **castrated,** emasculate, emasculated, gelded, eunuchized, unsexed, deballed <nf>, demasculinized, effeminized

ADVS 20 **beyond one,** beyond one's power *or* capacity *or* ability, beyond one's depth, out of one's league <nf>, above one's head, too much for

INTERJ 21 no can do!

20 REST, REPOSE

NOUNS 1 **rest, repose, ease, relaxation,** slippered *or* unbuttoned ease, decompression <nf>; **comfort** 121; restfulness, quiet, tranquility; inactivity 331; sleep 22

2 **respite, recess, rest, pause,** halt, stay, lull, **break,** surcease, suspension, interlude, **intermission,** spell <Austral>, letup <nf>, **time out** <nf>, time to catch one's breath; **breathing spell,** breathing time, breathing place, breathing space, breath; **breather;** coffee break, tea break, cigarette break; cocktail hour, happy hour <nf>; enforced respite, downtime; R and R *or* rest and recreation

3 **vacation,** holiday <Brit>; **time off;** day off, week off, month off, etc; paid vacation, paid holiday <Brit>; weekend; **leave, leave of absence, furlough; liberty,** shore leave; **sabbatical,** sabbatical leave *or* year; **weekend; busman's holiday;** package tour *or* holiday

4 **holiday, day off; red-letter day,** gala day, fete day, festival day, day of festivities; national holiday, legal holiday, bank holiday <Brit>; High Holiday, High Holy Day; holy day; feast, feast day, high day, church feast, fixed feast, movable feast; half-holiday

5 **day of rest,** *dies non* <L>; **Sabbath,** Sunday, Lord's day, First day

VERBS 6 **rest, repose,** take rest, take one's ease, **take it easy** <nf>, lay down one's tools, rest from one's labors, rest on one's oars, take life easy; go to rest, settle to rest; lie down, have a lie-down, go to bed, snuggle down, curl up, tuck up, bed, bed down, couch, recline, lounge, drape oneself, sprawl, loll; take off one's shoes, unbuckle one's belt, get *or* take a load off one's feet, put one's feet up

7 **relax,** unlax <nf>, unbend, unwind, slack, slacken, **ease; ease up, let up,** slack up, slack off, **ease off,** let down, **slow down,** take it slow, take time to catch one's breath; mellow out, lay back *and* kick back *and* decompress <nf>

8 **take a rest, take a break, break, take time out** *and* grab some R and R <nf>, pause, lay off, **knock off** <nf>, recess, **take a recess,** take ten *and* take five <nf>; stop for breath, catch one's breath, breathe; stop work, suspend operations, call it a day; go to bed with the chickens, sleep in; take a nap, catch some Zs <nf>

9 **vacation, get away from it all,** holiday, take a holiday, make holiday; **take a leave of absence,**

take leave, go on leave, go on furlough, take one's sabbatical; weekend; Sunday, Christmas, etc

ADJS **10** **vacational, holiday,** ferial <old>, festal; sabbatical; **comfortable** 121.11; **restful,** quiet 173.12

ADVS **11** **at rest, at ease,** at one's ease; abed, in bed

12 **on vacation,** on leave, on furlough; off duty, on one's own time

21 FATIGUE

NOUNS **1** **fatigue, tiredness, weariness,** wearifulness; **burnout,** end of one's tether, overtiredness, overstrain; faintness, goneness, weakness, enfeeblement, lack of staying power, enervation, debility, debilitation 16.1; jadedness; lassitude, languor; tension fatigue, stance fatigue, stimulation fatigue; fatigue disease, fatigue syndrome *or* post-viral fatigue syndrome, chronic fatigue syndrome; combat fatigue; mental fatigue, brain fag <nf>; strain, mental strain, heart strain, eyestrain; sleepiness 22.1

2 **exhaustion,** exhaustedness, draining; **collapse, prostration,** breakdown, crack-up <nf>, nervous exhaustion *or* prostration, burn-out *or* burnout; blackout

3 **breathlessness, shortness of breath,** windedness, short-windedness; panting, gasping; dyspnea, labored breathing

VERBS **4** **fatigue, tire, weary, exhaust,** wilt, flag, jade, harass; **wear,** wear on *or* upon, **wear down; tire out, wear out, burn out; use up; do in; wind,** put out of breath; overtire, overweary, overfatigue, overstrain; weaken, enervate, debilitate 16.10; weary *or* tire to death, take it out of; prostrate; deprive of sleep

5 **burn out, get tired, grow weary, tire, weary,** fatigue, jade; **flag, droop,** faint, sink, feel dragged out, wilt; **play out,** run out, run down, burn out; gasp, wheeze, pant, puff, blow, puff and blow, puff like a grampus; collapse, break down, crack up <nf>, give out, drop, fall *or* drop by the wayside, drop in one's tracks, succumb; need a break

6 <nf terms> **beat, poop,** frazzle, fag, tucker; fag out, tucker out, knock out, do in, do up; **poop out,** peter out

ADJS **7** **tired, weary, fatigued,** wearied, weariful, jaded, run-down, good and tired; unrefreshed, unrestored, in need of rest, ready to drop; **faint,** fainting, feeling faint, **weak,** rocky <nf>, enfeebled, enervated, debilitated, seedy <nf>, weakened 16.13,18; drooping, droopy, wilting, flagging, sagging; languid; worn, worn-down, **worn to a frazzle** *or* shadow, toilworn, weary-worn; wayworn, way-weary; foot-weary, weary-footed, footsore; tired-armed; tired-winged, weary-winged; weary-laden

8 <nf terms> **beat, pooped, bushed,** poohed, paled, frazzled, bagged, fagged, tuckered, plumb tuckered, done, done in, all in, dead, dead beat, dead on one's feet, gone; **pooped out,** knocked out, wiped out, tuckered out, played out, fagged out; run ragged; used up, done up, beat up, washed-up, whacked out

9 tired-looking, weary-looking, tired-eyed, tired-faced, haggard, hollow-eyed, ravaged, drawn, cadaverous, worn, wan, zombiish

10 **burnt-out,** burned-out, **exhausted,** drained, **spent,** unable to go on, gone; **tired out, worn-out,** beaten; bone-tired, bone-weary; **dog-tired,** dog-weary; **dead-tired, tired to death,** weary unto death, dead-alive *or* dead-and-alive, more dead than alive, ready to drop, on one's last legs; prostrate

11 **burnt-out, overtired, overweary,** overwrought, overwearied, overstrained, overdriven, overfatigued, overspent

12 **breathless, winded;** wheezing, puffing, panting, **out of breath,** short of breath *or* wind, gasping for breath; short-winded, short-breathed, dyspneic

13 **fatiguing, wearying,** wearing, **tiring,** straining, stressful, trying, **exhausting,** draining, **grueling,** punishing, killing, demanding; **tiresome,** fatiguesome, **wearisome,** weariful; toilsome 725.18

ADVS **14** **out,** to the point of exhaustion

22 SLEEP

NOUNS **1** **sleepiness, drowsiness,** doziness, heaviness, lethargy, oscitation, somnolence *or* somnolency, yawning, stretching, oscitancy, pandiculation; languor 331.6; sand in the eyes, heavy eyelids; REM sleep *or* rapid-eye-movement sleep *or* dreaming sleep

2 **sleep, slumber; repose,** silken repose, *somnus* <L>, the arms of Morpheus; bye-bye *or* beddy-bye <nf>; doss <Brit nf>, blanket drill *and* shut eye <nf>; light sleep, fitful sleep, **doze, drowse,** snoozle <nf>; beauty sleep <nf>; sleepwalking, somnambulism; somniloquy; **land of Nod,** slumberland, sleepland, dreamland; hibernation, winter sleep, aestivation; bedtime, sack time <nf>; unconsciousness 25.2

3 **nap, snooze** <nf>, **catnap,** wink, **forty winks** *and* some Zs <nf>, zizz <Brit nf>, wink of sleep, spot of sleep; **siesta,** blanket drill *and* sack *or* rack time <nf>; power nap

4 sweet sleep, balmy sleep, downy sleep, soft sleep, gentle sleep, smiling sleep, golden slumbers; "folded sleep"—Tennyson, "the honey-heavy dew of slumber"—Shakespeare; peaceful sleep, sleep of the just; restful sleep, good night's sleep, "sleep that knits up the ravell'd sleave of care"—Shakespeare

5 **deep sleep,** profound sleep, heavy sleep, **sound sleep,** unbroken sleep, wakeless sleep, drugged sleep, dreamless sleep, the sleep of the dead, "sleep such as makes the darkness brief"—Martial; paradoxical *or* orthodox *or* dreaming *or* REM sleep, synchronized *or* S *or* NREM sleep

6 **stupor,** sopor, **coma, swoon,** lethargy <old>; **trance;** narcosis, narcohypnosis, narcoma, narcotization, narcotic stupor *or* trance; sedation; high <nf>; nod <nf>; narcolepsy; catalepsy; thanatosis, shock; sleeping sickness, encephalitis lethargica

7 **hypnosis,** mesmeric *or* **hypnotic sleep, trance,** somnipathy, hypnotic somnolence; lethargic hypnosis, somnambulistic hypnosis, cataleptic hypnosis, animal hypnosis; narcohypnosis; autohypnosis, self-hypnosis; hypnotherapy

8 **hypnotism, mesmerism;** hypnology; hypnotization, mesmerization; **animal magnetism,** od, odyl, odylic force; hypnotic suggestion, posthypnotic suggestion, autosuggestion

9 **hypnotist, mesmerist,** hypnotizer, mesmerizer; Svengali, Mesmer

10 **sleep-inducer,** sleep-producer, sleep-provoker, sleep-bringer, hypnotic, soporific, somnifacient; poppy, mandrake, mandragora, opium, opiate, morphine, morphia; nightcap; sedative 86.12; anesthetic; lullaby

11 **Morpheus,** Somnus, Hypnos; sandman, dustman <Brit>

12 **sleeper, slumberer;** sleeping beauty; **sleepyhead,** lie-abed, slugabed, sleepwalker, somnambulist; somniloquist

VERBS 13 **sleep, slumber,** rest in the arms of Morpheus, go to bed; **doze, drowse; nap, catnap,** take a nap, catch a wink, sleep soundly, **sleep like a top** *or* **log,** sleep like the dead; *dormir sur les deux oreilles* <Fr>; snore, saw wood *and* saw logs <nf>; have an early night, go to bed betimes; sleep in; oversleep

14 <nf terms> **snooze,** get some shut-eye, get some sack time, flake *or* sack out, crash, catch forty winks *or* some Zs, have a zizz <Brit>; pound the ear, kip *or* doss <Brit>

15 **hibernate,** aestivate, lie dormant

16 **go to sleep,** settle to sleep, go off to sleep, **fall asleep,** drop asleep, **drop off,** drift off, drift off to sleep; **doze off, drowse off,** nod off, dope off <nf>; close one's eyes, "let fall the shadow of mine eyes"—Shakespeare

17 **go to bed, retire;** lay me down to sleep; bed, bed down; go night-night *and* go bye-bye *and* go beddy-bye <nf>

18 <nf terms> **hit the hay, hit the sack,** crash, turn in, crawl in, flop, sack out, sack up, kip down *or* doss down <Brit>

19 **put to bed,** bed; nestle, cradle; **tuck in**

20 **put to sleep; lull to sleep,** rock to sleep; **hypnotize, mesmerize,** magnetize; **entrance,** trance, put in a trance; narcotize, drug, dope <nf>; anesthetize, put under; sedate

ADJS 21 **sleepy, drowsy,** dozy, snoozy <nf>, **slumberous,** slumbery, dreamy; **half asleep,** asleep on one's feet; sleepful, sleep-filled; yawny, stretchy <nf>, oscitant, yawning, napping, **nodding,** ready for bed; heavy, **heavy-eyed, heavy with sleep,** sleep-swollen, sleep-drowned, sleep-drunk, drugged with sleep; **somnolent,** soporific; **lethargic,** comatose, narcose *or* narcous, stuporose *or* **stuporous, in a stupor,** out of it <nf>; narcoleptic; cataleptic; narcotized, drugged, doped <nf>; sedated; anesthetized; **languid**

22 **asleep, sleeping, slumbering,** in the arms *or* lap of Morpheus, in the land of Nod; **sound asleep, fast asleep,** dead asleep, deep asleep, in a sound sleep, flaked-out <nf>; **unconscious, oblivious, out,** out like a light, out cold; comatose; dormant; dead, **dead to the world;** unwakened, unawakened

23 **sleep-inducing,** sleep-producing, sleep-bringing, sleep-causing, sleep-compelling, sleep-inviting, sleep-provoking, sleep-tempting; **narcotic,** hypnotic, **soporific, somniferous,** somnifacient; sedative 86.45

24 **hypnotic,** hypnoid, hypnoidal, **mesmeric;** odylic; narcohypnotic

23 WAKEFULNESS

NOUNS 1 **wakefulness,** wake; **sleeplessness,** restlessness, tossing and turning; **insomnia,** insomnolence *or* insomnolency, white night; vigil, all-night vigil, lidless vigil, *per vigilium* <L>; insomniac; consciousness, sentience; alertness 339.5

2 **awakening, wakening,** rousing, **arousal;** rude awakening, rousting out <nf>; reveille

VERBS 3 **keep awake,** keep one's eyes open; keep alert, be vigilant 339.8; stay awake, **toss and turn, not sleep a wink,** not shut one's eyes, count sheep; have a white night

4 **awake, awaken, wake, wake up, get up,** rouse, come alive <nf>; open one's eyes, stir <nf>

5 <wake someone up> **awaken, waken, rouse, arouse,** awake, wake, **wake up,** shake up, knock up <Brit>, roust out <nf>

6 **get up, get out of bed, arise,** rise, **rise and shine** <nf>, greet the day, **turn out** <nf>; roll out *and* pile out *and* **show a leg** *and* hit the deck <nf>

ADJS 7 **wakeful, sleepless,** slumberless, **unsleeping,** insomniac, insomnious; restless; watchful, vigilant, lidless

8 **awake,** conscious, **up; wide-awake,** broad awake; alert 339.14

ADVS 9 **sleeplessly, unsleepingly; wakefully,** with one's eyes open; alertly 339.17

24 SENSATION

<physical sensibility>

NOUNS 1 **sensation, sense, feeling;** sense impression, sense-datum *or* -data, percept, perception, sense perception; experience, sensory experience; **sensuousness,** sensuosity, sensuality; **consciousness,** awareness, apperception; response, response to stimuli

2 **sensibility,** sensibleness, physical sensibility, sentience *or* sentiency; openness to sensation, readiness of feeling, receptiveness, receptivity; sensation level, threshold of sensation, limen; impressionability, impressibility, affectibility; **susceptibility,** susceptivity, perceptibility; esthesia, aesthesia, esthesis

3 **sensitivity, sensitiveness;** perceptivity, perceptiveness, feelings; responsiveness; **tact, tactfulness, considerateness,** courtesy, politeness; **compassion, sympathy;** empathy, identification; **concern,** solicitousness, solicitude; capability of feeling, passibility; **delicacy, exquisiteness,** tenderness, fineness; **oversensitiveness,** oversensibility, hypersensitivity, **thin skin,** hyperesthesia, hyperpathia, supersensitivity, overtenderness; **irritability,** prickliness, soreness, **touchiness,** tetchiness; ticklishness, nervousness 128; allergy, anaphylaxis; sensitization; photophobia

4 **sore spot,** sore point, soft spot, raw, exposed nerve, raw nerve, nerve ending, tender spot, the quick, where the shoe pinches, where one lives *and* in the gut <nf>; agitation

5 **senses, five senses,** sensorium; touch 74, taste 62, smell 69, sight 27, hearing 48; sixth sense, second sight, extrasensory perception *or* ESP; sense *or* sensory organ, sensillum, receptor; synesthesia, chromesthesia, color hearing; phonism, photism; kinesthesia, muscle sense, sense of motion; sense organ

VERBS 6 **sense, feel,** experience, **perceive,** apprehend, be sensible of, be conscious *or* aware of, apperceive; taste 62.7, smell 69.8, see 27.12, hear 48.11,12, touch 73.6; respond, respond to stimuli; be sensitive to, have a thing about <nf>; overreact

7 **sensitize,** make sensitive; sensibilize, sensify; **sharpen, whet, quicken,** stimulate, excite, stir, cultivate, refine

8 **touch a sore spot,** touch a soft spot, touch on the raw, touch a raw spot, touch to the quick, hit *or* touch a nerve *or* nerve ending, touch where it hurts, hit one where he lives <nf>, strike home

ADJS 9 **sensory,** sensorial; **sensitive,** receptive, responsive; **sensuous;** sensorimotor, sensimotor; kinesthetic, somatosensory; feeling, percipient

10 **neural, nervous,** nerval; neurologic, neurological

11 sensible, sentient, sensile; **susceptible,** susceptive; **receptive,** impressionable, impressive <old>, impressible; **perceptive; conscious,** cognizant, **aware,** sensitive to, alive to, clued in, sussed <nf>

12 **sensitive,** responsive, sympathetic, compassionate; empathic, empathetic; passible; delicate, tactful, considerate, courteous, solicitous, tender, refined; **oversensitive, thin-skinned;** oversensible, hyperesthetic, hyperpathic, hypersensitive, supersensitive, overtender, overrefined, overwhelmed; **irritable, touchy,** irascible, tetchy <nf>, quick on the draw *or* trigger *or* uptake, itchy, ticklish, prickly; goosy <nf>, skittish; nervous; allergic, anaphylactic

13 <keenly sensitive> **exquisite,** poignant, **acute,** sharp, **keen,** vivid, intense, extreme, excruciating

14 sensate, perceptible, audible, visible, tactile, palpable, tangible, noticeable

25 INSENSIBILITY

<physical unfeeling>

NOUNS 1 **insensibility,** insensibleness, **insensitivity,** insensitiveness, insentience, impassibility, lack of feeling; **unperceptiveness,** imperceptiveness, imperception, imperceptivity, impercipience, blindness, lack of concern, obtuseness; inconsiderateness; unsolicitousness; tactlessness; discourtesy, boorishness; philistinism; **unfeeling,** unfeelingness, **apathy,** affectlessness, lack of affect; thick skin *or* hide, callousness 94.3; **numbness,** dullness, hypothymia, **deadness;** pins and needles; hypesthesia; anesthesia, analgesia; narcosis, electronarcosis; narcotization; lack of awareness

2 **unconsciousness, senselessness;** nothingness, oblivion, obliviousness, indifference, heedlessness, nirvana; nirvana principle; **faint, swoon, blackout,** syncope, athymia, lipothymy *or* lipothymia; **coma;** torpor, **stupor;** trance; catalepsy, catatony *or* catatonia, sleep 22; knockout *or* KO *or* kayo <nf>; semiconsciousness, grayout; suspended animation

3 **anesthetic,** general anesthetic, local anesthetic, analgesic, anodyne, balm, ointment, **pain killer,** pain-reliever, antiodontalgic; tranquilizer, **sedative,** sleeping pill *or* tablet, somnifacient, knockout

drops *and* Mickey Finn *and* Mickey <nf>; drug, dope <nf>, narcotic, opiate; acupuncture; desensitization

VERBS 4 **deaden, numb,** benumb, blunt, dull, obtund, **desensitize;** paralyze, palsy; **anesthetize, put to sleep,** slip one a Mickey *or* Mickey Finn <nf>, chloroform, etherize; narcotize, drug, dope <nf>; freeze, **stupefy, stun,** bedaze, besot; knock unconscious, knock senseless, **knock out,** KO *and* kayo *and* lay out *and* coldcock *and* knock stiff *and* brain <nf>; concuss

5 **faint, swoon,** drop, succumb, keel over <nf>, fall in a faint, fall senseless, **pass** *or* **zonk out** <nf>, **black out,** go out like a light; gray out

ADJS 6 **insensible, unfeeling, insensitive,** insentient, insensate, impassible; nerveless, senseless, unemotional; unsympathetic, uncompassionate; unconcerned, unsolicitous, non-caring, uncaring, impassive, cold-blooded, apathetic; tactless, boorish, heavy-handed; **unperceptive,** imperceptive, impercipient, blind, unmindful; thick-skinned, hardened, **dull,** obtuse, obdurate; **numb,** numbed, benumbed, dead, **deadened,** asleep, unfelt; **unfeeling, apathetic,** affectless; stoic; deaf; callous 94.12; anesthetized, narcotized, hypnotized

7 **stupefied, stunned,** dazed, bedazed

8 **unconscious, senseless, oblivious,** unaware, comatose, asleep, dead, **dead to the world,** cold, out, **out cold;** heedless, unmindful; nirvanic; half-conscious, semiconscious; drugged, narcotized; doped *and* stoned *and* spaced out *and* strung out *and* zonked *and* zonked out *and* out of it <nf>; catatonic, cataleptic; stunned, concussed, knocked out; desensitized; out for the count <nf>

9 **deadening,** numbing, dulling; **anesthetic,** analgesic, narcotic; stupefying, stunning, numbing, mind-boggling *or* -numbing; anesthetizing, narcotizing

26 PAIN

<physical suffering>

NOUNS 1 **pain; suffering, hurt, hurting,** painfulness, misery <nf>, **distress,** *Schmerz* <Ger>, dolor <old>; **discomfort,** malaise; aches and pains

2 **pang,** pangs, throe, throes; seizure, spasm, paroxysm; ouch <nf>; **twinge,** twitch, wrench, jumping pain; crick, kink, hitch, cramp *or* cramps; **nip,** thrill, pinch, tweak, bite, prick, pinprick, **stab,** stitch, sharp *or* piercing *or* stabbing pain, acute pain, **shooting pain,** darting pain, fulgurant pain, lancinating pain, shooting, shoot; boring *or* terebrant *or* terebrating pain; gnawing, gnawing *or* grinding pain; griping *and* torment <old>; girdle pain; stitch in the side; charley horse <nf>; phantom limb pain; hunger pang *or* pain; wandering pain; psychalgia, psychosomatic pain, soul pain, mind pain

3 **smart,** smarting, **sting,** stinging, urtication, **tingle,** tingling; **burn,** burning, burning pain, fire; pins and needles

4 **soreness, irritation,** inflammation, tenderness, sensitiveness; algesia; rankling <old>, festering; sore; sore spot 24.4

5 **ache,** aching, throbbing, throbbing ache *or* pain, throb; **headache,** cephalalgia, misery in the head <nf>; splitting headache, **sick headache, migraine,** megrim, hemicrania; **backache; earache,** otalgia; **toothache,** odontalgia; **stomachache,** tummyache <nf>, bellyache *or* gut-ache <nf>; **colic,** collywobbles, gripes, gripe, gnawing, gnawing of the bowels, fret <nf>; **heartburn,** pyrosis; **angina**

6 **agony, anguish, torment, torture,** ordeal, exquisite torment *or* torture, the rack, excruciation, crucifixion, martyrdom, martyrization, excruciating *or* agonizing *or* atrocious pain, hell on earth, punishment

VERBS 7 **pain,** give *or* inflict pain, **hurt, wound, afflict, distress,** injure; **burn;** sting; nip, bite, tweak, pinch; pierce, prick, stab, cut, lacerate, thrash; **irritate, inflame,** sear, harshen, exacerbate, intensify; chafe, gall, fret, rasp, rub, grate; gnaw, grind; gripe; fester, rankle <old>; **torture, torment,** rack, put to torture, put *or* lay on the rack, **agonize, harrow,** crucify, martyr, martyrize, traumatize, excruciate, wring, twist, contort, convulse; wrench, tear, rend; prolong the agony, kill by inches

8 **suffer, feel pain,** feel the pangs, anguish 96.19; **hurt, ache,** have a misery <nf>, ail, be afflicted; **smart,** tingle; throb, pound; shoot; twinge, thrill, twitch; **wince,** blanch, shrink, make a wry face, grimace; **agonize,** writhe

ADJS 9 **pained,** in pain, **hurt,** hurting, **suffering,** afflicted, wounded, distressed, in distress; **tortured, tormented, racked, agonized, harrowed,** lacerated, crucified, martyred, martyrized, wrung, twisted, convulsed, anguished; on the rack, under the harrow; traumatized; stressed out

10 **painful;** hurtful, **hurting,** distressing, afflictive, miserable; **acute, sharp,** piercing, stabbing, shooting, stinging, biting, gnawing; **poignant,** pungent, burning, searing, **severe,** cruel, harsh, grave, hard; griping, cramping, spasmic, spasmatic, spasmodic, paroxysmal; **agonizing, excruciating,** exquisite, atrocious, torturous, tormenting, martyrizing, racking, **harrowing,** unbearable, intolerable

11 **sore, raw;** pained; smarting, tingling, **burning;**

irritated, inflamed, tender, sensitive, fiery, angry, red; algetic; chafed, galled; **festering,** rankling <old>; black-and-blue

12 **aching,** achy, **throbbing;** headachy, migrainous, backachy, toothachy, stomachachy, colicky, griping

13 **irritating,** irritative, irritant; **chafing, galling,** fretting, rasping, boring, grating, grinding, stinging, scratchy

27 VISION

NOUNS 1 **vision, sight, eyesight,** seeing; **sightedness;** eye, power of sight, sense of sight, visual sense; **perception,** discernment; perspicacity, perspicuity, sharp *or* acute *or* keen sight, visual acuity, quick sight, 20/20 vision; farsight, farsightedness; nearsightedness; astigmatism; clear sight, unobstructed vision; rod vision, scotopia; cone vision, photopia; color vision, twilight vision, daylight vision, day vision, night vision; eye-mindedness; **field of vision,** visual field, scope, ken, purview, horizon, sweep, range; line of vision, line of sight, sight-line; peripheral vision, peripheral field; field of view 31.3; sensitivity to light, phototonus

2 **observation,** observance; **looking, watching, viewing, seeing,** witnessing, espial; **notice,** note, respect, **regard;** watch, lookout; spying, espionage

3 **look, sight,** the eye *and* a look-see *and* a gander <nf>, glad eye <nf>, dekko <Brit nf>, eye, view, regard; sidelong look; leer, leering look, lustful leer; sly look; look-in; preview; scene, prospect 33.6

4 **glance,** glance *or* flick of the eye, squiz <Austral>, slant <nf>, rapid glance, cast, side-glance; **glimpse,** flash, quick sight; **peek, peep;** wink, blink, flicker *or* twinkle of an eye; casual glance, **half an eye;** *coup d'œil* <Fr>

5 **gaze, stare,** gape, goggle; sharp *or* piercing *or* penetrating look; **ogle,** glad eye, come-hither look <nf>, bedroom eyes <nf>; **glare, glower,** glaring *or* glowering look, black look, dirty look; evil eye, *malocchio* <Ital>, whammy <nf>; withering look, hostile look, chilly look, the fisheye <nf>

6 **scrutiny,** overview, **survey,** contemplation; **examination,** inspection 938.3, scrutiny, the once-over <nf>, visual examination, a vetting <Brit nf>, ocular inspection, eyeball inspection <nf>

7 **viewpoint, standpoint, point of view,** vantage, vantage point, perspective, point *or* coign of vantage, where one stands; bird's-eye view, worm's-eye view, fly on the wall; **outlook,** angle, angle *or* field of vision, *optique* <Fr>, eyeshot; mental outlook 978.2

8 observation post *or* point; **observatory; lookout,** outlook, overlook, scenic overlook; planetarium; **watchtower,** tower; Texas tower; beacon, lighthouse, pharos; gazebo, belvedere; bridge, conning tower, crow's nest; peephole, sighthole, spyhole, loophole; **ringside,** ringside seat; **grandstand,** bleachers, stands; **gallery,** top gallery; paradise *and* peanut gallery <nf>; window

9 **eye,** visual organ, organ of vision, oculus, optic, **orb, peeper** <nf>, baby blues <nf>; clear eyes, bright eyes, starry orbs; saucer eyes, popeyes *and* goggle eyes *and* banjo eyes *and* googly eyes *and* sparklers <nf>; naked eye, unassisted *or* unaided eye; corner of the eye; eyeball; iris; pupil; eyelid, lid, nictitating membrane; eyeglasses

10 **sharp eye,** keen eye, piercing *or* penetrating eye, gimlet eye, X-ray eye; **eagle eye,** hawkeye, peeled eye <nf>, watchful eye; **weather eye**

11 <comparisons> eagle, hawk, cat, lynx, ferret, weasel; Argus

VERBS 12 **see, behold, observe, view, witness, perceive, discern, spy,** espy, **sight,** have in sight, make out, pick out, descry, spot <nf>, twig <Brit nf>, discover, notice, take notice of, have one's eye on, distinguish, recognize, ken <nf>, **catch sight of,** get a load of <nf>, take in, get an eyeful of <nf>, look on *or* upon, cast the eyes on *or* upon, **set** *or* **lay eyes on, clap eyes on** <nf>; **glimpse,** get *or* catch a glimpse of; see at a glance, see with half an eye; see with one's own eyes

13 **look, peer,** have a look, take a gander *and* take a look <nf>, direct the eyes, turn *or* bend the eyes, cast one's eye, lift up the eyes; **look at,** take a look at, eye, **eyeball** <nf>, have a look-see <nf>, have a dekko <Brit nf>, look on *or* upon, gaze at *or* upon; **watch, observe, view, regard;** keep one's eyes peeled *or* skinned, be watchful *or* observant *or* vigilant, keep one's eyes open; keep in sight *or* view, hold in view; look after; **check** *and* **check out** <nf>, scope <nf>, scope on *or* out <nf>; keep under observation, spy on, have an eye out, keep an eye out, keep an eye on, keep a weather eye on, follow, tail *and* shadow <nf>, stake out; **reconnoiter,** scout, get the lay of the land; **peek, peep,** pry, take a peep *or* peek; play peekaboo

14 **scrutinize, survey, eye,** contemplate, look over, give the eye *or* the once-over <nf>; **ogle,** ogle at, **leer,** leer at, give one the glad eye; examine, vet <Brit nf>, **inspect** 937.23; **pore,** pore over, peruse; take a close *or* careful look; take a long, hard look; size up <nf>; take stock of; have eyes in the back of one's head

15 **gaze,** gloat <old>, fix one's gaze, fix *or* fasten *or* rivet one's eyes upon, keep one's eyes upon, feast one's eyes on; **eye, ogle; stare,** stare at, stare hard, look, goggle, **gape, gawk** *or* gawp <nf>, gaze open-mouthed; crane, crane the neck, stand on tiptoe, rubberneck <nf>; strain one's eyes; look

straight in the eye, look full in the face, hold one's eye *or* gaze, stare down

16 **glare, glower,** look daggers, look black; give one the evil eye, give one a whammy <nf>; give one the fish eye <nf>, give one a dirty look

17 **glance, glimpse,** glint, cast a glance, glance at *or* upon, give a *coup d'œil* <Fr>, take a glance at, take a squint at <nf>

18 **look askance** *or* askant, give a sidelong look; squint, look asquint; cock the eye; **look down one's nose** <nf>

19 **look away,** look aside, **avert the eyes,** look another way, break one's eyes away, stop looking, turn away from, turn the back upon; drop one's eyes *or* gaze, cast one's eyes down; avoid one's gaze

ADJS 20 **visual, ocular,** eye, eyeball <nf>; **sighted,** seeing, having sight *or* vision; **optic, optical;** ophthalmic; retinal; visible 31.6

21 **clear-sighted,** clear-eyed; twenty-twenty; **farsighted,** farseeing, telescopic; **sharp-sighted,** keen-sighted, sharp-eyed, **eagle-eyed,** hawk-eyed, ferret-eyed, lynx-eyed, cat-eyed, Argus-eyed; eye-minded, perceptive, aware

ADVS 22 **at sight,** as seen, visibly, at a glance; by sight, by eyeball <nf>, visually; at first sight, **at the first blush,** *prima facie* <L>; out of the corner of one's eye; from where one stands, from one's viewpoint *or* standpoint

WORD ELEMENTS 23 opto-, -opsia, -opsy, -opsis; -opy, -opia; -scopy; ocul-, oculo-, ophthalm-, ophthalmo-

28 DEFECTIVE VISION

NOUNS 1 faulty eyesight, bad eyesight, visual handicap, defect of vision *or* sight, poor sight, impaired vision, imperfect vision, blurred vision, reduced sight, partial sightedness, partial blindness; legal blindness; **astigmatism,** astigmia; nystagmus; albinism; double vision, double sight, diplopia; tunnel vision; photophobia; **blindness** 30

2 **dim-sightedness,** dull-sightedness, near-blindness, amblyopia, gravel-blindness, sand-blindness, **purblindness,** dim eyes; blurredness, blearedness, bleariness, lippitude <old>; eyestrain, bloodshot eyes, redness, red eyes

3 **nearsightedness, myopia,** shortsightedness, short sight

4 **farsightedness,** hyperopia, longsightedness, long sight; presbyopia

5 strabismus, heterotropia; cast, cast in the eye; **squint,** squinch <nf>; **cross-eye, cross-eyedness;** convergent strabismus, esotropia; upward strabismus, anoöpsia; walleye, exotropia; detached retina; tic

6 <defective eyes> cross-eyes, cockeyes, squint eyes, lazy eye, swivel eyes <nf>, goggle eyes, walleyes, bug-eyes *and* popeyes <nf>, saucer eyes <nf>

7 **winking, blinking,** fluttering the eyelids, nictitation; winker, blinkard <old>; tic

VERBS 8 see badly *or* poorly, barely see, be half-blind; have a mote in the eye; see double

9 **squint,** squinch <nf>, squint the eye, look asquint, screw up the eyes, skew, goggle <old>

10 **wink, blink,** nictitate, bat the eyes <nf>

ADJS 11 poor-sighted; visually impaired, visually handicapped, sight-impaired; legally blind; **blind** 30.9; **astigmatic, astigmatical;** nystagmic; **nearsighted, shortsighted, myopic,** mope-eyed <old>; **farsighted,** longsighted, presbyopic; dayblind, hereralopic; nightblind, nyctalopic; colorblind; **squinting,** squinty, asquint, squint-eyed, squinch-eyed <nf>, strabismal, strabismic; winking, **blinking,** blinky, blink-eyed; blinkered; photophobic

12 **cross-eyed, cockeyed,** swivel-eyed <nf>, goggle-eyed, bug-eyed *and* popeyed <nf>, **walleyed,** saucer-eyed, glare-eyed; one-eyed, monocular, cyclopean; moon-eyed

13 **dim-sighted,** dim, dull-sighted, dim-eyed, weak-eyed, feeble-eyed, mole-eyed; **purblind,** half-blind, gravel-blind, sand-blind; bleary-eyed, blear-eyed; filmy-eyed, film-eyed; snow-blind; bloodshot, red-eyed; dry-eyed

29 OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS

NOUNS 1 **optical instrument** <see list>, optical device, viewer; **microscope** <see list>; **spectroscope,** spectrometer <see list>

2 **lens,** glass; prism, objective prism; eyepiece, objective, condenser; mirror system, catadioptric system, telecentric system; **camera** 714.11

3 **spectacles, specs** <nf>, **glasses, eyeglasses,** pair of glasses *or* spectacles, barnacles <Brit nf>, cheaters *and* peepers <nf>; reading glasses, readers; bifocals, divided spectacles, trifocals, pince-nez, nippers <nf>; lorgnette, *lorgnon* <Fr>; horn-rimmed glasses; harlequin glasses; granny glasses; mini-specs <nf>; colored glasses, sunglasses, sun-specs <nf>, dark glasses, Polaroid <trademark> glasses, shades <nf>; goggles, blinkers; eyeglass, monocle, quizzing glass; thick glasses, thick-lensed glasses, thick lenses, Coke-bottle glasses <nf>; **contacts,** contact lenses, hard lenses, soft lenses, extended-wear lenses

4 **telescope** <see list>, scope, **spy glass,** terrestrial telescope, glass, **field glass; binoculars,** zoom binoculars, opera glasses

5 **sight;** sighthole; finder, viewfinder; panoramic sight; bombsight; peep sight, open sight, leaf sight

6 **mirror,** glass, **looking glass,** seeing glass <Brit nf>, reflector, speculum; hand mirror, window mirror, rear-view mirror, cheval glass, pier glass, shaving mirror; steel mirror; convex mirror, concave mirror, distorting mirror

7 **optics,** optical physics; **optometry;** microscopy, microscopics; telescopy; stereoscopy; spectroscopy, spectrometry; infrared spectroscopy; spectrophotometry; electron optics; fiber optics; **photography** 714

8 **oculist,** ophthalmologist, **optometrist;** microscopist, telescopist; optician

ADJS 9 **optic, optical,** ophthalmic, ophthalmologic, ophthalmological, optometrical; acousto-optic, acousto-optical; ocular, binocular, monocular

10 microscopic, telescopic, etc; stereoscopic, three-dimensional, 3-D

11 **spectacled, bespectacled,** four-eyed <nf>; goggled; monocled

12 **optical instruments and viewers**

abdominoscope
amblyoscope
blink comparator
bronchoscope
camera lucida
chromatoscope
chromoscope
cystoscope
diaphanoscope
diffractometer
endoscope
epidiascope
eriometer
fiberscope
gastroscope
goniometer *or* gonioscope
image orthicon
kaleidoscope
laser
microfilm viewer *or* reader
ophthalmoscope
optometer
oscilloscope
periscope
pharyngoscope
photometer
photomultiplier
photoscope
polariscope
polemoscope
prism
pseudoscope
radarscope
radioscope
rangefinder
retinoscope
saccarimeter
sniperscope
snooperscope
spectroscope
stereopticon
stereoscope
stroboscope
telestereoscope
thaumatrope

13 **microscopes**

acoustic microscope
binocular microscope
blink microscope
comparison microscope
compound microscope
conoscope
dark-field microscope
dissecting microscope
electron microscope
field-emission microscope
field-ion microscope
fluorescence microscope
gravure microscope
high-powered microscope
interference microscope
laboratory microscope
light microscope
metallograph
metallurgical microscope
microprojector
optical microscope
oxyhydrogen microscope
phase contrast microscope *or* phase microscope
photomicroscope
pinion focusing microscope
polarizing microscope
power microscope
projecting microscope
scanning electron microscope
scanning microscope
scanning tunneling microscope
simple *or* single microscope
spectromicroscope
stereomicroscope *or* stereoscopic microscope
surface microscope
transmission electron microscope
ultramicroscope
ultraviolet microscope
X-ray microscope

14 **spectroscopes, spectrometers**

analytical spectrometer
diffraction spectroscope
direct-reading spectrometer
direct-reading spectroscope
direct-vision spectroscope
mass spectrograph
mass spectroscope
microspectrophotometer
microspectroscope
microwave spectroscope
monochromator
ocular spectroscope
prism spectroscope
reversion spectroscope
spectrograph
spectrophotometer
spectroradiometer
star spectroscope

15 **telescopes**

astronomical telescope *or* Kepler telescope
Cassegrain telescope
collimator
coudé telescope
Dobsonian telescope
double-image telescope
elbow telescope
electron telescope
equatorial telescope
finder telescope
Galilean telescope
Gregorian telescope
guiding telescope
Hale telescope
heliometer
Hubble Space Telescope
inverting telescope
Maksutov telescope
mercurial telescope
Mills cross
Multiple Mirror Telescope *or* MMT
Newtonian telescope
optical telescope
panoramic telescope
prism *or* prismatic telescope
radio telescope
reflecting telescope
refracting telescope
Schmidt telescope
spotting scope
telescopic sight
terrestrial telescope
tower telescope
twin telescope
vernier telescope
water telescope
zenith telescope *or* tube

30 BLINDNESS

NOUNS 1 **blindness, sightlessness,** cecity, ablepsia, unseeingness, sightless eyes, lack of vision, eyelessness; stone-blindness, total blindness; darkness, "total eclipse without all hope of day"—Milton; legal blindness; partial blindness, reduced sight, **blind side; blind spot;** dimsightedness; snow blindness, niphablepsia; amaurosis, *gutta serena* <L>, drop serene; cataract; glaucoma; trachoma; mental *or* psychic blindness, mind-blindness, soul-blindness, benightedness, unenlightenment, spiritual blindness; **blinding,** making blind, depriving of sight, putting out the eyes, excecation <old>;

blurring the eyes, blindfolding, hoodwinking, blinkering

2 **day blindness,** hemeralopia; **night blindness,** nyctalopia; moon blindness, moon-blind

3 **color blindness;** dichromatism; monochromatism, achromatopsia; red blindness, protanopia, green blindness, deuteranopia, red-green blindness, Daltonism; yellow blindness, xanthocyanopia; blue-yellow blindness, tritanopia; violet-blindness

4 **the blind,** the sightless, the unseeing; blind man; bat, mole; "blind leaders of the blind"—Bible

5 blindfold; eye patch; blinkers, blinds, blinders, rogue's badge

6 <aids for the blind> sensory aid, **Braille,** New York point, Gall's serrated type, Boston type, Howe's American type, Moon *or* Moon's type, Alston's Glasgow type, Lucas's type, sight-saver type, Frere's type; line letter, string alphabet, writing stamps; noctograph, writing frame, embosser, high-speed embosser; visagraph; talking book; optophone, Visotoner, Optacon; personal sonar, Pathsounder; ultrasonic spectacles; cane; Seeing Eye dog, guide dog; white stick *or* cane

VERBS 7 **blind,** blind the eyes, deprive of sight, **strike blind,** render *or* make blind, excecate <old>; darken, dim, obscure, eclipse; **put one's eyes out,** gouge; **blindfold,** blinker, hoodwink, bandage; throw dust in one's eyes, benight; **dazzle,** bedazzle, daze; glare; snow-blind

8 **be blind,** not see, walk in darkness, grope in the dark, feel one's way; go blind, lose one's sight *or* vision, black out; be blind to, close *or* shut one's eyes to, wink *or* blink at, look the other way, blind oneself to, wear blinkers *or* have blinders on, avert one's eyes; have a blind spot *or* side

ADJS 9 **blind, sightless, unsighted,** ableptical, eyeless, visionless, **unseeing,** undiscerning, unobserving, unperceiving; in darkness, rayless, bereft of light, dark <nf>, "dark, dark, dark, amid the blaze of noon"—Milton; **stone-blind,** stark blind, **blind as a bat,** blind as a mole *or* an owl; amaurotic; dim-sighted 28.13; hemeralopic; nyctalopic; color-blind; glaucomatous; legally blind; mind-blind, soul-blind, mentally *or* psychically *or* spiritually blind, benighted, unenlightened

10 **blinded,** excecate <old>, darkened, obscured; **blindfolded,** blindfold, hoodwinked, blinkered; **dazzled,** bedazzled, dazed; snow-blind, snow-blinded; sand-blind

11 **blinding,** obscuring; **dazzling,** bedazzling, stunning

31 VISIBILITY

NOUNS 1 **visibility,** visibleness, perceptibility, discernibleness, observability, detectability, visuality, seeableness; exposure; manifestation; outcrop, outcropping; the visible, the seen, what is revealed, what can be seen; revelation, epiphany

2 **distinctness, plainness,** evidence <old>, evidentness, obviousness, patentness, manifestness, recognizability; **clearness, clarity,** crystal-clearness, lucidity, limpidity; **definiteness,** definition, sharpness, microscopical distinctness; resolution, high resolution, low resolution; **prominence, conspicuousness,** conspicuity; **exposure,** public exposure, high profile, low profile; high *or* low visibility; atmospheric visibility, seeing, ceiling, ceiling unlimited, visibility unlimited, CAVU *or* ceiling and visibility unlimited, severe clear <nf>, visibility zero

3 **field of view,** field of vision, range *or* scope of vision, **sight,** limit of vision, eyereach, **eyesight,** eyeshot, ken; **vista, view, horizon, prospect, perspective, outlook,** survey, visible horizon; range, scan, scope; line of sight, sightline, line of vision; naked eye; command, domination, outlook over; **viewpoint, observation** point 27.8

VERBS 4 **show,** show up, show through, shine out *or* through, **surface,** appear 33.8, **be visible,** be seen, be revealed, be evident, be noticeable, be obvious, meet the gaze, impinge on the eye, present to the eye, meet *or* catch *or* hit *or* strike the eye; **stand out,** stand forth, loom large, glare, **stare one in the face,** hit one in the eye, **stick out like a sore thumb;** dominate; emerge, come into view, materialize

5 **be exposed,** be conspicuous, have high visibility, stick out, hang out <nf>, crop out; live in a glass house; have *or* keep a high profile

ADJS 6 **visible,** visual, **perceptible,** perceivable, **discernible, seeable,** viewable, witnessable, beholdable, observable, detectable, noticeable, recognizable, to be seen; **in sight,** in view, in plain sight, in full view, present to the eyes, before one's eyes, under one's eyes, open, naked, outcropping, hanging out <nf>, exposed, showing, open *or* exposed to view; **evident,** in evidence, **manifest, apparent;** revealed, disclosed, unhidden, unconcealed, unclouded, undisguised

7 **distinct, plain, clear, obvious, evident, patent,** unmistakable, unmissable, not to be mistaken, much in evidence, plain to be seen, for all to see, showing for all to see, plain as a pikestaff, plain as the nose on one's face, plain as day, clear as day, plain as plain can be, big as life and twice as ugly; **definite, defined, well-defined,** well-marked, well-resolved, in focus; **clear-cut,** clean-cut; crystal-clear, clear as crystal; **conspicuous,** glaring, staring, **prominent,** pronounced, well-pronounced,

in bold *or* strong *or* high relief, high-profile; identifiable, recognizable

ADVS 8 **visibly, perceptibly,** perceivably, discernibly, seeably, recognizably, observably, markedly, noticeably; **manifestly, apparently,** evidently; **distinctly, clearly,** with clarity *or* crystal clarity, **plainly,** obviously, patently, definitely, unmistakably; conspicuously, undisguisedly, unconcealedly, prominently, pronouncedly, glaringly, starkly, staringly

32 INVISIBILITY

NOUNS 1 **invisibility,** imperceptibility, unperceivability, undetectability, indiscernibility, unseeableness, viewlessness; nonappearance; disappearance 34; the invisible, the unseen; more than meets the eye; unsubstantiality 764, immateriality 1053, **secrecy** 345, **concealment** 346; hidden depths, tip of the iceberg; zero visibility

2 **inconspicuousness,** half-visibility, semivisibility, low profile, latency; **indistinctness, unclearness,** unplainness, **faintness,** paleness, feebleness, weakness, **dimness,** bedimming, bleariness, darkness, shadowiness, **vagueness,** vague appearance, indefiniteness, obscurity, uncertainty, indistinguishability; **blurriness,** blur, soft focus, defocus, **fuzziness, haziness,** mistiness, filminess, fogginess

VERBS 3 be invisible *or* unseen, escape notice; lie hid 346.8, **blush unseen;** disappear 34.2; white out, black out

4 **blur, dim, pale,** soften, film, mist, fog; defocus, lose resolution *or* sharpness *or* distinctness, go soft at the edges

ADJS 5 **invisible; imperceptible,** unperceivable, **indiscernible,** undiscernible, undetectable, **unseeable,** viewless, unbeholdable, unapparent, insensible; **out of sight,** *à perte de vue* <Fr>, out of range; **secret** 345.11,15; **unseen,** sightless, unbeheld, unviewed, unwitnessed, unobserved, unnoticed, unperceived; unsubstantial, transparent; behind the curtain *or* scenes; disguised, camouflaged, hidden, **concealed** 346.11,14; undisclosed, unrevealed, *in petto* <L>; latent, unrealized, submerged

6 **inconspicuous,** half-visible, semivisible, low-profile; **indistinct, unclear,** unplain, **indefinite,** undefined, ill-defined, ill-marked, **faint,** pale, feeble, weak, **dim,** dark, **shadowy, vague, obscure,** indistinguishable, unrecognizable; half-seen, merely glimpsed; low-profile, half-seen, low-definition; uncertain, confused, out of focus, **blurred, blurry,** bleared, bleary, blear, **fuzzy, hazy,** misty, filmy, foggy

33 APPEARANCE

NOUNS 1 **appearance, appearing,** apparition, coming, forthcoming, showing-up, coming forth, coming on the scene, making the scene <nf>, putting in an appearance, arrival; **emergence,** issuing, issuance; **arising,** rise, rising, occurrence; **materialization, materializing,** coming into being; **manifestation,** realization, incarnation, revelation, showing-forth; epiphany, theophany, avatar, ostent <old>; **presentation, disclosure, exposure,** opening, unfolding, unfoldment, showing; rising of the curtain

2 **appearance,** exterior, externals, **mere externals, facade,** outside, **show, outward show, image,** display, front <nf>, outward *or* external appearance, surface appearance, surface show, vain show, apparent character, public image, window dressing, cosmetics; whitewash; whited sepulcher; **glitz** *and* tinsel <nf>, gaudiness, speciousness, meretriciousness, superficies, **superficiality;** PR *and* flack <nf>; pretense

3 aspect, look, view; feature, lineaments; **seeming, semblance, image,** imago, icon, eidolon, likeness, simulacrum; effect, impression, total effect *or* impression; **form, shape,** figure, configuration, gestalt; **manner,** fashion, wise, guise, style; **respect, regard,** reference, light; **phase; facet, side,** angle, viewpoint 27.7, slant *and* twist *and* spin <nf>

4 **looks, features, lineaments,** traits, lines; **countenance,** face, visage, feature, favor, brow, physiognomy; cast of countenance, **cut of one's jib** <nf>, facial appearance *or* expression, cast, turn; **look, air, mien,** demeanor, carriage, bearing, port, deportment, posture, stance, poise, presence; guise, garb, dress, complexion, color

5 <thing appearing> **apparition, appearance,** phenomenon; **vision, image, shape, form,** figure, presence; false image, mirage, phasm <old>, specter, **phantom** 987.1

6 **view, scene, sight; prospect, outlook, lookout, vista, perspective; scenery,** scenic view; panorama, sweep; scape, **landscape,** seascape, riverscape, waterscape, airscape, skyscape, cloudscape, cityscape, townscape; bird's-eye view, worm's-eye view

7 **spectacle, sight;** exhibit, **exhibition,** exposition, **show,** stage show 704.4, **display, presentation,** representation; tableau, tableau vivant; panorama, diorama, cosmorama, myriorama, cyclorama, georama; *son et lumière* <Fr>, sound-and-light show; phantasmagoria, shifting scene, light show; psychedelic show; **pageant,** pageantry; parade, pomp

VERBS 8 **appear,** become visible; **arrive, make one's**

appearance, make *or* put in an appearance, appear on the scene, make the scene *and* weigh in <nf>, appear to one's eyes, meet *or* catch *or* strike the eye, **come in sight** *or* **view, show,** show oneself, show one's face, nip in <nf>, **show up** <nf>, **turn up,** come, **materialize,** pop up, present oneself, present oneself to view, **manifest oneself,** become manifest, **reveal oneself,** discover oneself, uncover oneself, declare oneself, expose *or* betray oneself, flash; **come to light,** see the light, see the light of day; **emerge,** issue, issue forth, stream forth, come forth, come to the fore, present itself, come out, come forward, come to the surface, come one's way, come to hand, come into the picture; enter 189.7, come upon the stage; **rise, arise,** rear its head; look forth, peer *or* peep out; crop out, outcrop; loom, heave in sight, appear on the horizon; crawl out of the woodwork; fade in, wax

9 **burst forth,** break forth, debouch, erupt, irrupt, explode; **pop up, bob up** <nf>, start up, spring up, burst upon the view; flare up, flash, gleam

10 appear to be, seem to be, **appear, seem, look,** feel, sound, look to be, appear to one's eyes, have *or* present the appearance of, give the feeling of, strike one as, come on as <nf>; **appear like, seem like, look like,** have *or* wear the look of, **sound like; have every appearance of,** have all the earmarks of, have all the features of, show signs of, have every sign *or* indication of; assume the guise of, take the shape of, exhibit the form of

ADJS 11 **apparent,** appearing, **seeming, ostensible;** outward, surface, superficial; material, incarnate; **visible** 31.6

ADVS 12 **apparently, seemingly, ostensibly,** to *or* by all appearances, to *or* by all accounts, to all seeming, as it seems, to the eye; on the face of it, *prima facie* <L>; on the surface, outwardly, superficially; at first sight *or* view, at the first blush

34 DISAPPEARANCE

NOUNS 1 **disappearance,** disappearing, **vanishing,** vanishment; **going, passing, departure, loss;** dissipation, dispersion; dissolution, dissolving, melting, evaporation, evanescence, dematerialization 1053.5; fadeout, fading, fadeaway, blackout; wane, ebb; wipe, wipeout, wipeoff, erasure; eclipse, occultation, blocking; vanishing point; elimination 773.2; extinction 395.6; disappearing act

VERBS 2 **disappear, vanish,** vanish from sight, do a vanishing act <nf>, depart, fly, **flee** 368.10, go, be gone, **go away,** pass, pass out *or* away, pass out of sight, exit, pull up stakes <nf>, leave the scene *or* stage, clear out, pass out of the picture, pass *or* retire from sight, become lost to sight, be seen no more; **perish, die,** die off; die out *or* away, dwindle, wane, fade, **fade out** *or* **away,** do a fade-out <nf>; sink, sink away, dissolve, melt, melt away, "melt, thaw, and dissolve itself"—Shakespeare, dematerialize 1053.6, evaporate, evanesce, **vanish** *or* **disappear into thin air,** go up in smoke; disperse, dispel, dissipate; cease, cease to exist, **cease to be;** cease publication, go out of print, go off the air, become obsolete, close down; leave no trace; waste, waste away, erode, be consumed, wear away; undergo *or* suffer an eclipse; **hide** 346.8; blend into the background

ADJS 3 **vanishing, disappearing,** passing, fleeting, fugitive, transient, flying, fading, dissolving, melting, evaporating, evanescent, waning, here today gone tomorrow

4 **gone,** away, gone away, past and gone, extinct, missing, no more, lost, lost to sight *or* view, long-lost, **out of sight; unaccounted for;** nonexistent; out of the picture

35 COLOR

NOUNS 1 **color, hue; tint,** tinct, tincture, **tinge, shade, tone,** cast; key; **coloring, coloration;** color harmony, color balance, color scheme; decorator color; **complexion,** skin color *or* coloring *or* tone, pigmentation; chromatism, chromaticism, chromism; achromatism 36.1; natural color; undercolor; pallor 36.2; color perception, color vision, color blindness

2 **warmth,** warmth of color, warm color; **blush, flush, glow,** healthy glow *or* hue

3 **softness,** soft color, subtle color, pale color, pastel, pastel color, pastel shade

4 **colorfulness,** color, bright color, pure color, **brightness, brilliance, vividness,** intensity, saturation; **richness,** gorgeousness, gaiety; riot *or* splash of color; Technicolor <trademark>; Day-Glo <trademark>; variegation, multicolor, polychrome; color scheme, color coordination

5 **garishness,** loudness, luridness, glitz <nf>, gaudiness 501.3; loud *or* screaming color <nf>; shocking pink, jaundiced yellow, arsenic green; clashing colors, color clash

6 **color quality;** chroma, Munsell chroma, brightness, purity, saturation; **hue,** value, lightness; colorimetric quality, chromaticity, chromaticness; tint, **tone;** chromatic color, achromatic *or* neutral color; warm color; cool color; tinge, shade

7 **color system,** chromaticity diagram, color triangle, Maxwell triangle; hue cycle, color disk, color wheel, color circle, chromatic circle, color cycle *or* gamut, color chart; Munsell scale; color solid;

fundamental colors; **primary color,** primary pigment, primary; secondary color, secondary; tertiary color, tertiary; complementary color; chromaticity coordinate; color mixture curve *or* function; spectral color, spectrum color, pure *or* full color; metamer; **spectrum,** solar spectrum, color spectrum, chromatic spectrum, color index; monochrome; demitint, half tint, halftone, mezzotint, half-light, patina; chromatic aberration

8 <coloring matter> **color, coloring, colorant,** tinction, tincture, **pigment, stain;** chromogen; **dye,** dyestuff, artificial coloring, color filter, color gelatin; paint, distemper, tempera, enamel, glaze; coat, coating, **coat of paint; undercoat,** undercoating, **primer,** priming, prime coat, **ground, flat coat,** dead-color; interior paint, exterior paint, floor enamel; wash, wash coat, flat wash, colorwash, whitewash; opaque color, transparent color; medium, vehicle; drier; thinner; turpentine, turps <nf>; additive color, subtractive color; artist's colors, colored pencils, crayons, chalk

9 <persons according to hair color> **brunet; blond,** Goldilocks; bleached blond, peroxide blond; ash blond, platinum blond, strawberry blond, honey blond; **towhead; redhead,** carrottop <nf>

10 <science of colors> chromatology; chromatics, chromatography, chromatoscopy, colorimetry; spectrum analysis, spectroscopy, spectrometry, spectrography; color theory

11 <applying color> **coloring,** coloration; **staining, dyeing; tie-dyeing; tinting,** tinging, tinction; pigmentation; illumination, emblazonry; color printing; lithography

12 **painting,** paint-work, coating, covering; **enameling,** glossing, glazing; **varnishing,** japanning, lacquering, shellacking; staining; **calcimining, whitewashing;** gilding; stippling; frescoing, fresco; undercoating, priming; watercoloring, pencilling, crayoning

13 spectrum, rainbow; red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo, violet

VERBS 14 **color,** hue, lay on color; **tinge, tint,** tinct, **tincture,** tone, complexion; pigment; bedizen; variegate, colorize; **stain, dye,** dip, tie-dye; imbue; deep-dye, fast-dye, double-dye, dye in the wool, yarn-dye; ingrain, grain; shade, shadow; illuminate, emblazon; **paint,** apply paint, paint up, **coat,** cover, face, watercolor, crayon; dab, **daub,** dedaub, smear, besmear, brush on paint, slap *or* slop on paint; **enamel,** gloss, glaze; **varnish,** japan, **lacquer, shellac; white out; calcimine, whitewash,** parget; wash; **gild,** begild, engild; stipple; fresco; distemper; undercoat, prime; emblazon; color-code

15 <be inharmonious> **clash,** conflict, collide, fight

ADJS 16 **chromatic,** colorational; **coloring,** colorific, colorative, tinctorial, tingent; pigmental, pigmentary; monochrome, monochromic, monochromatic; dichromatic; many-colored, particolored, medley *or* motley <old>, rainbow, **variegated** 47.9, polychromatic, multicolored, kaleidoscopic, technicolored; prismatic, spectral; matching, toning, harmonious; warm, glowing; cool, cold

17 **colored,** hued, in color, colorized, in Technicolor <trademark>; **tinged, tinted,** tinctured, tinct, toned; **painted, enameled; stained, dyed;** tie-dyed; imbued; complexioned, complected <nf>; full-colored, full; deep, deep-colored; wash-colored; washed

18 **deep-dyed, fast-dyed,** double-dyed, **dyed-in-the-wool;** ingrained, ingrain; colorfast, fast, fadeless, unfading, indelible, constant

19 **colorful,** colory; **bright, vivid,** intense, **rich,** exotic, **brilliant,** burning, **gorgeous, gay,** bright-hued, bright-colored, rich-colored, gay-colored, high-colored, deep-colored

20 garish, lurid, loud, screaming, shrieking, glaring, flaring, flashy, glitzy <nf>, flaunting, crude, blinding, overbright, raw, gaudy 501.20; Day-Glo <trademark>

21 **off-color,** off-tone; **inharmonious, discordant,** incongruous, **harsh,** clashing, conflicting, colliding

22 soft-colored, soft-hued, **soft,** softened, **subdued,** understated, muted, delicate, light, creamy, peaches-and-cream, **pastel, pale,** palish, subtle, mellow, delicate, quiet, tender, sweet; pearly, nacreous, mother-of-pearl, iridescent, opalescent; patinaed; somber, simple, sober, sad; flat, eggshell, semigloss, gloss; weathered, heathered

WORD ELEMENTS 23 -chroia, -chromasia, chrom-, chromo-, chromat-, chromato-; -phyll; pigmento-; -chrome, -chromia, -chromy; pallidi-; -chroic, -chroous

36 COLORLESSNESS

NOUNS 1 **colorlessness,** lack *or* absence of color, huelessness, tonelessness, achromatism, achromaticity; dullness, lackluster 1027.5; neutral hue *or* tint

2 **paleness, dimness,** weakness, **faintness,** fadedness; lightness, fairness; **pallor,** pallidity, pallidness, prison pallor, **wanness, sallowness,** pastiness, ashiness; wheyface; muddiness, dullness; grayness, griseousness; **anemia,** hypochromic anemia, hypochromia, chloranemia; bloodlessness, exsanguination; **ghastliness, haggardness,** lividness, sickly hue, sickliness, deadly *or* deathly pallor, deathly hue, cadaverousness

3 **decoloration,** decolorizing, decolorization,

discoloration, achromatization, lightening; **fading, paling; dimming, bedimming; whitening,** blanching, etiolation, whiteness, albinism, pigment deficiency; bleeding, bleeding white; **bleaching,** bleach; market bleach, madder bleach; weathering

4 **bleach,** bleacher, bleaching agent *or* substance; color remover, decolorant, decolorizer, achromatizer; whitener

VERBS 5 decolor, decolorize, discolor, achromatize, etiolate; **fade, wash out; dim, dull, tarnish,** tone down; **pale, whiten,** blanch, drain, drain of color; **bleach,** peroxide, fume

6 **lose color, fade,** fade out; **bleach,** bleach out; **pale, turn pale,** grow pale, **change color,** change countenance, turn white, **whiten, blanch,** wan; come out in the wash; discolor

ADJS 7 **colorless, hueless,** toneless, uncolored, achromic, achromatic, achromatous, unpigmented; neutral; dull, flat, mat, dead, dingy, muddy, leaden, lusterless, lackluster 1027.17; **faded, washed-out,** dimmed, discolored, decolored, etiolated, weathered; **pale, dim,** weak, **faint; pallid, wan, sallow,** fallow; pale *or* blue *or* green around the gills, drained of color; **white,** white as a sheet; **pasty,** mealy, waxen; **ashen,** ashy, ashen-hued, cinereous, cineritious, gray, griseous, mousy, dingy; **anemic,** hypochromic, chloranemic; bloodless, exsanguine, exsanguinated, exsanguineous, bled white; **ghastly,** livid, lurid, **haggard,** cadaverous, unhealthy, sickly, deadly *or* deathly pale; pale as death *or* a ghost *or* a corpse; pale-faced, tallow-faced, wheyfaced, white-skinned

8 **bleached,** decolored, decolorized, achromatized, whitened, blanched, lightened, bleached out, bleached white; drained, drained of color

9 **light, fair,** light-colored, light-hued; pastel; whitish 37.8

WORD ELEMENTS 10 achromat-, achromato-, achro-, achroö-

37 WHITENESS

NOUNS 1 **whiteness, white, whitishness;** albescence; **lightness, fairness;** paleness 36.2; silveriness; snowiness, frostiness; chalkiness; pearliness; **creaminess,** off-whiteness, chalkiness; blondness; hoariness, grizzliness, canescence; milkiness, lactescence; glaucousness; glaucescence; silver; albinism, achroma, achromasia, achromatosis; albino; leukoderma, vitiligo; wheyface; white race 312.2,3

2 <comparisons> alabaster, bone, chalk, cream, ivory, lily, lime, milk, pearl, sheet, swan, sheep, fleece, flour, foam, paper, phantom, silver, snow, driven snow, tallow, teeth, wax, wool

3 **whitening,** albification, blanching; etiolation; **whitewashing;** bleaching 36.3; silvering, frosting, grizzling

4 whitening agent, whitener, whiting, whitening, **whitewash,** calcimine; pipe clay; correction fluid, Wite-Out <trademark>; bleach

VERBS 5 **whiten,** white, etiolate, **blanch;** bleach 36.5; pale, blench; decolorize; fade; silver, grizzle, frost, besnow; chalk

6 **whitewash,** white <old>, calcimine; pipe-clay, Blanco <Brit>, clean

ADJS 7 **white,** pure white, white as alabaster *or* bone *or* chalk *or* snow, etc 37.2, **snow-white,** snowy, niveous, "whiter than new snow on a raven's back"—Shakespeare, frosty, frosted; **hoary,** hoar, **grizzled,** grizzly, griseous, canescent; silver, **silvery,** silvered, argent <heraldry>, argentine; platinum; chalky, cretaceous; fleece- *or* fleecy-white; swan-white; foam-white; **milk-white,** milky, lactescent; marble, marmoreal; lily-white, white as a lily; white as a sheet, wheyfaced, ghastly; albescent; whitened, bleached, blanched, achromatic

8 **whitish,** whity, albescent; **light, fair;** pale 36.7; off-white; eggshell; glaucous, glaucescent; pearl, pearly, pearly-white, pearl-white; alabaster, alabastrine; cream, **creamy;** ivory, ivory-white; gray-white; dun-white; lint-white

9 **blond** *or* blonde; flaxen-haired, fair-haired; artificial blond, bleached-blond, peroxide-blond; ash-blond, platinum-blond, strawberry-blond, honey-blond, blond-headed, blond-haired; **towheaded,** tow-haired; golden-haired 43.5; white-haired

10 **albino,** albinic, albinistic, albinal

WORD ELEMENTS 11 alb-, albo-, leuc-, leuco-, leuk-, leuko-

38 BLACKNESS

NOUNS 1 **blackness,** nigritude, nigrescence; inkiness; **black, sable, ebony;** melanism; black race 312.2,3; darkness 1027

2 **darkness, darkishness,** darksomeness, blackishness; **swarthiness,** swartness, swarth; **duskiness,** duskness; soberness, sobriety, **somberness,** graveness, sadness, funereality; hostility, sullenness, anger, black mood, black looks, black words

3 **dinginess, griminess, smokiness,** sootiness, fuliginousness, fuliginosity, smudginess, smuttiness, blotchiness, dirtiness, **muddiness,** murkiness

4 <comparisons> ebony *or* ebon <old>, jet, ink, sloe, pitch, tar, coal, charcoal, smoke, soot, smut,

raven, obsidian, sable, crow, night, hell, sin, one's hat <Brit>

5 **blackening, darkening,** nigrification, melanization, melanism, melanosis, denigration; shading; **smudging,** smutching, **smirching;** smudge, smutch, smirch, smut

6 **blacking,** blackening, blackening agent, blackwash; charcoal, burnt cork, black ink; lampblack, carbon black, stove black, gas black, soot; japan; melanin

VERBS 7 **blacken,** black, nigrify, melanize, denigrate; **darken,** bedarken; shade, shadow; blackwash, ink, charcoal, cork; **smudge,** smutch, **smirch,** besmirch, murk, blotch, blot, dinge, dirty; smut, soot; smoke, oversmoke, singe, char; ebonize; **smear** 661.9, 512.10, **blacken one's name** *or* **reputation,** give one a black eye, tear down; japan, niello

ADJS 8 **black,** black as ink *or* pitch *or* tar *or* coal, etc 38.4; **sable** <heraldry>, nigrous, nigrescent; **ebony,** ebon; deep black, of the deepest dye; **pitch-black, pitch-dark,** pitchy, black *or* dark as pitch, tar-black, tarry; night-black, night-dark, black *or* dark as night; midnight, black as midnight; **inky,** inky-black, atramentous, ink-black, black as ink; **jet-black,** jet, jetty; **coal-black,** coaly, black as coal, coal-black; sloe, sloe-black, sloe-colored; raven, **raven-black,** black as a crow; blue-black, brown-black; **dark** 1026.13–16

9 **dark,** dark-colored, **darkish,** darksome, blackish; nigrescent; **swarthy,** swart; **dusky,** dusk; **somber,** sombrous, **sober, grave,** sad, funereal; hostile, sullen, angry; achromatic

10 **dark-skinned,** black-skinned, **dark-complexioned; black, colored;** swarthy, swart; melanian, melanic, melanotic, melanistic, melanous

11 **dingy, grimy, smoky,** sooty, fuliginous, **smudgy,** smutty, blotchy, dirty, **muddy,** murky, smirched, besmirched, dusky; blackened, singed, charred

12 **livid, black-and-blue**

13 **black-haired, raven-haired,** raven-tressed, black-locked, dark-haired; brunet *or* brunette

WORD ELEMENTS 14 atro-, mel-, mela-, melo-, melano-, melam-

39 GRAYNESS

NOUNS 1 **grayness, gray,** grayishness, canescence; glaucousness, glaucescence; silveriness; ashiness; neutral tint; smokiness; mousiness; slatiness; leadenness; lividness, lividity; dullness, drabness, soberness, somberness; grisaille; oyster, taupe, greige; gunmetal, iron, lead, pewter, silver, slate, steel

2 **gray-haired** *or* **gray-headed person,** gray-hair, graybeard, grisard, salt-and-pepper, hoariness

VERBS 3 **gray, grizzle,** silver, frost

ADJS 4 **gray, grayish,** gray-colored, gray-hued, gray-toned, grayed, griseous; canescent; iron-gray, steely, steel-gray; Quaker-gray, Quaker-colored, acier, gray-drab; dove-gray, dove-colored; pearl-gray, pearl, pearly; silver-gray, silver, silvery, silvered; **grizzly,** grizzled, grizzle; ash-gray, ashen, ashy, cinerous, cinereous, cineritious, cinereal; dusty, dust-gray; smoky, smoke-gray; charcoal-gray; slaty, slate-colored; leaden, livid, lead-gray; glaucous, glaucescent; wolf-gray; mousy, mouse-gray, mouse-colored; taupe; dapple-gray, dappled-gray; gray-spotted, gray-speckled, salt-and-pepper; gray-black, gray-brown, etc; taupe, ecru, greige; neutral; **dull, dingy,** dismal, **somber, sober, sad, dreary;** winter-gray, hoar, hoary, frost-gray, rime-gray

5 **gray-haired,** gray-headed, silver-headed; hoar, hoary, hoary-haired, grizzled; gray-bearded, silver-bearded, salt-and-pepper *or* pepper-and-salt

40 BROWNNESS

NOUNS 1 **brownness, brownishness, brown,** browning, infuscation; brown race 312.2; ochre, sepia, raw sienna, burnt sienna, raw umber, burnt umber; caramel, pumpernickel, coffee, chocolate, paper bag

VERBS 2 **brown,** embrown, infuscate; rust; **tan, bronze,** suntan; sunburn, burn; fry, sauté, scorch, braise; toast

ADJS 3 **brown, brownish;** cinnamon, hazel; fuscous; **brunet,** brune; tawny, fulvous; tan, tan-colored; tan-faced, tan-skinned, tanned, sun-tanned; khaki, khaki-colored; drab, olive-drab; **dun,** dun-brown, dun-drab, dun-olive; beige, grege, buff, biscuit, mushroom; **chocolate,** chocolate-colored, chocolate-brown; cocoa, cocoa-colored, cocoa-brown; coffee, coffee-colored, coffee-brown; toast, toast-brown; nut-brown; oatmeal; walnut, walnut-brown; seal, seal-brown; fawn, fawn-colored; grayish-brown; brownish-gray, fuscous, taupe, mouse-dun, mouse-brown; snuff-colored, snuff-brown, mummy-brown; umber, umber-colored, umber-brown; olive-brown; **sepia;** sorrel; yellowish-brown, brownish-yellow; lurid <old>; brown as a berry, berry-brown

4 **reddish-brown,** rufous-brown, brownish-red; roan; henna; terra-cotta; rufous, foxy; livid-brown; **mahogany,** mahogany-brown; auburn, Titian; **russet,** russety; rust, rust-colored, rusty, ferruginous, rubiginous; liver-colored, liver-brown; **bronze,** bronze-brown, bronze-colored, bronzed, brazen; copper, coppery, copperish, cupreous, copper-colored; **chestnut,** chestnut-brown,

castaneous; bay, bay-colored; bayard <old>; sunburned, adust <old>

5 **brunet** *or* brunette; brown-haired; auburn-haired; xanthous

41 REDNESS

NOUNS 1 **redness, reddishness,** rufosity, rubricity; **red,** *rouge* <Fr>, gules <heraldry>; rubicundity, **ruddiness,** color, high color, floridness, floridity; rubor, erythema, erythroderma, "a fire-red cherubim's face"—Chaucer; erythrism; reddish brown; red race 312.3; "any color, so long as it's red"—Eugene Field; carmine, crimson, henna, rouge; cherry, ruby, fire engine

2 **pinkness, pinkishness; rosiness; pink,** rose

3 **reddening,** rubefaction, rubification, rubescence, erubescence, rufescence; **coloring,** mantling, crimsoning, **blushing, flushing; blush,** flush, glow, bloom, rosiness; hectic, hectic flush; rubefacient

VERBS 4 <make red> **redden, rouge,** ruddle, rubefy, raddle, rubric; warm, inflame; crimson, encrimson; vermilion, madder, miniate, henna, rust, carmine; incarnadine, pinkify; red-ink, red-pencil, lipstick

5 **redden,** turn *or* grow red, **color,** color up, **mantle, blush, flush, crimson;** flame, glow

ADJS 6 **red, reddish,** gules <heraldry>, red-colored, red-hued, red-dyed, red-looking; **ruddy,** ruddied, rubicund; rubric *or* rubrical, rubricate, rubricose; rufescent, rufous, rufulous; warm, hot, glowing; bright-red; fiery, flaming, flame-colored, flame-red, fire-red, red as fire, lurid, red as a hot *or* live coal; reddened, inflamed; **scarlet, vermilion, vermeil; crimson;** rubiate; maroon; damask; puce; stammel; cerise; iron-red; cardinal, cardinal-red; cherry, cherry-colored, cherry-red; carmine, incarmined; **ruby,** ruby-colored, ruby-red; wine, port-wine, wine-colored, wine-red, vinaceous; carnation, carnation-red; brick-red, bricky, tile-red, lateritious; rust, rust-red, rusty, ferruginous, rubiginous; lake-colored, laky; beet-red, red as a beet; lobster-red, red as a lobster; red as a turkey-cock; copper-red, carnelian; russet; Titian, Titian-red; infrared; reddish-amber, reddish-gray, etc; reddish-brown 40.4

7 **sanguine,** sanguineous, **blood-red,** blood-colored, bloody-red, bloody, gory, red as blood

8 **pink, pinkish,** pinky; **rose, rosy,** rose-colored, rose-hued, rose-red, roseate; primrose; flesh-colored, flesh-pink, incarnadine; coral, coral-colored, coral-red, coralline; salmon, salmon-colored, salmon-pink; damask, carnation; fuchsia

9 **red-complexioned,** ruddy-complexioned, warm-complexioned, red-fleshed, red-faced, ruddy-faced, apple-cheeked, **ruddy,** rubicund, **florid,** sanguine, full-blooded; blowzy, blowzed; rosy, **rosy-cheeked;** glowing, blooming; hectic, blushing, rouged, flushed, flush; burnt, sunburned; erythematous

10 **redheaded,** red-haired, red-polled, red-bearded; erythristic; red-crested, red-crowned, red-tufted; ginger-haired, carroty, chestnut, auburn, Titian, xanthous

11 reddening, blushing, flushing, coloring; rubescent, erubescent; rubificative, rubrific; rubefacient

42 ORANGENESS

NOUNS 1 **orangeness,** oranginess; **orange**; cadmium orange, carotene

ADJS 2 **orange, orangeish,** orangey, orange-hued, reddish-yellow; ocherous *or* ochery, ochreous, ochroid, ocherish; old gold; saffron; pumpkin, pumpkin-colored; tangerine, tangerine-colored; apricot, peach, cantaloupe; carroty, carrot-colored; orange-red, orange-yellow, red-orange, reddish-orange, yellow-orange

43 YELLOWNESS

NOUNS 1 **yellowness, yellowishness;** goldenness, aureateness; **yellow,** gold, or <heraldry>; gildedness; fallowness; cadmium yellow, cadmium lemon, lemon, banana

2 yellow skin, yellow complexion, sallowness; biliousness; xanthochroism; **jaundice,** yellow jaundice, icterus, xanthoderma, xanthism; yellow race 312.2,3

VERBS 3 **yellow,** turn yellow; **gild,** begild, engild; aurify; sallow; **jaundice**

ADJS 4 **yellow, yellowish,** yellowy; lutescent, luteous, luteolous; xanthic, xanthous; flavescent; **gold, golden**, gold-colored, golden-yellow, gilt, gilded, auric, aureate; sunshine-yellow; **canary,** canary-yellow; citron, citron-yellow, citreous; **lemon,** lemon-colored, lemon-yellow; sulfur-colored, sulfur-yellow; mustard, mustard-yellow; pale-yellow, **sallow,** fallow; cream, creamy, cream-colored; straw, straw-colored, tow-colored; flaxen, flaxen-colored, flax-colored; sandy, sand-colored; ocherous *or* ochery, ochreous, ochroid, ocherish; buff, buff-colored, buff-yellow; honey-colored; saffron, saffron-colored, saffron-yellow; primrose, primrose-colored, primrose-yellow; topaz-yellow; greenish-yellow, chartreuse

5 **yellow-haired, golden-haired,** tow-headed, tow-haired, auricomous, xanthous; blond 37.9

6 yellow-faced, yellow-complexioned, sallow, yellow-cheeked; **jaundiced,** xanthodermatous, icteric, icterical, bilious

44 GREENNESS

NOUNS 1 **greenness,** viridity; greenishness, virescence, viridescence; verdantness, verdancy, **verdure,** glaucousness, glaucescence; **green,** greensickness, chlorosis, chloremia, chloranemia; chlorophyll; grass, emerald

2 **verdigris, patina,** aerugo; patination

VERBS 3 **green;** verdigris, patinate, patinize

ADJS 4 **green,** virid; **verdant,** verdurous, vert <heraldry>; grassy, leafy, leaved, foliaged; springlike, summerlike, summery, vernal, vernant, aestival; **greenish,** viridescent, virescent; **grass-green,** green as grass; citrine, citrinous; **olive,** olive-green, olivaceous; pea-green; avocado; jade; loden green; bottle-green; forest-green; sea-green; beryl-green, berylline; leek-green, porraceous <old>; holly, holly-green; ivy, ivy-green; emerald, emerald-green, smaragdine; chartreuse, yellow-green, yellowish-green, greenish-yellow; glaucous, glaucescent, glaucous-green; blue-green, bluish-green, green-blue, greenish-blue; greensick, chlorotic, chloremic, chloranemic

5 verdigrisy, verdigrised, patinous, patinaed, patinated *or* patinized, aeruginous

45 BLUENESS

NOUNS 1 **blueness, bluishness;** azureness; **blue, azure,** cyan, indigo; lividness, lividity; cyanosis

VERBS 2 **blue,** azure

ADJS 3 **blue, bluish,** cerulescent; cyanic, cyaneous, cyanean; cerulean, ceruleous; **azure** <heraldry>, azurine, azurean, azureous, azured, azure-blue, azure-colored, azure-tinted; sky-blue, sky-colored, sky-dyed; ice-blue; light-blue, lightish-blue, pale-blue, Oxford blue; dark-blue, deep-blue, midnight-blue, navy-blue; peacock-blue, pavonine, pavonian; beryl-blue, berylline; turquoise, turquoise-blue; aquamarine; electric-blue; ultramarine; royal-blue; indigo; sapphire, sapphire-blue, sapphirine; Wedgwood-blue, robin's-egg blue; livid; cyanotic

46 PURPLENESS

NOUNS 1 **purpleness, purplishness,** purpliness; **purple; violet,** lavender, lilac, magenta, mauve; lividness, lividity, bruise

VERBS 2 **purple,** empurple, purpurate <old>

ADJS 3 **purple,** purpure <heraldry>, purpureal, purpureous, purpurean, purpurate <old>; **purplish,** purply, purplescent; **violet,** violaceous; plum-colored, plum-purple; amethystine; **lavender,** lavender-blue; lilac; magenta; mauve; mulberry; orchid; pansy-purple, pansy-violet; raisin-colored; fuchsia, puce, aubergine, orchid; purple-blue; livid

47 VARIEGATION

<diversity of colors>

NOUNS 1 **variegation, multicolor;** parti-color; medley *or* mixture of colors, spectrum, rainbow of colors, riot of color; polychrome, polychromatism; dichromatism, trichromatism, etc; dichroism, trichroism, etc

2 **iridescence,** iridization, irisation, **opalescence,** nacreousness, pearliness, chatoyancy, **play of colors** *or* **light;** light show; moiré pattern, tabby; burelé *or* burelage

3 **spottiness,** maculation, freckliness, speckliness, mottledness, mottlement, dappleness, dappledness, stippledness, spottedness, dottedness; **fleck, speck, speckle;** freckle; **spot,** dot, polka dot, macula, macule, blotch, splotch, patch, splash; **mottle, dapple;** brindle; **stipple,** stippling, pointillism, pointillage

4 **check, checker,** checks, checking, checkerboard, chessboard; **plaid,** tartan; checker-work, variegated pattern, harlequin, colors in patches, crazy-work, patchwork; parquet, parquetry, marquetry, mosaic, tesserae, tessellation; crazy-paving <Brit>; hound's tooth; inlay, damascene

5 **stripe, striping,** candy-stripe, pinstripe; barber pole; **streak, streaking;** striation, striature, stria; striola, striga; crack, craze, crackle, reticulation; bar, band, belt, list

6 <comparisons> spectrum, rainbow, iris, chameleon, leopard, jaguar, cheetah, ocelot, zebra, barber pole, candy cane, Dalmatian, firedog, peacock, butterfly, mother-of-pearl, nacre, tortoise shell, opal, kaleidoscope, stained glass, serpentine, calico cat, marble, mackerel sky, confetti, crazy quilt, patchwork quilt, shot silk, moiré, watered silk, marbled paper, Joseph's coat, harlequin, tapestry; bar code, checkerboard

VERBS 7 **variegate,** motley; parti-color; polychrome, polychromize; pattern; harlequin; **mottle, dapple,** stipple, **fleck,** flake, **speck, speckle,** bespeckle, freckle, **spot,** bespot, dot, sprinkle, blot, spangle, bespangle, pepper, stud, maculate; blotch, splotch; tattoo, stigmatize <old>; **check, checker;** tessellate; **stripe, streak,** striate, band, bar, vein, craze; marble, marbleize; tabby

8 **opalesce,** opalize; iridesce

ADJS 9 **variegated, many-colored,** many-hued, diverse-colored, **multicolored,** multicolor, multicolorous, **varicolored,** varicolorous, polychrome, polychromic, polychromatic; parti-colored, parti-color; of all manner of colors, of all the colors of the rainbow; versicolor, versicolored, versicolorate, versicolorous; motley, medley <old>, harlequin; colorful, colory; daedal; crazy; thunder and lightning; kaleidoscopic, kaleidoscopical; prismatic, prismatical, prismal, spectral; shot, shot through; bicolored, bicolor, dichromic, dichromatic; tricolored, tricolor, trichromic, trichromatic; two-color *or* -colored, three-color *or* -colored, two-tone *or* -toned, etc

10 **iridescent,** iridal, iridial, iridine, iridian; irised, irisated, **rainbowy,** rainbowlike, rainbowed; **opalescent,** opaline, opaloid; nacreous, nacry, *nacré* <Fr>, nacred, **pearly,** pearlish, mother-of-pearl; tortoise-shell; peacock-like, pavonine, pavonian; chatoyant; moiré, burelé; watered

11 **chameleonlike,** chameleonic, changeable

12 **mottled, motley; pied, piebald,** skewbald, pinto; **dappled,** dapple; calico; marbled; clouded; salt-and-pepper

13 **spotted, dotted,** polka-dot, sprinkled, peppered, studded, pocked, pockmarked; **spotty,** dotty, patchy, pocky; **speckled, specked,** speckledy, speckly, specky; **stippled,** pointillé, pointillistic; **flecked,** fleckered; spangled, bespangled; maculate, maculated, macular; punctate, punctated; freckled, frecked, freckly; blotched, blotchy, splotched, splotchy; flea-bitten; tortoiseshell; foxed

14 **checked, checkered,** checkedy, check, **plaid,** plaided; tessellated, tessellate, mosaic

15 **striped,** stripy, candy-stripe, pinstripe; **streaked,** streaky; **striated,** striate, striatal, striolate, strigate *or* strigose; barred, banded, listed; veined; **brindle,** brindled, brinded; marbled, marbleized; reticulate; tabby

48 HEARING

NOUNS **1** **hearing,** audition; sense of hearing, auditory *or* aural sense, ear; listening, heeding, attention, hushed attention, rapt attention, eager attention, mind; auscultation, aural examination, examination by ear; audibility

2 **audition,** hearing, tryout, call <nf>, **audience, interview,** conference; attention, favorable attention, ear; **listening,** listening in; **eavesdropping,** overhearing, wiretapping, electronic surveillance, bugging <nf>

3 good hearing, refined *or* acute sense of hearing, sensitive ear, nice *or* quick *or* sharp *or* correct ear; **an ear for;** musical ear, ear for music, musicality; ear-mindedness; bad *or* poor ear, no ear, tin ear <nf>

4 **earshot,** earreach, **hearing,** range, auditory range, reach, carrying distance, **sound of one's voice**

5 **listener,** hearer, auditor, audient, hearkener, auditioner, earwitness; **eavesdropper,** overhearer, monitor; little pitcher with big ears, snoop <nf>, listener-in; fly on the wall <nf>

6 **audience,** auditory <old>, **house, congregation;** studio audience, live audience, captive audience, theatregoers, gallery, crowd, house; orchestra, pit; groundling, boo-bird <nf>, spectator 917

7 **ear** 2.10, auditory apparatus, hearing organ; external ear, **outer ear;** cauliflower ear, jug ear, bat ear

8 listening device; **hearing aid,** hard-of-hearing aid; electronic hearing aid, transistor hearing aid; vacuum-tube hearing aid; ear trumpet; amplifier, speaking trumpet, megaphone; stethoscope

9 <science of hearing> otology; otoscopy, auriscopy; otoneurology, otopathy, otography, otoplasty, otolaryngology, otorhinolaryngology; ear, nose, and throat *or* ENT; audiology; acoustic phonetics, phonetics 524.13; auriscope, otoscope, auscultator, stethoscope; audiometer

VERBS **10** **listen,** hark, **hearken, heed, hear, attend,** give attention, **give ear,** give *or* lend an ear, bend an ear; **listen to,** listen at <nf>, attend to, give a hearing to, give audience to, sit in on; **listen in; eavesdrop,** wiretap, tap, intercept, bug <nf>; **keep one's ears open,** be all ears <nf>, listen with both ears, strain one's ears; prick up the ears, cock the ears, keep one's ear to the ground, have long ears; hang on the lips of, hang on every word; hear out; auscultate, examine by ear

11 **hear,** catch, get <nf>, take in, hear from; **overhear; hear of,** hear tell of <nf>, pick up; get an earful <nf>, get wind of; have an ear for, have perfect pitch

12 be heard, **fall on the ear,** sound in the ear, catch *or* reach the ear, carry, sound, resound, echo, reverberate, come within earshot, come to one's ear, register, make an impression, get across <nf>; **have one's ear,** reach, contact, get to; make oneself heard, get through to, gain a hearing, reach the ear of; ring in the ear; caress the ear; assault *or* split *or* assail the ear

ADJS **13** **auditory,** audio, audile, **hearing, aural,** auricular, otic, audial, auditive; audio-visual; audible; otological, otoscopic, otopathic, etc; acoustic, acoustical, phonic

14 **listening, attentive,** open-eared, **all ears** <nf>, hearing

15 **eared,** auriculate; big-eared, cauliflower-eared, crop-eared, dog-eared, droop-eared, flap-eared, flop-eared, jug-eared, lop-eared, long-eared, mouse-eared, prick-eared; **sharp-eared;** tin-eared; ear-minded; ear-shaped, earlike, auriform

INTERJS **16** **hark!,** hark ye!, hear ye!, hearken!, hear!, oyez!, hear ye, hear ye!, now hear this!, list!,

listen!, listen up!, attend!, attention!, hist!, whisht!, psst!, yo!

49 DEAFNESS

NOUNS 1 **deafness, hardness of hearing,** dull hearing, deaf ears; **stone-deafness;** nerve-deafness; mind deafness, word deafness; **tone deafness,** unmusicalness; impaired hearing, hearing *or* auditory impairment; loss of hearing, **hearing loss; deaf-muteness,** deaf-mutism, surdimutism <old>

2 **the deaf,** the hard-of-hearing; **deaf-mute,** surdomute <old>, deaf-and-dumb person; lip reader

3 deaf-and-dumb alphabet, manual alphabet, finger alphabet; dactylology, sign language, American Sign Language; lip reading, oral method; hearing aid

VERBS 4 **be deaf;** have no ears, be earless; lose one's hearing, suffer hearing loss *or* impairment, go deaf; shut *or* stop *or* close one's ears, **turn a deaf ear;** fall on deaf ears; lipread, use sign language, sign

5 **deafen, stun,** split the ears *or* eardrums

ADJS 6 **deaf, hard-of-hearing,** hearing-impaired, dull *or* thick of hearing, deaf-eared, dull-eared; surd <old>; deafened, stunned; **stone-deaf,** deaf as a stone, deaf as a door *or* a doorknob *or* doornail, **deaf as a post,** deaf as an adder; **unhearing;** earless; word-deaf; tone-deaf, unmusical; half-deaf, quasi-deaf; **deaf and dumb,** deaf-mute

50 SOUND

NOUNS 1 **sound,** sonance, acoustic, acoustical *or* acoustic phenomenon; auditory phenomenon *or* stimulus, auditory effect; noise; ultrasound; sound wave, sound propagation; sound intensity, sound intensity level, amplitude, loudness 53; phone, speech sound 524.12; resonance

2 **tone, pitch, frequency,** audio frequency *or* AF; monotone, monotony, tonelessness; overtone, harmonic, partial, partial tone; undertone; fundamental tone, fundamental; intonation 524.7

3 **timbre,** tonality, **tone quality,** tone color, color, coloring, clang color *or* tint, *Klangfarbe* <Ger>

4 **sounding,** sonation, sonification

5 **acoustics,** phonics, radioacoustics; acoustical engineer, acoustician; radiophonics

6 **sonics;** subsonics; **supersonics,** ultrasonics; speed of sound 174.2; sound barrier, transonic barrier, sonic barrier *or* wall; sonic boom; ultrasonic frequency, infrasonic frequency

7 <sound unit> **decibel,** bel, phon

8 **loudspeaker, speaker,** dynamic speaker; speaker unit, speaker system; crossover network; voice coil; cone, diaphragm; acoustical network; horn <nf>; **headphone, earphone,** stereo headset, headset

9 **microphone, mike** <nf>; radiomicrophone; concealed microphone, **bug** <nf>

10 **audio amplifier, amplifier, amp** <nf>; **preamplifier,** preamp <nf>

11 sound reproduction system, audio sound system; **high-fidelity** system *or* **hi-fi** <nf>; **record player, phonograph,** gramophone, Victrola; **jukebox,** nickelodeon; radio-phonograph combination; monophonic *or* monaural system, **mono** <nf>, stereophonic *or* binaural system, stereo <nf>; four-channel stereo system, discrete four-channel system, derived four-channel system, quadraphonic sound system; multitrack player *or* recorder *or* sound system; **pickup** *or* cartridge, magnetic pickup *or* cartridge, ceramic pickup *or* cartridge, crystal pickup, photoelectric pickup; stylus, needle; tone arm; turntable, transcription turntable, record changer, changer; **public-address system** *or* PA *or* PA system; sound truck; loudhailer, bullhorn; intercommunication system, **intercom** <nf>, squawk box <nf>; **tape recorder,** tape deck, cassette *or* audio-cassette player, cassette *or* audio-cassette recorder; boom box, ghetto blaster; compact disc *or* CD player; hi-fi fan *or* freak <nf>, audiophile

12 **record, phonograph record,** disc, wax, long-playing record *or* LP; transcription, electrical transcription, digital transcription, digital recording; **recording,** wire recording, tape recording; digital stereo; digital disc; tape, tape cassette, cassette; tape cartridge, cartridge; digital audio tape *or* DAT, DVD; compact disk *or* CD; video-cassette recorder *or* VCR

13 **audio distortion, distortion;** scratching, shredding, hum, 60-cycle hum, rumble, hissing, howling, blurping, blooping, woomping, fluttering, flutter, wow, wow-wows, squeals, whistles, birdies, motorboating; feedback; static 1034.21

VERBS 14 **sound,** make a sound *or* noise, give forth *or* emit a sound; noise; speak 524.19; resound, reverberate, echo; **record,** tape, tape-record; prerecord; play back; broadcast, amplify

ADJS 15 **sounding,** sonorous, soniferous; **sounded;** tonal; monotone, monotonic, toneless, droning; voiced

16 **audible,** hearable, heard; **distinct, clear,** plain, definite, articulate; distinctive, contrastive; high-fidelity, hi-fi <nf>, stereophonic

17 **acoustic, acoustical,** phonic, **sonic;** subsonic, supersonic, ultrasonic, hypersonic; transonic *or* transsonic, faster than sound

ADVS 18 **audibly, aloud,** out, **out loud;** distinctly, clearly, plainly

51 SILENCE

NOUNS **1 silence,** silentness, **soundlessness,** noiselessness, **stillness,** "lucid stillness"—T S Eliot, **quietness,** quietude, quiescence 173, **quiet, still,** peace, whisht <Scot & Ir>, **hush,** mum; lull, rest, calm; golden silence; total silence, deathlike *or* tomblike silence, dead silence, perfect silence, solemn *or* awful silence, the quiet *or* silence of the grave *or* the tomb; hush *or* dead of night, dead; tacitness, taciturnity, reticence, reserve; inaudibility; tranquillity; not a sound

2 muteness, mutism, **dumbness,** voicelessness, tonguelessness; speechlessness, wordlessness; inarticulateness; anaudia, aphasia, aphonia; hysterical mutism; deaf-muteness 49.1; standing mute, refusal to speak, stonewalling <nf>, the code of silence *or omertà* <Ital>, keeping one's lip buttoned <nf>; laryngitis

3 mute, dummy; deaf-mute 49.2

4 silencer, muffler, muffle, **mute,** baffle *or* baffler, quietener, cushion; **damper,** damp; dampener; **soft pedal,** sordine, sourdine, *sordino* <Ital>; hushcloth, silence cloth; **gag, muzzle;** antiknock; **soundproofing,** acoustic tile, sound-absorbing material, sound-proofing insulation

VERBS **5 be silent,** keep silent *or* silence, **keep still** *or* **quiet; keep one's mouth shut, hold one's tongue,** keep one's tongue between one's teeth, bite one's tongue, put a bridle on one's tongue, seal one's lips, shut *or* close one's mouth, hold one's breath, muzzle oneself, **not breathe a word,** not speak, forswear speech *or* speaking, **keep mum, hold one's peace,** not let a word escape one, not utter a word, not open one's mouth, not make a sound, not make a peep; make no sign, keep to oneself; not have a word to say, be mute, stand mute; choke up, have one's words stick in one's throat; be taciturn, spare one's words, have little to say, keep one's counsel

6 <nf terms> **shut up,** keep one's trap *or* yap shut, button up, button one's lip, save one's breath, shut one's bazoo, can it, dummy up, clam up, close up like a clam, knock it off, not let out a peep, say nothing, not say 'boo', play dumb, stonewall

7 fall silent, hush, quiet, quieten, quiesce, **quiet down,** pipe down <nf>, check one's speech, stop talking; lose one's voice, get laryngitis

8 silence, put to silence, hush, hush one up, hush-hush, **shush, quiet,** quieten, **still; soft-pedal,** put on the soft pedal, play down; squash, squelch <nf>, stifle, choke, choke off, throttle, put the kibosh on <nf>, put the lid on *and* shut down on <nf>, put the damper on <nf>, **gag, muzzle,** muffle, stifle, stop one's mouth, cut one short; strike dumb *or* mute, dumbfound; tonguetie

9 muffle, mute, dull, soften, deaden, quietize, cushion, baffle, damp, **dampen,** deafen; subdue, stop, tone down, **soft-pedal,** put on the soft pedal

ADJS **10 silent, still,** stilly, **quiet,** quiescent 173.12, **hushed, soundless,** noiseless; taciturn, uncommunicative, tight-lipped, clammed up <nf>; echoless; **inaudible,** subaudible, below the limen *or* threshold of hearing, unhearable; quiet as a mouse *or* lamb, mousy; silent as a post *or* stone, "noiseless as fear in a wide wilderness"—Keats, "silent as the shadows"—Coleridge, so quiet that one might hear a feather *or* pin drop; silent as the grave *or* tomb, still as death, "hush as death"—Shakespeare; **unsounded, unvoiced,** unpronounced

11 tacit, wordless, unspoken, unuttered, unexpressed, unsaid, unarticulated, unvocalized; **implicit** 519.8

12 mute, mum, dumb, voiceless, tongueless, **speechless,** wordless, breathless, at a loss for words, choked up; inarticulate; **tongue-tied,** dumbstruck, dumbstricken, stricken dumb, **dumbfounded;** anaudic, aphasic, aphonic

ADVS **13 silently,** in silence, **quietly, soundlessly,** noiselessly; inaudibly

INTERJS **14 silence!, hush!, shush!, sh!,** sh-sh!, whist! *or* whish! <Brit nf>, whisht! <Scot & Ir>, peace!, pax!, *tais toi!* <Fr>, **be quiet!,** be silent!, be still!, **keep still!,** keep quiet!, quiet!, quiet please!, soft!, belay that! *or* there!, stow it!; **hold your tongue!,** hold your jaw! *or* lip!, **shut up!** <nf>, **shut your mouth!** <nf>, save your breath!, not another word!, not another peep out of you!, mum!, mum's the word!; hush your mouth!, shut your trap!, shut your face!, button your lip!, pipe down!, clam up!, dry up!, can it!, that's enough!, knock it off!

52 FAINTNESS OF SOUND

NOUNS **1 faintness, lowness, softness,** gentleness, subduedness, dimness, feebleness, weakness; indistinctness, unclearness, flatness; subaudibility, inaudibility; decrescendo; distant sound

2 muffled tone, veiled voice, *voce velata* <Ital>, covered tone; **mutedness; dullness, deadness,** flatness; noise abatement, sound reduction, soundproofing

3 thud, dull thud; **thump,** flump, crump, clop, clump, clunk, plunk, tunk, plump, bump; pad, pat; **patter,** pitter-patter, pit-a-pat; **tap,** rap, **click,** tick, flick, pop; tinkle, clink, chink, tingaling

4 murmur, murmuring, murmuration; **mutter,** muttering; **mumble,** mumbling; soft voice, low voice, small *or* little voice; **undertone,** underbreath, bated breath; susurration, susurrus, undercurrent; **whisper,** whispering, stage whisper, breathy voice; breath, sigh, sough, exhalation, aspiration; purl, hum, moan, white noise *or* sound; nonresonance

5 **ripple, splash,** ripple of laughter, ripple of applause; titter, chuckle

6 **rustle,** rustling, froufrou, swoosh, "a little noiseless noise among the leaves"—Keats

7 **hum, humming,** thrumming, low rumbling, booming, bombilation, bombination, **droning, buzzing,** whizzing, whirring, purring

8 **sigh, sighing, moaning,** sobbing, whining, soughing

VERBS 9 **steal** *or* **waft on the ear,** melt in the air, float in the air

10 **murmur, mutter, mumble,** mussitate <old>, maffle <Brit nf>; coo; susurrate; **lower one's voice, speak under one's breath; whisper,** whisper in the ear; breathe, sigh, aspirate

11 **ripple, babble, burble,** bubble, **gurgle,** guggle, **purl, trill;** lap, plash, **splash,** swish, swash, slosh, wash

12 **rustle,** crinkle; **swish,** whish

13 **hum,** thrum, bum <Brit nf>, boom, bombilate, bombinate, **drone, buzz,** whiz, whir, burr, birr <Scot>, purr

14 **sigh, moan, sob, whine,** sough; **whimper**

15 **thud, thump, patter,** clop, clump, clunk, plunk, flump, crump; pad, pat; **tap,** rap, **click,** tick, tick away; pop; tinkle, clink, chink

ADJS 16 **faint, low, soft, gentle, subdued, dim, feeble, weak,** faint-sounding, low-sounding, soft-sounding; soft-voiced, low-voiced, faint-voiced, weak-voiced; murmured, whispered, hushed; half-heard, barely heard, scarcely heard; distant, dying away; indistinct, unclear; barely audible, subaudible, near the limit *or* threshold of hearing; soft-pedaled, piano, pianissimo; decrescendo; unstressed, unaccented

17 **muffled, muted, softened, dampened,** damped, **smothered,** stifled, bated, dulled, deadened, subdued; **dull, dead, flat,** *sordo* <Ital>; nonresonant

18 **murmuring,** murmurous, murmurish, **muttering, mumbling;** susurrous, susurrant; **whispering,** whisper, whispery; **rustling**

19 **rippling, babbling, burbling,** bubbling, **gurgling,** guggling, **purling, trilling;** lapping, splashing, plashing, sloshing, swishing

20 **humming,** thrumming, **droning,** booming, bombinating, **buzzing,** whizzing, whirring, purring, burring

ADVS 21 **faintly, softly,** gently, subduedly, hushedly, dimly, feebly, weakly, low; piano, pianissimo; *sordo* and *sordamente* <Ital>, *à la sourdine* <Fr>

22 **in an undertone,** *sotto voce* <Ital>, **under one's breath,** with bated breath, in a whisper, in a stage whisper, between the teeth; aside, in an aside; out of earshot

53 LOUDNESS

NOUNS 1 **loudness,** intensity, volume, amplitude, fullness; sonorousness, sonority; surge of sound, surge, crescendo, swell, swelling; loudishness, high volume

2 **noisiness,** noisefulness, **uproariousness,** racketiness, tumultuousness, thunderousness, clamorousness, clangorousness, boisterousness, obstreperousness; vociferousness 59.5; stridency, stridor

3 **noise,** loud noise, **blast** 56.3, tintamarre, **racket, din, clamor;** outcry, **uproar,** hue and cry, noise and shouting; howl; clangor, clang, clatter, clap, jangle, rattle; roar, rumble, thunder, thunderclap 56.5; **crash, boom,** sonic boom; **bang,** percussion; brouhaha, **tumult, hubbub,** bobbery <India>, vociferation, ululation; fracas, **brawl,** commotion, drunken brawl; **pandemonium,** bedlam, hell *or* bedlam let loose; charivari, shivaree <nf>; discord 61; shattered silence; cachinnation, stertor; explosion, bombardment; crescendo, forte, fortissimo, tutti

4 <nf terms> row, flap, hullabaloo, brannigan, shindy, donnybrook, free-for-all, shemozzle, rumble, rhubarb, dustup, rumpus, ruckus, ruction, rowdydow, hell broke loose, foofooraw, hoo-ha, Katy-bar-the-door, tzimmes

5 **blare, blast,** shriek 58.4, peal; **toot,** tootle, **honk,** beep, blat, trumpet, report; bay, bray; **whistle,** tweedle, squeal; trumpet call, trumpet blast *or* blare, sound *or* flourish of trumpets, Gabriel's trumpet *or* horn, **fanfare,** tarantara, tantara, tantarara, clarion call; tattoo; taps; full blast

6 **noisemaker;** ticktack, bull-roarer, catcall, whizzer, whizgig, snapper, cricket, clapper, clack, clacker, cracker; firecracker, cherry bomb; rattle, rattlebox; horn, Klaxon <trademark>; whistle, steam whistle, siren; boiler room, boiler factory; loud-hailer, bullhorn <nf>

VERBS 7 **din; boom,** thunder 56.9; **resound,** ring, peal, ring *or* resound in the ears, din in the ear, **blast the ear,** pierce *or* split *or* rend the ears, rend *or* split the eardrums, split one's head; **deafen,** stun; blast 56.8, **bang,** crash 56.6; **rend the air** *or* skies *or* firmament, rock the sky, fill the air, make the welkin ring; shake *or* rattle the windows; awake *or* startle the echoes, set the echoes ringing, awake the dead, shatter the peace; surge, swell, rise, crescendo; **shout** 59.6

8 **drown out,** outshout, outroar, shout down, overpower, overwhelm; jam

9 **be noisy, make a noise** *or* **racket,** raise a clamor *or* din *or* hue and cry, noise, racket, **clamor,** roar, clangor; brawl, row, rumpus; **make an uproar,** kick up a dust *or* racket, kick up *or* raise a hullabaloo, raise the roof, raise Cain *or* Ned, howl like all the devils of hell, raise the devil, raise hell, whoop it up, maffick <Brit>; not be able to hear oneself think

10 **blare,** blast; shriek 58.8; **toot,** tootle, sound, peal, wind, blow, blat; pipe, trumpet, bugle, clarion; bay, bell, bray; **whistle,** tweedle, squeal; **honk,** honk *or* sound *or* blow the horn, beep; sound taps, sound a tattoo; go off

ADJS 11 **loud,** loud-sounding, forte, fortissimo; loudish; **resounding,** ringing, plangent, pealing; full, sonorous; **deafening,** ear-deafening, **ear-splitting,** head-splitting, ear-rending, ear-piercing, piercing; **thunderous,** thundering, tonitruous, tonitruant; **crashing,** booming 56.12; window-rattling, earthshaking, enough to wake the dead *or* the seven sleepers; crescendo, forte, fortissimo

12 **loud-voiced, loudmouthed,** fullmouthed, full-throated, big-voiced, clarion-voiced, trumpet-voiced, trumpet-tongued, brazen-mouthed, **stentorian,** stentorious, stentorophonic, like Stentor, booming

13 **noisy,** noiseful, rackety, clattery, clangorous, clanging, **clamorous,** clamoursome <Brit nf>, clamant, blatant, blaring, brassy, brazen, blatting; uproarious, **tumultuous,** turbulent, blustering, brawling, **boisterous,** rip-roaring, rowdy, mafficking <Brit>, strepitous, strepitant, obstreperous; vociferous 59.10

ADVS 14 **loudly, aloud,** loud, lustily; **boomingly, thunderously, thunderingly; noisily,** uproariously; ringingly, resoundingly; with a loud voice, at the top of one's voice, at the pitch of one's breath, in full cry, with one wild yell, with a whoop and a hurrah; forte, *fortemente* <Ital>, fortissimo

54 RESONANCE

NOUNS 1 **resonance, resoundingness, sonorousness,** sonority, plangency, **vibrancy;** mellowness, richness, fullness; deepness, lowness, bassness; hollowness; **snore,** snoring

2 **reverberation, resounding; rumble,** rumbling, thunder, thundering, boom, booming, growl, growling, grumble, grumbling, reboation; rebound, resound, **echo,** reecho

3 **ringing,** tintinnabulation, **pealing, chiming, tinkling,** tingling, **jingling,** dinging, donging; **tolling,** knelling; clangor, clanking, clanging; **ring, peal, chime; toll,** knell; **tinkle,** tingle, **jingle,** dingle, ding, dingdong, ding-a-ling, ting-a-ling; clink, tink, ting, ping, chink; clank, clang; jangle, jingle-jangle; campanology, bell ringing, change ringing, peal ringing; tinnitis, ringing of *or* in the ear

4 **bell** <see list>, tintinnabulum; **gong,** triangle, **chimes,** door chimes, clock chimes, Westminster chimes; clapper, tongue; carillon, set of bells

5 **resonator,** resounder, reverberator; **sounding board,** sound box; resonant chamber *or* cavity; echo chamber; loud pedal, damper pedal, sustaining pedal

VERBS 6 **resonate, vibrate,** pulse, throb; snore

7 **reverberate, resound,** sound, **rumble,** roll, boom, echo, reecho, rebound, bounce back, be reflected, be sent back, echo back, send back, return

8 **ring,** tintinnabulate, **peal,** sound; **toll,** knell, sound a knell; **chime;** gong; **tinkle,** tingle, **jingle,** ding, dingdong, dong; clink, tink, ting, chink; clank, clang, clangor; jangle, jinglejangle; ring on the air; ring changes *or* peals; ring in the ear

9 <deep voices> bass, basso, basso profundo, baritone, bass-baritone, contralto

ADJS 10 **resonant, reverberant, vibrant, sonorous,** plangent, rolling; mellow, rich, full; resonating, reverberating, echoing, reechoing, vibrating, pulsing, throbbing

11 **deep,** deep-toned, deep-pitched, deep-sounding, deepmouthed, deep-echoing; **hollow, sepulchral; low,** low-pitched, low-toned, grave, heavy; **bass;** baritone; contralto

12 **reverberating,** reverberant, reverberatory, reboant, **resounding,** rebounding, repercussive, sounding; **rumbling,** thundering, booming, growling; echoing, reechoing, echoic; undamped; persistent, lingering

13 **ringing, pealing, tolling,** belling, sounding, chiming; **tinkling,** tinkly, tingling, **jingling,** dinging; tintinnabular *or* tintinnabulary *or* tintinnabulous; campanological

14 **bells**

air bell
alarm bell
anchor bell
angelus bell
Big Ben
bourdon
breakfast bell
call bell
chiming bell
church bell
clinkum bell
computer bell
cowbell
dinner bell *or* gong *or* chimes
doorbell
fire bell
fog bell
gong bell
hand bell
harness bell
hour bell
jingle bell
Liberty Bell
minute bell
news bell
night bell
pancake bell
passing bell *or* death bell *or* end bell *or* mortbell
Sanctus bell *or* sacring bell *or* saunce *or* sauncing bell
school bell

sheepbell
shop bell
signal bell
sleigh bell
tap bell
telephone bell
tocsin
vesper bell
watch bell
wind-bell

55 REPEATED SOUNDS

NOUNS 1 **staccato; drum, thrum, beat, pound, roll;** drumming, tom-tom, beating, pounding, thumping; **throb,** throbbing, pulsation 916.3; **palpitation,** flutter; sputter, spatter, splutter; **patter, pitter-patter,** pit-a-pat; rub-a-dub, rattattoo, rataplan, rat-a-tat, rat-tat, rat-tat-tat, tat-tat, tat-tat-tat; **tattoo,** devil's tattoo, ruff, ruffle, paradiddle; **drumbeat,** drum music; drumfire, barrage

2 **clicking, ticking, tick, ticktock,** ticktack, ticktick

3 **rattle,** rattling, brattle <Scot>, ruckle <Brit nf>, rattletybang; **clatter,** clitter, clunter <Brit nf>, **clitterclatter, chatter,** clack, clacket <nf>; racket 53.3

VERBS 4 **drum, thrum, beat, pound, thump, thump out, roll; palpitate,** flutter; sputter, splatter, splutter; patter, pitter-patter, go pit-a-pat *or* pitter-patter; **throb,** pulsate 916.12; beat *or* sound a tattoo, beat a devil's tattoo, ruffle, beat a ruffle

5 **tick, ticktock,** ticktack, tick away

6 **rattle,** ruckle <Brit nf>, brattle <Scot>; **clatter,** clitter, **chatter,** clack; rattle around, clatter about

ADJS 7 **staccato; drumming, thrumming, beating, pounding, thumping; throbbing;** palpitant, fluttering; sputtering, spattering, spluttering; clicking, ticking

8 **rattly,** rattling, chattering, **clattery,** clattering

56 EXPLOSIVE NOISE

NOUNS 1 **report, crash, crack, clap, bang,** wham, slam, clash, burst; **knock, rap, tap,** smack, whack, thwack, whop, whap, swap <nf>, whomp, splat, crump <Brit nf>, bump, slap, slat <Brit nf>, flap, flop

2 **snap, crack;** click, clack; **crackle,** snapping, cracking, crackling, crepitation, decrepitation, sizzling, spitting; rale

3 **detonation, blast, explosion,** fulmination, **discharge, burst, bang, pop, crack,** bark; **shot,** gunshot; volley, salvo, fusillade

4 **boom,** booming, cannonade, **peal, rumble,** grumble, growl, **roll, roar**

5 **thunder,** thundering, clap *or* crash *or* peal of thunder, **thunderclap,** thunderpeal, thundercrack, thunderstroke; "heaven's artillery"—Shakespeare, "the crashing of the chariot of God"—William Cullen Bryant; thunderstorm 316.3; Thor *or* Donar, Jupiter Tonans, Indra

VERBS 6 **crack, clap, crash,** wham, slam, **bang,** clash; **knock, rap, tap,** smack, whack, thwack, whop, whap, swap <nf>, whomp, splat, crump <Brit nf>, bump, slat <Brit nf>, slap, flap

7 **snap, crack;** click, clack; **crackle,** crepitate, decrepitate; spit

8 **blast, detonate, explode, discharge, burst,** go off, **bang, pop, crack,** bark, fulminate; burst on the ear

9 **boom, thunder, peal, rumble,** grumble, growl, **roll, roar**

ADJS 10 **snapping, cracking, crackling,** crackly, crepitant

11 **banging,** crashing, bursting, exploding, explosive, blasting, cracking, popping; knocking, rapping, tapping; slapping, flapping, slatting <Brit nf>

12 **thundering, thunderous,** thundery, fulminating, tonitruous, tonitruant, thunderlike; **booming,** pealing, rumbling, rolling, roaring; cannonading, volleying

INTERJS 13 bang!, boom!, wham!, whammo!, blam!, kerboom!, kerblam!

57 SIBILATION

<*hissing sounds*>

NOUNS 1 sibilation, sibilance *or* sibilancy; **hiss, hissing,** siss, sissing, white noise; hush, hushing, shush, shushing; sizz, sizzle, sizzling; fizz, fizzle, fizzling, effervescing, effervescence; swish, whish, whoosh; whiz, buzz, zip; siffle; wheeze, *râle* <Fr>, rhonchus; whistle, whistling; sneeze, sneezing, sternutation; snort; snore, stertor; **sniff,** sniffle, snuff, snuffle; spit, sputter, splutter; squash, squish, squelch; sigmatism, lisp; assibilation; frication, frictional rustling

VERBS 2 sibilate; **hiss,** siss; hush, shush; sizzle, sizz; fizzle, fizz, effervesce; whiz, buzz, zip; swish, whish, whoosh; whistle; wheeze; sneeze; snort; snore; sniff, sniffle, snuff, snuffle; spit, sputter, splutter; squash, squish, squelch; lisp; assibilate

ADJS 3 **sibilant; hissing,** hushing, sissing; sizzling, fizzling, effervescent; **sniffing,** sniffling, snuffling; snoring; wheezing, wheezy

58 STRIDENCY

<*harsh and shrill sounds*>

NOUNS 1 **stridency,** stridence, stridor, stridulousness, stridulation; **shrillness,** highness, sharpness, acuteness, arguteness; **screechiness, squeakiness,** creakiness, reediness, pipingness

2 **raucousness, harshness,** raucity; discord, cacophony 61.1; coarseness, rudeness, ugliness, roughness, gruffness; **raspiness,** scratchiness, scrapiness, **hoarseness,** huskiness, dryness;

stertorousness; roupiness <Scot>; gutturalness, gutturalism, gutturality, thickness, throatiness; cracked voice

3 **rasp, scratch, scrape,** grind; crunch, craunch, scranch <old>, scrunch, crump; burr, chirr, buzz; snore, snort, stertor; **jangle, clash, jar;** clank, clang, clangor, twang, twanging; blare, blat, bray; croak, caw, cackle; belch; growl, snarl; grumble, groan

4 **screech, shriek, scream, squeal,** shrill, keen, squeak, squawk, skirl, screak, skreak <nf>, skriech *or* skreigh <Scot>, creak; bleep; **whistle,** wolf-whistle; pipe; **whine, wail, howl,** ululation, yammer; vibrato; waul, caterwaul

5 <insect sounds> **stridulation,** cricking, creaking, chirking <Scot>; crick, creak, chirk, chirp, chirping, chirrup

6 <high voices> soprano, mezzo-soprano, treble; tenor, alto; male alto, countertenor; head register, head voice, head tone, falsetto

VERBS 7 **stridulate,** crick, creak, chirk, chirp, chirrup

8 **screech, shriek,** screak, skreak <nf>, creak, squeak, squawk, **scream, squeal,** shrill, keen; **whistle,** wolf-whistle; pipe, skirl; **whine,** wail, howl, wrawl <Brit nf>, yammer, ululate; waul, caterwaul; raise the roof <nf>

9 <sound harshly> **jangle, clash, jar;** blare, blat, bray; croak, caw, cackle; belch; burr, chirr, buzz; snore; growl, snarl; grumble, groan; clank, clang, clangor; twang

10 **grate, rasp, scratch, scrape,** grind; crunch, craunch, scranch <old>, scrunch, crump

11 **grate on,** jar on, grate upon the ear, jar upon the ear, offend the ear, pierce *or* split *or* rend the ears, harrow *or* lacerate the ear, **set the teeth on edge, get on one's nerves,** jangle *or* wrack the nerves, make one's skin crawl

ADJS 12 **strident,** stridulant, stridulous; strident-voiced

13 **high,** high-pitched, high-toned, high-sounding; treble, soprano, mezzo-soprano, tenor, alto, falsetto, countertenor

14 **shrill, thin, sharp,** acute, argute, keen, keening, **piercing,** penetrating, ear-piercing, ear-splitting; **screechy,** screeching, shrieky, shrieking, **squeaky,** squeaking, screaky, creaky, creaking; whistling, piping, skirling, reedy; whining, wailing, howling, ululating, ululant; vibrato

15 **raucous,** raucid, **harsh,** harsh-sounding; coarse, rude, rough, gruff, ragged; **hoarse, husky,** roupy <Scot>, cracked, dry; **guttural,** thick, throaty, croaky, croaking; choked, strangled; squawky, **squawking;** brassy, brazen, tinny, metallic; stertorous

16 **grating, jarring,** grinding; **jangling,** jangly; **rasping,** raspy; scratching, scratchy; scraping, scrapy

59 CRY, CALL

NOUNS 1 **cry, call, shout, yell,** hoot; halloo, hollo, yo-ho, hello, hi, yo, hail; **whoop, holler** <nf>; **cheer, hurrah,** huzzah, hooray; **howl,** yowl, yawl <Brit nf>; bawl, bellow, roar; **scream, shriek,** screech, squeal, squall, caterwaul; yelp, yap, yammer, yawp, bark; war cry, battle cry, war whoop, rallying cry; jeer, boo, hiss, razz; guffah, cachinnation

2 **exclamation,** ejaculation, outburst, blurt, ecphonesis; expletive

3 hunting cry; tallyho, yoicks <old>, view halloo

4 **outcry, vociferation, clamor;** hullabaloo, hubbub, brouhaha, **uproar** 53.3; **hue and cry**

5 vociferousness, vociferance, clamorousness, clamoursomeness <Brit nf>, blatancy; noisiness 53.2

VERBS 6 **cry, call, shout, yell, holler** <nf>, hoot; hail, halloo, hollo; **whoop;** cheer 116.6; **howl,** yowl, yammer, yawl <Brit nf>; squawk, yawp; **bawl, bellow,** roar, roar *or* bellow like a bull; cry *or* yell *or* scream bloody murder *or* blue murder; **scream, shriek,** screech, squeal, squall, waul, caterwaul; yelp, yap, bark

7 **exclaim,** give an exclamation, ejaculate, burst out, blurt, blurt out, jerk out, spout out; stammer out

8 **vociferate,** outcry, **cry out,** call out, bellow out, yell out, holler out <nf>, shout out, sing out; sound off <nf>, pipe up, **clamor,** make *or* raise a clamor; make an outcry, **raise a hue and cry,** make an uproar

9 cry aloud, raise *or* lift up the voice, give voice *or* tongue, shout *or* cry *or* thunder at the top of one's voice, split the throat *or* lungs, strain the voice *or* throat *or* vocal cords, rend the air

ADJS 10 **vociferous,** vociferant, vociferating; **clamorous,** clamoursome <Brit nf>; **blatant;** obstreperous, brawling; **noisy;** crying, shouting, **yelling, hollering** <nf>, **bawling,** screaming; yelping, yapping, yappy, yammering; loud-voiced, loudmouthed, openmouthed, stentorian, Boanergean; booming

11 **exclamatory,** ejaculatory, blurting

60 ANIMAL SOUNDS

NOUNS 1 animal noise; **call, cry;** mating call *or* cry; grunt, howl, bark, howling, waul, caterwaul, ululation, barking; bird song, birdcall, note, woodnote, clang; stridulation 58.5; dawn chorus; warning cry

VERBS 2 cry, call; **howl,** yowl, yawp, yawl <nf>, ululate; wail, whine, pule; **squeal,** squall, scream, screech, screak, squeak; troat; **roar; bellow,** blare, **bawl; moo,** low; **bleat,** blate, blat; **bray; whinny, neigh,** whicker, nicker, bray; **bay,** bay at the moon, bell; **bark,** latrate <old>, give voice *or* tongue; **yelp, yap,** yip; **mew,** mewl, **meow,** miaow, waul, caterwaul

3 **grunt,** gruntle <Brit nf>, oink; **snort**

4 **growl, snarl,** grumble, gnarl, snap; hiss, spit

5 <birds> **warble, sing,** carol, call; pipe, whistle; **trill,** chirr, roll; **twitter,** tweet, twit, chatter, chitter; **chirp,** chirrup, chirk, **cheep,** peep, pip; **quack,** honk, cronk; **croak, caw; squawk,** scold, screech; **crow,** cock-a-doodle-doo; **cackle,** gaggle, gabble, guggle, **cluck,** clack, chuck; **gobble; hoot,** hoo; **coo; cuckoo;** drum; tu-whit tu-whoo; whoop

ADJS **6** **howling,** yowling, crying, wailing, whining, puling, bawling, ululant, blatant; lowing, mugient, snarling, growling; singing, humming

61 DISCORD

<dissonant sounds>

NOUNS **1** **discord,** discordance *or* discordancy, **dissonance** *or* dissonancy, diaphony, **cacophony;** stridor, stridency; **inharmoniousness,** unharmoniousness, disharmony, inharmony; **unmelodiousness,** unmusicalness, unmusicality, untunefulness, tunelessness; atonality, atonalism; flatness, sharpness, sourness <nf>; dissonant chord, wolf; false note, sour note *and* clinker *and* clam <nf>, off note; cipher; wolf-tone; dodecaphonism *or* dodecaphony

2 **clash, jangle, jar; noise,** mere noise, confusion *or* conflict *or* jarring *or* jostling of sounds; Babel, witches' *or* devils' chorus; harshness 58.2; clamor 53.3

VERBS **3** sound *or* strike *or* hit a sour note <nf>, hit a clinker *or* a clam <nf>; not carry a tune; **clash, jar, jangle,** conflict, jostle; grate 58.10,11; untune, unstring; hurt the ears

ADJS **4** **dissonant, discordant, cacophonous,** absonant <old>, disconsonant, diaphonic; strident, shrill, harsh, raucous, grating 58.16; **inharmonious,** unharmonious, disharmonious, disharmonic, inharmonic; **unmelodious,** immelodious, nonmelodious; **unmusical,** musicless, untuneful, tuneless; untunable, untuned, atonal, toneless; droning, singsong; cracked, **out of tune,** out of tone, out of pitch; **off-key, off-tone, off-pitch,** off; flat, sharp, **sour** <nf>; "above the pitch, out of tune, and off the hinges"—Rabelais, "like sweet bells jangled, out of tune and harsh"—Shakespeare

5 **clashing, jarring, jangling,** jangly, confused, conflicting, jostling, warring, ajar; **harsh,** hoarse, grating 58.16

62 TASTE

<sense of taste>

NOUNS **1** **taste,** gust <old>, *goût* <Fr>; sense of taste; **flavor,** sapor; **smack, tang; savor, relish,** sapidity, deliciousness; palate, tongue, tooth, stomach; taste in the mouth; sweetness, sourness, bitterness, bittersweetness, saltiness; sharp taste, acid taste, tart taste, salty taste, spicy taste, sweet taste, sour taste, bitter taste, pungent taste; aftertaste; savoriness 63

2 **sip, sup, lick, bite**

3 tinge, soupçon, hint 248.4

4 **sample, specimen, taste,** taste test, taster, little bite, little smack, taste treat; tidbit, sampler; example 786.2; appetizer, hors d'oeuvre, canape, aperitif, starter <Brit>

5 taste bud *or* bulb *or* goblet, taste *or* gustatory cell, taste hair; **tongue,** lingua; **palate**

6 **tasting, savoring,** gustation, nibble, nip, sampling

VERBS **7** **taste,** taste of, sample, degust; **savor,** savor of, relish; sip, sup <nf>, roll on the tongue, test; lick; smack

ADJS **8** **gustatory,** gustative; tastable, gustable <old>

9 **flavored,** flavorous, flavory, sapid, saporous, saporific; tasty, savory, flavorful 63.9; sweet, sour, bitter, bittersweet, salt

10 **lingual,** glossal; **tonguelike,** linguiform, lingulate

63 SAVORINESS

NOUNS **1** **savoriness, palatableness,** palatability, **tastiness,** toothsomeness, goodness, good taste, right taste, **deliciousness,** gustatory delightfulness, scrumptiousness *and* yumminess <nf>, lusciousness, delectability, **flavorfulness,** flavorsomeness, flavorousness, flavoriness, good flavor, fine flavor, sapidity; full flavor, full-bodied flavor; gourmet quality; succulence, juiciness

2 **savor, relish, zest, gusto,** *goût* <Fr>; richness

3 **flavoring, flavor,** flavorer; **seasoning,** seasoner, **relish, condiment, spice;** flavor enhancer

VERBS **4** **taste good,** tickle *or* flatter *or* delight the palate, tempt *or* whet the appetite, make one's mouth water, melt in one's mouth

5 **savor, relish,** like, love, be fond of, be partial to, enjoy, delight in, have a soft spot for, appreciate; smack the lips; do justice to; taste 62.7

6 **savor of, taste of, smack of,** have a relish of, have the flavor of, taste like

7 **flavor,** savor; **season,** salt, pepper, **spice,** sauce

ADJS 8 **tasty,** fit to eat *and* finger-lickin' good <nf>, good-tasting, **savory,** savorous, **palatable, toothsome,** gustable <old>, sapid, **good,** good to eat, nice, agreeable, likable, pleasing, to one's taste, **delicious,** delightful, delectable, exquisite; delicate, dainty; juicy, succulent, **luscious,** lush; for the gods, ambrosial, nectarous, nectareous; fit for a king, gourmet, fit for a gourmet, of gourmet quality, epicurean; scrumptious *and* yummy <nf>

9 **flavorful, flavorsome,** flavorous, flavory, well-flavored; full-flavored, full-bodied; nutty, fruity; **rich,** rich-flavored

10 **appetizing, mouth-watering, tempting,** tantalizing, provocative, piquant

64 UNSAVORINESS

NOUNS 1 **unsavoriness, unpalatableness,** unpalatability, **distastefulness,** untastefulness; bad taste, bad taste in the mouth

2 acridness, acridity, tartness, sharpness, causticity, astringence *or* astringency, acerbity, **sourness** 67; pungency 68; **bitterness,** bitter taste; gall, gall and wormwood, wormwood, bitter pill

3 **nastiness, foulness, vileness, loathsomeness, repulsiveness, obnoxiousness,** odiousness, offensiveness, disgustingness, nauseousness; **rankness,** rancidity, rancidness, overripeness, rottenness, malodorousness, fetor, fetidness; yuckiness <nf>; repugnance 99.2; nauseant, emetic, sickener

VERBS 4 **disgust, repel,** turn one's stomach, nauseate; make one's gorge rise; gross one out <nf>

ADJS 5 **unsavory, unpalatable, unappetizing,** untasteful, untasty, ill-flavored, foul-tasting, **distasteful,** dislikable, unlikable, uninviting, unpleasant, unpleasing, displeasing, disagreeable

6 **bitter,** bitter as gall *or* wormwood, amaroidal; **acrid,** sharp, caustic, tart, astringent; hard, harsh, rough, coarse; acerb, acerbic, sour; pungent

7 **nasty,** offensive 98.18, fulsome, noisome, noxious, rebarbative, mawkish, cloying, brackish, **foul, vile,** bad; gross *and* icky *and* yucky <nf>, **sickening, nauseating,** nauseous, nauseant, vomity *and* barfy <nf>; poisonous, toxic, rank, rancid, maggoty, weevily, spoiled, overripe, high, rotten, stinking, putrid, malodorous, fetid

8 **inedible, uneatable,** not fit to eat *or* drink, undrinkable, impotable; unfit for human consumption

65 INSIPIDNESS

NOUNS 1 **insipidness,** insipidity, **tastelessness, flavorlessness,** blandness, savorlessness, saplessness, unsavoriness, dullness; **weakness, thinness,** mildness, **wishy-washiness; flatness, staleness,** lifelessness, deadness; vapidity, inanity, jejunity, jejuneness; adulteration, dilution

ADJS 2 **insipid, tasteless, flavorless,** bland, nondescript, unexciting, plain, spiceless, **savorless,** sapless, unsavory, unflavored, unseasoned; pulpy, pappy, gruelly; **weak, thin,** mild, **wishy-washy,** milktoast, washy, watery, watered, watered-down, diluted, dilute, milk-and-water, dishwater; **flat, stale,** dead, *fade* <Fr>; vapid, inane, jejune; "weary, flat, stale, and unprofitable"—Shakespeare; unappetizing; indifferent, characterless, neither one thing nor the other

66 SWEETNESS

NOUNS 1 **sweetness,** sweet, sweetishness, saccharinity, dulcitude <old>; **sugariness,** syrupiness; oversweetness, mawkishness, cloyingness, sickly-sweetness; sweet tooth; confectionery, sweet-shop <Brit>, candy store, bakery

2 **sweetening,** edulcoration <old>; sweetener; sugar, cane sugar, beet sugar, sugar lump, sugar loaf, caster sugar, granulated sugar, powdered sugar, brown sugar, raw sugar; sweetening agent, sugar-substitute, artificial sweetener, saccharin, aspartame, NutraSweet <trademark>, cyclamates, sodium cyclamate, calcium cyclamate; molasses, blackstrap, treacle <Brit>; syrup, maple syrup, cane syrup, corn syrup, sorghum, golden syrup *or* treacle <Brit>; **honey,** honeycomb, honeypot, comb honey, clover honey; honeydew; **nectar, ambrosia;** sugarcoating; sweets; sugar-making; sugaring off; saccharification; candy, sweets, dessert

VERBS 3 **sweeten,** dulcify, edulcorate *or* dulcorate <old>; **sugar,** honey; sugarcoat, glaze, candy; ice, frost, glaze; mull; saccharify; sugar off

ADJS 4 **sweet,** sweetish, sweetened; sacchariferous, saccharine; **sugary,** sugared, candied, **honeyed,** syrupy; mellifluous, mellifluent <old>; melliferous, nectarous, nectareous, ambrosial; sugarsweet, honeysweet, sweet as sugar *or* honey, sweet as a nut; sugar-coated; bittersweet; sour-sweet, sweet-sour, sweet and sour, sweet and pungent

5 **oversweet,** saccharine, rich, **cloying,** mawkish, luscious <old>, sickly-sweet

67 SOURNESS

NOUNS 1 **sourness,** sour, sourishness, **tartness,** tartishness, acerbity, astringency, verjuice; acescency; acidity, acidulousness; hyperacidity, subacidity; vinegariness; unsweetness, **dryness;**

pungency 68; greenness, unripeness; bitterness, sharpness

2 **sour; vinegar,** acidulant; **pickle,** sour pickle, dill pickle, bread-and-butter pickle; verjuice; lemon, lime, crab apple, green apple, sour cherry; aloe; sourgrass; sour balls; sourdough; sour cream, sour milk; bitters; wormwood; **acid**

3 **souring,** acidification, acidulation, acetification, acescence; fermentation

VERBS 4 **sour,** turn sour *or* acid, go sour, sharpen, **acidify,** acidulate, acetify; ferment; set one's teeth on edge; curdle, spoil, turn, ferment, go off, go bad, molder

ADJS 5 **sour,** soured, sourish; **tart,** tartish; tangy, pungent; crab, **crabbed;** acerb, acerbic, acerbate; acescent; **vinegarish,** vinegary, sour as vinegar; pickled; lemony; **pungent** 68.6; unsweet, unsweetened, **dry,** sec; green, unripe

6 **acid,** acidulous, acidulent, acidulated; acetic, acetous, acetose; hyperacid; subacid, subacidulous

68 PUNGENCY

NOUNS 1 **pungency, piquancy, poignancy**, spiciness; strong flavor; **sharpness, keenness,** edge, **causticity,** astringency, mordancy, severity, asperity, trenchancy, cuttingness, bitingness, penetratingness, harshness, roughness, **acridity;** bitterness 64.2; acerbity, acidulousness, acidity, **sourness** 67; aroma

2 **zest,** zestfulness, zestiness, **briskness,** liveliness, raciness; **nippiness, tanginess,** snappiness; **spiciness,** pepperiness, hotness, fieriness; **tang, spice,** relish; **nip, bite,** kick; sting, punch, snap, zip, ginger, sharpness; **kick,** guts <nf>

3 **strength,** strongness; high flavor, highness, rankness, gaminess

4 **saltiness, salinity,** brininess; brackishness; **salt; brine;** pepperiness

VERBS 5 **bite, nip,** cut, penetrate, bite the tongue, sting, kick, make the eyes water, go up the nose

ADJS 6 **pungent, piquant, poignant; sharp, keen,** piercing, penetrating, nose-tickling, aromatic, stinging, **biting, acrid,** astringent, irritating, harsh, rough, severe, asperous, cutting, trenchant; **caustic,** vitriolic, mordant, escharotic; **bitter** 64.6; acerbic, acid, **sour,** tart, sharp

7 **zestful,** zesty, **brisk,** lively, racy, zippy, **nippy,** snappy, **tangy,** with a kick, strong; spiced, seasoned, high-seasoned, savory; **spicy,** curried, **peppery,** hot, burning, hot as pepper; mustardy; like horseradish, like Chinese mustard

8 **strong,** strong-flavored, strong-tasting; **high,** highly flavored, highy seasoned, high-tasted; **rank, gamy,** racy

9 **salty,** salt, salted, saltish, **saline, briny; brackish;** pickled

69 ODOR

NOUNS 1 **odor, smell, scent,** aroma, flavor <old>, savor; **essence,** definite odor, redolence, effluvium, emanation, exhalation, fume, breath, subtle odor, whiff, trace, detectable odor; trail, spoor; **fragrance** 70; **stink,** stench 71

2 **odorousness, smelliness,** headiness, pungency 68; aromatherapy

3 smelling, olfaction, nosing, scenting; sniffing, snuffing, snuffling, whiffing, odorizing, odorization

4 **sense of smell,** smell, smelling, scent, olfaction, olfactory sense

5 olfactory organ; olfactory pit, olfactory cell, olfactory area, **nose; nostrils,** noseholes <nf>, nares, naris, nasal cavity; olfactory nerves; **olfactories;** scent gland, pheromone

VERBS 6 <have an odor> **smell,** be aromatic, smell of, be redolent of; emit *or* emanate *or* give out a smell, reach one's nostrils, yield an odor *or* aroma, breathe, exhale; reek, **stink** 71.4; pong <Brit nf>

7 odorize; scent, aromatize, perfume 70.8

8 **smell, scent,** nose; **sniff,** snuff, snuffle, inhale, breathe, breathe in; get a noseful of, smell of, catch a smell of, get *or* take a whiff of, whiff, get wind of, follow one's nose

ADJS 9 **odorous,** odoriferous, odored, odorant, **smelling, smelly,** smellful <Austral>, smellsome, olent, **redolent, aromatic;** effluvious; **fragrant** 70.9; **stinking,** malodorous 71.5; emanative, pheromonal

10 **strong,** strong-smelling, strong-scented; **pungent,** penetrating, nose-piercing, sharp, heady; reeking, reeky; suffocating, stifling; noisome, noxious

11 **smellable,** sniffable, whiffable

12 **olfactory,** olfactive

13 keen-scented, quick-scented, sharp- *or* keen-nosed, **with a nose for**

70 FRAGRANCE

NOUNS 1 **fragrance,** fragrancy <old>, **perfume, aroma,** scent, redolence, balminess, **incense, bouquet,** nosegay <old>, sweet smell, sweet savor; **odor** 69; spice, spiciness; muskiness; fruitiness; perfume dynamics, aromatherapy

2 perfumery, *parfumerie* <Fr>; **perfume,** *parfum* <Fr>, **scent, essence,** extract; aromatic, ambrosia; attar, essential *or* volatile oil; aromatic water; balsam, **balm,** aromatic gum; balm of Gilead, balsam of Mecca; myrrh; bay oil, myrcia oil; champaca oil; rose oil, attar of roses, "the perfumed tincture of the roses"—Shakespeare;

lavender oil, heliotrope, jasmine oil, bergamot oil; fixative, musk, civet, ambergris

3 **toilet water,** Florida water; rose water, *eau de rose* <Fr>; lavender water, *eau de lavande* <Fr>; *eau de jasmin* <Fr>; cologne, cologne water, eau de Cologne; bay rum; **lotion,** after-shave lotion

4 **incense;** joss stick; pastille; frankincense *or* olibanum; agalloch *or* aloeswood, calambac, lignaloes *or* linaloa, sandalwood, frangipani, resin, myrrh, eucalyptus, attar, ambergris, patchouli

5 **perfumer,** *parfumeur* <Fr>; thurifer, censer bearer, censer, thurible; **perfuming,** censing, thurification, odorizing

6 <articles> perfumer, *parfumoir* <Fr>, fumigator, scenter, odorator, odorizer; atomizer, purse atomizer, spray; censer, thurible, incensory, incense burner; vinaigrette, scent bottle, smelling bottle, scent box, scent ball; scent strip; scent bag, sachet; pomander, pouncet-box <old>; potpourri; magazine scent strip

VERBS 7 **be fragrant,** smell sweet, **smell good,** please the nostrils, smell like a rose

8 **perfume, scent,** cense, incense, thurify, aromatize, odorize, fumigate, embalm, lay up in lavender

ADJS 9 **fragrant, aromatic,** odoriferous, redolent, perfumy, **perfumed, scented,** odorate *or* essenced <old>, **sweet, sweet-smelling,** sweet-scented, savory, balmy, ambrosial, incense-breathing; thuriferous; **odorous** 69.9; sweet as a rose, fragrant as new-mown hay; pungent, heady; flowery; fruity; musky; spicy; aromatherapeutic

71 STENCH

NOUNS 1 **stench, stink,** funk, malodor, fetidness, fetidity, fetor, foul *or* bad odor, offensive odor, unpleasant smell, offense to the nostrils, bad smell, niff *and* pong <Brit nf>, rotten smell, noxious stench, "the rankest compound of villainous smell that ever offended nostril"—Shakespeare, smell *or* stench of decay, **reek,** reeking, nidor; fug *and* frowst <Brit nf>; mephitis, miasma, graveolence <old>, effluvium, osmidrosis; body odor *or* BO; halitosis, **bad breath,** foul breath

2 **fetidness,** fetidity, malodourousness, **smelliness,** stinkingness, **odorousness,** noisomeness, **rankness, foulness,** putridness, offensiveness; repulsiveness; **mustiness,** funkiness, must, frowst *or* frowstiness <Brit nf>, moldiness, mildew, fustiness, frowziness, stuffiness; staleness; **rancidness,** rancidity, reastiness <Brit nf>; rottenness 393.7; putrefaction, putrescence, decay, gaminess

3 **stinker,** stinkard; skunk *or* polecat *or* rotten egg; stink ball, stinkpot, stink bomb; flatus, fart, cesspool, hydrogen sulfide, sulfur dioxide

VERBS 4 **stink,** smell, **smell bad,** niffy *and* pong <Brit nf>, assail *or* offend the nostrils, stink in the nostrils, stink to heaven *or* high heaven, smell of rotten eggs; **reek;** smell up, stink up; stink out

ADJS 5 **malodorous, fetid,** olid, **odorous, stinking, reeking,** reeky, nidorous, smelling, bad-smelling, **evil-smelling,** foul-smelling, ill-smelling, heavy-smelling, **smelly,** smellful <Austral>, niffy *and* pongy <Brit nf>, stenchy; **foul,** vile, putrid, bad, fulsome, noisome, fecal, feculent, excremental, offensive, repulsive, noxious, sulfurous, graveolent <old>; rotten; **rank,** strong, high, gamy; **rancid,** reasty *or* reasy <Brit nf>, reechy <old>; **musty,** funky, fusty, frowy <nf>, frowzy, frowsty <Brit>, stuffy, moldy, mildewed, mildewy; mephitic, miasmic, miasmal; asphyxiating

72 ODORLESSNESS

NOUNS 1 **odorlessness, inodorousness,** lack of smell, scentlessness, smell-lessness; inoffensiveness; anosmia

2 **deodorizing,** deodorization, fumigation, ventilation; freshness, fresh air; smoke-free area, no-smoking area

3 **deodorant,** deodorizer; antiperspirant; fumigant, fumigator; mouthwash, breath freshener; ventilator, air filter, air purifier

VERBS 4 **deodorize,** fumigate; ventilate, freshen the air; cleanse

ADJS 5 **odorless,** inodorous, nonodorous, smell-less, **scentless,** unscented; fragrance-free; smoke-free, smokeless; fumigated; neutral-smelling; inoffensive; in the fresh air

6 **deodorant,** deodorizing, freshening

73 TOUCH

NOUNS 1 **touch;** sense of touch, tactile sense, cutaneous sense; taction, **contact** 223.5; **feel,** feeling; hand-mindedness; light touch, lambency, whisper, breath, **kiss, caress,** fondling; loving touch; lick, lap; **brush,** graze, grazing, glance, glancing; stroke, rub; tap, flick; fingertip caress; tentative poke

2 **touching, feeling, fingering,** palpation, palpating; **handling,** manipulation, manipulating; petting, caressing, stroking, massaging, rubbing, frottage, frication, friction 1042; laying on of hands, fondling; pressure 902.2; feeling up <nf>; osteopathy, chiropractic

3 touchableness, **tangibility, palpability,** tactility, sensitivity, feel

4 **feeler,** tactile organ, tactor; tactile cell; tactile process, tactile corpuscle, **antenna;** tactile hair,

vibrissa; cat whisker; barbel, barbule; palp, palpus

5 **finger, digit;** forefinger, index finger, index; ring finger, annulary; middle finger, medius, dactylion; little finger, pinkie <nf>, minimus; thumb, pollex

VERBS 6 **touch, feel,** feel of, palpate; **finger,** pass *or* run the fingers over, feel with the fingertips, thumb; **handle,** palm, paw; **manipulate,** wield, ply; twiddle; poke at, prod, paw; tap, flick; come in contact 223.10

7 **touch lightly,** touch upon; kiss, **brush,** sweep, graze, brush by, glance, scrape, skim

8 **stroke, pet, caress,** fondle; **nuzzle,** nose, rub noses; feel up <nf>; rub, rub against, massage, knead 1044.6

9 **lick, lap,** tongue, mouth

ADJS 10 **tactile,** tactual; hand-minded

11 touchable, **palpable, tangible,** tactile, tactual; touchy-feely

12 lightly touching, lambent, playing lightly over, barely touching, grazing, skimming, tickling

74 SENSATIONS OF TOUCH

NOUNS 1 **tingle,** tingling, thrill, buzz; **prickle,** prickles, prickling, pins and needles; **sting,** stinging, urtication; paresthesia

2 **tickle,** tickling, **titillation,** pleasant stimulation, **ticklishness,** tickliness

3 **itch, itching,** itchiness; pruritus; prurigo

4 **creeps** *and* **cold creeps** *and* shivers *and* **cold shivers** <nf>, creeping of the flesh; gooseflesh, goose bumps, goose pimples; formication

VERBS 5 **tingle,** thrill; **itch;** scratch; **prickle,** prick, sting

6 **tickle, titillate**

7 **feel creepy,** feel funny, creep, crawl, **have the creeps** *or* **cold creeps** *or* the heebie-jeebies <nf>; have gooseflesh *or* goose bumps; give one the creeps *or* the willies <nf>

ADJS 8 **tingly,** tingling, atingle; **prickly,** prickling

9 **ticklish,** tickling, tickly, **titillative**

10 **itchy,** itching; pruriginous

11 **creepy, crawly,** creepy-crawly, formicative

75 SEX

NOUNS 1 **sex,** gender; male, maleness, masculinity 76, female, femaleness, femininity 77; **genitals, genitalia**

2 **sexuality,** sexual nature, sexualism, sex life, love life; **love** 104, sexual activity, lovemaking 562, marriage 563; heterosexuality; homosexuality; bisexuality, ambisexuality; **carnality,** sensuality 663; sexiness, voluptuousness, flesh, fleshiness; **libido,** sex drive, sexual instinct *or* urge; **potency** 76.2; impotence; frigidity, coldness

3 **sex appeal,** sexual attraction *or* attractiveness *or* magnetism, sexiness, animal magnetism

4 **sex object;** piece *and* meat *and* piece of meat *and* ass *and* piece of ass *and* hot number <nf>; nooky *or* nookie; sex queen, sex goddess, sex kitten; skirt <nf>; hunk, sex god; beefcake *or* stud <nf>

5 **sexual desire,** sensuous *or* carnal desire, bodily appetite, **biological urge,** venereal appetite *or* desire, sexual longing, **lust,** desire, lusts *or* desires of the flesh, itch, lech <nf>, chemistry; **erection,** penile erection, hard-on <nf>; **passion,** carnal *or* sexual passion, fleshly lust, prurience *or* pruriency, concupiscence, hot blood, aphrodisia, the hots *and* hot pants *and* hot rocks *and* hot nuts <nf>, G-spot; lustfulness, goatishness, horniness, libidinousness; lasciviousness 665.5; **eroticism,** erotism; indecency 666; erotomania, eromania, *hysteria libidinosa* <L>; nymphomania, andromania, *furor uterinus* <L>; satyrism, satyriasis, gynecomania; infantile sexuality, polymorphous perversity; **heat,** rut, mating instinct; frenzy *or* fury of lust; estrus, estrum, estrous cycle, estral cycle

6 **aphrodisiac, love potion, philter,** love philter; cantharis, blister beetle, Spanish fly

7 **copulation, sex act,** having sex, having intercourse, *le sport* <Fr>, "making the beast with two backs"—Shakespeare, coupling, mating, pairing, intimacy, coition, **coitus,** pareunia, venery <old>, copula <law>, **sex, intercourse, sexual intercourse,** cohabitation, commerce, sexual commerce, congress, sexual congress, sexual union, sexual relations, relations, marital relations, marriage act, consummation, act of love, making love, sleeping together *or* with, going to bed with, going all the way <nf>; screwing *and* balling *and* nookie *and* diddling *and* making it with <nf>; meat *and* ass <nf>, intimacy, connection, carnal knowledge, aphrodisia; foreplay; **oral sex,** oral-genital stimulation, fellatio, fellation, blow job <nf>, cunnilingus, sixty-nine <nf>; **anal sex,** anal intercourse, sodomy, buggery <nf>; **orgasm,** climax, sexual climax; unlawful sexual intercourse, adultery, hanky-panky, fornication 665.7; coitus interruptus, onanism; group sex, group grope <nf>; serial sex, gang bang <nf>; spouse swapping, wife swapping, husband swapping; casual sex, one-night stand *or* quickie; phone sex; safe sex; sex shop; **lovemaking** 562; **procreation** 78; germ cell, sperm, ovum 305.12

8 **masturbation,** autoeroticism, self-abuse, onanism, manipulation, playing with oneself, jacking off *and*

jerking off *and* pulling off *and* hand job <nf>; sexual fantasy; wet dream

9 **sexlessness,** asexuality, neuterness; **impotence** 19; frigidity; eunuch, *castrato* <Ital>, spado, neuter, gelding; steer

10 **sexual preference; sexual orientation;** sexual normality, sexual nature; **heterosexuality; homosexuality,** homosexualism, homoeroticism, homophilia, *l'amour bleu* <Fr>, the love that dare not speak its name, sexual inversion, lesbianism, sapphism, tribadism; autoeroticism; transsexuality; **bisexuality,** bisexualism, ambisexuality, ambisextrousness, amphierotism, swinging *or* going both ways <nf>; **lesbianism,** sapphism, tribadism *or* tribady; **sexual prejudice,** sexism, genderism, phallicism, heterosexism, homosexism; coming out of the closet <nf>

11 **perversion,** sexual deviation, sexual deviance, sexual perversion, sexual abnormality; sexual pathology; psychosexual disorder; sexual psychopathy, *psychopathia sexualis* <L>; paraphilia; zoophilia, zooerastia, bestiality; pedophilia; algolagnia, algolagny, **sadomasochism** *or* s and m; active algolagnia, **sadism;** passive algolagnia, **masochism;** satyrism; fetishism; narcissism; pederasty, pedophilia; exhibitionism; nymphomania; necrophilia; coprophilia; scotophilia, voyeurism; transvestitism, cross-dressing; **incest,** incestuousness, **sex crime,** sexual offense; **sexual abuse,** carnal abuse, molestation; sexual harassment; unlawful sexual intercourse, rape; cybersex

12 **intersexuality,** intersexualism, epicenism, epicenity; hermaphroditism, pseudohermaphroditism; androgynism, androgyny, gynandry, gynandrism; transsexuality, transsexualism

13 **heterosexual, straight** <nf>, breeder <nf>

14 **homosexual,** gay person, homosexualist, homophile, invert; catamite, *mignon* <Fr>, Ganymede, chicken *and* punk *and* gunsel <nf>; **bisexual,** bi-guy <nf>; **lesbian,** sapphist, tribade, fricatrice <old>

15 <nf terms for male homosexuals> homo, queer, faggot, fag, fruit, flit, fairy, pansy, nance, auntie, queen, drag queen, closet queen, fruitcake, poof *and* poofter *and* poove <Brit>; <nf terms for female homosexuals> dyke, bull dyke, butchfemme, boondagger, diesel-dyke, lesbo, lez

16 sexual pervert; **pervert, deviant,** deviate, sex pervert, sex fiend, sex criminal, sexual psychopath; sodomist, sodomite, sob <Brit nf>, bugger; pederast; paraphiliac; zoophiliac; pedophiliac; sadist; masochist; sadomasochist, algolagniac; fetishist; transvestite *or* TV, cross-dresser; narcissist; exhibitionist; necrophiliac; coprophiliac; scotophiliac, voyeur; erotomaniac, nymphomaniac, satyr; rapist 665.12

17 **intersex,** sex-intergrade, epicence; hermaphrodite, pseudohermaphrodite; androgyne, gynandroid; transsexual

18 **sexology,** sex study, sexologist; sexual counselor; sexual surrogate; sexual customs *or* mores *or* practices; sexual morality; new morality, sexual revolution; sexual freedom *or* liberation, free love; trial marriage

VERBS 19 sex, sexualize; genderize

20 lust, **lust after,** itch for, have a lech *and* have hot pants for <nf>, **desire; be in heat** *or* **rut,** rut, come in; get physical <nf>; get an erection, get a hard-on <nf>, tumesce

21 **copulate,** couple, **mate,** have intercourse, unite in sexual intercourse, **have sexual relations, have sex,** pair, make out <nf>, perform the act of love *or* marriage act, come together, cohabit, shack up <nf>, be intimate; sleep with *or* together, lie with, go to bed with, bonk; fuck *and* screw *and* lay *and* ball *and* frig *and* diddle *and* do it *and* **make it with** <nf>, go all the way, go to bed with, lie together, get laid <nf>; cover, mount, serve *or* service <of animals>; commit adultery, fornicate 665.19; **make love**

22 **masturbate,** play with *or* abuse oneself, jack off *and* whack off <nf>; fellate, suck *and* suck off <nf>; sodomize, bugger *and* ream <nf>

23 stimulate, have foreplay; go down on, give head, suck *or* suck off

24 **climax, come,** achieve satisfaction, achieve *or* reach orgasm; **ejaculate,** get off <nf>

ADJS 25 **sexual,** sex, sexlike, gamic, coital, libidinal; **erotic,** appealing, amorous, magnetic; nuptial; venereal; **carnal,** sensual 663.5, voluptuous, fleshly; desirable, baddable; **sexy;** erogenous, erogenic, erotogenic; sexed, oversexed, hypersexual, undersexed; procreative 78.15; potent 76.12

26 **aphrodisiac,** aphroditous, **arousing,** stimulating, eroticizing, venereal

27 **lustful, prurient, hot,** steamy, sexy, concupiscent, lickerish, libidinous, **salacious** 666.9, **passionate,** hot-blooded, itching, **horny** *and* hot to trot *and* sexed-up *and* hot and bothered <nf>, excited, aroused, randy, goatish, sexed-up; sex-starved, unsatisfied; lascivious 665.29; **orgasmic,** orgastic, **ejaculatory**

28 **in heat, burning, hot; in rut,** rutting, rutty, ruttish; in must, must, musty; estrous, estral, estrual

29 **unsexual,** unsexed; **sexless,** asexual, **neuter,** neutral; castrated, emasculated, eunuchized; **cold, frigid; impotent;** frustrated

30 **homosexual,** homoerotic, gay, queer *and* limp-wristed *and* faggoty <nf>; **bisexual,** bisexed, ambisexual, ambisextrous, amphierotic, AC-DC <nf>, autoerotic; lesbian, sapphic, tribadistic; butch *and* dykey <nf>; effeminate 77.15; transvestite; outed

31 hermaphrodite, hermaphroditic, pseudohermaphrodite, pseudohermaphroditic, epicene, monoclinous; androgynous, androgynal, gynandrous, gynandrian

76 MASCULINITY

NOUNS 1 **masculinity,** masculineness, maleness; **manliness,** manlihood, **manhood,** manfulness, manlikeness; mannishness; gentlemanliness, gentlemanlikeness

2 **male sex, male sexuality, virility,** virileness, virilism, potence *or* **potency,** sexual power, manly vigor, **machismo;** ultramasculinity; phallicism; male superiority, patriarchy

3 **mankind, man, men, manhood,** menfolk *or* menfolks <nf>, the sword side

4 **male,** male being, masculine; he, him, his, himself; **man,** male person, *homme* <Fr>, *hombre* <Sp>; **gentleman,** gent <nf>

5 <nf terms> **guy,** fellow, feller, lad, blade, chap, cat, bird, duck, stud, joker, jasper, bugger, bastard, bloke *and* cove *and* johnny *and* bod <Brit nf>, customer, party, character, warm, body, bean, cookie, dude, gent, Joe, Adam

6 **real man, he-man,** *and* two-fisted man <nf>, hunk *and* jockstrap *and* jock <nf>, man with hair on his chest; caveman *and* bucko <nf>

7 <forms of address> **Mister, Mr,** Messrs <pl>, Master; **sir,** my good man, gentleman, my dear sir *or* man; esquire; *monsieur* or *M* <Fr>, *messieurs* or *MM* <Fr pl>; *signor* and *signore* and *signorino* <Ital>; *señor* and Sr and *don* <Sp>, *Dom, senhor* <Pg>; *Herr* and *mein Herr* <Ger>; *mijnheer* <Dutch>, *sahib* <India>, *sri* or *babu* <Hindu>; *bwana* <Swah>

8 <male animals> cock, rooster, chanticleer; cockerel; drake; gander; peacock; tom turkey, tom, turkey-cock, gobbler, turkey gobbler; dog; boar; stag, hart, buck; stallion, studhorse, stud, top horse <nf>, entire horse, entire, colt; tomcat, tom; he-goat, billy goat, billy; boar, hog; ram, tup <Brit>; wether; bull, bullock, top cow <nf>; steer, stot <Brit nf>; drone

9 <mannish female> **amazon,** virago, androgyne; lesbian, butch *and* dyke <nf>; **tomboy,** hoyden, romp

10 man of the family, family man, married man, husband, widower, househusband, patriarch, paterfamilias, father, papa <nf>; son, brother, uncle, nephew, godfather, godson, grandfather, grandson, grandpa

VERBS 11 masculinize, virilize

ADJS 12 **masculine, male,** bull, he-; **manly, manlike, mannish,** manful, andric; uneffeminate; **gentlemanly,** gentlemanlike

13 **virile, potent,** viripotent; ultramasculine, **macho, he-mannish** *and* hunky <nf>, two-fisted <nf>, broad-shouldered, hairy-chested

14 **mannish, mannified; unwomanly, unfeminine,** uneffeminate, viraginous; **tomboyish,** hoyden, rompish

77 FEMININITY

NOUNS 1 **femininity,** feminality, feminacy, feminineness, femaleness, femineity, feminism; **womanliness,** womanlikeness, womanishness, **womanhood,** womanity, muliebrity; girlishness, little-girlishness; maidenhood, maidenliness; **ladylikeness,** gentlewomanliness; **matronliness,** matriarchy, matronage, matronhood, matronship; the eternal feminine, *"das Ewig-Weibliche"* <Ger>—Goethe

2 **effeminacy, unmanliness,** effeminateness, epicenity, epicenism, **womanishness,** muliebrity, **sissiness** <nf>, prissiness <nf>; androgyny; feminism

3 **womankind, woman, women,** femininity, **womanhood,** womenfolk *or* womenfolks <nf>, the distaff side; **the female sex;** the second sex, **the fair sex,** the gentle sex, the softer sex, **the weaker sex,** the weaker vessel

4 **female,** female being; she, her, herself

5 **woman,** Eve, daughter of Eve, Adam's rib, *femme* <Fr>, distaff <old>, weaker vessel; frow, *Frau* <Ger>, *vrouw* <Dutch>, *donna* <Ital>, wahine <Hawaii>; **lady,** milady, gentlewoman, *domina* <L>; feme sole *and* feme covert <law>; married woman, wife; **matron,** dame, **dowager;** squaw; unmarried woman, bachelor girl <nf>, single woman, spinster, maiden; old maid; lass, lassie, girl 302.6; career woman, businesswoman, working woman, working wife *or* mother; superwoman; liberated woman, feminist, suffragette, women's libber <nf>

6 <nf terms> **gal, dame,** hen, biddy, skirt, missy, toots, jane, broad, doll, damsel, babe, chick, wench, bird <Brit>, tomato, bitch, minx, momma, mouse, sister, squaw

7 **woman of the family,** married woman, wife, widow, housewife, mother, matriarch, materfamilias; daughter, sister, aunt, niece, godmother, goddaughter, grandmother, granddaughter

8 “O fairest of creation! last and best of all God’s works”—Milton, “a temple sacred by birth, and built by hands divine”—Dryden, “one of Nature’s agreeable blunders”—Hannah Cowley

9 <forms of address> **Ms;** Miss *or* miss; Mistress <old>, **Mrs; madam** *or* ma’am; missus; my good lady, my dear woman *or* lady, lady; *madame* or *Mme* <Fr>; *mesdames* or *Mmes* <Fr pl>; *Frau* and *Fraulein* <Ger>, *vrouw* <Dutch>, *signora* <Ital>, *señora* <Sp>, *senhora* <Pg>, *mem-sahib* <Hindu>; *donna* <Ital>, *doña* <Sp>, *dona* <Pg>, *mademoiselle* or *Mlle* <Fr>; *Fraülein* <Ger>; *signorina* <Ital>, *señorita* <Sp>, *senhorita* <Pg>, Dame *and* Lady <Brit>

10 <female animals> hen, biddy; guinea hen; peahen; bitch, slut, gyp; sow, gilt; ewe, ewe lamb; she-goat, nanny goat *or* nanny; doe, hind, roe; jenny; mare, brood mare; filly; cow, bossy; heifer; vixen; tigress; lioness; she-bear, she-lion, queen bee, etc

11 <effeminate male> **mollycoddle,** effeminate; **mother’s darling, mother’s boy, mama’s boy,** Lord Fauntleroy, sissy, Percy, goody-goody; **pantywaist,** nancy *or* nance, chicken, lily; cream puff, weak sister, milksop; old woman

12 feminization, womanization, effemination, effeminization, sissification <nf>

VERBS 13 feminize; womanize, demasculinize, effeminize, effeminatize, effeminate, soften, sissify <nf>; emasculate, castrate, geld

ADJS 14 **feminine, female;** gynic, gynecic, gynecoid; muliebral, distaff, **womanly, womanish, womanlike,** petticoat; **ladylike,** gentlewomanlike, gentlewomanly; **matronly,** matronal, matronlike; **girlish,** little-girlish, kittenish; maidenly 301.11

15 **effeminate, womanish,** fem <nf>, old-womanish, **unmanly,** muliebrous, soft, chicken, prissy, **sissified,** sissy, **sissyish**

78 REPRODUCTION, PROCREATION

NOUNS 1 **reproduction, making, re-creation,** remaking, refashioning, reshaping, redoing, re-formation, reworking, rejiggering <nf>; **reconstruction,** rebuilding, redesign, restructuring, *perestroika* <Russ>; **revision;** reedition, reissue, reprinting; reestablishment, **reorganization,** reinstitution, reconstitution; redevelopment; **rebirth,** renascence, resurrection, revival; regeneration, regenesis, palingenesis; **duplication** 874, **imitation** 336, **copy** 784, **repetition** 849; **restoration** 396, renovation; producing *or* making *or* creating anew *or* over *or* again *or* once more; **birth rate,** fertility rate; baby boom *or* boomlet <nf>; baby bust <nf>

2 **procreation, reproduction, generation, begetting, breeding,** engenderment, engendering, fathering, siring, spawning; **propagation, multiplication,** proliferation; linebreeding; inbreeding, endogamy; outbreeding, xenogamy; dissogeny; crossbreeding 797.4

3 **fertilization,** fecundation; **impregnation,** insemination, begetting, getting with child, knocking up <nf>, mating, servicing; **pollination,** pollinization; germination; cross-fertilization, cross-pollination; self-fertilization, heterogamy, orthogamy; isogamy, artificial insemination; conjugation, zygosis; in vitro fertilization, test-tube baby technique

4 **conception,** conceiving, inception of pregnancy; superfetation, superimpregnation

5 **pregnancy, gestation, incubation,** parturiency, gravidness *or* gravidity, heaviness, greatness, bigness, the family way <nf>; brooding, sitting, covering

6 **birth, generation, genesis; development;** procreation; abiogenesis, archigenesis, biogenesis, blastogenesis, digenesis, dysmerogenesis, epigenesis, eumerogenesis, heterogenesis, histogenesis, homogenesis, isogenesis, merogenesis, metagenesis, monogenesis, oögenesis, orthogenesis, pangenesis, parthenogenesis, phytogenesis, sporogenesis, xenogenesis; spontaneous generation

VERBS 7 **reproduce, remake,** make *or* do over, **re-create,** regenerate, resurrect, revive, re-form, refashion, **reshape,** remold, recast, rework, rejigger <nf>, redo, **reconstruct,** rebuild, redesign, restructure, **revise;** reprint, reissue; reestablish, reinstitute, reconstitute, refound, **reorganize; redevelop;** duplicate 873.3, **copy** 336.5, **repeat** 849.7, **restore** 396.11, **renovate**

8 **procreate, generate, breed, beget,** get, **engender; propagate, multiply;** proliferate; mother; father, sire; reproduce in kind, reproduce after one’s kind, “multiply and replenish the earth”—Bible; breed true; inbreed, breed in and in; outbreed; cross-pollinate, crossbreed; linebreed; copulate, make love

9 **lay** <eggs>, deposit, drop, spawn

10 **fertilize,** fructify, fecundate, fecundify; **impregnate, inseminate,** spermatize, knock up <nf>, **get with child** *or* **young; pollinate** *or* pollinize, pollen; cross-fertilize, cross-pollinate *or* cross-pollinize

11 **conceive,** get in the family way <nf>; superfetate

12 **be pregnant,** be gravid, be great with child, **be with child** *or* **young;** be in the family way *and* have a bun in the oven *and* be expecting *and* anticipate a blessed event <nf>, be infanticipating *and* be knocked up <nf>, be blessed-eventing <nf>;

gestate, breed, carry, carry young; **incubate, hatch; brood,** sit, set, cover

13 give birth 1.3

ADJS 14 **reproductive, re-creative, reconstructive,** reformative; renascent, regenerative, resurgent, reappearing; reorganizational; revisional; **restorative** 396.22; Hydraheaded, phoenixlike

15 **reproductive, procreative,** procreant, **propagative,** life-giving; spermatic, spermatozoic, seminal, germinal, fertilizing, fecundative; multiparous

16 **genetic, generative,** genial, gametic; genital, genitive; abiogenetic, biogenetic, blastogenetic, digenetic, dysmerogenetic, epigenetic, eumerogenetic, heterogenetic, histogenetic, homogenetic, isogenetic, merogenetic, metagenetic, monogenetic, oögenetic, orthogenetic, pangenetic, parthenogenetic, phytogenetic, sporogenous, xenogenetic

17 **bred, impregnated,** inseminated; inbred, endogamic, endogamous; outbred, exogamic, exogamous; crossbred; linebred

18 **pregnant,** *enceinte* <Fr>, preggers *and* knocked-up <nf>, **with child** *or* **young, in the family way** <nf>, gestating, breeding, teeming, parturient; heavy with child *or* young, great *or* big with child *or* young, wearing her apron high, in a delicate condition, gravid, heavy, great, big-laden; carrying, carrying a fetus *or* an embryo; **expecting** <nf>, anticipating *and* anticipating a blessed event <nf>, infanticipating <nf>; superfetate, superimpregnated

79 CLEANNESS

NOUNS 1 **cleanness, cleanliness; purity,** squeaky-cleanness <nf>, pureness; **immaculateness,** immaculacy; **spotlessness,** unspottedness, stainlessness, whiteness; freshness; fastidiousness, daintiness, cleanly habits, spit and polish; asepsis, sterility, hospital cleanliness; tidiness 807.3

2 **cleansing, cleaning,** cleaning up, detersion <old>; **purge,** purging, purgation, cleanout, cleaning out, purging, purgation, catharsis, abstersion <old>; **purification,** purifying, lustration; expurgation, bowdlerization; housecleaning, spring-cleaning, cleanup

3 **sanitation, hygiene,** hygenics; **disinfection, decontamination, sterilization,** antisepsis, asepsis; pasteurization; deodorization, fumigation, disinfestation, delousing; chlorination

4 **refinement, clarification, purification,** depuration; **straining,** colature; elution, elutriation; extraction 192.8; **filtering,** filtration; **percolation,** leaching, edulcoration <old>, lixiviation; **sifting,** separation, **screening,** sieving, bolting, riddling, winnowing; essentialization; sublimation; **distillation,** destructive distillation, spiritualization <old>

5 **washing, ablution;** lavation, laving, lavage; lavabo; **wash, washup;** soaking, soaping, lathering; dip, dipping; rinse, rinsing; sponge, sponging; shampoo; washout, elution, elutriation; irrigation, flush, flushing, flushing out; douche, douching; enema; **scrub,** scrubbing, swabbing, mopping, scouring; **cleaning up** *or* **out,** washing up, scrubbing up *or* out, mopping up *or* down, wiping up *or* down

6 **laundering, laundry,** tubbing; **wash, washing;** washday

7 **bathing,** balneation

8 **bath,** bathe <Brit>, tub <nf>; **shower,** shower bath, needle bath, hot *or* cold shower; douche; sponge bath, sponge; hip bath, sitz bath; footbath; sweat bath, Turkish bath, hummum, Russian bath, Swedish bath, Finnish bath, sauna *or* sauna bath, steam bath, Japanese bath, hot tub, whirlpool bath, Jacuzzi <trademark>, plunge bath

9 **dip, bath;** acid bath, mercury bath, fixing bath; sheepdip

10 **bathing place, bath, baths,** public baths, **bathhouse,** bagnio <old>, sauna, Turkish baths; *balneum* and *balneae* and *thermae* <L>; mikvah <Judaism>; watering place, spa; lavatory, washroom, bathroom; steam room, sweat room, sudatorium, sudarium, sudatory, caldarium, tepidarium; rest room

11 **washery, laundry;** washhouse, washshed; **coin laundry, Laundromat** <trademark>, **launderette,** coin-operated laundry, laundrette <Brit>, washateria; automatic laundry; hand laundry; car wash

12 **washbasin, washbowl,** washdish, basin; **lavatory, washstand; bathtub,** tub, bath; bidet; basin and pitcher, basin and ewer; **shower,** showers, shower room, shower bath, shower stall, shower head, shower curtain; **sink,** kitchen sink; dishwasher; washing machine, washer; piscina, lavabo, ewer, aquamanile; washtub, washboard, washpot, washing pot, wash boiler, dishpan; finger bowl; wash barrel

13 **refinery; refiner,** purifier, clarifier; **filter; strainer,** colander; **percolator,** lixiviator; **sifter, sieve, screen,** riddle, cribble; winnow, winnower, winnowing machine, winnowing basket *or* fan; cradle, rocker

14 **cleaner,** cleaner-up, cleaner-off, cleaner-out; **janitor,** janitress, custodian; cleaning woman *or* lady *or* man, housecleaner, housemaid, maid, daily *or* daily woman *and* charwoman *or* char <Brit>; window cleaner, squeegee <nf>; scrubber, swabber; shoeshiner, bootblack

15 **washer,** launderer; **laundress,** laundrywoman, **washerwoman,** washwoman; **laundryman,** washerman, washman; dry cleaner; **dishwasher,** pot-walloper *and* pearl-diver <nf>, scullion, scullery maid; dishwiper

16 **sweeper; street sweeper,** crossing sweeper, whitewing, cleanser *or* scavenger <Brit>; **chimney sweep** *or* sweeper, sweep, flue cleaner; scavenger, beachcomber; garbage collector, trash collector, sanitary engineer

17 **cleanser, cleaner;** cleaning agent; antiseptic, disinfectant; cold cream, cleansing cream, **soap, detergent,** washing powder, soap flakes, abstergent; dishwashing liquid *or* powder; shampoo; rinse; bubble bath, shower gel; **solvent;** cleaning solvent; water softener; purifier, depurant; mouthwash, gargle; dentifrice, **toothpaste, tooth powder;** abrasive, pumice, pumice stone, holystone, hearthstone, scouring powder, scouring pad; polish, varnish, wax, whitewash; purge, purgative, cathartic, enema, diuretic, emetic, nauseant, laxative; **cleaning device,** cleaning tool, cleaning cloth

VERBS 18 **clean, cleanse, purge,** deterge, depurate; **purify,** lustrate, disinfect; sweeten, **freshen;** whiten, bleach; clean up *or* out, clear out, sweep out, clean up after; houseclean, clean house, spring-clean; spruce, **tidy** 808.12; scavenge; **wipe,** wipe up *or* out, wipe off, mop *or* mop up, swab, scrub, scour; dust, dust off; steam-clean, **dry-clean;** expurgate, bowdlerize

19 **wash, bathe,** bath <Brit>, shower, lave, have *or* take a bath; **launder,** tub; wash up *or* out *or* away; **rinse,** rinse out, dip, dunk, flush, flush out, irrigate, sluice, sluice out; ritually immerse, baptize, *toivel* <Yiddish>; sponge, sponge down *or* off; **scrub,** scrub up *or* out, **swab, mop,** mop up; **scour,** holystone; hose out *or* down; rinse off *or* out; soak out *or* away; soap, lather; shampoo; syringe, douche; gargle

20 **groom,** dress, fettle <Brit nf>, **brush up; preen,** plume, titivate; manicure

21 **comb,** curry, card, hackle *or* hatchel, heckle <nf>, rake

22 **refine, clarify,** clear, purify, rectify, depurate, decrassify; try; **strain;** elute, elutriate; **extract** 192.10; **filter,** filtrate; **percolate,** leach, lixiviate, edulcorate <old>; **sift,** separate, sieve, **screen,** decant, bolt, winnow; sublimate, sublime; **distill,** spiritualize <old>, essentialize

23 **sweep,** sweep up *or* out, **brush,** brush off, whisk, broom; vacuum <nf>, vacuum-clean

24 **sanitize,** sanitate, hygienize; **disinfect, decontaminate, sterilize,** antisepticize, radiosterilize; autoclave, boil; pasteurize, flash-pasteurize; disinfest, fumigate, deodorize, delouse; chlorinate

ADJS 25 **clean, pure; immaculate, spotless,** stainless, white, fair, dirt-free, soil-free; **unsoiled, unsullied,** unmuddied, unsmirched, unbesmirched, unblotted, unsmudged, unstained, untarnished, **unspotted,** unblemished; smutless, smut-free; bleached, whitened; bright, shiny 1025.33; **unpolluted,** nonpolluted, untainted, unadulterated, **undefiled;** kosher, *tahar* <Heb>, ritually pure *or* clean; **squeaky-clean** *and* clean as a whistle *or* a new penny *or* a hound's tooth <nf>; **sweet, fresh,** fresh as a daisy; **cleanly,** fastidious, dainty, of cleanly habits; well-washed, well-scrubbed, tubbed <nf>

26 **cleaned, cleansed,** cleaned up, cleaned out; purged, purified; expurgated, bowdlerized; refined, filtered; spruce, spick and span, **tidy** 807.8

27 **sanitary, hygienic, prophylactic; sterile,** aseptic, antiseptic, **uninfected;** disinfected, decontaminated, sterilized; autoclaved, boiled; pasteurized

28 **cleansing, cleaning;** detergent, detersive; disinfectant, antibacterial; abstergent, abstersive, depurative; **purifying,** purificatory, lustral; expurgatory; purgative, purging, cathartic, diuretic, emetic; balneal, ablutionary

ADVS 29 **cleanly,** clean; **purely, immaculately, spotlessly**

80 UNCLEANNESS

NOUNS 1 **uncleanness,** immundity; **impurity,** unpureness; **dirtiness,** grubbiness, dinginess, griminess, messiness *and* grunginess *and* scuzziness <nf>, scruffiness, slovenliness, sluttishness, untidiness 810.6; miriness, muddiness 1062.4; uncleanliness

2 **filthiness, foulness,** vileness, scumminess <nf>, feculence, shittiness <nf>, muckiness, ordurousness, nastiness, grossness *and* yuckiness *and* ickiness <nf>; scurfiness, scabbiness; rottenness, putridness 393.7; rankness, fetidness 71.2; odiousness, repulsiveness 98.2; nauseousness, disgustingness 64.3; hoggishness, piggishness, swinishness, beastliness

3 **squalor,** squalidness, squalidity, **sordidness,** slum; slumminess <nf>; insanitation, lack of sanitation; unhealthy conditions

4 **defilement, befoulment,** dirtying, soiling, besmirchment; **pollution, contamination, infection;** abomination; ritual uncleanness *or* impurity *or* contamination

5 **soil,** soilure, soilage, smut; **smirch, smudge,** smutch, smear, **spot,** blot, blotch, **stain** 1004.3

6 **dirt, grime;** dust; soot, smut; **mud** 1062.8

7 **filth, muck,** slime, mess, sordes, foul matter; ordure, **excrement** 12.3; mucus, snot <nf>; scurf, furfur, dandruff; scuzz *and* mung <nf>; putrid matter, pus, corruption, gangrene, decay, carrion, **rot** 393.7; **obscenity,** smut <nf> 666.4

8 **slime, slop,** scum, sludge, slush; glop *and* gunk <nf>, **muck, mire,** ooze

9 **offal,** slough, **offscourings,** scurf, scum, riffraff, scum of the earth; residue; **carrion; garbage, swill,** slop, slops; dishwater, ditchwater, bilgewater, bilge; **sewage,** sewerage; rubbish, trash, **waste,** refuse 391.4

10 **dunghill, manure pile,** midden, mixen <Brit nf>, colluvies; compost heap; kitchen midden, refuse heap

11 **sty, pigsty,** pigpen; **stable,** Augean stables; dump *and* hole *and* shithole <nf>, rathole; tenement; warren, **slum,** rookery; the inner city, the ghetto, the slums; plague spot, pesthole; hovel

12 <receptacle of filth> **sink;** sump, **cesspool,** cesspit, septic tank; catchbasin; bilge *or* bilges; **sewer,** drain, *cloaca* and *cloaca maxima* <L>; sewage farm, purification plant; **dump,** garbage dump, dumpsite, sanitary landfill, landfill; **swamp,** bog, mire, quagmire, marsh

13 **pig, swine, hog,** slut, sloven, slattern 810.7

VERBS 14 wallow in the mire, live like a pig, roll in the dirt *or* mud

15 **dirty,** dirty up, dirt <old>, grime, **begrime;** muck, muck up <nf>; **muddy,** bemud <old>; mire, bemire; slime; dust; soot, smoke, besmoke

16 **soil,** besoil; black, **blacken; smirch,** besmirch, sully, slubber <Brit nf>, smutch *or* smouch, besmutch, smut, **smudge, smear,** besmear, daub, bedaub; **spot,** stain 1003.6; get one's hands dirty, dirty *or* soil one's hands

17 **defile, foul, befoul; sully;** foul one's own nest, shit where one eats <nf>, nasty *or* benasty <nf>, mess *and* mess up <nf>, make a mess of; **pollute, corrupt, contaminate, infect; taint,** tarnish, poison; profane, desecrate, unhallow

18 **spatter, splatter,** splash, **bespatter,** dabble, bedabble, spot, splotch

19 **draggle,** bedraggle, **drabble,** bedrabble, daggle <old>, drabble in the mud

ADJS 20 **unclean, unwashed,** unbathed, unscrubbed, unscoured, unswept, unwiped; **impure,** unpure; **polluted, contaminated, infected, corrupted;** ritually unclean *or* impure *or* contaminated, *tref* <Yiddish>, *terefah* <Heb>, nonkosher; not to be handled without gloves; **uncleanly;** septic, unhygienic, contaminated, polluted, toxic

21 **soiled, sullied, dirtied, smirched,** besmirched, smudged, spotted, **tarnished,** tainted, **stained; defiled,** fouled, **befouled;** draggled, drabbled, bedraggled

22 **dirty,** dirt-encrusted, **grimy, grubby,** grungy <nf>, scummy <nf>, smirchy, dingy, messy <nf>; scruffy, slovenly, untidy 810.15; miry, **muddy** 1062.14; **dusty;** smutty, smutchy, smudgy; sooty, smoky; snuffy

23 **filthy, foul, vile,** mucky, **nasty,** icky *and* yecchy *and* yucky *and* gross *and* grungy *and* scuzzy *and* grotty <nf>; malodorous, mephitic, rank, **fetid** 71.5; **putrid, rotten;** pollutive; nauseating, disgusting; **odious,** repulsive 98.18; **slimy;** barfy *and* vomity *and* puky <nf>; sloppy, sludgy; gloppy *and* gunky <nf>, scurfy, scabby; wormy, maggoty, flyblown; feculent, ordurous, crappy *and* shitty <nf>, excremental, excrementitious, fecal 12.20

24 **hoggish, piggish, swinish,** beastly

25 **squalid, sordid,** wretched, shabby; slumlike, slummy

ADVS 26 **uncleanly, impurely,** unpurely; **dirtily,** grimily; **filthily, foully,** nastily, vilely

81 HEALTHFULNESS

NOUNS 1 **healthfulness, healthiness, salubrity,** salubriousness, salutariness, **wholesomeness,** beneficialness, goodness

2 **hygiene,** hygienics; sanitation 79.3; public health, epidemiology; health physics; **preventive medicine,** prophylaxis, preventive dentistry, prophylactodontia; prophylactic psychology, mental hygiene; **fitness and exercise** 84; cleanliness

3 **hygienist,** hygeist, sanitarian; public health doctor *or* physician, epidemiologist; health physicist; preventive dentist, prophylactodontist; dental hygienist

VERBS 4 **make for health,** conduce to health, **be good for,** agree with

ADJS 5 **healthful, healthy, salubrious, salutary, wholesome,** health-preserving, health-enhancing, health-giving, life-promoting, **beneficial,** benign, good, **good for;** nutritious, nourishing; **hygienic, hygienical,** hygeian, sanitary; constitutional, for one's health; conditioning; bracing, refreshing, invigorating, tonic; what the doctor ordered

82 UNHEALTHFULNESS

NOUNS 1 **unhealthfulness, unhealthiness, insalubrity,** insalubriousness, unsalutariness, ill health, poor health, **unwholesomeness,** badness; noxiousness, noisomeness, injuriousness, harmfulness 1000.5; pathenogenicity; chronic ill health, valetudinarianism; health hazard, threat *or* danger *or* menace to health; contamination, pollution, environmental pollution, air *or* water *or* noise pollution

2 **innutritiousness, indigestibility**

3 **poisonousness, toxicity, venomousness; virulence** *or* virulency, malignancy, noxiousness, destructiveness, deadliness; **infectiousness,** infectivity, contagiousness, communicability; poison, venom 1001.3

VERBS 4 **disagree with,** not be good for, sicken

ADJS 5 **unhealthful, unhealthy, insalubrious, unsalutary, unwholesome,** peccant, bad, **bad for;** noxious, noisome, injurious, baneful, harmful 999.12; **polluted,** contaminated, tainted, foul, septic; unhygienic, unsanitary, insanitary; morbific, pathogenic, pestiferous

6 **innutritious, indigestible,** unassimilable

7 **poisonous, toxic,** toxicant; **venomous,** envenomed, venenate, venenous; veneniferous, toxiferous; pollutive; **virulent, noxious, malignant,** malign, destructive, deadly; pestiferous, pestilential, pestilent; mephitic, miasmal, miasmic, miasmatic; **infectious,** infective, contagious, communicable, catching, germ-laden; mephitic; lethal, deadly

83 HEALTH

NOUNS 1 **health, well-being; fitness,** health and fitness, physical fitness 84; bloom, flush, pink, glow, rosiness; mental health, emotional health; physical condition; Hygeia

2 **healthiness,** healthfulness, **soundness,** wholesomeness; healthy body, good *or* healthy constitution; **good health,** good state of health, "good estate of body"—Bible, "*mens sana in corpore sano*"—Juvenal <L, a sound mind in a sound body>; **robust health,** rugged health, rude health, glowing health, picture of health; **fine fettle,** fine whack <nf>, fine *or* high feather <nf>, **good shape,** good trim, fine shape, top shape <nf>, good condition, mint condition; eupepsia, good digestion; clean bill of health

3 **haleness, heartiness, robustness,** vigorousness, ruggedness, **vitality,** lustiness, hardiness, strength, vigor; longevity

4 **immunity, resistance,** nonproneness *or* nonsusceptibility to disease; **immunization;** antibody, antigen 86.27

5 **health care, health protection,** health *or* **medical management, health maintenance,** medical care 91.1; **wellness,** wellness program, disease prevention, preventive medicine; health awareness program; health policy, health-care policy; **health plan, health** *or* **medical insurance,** health service, health-care delivery service *or* plan, health maintenance organization *or* HMO, Medicare, Medicaid; National Health Service *or* NHS *or* National Health <Brit>; socialized medicine; health department, health commissioner; health club, health spa

VERBS 6 **enjoy good health,** have a clean bill of health, be in the pink; be in the best of health; **feel good,** feel fine, feel fit, feel like a million dollars *or* like a million <nf>, never feel better; feel one's oats, be full of pep; burst with health, bloom, glow, flourish; keep fit, stay in shape; wear well, stay young, be well-preserved

7 **get well,** recover 396.20, mend, get healthy, be oneself again, feel like a new person, get back on one's feet, bounce back, get over it, get the color back in one's cheeks; recuperate 396.19

ADJS 8 **healthy, healthful,** enjoying health, **fine,** in health, in shape, in condition, **fit,** fit and fine; **in good health,** in the pink of condition, in mint condition, in good case, **in good** *or* **fine shape, in fine fettle,** in A1 condition, bursting with health, full of life and vigor, feeling one's oats; eupeptic

9 <nf terms> **in the pink,** in fine whack, in fine *or* high feather, chipper, **fit as a fiddle;** alive and kicking, bright-eyed and bushy-tailed; full of beans *or* of piss and vinegar

10 **well, unailing, unsick, unsickly,** unfrail; all right, doing nicely, up and about, sitting up and taking nourishment, alive and well

11 **sound,** whole, wholesome; unimpaired 1002.8; sound of mind and body, sound in wind and limb, sound as a dollar <nf>

12 **hale, hearty,** hale and hearty, **robust,** robustious, robustuous, vital, **vigorous, strong,** strong as a horse *or* an ox, bionic <nf>, stalwart, stout, sturdy, **rugged,** rude, hardy, lusty, bouncing, well-knit, flush <old>; **fit,** in condition *or* shape; of good constitution

13 **fresh,** green, youthful, **blooming;** flush, flushed, **rosy,** rosy-cheeked, apple-cheeked, ruddy, pink, pink-cheeked; fresh-faced, fresh as a daisy *or* rose, fresh as April

14 **immune, resistant,** nonprone *or* nonsusceptible to disease; health-conscious, health-protecting; immune response

84 FITNESS, EXERCISE

NOUNS 1 **fitness, physical fitness, physical conditioning, condition, shape,** trim, tone, fettle, aerobic fitness, anaerobic fitness, cardiovascular fitness, cardiorespiratory fitness; **gymnasium, gym** <nf>, **fitness center, health club,** health spa, work-out room, weight room, exercise track *or* trail, trim trail <Brit>, *parcourse* or *parcours* <Fr>; **weight, barbell,** dumbbell, free weights, exercise machine, Nautilus <trademark>, bench, exercise bike, rowing machine, stair-climbing machine, treadmill, Nordic Trak <trademark>; whirlpool bath, Jacuzzi <trademark>, hot tub, spa

2 **exercise,** motion, movement, maneuver; **program,** routine, drill, work-out; **exercise systems; warm-up, stretching,** warm-down; **calisthenics,** free exercise, setting-up exercise *or* set-ups, physical jerks <Brit>, daily dozen <nf>, constitutional; **parcourse exercise; gymnastic exercise, gymnastics;** slimnastics; **isometrics,** isometric *or* no-movement exercise; **violent exercise,** breather, wind sprint; **aerobic exercise, aerobics,** aerobic dancing *or* dance, step aerobics, dancercize *or* dancercizing, fitaerobics, jazz ballet *or* Jazzercise; Callanetics; **bodybuilding,** weightlifting, weight training, pumping iron <nf>, bench press, arm raise, curl, wrist curl; **running, jogging,** roadwork, distance running; obligate running; cross-training, interval training, *fartlek* <Swed>; **walking,** fitness walking, healthwalking, aerobic walking, racewalking, powerwalking, powerstriding; **swimming,** swimnastics, water exercise, aquarobics *or* aquaerob *or* hydro-robics, aqua dynamics; tub toner

3 **physical fitness test;** stress test, treadmill test; cardiovascular text

VERBS 4 **exercise, work out,** warm up, train, aerobicize, stretch, lift weights, pump iron <nf>, jog, run, bicycle, walk, fitness-walk, power-walk, race-walk

85 DISEASE

NOUNS 1 **disease** <see list>, **illness, sickness, malady, ailment, indisposition, disorder,** complaint, morbidity, *morbus* <L>, **affliction,** affection, distemper <old>, **infirmity; disability,** defect, handicap; deformity 265.3; **birth defect,** congenital defect; abnormality, condition, pathological condition; **signs, symptoms, pathology,** symptomatology, symptomology, syndrome; **sickishness,** malaise, seediness *and* rockiness *and* the pip *and* the crud *and* the creeping crud <nf>; complication, secondary disease *or* condition; plant disease, blight 1001.2

2 **fatal disease,** deadly disease, terminal disease *or* illness, hopeless condition; **death** 307, clinical death, loss of vital signs; apparent death; **brain death,** local death, somatic death; sudden death, unexplained death; liver death; serum death; thymic death *or* mors thymica; cell death, molecular death; cot death *or* crib death *or* sudden infant death syndrome *or* SIDS

3 **unhealthiness,** healthlessness; **ill health,** poor health, delicate *or* shaky *or* frail *or* fragile health; **sickliness,** peakedness <nf>, **feebleness,** delicacy, weakliness, fragility, **frailty** 16.2; **infirmity, unsoundness,** debility, debilitation, enervation, exhaustion, decrepitude; wasting, languishing, languishment <old>, cachexia *or* cachexy; chronic ill health, invalidity, **invalidism;** unwholesomeness, morbidity, morbidness; hypochondria, hypochondriasis, valetudinarianism, history of illness

4 **infection, contagion,** contamination, taint, virus, affliction; **contagiousness, infectiousness, communicability;** pestiferousness, epidemicity, inoculability; carrier, vector; **epidemiology**

5 **epidemic, plague, pestilence,** pest, pandemic, pandemia, scourge, bane; white plague, tuberculosis; pesthole, plague spot

6 **seizure, attack,** access, visitation; arrest; blockage, stoppage, occlusion, thrombosis, thromboembolism; **stroke,** ictus, apoplexy; **spasm, throes, fit, paroxysm, convulsion,** eclampsia, frenzy; **epilepsy,** falling sickness; tonic spasm, tetany, lockjaw, trismus, tetanus; laryngospasm, laryngismus; clonic spasm, clonus; cramp; vaginismus

7 **fever, feverishness,** febrility, febricity, pyrexia; hyperpyrexia, hyperthermia; **heat, fire, fever heat;** flush, hectic flush; calenture; delirium 926.8, ague; chill, hypothermia, shivers, shakes

8 **collapse, breakdown, crackup** <nf>, **prostration,** exhaustion, burn-out *or* burnout; nervous prostration *or* breakdown *or* exhaustion, neurasthenia; circulatory collapse

9 <disease symptoms> indication, **syndrome;** anemia; ankylosis; asphyxiation, anoxia, cyanosis; ataxia; bleeding, hemorrhage; colic; dizziness, vertigo; ague, chill, chills; hot flash, hot flush; dropsy, hydrops, edema; morning sickness; fainting; fatigue 21; headache, migraine; fever; constipation; diarrhea, flux, dysentery; indigestion, upset stomach, dyspepsia; inflammation 85.9; necrosis; insomnia; malaise; itching, pruritus; jaundice, icterus; backache, lumbago; vomiting, nausea; paralysis; skin eruption, rash; sore, abscess, discharge; hypertension, high blood pressure; hypotension, low blood pressure; tumor, growth; shock; convulsion, seizure, spasm; pain 26; fibrillation, tachycardia; shortness of breath, labored breathing, apnea, dyspnea, asthma; blennorhea; congestion, nasal discharge, rheum, sore throat, coughing, sneezing; wasting, cachexia *or* cachexy, tabes, marasmus, emaciation, atrophy; sclerosis

10 **inflammation,** inflammatory disease, -itis; muscle *or* muscular disease *or* disorder, myopathy; collagen disease, connective-tissue disease

11 **deficiency diseases** <see list>, nutritional disease, vitamin-deficiency disease, acquired immune deficiency syndrome *or* AIDS

12 **genetic disease** <see list>, gene disease, gene-transmitted disease, hereditary *or* congenital disease

13 **infectious disease** <see list>, infection

14 **eye disease,** ophthalmic disease, disease of the eye *or* of vision; cataract; conjunctivitis *or* pink eye; glaucoma; sty; eye *or* visual defect, defective vision 28

15 **ear disease,** otic disease *or* disorder; **deafness; earache,** otalgia; tympanitis; otosclerosis; **vertigo,** dizziness, loss of balance; Ménière's syndrome *or* disease *or* apoplectical deafness

16 **respiratory disease, upper respiratory disease;** lung disease; cold, sinusitis; influenza, flu; bronchitis, pneumonia

17 **tuberculosis** *or* **TB,** white plague, phthisis, consumption

18 **venereal disease** *or* **VD**, sexually transmitted disease *or* STD, social disease, Cupid's itch *or* Venus's curse, dose <nf>; chancre, chancroid; gonorrhea *or* clap *or* the clap *or* claps <nf>; syphilis *or* syph *or* the syph *or* the pox <nf>; herpes, crabs; acquired immune deficiency syndrome *or* AIDS

19 **cardiovascular disease;** heart disease, heart condition, heart trouble; vascular disease; hypertension *or* high blood pressure; angina *or* angina pectoris; cardiac *or* myocardial infarction; cardiac arrest; congenital heart disease; congestive heart failure; coronary *or* ischemic heart disease; coronary thrombosis; heart attack, coronary, heart failure; tachycardia; heart surgery, bypass surgery, angioplasty

20 **blood disease,** hemic *or* hematic disease, hematopathology, anemia, leukemia, lymphoma, Hodgkin's disease; blood poisoning, toxemia, septicemia; hemophilia

21 **endocrine disease,** gland *or* glandular disease, endocrinism, endocrinopathy; diabetes; goiter; hyper- *or* hypoglycemia; hyper- *or* hypothyroidism

22 **metabolic disease;** acidosis, alkalosis, ketosis; gout, podagra; galactosemia, lactose intolerance, fructose intolerance; phenylketonuria *or* PKU, maple syrup urine disease, congenital hypophosphatasia

23 **liver disease,** hepatic disease; gallbladder disease; jaundice *or* icterus

24 **kidney disease,** renal disease; nephritis

25 **neural** *or* **nerve disease,** neurological disease, neuropathy; brain disease; amyotrophic lateral sclerosis *or* Lou Gehrig's disease; palsy, cerebral palsy, Bell's palsy; chorea *or* St Vitus's dance *or* the jerks <nf>; Huntington's chorea; headache, migraine; multiple sclerosis *or* MS; muscular dystrophy; Parkinson's disease *or* Parkinsonism; Alzheimer's disease; neuralgia; sciatica *or* sciatic neuritis; shingles *or* herpes zoster; spina bifida; meningitis; emotional trauma 92.17

26 **shock, trauma;** traumatism

27 **paralysis,** paralyzation, palsy, impairment of motor function; **stroke,** apoplexy; paresis; motor paralysis, sensory paralysis; hemiplegia, paraplegia, diplegia, quadriplegia; cataplexy, catalepsy; infantile paralysis, poliomyelitis, polio <nf>; atrophy, numbness

28 **heatstroke;** heat prostration *or* exhaustion; sunstroke, *coup de soleil* <Fr>, siriasis, insolation; calenture, thermic fever

29 **gastrointestinal disease,** disease of the digestive tract; stomach condition; colic; colitis; constipation *or* irregularity; diarrhea *or* dysentery *or* looseness of the bowels *or* flux, the trots *or* the shits *or* the runs <nf>, Montezuma's revenge; gastritis; gastroenteritis; indigestion *or* dyspepsia; stomachache, bellyache; cramps; heartburn, stomach flu; ulcer, peptic ulcer, stomach cancer

30 **nausea,** nauseation, queasiness, squeamishness, qualmishness; qualm, pukes <nf>; motion sickness, travel sickness, **seasickness,** *mal de mer* <Fr>, airsickness, car sickness; vomiting 908.8

31 **poisoning,** intoxication, venenation; septic poisoning, blood poisoning, sepsis, septicemia, toxemia, pyemia, septicopyemia; autointoxication; food poisoning, ptomaine poisoning, botulism, salmonellosis, listeriosis; milk sickness; ergotism, St Anthony's fire

32 **environmental disease, occupational disease** <see list>, disease of the workplace, environmental *or* occupational hazard, biohazard; tropical disease

33 vitamin deficiency disease, avitaminosis; night blindness, xerophthalmia, beriberi, pellagra, pernicious anemia, scurvy, rickets, osteomalacia

34 **allergy,** allergic disorder; allergic rhinitis, **hay fever,** rose cold, pollinosis; **asthma,** bronchial asthma; **hives,** urticaria; eczema; conjunctivitis; cold sore; allergic gastritis; cosmetic dermatitis; Chinese restaurant syndrome *or* Kwok's disease; allergen

35 **skin diseases**; acne, sebaceous gland disorder; dermatitis; eczema; herpes; hives; itch; psoriasis; scabies; athlete's foot; melanoma, skin cancer

36 **skin eruption,** eruption, **rash,** efflorescence, breaking out, acne, pimple; diaper rash; drug rash, vaccine rash; prickly heat, heat rash; hives, urticaria, nettle rash; papular rash; rupia

37 **sore, lesion;** pustule, papule, papula, fester, **pimple,** hickey *and* zit <nf>; pock; ulcer, ulceration; bedsore; tubercle; blister, bleb, bulla,

blain; whelk, wheal, welt, wale; **boil,** furuncle, furunculus; carbuncle; canker; canker sore; cold sore, fever blister; sty; abscess, gathering, aposteme <old>; gumboil, parulis; whitlow, felon, paronychia; bubo; chancre; soft chancre, chancroid; hemorrhoids, piles; bunion; chilblain, kibe; polyp; stigma, petechia; scab, eschar; fistula; suppuration, festering; swelling, rising 283.4

38 **trauma, wound, injury,** hurt, lesion; **cut,** incision, scratch, gash; puncture, stab, stab wound; flesh wound; **laceration,** mutilation; abrasion, scuff, scrape, chafe, gall; frazzle, fray; run, **rip,** rent, slash, **tear; burn,** scald, scorch, first- *or* second- *or* third-degree burn; flash burn; **break, fracture,** bone-fracture, comminuted fracture, compound *or* open fracture, greenstick fracture, spiral *or* torsion fracture; rupture; crack, chip, craze, check, crackle; wrench; whiplash injury *or* whiplash; concussion; **bruise, contusion,** ecchymosis, **black-and-blue mark; black eye,** shiner *and* mouse <nf>; **battering;** battered child syndrome; sprain, strain, repetitive strain injury

39 **growth,** neoplasm; **tumor,** intumescence; benign tumor, nonmalignant tumor, innocent tumor; malignant tumor, malignant growth, metastatic tumor, **cancer,** sarcoma, carcinoma; morbid growth; excrescence, outgrowth; proud flesh; exostosis; cyst, wen; fungus, fungosity; callus, callosity, **corn,** clavus; **wart,** verruca; **mole,** nevus

40 **gangrene,** mortification, necrosis, sphacelus, sphacelation; noma; moist gangrene, dry gangrene, gas gangrene, hospital gangrene; caries, cariosity, tooth decay; slough; necrotic tissue

41 <animal diseases> anthrax, splenic fever, charbon, milzbrand, malignant pustule; malignant catarrh *or* malignant catarrhal fever; bighead; blackleg, black quarter, quarter evil *or* ill; cattle plague, rinderpest; glanders; foot-and-mouth disease, hoof-and-mouth disease, aphthous fever; distemper; gapes; heaves, broken wind; hog cholera; mad cow disease; loco, loco disease, locoism; mange, scabies; pip; rot, liver rot, sheep rot; staggers, megrims, blind staggers, mad staggers; swine dysentery, bloody flux; stringhalt; Texas fever, blackwater; John's disease, paratuberculosis, pseudotuberculosis; rabies, hydrophobia; myxomatosis

42 **germ,** pathogen, contagium, bug <nf>, disease-causing agent, disease-producing microorganism; **microbe,** microorganism; **virus,** filterable virus, nonfilterable virus, adenovirus, echovirus, reovirus, rhinovirus, enterovirus, picornavirus, retrovirus, virion, bacteriophage, phage; HIV *or* human immunodeficiency virus; rickettsia; bacterium, **bacteria,** germ, coccus, streptococcus, staphylococcus, bacillus, spirillum, vibrio, spirochete, gram-positive bacteria, gram-negative bacteria, aerobe, aerobic bacteria, anaerobe, anaerobic bacteria; protozoon, amoeba, trypanosome; fungus, mold, spore; **carcinogen,** cancer-causing agent

43 **sick person,** ill person, sufferer, victim; valetudinarian, **invalid, shut-in;** incurable, terminal case; **patient, case;** inpatient, outpatient; apoplectic, bleeder, consumptive, dyspeptic, epileptic, rheumatic, arthritic, spastic; addict; **the sick, the infirm;** hypochondriac

44 **carrier,** vector, biological vector, mechanical vector; Typhoid Mary

45 **cripple,** defective, **handicapped person,** disabled person, physically challenged, incapable; amputee; paraplegic, quadriplegic, paralytic; deformity 265.3; the crippled, the handicapped, "the halt, the lame, and the blind"—Bible

VERBS **46** **ail, suffer,** labor under, be affected with, complain of; **feel ill,** feel under the weather, feel awful *or* feel like hell <nf>, feel something terrible, not feel like anything <nf>, feel like the walking dead; look green about the gills <nf>

47 **take sick** *or* **ill, sicken; catch, contract, get,** take, sicken for <Brit>, **come down with** <nf>, be stricken *or* seized by, fall a victim to; catch cold; take one's death <nf>; **break out,** break out with, break out in a rash, erupt; run a temperature, fever; be laid by the heels, be struck down, be brought down, be felled; drop in one's tracks, **collapse;** overdose *or* **OD** <nf>; go into shock, be traumatized

48 **fail, weaken, sink, decline,** run down, lose strength, lose one's grip, dwindle, droop, flag, wilt, wither, wither away, fade, **languish,** waste, waste away, pine, peak

49 **go lame,** founder

50 **afflict, disorder, derange; sicken, indispose; weaken, enfeeble,** enervate, reduce, debilitate, devitalize; **invalid,** incapacitate, **disable;** lay up, hospitalize

51 **infect, disease, contaminate,** taint

52 **poison,** empoison <old>, envenom

ADJS **53** **disease-causing, disease-producing, pathogenic;** threatening, life-threatening; unhealthful 82.5

54 **unhealthy,** healthless, in poor health; **infirm, unsound,** unfit, invalid, valetudinary, valetudinarian, debilitated, cachectic, enervated, exhausted, drained; shut-in, housebound, homebound, wheelchair-bound; **sickly,** peaky *or* peaked <nf>; **weakly, feeble,** frail 16.12–21; weakened, decrepit, with low resistance, **run-down,** reduced, reduced in health; **dying** 307.33,

terminal, moribund, languishing, failing 16.21; pale 36.7

55 **unwholesome, unhealthy,** unsound, morbid, diseased, pathological

56 **ill, ailing, sick, unwell, indisposed,** taken ill, down, bad, on the sick list; **sickish, seedy** *and* rocky <nf>, **under the weather, out of sorts** <nf>, below par <nf>, white as a sheet, off-color, off one's feed <nf>; not quite right, not oneself; faint, faintish, feeling faint; feeling awful *and* feeling something terrible <nf>, feel crummy *and* feel shitty <nf>; sick as a dog *or* a pig <nf>, laid low; in a bad way, critically ill, in danger, on the critical list, on the guarded list, in intensive care; terminal, inoperable, mortally ill, sick unto death, near death

57 **nauseated,** nauseous, **queasy, squeamish, qualmish,** qualmy; **sick to one's stomach;** pukish *and* puky *and* barfy <nf>; seasick, carsick, airsick, green around the gills

58 **feverish,** fevered, feverous, in a fever, febrile, pyretic; **flushed,** inflamed, **hot, burning,** fiery, hectic; hyperpyretic, hyperthermic; delirious 926.31

59 **laid up, invalided,** hospitalized, in hospital <Brit>; **bedridden, bedfast, sick abed; down,** prostrate, flat on one's back; in childbed, confined

60 **diseased, morbid, pathological,** bad, **infected, contaminated,** tainted, peccant, **poisoned,** septic; cankerous, cankered, ulcerous, ulcerated, ulcerative, gangrenous, gangrened, mortified, sphacelated; **inflamed;** congested; **swollen,** edematous

61 anemic, chlorotic; bilious; dyspeptic, liverish, colicky; dropsical, edematous, hydropic; gouty, podagric; neuritic, neuralgic; palsied, paralytic; pneumonic, pleuritic, tubercular, tuberculous, phthisic, consumptive; rheumatic, arthritic; rickety, rachitic; syphilitic, pocky, luetic; tabetic, tabid <old>; allergic; allergenic; apoplectic; hypertensive; diabetic; encephalitic; epileptic; laryngitic; leprous; malarial; measly; nephritic; scabietic, scorbutic, scrofulous; variolous, variolar; tumorous; cancerous, malignant; **carcinogenic,** tumorigenic

62 **contagious, infectious,** infective, **catching,** taking, spreading, **communicable,** zymotic, inoculable; pathogenic, germ-carrying; pestiferous, pestilent, pestilential, **epidemic,** epidemial, pandemic; epizootic, epiphytotic; endemic; sporadic; septic

63 **kinds of disease**

- acute disease *or* condition
- allergy *or* allergic disease
- atrophy
- autoimmune disease
- bacterial disease
- blood disease
- bone disease
- cancer
- cardiovascular disease
- childhood *or* pediatric disease
- chronic disease *or* condition
- chronic fatigue syndrome
- circulatory disease
- collagen disease
- congenital disease
- connective-tissue disease
- contagious *or* infectious disease
- deficiency disease
- degenerative disease
- digestive disease
- endemic disease
- endocrine disease
- endocrine gland disease
- epidemic disease
- functional disease
- fungus *or* fungal disease
- gastric *or* stomach disease
- gastroenterological disease
- gastrointestinal disease
- genetic disease
- geriatric disease
- glandular disease
- hepatic *or* liver disease
- hereditary disease
- hypertrophy
- iatrogenic disease
- intestinal disease
- joint disease
- muscular disease
- neurological disease
- nutritional disease
- occupational disease
- ophthalmic disease
- organic disease
- pandemic disease
- parasitic disease
- protozoan disease
- psychiatric disease
- psychogenic *or* psychosomatic disease
- pulmonary disease
- radiation disease
- renal *or* kidney disease
- respiratory disease
- skin disease
- sexually transmitted disease *or* STD *and* venereal disease
- tropical disease
- ulcer
- urinogenital *or* urogenital disease
- venereal *or* sexually transmitted disease *or* STD
- virus *or* viral disease
- wasting disease
- worm disease

64 **deficiency diseases and disorders**

- acquired immune deficiency syndrome *or* AIDS
- anemia
- anhidrosis
- anoxemia
- ariboflavinosis
- beriberi
- cachexia
- chlorosis
- cretinism
- cytopenia
- deficiency anemia
- dermatitis
- goiter
- greensickness
- hypoadenia
- hypochromia
- hypothyroidism
- immunodeficiency
- ischemia
- Italian *or* Lombardy leprosy
- keratomalacia
- kwashiorkor
- leukopenia *or* leucopenia
- lymphopenia
- maidism
- malnutrition
- night blindness
- osteomalacia
- osteoporosis
- pellagra
- pernicious anemia
- protein deficiency
- rickets *or* rachitis
- scurvy
- severe combined immune deficiency
- struma
- thrombocytopenia
- undernutrition
- vitamin deficiency
- Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome
- xerophthalmia

65 **genetic diseases and disorders**

- achromatic vision
- adenosine deaminase deficiency *or* ADA deficiency
- albinism
- Christmas disease
- color blindness
- cystic fibrosis

dichromatic vision
Down *or* Down's syndrome
dysautonomia
Hartnup's disease
hemophilia
hip dysplasia
Huntington's chorea
ichthyosis
lipid histiocytosis
maple syrup urine disease
Milroy's disease
mongolism *or* mongolianism <old>
mucoviscidosis
muscular dystrophy
neurofibromatosis
Niemann-Pick disease
pancreatic fibrosis
sickle-cell anemia *or* disease
Tay-Sachs disease
thalassemia
Turner's syndrome
Werdnig-Hoffmann disease

66 infectious diseases

acquired immune deficiency syndrome *or* AIDS
acute articular rheumatism
African lethargy *or* encephalitis lethargica
ague
AIDS-related complex *or* ARC *or* pre-AIDS
alkali disease
amebiasis
amebic dysentery
anthrax *or* pulmonary anthrax *or* woolsorter's disease
bacillary dysentery
bastard measles
black death
black fever
blackwater fever
breakbone fever
brucellosis
bubonic plague
cachectic fever
cerebral rheumatism
Chagas disease *or* American trypanosomiasis
Chagres fever
chicken pox *or* varicella
cholera *or* Asiatic cholera
cowpox
dandy fever
dengue *or* dengue fever
diphtheria
dumdum fever
dysentery
elephantiasis
enteric fever
erysipelas
famine fever
five-day fever
frambesia
German measles
glandular fever
grippe
Hansen's disease *or* leprosy
Haverhill fever
hepatitis
herpangina
herpes
histoplasmosis
hookworm
infectious hepatitis
inflammatory rheumatism
influenza *or* flu <nf>
jail fever
jungle rot
kala azar
Kew Gardens spotted fever
legionnaires' disease
lepra
leprosy
leptospirosis
loaiasis *or* loa loa
Lyme disease
lyssa
malaria *or* malarial fever
marsh fever
measles *or* rubeola
meningitis
milzbrand
mononucleosis *or* infectious mononucleosis *or* kissing disease *or* mono <nf>
mumps
ornithosis
osteomyelitis
paratyphoid fever
parotitis
pneumonia
poliomyelitis *or* infantile paralysis *or* polio <nf>
polyarthritis rheumatism
ponos
psittacosis *or* parrot fever
rabies *or* hydrophobia
rat-bite fever
relapsing fever
rheumatic fever
rickettsial pox
ringworm *or* tinea
Rocky Mountain spotted fever
rubella
scarlatina
scarlet fever
schistosomiasis
scrub typhus *or* tsutsugamushi disease
septic sore throat
shigellosis
sleeping sickness *or* sleepy sickness <Brit>
smallpox *or* variola
snail fever
splenic fever
sporotrichosis
spotted fever
St Anthony's fire
strep throat
streptococcus tonsilitis
swamp fever
syphilis
tetanus *or* lockjaw
thrush
tick-borne typhus
tick fever
toxic shock syndrome
tracheitis
trench fever
trench mouth *or* Vincent's infection *or* Vincent's angina
trypanosomiasis
tuberculosis
tularemia *or* deer fly fever *or* rabbit fever
typhoid fever *or* typhoid
typhus *or* typhus fever
undulant fever
vaccinia
venereal disease *or* VD
viral dysentery
viral pneumonia
whooping cough *or* pertussis
yaws
yellow fever *or* yellow jack
zoster *or* shingles *or* zona

67 environmental and occupational diseases and disorders

aeroembolism *or* caisson disease *or* decompression sickness *or* tunnel disease *or* diver's palsy *or* the bends <nf>
altitude sickness
anoxemia
anoxia
anoxic anoxia
anthrax *or* pulmonary anthrax *or* woolsorter's disease
cadmium poisoning
carpal tunnel syndrome
chilblain
frostbite
housemaid's knee
immersion foot
jet lag
lead poisoning
mercury poisoning
Minamata disease
motion sickness
pneumoconiosis *or* black lung <nf>
radiation sickness
radionecrosis
reactive schizophrenia
red-out
repetitive strain injury
sunstroke
trench foot
writer's cramp *or* palsy *or* spasm

86 REMEDY

NOUNS 1 **remedy, cure, corrective,** alterative, remedial measure, sovereign remedy; **relief, help, aid, assistance,** succor; balm, balsam; healing agent; restorative, analeptic; healing quality *or* virtue; oil on troubled waters; specific, specific remedy; **prescription,** recipe, receipt

2 **nostrum,** patent medicine, quack remedy; snake oil

3 **panacea, cure-all,** universal remedy, theriac, catholicon, philosophers' stone; polychrest, broad-

spectrum drug *or* antibiotic; elixir, elixir of life, *elixir vitae* <L>

4 **medicine, medicament, medication,** medicinal, theraputant, pharmaceutical, **drug, physic,** preparation, mixture; herbs, medicinal herbs, simples, vegetable remedies, "the physic of the field"—Pope; wonder drug, miracle drug; balsam, balm; tisane, ptisan; drops; powder; inhalant; electuary, elixir, syrup, lincture, linctus; officinal; specialized drug, orphan drug; **prescription drug,** ethical drug; over-the-counter *or* OTC drug, counter drug, **nonprescription drug;** proprietary medicine *or* drug, proprietary, patent medicine; proprietary name, generic name; materia medica; pharmacognosy; **placebo,** placebo effect

5 **drug, narcotic drug, controlled substance,** designer drug, illegal drug, dope <nf>

6 **dose, dosage, draft, potion,** portion, **shot,** injection; broken dose; booster, booster dose, recall dose, booster shot; drops; inhalant

7 **pill,** bolus, **tablet, capsule,** time-release capsule, lozenge, dragée, troche, pastille

8 **tonic, bracer,** cordial, restorative, analeptic, roborant, **pick-me-up** <nf>; **shot in the arm** <nf>; stimulant; vitamin shot, herb tea, ginseng, iron

9 **stimulant;** Adrenalin <trademark> *or* adrenaline <Brit> *or* epinephrine <US>, aloes; amphetamine sulphate, aromatic spirits of ammonia, caffeine, dextroamphetamine sulfate *or* Dexedrine <trademark>, digitalin *or* digitalis, methamphetamine hydrochloride *or* Methedrine <trademark>, smelling salts *or* salts; pep pill

10 **palliative, alleviative, alleviatory, lenitive, assuasive,** assuager; soothing, abirritant

11 **balm, lotion, salve, ointment, unguent,** *unguentum* <L>, cream, balm, cerate, unction, balsam, oil, emollient, demulcent; **liniment,** embrocation; vulnerary; collyrium, eyesalve, eyebath, eyewater <old>, eyewash; ear-drops

12 **sedative, sedative hypnotic, depressant,** amobarbital and secobarbital *or* Tuinal <trademark>, amobarbital sodium *or* Amytal <trademark>, atropine, barbital *or* barbitone <Brit>, barbituric acid, belladonna, chloral hydrate *or* chloral, laudanum, meperidine *or* Demerol <trademark>, morphine, pentobarbital *or* Nembutal <trademark>, phenobarbital *or* Luminal <trademark>, Quaalude <trademark>, reserpine, scopolamine, secobarbital *or* Seconal <trademark>; **sleeping pill** *or* **tablet** *or* potion; **calmative, tranquilizer,** chlorpromazine, Equanil <trademark>, Librium <trademark>, meprobamate, rauwolfia, reserpine, Thorazine <trademark>, Triavil <trademark>, Valium <trademark>; abirritant, soother, soothing syrup, quietener, pacifier; **analgesic,** acetaminophen *or* Datril <trademark> *or* Tylenol <trademark>, acetanilide, acetophenetidin, aspirin *or* acetylsalicylic acid *or* Bayer <trademark>, buffered aspirin *or* Bufferin <trademark>, headache *or* aspirin powder, ibuprofen *or* Advil <trademark> *or* Motrin <trademark> *or* Nuprin <trademark>, phenacetin, propoxyphene *or* Darvon <trademark>, sodium salicylate; **anodyne,** paregoric <old>; **pain killer** *and* pain pill <nf>; alcohol, liquor 88.13,14

13 **psychoactive drug, hallucinogen, psychedelic,** psychedelic drug

14 **antipyretic,** febrifuge, fever-reducer, fever pill <nf>

15 **anesthetic;** local *or* topical *or* general anesthetic; differential anesthetic; chloroform, ether, ethyl chloride, gas, laughing gas, nitrous oxide, novocaine *or* Novocain <trademark>, thiopental sodium *or* Pentothal <trademark> *or* truth serum

16 **cough medicine,** cough syrup, cough drops; horehound

17 **laxative, cathartic, physic, purge, purgative,** aperient, carminative, diuretic; stool softener; milk of magnesia, castor oil, Epsom salts; nauseant, emetic; douche, enema

18 **emetic,** vomitive *or* vomit <old>, nauseant

19 **enema,** clyster, clysma, lavage, lavement <old>

20 **prophylactic,** prophylaxis, **preventive,** preventative, protective

21 **antiseptic, disinfectant,** fumigant, fumigator, **germicide,** bactericide, microbicide; alcohol, carbolic acid, hydrogen peroxide, merbromin *or* Mercurochrome <trademark>, tincture of iodine

22 **dentifrice, toothpaste,** tooth powder; mouthwash, gargle, fluoride, dental floss

23 **contraceptive,** birth control device, prophylactic, contraception; condom; **rubber** *and* skin *and* bag <nf>; oral contraceptive, **birth control pill, the pill** <nf>, Brompton *or* Brompton's mixture *or* cocktail, morning-after pill, abortion pill, RU-486; diaphragm, pessary; spermicide, spermicidal jelly, contraceptive foam; intrauterine device *or* IUD, Dalkon shield <trademark>, Lippes loop; abortion issue, anti-choice, pro-choice, pro-life, right-to-life

24 **vermifuge,** vermicide, worm medicine, anthelminthic

25 **antacid,** gastric antacid, alkalizer, Tums <trademark>

26 **antidote,** countermeasure, counterpoison, alexipharmic, antitoxin, counterirritant, theriaca *or* theriac

27 **antitoxin,** antitoxic serum; **antivenin; serum,** antiserum; interferon; **antibody,** antigen-antibody product, anaphylactic antibody, incomplete antibody, inhibiting antibody, sensitizing antibody;

gamma globulin, serum gamma globulin, immune globulin, antitoxic globulin; lysin, precipitin, agglutinin, anaphylactin, bactericidin; antiantibody; antigen, Rh antigen, Rh factor; allergen; **immunosuppressive drug**

28 **vaccination, inoculation; vaccine**

29 **antibiotic,** ampicillin, bacitracin, erythromycin, gramicidin, neomycin, nystatin, penicillin, polymyxin, streptomycin, tetracycline *or* Terramycin <trademark>; **miracle drug, wonder drug,** magic bullets; bacteriostat; **sulfa drug,** sulfa, sulfanilamide, sulfonamide, sulfathiazole

30 diaphoretic, sudorific

31 vesicant, vesicatory, epispastic

32 miscellaneous drugs, anabolic steroid *or* muscle pill, antihistamine, antispasmodic, beta blocker, counterirritant, decongestant, expectorant, fertility drug *or* pill, hormone, vasoconstrictor, vasodilator, AZT, hormone replacement therapy

33 **dressing, application,** epithem <old>; plaster, court plaster, mustard plaster, sinapism; **poultice,** cataplasm; formentation; **compress,** pledget; stupe; tent; tampon; **bandage, bandaging,** band <old>, binder, cravat, triangular bandage, roller *or* roller bandage, four-tailed bandage; bandage compress, adhesive compress, Band-Aid <trademark>; butterfly dressing; elastic bandage, Ace elastic bandage *and* Ace bandage <trademark>; rubber bandage; plastic bandage *or* strip; **tourniquet;** sling; splint, brace; cast, plaster cast; tape, **adhesive tape;** lint, cotton, gauze, sponge; patch, nicotine patch

34 **pharmacology, pharmacy, pharmaceutics;** posology; materia medica

35 **pharmacist,** pharmaceutist, pharmacopolist, **druggist, chemist** <Brit>, **apothecary,** dispenser, gallipot; pharmacologist, pharmaceutical chemist, posologist

36 **drugstore, pharmacy,** chemist *and* chemist's shop <Brit>, apothecary's shop, dispensary, dispensatory

37 **pharmacopoeia,** pharmacopedia, dispensatory

VERBS 38 remedy, help, relieve, cure 396.15; medicate; prescribe; treat

ADJS 39 **remedial, curative, therapeutic, healing, corrective,** disease-fighting, alterative, restorative, curing, analeptic, sanative, sanatory; salubrious, salutiferous; all-healing, panacean; adjuvant; **medicinal,** medicative, theriac, theriacal, iatric; anticancer; first-aid

40 **palliative, lenitive, alleviative, assuasive,** soothing, balmy, balsamic, demulcent, emollient, pain-relieving, analgesic, anodyne

41 **antidotal,** alexipharmic, counteractant; **antitoxic; antibiotic,** synthetic antibiotic, semisynthetic antibiotic, bacteriostatic, antimicrobial; antiluetic, antisyphilitic; antiscorbutic; antiperiodic; antipyretic, febrifugal; vermifugal, anthelmintic; **antacid**

42 **prophylactic, preventive,** protective

43 **antiseptic, disinfectant, germicidal,** bactericidal

44 **tonic, stimulating, bracing, invigorating,** stimulative, reviving, refreshing, restorative, analeptic, strengthening, roborant, corroborant

45 **sedative, calmative,** calmant, depressant, **soothing, tranquilizing, quietening; narcotic,** opiatic; **analgesic,** anodyne, paregoric <old>; anti-inflammatory; muscle relaxant; hypnotic, soporific, somniferous, somnifacient, sleep-inducing

46 **psychochemical,** psychoactive; ataractic; antidepressant, mood drug; hallucinogenic, **psychedelic,** mind-expanding, psychotomimetic

47 **anesthetic,** deadening, numbing

48 **cathartic,** laxative, purgative, aperient; carminative; diuretic

49 **emetic,** vomitive, vomitory <old>

87 SUBSTANCE ABUSE

NOUNS 1 **substance abuse, drug abuse,** narcotics abuse, drug use, glue-sniffing, solvent abuse; **addiction, addictedness, drug addiction,** narcotic addiction, opium addiction *or* habit, opiumism, morphine addiction *or* habit, morphinism, heroin addiction *or* habit, cocaine addiction, cocainism, coke habit <nf>, crack habit, barbiturate addiction, amphetamine addiction; **habit,** drug habit, jones <nf>, drug habituation, drug dependence, physical addiction *or* dependence, psychological addiction *or* dependence, jones *and* monkey on one's back *and* Mighty Joe Young <nf>; **drug experience, drug intoxication,** high *and* buzz *and* rush <nf>; frightening drug experience, bad trip *and* bum trip *and* bummer *and* drag <nf>; **alcoholism** 88.3, alcohol abuse, drinking habit, acute alcoholism, chronic alcoholism, dipsomania, hitting the bottle <nf>, Dutch courage, hard drinking; **smoking,** smoking habit, one- *or* two- *or* three-pack-a-day habit, nicotine addiction 89.10, chain smoking; **tolerance,** acquired tolerance; **withdrawal, withdrawal sickness,** withdrawal syndrome, withdrawal symptoms, bogue *and* coming down *and* crash <nf>, abrupt withdrawal *and* cold turkey <nf>; **detoxification** *or* detox <nf>, drying out, taking the cure; Alcoholics Anonymous *or* AA

2 <drug use> smoking, sniffing, injecting, snorting, freebasing, hitting up, shooting up, skin-popping, mainlining, pill-popping, banging, blowing, cocktailing; buzz, trip, acid trip, bad trip; drug pushing, drug trafficking, holding <nf>; Narcotics Anonymous

3 **drug, narcotic,** dope <nf>, dangerous drug, controlled substance, abused substance, illegal drug, addictive drug, **hard drug;** soft drug, gateway drug; **opiate; sedative, depressant,** sedative hypnotic, **antipsychotic tranquilizer,** trank <nf>; **hallucinogen,** hallucinogenic drug, psychedelic, psychedelic drug, psychoactive drug, psychoactive chemical *or* psychochemical, psychotropic drug, psychotomimetic drug, mind-altering drug, mind-expanding drug, mind-blowing drug; designer drug; street drug; recreational drug; **stimulant; antidepressant,** Prozac, Valium; **inhalant,** volatile inhalant

4 <nf terms for amphetamines> bennies, benz, black mollies, brain ticklers, crank, crystal, dexies, diet pills, dolls, ecstasy, footballs, greenie, hearts, ice, jelly beans, lid poppers, meth, pep pills, purple hearts, speed, uppers, ups, white crosses

5 <nf terms for amyl nitrate> amies, blue angels, blue devils, blue dolls, blue heavens, poppers, snappers; **barbiturates,** barbs, black beauties, candy, dolls, downers, downs, goofballs, gorilla pills, nebbies, nimbies, phennies, phenos, pink ladies, purple hearts, yellow jackets

6 <nf terms for chloral hydrate> joy juice, knockout drops, mickey, Mickey Finn, peter

7 <nf terms for cocaine> basuco, bernice, big C, blow, C, charlie, coke, crack, crack cocaine, jumps, dust, flake, girl, gold dust, her, jay, joy powder, lady, lady snow, nose candy, Peruvian marching powder, rock, snow, star dust, toot, white, white girl, white lady, white stuff

8 <nf terms for hashish> black hash, black Russian, hash

9 <nf terms for heroin> big H, boy, brown, caballo, crap, doojee, flea powder, garbage, H, hard stuff, henry, him, his, horse, hombre, jones, junk, mojo, P-funk, scag, schmeck, smack, white stuff

10 <nf terms for LSD> acid, big D, blotter, blue acid, blue cheer, blue heaven, California sunshine, cap, cubes, D, deeda, dots, electric Kool-Aid, haze, L, mellow yellows, orange cubes, pearly gates, pink owsley, strawberry fields, sugar, sunshine, tabs, yellow, yellow sunshine, orange sunshine

11 <nf terms for marijuana> Acapulco gold, aunt mary, bomb, boo, bush, doobie, gage, ganja, grass, grefa, hay, hemp, herb, Indian hay, J, jane, kif, mary, maryjane, mary warner, meserole, mighty mezz, moota, muggles, pod, pot, smoke, snop, tea, Texas tea, weed, yerba

12 <nf terms for marijuana cigarette> joint, joy stick, kick stick, reefer, roach, stick, twist

13 <nf terms for mescaline> beans, big chief, buttons, cactus, mesc

14 <nf terms for morphine> big M, emm, hocus, M, miss emma, miss morph, morph, moocah, white stuff

15 <nf terms for pentobarbital> nebbies, nemmies, nimby, yellow dolls, yellows

16 <nf terms for opium> black pills, brown stuff, hop, O, tar

17 <nf terms for peyote> bad seed, big chief, buttons, cactus, P, topi

18 <nf terms for phencyclidine> angel dust, animal trank, DOA, dust, elephant, hog, PCP, peace, rocket fuel, supergrass, superweed

19 <nf terms for psilocybin> magic mushroom, mushroom, shroom, STP

20 **dose,** hit *and* fix *and* toke *and* rock <nf>; **shot, injection,** bang *or* bhang <nf>; **portion, packet,** spliff *and* snort *and* blockbuster *and* toke and blast <nf>, shoot-up *and* hype <nf>, bag *and* deck <nf>, dime bag; drug house, shooting gallery *and* needle park <nf>, crack house, opium den, balloon room *and* pot party *and* dope den <nf>

21 **addict, drug addict, narcotics addict, user, drug user,** drug abuser, junkie *and* head *and* druggy *and* doper *and* toker *and* fiend *and* freak *and* space cadet <nf>; cocaine user, cokie *and* coke head *and* crackhead *and* sniffer *and* snow drifter *and* flaky <nf>; opium user, opium addict, hophead *and* hopdog *and* tar distiller <nf>; heroin user *or* addict, smackhead *and* smack-sack *and* schmecker <nf>; methedrine user *or* methhead <nf>; amphetamine user, pillhead *and* pill popper *and* speed freak <nf>; LSD user, acidhead *and* acid freak *and* tripper *and* cubehead <nf>; marijuana smoker *and* pothead <nf>; **drug seller** *or* **dealer,** pusher, contact, connection; **alcoholic,** alcohol abuser 88; **smoker,** heavy smoker, chain smoker, nicotine addict

VERBS **22** **use, be on,** get on; use occasionally *or* irregularly, have a cotton habit *and* chip *and* chippy *and* joy pop <nf>; **get a rush** *or* flush, go over the hump <nf>; **sniff,** snort, blow, toot, one and one <nf>; **smoke marijuana,** take on a number *and* blow a stick *and* toke *and* blast *and* weed out <nf>; **smoke opium,** blow a fill; freebase; **inject,** mainline, shoot *and* shoot up *and* jab *and* get down *and* get off <nf>, pop *and* skin pop <nf>, **take pills,** pop pills <nf>; **withdraw,** crash *and* come down <nf>, kick *or* go cold turkey *and* go a la canona *and* hang tough *and* water out <nf>, detoxify, disintoxicate, detoxicate, dry out, kick *and* kick the habit <nf>; **trip,** blow one's mind *and* wig out <nf>; **sell drugs,** deal *and* push <nf>; **buy drugs,** score *and* make *and* connect <nf>; **have drugs,** be heeled *and* carry *and* hold *and* sizzle <nf>; **drink** *or* **booze** 88.24–25; **smoke, smoke tobacco,** puff,

puff away, drag, chain-smoke, smoke like a chimney

ADJS **23** **intoxicated,** under the influence, nodding, narcotized, poppied

24 <nf terms> **high,** bent, blasted, blind, bombed out, bonged out, buzzed, coked, coked out, flying, fried, geared, geared up, geezed, gonged, gorked, hopped-up, in a zone, junked, luded out, maxed, noddy, ripped, smashed, snowed, spaced, space out, spacey, stoned, strung out, switched on, tanked, totaled, tranqued, tripping, trippy, wired, zoned, zoned out, zonked, zonked out

25 **addicted,** hooked *and* zunked *and* on the needle <nf>; dependency-prone; **supplied with drugs,** holding *and* heeled *and* carrying *and* anywhere <nf>; using, on, behind acid <nf>

88 INTOXICATION, ALCOHOLIC DRINK

NOUNS **1** **intoxication, inebriation, inebriety,** insobriety, besottedness, sottedness, **drunkenness, tipsiness,** befuddlement, fuddle, fuddlement, fuddledness, tipsification *and* tiddliness <nf>; a high, soaking <nf>; Dutch courage, pot-valiance *or* pot-valiancy, pot-valor; hangover, katzenjammer, morning after <nf>

2 **bibulousness,** bibacity, bibaciousness, bibulosity, sottishness; serious drinking; crapulence, crapulousness; **intemperance** 669; bacchanalianism; Bacchus, Dionysus, fondness for the bottle

3 **alcoholism, dipsomania,** oenomania, alcoholic psychosis *or* addiction, pathological drunkenness, problem drinking, heavy drinking, habitual drunkenness, ebriosity; delirium tremens 925.9,10; grog blossom *and* bottle nose <nf>; gin drinker's liver, cirrhosis of the liver

4 **drinking, imbibing; social drinking; tippling,** guzzling, gargling, bibing; winebibbing, winebibbery; toping; hard drinking, serious drinking <nf>; **boozing** *and* swilling <nf>, **hitting the booze** *or* **bottle** *or* **sauce** <nf>; alcoholism, Alcoholics Anonymous

5 **spree, drinking bout,** bout, **celebration,** potation, compotation, symposium, wassail, **carouse, carousal,** drunken carousal *or* revelry, revel; bacchanal, bacchanalia, bacchanalian; **debauch, orgy**

6 <nf terms> **binge, drunk,** bust, tear, **bender, toot, bat,** pub-crawl <Brit>, jag, booze-up <chiefly Brit>, brannigan, guzzle, randan, rip

7 **drink,** dram, potation, potion, libation, **nip,** draft, drop, spot, finger or two, sip, sup, suck, drench, guzzle, gargle, jigger; peg, swig, swill, pull; **snort,** jolt, **shot,** snifter, wet; quickie; round, round of drinks

8 **bracer, refresher,** reviver, pickup *and* **pick-me-up** <nf>, tonic, hair of the dog *or* hair of the dog that bit one <nf>

9 **drink, cocktail, highball,** long drink, mixed drink; liquor, spirits; **punch; eye-opener** <nf>, **nightcap** <nf>, sundowner <Brit nf>; **chaser** <nf>, *pousse-café* <Fr>, *apéritif* <Fr>; parting cup, stirrup cup, one for the road; hair of the dog; Mickey Finn *or* Mickey *and* knockout drops <nf>; mixer, chaser

10 **toast, pledge,** health

11 **drinker,** imbiber, **social drinker,** tippler, bibber; winebibber, oenophilist; **drunkard, drunk, inebriate, sot,** toper, guzzler, swiller, soaker, lovepot, tosspot, barfly, thirsty soul, **serious drinker,** devotee of Bacchus; swigger; hard drinker, heavy drinker, **alcoholic, dipsomaniac, problem drinker,** chronic alcoholic, chronic drunk, pathological drinker; carouser, reveler, wassailer; bacchanal, bacchanalian; pot companion

12 <nf terms> **drunk, lush,** lusher, **soak,** sponge, hooch hound, **boozer, boozehound,** booze fighter, booze freak, dipso, juicehead, loadie, ginhound, elbow bender *or* crooker, shikker, bottle sucker, swillbelly, swillpot, swillbowl; **souse, stew,** bum, rummy, rumhound, stewbum; wino

13 **spirits, liquor,** intoxicating liquor, adult beverage, **hard liquor,** hard stuff <nf>, **whiskey,** firewater, spiritus frumenti, usquebaugh <Scot>, schnapps, ardent spirits, strong waters, **intoxicant,** toxicant, inebriant, **potable,** potation, **beverage, drink, strong drink,** strong liquor, alcoholic drink *or* beverage, **alcohol,** aqua vitae, water of life, brew, **grog,** social lubricant, nectar of the gods; **booze** <nf>; **rum,** the Demon Rum, John Barleycorn; the bottle, the cup, the cup that cheers, "the ruddy cup"—Sir Walter Scott, little brown jug; punch bowl, the flowing bowl

14 <nf terms> **likker, hooch, juice, sauce,** tiger milk, pig *or* tiger sweat, sheepdip, moonshine, white lightning; **medicine,** snake medicine, corpse reviver; **rotgut, poison,** rat poison, formaldehyde, embalming fluid, shellac, **panther piss**

15 **liqueur, cordial;** brandy, flavored brandy

16 **beer,** brew *and* brewskie *and* suds <nf>, swipes <Brit nf>, "barmy beer"—Dryden; small beer; nonalcoholic beer, alcohol-free beer; draft beer, home-brew, microbrew

17 **wine,** *vin* <Fr>, *vino* <Sp & Ital>; vintage wine, nonvintage wine; the grape; red wine, white wine, rosé wine, pink wine, blush wine; dry *or* sweet wine, heavy *or* light wine, full *or* thin wine, rough *or* smooth wine, still wine, sparkling wine; extra sec *or* demi-sec *or* sec *or* brut champagne, bubbly; new wine, must; imported wine, domestic wine; fortified wine; wine of the country, *vin du* *campagne* <Fr>; jug wine, plonk <Brit>; Beaujolais wine

18 **bootleg liquor, moonshine** <nf>; hooch *and* shine *and* mountain dew <nf>, white lightning *or* mule <nf>; bathtub gin; home brew

19 **liquor dealer,** liquor store owner; **vintner,** wine merchant; winegrower, winemaker, wine expert, oenologist; **bartender,** mixologist, barkeeper, barkeep, barman <Brit>, tapster, publican <Brit>; barmaid, tapstress; **brewer,** brewmaster; **distiller; bootlegger, moonshiner** <nf>

20 **bar,** barroom, *bistro* <Fr>, cocktail lounge; taproom; **tavern, pub,** pothouse, alehouse, rumshop, grogshop, dramshop, groggery, gin mill <nf>, **saloon,** drinking saloon, saloon bar <Brit>; lounge bar, piano bar, sports bar, singles bar, gay bar; waterhole *or* watering hole <nf>; wine bar; public house <Brit>; public *or* local <Brit nf>; beer parlor, beer garden, rathskeller; **nightclub, cabaret;** café, wine shop; barrel house *and* honky-tonk *and* dive <nf>; **speakeasy** *and* blind tiger *and* blind pig *and* after-hours joint <nf>

21 **distillery, still,** distiller; **brewery,** brewhouse; **winery,** wine press; bottling works

VERBS 22 **intoxicate, inebriate, addle, befuddle,** bemuse, besot, go to one's head, make one see double, make one tiddly

23 <nf terms> **plaster,** pickle, swack, crock, stew, souse, stone, pollute, tipsify, booze up, boozify, fuddle, overtake

24 **tipple, drink,** dram <Brit>, nip; grog, **guzzle,** gargle; **imbibe,** have a drink *or* nip *or* dram *or* guzzle *or* gargle, soak, bib, quaff, sip, sup, lap, lap up, take a drop, slake one's thirst, cheer *or* refresh the inner man, drown one's troubles *or* sorrows, commune with the spirits; **down,** toss off *or* down, toss one's drink, knock back, throw one back, drink off *or* up, drain the cup, drink bottoms-up, drink deep; **drink hard,** drink like a fish, drink seriously, **tope;** take to drink *or* drinking, drink one's fill, "follow strong drink"—Bible

25 <nf terms> **booze,** swig, swill, moisten *or* wet one's whistle; **liquor, liquor up,** lush, souse, tank up, **hit the booze** *or* **bottle** *or* **sauce,** exercise *or* bend *or* crook *or* raise the elbow, dip the beak, splice the main brace; chug-a-lug, chug

26 **get drunk,** be stricken drunk, get high, put on a high, take a drop too much; **get plastered** *or* **pickled,** etc <nf>, tie one on *and* get a bun on <nf>

27 **be drunk,** be intoxicated, have a drop too much, have more than one can hold, have a jag on <nf>, see double, be feeling no pain; **stagger, reel; pass out** <nf>

28 **go on a spree; go on a binge** *or* **drunk** *or* **toot** *or* **bat** *or* **bender** <nf>, **carouse, spree, revel,** wassail, debauch, "eat, drink, and be merry"—Bible, paint the town red <nf>, pub-crawl <Brit nf>

29 **drink to, toast, pledge,** drink a toast to, drink *or* pledge the health of, give you

30 **distill; brew;** bootleg, moonshine <nf>, moonlight <nf>

ADJS 31 **intoxicated, inebriated,** inebriate, inebrious, **drunk, drunken,** *shikker* <Yiddish>, **tipsy,** in liquor, **in one's cups, under the influence,** the worse for liquor, having had one too many; nappy, beery; **tiddly, giddy, dizzy,** muddled, addled, flustered, bemused, reeling, seeing double; **mellow, merry,** jolly, happy, gay, glorious; **full; besotted,** sotted, sodden, drenched, far-gone; drunk as a lord, drunk as a fiddler *or* piper, drunk as a skunk, drunk as an owl; staggering drunk, drunk and disorderly; crapulent, crapulous; **maudlin**

32 **dead-drunk,** blind drunk, overcome, out *and* out cold *and* passed out <nf>, helpless, under the table

33 <nf terms> **fuddled,** muzzy, **boozy,** overtaken; **swacked, plastered,** shnockered, stewed, **pickled,** pissed, **soused,** soaked, boiled, fried, canned, tanked, potted, corned, bombed, ripped, smashed; bent, **crocked,** crocko, shellacked, sloshed, sozzled, zonked, tight, lushy, squiffy, afflicted, jug-bitten, oiled, lubricated, feeling no pain, polluted, raddled, organized, **high,** elevated, high as a kite, lit, **lit up,** lit to the gills, illuminated, **loaded, stinko,** tanked, tanked-up, stinking drunk, pie-eyed, pissy-eyed, shitfaced, cockeyed, cockeyed drunk, roaring *or* rip-roaring drunk, skunk-drunk; half-seas over, three sheets to the wind, well-oiled, **blotto, stiff,** blind, paralyzed, **stoned**

34 **full of Dutch courage, pot-valiant,** pot-valorous

35 **bibulous,** bibacious, drunken, sottish, liquorish, given *or* addicted to drink, **liquor-loving,** liquor-drinking, drinking, hard-drinking, swilling <nf>, toping, tippling, winebibbing

36 **intoxicating,** intoxicative, **inebriating,** inebriative, inebriant, heady

37 **alcoholic, spirituous, ardent, strong, hard,** with a kick <nf>; winy, vinous

INTERJS 38 <toasts> skoal!, *skål!* <Norw>, prosit! *or* prost!, *à votre santé!* <Fr>, *¡salud!* <Sp>, *l'chaim!* <Heb>, *sláinte!* <Ir>, *salute!* <Ital>, *na zdorovye!* <Russ>, *nazdrowie!* <Pol>, to your health!, long life!, to life!, cheerio!, cheers!, to us!, down the hatch!, bottoms up!, here's how!, here's to you!, here's looking at you!, here's mud in your eye!, here's good luck!, here's to absent friends!, confusion to our enemies!

89 TOBACCO

NOUNS 1 **tobacco,** *tabac* <Fr>, nicotine, nicotia *or* nicotian <old>; **the weed** <nf>, fragrant weed, Indian weed *or* drug, filthy weed, sot-weed <old>, "pernicious weed"—Cowper, "thou weed, who art so lovely fair and smell'st so sweet"—Shakespeare; carcinogenic substance; smoke, tobacco smoke, cigarette smoke, cigar smoke, pipe smoke; secondary smoke, secondhand smoke

2 <tobaccos> flue-cured *or* bright, fire-cured, air-cured; Broadleaf, Burley, Cuban, Havana, Havana seed, Latakia, Turkish, Russian, Maryland, Virginia; plug tobacco, bird's-eye, canaster, leaf, lugs, seconds, shag; pipe tobacco

3 **smoking tobacco,** smokings <nf>, smoke *and* smokes <nf>

4 **cigar,** seegar <nf>; rope *and* stinker <nf>; **cheroot, stogie,** corona, belvedere, Havana, panatella, colorado, trichinopoly; cigarillo; box of cigars, cigar box, cigar case, humidor; cigar cutter

5 **cigarette;** butt *and* cig *and* **fag** *and* coffin nail *and* cancer stick <nf>; filter tip, high tar, low tar, methol; cigarette butt, **butt,** stub; snipe <nf>; pack *or* deck of cigarettes, box *or* carton of cigarettes, cigarette case, cigarette paper

6 **pipe,** tobacco pipe; corncob, corncob pipe, Missouri meerschaum; briar pipe, briar; clay pipe, clay, churchwarden <Brit>; meerschaum; water pipe, hookah, nargileh, kalian, hubble-bubble; peace pipe, calumet; pipe rack, pipe cleaner, tobacco pouch

7 **chewing tobacco,** eating tobacco <nf>, oral tobacco; navy *or* navy plug, cavendish, twist, pigtail, plug, cut plug; **quid,** cud, fid <Brit nf>, **chew,** chaw <nf>; tobacco juice

8 **snuff,** snoose <nf>; rappee; pinch of snuff; snuff bottle, snuffbox, snuff mill <Scot>

9 **nicotine,** nicotia <old>

10 **smoking,** smoking habit, habitual smoking; chain-smoking; smoke, puff, drag <nf>; **chewing;** tobacco *or* nicotine addiction, tobaccoism, tabacosis, tabacism, tabagism, nicotinism; passive smoking

11 **tobacco user, smoker,** cigarette *or* pipe *or* cigar smoker, chewer, snuffer, snuff dipper

12 **tobacconist;** snuffman; tobacco store *or* shop, cigar store

13 **smoking room,** smoking car, **smoker;** smoke-free area, non-smoking section

VERBS 14 <use tobacco> **smoke;** inhale, puff, draw, drag <nf>, pull; smoke like a furnace *or* chimney; chain-smoke; **chew,** chaw <nf>; roll; **take snuff,** dip *or* inhale snuff

ADJS 15 **tobacco,** tobaccoy *or* tobaccoey, tobaccolike; **nicotinic;** smoking, chewing; snuffy; smoke-free, non-smoking

90 HEALTH CARE

NOUNS 1 **medicine, medical practice,** medical profession, medical care, **health care,** health-care industry, health-care delivery, primary care; **medical specialty** *or* **branch** <see list>; **treatment,** therapy 91; health insurance 83.5, Medicare, Medicaid; **care,** nursing care, home care, outpatient care, life care

2 **surgery;** operation; cosmetic surgery, plastic surgery, facelift, liposuction, nose job <nf>, tuck <nf>

3 **dentistry** <see list>, dental medicine, dental care

4 **doctor,** doc <nf>, **physician,** Doctor of Medicine *or* **MD** *or* medical doctor, **medical practitioner, medical man, medico** <nf>, leech <old>, croaker *and* sawbones <nf>; **general practitioner** *or* **GP;** family doctor; country doctor; **intern; resident,** house physician, resident physician; fellow; physician in ordinary; medical attendant, attending physician; **specialist,** board-certified physician *or* specialist; **medical examiner,** coroner; oculist, **optometrist,** radiologist, anesthesiologist; health maintenance organization *or* HMO

5 **surgeon,** sawbones <nf>; operator, operative surgeon

6 **dentist,** tooth doctor, toothdrawer; **dental surgeon,** oral surgeon, operative dentist; Doctor of Dental Surgery *or* DDS; Doctor of Dental Science *or* DDSc; Doctor of Dental Medicine *or* DMD; orthodondist, periodontist, exodontist, endodontist, prosthodontist

7 **veterinary, veterinarian, vet** <nf>, veterinary surgeon, horse doctor, animal doctor

8 **health-care professional, health-care provider, physician, nurse, midwife, therapist,** therapeutist, practitioner; physical therapist, physiotherapist, speech therapist, occupational therapist

9 **healer, nonmedical therapist;** theotherapist; Christian *or* spiritual *or* divine healer; **Christian Science practitioner; faith healer,** witch doctor <nf>, alternative practitioner, **osteopath, chiropractor,** podiatrist, acupuncturist, etc

10 **nurse,** sister *or* nursing sister <Brit>; **probationer,** probationist, probe <nf>; caregiver, hospice caregiver; practical nurse; registered nurse *or* RN, nurse practitioner

11 <hospital staff> paramedic, emergency medical technician *or* EMT; medevac; physician's assistant *or* PA; orderly, attendant, nurse's aide; audiologist; anesthetist; dietician, nutritionist; radiographer, X-ray technician; laboratory technician;

radiotherapist; dietitian; hospital administrator; ambulance driver; custodian

12 **Hippocrates,** Galen; Aesculapius, Asclepius

13 **practice of medicine,** medical practice; general practice, restricted *or* limited practice; group practice; professional association *or* PA; family practice, private practice, health maintenance organization *or* HMO; orthodox medicine, conventional medicine, general medicine, preventive medicine, internal medicine, occupational medicine, public-health medicine, community medicine; unorthodox medicine, alternative medicine, acupuncture, faith healing, homeopathy, naturopathy, etc

VERBS 14 **practice medicine,** doctor <nf>; examine, diagnose, screen; treat; prescribe, medicate, administer, inject; make a house call, be on call; intern; practice surgery, operate; practice dentistry

ADJS 15 **medical,** iatric, health, Hippocratic; surgical; chiropodic, pediatric, orthopedic, obstetric, obstetrical, neurological; dental; orthodontic, periodontic, prosthodontic, exodontic; osteopathic, chiropractic, naturopathic, hydropathic, allopathic, homeopathic; gynecological, internal, pathological, forensic; clinical; diagnostic; therapeutic; veterinary

16 **branches of medicine**

adolescence medicine
anatomy
anesthesiology
audiology
aviation medicine
bacteriology
cardiography
cardiology
chemotherapy
chiropody
critical care medicine
dental surgery
dentistry
dermatology
diagnostics
dolorology
embryology
endocrinology
epidemiology
etiology
family practice
fetology
fluoroscopy
gastroenterology
general medicine
geriatrics *or* gerontology
gynecology
hematology
hygiene
immunochemistry
immunology
internal medicine
materia medica
mental hygiene
midwifery
mycology
neonatology
nephrology
neurology
neurosurgery
nosology
nutrition
obstetrics
oncology
ophthalmology
optometry
orthopedics
orthotics
osteopathy
otolaryngology
otology
parasitology
pathology
pediatrics
pharmacology
physical medicine
physiopathology
physiotherapy
plastic surgery
podiatry
psychiatry
psychology
psychoneuroimmunology
pulmonology
radiology
rheumatology
serology
space medicine
surgery
surgical anatomy
symptomatology *or* semeiology
teratology
therapeutics
tocology
toxicology
virology

17 **kinds and specialties of dentistry**

endodontics *or* endodontia
exodontics *or* exodontia
family dentistry
general dentistry
gerodontics
implantology
operative dentistry
oral surgery *or* surgical dentistry
orthodontics *or* orthodontia
pedodontics *or* pedodontia
periodontics *or* periodontia
prosthetic dentistry *or* prosthodontics *or* prosthodontia
radiodontics *or* radiodontia

18 **types of surgery**

apicectomy
appendectomy *or* appendicectomy
arterioplasty
autograft *or* autoplasty
cesarean section
cholecystectomy
cholelithotomy
colostomy
cordotomy
craniotomy
cryosurgery
cystectomy
D & C *or* dilatation and curettage
debridement
episiotomy
fenestration
gastrectomy
goniopuncture
hepatectomy
homograft *or* allograft *or* homoplasty
hysterectomy
ileostomy
iridectomy
labioplasty
laparotomy
laryngectomy
lobotomy *or* leukotomy
lithonephrotomy *or* nephrolithotomy
mastectomy
necrotomy
nephrectomy
neurotomy
oophorectomy *or* ovariectomy
orchidectomy *or* orchiectomy *or* testectomy
ostectomy
otoplasty
phlebotomy *or* venesection
pneumonectomy
rhinoplasty
rhizotomy
salpingectomy
thoracotomy
tracheostomy *or* tracheotomy
vasectomy

91 THERAPY, MEDICAL TREATMENT

NOUNS 1 **therapy, therapeutics,** therapeusis, **treatment, medical care** *or* **treatment,** medication; noninvasive *or* nonsurgical therapy *or* treatment; disease-fighting, healing; healing arts; physical therapy, psychotherapy 92; medicines 86

2 **nonmedical therapy;** theotherapy; **healing;** Christian *or* spiritual *or* divine healing; **faith healing**

3 **hydrotherapy,** hydrotherapeutics; hydropathy, water cure; cold-water cure; contrast bath, whirlpool bath

4 **heat therapy,** thermotherapy; heliotherapy, solar therapy; fangotherapy; hot bath, sweat bath, sunbath

5 **diathermy,** medical diathermy; electrotherapy, electrotherapeutics; **radiothermy,** high-frequency treatment; shortwave diathermy, ultrashortwave diathermy, microwave diathermy; ultrasonic diathermy; surgical diathermy, radiosurgery, electrosurgery, electrosection, electrocautery, electrocoagulation

6 **radiotherapy,** radiation therapy, radiotherapeutics; adjuvant therapy

7 **radiology,** radiography, radioscopy, fluoroscopy, etc 1037.8; diagnostic radiology, scanning, magnetic resonance imaging *or* MRI

8 <radiotherapeutic substances> radium; cobalt; radioisotope, tracer, labeled *or* tagged element, radioelement; radiocarbon, carbon 14, radiocalcium, radiopotassium, radiosodium, radioiodine; atomic cocktail

9 <diagnostic pictures and graphs> **X ray,** scan, radiograph, radiogram, roentgenogram *or* roentgenograph; photofluorograph; X-ray movie; chest X-ray; pyelogram; orthodiagram; encephalograph, encephalogram; electroencephalograph, electroencephalogram *or* EEG; electrocorticogram; electrocardiogram *or* ECG *or* EKG; electromyogram; computer-assisted tomography *or* CAT, computerized axial tomography *or* computed tomography *or* computer-assisted tomography *or* computerized tomography *or* CAT; CAT scan; magnetic resonance imaging *or* MRI; MRI scan; positron emission tomography *or* PET; PET scan; ultrasound, ultrasonography; sonogram

10 case history, medical history, anamnesis; associative anamnesis; catamnesis, follow-up

11 **diagnostics,** prognostics; symptomatology, semeiology, semeiotics

12 **diagnosis; examination, physical examination;** study, test, workup <nf>; medical test, laboratory test, screening, diagnostic procedure; blood test, blood work <nf>, blood count, urinalysis, uroscopy; biopsy; Pap test *or* smear; stress test; electrocardiography, electroencephalography, electromyography; mammography; pregnancy test, amniocentesis *or* amnio, ultrasound

13 **prognosis,** prognostication; prognostic, **symptom, sign**

14 **treatment,** medical treatment *or* attention *or* care; **cure,** curative measures; **medication,** medicamentation; **regimen,** regime, protocol; first aid; hospitalization; physical therapy, acupressure, shiatsu

15 **immunization;** immunization therapy, immunotherapy; vaccine therapy, vaccinotherapy; toxin-antitoxin immunization; serum therapy, serotherapy, serotherapeutics; tuberculin test, scratch test, patch test; **immunology,** immunochemistry; immunity theory, side-chain theory; immunity; immunodeficiency

16 **inoculation, vaccination; injection,** hypodermic, hypodermic injection, shot *and* bing <nf>, hypospray *or* jet injection; booster, booster shot <nf>; antitoxin, vaccine 86.28

17 <methods of injection> cutaneous, percutaneous, subcutaneous, intradermal, intramuscular, intravenous, intramedullary, intracardiac, intrathecal, intraspinal

18 **transfusion,** blood transfusion; serum; blood bank, blood donor center, bloodmobile; blood donor

19 **surgery,** surgical treatment, **operation,** surgical operation, surgical intervention, surgical technique *or* measure, the knife <nf>; **instrument,** device; respirator; unnecessary surgery, *cacoëthes operandi* <L>, tomomania; major surgery, minor surgery, laser surgery, plastic surgery

20 bloodletting, bleeding, venesection, phlebotomy; leeching; cupping

21 **hospital, clinic,** *hôpital* <Fr>, treatment center; general hospital, teaching hospital, university hospital, health center; hospice, infirmary; nursing home, rest home, convalescent home, sanitarium; sick bay *or* berth; trauma center; wellness center

22 **pesthouse,** lazar house, lazaretto *or* lazaret <old>

23 **health resort, spa, watering place,** baths; mineral spring, warm *or* hot spring; pump room, pump house

VERBS 24 **treat, doctor,** minister to, care for, give care to, physic; **diagnose;** nurse; **cure, remedy, heal;** dress the wounds, bandage, poultice, plaster, strap, splint; bathe; massage, rub; operate on; physic, purge, flux <old>; **operate,** perform a procedure; transplant, replant

25 **medicate,** medicine, drug, dope <nf>, dose; salve, oil, anoint, embrocate

26 **irradiate,** radiumize, **X-ray,** roentgenize

27 bleed, let blood, leech, phlebotomize; cup; **transfuse,** give a transfusion; perfuse

28 **immunize, inoculate, vaccinate,** shoot <nf>

29 **undergo treatment,** take the cure, doctor <nf>, take medicine; go under the knife <nf>

92 PSYCHOLOGY, PSYCHOTHERAPY

NOUNS 1 **psychology** <see list>, science of the mind, science of human behavior, mental philosophy;

psychologism, pop psychology *and* psychobabble <nf>; mental states, mental processes

2 psychological school, school *or* system of psychology, psychological theory; Adlerian psychology; behaviorism *or* behavior *or* behavioristic psychology *or* stimulus-response psychology; Freudian psychology *or* Freudianism; Gestalt psychology *or* configurationism; Horneyan psychology; Jungian *or* analytical psychology; Pavlovian psychology; Reichian psychology *or* orgone theory; Skinnerian psychology; Sullivanian psychology

3 **psychiatry,** psychological medicine; neuropsychiatry; social psychiatry; prophylactic psychiatry

4 **psychosomatic medicine,** psychological medicine, medicopsychology; psychosocial medicine

5 **psychotherapy,** psychotherapeutics, mind cure

6 **psychoanalysis, analysis,** the couch <nf>, counseling, behavior therapy, behavior modification; psychoanalytic therapy, psychoanalytic method; **depth psychology,** psychology of depths; group analysis *or* psychology, family therapy; transactional analysis; psychognosis, psychognosy; dream analysis, interpretation of dreams, dream symbolism; depth interview; hypnotherapy; transcendental meditation

7 **psychodiagnostics,** psychodiagnosis, psychological *or* psychiatric evaluation

8 **psychometrics,** psychometry, psychological measurement; **intelligence testing;** mental test, psychological screening; psychography; psychogram, psychograph, psychological profile; psychometer, IQ meter <nf>; lie detector, polygraph, psychogalvanometer, psychogalvanic skin response

9 **psychological test** <see list>, mental test; standardized test; developmental test, achievement test

10 **psychologist; psychotherapist, therapist,** psychotherapeutist; clinical psychologist; licensed psychologist, psychological practitioner; child psychologist; **psychiatrist,** alienist, somatist; neuropsychiatrist; psychopathist, psychopathologist; psychotechnologist, industrial psychologist; hypnotherapist; behavior therapist; psychobiologist, psychochemist, psychophysiologist, psychophysicist; psychographer; psychiatric social worker; **psychoanalyst, analyst; shrink** *and* headshrinker *and* shrinker <nf>; **counselor,** psychological counselor; counseling service

11 **personality tendency,** complexion <old>, humor; somatotype; **introversion,** introvertedness, ingoingness; inner-directedness; **extroversion,** extrovertedness, outgoingness; other-directedness; syntony, ambiversion; schizothymia, schizothymic *or* schizoid personality; cyclothymia, cyclothymic *or* cycloid personality; mesomorphism, mesomorphy; endomorphism, endomorphy; ectomorphism, ectomorphy

12 <personality type> **introvert, extrovert,** syntone, ambivert; schizothyme, schizoid; cyclothymic, cyclothyme, cycloid; choleric, melancholic, sanguine, phlegmatic; endomorph, mesomorph, ectomorph

13 **pathological personality,** psychopathological personality, sick personality

14 **mental disorder, emotional disorder,** neurosis; psychonosema, psychopathyfunctional nervous disorder; reaction; emotional instability; **maladjustment,** social maladjustment; nervous *or* mental breakdown, crack-up <nf>; problems in living; brainstorm; **insanity,** mental illness 926.1; **psychosis** 926.3; **schizophrenia;** paranoia 926.4; **manic-depressive psychosis, depression,** melancholia 926.5; seasonal affective disorder *or* SAD, post-partum depression; melancholia *or* endogenous depression; pre-menstrual syndrome *or* PMS; **neurosis, psychoneurosis,** neuroticism, neurotic *or* psychoneurotic disorder; brain disease, nervous disorder; cognitive disorder, eating disorder, sleep disorder, somatoform disorder, dissociative disorder, mood disorder, anxiety disorder, sexual disorder, impulse-control disorder, conversion disorder; battle fatigue

15 **personality disorder, character disorder,** moral insanity, sociopathy, **psychopathy; psychopathic personality;** sexual pathology, sexual psychopathy 75.18; compulsion, fixation, complex; obsessive-compulsive disorder

16 **neurotic reaction,** overreaction, disproportionate reaction, depression, mania

17 **psychological stress, stress; frustration,** external frustration, internal frustration; conflict, ambivalence, ambivalence of impulse; **trauma,** psychological *or* emotional trauma, traumatism, mental *or* emotional shock, decompensation; rape trauma syndrome; post-traumatic stress disorder

18 **psychosomatic symptom; symptom of emotional disorder,** emotional symptom, psychological symptom; **thought disturbance,** thought disorder *or* disturbances, dissociative disorder, delirium, delusion, disorientation, hallucination; **speech abnormality**

19 **trance,** daze, stupor; catatonic stupor, catalepsy; cataplexy; dream state, reverie, daydreaming 985.2; somnambulism, sleepwalking; hypnotic trance; fugue, fugue state; **amnesia** 990.2; meditation

20 **dissociation,** mental *or* emotional dissociation, disconnection, dissociative disorder; dissociation of personality, personality disorganization *or* disintegration; **schizoid personality;** double *or* dual personality; multiple personality, split personality, alternating personality; schizoidism, schizothymia, **schizophrenia** 926.4; depersonalization; **paranoid personality;** paranoia 926.4

21 **fixation,** libido fixation *or* arrest, **arrested development;** infantile fixation, pregenital fixation, father fixation, Freudian fixation, mother fixation, parent fixation; **regression,** retreat to immaturity

22 **complex,** inferiority complex, superiority complex, parent complex, Oedipus complex, mother complex, Electra complex, father complex, Diana complex, persecution complex; castration complex; compulsion complex

23 **defense mechanism,** defense reaction; ego defense, psychotaxis; biological *or* psychological *or* sociological adjustive reactions; resistance; dissociation; **negativism, alienation; escapism,** escape mechanism, avoidance mechanism; escape, flight, **withdrawal; isolation,** emotional insulation; **fantasy,** fantasizing, escape into fantasy, dreamlike thinking, autistic *or* dereistic thinking, wishful thinking, autism, dereism; wish-fulfillment, wish-fulfillment fantasy; sexual fantasy; **compensation,** overcompensation, decompensation; substitution; **sublimation;** regression, reversion; **projection,** identification, blame-shifting; displacement; **rationalization**

24 **suppression, repression, inhibition,** resistance, restraint, censorship, censor; block, psychological block, blockage, blocking; denial, negation, rejection; reaction formation; rigid control; **suppressed desire**

25 **catharsis,** purgation, abreaction, motor abreaction, psychocatharsis, **emotional release,** relief of tension, outlet; release therapy, acting-out, psychodrama; imaging

26 **conditioning,** classical *or* Pavlovian conditioning; instrumental conditioning; operant conditioning; psychagogy, reeducation, reorientation; conditioned reflex, conditioned stimulus, conditioned response; reinforcement, positive reinforcement, negative reinforcement; simple reflex, unconditioned reflex, **reflex** 903.1; **behavior** 321; suggestion

27 **adjustment,** adjustive reaction; **readjustment, rehabilitation;** psychosynthesis, integration of personality; fulfillment, self-fulfillment; self-actualization, peak experience; integrated personality, syntonic personality

28 **psyche,** psychic apparatus, **personality, self,** personhood; **mind** 919.1,3,4, pneuma, soul; preconscious, foreconscious, coconscious; **subconscious, unconscious,** stream of consciousness, subconscious *or* unconscious mind, submerged mind, subliminal, subliminal self; **libido,** psychic *or* libidinal energy, motive force, vital impulse, ego-libido, object libido; **id,** primitive self, pleasure principle, life instinct, death instinct; **ego,** conscious self; **superego,** ethical self, conscience; ego ideal; ego-id conflict; anima, animus, persona; collective unconscious, racial unconscious; psychological me

29 **engram,** memory trace, traumatic trace *or* memory; unconscious memory; archetype, archetypal pattern *or* image *or* symbol; imago, image, father image, etc; race *or* racial memory; cultural memory; **memory** 989

30 **symbol,** universal symbol, father symbol, mother symbol, phallic symbol, fertility symbol, etc; symbolism, symbolization

31 **surrogate,** substitute; father surrogate, father figure, father image; mother surrogate, mother figure, mother image

32 **gestalt,** pattern, figure, configuration, form, sensory pattern; figure-ground

33 **association, association of ideas,** chain of ideas, concatenation, mental linking; controlled association, free association, association by contiguity, association by similarity; association by sound, clang association; stream of consciousness; transference, identification, positive transference, negative transference; synesthesia 24.5

34 **cathexis,** cathection, desire concentration; charge, energy charge, cathectic energy; anticathexis, countercathexis, counterinvestment; hypercathexis, overcharge

35 psychiatric treatment, psychiatric care; psychosurgery, shock treatment, shock therapy, convulsive therapy, electroconvulsive therapy

VERBS **36** **psychologize, psychoanalyze,** analyze, counsel; abreact; fixate, obsess on <nf>

ADJS **37** **psychological; psychiatric,** neuropsychiatric; psychometric; **psychopathic,** psychopathological; **psychosomatic,** somatopsychic, psychophysical, psychophysiological, psychobiological; psychogenic, psychogenetic, functional; psychodynamic, psychoneurological, psychosexual, psychosocial, psychotechnical; **psychotic**

38 **psychotherapeutic;** psychiatric, psychoanalytic, psychoanalytical; psychodiagnostic; hypnotherapeutic

39 **neurotic, psychoneurotic,** disturbed, disordered; neurasthenic, psychasthenic; hysteric *or* hysterical,

hypochondriac, phobic; deluded; dissociated; depressed; stressed

40 **introverted,** introvert, introversive, **subjective, ingoing,** inner-directed; withdrawn, isolated

41 **extroverted,** extrovert, extroversive, **outgoing,** extrospective; other-directed

42 **subconscious, unconscious;** subliminal, extramarginal; preconscious, foreconscious, coconscious

43 **kinds and branches of psychology**

abnormal psychology
academic psychology
act psychology
analytic *or* introspective psychology
animal psychology
applied psychology
association psychology
behavioral psychology *or* behaviorism
biopsychology
child psychology
clinical psychology
cognitive psychology
comparative psychology
constitutional psychology
criminal psychology
depth psychology
developmental psychology
differential psychology
dynamic *or* functional psychology
ecological psychology
educational psychology
ego psychology
empirical psychology
existential psychology
experimental psychology
faculty psychology
folk *or* ethnic psychology
genetic psychology
Gestalt psychology *or* configurationism
group psychology
haptics
hedonics
holistic psychology
hormic psychology
individual psychology
industrial psychology
introspection psychology
Jungian psychology
mass psychology
medical psychology
morbid psychology
neuropsychology
objective psychology
ontogenetic psychology
parapsychology
phenomenological psychology
phylogenetic psychology
physiologic *or* physiological psychology
polygenetic psychology
popular psychology
psychoacoustics
psychoasthenics
psychobiochemistry
psychobiology
psychochemistry
psychodiagnostics
psychodynamics
psychoendocrinology
psychogenetics
psychogeriatrics
psychographics
psychohistory
psycholinguistics
psychological medicine
psychological warfare
psychomathematics
psychometrics *or* psychometry
psychonomy *or* psychonomics
psychopathology
psychopharmacology
psychophysics
psychophysiology
psychosociology
psychosomatics
psychotechnics *or* psychotechnology
psychotherapy *or* psychotherapeutics
race *or* racial psychology
rational psychology
reactology
reflexology
self psychology
social psychology
structural psychology
transpersonal psychology
voluntaristic psychology

44 **psychological and mental tests**

alpha test
apperception test
aptitude test
association test
Babcock-Levy test
Bernreuter personality inventory
beta test
Binet *or* Binet-Simon test
Brown personality inventory
Cattell's infant intelligence scale
CAVD test
controlled association test
free association test
frustration test
Gesell's development schedule
Goldstein-Sheerer test
inkblot test
intelligence quotient *or* IQ
intelligence test
interest inventory
IQ test
Kent mental test
Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory
Minnesota Preschool Scale
Oseretsky test
personality test
Rogers's process scale
Rorschach test
Rotter incomplete sentences blank
Stanford revision
Stanford scientific aptitude test
Stanford-Binet test
Szondi test
thematic apperception test *or* TAT
Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale
Wechsler-Bellevue intelligence scale
Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children
word association test

93 FEELING

NOUNS 1 **feeling, emotion, affect, sentiment,** affection, affections, sympathies, beliefs; affective faculty, affectivity; emotional charge, cathexis; **feelings, sensitiveness, sensibility,** susceptibility, thin skin; emotional life; the logic of the heart; **sense,** deep *or* profound sense, gut sense *or* sensation <nf>; **sensation** 24; **impression,** undercurrent, perception; hunch, intuition, feeling in one's bones, vibes <nf>, presentiment 934.3; foreboding; **reaction, response,** gut reaction <nf>; **instinct** 365.1; emotional coloring *or* shade *or* nuance, **tone**

2 **passion,** passionateness, strong feeling, powerful emotion; **fervor, fervency,** fervidness, impassionedness, **ardor, ardency,** *empressement* <Fr>, warmth of feeling, **warmth, heat, fire,** verve, furor, **fury,** vehemence; heartiness, gusto, relish, savor; spirit, heart, soul; **liveliness** 330.2; **zeal** 101.2; **excitement** 105; **ecstasy**

3 **heart, soul, spirit,** *esprit* <Fr>, **breast, bosom,** inmost heart *or* soul, heart of hearts, secret *or* inner recesses of the heart, secret places, heart's core, heartstrings, cockles of the heart, bottom of the heart, being, innermost being, core of one's being; viscera, pit of one's stomach, **gut** *or* guts <nf>; bones

4 **sensibility, sensitivity, sensitiveness,** delicacy, fineness of feeling, tenderness, affectivity, susceptibility, impressionability 24.2

5 **sympathy, fellow feeling, sympathetic response,** good feeling, responsiveness, relating, warmth, cordiality, **caring,** concern; response, echo, chord, sympathetic chord, vibrations, vibes <nf>; **empathy,** identification; involvement, sharing; pathos

6 **tenderness,** tender feeling, softness, gentleness, delicacy; **tenderheartedness,** softheartedness, warmheartedness, tender *or* sensitive *or* warm heart, soft place *or* spot in one's heart; warmth, **fondness,** weakness 100.2

7 **bad feeling, hard feelings;** immediate dislike, disaffinity, personality conflict, bad vibes *or* chemistry <nf>, bad blood, **hostility,** scunner, animosity 589.4; resentment, bitterness, ill will, intolerance; **hard-heartedness** 94.3

8 **sentimentality, sentiment, sentimentalism,** oversentimentality, oversentimentalism, bathos; nostalgia, nostomania; romanticism; sweetness and light, hearts-and-flowers; bleeding heart; mawkishness, cloyingness, maudlinness, namby-pamby, namby-pambyness, namby-pambyism; mushiness *or* sloppiness <nf>; **mush** *and* slush *and* slop *and* goo *and* schmaltz <nf>; sob story *and* tearjerker <nf>, soap opera

9 **emotionalism,** emotionality, lump in one's throat; emotionalizing, emotionalization; emotiveness, emotivity; visceralness; nonrationalness, unreasoningness; demonstrativeness, making scenes, excitability; **theatrics, theatricality, histrionics, dramatics,** hamminess *and* chewing up the scenery <nf>; **sensationalism, melodrama,** melodramatics, blood and thunder; yellow journalism; emotional appeal, human interest, love interest; **overemotionalism,** hyperthymia, excess of feeling, emotional instability

VERBS 10 **feel,** entertain *or* harbor *or* cherish *or* nurture a feeling; feel deeply, feel in one's viscera *or* bones, feel in one's gut *or* guts <nf>; experience 831.8; have a sensation, get *or* receive an impression, **sense, perceive**; intuit, have a hunch

11 **respond, react,** be moved, be affected *or* touched, be inspired, echo, catch the flame *or* infection, be in tune; **respond to,** warm up to, take *or* lay to heart, open one's heart to, be turned on to <nf>, nourish in one's bosom, feel in one's breast, cherish at the heart's core, treasure up in the heart; enter into the spirit of, be imbued with the spirit of; care about, feel for, sympathize with, empathize with, identify with, relate to emotionally, dig *and* be turned on by <nf>, be involved, share; color with emotion

12 **have deep feelings, be all heart, have a tender heart,** take to heart, be a person of heart *or* sentiment; have a soft place *or* spot in one's heart; be a prey to one's feelings; love 104.18–20; hate 103.5

13 **emotionalize, emote** <nf>, give free play to the emotions, make a scene; be theatrical, theatricalize, ham it up *and* chew up the scenery <nf>; **sentimentalize,** gush *and* slobber over <nf>

14 **affect, touch, move, stir; melt, soften,** melt the heart, choke one up, give one a lump in the throat; **penetrate,** pierce, go through one, go deep; touch a chord, **touch a sympathetic chord, touch one's heart,** tug at the heart *or* heartstrings, go to one's heart, get under one's skin; come home to; **touch to the quick,** touch on the raw, flick one on the raw, smart, sting

15 **impress, affect, strike, hit,** smite, rock; **make an impression, get to one** <nf>; make a dent in, make an impact upon, sink in <nf>, strike home, come home to, hit the mark <nf>; tell, have a strong effect, traumatize, strike hard, impress forcibly

16 **impress upon,** bring home to, make it felt; stamp, stamp on, etch, engrave, engrave on

ADJS 17 **emotional, affective,** emotive, affectional, **feeling,** sentient; soulful, of soul, of heart, of feeling, of sentiment; visceral, gut <nf>; glandular; emotiometabolic, emotiomotor, emotiomuscular, emotiovascular; demonstrative, overdemonstrative

18 **fervent, fervid, passionate, impassioned,** intense, **ardent; hearty, cordial,** enthusiastic, exuberant, unrestrained, vigorous; keen, breathless, **excited** 105.18,20,22; **lively** 330.17; zealous; **warm, burning, heated, hot, volcanic,** red-hot, fiery, flaming, glowing, ablaze, afire, on fire, boiling over, steaming, steamy; delirious, fevered, feverish, febrile, flushed; intoxicated, drunk; obsessed

19 **emotionalistic,** emotive, overemotional, hysteric, hysterical, sensational, sensationalistic, melodramatic, theatric, theatrical, histrionic, dramatic, overdramatic, hammy <nf>, nonrational, unreasoning; overemotional, hyperthymic

20 **sensitive,** sensible, emotionable, passible <old>, delicate; responsive, sympathetic, receptive; empathetic, caring; susceptible, impressionable; **tender, soft, tenderhearted, softhearted,** warmhearted

21 **sentimental,** sentimentalized, soft, **mawkish, maudlin,** cloying; sticky *and* gooey *and* schmaltzy *and* sappy *and* soppy <nf>, oversentimental, oversentimentalized, bathetic; **mushy** *or* sloppy *or* gushing *or* teary *or* beery <nf>, treacly <Brit nf>; tearjerking <nf>; namby-pamby, romantic; nostalgic, nostomanic

22 **affecting, touching, moving,** emotive, pathetic

23 **affected, moved, touched, impressed;** impressed with *or* by, penetrated with, seized with, imbued

with, devoured by, obsessed, obsessed with *or* by; wrought up by; stricken, wracked, racked, torn, agonized, tortured; worked up, all worked up, **excited** 105.18

24 **deep-felt,** deepgoing, from the heart, heartfelt, homefelt <old>; **deep, profound;** indelible; pervasive, pervading, absorbing; penetrating, penetrant, piercing; **poignant,** keen, sharp, acute

ADVS **25** **feelingly, emotionally,** affectively; affectingly, touchingly, movingly, **with feeling,** poignantly

26 **fervently, fervidly, passionately, impassionedly,** intensely, **ardently,** zealously; keenly, breathlessly, excitedly; warmly, heatedly, glowingly; heartily, cordially; enthusiastically, exuberantly, vigorously; kindly, heart and soul, with all one's heart, from the heart, from the bottom of one's heart

27 **sentimentally,** mawkishly, maudlinly, cloyingly; mushily *and* sloppily *and* gushingly <nf>

94 LACK OF FEELING

NOUNS **1** **unfeeling,** unfeelingness, affectlessness, lack of affect, lack of feeling *or* feeling tone, emotional deadness *or* numbness *or* paralysis, **anesthesia, emotionlessness,** unemotionalism, unexcitability; **dispassion,** dispassionateness, unpassionateness, **objectivity;** passionlessness, **spiritlessness, heartlessness,** soullessness; **coldness, coolness, frigidity,** chill, chilliness, frostiness, iciness; coldheartedness, cold-bloodedness; cold heart, cold blood; cold fish; **unresponsiveness,** unsympatheticness; lack of touch *or* contact, autism, self-absorption, withdrawal, catatonia; unimpressionableness, unimpressibility; insusceptibility, unsusceptibility; **impassiveness,** impassibility, impassivity; straight face *and* poker face <nf>, deadpan <nf>; immovability, untouchability; **dullness, obtuseness;** inexcitability 106

2 **insensibility,** insensibleness, **unconsciousness,** unawareness, **obliviousness,** oblivion; anesthesia, narcosis

3 **callousness, insensitivity,** insensitiveness, philistinism; **coarseness, brutalization, hardness,** hardenedness, **hard-heartedness, hardness of heart,** hard heart, stony-heartedness, heart of stone, stoniness, marbleheartedness, flintheartedness, flintiness; **obduracy,** obdurateness, induration, inuredness; imperviousness, **thick skin,** rhinoceros hide, thick *or* hard-shell, armor, formidable defenses

4 **apathy, indifference, unconcern,** lack of caring, disinterest; withdrawnness, **aloofness, detachment,** ataraxy *or* ataraxia, **dispassion; passiveness,** passivity, supineness, insouciance, nonchalance; inappetence, lack of appetite; **listlessness, spiritlessness,** burnout, blah *or* blahs <nf>, heartlessness, plucklessness, spunklessness; **lethargy, phlegm,** lethargicalness, phlegmaticalness, phlegmaticness, hebetude, **dullness,** sluggishness, languor, languidness; soporifousness, sopor, coma, comatoseness, torpidness, torpor, torpidity, **stupor,** stupefaction, narcosis; acedia, sloth; **resignation,** resignedness, stoicism; **numbness,** benumbedness; hopelessness 125

VERBS **5** not be affected by, remain unmoved, not turn a hair, not care less <nf>; have a thick skin, have a heart of stone; be cold as ice, be a cold fish, be an icicle; not affect, leave one cold *or* unmoved, unimpress, underwhelm <nf>

6 **callous, harden,** case harden, **harden one's heart,** ossify, steel, indurate, inure; brutalize

7 **dull, blunt,** desensitize, obtund, hebetate

8 **numb, benumb,** paralyze, **deaden,** anesthetize, freeze, **stun, stupefy,** drug, narcotize

ADJS **9** **unfeeling, unemotional,** nonemotional, emotionless, affectless, emotionally dead *or* numb *or* paralyzed, anesthetized, drugged, narcotized; **unpassionate, dispassionate,** unimpassioned, **objective;** passionless, **spiritless, heartless,** soulless; lukewarm, Laodicean; **cold, cool, frigid,** frozen, chill, chilly, arctic, frosty, frosted, icy, **coldhearted, cold-blooded,** cold as charity; **unaffectionate,** unloving; **unresponsive,** unresponding, **unsympathetic;** out of touch *or* contact; in one's shell *or* armor, behind one's defenses; autistic, self-absorbed, self-centered, egocentric, catatonic; unimpressionable, unimpressible, insusceptible, unsusceptible, unperturbed, imperturbable, undisturbed; **impassive,** impassible; immovable, untouchable; dull, obtuse, blunt; **inexcitable** 106.10

10 **insensible, unconscious,** unaware, **oblivious,** blind to, deaf to, dead to, lost to

11 **unaffected, unmoved, untouched,** dry-eyed, unimpressed, unshaken, unstruck, **unstirred,** unruffled, unanimated, uninspired

12 **callous, calloused, insensitive,** Philistine; **thick-skinned,** pachydermatous; **hard, hard-hearted, hardened,** case-hardened, coarsened, brutalized, indurated, stony, stony-hearted, marblehearted, flinthearted, flinty, steely, impervious, inured, armored *or* steeled against, proof against, as hard as nails

13 **apathetic, indifferent, unconcerned,** uncaring, **disinterested, uninterested; withdrawn, aloof, detached,** Olympian, above it all; **passive,** supine; stoic, stoical; insouciant, nonchalant, blasé,

listless, spiritless, burned-out, blah <nf>, heartless, pluckless, spunkless; **lethargic, phlegmatic,** hebetudinous, **dull,** desensitized, sluggish, torpid, languid, slack, soporific, comatose, **stupefied,** in a stupor, **numb,** numbed, benumbed; resigned; hopeless 125.12

ADVS **14 unfeelingly, unemotionally,** emotionlessly; with a straight *or* poker face <nf>, deadpan <nf>; **dispassionately,** unpassionately; **spiritlessly, heartlessly,** coldly, coldheartedly, cold-bloodedly, **in cold blood;** with dry eyes

15 apathetically, indifferently, unconcernedly, disinterestedly, uninterestedly, uncaringly, impassively; **listlessly, spiritlessly,** heartlessly, plucklessly, spunklessly; **lethargically, phlegmatically,** dully, numbly

95 PLEASURE

NOUNS **1 pleasure, enjoyment;** quiet pleasure, euphoria, well-being, good feeling, **contentment,** content, **ease,** comfort 121; coziness, warmth; **gratification, satisfaction,** great satisfaction, hearty enjoyment, keen pleasure *or* satisfaction; **self-gratification,** self-indulgence; instant gratification; luxury; **relish, zest, gusto,** *joie de vivre* <Fr>; sweetness of life, *douceur de vivre* <Fr>; kicks <nf>, **fun,** entertainment, amusement 743; intellectual pleasure, pleasures of the mind; **strokes** *and* stroking *and* ego massage <nf>; physical pleasure, creature comforts, bodily pleasure, sense *or* sensuous pleasure; sexual pleasure, voluptuousness, sensual pleasure, *volupté* <Fr>, animal pleasure, animal comfort, bodily comfort, fleshly *or* carnal delight; forepleasure, titillation, endpleasure, fruition; sensualism, hedonism

2 happiness, felicity, gladness, delight, delectation; **joy, joyfulness,** joyance <old>; **cheer,** cheerfulness, exhilaration, **exuberance, high spirits, glee,** sunshine; gaiety 109.4, overjoyfulness, overhappiness; intoxication; **rapture,** ravishment, bewitchment, **enchantment,** unalloyed happiness; elation, exaltation; **ecstasy,** ecstasies, transport; **bliss,** blissfulness; beatitude, beatification, blessedness; paradise, heaven, seventh heaven, cloud nine; smiley face

3 treat, regalement, regale; **feast, banquet,** revelment, regale, Lucullan feast; feast *or* banquet of the soul; round of pleasures, mad round; **festivity,** fete, fiesta, festive occasion, celebration, merrymaking, revel, revelry, jubilation, joyance; carnival, Mardi Gras

4 pleasure-loving, pleasure principle, hedonism, hedonics; epicureanism, Cyrenaicism, eudaemonism

5 <period of pleasure> good time, fun time, happy hour, bread and circuses, *la dolce vita* <Ital>, life of Riley, easy street, bed of roses, Elysium, Elysian fields, land of milk and honey

VERBS **6 please, pleasure, give pleasure,** afford one pleasure, be to one's liking, sit well with one, meet one's wishes, take *or* strike one's fancy, feel good *or* right, strike one right; do one's heart good, warm the cockles of one's heart, tickle pink <nf>; **suit,** suit one down to the ground

7 <nf terms> **hit the spot,** be just the ticket, be just what the doctor ordered, **make a hit,** go over big, go over with a bang

8 gratify, satisfy, sate, satiate; slake, appease, allay, assuage, quench; regale, feed, feast; do one's heart good, warm the cockles of the heart

9 gladden, make happy, happify; bless, beatify; cheer 109.7

10 delight, delectate, **tickle, titillate, thrill, enrapture, enthrall, enchant,** entrance, fascinate, captivate, bewitch, **charm,** becharm; enravish, ravish, imparadise; ecstasiate, transport, carry away

11 <nf terms> **give one a bang** *or* kick *or* charge *or* rush, knock out, knock off one's feet *or* dead *or* for a loop, knock one's socks off, thrill to death *or* to pieces, tickle to death, tickle pink, **wow,** slay, send, freak out; **stroke,** massage one's ego

12 be pleased, feel happy, feel good, sing, purr, smile, laugh, be wreathed in smiles, beam; **delight,** joy, take great satisfaction; look like the cat that swallowed the canary; brim *or* burst with joy, walk *or* tread on air, have stars in one's eyes, be in heaven *or* seventh heaven *or* paradise, be on cloud nine; fall *or* go into raptures; die with delight *or* pleasure

13 enjoy, pleasure in, be pleased with, receive *or* derive pleasure from, take delight *or* pleasure in, get a kick *or* boot *or* bang *or* charge *or* lift *or* rush out of <nf>; **like, love,** adore <nf>; **delight in, rejoice in,** indulge in, luxuriate in, revel in, riot in, bask in, wallow in, swim in; groove on *and* get high on *and* freak out on <nf>; feast on, gloat over *or* on; **relish, appreciate,** roll under the tongue, do justice to, savor, smack the lips; devour, eat up

14 enjoy oneself, have a good time, party, live it up <nf>, have the time of one's life, have a ball *or* blast <nf>

ADJS **15 pleased, delighted; glad,** gladsome; **charmed,** intrigued <nf>; **thrilled; tickled,** tickled to death *and* tickled pink <nf>, exhilarated; **gratified, satisfied;** pleased with, taken with, favorably impressed with, sold on <nf>, turned-on; pleased as Punch, pleased as a child with a new toy; euphoric, eupeptic; **content, contented,** easy, **comfortable** 121.11, cozy, in clover, snug as a bug in a rug <nf>

16 **happy, glad, joyful, joyous,** flushed with joy, radiant, beaming, glowing, starry-eyed, sparkling, laughing, smiling, smirking, smirky, chirping, purring, singing, dancing, leaping, capering, **cheerful,** gay 109.14; **blissful,** "throned on highest bliss"—Milton; blessed; beatified, beatific; thrice happy, "thrice and four times blessed"—Vergil; happy as a lark, happy as a king, happy as the day is long, happy as a clam at high water, happy as a pig in shit <nf>, happy as a sand boy <Brit>

17 **overjoyed,** overjoyful, overhappy, brimming *or* bursting with happiness, on top of the world; **rapturous,** raptured, **enraptured, enchanted,** entranced, enravished, ravished, rapt, possessed; sent *and* high *and* freaked-out <nf>, **in raptures,** transported, in a transport of delight, **carried away,** rapt *or* ravished away, beside oneself, beside oneself with joy, all over oneself <nf>; **ecstatic,** in ecstasies, ecstasiating; rhapsodic, rhapsodical; imparadised, **in paradise,** in heaven, in seventh heaven, on cloud nine <nf>; **elated,** elate, exalted, jubilant, exultant, flushed

18 **pleasure-loving,** pleasure-seeking, fun-loving, hedonic, hedonistic; Lucullan; epicurean, Cyrenaic, eudaemonic

ADVS 19 **happily, gladly, joyfully, joyously, delightedly,** with pleasure, to one's delight; blissfully, blessedly; **ecstatically,** rhapsodically, **rapturously; elatedly,** jubilantly, exultantly

20 **for fun,** for the hell *or* heck *or* devil of it <nf>

INTERJS 21 **goody!,** goody, goody!, goody gumdrops!, good-o! <Brit>; whee!, **wow!,** u-mm!, mmmm!, oooo!, oo-la-la!; oh boy!, boy oh boy!, boy!, man!, hot dog!, hot ziggety!, hot diggety!, whoopee!, wowie zowie!, out of sight! *or* outa sight!, groovy!, keen-o!, keen-o-peachy!

96 UNPLEASURE

NOUNS 1 **unpleasure,** unpleasantness 98, **lack of pleasure,** joylessness, cheerlessness; unsatisfaction, nonsatisfaction, ungratification, nongratification; grimness; discontent 108; displeasure, dissatisfaction, **discomfort,** uncomfortableness, misease <old>, malaise, **painfulness; disquiet,** inquietude, **uneasiness,** unease, discomposure, vexation of spirit, **anxiety;** angst, anguish, dread, nausea, existential woe, existential vacuum; the blahs <nf>; **dullness,** flatness, staleness, tastelessness, savorlessness; ashes in the mouth; **boredom,** ennui, tedium, tediousness, spleen; emptiness, spiritual void, death of the heart *or* soul; unhappiness 112.2; dislike 99

2 **annoyance, vexation,** bothersomeness, exasperation, *tracasserie* <Fr>, **aggravation; nuisance, pest, bother,** botheration <nf>, public nuisance, **trouble, problem,** pain <nf>, difficulty, hot potato <nf>; **trial; bore,** crashing bore <nf>; **drag** *and* downer <nf>; **worry,** worriment <nf>; downside *and* the bad news <nf>; stress, fear, pressure, anxiety, angst; **headache** <nf>; **pain in the neck** *or* **in the ass** <nf>; **harassment,** molestation, persecution, dogging, hounding, harrying; devilment, bedevilment; vexatiousness 98.7; bogey *or* bogy

3 **irritation, aggravation,** exacerbation, worsening, salt in the wound, twisting the knife in the wound, embitterment, **provocation;** fret, gall, chafe; irritant; pea in the shoe

4 **chagrin, distress; embarrassment, abashment, discomfiture,** egg on one's face <nf>, disconcertion, disconcertment, discountenance, discomposure, disturbance, confusion; **humiliation, shame,** shamefacedness, mortification, red face

5 **pain, distress, grief,** stress, stress of life, suffering, passion, dolor; ache, aching; pang, wrench, throes, cramp, spasm, twinge; wound, injury, hurt; **sore,** sore spot, soreness, tender spot, tenderness, lesion; strain, sprain; cut, stroke; shock, blow, hard *or* nasty blow; malady, illness, disease, plague; bane

6 **wretchedness, despair,** bitterness, infelicity, **misery, anguish, agony, woe,** woefulness, woesomeness <old>, bale, balefulness; **melancholy,** melancholia, **depression, sadness,** grief 112.10; **heartache,** aching heart, heavy heart, bleeding heart, broken heart, agony of mind *or* spirit; suicidal despair, black night of the soul, **despondency,** gloom and doom, despond, "Slough of Despond"—Bunyan; **desolation,** prostration, crushing; extremity, depth of misery; sloth, acedia

7 **torment, torture,** cruciation <old>, excruciation, crucifixion, passion, laceration, clawing, lancination, flaying, excoriation; the rack, the iron maiden, thumbscrews; **persecution; martyrdom; purgatory,** living death, hell, hell upon earth; holocaust; nightmare, horror

8 **affliction,** infliction; **curse, woe,** distress, grievance, **sorrow,** *tsures* <Yiddish>; **trouble,** peck *or* pack of troubles, "sea of troubles"—Shakespeare; **care,** burden of care; **burden,** adversity, **oppression, cross, cross to bear** *or* **be borne, load,** fardel <old>, imposition, encumbrance, weight, albatross around one's neck, millstone around one's neck; thorn, thorn in the side, crown of thorns; white elephant; bitter pill, bitter draft, bitter cup, cup *or* waters of bitterness; gall, gall and wormwood; "the thousand natural

shocks that flesh is heir to"—Shakespeare, "all the ills that men endure"—Abraham Cowley; Pandora's box

9 **trial, tribulation,** trials and tribulations; **ordeal,** fiery ordeal, the iron entering the soul

10 **tormentor,** torment; torturer; **nuisance, pest,** pesterer, pain *and* pain in the neck *or* ass <nf>, nag, nudzh <nf>, *nudnik* <Yiddish>, public nuisance; **tease,** teaser; annoyer, harasser, harrier, badgerer, **heckler,** plaguer, persecutor, sadist; molester, **bully**

11 **sufferer,** victim, prey; **wretch,** poor devil <nf>, object of compassion; martyr

VERBS 12 give no pleasure *or* joy *or* cheer *or* comfort, **disquiet,** discompose, leave unsatisfied; discontent; taste like ashes in the mouth; **bore,** be tedious, cheese off <Brit nf>

13 **annoy, irk, vex, nettle, provoke, pique,** miff *and* peeve <nf>, distemper, **ruffle, disturb,** discompose, **roil,** rile, **aggravate,** make a nuisance of oneself, **exasperate,** exercise, try one's patience, try the patience of a saint; **put one's back up,** make one bristle; **gripe;** give one a pain <nf>; get, get one down, **get one's goat,** get under one's skin, get in one's hair, tread on one's toes; burn up *and* brown off <nf>; **torment, molest, bother,** pother; **harass,** harry, drive up the wall <nf>, **hound,** dog, nag, nobble <Brit nf>, nudzh <nf>, **persecute; heckle,** pick *or* prod at, rub it in *and* rub one's nose in it <nf>, badger, hector, bait, bullyrag, worry, worry at, nip at the heels of, chivy, hardly give one time to breathe, make one's life miserable, keep on at; **bug** <nf>, be on the back of *and* be at *and* ride <nf>, **pester, tease, needle,** devil, get after *or* get on <nf>, **bedevil, pick on** <nf>, tweak the nose, pluck the beard, give a bad time to <nf>; **plague,** beset, beleaguer; catch in the crossfire *or* in the middle; catch one off balance, trip one up

14 **irritate, aggravate,** exacerbate, worsen, rub salt in the wound, twist the knife in the wound, step on one's corns, barb the dart; touch a soft spot *or* tender spot, touch a raw nerve, touch where it hurts; provoke, **gall, chafe, fret,** grate, grit *and* gravel <nf>, rasp; **get on one's nerves, grate on,** set on edge; **set one's teeth on edge,** go against the grain; **rub one** *or* **one's fur the wrong way**

15 **chagrin, embarrass, abash, discomfit, disconcert,** discompose, confuse, throw into confusion *or* a tizzy *or* a hissy-fit, **upset,** confound, cast down, mortify, put out, put out of face *or* countenance, put to the blush

16 **distress, afflict, trouble,** burden, give one a tough row to hoe, load with care, **bother, disturb, perturb, disquiet, discomfort, agitate, upset,** put to it; **worry,** give one gray hair

17 **pain, grieve,** aggrieve, anguish; **hurt, wound,** bruise, **hurt one's feelings;** pierce, prick, stab, cut, sting; **cut up** <nf>, **cut to the heart,** wound *or* sting *or* cut to the quick, hit one where one lives <nf>; be a thorn in one's side

18 **torture, torment, agonize, harrow,** savage, **rack,** scarify, crucify, impale, excruciate, lacerate, claw, rip, bloody, lancinate, macerate, convulse, wring; prolong the agony, kill by inches, make life miserable *or* not worth living; martyr, martyrize; **tyrannize,** push around <nf>; punish 604.10

19 **suffer, hurt, ache, bleed;** anguish, **suffer anguish; agonize,** writhe; go hard with, have a bad time of it, go through hell; quaff the bitter cup, drain the cup of misery to the dregs, be nailed to the cross

ADJS 20 **pleasureless,** joyless, cheerless, depressed 112.22, grim; **sad,** unhappy 112.21; unsatisfied, unfulfilled, ungratified; **bored,** cheesed off <Brit nf>; anguished, anxious, suffering angst *or* dread *or* nausea, uneasy, unquiet, prey to malaise; **repelled,** revolted, **disgusted,** sickened, nauseated, nauseous

21 **annoyed, irritated,** bugged <nf>; galled, chafed; **bothered, troubled, disturbed, ruffled, roiled,** riled; **irked, vexed, piqued, nettled, provoked, peeved** *and* miffed <nf>, **griped, aggravated, exasperated;** burnt-up *and* browned-off <nf>, resentful, angry 152.28

22 **distressed, afflicted, put-upon,** beset, beleaguered; caught in the middle *or* in the crossfire; **troubled, bothered, disturbed, perturbed, disquieted,** discomforted, discomposed, agitated; hung up <nf>; **uncomfortable,** uneasy, ill at ease; **chagrined, embarrassed,** abashed, discomfited, **disconcerted, upset, confused,** mortified, **put-out,** out of countenance, cast down, chapfallen

23 **pained, grieved,** aggrieved; **wounded, hurt,** injured, **bruised,** mauled; **cut,** cut to the quick; **stung;** anguished, aching, bleeding

24 **tormented, plagued, harassed, harried,** dogged, **hounded, persecuted,** beset; nipped at, worried, chivied, **heckled,** badgered, hectored, baited, bullyragged, ragged, **pestered, teased, needled,** deviled, **bedeviled, picked on** <nf>, **bugged** <nf>

25 **tortured, harrowed,** savaged, **agonized,** convulsed, wrung, racked, crucified, impaled, lacerated, excoriated, clawed, ripped, bloodied, lancinated; on the rack, under the harrow

26 **wretched, miserable; woeful,** woebegone, woesome <old>; crushed, stricken, **cut up** <nf>, heartsick, heart-stricken, heart-struck; deep-troubled; desolate, disconsolate, suicidal

ADVS 27 to one's displeasure, to one's disgust

97 PLEASANTNESS

NOUNS 1 **pleasantness,** pleasingness, pleasance, **pleasure** 95, pleasurefulness, **pleasurableness,** pleasurability, pleasantry <old>, felicitousness, **enjoyableness; bliss, blissfulness;** felicitousness; sweetness, mellifluousness, *douceur* <Fr>; mellowness; **agreeableness,** agreeability, complaisance, rapport, harmoniousness; compatibility; welcomeness; geniality, congeniality, cordiality, *Gemütlichkeit* <Ger>, affability, amicability, amiability; amenity, graciousness; goodness, goodliness, niceness; **fun** 743.2, 95.1; heaven

2 **delightfulness,** exquisiteness, loveliness; **charm,** winsomeness, grace, **attractiveness, appeal,** appealingness, winningness; sexiness <nf>; **glamour;** captivation, enchantment, entrancement, bewitchment, witchery, enravishment, **fascination** 377.1; invitingness, temptingness, tantalizingness; voluptuousness, sensuousness; luxury

3 **delectability,** delectableness, deliciousness, lusciousness; tastiness, flavorsomeness, savoriness; juiciness; succulence

4 **cheerfulness;** brightness, sunniness; sunny side, bright side; fair weather

VERBS 5 make pleasant, brighten, sweeten, gild, gild the lily *or* pill; sentimentalize, saccharinize; please, gratify, satisfy; brighten one's day, make one's day <nf>

ADJS 6 **pleasant, pleasing, pleasureful, pleasurable;** fair, fair and pleasant, **enjoyable,** pleasure-giving; felicitous, felicific; **likable, desirable,** to one's liking, to one's taste, to *or* after one's fancy, after one's own heart; **agreeable,** complaisant, harmonious, *en rapport* <Fr>, compatible; **blissful;** sweet, mellifluous, honeyed, dulcet; mellow; **gratifying,** satisfying, rewarding, heartwarming, grateful; **welcome,** welcome as the roses in May; genial, congenial, cordial, *gemütlich* <Ger>, affable, amiable, amicable, gracious; good, goodly, nice, fine; cheerful 109.11

7 **delightful, exquisite, lovely; thrilling,** titillative; good-natured; **charming, attractive, endearing, engaging, appealing,** prepossessing, heartwarming, sexy <nf>, **enchanting,** bewitching, witching, entrancing, enthralling, intriguing, fascinating; **captivating, irresistible, ravishing,** enravishing; **winning,** winsome, taking, fetching, heart-robbing; inviting, tempting, tantalizing; voluptuous, zaftig <nf>, sensuous; luxurious, delicious

8 <nf terms> **fun, kicky,** chewy, dishy, drooly, sexy, toast, yummy

9 **blissful,** beatific, saintly, divine; sublime; **heavenly,** idyllic, paradisal, paradisiac, paradisiacal, paradisic, paradisical, empyreal *or* empyrean, Elysian; out of sight *or* of this world <nf>

10 **delectable, delicious,** luscious; tasty, flavorsome, savory; juicy, succulent

11 **bright, sunny,** fair, mild, balmy; halcyon, Saturnian

ADVS 12 **pleasantly, pleasingly, pleasurably,** fair, **enjoyably; blissfully; gratifyingly,** satisfyingly; agreeably, genially, affably, cordially, amiably, amicably, graciously, kindly; cheerfully 109.17

13 **delightfully, exquisitely; charmingly, engagingly, appealingly, enchantingly,** bewitchingly, entrancingly, intriguingly, fascinatingly; ravishingly, enravishingly; **winningly,** winsomely; invitingly, temptingly, tantalizingly, voluptuously, sensuously; luxuriously

14 **delectably,** deliciously, lusciously, tastily, succulently, savorously

98 UNPLEASANTNESS

NOUNS 1 **unpleasantness,** unpleasingness, displeasingness, displeasure; **disagreeableness,** disagreeability, *désagrément* <Fr>; **abrasiveness,** woundingess, hostility, unfriendliness; **undesirability,** unappealingness, unattractiveness, unengagingness, uninvitingness, unprepossessingness; **distastefulness,** unsavoriness, unpalatability, nastiness, **undelectability;** ugliness 1014; discomfort, pain, annoyance

2 **offensiveness,** objectionability, objectionableness, unacceptability; repugnance, contrariety, **odiousness, repulsiveness,** repellence *or* repellency, rebarbativeness, disgustingness, offensiveness, nauseousness, grossness *and* yuckiness *and* grunginess *and* scuzziness <nf>; **loathsomeness, hatefulness,** beastliness <nf>; **vileness, foulness,** putridness, putridity, rottenness, noxiousness; **nastiness,** fulsomeness, noisomeness, **obnoxiousness,** abominableness, heinousness; **contemptibleness,** contemptibility, despicability, **despicableness,** baseness, ignobleness, ignobility; unspeakableness; coarseness, grossness, crudeness, rudeness, obscenity

3 **dreadfulness, horribleness,** horridness, atrociousness, atrocity, hideousness, terribleness, awfulness <nf>; grimness, direness, banefulness

4 **harshness, agony,** agonizingness, excruciation, excruciatingness, **torture,** torturesomeness, torturousness, **torment,** tormentingness; desolation, desolateness; heartbreak, heartsickness

5 **distressfulness, distress, grievousness, grief; painfulness,** pain 26; **harshness,** bitterness, sharpness; lamentability, lamentableness, deplorability, deplorableness, pitiableness, pitifulness, pitiability, regrettableness; **woe,**

sadness, sorrowfulness, mournfulness, lamentation, woefulness, woesomeness <old>, woebegoneness, pathos, poignancy; comfortlessness, discomfort, misease <old>; dreariness, cheerlessness, joylessness, dismalness, **depression,** bleakness

6 **mortification,** humiliation, embarrassment, egg on one's face <nf>; disconcertedness, awkwardness

7 **vexatiousness, irksomeness, annoyance,** annoyingness, aggravation, exasperation, provocation, provokingness, tiresomeness, wearisomeness; **troublesomeness, bothersomeness,** harassment; worrisomeness, plaguesomeness, peskiness *and* pestiferousness <nf>

8 **harshness, oppressiveness, burdensomeness,** onerousness, weightiness, heaviness

9 **intolerability,** intolerableness, unbearableness, insupportableness, insufferableness, **unendurability**

VERBS 10 **be unpleasant; displease,** make unpleasant; be disagreeable *or* undesirable *or* distasteful *or* abrasive

11 **offend,** give offense, **repel,** put off, turn off <nf>, **revolt, disgust,** nauseate, sicken, make one sick, make one sick to *or* in the stomach, make one vomit *or* puke *or* retch, turn the stomach, gross out <nf>; stink in the nostrils; stick in one's throat, stick in one's crop *or* craw *or* gizzard <nf>; **horrify, appall,** shock; make the flesh creep *or* crawl, make one shudder

12 **agonize,** excruciate, **torture, torment,** desolate

13 **mortify,** humiliate, embarrass, disconcert, disturb

14 **distress, dismay,** grieve, mourn, lament, sorrow; pain, discomfort, misease <old>; get in one's hair, try one's patience, give one a hard time *or* a pain *or* a pain in the neck *or* ass *or* butt <nf>, disturb, put off

15 **vex, irk, annoy, aggravate,** exasperate, provoke; **trouble, worry,** give one gray hair, plague, harass, bother, hassle

16 **oppress, burden,** weigh upon, weight down, wear one down, be heavy on one, crush one; **tire, exhaust,** weary, wear out, wear upon one; prey on the mind, prey on *or* upon; **haunt,** haunt the memory, obsess

ADJS 17 **unpleasant, unpleasing, unenjoyable; displeasing, disagreeable; unlikable,** dislikable; **abrasive,** wounding, hostile, unfriendly; **undesirable,** unattractive, unappealing, unengaging, uninviting, unalluring; tacky *and* low rent *and* low ride <nf>; unwelcome, thankless; **distasteful,** untasteful, **unpalatable,** unsavory, unappetizing, undelicious, **undelectable;** ugly 1015.6; sour, **bitter**

18 **offensive, objectionable, odious, repulsive,** repellent, rebarbative, **repugnant, revolting,** forbidding; **disgusting, sickening, loathsome,** gross *and* yucky *and* grungy *and* scuzzy <nf>, beastly <nf>, **vile, foul, nasty,** nauseating 64.7; grody <nf>; fulsome, mephitic, miasmal, miasmic, malodorous, stinking, fetid, noisome, noxious; coarse, gross, crude, rude, obscene; **obnoxious, abhorrent, hateful, abominable,** heinous, **contemptible, despicable,** detestable, execrable, beneath *or* below contempt, **base,** ignoble, uncouth

19 **horrid, horrible,** horrific, **horrifying,** horrendous, unspeakable, beyond words; **dreadful, atrocious, terrible, rotten,** awful *and* beastly <nf>, **hideous; tragic;** dire, grim, baneful; appalling, shocking, disgusting

20 **distressing,** distressful, dismaying; from hell <nf>; afflicting, afflictive; **painful,** sore, **harsh, bitter,** sharp; **grievous,** dolorous, dolorific, dolorogenic; **lamentable, deplorable,** regrettable, pitiable, piteous, rueful, woeful, woesome <old>, woebegone, **sad,** sorrowful, wretched, mournful, **depressing,** depressive; **pathetic,** affecting, touching, moving, saddening, poignant; comfortless, discomforting, uncomfortable; **desolate,** dreary, cheerless, joyless, dismal, bleak

21 **mortifying,** humiliating, **embarrassing,** crushing, disconcerting, awkward, disturbing

22 **annoying, irritating,** galling, **provoking, aggravating** <nf>, **exasperating; vexatious,** vexing, irking, **irksome,** tiresome, wearisome; **troublesome, bothersome, worrisome,** bothering, troubling, disturbing, plaguing, plaguesome, plaguey <nf>, pestilent, pestilential, **pesky** *and* pesty *and* pestiferous <nf>; tormenting, harassing, worrying; pestering, teasing; importunate, importune; distasteful

23 **agonizing, excruciating, harrowing,** racking, rending, **desolating,** consuming; **tormenting,** torturous; **heartbreaking,** heartrending, **heartsickening,** heartwounding

24 **oppressive, burdensome, crushing,** trying, onerous, heavy, weighty; **harsh,** wearing, wearying, exhausting; overburdensome, tyrannous, grinding

25 **insufferable, intolerable, insupportable, unendurable, unbearable,** past bearing, not to be borne *or* endured, for the birds <nf>, **too much** *or* a bit much <nf>, more than flesh and blood can bear, enough to drive one mad, enough to provoke a saint, enough to make a preacher swear <nf>, enough to try the patience of Job

ADVS 26 **unpleasantly, distastefully** unpleasingly; **displeasingly, offensively, objectionably,** odiously, **repulsively,** repellently, rebarbatively, repugnantly,

revoltingly, disgustingly, sickeningly, loathsomely, vilely, foully, nastily, fulsomely, mephitically, malodorously, fetidly, noisomely, noxiously, obnoxiously, **abhorrently, hatefully, abominably,** contemptibly, **despicably, detestably,** execrably, nauseatingly

27 horridly, horribly, dreadfully, terribly, hideously; **tragically;** grimly, direly, banefully; appallingly, shockingly

28 distressingly, distressfully; **painfully,** sorely, **grievously,** lamentably, deplorably, pitiably, ruefully, woefully, woesomely <old>, sadly, pathetically; **agonizingly, excruciatingly,** harrowingly, heartbreakingly

29 annoyingly, irritatingly, aggravatingly, provokingly, exasperatingly; vexatiously, irksomely, tiresomely, wearisomely; **troublesomely, bothersomely,** worrisomely, regrettably

30 insufferably, intolerably, unbearably, unendurably, insupportably

INTERJS **31** yuck *or* eeyuck! *or* yeeuck! *or* yeeuch!, phew! *or* pugh!, ugh!; *feh!* <Yiddish>; alas, alack

99 DISLIKE

NOUNS **1 dislike, distaste,** disrelish, scunner; disaffection, **disfavor,** disinclination; disaffinity; **displeasure, disapproval,** disapprobation; instant dislike; rejection

2 hostility, antagonism, **enmity** 589; **hatred,** hate 103; **aversion, repugnance,** repulsion, **antipathy,** allergy <nf>, grudge, abomination, **abhorrence, horror,** mortal horror; **disgust, loathing;** nausea; shuddering, cold sweat, creeping flesh

VERBS **3 dislike,** mislike, disfavor, not like, have no liking for, be no love lost between, **have no use for** <nf>, **not care for,** have no time for, have a disaffinity for, have an aversion to, want nothing to do with, not think much of, entertain *or* conceive *or* take a dislike to, take a scunner to, not be able to bear *or* endure *or* abide, not give the time of day to <nf>, **disapprove of; disrelish,** have no taste for, not stomach, not have the stomach for, not be one's cup of tea; be hostile to, have it in for <nf>; **hate, abhor, detest,** loathe 103.5

4 feel disgust, be nauseated, **sicken at,** choke on, have a bellyful of <nf>; **gag, retch,** keck, heave, vomit, puke, hurl *and* upchuck *and* barf <nf>

5 shudder at, have one's flesh creep *or* crawl at the thought of; shrink from, **recoil, revolt at; grimace,** make a face, make a wry face *or* mouth, turn up one's nose, look down one's nose, look askance, raise one's eyebrows, take a dim view of, show distaste for, disapprove of

6 repel, disgust 98.11, gross out <nf>; leave a bad taste in one's mouth, rub the wrong way, antagonize

ADJS **7 unlikable, distasteful,** mislikable, dislikable, **uncongenial, displeasing,** unpleasant 98.17; **not to one's taste,** not one's sort, not one's cup of tea, counter to one's preferences, offering no delight, against the grain, uninviting; yucky <nf>, unlovable; **abhorrent,** odious 98.18; **intolerable** 98.25

8 averse, allergic <nf>, undelighted, out of sympathy, disaffected, disenchanted, **disinclined, displeased,** put off <nf>, not charmed, less than pleased; **disapproving, censorious, judgmental,** po-faced <Brit nf>; unamiable, **unfriendly,** hostile 589.10; death on, down on

9 disliked, uncared-for, unvalued, unprized, misprized, undervalued; **despised,** detested, lowly, spat-upon, untouchable; **unpopular, out of favor,** gone begging; **unappreciated,** misunderstood; unsung, thankless; unwept, unlamented, unmourned, undeplored, unmissed, unregretted

10 unloved, unbeloved, uncherished, loveless; **lovelorn,** forsaken, **rejected,** jilted, thrown over <nf>, spurned, crossed in love

11 unwanted, unwished, undesired; **unwelcome,** undesirous, unasked, unbidden, uninvited, uncalled-for, unasked-for

100 DESIRE

NOUNS **1 desire, wish,** wanting, **want, need,** desideration; **hope; fancy; will, mind, pleasure,** will and pleasure; heart's desire; **urge,** drive, libido, pleasure principle; concupiscence; horme; wish fulfillment, fantasy; passion, ardor, sexual desire 75.5; **curiosity,** intellectual curiosity, thirst for knowledge, lust for learning; **eagerness** 101

2 liking, love, fondness; infatuation, crush; **affection; relish, taste,** gusto, gust <Scot>; **passion, weakness** <nf>

3 inclination, penchant, partiality, fancy, favor, predilection, preference, propensity, proclivity, **leaning, bent,** turn, tilt, bias, **affinity;** mutual affinity *or* attraction; **sympathy,** fascination

4 wistfulness, wishfulness, yearnfulness, **nostalgia;** wishful thinking; sheep's eyes, longing *or* wistful eye; daydream, daydreaming

5 yearning, yen <nf>; **longing,** desiderium, **hankering** <nf>, **pining,** honing <nf>, aching; languishment, languishing; **nostalgia, homesickness,** *Heimweh* <Ger>, *mal du pays* and *maladie du pays* <Fr>; nostomania

6 craving, coveting, lust; hunger, thirst, appetite, "appetite, an universal wolf"—Shakespeare, appetition, appetency *or* appetence; aching void;

itch, itching, prurience *or* pruriency; lech <nf>, **sexual** desire 75.5; *cacoëthes* <L>, **mania** 926.12

7 **appetite,** stomach, relish, taste; **hunger,** hungriness; the munchies <nf>, peckishness <Brit nf>; tapeworm <nf>, eyes bigger than one's stomach, wolf in one's stomach, canine appetite; empty stomach, emptiness <nf>, hollow hunger; **thirst,** thirstiness, drought <nf>, dryness; polydipsia; torment of Tantalus; sweet tooth <nf>

8 **greed,** greediness, graspingness, **avarice, cupidity, avidity, voracity, rapacity, lust,** avariciousness, *avaritia and cupiditas* <L>; money-grubbing; avidness, esurience, wolfishness; voraciousness, ravenousness, rapaciousness, sordidness, **covetousness,** acquisitiveness; itching palm; grasping; **piggishness, hoggishness,** swinishness; **gluttony** 672, *gula* <L>; inordinate desire, furor, craze, fury *or* frenzy of desire, overgreediness; insatiable desire, insatiability; incontinence, intemperateness 669.1

9 **aspiration,** reaching high, upward looking; "the desire of the moth for the star"—Shelley; high goal *or* aim *or* purpose, dream, ideals; **idealism** 986.7

10 **ambition,** ambitiousness, vaulting ambition; aim; climbing, status-seeking, social climbing, careerism; opportunism; power-hunger; "the mind's immodesty"—d'Avenant, "the evil shadow of aspiration"—George Macdonald, "the avarice of power"—G G Coulton; noble *or* lofty ambition, magnanimity <old>; "the spur that makes man struggle with destiny"—Donald G Mitchell

11 <object of desire> **desire,** heart's desire, desideration, *desideratum* <L>; wish; **hope;** catch, quarry, prey, game, plum, prize, trophy, brass ring <nf>; status symbol; collectable, collectible; forbidden fruit, ideal, weakness, temptation; lodestone, magnet; golden vision, mecca, glimmering goal; land of heart's desire 986.11; something to be desired, "a consummation devoutly to be wish'd"—Shakespeare; dearest wish, ambition, the height of one's ambition; a sight for sore eyes, a welcome sight; the light at the end of the tunnel

12 **desirer,** wisher, wanter, hankerer <nf>, yearner, coveter; fancier, collector; addict, freak <nf>, glutton, greedy pig, devotee, votary; **aspirant,** aspirer, solicitant, wannabee *and* hopeful *and* would-be <nf>, candidate; **lover,** swain, suitor, squeeze <nf>

13 **desirability; agreeability,** acceptability, unobjectionableness; **attractiveness,** attraction, magnetism, **appeal,** seductiveness, provocativeness, pleasingness; likability, lovability 104.7

VERBS 14 **desire,** desiderate, be desirous of, **wish,** lust after, bay after, kill for *and* give one's right arm for <nf>, die for <nf>, **want,** have a mind to, choose <nf>; would fain do *or* have <old>, would be glad of; **like,** have *or* acquire a taste for, fancy, take to, **take a fancy** *or* a shine to, have a fancy for; have an eye to, have one's eye on; lean toward, tilt toward, have a penchant for, have a weakness *or* soft spot in one's heart for; aim at, set one's cap for, have designs on; wish very much, wish to goodness; **love** 104.18; lust; prefer, favor 371.17

15 **want to, wish to, like to,** love to, dearly love to, choose to; **itch to,** burn to; ache to, long to

16 **wish for, hope for, yearn for,** yen for *and* have a yen for <nf>, **itch for,** lust for, pant for, **long for, pine for,** hone for <nf>, ache for, be hurting for <nf>, weary for, languish for, **be dying for,** thirst for, sigh for, gape for <old>; cry for, clamor for; spoil for <nf>

17 **want with all one's heart, want in the worst way; set one's heart on, have one's heart set on,** give one's kingdom in hell for *or* one's eyeteeth for <nf>

18 **crave, covet, hunger after,** thirst after, crave after, **lust after,** have a lech for <nf>, pant after, run mad after, **hanker for** *or* **after** <nf>; crawl after; aspire after, be consumed with desire; have an itchy *or* itching palm *and* have sticky fingers <nf>

19 **hunger,** hunger for, feel hungry, be peckish <Brit nf>; starve <nf>, be ravenous, raven; **have a good appetite,** be a good trencherman, have a tapeworm <nf>, have a wolf in one's stomach; eye hungrily, lick one's chops <nf>; **thirst,** thirst for; lick one's lips

20 **aspire, be ambitious;** aspire to, try to reach; aim high, keep one's eyes on the stars, raise one's sights, set one's sights, reach for the sky, dream of, "hitch one's wagon to a star"—Emerson

ADJS 21 **desirous,** desiring, desireful <old>, lickerish, **wanting, wishing,** needing, hoping; dying to <nf>; tempted; appetitive, desiderative, optative, libidinous, libidinal; orectic; hormic; **eager;** lascivious, **lustful**

22 **desirous of** *or* **to,** keen on, set on <nf>, bent on; fond of, with a liking for, partial to <nf>; fain of *or* to <old>; inclined toward, leaning toward; **itching for** *or* **to,** aching for *or* to, **dying for** *or* **to;** spoiling for <nf>; mad on *or* for, wild to *or* for <nf>, crazy to *or* for <nf>

23 **wistful,** wishful; **longing, yearning,** yearnful, **hankering** <nf>, **languishing, pining,** honing <nf>; **nostalgic, homesick**

24 **craving,** coveting; **hungering,** hungry, thirsting, thirsty, athirst; **itching,** prurient; fervid; **devoured by desire,** in a frenzy *or* fury of desire, mad with lust, consumed with desire

25 **hungry,** hungering, peckish <Brit nf>; empty <nf>,

unfilled; ravening, **ravenous,** voracious, sharp-set, **wolfish,** dog-hungry <nf>, hungry as a bear; **starved, famished,** starving, famishing, perishing *or* pinched with hunger; fasting, off food, unfed; keeping Lent, Lenten; underfed; half-starved, half-famished

26 **thirsty,** thirsting, athirst; **dry,** parched, droughty <nf>

27 **greedy, avaricious, avid, voracious, rapacious,** cupidinous, esurient, **ravening, grasping, grabby** <nf>, graspy, acquisitive, mercenary, sordid, overgreedy; ravenous, gobbling, devouring; miserly, money-hungry, money-grubbing, money-mad, venal; **covetous,** coveting; **piggish, hoggish,** swinish, a hog for, greedy as a hog; **gluttonous** 672.6; omnivorous, all-devouring; insatiable, insatiate, unsatisfied, unsated, unappeased, unappeasable, limitless, bottomless, unquenchable, quenchless, unslaked, unslakeable, slakeless

28 **aspiring, ambitious,** sky-aspiring, upward-looking, high-reaching; high-flying, social-climbing, careerist, careeristic, fast-track, fast-lane, on the make <nf>; power-hungry; would-be

29 **desired, wanted,** coveted; **wished-for,** hoped-for, longed-for; sought after, in demand, popular

30 **desirable,** sought-after, much sought-after, to be desired, to die for <nf>, **much to be desired; enviable,** worth having; **likable, pleasing,** after one's own heart; **agreeable,** acceptable, unobjectionable; palatable; **attractive,** taking, winning, sexy <nf>, dishy <Brit nf>, **seductive, provocative,** tantalizing, exciting; appetizing, tempting, toothsome, mouth-watering; **lovable,** adorable

ADVS 31 **desirously, wistfully,** wishfully, **longingly, yearningly,** piningly, languishingly; cravingly, itchingly; hungrily, thirstily; aspiringly, ambitiously

32 **greedily, avariciously,** avidly, ravenously, raveningly, voraciously, rapaciously, **covetously,** graspingly, devouringly; wolfishly, **piggishly, hoggishly,** swinishly

101 EAGERNESS

NOUNS 1 **eagerness, enthusiasm, avidity,** avidness, keenness <chiefly Brit>, forwardness, prothymia, **readiness,** promptness, quickness, **alacrity,** cheerful readiness, *empressement* <Fr>; keen desire, **appetite** 100.7; anxiousness, anxiety; **zest,** zestfulness, gusto, verve, **liveliness,** life, **vitality,** vivacity, élan, spirit, animation; **impatience,** breathless impatience 135.1; keen interest, fascination; **craze** 926.12

2 **zeal, ardor, ardency, fervor, fervency, fervidness, spirit, warmth, fire, heat,** heatedness, **passion,** passionateness, impassionedness, heartiness, intensity, **abandon,** vehemence; intentness, resolution 359; **devotion,** devoutness, devotedness, dedication, commitment, committedness; **earnestness, seriousness,** sincerity; loyalty, faithfulness, faith, fidelity 644.7; discipleship, followership

3 **overzealousness, overeagerness,** overanxiousness, overanxiety; unchecked enthusiasm, **overenthusiasm, infatuation; overambitiousness; frenzy, fury; zealotry,** zealotism; mania, **fanaticism** 925.11

4 **enthusiast, zealot,** infatuate, energumen, rhapsodist; addict; faddist; pursuer; hobbyist, collector; **fanatic,** trainspotter <Brit nf>; visionary 986.13; **devotee,** votary, aficionada, aficionado, **fancier,** admirer, **follower; disciple,** worshiper, idolizer, idolater; amateur, dilettante

5 <nf terms> **fan, buff, freak,** hound, fiend, demon, nut, bug, head, junkie, groupie, rooter, booster, great one for, sucker for; fan club, fanzine; eager beaver, -aholic

VERBS 6 **jump at,** catch, grab, grab at, snatch, snatch at, fall all over oneself, get excited about, go at hammer and tongs *or* tooth and nail, go hog wild <nf>; go to great lengths, lean *or* bend *or* fall over backwards; **desire** 100.14,18

7 **be enthusiastic, rave, enthuse** *and* be big for <nf>; get stars in one's eyes, **rhapsodize, carry on over** *and* rave on <nf>, make much of, **make a fuss over,** make an ado *or* much ado about, make a to-do over *and* take on over <nf>, be *or* go on over *or* about <nf>, rave about *and* whoop it up about <nf>; go nuts *or* gaga *or* ape over <nf>; gush, gush over; effervesce, bubble over

ADJS 8 **eager, anxious,** agog, all agog; **avid, keen,** forward, prompt, quick, ready, ready and willing, alacritous, bursting to, dying to, raring to; **zestful, lively,** full of life, vital, vivacious, vivid, spirited, **animated;** impatient 135.6; breathless, panting, champing at the bit; **desirous** 100.21

9 **zealous, ardent, fervent, fervid,** perfervid, **spirited, intense,** hearty, vehement, abandoned, **passionate,** impassioned, **warm,** heated, hot, hot-blooded, red-hot, fiery, white-hot, flaming, burning, afire, aflame, on fire, like a house afire <nf>; **devout, devoted;** dedicated, committed; **earnest, sincere, serious,** in earnest; loyal, faithful 644.20; intent, intent on, resolute 359.11

10 **enthusiastic,** enthused *and* big <nf>, **gung ho** <nf>, glowing, full of enthusiasm; enthusiastic about, infatuated with

11 <nf terms> **wild about, crazy about, mad about,** ape about *or* over, gone on, all in a dither over,

gaga over, starry-eyed over, all hopped up about, hepped up over, hot about *or* for *or* on, steamed up about, **turned-on, switched-on;** hipped on, **cracked on,** bugs on, freaked-out, **nuts on** *or* **over** *or* **about, keen on** *or* **about,** crazy *or* mad about

12 **o[illegible]ous,** ultrazealous, **overeager,** over-anxious; **ove[illegible]tious;** overdesirous; **overenthusiastic, infatuated;** feverish, perfervid, febrile, at fever *or* fevered pitch; hectic, frenetic, furious, **frenzied,** frantic, **wild,** hysteric, hysterical, delirious; **insane** 926.26; **fanatical** 926.32

ADVS 13 **eagerly, anxiously; impatiently,** breathlessly; **avidly,** promptly, quickly, keenly, readily; zestfully, vivaciously, animatedly; **enthusiastically,** with enthusiasm; **with alacrity,** with zest, with gusto, with relish, with open arms

14 **zealously, ardently, fervently, fervidly,** perfervidly, heatedly, heartily, vehemently, **passionately,** impassionedly; intently, intensely; **devoutly, devotedly;** earnestly, sincerely, seriously

102 INDIFFERENCE

NOUNS 1 **indifference,** indifferentness; indifferentism; halfheartedness, zeallessness, perfunctoriness, fervorlessness; **coolness,** coldness, chilliness, chill, iciness, frostiness; tepidness, **lukewarmness,** Laodiceanism; **neutrality,** neutralness, neuterness; insipidity, vapidity; adiaphorism

2 **unconcern, disinterest, detachment; disregard, dispassion,** insouciance, **carelessness,** regardlessness; easygoingness; **heedlessness,** mindlessness, inattention 983; **unmindfulness,** incuriosity 982; **insensitivity;** disregardfulness, recklessness, negligence 340.1; *je-m'en-foutisme* or *je-m'en-fichisme* <Fr>; unsolicitousness, unanxiousness; pococurantism; **nonchalance,** inexcitability 106, ataraxy *or* ataraxia, samadhi; indiscrimination, casualness 945.1; **listlessness,** lackadaisicalness, lack of feeling *or* affect, **apathy** 94.4; sloth, acedia, phlegm, lethargy

3 **undesirousness,** desirelessness; nirvana; lovelessness, passionlessness; uneagerness, **unambitiousness;** lack of appetite, inappetence

VERBS 4 **not care, not mind, not give** *or* **care a damn,** not give a hoot *or* shit <nf>, not care less *or* two hoots <nf>, care nothing for *or* about, not care a straw about; shrug off, dismiss; **take no interest in,** have no desire for, not think twice about, have no taste *or* relish for; hold no brief for; be half-hearted, temper one's zeal; lose interest

5 **not matter to,** be all one to, take it or leave it; make no difference, make no never-mind <nf>; sit on the fence, remain neutral

ADJS 6 **indifferent, halfhearted,** zealless, perfunctory, fervorless; **cool,** cold 589.9; tepid, **lukewarm,** Laodicean; neither hot nor cold, neither one thing nor the other, "neither fish, nor flesh, nor good red herring"—John Heywood; unmoved; blah, **neuter, neutral**

7 **unconcerned, uninterested, disinterested,** turned-off, **dispassionate,** insouciant, **careless,** regardless; easygoing; incurious 982.3; mindless, **unmindful, heedless,** inattentive 984.6, disregardful; **devil-may-care,** reckless, negligent 340.10; unsolicitous, unanxious; pococurante, **nonchalant,** inexcitable 106.10; ataractic; **blasé,** undiscriminating, casual 945.5; **listless,** lackadaisical, sluggish; bovine; numb, **apathetic** 94.13

8 **undesirous,** unattracted, desireless; loveless, passionless; inappetent; nirvanic; **unenthusiastic,** uneager; **unambitious,** unaspiring

ADVS 9 **indifferently, with indifference,** with utter indifference; coolly, coldly; lukewarmly, halfheartedly; perfunctorily; for all *or* aught one cares

10 **unconcernedly, uninterestedly, disinterestedly,** dispassionately, insouciantly, **carelessly,** regardlessly; mindlessly; **unmindfully, heedlessly,** recklessly, negligently 340.17; **nonchalantly;** listlessly, lackadaisically; numbly, **apathetically** 94.15

PHRS 11 **who cares?,** I don't care, I couldn't care less <nf>; it's a matter of sublime indifference; never mind!, **what does it matter?,** what's the difference?, what's the diff? <nf>, what are the odds?, what of it?, what boots it?, **so what?,** what the hell <nf>, it's all one to me, it's all the same to me, it's no skin off one's nose *or* ass <nf>; like it or lump it; forget it!

12 **I should worry?,** I should fret?, that's your lookout, that's your problem, I feel for you but I can't reach you; that's your pigeon <nf>, that's your tough luck, tough titty *and* shit <nf>

103 HATE

NOUNS 1 **hate, hatred;** dislike 99; **detestation, abhorrence, aversion, antipathy,** repugnance, **loathing,** execration, **abomination,** odium; **spite,** spitefulness, despite, despitefulness, **malice, malevolence,** malignity; vials of hate *or* wrath; rancor, venom; misanthropy, misanthropism; misandry, misogyny; misogamy; misopedia; anti-Semitism; race hatred, racism, racialism; bigotry; phobia, Anglophobia, Russophobia, xenophobia, etc; grudge; scorn, despising, **contempt** 157

2 **enmity** 589; bitterness, **animosity** 589.4; hatefulness

3 <hated thing> **anathema, abomination,**

detestation, aversion, abhorrence, antipathy, execration, hate; peeve, pet peeve; phobia; bugbear, bête noire, bane, bitter pill; fear; dislike

4 hater, man-hater, woman-hater, misanthropist, misanthrope, misogynist, anti-Semite, racist, alist, white supremacist, bigot, redneck <nf>; phobic, Anglophobe, Russophobe, xenophobe, etc; detester, loather

VERBS 5 **hate, detest, loathe, abhor,** execrate, **abominate,** hold in abomination, take an aversion to, shudder at, utterly detest, be death on, not stand, not stand the sight of, not stomach; scorn, **despise** 157.3; hate someone's guts <nf>

6 **dislike,** have it in for <nf>, disrelish 99.3

ADJS 7 **hating, abhorrent,** loathing, despising, venomous, death on; averse to 99.8; disgusted 96.20; scornful, **contemptuous** 157.8; antagonistic; execrative

8 **hateful, loathesome,** aversive, odious, detestable 98.18; despiteful; unlikable 99.7; **contemptible** 661.12, 98.18

WORD ELEMENTS 9 mis-, miso-; -phobia, -phobiac, -phobe

104 LOVE

NOUNS 1 **love, affection, attachment, devotion, fondness,** sentiment, warm feeling, soft spot in one's heart, weakness <nf>, like, **liking,** fancy, shine <nf>; **partiality, predilection;** intimacy; **passion,** tender feeling *or* passion, **ardor,** ardency, fervor, heart, flame, the real thing <nf>; physical love, Amor, Eros, bodily love, libido, sexual love, sex 75; desire, yearning 100.5; lasciviousness 665.5; charity, *caritas* <L>, brotherly love, Christian love, agape, loving concern, fellow feeling, **caring;** sentimental attachment; spiritual love, platonic love; **adoration,** worship, hero worship; **regard,** admiration; idolization, idolism, idolatry; popular regard, popularity; faithful love, truelove; married love, conjugal love, uxoriousness; free love, free-lovism; **lovemaking** 562; self-love, narcissism, egotism; patriotism, love of one's country

2 "an insatiate thirst of enjoying a greedily desired object"—Montaigne, "the heart's immortal thirst to be completely known and all forgiven"—Henry Van Dyke, "the blood of life, the power of reunion of the separated"—Tillich, "the reflection of a man's own worthiness from other men"—Emerson, "a spiritual coupling of two souls"—Ben Jonson

3 **amorousness,** amativeness, lovingness, meltingness, **affection, affectionateness,** demonstrativeness; mating instinct, reproductive *or* procreative drive, libido; carnality, sexiness, goatishness, hot pants *and* horniness <nf>; romantic love, romanticism, **sentimentality,** susceptibility; lovesickness, lovelornness; ecstasy, rapture; enchantment 95.2

4 **infatuation,** infatuatedness, passing fancy; **crush** *and* mash *and* pash *and* case <nf>; **puppy love** *and* young love *and* calf love <nf>; love at first sight; falling in love

5 **parental love, natural affection,** mother *or* maternal love, father *or* paternal love; filial love; parental instinct

6 **love affair, affair,** affair of the heart, **amour, romance,** *affaire d'amour* <Fr>, romantic tie *or* bond, something between, thing <nf>, relationship, liaison, entanglement, involvement, intrigue; **dalliance,** amorous play, the love game, flirtation, hanky-panky, lollygagging <nf>; triangle, eternal triangle; illicit *or* unlawful love, forbidden *or* unsanctified love, adulterous affair, adultery, unfaithfulness, infidelity, cuckoldry; courtship, courting, wooing, pursuit, dating, dallying, betrothal, engagement, going together *and* going out with <nf>, going steady <nf>

7 **loveableness, likeableness,** lovability, likability, adoreableness, adorability, sweetness, loveliness, lovesomeness; cuddliness, cuddlesomeness; amiability, attractiveness 97.2, desirability, agreeability, amiability; **charm, appeal,** allurement 377; winsomeness, winning ways

8 Love, Cupid, Amor, Eros, Kama; Venus, Aphrodite, Astarte, Freya

9 <symbols> **cupid,** cupidon, amor, amourette, amoretto, *amorino* <Ital>; love-knot

10 **sweetheart, loved one, love, beloved, darling, dear, dear one,** dearly beloved, well-beloved, truelove, beloved object, **object of one's affections,** light of one's eye *or* life, light of love; sex object, prey, quarry, game; valentine

11 <nf terms> **sweetie, honey,** honeybunch, honeybunny, honey bun, honeypie, hon, main squeeze, sweetie-pie, sweet patootie, tootsie, tootsie-pie, tootsy-wootsy, dearie, baby, dreamboat, heartthrob, poopsy, poopsy-woopsy, sugar, sugarbun, sweets, cookie

12 **lover, admirer,** adorer, amorist; infatuate, paramour, **suitor, wooer,** pursuer, follower; **flirt,** coquette; vampire, vamp; conquest, catch; devotee; escort, companion, date *and* steady <nf>; significant other, soul mate; squeeze <nf>; old flame <nf>, new flame <nf>

13 **beau, inamorato, swain,** suitor, escort, man, gallant, cavalier, squire, esquire, *caballero* <Sp>; *amoroso* and *cavaliere servente* <Ital>; sugar daddy <nf>; gigolo; **boyfriend** *and* **fellow** *and* young man *and* flame <nf>; old man <nf>; love-

maker, lover-boy <nf>; **seducer, lady-killer,** ladies' man, sheik, philanderer, cocksman <nf>; Prince Charming, Lothario, Romeo; Casanova, Don Juan

14 **ladylove, inamorata,** *amorosa* <Ital>, lady, mistress, ladyfriend; lass, lassie, jo <Scot>, gill, jill, Dulcinea

15 <nf terms> **doll, angel,** baby, baby-doll, doll-baby, buttercup, ducks, ducky, pet, snookums, snooky, **girl, girlfriend,** sweetheart, best girl, dream girl; old lady

16 **favorite,** preference; **darling,** idol, jewel, apple of one's eye, fair-haired boy, man after one's own heart; **pet,** fondling, cosset, minion; spoiled child *or* darling, *enfant gâté* <Fr>, lap dog; teacher's pet; matinee idol; tin god, little tin god

17 **fiancé, fiancée,** bride-to-be, affianced, betrothed, future, intended <nf>

18 **loving couple,** soul mates, lovebirds, turtledoves, bill-and-cooers; newlyweds, honeymooners; star-crossed lovers; Romeo and Juliet, Anthony and Cleopatra, Tristan and Isolde, Pelléas and Mélisande, Abélard and Héloïse, Daphnis and Chloë, Aucassin and Nicolette; item <nf>

VERBS **19** **love, be fond of,** be in love with, **care for, like, fancy,** have a fancy for, take an interest in, **dote on** *or* **upon,** be desperately in love, burn with love; be partial to, have a soft spot in one's heart for, have a weakness *or* fondness for; court, woo, romance

20 <nf terms> **go for,** have an eye *or* eyes for, only have eyes for, be sweet on, have a crush *or* mash *or* case on; have it bad, carry a torch *or* the torch for, have designs on

21 **cherish, hold dear,** hold in one's heart *or* affections, think much *or* the world of, prize, treasure; **admire, regard,** esteem, revere; **adore, idolize,** worship, dearly love, think worlds *or* the world of, love to distraction

22 **fall in love, lose one's heart, become enamored,** be smitten; take to, **take a liking** *or* **fancy to,** take a shine to *and* fall for <nf>, become attached to, bestow one's affections on; fall head and ears *or* head over heels in love, be swept off one's feet; cotton to <nf>

23 **enamor, endear;** win one's heart, win the love *or* affections of, take the fancy of, make a hit with <nf>; **charm,** becharm, **infatuate,** hold in thrall, command one's affection, **fascinate,** attract, allure, grow on one, strike *or* tickle one's fancy, **captivate,** bewitch, enrapture, carry away, sweep off one's feet, turn one's head, inflame with love; **seduce,** vamp <nf>, draw on, tempt, tantalize

ADJS **24** **beloved, loved, dear, darling, precious;** pet, favorite; **adored, admired,** esteemed, revered; **cherished,** prized, treasured, held dear; **well-liked,** popular; **well-beloved,** dearly beloved, dear to one's heart, after one's heart *or* own heart, dear as the apple of one's eye

25 **endearing, lovable, likable, adorable,** admirable, **lovely,** lovesome, sweet, winning, winsome; **charming;** angelic, seraphic; caressable, kissable; cuddlesome, cuddly

26 **amorous,** amatory, amative, erotic; **sexual** 75.28,29; loverly, loverlike; **passionate, ardent,** impassioned; desirous 100.21,22; lascivious 665.29

27 **loving,** lovesome, **fond, adoring, devoted, affectionate,** demonstrative, **romantic, sentimental, tender,** soft <nf>, melting; lovelorn, lovesick, languishing; wifely, husbandly, conjugal, uxorious, faithful; parental, paternal, maternal, filial; charitable, caritative; self-loving, narcissistic

28 **enamored, charmed,** becharmed, **fascinated, captivated,** bewitched, enraptured, enchanted; **infatuated,** infatuate; **smitten,** heartsmitten, heartstruck, lovestruck, besotted with

29 **in love,** head over heels in love, over head and ears in love

30 **fond of, enamored of,** partial to, **in love with,** attached to, wedded to, devoted to, wrapped up in; **taken with,** smitten with, struck with

31 <nf terms> **crazy about,** mad *or* nuts *or* nutty *or* wild about, swacked on, sweet on, stuck on, gone on

ADVS **32** **lovingly, fondly, affectionately, tenderly,** dearly, **adoringly,** devotedly; amorously, ardently, passionately; with love, with affection, with all one's love

WORD ELEMENTS **33** phil-, philo-, -phily; -phile; -philic, -philous

105 EXCITEMENT

NOUNS **1** **excitement,** emotion, excitedness, **arousal, stimulation, exhilaration;** a high <nf>, manic state *or* condition

2 **thrill, sensation,** titillation; **tingle,** tingling; quiver, shiver, shudder, tremor, **tremor of excitement,** rush <nf>; flush, rush of emotion, surge of emotion

3 <nf terms> **kick, charge,** boot, bang, belt, blast, flash, hit, jolt, large charge, rush, upper, lift; jollies

4 **agitation, perturbation,** ferment, **turbulence, turmoil,** tumult, embroilment, uproar, **commotion,** disturbance, ado, *brouhaha* <Fr>, to-do <nf>; pell-mell, **flurry,** ruffle, bustle, stir, swirl, swirling, whirl, vortex, eddy, hurry, hurry-scurry, hurly-burly; fermentation, yeastiness, effervescence, ebullience, ebullition; fume

5 **trepidation,** trepidity; **disquiet,** disquietude, inquietude, **unrest, restlessness,** fidgetiness; **fidgets** *or* **shakes** *and* shivers *and* dithers *and* antsyness <nf>; **quivering, quavering, quaking, shaking,**

trembling; **quiver,** quaver, shiver, shudder, didder <Brit nf>, twitter, **tremor,** tremble, flutter; palpitation, pitapatation <nf>, pit-a-pat, pitter-patter; **throb,** throbbing; panting, heaving

6 **dither, tizzy** <nf>, swivet, foofaraw, **pucker** <nf>, **twitter,** twitteration <nf>, **flutter, fluster,** flusteration *and* flustration <nf>, **fret, fuss,** pother, bother, lather *and* stew *and* snit <nf>, flap; emotional crisis, *crise* <Fr>

7 **fever of excitement, fever pitch,** fever, heat, fever heat, fire; sexual excitement, rut

8 **fury, furor,** furore <Brit>, fire and fury; **ecstasy,** transport, **rapture,** ravishment; intoxication, abandon; **passion, rage,** raging *or* tearing passion, towering rage *or* passion; **frenzy,** orgy, orgasm; madness, craze, **delirium,** hysteria

9 **outburst,** outbreak, **burst, flare-up,** blaze, **explosion,** eruption, irruption, upheaval, convulsion, spasm, seizure, fit, paroxysm; storm, tornado, whirlwind, cyclone, hurricane, gale, tempest, gust; steroid rage, roid rage <nf>; road rage <nf>

10 **excitability,** excitableness, perturbability, agitability; emotional instability, explosiveness, eruptiveness, inflammability, combustibility, tempestuousness, violence, latent violence; **irascibility** 110.2; irritability, edginess, touchiness, prickliness, **sensitivity** 24.3; skittishness, **nervousness** 128; excessive emotion, hyperthymia, **emotionalism** 93.9

11 **excitation, excitement, arousal,** arousing, **stirring,** stirring up, working up, working into a lather <nf>, lathering up, whipping up, steaming up, **agitation, perturbation; stimulation, stimulus, exhilaration,** animation; electrification, galvanization; **provocation, irritation,** aggravation, exasperation, exacerbation, fomentation, inflammation, infuriation, **incitement** 375.4

VERBS 12 **excite, impassion, arouse, rouse,** blow up <old>, **stir, stir up,** set astir, stir the feelings, stir the blood, cause a stir *or* commotion, play on the feelings; **work up,** work into, work up into a lather <nf>, lather up, whip up, **key up,** steam up; **move** 375.12; **foment,** incite 375.17; turn on <nf>; **awaken,** awake, wake, waken, wake up; call up, summon up, call forth; **kindle,** enkindle, light up, light the fuse, **fire, inflame,** heat, warm, set fire to, set on fire, fire *or* warm the blood; fan, fan the fire *or* flame, blow the coals, stir the embers, feed the fire, add fuel to the fire *or* flame, pour oil on the fire; raise to a fever heat *or* pitch, bring to the boiling point; overexcite; **annoy, incense; enrage, infuriate;** frenzy, madden

13 **stimulate, whet, sharpen,** pique, provoke, quicken, enliven, liven up, pick up, jazz up <nf>, animate, **exhilarate,** invigorate, galvanize, fillip, give a fillip to; infuse life into, give new life to, revive, renew, resuscitate

14 **agitate, perturb, disturb, trouble, disquiet, discompose,** discombobulate <nf>, unsettle, **stir, ruffle, shake, shake up, shock, upset,** make waves, jolt, jar, rock, stagger, electrify, bring *or* pull one up short, give one a turn <nf>; fuss <nf>, flutter, flurry, rattle, disconcert, **fluster**

15 **thrill, tickle,** thrill to death *or* to pieces, give a thrill, **give one a kick** *or* boot *or* charge *or* bang *or* lift <nf>; intoxicate, fascinate, titillate, take one's breath away

16 **be excitable,** excite easily; **get excited, have a fit;** catch the infection; **explode, flare up,** flash up, flame up, fire up, catch fire, take fire; **fly into a passion,** go into hysterics, have a tantrum *or* temper tantrum, come apart; ride off in all directions at once, run around like a chicken with its head cut off; **rage, rave, rant,** rant and rave, rave on, bellow, **storm,** ramp; be angry, smolder, **seethe** 152.15

17 <nf terms> **work oneself up,** work oneself into a sweat, lather, have a short fuse, get hot under the collar, run a temperature, race one's motor, get into a dither *or* tizzy *or* swivet *or* pucker *or* stew; blow up, **blow one's top** *or* stack *or* cool, **flip,** flip out, flip one's lid *or* wig, pop one's cork, wig out, blow a gasket, fly off the handle, **hit the ceiling,** go ape, go hog wild, go bananas, lose one's cool, go off the deep end

18 <be excited> **thrill,** tingle, **tingle with excitement,** glow; swell, swell with emotion, be full of emotion; thrill to; turn on to *and* get high on *and* freak out on <nf>; heave, pant; **throb,** palpitate, go pit-a-pat; **tremble, shiver, quiver, quaver, quake,** flutter, twitter, **shake,** shake like an aspen leaf, have the shakes <nf>; **fidget,** have the fidgets *and* have ants in one's pants <nf>; toss and turn, toss, tumble, twist and turn, wriggle, wiggle, writhe, squirm; twitch, jerk

19 **change color,** turn color, go all colors; **pale,** whiten, blanch, turn pale; darken, look black; turn blue in the face; **flush, blush,** crimson, glow, mantle, color, redden, turn *or* get red

ADJS 20 **excited,** impassioned; **thrilled,** agog, tingling, tingly, atingle, aquiver, atwitter; **stimulated, exhilarated, high** <nf>; manic; **moved, stirred,** stirred up, **aroused, roused,** switched *or* turned on <nf>, on one's mettle, fired, inflamed, wrought up, **worked up,** all worked up, worked up into a lather <nf>, lathered up, whipped up, steamed up, keyed up, hopped up <nf>; turned-on <nf>; carried away; bursting, ready to burst; effervescent, yeasty, ebullient

21 **in a dither, in a tizzy** <nf>, in a swivet, in a foofaraw, **in a pucker** <nf>, in a quiver, **in a twitter,** in a flutter, all of a twitter *or* flutter, in a fluster, in a flurry, in a pother, in a bother, in a ferment, in a turmoil, in an uproar, in a stew *and* in a sweat <nf>, in a lather <nf>

22 **heated, passionate, warm, hot,** red-hot, flaming, **burning, fiery, glowing, fervent, fervid; feverish,** febrile, hectic, flushed; sexually excited, in rut 75.20; burning with excitement, het up <nf>, hot under the collar <nf>; seething, boiling, boiling over, steamy, steaming

23 **agitated, perturbed, disturbed, troubled, disquieted, upset,** antsy <nf>, unsettled, **discomposed, flustered,** ruffled, **shaken**

24 **turbulent,** tumultuous, tempestuous, boisterous, clamorous, uproarious

25 **frenzied, frantic; ecstatic,** transported, enraptured, ravished, in a transport *or* ecstasy; intoxicated, abandoned; orgiastic, orgasmic; raging, raving, roaring, bellowing, ramping, storming, howling, ranting, fulminating, frothing *or* foaming at the mouth; **wild,** hog-wild <nf>; **violent,** fierce, ferocious, feral, **furious; mad,** madding, **rabid,** maniac, maniacal, demonic, demoniacal, possessed; carried away, **distracted, delirious, beside oneself,** out of one's wits; uncontrollable, running mad, amok, berserk, hog-wild <nf>; **hysterical,** in hysterics; wild-eyed, wild-looking, haggard; blue in the face

26 **overwrought, overexcited, overstimulated, hyper** <nf>; **overcome,** overwhelmed, overpowered, overmastered; **upset,** *bouleversé* <Fr>

27 **restless,** restive, **uneasy,** unquiet, unsettled, unrestful, tense; **fidgety,** antsy <nf>, fussy, fluttery

28 **excitable, emotional,** highly emotional, overemotional, hyperthymic, perturbable, flappable <nf>, agitable; emotionally unstable; explosive, volcanic, eruptive, inflammable; irascible 110.19; irritable, edgy, touchy, wired <nf>, prickly, **sensitive** 24.13; **skittish,** startlish; **high-strung,** highly strung, high-spirited, mettlesome, high-mettled; **nervous**

29 **passionate, fiery, vehement,** hotheaded, **impetuous,** violent, volcanic, furious, fierce, **wild;** tempestuous, stormy, tornadic; simmering, volcanic, ready to burst forth *or* explode

30 **exciting, thrilling,** thrilly <nf>, **stirring, moving, breathtaking,** eye-popping <nf>; agitating, agitative, perturbing, disturbing, upsetting, troubling, disquieting, unsettling, distracting, jolting, jarring; heart-stirring, heart-thrilling, heart-swelling, heart-expanding, soul-stirring, spirit-stirring, deep-thrilling, mind-blowing <nf>; impressive, striking, telling; **provocative** 375.27, provoking, piquant, tantalizing; **inflammatory** 375.28; **stimulating,** stimulative, stimulatory; exhilarating, heady, intoxicating, maddening, ravishing; **electric,** galvanic, charged, overcharged; **overwhelming,** overpowering, overcoming, overmastering, more than flesh and blood can bear; suspensive, **suspenseful,** cliff-hanging <nf>

31 **penetrating, piercing,** stabbing, cutting, stinging, biting, keen, brisk, sharp, caustic, astringent

32 **sensational, lurid,** yellow, **melodramatic,** Barnumesque; spine-chilling, eye-popping <nf>; blood-and-thunder, cloak-and-dagger

ADVS 33 **excitedly, agitatedly,** perturbedly; with beating *or* leaping heart, with heart beating high, with heart going pitapat *or* pitter-patter <nf>, thrilling all over, with heart in mouth; with glistening eyes, all agog, all aquiver *or* atwitter *or* atingle; in a sweat *or* stew *or* dither *or* tizzy <nf>

34 **heatedly, passionately,** warmly, hotly, glowingly, fervently, fervidly, **feverishly**

35 **frenziedly, frantically,** wildly, furiously, violently, fiercely, madly, rabidly, distractedly, deliriously, till one is blue in the face <nf>

36 **excitingly, thrillingly,** stirringly, movingly; **provocatively,** provokingly; stimulatingly, exhilaratingly

106 INEXCITABILITY

NOUNS 1 **inexcitability,** inexcitableness, unexcitableness, **imperturbability,** imperturbableness, unflappability <nf>; steadiness, evenness; inirritability, unirritableness; **dispassion,** dispassionateness, unpassionateness, ataraxy *or* ataraxia; quietism; stoicism; **even temper,** steady *or* smooth temper, good *or* easy temper; unnervousness 129; **patience** 134; **impassiveness,** impassivity, stolidity; bovinity, dullness

2 **composure,** countenance; **calm, calmness,** calm disposition, **placidity, serenity,** tranquility, soothingness, peacefulness; mental composure, peace *or* calm of mind; calm *or* quiet mind, easy mind; resignation, resignedness, acceptance, fatalism, stoic calm; philosophicalness, philosophy, philosophic composure; **quiet,** quietness of mind *or* soul, quietude; decompression, imperturbation, indisturbance, unruffledness; **coolness,** coolheadedness, cool <nf>, sangfroid; icy calm; Oriental calm, Buddha-like composure; shantih, "the peace that passeth all understanding"—Bible

3 **equanimity,** equilibrium, equability, balance; **levelheadedness,** level head, well-balanced *or* well-regulated mind; **poise,** aplomb, **self-possession,**

self-control, self-command, self-restraint, restraint, possession, **presence of mind;** confidence, assurance, **self-confidence, self-assurance,** centered

4 **sedateness, staidness,** soberness, sobriety, sober-mindedness, **seriousness,** gravity, solemnity, sobersidedness; temperance, moderation; sobersides

5 **nonchalance,** casualness, offhandedness; easygoingness, lackadaisicalness; **indifference,** unconcern 102.2

VERBS 6 **be cool** *or* **composed,** not turn a hair, not have a hair out of place, keep one's cool <nf>, look as if butter wouldn't melt in one's mouth; **tranquilize,** calm 670.7; **set one's mind at ease** *or* **rest,** make one easy

7 **compose oneself, control oneself,** restrain oneself, collect oneself, **get hold of oneself,** get a grip on oneself <nf>, get organized, master one's feelings, regain one's composure; **calm down, cool off,** cool down, sober down, hold *or* keep one's temper, simmer down *and* cool it <nf>; **relax,** decompress, unwind, take it easy, lay *or* kick back <nf>; **forget it,** get it out of one's mind *or* head, drop it

8 <control one's feelings> **suppress, repress,** keep under, smother, stifle, choke *or* hold back, fight down *or* back, inhibit; sublimate

9 **keep cool,** keep one's cool <nf>, **keep calm,** keep one's head, keep one's shirt on *and* hang loose <nf>, not turn a hair; take things as they come, roll with the punches <nf>; keep a stiff upper lip

ADJS 10 **inexcitable, imperturbable,** undisturbable, unflappable <nf>; **unirritable,** inirritable; **dispassionate,** unpassionate; **steady;** stoic, stoical; **even-tempered; impassive,** stolid; bovine, dull; unnervous 129.2; **patient**

11 **unexcited, unperturbed,** undisturbed, untroubled, unagitated, **unruffled,** unflustered, unstirred, unimpassioned

12 **calm, placid,** quiet, **tranquil, serene,** peaceful; **cool, coolheaded,** cool as a cucumber <nf>; philosophical

13 **composed, collected,** recollected, **levelheaded; poised,** together <nf>, in equipoise, equanimous, equilibrious, **balanced,** well-balanced; **self-possessed,** self-controlled, controlled, self-restrained; confident, assured, **self-confident, self-assured;** temperate, pacific

14 **sedate, staid,** sober, sober-minded, **serious,** grave, solemn, sobersided; temperate, moderate

15 **nonchalant, blasé, indifferent,** unconcerned 102.7; **casual, offhand, relaxed, laid-back** *and* throwaway <nf>; **easygoing,** easy, free and easy, devil-may-care, lackadaisical, *dégagé* <Fr>

ADVS 16 inexcitably, **imperturbably,** inirritably, **dispassionately;** steadily; stoically; **calmly, placidly,** quietly, **tranquilly, serenely; coolly, composedly,** levelheadedly; impassively, stolidly, stodgily, stuffily

17 **sedately, staidly, soberly, seriously,** sobersidedly

18 **nonchalantly, casually, relaxedly,** offhandedly, easygoingly, lackadaisically

107 CONTENTMENT

NOUNS 1 **contentment, content,** contentedness, satisfiedness; **satisfaction,** entire satisfaction, fulfillment, gratification; ease, peace of mind, composure 106.2; comfort 121; **quality of life;** well-being, euphoria; **happiness** 95.2; **acceptance,** resignation, reconcilement, reconciliation; clear *or* clean conscience, dreamless sleep; serenity; satiety

2 **complacency,** complacence; **smugness, self-complacence** *or* self-complacency, self-approval, self-approbation, **self-satisfaction, self-content,** self-contentedness self-contentness; bovinity

3 **satisfactoriness, adequacy,** sufficiency 991; **acceptability,** admissibility, **tolerability,** agreeability, unobjectionability, unexceptionability, tenability, viability; competency

VERBS 4 **content, satisfy;** gratify; put *or* set at ease, set one's mind at ease *or* rest, achieve inner harmony; indulge, satiate

5 **be content, rest satisfied, rest easy,** rest and be thankful, be of good cheer, be reconciled to, take the good the gods provide, accept one's lot, rest on one's laurels, let well enough alone, let sleeping dogs lie, take the bitter with the sweet; come to terms with oneself, learn to live in one's own skin; have no kick coming <nf>, not complain, not worry, have nothing to complain about, not sweat it *and* cool it *and* go with the flow <nf>; content oneself with, settle for; settle for less, take half a loaf, lower one's sights, cut one's losses; be pleased 95.12; have one's heart's desire

6 **be satisfactory, do,** suffice 991.4; **suit,** suit one down to the ground, serve, meet the needs of

ADJS 7 **content, contented, satisfied;** pleased 95.13; happy; **easy, at ease,** at one's ease, easygoing; composed 106.13; **comfortable** 121.11, of good comfort; fulfilled, gratified; euphoric, eupeptic; carefree, without care, *sans souci* <Fr>; accepting, resigned, reconciled; uncomplaining, unrepining

8 **untroubled, unbothered, undisturbed,** unperturbed 106.11, unworried, unvexed, unplagued, untormented

9 **well-content, well-pleased,** well-contented, **well-satisfied,** highly satisfied, satiated, full, full-up

10 **complacent,** bovine; **smug, self-complacent, self-satisfied,** self-content, **self-contented**

11 **satisfactory, satisfying;** sufficient 991.6, sufficing, **adequate, enough,** commensurate, proportionate, proportionable, ample, equal to, competent

12 **acceptable,** admissible, **agreeable,** unobjectionable, unexceptionable, tenable, viable; **OK** *and* okay *and* all right *and* alright <nf>; **passable,** good enough, not bad, so-so

13 **tolerable, bearable, endurable, supportable, sufferable**

ADVS 14 **contentedly,** to one's heart's content; **satisfiedly,** with satisfaction; **complacently, smugly,** self-complacently, self-satisfiedly, self-contentedly

15 **satisfactorily,** satisfyingly; **acceptably, agreeably,** admissibly; sufficiently, adequately, commensurately, amply, enough; **tolerably, passably**

16 **to one's satisfaction,** to one's delight, to one's great glee; to one's taste, to the king's *or* queen's taste

108 DISCONTENT

NOUNS 1 **discontent,** discontentment, discontentedness; **dissatisfaction,** unsatisfaction, dissatisfiedness, unfulfillment; **resentment,** envy 154; **restlessness, restiveness, uneasiness,** unease; malaise; rebelliousness 327.3; disappointment 132; unpleasure 96; unhappiness 112.2; ill humor 110; **disgruntlement,** sulkiness, sourness, petulance, peevishness, querulousness; vexation of spirit; cold comfort; divine discontent; Faustianism

2 **unsatisfactoriness,** dissatisfactoriness; **inadequacy,** insufficiency 992; **unacceptability,** inadmissibility, unsuitability, undesirability, objectionability, untenability, indefensibility; **intolerability** 98.9

3 **malcontent,** *frondeur* <Fr>; **complainer,** complainant, **faultfinder, grumbler,** growler, smellfungus, griper, grouser, croaker, carper, peevish *or* petulant *or* querulous person, whiner; reactionary, reactionist; rebel 327.5; spoilsport; dissatisfied customer, angry young man

4 <nf terms> **grouch, kvetch,** kicker, griper, moaner, moaning Minnie <Brit>, crank, crab, grump, beefer, bellyacher, bitcher, sorehead, picklepuss, sourpuss

VERBS 5 **dissatisfy, discontent, disgruntle, displease,** fail to satisfy, be inadequate, not fill the bill, disappoint, leave much *or* a lot to be desired, dishearten, disillusion, put out <nf>; **be discontented, complain**

6 <nf terms> **beef, bitch, kvetch,** bellyache, boo, hiss, carp, crab, gripe, grouch, grouse, grump, have an attitude, kick, moan, piss, make a stink, squawk

ADJS 7 **discontented, dissatisfied, disgruntled,** unaccepting, unaccommodating, **displeased,** less than pleased, let down, disappointed; **unsatisfied, ungratified,** unfulfilled; resentful, dog-in-the-manger; envious 154.4; restless, restive, uneasy; rebellious 327.11; malcontent, malcontented, **complaining,** complaintful, critical of, pejorative, sour, **faultfinding,** grumbling, growling, murmuring, muttering, griping, croaking, **peevish, petulant,** sulky, brooding, **querulous,** querulant, whiny; unhappy 112.21; out of humor 110.17

8 <nf terms> **grouchy, kvetchy,** cranky, beefing, crabby, crabbing, grousing, griping, bellyaching, bitching

9 **unsatisfactory,** dissatisfactory; **unsatisfying, ungratifying,** unfulfilling; **displeasing** 98.17; disappointing, disheartening, not up to expectation, not good enough, substandard; **inadequate,** incommensurate, **insufficient** 992.9; unpopular, not up to snuff <nf>

10 **unacceptable,** inadmissible, unsuitable, undesirable, **objectionable,** exceptionable, impossible, untenable, indefensible; **intolerable** 98.25; rejected

ADVS 11 **discontentedly, dissatisfiedly**

12 **unsatisfactorily,** dissatisfactorily; **unsatisfyingly, ungratifyingly; inadequately, insufficiently; unacceptably,** inadmissibly, unsuitably, undesirably, objectionably; intolerably 98.30

109 CHEERFULNESS

NOUNS 1 **cheerfulness,** cheeriness, **good cheer, cheer,** cheery vein *or* mood; blitheness, blithesomeness; **gladness,** felicity, gladsomeness; **happiness** 95.2; **pleasantness,** winsomeness, geniality, conviviality; brightness, radiance, **sunniness;** sanguineness, sanguinity, sanguine humor, euphoric *or* eupeptic mein; optimism, rosy expectation, hopefulness; **irrepressibility,** irrepressibleness

2 **good humor, good spirits,** good cheer; **high spirits, exhilaration,** rare good humor; *joie de vivre* <Fr>

3 **lightheartedness,** lightsomeness, lightness, levity; **buoyancy,** buoyance, resilience, resiliency, bounce <nf>, springiness; springy step; **jauntiness,** perkiness, debonairness, carefreeness; **breeziness,** airiness, pertness, chirpiness, light heart

4 **gaiety,** gayness, *allégresse* <Fr>; **liveliness, vivacity, vitality,** life, **animation, spiritedness, spirit,** esprit, élan, **sprightliness,** high spirits, zestfulness, zest, vim, zip <nf>, vigor, verve, gusto, **exuberance,** heartiness; **spirits,** animal spirits; piss and vinegar <nf>; **friskiness,** skittishness, coltishness, rompishness, rollicksomeness, capersomeness; **sportiveness, playfulness, frolicsomeness,** gamesomeness, kittenishness

5 **merriment,** merriness; **hilarity,** hilariousness; **joy,**

joyfulness, joyousness; **glee,** gleefulness, high glee; **jollity,** jolliness, **joviality,** jocularity, jocundity; frivolity, **levity; mirth,** mirthfulness, **amusement** 743; **fun,** good time; laughter 116.4

VERBS 6 exude cheerfulness, radiate cheer, not have a care in the world, **beam,** burst *or* brim with cheer, glow, radiate, sparkle, sing, lilt, whistle, **chirp,** chirrup, chirp like a cricket; walk on air, dance, skip, caper, frolic, gambol, romp, caracole; **smile,** laugh 116.8

7 **cheer,** gladden, **brighten,** put in good humor; **encourage, hearten,** pick up <nf>; **inspire,** inspirit, warm the spirits, **raise the spirits,** elevate one's mood, buoy up, boost, give a lift <nf>, put one on top of the world *and* on cloud nine <nf>; **exhilarate,** animate, invigorate, liven, enliven, vitalize; **rejoice,** rejoice the heart, do the heart good

8 **elate, exalt,** elevate, lift, uplift, flush

9 **cheer up, take heart,** drive dull care away; **brighten up,** light up, **perk up; buck up** *and* brace up *and* chirk up <nf>; come out of it, snap out of it <nf>, revive

10 **be of good cheer,** bear up, **keep one's spirits up,** keep one's chin up <nf>, keep one's pecker up <Brit nf>, keep a stiff upper lip <nf>, grin and bear it

ADJS 11 **cheerful, cheery,** of good cheer, in good spirits; in high spirits, exalted, elated, exhilarated, high <nf>; irrepressible; **blithe,** blithesome; **glad, gladsome; happy,** happy as a clam *or* a sand boy *or* a lark, on top of the world, sitting on top of the world, sitting pretty, on cloud nine, over the moon <nf>; **pleasant, genial,** winsome; **bright, sunny,** bright and sunny, **radiant,** riant, sparkling, beaming, glowing, flushed, perky, rosy, smiling, laughing; sanguine, sanguineous, euphoric, eupeptic, ebullient, exhilarated; optimistic, hopeful; **irrepressible;** up <nf>

12 **lighthearted,** light, lightsome; **buoyant,** corky <nf>, resilient; **jaunty,** perky, **debonair, carefree,** free and easy; **breezy,** airy

13 **pert,** chirk <nf>, chirrupy, **chirpy, chipper** <nf>

14 **gay,** gay as a lark; **spirited,** sprightly, **lively, animated, vivacious,** vital, zestful, zippy <nf>, **exuberant,** hearty; **frisky,** antic, skittish, coltish, rompish, capersome; **full of beans** *and* **feeling one's oats** <nf>, full of piss and vinegar <nf>; **sportive, playful,** playful as a kitten, kittenish, **frolicsome,** gamesome; rollicking, rollicky, rollicksome

15 **merry, mirthful, hilarious; joyful, joyous,** rejoicing; **gleeful,** gleesome; **jolly,** buxom; **jovial,** jocund, jocular; **frivolous;** laughter-loving, mirth-loving, risible; merry as a cricket *or* grig, "as merry as the day is long"—Shakespeare; tickled to death <nf>, tickled pink <nf>, high as a kite <nf>

16 **cheering, gladdening; encouraging, heartening,** heartwarming, uplifting; **inspiring,** inspiriting; **exhilarating,** animating, enlivening, invigorating; cheerful, cheery, glad, joyful

ADVS 17 **cheerfully,** cheerily, with good cheer, with a cheerful heart; irrepressibly; **lightheartedly,** lightly; jauntily, perkily, airily; **pleasantly,** genially, blithely; **gladly, happily, joyfully,** smilingly; optimistically, hopefully

18 **gaily, exuberantly, heartily, spiritedly, animatedly, vivaciously,** zestfully, with zest, with vim, with élan, with zip <nf>, with verve, with gusto

19 **merrily, gleefully, hilariously; jovially,** jocundly, jocularly; frivolously; **mirthfully,** laughingly

PHRS 20 cheer up!, every cloud has a silver lining; don't let it get you down, *illegitimati non carborundum* <L, don't let the bastards grind you down>; chin up!, keep your pecker up! <Brit>; it's always darkest before the dawn

110 ILL HUMOR

NOUNS 1 **ill humor,** bad humor, **bad temper,** rotten *or* ill *or* evil temper, **ill nature,** filthy *or* rotten *or* evil humor; **sourness,** biliousness, liverishness; choler, bile, gall, spleen; **abrasiveness,** causticity, corrosiveness, asperity 144.8; **anger** 152.5; discontent 108

2 **irascibility, irritability,** excitability, short *or* quick temper, short fuse <nf>; **crossness,** disagreeableness, disagreeability, gruffness, shortness, peevishness, querulousness, fretfulness, crabbedness, **crankiness, testiness,** crustiness, huffiness, huffishness, churlishness, bearishness, snappishness, waspishness; **perversity,** cross-grainedness, fractiousness

3 <nf terms> **crabbiness, grouchiness,** cantankerousness, crustiness, grumpiness *or* grumpishness, cussedness, huffiness *or* huffishness, **meanness, orneriness,** bitchiness, cussedness, feistiness, ugliness, miffiness, saltiness, scrappiness, shirtiness <Brit>, soreheadedness

4 **hot temper, temper,** quick *or* short temper, irritable temper, warm temper, fiery temper, fierce temper, short fuse <nf>, pepperiness, feistiness *and* spunkiness <nf>, **hotheadedness,** hot blood; sharp tongue

5 **touchiness, tetchiness,** ticklishness, prickliness, quickness to take offense, miffiness <nf>, **sensitiveness,** oversensitiveness, hypersensitiveness, sensitivity, oversensitivity, hypersensitivity, thin skin; temperamentalness

6 **petulance** *or* petulancy, **peevishness,** pettishness, **querulousness, fretfulness,** resentfulness; shrewishness, vixenishness

7 **contentiousness,** quarrelsomeness 456.3; **disputatiousness, argumentativeness,** litigiousness; **belligerence**

8 **sullenness, sulkiness, surliness, moroseness, glumness,** grumness, grimness, mumpishness, dumpishness, dourness, *bouderie* <Fr>; **moodiness,** moodishness; mopishness, mopiness <nf>; dejection, melancholy 112.5

9 **scowl, frown,** lower, **glower, pout,** moue, mow, grimace, wry face; sullen looks, black looks, hangdog look, **long face**

10 **sulks,** sullens, **mopes,** mumps, dumps, grumps <nf>, frumps <Brit nf>, **blues,** blue devils, mulligrubs, **pouts**

11 <ill-humored person> **sorehead, grouch, curmudgeon, grump, crank,** crab, **crosspatch,** feist *or* fice <nf>, wasp, **bear,** grizzly bear, pit bull, junkyard dog <nf>; fury, Tartar, dragon, ugly customer <nf>; **hothead,** hotspur; fire-eater; sulker, churl, bellyacher

12 **bitch** <nf>, **shrew, vixen,** virago, termagant, brimstone, fury, witch, beldam, cat, tigress, she-wolf, she-devil, spitfire; fishwife; **scold,** common scold, harpy, nag, Xanthippe; old bag; battle-ax <nf>

VERBS 13 have a temper, have a short fuse <nf>, have a devil in one, be possessed of the devil; be cross, get out on the wrong side of the bed

14 **sulk, mope,** mope around; grizzle <chiefly Brit nf>, grump *and* **grouch** *and* **bitch** <nf>, **fret;** get oneself in a sulk; have the blues, be down in the dumps

15 **look sullen,** look black, look black as thunder, gloom, pull *or* make *or* have a long face; **frown, scowl,** knit the brow, lower, **glower, pout,** make a moue *or* mow, grimace, make a wry face, make a lip, hang one's lip, thrust out one's lower lip

16 **sour,** acerbate, exacerbate; **embitter,** bitter, envenom

ADJS 17 **out of humor,** out of temper, out of sorts, **in a bad humor,** in a shocking humor, feeling evil <nf>; **abrasive,** caustic, corrosive, acid; angry; discontented 108.5

18 **ill-humored, bad-tempered,** ill-tempered, evil-humored, evil-tempered, **ill-natured,** ill-affected, ill-disposed

19 **irascible, irritable,** excitable, flappable <nf>; **cross, cranky, testy;** cankered, crabbed, spiteful, spleeny, splenetic, churlish, bearish, snappish, waspish; **gruff,** grumbly, grumbling, growling; **disagreeable; perverse,** fractious, cross-grained

20 <nf terms> **crabby, grouchy,** cantankerous, crusty, grumpy *or* grumpish, cussed, huffy *or* huffish, mean, mean as a junkyard dog, ornery, bitchy, feisty, ugly, miffy, salty, scrappy, shirty <Brit>, soreheaded

21 **touchy, tetchy,** miffy <nf>, ticklish, prickly, quick to take offense, **thin-skinned, sensitive,** oversensitive, hypersensitive, high-strung, highly strung, temperamental, prima-donnaish

22 **peevish, petulant,** pettish, **querulous, fretful,** resentful; catty; shrewish, vixenish, vixenly; nagging, naggy

23 **sour,** soured, **sour-tempered,** vinegarish; prune-faced <nf>; **choleric, dyspeptic, bilious,** liverish, jaundiced; **bitter,** embittered

24 **sullen, sulky, surly, morose,** dour, mumpish, dumpish, **glum,** grum, grim; **moody,** moodish; **mopish,** mopey <nf>, moping; **glowering,** lowering, **scowling, frowning;** dark, black; black-browed, beetle-browed; dejected, melancholy 112.23; somber

25 **hot-tempered, hotheaded, passionate,** hot, fiery, peppery, feisty, spunky <nf>, **quick-tempered, short-tempered;** hasty, quick, explosive, volcanic, combustible

26 **contentious,** quarrelsome 456.17; **disputatious,** controversial, litigious, polemic, polemical; **argumentative,** argumental; on the warpath, looking for trouble; scrappy <nf>; cat-and-doggish, cat-and-dog; **bellicose, belligerent**

ADVS 27 **ill-humoredly, ill-naturedly; irascibly, irritably, crossly, crankily, testily,** huffily, cantankerously <nf>, crabbedly, sourly, churlishly, crustily, bearishly, snappily; perversely, fractiously, cross-grainedly

28 **peevishly, petulantly,** pettishly, **querulously, fretfully**

29 **grouchily** *and* **crabbily** *and* grumpily <nf>, grumblingly

30 **sullenly, sulkily, surlily, morosely,** mumpishly, glumly, grumly, grimly; moodily, mopingly; gloweringly, loweringly, scowlingly, frowningly

111 SOLEMNITY

NOUNS 1 **solemnity, solemness, dignity, soberness, sobriety, gravity,** *gravitas* <L>, weightiness, **somberness, grimness; sedateness, staidness;** demureness, decorousness; **seriousness, earnestness, thoughtfulness, sober-mindedness,** sobersidedness; sobersides, humorlessness; long face, straight face; **formality** 580

VERBS 2 honor the occasion, keep a straight face, look serious, compose one's features, wear an earnest frown; repress a smile, not crack a smile <nf>, wipe the smile off one's face, keep from laughing, make a long face

ADJS 3 **solemn, dignified, sober, grave,** unsmiling, weighty, **somber,** frowning, **grim; sedate, staid;** demure, decorous; **serious, earnest, thoughtful,** pensive; **sober-minded,** sober-sided; straight-faced, long-faced, grim-faced, grim-visaged, stone-faced, stony-faced; sober as a judge, grave as an undertaker; **formal** 580.7

ADVS 4 **solemnly, soberly,** gravely, somberly, grimly; **sedately, staidly,** demurely, decorously; with dignity, **seriously, earnestly,** thoughtfully, sober-mindedly, sobersidedly; with a straight face; formally 580.11

112 SADNESS

NOUNS 1 **sadness,** sadheartedness, weight *or* burden of sorrow; heaviness, **heavyheartedness,** heavy heart, **heaviness of heart;** pathos, bathos

2 **unhappiness,** infelicity; displeasure 96.1; discontent 108; **uncheerfulness,** cheerlessness; **joylessness,** unjoyfulness; mirthlessness, unmirthfulness, humorlessness, infestivity; **grimness; wretchedness, misery**

3 **dejection, depression, oppression,** dejectedness, **downheartedness,** downcastness; **discouragement, disheartenment,** dispiritedness; *Schmerz* and *Weltschmerz* <Ger>; malaise 96.1; lowness, lowness *or* depression *or* oppression of spirit, downer *and* down trip <nf>; chill, chilling effect; **low spirits,** drooping spirits, sinking heart, funk; despondence *or* **despondency,** spiritlessness, heartlessness; black *or* blank despondency, "Slough of Despond"—Bunyan; demotivation, hopelessness 125, **despair** 125.2, pessimism 125.6, gloom and doom, suicidal despair, death wish, self-destructive urge; weariness of life, *taedium vitae* <L>; sloth, acedia, noonday demon

4 **hypochondria,** hypochondriasis, morbid anxiety

5 **melancholy, melancholia,** melancholiness, spleen <old>; gentle melancholy, romantic melancholy; **pensiveness, wistfulness,** tristfulness; **nostalgia,** homesickness, nostalgy <old>, *mal du pays* <Fr>

6 **blues** *and* blue devils *and* mulligrubs <nf>, mumps, **dumps** <nf>, **doldrums,** dismals, dolefuls <nf>, blahs *and* mopes *and* megrims *and* sulks <nf>

7 **gloom, gloominess,** darkness, murk, murkiness, **dismalness, bleakness, grimness, somberness, gravity, solemnity; dreariness,** drearisomeness; wearifulness, wearisomeness

8 **glumness,** grumness, **moroseness, sullenness,** sulkiness, **moodiness,** mumpishness, dumpishness; mopishness, mopiness <nf>

9 **heartache, aching heart,** bleeding heart, grieving heart; heartsickness, heartsoreness; **heartbreak, broken heart,** brokenheartedness, heartbrokenness

10 **sorrow,** sorrowing, **grief, care,** carking care, **woe;** heartgrief, heartfelt grief; languishment, pining; **anguish, misery, agony;** prostrating grief, prostration; **lamentation** 115

11 **sorrowfulness, mournfulness,** ruefulness, **woefulness, dolefulness,** woesomeness <old>, dolorousness, **plaintiveness,** plangency, grievousness, aggrievedness, lugubriousness, funerealness; weeping and wailing and gnashing of teeth; *lacrimae rerum* <L>, **tearfulness** 115.2

12 **disconsolateness,** disconsolation, **inconsolability,** inconsolableness, unconsolability, comfortlessness; **desolation,** desolateness; forlornness

13 **sourpuss** *and* picklepuss *and* gloomy Gus <nf>, moaning Minnie <Brit nf>; mope, brooder; **melancholic,** melancholiac; depressive; Eeyore

14 **killjoy, spoilsport,** grinch *and* crepehanger *and* drag <nf>; damp, damper, **wet blanket,** party pooper; gloomster *and* doomster <nf>, doomsdayer, apocalypticist, apocalyptician, awfulizer <nf>, crapehanger; skeleton at the feast; pessimist 125.7

VERBS 15 hang one's head, pull *or* make a long face, look blue, sing *or* get *or* have the blues <nf>; drag one down; carry the weight *or* woe of the world on one's shoulders; hang crape <nf>, apocalypticize, catastrophize, awfulize <nf>

16 **lose heart,** despond, give way, give oneself up *or* over to; despondency; **despair** 125.10, sink into despair, throw up one's hands in despair, be *or* become suicidal, lose the will to live; **droop,** sink, languish, mope; reach *or* plumb the depths, touch *or* hit bottom, hit rock bottom

17 **grieve, sorrow; weep,** mourn 115.8,10; be dumb with grief; **pine,** pine away; **brood over, mope, fret,** take on <nf>; **eat one's heart out,** break one's heart over; **agonize,** ache, bleed

18 **sadden,** darken, cast a pall *or* gloom upon, weigh *or* weigh heavy upon; **deject, depress, oppress, crush,** press down, hit one like a ton of bricks <nf>, **cast down,** lower, lower the spirits, get one down <nf>, take the wind out of one's sails, rain on one's parade, burst one's bubble, **discourage, dishearten,** take the heart out of, **dispirit;** damp, dampen, damp *or* dampen the spirits; dash, knock down, beat down; sink, sink one's soul, plunge one into despair

19 aggrieve, oppress, **grieve, sorrow,** plunge one into sorrow, embitter; draw tears, bring to tears; **anguish, tear up** *and* **cut up** <nf>, wring *or* pierce *or* lacerate *or* rend the heart, pull at the heartstrings; be cut up; afflict 96.16, torment 96.18; **break one's heart, make one's heart bleed;** desolate, leave an aching void; prostrate, break down, crush, bear down, inundate, overwhelm

ADJS 20 **sad,** saddened; sadhearted, **sad of heart;**

heavyhearted, heavy; oppressed, weighed upon, weighed *or* weighted down, bearing the woe of the world, burdened *or* laden with sorrow; sad-faced, long-faced; sad-eyed; sad-voiced

21 unhappy, uncheerful, uncheery, **cheerless, joyless, unjoyful,** unsmiling; mirthless, unmirthful, humorless, infestive; funny as a crutch <nf>; **grim; out of humor,** out of sorts, in bad humor *or* spirits; **sorry,** sorryish; discontented 108.5; **wretched, miserable;** pleasureless 96.20

22 dejected, depressed, downhearted, down, downcast, cast down, bowed down, subdued; **discouraged, disheartened, dispirited,** dashed; **low, feeling low,** low-spirited, **in low spirits; down in the mouth** <nf>, **in the doldrums, down in the dumps** *and* **in the dumps** *and* in the doleful dumps <nf>, in the depths; **despondent,** desponding; **despairing** 125.12, weary of life, suicidal, world-weary; pessimistic 125.16; spiritless, heartless, **woebegone; drooping,** droopy, languishing, pining, haggard; hypochondriac *or* hypochondriacal

23 melancholy, melancholic, splenetic <old>, **blue** <nf>, funky <nf>; atrabilious, atrabiliar; **pensive, wistful,** tristful; **nostalgic,** homesick

24 gloomy, dismal, murky, bleak, grim, somber, sombrous, **solemn, grave;** sad, *triste* <Fr>, **funereal,** funebrial, crepehanging <nf>, saturnine; **dark,** black, gray; **dreary,** drear, drearisome; weary, weariful, wearisome

25 glum, grum, **morose, sullen,** sulky, mumpish, dumpish, long-faced, crestfallen, chapfallen; **moody,** moodish, **brooding,** broody; mopish, mopey <nf>, **moping**

26 sorrowful, sorrowing, sorrowed, **mournful, rueful, woeful, woesome** <old>, **doleful, plaintive,** plangent; anguished; dolorous, **grievous, lamentable,** lugubrious; **tearful; care-worn;** grieved, **grief-stricken,** griefful, aggrieved, in grief, plunged in grief, dumb with grief, prostrated by grief, cut-up *and* torn-up <nf>, **inconsolable**

27 sorrow-stricken, sorrow-wounded, sorrow-struck, sorrow-torn, sorrow-worn, sorrow-wasted, sorrow-beaten, sorrow-blinded, sorrow-clouded, sorrow-shot, sorrow-burdened, sorrow-laden, sorrow-sighing, sorrow-sobbing, sorrow-sick

28 disconsolate, inconsolable, unconsolable, comfortless, prostrate *or* prostrated, **forlorn; desolate,** *désolé* <Fr>; sick, **sick at heart, heartsick,** soul-sick, heartsore

29 overcome, crushed, borne-down, overwhelmed, inundated, spazzed-out, **stricken, cut up** <nf>, **desolated,** prostrate *or* prostrated, broken-down, undone; **heart-stricken,** heart-struck; **brokenhearted,** heartbroken

30 depressing, depressive, depressant, **oppressive; discouraging, disheartening, dispiriting;** morale-sapping, worst-case, downbeat <nf>

ADVS **31 sadly, gloomily, dismally, drearily,** heavily, bleakly, grimly, somberly, sombrously, solemnly, funereally, gravely, with a long face; **depressingly**

32 unhappily, uncheerfully, cheerlessly, joylessly, unjoyfully

33 dejectedly, downheartedly; discouragedly, disheartenedly, dispiritedly; despondently, despairingly, spiritlessly, heartlessly; **disconsolately,** inconsolably, unconsolably, forlornly

34 melancholily, pensively, wistfully, tristfully; nostalgically

35 glumly, grumly, **morosely, sullenly; moodily,** moodishly, broodingly, broodily; mopishly, mopily <nf>, mopingly

36 sorrowfully, mournfully, ruefully, woefully, woesomely <old>, **dolefully, dolorously, plaintively, grievously,** grieffully, lugubriously; with a broken voice; **heartbrokenly,** brokenheartedly; **tearfully,** with tears in one's eyes

113 REGRET

NOUNS **1 regret, regrets,** regretting, regretfulness; **remorse,** remorsefulness, remorse of conscience, ayenbite of inwit <old>; **shame,** shamefulness, shamefacedness, shamefastness; **sorrow, grief, sorriness,** repining; **contrition,** contriteness, attrition; bitterness; apologies; wistfulness 100.4

2 compunction, qualm, qualms, qualmishness, scruples, scrupulosity, scrupulousness, pang, pangs, **pangs of conscience,** throes, sting *or* pricking *or* twinge *or* twitch of conscience, touch of conscience, **voice of conscience,** pricking of heart, better self

3 self-reproach, self-reproachfulness, **self-accusation, self-condemnation,** self-conviction, self-punishment, self-humiliation, self-debasement, **self-hatred,** self-flagellation; hair shirt; self-analysis, soul-searching, examination of conscience

4 penitence, repentance, change of heart; apology, humble *or* heartfelt apology, abject apology; better nature, good angel, guardian angel; reformation 858.2; deathbed repentance; mea culpa; **penance** 658.3; wearing a hairshirt *or* sackcloth *or* sackcloth and ashes, mortification of the flesh

5 penitent, confessor, "a sadder and a wiser man"—Coleridge; **prodigal son,** prodigal returned; Magdalen

VERBS **6 regret, deplore, repine, be sorry for; rue,** rue the day; **bemoan, bewail;** curse one's folly, **reproach oneself,** kick oneself <nf>, bite one's tongue, accuse *or* condemn *or* blame *or* convict *or* punish oneself, flagellate oneself, wear a hair shirt, make oneself miserable, humiliate *or* debase oneself, hate oneself for one's actions, hide one's face in shame; examine one's conscience, search one's soul, consult *or* heed one's better self, analyze *or* search one's motives; cry over spilled milk, waste time in regret

7 **repent, think better of,** change one's mind, have second thoughts; laugh out of the other side of one's mouth; **plead guilty,** own oneself in the wrong, humble oneself, **apologize** 658.5, beg pardon *or* forgiveness, throw oneself on the mercy of the court; do penance 658.6; reform

ADJS 8 **regretful, remorseful,** full of remorse, **ashamed,** shameful, shamefaced, shamefast, **sorry, rueful, repining,** unhappy about; **conscience-stricken,** conscience-smitten; **self-reproachful,** self-reproaching, self-accusing, self-condemning, self-convicting, self-punishing, self-flagellating, self-humiliating, self-debasing, self-hating; wistful 100.23

9 **penitent, repentant; penitential,** penitentiary; **contrite,** abject, humble, humbled, **sheepish, apologetic,** touched, softened, melted

10 **regrettable,** much to be regretted; **deplorable** 1000.9

ADVS 11 **regretfully, remorsefully,** sorrily, ruefully, unhappily

12 **penitently,** repentantly, penitentially; **contritely,** abjectly, **humbly, sheepishly, apologetically**

114 UNREGRETFULNESS

NOUNS 1 **unregretfulness, unremorsefulness, unsorriness,** unruefulness; **remorselessness,** regretlessness, sorrowlessness; **shamelessness,** unashamedness

2 **impenitence,** impenitentness; nonrepentance, irrepentance; **uncontriteness,** unabjectness; seared conscience, heart of stone, callousness 94.3; **hardness of heart,** hardness, induration, obduracy; **defiance** 327.454,2; **insolence** 142; no regrets, no remorse

VERBS 3 **harden one's heart,** steel oneself; **have no regrets,** not look backward, not cry over spilled milk; have no shame, have no remorse; feel nothing

ADJS 4 **unregretful,** unregretting, **unremorseful, unsorry, unsorrowful,** unrueful; **remorseless,** regretless, sorrowless, griefless; unsorrowing, ungrieving, unrepining; **shameless,** unashamed

5 **impenitent, unrepentant,** unrepenting, unrecanting; **uncontrite,** unabject; untouched, unsoftened, unmelted, callous 94.12; hard, hardened, obdurate; **defiant** 453.8,454.7; **insolent** 142.9

6 **unregretted, unrepented,** unatoned

ADVS 7 **unregretfully, unremorsefully,** unruefully; **remorselessly,** sorrowlessly, impenitently, shamelessly, unashamedly; **without regret,** without looking back, **without remorse,** without compunction, without any qualms *or* scruples

115 LAMENTATION

NOUNS 1 **lamentation,** lamenting, **mourning, moaning, grieving, sorrowing, wailing, bewailing, bemoaning,** keening, howling, ululation; **sorrow** 112.10; woe, misery

2 **weeping, sobbing, crying,** bawling; blubbering, whimpering, sniveling; **tears,** flood of tears, fit of crying; cry *and* good cry <nf>; **tearfulness, weepiness** <nf>, lachrymosity, melting mood; tearful eyes, swimming *or* brimming *or* overflowing eyes; **tear,** teardrop, lachryma; lacrimatory, tear bottle

3 **lament, plaint,** *planctus* <L>; **murmur,** mutter; **moan, groan; whine, whimper; wail,** wail of woe; **sob,** *cri du coeur* <Fr>, **cry,** outcry, scream, **howl,** yowl, bawl, yawp, keen, ululation; jeremiad, tirade, dolorous tirade

4 **complaint, grievance, peeve,** pet peeve, **groan; dissent,** protest 333.2; hard luck story <nf>, sob story, tale of woe; **complaining,** scolding, groaning, **faultfinding** 510.4, sniping, destructive criticism, **grumbling, murmuring;** whining, petulance, peevishness, querulousness

5 <nf terms> **beef, kick, gripe,** kvetch, grouse, bellyache, howl, holler, **squawk,** bitch; **beefing, grousing, kicking, griping,** kvetching, **bellyaching,** squawking, **bitching,** yapping

6 **dirge, funeral** *or* **death song,** coronach, keen, elegy, epicedium, requiem, monody, threnody, threnode, coronach <Ir>, knell, death knell, passing bell, funeral *or* dead march, muffled drums; eulogy, funeral *or* graveside oration

7 <mourning garments> **mourning, weeds,** widow's weeds, crape, black; deep mourning; sackcloth, sackcloth and ashes; cypress, cypress lawn, yew; mourning band; mourning ring

8 **lamenter, griever,** mourner 309.7; moaner, weeper, sniveler; **complainer,** faultfinder, smellfungus, malcontent 108.3

9 <nf terms> **grouch, kvetch,** kicker, griper, moaner, moaning Minnie <Brit>, crank, crab, crybaby, blubberer, grouser, beefer, bellyacher, bitcher, sorehead, picklepuss, sourpuss

VERBS 10 **lament, mourn, moan, grieve, sorrow,** keen, weep over *or* for, **bewail, bemoan, deplore, repine, sigh,** rue, give sorrow words; sing the blues <nf>, elegize, dirge, knell, toll the knell; pay one's last respects; wake, hold a wake, go to a funeral, sound the last post

11 wring one's hands, tear one's hair, gnash one's teeth, beat one's breast, sing the blues

12 **weep, sob, cry, bawl,** boo-hoo; **blubber,** ululate, **whimper, snivel; shed tears,** drop a tear; **burst into tears,** burst out crying, give way to tears, melt *or* dissolve in tears, break down, break down and cry, turn on the waterworks <nf>; cry one's eyes out, cry oneself blind; cry before one is hurt

13 **wail,** ululate; **moan, groan; howl,** yowl, yawl <Brit nf>; **cry, squall, bawl,** yawp, **yell, scream,** shriek; cry out, make an outcry; bay at the moon; tirade

14 **whine, whimper,** yammer <nf>, pule, grizzle <chiefly Brit nf>

15 **complain, groan; grumble, murmur, mutter,** growl, clamor, croak, grunt, yelp; **fret,** fuss, make a fuss about, fret and fume; air a grievance, lodge *or* register a complaint; fault, find fault

16 <nf terms> **beef, bitch, kick, kvetch,** bellyache, crab, gripe, grouch, grouse, grump, have an attitude, holler, howl, moan, piss, make a stink, squawk, yap; raise a howl, put up a squawk *or* howl, take on, cry *or* yell *or* scream bloody murder, give one a hard time, piss *or* kick up a storm *or* row *or* fuss, make *or* raise a stink

17 **go into mourning;** put on mourning, wear mourning

ADJS **18** **lamenting, grieving, mourning, moaning, sorrowing;** wailing, bewailing, bemoaning; **in mourning,** in sackcloth and ashes; depressed, down <nf>

19 **plaintive,** plangent, **mournful,** moanful, wailful, lamentive, ululant; woebegone, disconsolate; **sorrowful** 112.26; **howling,** Jeremianic; whining, whiny, whimpering, puling; **querulous, fretful,** petulant, peevish; **complaining,** faultfinding 510.24

20 <nf terms> **grouchy, kvetchy,** cranky, beefing, crabby, crabbing, grousing, griping, bellyaching, bitching

21 **tearful,** teary, **weepy** <nf>; lachrymal, lachrymose, lacrimatory; in the melting mood, on the edge of tears, ready to cry; **weeping, sobbing, crying;** blubbering, whimpering, sniveling; red-eyed; **in tears,** with tears in one's eyes, with tearful *or* watery eyes, with swimming *or* brimming *or* overflowing eyes, with eyes suffused *or* bathed *or* dissolved in tears

22 dirgelike, knell-like, elegiac, elegiacal, epicedial, threnodic, plaintive, plangent

ADVS **23** **lamentingly, plaintively, mournfully,** moanfully, wailfully; **sorrowfully** 112.36; complainingly, groaningly, querulously, fretfully, petulantly, peevishly

116 REJOICING

NOUNS **1** **rejoicing, jubilation,** jubilance, jubilant display, jubilee, show of joy, raucous happiness; **exultation,** elation, triumph; the time of one's life, special day; whoopee *and* hoopla <nf>, festivity 743.3,4, merriment 109.5; celebration 487

2 **cheer, hurrah, huzzah,** hurray, hooray, yippee, rah; **cry, shout, yell;** hosanna, hallelujah, alleluia, paean, paean *or* chorus of cheers, three cheers; **applause** 509.2, fanfare; high-five <nf>

3 **smile,** smiling; bright smile, gleaming *or* glowing smile, beam; silly smile *or* grin; **grin,** grinning; broad grin, ear-to-ear grin, toothful grin; stupid grin, idiotic grin; sardonic grin, **smirk, simper**

4 **laughter, laughing,** hilarity 109.5, risibility; **laugh;** boff *and* boffola *and* yuck <nf>; **titter; giggle; chuckle, chortle;** cackle, crow; **snicker,** snigger, snort; ha-ha, hee-haw, hee-hee, ho-ho, tee-hee, yuk-yuk; guffaw, **horselaugh; hearty laugh, belly laugh** <nf>, Homeric laughter, cachinnation; **shout, shriek,** shout of laughter, burst *or* outburst of laughter, peal *or* roar of laughter, gales of laughter; fit of laughter, convulsion, "laughter holding both his sides"—Milton

VERBS **5** **rejoice,** jubilate, **exult, glory, joy, delight,** bless *or* thank one's stars *or* lucky stars, congratulate oneself, hug oneself, rub one's hands, clap hands; dance *or* skip *or* jump for joy, dance, skip, frisk, rollick, revel, frolic, caper, gambol, caracole, romp; sing, carol, chirp, chirrup, chirp like a cricket, whistle, lilt; make merry

6 **cheer,** give a cheer, give three cheers, **cry, shout, yell,** cry for joy, yell oneself hoarse; huzzah, hurrah, hurray, hooray; shout hosanna *or* hallelujah, "make a joyful noise unto the Lord"—Bible; **applaud** 509.10; high-five <nf>

7 **smile,** crack a smile <nf>, break into a smile; **beam,** smile brightly; **grin,** grin like a Cheshire cat *or* chessy-cat <nf>; **smirk, simper**

8 **laugh,** burst out laughing, burst into laughter, burst out, laugh outright; laugh it up <nf>; **titter; giggle; chuckle, chortle;** cackle, crow; **snicker,** snigger, snort; ha-ha, hee-haw, hee-hee, ho-ho, tee-hee, yuk-yuk; **guffaw,** belly laugh, horselaugh; **shout, shriek,** give a shout *or* shriek of laughter; **roar,** cachinnate, roar with laughter; shake with laughter, shake like jelly; be convulsed with laughter, go into convulsions, fall about <Brit nf>; burst *or* split with laughter, break up *and* crack up <nf>, split <nf>, **split one's sides,** laugh fit to burst *or* bust <nf>, bust a gut *and* pee in *or* wet one's pants laughing <nf>, **be in stitches** <nf>, hold one's sides, roll in the aisles <nf>; laugh oneself sick *or* silly *or* limp, die *or* nearly die laughing; laugh in one's sleeve, laugh up one's sleeve, laugh in one's beard

9 **make laugh, kill** *and* **slay** <nf>, "set the table on a roar"—Shakespeare, break *or* crack one up <nf>, get a laugh

ADJS 10 **rejoicing,** delighting, exulting; **jubilant, exultant, elated,** elate, flushed, euphoric, ecstatic

ADVS 11 **rejoicingly,** delightingly, exultingly; **jubilantly, exultantly, elatedly**

117 DULLNESS

<being uninteresting>

NOUNS 1 **dullness, dryness,** dustiness, uninterestingness; **stuffiness, stodginess,** woodenness, stiffness; barrenness, sterility, aridity, jejunity; **insipidness,** insipidity, vapidness, vapidity, inanity, hollowness, emptiness, superficiality, **staleness, flatness,** tastelessness; characterlessness, colorlessness, pointlessness; **deadness,** lifelessness, spiritlessness, bloodlessness, paleness, pallor, etiolation, effeteness; **slowness,** pokiness, dragginess <nf>, unliveliness; **tediousness** 118.2; **dreariness,** drearisomeness, dismalness; **heaviness,** leadenness, ponderousness; inexcitability 106; solemnity 111; lowness of spirit 112.3

2 **prosaicness,** prosiness; prosaism, prosaicism, prose, plainness; **matter-of-factness,** unimaginativeness; matter of fact; **simplicity** 798, **plainness** 499

3 **triteness,** corniness *and* squareness <nf>, **banality,** banalness, unoriginality, sameness, **hackneyedness, commonplaceness,** commonness, familiarness, platitudinousness; a familiar ring; redundancy, repetition, **staleness,** mustiness, fustiness; cliché 974.3

VERBS 4 **fall flat,** fall flat as a pancake; leave one cold *or* unmoved, go over like a lead balloon <nf>, lay an egg *and* bomb <nf>, **wear thin**

5 prose, platitudinize, sing a familiar tune; pedestrianize; warm over; banalize

ADJS 6 **dull, dry,** dusty, dry as dust; **stuffy, stodgy,** wooden, stiff; arid, barren, blank, sterile, jejune; **insipid,** vapid, inane, hollow, empty, superficial; ho-hum *and* blah <nf>, **flat,** tasteless; characterless, colorless, pointless; **dead,** lifeless, spiritless, bloodless, pale, pallid, etiolated, effete; cold; **slow,** poky, draggy <nf>, pedestrian, plodding, unlively; **tedious; dreary,** drearisome, dismal; **heavy,** leaden, ponderous, elephantine; dull as dish water, "weary, stale, flat and unprofitable"—Shakespeare; inexcitable 106.10; solemn 111.3; low-spirited 112.22

7 **uninteresting,** uneventful, **unexciting; uninspiring; unentertaining,** unenjoyable, **unamusing,** unfunny, unwitty

8 **prosaic,** prose, prosy, prosing, plain; **matter-of-fact,** unimaginative, unimpassioned

9 **trite;** corny *and* square *and* square-John *and* Clyde <nf>, fade, **banal,** unoriginal, platitudinous, **stereotyped,** stock, set, **commonplace, common,** truistic, twice-told, **familiar,** bromidic <nf>, old hat <nf>, back-number, bewhiskered, warmed-over, **cut-and-dried; hackneyed,** hackney; well-known 928.27; **stale,** musty, fusty; **worn,** timeworn, well-worn, moth-eaten, threadbare, **worn thin**

ADVS 10 **dully, dryly,** dustily, **uninterestingly;** stuffily, stodgily; aridly, barrenly, jejunely, **insipidly, vapidly,** inanely, hollowly, emptily, superficially, tastelessly, **colorlessly,** pointlessly; lifelessly, spiritlessly, bloodlessly, pallidly, effetely; slowly, draggily <nf>, ploddingly; **tediously;** drearily, drearisomely, dismally; heavily, ponderously

11 **tritely,** cornily <nf>, **banally,** commonplacely, commonly, familiarly, hackneyedly, unoriginally, truistically, stalely

118 TEDIUM

NOUNS 1 **tedium, monotony, humdrum,** irksomeness, irk; **sameness,** sameliness, samesomeness <nf>, wearisome sameness, more of the same, the same old thing *or* story, the same damn thing <nf>; broken record, parrot; platitude, chestnut; undeviation, unvariation, invariability; the round, the daily round *or* grind, the weary round, the treadmill, the squirrel cage, the rat race <nf>, the beaten track *or* path, drag <nf>; time on one's hands, time hanging heavily on one's hands; **protraction,** prolongation 827.2

2 **tediousness, monotonousness, unrelievedness; humdrumness,** humdrumminess; **dullness** 117; **wearisomeness,** wearifulness; **tiresomeness, irksomeness,** drearisomeness; **boresomeness,** boringness; prolixity, **long-windedness** 538.2; redundancy, repetition, repetitiveness, tick-tock

3 **weariness, tiredness,** wearifulness; jadedness, fed-upness, satiation, satiety; **boredom,** boredness; **ennui,** spleen <old>, melancholy, life-weariness, *taedium vitae* <L>, world-weariness, *Weltschmerz* <Ger>, jadedness; languor, **listlessness** 94.4, **dispiritedness** 112.3

4 **bore,** crashing bore <nf>, frightful bore; **pest, nuisance;** dryasdust; proser, twaddler, **wet blanket;** buttonholer; bromide; egoist

5 <nf terms> **drag, drip, pill,** flat tire, deadass, deadfanny, dull tool; **headache,** pain, pain in the neck *or* ass; broken record

VERBS 6 **be tedious, drag on,** go on forever; have a certain sameness, be infinitely repetitive, do the same old thing; **weary, tire, irk,** wear, wear on *or* upon,

make one tired, fatigue, weary *or* tire to death, jade; give one a swift pain in the ass *and* give one a bellyful *and* make one fed-up <nf>, **pall, satiate,** glut

7 **bore,** leave one cold, set *or* send to sleep; **bore stiff** *or* to tears *or* to death *or* to extinction <nf>, bore to distraction, bore out of one's life, bore out of all patience; buttonhole; wear out one's welcome

8 **harp on** *or* **upon, dwell on** *or* **upon,** harp upon one *or* the same string, play *or* sing the same old song *or* tune, play the same broken record

ADJS 9 **tedious, monotonous, humdrum,** singsong, jog-trot, treadmill, unvarying, invariable, uneventful, broken-record, parrotlike, harping, everlasting, too much with us <nf>; blah <nf>, flat, **dreary,** drearisome, dry, dry-as-dust, dusty, **dull** 117.6; protracted, prolonged 827.11; prolix, **long-winded** 538.12; pedestrian, commonplace

10 **wearying,** wearing, **tiring; wearisome,** weariful, fatiguing, **tiresome, irksome; boring, boresome,** stupefyingly boring, stuporific, yawny <nf>

11 **weary,** weariful; **tired,** wearied, irked; good and tired, tired to death, weary unto death; sick, **sick of, tired of, sick and tired of;** jaded, satiated, palled, fed up <nf>, brassed off <Brit nf>; **blasé;** splenetic <old>, melancholy, melancholic, life-weary, world-weary, tired of living; **listless** 94.13, **dispirited** 112.22

12 **bored, uninterested;** bored stiff *or* to death *or* to extinction *or* to tears <nf>, stupefied *or* stuporous with boredom

ADVS 13 **tediously, monotonously,** harpingly, everlastingly, unvaryingly, endlessly; long-windedly; **boringly,** boresomely; **wearisomely,** fatiguingly, wearyingly, **tiresomely, irksomely,** drearisomely; dully 117.10

14 on a treadmill, in a squirrel cage, on the beaten track, on the same old round; without a change of menu *or* scenery *or* pace

PHRS 15 ho hum!, heigh ho!, what a life!, que sera sera; *plus ça change, plus c'est la même chose* <Fr, the more things change, the more they stay the same>; so what else is new?, go figure; MEGO *or* mine eyes glaze over

119 AGGRAVATION

NOUNS 1 **aggravation, worsening; exacerbation,** embittering, embitterment, souring; deterioration; **intensification, heightening,** stepping-up, sharpening, deepening, **increase,** enhancement, amplification, enlargement, magnification, augmentation, exaggeration; **exasperation, annoyance,** irritation 96.3; hassle <nf>, aggro <chiefly Brit>; deliberate aggravation, provocation; contentiousness

VERBS 2 **aggravate, worsen,** make worse; **exacerbate,** embitter, sour; deteriorate; **intensify, heighten,** step up, sharpen, make acute *or* more acute, bring to a head, deepen, **increase,** enhance, amplify, enlarge, magnify, build up, exaggerate; augment; rub salt in the wound, twist the knife, add insult to injury, inflame, pour oil on the fire, add fuel to the fire *or* flame, heat up *and* hot up <nf>; increase pressure *or* tension, tighten, tighten up, tighten the screws, put the squeeze on <nf>; bring to a head; **exasperate, annoy,** irritate 96.14; rub it in <nf>; provoke, antagonize, hassle <nf>, be an *agent provocateur*

3 **worsen,** get *or* grow worse, take a turn for the worse, deteriorate, degenerate; go from push to shove, **go from bad to worse; jump out of the frying pan and into the fire,** avoid Scylla and fall into Charybdis

ADJS 4 **aggravated, worsened, worse,** worse and worse, exacerbated, embittered, soured, deteriorated; **intensified, heightened,** stepped-up, **increased,** deepened, enhanced, amplified, magnified, enlarged, augmented, heated *or* hotted up <nf>; **exasperated, irritated,** annoyed 96.21; provoked, deliberately provoked; worse-off, out of the frying pan and into the fire

5 **aggravating,** aggravative; **exasperating,** exasperative; **annoying,** irritating 98.22; provocative; vexing, vexatious; contentious

ADVS 6 from bad to worse; aggravatingly, exasperatingly; annoyingly 98.29

120 RELIEF

NOUNS 1 **relief, easement, easing,** ease; **relaxation,** relaxing, relaxation *or* easing of tension, decompression, slackening, respite; **reduction,** diminishment, diminution, lessening, abatement, remission; **remedy** 86; **alleviation, mitigation, palliation,** softening, assuagement, allayment, defusing, appeasement, mollification, subduement; soothing, salving, anodyne; lulling; dulling, deadening, numbing, narcotizing, anesthesia, anesthetizing, analgesia; sedating, sedation; doping *or* doping up <nf>; comfort, solace, consolation; charity, benefaction

2 **release, deliverance, freeing,** removal; suspension, intermission, respite, surcease, reprieve; discharge; catharsis, purging, purgation, purge, cleansing, cleansing away, emotional release

3 **lightening, disburdening,** unburdening, unweighting, unloading, disencumbrance, disembarrassment, easing of the load, a load off one's mind, something out of one's system

4 **sense** *or* **feeling of relief,** sigh of relief

VERBS 5 **relieve,** give relief; **ease,** ease matters; **relax,** slacken; **reduce,** diminish, lessen, abate, remit; **alleviate, mitigate, palliate,** soften, pad, cushion, assuage, allay, defuse, lay, appease, mollify, subdue, soothe; salve, pour balm into, pour oil on; poultice, foment, stupe; slake; lull; **dull, deaden,** dull *or* deaden the pain, numb, benumb, anesthetize, tranquilize; sedate, narcotize, dope *or* dope up <nf>; temper the wind to the shorn lamb, lay the flattering unction to one's soul; take the sting out of; comfort, solace, pacify

6 **release, free, deliver,** reprieve, remove, free from, liberate; suspend, intermit, give respite *or* surcease; **relax,** decompress, ease, destress; act as a cathartic, **purge, purge away, cleanse,** cleanse away; give release, cut loose

7 **lighten, disburden,** unburden, unweight, unload, unfreight, disencumber, disembarrass, ease one's load; **set one's mind at ease** *or* **rest,** set at ease, **take a load off one's mind,** smooth the ruffled brow of care; relieve oneself, let one's hair down, pour one's heart out, talk it out, let it all hang out *and* go public <nf>, get it off one's chest

8 **be relieved, feel relief,** feel better about, get something out of one's system, feel *or* be oneself again; get out from under <nf>; **breathe easy** *or* **easier,** breathe more freely, breathe again, rest easier; **heave a sigh of relief,** draw a long *or* deep breath

ADJS 9 **relieving, easing, alleviative,** alleviating, alleviatory, **mitigative,** mitigating, **palliative,** assuaging, lenitive, assuasive, softening, subduing, soothing, demulcent, emollient, balmy, balsamic; **remedial** 86.39; dulling, deadening, numbing, benumbing, anesthetic, analgesic, anodyne, pain killing, sedative, hypnotic; cathartic, purgative, cleansing; **relaxing**

10 **relieved,** breathing easy *or* easier *or* freely, able to breathe again, out from under *and* out of the woods <nf>; **relaxed**; calmed, restored

121 COMFORT

NOUNS 1 **comfort, ease, well-being;** contentment 107; clover, velvet <nf>, bed of roses; life of ease 1009.1; solid comfort

2 **comfortableness, easiness; restfulness,** reposefulness, peace, peacefulness; softness, cushiness <nf>, cushioniness; **coziness, snugness;** friendliness, warmness; **homelikeness,** homeyness <nf>, homeliness; **commodiousness,** roominess, convenience; luxuriousness 501.5; hospitality 585

3 **creature comforts, comforts, conveniences,** excellent accommodations, amenities, good things of life, cakes and ale, egg in one's beer <nf>, all the comforts of home; all the heart can desire, luxuries, the best

4 **consolation, solace,** solacement, easement, heart's ease, "surcease of sorrow"—Poe; **encouragement,** aid and comfort, **assurance, reassurance,** support, **comfort,** crumb *or* shred of comfort; condolence 147, sympathy; **relief** 120

5 **comforter,** consoler, solacer, encourager; the Holy Spirit *or* Ghost, the Comforter, the Paraclete

VERBS 6 **comfort, console, solace,** give *or* bring comfort, bear up; condole with, sympathize with, extend sympathy; ease, **put** *or* **set at ease;** bolster, support; relieve 120.5; **assure, reassure; encourage, hearten,** pat on the back; **cheer** 109.7; wipe away the tears

7 **be comforted, take comfort, take heart;** take hope, lift up one's heart, pull oneself together, pluck up one's spirits; *sursum corda* <L>

8 **be at ease,** be *or* feel easy, stand easy <Brit>; **make oneself comfortable,** make oneself at home, feel at home, put one's feet up, take a load off <nf>; **relax,** be relaxed; live a life of ease 1010.10

9 **snug,** snug down *or* up; tuck in

10 **snuggle, nestle, cuddle,** cuddle up, curl up; nest; bundle; snuggle up to, snug up *or* together <old>

ADJS 11 **comfortable,** comfy <nf>; contented 107.7,9,10; **easy,** easeful; **restful,** reposeful, peaceful, **relaxing;** soft, cushioned, cushy <nf>, cushiony; comfortable as an old shoe; **cozy, snug,** snug as a bug in a rug; friendly, warm; **homelike,** homey *and* down-home <nf>, homely, lived-in; **commodious,** roomy, convenient; luxurious 501.21

12 **at ease, at one's ease,** easy, relaxed, laid-back <nf>; at rest, resting easy; **at home,** in one's element

13 **comforting, consoling,** consolatory, of good comfort; condoling, condolent, condolatory, sympathetic; **assuring, reassuring,** supportive; **encouraging, heartening;** cheering 109.16; relieving 120.9; hospitable 585.11

ADVS 14 **comfortably, easily,** with ease; **restfully,** reposefully, peacefully; **cozily, snugly; commodiously,** roomily, conveniently; luxuriously, voluptuously

15 **in comfort,** in ease, **in clover, on** *or* **in velvet** <nf>, on *or* in a bed of roses

16 **comfortingly, consolingly,** assuringly, reassuringly, supportively, encouragingly, hearteningly; hospitably

122 WONDER

NOUNS 1 **wonder,** wonderment, sense of wonder, marveling, marvel, **astonishment, amazement,** amaze, **astoundment;** dumbfoundment, stupefaction; **surprise; awe,** breathless wonder *or* awe, sense of mystery, admiration; beguilement, fascination 377.1; bewilderment, puzzlement 971.3

2 **marvel, wonder, prodigy, miracle, phenomenon,** phenom <nf>; astonishment, amazement, marvelment, wonderment, wonderful thing, nine days' wonder, *annus mirabilis* <L>, amazing *or* astonishing thing, quite a thing, really something, **sensation,** rocker *and* stunner <nf>; one for the books *and* something to brag about *and* something to shout about *and* something to write home about *and* something else <nf>; **rarity,** nonesuch, nonpareil, exception, one in a thousand, one in a way, oner <Brit nf>; **curiosity,** gazingstock <old>, **sight, spectacle,** eye-popper <nf>; wonders of the world; masterpiece, chef d'oeuvre, masterstroke

3 **wonderfulness,** wondrousness, **marvelousness,** miraculousness, phenomenalness, **prodigiousness, stupendousness, remarkableness,** extraordinariness; beguilingness, fascination, enchantingness, enticingness, seductiveness, **glamorousness; awesomeness, mysteriousness,** mystery, numinousness; **transcendence,** transcendentness, surpassingness

4 **inexpressibility, ineffability,** ineffableness, inenarrability, noncommunicability, noncommunicableness, incommunicability, incommunicableness, indescribability, indefinableness, **unutterability, unspeakability,** unnameableness, innominability, unmentionability

VERBS 5 **wonder, marvel,** be astonished *or* amazed *or* astounded, be seized with wonder; **gaze, gape,** drop one's jaw, look *or* stand aghast *or* agog, gawk, **stare,** stare openmouthed, open one's eyes, rub one's eyes, hold one's breath; not know what to say, not know what to make of, not believe one's eyes *or* ears *or* senses

6 **astonish, amaze, astound, surprise,** startle, stagger, **bewilder,** perplex 971.13, flabbergast <nf>, confound, overwhelm, **boggle, boggle the mind; awe,** strike with wonder *or* awe; **dumbfound** *or* dumbfounder, strike dumb, strike dead; strike all of a heap *and* throw on one's beam ends *and* knock one's socks off *and* bowl down *or* over <nf>, dazzle, bedazzle, daze, bedaze; **stun, stupefy,** petrify, paralyze

7 take one's breath away, turn one's head, make one's head swim, make one's hair stand on end, make one's tongue cleave to the roof of one's mouth, make one stare, make one sit up and take notice, sweep *or* carry off one's feet; blow one's mind

8 beggar *or* baffle description, stagger belief

ADJS 9 **wondering,** wrapped *or* rapt in wonder, marveling, **astonished, amazed, surprised, astounded,** flabbergasted <nf>, **bewildered,** puzzled, confounded, **dumbfounded,** dumbstruck, staggered, overwhelmed, unable to believe one's senses *or* eyes; **aghast,** agape, agog, all agog, gazing, gaping, at gaze staring, gauping, wide-eyed, popeyed, open-eyed, openmouthed, **breathless; thunderstruck,** wonder-struck, wonder-stricken, awestricken, awestruck, struck all of a heap <nf>; **awed, in awe,** in awe of; spellbound, fascinated, captivated, under a charm, beguiled, enthralled, enraptured, enravished, enchanted, entranced, bewitched, hypnotized, mesmerized, stupefied, lost in wonder *or* amazement; transfixed, rooted to the spot

10 **wonderful, wondrous, marvelous,** awesome, **miraculous,** fantastic, fabulous, ace, cool, rad *or* wicked <nf>, phenomenal, brilliant, **prodigious, stupendous,** unheard-of, unprecedented, extraordinary, exceptional, rare, unique, singular, **remarkable,** striking, **sensational; strange,** passing strange, "wondrous strange"—Shakespeare; **beguiling, fascinating**; incredible, inconceivable, outlandish, unimaginable, incomprehensible; **bewildering, puzzling,** enigmatic

11 **awesome,** awful, awing, awe-inspiring; **transcendent,** transcending, surpassing; **mysterious,** numinous; weird, eerie, uncanny, bizarre; exotic

12 **astonishing, amazing, surprising,** startling, **astounding,** confounding, staggering, stunning <nf>, eye-opening, breathtaking, overwhelming, mind-boggling *or* -numbing, mind-blowing; **spectacular,** electrifying

13 **indescribable, ineffable,** inenarrable, inexpressible, unutterable, unspeakable, noncommunicable, incommunicable, indefinable, undefinable, unnameable, innominable, unwhisperable, unmentionable

ADVS 14 **wonderfully,** wondrously, **marvelously, miraculously,** fantastically, fabulously, phenomenally, prodigiously, stupendously, extraordinarily, exceptionally, remarkably, strikingly, **sensationally;** strangely, outlandishly, incredibly, inconceivably, unimaginably, incomprehensibly, **bewilderingly, puzzlingly,** enigmatically; **beguilingly,** fascinatingly

15 **awesomely,** awfully, awingly, awe-inspiringly; **mysteriously,** numinously, weirdly, eerily, uncannily, bizarrely; **transcendently,** surpassingly, surpassing, passing <old>

16 **astonishingly, amazingly, astoundingly,** staggeringly, confoundingly; **surprisingly,** startlingly, to one's surprise *or* great surprise, to one's astonishment *or* amazement; for a wonder, strange to say

17 **indescribably, ineffably,** inexpressibly, unutterably, **unspeakably,** inenarrably, indefinably, unnameably, unmentionably

18 in wonder, in astonishment, in amazement, in bewilderment, in awe, in admiration, with gaping mouth

INTERJS 19 <astonishment or surprise> my word!, I declare!, well I never!, of all things!, as I live and breathe!, what!, indeed!, really!, surely!, how now!, what on earth!, what in the world!, I'll be jiggered!, holy moly!, holy Christmas!, holy cow!, holy mackerel!, holy Moses!, holy smoke!, holy shit! <nf>, hush *or* shut my mouth!, blow me down!, strike me dead!, shiver my timbers!

20 oh!, O!, ah!, la!, lo!, lo and behold!, hello!, halloo!, hey!, whew!, phew!, wow!, yipes!, yike!

21 my!, oh, my!, dear!, dear me!, goodness!, gracious!, goodness gracious!, gee!, my goodness!, my stars!, good gracious!, good heavens!, good lack!, lackadaisy!, my gosh!, welladay!, hoity-toity!, zounds!, 'sdeath!, gadzooks!, gad so!, bless my heart!, God bless me!, heavens and earth!, for crying out loud! <nf>

22 imagine!, fancy!, fancy that!, just imagine!, only think!, well!, I never!, can you feature that!, can you beat that!, it beats the Dutch!, do tell!, you don't say!, the devil *or* deuce you say!, I'll be!, what do you know!, what do you know about that!, how about that!, who would have thought it!, did you ever!, can it be!, can such things be!, will wonders never cease!, go on!

23 **Seven Wonders of the Ancient World**

The Great Pyramids of Egypt at Giza
The Hanging Gardens of Babylon
The Statue of Zeus at Olympia
The Temple of Artemis (Diana) at Ephesus
The Mausoleum of King Mausolus at Halicarnassus
The Colossus of Rhodes
The Lighthouse of Alexandria

123 UNASTONISHMENT

NOUNS 1 **unastonishment, unamazement,** unamazedness, nonastonishment, nonamazement, nonamazedness, nonwonder, nonwondering, nonmarveling, unsurprise, unsurprisedness, awelessness, wonderlessness; phlegmaticness, apathy, passivity; **calm,** calmness, coolness, **cool** <nf>, cool *or* calm *or* nodding acceptance, composure, composedness, sangfroid, inexcitability 106, expectation 130, unimpressibleness, refusal to be impressed *or* awed *or* amazed; poker face, straight face; predictability

VERBS 2 **accept, take for granted** *or* as a matter of course *or* in stride *or* as it comes, treat as routine, show no amazement, refuse to be impressed, not blink an eye, not turn a hair, keep one's cool <nf>; see it coming

ADJS 3 **unastonished, unsurprised, unamazed,** unmarveling, unwondering, unastounded, undumbfounded, unbewildered; undazzled, undazed; unawed, aweless, wonderless, blasé; **unimpressed,** unmoved; calm, **cool,** cool as a cucumber, composed, nonchalant, inexcitable 106.10; expecting, expected 130.13,14; phlegmatic

124 HOPE

NOUNS 1 **hope, hopefulness,** hoping, **hopes,** fond *or* fervent hope, good hope, good cheer; aspiration, **desire** 100; prospect, **expectation** 130; sanguine expectation, happy *or* cheerful expectation; **trust, confidence, faith,** assured faith, **reliance,** dependence; conviction, assurance, security, well-grounded hope; assumption, presumption; auspiciousness; **promise, prospect,** good *or* bright *or* fair prospect, good *or* hopeful prognosis, best case; great expectations, good prospects, high hopes; hoping against hope, prayerful hope; doomed hope *or* hopes

2 "the thing with feathers that perches in the soul"—Emily Dickinson, "the worst of all evils, because it prolongs the torments of man"—Nietzsche

3 **optimism,** optimisticalness, Pollyannaism, cheerful *or* bright *or* rosy outlook, rose-colored glasses; **cheerfulness** 109; bright side, silver lining; "the noble temptation to see too much in everything"—Chesterton; wishful thinking; philosophical optimism, Leibnizian *or* Rousseauistic optimism, utopianism, perfectionism, perfectibilism; millenarianism, chiliasm, millennialism

4 **ray of hope,** gleam *or* glimmer of hope; faint hope, last hope

5 **airy hope,** unreal hope, dream, false hope, golden dream, pipe dream <nf>, bubble, chimera, fool's paradise, quixotic ideal, utopia 986.11; vision, castles in the air, cloud-cuckoo-land

6 **optimist,** hoper, Pollyanna, ray of sunshine <nf>, irrepressible optimist, Dr Pangloss, idealist; "a proponent of the doctrine that black is white"—Ambrose Bierce, "one who makes the best of it when he gets the worst of it"—Anon, "one who makes the most of all that comes and the least of all that goes"—Sara Teasdale, Leibnizian optimist, philosophical optimist, utopian, perfectionist, perfectibilist, perfectibilitarian; millenarian, chiliast, millennialist, millennian; aspirer, aspirant, hopeful <nf>, dreamer, visionary

VERBS 7 **hope,** be *or* live in hopes, have reason to hope, entertain *or* harbor the hope, cling to the hope, cherish *or* foster *or* nurture the hope; look for, prognosticate, **expect** 130.5; **trust,** confide, presume, feel confident, rest assured; pin one's hope upon, put one's trust in, hope in, rely on, count on, lean upon, bank on, set great store on; hope for, **aspire to,** desire 100.14; **hope against hope,** hope and pray, hope to God <nf>

8 **be hopeful, get one's hopes up,** keep one's spirits up, never say die, take heart, cheer up, buck up, be of good hope, be of good cheer, keep hoping, keep hope alive, keep the faith <nf>, keep smiling, cling to hope; **hope for the best,** knock on wood, touch wood <Brit>, cross one's fingers, keep one's fingers crossed, allow oneself to hope; clutch *or* catch at straws

9 **be optimistic, look on the bright side; look through** *or* **wear rose-colored glasses,** *voir en couleur de rose* <Fr>; call the glass half full, look on the bright side, think positively *or* affirmatively, be upbeat <nf>, think the best of, **make the best of it,** say that all is for the best, put a good *or* bold face upon, put the best face upon; see the light at the end of the tunnel; count one's chickens before they are hatched, count one's bridges before they are crossed

10 **give hope, raise hope,** yield *or* afford hope, hold out hope, justify hope, inspire hope, **raise one's hopes,** raise expectations, **lead one to expect;** cheer 109.7; inspire, inspirit; **assure, reassure,** support; **promise,** hold out promise, augur well, bid fair *or* well, make fair promise, have good prospects

ADJS 11 **hopeful, hoping, in hopes,** full of hope, in good heart, of good hope, of good cheer; **aspiring** 100.28; **expectant** 130.11; **sanguine,** fond; **confident,** assured; undespairing

12 **optimistic,** upbeat *and* up <nf>, bright, sunny; bullish; **cheerful** 109.11; **rosy,** roseate, rose-colored, *couleur de rose* <Fr>; pollyannaish, Leibnizian, Rousseauistic, Panglossian; utopian 986.23, idealistic, perfectionist, perfectibilitarian, millenarian, chiliastic, millennialistic, visionary

13 **promising,** of promise, full of promise, bright with promise, pregnant of good, best-case, **favorable,** looking up; aspiring, aspirant; **auspicious,** propitious 133.18; heartening; inspiring, inspiriting, **encouraging,** cheering, reassuring, supportive

ADVS 14 **hopefully,** hopingly; **expectantly** 130.15; **optimistically;** cheerfully 109.17; sanguinely, fondly; confidently

125 HOPELESSNESS

NOUNS 1 **hopelessness,** unhopefulness, no hope, not a prayer *and* not a hope in hell <nf>, not the ghost of a chance; small hope, bleak outlook *or* prospect *or* prognosis, worst case, blank future, no future; inexpectation 131; futility 391.2; impossibility 967

2 **despair, desperation,** desperateness, loss of hope; no way <nf>, no way out, no exit, despondency 112.3; disconsolateness 112.12; forlornness; letdown; cave of despair, cave of Trophonius; gloom and doom; acedia, sloth; apathy 94.4; downer <nf>

3 **irreclaimability, irretrievability,** irredeemability, irrecoverableness, unsalvageability, unsalvability; incorrigibility, irreformability; irrevocability, **irreversibility; irreparability, incurability,** irremediableness, curelessness, remedilessness, immedicableness; unrelievability, unmitigability

4 **forlorn hope,** vain expectation, doomed *or* foredoomed hope, fond *or* foolish hope, futility; counsel of perfection

5 dashed hopes, blighted hope, hope deferred; disappointment 132

6 **pessimism, cynicism,** malism, nihilism; uncheerfulness 112.2; **gloominess,** dismalness, gloomy outlook; negativism; defeatism; retreatism

7 **pessimist, cynic,** malist, nihilist; killjoy 112.14, gloomy Gus *and* calamity howler *and* worrywart <nf>, seek-sorrow, Job's comforter, prophet of doom, Cassandra, Eeyore; negativist; defeatist; retreatist; loser, born loser; drag <nf>, "one who is not happy except when he is miserable"—Anon, "a man who feels bad when he feels good for fear he'll feel worse when he feels better"—George Burns, "one who is always building dungeons in the air"—John Galsworthy

8 **lost cause, fool's errand, wild-goose chase; hopeless case,** hopeless situation; **goner** *and* gone goose *or* gosling *and* dead duck <nf>; terminal case

VERBS 9 **be hopeless,** have not a hope *or* prayer, have no remedy, look bleak *or* dark; **be pessimistic, look on the dark side,** be *or* think downbeat <nf>, think negatively, think *or* make the worst of, put the worst face upon, call the glass half empty; not hold one's breath

10 **despair,** despair of, **despond** 112.16, falter, lose hope, **lose heart, abandon hope,** give up hope, **give up,** give up all hope *or* expectation, give way *or* over, fall *or* sink into despair, give oneself up *or* yield to despair, throw up one's hands in despair, turn one's face to the wall; curse God and die, write off

11 **shatter one's hopes,** dash *or* crush *or* blight or shatter one's hope, burst one's bubble <nf>, bring crashing down around one's head, dash the cup from one's lips, disappoint 132.2, drive to despair *or* desperation

ADJS 12 **hopeless,** unhopeful, without hope, affording no hope, worst-case, bleak, grim, dismal, cheerless, comfortless, down in the mouth; **desperate, despairing, in despair;** despondent 112.22; disconsolate 112.28; forlorn; apathetic 94.13

13 **futile,** vain 391.13; doomed, foredoomed, pointless

14 **impossible,** out of the question, not to be thought of, no-go *and* no-win *and* lose-lose <nf>

15 **past hope, beyond recall,** past praying for, beyond hope, abject; **irretrievable, irrecoverable, irreclaimable,** irredeemable, unsalvageable, unsalvable; incorrigible, irreformable; irrevocable, **irreversible; irremediable, irreparable,** inoperable, **incurable,** cureless, remediless, immedicable, beyond remedy, terminal; unrelievable, unmitigable; **ruined,** undone, kaput <nf>; lost, gone, gone to hell *and* gone to hell in a handbasket <nf>

16 **pessimistic,** pessimist, downbeat <nf>, **cynical,** nihilistic; uncheerful 112.21; **gloomy,** dismal, crepehanging, funereal, lugubrious; negative, negativistic; defeatist; Cassandran *or* Cassandrian, Cassandra-like

ADVS 17 **hopelessly, desperately,** forlornly; impossibly

18 **irreclaimably, irretrievably, irrecoverably,** irredeemably, unsalvageably, unsalvably; irrevocably, **irreversibly; irremediably, incurably, irreparably**

126 ANXIETY

<troubled thought>

NOUNS 1 **anxiety, anxiousness; apprehension, apprehensiveness,** antsyness <nf>, misgiving, foreboding, forebodingness, suspense, strain, tension, stress, nervous strain *or* tension; **dread,** fear 127; **concern,** concernment, anxious concern, **solicitude,** zeal 101.2; **care,** cankerworm of care; **distress,** trouble, vexation, unease; **uneasiness, perturbation, disturbance,** upset, **agitation, disquiet,** disquietude, inquietude, unquietness; **nervousness** 128; malaise, angst 96.1; pucker *and* yips *and* stew *and* all-overs <nf>, pins and needles, tenterhooks, shpilkes <nf>; overanxiety; anxious seat *or* bench; anxiety neurosis *or* hysteria

2 **worry,** worriment <nf>, worriedness; **worries,** worries and cares, troubles, concerns; worrying, fretting; harassment, torment

3 **worrier, worrywart** *and* nervous Nellie <nf>

VERBS 4 **concern,** give concern, **trouble, bother, distress, disturb, upset,** frazzle, **disquiet, agitate;** rob one of ease *or* sleep *or* rest, keep one on edge *or* on tenterhooks *or* on pins and needles *or* on shpilkes <nf>

5 <make anxious> **worry, upset, vex,** fret, agitate, get to <nf>, **harass,** harry, **torment,** dog, hound, plague, persecute, haunt, beset

6 <feel anxious> **worry,** worry oneself, worry one's head about, worry oneself sick, trouble one's head *or* oneself, be a prey to anxiety, lose sleep; have one's heart in one's mouth, have one's heart miss *or* skip a beat, have one's heart stand still, get butterflies in one's stomach; **fret, fuss, chafe,** stew *and* take on <nf>, fret and fume; tense up, bite one's nails, walk the floor, go up the wall <nf>, be on tenterhooks *or* pins and needles *or* shpilkes <nf>

ADJS 7 **anxious, concerned, apprehensive,** foreboding, misgiving, suspenseful, strained, tense, tensed up <nf>, nail-biting, white-knuckle <nf>; **fearful** 127.32; **solicitous,** zealous 101.9; **troubled, bothered; uneasy, perturbed, disturbed, disquieted, agitated;** nervous 128.11; **on pins and needles,** on tenterhooks, on shpilkes <nf>, on the anxious seat *or* bench; all hot and bothered *and* in a pucker *and* in a stew <nf>; over-anxious, overapprehensive

8 **worried, vexed,** fretted; **harassed,** harried, tormented, dogged, hounded, persecuted, haunted, beset, plagued; worried sick, worried to a frazzle, worried stiff <nf>

9 **careworn,** heavy-laden, overburdened

10 **troublesome,** bothersome, **distressing,** distressful, **disturbing, upsetting, disquieting; worrisome,** worrying; fretting, chafing; **harassing,** tormenting, plaguing; **annoying** 98.22

ADVS 11 **anxiously, concernedly, apprehensively,** misgivingly, **uneasily;** worriedly; solicitously, zealously 101.14

127 FEAR, FEARFULNESS

NOUNS 1 **fear, fright,** affright; **scare, alarm, consternation, dismay; dread,** unholy dread, **awe; terror, horror,** horrification, mortal *or* abject fear; **phobia** <see list>, funk *or* blue funk <nf>; **panic,** panic fear *or* terror, blind panic; stampede; **cowardice** 491

2 **fearfulness, frighteningness, frightfulness, awfulness, scariness,** fearsomeness, alarmingness, dismayingness, disquietingness, startlingness, disconcertingness, terribleness, **dreadfulness, horror,** horribleness, **hideousness,** appallingness, direness, **ghastliness,** grimness, grisliness, **gruesomeness,** ghoulishness; **creepiness, spookiness,** eeriness, weirdness, uncanniness

3 **fearfulness,** afraidness; **timidity, timorousness, hyness;** shrinkingness, bashfulness, diffidence, stage fright, mike fright *and* flop sweat <nf>;

skittishness, startlishness, jumpiness, goosiness <nf>

4 **apprehension,** apprehensiveness, **misgiving, qualm,** qualmishness, funny feeling; **anxiety** 126, angst; worry; doubt 954.2; foreboding

5 **trepidation,** trepidity, perturbation, **fear and trembling; quaking,** agitation 105.4; **uneasiness, disquiet,** disquietude, inquietude; nervousness 128; palpitation, heartquake; shivers *or* cold shivers <nf>, creeps *or* cold creeps <nf>, heebie-jeebies <nf>, chills of fear *or* terror, icy fingers *or* icy clutch of dread, jimjams <nf>; horripilation, gooseflesh, goose bumps <nf>; sweat, cold sweat; thrill of fear, spasm *or* quiver of terror; sinking stomach; blood running cold, knocking knees, chattering teeth

6 **frightening, intimidation,** bullying, browbeating, cowing, bulldozing <nf>, hectoring; **demoralization,** psychological warfare, war of nerves

7 **terrorization, terrorizing,** horrification, scaremongering, panic-mongering, scare tactics; **terrorism,** terror *or* terroristic tactics, *Schrecklichkeit* <Ger>, rule by terror, reign of terror, sword of Damocles

8 **alarmist,** scaremonger, panic-monger; **terrorist,** bomber, assassin

9 **frightener, scarer, hair-raiser;** alarmist; scarebabe, **bogey,** bogeyman, **bugaboo,** bugbear; hobgoblin; **scarecrow; horror, terror,** holy terror; **ogre,** ogress, **monster,** vampire, werewolf, ghoul, bête noire, fee-faw-fum; incubus, succubus, nightmare; witch, goblin; **ghost,** specter, phantom, revenant; Frankenstein, Dracula, Wolf-man; mythical monsters

VERBS 10 **fear, be afraid; apprehend,** have qualms, misgive, eye askance; **dread,** stand in dread of, be in mortal dread *or* terror of, stand in awe of, stand aghast; be on pins and needles, sit upon thorns; have one's heart in one's mouth, have one's heart stand still, have one's heart skip *or* miss a beat; quake in one's boots; **sweat,** break out in a cold sweat, sweat bullets <nf>

11 **take fright,** take alarm, push *or* press *or* hit the panic button <nf>; funk *and* go into a funk <nf>, get the wind up <Brit nf>; lose courage 491.8; pale, grow *or* turn pale, change *or* turn color; look as if one had seen a ghost; freeze, be paralyzed with fear, throw up one's hands in horror, jump out of one's skin; shit in one's pants *and* shit green <nf>

12 **start,** startle, **jump,** jump out of one's skin, jump a mile, leap like a startled gazelle; **shy,** fight shy, start aside, boggle, jib; **panic,** stampede, skedaddle <nf>

13 **flinch, shrink, shy,** shy away from, draw back, recoil, funk <nf>, **quail, cringe, wince, blench, blink,** say *or* cry uncle; put one's tail between one's legs

14 **tremble, shake, quake, shiver, quiver, quaver; tremble** *or* **quake** *or* **shake** in one's boots *or* **shoes,** tremble like an aspen leaf, quiver like a rabbit, shake all over

15 **frighten,** fright, affright, funk <nf>, frighten *or* scare out of one's wits; **scare,** spook <nf>, scare one stiff *or* shitless *or* spitless <nf>, scare the life out of, scare the pants off of *and* scare hell out of *and* scare the shit out of <nf>; scare one to death, scare the daylights *or* the living daylights *or* the wits *or* the shit out of <nf>; give one a fright *or* scare *or* turn; **alarm,** disquiet, raise apprehensions; shake, stagger; **startle** 131.8; **unnerve, unman,** unstring; give one goose-flesh, horripilate, give one the creeps *or* the willies <nf>, make one's flesh creep, chill one's spine, make one's nerves tingle, curl one's hair <nf>, make one's hair stand on end, make one's blood run cold, freeze *or* curdle the blood, make one's teeth chatter, make one tremble, take one's breath away, make one shit one's pants *or* shit green <nf>

16 **put in fear,** put the fear of God into, **throw a scare into** <nf>; **panic,** stampede, send scuttling, throw blind fear into

17 **terrify, awe,** strike terror into; **horrify, appall, shock,** make one's flesh creep; **frighten out of one's wits** *or* **senses;** strike dumb, **stun, stupefy, paralyze, petrify,** freeze

18 **daunt, deter,** shake, stop, stop in one's tracks, set back; **discourage, dishearten;** faze <nf>; **awe, overawe**

19 **dismay, disconcert, appall, astound, confound, abash, discomfit, put out, take aback**

20 **intimidate, cow, browbeat, bulldoze** <nf>, bludgeon, dragoon; **bully, hector, harass,** huff; bluster, bluster out of *or* into; **terrorize,** put in bodily fear, use terror *or* terrorist tactics, pursue a policy of *Schrecklichkeit,* systematically terrorize; threaten 514.2; **demoralize**

21 **frighten off, scare away,** bluff off, put to flight

ADJS 22 **afraid, scared,** scared to death <nf>, spooked <nf>; feared *or* afeared <nf>; fear-stricken, fear-struck; haunted with fear, phobic

23 **fearful,** fearing, fearsome, **in fear;** cowardly 491.10; **timorous, timid, shy,** rabbity *and* mousy <nf>, afraid of one's own shadow; **shrinking,** bashful, diffident; scary; **skittish,** skittery <nf>, startlish, gun-shy, jumpy, goosy <nf>; **tremulous,** trembling, trepidant, shaky, shivery; **nervous;** waiting for the bomb to drop

24 **apprehensive, misgiving,** antsy <nf>, **qualmish,** qualmy; anxious 126.6

25 **frightened,** frightened to death, affrighted, in a fright, frit <Brit nf>, in a funk *or* blue funk <nf>; **alarmed,** disquieted; consternated, **dismayed,** daunted; **startled** 131.13; more frightened than hurt

26 **terrified,** terror-stricken, terror-struck, terror-smitten, terror-shaken, terror-troubled, terror-riven, terror-ridden, terror-driven, terror-crazed, terror-haunted; awestricken, awestruck; **horrified,** horror-stricken, horror-struck; **appalled, astounded, aghast;** frightened out of one's wits *or* mind, **scared to death, scared stiff** *or* **shitless** *or* spitless <nf>; unnerved, unstrung, unmanned, undone, **cowed,** awed, **intimidated; stunned, petrified, stupefied,** paralyzed, frozen; white as a sheet, pale as death *or* a ghost, deadly pale, ashen, blanched, pallid, gray with fear

27 **panicky,** panic-prone, panicked, in a panic, panic-stricken, panic-struck, terror-stricken, out of one's mind with fear, prey to blind fear

28 **frightening, frightful; fearful,** fearsome, fear-inspiring, nightmarish, hellish; **scary,** scaring, chilling; **alarming, startling,** disquieting, dismaying, disconcerting; **unnerving, daunting,** deterring, **deterrent,** discouraging, disheartening, fazing, awing, overawing; stunning, stupefying, mind-boggling *or* -numbing, hair-raising

29 **terrifying,** terrorful, terror-striking, terror-inspiring, terror-bringing, terror-giving, terror-breeding, terror-breathing, terror-bearing, terror-fraught; **bloodcurdling, hair-raising** <nf>; petrifying, paralyzing, stunning, stupefying; **terrorizing, terror, terroristic;** *schrecklich* <Ger>

30 **terrible,** terrific, tremendous; **horrid, horrible, horrifying,** horrific, horrendous; **dreadful, dread,** dreaded; **awful;** awesome, awe-inspiring; **shocking, appalling,** astounding; **dire,** direful, fell; formidable, redoubtable; **hideous, ghastly,** morbid, grim, grisly, gruesome, ghoulish, macabre

31 **creepy, spooky, eerie, weird, uncanny**

ADVS 32 **fearfully, apprehensively, diffidently,** for fear of; **timorously, timidly, shyly,** mousily <nf>, bashfully, shrinkingly; tremulously, tremblingly, quakingly, **with** *or* **in fear and trembling;** with heart in mouth, with bated breath

33 **in fear, in terror,** in awe, in alarm, in consternation; in mortal fear, in fear of one's life

34 **frightfully, fearfully; alarmingly, startlingly,** disquietingly, dismayingly, disconcertingly; **shockingly, appallingly,** astoundingly; **terribly,** terrifically, tremendously; **dreadfully, awfully; horridly, horribly,** horrifyingly, horrifically, horrendously

35 **phobias by subject**

<accidents> dystychiphobia
<anemia> anemophobia
<animals> zoophobia
<ants> myrmecophobia
<bacteria> bacteriophobia
<baldness> phalacrophobia
<beards> pogonophobia
<bears> ursaphobia
<bees> apiphobia
<being alone> autophobia *or* monophobia *or* eremiophobia *or* eremophobia
<being dirty> automysophobia
<being idle> thaasophobia
<being whipped> mastigophobia
<birds> ornithophobia
<blood> hemaphobia *or* hematophobia *or* hemophobia
<blushing> erythrophobia
<body odor> bromidrophobia *or* bromidrosiphobia
<bridges> gephyrophobia
<bullets> ballistophobia
<bulls> taurophobia
<cancer> cancerphobia *or* cancerophobia *or* carcinophobia
<cats> ailurophobia
<cemeteries> coimetrophobia
<certain places> topophobia
<childbirth> tocophobia
<children> pedophobia
<Chinese> Sinophobia
<cholera> cholerophobia
<church> ecclesiophobia
<clouds> nephelophobia
<coitus> coitophobia
<cold> cheimaphobia *or* cheimatophobia
<color> chromophobia *or* chromatophobia
<comets> cometophobia
<computers> cyberphobia
<constipation> coprostasophobia
<corpses> necrophobia
<crossing a bridge> gephyrophobia
<crossing a street> agyrophobia
<crowds> demophobia
<crystals> crystallophobia
<dampness> hygrophobia
<dancing> chorophobia
<darkness> scotophobia *or* achluophobia *or* nyctophobia
<dawn> eosophobia
<daylight, sunlight> phengophobia
<death> thanatophobia
<decisions> decidophobia
<demons> demonophobia
<dentists> dentophobia
<depth> bathophobia
<diabetes> diabetophobia
<dirt> mysophobia
<disease> pathophobia
<doctors, hospitals> iatrophobia
<dogs> cynophobia
<double vision> diplopiaphobia
<draft> aerophobia
<dreams> oneirophobia
<drink> potophobia
<drugs> pharmacophobia
<duration> chronophobia
<dust> koniophobia *or* amathophobia
<electricity> electrophobia
<enclosed places> claustrophobia
<English> Anglophobia
<everything> panphobia *or* pantophobia
<eyes> ommataphobia
<failure> kakorraphiaphobia
<fatigue> kopophobia
<fear> phobophobia
<feathers> pteronophobia
<feces> coprophobia *or* scatophobia
<fever> febriphobia
<fire> pyrophobia
<fish> ichthyophobia
<floods> antlophobia
<flowers> anthophobia
<flutes> aulophobia
<flying> aviatophobia
<fog> homichlophobia
<food> cibophobia *or* sitophobia *or* sitiophobia
<foreigners> xenophobia
<forests> xylophobia

<freedom> eleutherophobia
<French> Francophobia *or* Gallophobia
<frogs, reptiles> batrachophobia
<fur> doraphobia
<gaining weight> obesophobia *or* pocrescophobia
<Germans> Germanophobia *or* Teutonophobia
<germs> spermophobia *or* spermatophobia
<ghosts> phasmophobia
<God> theophobia
<going to bed> clinophobia
<gold> aurophobia
<gravity> barophobia
<growing old> gerascophobia
<hair> chaetophobia *or* trichophobia
<hair disease> trichopathophobia
<heart disease> cardiophobia
<heat> thermophobia
<heaven> uranophobia *or* ouranophobia
<hell> hadephobia *or* stygiophobia
<heredity> patroiophobia
<high places> acrophobia *or* altophobia *or* batophobia *or* hypsophobia *or* hypsiphobia
<home> ecophobia *or* oecophobia *or* oikophobia
<homosexuality> homophobia
<horses> hippophobia
<hospitals> nosocomephobia
<hurricanes> lilapsophobia
<ice, frost> cryophobia
<ideas> ideophobia
<illness> nosemaphobia *or* nosophobia
<imperfection> atelophobia
<infinity> apeirophobia
<injury> traumatophobia
<inoculation> trypanophobia *or* vaccinophobia
<insanity> lyssophobia *or* maniaphobia
<insects> entomophobia
<insect stings> cnidophobia
<itching> acarophobia
<Japanese> Japanophobia
<jealousy> zelophobia
<Jews> Judeophobia
<justice> dikephobia
<kissing> philemaphobia *or* philematophobia
<lakes> limnophobia
<learning> sophophobia
<lice, parasites> pediculophobia *or* phthiriophobia
<light> photophobia
<light flashes> selaphobia
<lightning> astraphobia *or* astrapophobia
<loneliness> autophobia *or* monophobia *or* eremitophobia
<love> philophobia
<machinery> mechanophobia
<magic> rhabdophobia
<marriage> gametophobia *or* gamophobia
<meat> carnophobia
<men> androphobia
<meningitis> meningitophobia
<menstruation> menophobia
<metal> metallophobia
<mice> musophobia *or* murophobia
<microbes> bacillophobia *or* microbiophobia
<mirrors> eisoptrophobia *or* catoptrophobia
<mites> acarophobia
<mobs> ochlophobia
<money> chrometophobia
<monsters> teratophobia
<moon> selenophobia
<mother-in-law> pentheraphobia
<motion> dromophobia *or* kinetophobia
<moving vehicles> ochophobia
<music> musicophobia
<names> onomatophobia
<narrowness> anginophobia
<needles> belonephobia
<newness> cainophobia *or* cainotophobia *or* centophobia
<new things> neophobia
<night> nyctophobia
<noise> ligyrophobia
<nuclear weapons> nucleomitophobia
<nudity> gymnophobia *or* nudophobia
<numbers> arithmophobia *or* numerophobia
<old people> gerontophobia
<one thing> monophobia
<open places> agoraphobia
<opposite sex> sexophobia *or* heterophobia
<pain> algophobia *or* odynesphobia
<parasites> parasitophobia
<passing high buildings> batophobia
<people> anthropophobia
<philosophy> philosophobia
<pins> enetophobia
<pleasure> hedonophobia
<poison> toxiphobia *or* toxophobia *or* toxicophobia
<politics> politicophobia
<the Pope> papaphobia
<poverty> peniaphobia
<precipices> cremnophobia
<priests> hierophobia
<protein> proteinphobia
<punishment> poinephobia
<rabies> hydrophobophobia
<radiation> radiophobia
<rectum, rectal disease> rectophobia *or* proctophobia
<relatives> syngenesophobia
<reptiles> batrachophobia *or* herpetophobia
<responsibility> hypegiaphobia
<ridicule> katagelophobia
<rivers> potamophobia
<robbers> harpaxophobia
<ruin> atephobia
<Russians> Russophobia
<saints> hagiophobia
<Satan> Satanophobia
<school> didaskaleinophobia *or* scolionophobia
<sea> thalassophobia
<sex> erotophobia *or* genophobia
<shadows> sciophobia *or* sciaphobia
<sharpness> acrophobia *or* aichurophobia
<shock> hormephobia
<sin> hamartophobia *or* peccatiphobia
<skin> dermatosiophobia
<skin disease> dermatopathophobia
<sleep> hypnophobia
<slime> blennophobia *or* myxophobia
<small things> microphobia
<smell> olfactophobia *or* osmophobia *or* ophresiophobia
<smothering> pnigophobia *or* pnigerophobia
<snakes> ophiciophobia *or* ophiophobia *or* snakephobia
<snow> chionophobia
<soiling> rypophobia
<solitude> isolophobia
<sound> acousticophobia
<sourness> acerophobia *or* acerbophobia
<speech> lalophobia *or* laliophobia *or* glossophobia *or* phonophobia
<speed> tachophobia
<spiders> arachnophobia
<spirits> pneumatophobia
<stairs> climacophobia
<standing> stasophobia
<stars> siderophobia
<stealing> kleptophobia
<string> linonophobia
<sun> heliophobia
<surgery> tomophobia
<swallowing> phagophobia
<symmetry> symmetrophobia
<syphilis> syphilophobia
<taste> geumatophobia
<technology> technophobia

<teeth> odontophobia
<telephone> telephonophobia
<termites> isopterophobia
<thinking> phronemophobia
<thirteen> tredecaphobia *or* triskaidekaphobia
<thunder> brontophobia *or* tonitrophobia *or* keraunophobia
<thunder and lightning> astraphobia *or* astrapophobia
<touch> haptophobia *or* haphophobia *or* thixophobia
<travel> hodophobia
<trees> dendrophobia
<trembling> tremophobia
<trichinosis> trichinophobia
<tuberculosis> tuberculophobia *or* phthisiophobia
<tyrants> tyrannophobia
<urine> urophobia
<vegetables> lachanophobia
<vehicles> ochophobia
<venereal disease> venereophobia *or* cypridophobia
<void> kenophobia
<vomiting> emetophobia
<washing, bathing> ablutophobia
<wasps> spheksophobia
<water> hydrophobia *or* aquaphobia
<waves> cymophobia
<weakness> asthenophobia
<wind> ancraophobia
<women> gynephobia *or* feminophobia
<words> logophobia
<work> ergophobia
<worms> vermiphobia *or* helminthophobia
<wound, injury> traumatophobia
<wrinkles> rhytiphobia
<writing> graphophobia
<young girls> parthenophobia

36 phobias by name

ablutophobia <washing, bathing>
acrophobia *or* altophobia *or* batophobia *or* hypsophobia <high places>
acrophobia <sharpness>
aerophobia <draft>
agoraphobia <open places>
agyrophobia <crossing a street>
ailurophobia <cats>
algophobia <pain>
ancraophobia <wind>
androphobia <men>
anemophobia <anemia>
anginophobia <narrowness>
Anglophobia <English>
anthophobia <flowers>
anthropophobia <people>
antlophobia <floods>
apeirophobia <infinity>
apiphobia <bees>
arachnophobia <spiders>
arithmophobia or numerophobia <numbers>
asthenophobia <weakness>
astraphobia *or* astrapophobia <lightning>
atelophobia <imperfection>
atephobia <ruin>
aulophobia <flutes>
aurophobia <gold>
automysophobia <being dirty>
autophobia *or* monophobia *or* ermitophobia <being alone, loneliness>
aviatophobia <flying>
bacillophobia *or* microbiophobia <microbes>
bacteriophobia <bacteria>
ballistophobia <bullets>
barophobia <gravity>
bathophobia <depth>
batophobia <passing high buildings>
batrachophobia *or* herpetophobia <reptiles, frogs>
belonephobia <needles>
blennophobia *or* myxophobia <slime>
bromidrosiphobia *or* bromidrophobia <body odor>
brontophobia *or* tonitrophobia *or* keraunophobia <thunder>
cancerphobia *or* cancerophobia *or* carcinophobia <cancer>
cainophobia *or* cainotophobia <newness>
cardiophobia <heart disease>
carnophobia <meat>
chaetophobia *or* trichophobia <hair>
cheimaphobia *or* cheimatophobia <cold>
chionophobia <snow>
cholerophobia <cholera>
chrometophobia <money>
chromophobia <color>
chronophobia <duration>
cibophobia *or* sitophobia *or* sitiophobia <food>
claustrophobia <enclosed places>
climacophobia <stairs>
clinophobia <going to bed>
cnidophobia <insect stings>
coimetrophobia <cemeteries>
coitophobia <coitus>
cometophobia <comets>
coprophobia <feces>
coprostasophobia <constipation>
cremnophobia <precipices>
cryophobia <ice>
crystallophobia <crystals>
cyberphobia <computers>
cymophobia <waves>
cynophobia <dogs>
decidophobia <decisions>
demonophobia <demons>
demophobia <crowds>
dendrophobia <trees>
dentophobia <dentists>
dermatopathophobia <skin disease>
dermatosiophobia <skin>
diabetophobia <diabetes>
didaskaleinophobia *or* scolionophobia <school>
dikephobia <justice>
diplopiaphobia <double vision>
doraphobia <fur>
dromophobia *or* kinetophobia <motion>
dystychiphobia <accidents>
ecclesiophobia <church>
ecophobia *or* oecophobia *or* oikophobia <home>
eisoptrophobia <mirrors>
electrophobia <electricity>
eleutherophobia <freedom>
emetophobia <vomiting>
enetophobia <pins>
entomophobia <insects>
eosophobia <dawn>
ergophobia <work>
erotophobia *or* genophobia <sex>
erythrophobia <blushing>
febriphobia <fever>
Francophobia *or* Gallophobia <French>
gametophobia <marriage>
gephyrophobia <crossing a bridge>
gerascophobia <growing old>
gerontophobia <old people>
Germanophobia *or* Teutonophobia <Germans>
geumatophobia <taste>
graphophobia <writing>
gymnophobia *or* nudophobia <nudity>
gynephobia <women>
hadephobia *or* stygiophobia <hell>
hagiophobia <saints>
hamartophobia *or* peccatiphobia <sin>
haptophobia *or* haphophobia *or* thixophobia <touch>
harpaxophobia <robbers>
hedonophobia <pleasure>
heliophobia <sun>
helminthophobia <worms>
hemaphobia *or* hematophobia *or* hemophobia <blood>
hierophobia <priests>
hippophobia <horses>

hodophobia <travel>
homichlophobia <fog>
homophobia <homosexuality>
hormephobia <shock>
hydrophobia <water>
hydrophobophobia <rabies>
hygrophobia <dampness>
hypegiaphobia <responsibility>
hypnophobia <sleep>
iatrophobia <doctors, hospitals>
ichthyophobia <fish>
ideophobia <ideas>
isolophobia <solitude>
isopterophobia <termites>
Japanophobia <Japanese>
Judeophobia <Jews>
kakorraphiaphobia <failure>
katagelophobia <ridicule>
kenophobia <void>
kleptophobia <stealing>
koniophobia *or* amathophobia <dust>
kopophobia <fatigue>
lachanophobia <vegetables>
lalophobia *or* laliophobia *or* glossophobia *or* phonophobia <speech>
ligyrophobia <noise>
lilapsophobia <hurricanes>
limnophobia <lakes>
linonophobia <string>
logophobia <words>
lyssophobia *or* maniaphobia <insanity>
mastigophobia <beating>
mechanophobia <machinery>
meningitophobia <meningitis>
menophobia <menstruation>
metallophobia <metal>
microphobia <small things>
monophobia <one thing>
musicophobia <music>
musophobia <mice>
myrmecophobia <ants>
mysophobia <dirt>
necrophobia <corpses>
neophobia <new things>
nephophobia <clouds>
nosemaphobia *or* nosophobia <illness>
nosocomephobia <hospitals>
nucleomitophobia <nuclear weapons>
nyctophobia <night>
obesophobia *or* pocrescophobia <gaining weight>
ochlophobia <mobs>
ochophobia <vehicles>
odontophobia <teeth>
olfactophobia *or* osmophobia *or* ophresiophobia <smell>
ommataphobia <eyes>
oneirophobia <dreams>
onomatophobia <names>
ophiciophobia *or* ophiophobia *or* snakephobia <snakes>
ornithophobia <birds>
panphobia *or* pantophobia <everything>
papaphobia <the Pope>
parasitophobia <parasites>
parthenophobia <young girls>
pathophobia <disease>
patroiophobia <heredity>
pediculophobia <lice, parasites>
pedophobia <children>
peniaphobia <poverty>
pentheraphobia <mother-in-law>
phagophobia <swallowing>
phalacrophobia <baldness>
pharmacophobia <drugs>
phasmophobia <ghosts>
phengophobia <daylight, sunlight>
philemaphobia *or* philematophobia <kissing>
philophobia <love>
philosophobia <philosophy>
phobophobia <fear>
photophobia <light>
phronemophobia <thinking>
pneumatophobia <spirits>
pnigophobia *or* pnigerophobia <smothering>
pogonophobia <beards>
poinephobia <punishment>
politicophobia <politics>
potamophobia <rivers>
potophobia <drink>
proteinphobia <protein>
pteronophobia <feathers>
pyrophobia <fire>
radiophobia <radiation>
rectophobia <rectum>
rhabdophobia <magic>
rhytiphobia <wrinkles>
Russophobia <Russians>
rypophobia <soiling>
Satanophobia <Satan>
scabiophobia <scabies>
sciophobia <shadows>
selaphobia <light flashes>
selenophobia <moon>
sexophobia *or* heterophobia <opposite sex>
siderophobia <stars>
Sinophobia <Chinese>
sophophobia <learning>
spermophobia *or* spermatophobia <germs>
spheksophobia <wasps>
stasophobia <standing>
symmetrophobia <symmetry>
syngenesophobia <relatives>
syphilophobia <syphilis>
tachophobia <speed>
taurophobia <bulls>
technophobia <technology>
telephonophobia <telephone>
teratophobia <monsters>
thaasophobia <being idle>
thalassophobia <sea>
thanatophobia <death>
theophobia <God>
thermophobia <heat>
tocophobia <childbirth>
tomophobia <surgery>
topophobia <certain places>
toxiphobia *or* toxophobia *or* toxicophobia <poison>
traumatophobia <wound, injury>
tredecaphobia *or* triskaidekaphobia <the number thirteen>
tremophobia <trembling>
trichinophobia <trichinosis>
trichopathophobia <hair disease>
trypanophobia *or* vaccinophobia <inoculation>
tuberculophobia *or* phthisiophobia <tuberculosis>
tyrannophobia <tyrants>
uranophobia *or* ouranophobia <heaven>
urophobia <urine>
ursaphobia <bears>
venereophobia <venereal disease>
vermiphobia *or* helminthophobia <worms>
xenophobia <foreigners>
xylophobia <forests>
zelophobia <jealousy>
zoophobia <animals>

128 NERVOUSNESS

NOUNS 1 **nervousness, nerves,** nervosity, **disquiet, uneasiness, apprehensiveness,** disquietude, qualmishness, malaise, funny *or* creepy feeling, **qualm, qualms, misgiving;** undue *or* morbid excitability, excessive irritability, state of nerves, case of nerves, spell of nerves, attack of nerves; **agitation, trepidation;** fear 127; panic; **fidgets,** fidgetiness, jitteriness, jumpiness; nail-biting; twitching, tic, vellication; stage fright, buck fever <nf>; nervous stomach, butterflies in one's stomach <nf>

2 <nf terms> **jitters,** willies, **heebie-jeebies,**

jimjams, **jumps, shakes,** quivers, trembles, dithers, collywobbles, butterflies, shivers, cold shivers, creeps, sweat, cold sweat; antsyness, ants in one's pants, yips

3 **tension,** tenseness, tautness, **strain, stress,** stress and strain, mental strain, nervous tension *or* strain, pressure

4 frayed nerves, frazzled nerves, jangled nerves, shattered nerves, raw nerves *or* nerve endings, twanging *or* tingling nerves; neurosis; neurasthenia, nervous prostration, crackup, **nervous breakdown**

5 **nervous wreck,** wreck, a bundle of nerves

VERBS 6 **fidget,** have the fidgets; jitter, have the jitters, etc; **tense up; tremble**

7 lose self-control, go into hysterics; lose courage 491.8; **go to pieces,** have a nervous breakdown, fall apart *or* to pieces, come apart, fall *or* come apart at the seams, spazz out <nf>

8 <nf terms> **crack, crack up,** go haywire, **blow one's cork** *or* mind *or* stack, **flip,** flip one's lid *or* wig, wig out, freak out, go out of one's skull; come unglued *or* unstuck, go up the wall

9 **get on one's nerves,** jangle the nerves, **grate on, jar on,** put on edge, **set one's teeth on edge, go against the grain, send one up the wall** <nf>, drive one crazy; **irritate** 96.14

10 **unnerve, unman, undo, unstring,** unbrace, reduce to jelly, **demoralize, shake, upset,** psych out <nf>, dash, knock down *or* flat, **crush,** overcome, prostrate

ADJS 11 **nervous,** nervy <Brit nf>; **high-strung,** overstrung, highly strung, all nerves; **uneasy, apprehensive,** qualmish, nail-biting, white-knuckle <nf>, frit <Brit nf>; nervous as a cat; **excitable; irritable,** edgy, **on edge,** nerves on edge, on the ragged edge <nf>, wired <nf>, panicky, **fearful, frightened**

12 **jittery** <nf>, **jumpy,** twittery, skittish, skittery, trigger-happy <nf>, gun-shy; **shaky,** shivery, quivery, in a quiver; tremulous, tremulant, trembly; jumpy as a cat on a hot tin roof; **fidgety,** fidgeting; fluttery, all of a flutter *or* twitter; twitchy; **agitated;** shaking, trembling, quivering, shivering; shook up *and* all shook up <nf>

13 **tense,** tensed-up, uptight <nf>, **strained,** stretched tight, taut, unrelaxed, **under a strain**

14 **unnerved, unmanned, unstrung, undone,** reduced to jelly, unglued <nf>, **demoralized, shaken, upset,** dashed, stricken, **crushed; shot,** shot to pieces; neurasthenic, prostrate, prostrated, overcome

15 **unnerving, nerve-racking,** nerve-rending, nerve-shaking, nerve-jangling, nerve-trying, nerve-stretching; jarring, grating

ADVS 16 **nervously, shakily,** shakingly, tremulously, tremblingly, quiveringly

129 UNNERVOUSNESS

NOUNS 1 **unnervousness, nervelessness; sangfroid, calmness,** inexcitability 106; unshakiness, untremulousness; **steadiness,** steady-handedness, steady nerves; no nerves, strong nerves, iron nerves, nerves of steel, icy nerves; cool head

ADJS 2 **unnervous, nerveless,** without a nerve in one's body; strong-nerved, iron-nerved, steel-nerved; coolheaded, **calm,** inexcitable 106.10; calm, cool, and collected; cool as a cucumber <nf>; **steady,** steady as a rock, rock-steady, steady-nerved, steady-handed; unshaky, unshaken, unquivering, untremulous, without a tremor; unflinching, unfaltering, unwavering, unshrinking, unblenching, unblinking; **relaxed,** unstrained

130 EXPECTATION

NOUNS 1 **expectation,** expectance *or* **expectancy,** state of expectancy; **predictability,** predictableness; **anticipation, prospect,** thought; contemplation; likelihood, probability 968; confidence, presumption, reliance 953.1, overreliance; certainty 970; imminence 840; unastonishment 123

2 sanguine *or* cheerful expectation, optimism, eager expectation, **hope** 124; the light at the end of the tunnel

3 **suspense,** state of suspense, cliff-hanging *and* nail-biting <nf>; **waiting,** expectant waiting, hushed expectancy; uncertainty 971, nervous expectation; **anxiety, dread, pessimism,** apprehension 126.1

4 **expectations,** prospects, outlook, hopes, apparent destiny *or* fate, future prospects; likelihoods, probabilities; prognosis; accountability, responsibility

VERBS 5 **expect,** be expectant, **anticipate, have in prospect,** face, think, **contemplate,** have in contemplation *or* mind, envision, envisage; **hope** 124.7; presume 951.10; dread; **take for granted;** not be surprised *or* a bit surprised; foresee 961.5

6 **look forward to,** reckon *or* calculate *or* count on, predict, foresee; look to, **look for, watch for,** look out for, watch out for, be on the watch *or* lookout for, keep a good *or* sharp lookout for; be ready for; forestall

7 **be expected,** be one's probable fate *or* destiny, be one's outlook *or* prospect, be in store

8 **await,** wait, wait for, wait on *or* upon, stay *or* tarry for; have *or* keep an eye out for, lie in wait for, line up for; wait around *or* about, watch, watch and wait; **bide one's time,** bide, abide, **mark time;** cool

one's heels <nf>; be in suspense, be on tenterhooks, be on pins and needles, hold one's breath, bite one's nails, sweat *or* sweat out *or* sweat it *or* sweat it out <nf>; **wait up for,** stay up for, sit up for; cross one's fingers; be on the waiting list; be on standby, be on call

9 **expect to,** intend, plan on 380.4,6,7

10 **be as expected,** be as one thought *or* looked for, turn out that way, come as no surprise; **be just like one,** be one all over <nf>; **expect it of,** think that way about, **not put it past** <nf>; **impend,** be imminent 840.2; lead one to expect 133.13

ADJS 11 **expectant,** expecting, in expectation *or* anticipation; **anticipative,** anticipant, anticipating, anticipatory; **holding one's breath; waiting,** awaiting, waiting for; forewarned, forearmed, forestalling, ready, prepared, on standby; **looking forward to,** looking for, watching for, on the watch *or* lookout for; gaping, agape, agog, all agog, atiptoe, atingle, **eager;** sanguine, optimistic, hopeful 124.11; sure, confident 953.21,969.21; certain 970.13; unsurprised, not surprised

12 **in suspense, on tenterhooks,** on pins and needles, on tiptoe, **on edge, with bated breath,** tense, taut, with muscles tense, quivering, keyed-up, biting one's nails; anxious, **apprehensive;** dreading; **suspenseful,** cliff-hanging <nf>

13 **expected, anticipated, awaited, predicted, foreseen;** presumed 951.14; probable 968.6; **looked-for,** hoped-for; **due, promised;** long-expected, long-awaited, overdue; **in prospect, prospective;** in the cards; **in view,** in one's eye, on the horizon; imminent 840.3

14 **to be expected,** as expected, up to *or* according to expectation, just as one thought, just as predicted, on schedule, **as one may have suspected,** as one might think *or* suppose; **expected of,** counted on, **taken for granted;** just like one, one all over <nf>, in character

ADVS 15 **expectantly,** expectingly; anticipatively, **anticipatingly,** anticipatorily; hopefully 124.14; **with bated breath,** in hushed expectancy, with breathless expectation; with ears pricked up, with eyes *or* ears strained

131 INEXPECTATION

NOUNS 1 **inexpectation,** nonexpectation, inexpectance *or* inexpectancy, no expectation, **unanticipation; unexpectedness;** unforeseeableness, unpredictableness, unpredictability; unreadiness, unpreparedness; the unforeseen, the unlooked-for, the last thing one expects; **improbability** 969

2 **surprise,** surprisal; **astonishment** 122.1-2; surpriser, startler, shocker, **blow,** staggerer <nf>, **eye-opener,** revelation; **bolt out of** *or* **from the blue,** thunderbolt, thunderclap; **bombshell,** bomb; blockbuster, earthshaker; sudden turn *or* development, *peripeteia* <Gk>, switch; surprise ending, kicker *or* joker *or* catch <nf>; surprise package; surprise party

3 **start, shock, jar, jolt, turn,** fright

VERBS 4 **not expect,** hardly expect, **not anticipate, not look for,** not bargain for, **not foresee,** not think of, have no thought of, have no expectation, think unlikely *or* improbable

5 **be startled, be taken by surprise,** be taken aback, be given a start, be given a turn *or* jar *or* jolt; **start,** startle, **jump,** jump a mile <nf>, jump out of one's skin; **shy,** start aside, flinch

6 **be unexpected, come unawares,** come as a surprise *or* shock, come out of left field <nf>, come out of nowhere, appear unexpectedly, turn up, pop up *and* bob up <nf>, drop from the clouds, appear like a bolt out of the blue, come *or* burst like a thunderclap *or* thunderbolt, burst *or* flash upon one, come *or* fall *or* pounce upon, steal *or* creep up on

7 **surprise, take by surprise,** do the unexpected, spring a surprise <nf>, **open one's eyes,** give one a revelation; **catch** *or* **take unawares,** catch *or* take short, take aback, pull up short, raise some eyebrows, catch off-guard 941.7, cross one up <nf>; throw a curve <nf>, come from behind, come from an unexpected quarter, come out of the blue, come upon unexpectedly *or* without warning, spring *or* pounce upon; drop a bombshell, drop a brick <nf>; throw *or* knock for a loop <nf>; **blindside** <nf>, spring a mine under, ambush, bushwhack; drop in on <nf>; give a surprise party; **astonish** 122.6

8 **startle, shock, electrify, jar, jolt, shake,** stun, **stagger, give one a turn** <nf>, give the shock of one's life, make one jump out of his skin, take aback, take one's breath away, throw on one's beam ends, bowl down *or* over <nf>, strike all of a heap <nf>; frighten

ADJS 9 **inexpectant,** nonexpectant, unexpecting; **unanticipative,** unanticipating; **unsuspecting, unaware,** unguessing; uninformed, unwarned, unforewarned, unadvised, unadmonished; unready, unprepared; off one's guard 984.8

10 **unexpected, unanticipated, unlooked for,** unhoped for, unprepared for, undivined, unguessed, unpredicted, **unforeseen;** unforeseeable, unpredictable, off-the-wall <nf>; **improbable** 968.3; contrary to expectation, beyond *or* past expectation, out of one's reckoning, more than expected, more than one bargained for; out of the

blue, dropped from the clouds, out of left field *and* from out in left field <nf>; without warning, unheralded, unannounced; sudden 830.5; out-of-the-way, **extraordinary**

11 **surprising,** astonishing 122.12; eye-opening, eye-popping <nf>; **startling, shocking,** electrifying, boggling, staggering, stunning, jarring, jolting

12 **surprised,** struck with surprise, openmouthed; **astonished** 122.9; **taken by surprise,** taken unawares, caught short; blindsided <nf>

13 **startled, shocked, electrified,** jarred, jolted, shaken, shook <nf>, staggered, **given a turn** *or* **jar** *or* **jolt,** taken aback, bowled down *or* over <nf>, struck all of a heap <nf>, able to be knocked down with a feather; speechless, flabbergasted

ADVS 14 **unexpectedly,** unanticipatedly, improbably, implausibly, unpredictably, **unforseeably,** *à l'improviste* <Fr>, **by surprise, unawares,** against *or* contrary to all expectation, when least expected, as no one would have predicted, without notice *or* warning, in an unguarded moment, like a thief in the night; **out of a clear sky, out of the blue, like a bolt from the blue;** suddenly 830.9

15 **surprisingly, startlingly, to one's surprise,** to one's great surprise; shockingly, staggeringly, stunningly, **astonishingly** 122.16

132 DISAPPOINTMENT

NOUNS 1 **disappointment,** sad *or* sore disappointment, bitter *or* cruel disappointment, failed *or* blasted expectation; **dashed hope, blighted hope,** betrayed hope, hope deferred, forlorn hope; **dash** <old>, dash to one's hopes; blow, buffet; **frustration,** discomfiture, bafflement, defeat, balk, foiling; **comedown,** setback, **letdown** <nf>; failure, fizzle <nf>, fiasco; **disillusionment** 977; tantalization, mirage, tease; dissatisfaction 108.1; fallen countenance; bad news, bummer <nf>

VERBS 2 **disappoint,** defeat expectation *or* hope; **dash,** dash *or* blight *or* blast *or* crush one's hope; **balk, bilk, thwart, frustrate, baffle, defeat,** foil, cross; put one's nose out of joint; **let down,** cast down; **disillusion** 977.2; tantalize, tease; dissatisfy; leave in the lurch; burst someone's bubble

3 **be disappointing, let one down <nf>, not come up to expectation,** come to nothing, not live *or* measure up to expectation, go wrong, turn sour, disappoint one's expectations, come *or* fall short; peter out *or* fizzle *or* fizzle out <nf>, not make it *and* not hack it <nf>

4 **be disappointed,** have hoped for better, not realize one's expectations, fail of one's hopes *or* ambitions, run into a stone wall, be let down; look blue, laugh on the wrong side of one's mouth <nf>; be crestfallen *or* chapfallen

ADJS 5 **disappointed,** bitterly *or* sorely disappointed; **let down,** betrayed, ill-served, ill done-by; **dashed,** blighted, blasted, crushed; **balked,** bilked, **thwarted, frustrated,** baffled, crossed, dished <Brit>, defeated, foiled; caught in one's own trap; disillusioned 977.5; disenchanted, crestfallen, chapfallen, out of countenance; soured; dissatisfied; regretful 113.8

6 **disappointing,** not up to expectation, falling short, out of the running, not up to one's hopes, second- *or* third-best; tantalizing, teasing; **unsatisfactory;** disheartening

133 PREMONITION

NOUNS 1 **premonition, presentiment,** preapprehension, forefeeling, presage, presagement; **hunch** 934.3, **feeling in one's bones;** prediction 962

2 foreboding, boding; **apprehension, misgiving,** chill *or* quiver along the spine, creeping *or* shudder of the flesh; wind of change

3 **omen, portent; augury,** auspice, soothsay, prognostic, prognostication; **premonitory sign** *or* **symptom,** premonitory shiver *or* chill, **foretoken,** foretokening, tokening, betokening, betokenment, foreshowing, prefiguration, presigning <old>, presignifying, presignification, **preindication,** indicant, indication, **sign, token,** type, **promise,** sign of the times; **foreshadowing, adumbration,** foreshadow, shadow

4 **warning, forewarning,** "warnings, and portents and evils imminent," "the baby figure of the giant mass of things to come"—Shakespeare, handwriting on the wall, "*mene, mene, tekel, upharsin*"—Bible <Aramaic>

5 **harbinger, forerunner, precursor,** messenger <old>, **herald,** announcer, *buccinator novi temporis* <L>; presager, premonitor, foreshadower

6 <omens> bird of ill omen, owl, raven, stormy petrel, Mother Carey's chicken; gathering clouds, clouds on the horizon, dark *or* black clouds, angry clouds, storm clouds, thundercloud, thunderhead; black cat; broken mirror; rainbow; ring around the moon; shooting star; halcyon bird; woolly bear, groundhog

7 **ominousness, portentousness, portent,** bodefulness, presagefulness, suggestiveness, significance, **meaning** 518, meaningfulness; fatefulness, fatality, doomfulness, sinisterness, banefulness, balefulness, direness

8 **inauspiciousness, unpropitiousness, unfavorableness, unfortunateness, unluckiness,** ill-fatedness, ill-omenedness; fatality

9 **auspiciousness, propitiousness, favorableness; luckiness, fortunateness,** prosperousness, beneficience, benignity, benignancy, benevolence; brightness, cheerfulness, cheeriness; good omen, good auspices, *auspicium melioris aevi* <L>

VERBS 10 **foreshow, presage;** omen, be the omen of, auspicate <old>; **foreshadow, adumbrate,** shadow, shadow forth, cast their shadows before; **predict** 961.9; have an intimation, have a hunch <nf>, feel *or* know in one's bones, feel the wind of change

11 **forebode, bode,** portend, croak; **threaten, menace, lower,** look black, spell trouble; **warn, forewarn,** raise a warning flag, give pause; have a premonition *or* presentiment, apprehend, preapprehend, fear for

12 **augur,** hint, divine <old>; **foretoken, preindicate,** presignify, presign, presignal, pretypify, **prefigure,** betoken, token, typify, **signify,** mean 518.8, spell, **indicate,** point to, look like, **be a sign of,** show signs of

13 **promise, suggest, hint, imply,** give prospect of, make likely, give ground for expecting, raise expectation, **lead one to expect,** hold out hope, make fair promise, have a lot going for, have *or* show promise, **bid fair, stand fair to**

14 **herald, harbinger, forerun,** run before; speak of, announce, proclaim, preannounce; give notice, notify, talk about

ADJS 15 augured, **foreshadowed, adumbrated, foreshown; indicated, signified; preindicated,** prognosticated, **foretokened,** prefigured, pretypified, presignified, presigned <old>; presignaled; **presaged; promised, threatened;** predicted 962.14

16 **premonitory, forewarning,** augural, monitory, warning, presageful, presaging, **foretokening, preindicative,** indicative, prognostic, prognosticative, presignificant, prefigurative; **significant,** meaningful 518.10, speaking; **foreshowing, foreshadowing;** big *or* pregnant *or* heavy with meaning; forerunning, precursory, precursive; intuitive 933.5; predictive 962.11

17 **ominous, portentous,** portending; **foreboding,** boding, **bodeful; inauspicious, ill-omened,** ill-boding, of ill *or* fatal omen, of evil portent, loaded *or* laden *or* freighted *or* fraught with doom, looming, looming over; fateful, doomful; apocalyptic; **unpropitious, unpromising, unfavorable, unfortunate, unlucky; sinister,** dark, black, gloomy, somber, dreary; **threatening, menacing, lowering;** bad, evil, ill, untoward; dire, baleful, baneful, **ill-fated,** ill-starred, evil-starred, star-crossed

18 **auspicious,** of good omen, of happy portent; **propitious, favorable,** favoring, fair, good; **promising,** of promise, full of promise; **fortunate, lucky,** prosperous; benign, benignant, bright, happy, golden

ADVS 19 **ominously, portentously, bodefully, forebodingly;** significantly, meaningly, meaningfully, speakingly, sinisterly; **threateningly, menacingly,** loweringly

20 **inauspiciously, unpropitiously, unpromisingly, unfavorably, unfortunately, unluckily**

21 **auspiciously, propitiously, promisingly, favorably; fortunately, luckily, happily;** brightly

134 PATIENCE

NOUNS 1 **patience,** patientness; **tolerance,** toleration, **acceptance; indulgence,** lenience, leniency 427; sweet reasonableness; **forbearance,** forbearing, forbearingness; **sufferance, endurance; long-suffering,** long-sufferance, longanimity; **stoicism,** fortitude, self-control; patience of Job; "the art of hoping"—Vauvenargues, "a minor form of despair, disguised as a virtue"—Ambrose Bierce; waiting game, waiting it out; **perseverance** 360

2 **resignation, meekness,** humility, humbleness; obedience; amenability; submission, **submissiveness** 433.3; acquiescence, compliance, uncomplainingness; **fatalism,** submission to fate *or* the inevitable *or* necessity; quietude, quietism, passivity, **passiveness** 329.1; *zitzflaysh* <Yiddish>; passive resistance, nonviolent resistance, nonresistance; Quakerism

3 **stoic,** Spartan, man of iron; Job, Griselda

VERBS 4 **be patient,** forbear, bear with composure, **wait,** wait it out, play a waiting game, wait around, wait one's turn, watch for one's moment, keep one's shirt *or* pants on <nf>, not hold one's breath <nf>; contain oneself, possess oneself, possess one's soul in patience; carry on, carry through; "have patience and endure"—Ovid

5 **endure, bear, stand,** support, sustain, **suffer, tolerate, abide,** bide, live with; persevere; **bear up under, bear the brunt, bear with, put up with, stand for,** tolerate, carry *or* bear one's cross, take what comes, take the bitter with the sweet, abide with, brook, brave, brave out, hang in there, keep it up

6 <nf terms> **take it,** take it on the chin, take it like a man, not let it get one down, stand the gaff; bite the bullet; hold still *or* stand still for, swallow, stick, **hang in, hang in there, hang tough,** tough *or* stick it out; lump it

7 **accept, condone, countenance;** overlook, not make an issue of, let go by, let pass; **reconcile oneself to,** resign oneself to, yield *or* submit to, obey; accustom *or* accommodate *or* adjust oneself to, sit

through; accept one's fate, lay in the lap of the gods, take things as they come, roll with the punches <nf>; **make the best of it,** make the most of it, make the best of a bad bargain, make a virtue of necessity; submit with a good grace, **grin and bear it,** grin and abide, shrug, shrug it off, slough off, not let it bother one; take in good part, take in stride; rise above

8 **take, pocket, swallow,** down, stomach, eat, digest, disregard, turn a blind eye, ignore; swallow an insult, pocket the affront, turn the other cheek, take it lying down, turn aside provocation

ADJS 9 **patient,** armed with patience, with a soul possessed in patience, patient as Job, Job-like, Griselda-like, "like patience on a monument smiling at grief"—Shakespeare; **tolerant,** tolerative, tolerating, accepting; understanding, **indulgent,** lenient; **forbearing;** philosophical; **long-suffering,** longanimous; **enduring,** endurant; stoic, stoical, Spartan; disciplined, self-controlled; **persevering**

10 **resigned,** reconciled; wait-and-see; **meek,** humble; obedient, amenable, **submissive** 433.12; acquiescent, compliant; accommodating, adjusting, adapting, adaptive; unresisting, **passive** 329.6; **uncomplaining**

ADVS 11 **patiently,** enduringly, stoically; **tolerantly, indulgently,** longanimously, leniently, forbearantly, forbearingly, philosophically, more in sorrow than in anger; perseveringly

12 **resignedly, meekly, submissively,** passively, acquiescently, compliantly, uncomplainingly

PHRS 13 Rome wasn't built in a day; all in good time; all things come to him who waits; don't hold your breath; time will tell

135 IMPATIENCE

NOUNS 1 **impatience,** impatientness, unpatientness, breathless impatience; **anxiety,** eagerness 101; tense readiness, **restlessness,** restiveness, ants in one's pants <nf>, prothymia; **disquiet,** disquietude, unquietness, uneasiness, **nervousness** 128; sweat *and* lather *and* stew <nf>, **fretfulness,** fretting, chafing; **impetuousness** 365.2; **haste** 401; excitement 105

2 **intolerance,** intoleration, unforbearance, nonendurance

3 **the last straw,** the straw that breaks the camel's back, the limit, the limit of one's patience, all one can bear *or* stand

VERBS 4 **be impatient,** hardly wait; hasten 401.4,5; itch to, burn to; **champ at the bit, pull at the leash,** not be able to sit down *or* stand still; **chafe, fret, fuss,** squirm; **stew,** sweat, sweat and stew, get into a dither, get into a stew <nf>, work oneself into a lather *or* sweat <nf>, get excited; wait impatiently, sweat it out <nf>, pace the floor; beat the gun, jump the gun <nf>, go off half-cocked, shoot from the hip

5 **have no patience with,** be out of all patience; **lose patience,** run out of patience, call a halt, have had it <nf>, blow the whistle <nf>

ADJS 6 **impatient,** unpatient; breathless; champing at the bit, rarin' to go <nf>; dying, **anxious, eager;** hopped-up *and* in a lather *and* in a sweat *or* stew <nf>, excited 105.18; edgy, **on edge; restless,** restive, unquiet, uneasy, on *shpilkes* <Yiddish>; **fretful,** fretting, chafing, antsy-pantsy *and* antsy <nf>, squirming, squirmy, about to pee *or* piss one's pants <nf>; **impetuous** 365.9; **hasty** 401.9

7 **intolerant, unforbearing, unindulgent**

ADVS 8 **impatiently,** breathlessly; **anxiously;** fretfully; restlessly, restively, uneasily; intolerantly

136 PRIDE

NOUNS 1 **pride,** proudness, pridefulness; **self-esteem, self-respect,** self-confidence, self-reliance, self-consequence, face, independence, self-sufficiency; pardonable pride; obstinate *or* stiff-necked pride, stiff-neckedness; **vanity,** conceit 140.4; haughtiness, **arrogance** 141, hubris; boastfulness 502.1; purse-pride

2 **proud bearing,** pride of bearing, military *or* erect bearing, stiff *or* straight backbone, **dignity,** dignifiedness, **stateliness,** courtliness, grandeur, **loftiness;** pride of place; **nobility,** lordliness, princeliness; **majesty,** regality, kingliness, queenliness; distinction, worthiness, augustness, venerability; **sedateness,** solemnity 111, gravity, *gravitas* <L>, sobriety

3 proudling; stiff neck; egoist 140.5; boaster 502.5, peacock; the proud

VERBS 4 **be proud,** hold up one's head, hold one's head high, stand up straight, hold oneself erect, never stoop; look one in the face *or* eye; stand on one's own two feet, pay one's own way; have one's pride

5 **take pride, pride oneself, preen oneself,** plume oneself on, pique oneself, **congratulate oneself,** hug oneself; **be proud of,** glory in, exult in, **burst with pride**

6 **make proud,** do one's heart good, do one proud <nf>, **gratify, elate,** flush, turn one's head

7 save face, save one's face, preserve one's dignity, guard *or* preserve one's honor, be jealous of one's repute *or* good name

ADJS 8 **proud, prideful,** proudful <nf>; **self-esteeming, self-respecting;** self-confident, self-reliant, **independent, self-sufficient;** proudhearted, proud-minded, proud-spirited, proud-blooded; proud-looking; proud as Punch, proud as Lucifer, proud as a peacock; erect, stiff-backed, **stiff-necked;** purse-proud, house-proud

9 **vain,** conceited 140.11; haughty, **arrogant** 141.9; boastful 502.10

10 **puffed up,** swollen, bloated, swollen *or* bloated *or* puffed-up with pride; elated, flushed, flushed with pride; bigheaded, swellheaded

11 **lofty, elevated,** triumphal, high, high-flown, highfalutin *and* highfaluting <nf>, high-toned <nf>; high-minded, lofty-minded; high-headed, high-nosed <nf>

12 **dignified, stately, imposing, grand, courtly,** magisterial, aristocratic; **noble,** lordly, princely; **majestic,** regal, royal, kingly, queenly; worthy, **august, venerable;** statuesque; **sedate,** solemn 111.3, sober, grave

ADVS 13 **proudly,** pridefully, **with pride;** self-esteemingly, self-respectingly, self-confidently, self-reliantly, independently, self-sufficiently; erectly, with head erect, with head held high, with nose in air; stiff-neckedly; like a lord, *en grand seigneur* <Fr>

14 **dignifiedly, with dignity;** nobly, stately, imposingly, loftily, grandly, magisterially; majestically, regally, royally; worthily, augustly, venerably; sedately, solemnly, soberly, gravely

137 HUMILITY

NOUNS 1 **humility, humbleness, meekness; lowliness,** lowlihood, poorness, meanness, smallness, ingloriousness, undistinguishedness; unimportance 997; innocuousness 999.9; teachableness 570.5; submissiveness 433.3; **modesty,** unpretentiousness 139.1; plainness, simpleness, homeliness

2 **humiliation,** mortification <old>, egg on one's face <nf>, **chagrin,** embarrassment 96.4; **abasement,** debasement, letdown, setdown, put-down *and* dump <nf>; **comedown,** descent, deflation, climb-down, wounded *or* injured pride; self-diminishment, **self-abasement,** self-abnegation 652.1; **shame, disgrace;** shamefacedness, shamefastness, hangdog look

3 **condescension,** condescendence, deigning, lowering oneself, stooping from one's high place

VERBS 4 **humiliate, humble;** mortify <old>, **embarrass** 96.15; put out, put out of face *or* countenance; **shame, disgrace,** put to shame, put to the blush, give one a red face; **deflate,** prick one's balloon; take it out of; marginalize; make one feel small *or* this high

5 **abase, debase, crush,** abash, **degrade, reduce,** diminish, **demean,** lower, **bring low,** bring down, trip up, take down, set down, put in one's place, put down, diss <nf>, dump *and* dump on <nf>, knock one off his perch; take down a peg *or* notch or two <nf>, make a fool *or* an ass *or* a monkey of one; put down <nf>

6 <nf terms> beat *or* knock *or* **cut one down to size,** take the shine *or* starch out of, take the wind out of one's sails; put one's nose out of joint, put a tuck in one's tail, make one sing small

7 **humble oneself, demean oneself,** abase oneself, climb down *and* get down from one's high horse <nf>; put one's pride in one's pocket; **eat humble pie,** eat crow *or* dirt, eat one's words, swallow one's pride, lick the dust, take *or* eat shit <nf>; come on bended knee, come hat in hand; go down on one's knees; pull *or* draw in one's horns *and* sing small <nf>, lower one's note *or* tone, tuck one's tail; come down a peg *or* a peg or two; **deprecate** *or* **depreciate oneself,** diminish oneself, discount oneself, belittle oneself; kiss one's ass <nf> 138.7

8 **condescend, deign, vouchsafe; stoop, descend,** lower *or* demean oneself, trouble oneself, set one's dignity aside *or* to one side; **patronize;** be so good as to, so forget oneself, dirty *or* soil one's hands; talk down to, talk *de haut en bas* <Fr, from high to low>

9 **be humiliated,** be put out of countenance; **be crushed, feel small, feel cheap,** look foolish *or* silly, be ready to sink through the floor; **take shame, be ashamed, feel ashamed of oneself,** be put to the blush, have a very red face; bite one's tongue; hang one's head, hide one's face, not dare to show one's face, not have a word to say for oneself; drink the cup of humiliation to the dregs

ADJS 10 **humble, lowly,** low, **poor, mean,** small, inglorious, undistinguished; unimportant 998.16; innocuous; biddable, teachable 570.18; **modest,** unpretentious 139.9, without airs; **plain, simple,** homely; humble-looking, humble-visaged; humblest, lowliest, lowest, least

11 humble-hearted, humble-minded, humble-spirited, poor in spirit; **meek,** meek-hearted, meek-minded, meek-spirited, lamblike, Christlike; **abject,** submissive 433.12

12 **self-abasing, self-abnegating, self-deprecating,** self-depreciating 139.10, self-doubting

13 **humbled,** reduced, diminished, lowered, brought down *or* low, set down, bowed down, in the dust, cut down to size; on one's knees, on one's marrowbones <nf>

14 **humiliated,** humbled, mortified <old>, **embarrassed, chagrined, abashed, crushed,** out of countenance; blushing, ablush, **red-faced,**

ashamed, shamed, ashamed of oneself, shamefaced, shamefast; crestfallen, chapfallen, hangdog

15 **humiliating,** humiliative, humbling, chastening, mortifying, **embarrassing,** crushing

ADVS 16 **humbly, meekly;** modestly 139.14; with due deference, with bated breath, "with bated breath and whispering humbleness"—Shakespeare; submissively 433.17; **abjectly,** on bended knee, **on one's knees,** on one's marrowbones <nf>, on all fours, with one's tail between one's legs, hat-in-hand

138 SERVILITY

NOUNS 1 **servility, slavishness,** subservience *or* subserviency, menialness, abjectness, **baseness,** meanness; **submissiveness** 433.3; slavery, helotry, helotism, serfdom, peonage

2 **obsequiousness, sycophancy,** fawningness, fawnery, **toadyism,** flunkyism; parasitism, sponging; **ingratiation,** insinuation; **truckling, fawning, toadying,** toadeating, groveling, cringing, **bootlicking** <nf>, back scratching, tufthunting <chiefly Brit old>, flattery; **apple-polishing** <nf>; ass-licking *and* ass-kissing *and* brown-nosing *and* sucking up <nf>; timeserving; obeisance, prostration; mealymouthedness

3 **sycophant, flatterer, toady,** toad, toadeater, lickspit, lickspittle, **truckler, fawner,** courtier, led captain *and* tufthunter <chiefly Brit old>, kowtower, groveler, cringer, spaniel; flunky, lackey, jackal; timeserver; creature, **puppet,** minion, lap dog, **tool,** cat's-paw, dupe, instrument, faithful servant, slave, helot, serf, peon; mealymouth

4 <nf terms> **apple-polisher, ass-kisser, brown-nose,** brown-noser, brownie, ass-licker, ass-wiper, suck-ass; **backslapper,** backscratcher, clawback, back-patter; **bootlicker,** bootlick; **handshaker; yes-man, stooge;** doormat

5 **parasite,** barnacle, leech; **sponger,** sponge <nf>, freeloader <nf>, gigolo, smell-feast; beat *and* deadbeat <nf>

6 **hanger-on, adherent,** dangler, appendage, **dependent, satellite, follower,** cohort, retainer, servant, man, shadow, tagtail, **henchman,** heeler <nf>

VERBS 7 **fawn, truckle; flatter; toady,** toadeat; **bootlick** <nf>, lickspittle, lick one's shoes, lick the feet of; **grovel,** crawl, creep, cower, cringe, crouch, stoop, kneel, bend the knee, fall on one's knees, prostrate oneself, throw oneself at the feet of, fall at one's feet, kiss *or* lick *or* suck one's ass *and* brown-nose <nf>, kiss one's feet, kiss the hem of one's garment, lick the dust, make a doormat of oneself; **kowtow,** bow, **bow and scrape**

8 **toady to, truckle to, pander to, cater to, cater for** <Brit>; **wait on** *or* **upon,** wait on hand and foot, dance attendance, do service, fetch and carry, do the dirty work of, do *or* jump at the bidding of, run after

9 **curry favor, court, pay court to,** make court to, run after <nf>, dance attendance on; **shine up to,** make up to <nf>; **suck up to** *and* **play up to** *and* act up to <nf>; be a yes-man <nf>, agree to anything; fawn upon, fall over *or* all over <nf>; **handshake** *and* back-scratch *and* **polish the apple** <nf>

10 **ingratiate oneself,** insinuate oneself, worm oneself in, get into the good graces of, get in with *or* next to <nf>, **get on the good** *or* **right side of,** rub the right way <nf>

11 **attach oneself to,** pin *or* fasten oneself upon, hang about *or* around, dangle, hang on the skirts of, hang on the sleeve of, become an appendage of, **follow,** follow at heel; follow the crowd, get on the bandwagon, go with the stream, hold with the hare and run with the hounds; latch onto <nf>

12 **sponge** *and* **sponge on** *and* **sponge off of** <nf>; feed on, fatten on, batten on, live off of, use as a meal ticket; parasitize

ADJS 13 **servile, slavish,** subservient, **menial, base,** mean; **submissive** 433.12; under one's thumb

14 **obsequious, flattering,** sycophantic, sycophantical, toadyish, fawning, truckling, ingratiating, smarmy <nf>, toadying, toadeating, **bootlicking** *and* back scratching *and* backslapping *and* ass-licking *and* brown-nosing <nf>; **groveling,** sniveling, cringing, cowering, crouching, crawling; **parasitic,** leechlike, sponging <nf>; timeserving; **abject,** beggarly, hangdog; obeisant, prostrate, on one's knees, on one's marrowbones <nf>, on bended knee; mealymouthed; overattentive

ADVS 15 **servilely, slavishly,** subserviently, menially; **submissively** 433.17

16 **obsequiously, sycophantically, ingratiatingly, fawningly, trucklingly;** hat-in-hand, cap-in-hand; **abjectly,** obeisantly, grovelingly, on one's knees; parasitically

139 MODESTY

NOUNS 1 **modesty, meekness;** humility 137; **unpretentiousness,** unassumingness, unpresumptuousness, **unostentatiousness,** unambitiousness, unobtrusiveness, unboastfulness

2 **self-effacement, self-depreciation,** self-deprecation, self-detraction, undervaluing of self, self-doubt, **diffidence;** hiding one's light under a bushel; low self-esteem, weak ego, lack of self-

confidence *or* self-reliance, self-distrust; inferiority complex

3 **reserve, restraint, constraint,** backwardness, retiring disposition; low key, low visibility, low profile; reticence, reluctance

4 **shyness, timidity,** timidness, timorousness, **bashfulness,** shamefacedness, shamefastness, pudicity, pudency, pudibundity *and* pudibundness *and* verecundity <old>; **coyness, demureness,** demurity, skittishness, mousiness; self-consciousness, embarrassment; stammering, confusion; stagefright, mike fright *and* flop sweat <nf>

5 **blushing, flushing,** coloring, mantling, reddening, crimsoning; **blush, flush,** suffusion, red face

6 shrinking violet, modest violet, mouse

VERBS 7 **efface oneself,** depreciate *or* deprecate *or* doubt *or* distrust oneself; have low self-esteem; reserve oneself, retire, shrink, **retire into one's shell, keep in the background,** not thrust oneself forward, **keep a low profile,** keep oneself to oneself, keep one's distance, remain in the shade, take a back seat *and* play second fiddle <nf>, know one's place, hide one's face, hide one's light under a bushel, avoid the limelight, eschew self-advertisement; pursue the noiseless tenor of one's way

8 **blush, flush,** mantle, **color,** change color, color up, redden, crimson, turn red, have a red face, get red in the face, blush up to the eyes; stammer; squirm; die of embarrassment

ADJS 9 **modest, meek;** humble; **unpretentious,** unpretending, **unassuming,** unpresuming, unpresumptuous, **unostentatious,** unassuming, unobtrusive, unimposing, unboastful; unambitious, unaspiring

10 **self-effacing, self-depreciative, self-depreciating,** self-deprecating; **diffident,** deprecatory, deprecative, self-doubting, unself-confident, unsure of oneself, unself-reliant, self-distrustful, self-mistrustful; low in self-esteem

11 **reserved, restrained, constrained;** quiet; low-keyed, keeping low visibility *or* a low profile; **backward, retiring, shrinking**

12 **shy, timid,** timorous, **bashful,** shamefaced, shamefast, pudibund *and* verecund *and* verecundious <old>; **coy, demure,** skittish, mousy; self-conscious, conscious, confused; stammering, inarticulate

13 **blushing,** blushful; **flushed,** red, ruddy, red-faced, red in the face; **sheepish; embarrassed**

ADVS 14 **modestly, meekly;** humbly; **unpretentiously,** unpretendingly, **unassumingly,** unpresumptuously, **unostentatiously,** unobtrusively; quietly, without ceremony, *sans façon* <Fr>

15 **shyly, timidly,** timorously, **bashfully, coyly, demurely,** diffidently; **shamefacedly,** shamefastly, **sheepishly,** blushingly, with downcast eyes

140 VANITY

NOUNS 1 **vanity, vainness;** overproudness, overweening pride; **self-importance,** consequentiality, consequentialness, **self-esteem,** high self-esteem *or* self-valuation, positive self-image, self-respect, self-assumption; **self-admiration,** self-delight, self-worship, self-endearment, **self-love,** *amour propre* <Fr>, self-infatuation, narcissism, narcism; autoeroticism, autoerotism, self-gratification; **self-satisfaction, self-content,** ego trip <nf>, self-approbation, self-congratulation, self-gratulation, self-complacency, **smugness,** complacency, self-sufficiency; vainglory, vaingloriousness; "an itch for the praise of fools"—Robert Browning

2 **pride** 136; arrogance 141; **boastfulness** 502.1

3 **egotism, egoism,** egoisticalness, egotisticalness, **ego** <nf>, self-interest, individualism; **egocentricity,** egocentrism, self-centeredness, self-centerment, self-obsession; selfishness 651

4 **conceit, conceitedness, self-conceit, self-conceitedness, immodesty,** side, self-assertiveness; **stuck-upness** <nf>, chestiness <nf>, swelled-headedness, swelled head, swollen head, big head, large hat size; **cockiness** <nf>, pertness, perkiness; pomposity; obtrusiveness, bumptiousness; egomania, megalomania

5 **egotist, egoist, egocentric,** individualist; show-off, peacock; narcissist, narcist, Narcissus; **swellhead** <nf>, **braggart** 502.5, know-it-all *or* know-all, smart-ass *and* wise-ass <nf>, smart aleck, no modest violet, "a person of low taste, more interested in himself than in me"—Ambrose Bierce

VERBS 6 **be stuck on oneself** <nf>, be impressed *or* overly impressed with oneself; ego-trip *and* be *or* go on an ego trip <nf>; think well of oneself, think one is it *or* one's shit doesn't stink <nf>, get too big for one's breeches, have a swelled head, know it all, have no false modesty, have no self-doubt, love the sound of one's own voice, be blinded by one's own glory, lay the flattering unction to one's soul; fish for compliments; toot one's own horn, **boast** 502.6,7; be vain as a peacock, give oneself airs 501.14

7 **puff up, inflate,** swell; go to one's head, turn one's head

ADJS 8 **vain, vainglorious,** overproud, overweening; **self-important, self-esteeming,** having high self-esteem *or* self-valuation, self-respecting, self-assuming, consequential; **self-admiring,** self-delighting, self-worshiping, self-loving, self-endeared, self-infatuated, narcissistic, narcistic; autoerotic, masturbatory; **self-satisfied, self-content,** self-contented, self-approving, self-gratulating, self-gratulatory, self-congratulating, self-congratulatory, self-complacent, **smug,** complacent, self-sufficient

9 **proud** 136.8; arrogant 141.9; boastful 502.10

10 **egotistic, egotistical,** egoistic, egoistical, self-interested; **egocentric,** egocentristic, self-centered, self-obsessed, narcissistic, narcistic; selfish 651.5; egomaniac

11 **conceited, self-conceited, immodest,** self-opinionated; **stuck-up** <nf>, **puffed up**; swollen-headed, **swelled-headed, big-headed** *and* too big for one's shoes *or* britches *and* biggety *and* **cocky** <nf>, jumped-up <chiefly Brit nf>; pert, perk, perky; peacockish, peacocky; know-all *or* know-it-all, smart-ass *and* wise-ass <nf>, smarty, smart-alecky, smart-ass <nf>, overwise, wise in one's own conceit; aggressively self-confident, obtrusive, bumptious

12 **stuck on oneself** <nf>, impressed with oneself, pleased with oneself, full of oneself, all wrapped up in oneself

ADVS 13 **vainly,** self-importantly; **egotistically,** egoistically; **conceitedly,** self-conceitedly, immodestly; cockily <nf>, pertly, perkily

141 ARROGANCE

NOUNS 1 **arrogance,** arrogantness; overbearingness, overbearing pride, overweening pride, stiff-necked pride, assumption of superiority, domineering, domineeringness; **pride,** proudness; superbia, sin of pride, chief of the deadly sins; **haughtiness, hauteur; loftiness,** Olympian loftiness *or* detachment; **toploftiness** *and* stuckupness *and* uppishness *and* uppityness <nf>, hoity-toitiness, hoity-toity; haughty airs, airs of *de haut en bas*; cornstarchy airs <nf>; high horse <nf>; **condescension,** condescendence, patronizing, patronization, patronizing attitude; purse-pride

2 **presumptuousness,** presumption, overweening, overweeningness, assumption, total self-assurance; hubris; **insolence** 142

3 **lordliness, imperiousness,** masterfulness, magisterialness, **high-and-mightiness,** aristocratic presumption; elitism

4 **aloofness, standoffishness,** offishness <nf>, chilliness, coolness, distantness, remoteness

5 **disdainfulness, disdain,** aristocratic disdain, **contemptuousness, superciliousness,** contumeliousness, cavalierness, you-be-damnedness <nf>

6 **snobbery, snobbishness,** snobbiness, snobbism; **priggishness, priggery,** priggism; snootiness *and* snottiness *and* sniffiness *and* high-hattedness *and* high-hattiness <nf>; tufthunting

7 **snob, prig; elitist; highbrow** *and* egghead <nf>, Brahmin, mandarin; name-dropper, tufthunter <chiefly Brit old>

VERBS 8 give oneself airs 501.14; **hold one's nose in the air, look down one's nose,** toss the head, bridle; mount *or* get on one's high horse *and* ride the high horse <nf>; **condescend, patronize, deign,** vouchsafe, stoop, descend, lower *or* demean oneself, trouble oneself, set one's dignity aside *or* to one side, be so good as to, so forget oneself, dirty *or* soil one's hands; deal with *or* treat *de haut en bas* <Fr, from high to low> or *en grand seigneur* <Fr, like a great lord>, talk down to, talk *de haut en bas*

ADJS 9 **arrogant, overbearing, superior,** domineering, **proud, haughty; lofty, top-lofty** <nf>; high-flown, high-falutin *and* high-faluting <nf>; high-headed; high-nosed *and* **stuck-up** *and* **uppish** *and* uppity *and* **upstage** <nf>; **hoity-toity,** big, big as you please, six feet above contradiction; on one's high horse; **condescending, patronizing,** *de haut en bas* <Fr>; purse-proud

10 **presumptuous,** presuming, assuming, overweening, would-be, self-elect, self-elected, self-appointed, self-proclaimed, *soi-disant* <Fr>; **insolent**

11 **lordly, imperious,** aristocratic, totally self-assured, noble; hubristic; masterful, magisterial, magistral, **high-and-mighty;** elitist; U <Brit nf>; dictatorial 417.16

12 **aloof, standoffish,** standoff, offish <nf>, chilly, cool, distant, remote, above all that; Olympian

13 **disdainful,** dismissive, **contemptuous, supercilious,** contumelious, cavalier, you-be-damned <nf>

14 **snobbish,** snobby, toffee-nosed <Brit nf>, **priggish,** snippy <nf>; **snooty** *and* **snotty** *and* sniffy <nf>; **high-hat** *and* high-hatted *and* high-hatty <nf>

ADVS 15 **arrogantly, haughtily, proudly,** aloofly; **condescendingly, patronizingly,** *de haut en bas* and *en grand seigneur* <Fr>; loftily, toploftily <nf>; imperiously, magisterially; Olympianly; **disdainfully, contemptuously,** superciliously, contumeliously; with nose in air, with nose turned up, with head held high, with arms akimbo

16 **presumptuously,** overweeningly, aristocratically; hubristically; **insolently**

17 **snobbishly,** snobbily, **priggishly;** snootily *and* snottily <nf>

142 INSOLENCE

NOUNS **1** **insolence; presumption,** presumptuousness; **audacity, effrontery,** boldness, assurance, hardihood, bumptiousness; hubris; overweening, overweeningness; **contempt** 157, **contemptuousness,** contumely; **disdain** 141.5, *sprezzatura* <Ital>; **arrogance** 141, uppishness *and* uppityness <nf>; obtrusiveness, pushiness <nf>

2 **impudence, impertinence,** flippancy, procacity *and* malapertness <old>, pertness, **sauciness,** sassiness <nf>, **cockiness** *and* cheekiness <nf>, freshness <nf>, chutzpa *or* hutzpa, **brazenness,** brazenfacedness, brassiness <nf>, face of brass, shamelessness, **rudeness** 505.1, **brashness,** disrespect, disrespectfulness, derision, ridicule 508

3 <nf terms> **cheek,** face, brass, **nerve, gall, chutzpah,** crust

4 **sauce** *and* sass *and* lip <nf>, **back talk,** backchat <nf>, mouth

5 <impudent person> malapert <old>; minx, hussy; whippersnapper, puppy, pup, upstart; boldface, brazenface; *chutzpadik* <Yiddish>; swaggerer 503.2

6 <nf terms> **smart aleck,** smarty, smart guy, smartmouth, smart-ass, wise-ass, smarty-pants, ho-dad, wisenheimer, wise guy, know-it-all, saucebox

VERBS **7** **have the audacity, have the cheek; have the gall** *or* a nerve *or* one's nerve <nf>; **get fresh** <nf>, get smart <nf>, forget one's place, **dare, presume,** take liberties, make bold *or* free; hold in contempt 157.3, ridicule, taunt, deride 508.8

8 **sauce** *and* sass <nf>, **talk back,** answer back, lip *and* give one the lip <nf>, mouth off <nf>, provoke

ADJS **9** **insolent,** insulting; **presumptuous,** presuming, overpresumptuous, overweening; **audacious, bold,** assured, hardy, bumptious; **contemptuous** 157.8, contumelious; **disdainful** 141.13, **arrogant** 141.9, uppish *and* uppity <nf>; hubristic; forward, pushy <nf>, obtrusive, familiar; cool, cold

10 **impudent, impertinent, pert,** malapert *and* procacious <old>, flip <nf>, flippant, **cocky** *and* cheeky *and* **fresh** *and* facy *and* crusty *and* nervy <nf>, *chutzpadik* <Yiddish>; uncalled-for, gratuitous, biggety <nf>; **rude** 505.4,6, **disrespectful,** derisive 508.12, brash, bluff; **saucy,** sassy <nf>; smart *or* smart-alecky <nf>, smart-ass *or* wise-ass <nf>

11 **brazen,** brazenfaced, boldfaced, barefaced, brassy <nf>, **bold,** bold as brass <nf>, unblushing, unabashed, aweless, **shameless,** dead *or* lost to shame; swaggering 503.4

ADVS **12** **insolently, audaciously,** bumptiously, contumeliously; **arrogantly** 141.15; **presumptuously,** obtrusively, pushily <nf>; **disdainfully** 141.15

13 **impudently, impertinently,** pertly, procaciously *and* malapertly <old>, flippantly, **cockily** *and* cheekily <nf>, saucily; **rudely** 505.8, brashly, disrespectfully, contemptuously 157.9, derisively 508.15, in a smart-alecky way <nf>, in a smart-ass fashion <nf>

14 **brazenly,** brazenfacedly, **boldly,** boldfacedly, **shamelessly,** unblushingly

143 KINDNESS, BENEVOLENCE

NOUNS **1** **kindness, kindliness,** kindly disposition; **benignity,** benignancy; **goodness, decency,** niceness; **graciousness; kindheartedness,** goodheartedness, warmheartedness, softheartedness, tenderheartedness, kindness *or* goodness *or* warmth *or* softness *or* tenderness of heart, affectionateness, warmth, **loving kindness,** "milk of human kindness"—Shakespeare; soul of kindness, kind heart, heart of gold; **brotherhood,** fellow feeling, **sympathy,** fraternal feeling, feeling of kinship; **pity** 145, **mercy, compassion; humaneness,** humanity; charitableness

2 **good nature, good humor,** good disposition, benevolent disposition, good temper, sweetness, sweet temper *or* nature, good-naturedness, good-humoredness, good-temperedness, bonhomie; **amiability,** affability, geniality, cordiality; **gentleness,** mildness, lenity

3 **considerateness, consideration, thoughtfulness,** courteousness, mindfulness, heedfulness, regardfulness, attentiveness, **solicitousness,** solicitude, thought, regard, concern, delicacy, **sensitivity,** tact, tactfulness; indulgence, toleration, leniency 427; complaisance, accommodatingness, **helpfulness,** obligingness, agreeableness

4 **benevolence,** benevolentness, benevolent disposition, well-disposedness, **beneficence, charity,** charitableness, **philanthropy; altruism,** philanthropism, **humanitarianism,** welfarism, do-goodism; utilitarianism, Benthamism, greatest good of the greatest number; **goodwill,** grace, brotherly *or* sisterly love, charity, Christian charity *or* love, *caritas* <L>, love of mankind, love of man *or* humankind, good will to *or* toward man, love, *agape* <Gk>, flower power; BOMFOG *or* brotherhood of man and fatherhood of God; **bigheartedness,** largeheartedness, greatheartedness; hospitality; **generosity** 485; giving 478

5 **welfare; welfare work, social service,** social welfare, social work; child welfare, etc;

commonweal, public welfare; welfare state, welfare statism, welfarism; relief, the dole, social security <Brit>

6 **benevolences,** philanthropies, charities; works, **good works,** public service

7 **act of kindness, kindness, favor,** mercy, **benefit,** benefaction, benevolence, benignity, blessing, **service,** turn, break <nf>, **good turn, good** *or* **kind deed,** *mitzvah* <Heb>, office, good *or* kind offices, obligation, grace, act of grace, courtesy, kindly act, labor of love, good work; rescue, relief, largess, donation, alms

8 **philanthropist, altruist,** benevolist, **humanitarian,** man of good will, **do-gooder,** goo-goo *and* bleeding heart <nf>, well-doer, power for good; good Samaritan; well-wisher; welfare worker, social worker, caseworker; welfare statist; almsgiver, almoner; Robin Hood, Lady Bountiful

VERBS 9 **be kind,** be good *or* nice, show kindness; treat well, do right by; favor, oblige, accommodate

10 **be considerate,** consider, respect, regard, think of, **be thoughtful of,** have consideration *or* regard for; remember; be at one's service, fuss over one, spoil one <nf>

11 **be benevolent, bear good will,** wish well, give one's blessing, have one's heart in the right place, have a heart of gold; practice *or* follow the golden rule, do as you would be done by, do unto others as you would have others do unto you; make love not war

12 **do a favor, do good,** do a kindness, do a good turn, do a good *or* kind deed, do good works, do a *mitzvah* <Heb>, use one's good offices, render a service, confer a benefit; benefit, help 449.11; mean well

ADJS 13 **kind, kindly,** kindly-disposed; **benign,** benignant; good as gold, **good, nice, decent; gracious; kindhearted, warm, warmhearted,** softhearted, tenderhearted, tender, loving, affectionate; **sympathetic,** sympathizing, **compassionate** 145.7, tolerant, merciful; brotherly, fraternal, sisterly; humane, human; charitable, caritative; Christian, Christly, Christlike

14 **good-natured,** well-natured, **good-humored, good-tempered,** bonhomous, **sweet, sweet-tempered; amiable, affable, genial, cordial,** congenial; **gentle,** mild, mild-mannered; easy, easy-natured, easy to get along with, able to take a joke, **agreeable**

15 **benevolent, charitable, beneficent, philanthropic, altruistic,** humanitarian; **bighearted,** largehearted, greathearted, freehearted; hospitable; **generous** 485.4; openhanded; almsgiving, eleemosynary; **welfare,** welfarist, welfaristic, welfare statist

16 **considerate, thoughtful,** mindful, heedful, regardful, solicitous, attentive, delicate, tactful, mindful of others; complaisant, **accommodating,** accommodative, at one's service, **helpful,** agreeable, **obliging,** indulgent, tolerant, lenient 427.7

17 **well-meaning, well-meant,** well-affected, well-disposed, **well-intentioned**

ADVS 18 **kindly,** benignly, benignantly; **good,** nicely, well, favorably; **kindheartedly, warmly,** warmheartedly, softheartedly, tenderheartedly; humanely, humanly

19 **good-naturedly, good-humoredly,** bonhomously; **sweetly; amiably,** affably, genially, cordially; graciously, in good part

20 **benevolently, beneficently, charitably, philanthropically, altruistically,** bigheartedly, with good will

21 **considerately, thoughtfully,** mindfully, heedfully, regardfully, tactfully, **sensitively,** solicitously, attentively; well-meaningly, well-disposedly; out of consideration *or* courtesy

144 UNKINDNESS, MALEVOLENCE

NOUNS 1 **unkindness, unkindliness;** unbenignity, unbenignness; **unamiability,** uncordiality, ungraciousness, inhospitality, inhospitableness, ungeniality, unaffectionateness; unsympatheticness, uncompassionateness; disagreeableness

2 **unbenevolentness, uncharitableness,** ungenerousness

3 **inconsiderateness, inconsideration, unthoughtfulness,** unmindfulness, unheedfulness, **thoughtlessness,** heedlessness, respectlessness, disregardfulness, forgetfulness; **unhelpfulness,** unobligingness, unaccommodatingness

4 **malevolence, ill will,** bad will, bad blood, bad temper, ill nature, ill-disposedness, ill *or* evil disposition; evil eye, *malocchio* <Ital>, whammy <nf>, blighting glance

5 **malice, maliciousness,** maleficence; malignance *or* **malignancy,** malignity; **meanness** *and* orneriness *and* cussedness *and* bitchiness <nf>, hatefulness, nastiness, invidiousness; **wickedness,** iniquitousness 654.4; deviltry, devilry, devilment; malice prepense *or* aforethought, evil intent; **harmfulness,** noxiousness 1000.5

6 **spite,** despite; **spitefulness,** cattiness; gloating, unwholesome *or* unholy joy, *Schadenfreude* <Ger>

7 **rancor, virulence,** venomousness, **venom,** vitriol, gall, spleen, bile; sharp tongue; loathing

8 **causticity,** causticness, corrosiveness, mordancy, mordacity, bitingness; **acrimony, asperity,** acidity, acidness, acidulousness, acridity, acerbity, **bitterness,** tartness; sharpness, keenness, incisiveness, piercingness, stabbingness,

trenchancy; “sharp-toothed unkindness”—Shakespeare

9 **harshness, roughness,** ungentleness; **severity,** austerity, hardness, sternness, grimness, inclemency; stringency, astringency

10 **heartlessness, unfeeling,** unnaturalness, unresponsiveness, insensitivity, coldness, **cold-heartedness,** cold-bloodedness; **hard-heartedness,** hardness, hardness of heart, heart of stone; **callousness,** callosity; obduracy, induration; **pitilessness,** unmercifulness 146.1

11 **cruelty,** cruelness, sadistic *or* insensate cruelty, sadism, wanton cruelty; **ruthlessness** 146.1; inhumaneness, **inhumanity,** atrociousness; **brutality,** mindless *or* senseless brutality, brutalness, **brutishness, bestiality, animality,** beastliness; **barbarity,** barbarousness, vandalism; **savagery, viciousness, violence,** fiendishness, heinousness; **child abuse** 389.2; truculence, fierceness, ferociousness, **ferocity;** excessive force, piling on <nf>; bloodthirst, bloodthirstiness, bloodlust, bloodiness, bloody-mindedness, sanguineousness; cannibalism; crime against humanity

12 **act of cruelty, atrocity,** cruelty, brutality, bestiality, barbarity, inhumanity

13 **bad deed, disservice,** ill service, **ill turn,** bad turn

14 **beast, animal, brute, monster,** monster of cruelty, **devil,** devil incarnate; **sadist,** torturer, tormenter; Attila, Torquemada, the Marquis de Sade; malefactor, malfeasor, malfeasant, evildoer, miscreant

VERBS **15** bear malice *or* ill will, malign; do a bad turn; **harshen, dehumanize,** brutalize, bestialize; torture, torment; **have a cruel streak,** go for the jugular, have the killer instinct; have it in for <nf>

ADJS **16** **unkind, unkindly,** ill; **unbenign,** unbenignant; **unamiable,** disagreeable, **uncordial, ungracious,** inhospitable, **ungenial,** unaffectionate, unloving; **unsympathetic,** unsympathizing, **uncompassionate,** uncompassioned

17 **unbenevolent,** unbeneficient, **uncharitable,** unphilanthropic, unaltruistic, ungenerous

18 **inconsiderate, unthoughtful,** unmindful, unheedful, disregardful, **thoughtless,** heedless, respectless, mindless, unthinking, forgetful; **tactless, insensitive;** uncomplaisant; **unhelpful, unaccommodating, unobliging,** disobliging, uncooperative

19 **malevolent, ill-disposed,** evil-disposed, **ill-natured,** ill-affected, ill-conditioned, ill-intentioned, loathing

20 **malicious,** maleficent, malefic; **malignant,** malign; **mean** *and* **ornery** *and* cussed *and* bitchy <nf>, hateful, nasty, baleful, baneful, invidious; **wicked,** iniquitous 654.16; **harmful,** noxious 1000.12

21 **spiteful,** despiteful; **catty,** cattish, bitchy <nf>; **snide;** despiteful

22 **rancorous, virulent,** vitriolic; **venomous,** venenate, envenomed

23 **caustic,** mordant, mordacious, corrosive, corroding; **acrimonious,** acrid, acid, acidic, acidulous, acidulent, acerb, acerbate, acerbic, **bitter,** tart; **sharp,** sharpish, keen, incisive, trenchant, **cutting,** penetrating, piercing, biting, **stinging,** stabbing, **scathing, scorching,** withering, scurrilous, abusive, thersitical, foulmouthed, harsh-tongued

24 **harsh, rough,** rugged, ungentle; **severe,** austere, **stringent,** astringent, hard, stern, dour, grim, inclement, unsparing

25 **heartless, unfeeling,** unnatural, unresponsive, insensitive, **cold,** cold of heart, coldhearted, **cold-blooded; hard, hardened,** hard of heart, **hard-hearted,** stony-hearted, marble-hearted, flint-hearted; **callous,** calloused; obdurate, indurated; **unmerciful** 146.3

26 **cruel,** cruel-hearted, sadistic; **ruthless** 146.3; **brutal,** brutish, brute, bestial, beastly, animal, animalistic; **mindless, soulless,** insensate, senseless, subhuman, dehumanized, brutalized; sharkish, wolfish, slavering; **barbarous,** barbaric, uncivilized, unchristian; **savage, ferocious,** feral, mean *and* mean as a junkyard dog <nf>, **vicious,** fierce, **atrocious,** truculent, fell; **inhuman,** inhumane, unhuman; fiendish, fiendlike; demoniac *or* demoniacal, diabolic, diabolical, devilish, satanic, hellish, infernal; **bloodthirsty,** bloody-minded, bloody, sanguineous, sanguinary; cannibalistic, anthropophagous; murderous; Draconian, Tartarean

ADVS **27** **unkindly,** ill; **unbenignly,** unbenignantly; **unamiably,** disagreeably, uncordially, ungraciously, inhospitably, ungenially, unaffectionately, unlovingly; unsympathetically, uncompassionately

28 **unbenevolently,** unbeneficently, **uncharitably,** unphilanthropically, unaltruistically, ungenerously

29 **inconsiderately, unthoughtfully,** thoughtlessly, heedlessly, unthinkingly; unhelpfully, uncooperatively

30 **malevolently, maliciously,** maleficently, **malignantly; meanly** *and* ornerily *and* cussedly *and* bitchily *and* cattily <nf>, hatefully, nastily, invidiously, balefully; **wickedly,** iniquitously 654.19; **harmfully,** noxiously 1000.15, **spitefully,** in spite; with bad intent, with malice prepense *or* aforethought

31 **rancorously, virulently,** vitriolically; venomously, venenately

32 **caustically,** mordantly, mordaciously, corrosively, corrodingly; **acrimoniously,** acridly, acidly, acerbly,

acerbically, **bitterly,** tartly; **sharply,** keenly, incisively, trenchantly, **cuttingly,** penetratingly, piercingly, bitingly, **stingingly,** stabbingly, **scathingly,** scorchingly, witheringly, thersitically, scurrilously, abusively

33 **harshly, roughly; severely,** austerely, stringently, sternly, grimly, inclemently, unsparingly

34 **heartlessly, soullessly, unfeelingly, callously,** cold-heartedly; cold-bloodedly, **in cold blood**

35 **cruelly, brutally,** brutishly, bestially, animalistically, subhumanly, sharkishly, wolfishly, slaveringly; **barbarously, savagely, ferociously,** ferally, **viciously,** fiercely, **atrociously,** truculently; **ruthlessly** 146.4; **inhumanely,** inhumanly, unhumanly; fiendishly, diabolically, devilishly

145 PITY

NOUNS 1 **pity, sympathy,** feeling, fellow feeling, **commiseration,** condolence, condolences; **compassion, mercy,** empathy, ruth, rue, humanity; **sensitivity; clemency,** quarter, reprieve, mitigation, relief 120, favor, grace; **leniency,** lenity, gentleness; forbearance; **kindness,** benevolence 143; pardon, **forgiveness** 601.1; self-pity; **pathos**

2 **compassionateness, mercifulness,** ruthfulness, ruefulness, softheartedness, tenderness, tenderheartedness, lenity, gentleness; bowels of compassion *or* mercy; bleeding heart

VERBS 3 **pity, be** *or* **feel sorry for,** feel sorrow for; **commiserate,** compassionate; open one's heart; **sympathize, sympathize with,** feel for, weep for, lament for, bleed, bleed for, have one's heart bleed for *or* go out to, condole with 147.2

4 **have pity, have mercy upon, take pity on** *or* **upon;** melt, thaw; relent, forbear, relax, give quarter, spare, temper the wind to the shorn lamb, go easy on *and* let up *or* ease up on <nf>, soften, mitigate, unsteel; **reprieve, pardon,** remit, **forgive** 601.4; put out of one's misery; be cruel to be kind; give a second chance, give a break <nf>

5 <excite pity> **move, touch,** affect, reach, **soften,** unsteel, melt, melt the heart, appeal to one's better feelings; move to tears, sadden, grieve 112.17

6 **beg for mercy,** ask for pity, cry for quarter, beg for one's life; fall on one's knees, throw oneself at the feet of, throw oneself at someone's mercy

ADJS 7 **pitying, sympathetic,** sympathizing, commiserative, condolent, understanding; **compassionate, merciful,** ruthful, rueful, **clement,** gentle, soft, melting, bleeding, tender, **tenderhearted,** softhearted, warmhearted; **humane,** human; lenient, forbearant 427.7; charitable 143.15

8 **pitiful, pitiable, pathetic, piteous, touching, moving, affecting,** heartrending, grievous, doleful 112.26, sad, heartbreaking, tearjerking <nf>

9 self-pitying, self-pitiful, sorry for oneself

ADVS 10 **pitifully,** sympathetically; **compassionately, mercifully,** ruthfully, ruefully, clemently, humanely

146 PITILESSNESS

NOUNS 1 **pitilessness, unmercifulness, uncompassionateness,** unsympatheticness, mercilessness, **ruthlessness,** unfeelingness, inclemency, relentlessness, inexorableness, unyieldingness 361.2, unforgivingness; **heartlessness,** heart of stone, hardness, steeliness, flintiness, harshness, induration, vindictiveness, **cruelty** 144.11; remorselessness, unremorsefulness; short shrift, tender mercies

VERBS 2 **show no mercy,** give no quarter, turn a deaf ear, be unmoved, claim one's pound of flesh, harden *or* steel one's heart, go by the rule book

ADJS 3 **pitiless,** unpitying, unpitiful; blind *or* deaf to pity; **unsympathetic,** unsympathizing; **uncompassionate,** uncompassioned; **merciless, unmerciful,** without mercy, unruing, **ruthless,** dog-eat-dog, vindictive; unfeeling, bowelless, inclement, relentless, inexorable, unyielding 361.9, unforgiving; **heartless,** coldhearted, hard, hard as nails, callous, steely, flinty, harsh, savage, **cruel;** remorseless, unremorseful

ADVS 4 **pitilessly,** unsympathetically; mercilessly, **unmercifully, ruthlessly,** uncompassionately, inclemently, relentlessly, inexorably, unyieldingly, unforgivingly; heartlessly, harshly, savagely, cruelly; remorselessly, unremorsefully

147 CONDOLENCE

NOUNS 1 **condolence, condolences,** condolement, **consolation,** comfort, balm, soothing words, **commiseration, sympathy,** sharing of grief *or* sorrow

VERBS 2 **condole with, commiserate, sympathize with,** feel with, empathize with, express sympathy for, send one's condolences; pity 145.3; **console,** wipe away one's tears, comfort, speak soothing words, bring balm to one's sorrow; sorrow with, share *or* help bear one's grief, grieve *or* weep with, grieve *or* weep for, share one's sorrow, "weep with them that weep"—Bible

ADJS 3 condoling, condolent, consolatory, comforting, commiserating, commiserative, **sympathetic,** empathic, empathetic; pitying 145.7

148 FORGIVENESS

NOUNS 1 **forgiveness,** forgivingness; unresentfulness, unrevengefulness; **condoning,** condonation, condonance, overlooking, disregard; **patience** 134; **indulgence, forbearance,** longanimity, long-suffering; **kindness,** benevolence 143; **magnanimity** 652.2; brooking, **tolerance** 979.4

2 **pardon,** excuse, sparing, **amnesty,** indemnity, exemption, immunity, reprieve, grace; **absolution,** shrift, remission, remission *or* forgiveness of sin; redemption, deliverance; **exoneration,** exculpation 601.1

VERBS 3 **forgive, pardon, excuse,** give *or* grant forgiveness, spare; amnesty, grant amnesty to, grant immunity *or* exemption; hear confession, **absolve,** remit, acquit, give *or* grant absolution, shrive, grant remission; **exonerate,** exculpate 601.4; blot out one's sins, wipe the slate clean, expunge from the record

4 **condone** 134.7, **overlook, disregard, ignore,** accept, take *and* swallow *and* let go <nf>, pass over, give one another chance, let one off this time *and* let one off easy <nf>, close *or* shut one's eyes to, turn a blind eye to, **blink** *or* **wink at,** connive at; show mercy; allow for, make allowances for; bear with, endure, regard with indulgence; pocket the affront, leave unavenged, turn the other cheek, bury *or* hide one's head in the sand

5 **forget, forgive and forget,** dismiss from one's thoughts, think no more of, not give it another *or* a second thought, let it go <nf>, let it pass, **let bygones be bygones;** write off, charge off, charge to experience; bury the hatchet; make peace, make up, shake hands

ADJS 6 **forgiving,** sparing, placable, conciliatory; **kind,** benevolent 143.15; **magnanimous,** generous 652.6; **patient** 134.9; **forbearing,** longanimous, long-suffering, stoic; unresentful, unrevengeful; **tolerant** 978.11, more in sorrow than in anger

7 **forgiven, pardoned, excused,** spared, amnestied, reprieved, remitted; overlooked, disregarded, forgotten, not held against one, wiped away, removed from the record, blotted, canceled, **condoned,** indulged; **absolved,** shriven; redeemed, delivered; exonerated, exculpated, acquitted, not guilty, innocent, cleared, absolved, vindicated, off the hook; unresented; unavenged, unrevenged; uncondemned; wiped away, swept clean

149 CONGRATULATION

NOUNS 1 **congratulation, congratulations,** congrats <nf>, gratulation, **felicitation,** blessing, **compliment,** pat on the back; good wishes, best wishes; **applause** 509.2, **praise** 509.5, flattery 511

VERBS 2 **congratulate,** gratulate, **felicitate,** bless, **compliment,** tender *or* offer one's congratulations *or* felicitations *or* compliments; shake one's hand, pat one on the back; **rejoice with one,** wish one joy; **applaud** 509.10, **praise** 509.12, flatter 511.5

ADJS 3 **congratulatory,** congratulant, congratulational; gratulatory, gratulant; **complimentary** 509.16, flattering 511.8

INTERJS 4 **congratulations!,** take a bow!, nice going!, **bravo!, well done!,** good show! <Brit>

5 <nf terms> **congrats!, all right!, aw right!, right on!,** way to go!, attaboy!, attagirl!, good deal!, looking good!, nice going!, that's my boy!, that's my girl!

150 GRATITUDE

NOUNS 1 **gratitude, gratefulness, thankfulness, appreciation, appreciativeness;** obligation, sense of obligation *or* indebtedness

2 **thanks, thanksgiving,** praise, laud, hymn, paean, benediction, eucharist; grace, prayer of thanks; **thank-you;** sincere thanks; **acknowledgment,** cognizance, **credit,** crediting, recognition; bonus, gratuity, tip; thank offering, votary offering

VERBS 3 **be grateful, be obliged,** feel *or* be *or* lie under an obligation, be obligated *or* indebted, be in the debt of, give credit *or* due credit; **be thankful,** thank God, thank one's lucky stars, thank *or* bless one's stars; **appreciate,** be appreciative of; never forget; overflow with gratitude; not look a gift horse in the mouth

4 **thank, extend gratitude** *or* **thanks,** bless; give one's thanks, **express one's appreciation; offer** *or* **give thanks,** tender *or* render thanks, return thanks; acknowledge, make acknowledgments of, credit, recognize, give *or* render credit *or* recognition, give a big hand; fall all over one with gratitude; fall on one's knees; pay tribute

ADJS 5 **grateful, thankful; appreciative,** appreciatory, sensible; **obliged, much obliged,** beholden, indebted to, crediting, under obligation, acknowledging, cognizant of

INTERJS 6 **thanks!, thank you!,** I thank you!, *merci!* <Fr>, *¡gracias!* <Sp>, *grazie!* <Ital>, *danke!* and *danke schön!* <Ger>, gramercy!, *domo* and *domo arrigato* <Japanese>, **much obliged!,** many thanks!, thank you kindly!; thank you very much!, *merci beaucoup!* and *je vous remercie beaucoup!* <Fr>; thanks a lot! *or* a bunch! *or* a heap! <nf>, ta! <Brit>

151 INGRATITUDE

NOUNS 1 **ingratitude, ungratefulness, unthankfulness,** thanklessness, unappreciation, **unappreciativeness;** nonacknowledgment, nonrecognition, denial of due *or* proper credit; "benefits forgot"—Shakespeare; grudging *or* halfhearted thanks

2 **ingrate,** ungrateful wretch

VERBS 3 **be ungrateful,** feel no obligation, **not appreciate,** owe one no thanks; look a gift horse in the mouth; bite the hand that feeds one

ADJS 4 **ungrateful, unthankful,** unthanking, thankless, unappreciative, unappreciatory, unmindful, nonrecognitive, unrecognizing, ungracious, discourteous

5 unthanked, unacknowledged, unrecognized, nonrecognized, uncredited, denied due *or* proper credit, unrequited, unrewarded, forgotten, neglected, unduly *or* unfairly neglected, ignored, blanked, cold-shouldered; ill-requited, ill-rewarded

152 RESENTMENT, ANGER

NOUNS 1 **resentment,** resentfulness; **displeasure,** disapproval, disapprobation, dissatisfaction, **discontent; vexation,** irritation, **annoyance,** aggravation <nf>, exasperation; slow burn <nf>

2 **offense, umbrage, pique;** glower, scowl, angry look, dirty look <nf>, glare, frown

3 **bitterness, bitter resentment,** bitterness of spirit, heartburning; **rancor,** virulence, **acrimony,** acerbity, asperity; causticity 144.8; **choler,** gall, bile, spleen, acid, acidity, acidulousness; hard feelings, **animosity** 589.4; soreness, rankling, slow burn <nf>; gnashing of teeth

4 **indignation,** indignant displeasure, righteous indignation

5 **anger, wrath, ire,** *saeva indignatio* <L>, mad <nf>; angriness, irateness, wrathfulness, soreness <nf>, "a transient madness"—Horace; infuriation, enragement; vials of wrath, grapes of wrath; **heat,** more heat than light <nf>; pugnacity, aggro <Brit nf>, dancer <nf>

6 **temper,** dander *and* Irish <nf>, monkey <Brit nf>; bad temper 110.1

7 **dudgeon,** high dudgeon; **huff,** pique, pet, tiff, miff *and* stew <nf>, fret, **fume,** ferment

8 **fit,** fit of anger, fit of temper, rage, wax <Brit nf>, **tantrum,** temper tantrum; duck *or* cat fit *and* **conniption** *or* conniption fit *and* snit <nf>, paroxysm, convulsion; agriothymia; stamping one's foot

9 **outburst,** outburst of anger, burst, **explosion,** eruption, blowup *and* **flare-up** <nf>, access, blaze of temper; **storm, scene,** high words

10 **rage, passion; fury,** furor; livid *or* towering rage *or* passion, blind *or* burning rage, raging *or* tearing passion, furious rage; vehemence, violence; the Furies, the Eumenides, the Erinyes; Nemesis; Alecto, Tisiphone, Megaera; steroid rage, road rage <nf>

11 **provocation, affront, offense,** "head and front of one's offending"—Shakespeare; *casus belli* <L>, red rag, red rag to a bull, red flag, sore point, sore spot, tender spot, delicate subject, raw nerve, the quick, where one lives; slap in the face; last straw

VERBS 12 **resent,** be resentful, feel *or* harbor *or* nurse resentment, feel hurt, smart, feel sore *and* have one's nose out of joint <nf>; bear *or* hold *or* have a grudge, bear malice

13 **take amiss,** take ill, **take in bad part,** take to heart, not take it as a joke, **mind; take offense, take umbrage,** get miffed *or* huffy <nf>; be cut *or* cut to the quick, get one's back up <nf>

14 <show resentment> redden, color, flush, mantle; **growl, snarl,** gnarl, **snap,** show one's teeth, spit; gnash *or* grind one's teeth; **glower,** lower, scowl, **glare, frown,** give a dirty look <nf>, look daggers; **stew,** stew in one's own juice

15 <be angry> **burn, seethe, simmer,** sizzle, smoke, smolder, steam; be pissed *or* pissed off *or* browned off <nf>, be livid, be beside oneself, **fume,** stew <nf>, boil, fret, chafe; foam at the mouth; breathe fire and fury; **rage, storm, rave,** rant, bluster; take on *and* go on *and* carry on <nf>, rant and rave, kick up a row *or* dust *or* a shindy <nf>; raise Cain *or* raise hell *or* raise the devil *or* raise the roof <nf>, tear up the earth; throw a fit, have a conniption *or* conniption fit *or* duck fit *or* cat fit <nf>, go into a tantrum; stamp one's foot

16 **vent one's anger,** vent one's rancor *or* choler *or* spleen, pour out the vials of one's wrath; **snap at, bite** *or* **snap one's nose off, bite** *or* **take one's head off, jump down one's throat;** expend one's anger on, take it out on <nf>

17 <become angry> **anger, lose one's temper,** become irate, forget oneself, let one's angry passions rise; **get one's gorge up,** get one's blood up, **bridle,** bridle up, **bristle,** bristle up, raise one's hackles, get one's back up; reach boiling point, boil over, climb the wall, go through *or* hit the roof

18 <nf terms> **get mad** *or* **sore,** get one's Irish *or* dander *or* hackles up, get one's monkey up <Brit>; **see red, get hot under the collar,** flip out, work oneself into a lather *or* sweat *or* stew, get oneself in a tizzy, do a slow burn, blow one's cool

19 **flare up, blaze up,** fire up, flame up, spunk up, ignite, kindle, take fire

20 **fly into a rage** *or* **passion** *or* **temper,** fly out, fly off

at a tangent; **fly off the handle** *and* **hit the ceiling** *and* go into a tailspin *and* have a hemorrhage <nf>; **explode, blow up** <nf>; blow one's top *or* stack <nf>, blow a fuse *or* gasket <nf>, flip one's lid *or* wig <nf>, wig out <nf>; kick *or* piss up a fuss *or* a row *or* a storm <nf>; jump down someone's throat <nf>, take it out on someone <nf>

21 **offend, give offense, give umbrage,** affront, outrage; grieve, aggrieve; wound, hurt, cut, cut to the quick, hit one where one lives <nf>, **sting,** hurt one's feelings; step *or* tread on one's toes

22 **anger, make angry, make mad,** raise one's gorge *or* choler; make one's blood boil

23 <nf terms> **piss** *or* tee off, tick off, piss, **get one's goat, get one's Irish** *or* back *or* dander *or* hackles up, **make sore,** make one hot under the collar, put one's nose out of joint, burn one up, burn one's ass *or* butt, steam

24 **provoke, incense,** arouse, inflame, embitter; **vex, irritate, annoy, aggravate** <nf>, **exasperate, nettle,** fret, chafe; **pique, peeve** *and* miff <nf>, huff; **ruffle, roil, rile** <nf>, ruffle one's feathers, **rankle;** bristle, put *or* get one's back up, set up, put one's hair *or* fur *or* bristles up; stick in one's craw <nf>; **stir up, work up,** stir one's bile, stir the blood; wave the bloody shirt

25 **enrage, infuriate, madden,** drive one mad, frenzy, lash into fury, work up into a passion, **make one's blood boil**

ADJS **26** **resentful,** resenting; **bitter,** embittered, rancorous, virulent, **acrimonious,** acerb, acerbic, acerbate; caustic; **choleric,** splenetic, acid, acidic, acidulous, acidulent; **sore** <nf>, rankled, burning *and* stewing <nf>

27 **provoked, vexed, piqued; peeved** *and* miffed *and* huffy <nf>, riled, **nettled, irritated, annoyed,** aggravated <nf>, exasperated, put-out; huffed, miffed, peeved, in a snit

28 **angry,** angered, **incensed, indignant, irate,** ireful; **livid,** livid with rage, beside oneself, **wroth, wrathful,** wrathy, **cross,** wrought-up, worked up, riled up <nf>

29 **burning, seething,** simmering, smoldering, sizzling, boiling, **steaming;** flushed with anger

30 <nf terms> **mad, sore,** mad as a hornet *or* as a wet hen *or* as hell, sore as a boil, pissed; **pissed-off** *or* PO'd; teed off *or* TO'd; ticked *or* ticked off, browned-off, waxy *and* stroppy <Brit>, **hot,** het up, **hot under the collar,** burned up, hot and bothered, boiling, boiling *or* hopping *or* fighting *or* roaring mad, fit to be tied, good and mad, steamed, hacked, bent out of shape, in a lather *or* lava *or* pucker, red-assed

31 **in a temper, in a huff, in a pet,** in a snit *or* a stew <nf>; in a wax <Brit nf>, **in high dudgeon**

32 **infuriated,** infuriate, in a rage *or* passion *or* fury; **furious,** fierce, wild, savage; raving mad <nf>, **rabid,** foaming *or* frothing at the mouth; **fuming,** in a fume; **enraged, raging, raving, ranting, storming**

ADVS **33** **angrily, indignantly, irately,** wrathfully, infuriatedly, infuriately, furiously, heatedly; **in anger,** in hot blood, in the heat of passion

153 JEALOUSY

NOUNS **1** **jealousy,** *jalousie* <Fr>, jealousness, heartburning, heartburn, **jaundice,** jaundiced eye, green in the eye <nf>, "the jaundice of the soul"—Dryden; "green-eyed jealousy," "green-eyed monster," "a monster begot upon itself, born on itself"—all Shakespeare; Othello's flaw, horn-madness; **envy** 154

2 **suspiciousness,** suspicion, doubt, misdoubt, mistrust, distrust, distrustfulness

VERBS **3** suffer pangs of jealousy, have green in the eye <nf>, be possessive *or* overpossessive, view with a jaundiced eye; **suspect,** distrust, mistrust, doubt, misdoubt

4 make one jealous, put someone's nose out of joint

ADJS **5** **jealous, jaundiced,** jaundice-eyed, yellow-eyed, green-eyed, yellow, green, green with jealousy; horn-mad; invidious, **envious** 154.4; **suspicious,** distrustful

154 ENVY

NOUNS **1** **envy,** enviousness, **covetousness;** emulousness <old>; invidia, deadly sin of envy, **invidiousness;** grudging, grudgingness; resentment, resentfulness; **jealousy** 153; rivalry, competitiveness; meanness, meanspiritedness, ungenerousness

2 "emulation adapted to the meanest capacity"—Ambrose Bierce, "a kind of praise"—John Gay

VERBS **3** **envy,** be envious *or* covetous of, **covet,** cast envious eyes, desire for oneself; resent; **grudge, begrudge;** turn green with envy, be jealous, eat one's heart out

ADJS **4** **envious,** envying, **invidious,** green with envy, green-eyed; **jealous** 153.4; **covetous,** desirous of; resentful; **grudging, begrudging;** mean, mean-spirited, ungenerous

155 RESPECT

NOUNS **1** **respect, regard,** consideration, appreciation, favor; approbation, approval; **esteem,** estimation, prestige; **reverence,**

veneration, awe; **deference,** deferential *or* reverential regard; **honor, homage,** duty; great respect, high regard, high opinion, **admiration;** adoration, breathless adoration, exaggerated respect, worship, hero worship, **idolization;** idolatry, deification, apotheosis; courtesy 504

2 **obeisance,** reverence, homage; **bow, nod, bob,** bend, inclination, inclination of the head, **curtsy, salaam, kowtow,** scrape, bowing and scraping, making a leg; **genuflection,** kneeling, bending the knee; prostration; salute, salutation, namaste; salaam, kowtow; presenting arms, dipping the colors *or* ensign, standing at attention; red carpet; **submissiveness,** submission 433; **obsequiousness,** servility 138

3 **respects, regards,** *égards* <Fr>; duties, *devoirs* <Fr>; attentions

VERBS 4 **respect,** entertain respect for, accord respect to, **regard, esteem,** hold in esteem *or* consideration, favor, **admire,** think much of, think well of, think highly of, have *or* hold a high opinion of; **appreciate, value,** prize, treasure; **revere, reverence,** hold in reverence, **venerate, honor, look up to, defer to, bow to,** exalt, put on a pedestal, **worship,** hero-worship, deify, apotheosize, **idolize, adore,** worship the ground one walks on, stand in awe of; hold dear

5 **do** *or* **pay homage to,** show *or* demonstrate respect for, pay respect to, pay tribute to, **do** *or* **render honor to, do the honors for; doff one's cap to, take off one's hat to;** salute, present arms, dip the colors *or* ensign, stand at *or* to attention; give the red-carpet treatment, roll out the red carpet; fire a salute

6 **bow, make obeisance, salaam, kowtow,** make one's bow, bow down, **nod,** incline *or* bend *or* bow the head, bend the neck, **bob,** bob down, **curtsy,** bob a curtsy, bend, make a leg, scrape, **bow and scrape; genuflect, kneel,** bend the knee, get down on one's knees, throw oneself on one's knees, fall on one's knees, fall down before, fall at the feet of, prostrate oneself, kiss the hem of one's garment

7 **command respect,** inspire respect, stand high, impress, have prestige, rank high, be widely reputed, be up there *or* way up there <nf>; awe 122.6, overawe

ADJS 8 **respectful, regardful,** attentive; **deferential,** conscious of one's place, dutiful, honorific, ceremonious, appreciative, cap in hand; **courteous** 504.14

9 **reverent,** reverential; admiring, **adoring, worshiping,** worshipful, hero-worshiping, **idolizing,** idolatrous, deifying, apotheosizing; **venerative,** venerational; awestruck, awestricken, awed, in awe; on bended knee; solemn 111.3

10 **obeisant,** prostrate, on one's knees, on bended knee; **submissive** 433.12; **obsequious;** knowing one's place

11 **respected, esteemed, revered,** reverenced, adored, worshiped, **venerated, honored,** well-thought-of, admired, much-admired, appreciated, valued, prized, in high esteem *or* estimation, highly considered, well-considered, held in respect *or* regard *or* favor *or* consideration, time-honored, prestigious

12 **venerable, reverend, estimable, honorable,** worshipful, august, awe-inspiring, awesome, awful, dreadful; time-honored

ADVS 13 **respectfully,** regardfully, deferentially, reverentially; dutifully

ADVS, PREPS 14 **in deference to,** with due respect, with all respect, **with all due respect to** *or* **for,** saving, excusing the liberty, saving your reverence, sir-reverence; out of respect *or* consideration for, out of courtesy to

156 DISRESPECT

NOUNS 1 **disrespect, disrespectfulness,** lack of respect, low estimate *or* esteem, **disesteem,** dishonor, **irreverence;** ridicule 508; **disparagement** 512; **discourtesy** 505; **impudence,** insolence 142; opprobrium

2 **indignity, affront, offense, injury,** humiliation; scurrility, contempt 157, contumely, despite, flout, flouting, mockery, jeering, jeer, mock, scoff, gibe, taunt, brickbat <nf>; **insult, aspersion,** uncomplimentary remark, snub, slight, slap *or* kick in the face, left-handed *or* backhanded compliment, damning with faint praise; cut, "most unkindest cut of all"—Shakespeare; **outrage, atrocity,** enormity

3 <nf terms> **put-down,** dump, bringdown, brickbat, **dig,** dirty dig, ding, rank-out, rip, shot, slam, go-by

VERBS 4 **disrespect,** not respect, disesteem, hold a low opinion of, rate *or* rank low, hold in low esteem, not care much for, pay a lefthanded *or* backhanded compliment, damn with faint praise, hold in contempt, have no time for; **show disrespect for,** show a lack of respect for, **be disrespectful,** treat with disrespect, turn one's back on, be overfamiliar with; trifle with, make bold *or* free with, take a liberty, take liberties with, play fast and loose with; **ridicule** 508.8; **disparage** 512.8

5 **offend, affront,** give offense to, snub, slight, disoblige, outrage, step *or* tread on one's toes; dishonor, humiliate, treat with indignity; flout, mock, jeer at, scoff at, fleer at, gibe at, taunt; **insult,** call names, kick *or* slap in the face, take *or*

pluck by the beard; **add insult to injury;** give the cold shoulder, cut dead, spurn

6 <nf terms> **bad-mouth, put down, trash,** give the go-by, rubbish, dump on, dig at, dis *or* diss, rank out, rip *or* rip on, ride, roast, slam, hurl a brickbat

ADJS 7 **disrespectful, irreverent,** aweless; **discourteous** 505.4; **insolent, impudent;** ridiculing, **derisive** 508.12; **disparaging** 512.13

8 **insulting, insolent, abusive, offensive,** humiliating, degrading, pejorative, contemptuous 157.8, contumelious, calumnious; blasphemous; scurrilous, scurrile; backhand, backhanded, left-handed, cutting; contumacious, outrageous, atrocious, unspeakable

9 **unrespected,** disrespected, **unregarded, unrevered,** unvenerated, unhonored, unenvied; trivialized

157 CONTEMPT

NOUNS 1 **contempt, disdain, scorn,** contemptuousness, disdainfulness, superciliousness, snootiness, snottiness, sniffiness, toploftiness, scornfulness, despite, contumely, sovereign contempt; snobbishness; clannishness, cliquishness, exclusiveness, exclusivity; hauteur, airs, arrogance 141; **ridicule** 508; **insult** 156.2; **disparagement** 512

2 **snub, rebuff,** repulse; **slight,** humiliation, spurning, spurn, disregard, the go-by <nf>; cut, cut direct, **the cold shoulder** <nf>; sneer, snort, sniff; contemptuous dismissal, **dismissal** 908.2, kiss-off <nf>; **rejection** 372

VERBS 3 **disdain, scorn, despise,** contemn, vilipend, disprize, misprize, rate *or* rank low, be contemptuous of, feel contempt for, **hold in contempt,** hold cheap, look down upon, think little *or* nothing of, feel superior to, be above, hold beneath one *or* beneath contempt, look with scorn upon, view with a scornful eye, give one the fish-eye *or* the beady eye *or* the hairy eyeball <nf>; **put down** *or* dump on <nf>; deride, **ridicule** 508.8; **insult;** disparage 512.8; thumb one's nose at, sniff at, sneeze at, snap one's fingers at, sneer at, snort at, curl one's lip at, shrug one's shoulders at; care nothing for, couldn't care less about, think nothing of, set at naught

4 **spurn,** scout, **turn up one's nose at,** scorn to receive *or* accept, not want any part of; spit upon

5 **snub, rebuff,** cut *or* cut dead <nf>, drop, repulse; **high-hat** *and* upstage <nf>; **look down one's nose at,** look cool *or* coldly upon; cold-shoulder *or* turn a cold shoulder upon *or* **give the cold shoulder** <nf>, give *or* turn the shoulder <nf>, give the go-by *or* the kiss-off <nf>; turn one's back upon, turn away from, turn on one's heel, set one's face against, slam the door in one's face, show one his place, put one in his place, wave one aside; not be at home to, not receive

6 **slight, ignore,** pooh-pooh <nf>, make little of, dismiss, pretend not to see, disregard, overlook, neglect, pass by, pass up *and* give the go-by <nf>, leave out in the cold <nf>, take no note *or* notice of, look right through <nf>, pay no attention *or* regard to, refuse to acknowledge *or* recognize

7 **avoid** 368.6, avoid like the plague, go out of one's way to avoid, shun, dodge, steer clear of *and* have no truck with <nf>; **keep one's distance,** keep at a respectful distance, **keep** *or* **stand** *or* **hold aloof;** keep at a distance, hold *or* keep at arm's length; **be stuck-up** <nf>, act holier than thou, give oneself airs

ADJS 8 **contemptuous, disdainful,** supercilious, snooty, snotty, sniffy, toplofty, toploftical, **scornful,** sneering, withering, contumelious; snobbish, snobby; clannish, cliquish, exclusive; stuck-up <nf>, **conceited** 140.11; haughty, **arrogant** 141.9

ADVS 9 **contemptuously, scornfully, disdainfully;** in *or* with contempt, in disdain, in scorn; sneeringly, with a sneer, with curling lip

INTERJS 10 **bah!,** pah!, phooey!, boo!, phoo!, pish!, ecch!, yeech!, eeyuck!, eeyuch!, yeeuck!, *feh!* <Yiddish>

158 SPACE

<indefinite space>

NOUNS 1 **space, extent,** extension, spatial extension, uninterrupted extension, space continuum, continuum; **expanse,** expansion; spread, breadth; depth, deeps; height, vertical space, air space; length; width; **measure,** volume; **dimension,** proportion, size; **area,** expanse tract, surface, surface *or* superficial extension; diameter, circumference; **field,** arena, sphere; capacity; acreage; **void,** empty space, emptiness, nothingness; infinite space, infinity, outer space, wastes of outer space, deep space, depths of outer space, interplanetary *or* interstellar *or* intergalactic space

2 **range, scope, compass, reach, stretch, expanse;** radius, sweep, carry, fetch, grasp; **gamut, scale,** register, diapason; **spectrum,** array; tract

3 **room, latitude,** swing, play, way; spare room, room to spare, room to swing a cat <nf>, **elbowroom,** legroom; **margin, leeway;** breathing space; sea room; headroom, clearance; windage; amplitude; headway; living space

4 **open space,** clear space; **clearing,** clearance, glade; open country, wide-open spaces, **terrain,** prairie, steppe, plain 236; field, glade; wilderness, back

country, boonies *and* boondocks <nf>, outback <Austral>, desert, back o' beyond <Austral nf>; distant prospect *or* perspective, empty view, far horizon; **territory;** living space, *Lebensraum* <Ger>; national territory, air space

5 **spaciousness, roominess, size** commodiousness, capacity, capaciousness, amplitude, extensiveness, extent, expanse; stowage, storage; seating capacity, seating

6 **fourth dimension, space-time,** time-space, space-time continuum, continuum, four-dimensional space; four-dimensional geometry, Minkowski world *or* universe; spaceworld; other continuums; **relativity,** theory of relativity, Einstein theory, principle of relativity, principle of equivalence, general theory of relativity, special *or* restricted theory of relativity, continuum theory; time warp; cosmic constant

7 **inner space,** psychological space, the realm of the mind; personal space, room to be, individual *or* private space, space <nf>; semantic space

8 intervening space; distance, interval, gap, remove; break, hiatus, lacuna, pause, interruption, intermission, lapse, blank; duration, period, span, spell, stretch, turn, while

VERBS 9 **extend, reach, stretch,** expand, sweep, spread, run, **go** *or* **go out,** cover, carry, **range,** lie; **reach** *or* stretch *or* thrust out; span, straddle, take in, hold, enclose, encompass, surround, environ, contain, hold; lengthen, widen, deepen, raise

ADJS 10 **spatial,** space, spacial; **dimensional,** proportional; two-dimensional, flat, surface *or* superficial, radial, three-dimensional *or* 3-D, spherical, cubic, volumetric; galactic, intergalactic, interstellar; stereoscopic; fourth-dimensional; space-time, spatiotemporal

11 **spacious, sizeable, roomy, commodious, capacious,** ample; **extensive,** expansive, extended, wide-ranging; far-reaching, extending, spreading, **vast,** vasty, broad, **wide,** deep, high, voluminous, cavernous; airy, lofty; oversized; amplitudinous; widespread 864.13; **infinite** 823.3

ADVS 12 **extensively, widely,** broadly, vastly, abroad; **far and wide,** far and near; **right and left,** on all sides, on every side; infinitely

13 **everywhere,** everywheres <nf>, **here, there, and everywhere;** in every place, in every clime *or* region, in all places, in every quarter, in all quarters; **all over,** all round, all over hell *and* all over the map *and* all over the place *and* all over the ballpark *and* all over town <nf>, all over the world, the world over, on the face of the earth, under the sun, throughout the world, throughout the length and breadth of the land; from end to end, from pole to pole, from here to the back of beyond <Brit nf>, "from Dan to Beersheba"—Bible, from hell to breakfast <nf>; **high and low,** upstairs and downstairs, inside and out, in every nook and cranny *or* hole and corner; **universally,** in all creation

14 **from everywhere,** everywhence, "from the four corners of the earth"—Shakespeare, from all points of the compass, from every quarter *or* all quarters; everywhere, everywhither, to the four winds, to the uttermost parts of the earth, "unto the ends of the earth"—Bible, to hell and back <nf>

159 LOCATION

NOUNS 1 **location, situation, place, position,** spot, *lieu* <Fr>, placement, emplacement, stead; **whereabouts,** whereabout, ubicity; **area, district,** region 231; **locality, locale,** locus; venue; **abode** 228; **site,** situs; **spot, point,** pinpoint, exact spot *or* point, very spot *or* point, dot; benchmark; *locus classicus* <L>; bearings, coordinates, latitude and longitude, direction; setting, environs, environment; habitat, address

2 **station,** status, **stand, standing,** standpoint, pou sto; **viewpoint,** *optique* <Fr>, point of reference, reference-point, angle, perspective, distance; coign of vantage; **seat, post,** base, footing, ground, venue

3 **navigation,** guidance; dead reckoning, pilotage; coastal navigation; celestial guidance *or* astro-inertial guidance, celestial navigation *or* celonavigation *or* astronavigation; consolan; loran; radar navigation; radio navigation; orienteering; **position, orientation,** lay, lie, set, **attitude,** aspect, exposure, frontage, **bearing** *or* **bearings,** radio bearing, azimuth; position line *or* line of position; **fix**

4 **place,** stead, lieu

5 **map, chart;** hachure, contour line, isoline, layer tint; **scale,** graphic scale, representative fraction; **legend;** grid line, meridian, parallel, latitude, longitude; inset; index; **projection,** map projection, azimuthal equidistant projection *or* azimuthal projection, conic projection, Mercator projection; **cartography, mapmaking;** chorography, topography, photogrammetry, phototopography; **cartographer, mapmaker, mapper;** chorographer, topographer, photogrammetrist

6 <act of placing> **placement, positioning, emplacement, situation, location, siting,** localization, **locating, placing,** putting; establishment, installation; **allocation,** collocation, **disposition,** assignment, **deployment,** posting, **stationing,** spotting; fixing, fixation, settling;

deposition, reposition, **deposit,** disposal, dumping; **stowage,** storage, warehousing; loading, lading, packing

7 **establishment, foundation,** settlement, settling, colonization, population, peopling, plantation; lodgment, fixation; anchorage, mooring; **installation,** installment, inauguration, investiture, placing in office, initiation

8 topography, geography; cartography, chorography; surveying, triangulation, navigation, geodesy; geodetic satellite, orbiting geophysical observatory *or* OGO; global positioning system *or* GPS

VERBS **9** **have place,** be there; have its place *or* slot, **belong, go, fit,** fit in

10 **be located** *or* **situated, lie, be found,** stand, rest, repose; lie in, have its seat in

11 **locate, situate, site, place, position;** emplace, spot <nf>, **install,** put in place; **allocate,** collocate, **dispose, deploy,** assign; **localize,** narrow *or* pin down; **map, chart,** put on the map *or* chart; put one's finger on, **fix,** assign *or* consign *or* relegate to a place; **pinpoint,** zero in on, home in on, find the spot; find *or* fix *or* calculate one's position, triangulate, survey, find a line of position, **get a fix on** *or* navigational fix, get a bearing, navigate; turn up, track down

12 **place, put, set, lay,** pose, posit, site, seat, stick <nf>, **station, post;** billet, quarter; **park,** plump down <nf>; **dump**

13 <place violently> **clap,** slap, **thrust, fling, hurl,** throw, cast, chuck, toss; **plump;** plunk *and* plank *and* plop <nf>

14 **deposit,** repose, reposit, rest, **lay,** lodge; **put down,** set down, lay down

15 **load, lade,** freight, burden; fill 794.7; **stow,** store, put in storage, warehouse; **pack,** pack away; pile, dump, heap, heap up, stack, mass; bag, sack, pocket

16 **establish, fix, plant,** ensconce, **site,** pitch, seat, **set,** spot; **found, base,** ground, lay the foundation; **build,** put up, set up; build in; **install, invest,** vest, place in office, put in

17 **settle, settle down,** sit down, locate, park <nf>, ensconce, ensconce oneself; take up one's abode *or* quarters, make one's home, **reside,** inhabit 225.7; **move,** relocate, change address, establish residence, make one's home, **take up residence,** take residence at, put up *or* live *or* stay at, quarter *or* billet at, move in, hang up one's hat <nf>; take *or* strike root, put down roots, place oneself, plant oneself, get a footing, stand, take one's stand *or* position; **anchor,** drop anchor, come to anchor, moor; **squat;** camp, bivouac; perch, roost, nest, hive, burrow; domesticate, **set up housekeeping,** keep house; **colonize,** populate, people; **set up in business,** go in business for oneself, set up shop, hang up one's shingle <nf>

ADJS **18** **located, placed, sited, situated,** situate, **positioned,** installed, emplaced, spotted <nf>, **set,** seated; **stationed, posted,** deployed, assigned, positioned, prepositioned, oriented; **established,** fixed, in place, **settled,** planted, ensconced, embosomed

19 locational, positional, situational, situal, directional; **cartographic;** topographic, geographic, chorographic, geodetic; navigational; **regional** 231.8

ADVS **20** **in place,** in position, in situ, in loco

21 **where,** whereabouts, in what place, in which place; **whither,** to what *or* which place

22 **wherever,** where'er, **wheresoever,** wheresoe'er, wheresomever <nf>, whithersoever, wherever it may be; **anywhere,** anyplace <nf>

23 **here,** hereat, in this place, just here, on the spot; **hereabouts,** hereabout, in this vicinity, near here; somewhere about *or* near; aboard, on board, with *or* among us; **hither,** hitherward, hitherwards, hereto, hereunto, hereinto, to this place

24 **there,** thereat, in that place, in those parts; thereabout, **thereabouts,** in that vicinity *or* neighborhood; **thither,** thitherward, thitherwards, to that place

25 **here and there, in places,** in various places, in spots, *passim* <L>

26 **somewhere, someplace,** in some place, someplace or other

PREPS **27** **at, in, on, by; near, next to; with, among,** in the midst of; to, toward; from

28 over, all over, here and there, on *or* in, at about, round about; through, **all through,** throughout 794.17

PHR **29** X marks the spot

160 DISPLACEMENT

NOUNS **1** **dislocation, displacement;** disjointing 802.1, disarticulation, unjointing, unhinging, luxation; heterotopia; **shift, removal,** forcible shift *or* removal; knocking off course; eviction; **uprooting,** ripping out, deracination; rootlessness; **disarrangement** 811; incoherence 803.1; discontinuity 813; Doppler effect *and* red shift *and* violet shift <physics>

2 **dislodgment;** unplacement, **unseating,** upset, unsaddling, unhorsing, unsettling; **deposal** 447; relocation, translocation, transference, transshipment

3 **misplacement, mislaying,** misputting, mislocation, losing

4 displaced person *or* DP, stateless person, homeless person, bag person, Wandering Jew, man without a country, exile, drifter, vagabond, deportee, repatriate; displaced *or* deported population; *déraciné* <Fr>; refugee, evacuee; outcast; waif, stray

VERBS 5 **dislocate, displace, disjoint,** disarticulate, unjoint, luxate, unhinge, put *or* force *or* push out of place, **put** *or* **throw out of joint,** throw out of gear, knock *or* throw off course; **disarrange** 811.2

6 **dislodge,** unplace; evict; **uproot,** root up *or* out, deracinate; relocate; depose 447.4, **unseat,** unsaddle, unsettle; **unhorse,** dismount; throw off, buck off

7 **misplace, mislay,** misput, lose, lose track of

ADJS 8 dislocatory, dislocating, heterotopic

9 **dislocated, displaced; disjointed,** unjointed, unhinged; dislodged; out, **out of joint,** out of gear; **disarranged** 810.13

10 **unplaced,** unestablished, unsettled; **uprooted,** deracinated; unhoused, evicted, unharbored, houseless, made homeless, homeless, stateless, exiled, outcast, expatriated

11 **misplaced, mislaid,** misput, gone missing *or* astray; **out of place,** out of one's element, like a fish out of water, in the wrong place, in the wrong box *or* pew *and* in the right church but the wrong pew <nf>

12 **eccentric, off-center,** off-balance, unbalanced, uncentered

161 DIRECTION

<compass direction or course>

NOUNS 1 **direction,** directionality; **line,** direction line, line of direction, point, quarter, **aim, way,** track, range, **bearing,** azimuth, compass reading, **heading, course;** current, set; tendency, trend, inclination, bent, tenor, run, drift; **orientation,** lay, lie, lay of the land; steering, helmsmanship, piloting; navigation 182.1,2; line of march

2 <nautical & aviation terms> vector, tack; compass direction, azimuth, compass bearing *or* heading, magnetic bearing *or* heading, relative bearing *or* heading, true bearing *or* heading *or* course; lee side, weather side 218.3

3 **points of the compass,** cardinal points, half points, quarter points, degrees, compass rose; compass card, lubber line; rhumb, loxodrome; magnetic north, true north, magnetic *or* compass directions, true directions; **north,** northward, nor'; **south,** southward; **east,** eastward, orient, sunrise; **west,** westward, occident, sunset; southeast, southwest, northeast, northwest; northing, southing, easting, westing

4 **orientation, bearings;** adaptation, adjustment, accommodation, alignment, collimation; disorientation; deviation

VERBS 5 **direct, point, aim, turn, bend, train,** fix, set, determine; point to *or* at, hold on, fix on, sight on; take aim, aim at, turn *or* train upon; directionize, give a push in the right direction; guide, signpost, indicate

6 **direct to,** give directions to, lead *or* conduct to, point out to, show, **show** *or* **point the way,** steer, put on the track, put on the right track, set straight, set *or* put right

7 <have or take a direction> **bear, head, turn, point, aim,** take *or* hold a heading, lead, go, steer, direct oneself, align oneself; **incline, tend, trend,** set, dispose, verge, tend to go, pilot, navigate

8 go west, wester, go east, easter, go north, go south

9 **head for,** bear for, **go for, make for,** hit *or* hit out for <nf>, **steer for,** hold for, put for, **set out** *or* **off for,** strike out for, take off for <nf>, bend one's steps for, lay for, bear up for, bear up to, make up to, set in towards; set *or* direct *or* shape one's course for, set one's compass for, sail for 182.35; align one's march; **break for,** make a break for <nf>, run *or* dash for, make a run *or* dash for

10 **go directly, go straight,** follow one's nose, go straight on, **head straight for,** vector for, go straight to the point, steer a straight course, follow a course, keep *or* hold one's course, hold steady for, arrow for, cleave to the line, keep pointed; **make a beeline,** go as the crow flies; take the air line, stay on the beam

11 **orient,** orientate, orient *or* orientate oneself, orient the map *or* chart, **take** *or* **get one's bearings,** get the lay *or* lie of the land, see which way the land lies, see which way the wind blows; adapt, adjust, accommodate

ADJS 12 **directional,** azimuthal; **direct, straight,** arrow-straight, ruler-straight, straight-ahead, straightforward, straightaway, straightway; **undeviating,** unswerving, unveering; uninterrupted, unbroken; one-way, unidirectional, irreversible

13 **directable,** aimable, pointable, trainable; **steerable,** dirigible, guidable, leadable; **directed,** guided, aimed; well-aimed *or* -directed *or* -placed, on the mark, on the nose *or* money <nf>; **directional,** directive

14 **northern,** north, northernmost, northerly, northbound, **arctic,** boreal, hyperborean; **southern,** south, southernmost, southerly, southbound, meridional, **antarctic,** austral;

eastern, east, easternmost *or* eastermost, easterly, eastbound, **oriental; western,** west, westernmost, westerly, westbound, **occidental; northeastern,** northeast, northeasterly; **southeastern,** southeast, southeasterly; **southwestern,** southwest, southwesterly; **northwestern,** northwest, northwesterly; cross-country, downwind, upwind; oblique, axial, parallel

ADVS **15 north,** N, nor', northerly, northward, north'ard, norward, northwards, northwardly; north about

16 south, S, southerly, southward, south'ard, southwards, southwardly; south about

17 east, E, easterly, eastward, eastwards, eastwardly, where the sun rises; eastabout

18 west, W, westerly, westernly, westward, westwards, westwardly, where the sun sets; westabout

19 northeast *or* NE, nor'east, northeasterly, northeastward, northeastwards, northeastwardly; north-northeast *or* NNE; northeast by east *or* NE by E; northeast by north *or* NE by N

20 northwest *or* NW, nor'west, northwesterly, northwestward, northwestwards, northwestwardly; north-northwest *or* NNW; northwest by west *or* NW by W; northwest by north *or* NW by N

21 southeast *or* SE, southeasterly, southeastward, southeastwards, southeastwardly; south-southeast *or* SSE; southeast by east *or* SE by E; southeast by south *or* SE by S

22 southwest *or* SW, southwesterly, southwestward, southwestwards, southwestwardly; south-southwest *or* SSW; southwest by south *or* SW by S

23 directly, direct, straight, straightly, **straightforward,** straightforwards, **undeviatingly,** unswervingly, unveeringly; **straight ahead,** dead ahead; due, dead, due north, etc; right, forthright; in a direct *or* straight line, in line with, in a line for, **in a beeline, as the crow flies,** straight across; straight as an arrow

24 clockwise, rightward 219.7; **counterclockwise,** anticlockwise, widdershins, leftward 220.6; homeward; landward; seaward; earthward; heavenward; leeward, windward 218.9

25 in every direction, in all directions, in all manner of ways, every which way <nf>, everywhither, **everyway, everywhere,** at every turn, in all directions at once, in every quarter, on every side, all over the place *or* the ballpark *or* the map <nf>; around, all round, round about; forty ways *or* six ways from Sunday <nf>; from every quarter, everywhence; from *or* to the four corners of the earth, from *or* to the four winds

PREPS **26 toward,** towards, **in the direction of, to,** up, on, upon; against, over against, versus; headed for, bound for, on the way to, on the road *or* high road to, in transit to, en route to, on route to, in passage to

27 through, by, passing by *or* through, **by way of,** by the way of, **via;** over, around, round about, here and there in, all through

162 PROGRESSION

<motion forwards>

NOUNS **1 progression, progress,** going, going forward; **ongoing,** on-go, go-ahead <nf>, onward course, rolling, rolling on; **advance,** advancing, **advancement, promotion, furtherance,** furthering, preferment; forward motion, forwarding, forwardal; **headway,** way; **leap, jump,** forward leap *or* jump, quantum jump *or* leap, leaps and bounds, spring, forward spring; progressiveness, progressivity; **passage,** course, march, career, full career; midpassage, midcourse, midcareer; travel 177; improvement 392

VERBS **2 progress, advance, proceed, go,** go *or* move forward, step forward, go on, **go ahead,** go along, push ahead, press on, pass on *or* along, roll on; move, travel; go fast 174.8; **make progress,** come on, **get along,** come along <nf>, **get ahead;** further oneself; **make headway, roll,** gather head, gather way; make strides *or* rapid strides, cover ground, get over the ground, make good time, make the best of one's way, leap *or* jump *or* spring forward, catapult oneself forward; make up for lost time, gain ground, make up leeway, make progress against, stem

3 march on, run on, rub on, **jog on, roll on,** flow on; drift along, go with the stream

4 make *or* **wend one's way, work** *or* weave one's way, worm *or* thread one's way, inch forward, feel one's way, muddle along *or* through; go slow 175.6; carve one's way; push *or* force one's way, fight one's way, go *or* swim against the current, swim upstream; come a long way, move up in the world; **forge ahead,** drive on *or* ahead, **push** *or* **press on** *or* **onward,** push *or* press forward, push, crowd; get somewhere, reach toward, raise one's sights

5 advance, further, promote, forward, hasten, contribute to, foster, aid, facilitate, expedite, abet

ADJS **6 progressive,** progressing, advancing, proceeding, **ongoing,** proceeding, oncoming, onward, forward, **forward-looking,** go-ahead <nf>; moving; go-getting <nf>

ADVS **7 in progress,** in mid-progress, in midcourse, in midcareer, in full career; **going on;** by leaps and bounds

8 forward, forwards, onward, onwards, forth, on, along, **ahead;** on the way to, on the road *or* high road to, en route to *or* for

163 REGRESSION

<motion backwards>

NOUNS 1 **regression,** regress; recession 168; **retrogression,** retrocession, retroflexion, retroflection, reflux, refluence, retrogradation, retroaction, retrusion, reaction; return, reentry; **setback,** backset <nf>, throwback, **rollback;** backpedalling, backward motion, backward step; sternway; **backsliding,** lapse, relapse, recidivism, recidivation

2 **retreat,** *reculade* <Fr>, motion from, **withdrawal,** withdrawment, strategic withdrawal, exfiltration; **retirement, fallback,** pullout, pullback; advance to the rear; rout; disengagement; **backing down** *or* **off** *or* **out** <nf>; reneging, copping *or* weaseling out <nf>, resigning, resignation

3 **reverse, reversal,** reversing, reversion, inversion; **backing,** backing up, backup, backflow; **about-face,** *volte-face* <Fr>, about-turn, right-about, right-about-face, turn to the right-about, U-turn, turnaround, turnabout, swingaround; back track, back trail; turn of the tide, reflux, refluence

4 **countermotion,** countermovement, counteraction; recoil, rebound; countermarching

VERBS 5 **regress,** go backwards, **recede,** return, revert; **retrogress,** retrograde, retroflex, retrocede; pull back, jerk back, reach back, cock <the arm, fist, etc>; *reculer pour mieux sauter* <Fr>; fall *or* get *or* go behind, fall astern, lose ground, slip back; **backslide,** lapse, relapse, recidivate; go down the tubes *or* drain <nf>

6 **retreat,** sound *or* beat a retreat, beat a hasty retreat, **withdraw, retire,** pull out *or* back, exfiltrate, advance to the rear, disengage; **fall back,** move back, go back, stand back; run back; **draw back,** draw off; **back out** *or* **out of** *and* back off *and* back down <nf>; defer, give ground, give place, take a back seat, play second fiddle; resign; crawfish <nf>

7 **reverse,** go into reverse; **back, back up,** backpedal, back off *or* away, go into reverse; **backwater,** make sternway; **backtrack,** backtrail, take the back track; countermarch; reverse one's field; take the reciprocal course; have second thoughts, think better of it, cut one's losses, go back to the drawing board

8 **turn back,** put back; double, double back, retrace one's steps; turn one's back upon; **return,** go *or* come back, go *or* come home

9 **turn round** *or* **around** *or* **about,** turn, make a U-turn, turn on a dime, turn tail, **come** *or* **go about,** put about, fetch about; veer, veer around; **swivel,** pivot, pivot about, swing, round, swing round; wheel, wheel about, double wheel, whirl, spin; heel, turn upon one's heel; recoil, rebound, quail

10 **about-face,** *volte-face* <Fr>, right-about-face, **do an about-face** *or* a right-about-face *or* an about-turn, perform a *volte-face,* **face about,** turn *or* face to the right-about, do a turn to the right-about

ADJS 11 **regressive,** recessive; **retrogressive,** retrocessive, retrograde, retral; retroactive; reactionary

12 **backward, reversed,** reflex, **turned around,** back; wrong-way, wrong-way around, counter, assbackwards *and* bassackwards <nf>

ADVS 13 **backwards,** backward, retrally, **hindwards,** hindward, **rearwards,** rearward, arear, astern; **back,** away, fro, *à reculons* <Fr>; **in reverse,** assbackwards <nf>; against the grain, *à rebours* <Fr>; counterclockwise, anticlockwise, widdershins

WORD ELEMENTS 14 an-, ana-, re-, retro-

164 DEVIATION

<indirect course>

NOUNS 1 **deviation,** deviance *or* deviancy, deviousness, **departure, digression,** diversion, **divergence,** divarication, branching off, divagation, declination, aberration, aberrancy, **variation,** indirection, exorbitation; tangent, parenthesis; detour, excursion, excursus, discursion; obliquity, bias, skew, slant; **circuitousness** 913; **wandering,** rambling, **straying,** errantry, pererration; drift, drifting; turning, shifting, swerving, swinging; **turn, corner, bend, curve,** dogleg, crook, hairpin, zigzag, twist, warp, swerve, **veer,** sheer, sweep; shift, double; tack, yaw; wandering *or* twisting *or* zigzag *or* shifting course *or* path, slalom course; long way around

2 **deflection, bending,** deflexure, flection, flexure; torsion, distortion, contortion, torture *or* torturing, twisting, warping; skewness; **refraction, diffraction, scatter,** diffusion, dispersion; side step, crabwalk

VERBS 3 **deviate, depart from, vary, diverge,** divaricate, branch off, angle, angle off; **digress,** divagate, turn aside, go out of the way, detour, take a side road; **swerve, veer,** sheer, curve, **shift, turn,** trend, bend, heel, bear off; turn right, turn left, hang a right *or* left <nf>; alter one's course, make a course correction, change the bearing; tack 182.30

4 **stray,** go astray, lose one's way, err; go off on a tangent; take a wrong turn *or* turning; drift, go adrift; **wander,** wander off, ramble, rove, straggle, divagate, excurse, pererrate; meander, wind, twist, snake, twist and turn; lose one's bearings

5 **deflect,** deviate, **divert,** diverge, **bend,** curve, pull, crook, dogleg, hairpin, zigzag; **warp,** bias, twist, distort, contort, torture, skew; refract, diffract, **scatter, diffuse, disperse;** put rudder on

6 **avoid, evade, dodge,** duck <nf>, turn aside *or* to the side, draw aside, **turn away,** jib, shy, shy off; gee, haw; **sidetrack,** shove aside, shunt, switch; **avert; head off,** turn back 908.3; **step aside,** sidestep, move aside *or* to the side, sidle; **steer clear of,** make way for, get out of the way of; go off, bear off, sheer off, veer off, ease off, edge off; fly off, go *or* fly off at a tangent; glance, glance off

ADJS 7 **deviative,** deviatory, deviating, **deviant,** departing, aberrant, aberrational, aberrative, shifting, turning, swerving, veering; **digressive,** discursive, excursive, **circuitous; devious,** indirect, out-of-the-way; errant, erratic, zigzag, doglegged, **wandering,** rambling, roving, winding, twisting, meandering, snaky, serpentine, mazy, labyrinthine, vagrant, stray, desultory, planetary, undirected; out of sync <nf>

8 **deflective,** inflective, flectional, diffractive, refractive; refractile, refrangible; deflected, flexed, refracted, diffracted, scattered, diffuse, diffused, dispersed; distorted, skewed, skew; off-course, off-target, wide of the mark

9 **avertive, evasive,** dodging, dodgy

165 LEADING

<going ahead>

NOUNS 1 **leading, heading,** foregoing; anteposition, the lead, *le pas* <Fr>; **preceding,** precedence 814; priority 834.1; front, point, leading edge, cutting edge, forefront, vanguard, van 216.2; vaunt-courier <old>, herald, precursor 816

VERBS 2 **lead, head,** spearhead, stand at the head, stand first, be way ahead <nf>, head the line; take the lead, go in the lead, **lead the way,** break the trail, be the bellwether, lead the pack; be the point *or* point man; lead the dance; **light the way,** show the way, beacon, guide; get before, get ahead *or* in front of, come to the front, come to the fore, lap, outstrip, pace, set the pace; not look back; get *or* have the start, get a head start, steal a march upon; **precede** 814.2, go before 815.3

ADJS 3 **leading, heading,** precessional, precedent, precursory, foregoing; **first, foremost,** headmost; **preceding,** antecedent 814.4; **prior** 834.4; **chief** 249.14

ADVS 4 **before** 814.6, in front, out in front, outfront, foremost, headmost, in the van, in the forefront, in advance 216.12

166 FOLLOWING

<going behind>

NOUNS 1 **following,** heeling, **trailing,** tailing <nf>, shadowing; **hounding, dogging,** chasing, **pursuit,** pursual, pursuance; sequence 814; sequel 817; series 812.2

2 **follower,** successor; shadow *and* tail <nf>; **pursuer,** pursuivant; **attendant** 769.4, **satellite, hanger-on,** dangler, adherent, appendage, dependent, parasite, stooge <nf>, flunky; **henchman,** ward heeler, partisan, supporter, votary, sectary; camp follower, groupy <nf>; fan *and* buff <nf>; courtier, *homme de cour* <Fr>, *cavaliere servente* <Ital>; trainbearer; **public; entourage,** following 769.6; disciple 572.2, discipleship

VERBS 3 **follow,** go after *or* behind, come after *or* behind, move behind; **pursue, shadow** *and* **tail** <nf>, **trail,** trail after, follow in the trail of, camp on the trail of, **heel,** follow *or* tread *or* step on the heels of, follow in the steps *or* footsteps *or* footprints of, tread close upon, breathe down the neck of, follow in the wake of, hang on the skirts of, stick like the shadow of, sit on the tail of, tailgate <nf>, go in the rear of, bring up the rear, eat the dust of, take *or* swallow one's dust; tag *and* **tag after** *and* tag along <nf>; string along <nf>; **dog,** bedog, **hound,** chase, get after, take out *or* take off after, **pursue**

4 **lag, lag behind, straggle,** lag back, drag, trail, **trail behind,** hang back *or* behind, loiter, linger, **loiter** *or* **linger behind,** dawdle, get behind, fall behind *or* behindhand, let grass grow under one's feet

ADJS 5 **following,** trailing, on the track *or* trail; succeeding 815.4; back-to-back <nf>, consecutive 811.9

ADVS 6 **behind, after,** in the rear, in the train *or* wake of; in back of 217.13

167 APPROACH

<motion towards>

NOUNS 1 **approach,** approaching, coming *or* going toward, coming *or* going near, proximation, appropinquation <old>, **access,** accession, nearing; advance, oncoming; **advent, coming,** forthcoming; flowing toward, afflux, affluxion; appulse; nearness 223; imminence 840; approximation 223.1

2 **approachability, accessibility, access,** getatableness *and* come-at-ableness <nf>, attainability, openness

VERBS 3 **approach, near, draw near** *or* nigh, go *or* come near, go *or* come toward, come closer *or* nearer, come to close quarters; **close,** close in, close in on, close with; zoom in on; **accost,** encounter, confront; proximate, appropinquate <old>; **advance,** come, **come forward,** come on, come up, bear up, step up; ease *or* edge *or* sidle up to; bear down on *or* upon, be on a collision course with; gain upon, narrow the gap; approximate 784.7, 223.8

ADJS 4 **approaching, nearing,** advancing; attracted to, drawn to; **coming, oncoming, forthcoming,** upcoming, to come; approximate, proximate, approximative; near 223.14; imminent 840.3

5 **approachable, accessible,** getatable *and* come-at-able <nf>, attainable, open, easy to find, meet, etc

168 RECESSION
<motion from>

NOUNS 1 **recession,** recedence, receding, retrocedence; **retreat, retirement, withdrawing, withdrawal;** retraction, retractation, retractility; fleetingness, fugitiveness, fugitivity, evanescence

VERBS 2 **recede,** retrocede; **retreat, retire, withdraw;** move off *or* away, stand off *or* away, stand out from the shore; go, **go away; die away,** fade away, drift away; erode, wash away; **diminish,** decline, sink, shrink, dwindle, **fade, ebb,** wane; shy away, tail away, tail off; go out with the tide, fade into the distance; pull away, widen the distance

3 **retract,** withdraw, **draw** *or* **pull back,** pull out, draw *or* pull in; draw in one's claws *or* horns; defer, take a back seat, play second fiddle; **shrink,** wince, cringe, flinch, shy, fight shy, duck

ADJS 4 **recessive,** recessional, recessionary; recedent, retrocedent

5 **receding, retreating,** retiring, withdrawing; shy; **diminishing, declining,** sinking, shrinking, eroding, dwindling, **ebbing,** waning; **fading,** dying; fleeting, fugitive, evanescent

6 **retractile,** retractable, retrahent

169 CONVERGENCE
<coming together>

NOUNS 1 **convergence,** converging, confluence, concourse, conflux; mutual approach, approach 167; **meeting,** congress, concurrence, coming together; **concentration,** concentralization, focalization 208.8, focus 208.4; meeting point, point of convergence, vanishing point; union, merger; crossing point, crossroads, crossing 170; collision course, narrowing gap; funnel, bottleneck; hub, spokes; asymptote; radius; tangent

VERBS 2 **converge, come together,** approach 167.3, run together, **meet,** unite, connect, merge; **cross,** intersect 170.6; fall in with, link up with; be on a collision course; go toward, narrow the gap, close with, close, close up, close in; funnel; taper, pinch, nip; centralize, center, **come to a center;** center on *or* around, concentralize, concenter, **concentrate,** come *or* tend to a point; come to a focus 208.10

ADJS 3 **converging,** convergent; **meeting,** uniting, merging; concurrent, confluent, mutually approaching, approaching; **crossing,** intersecting 170.8; connivent; **focal,** confocal, focusing, focused; centrolineal, centripetal; asymptotic, asymptotical; tangent, tangential, radial, radiating

170 CROSSING

NOUNS 1 **crossing, intercrossing,** intersecting, **intersection;** decussation, chiasma; traversal, transversion; cross section, transection; cruciation; **transit,** transiting

2 **crossing,** crossway, **crosswalk, crossroad,** pedestrian crosswalk, zebra *or* zebra crossing <Brit>; *carrefour* <Fr>; **intersection,** intercrossing; level crossing, grade crossing; crossover, overpass, flyover <Brit>, viaduct, undercrossing; traffic circle, rotary, roundabout <Brit>; highway interchange, **interchange,** cloverleaf, spaghetti junction <Brit>

3 **network, webwork,** weaving 740, **meshwork,** tissue, crossing over and under, interlacement, intertwinement, intertexture, texture, reticulum, reticulation; "Any thing reticulated or decussated, at equal distances, with interstices between the intersections"—Samuel Johnson; crossing-out, cancellation, scrubbing <nf>; **net,** netting; **mesh,** meshes; **web,** webbing; weave, weft; lace, lacery, lacing, lacework; screen, screening; sieve, riddle, raddle; wicker, wickerwork; basketwork, basketry; lattice, latticework; hachure *or* hatchure, hatching, cross-hatching; trellis, trelliswork, treillage; grate, grating; grille, grillwork; **grid,** gridiron; tracery, fretwork, fret, arabesque, filigree; plexus, plexure; reticle, reticule; wattle, wattle and daub

4 **cross,** crux, cruciform; **crucifix,** rood, tree *or* rood tree <old>; X *or* ex, exing, T, Y; **swastika,** gammadion, fylfot, *Hakenkreuz* <Ger>; crossbones; dagger

5 **crosspiece,** traverse, transverse, transversal, transept, transom, cross bitt; diagonal; **crossbar,** crossarm; swingletree, singletree, whiffletree, whippletree; doubletree

VERBS 6 **cross, crisscross,** cruciate; **intersect,** intercross, decussate; **cut across,** crosscut; **traverse,** transverse, lie across; bar, crossbar

7 net, web, mesh; lattice, trellis; grate, grid

ADJS 8 **cross, crossing, crossed; crisscross, crisscrossed; intersecting, intersected,** intersectional; crosscut, cut across; decussate, decussated; chiasmal *or* chiasmic *or* chiastic; secant

9 **transverse,** transversal, traverse; **across,** cross, crossway, **crosswise** *or* crossways, thwart, athwart, overthwart; oblique 204.13

10 **cruciform, crosslike,** cross-shaped, cruciate, X-shaped, cross, crossed; cruciferous

11 **netlike,** retiform, plexiform; **reticulated,** reticular, reticulate; cancellate, cancellated; **netted,** netty; **meshed,** meshy; laced, lacy, lacelike; filigreed; latticed, latticelike; grated, gridded; barred, crossbarred, mullioned; streaked, striped

12 **webbed,** webby, weblike, woven, interwoven, interlaced, intertwined; web-footed, palmiped

ADVS 13 **crosswise** *or* crossways *or* crossway, decussatively; **cross, crisscross, across,** thwart, thwartly, thwartways, **athwart,** athwartwise, overthwart; **traverse,** traversely; **transverse,** transversely, transversally; obliquely 204.21; **sideways** *or* sidewise; contrariwise, contrawise; crossgrained, across the grain, against the grain; athwartship, athwartships

171 DIVERGENCE

<recession from one another>

NOUNS 1 **divergence** *or* divergency, divarication; aberration, deviation 164; **separation,** division, decentralization; centrifugence; **radial, radiating,** radiating out, raying out, beaming out; **spread,** spreading, spreading out, splaying, fanning, fanning out, deployment; ripple effect

2 **radiation,** ray, sunray, radius, spoke; radiance, diffusion, scattering, dispersion, emanation; halo, aureole, glory, corona; ripple effect

3 **forking,** furcation, bifurcation, biforking, trifurcation, divarication, triforking; **branching,** branching off *or* out, **ramification;** arborescence, arborization

4 **fork, prong,** trident; Y, V; **branch, ramification,** stem, offshoot; **crotch,** crutch; **fan, delta; groin,** inguen; furcula, furculum, **wishbone**

VERBS 5 **diverge,** divaricate; aberrate; **separate,** divide, separate off, split off; spread, **spread out,** outspread, splay, fan out, deploy; go off *or* away, **fly** *or* **go off at a tangent**; part company

6 **radiate,** radiate out, ray, ray out, beam out, diffuse, emanate, spread, disperse, scatter

7 **fork,** furcate, bifurcate, trifurcate, divaricate; **branch,** stem, ramify, branch off *or* out, spread-eagle

ADJS 8 **diverging,** divergent; divaricate, divaricating; palmate, palmated; fanlike, fan-shaped; deltoid, deltoidal, deltalike, delta-shaped; splayed; centrifugal

9 **radiating,** radial, radiate, radiated; rayed, spoked; radiative

10 **forked, forking,** furcate, biforked, bifurcate, bifurcated, forklike, trifurcate, trifurcated, tridentlike, pronged; **crotched,** Y-shaped, V-shaped; **branched, branching;** arborescent, arboreal, arboriform, treelike, tree-shaped, dendriform, dendritic; branchlike, ramous

172 MOTION

<motion in general>

NOUNS 1 **motion; movement,** moving, **momentum; stir,** unrest, restlessness; **going,** running, stirring; **operation,** operating, **working,** ticking; **activity** 330; kinesis, kinetics, kinematics; dynamics; kinesiatrics, kinesipathy, kinesitherapy, kinesiology; **actuation,** motivation; mobilization

2 **course, career,** set, midcareer, **passage, progress,** trend, **advance,** forward motion, going *or* moving on, momentum; **travel** 177; **flow,** flux, flight, **trajectory; stream, current,** run, rush, onrush, ongoing; drift, driftage; backward motion, **regression,** retrogression, sternway, backing, going *or* moving backwards; backflowing, reflowing, refluence, reflux, ebbing, subsiding, withdrawing; downward motion, **descent,** descending, sinking, plunging; upward motion, mounting, climbing, rising, **ascent,** ascending, **soaring,** mounting; oblique *or* crosswise motion; sideward *or* sidewise *or* sideways motion; radial motion, angular motion, axial motion; random motion, Brownian movement; perpetual motion

3 **mobility, motivity,** motility, movableness, movability; **locomotion;** motive power

4 **velocity** 174.1,2, rate, gait, pace, tread, step, stride, clip *and* lick <nf>

VERBS 5 **move, budge, stir;** go, run, flow, stream; **progress,** advance; wend, wend one's way; **back,** back up, regress, retrogress; ebb, subside, wane; **descend,** sink, plunge; **ascend,** mount, rise, climb, soar; go sideways, go crabwise; go round *or* around, circle, rotate, gyrate, spin, whirl; travel; move over, get over; shift, change, shift *or* change place; **speed** 174.8; **hurry** 401.5, do on the fly *or* run

6 **set in motion, move, actuate,** motivate, push, shove, nudge, **drive,** impel, propel; mobilize; dispatch

ADJS 7 **moving, stirring, in motion;** transitional; **mobile,** motive, motile, motor, motorial, motoric; motivational, impelling, propelling, propellant, driving, self-propelled; traveling; **active** 330.17

8 **flowing,** fluent, passing, streaming, flying, **running, going, progressive,** rushing, onrushing; drifting; **regressive,** retrogressive, back, **backward;** backflowing, refluent, reflowing; descending, sinking, plunging, **downward,** down-trending; ascending, mounting, rising, soaring, **upward,** up-trending; sideward, sidewise, sideways; **rotary,** rotatory,

rotational, round-and-round; axial, gyrational, gyratory

ADVS 9 **under way,** under sail, on one's way, on the go *or* move *or* fly *or* run *or* march, **in motion, astir;** from pillar to post

WORD ELEMENTS 10 moto-; -kinesia, kin-, kine-, kino-, kinesi-, kinesio-, kinet-, kineto-

173 QUIESCENCE

<being at rest; absence of motion>

NOUNS 1 **quiescence,** *or* quiescency, **stillness,** silence 51, quietness, **quiet,** quietude, "lucid stillness" —T S Eliot; **calmness,** restfulness, **peacefulness,** imperturbability, passiveness, passivity, "wise passiveness"—Wordsworth, placidness, **placidity, tranquillity, serenity, peace, composure;** quietism, contemplation, satori, nirvana, samadhi, ataraxy *or* ataraxia; **rest, repose,** silken repose, statuelike *or* marmoreal repose; sleep, slumber 22.2

2 **motionlessness, immobility; inactivity, inaction;** fixity, fixation 855.2

3 **standstill, stand,** stillstand; **stop, halt,** cessation 857; dead stop, dead stand, full stop; deadlock, lock, dead set; gridlock, stalemate, stoppage; freeze, strike; running *or* dying down, subsidence, waning, ebbing, wane, ebb

4 **inertness, dormancy; inertia,** *vis inertiae* <L>; passiveness, passivity; suspense, abeyance, latency; torpor, apathy, indifference, indolence, lotus-eating, languor; **stagnation,** stagnancy, **vegetation;** stasis; sloth; deathliness, deadliness; catalepsy, catatonia; entropy

5 **calm, lull,** lull *or* calm before the storm; dead calm, flat calm, oily calm, windlessness, deathlike calm; doldrums, horse latitudes; anticyclone, eye of the hurricane

6 **stuffiness, airlessness, closeness, oppressiveness,** stirlessness, oppression

VERBS 7 **be still, keep quiet,** lie still; **stop moving,** cease motion, freeze *or* seize up, come to a standstill; **rest, repose; remain, stay,** tarry; remain motionless, freeze <nf>; stand, **stand still,** be at a standstill; stand *or* stick fast, stick, stand firm, stay put <nf>; stand like a post; **not stir,** not stir a step, not move a muscle; not breathe, hold one's breath; bide, bide one's time, mark time, tread water, coast; rest on one's oars, put one's feet up, rest and be thankful

8 **quiet,** quieten, **lull, soothe,** quiesce, **calm,** calm down, tranquilize 670.7, pacify, passivize, assuage, pour oil on troubled waters; **stop** 857.7, halt, bring to a standstill; **cease** 857.6, wane, subside, ebb, run *or* die down, die off, dwindle, molder

9 **stagnate, vegetate,** fust <old>; sleep, slumber; smolder, hang fire; **idle**

10 **sit,** set <nf>, **sit down, be seated,** remain seated, remain in situ; perch, roost

11 **becalm,** take the wind out of one's sails

ADJS 12 **quiescent, quiet, still,** stilly <old>, stillish, hushed; quiet as a mouse; waning, subsiding, ebbing, dwindling, moldering; **at rest,** resting, reposing; restful, reposeful, relaxed; cloistered, sequestered, sequestrated, isolated, secluded, sheltered; **calm, tranquil, peaceful,** peaceable, pacific, halcyon; **placid, smooth; unruffled, untroubled,** cool, undisturbed, unperturbed, unagitated, unmoved, unstirring, laid-back <nf>; stolid, stoic, stoical, impassive; even-tenored; calm as a mill pond; still as death, "quiet as a street at night"—Rupert Brooke

13 **motionless, unmoving,** unmoved, moveless, **immobile,** immotive; **still, fixed, stationary, static,** at a standstill; **stock-still,** dead-still; still as a statue, statuelike; still as a mouse; at anchor, riding at anchor; **idle,** unemployed; out of commission, down

14 **inert, inactive, static, dormant,** passive, sedentary; **latent,** unaroused, suspended, abeyant, in suspense *or* abeyance; sleeping, slumbering, smoldering; **stagnant,** standing, foul; **torpid, languorous, languid,** apathetic, phlegmatic, **sluggish,** logy, dopey <nf>, groggy, heavy, leaden, **dull,** flat, slack, tame, **dead,** lifeless; catatonic, cataleptic

15 **untraveled, stay-at-home,** stick-in-the-mud <nf>, home-keeping

16 **stuffy, airless,** breathless, breezeless, windless; **close, oppressive, stifling, suffocating;** stirless, unstirring, not a breath of air, not a leaf stirring, "not wind enough to twirl the one red leaf"—Coleridge; ill-ventilated, unventilated, unvented

17 **becalmed,** in a dead calm

ADVS 18 quiescently, **quietly,** stilly, still; **calmly, tranquilly, peacefully,** serenely; **placidly,** smoothly, unperturbedly, **coolly**

19 **motionlessly,** movelessly, stationarily, fixedly

20 **inertly, inactively,** statically, dormantly, passively, latently; stagnantly; **torpidly, languorously, languidly; like a bump on a log; sluggishly,** heavily, dully, coldly, lifelessly, apathetically, phlegmatically; stoically, stolidly, impassively

174 SWIFTNESS

NOUNS 1 **velocity, speed; rapidity,** celerity, **swiftness,** fastness, **quickness,** snappiness <nf>, **speediness;** haste 401.1, hurry, flurry, rush, precipitation;

dispatch, expedition, promptness, promptitude, instantaneousness; flight, flit; lightning speed; fast *or* swift rate, smart *or* rattling *or* spanking *or* lively *or* snappy pace, round pace; relative velocity, angular velocity; air speed, ground speed, speed over the bottom; miles per hour, knots; rpm 915.3

2 **speed of sound, sonic speed,** Mach, Mach number, Mach one, Mach two, etc; subsonic speed; supersonic *or* ultrasonic *or* hypersonic *or* transsonic speed; transsonic barrier, sound barrier; escape velocity; speed of light, terminal velocity; warp speed, lightning speed

3 **run, sprint; dash, rush,** plunge, headlong rush *or* plunge, **race, scurry, scamper,** scud, scuttle, **spurt,** burst, **burst of speed;** canter, **gallop,** lope; high lope, hand gallop, full gallop; dead run; **trot,** extended trot, dogtrot, jog trot; **full speed,** open throttle, flat-out speed <Brit>, wide-open speed, heavy right foot, maximum speed; **fast-forward;** fast track *or* lane; forced draft *and* flank speed <nautical>

4 **acceleration, quickening; pickup,** getaway; burst of speed; step-up, speedup; thrust, drive, impetus, kick-start; free fall; flying start; headlong plunge; overtaking; zip *or* zing <nf>

5 **speeder,** scorcher *and* hell-driver <nf>, **sprinter,** harrier; flier, goer, stepper; hummer *and* hustler *and* sizzler <nf>; **speed demon** *or* maniac <nf>; **racer, runner;** horse racer, turfman, jockey; Jehu; express messenger, courier

6 <comparisons> lightning, greased lightning <nf>, thunderbolt, flash, streak of lightning, streak, blue streak <nf>, bat out of hell <nf>, light, electricity, thought, wind, shot, bullet, cannonball, rocket, arrow, dart, quicksilver, mercury, express train, jet plane, torrent, eagle, swallow, antelope, courser, gazelle, greyhound, hare, blue darter, striped snake, scared rabbit

7 **speedometer,** accelerometer; cyclometer; tachometer; Mach meter; knotmeter, log, log line, patent log, taffrail log, harpoon log, ground log; windsock; wind gauge, anemometer

VERBS 8 **speed, go fast,** skim, **fly,** flit, fleet, wing one's way, outstrip the wind; **zoom;** make knots, foot; break the sound barrier, go at warp speed; go like the wind, go like a shot *or* flash, go like lightning *or* a streak of lightning, go like greased lightning; **rush, tear,** dash, dart, shoot, hurtle, bolt, fling, **scamper, scurry,** scour, scud, scuttle, scramble, **race,** careen; **hasten,** haste, make haste, **hurry** 401.4, hie, post, kick-start; march in quick *or* double-quick time; **run, sprint, trip,** spring, **bound,** leap; gallop, lope, canter; trot; **make time,** make good time, **cover ground,** get over the ground, **make strides** *or* **rapid strides,** make the best of one's way

9 <nf terms> **barrel,** clip, spank *or* cut along, tear *or* tear along *or* off, bowl along, thunder along, storm along, breeze *or* breeze along, tear up the track *or* road, eat up the track *or* road, scorch, sizzle, rip, zip, whiz, whisk, sweep, brush, nip, zing, fly low, highball, ball the jack, pour it on, boom, shake *or* get the lead out, lollop <Brit>, give it the gun, skedaddle, scoot, step on it, step on the gas, hump *or* hump it, stir one's stumps, hotfoot, hightail, make tracks, step lively, step, step along, carry the mail, hop, hop along, hop it, get, git, go like a bat out of hell, run like a scared rabbit, run like mad, go at full blast, go all out, go flat out, run wide open, go at full tilt *or* steam, let her out, open her up, go hell-bent for election *or* leather, get a move on, give it the gas, go like blazes *or* blue blazes, floor it, let her rip, put the pedal to the metal, tool

10 **accelerate, speed up, step up** <nf>, **hurry up, quicken;** hasten 401.4; crack on, put on, put on steam, pour on the coal, put on more speed, open the throttle; quicken one's pace; pick up speed, gain ground; race <a motor>, rev <nf>

11 <naut terms> put on sail, crack *or* pack on sail, crowd sail, press her

12 **spurt,** make a spurt *or* dash, **dash** *or* dart *or* shoot ahead, rush ahead, put on *or* make a burst of speed; make one's move

13 **overtake, outstrip, overhaul,** catch up, **catch up with,** come up with *or* to, gain on *or* upon, pass, lap; outpace, outrun, outsail; leave behind, leave standing *or* looking *or* flatfooted

14 **keep up with,** keep pace with, run neck and neck

ADJS 15 **fast, swift, speedy, rapid; quick,** double-quick, express, **fleet, hasty, expeditious,** hustling, snappy <nf>, rushing, onrushing, dashing, flying, galloping, running, **agile, nimble,** lively, nimble-footed, light-footed, light-legged, light of heel; winged, eagle-winged; mercurial; quick as lightning, quick as thought, swift as an arrow, "swifter than arrow from the Tartar's bow"—Shakespeare; **breakneck,** reckless, headlong, precipitate; quick as a wink, quick on the trigger <nf>, hair-trigger <nf>; **prompt** 845.9

16 **supersonic,** transsonic, ultrasonic, hypersonic, faster than sound; warp; **high-speed,** high-velocity, high-geared

ADVS 17 **swiftly, rapidly, quickly,** snappily <nf>, **speedily,** with speed, **fast, quick,** apace, amain, on eagle's wings, *ventre à terre* <Fr>; at a great rate, at a good clip <nf>, with rapid strides, with giant strides, *à pas de géant* <Fr>, in seven-league boots, **by leaps and bounds,** trippingly; **lickety-split** *and* lickety-cut <nf>; hell-bent *and* hell-bent for election *and* hell-bent for leather <nf>; **posthaste,** post, **hastily,** expeditiously, promptly, with great *or* all haste, whip and spur, **hand over hand** *or* **fist;** double-quick, in double time, in double-quick time, on the double *or* the double-quick <nf>; in high gear, in high; under press of sail, all sails set, under crowded sails, under press of sail and steam, under forced draft, at flank speed <all nautical>

18 <nf terms> **like a shot, as if shot out of a cannon, like a flash,** like a streak, like a blue streak, like a streak of lightning, like lightning, like greased lightning, **like a bat out of hell, like a scared rabbit,** like a house afire, like sixty, like mad *and* **crazy** *and* fury, like sin, to beat the band *or* the Dutch *or* the deuce *or* the devil

19 **in short order, in no time,** instantaneously, immediately if not sooner, in less than no time, in nothing flat <nf>; in a jiff *or* jiffy <nf>, before you can say Jack Robinson, **in a flash,** in a twink, **in a twinkling,** "in the twinkling of an eye"—Bible, *tout de suite* <Fr>, pronto <nf>, PDQ *or* pretty damn quick <nf>

20 **at full speed,** with all speed, at full throttle, **at the top of one's bent, for all one is worth** <nf>, hit the ground running <nf>, as fast as one's legs will carry one, as fast as one can lay feet to the ground; **at full blast,** at full drive *or* pelt; under full steam, in full sail; **all out** <nf>, flat out <Brit>, **wide open;** full speed ahead

175 SLOWNESS

NOUNS 1 **slowness, leisureliness,** pokiness, slackness, creeping, no hurry; **sluggishness,** sloth, laziness, idleness, indolence, sluggardy, languor, inertia, inertness, lentitude *or* lentor <old>; deliberateness, deliberation, circumspection, tentativeness, cautiousness, reluctance, foot-dragging <nf>; drawl; gradualism; hesitation, slow start

2 **slow motion, leisurely gait,** snail's *or* tortoise's pace; **creep, crawl; walk,** footpace, dragging *or* lumbering pace, trudge, waddle, saunter, stroll; slouch, shuffle, plod, shamble; limp, claudication, hobble; dogtrot, jog trot; jog, rack; mincing steps; slow march, dead *or* funeral march, largo, andante

3 **dawdling, lingering, loitering, tarrying,** dalliance, **dallying,** dillydallying, shillyshallying, lollygagging, dilatoriness, delaying tactic, delayed action, procrastination 845.5, lag, **lagging,** goofing off <nf>

4 **slowing, retardation,** retardment, **slackening,** flagging, slowing down *or* up; **slowdown,** slowup, **letup, letdown, slack-up, slack-off,** ease-off, ease-up; **deceleration,** negative *or* minus acceleration; **delay** 846.2, **detention, setback, holdup** <nf>, check, arrest, brake, obstruction; lag, drag

5 **slowpoke** *and* slowcoach <nf>, plodder, slow goer, slow-foot, **lingerer, loiterer, dawdler,** dawdle, **laggard,** procrastinator, foot-dragger, stick-in-the-mud <nf>, drone, slug, sluggard, lie-abed, sleepyhead, slow starter, goof-off <nf>, goldbrick <nf>; tortoise, snail

VERBS 6 **go slow** *or* **slowly,** go at a snail's pace, take it slow, get no place fast <nf>; **drag,** drag out; **creep, crawl;** laze, idle; go dead slow, get nowhere fast; inch, inch along; worm, worm along; poke, **poke along;** shuffle *or* stagger *or* totter *or* toddle along; drag along, drag one's feet, walk, traipse *and* **mosey** <nf>; **saunter, stroll, amble,** waddle, toddle <nf>; jogtrot, dogtrot; limp, hobble, claudicate; *festina lente* <L>

7 **plod,** plug <nf>, peg, shamble, **trudge,** tramp, stump, lumber; plod along, plug along <nf>, schlep <nf>; rub on, jog on, chug on

8 **dawdle, linger, loiter, tarry, delay, dally, dillydally,** shilly-shally, lollygag, waste time, **take one's time,** take one's own sweet time; goof off *or* around <nf>; lag, drag, trail; flag, falter, halt, not get started

9 **slow, slow down** *or* **up, let down** *or* **up, ease off** *or* **up, slack off** *or* **up, slacken,** relax, moderate, taper off, lose speed *or* momentum; **decelerate, retard,** delay 846.8, **detain,** impede, obstruct, arrest, stay, **check,** curb, **hold up, hold back,** keep back, set back, hold in check; draw rein, rein in; throttle down, take one's foot off the gas; idle, barely tick over; brake, **put on the brakes,** put on the drag; reef, take in sail; backwater, backpedal; lose ground; clip the wings; regress

ADJS 10 **slow, leisurely,** slack, moderate, gentle, **easy,** deliberate, go-slow, unhurried, relaxed, gradual, circumspect, tentative, cautious, reluctant, foot-dragging <nf>; **creeping, crawling; poking,** poky, slow-poky <nf>; tottering, staggering, toddling, trudging, **lumbering,** ambling, waddling, shuffling, **sauntering,** strolling; **sluggish,** languid, languorous, lazy, slothful, indolent, idle, slouchy; **slow-going, slow-moving,** slow-creeping, slow-crawling, slow-running, slow-sailing; **slow-footed,** slow-foot, slow-legged, slow-gaited, slow-paced, slow-stepped, easy-paced, slow-winged; snail-paced, snail-like, tortoiselike, turtlelike, "creeping like snail"—Shakespeare; limping, hobbling, hobbled; halting, claudicant; faltering, flagging; slow as slow, slow as molasses *or* molasses in January, slow as death, slower than the seven-year itch <nf>

11 **dawdling, lingering, loitering, tarrying, dallying, dillydallying,** shilly-shallying, lollygagging, procrastinatory *or* procrastinative, dilatory, delaying 846.17, **lagging,** dragging

12 **retarded,** slowed-down, eased, slackened; **delayed, detained,** checked, **arrested,** impeded, set back, backward, behind; late, **tardy** 846.16

ADVS 13 **slowly,** slow, **leisurely,** unhurriedly, relaxedly, easily, moderately, gently; creepingly, crawlingly; pokingly, pokily; **sluggishly,** languidly, languorously, lazily, indolently, idly, deliberately, with deliberation, circumspectly, tentatively, cautiously, reluctantly; **lingeringly,** loiteringly, tarryingly, dilatorily; limpingly, haltingly, falteringly; **in slow motion,** at a funeral pace, with faltering *or* halting steps; at a snail's *or* turtle's pace, "in haste like a snail"—John Heywood; in slow tempo, in march time; with agonizing slowness; in low gear; under easy sail

14 **gradually,** little by little 245.6

PHRS 15 **easy does it,** take it easy, go easy, slack off, slow down

176 TRANSFERAL, TRANSPORTATION

1 **transferal, transfer; transmission,** transference, transmittal, transmittance; transposition, transposal, transplacement; mutual transfer, interchange, metathesis; translocation, **transplantation,** translation; migration, transmigration; **import, importation; export, exportation;** deportation, extradition, expulsion, **transit,** transition, **passage; communication,** spread, spreading, dissemination, diffusion, contagion, ripple effect; metastasis; transmigration of souls, metempsychosis; passing over; osmosis, diapedesis; transduction, conduction, convection; transfusion, perfusion; transfer of property *or* right 629

2 transferability, conveyability; transmissibility, transmittability; movability, removability; **portability,** transportability; communicability, impartability; deliverability

3 **transportation, conveyance, transport, carrying,** bearing, packing, toting *and* lugging <nf>; **carriage,** carry, **hauling,** haulage, portage, porterage, waft, waftage; **cartage, truckage,** drayage, wagonage; ferriage, lighterage; telpherage; **freightage,** freight, expressage, railway express; **airfreight, air express,** airlift; **package freight,** package service; **shipment, shipping,** transshipment; containerization, cargo-handling; delivery 478.1; travel 177; expressage

4 **moving, removal, movement,** relocation, shift, removement, remotion; **displacement,** delocalization

5 people mover, moving sidewalk, automated monorail; conveyor belt; elevator, lift <Brit>, escalator 912.4

6 **freight,** freightage; **shipment, consignment,** goods <Brit>; **cargo,** payload; lading, load, pack; **baggage, luggage,** impedimenta

7 **carrier, conveyer;** transporter, hauler, carter, wagoner, drayman, shipper, trucker, common carrier, truck driver, driver; freighter; containerizer; stevedore, cargo handler; expressman, express, messenger, courier; importer, exporter; **bearer, porter,** redcap, skycap, bell boy; bus boy; coolie; litter-bearer, stretcher-bearer; caddie; shield-bearer, gun bearer; water carrier *or* bearer, water boy, bheesty <India>; the Water Bearer, Aquarius; letter carrier 353.5; cupbearer, Ganymede, Hebe; carrier pigeon, homing pigeon

8 **beast of burden; pack** *or* **draft animal,** pack horse *or* mule, sumpter, sumpter horse *or* mule; **horse** 311.10–15, ass, mule; ox; camel, ship of the desert, dromedary, llama; reindeer; elephant; sledge dog, husky, malamute, Siberian husky

9 <geological terms> **deposit,** sediment; drift, silt, loess, moraine, scree, sinter; alluvium, alluvion, diluvium; detritus, debris

VERBS 10 **transfer, transmit, transpose,** translocate, transplace, metathesize, switch; **transplant,** translate; **pass,** pass over, **hand over,** turn over, carry over, make over, consign, assign; **deliver** 478.13; pass on, pass the buck <nf>, hand forward, hand on, relay; **import, export;** deport, extradite, expel; communicate, diffuse, disseminate, spread, impart; expedite; transfuse, perfuse, transfer property *or* right 629.3

11 **remove, move, relocate, shift,** send, shunt; displace, delocalize, dislodge; **take away,** cart off *or* away, carry off *or* away; manhandle; set *or* lay *or* put aside, put *or* set to one side, side

12 **transport, convey,** freight, conduct, **take; carry, bear,** pack, tote *and* lug <nf>, manhandle; lift, waft, whisk, wing, fly; schlep <nf>

13 **haul, cart,** truck, bus; **ship,** barge, lighter, ferry; raft, float

14 **channel,** put through channels; **pipe,** tube, pipeline, flume, **siphon, funnel,** tap

15 **send,** send off *or* away, send forth; **dispatch,** transmit, remit, consign, forward; expedite; **ship,** ship off, freight, airfreight, embark, containerize, **transship,** pass along, send on; **express,** air-express; express-mail; package-express; **post, mail,** airmail, drop a letter; messenger; export; e-mail

16 **fetch, bring, go get,** go and get, go to get, **go after,** go fetch, **go for,** call for, pick up; **get,** obtain, procure, secure; **bring back, retrieve;** chase after, run after, shag, fetch and carry

17 **ladle, dip, scoop; bail,** bucket; **dish,** dish out *or* up; cup; **shovel,** spade, fork; spoon; **pour,** decant

ADJS **18** **transferable, conveyable; transmittable,** transmissible, transmissive, consignable, deliverable; **movable,** removable; **portable,** portative; transportable, transportative, transportive, carriageable; roadworthy, seaworthy, airworthy; importable, exportable; conductive, conductional; transposable, interchangeable; **communicable,** contagious, impartable; transfusable; metastatic *or* metastatical, metathetic *or* metathetical; mailable, expressable; assignable 629.5

ADVS **19** by transfer, from hand to hand, from door to door; by freight, by express, by rail, by trolley, by bus, by steamer, by airplane, by mail, by special delivery, by package express, by messenger, by hand; by e-mail

20 **on the way,** along the way, on the road *or* high road, **en route, in transit,** *in transitu* <L>, on the wing, as one goes; in passing, *en passant* <Fr>; in mid-progress

177 TRAVEL

NOUNS **1** **travel,** traveling, going, journeying, touring, moving, **movement, motion, locomotion, transit, progress, passage,** course, crossing; commutation, straphanging; world travel, globe-trotting <nf>; junketing; **tourism,** touristry

2 **travels,** journeys, **journeyings, wanderings,** voyagings, transits, peregrinations, peripatetics, migrations, transmigrations; odyssey

3 **wandering, roving, roaming, rambling, gadding,** traipsing <nf>, wayfaring, flitting, straying, drifting, gallivanting, peregrination, peregrinity, pilgrimage, errantry, divagation; roam, rove, ramble; **itinerancy,** itineracy; **nomadism,** nomadization, gypsydom; vagabonding, vagabondism, vagabondage; **vagrancy,** hoboism, waltzing Matilda <Austral>; bumming <nf>; the open road; wanderyear, *Wanderjahr* <Ger>; **wanderlust;** "afoot and lighthearted"—Whitman

4 **migration, transmigration,** passage, trek; run <of fish>, flight <of birds and insects>; swarm, swarming <of bees>; **immigration,** in-migration; **emigration,** out-migration, expatriation; remigration; intermigration

5 **journey, trip,** *jornada* <Sp>, peregrination, sally, **trek;** progress, course, run; **tour,** grand tour; tourist season, low season, high season; tourist class; travel agency *or* bureau, holiday company <chiefly Brit>; **conducted tour,** package tour *or* holiday; **excursion, jaunt, junket, outing,** pleasure trip; sight-seeing trip *or* tour, rubberneck tour <nf>; day-trip; round trip, circuit, turn; **cruise,** package cruise, cruise to nowhere; **expedition,** campaign; safari, hunting expedition, hunting trip, stalk, shoot, photography safari; **pilgrimage,** hajj; **voyage** 182.6

6 **riding, driving; motoring,** automobiling; busing; motorcycling, bicycling, cycling, pedaling, biking <nf>; **horseback riding,** horse-riding, equitation; horsemanship, manège; pony-trekking

7 **ride, drive;** spin *and* whirl <nf>; joyride <nf>; Sunday drive; airing; lift <nf>, pickup <nf>

8 **walking,** ambulation, perambulation, pedestrianism, shank's mare *or* pony <nf>, going on foot *or* afoot, footing *or* hoofing, footing **it** *or* hoofing it; strolling, sauntering, ambling, *flânerie* <Fr>; **tramping, marching, hiking,** backpacking, trail-hiking, footslogging, trudging, treading; lumbering, waddling; toddling, staggering, tottering; **hitchhiking** *and* hitching <nf>, thumbing *and* thumbing a ride <nf>; jaywalking

9 **nightwalking,** noctambulation, noctambulism; night-wandering, noctivagation; **sleepwalking,** somnambulation, somnambulism; sleepwalk

10 **walk,** ramble, amble, **hike, tramp,** traipse <nf>; slog, trudge, schlep <nf>; **stroll,** saunter; **promenade;** *passeggiata* <Ital>; jaunt, airing; **constitutional** <nf>, stretch; turn; peripatetic journey *or* exercise, peripateticism; walking tour *or* excursion; **march,** forced march, route march; parade

11 **step, pace, stride; footstep,** footfall, tread; hoofbeat, clop; hop, jump; skip, hippety-hop <nf>

12 **gait, pace, walk, step, stride, tread;** saunter, stroll, strolling gait; shuffle, shamble, hobble, limp, hitch, waddle; totter, stagger, lurch; toddle, paddle; slouch, droop, drag; mince, mincing steps, scuttle, prance, flounce, stalk, strut, swagger; slink, slither, sidle; jog; swing, roll; amble, single-foot, rack, piaffer; trot, gallop 174.3; lock step; velocity 174.1,2; slowness 175

13 **march;** quick *or* quickstep march, quickstep, quick time; lockstep; double march, double-quick, double time; slow march, slow time; half step; goose step

14 **leg, limb, shank;** hind leg, foreleg; gamb, jamb <heraldry>; shin, cnemis; ankle, tarsus; hock, gambrel; calf; knee; thigh; popliteal space, ham, drumstick; gigot

15 <nf terms> gams, stems, trotters, hind legs, underpinnings, wheels, shanks, sticks, pins, stumps

16 **gliding, sliding,** slipping, slithering, coasting, sweeping, flowing, sailing; **skating, skiing, tobogganing, sledding;** glide, slide, slither, sweep, skim, flow

17 **creeping, crawling,** going on all fours; sneaking, stealing, slinking, sidling, gumshoeing *and* pussyfooting <nf>, walking on eggs, padding, prowling, nightwalking; worming, snaking; tiptoeing, tiptoe, tippytoe; creep, crawl, scramble, scrabble; all fours

VERBS 18 **travel, go, move, pass,** fare, wayfare, fare forth, fetch, flit, hie, sashay <nf>, cover ground; **progress** 162.2; move on *or* along, go along; wend, **wend one's way;** betake oneself, direct one's course, bend one's steps *or* course; course, run, flow, stream; roll, roll on; commute, straphang

19 <go at a given speed> **go, go at,** reach, **make, do,** hit <nf>, clip off <nf>

20 **traverse, cross, travel over** *or* through, pass through, **go** *or* **pass over, cover,** measure, transit, track, range, range over *or* through, course, do, perambulate, peregrinate, overpass, go over the ground; patrol, reconnoiter, scout; sweep, go *or* make one's rounds, scour, scour the country; ply, voyage 182.13

21 **journey, travel,** make *or* take *or* go *or* go on a journey, **take** *or* **make a trip,** fare, **wayfare, gad around** *or* **about,** get around *or* about, navigate, trek, jaunt, peregrinate; junket, go on a junket; **tour;** hit the trail <nf>, take the road, go on the road; **cruise, go on a cruise,** voyage 182.13; go abroad, go to foreign places *or* shores, range the world, globe-trot <nf>; travel light, live out of a suitcase; pilgrimage, pilgrim, go on *or* make a pilgrimage; campaign, go overseas, go on an expedition, go on safari; go on a sight-seeing trip, sight-see, rubberneck <nf>

22 **migrate, transmigrate,** trek; flit, take wing; run <of fish>, swarm <of bees>; **emigrate,** out-migrate, expatriate; **immigrate,** in-migrate; remigrate; intermigrate

23 **wander, roam, rove,** range, nomadize, **gad,** gad around *or* about, follow the seasons, wayfare, flit, traipse <nf>, gallivant, knock around *or* about *and* bat around *or* about <nf>, prowl, **drift, stray,** float around, straggle, **meander, ramble,** stroll, saunter, jaunt, peregrinate, pererrate, divagate, go *or* run about, go the rounds; **tramp,** hobo, bum *or* go on the bum <nf>, vagabond, vagabondize, take to the road, "travel the open road"—Whitman, beat one's way; **hit the road** *or* **trail** <nf>, walk the tracks *and* count ties <nf>, pound the pavement

24 **go for an outing** *or* **airing,** take the air, get some air; go for a walk; go for a ride

25 **go to, repair to,** resort to, hie to, hie oneself to, arise and go to, direct one's course to, turn one's tracks to, make one's way to, set foot in, bend one's steps to, betake oneself to, **visit,** drop in *or* around *or* by, make the scene <nf>

26 **creep, crawl,** scramble, scrabble, grovel, **go on hands and knees,** go on all fours; worm, worm along, worm one's way, snake; inch, inch along; **sneak, steal,** steal along; pussyfoot *and* gumshoe <nf>, slink, sidle, pad, prowl, nightwalk; **tiptoe,** tippytoe, go on tiptoe

27 **walk,** ambulate, peripateticate, pedestrianize, traipse <nf>; **step, tread, pace, stride,** pad; foot, foot it; leg, leg it; hoof it, ankle, go on the heel and toe, ride shank's mare *or* pony <nf>, ride the shoeleather *or* hobnail express, stump it <nf>; peg *or* jog *or* shuffle on *or* along; perambulate; circumambulate; jaywalk; power walk, exercise walk, speed walk, race walk

28 <ways of walking> **stroll,** saunter, *flâner* <Fr>; shuffle, scuff, scuffle, straggle, shamble, slouch; stride, straddle; **trudge, plod,** peg, traipse <nf>, clump, stump, slog, footslog, drag, **lumber, barge;** stamp, stomp <nf>; swing, roll, lunge; hobble, halt, limp, hitch, lurch; totter, stagger; toddle, paddle; waddle, wobble, wamble, wiggle; link, slither, sidle; stalk; **strut, swagger;** mince, sashay <nf>, scuttle, prance, tittup, flounce, trip, skip, foot; hop, jump, hippety-hop <nf>; jog, jolt; bundle, bowl along; **amble,** pace; singlefoot, rack; piaffe, piaffer

29 **go for a walk, perambulate, take a walk, take one's constitutional** <nf>, take a stretch, stretch the legs; **promenade,** *passeggiare* <Ital>, parade

30 **march,** mush, footslog, **tramp, hike,** backpack, trail-hike; route-march; file, defile, file off; **parade,** go on parade; goose-step, do the goose step; do the lock step

31 **hitchhike** *or* **hitch** <nf>, beat one's way, **thumb** *or* **thumb one's way** <nf>, **catch a ride;** hitch *or* hook *or* bum *or* cadge *or* thumb a ride <nf>

32 **nightwalk,** noctambulate; **sleepwalk,** somnambulate, walk in one's sleep

33 **ride, go for a ride** *or* **drive;** go for a spin <nf>, take *or* go for a Sunday drive; **drive, chauffeur; motor,** taxi; bus; bike *and* cycle *and* wheel *and* pedal <nf>; **motorcycle, bicycle,** mountain bike; BMX, bicycle moto-cross; go by rail, entrain; joyride *or* take a joyride <nf>; catch *or* make a train <nf>

34 **go on horseback, ride, horse-ride,** pony-trek; ride bareback; mount, take horse; hack; ride hard, clap spurs to one's horse; trot, amble, pace, canter, gallop, tittup, lope; prance, frisk, curvet, piaffe, caracole

35 **glide, coast, skim,** sweep, flow; **sail, fly,** flit; **slide,** slip, skid, skitter, sideslip, slither, glissade; skate, ice-skate, roller-skate, rollerblade, skateboard; ski; toboggan, sled, sleigh; bellywhop <nf>

ADJS 36 **traveling, going, moving,** trekking, passing;

progressing; itinerant, itinerary, circuit-riding; **journeying, wayfaring,** strolling; **peripatetic;** ambulant, ambulatory; ambulative; perambulating, perambulatory; peregrine, peregrinative, pilgrimlike; locomotive; **walking, pedestrian, touring,** on tour, globe-trotting <nf>, globe-girdling, mundivagant <old>; touristic, touristical, touristy <nf>; expeditionary

37 **wandering, roving, roaming,** ranging, **rambling, meandering,** strolling, **straying,** straggling, shifting, flitting, landloping, errant, divagatory, discursive, circumforaneous; **gadding,** traipsing <nf>, gallivanting; **nomad,** nomadic, floating, drifting, gypsyish *or* gypsylike; **transient,** transitory, fugitive; **vagrant,** vagabond, vagabondish; **footloose,** footloose and fancy-free; **migratory,** migrational, transmigrant, transmigratory

38 **nightwalking,** noctambulant, noctambulous; night-wandering, noctivagant; **sleepwalking,** somnambulant, somnambular

39 **creeping, crawling, on hands and knees, on all fours;** reptant, repent, reptile, reptatorial; **on tiptoe,** on tippytoe, atiptoe, tiptoeing, tiptoe, tippytoe

40 **traveled,** well-traveled, cosmopolitan

41 **wayworn,** way-weary, road-weary, leg-weary, **travel-worn,** travel-weary, travel-tired; travel-sated, travel-jaded; travel-soiled, travel-stained, dusty

ADVS **42** **on the move** *or* **go,** en route, in transit, on the wing *or* fly; on the run, on the jump <nf>, on the road, on the tramp *or* march; on the gad <nf>, on the bum <nf>

43 **on foot, afoot,** by foot, footback *or* on footback <nf>; on the heel and toe, on *or* by shank's mare *or* pony <nf>

44 **on horseback,** horseback, by horse, mounted

178 TRAVELER

NOUNS **1** **traveler, goer,** viator, comer and goer; **wayfarer, journeyer,** trekker; **tourist,** tourer; **tripper** <Brit>, day-tripper; cicerone, travel *or* tourist guide; **visitor,** visiting fireman <nf>; **excursionist, sightseer,** rubberneck *or* rubbernecker <nf>; **voyager,** cruise-goer, cruiser, sailor, mariner 183; **globe-trotter** <nf>, globe-girdler, world-traveler, cosmopolite; jet set, jet-setter; **pilgrim,** palmer, hajji; **passenger,** fare; **commuter,** straphanger <nf>; transient; passerby; adventurer, alpinist, climber, mountaineer, ecotourist; explorer, forty-niner, pioneer, pathfinder, voortrekker, trailblazer, trailbreaker; camper; astronaut 1075.8

2 **wanderer, rover, roamer,** rambler, stroller, straggler, mover; **gad, gadabout** <nf>, runabout, go-about <nf>; **itinerant,** peripatetic, rolling stone, peregrine, peregrinator, bird of passage, visitant; **drifter** *and* **floater** <nf>; Wandering Jew, Ahasuerus, Ancient Mariner <Coleridge>, Argonaut, Flying Dutchman, Oisin, Ossian, Gulliver <Swift>, Ulysses, Odysseus <Homer>; wandering scholar, Goliard, *vaganti* <L>; strolling player, wandering minstrel, troubadour

3 **vagabond, vagrant,** vag <nf>; **bum** *or* bummer <nf>, loafer, wastrel, losel <old>, *lazzarone* <Ital>; **tramp,** turnpiker, piker, knight of the road, easy rider, **hobo** *or* bo <nf>, rounder <nf>, stiff *or* bindlestiff <nf>; landloper, sundowner *or* swagman *or* swagsman <Austral nf>; beggar 440.8; **waif,** homeless waif, bag person, dogie, stray, waifs and strays; ragamuffin, tatterdemalion; **gamin,** gamine, urchin, street urchin, dead-end kid <nf>, mudlark, guttersnipe <nf>; beachcomber, loafer, idler; ski bum, beach bum, surf bum, tennis bum; ragman, ragpicker

4 **nomad,** Bedouin, Arab; gypsy, Bohemian, Romany, *zingaro* <Ital>, *Zigeuner* <Ger>, *tzigane* <Fr>

5 **migrant,** migrator, trekker; **immigrant,** in-migrant; migrant *or* migratory worker; **emigrant,** out-migrant, *émigré* <Fr>; expatriate; **evacuee,** *évacué* <Fr>; displaced person *or* DP, stateless person, exile; wetback <nf>

6 **pedestrian, walker,** walkist; foot traveler, foot passenger, hoofer <nf>, footbacker <nf>, ambulator, peripatetic; **hiker,** backpacker, trailsman, tramper; marcher, footslogger, foot soldier, infantryman, paddlefoot <nf>; **hitchhiker** <nf>; jaywalker; power walker, exercise walker, speed walker, race walker

7 **nightwalker,** noctambulist, noctambule, **sleepwalker,** somnambulist, somnambulator, somnambule

8 **rider, equestrian, horseman,** horserider, horseback rider, horsebacker, *caballero* <Sp>, cavalier, knight, chevalier; horse soldier, cavalryman, mounted policeman; horsewoman, equestrienne; cowboy, cowgirl, puncher *or* cowpuncher *or* cowpoke <nf>, *vaquero* and *gaucho* <Sp>; broncobuster <nf>, buckaroo; postilion, postboy; roughrider; **jockey;** steeplechaser; circus rider, trick rider

9 **driver,** reinsman, whip, Jehu, skinner <nf>; **coachman,** coachy <nf>, *cocher* <Fr>, *cochero* <Sp>, *voiturier* <Fr>, *vetturino* <Ital>, gharry-wallah <India>; stage coachman; charioteer; harness racer; **cabdriver,** cabman, cabby <nf>, hackman, hack *or* hacky <nf>, jarvey <Brit nf>; wagoner, wagonman, drayman, truckman; **carter,** cartman, carman; **teamster;** muleteer, mule skinner <nf>; bullwhacker; elephant driver, mahout; cameleer

10 **driver, motorist,** automobilist; **chauffeur; taxidriver,** cabdriver, cabby <nf>, hackman, **hack** *or* hacky <nf>, hackdriver; jitney driver; **truck driver, teamster,** truckman, **trucker; bus driver,** busman, bus jockey <nf>; speeder 174.5, road hog <nf>, Sunday driver, joyrider <nf>; hit-and-run driver; backseat driver

11 cyclist, cycler; **bicyclist,** bicycler, mountain biker, biker; **motorcyclist,** motorcycler, biker <nf>

12 **engineer,** engineman, engine driver <Brit>; hogger *or* hoghead <nf>; Casey Jones; **motorman;** gripman

13 **trainman,** railroad man, **railroader;** conductor, guard <Brit>; brakeman, brakie <nf>; fireman, footplate man <Brit>, stoker; smoke agent *and* bakehead <nf>; switchman; yardman; yardmaster; trainmaster, dispatcher; stationmaster; lineman; baggage man, baggagesmasher <nf>; porter, redcap; trainboy, butcher <nf>

179 VEHICLE

<means of conveyance>

NOUNS 1 **vehicle, conveyance,** carrier, means of carrying *or* transporting, means of transport, medium of transportation, carriage; watercraft 180.1, aircraft 181

2 **wagon,** waggon <Brit>, wain; haywagon, milkwagon; dray, van, caravan; covered wagon, prairie schooner, Conestoga wagon, stagecoach

3 **cart,** two-wheeler; oxcart, horsecart, ponycart, dogcart; dumpcart; **handcart,** barrow, wheelbarrow, handbarrow; jinrikisha, ricksha; pushcart

4 **carriage,** four-wheeler, *voiture* <Fr>, gharry <India>; **chaise,** shay <nf>

5 **rig, equipage,** turnout <nf>, coach-and-four; team, pair, span; tandem, randem; spike, spike team, unicorn; three-in-hand, four-in-hand, etc; three-up, four-up, etc

6 **baby carriage,** baby buggy <nf>, perambulator, pram <Brit>; go-cart; **stroller,** walker

7 **wheel chair,** Bath chair, push chair

8 **cycle,** wheel <nf>; **bicycle,** bike <nf>, mountain bike, all-terrain bike, touring bike, racing bike, hybrid bike, velocipede; tandem bicycle; **tricycle,** three-wheeler, trike <nf>; BMX; **motorcycle,** motocycle, motorbike, bike *and* iron <nf>; pig <nf>, chopper <nf>, motorscooter, minibike, moped, dirt *or* trail bike; pedicab

9 **automobile** <see list>, **car, auto,** motorcar, motocar, autocar, **machine,** motor, motor vehicle, motorized vehicle, *voiture* <Fr>

10 <nf terms> **jalopy,** banger, bus, buggy, wheels, tub, tuna wagon, heap, boat, short, crate, wreck, bomb, clunker, junker, junkheap, junkpile

11 **police car, patrol car; prowl car,** squad car, cruiser; **police van,** patrol wagon; wagon *and* paddy wagon *and* Black Maria <nf>, panda car <Brit>

12 **truck** <see list>, lorry <Brit>, *camion* <Fr>; trailer truck, truck trailer, tractor trailer, semitrailer, rig *and* semi <nf>; eighteen-wheeler <nf>

13 <public vehicles> **commercial vehicle; bus,** omnibus, chartered bus, autobus, motorbus, motor coach, articulated bus, jitney <nf>; express bus, local bus; schoolbus; **cab, taxicab, taxi,** hack <nf>, gypsy cab <nf>; rental car; hired car, limousine, limo *and* stretch limo <nf>

14 **train,** railroad train; choo-choo *and* choo-choo train <nf>; passenger train, Amtrak; aerotrain, bullet train, *train de haute vitesse* <Fr>; local, way train, milk train, accommodation train; shuttle train, shuttle; express train, express; lightning express, flier, cannonball express <nf>; local express; special, limited; parliamentary train *or* parliamentary <Brit>; freight train, goods train <Brit>, freight, freighter, rattler <nf>; baggage train, luggage train; electric train; cable railroad; funicular; cog railroad *or* railway, rack-and-pinion railroad; subway, *métro* <Fr>, tube, underground <Brit>; elevated, el <nf>; monorail; streamliner; rolling stock

15 **railway car,** car, waggon <Brit>; baggage car, boxcar, caboose, coach, gondola; diner, dining car *or* compartment; drawing room; freight car; hopper car; flatcar; parlor car; Pullman *or* Pullman car; refrigerator car *or* reefer <nf>; roomette, sleeper *or* sleeping car or *wagon-lit* <Fr>; smoker *or* smoking car *or* compartment

16 **handcar,** go-devil; push car, trolley, truck car, rubble car

17 **streetcar, trolley** *or* trolley car, **tram** *or* tramcar; electric car, electric <nf>; trolley bus, trackless trolley; horsecar, horse box <Brit>; cable car, grip car

18 **tractor,** traction engine; Caterpillar <trademark>, Cat <nf>, tracked vehicle; bulldozer, dozer <nf>

19 **trailer,** trail car; house trailer, mobile home; recreation vehicle *or* RV; truck trailer, **semitrailer,** highway trailer; camp *or* camping trailer, caravan <Brit>; **camper,** camping bus

20 **sled, sleigh,** *traîneau* <Fr>, sledge, dogsled, troika; snowmobile, weasel, skimobile, bombardier <Can>; runner, blade; toboggan

21 **skates,** ice skates, hockey skates, figure skates; roller skates, skateboard, bob skates; **skis, snowshoes**

22 **Hovercraft** <trademark>, hovercar, air-cushion vehicle *or* ACV, cushioncraft, ground-effect machine *or* GEM, captured-air vehicle *or* CAV, captured-air bubble *or* CAB, surface-effect ship

ADJS 23 **vehicular,** transportational; automotive, locomotive

24 **automobiles**

brougham
cabriolet
compact car
convertible
coupe
estate car <Brit>
four-door
hardtop
hatchback
jeep
limousine *or* limo
luxury
mid-size
mini-bus
minicar
race car *or* racer *or* racing car
roadster
runabout
saloon <Brit>
sedan
sedan limousine
sports car
station wagon
stock car
stretch limousine *or* limo
tourer <Brit>
touring car
two-door
two-seater <Brit>

25 **trucks**

articulated vehicle
duck *or* DUKW
dump truck
fork *or* forklift truck
four-by-four *or* 4x4
lorry <Brit>
minivan
panel truck
pick-up truck *or* pickup
recreational vehicle *or* RV
semitrailer *or* semi
six-by-six
tank truck
tractor *or* tractor-trailer *or* tractor truck *or* truck tractor
van

180 SHIP, BOAT

NOUNS 1 **ship,** argosy, cargo ship, container ship, cruise ship, dredge, freighter, liner, merchant ship *or* merchantman, motorship, oceanographic research ship, paddle boat *or* steamer, refrigeration ship, roll-on roll-off ship *or* ro-ro, side-wheeler, supertanker, tanker, trawler, ULCC *or* ultra-large crude carrier, VLCC *or* very large crude carrier, whaler; **boat,** ark, canoe, gondola, kayak, lifeboat, motorboat, shell, skiff, whaleboat, workboat; vessel, craft, bottom, bark, argosy, hull, hulk, keel, watercraft; tub *and* bucket *and* rustbucket *and* hooker <nf>, packet; leviathan; "that packet of assorted miseries which we call a ship"—Kipling

2 **steamer, steamboat, steamship;** motor ship

3 **sailboat, sailing vessel,** sailing boat, wind boat, ragboat <nf>, sailing yacht, sailing cruiser, sailing ship, tall *or* taunt ship, sail, sailer, **windjammer** <nf>, windship, windboat; **galley; yacht,** pleasure boat, a hole in the water into which one pours money <nf>

4 **motorboat, powerboat,** speedboat, stinkpot <nf>; **launch,** motor launch, steam launch, naphtha launch; **cruiser,** power cruiser, **cabin cruiser,** sedan cruiser, outboard cruiser

5 **liner, ocean liner,** ocean greyhound <nf>, passenger steamer, floating hotel *or* palace, luxury liner; **cruise ship**

6 **warship,** war vessel, naval vessel; warship; **man-of-war,** man-o'-war, ship of war, armored vessel; USS *or* United States Ship; HMS *or* His *or* Her Majesty's Ship; line-of-battle ship, ship of the line; aircraft carrier *or* flattop <nf>, assault transport, battle cruiser, battleship, coast guard cutter, communications ship, cruiser, destroyer, destroyer escort, guided missile cruiser, heavy cruiser, patrol boat *or* PT boat, gunboat, hospital ship, minelayer, mine ship, minesweeper; icebreaker

7 **battleship,** battlewagon <nf>, capital ship; **cruiser,** battle-cruiser; **destroyer,** can *or* tin can <nf>

8 **carrier, aircraft carrier,** seaplane carrier, **flattop** <nf>

9 **submarine, sub,** submersible, underwater craft; **U-boat,** *U-boot* or *Unterseeboot* <Ger>, pigboat <nf>; nuclear *or* nuclear-powered submarine; Polaris submarine; Trident submarine; hunter-killer submarine

10 **ships, shipping,** merchant *or* mercantile marine, merchant navy *or* fleet, bottoms, tonnage; **fleet,** flotilla, argosy; line; fishing fleet, whaling fleet, etc; **navy** 461.26

11 **float, raft;** balsa, balsa raft, Kon Tiki; life raft, Carling float; boom; pontoon; buoy, life buoy; life preserver 397.5; surfboard; cork; bob

12 **rigging,** rig, **tackle,** tackling, **gear; ropework,** roping; service, serving, whipping; standing rigging, running rigging; boatswain's stores; ship chandlery

13 **spar,** timber; **mast,** pole, stick *and* tree <nf>; bare pole

14 **sail, canvas,** muslin, cloth, rag <nf>; **full** *or* **plain sail,** press *or* crowd of sail; reduced sail, reefed sail; square sail; fore-and-aft sail; luff, leech, foot, earing, reef point, boltrope, clew, cringle, head

15 **oar; paddle,** scull, sweep, pole; steering oar

16 **anchor,** mooring, hook *and* mudhook <nf>; **anchorage,** moorings; **berth,** slip; mooring buoy

ADJS 17 **rigged,** decked, trimmed; square-rigged, fore-and-aft rigged, Marconi-rigged, gaff-rigged, lateen-rigged

18 **seaworthy,** sea-kindly, fit for sea, **snug, bold; watertight,** waterproof; **A1,** A1 at Lloyd's; stiff, tender; weatherly; yare

19 **trim,** in trim; apoise, on an even keel

20 **shipshape,** Bristol fashion, shipshape and Bristol fashion, trim, trig, neat, tight, taut, ataunt, all ataunto, bungup and bilge-free

181 AIRCRAFT

NOUNS 1 **aircraft, airplane,** aeroplane <Brit>, **plane, ship,** fixed-wing aircraft, flying machine <old>, *avion* <Fr>; aerodyne, heavier-than-air craft; kite <Brit nf>; **shuttle, space shuttle,** lifting body; **airplane part; flight instrument,** aircraft instrument; **aircraft engine; piston engine,** radial engine, rotary engine, pancake engine; **jet engine,** fan-jet engine, rocket motor, turbofan, turbojet, turboprop, pulse jet, ramjet, reaction engine *or* motor

2 **propeller plane,** single-prop, double-prop *or* twin-prop, multi-prop; piston plane; turbo-propeller plane, turbo-prop, prop-jet

3 **jet plane, jet; turbojet,** ramjet, pulse-jet, blowtorch <nf>; single-jet, twin-jet, multi-jet; jet liner, business jet; deltaplanform jet, tailless jet, twin-tailboom jet; jumbo jet; subsonic jet; supersonic jet, supersonic transport *or* SST, Concorde

4 **rocket plane,** repulsor; rocket ship, spaceship 1075.2; rocket 1074.2

5 **rotor plane,** rotary-wing aircraft, rotocraft, rotodyne; gyroplane, gyro, **autogiro,** windmill <nf>; **helicopter,** copter *and* whirlybird *and* chopper *and* eggbeater <nf>

6 **ornithopter,** orthopter, wind flapper, mechanical bird

7 **flying platform,** flying ring, Hiller-CNR machine, flying bedstead *or* bedspring; **Hovercraft** <trademark>, air car, ground-effect machine, air-cushion vehicle, hovercar, cushioncraft; flying crow's nest, flying motorcycle, flying bathtub

8 **seaplane,** waterplane, **hydroplane,** aerohydroplane, aeroboat, **floatplane,** float seaplane; **flying boat,** clipper, boat seaplane; **amphibian,** triphibian

9 **military aircraft, warplane,** battle plane, combat plane; carrier fighter, carrier-based plane, bomber, dive bomber, fighter, helicopter gunship, jet bomber, strategic bomber, jet fighter, jet tanker, night fighter, photo-reconnaissance plane, reconnaissance fighter, spy plane, airborne warning and control systems *or* AWACS plane, Stealth Bomber, Stealth Fighter, tactical support bomber, torpedo bomber, troop carrier *or* transport; amphibian, flying boat; helicopter; suicide plane, kamikaze; bogey, bandit, enemy aircraft; air fleet, air armada; air force 461.29

10 **trainer;** Link trainer; **flight simulator;** dual-control trainer; basic *or* primary trainer, intermediate trainer, advanced trainer; crew trainer, flying classroom; navigator-bombardier trainer, radio-navigational trainer, etc

11 **aerostat,** lighter-than-air craft; **airship,** ship, dirigible balloon, **blimp** <nf>; rigid airship, semirigid airship; **dirigible,** zeppelin, Graf Zeppelin; gasbag, ballonet; **balloon,** *ballon* <Fr>

12 **glider,** gliding machine; **sailplane,** soaring plane; rocket glider; student glider; air train, glider train

13 **parachute, chute** <nf>, umbrella <nf>, brolly <Brit nf>; pilot chute, drogue chute; rip cord, safety loop, shroud lines, harness, pack, vent; parachute jump, brolly-hop <Brit nf>; sky dive; brake *or* braking *or* deceleration parachute; parawing *or* paraglider *or* parafoil

14 **kite,** box kite, Eddy kite, Hargrave *or* cellular kite, tetrahedral kite

182 WATER TRAVEL

NOUNS 1 water travel, travel by water, marine *or* ocean *or* sea travel, **navigation,** navigating, **seafaring, sailing,** steaming, passage-making, voyaging, **cruising,** coasting, gunkholing <nf>; inland navigation; **boating, yachting,** motorboating, canoeing, rowing, sculling; circumnavigation, periplus; navigability

2 <methods> celestial navigation, astronavigation; radio navigation, radio beacon; loran; consolan, shoran; coastal *or* coastwise navigation; dead reckoning; point-to-point navigation; pilotage; sonar, radar, sofar; plane *or* traverse *or* spherical *or* parallel *or* middle *or* latitude *or* Mercator *or* great-circle *or* rhumbline *or* composite sailing; fix, line of position; sextant, chronometer, tables

3 **seamanship,** shipmanship; seamanliness, seamanlikeness; weather eye; sea legs

4 **pilotship,** pilotry, pilotage, **helmsmanship;** steerage; proper piloting

5 embarkation 188.3; disembarkation 186.2

6 **voyage,** ocean *or* sea trip, **cruise,** sail; course, **run, passage; crossing;** shakedown cruise; leg

7 **wake,** track; wash, backwash

8 <submarines> **surfacing,** breaking water; **submergence, dive;** stationary dive, running dive, crash dive

9 **way, progress; headway,** steerageway, sternway, leeway, driftway

10 **seaway, waterway,** fairway, road, channel, ocean *or* sea lane, ship route, steamer track *or* lane; crossing; approaches; navigable water

11 aquatics, **swimming, bathing,** natation, balneation, **swim, bathe;** crawl, freestyle, trudgen, Australian crawl, breaststroke, butterfly, sidestroke, dog *or* doggie paddle, backstroke; treading water; floating; diving 367.3; wading; fin; flipper, flapper; fishtail; waterskiing, aquaplaning, surfboarding; surfing; windsurfing, boardsailing

12 **swimmer, bather,** natator, merman; bathing girl, mermaid; bathing beauty; frogman; diver 367.4

VERBS 13 **navigate, sail, cruise,** steam, run, **seafare, voyage,** ply, go on shipboard, go by ship, go on *or* take a voyage; go to sea, sail the sea, sail the ocean blue; **boat, yacht,** motorboat, canoe, row, scull; surf, windsurf, boardsail; steamboat; bear *or* carry sail; cross, traverse, make a passage *or* run; sail round, circumnavigate; coast

14 **pilot,** helm, coxswain, **steer,** guide, be at the helm *or* tiller, direct, manage, handle, run, operate, **conn** *or* cond, be at *or* have the conn; **navigate,** shape *or* chart a course

15 **anchor,** come to anchor, lay anchor, **cast anchor,** let go the anchor, drop the hook; carry out the anchor; kedge, kedge off; **dock, tie up; moor,** pick up the mooring; run out a warp *or* rope; lash, lash and tie; foul the anchor; disembark 186.8

16 **ride at anchor,** ride, lie, rest; ride easy; ride hawse full; lie athwart; set an anchor watch

17 **lay** *or* **lie to,** lay *or* lie by; lie near *or* close to the wind, head to wind *or* windward, be under the sea; lie ahull; lie off, lie off the land; lay *or* lie up

18 **weigh anchor,** up-anchor, bring the anchor home, break out the anchor, cat the anchor, break ground, loose for sea; **unmoor,** drop the mooring, cast off *or* loose *or* away

19 **get under way,** put *or* have way upon, **put** *or* **push** *or* **shove off;** hoist the blue Peter; **put to sea,** put out to sea, go to sea, head for blue water, go off soundings; **sail,** sail away; embark

20 **set sail,** hoist sail, unfurl *or* spread sail, heave out a sail, **make sail,** trim sail; square away, square the yards; **crowd** *or* **clap** *or* **crack** *or* **pack on sail,** put on <more> sail; clap on, crack on, pack on; give her beans <nf>

21 **make way,** gather way, **make headway,** make sternway; make knots, foot; **go full speed ahead,** go full speed astern; go *or* run *or* steam at flank speed

22 run, **run** *or* **sail before the wind,** run *or* sail with the wind, run *or* sail down the wind, make a spinnaker run, sail off the wind, sail free, sail with the wind aft, sail with the wind abaft the beam; tack down wind; run *or* sail with the wind quartering

23 **bring off the wind, pay off,** bear off *or* away, put the helm to leeward, bear *or* head to leeward, pay off the head

24 **sail against the wind,** sail on *or* by the wind, sail to windward, bear *or* head to windward; **bring in** *or* **into the wind,** bring by *or* on the wind, haul the wind *or* one's wind; uphelm, put the helm up; haul, haul off, haul up; **haul to, bring to, heave to;** sail in *or* into the wind's eye *or* the teeth of the wind; sail to the windward of, weather

25 **sail near the wind,** sail close to the wind, lie near *or* close to the wind, sail full and by, hold a close wind, **sail close-hauled,** close-haul; work *or* go *or* beat *or* eat to windward, **beat, ply; luff,** luff up, sail closer to the wind; sail too close to the wind, sail fine, touch the wind, pinch

26 **gain to windward of,** eat *or* claw to windward of, eat the wind out of, have the wind of, be to windward of

27 **chart** *or* **plot** *or* **lay out a course;** shape a course, lay *or* lie a course

28 take *or* follow a course, **keep** *or* **hold the course** *or* **a course,** hold on the course *or* a course, stand on *or* upon a course, stand on a straight course, maintain *or* keep the heading, keep her steady, keep pointed

29 **drift off course, yaw,** yaw off, pay off, bear off, drift, sag; sag *or* bear *or* ride *or* drive to leeward, make leeway, drive, fetch away; be set by the current, drift with the current, fall down

30 **change course,** change the heading, bear off *or* away, bear to starboard *or* port; sheer, swerve; **tack,** cast, break, yaw, slew, shift, turn; **cant,** cant round *or* across; **beat, ply; veer, wear, wear ship; jibe** *or* gybe <Brit>, jibe all standing, make a North River jibe; **put about,** come *or* go *or* bring *or* fetch about, beat about, cast *or* throw about; bring *or* swing *or* heave *or* haul round; **about ship,** turn *or* put back, turn on her heel, wind; swing the stern; box off; back and fill; stand off and on; double *or* round a point; miss stays

31 put the rudder hard left *or* right, put the rudder *or* helm hard over, put the rudder amidships, ease the rudder *or* helm, give her more *or* less rudder

32 **veer** *or* **wear short,** bring by the lee, **broach to,** lie beam on to the seas

33 <come to a stop> **fetch up, heave to,** haul up, fetch up all standing

34 **backwater,** back, reverse, go astern; **go full speed astern;** make sternway

35 **sail for, put away for, make for** *or* toward, make at, **run for,** stand for, head *or* steer toward, lay for, **lay a** *or* **one's course for,** bear up for; bear up to, **bear down on** *or* **upon,** run *or* bear in with, **close with;** make, reach, fetch; heave *or* go alongside; lay *or* go aboard; lay *or* lie in; **put in** *or* into, put into port, approach anchorage

36 **sail away from,** head *or* steer away from, run from, **stand from,** lay away *or* off from; **stand off,** bear off, put off, shove off, haul off; stand off and on

37 **clear the land,** bear off the land, lay *or* settle the land, make *or* get sea room

38 **make land,** reach land; close with the land, stand in for the land; sight land; smell land; make a landfall

39 **coast,** sail coast-wise, stay in soundings, range the coast, skirt the shore, lie along the shore, **hug the shore** *or* **land** *or* **coast**

40 **weather the storm,** weather, ride, **ride out,** outride, ride *or* ride out a storm; make heavy *or* bad weather

41 **sail into,** run down, run in *or* into, **ram; come** *or* **run foul** *or* **afoul of, collide,** fall aboard; nose *or* head into, run prow *or* end *or* head on, run head and head; run broadside on

42 **shipwreck,** wreck, pile up <nf>, cast away; **go** *or* **run aground,** ground, take the ground, beach, strand, run on the rocks; ground hard and fast

43 **careen, list, heel,** tip, cant, heave *or* lay down, lie along; be on beam ends

44 **capsize, upset,** overset, **overturn,** turn over, turn turtle, upset the boat, keel, keel over *or* up; pitchpole, somersault; **sink, founder,** be lost, go down, go to the bottom, go to Davy Jones's locker; scuttle

45 **go overboard,** go by the board, go over the board *or* side

46 **maneuver,** execute a maneuver; heave in together, keep in formation, maintain position, **keep station,** keep pointed, steam in line, steam in line of bearing; convoy

47 <submarines> **surface,** break water; **submerge, dive,** crash-dive, go below; rig for diving; flood the tanks, flood negative

48 <activities aboard ship> lay, lay aloft, lay forward, etc; traverse a yard, brace a yard fore and aft; heave, haul; kedge; warp; boom; heave round, heave short, heave apeak; log, heave *or* stream the log; haul down, board; spar down; ratline down, clap on ratlines; batten down the hatches; unlash, cut *or* cast loose; clear hawse

49 **trim ship,** trim, trim up; trim by the head *or* stern, put in proper fore-and-aft trim, give greater draft fore and aft, **put on an even keel; ballast,** shift ballast, wing out ballast; break out ballast, break bulk, shoot ballast; **clear the decks,** clear for action, take action stations

50 **reduce sail,** shorten *or* take in sail, hand a sail, **reef,** reef one's sails; double-reef; lower sail, dowse sail; run under bare poles; snug down; **furl,** put on a harbor furl

51 **take bearings,** cast a traverse; correct distance and maintain the bearings; run down the latitude, **take a sight,** shoot the sun, bring down the sun; **box the compass;** take soundings 275.9

52 **signal,** make a signal, speak, hail and speak; dress ship; unfurl *or* hoist a banner, unfurl an ensign, **break out a flag;** hoist the blue Peter; show one's colors, **exchange colors;** salute, dip the ensign

53 **row, paddle,** ply the oar, **pull, scull, punt;** give way, row away; catch *or* cut a crab *or* lobster <nf>; feather, feather an oar; sky an oar <nf>; row dry <Brit nf>; pace, shoot; ship oars

54 **float,** ride, drift; **sail, scud, run,** shoot; skim, foot; ghost, glide, slip; ride the sea, plow the deep, walk the waters

55 **pitch, toss, tumble,** toss and tumble, pitch and toss, **plunge,** hobbyhorse, pound, **rear, rock, roll, reel, swing, sway, lurch, yaw, heave,** scend, **flounder, welter, wallow;** make heavy weather

56 **swim, bathe,** go in swimming *or* bathing; tread water; **float,** float on one's back, do the deadman's float; **wade,** go in wading; skinny-dip; dive 367.6

ADJS 57 **nautical, marine, maritime, naval, navigational; seafaring, seagoing, oceangoing,** seaborne, water-borne; seamanly, seamanlike, **salty** <nf>; pelagic, oceanic 240.9

58 **aquatic, water-dwelling,** water-living, water-growing, water-loving; **swimming,** balneal, natant, natatory, natatorial; shore, seashore; tidal, estuarine, littoral, grallatorial; riverine; deep-sea 275.14

59 **navigable,** boatable

60 **floating, afloat,** awash; water-borne

61 **adrift, afloat,** unmoored, untied, loose, unanchored, aweigh; cast-off, started

ADVS 62 **on board,** on shipboard, on board ship, **aboard,** all aboard, afloat; **on deck,** topside; aloft; in sail; before the mast; athwart the hawse, athwarthawse

63 **under way,** making way, with steerageway, with way on; **at sea,** on the high seas, off soundings, in blue water; **under sail** *or* **canvas,** with sails spread; under press of sail *or* canvas *or* steam; under steam *or* power; under bare poles; on *or* off the heading *or* course; in soundings, homeward bound

64 **before the wind,** with the wind, down the wind, running free; off the wind, with the wind aft, with the wind abaft the beam, wing and wing, under the wind, under the lee; on a reach, on a beam *or* broad reach, with wind abeam

65 **against the wind,** on the wind, in *or* into the wind, up the wind, by the wind, head to wind; in *or* into the wind's eye, in the teeth of the wind

66 **near the wind,** close to the wind, **close-hauled,** on a beat, full and by

67 **coastward, landward,** to landward; **coastwise,** coastways

68 **leeward,** to leeward, alee, downwind; **windward,** to windward, weatherward, aweather, upwind

69 **aft,** abaft, baft, **astern;** fore and aft

70 **alongside,** board and board, yardarm to yardarm

71 **at anchor,** riding at anchor; lying to, hove to; lying ahull

72 **afoul,** foul, in collision; head and head, head *or* end *or* prow on; broadside on

73 **aground,** on the rocks; hard and fast

74 **overboard,** over the board *or* side, by the board; aft the fantail

183 MARINER

NOUNS 1 **mariner, seaman, sailor,** sailorman, **navigator, seafarer,** seafaring man, bluejacket, sea *or* water dog <nf>, Seabee, crewman, shipman, jack, jacky, jack afloat, jack-tar, **tar, salt** <nf>, gob, swabby, hearty, lobscouser <nf>, *matelot* <Fr>, windsailor, windjammer; limey *or* limejuicer <nf>, lascar <India>; common *or* ordinary seaman, OD; able *or* able-bodied seaman *or* AB; deep-sea man, saltwater *or* bluewater *or* deepwater sailor; fresh-water sailor; fair-weather sailor; whaler, fisherman, lobsterman; viking, sea rover, buccaneer, privateer, pirate; Jason, Argonaut, Ancient Mariner, Flying Dutchman; Neptune, Poseidon, Varuna, Dylan; **yachtsman, yachtswoman,** cruising sailor, racing sailor; submariner

2 <novice> **lubber, landlubber;** polliwog

3 <veteran> **old salt** *and* old sea dog *and* shellback *and* barnacle-back <nf>; **master mariner**

4 **navy man,** man-of-war's man, **bluejacket; gob** *and* swabbie *and* swabber <nf>; **marine, leatherneck** *and* gyrene *and* devil dog *or* jarhead <nf>, Royal Marine, jolly <Brit nf>; horse marine; boot <nf>; **midshipman,** midshipmate, middy <nf>; cadet, naval cadet; coastguardsman, Naval Reservist, Seabee, frogman

5 **boatman,** boatsman, boat-handler, **boater,** waterman; **oarsman,** oar, rower, sculler, punter; galley slave; **ferryman,** ferrier; **bargeman,** barger, bargee <Brit>, bargemaster; lighterman, wherryman; **gondolier,** *gondoliere* <Ital>

6 hand, **deckhand,** deckie <Brit>, roustabout <nf>; stoker, fireman, bakehead <nf>; black gang; wiper, oiler, boilerman; cabin boy; yeoman, ship's writer; purser; ship's carpenter, chips <nf>; ship's cooper, bungs *or* Jimmy Bungs <nf>; ship's tailor, snip *or* snips <nf>; steward, stewardess, commissary steward, mess steward, hospital steward; commissary clerk; mail orderly; navigator; radio operator, sparks <nf>; landing signalman; gunner, gun loader, torpedoman; afterguard; complement; watch

7 <ship's officers> **captain,** shipmaster, **master, skipper** <nf>, **commander,** the Old Man <nf>, *patron* <Fr>; navigator, navigating officer, sailing master; deck officer, officer of the deck *or* OD; watch officer, officer of the watch; **mate,** first *or* chief mate, second mate, third mate, boatswain's mate; **boatswain,** bos'n, pipes <nf>; quartermaster; sergeant-at-arms; chief engineer, engine-room officer; naval officer 575.20

8 **steersman, helmsman,** wheelman, wheelsman, boatsteerer; quartermaster; **coxswain,** cox <nf>; **pilot,** conner, sailing master; harbor pilot, docking pilot

9 **longshoreman,** wharf hand, dockhand, docker, dockworker, dock-walloper <nf>; **stevedore,** loader; **roustabout** <nf>, lumper

184 AVIATION

NOUNS 1 **aviation, aeronautics;** airplaning, skyriding, **flying, flight,** winging; volation, volitation; aeronautism, aerodromics; powered flight, jet flight, subsonic *or* supersonic flight; cruising, cross-country flying; bush flying; **gliding,** sailplaning, soaring, sailing; volplaning; ballooning, balloonery, lighter-than-air aviation; barnstorming <nf>; high-altitude flying; blind *or* instrument flight *or* flying, instrument flight rules *or* IFR; contact flying, visual flight *or* flying, visual flight rules *or* VFR, pilotage; skywriting; cloud-seeding; in-flight training, ground school; **air traffic,** airline traffic, air-traffic control, air-traffic controller; commercial aviation, general aviation, private aviation, private flying; astronautics 1073.1; air show, flying circus

2 air sciences <see list>, aeronautical sciences

3 **airmanship,** pilotship; **flight plan;** briefing, brief, rundown <nf>, debriefing; flight *or* pilot training, flying lessons; washout <nf>

4 air-mindedness, aerophilia; air legs

5 airsickness; aerophobia, aeropathy

6 **navigation,** avigation, aerial *or* air navigation; celestial navigation, astronavigation; electronic navigation, automatic electronic navigation, radio navigation, navar, radar, consolan, tacan, teleran, loran, shoran; omnidirectional range, omni-range, visual-aural range *or* VAR

7 <aeronautical organizations> Civil Aeronautics Administration *or* CAA; Federal Aviation Agency *or* FAA; Bureau of Aeronautics *or* BuAer; National Advisory Committee for Aeronautics *or* NACA; Office of Naval Research *or* ONR; Civil Air Patrol *or* CAP; Caterpillar Club; Airline Pilots Association; Air Force 461.29

8 **takeoff,** liftoff, hopoff <nf>; rollout, climb; taxiing, takeoff run, takeoff power, rotation; daisy-clipping *and* grass-cutting <nf>; ground loop; level-off; jet-assisted takeoff *or* JATO, booster rocket, takeoff rocket; catapult, electropult

9 **flight, trip, run; hop** *and* **jump** <nf>; powered flight; solo flight, **solo;** inverted flight; supersonic flight; test flight, **test hop** <nf>; **airlift;** airdrop;

scheduled flight; mercy flight; flying circus; crop-dusting; skywriting

10 **air travel,** air transport, air transportation; **airfreight, air cargo; airline travel, airline,** airline service, air service, feeder airline, commuter airline, scheduled airline, charter airline, nonscheduled airline *or* nonsked <nf>, short-hop airline; **shuttle,** air shuttle, shuttle service, shuttle trip; air taxi; red-eye

11 <Air Force> **mission,** flight operation; training mission; gunnery mission; combat rehearsal, **dry run** <nf>; transition mission; reconnaissance mission, reconnaissance, observation flight, search mission; **milk run** <nf>; box-top mission <nf>; combat flight; **sortie,** scramble <nf>; **air raid;** shuttle raid; bombing mission; bombing, strafing 459.7; **air support** <for ground troops>, **air cover,** cover, umbrella, air umbrella

12 flight formation, formation flying, formation; close formation, loose formation, wing formation; V formation, echelon

13 <maneuvers> acrobatic *or* tactical evolutions *or* maneuvers, acrobatics, **aerobatics;** stunting *and* **stunt flying** <nf>, rolling, crabbing, banking, porpoising, fishtailing, diving; **dive, nose dive, power dive; zoom,** chandelle; stall, whip stall; **glide,** volplane; spiral, split 'S', lazy eight, sideslip, pushdown, pull-up, pull-out; turn, vector in flight *or* VIF

14 **roll, barrel roll,** aileron roll, outside roll, **snap roll**

15 **spin,** autorotation, **tailspin,** flat spin, inverted spin, normal spin, power spin, uncontrolled spin, falling leaf; whipstall

16 **loop,** spiral loop, ground loop, normal loop, outside loop, inverted normal *or* outside loop, dead-stick loop, wingover, looping the loop; Immelmann turn, reverse turn, reversement; flipper turns

17 **buzzing,** flathatting *and* **hedgehopping** <nf>

18 **landing,** coming in <nf>, touching down, touchdown; arrival; landing run, landing pattern; approach, downwind leg, approach leg; holding pattern, stack up <nf>; ballooning in, parachute approach; blind *or* instrument landing, dead-stick landing, glide landing, stall landing, fishtail landing, sideslip landing, level *or* two-point landing, normal *or* three-point landing, Chinese landing <nf>, tail-high landing, tail-low landing, thumped-in landing <nf>, pancake landing, belly landing, crash landing, noseover, nose-up; overflight, overshoot, undershoot; practice landing, bounce drill

19 flying and landing guides marker, pylon; beacon; radio beacon, radio range station, radio marker; fan marker; radar beacon, racon; beam, radio beam; beacon lights; runway lights, high-intensity runway approach lights, sequence flashers, flare path; wind indicator, wind cone *or* sock, air sleeve; instrument landing system *or* ILS; touchdown rate of descent indicator *or* TRODI; ground-controlled approach *or* GCA; talking-down system, talking down

20 **crash, crack-up,** prang <Brit nf>; crash landing; collision, mid-air collision; near-miss, near collision

21 **blackout;** grayout; anoxia; useful consciousness; pressure suit, antiblackout suit

22 **airport, airfield, airdrome,** aerodrome <Brit>, drome, port, air harbor <Can>, aviation field, **landing field,** landing, field, airship station; **air terminal, jetport; air base,** air station, naval air station; airpark; **heliport,** helidrome; control tower, island; Air Route Traffic Control Center; baggage pickup, baggage carousel; airside, landside

23 **runway, taxiway,** strip, landing strip, **airstrip, flight strip,** take-off strip; fairway, launching way; stopway; clearway; transition strip; apron; **flight deck,** landing deck; helipad; ramp, apron

24 **hangar,** housing, dock, airdock, shed, airship shed; mooring mast

25 <propulsion> rocket propulsion, rocket power; **jet propulsion,** jet power; turbojet propulsion, pulse-jet propulsion, ram-jet propulsion, resojet propulsion; constant *or* ram pressure, air ram; reaction propulsion, reaction, action and reaction; aeromotor, aircraft engine, power plant

26 **lift,** lift ratio, lift force *or* component, lift direction; aerostatic lift, dynamic lift, gross lift, useful lift, margin of lift

27 **drag,** resistance; drag ratio, drag force *or* component, induced drag, wing drag, parasite *or* parasitic *or* structural drag, profile drag, head resistance, drag direction, cross-wind force

28 **drift,** drift angle; lateral drift, leeway

29 flow, air flow, laminar flow; **turbulence,** turbulent flow, burble, burble point, eddies

30 wash, wake, stream; downwash; backwash, **slipstream,** propeller race, propwash; **exhaust,** jet exhaust, blow wash; **vapor trail,** condensation trail, contrail, vortex

31 <speed> **air speed,** true air speed, operating *or* flying speed, cruising speed, knots, minimum flying speed, hump speed, peripheral speed, pitch speed, terminal speed, sinking speed, get-away *or* take-off speed, landing speed, ground speed, speed over the ground; speed of sound 174.2; zone of no signal, Mach cone; **sound barrier,** sonic barrier *or* wall; sonic boom, shock wave, Mach wave

32 <air, atmosphere> **airspace,** navigable airspace;

aerosphere; **aerospace;** space, empty space; **weather, weather conditions; ceiling,** ballonet ceiling, service ceiling, static ceiling, absolute ceiling; ceiling and visibility unlimited *or* CAVU; severe clear <nf>; cloud layer *or* cover, ceiling zero; visibility, visibility zero; **overcast,** undercast; fog, soup <nf>; high-pressure area, low-pressure area; trough, trough line; front; **air pocket** *or* **hole,** air bump, pocket, hole, bump; **turbulence;** clear-air turbulence *or* CAT; roughness; head wind, unfavorable wind; tail wind, favorable *or* favoring wind; cross wind; atmospheric tides; jetstream

33 **airway, air lane, air line,** air route, skyway, corridor, flight path, lane, path

34 **course, heading,** vector; compass heading *or* course, compass direction, magnetic heading, true heading *or* course

35 <altitude> altitude of flight, absolute altitude, critical altitude, density altitude, pressure altitude, sextant altitude; clearance; ground elevation

VERBS 36 **fly,** be airborne, wing, take wing, wing one's way, take *or* make a flight, take to the air, take the air, volitate, be wafted; **jet;** aviate, airplane, aeroplane; travel by air, go *or* travel by airline, go by plane *or* air, take to the airways, ride the skies; hop <nf>; **soar,** drift, hover; **cruise; glide,** sailplane, sail, volplane; hydroplane, seaplane; balloon; ferry; airlift; break the sound barrier; navigate, avigate

37 **pilot,** control, be at the controls, **fly,** manipulate, drive <nf>, fly left seat; **copilot,** fly right seat; solo; **barnstorm** <nf>; fly blind, fly by the seat of one's pants <nf>; follow the beam, ride the beam, fly on instruments; fly in formation, take position; peel off

38 **take off,** hop *or* jump off <nf>, become airborne, get off *or* leave the ground, take to the air, go *or* fly aloft, clear; rotate, power off; **taxi**

39 **ascend,** climb, gain altitude, mount; **zoom,** hoick <nf>, chandelle

40 <maneuver> **stunt** <nf>, perform aerobatics; crab, fishtail; **spin,** go into a tailspin; **loop,** loop the loop; **roll,** wingover, spiral, undulate, porpoise, feather, yaw, sideslip, skid, bank, dip, crab, nose down, nose up, pull up, push down, pull out, plow, mush through

41 **dive,** nose-dive, power-dive, go for the deck; lose altitude, settle, dump altitude <nf>

42 **buzz,** flathat *and* **hedgehop** <nf>

43 **land,** set her down <nf>, **alight, light,** touch down; **descend,** come down, dump altitude <nf>, fly down; come in, come in for a landing; **level off,** flatten out; upwind, downwind; overshoot, undershoot; make a dead-stick landing; pancake, thump in <nf>; bellyland, settle down, balloon in; fishtail down; **crash-land;** ditch <nf>; nose up, nose over; talk down

44 **crash, crack up,** prang <Brit nf>, spin in, fail to pull out

45 **stall,** lose power, conk out <nf>; flame out

46 **black out,** gray out

47 **parachute, bail out, jump,** make a parachute jump, hit the silk, make a brollyhop <Brit nf>, sky-dive

48 **brief,** give a briefing; debrief

ADJS 49 **aviation, aeronautic, aeronautical,** aerial; **aviatorial,** aviational, aviatic; aerodontic, **aerospace,** aerotechnical, aerostatic, aerostatical, aeromechanic, aeromechanical, aerodynamic, aerodynamical, avionic, aeronomic, aerophysical; aeromarine; aerobatic; airworthy, air-minded, air-conscious, aeromedical; air-wise; airsick; air-traffic; subsonic, supersonic, hypersonic; propeller, prop, jet, turbojet

50 **flying, airborne,** winging, soaring; volant, volitant, volitational, hovering, fluttering; gliding; jet-propelled, rocket-propelled

ADVS 51 **in flight, on the wing** *or* fly, while airborne

52 **air or atmospheric sciences**

acronomy
aerial photography
aeroballistics
aerocartography
aerodontia
aerodynamics
aerogeography
aerogeology
aerography
aerology
aeromechanics
aerometry
aeronautical engineering
aeronautical meteorology
aerophotography
aerophysics
aeroscopy
aerospace research
aerostatics
aerostation
aerotechnics
aerothermodynamics
aircraft design
aircraft hydraulics
aviation medicine *or* aeromedicine
aviation technology
avionics
climatology
hydrostatics
jet engineering
kinematics
kinetics
meteorology
micrometry
photometry
pneumatics
rocket engineering
rocketry
supersonic aerodynamics
supersonics

185 AVIATOR

NOUNS 1 **aviator, airman, flier, pilot,** air pilot, licensed pilot, private pilot, airline pilot, commercial pilot, aeronaut, flyboy *and* airplane driver *and* birdman <nf>; aircrew member; captain, chief pilot; copilot, second officer; flight engineer, third officer; jet pilot, jet jockey <nf>; instructor; test pilot; bush pilot; astronaut 1075.8; cloud seeder, rainmaker; cropduster; barnstormer <nf>; stunt man, stunt flier

2 **aviatrix,** aviatress, **airwoman,** birdwoman <nf>; stuntwoman

3 **military pilot,** naval pilot, combat pilot; fighter pilot; bomber pilot; observer, reconnaissance pilot; radarman; **aviation cadet,** air *or* flying cadet, pilot trainee; flyboy <nf>; ace; air force 461.29

4 **crew, aircrew,** flight crew; crewman, crewmate, crewmember, aircrewman; **navigator,** avigator; **bombardier;** gunner, machine gunner, belly gunner, tail gunner; crew chief; aerial photographer; meteorologist; **flight attendant, steward, stewardess,** hostess, purser, stew <nf>

5 **ground crew,** landing crew, plane handlers; crew chief

6 aircraftsman, aeromechanic, aircraft mechanic, mechanic, grease monkey <nf>, ground engineer; rigger; aeronautical engineer, jet engineer, rocket engineer 1074.11; ground tester, flight tester; air-traffic controller

7 **balloonist,** ballooner, aeronaut

8 **parachutist,** chutist *or* chuter <nf>, parachute jumper, sports parachutist; sky diver; **paratrooper;** paradoctor, paramedic; jumpmaster

9 <mythological fliers> Daedalus, Icarus

186 ARRIVAL

NOUNS 1 **arrival, coming, advent,** approach, appearance, **reaching; attainment, accomplishment, achievement**

2 **landing,** landfall; docking, mooring, tying up, dropping anchor; **getting off, disembarkation,** disembarkment, debarkation, coming *or* going ashore; **deplaning,** dropping *or* weighing anchor

3 **return, homecoming,** recursion; reentrance, **reentry;** remigration; prodigal's return

4 **welcome,** greetings 585.3

5 **destination, goal,** bourn <old>; port, haven, harbor, anchorage, **journey's end;** end of the line, terminus, **terminal,** terminal point, home plate; stop, stopping place, last stop; **airport,** air terminal 184.22

VERBS 6 **arrive,** arrive at, arrive in, come, **come** *or* **get to,** approach, access, **reach, hit** <nf>; find, **gain,** attain, attain to, accomplish, achieve, make, **make it** <nf>, fetch, fetch up at, get there, reach one's destination, come to one's journey's end, end up; **come to rest,** settle, settle in; **make** *or* **put in an appearance, show up** <nf>, turn up, **surface,** pop *or* bob up *and* make the scene <nf>; **get in, come in,** blow in <nf>, pull in, roll in; **check in;** clock *or* punch *or* ring *or* time in <nf>, sign in; hit town <nf>; come to hand, be received

7 **arrive at,** come at, get at, **reach,** arrive upon, **come upon, hit upon,** strike upon, fall upon, light upon, pitch upon, stumble on *or* upon

8 **land,** come to land, make a landfall, set foot on dry land; reach *or* make land, make port; put in *or* into, put into port; dock, moor, tie up, anchor, drop anchor; go ashore, **disembark,** debark, unboat; **detrain,** debus, **deplane, disemplane;** alight

ADJS 9 **arriving,** approaching, entering, **coming,** incoming; inbound, inwardbound; homeward, homeward-bound; immigrant

ADVS 10 **arriving,** on arrival *or* arriving

187 RECEPTION

NOUNS 1 **reception, taking in,** receipt, receiving; **welcome,** welcoming, cordial welcome, open *or* welcoming arms; refuge 1009

2 **admission,** admittance, acceptance; immission <old>, intromission 191.1; **installation,** installment, instatement, inauguration, initiation; baptism, investiture, ordination; enlistment, enrollment, induction

3 **entree, entrée,** in <nf>, entry, **entrance** 189, **access,** opening, **open door,** open arms; a foot in the door, opening wedge

4 **ingestion;** eating 8; **drinking** 8.3, imbibing, imbibition; engorgement, ingurgitation, engulfment; **swallowing,** gulping; swallow, gulp, slurp

5 <drawing in> **suction,** suck, sucking; **inhalation,** inhalement, inspiration, aspiration; snuff, snuffle, sniff, sniffle

6 sorption, **absorption,** adsorption, chemisorption *or* chemosorption, engrossment, digestion, **assimilation,** infiltration; **sponging, blotting; seepage,** percolation; **osmosis,** endosmosis, exosmosis, electroosmosis; absorbency; **absorbent,** adsorbent, **sponge, blotter,** blotting paper

7 <bringing in> **introduction; importing,** import, **importation,** investiture, naturalization

8 readmission; reabsorption, resorbence

9 **receptivity, receptiveness,** welcoming, welcome, invitingness, openness, hospitality, cordiality, recipience *or* recipiency; receptibility, admissibility

VERBS 10 **receive, take in; admit, let in,** immit <old>, intromit, give entrance *or* admittance to; **welcome,** bid welcome, give a royal welcome, roll out the red carpet; give an entree, open the door to, give refuge *or* shelter *or* sanctuary to, throw open to; include

11 **ingest,** eat 8.18, tuck away, put away; imbibe, **drink; swallow, devour,** ingurgitate; **engulf,** engorge; **gulp,** gulp down, swill, swill down, wolf down, gobble

12 **draw in, suck,** suckle, suck in *or* up, aspirate; **inhale,** inspire, breathe in; snuff, snuffle, sniff, sniffle, snuff in *or* up, slurp

13 **absorb,** adsorb, chemisorb *or* chemosorb, **assimilate,** engross, digest, **drink,** imbibe, take up *or* in, drink up *or* in, slurp up, swill up; blot, **blot up, soak up,** sponge; osmose; infiltrate, filter in; **soak in, seep in,** percolate in; internalize

14 **bring in, introduce, import**

15 readmit; reabsorb, resorb

ADJS 16 **receptive,** recipient; welcoming, open, hospitable, cordial, inviting, invitatory; introceptive; **admissive,** admissory; receivable, receptible, admissible; intromissive, intromittent; ingestive, imbibitory

17 sorbent, **absorbent,** adsorbent, chemisorptive *or* chemosorptive, **assimilative,** digestive; bibulous, imbibitory, thirsty, soaking, blotting; spongy, spongeous; osmotic, endosmotic, exosmotic; resorbent

18 **introductory,** introductive; **initiatory,** initiative, baptismal

188 DEPARTURE

NOUNS 1 **departure, leaving, going,** passing, **parting; exit,** walkout <nf>; egress 190.2; **withdrawal,** removal, retreat 163.2, retirement; evacuation, abandonment, desertion; decampment; escape, flight, getaway <nf>, elopement; exodus, hegira; migration, mass migration; defection, voting with one's feet

2 **start,** starting, start-off, setoff, setout, takeoff *and* getaway <nf>, liftoff; the starting gun *or* pistol; break; the green light

3 **embarkation,** embarkment, boarding; entrainment; enplanement *or* emplanement

4 **leave-taking, leave, parting, departure,** congé; **send-off,** Godspeed; **adieu,** one's adieus, **farewell,** aloha, **good-bye;** valedictory address, valedictory, valediction, parting words; parting *or* Parthian shot; swan song; viaticum; stirrup cup, one for the road, nightcap <nf>

5 **point of departure, starting place** *or* **point,** takeoff, **start,** base, baseline, basis; line of departure; starting line *or* post *or* gate, starting blocks, springboard, jumping-off point; stakeboat; port of embarkation

VERBS 6 **depart,** make off, begone, be off, take oneself off *or* away, take one's departure, take leave *or* take one's leave, **leave, go, go away, go off, get off** *or* **away,** get under way, come away, go one's way, go *or* get along, be getting along, go on, get on; move off *or* away, move out, march off *or* away; **pull out;** decamp; exit; take *or* break *or* tear oneself away, take oneself off, take wing *or* flight

7 <nf terms> **beat it, split,** scram, up and go, trot, toddle, stagger along, mosey *or* sashay along, buzz off, buzz along, bug out, bugger off <Brit>, beetle off, fuck off *or* f off, get rolling, hightail it, pull up stakes, check out, clear out, cut out, haul ass, hit the road *or* trail, piss off <chiefly Brit>, get lost, flake off, get going, shove off, push along, push off, get out, get *or* git, get the hell out, make oneself scarce, vamoose, take off, skip, skip out, lam, take it on the lam, powder, take a powder, take a runout powder, skedaddle, absquatulate <old>

8 **set out, set forth,** put forth, go forth, **sally forth,** sally, issue, issue forth, launch forth, set forward, **set off,** be off, be on one's way, outset, **start, start out** *or* **off, strike out,** get off, get away, get off the dime <nf>; get the green light, break; set sail

9 **quit, vacate,** evacuate, abandon, desert, turn one's back on, walk away from, leave to one's fate, leave flat *or* high and dry; leave *or* desert a sinking ship; **withdraw,** retreat, **beat a retreat,** retire, remove; walk away, abscond, disappear, vanish; **bow out** <nf>, make one's exit; jump ship

10 **hasten off, hurry away; scamper off, dash off,** whiz off, whip off *or* away, nip *and* nip off <nf>, tear off *or* out, **light out** <nf>, dig *or* skin out *and* burn rubber <nf>

11 **fling out** *or* **off,** flounce out *or* off

12 **run off** *or* **away,** run along, flee, take to flight, fly, take to one's heels, cut and run *and* hightail *and* make tracks *and* absquatulate <nf>, scarper <Brit nf>; run for one's life; beat a retreat *or* a hasty retreat; run away from 368.10

13 **check out;** clock *and* ring *and* punch out <nf>, sign out

14 **decamp, break camp,** strike camp *or* tent, **pull up stakes**

15 **embark, go aboard,** board, go on board; go on shipboard, take ship; hoist the blue Peter; **entrain,** enplane *or* emplane, embus; weigh anchor, up-anchor, put to sea 182.19

16 say *or* bid good-bye *or* farewell, take leave, make one's adieus; bid Godspeed, give one a send-off *or* a big send-off, see off *or* out, "speed the parting guest"—Pope; drink a stirrup cup, have one for the road

17 **leave home,** go from home; leave the country, emigrate, out-migrate, expatriate, defect; vote with one's feet; burn one's bridges

ADJS 18 **departing, leaving; parting,** last, final, farewell; valedictory; outward-bound

19 **departed, left, gone,** gone off *or* away

ADVS 20 **hence,** thence, whence; off, **away,** forth, out; therefrom, thereof

PREPS 21 **from, away from;** out, out of

INTERJS 22 **farewell!, good-bye!, adieu!, so long!, I'm outa here** <nf>, cheerio! <Brit>, *au revoir!* <Fr>, *¡adios!* <Sp>, *¡hasta la vista!* <Sp>, *¡hasta* *luego!* <Sp>, *¡vaya con Dios!* <Sp>, *auf Wiedersehen!* <Ger>, *addio!* <Ital>, *arrivederci!* and *arrivederla!* <Ital>, *ciao!* <Ital nf>, *do svidanye!* <Russ>, *shalom!* <Heb>, *sayonara!* <Japanese>, *vale!* and *vive valeque!* <L>, aloha!, **until we meet again!,** until tomorrow!, *à demain!* <Fr>, **see you later!,** see you!, tata!, toodleoo!, I'll be seeing you!, see you around!, we'll see you!, *à bientôt!* <Fr>, *à toute a l'heure!* <Fr>, *a domani* <Ital>; be good!, keep in touch!, come again!; *bon voyage!* <Fr>, pleasant journey!, have a nice trip!, *tsetchem leshalom!* <Heb>, *glückliche Reise!* <Ger>, happy landing!; Godspeed!, peace be with you!, *pax vobiscum!* <L>; all good go with you!, God bless you!

23 **good night!,** nighty-night! <nf>, *bonne nuit!* <Fr>, *gute Nacht!* <Ger>, *¡buenas noches!* <Sp>, *buona notte!* <Ital>

189 ENTRANCE

NOUNS **1** **entrance, entry,** access, entree, entrée; **ingress,** ingression; **admission,** reception 187; **ingoing, incoming,** income; **importation,** import, importing; **input, intake; penetration,** interpenetration, injection; infiltration, percolation, seepage, leakage; insinuation; intrusion 214; introduction, **insertion** 191

2 **influx, inflow,** inflooding, incursion, indraft, indrawing, inpour, inrun, inrush; afflux

3 **immigration,** in-migration, incoming population, foreign influx; border-crossing

4 **incomer, entrant,** comer, arrival; **visitor,** visitant; **immigrant,** in-migrant; newcomer 774.4, new girl, new boy; settler 227.9; **trespasser,** intruder 214.3

5 **entrance,** entry, gate, door, portal, **entranceway,** entryway; **inlet,** ingress, intake, adit, approach, **access,** means of access, in <nf>, way in; a foot in the door, an opening wedge, the camel's nose under the wall of the tent; **opening** 292; **passageway,** corridor, companionway, hall, hallway, passage, way; jetway, jet bridge; gangway, gangplank; **vestibule** 197.19; air lock

6 **porch,** propylaeum, portico, porte cochere; **portal, threshold,** doorjamb, gatepost, doorpost, lintel; **door, doorway,** French door; **gate, gateway; hatch,** hatchway, scuttle; turnstile

VERBS **7** **enter, go in** *or* **into,** access, cross the threshold, **come in,** find one's way into, put in *or* into; be admitted, gain admission *or* admittance, have an entree, have an in <nf>; **set foot in,** step in, walk in; **get in,** jump in, leap in, hop in; **drop in,** look in, visit, drop by, pop in <nf>; **breeze in,** come breezing in; break *or* burst in, bust *or* come busting in <nf>; **barge in** *or* come barging in *and* wade in <nf>; thrust in, push *or* press in, crowd in, jam in, wedge in, pack in, squeeze in; slip *or* creep in, wriggle *or* worm oneself into, get one's foot in the door, edge in, work in, insinuate oneself, weigh in <nf>; irrupt, intrude 214.5; take in, admit 187.10; insert 191.3

8 **penetrate,** interpenetrate, **pierce,** pass *or* go through, get through, get into, make way into, make an entrance, gain entree; crash <nf>, gatecrash <nf>

9 **flow in,** inpour, **pour in,** inrush, inflow

10 **filter in, infiltrate, seep in,** percolate into, leak in, soak in, perfuse, worm one's way into, insinuate

11 **immigrate,** in-migrate; cross the border

ADJS **12** **entering,** ingressive, **incoming, ingoing;** in, inward; **inbound,** inward-bound; inflowing, influent, inflooding, inpouring, inrushing; invasive, intrusive, irruptive; ingrowing

ADVS **13** **in,** inward, inwards, inwardly; thereinto

PREPS **14** **into, in,** to

190 EMERGENCE

NOUNS **1** **emergence,** coming out, coming forth, coming into view, rising to the surface, surfacing, emerging; **issuing,** issuance, issue; extrusion; **emission,** emitting, giving forth, giving out; emanation; **vent,** venting, discharge; outbreak, breakout

2 **egress,** egression; **exit,** exodus; outgoing, outgo, going out; emersion <astronomy>; **departure** 188; evacuation; extraction 192; exfiltration

3 **outburst** 671.6, ejection 909

4 **outflow,** outflowing; discharge; **outpouring,** outpour; effluence, effusion, exhalation; **efflux,** effluxion, defluxion; **exhaust; runoff, flowoff;** outfall; drainage, drain; gush 238.4

5 **leakage,** leaking, weeping <nf>; **leak; dripping,** drippings, **drip,** dribble, drop, trickle; distillation

6 **exuding,** exudation, transudation; **filtration,** exfiltration, filtering; straining; **percolation,** percolating; leaching, lixiviation; effusion, extravasation; **seepage,** seep; perfusion; **oozing,** ooze; weeping, weep; **excretion** 12

7 **emigration,** out-migration, remigration; exile, expatriation, defection, deportation

8 **export,** exporting, exportation; outgoings

9 **outlet,** egress, **exit,** outgo, outcome, out <nf>, way out; loophole, escape; **opening** 292; outfall, estuary; chute, flume, sluice, weir, floodgate; **vent,** ventage, venthole, port; safety valve; avenue, channel; spout, tap; opening, orifice; debouch; **exhaust;** door 189.6; outgate, sally port; vomitory; emunctory; pore; blowhole, spiracle

10 **goer,** outgoer, leaver, departer; **emigrant, émigré,**

out-migrant, migrant; colonist; expatriate, defector, refugee, remittance man *or* woman; walk-off <nf>

VERBS **11** **emerge, come out, issue,** issue forth, come into view, extrude, **come forth; surface,** rise to the surface; sally, sally forth, come to the fore; emanate, effuse, arise, come; debouch, disembogue; jump out, leap out, hop out; bail out; **burst forth, break forth, erupt;** break cover, **come out in the open;** protrude

12 **exit,** make an exit, **make one's exit;** egress, **go out,** get out, walk out, march out, run out, pass out, bow out *and* include oneself out <nf>; walk out on, leave cold <nf>; **depart** 188.6

13 **run out,** empty, find vent; **exhaust, drain,** drain out; **flow out,** outflow, outpour, **pour out,** sluice out, well out, gush *or* spout out, spew, flow, pour, well, surge, gush, jet, spout, spurt, vomit forth, blow out, spew out

14 **leak, leak out, drip,** dribble, drop, trickle, trill, distill

15 **exude,** exudate, transude, transpire, reek; **emit, discharge,** give off; **filter,** filtrate, exfiltrate; strain; **percolate;** leach, lixiviate; effuse, extravasate; **seep, ooze;** bleed; weep; excrete 12.12

16 **emigrate,** out-migrate, remigrate; exile, expatriate, defect; deport

17 **export,** send abroad

ADJS **18** **emerging,** emergent; **issuing,** arising, surfacing, coming, forthcoming; emanating, emanent, emanative, transeunt, transient

19 **outgoing, outbound,** outward-bound; **outflowing,** outpouring, effusive, effluent; effused, extravasated

20 exudative, exuding, transudative; percolative; porous, permeable, pervious, oozy, runny, weepy, leaky; excretory 12.19

ADVS **21** **forth; out,** outward, outwards, outwardly

PREPS **22** **out of,** ex; **from; out, forth**

191 INSERTION

<putting in>

NOUNS **1** **insertion, introduction,** insinuation, injection, infusion, perfusion, inoculation, intromission; **entrance** 189; **penetration** 292.3; interjection, interpolation 213.2; graft, grafting, engrafting, transplant, transplantation; infixing, implantation, embedment, tessellation, impactment, impaction

2 **insert,** insertion; **inset, inlay;** gore, godet, gusset; **graft,** scion *or* cion; tessera; parentheses; filling, stuffing; inclusion, supplement; tampon

VERBS **3** **insert, introduce,** insinuate, inject, infuse, perfuse, inoculate, intromit; **enter** 189.7; **penetrate; put in, stick in,** set in, throw in, pop in, tuck in, whip in; slip in, ease in; interject; pot, hole; import; inoculate, vaccinate

4 **install,** instate, inaugurate, initiate, invest, ordain; enlist, enroll, induct, sign up, sign on

5 **inset, inlay; embed** *or* bed, bed in; dovetail, mount

6 **graft,** engraft, ingraft, **implant,** imp <old>; bud; inarch

7 **thrust in, drive in, run in, plunge in,** force in, push in, **ram in,** press in, stuff in, crowd in, squeeze in, cram in, jam in, tamp in, pound in, pack in, poke in, knock in, wedge in, impact; shoot

8 **implant,** transplant, bed out; infix 855.9; fit in, **inlay;** tessellate

192 EXTRACTION

<taking or drawing out>

NOUNS **1** **extraction, withdrawal,** removal; **drawing, pulling,** drawing out; ripping *or* tearing *or* wresting out; eradication, **uprooting,** unrooting, deracination; squeezing out, pressing out, expressing, expression; avulsion, evulsion, cutting out, exsection, extirpation, excision, enucleation; extrication, evolvement, disentanglement, unravelment; excavation, mining, quarrying, drilling; dredging; rooting out, uprooting

2 **disinterment, exhumation,** disentombment, **unearthing,** uncovering, digging out; graverobbing

3 **drawing,** drafting, sucking, **suction,** aspiration, pipetting; pumping, siphoning, tapping, broaching; milking; drainage, draining, emptying; cupping; bloodletting, bleeding, phlebotomy, venesection

4 **evisceration,** gutting, **disembowelment,** shelling

5 **elicitation,** eduction, drawing out *or* forth, bringing out *or* forth; **evocation,** calling forth; arousal, derivation

6 **extortion, exaction,** claim, demand; **wresting, wrenching, wringing, rending,** tearing, ripping; wrest, wrench, wring

7 <obtaining an extract> **squeezing, pressing,** expression; **distillation;** decoction; **rendering,** rendition; **steeping,** soaking, infusion, marinating; concentration

8 **extract,** extraction; **essence, quintessence, spirit, elixir;** decoction; **distillate,** distillation, sublimate; **concentrate,** concentration; infusion; refinement, purification

9 **extractor,** separator, excavator, digger, miner; siphon; aspirator, pipette; pump, vacuum pump; press, wringer; corkscrew; forceps, pliers, pincers, tweezers; crowbar; smelter; scoop

VERBS **10** **extract, take out,** get out, **withdraw, remove;** pull, draw; **pull out, draw out,** tear out, rip out, wrest out, pluck out, pick out, weed out, rake out; **pry out,** prize out, winkle out <Brit>; **pull up,** pluck up; **root up** *or* **out, uproot,** unroot, eradicate, deracinate, pull *or* pluck out by the roots, pull *or* pluck up by the roots; cut out, excise, exsect; enucleate; gouge out, avulse, evulse; extricate, evolve, disentangle, unravel; free, liberate; **dig up** *or* **out,** grub up *or* out, excavate, **unearth,** mine, quarry; dredge, dredge up *or* out; smelt

11 **disinter, exhume,** disentomb, unbury, unsepulcher, dig up, excavate, uncover

12 **draw off, draft off,** draft, draw, draw from; **suck,** suck out *or* up, **siphon off;** pipette; vacuum; pump, pump out; tap, broach; let, let out; bleed; let blood, venesect, phlebotomize; milk; **drain,** decant; exhaust, empty

13 **eviscerate, disembowel, gut,** shell

14 **elicit,** educe, deduce, induce, derive, obtain, procure, secure; **get from,** get out of; **evoke, call up, summon up,** call *or* summon forth, call out; rouse, arouse, stimulate; **draw out** *or* **forth,** bring out *or* forth, pry *or* prize out, winkle out <Brit>, drag out, worm out, bring to light; wangle, wangle out of, worm out of

15 **extort, exact,** squeeze, claim, demand; **wrest, wring from, wrench from, rend from,** wrest *or* tear from, force out

16 <obtain an extract> **squeeze** *or* **press out,** express, wring, wring out; **distill,** distill out, elixirate <old>; **filter,** filter out; decoct; **render,** melt down; refine; **steep,** soak, infuse; **concentrate,** essentialize

ADJS **17** extractive, eductive; educible; eradicative, uprooting; elicitory, **evocative,** arousing; **exacting,** exactive; **extortionate,** extortionary, extortive

18 **essential,** quintessential, pure 798.6

193 ASCENT

<motion upward>

NOUNS **1** **ascent,** ascension, levitation, **rise, rising,** uprising, **uprise,** uprisal; **upgoing,** upgo, uphill, upslope, upping; upcoming; **taking off,** leaving the ground, takeoff; **soaring,** zooming, gaining altitude, leaving the earth behind; spiraling *or* gyring up; shooting *or* rocketing up; defying gravity; **jump,** vault, spring, saltation, **leap** 366; mount, **mounting; climb, climbing,** upclimb, anabasis, clamber, escalade; surge, upsurge, upsurgence, upleap, upshoot, uprush; **gush, jet,** spurt, spout, fountain; updraft; upswing, upsweep, bounce; upgrowth; upgrade 204.6; **uplift,** elevation 912; **uptick** <nf>, **increase** 251; surfacing, breaking the surface

2 **upturn, uptrend,** upcast, upsweep, upbend, upcurve, upsurge

3 **stairs, stairway, staircase,** *escalier* <Fr>, flight of stairs, pair of stairs; **steps,** treads and risers; stepping-stones; spiral staircase, winding staircase, cockle stairs <nf>; companionway, companion; stile; back stairs; perron; fire escape; landing, landing stage; ramp, incline; escalator

4 **ladder,** scale; stepladder, folding ladder, rope ladder, fire ladder; hook ladder, extension ladder; Jacob's ladder, companion ladder, accommodation ladder, boarding ladder, loft ladder, side ladder, gangway ladder, quarter ladder, stern ladder

5 **step, stair, footstep,** rest, footrest, stepping-stone; **rung, round,** rundle, spoke, stave, scale; doorstep; tread; riser; bridgeboard, string; step stool

6 **climber,** ascender, upclimber, soarer; mountain climber, **mountaineer,** alpinist, rock climber, rock-jock <nf>, cragsman; steeplejack; stegophilist

7 <comparisons> rocket, skyrocket; lark, skylark, eagle

VERBS **8** **ascend, rise, mount,** arise, up, uprise, levitate, upgo, **go up,** rise up, come up; go onwards and upwards, go up and up; upsurge, **surge,** upstream, upheave; swarm up, upswarm, sweep up; upwind, upspin, spiral, spire, curl upwards; stand up, **rear,** rear up, **tower,** loom; upgrow, grow up

9 **shoot up, spring up,** jump up, **leap up,** vault up, start up, fly up, pop up, bob up; float up, surface, break water; **gush, jet,** spurt, fountain; upshoot, upstart, upspring, upleap, upspear, rocket, **skyrocket**

10 **take off,** leave the ground, leave the earth behind, gain altitude, claw skyward; become airborne; **soar,** zoom, fly, plane, kite, fly aloft; aspire; spire, spiral *or* gyre upward; **hover,** hang, poise, float, float in the air; rocket, skyrocket

11 **climb,** climb up, upclimb, **mount,** clamber, **clamber up,** scramble *or* scrabble up, claw one's way up, struggle up, inch up, shin, shinny *or* shin up <nf>, ramp <nf>, work *or* inch one's way up, climb the ladder; **scale,** escalade, scale the heights; climb over, surmount, go over the top

12 **mount, get on,** climb on, back; **bestride,** bestraddle; **board,** go aboard, go on board; **get in,** jump in, hop in, pile in <nf>

13 **upturn, turn up,** cock up; trend upwards, slope up; upcast, upsweep, upbend, upcurve

ADJS **14** **ascending,** in the ascendant, **mounting, rising,** uprising, upgoing, upcoming; ascendant, ascensional, ascensive, anabatic; **leaping,** springing, saltatory; spiraling, skyrocketing; **upward;** uphill, uphillward, upgrade, upsloping; uparching, rearing, rampant; climbing, scandent, scansorial; gravity-defying

15 **upturned, upcast,** uplifted, **turned-up,** retroussé

ADVS **16** **up, upward, upwards,** upwith <Scot>; skyward, heavenward; uplong, upalong; upstream, upstreamward; uphill; uphillward; upstairs; up attic *and* up steps <nf>; uptown; up north

INTERJS 17 **alley-oop!, upsy-daisy!;** excelsior!, onward and upward!

194 DESCENT

<motion downward>

NOUNS 1 **descent, descending,** descension *or* downcome <old>, **comedown,** down; **dropping, falling,** plummeting, **drop, fall, free-fall,** *chute* <Fr>, **downfall,** debacle, **collapse,** crash; **swoop,** stoop, pounce, downrush, downflow, cascade, waterfall, cataract, **downpour,** defluxion; downturn, downcurve, downbend, downward trend, downtrend; declension, declination, inclination; gravitation; abseil, rappel; downgrade 204.5; **down tick;** decrease 252

2 **sinkage,** lowering, **decline, slump,** subsidence, submergence, lapse, decurrence, downgrade; cadence; **droop, sag,** swag; catenary; downer <nf>

3 **tumble, fall,** *culbute* <Fr>, cropper *and* **spill** <nf>, **flop** <nf>; **header** <nf>; **sprawl; pratfall** <nf>; **stumble,** trip; **dive,** plunge 367, belly flop, nosedive; forced landing

4 **slide; slip,** slippage; **glide,** coast, glissade; glissando; slither; **skid,** sideslip; **landslide,** mudslide, landslip, subsidence; **snowslide,** snowslip <Brit>; **avalanche**

VERBS 5 **descend, go** *or* **come down,** down, dip down, lose altitude, dump altitude <nf>; gravitate; **fall, drop,** precipitate, rain, rain *or* pour down, fall *or* drop down; **collapse,** crash; **swoop,** stoop, pounce; **pitch,** plunge 367.6, **plummet;** cascade, cataract; parachute; come down a peg <nf>; **fall off,** drop off; trend downward, down-tick, go downhill

6 **sink, go down,** sink down, submerge; **set, settle,** settle down; **decline,** lower, **subside,** give way, lapse, cave, cave in; **droop,** slouch, **sag,** swag; **slump,** slump down; flump, flump down; flop *and* flop down <nf>; plump, plop *or* plop down, plunk *or* plunk down <nf>; founder 367.8

7 **get down, alight,** touch down, **light; land,** settle, perch, come to rest; **dismount, get off,** uphorse; climb down; abseil, rappel

8 **tumble, fall, fall down,** come *or* fall *or* get a cropper <nf>, take a fall *or* tumble, take a flop *or* spill <nf>, precipitate oneself; fall over, tumble over, trip over; **sprawl,** sprawl out, take a pratfall <nf>, spread-eagle <nf>, measure one's length; fall headlong, **take a header** <nf>, nosedive; fall prostrate, fall flat, fall on one's face, fall flat on one's ass <nf>; **fall over,** topple down *or* over; capsize, turn turtle; **topple,** lurch, pitch, **stumble,** stagger, totter, careen, list, tilt, trip, flounder

9 **slide, slip,** slidder <nf>, slip *or* slide down; **glide,** skim, coast, glissade; **slither; skid,** sideslip; avalanche

10 **light upon,** alight upon, settle on; **descend upon, come down on, fall on,** drop on, hit *or* strike upon

ADJS 11 **descending,** descendant, on the descendant; **down,** downward, declivitous; decurrent, deciduous; **downgoing,** downcoming; down-reaching; **dropping, falling, plunging, plummeting,** downfalling; **sinking,** downsinking, foundering, submerging, setting; declining, **subsiding;** collapsing, tumbledown, tottering; drooping, sagging; on the downgrade, downhill 204.16

12 **downcast, downturned;** hanging, down-hanging

ADVS 13 **down, downward, downwards,** from the top down, *de haut en bas* <Fr>; adown, below; downright; downhill, downgrade; downstreet; downline; downstream; downstairs; downtown; south, down south

195 CONTAINER

NOUNS 1 **container, receptacle;** receiver 479.3, holder, vessel, utensil; repository, depository, reservoir, store; basin, pot, pan, drinking vessel, cup, glass, bottle, crockery, ladle; cask; box, case, crate, carton; bucket; bottle, can; basket; luggage, suitcase, baggage, trunk; cabinet, cupboard; shelf, drawer, locker; frame; compartment; packet; cart, truck

2 **bag, sack,** sac, poke <nf>, bundle; **pocket,** fob; **balloon, bladder;** carryall, pouch; purse, handbag, tote, satchel

196 CONTENTS

NOUNS 1 **contents, content,** what is contained *or* included *or* comprised; **insides** 207.4, innards <nf>, guts, inner workings; **components, constituents, ingredients,** elements, **items, parts, divisions,** subdivisions; **inventory,** index, census, list 871; part 792; whole 792; composition 796; constitution, makeup, embodiment

2 **load, lading, cargo, freight, charge, burden; payload;** boatload, busload, carload, cartload, containerload, shipload, trailerload, trainload, truckload, vanload, wagonload; shipment, stowage, tonnage

3 **lining,** liner; **interlining,** interlineation; inlayer, inside layer, **inlay,** inlaying; **filling,** filler; **packing,** padding, wadding, **stuffing;** facing; doubling, doublure; bushing, bush; wainscot; insole; facing

4 <contents of a container> cup, cupful, etc

5 <essential content> **substance, sum and substance, stuff, material, matter,** medium, building blocks, fabric; **gist, heart, soul, meat, nub;** the nitty-gritty *and* the bottom line *and* the name of the game <nf>, **core,** kernel, marrow, pith, sap, spirit, **essence,** quintessence, elixir, distillate, distillation, distilled essence; sine qua non, irreducible *or* indispensable content

6 **enclosure,** the enclosed

VERBS 7 **fill,** pack 794.7, **load; line,** interline, interlineate; inlay; face; wainscot, ceil; **pad,** wad, **stuff;** feather, fur; fill up, top up

197 ROOM

<compartment>

NOUNS 1 **room, chamber,** *chambre* <Fr>, *salle* <Fr>, four walls

2 **compartment,** chamber, space, enclosed space; **cavity,** hollow, hole, concavity; **cell,** cellule; booth, stall, crib, manger; box, pew; **crypt, vault**

3 **nook, corner, cranny, niche, recess,** cove, bay, oriel, alcove; cubicle, roomlet, carrel, hole-in-the-wall <nf>, cubby, **cubbyhole,** snuggery, hidey-hole <nf>

4 **hall;** assembly hall, exhibition hall, convention hall; gallery; meetinghouse, meeting room; **auditorium; concert hall; theater,** music hall; stadium, dome, sports dome, **arena** 463; lecture hall, lyceum, amphitheater; operating theater; dance hall; ballroom, grand ballroom; **chapel** 703.3

5 **parlor, living room, sitting room, morning room, drawing** *or* **withdrawing room, front room,** best room <nf>, foreroom <nf>, **salon,** saloon <old>; sun parlor *or* sunroom, lounge, sun lounge, sunporch, solarium, conservatory

6 **library,** stacks; **study,** studio, *atelier* <Fr>, workroom, den; **office,** workplace, home office; **loft,** sail loft

7 **bedroom, boudoir,** chamber, sleeping chamber, **bedchamber,** master bedroom, guest room, sleeping room, cubicle, cubiculum; nursery; dormitory *or* dorm room

8 <private chamber> **sanctum,** sanctum sanctorum, holy of holies, adytum; **den,** retreat, closet, cabinet

9 <ships> cabin, stateroom; saloon; house, deckhouse, trunk cabin, cuddy, shelter cabin

10 <trains> drawing room, stateroom, parlor car, Pullman car, roomette

11 **dining room,** *salle à manger* <Fr>, dinette; breakfast room, breakfast nook, dining hall, refectory, mess *or* messroom *or* mess hall, commons, canteen; dining car *or* diner; **restaurant, cafeteria**

12 **playroom,** recreation room, rec room <nf>, family room, game room, **rumpus room** <nf>; **gymnasium**

13 **utility room,** laundry room, sewing room

14 **kitchen** 11.4, kitchenette, galley, pantry, larder, scullery; **storeroom** 386.6, smoking room 89.13

15 **closet,** clothes closet, wardrobe, cloakroom; checkroom; linen closet; dressing room, fitting room, pantry

16 **attic,** attic room, **garret, loft,** sky parlor; cockloft, hayloft; storeroom, junk room, lumber room <Brit>

17 **cellar,** cellarage, **basement;** subbasement; wine cellar, potato cellar, storm cellar, cyclone cellar; coal bin *or* hole, hold, hole, bunker; glory hole

18 **corridor, hall,** hallway; passage, **passageway; gallery,** loggia; arcade, colonnade, pergola, cloister, peristyle; areaway; breezeway

19 **vestibule,** portal, **portico,** entry, entryway, entrance, **entrance hall,** entranceway, **threshold; lobby, foyer;** propylaeum, stoa; narthex, galilee

20 **anteroom,** antechamber; side room, byroom; **waiting room,** *salle d'attente* <Fr>; **reception room,** presence chamber *or* room, audience chamber; throne room; lounge, greenroom, wardroom

21 **porch,** stoop, **veranda,** piazza <nf>, patio, lanai, gallery; sleeping porch

22 **balcony,** gallery, terrace

23 **floor, story,** level, flat; first floor *or* story, ground *or* street floor, *rez-de-chaussée* <Fr>; mezzanine, mezzanine floor, *entresol* <Fr>; clerestory

24 **showroom,** display room, exhibition room, gallery

25 **hospital room; ward,** maternity ward, fever ward, charity ward, prison ward, etc; private room, semi-private room; examining *or* examination room, consulting *or* consultation room, treatment room; **operating room** *or* OR, operating theater, surgery; labor room, delivery room; recovery room; emergency, emergency room; intensive care unit *or* ICU; pharmacy, dispensary; clinic, nursery; laboratory *or* blood bank; nurses' station

26 **bathroom, lavatory,** washroom 79.10, **water closet** *or* **WC,** closet, **rest room,** comfort station, **toilet** 12.10; ladies' room, men's room

27 <for vehicles> **garage,** carport; coach *or* carriage house; carbarn; roundhouse; hangar; boathouse

198 TOP

NOUNS 1 **top,** top side, upper side, upside; surface 206.2; superstratum; topside *or* topsides; upper story, top floor; clerestory; **roof,** ridgepole *or* roofpole; rooftop; ceiling

2 **summit,** top; **tip-top,** peak 3.6, pinnacle; **crest, brow;** ridge, edge; **crown,** cap, **tip,** point, spire,

pitch; highest pitch, no place higher, **apex,** vertex, **acme,** *ne plus ultra* <Fr>, **zenith, climax,** apogee, pole; **culmination; extremity, maximum, limit,** upper extremity, highest point, very top, top of the world, extreme limit, utmost *or* upmost *or* uppermost height, "the very acme and pitch"—Pope; exosphere, **sky,** heaven *or* heavens, seventh heaven, cloud nine <nf>; meridian, noon, high noon; mountaintop

3 **topping,** icing, frosting; dressing

4 <top part> **head,** heading, **headpiece,** cap, *caput* <L>, capsheaf, **crown, crest;** topknot; pinhead, nailhead

5 **architectural topping, capital** <see list>, head, crown, cap; bracket capital; cornice; cymatium, clerestory

6 **head,** headpiece, **pate,** poll <nf>, crown, **sconce** *and* **noodle** *and* **noddle** *and* **noggin** *and* **bean** *and* dome <nf>; brow, ridge; "the dome of Thought, the palace of the Soul"—Byron

7 **skull,** cranium, pericranium, epicranium; brainpan, brain box *or* case

8 **phrenology,** craniology, metoposcopy, physiognomy; phrenologist, craniologist, metoposcopist, physiognomist

VERBS 9 **top,** top off, **crown, cap,** crest, **head,** tip, peak, surmount; overtop *or* outtop, have the top place *or* spot, overarch; **culminate,** consummate, climax; ice, frost, dress; fill, top up

ADJS 10 **top,** topmost, **uppermost,** upmost, overmost, **highest;** tip-top, tip-crowning, **maximum,** maximal, ultimate; summital, apical, vertical, zenithal, climactic, climactical, **consummate;** acmic, acmatic; meridian, meridional; **head,** headmost, capital, chief, paramount, supreme, preeminent; **top-level,** highest level, top-echelon, top-flight, top-ranking, top-drawer <nf>; peak, pitch, ultimate, maximum, crowning

11 **topping, crowning, capping,** heading, surmounting, overtopping *or* outtopping, overarching; **culminating,** consummating, perfecting, climaxing

12 **topped,** headed, **crowned, capped,** crested, plumed, tipped, peaked, roofed

13 **topless,** headless, crownless

14 cranial; cephalic, encephalic

ADVS 15 **atop, on top,** at *or* on the top, topside <nf>; at the top of the tree *or* ladder, on top of the roost *or* heap; on the crest *or* crest of the wave; at the head, at the peak *or* pinnacle *or* summit

PREPS 16 **atop, on, upon,** on top of, surmounting, topping

17 **capital styles**

baroque
Byzantine
composite
Corinthian
Doric
Gothic
Greek
Greek Corinthian
Greek Ionic
Ionic
Moorish
Roman Corinthian
Roman Doric
Romanesque
Roman Ionic
Tuscan

199 BOTTOM

NOUNS 1 **bottom,** bottom side, **underside,** nether side, lower side, downside, **underneath,** fundament; belly, underbelly; buttocks 217.4, breech; **rock bottom, bedrock,** bed, hardpan; **grass roots;** substratum, underlayer, lowest level *or* layer *or* stratum, nethermost level *or* layer *or* stratum, basecoat; **nadir,** the pits <nf>

2 **base,** basement, **foot,** footing, sole, toe; **foundation** 901.6, underpinning, infrastructure; baseboard, mopboard, skirt; wainscot, dado; skeleton, bare bones, chassis, frame, undercarriage; keel, keelson

3 ground covering, **ground,** earth, *terra firma* <L>; **floor,** flooring; parquet; **deck; pavement,** *pavé* <Fr>, paving, surfacing, asphalt, blacktop, macadam, concrete; **cover,** carpet, floor covering; artificial turf, Astroturf <trademark>

4 **bed, bottom, floor,** ground, **basin, channel,** coulee; riverbed, seabed, ocean bottom 275.4

5 **foot,** extremity, pes, pedes, *pied* <Fr>, trotter, pedal extremity, dog, tootsy <nf>; **hoof,** ungula; **paw,** pad, pug, *patte* <Fr>; forefoot, forepaw; harefoot, splay-foot, clubfoot; **toe,** digit; **heel; sole,** pedi *or* pedio; instep, arch; pastern; fetlock

VERBS 6 **base on, found on, ground on, build on,** bottom on, bed on, set on; root in; **underlie,** undergird; bottom, bottom out, hit bottom

ADJS 7 **bottom,** bottommost, **undermost,** nethermost, lowermost, deepest, **lowest; rock-bottom,** bedrock; ground, ground-level

8 **basic;** basal, basilar; **underlying, fundamental,** foundational, essential, elementary, elemental, primary, primal, primitive, rudimentary, original, grass-roots; supporting; radical; nadiral

9 **pedal;** plantar; footed, hoofed, ungulate, clawed, taloned; toed

200 VERTICALNESS

NOUNS 1 **verticalness,** verticality, verticalism; **erectness, uprightness;** stiffness *or* erectness of posture, position of attention, brace; straight up-and-downness, up-and-downness; steepness, sheerness, precipitousness, plungingness, **perpendicularity,** plumbness, aplomb; right-angledness *or* -angularity, squareness, orthogonality

2 **vertical, upright, perpendicular,** plumb, normal;

right angle, orthodiagonal; vertical circle, azimuth circle

3 **precipice, cliff,** sheer *or* yawning cliff *or* precipice *or* drop, steep, bluff, wall, face, scar; crag; scarp, **escarpment; palisade,** palisades

4 **erection,** erecting, **elevation; rearing,** raising; **uprearing,** upraising, lofting, uplifting, heaving up *or* aloft; standing on end *or* upright *or* on its feet *or* on its base *or* on its legs *or* on its bottom

5 **rising, uprising, ascension,** ascending, ascent; vertical height *or* dimension; **gradient,** rise, uprise

6 <instruments> square, T square, try square, set square, carpenter's square; plumb, plumb line, plumb rule, plummet, bob, plumb bob, lead

VERBS 7 **stand, stand erect, stand up, stand upright, stand up straight,** be erect, be on one's feet; hold oneself straight *or* stiff, stand ramrod-straight, have an upright carriage; stand at attention *and* brace *and* stand at parade rest <military>

8 **rise, arise,** ascend, mount, uprise, **rise up, get up,** get to one's feet; **stand up, stand on end; stick up,** cock up; bristle; **rear,** ramp, uprear, rear up, rise on the hind legs; upheave; sit up, sit bolt upright, straighten up; jump up, spring to one's feet

9 **erect, elevate, rear, raise,** pitch, **set up,** raise *or* lift *or* cast up; raise *or* heave *or* rear aloft; uprear, upraise, uplift, upheave; upright; **upend,** stand on end, stand upright *or* on end; set on its feet *or* legs *or* base *or* bottom

10 **plumb,** plumb-line, set *à plomb;* **square,** square up

ADJS 11 **vertical, upright,** bolt upright, ramrod straight, **erect,** upstanding, standing up, stand-up; rearing, rampant; **upended,** upraised, upreared; downright

12 **perpendicular, plumb,** straight-up-and-down, straight-up, **up-and-down;** sheer, steep, precipitous, plunging; **right-angled,** right-angle, right-angular, orthogonal, orthodiagonal

ADVS 13 **vertically, erectly,** upstandingly, uprightly, **upright,** up, stark *or* bolt upright; **on end,** up on end, right on end, endwise, endways; on one's feet *or* legs, on one's hind legs <nf>; at attention *and* braced *and* at parade rest <military>

14 **perpendicularly,** sheer, sheerly; up and down, **straight up and down; plumb,** *à plomb* <Fr>; **at right angles,** square

201 HORIZONTALNESS

NOUNS 1 **horizontalness,** horizontality; **levelness, flatness,** planeness, planarity, evenness, smoothness, flushness, alignment; unbrokenness, unrelievedness

2 **recumbency,** recumbence, decumbency *or* decumbence, accumbency; accubation; **prostration,** proneness; supineness, reclining, reclination; lying, lounging, **repose** 20; sprawl, loll

3 **horizontal, plane, level, flat,** dead level *or* flat, homaloid; **horizontal** *or* level plane; horizontal *or* level line; horizontal projection; horizontal surface, fascia; horizontal parallax; horizontal axis; horizontal fault; water level, sea level, mean sea level; ground, earth, steppe, **plain, flatland,** prairie, savanna, flats, sea of grass, bowling green, table, billiard table; floor, platform, ledge, terrace

4 **horizon, skyline,** rim of the horizon; sea line; apparent *or* local *or* visible horizon, sensible horizon, celestial *or* rational *or* geometrical *or* true horizon, artificial *or* false horizon; azimuth

VERBS 5 **lie, lie down,** lay <nf>, **recline, repose,** lounge, sprawl, loll, drape *or* spread oneself, spread-eagle, splay, lie limply; **lie flat** *or* prostrate *or* prone *or* supine, lie on one's face *or* back, lie on a level, hug the ground *or* deck; **grovel, crawl,** kowtow

6 **level, flatten, even, equalize,** align, smooth *or* smoothen, level out, smooth out, flush; grade, roll, roll flat, steamroller *or* steamroll; **lay,** lay down *or* out; **raze,** rase, lay level, lay level with the ground; lay low *or* flat; **fell** 913.5; deck <nf>

ADJS 7 **horizontal, level, flat,** flattened; **even,** smooth, smoothened, smoothed out; table-like, tabular; **flush;** homaloidal; **plane,** planar, plain; rolled, trodden, squashed, rolled *or* trodden *or* squashed flat, razed; flat as a pancake, "flat as a cake"—Erasmus, flat as a table *or* billiard table *or* bowling green *or* tennis court, flat as a board, "flat as a flounder"—John Fletcher, level as a plain

8 **recumbent,** accumbent, procumbent, decumbent; **prostrate, prone,** flat; **supine,** resupine; couchant, *couché* <Fr>; **lying, reclining, reposing,** flat on one's back; sprawling, lolling, lounging; sprawled, spread, splay, splayed, draped; groveling, crawling, flat on one's belly *or* nose

ADVS 9 **horizontally, flat,** flatly, flatways, flatwise; **evenly,** flush; **level, on a level;** lengthwise, lengthways, at full length, on one's back *or* belly *or* nose

202 PENDENCY

NOUNS 1 **pendency,** pendulousness *or* pendulosity, pensileness *or* pensility; **hanging, suspension,** dangling *or* danglement, suspense, dependence *or* dependency

2 **hang, droop,** dangle, swing, fall; **sag,** swag, bag

3 **overhang, overhanging,** impendence *or* impendency, **projection,** extension, protrusion, beetling, jutting; cantilever

4 **pendant,** hanger; **hanging,** drape; **lobe,** ear lobe, lobule, lobus, lobation, lappet, wattle; **uvula**

5 **suspender, hanger,** supporter; **suspenders,** pair of suspenders, braces <Brit>, galluses <nf>

VERBS 6 **hang,** hang down, fall; **depend,** pend; **dangle,** swing, flap, flop <nf>; flow, drape, cascade; **droop,** lop; nod, weep; **sag,** swag, bag; **trail, drag, draggle,** drabble, daggle

7 **overhang,** hang over, hang out, **impend,** impend over, **project,** project over, beetle, **jut,** beetle *or* jut *or* thrust over, stick out over

8 **suspend, hang, hang up,** put up, fasten up; sling; oscillate, swing, sway, hover

ADJS 9 **pendent,** pendulous, pendulant, pendular, penduline, pensile; **suspended,** hung; **hanging,** pending, depending, dependent; **falling; dangling,** swinging, oscillating, falling loosely; weeping; flowing, cascading

10 **drooping, droopy,** limp, loose, nodding, floppy <nf>, loppy, lop; **sagging,** saggy, swag, sagging in folds; **bagging,** baggy, ballooning; lop-eared

11 **overhanging,** overhung, lowering, **impending,** impendent, **pending;** incumbent, superincumbent; **projecting, jutting; beetling,** beetle; beetle-browed; cantilevered

12 lobular, lobar, lobed, lobate, lobated

203 PARALLELISM

<physically parallel direction or state>

NOUNS 1 **parallelism,** coextension, nonconvergence, nondivergence, collaterality, concurrence, equidistance; collineation, collimation; alignment; parallelization; parallelotropism; **analogy** 943.1

2 **parallel,** paralleler; parallel line, parallel dash, parallel bar, parallel file, parallel series, parallel column, parallel trench, parallel vector; parallelogram, parallelepiped *or* parallelepipedon

3 <instruments> parallel rule *or* rules *or* ruler, parallelograph, parallelometer

VERBS 4 **parallel,** be parallel, coextend; run parallel, go alongside, go beside, run abreast, run side by side; match, equal

5 **parallelize,** place parallel to, equidistance; line up, align, realign; collineate, collimate; match; correspond, follow, equate

ADJS 6 **parallel,** paralleling, parallelistic; coextending, coextensive, nonconvergent, nondivergent, **equidistant,** equispaced, collateral, concurrent; lined up, aligned; equal, even; parallelogrammical, parallelogrammatical; parallelepipedal; parallelotropic; parallelodrome, parallelinervate; analogous 943.8

ADVS 7 **in parallel,** parallelwise, parallelly; side by side, alongside, abreast; equidistantly, nonconvergently, nondivergently; collaterally, coextensively

204 OBLIQUITY

NOUNS 1 **obliquity,** obliqueness; **deviation** 164, deviance, divergence, digression, divagation, vagary, excursion, skewness, aberration, squint, declination; deflection, deflexure; nonconformity 868; diagonality, crosswiseness, transverseness; indirection, indirectness, deviousness, circumlocution, circuitousness 914

2 **inclination, leaning,** lean, angularity; **slant,** slaunch <nf>, rake, **slope; tilt, tip,** pitch, **list, cant,** swag, sway; leaning tower, tower of Pisa

3 **bias, bend,** bent, **crook, warp, twist, turn, skew,** slue, **veer,** sheer, **swerve,** lurch; deflection

4 **incline,** inclination, **slope, grade,** gradient, pitch, **ramp,** launching ramp, bank, talus, gentle *or* easy slope, glacis; rapid *or* steep slope, stiff climb, scarp, chute; helicline, inclined plane <phys>; **bevel,** bezel, fleam; hillside, side; hanging gardens; shelving beach

5 **declivity, descent,** dip, drop, fall, falling-off *or* -away, **decline;** hang, hanging; **downgrade, downhill**

6 **acclivity, ascent,** climb, **rise,** rising, uprise, uprising, rising ground; **upgrade, uphill,** upgo, upclimb, uplift, steepness, precipitousness, abruptness, verticalness 200

7 **diagonal,** oblique, transverse, bias, bend <heraldry>, oblique line, slash, **slant,** virgule, scratch comma, separatrix, solidus, cant; oblique angle *or* figure, rhomboid, rhombus

8 **zigzag,** zig, zag; zigzaggery, flexuosity, **crookedness,** crankiness; switchback, hairpin, dogleg; chevron

VERBS 9 **oblique, deviate, diverge,** deflect, divagate, **bear off,** digress; angle, **angle off, swerve,** shoot off at an angle, **veer,** sheer, sway, slue, **skew, twist, turn,** bend, bias, dogleg; crook; circumlocute

10 **incline, lean; slope, slant,** camber, slaunch <nf>, rake, pitch, grade, bank, shelve; **tilt, tip, list, cant,** bevel, careen, keel, sidle, swag, sway; **ascend, rise,** uprise, climb, **go uphill; descend, decline,** dip, drop, fall, fall off *or* away, **go downhill;** retreat

11 cut, cut *or* slant across, cut crosswise *or* transversely *or* diagonally, catercorner, diagonalize, slash, slash across

12 **zigzag,** zig, zag, **stagger,** crank *or* crankle <old>, wind in and out

ADJS 13 **oblique,** obliquitous; **devious,** deviant, deviative, divergent, digressive, divagational, deflectional, excursive, off course; **indirect,** side, sidelong, roundabout; left-handed, sinister, sinistral; backhand, backhanded; circuitous 914.7

14 **askew, skew,** skewed; skew-jawed *and* skewgee *and* skew-whiff *and* askewgee *and* agee *and* agee-jawed <nf>; **awry,** wry; askance, askant, asquint,

squinting, **cockeyed** <nf>; **crooked** 265.10; slaunchwise *or* slaunchways <nf>; wamperjawed *and* catawampous *and* yaw-ways <nf>, wonky <Brit nf>

15 **inclining,** inclined, inclinatory, inclinational; **leaning,** recumbent; **sloping,** sloped, aslope; raking, pitched; **slanting,** slanted, slant, aslant, slantways, slantwise; bias, biased; shelving, shelvy; **tilting,** tilted, atilt, tipped, **tipping,** tipsy, listing, **canting,** careening; sideling, sidelong; out of the perpendicular *or* square *or* plumb, bevel, beveled

16 <sloping downward> **downhill, downgrade; descending,** falling, dropping, dipping; **declining,** declined; declivous, declivitous, declivate

17 <sloping upward> **uphill, upgrade; rising,** uprising, **ascending,** climbing; acclivous, acclivitous, acclinate

18 **steep, precipitous, bluff,** plunging, abrupt, bold, **sheer,** sharp, rapid; headlong, breakneck; vertical 200.11

19 **transverse,** crosswise *or* crossways, thwart, athwart, across 170.9; **diagonal,** bendwise; catercorner *or* **catercornered** *or* cattycorner *or* cattycornered *or* kittycorner *or* kittycornered; slant, bias, biased, biaswise *or* biasways

20 **crooked, zigzag,** zigzagged, zigzaggy, zigzagwise *or* zigzagways, dogleg *or* doglegged; flexuous, twisty, hairpin, bendy, curvy, meandering; staggered, crankled <old>; chevrony, chevronwise *or* chevronways <architecture>

ADVS **21** **obliquely, deviously,** deviately, **indirectly,** circuitously 914.9; divergently, digressively, excursively, divagationally; **sideways** *or* sidewise, sidelong, sideling, on *or* to one side; at an angle

22 **askew, awry; askance,** askant, asquint

23 **slantingly, slopingly,** aslant, aslope, atilt, rakingly, tipsily, slopewise, slopeways, slantwise, slantways, aslantwise, on *or* at a slant; slaunchwise *and* slaunchways <nf>; off plumb *or* the vertical; **downhill, downgrade; uphill, upgrade**

24 transversely, crosswise *or* crossways, athwart, across 170.13

25 **diagonally,** diagonalwise; **on the bias,** bias, biaswise; **cornerwise,** cornerways; catercornerways *or* **catercorner** *or* cattycorner *or* kittycorner

205 INVERSION

NOUNS **1** **inversion,** turning over *or* around *or* upside down, the other way round, inverted order; eversion, turning inside out, invagination, intussusception; introversion, turning inward; **reversing,** reversal 859.1, turning front to back *or* side to side; **reversion,** turning back *or* backwards, retroversion, retroflexion, retroflection, revulsion; devolution, atavism; recidivism; **transposition,** transposal; topsy-turvydom *or* topsy-turviness; the world turned upside-down, upside-downness, the tail wagging the dog; pronation, supination, resupination

2 **overturn, upset,** overset, **overthrow,** upturn, **turnover,** spill <nf>; subversion; **revolution** 860; **capsizing,** capsize, capsizal, turning turtle; **somersault,** somerset, *culbute* <Fr>, cartwheel, handspring; headstand, handstand; turning head over heels

3 <grammatical and rhetorical terms> metastasis, metathesis; anastrophe, chiasmus, hypallage, hyperbaton, hysteron proteron, palindrome, parenthesis, synchysis, tmesis

4 **inverse, reverse, converse,** opposite 215.5, other side of the coin *or* picture, the flip side *and* B side <nf>; counter, contrary

VERBS **5** **invert,** inverse, turn over *or* around *or* upside down; introvert, turn in *or* inward; **turn down; turn inside out,** turn out, evert, invaginate, intussuscept; **revert,** recidivate, relapse, lapse, back-slide; **reverse** 859.4, **transpose,** convert; put the cart before the horse, put in inverted order; turn into the opposite, turn about, turn the tables, turn the scale *or* balance; rotate, revolve, pronate, supinate, resupinate

6 **overturn, turn over, turn upside down,** turn bottom side up, upturn, **upset,** overset, **overthrow,** subvert, *culbuter* <Fr>; go *or* turn ass over elbows *or* ass over tincups <nf>, turn a somersault, go *or* turn head over heels; **turn turtle, turn topsy-turvy,** topsy-turvy, topsy-turvify; **tip over,** keel over, topple over; **capsize;** careen, set on its beam ends, set on its ears

ADJS **7** **inverted,** inversed, back-to-front, **backwards,** retroverted, **reversed, transposed, back side forward, tail first; inside out,** outside in, everted, invaginated, wrong side out, back-to-front; reverted, lapsed, recidivist *or* recidivistic; atavistic; devolutional; **upside-down, topsy-turvy,** ass over elbows *and* ass over tincups *and* arsy-varsy <nf>, bottom-up; **capsized,** head-over-heels; hyperbatic, chiastic, palindromic; resupinate; introverted

ADVS **8** **inversely, conversely,** contrarily, contrariwise, **vice versa,** the other way around, **backwards,** turned around; **upside down,** over, **topsy-turvy; bottom up,** bottom side up; head over heels, heels over head

206 EXTERIORITY

NOUNS **1** **exteriority,** externalness, externality, **outwardness,** outerness; appearance, outward appearance, seeming, mien, **front**, manner; window-dressing, cosmetics; openness; extrinsicality 768; **superficiality**, shallowness 276; extraterritoriality, foreignness

2 **exterior**, external, **outside; surface**, superficies, covering 295, skin 2.4, outer skin *or* layer, epidermis, integument, envelope, crust, cortex, rind, shell 295.16; exoskeleton; cladding, plating; top, superstratum; **periphery, fringe**, circumference, outline, lineaments, border; **face**, outer face *or* side, facade, **front**; facet; extrados, back; store-front, shop-front, shop-window, street-front

3 **outdoors**, outside, **the out-of-doors**, the great out-of-doors, the open, **the open air**; outland, hinterland

4 **externalization**, exteriorization, bringing into the open, show, showing, display, displaying; projection; **objectification**, actualization, realization

VERBS 5 **externalize**, exteriorize, bring into the open, bring out, show, display, exhibit; **objectify**, actualize, project, realize; direct outward

6 <nf terms> **scratch the surface**; give a lick and a promise, do a cosmetic job, give a once-over-lightly, whitewash, give a nod

ADJS 7 **exterior, external**; extrinsic 768; **outer, outside, out, outward**, outward-facing, outlying, outstanding; **outermost**, outmost; front, facing; surface, superficial 276.5, epidermic, cortical, cuticular; exoskeletal; cosmetic, merely cosmetic; peripheral, **fringe**, roundabout; apparent, seeming; open 348.10, public 352.17; exomorphic

8 **outdoor, out-of-door**, out-of-doors, **outside, without-doors; open-air**, alfresco; out and about

9 extraterritorial, exterritorial; extraterrestrial, exterrestrial, extramundane; extragalactic, extralateral, extraliminal, extramural, extrapolar, extrasolar, extraprovincial, extratribal; foreign, outlandish, **alien**

ADVS 10 **externally, outwardly**, on the outside, exteriorly; **without, outside, outwards, out**; apparently, to all appearances; openly, publically, to judge by appearances; superficially, on the surface

11 **outdoors, out of doors, outside**, abroad; in the open, **in the open air**, alfresco, *en plein air* <Fr>

WORD ELEMENTS 12 e-, ec-, ect-, ecto-, ex-, ef-, epi-, eph-, extra-, hyper-, peripher-, periphero-

207 INTERIORITY

NOUNS 1 interiority, internalness, internality, **inwardness, innerness**, inness; introversion, internalization; **intrinsicality** 767; depth 275

2 **interior, inside**, inner, inward, internal, intern; inner recess, recesses, **innermost** *or* **deepest recesses**, penetralia, intimate places, secret place *or* places; bosom, secret heart, heart, heart of hearts, soul, vitals, vital center; inner self, inner life, inner landscape, inner *or* interior man, inner nature; intrados; core, center 208.2

3 **inland**, inlands, **interior**, up-country; **midland**, midlands; heartland; hinterland 233.2; Middle America

4 **insides, innards** <nf>, inwards, internals; inner mechanism, what makes it tick *and* works <nf>; **guts** <nf>, **vitals, viscera**, *kishkes* <Yiddish>, giblets; entrails, bowels, guts, enteron; tripes *and* stuffings <nf>

VERBS 5 internalize, put in, keep within; introvert, bottle up; enclose, embed, surround, contain, comprise, include, enfold, take to heart, assimilate; introspect; retreat into

ADJS 6 **interior, internal, inner, inside, inward**; intestine; **innermost**, inmost, **intimate**, private; visceral, gut <nf>; **intrinsic** 766.7; deep 275.10; central 208.11; indoor; live-in

7 **inland, interior**, up-country, up-river, landlocked; hinterland; **midland**, mediterranean; Middle American

8 intramarginal, intramural, intramundane, intramontane, intraterritorial, intracoastal, intragroupal

ADVS 9 **internally, inwardly**, interiorly, inly, **intimately**, deeply, profoundly, under the surface; **intrinsically** 767; centrally

10 **in, inside, within**; herein, therein, wherein

11 **inward, inwards, inwardly**, withinward, withinwards; inland, inshore

12 **indoors**, indoor, withindoors

PREPS 13 **in, into; within**, at, inside, **inside of**, in the limits of; to the heart *or* core of

WORD ELEMENTS 14 en-, em-, end-, endo-, ent-, ento-, eso-, infra-, in-, im-, il-, ir-, inter-, intra-, ob-

208 CENTRALITY

NOUNS 1 **centrality**, centralness, middleness, central *or* middle *or* mid position; equidistance; centricity, centricality; concentricity; centripetalism

2 **center**, centrum; **middle** 819, midpoint, **heart, core, nucleus; core of one's being, where one lives; kernel; pith**, marrow, medulla; **nub, hub**, nave, axis, pivot, fulcrum; **navel**, umbilicus, omphalos, belly button <nf>; bull's-eye; dead center; omphalos; "the still point of the turning world"—T S Eliot; storm center, eye of the storm

3 <biological terms> central body, centriole, centrosome, centrosphere

4 **focus,** focal point, prime focus, point of convergence; **center of interest** *or* attention, focus of attention; center of consciousness; **center of attraction, centerpiece,** clou, mecca, cynosure; star, key figure; polestar, lodestar; magnet; center of gravity

5 **nerve center,** ganglion, center of activity, hub, epicenter, hotbed, vital center; control center, guidance center

6 **headquarters** *or* **HQ,** central station, central office, main office, central administration, seat, base, **base of operations,** center of authority; general headquarters *or* **GHQ,** command post *or* **CP,** company headquarters; where the action is <nf>

7 **metropolis, capital;** art center, cultural center, medical center, shopping center, transportation center, trade center, manufacturing center, tourist center, community center, civic center, etc; capital city; holy place, place of pilgrimage

8 **centralization,** centering; nucleation; **focalization,** focus, focusing; convergence 169; **concentration,** concentralization, pooling; centralism

VERBS 9 **centralize, center,** middle; center round, center on *or* in, pivot on, revolve around

10 **focus,** focalize, come to a point *or* focus, bring to *or* into focus; bring *or* come to a head, get to the heart of the matter, home in on; zero in on, pinpoint; draw a bead on *and* get a handle on <nf>; **concentrate,** concenter, get it together <nf>; **channel,** direct, canalize, channelize; converge 169.2

ADJS 11 **central,** centric, **middle** 819; centermost, middlemost, **midmost; equidistant;** centralized, concentrated; umbilical, omphalic; axial, **pivotal,** key; centroidal; centrosymmetric; geocentric, epicentral; halfway

12 **nuclear,** nucleate, core

13 **focal,** confocal; converging; centrolineal, centripetal; cynosural; pivotal

14 **concentric;** homocentric, centric; **coaxial,** coaxal

ADVS 15 **centrally,** in the center *or* middle of, at the heart of

209 ENVIRONMENT

NOUNS 1 **environment, surroundings, environs,** surround, ambience, entourage, circle, circumjacencies, circumambiencies, **circumstances,** environing circumstances, *alentours* <Fr>; **precincts,** ambit, purlieus, **milieu; neighborhood, vicinity,** vicinage, area; **suburbs,** burbs <nf>; outskirts, outposts, borderlands; borders, boundaries, limits, periphery, perimeter, compass, circuit; **context, situation;** habitat 228; total environment, configuration, gestalt

2 **setting, background,** backdrop, ground, surround, field, scene, arena, theater, locale, confines; back, rear, hinterland, distance; stage, stage setting, stage set, *mise-en-scène* <Fr>

3 <surrounding influence or condition> **milieu, ambience, atmosphere, climate, air,** aura, spirit, feeling, feel, quality, color, local color, sense, sense of place, note, tone, overtone, undertone, vibrations *or* vibes <nf>

4 <natural or suitable environment> **element,** medium; **the environment**

5 **surrounding, encompassment,** environment, circumambience *or* circumambiency, circumjacence *or* circumjacency; containment, **enclosure** 212; **encirclement,** cincture, encincture, circumcincture, circling, girdling, girding; **envelopment,** enfoldment, encompassment, encompassing, compassing, embracement; circumposition; circumflexion; inclusion 771, involvement 898

VERBS 6 **surround, environ,** compass, **encompass,** enclose, close; go round *or* around, compass about, outlie; **envelop,** enfold, lap, wrap, enwrap, embrace, enclasp, embosom, embay, involve, invest

7 **encircle, circle,** ensphere, belt, belt in, zone, cincture, encincture; **girdle,** gird, begird, engird; ring, band; loop; wreathe, wreathe *or* twine around

ADJS 8 **environing, surrounding,** encompassing, enclosing; **enveloping,** wrapping, enwrapping, enfolding, embracing; **encircling,** circling; bordering, peripheral, perimetric; circumjacent, circumferential, circumambient, ambient; circumfluent, circumfluous; circumflex; **roundabout,** suburban, neighboring, neighbhorhood

9 **environmental,** environal; **ecological**

10 **surrounded,** environed, compassed, **encompassed,** enclosed, on all sides, hemmed-in; **enveloped,** wrapped, enfolded, lapped, wreathed

11 **encircled, circled,** ringed, cinctured, encinctured, belted, girdled, girt, begirt, zoned

ADVS 12 **around,** round, **about,** round about, in the neighborhood *or* vicinity *or* vicinage; close, close about

13 **all round, all about,** on every side, on all sides, on all hands, right and left

WORD ELEMENTS 14 amph-, amphi-, circum-, peri-

210 CIRCUMSCRIPTION

NOUNS 1 **circumscription, limiting,** circumscribing, **bounding, demarcation,** delimitation, definition, determination, specification; limit-setting, inclusion-exclusion, circling-in *or* -out, encincture, boundary-marking; containment

2 **limitation, limiting, restriction,** restricting, confinement 212.1, prescription, proscription, restraint, discipline, moderation, continence; qualification, **hedging;** bounds 211, boundary, cap, limit 211.3; time-limit, time constraint; quota; small space 258.3; proviso, condition

3 **patent, copyright,** certificate of invention, *brevet d'invention* <Fr>; **trademark, logo** *or* logotype, registered trademark, trade name, service mark

VERBS 4 **circumscribe, bound; mark off** *or* mark out, stake out, lay off, rope off; **demarcate,** delimit, delimitate, draw *or* mark *or* set *or* lay out boundaries, circle in *or* out, hedge in, set the limit, mark the periphery; **define,** determine, fix, specify; surround 209.6; enclose 212.5

5 **limit, restrict, restrain, bound, confine,** cap, ground <nf>; straiten, narrow, tighten; specialize; stint, scant; **condition,** qualify, hedge, hedge about; constrain; draw the line, set an end point *or* a stopping place; set a quota; discipline, moderate, contain; restrain oneself, pull one's punches <nf>; **patent, copyright,** register

ADJS 6 **circumscribed,** circumscript; ringed *or* circled *or* hedged about; **demarcated, delimited, defined,** definite, determined, determinate, specific, stated, set, fixed; surrounded 209.10, encircled 209.11

7 **limited, restricted,** bound, **bounded, finite;** confined 212.10, prescribed, proscribed, cramped, strait, straitened, narrow; conditioned, qualified, hedged, capped; disciplined, moderated; **deprived,** in straitened circumstances, pinched, inhibiting, on short commons, on short rations, strapped; patented, registered, protected, copyrighted

8 **restricted,** out of bounds, off-limits

9 **limiting, restricting,** defining, determining, determinative, confining; limitative, limitary, restrictive, definitive, exclusive; frozen, rationed

10 **terminal,** limital; limitable, terminable

211 BOUNDS

NOUNS 1 **bounds, limits,** boundaries, limitations, **confines, pale,** marches, bourns, verges, edges, outlines, outer markings, skirts, outskirts, **fringes,** metes, metes and bounds; periphery, **perimeter;** coordinates, parameters; **compass, circumference,** circumscription 210

2 **outline, contour,** delineation, lines, lineaments, shapes, figure, figuration, **configuration,** gestalt; **features,** main features; **profile, silhouette;** relief; skeleton, framework, frame, armature

3 **boundary, bound, limit,** limitation, extremity 794.5; **barrier,** block, claustrum; delimitation, hedge, break *or* breakoff point, cutoff, cutoff point, terminus; time limit, time frame, term, deadline, target date, terminal date, time allotment; finish, **end** 820, tail end; **start,** starting line *or* point, mark; **limiting factor,** determinant, limit *or* boundary condition; bracket, brackets, **bookends** <nf>; threshold, limen; upper limit, ceiling, apogee, high-water mark; lower limit, floor, low-water mark, nadir; **confine,** march, mark, bourn, mete, compass, circumscription; **boundary line, line, border line,** frontier, division line, interface, break, boundary, line of demarcation *or* circumvallation

4 **border,** limbus, bordure <heraldry>, **edge,** limb, **verge, brink,** brow, **brim, rim, margin,** marge, **skirt, fringe, hem,** list, selvage *or* selvedge, side; **forefront, cutting edge,** front line, vanguard 216.2; sideline; shore, bank, coast; **lip,** labium, labrum, labellum; flange; ledge; frame, enframement, mat; featheredge; ragged edge

5 **frontier, border, borderland,** border ground, marchland, march, marches; outskirts, outpost; frontier post; iron curtain, bamboo curtain, Berlin wall; Pillars of Hercules; three-mile *or* twelve-mile limit

6 **curb,** kerb <Brit>, curbing; border stone, curbstone, kerbstone <Brit>, edgestone

7 **edging, bordering,** bordure <heraldry>, **trimming,** binding, skirting; fringe, fimbriation, fimbria; **hem,** selvage, list, welt; frill, frilling; beading, flounce, furbelow, galloon, motif, ruffle, valance

VERBS 8 **bound,** circumscribe 210.4, surround 209.6, limit 210.5, enclose 212.5, divide, separate

9 **outline,** contour; **delineate;** silhouette, profile, limn

10 **border, edge, bound, rim, skirt, hem, hem in, ringe,** befringe, lap, list, margin, marge, marginate, march, verge, line, side; **adjoin** 223.9; **frame,** enframe, set off; trim, bind; purl; purfle

ADJS 11 **bordering, fringing,** rimming, skirting; **bounding,** boundary, **limiting,** limit, determining *or* determinant *or* determinative; threshold, liminal, limbic; extreme, terminal; **marginal, borderline,** frontier; coastal, littoral

12 **bordered,** edged; margined, marged, marginate, marginated; **fringed,** befringed, trimmed, skirted, fimbriate, fimbriated

13 lipped, labial, labiate

14 outlining, delineatory; peripheral, perimetric, perimetrical, circumferential; outlined, **in outline**

ADVS 15 **on the verge, on the brink,** on the borderline, on the point, on the edge, on the ragged edge, at the threshold, at the limit *or* bound; **peripherally,** marginally, at the periphery

16 **thus far,** so far, thus far and no farther

212 ENCLOSURE

NOUNS 1 **enclosure; confinement,** containing, containment, circumscription 210, immurement, walling- *or* hedging- *or* hemming- *or* boxing- *or* fencing-in, circumvallation; **imprisonment,** incarceration, jailing, locking-up, lockdown; **siege,** besieging, beleaguerment, blockade, blockading, cordoning, quarantine, besetment; inclusion 771; **envelopment** 209.5

2 **packaging, packing,** package; boxing, crating, encasement; canning, tinning <Brit>; bottling; **wrapping,** enwrapment, bundling; shrink-wrapping

3 <enclosed place> **enclosure,** close, **confine,** precinct, enclave, pale, paling, list, cincture; **cloister; pen, coop,** fold; **yard,** park, court, courtyard, curtilage, toft; square, quadrangle, quad <nf>; **field,** delimited field, **arena,** theater, ground; reserve, sanctuary; **container** 195

4 **fence, wall,** boundary 211.3, **barrier;** stone wall; paling, palisade; rail, railing; balustrade, balustrading; moat; arcade

VERBS 5 **enclose,** close in, bound, include, **contain;** compass, encompass; **surround,** encircle 209.7; **shut** *or* **pen in,** coop in; **fence in,** wall in, wall up, rail in, rail off, screen off, curtain off; **hem** *or* **hedge in,** box in, pocket; shut *or* coop *or* mew up; pen, coop, corral, cage, impound, mew; **imprison,** incarcerate, jail, lock up, lock down; **besiege,** beset, beleaguer, leaguer, cordon, cordon off, quarantine, blockade; yard, yard up; house in; chamber; stable, kennel, shrine, enshrine; **wrap** 295.20

6 **confine, immure;** quarantine; cramp, straiten, encase; cloister, closet, cabin, crib; bury, entomb, coffin, casket; bottle up *or* in, box up *or* in

7 **fence, wall,** fence in, fence up; pale, rail, bar; pen up; hem, hem in, hedge, hedge in, hedge out; picket, palisade; bulkhead in

8 parenthesize, bracket, precede and follow, bookend

9 **package, pack, parcel;** box, box up, case, encase, crate, carton; can, tin <Brit>; bottle, jar, pot; barrel, cask, tank; sack, bag; basket, hamper; capsule, encyst; contain; **wrap,** enwrap, bundle; shrink-wrap; bandage

ADJS 10 **enclosed,** closed-in; **confined,** bound, immured, cloistered, "cabined, cribbed, confined"—Shakespeare; **imprisoned,** incarcerated, jailed; caged, cramped, restrained, corralled; besieged, beleaguered, leaguered, beset, cordoned, cordoned off, quarantined, blockaded; **shut-in,** pent-up, penned, cooped, mewed, walled- *or* hedged- *or* hemmed- *or* boxed- *or* fenced-in, fenced, walled, paled, railed, barred; hemmed, hedged

11 enclosing, confining, **cloistered,** cloisterlike, claustral, parietal, surrounding 209.8; limiting 210.9

12 **packed, packaged,** boxed, crated, canned, tinned <Brit>, parceled, cased, encased; bottled; capsuled, encapsuled; **wrapped,** enwrapped, bundled; shrink-wrapped; prepacked; vacuum-packed; bandaged, sheathed

213 INTERPOSITION

<a putting or lying between>

NOUNS 1 **interposition, interposing,** interposal, interlocation, intermediacy, interjacence; **intervention,** intervenience, intercurrence, slipping-in, sandwiching; leafing-in, interleaving, interfoliation, tipping-in; **intrusion** 214

2 **interjection, interpolation,** introduction, throwing- *or* tossing-in, **injection,** insinuation; intercalation, interlineation; **insertion** 191; interlocution, remark, parenthetical *or* side *or* incidental *or* casual remark, *obiter dictum* <L>, aside, parenthesis; episode; infix, insert

3 **interspersion, interfusion,** interlardment, interpenetration

4 **intermediary,** intermedium, mediary, medium; link, **connecting link,** tie, connection, **go-between,** liaison; middleman, broker, agent, wholesaler, jobber, distributor; **mediator** 466.3

5 **partition, dividing wall,** division, separation, *cloison* <Fr>; **wall, barrier;** panel; paries, parietes; brattice <mining>; bulkhead; diaphragm, midriff, midsection; septum, interseptum, septulum, dissepiment; **border** 211.4, **dividing line,** property line, party wall; **buffer, bumper,** mat, fender, cushion, pad, shock pad, collision mat; buffer state

VERBS 6 **interpose, interject, interpolate,** intercalate, interjaculate; **mediate, go between,** liaise <Brit nf>; **intervene;** put between, sandwich; **insert in,** stick in, introduce in, insinuate in, sandwich in, slip in, inject in, implant in; leaf in, interleaf, tip in, interfoliate; **foist in,** fudge in, work in, drag in, lug in, drag *or* lug in by the heels, worm in, squeeze in, smuggle in, throw in, run in, thrust in, edge in, wedge in; **intrude** 214.5

7 **intersperse, interfuse,** interlard, interpenetrate; intersow, intersprinkle

8 **partition,** set apart, separate, divide; **wall off,** fence off, screen off, curtain off

ADJS 9 interjectional, interpolative, intercalary; parenthetical, episodic

10 **intervening,** intervenient, **interjacent,** intercurrent;

intermediate, intermediary, medial, mean, medium, mesne, median, **middle**
11 partitioned, walled; mural; septal, parietal
PREPS 12 **between, betwixt,** 'twixt, betwixt and between <nf>; **among, amongst,** 'mongst; **amid, amidst,** mid, 'mid, midst, 'midst; in the midst of, in the thick of
WORD ELEMENTS 13 medi-, medio-, mes-, meso-; inter-, intra-

214 INTRUSION

NOUNS 1 **intrusion,** obtrusion, **interloping;** interposition 213, interposal, imposition, insinuation, **interference,** intervention, interventionism, interruption, injection, interjection 213.2; **encroachment,** entrenchment, trespass, trespassing, unlawful entry; impingement, **infringement,** invasion, incursion, inroad, influx, irruption, infiltration; entrance 189
2 **meddling,** intermeddling; **butting-in** *and* kibitzing *and* sticking one's nose in<nf>; **meddlesomeness, intrusiveness, forwardness,** obtrusiveness; **officiousness,** impertinence, presumption, presumptuousness; inquisitiveness 981.1
3 **intruder, interloper, trespasser;** crasher *and* gatecrasher <nf>, unwelcome *or* uninvited guest; invader, encroacher, infiltrator
4 **meddler,** intermeddler; **busybody, pry,** Paul Pry, prier, Nosey Parker *or* nosey Parker *or* Nosy Parker <nf>, snoop *or* snooper, *yenta* <Yiddish>, **kibitzer** *and* backseat driver <nf>
VERBS 5 **intrude,** obtrude, **interlope;** come between, **interpose** 213.6, insert oneself, **intervene, interfere,** insinuate, impose; **encroach, infringe,** impinge, **trespass,** trespass on *or* upon, trench, entrench, invade, infiltrate; **break in upon,** break in, burst in, charge in, crash in, smash in, storm in; **barge in** <nf>, irrupt, **cut in,** thrust in 191.7, push in, press in, rush in, throng in, crowd in, squeeze in, elbow in, muscle in <nf>; **butt in** *and* **horn in** *and* chisel in *and* muscle in <nf>; appoint oneself; crash *and* crash the gates <nf>; **get in,** get in on, creep in, steal in, sneak in, slink in, slip in; foist in, worm *or* work in, edge in, put in *or* shove in one's oar; **foist oneself upon,** thrust oneself upon; put on *or* upon, impose on *or* upon, put one's two cents in <nf>
6 **interrupt, put in, cut in, break in;** jump in, chime in *and* chip in *and* put in one's two-cents worth <nf>
7 **meddle, intermeddle,** busybody, not mind one's business; **meddle with, tamper with,** mix oneself up with, inject oneself into, monkey with, fool with *or* around with <nf>, mess with *or* around with <nf>; **pry,** Paul-Pry, snoop, nose, **stick** *or* **poke one's nose in,** stick one's long nose into; have a finger in, have a finger in the pie; kibitz <nf>
ADJS 8 **intrusive,** obtrusive, **interfering,** intervenient, invasive, interruptive
9 **meddlesome,** meddling; **officious,** overofficious, self-appointed, impertinent, presumptuous; **busybody,** busy; pushing, pushy, forward; **prying,** nosy *or* nosey *and* snoopy <nf>; inquisitive 981.5
PHRS 10 <nf terms> **none of your business;** what's it to you?, **mind your own business,** keep your nose out of this, **butt out,** go soak your head, go sit on a tack, go roll your hoop, go peddle your fish, go fly a kite, go chase yourself, go jump in the lake; too many cooks spoil the broth

215 CONTRAPOSITION

<a placing over against>

NOUNS 1 contraposition, anteposition, posing against *or* over against; **opposition,** opposing, opposure; **antithesis,** contrast, ironic *or* contrastive juxtaposition; confrontment, **confrontation;** polarity, polar opposition, **polarization;** contrariety 779; contention 457; hostility 451.2
2 **opposites,** antipodes, polar opposites, contraries; **poles,** opposite poles, antipoles, counterpoles, North Pole, South Pole; antipodal points, antipoints; contrapositives <logic>; night and day, black and white
3 opposite side, other side, the other side of the picture *or* coin, other face; **reverse, inverse, obverse, converse;** heads, tails <of a coin>; flip side *and* B-side <nf>
VERBS 4 contrapose, **oppose,** contrast, match, **set over against,** pose against *or* over against, put in opposition, set *or* pit against one another; **confront,** face, front, stand *or* lie opposite, stand opposed *or* vis-à-vis; be at loggerheads, be eyeball to eyeball, bump heads, meet head-on; counteract 451.3; contend; subtend; **polarize;** contraposit <logic>
ADJS 5 **contrapositive,** opposite, opposing, **facing,** confronting, confrontational, confrontive, eyeball-to-eyeball, one-on-one; **opposed,** on opposite sides, adversarial, at loggerheads, at daggers drawn, antithetic, antithetical; **reverse, inverse, obverse, converse; antipodal; polar,** polarized one-on-one, up against
ADVS 6 **opposite, poles apart,** at opposite extremes; contrary, contrariwise, counter; just opposite, **face-to-face,** vis-à-vis, *front à front* <Fr>, nose to nose, one on one, eyeball-to-eyeball, back to back

PREPS 7 **opposite to,** in opposition to, against, over against; versus, v *or* vs; **facing, across, fronting,** confronting, **in front of;** toward

WORD ELEMENTS 8 ant-, anti-, anth-, cat-, cata-, cath-, kat-, kata-, co-, contra-, counter-, enantio-, ob-

216 FRONT

NOUNS 1 **front, fore,** forepart, forequarter, foreside, forefront, forehand; **priority,** anteriority; front office; **frontier** 211.5; foreland; **foreground;** proscenium; frontage; front page; frontispiece; **preface,** front matter, foreword; prefix; front view, front elevation, front seat, front yard; **head,** heading; **face,** façade, frontal; fascia; **false front,** window dressing, display, persona; front man; bold *or* brave front, brave face; facet; obverse <of a coin or medal>, head <of a coin>; lap

2 **vanguard,** van, point, point man; **spearhead,** advance guard, **forefront, cutting edge,** avant-garde, outguard; scout; **pioneer;** precursor 816; **front-runner,** leader, first in line; **front,** battlefront, line, front line, forward line, battle line, line of departure; front rank, first line, first line of battle; **outpost,** farthest outpost; **bridgehead,** beachhead, airhead, railhead; advanced base

3 **prow, bow, stem,** rostrum, figurehead, nose, beak; bowsprit, jib boom; forecastle, forepeak; foredeck; foremast

4 **face,** facies, **visage;** physiognomy, phiz *and* dial <nf>; **countenance,** features, lineaments, favor; mug *and* mush *and* pan *and* kisser *and* map *and* puss <nf>

5 **forehead, brow,** lofty brow

6 **chin,** point of the chin, button <nf>

VERBS 7 be *or* stand in front, **lead, head,** head up; **get ahead of,** steal a march on, take the lead, come to the front *or* fore, forge ahead; be the front-runner, lead, lead the pack *or* field, be first; **pioneer;** front, front for, represent, speak for; spearhead; push the envelope <nf>

8 **confront, front,** affront <old>, **face, meet, encounter,** breast, stem, brave, meet squarely, square up to, come to grips with, head *or* wade into, meet face to face *or* eyeball to eyeball *or* one-on-one, come face to face with, look in the face *or* eye, stare in the face, stand up to, stand fast, hold one's ground, hang tough *and* tough it out *and* gut it out <nf>; call someone's bluff, call *or* bring someone to account; **confront with, face with,** bring face to face with, tell one to one's face, cast *or* throw in one's teeth, present to, **put** *or* **bring before,** set *or* place before, lay before, put *or* lay it on the line; bring up, bring forward; put it to, put it up to; **challenge,** dare, defy, fly in the teeth of, throw down the gauntlet, ask for trouble, start something, do something about it

9 **front on, face upon, give upon,** face *or* look toward, look out upon, look over, **overlook**

ADJS 10 **front, frontal, anterior; full-face, full-frontal,** physiognomic; **fore, forward,** forehand; foremost, headmost; first, earliest, **pioneering, trail-blazing, advanced,** front-running; **leading,** up-front <nf>, first, chief, head, prime, primary; **confronting,** confrontational, head-on, one-on-one *and* eyeball-to-eyeball <nf>; **ahead, in front,** one-up, one jump *or* move ahead

11 **fronting, facing,** looking on *or* out on, opposite

ADVS 12 **before, ahead,** out *or* up ahead, **in front,** in the front, in the lead, in the van, in advance, **in the forefront,** in the foreground; **to the fore,** to the front; foremost, headmost, first; before one's face *or* eyes, under one's nose

13 **frontward,** frontwards, **forward,** forwards, vanward, **headward,** headwards, **onward,** onwards; **facing** 215.7

217 REAR

NOUNS 1 **rear, rear end, hind end,** hind part, hinder part, afterpart, rearward, **posterior, behind,** breech, stern, tail, tail end; **afterpiece,** tailpiece, heelpiece, heel; **back,** back side, reverse <of a coin or medal>, tail <of a coin>; back door, postern, postern door; back seat, rumble seat; hindhead, occiput; wake, train; back burner

2 rear guard, rear, rear area, backyard

3 **back,** dorsum, ridge; dorsal region, lumbar region, backbone; hindquarter; loin

4 **buttocks, rump,** bottom, posterior, derrière; croup, crupper; podex; haunches; gluteal region; nates

5 <nf terms> **ass,** arse *and* bum <chiefly Brit>, behind, backside, buns, **butt, can,** cheeks, hind end, nether cheeks, stern, tail, rusty-dusty, **fanny,** prat, keister, popo, rear, rear end, tuchis *or* tushy *or* tush

6 **tail,** cauda, caudation, caudal appendage; tailpiece, scut <of a hare, rabbit, or deer>, brush <of a fox>, fantail <of fowl>; rattail, rat's-tail; dock, stub; caudal fin; **queue,** cue, **pigtail**

7 **stern,** heel; poop, transom, counter, fantail; sternpost, rudderpost; after mast

VERBS 8 <be behind> **bring up the rear,** come last, **follow,** come after; trail, trail behind, lag behind, draggle, **straggle;** fall behind, fall back, fall astern; **back up, back,** go back, go backwards, regress 163.5, retrogress, get behind; revert 859.4

ADJS 9 **rear,** rearward, **back,** backward, retrograde, **posterior,** postern, tail; after *or* aft; **hind, hinder;**

hindmost, hindermost, hindhand, posteriormost, **aftermost,** aftmost, rearmost; latter

10 <anatomy> posterial, dorsal, retral, tergal, lumbar, gluteal, sciatic, occipital

11 **tail,** caudal, caudate, caudated, tailed; taillike, caudiform

12 backswept, swept-back

ADVS 13 **behind, in the rear, in back of;** in the background; behind the scenes; behind one's back; back to back; tandem

14 **after;** aft, abaft, baft, astern; aback

15 **rearward,** rearwards, to the rear, **hindward,** hindwards, **backward,** backwards, posteriorly, retrad, tailward, tailwards

218 SIDE

NOUNS 1 **side, flank, hand;** laterality, sidedness, handedness; unilaterality, unilateralism, bilaterality, bilateralism, etc, multilaterality, many-sidedness; border 211.4; parallelism 203; bank, shore, coast; siding, planking; beam; broadside; quarter; hip, haunch; cheek, jowl, chop; temple; **profile,** side-view, half-face view; side entrance, side door

2 **lee side, lee,** leeward; lee shore; lee tide; lee wheel, lee helm, lee anchor, lee sheet, lee tack

3 **windward side, windward,** windwards, weather side, weather, weatherboard; weather wheel, weather helm, weather anchor, weather sheet, weather tack, weather rail, weather bow, weather deck; weather roll; windward tide, weather-going tide, windward ebb, windward flood

VERBS 4 **side, flank;** edge, skirt, border 211.10; stand side by side

5 **go sideways, sidle,** lateral, lateralize, **edge, veer, angle, slant, skew,** sidestep; go crabwise; **sideslip, skid;** make leeway

ADJS 6 **side, lateral;** flanking, skirting, facing, oblique; **beside,** to the side, off to one side; **alongside,** parallel 203.6; next-beside; **sidelong,** sideling, **sidewise,** sideway, **sideways,** sideward, **sidewards,** glancing; leeward, lee; windward, weather; side-by-side

7 **sided, flanked,** handed; lateral; **one-sided,** unilateral, unilateralist, **two-sided, bilateral,** bilateralist, etc; dihedral, bifacial; **three-sided, trilateral,** trihedral, triquetrous; **four-sided, quadrilateral,** tetrahedral, etc; **many-sided, multilateral,** multifaceted, polyhedral; left-hand, sinistral, right-hand, dextral

ADVS 8 **laterally,** laterad; **sideways,** sideway, **sidewise, sidewards,** sideward, sideling, sidling, sidelong, aside, crabwise; side-to-side; **edgeways,** edgeway, **edgewise; widthwise, widthways,** thwartwise; **askance,** askant, asquint, glancingly; broadside, **broadside on,** on the beam; on its side, on its beam ends; on the other hand; right and left

9 **leeward,** to leeward, alee, downwind; **windward,** to windward, weatherward, aweather, upwind

10 **aside,** on one side, **to one side,** to the side, sidelong, on the side, on the one hand, on one hand, on the other hand; **alongside,** in parallel 203.7, side-by-side; nearby, in juxtaposition 223.21; away

PREPS 11 **beside, alongside, abreast,** abeam, by, on the flank of, along by, **by the side of,** along the side of

PHRS 12 **side by side,** cheek to cheek, cheek by cheek, cheek by jowl, shoulder to shoulder, yardarm to yardarm

219 RIGHT SIDE

NOUNS 1 **right side, right,** off side <of a horse or vehicle>, starboard; Epistle side, decanal side; recto <of a book>; right field; starboard tack; right wing; right-winger, conservative, reactionary

2 **rightness,** dextrality; dexterity, **right-handedness;** dextroversion, dextrocularity, dextroduction; dextrorotation, dextrogyration

3 right-hander; righty <nf>

ADJS 4 **right, right-hand,** dextral, dexter; off, **starboard;** rightmost; dextrorse; dextropedal; dextrocardial; dextrocerebral; dextrocular; **clockwise,** dextrorotary, dextrogyrate, dextrogyratory; right-wing, right-wingish, right-of-center, conservative, reactionary, dry <Brit nf>

5 **right-handed,** dextromanual, dexterous

6 **ambidextrous,** ambidextral, ambidexter; dextrosinistral, sinistrodextral

ADVS 7 **rightward,** rightwards, rightwardly, **right, to the right,** dextrally, dextrad; on the right, dexter; starboard, astarboard

220 LEFT SIDE

NOUNS 1 **left side, left, left hand,** left-hand side, wrong side <nf>, near *or* nigh side <of a horse or vehicle>, portside, port, larboard; Gospel side, cantorial side, verso <of a book>; left field; port tack; left wing, left-winger, radical, liberal, progressive

2 **leftness,** sinistrality, **left-handedness;** sinistration; levoversion, levoduction; levorotation, sinistrogyration

3 **left-hander, southpaw** *and* lefty *and* portsider <nf>

ADJS 4 **left, left-hand,** sinister, sinistral; near, nigh; **larboard, port;** sinistrorse; sinistrocerebral;

sinistrocular; counterclockwise, levorotatory, sinistrogyrate; left-wing, left-wingish, left-of-center, radical, liberal, progressive, wet <Brit nf>

5 **left-handed,** sinistromanual, sinistral, lefty *and* southpaw <nf>

ADVS 6 **leftward,** leftwards, leftwardly, **left, to the left,** sinistrally, sinister, sinistrad; on the left; larboard, port, aport

221 PRESENCE

NOUNS 1 **presence,** being here *or* there, hereness, thereness, physical *or* actual presence, spiritual presence; **immanence,** indwellingness, **inherence;** whereness, **immediacy;** ubiety; availability, accessibility; nearness 223; **occurrence** 831.2, existence 761; manifestness, materialness

2 **omnipresence,** all-presence, **ubiquity;** continuum, plenum; infinity

3 **permeation, pervasion,** penetration; **suffusion,** transfusion, perfusion, diffusion, imbuement; absorption; **overrunning,** overspreading, ripple effect, overswarming, whelming, overwhelming

4 **attendance,** frequenting, frequence; participation; number present; turnout *and* box office *and* draw <nf>

5 **attender, visitor,** churchgoer, moviegoer, etc; **patron; fan** *and* buff <nf>, aficionado, supporter; **frequenter,** habitué, haunter; spectator 918; theatergoer; audience 48.6; regular customer, regular

VERBS 6 **be present,** be located *or* situated 159.10, be there, be found, be met with; **occur** 830.5, exist 761.8; lie, stand, remain; fall in the way of; dwell in, indwell, inhere

7 **pervade, permeate,** penetrate; **suffuse,** inform, transfuse, perfuse, diffuse, leaven, imbue; **fill,** extend throughout, leave no void, occupy; **overrun,** overswarm, overspread, bespread, run through, meet one at every turn, whelm, overwhelm; creep *or* crawl *or* swarm with, be lousy with <nf>, teem with; honeycomb

8 **attend, be at,** be present at, find oneself at, **go** *or* **come to;** appear 33.8, turn up, set foot in, show up <nf>, show one's face, make *or* put in an appearance, give the pleasure of one's company, make a personal appearance; materialize; **visit, take in** *and* do *and* catch <nf>; sit in *or* at; be on hand, be on deck <nf>; watch, see; witness, look on, *assister* <Fr>; participate, take part

9 **revisit,** return to, go back to, come again

10 **frequent, haunt,** resort to, hang *and* hang around *and* hang about *and* hang out <nf>

11 **present oneself, report;** report for duty

ADJS 12 **present,** attendant; **on hand,** on deck <nf>, on board, in attendance; **immediate,** immanent, indwelling, inherent, **available, accessible, at hand,** in view, within reach *or* sight *or* call, in place

13 **omnipresent, all-present,** ubiquitous, everywhere; continuous, uninterrupted, infinite

14 **pervasive,** pervading, suffusive, perfusive, diffusive, suffusing

15 **permeated,** saturated, shot through, filled with, perfused, suffused, imbued; honeycombed; crawling, creeping, swarming, teeming, lousy with <nf>

ADVS 16 **here, there**

17 **in person,** personally, bodily, **in the flesh** <nf>, in one's own person, *in propria persona* <L>

PREPS 18 **in the presence of,** in the face of, under the eyes *or* nose of, **before**

PHRS 19 all present and accounted for; standing room only *or* SRO

222 ABSENCE

NOUNS 1 **absence,** nonpresence, awayness; nowhereness, **nonexistence** 762; want, **lack,** total lack, blank, deprivation; nonoccurrence, neverness; **subtraction** 255

2 **vacancy,** vacuity, voidness, **emptiness,** blankness, hollowness, inanition; **bareness,** barrenness, desolateness, bleakness, desertedness; **nonoccupancy,** nonoccupation, vacancy, noninhabitance, nonresidence; vacancy, job vacancy, opening, open place *or* post, vacant post

3 **void, vacuum,** blank, emptiness, empty space, inanity, vacuity; **nothingness;** *tabula rasa* <L>, clean *or* blank slate; **nothing** 762.2

4 **absence,** nonattendance, **absenting, leaving,** taking leave, **departure** 188; "to leave is to die a little"—French saying, "Say, is not absence death to those who love?"—Pope; running away, fleeing, decamping, bolting, skedaddling *and* absquatulating <old nf>, abscondence, scarpering <Brit nf>, desertion, defection; **disappearance** 34, escape 369; **absentation,** nonappearance, default, unauthorized *or* unexcused absence; **truancy, hooky** <nf>, French leave, **cut** <nf>; **absence without leave** *or* AWOL; **absenteeism,** truantism, absentation; **leave, leave of absence,** furlough; **vacation,** holiday, paid vacation, paid holiday, time off, day off, comp *or* compensation time; authorized *or* excused absence, sick leave; sabbatical

5 **absentee, truant,** no-show, missing person

6 **nobody, no one,** no man, no woman, not one, not a single one *or* person, **not a soul** *or* **blessed soul** *or* **living soul,** never a one, ne'er a one, nary one <nf>, nobody on earth *or* under the sun, nobody present; nonperson, unperson; nonentity

VERBS 7 **be absent, stay away,** keep away, keep out of the way, not come, not show up <nf>, not turn up, turn up missing <nf>, stay away in droves <nf>, fail to appear, default, sit out, include oneself out <nf>

8 **absent oneself, take leave** *or* **leave of absence,** go on leave *or* furlough; **vacation,** go on vacation *or* holiday, take time off, take off from work; slip off *or* away, duck *or* sneak out <nf>, slip out, make oneself scarce <nf>, leave the scene, bow out, exit, vacate, **depart** 188.6, **disappear** 34.2, escape 369.6; defect, desert

9 **play truant, go AWOL,** take French leave; play hooky, cut *or* skip <nf>, cut classes; jump ship

10 <nf terms> **split,** bugger off, fuck off, f off, make tracks, pull up stakes, push along, scarper <Brit>, push off, skedaddle *or* absquatulate <old>, **haul ass,** bag ass, **beat it, blow,** boogie, bug out, cut, **cut out,** cut and run, peel out, bunk off *or* piss off <Brit>, scram, shove off, vamoose

ADJS **11 absent,** not present, nonattendant, **away, gone,** departed, disappeared, vanished, absconded, out of sight; **missing,** among the missing, wanting, **lacking,** not found, nowhere to be found, omitted, taken away, subtracted, deleted; no longer present *or* with us *or* among us; long-lost; **nonexistent;** conspicuous by its absence

12 **nonresident,** not in residence, from home, **away from home,** on leave *or* vacation *or* holiday, on sabbatical leave; on tour, on the road; abroad, overseas

13 **truant,** absent without leave *or* **AWOL**

14 **vacant, empty,** hollow, inane, **bare, vacuous, void,** without content, with nothing inside, devoid, null, null and void; **blank,** clear, white, bleached; featureless, unrelieved, characterless, bland, insipid; **barren** 891.4

15 **available, open,** free, **unoccupied,** unfilled, **uninhabited,** unpopulated, unpeopled, untaken, untenanted, tenantless, untended, unmanned, unstaffed; **deserted,** abandoned, forsaken, godforsaken <nf>

ADVS **16 absently; vacantly, emptily,** hollowly, vacuously, blankly

17 **nowhere,** in no place, neither here nor there; nowhither

18 **away** 188.21, **elsewhere,** somewhere else, not here; elsewhither

PREPS **19** absent, lacking, sans; void of, empty of, free of, **without** 992.17

223 NEARNESS

NOUNS **1 nearness, closeness,** nighness, **proximity,** propinquity, intimacy, immediacy; approximation, approach, convergence; a rough idea <nf>; **vicinity,** vicinage, **neighborhood,** environs, surroundings, surround, setting, grounds, purlieus, confines, precinct; **foreground,** immediate foreground; convenience, handiness, accessibility

2 **short distance, short way,** little ways, **step,** short step, span, brief span, short piece <nf>, a little, intimate distance; shortcut; short range; close quarters *or* range *or* grips; middle distance; **stone's throw,** spitting distance <nf>, bowshot, gunshot, pistol shot; earshot, earreach, a whoop *and* a whoop and a holler *and* two whoops and a holler <nf>, ace, bit <nf>, **hair, hairbreadth** *or* **hairsbreadth,** finger's breadth *or* width, an inch; inch, millimeter, centimeter; near miss

3 **juxtaposition, apposition,** adjacency; **contiguity,** contiguousness, conterminousness *or* coterminousness; butting, abuttal, abutment; adjunction, junction 800.1, connection, union; **conjunction,** conjugation; appulse, syzygy; perigee, perihelion

4 **meeting,** meeting up, joining, joining up, **encounter;** juncture; confrontation; rencontre; near-miss, collision course, near thing, narrow squeak *or* brush

5 **contact, touch,** touching, *attouchement* <Fr>, taction, tangency, contingence; gentle *or* tentative contact, caress, brush, glance, nudge, kiss, rub, graze; impingement, impingence; osculation

6 **neighbor,** neighborer, next-door *or* immediate neighbor; borderer; abutter, adjoiner; bystander, onlooker, looker-on; tangent; buffer state; ringside seat

VERBS 7 **near, come near,** nigh, draw near *or* nigh, **approach** 167.3, come within shouting distance; **converge,** shake hands <nf>; come within an ace *or* an inch

8 **be near** *or* **around,** be in the vicinity *or* neighborhood, **approximate, approach,** get warm <nf>, come near, have something at hand *or* at one's fingertips; give *or* get a rough idea <nf>

9 **adjoin,** join, conjoin, **connect,** butt, **abut,** abut on *or* upon, be contiguous, be in contact; **neighbor,** border, **border on** *or* **upon,** verge on *or* upon; lie by, stand by

10 **contact, come in contact, touch, feel, impinge,** bump up against, hit; osculate; **graze,** caress, kiss, nudge, rub, brush, glance, scrape, sideswipe, skim, skirt, shave; grope *and* feel up *and* cop a feel <nf>; have a near miss, brush *or* graze *or* squeak by

11 **meet, encounter; come across, run across,** meet up, fall across, cross the path of; **come upon,** run upon, fall upon, light *or* alight upon; come among, fall among; **meet with,** meet up with <nf>, come

face to face with, **confront,** meet head-on *or* eyeball to eyeball; **run into, bump into** *and* run smack into <nf>, join up with, come *or* run up against <nf>, run *and* fall foul of; burst *or* pitch *or* pop *or* bounce *or* plump upon <nf>; be on a collision course

12 stay near, keep close to; stand by, lie by; go with, march with, follow close upon, breathe down one's neck, tread *or* stay on one's heels, stay on one's tail, tailgate <nf>; hang about *or* around, hang upon the skirts of, hover over; **cling to,** clasp, hug, huddle; hug the shore *or* land, keep hold of the land, stay inshore

13 juxtapose, appose, join 800, **adjoin, abut,** butt against, neighbor; bring near, put with, place *or* set side by side

ADJS **14 near, close, nigh,** close-in, nearish, nighish, intimate, cheek-by-jowl, side-by-side, hand-in-hand, arm-in-arm, *bras-dessus-bras-dessous* <Fr>, shoulder-to-shoulder, neck and neck; **approaching,** nearing, approximate *or* approximating, proximate, proximal, propinque <old>; **short-range;** near the mark; warm *or* hot *or* burning <nf>

15 nearby, handy, convenient, neighboring, vicinal, propinquant *or* propinquous, ready at hand, easily reached *or* attained; accessible

16 adjacent, next, immediate, contiguous, **adjoining, abutting; neighboring,** neighbor; in the neighborhood, in the vicinity; **juxtaposed,** juxtapositional, tangential; **bordering,** conterminous *or* coterminous, connecting; **face-to-face** 215.6; end-to-end, endways, endwise; **joined**

17 in contact, contacting, **touching, meeting,** contingent; impinging, impingent; tangent, tangential; osculatory; grazing, kissing, glancing, brushing, rubbing, nudging; interfacing, linking

18 nearer, nigher, **closer**

19 nearest, nighest, **closest,** nearmost, next, immediate

ADVS **20 near, nigh, close;** hard, at close quarters; **nearby, close by,** hard by, fast by, not far *or* far off, in the vicinity *or* **neighborhood of,** at hand, at close range, **near** *or* **close at hand;** thereabout *or* thereabouts, hereabout *or* hereabouts; nearabout *or* nearabouts *or* nigh about <dial>; **about, around** <nf>, close about, along toward <nf>; at no great distance, only a step; as near as no matter *or* makes no difference <nf>; **within reach** *or* **range,** within call *or* hearing, within earshot *or* earreach, within a whoop *or* two whoops and a holler <nf>, within a stone's throw, a stone's throw away, in spitting distance <nf>, at one's elbow, at one's feet, at one's fingertips, under one's nose, at one's side, within one's grasp; just around the corner, just across the street, next-door, right next door, just next door

21 in juxtaposition, in conjunction, in apposition; beside 218.11

22 nearly, near, pretty near <nf>, close, **closely; almost,** all but, not quite, as good as, as near as makes no difference; **well-nigh, just about;** nigh, nigh hand

23 approximately, approximatively, practically <nf>, for practical purposes *or* all practical purposes, at a first approximation, give or take a little, **more or less; roughly,** roundly, in round numbers; **generally,** generally speaking, roughly speaking, say; in the ballpark <nf>

PREPS **24 near, nigh,** near to, **close to,** near upon, close upon, hard on *or* upon, bordering on *or* upon, **verging on** *or* upon, on the confines of, at the threshold of, **on the brink** *or* **verge of,** on the edge of, at next hand, at *or* on the point of, on the skirts of; **not far from;** next door to, at one's door; nigh about *or* nearabout *or* nigh on *or* nigh onto <dial>

25 against, up against, on, upon, over against, opposite, nose to nose with, vis-à -vis, in contact with

26 about, around, just about, circa, c, somewhere about *or* near, near *or* close upon, give or take, near enough to, upwards of <nf>, -ish, -something; **in the neighborhood** *or* **vicinity of**

224 INTERVAL

<space between>

NOUNS **1 interval, gap,** space 158, intervening *or* intermediate space, **interspace,** distance *or* space between, interstice; **clearance,** margin, leeway, headroom, **room** 158.3; discontinuity 813, jump, leap, interruption; daylight; hiatus, caesura, lacuna, intermission; half space, single space, double space, em space, en space, hair space; time interval, interim 826

2 crack, cleft, cranny, chink, check, craze, chap, **crevice,** fissure, scissure, incision, notch, score, cut, gash, slit, split, **rift,** rent; crack, hairline crack; **opening,** excavation, cavity, concavity, hole; **gap,** gape, **abyss,** abysm, **gulf, chasm,** void 222.3, canyon; **breach, break,** fracture, rupture; fault, flaw; slot, groove, furrow, moat, ditch, trench, dike, ha-ha; joint, seam; **valley**

VERBS **3 interspace, space,** make a space, make room, set at intervals, dot, scatter 771.4, **space out, separate,** split off, part, dispart, set *or* keep apart

4 cleave, crack, check, incise, craze, **cut, cut apart,** gash, slit, **split,** rive, rent, rip open; **open; gap,**

breach, break, fracture, rupture; slot, groove, furrow, ditch, trench

ADJS 5 intervallic, intervallary, interspatial, interstitial, discontinuous

6 **interspaced, spaced,** intervaled, **spaced out,** set at intervals, with intervals *or* an interval, interspacial, interstitial; dotted, scattered 771.9, **separated, parted,** disparted, split-off

7 **cleft, cut,** cloven, **cracked,** sundered, rift, riven, rent, chinky, chapped, crazed; **slit, split;** gaping, gappy; hiatal, caesural, lacunar; fissured, fissural, fissile

225 HABITATION

<an inhabiting>

NOUNS 1 **habitation,** inhabiting, inhabitation, habitancy, inhabitancy, **tenancy, occupancy,** occupation, **residence** *or* **residency,** residing, abiding, **living,** nesting, **dwelling,** commorancy <law>, lodging, staying, stopping, sojourning, staying over; squatting; cohabitation, living together, sharing quarters; living in sin; **abode, habitat** 228

2 **peopling,** peoplement, empeoplement, **population,** inhabiting; **colonization, settlement,** plantation

3 **housing,** domiciliation; lodgment, **lodging,** transient lodging, doss <Brit>, **quartering,** billeting, hospitality; living quarters; **housing development,** subdivision, tract; housing problem, housing bill

4 **camping,** tenting, **encampment,** bivouacking; camp 228.29

5 **sojourn,** sojourning, sojournment, temporary stay; **stay,** stop; **stopover,** stopoff, stayover, layover

6 **habitability,** inhabitability, **livability**

VERBS 7 **inhabit, occupy,** tenant, move in *or* into, take up one's abode, make one's home; rent, lease; **reside, live, live in, dwell, lodge, stay,** remain, abide, hang *or* hang out <nf>, domicile, domiciliate; **room,** bunk, crash <nf>, berth, doss down <Brit>; perch *and* roost *and* squat <nf>; nest; room together; cohabit, live together; live in sin

8 **sojourn,** stop, stay, **stop over,** stay over, lay over

9 **people,** empeople, **populate, inhabit,** denizen; colonize, **settle,** settle in, plant

10 **house,** domicile, domiciliate; provide with a roof, have as a guest *or* lodger, shelter, harbor; **lodge, quarter, put up,** billet, room, bed, berth, bunk; stable

11 **camp, encamp,** tent; pitch, **pitch camp,** pitch one's tent, drive stakes <nf>; bivouac; go camping, camp out, sleep out, rough it

ADJS 12 **inhabited, occupied,** tenanted; **peopled,** empeopled, populated, colonized, settled; populous

13 **resident,** residentiary, **in residence; residing, living, dwelling,** commorant, lodging, **staying,** remaining, abiding, living in; cohabiting, live-in

14 **housed,** domiciled, domiciliated, **lodged,** quartered, billeted; stabled

15 **habitable,** inhabitable, occupiable, lodgeable, tenantable, **livable, fit to live in, fit for occupation**; homelike 228.33

ADVS 16 **at home,** in the bosom of one's family, *chez soi* <Fr>; in one's element; back home *and* down home <nf>

226 NATIVENESS

NOUNS 1 **nativeness,** nativity, native-bornness, indigenousness *or* indigenity, aboriginality, autochthonousness, **nationality;** nativism

2 **citizenship,** native-born citizenship, citizenship by birth, citizenhood, subjecthood; civism

3 **naturalization,** naturalized citizenship, citizenship by naturalization *or* adoption, nationalization, adoption, admission, affiliation, **assimilation**; indigenization; Americanization, Anglicization, etc; acculturation, enculturation; papers, citizenship papers; culture shock

VERBS 4 **naturalize,** grant *or* confer citizenship, adopt, admit, affiliate, **assimilate**; Americanize, Anglicize, etc; acculturate, acculturize; indigenize, go native <nf>

ADJS 5 **native,** natal, **indigenous,** endemic, autochthonous; mother, maternal, original, aboriginal, primitive; native-born, home-grown, homebred, native to the soil *or* place *or* heath

6 **naturalized,** adopted, **assimilated**; indoctrinated, Americanized, Anglicized, etc; acculturated, acculturized; indigenized

227 INHABITANT, NATIVE

NOUNS 1 **population, inhabitants,** habitancy, dwellers, **populace, people,** whole people, people at large, citizenry, folk, souls, living souls, body, whole body, warm bodies <nf>; **public,** general public; community, society, **nation,** commonwealth, constituency, body politic, electorate; speech *or* linguistic community, ethnic *or* cultural community; colony, commune, neighborhood; nationality; **census,** head count; population statistics, demography, demographics

2 **inhabitant,** inhabiter, habitant; **occupant,** occupier, **dweller, tenant, denizen,** inmate; **resident,** residencer, residentiary, resider; inpatient; resident *or* live-in maid; writer- *or* poet- *or* artist- *or*

composer-in-residence; house detective; incumbent, *locum tenens* <L>; sojourner; addressee; indweller, inmate

3 **native,** indigene, autochthon, earliest inhabitant, first comer, primitive settler; primitive; **aborigine,** aboriginal; local *and* local yokel <nf>; nativeness, indigenousness, indigeneity

4 **citizen, national,** subject; **naturalized citizen,** nonnative citizen, citizen by adoption, immigrant, metic; hyphenated American, hyphenate; **cosmopolitan,** cosmopolite, citizen of the world; active citizen; citizenship, dual citizenship

5 **fellow citizen,** fellow countryman *or* countrywoman, **compatriot,** congener, **countryman,** countrywoman, *landsman* <Yiddish>, *paesano* <Ital>, *paisano* <Sp>; fellow townsman, home boy *and* home girl *and* hometowner <nf>

6 **townsman, townswoman,** townsperson, towny *and* towner *and* townie <nf>, **villager,** oppidan, city dweller, city person; big-city person, **city slicker** <nf>; metropolitan, urbanite; suburbanite; exurbanite; burgher, burgess, *bourgeois* <Fr>; townspeople, townfolks, townfolk

7 **householder,** homeowner, house-owner, proprietor, freeholder, occupier, addressee; cottager, cotter, cottier, crofter; head of household

8 **lodger, roomer,** paying guest; **boarder,** board-and-roomer, **transient,** transient guest *or* boarder; **renter, tenant,** leaser *or* lessee, leaseholder, time-sharer, subleaser *or* sublessee; roommate, flatmate <Brit>; visitor, guest

9 **settler,** *habitant* <Canadian & Louisiana Fr>; **colonist,** colonizer, colonial, immigrant, incomer, planter; **homesteader; squatter,** nester; **pioneer;** sooner; precursor 815

10 wilderness settler *or* hinterlander; **frontiersman,** mountain man; **backwoodsman,** woodlander, woodsman, woodman, woodhick <nf>; **mountaineer, hillbilly** *and* ridge runner <nf>, brush ape *and* briar-hopper <nf>; cracker *and* redneck <nf>, desert rat <nf>, clam digger <nf>, piny <nf>; country gentleman, ruralist, provincial, rustic, peasant, hayseed, hick, cottager

11 <regional inhabitants> **Easterner,** eastlander; **Midwesterner; Westerner,** westlander; **Southerner,** southlander; **Northener,** northlander, Yankee; Northman; New Englander, Down-Easter Yankee; Maritimer <Can>

228 ABODE, HABITAT

<place of habitation or resort>

NOUNS **1** **abode, habitation, place, dwelling,** dwelling place, abiding place, place to live, where one lives *or* resides, where one is at home, roof, roof over one's head, **residence,** place of residence, **domicile,** *domus* <L>; **lodging,** lodgment, lodging place; seat, nest, living space, houseroom, sleeping place, place to rest one's head, crash pad <nf>; native heath, turf, home turf; **address,** permanent residence; **housing; affordable housing,** low-cost housing, low-and-middle-income housing, public housing, public-sector housing, scattersite housing; council house <Brit>; private housing, private-sector housing, market-rate housing

2 **home,** home sweet home, "the place where, when you go there, They have to take you in"—Robert Frost, "the place to do things you want to do"—Zelda Fitzgerald; **fireside, hearth,** hearth and home, hearthstone, fireplace, *foyer* <Fr>, chimney corner, ingle, ingleside *or* inglenook; base, nest; **household,** ménage; **homestead,** home place, home roof, roof, rooftree, toft <Brit old>; place where one hangs one's hat; paternal roof *or* domicile, family homestead, ancestral halls; hometown, birthplace, cradle; homeland, native land, motherland, fatherland; **hominess** *or* homeyness

3 **domesticity;** housewifery, **housekeeping, homemaking;** householding, householdry

4 **quarters, living quarters; lodgings,** lodging, lodgment; diggings *and* digs <Brit nf>, pad *and* crib <nf>, room; **rooms,** berth, roost, accommodations; **housing** 225.3, shelter, *gîte* <Fr>

5 **house,** dwelling, dwelling house, *casa* <Sp & Ital>; house and grounds, house and lot, homesite; **building, structure, edifice,** fabric, erection, **hall** 197.4; roof; lodge; manor house, hall; town house, *rus in urbe* <L>, semidetached house, duplex, row house; country house, *dacha* <Russ>, country seat; ranch house, farmhouse, farm, country house; prefabricated house, modular house; sod house, adobe house; lake dwelling 241.3; houseboat; cave *or* cliff dwelling; penthouse; split-level; parsonage 703.7, **rectory,** vicarage, deanery, manse; official residence, White House, 10 Downing Street, the Kremlin, governor's mansion; presidential palace; embassy, consulate

6 **farmstead; ranch,** *rancho* and *hacienda* <Sp>, toft *or* steading <Brit old>, grange, plantation

7 **estate; mansion,** palatial residence, stately home <Brit>, manor house; **villa, château,** *hôtel* <Fr>, **castle,** tower; **palace,** *palais* <Fr>, *palazzo* <Ital>, court; ancestral hall *or* seat

8 **cottage,** cot *or* cote, **bungalow,** box; **cabin,** log cabin; **second home, vacation home;** chalet, lodge, snuggery; home away from home, *pied-à-terre* <Fr>

9 **hut,** hutch, **shack, shanty,** crib, hole-in-the-wall <nf>, **shed; lean-to; booth,** stall; tollbooth *or* tollhouse, sentry box, gatehouse, porter's lodge;

outhouse, outbuilding; privy; **pavilion,** kiosk; Quonset hut *or* Nissen hut; hutment

10 <Native American houses> wigwam, tepee *or* tipi, hogan, wickiup, jacal, longhouse; tupik *and* igloo <Eskimo>; ajouba

11 **hovel, dump** <nf>, rathole, hole, sty, pigsty, pigpen, tumbledown shack; squat

12 **summerhouse,** arbor, bower, **gazebo,** pergola, kiosk, alcove, retreat; **conservatory, greenhouse,** glasshouse <Brit>, lathhouse

13 **apartment, flat,** tenement, chambers <Brit>, room *or* rooms; studio apartment *or* flat; bed-sitter <Brit>, granny flat, flatlet; **suite,** suite *or* set of rooms; walkup, cold-water flat; **penthouse;** garden apartment; duplex apartment; railroad *or* shotgun flat

14 **apartment house, flats, tenement;** duplex, duplex house; tower block; apartment complex; cooperative apartment house *or* co-op <nf>, condominium *or* condo <nf>; high-rise apartment building *or* high rise

15 **inn, hotel,** hostel, hostelry, **tavern,** *posada* <Sp>; tourist hotel, *parador* <Sp>; **roadhouse,** caravansary *or* caravanserai, guesthouse, bed and breakfast *or* B and B; youth hostel, hospice, elder hostel; **lodging house,** rooming house; **boardinghouse,** *pension* <Fr>, *pensione* <Ital>; **dormitory,** dorm <nf>, fraternity *or* sorority house; bunkhouse; **flophouse** *and* fleabag <nf>, dosshouse <Brit nf>

16 **motel,** motor court, motor inn *or* lodge, motor hotel, auto court; boatel

17 **trailer,** house *or* camp trailer, **mobile home,** motor home, recreational vehicle *or* RV, camper, caravan <Brit>; trailer court *or* camp *or* park, campground

18 **habitat,** home, **range,** environment, surroundings, stamping grounds, locality, native environment; microhabitat, ecosystem, terrain, purlieu

19 **zoo, menagerie,** *Tiergarten* <Ger>, zoological garden *or* park, marine park, sea zoo; animal shelter

20 **barn, stable,** stall; **cowbarn,** cowhouse, cowshed, cowbyre, byre; mews

21 **kennel, doghouse;** pound, dog pound; cattery

22 **coop, chicken house** *or* **coop,** henhouse, hencote, hencoop, hennery; brooder

23 **birdhouse, aviary,** bird cage; dovecote, pigeon house *or* loft, columbary; roost, perch, roosting place; rookery, heronry; eyrie

24 vivarium, terrarium, aquarium; fishpond

25 **nest,** nidus; **beehive, apiary,** hive, bee tree, hornet's nest, wasp's nest, vespiary

26 **lair, den,** cave, **hole,** covert, mew, form; **burrow,** tunnel, earth, run, couch, lodge

27 **resort, haunt,** purlieu, **hangout** <nf>, **stamping ground** <nf>; gathering place, rallying point, meeting place, clubhouse, club; casino, gambling house; health resort; **spa,** baths, springs, watering place

28 <disapproved place> **dive** <nf>, **den, lair,** den of thieves; hole *and* dump *and* **joint** <nf>; gyp *or* clip joint <nf>; **whorehouse,** cathouse <nf>, sporting house, brothel, bordello, stews, fleshpots

29 **camp, encampment,** *Lager* <Ger>; bivouac; barrack *or* **barracks,** casern, *caserne* <Fr>, cantonment, lines <Brit>; hobo jungle *or* camp; detention camp, concentration camp, *Konzentrationslager* <Ger>; campground *or* campsite

30 <deities of the household> lares and penates, Vesta, Hestia

VERBS 31 **keep house,** housekeep <nf>, practice domesticity, maintain *or* run a household

ADJS 32 **residential,** residentiary, residing, in residence; domestic, domiciliary, domal; **home, household,** at home; mansional, manorial, palatial

33 **homelike,** homish, **homey** <nf>, homely; comfortable, friendly, cheerful, peaceful, cozy, snug, intimate; simple, plain, unpretending

34 **domesticated, tame,** tamed, broken; housebroken

229 FURNITURE

NOUNS 1 **furniture,** furnishings, movables, home furnishings, house furnishings, household effects, household goods, office furniture, school furniture, church furniture, library furniture, furnishments <old>; **cabinetmaking,** cabinetwork, cabinetry; **furniture design, furniture style** <see list>; period furniture; **piece of furniture, furniture piece,** chair, couch, sofa, bed, table, desk, cabinet, mirror, clock, screen; **suite, set of furniture,** ensemble, decor

2 **furniture styles and periods**

Adam
Adapted Colonial
Adirondack
American Chippendale *or* Pilgrim
American Empire
American Jacobean
American Moderne
American Queen Anne
American Regency *or* Directory
American Restoration *or* Pillar and Scroll
Anglo-Dutch
Art Deco
Art Nouveau
Arts and Crafts
Baroque
Bauhaus
Biedermeier
Block-front
Boston Chippendale
boule *or* boulework
Byzantine
Chinese Chippendale
Chinoiserie
Chippendale
Colonial *or* Campaign
Contemporary
Cotswold School
Country Chippendale
Cromwellian *or* Commonwealth
Desornamentado

De Stijl
Directoire
Duncan Phyfe
Early American
Early Georgian
Eastlake
Egyptian
Elizabethan
Empire
Federal
French Provincial
French Renaissance
Georgian
Gothic
Gothic-Renaissance
Hepplewhite
International *or* International Gothic
Italian Renaissance
Jacobean
Japanese
Japonisme
Late Regency
Later Victorian
Louis XIII
Louis XIV
Louis XV
Louis XVI
Mannerist
Mission
Modern
Modernist
Morris
National Romanticism
Naturalistic
Neoclassical *or le style antique* <Fr>
Neo-Gothic *or* Cathédrale
Neo-Grec
Newport Chippendale
New York Chippendale
Palladian
Pennsylvania Dutch
Philadelphia Chippendale
Pop Art
Queen Anne
Regency
Renaissance Revival
Restoration *or* Carolean
Rococo
Rococo Revival *or* Louis Philippe *or* Louis XV Revival
Romano-Byzantine *or* Italo-Byzantine *or* Romanesque
Scandinavian Modern
Shaker
Sheraton
Spanish Renaissance
Stuart
Tudor
Turkish
Venetian
Victorian
Viking Revival *or* Dragonesque
William and Mary

230 TOWN, CITY

NOUNS 1 **town,** township; **city, metropolis,** metro, metropolitan area, greater city, megalopolis, supercity, conurbation, urban complex, spread city, urban sprawl *or* spread, Standard Metropolitan Statistical Area *or* SMSA, urban corridor, strip city, **municipality,** *urbs* <L>, *polis* <Gk>, city *or* municipal government; *ville* <Fr>, *Stadt* <Ger>; **borough, burg** <nf>, bourg, burgh <Scot>; **suburb,** suburbia, burbs <nf>, slurb, stockbroker belt <Brit nf>, garden suburb <Brit>, commuter belt, outskirts, *faubourg* <Fr>, *banlieue* <Fr>; exurb, exurbia, bedroom town, streetcar suburb; market town <Brit>; small town; twin town; boom town, ghost town; industrial city; sister city; urbanization, citifying

2 **village, hamlet;** ham *and* thorp *and* wick <old>; country town, crossroads; "a little one-eyed, blinking sort o' place"—Thomas Hardy, "a hive of glass, where nothing unobserved can pass"—C H Spurgeon

3 <nf terms> **one-horse town,** jerkwater town, one-gas-station town, **tank town** *or* station, **whistle-stop,** jumping-off place; **hick town,** rube town, Podunk; hoosier town; wide place in the road

4 **capital,** capital city, **seat,** seat of government; **county seat** *or* county site, county town *or* shiretown <Brit>

5 **town hall, city hall, municipal building;** courthouse; police headquarters *or* station, station house, precinct house; firehouse, fire station, station house; county building, county courthouse; community center; school

6 <city districts> East Side *or* End, West Side *or* End; **downtown,** uptown, midtown; city center, main street, city centre <Brit>, urban center, central *or* center city, core, core city, inner city, suburbs, suburbia, burbs <nf>, outskirts, greenbelt, residential district, business district *or* section, shopping center, financial district, residential area; Chinatown, Little Italy, Little Hungary, etc; **asphalt** *or* **concrete jungle,** mean streets; **slum** *or* **slums,** the other side *or* the wrong side of the tracks, blighted area *or* neighborhood *or* section, run-down neighborhood, tenement district, shanty-town, hell's kitchen *or* half-acre; favela, tenderloin, red-light district, Bowery, **skid row** *or* skid road <nf>; **ghetto, inner city,** urban ghetto, barrio

7 **block,** city block, square

8 **square, plaza,** *place* <Fr>, *piazza* <Ital>, *campo* <Ital>, **marketplace,** market, mart, rialto, forum, agora

9 **circle,** circus <Brit>; crescent

10 **city planning,** urban planning; urban studies, urbanology

ADJS 11 **urban, metropolitan, municipal,** metro, burghal, **civic,** oppidan; main-street; citywide; city, town, village; citified; urbane; suburban; interurban; downtown, uptown, midtown; **inner-city,** core, core-city, ghetto; small-town; boom-town

231 REGION

NOUNS 1 **region, area, zone,** belt, **territory,** terrain; **place** 159.1; **space** 158; **country** 232, **land** 234, ground, soil; territoriality; territorial waters, twelve- *or* three-mile limit, continental shelf, offshore rights; air space; heartland; hinterland; **district, quarter, section,** sector, department, division; salient, corridor; part, parts; **neighborhood,** vicinity, vicinage, neck of the woods <nf>, stamping ground, turf <nf>, backyard <nf>, purlieu *or* purlieus; premises, confines, precincts, environs, milieu

2 **sphere,** hemisphere, orb, **orbit,** ambit, circle; **circuit,** judicial circuit, **beat, round,** walk; **realm,**

demesne, **domain,** dominion, jurisdiction, bailiwick, niche, forté; border, borderland, march; **province,** precinct, department; **field,** pale, arena

3 **zone;** climate *or* clime <old>; **longitude,** longitude in arc, longitude in time; meridian, prime meridian; **latitude,** parallel; equator, the line; tropic, Tropic of Cancer, Tropic of Capricorn; tropics, subtropics, Torrid Zone; Temperate *or* Variable Zones; Frigid Zones, Arctic Zone *or* Circle, Antarctic Zone *or* Circle; horse latitudes, roaring forties; doldrums

4 **plot,** plot of ground *or* land, parcel of land, plat, **patch, tract, field,** enclosure; lot; air space; block, square; section, forty <sixteenth of a section>; close, quadrangle, quad, enclave, pale, *clos* <Fr>, croft <Brit>, *kraal* <Africa>; real estate; allotment, holding, claim

5 <territorial divisions> **state, territory, province,** region, duchy, electorate, government, principality; **county,** shire, canton, *oblast* and *okrug* <Russ>, *département* <Fr>, *Kreis* or *Land* <Ger>; **borough, ward,** precinct, riding, *arrondissement* <Fr>; **township,** hundred, commune, wapentake; metropolis, metropolitan area, **city, town** 230; **village,** hamlet; **district,** congressional district, electoral district, precinct; magistracy, soke, bailiwick; shrievalty, sheriffalty, sheriffwick, constablewick <Brit>; archdiocese, archbishopric, stake; **diocese,** bishopric, parish; colony

6 <regions of the world> continent, landmass; **Old World,** the old country; **New World,** America; **Northern Hemisphere,** North America; Central America; **Southern Hemisphere,** South America; Latin America; **Western Hemisphere, Occident,** West; **Eastern Hemisphere, Orient,** Levant, East, eastland; Far East, Mideast *or* Middle East, Near East; Asia, Europe, Eurasia, Asia Major, Asia Minor, Africa; Antipodes, Australia, down under <nf>, Australasia, Oceania; Arctic, Antarctica; Third World

7 <regions of the US> West, westland, wild West, West Coast, Coast, left Coast <nf>; Northwest, Pacific Northwest; Silicon Valley; Sierras; Rockies; Sunbelt; Southwest; Middle West *or* Midwest, Middle America; Great Plains, heartlands, Plains states; North Central region; Rust Belt; East, eastland, East Coast, Eastern Seaboard; Middle Atlantic; Northeast, Southeast; North, northland, Snow Belt, Frost Belt; Appalachia; South, southland, Dixie, Dixieland; Deep South, Old South; Delta, bayous; Bible Belt; borscht belt; Gulf Coast; New England, Down East, Yankeeland <nf>

ADJS 8 **regional, territorial, geographical,** areal, sectional, zonal, topographic *or* topographical

9 **local, localized,** of a place, geographically limited, topical, vernacular, parochial, provincial, insular, limited, confined

10 **US state mottoes and nicknames**

Alabama “We dare defend our rights”; Heart of Dixie *or* Camellia State
Alaska “North to the future”; The Last Frontier
Arizona “Diat Deus”; Grand Canyon State
Arkansas “Regnat populus”; Land of Opportunity
California “Eureka”; Golden State
Colorado “Nil sine numine”; Centennial State
Connecticut “Qui transtulit sustinet”; Constitution State; Nutmeg State
Delaware “Liberty and independence”; First State *or* Diamond State
District of Columbia “Justitia Omnibus”; Capital City
Florida “In God we trust”; Sunshine State
Georgia “Wisdom, justice, and moderation”; Empire State of the South; Peach State
Hawaii “The life of the land is perpetuated in righteousness”; Aloha State
Idaho “Esto perpetua”; Gem State
Illinois “State sovereignty—national union”; Prairie State
Indiana “Crossroads of America”; Hoosier State
Iowa “Our liberties we prize and our rights we will maintain”; Hawkeye State
Kansas “Ad astra per aspera”; Sunflower State
Kentucky “United we stand, divided we fall”; Bluegrass State
Louisiana “Union, justice and confidence”; Pelican State
Maine “Dirigo”; Pine Tree State
Maryland “Fatti maschii, parole femine”; Old Line State *or* Free State
Massachusetts “Ense petit placidam sub libertate”; Bay State; Colony State
Michigan “Si quaeris peninsulam amoenam”; Great Lake State *or* Wolverine State
Minnesota “L’Etoile du nord”; North Star State *or* Gopher State
Mississippi “Virtute et armis”; Magnolia State
Missouri “Salus populi suprema lex esto”; Show-Me State
Montana “Oro y plato”; Treasure State
Nebraska “Equality before the law”; Cornhusker State
Nevada “All for our country”; Sagebrush State *or* Battle-Born State
New Hampshire “Live free or die”; Granite State
New Jersey “Liberty and prosperity”; Garden State
New Mexico “Crescit eundo”; Land of Enchantment
New York “Excelsior”; Empire State
North Carolina “Esse quam videri”; Tar Heel State *or* Old North State
North Dakota “Liberty and union, now and forever, one and inseparable”; Peace Garden State
Ohio “With God, all things are possible”; Buckeye State
Oklahoma “Labor omnia vincit”; Sooner State
Oregon “The union”; Beaver State
Pennsylvania “Virtue, liberty and independence”; Keystone State

Rhode Island "Hope"; Little Rhody; Ocean State
South Carolina "Dum spiro spero"; Palmetto State
South Dakota "Under God, the people rule"; Coyote State *or* Sunshine State
Tennessee "Agriculture and commerce"; Volunteer State
Texas "Friendship"; Lone Star State
Utah "Industry"; Beehive State
Vermont "Freedom and unity"; Green Mountain State
Virginia "Sic semper tyrannis"; Old Dominion
Washington "Alki"; Evergreen State
West Virginia "Montani semper liberi"; Mountain State
Wisconsin "Forward"; Badger State
Wyoming "Equal rights"; Equality State

11 **US territories and commonwealths; mottoes**

American Samoa "Samoa Muamua le Atua"
Guam "Where America's day begins"
Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands
Commonwealth of Puerto Rico "Joannes est nomen eius"
Virgin Islands

232 COUNTRY

NOUNS 1 **country,** land; **nation,** nationality, **state,** nation-state, sovereign nation *or* state, self-governing state, polity, **body politic; power,** superpower, world power; microstate; **republic,** people's republic, **commonwealth,** commonweal; **kingdom,** sultanate; **empire,** empery; superpower, power; **realm,** dominion, domain; **principality,** principate; duchy, dukedom; grand duchy, archduchy, archdukedom, earldom, county, palatinate, seneschalty; chieftaincy, chieftainry; toparchy, *toparchia* <L>; city-state, *polis* <Gk>, free city; **province,** territory, possession; colony, settlement; protectorate, mandate, mandated territory, mandant, mandatee, mandatory; buffer state; **ally,** military ally, cobelligerent, treaty partner; satellite, puppet regime *or* government; free nation *or* country, captive nation, iron-curtain country; nonaligned *or* unaligned *or* neutralist nation; developed nation, industrial *or* industrialized nation; underdeveloped nation, third-world nation; federation, confederation, commonwealth, commonweal, bloc, comity; United Nations

2 **fatherland,** *Vaterland* <Ger>, *patria* <L>, *la patrie* <Fr>, land of our fathers, **motherland,** mother country, **native land,** native soil, one's native heath *or* ground *or* soil *or* place, the old country, country of origin, **birthplace,** cradle; **home, homeland,** home ground, "home is where one starts"—T S Eliot, God's country; the home front

3 **United States,** United States of America, US, USA, US of A <nf>, **America,** Columbia, the States, Uncle Sugar *and* Yankeeland <nf>, Land of Liberty, the melting pot; stateside

4 **Britain, Great Britain, United Kingdom, the UK,** Britannia, Albion, Blighty <Brit nf>, Limeyland <US nf>, Tight Little Island, Land of the Rose, "This royal throne of kings, this scepter'd isle, This earth of majesty, this seat of Mars, This other Eden, demi-paradise"—Shakespeare, Sovereign of the Seas; British Empire, Commonwealth of Nations, British Commonwealth of Nations, the Commonwealth; perfidious Albion

5 <national personifications> Uncle Sam *or* Brother Jonathan <US>; John Bull <Eng>

6 nationhood, peoplehood, **nationality; statehood, nation-statehood, sovereignty,** sovereign nationhood *or* statehood, independence, self-government, self-determination; internationality, internationalism; **nationalism**

7 native, countryman, countrywoman, citizen, national; nationalist, ultranationalist; patriot

233 THE COUNTRY

NOUNS 1 **the country,** agricultural region, farm country, farmland, arable land, grazing region *or* country, rural district, rustic region, province *or* **provinces,** countryside, woodland 310.13, grassland 310.8, woods and fields, meadows and pastures, the soil, grass roots; **the sticks** *and* the tall corn *and* yokeldom *and* hickdom <nf>; cotton belt, tobacco belt, black belt, farm belt, corn belt, fruit belt, wheat belt, citrus belt; dust bowl; highlands, moors, uplands, foothills; lowlands, veld *or* veldt, savanna *or* savannah, plains, prairies, steppes, wide-open spaces

2 **hinterland, back country,** outback <Austral>, up-country, boonies *and* boondocks <nf>; **the bush,** bush country, bushveld, **woods,** woodlands, **backwoods,** forests, timbers, the big sticks <nf>, brush; wilderness, wilds, uninhabited region, virgin land *or* territory; **wasteland** 891.2; **frontier,** borderland, outpost; wild West, cow country

3 **rusticity, ruralism,** inurbanity, agrarianism, bucolicism, **provincialism,** provinciality, simplicity, pastoral simplicity, unspoiledness; yokelism, hickishness, backwoodsiness; **boorishness,** churlishness, unrefinement, uncultivation

4 ruralization, countrification, rustication, pastoralization

VERBS 5 **ruralize, countrify, rusticate,** pastoralize; farm 1069.16; return to the soil

ADJS 6 **rustic, rural, country, provincial, farm, pastoral, bucolic,** Arcadian, **agrarian,** agrestic; **agricultural** 1069.20; lowland, low-lying, upland, highland, prairie, plains

7 **countrified,** inurbane; country-born, country-bred, up-country; farmerish, hobnailed, clodhopping, clodhopperish; **boorish,** clownish, loutish, lumpish, lumpen, cloddish, churlish; **uncouth,** unpolished, uncultivated, uncultured, unrefined; country-style, country-fashion

8 <nf terms> **hick,** hicky, hickified, from the sticks, rube, hayseed, yokel, yokelish, down-home, shit-kicking, hillbilly, redneck

9 **hinterland,** back, **back-country,** up-country, backroad, outback <Austral>, wild, wilderness, virgin; wild-West, cow-country; **waste** 891.4; backwood *or* **backwoods,** back of beyond, backwoodsy; woodland, sylvan

234 LAND

NOUNS 1 **land, ground,** landmass, earth, glebe <old>, **sod,** clod, **soil, dirt,** dust, clay, marl, mold <Brit nf>; *terra* <L>, **terra firma;** terrain; **dry land;** arable land; marginal land; grassland 310.8, woodland 310.13; crust, earth's crust, lithosphere; regolith; topsoil, subsoil; alluvium, alluvion; eolian *or* subaerial deposit; **real estate,** real property, landholdings, acres, territory, freehold; region 231; the country 233; earth science 1071

2 **shore, coast,** *côte* <Fr>; **strand,** *playa* <Sp>, **beach,** beachfront, beachside shingle, plage, lido, riviera, sands, berm; waterside, **waterfront;** shoreline, coastline; foreshore; bank, embankment; riverside; lakefront, lakeshore; **seashore, coast, seacoast, seaside, seaboard,** seabeach, seacliff, seabank, sea margin, oceanfront, oceanside, seafront, shorefront, tidewater, tideland, coastland, littoral, littoral zone; sand dune, sand bar, sandbank, tombolo; wetland, wetlands; **bay,** bayfront, bayside; drowned *or* submerged coast; rockbound coast, ironbound coast; loom of the land

3 **landsman,** landman, **landlubber**

ADJS 4 **terrestrial,** terrene <old>, **earth, earthly,** telluric, tellurian; earthbound; sublunar, subastral; geophilous; terraqueous; fluvioterrestrial

5 earthy, earthen, soily, loamy, marly, gumbo; clayey, clayish; adobe

6 **alluvial,** estuarine, fluviomarine

7 **coastal, littoral, seaside, shore,** shoreside; shoreward; riparian *or* riparial *or* riparious; riverain, riverine; riverside; lakefront, lakeshore; oceanfront, oceanside; seaside, seafront, shorefront, shoreline; beachfront, beachside; bayfront, bayside; tideland, tidal, wetland

ADVS 8 **on land,** on dry land, on terra firma; onshore, ashore; alongshore; shoreward; by land, overland

9 **on earth,** on the face of the earth *or* globe, in the world, in the wide world, in the whole wide world; **under the sun,** under the stars, beneath the sky, under heaven, below, **here below**

235 BODY OF LAND

NOUNS 1 **continent, mainland,** main <old>, landform, continental landform, landmass; North America, South America, Africa, Europe, Asia, Eurasia, Eurasian landmass, Australia, Antarctica; subcontinent, India, Greenland; peninsula; **plate,** crustal plate, crustal segment, Pacific plate, American plate, African plate, Eurasian plate, Antarctic plate, Indian plate; continental divide, continental drift; plate tectonics; Gondwana, Laurasia, Pangaea

2 **island, isle; islet,** holm, ait <Brit nf>; continental island; oceanic island; volcanic island; **key,** cay; sandbank, sandbar, bar; floating island; **reef,** coral reef, coral head; coral island, atoll; archipelago, island group *or* chain; insularity; islandology

3 **continental,** mainlander; continentalist

4 **islander,** islandman, island-dweller, islesman, insular; islandologist

VERBS 5 insulate, isolate, island, enisle; island-hop

ADJS 6 **continental,** mainland

7 **insular,** insulated, isolated; island, islandy *or* islandish, islandlike; islanded, isleted, island-dotted; seagirt; archipelagic *or* archipelagian

236 PLAIN

<open country>

NOUNS 1 **plain, plains,** flat country, flatland, **flats,** flat, level; champaign, champaign country, open country, **wide-open spaces; prairie,** grassland 310.8, sea of grass, **steppe, pampas,** *pampa* <Sp>, savanna, tundra, vega, campo, llano, sebkha; **veld,** grass veld, bushveld, tree veld; wold, weald; **moor,** moorland, down, **downs,** lande, **heath,** fell <Brit>; lowland, lowlands, bottomland; basin, playa; sand plain, sand flat, strand flat; tidal flat, salt marsh; salt pan; salt flat, alkali flat; **desert** 891.2 <see list>; **plateau,** upland, tableland, table, **mesa,** mesilla; peneplain; coastal plain, tidal plain, alluvial plain, delta, delta plain, flood plain; mare, lunar mare

ADJS 2 champaign, **plain, flat,** open; campestral *or* campestrian

3 **major deserts**

An Nafud <Saudi Arabia>
Arabian or Eastern <Egypt>
Atacama <Chile>
Black Rock <US>
Chihuahuan <US, Mex>
Colorado <US>
Dahna <Saudi Arabia>
Dasht-e-Kavir <Iran>
Dasht-e-Lut <Iran>
Death Valley <US>

Eastern or Arabian <Egypt>
Gibson <Australia>
Gobi or Shamo <Mongolia>
Great Arabian <Saudi Arabia>
Great Australian <Australia>
Great Basin <US>
Great Indian or Thar <India, Pakistan>
Great Salt Lake <US>
Great Sandy <Australia>
Great Victoria <Australia>
Iranian <Iran>
Kalahari <South Africa, Nambia, Botswana>
Kara Kum <Turkmenistan>
Kyzyl Kum <Uzbekistan, Kazakhstan>
Libyan <Libya, Egypt, Sudan>
Lut <Iran>
Mojave <US>
Namib <Namibia>
Negev <Israel>
Nubian <Sudan>
Painted Desert <US>
Patagonian <Argentina>
Rub' al Khali <Saudi Arabia, Oman, Yemen, UAE>
Sahara <North Africa>
Shamo or Gobi <Mongolia>
Simpson <Australia>
Sinai <Egypt>
Sonoran <US>
Sturt Stony <Australia>
Syrian <Syria, Iraq, Jordan, Saudi Arabia>
Takla Makan <China>
Thar or Great Indian <India, Pakistan>
Turfan Depression <China>
Yuma <US, Mex>

237 HIGHLANDS

NOUNS **1 highlands, uplands,** highland, upland, high country, elevated land, dome, **plateau, tableland,** mesa, upland area, downs, downland, piedmont, moor, moorland, **hills, heights,** hill *or* hilly country, downs, wold, foothills, rolling country, **mountains,** mountain *or* mountainous country, high terrain, peaks, range, *massif* <Fr>

2 slope, declivity, steep, versant, incline, rise, talus, brae <Scot>, mountainside, hillside, bank, gentle *or* easy slope, glacis, angle of repose, steep *or* rapid slope, fall line, bluff, cliff, headland, ness, ben <Scot, Ir>; precipice, wall, palisade, scar <Brit>, escarpment, scarp, fault scarp, rim, face; upper slopes, upper reaches, timberline *or* tree line

3 plateau, tableland, high plateau, table, mesa, table mountain, butte, moor, fell <Brit>, hammada

4 hill, down <chiefly Brit>; brae *and* fell <Scot>; **hillock, knob,** butte, kopje, kame, monticle, monticule, monadnock, **knoll,** hummock, hammock, eminence, rise, mound, swell, barrow, tumulus, kop, tel, jebel; **dune,** sand dune; moraine, drumlin; anthill, molehill; **dune,** sand dune, sandhill

5 ridge, ridgeline, *arête* <Fr>, chine, spine, horst, kame, comb <Brit>, esker, os, cuesta, serpent kame, Indian ridge, moraine, terminal moraine; **saddle, hogback,** hog's-back, saddleback, horseback, col, watershed; **pass,** gap, notch, wind gap, water gap

6 mountain <see list>, mount, alp, hump, tor, height, dizzying height, nunatak, dome; **peak, pinnacle, summit** 198.2, mountaintop, point, topmost point *or* pinnacle, **crest,** spine, tor, pike <Brit>, *pic* <Fr>, *pico* <Sp>; crag, spur, cloud-capped *or* cloud-topped *or* snow-clad *or* snow-capped peak, the roof of the world; needle, aiguille, pyramidal peak, horn; fold mountain, fold-belt mountain, alpine chain, fault-block mountain, basin and range; oceanic ridge, oceanic rise; **volcano,** volcanic mountain, volcanic spine, volcanic neck; seamount, submarine mountain, guyot; **mountain range,** range, massif; **mountain system, chain,** mountain chain, cordillera, sierra, cordilleran belt, fold belt; hill heaped upon hill; divide, Continental Divide; mountain-building, orogeny, orogenesis, epeirogeny, folding, faulting, block-faulting, volcanism; isostasy; orography, orology

7 valley, vale, glen, dale, dell, hollow, holler <nf>, dip, flume, cleuch *or* corrie <Scot>, cwm <Welsh>; **ravine, gorge, canyon,** box canyon, *arroyo* <Sp>, barranca, bolson, coulee, gully, gulch, combe *or* coomb *or* comb <Brit>, cirque, dingle, rift, rift valley, kloof, donga, graben, draw, wadi, basin, cirque, corrie, hanging valley; **crevasse;** chimney, ditch, chine, clough <Brit>, couloir; **defile,** pass, passage, col; **crater,** volcanic crater, caldera, meteorite *or* meteoritic crater

ADJS **8 hilly, rolling,** undulating, upland; **mountainous,** montane, alpine, alpestrine, altitudinous; orogenic, orographic, orological, orometric

9 famous and high mountains

Aconcagua <Argentina 22,834 feet>
Annapurna I <Nepal 26,504 feet>
Annapurna II <Nepal 26,041 feet>
Ararat <Turkey 16,804 feet>
Ben Nevis <Scotland 4,406 feet>
Cho Oyu <Nepal-Tibet 26,750 feet>
Communism Peak <Tajikistan 24,590 feet>
Cook <New Zealand 12,349 feet>
Dhaulagiri <Nepal 26,810 feet>
Elbert <Colorado 14,433 feet>
Elbrus <Russia 18,841 feet>
Erebus <Antarctica 12,450 feet>
Etna <Sicily 10,900 feet>
Everest <Nepal-Tibet 29,028 feet>
Fuji <Japan 12,388 feet>
Gannett Peak <Wyoming 13,804 feet>
Grand Teton <Wyoming 13,766 feet>
Hood <Oregon 11,239 feet>
Jaya <New Guinea 16,500 feet>
Jungfrau <Switzerland 13,642 feet>
K2 *or* Godwin Austen <Kashmir 28,250 feet>
Kanchenjunga <Nepal-India 28,208 feet>
Kenya <Kenya 17,058 feet>
Kilimanjaro <Tanzania 19,340 feet>
Kosciusko <Australia 7,310 feet>

Lhotse I <Nepal-Tibet 27,923 feet>
Lhotse II <Nepal-Tibet 27,560 feet>
Logan <Yukon 19,850 feet>
Makalu I <Nepal-Tibet 27,824 feet>
Manaslu I <Nepal 26,760 feet>
Matterhorn <Switzerland-Italy 14,690 feet>
McKinley <Alaska 20,320 feet>
Mitchell <North Carolina 6,684 feet>
Mont Blanc <France-Italy 15,771 feet>
Monte Rosa <Switzerland 15,203 feet>
Mount Saint Helens <Washington 8,364 feet>
Ojos del Salado <Argentina-Chile 22,572 feet>
Olympus <Greece 9,570 feet>
Pico de Orizaba <Mexico 18,555 feet>
Pikes Peak <Colorado 14,110 feet>
Popocatépetl <Mexico 17,930 feet>
Rainier <Washington 14,410 feet>
Rushmore <South Dakota 6,050 feet>
St. Elias <Alaska-Yukon 18,008 feet>
Teide <Canary Islands 12,198 feet>
Toubaki <Morocco 13,661 feet>
Vesuvius <Italy 3,891 feet>
Vinson Massif <Antarctica 16,864 feet>
Washington <New Hampshire 6,288 feet>
Whitney <California 14,494 feet>

238 STREAM

<running water>

NOUNS 1 **stream, waterway, watercourse** 239.2, **channel** 239; meandering stream, flowing stream, lazy stream, racing stream, braided stream; spill stream; adolescent stream; mountain stream; **river;** navigable river, underground *or* subterranean river, “moving road”—Pascal; dry stream, stream bed, stream channel, stream course, winterbourne, wadi, *arroyo* <Sp>, *donga* <Africa>, *nullah* <India>; **brook,** branch; kill, bourn *or* bourne, run <Brit nf>, **creek,** crick <nf>; **rivulet,** rill, rillet, **streamlet,** brooklet, runlet, runnel, rundle <nf>, rindle <Brit nf>, beck <Brit>, gill <Brit>, burn <Scot>, sike <Brit nf>; **freshet,** fresh; millstream, race; midstream, midchannel; drainage pattern, watershed; stream action, fluviation

2 **headwaters, headstream,** headwater, head, riverhead; **source,** fountainhead 886.6

3 **tributary,** feeder, **branch, fork,** prong <nf>, confluent, confluent stream, affluent, distributary; effluent, anabranch, branch feeder; bayou; billabong <Austral>

4 **flow,** flowing, **flux,** fluency, profluence, fluid motion *or* movement; hydrodynamics; **stream, current,** set, trend, tide, water flow; drift, driftage; **course,** onward course, **surge, gush, rush,** onrush, spate, run, race; millrace, mill run; undercurrent, undertow; crosscurrent, crossflow; affluence, afflux, affluxion, confluence, convergence, concourse, conflux; **downflow,** downpour; defluxion; inflow 189.2; outflow 190.4

5 **torrent, river, flood,** flash flood, wall of water, waterflood, **deluge;** spate, **pour,** freshet, fresh

6 **overflow,** spillage, spill, spillover, overflowing, overrunning, alluvion, alluvium, **inundation, flood, deluge,** whelming, overwhelming, flush, washout, engulfment, submersion 367.2, cataclysm; the Flood, the Deluge; washout

7 **trickle,** tricklet, **dribble, drip,** dripping, stillicide <old>, drop, spurtle; percolation, leaching, lixiviation; distillation, condensation, sweating; seeping, seepage

8 **lap, swash, wash, slosh, plash, splash;** lapping, washing, etc

9 **jet, spout, spurt,** spurtle, squirt, spit, spew, spray, spritz <nf>; rush, **gush,** flush; **fountain,** fount, font, *jet d'eau* <Fr>; geyser, spouter <nf>

10 **rapids, rapid,** white water, wild water; ripple, **riffle,** riff <nf>; chute, shoot, sault

11 **waterfall, cataract,** fall, **falls, Niagara, cascade,** force <Brit>, linn <Scot>, sault; nappe; watershoot

12 **eddy,** back stream, gurge, **swirl,** twirl, whirl; **whirlpool,** vortex, gulf, **maelstrom;** Maelstrom, Charybdis; countercurrent, counterflow, counterflux, backflow, reflux, refluence, regurgitation, ebb, backwash, backwater, snye <Can>

13 **tide,** tidal current *or* stream, tidal flow *or* flood, **tide race; tidewater;** tideway, tide gate; **riptide,** rip, tiderip, overfalls; direct tide, opposite tide; **spring tide; high tide,** high water, full tide; **low tide,** low water; **neap tide,** neap; lunar tide, solar tide; **flood tide, ebb tide;** rise of the tide, rising tide, flux, flow, flood; ebb, reflux, refluence; ebb and flow, flux and reflux; tidal amplitude, tidal range, intertidal zone, tidal flat, tidal pool; tideland; tide chart *or* table, tidal current chart; tide gauge, thalassometer

14 **wave, billow,** surge, **swell,** heave, undulation, lift, rise, send, scend; trough, peak; **sea,** heavy swell, ocean swell, ground swell; **roller,** roll; **comber,** comb; **surf, breakers,** spume; wavelet, **ripple,** riffle; **tidal wave,** tsunami, seismic sea wave, seiche, rogue wave; gravity wave, water wave; tide wave; bore, tidal bore, eagre, traveling wave; **whitecap,** white horse, white foam; rough *or* heavy sea, rough water, broken water, dirty water *or* sea, choppy *or* chopping sea, popple, lop, chop, choppiness, overfall, angry sea; standing wave

15 water gauge, fluviograph, fluviometer; marigraph; Nilometer

VERBS 16 **flow, stream, issue, pour, surge, run, course, rush, gush, flush, flood;** empty into, flow into, join, join with, mingle waters; set, make, trend; flow in 189.9; flow out 190.13; flow back, surge back, ebb, regurgitate; meander

17 **overflow,** flow over, wash over, **run over, well over, brim over,** lap, lap at, lap over, overbrim, overrun, pour out *or* over, **spill, slop, slosh,** spill out *or* over; **cataract, cascade; inundate,** engulf, swamp, sweep, whelm, overwhelm, **flood,** deluge, submerge 367.7

18 **trickle, dribble,** dripple, **drip,** drop, spurtle; **filter,** percolate, leach, lixiviate; distill, condense, sweat; seep, weep; **gurgle** 52.11, murmur

19 **lap, plash, splash, wash, swash, slosh**

20 **jet, spout, spurt,** spurtle, **squirt,** spit, spew, spray, spritz <nf>, play, **gush,** well, surge; vomit, vomit out *or* forth

21 **eddy,** gurge, **swirl,** whirl, purl, reel, spin

22 **billow, surge, swell,** heave, lift, rise, send, scend, toss, popple, **roll,** wave, **undulate; peak,** draw to a peak, be poised; comb, **break,** dash, crash, smash; rise and fall, ebb and flow

ADJS 23 **streamy,** rivery, brooky, creeky; streamlike, riverine, riverlike; fluvial, fluviatile *or* fluviatic, fluviomarine

24 **flowing, streaming, running, pouring,** fluxive, fluxional, coursing, racing, gushing, rushing, onrushing, surging, surgy, torrential, rough, whitewater; **fluent,** profluent, affluent, defluent, decurrent, confluent, diffluent, refluent; tidal; gulfy, vortical; meandering, mazy, sluggish, serpentine

25 **flooded,** deluged, inundated, engulfed, swamped, swept, whelmed, drowned, overwhelmed, afloat, awash; washed, water-washed; in flood, at flood, in spate

26 **major rivers**

Nile <Africa>
Amazon <South America>
Mississippi <North America>
Ob-Irtysh <Russ>
Yangtze Kiang <China>
Huang Ho or Yellow <China>
Congo <Africa>
Amur <Russ>
Lena <Russ>
Mackenzie <Can>

239 CHANNEL

NOUNS 1 **channel, conduit, duct,** canal, course; **way, passage, passageway;** trough, troughway, troughing; tunnel; ditch, trench 290.2; adit; ingress, entrance 189; egress, exit; **stream** 238

2 **watercourse, waterway, aqueduct,** water channel, water gate, water carrier, culvert, **canal;** side-channel, intrariverine channel, snye <Can>; streamway, riverway; **bed,** stream bed, river bed, creek bed, runnel; water gap; dry bed, *arroyo* <Sp>, wadi, winterbourne, *donga* <Africa>, *nullah* <India>, **gully,** gullyhole, gulch; swash, swash channel; race, headrace, tailrace; flume; sluice; spillway; spillbox; irrigation ditch, water furrow; waterworks

3 **gutter, trough,** eave *or* eaves trough; **flume,** chute, shoot; pentrough, penstock; guide

4 <metal founding> gate, ingate, runner, sprue, tedge

5 **drain,** sough <Brit nf>, sluice, scupper; **sink,** sump; piscina; **gutter,** kennel; **sewer,** cloaca, headchute; cloaca maxima

6 **tube; pipe; tubing, piping,** tubulation; tubulure; nipple, pipette, tubulet, tubule; reed, stem, straw; **hose,** hosepipe <Brit>, garden hose, fire hose; pipeline; catheter; **siphon;** tap; efflux tube, adjutage; funnel; snorkel; siamese, siamese connection *or* joint

7 **main,** water main, gas main, fire main

8 **spout,** beak, waterspout, downspout; gargoyle

9 **nozzle,** bib nozzle, pressure nozzle, spray nozzle, nose, snout; rose, rosehead; shower head, sprinkler head

10 **valve,** gate; **faucet, spigot, tap;** cock, **petcock,** draw cock, stopcock, sea cock, drain cock, ball cock; bunghole; needle valve; valvule, valvula

11 **floodgate,** flood-hatch, gate, **head gate,** penstock, water gate, **sluice,** sluice gate; tide gate, aboiteau <Can>; weir; **lock,** lock gate, dock gate; air lock

12 **hydrant,** fire hydrant, **plug,** water plug, fireplug

13 air passage, air duct, airway, air shaft, shaft, **air hole,** air tube; speaking tube *or* pipe; **blowhole,** breathing hole, spiracle; nostril; touchhole; spilehole, **vent, venthole,** ventage, ventiduct; **ventilator,** ventilating shaft; transom, louver, louverwork; wind tunnel

14 **chimney, flue,** flue pipe, funnel, **stovepipe, stack, smokestack,** smoke pipe, smokeshaft; Charley Noble; fumarole

VERBS 15 **channel,** channelize, canalize, **conduct, convey,** put through; pipe, funnel, siphon; trench 290.3; direct 573.8

ADJS 16 **tubular,** tubate, tubiform, tubelike, pipelike; cylindrical; tubed, piped; cannular; tubal

17 **valvular,** valval, valvelike; valved

240 SEA, OCEAN

NOUNS 1 **ocean, sea,** ocean sea, great *or* main sea, *thalassa* <Gk>, **main** *or* ocean main, the bounding main, tide, salt sea, salt water, blue water, ocean blue, deep water, open sea, **the brine,** the briny *and* the big pond <nf>, the briny deep, **the deep,** the deep sea, the deep blue sea, drink *and* big drink <nf>, the herring pond <Brit nf>; **high sea, high seas;** the seven seas; hydrosphere; **ocean depths,** ocean deeps and trenches 275.4,17

2 "great Neptune's ocean," "unpath'd waters," —both Shakespeare, "Uterine Sea of our dreams and Sea haunted by the true dream," "Sea of a thousand creases, like the infinitely pleated tunic of the god in the hands of women of the sanctuary"—both S J Perse, "the great naked sea shouldering a load of salt"—Sandburg, "old ocean's gray and melancholy waste"—William Cullen Bryant, "the world of waters wild"—James Thomson, "the rising world of waters dark and deep," "the clear hyaline, the glassy sea"—both Milton

3 **ocean** <see list>; **sea,** tributary sea <see list>, gulf, bay

4 spirit of the sea, "the old man of the sea"—Homer, sea devil, Davy, **Davy Jones;** sea god, **Neptune,** Poseidon, Oceanus, Triton, Nereus, Oceanid, Nereid, Thetis, Amphitrite, Calypso; Varuna, Dylan; **mermaid,** siren; merman, seaman, undine, sea nymph, water sprite, sea serpent

5 <ocean zones> pelagic zone, benthic zone, estuarine area, sublittoral, littoral, intertidal zone, splash zone, supralittoral

6 ocean floor, seabed, sea bottom, benthos, Davy Jones's locker; continental shelf, continental slope, submarine canyon, land bridge, abyssal plain, abyssal hill, midoceanic ridge, oceanic ridge, oceanic trench, volcanic island, seamount, guyot, atoll

7 oceanography, thalassography, hydrography, bathymetry; marine biology; aquaculture

8 oceanographer, thalassographer, hydrographer, marine biologist, deep-sea diver, underwater explorer

ADJS 9 **oceanic, marine, maritime,** pelagic, thalassic; ocean-going, sea-going, seafaring; undersea, underwater; nautical 182.57; oceanographic, oceanographical, hydrographic, hydrographical, bathymetric, bathymetrical, bathyorographical, thalassographic, thalassographical; terriginous; deep-sea 275.14

ADVS 10 **at sea,** on the high seas; afloat 182.62; by water, by sea

11 **oversea, overseas,** beyond seas, over the water, transmarine, across the sea

12 **oceanward,** oceanwards, **seaward,** seawards, off; offshore, off soundings, out of soundings, in blue water

WORD ELEMENTS 13 mari-, thalass-, thalasso-; oceano-; bathy-

14 **oceans**

Antarctic
Arctic
Indian
North Atlantic
South Atlantic
North Pacific
Pacific
South Pacific

15 **seas**

Adriatic Sea
Aegean Sea
Amundsen Sea
Andaman Sea
Arabian Sea
Arafura Sea
Aral Sea
Baffin Bay
Bali Sea
Baltic Sea
Banda Sea
Barents Sea
Bay of Bengal
Beaufort Sea
Bellingshausen Sea
Bering Sea
Black Sea
Caribbean Sea
Caspian Sea
Celebes Sea
Ceram Sea
China Sea
Chukchi Sea
Coral Sea
East China Sea
East Siberian Sea
Flores Sea
Great Australian Bight
Greenland Sea
Gulf of Alaska
Gulf of California
Gulf of Guinea
Gulf of Mexico
Gulf of Saint Lawrence
Hudson Bay
Inland Sea
Ionian Sea
Irish Sea
Kara Sea
Laptev Sea
Ligurian Sea
Macassar Strait
Mediterranean Sea
Molukka Sea
North Sea
Norwegian Sea
Persian Gulf
Philippine Sea
Red Sea
Ross Sea
Sargasso Sea
Savu Sea
Sea of Azov
Sea of Galilee
Sea of Japan
Sea of Marmara
Sea of Okhotsk
South China Sea
Sulu Sea
Tasman Sea
Timor Sea
Tyrrhenian Sea
Weddell Sea
White Sea
Yellow Sea

241 LAKE, POOL

NOUNS 1 **lake,** landlocked water, loch <Scot>, lough <Ir>, *nyanza* <Africa>, mere, freshwater lake, natural lake; oxbow lake, bayou lake, glacial lake; volcanic lake; mountain lake; salt lake; tarn; inland sea; **pool,** lakelet, **pond,** pondlet, dew pond, linn <Scot>, dike <Brit nf>, *étang* <Fr>; standing water, still water, stagnant water, dead water, bayou; **water** *or* watering hole, water pocket, swimming hole; **oasis;** farm pond; fishpond; millpond, millpool; salt pond, salina, tidal pond *or* pool; backwater; **puddle,** plash, sump <nf>; **lagoon,** *laguna* <Sp>; **reservoir,** artificial *or* manmade lake; dam; **well, cistern,** tank, artesian well, flowing well, **spring**

2 **lake dweller,** lakeside dweller, lacustrian, lacustrine dweller *or* inhabitant, **pile dweller** *or* builder; laker

3 **lake dwelling,** lacustrine dwelling, **pile house** *or* **dwelling,** stilt house, palafitte; crannog <Scot, Ir>; lake house, lakeside home; lakeside village

4 limnology, limnologist; limnimeter, limnograph

ADJS 5 **lakish,** laky, lakelike; lacustrine, lacustral, lacustrian; pondy, pondlike, lacuscular; limnetic, limnologic, limnological, limnophilous; landlocked; lakeside, lake-dwelling

6 major lakes

Aral Sea <Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan>
Athabaska <Can>
Baikal <Russia>
Balkhash <Kazakhstan>
Bangweulu <Zambia>
Bear <US>
Becharof <US>
Biwa <Japan>
Caspian Sea <Azerbaijan, Kazakhstan, Turkmenistan, Iran, Russ>
Chad <Chad, Niger, Nigeria>
Champlain <US, Can>
Chapala <Mex>
Derwent Water <Brit>
Edward <Uganda, Zaire>
Erie <US, Can>
Eyre <Australia>
Finger Lakes <US>
Flathead <US>
Gairdner <Australia>
Garda <Ital>
George <US>
Great Bear <Can>
Great Salt <US>
Great Slave <Can>
Huron <US, Can>
Issyk-Kul <Kyrgyzstan>
Katrine <Scot>
Kioga <Uganda>
Kivu <Zaire, Rwanda>
Koko-Nor <China>
Ladoga <Russ>
Lake of the Woods <Can>
Lochy <Scot>
Lomond or Loch <Scot>
Maggiore <It, Switz>
Malawi <Malawi, Mozambique, Tanzania>
Manitoba <Can>
Manzala <Egypt>
Maracaibo <Venezuela>
Mead <US>
Michigan <US>
Mobutu Sese Seko <Uganda>
Moosehead <US>
Ness <Scot>
Nettilling <Can>
Nicaragua
Nipigon <Can>
Nyasa <Malawi, Mozambique, Tanzania>
Okeechobee <US>
Onega <Russ>
Ontario <US, Can>
Patos <Brazil>
Pontchartrain <US>
Reindeer <Can>
Rudolf <Kenya>
St. Clair <US, Can>
Superior <US, Can>
Tahoe <US>
Tanganyika <Tanzania, Congo>
Texcoco <Mex>
Titicaca <Bolivia, Peru>
Torrens <Australia>
Trasimeno <Ital>
Tung-t'ing <China>
Turkana <Kenya, Ethiopia>
Urmia <Iran>
Utah <US>
Vanem <Swed>
Victoria <Tanzania, Uganda>
Volta <Ghana>
Winnebago <US>
Winnipeg <Can>
Yellowstone <US>
Zurich <Switz>

WORD ELEMENTS **7** limn-, limno-, limni-, -limnion

242 INLET, GULF

NOUNS **1** **inlet, cove,** creek <Brit>, arm of the sea, arm, armlet, canal, reach, loch <Scot>, **bay, fjord** *or* fiord, bight; cove; **gulf; estuary,** firth *or* frith, bayou, mouth, outlet, *boca* <Sp>; **harbor,** natural harbor; bay; road *or* roads, roadstead; **strait** *or* straits, kyle <Scot>, **narrow** *or* **narrows,** euripus, belt, gut, narrow seas; **sound**

ADJS **2** gulfy, gulflike; gulfed, bayed, embayed; estuarine, fluviomarine, tidewater; drowned

243 MARSH

NOUNS **1** **marsh,** marshland, **swamp,** swampland, fen, fenland, **morass,** mere *or* marish <old>, *marais* <Fr>, *maremma* <Ital>, **bog, mire, quagmire,** sump <nf>, wash, baygall; glade, everglade; slough, swale, wallow, hog wallow, buffalo wallow, sough <Brit>; bottom, **bottoms,** bottomland, slob land, holm <Brit>, water meadow, meadow; **moor,** moorland, moss <Scot>, peat bog; salt marsh; quicksand; taiga; mud flat, **mud** 1062.8,9

VERBS **2** **mire,** bemire, sink in, **bog,** mire *or* bog down, stick in the mud; stodge

ADJS **3** **marshy, swampy,** swampish, **moory,** moorish, fenny, marish <old>, paludal *or* paludous; **boggy,** boggish, **miry,** mirish, quaggy, quagmiry, spouty, poachy; **muddy** 1062.14; swamp-growing, uliginous

244 QUANTITY

NOUNS **1** **quantity,** quantum, amount, **whole** 792; mass, **bulk,** substance, matter, magnitude, amplitude, **extent, sum; measure,** measurement; strength, force, numbers

2 **amount,** quantity, large amount, small amount, **sum, number,** count, group, total, reckoning, **measure,** parcel, passel <nf>, **part** 793, **portion,** clutch, ration, share, issue, allotment, lot, deal; **batch,** bunch, heap <nf>, pack, mess <nf>, gob *and* chunk *and* hunk <nf>, budget <old>, dose

3 **some,** somewhat, something; **aught; any,** anything

VERBS **4** **quantify,** quantize, **count, number off, enumerate, number** 1017.10, rate, fix; parcel, apportion, mete out, issue, allot, divide 802.18; **increase** 251.4,6, **decrease** 252.6, reduce 252.7; quantitate, **measure** 300.11; set a quota

ADJS **5** **quantitative,** quantitive, quantified, quantized, measured; **some,** certain, one; a, an; **any**

ADVS **6** **approximately,** nearly, some, about, circa; more or less, *plus ou moins* <Fr>, by and large, upwards of

PREPS **7** **to the amount of,** to the tune of <nf>; as much as, all of <nf>, no less than, upwards of

8 **indefinite quantities**

armful *or* armload
bag *or* bagful
bargeload
barrel *or* barrelful
basin *or* basinful
basket *or* basketful
bin *or* binful
bottle *or* bottleful
bowl *or* bowlful
box *or* boxful

bucket *or* bucketful
bundle
can *or* canful
cap *or* capful
carton *or* cartonful
case *or* caseful
crate *or* crateful
cup *or* cupful
flask *or* flaskful
glass *or* glassful
handful
jar *or* jarful
keg *or* kegful
kettle *or* kettleful
lapful
mouthful
mug *or* mugful
pail *or* pailful
pitcher *or* pitcherful
planeful *or* planeload
plate *or* plateful
pocketful
pot *or* potful
roomful
sack *or* sackful *or* sackload
scoop *or* scoopful
shovel *or* shovelful
spoon *or* spoonful
tablespoon *or* tablespoonful
tank *or* tankful
tankerload
teacup *or* teacupful
teaspoon *or* teaspoonful
thimble *or* thimbleful
truckload
tub *or* tubful

245 DEGREE

NOUNS 1 **degree, grade, step,** *pas* <Fr>, leap; round, rung, tread, stair; **point,** mark, peg, tick; **notch,** cut; **plane,** level, plateau; **period,** space, interval; **extent, measure,** amount, ratio, proportion, stint, standard, height, pitch, reach, remove, compass, range, scale, scope, caliber; **shade,** shadow, nuance

2 **rank, standing, level,** footing, **status,** station; **position,** place, sphere, orbit, echelon; **order,** estate, precedence, condition; rate, rating; **class,** caste; **hierarchy,** power structure

3 **gradation, graduation,** grading, staging, phasing, tapering, shading; gradualism

VERBS 4 **graduate, grade,** calibrate; phase in, phase out, taper off, shade off, scale; **increase** 251, **decrease** 252.6,7; change by degrees

ADJS 5 **gradual,** gradational, calibrated, graduated, phased, staged, tapered, scalar; regular, progressive; hierarchic, hierarchical; in scale, calibrated; proportional

ADVS 6 **by degrees,** degreewise; **gradually,** gradatim; **step by step,** grade by grade, *di grado in grado* <Ital>, **bit by bit, little by little,** inch by inch, inchmeal, drop by drop; a little, fractionally; a little at a time, by slow degrees, by inches; slowly 175.13

7 to a degree, to some extent, in a way, in a measure, in some measure; somewhat, kind of <nf>, sort of <nf>, rather, pretty, quite, fairly; a little, a bit; slightly, scarcely, to a small degree 248.9,10; very, extremely, to a great degree 247.19,22

246 MEAN

NOUNS 1 **mean, median, middle** 819; **golden mean,** *juste milieu* <Fr>; **medium,** happy medium; middle of the road, middle course, *via media* <L>; middle state *or* ground *or* position *or* echelon *or* level *or* point, midpoint; **average,** balance, par, normal, norm, rule, run, generality; **mediocrity,** averageness, passableness, adequacy; averaging, mediocritization; **center** 208.2

VERBS 2 **average,** average out, **split the difference,** take the average, strike a balance, pair off, split down the middle; strike *or* hit a happy medium; keep to the middle, avoid extremes; **do,** just do, pass, barely pass; mediocritize

ADJS 3 **medium,** mean, **intermediate,** intermediary, median, medial, mesial, mid-level, middle-echelon; **average,** normal, standard, par for the course; middle-of-the-road, moderate, fence-sitting, middle-ground; **middling, ordinary,** usual, routine, common, mediocre, merely adequate, passing, banal, so-so, vanilla <nf>; **central** 208.11

ADVS 4 **mediumly,** medianly; medially, midway 819.5, intermediately, in the mean; **centrally** 208.15

5 **on the average, in the long run, over the long haul; taking one thing with another,** taking all things together, **all in all, on the whole,** all things considered, on balance; **generally** 863.17

WORD ELEMENTS 6 medi-, mes-, mezzo-, semi-

247 GREATNESS

NOUNS 1 **greatness, magnitude,** muchness; **amplitude,** ampleness, fullness, plenitude, great scope *or* compass *or* reach; **grandeur,** grandness; **immensity,** enormousness *or* enormity, **vastness,** vastitude, tremendousness, expanse, boundlessness, infinity 823; stupendousness, formidableness, prodigiousness, humongousness <nf>; **might,** mightiness, strength, power, intensity; **largeness** 257.6, **hugeness,** gigantism, bulk; **superiority** 249

2 **glory, eminence, preeminence, majesty, loftiness, prominence,** distinction, outstandingness, consequence, notability; **magnanimity,** nobility, sublimity; **fame,** renown, celebrity; heroism

3 **quantity** 244, **numerousness** 884; **quantities, much, abundance,** copiousness, superabundance, superfluity, profusion, plenty, plenitude; **volume, mass,** mountain, load; peck, bushel; bag, barrel, ton; world, acre, ocean, sea; flood, spate; **multitude** 884.3, countlessness 823.1

4 **lot, lots,** deal, no end of, **good** *or* **great deal, considerable,** sight, **heap, pile, stack,** loads, **raft, slew,** whole slew, spate, wad, **batch,** mess, mint, peck, pack, pot, **tidy sum,** quite a little; **oodles, gobs, scads,** bags *and* masses *and* lashings <Brit>

VERBS 5 **loom, bulk,** loom large, bulk large, stand out; **tower,** rear, soar, outsoar; **tower above,** rise above, overtop; **exceed, transcend,** outstrip

ADJS **6** **great, grand, considerable,** consequential; **mighty,** powerful, strong, irresistible, intense; main, maximum, **total, full,** plenary, comprehensive, exhaustive; grave, **serious,** heavy, deep

7 **large** 257.16, **immense, enormous, huge** 257.20; **gigantic,** mountainous, titanic, colossal, mammoth, Gargantuan, gigantesque, monster, monstrous, outsize, sizable, larger-than-life, overgrown, king-size, monumental; **massive,** massy, weighty, bulky, voluminous; **vast,** vasty, boundless, **infinite** 822.3, immeasurable, cosmic, astronomical, galactic; **spacious,** amplitudinous, extensive; **tremendous,** stupendous, awesome, prodigious

8 **much, many,** beaucoup <nf>, ample, **abundant,** copious, generous, overflowing, superabundant, multitudinous, plentiful, **numerous** 884.6, countless 823.3

9 **eminent, prominent,** outstanding, standout, high, elevated, towering, soaring, overtopping, exalted, **lofty,** sublime; august, majestic, noble, distinguished; **magnificent,** magnanimous, heroic, godlike, superb; famous, renowned, lauded, glorious

10 **remarkable, outstanding,** extraordinary, **superior** 249.12, **marked,** of mark, signal, conspicuous, **striking; notable,** much in evidence, noticeable, noteworthy; **marvelous,** wonderful, formidable, exceptional, uncommon, astonishing, appalling, humongous <nf>, fabulous, fantastic, incredible, brilliant, egregious

11 <nf terms> **terrific,** terrible, horrible, **dreadful, awful,** fearful, frightful, deadly; **whacking, thumping, rousing,** howling

12 **downright, outright, out-and-out; absolute, utter, perfect, consummate,** superlative, surpassing, the veriest, positive, definitive, classical, pronounced, decided, regular <nf>, proper <Brit nf>, precious, profound, stark; **thorough,** thoroughgoing, **complete,** total; **unmitigated,** unqualified, unrelieved, unspoiled, undeniable, unquestionable, unequivocal; **flagrant,** arrant, shocking, shattering, egregious, intolerable, unbearable, unconscionable, glaring, stark-staring, **rank,** crass, gross

13 **extreme, radical,** out of this world, way *or* far out <nf>, too much <nf>; **greatest,** furthest, **most, utmost,** uttermost, the max <nf>; **ultra,** ultra-ultra; at the height *or* peak *or* limit *or* summit *or* zenith

14 **undiminished,** unabated, unreduced, unrestricted, unretarded, unmitigated

ADVS **15** **greatly, largely,** to a large *or* great extent, in great measure, on a large scale; **much,** muchly <nf>, pretty much, very much, so, so very much, ever so much, ever so, never so; **considerably,** considerable <nf>; abundantly, plenty <nf>, no end of, no end, not a little, galore <nf>, **a lot,** a deal <nf>, a **great deal,** *beaucoup* <Fr>; **highly,** to the skies; like *or* as all creation <nf>, like *or* as all get-out <nf>, in spades *and* with bells on *and* with bells on one’s toes <nf>; **undiminishedly,** unabatedly, unreducedly, unrestrictedly, unretardedly, unmitigatedly

16 **vastly, immensely, enormously, hugely, tremendously,** gigantically, colossally, titanically, prodigiously, stupendously, humongously <nf>

17 **by far, far and away,** far, far and wide, by a long way, by a great deal, by a long shot *or* long chalk <nf>, out and away, by all odds

18 **very, exceedingly,** awfully *and* terribly *and* terrifically <nf>, **quite,** just, so, **really,** real *and* right <nf>, **pretty,** only too, mightily, **mighty** *and* almighty *and* powerfully *and* powerful <nf>

19 <in a positive degree> **positively, decidedly, clearly,** manifestly, unambiguously, patently, **obviously,** visibly, unmistakably, unquestionably, observably, **noticeably,** demonstrably, sensibly, quite; **certainly,** actually, **really, truly,** basically, verily, **undeniably,** indubitably, without doubt, assuredly, **indeed,** for a certainty, for real <nf>, seriously, in all conscience

20 <in a marked degree> **intensely, acutely,** exquisitely, **exceptionally,** surpassingly, superlatively, eminently, preeminently; **remarkably, markedly, notably, strikingly,** signally, emphatically, pointedly, prominently, conspicuously, pronouncedly, impressively, famously, glaringly; **particularly, singularly,** peculiarly; uncommonly, extraordinarily, **unusually; wonderfully,** wondrous, amazingly, magically, surprisingly, astonishingly, marvelously, exuberantly, incredibly, awesomely; **abundantly,** richly, profusely, amply, **generously,** copiously; **magnificently,** splendidly, nobly, worthily, magnanimously

21 <in a distressing degree> **distressingly, sadly, sorely, bitterly,** piteously, grievously, miserably, **cruelly,** woefully, lamentably, balefully, dolorously, shockingly; **terribly, awfully, dreadfully, frightfully, horribly,** abominably, **painfully,** excruciatingly, torturously, **agonizingly,** deathly, deadly, something awful *or* fierce *or* terrible *and* in the worst way <nf>, within an inch of one’s life; shatteringly, staggeringly; **excessively,** exorbitantly, extravagantly, **inordinately,** preposterously; **unduly, improperly,** intolerably, unbearably; **inexcusably,**

unpardonably, unconscionably; **flagrantly,** blatantly, egregiously; **unashamedly,** unabashedly, baldly, nakedly, brashly, openly; **cursedly,** confoundedly, **damnably,** deucedly <nf>, infernally, hellishly

22 <in an extreme degree> **extremely, utterly, totally,** in the extreme, **most,** *à outrance* <Fr, to the utmost>; mondo <nf>; **immeasurably,** incalculably, indefinitely, **infinitely;** beyond compare *or* comparison, **beyond measure,** beyond all bounds, all out <nf>, flat out <Brit nf>; **perfectly, absolutely,** essentially, fundamentally, radically; **purely, totally,** completely, to the max; unconditionally, with no strings attached, unequivocally, downright, dead; with a vengeance

23 <in a violent degree> **violently,** furiously, hotly, fiercely, severely, **desperately,** madly, **like mad** <nf>; **wildly,** demonically, like one possessed, **frantically,** frenetically, fanatically, uncontrollably

WORD ELEMENTS **24** meg-, mega-, multi-, super-

248 INSIGNIFICANCE

NOUNS **1** **insignificance,** inconsiderableness, unimportance 998, inconsequentialness, inconsequentiality, lowness, pettiness, meanness, triviality, nugacity, nugaciousness; **smallness,** tininess, diminutiveness, minuteness, exiguity *or* exiguousness; **slightness,** moderateness, scantiness, puniness, picayunishness, meanness, meagerness; daintiness, delicacy; **littleness** 258; **fewness** 885; insufficiency 991

2 **modicum,** minim; **minimum; little, bit,** little *or* wee *or* tiny bit <nf>, bite, **particle,** fragment, spot, **speck,** flyspeck, fleck, point, dot, jot, tittle, **iota,** ounce, **dab** <nf>, mote, **mite** <nf> 258.7; whit, ace, **hair,** scruple, groat, farthing, pittance, dole, trifling amount, **smidgen** *and* skosh *and* smitch <nf>, pinch, gobbet, dribble, driblet, dram, drop, drop in a bucket *or* in the ocean, tip of the iceberg; grain, granule, pebble; molecule, **atom;** thimbleful, spoonful, handful, nutshell; trivia, minutiae; dwarf

3 **scrap,** tatter, smithereen <nf>, patch, **stitch, shred,** tag; snip, **snippet,** snick, chip, nip; splinter, sliver, shiver; **morsel,** *morceau* <Fr>, **crumb**

4 **hint,** *soupçon* <Fr>, **suspicion, suggestion,** intimation; tip of the iceberg; **trace, touch, dash,** cast, **smattering,** sprinkling; tinge, tincture; **taste, lick, smack,** sip, sup, **smell;** look, **thought,** idea; **shade,** shadow; gleam, spark, scintilla

5 **hardly anything, mere nothing,** next to nothing, less than nothing, **trifle,** bagatelle, **a drop in the bucket** *or* **in the ocean;** the shadow of a shade, the suspicion of a suspicion

ADJS **6** **insignificant, small, inconsiderable, inconsequential, negligible,** no great shakes, footling, one-horse *and* pint-size *and* vest-pocket <nf>; unimportant, no skin off one's nose *or* ass, **trivial,** trifling, nugacious, nugatory, petty, mean, niggling, picayune *or* picayunish, nickel-and-dime *and* penny-ante *and* Mickey-Mouse *and* chickenshit <nf>; shallow, depthless, cursory, superficial, skin-deep; **little** 258.10, **tiny** 258.11, **weeny, miniature** 258.12, **meager** 992.10, **few** 885.4; **short** 268.8; **low** 274.7

7 **dainty, delicate, gossamer, diaphanous; subtle,** subtile, tenuous, thin 270.16, rarefied 299.4

8 **mere, sheer,** stark, bare, bare-bones, plain, simple, unadorned, unenhanced

ADVS **9** <in a small degree> **scarcely, hardly,** not hardly <nf>, **barely,** only just, by a hair, by an ace *or* a jot *or* a whit *or* an iota, **slightly,** lightly, exiguously, fractionally, scantily, inconsequentially, **insignificantly, negligibly,** imperfectly, minimally, inappreciably, **little; minutely,** meagerly, triflingly, faintly, weakly, feebly; **a little, a bit,** just a bit, to a small extent, on a small scale; ever so little, *tant soit peu* <Fr>, as little as may be

10 <in a certain or limited degree> **to a degree, to a certain extent, to some degree,** in some measure, to such an extent, *pro tanto* <L>; **moderately,** mildly, **somewhat,** detectably, just visibly, modestly, appreciably, visibly, **fairly,** tolerably, **partially,** partly, part, in part, incompletely, not exhaustively, not comprehensively; **comparatively, relatively; merely,** simply, purely, only; **at least,** at the least, leastwise, at worst, at any rate; **at most,** at the most, at best, at the outside <nf>; in a manner, in a manner of speaking, **in a way,** after a fashion; so far, thus far

11 <in no degree> **noway,** noways, **nowise,** in no wise, in no case, in no respect, **by no means,** by no manner of means, **on no account, not on any account, not for anything in the world, under no circumstances,** at no hand, nohow <nf>, **not in the least,** not much, **not at all,** never, not by a damn sight <nf>, not by a long shot <nf>; not nearly, **nowhere near; not a bit,** not a bit of it, not a whit, not a speck, not a jot, not an iota

249 SUPERIORITY

NOUNS **1** **superiority, preeminence, greatness** 247, **lead,** pride of place, transcendence *or* transcendency, ascendancy *or* ascendance, prestige, favor, prepotence *or* prepotency, preponderance; predominance *or* predominancy, hegemony; precedence 814, **priority,** prerogative, privilege, right-of-way; **excellence** 999.1, virtuosity, high caliber, inimitability, incomparability;

seniority, precedence, deanship; clout, pull <nf>; **success** 409, accomplishment 407, **skill** 413

2 **advantage,** vantage, odds, leg up *and* inside track *and* pole position <nf>; **upper hand,** whip hand, trump hand; start, head *or* flying *or* running start; **edge,** bulge *and* jump *and* drop <nf>; **card up one's sleeve** <nf>, ace in the hole <nf>, something extra *or* in reserve; vantage ground *or* point, coign of vantage, high ground; one-upmanship

3 **supremacy, primacy,** paramountcy, **first place,** height, acme, zenith, be-all and end-all, summit, top spot <nf>; **sovereignty, rule, hegemony, control** 417.5; kingship, **dominion** 417.6, lordship, imperium, world power; **command,** sway; **mastery,** mastership 417.7; **leadership,** headship, presidency; **authority** 417, directorship, management, jurisdiction, power, say *and* last word <nf>; influence 894; effectiveness; **maximum,** highest, most, *ne plus ultra* <Fr, no more beyond>, the max <nf>; **championship,** crown, laurels, palms, first prize, blue ribbon, new high, record

4 **superior, chief, head, boss** 575.1, employer, honcho <nf>, commander, **ruler, leader,** dean, *primus inter pares* <L, first among equals>, **master** 575; higher-up <nf>, senior, principal, big shot <nf>; superman, **genius** 413.12; prodigy, nonpareil, paragon, virtuoso, ace, **star, superstar,** champion, winner, top dog *and* top banana <nf>, one in a thousand, one in a million, etc, laureate, fugleman, Cadillac *and* Rolls-Royce <trademark>, A per se, A1, A number 1, standout, money-maker, record-breaker, the greatest *and* the most whiz *and* whizbang *and* world-beater *and* a tough act to follow <nf>; big fish in a small pond <nf>

5 **the best** 999.8, the top of the line <nf>; the best people, nobility 608; **aristocracy,** barons, top people <nf>, **elite,** cream, crème de la crème, top of the milk, upper crust, upper class, one's betters; **the brass** <nf>, the VIP's <nf>, higher-ups, movers and shakers, lords of creation, ruling circles, **establishment,** power elite, power structure, **ruling class,** bigwigs <nf>, big boys <nf>, authorities, powers that be, officialdom; fast track; happy few, chosen few

VERBS 6 **excel, surpass, exceed, transcend,** get *or* have the ascendancy, get *or* have the edge, have it all over <nf>, overcome, overpass, best, **better,** improve on, perfect, go one better <nf>; **cap,** trump; top, tower above *or* over, overtop; **predominate,** prevail, preponderate, carry the day; **outweigh,** overbalance, overbear

7 **best, beat, beat out, defeat** 412.6; beat all hollow <nf>, trounce, clobber *and* take to the cleaners *and* smoke *and* skin *and* skin alive <nf>, worst, whip *and* lick *and* have it all over *and* cut down to size <nf>; bear the palm, take the cake <nf>, bring home the bacon <nf>; **triumph; win** 411.4

8 **overshadow, eclipse, throw into the shade, top,** extinguish, take the shine out of <nf>; put to shame, show up <nf>, put one's nose out of joint, put down <nf>, fake out <nf>

9 **outdo, outrival,** outvie, outachieve, edge out, **outclass, outshine,** overmatch, outgun <nf>; **outstrip,** outgo, outrange, outreach, outpoint, **outperform;** outplay, overplay, outmaneuver, outwit; outrun, outstep, outpace, outmarch, run rings *or* circles around <nf>; outride, override; outjump, overjump; outleap, overleap

10 **outdistance, distance; pass, surpass,** overpass; **get ahead,** pull ahead, shoot ahead, walk away *or* off <nf>; **leave behind,** leave at the post, leave in the dust, leave in the lurch; **come to the front,** have a healthy lead <nf>, hold the field; steal a march

11 **rule, command, lead,** possess authority 417.13, have the authority, have the say *or* the last word, have the whip hand *and* hold all the aces <nf>; **take precedence, precede** 814.2; **come** *or* **rank first, outrank,** rank, rank out <nf>; **come to the fore,** come to the front, **lead** 165.2; play first fiddle, **star**

ADJS 12 **superior, greater,** better, finer; **higher,** upper, over, super, above; ascendant, in the ascendant, in ascendancy, coming <nf>; **eminent,** outstanding, rare, distinguished, marked, of choice, chosen; **surpassing, exceeding, excellent** 999.12, **excelling, rivaling, eclipsing,** capping, topping, **transcending,** transcendent *or* transcendental, bad <nf>; **ahead,** a cut *or* stroke above, one up on <nf>; more than a match for

13 **superlative, supreme, greatest, best, highest,** veriest, maximal, maximum, most, utmost, outstanding, stickout <nf>; top, topmost, **uppermost,** tip-top, top-level, top-echelon, top-notch *and* top-of-the-line <nf>, **first-rate,** first-class, of the first water, top of the line, highest-quality, best-quality, far and away the best, the best by a long shot *or* long chalk, head and shoulders above, of the highest type, A1, A number 1, drop-dead <nf>

14 **chief, main, principal,** paramount, **foremost,** headmost, **leading, dominant,** crowning, capital, **cardinal;** great, arch, banner, master, magisterial; central, focal, prime, **primary,** primal, first; **preeminent,** supereminent; **predominant,** preponderant, prevailing, hegemonic *or* hegemonical; ruling, overruling; **sovereign** 417.17; topflight, highest-ranking, ranking; **star,** superstar, stellar, world-class

15 **peerless, matchless, champion; unmatched,** unmatchable, makeless <old>, unrivaled, unparagoned, unparalleled, immortal, **unequaled,** never-to-be-equaled, unpeered, unexampled, unapproached, unapproachable, **unsurpassed, unexcelled;** unsurpassable; inimitable, **incomparable,** beyond compare *or* comparison, **unique;** without equal *or* parallel, *sans pareil* <Fr>; in a class by itself, *sui generis* <L>, easily first, *facile princeps* <L>; second to none, *nulli secundus* <L>; **unbeatable,** invincible

ADVS 16 **superlatively, exceedingly, surpassingly;** eminently, egregiously, prominently; supremely, paramountly, preeminently, **the most,** transcendently, to crown all, *par excellence* <Fr>; inimitably, incomparably; to *or* in the highest degree, far and away

17 **chiefly, mainly, in the main,** in chief; dominantly, **predominantly; mostly, for the most part; principally, especially, particularly,** peculiarly; **primarily, in the first place,** first of all, **above all; indeed,** even, yea, still more, more than ever, all the more, *a fortiori* <L>; ever so, never so, no end

18 **peerlessly, matchlessly,** unmatchably; unsurpassedly, unsurpassably; inimitably, **incomparably; uniquely,** second to none, *nulli secundus* <L>; **unbeatably,** invincibly

19 **advantageously,** to *or* with advantage, favorably; melioratively, amelioratively, improvingly

WORD ELEMENTS 20 preter-, super-, supra-, sur-, trans-, ultra-, arch-, prot-

250 INFERIORITY

NOUNS 1 **inferiority, subordinacy,** subordination, secondariness; **juniority,** minority; **subservience, subjection,** servility, lowliness, humbleness, humility; back seat *and* second fiddle <nf>, second *or* third string <nf>; insignificance

2 **inferior, underling,** understrapper <Brit>, **subordinate,** subaltern, **junior;** secondary, second fiddle *and* second stringer *and* third stringer *and* benchwarmer *and* low man on the totem pole <nf>, loser *and* nonstarter <nf>; lightweight, follower, pawn, cog, flunky, yes-man, creature; lower class *or* orders *or* ranks, lowlife, commonalty; infrastructure *or* commonality, *hoi polloi* <Gk>, masses; satellite

3 **inadequacy, mediocrity** 1005, deficiency, imperfection, insufficiency 992; **incompetence** *or* incompetency, maladroitness, unskillfulness 414; **failure** 410; smallness 248.1; littleness 258; meanness, lowness, baseness, pettiness, triviality, shabbiness, vulgarity 497; **fewness** 885; subnormality

VERBS 4 **be inferior, not come up to, not measure up, fall** *or* **come short, fail** 410.8, not make *or* hack it *and* not cut the mustard *and* not make the cut <nf>, not make the grade; want, leave much to be desired, be found wanting; **not compare,** have nothing on <nf>, **not hold a candle to** <nf>, not approach, not come near; serve, subserve, rank under *or* beneath, follow, play second fiddle *and* take a back seat *and* sit on the bench <nf>

5 **bow to, hand it to** <nf>, tip the hat to <nf>, yield the palm; retire into the shade; give in <nf>, lose face; submit

ADJS 6 **inferior, subordinate,** subaltern, sub, small-scale, **secondary; junior, minor;** second *or* third string *and* one-horse *and* penny-ante *and* dinky <nf>, second *or* third rank, low in the pecking order, low-rent *and* downscale <nf>, below the salt; **subservient,** subject, servile, low, **lowly,** humble, modest; **lesser,** less, lower; in the shade, thrown into the shade; **common,** vulgar, **ordinary;** underprivileged, disadvantaged, nothing to write home about; **beneath one's dignity** *or* station, infra dig, demeaning

7 **inadequate, mediocre,** deficient, imperfect, **insufficient; incompetent,** unskillful, maladroit; small, small-time, little, mean, base, petty, trivial, shabby; **not to be compared, not comparable, not a patch on** <nf>; **outclassed,** outshone, not in it *and* not in the same street *or* league with <nf>, out of it *and* out of the picture *and* **out of the running** *and* left a mile behind <nf>

8 **least, smallest,** littlest, slightest, **lowest,** shortest; minimum, minimal, minim; few 885.4

ADVS 9 **poorly, incompetently, inadequately,** badly, maladroitly; least of all, at the bottom of the scale, at the nadir, at the bottom of the heap *and* in the gutter <nf>; at a disadvantage

WORD ELEMENTS 10 sub-, hyp-, hypo-

251 INCREASE

NOUNS 1 **increase, gain,** augmentation, greatening, **enlargement, amplification, growth,** development, widening, spread, broadening, elevation, **extension,** aggrandizement, access, accession, **increment,** accretion; **addition** 253; **expansion** 259; **inflation,** swelling, ballooning, edema, fattening, tumescence, bloating, dilation; **multiduplication, proliferation,** productiveness 890; accruement, accrual, accumulation; **advance,** appreciation, ascent, mounting, crescendo, waxing, snowballing, **rise** *or* raise, fattening *and* boost *and* hike <nf>, **up** *and* upping <nf>, buildup; **upturn,** uptick <nf>, uptrend, upsurge, upswing; **leap,** jump; **flood,** surge, gush

2 intensification, heightening, deepening; tightening, turn of the screw; **strengthening,** beefing-up <nf>, enhancement, **magnification,** blowup, blowing up, exaggeration; aggravation, exacerbation, heating-up; **concentration,** condensation, consolidation; **reinforcement,** redoubling; pickup *and* step-up <nf>, **acceleration,** speedup, accelerando, escalation, upsurge; **boom, explosion,** baby boom, population explosion, information explosion

3 gains, winnings, cut *and* take <nf>, increase <old>, **profits** 472.3

VERBS **4 increase, enlarge,** aggrandize, **amplify, augment, extend,** maximize, **add to; expand** 259.4, **inflate;** lengthen, broaden, fatten, fill out, thicken; **raise,** exalt, boost <nf>, hike *and* hike up *and* jack up *and* jump up <nf>, mark up, put up, **up** <nf>; **build, build up;** pyramid, parlay; progress

5 intensify, heighten, deepen, amplify, enhance, **strengthen,** beef up <nf>, aggravate, exacerbate; **exaggerate,** blow up *and* puff up <nf>, **magnify;** whet, sharpen; **reinforce,** double, redouble, triple; **concentrate,** condense, consolidate; **complicate,** ramify, make complex; give a boost to, **step up** <nf>, accelerate; key up, hop up *and* soup up *and* jazz up <nf>; add fuel to the flame *or* the fire, heat *or* hot up <nf>

6 grow, increase, advance, appreciate; **spread, widen,** broaden; **gain,** get ahead; wax, swell, balloon, bloat, mount, **rise,** go up, crescendo, snowball, skyrocket; **intensify, develop,** gain strength, strengthen; accrue, accumulate; **multiply, proliferate,** breed, teem; run *or* shoot up, **boom, explode**

ADJS **7 increased, heightened,** raised, elevated, stepped-up <nf>; **intensified,** deepened, reinforced, strengthened, fortified, beefed-up <nf>, tightened, stiffened; **enlarged, extended,** augmented, aggrandized, amplified, **enhanced,** boosted, hiked <nf>; broadened, widened, spread; **magnified, inflated, expanded,** swollen, bloated; **multiplied,** proliferated; **accelerated,** hopped-up *and* jazzed-up <nf>, hiked

8 increasing, rising, fast-rising, skyrocketing, meteoric; on the upswing, on the increase, on the rise; crescent, waxing, **growing,** fast-growing, flourishing, burgeoning, blossoming, waxing, swelling, lengthening, **multiplying,** proliferating; spreading, spreading like a cancer *or* like wildfire, expanding; tightening, intensifying; incremental; **on the increase,** crescendoing, snowballing, mushrooming, growing like a mushroom

ADVS **9 increasingly,** growingly, more, **more and more,** on and on, greater and greater, ever more; in a crescendo

252 DECREASE

NOUNS **1 decrease,** decrescence, decrement, **diminishment,** diminution, **reduction, lessening, lowering,** waning, shrinking *or* shrinkage, withering, withering away, scaling down, scaledown, downsizing, build-down; miniaturization; downplaying, underplaying; depression, damping, dampening; **letup** <nf>, abatement, easing, easing off, slackening; de-escalation; **alleviation,** relaxation, mitigation; attenuation, extenuation, weakening, sagging, dying, dying off *or* away, trailing off, tailing off, tapering off, fade-out, languishment; depreciation, **deflation; deduction** 255.1; subtraction, **abridgment** 268.3; **contraction** 260; simplicity 798

2 decline, declension, **subsidence,** slump <nf>, lapse, **drop,** downtick <nf>; **collapse,** crash; dwindling, wane, ebb; downturn, downtrend, downward trend *or* curve, retreat, remission; **fall, plunge,** dive, decline and fall; decrescendo, diminuendo; catabasis, deceleration, slowdown; leveling off, bottoming out

3 decrement, waste, loss, dissipation, wear and tear, erosion, ablation, wearing away, depletion, corrosion, attrition, consumption, shrinkage, exhaustion; deliquescence, dissolution; extinction, consumption

4 curtailment, retrenchment, cut, cutback, drawdown, rollback, scaleback, pullback; moderation, restraint; abridgment

5 minimization, minification, making light of, devaluing, undervaluing, **belittling,** belittlement, detraction; qualification 959

VERBS **6 decrease, diminish, lessen; let up,** bate, abate; **decline, subside,** shrink, wane, wither, ebb, ebb away, dwindle, languish, sink, sag, die down *or* away, wind down, taper off *and* trail off *or* away *and* tail off *or* away <nf>; **drop,** drop off, dive, take a nose dive, plummet, plunge, fall, fall off, fall away, fall to a low ebb, run low; **waste,** wear, waste *or* wear away, crumble, erode, ablate, corrode, consume, consume away, be eaten away; melt away, deliquesce; become extinct

7 reduce, decrease, diminish, lessen, take from; **lower, depress,** de-escalate, damp, dampen, **step down** *and* tune down *and* phase down *or* out *and* scale back *or* down *and* roll back *or* down <nf>; **downgrade;** depreciate, **deflate; curtail,** retrench; **cut,** cut down *or* back, cut down to size <nf>, trim away, chip away at, whittle away *or* down, pare, pare down, roll back <nf>; deduct 255.9; **shorten** 268.6, abridge; **compress** 260.7, shrink, retrench, downsize; **simplify** 798.4

8 abate, bate, ease; **weaken,** dilute, water, water down, attenuate, extenuate; alleviate, mitigate, slacken, remit; enfeeble, debilitate

9 **minimize,** minify, **belittle,** detract from; dwarf, bedwarf; play down, underplay, downplay, de-emphasize, play down, tone down, moderate; hush

ADJS 10 **reduced, decreased, diminished, lowered,** dropped, fallen; bated, **abated; deflated,** contracted, shrunk, shrunken; **simplified** 797.9; back-to-basics, no-frills; dissipated, **eroded,** consumed, ablated, **worn;** curtailed, shorn, retrenched, cutback; weakened, attenuated, watered-down, diluted; scaled-down, miniaturized, pared down; minimized, belittled, on a downer <nf>; **lower,** less, lesser, smaller, shorter; off-peak; downplayed, underplayed, toned down, de-emphasized

11 **decreasing, diminishing, lessening, subsiding,** declining, languishing, dwindling, waning, on the wane, on the slide, wasting; decrescent, reductive, deliquescent, **contractive;** diminuendo, decrescendo

ADVS 12 **decreasingly, diminishingly,** less, **less and less,** ever less; decrescendo, diminuendo; on a declining scale, at a declining rate

253 ADDITION

NOUNS 1 **addition,** accession, annexation, affixation, suffixation, prefixation, agglutination, attachment, junction, **joining** 800, adjunction, uniting; **increase** 251; **augmentation, supplementation, complementation,** reinforcement; superaddition, admixture, superposition, superjunction, superfetation, suppletion; juxtaposition 223.3; adjunct 254, add-on, accessory

2 <math terms> plus sign, plus; addend; sum, summation, total, aggregate; subtotal

3 **adding,** totalizing *or* totalization, reckoning, computation, calculation, ringing up; **adding machine,** calculator

VERBS 4 **add,** plus <nf>, put with, **join** *or* **unite with, bring together, affix, attach,** annex, adjoin, append, conjoin, subjoin, prefix, suffix, infix, postfix, tag, tag on, **tack on** <nf>, slap on <nf>, hitch on <nf>, carry over; glue on, paste on, agglutinate; superpose, superadd; burden, encumber, saddle with; **complicate,** ornament, decorate

5 **add to, augment, supplement; increase** 251.4; **reinforce,** strengthen, fortify, beef up <nf>; recruit, swell the ranks of; superadd

6 **compute,** add up; sum, total, totalize, total up, tot *and* tot up *and* tote *and* tote up <nf>, tally, calculate

7 **be added,** advene, supervene

ADJS 8 **additive,** additional, additory; **cumulative,** accumulative; summative *or* summational; loaded

9 **added,** affixed, add-on, **attached,** annexed, appended, appendant; adjoined, adjunct, adjunctive, conjoined, subjoined; superadded, superposed, superjoined

10 **additional, supplementary, supplemental; extra,** plus, further, farther, fresh, **more,** new, **other,** another, ulterior; **auxiliary,** ancillary, supernumerary, contributory, **accessory,** collateral, supererogatory; **surplus,** spare, superfluous

ADVS 11 **additionally, in addition, also,** and then some, even more, more so, and also, and all <nf>, and so, **as well, too,** else, beside, **besides, to boot, not to mention, let alone, into the bargain;** on top of, over, above; **beyond, plus; extra,** on the side <nf>, for lagniappe; **more, moreover,** *au reste* <Fr>, *en plus* <Fr>, thereto, farther, further, **furthermore,** at the same time, then, again, yet; similarly, likewise, by the same token, by the same sign; item; therewith, withal <old>; all included, altogether; among other things, *inter alia* <L>

PREPS 12 **with, plus, including,** inclusive of, **along** *or* **together with,** coupled with, **in conjunction with; as well as,** to say nothing of, not to mention, let alone; over and above, **in addition to,** added to, linked to; with the addition of, attended by

CONJS 13 **and, also,** and also

PHRS 14 **et cetera, etc, and so forth, and so on,** *und so weiter* <Ger>; et al, *et alii* <L>, and all <nf>, and others, and other things, *cum multis aliis* <L, with many others>; and everything else, **and more of the same, and the rest, and the like;** blah blah blah blah *and* dah-dah dah-dah dah-dah *and* and suchlike *or* and all that sort of thing *and* and all that *and* and all like that *and* and stuff like that *and* and all that jazz <nf>; **and what not** *and* and what have you *and* and I don't know what *and* and God knows what *and* and then some *and* you name it <nf>; and the following, *et sequens* <L>, et seq

WORD ELEMENTS 15 super-, pleo-, pleio-

254 ADJUNCT

<thing added>

NOUNS 1 **adjunct, addition,** increase, **increment,** augmentation, supplementation, complementation, *additum* <L>, additament, additory, addendum, addenda <pl>, accession, fixture; **annex,** annexation; **appendage,** appendant, pendant, appanage, tailpiece, coda; undergirding, reinforcement; appurtenance, appurtenant; **accessory,** attachment; **supplement,** complement, continuation, extrapolation, extension; offshoot, side issue, corollary, sidebar <nf>, side effect, spin-off <nf>, aftereffect; **concomitant, accompaniment** 769, **additive,** adjuvant; leftover, carry-over

2 <written text> **postscript** *or* **P.S., appendix;** rider, allonge, codicil; **epilogue,** envoi, coda, tail, afterword; back matter, front matter; note, marginalia, scholia, commentary, annotation, footnote; **interpolation,** interlineation; affix, prefix, suffix, infix; subscript, superscript; enclitic, proclitic

3 <building> wing, **addition, annex,** extension, ell *or* L, outhouse, outbuilding

4 **extra, bonus, premium,** something extra, extra dash, little extra, extra added attraction, lagniappe, something into the bargain, something for good measure, baker's dozen; peripheral; **padding,** stuffing, filling; trimming, **frill,** flourish, filigree, decoration, ornament; bells and whistles <nf>; superaddition; fillip, wrinkle, twist; the works <nf>; benefit, perquisite, perk; freebie <nf>

255 SUBTRACTION

NOUNS 1 **subtraction, deduction,** subduction, **removal,** taking away; abstraction, ablation, sublation; erosion, abrasion, wearing, wearing away; refinement, purification; detraction

2 **reduction, diminution,** decrease 252, build-down, phasedown, drawdown, decrement, impairment, **cut** *or* **cutting,** curtailment, shortening, truncation; **shrinkage,** depletion, **attrition,** remission; **depreciation,** detraction, disparagement, derogation; retraction, retrenchment; **extraction**

3 **excision,** abscission, rescission, extirpation; **elimination,** exclusion, extinction, eradication, destruction 395, annihilation; cancellation, write-off, erasure; circumcision; **amputation,** mutilation

4 **castration,** gelding, emasculation, deballing <nf>, altering *and* fixing <nf>, spaying

5 <written text> **deletion,** erasure, cancellation, omission; editing, blue-penciling, striking *or* striking out; expurgation, bowdlerization, censoring *or* censorship; abridgment, abbreviation

6 <math terms> difference; subtrahend, minuend; negative; minus sign, minus

7 <thing subtracted> **deduction,** decrement, minus; refund, rebate

8 <result> **difference, remainder** 256, epact <astronomy>, discrepancy, net, balance, surplus 993.5, deficit, credit

VERBS 9 **subtract, deduct,** subduct, take away, take from, **remove,** withdraw, abstract; **reduce,** shorten, curtail, retrench, lessen, **diminish, decrease,** phase down, impair, bate, abate; **depreciate,** disparage, detract, derogate; **erode,** abrade, eat *or* wear *or* rub *or* shave *or* file away; **extract,** leach, drain, wash away; thin, thin out, weed; **refine,** purify

10 **excise,** cut out, cut, extirpate, enucleate; **cancel,** write off; **eradicate,** root out, wipe *or* stamp out, **eliminate,** kill, kill off, liquidate, annihilate, destroy 395.10, extinguish; **exclude,** except, take out, cancel, cancel out, censor out, bleep out <nf>, rule out, bar, ban; set aside *or* apart, isolate, pick out, cull; **cut off** *or* **away,** shear *or* take *or* strike *or* knock *or* lop off, truncate; **amputate,** mutilate, abscind; **prune,** pare, peel, clip, crop, bob, dock, lop, nip, shear, shave, strip, strip off *or* away

11 **castrate,** geld, emasculate, eunuchize, neuter, spay, fix *or* alter <nf>, unsex, deball <nf>; geld, caponize; unman

12 <written text> **delete,** erase, expunge, **cancel,** omit; **edit,** edit out, blue-pencil; strike, strike out *or* off, rub *or* blot out, cross out *or* off, kill, cut; void, rescind; **censor,** bowdlerize, expurgate; abridge, abbreviate

ADJS 13 **subtractive, reductive,** deductive, extirpative; ablative, erosive; censorial; removable, eradicable

PREPS 14 **off, from; minus,** less, without, excluding, except *or* excepting, with the exception of, save, leaving out *or* aside, barring, exclusive of, not counting, exception taken of, discounting

256 REMAINDER

NOUNS 1 **remainder, remains, remnant, relict, residue,** residuum, residual, **rest, balance;** holdover; **leavings, leftovers, oddments; refuse,** odds and ends, scraps, rags, **rubbish, waste,** litter, orts, candle ends; scourings, offscourings; parings, sweepings, filings, shavings, sawdust; chaff, straw, stubble, husks; **debris,** detritus, ruins; end, fag end; stump, butt *or* butt end, stub, roach <nf>, rump; survival, vestige, trace, hint, shadow, afterimage, afterglow; **fossil,** relics

2 **dregs, grounds, lees,** dross, slag, draff, scoria, feces; **sediment, settlings, deposits,** deposition; precipitate, precipitation, sublimate <chem>; alluvium, alluvion, diluvium; silt, loess, moraine; scum, off-scum, froth; ash, ember, cinder, sinter, clinker; soot, smut

3 **survivor,** heir, successor, inheritor; **widow,** widower, relict, war widow, **orphan**

4 **excess** 993, **surplus,** surplusage, overplus, overage; superfluity, redundancy, pleonasm; something for a rainy day

VERBS 5 **remain, be left** *or* **left over, survive,** subsist, rest, stay

6 **leave,** leave over, leave behind, bequeath

ADJS **7** **remaining, surviving, extant,** vestigial, over, left, **leftover, still around, remnant,** remanent, odd, on the shelf; **spare,** to spare; unused, unconsumed; **surplus,** superfluous; **outstanding,** unmet, unresolved; net

8 **residual,** residuary; sedimental, sedimentary

257 SIZE, LARGENESS

NOUNS **1** **size, largeness, bigness, greatness** 247, vastness, vastitude, **magnitude,** order of magnitude, amplitude; mass, bulk, **volume,** body; **dimensions, proportions,** dimension, caliber, scantling, proportion; **measure,** measurement 300, gauge, **scale; extent,** extension, expansion, expanse, square footage *or* yardage etc, **scope,** reach, range, ballpark <nf>, spread, coverage, area, circumference, ambit, girth, diameter, radius, boundary, border, periphery; linear measure *or* dimension, length, height, procerity <depth>; depth, breadth, width; wheelbase, wingspan

2 **capacity, volume, content,** holding capacity, cubic footage *or* yardage etc, accommodation, room, space, measure, limit, burden; gallonage, tankage; poundage, tonnage, cordage; stowage; **quantity** 244

3 **full size,** full growth; life size

4 large size, economy size, family size, **king size,** queen size, giant size

5 **oversize,** outsize; overlargeness, overbigness; **overgrowth,** wild *or* uncontrolled growth, overdevelopment, sprawl; **overweight,** overheaviness; overstoutness, overfatness, overplumpness, bloat, bloatedness, obesity; gigantism, giantism, titanism; hyperplasia, hypertrophy, acromegalic gigantism, acromegaly, pituitary gigantism, normal gigantism

6 <large size> **sizableness, largeness, bigness,** greatness, grandness, grandeur, grandiosity; largishness, biggishness; voluminousness, capaciousness, generousness, copiousness, ampleness; tallness, toweringness; broadness, wideness; profundity; extensiveness, expansiveness, comprehensiveness; spaciousness 158.5; bagginess

7 <very large size> **hugeness, vastness,** vastitude; humongousness <nf>; **enormousness, immenseness, enormity, immensity,** tremendousness, **prodigiousness,** stupendousness, mountainousness; **gigantism,** giganticness, giantism, giantlikeness; monumentalism; **monstrousness, monstrosity**

8 **corpulence, obesity, stoutness,** largeness, bigness, *embonpoint* <Fr>; **fatness,** fattishness, adiposis *or* adiposity, endomorphy, fleshiness, beefiness, meatiness, heftiness, grossness; **plumpness,** buxomness, rotundity, fubsiness <Brit>, tubbiness <nf>, roly-poliness; pudginess, podginess; chubbiness, chunkiness <nf>, stockiness, squattiness, squatness, dumpiness, portliness; paunchiness, bloatedness, puffiness, pursiness, blowziness; middle-age spread; weight problem; hippiness <nf>; steatopygia *or* steatopygy; bosominess, bustiness <nf>

9 **bulkiness, bulk,** hulkingness *or* hulkiness, **massiveness,** lumpishness, clumpishness; **ponderousness,** cumbrousness, cumbersomeness; clumsiness, awkwardness, unwieldiness, clunkiness <nf>

10 **lump,** clump, **hunk** *and* **chunk** <nf>, wodge <Brit nf>; **mass,** piece, **gob** *and* glob <nf>, gobbet, dollop, cluster, gobs <nf>; batch, **wad,** heap, block, loaf; pat <of butter>; clod; nugget; **quantity** 244

11 <something large> **whopper** *and* thumper *and* lunker *and* whale *and* jumbo <nf>; monster, hulk; large part, bulk, mass, lion's share, majority, better part

12 <corpulent person> **heavyweight, pig,** porker, heavy <nf>, human *or* man mountain <nf>; big *or* large person; **fat person, fatty** *and* **fatso** <nf>, roly-poly, **tub, tub of lard,** tun, tun of flesh, whale, blimp <nf>, hippo <nf>, **potbelly,** gorbelly <old *or* dial>, swagbelly, dumpling, lardass <nf>

13 **giant** <see list>, giantess, **amazon, colossus, titan,** titaness, *nephilim* <Heb pl>, hulk; long drink of water

14 **behemoth, leviathan, monster;** mammoth, mastodon; elephant, jumbo <nf>; whale; hippopotamus, hippo <nf>; **dinosaur**

VERBS **15** **size, adjust, grade,** group, range, rank, graduate, sort, match; gauge, **measure** 300.11, proportion; **bulk** 247.5; **enlarge** 259.4,5; fatten

ADJS **16** **large, sizable, big, great** 247.6, **grand,** tall <nf>, **considerable, goodly,** healthy, tidy <nf>, **substantial,** bumper; as big as all outdoors; numerous 884.6; largish, biggish; large-scale, larger than life; man-sized <nf>; large-size *or* -sized, man-sized, king-size, queen-size; economy-size, family-size; good-sized, life-size *or* -sized

17 **voluminous, capacious, generous, ample,** copious, broad, wide, extensive, expansive, comprehensive; **spacious**

18 **corpulent, stout, fat, overweight,** fattish, **obese,** adipose, gross, fleshy, beefy, meaty, hefty, porky, porcine; paunchy, paunched, bloated, puffy, blowzy, distended, swollen, pursy; abdominous, big-bellied, full-bellied, potbellied, gorbellied <old *or* dial>, swag-bellied, pot-gutted *and* pussle-gutted <nf>, **plump, buxom,** *zaftig* <Yiddish>, pleasantly plump, full, huggy <nf>, rotund, fubsy <Brit>, **tubby** <nf>, roly-poly; **pudgy,** podgy; thickbodied, thick-girthed, **heavyset, thickset, chubby,** chunky <nf>, fubsy <Brit nf>, **stocky,** squat, squatty, dumpy, square; pyknic, endomorphic; **stalwart, brawny, burly;** lusty, strapping <nf>; **portly,** imposing; well-fed, corn-fed, grain-fed; chubby-faced, round-faced, moonfaced; hippy <nf>, full-buttocked, steatopygic *or* steatopygous, fat-assed *and* lard-assed <nf>, broad in the beam <nf>, well-upholstered <nf>; bosomy, full-bosomed, chesty, busty <nf>, top-heavy; plump as a dumpling *or* partridge, fat as a quail, fat as a pig *or* hog, fat as brawn *or* bacon

19 **bulky, hulky,** hulking, lumpish, lumpy, lumping <nf>, clumpish, lumbering, lubberly; **massive,** massy; elephantine, hippopotamic; **ponderous,** cumbrous, cumbersome; **clumsy,** awkward, **unwieldy;** clunky <nf>

20 **huge, immense, vast, enormous,** astronomic, astronomical, humongous *and* jumbo <nf>, king-size, queen-size, tremendous, prodigious, stupendous, macro, mega, giga; great big, larger than life, Homeric, mighty, **titanic, colossal, monumental,** heroic, heroical, epic, epical, towering, mountainous; profound, abysmal, deep as the ocean *or* as China; **monster,** monstrous; **mammoth,** mastodonic; **gigantic, giant,** giantlike, gigantesque, gigantean; Cyclopean, Brobdingnagian, Gargantuan, Herculean, Atlantean; elephantine, jumbo <nf>; dinosaurian, dinotherian; **infinite** 823.3

21 <nf terms> **whopping, walloping, whaling, whacking,** spanking, slapping, lolloping, thumping, thundering, bumping, banging

22 **full-sized,** full-size, full-scale; **full-grown, full-fledged,** full-blown; full-formed, **life-sized,** large as life, larger than life

23 **oversize,** oversized; **outsize,** outsized, giant-size, **king-size, queen-size,** record-size, extra-large *or* XL, XXL, **overlarge,** overbig, too big; **overgrown,** overdeveloped; **overweight,** overheavy; overfleshed, overstout, overfat, overplump, overfed, obese

24 this big, so big, yay big <nf>, this size, about this size, of that order

ADVS **25** largely, on a large scale, in a big way; in the large; as can be

WORD ELEMENTS **26** hyper-, macr-, macro-, maxi-, meg-, mega-, megal-, megalo-, super-

27 **giants**

Abominable Snowman *or* yeti
Aegir
Alifanfaron
Antaeus
Ascapart
Atlas
Balan
Bellerus
Big Foot *or* Sasquatch *or* Omah
Blunderbore
Briareüs
Brobdingnagian
Colossus
Cormoran
Cottus
Cyclops
Enceladus
Ephialtes
Ferragus
Galligantus
Gargantua
Godzilla
Gog
Goliath
Hercules *or* Heracles
Hymir
Jötunn
King Kong
Magog
Mimir
Og
Orion
Pantagruel
Patagonian
Paul Bunyan
Polyphemus
Titan
Tityus
Typhon
Ymir

258 LITTLENESS

NOUNS **1** **littleness, smallness,** smallishness, **diminutiveness,** miniatureness, slightness, exiguity; puniness, pokiness, dinkiness <nf>; tininess, **minuteness;** undersize; petiteness; dwarfishness, stuntedness, runtiness, shrimpiness; **shortness** 268; **scantiness** 885.1; small scale; compactness, portability; miniaturization, microminiaturization, microscopy, micrography

2 **infinitesimalness;** undetectability, inappreciability, evanescence; intangibility, impalpability, tenuousness, imponderability; imperceptibility, invisibility

3 <small space> **tight spot** *and* corner *and* squeeze *and* **pinch** <nf>, not enough room to swing a cat <nf>; hole, pigeonhole; hole-in-the-wall; cubby, cubbyhole; dollhouse, playhouse, doghouse; no room to swing a cat

4 <small person or creature> **runt, shrimp** <nf>, wart <nf>, diminutive, wisp, chit, slip, snip, snippet, minikin <old>, **peanut** *and* **peewee** <nf>, pipsqueak, squirt, half pint, shorty, fingerling, small fry <nf>, dandiprat *and* tiddler <Brit old>; lightweight, featherweight; bantam, banty <nf>; pony; minnow, mini *and* minny <nf>; mouse, tit, titmouse, tomtit <nf>; nubbin, button

5 <creature small by species or birth> **dwarf,** dwarfling, **midget,** midge, **pygmy,** manikin, homunculus, atomy, micromorph, hop-o'-my-thumb; elf, gnome, brownie, hobbit, leprechaun; Lilliputian, Pigwiggen, Tom Thumb, Thumbelina, Alberich, Alviss, Andvari, Nibelung, Regin

6 **miniature,** mini; scaled-down *or* miniaturized version; microcosm, microcosmos; baby; doll, puppet, toy; microvolume; Elzevir, Elzevir edition; duodecimo, twelvemo, pocket edition

7 <minute thing> minutia, **minutiae** <pl>, minim, **drop,** droplet, **mite** <nf>, **point,** vanishing point, mathematical point, point of a pin, pinpoint, pinhead, **dot;** mote, fleck, **speck,** flyspeck, jot, tittle, jot nor tittle, iota, **trace,** trace amount, suspicion, *soupçon* <Fr>; **particle,** crumb, scrap, bite, snip, snippet; grain, grain of sand; barleycorn, millet seed, mustard seed; midge, gnat; microbe, **microorganism,** amoeba, bacillus, bacteria, diatom, germ, paramecium, protozoon, zoospore, animalcule, plankton, virus; cell; microchip; pixel

8 **atom,** atomy, monad; **molecule,** ion; nucleus; **electron,** proton, meson, neutrino, muon, quark, parton, subatomic *or* nuclear particle

VERBS 9 **make small, contract** 260.7; **shorten** 268.6; **miniaturize,** minify, minimize, scale down; **reduce** 252.7, scale back

ADJS 10 **little, small** 248.6, smallish; **slight,** exiguous; **puny, trifling,** poky, piffling *and* pindling *and* piddling *and* piddly <nf>, paltry, picayune, **dinky** <nf>, negligible; cramped, limited; one-horse, two-by-four <nf>; pintsized <nf>, half-pint; knee-high, knee-high to a grasshopper; petite; short 268.8

11 **tiny;** teeny *and* teeny-weeny *and* eentsy-weentsy <nf>, wee *and* peewee <nf>, bitty *and* bitsy *and* little-bitty *and* little-bitsy *and* itsy-bitsy *and* itsy-witsy <nf>, dinky <nf>; **minute,** fine

12 **miniature, diminutive, minuscule,** minuscular, mini, micro, miniaturized, subminiature, minikin <old>, **small-scale,** minimal; pony, bantam, banty <nf>; **baby,** baby-sized; pocket, pocketsized, pocket-size, **vest-pocket; toy;** handy, compact, portable; duodecimo, twelvemo

13 **dwarf,** dwarfed, dwarfish, **pygmy, midget,** nanoid, elfin; Lilliputian, Tom Thumb; **undersized,** undersize, squat, dumpy; **stunted,** undergrown, runty, pint-size *or* -sized *and* sawed-off <nf>; shrunk, shrunken, wizened, shriveled; meager, scrubby, scraggy; rudimentary, rudimental

14 **infinitesimal, microscopic,** ultramicroscopic; evanescent, thin, tenuous; inappreciable; impalpable, imponderable, intangible; imperceptible, indiscernible, invisible, unseeable; atomic, subatomic; molecular; granular, corpuscular, microcosmic *or* microcosmical; embryonic, germinal

15 **microbic,** microbial, **microorganic;** animalcular, bacterial; microzoic; protozoan, microzoan, amoebic *or* amoeboid

ADVS 16 **small,** little, **slightly** 248.9, fractionally; **on a small scale,** in a small compass, in a small way, on a minuscule *or* infinitesimal scale; **in miniature,** in the small; in a nutshell

WORD ELEMENTS 17 micr-, micro-, ultramicr-, ultramicro-; granul-, granulo-, granuli-, chondr-, chondro-; -cle, -ee, -een, -el, -ella, -illa, -et, -ette, -idium, -idion, -ie, -y, -ey, -ium, -kin, -let, -ling, -ock, -sy, -ula, -ule, -ulum, -ulus

259 EXPANSION, GROWTH

<increase in size>

NOUNS 1 **expansion, extension, enlargement, increase** 251, uptick, crescendo, upping, raising, hiking, magnification, aggrandizement, amplification, ampliation <old>, broadening, widening; **spread,** spreading, creeping, fanning out, dispersion, ripple effect, sprawl; **flare,** splay, ramification; deployment; augmentation, **addition** 253; adjunct 254

2 **distension,** stretching; **inflation,** sufflation, blowing up; **dilation,** dilatation, dilating; diastole; **swelling,** swell 283.4; puffing, puff, puffiness, **bloating,** bloat, **flatulence** *or* flatulency, flatus, gassiness, windiness; **turgidity,** turgidness, turgescence; tumidness *or* tumidity, tumefaction; tumescence, intumescence; **swollenness,** bloatedness; dropsy, edema; tympanites, tympany, tympanism

3 **growth, development** 861.1; **bodily development** 14, **maturation,** maturing, coming of age, growing up, upgrowth; vegetation 310.32; reproduction, procreation 78, germination, pullulation; burgeoning, sprouting; budding, gemmation; outgrowth, excrescence; overgrowth 257.5

VERBS 4 <make larger> **enlarge, expand, extend, widen, broaden,** build, build up, aggrandize, **amplify,** crescendo, **magnify, increase** 251.4, augment, add to 253.5, raise, up, scale up, hike *or* hike up; develop, bulk *or* bulk up; **stretch, distend, dilate, swell, inflate,** sufflate, **blow up,** puff up, huff, puff, bloat; pump, pump up; rarefy

5 <become larger> **enlarge, expand, extend, increase,** greaten, crescendo, **develop, widen, broaden,** bulk; **stretch, distend, dilate, swell, swell up, swell out, puff up, puff out, pump up, bloat,** tumefy, balloon, fill out; snowball

6 **spread,** spread out, outspread, outstretch; **expand, extend,** widen; open, **open up,** unfold; **flare,** flare out, broaden out, splay; spraddle, sprangle, sprawl; branch, branch out, ramify; fan, fan out, disperse, deploy; spread like wildfire; overrun, overgrow

7 **grow, develop,** wax, **increase** 251; gather, brew; **grow up,** mature, spring up, ripen, come of age, **shoot up,** sprout up, upshoot, upspring, upsprout, upspear, overtop, tower; burgeon, **sprout** 310.34, blossom 310.35, reproduce 78.7, procreate 78.8, grow out of, germinate, pullulate; vegetate 310.34; **flourish, thrive,** grow like a weed; mushroom; outgrow; overgrow, hypertrophy, overdevelop, grow uncontrollably

8 **fatten,** fat, plump, pinguefy *and* engross <old>, fill

out; **gain weight,** gather flesh, take *or* put on weight, become overweight

ADJS 9 **expansive, extensive;** expansional, extensional; expansile, extensile, elastic, stretchy; expansible, inflatable, augmentative; distensive, dilatant; inflationary; developable

10 **expanded, extended, enlarged, increased** 251.7, upped, raised, hiked, **amplified,** ampliate <old>, crescendoed, widened, broadened, built-up, beefed-up <nf>

11 **spread, spreading;** sprawling, sprawly; **outspread, outstretched,** spreadout, stretched-out, drawn-out; open, unfolded, gaping, patulous; widespread, wide-open; flared, spraddled, sprangled, splayed; flaring, flared, flared-out, spraddling, sprangling, splaying; splay; fanned, fanning; fanlike, fan-shaped, fan-shape, flabelliform, deltoid

12 **grown, full-grown, grown-up, mature,** developed, well-developed, fully developed, full-fledged, of age; growing, sprouting, crescent, budding, flowering 310.38, florescent, **flourishing,** blossoming, blooming, burgeoning, fast-growing, thriving; overgrown, hypertrophied, overdeveloped

13 **distended, dilated, inflated,** sufflated, **blown up, puffed up, swollen,** swelled, **bloated,** turgid, tumid, plethoric, incrassate; **puffy,** pursy; flatulent, gassy, windy, ventose; tumefacient; dropsical, edematous; enchymatous; fat; puffed out, bouffant, bouffed up *and* bouffy <nf>, stuffed

260 CONTRACTION

<decrease in size>

NOUNS 1 **contraction,** contracture; systole, syneresis, synizesis; **compression,** compressure, pressurizing, pressurization; **compacting,** compaction, compactedness; **condensation, concentration,** consolidation, solidification; **circumscription, narrowing;** reduction, diminuendo, lessening, waning; miniaturization; **decrease** 252; abbreviation, curtailment, shortening 268.3; **constriction,** stricture *or* striction, astriction, strangulation, stenosis, **choking,** choking off, coarctation; bottleneck, chokepoint, hourglass, hourglass figure, nipped *or* wasp waist; neck, cervix, isthmus, narrow place; astringency, constringency; puckering, pursing; knitting, wrinkling

2 **squeezing,** compression, clamping *or* clamping down, tightening; **pressure,** press, crush; **pinch, squeeze, tweak, nip**; scrunch

3 **shrinking,** shrinkage, atrophy; **shriveling, withering;** searing, parching, drying *or* drying up; attenuation, thinning; wasting, consumption, emaciation, emaceration <old>; skin and bones; preshrinking, preshrinkage, Sanforizing <trademark>

4 **collapse,** prostration, cave-in; implosion; **deflation**

5 contractibility, contractility, compactability, **compressibility,** condensability, reducibility; collapsibility; shrinkability

6 contractor, constrictor, clamp, compressor, compacter, condenser, vise, pincer, squeezer; thumbscrew; **astringent,** styptic; alum, astringent bitters, styptic pencil; tourniquet

VERBS 7 **contract, compress,** cramp, compact, condense, concentrate, consolidate, solidify; **reduce, decrease** 252; abbreviate, curtail, **shorten** 268.6; miniaturize; **constrict,** constringe, circumscribe, coarct, **narrow,** draw, draw in *or* together; strangle, strangulate, choke, choke off; **pucker,** pucker up, **purse; knit, wrinkle**

8 **squeeze,** compress, clamp, cramp, cramp up, tighten; roll *or* wad up, roll up into a ball, scrunch, ensphere; **press,** pressurize, crush; **pinch, tweak, nip**

9 **shrink, shrivel, wither,** sear, parch, dry up; **wizen,** weazen; consume, waste, waste away, attenuate, thin, emaciate, macerate *or* emacerate <old>; preshrink, Sanforize <trademark>

10 **collapse, cave, cave in,** fall in; telescope; fold, fold up; implode; **deflate,** let the air out of, take the wind out of, flatten; puncture

ADJS 11 **contractive,** contractional, contractible, contractile, compactable; **astringent,** constringent, styptic; **compressible,** condensable, reducible; shrinkable; **collapsible,** foldable; deflationary; consumptive; circumscribable

12 **contracted, compressed,** cramped, compact *or* compacted, concentrated, condensed, consolidated, solidified, boiled-down; **constricted,** strangled, strangulated, choked, choked off, coarcted, **squeezed,** clamped, nipped, pinched *or* pinched-in, wasp-waisted; puckered, pursed; knitted, wrinkled; miniaturized; scaled-down; shortened, abbreviated

13 **shrunk,** shrunken; **shriveled,** shriveled up; **withered,** sear, parched, corky, dried-up; **wasted,** wasted away, consumed, emaciated, emacerated, thin, attenuated; **wizened,** wizen, weazened; preshrunk, Sanforized <trademark>

14 **deflated, punctured, flat,** holed

261 DISTANCE, REMOTENESS

NOUNS 1 **distance, remoteness,** farness, far-offness, longinquity; **separation,** separatedness, divergence, clearance, margin, leeway; **extent, length,** space 158, **reach,** stretch, range, compass, span, stride, haul, a way, ways *and* piece <nf>; perspective, aesthetic distance, distancing; astronomical *or* interstellar *or* galactic *or* intergalactic distance, deep space, depths of space, **infinity** 823; **mileage,** light-years, parsecs; aloofness, standoffishness

2 **long way,** good ways <nf>, **great distance, far cry,** far piece <nf>; long step, tidy step, giant step *or* stride; long run *or* haul, long road *or* trail, day's march, miles away; marathon; far cry, long shot; long range; apogee, aphelion

3 the distance, **remote distance, offing; horizon,** the far horizon, where the earth meets the sky, vanishing point, background

4 <remote region> jumping-off place *and* godforsaken place *and* God knows where *and* the middle of nowhere <nf>, the back of beyond, the end of the rainbow, Thule *or* Ultima Thule, Timbuktu, Siberia, Darkest Africa, the South Seas, Pago Pago, the Great Divide, China, Outer Mongolia, pole, antipodes, end of the earth, North Pole, South Pole, Tierra del Fuego, Greenland, Yukon, Pillars of Hercules, remotest corner of the world, four corners of the earth; outpost, outskirts; the sticks *and* the boondocks *and* the boonies <nf>; **nowhere;** frontier, outback <Austral>; the moon; outer space

VERBS 5 **reach out, stretch out,** extend, extend out, go *or* go out, range out, carry out; outstretch, outlie, outdistance, outrange

6 **extend to,** stretch to, stretch away to, **reach to,** lead to, go to, get to, come to, run to, carry to

7 **keep one's distance, distance oneself,** remain at a distance, maintain distance *or* clearance, keep at a respectful distance, separate oneself, **keep away,** stand off *or* away; keep away from, keep *or* stand clear of, **steer clear of** <nf>, hold away from, give a wide berth to, keep a good leeway *or* margin *or* offing, keep out of the way of, keep at arm's length, keep a safe distance from, not touch with a ten-foot pole <nf>, keep *or* stay *or* stand aloof; maintain one's perspective, keep one's esthetic distance

ADJS 8 **distant,** distal, **remote, removed, far, far-off,** away, **faraway,** way-off, far-flung, at a distance, exotic, separated, apart, asunder; long-distance, long-range

9 **out-of-the-way,** godforsaken, back of beyond, upcountry; **out of reach, inaccessible,** ungetatable, unapproachable, untouchable, hyperborean, antipodean

10 **thither,** ulterior; **yonder,** yon; **farther, further,** remoter, more distant; outlying

11 transoceanic, transmarine, ultramarine, oversea, overseas; transatlantic, transpacific; tramontane, transmontane, ultramontane, transalpine; transarctic, transcontinental, transequatorial, transpolar, transpontine, transmundane, ultramundane; offshore, overseas

12 **farthest, furthest,** farthermost, farthest off, furthermost, ultimate, extreme, remotest, most distant, terminal

ADVS 13 **yonder,** yon; **in the distance,** in the remote distance; **in the offing,** on the horizon, in the background

14 **at a distance, away, off,** aloof, at arm's length; distantly, remotely

15 **far, far off,** far away, **afar,** afar off, a long way off, a good ways off <nf>, a long cry to, "over the hills and far away"—John Gay, as far as the eye can see, out of sight; clear to hell and gone <nf>

16 **far and wide,** far and near, distantly and broadly, wide, widely, broadly, abroad

17 **apart, away, aside,** wide apart, wide away, "as wide asunder as pole and pole"—J A Froude, "as far as the east is from the west"—Bible

18 **out of reach,** beyond reach, **out of range,** beyond the bounds, out-of-the-way, out of the sphere of; out of sight, *à perte de vue* <Fr>; out of hearing, out of earshot *or* earreach

19 **wide, clear;** wide of the mark, abroad, all abroad, astray, afield, far afield

PREPS 20 **as far as, to, all the way to,** the whole way to

21 **beyond, past, over, across,** the other *or* far side of

262 FORM

NOUNS 1 **form, shape, figure;** figuration, **configuration;** formation, **conformation; structure** 266; **build,** make, frame; **arrangement** 808; makeup, format, layout; **composition** 796; cut, set, stamp, type, turn, cast, mold, impression, pattern, matrix, model, mode, modality; archetype, prototype 786.1, Platonic form *or* idea; style, fashion; aesthetic form, inner form, significant form; art form, genre

2 **contour,** *tournure* <Fr>, *galbe* <Fr>; broad lines, silhouette, profile, **outline** 211.2; organization 807.1

3 **appearance** 33, lineaments, features, physiognomy, cut of one's jib

4 <human form> **figure, form,** shape, frame, anatomy, **physique,** build, body-build, person; body 1052.3

5 **forming, shaping,** molding, modeling, fashioning, making, making up, formulation; **formation,** conformation, figuration, configuration; sculpture; morphogeny, morphogenesis; creation

6 <grammatical terms> form, morph, allomorph, morpheme; morphology, morphemics

VERBS 7 **form,** formalize, **shape, fashion,** tailor, frame, figure, **lick into shape** <nf>; work, knead; set, fix; **forge,** drop-forge; **mold,** model, sculpt *or* sculpture; cast, found; thermoform; stamp, mint; carve, whittle, cut, chisel, hew, hew out; roughhew, roughcast, rough out, block out, lay out, sketch out; hammer *or* knock out; whomp out *or* up <nf>, cobble up; create; organize 807.4, systematize

8 <be formed> **form,** take form, shape, **shape up, take shape;** materialize

ADJS 9 **formative,** formal, formational, plastic, morphotic; **formed, shaped,** patterned, fashioned, tailored, framed; **forged,** molded, modeled, sculpted; cast, founded; stamped, minted; carved, cut, whittled, chiseled, hewn; roughhewn, roughcast, roughed-out, blocked-out, laid-out, sketched-out; hammered-out, knocked-out, cobbled-up; **made, produced**

10 <biological terms> plasmatic, plasmic, protoplasmic, plastic, metabolic

11 <grammatical terms> morphologic, morphological, morphemic

WORD ELEMENTS 12 morph-, morpho-, -morph, -morphism, -morphy, -form, -iform, -morphic, -morphous

263 FORMLESSNESS

NOUNS 1 **formlessness, shapelessness;** unformedness, amorphousness, amorphism; misshapenness; lack of definition; **chaos** 810.2, confusion, messiness, mess, muddle 810.2, orderlessness, untidiness; **disorder** 810; entropy; anarchy 418.2; **indeterminateness, indefiniteness,** indecisiveness, vagueness, mistiness, haziness, fuzziness, blurriness, unclearness, obscurity; lumpiness, lumpishness

2 unlicked cub, diamond in the rough, raw material

VERBS 3 **deform, distort** 265.5; misshape; unform, unshape; disorder, jumble, mess up, muddle, confuse; obfuscate, obscure, fog up, blur

ADJS 4 **formless, shapeless,** featureless, characterless, nondescript, inchoate, lumpy, lumpish, blobby *and* baggy <nf>, inform; amorphous, **chaotic, orderless,** disorderly 810.13, unordered, unorganized, confused, anarchic 418.6; kaleidoscopic; **indeterminate, indefinite,** undefined, indecisive, vague, misty, hazy, fuzzy, blurred *or* blurry, unclear, obscure; obfuscatory; unfinished, undeveloped

5 **unformed, unshaped,** unshapen, unfashioned, unlicked; unstructured; uncut, unhewn

264 SYMMETRY

NOUNS 1 **symmetry,** symmetricalness, **proportion,** proportionality, **balance** 790.1, equilibrium; **regularity,** uniformity 781, evenness; equality 790; finish; harmony, congruity, consistency, conformity 867, **correspondence,** keeping; eurythmy, eurythmics; dynamic symmetry; bilateral symmetry, trilateral symmetry, etc, multilateral symmetry; parallelism 203, polarity; shapeliness

2 symmetrization, regularization, balancing, harmonization; evening, equalization; coordination, integration; **compensation,** playing off, playing off against, posing against *or* over against; counterbalance

VERBS 3 symmetrize, regularize, **balance,** balance off, compensate; harmonize; **proportion,** proportionate; even, even up, equalize; coordinate, integrate; play off, play off against

ADJS 4 **symmetric, symmetrical, balanced,** balanced off, proportioned, eurythmic, harmonious; **regular,** uniform 781.5, even, even-steven <nf>, equal 790.7, equal on both sides, fifty-fifty <nf>, square, squared-off; coequal, coordinate, equilateral; **well-balanced,** well-set, well-set-up <nf>; finished; enantiomorphic

5 **shapely, well-shaped, well-proportioned,** well-made, **well-formed,** well-favored; comely; trim, trig <old>, neat, spruce, clean, clean-cut, clean-limbed

265 DISTORTION

NOUNS 1 **distortion,** torsion, twist, twistedness, **contortion, crookedness,** tortuosity; **asymmetry,** unsymmetry, disproportion, lopsidedness, imbalance, irregularity, skewness, **deviation; twist,** quirk, turn, screw, wring, wrench, wrest; **warp,** buckle; knot, gnarl; anamorphosis; anamorphism

2 **perversion, corruption,** misdirection, misrepresentation 350, misinterpretation, misconstruction; **falsification** 354.9; **twisting,** false coloring, bending the truth, **spin,** spin control, slanting, straining, torturing; misuse 389; falsehood, travesty

3 **deformity,** deformation, **malformation,** malconformation, monstrosity 870.6, teratology, freakishness, misproportion, **misshapenness,** misshape; **disfigurement, defacement;** mutilation, truncation; humpback, hunchback, crookback, camelback, kyphosis; swayback, lordosis; wryneck, torticollis; clubfoot, talipes, flatfoot, splayfoot; knock-knee; bowlegs; valgus; harelip; cleft palate; mutation

4 **grimace, wry face,** wry mouth, rictus, snarl; moue, mow, pout; scowl, frown; squint; tic

VERBS 5 **distort, contort,** turn awry; **twist,** turn, screw, wring, wrench, wrest; writhe; **warp,** buckle, crumple; knot, gnarl; **crook,** bend, spring; put out of kilter

6 **pervert, falsify, twist, garble, put a false construction upon, give a spin, give a false coloring,** color, varnish, slant, strain, torture; put words in someone's mouth; **bias;** misrepresent 350.3, misconstrue, misinterpret, misrender, misdirect; misuse 389.4; send *or* deliver the wrong signal *or* message, lead up *or* down the garden path; exaggerate

7 **deform,** malform, misshape, twist, torture, disproportion; **disfigure, deface;** mutilate, truncate; blemish, mar

8 **grimace, make a face,** make a wry face *or* mouth, pull a face, **screw up one's face,** mug <nf>, mouth, make a mouth, mop, mow, mop and mow; pout

ADJS 9 distortive, contortive, contortional, torsional

10 **distorted, contorted, warped, twisted, crooked;** tortuous, labyrinthine, buckled, sprung, bent, bowed; cockeyed <nf>, crazy; crunched, crumpled; unsymmetric, unsymmetrical, asymmetric, asymmetrical, nonsymmetric, nonsymmetrical; irregular, deviative, anamorphous; one-sided, lopsided; askew 204.14, off-center, left *or* right of center, off-target; cockeyed

11 **falsified, perverted, twisted, garbled,** slanted, doctored, biased, crooked; strained, tortured; misrepresented, misquoted; half-true, partially true, falsely colored; creative <nf>

12 **deformed, malformed, misshapen,** misbegotten, misproportioned, ill-proportioned, ill-made, ill-shaped, **out of shape;** dwarfed, stumpy; bloated; **disfigured,** defaced, blemished, marred; mutilated, truncated; grotesque, **monstrous** 870.13; sway-backed, round-shouldered; bowlegged, bandy-legged, bandy; knock-kneed; rickety, rachitic; club-footed, talipedic; flatfooted, splayfooted, pigeon-toed; pug-nosed, snub-nosed, simous

13 **humpbacked, hunchbacked,** bunchbacked, crookbacked, crookedbacked, camelback, humped, gibbous, kyphotic

266 STRUCTURE

NOUNS 1 **structure, construction,** architecture, tectonics, architectonics, **frame,** make, **build,** fabric, tissue, warp and woof *or* weft, web, weave, texture, contexture, mold, **shape, pattern, plan,** fashion, arrangement, **organization** 807.1; organism, organic structure, **constitution, composition; makeup,** getup <nf>, setup; **formation,** conformation, **format; arrangement** 808, configuration; **composition** 796; making, building, creation, production, forging, fashioning, molding, fabrication, manufacture, shaping, structuring, patterning; anatomy, physique, organic structure; form 262; **morphology,** science of structure; anatomy, histology, zootomy

2 **structure, building, edifice, construction,** construct, erection, establishment, fabric; house; tower, pile, pyramid, skyscraper, ziggurat; prefabrication, prefab, packaged house; air structure, bubble <nf>, air hall <Brit>; superstructure, structural framework; flat-slab construction, post-and-beam construction, steel-cage construction, steel construction; complex

3 **understructure,** understruction, underbuilding, undercroft, crypt; **substructure,** substruction; infrastructure, underpinning; spread foundation, footing; fill, backfill

4 **frame,** framing; braced framing; **framework, skeleton,** fabric, cadre, chassis, shell, armature; lattice, latticework, scaffold; sash, casement, case, casing; window case *or* frame, doorframe; picture frame

VERBS 5 **construct, build; structure; organize** 807.4; **form** 262.7; erect, raise, put up

ADJS 6 **structural,** formal, morphological, edificial, tectonic, textural; **anatomic,** anatomical, **organic,** organismal, organismic; **structured, patterned,** shaped, formed; **architectural,** architectonic; constructional; superstructural, substructural, infrastructural; organizational

267 LENGTH

NOUNS 1 **length,** longness, lengthiness, overall length; wheelbase; **extent,** extension, **measure, span, reach, stretch; distance** 261; footage, yardage, mileage; infinity 823; perpetuity 829; long time 827.4; linear measures; oblongness; longitude

2 a length, **piece, portion,** part; coil, **strip,** bolt, roll; run

3 **line, strip,** bar, streak; stripe 517.6; string

4 **lengthening, prolongation, elongation,** production, protraction; prolixity, prolixness; **extension,** stretching, stretching *or* spinning *or* stringing out, dragging out

VERBS 5 **be long, be lengthy, extend,** be prolonged, **stretch,** span; **stretch out,** extend out, reach out; stretch oneself, crane, crane one's neck, rubberneck; stand on tiptoes; outstretch, outreach; sprawl, straggle; last, endure

6 **lengthen, prolong,** prolongate, **elongate, extend,** expand, produce, **protract,** continue; make prolix; lengthen out, let out, **draw** *or* drag *or* stretch *or* string *or* spin out; **stretch,** draw, pull

ADJS 7 **long, lengthy;** longish, longsome; tall; **extensive, far-reaching,** fargoing, far-flung; sesquipedalian, sesquipedal; unabridged, full-length; as long as one's arm, a mile long; **time-consuming,** interminable, without end, no end of *or* to, infinite; long-lasting, enduring, long-range

8 **lengthened, prolonged,** prolongated, **elongated, extended, protracted; prolix; long-winded; drawn-out,** dragged out, long-drawn-out, stretched *or* spun *or* strung out, straggling; **stretched,** drawn, pulled

9 **oblong,** oblongated, oblongitudinal, **elongated;** rectangular; elliptical; lengthwise, lengthways, longitudinal

ADVS 10 lengthily, extensively, at length, *in extenso* <L>, *ad infinitum* <L>, ad nauseam

11 **lengthwise** *or* lengthways, longwise *or* longways, longitudinally, along, in length, at length; **endwise** *or* endways, endlong; *in extenso* <L>

268 SHORTNESS

NOUNS 1 **shortness, briefness, brevity; succinctness,** curtness, terseness, summariness, compendiousness, compactness; **conciseness** 537; **littleness** 258; transience 828, short time 828.3, instantaneousness 829

2 **stubbiness,** stumpiness <nf>, **stockiness, fatness** 257.8, chubbiness, chunkiness <nf>, blockiness, squatness, squattiness, dumpiness; pudginess, podginess; snubbiness; **lowness** 274

3 **shortening, abbreviation; reduction; abridgment, condensation,** compression, conspectus, epitome, epitomization, summary, summation, précis, abstract, recapitulation, recap <nf>, wrapup, synopsis, encapsulation; **curtailment,** truncation, retrenchment; telescoping; elision, ellipsis, syncope, apocope; foreshortening; cutback; docking; contraction, syncope, apocope

4 shortener, cutter, abridger; abstracter, epitomizer *or* epitomist

5 **shortcut,** cut, cutoff; shortest way; **beeline,** air line

VERBS 6 **shorten, abbreviate, cut; reduce** 260.7; **abridge, condense,** compress, contract, **boil down,** abstract, sum up, summarize, recapitulate, recap <nf>, synopsize, epitomize, encapsulate, capsulize; **curtail,** truncate, retrench; bowdlerize; elide, **cut short,** cut down, cut off short, cut back, take in; **dock,** bob, shear, shave, trim, clip, snub, nip; hem; mow, reap, **crop; prune,** poll, pollard; stunt, check the growth of; telescope; foreshorten

7 **take a short cut,** short-cut; **cut across,** cut through; **cut a corner,** cut corners; **make a beeline,** take the air line, go as the crow flies

ADJS 8 **short, brief, abbreviated,** abbreviatory, "short and sweet"—Thomas Lodge; **concise** 537.6; **curt,** curtal <old>, curtate, decurtate; **succinct, summary,** synoptic, synoptical, compendious, compact; **little** 258.10; **low** 274.7; transient 828.7, instantaneous 830.4

9 **shortened, abbreviated; abridged,** compressed, condensed, epitomized, digested, abstracted, capsule, capsulized, encapsulated; bowdlerized; nutshell, vest-pocket; **curtailed,** cut short, short-cut, **docked,** bobbed, sheared, shaved, trimmed, clipped, snub, snubbed, nipped; mowed, mown, reaped, **cropped; pruned,** polled, pollarded; elided, elliptic, elliptical; foreshortened

10 **stubby,** stubbed, stumpy <nf>, undergrown, **thickset, stocky,** blocky, **chunky** <nf>, **fat** 257.18, **chubby,** tubby <nf>, dumpy; **squat,** squatty, squattish; **pudgy,** podgy; pug, **pugged;** snub-nosed; turned-up, *retroussé* <Fr>

11 short-legged, breviped; short-winged, brevipennate

ADVS 12 **shortly, briefly,** summarily, *tout court* <Fr>, in brief compass, economically, sparely, curtly, succinctly, in a nutshell, in two *or* a few words; abbreviatedly, for short; **concisely** 537.7, compendiously, synoptically

13 **short, abruptly,** suddenly 830.9, all of a sudden

269 BREADTH, THICKNESS

NOUNS 1 **breadth, width,** broadness, wideness, fullness, amplitude, latitude, distance across *or* crosswise *or* crossways, extent, **span, expanse, spread;** beam

2 **thickness,** the third dimension, distance through, depth; **mass, bulk, body;** corpulence, fatness 257.8, bodily size; **coarseness,** grossness 294.2

3 **diameter, bore, caliber; radius,** semidiameter; handbreadth, beam

VERBS 4 **broaden, widen,** deepen; **expand,** extend, extend to the side *or* sides; **spread** 259.6, spread out *or* sidewise *or* sideways, outspread, outstretch; span

5 **thicken,** grow thick, thick; incrassate, inspissate; congeal, gel; fatten 259.8

ADJS 6 **broad, wide,** deep; broad-scale, wide-scale, wide-ranging, broad-based, exhaustive, comprehensive, in-depth, extensive; spread-out, **expansive;** spacious, **roomy;** ample, full; widespread 864.13; "broad as the world"—James Russell Lowell, "wide as a church door"—Shakespeare

7 broad of beam, broad-beamed, broad-sterned, beamy, wide-set; wide-angle, wide-screen; broad-ribbed, wide-ribbed, laticostate; broad-toothed, wide-toothed, latidentate; broad-gauge; broadloom

8 **thick,** three-dimensional; **thickset, heavyset,** thick-bodied, broad-bodied, thick-girthed; **massive,**

bulky 257.19, corpulent 257.18; coarse, heavy, gross, crass, fat; full-bodied, full, viscous; **dense** 1045.12; thicknecked, bullnecked

ADVS **9** breadthwise *or* breadthways, in breadth; widthwise *or* widthways; broadwise *or* broadways; broadside, broad side foremost; side-wise *or* -ways; through, depth-wise *or* -ways, in depth

270 NARROWNESS, THINNESS

NOUNS **1** **narrowness, slenderness; closeness,** nearness; **straitness,** restriction, restrictedness, limitation, strictness, confinement, circumscription; crowdedness, incapaciousness, incommodiousness, crampedness; **tightness,** tight squeeze; hair, hairbreadth *or* hairsbreadth; finger's breadth *or* width; narrow gauge

2 **narrowing, tapering,** taper; **contraction** 260, compression; stricture, constriction, strangulation, coarctation

3 <narrow place> narrow, **narrows, strait; bottleneck,** chokepoint; isthmus; channel 239, canal; pass, defile; neck, throat, craw; narrow gauge, single track

4 **thinness, slenderness, slimness, frailty,** slightness, gracility, lightness, airiness, delicacy, flimsiness, wispiness, laciness, paperiness, gauziness, gossameriness, diaphanousness, insubstantiality, ethereality, mistiness, vagueness; light *or* airy texture; **fineness** 294.3; **tenuity, rarity,** subtility, exility, exiguity; **attenuation;** dilution, dilutedness, wateriness 1061.1, weakness

5 **leanness, skinniness,** fleshlessness, slightness, frailness, twigginess, spareness, meagerness, **scrawniness, gauntness,** gangliness, lankness, **lankiness,** gawkiness, **boniness,** skin and bones; haggardness, poorness, paperiness, peakedness <nf>, puniness, "lean and hungry look"—Shakespeare; undernourishment, undernutrition, underweight; hatchet face, lantern jaw

6 **emaciation,** malnutrition, emaceration <old>, attenuation, atrophy, tabes, marasmus, anorexia nervosa

7 <comparisons> paper, wafer, lath, slat, **rail,** rake, splinter, slip, shaving, streak, vein; gruel, soup; shadow, mere shadow; **skeleton**

8 <thin person> **slim, lanky;** twiggy, **shadow, skeleton,** stick, walking skeleton, corpse, barebones, bag *or* stack of bones; rattlebones *or* **spindleshanks** *or* spindlelegs <nf>, gangleshanks *and* gammerstang <nf>, lathlegs *and* sticklegs <nf>, **beanpole,** beanstalk, broomstick, clothes pole, stilt; slip, sylph, ectomorph

9 **reducing, slenderizing, slimming down;** weight-watching, calorie-counting; fasting, dieting

10 **thinner,** solvent 1064.4

VERBS **11** **narrow,** constrict, diminish, draw in, go in; restrict, limit, straiten, confine; **taper; contract** 260.7, compress, zip <nf>

12 **thin,** thin down, thin away *or* off *or* out, down; **rarefy,** subtilize, **attenuate;** dilute, water, water down, weaken; undernourish; **emaciate,** emacerate <old>

13 **slenderize, reduce,** lose weight, reduce *or* lose *or* take off weight, watch one's weight, lose flesh, weight-watch, count calories, diet, crash-diet; slim, **slim down,** thin down

ADJS **14** **narrow, slender;** narrowish, narrowy; **close,** near; **tight, strait,** isthmic, isthmian; close-fitting; **restricted,** limited, circumscribed, **confined,** constricted; **cramped,** cramp; incapacious, incommodious, crowded; **meager,** scant, scanty; narrow-gauge *or* narrow-gauged, single-track; angustifoliate, angustirostrate, angustiseptal, angustisellate; stenopeic, isthmian

15 **tapered,** taper, tapering, cone- *or* wedge-shaped, attenuated, fusiform, stenosed

16 **thin, slender, slim,** gracile, "imperially slim"—E A Robinson; thin-bodied, thin-set, ectomorphic, narrow- *or* wasp-waisted; **svelte,** slinky, sylphlike, willowy; girlish, boyish; thinnish, slenderish, slimmish; **slight,** slight-made; **frail,** delicate, light, airy, wispy, lacy, gauzy, papery, gossamer, diaphanous, insubstantial, ethereal, misty, vague, flimsy, wafer-thin, **fine; finespun,** thin-spun, fine-drawn, wiredrawn; threadlike, slender as a thread; **tenuous,** subtle, rare, **rarefied;** attenuated, attenuate, **watery, weak,** diluted, watered *or* watered-down, small

17 **lean,** lean-looking, **skinny** <nf>, fleshless, lean-fleshed, thin-fleshed, **spare,** meager, **scrawny,** scraggy, thin-bellied, **gaunt, lank, lanky,** wiry; **gangling** *and* gangly <nf>, gawky, **spindling,** spindly; flat-chested, flat <nf>; **bony, rawboned,** bare-boned, rattleboned <nf>, skeletal, **mere skin and bones, all skin and bones, nothing but skin and bones;** twiggy; **underweight,** undersized, undernourished, spidery, thin *or* skinny as a lath *or* rail, "lean as a rake"—Chaucer

18 lean-limbed, thin-legged, lath- *or* stick-legged <nf>, spindle-legged *or* -shanked <nf>, gangle-shanked <nf>, stilt-legged

19 lean- *or* horse- *or* thin-faced, thin-featured, **hatchet-faced;** wizen- *or* weazen-faced; lean- *or* thin-cheeked; lean- *or* lantern-jawed

20 **haggard, poor,** puny, **peaked** *and* peaky <nf>, **pinched;** shriveled, withered; **wizened,** weazeny; emaciated, emaciate, emacerated, **wasted,** attenuated, corpselike, skeletal, hollow-eyed, wraithlike, cadaverous; tabetic, tabid, marantic, marasmic; **starved,** anorexic, anorectic, starveling, starved-looking; undernourished, underfed, jejune; worn to a shadow, "worn to the bones"—Shakespeare

21 **slenderizing,** reducing, slimming

ADVS 22 **narrowly,** closely, nearly, **barely,** hardly, only just, **by the skin of one's teeth**

23 thinly, thin; meagerly, sparsely, sparingly, scantily

271 FILAMENT

NOUNS 1 **filament; fiber; thread; strand,** suture; filature; **hair** 3; artificial fiber, natural fiber, animal fiber; fibril, fibrilla; cilium, ciliolum; **tendril,** cirrus; flagellum; **web,** cobweb, gossamer, spider *or* spider's web; denier

2 **cord, line, rope, wire,** braided rope, twisted rope, flattened-strand rope, wire rope, locked-wire rope, **cable,** wire cable; **yarn,** spun yarn, skein, hank; **string, twine;** braid; **ligament,** ligature, ligation; **tendon**

3 **cordage,** cording, **ropework,** roping; tackle, tack, gear, rigging; ship's ropes

4 **strip, strap,** strop; **lace,** thong; **band,** bandage, fillet, fascia, taenia; **belt,** girdle; **ribbon,** ribband; **tape,** tapeline, tape measure; slat, lath, batten, spline, strake, plank; ligule, ligula

5 **spinner,** spinster; silkworm, spider; spinning wheel, spinning jenny, jenny, mule, mule-jenny; spinning frame, bobbin and fly frame; spinneret; rope walk

VERBS 6 <make threads> **spin; braid,** twist

ADJS 7 **threadlike,** thready; **stringy,** ropy, wiry; **hairlike** 3.23, hairy 3.24; filamentary, filamentous, filiform; fibrous, fibered, fibroid, fibrilliform; ligamental; capillary, capilliform; cirrose, cirrous; funicular, funiculate; flagelliform; taeniate, taeniform; ligulate, ligular; gossamer, gossamery, flossy, silky

272 HEIGHT

NOUNS 1 **height,** heighth <nf>, vertical *or* perpendicular distance; **highness, tallness,** procerity; **altitude, elevation,** ceiling; **loftiness,** sublimity, exaltation; hauteur, toploftiness 141.1; eminence, prominence; **stature**

2 **height, elevation,** eminence, **rise,** raise, **uprise,** lift, rising ground, vantage point *or* ground; **heights,** soaring *or* towering *or* Olympian heights, aerial heights, dizzy *or* dizzying heights; upmost *or* uppermost *or* utmost *or* extreme height; sky, stratosphere, ether, heaven *or* heavens; **zenith, apex, acme**

3 **highlands** 237.1, highland, upland, uplands, moorland, moors, downs, wold, rolling country

4 **plateau,** tableland, table, mesa, table mountain, bench; **hill; ridge; mountain; peak; mountain range**

5 **watershed,** water parting, **divide;** Great Divide, Continental Divide

6 **tower; turret,** *tour* <Fr>; campanile, bell tower, belfry; **spire,** church spire; **lighthouse,** light tower; cupola, lantern; dome; martello, martello tower; barbican; **derrick,** pole; windmill tower, observation tower, fire tower; **mast,** radio *or* television mast, antenna tower; water tower, standpipe; **spire,** pinnacle; **steeple,** *flèche* <Fr>; minaret; stupa, tope, pagoda; pyramid; pylon; **shaft,** pillar, column; pilaster; obelisk; monument; colossus; skyscraper

7 <tall person> **longlegs** *and* longshanks *and* highpockets *and* long drink of water <nf>; beanpole 270.8; **giant** 257.13; six-footer, seven-footer, grenadier <Brit>

8 **high tide,** high water, mean high water, flood tide, spring tide, flood; storm surge

9 <measurement of height> altimetry, hypsometry, hypsography; altimeter, hypsometer

VERBS 10 **tower, soar,** spire, "buss the clouds"—Shakespeare; **rise, uprise, ascend, mount, rear;** stand on tiptoe

11 **rise above, tower above** *or* **over,** clear, overtop, o'er top, outtop, **top, surmount; overlook,** look down upon *or* over; overhang, beetle; **command,** dominate, overarch, overshadow, command a view of; bestride, bestraddle

12 <become higher> **grow,** grow up, upgrow; uprise, **rise** *or* **shoot up,** mount, sprout

13 **heighten, elevate** 912.5

ADJS 14 **high,** high-reaching, high-up, **lofty, elevated,** altitudinous, altitudinal, uplifted *or* upreared, uprearing, **eminent, exalted, prominent,** supernal, **superlative,** sublime; **towering,** towery, **soaring,** spiring, aspiring, mounting, ascending; towered, turreted, steepled; **topping,** outtopping *or* overtopping; overarching, **overlooking, dominating;** airy, aerial, ethereal; Olympian; monumental, colossal; high as a steeple; topless; high-set, high-pitched; high-rise, multistory; **haughty** 141.9,157.8, toplofty

15 skyscraping, **sky-high,** heaven-reaching *or* -aspiring, heaven-high, heaven-kissing, "as high as Heaven and as deep as Hell"—Beaumont and Fletcher; cloud-touching *or* -topped *or* -capped, supernal; **mid-air**

16 **giant** 257.20, gigantic, colossal, statuesque, amazonian; **tall, lengthy,** long 267.8; **rangy, lanky,** lank, tall as a maypole; **gangling** *and* gangly <nf>; **long-legged,** long-limbed, leggy

17 **highland,** upland; hill-dwelling, mountain-dwelling

18 **hilly,** knobby, rolling; **mountainous,** mountained, **alpine,** alpen, alpestrine, alpigene; subalpine; monticuline, monticulous

19 **higher,** superior, greater; **over, above;** upper, upmost *or* uppermost, outtopping, overtopping, topmost; highest 198.10

20 altimetric, altimetrical, hypsometrical, hypsographic

ADVS 21 **on high,** high up, high; **aloft,** aloof; **up,** upward, upwards, straight up, to the zenith; **above, over,** o'er, **overhead;** above one's head, over head and ears; skyward, airward, in the air, in the clouds; on the peak *or* summit *or* crest *or* pinnacle; upstairs, abovestairs; tiptoe, on tiptoe; on stilts; on the shoulders of; supra, *ubi supra* <L>, hereinabove, hereinbefore

273 SHAFT

NOUNS 1 **shaft, pole, bar, rod, stick,** scape, scapi-; **stalk, stem;** thill; tongue, wagon tongue; flagstaff; totem pole; Maypole; utility *or* telephone *or* telegraph pole; tent pole

2 **staff,** stave; **cane, stick, walking stick,** handstaff, shillelagh; Malacca cane; baton, marshal's baton, drum-major's baton, conductor's baton; swagger stick, swanking stick; pilgrim's staff, pastoral staff, shepherd's staff, crook; crosier, cross-staff, cross, paterissa; pikestaff, alpenstock; quarterstaff; lituus, thyrsus; **crutch,** crutch-stick

3 **beam, timber,** pole, spar

4 **post, standard, upright;** king post, queen post, crown post; newel; banister, baluster; balustrade, balustrading; gatepost, swinging *or* hinging post, shutting post; doorpost, jamb, doorjamb; signpost, milepost; stile, mullion; stanchion; hitching post, snubbing post, Samson post

5 **pillar, column,** post, pier, pilaster; colonnette, columella; caryatid; atlas, atlantes <pl>; telamon, telamones; **colonnade, arcade,** pilastrade, portico, peristyle

6 **leg,** shank; **stake,** peg; pile, spile, stud; picket, pale, palisade

274 LOWNESS

NOUNS 1 **lowness, shortness,** squatness, squattiness, stumpiness, shallowness, stuntedness; **prostration,** supineness, proneness, recumbency, reclination, **lying, lying down, reclining;** depression, debasement; subjacency

2 **low tide,** low water, mean low water, dead low water *or* tide, ebb tide, neap tide, neap, low ebb

3 lowland, **lowlands,** bottomland, swale; water meadow, piedmont, foothills, flats, depression

4 **base, bottom** 199, lowest point, nadir, depths; the lowest of the low; lowest *or* underlying level, lower strata, substratum, bedrock

VERBS 5 **lie low, squat, crouch,** lay low <nf>, couch; crawl, grovel, lie prone *or* supine *or* prostrate, hug the earth, lie down; lie under, underlie

6 lower, debase, depress 913.4; flatten

ADJS 7 **low, unelevated, flat, low-lying; short, squat,** squatty, stumpy, runty 258.13; **lowered,** debased, depressed 912.12; demoted; **reduced** 252.10; prone, supine, prostrate *or* prostrated, couchant, crouched, stooped, recumbent, bowed; laid low, knocked flat, decked <nf>; low-set, low-hung; **low-built,** low-rise, low-sized, low-statured, low-bodied; low-level, low-leveled; neap, shallow, shoal; knee-high, knee-high to a grasshopper <nf>; low-necked, low-cut, décolleté

8 **lower,** inferior, **under, nether,** subjacent; down; less advanced; earlier; substrative, rock-bottom; lowest 199.7

ADVS 9 **low,** near the ground; at a low ebb

10 **below,** down below, **under;** infra, hereunder, hereinafter, hereinbelow; thereunder; belowstairs, downstairs, below deck; underfoot; below par, below the mark

PREPS 11 **below, under, underneath, beneath,** neath, at the foot of, at the base of

275 DEPTH

NOUNS 1 **depth, deepness,** profoundness, profundity; deep-downness, extreme innerness, deep-seatedness, deep-rootedness; bottomlessness, plumblessness, fathomlessness; subterraneity, undergroundness; interiority 207; extensiveness, unfathomableness

2 **pit, deep, depth, hole,** hollow, **cavity,** shaft, well, **gulf, chasm, abyss,** abysm, yawning abyss; crater; crevasse; valley; underground, subterrane

3 **depths,** deeps, bowels, bowels of the earth, core; bottomless pit; infernal pit, hell, nether world, underworld; dark *or* unknown *or* yawning *or* gaping depths, unfathomed deeps; outer *or* deep space

4 **ocean depths, the deep sea, the deep,** trench, deep-sea trench <see list>, hadal zone, **the deeps, the depths,** bottomless depths, inner space, abyss; bottom waters; abyssal zone, Bassalia *or* Bassalian realm, bathyal zone, pelagic zone; **seabed,** seafloor, **bottom of the sea,** ocean bottom *or* floor *or* bed, ground, benthos, benthonic division, benthonic zone; Davy Jones's locker <nf>; Mariana Trench

5 **sounding** *or* **soundings,** fathoming, depth

sounding, probing; **echo sounding,** echolocation; sonar; **depth indicator;** oceanography, bathometry, bathymetry; fathomage, water <depth of water>

6 **draft,** submergence, submersion, sinkage, **displacement**

7 **deepening, lowering, depression;** sinking, sinkage, descent; excavation, digging, mining, tunneling; drilling, probing

VERBS 8 **deepen, lower, depress, sink;** founder; countersink; **dig,** excavate, tunnel, mine, **drill;** pierce to the depths; **dive** 367.6

9 **sound, take soundings,** make a sounding, heave *or* cast *or* sling the lead, **fathom, plumb,** plumb-line, plumb the depths, probe

ADJS 10 **deep, profound,** deep-down, penetrating; deepish, deepsome; **deep-going,** deep-lying, deep-reaching; **deep-set,** deep-laid; deep-sunk, deep-sunken, deep-sinking; **deep-seated, deep-rooted,** deep-fixed, deep-settled; deep-cut, deep-engraven; knee-deep, ankle-deep, waist-deep

11 **abysmal,** abyssal, yawning, cavernous, gaping, plunging; **bottomless,** without bottom, soundless, unsounded, plumbless, **fathomless,** unfathomed, unfathomable, rock-bottom; deep as a well, deep as the sea *or* ocean, deep as hell

12 **underground, subterranean,** subterraneous, hypogeal, buried, deep-buried

13 **underwater,** subaqueous; **submarine, undersea;** submerged, submersed, immersed, buried, engulfed, inundated, flooded, drowned, sunken

14 **deep-sea,** deep-water, blue-water; oceanographic, bathyal; benthic, benthal, benthonic; abyssal, Bassalian; bathyorographic, bathyorographical, bathymetric, bathymetrical; benthopelagic, bathypelagic

15 deepest, deepmost, profoundest; bedrock, rock-bottom

ADVS 16 **deep; beyond one's depth,** out of one's depth; over one's head, over head and ears; at bottom, at the core, at rock bottom

17 **deep-sea trenches and deeps**

Aleutian Trench 25,194 feet
Bonin Trench 32,788 feet
Cayman Trench 24,721 feet
Diamantina Fracture, Ob' Trench 22,553 feet
Eurasia Basin (Arctic Ocean) 17,881 feet
Guatemala Trench 21,228 feet
Ionian Basin (Mediterranean) 16,896 feet
Japan Trench, Ramapo Deep 27,599 feet
Java *or* Sunda Trench, Planet Deep 23,376 feet
Kermandec Trench 32,963 feet
Kuril Trench 31,988 feet
Mariana Trench, Challenger Deep 35,840 feet
North Ryukyu Trench 23,560 feet
Peru-Chile *or* Atacama Trench, Bartholomew Deep 26,160 feet
Philippine Trench, Galathea Deep 32,995 feet
Puerto Rico Trench, Milwaukee Deep 28,232 feet
Romanche Trench 25,354 feet
Solomon Trench 29,988 feet
South Sandwich Trench, Meteor Deep 27,313 feet
Tonga Trench 35,433 feet
Verna Trench 21,004 feet
Yap Trench 27,976 feet

276 SHALLOWNESS

NOUNS 1 **shallowness, depthlessness;** shoalness, shoaliness, no water, no depth; **superficiality,** exteriority, triviality, **cursoriness,** slightness; insufficiency 991; a lick and a promise *and* once-over-lightly <nf>; **surface,** superficies, skin, rind, epidermis; veneer, gloss; pinprick, scratch, mere scratch

2 **shoal, shallow,** shallows, shallow *or* shoal water, flat, shelf; **bank, bar,** sandbank, sandbar, tombolo; **reef,** coral reef; ford; wetlands, tidal flats, flats, mud flat

VERBS 3 **shoal,** shallow; fill in *or* up, silt up

4 **scratch the surface, touch upon,** hardly touch, skim, skim over, skim *or* graze the surface, hit the high spots *and* give a lick and a promise *and* give it once over lightly <nf>, apply a Band-Aid <trademark> <nf>; trivialize, trifle

ADJS 5 **shallow,** shoal, **depthless,** not deep, unprofound; **surface,** on *or* near the surface, merely surface; **superficial, cursory,** slight, light, cosmetic, merely cosmetic, thin, jejune, trivial; **skin-deep,** epidermal; one-dimensional, trifling, trivial; ankle-deep, knee-deep; shallow-rooted, shallow-rooting; shallow-draft *or* -bottomed *or* -hulled

6 shoaly, shelfy; reefy; unnavigable; shallow-sea

277 STRAIGHTNESS

NOUNS 1 **straightness,** directness, unswervingness, lineality, **linearity,** rectilinearity; verticalness 200; flatness, horizontalness 201; perpendicularity

2 **straight line,** straight, right line, direct line; straight course *or* stretch, straightaway; **beeline,** air line; **shortcut** 268.5; great-circle course; streamline; edge, side, diagonal, secant, transversal, chord, tangent, perpendicular, normal, segment, directrix, diameter, axis, radius, vector, radius vector <all mathematics>; ray, beeline, plumb line, column

3 **straightedge, rule,** ruler; square, T square, triangle

VERBS 4 be straight, have no turning *or* turns; arrow; go straight, make a beeline

5 **straighten, set** *or* **put straight,** rectify, make right *or* good, square away; **unbend,** unkink, uncurl, unsnarl, disentangle 798.5; straighten up, square

up; straighten out, extend; flatten, smooth 201.6; iron, flatten

ADJS 6 **straight;** straight-lined, dead straight, straight as an edge *or* a ruler, ruler-straight, even, right, true, straight as an arrow, arrowlike; straightaway; **rectilinear,** rectilineal; **linear,** lineal, in a line; **direct, undeviating, unswerving,** unbending, undeflected; **unbent, unbowed,** unturned, uncurved, undistorted, uncurled; **uninterrupted, unbroken;** straight-side, straight-front, straight-cut; upright, vertical 200.11; flat, level, smooth, horizontal 201.7; plumb, true, right

ADVS 7 **straight,** straightly, on the straight, unswervingly, undeviatingly, **directly;** straight to the mark; down the alley *and* down the pipe *and* in the groove *and* on the beam *and* on the money <nf>

278 ANGULARITY

NOUNS 1 **angularity,** angularness, crookedness, hookedness; squareness, orthogonality, right-angledness, rectangularity; flection, flexure

2 **angle,** point, bight; vertex, apex 198.2; **corner,** quoin, coin, nook; **crook, hook,** crotchet; **bend,** curve, swerve, veer, inflection, deflection; ell, L; cant; furcation, bifurcation, fork 171.4; zigzag, zig, zag; chevron; elbow, knee, dogleg <nf>; crank; obtuse angle, oblique angle, acute angle, right angle, perpendicular

3 <angular measurement> goniometry; trigonometry; geometry

4 <instruments> goniometer, radiogoniometer; pantometer, clinometer, graphometer, astrolabe; azimuth compass, azimuth circle; theodolite, transit theodolite, transit, transit instrument, transit circle; sextant, quadrant; bevel, bevel square, set square, T square; protractor, bevel protractor

VERBS 5 **angle, crook, hook, bend,** elbow; crank; angle off *or* away, curve, swerve, veer, veer off, slant off, go off on a tangent; furcate, bifurcate, branch, fork 171.7; zigzag, zig, zag

ADJS 6 **angular;** cornered, **crooked, hooked, bent,** flexed, flexural; akimbo; knee-shaped, geniculate, geniculated, doglegged <nf>; crotched, Y-shaped, V-shaped; furcate, furcal, forked 171.10; sharp-cornered, **sharp, pointed;** zigzag, jagged, serrate, sawtooth *or* saw-toothed; mitered

7 **right-angled, rectangular,** right-angular, right-angle; **orthogonal,** orthodiagonal, orthometric; **perpendicular,** normal

8 **triangular, trilateral,** trigonal, oxygonal, deltoid; wedgeshaped, cuneiform, cuneate, cuneated

9 **quadrangular, quadrilateral,** quadrate, quadriform; **rectangular, square;** foursquare, orthogonal; tetragonal, tetrahedral; **oblong;** trapezoid *or* trapezoidal, rhombic *or* rhombal, rhomboid *or* rhomboidal; **cubic** *or* **cubical,** cubiform, cuboid, cube-shaped, cubed, diced; rhombohedral, trapezohedral

10 pentagonal, hexagonal, heptagonal, octagonal, decagonal, dodecagonal, etc; pentahedral, hexahedral, octahedral, dodecahedral, icosahedral, etc

11 multilateral, multiangular, polygonal; polyhedral, pyramidal, pyramidic; prismatic, prismoid; diamond

279 CURVATURE

NOUNS 1 **curvature,** curving, curvation, arcing; incurvature, incurvation; excurvature, excurvation; decurvature, decurvation; recurvature, recurvity, recurvation; rondure; **arching, vaulting,** arcuation, concameration; aduncity, aquilinity, crookedness, hookedness; sinuosity, sinuousness, tortuosity, tortuousness; circularity 280; convolution 281; rotundity 282, roundness; convexity 283; concavity 284; curvaceousness

2 **curve,** sinus; **bow, arc; crook, hook;** parabola, hyperbola, witch of Agnesi; ellipse; caustic, catacaustic, diacaustic; catenary, festoon, swag; conchoid; lituus; tracery; circle 280.2; curl 281.2; coil, loop, spiral

3 **bend,** bending; **bow,** bowing, oxbow; Cupid's bow; **turn,** turning, sweep, meander, hairpin turn *or* bend, S-curve, U-turn; **flexure,** flex, **flection,** conflexure, inflection, deflection; reflection; geanticline, geosyncline; detour

4 **arch, span, vault,** vaulting, concameration, camber; ogive; apse; **dome,** cupola, geodesic dome, igloo, concha; cove; arched roof, ceilinged roof; **arcade, archway,** arcature; voussoir, keystone, skewback

5 **crescent, semicircle,** scythe, sickle, meniscus; crescent moon, half-moon; lunula, lunule; horseshoe; rainbow

VERBS 6 **curve, turn,** arc, sweep; **crook, hook,** loop; incurve, incurvate; recurve, decurve, bend back, retroflex, detour; sag, swag <nf>; **bend,** flex; deflect, inflect; reflect, reflex; **bow,** embow; **arch,** vault; dome; **hump,** hunch; wind, curl 281.5; round 282.6

ADJS 7 **curved,** curve, curvate, curvated, **curving,** curvy, curvaceous <nf>, curvesome, curviform; curvilinear, curvilineal; wavy, undulant, billowy, billowing; sinuous, tortuous, serpentine, mazy, labyrinthine, meandering; **bent,** flexed, flexural, flexuous; incurved, incurving, incurvate, incurvated; recurved, recurving, recurvate, recurvated; geosynclinal, geanticlinal

8 **hooked, crooked, aquiline,** aduncous; **hook-shaped,** hooklike, uncinate, unciform; hamulate, hamate, hamiform; claw-like, unguiform, down-curving; **hook-nosed,** beak-nosed, parrot-nosed, aquiline-nosed, Roman-nosed, crooknosed, crookbilled; **beaked,** billed; **beak-shaped,** beak-like; bill-shaped, bill-like; rostrate, rostriform, rhamphoid

9 turned-up, upcurving, upsweeping, *retroussé* <Fr>

10 **bowed,** embowed, bandy; bowlike, bow-shaped, oxbow, Cupid's-bow; **convex, concave** 284.16, convexoconcave; arcuate, arcuated, arcual, arciform, arclike; **arched,** vaulted; **humped,** hunched, humpy, hunchy; gibbous, gibbose; humpbacked 265.13

11 **crescent-shaped,** crescentlike, crescent, crescentic, crescentiform; meniscoid *or* meniscoidal, menisciform; S-shaped, ess, S, sigmoid; **semicircular,** semilunar; horn-shaped, hornlike, horned, corniform; bicorn, two-horned; sickle-shaped, sickle-like, falcate, falciform; moon-shaped, moonlike, lunar, lunate, lunular, luniform

12 lens-shaped, lenticular, lentiform

13 parabolic, parabolical, paraboloid, saucer-shaped; elliptic, elliptical, ellipsoid; bell-shaped, bell-like, campanular, campanulate, campaniform; hyperbolic, domical

14 pear-shaped, pearlike, pyriform

15 heart-shaped, heartlike; cordate, cardioid, cordiform

16 kidney-shaped, kidneylike, reniform

17 turnip-shaped, turniplike, napiform

18 shell-shaped, shell-like; conchate, conchiform

19 shield-shaped, shieldlike, peltate; scutate, scutiform; clypeate, clypeiform

20 helmet-shaped, helmetlike, galeiform, cassideous

280 CIRCULARITY

NOUNS 1 **circularity, roundness,** ring-shape, ringliness, annularity; annulation

2 **circle,** circus, rondure, **ring,** annulus, O, full circle; **circumference,** radius; **round,** roundel, rondelle; **cycle, circuit;** orbit 1072.16; closed circle *or* arc; vicious circle, eternal return; magic circle, charmed circle, fairy ring; logical circle, circular reasoning, petitio principii; **wheel** 915.4; **disk,** discus, saucer; **loop,** looplet; noose, lasso; crown, diadem, coronet, corona; garland, chaplet, wreath; halo, glory, areola, aureole; annular muscle, sphincter

3 <thing encircling> **band, belt, cincture,** cingulum, **girdle, girth,** girt, zone, fascia, fillet; collar, collarband, neckband; necktie; necklace, bracelet, armlet, torque, wristlet, wristband, anklet; ring, earring, nose ring, finger ring; hoop; quoit; zodiac, ecliptic, equator, great circle; round trip

4 **rim,** felly; **tire**

5 circlet, **ringlet,** roundlet, annulet, eye, **eyelet,** grommet

6 **oval,** ovule, ovoid; ellipse

7 cycloid; epicycloid, epicycle; hypocycloid; lemniscate; cardioid; Lissajous figure

8 **semicircle,** half circle, hemicycle; crescent 279.5; quadrant, sextant, sector

9 <music and poetry> **round,** canon; rondo, rondino, rondeau, rondelet

VERBS 10 circle, round; orbit; **encircle** 209.7, surround, encompass, girdle; make a round trip, circumnavigate

ADJS 11 **circular, round,** rounded, circinate, annular, annulate, ring-shaped, ringlike; annulose; disklike, discoid; cyclic, cyclical, cycloid, cycloidal; epicyclic; planetary; coronal, crownlike; orbital; circulatory, circumferential

12 **oval,** ovate, ovoid, oviform, egg-shaped, obovate

281 CONVOLUTION

<complex curvature>

NOUNS 1 **convolution,** involution, circumvolution, **winding, twisting, turning; meander, meandering;** crinkle, crinkling; circuitousness, circumlocution, circumbendibus, circumambages, ambagiousness, ambages, convolutedness; Byzantinism; tortuousness, tortuosity; torsion, intorsion; sinuousness, **sinuosity,** sinuation, slinkiness; anfractuosity; snakiness; flexuousness, flexuosity; undulation, wave, waving; rivulation; **complexity** 799

2 **coil, whorl,** roll, **curl,** curlicue, ringlet, pigtail, **spiral,** helix, double helix, volute, volution, involute, evolute, gyre, scroll, turbination; **kink, twist, twirl;** screw, corkscrew, screw thread; tendril, cirrus; whirl, swirl, vortex; intricacy; squiggle

3 curler, curling iron; curlpaper, papillote; straightening iron; crimper, crimping iron

VERBS 4 convolve, convolute, **wind, twine,** twirl, **twist, turn, twist and turn, meander,** crinkle; serpentine, snake, slink, worm; screw, corkscrew; whirl, swirl; whorl; scallop; wring; intort; contort; undulate, squiggle, twist and turn

5 **curl, coil;** crisp, kink, crimp, wave

ADJS 6 **convolutional, convoluted, winding, twisting,** twisty, **turning; meandering,** meandrous, mazy, labyrinthine; **serpentine,** snaky, anfractuous; roundabout, circuitous, ambagious, circumlocutory; labyrinthine; Byzantine; **sinuous,** sinuose, sinuate; **tortuous,** torsional; tortile; flexular, flexuous, flexuose; involutional, involute, involuted; rivose, rivulose; sigmoidal; wreathy, wreathlike; ruffled, whorled, turbinate

7 **coiled,** tortile, **snakelike, snaky,** snake-shaped, **serpentine,** serpentlike, serpentiform; anguine <old>, anguiform; eellike, eelshaped, anguilliform; wormlike, vermiform, lumbricoid, lumbricine, lumbriciform

8 **spiral,** spiroid, volute, voluted; **helical,** helicoid, helicoidal; anfractuous; screw-shaped, corkscrew, corkscrewy; verticillate, whorled, scrolled; cochlear, cochleate; turbinal, turbinate

9 **curly, curled; kinky,** kinked; **frizzly,** frizzy, frizzled, frizzed; crisp, crispy, crisped

10 **wavy, undulant,** undulatory, undulative, undulating, undulate, undulated; **billowy,** billowing, surgy, rolling

ADVS 11 **windingly, twistingly,** sinuously, tortuously, serpentinely, meanderingly, meandrously; in waves; wavily; **in and out,** round and round

282 SPHERICITY, ROTUNDITY

NOUNS 1 **sphericity, rotundity, roundness,** balllikeness, rotundness, orbicularness, orbicularity, orbiculation, orblikeness, **sphericalness,** sphericality, globularity, globularness, globosity, globoseness; spheroidity, spheroidicity; belly; cylindricality; convexity 283

2 **sphere; ball,** orb, orbit, **globe,** rondure; geoid; spheroid, globoid, ellipsoid, oblate spheroid, prolate spheroid; spherule, globule, globelet, orblet; glomerulus; **pellet;** boll; **bulb,** bulbil *or* bulbel, bulblet; knob, knot; **gob,** glob <nf>, blob, gobbet; pill, bolus; **balloon,** bladder, bubble; marble

3 **drop,** droplet; dewdrop, raindrop, teardrop; bead, pearl

4 **cylinder,** cylindroid, pillar, column; barrel, drum, cask; pipe, tube; roll, rouleau, roller, rolling pin; bole, trunk; rung

5 **cone,** conoid, conelet; complex cone, cone of a complex; funnel; ice-cream cone, cornet <Brit>; pine cone; cop; trumpet; top

VERBS 6 **round; round out, fill out; cone**

7 **ball, snowball;** sphere, spherify, globe, conglobulate; roll; bead; balloon, mushroom

ADJS 8 **rotund, round,** rounded, rounded out, round as a ball; bellied, bellylike; convex, bulging

9 **spherical,** sphereic, spheriform, spherelike, sphere-shaped; **globular, global,** globed, globose, globate, globelike, globe-shaped; orbicular, orbiculate, orbiculated, orbed, orb, orby <old>, orblike; spheroid, spheroidal, globoid, ellipsoid, ellipsoidal; hemispheric, hemispherical; **bulbous,** bulblike, bulging; ovoid, obovoid

10 **beady,** beaded, bead-shaped, bead-like

11 **cylindric, cylindrical,** cylindroid, cylindroidal; **columnar,** columnal, columned, columelliform; **tubular,** tube-shaped; barrel-shaped, drum-shaped

12 **conical,** conic, coned, cone-shaped, conelike; conoid, conoidal; spheroconic; funnel-shaped, funnellike, funnelled, funnelform, infundibuliform, infundibular; bell-shaped

283 CONVEXITY, PROTUBERANCE

NOUNS 1 **convexity,** convexness, convexedness; excurvature, excurvation; camber; gibbousness, gibbosity; tuberousness, tuberosity; **bulging,** bulbousness, bellying, puffing, puffing out

2 **protuberance** *or* protuberancy, **projection, protrusion, extrusion;** prominence, eminence, salience, boldness, **bulging,** bellying; gibbousness, gibbosity; excrescence *or* excrescency; tuberousness, tuberosity, puffiness; salient; relief, high relief, *alto-rilievo* <Ital>, low relief, bas-relief, *basso-rilievo* <Ital>, embossment

3 **bulge,** bilge, bow, convex; **bump;** thank-you-ma'am *and* whoopdedoo <nf>, cahot <Can>; speed bump, sleeping policeman <Brit>; hill, mountain; **hump,** hunch; **lump,** clump, bunch, blob; nubbin, nubble, nub; **mole,** nevus; **wart,** papilloma, verruca; **knob,** boss, bulla, button, bulb; stud, jog, joggle, peg, dowel; flange, lip; tab, ear, flap, loop, ring, handle; knot, knur, knurl, gnarl, burl, gall; **ridge,** rib, cost- *or* costo- *or* costi-, chine, spine, shoulder; welt, wale; blister, bleb, vesicle <anat>, blain; bubble; condyle; bubo; tubercle *or* tubercule; beer belly

4 **swelling,** swollenness, edema; **rising, lump, bump,** pimple; pock, furuncle, boil, carbuncle; corn; pustule; dilation, dilatation; turgidity, turgescence *or* turgescency, tumescence, intumescence; tumor, tumidity, tumefaction; wen, cyst, sebaceous cyst; bunion; distension 259.2

5 **node,** nodule, nodulus, nodulation, nodosity

6 **breast, bosom, bust, chest,** crop, brisket; thorax; pigeon breast; **breasts,** dugs, teats; **nipple,** papilla, pap, mammilla, *mamelon* and *téton* <Fr>; mammillation, mamelonation; mammary gland, udder, bag; testicles

7 <nf terms> **tits,** titties, **boobs,** boobies, bubbies, jugs, headlights, **knockers,** knobs, *nénés* <Fr>, bazooms, bags, bazongas, coconuts, hooters; balls

8 **nose,** olfactory organ; **snout, snoot** <nf>, nozzle <nf>, **muzzle; proboscis,** antlia, **trunk; beak,** rostrum; **bill** *and* pecker <nf>; nib, neb; smeller

and beezer *and* bugle *and* schnozzle *and* schnoz *and* schnozzola *and* conk <nf>; muffle, rhinarium; nostrils, noseholes <Brit nf>, nares

9 <point of land> **point,** hook, spur, **cape,** tongue, bill; **promontory,** foreland, **headland,** head; naze, ness; **peninsula,** chersonese; **delta; spit,** sandspit; **reef,** coral reef; breakwater 901.4

VERBS 10 **protrude, protuberate, project, extrude; stick out,** jut out, poke out, stand out, shoot out; **stick up,** bristle up, start up, cock up, shoot up

11 **bulge,** bilge, bouge <nf>, **belly,** bag, balloon, **pouch,** pooch <nf>; pout; **goggle,** bug <nf>, pop; **swell, swell up, dilate, distend,** billow; swell out, **belly out,** round out

12 **emboss, boss,** chase, raise; ridge

ADJS 13 **convex,** convexed; excurved, excurvate, excurvated; **bowed,** bowed-out, out-bowed, arched 279.10; gibbous, gibbose; humped 279.10; rotund 282.8

14 **protruding, protrusive,** protrudent; protrusile, protrusible; **protuberant,** protuberating; **projecting, extruding,** jutting, outstanding; prominent, eminent, salient, bold; prognathous; excrescent, excrescential; protrusile, emissile; sticking out

15 **bulging, swelling,** distended, bloated, potbellied, bellying, pouching; bagging, baggy; rounded, hillocky, hummocky, moutonnée; billowing, billowy, bosomy, ballooning, pneumatic; **bumpy,** bumped; bunchy, bunched; **bulbous,** bulbose; warty, verrucose, verrucated; meniscoid

16 **bulged, bulgy,** bugged-out <nf>; swollen 259.13, turgid, tumid, turgescent, tumescent, tumorous; bellied, ventricose; pouched, pooched <nf>; goggled, goggle; exophthalmic, bug-eyed <nf>, popeyed <nf>

17 **studded, knobbed, knobby,** knoblike, nubbled, nubby, nubbly, torose; **knotty, knotted; gnarled,** knurled, knurly, burled, gnarly; noded, nodal, nodiform; noduled, nodular; nodulated; bubonic; tuberculous, tubercular; tuberous, tuberose

18 **in relief,** in bold *or* high relief, bold, raised, *repoussé* <Fr>; chased, bossed, embossed, bossy

19 **pectoral,** chest, thoracic; pigeon-breasted; mammary, mammillary, mammiform; mammalian, mammate; papillary, papillose, papulous; breasted, bosomed, chested; teated, titted <nf>, nippled; busty, bosomy, chesty

20 **peninsular;** deltaic, deltal

284 CONCAVITY

NOUNS 1 **concavity, hollowness;** incurvature, incurvation; depression, impression; emptiness 222.2

2 **cavity,** concavity, concave; **hollow,** hollow shell, shell; **hole, pit, depression, dip,** sink, fold <Brit>; scoop, pocket; **basin,** trough, **bowl,** punch bowl, cup, container 195; **crater;** antrum; lacuna; alveola, alveolus, alveolation; vug *or* vugg *or* vugh; crypt; armpit; socket; funnel chest *or* breast

3 **pothole, sinkhole,** pitchhole, chuckhole, **mudhole, rut** 290.1

4 **pit, well, shaft,** sump; **chasm, gulf, abyss,** abysm; **excavation,** dig, diggings, workings; mine, quarry

5 **cave, cavern,** cove <Scot>, **hole, grotto,** grot, antre, subterrane; lair 228.26; **tunnel, burrow,** warren; subway; bunker, foxhole, dugout, *abri* <Fr>; sewer

6 **indentation,** indent, indention, indenture, **dent,** dint; gouge, **furrow** 290; sunken part *or* place, **dimple; pit,** pock, pockmark; impression, impress; imprint, print; alveolus, alveolation; honeycomb, Swiss cheese; **notch** 289

7 **recess,** recession, **niche, nook,** inglenook, corner; cove, alcove; bay; pitchhole

8 <hollow in the side of a mountain> combe, cwm <Welsh>, cirque, corrie

9 **valley,** vale, dale, dell, dingle; **glen,** bottom, bottoms, bottom glade, intervale, strath <Scot>, gill <Brit>, cwm <Welsh>, wadi, grove; trench, trough, lunar rill; gap, pass, ravine

10 **excavator, digger;** sapper; **miner;** tunneler, sandhog *and* groundhog <nf>, burrower; gravedigger; dredger; quarryman; driller; steam shovel, navvy <Brit>; dredge, dredger

11 **excavation,** digging; mining; indentation, **engraving**

VERBS 12 <be concave> **sink, dish,** cup, bowl, hollow; retreat, retire; incurve, curve inward

13 **hollow,** hollow out, concave, **dish,** cup, bowl; cave, cave in

14 **indent, dent,** dint, **depress,** press in, stamp, tamp, punch, punch in, impress, imprint; **pit;** pock, pockmark; dimple; honeycomb; **recess,** set back; set in; **notch** 289.4; engrave

15 **excavate, dig,** dig out, **scoop,** scoop out, **gouge,** gouge out, grub, shovel, spade, trowel, dike, delve, scrape, scratch, scrabble; dredge; **trench,** trough, furrow, groove; **tunnel, burrow;** drive, sink, lower; **mine,** sap; quarry; drill, bore

ADJS 16 **concave,** concaved, **incurved,** incurving, incurvate; **sunk,** sunken; retreating, recessed, retiring; **hollow,** hollowed, empty; palm-shaped; dish-shaped, dished, dishing, dishlike, bowl-shaped; bowllike, crater-shaped, craterlike, saucer-shaped; spoon-like; **cupped,** cup-shaped, scyphate; funnel-shaped, infundibular, infundibuliform; funnel-chested, funnel-breasted; boat-shaped, boatlike, navicular, naviform, cymbiform, scaphoid; **cavernous,** cavelike

17 indented, dented, depressed; **dimpled; pitted;** cratered; pocked, pockmarked; honeycombed, alveolar, alveolate, faveolate; **notched** 289.5; **engraved**

285 SHARPNESS

NOUNS 1 **sharpness, keenness, edge;** acuteness, acuity; **pointedness,** acumination; thorniness, prickliness, spinosity, spininess, bristliness; mucronation; denticulation, dentition; serration; cornification; acridity 68.1

2 <sharp edge> **edge, cutting edge, honed edge, knife-edge, razor-edge,** saw-edge; jagged edge; featheredge, fine edge; edge tool; weapon 462.21–26

3 **point, tip,** cusp, vertex; acumination, mucro; **nib,** neb; needle; hypodermic needle, hypodermic syringe; **drill,** borer, auger, bit; prong, tine; **prick, prickle;** sting, acus *or* aculeus; **tooth** 2.8

4 <pointed projection> **projection,** spur, jag, **snag,** snaggle; **horn,** antler; cornicle; crag, peak, arête; spire, steeple, flèche; **cog, sprocket,** ratchet; sawtooth; harrow, rake; comb, pecten; nail, tack, pin; arrowhead; skewer, spit; tooth, snaggletooth, fang, denticle

5 **thorn, bramble, brier, nettle,** burr, awn, prickle, sticker <nf>; **spike,** spikelet, spicule, spiculum; **spine;** bristle; quill; **needle,** pine needle; **thistle,** catchweed, cleavers, goose grass, cactus; yucca, Adam's-needle, Spanish bayonet

VERBS 6 come *or* taper to a point, end in a point, acuminate; prick, prickle, sting, stick, bite; be keen, have an edge, cut, needle; bristle with

7 **sharpen, edge,** acuminate, aculeate, spiculate, taper; **whet, hone,** oilstone, file, grind; strop, strap; set, reset; **point;** barb, spur, point, file to a point

ADJS 8 **sharp, keen, edged, acute,** fine, **cutting,** knifelike, cultrate; sharp-edged, keen-edged, razor-edged, knife-edged, sharp as broken glass; featheredged, fine-edged; acrid 68.6; two-edged, double-edged; sharp-set, sharp as a razor *or* needle *or* tack, "sharp as a two-edged sword"—Bible, "sharper than a serpent's tooth"—Shakespeare; sharpened, set

9 **pointed,** pointy, acuminate, acuate, aculeate, aculeated, acute, unbated; tapered, tapering; cusped, cuspate, cuspated, cuspidal, cuspidate, cuspidated; **sharp-pointed; needlelike,** needle-sharp, needle-pointed, needly, acicular, aciculate, aculeiform; mucronate, mucronated; acuminate; toothed; **spiked,** spiky, spiculate; **barbed, tined, pronged; horned,** horny, cornuted, corniculate, cornified, ceratoid; **spined, spiny,** spinous, hispid, acanthoid, acanthous; "like quills upon the fretful porpentine"—Shakespeare

10 **prickly,** pricky <nf>, muricate, echinate, acanaceous, acanthous, aculeolate; pricking, stinging; **thorny,** brambly, briery, thistly, nettly, burry; bristly

11 **arrowlike,** arrowy, arrowheaded; sagittal, sagittate, sagittiform

12 **spearlike,** hastate; lancelike, lanciform, lanceolate, lanceolar; **spindle-shaped,** fusiform

13 **swordlike,** gladiate, ensate, ensiform

14 **toothlike,** dentiform, dentoid, odontoid; **toothed,** toothy, **fanged, tusked,** corniculate, denticulate, cuspidate, muricate; snaggle-toothed, snaggled, jagged; emarginate

15 **star-shaped, starlike,** star-pointed, stellate, stellular

286 BLUNTNESS

NOUNS 1 **bluntness, dullness,** unsharpness, obtuseness, obtundity; bluffness; abruptness; flatness, smoothness; toothlessness, lack of bite *or* incisiveness

VERBS 2 **blunt, dull,** disedge, retund, obtund, **take the edge off,** take the sting *or* bite out; turn, turn the edge *or* point of; weaken, repress; draw the teeth *or* fangs; bate; flatten, smooth

ADJS 3 **blunt, dull,** obtuse, obtundent; bluntish, dullish; **unsharp,** unsharpened, unwhetted; **unedged,** edgeless; rounded, faired, smoothed, streamlined; **unpointed,** pointless; blunted, dulled; blunt-edged, dull-edged; blunt-pointed, dull-pointed, blunt-ended; bluff, abrupt; flat

4 **toothless,** teethless, edentate, edental, edentulous, biteless

287 SMOOTHNESS

NOUNS 1 **smoothness, flatness, levelness,** evenness, uniformity, regularity; **sleekness,** glossiness; **slickness,** slipperiness, lubricity, oiliness, greasiness, frictionlessness; silkiness, satininess, velvetiness; glabrousness, glabriety; downiness; suavity 504.5; peacefulness, dead calm

2 **polish, gloss, glaze,** burnish, varnish, wax, enamel, **shine, luster,** finish; **patina**

3 <smooth surface> smooth, **plane, level, flat;** tennis court, bowling alley *or* green, billiard table *or* ball; slide; glass, ice; marble, alabaster, ivory; silk, satin, velvet, a baby's ass <nf>; mahogany

4 **smoother;** roller, lawn-roller; sleeker, slicker; **polish,** burnish; **abrasive,** abrader, abradant; lubricant; flattener, iron; buffer, sander, burnisher

VERBS 5 **smooth, flatten, plane,** planish, **level,** even, equalize; **dress,** dub, dab; smooth down *or* out, lay; plaster, plaster down; roll, roll smooth; harrow, drag; grade; mow, shave; lubricate, oil, grease

6 **press,** hot-press, **iron, mangle,** calender; roll

7 **polish, shine, burnish, furbish,** sleek, slick, slick down, gloss, glaze, glance, luster; **rub,** scour, **buff;** wax, varnish; finish

8 **grind, file, sand, scrape,** sandpaper, emery, pumice; levigate; abrade; sandblast

9 move smoothly; glide, skate, roll, ski, float, slip, slide, skid, coast

ADJS 10 **smooth;** smooth-textured *or* -surfaced, **even, level, plane, flat,** regular, uniform, **unbroken;** peaceful, still; unrough, unroughened, unruffled, unwrinkled, unrumpled; glabrous, glabrate, glabrescent; downy, peachlike; silky, satiny, velvety, smooth as silk *or* satin *or* velvet, smooth as a billiard ball *or* baby's ass <nf>; leiotrichous, lissotrichous; smooth-shaven 6.17; suave 504.18

11 **sleek, slick, glossy,** shiny, gleaming; silky, silken, satiny, velvety; **polished,** burnished, furbished; buffed, rubbed, finished; varnished, lacquered, shellacked, glazed, *glacé* <Fr>; **glassy,** smooth as glass

12 **slippery,** slippy, **slick,** slithery *and* sliddery <nf>, slippery as an eel; lubricous, lubric, oily, oleaginous, greasy, buttery, soaped, soapy; lubricated, oiled, greased

ADVS 13 **smoothly, evenly,** regularly, uniformly; **like clockwork,** on wheels

288 ROUGHNESS

NOUNS 1 **roughness, unsmoothness, unevenness,** irregularity, ununiformity, nonuniformity 782, inequality; **bumpiness,** pockedness, pockiness, holeyness; **abrasiveness, abrasion,** harshness, asperity; **ruggedness,** rugosity; **jaggedness,** raggedness, cragginess, scraggliness; joltiness, bumpiness; rough air, turbulence; choppiness; tooth; granulation; hispidity, bristliness, spininess, thorniness; nubbiness, nubbliness; scaliness, scabrousness

2 <rough surface> **rough,** broken ground; broken water, chop; **corrugation,** ripple, washboard; serration; gooseflesh, goose bumps, goose pimples, horripilation; tweed, corduroy, sackcloth; steel wool; sandpaper; potholed road, dirt road

3 **bristle,** barb, barbel, striga, setule, setula, seta; **stubble;** whiskers, five o'clock shadow

VERBS 4 **roughen,** rough, rough up, harshen; coarsen; granulate; gnarl, knob, stud, boss; pimple, horripilate; roughcast, rough-hew

5 **ruffle,** wrinkle, corrugate, crinkle, crumple, corrugate, **rumple; bristle; rub the wrong way, go against the grain,** set on edge

ADJS 6 **rough, unsmooth; uneven,** ununiform, unlevel, inequal, **broken,** irregular, textured; jolty, **bumpy,** rutty, rutted, pitted, pocky, potholed; horripilant, pimply; **corrugated,** ripply, wimpled; **choppy;** ruffled, unkempt; **shaggy,** shagged; **coarse,** rank, unrefined; unpolished; rough-grained, coarse-grained, cross-grained; grainy, granulated; rough-hewn, rough-cast; homespun, linsey-woolsey; bouclé, tweed, tweedy, corduroy

7 **rugged,** ragged, harsh; rugose, rugous, wrinkled, crinkled, crumpled, corrugated; **scratchy, abrasive,** rough as a cob <nf>; **jagged,** jaggy; **snaggy,** snagged, snaggled; scraggy, scragged, scraggly; sawtooth, sawtoothed, serrate, serrated; **craggy,** cragged; **rocky,** gravelly, stony; rockbound, ironbound

8 **gnarled,** gnarly; **knurled,** knurly; **knotted,** knotty, knobbly, nodose, nodular, studded, lumpy

9 **bristly, bristling,** bristled, hispid, hirsute, whiskery; barbellate, whiskered, glochidiate, setaceous, setous, setose; strigal, strigose, strigate, studded; **stubbled,** stubbly; hairy 3.24

10 bristlelike, setiform, aristate, setarious

ADVS 11 **roughly,** rough, in the rough; **unsmoothly,** brokenly, **unevenly,** irregularly, raggedly, choppily, jaggedly; **abrasively**

12 cross-grained, **against the grain,** the wrong way

289 NOTCH

NOUNS 1 **notch, nick,** nock, **cut,** cleft, **incision, gash,** hack, blaze, scotch, **score,** kerf, crena, depression, jag; jog, joggle; **indentation** 284.6

2 **notching, serration,** serrulation, saw, saw tooth *or* teeth; denticulation, dentil, dentil band, dogtooth; crenation, crenelation, crenature, crenulation; **scallop;** rickrack; picot edge, Vandyke edge; deckle edge; cockscomb, crest; pinking shears

3 battlement, crenel, merlon, embrasure, castellation, machicolation; cog, zigzag

VERBS 4 **notch, nick, cut, incise, gash,** nock, slash, chop, crimp, scotch, **score,** blaze, jag, scarify; **indent** 284.14; **scallop,** crenelate, crenulate, machicolate; serrate, pink, mill, knurl, tooth, picot, Vandyke

ADJS 5 **notched, nicked,** incised, incisural, gashed, scotched, scored, chopped, blazed; **indented** 284.17; serrate, serrated, serrulated, **saw-toothed,** saw-edged, sawlike; crenate, crenated, crenulate, crenellated, battlemented, embrasured; scalloped; dentate, dentated, **toothed,** toothlike, tooth-shaped; lacerate, lacerated; **jagged,** jaggy; erose; serrated, serriform

290 FURROW

NOUNS 1 **furrow, groove,** scratch, crack, fissure, cranny, chase, chink, score, **cut,** gash, striation, streak, stria, **gouge,** slit, incision; sulcus, sulcation; **rut,** ruck <nf>, wheeltrack, well-worn groove; wrinkle 291.3; **corrugation;** flute, fluting; rifling; chamfer, bezel, rabbet, dado; microgroove; **engraving** 713.2

2 **trench, trough, channel, ditch,** dike <old>, fosse, **canal,** cut, gutter, conduit, kennel <Brit>; moat; sunk fence, ha-ha; aqueduct 239.2; entrenchment 460.5; canalization; pleat, crimp, goffer

VERBS 3 **furrow, groove,** score, scratch, incise, cut, carve, chisel, gash, striate, streak, gouge, slit, crack; plow; rifle; **channel, trough, flute,** chamfer, rabbet, dado; **trench,** canal, canalize, **ditch,** dike <old>, gully, **rut; corrugate;** wrinkle 291.6; pleat, crimp, goffer; **engrave** 713.10

ADJS 4 **furrowed, grooved,** scratched, scored, incised, cut, gashed, gouged, slit, striated, slotted; **channeled, troughed,** trenched, ditched, plowed; fluted, chamfered, rabbeted, dadoed; rifled; sulcate, sulcated; canaliculate, canaliculated; **corrugated,** corrugate; corduroy, corduroyed, **rutted,** rutty, rimose; wrinkled 291.8, pleated, crimped, goffered; **engraved;** ribbed, costate

291 FOLD

NOUNS 1 **fold, double,** fold on itself, doubling, doubling over, duplicature; ply; plication, plica, plicature; flection, flexure; **crease,** creasing; crimp; **tuck, gather;** ruffle, frill, ruche, ruching; flounce; lappet; lapel; buckling, geological fold, anticline, syncline; dog-ear

2 **pleat,** pleating, plait *or* plat; accordion pleat, box pleat, knife pleat

3 **wrinkle, corrugation,** ridge, **furrow** 290, **crease, crimp,** ruck, **pucker,** cockle; **crinkle,** crankle, rimple, ripple, wimple; crumple, rumple; crow's-feet

4 **folding, creasing,** infolding, infoldment *or* enfoldment, envelopment; plication, plicature; paper-folding, origami

VERBS 5 **fold,** fold on itself, fold up; **double,** ply, plicate; fold over, double over *or* under, lap, turn over *or* under; **crease, crimp;** crisp; **pleat,** plait, plat <nf>; **tuck, gather,** tuck up, ruck, ruck up; ruffle, ruff, frill; flounce; twill, quill, flute; turn up *or* down, dog-ear; **fold in,** enfold *or* infold, wrap, lap; interfold

6 **wrinkle, corrugate,** shirr, ridge, **furrow, crease,** crimp, crimple, cockle, cocker, **pucker, purse; knit;** ruck, ruckle; **crumple,** rumple; **crinkle,** rimple, ripple, wimple

ADJS 7 **folded, doubled;** plicate, plicated, plical; **pleated,** plaited; **creased,** crimped; tucked, gathered; flounced, ruffled; twilled, quilled, fluted; dog-eared; foldable, folding, flexural, flexible, flectional, pliable, pliant, willowy

8 **wrinkled, wrinkly; corrugated,** corrugate; **creased,** rucked, ruched, **furrowed** 290.4, ridged; cockled, cockly; puckered, puckery; pursed, pursy; knitted, knotted; rugged, rugose, rugous; **crinkled,** crinkly, cranklety <nf>, rimpled, rippled; crimped, crimpy; **crumpled,** rumpled

292 OPENING

NOUNS 1 **opening, aperture, hole,** hollow, **cavity** 284.2, **orifice; slot,** split, crack, check, leak, hairline crack; opening up, unstopping, uncorking, clearing, throwing open, laying open, broaching, cutting through; passageway; inlet 189.5; outlet 190.9; **gap,** gape, yawn, hiatus, lacuna, gat, space, interval; **chasm, gulf;** cleft 224.2; fontanel; foramen, fenestra; stoma; pore, porosity; fistula; **disclosure** 351; open space, clearing

2 **gaping, yawning,** oscitation, oscitancy, dehiscence, pandiculation; **gape, yawn;** the gapes

3 **hole, perforation, penetration, piercing,** empiercement, **puncture,** goring, boring, puncturing, punching, pricking, lancing, broach, transforation, terebration; acupuncture, acupunctuation; trephining, trepanning; **impalement,** skewering, fixing, transfixion, transfixation; bore, borehole, drill hole; ear piercing, body piercing

4 **mouth;** maw, oral cavity, gob <nf>, gab <Scot>; **muzzle,** jaw, lips, embouchure; bazoo *or* kisser *or* mug *or* mush *or* trap *or* yap <nf>; **jaws,** mandibles, chops, chaps, jowls; premaxilla

5 <other body orifices> pore, sweat gland; aural cavity, nasal cavity, nostril; stoma; **anus; asshole** *and* bumhole *and* bunghole <nf>; urethra; vagina

6 **door, doorway** 189.6; **entrance, entry** 189.5

7 **window,** casement; **windowpane,** window glass, pane, skylight; window frame, window ledge, window-sill, window bay

8 **porousness,** porosity; sievelikeness, cribriformity, cribrosity; screen, lattice, grate; sieve, strainer, colander; honeycomb; sponge; tea bag; filter, net

9 **permeability, perviousness**

10 **opener;** can opener, tin opener <Brit>; corkscrew, bottle screw, bottle opener, church key <nf>; **key,** clavis; latchkey; passkey, *passe-partout* <Fr>; master key, skeleton key; password, open sesame; key card, smart card

VERBS 11 **open,** ope <old>, **open up;** lay open, throw open; fly open, spring open, swing open; **tap, broach;** cut open, cut, cleave, split, slit, crack, chink, fissure, crevasse, incise; rift, rive; tear open, rent, tear, rip, rip open, part, dispart, separate, divide, divaricate; spread, spread out, open out, splay, splay out

12 unclose, unshut; **unfold,** unwrap, unroll; **unstop, unclog, unblock,** clear, unfoul, free, deobstruct; **unplug,** uncork, uncap; crack; **unlock,** unlatch, undo, unbolt; unseal, unclench, unclutch; **uncover,** uncase, unsheathe, unveil, undrape, uncurtain; **disclose** 351.4, expose, reveal, bare, take the lid off, manifest; gain access

13 make an opening, find an opening, make place *or* space, **make way, make room**

14 breach, rupture; **break open,** force *or* pry *or* prize open, crack *or* split open, rip *or* tear open; break into, break through; break in, burst in, bust in <nf>, stave *or* stove in, cave in; excavate, dig

15 perforate, pierce, empierce, **penetrate, puncture, punch, hole,** prick; **tap, broach; stab, stick,** pink, run through; **transfix,** transpierce, fix, **impale,** spit, skewer; gore, spear, lance, spike, needle; **bore, drill,** auger; **ream,** ream out, countersink, gouge, gouge out; trepan, trephine; punch full of holes, make look like Swiss cheese *or* a sieve, **riddle, honeycomb**

16 gape, gap <nf>, **yawn,** oscitate, dehisce, hang open

ADJS **17 open, unclosed,** uncovered; **unobstructed, unstopped, unclogged;** clear, cleared, free; wide-open, unrestricted; **disclosed** 348.10; bare, exposed, unhidden 348.11, naked, bald; accessible

18 gaping, yawning, agape, oscitant, slack-jawed, openmouthed; dehiscent, ringent; ajar, half-open, cracked

19 apertured, slotted, **holey;** pierced, **perforated,** perforate, holed; honeycombed, like Swiss cheese, riddled, *criblé* <Fr>, shot through, peppered; windowed, fenestrated; leaky

20 porous, porose; poriferous; like a sieve, sievelike, cribose, cribriform; spongy, spongelike; percolating, leachy

21 permeable, pervious, penetrable, openable, accessible

22 mouthlike, oral, orificial; mandibular, maxillary

INTERJS **23 open up!,** open sesame!, **gangway!,** passageway!, **make way!,** make a hole!, coming through!, heads up!

293 CLOSURE

NOUNS **1 closure, closing, shutting,** shutting up, occlusion; **shutdown,** shutting down, cloture; **exclusion** 773, shutting out, **ruling out;** blockade, embargo

2 imperviousness, impermeability, impenetrability, impassability; imperforation

3 obstruction, clog, block, blockade, sealing off, **blockage,** strangulation, choking, choking off, **stoppage,** stop, **bar, barrier, obstacle,** impediment; occlusion; **bottleneck,** chokepoint; **congestion,** jam, traffic jam, gridlock, rush hour; gorge; constipation, obstipation, costiveness; infarct, infarction; embolism, embolus; **blind alley,** blank wall, **dead end,** cul-de-sac, dead-end street, impasse; cecum, blind gut; standstill, deadlock, stalemate

4 stopper, stop, **stopple,** stopgap; **plug, cork,** bung, spike, spill, spile, tap, faucet, spigot, valve, check valve, cock, sea cock, peg, pin; lid 295.5; tamper-resistant packaging

5 stopping, **wadding, stuffing,** padding, **packing,** pack, tampon; gland; gasket; bandage, tourniquet; wedge

VERBS **6 close, shut,** occlude; close up, shut up, contract, constrict, strangle, strangulate, choke, choke off, squeeze, squeeze shut; **exclude** 772.4, shut out, squeeze out; **rule out** 444.3; **fasten,** secure; **lock,** lock up, lock out, key, padlock, latch, bolt, bar, barricade; **seal,** seal up, seal in, seal off; button, button up; snap; zipper, zip up; batten, batten down the hatches; put *or* slap the lid on, **cover;** contain; **shut the door,** slam, clap, bang

7 stop, stop up; obstruct, bar, stay; **block,** block up; **clog,** clog up, foul; **choke,** choke up *or* off; **fill,** fill up; **stuff,** pack, jam; **congest,** stuff up; **plug,** plug up; stopper, stopple, **cork,** bung, spile; cover; **dam,** dam up; stanch; chink; caulk; blockade, barricade, embargo; constipate, obstipate, bind; occlude

8 close shop, **close up** *or* **down,** shut up, **shut down,** go out of business, fold *or* fold up *and* pull an el foldo <nf>, shutter, put up the shutters, discontinue; cease 857.6

ADJS **9 closed, shut, unopen,** unopened; unvented, unventilated; fastened, secured; **excluded** 773.7, shut-out; **ruled out, barred** 444.7; contracted, constricted, choked, choked off, choked up, squeezed shut, strangulated, occluded; blank; blind, cecal, dead; dead-end, blind-alley, closed-end, closed-ended; **exclusive,** exclusionary, closed-door, in-camera, private, closed to the public; tamper-resistant

10 unpierced, pierceless, **unperforated,** imperforate, intact; **untrodden,** pathless, wayless, trackless

11 stopped, stopped up; obstructed, infarcted, **blocked; plugged,** plugged up, bunged; **clogged,** clogged up; foul, fouled; **choked,** choked up, strangulated, strangled; **full, stuffed,** packed, jammed, bumper-to-bumper <nf>, jam-packed, like sardines; **congested,** stuffed up; constipated, obstipated, costive, bound

12 close, tight, compact, fast, shut fast, **snug,** staunch, firm; **sealed;** hermetic, hermetical, hermetically sealed; airtight, dusttight *or* dustproof, gastight *or* gasproof, lighttight *or* lightproof, oil-tight *or* oil-proof, raintight *or* rainproof, smoketight *or* smokeproof, stormtight *or* stormproof, watertight *or* waterproof, windtight *or* windproof; water-repellant *or* -resistant

13 **impervious, impenetrable, impermeable; impassable,** unpassable; unpierceable, unperforable; **punctureproof,** nonpuncturable, holeproof

294 TEXTURE

<surface quality>

NOUNS 1 **texture,** surface texture; **surface; finish,** feel, touch; intertexture, contexture, constitution, consistency; **grain,** granular texture, fineness *or* coarseness of grain; **weave,** woof 740.3, wale; **nap,** pile, shag, nub, knub, protuberance 283; **pit,** pock, indentation 284.6; structure 266

2 **roughness** 288; irregularity; bumpiness, lumpiness; **coarseness, grossness, unrefinement,** coarse-grainedness; cross-grainedness; **graininess,** granularity, granulation, grittiness, grit; pockiness; hardness 1046

3 **smoothness** 287, **fineness, refinement,** fine-grainedness; **delicacy, daintiness;** filminess, gossameriness 1029.1; down, **downiness,** fluff, fluffiness, velvet, velvetiness, fuzz, fuzziness, peach fuzz, peachiness; pubescence; satin, satininess; silk, silkiness; softness 1047

VERBS 4 **coarsen; grain,** granulate; tooth, **roughen** 288.4; gnarl, knob; rumple, wrinkle; smooth 287.5, flatten

ADJS 5 **textural, textured,** -surfaced

6 **rough** 288.6, **coarse, gross, unrefined, coarse-grained;** cross-grained; grained, **grainy,** granular, granulated, gritty, gravelly, gravelish

7 **nappy,** pily, **shaggy,** hairy, hirsute; nubby *or* nubbly; bumpy, lumpy; studded, knobbed; pocked, pitted 284.17; woven, matted, ribbed, twilled, tweedy, woolly; fibrous

8 **smooth** 287.10; **fine, refined,** attenuate, attenuated, **fine-grained; delicate, dainty; finespun,** thin-spun, fine-drawn, wiredrawn; gauzy, filmy, gossamer, gossamery 1029.4, **downy,** fluffy, velvety, velutinous, fuzzy, pubescent; satin, satiny, silky

295 COVERING

NOUNS 1 <act of covering> **covering,** coverage, obduction; **coating,** cloaking; **screening,** shielding, hiding, curtaining, **veiling,** clouding, obscuring, befogging, fogging, fuzzing, masking, mantling, shrouding, shadowing, blanketing; blocking, blotting out, eclipse, eclipsing, occultation; **wrapping,** enwrapping, enwrapment, sheathing, envelopment; **overlaying,** overspreading, laying on *or* over, superimposition, superposition; superincumbence; upholstering, upholstery; plasterwork, stuccowork, brickwork, cementwork, pargeting; incrustation

2 **cover, covering,** coverage, covert, coverture, housing, hood, cowl, cowling, **shelter; screen,** shroud, shield, veil, pall, mantle, curtain, hanging, drape, drapery; **coat,** cloak, mask, guise; vestment 5.1; camouflage, shroud

3 **skin,** dermis; **cuticle; rind; flesh;** bare skin *or* flesh, the buff; integument, tegument 206.2, tegmen, tegmentum, testa; scab; **pelt, hide, coat, jacket, fell, fleece, fur, hair,** vair <heraldry>; feathers, plumage; **peel, peeling, rind; skin,** epicarp; **bark;** cork, phellum; cortex, cortical tissue, epidermis; periderm, phelloderm; peridium; dermatogen; protective coloring

4 **overlayer,** overlay; appliqué, **lap, overlap,** overlapping, imbrication; **flap,** fly, tentfly; shutter

5 **cover, lid, top, cap, screw-top;** operculum; stopper 293.4

6 **roof,** roofing, roofage, top, **housetop,** rooftop; roof-deck, roof garden, penthouse; roofpole, ridgepole, rooftree; shingles, slates, tiles; eaves; **ceiling,** *plafond* <Fr>, overhead; skylight, lantern, cupola, dome; widow's walk *or* captain's walk; canopy, awning, marquee

7 **umbrella,** gamp *or* brolly <Brit nf>, bumbershoot <nf>; **sunshade, parasol,** beach umbrella

8 **tent,** canvas; top, whitetop, round top, big top; tentage; tepee, wigwam

9 **rug, carpet,** floor cover *or* covering; carpeting, wall-to-wall carpet *or* carpeting; mat; drop cloth, ground cloth, groundsheet; **flooring,** floorboards, duckboards; **tiling; pavement,** pavé; tarpaulin

10 **blanket, coverlet,** coverlid <nf>, space blanket, cover, covers, **spread,** robe, buffalo robe, **afghan,** rug <Brit>; lap robe; **bedspread; bedcover;** counterpane, counterpin <nf>; comfort, **comforter, down comforter, duvet, continental quilt** <Brit>, **quilt,** feather bed, eiderdown; patchwork quilt; **bedding, bedclothes,** clothes; **linen,** bed linen; **sheet,** sheeting, bedsheet, fitted sheet, contour sheet, dust ruffle; **pillowcase,** pillow slip, case, slip, sham; duvet cover

11 horsecloth, **horse blanket;** caparison, housing; **saddle blanket,** saddlecloth

12 **blanket, coating,** coat; **veneer, facing,** veneering, revetment; pellicle, **film, scum,** skin, scale; slick, oil slick; varnish, enamel, lacquer, paint 35.8

13 **plating,** plate, cladding; nickel plate, silver plate, gold plate, copperplate, chromium plate, anodized

aluminum; electroplate, electroplating, electrocoating

14 **crust, incrustation** *or* encrustation, shell; piecrust, pastry shell; stalactite, stalagmite; scale, scab, eschar

15 **shell,** seashell, lorication, lorica, conch; test, testa, episperm, pericarp, elytron, scute, scutum; operculum; **armor,** mail, **shield; carapace,** plate, chitin, scale, scute; **protective covering,** cortex, thick skin *or* hide, elephant skin

16 **hull,** shell, pod, capsule, case, **husk, shuck;** cornhusk, corn shuck; bark, jacket; chaff, bran, palea; seed coat

17 **case,** casing, encasement; **sheath,** sheathing

18 **wrapper,** wrapping, gift wrapping, gift wrap, wrap; wrapping paper, tissue paper, waxed paper, aluminum foil, tin foil, plastic wrap, clingfilm <Brit>, cellophane; **binder,** binding; **bandage,** bandaging; **envelope,** envelopment; **jacket,** jacketing; dust jacket *or* cover

VERBS **19** **cover,** cover up; apply to, **put on,** lay on; **superimpose,** superpose; **lay over,** overlay; **spread over,** overspread; **clothe, cloak,** mantle, muffle, blanket, canopy, cope, cowl, hood, **veil,** curtain, **screen, shield,** screen off, mask, cloud, obscure, fog, befog, fuzz; block, eclipse, occult; film, film over, scum

20 **wrap,** enwrap, wrap up, wrap about *or* around; **envelop, sheathe;** surround, encompass, lap, smother, enfold, embrace, invest; shroud, enshroud; swathe, swaddle; **box, case,** encase, **crate,** pack, embox; containerize; **package,** encapsulate

21 **top, cap,** tip, crown; put the lid on, cork, stopper, plug; hood, hat, coif, bonnet; roof, roof in *or* over; ceil; dome, endome

22 **floor; carpet; pave,** causeway, cobblestone, flag, pebble; cement, concrete; **pave, surface,** pave over, repave, resurface; blacktop, tar, asphalt, metal <old>, macadamize

23 **face, veneer,** revet; **sheathe;** board, plank, weatherboard, clapboard, lath; shingle, shake; tile, stone, brick, slate; thatch; glass, glaze, fiberglass; paper, wallpaper; wall in *or* up

24 **coat,** spread on, **spread with;** smear, **smear on,** besmear, slap on, dab, daub, bedaub, plaster, beplaster; flow on, pour on; lay on, lay it on thick, slather; undercoat, prime; enamel, gild, gloss, lacquer; butter; tar

25 **plaster,** parget, stucco, cement, concrete, mastic, grout, mortar; face, line; roughcast, pebble-dash, spatter-dash

26 **plate,** chromium-plate, copperplate, gold-plate, nickel-plate, silver-plate; **electroplate, galvanize,** anodize

27 **crust, incrust,** encrust; loricate; effloresce; scab, scab over

28 **upholster,** overstuff

29 **re-cover,** reupholster, recap

30 **overlie,** lie over; **overlap,** lap, **lap over,** override, imbricate, jut, shingle; **extend over,** span, bridge, bestride, bestraddle, arch over, overarch, hang over, overhang

ADJS **31** **covered,** covert, under cover; **cloaked,** mantled, blanketed, muffled, canopied, coped, cowled, hooded, **shrouded, veiled,** clouded, obscured, fogged, fogged in; eclipsed, occulted, curtained, **screened,** screened-in, screened-off; shielded, masked; **housed;** tented, under canvas; roofed, roofed-in *or* -over, domed; walled, walled-in; **wrapped,** enwrapped, jacketed, **enveloped,** sheathed, swathed; **boxed, cased,** encased, encapsuled *or* encapsulated, **packaged; coated,** filmed, filmed-over, scummed; shelled, loricate, loricated; armored; ceiled; **floored; paved, surfaced;** plastered, stuccoed

32 **cutaneous,** cuticular; skinlike, skinny; skin-deep; **epidermal,** epidermic, dermal, dermic; ectodermal, ectodermic; endermic, endermatic; cortical; epicarpal; testaceous; hairy, furry 3.24; integumental, integumentary, tegumentary, tegumental, tegmental; vaginal; thecal

33 **plated,** chromium-plated, copperplated, gold-plated, nickel-plated, silver-plated; electroplated, galvanized, anodized

34 upholstered, overstuffed

35 **covering, coating;** cloaking, blanketing, shrouding, obscuring, **veiling, screening,** shielding, sheltering; wrapping, **enveloping,** sheathing

36 **overlying,** incumbent, superincumbent, superimposed; **overlapping,** lapping, shingled, equitant; imbricate, imbricated; spanning, bridging; overarched, overarching

PREPS **37** **on, upon, over,** o'er, **above, on top of**

296 LAYER

NOUNS **1** **layer,** thickness; **level, tier,** stage, story, floor, gallery, step, ledge, deck, row, landing; **stratum,** seam, *couche* <Fr>, vein, lode, belt, band, **bed, course,** measures; zone; shelf; **overlayer, superstratum,** overstory, topsoil, topcoat; **underlayer, substratum,** understratum, understory, underlay, undercoat; bedding

2 lamina, lamella; **sheet,** leaf, *feuille* <Fr>, foil; wafer, disk; **plate,** plating, cladding; covering 295, **coat,** coating, veneer, film, patina, scum, membrane, pellicle, sheathe, peel, skin, rind, hide; slick, oil slick; **slice,** cut, rasher, collop, sliver; **slab,** plank, deal <Brit>, slat, tablet, table; panel, pane;

fold, lap, flap, **ply,** plait; laminate; laminated glass, safety glass; laminated wood, plywood, layered fiberglass; liner

3 **flake,** flock, floccule, flocculus; **scale, scurf,** dandruff, squama; chip; shaving, paring, swarf

4 **stratification, layering, lamination,** lamellation; foliation; delamination, exfoliation; desquamation, furfuration; flakiness, scaliness

VERBS 5 **layer,** lay down, lay up, **stratify,** arrange in layers *or* levels *or* strata *or* tiers, **laminate;** shingle, sandwich; flake, scale; delaminate, desquamate, exfoliate; interface

ADJS 6 **layered,** in layers; **laminated,** laminate, laminous; lamellated, lamellate, lamellar, lamelliform; plated, coated; veneered, faced; two-ply, three-ply, etc; two-level, bilevel, three-level, trilevel, etc; one-story, single story, two-story, double-story, etc; **stratified,** stratiform, straticulate; foliated, foliaceous, leaflike; terraced, multistage

7 **flaky,** flocculent, floccose; **scaly,** scurfy, squamous, lentiginous, furfuraceous, lepidote; scabby, scabious, scabrous

WORD ELEMENTS 8 strati-, lamin-, lamino-, lamini-, lamell-, lamelli-

297 WEIGHT

NOUNS 1 **weight, heaviness, weightiness, ponderousness,** ponderosity, ponderability, leadenness, heftiness *and* heft <nf>; body weight, avoirdupois <nf>, fatness 257.8, beef *and* beefiness <nf>, heft, chunk; poundage, tonnage; deadweight, live weight; gross weight, gr wt; **net weight,** neat weight, nt wt, net, nett <Brit>; short-weight; underweight; overweight; overbalance, overweightage; **solemnity, gravity** 111.1, 580.1

2 onerousness, **burdensomeness, oppressiveness, deadweight, overburden, cumbersomeness,** cumbrousness; massiveness, massiness <old>, bulkiness 257.9, lumpishness, unwieldiness

3 <sports> bantamweight, featherweight, flyweight, heavyweight, light heavyweight, lightweight, middleweight, cruiser weight, welterweight; catchweight; fighting weight; jockey weight

4 **counterbalance** 900.4; makeweight; **ballast,** ballasting

5 <physics terms> **gravity, gravitation,** G, supergravity; specific gravity; gravitational field, gravisphere; gravitational pull; graviton; geotropism, positive geotropism, apogeotropism, negative geotropism; G suit, anti-G suit; **mass;** atomic weight, molecular weight, molar weight; quagma

6 **weight,** paperweight, letterweight; sinker, lead, plumb, plummet, bob; sash weight; sandbag

7 **burden,** burthen <old>, pressure, **oppression, deadweight;** burdening, saddling, charging, taxing; overburden, overburdening, overtaxing, overweighting, weighing *or* weighting down; charge, **load,** loading, lading, freight, cargo, bale, ballast; cumber, cumbrance, **encumbrance;** incubus; incumbency *or* superincumbency <old>; handicap, drag, millstone; surcharge, overload

8 <systems of weight> avoirdupois weight, troy weight, apothecaries' weight; atomic weight, molecular weight; **pound, ounce, gram,** etc, **unit of weight,** <see list>

9 **weighing,** hefting <nf>, balancing; weighing-in, weigh-in, weighing-out, weigh-out; **scale,** weighing instrument

VERBS 10 **weigh,** weight; **heft** <nf>, **balance,** weigh in the balance, strike a balance, hold the scales, put on the scales, lay in the scales; **counterbalance; weigh in,** weigh out; be heavy, weigh heavy, lie heavy, have weight, carry weight; **tip the scales,** turn *or* depress *or* tilt the scales, tip the balance

11 **weigh on** *or* **upon,** rest on *or* upon, bear on *or* upon, lie on, press, press down, press to the ground

12 **weight, weigh** *or* **weight down;** hang like a millstone; **ballast;** lead, sandbag

13 **burden,** burthen <old>, **load,** load down *or* up, lade, cumber, **encumber, charge, freight,** tax, handicap, hamper, saddle; **oppress, weigh one down, weigh on** *or* **upon, weigh heavy on,** bear *or* rest hard upon, lie hard *or* heavy upon, press hard upon, be an incubus to; **overburden,** overweight, overtax, **overload** 993.15

14 **outweigh,** overweigh, overweight, overbalance, **outbalance,** outpoise, overpoise

15 **gravitate, descend** 194.5, drop, plunge 367.6, precipitate, sink, settle, subside; tend, tend to go, **incline,** point, head, lead, lean

ADJS 16 **heavy, ponderous, massive,** massy, weighty, hefty <nf>, bulky, fat 257.18; **leaden,** heavy as lead; deadweight; heavyweight; overweight; **solemn, grave** 111.3, 580.8

17 **onerous, oppressive, burdensome,** incumbent *or* superincumbent, **cumbersome,** cumbrous; massive; lumpish, **unwieldy;** ponderous

18 **weighted, weighed** *or* **weighted down; burdened, oppressed, laden,** cumbered, **encumbered,** charged, loaded, fraught, freighted, taxed, saddled, hampered; **overburdened,** overloaded, overladen, overcharged, overfreighted, overfraught, overweighted, overtaxed; borne-down, sinking, foundering

19 **weighable,** ponderable; **appreciable,** palpable, sensible

20 **gravitational,** mass

ADVS 21 **heavily,** heavy, weightily, leadenly; burdensomely, onerously, oppressively; **ponderously,** cumbersomely, cumbrously

22 **units of weight** *or* **force** *or* **mass**

assay ton
carat *or* c
carat grain
centigram *or* cg
dead-weight ton
decagram *or* dkg
decigram *or* dg
displacement ton
dram *or* dram avoirdupois *or* dr
dram apothecaries' *or* dr ap
dyne
grain *or* gr
gram *or* g
gram equivalent *or* gram equivalent weight
gram molecule *or* gram-molecular weight
gross ton
hectogram *or* hg
hundredweight *or* cwt
international carat
kilogram *or* kilo *or* kg
kiloton
long hundredweight
long ton *or* lt
measurement ton
megaton
metric carat
metric ton *or* MT *or* t
microgram *or* mcg
milligram *or* mg
mole *or* mol
myriagram *or* myg
net ton
newton
ounce *or* ounce avoirdupois *or* oz *or* oz av
ounce apothecaries' *or* oz ap
ounce troy *or* oz t
pearl grain
pennyweight *or* dwt *or* pwt
pound *or* pound avoirdupois *or* lb *or* lb av
poundal
pound apothecaries' *or* lb ap
pound troy *or* lb t
quintal *or* q
scruple *or* s ap
shipping ton
short hundredweight
short ton *or* st
slug
sthene
stone *or* st
ton *or* tn

298 LIGHTNESS

NOUNS 1 **lightness, levity,** unheaviness, lack of weight; **weightlessness; buoyancy,** buoyance, floatability; levitation, ascent 193; **volatility; airiness,** ethereality; foaminess, frothiness, bubbliness, yeastiness; downiness, fluffiness, gossameriness 1029.1; softness, gentleness, delicacy, daintiness, tenderness; light touch, gentle touch; frivolity 923.1, 109.5

2 <comparisons> air, ether, feather, down, thistledown, flue, fluff, fuzz, sponge, gossamer, cobweb, fairy, straw, chaff, dust, mote, cork, chip, bubble, froth, foam, spume

3 **lightening,** easing, **easement, alleviation, relief;** disburdening, **disencumberment,** unburdening, **unloading,** unlading, unsaddling, untaxing, unfreighting; unballasting

4 **leavening, fermentation; leaven, ferment**

5 <indeterminacy of weight> **imponderableness** *or* imponderability, unweighableness *or* unweighability; imponderables, imponderabilia

VERBS 6 **lighten,** make light *or* lighter, reduce weight; unballast; **ease, alleviate, relieve; disburden, disencumber,** unburden, unload, unlade, off-load; **be light,** weigh lightly, have little weight, kick the beam; lose weight

7 **leaven,** raise, **ferment**

8 **buoy,** buoy up; float, float high, ride high, waft; **sustain, hold up,** bear up, uphold, upbear, uplift, upraise; refloat

9 **levitate, rise,** ascend 193.8; hover, **float**

ADJS 10 **light,** unheavy, imponderous, lightweight; **weightless; airy, ethereal; volatile;** frothy, foamy, spumy, spumous, spumescent, bubbly, yeasty; downy, feathery, fluffy, gossamery 1029.4; *soufflé* or *moussé* or *léger* <Fr>; light as air *or* a feather *or* gossamer, etc 298.2; **frivolous** 922.20, 109.15; insubstantial

11 **lightened, eased, unburdened,** disburdened, disencumbered, unencumbered, relieved, alleviated, out from under, breathing easier; mitigated

12 **light, gentle, soft, delicate,** dainty, tender, **easy**

13 **lightweight,** bantamweight, featherweight; underweight

14 **buoyant,** floaty, floatable; floating, supernatant

15 levitative, levitational

16 **lightening, easing,** alleviating, alleviative, alleviatory, relieving, disburdening, unburdening, disencumbering

17 **leavening,** raising, **fermenting,** fermentative, working; yeasty, barmy; enzymic, diastatic

18 **imponderable,** unweighable

299 RARITY

<lack of density>

NOUNS 1 **rarity,** rareness; **thinness, tenuousness,** tenuity; **subtlety,** subtility; **fineness,** slightness, flimsiness, **unsubstantiality** *or* **insubstantiality** 764; **ethereality,** airiness, immateriality, incorporeality, bodilessness, insolidity; **diffuseness,** dispersedness, scatter, scatteredness; "such stuff as dreams are made on"—Shakespeare

2 **rarefaction,** attenuation, subtilization, etherealization; **diffusion,** dispersion, scattering; **thinning,** thinning-out, dilution, adulteration, watering, watering-down; decompression

VERBS 3 **rarefy, attenuate,** thin, thin out; dilute, adulterate, water, water down, cut; subtilize, **etherealize; diffuse,** disperse, scatter; expand 259.4; decompress

ADJS 4 **rare,** rarefied; **subtle; thin,** thinned, dilute, attenuated, attenuate; thinned-out, diluted, adulterated, watered, watered-down, cut; **tenuous, fine,** flimsy, slight, **unsubstantial** *or*

insubstantial 764; **airy, ethereal,** vaporous, gaseous, windy; **diffused,** diffuse, dispersed, scattered; uncompact, uncompressed, decompressed

5 **rarefactive, rarefactional**

300 MEASUREMENT

NOUNS 1 **measurement, measure;** mensuration, measuring, **gauging;** admeasurement; metage; **estimation,** estimate, rough measure, approximation, ballpark figure <nf>; **quantification,** quantitation, quantization; **appraisal,** appraisement, **stocktaking, assay,** assaying; **assessment,** determination, rating, valuation, evaluation; assizement, assize, sizing up <nf>; **survey,** surveying; triangulation; **instrumentation;** telemetry, telemetering; metric system; metrication; English system of measurement; calibration, correction, computation, calculation

2 **measure,** measuring instrument, **meter, instrument, gauge,** barometer, **rule, yardstick,** measuring rod *or* stick, **standard,** norm, canon, **criterion,** test, touchstone, check, benchmark; rule of thumb; **pattern,** model, type, prototype; **scale,** graduated *or* calibrated scale; meter-reading, reading, readout, value, degree, quantity; parameter

3 **extent,** quantity 244, degree 245, size 257, distance 261, length 267, breadth 269; **weight** 297

4 <measures> US liquid measure, British imperial liquid measure, US dry measure, British imperial dry measure, apothecaries' measure, linear measure <see list>, square measure, circular measure, cubic measure, volume measure <see list>, area measure <see list>, surface measure, surveyor's measure, land measure, board measure

5 coordinates, Cartesian coordinates, rectangular coordinates, polar coordinates, cylindrical coordinates, spherical coordinates, equator coordinates; latitude, longitude; altitude, azimuth; declination, right ascension; ordinate, abscissa

6 **waterline;** watermark, tidemark, floodmark, **high-water mark;** load waterline, load line mark, Plimsoll mark *or* line

7 **measurability,** mensurability, computability, determinability, quantifiability

8 science of measurement, **mensuration,** metrology

9 **measurer,** meter, gauger; **geodesist,** geodetic engineer; **surveyor,** land surveyor, quantity surveyor; topographer, cartographer, mapmaker, oceanographer, chorographer; **appraiser, assessor;** assayer; valuer, valuator, evaluator; estimator; quantifier, actuary; timekeeper

VERBS 10 **measure, gauge, quantify,** quantitate, quantize, mete <old>, take the measure of, mensurate, triangulate, apply the yardstick to; **estimate,** make an approximation; **assess, rate, appraise, valuate, value,** evaluate, appreciate, prize; **assay;** size *or* size up <nf>, take the dimensions of; **weigh,** weigh up 297.10; survey; plumb, probe, sound, fathom; span, pace, step; calibrate, graduate, grade; divide; caliper; meter; read the meter, take a reading, check a parameter; compute, calculate, reckon

11 **measure off, mark off, lay off,** set off, rule off; **step off,** pace off *or* out; **measure out,** mark out, lay out; put at

ADJS 12 **measuring, metric, metrical,** mensural, mensurative, mensurational; valuative, valuational; **quantitative,** numerative; approximative, estimative; geodetic, geodetical, geodesic, geodesical, hypsographic, hypsographical, hypsometric, hypsometrical; topographic, topographical, chorographic, chorographical, cartographic, cartographical, oceanographic, oceanographical

13 **measured, gauged,** metered, **quantified;** quantitated, quantized; **appraised, assessed, valuated,** valued, rated, ranked; **assayed; surveyed,** plotted, mapped, admeasured, triangulated; known by measurement

14 **measurable,** mensurable, **quantifiable,** numerable, meterable, gaugeable, fathomable, **determinable,** computable, calculable; quantifiable, quantitatable, quantizable; estimable; assessable, appraisable, ratable; appreciable, perceptible, noticeable

ADVS 15 **measurably, appreciably, perceptibly, noticeably**

16 **linear measures**

absolute angstrom
Admiralty mile
angstrom *or* angstrom unit *or* a *or* å *or* A *or* Å
arpent
astronomical unit
block
board foot *or* bd ft
cable length
centimeter *or* cm
chain *or* Gunter's chain *or* chn
cubit
decameter *or* dkm
decimeter *or* dm
ell
em
en
fathom *or* fthm
fingerbreadth *or* finger
foot *or* ft
footstep
furlong *or* fur
hand
handbreadth *or* handsbreadth
hectometer *or* hm
inch *or* in
international angstrom
kilometer *or* km
land mile
league
light-year
line
link *or* li
meter *or* m
micron *or* µ
mil
mile *or* mi
millimeter *or* mm

millimicron *or* micromillimeter
myriameter *or* mym
nail
nautical mile *or* naut mi
pace
palm
parsec
perch
pica
point *or* pt
pole *or* p
rod *or* r
statute mile *or* stat mi
step
stride
wavelength
yard *or* yd

17 volume measures

barrel
bushel *or* bu
centiliter *or* cl
cord *or* cd
cubic foot *or* yard *or* etc
cubic meter
cup
decaliter *or* dkl
decastere *or* dks
deciliter *or* dl
drop
dry pint *or* quart *or* etc
fifth
finger
fluid ounce *or* fl oz
fluid dram *or* fl dr
gallon *or* gal
gill *or* gi
hectoliter *or* hl
hogshead *or* hhd
jeroboam
jigger
kiloliter *or* kl
liquid pint *or* quart *or* etc
liter *or* l
magnum
milliliter *or* ml
minim *or* min
peck *or* pk
pint *or* pt
pony
quart *or* qt
stere *or* s
tablespoon *or* tbs
teaspoon *or* tsp

18 area measures

acre *or* a *or* ac
are *or* a
arpent
centare *or* ca
hectare *or* ha
perch
pole *or* p
rood
section *or* sec
square inch *or* foot *or* mile *or* etc
square meter *or* kilometer *or* etc

301 YOUTH

NOUNS 1 **youth, youthfulness,** youngness, **juvenility,** juvenescence, tenderness, tender age, early years, school age, *jeunesse* <Fr>, prime of life, flower of life, salad days, springtime *or* springtide of life, seedtime of life, flowering time, bloom, florescence, budtime, younger days, school days "the very May-morn of his youth"—Shakespeare, "the summer of your youth"—Edward Moore, golden season of life, "the glad season of life"—Carlyle, heyday of youth *or* of the blood, young blood, "my green age"—Dylan Thomas

2 **childhood; boyhood; girlhood,** maidenhood *or* maidenhead; puppyhood, calfhood; subteens, preteens

3 **immaturity, undevelopment,** inexperience, **callowness, unripeness,** greenness, rawness, naiveté, sappiness, freshness, juiciness, dewiness; **minority,** juniority, infancy, nonage

4 **childishness,** childlikeness, **puerility; boyishness,** boylikeness; **girlishness,** girl-likeness, maidenliness

5 **infancy, babyhood,** the cradle, the crib, the nursery

6 **adolescence,** maturation, maturement, pubescence, **puberty;** nubility

7 **teens,** teen years *or* age, **awkward age,** age of growing pains <nf>

VERBS 8 make young, youthen, **rejuvenate,** reinvigorate; turn back the clock

ADJS 9 **young,** youngling, youngish, **juvenile,** juvenal, juvenescent, **youthful,** youthlike, in the flower *or* bloom of youth, blooming, florescent, flowering, dewy, fresh-faced; "towering in confidence of twenty-one"—Samuel Johnson; young-looking, well-preserved

10 **immature,** unadult; **inexperienced,** unseasoned, unfledged, new-fledged, fledgling, **callow, unripe,** ripening, unmellowed, **raw, green,** vernal, primaveral, dewy, juicy, sappy, budding, tender, virginal, intact, innocent, naive, ingenuous, **undeveloped,** growing, unformed, unlicked, wet *or* not dry behind the ears, unprepared; **minor,** underage, underaged

11 **childish,** childlike, kiddish <nf>, **puerile; boyish,** boylike, beardless; **girlish,** girl-like, maiden, maidenly; puppyish, puppylike, puplike, calflike, coltish, coltlike; knee-high

12 **infant, infantile,** infantine, **babyish,** baby; dollish, doll-like; kittenish, kittenlike; **newborn,** neonatal; in the cradle *or* crib *or* nursery, in swaddling clothes, in diapers, in nappies <Brit>, in arms, at the breast, tied to mother's apron strings

13 **adolescent,** pubescent, nubile, marriageable

14 **teen-age,** teen-aged, teenish, **in one's teens;** sweet sixteen <nf>

15 **junior,** Jr; **younger,** puisne

302 YOUNGSTER

NOUNS 1 **youngster,** young person, **youth, juvenile,** youngling, young'un <nf>, juvenal <old>; **stripling,** slip, sprig, sapling; fledgling; hopeful, young hopeful; **minor,** infant; **adolescent,** pubescent; **teenager,** teener, teenybopper <nf>, young adult; junior, younger, youngest, baby

2 **young people, youth,** young, **younger generation,** rising *or* new generation, baby boomers *or* boomers, Generation X, young blood, young fry <nf>, *ragazze* <Ital>; **children,** tots, childkind; small fry *and* **kids** *and* **little kids** *and* little guys <nf>; boyhood, girlhood; babyhood

3 **child;** nipper, **kid** *and* kiddy *and* kiddo *and* kiddie <nf>, **little one,** little fellow *or* guy, little

bugger <nf>, shaver *and* little shaver <nf>, little squirt <nf>, **tot, little tot,** wee tot, pee-wee, tad *or* little tad, tyke, mite, chit <nf>, innocent, little innocent, moppet, poppet; darling, cherub, lamb, lambkin, kitten, **offspring** 561.3

4 **brat, urchin; minx, imp,** puck, elf, gamin, little monkey, **whippersnapper,** young whippersnapper, *enfant terrible* <Fr>, little terror, holy terror; spoiled brat; snotnose kid <nf>; juvenile delinquent, JD <nf>, punk *and* punk kid <nf>

5 **boy, lad,** laddie, **youth,** manchild, manling, young man, *garçon* <Fr>, *muchacho* <Sp>, schoolboy, schoolkid <nf>, fledgling, hobbledehoy; fellow 76.5; pup, puppy, whelp, cub, colt; master; sonny, sonny boy; bud *and* buddy <nf>; bub *and* bubba <nf>; buck, young buck; schoolboy

6 **girl,** girlie <nf>, **maid, maiden, lass,** girlchild, **lassie,** young thing, young creature, young lady, damsel in distress, **damsel,** damoiselle, demoiselle, *jeune fille* <Fr>, *mademoiselle* <Fr>, *muchacha* <Sp>, miss, missy, little missy, slip, wench <dial *or* nf>, colleen <Ir>

7 <nf terms> **gal,** dame, **chick,** tomato, **babe** *or* baby, **broad,** frail, **doll,** skirt, jill, chit, cutie, filly, heifer; teenybopper *and* weenybopper <nf>

8 **schoolgirl,** schoolmaid, schoolmiss, junior miss, subteen, subteener; subdebutante, subdeb <nf>; bobbysoxer <nf>, **tomboy,** hoyden, romp; piece <nf>, nymphet; virgin, *virgo intacta* <L>

9 **infant, baby, babe,** babe in arms, little darling *or* angel *or* doll *or* cherub, bouncing baby, puling infant, mewling infant, babykins <nf>, baby bunting; papoose, *bambino* <Ital>; **toddler; suckling,** nursling, fosterling, weanling; neonate; yearling, yearold; premature baby, preemie <nf>, incubator baby; preschooler; crumbcrusher *and* -cruncher *and* -grinder *and* -snatcher; rug rat *and* carpet rat *and* rug ape *and* carpet ape *and* curtain-climber <nf>

10 <animals> yearling, **fledgling,** birdling, nestling; **chick,** chicky, chickling; **pullet,** fry, fryer; **duckling;** gosling, cygnet; **kitten,** kit, catling; **pup,** puppy, whelp; **cub; calf,** dogie, weaner; **colt,** foal, filly; piglet, pigling, shoat; **lamb,** lambkin; kid, yeanling; fawn; **tadpole,** polliwog; litter, nest, brood, clutch, spawn, farrow

11 <plants> **sprout, seedling,** set; sucker, shoot, slip, offshoot; **twig,** sprig, scion, sapling

12 <insects> **larva, chrysalis,** aurelia, **cocoon,** pupa, grub; nymph, nympha; wriggler, wiggler; caterpillar, maggot, grub

303 AGE
<time of life>

NOUNS 1 **age,** years, "the measure of my days"—Bible; time *or* stage of life; lifetime, lifespan, life expectancy, timespan, longevity; seven ages of man: infancy, childhood, youth, adolescence, adulthood, middle age, maturity, old age, senility

2 **maturity, adulthood, majority,** adultness, grown-upness, maturation, matureness, full growth, mature age, legal age, voting age, driving age, drinking age, *legalis homo* <L>; age of consent; ripeness, ripe age, riper years, full age *or* growth *or* bloom, flower of age, **prime, prime of life,** age of responsibility, age *or* years of discretion, age of matured powers; **manhood,** man's estate, virility, *toga virilis* <L>, masculinity, maleness, manliness; **womanhood,** womanness, femininity, femaleness, womanliness

3 **seniority, eldership,** deanship, primogeniture

4 **middle age,** middle life, meridian of life, the middle years, the wrong side of forty, the dangerous age, prime of life; change of life, menopause, climacteric, midlife crisis

5 **old age, oldness,** eld <old>, **elderliness,** senectitude, senescence, agedness, advanced age *or* years; superannuation, pensionable age, retirement age, age of retirement; **ripe old age,** the golden years, advanced years, senior citizenship, hoary age, hoariness, gray *or* white hairs, grayness; **decline of life,** declining years, youth deficiency, the vale of years, threescore years and ten, "an incurable disease," "the downward slope"—both Seneca, "slow-consuming age"—Thomas Gray, "a tyrant, which forbids the pleasures of youth on pain of death"—La Rochefoucauld, "old age is fifteen years older than I"—Bernard Baruch, "the arctic regions of our lives"—Longfellow, the shady side <nf>; "the silver livery of advised age"—Shakespeare, "a crown of glory"—Bible; sunset *or* twilight *or* evening *or* autumn *or* winter of one's days; **decrepitude,** ricketiness, infirm old age, infirmity of age, infirmity, debility, caducity, feebleness; dotage, anecdotage, second childhood; senility 922.10, anility; **longevity,** long life, length of years, green *or* hale old age

6 **maturation, development,** growth, ripening, blooming, blossoming, flourishing; **mellowing,** seasoning, tempering; **aging,** senescence

7 **change of life, menopause,** climacteric, grand climacteric

8 **geriatrics,** gerontology, geriatric medicine

VERBS 9 **mature, grow up,** grow, **develop, ripen,** flower, flourish, bloom, blossom; fledge, leave the nest, put up one's hair, not be in pigtails, put on long pants; **come of age,** come to maturity, attain majority, **reach one's majority,** reach twenty-one, reach voting age, reach the age of consent, reach manhood *or* womanhood, write oneself a man, come to *or* into man's estate, put on long trousers *or* pants, assume the toga virilis, come into years of discretion, be in the prime of life, cut one's wisdom teeth *or* eyeteeth <nf>, have sown one's wild oats, settle down; **mellow,** season, temper

10 **age, grow old,** senesce, get on *or* along, **get on** *or* **along in years,** grow *or* have whiskers, be over the hill <nf>, turn gray *or* white; **decline,** wane, fade, fail, sink, waste away; **dodder,** totter, shake; wither, wrinkle, shrivel, wizen; **live to a ripe old age,** cheat the undertaker <nf>; be in one's dotage *or* second childhood

11 **have had one's day,** have seen one's day *or* best days, **have seen better days; show one's age,** show marks of age, have one foot in the grave

ADJS **12** **adult, mature, of age,** out of one's teens, big, grown, **grown-up;** old enough to know better; **marriageable,** of marriageable age, marriable, nubile

13 **mature, ripe,** ripened, of full *or* ripe age, **developed,** fully developed, well-developed, **full-grown,** full-fledged, fully fledged, full-blown, in full bloom, in one's prime; **mellow** *or* mellowed, seasoned, tempered, aged

14 **middle-aged,** mid-life, *entre deux âges* <Fr>, fortyish, matronly

15 **past one's prime,** senescent, on the shady side <nf>, overblown, overripe, of a certain age, over the hill <nf>; "fall'n into the sere, the yellow leaf"—Shakespeare

16 **aged, elderly, old,** grown old in years, along *or* up *or* advanced *or* on in years, years old, advanced, advanced in life, **at an advanced age, ancient,** geriatric, gerontic; **venerable,** old as Methuselah *or* as God *or* as the hills; patriarchal; hoary, hoar, **gray,** white, gray- *or* white-headed, gray- *or* white-haired, gray- *or* white-crowned, gray- *or* white-bearded, gray *or* white with age; wrinkled, prune-faced <nf>; wrinkly, with crow's feet, marked with the crow's foot

17 **aging,** growing old, senescent, **getting on** *or* **along,** getting on *or* along *or* up in years, not as young as one used to be, long in the tooth; **declining,** sinking, waning, fading, wasting, doting

18 **stricken in years, decrepit, infirm,** weak, debilitated, feeble, geriatric, timeworn, the worse for wear, rusty, moth-eaten *or* mossbacked <nf>, fossilized, wracked *or* ravaged with age, run to seed; **doddering,** doddery, doddered, tottering, tottery, rickety, shaky, palsied; on one's last legs, with one foot in the grave; **wizened,** crabbed, **withered,** shriveled, like a prune, mummylike, papery-skinned; **senile** 922.23, anile

304 ADULT OR OLD PERSON

NOUNS **1** **adult, grownup,** mature man *or* woman, grown man *or* woman, big boy *and* big girl <nf>; **man, woman;** major, *legalis homo* <L>; no chicken *and* no spring chicken <nf>

2 **old man, elder, oldster** <nf>; golden-ager, senior citizen, geriatric, patron; old chap, old party, **old gentleman,** old gent <nf>, old codger <nf>, geezer *and* old geezer <nf>, gramps <nf>, gaffer, old duffer <nf>, old dog *and* old-timer <nf>, dotard, veteran, pantaloon, man of the world; **patriarch,** graybeard *or* greybeard, reverend *or* venerable sir; grandfather, grandsire; Father Time, Methuselah, Nestor, Old Paar; sexagenarian, septuagenarian, octogenarian, nonagenarian, centenarian; "a paltry thing, a tattered coat upon a stick"—Yeats

3 **old woman, old lady,** dowager, granny, old granny, dame, **grandam,** matron, matriarch, trot *and* old trot <nf>; old dame *and* hen *and* girl <nf>; old bag *and* bat *and* battleax *and* witch <nf>; **crone,** hag, witch, beldam, frump <nf>, old wife; grandmother; woman of the world

4 <old people> the old, older generation, seniors, retirees, over-the-hill gang <nf>; Darby and Joan, Baucis and Philemon

5 **senior,** Sr, *senex* <L>, **elder,** older; dean, *doyen* <Fr>, *doyenne* <Fr>; father, sire; firstling, first-born, **eldest,** oldest

VERBS **6** **mature** 303.9; grow old 303.10

ADJS **7** **mature** 303.12; middle-aged 303.14; aged 303.16, older 842.19

305 ORGANIC MATTER

NOUNS **1** **organic matter,** animate *or* living matter, all that lives, living nature, organic nature, organized matter; **biology** 1068; **flesh, tissue,** fiber, brawn, plasm; **flora and fauna,** plant and animal life, animal and vegetable kingdom, biosphere, biota, ecosphere, noosphere

2 **organism,** organization, organic being, life-form, form of life, **living being** *or* **thing,** being, creature, created being, **individual,** genetic individual, physiological individual, morphological individual; zoon, zooid; virus; aerobic organism, anaerobic organism; heterotrophic organism, autotrophic organism; microbe, microorganism

3 biological classification, taxonomy, kingdom, phylum, etc

4 **cell,** bioplast, cellule; procaryotic cell, eucaryotic cell; plant cell, animal cell; germ cell, somatic cell; corpuscle; unicellularity, multicellularity; germ layer, ectoderm, endoderm, mesoderm; **protoplasm,** energid; trophoplasm; chromatoplasm; germ plasm; cytoplasm; ectoplasm, endoplasm; cellular tissue, reticulum; plasmodium, coenocyte, syncytium

5 organelle; plastid; chromoplast, plastosome, chloroplast; mitochondrion; Golgi apparatus; ribosome; spherosome, microbody; vacuole; central apparatus, cytocentrum; centroplasm; centra body, microcentrum; centrosome; centrosphere; centriole, basal body; pili, cilia, flagella, spindle fibers; aster; kinoplasm; plasmodesmata; cell membrane

6 metaplasm; cell wall, cell plate; structural polysaccharide; bast, phloem, xylem, xyl- *or* xylo-, cellulose, chitin

7 **nucleus,** cell nucleus; macronucleus, meganucleus; micronucleus; nucleolus; plasmosome; karyosome, chromatin strands; nuclear envelope; chromatin, karyotin; basichromatin, heterochromatin, oxychromatin

8 **chromosome;** allosome; heterochromosome, sex chromosome, idiochromosome; W chromosome; X chromosome, accessory chromosome, monosome; Y chromosome; Z chromosome; euchromosome, autosome; homologous chromosomes; univalent chromosome, chromatid; centromere; gene-string, chromonema; genome; chromosome complement; chromosome number, diploid number, haploid number; polyploidy

9 **genetic material, gene;** allele; operon; cistron, structural gene, regulator gene, operator gene; altered gene; deoxyribonucleic acid *or* **DNA;** DNA double helix, superhelix *or* supercoil; nucleotide, codon; ribonucleic acid *or* **RNA;** messenger RNA, mRNA; transfer RNA, tRNA; ribosomal RNA; anticodon; gene pool, gene complex, gene flow, genetic drift; genotype, biotype; **hereditary character,** heredity 560.6; genetic counseling; genetic screening; **recombinant DNA technology,** gene mapping, gene splicing; gene transplantation, gene transfer, germline insertion; intronizing, intron *or* intervening sequence; exonizing, exon; **genetic engineering,** genetic fingerprinting; designer gene

10 **gamete, germ cell,** reproductive cell; macrogamete, megagamete; microgamete; planogamete; genetoid; gamone; gametangium, gametophore; gametophyte; germ plasm, idioplasm

11 **sperm, spermatozoa, seed, semen,** jism *or* gism *and* come *or* cum *and* scum *and* spunk <nf>; seminal *or* spermatic fluid, milt; **sperm cell,** male gamete; spermatozoon, spermatozoid, antherozoid; antheridium; spermatium, spermatiophore *or* spermatophore, spermagonium; pollen; spermatogonium; androcyte, spermatid, spermatocyte

12 **ovum, egg, egg cell,** female gamete, oösphere; oöcyte; oögonium; ovicell, oöecium; ovule; stirp; ovulation; donor egg

13 **spore;** microspore; macrospore, megaspore; swarm spore, zoospore, planospore; spore mother cell, sporocyte; zygospore; sporocarp, cystocarp; basidium; sporangium, megasporangium, microsporangium; sporocyst; gonidangium; sporogonium, sporophyte; sporophore; sorus

14 **embryo,** zygote, oösperm, oöspore, blastula; *Anlage* <Ger>; **fetus,** germ, germen <old>, rudiment; **larva,** nymph

15 **egg;** ovule; bird's egg; **roe,** fish eggs, caviar, spawn; **yolk,** yellow, vitellus; white, **egg white,** albumen, glair; eggshell

16 **cell division; mitosis;** amitosis; metamitosis, eumitosis; endomitosis, promitosis; haplomitosis, mesomitosis; karyomitosis; karyokinesis; interphase, prophase, metaphase, anaphase, telophase, diaster, cytokinesis; **meiosis**

ADJS 17 **organic,** organismic; organized; **animate, living,** vital, zoetic; **biological,** biotic; physiological

18 **protoplasmic,** plasmic, plasmatic; **genetic,** genic, hereditary

19 **cellular,** cellulous; unicellular, multicellular; corpuscular

20 gametic, gamic, sexual; **spermatic,** spermic, **seminal,** spermatozoal, spermatozoan, spermatozoic; sporal, sporous, sporoid; sporogenous

21 **nuclear,** nucleal, nucleary, nucleate; multinucleate; nucleolar, nucleolate, nucleolated; **chromosomal;** chromatinic; haploid, diploid, polyploid

22 **embryonic, germinal,** germinant, germinative, germinational; larval; fetal; in the bud; germiparous

23 **egglike,** ovicular, eggy; ovular; albuminous, albuminoid; yolked, yolky; oviparous

306 LIFE

NOUNS 1 **life, living, vitality,** being alive, having life, animation, animate existence; breath; liveliness, animal spirits, vivacity, spriteliness; long life, longevity; life expectancy, life-span; viability; lifetime 827.5; immortality 828.3; birth 1; existence 761

2 "a little gleam of Time between two eternities"—

Carlyle, “a perpetual instruction in cause and effect”—Emerson, “a flame that is always burning itself out”—G B Shaw, “a long lesson in humility”—J M Barrie, “a play of passion”—Sir W Raleigh

3 **life force, soul,** spirit, indwelling spirit, force of life, living force, *vis vitae* or *vis vitalis* <L>, **vital force** *or* energy, animating force *or* power *or* principle, inspiriting force *or* power *or* principle, archeus, élan vital, impulse of life, vital principle, **vital spark** *or* **flame,** spark of life, divine spark, life principle, vital spirit, vital fluid, anima, consciousness; **breath,** life breath, **breath of life,** breath of one's nostrils, divine breath, life essence, essence of life, pneuma; prana, atman, jivatma, jiva; blood, **lifeblood,** heartblood, heart's blood; **heart,** heartbeat, beating heart; seat of life; growth force, bathmism; **life process;** biorhythm, biological clock, life cycle

4 **the living,** the living and breathing, all animate nature, the quick; the quick and the dead

5 living being, human being, living person, entity, living soul, living thing; life on earth; survivor; the quick

6 life cycle, lifetime, longevity, life expectancy

7 vivification, vitalization, animation, quickening

8 biosphere, ecosphere, noosphere; biochore, biotype, biocycle

VERBS 9 **live,** be alive *or* animate *or* vital, have life, exist 761.8, be, breathe, respire, live and breathe, fetch *or* draw breath, draw the breath of life, walk the earth, subsist

10 **come to life,** come into existence *or* being, come into the world, see the light, be incarnated, **be born** *or* begotten *or* conceived; quicken; **revive, come to,** come alive, come around, regain consciousness, show signs of life; **awake, awaken;** rise again, live again, rise from the grave, resurge, resurrect, resuscitate, reanimate, return to life

11 **vivify, vitalize, energize, animate, quicken,** inspirit, invigorate, enliven, imbue *or* endow with life, give birth to, give life to, put life *or* new life into, breathe life into, give a new lease on life, bring to life, bring *or* call into existence *or* being; conceive; give birth, reproduce

12 **keep alive,** feed, nourish, provide for, keep body and soul together, endure, survive, persist, last, last out, hang on, hang in <nf>, be spared, come through, continue, carry on, have nine lives; support life; cheat death

ADJS 13 **living, alive,** having life, live, very much alive, alive and well, alive and kicking <nf>, conscious, breathing, quick <old>, **animate,** animated, **vital,** viable, zoetic, instinct with life, imbued *or* endowed with life, vivified, enlivened, inspirited; in the flesh, among the living, in the land of the living, on this side of the grave, still with us, still breathing, above-ground, incarnate; existent 761.13; long-lived, tenacious of life; capable of life *or* survival, viable

14 **life-giving,** animating, animative, quickening, vivifying, energizing

307 DEATH

NOUNS 1 **death, dying,** somatic death, clinical death, biological death, abiosis, **decease, demise;** brain death; perishing, release, **passing away,** passing, passing over, “crossing the bar”—Tennyson, leaving life, making an end, departure, parting, going, going off *or* away, exit, ending, **end** 819, end of life, cessation of life, end of the road *or* line <nf>; **loss of life,** no life, ebb of life, expiration, expiry, **dissolution, extinction,** bane, annihilation, extinguishment, quietus; doom, crack of doom, summons of death, final summons, sentence of death, death knell, knell; **sleep, rest,** eternal rest *or* sleep, last sleep, last rest; **grave** 309.16; reward, debt of nature, last debt; last muster, last roundup, curtains <nf>; jaws of death, hand *or* finger of death, shadow *or* shades of death; rigor mortis; near-death experience *or* NDE; the beyond, the other side, the Great Divide

2 “the journey's end,” “the undiscovered country from whose bourn no traveler returns,”—both Shakespeare, “that dreamless sleep”—Byron, “a debt we all must pay”—Euripides, “the sleeping partner of life”—Horace Smith, “kind Nature's signal of retreat”—Samuel Johnson, “a little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to sleep”—Bible, “the big sleep”—Raymond Chandler

3 <personifications and symbols> **Death,** “Black Death”—Ovid, “Pale Death”—Horace, **Grim Reaper,** Reaper; pale horse, pale rider; angel of death, death's bright angel, Azrael; scythe *or* sickle of Death; **skull,** death's-head, grinning skull, crossbones, skull and crossbones; *memento mori* <L>; white cross; great leveler, thief in the night, Last Summoner; shadow of death, dance of death

4 river of death, Styx, Stygian shore, Acheron; Jordan, Jordan's bank; “valley of the shadow of death”—Bible; Heaven 681; Hell 682

5 early death, early grave, **untimely end,** premature death; sudden death; stroke of death, death stroke; deathblow

6 **violent death;** killing 308; suffocation, smothering, smotheration <nf>; asphyxiation; choking, choke, strangulation, strangling; drowning, watery grave; fatal accident, accidental death; starvation; liver death, serum death; megadeath; suicide, assisted

suicide; murder, assassination; capital punishment, execution

7 **natural death;** easy *or* quiet *or* peaceful death *or* end, euthanasia, blessed *or* welcome release; stillbirth

8 dying day, deathday, "the supreme day and the inevitable hour"—Virgil; final *or* fatal *or* last hour, dying hour, running-out of the sands, deathtime

9 moribundity, extremity, last *or* final extremity; **deathbed;** deathwatch; death struggle, agony, last agony, death agony, death throes, throes of death; last breath *or* gasp, dying breath; **death rattle,** death groan; making an end, passing, passing away, crossing the Styx; extreme unction, last rites

10 **swan song,** *chant du cygne* <Fr>, death song, final words, last words

11 **bereavement** 473.1

12 **deathliness,** deathlikeness, deadliness; **weirdness, eeriness, uncanniness,** unearthliness; ghostliness, ghostlikeness; **ghastliness, grisliness, gruesomeness,** macabreness; paleness, haggardness, wanness, luridness, pallor; cadaverousness, corpselikeness; *facies Hippocratica* <L>, Hippocratic face *or* countenance, mask of death

13 **death rate,** death toll; **mortality,** mortalness, mortality rate; extinction, dissolution, abiosis; transience 828; mutability 853.1

14 **obituary,** obit <nf>, death notice, necrology, necrologue; register of deaths, roll of the dead, death roll, mortuary roll, bill of mortality; fatality list, casualty list; martyrology; death toll, body count

15 terminal case; **dying**

16 **corpse,** dead body, dead man *or* woman, dead person, **cadaver, carcass, body;** *corpus delicti* <L>; **stiff** <nf>; **the dead,** the defunct, **the deceased,** the departed, the loved one; **decedent,** the late lamented; **remains,** mortal *or* organic remains, carrion, bones, skeleton, dry bones, relics, reliquiae; dust, ashes, earth, clay, tenement of clay; **carrion,** crowbait, food for worms; **mummy,** mummification; embalmed corpse

17 **dead,** the majority, the great majority; one's fathers, one's ancestors; the choir invisible

18 **autopsy, postmortem, inquest,** postmortem examination, ex post facto examination, necropsy, necroscopy; medical examiner, coroner, pathologist, mortality committee

VERBS 19 **die, decease, succumb, expire, perish,** be taken by death, up and die <nf>, cease to be *or* live, part, depart, quit this world, make one's exit, go, go the way of all flesh, go out, pass, pass on *or* over, **pass away, meet one's death** *or* **end** *or* **fate,** end one's life *or* days, depart this life, "shuffle off this mortal coil"—Shakespeare, put off mortality, **lose one's life,** fall, be lost, relinquish *or* surrender one's life, resign one's life *or* being, **give up the ghost,** yield the ghost *or* spirit, yield one's breath, take one's last breath, breathe one's last, stop breathing, fall asleep, close one's eyes, take one's last sleep, pay the debt of *or* to nature, go out with the ebb, "go the way of all earth"—Bible, return to dust *or* the earth

20 <nf terms> **croak,** go west, kick the bucket, kick in, pop off, conk off, conk out, cop it, drop off, step off, go to the wall, go home feet first, knock off, pipe off, kick off, shove off, bow out, pass out, peg out, push up daisies, go for a burton <Brit>, belly up, go belly up, bite the dust, take the last count; flatline; check out, check in, cash in, hand *or* pass *or* cash in one's checks *or* chips; turn up one's toes; slip one's cable; buy the farm *or* the ranch, farm, have one's time *and* have it *and* buy it <Brit>

21 **meet one's Maker,** go to glory, go to kingdom come <nf>, go to the happy hunting grounds, go to *or* reach a better place *or* land *or* life *or* world, go to one's rest *or* reward, go home, go home feet first <nf>, go to one's last home, go to one's long account, go over to *or* join the majority *or* great majority, **be gathered to one's fathers,** join one's ancestors, join the angels, join the choir invisible, die in the Lord, go to Abraham's bosom, pass over Jordan, "walk through the valley of the shadow of death"—Bible, cross the Stygian ferry, give an obolus to Charon; awake to life immortal, "put on immortality"—Bible

22 **drop dead, fall dead,** fall down dead; come to an untimely end; predecease

23 die in harness, die with one's boots on, make a good end, die fighting, die in the last ditch, die like a man

24 die a natural death; die a violent death, be killed; **starve,** famish; smother, **suffocate;** asphyxiate; choke, strangle; **drown,** go to a watery grave, go to Davy Jones's locker <nf>; catch one's death, catch one's death of cold

25 **lay down** *or* **give one's life for one's country, die for one's country,** *"pro patria mori"*—Horace, make the supreme sacrifice, do one's bit

26 be dying, be moribund, be terminal; die out, become extinct

27 be dead, be no more, sleep *or* be asleep with the Lord, sleep with one's fathers *or* ancestors; lie in the grave, lie in Abraham's bosom <nf>

28 **bereave;** leave, leave behind; orphan, widow

ADJS 29 **deathly, deathlike,** deadly; **weird, eerie, uncanny,** unearthly; ghostly, ghostlike; **ghastly, grisly, gruesome, macabre;** pale, deathly pale, wan, lurid, blue, livid, haggard; **cadaverous,** corpselike; mortuary

30 **dead, lifeless,** breathless, without life, inanimate 1055.5, exanimate, without vital functions; **deceased, demised, defunct,** croaked <nf>, departed, departed this life, destitute of life, **gone, passed on,** passed away, gone the way of all flesh, gone west <nf>, extinct, gone before, long gone, dead and gone, done for <nf>, dead and done for <nf>, no more, finished <nf>, taken off *or* away, released, fallen, bereft of life, gone for a burton <Brit nf>; **at rest,** resting easy <nf>, still, out of one's misery; **asleep,** sleeping, reposing; asleep in Jesus, with the Lord, asleep *or* dead in the Lord; **called home,** out of the world, gone to a better world *or* place *or* land, gone but not forgotten, launched into eternity, gone to glory, taken *or* called by God, at the Pearly Gates, in Abraham's bosom, joined the choir invisible, gone to kingdom come <nf>, with the saints, sainted, numbered with the dead; in the grave, deep-sixed <nf>, six feet under *and* pushing up daisies <nf>; carrion, food for worms; martyred; death-struck, death-stricken, smitten with death; stillborn, dead on arrival, DOA; late, late lamented

31 **stone-dead;** dead as a doornail *and* dead as a dodo *and* dead as a herring *and* dead as mutton <nf>; cold, stone-cold, "as cold as any stone"—Shakespeare, stiff <nf>

32 **drowned,** in a watery grave *or* bier, in Davy Jones's locker

33 **dying, terminal,** expiring, going, slipping, slipping away, sinking, sinking fast, fading, low, despaired of, given up, given up for dead, not long for this world, hopeless, bad, **moribund,** near death, deathlike, perishing, doomed, near one's end, at the end of one's rope <nf>, hanging by a thread, done for <nf>, at the point of death, **at death's door,** at the portals of death, *in articulo mortis* <L>, *in extremis* <L>, in the jaws of death, facing *or* in the face of death; **on one's last legs** <nf>, half-dead, with one foot in the grave, tottering on the brink of the grave; on one's deathbed; at the last gasp; in critical condition, mortally ill, terminal; nonviable, unviable, incapable of life

34 **mortal, perishable,** subject to death, ephemeral, transient 828.7, mutable 854.6

35 **bereaved,** bereft, deprived; widowed; orphan, **orphaned,** parentless, fatherless, motherless

36 **postmortem,** postmortal, postmortuary, postmundane, post-obit, postobituary, **posthumous**

ADVS 37 **deathly, deadly**; to the death, *à la mort* <Fr>

PHRS 38 one's hour is come, one's days are numbered, one's race is run, one's doom is sealed, life hangs by a thread, one's number is up, Death knocks at the door, Death stares one in the face, the sands of life are running out

308 KILLING

NOUNS 1 **killing** <see list>, **slaying, slaughter, dispatch, extermination, destruction, murder,** destruction of life, taking of life, death-dealing, dealing of death, bane; kill; **bloodshed,** bloodletting, blood, gore, flow of blood; mercy killing, euthanasia, negative *or* passive euthanasia; ritual murder *or* killing, immolation, sacrifice, religious sacrifice, crucifixion, martyrdom; *auto-da-fé* <Sp, literally, act of faith>, martyrdom, martyrization; lynching; stoning, lapidation; defenestration; braining; shooting, drive-by shooting; poisoning; execution 604.7; mass killing, biocide, ecocide, genocide; Holocaust; mass murder

2 **homicide, manslaughter; negligent homicide, unlawful killing; murder,** bloody murder <nf>, first-degree murder, second-degree murder, capital murder; serial killing; hit *and* bump-off *and* bumping-off *and* rubbing out *and* blowing away *and* wasting <nf>, gangland-style execution, contract murder; kiss of death; foul play; **assassination;** terrorist killing; crime of passion; removal, elimination; liquidation, purge, purging; thuggery, thuggism, thuggee; justifiable homicide

3 **butchery,** butchering, **slaughter,** shambles, occision, slaughtering, hecatomb, holocaust

4 **carnage, massacre, bloodbath, decimation,** saturnalia of blood; **mass murder, mass destruction,** mass extermination, wholesale murder, pogrom, race-murder, genocide, race extermination, ethnic cleansing, **the Holocaust,** the final solution, Roman holiday

5 **suicide,** autocide, self-murder, self-homicide, self-destruction, self-slaughter, death by one's own hand, *felo-de-se* <L>, self-immolation, self-sacrifice; slashing one's wrists, **disembowelment,** ritual suicide, self-immolation, *hara-kiri* and *seppuku* <Japan>, suttee, sutteeism, kamikaze; car of Jagannath *or* Juggernaut; mass suicide, race suicide, suicide pact

6 **suffocation,** smothering, smotheration <nf>, **asphyxiation,** asphyxia; **strangulation,** strangling, burking, throttling, stifling, garrote, garroting; **choking,** choke; **drowning**

7 **execution,** capital punishment, death penalty, legalized killing, judicial murder, judicial execution

8 **fatality,** fatal accident, violent death, **casualty,** disaster, calamity; DOA *or* dead-on-arrival

9 **deadliness, lethality,** mortality, fatality; **malignance**

or malignancy, malignity, **virulence, perniciousness,** banefulness

10 **deathblow,** death stroke, final stroke, fatal *or* mortal *or* lethal blow, *coup de grâce* <Fr>

11 **killer, slayer, slaughterer, butcher,** bloodshedder; massacrer; **manslayer, homicide, murderer,** mankiller, bloodletter, man of blood, Cain; **assassin,** assassinator; **cutthroat,** thug, desperado, bravo, gorilla <nf>, apache, gunman; professional killer, contract killer, hired killer, hit man *or* button man *or* gun *or* trigger man *or* torpedo *or* gunsel <nf>; **hatchet man;** poisoner; strangler, hangman, garroter, burker; cannibal, maneater, anthropophagus; headhunter; mercy killer, euthanasiast; thrill killer, psychopath, homicidal maniac; serial killer; executioner 604.8; matador; exterminator, eradicator; death squad; terrorist, bomber; poison, pesticide 1001.3

12 <place of slaughter> aceldama, field of blood *or* bloodshed; **slaughterhouse,** butchery <Brit>, shambles, abattoir; bullring, arena, battleground, battlefield; stockyard; gas chamber, concentration camp, death camp, killing fields; Auschwitz, Belsen, etc

VERBS **13** **kill, slay, put to death,** deprive of life, bereave of life, **take life,** take the life of, take one's life away, **do away with,** make away with, **put out of the way,** put to sleep, end, **put an end to,** end the life of, hasten someone's end, **dispatch, do to death,** do for, finish, finish off, kill off, take off, **dispose of, exterminate, destroy,** annihilate; **liquidate,** purge; carry off *or* away, remove from life; put down, put away, put to sleep, put one out of one's misery; launch into eternity, send to glory, send to kingdom come <nf>, send to one's last account, send to one's Maker; **martyr,** martyrize; immolate, sacrifice; lynch; cut off, cut down, nip in the bud; poison; chloroform; starve; euthanatize; **execute**

14 <nf terms> **waste, zap,** nuke, rub out, croak, snuff, bump off, knock off, bushwhack, lay out, polish off, blow away, blot out, erase, wipe out, blast, do in, off, hit, ice, gun down, pick off, put to bed with a shovel, scrag, take care of, take out, take for a ride, give the business *or* works, deep-six, get, fix, settle

15 **shed blood,** spill blood, let blood, bloody one's hands with, dye one's hands in blood, have blood on one's hands, pour out blood like water, wade knee-deep in blood

16 **murder,** commit murder; **assassinate;** remove, **purge, liquidate,** eliminate, get rid of

17 **slaughter, butcher, massacre, decimate,** mow down, spare none, take no prisoners, wipe out, wipe off the face of the earth, annihilate, exterminate, liquidate, commit carnage, depopulate, murder *or* kill *or* slay en masse; purge, commit mass murder *or* destruction, murder wholesale, commit genocide

18 **strike dead,** fell, bring down, lay low; drop, drop *or* stop in one's tracks; **shoot,** shoot down, pistol, shotgun, machinegun, gun down, riddle, shoot to death; cut down, cut to pieces *or* ribbons, **put to the sword,** stab to death, jugulate, cut *or* slash the throat; **deal a deathblow,** give the quietus *or coup de grâce* <Fr>, silence; knock in *or* on the head; **brain,** blow *or* knock *or* dash one's brains out, poleax; **stone,** lapidate, stone to death; defenestrate; blow up, blow to bits *or* pieces *or* kingdom come, frag; disintegrate, vaporize; burn to death, incinerate, burn at the stake

19 **strangle,** garrote, **throttle, choke,** burke; **suffocate, stifle, smother, asphyxiate,** stop the breath; **drown**

20 **condemn to death,** sign one's death warrant, strike the death knell of, finger <nf>, give the kiss of death to

21 **be killed,** get killed, die a violent death, **come to a violent end,** meet with foul play; welter in one's own blood

22 **commit suicide, take one's own life, kill oneself,** die by one's own hand, do away with oneself, put an end to oneself; blow one's brains out, take an overdose <of a drug>, overdose *or* OD <nf>; commit hara-kiri *or* seppuku; sign one's own death warrant, doom oneself; jump overboard, do oneself in *or* off oneself <nf>

ADJS **23** **deadly, deathly,** deathful, **killing, destructive,** death-dealing, death-bringing, feral <old>, fell; savage, brutal; internecine; **fatal, mortal, lethal, malignant,** malign, **virulent, pernicious,** baneful; **life-threatening, terminal;** capital; incurable, terminal, inoperable

24 **murderous,** slaughterous; cutthroat; redhanded; **homicidal,** man-killing, death-dealing; biocidal, genocidal; suicidal, self-destructive; soul-destroying; cruel; **bloodthirsty,** bloody-minded; **bloody, gory,** sanguinary; psychopathic, pathological

25 **types of killing and killers**

aborticide *or* feticide <fetus>
amicicide <friend>
avicide <birds>
biocide <chemical>
ceticide <whales>
deicide <god>
ecocide <large area>
elephanticide <elephants>
felicide <cats>
formicicide <ants>
fratricide <brother>
fungicide <fungi>
genocide <race or ethnic group>
giganticide <giant>
gynecide *or* femicide <woman>
herbicide <plants>
homicide <person>
infanticide <infant>
insecticide <insects>
mariticide <spouse, especially husband>

matricide <mother>
microbicide *or* germicide <germs>
ovicide <egg cell>
parenticide <parent>
parricide <kinsman>
patricide <father>
pesticide <pest>
phytocide <plants>
prolicide <own child>
regicide <king>
rodenticide <rodent>
senicide <old person>
sororicide <sister>
spermicide *or* spermaticide *or* spermatozoicide <spermatozoa>
suicide *or* autocide <self>
tauricide <bulls>
tickicide <ticks>
tyrannicide <tyrant>
uxoricide <wife>
vaticide <prophet>
vermicide *or* filaricide <worms>
vespacide <wasps>
viricide <viruses>

309 INTERMENT

NOUNS **1 interment, burial,** burying, inhumation, sepulture, **entombment;** encoffinment, inurning, inurnment, urn burial; primary burial; secondary burial, reburial; disposal of the dead; burial *or* funeral *or* funerary customs; mass burial, burial at sea, military burial, full military rites

2 cremation, incineration, burning, reduction to ashes, pyre, scattering of the ashes

3 embalmment, embalming; mummification

4 last offices, last honors, **last rites,** funeral rites, last duty *or* service, funeral service, funeral ceremony, burial service, graveside service, memorial service, exequies, **obsequies;** Office of the Dead, Memento of the Dead, requiem, requiem mass, dirge <old>; **extreme unction;** viaticum; funeral oration *or* sermon, eulogy; **wake,** deathwatch, Irish wake; lowering the body

5 funeral, burial, burying; funeral procession, cortege; dead march, muffled drum, last post <Brit>, taps; dirge; burial at sea, deep six <nf>

6 knell, passing bell, death bell, funeral ring, tolling, tolling of the knell, funeral hymn, dirge

7 mourner, griever, lamenter, keener; mute, professional mourner; **pallbearer,** bearer; eulogist, eulogizer, elegist, epitaphist, obituarist

8 undertaker, mortician, funeral director; embalmer; gravedigger; sexton

9 mortuary, morgue, deadhouse <old>, charnel house, lichhouse <Brit nf>; ossuary *or* ossuarium; **funeral home** *or* **parlor,** undertaker's establishment; **crematorium,** crematory, cinerarium; pyre, funeral pile; burning ghat

10 hearse, funeral car *or* coach; catafalque

11 coffin, casket, burial case, box, kist <Scot>; wooden kimono *or* overcoat <nf>; **sarcophagus;** mummy case

12 urn, cinerary urn, funerary *or* funeral urn *or* vessel, bone pot, ossuary *or* ossuarium, canopic urn *or* jar *or* vase

13 bier, litter

14 graveclothes, shroud, winding sheet, cerecloth, cerements; pall

15 graveyard, cemetery, burial ground *or* **place,** plot, family plot, burying place *or* ground, *campo santo* <Ital>, boneyard *and* bone orchard <nf>, burial yard, necropolis, polyandrium, **memorial park,** city *or* village of the dead; **churchyard,** God's acre, final resting place; garden of remembrance *or* rest; **potter's field;** Golgotha, Calvary; urnfield; lychgate; columbarium, cinerarium

16 tomb, sepulcher; grave, gravesite, burial, pit, deep six <nf>; resting place, "the lone couch of his everlasting sleep"—Shelley; last home, long home, narrow house, house of death, low house, low green tent; **crypt, vault,** burial chamber; ossuary *or* ossuarium; charnel house, bone house; **mausoleum; catacombs;** mastaba; cist grave, box grave, passage grave, shaft grave, beehive tomb; catafalque; **shrine,** reliquary, monstrance, tope, stupa; cenotaph; dokhma, tower of silence; pyramid, mummy chamber; burial mound, tumulus, barrow, cist, cromlech, dolmen, menhir, cairn, tower of silence; grave pit, common grave, mass grave, open grave

17 monument, gravestone 549.12

18 epitaph, inscription, *hic jacet* <L>, here lies, Rest in Peace, RIP; tombstone marking

VERBS **19 inter,** inhume, **bury,** sepulture, inearth <old>, **lay to rest, consign to the grave,** consign to earth, lower the body, lay in the grave *or* earth, lay under the sod, put six feet under <nf>; plant <nf>; tomb, **entomb,** ensepulcher, hearse; enshrine; inurn; encoffin, coffin; hold *or* conduct a funeral

20 cremate, incinerate, burn, reduce to ashes, burn on the pyre

21 lay out; embalm; mummify; lie in state

ADJS **22 funereal,** funeral, funerary, funebrial, funebrous *or* funebrious, *funèbre* <Fr>, feral <old>; burial, mortuary, exequial, obsequial; graveside; sepulchral, tomblike; cinerary; necrological, obituary, epitaphic; **dismal** 112.24; **mournful** 112.26; dirgelike; memorial, eulogistic, elegiac

ADVS **23** beneath the sod, underground, six feet under <nf>, "in the dark union of insensate dust"—Byron; at rest, resting in peace

PHRS **24 RIP,** *requiescat in pace* <L singular>, *requiescant in pace* <L plural>, rest in peace; *hic jacet* <L>, *ci-gît* <Fr>, here lies; "ashes to ashes and dust to dust"—Book of Common Prayer

310 PLANTS

NOUNS **1 plants, vegetation; flora, plant life,** vegetable life; **vegetable kingdom,** plant kingdom;

herbage, flowerage, verdure, greenery, greens, green plants; botany 1068.6; vegetation spirit 1069.4

2 **growth,** stand, crop; plantation, planting; **clump,** tuft, tussock, hassock

3 **plant,** green plant; **vegetable** <see list>; **weed;** seedling; cutting; vascular plant, herbaceous plant; seed plant, spermatophyte; gymnosperm; angiosperm, flowering plant; monocotyledon *or* monocot *or* monocotyl; dicotyledon *or* dicot *or* dicotyl; polycotyledon *or* polycot *or* polycotyl; thallophyte, fungus, gametophyte, sporophyte; exotic, hothouse plant, greenhouse plant; ephemeral, annual, biennial, triennial, perennial; evergreen, deciduous plant; cosmopolite; aquatic plant, hydrophyte, amphibian; cultivated plant, garden plant, houseplant, pot plant; food plant, cereal, vegetable, herb; medicinal plant

4 <varieties> **legume,** pulse, vetch, bean, pea, lentil; **herb** <see list>, pot-herb; succulent; **vine** <see list>, grapevine, creeper, ivy, climber, liana; **fern** <see list>, bracken; **moss; wort,** liverwort; **algae; seaweed,** kelp, sea moss, rockweed, gulfweed, sargasso *or* sargassum, sea lentil, wrack, sea wrack; **fungus** <see list>, mold, rust, smut, puffball, mushroom, toad-stool; lichen; parasitic plant, parasite, saprophyte, perthophyte, heterophyte, autophyte; plant families 1068.4; fruits and vegetables

5 **grass,** gramineous *or* graminaceous plant, pasture *or* forage grass, lawn grass, ornamental grass; aftergrass, fog <nf>; **cereal** <see list>, cereal plant, farinaceous plant, **grain,** corn <Brit>; sedge; rush, reed, cane, bamboo

6 **turf, sod, sward,** greensward; divot

7 **green, lawn;** artificial turf, Astroturf <trademark>; grassplot, greenyard; grounds; **common, park, village green;** golf course *or* links, fairway; bowling green, putting green; grass court

8 **grassland,** grass; parkland; **meadow,** meadow land, field, mead <old>, swale, lea *or* ley, haugh *or* haughland <Scot>, vega; bottomland, water meadow; **pasture,** pastureland, pasturage, pasture land, park <Brit nf>; **range,** grazing, grazing land; **prairie, savanna,** savannah, **steppe,** steppeland, **pampas,** pampa, campo, llano, **veld** *or* veldt, grass veld, plain, range, champaign, campagna; herbage, verdure; moor, moorland, common, heath, downs, downland, wold

9 **shrubbery; shrub, bush;** scrub, bramble, brier, brier bush; topiary

10 **tree** <see list>, timber; shade tree, fruit tree, timber tree; softwood tree, hardwood tree; sapling, seedling; conifer *or* coniferous tree, evergreen; pollard, pollarded tree, standard; deciduous tree, borad-leaved tree; ornamental tree; Christmas tree

11 <tree parts> trunk, bole, gnarl, knot, burl, burr, crown, limb, branch, bough, twig, switch, sprig, spur, leader, leaf, needle, cone, root, tree *or* annual *or* growth ring

12 <tree groupings> forest, tree line *or* zone, timberline, jungle, gallery forest, fringing forest, virgin forest, primeval forest, coniferous forest; taiga, woodland, chaparral, plantation, stand, timberland, tree farm, tree nursery, orchard, orangery

13 **woodland, wood, woods, timberland; timber,** stand of timber, **forest,** forest land, forest cover, forest preserve, state *or* national forest; forestry, dendrology, silviculture; afforestation, reforestation; boondocks <nf>; wildwood, **bush,** scrub; bushveld, tree veld; shrubland, scrubland; pine barrens, palmetto barrens; hanger; **park,** parkland, chase <Brit>; park forest; arboretum; conservation land

14 **grove, woodlet;** holt <nf>, hurst, spinney <Brit>, *tope* <India>, shaw <nf>, bosk <old>; **orchard;** wood lot; coppice, copse; *bocage* <Fr>

15 **thicket,** thickset, **copse, coppice,** copsewood, frith <Brit nf>; bosket *or* bosquet <old>, boscage; covert; motte; **brake,** canebrake; chaparral; chamisal; ceja

16 **brush, scrub,** bush, **brushwood,** shrubwood, scrubwood, shrub

17 **undergrowth, underwood, underbrush,** copsewood, undershrubs, boscage, frith <Brit nf>; ground cover, tree litter, leaf litter, leaf mold, covert

18 **foliage, leafage,** leafiness, umbrage, foliation; frondage, frondescence; vernation; greenery

19 **leaf, frond;** leaflet, foliole; ligule; lamina, **blade,** leaf blade, spear, spire, pile, flag; **needle,** pine needle; floral leaf, **petal,** sepal; bract, bractlet, bracteole, spathe, involucre, involucrum, glume, lemma; cotyledon, seed leaf; stipule, stipula; scale leaf, modified leaf

20 **branch,** fork, **limb, bough;** deadwood; **twig, sprig,** switch; spray; **shoot,** offshoot, spear, frond; scion; **sprout,** sprit, slip, burgeon, thallus; sucker; **runner,** stolon, flagellum, sarmentum, sarment; bine; **tendril;** ramage; branchiness, branchedness, ramification

21 **stem, stalk, stock,** axis, *caulis* <L>; **trunk,** bole; spear, spire; straw; reed; cane, culm, haulm <Brit>; caudex; footstalk, pedicel, peduncle; leafstalk, petiole, petiolus, petiolule; seedstalk; caulicle; tigella; funicule, funiculus; stipe, anthrophore, carpophore, gynophore

22 **root,** radix, radicle; rootlet; **taproot,** tap; **rhizome,** rootstock; **tuber,** tubercle, tuberous root, root tuber; **bulb,** bulbil, corm, earthnut; lateral root, prop root, aerial root

23 **bud,** burgeon, gemma; leaf bud, foliage bud; apical bud, terminal bud, axillary bud, lateral bud, resting bud; gemmule, gemmula; plumule, acrospire; leaf bud, flower bud

24 **flower** <see list>, **posy, blossom, bloom,** blow <old>; floweret, floret, floscule; **wildflower;** garden flower, pot plant, cut flowers; **gardening,** horticulture, floriculture; hortorium

25 **bouquet, nosegay, posy,** boughpot, flower arrangement; **boutonniere,** buttonhole <Brit>; **corsage; spray; wreath;** festoon; **garland,** daisy chain, chaplet, lei; dried flower, pressed flower

26 **flowering,** florescence, efflorescence, flowerage, **blossoming, blooming;** inflorescence; **blossom, bloom,** blowing, blow, full blow; unfolding, unfoldment; anthesis, full bloom

27 <types of inflorescence> flower head; raceme, corymb, umbel, panicle, cyme, thyrse *or* thyrsus, verticillaster, spadix; head, capitulum; spike, spikelet; ament, catkin; strobile, cone, pine cone; ray flower, disk flower, cymose inflorescence

28 <flower parts> petal, perianth, floral envelope; calyx, epicalyx, sepal; nectary; corolla, corolla tube, corona; androecium, anther, stamen, microsporophyll; pistil, gynoecium, ovary, ovule, micrypyle; style; stigma, carpel, megasporophyll; receptacle, torus; involucre, bract, whorl, spathe; pollen, pollen grain, pollen sac, pollen tube

29 **ear,** spike; auricle; ear of corn, mealie; **cob,** corncob

30 **seed vessel, seedcase,** seedbox, pericarp; hull, husk; **capsule, pod,** cod <nf>, seed pod, seed coat; pease cod, legume, legumen, boll, burr, follicle, silique

31 **seed; stone, pit, nut;** pip; fruit <see list>; **grain, kernel, berry;** flaxseed, linseed; hayseed; bird seed

32 **vegetation, growth;** germination, pullulation; burgeoning, sprouting; budding, luxuriation

33 <garden plants> seedling, cutting, bulb, corm, rhizome, tuber; rock plant, alpine plant, bedding plant, creeper, ground cover, turf, climber *or* climbing plant, rambler; annual, biennial, perennial; herb, flower, woody plant, succulent

VERBS 34 **vegetate, grow;** germinate, pullulate; root, take root, strike root; sprout up, shoot up, upsprout, upspear; **burgeon,** put forth, burst forth; **sprout,** shoot; **bud,** gemmate, put forth *or* put out buds; **leaf,** leave, leaf out, put out *or* put forth leaves; flourish, luxuriate, riot, grow rank *or* lush; overgrow, overrun; run to seed, dehisce; photosynthesize, change color

35 **flower,** be in flower, **blossom, bloom,** bud, be in bloom, blow, effloresce, floreate, burst into bloom, flourish, burgeon

ADJS 36 **vegetable,** vegetal, vegetative, vegetational, vegetarian; **plantlike; herbaceous,** herbal, herbous, herbose, herby; leguminous, leguminose, leguminiform; cereal, farinaceous; weedy; fruity, fruitlike; tuberous, bulbous; rootlike, rhizoid, radicular, radicated, radiciform; botanic, botanical; green, grassy, leafy, verdant

37 algal, fucoid, confervoid; phytoplanktonic, diatomaceous; fungous, fungoid, fungiform

38 **floral; flowery, florid** <old>; **flowered,** floreate, floriate, floriated; **flowering, blossoming, blooming,** abloom, bloomy, florescent, inflorescent, efflorescent, in flower, in bloom, in blossom; uniflorous, multiflorous; radiciflorous, rhizanthous; **garden,** horticultural, hortulan, floricultural; flowerlike

39 **arboreal,** arborical, arboresque, arboreous, arborary, arboraceous; **treelike,** arboriform, arborescent, dendroid, dendroidal, dendriform, dendritic; deciduous, nondeciduous; evergreen; softwood, hardwood; piny *or* piney; coniferous; citrous; palmate, palmaceous; **bosky,** bushy, shrubby, scrubby, scrubbly; bushlike, shrublike, scrublike

40 **sylvan, silvan, sylvatic, woodland, forest,** forestal; dendrologic, dendrological, silvicultural, afforestational, reforestational, reforested; tree-covered; **wooded,** timbered, forested, afforested, timbered, arboreous; **woody,** woodsy, bosky, bushy, shrubby, scrubby; copsy, braky; ligneous, ligniform

41 **leafy,** leavy <old>, bowery; foliated, foliate, foliose, foliaged, leaved; **branched,** branchy, branching, ramified, ramate, ramous *or* ramose; twiggy

42 **verdant, verdurous,** verdured; **mossy,** moss-covered, moss-grown; **grassy,** grasslike, gramineous, graminaceous; turfy, swardy, turflike, caespitose, tufted; meadowy

43 **luxuriant,** flourishing, **rank, lush,** riotous, exuberant; dense, impenetrable, thick, heavy, gross; jungly, jungled; overgrown, overrun; **weedy,** unweeded, weed-choked, weed-ridden; gone to seed

44 **perennial,** ephemeral; hardy, half-hardy; **deciduous,** evergreen

45 **herbs**

angelica
anise
balm
basil
belladonna
bergamot
borage
calendula
camomile
caraway
cardamom
catnip *or* catmint

- chervil
- chicory
- chive
- cilantro
- clover
- coriander
- cum(m)in
- deadly nightshade
- dill
- fennel
- feverroot
- figwort
- fraxinella *or* gas plant
- garlic
- ginseng
- hemp
- henbane
- horehound
- hyssop
- licorice
- liverwort
- mandrake
- marjoram
- mint
- monkshood
- mullein
- mustard
- oregano *or* origanum
- parsley
- peppermint
- rosemary
- rue
- sage
- savory
- sesame
- sorrel
- spearmint
- sweet cicely
- sweet woodruff
- tansy
- tarragon
- thyme
- wintergreen
- yarrow

46 vines

- air potato
- bittersweet
- Boston ivy
- cissus
- clematis
- cypress vine
- English ivy
- grape
- greenbrier
- honeysuckle
- hop
- ivy
- jasmine
- liana
- morning glory
- paradise flower
- poison ivy
- stephanotis
- sword bean
- traveler's-joy
- trumpet creeper
- trumpet flower
- trumpet honeysuckle
- velvet bean
- Virginia creeper
- virgins-bower
- wisteria
- woodbine

47 ferns

- adder's fern
- asparagus fern
- basket fern
- beech fern
- bladder fern
- boulder fern
- bracken
- calamite
- chain fern
- Christmas fern
- cliff brake
- climbing fern
- club moss
- cycad
- curly grass
- grape fern
- hart's tongue
- holly fern
- horsetail
- interrupted fern
- lady fern
- lip fern
- lycopod
- maidenhair
- marsh fern
- moonwort
- oak fern
- osmunda
- ostrich fern
- polypody
- rattlesnake fern
- rock brake
- seed fern
- shield fern
- silvery spleenwort
- snuffbox fern
- sword fern
- tree fern
- tropical fern
- true fern
- walking fern
- wall fern
- water clover
- wood fern
- woodsia

48 trees

- abele
- acacia
- acajou
- ailanthus *or* tree of heaven
- alder
- Aleppo pine
- allspice
- almond
- apple
- apricot
- ash
- aspen
- avocado *or* alligator pear
- bald cypress
- balsa
- balsam
- banyan
- basswood
- bay
- bayberry
- bean
- beech
- betel palm
- birch
- bonsai
- bo tree
- boxwood
- Brazil-nut
- breadfruit
- buckeye
- buckthorn
- butternut
- buttonwood
- cabbage tree
- cacao
- camphor tree
- carnauba
- carob
- cashew
- cassia
- catalpa
- cedar
- cherimoya
- cherry
- chestnut
- chinaberry tree *or* China tree
- chinquapin
- Christmas tree
- cinnamon
- citron
- clove
- coconut *or* coco
- cork oak
- cottonwood
- cypress
- date palm
- devilwood
- dogwood
- dwarf
- ebony
- elder
- elm
- eucalyptus
- evergreen
- ficus
- fig
- filbert
- fir
- flame tree
- fruit
- ginkgo
- grapefruit
- guava
- gum
- hardwood
- hawthorn
- hazel *or* hazelnut
- hemlock
- henna
- hickory
- holly
- hoptree
- hornbeam
- horse chestnut
- horseradish tree
- inkwood
- juniper
- kola
- kumquat
- laburnum
- lancewood
- larch
- laurel
- lemon
- lignum vitae
- lime
- linden
- litchi *or* litchi nut
- locust
- logwood
- loquat *or* Japanese plum
- macadamia
- madroña *or* madrone
- magnolia
- mahogany
- mango
- mangrove

maple
medlar
mesquite
mimosa
monkey puzzle
mountain ash
mulberry
nutmeg
nux vomica
oak
olive
orange
osier
pagoda tree
palm
papaw
papaya
peach
pear
pecan
persimmon
pine
pistachio
pitch pine
plane
plum
poison sumac
pomegranate
pomelo
poplar
quince
raffia palm
rain tree
redwood
rice-paper tree
rosewood
rubber tree
sandalwood
sapodilla
sassafras
satinwood
senna
sequoia
serviceberry
shade tree
shortleaf pine
silver maple
sorrel tree
spruce
sugar maple
sycamore
tamarillo
tamarind
tamarugo
tangerine
teak
thorn tree
thuja
torchwood
tulip tree
tupelo
umbrella tree
upas
varnish tree
walnut
wandoo
wax palm
wax tree
wayfaring tree
weeping willow
western hemlock
whitebeam
white birch
white cedar
white oak
white pine
white poplar
white spruce
whitethorn
wicopy
willow
witch hazel
woollybutt
wychelm
yellow poplar
yellowwood *or* gopher wood
yew
ylang-ylang
zebrawood

49 flowers

acacia
acanthus
African violet
amaranthus
amaryllis
anemone *or* windflower
arbutus
arrowhead
asphodel
aster
autumn crocus
azalea
baby's breath
bachelor's button
begonia
belladonna
bitterroot
bittersweet
black-eyed Susan
bleeding heart
bluebell
bluet
bougainvillea
bridal wreath
broom
buttercup
cactus
calendula
calla lily
camellia
camomile
campanula
candytuft
carnation
cat's-paw
cattail
century plant
chamomile
Chinese lantern
Christmas cactus
Christmas rose
chrysanthemum
cineraria
clematis
clover
cockscomb
columbine
cornel
cornflower
cosmos
cowbell
cowslip
crocus
cyclamen
daffodil
dahlia
daisy
damask rose
dandelion
delphinium
dogtooth violet
Dutchman's-breeches
Easter lily
edelweiss
eglantine
elderflower
fireweed
flax
fleur-de-lis <Fr>
forget-me-not
forsythia
foxglove
foxtail
frangipani
freesia
fuchsia
gardenia
gentian
geranium
gladiolus
globeflower
goldenrod
groundsel
guelder rose
harebell
hawthorn
heather
hepatica
hibiscus
hollyhock
honeysuckle
horehound
hyacinth
hydrangea
hyssop
impatience *or* impatiens
Indian paintbrush
indigo
iris
jack-in-the-pulpit
japonica
jasmine
jonquil
kingcup
laburnum
lady's-slipper
larkspur
lavender
lilac
lily
lily of the valley
lobelia
lotus
love-lies-bleeding
lupine
magnolia
mallow
marguerite
marigold
marshmallow
marsh marigold
mayflower
meadow saffron
Michaelmas daisy
mignonette
milkwort
mimosa
moccasin flower
mock orange
monkshood
moonflower
morning glory
moss rose
motherwort
mullein
musk rose
myrtle
narcissus
nasturtium
oleander
opium poppy
orchid
oxalis
oxeye daisy
pansy
paper-white narcissus

passionflower
pennyroyal
peony
periwinkle
petunia
phlox
pink
plumbago
poinsettia
polyanthus
poppy
portulaca
pot marigold
primrose
primula
Queen Anne's lace
ragged robin
ragwort
rambler rose
ranunculus
resurrection plant
rhododendron
rose
safflower
shooting star
smilax
snapdragon
snowdrop
spiraea
St. John's wort
stock
strawflower
sunflower
sweet alyssum
sweetbrier
sweet pea
sweet william
tea rose
thistle
tiger lily
trailing arbutus
trillium
trumpet creeper
tulip
twinflower
umbrella plant
valerian
Venus's flytrap
verbena
veronica
viburnum
viola
violet
wake-robin
wallflower
water hyacinth
water lily
water milfoil
water pimpernel
wax flower
waxplant
white clover
wisteria
wolfsbane
wood anemone
wood hyacinth
woody nightshade
wood sorrel
yarrow
yellow water lily
yucca
zinnia

50 cereal grasses

barley
buckwheat
corn
maize
millet
oats
rice
rye
wheat

51 fruit

apple
apricot
atemoya
avocado
banana
berry
black currant
breadfruit
bullace plum
calmyrna
canistel
cantaloupe
carambola
cherimoya
cherry
citron
clementine
coconut
crabapple
currant
custard apple
damson
date
durian
fig
granadilla
grape
grapefruit
greengage
ground cherry
guava
haw
jackfruit
jujube
kiwi
kumquat
lemon
lime
longan
loquat
mandarin orange
mango
May apple
medlar
melon
muskmelon
navel orange
nectarine
olive
orange
papaya
passion fruit
pawpaw
peach
pear
pepino
Persian melon
persimmon
pineapple
plantain
plum
pomegranate
pomelo
prickly pear
prune
quince
quinoa
raisin
rambutan
sapodilla
sapote
satsuma
sea grape
soursop
tamarillo
tamarind
tangelo
tangerine
tomato
watermelon

52 apples

Anna
Arctic
Arkansas Black
Bailey Sweet
Baldwin
Belmont
Ben Davis
Blue Permain
Braeburn
Bramley
Buckingham
Collins
Cortland
Cox's Orange Pippin
Criterion
Delicious
Dorset Golden
Earliblaze
Early Harvest
Ein Shemer
Empire
English Sweet
Freedom
Gala
Gideon
Golden Delicious
Golden Harvest
Granny Smith
Gravenstein
Green Sweet
Grimes Golden
Hubbardston
Ingram
Jersey Black
Jerseymac
Jonared
Jonathan
Lady Sweet
Liberty
Lodi
Longfield
Macoun
McIntosh
McMahon
Missouri
Monroe
Mutsu
Newton Pippin
Northern Spy
Oldenburg
Ortley
Permain
Pippin
Porter
Prima
Priscilla
Rambo
Red Delicious
Redfree
Red Rome
Rhode Island Greening
Roman Stem
Rome
Rome Beauty

Roxbury Russet
Russet
Saint Lawrence
Sir Prize
Snowapple
Spartan
Starkrimson
Starr
Stayman
Twenty Ounce
Tydeman's Red
Virginia Beauty
Wealthy
Williams
Winesap
Winter Banana
Yellow Transparent
York Imperial

53 berries

bearberry
bilberry
blackberry
black raspberry
blueberry
boysenberry
buffalo berry
candleberry
checkerberry
cloudberry
cranberry
currant
dangleberry
dewberry
elderberry
gooseberry
huckleberry
Juneberry
lingonberry
loganberry
mulberry
partridgeberry
raspberry
sala berry
serviceberry
shadberry
strawberry
whortleberry

54 citrus fruit

citron
clementine
grapefruit
kumquat
lemon
lime
mandarin
naartje
orange
ortanique
pomelo
satsuma
shaddock
tangelo
tangerine

55 grapes

Alicante
Almeria
Cabernet Sauvignon
cardinal
Champion
Chardonnay
Chenin Blanc
Concord
Delaware
Franconian
Hamburgh
Isabella
Italia
Labrusca
Lady Finger
Malaga
Martha
Merlot
Muscadet
Muscat
Pinot Blanc
Pinot Noir
Riesling
seedless
Superb
Thompson seedless
Tokay
White Corinth
Woodbury
zinfandel

56 melons

cantaloupe
casaba
Crenshaw
honeydew
muskmelon
Persian
watermelon
winter melon

57 peaches

Clingstone
Elberta
Freestone
Greensboro
Heath
Late Crawford
Lovell
Mountain Rose
Muir
nectarine
Phillips
Susquehanna
Triumph
Yellow

58 pears

Anjou
Bartlett
Bosc
Clapp Favorite
Comice
Kieffer
Le Conte
Sheldon
Wilder Early
winter nellis

59 vegetables

alfalfa sprout
artichoke
arugula
asparagus
bamboo sprout or shoot
bean
bean sprout
beet
bell pepper
black-eyed pea
Boston lettuce
broad bean
broccoli
Brussels sprout
butter bean
cabbage
cardoon
carrot
cassava
cauliflower
celery
chard
chayote
chickpea
chicory
Chinese cabbage
chive
collard greens
corn
cress
cucumber
dandelion
eggplant
endive
escarole
fennel
garbanzo bean
garlic
glasswort
globe artichoke
gourd
green bean
green pepper
iceberg lettuce
jalapeno pepper
kale
kidney bean
kohlrabi
leek
lentil
lettuce
lima bean
mung bean
mushroom
muskmelon
mustard
navy bean
New Zealand spinach
okra
olive
onion
parsley
parsnip
pea
pepper
petsai
pinto bean
plantain
pokeweed
potato
pumpkin
radiccio
radish
rampion
red bean
red cabbage
red pepper
rhubarb
rice
romaine
rutabaga
sauerkraut
scallion
sea kale
seaweed
shallot
snap bean
snow pea
sorrel
soybean
spinach
squash
string bean
succotash

sugar pea
summer squash
sweet corn
sweet potato
tomato
truffle
turnip
water chestnut
watercress
watermelon
wax bean
white bean
yam
yellow pepper
yellow squash
zucchini

311 ANIMALS, INSECTS

NOUNS 1 **animal life, animal kingdom,** brute creation, **fauna,** Animalia <zoology>, animality; animal behavior, biology ; birds, beasts, and fish; the beasts of the field, the fowl of the air, and the fish of the sea; domestic animals, livestock, stock <nf>, cattle; wild animals *or* beasts, beasts of field, wildlife, denizens of the forest *or* jungle *or* wild, furry creatures; predators, beasts of prey; game, big game, small game; animal rights

2 **animal, creature,** critter <nf>, living being *or* thing, creeping thing; **brute, beast,** varmint <nf>, dumb animal *or* creature, dumb friend, furry friend, four-legged friend, critter <nf>

3 <varieties> **vertebrate; invertebrate; biped, quadruped; mammal,** mammalian, **primate** <see list>, warm-blooded animal; chordate; **marsupial,** marsupialian; canine; **feline; rodent,** gnawer; **ungulate; ruminant;** insectivore, herbivore, carnivore, omnivore; cannibal; scavenger; reptile; amphibian; fish; aquatic; bird; cosmopolite; vermin, varmint <nf>; zooid, protist, protozoan; worm, mollusk, gastropod, arthropod, insect, arachnid; parasite, scavenger, predator, grazer

4 **pachyderm; elephant,** Jumbo, *hathi* <India>, "heffalump"—A A Milne; mammoth, woolly mammoth; mastodon; **rhinoceros,** rhino; **hippopotamus,** hippo, river horse; subungulate, proboscidean, Proboscidea

5 <hoofed animals> ungulate, ungulant; odd-toed ungulate, perissodactyl; even-toed ungulate, artiodactyl; **deer, buck, doe, fawn;** red deer, **stag,** hart, hind; roe deer, roe, roebuck; musk deer; fallow deer; hogdeer; white-tailed *or* Virginia deer; mule deer; **elk,** wapiti; **moose; reindeer,** caribou; deerlet; **antelope;** gazelle, kaama, wildebeest *or* gnu, hartebeest, springbok, reebok, dik-dik, eland *or* Cape elk, koodoo; **camel,** dromedary, ship of the desert; **giraffe,** camelopard, okapi; equine, equid, horse; pig, hog, swine; camel, llama; goat, sheep

6 **cattle** <see list>, kine <old pl>, neat; beef cattle, beef, beeves <pl>; dairy cattle *or* cows; bovine animal, **bovine,** critter <nf>; **cow,** moo-cow *and* bossy <nf>; milk *or* milch cow, milker, milcher, dairy cow; **bull,** bullock, top cow <nf>; **steer,** stot <Brit nf>, **ox,** oxen <pl>; **calf, heifer,** yearling, fatling, stirk <Brit>; **dogie** *and* leppy <W US>; maverick <W US>; hornless cow, butthead *and* muley head <nf>, muley cow; zebu, Brahman; yak; musk-ox; **buffalo,** water buffalo, Indian buffalo, carabao; bison, aurochs, wisent

7 **sheep** <see list>, jumbuck <Austral>; **lamb,** lambkin, yeanling; teg <Brit>; **ewe,** yow <nf>; ewe lamb; **ram,** tup <Brit>, wether; bellwether; mutton

8 **goat;** he-goat, buck, **billy goat** *and* billy <nf>; she-goat, doe, **nanny goat** *and* nanny <nf>; **kid,** doeling; mountain goat

9 **swine** <see list>, **pig, hog,** porker; **shoat,** piggy, piglet, pigling; sucking *or* suckling pig; gilt; **boar, sow;** barrow; wild boar, tusker, razorback; warthog, babirusa

10 **horse;** horseflesh, hoss <nf>, critter <nf>; **equine,** mount, **nag** <nf>; **steed,** prancer, dobbin; charger, courser, war-horse, destrier <old>; Houyhnhnm <Jonathan Swift>; **colt,** foal, filly; **mare,** brood mare; **stallion, studhorse, stud,** top horse <nf>, entire horse, entire; gelding, purebred horse, thoroughbred, blood horse; wild horse, Przewalsky's horse, tarpan; **pony,** Shetland pony, Shetland, shelty, Iceland pony, Galloway, cob; **bronco,** bronc, range horse, Indian pony, cayuse, mustang; bucking bronco, buckjumper, sunfisher, broomtail; cowcutting horse, stock horse, roping horse, cow pony, circus horse

11 <colored horses> appaloosa, bay, blood bay, bayard, chestnut, liver chestnut, gray, dapple-gray, black, grizzle, roan, sorrel, dun, buckskin, pinto, paint, piebald, skewbald, palomino, seal brown, strawberry roan, calico pony, painted pony

12 <inferior horse> **nag, plug,** hack, jade, crock, garron <Scot & Ir>, crowbait <nf>, scalawag, rosinante; goat *and* stiff *and* dog <nf>; roarer, whistler; balky horse, balker, jughead; rogue; rackabones, scrag, stack of bones

13 **workhorse,** plow horse, beast of burden; **hunter;** stalking-horse; **saddle horse,** saddler, rouncy <old>, steed, **riding horse,** rider, palfrey, **mount;** remount; polo pony; post-horse; cavalry horse; **driving horse,** road horse, roadster, carriage horse, coach horse, gigster; hack, hackney; **draft horse,** dray horse, cart horse, shaft horse, pole horse, thil horse, thiller, fill horse *or* filler <nf>; wheelhorse, wheeler, lead, leader; pack horse, jument <old>, sumpter, sumpter horse, bidet; pit-pony; cow pony war-horse

14 **race horse; show-horse, gaited horse,** racer, galloper, trotter, pacer, sidewheeler <nf>; stepper, high-stepper, cob, prancer, turf horse, sprinter; ambler, padnag, pad; racker; single-footer; steeplechaser; bangtail <nf>

15 <distinguished horses> Al Borak <Mohammed's winged horse of ascension>, Baiardo <Rinaldo's bay horse>, Black Beauty, Black Bess <Dick Turpin's horse>, Black Saladin <Warwick's horse>, Bucephalus <Alexander the Great's horse>, Buttermilk <Dale Evans' horse>, Champion <Gene Autry's horse>, Copenhagen <Wellington's horse at Waterloo>, Grani <Sigurd's magic horse>, Incitatus <Caligula's horse>, Marengo <Napoleon's white horse>, Pegasus <winged horse of the Muses>, Roan Barbary <favorite horse of Richard II>, Rosinante <Don Quixote's bony horse>, Scout <Tonto's horse>, Silver <the Lone Ranger's horse>, Sleipnir <Odin's eight-legged horse>, Tony <Tom Mix's horse>, Trigger <Roy Rogers' horse>, Topper <Hopalong Cassidy's horse>, Traveller <Robert E Lee's horse>, Vegliantino *or* Veillantif <Orlando's horse>, White Surrey <favorite horse of Richard III>; <race horses> Affirmed, Alydar, Assault, Citation, Dr Fager, Forego, John Henry, Kelso, Man O'War, Nashua, Native Dancer, Ruffian, Seabiscuit, Seattle Slew, Secretariat, Spectacular Bid, Swaps, Whirlaway

16 **ass, donkey, burro,** neddy *or* cuddy <Brit nf>, moke <Brit nf>, Rocky Mountain canary <W US>; **jackass,** jack, dickey <Brit nf>; jenny, jenny ass, jennet; **mule,** sumpter mule, sumpter; hinny, jennet

17 **dog** <see list>, **canine, pooch** *and* bow-wow <nf>; **pup, puppy,** puppy dog *and* perp <nf>, **whelp;** bitch, gyp <S US>, slut; toy dog, lap dog; working dog; ratter; watchdog, bandog; sheep dog, shepherd *or* shepherd's dog; hound; Seeing Eye dog, guide dog; guard dog, watchdog; police dog, sled dog; gazehound, sighthound; show dog, fancy dog, toy dog; man's best friend <nf>, bowwow, pooch; kennel, pack of dogs

18 sporting dog, **hunting dog,** hunter, field dog, bird dog, gundog, water dog, hound, courser, setter, pointer, spaniel, retriever

19 **cur, mongrel,** lurcher <Brit>, tyke, **mutt** <nf>; pariah dog

20 **fox,** reynard; **wolf,** timber wolf, lobo <W US>, **coyote,** brush wolf, prairie wolf, medicine wolf <W US>; dingo, jackal, **hyena;** Cape hunting dog, African hunting dog

21 **cat** <see list>, **feline,** pussy *and* **puss** *and* **pussycat** <nf>, domestic cat, house cat, tabby, grimalkin; house cat; **kitten, kitty** *and* kitty-cat <nf>; kit, kitling <Brit nf>; **tomcat,** tom; gib *or* gib-cat <Brit nf>; mouser; ratter; Cheshire cat, Chessycat <nf>; silver cat, Chinchilla cat; blue cat, Maltese cat; tiger cat, tabby cat; tortoise-shell cat, calico cat; alley cat

22 <wild cats> **big cat, jungle cat; lion,** Leo <nf>, *simba* <Swah>; **tiger,** Siberian tiger; **leopard,** panther, jaguar, cheetah; cougar, painter <S US>, puma, mountain lion, catamount *or* cat-a-mountain; lynx, ocelot; wildcat, bobcat, steppe cat, Pallas's cat

23 <wild animals> **bear,** bar <nf>; guinea pig, cavy; hedgehog, **porcupine,** quill pig <nf>; woodchuck, **groundhog, whistle-pig** <nf>; prairie dog, prairie squirrel; **raccoon,** coon; **opossum,** possum; **weasel,** mousehound <Brit>; **wolverine,** glutton; ferret, monk <nf>; **skunk,** polecat <nf>; zoril, stink cat <South Africa>, Cape polecat; foumart; **primate, simian; ape; monkey,** monk <nf>, chimpanzee, chimp

24 **hare,** leveret, jackrabbit; **rabbit, bunny** *and* bunny rabbit <nf>, lapin; cottontail; Belgian hare, leporide; buck, doe

25 **reptile** <see list>, reptilian; **lizard;** saurian, dinosaur; crocodile, crocodilian, alligator, gator <nf>; tortoise, turtle, terrapin; cold-blooded animal, poikilotherm, Reptilia, Squamata, Rhynchocephalia, Crocodilia

26 **serpent, snake,** ophidian; **viper,** pit viper; sea snake

27 **amphibian** <see list>, batrachian, croaker, paddock <nf>; **frog,** rani-, tree toad *or* frog, bullfrog; **toad,** hoptoad *or* hoppytoad; newt, salamander; **tadpole, polliwog;** caecilian, apodan, urodele, caudate, salientian, anuran

28 **bird, fowl;** dicky-bird *and* birdy *and* birdie <nf>; fowls of the air, birdlife, avifauna, Aves, feathered friends; baby bird, chick, nestling, fledgling; wildfowl, game bird; waterfowl, water bird, wading bird, diving bird; sea bird; shore bird; migratory bird, migrant, bird of passage; **songbird,** oscine bird, warbler, passerine bird, perching bird; cage bird; flightless bird, ratite; seed-eating bird, insect-eating bird, fruit-eating bird, fish-eating bird; **raptor,** bird of prey; **eagle,** bird of Jove, eaglet; **hawk, falcon; owl,** bird of Minerva, bird of night; peafowl, peahen, **peacock,** bird of Juno; **swan,** cygnet; **pigeon, dove,** squab; stormy *or* storm petrel, Mother Carey's chicken; fulmar, Mother Carey's goose

29 **poultry, fowl,** domestic fowl, barnyard fowl, barn-door fowl, dunghill fowl; **chicken** <see list>, chick, chicky *and* chickabiddy <nf>; **cock, rooster,** chanticleer; **hen,** biddy <nf>, partlet; cockerel, pullet; setting hen, brooder, broody hen; capon, poulard; broiler, fryer, spring chicken, roaster, stewing chicken; Bantam, banty <nf>; game fowl; guinea fowl, guinea cock, guinea hen; **goose,** gander, gosling; **duck,** drake, duckling; **turkey,** gobbler, turkey gobbler; turkey-cock, tom, tom turkey; hen turkey; poult

30 marine animal <see list>, denizen of the deep; **whale,** cetacean; **porpoise, dolphin,** sea pig; **sea serpent,** sea snake, Loch Ness monster, sea monster, Leviathan <Bible>; **fish** <see list>, game fish, tropical fish, panfish; **shark,** man-eating shark, man-eater; **salmon,** kipper, grilse, smolt, parr, alevin; **minnow** *or* minny <nf>, fry, fingerling; **sponge; plankton,** zooplankton, nekton, benthon, benthos, zoobenthos; **crustacean,** lobster, spiny lobster, **crab,** blueclaw, Dungeness crab, king crab, spider crab, land crab, stone crab, soft-shell crab; crayfish *or* crawfish *or* crawdaddy; **mollusc** <see list>, wentletrap, whelk, snail, cockle, mussel, **clam, oyster,** razor clam, quahog, steamer, toheroa, tridachna *or* giant clam

31 **fish;** saltwater fish, marine fish, freshwater fish; jawless fish, cyclostome, cartilaginous fish, elasmobranch, selachian, holocephalan, bony fish, lobe-finned fish, crossopterygian, dipnoan, ray-finned fish, teleost fish, flying fish, mouthbreeder, flatfish; food fish, game fish, aquarium fish, tropical fish, fossil fish; shoal, school

32 **invertebrate;** lower animal, protochordate, echinoderm, arthropod, arachnid, insect, crustacean <see list>, myriapod, mollusk, worm, coelenterate, sponge, protozoan *or* protozoon

33 **insect** <see list>, **bug; beetle;** arthropod; hexapod, myriapod; centipede, chilopod; millipede, diplopod; social insect; **mite; arachnid, spider,** tarantula, black widow spider, daddy longlegs *or* harvestman; **scorpion; tick;** larva, maggot, nymph, **caterpillar;** winged insect, **fly,** gnat, midge, mosquito, dragonfly, butterfly, moth, bee, wasp; creepy-crawly <nf>, pest

34 **ant,** emmet <nf>, pismire, pissant *and* antymire <nf>; red ant, black ant, fire ant, house ant, agricultural ant, carpenter ant, army ant; slave ant, slave-making ant; **termite,** white ant; queen, worker, soldier

35 **bee,** honeybee, bumblebee, carpenter bee; queen, queen bee, worker, drone, Africanized bee; **wasp; hornet,** yellow jacket

36 **locust,** acridian; **grasshopper,** hopper, hoppergrass <nf>; **cricket;** cicada, cicala, dog-day cicada, seventeen-year locust; stick insect, mantis

37 **vermin;** parasite; **louse,** head louse, body louse, grayback, cootie <nf>; crab, crab louse; weevil; nit; **flea,** sand flea, dog flea, cat flea, chigoe, chigger, jigger, red bug, mite, harvest mite; **roach, cockroach,** *cucaracha* <Sp>

38 bloodsucker, parasite; **leech; tick,** wood tick, deer tick; **mosquito,** skeeter <nf>, culex; bedbug, housebug <Brit>

39 **worm** <see list>; earthworm, angleworm, fishworm, night crawler, nightwalker <N US>; measuring worm, inchworm; tapeworm, helminth

ADJS 40 **animal,** animalian, animalic, animalistic, animal-like, theriomorphic, zoic, zooidal; zoologic, zoological; **brutish, brutal,** brute, brutelike; **bestial, beastly,** beastlike; **wild,** feral; subhuman, soulless; dumb, "that wants discourse of reason"—Shakespeare; instinctual *or* instinctive, mindless, nonrational; half-animal, half-human, anthropomorphic, therianthropic

41 **vertebrate,** chordate, mammalian; viviparous; marsupial, cetacean

42 **canine,** doggish, doggy, doglike; vulpine, foxy, foxlike; lupine, wolfish, wolflike

43 **feline,** felid, cattish, catty, catlike; kittenish; leonine, lionlike; tigerish, tigerlike

44 ursine, bearish, bearlike

45 **rodent,** rodential; verminous; mousy, mouselike; ratty, ratlike

46 ungulate, hoofed, hooved; **equine,** hippic, horsy, horselike; **equestrian;** asinine, mulish; bovid, ruminant, "that chew the cud"—Bible; **bovine,** cowlike, cowish; bull-like, bullish, taurine; cervine, deerlike; caprine, caprid, hircine, goatish, goatlike; ovine, sheepish, sheeplike; porcine, swinish, piggish, hoggish

47 elephantlike, elephantine, pachydermous

48 **reptile,** reptilian, **reptilelike,** reptiloid, reptiliform; reptant, repent, creeping, crawling, slithering; **lizardlike,** saurian; crocodilian; **serpentine,** serpentile, serpentoid, serpentiform, **serpentlike;** snakish, **snaky, snakelike,** colubrine, ophidian, anguine <old>; viperish, viperous, vipery, viperine, viperoid, viperiform, viperlike; amphibian, batrachian, froggy, toadish, salamandrian

49 **birdlike,** birdy; avian, avicular; gallinaceous, rasorial; oscine, passerine, perching; columbine, columbaceous, dovelike; psittacine; aquiline, hawklike; anserine, anserous, goosy; nidificant, nesting, nest-building; nidicolous, altricial; nidifugous, precocial

50 **fishlike,** fishy; piscine, pisciform; piscatorial, piscatory; eellike; selachian, sharklike, sharkish

51 **invertebrate,** invertebral; protozoan, protozoal, protozoic; crustaceous, crustacean; molluscan, molluscoid

52 **insectile, insectlike,** buggy; verminous; lepidopterous, lepidopteran; weevily

53 **wormlike,** vermicular, vermiform; wormy

54 planktonic, nektonic, benthonic, zooplanktonic, zoobenthoic

55 **primates**

angwantibo
anthropoid ape
ape
aye-aye
baboon
Barbary ape

Bengal monkey
bonnet monkey *or* macaque
bush baby
capuchin
chacma
chimpanzee
colobus
drill
entellus
gibbon
gorilla
great ape
grivet
guenon
guereza
hanuman
howling monkey *or* howler
king monkey
langur
lemur
lion-tailed monkey *or* macaque
loris
macaque
man
mandrill
marmoset
mountain gorilla
orangutan *or* orang
owl monkey
pongid
proboscis monkey
rhesus
saki
siamang
sloth monkey
spider monkey
squirrel monkey
tamarin
tarsier
vervet

56 breeds of cattle

Aberdeen Angus *or* Angus *or* black Angus
Africander
Alderney
Andalusian
Ayrshire
Beefalo
Belted Galloway
Black Angus
Brahman
Brown Swiss
Cattalo
Charolais
Dairy Shorthorn
Devon
Dexter
Durham
Dutch Belted
Egyptian
French Canadian
Fribourg
Galloway
Guernsey
Hereford
Holstein *or* Holstein-Friesian
Icelandic
Jersey
Lincoln Red
Longhorn
Norwegian Red
Polled Durham *or* Shorthorn
Polled Hereford
Red Poll *or* Red Polled
Red Sindhi
Santa Gertrudis
Shetland
Shorthorn
Sussex
Texas Longhorn
Welsh *or* Welsh Black
West Highland

57 breeds of sheep

Abyssinian
American merino
American Rambouillet
American Tunis
Berber
Black-faced Highland
Blackhead Persian
broadtail
Cheviot
Columbia
Corriedale
Corsican
Cotswold
Dorset Down
Hampshire
Karakul
Kerry Hill
Leicester
Lincoln
Merino
Mongolian
Oxford *or* Oxford Down
Panama
Rambouillet
Romeldale
Romanov
Romney
Romney Marsh
Ryeland
Scottish blackface
Shetland
Shropshire
Southdown
Suffolk
Tajik
Targhee
Tibetan
Welsh Mountain
Wensleydale

58 breeds of swine

American Landrace
Berkshire
Cheshire
Chester White
Dorset
Duroc
Duroc Jersey
Hampshire
Hereford
Landrace
large black
large white
Mangalitsa
middle white
National Long White Lop-eared
Poland China
Romagna
Tamworth
Vietnamese Pot-bellied
Wessex saddleback
Yorkshire

59 breeds of dogs

affenpinscher
Afghan hound
Airedale *or* Airedale terrier
Akita
Alaskan malamute
Alsatian
American foxhound
American water spaniel
Australian cattle dog
Australian heeler
Australian terrier
Basenji
basset *or* basset hound
beagle
Bedlington terrier
Belgian sheepdog *or* shepherd
Bernese mountain dog
Bichon Frise
black Labrador
Blenheim spaniel
bloodhound *or* sleuth *or* sleuthhound
Border terrier
borzoi
Boston bull *or* terrier
Bouvier des Flandres
boxer
Briard
Brittany spaniel
Brussels griffon
bulldog *or* bull
bull mastiff
bull terrier
cairn terrier
carriage *or* coach dog
Chesapeake Bay retriever
Chihuahua
chow *or* chow chow
clumber spaniel
Clydesdale terrier
cocker spaniel
collie
coonhound
corgi
dachshund *or* sausage dog *or* sausage hound
Dalmatian
Dandie Dinmont
deerhound
Doberman pinscher
elkhound
English bulldog
English cocker spaniel
English foxhound
English setter
English springer spaniel
English toy spaniel
Eskimo dog *or* husky
field spaniel
foxhound
fox terrier
French bulldog
gazelle hound
German shepherd
German shorthaired pointer
German wirehaired pointer
giant schnauzer
golden retriever
Gordon setter
Great Dane
Great Pyrenees
greyhound
griffon
Groenendael

harrier
hound *or* hound-dog <S US>
husky
Irish setter
Irish terrier
Irish water spaniel
Irish wolfhound
Italian greyhound
Jack Russell terrier
Japanese spaniel *or* Japanese Chin
keeshond
kelpie
Kerry blue terrier
King Charles spaniel
Komondor
kuvasz
Labrador retriever
Lakeland terrier
Lhasa apso
malamute
Malinois
Maltese
Manchester terrier
mastiff
Mexican hairless
miniature pinscher
miniature poodle
miniature schnauzer
Newfoundland
Norfolk spaniel
Norwegian elkhound
Norwich terrier
Old English sheepdog
otterhound
papillon
Pekingese
pit bull terrier
pointer
police dog
Pomeranian
poodle
pug *or* pug dog *or* mops
puli
rat terrier
retriever
Rhodesian ridgeback
Rottweiler
Russian owtchar
Russian wolfhound
St. Bernard
Saluki
Samoyed
schipperke
schnauzer
Scottish deerhound
Scottish terrier
Sealyham terrier
setter
Shar-Pei
shepherd dog
Shetland sheepdog *or* sheltie
Shih Tzu
Siberian husky
silky terrier
Skye terrier
spaniel
spitz
springer spaniel
Staffordshire bull terrier
Sussex spaniel
terrier
toy poodle
toy spaniel
toy terrier
Vizsla
water spaniel
Weimaraner
Welsh collie
Welsh corgi
Welsh springer spaniel
Welsh terrier
West Highland white terrier
whippet
wirehaired terrier
wolfhound
yellow Labrador
Yorkshire terrier

60 breeds and varieties of domestic cats

Abyssinian cat
American shorthair
Angora cat
Balinese
blue-point Siamese
Burmese
calico *or* tortoiseshell
chartreuse cat
Chinese
chocolate-point Siamese
Cornish rex
domestic shorthair cat
Egyptian cat *or* mau
exotic shorthair
Havana brown
Himalayan
Kashmir
Maine coon
Malayan cat
Maltese
Manx
marmalade cat
Oriental Shorthair
Persian
rex
Russian blue
seal-point Siamese
Siamese
Singapura
sphynx
tabby *or* tabby-cat
tortoiseshell cat
Turkish cat

61 breeds of chickens

Ameraucana
Ancona
Andalusian
Araucana
Australorp
Bantam
Barred Plymouth Rock
Brahma
Buckeye
Buttercup
Campine
Cochin
Cornish
Crevecoeur
Delaware
Dorking
Faverolle
Frizzle
Hamburg
Holland
Houdan
Ixworth
Jersey black giant
Langshan
Leghorn
Minorca
New Hampshire *or* New Hampshire red
Orpington
Plymouth Rock
Rhode Island red
Rhode Island white
Rock
Rock Cornish
Silkie
Spanish
Sultan
Sumatra
Sussex
Turken
white Leghorn
Wyandotte

62 marine animals

cetacean
crustacean
dolphin
dugong
elephant seal
fur seal
harbor seal
manatee
octopus *or* octopod
phocid
pinniped
porpoise
sea calf
sea cow
sea dog
sea elephant
seal
sea lion
sea urchin
shellfish
sirenian
squid
walrus
whale

63 birds

albatross
auk
avocet
bald eagle
barn owl
bittern
blackbird
blue jay
bluebill
bluebird
bowerbird
bufflehead
bullfinch
bunting
buzzard
canary
cardinal
cassowary
catbird
chaffinch
chickadee
chicken
chicken hawk
chimney swift
cockatoo
condor
coot
cormorant
cowbird
crake
crane
crow

curlew
dipper
diver
dove
duck
dunlin
eagle
egret
emu
falcon
finch
flamingo
flycatcher
frigate bird
frogmouth
fulmar
gannet
gnatcatcher
goldfinch
gooney bird
goose
goshawk
grackle
grebe
greenfinch
grey heron
grouse
guinea fowl
gull
harrier
hawk
heron
honeycreeper
hummingbird
ibis
jackdaw
jaeger
jay
kestrel
king eider
kingfisher
kite
kiwi
lapwing
lark
loon
lovebird
magpie
mallard
man-o-war bird
meadowlark
merlin
mockingbird
mud hen
myna
nighthawk
nightingale
notornis
oriole
osprey
ostrich
ouzel
owl
oystercatcher
parakeet
parrot
partridge
peacock
pelican
penguin
petrel
pewit
pheasant
pigeon
pipit
plover
pochard
prairie chicken
puffin
purple martin
quail
raptor
ratite
raven
razorbill
redpoll
redwing
rhea
roadrunner
robin
rook
sandpiper
sapsucker
scissortail
seabird
seagull
shag
shama
shelduck
shrike
skua
snipe
snowbird
sparrow
song thrush
spoonbill
starling
stork
sunbird
surfbird
swallow
swan
takahe
tern
thrasher
thrush
tit
towhee
turkey
vulture
wader
wagtail
warble
waterfowl
weaverbird
whippoorwill
whitethroat
wigeon
woodcock
woodpecker
wren
yellow finch
yellowbird
yellowhammer

64 crustaceans

amphipod
barnacle
bass yabby
beach flea
branchiopod
brine shrimp
copepod
crab
crawdad
crawfish
crayfish
cumacean
daphnia
fiddler crab
hairy crab
hermit crab
horseshoe crab
isopod
king crab
krill
lobster
mantas shrimp
mussel shrimp
opossum shrimp
ostracod
pea crab
pebble crab
prawn
sailor shrimp
sand hopper
sand skater
sea centipede
sea flea
shellfish
shrimp
skeleton louse
soft-shell crab
spider crab
sponge crab
sponge shrimp
stenetrium
tadpole shrimp
water flea
weed shrimp

65 fish

albacore
alewife
alligator gar
amberjack
angelfish
arauana
archerfish
asp
balloonfish
barracuda
basking shark
bass
batfish
beluga
betta
blackfish
blindfish
blowfish
bluefish
bonefish
bowfin
boxfish
bream
brook trout
buffalofish
bullhead
butterfish
butterflyfish
candlefish
capelin
cardinalfish
carp
catfish
cavefish
char
chimaera
chub
cichlid
clingfish
clown anemone
clownfish
cod
codfish
cowfish
cutlassfish
damselfish
danios
darter
devilfish
devil ray
discus
doctorfish
dogfish
dolphin

dragonfish
eel
electric eel
electric ray
flatfish
flounder
flying fish
frogfish
garpike
giant bass
globefish
goatfish
goby
goldfish
gourami
grayling
grouper
gudgeon
guppy
haddock
hagfish
hake
halibut
hammerhead shark
hatchetfish
headstander
herring
hogfish
ide
kelpfish
killifish
kingfish
koi
lake trout
lanternfish
lionfish
loach
lumpfish
mackerel
manta
marlin
minnow
molly
mudfish
mudskipper
mullet
needlefish
northern pike
oarfish
oscar
paddlefish
paradise fish
parrotfish
perch
pickerel
pike
pikeperch
pipefish
piranha
platyfish
pollack
pompano
porgy
puffer
pupfish
rainbow trout
ray
redfin
redfish
red snapper
sailfish
salmon
salmon trout
sardine
sawfish
sea bass
sea horse
seaperch
sea trout
shad
shark
shiner
skate
smelt
snapper
snook
sole
spearfish
squawfish
stingray
striped bass
sturgeon
sucker
sunfish
surffish
swordfish
swordtail
tang
tarpon
tetra
tigerfish
tiger shark
triggerfish
trout
tuna
weakfish
whitefish
white shark
wimplefish
yellowtail
zander
zebrafish

66 fungi

agarics
ascomycetes
Ascomycota
aspergillus
basidiomycetes
Basidiomycota
bird's-nest fungus
black bread mold
black mold
blue mold
blue-green mold
boletus
bracket fungus
bread mold
brittlegill
cellular slime molds
chanterelle
club fungus
coral fungus
crumblecap
cup fungus
dead-man's fingers
deathcap
deuteromycetes
Deuteromycota
downy mildew
dung fungus
earth tongue
earthstar
Eumycota
false mildew
false morel
field mushroom
flask fungus
Fungi Imperfecti
gill fungus
green mold
groundwart
inky cap
jelly fungus
lorchel
Mastigomycotina
mildew
milkcap
mold
moniliales
morel
mushroom
mushroom pimple
myxomycetes
Myxomycota
oyster cap
penicillium
phycomycetes
pink gill
pore fungus
powdery mildew
puffball
read bread mold
ringstalk
ringworm fungus
roof mushroom
rust
sac fungus
scalecap
sheath mushroom
shell fungus
skin fungus
slime molds
slime mushroom
smoothcap
smut
stinkhorn
thrush fungus
toadstool
tooth fungus
tricholoma
truffle
verticillium
waxy cap
webcap
woodcrust
yeast
zygomycetes
Zygomycota

67 insects

acarid
acarine
ant
ant lion
aphid
apple maggot
arachnid
Arachnida
armyworm
bagworm
bark beetle
bedbug
bee
beetle
billbug
black fly
black widow
blackbeetle
bloodworm
boll weevil
bookworm
borer
bug
bumblebee
butterfly
carpet beetle
caterpillar
centipede
chafer
chigger
chinch bug
click beetle
cockroach
cootie

cricket
cutworm
daddy-longlegs
deer fly
doodlebug
dragonfly
drone
dung beetle
emperor butterfly
false scorpion
firefly
flea
fruit fly
gadfly
glowworm
gnat
grasshopper
grub
gypsy moth
harvestman
honeybee
hornet
horse fly
housefly
Japanese bettle
June bug
ladybug
leafhopper
locust
long-horned beetle
looper
louse
maggot
mayfly
mealworm
medfly
midge
mite
mosquito
moth
nit
nymph
opilionid
phalangid
pismire
praying mantis
pseudoscorpion
pupa
queen bee
roach
scale
scorpion
screwworm
silkworm
skipper
snapping beetle
soldier ant
spider
stag beetle
tarantula
tent fly
termite
tick
tiger beetle
tiger moth
wasp
water beetle
water bug
weevil
wireworm
woodworm
woolly bear
worker
yellow jacket

68 mollusks

amphineuran
bivalve
cephalopod
chambered nautilus
chiton
clam
conch
cone
cowry
cuttlefish
gastropod
lamellibranch
lampshell
limpet
murex
mussel
neopilina
octopod
octopus
oyster
rock shell
scallop
scaphopod
shellfish
slug
snail
spider conch
squid
tusk shell
volute

69 reptiles and amphibians

agama
alligator
anaconda
apodan
asp
auratus
basilisk
blindworm
boa
bog turtle
bullfrog
caecilian
caiman
chameleon
chelonid
chicken turtle
Chinese water dragon
cobra
congo snake
constrictor
cricket frog
crocodile
dinosaur
flying dragon
frog
galliwasp
gecko
Gila monster
glass snake
green frog
horned toad
iguana
Komodo dragon
lizard
loggerhead turtle
mamba
marine toad
monitor
mudpuppy
newt
pig frog
python
rainbow snake
rattlesnake
red-eyed tree frog
salamander
serpent
skink
slow worm
snake
snapping turtle
soft-shelled turtle
spring peeper
terrapin
toad
tortoise
tuatara
turtle
viper
waterdog

70 worms

angleworm
annelid
apple pomice worm
armyworm
arrowworm
bearded worm
bloodworm
bollworm
bookworm
cankerworm
clamworm
composting worm
cottonworm
cutworm
dung worm
earthworm
earworm
eelworm
fecal worm
fireworm
fish worm
flatworm
fluke
glowworm
grey worm
hairworm
heligrammite
hookworm
hornworm
horsehair worm
inchworm
leech
looper
lugworm
manure worm
measuringworm
nematode
night crawler
pinworm
platyhelminth
polychaete
red hybrid
redworm
red wiggler
ribbon worm
rotifer
roundworm
sandworm
sea mouse
sea worm
silkworm
stink worm
striped worm
tapeworm
threadworm
tiger worm
tobacco hornworm
tomato hornworm
tubeworm
vinegar eel
vinegar worm
webworm
whipworm
wireworm
woodworm

71 animal collective names

<antelopes> herd
<ants> colony
<apes> shrewdness
<asses> pace, herd, drove
<baboons> congress
<badgers> cete
<bass> shoal
<bears> sleuth, sloth
<beavers> colony
<bees> colony, grist, hive, hum, swarm
<birds> dissimulation, flight, volery
<bison> herd, troop
<boars> singular, sounder
<bovines> herd
<buffalo> herd
<camels> herd, flock
<caterpillars> army
<cats and dogs> rain
<cats> clowder, clutter
<cattle> herd, drove
<chickens> brood, clutch, flock, peep
<clams> bed
<colts> rag
<cows> flink, herd
<cranes> sedge, siege
<crickets> orchestra
<crows> murder
<deers> herd
<dogs> kennel, pack
<doves> dole, dule, flight
<ducks> brace, flock, gaggle, paddling, raft, team
<eagles> convocation
<eels> knot
<eggs> clutch
<elephants> herd, host, parade
<elks> gang, herd
<falcons> cast, passager
<ferrets> business
<finches> charm
<fishes> draught, school, shoal
<foxes> leash, skulk
<frogs> army, knot, colony
<geese> flock, gaggle, skein, wedge
<giraffes> herd
<gnats> cloud, horde
<goats> tribe, trip, herd
<goldfinches> charm
<gorillas> band
<grasshoppers> cluster
<grouses> covey
<hares> down, husk, leap
<hawks> cast, kettle
<hedgehogs> prickle
<hens> brood
<herons> siege
<hippopotami> huddle
<hogs> drift
<horses> harras, herd, pair, stable, team
<hounds> cry, mute, pack
<hummingbirds> hover
<jack rabbits> husk
<jays> band, party
<jellyfish> smack
<kangaroos> mob, troop
<kittens> kindle, kendle, litter
<lapwings> deceit
<larks> ascension, chattering, exaltation
<leopards> leap
<lions> pride
<locusts> host, plague
<magpies> tidings
<mallards> sord, sort
<mares> stud
<martens> richness
<mice> nest
<moles> labor, lobor
<monkeys> tribe, troop
<mules> barren, pack, rake, span
<nightingales> watch
<owls> parliament, wisdom
<oxen> team, yoke, drove, herd
<oysters> bed
<parrots> company
<partridges> covey
<peacocks> muster, ostentation
<penguins> colony
<pheasants> bouquet, covey, nest, nye, nide
<pigeons> flock
<pigs> drove, litter, herd
<plovers> congregation, wing
<polar bears> aurora
<ponies> string
<porpoises> school
<quails> bevy, covey
<rabbits> colony, nest
<racehorses> field
<ravens> conspiracy, unkindness
<reindeers> herd
<rhinoceroses> crash
<seals> pod, herd, school, trip, harem, rookery, spring
<sheeps> drove, flock, herd
<skunks> stench
<slugs> cornucopia
<snakes> bed, slither
<sparrows> host
<squirrels> dray
<starlings> murmuration
<storks> mustering
<swallows> flight
<swans> ballet, bevy, wedge
<swines> drift, sounder
<teal> spring
<tigers> hide, streak
<toads> knot
<trout> hover
<turkeys> rafter
<turtledoves> pitying
<turtles> bale, bevy
<unicorns> blessing
<wasps> pail
<waterfowl> plump
<weasels> gam, sneak
<whales> gam, herd, pod, shoal, surfers
<wolves> pack, rout
<woodchucks> fall
<woodpeckers> descent
<worms> wriggle
<zebras> herd, stripe

72 animal young names

<antelope> calf
<bear> cub, whelp
<beaver> kit, kitten, pup
<bird> fledgling, nestling
<bison> calf
<bovine> calf
<cat> kit, kitten, kitty, puss, pussy
<cattle> calf, yearling
<chicken> chick, pullet, cockerel
<cow> calf, heifer
<deer> fawn
<dog> pup, whelp
<duck> duckling
<eagle> eaglet, fledgling
<elephant> calf
<elk> calf
<falcon> cast
<fish> fingerling, fry
<fox> cub, kit, pup, whelp
<frog> polliwog, tadpole
<giraffe> cub, whelp
<goat> kid
<goose> gosling
<grouse> cheeper, poult
<hare> leveret
<hawk> eyas
<hen> chick, pullet
<hippopotamus> calf
<horse> colt, filly, filt, foal, yearling
<kangaroo> joey
<lion> cub, whelp
<monkey> baby
<moose> cub, calf
<owl> owlet
<oyster> spat
<partridge> cheeper
<pig> piglet, shoat, farrow, suckling
<pigeon> squab, squeaker
<quail> cheeper
<rabbit> bunny, kit, leveret
<reindeer> fawn
<rhinoceros> calf
<rooster> cockerel
<sea lion> pup
<seal> calf, pup
<shark> cub
<sheep> lamb, lambkin, cosset, hog, yearling
<swan> cygnet
<swine> piglet, shoat, farrow
<tiger> cub, whelp
<turkey> poult, chick)
<whale> calf
<wolf> cub, whelp
<zebra> colt, foal

312 HUMANKIND

NOUNS **1 humankind, mankind, womankind, personkind, man,** human species, **human race,** race of man, human family, the family of man, **humanity,** human beings, mortals, earthlings, mortality, flesh, mortal flesh, clay; generation of man <old>, *le genre humain* <Fr>, “the plumeless genus of bipeds"—Plato, homo, genus Homo, **Homo sapiens,** Hominidae, hominids; archaic Homo; **race,** strain, stock, subrace, infrarace, subspecies; **culture** 373.2; ethnic group; ethnicity, ethnicism, roots <nf>; **society,** speech community, **ethnic group;** community, folk, persons, **the people, the populace,** world population; **nationality, nation**

2 <races of humankind> **Caucasoid** *or* **Caucasian** *or* **white race;** Nordic subrace, Alpine subrace, Mediterranean subrace; dolichocephalic people, brachycephalic people; xanthochroi, melanochroi; Archaic Caucasoid *or* archaic white *or* Australoid race; Polynesian race; **Negroid** *or* **black race;** Nilotic race, Melanesian race, Papuan race; Pygmoid race; Bushman race; **Mongoloid** *or* **Mongolian** *or* **yellow race;** Malayan *or* Malaysian *or* brown race; prehistoric races; majority, racial *or* ethnic majority; minority, racial *or* ethnic minority; persons of color

3 **Caucasian, white man** *or* **woman, white person,** paleface *and* ofay *and* the Man *and* Mister Charley *and* whitey *and* honky <nf>; Australian aborigine, blackfellow <Austral>; **Negro, black man** *or* **woman, black,** colored person, person of color, darky *and* spade *and* nigger <nf>; African-American; negritude, Afroism, blackness; pygmy, Negrito, Negrillo; Bushman; **Native American,** Indian, American Indian, Amerindian, Amerind, Red Indian <Brit>, red man *or* woman; injun *and* redskin <nf>; Latino; Mongolian, yellow man *or* woman, **Oriental,** Asian; gook *and* slant-eye <nf>; Malayan, brown man; mixed race, mulatto, quadroon, half-breed

4 **the people** 606, the populace, the population, the public, the world, everyone, everybody

5 **person, human, human being, man, woman, child,** member of the human race *or* family, Adamite, daughter of Eve; ethnic; **mortal,** life, **soul,** living soul; **being,** creature, fellow creature, clay, ordinary clay, flesh and blood, the naked ape, the noble animal; **individual;** personage, **personality, personhood,** individuality; **body;** somebody, one, someone; earthling, groundling, terran, worldling, tellurian; **ordinary person;** head, hand, nose; fellow <nf> 76.5; gal <nf> 77.6

6 **human nature, humanity;** frail *or* fallen humanity, Adam, the generation of Adam, Adam's seed *or* offspring

7 **God's image, lord of creation,** God's creation; homo faber, symbol-using animal; "the measure of all things"—Protagoras, "a reasoning animal"—Seneca, "the most intelligent of animals—and the most silly"—Diogenes, "a tool-using animal"—Carlyle, "a tool-making animal"—Benjamin Franklin, "the only animal that blushes or needs to"—Mark Twain, "an intelligence served by organs"—Emerson, rational animal, animal capable of reason, "this quintessence of dust"—Shakespeare, "political animal"—Aristotle; "the naked ape"—Desmond Morris

8 **humanness, humanity,** mortality; **human nature,** the way you are; **frailty,** human frailty, human fallibility, weakness, **human weakness,** weakness of the flesh, flesh, "one touch of nature"—Shakespeare, the weaknesses human flesh is heir to; human equation

9 humanization, humanizing; **anthropomorphism,** pathetic fallacy, anthropopathism, anthropomorphology

10 **anthropology,** science of man; cultural anthropology, physical anthropology, anthropogeny, anthropography, anthropogeography, human geography, demography, human ecology, anthropometry, craniometry, craniology, ethnology, ethnography, paleoanthropology, paleoethnology; behavioral science, sociology, social anthropology, social psychology, psychology 92; anatomy; **anthropologist,** ethnologist, ethnographer; sociologist; demographics, population study, population statistics; demographer

11 **humanism;** naturalistic humanism, scientific humanism, secular humanism; religious humanism; Christian humanism, integral humanism; new humanism; anthroposophy

VERBS 12 **humanize,** anthropomorphize, make human, civilize

ADJS 13 **human;** hominal; creaturely, creatural; Adamite *or* Adamitic; **frail, weak,** fleshly, finite, **mortal; only human;** earthborn, of the earth, earthy, tellurian, unangelic; humanistic; man-centered, homocentric, anthropocentric; anthropological, ethnographic, ethnological; demographic, epigraphic; social, societal, sociological

14 **manlike, anthropoid,** humanoid, hominid; anthropomorphic, anthropopathic, therioanthropic

15 **personal, individual,** private, peculiar, idiosyncratic; person-to-person, one-to-one, one-on-one

16 **public, general, common; communal, societal, social;** civic, civil; **national,** state; international, cosmopolitan, supernational, supranational

ADVS 17 **humanly,** mortally, after the manner of men

WORD ELEMENTS 18 anthrop-, anthropo-, homin-, homini-

313 SEASON

<time of year>

NOUNS 1 **season,** time of year, season of the year, **period,** annual period; dry *or* rainy *or* cold season, monsoon; theatrical *or* opera *or* concert season; **social season,** the season; dead *or* off-season; baseball season, football season, basketball season, hunting season, etc; open season, closed season; seasonality, periodicity 850.2; **seasonableness** 843.1; seasonal affective disorder *or* SAD

2 **spring,** springtide, **springtime,** seedtime *or* budtime, Maytime, Eastertide; *primavera* <Ital>, prime, prime of the year, vernal equinox, "the boyhood of the year"—Tennyson, "Sweet Spring, full of sweet days and roses"—George Herbert, "the time of the singing of birds"—Bible

3 **summer,** summertide, **summertime,** good old summertime; growing season; midsummer; **dog days,** canicular days; the silly season, high summer; summer solstice; estivation

4 **autumn, fall,** fall of the year, fall of the leaf, harvest, harvest time, harvest home; autumnal equinox; "Season of mists and mellow fruitfulness!"—Keats

5 **Indian summer,** St Martin's summer, St Luke's summer, little summer of St Luke, St Austin's *or* St Augustine's summer, "the dead Summer's soul"—Mary Clemmer

6 **winter,** wintertide, **wintertime**; midwinter; Christmastime *or* Christmastide, Yule *or* Yuletide; winter solstice; hibernation

7 **equinox,** vernal equinox, autumnal equinox; **solstice,** summer solstice, winter solstice

VERBS 8 summer, winter, overwinter, spend *or* pass the spring, summer, etc; hibernate, estivate

ADJS 9 **seasonal,** in *or* out of season, in season and out of season, off-season; early-season, mid-season, late-season; **spring,** springlike, vernal; **summer,** summery, summerly, summerlike, canicular, aestival; midsummer; **autumn,** autumnal; **winter,** wintry, wintery, hibernal, hiemal, brumal, boreal, arctic 1023.14, winterlike, snowy, icy; midwinter; equinoctial, solstitial, periodic

314 MORNING, NOON

NOUNS 1 **morning,** morn, morningtide, morning time, morntime, matins, morrow <old>, waking time, reveille, get-up time <nf>, **forenoon;** *ante meridiem* <L> *or* **AM,** Ack Emma <Brit old>; "dewy morn"—Byron; this morning, this AM <nf>; early bird; breakfast time

2 Morning, Aurora, Eos; "daughter of the dawn"—Homer, "meek-eyed Morn, mother of dews"—James Thomson

3 **dawn,** the dawn of day, dawning, **daybreak,** dayspring, day-peep, **sunrise, sunup** <nf>, cockcrowing *or* cocklight <Brit nf>, light 1025, first light, daylight, aurora; **break of day,** peep of day, **crack of dawn,** prime, prime of the morning, first blush *or* flush of the morning, brightening *or* first brightening; "the opening eyelids of the morn"—Milton, "vestibule of Day"—Bayard Taylor; chanticleer *or* chantecler

4 **foredawn,** twilight, morning twilight, half-light, glow, dawnlight, first light, "the dawn's early light"—Francis Scott Key, crepuscule, aurora; **the small hours;** alpenglow

5 **noon, noonday,** noontide, nooning <nf>, noontime, **high noon, midday,** meridian, *meridiem* <L>, twelve o'clock, 1200 hours, eight bells; noonlight, "the blaze of noon"—Milton; meridian devil *or* *daemonium meridianum* <L>; lunchtime; sext

ADJS 6 **morning,** matin, matinal, matutinal, **antemeridian;** auroral, dawn, dawning; forenoon

7 **noon,** noonday, noonish, **midday,** meridian, twelve-o'clock, high-noon; noonlit

ADVS 8 **in the morning,** before noon, mornings <nf>; at sunrise, at dawn, at dawn of day, at cockcrow, at first light, **at the crack** *or* **break of dawn;** with the sun, with the lark

9 at noon, at midday, at twelve-o'clock sharp

315 EVENING, NIGHT

NOUNS 1 **afternoon,** *post meridiem* <L> *or* **PM;** this afternoon, this aft <nf>, this PM <nf>; matinee; siesta

2 **evening,** eve, even, evensong time *or* hour, **eventide,** vesper, crepuscle; **close of day,** decline *or* fall of day, shut of day, gray of the evening, grayness 39, evening's close, when day is done; **nightfall, sunset, sundown,** setting sun, going down of the sun, cockshut *and* cockshut time *and* cockshut light <nf>, retreat; shank of the afternoon *or* evening <nf>, the cool of the evening; "the expiring day"—Dante, "evening's calm and holy hour"—S G Bulfinch; cocktail hour, suppertime, dinnertime

3 **dusk,** dusking time *or* -tide, dusk-dark *and* dust-dark *and* dusty-dark <nf>, **twilight,** evening twilight, crepuscule, crepuscular light, gloam, **gloaming,** glooming; duskiness, duskishness, brown of dusk, brownness 40, candlelight, candlelighting, owllight *or* owl's light, cocklight <Brit nf>, "the pale dusk of the impending night"—Longfellow

4 **night, nighttime,** nighttide, lights-out, taps, bedtime, sleepy time <nf>, **darkness** 1027, blackness 38, "sable-vested Night, eldest of things"—Milton, "empress of silence, and the queen of sleep"—Christopher Marlowe; dark of night

5 eleventh hour, curfew

6 **midnight, dead of night,** hush of night, the witching hour; "the very witching time of night"—Shakespeare, "outpost of advancing day"—Longfellow; midnight hours, small *or* wee small hours; late-night *or* midnight supper *or* snack

ADJS 7 **afternoon,** postmeridian

8 **evening,** evensong, vesper, vespertine *or* vespertinal, vesperal; **twilight,** twilighty, twilit, crepuscular; **dusk,** dusky, duskish

9 **nocturnal,** night, **nightly,** nighttime; nightlong, all-night; night-fallen; midnight

10 **benighted,** night-overtaken

ADVS 11 **nightly,** nights <nf>, at *or* by night; **overnight,** through the night, all through the night, nightlong, the whole night, all night

WORD ELEMENTS 12 noc-, nocto-, nocti-, nyct-, nycto-, nycti-

316 RAIN

NOUNS 1 **rain, rainfall,** fall, **precipitation,** moisture, wet, rainwater, raininess; **shower, sprinkle,** flurry, patter, pitter-patter, splatter, intermittent rain *or* showers; streams of rain, sheet of rain, splash *or* spurt of rain, fine rain, light rain, occasional rain *or* showers, April showers; **drizzle,** mizzle; **mist,** misty rain, Scotch mist; evening mist; fog drip; blood rain; raindrop, unfrozen hydrometeor; acid rain

2 **rainstorm,** brash *and* scud <Scot>; **cloudburst,** rainburst, burst of rain, torrent of rain, torrential rain *or* downpour; waterspout, spout, rainspout, **downpour,** downflow, downfall, pour, pouring *or* pelting *or* teeming *or* drowning rain, spate <Scot>, plash <nf>, **deluge, flood,** heavy rain, driving *or* gushing rain, drenching *or* soaking rain, drencher, soaker, gullywasher, pluviosity, goosedrownder <nf>, lovely weather for ducks

3 **thunderstorm,** thundersquall, thundergust, thundershower; electric storm

4 **wet weather, raininess,** rainy weather, stormy *or* dirty weather, rainy season, cat-and-dog weather <nf>, spell of rain, wet; rainy day; **rains,** rainy *or* wet season, spring rains, **monsoon;** predominance of Aquarius, reign of St Swithin; flood

5 **rainmaking,** seeding, cloud seeding, nucleation, artificial nucleation; **rainmaker,** rain doctor, cloud seeder; dry ice, silver iodide

6 Jupiter Pluvius, Zeus; Thor

7 **rain gauge,** pluviometer, pluvioscope, pluviograph; ombrometer, ombrograph; udometer, udomograph; hyetometer, hyetometrograph, hyetograph

8 **rainbow,** arc, double rainbow, primary rainbow, secondary rainbow, fogdog, fogbow *or* white rainbow, mistbow *or* seadog

9 <science of precipitation> hydrometeorology, hyetology, hyetography; pluviography, pluviometry, ombrology

VERBS 10 **rain, precipitate,** rain down, fall; weep; **shower,** shower down; **sprinkle,** spit *and* spritz <nf>, spatter, patter, pitter-patter, plash; **drizzle,** mizzle; **pour,** stream, stream down, pour with rain, **pelt,** pelt down, drum, tattoo, come down in torrents *or* sheets *or* buckets *or* curtains, **rain cats and dogs** <nf>, rain tadpoles *or* bullfrogs *or* pitchforks <nf>, "rain daggers with their points downward"—Robert Burton; rainmake, seed clouds

ADJS 11 **rainy, showery;** pluvious *or* pluviose *or* pluvial; **drizzly,** drizzling, mizzly, drippy; **misty,** misty-moisty; torrential, pouring, streaming, pelting, drumming, driving, blinding, cat-and-doggish <nf>; wet

12 pluviometric *or* pluvioscopic *or* pluviographic, ombrometric *or* ombrographic, udometric *or* udographic, hyetometric, hyetographic, hyetometrographic; hydrometeorological, hyetological

317 AIR, WEATHER

NOUNS 1 **air;** ether; ozone <nf>; thin air, rarity

2 **atmosphere;** aerosphere, gaseous envelope *or* environment *or* medium *or* blanket, welkin, lift <nf>; biosphere, ecosphere, noosphere; air mass; atmospheric component, atmospheric gas; atmospheric layer *or* stratum *or* belt <see list>

3 **weather, climate,** clime; **the elements,** forces of nature; microclimate, macroclimate; weather situation, weather pattern, weather conditions; fair weather, calm weather, halcyon days, good weather; stormy weather 671.4; rainy weather 316.4; windiness 318.15; heat wave, hot weather 1019.7; cold wave, cold weather 1023.3

4 weather map; isobar, isobaric *or* isopiestic line; isotherm, isothermal line; isometric, isometric line; frontal system; high, high-pressure area, ridge; low, low-pressure area; front, wind-shift line, squall line; cold front, polar front, cold sector; warm front; occluded front, occlusion, stationary front; air mass; thermal, downdraft, updraft; cyclone, anticyclone; air pressure, air temperature, heat index, temperature-humidity index, dewpoint;

humidity, relative humidity; precipitation; wind speed, wind strength, chill factor, wind-chill factor

5 **meteorology,** weather science, aerology, aerography, air-mass analysis, weatherology, climatology, climatography, microclimatology, forecasting, long-range forecasting; barometry; pneumatics 1038.5; anemology 318.16; nephology 319.5 anemometry, anemology, hyetography, nephology, micrometeorology, macrometeorology, mesometeorology, agricultural meteorology, aviation meteorology, maritime meteorology, hydrometeorology, mountain meteorology, planetary meteorology, atmospheric physics

6 **meteorologist,** weather scientist, aerologist, aerographer, weatherologist; climatologist, microclimatologist; **weatherman, weather forecaster,** weather prophet; **weather report,** weather forecast; weather bureau; weather ship; weather station; weather-reporting network

7 weather forecast, forecast, weather report, regional forecast, local forecast, general outlook, travel report, boating report, small craft advisory, long-term forecast, 5-day forecast, storm watch *or* warning, tornado watch *or* warning, hurricane watch *or* warning

8 weather instrument, meteorological *or* aerological instrument; **barometer,** aneroid barometer, glass, weatherglass; barograph, barometrograph, recording barometer, mercury barometer; thermometer, thermograph; aneroidograph; vacuometer; hygrometer; wind gauge, anemometer, anemograph, wind sock, wind cone, wind sleeve, drogue, weathercock; rain gauge, pluviometer, udometer; weather balloon, radiosonde; weather satellite, weather radar; hurricane-hunter aircraft; weather vane 318.17

9 **ventilation,** cross-ventilation, **airing,** aerage, perflation, refreshment; fanning, **aeration; air conditioning,** air cooling; oxygenation, oxygenization

10 **ventilator; aerator; air conditioner,** air filter, air cooler, ventilating *or* cooling system; blower; heat pump; air passage; fan

VERBS 11 **air,** air out, **ventilate,** cross-ventilate, wind, refresh, freshen; **air-condition,** air-cool; **fan,** winnow; **aerate,** airify, aerify; oxygenate, oxygenize

ADJS 12 **airy,** aery, **aerial,** aeriform, airlike, aeriferous, **pneumatic,** ethereal; exposed, roomy, light; airish, breezy; open-air, alfresco; **atmospheric,** tropospheric, stratospheric

13 **climatal, climatic,** climatical, climatographical, **elemental;** meteorological, meteorologic, aerologic, aerological, aerographic, aerographical, climatologic, climatological; macroclimatic, microclimatic, microclimatologic; barometric, barometrical, baric, barographic; isobaric, isopiestic, isometric; high-pressure, low-pressure; cyclonic, anti-cyclonic; seasonal

14 **atmospheric layers**

boundary layer
chemosphere
D layer *or* region
E *or* Heaviside *or* Kennelly-Heaviside layer *or* region
exosphere
F_1 layer *or* region
F_2 *or* Appleton layer *or* region
ionosphere
isothermal region
lower atmosphere
magnetosphere
mesosphere
outer atmosphere
ozone layer *or* ozonosphere
stratopause
stratosphere
substratosphere
thermosphere
tropopause
troposphere
upper atmosphere
Van Allen belt *or* radiation belt

318 WIND

<airflow>

NOUNS 1 **wind,** current, **air current,** current of air, **draft,** movement of air, stream, stream of air, flow of air; updraft, uprush; downdraft, downrush, microburst; indraft, inflow, inrush; crosscurrent, crosswind, undercurrent; fall wind, gravity wind, katabatic wind, anabatic wind, head wind, tail wind, following wind; wind aloft; jet stream, upper-atmosphere *or* upper-atmospheric wind, high-altitude wind, gradient wind, geostrophic wind, prevailing wind; surface wind, mountain wind, valley wind; wind shift, wind shear

2 "scolding winds"—Shakespeare, "the wings of the wind"—Bible

3 <wind god; the wind personified> Aeolus, Boreas, Aquilo <north wind>; Eurus <east wind>; Zephyr *or* Zephyrus, Favonius <west wind>; Notus, Auster <south wind>; Caurus *or* Caecias <northwest wind>; Afer *or* Africus <southwest wind>; Argestes <northeast wind>

4 **puff,** puff of air *or* wind, breath, breath of air, flatus, waft, capful of wind, whiff, whiffet, stir of air

5 **breeze,** light *or* gentle wind *or* breeze, softblowing wind, **zephyr,** gale <old>, air, light air, moderate breeze; fresh *or* stiff breeze; cool *or* cooling breeze; land breeze; sea breeze, onshore breeze, ocean breeze, cat's-paw

6 **gust,** wind gust, **blast,** blow, flaw, **flurry,** scud <Scot>, squall

7 **hot wind;** snow eater, thawer; chinook, **chinook wind;** simoom, samiel; foehn *or* föhn; khamsin; harmattan; sirocco *or* yugo; solano; Santa Ana; volcanic wind

8 **wintry wind,** winter wind, raw wind, chilling *or* freezing wind, bone-chilling wind, sharp *or* piercing wind, cold *or* icy wind, biting wind, the

hawk <nf>, nipping *or* nippy wind, “a nipping and an eager air”—Shakespeare, icy blasts; Arctic *or* boreal *or* hyperboreal *or* hyperborean blast; wind chill *or* wind chill factor

9 **north wind, norther,** mistral, bise, tramontane, Etesian winds, meltemi, vardarac, Papagayo wind; northeaster, **nor'easter,** Euroclydon *or* gregale *or* gregal *or* gregau, bura, Tehuantepec wind, Tehuantepecer; northwester, **nor'wester;** southeaster, **sou'easter;** southwester, **sou'wester,** kite-wind, libeccio; **east wind,** easter, easterly, levanter, sharav; **west wind,** wester, westerly; **south wind,** souther, southerly buster <Austral>

10 prevailing wind; polar easterlies; prevailing westerlies, prevailing southwesterlies, prevailing northwesterlies, antitrades; trade winds *or* trades; antitrade winds; doldrums, wind-equator; horse latitudes, roaring forties; intertropical convergence zone *or* ITCZ; equatorial low *or* doldrums

11 <naut terms> **head wind, beam wind, tail wind,** following wind, fair *or* favorable wind, apparent *or* relative wind, backing wind, veering wind, slant of wind; onshore wind, offshore wind, wind shear

12 **windstorm,** vortex, eddy, big *or* great *or* fresh *or* strong *or* stiff *or* high *or* howling *or* spanking wind, ill *or* dirty *or* ugly wind; storm, storm wind, stormy winds, **tempest,** tempestuous wind; williwaw; **blow,** violent *or* heavy blow; **squall,** thick squall, black squall, white squall; squall line, wind-shift line, line squall; line storm; equinoctial; **gale,** half a gale, whole gale; tropical cyclone, **hurricane,** typhoon, tropical storm, **blizzard** 1023.8; **thundersquall,** thundergust; wind shear

13 **dust storm, sandstorm,** shaitan, peesash, devil, khamsin, sirocco, simoom, samiel, harmattan

14 **whirlwind,** whirlblast, tourbillon, wind eddy; **cyclone, tornado, twister,** rotary storm, typhoon, *baguio* <Sp>; sandspout, sand column, dust devil; waterspout, rainspout

15 **windiness,** gustiness; airiness, **breeziness;** draftiness

16 **anemology,** anemometry; **wind direction; wind force, Beaufort scale,** half-Beaufort scale, International scale; wind rose, barometric wind rose, humidity wind rose, hyetal *or* rain wind rose, temperature wind rose, dynamic wind rose; wind arrow, wind marker

17 **weather vane, weathercock,** vane, cock, wind vane, wind indicator, wind cone *or* sleeve *or* sock, anemoscope; anemometer, wind-speed indicator, anemograph, anemometrograph

18 **blower,** bellows; blowpipe, blowtube, blowgun

19 **fan,** flabellum; punkah, thermantidote, electric fan, blower, window fan, attic fan, exhaust fan; ventilator; windsail, windscoop, windcatcher

VERBS **20** **blow, waft; puff,** huff, whiff; whiffle; **breeze;** breeze up, freshen; **gather, brew,** set in, blow up, pipe up, come up, **blow up a storm;** bluster, squall; **storm,** rage, blast, blow great guns, blow a hurricane; blow over

21 **sigh,** sough, whisper, mutter, murmur, **sob, moan,** groan, growl, snarl, **wail, howl,** scream, screech, shriek, **roar,** whistle, pipe, sing, sing in the shrouds

ADJS **22** **windy, blowy; breezy, drafty,** airy, airish; brisk, fresh; **gusty,** blasty, puffy, flawy; **squally;** prevailing; blustery, blustering, blusterous; aeolian, favonian, boreal; ventose

23 **stormy, tempestuous,** raging, storming, angry; turbulent; gale-force, storm-force, hurricane-force; dirty, foul; cyclonic, tornadic, typhonic, typhoonish; inclement; rainy 316.10; cloudy 319.8

24 **windblown,** blown; **windswept,** bleak, raw, exposed

25 anemological, anemographic, anemometric, anemometrical

319 CLOUD

NOUNS **1** **cloud,** high fog; “the clouds—the only birds that never sleep”—Victor Hugo, “islands on a dark-blue sea”—Shelley; fleecy cloud, cottony cloud, billowy cloud; **cloud bank,** cloud mass, cloud cover, cloud drift; cloudling, cloudlet; cloudscape, cloud band; cloudland, Cloudcuckooland *or* Nephelococcygia <Aristophanes>; mackerel sky, buttermilk sky

2 <cloud types> ice cloud, water cloud, storm cloud, thunderhead, thunder cloud; cirrus, cirrocumulus, altostratus, cirrostratus, altocumulus, nimbostratus, stratocumulus *or* cumulostratus, stratus, cumulus, cumulonimbus, nimbus

3 **fog,** pea soup *and* peasouper *and* pea-soup fog <nf>; ground fog, coastal fog, fog drip, dense fog; London fog, London special <Brit nf>, Scotch mist, brume; fog-bank; **smog** <smoke-fog>, smaze <smoke-haze>; frost smoke; mist, drizzling mist, drisk <nf>; haze, gauze, film; vapor 1067

4 **cloudiness,** cloud cover, **haziness, mistiness, fogginess,** nebulosity, nubilation, nimbosity, **overcast,** heavy sky, dirty sky, lowering *or* louring sky

5 nephology, nephelognosy; nephologist

6 nephelometer, nepheloscope

VERBS **7** **cloud,** becloud, encloud, cloud over, overcloud, cloud up, clabber up <nf>, **overcast,** overshadow, shadow, shade, **darken** 1026.9, darken over, nubilate, obnubilate, obscure; **smoke,** oversmoke; **fog,** befog; fog in; smog; **mist,** mist over, mist up, bemist, enmist; **haze**

ADJS 8 **cloudy,** nebulous, nubilous, nimbose, nebulosus, nephological; **clouded,** overclouded, **overcast;** dirty, heavy, lowering *or* louring; dark 1026.13; **gloomy** 1027.14; cloud-flecked; cirrous, cirrose; cumulous, cumuliform, stratous, stratiform, cirrocumiliform, cirrocumuous, altocumuliform, altocumulous, altostratous, cirrostratous, nimbostratous, cumulonimbiform; lenticularis, mammatus, castellatus; thunderheaded, stormy, squally

9 **cloud-covered,** cloud-laden, cloud-curtained, cloud-crammed, cloud-crossed, cloud-decked, cloud-hidden, cloud-wrapped, cloud-enveloped, cloud-surrounded, cloud-girt, cloud-flecked, cloud-eclipsed, **cloud-capped,** cloud-topped

10 **foggy,** soupy *or* pea-soupy <nf>, nubilous; fog-bound, fogged-in; smoggy; hazy, misty; so foggy the seagulls are walking, so thick you can cut it with a knife

11 nephological

320 BUBBLE

NOUNS 1 **bubble,** bleb, **globule;** vesicle, bulla, **blister,** blood blister, fever blister; balloon, bladder 195.2; air bubble, soap bubble

2 **foam, froth; spume,** sea foam, scud; **spray, surf,** breakers, white water, spoondrift *or* **spindrift; suds, lather,** soap-suds; beer-suds, head; **scum,** off-scum; head, collar; puff, mousse, soufflé, meringue

3 **bubbling,** bubbliness, **effervescence** *or* effervescency, **sparkle,** spumescence, frothiness, frothing, foaming; **fizz,** fizzle, carbonation; ebullience *or* ebulliency; **ebullition,** boiling; **fermentation,** ferment

VERBS 4 **bubble,** bubble up, burble; **effervesce, fizz, fizzle;** hiss, **sparkle; ferment,** work; **foam, froth,** froth up; have a head, foam over; **boil,** seethe, simmer; plop, blubber; guggle, gurgle; bubble over, **boil over**

5 **foam, froth,** spume, cream; **lather,** suds, sud; scum, mantle; **aerate,** whip, beat, whisk

ADJS 6 **bubbly,** burbly, **bubbling,** burbling; **effervescent,** spumescent, **fizzy, sparkling,** *mousseux* <Fr>, *spumante* <Ital>; carbonated; ebullient; puffed, soufflé *or* souffléed, beaten, whipped, chiffon; **blistered,** blistery, blebby, vesicated, vesicular; blistering, vesicant, vesicatory

7 **foamy,** foam-flecked, **frothy,** spumy, spumous *or* spumose; yeasty, barmy; **sudsy,** suddy, **lathery,** soapy, soapsudsy, soapsuddy; heady, with a head *or* collar on

321 BEHAVIOR

NOUNS 1 **behavior, conduct, deportment, comportment, manner, manners, demeanor, mien,** *maintien* <Fr>, **carriage, bearing,** port, poise, posture, guise, **air,** address, presence; tone, style, lifestyle; way of life, habit of life, modus vivendi; **way, way of acting, ways; trait behavior,** behavior trait; methods, **method, methodology; practice,** praxis; procedure, proceeding; **actions,** acts, goings-on, doings, what one is up to, movements, moves, tactics; action, doing 328.1; activity 330; objective *or* observable behavior; motions, gestures, gesticulation; pose, affectation 500; pattern, behavior pattern; Type A behavior, Type B behavior; culture pattern, behavioral norm, folkway, **custom** 373; behavioral science, social science

2 **good behavior,** sanctioned behavior; good citizenship; good manners, correct deportment, **etiquette** 580.3; **courtesy** 504; social behavior, sociability 582; bad *or* poor behavior, **misbehavior** 322; **discourtesy** 505

3 **behaviorism,** behavioral science, behavior *or* behavioristic psychology, Watsonian psychology, Skinnerian psychology; behavior modification, behavior therapy ethology, animal behavior, human behavior, social behavior, ethology

VERBS 4 **behave, act, do,** go on; **behave oneself, conduct oneself,** manage oneself, **handle oneself,** guide oneself, **comport oneself, deport oneself,** demean oneself, **bear oneself, carry oneself;** acquit oneself, quit oneself <old>; proceed, move, swing into action; **misbehave** 322.4

5 **behave oneself, behave,** act well, clean up one's act <nf>, act one's age, **be good,** be nice, **do right,** do what is right, do the right *or* proper thing, keep out of mischief, play the game *and* mind one's P's and Q's <nf>, be on one's good *or* best behavior, play one's cards right, set a good example

6 **treat, use, do by,** deal by, **act** *or* **behave toward,** conduct oneself toward, act with regard to, conduct oneself vis-à-vis *or* in the face of; **deal with,** cope with, **handle;** respond to

ADJS 7 **behavioral;** behaviorist, behavioristic; ethological; **behaved,** behaviored, **mannered,** demeanored

322 MISBEHAVIOR

NOUNS 1 **misbehavior, misconduct,** misdemeanor <old>; unsanctioned *or* nonsanctioned behavior; frowned-upon behavior; **naughtiness,** badness; impropriety; venial sin; **disorderly conduct,** disorder, disorderliness, disruptiveness, disruption,

rowdiness, rowdyism, riotousness, ruffianism, hooliganism, hoodlumism, aggro <Brit nf>; vandalism, trashing; roughhouse, horseplay; discourtesy 505; vice 654; misfeasance, malfeasance, misdoing, delinquency, **wrongdoing** 655

2 **mischief, mischievousness; devilment, deviltry,** devilry; **roguishness,** roguery, scampishness; **waggery,** waggishness; **impishness,** devilishness, puckishness, elfishness; **prankishness,** pranksomeness; sportiveness, playfulness, *espièglerie* <Fr>; high spirits, youthful spirits; foolishness 923

3 **mischief-maker,** mischief, **rogue, devil,** knave, **rascal,** rapscallion, scapegrace, **scamp; wag** 489.12; buffoon 707.10; funmaker, joker, jokester, practical joker, prankster, life of the party, **cutup** <nf>; **rowdy,** ruffian, hoodlum, hood <nf>, hooligan; **imp, elf, puck,** pixie, **minx,** bad boy, bugger *and* booger <nf>, little devil, little rascal, little monkey, *enfant terrible* <Fr>

VERBS 4 **misbehave,** misdemean <old>, **misbehave oneself, misconduct oneself,** misdemean oneself <old>, behave ill; get into mischief; **act up** *and* make waves *and* **carry on** *and* carry on something scandalous <nf>, sow one's wild oats; **cut up** <nf>, horse around <nf>, roughhouse *and* cut up rough <nf>; play the fool 923.6

ADJS 5 **misbehaving, unbehaving; naughty, bad;** improper, not respectable; out-of-order *and* off-base *and* out-of-line <nf>; **disorderly,** disruptive, **rowdy,** rowdyish, **ruffianly**

6 **mischievous,** mischief-loving, full of mischief, full of the devil *or* old nick; **roguish,** scampish, scapegrace, arch, knavish; **devilish; impish, puckish, elfish,** elvish; **waggish, prankish,** pranky, pranksome, trickish, tricksy; **playful,** sportive, high-spirited, *espiègle* <Fr>; foolish 923.8,9

ADVS 7 **mischievously, roguishly,** knavishly, scampishly, devilishly; impishly, puckishly, elfishly; waggishly; prankishly, playfully, sportively, in fun

323 WILL

NOUNS 1 **will, volition; choice,** determination, **decision** 371.1; **wish, mind, fancy,** discretion, pleasure, **inclination, disposition,** liking, appetence, appetency, **desire** 100; half a mind *or* notion, idle wish, velleity; **appetite, passion, lust, sexual desire** 75.5; animus, **objective, intention** 380; **command** 420; **free choice,** one's own will *or* choice *or* discretion *or* initiative, **free will** 430.6, free hand; conation, conatus; will power, **resolution** 359; final will *or* wishes

VERBS 2 **will, wish,** see *or* think fit, think good, think proper, **choose to, have a mind to;** have half a mind *or* notion to; **choose,** determine, **decide** 371.14,16; **resolve** 359.7; command, decree; **desire** 100.14,18

3 have one's will, **have** *or* **get one's way, get one's wish, have one's druthers** <nf>, **write one's own ticket,** have it all one's way, do *or* go as one pleases, please oneself; assert oneself, take the bit in one's teeth, take charge of one's destiny; stand on one's rights; take the law into one's own hands; have the last word, impose one's will; know one's own mind

ADJS 4 **volitional, volitive; willing, voluntary;** conative; *ex gratia* <L>; intentional

ADVS 5 **at will,** at choice, at pleasure, *al piacere* <Ital>, **at one's pleasure,** *a beneplacito* <Ital>, at one's will and pleasure, at one's own sweet will, **at one's discretion,** *à discrétion* <Fr>, *ad arbitrium* <L>; *ad libitum* <L>, ad lib; as one wishes, as it pleases *or* suits oneself, **in one's own way,** in one's own sweet way *or* time <nf>, **as one thinks best,** as it seems good *or* best, as far as one desires; of one's own free will, of one's own accord, on one's own; without coercion, unforced

324 WILLINGNESS

NOUNS 1 **willingness, gameness** <nf>, readiness; **unreluctance,** unloathness, ungrudgingness; agreeableness, **agreeability,** favorableness; **acquiescence, consent** 441; **compliance,** cooperativeness; receptivity, receptiveness, responsiveness; amenability, tractableness, tractability, docility, biddability, biddableness, pliancy, pliability, malleability; **eagerness,** keenness, promptness, forwardness, alacrity, zeal, zealousness, ardor, enthusiasm, fervor; goodwill, cheerful consent; **willing heart** *or* **mind** *or* **humor, favorable disposition,** positive *or* right *or* receptive mood, willing ear

2 **voluntariness,** volunteering; **gratuitousness; spontaneity,** spontaneousness, unforcedness; **self-determination,** self-activity, self-action, autonomy, autonomousness, independence, free will 430.5–7; **volunteerism,** voluntaryism, voluntarism; volunteer; labor of love

VERBS 3 **be willing, be game** <nf>, be ready; be of favorable disposition, take the trouble, find it in one's heart, find one's heart <old>, have a willing heart; **incline, lean;** look kindly upon; be open to, bring oneself, **agree,** be agreeable to; **acquiesce, consent** 441.2; not hesitate to, would as lief, would as leave <nf>, would as lief as not, not care *or* mind if one does <nf>; **play** *or* **go along** <nf>, do one's part *or* bit, have a good mind to; be eager, be keen, be dying to, fall all over oneself, be spoiling for, be champing at the bit; be Johnny on the spot, step into the breach; **enter with a will,** lean *or* bend over backward, go into heart and soul, go the extra mile, plunge into; **cooperate,** collaborate 450.3; lend *or* give *or* turn a willing ear

4 **volunteer,** do voluntarily, do ex gratia, **do of one's own accord,** do of one's own volition, **do of one's own free will** *or* **choice;** do independently; put forward, sacrifice oneself

ADJS 5 **willing, willinghearted, ready, game** <nf>; **disposed, inclined, minded, willed,** fain *and* prone <old>; **well-disposed,** well-inclined, favorably inclined *or* disposed; predisposed; **favorable, agreeable, cooperative; compliant,** content <old>, **acquiescent** 332.13, **consenting** 441.4; **eager;** keen, prompt, quick, alacritous, forward, ready and willing, zealous, ardent, enthusiastic; in the mood *or* vein *or* humor *or* mind, in a good mood; receptive, responsive; amenable, tractable, docile, pliant, in favor

6 **ungrudging,** ungrumbling, **unreluctant,** unloath, **nothing loath,** unaverse, unshrinking

7 **voluntary, volunteer;** *ex gratia* <L>, **gratuitous; spontaneous, free, freewill;** offered, proffered; **discretionary,** discretional, nonmandatory, **optional,** elective; arbitrary; **self-determined,** self-determining, autonomous, independent, self-active, self-acting; **unsought,** unbesought, **unasked,** unrequested, **unsolicited, uninvited,** unbidden, uncalled-for; **unforced,** uncoerced, unpressured, unrequired, uncompelled; unprompted, uninfluenced; spontaneous

ADVS 8 **willingly, with a will,** with good will, with right good will, *de bonne volonté* <Fr>; **eagerly,** with zest, with relish, with open arms, without question, zealously, ardently, enthusiastically; **readily,** promptly, at the drop of a hat <nf>

9 **agreeably, favorably, compliantly;** lief, lieve <nf>, fain, as lief, as lief as not; **ungrudgingly,** ungrumblingly, **unreluctantly, nothing loath,** without reluctance *or* demur *or* hesitation, unstintingly, unreservedly

10 **voluntarily, freely, gratuitously, spontaneously;** optionally, electively, by choice; **of one's own accord,** of one's own free will, of one's own volition, without reservation, of one's own choice, at one's own discretion; without coercion *or* pressure *or* compulsion *or* intimidation; independently

325 UNWILLINGNESS

NOUNS 1 **refusal** 442, **unwillingness, disinclination,** nolition, **indisposition,** indisposedness, **reluctance,** renitency, renitence, grudgingness, grudging consent; unenthusiasm, lack of enthusiasm *or* zeal *or* eagerness, slowness, backwardness, dragging of the feet *and* foot-dragging <nf>, apathy, indifference; sullenness, sulk, sulks, sulkiness; cursoriness, perfunctoriness; recalcitrance *or* recalcitrancy, disobedience, refractoriness, fractiousness, intractableness, indocility, mutinousness; averseness, aversion, repugnance, antipathy, distaste, disrelish, no stomach for; **obstinacy, stubbornness** 361.1; opposition 451; **resistance** 453; **disagreement,** dissent 456.3

2 **demur,** demurral, **scruple, qualm,** qualm of conscience, reservation, compunction; **hesitation,** hesitancy *or* hesitance, pause, boggle, **falter;** qualmishness, scrupulousness, scrupulosity; **stickling,** boggling; **faltering;** shrinking; shyness, **diffidence,** modesty, bashfulness, retiring disposition, restraint; recoil; **protest, objection** 333.2

VERBS 3 **refuse** 442.3, **be unwilling, would** *or* **had rather not, not care to,** not feel like <nf>, not find it in one's heart to, not have the heart *or* stomach to; **mind,** object to, draw the line at, be dead set against, **balk at;** grudge, begrudge

4 **demur, scruple,** have qualms *or* scruples; **stickle, stick at,** boggle, strain; falter, waver; **hesitate,** pause, be half-hearted, **hang back,** hang off, hold off; **fight shy of,** shy at, shy, crane, shrink, recoil, blench, flinch, wince, quail, pull back; make bones about *or* of

ADJS 5 **unwilling, disinclined, indisposed,** not in the mood, averse, not feeling like; **unconsenting** 442.6; dead set against, opposed 451.8; **resistant** 453.5; **disagreeing,** differing, at odds 456.16; disobedient, recalcitrant, refractory, fractious, sullen, sulky, indocile, mutinous; cursory, perfunctory; **involuntary, forced**

6 **reluctant,** renitent, **grudging, loath;** backward, laggard, dilatory, slow, slow to, foot-dragging; unenthusiastic, unzealous, indifferent, apathetic, perfunctory; balky, balking, restive

7 **demurring, qualmish,** boggling, stickling, hedging, squeamish, **scrupulous; diffident,** shy, modest, bashful; **hesitant,** hesitating, faltering; shrinking

ADVS 8 **unwillingly, involuntarily, against one's will,** *à contre coeur* <Fr>; under compulsion *or* coercion *or* pressure; in spite of oneself, *malgré soi* <Fr>

9 **reluctantly, grudgingly,** sullenly, sulkily; unenthusiastically, perfunctorily; with dragging feet, with a bad *or* an ill grace, **under protest;** with a heavy heart, with no heart *or* stomach; over one's dead body, not on one's life

326 OBEDIENCE

NOUNS **1** **obedience** *or* **obediency,** compliance; acquiescence, consent 441; **deference** 155.1, self-abnegation, submission, submissiveness 433.3; servility 138; eagerness *or* readiness *or* willingness to serve, **dutifulness,** duteousness; **service,** servitium, homage, fealty, **allegiance, loyalty,** faithfulness, faith, suit and service *or* suit service, observance <old>; doglike devotion *or* obedience; **conformity** 867, lockstep; law-abidingness; obeisance

VERBS **2** **obey, mind, heed, keep, observe,** listen *or* hearken to; **comply, conform** 867.3, walk in lockstep; stay in line *and* not get out of line *and* not get off base <nf>, **toe the line** *or* mark, come to heel, fall in, fall in line, obey the rules, follow the book, keep the law, **do what one is told;** do as one says, do the will of, defer to 155.4, do one's bidding, come at one's call, lie down and roll over for <nf>; take orders, attend to orders, do suit and service, follow the lead of; **submit** 433.6,9

ADJS **3** **obedient, compliant,** complying, allegiant; **acquiescent,** consenting 441.4, **submissive** 433.12, deferential 155.8, self-abnegating; willing, **dutiful,** duteous; under control; loyal, faithful, devoted; uncritical, unshakeable, doglike; conforming, in conformity; law-abiding

4 **at one's command,** at one's whim *or* pleasure, at one's disposal, at one's nod, at one's call, **at one's beck and call**

5 **henpecked, tied to one's apron strings,** on a string, on a leash, in leading strings; wimpish <nf>; milk-toast *or* milquetoast, Caspar Milquetoast; under one's thumb

ADVS **6** **obediently, compliantly; acquiescently, submissively** 433.17; willingly, **dutifully,** duteously; loyally, faithfully, devotedly; in obedience to, in compliance *or* conformity with

7 at your service *or* command *or* orders, as you please, as you will, as thou wilt <old>

327 DISOBEDIENCE

NOUNS **1** **disobedience,** nonobedience, **noncompliance; undutifulness,** unduteousness; willful disobedience; **insubordination,** indiscipline; **unsubmissiveness, intractability,** indocility 361.4, recusancy; **nonconformity** 868; **disrespect** 156; **lawlessness,** waywardness, frowardness, naughtiness; violation, transgression, infraction, infringement, lawbreaking; civil disobedience, passive resistance; uncooperativeness, noncooperation; **dereliction,** deliberate negligence, default, delinquency, nonfeasance

2 **defiance, refractoriness, recalcitrance** *or* recalcitrancy, recalcitration, defiance of authority, contumacy, **contumaciousness, obstreperousness, unruliness,** restiveness, fractiousness, orneriness *and* feistiness <nf>; wildness 430.3; **obstinacy, stubbornness** 361.1

3 **rebelliousness, mutinousness;** riotousness; insurrectionism, insurgentism; factiousness, **sedition,** seditiousness; treasonableness, traitorousness, subversiveness, subversion; extremism 611.4

4 **revolt, rebellion, revolution, mutiny, insurrection, insurgence** *or* insurgency, *émeute* <Fr>, **uprising,** rising, outbreak, general uprising, *levée en masse* <Fr>, **riot,** civil disorder; peasant revolt, *jacquerie* <Fr>; putsch, coup, coup d'état; **strike, general strike;** intifada; resistance movement, resistance; terrorism

5 **rebel,** revolter; **insurgent,** insurrectionary, insurrecto, **insurrectionist;** malcontent, *frondeur* <Fr>; **insubordinate; mutineer,** rioter, brawler; maverick <nf>, noncooperator, troublemaker, refusenik <nf>, agent provocateur; nonconformist 868.3; agitator 375.11; extremist 611.12; reactionary; revolutionary, revolutionist 860.3; traitor, subversive 357.11; freedom fighter; contra

VERBS **6** **disobey,** not mind, not heed, not keep *or* observe, not listen *or* hearken, pay no attention to, **ignore, disregard, defy,** set at defiance, fly in the face of, snap one's fingers at, scoff at, flout, go counter to, set at naught, set naught by, care naught for; be a law unto oneself, step out of line, get off-base <nf>, refuse to cooperate; not conform 867.4, hear a different drummer; **violate,** transgress 435.4; break the law 674.5; thumb one's nose at

7 **revolt, rebel,** kick over the traces, reluct, reluctate; **rise up,** rise, arise, rise up in arms, mount the barricades; mount *or* make a coup d'état; **mutiny,** mutineer <old>; insurge *and* insurrect <old>, **riot,** run riot; revolutionize, revolution, revolute, subvert, overthrow 860.4; call a general strike, strike 727.8; secede, break away

ADJS **8** **disobedient, transgressive,** uncomplying, violative, lawless, wayward, froward, naughty; recusant, nonconforming 868.5; **undutiful,** unduteous; self-willed, willful, obstinate 361.8; **defiant** 454.7; **undisciplined,** ill-disciplined, indisciplined

9 **insubordinate, unsubmissive,** indocile, **uncompliant, uncooperative,** noncooperative, noncooperating, **intractable** 361.12

10 **defiant, refractory, recalcitrant, contumacious, obstreperous, unruly,** restive, impatient of control *or* discipline; fractious, ornery *and* feisty <nf>; wild, untamed 430.29

11 rebellious, rebel, breakaway; **mutinous,** mutineering; **insurgent, insurrectionary,** riotous, turbulent; factious, **seditious,** seditionary; revolutionary, revolutional; traitorous, treasonable, subversive; extreme, extremistic 611.20

ADVS **12 disobediently,** uncompliantly, against *or* contrary to order and discipline; **insubordinately, unsubmissively,** indocilely, **uncooperatively;** unresignedly; disregardfully, floutingly, **defiantly;** intractably 361.17; obstreperously, contumaciously, restively, fractiously; **rebelliously,** mutinously; riotously

328 ACTION

<voluntary action>

NOUNS **1 action, activity** 330, act, willed action *or* activity; **acting, doing,** activism, direct action, not words but action, happening; **practice,** actual practice, praxis; **exercise,** drill; **operation,** working, function, functioning; play; **operations,** affairs, workings; **business,** employment, work, occupation; **behavior** 321

2 performance, execution, carrying out, enactment; **transaction; discharge, dispatch;** conduct, **handling,** management, administration; **achievement, accomplishment, effectuation, implementation; commission, perpetration;** completion 407.2

3 act, action, deed, doing, thing, thing done, overt act; **turn; feat, stunt** *and* **trick** <nf>; **master stroke,** *tour de force* <Fr>, **exploit,** adventure, **enterprise, initiative,** achievement, accomplishment, **performance,** production, track record <nf>; gesture; effort, endeavor, job, undertaking; **transaction;** dealing, deal <nf>; passage; **operation, proceeding,** process, **step, measure, maneuver, move, movement;** policy, tactics; *démarche* <Fr>, coup, stroke; blow, go <nf>; accomplished fact, *fait accompli* <Fr>, done deal <nf>; overt act <law>; acta, *res gestae* <L>, **doings, dealings,** affairs; **works;** work, handiwork, hand

VERBS **4 act, serve, function; operate, work, move,** practice, do one's stuff *or* one's thing <nf>; **move,** proceed; make, play, **behave** 321.4

5 take action, take steps *or* **measures; proceed,** proceed with, go ahead with, go with, go through with; do something, go *or* swing into action, **do something about, act on** *or* **upon,** take it on, run with it <nf>, get off the dime *or* one's ass *or* one's dead ass <nf>, get with it *or* the picture <nf>; fish or cut bait, shit or get off the pot *and* put up or shut up *and* put one's money where one's mouth is <nf>; **go,** have a go <chiefly Brit nf>, take a whack *or* a cut <nf>, lift a finger, **take** *or* **bear a hand;** play a role *or* part in; stretch forth one's hand, strike a blow; **maneuver,** make moves <nf>; get a life <nf>

6 do, effect, effectuate, **make; bring about,** bring to pass, **bring off, produce, deliver** <nf>, **do the trick,** put across *or* through; swing *or* swing it *and* hack it *and* cut it *and* cut the mustard <nf>; **do one's part,** carry one's weight, carry the ball <nf>, hold up one's end *or* one's end of the bargain; tear off <nf>, **achieve, accomplish,** realize 407.4; **render, pay; inflict, wreak,** do to; **commit, perpetrate;** pull off <nf>; go and do, up and do *or* take and do <nf>

7 carry out, carry through, go through, fulfill, work out; **bring off,** carry off; **put through,** get through; **implement; put into effect, put in** *or* **into practice,** carry into effect, execute, carry into execution, **translate into action;** suit the action to the word; rise to the occasion, come through <nf>

8 practice, put into practice, exercise, employ, use; carry on, conduct, prosecute, wage; follow, pursue; engage in, work at, devote oneself to, **do,** turn to, apply oneself to, employ oneself in; play at; **take up,** take to, **undertake, tackle,** take on, address oneself to, have a go at, turn one's hand to, **go in** *or* **out for** <nf>, make it one's business, follow as an occupation, set up shop; specialize in 866.4

9 perform, execute, enact; transact; discharge, dispatch; conduct, **manage, handle;** legislate, commission; dispose of, take care of, **deal with,** cope with; **make, accomplish,** complete 407.6

ADJS **10 acting,** performing, practicing, serving, functioning, functional, operating, operative, operational, working, in harness; in action 889.11; behavioral 321.7

329 INACTION

<voluntary inaction>

NOUNS **1 inaction,** passiveness, **passivity,** passivism; passive resistance, nonviolent resistance; nonresistance, nonviolence; pacifism; neutrality, neutralness, neutralism, **nonparticipation, noninvolvement;** standpattism <nf>; **do-nothingism,** do-nothingness, do-nothing policy; **laissez-faireism,** *laissez-faire* and *laissez-aller* <Fr>; watching and waiting, watchful waiting, waiting game, a wait-and-see attitude, indecision; **inertia,** inertness, **immobility,** dormancy, stagnation, stagnancy, vegetation, stasis, paralysis, standstill; **procrastination; idleness,** indolence, torpor, torpidness, torpidity, sloth; stalemate, logjam; **immobility** 853.1; equilibrium, dead center; **inactivity** 331; **quietude, serenity, quiescence** 173;

quietism, contemplation, meditation, passive self-annihilation; leisure; contemplative life, *vita contemplativa* <L>

VERBS 2 **do nothing,** not stir, not budge, **not lift a finger** *or* **hand,** not move a foot, **sit back, sit on one's hands** <nf>, sit on one's ass *or* dead ass *or* butt *or* duff <nf>, sit on the sidelines, be a sideliner, sit it out, take a raincheck <nf>, fold one's arms, twiddle one's thumbs; **cool one's heels** *or* jets <nf>; **bide one's time, delay,** watch and wait, wait and see, play a waiting game, lie low, tread water <nf>; hang fire, not go off half-cocked; lie *or* sit back, lie *or* rest upon one's oars, rest, put one's feet up *and* kick back <nf>, be still 173.7; repose on one's laurels; drift, coast; **stagnate,** vegetate, veg out <nf>, lie dormant, hibernate; lay down on the job <nf>, idle 331.11; not stir, freeze

3 **refrain, abstain,** hold, **spare, forbear, forgo,** keep from; hold *or* stay one's hand, sit by *or* idly by, sit on one's hands

4 **let alone,** leave alone, **leave** *or* **let well enough alone;** look the other way, not make waves, not look for trouble, not rock the boat; **let be,** leave be <nf>, let things take their course, let it have its way; leave things as they are; *laisser faire* or *laisser passer* or *laisser aller* <Fr>, live and let live; **take no part in,** not get involved in, **have nothing to do with,** have no hand in, stand *or* hold *or* remain aloof, keep out of; tolerate, sit on the fence

5 **let go,** let pass, **let slip, let slide** *and* let ride <nf>; procrastinate, sit tight, defer

ADJS 6 **passive; neutral,** neuter; standpat <nf>, **do-nothing;** *laissez-faire* and *laissez-aller* <Fr>; **inert,** like a bump on a log <nf>, immobile, dormant, stagnant, stagnating, vegetative, vegetable, static, stationary, motionless, unmoving, paralyzed, paralytic; procrastinating; **inactive, idle** 331.16; quiescent 173.12; quietist, quietistic, contemplative, meditative

ADVS 7 **at a stand** *or* **standstill,** at a halt; as a last resort

PHRS 8 if it ain't broke don't fix it, let sleeping dogs lie; *dolce far niente* <Ital>

330 ACTIVITY

NOUNS 1 **activity, action,** activeness; **movement,** motion, **stir; proceedings, doings, goings-on; activism,** political activism, judicial activism, etc; **militancy;** business 724

2 **liveliness, animation, vivacity,** vivaciousness, **sprightliness, spiritedness,** bubbliness, ebullience, effervescence, **briskness, breeziness, peppiness** <nf>; **life, spirit, verve,** energy, adrenalin; pep *and* moxie *and* oomph *and* pizzazz *and* piss and vinegar <nf>, **vim** 17.2

3 **quickness, swiftness, speediness, alacrity,** celerity, readiness, smartness, sharpness, briskness; **promptness,** promptitude; dispatch, expeditiousness, expedition; **agility, nimbleness, spryness,** springiness

4 **bustle, fuss, flurry, flutter,** fluster, scramble, ferment, stew, sweat, whirl, swirl, vortex, maelstrom, **stir,** hubbub, hullabaloo, hoo-ha *and* foofaraw *and* flap <nf>, schemozzle <Brit nf>, feery-fary <Scot>, ado, to-do <nf>, bother, botheration <nf>, pother; fussiness, flutteriness; tumult, commotion, **agitation; restlessness,** unquiet, fidgetiness; **spurt, burst,** fit, spasm

5 **busyness, press of business,** hive of activity; plenty to do, many irons in the fire, much on one's plate; the battle of life, rat race <nf>

6 **industry,** industriousness, assiduousness, **assiduity, diligence, application,** concentration, laboriousness, sedulity, **sedulousness,** unsparingness, relentlessness, zealousness, ardor, fervor, vehemence; **energy,** energeticalness, strenuousness, strenuosity, tirelessness, indefatigability

7 **enterprise,** enterprisingness, dynamism, **initiative,** aggression, **aggressiveness,** killer instinct, force, forcefulness, pushfulness, pushingness, **pushiness, push, drive, hustle, go,** getup, get-up-and-get *or* **get-up-and-go** <nf>, go-ahead, go-getting, go-to-itiveness <nf>, **up-and-comingness; adventurousness,** venturousness, venturesomeness, adventuresomeness; spirit, gumption *and* spunk <nf>; **ambitiousness** 100.10; "the strenuous life"—Theodore Roosevelt

8 **man** *or* **woman of action, doer,** man of deeds; **hustler** *and* self-starter <nf>, bustler; go-getter *and* ball of fire *and* live wire *and* powerhouse *and* human dynamo *and* spitfire <nf>; **workaholic,** overachiever; beaver, busy bee, **eager beaver** <nf>, no slouch <nf>; operator *and* big-time operator *and* wheeler-dealer <nf>; winner <nf>; **activist,** political activist, **militant;** enthusiast 101.4; new broom, take-charge guy <nf>

9 **overactivity,** hyperactivity; hyperkinesia *or* hyperkinesis; franticness, frenziedness; overexertion, overextension; officiousness 214.2; a finger in every pie

VERBS 10 **be busy, have one's hands full,** have many irons in the fire, have a lot on one's plate; not have a moment to spare, not have a moment to call one's own, not be able to call one's time one's own; do it on the run; have other things to do, have other fish to fry; **work, labor, drudge** 725.14; **busy oneself** 724.10,11

11 **stir,** stir about, **bestir oneself,** stir one's stumps <nf>, get down to business, sink one's teeth into it, take hold, be up and doing

12 **bustle, fuss,** make a fuss, stir, stir about, rush around *or* about, tear around, hurry about, buzz *or* whiz about, dart to and fro, run *or* go around like a chicken with its head cut off, run around in circles

13 **hustle** <nf>, **drive,** drive oneself, **push, scramble,** go all out <nf>, **make things hum,** step lively <nf>, make the sparks *or* chips fly <nf>, do one's damnedest <nf>; make up for lost time; press on, drive on; go ahead, forge ahead, shoot ahead, go full steam ahead

14 <nf terms> **hump,** get cutting, break one's neck, bear down on it, put one's back into it, get off the dime, get off one's ass *or* duff *or* dead ass, **hit the ball,** pour it on, lean on it, shake a leg, go to town, get the lead out, floor it

15 **keep going, keep on,** keep on the go, keep on keeping on, keep on trucking <nf>, **carry on,** peg *or* plug away <nf>, **keep at it,** keep moving, keep driving, **keep the pot boiling,** keep the ball rolling; keep busy, **keep one's nose to the grindstone,** stay on the treadmill, burn the candle at both ends

16 make the most of one's time, improve the shining hour, make hay while the sun shines, not let the grass grow under one's feet; get up early

ADJS 17 **active, lively, animated, spirited,** bubbly, ebullient, effervescent, **vivacious, sprightly,** chipper *and* perky <nf>, pert; **spry, breezy, brisk, energetic,** eager, keen, can-do <nf>; smacking, spanking; alive, live, full of life, full of pep *or* go *and* pizzazz *or* moxie <nf>, alive and kicking; **peppy** *and* snappy *and* zingy <nf>; frisky, bouncing, bouncy; mercurial, quicksilver; **activist,** activistic, **militant**

18 **quick, swift, speedy, expeditious, snappy** <nf>, celeritous, alacritous, dispatchful <old>, **prompt,** ready, smart, sharp, quick on the draw *or* trigger *or* upswing <nf>; **agile, nimble, spry,** springy

19 **astir, stirring,** afoot, **on foot;** in full swing

20 **bustling,** fussing, fussy; **fidgety,** restless, fretful, jumpy, unquiet, unsettled 105.23; **agitated, turbulent**

21 **busy,** full of business; **occupied, engaged, employed, working;** at it; **at work,** on duty, on the job, in harness; involved, engagé; **hard at work, hard at it; on the move, on the go,** on the run, **on the hop** *or* **jump** <nf>, on the make <nf>; busy as a bee *or* beaver, busier than a one-armed paper hanger <nf>; up to one's ears *or* elbows *or* neck *or* eyeballs in <nf>; tied up

22 **industrious, assiduous, diligent, sedulous,** laborious, **hardworking,** workaholic; hard, unremitting, unsparing, relentless, zealous, ardent, fervent, vehement; **energetic,** strenuous; never idle; unsleeping; tireless, unwearied, unflagging, indefatigable; stick-to-it-ive <nf>

23 **enterprising, aggressive, dynamic,** activist, proactive, driving, forceful, **pushing,** pushful, **pushy, up-and-coming, go-ahead** *and* **hustling** <nf>, go-getting <nf>; adventurous, venturous, venturesome, adventuresome; **ambitious** 100.28

24 **overactive,** hyperactive, hyper <nf>; hectic, frenzied, frantic, frenetic; hyperkinetic; intrusive, officious 214.9; full of beans <nf>

ADVS 25 **actively, busily; lively,** sprightly, **briskly, breezily, energetically, animatedly, vivaciously, spiritedly,** with life and spirit, with gusto; allegro, allegretto; full tilt, in full swing, all out <nf>; like a house afire

26 **quickly, swiftly, expeditiously,** with dispatch, readily, **promptly; agilely, nimbly, spryly**

27 **industriously, assiduously, diligently, sedulously,** laboriously; unsparingly, relentlessly, zealously, ardently, fervently, vehemently; **energetically,** strenuously, tirelessly, indefatigably

331 INACTIVITY

NOUNS 1 **inactivity, inaction** 329, inactiveness; lull, suspension; suspended animation; dormancy, hibernation; immobility, motionlessness, quiescence 173; **inertia** 329.1; underactivity

2 **idleness,** unemployment, nothing to do, otiosity, inoccupation; **leisure,** leisureliness, unhurried ease; idle hands, idle hours, time on one's hands; "a life of dignified otiosity"—Thackeray; **relaxation,** letting down, unwinding, putting one's feet up, slippered ease

3 **unemployment,** lack of work, joblessness, inoccupation; layoff, furlough; normal unemployment, seasonal unemployment, technological unemployment, cyclical unemployment; unemployment insurance; shutdown, recession, depression

4 **idling, loafing,** lazing, *flânerie* <Fr>, goofing off <nf>, slacking <nf>, goldbricking <nf>; *dolce far niente* <Ital>; trifling; dallying, dillydallying, mopery, dawdling; loitering, tarrying, lingering; lounging, **lolling**

5 **indolence, laziness, sloth,** slothfulness, bone-laziness; laggardness, slowness, dilatoriness, remissness, do-nothingness, faineancy, *fainéantise* <Fr>; inexertion, inertia; **shiftlessness,** do-lessness <nf>; hoboism, vagrancy; spring fever; ergophobia

6 **languor,** languidness, languorousness, languishment <old>, lackadaisicalness, lotus-eating; **listlessness,** lifelessness, inanimation,

enervation, slowness, lenitude *or* lentor <old>, **dullness, sluggishness,** heaviness, dopiness <nf>, hebetude, supineness, **lassitude, lethargy,** loginess; kef, nodding; phlegm, **apathy, indifference, passivity;** torpidness, torpor, torpidity; stupor, stuporousness, stupefaction; **sloth,** slothfulness, acedia; **sleepiness, somnolence, oscitancy, yawning, drowsiness** 22.1; **weariness, fatigue** 21; jadedness, satedness 994.2; world-weariness, ennui, boredom 118.3

7 **lazybones,** lazyboots, lazylegs, indolent, lie-abed, slugabed

8 **idler, loafer, lounger,** loller, layabout <Brit nf>, couch potato <nf>, lotus-eater, *flâneur* and *flâneuse* <Fr>, **do-nothing,** dolittle, *fainéant* <Fr>, goof-off *and* fuck-off *and* goldbrick *and* goldbricker <nf>, clock watcher; **sluggard,** slug, slouch, sloucher, lubber, stick-in-the-mud <nf>, gentleman of leisure; **time waster,** time killer; **dallier, dillydallier,** mope, moper, doodler, diddler <nf>, **dawdler,** dawdle, laggard, **loiterer,** lingerer; waiter on Providence; trifler, **putterer,** potterer

9 **bum,** stiff <nf>, derelict, skid-row bum, Bowery bum, *lazzarone* <Ital>; beachcomber; **good-for-nothing,** good-for-naught, **ne'er-do-well,** wastrel; drifter, vagrant, hobo, tramp 178.3; beggar 440.8

10 homeless person; street person; shopping-bag lady *or* woman, bag person

11 **nonworker, drone;** cadger, bummer *and* moocher <nf>, **sponger,** freeloader, lounge lizard <nf>, social parasite, parasite, spiv <Brit>; beggar, mendicant, panhandler <nf>; **the unemployed;** the unemployable; the chronically unemployed, discouraged workers, lumpen proletariat; leisure class, rentiers, coupon-clippers, idle rich

VERBS 12 **idle,** do nothing, **laze,** lazy <nf>, take one's ease *or* leisure, take one's time, **loaf, lounge; lie around,** lounge around, loll around, lollop about <Brit nf>, moon, moon around, sit around, sit on one's ass *or* butt *or* duff <nf>, stand *or* hang around, **loiter about** *or* **around,** slouch, slouch around, **bum around** *and* mooch around <nf>; **shirk,** avoid work, **goof off** *and* **lie down on the job** <nf>; sleep at one's post; let the grass grow under one's feet; twiddle one's thumbs, fold one's arms

13 **waste time,** consume time, **kill time,** idle *or* trifle *or* fritter *or* fool away time, loiter away *or* loiter out the time, beguile the time, **while away the time,** pass the time, lose time, waste the precious hours, burn daylight <old>; **trifle,** dabble, fribble, footle, putter, potter, piddle, diddle, doodle

14 **dally, dillydally,** piddle, diddle, diddle-daddle, doodle, **dawdle, loiter,** lollygag <nf>, linger, lag, poke, take one's time, hang around *or* about <nf>, kick around <nf>

15 **take it easy,** take things as they come, **drift,** drift with the current, go with the flow, swim with the stream, coast, lead an easy life, **live a life of ease,** eat the bread of idleness, lie *or* rest on one's oars; rest *or* repose on one's laurels, lie back on one's record

16 **lie idle, lie fallow;** aestivate, hibernate, lie dormant; lie *or* lay off, charge *or* recharge one's batteries <nf>; lie up, lie on the shelf; ride at anchor, lay *or* lie by, lay *or* lie to; have nothing to do, have nothing on <nf>

ADJS 17 **inactive,** unactive; stationary, static, at a standstill; sedentary; **quiescent,** motionless 173.13; inanimate

18 **idle,** fallow, otiose; **unemployed, unoccupied,** disengaged, *désœuvré* <Fr>, **jobless, out of work,** out of employ, out of a job, out of harness; free, available, at liberty, at leisure; at loose ends; unemployable, lumpen; leisure, leisured; off-duty, off-work, off; housebound, shut-in

19 **indolent, lazy,** bone-lazy, **slothful,** workshy, ergophobic; **do-nothing,** *fainéant* <Fr>, **laggard,** slow, **dilatory,** procrastinative, remiss, slack, slacking, lax; easy; **shiftless,** do-less <nf>; **unenterprising,** nonaggressive; good-for-nothing, ne'er-do-well; drony, dronish, spivvish <Brit>, parasitic, cadging, sponging, scrounging

20 **languid, languorous, listless,** lifeless, inanimate, enervated, debilitated, **pepless** <nf>, lackadaisical, slow, wan, **lethargic,** logy, hebetudinous, supine, lymphatic, apathetic, **sluggish,** dopey <nf>, drugged, nodding, droopy, **dull,** heavy, leaden, lumpish, **torpid,** stultified, stuporous, **inert,** stagnant, stagnating, vegetative, vegetable, dormant; phlegmatic, numb, benumbed; moribund, dead, exanimate, dead to the world; sleepy, somnolent 22.21; **pooped** <nf>, weary; jaded, sated 994.6; **blasé,** world-weary, bored; out cold, comatose

332 ASSENT

NOUNS 1 **assent, acquiescence, concurrence, concurring, concurrency, compliance, agreement, acceptance,** accession; eager *or* hearty *or* warm assent, welcome; assentation; agreement in principle, general agreement; support; **consent** 441

2 **affirmative; yes,** yea, aye, amen, OK, yeah <nf>; nod, nod of assent; thumbs-up; **affirmativeness,** affirmative attitude, yea-saying; **me-tooism;** toadying, automatic agreement, knee-jerk assent, subservience, ass-licking <nf>

3 **acknowledgment, recognition, acceptance;** appreciation; **admission,** confession, concession, allowance; avowal, profession, declaration

4 **ratification, endorsement, acceptance, approval, approbation** 509.1, subscription, subscribership, signing-off, imprimatur, **sanction, permission, the OK** *and* the okay *and* **the green light** *and* **the go-ahead** *and* the nod <nf>, **certification, confirmation, validation, authentication,** authorization, warrant; **affirmation,** affirmance; stamp, rubber stamp, seal *or* **stamp of approval;** seal, signet, sigil; **subscription, signature,** John Hancock <nf>; countersignature; visa, *visé* <Fr>; notarization

5 **unanimity,** unanimousness, universal *or* univocal *or* unambiguous assent; **like-mindedness, meeting of minds,** one *or* same mind; total agreement; **understanding,** mutual understanding; **concurrence, consent,** general consent, common assent *or* consent, consentaneity, **accord,** accordance, **concord,** concordance, **agreement,** general agreement; **consensus,** consensus of opinion <nf>; *consensus omnium* <L>, universal agreement *or* accord, *consensus gentium* <L>, agreement of all, shared sense, sense of the meeting; **acclamation,** general acclamation; unison, harmony, **chorus, concert,** one *or* single voice, one accord; general voice, vox pop, *vox populi* <L>

6 **assenter, consenter, accepter,** covenanter, covenantor; assentator, yea-sayer; **yes-man,** toady, creature, ass-licker *and* ass-kisser *and* brown-nose *and* boot-licker <nf>, fellow traveler, supporter

7 **endorser, subscriber, ratifier,** approver, upholder, certifier, confirmer; **signer,** signatory, the undersigned; seconder; cosigner, cosignatory, party; underwriter, guarantor, insurer; notary, notary public

VERBS 8 **assent,** give *or* yield assent, **acquiesce, consent** 441.2, **comply, accede, agree,** agree to *or* with, have no problem with; find it in one's heart; take kindly to *and* hold with <nf>; **accept,** receive, buy <nf>, take one up on <nf>; **subscribe to,** acquiesce in, abide by; yes, **say 'yes' to; nod,** nod assent, vote for, cast one's vote for, give one's voice for; welcome, hail, cheer, acclaim, applaud, accept in toto

9 **concur, accord,** coincide, **agree, agree with,** agree in opinion; enter into one's view, enter into the ideas *or* feelings of, **see eye to eye, be at one with,** be of one mind with, go with, **go along with,** fall *or* chime *or* strike in with, close with, meet, conform to, side with, join *or* identify oneself with; cast in one's lot, fall in *or* into line, lend oneself to, play *or* go along, take kindly to; **echo,** ditto <nf>, say 'ditto' to, say 'amen' to; join in the chorus, go along with the crowd <nf>, run with the pack, go *or* float *or* swim with the stream *or* current; get on the bandwagon <nf>; rubber-stamp

10 **come to an agreement, agree, concur on, settle on,** agree with, **agree on** *or* **upon, arrive at an agreement, come to an understanding, come to terms, reach an understanding** *or* **agreement** *or* **accord,** strike *or* hammer out a bargain, covenant, get together <nf>; **shake hands on,** shake on it <nf>; come around to

11 **acknowledge, admit, own, confess, allow,** avow, **grant,** warrant, **concede,** yield <old>, defer; **accept, recognize;** agree in principle, express general agreement, go along with, not oppose *or* deny, agree provisionally *or* for the sake of argument; bring oneself to agree, assent grudgingly *or* under protest; let the ayes have it

12 **ratify, endorse,** sign off on, second, support, **certify, confirm, validate, authenticate, accept,** give the nod *or* the green light *or* the go-ahead *or* the OK <nf>, give a nod of assent, give one's imprimatur, permit, give permission, **approve** 509.9; sanction, **authorize,** warrant, accredit; **pass,** pass on *or* upon, give thumbs up <nf>; amen, say amen to; visa, *visé* <Fr>; underwrite, subscribe to; **sign,** undersign, sign on the dotted line, put one's John Hancock on <nf>, initial, put one's mark *or* X *or* cross on; autograph; cosign, countersign; seal, sign and seal, set one's seal, **set one's hand and seal;** affirm, swear and affirm, take one's oath, swear to; rubber stamp <nf>; notarize

ADJS 13 **assenting, agreeing,** acquiescing, **acquiescent, compliant,** consenting, consentient, consensual, submissive, unmurmuring, conceding, concessive, assentatious, **agreed, content**

14 **accepted, approved,** received; acknowledged, admitted, allowed, granted, conceded, recognized, professed, confessed, avowed, warranted; self-confessed; **ratified, endorsed, certified,** confirmed, validated, authenticated; certificatory, confirmatory, validating, warranting; **signed,** sealed, signed and sealed, countersigned, underwritten; stamped; sworn to, notarized, affirmed, sworn and affirmed

15 **unanimous, solid,** consentaneous, **with one consent** *or* **voice;** uncontradicted, unchallenged, uncontroverted, uncontested, unopposed; **concurrent,** concordant, **of one accord; agreeing, in agreement, like-minded, of one mind,** of the same mind; of a piece, **at one,** at one with, agreed on all hands, carried by acclamation

ADVS 16 **affirmatively,** assentingly, in the affirmative

17 **unanimously,** concurrently, consentaneously, **by common** *or* **general consent,** with one consent, **with one accord,** with one voice, without contradiction, *nemine contradicente* <L>, nem con, without a dissenting voice, *nemine dissentiente* <L>, in chorus, in concert, in unison,

in one voice, univocally, unambiguously, to a man, **together,** all together, all agreeing, **as one,** as one man, one and all, on all hands; by acclamation

INTERJS **18** **yes, yea,** aye, *oui* <Fr>, *sí* <Sp>, *da* <Russ>, *ja* <Ger>; yes sir, yes ma'am; why yes, *mais oui* <Fr>; **indeed,** yes indeed; **surely, certainly,** assuredly, most assuredly, **right, right you are, exactly, precisely,** just so, absolutely, positively, really, truly, rather <Brit>, quite, to be sure; **all right, right, good,** well and good, good enough, **very well,** *très bien* <Fr>; naturally, *naturellement* <Fr>; **of course,** as you say, **by all means,** by all manner of means; **amen;** hear hear <Brit>

19 <nf terms> **yeah,** yep, yup, uh-huh; yes sirree, same here, likewise, indeedy, yes indeedy, sure, sure thing, sure enough, surest thing you know; right on!, righto!; OK, okay, Roger, Roger-dodger; fine; you bet!, bet your ass!, you can bet on it!, you can say that again!, you said it!, you better believe it

PHRS **20** **so be it,** be it so, so mote it be <old>, so shall it be, *amen* <Heb>; so it is, so is it; agreed, done, that's about the size of it; *c'est bien* <Fr>; that takes care of that, that's that, that's right; that makes two of us

333 DISSENT

NOUNS **1** **dissent, dissidence,** dissentience; nonassent, nonconsent, nonconcurrence, nonagreement, agreement to disagree; minority opinion *or* report *or* position; **disagreement, difference, variance,** diversity, disparity; **dissatisfaction, disapproval,** disapprobation, red light, thumbs down; repudiation, **rejection; refusal, opposition** 451; dissension, disaccord 456; **alienation,** withdrawal, dropping out, secession; recusance *or* recusancy, **nonconformity** 868; apostasy 363.2; counterculture, underground, alternative; raspberry *or* Bronx cheer <nf>

2 **objection, protest; kick** *and* **beef** *and* **bitch** *and* squawk *and* howl <nf>, protestation; **remonstrance, remonstration,** expostulation; **challenge; demur,** demurrer; **reservation, scruple,** compunction, qualm, twinge *or* qualm of conscience; **complaint, grievance; exception;** peaceful *or* nonviolent protest; **demonstration, demo** <nf>, protest demonstration, counterdemonstration, **rally,** march, sit-in, teach-in, boycott, strike, picketing, indignation meeting; grievance committee; **rebellion** 327.4

3 **dissenter, dissident,** dissentient, recusant; **objector,** demurrer; minority *or* opposition voice; **protester,** protestant, detractor; **separatist,** schismatic; sectary, sectarian, opinionist; nonconformist 868.3, odd man out; apostate 363.5; conscientious objector, passive resister; dissatisfied customer, bellyacher <nf>

VERBS **4** **dissent,** dissent from, be in dissent, say nay, **disagree,** discord with, **differ,** not agree, disagree with, agree to disagree *or* differ; divide on, be at variance; **take exception,** withhold assent, **take issue, beg to differ,** raise an objection, rise to a point of order; be in opposition to, oppose, be at odds with; refuse to conform, kick against the pricks, march to *or* hear a different drummer, swim against the tide *or* against the current *or* upstream; **split off, withdraw,** drop out, secede, separate *or* disjoin oneself, schismatize

5 **object, protest, kick** *and* **beef** <nf>, put up a struggle *or* fight; **bitch** *and* **beef** *and* **squawk** *and* howl *and* holler *and* put up a squawk *and* raise a howl <nf>; exclaim *or* cry out against, make *or* create *or* raise a stink about <nf>; yell bloody murder <nf>; **remonstrate,** expostulate; raise *or* press objections, raise one's voice against, enter a protest; **complain,** exclaim at, state a grievance, air one's grievances; **dispute, challenge,** call in question; **demur, scruple,** boggle, dig in one's heels; **demonstrate, demonstrate against,** rally, march, sit-in, teach-in, boycott, strike, picket; **rebel** 327.7

ADJS **6** **dissenting, dissident,** dissentient, recusant; **disagreeing, differing; opposing** 451.8, in opposition; alienated; counterculture, antiestablishment, underground, alternative; breakaway <Brit>; at variance with, at odds with; schismatic, schismatical, sectarian, sectary; heterodox; nonconforming 868.5; rebellious 327.11; resistant 453.5

7 **protesting,** protestant; **objecting,** expostulative, expostulatory, remonstrative, remonstrant; under protest

334 AFFIRMATION

NOUNS **1** **affirmation,** affirmance, **assertion, asseveration,** averment, **declaration,** vouch <old>, allegation; **avouchment, avowal; position, stand,** stance; profession, **statement, word,** say, saying, say-so <nf>, positive declaration *or* statement, affirmative; manifesto, position paper; statement of principles, **creed** 953.3; **pronouncement, proclamation,** announcement, annunciation, enunciation; proposition, conclusion; predication, predicate; protest, protestation; utterance, dictum, *ipse dixit* <L>; emphasis, stress; admission, confession, disclosure; mission statement

2 **affirmativeness; assertiveness,** positiveness, absoluteness, speaking out, table-thumping <nf>; definiteness

3 **deposition, sworn statement, affidavit,** statement under oath, notarized statement, sworn testimony *or* statement, affirmation; **vouching, swearing; attestation;** certification; **testimony;** authentication, validation, verification, vouch <old>; substantiation, proof

4 **oath, vow,** avow <old>, **word, assurance, guarantee, warrant,** promise, solemn oath *or* affirmation *or* word *or* declaration, word of honor; **pledge** 436.1; Bible oath, ironclad oath; judicial oath, extrajudicial oath; oath of office, official oath; oath of allegiance, loyalty oath, test oath; commitment

VERBS 5 **affirm, assert,** assever <old>, asseverate, **aver,** state positively, protest, lay down, avouch, avow, **declare,** say, say loud and clear, say out loud, sound off <nf>, have one's say, speak, speak one's piece *or* one's mind, speak up *or* out, **state,** set down, express, put, put it, put in one's two-cents worth <nf>; **allege,** profess; stand on *or* for; predicate; issue a manifesto *or* position paper, manifesto; announce, **pronounce,** annunciate, enunciate, **proclaim; maintain,** have, **contend,** argue, **insist, hold,** submit, maintain with one's last breath

6 **depose,** depone; **testify,** take the stand, witness; **warrant, attest,** certify, **guarantee, assure; vouch, vouch for, swear, swear to,** swear the truth, **assert under oath;** make *or* take one's oath, **vow;** swear by bell, book, and candle; call heaven to witness, declare *or* swear to God, swear on the Bible, kiss the book, swear to goodness, hope to die, cross one's heart *or* cross one's heart and hope to die; swear till one is black *or* blue in the face <nf>; corroborate, substantiate

7 administer an oath, **place** *or* **put under oath,** put to one's oath, put upon oath; **swear, swear in,** adjure <old>; charge

ADJS 8 **affirmative,** affirming, affirmatory, certifying, certificatory; **assertive,** assertative, assertional; annunciative, annunciatory; enunciative, enunciatory; **declarative,** declaratory; predicative, predicational; **positive,** absolute, emphatic, decided, table-thumping <nf>, unambiguously, unmistakably, loud and clear; attested, corroboratory, substantiating

9 **affirmed, asserted,** asseverated, avouched, avowed, averred, **declared; alleged,** professed; **stated,** pronounced, announced, annunciated, enunciated; predicated; manifestoed; **deposed,** warranted, **attested, certified,** vouched, **vouched for,** vowed, pledged, **sworn, sworn to;** strongly worded, emphatic, underscored

ADVS 10 **affirmatively,** assertively, assertorily, declaratively, predicatively; **positively,** absolutely, decidedly, loudly, loud and clear, at the top of one's voice *or* one's lungs; emphatically, with emphasis, pointedly; without fear of contradiction; under oath, on one's honor *or* one's word

335 NEGATION, DENIAL

NOUNS 1 **negation,** negating, abnegation; negativeness, negativity, **negativism,** negative attitude, naysaying; **obtusenss,** perversity, orneriness <nf>, cross-grainedness; **negative, no,** nay, nix <nf>; defiance; refusal; unacceptance; pessimism, defeatism

2 **denial, disavowal, disaffirmation, disaffirmance, disownment,** disallowance; disclamation, disclaimer; **renunciation, retraction,** retractation, **repudiation,** recantation; revocation, nullification, annulment, abrogation; abjuration, abjurement, forswearing; **contradiction,** flat *or* absolute contradiction, contravention, contrary assertion, controversion, countering, crossing, gainsaying, impugnment; flat denial, emphatic denial, **refutation, disproof** 958; **apostasy, defection** 363.2; **about-face, reversal** 363.1

VERBS 3 **negate,** abnegate, negative; **say 'no',** no, naysay; shake one's head, wag *or* waggle the beard, nix <nf>; refuse, reject

4 **deny, not admit, not accept,** refuse to admit *or* accept; **disclaim, disown, disaffirm, disavow, disallow,** abjure, forswear, **renounce, retract,** take back, recant; revoke, nullify, **repudiate; contradict,** fly in the face of, cross, assert the contrary, contravene, controvert, impugn, **dispute,** gainsay, **oppose, counter,** go counter to, go contra, contest, take issue with, join issue upon, run counter to; belie, give the lie to, give one the lie direct *or* in his throat; deprecate; **refute** 958.5, **disprove** 957.4; **reverse oneself** 363.6; **defect, apostatize** 363.7

ADJS 5 **negative,** negatory, abnegative, negational; **denying, disclaiming,** disowning, disaffirming, disallowing, disavowing, renunciative, renunciatory, repudiative, recanting, abjuratory, revocative *or* revocatory; **contradictory,** contradicting, contradictive, **opposing, contrary,** contra, counter, opposite, nay-saying, refuting, adversative, repugnant; **obtuse,** perverse, ornery <nf>, crossgrained, contrarious <nf>

ADVS 6 **negatively, in the negative;** in denial, in contradiction, in opposition; in no way

CONJS 7 **neither,** not either, **nor,** nor yet, or not, and not, also not

INTERJS 8 **no, nay,** negative, *non* <Fr>, *nein* <Ger>, *nyet* <Russ>; certainly not, absolutely no; no sir, no ma'am, no siree; **not,** not a bit *or* whit *or* jot, I think not, not really; to the contrary, *au contraire* <Fr>, quite the contrary, far from it; no such thing, nothing of the kind *or* sort, not so

9 **by no means, by no manner of means; on no account,** in no respect, **in no case, under no circumstances, on no condition,** no matter what; **not at all,** not in the least, **never;** in no wise, in no way, noways, noway, nohow <nf>; out of the question; **not for the world,** not for anything in the world, not if one can help it, not if I know it, not at any price, not for love or money, not for the life of me, over one's dead body; a thousand times no; to the contrary, *au contraire* <Fr>, quite the contrary, far from it; God forbid 510.27

10 <nf terms> nope, nix, no dice, unhunh, no sirree; no way, no way José, not on your life, not by a long chalk, not by a long shot *or* sight, not by a darn *or* damn sight, not a bit of it, not much, not a chance, fat chance, nothing doing, forget it, that'll be the day

336 IMITATION

NOUNS 1 **imitation, copying,** counterfeiting, repetition; **me-tooism** <nf>, emulation, the sincerest form of flattery, following, mirroring, reflection, echo; copycat crime <nf>; **simulation** 354.3, modeling; fakery, forgery, plagiarism, plagiarizing, plagiary; **imposture, impersonation, takeoff** *and* hit-off <nf>, **impression,** burlesque, pastiche, *pasticcio* <Ital>; mimesis; parody, onomatopoeia

2 **mimicry, mockery,** apery, parrotry, mimetism; protective coloration *or* mimicry, aggressive mimicry, aposematic *or* synaposematic mimicry *and* cryptic mimicry <biology>, playing possum

3 **reproduction, duplication, imitation** 785.1, **copy** 785.1, dummy, mock-up, **replica,** facsimile, representation, paraphrase, approximation, model, version, knockoff <nf>, recording, transcript; computer model *or* simulation; parody, burlesque, pastiche, *pasticcio* <Ital>, travesty 508.6

4 **imitator,** simulator, me-tooer <nf>, **impersonator, impostor** 357.6, **mimic,** mimicker, mimer, mime, **mocker;** ventriloquist; mockingbird, cuckoo; **parrot,** polly, poll-parrot *or* polly-parrot, **ape,** aper, monkey; **echo,** echoer, echoist; **copier,** copyist, **copycat** <nf>; **faker, imposter,** counterfeiter, forger, plagiarist; dissimulator, dissembler, deceiver, gay deceiver, hypocrite, phony <nf>, poseur; conformist, sheep, slave to fashion

VERBS 5 **imitate, copy, repeat,** ditto <nf>; do like <nf>, do <nf>, act *or* go *or* make like <nf>; **mirror, reflect; echo,** reecho, chorus; **borrow,** steal one's stuff <nf>, take a leaf out of one's book; assume, **affect; simulate;** counterfeit, fake <nf>, hoke *and* hoke up <nf>, forge, plagiarize, crib, lift <nf>; **parody,** pastiche, travesty; **paraphrase,** approximate

6 **mimic, impersonate,** mime, **ape, parrot,** copycat <nf>; do an impression; take off, hit off, hit off on, take off on, send up

7 **emulate, follow,** follow in the steps *or* footsteps of, walk in the shoes of, put oneself in another's shoes, follow in the wake of, follow the example of, follow suit, follow like sheep, jump on the bandwagon, play follow the leader; **copy after,** model after, model on, pattern after, pattern on, shape after, take after, take a leaf out of one's book, take as a model

ADJS 8 **imitation, mock, sham,** copied, fake *and* phony <nf>, counterfeit, forged, plagiarized, unoriginal, ungenuine; **pseudo,** synthetic, synthetical, artificial, man-made, ersatz, hokey *and* hoked-up <nf>, quasi

9 **imitative,** simulative, me-too <nf>, derivative; **mimic,** mimetic, **apish,** parrotlike; **emulative;** echoic, onomatopoetic, onomatopoeic

10 imitable, copiable, duplicable, replicable

ADVS 11 imitatively, apishly, apewise, parrotwise; onomatopoetically; synthetically; quasi

PREPS 12 **like, in imitation of,** after, in the semblance of, on the model of, *à la* <Fr>

WORD ELEMENTS 13 quasi-, mim-, ne-, near-, semi-; -ish, -like

337 NONIMITATION

NOUNS 1 **nonimitation, originality, novelty,** newness, innovation, freshness, uniqueness; **authenticity;** inventiveness, creativity, creativeness 985.3; idiosyncrasy

2 **original, model** 786, archetype, prototype 786.1, **pattern, mold,** pilot model; **innovation,** new departure; original thought; precedent, invention

3 **autograph,** holograph, first edition; genuine article

VERBS 4 **originate, invent; innovate; create;** revolutionize; pioneer

ADJS 5 **original, novel, unprecedented; unique,** *sui generis* <L>; new, fresh 841.7; underived, **firsthand; authentic, imaginative, creative** 986.18; **avant-garde,** revolutionary; **pioneer,** bellwether, trail-blazing, first in the field; nouvelle

6 **unimitated,** uncopied, **unduplicated,** unreproduced, unprecedented, unexampled; **archetypal,** archetypical, archetypic, seminal, prototypal 786.9; **prime,** primary, primal, primitive, pristine

338 COMPENSATION

NOUNS 1 **compensation, recompense,** repayment, payback, indemnity, indemnification, measure for measure, rectification, restitution, **reparation; amends,** expiation, atonement, meed <old>; damage control; **redress,** satisfaction, remedy; commutation, substitution; **offsetting,** balancing, **counterbalancing,** counteraction; **retaliation** 506, revenge, *lex talionis* <L>

2 **offset,** setoff; **counterbalance,** counterpoise, equipoise, counterweight, makeweight; **balance,** ballast; **trade-off,** equivalent, consideration, something of value, *quid pro quo* <L, something for something>, tit for tat, give-and-take 863.1; retroaction

3 **counterclaim,** counterdemand

VERBS 4 **compensate,** make compensation, make good, set right, restitute, pay back, rectify, **make up for; make amends,** expiate, do penance, atone; **recompense,** pay back, repay, indemnify, cover; **trade off,** give and take; **retaliate** 506

5 **offset** 779.4, set off, **counteract,** countervail, **counterbalance,** counterweigh, counterpoise, **balance,** play off against, set against, set over against, equiponderate; **square,** square up, settle the score

ADJS 6 **compensating, compensatory;** recompensive, amendatory, indemnificatory, reparative, rectifying, retributive; **offsetting,** counteracting *or* counteractive, countervailing, balancing, **counterbalancing,** zero-sum; **expiatory,** penitential; **retaliatory** 506

ADVS 7 **in compensation,** in return, back; in consideration, for a consideration

ADVS, CONJS 8 **notwithstanding,** but, all the same <nf>, still, yet, even; **however, nevertheless,** nonetheless; **although,** when, though; howbeit, albeit; **at all events,** in any event, **in any case,** at any rate; **be that as it may,** for all that, even so, **on the other hand,** rather, again, at the same time, all the same, just the same, **however, that may be;** after all, after all is said and done

ADVS, PREPS 9 **in spite of,** spite of <nf>, **despite,** in despite of, with, even with; **regardless of,** regardless, irregardless <nf>, irrespective of, without respect *or* regard to; cost what it may, regardless of cost, at any cost, at all costs, whatever the cost

339 CAREFULNESS
<close or watchful attention>

NOUNS 1 **carefulness, care, heed, concern, regard; attention** 983; **heedfulness,** regardfulness, mindfulness, **thoughtfulness; consideration,** solicitude, caring, loving care, tender loving care, TLC <nf>, caregiving, compassion; circumspectness, circumspection; forethought, anticipation, preparedness; **caution** 494

2 **painstakingness,** painstaking, **pains; diligence,** assiduousness, assiduity, sedulousness, industriousness, industry; **thoroughness,** thoroughgoingness

3 **meticulousness,** exactingness, **scrupulousness,** scrupulosity, **conscientiousness,** punctiliousness, attention to detail, fine-tuning; **particularness,** particularity, circumstantiality; **fussiness, criticalness,** criticality; **finicalness,** finickingness, finickiness, finicality, persnicketiness <nf>; **exactness, exactitude, accuracy, preciseness, precision,** precisionism, precisianism, punctuality, correctness, prissiness; **strictness, rigor,** rigorousness, spit and polish; nicety, niceness, delicacy, detail, subtlety, refinement, minuteness, exquisiteness, elegance

4 **vigilance, wariness,** prudence, **watchfulness,** watching, observance, **surveillance; watch, vigil, lookout;** *qui vive* <Fr>; invigilation, proctoring, monitoring; inspection; watch and ward; custody, custodianship, guardianship, stewardship; **guard,** guardedness, guard duty; **sharp eye, weather eye,** peeled eye, watchful eye, eagle eye, lidless *or* sleepless *or* unblinking *or* unwinking eye

5 **alertness, attentiveness; attention** 983; **wakefulness,** sleeplessness; **readiness,** promptness, promptitude, punctuality; **quickness,** agility, nimbleness; **smartness,** brightness, keenness, sharpness, acuteness, acuity

VERBS 6 **care, mind, heed,** reck, think, consider, regard, pay heed to, take heed *or* thought of; **take an interest,** be concerned; **pay attention** 982.8

7 **be careful, take care** *or* **good care,** take heed, have a care, exercise care; **be cautious** 494.5; **take pains,** take trouble, **be painstaking,** go to great pains, go to great lengths, go out of one's way, go the extra mile <nf>, bend over backwards <nf>, use every trick in the book, not miss a trick; mind what one is doing *or* about, mind one's business, **mind one's P's and Q's** <nf>; **watch one's step** <nf>, pick one's steps, tread on eggs, tread warily, walk on eggshells, place one's feet carefully, feel one's way; treat gently, **handle with gloves** *or* **kid gloves**

8 **be vigilant,** be watchful, never nod *or* sleep, **be on the watch** *or* **lookout,** be on the *qui vive* <Fr>, keep a good *or* sharp lookout, keep in sight *or* view; **keep watch,** keep watch and ward, keep vigil; **watch, look sharp,** look about one, look with one's own eyes, **be on one's guard,** keep an eye out, sleep

with one eye open, have all one's eyes *or* wits about one, keep one's eye on the ball <nf>, keep one's eyes open, keep a weather eye open *and* **keep one's eyes peeled** <nf>, keep the ear to the ground, keep a nose to the wind; keep alert, **be on the alert; look out, watch out;** look lively *or* alive; stop, look, and listen

9 look after, nurture, foster, **tend, take care of** 1008.19, care for, keep an eye on

ADJS 10 **careful, heedful, regardful, mindful, thoughtful, considerate, caring,** solicitous, loving, tender, curious <old>; circumspect; **attentive** 982.15; **cautious** 494.8

11 **painstaking, diligent, assiduous,** sedulous, **thorough, thoroughgoing,** operose, industrious, elaborate

12 **meticulous, exacting, scrupulous, conscientious,** religious, punctilious, punctual, **particular, fussy, critical, attentive,** scrutinizing; **thorough,** thoroughgoing, thoroughpaced; **finical,** finicking, finicky; **exact, precise,** precisionistic, precisianistic, persnickety, prissy, **accurate, correct;** close, narrow; **strict,** rigid, **rigorous,** spit-and-polish, exigent, demanding; nice, delicate, subtle, fine, refined, minute, detailed, exquisite

13 **vigilant, wary,** prudent, **watchful,** lidless, sleepless, observant, chary; **on the watch, on the lookout,** *aux aguets* <Fr>; **on guard,** on one's guard, guarded; with open eyes, with one's eyes open, with one's eyes peeled *or* with a weather eye open <nf>; open-eyed, sharp-eyed, keen-eyed, Argus-eyed, eagle-eyed, hawk-eyed; all eyes, all ears, **all eyes and ears;** custodial

14 **alert, on the alert,** on the *qui vive* <Fr>, **on one's toes, on top** *and* **on the job** *and* on the ball <nf>, **attentive; awake,** wakeful, **wide-awake,** sleepless, unsleeping, unblinking, unwinking, unnodding, alive, ready, prompt, quick, agile, nimble, quick on the trigger *or* draw *or* uptake <nf>; **smart, bright, keen, sharp**

ADVS 15 **carefully, heedfully,** regardfully, **mindfully,** thoughtfully, **considerately,** solicitously, tenderly, lovingly; circumspectly; **cautiously** 494.12; **with care,** with great care; **painstakingly, diligently,** assiduously, industriously, sedulously, thoroughly, thoroughgoingly, nine ways to Sunday *and* to a t *or* a turn *and* to a fare-thee-well <nf>

16 **meticulously, exactingly, scrupulously, conscientiously,** religiously, punctiliously, punctually, fussily; strictly, rigorously; exactly, **accurately, precisely, with exactitude, with precision;** nicely, with great nicety, refinedly, minutely, in detail, exquisitely

17 **vigilantly, warily,** prudently, **watchfully,** observantly; **alertly,** attentively; sleeplessly, unsleepingly, unwinkingly, unblinkingly, lidlessly, unnoddingly

340 NEGLECT

NOUNS 1 **neglect,** neglectfulness, **negligence,** inadvertence *or* inadvertency, malperformance, dereliction, *culpa* <L>, culpable negligence, criminal negligence; **remissness,** laxity, laxness, slackness, looseness, laches; unrigorousness, permissiveness; noninterference, *laissez-faire* <Fr>, nonrestriction; **disregard,** airy disregard, slighting; **inattention** 983; **oversight,** overlooking; **omission,** nonfeasance, nonperformance, lapse, failure, **default;** poor stewardship *or* guardianship *or* custody; procrastination 845.5

2 **carelessness, heedlessness, unheedfulness,** disregardfulness, regardlessness; unperceptiveness, impercipience, blindness, deliberate blindness; uncaring, unsolicitude, unsolicitousness, **thoughtlessness,** tactlessness, inconsiderateness, **inconsideration;** unthinkingness, unmindfulness, oblivion, forgetfulness; **unpreparedness,** unreadiness, lack of foresight *or* forethought; **recklessness** 493.2; **indifference** 102, *je-m'en-fichisme* and *je-m'en-foutisme* <Fr>; **laziness** 331.5; perfunctoriness; cursoriness, hastiness, offhandedness, casualness; easiness; nonconcern, insouciance; abandon, careless abandon, *sprezzatura* <Ital>

3 **slipshodness,** slipshoddiness, **slovenliness,** slovenry, sluttishness, untidiness, **sloppiness** *and* **messiness** <nf>; haphazardness; slapdash, slapdashness, a lick and a promise <nf>, loose ends; bad job, sad work, botch, slovenly performance; bungling 414.4; procrastination, avoidance

4 **unmeticulousness,** unexactingness, **unscrupulousness,** unrigorousness, **unconscientiousness,** unpunctiliousness, unpunctuality, unparticularness, unfussiness, unfinicalness, **uncriticalness;** inexactness, **inexactitude,** inaccuracy, imprecision, unpreciseness

5 **neglecter,** negligent <old>, ignorer, disregarder; *je-m'en-fichiste* and *je-m'en-foutiste* <Fr>; **procrastinator,** waiter on Providence, Micawber <Dickens>; slacker, shirker, malingerer, dodger, goof-off *and* goldbrick <nf>, idler; skimper <nf>; trifler; sloven, slob; bungler 414.8

VERBS 6 **neglect, overlook, disregard,** not heed, not attend to, take for granted, **ignore;** not care for, not take care of; **pass over,** gloss over; **let slip, let slide** <nf>, let the chance slip by, **let go,** let ride <nf>, let take its course; let the grass grow under one's feet; put off till tomorrow; not think *or* consider, not give a thought to, take no thought *or* account of, blind oneself to, turn a blind eye to, leave out of one’s calculation; lose sight of, lose track of; **be neglectful** *or* **negligent,** fail in one’s duty, **fail,** lapse, **default,** let go by default; not get involved; nod, nod *or* sleep through, sleep <old>, be caught napping, be asleep at the switch <nf>

7 **leave undone,** leave, **let go,** leave half-done, pretermit, **skip,** jump, **miss, omit,** cut *and* blow off <nf>, let be *or* alone, pass over, pass up <nf>, abandon; leave a loose thread, leave loose ends, let dangle, give a lick and a promise; **slack, shirk,** malinger, goof off *and* goldbrick <nf>; trifle; **procrastinate** 846.11

8 **slight;** turn one’s back on, turn a cold shoulder to, get *or* give the cold shoulder *and* get *or* give the go-by *and* cold-shoulder <nf>, leave out in the cold; not lift a finger, leave undone; scamp, skimp <nf>; slur, **slur over,** pass over, skate over <Brit>, slubber over, slip *or* **skip over,** dodge, waffle <Brit nf>, fudge, blink, carefully ignore; skim, **skim over,** skim the surface, **touch upon,** touch upon lightly *or* in passing, pass over lightly, go once over lightly, **hit the high spots** *and* **give a lick and a promise** <nf>; **cut corners,** cut a corner

9 **do carelessly,** do by halves, do in a half-assed way <nf>, do in a slip-shod fashion, do anyhow, do in any old way <nf>; botch, **bungle** 414.11; **trifle with,** play *or* play at fast and loose with, mess around *or* about with *and* muck around *or* about with *and* piss around *or* about with <nf>; **do offhand,** dash off, knock off *and* throw off <nf>, **toss off** *or* **out** <nf>; **roughhew,** roughcast, rough out; **knock out** <nf>, hammer *or* pound out, bat out <nf>; toss *or* slap *or* **throw together,** knock together, cobble up, patch together, patch, patch up, fudge up, fake up, whomp up <nf>, lash up <Brit nf>, slap up <nf>; jury-rig

ADJS 10 **negligent, neglectful,** neglecting, derelict, culpably negligent; inadvertent, uncircumspect; **inattentive** 984.6; unwary, unwatchful, asleep at the switch, off-guard, unguarded; **remiss,** slack, lax, relaxed, laid-back <nf>, loose, loosey-goosey <nf>, unrigorous, permissive, overly permissive; noninterfering, *laissez-faire* <Fr>, nonrestrictive; slighting; slurring, scamping, skimping <nf>; procrastinating 846.17

11 **careless, heedless, unheeding, unheedful, disregardful,** disregardant, regardless, **unsolicitous, uncaring;** tactless, respectless, **thoughtless, unthinking, inconsiderate,** untactful, undiplomatic, mindless of, **unmindful,** forgetful, oblivious; **unprepared,** unready; **reckless** 493.8; **indifferent** 102.6; lackadaisical; lazy, shirking; perfunctory, cursory, casual, offhand; easygoing, *dégagé* <Fr>, airy, flippant, insouciant, free and easy, free as a bird

12 **slipshod,** slipshoddy, **slovenly,** sloppy *and* **messy** *and* half-assed <nf>, lax, slapdash, shoddy, sluttish, untidy, messy; **clumsy, bungling** 414.20; **haphazard, promiscuous, hit-or-miss,** hit-and-miss; deficient, half-assed <nf>, botched

13 **unmeticulous, unexacting, unpainstaking, unscrupulous,** unrigorous, **unconscientious,** unpunctilious, unpunctual, **unparticular, unfussy, unfinical, uncritical;** inexact, inaccurate, unprecise

14 **neglected,** unattended to, untended, unwatched, unchaperoned, uncared-for; **disregarded,** unconsidered, unregarded, **overlooked, missed,** omitted, passed by, passed over, passed up <nf>, gathering dust, **ignored, slighted,** blanked; unasked, unsolicited; half-done, undone, left undone; deserted, abandoned; in the cold *and* out in the cold <nf>; on the shelf, shelved, pigeonholed, on hold *and* on the back burner <nf>, **put** *or* **laid aside,** sidetracked *and* sidelined <nf>, shunted

15 **unheeded, unobserved, unnoticed, unnoted, unperceived, unseen,** undiscerned, undescried, unmarked, unremarked, unregarded, unminded, unconsidered, unthought-of, unmissed

16 **unexamined, unstudied,** unconsidered, unsearched, unscanned, unweighed, unsifted, unexplored, uninvestigated, unindagated, unconned

ADVS 17 **negligently, neglectfully,** inadvertently; **remissly,** laxly, slackly, loosely; **unrigorously,** permissively; nonrestrictively; **slightingly,** lightly, slurringly; scampingly, skimpingly <nf>

18 **carelessly, heedlessly,** unheedingly, unheedfully, disregardfully, regardlessly, **thoughtlessly, unthinkingly, unsolicitously,** tactlessly, **inconsiderately,** unmindfully, forgetfully; **inattentively, unwarily,** unvigilantly, unguardedly, unwatchfully; **recklessly** 493.11; perfunctorily; once over lightly, cursorily; casually, offhand, offhandedly, airily; clumsily, bunglingly 414.24; **sloppily** *and* **messily** <nf>, sluttishly, shoddily, shabbily; haphazardly, promiscuously, hit or miss *and* hit and miss *and* helter-skelter *and* slapdash *and* anyhow *and* any old way *and* any which way <nf>

19 **unmeticulously, unscrupulously, unconscientiously,** unfussily, **uncritically;** inexactly, inaccurately, unprecisely, imprecisely, unrigorously, unpunctually

341 INTERPRETATION

NOUNS 1 **interpretation, construction, reading,** way of seeing *or* understanding *or* putting;

constructionism, strict constructionism, loose constructionism; **diagnosis; definition,** description; **meaning** 518

2 **rendering, rendition; text,** edited text, diplomatic text, normalized text; **version;** reading, lection, variant, variant reading; **edition,** critical *or* scholarly edition; variorum edition *or* variorum; conflation, composite reading *or* text

3 **translation,** transcription, transliteration; Englishing; **paraphrase,** loose *or* free translation; decipherment, decoding, code cracking, unscrambling; amplification, restatement, rewording, simplification; metaphrase, literal *or* verbal *or* faithful *or* word-for-word translation; **pony** *and* trot *and* crib <nf>; interlinear, interlinear translation, bilingual text *or* edition; **gloss, glossary;** key, *clavis* <L>; lipreading

4 **explanation,** explication, unfolding, **elucidation,** illumination, enlightenment, light, **clarification,** *éclaircissement* <Fr>, simplification; take <nf>; **exposition,** expounding, exegesis; **illustration, demonstration,** exemplification; **reason,** rationale; euhemerism, demythologization, allegorization; decipherment, decoding, cracking, unlocking, **solution** 940; editing, emendation; critical revision, rescension, diaskeuasis

5 <explanatory remark> **comment, word of explanation, explanatory remark; annotation,** notation, **note,** note of explanation, footnote, gloss, scholium; exegesis; *apparatus criticus* <L>; commentary, commentation <old>; legend, appendix

6 **interpretability,** interpretableness, construability; **definability, describability;** translatability; **explicability,** explainableness, accountableness

7 **interpreter,** exegete, exegetist, exegesist, hermeneut; constructionist, strict constructionist, loose constructionist; **commentator,** annotator, scholiast; critic, textual critic, **editor,** diaskeuast, emender, emendator; cryptographer, cryptologist, decoder, decipherer, cryptanalyst, lipreader; **explainer,** lexicographer, definer, **explicator,** exponent, expositor, expounder, clarifier; demonstrator, euhemerist, demythologizer, allegorist; go-between 576.4; **translator,** metaphrast, paraphrast; oneirocritic; guide, *cicerone* <Ital>, dragoman

8 <science of interpretation> exegetics, hermeneutics; tropology; criticism, literary criticism, textual criticism; paleography, epigraphy; cryptology, cryptography, cryptanalysis; lexicography; diagnostics, symptomatology, semiology, semiotics; pathognomy; physiognomics, physiognomy; metoposcopy; oneirology, oneirocriticism

VERBS 9 **interpret, diagnose; construe,** put a construction on, **take;** understand, **understand by, take to mean,** take it that; **read; read into,** read between the lines; see in a special light, read in view of, take an approach to, **define, describe**

10 **explain, explicate, expound,** make of, exposit; **give the meaning,** tell the meaning of; **spell out,** unfold; **account for,** give reason for; **clarify, elucidate,** clear up, clear the air, **cover** *and* cover the waterfront *or* the territory <nf>, **make clear,** make plain; **simplify,** popularize; **illuminate,** enlighten, give insight, **shed** *or* **throw light upon;** rationalize, euhemerize, demythologize, allegorize; tell *or* show how, show the way; **demonstrate, show, illustrate,** exemplify; get to the bottom of *or* to the heart of, make sense of, make head or tails of; decipher, crack, unlock, find the key to, unravel, demystify, read between the lines, read into, **solve** 940.2; explain oneself; explain away; overinterpret

11 **comment upon,** commentate, remark upon; **annotate,** gloss; **edit,** make an edition

12 **translate, render,** transcribe, transliterate, put *or* turn into, transfuse the sense of; construe; disambiguate

13 **paraphrase, rephrase, reword, restate,** rehash; give a free *or* loose translation

ADJS 14 **interpretative,** interpretive, interpretational, exegetic, exegetical, hermeneutic, hermeneutical; constructive, constructional; **diagnostic;** symptomatological, semeiological; tropological; **definitional, descriptive**

15 **explanatory,** explaining, exegetic, exegetical, **explicative,** explicatory; **expository,** expositive; **clarifying, elucidative, elucidatory; illuminating,** illuminative, enlightening; **demonstrative, illustrative,** exemplificative; glossarial, annotative, critical, editorial, scholiastic; rationalizing, rationalistic, euhemeristic, demythologizing, allegorizing

16 **translational,** translative; paraphrastic, metaphrastic; literal, word-for-word, verbatim

17 **interpretable, construable; definable,** describable; translatable, renderable; Englishable <old>; explainable, explicable, accountable; diagnosable

ADVS 18 **by interpretation,** as here interpreted, as here defined, according to this reading; **in explanation, to explain; that is,** that is to say, as it were, *id est* <L>, i.e.; **to wit, namely,** *videlicet* <L>, *viz, scilicet* <L>, sc; **in other words,** in words to that effect

342 MISINTERPRETATION

NOUNS 1 **misinterpretation, misunderstanding,** *malentente* <Fr>, misintelligence,

misapprehension, misreading, misconstruction, mistaking, malobservation, **misconception; misrendering,** mistranslation, translator's error, eisegesis; misexplanation, misexplication, misexposition; misreading; misapplication; gloss; **perversion, distortion,** wrenching, twisting, contorting, torturing, squeezing, garbling; reversal; abuse of terms, misuse of words, catachresis; misquotation, miscitation; "blunders round about a meaning"—Pope; misjudgment 948; **error** 975; misrepresentation

VERBS **2 misinterpret, misunderstand,** misconceive, **mistake, misapprehend; misread, misconstrue,** put a false construction on, miss the point, **take wrong, get wrong,** get one wrong, take amiss, take the wrong way; **get backwards,** reverse, have the wrong way round, put the cart before the horse; misapply; misexplain, misexplicate, misexpound; **misrender,** mistranslate; quote out of context; misquote, miscite, give a false coloring, give a false impression *or* idea, gloss; misread; **garble, pervert, distort,** wrench, contort, torture, squeeze, twist the words *or* meaning, stretch *or* strain the sense *or* meaning, misdeem, **misjudge** 948.2; bark up the wrong tree; misrepresent

ADJS **3 misinterpreted, misunderstood, mistaken, misapprehended, misread,** eisegetical, misconceived, **misconstrued; garbled,** misquoted, misrepresented, **perverted, distorted,** catachrestic, catechrestical; backwards, reversed, ass-backwards <nf>

4 misinterpretable, misunderstandable, mistakable

343 COMMUNICATION

NOUNS **1 communication,** communion, congress, **commerce, intercourse;** means of communication, **speaking, speech** 524, utterance, speech act, talking, linguistic intercourse, speech situation, speech circuit, converse, **conversation** 541; signaling; **contact, touch, connection; interpersonal communication, intercommunication,** intercommunion, grokking <nf>, **interplay,** interaction; **exchange,** interchange; answer, response, reply; one-way communication, two-way communication; **dealings,** dealing, **traffic, truck** <nf>; information 551; message 552.4; ESP, telepathy 689.9; writing; correspondence 553; social intercourse 582.4; miscommunication

2 informing, telling, imparting, impartation, impartment, **conveyance, transmission,** transmittal, transfer, transference, sharing, giving, sending, signaling; notification, alerting, **announcement** 352.2, publication 352, **disclosure** 351

3 communicativeness, talkativeness 540, **sociability** 582; **unreserve,** unreservedness, **unreticence, unrestraint, unconstraint,** unrestriction; **unrepression,** unsuppression; **unsecretiveness,** untaciturnity; candor, **frankness** 644.4; **openness,** plainness, freeness, outspokenness, plainspokenness; **accessibility,** approachability, conversableness; **extroversion,** outgoingness; **uncommunicativeness** 344, reserve, taciturnity

4 communicability, impartability, conveyability, transmittability, transmissibility, transferability; contagiousness

5 communications, electronic communications, communications industry, media, communications medium *or* media, mass communications, communications network; telecommunication 347.1, long-distance communication, electronic communication; radio communication, wire communication, broadcasting; communication *or* information theory 551.7; signaling

VERBS **6 communicate, be in touch** *or* **contact,** be in connection *or* intercourse, have intercourse, hold communication; **intercommunicate,** interchange, commune with; grok <nf>; commerce with, **deal with, traffic with, have dealings with, have truck with** <nf>; **speak, talk,** be in a speech situation, **converse** 541.9, pass the time of day

7 communicate, impart, tell, lay on one <nf>, **convey, transmit,** transfer, send, send word, deliver *or* send a signal *or* message, **disseminate,** broadcast, pass, **pass on** *or* **along, hand on; report, render, make known,** get across *or* over; give *or* send *or* leave word; **signal;** share, share with; **leak,** let slip out, **give** 478.12; tell 551.8

8 communicate with, get in touch *or* **contact with, contact** <nf>, **make contact with,** raise, reach, get to, get through to, get hold of, make *or* establish connection, get in connection with; **make advances,** make overtures, **approach,** make up to <nf>; relate to; keep in touch *or* contact with, maintain connection; **answer,** respond *or* reply to, get back to; **question,** interrogate; **correspond,** drop a line

ADJS **9 communicational, communicating,** communional; transmissional; speech, **verbal,** linguistic, oral; **conversational** 541.13; **intercommunicational,** intercommunicative, intercommunional, interactional, interactive, interacting, interresponsive, responsive, answering; questioning, interrogative, interrogatory; telepathic

10 communicative, talkative 540.9, gossipy, newsy; **sociable; unreserved, unreticent,** unshrinking, **unrestrained, unconstrained,** unhampered, unrestricted; demonstrative, expansive, effusive; **unrepressed, unsuppressed; unsecretive,** unsilent, untaciturn; candid, **frank** 644.17; self-revealing, self-revelatory; **open,** free, outspoken, free-speaking, free-spoken, free-tongued; **accessible, approachable,** conversable, easy to speak to; **extroverted,** outgoing; **uncommunicative** 344.8

11 **communicable, impartable, conveyable, transmittable,** transmissible, transferable; contagious

12 communicatively; verbally, talkatively, by word of mouth, orally, viva voce

344 UNCOMMUNICATIVENESS

NOUNS 1 **uncommunicativeness,** closeness, indisposition to speak, disinclination to communicate; unconversableness, **unsociability** 583; nondisclosure, **secretiveness** 345.1; lack of message *or* meaning, meaninglessness 520

2 **taciturnity, untalkativeness,** unloquaciousness; **silence** 51; **speechlessness,** wordlessness, dumbness, **muteness** 51.2; quietness, quietude; laconicalness, laconism, curtness, shortness, terseness; brusqueness, briefness, brevity, conciseness, economy *or* sparingness of words, pauciloquy <old>

3 **reticence** *or* reticency; **reserve,** reservedness, restraint, low key, **constraint;** guardedness, discreetness, discretion; suppression, repression; subduedness; backwardness, retirement, low profile; **aloofness, standoffishness,** distance, remoteness, **detachment,** withdrawal, withdrawnness, reclusiveness, solitariness; impersonality; **coolness,** coldness, frigidity, iciness, frostiness, chilliness; **inaccessibility, unapproachability; undemonstrativeness,** unexpansiveness, unaffability, uncongeniality; **introversion;** modesty, bashfulness 139.4, pudency; expressionlessness, blankness, impassiveness, impassivity; straight *or* poker face, mask

4 **prevarication, equivocation,** tergiversation, **evasion,** shuffle, fencing, dodging, parrying, waffling *and* tap-dancing <nf>; *suppressio veri* <L>; weasel words

5 **man of few words,** clam <nf>, strong silent type, laconic <old>; Spartan, Laconian; evader, weasel

VERBS 6 **keep to oneself,** keep one's own counsel; not open one's mouth, not say a word, not breathe a word, stand mute, **hold one's tongue** 51.5, clam up <nf>; bite one's tongue; have little to say, refuse comment, say neither yes nor no, waste no words, save one's breath; retire; **keep one's distance,** keep at a distance, keep oneself to oneself, **stand aloof,** hold oneself aloof; keep secret 345.7

7 **prevaricate, equivocate, waffle** <nf>, tergiversate, evade, dodge, sidestep, pussyfoot, say in a roundabout way, parry, duck, weasel *and* weasel out <nf>, palter; hum and haw, **hem and haw,** back and fill; **mince words,** mince the truth, euphemize

ADJS 8 **uncommunicative,** indisposed *or* disinclined to communicate; unconversational, unconversable <old>; **unsociable** 583.5; **secretive** 345.15; meaningless 520.6

9 **taciturn, untalkative,** unloquacious, indisposed to talk; **silent, speechless,** wordless, **mum; mute** 51.12, dumb, quiet; close, **closemouthed,** close-tongued, snug <nf>, **tight-lipped;** close-lipped, tongue-tied, word-bound; **laconic,** curt, brief, terse, brusque, short, concise, **sparing of words,** economical of words, of few words

10 **reticent, reserved,** restrained, nonassertive, low-key, low-keyed, constrained; **suppressed,** repressed; subdued; guarded, discreet; backward, **retiring,** shrinking; **aloof, standoffish,** offish <nf>, standoff, **distant,** remote, removed, **detached,** Olympian, withdrawn; impersonal; **cool,** cold, frigid, icy, frosty, chilled, chilly; **inaccessible, unapproachable,** forbidding; **undemonstrative,** unexpansive, unaffable, uncongenial, ungenial; **introverted;** modest, verecund, verecundious, *pudique* <Fr>, bashful 139.12; expressionless, blank, impassive

11 **prevaricating, equivocal,** tergiversating, tergiversant, waffling <nf>, **evasive,** weaselly, weasel-worded

345 SECRECY

NOUNS 1 **secrecy,** secretness, airtight secrecy, close secrecy; crypticness; the dark; hiddenness, hiding, **concealment** 346; **secretiveness,** closeness; discreetness, discretion, **uncommunicativeness** 344; **evasiveness,** evasion, subterfuge; hugger-mugger, hugger-muggery

2 **privacy,** retirement, isolation, sequestration, seclusion; incognito, anonymity; **confidentialness,** confidentiality; closed meeting *or* session, executive session, private conference, secret meeting

3 **veil of secrecy, veil,** curtain, pall, wraps; iron curtain, "curtains of fog and iron"—Churchill, bamboo curtain; wall *or* barrier of secrecy; **suppression,** repression, stifling, smothering; **censorship,** blackout <nf>, **hush-up, cover-up; seal of secrecy,** official secrecy, classification, official classification; security, ironbound security; pledge *or* oath of secrecy

4 **stealth,** stealthiness, **furtiveness, clandestineness,** clandestinity, clandestine behavior, **surreptitiousness, covertness,** slyness, shiftiness,

sneakiness, slinkiness, underhandedness, underhand dealing, undercover *or* underground activity, **covert activity** *or* **operation;** prowl, prowling; stalking; hugger-mugger; counterintelligence; conspiracy, cabal, intrigue; secret service, intelligence agency

5 **secret, confidence;** private *or* personal matter, privity <old>; trade secret; confidential *or* **privileged information** *or* **communication;** doctor-patient *or* lawyer-client confidentiality; seal *or* secret of the confessional; more than meets the eye; deep dark secret; solemn secret; guarded secret, hush-hush matter, classified information, eyes-only *or* top-secret information, restricted information; confession; inside information, inside skinny <nf>; **mystery, enigma** 522.8; the arcane, arcanum, *arcanum arcanorum* <L>; esoterica, cabala, the occult, occultism, hermetism, hermeticism, hermetics; deep *or* profound secret, sealed book, mystery of mysteries; skeleton in the closet *or* cupboard, family secret; sealed orders, state secret

6 **cryptography,** cryptoanalysis, cryptoanalytics; **code, cipher;** secret language; code book, code word, code name; **secret writing,** coded message, cryptogram, cryptograph; secret *or* invisible *or* sympathetic ink; cryptographer

VERBS 7 **keep secret, keep mum, veil,** keep dark; keep it a deep, dark secret; secrete, **conceal;** keep to oneself 344.6, keep *in petto* <Ital>, bosom, keep close, keep snug <nf>, keep back, keep from, **withhold,** hold out on <nf>; not let it go further, keep within these walls, keep within the bosom of the lodge, keep between us; **not tell,** hold one's tongue 51.5, never let on <nf>, make no sign, not breathe *or* whisper a word, clam up <nf>, be the soul of discretion; **not give away** <nf>, "tell it not in Gath"—Bible, **keep it under one's hat** <nf>, keep under wraps <nf>, keep a lid on, keep buttoned up <nf>, keep one's own counsel; play one's cards close to the chest *or* to one's vest; play dumb; clam up; not let the right hand know what the left is doing; keep in ignorance, keep *or* leave in the dark; classify; file and forget; **have secret** *or* **confidential information,** be in on the secret *and* know where the bodies are buried <nf>

8 **cover up,** muffle up; **hush up, hush,** hush-hush, shush, hugger-mugger; **suppress,** repress, **stifle,** muffle, **smother,** squash, quash, squelch, kill, sit on *or* upon, put the lid on <nf>; **censor,** black out <nf>

9 **tell confidentially,** tell for one's ears only, mention privately, **whisper, breathe, whisper in the ear;** tell one a secret; take aside, see one alone, talk to in private, speak in privacy; say under one's breath

10 code, encode, encipher, cipher

ADJS 11 **secret,** close, closed, closet; cryptic, dark; unuttered, unrevealed, undivulged, undisclosed, unspoken, untold; **hush-hush, top secret,** supersecret, eyes-only, classified, restricted, under wraps <nf>, under security *or* security restrictions; **censored,** suppressed, stifled, smothered, hushed-up, under the seal *or* ban of secrecy; **unrevealable, undivulgable, undisclosable, untellable,** unwhisperable, unbreatheable, unutterable; latent, ulterior, concealed, hidden 346.11; arcane, esoteric, occult, cabalistic, hermetic; enigmatic, mysterious 522.18

12 **covert, clandestine,** quiet, unobtrusive, hugger-mugger, **surreptitious, undercover,** underground, under-the-counter, under-the-table, **cloak-and-dagger** <nf>, backdoor, hole-and-corner <nf>, underhand, **underhanded; furtive, stealthy,** privy, backstairs, **sly, shifty, sneaky,** sneaking, skulking, slinking, slinky, feline

13 **private, privy, closed-door; intimate, inmost,** innermost, interior, inward, **personal; privileged,** protected; **secluded, sequestered,** isolated, withdrawn, retired; incognito, anonymous

14 **confidential,** auricular, **inside** <nf>, esoteric; *in petto* <Ital>, close to one's chest *or* vest <nf>, under one's hat <nf>; **off the record,** not for the record, not to be minuted, within these four walls, in the bosom of the lodge, for no other ears, eyes-only, between us; not to be quoted, not for publication *or* release; not for attribution; unquotable, unpublishable, sealed; sensitive, privileged, under privilege

15 **secretive,** close-lipped, secret, close, dark; discreet; evasive, shifty; **uncommunicative, close-mouthed**

16 coded, encoded; ciphered, enciphered; cryptographic, cryptographical; hieroglyphic

ADVS 17 **secretly, in secret,** in *or* up one's sleeve; in the closet; with nobody the wiser; **covertly,** stownlins *and* in hidlings <Scot>, **undercover,** *à couvert* <Fr>, under the cloak of; **behind the scenes,** in the background, in a corner, in the dark, in darkness, behind the veil *or* curtain, behind the veil of secrecy; *sub rosa* <L>, under the rose; underground; *sotto voce* <Ital>, under the breath, with bated breath, in a whisper; off the record

18 **surreptitiously, clandestinely, secretively, furtively, stealthily, slyly,** shiftily, sneakily, sneakingly, skulkingly, slinkingly, slinkily; by stealth, **on the sly** *and* **on the quiet** *and* on the qt <nf>, *à la dérobée* <Fr>, *en tapinois* <Fr>, behind one's back, by a side door, **like a thief in the night,** underhand, underhandedly, under the table, in holes and corners *and* in a hole-and-corner way <nf>

19 **privately,** privily, **in private,** in privacy, in privy; apart, aside; **behind closed doors,** *januis clausis* <L>, *à huis clos* <Fr>, *in camera* <L>, in chambers, in secret *or* closed meeting, in executive session, in private conference

20 **confidentially, in confidence,** in strict confidence, under the seal of secrecy, **off the record; between ourselves,** strictly between us, *entre nous* <Fr>, *inter nos* <L>, for your ears *or* eyes only, between you and me, from me to you, between you and me and the bedpost *or* lamppost <nf>

346 CONCEALMENT

NOUNS **1** **concealment, hiding, secretion;** burial, burying, interment, putting away; **cover, covering,** covering up, masking, screening 295.1; mystification, obscuration; darkening, obscurement, clouding 1027.6; hiddenness, concealedness, **covertness,** occultation; eclipse; disappearance; **secrecy** 345; uncommunicativeness 344; invisibility 32; **subterfuge, deception** 356

2 **veil,** curtain, **cover, screen** 295.2, mask; fig leaf; **wraps** <nf>; **cover, disguise**

3 **ambush,** ambushment, **ambuscade,** *guet-apens* <Fr>; surveillance, shadowing 938.9; lurking hole *or* place; blind, stalking-horse; booby trap, trap

4 **hiding place, hideaway, hideout,** hidey-hole <nf>, hiding, concealment, **cover,** secret place; safe house; drop, accommodation address <Brit>; **recess, corner,** dark corner, nook, cranny, niche; **hole,** bolt-hole, foxhole, trench, dugout, lair, den; bomb shelter, storm shelter; **asylum, sanctuary, retreat, refuge** 1009; covert, coverture, undercovert; **cache,** stash <nf>; safe-deposit box, bank vault, safe; cubbyhole, cubby, pigeonhole; secret compartment; mother's skirts

5 **secret passage,** covert way, secret exit; **back way, back door, side door;** bolt-hole, escape route, escape hatch, escapeway; secret staircase, *escalier dérobé* <Fr>, **back stairs; underground,** underground route, underground railroad

VERBS **6** **conceal, hide,** ensconce; **cover, cover up,** blind, **screen, cloak, veil,** screen off, curtain, blanket, shroud, enshroud, envelop; **disguise, camouflage, mask,** dissemble; plain-wrap, wrap in plain brown paper; whitewash <nf>; **paper over,** gloss over, varnish, slur over; distract attention from; **obscure,** obfuscate, cloud, becloud, befog, throw out a smoke screen, shade, throw into the shade; **eclipse,** occult; put out of sight, sweep under the rug *or* carpet, keep under cover, keep under wraps; cover up one's tracks, lay a false scent, hide one's trail; hide one's light under a bushel

7 **secrete, hide away,** keep hidden, put away, store away, stow away, file and forget, bottle up, lock up, seal up, put out of sight; **keep secret** 345.7; **cache,** stash <nf>, deposit, plant <nf>; **bury;** bosom, embosom <old>

8 <hide oneself> **hide, conceal oneself, take cover, hide out** <nf>, hide away, **go into hiding,** go to ground; stay in hiding, **lie hid** *or* **hidden,** lie *or* lay low <nf>, lie perdue, lie snug *or* close <nf>, lie doggo *and* sit tight <nf>, burrow <old>, **hole up** <nf>, **go underground;** play peekaboo *or* bopeep *or* hide and seek; keep out of sight, retire from sight, drop from sight, disappear 34.2, crawl *or* retreat into one's shell, keep *or* stay in the background, keep a low profile, stay in the shade; **disguise oneself,** masquerade, take an assumed name, assume a cover, change one's identity, go under an alias, remain anonymous, be incognito, go *or* sail under false colors, wear a mask; leave no address

9 **lurk,** couch; **lie in wait,** lay wait; **sneak, skulk, slink, prowl,** nightwalk, **steal, creep,** pussyfoot <nf>, gumshoe <nf>, tiptoe; stalk, shadow 938.34

10 **ambush,** ambuscade, **waylay; lie in ambush,** lay wait for, **lie in wait for,** lay for <nf>; stalk; set a trap for

ADJS **11** **concealed, hidden, hid,** occult, recondite <old>, blind; **covered** 295.31; **covert, under cover,** under wraps <nf>; code-named; **obscured,** obfuscated, clouded, clouded over, wrapped in clouds, in a cloud *or* fog *or* mist *or* haze, beclouded, befogged; eclipsed, in eclipse, under an eclipse; in the wings; buried; underground; close, secluded, secluse, sequestered; in purdah, under house arrest, incommunicado; **obscure,** abstruse, mysterious 522.18; **secret** 345.11; unknown 930.17, latent 519.5

12 **unrevealed, undisclosed,** undivulged, **unexposed;** unapparent, **invisible, unseen,** unperceived, unspied, undetected; undiscovered, unexplored, untraced, untracked; unaccounted for, unexplained, unsolved

13 **disguised, camouflaged, in disguise;** masked, masquerading; **incognito,** incog <nf>, anonymous, unrecognizable; in plain wrapping *or* plain brown paper <nf>; cryptic, coded, codified

14 **in hiding,** hidden out, **under cover,** in a dark corner, lying hid, doggo <nf>; in ambush *or* ambuscade; waiting concealed, lying in wait; in the wings; lurking, skulking, prowling, sneaking, stealing; pussyfooted, pussyfoot, on tiptoe; stealthy, furtive, surreptitious 345.12

15 **concealing, hiding,** obscuring, obfuscatory; covering; unrevealing, nonrevealing, undisclosing

347 COMMUNICATIONS

NOUNS 1 **communications,** signaling, telecommunication, comms <Brit nf>, transmission; electronic communication, electrical communication; satellite communication; wire communication, wireless communication; communications engineering, communications technology; communications engineer; media, communications medium *or* media; communication *or* information theory 551.7; communication *or* information explosion

2 **telegraph,** telegraph recorder, ticker; **telegraphy,** telegraphics, data transmission; **teleprinter,** Telex <trademark>, teletypewriter; teleprinter exchange *or* telex; wire service; code 345.6; electricity 1032; **key,** interrupter, transmitter, sender; receiver, **sounder**

3 **radio** 1034, **radiotelephony, radiotelegraphy,** wireless <Brit>, wireless telephony, wireless telegraphy; line radio, wire *or* wired radio, wired wireless <Brit>, wire wave communication; radiophotography; digital audio broadcasting *or* DAB; **television** 1035; electronics 1033

4 **telephone, phone** *and* horn <nf>, dog <Brit nf>, telephone set, handset; telephony, telephonics, telephone mechanics, telephone engineering; high-frequency telephony; receiver, telephone receiver, earpiece; mouthpiece, transmitter; telephone extension, extension; wall telephone, desk telephone; dial *or* rotary telephone, Touch-Tone telephone, push-button telephone, cordless phone; beeper; scrambler; telephone booth, telephone box, call box <Brit>, telephone kiosk <Brit>, public telephone, coin telephone, pay station, pay phone; mobile telephone *or* phone <nf>, cellular *or* cell telephone *or* phone <nf>, car phone, digital phone; speakerphone, videophone; speed calling, call forwarding, call waiting, redial, caller ID service; phone card; facsimile transmission, fax

5 **radiophone, radiotelephone,** wireless telephone, wireless; headset, headphone 50.8

6 **intercom** <nf>, Interphone, intercommunication system

7 **telephone exchange,** telephone office, central office, **central;** automatic exchange, machine-switching office; step-by-step switching, panel switching, crossbar switching, electronic switching

8 **switchboard; PBX** *or* private branch *or* business exchange, private exchange; in *or* A board, out *or* B board

9 **telephone operator, operator,** switchboard operator, telephonist, **central** <old>; long distance; **PBX operator**

10 **telephone man;** telephone mechanic; telephonic engineer; lineman *or* linewoman

11 **telephoner,** phoner <nf>, caller, **party,** calling party, subscriber

12 telephone number, **phone number** <nf>, unlisted number; telephone directory *or* book, phone book <nf>; telephone exchange, exchange; telephone area, area code; calling zone

13 telephone call, **phone call** <nf>, **call, ring** *and* buzz <nf>; local call, toll call, long-distance call; long distance, direct distance nondialing, DDD; trunk call; station-to-station call, person-to-person call; collect call; toll-free call; mobile call; dial tone, busy signal; crank call, nuisance call; conference call, video teleconference, teleconference; hot line; chat *or* talk *or* gab line, messagerie; voicemail, phonemail; electronic mail *or* e-mail *or* email; telemarketing; multilevel marketing, multilevel sales; cold call; ringy-dingy *or* jingle *or* tinkle <nf>

14 **telegram, telegraph, wire** <nf>, telex; **cablegram, cable; radiogram,** radiotelegram; **day letter, night letter;** fast telegram

15 **Telephoto** <trademark>, Wirephoto <trademark>, Telecopier <trademark>, **facsimile, fax** <nf>; telephotograph, radiophotograph

16 **telegrapher,** telegraphist, telegraph operator; **sparks** *and* brass pounder *and* dit-da artist <nf>; radiotelegrapher; wireman, wire chief

17 **line,** wire line, telegraph line, telephone line; private line, direct line; party line; hot line; trunk, trunk line; WATS *or* wide area telecommunications service, WATS line; cable, telegraph cable; transmission line, concentric cable, coaxial cable, co-ax <nf>, fiber cable, fiberoptic cable

18 **computer networking, Internet, World Wide Web** *or* WWW, electronic mail; modem; digital compression

VERBS 19 **telephone, phone** <nf>, call, call on the phone <nf>, put in *or* make a call, **call up, ring,** ring up, give a ring *or* buzz *or* call *or* tinkle *or* jingle <nf>, buzz <nf>; nonformal; listen in; hold the phone *or* wire; hang up, ring off <Brit>; cold call

20 **telegraph,** telegram, flash, **wire** *and* send a wire <nf>, telex; **cable;** Teletype; radio; sign on, sign off; fax

ADJS 21 **communicational,** telecommunicational, **communications,** communication, signal; **telephonic,** magnetotelephonic, microtelephonic, monotelephonic, thermotelephonic; **telegraphic; Teletype;** Wirephoto, facsimile, fax; phototelegraphic, telephotographic; **radio,** wireless <Brit>; radiotelegraphic

348 MANIFESTATION

NOUNS **1 manifestation, appearance; expression,** evincement; **indication, evidence,** proof 957; embodiment, incarnation, bodying forth, materialization; epiphany, theophany, angelophany, Satanophany, Christophany, pneumatophany, avatar; **revelation, disclosure** 351, showing forth; dissemination, **publication** 352

2 display, demonstration, show, showing; presentation, showing forth, presentment, ostentation <old>, **exhibition, exhibit, exposition,** expo, retrospective; production, performance, representation, enactment, projection; opening, unfolding, unfoldment; **showcase,** showcasing, unveiling, exposure, varnishing day, *vernissage* <Fr>

3 manifestness, apparentness, obviousness, plainness, clearness, crystal-clearness, perspicuity, distinctness, microscopical distinctness, patency, patentness, palpability, tangibility; evidentness, evidence <old>, **self-evidence; openness,** openness to sight, overtness; visibility 31; unmistakableness, unquestionability 970.3

4 conspicuousness, prominence, salience *or* saliency, bold *or* high *or* strong relief, boldness, **noticeability,** pronouncedness, strikingness, demonstrativeness, outstandingness; highlighting, spotlighting, featuring; obtrusiveness; **flagrance** *or* flagrancy, arrantness, blatancy, notoriousness, notoriety; ostentation 501; dramatics, theatrics

VERBS **5 manifest, show, exhibit, demonstrate, display,** breathe, unfold, develop; **present,** represent <old>, **evince, evidence; indicate,** give sign *or* token, token, betoken, mean 518.8; **express,** show forth, set forth; show off, showcase; **make plain, make clear;** produce, bring out, roll out, trot out <nf>, bring forth, bring forward *or* to the front, put forward, bring to notice, expose to view, bring to *or* into view; **reveal, divulge, disclose** 351.4; **illuminate, highlight, spotlight, feature,** bring to the fore, place in the foreground, bring out in bold *or* strong *or* high relief; **flaunt,** dangle, wave, **flourish,** brandish, parade; affect, make a show *or* a great show of; perform, enact, dramatize; **embody,** incarnate, body forth, **materialize**

6 <manifest oneself> **come out, come into the open,** come out of the closet <nf>, come forth, **surface; show one's colors** *or* true colors, wear one's heart upon one's sleeve; **speak up, speak out,** raise one's voice, **assert oneself,** let one's voice be heard, speak one's piece *or* one's mind, **stand up and be counted,** take a stand; open up, show one's mind, have no secrets; **appear, materialize**

7 be manifest, be there for all to see, make an appearance, be no secret *or* revelation, **surface,** lie on the surface, be seen with half an eye; need no explanation, **speak for itself,** tell its own story *or* tale; **go without saying,** *aller sans dire* <Fr>; **leap to the eye,** *sauter aux yeux* <Fr>, **stare one in the face,** hit one in the eye, strike the eye, glare, shout; come across, project; stand out, stick out, stick out a mile, stick out like a sore thumb, hang out <nf>

ADJS **8 manifest, apparent, evident, self-evident,** axiomatic, indisputable, **obvious, plain, clear,** perspicuous, distinct, palpable, patent, tangible; **visible, perceptible, perceivable, discernible,** seeable, observable, **noticeable, much in evidence; to be seen,** easy to be seen, plain to be seen; plain as day, plain as the nose on one's face, plain as a pikestaff, big as life, big as life and twice as ugly; **crystal-clear,** clear as crystal; **express, explicit, unmistakable,** not to be mistaken, open-and-shut <nf>; self-explanatory, self-explaining; **indubitable** 969.15

9 manifesting, manifestative, showing, displaying, showcasing, demonstrating, **demonstrative,** presentational, expository, expositional, exhibitive, exhibitional, **expressive;** evincive, evidential; **indicative,** indicatory; appearing, incarnating, incarnational, materializing; epiphanic, theophanic, angelophanic, Satanophanic, Christophanic, pneumatophanic; **revelational,** revelatory, **disclosive** 351.10; promulgatory 352.18; histrionic

10 open, overt, open to all, open as day, out of the closet <nf>; unclassified; **revealed, disclosed, exposed;** made public; bare, bald, naked

11 unhidden, unconcealed, unscreened, uncurtained, unshaded, veilless; **unobscure,** unobscured, undarkened, unclouded; **undisguised,** uncamouflaged

12 conspicuous, noticeable, notable, ostensible, **prominent, bold, pronounced, salient,** in relief, in bold *or* high *or* strong relief, **striking, outstanding,** in the foreground, sticking *or* hanging out <nf>; highlighted, spotlighted, featured; obtrusive; **flagrant,** arrant, blatant, notorious; **glaring,** staring, stark-staring

13 manifested, demonstrated, exhibited, shown, displayed, showcased; **manifestable,** demonstrable, exhibitable, displayable

ADVS **14 manifestly, apparently, evidently, obviously, patently, plainly, clearly,** distinctly, **unmistakably,** expressly, explicitly, palpably, tangibly; **visibly, perceptibly,** perceivably, discernibly, observably, **noticeably**

15 openly, overtly, before one, **before one's eyes** *or* very eyes, under one's nose <nf>; to one's face, face-to-face; **publicly,** in public; **in the open,** out in the open, in open court, **in plain sight,** in broad daylight, in the face of day *or* heaven, for all to see, in public view, in plain view, in the marketplace; aboveboard, on the table

16 **conspicuously, prominently, noticeably,** ostensibly, **notably, markedly, pronouncedly, saliently, strikingly, boldly, outstandingly;** obtrusively; arrantly, flagrantly, blatantly, notoriously; glaringly, staringly

349 REPRESENTATION, DESCRIPTION

NOUNS 1 **representation, delineation,** presentment, drawing, **portrayal, portraiture, depiction,** depictment, rendering, rendition, characterization, charactering <old>, picturization, figuration, limning, imaging; prefigurement; **illustration,** exemplification, demonstration; projection, **realization,** manifestation, presentment; imagery, iconography; **art** 712; **drama** 704.1,4-6; conventional representation, plan, diagram, schema, schematization, **blueprint, chart, map;** drawing, sketch; visual; **notation,** mathematical notation, musical notation, score, tablature; dance notation, Laban dance notation system *or* labanotation, choreography; symbolization; **writing,** script, written word, text; **writing system; alphabet,** syllabary; alphabetic symbol, syllabic symbol, letter, ideogram, pictogram, logogram, logograph, hieroglyphic *or* hieroglyph, rune; printing 548; **symbol**

2 **description, portrayal,** portraiture, **depiction,** rendering, rendition, **delineation,** limning, **representation** 349; imagery; stream of consciousness; **word painting** *or* **picture, picture, portrait, image,** photograph; evocation, impression; **sketch,** vignette, cameo; **characterization,** character, character sketch, profile; vivid description, exact description, realistic *or* naturalistic description, slice of life, *tranche de vie* <Fr>, graphic account; specification, particularization, particulars, details, itemization, catalog, cataloging; **narration;** version

3 **account, recounting,** statement, report, word, statement of fact; play-by-play description, blow-by-blow account *or* description; case study *or* history

4 **impersonation,** personation; mimicry, mimicking, mime, miming, pantomime, pantomiming, aping, dumb show; mimesis, **imitation** 336; personification, embodiment, incarnation, realization; **characterization,** portrayal; **acting,** playing, dramatization, enacting, enactment, performing, performance; **posing,** masquerade

5 **image, likeness; resemblance,** semblance, similitude, simulacrum; **effigy,** icon, idol; **copy** 785, fair copy; **picture; portrait,** likeness; **photograph** 714.3,6; **perfect** *or* **exact likeness, duplicate, double,** clone; replica, facsimile; match, fellow, mate, companion, **twin;** living image, very image, very picture, living picture, dead ringer <nf>, spitting image *or* spit and image <nf>, eidetic image; miniature, model; **reflection,** shadow, mirroring; trace, tracing; rubbing

6 **figure, figurine; doll,** dolly <nf>; teddy bear; **puppet, marionette,** *fantoche* <Fr>, *fantoccino* and *fantoccio* <Ital>, hand puppet, glove puppet; **mannequin** *or* manikin, model, dummy, working model, lay figure; wax figure, waxwork; scarecrow, corn dolly <Brit>, woman *or* man of straw, snowman, snowwoman, gingerbread woman *or* man, scarecrow, robot, automaton; **sculpture, bust, statue, statuette,** statuary, monument <old>; portrait bust *or* statue; death mask, life mask; carving, wood carving; figurehead

7 **representative,** representation, **type, specimen,** typification, embodiment, type specimen; **cross section;** exponent; **example** 786.2, exemplar; exemplification, typicality, typicalness, representativeness; epitome, quintessence, figuration

VERBS 8 **represent, delineate, depict,** render, characterize, hit off, character <old>, **portray, picture,** picturize, limn, draw, paint 712.20; **register,** convey an impression of; take *or* catch a likeness, capture; **notate, write,** print, map, chart, diagram, schematize; trace, trace out, trace over; rub, take a rubbing; record, photograph, film, shoot, scan; **symbolize** 517.18

9 **describe, portray, picture,** render, **depict, represent, delineate,** limn, **paint,** draw; evoke, bring to life, make one see; outline, sketch; **characterize,** character; **express,** set forth, give words to; **write** 547.21

10 **go for** *or* **as, pass for** *or* **as, count for** *or* **as,** answer for *or* as, stand in the place of, be taken as, be regarded as, be the equivalent of; **serve as,** be accepted for

11 **image, mirror,** hold the mirror up to nature, reflect, figure; **embody,** body forth, incarnate, **personify,** personate, impersonate; **illustrate,** demonstrate, exemplify; project, realize; shadow, shadow forth; **prefigure, pretypify,** foreshadow, adumbrate

12 **impersonate,** personate; **mimic,** mime, pantomime, take off, do *or* give an impression of, mock; ape, copy; **pose as, masquerade as,** affect

the manner *or* guise of, pass for, pretend to be, represent oneself to be; **act,** enact, perform, do; **play, act as,** act *or* play a part, act the part of, act out, role-play, portray

ADJS **13 representational, representative, depictive, delineatory, resemblant; illustrative,** illustrational; pictorial, graphic, vivid; ideographic, pictographic, figurative; **representing, portraying,** limning, illustrating; **typifying, symbolizing,** symbolic, personifying, incarnating, embodying; imitative, mimetic, simulative, apish, mimish; echoic, onomatopoeic

14 descriptive, depictive, expositive, **representative,** representational, **delineative; expressive, vivid, graphic,** well-drawn, detailed; realistic, naturalistic, true to life, lifelike, real-life, faithful; evocative

15 typical, typic, typal; exemplary, sample; **characteristic,** distinctive, distinguishing, quintessential; **realistic, naturalistic; natural, normal,** usual, regular, par for the course <nf>; **true to type, true to form,** the nature of the beast <nf>

ADVS **16 descriptively,** representatively; **expressively, vividly, graphically;** faithfully, realistically, naturalistically

350 MISREPRESENTATION

NOUNS **1 misrepresentation, perversion, distortion,** deformation, garbling, twisting, slanting; inaccuracy; **coloring,** miscoloring, **false coloring;** false pretenses; **falsification** 354.9, **spin,** spin control, disinformation; misteaching 569; injustice, unjust representation; misdrawing, mispainting; misstatement, misreport, misquotation, misinformation; misdirection, misguidance; nonrepresentationalism, nonrealism, abstractionism, expressionism, calculated distortion; overstatement, exaggeration, hyperbole, overdrawing; understatement, litotes, conservative estimate; adulteration, forgery, counterfeiting; cover-up, whitewash

2 bad *or* poor likeness, **daub,** botch; scribble, scratch, hen tracks *or* scratches <nf>; distortion, distorted image, false image, anamorphosis, astigmatism; **travesty,** parody, **caricature, burlesque,** gross exaggeration

VERBS **3 misrepresent, belie,** give a wrong idea, pass *or* pawn *or* foist *or* fob off as, send *or* deliver the wrong signal *or* message; put in a false light, **pervert, distort, garble, twist,** warp, deform, wrench, slant, put a spin on, twist the meaning of; **color,** miscolor, pervert, **give a false coloring,** put a false construction *or* appearance upon, slant, falsify 354.18; misteach 569.3; **disguise,** camouflage; misstate, misreport, misquote, put words into one's mouth, quote out of context; overstate, exaggerate, overdraw, blow up, blow out of all proportion, overemphasize; understate; **travesty,** parody, **caricature, burlesque;** misinform, disinform

4 misdraw, mispaint; overdraw, daub, botch, butcher, scribble, scratch

351 DISCLOSURE

NOUNS **1 disclosure,** disclosing; **revelation,** revealment, revealing, making public, publicizing, broadcasting, announcement; apocalypse; discovery, discovering; manifestation 348; unfolding, unfoldment, **uncovering,** unwrapping, uncloaking, taking the wraps off, taking from under wraps, removing the veil, **unveiling, unmasking; exposure,** exposition, **exposé; baring,** stripping, stripping *or* laying bare; outing <nf>; **showing up**

2 divulgence, divulging, divulgement, divulgation, evulgation <old>, letting out, full report; **betrayal,** unwitting disclosure, indiscretion; leak, communication leak; **giveaway** *and* dead giveaway <nf>; telltale, telltale sign, obvious clue; **blabbing** *and* blabbering <nf>, babbling; **tattling;** state's evidence

3 confession, confessing, shrift, **acknowledgment, admission,** concession, avowal, self-admission, self-concession, self-avowal, owning, owning up *and* coming clean <nf>, unbosoming, unburdening oneself, getting a load off one's mind <nf>, fessing up <nf>, making a clean breast, baring one's breast; rite of confession

VERBS **4 disclose, reveal, let out, show,** impart, discover, develop <old>, **leak,** let slip out, let the cat out of the bag *and* spill the beans <nf>; manifest 348.5; unfold, unroll; **open,** open up, lay open, break the seal, bring into the open, get out in the open, bring out of the closet; **expose, show up; bare,** strip *or* lay bare, blow the lid off *and* blow wide open *and* rip open *and* crack wide open <nf>; take the lid off, **bring to light,** bring into the open, hold up to view; hold up the mirror to; **unmask,** dismask, tear off the mask, **uncover,** unveil, take the lid off <nf>, ventilate, take out from under wraps, take the wraps off, lift *or* draw the veil, raise the curtain, let daylight in, shine some light on, unscreen, uncloak, undrape, unshroud, unfurl, unsheathe, unwrap, unpack, unkennel; put one wise *and* clue one in *and* bring one up to speed <nf>, put one in the picture <chiefly Brit nf>, open one's eyes

5 **divulge,** divulgate, evulgate <old>; **reveal, make known, tell,** breathe, utter, vent, ventilate, air, give vent to, **give out, let out** <Brit>, let get around, out with <nf>, come out with; break it to, **break the news;** let in on *or* to, **confide,** confide to, let one's hair down <nf>, unbosom oneself, let into the secret; **publish** 352.10

6 **betray,** inform, **inform on** 551.12, talk *and* peach <nf>; rat *and* stool *and* sing *and* squeal <nf>, turn state's evidence; leak <nf>, spill <nf>, **spill the beans** <nf>; **let the cat out of the bag** <nf>, speak before one thinks, be unguarded *or* indiscreet, kiss and tell, **give away** *and* give the show away *and* give the game away <nf>, betray a confidence, tell secrets, reveal a secret; have a big mouth *or* bazoo <nf>, **blab** *or* blabber <nf>; babble, **tattle,** tell *or* tattle on, tell tales, **tell tales out of school;** talk out of turn, let slip, let fall *or* drop; **blurt, blurt out**

7 **confess,** break down and confess, **admit, acknowledge,** tell all, avow, concede, grant, **own, own up** <nf>, let on, implicate *or* incriminate oneself, come clean <nf>; spill *and* spill it *and* spill one's guts <nf>; **tell the truth,** tell all, admit everything, let it all hang out <nf>, throw off all disguise; **plead guilty,** own oneself in the wrong, cop a plea <nf>; **unbosom oneself, make a clean breast, get it off one's chest** <nf>, **get it out of one's system** <nf>, disburden *or* unburden one's mind *or* conscience *or* heart, **get a load off one's mind** <nf>, fess up <nf>; out with it *and* spit it out *and* open up <nf>; throw oneself on the mercy of the court; **reveal oneself,** show one's colors *or* true colors, come out of the closet <nf>, show one's hand *or* cards, put *or* lay one's cards on the table

8 **be revealed, become known, surface, come to light,** appear, manifest itself, come to one's ears, transpire, **leak out, get out, come out,** out, come home to roost, come out in the wash, break forth, show its face; show its colors, be seen in its true colors, stand revealed; blow one's cover <nf>

ADJS 9 **revealed, disclosed** 348.10

10 **disclosive, revealing,** revelatory, revelational; **disclosing,** showing, exposing, betraying; kiss-and-tell; eye-opening; **talkative** 343.10,540.9; admitted, confessed, self-confessed

11 confessional, admissive

352 PUBLICATION

NOUNS 1 **publication, publishing, promulgation,** evulgation, **propagation, dissemination, diffusion, broadcast, broadcasting, spread, spreading,** spreading abroad, divulgence, disclosure, **circulation,** ventilation, airing, noising, bandying, bruiting, bruiting about, spreading the word; **display;** issue, issuance; telecasting, videocasting; printing 548; book, periodical 555

2 **announcement,** annunciation, enunciation; **proclamation,** pronouncement, pronunciamento; edict, decree; **report,** communiqué, **declaration, statement;** public declaration *or* statement, program, programma, **notice, notification,** public notice; speech; circular, encyclical, encyclical letter; manifesto, position paper; broadside; rationale; white paper, white book; ukase, edict 420.4; bulletin board, notice board

3 **press release,** release, handout, bulletin, official bulletin, notice

4 **publicity,** publicness, **notoriety, fame,** famousness, renown, notoriousness, infamy, notice, public notice *or* recognition, **celebrity,** *réclame* and *éclat* <Fr>; **limelight** *and* **spotlight** <nf>, daylight, bright light, glare, public eye *or* consciousness, **exposure, currency,** common *or* public knowledge, widest *or* maximum dissemination, public forum; **ballyhoo** *and* hoopla <nf>; report, public report; cry, hue and cry; **public relations** *or* PR, flackery <nf>; **publicity story,** press notice; propaganda; **writeup, puff** <nf>, **plug** <nf>, **blurb** <nf>, hype <nf>; photo opportunity, photo op <nf>; name in bright lights <nf>

5 **promotion, buildup** *and* promo <nf>, flack <nf>, publicization, publicizing, promoting, advocating, advocacy, bruiting, drumbeating, tub-thumping, press-agentry; **advertising,** salesmanship 734.2, Madison Avenue, hucksterism <nf>; advertising campaign; advertising agency; advertising medium *or* media; advocacy, advocacy group

6 **advertisement, ad** <nf>, advert <Brit nf>, notice; **commercial,** message, important message, message *or* words from the sponsor; spot commercial *or* spot, network commercial; infomercial; reader, reading notice; display ad; want ad <nf>, classified ad; spread, two-page spread, testimonial; advertorial; trailer; teaser

7 **poster, bill, placard, sign,** show card, banner, *affiche* <Fr>; **signboard, billboard,** highway sign, hoarding <Brit>; sandwich board; marquee; bulletin board

8 **advertising matter,** promotional material, public relations handout *or* release, **literature** <nf>; **leaflet,** leaf, **folder, handbill, bill, flier, throwaway, handout, circular,** pamphlet, brochure, broadside, broadsheet; insert *or* insertion

9 **publicist,** publicizer, public relations person, public relations officer, PR person, flack *and* pitchman *or* pitchperson <nf>, public relations specialist, **publicity man** *or* agent, **press agent,** flack <nf>, imagemaker; **advertiser; adman** *and*

huckster *and* pitchman <nf>; ad writer <nf>, copywriter, blurb writer; **promoter, booster** <nf>, plugger <nf>; **ballyhooer** *or* **ballyhoo man** <nf>; **barker,** spieler <nf>, skywriter; billposter; sign-painter; sandwich boy *or* man; spin doctor

VERBS **10 publish, promulgate, propagate, circulate,** circularize, **diffuse, disseminate,** distribute, **broadcast,** televise, telecast, videocast, air, **spread,** spread around *or* about, spread far and wide, publish abroad, **pass the word around,** bruit, **bruit about, advertise,** repeat, retail, put about, **bandy about, noise about,** cry about *or* abroad, noise *or* sound abroad, bruit abroad, set news afloat, **spread a report; rumor,** launch a rumor, voice <old>, whisper, buzz, **rumor about,** whisper *or* buzz about

11 make public, go public with <nf>; bring *or* lay *or* drag before the public, **display,** take one's case to the public, **give** *or* **put out,** give to the world, **make known; divulge** 351.5; **ventilate,** air, give air to, bring into the open, get out in the open, open up, broach, give vent to

12 announce, annunciate, enunciate; **declare, state,** declare roundly, affirm, pronounce, give notice; **say,** make a statement, send a message *or* signal; **report,** make an announcement *or* a report, issue a statement, publish *or* issue a manifesto, present a position paper, issue a white paper, hold a press conference

13 proclaim, cry, cry out, **promulgate,** give voice to; **herald,** herald abroad; **blazon,** blaze, blaze *or* blazon about *or* abroad, blare, blare forth *or* abroad, thunder, declaim, shout, trumpet, trumpet *or* thunder forth, announce with flourish of trumpets *or* beat of drum; shout from the housetops, proclaim at the crossroads *or* market cross, proclaim at Charing Cross <Brit>

14 issue, bring out, put out, get out, launch, get off, emit, put *or* give *or* send forth, offer to the public, pass out

15 publicize, give publicity; go public with <nf>; bring *or* drag into the limelight, throw the spotlight on <nf>; **advertise, promote,** build up, cry up, sell, puff <nf>, **boost** <nf>, **plug** <nf>, **ballyhoo** <nf>; put on the map, make a household word of, establish; bark *and* spiel <nf>; make a pitch for *and* beat the drum for *and* thump the tub for <nf>; **write up,** give a write-up, press-agent <nf>; circularize; bulletin; bill; **post bills,** post, post up, placard; skywrite

16 <be published> **come out, appear,** break, hit the streets <nf>, **issue,** go *or* come forth, find vent, **see the light,** see the light of day, become public; **circulate, spread,** spread about, have currency, **get around** *or* about, get abroad, get afloat, get exposure, go *or* fly *or* buzz *or* blow about, **go the rounds,** pass from mouth to mouth, be on everyone's lips, go through the length and breadth of the land; spread like wildfire

ADJS **17 published, public,** made public, **circulated,** in circulation, promulgated, propagated, **disseminated,** issued, spread, diffused, distributed; in print; **broadcast,** telecast, televised; **announced,** proclaimed, declared, **stated,** affirmed; **reported,** brought to notice; common knowledge, common property, current; **open,** accessible, open to the public; hot off the press

18 publicational, promulgatory, propagatory; proclamatory, annunciatory, enunciative; declarative, declaratory; heraldic; promotional

ADVS **19 publicly, in public; openly** 348.15; in the public eye, in the glare of publicity, in the limelight *or* spotlight <nf>, reportedly

353 MESSENGER

NOUNS **1 messenger,** message-bearer, **dispatch-bearer,** commissionaire <Brit>, nuncio <old>, **courier,** diplomatic courier, carrier, **runner,** express <Brit>, dispatch-rider, pony-express rider, post <old>, postboy, postrider, *estafette* <Fr>; bicycle *or* motorcycle messenger; **go-between** 576.4; **emissary** 576.6; Mercury, Hermes, Iris, Pheidippides, Paul Revere; post office, courier service, package service, message service *or* center; answering service

2 herald, harbinger, forerunner, vaunt-courier; evangel, evangelist, bearer of glad tidings; herald angel, Gabriel, *buccinator* <L>

3 announcer, annunciator, enunciator; nunciate <old>; **proclaimer; crier, town crier,** bellman

4 errand boy, office boy, messenger-boy, copyboy; bellhop <nf>, bellboy, bellman, callboy, caller

5 postman, mailman, mail carrier, letter carrier; postmaster, postmistress; postal clerk

6 <mail carriers> carrier pigeon, carrier, homing pigeon, homer <nf>; pigeon post; post-horse, poster; post coach, mail coach; post boat, packet boat *or* ship, mail boat, mail packet, mailer <old>; mail train, mail car, post car, post-office car, railway mail car; mail truck; mailplane; electronic mail

354 FALSENESS

NOUNS **1 falseness, falsehood,** falsity, inveracity, untruth, **truthlessness, untrueness; fallaciousness,** fallacy, **erroneousness** 974.1

2 spuriousness, phoniness <nf>, bogusness, **ungenuineness, unauthenticity,** unrealness, artificiality, factitiousness, syntheticness

3 **sham, fakery,** faking, falsity, feigning, pretending; feint, pretext, **pretense,** hollow pretense, **pretension, false pretense** *or* **pretension;** humbug, humbuggery; **bluff,** bluffing, four-flushing <nf>; speciousness, meretriciousness; cheating, fraud; imposture; deception, delusion 356.1; acting, playacting; representation, **simulation,** simulacrum; dissembling, **dissemblance, dissimulation;** seeming, semblance, appearance, face, ostentation, **show, false show,** outward show, false air; window dressing, front, **false front, façade,** gloss, varnish; gilt; color, coloring, false color; masquerade, disguise; posture, pose, posing, attitudinizing; mannerism, affectation 500

4 **falseheartedness, falseness,** doubleheartedness, doubleness of heart, doubleness, **duplicity, two-facedness,** double-facedness, **double-dealing,** ambidexterity; double standard; **dishonesty,** improbity, lack of integrity, Machiavellianism, bad faith; low cunning, **cunning,** artifice, wile 415.1,3; **deceitfulness** 356.3; faithlessness, treachery 645.6

5 **insincerity, uncandidness,** uncandor, **unfrankness,** disingenuousness, indirectness; emptiness, hollowness; mockery, hollow mockery; crossed fingers, tongue in cheek, unseriousness; halfheartedness; sophistry, jesuitry, jesuitism, casuistry 936.1

6 **hypocrisy,** hypocriticalness; Tartuffery, Tartuffism, Pecksniffery, pharisaism, **sanctimony** 693, sanctimoniousness, religiosity, false piety, ostentatious devotion, pietism, Bible-thumping <nf>; **mealymouthedness, unctuousness,** oiliness, smarminess *or* smarm <nf>; cant, mummery, snuffling <old>, **mouthing; lip service;** tokenism; token gesture, empty gesture; smooth tongue, smooth talk, sweet talk *and* soft soap <nf>; crocodile tears

7 **quackery, chicanery,** quackishness, quackism, **mountebankery, charlatanry,** charlatanism; **imposture; humbug,** humbuggery

8 **untruthfulness, dishonesty,** falsehood, **unveracity,** unveraciousness, truthlessness, **mendaciousness, mendacity;** credibility gap; **lying, fibbing,** fibbery, pseudology; pathological lying, habitual lying, mythomania, *pseudologia phantastica* <L>

9 **deliberate falsehood, disinformation, falsification,** disinforming, falsifying; confabulation; **perversion, distortion,** straining, **bending; misrepresentation,** misconstruction, misstatement, coloring, false coloring, miscoloring, slanting, imparting a spin <nf>; tampering, cooking *and* fiddling <nf>; stretching, fictionalization, **exaggeration** 355; **prevarication,** equivocation 344.4; **perjury,** false swearing, oath breaking, false oath, false plea

10 **fabrication, invention, concoction, disinformation;** canard, base canard; **forgery; fiction,** figment, **myth,** legend, fable, story, romanticized version, extravaganza; old wives' tale, unfact

11 **lie, falsehood,** falsity, **untruth,** false statement, untruism, mendacity, **prevarication, fib,** taradiddle *or* tarradiddle <nf>, flimflam *or* flam, a crock *and* a crock of shit <nf>, *blague* <Fr>; **fiction,** pious fiction, legal fiction; **story** <nf>, **trumped-up story,** farrago; **yarn** <nf>, **tale,** fairy tale <nf>, ghost story; farfetched story, tall tale *and* **tall story** <nf>, **cock-and-bull story,** fish story <nf>, flight of fancy; exaggeration 355; half-truth, stretching of the truth, slight stretching, white lie, little white lie; *suggestio falsi* <L>; partial truth; propaganda, rumor, gossip, empty talk; a pack of lies

12 monstrous lie, consummate lie, deep-dyed falsehood, out-and-out lie, **whopper** <nf>, gross *or* flagrant *or* shameless falsehood, downright lie, **barefaced lie, dirty lie** <nf>, big lie; **slander, libel** 512.3; the big lie; bullshit *or* load of crap <nf>

13 **fake,** fakement *and* put-up job <nf>, **phony** <nf>, **rip-off** <nf>, **sham, mock, imitation,** simulacrum, dummy; paste, tinsel, *clinquant* <Fr>, pinchbeck, shoddy, junk; **counterfeit, forgery;** put-up job *and* frame-up <nf>, put-on <nf>; **hoax, cheat, fraud, swindle** 356.8; whited sepulcher, whitewash job <nf>; impostor 357.6

14 **humbug,** humbuggery; **bunk** <nf>, **bunkum;** hooey *and* hoke *and* **hokum** <nf>, **bosh** <nf>, bull *and* **bullshit** *and* crap <nf>, baloney <nf>, flimflam, flam, smoke and mirrors <nf>, claptrap, moonshine, eyewash, hogwash, gammon <Brit nf>, *blague* <Fr>, jiggery-pokery <Brit>

VERBS **15** ring false, **not ring true**

16 **falsify, belie, misrepresent,** miscolor; misstate, misquote, misreport, miscite; overstate, understate; **pervert, distort,** strain, warp, **slant, twist,** warp, stretch the truth, impart spin <nf>; garble; put a false appearance upon, give a false coloring, falsely color, give a color to, **color, gild,** gloss, gloss over, whitewash, varnish, paper over <nf>; fudge <nf>, dress up, titivate, embellish, embroider, trick *or* prink out; deodorize, make smell like roses; **disguise, camouflage, mask;** propagandize, gossip

17 **tamper with, manipulate, fake, juggle,** sophisticate, **doctor** *and* **cook** <nf>, rig, cook *or* juggle the books *or* the accounts <nf>; pack, stack; **adulterate;** retouch; **load; salt,** plant <nf>, salt a mine

18 **fabricate, invent, manufacture, trump up, make up, hatch, concoct, cook up** *and* make out of whole cloth <nf>, fictionalize, mythologize, fudge <nf>, fake, hoke up <nf>; **counterfeit, forge;** fantasize, fantasize about

19 **lie, tell a lie,** falsify, speak falsely, speak with forked tongue <nf>, be untruthful, trifle with the truth, deviate from the truth, **fib, story** <nf>; **stretch the truth,** strain *or* bend the truth; draw the longbow; **exaggerate** 355.3; lie flatly, lie in one's throat, lie through one's teeth, lie like a trooper, **prevaricate,** misstate, equivocate 344.7; **deceive, mislead,** tell a white lie; bullshit <nf>

20 swear falsely, forswear oneself <old>, perjure, **perjure oneself, bear false witness**

21 **sham, fake** <nf>, **feign, counterfeit, simulate,** put up <nf>, gammon <Brit nf>; **pretend,** make a pretense, **make believe, make a show of,** make like <nf>, make as if *or* as though; go through the motions <nf>; let on, let on like <nf>; **affect,** profess, **assume,** put on; **dissimulate, dissemble,** cover up; **act, play,** play-act, **put on an act** *or* a charade <nf>, act *or* play a part; **put up a front** <nf>, put on a front *or* false front <nf>; four-flush <nf>, **bluff,** pull *or* put up a bluff <nf>; **play possum** <nf>, roll over and play dead

22 **pose as, masquerade as,** impersonate, pass for, assume the guise *or* identity of, set up for, act the part of, represent oneself to be, claim *or* pretend to be, **make false pretenses,** go under false pretenses, **sail under false colors**

23 **be hypocritical, act** *or* **play the hypocrite;** cant, be holier than the Pope *or* thou, reek of piety; shed crocodile tears, snuffle <old>, snivel, mouth; give mouth honor, render *or* give lip service; sweet-talk, soft-soap, blandish 511.5

24 **play a double game** *or* **role, play both ends against the middle,** work both sides of the street, have it both ways at once, have one's cake and eat it too, run with the hare and hunt with the hounds <Brit>; two-time <nf>

ADJS 25 **false, untrue, truthless, not true,** void *or* devoid of truth, contrary to fact, in error, **fallacious, erroneous** 974.16; unfounded 936.13; disinformative

26 **spurious, ungenuine, unauthentic,** supposititious, bastard, **pseudo, quasi,** apocryphal, **fake** <nf>, **phony** <nf>, **sham, mock, counterfeit,** colorable, **bogus,** queer <nf>, dummy, **make-believe,** so-called, **imitation** 336.8; not what it's cracked up to be <nf>; **falsified;** dressed up, titivated, embellished, embroidered; garbled; twisted, distorted, warped, perverted, slanted; half-true, falsely colored; **simulated, faked, feigned,** colored, fictitious, fictive, **counterfeited, pretended, affected, assumed, put-on; artificial, synthetic,** ersatz; unreal; factitious, unnatural, man-made; illegitimate; *soi-disant* <Fr>, self-styled; pinchbeck, brummagem <Brit>, tinsel, shoddy, tin, junky

27 **specious, meretricious,** gilded, tinsel, **seeming,** apparent, colored, colorable, plausible, **ostensible**

28 **quack, quackish; charlatan, charlatanish,** charlatanic

29 **fabricated,** invented, manufactured, **concocted, hatched, trumped-up, made-up,** put-up, cooked-up <nf>; **forged;** fictitious, fictional, fictionalized, figmental, **mythical,** fabulous, legendary; fantastic, fantasied, fancied, legendary

30 **tampered with, manipulated, cooked** *and* **doctored** <nf>, juggled, **rigged,** engineered; packed

31 **falsehearted, false,** false-principled, false-dealing; double, duplicitous, ambidextrous, **double-dealing,** doublehearted, double-minded, double-tongued, double-faced, **two-faced,** Janus-faced; Machiavellian, dishonest; **crooked, deceitful;** creative, artful, cunning, crafty 415.12; faithless, perfidious, treacherous 645.21

32 **insincere, uncandid, unfrank, mealymouthed, unctuous, oily,** disingenuous, ungenuine, pseudo, smarmy <nf>; dishonest; **empty, hollow;** tongue in cheek, unserious; sophistic *or* sophistical, jesuitic *or* jesuitical, casuistic 936.10

33 **hypocritic** *or* **hypocritical,** canting, Pecksniffian, pharisaic, pharisaical, pharisean, **sanctimonious, goody-goody** <nf>, holier-than-the-Pope, holier-than-thou, simon-pure; artificial, dissembling, phony

34 **untruthful, dishonest, unveracious,** unveridical, truthless, **lying, mendacious,** untrue; perjured, forsworn; prevaricating, equivocal 344.11

ADVS 35 **falsely, untruly,** truthlessly; **erroneously** 975.20; **untruthfully,** unveraciously; mendaciously; **spuriously,** ungenuinely; artificially, synthetically; unnaturally, factitiously; speciously, seemingly, apparently, plausibly, ostensibly; nominally, in name only

36 **insincerely,** uncandidly, unfrankly; emptily, hollowly; unseriously; ambiguously; **hypocritically,** mealy-mouthedly, unctuously

355 EXAGGERATION

NOUNS 1 **exaggeration,** exaggerating; **overstatement,** big *or* tall talk <nf>, **hyperbole,** hyperbolism; **superlative; extravagance,** profuseness, **prodigality** 486, overdoing it, going too far, overshooting; **magnification, enlargement,** amplification <old>, dilation, dilatation, **inflation,** expansion, blowing up, puffing up, aggrandizement, embellishment, elaboration, embroidery; **stretching, heightening,** enhancement; overemphasis, overstressing; overestimation 949; exaggerated lengths, **extreme,** extremism, stretch, exorbitance, inordinacy, **overkill, excess** 993; burlesque, travesty, caricature; crock <nf>, whopper, tall story; sensationalism, puffery *and* ballyhoo <nf>, touting, huckstering; grandiloquence 545; painting *or* gilding the lily; to-do *and* hype *and* hoopla <nf>

2 **overreaction, much ado about nothing,** fuss, uproar, commotion, storm *or* tempest in a teapot, making a mountain out of a molehill

VERBS 3 **exaggerate,** hyperbolize; **overstate,** overspeak <old>, overreach, **overdraw,** overcharge; overstress, overemphasize; **overdo, carry too far, go to extremes;** push to the extreme, indulge in overkill, overestimate 949.2; gild the lily; overpraise, oversell, tout, puff *and* ballyhoo *and* hype <nf>; **stretch,** stretch the truth, stretch the point, draw the longbow, embellish; **magnify, inflate,** amplify <old>; aggrandize, build up; pile *or* lay it on *and* pour *or* spread *or* lay it on thick *and* lay it on with a trowel <nf>; pile Pelion on Ossa; talk big <nf>, talk in superlatives, deal in the marvelous, make much of; **overreact,** make a Federal case out of it <nf>, something out of nothing, make a mountain out of a molehill, create a tempest in a teapot *or* teacup, make too much of, cry over spilt milk; caricature, travesty, burlesque, ham, ham it up

ADJS 4 **exaggerated,** hyperbolical, **magnified,** amplified <old>, **inflated,** aggrandized, stylized, embroidered, embellished, varnished; **stretched,** disproportionate, **blown up out of all proportion,** blown out of proportion, overblown; overpraised, oversold, overrated, touted, puffed *and* ballyhooed <nf>, hyped <nf>; overemphasized, **overemphatic, overstressed; overemphatic, overstressed; overstated, overdrawn; overdone,** overwrought, a bit thick; caricatural, melodramatic, farfetched, too much <nf>, over the top; overestimated 949.3; overlarge, overgreat; **extreme,** pushed to the extreme, exorbitant, inordinate, **excessive** 993.16; **superlative, extravagant,** profuse, **prodigal** 486.8; high-flown, grandiloquent 545.8; overexposed

5 **exaggerating, exaggerative,** hyperbolical

356 DECEPTION

NOUNS 1 **deception,** calculated deception, **deceptiveness, subterfuge,** gimmickry *or* gimmickery, **trickiness; falseness** 354; fallaciousness, fallacy; self-deception, fond illusion, wishful thinking, willful misconception; vision, hallucination, phantasm, mirage, will-o'-the-wisp, **delusion,** delusiveness, illusion 975; deceiving, **victimization, dupery;** bamboozlement <nf>, hoodwinking; swindling, defrauding, conning, flimflam *or* flimflammery <nf>; **fooling,** befooling, tricking, **kidding** *and* putting on <nf>; spoofing *and* spoofery <nf>; bluffing; circumvention, overreaching, outwitting; ensnarement, entrapment, enmeshment, entanglement; smoke and mirrors

2 **misleading, misguidance, misdirection;** bum steer <nf>; misinformation 569.1

3 **deceit, deceitfulness, guile, falseness,** insidiousness, **underhandedness; shiftiness, furtiveness,** surreptitiousness, indirection; **hypocrisy** 354.6; **falseheartedness, duplicity** 354.4; **treacherousness** 645.6; **artfulness,** craft, guile, **cunning** 415; sneakiness 345.4; sneak attack

4 **chicanery,** chicane, **skulduggery** <nf>, knavery, **trickery,** dodgery, pettifogging, pettifoggery, *supercherie* <Fr>, **artifice,** sleight, machination; **sharp practice, underhand dealing, foul play;** connivery, connivance, collusion, conspiracy, covin <law>; fakery, charlatanism, mountebankery, quackery

5 **juggling,** jugglery, **trickery,** dirty pool <nf>, *escamotage* <Fr>, prestidigitation, conjuration, **legerdemain, sleight of hand,** smoke and mirrors <nf>; mumbo jumbo, **hocus-pocus,** hanky-panky *and* monkey business *and* hokey-pokey <nf>, nobbling *and* jiggery-pokery <Brit nf>, shenanigans <nf>

6 **trick, artifice, device,** ploy, gambit, stratagem, scheme, **design,** *ficelle* <Fr>, **subterfuge,** blind, **ruse, wile,** chouse <nf>, shift, **dodge,** artful dodge, sleight, pass, feint, fetch, chicanery; **bluff;** gimmick, joker, catch; curve, curve-ball, googly *or* bosey *or* wrong'un <Brit nf>; **dirty trick,** dirty deal, fast deal, scurvy trick; sleight of hand, sleight-of-hand trick, hocus-pocus <old>; juggle, juggler's trick; **bag of tricks,** tricks of the trade

7 **hoax, deception,** spoof <nf>, **humbug,** flam, **fake** *and* fakement, **rip-off** <nf>, **sham;** mare's nest; put-on <nf>

8 **fraud, fraudulence** *or* fraudulency, **dishonesty; imposture; imposition, cheat, cheating,** cozenage, **swindle,** dodge, fishy transaction, piece of sharp practice; customer-gouging, insider-trading, short weight, chiseling; **gyp joint** <nf>; **racket** <nf>, illicit business 732; **graft** <nf>, grift <nf>; bunco; cardsharping; ballot-box stuffing, gerrymandering

9 <nf terms> **gyp,** diddle, diddling, scam, flimflam flam, ramp <Brit>, snow job, song and dance, number, bill of goods, burn, the business, dipsy-doodle, double cross, fiddle, hosing, the old army game, reaming, suckering, sting, con, ripoff

10 **confidence game, con game** <nf>, **skin game** <nf>, **bunco game; shell game,** thimblerig, thimblerigging; bucket shop, boiler room <nf>;

goldbrick; bait-and-switch, the wire, the pay-off, the rag, pastposting

11 **cover, disguise, camouflage,** protective coloration; **false colors, false front** 354.3; **incognito;** smoke screen; **masquerade,** masque, mummery; **mask,** visor, vizard, vizard mask <old>, false face, domino, domino mask; red herring, diversion

12 **trap, gin; pitfall,** trapfall, deadfall; flytrap, mousetrap, mole trap, rattrap, bear trap; deathtrap, firetrap; Venus's flytrap, Dionaea; Catch-22; spring gun, set gun; baited trap; **booby trap, mine; decoy** 357.5; hidden danger

13 **snare,** springe; noose, lasso, lariat; bola; **net,** trawl, dragnet, seine, purse seine, pound net, gill net; cobweb; **meshes, toils; fishhook, hook,** sniggle; **bait,** ground bait; lure, fly, jig, squid, plug, wobbler, spinner; lime, birdlime

VERBS **14** **deceive, beguile, trick, hoax, dupe,** gammon, **gull,** pigeon, play one for a fool *or* sucker, **bamboozle** *and* snow *and* **hornswoggle** *and* diddle *and* scam <nf>, nobble <Brit nf>, **humbug, take in,** put on *and* hocus-pocus <nf>, string along, **put something over** *or* **across,** slip one over on <nf>, pull a fast one on; **play games** <nf>; **delude,** mock; **betray,** let down, leave in the lurch, leave holding the bag, play one false, **double-cross** <nf>, cheat on; two-time <nf>; juggle, conjure; **bluff;** cajole, **circumvent,** get around, forestall; **overreach,** outreach, outwit, outmaneuver, outsmart

15 **fool,** befool, make a fool of, practice on one's credulity, **pull one's leg,** make an ass of; **trick; spoof** *and* **kid** *and* put one on <nf>; **play a trick on,** play a practical joke upon, send on a fool's errand; fake one out <nf>; sell one a bill of goods, give one a snow job

16 **mislead, misguide, misdirect,** lead astray, lead up the garden path, **give a bum steer** <nf>; fake someone out, feed one a line <nf>, throw off the scent, throw off the track *or* trail, put on a false scent, drag *or* draw a red herring across the trail; throw one a curve *or* curve ball <nf>, bowl a googly *or* bosey *or* wrong 'un <Brit nf>; misinform 569.3

17 **hoodwink,** blindfold, blind, blind one's eyes, blear the eyes of <old>, throw dust in one's eyes, **pull the wool over one's eyes**

18 **cheat, victimize, gull,** pigeon, fudge, **swindle, defraud,** practice fraud upon, euchre, **con,** finagle, **fleece,** mulct, fob <old>, **bilk,** cozen, cog <old>, chouse, **cheat out of, do out of,** chouse out of, beguile of *or* out of; obtain under false pretenses; live by one's wits; bunco, play a bunco game; sell gold bricks <nf>; shortchange, shortweight, skim off the top; stack the cards *or* deck, pack the deal <nf>, deal off the bottom of the deck, play with marked cards; cog the dice, load the dice; thimblerig; crib <nf>; throw a fight *or* game <nf>, take a dive <nf>

19 <nf terms> **gyp, clip, scam,** rope in, hose, shave, beat, rook, flam, flimflam, diddle, dipsy-doodle, do a number on, hustle, fuck, screw, have, pull something, pull a trick *or* stunt, give the business, ramp <Brit>, stick, sting, burn, gouge, chisel, hocus, hocus-pocus, play *or* take for a sucker, make a patsy of, do, run a game on, slicker, take for a ride

20 **trap,** entrap, gin, catch, catch out, catch in a trap; catch unawares, ambush; **ensnare, snare,** hook, **hook in,** sniggle, noose; inveigle; net, mesh, enmesh, snarl <old>, ensnarl, wind, tangle, entangle, entoil, enweb; trip, trip up; **set** *or* **lay a trap for,** bait the hook, spread the toils; lime, birdlime; **lure,** allure, **decoy** 377.3

ADJS **21** **deceptive, deceiving, misleading,** beguiling, **false, fallacious,** delusive, delusory; hallucinatory, illusive, **illusory;** tricky, trickish, tricksy <old>, catchy; **fishy** <nf>, questionable, dubious; delusional

22 **deceitful, false; fraudulent, sharp, guileful, insidious,** slick, slippery, slippery as an eel, **shifty, tricky,** trickish, cute, finagling, chiseling <nf>; underhand, **underhanded, furtive, surreptitious,** indirect; collusive, covinous; **falsehearted, two-faced; treacherous** 645.21; sneaky 345.12; **cunning,** artful, gimmicky <nf>, **wily, crafty** 415.12; calculating, scheming, double-dealing

ADVS **23** **deceptively,** beguilingly, **falsely,** fallaciously, delusively, **trickily, misleadingly,** with intent to deceive; under false colors, under cover of, under the garb of, in disguise

24 **deceitfully, fraudulently, guilefully,** insidiously, **shiftily, trickily; underhandedly,** furtively, surreptitiously, indirectly, like a thief in the night; **treacherously** 645.25

357 DECEIVER

NOUNS **1** **deceiver, deluder,** duper, misleader, **beguiler, bamboozler** <nf>; actor, playactor <nf>, role-player; **dissembler,** dissimulator; confidence man; **double-dealer,** Machiavelli, Machiavel, Machiavellian; dodger, Artful Dodger <Charles Dickens>, **counterfeiter, forger, faker;** plagiarizer, plagiarist; entrancer, **enchanter,** charmer, befuddler, hypnotizer, mesmerizer; **seducer,** Don Juan, Casanova; tease, teaser; jilt, jilter; gay deceiver; **fooler, joker,** jokester, **hoaxer,** practical joker; spoofer *and* **kidder** *and* ragger *and* leg-puller <nf>

2 **trickster,** tricker; **juggler,** sleight-of-hand performer, magician, illusionist, conjurer, **prestidigitator,** *escamoteur* <Fr>, manipulator

3 **cheat, cheater;** two-timer <nf>; **swindler, defrauder,** cozener, juggler; **sharper, sharp,** spieler, pitchman, pitchperson; **confidence man, confidence trickster, horse trader,** horse coper <Brit>; **cardsharp,** cardsharper; thimblerigger; shortchanger; **shyster** *and* pettifogger <nf>; land shark, land pirate, land grabber, mortgage shark; carpetbagger; crimp

4 <nf terms> **gyp,** gypper, gyp artist, flimflammer, flimflam man, blackleg, chiseler, bilker, fleecer, diddler, crook, sharpie, shark, jackleg, slicker, con man, con artist, bunco, bunco artist, bunco steerer, scammer, clip artist, smoothie, dipsy-doodle, hustler, hoser

5 **shill,** decoy, **come-on man** <nf>, plant, capper, stool pigeon, stoolie <nf>; *agent provocateur* <Fr>

6 **impostor, ringer; impersonator; pretender;** sham, shammer, **humbug,** *blagueur* <Fr>, **fraud** <nf>, **fake** *and* **faker** *and* **phony** <nf>, **fourflusher** <nf>, bluff, bluffer; **charlatan, quack,** quacksalver, quackster, **mountebank,** saltimbanco; **wolf in sheep's clothing,** ass in lion's skin, jackdaw in peacock's feathers; poser, poseur; malingerer

7 **masquerader,** masker; **impersonator,** personator; mummer, guiser <Scot>, guisard; incognito, incognita

8 **hypocrite, phony** <nf>, sanctimonious fraud, pharisee, whited sepulcher, **canter,** snuffler, mealymouth, dissembler, dissimulator, pretender, poseur, poser, "a saint abroad and a devil at home"—Bunyan; Tartuffe <Molière>, Pecksniff *and* Uriah Heep <Charles Dickens>, Joseph Surface <Richard B Sheridan>; false friend, fair-weather friend; summer soldier; cupboard lover

9 **liar, fibber,** fibster, fabricator, fabulist, pseudologist; falsifier; **prevaricator,** equivocator, evader, mudger <Brit nf>, waffler <nf>, palterer; **storyteller;** yarner *and* yarn spinner *and* spinner of yarns <nf>, double-talker; Ananias; Satan, Father of Lies; Baron Münchausen; Sir John Mandeville; consummate liar, "liar of the first magnitude"—Congreve; *menteur à triple étage* <Fr>, dirty liar; pathological liar, mythomane, mythomaniac, pseudologue, confirmed *or* habitual liar, consummate liar; **perjurer,** false witness; slanderer, libeler, libelant; bullshitter <nf>

10 **traitor,** treasonist, **betrayer, quisling, rat** <nf>, serpent, snake, cockatrice, **snake in the grass, double-crosser** <nf>, double-dealer; double agent; trimmer, time-server; turncoat 363.5; informer 551.6; archtraitor; Judas, Judas Iscariot, Benedict Arnold, Quisling, Brutus; **schemer, plotter,** intriguer, *intrigant* <Fr>, conspirer, **conspirator,** conniver, machinator; pseud <nf>, two-timer <nf>

11 **subversive; saboteur, fifth columnist,** crypto; security risk; **collaborationist,** collaborator, fraternizer; fifth column, underground; Trojan horse; renegade

358 DUPE

NOUNS 1 **dupe, gull,** gudgeon, *gobe-mouches* <Fr>; **victim;** gullible *or* dupable *or* credulous person, trusting *or* simple soul, innocent, *naïf* <Fr>, babe, babe in the woods; greenhorn; toy, plaything; monkey; **fool** 924; stooge, **cat's-paw**

2 <nf terms> **sucker, patsy,** pigeon, chicken, fall guy, doormat, mug <Brit>, fish, jay <chiefly Brit>, easy mark, sitting duck, juggin <chiefly Brit>, pushover, cinch, mark, vic, easy pickings, greeny, greener, chump, boob, schlemiel, sap, saphead, prize sap, easy touch, soft touch

359 RESOLUTION

NOUNS 1 **resolution,** resolve, resolvedness, **determination, decision,** fixed *or* firm resolve, will, purpose; **resoluteness, determinedness,** determinateness, decisiveness, decidedness, **purposefulness;** definiteness; **earnestness, seriousness,** sincerity, devotion, dedication, commitment, total commitment; "the native hue of resolution"—Shakespeare; single-mindedness, relentlessness, persistence, tenacity, perseverance 360; self-will, obstinacy 361

2 **firmness,** firmness of mind *or* spirit, fixity of purpose, **staunchness,** settledness, steadiness, constancy, steadfastness, fixedness, unshakableness; **stability** 854; concentration; flintiness, steeliness; inflexibility, rigidity, unyieldingness 361.2; trueness, loyalty 644.7

3 **pluck, spunk** <nf>, **mettle, backbone** <nf>, **grit,** true grit, spirit, **stamina, guts** *and* moxie <nf>, pith <old>, bottom, **toughness** <nf>; clenched teeth, gritted teeth; pluckiness, spunkiness <nf>, **gameness,** feistiness <nf>, mettlesomeness; courage 492

4 **will power, will,** power, **strong-mindedness,** strength of mind, strength *or* fixity of purpose, strength, fortitude, **moral fiber; iron will,** will of iron *or* steel; a will *or* mind of one's own, law unto oneself; the courage of one's convictions, moral courage

5 **self-control, self-command, self-possession,** strength of character, self-mastery, self-government, self-domination, **self-restraint,** self-

conquest, self-discipline, **self-denial;** control, restraint, constraint, discipline; composure, possession, aplomb; **independence** 430.5

6 **self-assertion,** self-assertiveness, forwardness, **nerve** *and* pushiness <nf>, importunateness, importunacy; self-expression, self-expressiveness

VERBS 7 **resolve, determine, decide, will, purpose, make up one's mind,** make *or* take a resolution, make a point of; **settle,** settle on, fix, seal; conclude, come to a determination *or* conclusion *or* decision, determine once for all

8 **be determined,** be resolved; **have a mind** *or* **will of one's own,** know one's own mind; **be in earnest, mean business** <nf>, mean what one says; have blood in one's eyes *and* be out for blood <nf>, **set one's mind** *or* **heart upon;** put one's heart into, devote *or* commit *or* dedicate oneself to, give oneself up to; buckle oneself, buckle down, buckle to; steel oneself, brace oneself, grit one's teeth, set one's teeth *or* jaw; put *or* lay *or* set one's shoulder to the wheel; take the bull by the horns, take the plunge, cross the Rubicon; nail one's colors to the mast, burn one's bridges *or* boats, go for broke *and* shoot the works <nf>, kick down the ladder, throw away the scabbard; never say die, die hard, die fighting, die with one's boots on

9 **remain firm, stand fast** *or* **firm, hold out,** hold fast, get tough <nf>, **take one's stand,** set one's back against the wall, **stand** *or* **hold one's ground,** keep one's footing, hold one's own, hang in *and* hang in there *and* hang tough <nf>, dig in, dig one's heels in; **stick to one's guns,** stick, stick with it, stick fast, stick to one's colors, adhere to one's principles; not listen to the voice of the siren; take what comes, stand the gaff; **put one's foot down** <nf>, stand no nonsense

10 **not hesitate,** think nothing of, think little of, **make no bones about** <nf>, have *or* make no scruple of <old>, **stick at nothing,** stop at nothing; not look back; go the whole hog <nf>, carry through, face out; go the whole nine yards <nf>

ADJS 11 **resolute, resolved, determined,** bound *and* bound and determined <nf>, **decided,** decisive, **purposeful;** definite; **earnest, serious,** sincere; devoted, dedicated, committed, wholehearted; single-minded, relentless, persistent, tenacious, persevering; **obstinate** 361.8

12 **firm, staunch,** standup <nf>, fixed, settled, steady, steadfast, constant, set *or* sot <nf>, flinty, steely; unshaken, not to be shaken, unflappable <nf>; undeflectable, **unswerving,** not to be deflected; immovable, unbending, inflexible, **unyielding** 361.9; true, committed, loyal 644.20

13 **unhesitating,** unhesitant, **unfaltering,** unflinching, unshrinking; stick-at-nothing <nf>

14 **plucky, spunky** *and* feisty *and* gutty *or* gutsy <nf>, gritty, **mettlesome,** dauntless, **game,** game to the last *or* end; **courageous** 492.17

15 **strong-willed, strong-minded,** firm-minded; **self-controlled,** controlled, self-disciplined, self-restrained; **self-possessed; self-assertive,** self-asserting, forward, pushy <nf>, importunate; self-expressive; **independent**

16 **determined upon,** resolved upon, decided upon, intent upon, fixed upon, settled upon, **set on,** dead set on <nf>, sot on <nf>, **bent on,** hell-bent on <nf>; obsessed

ADVS 17 **resolutely, determinedly, decidedly,** decisively, resolvedly, **purposefully, with a will;** firmly, steadfastly, steadily, fixedly, with constancy, staunchly; **seriously,** in all seriousness, **earnestly,** in earnest, in good earnest, sincerely; devotedly, with total dedication, committedly; hammer and tongs, tooth and nail, *bec et ongles* <Fr>; heart and soul, with all one's heart *or* might, wholeheartedly; **unswervingly;** singlemindedly, relentlessly, persistently, tenaciously, like a bulldog, like a leech, perseveringly; **obstinately, unyieldingly, inflexibly** 361.15

18 **pluckily, spunkily** *and* feistily *and* gutsily <nf>, mettlesomely, **gamely,** dauntlessly, manfully, like a man; on one's mettle; **courageously, heroically** 492.23

19 **unhesitatingly,** unhesitantly, **unfalteringly,** unflinchingly, unshrinkingly

PHRS 20 **come what may,** *venga lo que venga* <Sp>, *vogue la galère* <Fr>, **cost what it may,** *coûte que coûte* <Fr>, whatever the cost, at any price *or* cost *or* sacrifice, at all risks *or* hazards, **whatever may happen,** *ruat caelum* <L>, though the heavens may fall, at all events, live or die, survive or perish, sink or swim, rain or shine, come hell or high water; in some way or other

360 PERSEVERANCE

NOUNS 1 **perseverance, persistence** *or* persistency, insistence *or* insistency, singleness of purpose; **resolution** 359; **steadfastness, steadiness,** stability 855; **constancy, permanence** 853.1; loyalty, fidelity 644.7; **single-mindedness,** concentration, undivided *or* unswerving attention, engrossment, preoccupation 983.3; **endurance, stick-to-itiveness** <nf>, staying power, bitterendism, **pertinacity,** pertinaciousness, **tenacity,** tenaciousness, **doggedness,** unremittingness, relentlessness, dogged perseverance, bulldog tenacity, unfailing *or* leechlike grip; plodding, plugging, slogging; **obstinacy, stubbornness** 361.1; **diligence,** application, sedulousness, sedulity, industry, industriousness, hard work, assiduousness, assiduity, unflagging efforts; **tirelessness, indefatigability, stamina; patience,** patience of Job 134.1

VERBS **2 persevere, persist, carry on,** go on, **keep on,** keep up, keep at, **keep at it,** keep going, keep driving, keep trying, try and try again, **keep the ball rolling,** keep the pot boiling, keep up the good work; not take 'no' for an answer; not accept compromise *or* defeat; **endure,** last, **continue** 827.6

3 keep doggedly at, **plod,** drudge, slog *or* slog away, soldier on, put one foot in front of the other, peg away *or* at *or* on; **plug,** plug at, plug away *or* along; pound *or* hammer away; **keep one's nose to the grindstone**

4 stay with it, hold on, hold fast, **hang on,** hang on like a bulldog *or* leech, **stick to one's guns;** not give up, **never say die,** not give up the ship, not strike one's colors; come up fighting, come up for more; **stay it out, stick out, hold out;** hold up, last out, **bear up,** stand up; **live with it,** live through it; stay the distance *or* the course; sit tight, be unmoved *or* unmoveable; brazen it out

5 prosecute to a conclusion, **go through with it, carry through, follow through, see it through,** see it out, follow out *or* up; go through with it, go to the bitter end, go the distance, go all the way, go to any length, go to any lengths; **leave no stone unturned,** leave no avenue unexplored, overlook nothing, exhaust every move; move heaven and earth, go through fire and water

6 die trying, die in the last ditch, die in harness, **die with one's boots on** *or* die in one's boots, die at one's post, die in the attempt, die game, die hard, **go down with flying colors**

7 <nf terms> **stick,** stick to it, stick with it, stick it, stick it out, hang on for dear life, hang in, hang in there, hang tough, tough it out, keep on trucking, keep on keeping on; **go the limit,** go the whole hog, go the whole nine yards, go all out, shoot the works, go for broke, go through hell and high water; work one's ass *or* butt *or* tail off

ADJS **8 persevering,** perseverant, **persistent,** persisting, insistent; **enduring,** permanent, **constant, lasting;** continuing 853.7; **stable, steady, steadfast** 855.12; immutable, inalterable; **resolute** 359.11; **diligent, assiduous, sedulous,** industrious; dogged, plodding, slogging, plugging; **pertinacious, tenacious, stick-to-itive** <nf>; loyal, faithful 644.20; **unswerving,** unremitting, unabating, unintermitting, uninterrupted; single-minded, utterly attentive; rapt, preoccupied 983.17; **unfaltering, unwavering,** unflinching; relentless, **unrelenting; obstinate, stubborn** 361.8; **unrelaxing,** unfailing, **untiring,** unwearying, unflagging, never-tiring, **tireless,** weariless, **indefatigable,** unwearied, unsleeping, undrooping, unnodding, unwinking, sleepless; undiscouraged, undaunted, indomitable, unconquerable, invincible, game to the last *or* to the end, hanging in there; **patient,** patient as Job 134.9

ADVS **9 perseveringly, persistently,** persistingly, insistently; resolutely 359.17; loyally, faithfully, devotedly 644.25; **diligently,** industriously, assiduously, sedulously; **doggedly,** sloggingly, ploddingly; pertinaciously, tenaciously; unremittingly, unabatingly, unintermittingly, uninterruptedly; unswervingly, unwaveringly, unfalteringly, unflinchingly; relentlessly, unrelentingly; **indefatigably, tirelessly,** wearilessly, untiringly, unwearyingly, unflaggingly, unrestingly, unsleepingly; **patiently**

10 through thick and thin, through fire and water, come hell or high water, through evil report and good report, rain or shine, fair or foul, in sickness and in health; **come what may** 359.20, **all the way, down to the wire,** to the bitter end

361 OBSTINACY

NOUNS **1 obstinacy,** obstinateness, pertinacity, restiveness, **stubbornness, willfulness,** self-will, hardheadedness, **headstrongness,** strongheadness; mind *or* will of one's own, set *or* fixed mind, inflexible will; **perseverance** 360, **doggedness, determination,** tenaciousness, tenacity, bitterendism; **bullheadedness, pigheadedness, mulishness; obduracy,** unregenerateness; stiff neck, stiff-neckedness; sullenness, sulkiness; balkiness; uncooperativeness; dogmatism, opinionatedness 970.6; overzealousness, fanaticism 926.11; intolerance, bigotry 980.1; bloody-mindedness <Brit>

2 unyieldingness, unbendingness, stiff temper, **inflexibility,** inelasticity, impliability, ungivingness, **obduracy,** toughness, **firmness,** stiffness, adamantness, rigorism, **rigidity,** strait-lacedness *or* straight-lacedness, stuffiness; **hard line,** hard-bittenness, hard-nosedness <nf>; fixity; unalterability, unchangeability, immutability, immovability; irreconcilability, uncompromisingness, **intransigence** *or* intransigency, *intransigeance* <Fr>, intransigentism; **implacability,** inexorability, **relentlessness,** unrelentingness; sternness, grimness, dourness, flintiness, **steeliness**

3 perversity, perverseness, **contrariness, wrongheadedness, waywardness,** forwardness, difficultness, crossgrainedness, cantankerousness, feistiness *and* orneriness *and* cussedness <nf>; sullenness, sulkiness, dourness, stuffiness; irascibility 110.2

4 **ungovernability, unmanageability,** uncontrollability; indomitability, untamableness, **intractability,** refractoriness, shrewishness; incorrigibility; **unsubmissiveness,** unbiddability <Brit>, **indocility;** irrepressibility, insuppressibility; unmalleability, unmoldableness; recidivism; **recalcitrance** *or* recalcitrancy, contumacy, contumaciousness; **unruliness,** obstreperousness, restiveness, fractiousness, wildness; defiance 454; resistance 453

5 **unpersuadableness,** deafness, blindness; closed-mindedness; positiveness, dogmatism 970.6

6 <obstinate person> **mule** *and* donkey <nf>, ass, perverse fool; bullethead, pighead; hardnose <nf>, hardhead, hammerhead <nf>, hard-liner; standpat *and* **standpatter, stickler; intransigent,** maverick; dogmatist, positivist, bigot, fanatic, purist; **diehard, bitter-ender,** last-ditcher; conservative; stick-in-the-mud

VERBS 7 **balk, stickle;** hold one's ground, not budge, dig one's heels in, **stand pat** <nf>, **not yield an inch,** stick to one's guns; hold out; stand firm; take no denial, not take 'no' for an answer; take the bit in one's teeth; die hard; cut off one's nose to spite one's face; **persevere** 360.2,7; turn a deaf ear

ADJS 8 **obstinate, stubborn, pertinacious, restive; willful, self-willed,** strong-willed, hardheaded, **headstrong,** strongheaded, *entêté* <Fr>; **dogged,** bulldogged, **tenacious, perserving; bullheaded,** bulletheaded, **pigheaded, mulish** <nf>, stubborn as a mule; set, **set in one's ways,** case-hardened, stiff-necked; sullen, sulky; balky, balking; unregenerate, uncooperative; bigoted, intolerant 980.11, overzealous, fanatic, fanatical 926.32; dogmatic, opinionated 970.22

9 **unyielding, unbending, inflexible, hard, hard-line,** inelastic, impliable, ungiving, **firm, stiff,** rigid, rigorous, stuffy; rock-ribbed, rock-hard, rock-like; **adamant,** adamantine; unmoved, unaffected; **immovable,** not to be moved; **unalterable,** unchangeable, immutable; **uncompromising,** intransigent, irreconcilable, hard-shell *and* hard-core <nf>; implacable, inexorable, **relentless,** unrelenting; stern, grim, dour; iron, cast-iron, flinty, steely

10 **obdurate,** tough, **hard,** hard-set, hard-mouthed, hard-bitten, hard-nosed *and* hard-boiled <nf>

11 **perverse, contrary, wrongheaded, wayward, froward, difficult,** cross-grained, cantankerous, feisty, ornery <nf>; sullen, sulky, stuffy; irascible 110.19

12 **ungovernable, unmanageable, uncontrollable, indomitable,** untamable, **intractable, refractory;** shrewish; **incorrigible, unreconstructed; unsubmissive,** unbiddable <Brit>, **indocile;** irrepressible, insuppressible; unmalleable, unmoldable; recidivist, recidivistic; **recalcitrant,** contumacious; obstreperous, **unruly, restive,** wild, fractious, breachy <nf>; beyond control, out of hand; **resistant, resisting** 453.5; **defiant** 454.7; irascible

13 **unpersuadable,** deaf, blind; closed-minded; positive; dogmatic 970.22

ADVS 14 **obstinately, stubbornly,** pertinaciously; willfully, headstrongly; **doggedly,** tenaciously; **bullheadedly,** pigheadedly, mulishly; unregenerately; uncooperatively; with set jaw, with sullen mouth, with a stiff neck

15 **unyieldingly, unbendingly, inflexibly, adamantly,** obdurately, **firmly,** stiffly, rigidly, rigorously; unalterably, unchangeably, immutably, immovably, unregenerately; uncompromisingly, intransigently, irreconcilably; implacably, inexorably, relentlessly, unrelentingly; sternly, grimly, dourly

16 **perversely, contrarily,** contrariwise, waywardly, wrongheadedly, frowardly, crossgrainedly, cantankerously, feistily, sullenly, sulkily

17 **ungovernably, unmanageably, uncontrollably,** indomitably, untamably, intractably; shrewishly; incorrigibly; unsubmissively; irrepressibly, insuppressibly; contumaciously; unrulily, obstreperously, restively, fractiously

362 IRRESOLUTION

NOUNS 1 **irresolution, indecision,** unsettlement, unsettledness, irresoluteness, undeterminedness, **indecisiveness,** undecidedness, infirmity of purpose; mugwumpery, mugwumpism, fence-sitting, fence-straddling; double-mindedness, **ambivalence,** ambitendency; dubiety, dubiousness, **uncertainty** 971; **instability, inconstancy,** changeableness 854; capriciousness, mercuriality, fickleness 364.3; change of mind, second thoughts, tergiversation 363.1; fence-sitting

2 **vacillation, fluctuation,** oscillation, pendulation, mood swing, **wavering,** wobbling, waffling <nf>, shilly-shally, **shilly-shallying,** blowing hot and cold; equivocation 344.4; second thoughts; back-pedaling, reversal, about-face

3 **hesitation,** hesitance, **hesitancy,** hesitating, holding back, dragging one's feet; falter, faltering, shilly-shally, shilly-shallying; diffidence, tentativeness, caution, cautiousness

4 **weak will, weak-mindedness;** feeblemindedness <old>, **weakness,** feebleness, faintness, faintheartedness, **frailty, infirmity; wimpiness** *or*

wimpishness <nf>, spinelessness, invertebracy; abulia; fear 127; cowardice 491; **pliability** 1047.2

5 **vacillator, shillyshallyer,** shilly-shally, **waverer,** wobbler, butterfly; mugwump, fence-sitter, fence-straddler; equivocator, tergiversator, prevaricator; ass between two bundles of hay; yo-yo <nf>; **wimp** <nf>, weakling, jellyfish, Milquetoast; quitter; don't know

VERBS 6 **not know one's own mind,** not know where one stands, **be of two minds,** have two minds, have mixed feelings, be in conflict, be conflicted <nf>; stagger, stumble, boggle

7 **hesitate, pause, falter, hang back,** hover; procrastinate; shilly-shally, hum and haw, **hem and haw;** wait to see how the cat jumps *or* the wind blows, scruple, jib, demur <old>, stick at, stickle, strain at; think twice about, stop to consider, ponder, wrinkle one's brow; debate, deliberate, see both sides of the question, balance, weigh one thing against another, consider both sides of the question, weigh the pros and cons; be divided, come down squarely in the middle, sit on *or* straddle the fence, fall between two stools; yield, back down 433.7; retreat, withdraw 163.6, wimp *or* chicken *or* cop out <nf>; pull back, drag one's feet; **flinch, shy away from, shy** 903.7, back off <nf>; fear; not face up to, hide one's head in the sand

8 **vacillate, waver, waffle** <nf>, **fluctuate,** pendulate, oscillate, wobble, wobble about, teeter, totter <old>, dither, swing from one thing to another, **shilly-shally,** back and fill, keep off and on, will and will not, keep *or* leave hanging in midair; blow hot and cold 364.4; **equivocate** 344.7, fudge and mudge <Brit nf>; change one's mind, tergiversate; vary, **alternate** 854.5; shift, change horses in midstream, **change** 852.5

ADJS 9 **irresolute,** irresolved, **unresolved; undecided, indecisive, undetermined,** unsettled, infirm of purpose; dubious, **uncertain** 970.15; at loose ends, at a loose end; **of two minds,** in conflict, double-minded, ambivalent, ambitendent; changeable, mutable 854.6; capricious, mercurial, fickle 364.6; mugwumpian, mugwumpish, fence-sitting, fence-straddling

10 **vacillating,** vacillatory, waffling <nf>, oscillatory, wobbly, **wavering, fluctuating,** pendulating, oscillating, **shilly-shallying,** shilly-shally; inconsistent

11 **hesitant,** hesitating, pikerish; faltering; shilly-shallying; diffident, tentative, timid, cautious; scrupling, jibbing, demurring <old>, sticking, straining, stickling

12 **weak-willed, weak-minded,** feebleminded <old>, weak-kneed, **weak,** wimpy *or* wimpish <nf>, feeble, fainthearted, **frail, faint, infirm; spineless,** invertebrate; without a will of one's own, unable to say 'no'; abulic; afraid, **chicken** *and* chicken-hearted *and* chicken-livered <nf>, cowardly 491.10; like putty, **pliable** 1045.9

ADVS 13 **irresolutely,** irresolvedly, **undecidedly, indecisively, undeterminedly; uncertainly;** hesitantly, hesitatingly, falteringly; waveringly, vacillatingly, shilly-shally, shilly-shallyingly

363 CHANGING OF MIND

NOUNS 1 **reverse, reversal,** flip *and* flip-flop *and* U-turn <nf>, turnabout, turnaround, **about-face,** about turn <Brit>, *volte-face* <Fr>, right-about-face, right-about turn <Brit>, right-about, a turn to the right-about; tergiversation, tergiversating; **change of mind;** second thoughts, better thoughts, afterthoughts, mature judgment

2 **apostasy,** recreancy; **treason,** misprision of treason, betrayal, turning traitor, turning one's coat, changing one's stripes, ratting <nf>, going over, joining *or* going over to the opposition, siding with the enemy; **defection;** bolt, bolting, secession, breakaway; **desertion** 370.2; **recidivism,** recidivation, relapse, backsliding 394.2; faithlessness, **disloyalty** 645.5

3 **recantation, withdrawal, disavowal, denial,** reneging, **unsaying, repudiation,** palinode, palinody, **retraction,** retractation; **disclaimer,** disclamation, **disownment,** disowning, abjurement, abjuration, **renunciation,** renouncement, forswearing; expatriation, self-exile

4 **timeserver,** timepleaser <old>, temporizer, opportunist, trimmer, weathercock; mugwump; chameleon, Vicar of Bray

5 **apostate, turncoat,** turnabout, **recreant, renegade,** renegado, renegate *or* runagate <old>, **defector,** tergiversator, tergiversant; **deserter,** turntail, quisling, fifth columnist, collaborationist, collaborator, **traitor** 357.10; strikebreaker; **bolter, seceder,** secessionist, **separatist,** schismatic; **backslider,** recidivist; reversionist; convert, proselyte

VERBS 6 **change one's mind** *or* **song** *or* **tune** *or* **note,** sing a different tune, dance to another tune; come round, wheel, do an about-face, reverse oneself, do a flip-flop *or* U-turn <nf>, go over, change sides; swing from one thing to another; think better of it, have second thoughts, be of another mind; bite one's tongue

7 **apostatize** *or* apostacize, go over, change sides, switch, switch over, change one's allegiance, **defect; turn one's coat,** turn cloak; desert *or* leave a sinking ship; secede, break away, bolt, fall off *or* away; desert

8 **recant, retract, repudiate, withdraw, take back,** unswear, renege, welsh <nf>, **abjure, disavow, disown; deny,** disclaim, unsay, unspeak; **renounce, forswear, eat one's words,** eat one's hat, swallow, eat crow, eat humble pie; **back down** *or* **out,** climb down, crawfish out <nf>, backwater, weasel

9 **be a timeserver,** trim, temporize, change with the times; sit on *or* straddle the fence

ADJS 10 **timeserving, trimming, temporizing;** supple, neither fish nor fowl

11 **apostate, recreant,** renegade, tergiversating, tergiversant; **treasonous, treasonable, traitorous,** forsworn; collaborating; faithless, **disloyal** 645.20

12 **repudiative,** repudiatory; abjuratory, renunciative, renunciatory; schismatic; **separatist,** secessionist, breakaway <nf>; **opportunistic,** mugwumpian, mugwumpish, fence-straddling, fence-sitting

364 CAPRICE

NOUNS 1 **caprice, whim,** *capriccio* <Ital>, *boutade* <Fr>, humor, **whimsy,** freak, whim-wham; **fancy,** fantasy, **conceit, notion,** flimflam, toy, freakish inspiration, crazy idea, fantastic notion, fool notion <nf>, harebrained idea, brainstorm, **vagary,** megrim; **fad, craze, passing fancy; quirk, crotchet,** crank, kink; maggot, maggot in the brain, bee in one's bonnet <nf>, flea in one's nose <nf>

2 **capriciousness,** caprice, **whimsicalness,** whimsy, whimsicality; humorsomeness, **fancifulness,** fantasticality, **freakishness;** crankiness, crotchetiness, quirkiness; **moodiness,** temperamentalness, prima-donnaism; petulance 110.6; **arbitrariness,** motivelessness

3 **fickleness, flightiness,** skittishness, inconstancy, **lightness, levity,** *légèreté* <Fr>; flakiness <nf>; volatility, mercurialness, mercuriality, erraticism; **mood swing;** faddishness, faddism; **changeableness** 854; unpredictability 971.1; unreliability, undependability 645.4; coquettishness; frivolousness 922.7; purposelessness, motivelessness

VERBS 4 **blow hot and cold,** keep off and on, have as many phases as the moon, chop and change, **fluctuate** 854.5, vacillate 362.8, flip-flop <nf>; act on impulse

ADJS 5 **capricious, whimsical,** freakish, humorsome, vagarious; **fanciful, notional,** fantasied <old>, fantastic *or* fantastical, maggoty, **crotchety,** kinky, harebrained, cranky, flaky <nf>, quirky; wanton, wayward, vagrant; **arbitrary, unreasonable,** motiveless; **moody, temperamental,** prima-donnaish; petulant 110.22; unrestrained

6 **fickle, flighty,** skittish, **light;** coquettish, flirtatious, toying; versatile, **inconstant,** erratic, **changeable** 854.7; vacillating 362.10; volatile, mercurial, quicksilver; faddish; **scatterbrained** 985.16, unpredictable; **impulsive;** idiosyncratic; unreliable, undependable 645.19

ADVS 7 **capriciously, whimsically,** fancifully, at one's own sweet will <nf>; **flightily, lightly;** arbitrarily, unreasonably, without rhyme or reason

365 IMPULSE

NOUNS 1 **impulse;** natural impulse, blind impulse, **instinct,** urge, drive; vagrant *or* fleeting impulse; involuntary impulse, reflex, knee jerk, automatic response; gut response *or* reaction <nf>; **notion, fancy; sudden thought,** flash, inspiration, brainstorm, brain wave, quick hunch

2 **impulsiveness, impetuousness,** impulsivity, impetuousity; **hastiness,** overhastiness, haste, quickness, suddenness; **precipitateness,** precipitance, precipitancy, precipitation; hair-trigger; **recklessness, rashness** 493; impatience 135

3 **thoughtlessness,** unthoughtfulness, **heedlessness** 984.1, **carelessness,** inconsideration, inconsiderateness; **negligence** 102.2, caprice 364

4 **unpremeditation,** indeliberation, **undeliberateness,** uncalculatedness, undesignedness, **spontaneity, spontaneousness,** unstudiedness; involuntariness 963.5; snap judgment *or* decision; snap shot, offhand shot

5 **improvisation, extemporization,** improvision, improvising, extempore <old>, **impromptu, ad-lib,** ad-libbing *and* playing by ear <nf>, **ad hoc measure** *or* solution, adhocracy <nf>, ad hockery *or* hocery *or* hocism <nf>; extemporaneousness, extemporariness; temporary measure *or* arrangement, pro tempore measure *or* arrangement, **stopgap, makeshift,** jury-rig; cannibalization; bricolage; jam session; thinking on one's feet

6 **improviser,** improvisator, *improvvisatore* and *improvvisatrice* <Ital>, **extemporizer,** ad-libber <nf>; cannibalizer; bricoleur; creature of impulse

VERBS 7 **act on the spur of the moment,** obey one's impulse, let oneself go; shoot from the hip <nf>, be too quick on the trigger *or* the uptake *or* the draw; **blurt out,** come out with, let slip out, say what comes uppermost, say the first thing that comes into one's head *or* to one's mind; be unable to help oneself

8 **improvise, extemporize,** improvisate, improv *and* tapdance *and* talk off the top of one's head <nf>, speak off the cuff, think on one's feet, invent, make it up as one goes along, play it by ear <nf>, throw away *or* depart from the prepared text, throw away the speech, scrap the plan, **ad-lib** <nf>, **do**

offhand, wing it <nf>, vamp, fake <nf>, play by ear <nf>; **dash off, strike off,** knock off, throw off, toss off *or* out; make up, whip up, **cook up,** run up, rustle up *or* whomp up <nf>, slap up *or* together *and* throw together <nf>, lash up <Brit>, cobble up; jury-rig; rise to the occasion; cannibalize

ADJS 9 **impulsive, impetuous, hasty,** overhasty, quick, sudden, snap; quick on the draw *or* trigger *or* uptake, hair-trigger; **precipitate,** headlong; **reckless, rash** 493.7; impatient 135.6

10 **unthinking, unreasoning, unreflecting,** uncalculating, unthoughtful, **thoughtless, inadvertent,** reasonless, **heedless, careless,** inconsiderate; unguarded; arbitrary, capricious 364.5

11 **unpremeditated,** unmeditated, **uncalculated,** undeliberated, **spontaneous, undesigned, unstudied;** unintentional, unintended, inadvertent, unwilled, **indeliberate,** undeliberate; **involuntary,** reflex, reflexive, knee-jerk <nf>, automatic, goose-step, lockstep; gut <nf>, unconscious; **unconsidered,** unadvised, snap, casual, offhand, throwaway <nf>; **ill-considered,** ill-advised, ill-devised; act-first-and-think-later

12 **extemporaneous, extemporary,** extempore, **impromptu,** unrehearsed, **improvised,** improvisatory, improvisatorial, improviso, *improvisé* <Fr>; **ad-lib,** *ad libitum* <L>; **ad-hoc,** stopgap, makeshift, jury-rigged; **offhand,** off the top of one's head *and* off-the-cuff <nf>, **spur-of-the-moment, quick and dirty** <nf>; catch-as-catch-can; potluck

ADVS 13 **impulsively, impetuously, hastily,** suddenly, quickly, **precipitately,** headlong; **recklessly, rashly** 493.10

14 **on impulse,** on a sudden impulse, **on the spur of the moment; without premeditation,** unpremeditatedly, uncalculatedly, undesignedly; unthinkingly, unreflectingly, unreasoningly, unthoughtfully, thoughtlessly, heedlessly, carelessly, inconsiderately, unadvisedly; unintentionally, inadvertently, without willing, indeliberately, involuntarily

15 **extemporaneously, extemporarily,** extempore, *à l'improviste* <Fr>, **impromptu, ad lib, offhand,** out of hand; at *or* on sight; by ear, off the hip *and* off the top of one's head *and* off the cuff <nf>; at short notice

366 LEAP

NOUNS 1 **leap, jump, hop, spring, skip, bound,** bounce; **pounce;** upleap, upspring, jump-off; **hurdle; vault,** pole vault; demivolt, curvet, capriole; jeté, grand jeté, tour jeté, saut de basque; jig, galliard, lavolta, Highland fling, morris; standing *or* running *or* flying jump; long jump, broad jump, standing *or* running broad jump; high jump, standing *or* running high jump; leapfrog; jump shot; handspring; buck, buckjump; ski jump, jump turn, geländesprung, gelände jump; steeplechase; hippety-hop <nf>; jump-hop; hop, skip, and jump

2 **caper,** dido <nf>, **gambol, frisk,** curvet, cavort, capriole; **prance,** caracole; *gambade* <Fr>, gambado; falcade

3 **leaping, jumping,** bouncing, bounding, hopping, capering, cavorting, prancing, skipping, **springing,** saltation; **vaulting,** pole vaulting; **hurdling,** the hurdles, hurdle race, timber topping <nf>, steeplechase; leapfrogging

4 **jumper,** leaper, hopper; broad jumper, high jumper; **vaulter,** pole vaulter; **hurdler,** hurdle racer, timber topper <nf>; jumping jack; bucking bronco, buckjumper, sunfisher <nf>; jumping bean; kangaroo, gazelle, stag, jackrabbit, goat, frog, grasshopper, flea; salmon

VERBS 5 **leap, jump, vault, spring, skip, hop, bound,** bounce; upleap, upspring, updive; leap over, jump over, etc; overleap, overjump, overskip, leapfrog; **hurdle,** clear, negotiate; curvet, capriole; buck, buckjump; ski jump; steeplechase; start, start up, start aside; **pounce,** pounce on *or* upon; hippety-hop <nf>

6 **caper, cut capers,** cut a dido <nf>, curvet, cavort, capriole, **gambol,** gambado, **frisk,** flounce, **trip, skip,** bob, bounce, jump about; **romp,** ramp <nf>; **prance;** caracole

ADJS 7 **leaping, jumping,** springing, hopping, skipping, prancing, bouncing, bounding; saltant, saltatory, saltatorial

367 PLUNGE

NOUNS 1 **plunge, dive, pitch, drop, fall;** free-fall; header <nf>; **swoop, pounce,** stoop; swan dive, gainer, jackknife, cannonball; belly flop *and* belly buster *and* belly whopper <nf>; nose dive, power dive; parachute jump, sky dive; bungee jump; crash dive, stationary dive, running dive

2 **submergence, submersion, immersion,** immergence, engulfment, **inundation,** burial; **dipping, ducking,** dousing, sousing, dunking <nf>, sinking; **dip, duck, souse;** baptism

3 **diving,** plunging; skydiving; bungee jumping; fancy diving, high diving; scuba diving, snorkeling, skin diving, pearl diving, deep-sea diving

4 **diver,** plunger; high diver; bungee jumper; parachute jumper, jumper, sky diver, sport jumper, paratrooper, smoke jumper, paramedic; skin diver,

snorkel diver, scuba diver, free diver, pearl diver, deep-sea diver, frogman

5 <diving equipment> diving bell, diving chamber, bathysphere, bathyscaphe, benthoscope, aquascope; submarine 180.9; diving boat; scuba *or* self-contained underwater breathing apparatus, Aqua-Lung <trademark>; Scuba; diving goggles, diving mask, swim fins; wet suit; air cylinder; diving suit; diving helmet, diving hood; snorkel, periscope

VERBS 6 **plunge, dive, pitch, plummet, drop, fall;** skydive; bungee jump; free-fall; plump, plunk, plop; swoop, swoop down, stoop, **pounce,** pounce on *or* upon; nose-dive, make *or* take a nose dive; parachute, sky-dive; skin-dive; sound; take a header <nf>

7 **submerge,** submerse, **immerse,** immerge, merge, **sink,** bury, engulf, **inundate,** deluge, drown, overwhelm, whelm; **dip, duck, dunk** <nf>, douse, souse, plunge in water; baptize

8 **sink, scuttle,** send to the bottom, send to Davy Jones's locker; **founder, go down,** go to the bottom, sink like lead, go down like a stone; get out of one's depth

ADJS 9 **submersible,** submergible, immersible, sinkable

368 AVOIDANCE

NOUNS 1 **avoidance, shunning; forbearance,** refraining; hands-off policy, **nonintervention,** noninvolvement, neutrality; **evasion,** elusion; sidestepping, getting around <nf>, working around, **circumvention;** prevention, forestalling, forestallment; **escape** 369; evasive action, the runaround <nf>; zigzag, jink *and* juke <nf>, slip, dodge, duck, side step, shy; shunting off, sidetracking; bypassing; evasiveness, elusiveness; **equivocation** 344.4, waffle <nf>, fudging, fudge and mudge <Brit nf>; avoiding reaction, defense mechanism *or* reaction; safe distance, wide berth; cold shoulder, snub; abstinence; shyness

2 **shirking, slacking,** goldbricking <nf>, cop-out <nf>, soldiering, goofing *and* goofing off *and* fucking off <nf>; clock-watching; **malingering,** skulking <Brit>; passivity; **dodging,** ducking; welshing <nf>; truancy; tax evasion, tax dodging

3 **shirker,** shirk, **slacker,** eye-servant *or* eye-server <old>, goof-off <nf>, soldier *or* old soldier, **goldbricker,** goldbrick <nf>; clock watcher; **welsher** <nf>; **malingerer,** skulker *or* skulk <Brit>; truant; tax dodger *or* evader

4 **flight,** fugitation, exit, quick exit, making oneself scarce *and* getting the hell out <nf>, bolt, scarpering <Brit nf>, disappearing act <nf>, hasty retreat; **running away, decampment,** bugging out <nf>; skedaddle *and* skedaddling *and* scramming *and* absquatulation <old> <nf>; **elopement;** disappearance 34; French leave, absence without leave *or* AWOL; desertion 370.2; hegira; truancy, hooky *or* hookey

5 **fugitive,** fleer, person on the run, **runaway,** runagate, **bolter,** skedaddler <nf>; **absconder, eloper; refugee, evacuee,** boat person, *émigré* <Fr>; **displaced person** *or* DP, stateless person; **escapee** 369.5; illegal immigrant, wetback <nf>, day-crosser; draft dodger; truant, absentee; desserter

VERBS 6 **avoid, shun, fight shy of, shy away from,** keep from, **keep away from, circumvent,** keep clear of, avoid like the plague, **steer clear of** <nf>, give a miss to <nf>, skate around <Brit nf>, keep *or* get out of the way of, **give a wide berth,** keep remote from, stay detached from; make way for, give place to; **keep one's distance,** keep at a respectful distance, keep *or* stand *or* hold aloof; give the cold shoulder to <nf>, have nothing to do with, have no association with, not give the time of day, **have no truck with** <nf>; not meddle with, let alone, let well enough alone, keep hands off, not touch, not touch with a ten-foot pole, back off; turn away from, turn one's back upon, slam the door in one's face

7 **evade, elude,** beg, **get out of,** shuffle out of, skirt, **get around** <nf>, circumvent; take evasive action; give one the run-around; ditch *and* shake *and* shake off <nf>, get away from, give the runaround *or* the slip <nf>; throw off the scent; play at hide and seek; lead one a chase *or* merry chase, lead one a dance *or* pretty dance; escape 369.6-8

8 **dodge, duck; take evasive action,** juke *and* jink <nf>, zig-zag; throw off the track *or* trail; shy, shy off *or* away; swerve, sheer off; pull away *or* clear; pull back, shrink, recoil 903.6,7; **sidestep,** step aside; parry, fence, ward off; have an out *or* escape hatch; shift, shift *or* put off; **hedge,** pussyfoot <nf>, be *or* sit on the fence, beat around *or* about the bush, hem and haw, beg the question, tapdance <nf>, dance around, equivocate 344.7, fudge and mudge <Brit nf>

9 **shirk, slack, lie** *or* **rest upon one's oars,** not pull fair, not pull one's weight; **lie down on the job** <nf>; soldier, duck duty, **goof off** *and* dog it <nf>, **goldbrick** <nf>; **malinger,** skulk <Brit>; **get out of,** sneak *or* slip out of, slide out of, pass the buck, cop out <nf>, dodge, duck; welsh <nf>

10 **flee, fly, take flight,** take to flight, take wing, fugitate, **run, cut and run** <nf>, make a precipitate departure, **run off** *or* **away,** run away from, bug out <nf>, **decamp,** pull up stakes, **take**

to one's heels, make off, **depart** 188.6, do the disappearing act, make a quick exit, **beat a retreat** *or* **a hasty retreat, turn tail,** show the heels, show a clean *or* light pair of heels; **run for it,** "show it a fair pair of heels and run for it"—Shakespeare, **bolt, run for one's life;** make a run for it; advance to the rear, make a strategic withdrawal; **take French leave,** go AWOL, slip the cable; **desert; abscond,** levant <Brit>, **elope,** run away with; skip *or* jump bail; play hooky *or* hookey

11 <nf terms> **beat it, blow, scram,** bug off, lam, book, air out, shemozzle *and* bugger off <Brit>, **take it on the lam,** take a powder *or* runout powder, make tracks, cut ass, cut and run, peel out, **split,** skin out, **skip,** skip out, duck out, duck and run, dog it, vamoose, absquatulate *and* skedaddle <old>, **clear out,** make oneself scarce, get the hell out, make a break for it, warp out, scram

12 **slip away, steal away, sneak off,** shuffle off, slink off, slide off, slither off, skulk away, mooch off *and* duck out <nf>, slip out of

13 **not face up to,** hide one's head in the sand, not come to grips with, put off, procrastinate, temporize, waffle <nf>

ADJS **14** **avoidable, escapable,** eludible; evadable; preventable

15 **evasive, elusive,** elusory; **shifty,** slippery, slippery as an eel; cagey <nf>; shirking, malingering

16 **fugitive, runaway,** in flight, on the lam <nf>, hot <nf>; disappearing 34.3

369 ESCAPE

NOUNS **1** **escape; getaway** *and* break *and* breakout <nf>; **deliverance; delivery,** riddance, **release,** setting-free, freeing, freedom, **liberation, extrication, rescue;** emergence, issuance, issue, outlet, vent; **leakage,** leak; jailbreak, prisonbreak, break, breakout; evasion 368.1; **flight** 368.4; retreat; French leave; hooky; elopement; escapology; escapism

2 **narrow escape,** hairbreadth escape, **close call** *or* **shave** <nf>, **near miss,** near go *or* thing <Brit nf>, near *or* narrow squeak <Brit nf>, close *or* tight squeeze <nf>, squeaker <nf>

3 bolt-hole, escape hatch, fire escape, life net, lifeboat, life raft, life buoy, lifeline, sally port, slide, inflatable slide, ejection *or* ejector seat, emergency exit, escapeway, back door, trapdoor, escape hatch, secret passage

4 **loophole, way out,** way of escape, hole to creep out of, escape hatch, escape clause, saving clause, technicality; pretext 376; **alternative,** choice 371

5 **escapee,** escaper, evader; escape artist; escapologist; runaway, **fugitive** 368.5; escapist, Houdini

VERBS **6** **escape,** make *or* effect one's escape, make good one's escape; **get away, make a getaway** <nf>; **free oneself,** deliver oneself, gain one's liberty, **get free, get clear of,** bail out, **get out, get out of,** get well out of; **break loose,** cut loose, break away, break one's bonds *or* chains, slip the collar, shake off the yoke; **jump** *and* **skip** <nf>; **break jail** *or* **prison,** escape prison, fly the coop <nf>; leap over the wall; evade 368.7; flee 368.10; vamoose, take it on the lam

7 **get off, go free,** win freedom, go at liberty, **go scot free,** escape with a whole skin, escape without penalty, walk *and* beat the rap <nf>; **get away with** <nf>, get by, get by with, get off easy *or* lightly, get away with murder <nf>, **get off cheap;** cop a plea *and* cop out <nf>, get off on a technicality

8 scrape *or* squeak through, squeak by, escape with *or* by the skin of one's teeth, have a close call *or* close shave <nf>

9 **slip away, give one the slip,** slip through one's hands *or* fingers; slip *or* sneak through; **slip out of,** slide out of, crawl *or* creep out of, sneak out of, wiggle *or* squirm *or* shuffle *or* wriggle *or* worm out of, find a loophole, elude

10 **find vent,** issue forth, come forth, exit, **emerge, issue,** debouch, erupt, break out, break through, come out, run out, **leak out,** ooze out

ADJS **11** **escaped, loose,** on the loose, disengaged, out of, well out of; fled, flown; fugitive, runaway; free as a bird, scot-free, at large, **free**

370 ABANDONMENT

NOUNS **1** **abandonment, forsaking, leaving;** jettison, jettisoning, throwing overboard *or* away *or* aside, casting away *or* aside; **withdrawal,** evacuation, pulling out, absentation; cessation 857; disuse, desuetude

2 **desertion, defection,** ratting <nf>; dereliction; **secession,** bolt, breakaway, walkout; betrayal 645.8; schism, apostasy 363.2; deserter 363.5

3 <giving up> **relinquishment, surrender, resignation, renouncement,** renunciation, abdication, waiver, abjurement, abjuration, ceding, cession, handing over, standing *or* stepping down, **yielding, forswearing; withdrawing, dropping out** <nf>

4 **derelict,** castoff; jetsam, flotsam, lagan, **flotsam and jetsam;** waifs and strays; **rubbish, junk,** trash, refuse, waste, waste product, solid waste; liquid waste, wastewater; **dump,** dumpsite, garbage dump, landfill, sanitary landfill, junkheap, junkpile, scrap heap, midden; abandonee, waif, throwaway, orphan, dogie <nf>; **castaway;** foundling; wastrel, reject, deselect, **discard** 390.3

VERBS 5 **abandon, desert, forsake; quit, leave,** leave behind, take leave of, depart from, absent oneself from, turn one's back upon, turn one's tail upon, say goodbye to, bid a long farewell to, walk away, **walk** *or* **run out on** <nf>, **leave flat** *and* leave high and dry *or* holding the bag *or* in the lurch <nf>, leave one to one's fate, throw to the wolves <nf>; **withdraw, back out, drop out** <nf>, pull out, stand down <nf>; **go back on, go back on one's word;** cry off <Brit>, beg off, renege; **vacate,** evacuate; quit cold *and* leave flat <nf>, toss aside; jilt, throw over <nf>; maroon; **jettison; junk,** deep-six <nf>, **discard** 390.7; let fall into disuse *or* desuetude

6 **defect, secede, bolt,** break away; pull out <nf>, withdraw one's support; sell out *and* sell down the river <nf>, **betray** 645.14; turn one's back on; apostatize

7 **give up, relinquish, surrender, yield,** yield up, waive, **forgo, resign, renounce,** throw up, abdicate, **abjure, forswear, give up on, have done with,** give up as a bad job, cede, hand over, lay down, wash one's hands of, **write off,** drop, drop all idea of, drop like a hot potato; **cease** 857.6, **desist from,** leave off, give over; hold *or* stay one's hand, cry quits, acknowledge defeat, **throw in the towel** *or* **sponge** 433.8

ADJS 8 **abandoned, forsaken, deserted,** left; disused; **derelict,** castaway, jettisoned; marooned; junk, junked, discarded 390.11

371 CHOICE

NOUNS 1 **choice, selection, election,** preference, decision, **pick, choosing,** free choice; alternativity; co-option, co-optation; **will,** volition, free will 430.6,7; preoption, first choice; the pick 999.7

2 **option, discretion, pleasure,** will and pleasure; optionality; possible choice, alternative, alternate choice

3 **dilemma,** Scylla and Charybdis, the devil and the deep blue sea; *embarras de choix* <Fr>; choice of Hercules; Hobson's choice, **no choice,** only choice, zero option; limited choice, positive discrimination <Brit>, affirmative action; lesser of two evils

4 **adoption, embracement,** acceptance, espousal; affiliation

5 **preference, predilection,** proclivity, bent, affinity, prepossession, predisposition, partiality, inclination, leaning, tilt, penchant, bias, tendency, taste, favoritism; favor, fancy; prejudice; personal choice, particular choice <old>, druthers <nf>; chosen kind *or* sort, style, one's cup of tea <nf>, type, bag *and* thing <nf>; way of life, lifestyle

6 **vote,** voting, **suffrage,** franchise, enfranchisement, voting right, right to vote; **voice, say;** representation; **poll,** polling, canvass, canvassing, division <Brit>, counting heads *or* noses *or* hands, exit poll; **ballot,** balloting, secret ballot, absentee ballot; ballot-box, voting machine; **plebiscite,** plebiscitum, **referendum;** yeas and nays, yea, aye, yes, nay, no; voice vote, *viva voce* vote; rising vote; hand vote, show of hands; absentee vote, proxy; casting vote, deciding vote; write-in vote, write-in; faggot vote <Brit old>; graveyard vote; single vote, plural vote; transferable vote, nontransferable vote; direct vote; Hare system, list system, cumulative voting, preferential voting, proportional representation; **straw vote** *or* **poll;** record vote, snap vote

7 **selector,** chooser, optant, elector, balloter, **voter; electorate;** electoral college

8 **nomination, designation,** naming, proposal

9 **election, appointment;** political election; caucus; primary

10 **selectivity,** selectiveness, picking and choosing; **choosiness** 495.1; eclecticism; discretion, **discrimination** 943

11 **eligibility, qualification, fitness,** fittedness, **suitability,** acceptability, worthiness, desirability; eligible

12 **elect,** elite, the chosen, the cream, crème de la crème

VERBS 13 **choose,** elect, pick, go with <nf>, opt, opt for, co-opt, make *or* take one's choice, make choice of, have one's druthers <nf>, use *or* take up *or* exercise one's option, exercise one's discretion; **shop around** <nf>, pick and choose

14 **select,** make a selection; **pick,** handpick, **pick out, single out,** choose out, smile on, give the nod <nf>, jump at, seize on; extract, excerpt; **decide between, choose up sides** <nf>, cull, glean, winnow, sift; side with; cherry-pick, separate the wheat from the chaff *or* tares, separate the sheep from the goats

15 **adopt;** approve, ratify, pass, carry, endorse, sign off on <nf>; **take up, go in for** <nf>; accept, take on up on <nf>, **embrace,** espouse; affiliate

16 **decide upon, determine upon,** settle upon, fix upon, resolve upon; make *or* take a decision, **make up one's mind**

17 **prefer,** have preference, **favor, like better** *or* **best,** prefer to, set before *or* above, regard *or* honor before; rather <nf>, **had** *or* **have rather,** would rather, choose rather, had sooner, had *or* would as soon; think proper, see *or* think fit, think best, please; tilt *or* incline *or* lean *or* tend toward, have a bias *or* partiality *or* penchant

18 **vote, cast one's vote,** ballot, cast a ballot; go to the

polls; have a say *or* a voice; hold up one's hand, exercise one's suffrage *or* franchise, stand up and be counted; plump *or* plump for <Brit>; divide <Brit>; **poll,** canvass

19 **nominate, name, designate;** put up, propose, submit, name for office; run, run for office

20 **elect, vote in,** place in office; **appoint**

21 **put to choice,** offer, present, set before; put to vote, have a show of hands

ADJS 22 **elective;** volitional, voluntary, volitive; **optional,** discretional; **alternative,** disjunctive

23 **selective,** selecting, choosing; eclectic *or* eclectical; elective, electoral; appointing, appointive, constituent; adoptive; exclusive, discriminating 944.7; **choosy** <nf>, particular 495.9

24 **eligible, qualified, fit,** fitted, **suitable,** acceptable, admissible, worthy, desirable; with voice, with vote, with voice and vote, enfranchised

25 **preferable,** of choice *or* preference, **better,** preferred, **to be preferred,** more desirable, favored; handpicked; preferential, preferring, favoring; not to be sniffed *or* sneezed at <nf>

26 **chosen, selected, picked;** select, elect; handpicked, singled-out; **adopted,** accepted, embraced, espoused, approved, ratified, passed, carried; **elected,** unanimously elected, elected by acclamation; appointed; **nominated,** designated, named

ADVS 27 **at choice, at will,** at one's will and pleasure, at one's pleasure, electively, at one's discretion, at the option of, if one wishes; on approval; **optionally;** alternatively

28 **preferably, by choice** *or* **preference,** in preference; by vote, by election *or* suffrage; **rather than,** sooner than, first, sooner, rather, before

CONJS 29 or, either/or; and/or

PHRS 30 one man's meat is another man's poison, there's no accounting for taste

372 REJECTION

NOUNS 1 **rejection, repudiation;** abjurement, abjuration, **renouncement** 370.3; disownment, disavowal, disclamation, **recantation** 363.3; **exclusion,** exception 773.1; **disapproval, nonacceptance,** nonapproval, declining, declination, veto, **refusal** 442; contradiction, **denial** 335.2; passing by *or* up <nf>, ignoring, nonconsideration, discounting, dismissal, disregard 983.1; throwing out *or* away, putting out *or* away, chucking *and* chucking out <nf>, heave-ho; discard 390.3; turning out *or* away, repulse, a flea in one's ear, rebuff 908.2; **spurning,** kiss-off *and* brush-off <nf>, cold shoulder, despising, despisal, contempt 157; scorn, disdain; bum's rush <nf>

VERBS 2 **reject, repudiate,** abjure, forswear, **renounce** 370.7, **disown, disclaim, recant;** vote out; except, **exclude** 773.4, deselect, include out <nf>, close out, close the door on, leave out in the cold, cut out, blackball, blacklist; **disapprove, decline, refuse** 442.3; contradict, **deny** 335.4; pass by *or* up <nf>, waive, ignore, not hear of, wave aside, brush away *or* aside, refuse to consider, discount, **dismiss,** dismiss out of hand; **disregard** 984.2; throw out *or* away, chuck *and* chuck out <nf>, **discard** 390.7; turn out *or* away, shove away, push aside, repulse, repel, slap *or* smack down <nf>, rebuff 908.2, send away with a flea in one's ear, show the door, send about one's business, send packing; turn one's back on; **spurn, disdain,** scorn, contemn, make a face at, turn up one's nose at, look down one's nose at, raise one's eyebrows at, **despise** 157.3

ADJS 3 **rejected, repudiated; renounced,** forsworn, **disowned; denied,** refused; excluded, excepted; **disapproved, declined;** ignored, blanked, discounted, not considered, **dismissed,** dismissed out of hand; **discarded;** repulsed, rebuffed; **spurned,** snubbed, **disdained, scorned,** contemned, **despised;** out of the question, not to be thought of, declined with thanks; discarded

4 rejective; renunciative, abjuratory; declinatory; dismissive; contemptuous, despising, **scornful,** disdainful

373 CUSTOM, HABIT

NOUNS 1 **custom, convention,** use, **usage,** standard usage, standard behavior, **wont,** wonting, **way,** established way, time-honored practice, **tradition,** standing custom, **folkway,** manner, **practice,** praxis, prescription, **observance,** ritual, rite, consuetude, **mores;** institution; unwritten law; proper thing, what is done, **social convention** 579; bon ton, **fashion** 578; manners, protocol, etiquette 580.3; way of life, lifestyle; conformity 867; **generalization** 864.1, labeling, stereotyping

2 **culture, society, civilization;** trait, culture trait; key trait; complex, culture complex, trait-complex; culture area; culture center; shame culture, memory culture; **folkways, mores,** system of values, **ethos, culture pattern;** cultural change; cultural lag; culture conflict; acculturation, enculturation; culture contact <Brit>, cultural drift; ancient wisdom

3 **habit,** habitude, **custom, second nature,** matter of course; use, **usage,** trick, wont, **way,** practice, praxis; bad habit; stereotype; "the petrifaction of feelings"—L E Landon; "a second nature, and no less powerful"—Montaigne; pattern, **habit pattern;**

stereotyped behavior; force of habit; creature of habit; knee-jerk reaction <nf>, automatism 963.5; peculiarity, characteristic 865.4

4 **rule, norm,** procedure, **common practice,** the way things are done, form, prescribed *or* set form; common *or* ordinary run of things, matter of course, par for the course <nf>; standard operating procedure *or* SOP, standard procedure, drill; standing orders

5 **routine,** run, ritual, round, beat, track, beaten path *or* track; pattern, custom; jog trot, **rut, groove,** well-worn groove; **treadmill,** squirrel cage; the working day, nine-to-five, the grind *or* the daily grind <nf>; **red tape,** redtapeism, **bureaucracy,** bureaucratism, *chinoiseries* <Fr>

6 **customariness,** accustomedness, wontedness, **habitualness; inveteracy,** inveterateness, confirmedness, settledness, fixedness; commonness, prevalence 864.2

7 **habituation, accustoming; conditioning,** seasoning, training; **familiarization,** naturalization <old>, breaking-in <nf>, orientation, adaptation; **domestication, taming,** breaking, housebreaking; acclimation, acclimatization; **inurement,** hardening, case hardening, seasoning; adaption, adjustment, accommodation 867.1

8 **addiction** 87.1; **addict** 87.3

VERBS 9 **accustom, habituate,** wont; **condition,** season, **train;** familiarize, naturalize <old>, break in <nf>, orient, orientate; **domesticate,** domesticize, **tame,** break, gentle, housebreak; put through the mill; acclimatize, acclimate; inure, harden, case harden; adapt, adjust, accommodate 788.7; confirm, fix, establish 855.9; acculturate, enculturate

10 **become a habit,** take root, become fixed, **grow on one,** take hold of one, take one over

11 **be used to, be wont,** wont, **make a practice of;** get used to, get into the way of, get the knack of, get the hang of <nf>, **take to,** accustom oneself to, make a practice of; catch oneself doing; contract *or* fall into a habit, addict oneself to

12 **get in a rut, be in a rut,** move *or* travel in a groove *or* rut, run on in a groove, follow the beaten path *or* track

ADJS 13 **customary, wonted,** consuetudinary; traditional, time-honored, immemorial; familiar, everyday, ordinary, **usual; established,** received, accepted, handed down, time-honored; set, prescribed, prescriptive; **normative, normal; standard,** regular, stock, regulation; prevalent, prevailing, widespread, obtaining, generally accepted, popular, **current** 863.12; **conventional** 579.5, orthodox; conformist, conformable 867.5

14 **habitual, regular,** frequent, constant, persistent; repetitive, recurring, recurrent; stereotyped; knee-jerk <nf>, goose-step, lockstep, automatic 963.14; **routine,** usual, nine-to-five, workaday, well-trodden, well-worn, beaten; trite, hackneyed 117.9; predictable

15 **accustomed, wont, wonted, used to; conditioned,** trained, seasoned; experienced, **familiarized,** naturalized <old>, broken-in, run-in <nf>, oriented, orientated; acclimated, acclimatized; inured, hardened, case-hardened; adapted, adjusted, accommodated; housebroken, potty-trained

16 **used to, familiar with,** conversant with, **at home in** *or* **with,** no stranger to, an old hand at, *au fait* <Fr>

17 **habituated,** *habitué* <Fr>; **in the habit of,** used to; never free from; **in a rut**

18 **confirmed, inveterate, chronic, established,** long-established, **fixed, settled, rooted,** thorough; incorrigible, irreversible; **deep-rooted,** deep-set, deep-settled, **deep-seated,** deep-fixed, deep-dyed; **infixed, ingrained,** fast, dyed-in-the-wool, inveterate; implanted, inculcated, instilled; set, **set in one's ways,** settled in habit; addicted, given

ADVS 19 **customarily,** conventionally, accustomedly, wontedly; normatively, normally, **usually; as is the custom;** as is usual, *comme d'habitude* <Fr>; as things go, as the world goes

20 **habitually, regularly,** routinely, frequently, persistently, repetitively, recurringly; **inveterately, chronically;** from habit, **by** *or* **from force of habit,** as is one's wont

374 UNACCUSTOMEDNESS

NOUNS 1 **unaccustomedness, newness,** unwontedness, disaccustomedness, unusedness, unhabituatedness; shakiness <nf>; **unfamiliarity,** unacquaintance, unconversance, unpracticedness, newness to; inexperience 414.2; ignorance 930

VERBS 2 **disaccustom, cure, break off,** stop, **wean**

3 **break the habit, cure oneself of,** disaccustom oneself, kick a habit <nf>, wean oneself from, break the pattern, break one's chains *or* fetters; **give up,** leave off, **abandon,** drop, stop, discontinue, kick *and* shake <nf>, throw off, rid oneself of; get on the wagon, swear off 668.8

ADJS 4 **unaccustomed, new,** disaccustomed, **unused, unwonted;** uninured, unseasoned, untrained, unhardened; shaky <nf>, tyronic; unhabituated, **not in the habit of;** out of the habit of, rusty; unweaned; **unused to, unfamiliar with,** not used to, unacquainted with, unconversant with, unpracticed, new to, a stranger to; cub, greenhorn; inexperienced 414.17; ignorant 930.12

375 MOTIVATION, INDUCEMENT

NOUNS **1 motive, reason, cause,** source, spring, mainspring; matter, score, consideration; **ground, basis** 886.1; sake; **aim, goal** 380.2, end, end in view, telos, final cause; **ideal,** principle, **ambition,** aspiration, inspiration, guiding light *or* star, lodestar; impetus; calling, vocation; intention 380; ulterior motive, hidden agenda; rationale, justification, driving force

2 motivation, moving, **actuation, prompting, stimulation,** animation, triggering, setting-off, setting in motion, getting under way; direction, inner-direction, other-direction; **influence** 893; hot button; carrot

3 inducement, enlistment, engagement, solicitation, **persuasion,** suasion; exhortation, hortation, preaching, preachment; **selling,** sales talk, salesmanship, hard sell, high pressure, hawking, huckstering, flogging <Brit>; jawboning *and* arm-twisting <nf>; **lobbying; coaxing,** wheedling, working on <nf>, cajolery, cajolement, conning, snow job *and* smoke and mirrors <nf>, nobbling <Brit nf>, blandishment, sweet talk *and* soft soap <nf>, soft sell <nf>; **allurement** 377

4 incitement, incitation, **instigation, stimulation, arousal, excitement, agitation, inflammation,** excitation, fomentation, firing, stirring, stirring-up, impassioning, whipping-up, rabble-rousing; waving the bloody shirt, rallying cry; **provocation,** irritation, exasperation; pep talk, pep rally

5 urging, pressure, pressing, pushing, entreaty, plea, advocacy; **encouragement,** abetment; **insistence,** instance; **goading, prodding,** goosing <nf>, spurring, pricking, needling

6 urge, urgency; impulse, impulsion, compulsion; press, **pressure, drive,** push; sudden *or* rash impulse; constraint, exigency, stress, pinch

7 incentive, inducement, encouragement, persuasive, **invitation, provocation, incitement; stimulus, stimulation,** stimulative, fillip, whet; carrot; reward, payment 624; **profit** 472.3; bait, **lure** 377.2; palm oil <nf>, greased palm <nf>, bribe 378.2; sweetening *and* sweetener <nf>, flattery, interest, percentage, what's in it for one <nf>; offer one cannot refuse; payola <nf>, pork barrel <nf>; perk <nf>

8 goad, spur, prod, prick <old>, sting, **gadfly;** oxgoad; rowel; whip, lash, gad <nf>, crack of the whip

9 inspiration, infusion, infection; fire, firing, spark, sparking; **animation, exhilaration,** enlivenment; afflatus, divine afflatus; genius, animus, moving *or* animating spirit; muse; the Muses

10 prompter, mover, prime mover, motivator, impeller, energizer, galvanizer, inducer, **actuator, animator,** moving spirit, mover and shaker <nf>; **encourager,** abettor, **inspirer,** firer, spark, sparker, spark plug <nf>; persuader, salesperson, brainwasher, spin doctor <nf>; **stimulator, gadfly; tempter** 377.3; coaxer, coax <nf>, wheedler, cajoler, pleader

11 instigator, inciter, exciter, urger, motivator; **provoker,** *provocateur* <Fr>, *agent provocateur* <Fr>, catalyst; **agitator, fomenter,** inflamer; agitprop; **rabble-rouser,** rouser, **demagogue; firebrand, incendiary; seditionist,** seditionary; lobbyist, activist; **troublemaker,** makebate <old>, mischief-maker, ringleader; tactician, strategist; pressure group, special-interest group

VERBS **12 motivate, move,** set in motion, **actuate,** move to action, **impel,** propel; **stimulate,** energize, galvanize, **animate, spark;** promote, foster; force, compel 424.4; ego-involve

13 prompt, provoke, evoke, elicit, call up, summon up, muster up, call forth, **inspire;** bring about, **cause**

14 urge, press, push, work on <nf>, twist one's arm <nf>; **sell,** flog <Brit>; **insist,** push for, not take no for an answer, **importune, nag, pressure, high-pressure,** browbeat, bring pressure to bear upon, throw one's weight around, throw one's weight into the scale, jawbone *and* build a fire under <nf>, talk round *or* around; grind in; **lobby,** pitch <nf>; hype <nf>; **coax,** wheedle, cajole, blandish, plead with, sweet-talk *and* soft-soap <nf>, **exhort,** call on *or* upon, advocate, recommend, put in a good word, buck for *and* hype <nf>; insist, insist upon

15 goad, prod, poke, nudge, prod at, goose <nf>, **spur,** prick, sting, needle; whip, lash; pick at *or* on, nibble at, nibble away at

16 urge on *or* **along, egg on** <nf>, hound on, hie on, hasten on, hurry on, speed on; **goad on, spur on,** drive on, whip on *or* along; cheer on, root on <nf>, root from the sidelines <nf>; aid and abet

17 incite, instigate, put up to <nf>; set on, sic on; **foment,** ferment, **agitate, arouse, excite, stir up,** work up, whip up, turn on; rally; **inflame,** incense, **fire,** heat, heat up, impassion; **provoke,** pique, whet, tickle; nettle; lash into a fury *or* frenzy; wave the bloody shirt; pour oil on the fire, feed the fire, add fuel to the flame, fan, fan the flame, blow the coals, stir the embers

18 kindle, enkindle, **fire, spark, spark off, trigger, trigger off, touch off,** set off, light the fuse, **enflame,** set afire *or* on fire, turn on <nf>

19 rouse, arouse, raise, raise up, **waken, awaken,** wake up, turn on <nf>, charge *or* psych *or* pump up <nf>, stir, **stir up,** set astir, **pique**

20 **inspire,** inspirit, spirit, spirit up; **fire, fire one's imagination; animate, exhilarate,** enliven; **infuse, infect,** inject, inoculate, imbue, inform

21 **encourage, hearten, embolden,** give encouragement, pat *or* clap on the back, stroke <nf>; **invite,** ask for; **abet,** aid and abet, countenance, keep in countenance; **foster, nurture,** nourish, feed

22 **induce, prompt, move one to, influence, sway,** incline, **dispose,** carry, bring, lead, **lead one to; lure; tempt;** determine, decide; enlist, procure, engage <old>, interest in, get to do

23 **persuade, prevail on** *or* **upon,** prevail with, **sway,** convince, lead to believe, **bring round,** bring to reason, bring to one's senses; **win, win over,** win around, bring over, draw over, gain, gain over; **talk over, talk into,** argue into, out-talk <nf>; wangle, wangle into; hook and hook in <nf>, con *and* do a snow job on <nf>, nobble <Brit nf>, sell *and* sell one on <nf>, **charm, captivate;** wear down, overcome one's resistance, arm-twist *and* twist one's arm <nf>, put the screws to; **bribe** 378.3, grease *or* oil *or* cross one's palm <nf>; brainwash

24 **persuade oneself, make oneself easy about,** make sure of, make up one's mind; follow one's conscience; be persuaded, rest easy, come around, buy <nf>

ADJS 25 **motivating, motivational, motive, moving, animating, actuating, impelling, driving,** impulsive, inducive, directive; **urgent, pressing, driving;** compelling; causal, causative; goal-oriented

26 **inspiring, inspirational,** inspiriting; infusive; animating, exhilarating, enlivening

27 **provocative, provoking,** piquant, **exciting,** challenging, prompting, **rousing, stirring, stimulating,** stimulant, stimulative, stimulatory, energizing, electric, galvanizing, galvanic; **encouraging,** inviting, **alluring;** enticing; addictive

28 **incitive,** inciting, incentive; **instigative,** instigating; **agitative,** agitational; **inflammatory, incendiary,** fomenting, rabble-rousing

29 **persuasive,** suasive, persuading; wheedling, cajoling; hortative, hortatory; exhortative, exhortatory; hard-selling

30 **moved, motivated, prompted, impelled, actuated;** stimulated, animated; minded, inclined, of a mind to, with half a mind to; inner-directed, other-directed; soft <nf>

31 **inspired, fired,** afire, on fire

376 PRETEXT

NOUNS 1 **pretext, pretense, pretension,** lying pretension, **show,** ostensible *or* announced *or* public *or* professed motive; **front,** facade, **sham** 354.3; **excuse,** apology, protestation, poor excuse, lame excuse; **occasion,** mere occasion; put-off <nf>; handle, peg to hang on, leg to stand on, *locus standi* <L>; **subterfuge,** refuge, device, stratagem, feint, dipsy-doodle <nf>, **trick** 356.6; dust thrown in the eye, smoke screen, **screen, cover,** stalking-horse, **blind;** guise, semblance; mask, cloak, veil; **cosmetics,** mere cosmetics, gloss, varnish, color, coat of paint, whitewash <nf>; spit and polish; **cover,** cover-up, cover story, alibi; band-aid

2 **claim,** profession, allegation

VERBS 3 pretext, make a pretext of, take as an excuse *or* reason *or* occasion, urge as a motive, **pretend,** make a pretense of; put up a front *or* false front; **allege, claim,** profess, purport, avow; protest too much

4 **hide under,** cover oneself with, shelter under, take cover under, wrap oneself in, cloak *or* mantle oneself with, take refuge in; conceal one's motive with; **cover,** cover up, gloss *or* varnish over, apply a coat of paint *or* whitewash, stick on a band-aid

ADJS 5 **pretexted, pretended, alleged, claimed, professed, purported,** avowed; **ostensible,** hypocritical, **specious;** so-called, in name only

ADVS 6 **ostensibly, allegedly,** purportedly, professedly, avowedly; for the record, for public consumption; under the pretext of, **as a pretext,** as an excuse, as a cover *or* a cover-up *or* an alibi

377 ALLUREMENT

NOUNS 1 **allurement, allure, enticement, inveiglement,** invitation, come-hither <nf>, blandishment, cajolery; inducement 375.7; **temptation,** tantalization; **seduction,** seducement; **beguilement,** beguiling; **fascination, captivation,** enthrallment, entrapment, snaring; **enchantment,** witchery, bewitchery, bewitchment; **attraction, interest, charm, glamour, appeal,** magnetism; charisma; star quality; wooing; flirtation

2 **attractiveness, allure,** charmingness, bewitchingness, impressiveness, **seductiveness,** winsomeness, winning ways, winningness; **sexiness,** sex appeal *or* SA <nf>

3 **lure,** charm, **come-on** <nf>, attention-getter *or* -grabber, **attraction, draw** *or* drawer *or* crowd-drawer, crowd-pleaser, headliner; clou, hook *and* gimmick <nf>, drawing card, drawcard; **decoy,** decoy duck; **bait,** ground bait, baited trap, baited hook; **snare,** trap; **endearment** 562; the song of the Sirens, the voice of the tempter, honeyed words; forbidden fruit

4 **tempter, seducer, enticer,** inveigler, **charmer,**

enchanter, fascinator, tantalizer, teaser; coquette, flirt; Don Juan; Pied Piper of Hamelin; **temptress,** enchantress, seductress, **siren;** Siren, Circe, Lorelei, Parthenope; **vampire,** vamp <nf>, *femme fatale* <Fr>

VERBS 5 **lure,** allure, **entice, seduce, inveigle, decoy,** draw, **draw on, lead on;** come on to *and* give the come-on *and* give a come-hither look *and* bat the eyes at *and* make goo-goo eyes at <nf>, flirt with, flirt; **woo;** coax, cajole, blandish; **ensnare;** draw in, suck in *and* rope in <nf>; bait, offer bait to, bait the hook, angle with a silver hook

6 **attract, interest, appeal, engage,** impress, charismatize, fetch <nf>, catch *or* get one's eye, command one's attention, rivet one, attract one's interest, be attractive, take *or* tickle one's fancy; **invite,** summon, beckon; **tempt, tantalize, titillate,** tickle, **tease,** whet the appetite, make one's mouth water, dangle before one

7 **fascinate, captivate, charm,** becharm, spell, spellbind, cast a spell, put under a spell, **beguile, intrigue, enthrall,** infatuate, **enrapture, transport, enravish, entrance, enchant,** witch, **bewitch;** carry away, sweep off one's feet, turn one's head, knock one's socks off <nf>; hypnotize, mesmerize; vamp <nf>; charismatize

ADJS 8 **alluring, fascinating, captivating, riveting, charming, glamorous,** exotic, **enchanting,** spellful, spellbinding, **entrancing,** ravishing, **enravishing, intriguing, enthralling,** witching, **bewitching; attractive, interesting, appealing,** dishy <Brit nf>, sexy <nf>, engaging, taking, eye-catching, catching, fetching, winning, winsome, prepossessing; exciting; charismatic; **seductive,** seducing, **beguiling, enticing, inviting,** come-hither <nf>; flirtatious, coquettish; coaxing, cajoling, blandishing; **tempting, tantalizing,** teasing, titillating, titillative, tickling; **provocative,** *provoquant* <Fr>; appetizing, mouth-watering, piquant; **irresistible;** siren, sirenic; hypnotic, mesmeric

ADVS 9 **alluringly, fascinatingly,** captivatingly, charmingly, enchantingly, entrancingly, enravishingly, intriguingly, beguilingly, glamorously, bewitchingly; attractively, appealingly, engagingly, winsomely; **enticingly, seductively,** with bedroom eyes <nf>; **temptingly,** provocatively; **tantalizingly,** teasingly; piquantly, appetizingly; irresistibly; hypnotically, mesmerically

378 BRIBERY

NOUNS 1 **bribery,** bribing, subornation, **corruption, graft,** bribery and corruption

2 **bribe,** bribe money, sop, sop to Cerberus, gratuity, gratification <old>, payoff <nf>, boodle <nf>; hush money <nf>; payola <nf>; protection

VERBS 3 **bribe,** throw a sop to; grease *and* **grease the palm** *or* **hand** *and* oil the palm *and* tickle the palm <nf>; **purchase;** buy *and* **buy off** *and* pay off <nf>; suborn, **corrupt,** tamper with; reach *and* get at *and* get to <nf>; approach, try to bribe; **fix, take care of**

ADJS 4 **bribable,** corruptible, purchasable, buyable; approachable; fixable; on the take *and* on the pad <nf>; **venal, corrupt,** bought and paid for, in one's pocket

379 DISSUASION

NOUNS 1 **dissuasion,** talking out of <nf>, remonstrance, expostulation, admonition, monition, **warning,** caveat, **caution,** cautioning; intimidation, **determent,** deterrence, scaring *or* frightening off, turning around; contraindication

2 **deterrent,** determent; **discouragement,** disincentive, chilling effect, demotivation; deflection, roadblock, red light, closed door; damp, damper, **wet blanket,** cold water, chill; alienation, disaffection

VERBS 3 **dissuade,** convince to the contrary, convince otherwise, **talk out of** <nf>; contraindicate; unconvince, unpersuade; remonstrate, expostulate, admonish, cry out against; **warn, warn off** *or* **away, caution;** enter a caveat; **intimidate,** scare *or* frighten off, daunt, cow; turn around

4 **disincline, indispose,** disaffect, disinterest; **deter,** repel, turn from, turn away *or* aside; divert, deflect; distract, put off *and* turn off <nf>; wean from; **discourage; pour** *or* **dash** *or* **throw cold water on,** throw *or* lay a wet blanket on, be a wet blanket, damp, dampen, demotivate, **cool, chill,** quench, blunt; nip in the bud; take the starch out of, take the wind out of one's sails

ADJS 5 **dissuasive,** dissuading, disinclining, **discouraging; deterrent,** off-putting, repellent, disenchanting; expostulatory, admonitory, monitory, cautionary; intimidating

380 INTENTION

NOUNS 1 **intention, intent,** intendment, mindset, **aim,** effect, meaning, view, study, animus, **point, purpose,** function, set *or* settled *or* fixed purpose; sake; **design, plan, project,** idea, notion; **quest,** pursuit; **proposal,** prospectus; **resolve,** resolution, mind, will; **motive** 375.1; determination 359.1; desideratum, desideration, **ambition,** aspiration, **desire** 100; striving, nisus

2 **objective, object, aim, end, goal,** destination, mark, object in mind, **end in view,** telos, final cause, ultimate aim *or* purpose, mission; end in itself; **target,** butt, bull's-eye, quintain; quarry, prey, game; reason for being, *raison d'être* <Fr>; by-purpose, by-end; "the be-all and the end-all"—Shakespeare; teleology

3 **intentionality, deliberation, deliberateness,** directedness; express intention, expressness, **premeditation, predeliberation,** preconsideration, **calculation, calculatedness, predetermination,** preresolution, forethought, aforethought, calculated risk

VERBS 4 **intend, purpose, plan,** purport, **mean,** think, **propose; resolve,** determine 359.7; project, **design,** destine; **aim,** aim at, take aim at, draw a bead on, set one's sights on, have designs on, go for, drive at, aspire to *or* after, be after, set before oneself, purpose to oneself, have every intention; harbor a design; **desire** 100.14,18

5 **contemplate, meditate; envisage,** envision, **have in mind, have in view;** have an eye to, have every intention, have a mind *or* notion, have half a mind *or* notion, have a good *or* great mind *or* notion

6 **plan, plan on, figure on,** plan for *or* out, count on, figure out, calculate, calculate on, reckon, reckon *or* bargain on, bargain for, bank on *or* upon, make book on <nf>, expect, foresee

7 **premeditate, calculate, preresolve, predetermine,** predeliberate, preconsider, direct oneself, forethink, work out beforehand; plan; plot, scheme

ADJS 8 **intentional, intended,** proposed, purposed, telic, **projected, designed,** of design, aimed, aimed at, **meant, purposeful,** purposive, **willful, voluntary, deliberate;** deliberated; considered, studied, advised, **calculated, contemplated, envisaged,** envisioned, meditated, **conscious,** knowing, witting; planned; teleological

9 **premeditated, predeliberated,** preconsidered, predetermined, preresolved, prepense, aforethought

ADVS 10 **intentionally, purposely,** purposefully, purposively, pointedly, **on purpose,** with purpose, with a view *or* an eye to, **deliberately, designedly, willfully, voluntarily,** of one's own accord *or* one's own free will; **wittingly, consciously, knowingly; advisedly, calculatedly,** contemplatedly, meditatedly, premeditatedly, **with premeditation, with intent,** with full intent, **by design,** with one's eyes open; with malice aforethought, in cold blood

PREPS, CONJS 11 **for, to; in order to** *or* **that,** so, **so that, so as to; for the purpose of,** to the end that, with the intent that, with the view of, with a view to, with an eye to; in contemplation of, in consideration of; **for the sake of**

381 PLAN

NOUNS 1 **plan, scheme, design,** method, **program,** device, contrivance, game, envisagement, conception, enterprise, **idea, notion;** organization, rationalization, systematization, schematization; charting, mapping, graphing, blueprinting; **planning,** calculation, figuring; planning function; long-range planning, long-range *or* long-term plan; **master plan,** the picture *and* the big picture <nf>; approach, attack, plan of attack; way, procedure; **arrangement,** prearrangement, system, disposition, layout, setup, lineup; **schedule,** timetable, time-scheme, time frame; agenda, order of the day; deadline; plan of work; **schema,** schematism, scheme of arrangement; blueprint, **guideline, guidelines,** program of action; methodology; working plan, ground plan, tactical plan, strategic plan; tactics, **strategy,** game plan <nf>; mission statement; contingency plan; operations research; **intention** 380; forethought, foresight 961; back room

2 **project, projection, scheme; proposal,** prospectus, proposition; scenario, **game plan** <nf>

3 **diagram, plot, chart, blueprint,** graph, bar graph, pie *or* circle graph *or* chart, area graph; flow diagram, flow chart; **table; design, pattern,** copy <old>, cartoon; **sketch, draft, drawing,** working drawing, rough; *brouillon* and *ébauche* and *esquisse* <Fr>; **outline, delineation,** skeleton, figure, profile; house plan, ground plan, ichnography; elevation, projection; **map, chart** 159.5

4 **policy,** polity, principles, guiding principles; **procedure,** course, line, plan of action; creed 953.3; **platform,** party line; position paper; formula; rule

5 **intrigue,** web of intrigue, **plot, scheme,** deep-laid plot *or* scheme, underplot, game *or* little game <nf>, secret plan, trick, stratagem, finesse, method; counterplot; **conspiracy,** confederacy, covin, complot <old>, cabal; **complicity, collusion, connivance; artifice** 415.3; **contrivance,** contriving; **scheming,** schemery, plotting; finagling <nf>, **machination,** manipulation, **maneuvering,** engineering, rigging; frame-up <nf>; wire-pulling <nf>; inside job; expedient, last resort, eleventh-hour rescue; way out, loophole

6 **planner, designer,** deviser, contriver, framer, projector; enterpriser, entrepreneur; intrapreneur; organizer, promoter, developer, engineer; expediter, facilitator, animator; **policymaker, decision-maker; architect, tactician, strategist, strategian,** mastermind, brains <nf>

7 **schemer, plotter,** counterplotter, finagler <nf>,

Machiavelli; **intriguer,** *intrigant* and *intrigante* <Fr>, cabalist; **conspirer, conspirator,** coconspirator, **conniver;** maneuverer, machinator, operator <nf>, opportunist, pot-hunter, exploiter; wire-puller <nf>

VERBS **8 plan, devise, contrive, design,** frame, shape, cast, concert, lay plans; organize, rationalize, systematize, schematize, methodize, configure, pull together, sort out; **arrange,** prearrange, make arrangements, set up, work up, work out; **schedule;** lay down a plan, shape *or* mark out a course; program; **calculate,** figure; **project,** cut out, make a projection, forecast <old>, plan ahead; intend 380.4

9 plot, scheme, intrigue, be up to something; **conspire, connive,** collude, complot <old>, cabal; **hatch, hatch up,** cook up <nf>, brew, concoct, hatch *or* lay a plot; **maneuver,** machinate, finesse, operate <nf>, engineer, rig, wangle <nf>, angle, finagle <nf>; frame *or* frame up <nf>; counterplot, countermine

10 plot; map, chart 159.11, **blueprint; diagram,** graph; **sketch,** sketch in *or* out, draw up a plan; map out, plot out, **lay out,** set out, mark out; lay off, mark off; design a prototype

11 outline, line, **delineate,** chalk out, brief; **sketch, draft,** trace; block in *or* out; rough in, rough out; chalk out

ADJS **12 planned, devised, designed,** shaped, set, **blueprinted,** charted, mapped, **contrived; plotted;** premeditated; arranged; organized, rationalized, systematized, schematized, methodized, strategized; worked out, calculated, figured; **projected; scheduled,** on the agenda, in the works, in the pipeline <nf>, on the calendar, on the docket, on the anvil, on the carpet, on the tapis <old>, *sur le tapis* <Fr>; tactical, **strategic**

13 scheming, calculating, designing, contriving, plotting, intriguing; resourceful; manipulatory, **manipulative;** opportunist, **opportunistic;** Machiavellian, Byzantine; **conniving,** connivent <old>, conspiring, conspiratorial, collusive; stratagemical

14 schematic, diagrammatic

382 PURSUIT

NOUNS **1 pursuit,** pursuing, pursuance, prosecution <old>; **quest,** seeking, hunting, searching; **following,** follow, follow-up; tracking, trailing, tracking down, dogging, hounding, shadowing, stalking, tailing <nf>; **chase,** hot pursuit; hue and cry; all points bulletin *or* APB, dragnet, manhunt

2 hunting, gunning, shooting, venery, cynegetics, sport, sporting; **hunt, chase,** chevy *or* chivy <Brit>, *shikar* <India>, coursing; blood sport; fox hunt, fox hunting; hawking, falconry; stalking, still hunt

3 fishing, fishery; **angling,** piscatology <old>, halieutics; fly-fishing, saltwater fishing, ice fishing, competitive fishing

4 pursuer, pursuant, **chaser,** follower; hunter, quester, **seeker,** tracker, trailer, tail <nf>

5 hunter, huntsman, sportsman, **Nimrod;** huntress, sportswoman; stalker; courser; trapper; big game hunter, *shikari* <India>, white hunter; jacklighter, jacker; gamekeeper; beater, whipper-in; falconer; gundog; poacher

6 fisher, fisherman, angler, *piscator* <L>, piscatorian, piscatorialist; Waltonian; dibber, dibbler, troller, trawler, trawlerman, dragger, jacker, jigger, bobber, guddler, tickler, drifter, drift netter, whaler, clam digger, lobsterman, etc

7 quarry, game, prey, venery, beasts of venery, victim, the hunted; kill; big game, small game

VERBS **8 pursue,** prosecute <old>, **follow,** follow up, **go after,** take out *or* off after <nf>, bay after, run after, run in pursuit of, make after, go in pursuit of; raise the hunt, raise the hue and cry, hollo after; **chase, give chase,** chivy; hound, dog; **quest,** quest after, **seek,** seek out, hunt, **search** 937.29,30, send out a search party; trawl

9 hunt, go hunting, hunt down, chase, run, *shikar* <India>, sport; engage in a blood sport; shoot, gun; course; ride to hounds, follow the hounds; **track,** trail; **stalk,** prowl after, still-hunt; poach; hound, dog; hawk, falcon; fowl; flush, start; drive, beat; jack, jacklight; trap, ensnare

10 fish, go fishing, **angle;** cast one's hook *or* net; bait the hook; shrimp, whale, clam, grig, still-fish, fly-fish, troll, bob, dap, dib *or* dibble, gig, jig, etc; reel in

ADJS **11 pursuing,** pursuant, following; **questing,** in quest of, **seeking, searching** 938.37; **in pursuit,** in hot pursuit, in full cry, tailing, chasing, trailing; hunting, cynegetic, fishing, piscatory, piscatorial, halieutic, halieutical

PREPS **12 after, in pursuit** *or* **pursuance of,** in search of, on the lookout for, in the market for, out for; on the track *or* trail of, on the scent of

INTERJS **13** <hunting cries> view halloo!, yoicks! <old>; so-ho!, tallyho!, tallyho over!, tallyho back!

383 ROUTE, PATH

NOUNS **1 route, path, way, itinerary, course,** track, run, line, road; trajectory, traject, *trajet* <Fr>; direction; circuit, tour, orbit; walk, beat, round; trade route, traffic lane, **sea lane,** shipping lane, **air lane,** flight path; path of least resistance, primrose path, garden path; shortcut, detour; line of advance, line of retreat

2 **path, track, trail, pathway,** footpath, footway, *piste* <Fr>; walkway, catwalk, skybridge *or* skywalk *or* flying bridge *or* walkway; **sidewalk, walk,** fastwalk, *trottoir* <Fr>, foot pavement <Brit>; boardwalk; hiking trail; public walk, promenade, esplanade, alameda, parade, *prado* <Sp>, mall; towpath *or* towing path; bridle path *or* road *or* trail *or* way; bicycle path; berm; run, runway; beaten track *or* path, rut, groove; garden path

3 **passageway, pass, passage, defile; avenue, artery; corridor, aisle, alley, lane; channel, conduit** 239.1; ford, ferry, traject, *trajet* <Fr>; opening, aperture; access, right of way, approach, inlet 189.5; exit, outlet 190.9; connection, communication; covered way, gallery, arcade, portico, colonnade, cloister, ambulatory; underpass, overpass, flyover <Brit>; tunnel, railroad tunnel, vehicular tunnel; junction, interchange, **intersection** 170.2

4 **byway, bypath,** byroad, by-lane, bystreet, side road, side street; **bypass, detour,** roundabout way; bypaths and crooked ways, side path; back way, back stairs, back door, side door; back road, back street

5 **road** <see list>, highway, roadway, carriageway <Brit>, right-of-way; **street** <see list>

6 **pavement,** paving; macadam, blacktop, bitumen, asphalt, tarmacadam, tarmac, tarvia, bituminous macadam; cement, concrete; tile, brick, paving brick; stone, paving stone, pavestone, flag, flagstone, flagging; cobblestone, cobble; road metal <Brit>; gravel; washboard; curbstone, kerbstone <Brit>, edgestone; curb, kerb <Brit>, curbing; gutter, kennel <Brit>

7 **railway** <see list>, **railroad,** rail, line, track, trackage, railway *or* railroad *or* rail line; subway; junction; terminus, terminal, the end of the line; roadway, roadbed, embankment; bridge, trestle

8 **cableway,** ropeway, wireway, wire ropeway, cable *or* rope railway, funicular *or* funicular railway; monorail; *téléphérique* <Fr>, telpher, telpherway, telpher ropeway, telpher line *or* railway; ski lift, chair lift, gondola, aerial tramway, tram

9 **bridge, span, viaduct;** cantilever bridge, clapper bridge, drawbridge, footbridge, pontoon bridge, rope bridge, skybridge *or* skywalk *or* flying bridge *or* walkway, suspension bridge, toll bridge, floating bridge, covered bridge, aqueduct; overpass, overcrossing, overbridge *or* flyover <Brit>; stepping-stone, stepstone, catwalk; Bifrost

10 **roads, highways**

access road
arterial highway
artery
Autobahn <Ger>
autoroute <Fr>
autostrada <Ital>
beltway *or* circumferential *or* ring road *or* belt highway
big road <S US>
busway
camino real <Sp>
causeway
country road
dirt road
divided *or* dual highway
expressway
freeway
highroad <Brit>
interstate highway
king's *or* queen's highway
limited access highway
main road *or* main drag <nf>
motorway <Brit>
parkway
pavé <Fr>
pike
post road
private road
shunpike
skyway
speedway
superhighway
switchback
throughway *or* thruway
toll road
trunk road
turnpike

11 **streets, alleys**

alley *or* alleyway
avenue
blind alley
boulevard
close <Brit>
court
crescent
cul-de-sac
dead-end street
drive
lane
mews
one-way street
place
row
thoroughfare
vennel <Scot>
wynd <Scot>

12 **railways**

cable railway
cog railway
electric railway
elevated railway *or* elevated *or* el *or* L <nf>
funicular railway
gravity-operated railway *or* gravity railroad
inclined railroad
light-rail rapid-transit system
mainline
métro <Fr>
monorail
rack *or* rack-and-pinion railway
scenic railroad
subway
tram *or* tramline *or* tramway *or* tramroad <Brit>
trolley *or* streetcar line
trunk *or* trunk line
underground *or* tube <Brit>

384 MANNER, MEANS

NOUNS 1 **manner, way,** wise, **means, mode,** modality, form <old>, **fashion, style,** tone, guise <old>; **method,** methodology, **system;** algorithm <math>; **approach,** attack, tack; **technique, procedure, process,** proceeding, measures, steps, course, practice; order; lines, line, line of action; *modus operandi* <L>, mode of operation *or* MO, manner of working, mode of procedure; **routine;** the way of, the how, the how-to, the drill <Brit>

2 **means,** ways, **ways and means,** means to an end; **wherewithal,** wherewith; funds 728.14; **resources,** disposable resources, capital 728.15; bankroll <nf>; stock in trade, inventory, stock, supply 386;

power, capacity, ability 18.2; power base, constituency, backing, support; recourses, resorts, devices; tools of the trade, tricks of the trade, bag of tricks

3 **instrumentality, agency;** machinery, **mechanism,** modality; gadgetry <nf>; mediation, going between, intermediation, service; **expedient,** recourse, resort, device 994.2

4 **instrument, tool, implement, appliance,** device; contrivance, makeshift, lever, mechanism; **vehicle, organ; agent** 576; medium, mediator, intermedium, intermediary, intermediate, interagent, liaison, go-between 576.4; expediter, facilitator, animator; midwife, servant, slave, handmaid, handmaiden, *ancilla* <L>; **cat's-paw, puppet, dummy, pawn,** creature, minion, stooge <nf>; stalking horse; toy, plaything; gadget, contrivance; dupe 358

VERBS 5 **use, utilize,** adopt, effect; **approach, attack;** proceed, practice, go about; routinize

6 **find means, find a way,** provide *or* have the wherewithal, develop a method; enable, facilitate; get by hook or by crook, obtain by fair means or foul; beg, borrow, or steal; think laterally; network

7 be instrumental, **serve, subserve,** serve one's purpose, come in handy, stand in good stead, fill the bill; minister to, act for, act in the interests of, **promote, advance, forward, assist,** facilitate; mediate, go between; liaise

ADJS 8 modal; **instrumental, implemental;** agential, agentive, agentival; effective, efficacious; **useful,** utile, handy, employable, **serviceable; helpful,** conducive, forwarding, favoring, promoting, assisting, facilitating; subservient, ministering, ministerial; mediating, mediatorial, intermediary

ADVS 9 **how, in what way** *or* **manner,** by what mode *or* means; to what extent; in what condition; by what name; at what price; after this fashion, in this way, in such wise, along these lines; **thus, so,** just so, thus and so; as, like, on the lines of

10 **anyhow, anyway,** anywise, anyroad <Brit nf>, in any way, **by any means, by any manner of means;** in any event, at any rate, leastways <nf>, in any case; **nevertheless, nonetheless, however, regardless,** irregardless <nf>; at all, nohow <nf>

11 **somehow, in some way,** in some way or other, someway <nf>, by some means, **somehow or other,** somehow or another, in one way or another, in some such way, after a fashion; no matter how, **by hook or by crook,** by fair means or foul

12 herewith, therewith, wherewith, wherewithal; whereby, thereby, hereby

PREPS 13 **by means of, by** *or* **through the agency of,** by *or* through the good offices of, through the instrumentality of, by the aid of, thanks to, by use of, **by way of,** by dint of, by the act of, through the medium of, by *or* in virtue of, at the hand of, at the hands of; **with, through,** by, per

PHRS 14 it isn't what you do, it's how you do it; there's more than one way to skin a cat

385 PROVISION, EQUIPMENT

NOUNS 1 **provision,** providing; **equipment, accouterment,** fitting out, outfitting; **supply,** supplying, finding; **furnishing,** furnishment; chandlery, **retailing, selling** 734.2; **logistics;** procurement 472.1; investment, endowment, subvention, subsidy, subsidization; provisioning, victualing, purveyance, catering; armament; resupply, replenishment, reinforcement; supply line, line of supply; **preparation** 405

2 **provisions, supplies** 386.1; provender 10.5; **merchandise** 735; basics

3 **accommodations,** accommodation, facilities; **lodgings;** bed, board, full board; **room and board,** bed and board; **subsistence,** keep, fostering

4 **equipment,** matériel, equipage, munitions; **furniture, furnishings,** furnishments <old>; **fixtures, fittings, appointments, accouterments, appurtenances,** trappings, installations, plumbing; **appliances,** utensils, **conveniences; outfit, apparatus, rig,** machinery; stock-in-trade; **plant,** facility, facilities; paraphernalia, harness, things, **gear, stuff** <nf>, impedimenta <pl>, **tackle;** rigging; armament, munition; **kit,** duffel, effects, personal effects

5 **harness,** caparison, trappings, **tack,** tackle

6 **provider, supplier,** furnisher; donor 478.11; patron; **purveyor,** provisioner, **caterer,** victualer, sutler; *vivandier* or *vivandière* <Fr>; chandler, retailer, merchant 730.2; commissary, commissariat, quartermaster, shopkeeper, storekeeper, merchant, stock clerk, steward, manciple; grocer, vintner; procurer; megastore

VERBS 7 **provide, supply,** find, dish up *and* rustle up <nf>, **furnish;** accommodate; invest, endow, fund, subsidize; donate, give, afford, contribute, kick in <nf>, yield, present 478.12; make available; stock, store; provide for, make provision *or* due provision for; prepare 405.6; support, maintain, keep; fill, fill up; replenish, restock, recruit

8 **equip, furnish, outfit,** gear, **prepare, fit,** fit up *or* out, fix up <nf>, **rig,** rig up *or* out, **turn out,** appoint, accouter, clothe, dress; arm, heel <nf>, munition; man, staff

9 **provision,** provender, cater, victual, plenish <old>, serve, cook for; provide a grubstake <nf>; **board,** feed; forage; fuel, gas, gas up, fill up, top off, coal, oil, bunker; **purvey,** sell 734.8

10 accommodate, furnish accommodations; house, lodge 225.10; **put up,** board

11 make a living, earn a living *or* livelihood, **make** *or* **earn one's keep**

12 support oneself, make one's way; **make ends meet, keep body and soul together, keep the wolf from the door,** keep *or* hold one's head above water, keep afloat; **survive, subsist, cope, eke out,** make out, scrape along, manage, get by

ADJS **13 provided, supplied, furnished,** provisioned, purveyed, catered; invested, endowed; **equipped, fitted,** fitted out, outfitted, rigged, accoutered; armed, heeled <nf>; staffed, manned; readied, in place, **prepared** 405.16

14 well-provided, well-supplied, well-furnished, well-stocked, well-found; **well-equipped, well-fitted,** well-appointed; well-armed

386 STORE, SUPPLY

NOUNS **1 store, hoard, treasure,** treasury; plenty, plenitude, abundance, cornucopia; heap, mass, stack, pile, dump, rick; **collection, accumulation,** cumulation, **amassment,** budget, **stockpile; backlog;** repertory, repertoire; stock-in-trade; **inventory, stock,** supply on hand; lock, stock, and barrel; **stores, supplies, provisions,** provisionment, rations; larder, commissariat, commissary; munitions; matériel; material, materials 1054

2 supply, fund, resource, resources; means, assets, liquid assets, balance, pluses <nf>, black-ink items, financial resources, **capital,** capital goods, capitalization, available means *or* resources *or* funds, cash flow, stock in trade; venture capital; backing, support; grist, grist for the mill; holdings, property 471; labor resources

3 reserve, reserves, reservoir, resource; proved *or* proven reserve; **stockpile, cache,** backup, reserve supply, store, standby, safeguard, something in reserve *or* in hand, something to fall back on, reserve fund, emergency funds, **nest egg, savings,** sinking fund; proved reserves; backlog, unexpended balance; ace in the hole <nf>, a card *or* ace up one's sleeve; spare *or* replacement part

4 source of supply, source, staple, resource; well, fountain, fount, font <old>, spring, wellspring; mine, **gold mine, bonanza,** luau <nf>; quarry, lode, vein; oilfield, oil well, oil rig; cornucopia

5 storage, stowage; preservation, conservation, safekeeping, warehousing; cold storage, cold store, dry storage, dead storage; storage space, shelf-room; custody, guardianship 1007.2; sequestration, escrow

6 storehouse, storeroom, stockroom, box room <Brit>, lumber room, store, storage, **depository, repository,** conservatory <old>, reservoir, repertory, depot, supply depot, supply base, magazine, *magasin* <Fr>, warehouse, megastore, godown; bonded warehouse, entrepôt; dock; hold, cargo dock; attic, loft, cellar, basement; closet, cupboard; wine cellar, larder; shed, stable, garage; **treasury,** treasure house, treasure room, exchequer, coffers; bank, vault 729.13, strongroom, strongbox; **archives, library,** stack room; armory, arsenal, dump; lumberyard; drawer, shelf; bin, bunker, bay, crib; rack, rick; vat, tank; elevator; crate, box; chest, **locker,** hutch; bookcase, stack; sail locker, chain locker, lazaret, lazaretto, glory hole

7 garner, granary, grain bin, elevator, grain elevator, **silo;** mow, haymow, hayloft, hayrick; crib, corncrib

8 larder, pantry, buttery <nf>; spence <Brit nf>, stillroom <Brit>; root cellar; dairy, dairy house *or* room

9 museum; gallery, art gallery, picture gallery, pinacotheca; salon; Metropolitan Museum, National Gallery, Museum of Modern Art, Guggenheim Museum, Tate Gallery, British Museum, Louvre, Hermitage, Prado, Uffizi, Rijksmuseum; museology, curatorship

VERBS **10 store, stow,** lay in store; **lay in,** lay in a supply *or* stock *or* store, store away, stow away, **put away, lay away,** put *or* lay by, pack away, bundle away, lay down, stow down, salt down *or* away *and* sock away *and* squirrel away <nf>; **deposit,** reposit, lodge; **cache,** stash <nf>, bury away; **bank,** coffer, hutch <old>; warehouse, reservoir; file, file away

11 store up, stock up, lay up, put up, **save up,** hoard up, treasure up, garner up, **heap up,** pile up, build up a stock *or* an inventory, provision; **accumulate,** cumulate, **collect, amass, stockpile;** backlog; garner, gather into barns; **hoard,** treasure, save, keep, hold, squirrel, squirrel away; hide, secrete 346.7

12 reserve, save, conserve, keep, retain, husband, husband one's resources, keep *or* hold back, withhold; **keep in reserve,** keep in store, keep on hand, keep by one; sequester, put in escrow; **preserve** 397.7; **set** *or* **put aside,** set *or* put apart, put *or* lay *or* set by; save up, save to fall back upon, keep as a nest egg, **save for a rainy day,** provide for *or* against a rainy day

13 have in store *or* **reserve,** have to fall back upon, have something to draw on, have something laid by, have something laid by for a rainy day, have something up one's sleeve

ADJS **14 stored, accumulated,** amassed, laid up, stocked; gathered, garnered, collected, heaped, piled; **stockpiled;** backlogged; **hoarded,** treasured

15 reserved, preserved, saved, conserved, put by *or* aside, kept, retained, held, filed, withheld, held back, kept *or* held in reserve; in storage, warehoused, mothballed; bottled, pickled, canned, refrigerated, frozen; spare

ADVS **16** **in store,** in stock, in supply, **on hand**

17 **in reserve,** back, aside, by

387 USE

NOUNS **1** **use, employment,** utilization, employ <old>, **usage; exercise, exertion,** active use; good use; ill use, wrong use, misuse 389; hard use, hard *or* rough usage; hard wear, heavy duty; **application,** appliance, deployment; expenditure, expending, using up, exhausting, dissipation, dissipating, **consumption** 388

2 **usage, treatment, handling,** management; way *or* means of dealing; stewardship, custodianship, guardianship, care

3 **utility, usefulness, usability, use,** utilizability, avail, good, advantage, benefit, **serviceability,** service, **helpfulness,** functionality, profitability, applicability, availability, **practicability,** practicality, practical utility, operability, **effectiveness,** efficacy, efficiency; readiness, availability; instrumentality; ultimate purpose

4 **benefit, use, service, avail, profit, advantage,** point, percentage *and* mileage <nf>, what's in it for one <nf>, convenience; interest, behalf, behoof; **value, worth,** fruitfulness; commonweal, public good

5 **function, use, purpose,** role, part, point, end use, immediate purpose, ultimate purpose, operational purpose, operation; work, duty, office

6 **functionalism, utilitarianism;** pragmatism, pragmaticism; functional design, functional furniture *or* housing, etc

7 <law terms> usufruct, imperfect usufruct, perfect usufruct, right of use, user, enjoyment of property; *jus primae noctis* <L>, *droit du seigneur* <Fr>; disposal; possession

8 **utilization,** using, making use of, making instrumental, using as a means *or* tool; **employment,** employing; **management,** manipulation, handling, working, operation, **exploitation,** recruiting, recruitment, calling upon, calling into service; mobilization, mobilizing

9 **user,** employer; **consumer,** enjoyer, exploiter; customer, client

VERBS **10** **use, utilize, make use of,** do with; **employ,** practice, ply, work, manage, handle, manipulate, operate, **wield,** play, exercise; **have** *or* **enjoy the use of;** exercise, **exert**

11 **apply, put to use** *or* **good use,** carry out, put into execution, **put into practice** *or* **operation,** put in force, enforce; bring to bear upon

12 **treat, handle,** manage, use, **deal with, cope with,** come to grips with, take on, tackle <nf>, contend with, do with; steward, care for

13 **spend,** consume, expend, **pass,** employ, **put in;** devote, bestow, give to *or* give over to, devote *or* consecrate *or* dedicate to; while, while away, wile; dissipate, **exhaust, use up**

14 **avail oneself of, make use of, resort to, put to use** *or* **good use,** have recourse to, **turn to,** look to, recur to, refer to, take to <nf>, betake oneself to; revert to, fall back on *or* upon, rely on; convert *or* turn to use, put in *or* into requisition, press *or* enlist into service, lay under contribution, impress, **call upon,** call *or* bring into play, draw on *or* upon, recruit, muster; pick someone's brains

15 **take advantage of, avail oneself of, make the most of,** use to the full, make good use of, maximize, improve, **turn to use** *or* **profit** *or* **account** *or* **good account,** turn to advantage *or* good advantage, use to advantage, put to advantage, find one's account *or* advantage in; improve the occasion 843.8; **profit by, benefit from,** reap the benefit of; **exploit, capitalize on, make capital of,** make a good thing of <nf>, make hay <nf>, **trade on,** cash in on <nf>, play on, play off against; make the best of, make a virtue of necessity, "make necessity a virtue"—Quintilian

16 <take unfair advantage of> **exploit, take advantage of, use,** make use of, **use for one's own ends;** make a paw *or* cat's-paw of, make a pawn of, sucker *and* play for a sucker <nf>; **manipulate,** work on, work upon, stroke, play on *or* upon; play both ends against the middle; **impose upon,** presume upon; use ill, ill-use, abuse, misuse 389.4; batten on; milk, bleed, bleed white <nf>; drain, suck the blood of *or* from, suck dry; exploit one's position, feather one's nest <nf>, **profiteer;** abuse

17 **avail,** be of use, be of service, serve, **suffice, do,** answer, **answer** *or* **serve one's purpose,** serve one's need, fill the bill *and* do the trick <nf>, suit one's purpose; bestead <old>, **stand one in stead** *or* **good stead,** be handy, come in handy, stand one in hand <nf>; advantage, be of advantage *or* service to; **profit, benefit,** pay *and* pay off <nf>, give good returns, yield a profit, bear fruit

ADJS **18** **useful,** employable, of use, of service, **serviceable,** commodious <old>; good for; **helpful,** of help 449.21; **advantageous, to one's advantage** *or* **profit, profitable,** remuneratory, bankable, beneficial 999.12; **practical,** banausic, pragmatical, **functional, utilitarian,** of general utility *or* application, commodious; fitting, proper, appropriate, expedient 995.5; well-used, well-thumbed; reusable, recyclable

19 **using, exploitive,** exploitative, manipulative, manipulatory

20 **handy, convenient; available,** accessible, **ready, at hand,** to hand, **on hand,** on tap, on deck <nf>, on call, at one's call *or* beck and call, at one's elbow, at one's fingertips, just around the corner, at one's disposal; versatile, adaptable, all-around <nf>, of all work; crude but effective, quick and dirty <nf>; to the purpose; fast-food, convenience

21 **effectual, effective,** active, efficient, efficacious, operative; instrumental; subsidiary, subservient

22 **valuable,** of value, all for the best, all to the good, **profitable,** bankable, yielding a return, well-spent, **worthwhile,** rewarding; gainful, remunerative, moneymaking, lucrative

23 **usable, utilizable; applicable,** appliable, employable, serviceable; practical, operable; **reusable,** recyclable; **exploitable;** manipulable, pliable, compliant 433.12; at one's service

24 **used, employed,** exercised, exerted, **applied;** previously owned *or* pre-owned, secondhand 842.18

25 **in use, in practice,** in force, in effect, in service, in operation, in commission

ADVS 26 **usefully,** to good use; **profitably, advantageously, to advantage,** to profit, to good effect; effectually, effectively, efficiently; serviceably, functionally, **practically;** handily, conveniently; by use of, by dint of

388 CONSUMPTION

NOUNS 1 **consumption, consuming, using** *or* **eating up;** burning up; absorption, assimilation, digestion, ingestion, **expenditure,** expending, spending; squandering, wastefulness 486.1; finishing; **depletion,** drain, exhausting, **exhaustion,** impoverishment; **waste,** wastage, wasting away, erosion, ablation, wearing down, wearing away, attrition; throwing away

2 **consumable, consumable item** *or* **goods;** nonrenewable *or* nonreusable *or* nonrecyclable item *or* resource; **throwaway,** throwaway item, disposable goods *or* item; throwaway culture *or* psychology, instant obsolescence

VERBS 3 **consume, spend, expend, use up;** absorb, assimilate, digest, ingest, eat, **eat up,** swallow, swallow up, gobble, gobble up; burn up; **finish,** finish off; **exhaust, deplete,** impoverish, drain, drain of resources; suck dry, bleed white <nf>, suck one's blood; wear away, erode, erode away, ablate; waste away; **throw away, squander** 486.3

4 **be consumed, be used up,** waste; **run out, give out,** peter out <nf>; run dry, dry up

ADJS 5 **used up, consumed,** eaten up, burnt up; finished, gone; unreclaimable, irreplaceable; nonrenewable, nonrecyclable, nonreusable; **spent,** exhausted, effete, dissipated, depleted, impoverished, drained, worn-out; worn away, eroded, ablated; **wasted** 486.9

6 **consumable, expendable,** spendable; exhaustible; replaceable; disposable, throwaway, no-deposit, no-deposit-no-return

389 MISUSE

NOUNS 1 **misuse, misusage, abuse, wrong use; misemployment, misapplication; mishandling,** mismanagement, poor stewardship; corrupt administration, malversation, breach of public trust, maladministration; diversion, defalcation, misappropriation, conversion, **embezzlement,** peculation, pilfering, fraud; perversion, prostitution; profanation, violation, pollution, fouling, befoulment, desecration, defilement, debasement; malpractice, abuse of office, misconduct, malfeasance, misfeasance

2 **mistreatment, ill-treatment, maltreatment, ill-use,** ill-usage, **abuse,** verbal abuse; **molesting, molestation,** child abuse *or* molestation; **violation,** outrage, violence, injury, atrocity; cruel and unusual punishment; overuse

3 **persecution,** oppression, harrying, hounding, tormenting, bashing <nf>, harassment, nobbling <Brit nf>, victimization; **witch-hunting,** witch-hunt, red-baiting <nf>, McCarthyism; open season, piling on <nf>

VERBS 4 **misuse, misemploy, abuse, misapply; mishandle,** mismanage, maladminister; divert, misappropriate, expropriate, convert, defalcate <old>, embezzle, defraud, pilfer, peculate, feather one's nest <nf>; pervert, prostitute; profane, violate, pollute, foul, foul one's own nest, spoil, befoul, desecrate, defile, debase; verbally abuse, bad-mouth; misuse *or* abuse power

5 **mistreat, maltreat, ill-treat, ill-use, abuse,** injure, **molest;** do wrong to, do wrong by; outrage, do violence to, do one's worst to; mishandle, manhandle; buffet, batter, bruise, **savage,** manhandle, maul, knock about, rough, rough up; pollute; overuse, overwork, overtax

6 <nf terms> **screw,** screw over, shaft, stiff, give the short *or* the shitty end of the stick, fuck, fuck over

7 **persecute,** oppress, **torment,** victimize, play cat and mouse with, **harass,** get *or* keep after, get *or* keep at, harry, hound, beset, nobble <Brit nf>; pursue, hunt

ADVS 8 on one's back *and* on one's case *and* in one's face <nf>

390 DISUSE

NOUNS 1 **disuse,** disusage, desuetude; **nonuse, nonemployment; abstinence, abstention;** nonprevalence, unprevalence; **obsolescence,** obsoleteness, obsoletism, obsoletion, planned obsolescence; superannuation, retirement, pensioning off; redundancy <Brit>

2 **discontinuance,** cessation, desisting, desistance; **abdication,** relinquishment, forebearance, resignation, renunciation, renouncement, abjurement, abjuration; waiver, nonexercise; abeyance, suspension, back burner *and* cold storage <nf>, limbo; **phaseout, abandonment** 370

3 **discard, discarding,** jettison, deep six <nf>, disposal, dumping, **waste disposal,** solid waste disposal, burning, incineration, ocean burning *or* incineration; compacting; **scrapping, junking** <nf>; removal, elimination 773.2; **rejection** 372; **reject,** throwaway, castaway, castoff, remains, rejectamenta <pl>; **refuse** 391.4

VERBS 4 **cease to use; abdicate, relinquish; discontinue, disuse,** quit, stop, drop <nf>, give up, give over, lay off <nf>, **phase out,** phase down, put behind one, let go, leave off, come off <nf>, cut out, desist, desist from, have done with; waive <old>, resign, renounce, abjure; nol-pros, not pursue *or* proceed with; decommission, put out of commission

5 **not use, do without,** dispense with, **let alone,** not touch, hold off; **abstain, refrain,** forgo, forbear, spare, waive; keep *or* hold back, reserve, save, save up, sock *or* squirrel away, tuck away, put under the mattress, hoard; keep in hand, have up one's sleeve; see the last of

6 **put away,** lay away, **put aside,** lay *or* set *or* wave *or* cast *or* push aside, sideline <nf>, put *or* lay *or* set by; stow, store 386.10; **pigeonhole, shelve,** put on the shelf, put in mothballs; **table,** lay on the table; table the motion, pass to the order of the day; put on hold *or* on the back burner <nf>, postpone, delay 845.8

7 **discard, reject, throw away, throw out,** chuck *or* chuck away *and* shit-can *and* eighty-six <nf>, cast, cast off *or* away *or* aside; **get rid of,** get quit of, get shut *or* shet of <nf>, rid oneself of, shrug off, **dispose of,** slough, **dump, ditch** <nf>, **jettison, throw** *or* **heave** *or* **toss overboard,** deep-six <nf>, throw out the window, throw *or* cast to the dogs, cast to the winds; sell off *or* out; throw over, jilt; part with, give away; throw to the wolves, write off, walk away from, **abandon** 370.5; remove, **eliminate** 772.5

8 **scrap, junk** <nf>, consign to the scrap heap, throw on the junk heap <nf>; superannuate, retire, pension off, put out to pasture *or* grass

9 **obsolesce,** fall into disuse, go out, pass away; be superseded; superannuate

ADJS 10 **disused, abandoned,** deserted, **discontinued,** done with, derelict; out, **out of use;** old; relinquished, resigned, renounced, abjured; decommissioned, out of commission; **outworn,** worn-out, past use, not worth saving; **obsolete,** obsolescent, life-expired, superannuated, superannuate; superseded, outdated, out-of-date, outmoded, desuete; retired, pensioned off; on the shelf; written off <nf>; antique, antiquated, old-fashioned, old

11 **discarded,** rejected, **castoff,** castaway, scrapped, junked

12 **unused,** unutilized, **unemployed,** unapplied, unexercised; in abeyance, suspended; waived; **unspent,** unexpended, unconsumed; held back, held out, put by, put aside, saved, held in reserve, in hand, spare, to spare, extra, reserve; stored 386.14; untouched, unhandled; untapped; untrodden, unbeaten; **new,** original, pristine, virgin, fresh, fresh off the assembly line, mint, in mint condition, factory-fresh; underused

391 USELESSNESS

NOUNS 1 **uselessness,** inutility; **needlessness,** unnecessity; unserviceability, **unusability,** unemployability, inoperativeness, inoperability, disrepair; unhelpfulness; inapplicability, unsuitability, unfitness; functionlessness; otioseness, otiosity; **superfluousness** 993.4

2 **futility,** vanity, emptiness, hollowness; **fruitlessness,** bootlessness, unprofitableness, profitlessness, unprofitability, otiosity, worthlessness, valuelessness; triviality, nugacity, nugaciousness; unproductiveness 891; **ineffectuality,** ineffectiveness, inefficacy 19.3; **impotence** 19.1; effeteness; **pointlessness,** meaninglessness, purposelessness, aimlessness, fecklessness; the absurd, absurdity; inanity, fatuity; vicious circle *or* cycle; **rat race** <nf>

3 **labor in vain,** labor lost, labor for naught; labor of Sisyphus, work of Penelope, Penelope's web; **wild-goose chase,** snipe hunt, bootless errand; waste of labor, waste of breath, waste of time, wasted effort, wasted breath, wasted labor; red herring; fool's errand; blind alley

4 **refuse, waste,** wastage, waste matter, waste stream, waste product, solid waste, liquid waste, wastewater, effluent, sewage, sludge; incinerator ash; industrial waste, hazardous waste, toxic waste, atomic waste, dumping; medical waste;

offal; leavings, sweepings, dust <Brit>, **scraps,** orts; **garbage,** gash <nf>, swill, pig-swill, slop, slops, hogwash <nf>; bilgewater; draff, lees, **dregs** 256.2; **offscourings,** scourings, rinsings, dishwater; parings, raspings, filings, shavings; **scum;** chaff, stubble, husks; weeds, tares; deadwood; rags, bones, wastepaper, shard, potsherd; scrap iron; slag, culm, slack

5 **rubbish, rubble, trash, junk** <nf>, shoddy, riffraff, raff <Brit nf>, **scrap,** dust <Brit>, **debris, litter,** lumber, clamjamfry <Scot>, truck <nf>

6 **trash pile,** rubbish heap, junkheap *and* junkpile <nf>, scrap heap, dustheap, midden, kitchen midden; wasteyard, **junkyard** <nf>, scrapyard, **dump,** dumpsite, garbage dump, landfill, sanitary landfill, toxic waste dump, dumping

7 wastepaper basket, wastebasket, shitcan <nf>; litter basket, litter bin; garbage bag, garbage can, wastebin, dustbin <Brit>, trash can; Dumpster <trademark>, skip <Brit>; waste disposal unit, compactor, garbage grinder <nf>; compost, compost heap

VERBS 8 **be useless, be futile, make no difference, cut no ice; die aborning; labor in vain, go on a wild-goose chase,** run in circles, go around in circles, fall by the wayside, spin one's wheels *and* bang one's head against a brick wall <nf>, beat the air, lash the waves, tilt at windmills, sow the sand, bay at the moon, waste one's effort *or* breath, preach *or* speak to the winds, beat *or* flog a dead horse, roll the stone of Sisyphus, carry coals to Newcastle, milk the ram, milk a he-goat into a sieve, pour water into a sieve, hold a farthing candle to the sun, look for a needle in a haystack, lock the barn door after the horse is stolen; attempt the impossible, spin one's wheels

ADJS 9 **useless,** of no use, no go <nf>; **aimless,** meaningless, **purposeless,** of no purpose, **pointless,** feckless; **unavailing,** of no avail, failed; ineffective, **ineffectual** 19.15; impotent 19.13; **superfluous** 993.17; dud

10 **needless, unnecessary, unessential,** nonessential, **unneeded, uncalled-for,** unrequired; unrecognized, neglected, "born to blush unseen"—Thomas Gray; redundant

11 **worthless, valueless, good-for-nothing,** good-for-naught, no-good *or* NG <nf>, no-account <nf>, dear at any price, worthless as tits on a boar <nf>, not worth a dime *or* a red cent *or* a hill of beans *or* shit *or* bubkes <nf>, not worth the paper it's written on, not worthwhile, not worth having, not worth mentioning *or* speaking of, not worth a thought, not worth a rap *or* a continental *or* a damn, not worth the powder to blow it to hell, not worth the powder and shot, not worth the pains *or* the trouble, of no earthly use, fit for the junkyard <nf>; trivial, penny-ante <nf>, nugatory, nugacious; **junk** *and* **junky** <nf>; **cheap,** shoddy, trashy, **shabby**

12 **fruitless,** gainless, profitless, bootless, otiose, **unprofitable,** unremunerative, nonremunerative; uncommercial; **unrewarding,** rewardless; abortive; barren, sterile, unproductive 890.4

13 **vain, futile,** hollow, empty, "weary, stale, flat, and unprofitable"—Shakespeare, idle, unavailing; absurd; inane, fatuous, fatuitous

14 **unserviceable, unusable,** unemployable, inoperative, inoperable, unworkable; out of order, out of whack *and* on the blink *and* on the fritz <nf>, in disrepair; **unhelpful,** unconducive; inapplicable; unsuitable, unfit; functionless, nonfunctional, otiose, nonutilitarian; kaput

ADVS 15 **uselessly; needlessly,** unnecessarily; bootlessly, fruitlessly; **futilely, vainly;** purposelessly, to little purpose, to no purpose, **aimlessly, pointlessly,** fecklessly

392 IMPROVEMENT

NOUNS 1 **improvement, betterment,** bettering, change *or* turn for the better; melioration, **amelioration;** sea change; **mend,** mending, **amendment; progress,** progression, headway; breakthrough, quantum jump *or* leap; **advance,** advancement; upward mobility; **promotion, furtherance,** preferment; **rise,** ascent, **lift, uplift,** uptick <nf>, upswing, uptrend, upbeat; **increase** 251, upgrade, upping *and* boost *and* pickup <nf>; gentrification; **enhancement, enrichment,** good influence; euthenics, eugenics; **restoration,** revival, retro, recovery

2 **development, refinement,** elaboration, **perfection;** beautification, embellishment; maturation, coming-of-age, ripening, evolution, seasoning

3 **cultivation, culture, refinement, polish,** civility; cultivation of the mind; **civilization;** acculturation; enculturation, socialization; enlightenment, education 928.4

4 **revision,** revise, revisal; revised edition; **emendation, amendment, correction, corrigenda, rectification;** editing, redaction, recension, revampment, blue-penciling; **rewrite,** rewriting, rescript, rescription <old>; **polishing,** touching up, putting on the finishing touches, putting the gloss on, finishing, perfecting, tuning, fine-tuning; retrofitting

5 **reform, reformation;** regeneration 858.2; **transformation; conversion** 858; makeover; reformism, meliorism; gradualism, Fabianism, revisionism; utopianism; progressiveness,

progressivism, progressism; radical reform, extremism, radicalism 611.4; revolution 859; perestroika

6 **reformer,** reformist, meliorist; gradualist, Fabian, revisionist; utopian, utopist; progressive, progressivist, progressionist, progressist; radical, extremist 611.12; revolutionary 860.3

VERBS 7 <get better> **improve, grow better,** look better, show improvement, **mend,** amend <old>, meliorate, ameliorate; **look up** *or* **pick up** *or* **perk up** <nf>; **develop,** shape up; **advance, progress, make progress, make headway, gain,** gain ground, go forward, get *or* go ahead, come on, come along *and* come along nicely <nf>, get along; make strides *or* rapid strides, take off *and* skyrocket <nf>, make up for lost time; straighten up and fly right <nf>; make the grade, graduate

8 **rally,** come about *or* round, **take a favorable turn,** get over <nf>, take a turn for the better, gain strength; come a long way <nf>; **recuperate, recover** 396.20

9 **improve, better,** change for the better, make an improvement; transform, transfigure; vet; improve upon, refine upon, **mend, amend,** emend; meliorate, **ameliorate; advance, promote,** foster, favor, nurture, forward, bring forward; **lift,** elevate, **uplift,** raise, boost <nf>; upgrade; gentrify; **enhance, enrich,** fatten, lard <old>; make one's way, better oneself; be the making of; **reform,** put *or* set straight; reform oneself, turn over a new leaf, mend one's ways, straighten out, straighten oneself out, go straight <nf>; get it together *and* get one's ducks in a row <nf>; **civilize,** acculturate, socialize; enlighten, edify; **educate**

10 **develop,** elaborate; beautify, embellish; **cultivate;** come of age, come into its own, mature, ripen, evolve, season; gild the lily

11 **perfect, touch up,** finish, put on the finishing touches, polish *or* polish up, fine down, fine-tune <nf>, tone up, **brush up, furbish,** furbish up, spruce, **spruce up,** freshen, vamp, vamp up, rub up, brighten up, shine <nf>; retouch; **revive, renovate** 396.17; **repair, fix** 396.14; retrofit; streamline

12 **revise,** redact, recense, **revamp, rewrite,** redraft, **rework,** work over; **emend, amend,** emendate, **rectify,** correct; **edit,** blue-pencil; straighten out

ADJS 13 **improved, bettered;** changed for the better, advanced, ameliorated, enhanced, enriched, touched up; developed, perfected; beautified, embellished; upgraded; gentrified; **reformed; transformed,** transfigured, converted; **cultivated,** cultured, **refined,** polished, civilized; **educated** 927.18

14 **better,** better off, better for, all the better for; before-and-after

15 **improving, bettering;** meliorative, ameliorative, amelioratory, medial; progressive, progressing, advancing, ongoing; mending, **on the mend;** on the lift *or* rise *or* upswing *or* upbeat *or* upgrade <nf>, looking up <nf>

16 **emendatory, corrective;** revisory, revisional; reformatory, reformative, reformational; **reformist,** reformistic, progressive, progressivist, melioristic; gradualistic, Fabian, revisionist; utopian; radical 611.20; revolutionary 860.5

17 **improvable,** ameliorable, corrigible, revisable, perfectible; **emendable** 396.25; curable

393 IMPAIRMENT

NOUNS 1 **impairment, damage, injury, harm,** mischief, scathe, **hurt, detriment,** loss, weakening, sickening; **worsening,** disimprovement; disablement, incapacitation; encroachment, inroad, infringement 214.1; **disrepair, dilapidation,** ruinousness; breakage; **breakdown, collapse,** crash *and* crack-up <nf>; **malfunction,** glitch <nf>; bankruptcy; hurting, spoiling, ruination; sabotage, monkey-wrenching <nf>; mayhem, mutilation, crippling, hobbling, hamstringing, laming, maiming; destruction 395; the skids <nf>

2 **corruption, pollution, contamination,** vitiation, **defilement,** fouling, befouling; **poisoning,** envenoming; infection, festering, suppuration; **perversion,** prostitution, misuse 389; denaturing, adulteration

3 **deterioration, decadence** *or* decadency, **degradation, debasement,** derogation, deformation; **degeneration,** degeneracy, degenerateness, effeteness; etiolation, loss of tone, failure of nerve; depravation, depravedness; **retrogression,** retrogradation, retrocession, **regression;** devolution, involution; demotion 447; downward mobility; **decline,** declination, declension, comedown, **descent,** downtick <nf>, downtrend, downward trend, downturn, depreciation, **decrease** 252, **drop, fall, plunge,** free-fall, falling-off, lessening, slippage, slump, lapse, fading, dying, failing, failure, wane, ebb; loss of morale; shadow of one's former self

4 **waste,** wastage, **consumption;** withering, wasting, wasting away, atrophy, wilting, marcescence; emaciation 270.6

5 **wear,** use, hard wear; **wear and tear; erosion, weathering,** ablation, ravages of time

6 **decay, decomposition, disintegration, dissolution,** resolution, degradation, biodegradation, breakup, disorganization, **corruption, spoilage, dilapidation; corrosion,** oxidation, oxidization, rust; mildew, mold 1001.2; degradability, biodegradability

7 **rot, rottenness, foulness, putridness,** putridity, rancidness, rancidity, rankness, **putrefaction,** putrescence, spoilage, decay, decomposition; carrion; dry rot, wet rot

8 **wreck, ruins, ruin, total loss;** hulk, carcass, skeleton; mere wreck, wreck of one's former self, perfect wreck; nervous wreck; rattletrap

VERBS 9 **impair, damage,** endamage, **injure, harm, hurt,** irritate; **worsen,** make worse, disimprove, deteriorate, put *or* set back, aggravate, exacerbate, embitter; **weaken; dilapidate;** add insult to injury, rub salt in the wound

10 **spoil, mar,** botch, **ruin,** wreck, blight, **play havoc with; destroy** 395.10; pollute

11 <nf terms> **screw up, foul up,** fuck up, bitch up, **blow,** louse up, queer, snafu, snarl up, balls up <Brit>, bugger, bugger up, gum up, ball up, bollix, bollix up, **mess up,** hash up, muck up; play hob with, play hell with, play merry hell with, play the devil with, rain on one's picnic *or* parade; upset the apple cart, cook, sink, shoot down in flames; **total;** pulverize

12 **corrupt, debase, degrade,** degenerate, **deprave, debauch, defile,** violate, desecrate, profane, deflower, ravish, ravage, despoil; **contaminate,** confound, **pollute, vitiate, poison, infect, taint;** canker, ulcerate; **pervert,** warp, twist, distort; prostitute, misuse 389.4; denature; **cheapen,** devalue; coarsen, vulgarize, drag in the mud; adulterate, alloy, water, water down

13 <inflict an injury> **injure, hurt;** draw blood, wound, scotch <old>; **traumatize;** stab, stick, pierce, puncture; cut, incise, slit, slash, gash, scratch; abrade, eat away at, scuff, scrape, chafe, fret, gall, bark, skin; break, fracture, rupture; crack, chip, craze, check; lacerate, claw, tear, rip, rend; run; frazzle, fray; burn, scorch, scald; mutilate, maim, rough up <nf>, make mincemeat of, maul, batter, savage; sprain, strain, wrench; bloody; **blemish** 1004.4; **bruise, contuse,** bung *and* bung up <nf>; **buffet,** batter, bash <nf>, maul, pound, beat, beat black and blue; give a black eye; play havoc with

14 **cripple, lame,** maim; **hamstring,** hobble; wing; emasculate, castrate; incapacitate, **disable** 19.9

15 **undermine,** sap, mine, sap the foundations of, honeycomb; sabotage, monkey-wrench *and* throw *or* toss a monkey-wrench in the works <nf>, subvert

16 **deteriorate, sicken, worsen, get** *or* **grow worse,** get no better fast <nf>, disimprove, **degenerate;** slip back, **retrogress,** retrograde, regress, relapse, fall back; jump the track; go to the bad 395.24; let oneself go, let down, slacken; be the worse for, be the worse for wear *and* have seen better days <nf>

17 **decline, sink, fail, fall,** slip, fade, die, wane, ebb, subside, lapse, **run down,** go down, **go downhill, fall away, fall off,** go off <nf>, slide, slump, hit a slump, take a nose dive <nf>, go into a tailspin, take a turn for the worse; hit the skids <nf>; reach the depths, hit *or* touch bottom, hit rock bottom, have no lower to go

18 **languish, pine, droop, flag, wilt; fade,** fade away; **wither, shrivel,** shrink, diminish, wither *or* die on the vine, **dry up,** desiccate, wizen, wrinkle, sear; retrograde, retrogress

19 **waste, waste away, wither away,** atrophy, consume, consume away, erode away, emaciate, pine away; trickle *or* dribble away; run to waste, run to seed

20 **wear, wear away, wear down, wear off;** abrade, fret, whittle away, rub off; fray, frazzle, tatter, wear ragged; **wear out;** weather, erode, ablate

21 **corrode, erode,** eat, gnaw, eat into, eat away, nibble away, gnaw at the root of; canker; **oxidize, rust**

22 **decay, decompose, disintegrate;** biodegrade; go *or* fall into decay, go *or* fall to pieces, break up, crumble, crumble into dust; **spoil,** corrupt, canker, **go bad; rot, putrefy,** putresce; fester, suppurate, rankle <nf>; **mortify,** necrose, gangrene, sphacelate; mold, molder, molder away, rot away, rust away, mildew; gangrene

23 **break, break up,** fracture, **come apart,** come unstuck, **come** *or* **fall to pieces, fall apart, disintegrate;** burst, rupture; crack, split, fissure; snap; break open, give way *or* away, start, spring a leak, come apart at the seams, come unstuck <nf>

24 **break down, founder, collapse;** crash <nf>, cave *or* fall in, come crashing *or* tumbling down, topple, topple down *or* over, tremble *or* nod *or* totter to one's fall; totter, sway

25 **get out of order, malfunction,** get out of gear; get out of joint; go wrong

26 <nf terms> **get out of whack,** get out of kilter, get out of commission, go kaput, **go on the blink** *or* **fritz, go haywire,** fritz out, go blooey *or* kerflooey, give out, **break down,** pack up <Brit>, conk out

ADJS 27 **impaired, damaged, hurt, injured, harmed; deteriorated, worsened,** cut to the quick, aggravated, exacerbated, irritated, embittered; weakened; **worse,** worse off, the worse for, all the worse for; imperfect; lacerated, mangled, cut, split, rent, torn, slit, slashed, mutilated, chewed-up; **broken** 802.24, **shattered, smashed,** in bits, in pieces, in shards, burst, busted <nf>, ruptured, sprung; cracked, chipped, crazed, checked; burned, scorched, scalded; **damaging, injurious,** traumatic, degenerative

28 **spoiled** *or* spoilt, **marred,** botched, blighted, **ruined,** wrecked; **destroyed** 395.28

29 <nf terms> **queered, screwed up, fouled up,** loused up, snafued, buggered, buggered up, gummed up, snarled up, balled up, bollixed up, **messed up,** hashed up, mucked up, botched up; beat up, clapped-out <Brit>; **totaled,** kaput, finished, packed-up <Brit>, done for, done in, cooked, sunk, shot

30 **crippled,** game <nf>, bad, handicapped, maimed; **lame, halt,** halting, hobbling, limping; knee-sprung; hamstrung; spavined; **disabled, incapacitated,** challenged; emasculated, castrated

31 **worn,** well-worn, deep-worn, worn-down, the worse for wear, dog-eared; timeworn; shopworn, shopsoiled <Brit>, shelfworn; worn to the stump, worn to the bone; **worn ragged,** worn to rags, worn to threads; **threadbare,** bare, sere <old>

32 **shabby, shoddy, seedy,** scruffy, **tacky** <nf>, dowdy, tatty, ratty; holey, full of holes; raggedy, raggedy-ass <nf>, **ragged, tattered, torn;** patchy; **frayed, frazzled;** in rags, in tatters, in shreds; **out at the elbows,** out at the heels, **down-at-heel** *or* **-heels, down-at-the-heel** *or* **-heels**

33 **dilapidated, ramshackle,** decrepit, shacky, tottery, slummy <nf>, **tumbledown, broken-down, run-down,** in ruins, ruinous, ruined, derelict, gone to wrack and ruin, the worse for wear; **battered,** beaten up, **beat-up** <nf>

34 **weatherworn, weather-beaten, weathered,** weather-battered, weather-wasted, weather-eaten, weather-bitten, weather-scarred; eroded; **faded,** washed-out, bleached, blanched, etiolated

35 **wasted,** atrophied, shrunken; **withered,** sere, shriveled, wilted, wizened, dried-up, desiccated; wrinkled, wrinkled like a prune; brittle, papery, parchmenty; **emaciated** 270.20; starved, worn to a shadow, reduced to a skeleton, skin and bones, "worn to the bones"—Shakespeare

36 **worn-out, used up** <nf>, worn to a frazzle, frazzled, fit for the dust hole *or* wastepaper basket; **exhausted, tired,** fatigued, pooped <nf>, **spent,** effete, etiolated, played out, *ausgespielt* <Ger>, shotten <nf>, jaded, emptied, done *and* done up <nf>; **run-down,** dragged-out <nf>, laid low, at a low ebb, in a bad way, far-gone, on one's last legs

37 **in disrepair, out of order, malfunctioning,** out of working order, out of condition, out of repair, inoperative; out of tune, out of gear; out of joint; **broken** 802.24

38 <nf terms> **out of whack** *or* **kilter** *or* kelter *or* sync *or* commission, on the fritz, fritzed, on the blink, blooey, kerflooey, haywire, wonky <Brit>

39 **putrefactive,** putrefacient, rotting; **septic;** saprogenic, saprogenous; saprophilous, saprophytic, saprobic

40 **decayed, decomposed; spoiled, corrupt,** peccant, bad, **gone bad; rotten, rotting, putrid, putrefied, foul;** putrescent, **mortified,** necrosed, necrotic, sphacelated, gangrened, gangrenous; carious; cankered, ulcerated, festering, suppurating, suppurative; rotten at *or* to the core

41 **tainted, off,** blown, frowy <nf>; **stale; sour,** soured, turned; **rank,** reechy <old>, **rancid,** strong <nf>, **high,** gamy

42 **blighted, blasted, ravaged,** despoiled; blown, **flyblown,** wormy, weevily, maggoty; **moth-eaten, worm-eaten; moldy,** moldering, **mildewed,** smutty, smutted; **musty, fusty,** frowzy *or* frowsy, frowsty <Brit>

43 **corroded, eroded,** eaten; **rusty,** rust-eaten, rust-worn, rust-cankered

44 **corrupting, corruptive;** corrosive, corroding; erosive, eroding, **damaging, injurious** 1000.12; pollutive

45 **deteriorating, worsening,** disintegrating, coming apart *or* unstuck, crumbling, cracking, fragmenting, going to pieces; **decadent, degenerate,** effete; **retrogressive,** retrograde, regressive, from better to worse; **declining, sinking, failing,** falling, waning, subsiding, **slipping,** sliding, slumping; **languishing, pining,** drooping, flagging, wilting; ebbing, draining, dwindling; **wasting,** fading, fading fast, **withering,** shriveling; tabetic, marcescent

46 **on the wane, on the decline,** on the downgrade, on the downward track, on the skids <nf>; tottering, nodding to its fall, on the way out

47 degradable, biodegradable, decomposable, putrefiable, putrescible

ADVS **48** out of the frying pan into the fire, from better to worse; for the worse

394 RELAPSE

NOUNS **1** **relapse, lapse,** falling back; **reversion, regression** 859.1; **reverse, reversal,** backward deviation, devolution, **setback,** backset; **return,** recurrence, renewal, recrudescence; throwback, atavism

2 **backsliding,** backslide; **fall, fall from grace;** recidivism, recidivation; apostasy 363.2

3 backslider, recidivist, reversionist; apostate 363.5

VERBS **4** **relapse, lapse, backslide,** slide back, lapse back, **slip back,** sink back, **fall back,** have a relapse, devolve, **return to, revert to,** recur to, yield again to, fall again into, recidivate; revert, **regress** 859.4; **fall, fall from grace**

ADJS **5** **relapsing, lapsing, lapsarian, backsliding,** recidivous; recrudescent; **regressive** 859.7; apostate 363.11

395 DESTRUCTION

NOUNS **1 destruction, ruin, ruination,** rack, **rack and ruin,** blue ruin <nf>; perdition, damnation, eternal damnation; universal ruin; **wreck;** devastation, ravage, havoc, holocaust, firestorm, hecatomb, carnage, shambles, slaughter, bloodbath, **desolation; waste, consumption;** decimation; **dissolution, disintegration,** breakup, disruption, disorganization, undoing, lysis; vandalism, depredation, spoliation, despoliation, despoilment; the road to ruin *or* wrack and ruin; iconoclasm

2 end, fate, doom, death, death knell, bane, deathblow, death warrant, *coup de grâce* <Fr>, final blow, quietus, cutoff, end of the world, apocalypse

3 fall, downfall, prostration; **overthrow, overturn, upset, upheaval,** *bouleversement* <Fr>; convulsion, **subversion,** sabotage, monkey-wrenching <nf>

4 debacle, disaster, cataclysm, catastrophe; breakup, breaking up; **breakdown, collapse; crash,** meltdown, smash, **smashup,** crack-up <nf>; **wreck,** wrack, shipwreck; cave-in, cave; washout; total loss

5 demolition, demolishment; wrecking, wreckage, leveling, razing, flattening, smashing, tearing down, bringing to the ground; **dismantlement,** disassembly, unmaking; hatchet job

6 extinction, extermination, elimination, eradication, extirpation; rooting out, deracination, uprooting, tearing up root and branch; **annihilation,** extinguishment, **snuffing out; abolition,** abolishment; annulment, **nullification,** voiding, **negation; liquidation, purge; suppression;** choking, choking off, suffocation, stifling, strangulation; silencing; nuclear winter

7 obliteration, erasure, effacement, deletion, expunction, blot <old>, blotting, **blotting out, wiping out;** washing out *and* scrubbing <nf>, cancellation, cancel; deletion; annulment, abrogation; palimpsest, clean slate, tabula rasa

8 destroyer, ruiner, wrecker, bane, wiper-out, demolisher; **vandal,** hun; exterminator, annihilator; **iconoclast,** idoloclast; biblioclast; nihilist; terrorist, syndicalist; **bomber,** dynamiter, dynamitard; burner, arsonist; loose cannon

9 eradicator, expunger; **eraser,** rubber, India rubber, sponge; extinguisher

VERBS **10 destroy,** deal *or* unleash destruction, unleash the hurricane, nuke <nf>; **ruin,** ruinate <nf>, bring to ruin, lay in ruins, play *or* raise hob with; throw into disorder, turn upside-down, upheave; **wreck,** wrack, shipwreck; damn, seal the doom of, **condemn,** confound; **devastate, desolate,** waste, **lay waste, ravage,** havoc, wreak havoc, despoil, depredate; vandalize; **decimate;** devour, consume, engorge, gobble, gobble up, swallow up; gut, gut with fire, incinerate, vaporize, ravage with fire and sword; dissolve, lyse

11 do for, fix <nf>, settle, sink, cook *and* cook one's goose *and* cut one down to size *and* cut one off at the knees *and* pull the plug on *and* pull the rug out from under <nf>, dish, scuttle, put the kibosh on *and* put the skids under <nf>, do in, **undo,** knock in *or* on the head, poleax, torpedo, knock out, clobber, KO *and* banjax <nf>, deal a knockout blow to, zap *and* shoot down *and* shoot down in flames <nf>; break the back of; make short work of; hamstring; **defeat** 412.6

12 put an end to, make an end of, **end, finish,** finish off <nf>, put paid to <Brit>, give the *coup de grâce* <Fr> to, give the quietus to, deal a deathblow to, dispose of, get rid of, do in, do away with; cut off, take off, be the death of, sound the death knell of; put out of the way, put out of existence, **slaughter,** make away with, off *and* waste *and* blow away <nf>, kill off, strike down, **kill** 308.13; nip, nip in the bud; cut short; scrub <nf>

13 abolish, nullify, void, abrogate, annihilate, annul, tear up, repeal, revoke, negate, negative, invalidate, **undo, cancel,** cancel out, bring to naught, put *or* lay to rest

14 exterminate, eliminate, eradicate, deracinate, **extirpate, annihilate; wipe out** <nf>; cut out, root up *or* out, uproot, pull *or* pluck up by the roots, cut up root and branch, strike at the root of, lay the ax to the root of; **liquidate,** vaporize, **purge;** remove, sweep away, wash away; wipe off the map <nf>, leave no trace

15 extinguish, quench, snuff out, put out, stamp *or* trample out, trample underfoot; **smother,** choke, stifle, strangle, suffocate; silence; **suppress, quash,** squash *and* squelch <nf>, **quell,** put down

16 obliterate, expunge, efface, erase, raze <old>, blot, sponge, **wipe out,** wipe off the map, rub out, **blot out,** sponge out, wash away; cancel, strike out, cross out, scratch, scratch out, rule out; blue-pencil; **delete** *or* dele, kill; leave on the cutting-room floor <nf>

17 demolish, wreck, total *and* rack up <nf>, undo, unbuild, unmake, **dismantle, disassemble; take apart, tear apart, tear asunder, rend, take** *or* **pull** *or* **pick** *or* **tear to pieces,** pull in pieces, tear to shreds *or* rags *or* tatters; sunder, cleave, **split; disintegrate, fragment,** break to pieces, make mincemeat of, reduce to rubble, atomize, pulverize, **smash,** shatter 801.13

18 blow up, blast, spring, explode, blow to pieces *or* bits *or* smithereens *or* kingdom come, bomb, bombard, blitz; mine; self-destruct

19 **raze,** rase, **fell, level,** flatten, smash, prostrate, raze to the ground *or* dust; steamroller, bulldoze; **pull down, tear down, take down,** bring down, bring down about one's ears, bring tumbling *or* crashing down, break down, throw down, cast down, beat down, knock down *or* over; cut down, chop down, mow down; blow down; burn down

20 **overthrow, overturn; upset,** overset, upend, **subvert,** throw down *or* over; undermine, honeycomb, **sap,** sap the foundations, **weaken**

21 **overwhelm,** whelm, swamp, engulf; inundate

22 <be destroyed> **fall,** fall to the ground, tumble, come tumbling *or* crashing down, topple, tremble *or* nod to its fall, bite the dust <nf>; **break up,** crumble, crumble to dust, disintegrate, go *or* fall to pieces; go by the board, go out the window *or* up the spout <nf>, go down the tube *or* tubes <nf>; self-destruct

23 **perish, expire, succumb, die, cease, end,** come to an end, go, pass, **pass away, vanish, disappear,** fade away, run out, peg *or* conk out <nf>, come to nothing *or* naught, be no more, be done for; be all over with, be all up with <nf>

24 **go to ruin, go to rack and ruin,** go to rack and manger <old>, **go to the bad,** go wrong, **go to the dogs** *or* **pot** <nf>, go *or* run to seed, go to hell in a handbasket <nf>, go to the deuce *or* devil <nf>, go to hell <nf>, go to the wall, go to perdition *or* glory <nf>; go up <nf>, go under; **go to smash,** go to shivers, go to smithereens <nf>

25 **drive to ruin,** drive to the bad, **force to the wall,** drive to the dogs <nf>, hound *or* harry to destruction

ADJS 26 **destructive,** destroying; **ruinous,** ruining; demolishing, demolitionary; **disastrous, calamitous, cataclysmic,** cataclysmal, **catastrophic;** fatal, fateful, doomful, baneful; bad news <nf>; **deadly;** consumptive, consuming, withering; **devastating, desolating,** ravaging, wasting, wasteful, spoliative, depredatory; vandalic, vandalish, vandalistic; subversive, subversionary; nihilist, nihilistic; suicidal, self-destructive; fratricidal, internecine, internecive

27 **exterminative,** exterminatory, **annihilative, eradicative,** extirpative, extirpatory; all-destroying, all-devouring, all-consuming

28 **ruined, destroyed, wrecked, blasted, undone,** down-and-out, broken, bankrupt; spoiled; irremediable 125.15; fallen, overthrown; **devastated, desolated, ravaged,** blighted, wasted; ruinous, in ruins, gutted; gone to rack and ruin; obliterated, annihilated, liquidated, vaporized; doomed, not long for this world

29 <nf terms> **shot, done for,** done in, finished, *ausgespielt* <Ger>, kaput; gone to pot, gone to the dogs, gone to hell in a handbasket, phut, belly up, blooey, kerflooey, dead in the water, washed up, all washed up, history, **dead meat, down the tube** *or* **tubes,** zapped, nuked, tapped out, wiped out, rubbed out, bust

396 RESTORATION

NOUNS 1 **restoration, restitution, reestablishment, redintegration, reinstatement,** reinstation, reformation <old>, reinvestment, reinvestiture, instauration, reversion, reinstitution, reconstitution, recomposition; replacement; **rehabilitation,** redevelopment, reconversion, reactivation, reenactment; improvement 392; return to normal

2 **reclamation, recovery, retrieval,** salvage, salving; redemption, salvation

3 **revival,** revivification, revivescence *or* revivescency, **renewal,** resurrection, resuscitation, restimulation, reanimation, resurgence, recrudescence, comeback; retro; **refreshment** 9; second wind; renaissance, renascence, **rebirth,** new birth; **rejuvenation,** rejuvenescence, second youth, new lease on life; **regeneration,** regeneracy, regenerateness; regenesis, palingenesis, reanimation, reincarnation; new hope, second chance

4 **renovation, renewal;** refreshment; **redecorating; reconditioning,** furbishment, refurbishment, refurbishing; retread *and* retreading <nf>; face-lifting *or* face-lift; slum clearance, urban renewal; remodeling; overhauling

5 **reconstruction, re-creation, remaking,** recomposition, remodeling, **rebuilding,** refabrication, refashioning; reassembling, reassembly; reformation; restructuring, perestroika

6 **reparation, repair,** repairing, **fixing, mending,** making *or* setting right, repairwork; servicing, maintenance; **overhaul,** overhauling; troubleshooting <nf>; **rectification, correction, remedy;** damage control; **redress,** making *or* setting right, amends, satisfaction, compensation, **recompense;** emendation

7 **cure, curing, healing,** remedy 86; **therapy** 91

8 **recovery, rally, comeback** <nf>, return, upturn; **recuperation, convalescence**

9 **restorability, reparability,** curability, recoverability, reversibility, remediability, retrievability, redeemability, salvageability, corrigibility

10 **mender, fixer,** doctor <nf>, restorer, renovator, repairer, **repairman, repairwoman,** handyman, maintenance man *or* woman, **serviceman,**

servicewoman; trouble man *and* troubleshooter <nf>; Mr Fixit *and* little Miss Fixit <nf>; **mechanic** *or* mechanician; tinker, tinkerer; cobbler; salvor, salvager

VERBS **11 restore, put back, replace, return,** place in *status quo ante;* **reestablish,** redintegrate, reform <old>, reenact, **reinstate,** restitute; **reinstall,** reinvest, revest, reinstitute, reconstitute, recompose, recruit, **rehabilitate,** redevelop; reintegrate, reconvert, reactivate; make as good as new; refill, replenish; give back 481.4

12 redeem, reclaim, recover, retrieve; ransom; rescue; salvage, salve; recycle; win back, **recoup**

13 remedy, rectify, correct, right, patch up, emend, amend, **redress,** make good *or* right, **put right,** set right, put *or* set to rights, put *or* set straight, set up, heal up, knit up, make all square; pay reparations, give satisfaction, requite, restitute, recompense, compensate, remunerate

14 repair, mend, fix, fix up <nf>, do up, doctor <nf>, put in repair, put in shape, set to rights, put in order *or* condition; **condition, recondition,** commission, put in commission, ready; **service, overhaul;** patch, **patch up;** tinker, tinker up, fiddle, fiddle around; cobble; sew up, darn; recap, retread

15 cure, work a cure, recure <old>, **remedy, heal, restore to health,** heal up, knit up, bring round *or* around, pull round *or* around, give a new *or* fresh lease on life, make better, make well, fix up, pull through, set on one's feet *or* legs; snatch from the jaws of death

16 revive, revivify, **renew,** recruit; **reanimate,** reinspire, **regenerate, rejuvenate, revitalize,** put *or* breathe new life into, restimulate; **refresh** 9.2; **resuscitate,** bring to, bring round *or* around; recharge; **resurrect,** bring back, call back, recall to life, raise from the dead; rewarm, warm up *or* over; **rekindle,** relight, reheat the ashes, stir the embers; restore to health

17 renovate, renew; recondition, refit, revamp, furbish, refurbish; refresh, face-lift; fix up, upgrade

18 remake, reconstruct, remodel, recompose, reconstitute, re-create, **rebuild,** refabricate, re-form, refashion, reassemble

19 recuperate, recruit, **gain strength,** recruit *or* renew one's strength, catch one's breath, **get better; improve** 392.7; **rally, pick up,** perk up *and* brace up <nf>, bounce back, take a new *or* fresh lease on life; **take a favorable turn,** turn the corner, be out of the woods, take a turn for the better; **convalesce;** sleep it off

20 recover, rally, revive, get well, get over, pull through, pull round *or* around, come round *or* around <nf>, come back <nf>, make a comeback <nf>; get about, get back in shape <nf>, be oneself again, feel like a new person; **survive,** weather the storm, live through; **come to,** come to oneself, show signs of life; come up smiling <nf>, get one's second wind; come *or* pull *or* snap out of it <nf>

21 heal, heal over, close up, scab over, cicatrize, granulate; heal *or* right itself; **knit, set**

ADJS **22 tonic, restorative, restitutive,** restitutory, restimulative; analeptic; reparative, reparatory; sanative; remedial, **curative** 86.39

23 recuperative, recuperatory; reviviscent; **convalescent;** buoyant, resilient, elastic

24 renascent, redivivus, redux, resurrected, renewed, revived, reborn, resurgent, recrudescent, reappearing, phoenix-like; like new; oneself again

25 remediable, curable; medicable, treatable; emendable, amendable, **correctable,** rectifiable, corrigible; **improvable,** ameliorable; **reparable,** repairable, **mendable, fixable;** restorable, recoverable, salvageable, retrievable, reversible, reclaimable, recyclable, redeemable; renewable; sustainable

397 PRESERVATION

NOUNS **1 preservation,** preserval, **conservation, saving, salvation,** salvage, **keeping, safekeeping,** maintenance, upkeep, support, service; custody, custodianship, guardianship, curatorship; protectiveness, protection 1008; conservationism, environmental conservation, environmentalism, ecology; nature conservation *or* conservancy, soil conservation, forest conservation, forest management, wildlife conservation, stream conservation, water conservation, wetlands conservation; salvage; self-preservation

2 food preservation; storage, retention; **curing,** seasoning, salting, brining, pickling, marinating, corning; **drying,** dry-curing, jerking; dehydration, anhydration, evaporation, desiccation; **smoking,** fuming, smoke-curing, kippering; **refrigeration,** freezing, quick-freezing, blast-freezing, deep-freezing; freeze-drying, lyophilization; irradiation; **canning,** tinning <Brit>; bottling, processing, packaging; irradiation, sterilization

3 embalming, mummification; taxidermy, stuffing; tanning

4 preservative, preservative medium; salt, brine, vinegar, formaldehyde, formalin *or* formol, embalming fluid, food additive, MSG *or* monosodium glutamate

5 preserver, saver, conservator, keeper, safekeeper; taxidermist; lifesaver, rescuer, deliverer, savior; **conservationist,** preservationist; National Wildlife Service, Audubon Society, Sierra Club, Nature

Conservancy; **ranger, forest ranger,** Smoky the Bear, fire warden, game warden

6 **life preserver,** life jacket, life vest, life belt, cork jacket, Mae West <nf>; life buoy, life ring, buoy, floating cushion; man-overboard buoy; water wings; breeches buoy; lifeboat, life raft, rubber dinghy <Brit>; life net; lifeline; safety belt; **parachute;** ejection seat *or* ejector seat, ejection capsule

7 **preserve, reserve, reservation; park,** paradise; national park, state park; national seashore; forest preserve *or* reserve, arboretum; national *or* state forest; wilderness preserve; Indian reservation; **refuge, sanctuary** 1009.1, game preserve *or* reserve, bird sanctuary, wildlife sanctuary *or* preserve; museum, library 558, archives 549.2, bank, store 386; protected area

VERBS **8** **preserve, conserve, save,** spare; **keep,** keep safe, keep inviolate *or* intact; patent, copyright, register; not endanger, not destroy; not use up, not waste, not expend; **guard, protect** 1008.18; **maintain, sustain,** uphold, support, **keep up,** keep alive

9 **preserve, cure,** season, salt, brine, marinate *or* marinade, pickle, corn, **dry, dry-cure,** jerk, dry-salt; dehydrate, anhydrate, evaporate, desiccate; vacuum-pack; **smoke,** fume, **smoke-cure,** smoke-dry, kipper; **refrigerate,** freeze, quick-freeze, blast-freeze, keep on ice; freeze-dry, lyophilize; irradiate

10 **embalm,** mummify; stuff; tan

11 **put up,** do up; **can,** tin <Brit>, bottle

ADJS **12** **preservative,** preservatory, conservative, conservatory; custodial, curatorial; **conservational,** conservationist; preserving, conserving, saving, salubrious, keeping; **protective** 1008.23

13 **preserved,** conserved, **kept,** saved, spared; protected 1008.21; **untainted, unspoiled;** intact, all in one piece, undamaged 1001.8; **well-preserved,** well-conserved, **well-kept,** in a good state of preservation, none the worse for wear; embalmed, laid up in lavender, mummified, stuffed

398 RESCUE

NOUNS **1** **rescue, deliverance,** delivery, **saving;** lifesaving; **extrication, release, freeing, liberation** 431; **bailout; salvation,** salvage, **redemption,** ransom; **recovery, retrieval;** good riddance; 911

2 **rescuer,** lifesaver, lifeguard; coast guard, lifesaving service, air-sea rescue; emergency medical technician *or* EMT; savior 592.2; lifeboat; salvager, salvor; emancipator

VERBS **3** **rescue,** come to the rescue, **deliver, save,** be the saving of, save by the bell, **redeem,** ransom, **salvage; recover, retrieve** 481.6; **free,** set free, **release, extricate,** extract, **liberate** 431.4; snatch from the jaws of death; save one's bacon *and* save one's neck *or* ass *and* bail one out <nf>

ADJS **4** **rescuable, savable;** redeemable; deliverable, extricable; salvageable; fit for release

399 WARNING

NOUNS **1** **warning, caution,** caveat, **admonition,** monition, admonishment; **notice,** notification; **word to the wise,** *verbum sapienti* <L>, verb sap, enough said; **hint,** broad hint, measured words, flea in one's ear <nf>, little birdy <nf>, kick under the table; tip-off <nf>; **lesson,** object lesson, **example,** deterrent example, warning piece; moral, moral of the story; **alarm** 400; final warning *or* notice, ultimatum; **threat** 514

2 **forewarning,** prewarning, **premonition,** precautioning; advance warning *or* notice, plenty of notice, prenotification; presentiment, hunch *and* funny feeling <nf>, **foreboding; portent;** evil portent

3 **warning sign, premonitory sign, danger sign;** preliminary sign *or* signal *or* token; **symptom,** early symptom, premonitory symptom, prodrome, prodroma, prodromata <pl>; **precursor** 815; **omen** 133.3,6; **handwriting on the wall,** "*mene, mene, tekel, upharsin*"—Bible <Aramaic>; straw in the wind; gathering clouds, clouds on the horizon; thundercloud, thunderhead; falling barometer *or* glass; storm *or* stormy petrel, **red light,** red flag, Very lights; quarantine flag, yellow flag, yellow jack; death's-head, skull *and* crossbones; **high sign** <nf>, **warning signal, alert,** red alert; siren, klaxon, tocsin, alarm bell; tattoo

4 **warner,** cautioner, admonisher, monitor; prophet *or* messenger of doom, Cassandra, Jeremiah, Nostradamus, Ezekiel; **lookout, lookout man; sentinel, sentry; signalman,** signaler, flagman; lighthouse keeper

VERBS **5** **warn, caution, advise, admonish; give warning,** give fair warning, utter a caveat, address a warning to, put a flea in one's ear <nf>, drop a hint, have a word with one, say a word to the wise; tip *and* tip off <nf>; notify, put on notice, give notice *or* advance notice *or* advance word; tell once *and* for all; issue an ultimatum; **threaten** 514.2; **alert,** warn against, put on one's guard, warn away *or* off; **give the high sign** <nf>; **put on alert,** cry havoc, sound the alarm 400.3

6 **forewarn,** prewarn, precaution, premonish; prenotify, tell in advance, give advance notice; **portend, forebode;** give a head's up

ADJS **7** **warning,** cautioning, **cautionary; monitory,** monitorial, admonitory, admonishing, minatory; notifying, notificational; exemplary, deterrent

8 **forewarning, premonitory; portentous,** foreboding 133.17; **precautionary,** precautional; precursive, precursory, forerunning, prodromal, prodromic

400 ALARM

NOUNS 1 **alarm,** alarum, alarm signal *or* bell, **alert;** hue and cry; **red light,** danger signal, amber light, caution signal; **alarm button,** panic button <nf>, nurse's signal; **beeper,** buzzer; note of alarm; air-raid alarm; all clear; tocsin, alarm bell; signal of distress, SOS, Mayday, upside-down flag, flare; *sécurité* <Fr>, notice to mariners; storm warning, storm flag *or* pennant *or* cone, hurricane watch *or* warning *or* advisory, gale warning, small-craft warning *or* advisory, tornado watch *or* warning, winter-storm watch *or* advisory, severe thunderstorm watch *or* warning; fog signal *or* alarm, foghorn, fog bell; burglar alarm; fire alarm, fire bell, fire flag, still alarm; siren, whistle, horn, klaxon, hooter <Brit>; police whistle, watchman's rattle; alarm clock; five-minute gun, two-minute gun; lighthouse, beacon; blinking light, flashing light, occulting light

2 **false alarm,** cry of wolf; bugbear, bugaboo; bogy; flash in the pan *and* dud <nf>

VERBS 3 **alarm, alert, arouse,** put on the alert; **warn** 399.5; fly storm warnings; **sound the alarm,** give *or* raise *or* beat *or* turn in an alarm, ring *or* sound the tocsin, cry havoc, raise a hue *and* cry; give a false alarm, cry before one is hurt, **cry wolf;** frighten *or* scare out of one's wits *or* to death, **frighten,** startle 131.8

ADJS 4 **alarmed, aroused;** alerted; frit <Brit nf>, frightened to death *or* out of one's wits, **frightened; startled** 131.13

401 HASTE

<rapidity of action>

NOUNS 1 **haste, hurry, scurry, rush, race,** speed, dash, drive, scuttle, scamper, **scramble,** hustle <nf>, **bustle,** flutter, **flurry,** hurry-scurry, helter-skelter; no time to be lost

2 **hastiness, hurriedness,** quickness, swiftness, expeditiousness, alacrity, promptness 330.3; **speed** 174.1,2; furiousness, feverishness; **precipitousness,** precipitance *or* precipitancy, precipitation; rapidity; suddenness, abruptness; **impetuousness** 365.2, impetuosity, **impulsiveness, rashness** 493, impulsivity; eagerness, zealousness, **overeagerness, overzealousness**

3 **hastening, hurrying,** festination, speeding, forwarding, quickening, **acceleration;** forced march, double time, double-quick time, double-quick; fast-forward; skedaddle <nf>

VERBS 4 **hasten,** haste, **hurry, accelerate, speed,** speed up, **hurry up,** hustle up <nf>, **rush,** quicken, hustle <nf>, bustle, bundle, precipitate, forward; **dispatch, expedite; whip,** whip along, spur, **urge** 375.14,16; push, press; crowd, stampede; **hurry on,** hasten on, drive on, hie on, push on, press on; **hurry along,** lollop <chiefly Brit>, rush along, speed along, **speed on its way; push through,** railroad <nf>, steamroll

5 **make haste, hasten,** festinate, **hurry, hurry up, race, run,** post, **rush, chase, tear, dash,** spurt, leap, plunge, **scurry,** hurry-scurry, **scamper, scramble, scuttle, hustle** <nf>, bundle, **bustle;** bestir oneself, move quickly 174.9; hurry on, dash on, press *or* push on, crowd; double-time, go at the double; break one's neck *or* fall all over oneself <nf>; lose no time, not lose a moment; rush through, romp through, hurry through; dash off; make short *or* fast work of, make the best of one's time *or* way, think on one's feet, make up for lost time; do on the run *or* on the fly

6 <nf terms> **step on it, snap to it,** hop to it, hotfoot, bear down on it, shake it up, **get moving** *or* **going,** get a move on, get cracking <chiefly Brit>, get *or* shake the lead out, get the lead out of one's ass, get one's ass in gear, give it the gun, hump, hump it, hump oneself, shag ass, tear ass, **get a hustle** *or* wiggle on, stir one's stumps, not spare the horses, barrel along, tear off, make tracks

7 **rush into, plunge into,** dive into, plunge, plunge ahead *or* headlong; **not stop to think,** go off half-cocked *or* at half cock <nf>, leap before one looks, cross a bridge before one comes to it

8 **be in a hurry,** be under the gun <nf>, have no time to lose *or* spare, not have a moment to spare, hardly have time to breathe, work against time *or* the clock, work under pressure, have a deadline, do at the last moment

ADJS 9 **hasty, hurried,** festinate, **quick,** flying, **expeditious,** prompt 330.18; quick-and-dirty <nf>, **immediate,** instant, on the spot, precipitant; onrushing, **swift, speedy; urgent;** furious, feverish; slap-bang, slapdash, **cursory,** passing, cosmetic, snap <nf>, superficial; spur-of-the-moment, last-minute

10 **precipitate,** precipitant, precipitous; **sudden,** abrupt; **impetuous, impulsive, rash;** headlong, breakneck; breathless, panting

11 **hurried, rushed,** pushed, pressed, railroaded, crowded, **pressed for time,** hard-pushed *or* -pressed, hard-run; double-time, double-quick, on *or* at the double

ADVS 12 **hastily, hurriedly, quickly; expeditiously,** promptly, with dispatch; all in one breath, in one word, in two words; apace, amain, hand over fist, **immediately,** instantly, in a second *or* split second *or* jiffy, at once, as soon as possible *or* **ASAP; swiftly, speedily,** on *or* at fast-forward; with haste, with great *or* all haste, in *or* with a rush, in a mad rush, at fever pitch; furiously, feverishly, in a sweat *or* lather of haste, hotfoot; by forced marches; **helter-skelter, hurry-scurry,** pellmell; slapdash, cursorily, superficially, on the run *or* fly, in passing, on the spur of the moment

13 **posthaste,** in posthaste; post, express; by express, by airmail, by return mail; by cable, by telegraph, by fax

14 **in a hurry, in haste,** in hot haste, in all haste; in short order; against time, against the clock

15 **precipitately,** precipitantly, precipitously, slap-bang; **suddenly,** abruptly; **impetuously, impulsively, rashly; headlong,** headfirst, headforemost, head over heels, heels over head <old>, *à corps perdu* <Fr>

INTERJS 16 **make haste!,** make it quick!, **hurry up!; now!; at once!,** rush!, immediate!, **urgent!,** instanter!; **step lively!,** look alive!, on the double!

17 <nf terms> **step on it!,** snap to it!, **make it snappy!, get a move on!,** get a wiggle on!, **chop-chop!, shake a leg!,** stir your stumps!, get the lead out!, **get moving!, get going!,** get cracking!, get with it!, hop to it!, move your tail!, move your fanny!, get on the ball!, don't spare the horses!

402 LEISURE

NOUNS 1 **leisure, ease, convenience,** freedom; retirement, semiretirement; rest, repose 20; **free time, spare time,** goof-off time <nf>, downtime, odd moments, idle hours; time to spare *or* burn *or* kill, time on one's hands, time at one's disposal *or* command, time to oneself; time, one's own sweet time <nf>; breathing room; all the time in the world; time off, holiday, vacation, furlough, sabbatical, leave; break, recess, breather, coffee break; day of rest; letup <nf>

2 **leisureliness, unhurriedness,** unhastiness, hastelessness, relaxedness; *dolce far niente* <Ital>; **inactivity** 331; **slowness** 175; deliberateness, deliberation; contentment

VERBS 3 **have time,** have time enough, have time to spare, have plenty of time, have nothing but time, be in no hurry; lounge, loll

4 **take one's leisure,** take one's ease, **take one's time, take one's own sweet time** <nf>, do at one's leisure *or* convenience *or* pleasure; go slow 175.6; ride the gravy train *and* lead the life of Riley <nf>, take time to smell the flowers *or* roses; put one's feet up

ADJS 5 **leisure, leisured;** idle, unoccupied, free, open, spare; retired, semiretired, unemployed, in retirement; on vacation, on holiday; after-dinner

6 **leisurely, unhurried,** laid-back <nf>, unhasty, hasteless, easy, relaxed; sluggish, lazy; deliberate; inactive 331.17; **slow** 175.10

ADVS 7 **at leisure, at one's leisure, at one's convenience,** at one's own sweet time <nf>, when one gets around to it, when it is handy, when one has the time, when one has a minute to spare, when one has a moment to call one's own

INTERJS 8 easy does it!, take it easy!

403 ENDEAVOR

NOUNS 1 **endeavor,** effort, striving, struggle, strain; **all-out effort,** best effort, college try *or* old college try <nf>, valiant effort; **exertion** 725; determination, resolution 359; **enterprise** 330.7

2 **attempt, trial, effort, essay,** assay <old>, first attempt, *coup d'essai* <Fr>; **endeavor, undertaking;** approach, move; coup, stroke 328.3, step; gambit, offer, **bid,** strong bid; experiment, tentative; tentation, trial and error

3 <nf terms> **try, whack, fling, shot, crack,** bash, belt, go, stab, leap, lick, rip, ripple, cut, hack, smack; last shot, swan song

4 **one's best, one's level best, one's utmost,** one's damndest *or* darndest <nf>, one's best effort *or* endeavor, the best one can, the best one knows how, all one can do, all one's got, all one's got in one, one's all <nf>, the top of one's bent, as much as in one lies

VERBS 5 **endeavor, strive, struggle,** strain, sweat, sweat blood, labor, get one's teeth into, come to grips with, take it on, make an all-out effort, move heaven and earth, **exert oneself,** apply oneself, use some elbow grease <nf>; spend oneself; seek, study, aim; resolve, be determined 359.8

6 **attempt, try, essay,** assay, offer; try one's hand *or* wings, try it on <chiefly Brit>; **undertake** 404.3, **approach,** come to grips with, engage, take the bull by the horns; venture, venture on *or* upon, chance; **make an attempt** *or* **effort,** lift a finger *or* hand

7 <nf terms> **tackle, take on, make a try, give a try,** have a go <chiefly Brit>, take a shot *or* stab *or* crack *or* try *or* whack at; try on for size, **go for it,** go for the brass ring, **have a fling** *or* **go at,** give a fling *or* a go *or* a whirl, **make a stab at,** have a shot *or* stab *or* crack *or* try *or* whack at

8 **try to,** try and <nf>, **attempt to, endeavor to,** strive to, seek to, study to, aim to, venture to, dare to, pretend to

9 **try for, strive for,** strain for, struggle for, contend

for, pull for <nf>, bid for, make a bid *or* strong bid for, make a play for <nf>

10 **see what one can do,** see what can be done, see if one can do, do what one can, use one's endeavor; try anything once; **try one's hand,** try one's luck, tempt fate; make a cautious *or* tentative move, experiment, feel one's way, test the waters, run it up the flagpole <nf>

11 **make a special effort, go out of the way,** go out of one's way, take special pains, **put oneself out,** put oneself out of the way, lay oneself out *and* fall *or* bend *or* lean over backward <nf>, fall all over oneself, trouble oneself, **go to the trouble,** take trouble, **take pains,** redouble one's efforts

12 **try hard, push** <nf>, make a bold push, **put one's back to** *or* **into,** put one's heart into, try until one is blue in the face, die trying, **try and try;** try, try again; exert oneself 725.9

13 **do one's best** *or* **level best, do one's utmost,** try one's best *or* utmost, **do all** *or* **everything one can,** do the best one can, **do the best one knows how,** do all in one's power, do as much as in one lies, do what lies in one's power, do one's damnedest <nf>; put all one's strength into, put one's whole soul in, **strain every nerve; give it one's all,** go flat out <nf>; go for broke; be on one's mettle, **die trying**

14 <nf terms> **knock oneself out, break one's neck,** break *or* bust one's balls, bust a gut, bust one's ass *or* hump, rupture oneself, do it *or* know why not, do it *or* break a leg, do it *or* bust a gut, do *or* try one's damndest *or* darndest, go all out, go the limit, go for broke, shoot the works, give it all one's got, give it one's best shot, go for it

15 **make every effort, spare no effort** *or* **pains, go all lengths, go to great lengths,** go the whole length, go through fire and water, not rest, not relax, not slacken, move heaven and earth, leave no stone unturned, leave no avenue unexplored

ADJS 16 trial, tentative, experimental; venturesome, willing; determined, resolute 359.11; utmost, damndest

ADVS 17 **out for,** out to, trying for, **on the make** <nf>

18 **at the top of one's bent,** to one's utmost, as far as possible

404 UNDERTAKING

NOUNS 1 **undertaking, enterprise, operation,** work, **venture, project,** proposition *and* deal <nf>; matter at hand; **program, plan** 381; **affair, business, matter, task** 724.2, concern, interest; **initiative,** effort, attempt 403.2; **action** 328.3; **engagement, contract, obligation, commitment** 436.2; *démarche* <Fr>

2 **adventure,** emprise, **mission;** quest, pilgrimage; expedition, exploration

VERBS 3 **undertake, assume,** accept, **take on, take upon oneself,** take in hand, take upon one's shoulders, take up, sign up, go with, **tackle,** attack; engage *or* contract *or* obligate *or* commit oneself; **put** *or* **set** *or* **turn one's hand to, engage in, devote oneself to, apply oneself to,** betake oneself to <old>, address oneself to, give oneself up to; join oneself to, associate oneself with, take in hand, **come aboard** <nf>; busy oneself with 724.11; **take up,** move into, go into, **go in** *or* **out for** <nf>, **enter on** *or* **upon,** proceed to, embark in *or* upon, **venture upon,** go upon, launch, set forward, get going, get under way, initiate; set about, go about, lay about, go to do; **go** *or* **swing into action, set to, turn to, buckle to, fall to; pitch into** <nf>, plunge into, fall into, **launch into** *or* **upon;** go at, set at, have at <nf>, knuckle *or* buckle down to; put one's hand to the plow, put *or* lay one's shoulder to the wheel; take the bull by the horns; **endeavor, attempt**; dare, take a shot at

4 **have in hand, have one's hands in,** have on one's hands *or* shoulders

5 **be in progress** *or* **process,** be on the anvil, be in the fire, be in the works *or* hopper *or* pipeline <nf>, **be under way**

6 **bite off more than one can chew** <nf>, take on too much, overextend *or* overreach oneself, have too many irons in the fire, have too much on one's plate

ADJS 7 **undertaken, assumed,** accepted, **taken on** <nf>; **ventured,** attempted, chanced; **in hand,** on the anvil, in the fire, **in progress** *or* process, on one's plate, in the works *or* hopper *or* pipeline <nf>, on the agenda, **under way**; contractual

8 **enterprising,** venturesome, adventurous, plucky, keen, eager; resourceful, ambitious; pioneering

405 PREPARATION

NOUNS 1 **preparation,** preparing, prep *and* prepping <nf>, **readying,** getting *or* making ready, makeready, taking measures; warm-up, getting in shape *or* condition; mobilization; walk-up, **run-up; prearrangement** 965, lead time, advance notice, warning, advance warning, alerting; **planning** 381.1; trial, dry run, **tryout** 942.3; **provision, arrangement;** preparatory *or* preliminary act *or* measure *or* step; **preliminary, preliminaries;** clearing the decks <nf>; **grounding,** propaedeutic, preparatory study *or* instruction; basic training, familiarization, briefing; prerequisite; processing, treatment, pretreatment; equipment 385; training 568.3; manufacture; **spadework,** groundwork, foundation 901.6; pioneering, trailblazing, pushing the envelope <nf>

2 **fitting,** checking the fit, fit, fitting out; **conditioning; adaptation, adjustment,** tuning; **qualification,** capacitation, enablement; **equipment,** furnishing 385.1

3 <a preparation> **concoction,** decoction, *decoctum* <L>, brew, **confection; composition, mixture** 797.5, combination 804

4 **preparedness, readiness; fitness,** fittedness, suitedness, suitableness, **suitability;** condition, trim; **qualification,** qualifiedness, credentials, record, track record <nf>; **competence** *or* competency, **ability, capability, proficiency,** mastery; ripeness, maturity, seasoning, fitness, tempering

5 **preparer,** preparator, preparationist; trainer, coach, instructor, mentor, teacher, tutor; **trailblazer, pathfinder; forerunner** 816.1; **paver of the way,** pioneer

VERBS 6 **prepare, make** *or* **get ready,** prep <nf>, do the prep work, trim <old>, **ready, fix** <nf>; provide <old>, **arrange; make preparations** *or* **arrangements,** take measures, sound the note of preparation, clear the decks <nf>, clear for action, settle preliminaries, tee up <nf>; mobilize, marshal, deploy, marshal *or* deploy one's forces *or* resources; **prearrange; plan; try out** 942.8; fix *or* ready up <nf>, put in *or* into shape; dress; treat, pretreat, process; cure, tan, taw; map out, sketch out, outline

7 **make up, get up, fix up** *and* rustle up <nf>; **concoct,** decoct, brew; **compound, compose, put together, mix;** make

8 **fit, condition, adapt, adjust,** suit, tune, attune, put in tune *or* trim *or* working order; **qualify,** enable, capacitate; **equip,** fit out, supply, **furnish** 385.7,8

9 **prime, load,** charge, cock, set; wind, wind up; steam up, get up steam, warm up

10 **prepare to, get ready to,** get set for <nf>, fix to <nf>; be about to, be on the point of; ready oneself to, hold oneself in readiness

11 **prepare for, provide for,** arrange for, make arrangements *or* dispositions for, look to, look out for, see to, **make provision** *or* **due provision for;** provide against, make sure against, forearm, **provide for** *or* **against a rainy day,** prepare for the evil day; lay in provisions, lay up a store, keep as a nest egg, save to fall back upon, lay by, husband one's resources, salt *or* squirrel something away; set one's house in order

12 **prepare the way, pave the way,** smooth the path *or* road, **clear the way,** open the way, open the door to; build a bridge; **break the ice;** pioneer, go in advance, be the point, push the envelope, **blaze the trail; prepare the ground,** cultivate the soil, sow the seed; do the spadework, lay the groundwork *or* foundation, lay the first stone, provide the basis; lead up to

13 **prepare oneself,** brace oneself, **get ready, get set** <nf>, put one's house in order, strip for action, get into shape *or* condition, roll up one's sleeves, spit on one's hands, limber up, warm up, flex one's muscles, gird up one's loins, buckle on one's armor, get into harness, shoulder arms; sharpen one's tools, whet the knife *or* sword; psych oneself up <nf>; do one's homework; get one's house in order; **run up to,** build up to, gear up, tool up, rev up

14 **be prepared, be ready,** stand by, stand ready, hold oneself in readiness, "put your trust in God, my boys, and keep your powder dry"—Cromwell

15 <be fitted> **qualify, measure up,** meet the requirements, check out <nf>, have the credentials *or* qualifications *or* prerequisites; be up to *and* be just the ticket *and* fill the bill <nf>

ADJS 16 **prepared, ready,** well-prepared, prepped <nf>, in readiness *or* ready state, all ready, good *and* ready, prepared *and* ready; psyched *or* pumped up <nf>, eager, keen, champing at the bit; alert, vigilant 339.13; **ripe, mature; set** and **all set** <nf>, on the mark *and* teed up <nf>; about to, fixing to <nf>; **prearranged; planned; primed,** loaded, cocked, **loaded for bear** <nf>; familiarized, briefed, informed, put into the picture <Brit nf>; groomed, coached; ready for anything; in the saddle, booted and spurred; armed and ready, in arms, up in arms, **armed** 460.14; in battle array, mobilized; **provided, equipped** 385.13; dressed; treated, pretreated, processed; cured, tanned, tawed; **readied,** available 221.12

17 **fitted, adapted, adjusted, suited; qualified, fit, competent, able, capable,** proficient; checked out <nf>; well-qualified, well-fitted, well-suited

18 **prepared for, ready for,** alert for, set *or* all set for <nf>; loaded for, primed for; up for <nf>; equal to, up to

19 **ready-made,** ready-formed, ready-mixed, ready-furnished, ready-dressed; ready-built, prefabricated, prefab <nf>, preformed; ready-to-wear, ready-for-wear, off-the-rack; ready-cut, cut-and-dried; convenient, convenience, fast-food; ready-to-cook, precooked, oven-ready; instant

20 **preparatory,** preparative; propaedeutic; prerequisite; provident, provisional

ADJS, ADVS 21 **in readiness, in store, in reserve;** in anticipation

22 **in preparation,** in course of preparation, **in progress** *or* **process,** under way, **going on,** in embryo, **in production,** on stream, under

construction, **in the works** *or* hopper *or* pipeline <nf>, on the way, **in the making, in hand,** on the anvil, on the fire, in the oven; under revision; brewing, forthcoming

23 afoot, on foot, afloat, astir

PREPS **24** in preparation for, against, for; in order to; ready for, set for *and* fixing to <nf>

406 UNPREPAREDNESS

NOUNS **1 unpreparedness, unreadiness,** unprovidedness, nonpreparedness, nonpreparation, lack of preparation; vulnerability 1006.4; extemporaneousness, improvisation, ad lib <nf>, planlessness, disorganization; **unfitness,** unfittedness, unsuitedness, unsuitableness, **unsuitability, unqualifiedness,** unqualification, lack of credentials, poor track record <nf>, **disqualification,** incompetence *or* incompetency, incapability; rustiness

2 improvidence, thriftlessness, unthriftiness, poor husbandry, lax stewardship; **shiftlessness,** fecklessness, thoughtlessness, heedlessness; happy-go-luckiness; hastiness 401.2; negligence 340.1

3 <raw or original condition> **naturalness,** inartificiality; **natural state,** nature, **state of nature,** nature in the raw; pristineness, intactness, virginity; natural man, "unaccommodated man"—Shakespeare; artlessness 416

4 undevelopment, nondevelopment; **immaturity,** immatureness, callowness, unfledgedness, cubbishness, **rawness, unripeness, greenness; unfinish,** unfinishedness, unpolishedness, **unrefinement, uncultivation; crudity,** crudeness, **rudeness, coarseness,** roughness, the rough; **oversimplification,** oversimplicity, simplism, reductionism

5 raw material; crude, crude stuff <nf>; ore, rich ore, rich vein; unsorted *or* unanalyzed mass; rough diamond, **diamond in the rough;** unlicked cub; **virgin soil,** untilled ground

VERBS **6 be unprepared** *or* **unready,** not be ready, lack preparation; go off half-cocked *or* at half cock <nf>; be taken unawares *or* aback, be blindsided <nf>, be caught napping, be caught with one's pants down <nf>, be surprised, drop one's guard; **extemporize,** improvise, ad-lib *and* play by ear <nf>; have no plan, be innocent of forethought; improvise

7 make no provision, take no thought of tomorrow *or* the morrow, seize the day, *carpe diem* <L, Horace>, let tomorrow take care of itself, live for the day, live like the grasshopper, live from hand to mouth; "eat, drink, and be merry"—Bible; make it up as one goes along

ADJS **8 unprepared, unready,** unprimed; surprised, caught short, caught napping, caught with one's pants down <nf>, taken by surprise, taken aback, taken unawares, blindsided <nf>, caught off balance, caught off base <nf>, tripped up; **unarranged,** unorganized, haphazard; makeshift, rough-and-ready, **extemporaneous,** extemporized, improvised, ad-lib *and* off the top of one's head <nf>; spontaneous, ad hoc; impromptu, snap <nf>; **unmade,** unmanufactured, unconcocted, unhatched, uncontrived, undevised, unplanned, unpremeditated, undeliberated, unstudied; hasty, precipitate 401.10; unbegun

9 unfitted, unfit, ill-fitted, unsuited, unadapted, unqualified, disqualified, incompetent, incapable; **unequipped, unfurnished,** unarmed, ill-equipped, ill-furnished, **unprovided,** ill-provided 992.12

10 raw, crude; uncooked, unbaked, unboiled; underdone, undercooked, rare, red; half-baked

11 immature, unripe, underripe, unripened, impubic, **raw, green,** callow, wet behind the ears, cub, cubbish, unfledged, fledgling, unseasoned, unmellowed, vulnerable; ungrown, half-grown, adolescent, juvenile, puerile, boyish, girlish, inchoate; undigested, ill-digested; half-baked <nf>; half-cocked *and* at half cock <nf>, wet behind the ears

12 undeveloped, unfinished, unlicked, unformed; unfashioned, unwrought, unlabored, unworked, unprocessed, untreated; unblown; uncut, unhewn; **underdeveloped;** backward, arrested, stunted; **crude, rude, coarse, unpolished, unrefined; uncultivated, uncultured; rough,** roughcast, roughhewn, **in the rough; rudimentary,** rudimental; embryonic, in embryo, fetal, *in ovo* <L>; **oversimple, simplistic,** reductive, reductionistic, unsophisticated; untrained; rusty, unpracticed; scratch <nf>

13 <in the raw or original state> **natural, native, in a state of nature,** in the raw; inartificial, artless 416.5; virgin, virginal, pristine, untouched, unsullied

14 fallow, untilled, uncultivated, unsown, unworked

15 improvident, prodigal, unproviding; **thriftless, unthrifty,** uneconomical; grasshopper; hand-to-mouth; **shiftless, feckless, thoughtless, heedless;** happy-go-lucky; negligent 340.10

407 ACCOMPLISHMENT

<act of accomplishing; entire performance>

NOUNS **1 accomplishment, achievement, fulfillment, performance, execution, effectuation,** implementation, carrying out *or* through, **discharge, dispatch, consummation, realization,**

attainment, production, fruition; **success** 409; track record *or* track <nf>; *fait accompli* <Fr>, accomplished fact, done deal <nf>; mission accomplished

2 **completion,** completing, **finish,** finishing, **conclusion, end,** ending, **termination,** terminus, **close, windup** <nf>, rounding off *or* out, topping off, wrapping up, wrap-up, finalization; **perfection,** culmination 1002.3; ripeness, maturity, maturation, full development

3 **finishing touch,** final touch, last touch, last stroke, final *or* finishing stroke, finisher <nf>, icing the cake, the icing on the cake; copestone, capstone, crown, crowning of the edifice; capper <nf>, climax 198.2

VERBS 4 **accomplish, achieve, effect, effectuate, compass, consummate, do, execute, produce, deliver, make,** enact, **perform, discharge, fulfill, realize, attain,** run with *and* hack *and* swing <nf>; **work,** work out; **dispatch, dispose of,** knock off <nf>, polish off <nf>, take care of <nf>, **deal with,** put away, make short work of; succeed, manage 409.12; come through *and* do the job <nf>, **do** *or* turn the trick <nf>

5 **bring about, bring to pass,** bring to effect, **bring to a happy issue; implement, carry out, carry through,** carry into execution; **bring off, carry off, pull off** <nf>; **put through,** get through, **put over** *or* **across** <nf>; come through with <nf>

6 **complete, perfect, finish, finish off, conclude, terminate, end,** bring to a close, carry to completion, prosecute to a conclusion; **get through, get done;** come off of, get through with, get it over, get it over with, **finish up;** clean up *and* wind up *and* button up *and* sew up *and* wrap up *and* mop up <nf>, close up *or* out; put the lid on *and* call it a day <nf>; **round off** *or* **out, wind up** <nf>, **top off;** top out, crown, cap 198.9; climax, culminate; **give the finishing touches** *or* **strokes,** put the finishing touches *or* strokes on, lick *or* whip into shape, finalize, put the icing on the cake

7 **do to perfection, do up brown** <nf>, **do to a turn,** do to a T *or* to a frazzle *or* down to the ground <nf>, not do by halves, do oneself proud <nf>, use every trick in the book, leave no loose ends, leave nothing hanging; go all lengths, go to all lengths, go the whole length *or* way, go the limit *and* go whole hog *and* go all out *and* shoot the works *and* go for broke <nf>

8 **ripen,** ripe <nf>, **mature,** maturate; bloom, blow, blossom, flourish; come to fruition, bear fruit; **mellow;** grow up, reach maturity, reach its season; come *or* draw to a head; bring to maturity, bring to a head

ADJS 9 **completing,** completive, completory, **finishing,** consummative, culminating, terminative, conclusive, **concluding,** fulfilling, finalizing, crowning; ultimate, **last, final,** terminal

10 **accomplished, achieved, effected,** effectuated, implemented, **consummated, executed, discharged, fulfilled, realized,** compassed, **attained; dispatched, disposed of,** set at rest; wrought, wrought out

11 **completed, done, finished, concluded, terminated, ended,** finished up; signed, sealed, *and* delivered; cleaned up *and* wound up *and* sewed *or* sewn up *and* wrapped up *and* mopped up <nf>; washed up <nf>, **through,** done with; all over with, all said *and* done, all over but the shouting; perfective

12 **complete, perfect, consummate,** polished; exhaustive, thorough 794.10; fully realized

13 **ripe, mature,** matured, maturated, seasoned; blooming, abloom; **mellow,** full-grown, fully developed

ADVS 14 **to completion,** to the end, to the full, to the limit; to a turn, to a T <nf>, to a finish, to a frazzle <nf>

INTERJS 15 so much for that!, that's that!, *voilà!* <Fr>

408 NONACCOMPLISHMENT

NOUNS 1 **nonaccomplishment, nonachievement, nonperformance,** inexecution, nonexecution, nondischarging, **noncompletion,** nonconsummation, nonfulfillment, unfulfillment; nonfeasance, omission; **neglect** 340; loose ends, rough edges; endless task, work of Penelope, Sisyphean labor *or* toil *or* task; **disappointment** 132; **failure** 410

VERBS 2 neglect, leave undone 340.7, fail 410.8–10,13; be disappointed 132.4

ADJS 3 **unaccomplished, unachieved, unperformed,** unexecuted, undischarged, unfulfilled, unconsummated, unrealized, unattained; **unfinished, uncompleted, undone;** open-ended; **neglected** 340.14; **disappointed** 132.5

409 SUCCESS

NOUNS 1 **success, successfulness,** fortunate outcome, prosperous issue, favorable termination; **prosperity** 1010; accomplishment 407; **victory** 411; the big time

2 sure success, foregone conclusion, sure-fire proposition <nf>; **winner** *and* **natural** <nf>; shoo-in *and* **sure thing** *and* sure bet *and* **cinch** *and* lead-pipe cinch <nf>

3 **great success, triumph,** resounding triumph, brilliant success, striking success, **meteoric** success; **stardom; success story;** brief *or*

momentary success, nine days' wonder, flash in the pan, fad; best seller

4 <nf terms> **smash, hit,** smash hit, gas, gasser, blast, boffo, showstopper, barn-burner, howling *or* roaring success, one for the book, wow, wowser, sensation, overnight sensation, sensaysh, phenom, sockeroo

5 **score, hit, bull's-eye;** goal, touchdown; slam, grand slam; strike; hole, hole in one; home run, homer <nf>

6 <successful person> **winner,** star, star in the firmament, success, superstar *and* megastar <nf>; phenom *and* comer <nf>, whiz kid, VIP; **victor** 411.2

VERBS **7 succeed, prevail,** be successful, be crowned with success, meet with success, do very well, do famously, deliver, come through *and* make a go of it <nf>; **go, come off,** go off; **prosper** 1010.7; fare well, work well, do *or* work wonders, go to town *or* go great guns <nf>; **make a hit** <nf>, click *and* connect <nf>, **catch on** *and* take <nf>, catch fire, have legs <nf>; **go over** *and* go over big *or* with a bang <nf>; pass, graduate, qualify, win one's spurs *or* wings, get one's credentials, be blooded; pass with flying colors

8 **achieve one's purpose, gain one's end** *or* **ends,** secure one's object, attain one's objective, do what one set out to do, reach one's goal, bring it off, pull it off *and* hack it *and* swing it <nf>; make one's point; play it *or* handle it just right <nf>, not put a foot wrong, play it like a master

9 **score a success,** score, notch one up <nf>, hit it, hit the mark, ring the bell <nf>, turn up trumps, break the bank *or* make a killing <nf>, hit the jackpot <nf>

10 **make good, come through, achieve success,** make a success, have a good thing going <nf>, **make it** <nf>, get into the zone *or* bubble <nf>, wing *and* cruise, <nf>, hit one's stride, **make one's mark, give a good account of oneself,** bear oneself with credit, do all right by oneself *and* **do oneself proud,** make out like a bandit <nf>; **advance, progress,** make one's way, make headway, **get on,** come on <nf>, **get ahead** <nf>; go places, **go far;** rise, **rise in the world,** work one's way up, step up, come *or* move up in the world, claw *or* scrabble one's way up, mount the ladder of success, pull oneself up by one's bootstraps; **arrive,** get there <nf>, make the scene <nf>; come out on top, come out on top of the heap <nf>; **be a success,** have it made *or* hacked *or* wrapped up <nf>, have the world at one's feet, eat *or* live high on the hog <nf>; **make a noise in the world** <nf>, cut a swath, set the world *or* river *or* Thames on fire; break through, score *or* make a breakthrough

11 **succeed with,** crown with success; **make a go of it; accomplish,** compass, **achieve** 407.4; **bring off, carry off, pull off** <nf>, turn *or* do the trick <nf>, **put through,** bring through; **put over** *or* **across** <nf>; get away with it *and* get by <nf>

12 **manage, contrive, succeed in; make out, get on** *or* **along** <nf>, come on *or* along <nf>, go on; **scrape along,** worry along, **muddle through** <Brit>, get by, **manage somehow; make it** <nf>, **make the grade,** cut the mustard *and* hack it <nf>; **clear,** clear the hurdle; **negotiate** <nf>, **engineer; swing** <nf>, put over <nf>, put through

13 **win through, win out** <nf>, come through <nf>, rise to the occasion, beat the game *and* beat the system <nf>; **triumph** 411.3; weather out, **weather the storm,** live through, keep one's head above water; come up fighting *or* smiling, not know when one is beaten, persevere 360.2

ADJS **14 successful,** succeeding, crowned with success; **prosperous,** fortunate 1010.14; **triumphant;** ahead of the game, out in front, on top, sitting on top of the world *and* sitting pretty <nf>, on top of the heap <nf>; assured of success, surefire, made; coming *and* on the up-and-up <nf>

ADVS **15 successfully,** swimmingly <nf>, well, to some purpose, to good purpose; beyond all expectation, beyond one's fondest dreams, from rags to riches, with flying colors

410 FAILURE

NOUNS **1 failure, unsuccessfulness,** unsuccess, successlessness, nonsuccess; no go <nf>; ill success; futility, uselessness 391; **defeat** 412; losing game, **no-win situation;** nonaccomplishment 408; **bankruptcy** 625.3

2 <nf terms> **flop,** flopperoo, megaflop, gigaflop, **bust,** frost, **fizzle,** lemon, clinker, dud, non-starter, **loser, washout,** turkey, bomb, flat failure, dull thud, total loss; the pits

3 **collapse, crash,** smash, comedown, breakdown, derailment, **fall,** pratfall <nf>, stumble, tumble, **downfall,** cropper <chiefly Brit nf>; nose dive *and* tailspin <nf>; deflation, bursting of the bubble, letdown, **disappointment** 132

4 **miss,** near-miss; **slip, slipup** <nf>, slip 'twixt cup *and* lip; **error, mistake** 975.3

5 **abortion, miscarriage,** miscarrying, abortive attempt, vain attempt; wild-goose chase, merry chase; **misfire, flash in the pan,** wet squib, malfunction, glitch <nf>; **dud** <nf>; **flunk** <nf>, **washout** <nf>

6 **fiasco, botch,** botch-up, cock-up *and* balls-up <Brit nf>, bungle, hash, mess, muddle, foozle *and* bollix

and bitch-up *and* screw-up *and* fuck-up <nf>

7 <unsuccessful person> **failure,** flash in the pan; bankrupt 625.4

8 <nf terms> **loser, non-starter,** born loser, **flop,** washout, false alarm, **dud,** also-ran, bum, dull tool, bust, schlemiel, turkey, hopeless case

VERBS 9 **fail,** be unsuccessful, fail of success, not work *and* not come off <nf>, come to grief, **lose,** not make the grade, be found wanting, not come up to the mark; not pass, **flunk** *and* **flunk out** <nf>; go to the wall, **go on the rocks;** labor in vain 391.8; come away empty-handed; tap out <nf>, go bankrupt 625.7

10 <nf terms> **lose out,** get left, **not make it,** not hack it, not get to first base, drop the ball, go for a Burton *and* come a cropper <Brit>, **flop,** flummox, fall flat on one's ass, lay an egg, go over like a lead balloon, draw a blank, bomb, drop a bomb; fold, fold up; take it on the chin, take the count; crap out; strike out, fan, whiff

11 **sink, founder,** go down, go under <nf>; **slip,** go downhill, be on the skids <nf>

12 **fall, fall down** <nf>, fall *or* drop by the wayside, fall flat, fall flat on one's face; fall down on the job <nf>; **fall short, fall through,** fall to the ground; fall between two stools; **fall dead; collapse,** fall in; **crash,** go to smash <nf>

13 **come to nothing,** hang up *and* get nowhere <nf>; **poop out** *and* go phut <nf>; be all over *or* up with; fail miserably *or* ignominiously; fizz out *and* **fizzle** *and* **fizzle out** *and* peter out *and* poop out <nf>; **misfire,** flash in the pan, hang fire; **blow up, blow up in one's face, explode, end** *or* **go up in smoke,** go up like a rocket *and* come down like a stick

14 **miss, miss the mark,** miss one's aim; slip, slip up <nf>; goof <nf>, blunder, foozle <nf>, **err** 975.9; **botch, bungle** 414.11,12; waste one's effort, run around in circles, spin one's wheels

15 **miscarry,** abort, be stillborn, die aborning; **go amiss,** go astray, **go wrong,** go on a wrong tack, take a wrong turn, derail, go off the rails

16 **stall,** stick, die, go dead, **conk out** <nf>, sputter *and* stop, run out of gas *or* steam, come to a shuddering halt, come to a dead stop

17 **flunk** *or* **flunk out** <nf>; **fail,** pluck *and* plough <Brit nf>, bust *and* wash out <nf>

ADJS 18 **unsuccessful,** successless, failing; failed, *manqué* <Fr>, stickit <Scot>; **unfortunate** 1011.14; **abortive,** miscarrying, miscarried, stillborn, died aborning; fruitless, bootless, no-win <nf>, futile, useless 391.9; lame, **ineffectual,** ineffective, inefficacious, of no effect; malfunctioning, glitchy <nf>

ADVS 19 **unsuccessfully,** successlessly, **without success;** fruitlessly, bootlessly, ineffectually, ineffectively, inefficaciously, lamely; to little *or* no purpose, **in vain**

411 VICTORY

NOUNS 1 **victory, triumph, conquest,** subduing, subdual; a feather in one's cap <nf>; total victory, grand slam; **championship,** crown, laurels, cup, trophy, belt, blue ribbon, first prize; V-for-victory sign *or* V-sign, raised arms; victory lap; **winning,** win <nf>; knockout *or* KO <nf>; easy victory, walkover *and* walkaway <nf>, pushover *and* picnic <nf>; runaway victory, laugher *and* romp *and* shellacking <nf>; landslide victory, landslide; Pyrrhic victory, Cadmean victory; moral victory; winning streak <nf>; winning ways, triumphalism; **success** 409; ascendancy 417.6; mastery 612.2

2 **victor, winner,** victress, victrix, triumpher; **conqueror,** defeater, **vanquisher,** subduer, subjugator, *conquistador* <Sp>; top dog <nf>; master, master of the situation; hero, conquering hero; champion, champ *and* number one <nf>; easy winner, sure winner, shoo-in <nf>; pancratiast; runner-up

VERBS 3 **triumph, prevail, be victorious,** come out ahead, come out on top <nf>, clean up, chain victory to one's car; **win, gain, capture, carry;** win out <nf>, **win through,** carry it, carry off *or* away; **win** *or* **carry** *or* **gain the day,** win the battle, come out first, finish in front, make a killing <nf>, remain in possession of the field; get *or* have the last laugh; **win the prize,** win the palm *or* bays *or* laurels, bear the palm, take the cake <nf>, win one's spurs *or* wings; fluke *and* win by a fluke <nf>; **win by a nose** *and* nose out *and* edge out <nf>; **succeed;** break the record, set a new mark <nf>

4 **win hands down** *and* win going away <nf>, win in a canter *and* walk *and* waltz <nf>, romp *or* breeze *or* waltz home <nf>, **walk off** *or* **away with,** waltz off with <nf>, walk off with the game, **walk over** <nf>; have the game in one's own hands, have it all one's way; **take** *or* carry by storm, sweep aside all obstacles, carry all before one, make short work of

5 **defeat** 412.6, **triumph over, prevail over,** best, **beat** <nf>, **get the better** *or* **best of; surmount, overcome,** outmatch, rise above

6 **gain the ascendancy,** come out on top <nf>, **get the advantage, gain the upper** or whip hand, dominate the field, get the edge on *or* jump on *or* drop on <nf>, get a leg up on <nf>, get a stranglehold on

ADJS 7 **victorious, triumphant,** triumphal, **winning,**

prevailing; conquering, vanquishing, defeating, overcoming; ahead of the game, ascendant, in the ascendant, in ascendancy, sitting on top of the world *and* sitting pretty <nf>, dominant 612.18; successful; flushed with success *or* victory

8 **undefeated, unbeaten, unvanquished, unconquered,** unsubdued, unquelled, unbowed

ADVS **9** **triumphantly,** victoriously, **in triumph;** by a mile

412 DEFEAT

NOUNS **1** **defeat; beating,** drubbing, thrashing; clobbering *and* hiding *and* lathering *and* whipping *and* lambasting *and* trimming *and* licking <nf>, trouncing; **vanquishment, conquest, conquering,** mastery, subjugation, subduing, subdual; **overthrow,** overturn, overcoming; **fall, downfall,** collapse, smash, crash, **undoing, ruin,** debacle, derailing, derailment; **destruction** 395; deathblow, quietus; Waterloo; failure 410

2 **discomfiture, rout, repulse,** rebuff; **frustration,** bafflement, confusion; **checkmate,** check, balk, foil <old>; **reverse,** reversal, **setback**

3 **utter defeat,** total defeat, overwhelming defeat, crushing defeat, smashing defeat, decisive defeat; no contest; **smearing** *and* **pasting** *and* creaming *and* **clobbering** *and* **shellacking** *and* whopping *and* whomping <nf>; whitewash *or* **whitewashing** <nf>, **shutout**

4 **ignominious defeat,** abject defeat, inglorious defeat, disastrous defeat, utter rout, bitter defeat, stinging defeat, embarrassing defeat

5 **loser,** defeatee <nf>; the vanquished; good loser, game loser, sport *or* **good sport** <nf>; poor sport, poor loser; **underdog, also-ran;** booby *and* duck <nf>; stooge *and* fall guy <nf>; victim 96.11

VERBS **6** **defeat, worst, best, get the better** *or* **best of,** be too good for, be too much for, be more than a match for; **outdo,** outgeneral, outmaneuver, outclass, outshine, outpoint, outsail, outrun, outfight, etc; **triumph over; knock on the head,** deal a deathblow to, put *hors de combat* <Fr>; undo, ruin, destroy 395.10; beat by a nose *and* nose out *and* edge out <nf>

7 **overcome,** surmount; **overpower, overmaster,** overmatch; **overthrow, overturn,** overset; put the skids to <nf>; **upset,** trip, trip up, lay by the heels, send flying *or* sprawling; silence, floor, deck, make bite the dust; overcome oneself, master oneself; kick the habit <nf>

8 **overwhelm,** whelm, snow under <nf>, overbear, defeat utterly, deal a crushing *or* smashing defeat; **discomfit, rout, put to rout,** put to flight, scatter, stampede, panic; confound; put out of court

9 <nf terms> **clobber, trim, skin alive, beat,** skunk, drub, massacre, marmelize <Brit>, lick, whip, thrash, knock off, trim, hide, cut to pieces, run rings *or* circles around, throw for a loss, lather, trounce, **lambaste,** skin alive; fix, settle, settle one's hash, make one say 'uncle,' do in, lick to a frazzle, beat all hollow, beat one's brains out, cook one's goose, make hamburger *or* mincemeat out of, mop up the floor with, sandbag, banjax, bulldoze, steamroller, **smear,** paste, cream, **shellac,** whup, whop, whomp, shut out

10 **conquer, vanquish,** quell, **suppress, put down, subdue, subjugate,** put under the yoke, master; **reduce,** prostrate, fell, **flatten, break, smash, crush, humble,** bend, **bring one to his knees;** roll *or* trample in the dust, tread *or* trample underfoot, trample down, ride down, ride *or* run roughshod over, override; have one's way with

11 **thwart, frustrate,** dash, check, deal a check to, checkmate 1012.15

12 **lose,** lose out <nf>, lose the day, come off second best, **get** *or* **have the worst of it, meet one's Waterloo; fall,** succumb, tumble, bow, go down, go under, **bite** *or* **lick the dust,** take the count <nf>; snatch defeat from the jaws of victory; throw in the towel, say 'uncle'; have enough

ADJS **13** **lost,** unwon

14 **defeated, worsted, bested, outdone; beaten, discomfited,** put to rout, **routed,** scattered, stampeded, panicked; confounded; **overcome, overthrown,** upset, overturned, overmatched, **overpowered, overwhelmed,** whelmed, **overmastered,** overborne, overridden; **fallen,** down; floored, silenced; **undone, done for** <nf>, **ruined,** kaput *and* on the skids <nf>, *hors de combat* <Fr>; all up with <nf>

15 <nf terms> **beat, clobbered, licked, whipped,** trimmed, sandbagged, banjaxed, done in, lathered, creamed, shellacked, trounced, lambasted, settled, fixed; skinned alive; thrown for a loss

16 **shut out,** skunked *and* blanked *and* whitewashed <nf>, scoreless, not on the scoreboard

17 **conquered, vanquished,** quelled, suppressed, put down, **subdued, subjugated,** mastered; **reduced,** prostrate *or* prostrated, felled, **flattened,** smashed, **crushed,** broken; **humbled,** brought to one's knees

18 **irresistible, overpowering, overcoming, overwhelming, overmastering,** overmatching, avalanchine

413 SKILL

NOUNS **1** **skill,** skillfulness, **expertness, expertise, proficiency,** callidity <old>, craft, moxie <nf>, **cleverness; dexterity,** dexterousness *or* dextrousness; **adroitness,** address, **adeptness,** deftness, handiness, hand, practical ability; coordination, timing; quickness, readiness; **competence,** capability, capacity, ability; efficiency; **facility, prowess;** grace, style, finesse; **tact, tactfulness, diplomacy;** *savoir-faire* <Fr>; **artistry;** artfulness; **craftsmanship,** workmanship, artisanship; **know-how** *and* savvy *and* bag of tricks <nf>; technical skill, **technique, touch,** technical brilliance, technical mastery, **virtuosity,** bravura, wizardry; brilliance 920.2; cunning 415; **ingenuity,** ingeniousness, resource, resourcefulness, wit; **mastery,** mastership, **command,** control, grip; steady hand; marksmanship, seamanship, airmanship, horsemanship, etc

2 **agility, nimbleness, spryness,** lightness, featliness

3 **versatility, ambidexterity,** many-sidedness, all-roundedness <nf>, Renaissance versatility; **adaptability,** adjustability, flexibility; broad-gauge, many hats; Renaissance man *or* woman

4 **talent, flair,** strong flair, **gift, endowment,** dowry, dower, natural gift *or* endowment, **genius,** instinct, **faculty,** bump <nf>; **power, ability, capability, capacity,** potential; caliber; **forte,** speciality, métier, long suit, strong point, strong suit, strength; **equipment, qualification;** talents, powers, naturals <old>, parts; the goods *and* the stuff *and* the right stuff *and* what it takes *and* the makings <nf>

5 **aptitude,** inborn *or* innate aptitude, innate ability, genius, aptness, felicity, flair; **bent, turn,** propensity, **leaning,** inclination, tendency; turn for, capacity for, gift for, genius for; feeling for, good head for, an eye for, an ear for, a hand for, a way with

6 **knack, art, hang, trick,** way; **touch,** feel

7 **art, science, craft; skill; technique,** technic, **technics,** technology, technical knowledge *or* skill, technical know-how <nf>; **mechanics,** mechanism; method

8 **accomplishment, acquirement, attainment;** finish; coup, feat, clincher, classic; hit, smash hit

9 **experience, practice,** practical knowledge *or* skill, hands-on experience <nf>, field-work; background, past experience, seasoning, tempering; **worldly wisdom,** knowledge of the world, **sophistication;** sagacity 920.4

10 **masterpiece, masterwork,** *chef d'œuvre* <Fr>; **master stroke,** *coup de maître* <Fr>; **feat,** *tour de force* <Fr>, *pièce de résistance* <Fr>, magnum opus, classic, treasure, work of art, epic, crème de la crème, artistry

11 **expert, adept,** proficient, genius; **artist, craftsman,** artisan, skilled workman, journeyman; technician; seasoned *or* experienced hand; shark *or* sharp *or* sharpy *and* no slouch *and* tough act to follow <nf>; graduate; **professional, pro** <nf>; **jack-of-all-trades,** all-rounder, Renaissance man *or* woman, handy man, Admirable Crichton <J M Barrie>; **authority,** maven <nf>, know-it-all <nf>; professor; **consultant,** expert consultant, specialist, attaché, technical adviser; counselor, adviser, mentor; boffin <Brit nf>, pundit, savant 929.3; diplomatist, diplomat; politician, statesman, statesperson, elder statesman; connoisseur, cognoscente; *cordon bleu* <Fr>; marksman, crack shot, dead shot; walking encyclopedia <nf>, illuminati

12 **talented person, talent,** man *or* woman of parts, gifted person, prodigy, natural <nf>, **genius,** mental genius, intellectual genius, intellectual prodigy, mental giant; rocket scientist *and* brain surgeon <nf>; phenom <nf>; gifted child, **child prodigy,** wunderkind, whiz kid *and* boy wonder <nf>; polymath

13 **master, past master**, grand master; master hand, world-class performer, champion, **good hand,** dab hand <Brit nf>, skilled *or* practiced hand, practitioner, specialist; first chair; **prodigy; wizard,** magician; **virtuoso;** maestro; **genius,** man *or* woman of genius, paragon; mastermind; master spirit, mahatma, sage 921.1

14 <nf terms> **ace, star, superstar, crackerjack,** dab, great, all-time great, topnotcher, first-rater, whiz, flash, hot stuff, pisser, piss-cutter, pistol, no slouch, world-beater, hot rock, the one who wrote the book, right person for the job, smart cookie

15 **champion,** champ <nf>, victor, title-holder, world champion; **record holder,** world-record holder; laureate; medal winner, Olympic medal winner, medalist, award winner, prizeman, prizetaker, **prizewinner,** titleholder; most valuable player *or* MVP; hall of famer

16 **veteran,** vet <nf>, seasoned *or* grizzled veteran, **old pro** <nf>; **old hand, old-timer** <nf> one of the old guard, old stager <Brit>; old campaigner, war-horse *or* old war-horse <nf>; salt *and* old salt *and* old sea dog <nf>, shellback <nf>

17 **sophisticate,** man of experience, **man of the world;** slicker *and* city slicker <nf>; man-about-town; **cosmopolitan,** cosmopolite, citizen of the world

VERBS 18 **excel in** *or* **at, shine in** *or* **at** <nf>, be master of; write the book <nf>, have a good command of, feel comfortable with, be at home in; **have a gift** *or* **flair** *or* **talent** *or* **bent** *or* **faculty** *or* **turn for,** have a bump for <nf>, be a natural *and* be cut out *or* born to be <nf>, **have a good head for,** have an ear for, have an eye for, be born for, show aptitude *or* talent for, have something to spare; have the knack *or* touch, have a way with, have the right touch, have the hang of it, have a lot going for one <nf>, be able to do it blindfolded *or* standing on one's head <nf>; have something *or* plenty on the ball <nf>

19 know backwards and forwards, know one's stuff *or* **know one's onions** <nf>, **know the ropes** *and* **know all the ins** *and* **outs** <nf>, know from A to Z *or* alpha to omega, know like the back of one's hand *or* a book, know from the ground up, know all the tricks *or* moves, know all the tricks of the trade, know all the moves of the game; **know what's what, know a thing or two,** know what it's all about, know the score *and* know all the answers <nf>, "know a hawk from a handsaw"—Shakespeare; have savvy <nf>; **know one's way about,** know the ways of the world, have been around <nf>, have been around the block <nf>, have been through the mill <nf>, have cut one's wisdom teeth *or* eyeteeth <nf>, be long in the tooth, **not be born yesterday;** get around <nf>

20 exercise skill, handle oneself well, demonstrate one's ability, **strut one's stuff** *and* hotdog *and* grandstand *and* showboat <nf>, show expertise; cut one's coat according to one's cloth, play one's cards well

21 be versatile, double in brass *and* wear more than one hat <nf>

ADJS **22 skillful, good,** goodish, excellent, **expert, proficient; dexterous,** callid <old>, good at, **adroit, deft, adept, coordinated,** well-coordinated, **apt,** no mean, **handy;** quick, ready; **clever,** cute *and* slick *and* slick as a whistle <nf>, neat, clean; fancy, graceful, stylish; some *or* quite some *or* quite a *or* every bit a <nf>; **masterly, masterful;** magistral, magisterial; authoritative, consummate, professional; the compleat *or* the complete; crack *or* crackerjack <nf>, ace, first-rate, supreme; whiz-kid <nf>; **virtuoso,** bravura, technically superb; **brilliant** 919.14; cunning 415.12; tactful, diplomatic, politic, statesmanlike; **ingenious,** resourceful, daedal, Daedalian; **artistic; workmanlike, well-done**

23 agile, nimble, spry, sprightly, fleet, featly, peart <nf>, light, graceful, nimble-footed, light-footed, sure-footed; nimble-fingered, neat-fingered, neat-handed

24 competent, capable, able, efficient, qualified, fit, fitted, suited, worthy; journeyman; fit *or* fitted for; **equal to, up to;** up to snuff <nf>, up to the mark <nf>, *au fait* <Fr>; well-qualified, well-fitted, well-suited

25 versatile, ambidextrous, two-handed, **all around** <nf>, broad-gauge, **well-rounded, many-sided,** generally capable; **adaptable,** adjustable, flexible, resourceful, supple, ready for anything; amphibious

26 skilled, accomplished; practiced; professional, career; trained, coached, prepared, primed, finished; at one's best, at concert pitch; initiated, initiate; technical; conversant

27 skilled in, proficient in, adept in, versed in, **good at,** expert at, **handy at, a hand** *or* **good hand at,** master of, strong in, at home in; **up on,** well up on, well-versed 928.20

28 experienced, practiced, mature, matured, ripe, ripened, **seasoned,** tried, well-tried, tried *and* true, **veteran,** old, an old dog at <nf>; sagacious 919.16; **worldly, worldly-wise,** world-wise, wise in the ways of the world, knowing, shrewd, **sophisticated,** cosmopolitan, cosmopolite, blasé, dry behind the ears, not born yesterday, long in the tooth; been there done that <nf>

29 talented, gifted, endowed, with a flair; born for, made for, cut out for <nf>, with an eye for, with an ear for, with a bump for <nf>

30 well-laid, well-devised, well-contrived, well-designed, well-planned, well-worked-out; well-invented, *ben trovato* <Ital>; **well-weighed, well-reasoned,** well-considered, well-thought-out; **cunning, clever**

ADVS **31 skillfully, expertly, proficiently,** excellently, well; **cleverly,** neatly, ingeniously, resourcefully; cunningly 415.13; **dexterously, adroitly, deftly, adeptly,** aptly, handily; agilely, nimbly, featly, spryly; **competently, capably, ably,** efficiently; **masterfully;** brilliantly, superbly, with genius, with a touch of genius; **artistically,** artfully; with skill, with consummate skill, with finesse

414 UNSKILLFULNESS

NOUNS **1 unskillfulness,** skill-lessness, **inexpertness, unproficiency, uncleverness;** unintelligence 922; inadeptness, **undexterousness,** indexterity, **undeftness;** inefficiency; **incompetence** *or* incompetency, **inability, incapability, incapacity,** inadequacy; ineffectiveness, **ineffectuality; mediocrity,** pedestrianism; **inaptitude,** inaptness, unaptness, ineptness, maladroitness; unfitness, unfittedness; untrainedness, unschooledness; thoughtlessness, inattentiveness; maladjustment; rustiness <nf>, nonuse

2 inexperience, unexperience, unexperiencedness, unpracticedness; **rawness, greenness,** unripeness, callowness, unfledgedness, unreadiness, immaturity; ignorance 930; **unfamiliarity,** unacquaintance, unacquaintedness, unaccustomedness; rawness, greenness, **amateurishness,** amateurism, unprofessionalness, unprofessionalism

3 clumsiness, awkwardness, bumblingness,

maladroitness, unhandiness, left-handedness, heavy-handedness, fumblitis *and* ham-handedness <nf>, ham-fistedness <Brit nf>; handful of thumbs; **ungainliness,** uncouthness, **ungracefulness,** gracelessness, inelegance; **gawkiness,** gawkishness; **lubberliness, oafishness,** loutishness, boorishness, clownishness, lumpishness; **cumbersomeness,** hulkiness, **ponderousness; unwieldiness, unmanageability**

4 **bungling, blundering,** boggling, **fumbling,** malperformance, muffing, **botching,** botchery, blunderheadedness; **sloppiness, carelessness** 340.2; too many cooks

5 **bungle, blunder, botch,** flub, boner *and* bonehead play <nf>, boggle, bobble *and* boo-boo *and* screw-up *and* ball-up *and* fuck-up <nf>, foozle <nf>, bevue; **fumble, muff,** fluff, flop, miscue <nf>, misfire, mishit; **slip,** trip, stumble; *gaucherie* and *étourderie* and *balourdise* <Fr>; **hash** *and* **mess** <nf>; bad job, sad work, clumsy performance, poor show *or* performance; off day; **error, mistake** 975.3

6 **mismanagement, mishandling,** misdirection, misguidance, misconduct, **misgovernment,** misrule; misadministration, maladministration; malfeasance, malpractice, misfeasance, wrongdoing 655; nonfeasance, omission, **negligence,** neglect 340.6; bad policy, impolicy, inexpedience *or* inexpediency 996

7 **incompetent,** incapable; dull tool, mediocrity, duffer *and* hacker <nf>, no great shakes, no prize, no prize package, no brain surgeon, no rocket scientist; no conjuror; one who will not set the Thames on fire <Brit>; greenhorn 930.8

8 **bungler, blunderer,** blunderhead, boggler, slubberer, bumbler, hack, **fumbler, botcher;** bull in a china shop, ox; lubber, lobby, **lout, oaf,** gawk, boor, **clown,** slouch; clodhopper, clodknocker, bumpkin, yokel; **clod,** clot <Brit>, **dolt,** blockhead 924.4; awkward squad; blind leading the blind

9 <nf terms> **goof,** goofer, goofball, goofus, foul-up, fuck-up, screw-up, bobbler, bonehead, dub, jerk, bozo, foozler, clumsy, fumble-fist, klutz, **butterfingers,** muff, muffer, stumblebum, stumblebunny, duffer, lummox, **slob,** lump; gowk <Brit>, rube, hick

VERBS 10 not know how, not have the knack, not have it in one <nf>; not be up to <nf>; not be versed; muddle along, pedestrianize; show one's ignorance, not have a clue <nf>

11 **bungle, blunder,** bumble, boggle, bobble, **muff,** muff one's cue *or* lines, **fumble,** be all thumbs, have a handful of thumbs; **flounder,** muddle, lumber; stumble, **slip,** trip, trip over one's own feet, get in one's own way, miss one's footing, miscue; commit a faux pas, commit a gaffe; blunder on *or* upon *or* into; blunder away, be not one's day; **botch,** mar, **spoil, butcher, murder,** make sad work of; play havoc with, play mischief with

12 <nf terms> **goof, pull a boner,** bobble, lay an egg, put *or* stick one's foot in it, stub one's toe, step on one's schvantz *or* pecker, drop the ball, drop a pop-up, drop a brick, bonehead into it; **blow,** blow it, bitch, bitch up, hash up, **mess up,** flub, flub the dub, **make a mess** *or* **hash of,** make a faux pas, foul up, fuck up, goof up, bollix up, **screw up, louse up, gum up,** gum up the works, bugger, bugger up, play the deuce *or* devil *or* hell *or* merry hell with; go at it ass-backwards; put one's foot in one's mouth; self-destruct

13 **mismanage, mishandle, misconduct,** misdirect, misguide, **misgovern, misrule;** misadminister, maladminister; be negligent 340.6

14 not know what one is about, not know one's interest, lose one's touch, make an ass of oneself, **make a fool of oneself,** lose face, stultify oneself, have egg on one's face, put oneself out of court, stand in one's own light, not know on which side one's bread is buttered, not know one's ass from one's elbow *or* a hole in the ground, kill the goose that lays the golden egg, cut one's own throat, dig one's own grave, behave self-destructively, **play with fire,** burn one's fingers, jump out of the frying pan into the fire, lock the barn door after the horse is stolen, **count one's chickens before they are hatched,** buy a pig in a poke, aim at a pigeon and kill a crow, **put the cart before the horse,** put a square peg into a round hole, paint oneself into a corner, run before one can walk

ADJS 15 **unskillful,** skill-less, artless, **inexpert, unproficient, unclever;** inefficient; **undexterous, undeft, inadept, unfacile; unapt, inapt, inept,** hopeless, half-assed *and* clunky <nf>, **poor;** mediocre, pedestrian; thoughtless, inattentive; unintelligent 922.13

16 **unskilled, unaccomplished, untrained,** untaught, unschooled, untutored, uncoached, unimproved, uninitiated, **unprepared,** unprimed, unfinished, unpolished; **untalented, ungifted, unendowed; amateurish,** unprofessional, unbusinesslike, semiskilled

17 **inexperienced,** unexperienced, unversed, unconversant, **unpracticed;** undeveloped, unseasoned; **raw, green,** green as grass, unripe, callow, unfledged, immature, unmatured, fresh, wet behind the ears, not dry behind the ears, in training, **untried;** unskilled in, unpracticed in, unversed in, unconversant with, unaccustomed to, unused to, unfamiliar *or* unacquainted with, new

to, uninitiated in, a stranger to, a novice *or* tyro at; ignorant 930.12; semiskilled

18 **out of practice,** out of training *or* form, soft <nf>, out of shape *or* condition, stiff, **rusty;** gone *or* run to seed *and* over the hill *and* not what one used to be <nf>, losing one's touch, slipping, on the downgrade

19 **incompetent, incapable, unable, inadequate, unequipped, unqualified,** ill-qualified, out of one's depth, outmatched, **unfit, unfitted,** unadapted, not equal *or* up to, not cut out for <nf>; ineffective, **ineffectual;** unadjusted, maladjusted

20 **bungling, blundering,** blunderheaded, bumbling, fumbling, mistake-prone, accident-prone; **clumsy, awkward, uncoordinated,** maladroit, unhandy, left-hand, left-handed, heavy-handed, ham-handed <nf>, ham-fisted *and* cack-handed <Brit nf>, clumsy-fisted, butterfingered <nf>, **all thumbs,** fingers all thumbs, with a handful of thumbs; stiff; **ungainly,** uncouth, **ungraceful,** graceless, inelegant, *gauche* <Fr>; **gawky,** gawkish; **lubberly, loutish, oafish,** boorish, clownish, lumpish, slobbish <nf>; **sloppy, careless** 340.11; **ponderous, cumbersome,** lumbering, hulking, hulky; **unwieldy**

21 **botched, bungled,** fumbled, muffed, spoiled, **butchered,** murdered; **ill-managed,** ill-done, ill-conducted, ill-devised, ill-contrived, ill-executed; mismanaged, misconducted, **misdirected, misguided;** impolitic, ill-considered, ill-advised; negligent 340.10

22 <nf terms> **goofed-up, bobbled,** bitched, bitched-up, hashed-up, **messed-up, fouled-up, fucked-up, screwed-up, bollixed-up, loused-up,** gummed-up, buggered, buggered-up, snafued; clunky, half-assed; ass-backwards

ADVS **23** **unskillfully, inexpertly, unproficiently, uncleverly;** inefficiently; **incompetently, incapably,** inadequately, unfitly; **undexterously, undeftly, inadeptly,** unfacilely; **unaptly, inaptly, ineptly,** poorly

24 **clumsily, awkwardly; bunglingly, blunderingly; maladroitly,** unhandily; ungracefully, gracelessly, inelegantly, uncouthly; **ponderously, cumbersomely,** lumberingly, hulkingly, hulkily; ass-backwards <nf>

415 CUNNING

NOUNS **1** **cunning,** cunningness, **craft, craftiness,** callidity <old>, **artfulness, art, artifice, wiliness,** wiles, guile, **slyness,** insidiousness, suppleness <Scot>, **foxiness,** slipperiness, shiftiness, trickiness; low cunning, animal cunning; gamesmanship *and* one-upmanship <nf>; **canniness, shrewdness,** sharpness, acuteness, astuteness, **cleverness** 413.1; **resourcefulness, ingeniousness, wit,** inventiveness, readiness; subtlety, subtleness, Italian hand, fine Italian hand, finesse, restraint; acuteness, cuteness *and* cutification <nf>; Jesuitism, Jesuitry, **sophistry** 936; satanic cunning, the cunning of the serpent; sneakiness, concealment, **stealthiness, stealth** 345.4; cageyness <nf>, wariness 494.2

2 **Machiavellianism,** Machiavellism; realpolitik; **politics, diplomacy,** diplomatics; jobbery, jobbing

3 **stratagem, artifice,** art <old>, **craft, wile,** strategy, maneuver, **device,** wily device, **contrivance, expedient, design, scheme, trick,** cute trick, fetch, fakement <nf>, gimmick <nf>, **ruse, red herring, shift,** tactic, **maneuver, stroke,** stroke of policy, master stroke, **move,** coup, gambit, **ploy, dodge,** artful dodge; **game,** little game, racket *and* grift <nf>; **plot,** conspiracy, **intrigue;** sleight, feint, jugglery; method in one's madness; **subterfuge,** blind, dust in the eyes; chicanery, knavery, deceit, trickery 356.4

4 **machination, manipulation, wire-pulling** <nf>; influence, political influence, behind-the-scenes influence *or* pressure; **maneuvering,** maneuvers, tactical maneuvers; **tactics,** devices, expedients, gimmickry <nf>; web of deceit

5 **circumvention,** getting round *or* around; **evasion,** elusion, the slip <nf>, pretext; the runaround *and* buck-passing *and* passing the buck <nf>; **frustration, foiling, thwarting** 1012.3; **outwitting,** outsmarting, outguessing, **outmaneuvering**

6 **slyboots,** sly dog <nf>, **fox,** reynard, dodger, Artful Dodger <Charles Dickens>, crafty rascal, smooth *or* slick citizen <nf>, smooth *or* cool customer <nf>, smoothy, glib tongue, smooth *or* sweet talker, smoothie <nf>, charmer; **trickster,** shyster <nf>, shady character, Philadelphia lawyer <nf>; horse trader, Yankee horse trader, wheeler-dealer; **swindler** 357.3

7 **strategist, tactician; maneuverer, machinator, manipulator, wire-puller** <nf>; calculator, schemer, **intriguer**

8 **Machiavellian,** Machiavel, Machiavellianist; **diplomat,** diplomatist, **politician** 610; political realist; influence peddler; powerbroker, kingmaker; power behind the throne, gray eminence, *éminence grise* <Fr>

VERBS **9** **live by one's wits,** fly by the seat of one's pants, play a deep game; use one's fine Italian hand, finesse; shift, dodge, twist and turn, zig and zag; have something up one's sleeve, hide one's hand, cover one's path, have an out *or* a way out *or* an escape hatch; **trick,** deceive 356.14

10 **maneuver, manipulate,** pull strings *or* wires; **machinate, contrive,** angle <nf>, **jockey, engineer;**

play games <nf>; **plot, scheme, intrigue; finagle, wangle**; gerrymander; know a trick or two

11 **outwit, outfox, outsmart,** outguess, outfigure, **outmaneuver,** outgeneral, outflank, outplay, be one up on; get the better *or* best of, go one better, know a trick worth two of that; play one's trump card; **overreach,** outreach; **circumvent,** get round *or* around, **evade,** stonewall <nf>, **elude, frustrate, foil,** give the slip *or* runaround <nf>; pass the buck <nf>; pull a fast one <nf>, steal a march on; make a fool of, make a sucker *or* patsy of <nf>; be too much for, be too deep for; throw a curve <nf>, **deceive, victimize** 356.18

ADJS 12 **cunning, crafty, artful, wily,** callid <old>, guileful, **sly,** insidious, **shifty,** pawky <Brit>, arch, **smooth, slick** *and* slick as a whistle <nf>, **slippery,** snaky, serpentine, **foxy,** vulpine, feline, no flies on <nf>; **canny, shrewd,** knowing, sharp, razor-sharp, cute *or* cutesy *or* cutesy-poo <nf>, acute, astute, **clever;** resourceful, ingenious, inventive, ready; subtle; Jesuitical, **sophistical** 936.10; **tricky,** trickish, tricksy <old>, gimmicky <nf>; **Machiavellian,** Machiavellic, politic, diplomatic; strategic, tactical; deep, deep-laid; cunning as a fox *or* serpent, crazy like a fox <nf>, slippery as an eel, too clever by half; sneaky, clandestine, **stealthy** 345.12; cagey <nf>, wary 494.9; **scheming, designing; manipulative,** manipulatory; **deceitful**

ADVS 13 **cunningly, craftily, artfully,** wilily, guilefully, insidiously, shiftily, foxily, trickily, smoothly, slick <nf>; **slyly,** on the sly; **cannily, shrewdly,** knowingly, astutely, **cleverly;** subtlely; cagily <nf>, warily 494.13; diplomatically

416 ARTLESSNESS

NOUNS 1 **artlessness, ingenuousness, guilelessness; simplicity,** simpleness, plainness; simpleheartedness, simplemindedness; **unsophistication,** unsophisticatedness; *naïveté* <Fr>, naivety, naiveness, childlikeness; **innocence;** trustfulness, trustingness, unguardedness, unwariness, unsuspiciousness; **openness,** openheartedness, sincerity, **candor** 644.4; **integrity,** single-heartedness, single-mindedness, singleness of heart; directness, bluffness, bluntness, outspokenness

2 **naturalness,** naturalism, nature; state of nature; unspoiledness; **unaffectedness,** unaffectation, **unassumingness,** unpretendingness, unpretentiousness, undisguise; **inartificiality,** unartificialness, genuineness

3 **simple soul,** unsophisticate, naïf, **ingenue, innocent,** pure heart, **child,** mere child, infant, **babe,** baby, newborn babe, babe in the woods, lamb, dove; child of nature, noble savage; primitive; yokel, rube *and* hick <nf>; oaf, lout 924.5; dupe 358

VERBS 4 wear one's heart on one's sleeve, look one in the face, have no affectations

ADJS 5 **artless, simple,** plain, **guideless;** simplehearted, simpleminded; **ingenuous,** *ingénu* <Fr>; **unsophisticated, naive;** childlike, born yesterday; **innocent;** trustful, trusting, unguarded, unwary, unreserved, confiding, unsuspicious, on the up and up; **open,** openhearted, sincere, candid, **frank** 644.17; single-hearted, single-minded; direct, bluff, blunt, outspoken

6 **natural,** naturelike, native; in the state of nature; primitive, primal, pristine, unspoiled, untainted, uncontaminated; **unaffected, unassuming, unpretending,** unpretentious, unfeigning, undisguising, undissimulating, undissembling, undesigning; **genuine, inartificial,** unartificial, unadorned, unvarnished, unembellished, uncontrived; homespun; **pastoral, rural,** arcadian, bucolic

ADVS 7 **artlessly, ingenuously, guilelessly;** simply, plainly; naturally, genuinely; naïvely; openly, openheartedly

417 AUTHORITY

NOUNS 1 **authority, prerogative, right, power,** faculty, competence *or* competency; **mandate,** popular authority *or* mandate, people's mandate, electoral mandate; regality, royal prerogative; constituted authority, vested authority; inherent authority; legal *or* lawful *or* rightful authority, legitimacy, law, eminent domain, divine right; derived *or* delegated authority, vicarious authority, indirect authority, constituted *or* invested authority, inherent authority; **the say** *and* **the say-so** <nf>; rubber stamp; divine right, *jus divinum* <L>; absolute power, absolutism 612.9

2 **authoritativeness, authority, power,** powerfulness, magisterialness, **potency** *or* potence, puissance, **strength,** might, mightiness, string pulling, wire pulling, clout <nf>

3 **authoritativeness, masterfulness, lordliness,** magistrality, magisterialness; **arbitrariness,** peremptoriness, imperativeness, **imperiousness,** autocraticalness, high-handedness, dictatorialness, overbearingness, overbearance, overbearing, domineering, domineeringness, tyrannicalness, authoritarianism, bossism <nf>

4 **prestige, authority, influence,** influentialness; pressure, **weight,** weightiness, moment, **consequence;** eminence, **stature,** rank, seniority,

preeminence, priority, precedence; **greatness** 247; **importance, prominence** 997.2

5 **governance, authority, jurisdiction, control, command, power, rule, reign,** regnancy, **dominion, sovereignty,** empire, empery, *raj* <India>, imperium, **sway;** government 612; administration, disposition 573.3; **control, grip,** claws, **clutches,** hand, hands, iron hand, talons

6 **dominance** *or* dominancy, **dominion, domination; preeminence, supremacy, superiority** 249; **ascendance** *or* **ascendancy; upper** *or* **whip hand, sway; sovereignty,** suzerainty, suzerainship, **overlordship;** primacy, principality, **predominance** *or* predominancy, predomination, prepotence *or* prepotency, hegemony; preponderance; balance of power; eminent domain

7 **mastership,** masterhood, masterdom, **mastery; leadership, headship, lordship;** hegemony; supervisorship, directorship 573.4; hierarchy, nobility, aristocracy, **ruling class** 575.15; chair, chairmanship; chieftainship, chieftaincy, chieftainry, chiefery; presidentship, presidency; premiership, prime-ministership, prime-ministry; governorship; princeship, princedom, principality; rectorship, rectorate; suzerainty, suzerainship; regency, regentship; prefectship, prefecture; proconsulship, proconsulate; provostship, provostry; protectorship, protectorate; seneschalship, seneschalsy; pashadom, pashalic; sheikhdom; emirate, viziership, vizierate; magistrateship, magistrature, magistracy; mayorship, mayoralty; sheriffdom, sheriffcy, sheriffalty, shrievalty; consulship, consulate; chancellorship, chancellery, chancellorate; seigniory; tribunate, aedileship; deanship, decanal authority, deanery; patriarchate, patriarchy <old>; bishopric, episcopacy; archbishopric, archiepiscopacy, archiepiscopate; metropolitanship, metropolitanate; popedom, popeship, popehood, papacy, pontificate, pontificality; dictatorship, dictature

8 **sovereignty, royalty,** regnancy, **majesty,** empire, empery, imperialism, **emperorship; kingship,** kinghood; queenship, queenhood; kaisership, kaiserdom; czardom; rajaship; sultanship sultanate; caliphate; the throne, the Crown, the purple; royal insignia 647.3

9 **scepter, rod, staff,** wand, staff *or* rod *or* wand of office, baton, mace, truncheon, fasces; crosier, crook, cross-staff; caduceus; gavel; mantle; chain of office; portfolio

10 <seat of authority> **saddle** <nf>, **helm, driver's seat** <nf>; office of power, high office; seat, **chair,** bench; woolsack <Brit>; seat of state, seat of power; curule chair; dais; chairmanship, directorship, chieftainship, presidency, premiership, secretariat, governorship, mayoralty; consulate, proconsulate, prefecture, magistry

11 **throne,** royal seat; *musnud* or *gaddi* <India>; Peacock throne

12 <acquisition of authority> **accession; succession,** rightful *or* legitimate succession; **usurpation,** arrogation, assumption, taking over, seizure, seizure of power, takeover, coup d'etat, coup, revolution, overthrowing; anointment, anointing, consecration, coronation; selection, **delegation,** deputation, devolution, devolvement, assignment, nomination, **appointment; election,** mandate; **authorization,** empowerment, permission, grant, sanction, warrant, license, charter; consignation; job sharing

VERBS 13 **possess** *or* **wield** *or* **have authority, have power,** have the power, have in one's hands, have the right, have the say *or* say-so <nf>, have the whip hand, wear the crown, hold the prerogative, have the mandate; exercise sovereignty; be vested *or* invested, carry authority, have clout <nf>, have what one says go, have one's own way; show one's authority, crack the whip, throw one's weight around *and* ride herd <nf>, have under one's thumb, wear the pants, have over a barrel <nf>; **rule** 612.14, **control,** govern; supervise 573.10

14 **take command, take charge, take over,** take the helm, take the reins of government, take the reins into one's hand, take office, gain authority, get the power into one's hands, gain *or* get the upper hand, lead, take the lead; ascend *or* mount *or* succeed *or* accede to the throne, call the shots <nf>; **assume command,** assume, **usurp,** arrogate, seize; usurp *or* seize the throne *or* crown *or* mantle, usurp the prerogatives of the crown; seize power, execute a *coup d'état*

ADJS 15 **authoritative,** clothed *or* vested *or* invested with authority, **commanding, imperative; governing, controlling, ruling** 612.18; **preeminent, supreme,** administrative, managerial, bureaucratic, ruling, leading, **superior** 249.12; **powerful, potent,** puissant, mighty; dominant, ascendant, hegemonic, hegemonistic; **influential, prestigious, weighty,** momentous, consequential, eminent, substantial, considerable; great 247.6; important, prominent; ranking, senior; authorized, empowered, duly constituted, competent; **official,** *ex officio* <L>; authoritarian; absolute, autocratic, monocratic; **totalitarian**

16 **imperious,** imperial, **masterful,** authoritative, feudal, aristocratic, **lordly,** magistral, **magisterial,** commanding; arrogant 141.9; **arbitrary, peremptory,** imperative; absolute, absolutist, absolutistic; **dictatorial, authoritarian; bossy** <nf>,

domineering, high-handed, overbearing, overruling, imperious; autocratic, monocratic, **despotic, tyrannical;** tyrannous, grinding, oppressive 98.24; repressive, suppressive 428.11; strict, severe 425.6

17 **sovereign; regal, royal, majestic,** purple; **kinglike, kingly,** "every inch a king"—Shakespeare; **imperial,** imperious *or* imperatorious <old>; imperatorial; monarchic *or* monarchical, monarchal, monarchial; tetrarchic; princely, princelike; **queenly,** queenlike; dynastic

ADVS 18 **authoritatively,** with authority, by virtue of office; **commandingly, imperatively; powerfully, potently,** puissantly, mightily; **influentially, weightily,** momentously, consequentially; **officially,** *ex cathedra* <L>

19 **imperiously, masterfully,** magisterially; **arbitrarily, peremptorily; autocratically, dictatorially, high-handedly, domineeringly, overbearingly, despotically, tyrannically**

20 **by authority of,** in the name of, in *or* by virtue of, by the power vested in

21 **in authority, in power, in charge, in control, in command,** at the reins, at the head, **at the helm,** at the wheel, **in the saddle** *or* driver's seat <nf>, on the throne

418 LAWLESSNESS

<absence of authority>

NOUNS 1 **lawlessness; licentiousness,** license, uncontrol, anything goes, unrestraint 430.3; indiscipline, insubordination, mutiny, disobedience 327; permissiveness; **irresponsibility,** unaccountability; willfulness, unchecked *or* rampant will; interregnum, power vacuum; defiance of authority, lack of authority, breakdown of authority, breakdown of law and order; overthrow, coup, *coup d'état*

2 **anarchy,** anarchism; **disorderliness, unruliness,** misrule, **disorder,** disruption, disorganization, confusion, arrogation, unruliness, riot, **turmoil, chaos,** primal chaos, tohubohu; antinomianism; **nihilism;** syndicalism *and* anarcho-syndicalism *and* criminal syndicalism <old>, lynch law, mob rule *or* law, mobocracy, ochlocracy; **law of the jungle;** dog eat dog; subversion, sedition, unrestraint, insubordination, disobedience, revolution 860; rebellion 327.4

3 **anarchist,** anarch; antinomian; **nihilist,** syndicalist *and* anarcho-syndicalist <old>; subversive, seditionary; revolutionist 860.3; mutineer, rebel 327.5

VERBS 4 **reject** *or* **defy authority,** usurp power *or* authority, enthrone one's own will; **take the law in one's own hands,** act on one's own responsibility; do *or* go as one pleases, indulge oneself; be a law unto oneself, answer to no man, undermine, arrogate; resist control; overthrow, depose, topple; "swear allegiance to the words of no master"—Horace

ADJS 5 **lawless; licentious, ungoverned,** undisciplined, unrestrained; permissive; insubordinate, mutinous, disobedient 327.8; **uncontrolled,** uncurbed, unbridled, unchecked, rampant, untrammeled, unreined, unrestrained, reinless, anything goes; **irresponsible,** wildcat, unaccountable; selfwilled, willful, headstrong, heady, defiant; rebellious, riotous, seditious, insurgent

6 **anarchic, anarchical,** anarchial, anarchistic; **unruly, disorderly,** disorganized, chaotic; antinomian; **nihilistic,** syndicalistic, ochlocratic, mobocratic; every man for himself, ungovernable

ADVS 7 **lawlessly,** licentiously; anarchically, chaotically

419 PRECEPT

NOUNS 1 **precept,** prescript, **prescription, teaching; instruction, direction, charge,** commission, injunction, dictate; **order,** command 420

2 **rule, law, canon, maxim,** dictum, moral, moralism; **norm, standard;** formula, form; rule of action *or* conduct, moral precept; commandment, *mitzvah* <Heb>; **tradition;** ordinance, imperative, **regulation,** reg <nf>, *règlement* <Fr>; **principle,** principium, settled principle, general principle *or* truth, tenet, convention; **guideline,** ground rule, rubric, protocol, working rule, working principle, standard procedure; guiding principle, golden rule; **code;** gold standard

3 **formula,** form <old>, **recipe,** receipt; **prescription;** formulary

ADJS 4 **preceptive,** didactic, instructive, moralistic, **prescriptive;** prescript, prescribed, mandatory, hard-and-fast, binding, dictated; formulary, standard, regulation, official, authoritative, canonical, statutory, rubric, rubrical, protocolary, protocolic; **normative; conventional;** traditional

420 COMMAND

NOUNS 1 **command, commandment, order,** direct order, command decision, **bidding,** behest, hest <old>, imperative, **dictate,** dictation, **will, pleasure,** say-so <nf>, word, word of command, *mot d'ordre* <Fr>; special order; **authority** 417

2 **injunction, charge,** commission, **mandate**

3 **direction, directive, instruction, rule, regulation;** prescript, prescription, **precept** 419; general order

4 **decree,** decreement <old>, decretum, decretal, rescript, fiat, **edict,** *edictum* <L>; **law** 673.3; **rule, ruling,** dictum, ipse dixit; ordinance, *ordonnance* <Fr>, appointment <old>; **proclamation,** pronouncement, pronunciamento, **declaration,** ukase; bull, brevet <old>; decree-law, *décret-loi* <Fr>; *senatus consultum* <L>, senatus consult; diktat

5 **summons, bidding, beck, call,** calling, nod, **beck and call,** preconization; **convocation,** convoking; evocation, calling forth, invocation; requisition, indent <chiefly Brit>

6 **court order,** injunction, legal order, warrant, subpoena, citation, injunction, interdict *or* interdiction

7 process server, summoner

VERBS **8** **command, order, dictate, direct, instruct,** mandate, **bid, enjoin, charge,** commission, call on *or* upon; issue a writ *or* an injunction; **decree, rule, ordain,** promulgate; give an order *or* a direct order, issue a command, say the word, give the word *or* word of command; call the shots *or* tune *or* signals *or* play <nf>; order about *or* around; **speak, proclaim, declare,** pronounce 352.12

9 **prescribe, require, demand, dictate,** impose, lay down, set, fix, appoint, make obligatory *or* mandatory; decide once and for all, carve in stone, set in concrete <nf>; authorize 443.11

10 **lay down the law,** put one's foot down <nf>, read the riot act, lower the boom <nf>, set the record straight

11 **summon, call,** demand, preconize; call for, send for *or* after, bid come; **cite, summons** <nf>, **subpoena,** serve; page; convoke, convene, call together; call away; muster, invoke, conjure; order up, summon up, muster up, call up, conjure up, magic *or* magic up <Brit>; evoke, call forth, summon forth, call out; recall, call back, call in; requisition, indent <chiefly Brit>

ADJS **12** **mandatory,** mandated, **imperative, compulsory,** prescript, prescriptive, **obligatory,** must <nf>; dictated, imposed, required, entailed, decretory; decisive, final, peremptory, absolute, eternal, written, hard-and-fast, carved in stone, set in concrete <nf>, ultimate, conclusive, binding, irrevocable, without appeal

13 **commanding,** imperious, imperative, jussive, peremptory, abrupt; **directive, instructive; mandating,** dictating, compelling, obligating, **prescriptive,** preceptive; decretory, decretive, decretal; **authoritative** 417.15

ADVS **14** **commandingly, imperatively,** peremptorily

15 **by order** *or* **command,** at the word of command, as ordered *or* required, to order; mandatorily, compulsorily, obligatorily

421 DEMAND

NOUNS **1** **demand, claim, call; requisition,** requirement, stated requirement, order, rush order, indent <chiefly Brit>; seller's market, land-office business; strong *or* heavy demand, draft, drain, levy, tax, taxing; imposition, impost, tribute, duty, contribution; insistent demand, rush; exorbitant *or* extortionate demand, exaction, extortion, blackmail; **ultimatum,** nonnegotiable demand; notice, warning 399

2 **stipulation, provision,** proviso, condition; **terms;** exception, reservation; **qualification** 959

3 <nf terms> **catch, Catch-22,** kicker, zinger, snag, joker; strings, strings attached; ifs, ands, and buts; whereases, howevers, howsomevers

4 **insistence, exigence, importunity,** importunateness, importunacy, **demandingness,** pertinaciousness, pertinacity; pressure, pressingness, **urgency, exigency** 996.4; **persistence** 360.1

VERBS **5** **demand, ask, ask for,** make a demand; **call for,** call on *or* upon one for, appeal to one for; call out for, cry *or* cry out for, clamor for; **claim,** challenge, **require;** levy, **impose,** impose on one for; **exact, extort,** squeeze, screw; blackmail; requisition, make *or* put in **requisition,** indent <chiefly Brit>, **confiscate; order,** put in *or* place an order, order up; deliver *or* issue an ultimatum; warn 399.5

6 **claim, pretend to, lay claim to, stake a claim** <nf>, put *or* have dibs on <nf>, assert *or* vindicate a claim *or* right *or* title to; have going for it *or* one <nf>; **challenge**

7 **stipulate,** stipulate for, specifically provide, set conditions *or* terms, make reservations; **qualify** 959.3

8 **insist, insist on** *or* **upon,** stick to <nf>, set one's heart *or* mind upon; **take one's stand upon,** stand on *or* upon, put *or* lay it on the line <nf>, make no bones about it; stand upon one's rights, **put one's foot down** <nf>; brook *or* take no denial, not take no for an answer; **maintain, contend,** assert; urge, press 375.14; **persist** 360.2

ADJS **9** **demanding, exacting,** exigent; draining, taxing, exorbitant, extortionate, grasping; **insistent,** instant, **importunate,** urgent, pertinacious, pressing, loud, clamant, crying, clamorous; persistent

10 **claimed,** spoken for; requisitioned; requisitorial, requisitory

ADVS **11** **demandingly, exactingly,** exigently; exorbitantly, extortionately; **insistently, importunately, urgently,** pressingly, clamorously, loudly, clamantly

12 **on demand,** at demand, **on call,** upon presentation

422 ADVICE

NOUNS 1 **advice, counsel, recommendation, suggestion,** rede <Brit>; proposition, proposal; advising, advocacy; **direction, instruction,** guidance, briefing; **exhortation,** hortation <old>, enjoinder, expostulation, remonstrance; **sermons,** sermonizing, preaching, preachiness; **admonition,** monition, monitory *or* monitory letter, caution, caveat, **warning** 399; **idea,** thought, opinion 953.6, precept; consultancy, consultantship, **consultation,** parley 541.6, advisement; council 423; **counseling;** guidance counseling, educational counseling, vocational guidance; constructive criticism

2 piece of advice, **word of advice, word to the wise,** words of wisdom, pearls of wisdom, *verbum sapienti* <L>, verb *or* verbum sap <nf>, word in the ear, maxim, **hint, broad hint, flea in the ear** <nf>, **tip** <nf>, one's two cents' worth <nf>, intimation, insinuation

3 **adviser, counsel, counselor, consultant,** professional consultant, expert, maven <nf>, boffin <Brit nf>; instructor, guide, **mentor,** nestor, orienter; confidant *or* confidante, personal adviser; admonisher, monitor, Dutch uncle; Polonius <Shakespeare>, preceptist; **teacher** 571; meddler, buttinsky *and* yenta *and* kibitzer *and* backseat driver <nf>; advocate

4 **advisee,** counselee; client

VERBS 5 **advise, counsel, recommend, suggest, advocate,** propose, submit, propound; instruct, coach, guide, direct, brief; prescribe; weigh in with advice <nf>, give a piece of advice, give a hint *or* broad hint, hint at, intimate, insinuate, put a flea in one's ear <nf>, have a word with one, speak words of wisdom; meddle, kibitz <nf>; confer, consult with 541.11

6 **admonish, exhort,** expostulate, remonstrate, preach; **enjoin, charge,** call upon one to; caution, issue a caveat, wag one's finger <nf>; advise against, warn away, warn off, **warn** 399.5,6, dissuade; move, prompt, **urge, incite, encourage, induce, persuade** 375.23; **implore** 440.11

7 **take** *or* **accept advice, follow advice,** follow, follow implicitly, go along with <nf>, buy *or* buy into <nf>; consult, confer; solicit advice, desire guidance, implore counsel; **be advised by;** refer to, have at one's elbow, take one's cue from; seek a second opinion; put heads together *or* have a powwow with <nf>, huddle

ADJS 8 **advisory,** recommendatory; **consultative,** consultatory; directive, instructive; **admonitory,** monitory, monitorial, cautionary, **warning** 399.7; **expostulative,** expostulatory, **remonstrative,** remonstratory, remonstrant; **exhortative,** exhortatory, hortative, hortatory, preachy <nf>, **didactic,** moralistic, sententious

PHRS 9 too many cooks spoil the broth, another country heard from

423 COUNCIL

NOUNS 1 **council,** conclave, *concilium* <L>, deliberative *or* advisory body, **assembly;** deliberative assembly, consultative assembly; chamber, house; **board,** court, bench; **full assembly,** plenum, plenary session; **congress,** diet, synod, senate, soviet; **legislature** 613; **cabinet,** divan, council of ministers, council of state, US Cabinet, British Cabinet; kitchen cabinet, camarilla; staff; junta, directory; Sanhedrin; privy council; common council, county council, parish council, borough *or* town council, city *or* municipal council, village council; brain trust <nf>, brains trust <Brit nf>, group *or* corps *or* body of advisers, inner circle; council of war; council fire; syndicate, **association** 617; **conference** 541.6; **assembly** 770.2; **tribunal** 595

2 **committee,** subcommittee, standing committee; select committee, special committee, ad hoc committee; committee of one

3 **forum, conference,** discussion group, buzz session <nf>, **round table, panel;** open forum, colloquium, symposium; town meeting; board meeting; **powwow** <nf>; working lunch, power lunch, power breakfast

4 ecclesiastical council, chapter, classis, conclave, conference, caucus, congregation, consistory, convention, convocation, presbytery, session, synod, vestry; parochial council, parochial church council; diocesan conference, diocesan court; provincial court, plenary council; ecumenical council; Council of Nicaea, Council of Trent, Lateran Council, Vatican Council, Vatican Two; conciliarism

ADJS 5 **conciliar,** council, councilmanic, aldermanic; **consultative, deliberative, advisory;** synodal, synodic, synodical

ADVS 6 **in council, in conference, in consultation, in a huddle** <nf>, in conclave; **in session,** sitting

424 COMPULSION

NOUNS 1 **compulsion, obligation,** obligement; **command** 420; **necessity** 963; **inevitability** 963.7; **irresistibility, compulsiveness; forcing,** enforcement; command performance; **constraint,** coaction; **restraint** 428; obsession

2 **force,** *ultima ratio* <L>; **brute force,** naked force, rule of might, big battalions, **main force,** physical force; the right of the strong, the law of the jungle; **tyranny** 612.10; steamroller <nf>, irresistible force

3 **coercion,** intimidation, scare tactics, headbanging *and* arm-twisting <nf>, **duress; the strong arm** *and* strong-arm tactics <nf>, a pistol *or* gun to one's head, the sword, the mailed fist, the bludgeon, the boot in the face, the jackboot, the big stick, the club, *argumentum baculinum* <L>; **pressure, high pressure,** high-pressure methods; **violence** 671; impressment

VERBS 4 **compel, force, make;** have, cause, cause to; **constrain, bind,** tie, tie one's hands; **restrain** 428.7; enforce, **drive,** impel; dragoon, use force upon, force one's hand, hold a pistol *or* gun to one's head; browbeat

5 **oblige, necessitate, require,** exact, demand, **dictate,** impose, call for; take *or* brook no denial; leave no option *or* escape, admit of no option

6 **press; bring pressure to bear upon, put pressure on,** bear down on, bear against, bear hard upon, put under duress

7 **coerce,** use violence, ride roughshod, intimidate, bully, bludgeon, blackjack; hijack, shanghai, dragoon, carjack

8 <nf terms> **twist one's arm, arm-twist, twist arms, knock** *or* **bang heads,** knock *or* bang heads together, strong-arm, steamroller, bulldoze, **pressure,** high-pressure, lean on, squeeze; put the screws on *or* to, get one over a barrel *or* under one's thumb, hold one's feet to the fire, turn on the heat; pull rank; ram *or* cram down one's throat

9 **be compelled, be coerced,** have to 963.10; be stuck with <nf>, can't help but

ADJS 10 **compulsory, compulsive,** compulsatory, **compelling; pressing, driving,** imperative, imperious; constraining, coactive; **restraining** 428.11; **irresistible**

11 **obligatory, compulsory,** imperative, mandatory, required, dictated, **binding;** involuntary; **necessary** 963.12; **inevitable** 962.15

12 **coercive, forcible;** steamroller *and* bulldozer *and* sledgehammer *and* strong-arm <nf>; violent

ADVS 13 **compulsively,** compulsorily, **compellingly,** imperatively, imperiously

14 **forcibly, by force,** by main force, by *force majeure,* by a strong arm; by force of arms, *vi et armis* <L>, at gunpoint, with a pistol *or* gun to one's head, at the point of a gun, at the point of the sword *or* bayonet, at bayonet point

15 **obligatorily,** compulsorily, mandatorily, by stress of, under press of; under the lash *or* gun; of necessity

425 STRICTNESS

NOUNS 1 **strictness, severity, harshness, stringency,** astringency, **hard line; discipline,** strict *or* tight *or* rigid discipline, regimentation, spit and polish; **austerity, sternness,** grimness, ruggedness, **toughness** <nf>; **belt-tightening;** Spartanism; authoritarianism; demandingness, exactingness; **meticulousness** 339.3

2 **firmness, rigor, rigorousness,** rigidness, rigidity, stiffness, **hardness,** obduracy, obdurateness, **inflexibility,** inexorability, unyieldingness, unbendingness, impliability, unrelentingness, **relentlessness; uncompromisingness;** stubbornness, obstinacy 361; purism; precisianism, puritanism, fundamentalism, orthodoxy

3 **firm hand, iron hand,** heavy hand, strong hand, tight hand, tight rein; tight *or* taut ship

VERBS 4 **hold** *or* **keep a tight hand upon,** keep a firm hand on, keep a tight rein on, rule with an iron hand, rule with a rod of iron, knock *or* bang heads together <nf>; regiment, discipline; run a tight *or* taut ship, ride herd, keep one in line; maintain the highest standards, not spare oneself nor anyone else, go out of one's way, go the extra mile <nf>

5 **deal hardly** *or* **harshly with,** deal hard measure to, lay a heavy hand on, bear hard upon, **take a hard line,** not pull one's punches <nf>

ADJS 6 **strict, exacting,** exigent, demanding, not to be trifled with, **stringent,** astringent; disciplined, spit-and-polish; **severe, harsh,** dour, unsparing; **stern, grim, austere,** rugged, **tough** <nf>; Spartan, Spartanic; **hard-line,** authoritarian 417.16; **meticulous** 339.12

7 **firm, rigid, rigorous,** rigorist, rigoristic, stiff, **hard,** iron, steel, steely, hard-shell, obdurate, **inflexible,** ironhanded, inexorable, dour, **unyielding,** unbending, impliable, **relentless,** unrelenting, procrustean; **uncompromising;** stubborn, obstinate 361.8; purist, puristic; puritan, puritanic, puritanical, fundamentalist, orthodox; ironbound, rockbound, musclebound, ironclad <nf>; straitlaced, hidebound

ADVS 8 **strictly, severely, stringently, harshly; sternly,** grimly, **austerely,** ruggedly, toughly <nf>

9 **firmly, rigidly, rigorously,** stiffly, stiff, hardly, obdurately, **inflexibly,** impliably, inexorably, unyieldingly, unbendingly; **uncompromisingly, relentlessly,** unrelentingly; ironhandedly, with a firm *or* a strong *or* a heavy *or* a tight *or* an iron hand

426 LAXNESS

NOUNS 1 **laxness, laxity, slackness, looseness,** relaxedness; loosening, relaxation; imprecision, sloppiness <nf>, carelessness, remissness, negligence 340.1; indifference 102; weakness 16; impotence 19; unrestraint 430.3

2 **unstrictness,** nonstrictness, undemandingness, unsevereness, unharshness; leniency 427; **permissiveness,** overpermissiveness, overindulgence, **softness;** unsternness, unaustereness; easygoingness, easiness; **flexibility,** pliancy

VERBS 3 **hold a loose rein, give free rein to,** give the reins to, **give one his head,** give a free course to, give rope enough to; permit all *or* anything

ADJS 4 **lax, slack, loose,** relaxed; imprecise, sloppy <nf>, careless, slipshod; remiss, negligent 340.10; indifferent 102.6; weak 16.12; impotent 19.13; untrammeled, unrestrained

5 **unstrict,** undemanding, **unexacting; unsevere, unharsh; unstern,** unaustere; lenient 427.7; **permissive,** overpermissive, overindulgent, **soft;** easy, easygoing, laid-back <nf>; **flexible,** pliant, yielding

427 LENIENCY

NOUNS 1 **leniency** *or* lenience, lenientness, lenity; **clemency,** clementness, **mercifulness,** mercy, **humaneness,** humanity, pity, **compassion** 145.1; **mildness, gentleness,** tenderness, softness, moderateness; **easiness,** easygoingness; laxness 426; **forebearance,** forbearing, patience 134; acceptance, **tolerance** 979.4; kid gloves, kid-glove treatment, light hand *or* rein

2 **compliance, complaisance,** obligingness, accommodatingness, **agreeableness;** affability, graciosity, graciousness, generousness, decency, amiability; kindness, kindliness, benignity, **benevolence** 143

3 **indulgence, humoring,** obliging; favoring, gratification, pleasing; **pampering,** cosseting, **coddling,** mollycoddling, petting, **spoiling; permissiveness,** overpermissiveness, overindulgence; sparing the rod; laissez faire

4 **spoiled child** *or* **brat,** *enfant gâté* <Fr>, pampered darling, mama's boy, mollycoddle, sissy; *enfant terrible* <Fr>, naughty child

VERBS 5 **be** *or* **go easy on,** ease up on, handle with kid *or* velvet gloves, use a light hand *or* rein, slap one's wrist, spare the rod, let off the hook; **tolerate,** bear with 134.5

6 **indulge, humor, oblige;** favor, please, gratify, satisfy, **cater to; give way to,** yield to, let one have his own way; **pamper,** cosset, **coddle,** mollycoddle, pet, make a lap dog of, **spoil;** spare the rod; make few demands

ADJS 7 **lenient, mild, gentle,** mild-mannered, tender, humane, compassionate, **clement,** merciful 145.7; soft, moderate, **easy,** easygoing; lax 426.4; forgiving 148.6; **forebearing, forbearant,** patient 134.9; accepting, **tolerant** 979.11

8 **indulgent, compliant,** complaisant, **obliging, accommodating, agreeable,** amiable, gracious, generous, magnanimous, benignant, affable, decent, kind, kindly, benign, benevolent 143.15; **hands-off** <nf>, permissive, overpermissive, overindulgent, spoiling

9 **indulged, pampered, coddled, spoiled,** spoiled rotten <nf>

428 RESTRAINT

NOUNS 1 **restraint, constraint; inhibition;** legal restraint, injunction, enjoining, enjoinder, interdict, veto; **control, curb, check,** rein, arrest, arrestation; **retardation,** deceleration, slowing down; cooling *and* cooling off *and* cooling down <nf>; retrenchment, curtailment; self-control 359.5; **hindrance** 1012; rationing; thought control; restraint of trade, monopoly, protection, protectionism, protective tariff, tariff wall; clampdown *and* crackdown <nf>, proscription, **prohibition** 444

2 **suppression, repression,** oppression; **subdual,** quelling, putting down, shutting *or* closing down, smashing, crushing; quashing, squashing *and* squelching <nf>; smothering, stifling, suffocating, strangling, throttling; extinguishment, quenching; **censorship,** censoring, bleeping *or* bleeping out <nf>, blue laws

3 **restriction, limitation, confinement;** Hobson's choice, no choice, zero option; circumscription 210; stint, cramping, cramp; qualification 958

4 **shackle,** restraint, **restraints, fetter, hamper,** trammel, trammels, **manacle,** gyves, bond, **bonds,** irons, chains, Oregon boat; stranglehold; **handcuffs,** cuffs, bracelets <nf>; stocks, bilbo, pillory; **tether,** spancel, leash, lead <chiefly Brit>, leading string; **rein;** hobble, hopple; strait-jacket, strait-waistcoat <Brit>, camisole; yoke, collar; bridle, halter; **muzzle, gag;** electronic ankle bracelet *and* offender's tag *and* monitor; iron rule, iron hand

5 **lock,** bolt, bar, padlock, catch, safety catch; barrier 1012.5

6 restrictionist, protectionist, monopolist; censor; screw <nf>

VERBS 7 **restrain, constrain, control, govern,** guard, contain, keep under control, put *or* lay under restraint; **inhibit,** straiten <old>; enjoin, clamp *or* crack down on <nf>, proscribe, prohibit 444.3; **curb, check, arrest, bridle,** get under control, rein, snub, snub in; **retard,** slow down, decelerate; **cool** *and* **cool off** *and* **cool down** <nf>; retrench, curtail; hold, **hold in,** keep, withhold, hold up <nf>, **keep from;** hinder 1012.10; **hold back, keep back,** pull, set back; **hold in, keep in,** pull in, rein in; **hold** *or* **keep in check, hold at bay,** hold in leash, tie one down, tie one's hands; hold fast, keep a tight hand on; restrain oneself, not go too far, not go off the deep end <nf>

8 **suppress, repress,** stultify; **keep down,** hold down, keep under; **close** *or* **shut down; subdue, quell, put down,** smash, **crush; quash, squash** *and* **squelch** <nf>; **extinguish,** quench, stanch, damp down, pour water on, dash *or* pour cold water on, drown, kill; **smother, stifle,** suffocate, asphyxiate, strangle, throttle, choke off, **muzzle, gag;** censor, bleep *or* bleep out <nf>, silence; sit on *and* sit down on *and* slap *or* smack down <nf>; jump on *and* crack down on *and* clamp down on <nf>, put *or* keep the lid on <nf>; bottle up, cork, cork up

9 **restrict, limit, narrow, confine,** tighten; ground, restrict to home, barracks, bedroom, quarters, etc; circumscribe 210.4; keep in *or* within bounds, keep from spreading, localize; **cage in,** hem, hem in, box, box in *or* up; **cramp,** stint, cramp one's style; qualify 959.3

10 **bind, restrain, tie,** tie up, put the clamps on, **strap,** lash, leash, pinion, fasten, secure, make fast; **hamper, trammel,** entrammel; rope; **chain,** enchain; **shackle, fetter, manacle,** gyve, **put in irons; handcuff, tie one's hands; tie hand and foot,** hog-tie <nf>; straitjacket; hobble, hopple, fetter, leash, put on a lead <chiefly Brit>, spancel; tether, picket, moor, anchor; tie down, pin down, peg down; get a stranglehold on, put a half nelson on <nf>; **bridle;** gag, muzzle

ADJS 11 **restraining, constraining; inhibiting,** inhibitive; **suppressive, repressive,** oppressive, stultifying; controlling, on top of <nf>, prohibitive

12 **restrictive,** limitative, restricting, **narrowing, limiting, confining,** cramping; censorial

13 **restrained, constrained, inhibited,** pent up; guarded; controlled, curbed, bridled; **under restraint,** under control, in check, under discipline; grounded, out of circulation; slowed down, retarded, arrested, in remission; in *or* on leash, in leading strings

14 **suppressed, repressed; subdued,** quelled, put down, smashed, crushed; quashed, squashed *and* squelched <nf>; smothered, stifled, suffocated; censored

15 **restricted, limited, confined;** circumscribed 210.6, "cabined, cribbed, confined"—Shakespeare, hemmed in, hedged in *or* about, boxed in; landlocked; **shut-in,** stormbound, weatherbound, windbound, icebound, snowbound; cramped, stinted; qualified 959.10; under arrest, up the river <nf>, doing time <nf>, in the big house <nf>

16 **bound, tied,** bound hand and foot, tied up, tied down, strapped, hampered, trammeled, shackled, handcuffed, fettered, manacled, tethered, leashed; **in bonds,** in irons *or* chains, ironbound

429 CONFINEMENT

NOUNS 1 **confinement,** locking-up, lockup, lockdown, caging, penning, putting behind barriers, impoundment, **restraint,** restriction; check, **restraint, constraint** 428.1

2 **quarantine, isolation,** cordoning off, segregation, separation, sequestration, seclusion; walling in *or* up *or* off; sanitary cordon, *cordon sanitaire* <Fr>, cordon; quarantine flag, yellow flag, yellow jack

3 **imprisonment, jailing,** incarceration, **internment,** immurement, immuration; **detention, captivity,** detainment, duress, durance, durance vile; close arrest, house arrest; term of imprisonment; preventive detention; minimum- *or* maximum-security imprisonment *or* detention; lockdown, solitary confinement

4 **commitment,** committal, consignment; recommitment, remand; mittimus <law>; institutionalization

5 **custody,** custodianship, keep <old>, **keeping, care, change, ward,** guarding, hold, protective *or* preventive custody; protection, safekeeping 1008.1

6 **arrest,** arrestment, arrestation, pinch *and* bust *and* collar <nf>; **capture, apprehension, seizure,** netting <nf>; house arrest, protective *or* preventive custody

7 **place of confinement,** close quarters, not enough room to swing a cat; limbo, hell, purgatory; pound, pinfold *or* penfold; **cage; enclosure,** pen, coop 212.3

8 **prison,** prison house, correctional *or* correction facility, minimum- *or* maximum-security facility, **penitentiary,** pen <nf>, keep, penal institution, bastille, state prison, federal prison; house of detention *or* correction, detention center, detention home; **jail, gaol** <Brit>, jailhouse, lockup, bridewell <Brit>, county jail, city jail; maximum- *or* minimum-security prison; **military prison, guardhouse, stockade, brig; dungeon,** oubliette, black hole; **reformatory,** house of correction, reform school, training school, industrial school, borstal *or* borstal institution <Brit>; debtor's

prison *and* sponging house <old>; **prison camp,** internment camp, detention camp, labor camp, forced-labor camp, gulag, **concentration camp;** prisoner-of-war camp *or* stockade, POW camp, prison farm; cell; bullpen; solitary confinement, the hole <nf>, solitary; **cell,** prison *or* jail cell; **detention cell,** holding cell, lockup; tank *and* drunk tank <nf>; cellblock, cellhouse; condemned cell, death cell, death house *or* row, jail cell; penal settlement *or* colony, Devil's Island, Alcatraz; halfway house, reformatory, reform school, detention home

9 <nf terms> **slammer, slam, jug,** can, coop, cooler, hoosegow, stir, clink, pokey *or* poky, nick *and* quod *and* chokey <Brit>, hoosegow; **joint,** big house, big school, big cage, big joint, brig, tank, icebox

10 **jailer, gaoler** <Brit>, correctional *or* correction *or* corrections officer; **keeper, warder,** prison guard, **turnkey,** bull *and* screw <nf>; **warden,** governor <Brit>, commandant, principal keeper; custodian, caretaker, guardian 1008.6; **guard** 1008.9

11 **prisoner, captive, inmate,** *détenu* <Fr>, cageling; arrestee; **convict,** con <nf>; **jailbird** <nf>, gaolbird <Brit nf>, stir bird <nf>, lifer, collar, yardbird, lag *or* lagger <Brit>; **detainee; internee; prisoner of war** *or* POW; enemy prisoner of war *or* EPWS; political prisoner, prisoner of conscience; lifer <nf>; trusty *or* trustee; condemned prisoner; parolee, ticket-of-leave man *or* ticket-of-leaver <Brit>; ex-convict; chain-gang member, hostage

VERBS 12 **confine, shut in,** shut away, coop in, hem in, fence in *or* up, wall in *or* up, rail in; **shut up, coop up, pen up,** box up, mew up, bottle up, cork up, seal up, **impound;** pen, coop, pound <old>, crib, mew, cloister, immure, cage, cage in, encage; **enclose** 212.5; **hold, keep in,** hold *or* keep in custody, **detain,** keep in detention, constrain, ground, **restrain,** hold in restraint; check, inhibit 428.7; restrict 428.9; shackle 428.10

13 **quarantine, isolate,** segregate, separate, seclude; **cordon, cordon off,** seal off, rope off; wall off, set up barriers, put behind barriers

14 **imprison, incarcerate, intern,** immure; **jail,** gaol <Brit>, jug <nf>, put under security, put behind bars, put away, put *or* throw into jail, throw under the jailhouse <nf>; throw *or* cast in prison, clap up, clap in jail *or* prison, send up the river <nf>, send to the big house <nf>; **lock up,** lock in, bolt in, put *or* keep under lock and key; hold captive, hold prisoner, hold in captivity; hold under close *or* house arrest, throw in the tank *or* cooler

15 **arrest,** make an arrest, put under arrest, pick up; catch flat-footed; catch with one's pants down *or* hand in the till <nf>, catch one in the act *or* red-handed *or* in flagrante delicto, catch *or* have one dead to rights; run down, run to earth, **take captive, take prisoner, apprehend, capture,** seize, net <nf>, lay by the heels, **take into custody,** entrap

16 <nf terms> **bust, pinch,** make a pinch, nab, collar, nick, pull in, **run in,** collar

17 **commit,** consign, commit to prison, send to jail, send up *and* send up the river <nf>; commit to an institution, institutionalize; recommit, remit, remand

18 **be imprisoned, do** *or* **serve time** <nf>; pay one's debt to society, land in the cooler, lag <Brit>

ADJS 19 **confined,** in confinement, **shut-in,** pent, **pent-up,** penned in, kept in, under restraint, held, in detention; "cabined, cribbed, confined"—Shakespeare; impounded; grounded, out of circulation; **detained;** restricted 428.15; cloistered, enclosed 212.10

20 **quarantined,** isolated, segregated, separated; cordoned, cordoned *or* sealed *or* roped off

21 **jailed,** jugged <nf>, **imprisoned, incarcerated, interned,** immured; **in prison,** in stir <nf>, in captivity, captive, **behind bars,** locked up, under lock and key, in durance vile, serving a sentence; doing time, on the inside, on ice, in the cooler, up the river, in the big house

22 **under arrest, in custody,** in hold, in charge <Brit>, under *or* in detention; under close arrest, under house arrest

430 FREEDOM

NOUNS 1 **freedom, liberty; license,** loose <old>; run *and* the run of <nf>, "the right to live as we wish"—Epictetus, "the will to be responsible to ourselves"—Nietzsche, "the choice of working *or* starving"—Samuel Johnson; **civil liberty,** the Four Freedoms <F D Roosevelt>: freedom of speech *and* expression, freedom of worship, freedom from want, freedom from fear; freedom of movement; constitutional freedom; lack of censorship; academic freedom; artistic license, poetic license

2 **right, rights, civil rights,** civil liberties, constitutional rights, legal rights; Bill of Rights, Petition of Right, Declaration of Right, Declaration of the Rights of Man, Magna Charta *or* Carta; **unalienable rights, human rights,** natural rights, "life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness"—Thomas Jefferson; diplomatic immunity

3 **unrestraint, unconstraint,** noncoercion, nonintimidation; **unreserve,** irrepressibleness, irrepressibility, uninhibitedness, exuberance 109.4; **immoderacy, intemperance,** incontinence, uncontrol, unruliness, indiscipline; **abandon,** abandonment, **licentiousness,** wantonness,

riotousness, wildness; permissiveness, unstrictness, **laxness** 426; one's own way, one's own devices

4 **latitude, scope, room,** range, way, field, maneuvering space *or* room, room to swing a cat <nf>; **margin,** clearance, **space,** open space *or* field, elbowroom, breathing space, **leeway** <nf>, sea room, wide berth; **tolerance; free scope,** full *or* ample scope, **free hand,** free play, free course; **carte blanche,** blank check; no holds barred; swing, play, full swing; rope, long rope *or* tether, rope enough to hang oneself

5 **independence, self-determination, self government,** self-direction, autonomy, home rule; autarky, autarchy, self-containment, self-sufficiency; **individualism,** rugged individualism, individual freedom; **self-reliance,** self-dependence; inner-direction; no allegiance; singleness, bachelorhood; independent means

6 **free will,** free choice, **discretion,** option, choice, say, say-so *and* druthers <nf>, free decision; **full consent;** absolute *or* unconditioned *or* noncontingent free will

7 **own free will, own account, own accord, own hook** *and* own say-so <nf>, own discretion, own choice, **own initiative,** personal initiative, own responsibility, personal *or* individual responsibility, own volition, own authority, own power; own way, own sweet way <nf>; law unto oneself

8 **exemption,** exception, **immunity; release,** discharge; **franchise, license,** charter, patent, liberty; diplomatic immunity, congressional *or* legislative immunity; special case *or* privilege; grandfather clause, grandfathering; privilege; permission 443

9 **noninterference, nonintervention; isolationism; laissez-faireism,** let-alone principle *or* doctrine *or* policy, deregulation; *laissez-faire* and *laissez-aller* <Fr>; liberalism, free enterprise, free competition, self-regulating market; open market; capitalism 611.8; free trade; noninvolvement, nonalignment, neutrality

10 **liberalism,** libertarianism, latitudinarianism; broad-mindedness, open-mindedness, toleration, tolerance; unbigotedness 979.1; libertinism, **freethinking,** free thought; liberalization, **liberation** 431; nonconformity

11 **freeman,** freewoman; citizen, free citizen, burgess, bourgeois; franklin; emancipated *or* manumitted slave, freedman, freedwoman; dediticián

12 **free agent, independent, free lance; individualist,** rugged individualist; free spirit; **liberal,** libertarian, latitudinarian; libertine, freethinker; free trader; **nonpartisan,** neutral, undecided, mugwump; isolationist; nonaligned nation; third world, third force; indie <nf>; lone wolf <nf>, loner, nonconformist

VERBS 13 **liberalize,** ease; **free, liberate** 431.4

14 **exempt, free, release,** discharge, **let go** *and* **let off** <nf>, set at liberty, spring <nf>; **excuse,** spare, except, grant immunity, make a special case of; grandfather; **dispense,** dispense from, give dispensation from; dispense with, save the necessity; remit, remise; absolve 601.4

15 **give a free hand,** let one have his head, **give one his head; give the run of** <nf>, give the freedom of; give one leeway <nf>, give full play; give one scope *or* space *or* room; **give rein** *or* **free rein to,** give the reins to, give bridle to, give one line, give one rope; **give one carte blanche, give one a blank check;** let go one's own way, let one go at will

16 **not interfere, leave** *or* **let alone, let be,** leave *or* let well enough alone, let sleeping dogs lie; **keep hands off,** not tamper, not meddle, not involve oneself, not get involved, let it ride <nf>, let nature take its course; live and let live, leave one to oneself, leave one in peace; mind one's own business; tolerate; **decontrol, deregulate**

17 <nf terms> **get off one's back** *or* **one's case** *or* **one's tail,** get out of one's face *or* hair, **butt out, back off,** leave be, call off the dogs, keep one's nose out, get lost, take a walk, not cramp someone's style

18 **be free,** feel free, feel free as a bird, feel at liberty; **go at large,** breathe free, breathe the air of freedom; **have free scope,** have one's druthers <nf>, have a free hand, have the run of <nf>; be at home, feel at home; be freed, be released; be exonerated, go *or* get off scot-free, walk

19 **let oneself go,** let go, let loose *and* cut loose *and* let one's hair down <nf>, **give way to,** open up, let it all hang out <nf>; go all out, go flat out <Brit>, pull out all the stops; go unrestrained, run wild, have one's fling, sow one's wild oats

20 **stand on one's own two feet, shift for oneself, fend for oneself,** stand on one's own, strike out for oneself, trust one's good right arm, look out for number one <nf>; **go it alone, be one's own man,** pull a lone oar, play a lone hand <nf>, **paddle one's own canoe** <nf>; suffice to oneself, do for oneself, make *or* pay one's own way; ask no favors, ask no quarter; **be one's own boss** <nf>, call no man master, answer only to oneself, ask leave of no man; **go one's own way,** take one's own course; do on one's own, do one's own thing, do on one's own initiative, do on one's own hook *or* say-so <nf>, do in one's own sweet way <nf>; **have a will of one's own,** have one's own way, do what one likes *or* wishes *or* chooses, do as one pleases, **go as one pleases,** please oneself <nf>, **suit oneself;** have a free mind; free-lance, be a free agent

ADJS 21 **free; at liberty, at large,** on the loose, **loose,** unengaged, disengaged, detached, unattached, uncommitted, uninvolved, clear, in the clear, go-as-you-please, easygoing, footloose, footloose and fancy-free, free *and* easy; free as air, free as a bird, free as the wind; scot-free; **freeborn; freed, liberated, emancipated,** manumitted, released, uncaged, sprung <nf>

22 **independent,** self-dependent; free-spirited, freewheeling, free-floating, free-standing; **self-determined,** self-directing, one's own man; freelance; inner-directed, **individualistic;** self-governed, **self-governing, autonomous,** sovereign; stand-alone, self-reliant, self-sufficient, self-subsistent, self-supporting, self-contained, autarkic, autarchic; nonpartisan, neutral, **nonaligned;** third-world, third-force

23 **free-acting,** free-going, free-moving, free-working; freehand, freehanded; **free-spoken,** outspoken, **plain-spoken, open, frank,** direct, candid, blunt 644.17

24 **unrestrained, unconstrained, unforced,** uncompelled, uncoerced; unmeasured, **uninhibited, unsuppressed, unrepressed, unreserved,** go-go <nf>, exuberant 109.14; **uncurbed, unchecked, unbridled,** unmuzzled; **unreined,** reinless; **uncontrolled,** unmastered, unsubdued, ungoverned, **unruly;** out of control, out of hand, out of one's power; **abandoned,** intemperate, immoderate, **incontinent, licentious,** loose, wanton, rampant, riotous, wild; irrepressible; lax 426.4

25 **nonrestrictive,** unrestrictive; **permissive,** hands-off <nf>; indulgent 427.8; lax 426.4; **liberal,** libertarian, latitudinarian; broad-minded, open-minded, tolerant; unbigoted 979.8; libertine; freethinking

26 **unhampered, untrammeled, unhandicapped, unimpeded,** unhindered, unprevented, unclogged, unobstructed; clear, unencumbered, unburdened, unladen, unembarrassed, disembarrassed; free-ranging, free-range

27 **unrestricted, unconfined, uncircumscribed,** unbound <old>, unbounded, unmeasured; **unlimited,** limitless, illimitable; unqualified, unconditioned, **unconditional,** without strings, no strings, no strings attached; **absolute,** perfect, unequivocal, full, plenary; open-ended, open, **wide-open** <nf>; permissive; decontrolled, deregulated

28 **unbound,** untied, **unfettered,** unshackled, unchained; unmuzzled, ungagged; uncensored; declassified

29 **unsubject,** ungoverned, unenslaved, **unenthralled;** unvanquished, unconquered, unsubdued, unquelled, **untamed,** unbroken, undomesticated, unreconstructed

30 **exempt, immune;** exempted, **released, excused,** excepted, let off <nf>, spared; grandfathered; **privileged, licensed,** favored, chartered; permitted; dispensed; **unliable,** unsubject, irresponsible, unaccountable, unanswerable

31 **quit, clear, free, rid; free of, clear of, quit of, rid of, shut of,** shed of <nf>

ADVS 32 **freely,** free; **without restraint,** without stint, **unreservedly,** with abandon; outright

33 **independently, alone, by oneself,** all by one's lonesome <nf>, under one's own power *or* steam, **on one's own** *and* **on one's own hook** <nf>, on one's own initiative, on one's own bottom <old>; **on one's own account** *or* **responsibility,** on one's own say-so <nf>; **of one's own free will, of one's own accord,** of one's own volition, at one's own discretion

431 LIBERATION

NOUNS 1 **liberation, freeing,** setting free, setting at liberty; **deliverance, delivery; rescue** 398; **emancipation,** disenthrallment, manumission; enfranchisement, affranchisement; Emancipation Proclamation; Nineteenth Amendment; Equal Rights Amendment; women's liberation; gay liberation; women's *or* gay *or* men's lib <nf>

2 **release, freeing,** unhanding, **loosing,** unloosing; unbinding, untying, unbuckling, unshackling, unfettering, unlashing, unstrapping, untrussing *and* unpinioning <old>, unmanacling, **unleashing,** unchaining, untethering, unhobbling, unharnessing, unyoking, unbridling; unmuzzling, ungagging; unlocking, unlatching, unbolting, unbarring; unpenning, uncaging; **discharge, dismissal;** parole, bail; convict release, springing <nf>; demobilization, separation from the service

3 **extrication,** freeing, releasing, clearing; **disengagement, disentanglement,** untangling, unsnarling, unraveling, disentwining, disinvolvement, unknotting, disembarrassment, disembroilment; dislodgment, breaking out *or* loose, busting out *or* loose <nf>

VERBS 4 **liberate, free, deliver, set free,** set at liberty, set at large; **emancipate,** manumit, disenthrall; enfranchise, affranchise; **rescue** 398.3

5 **release, unhand, let go, let loose, turn loose,** cast loose, let out, let off, let go free, let off the hook; **discharge, dismiss;** let out on bail, grant bail to, go bail for <nf>; parole, put on parole; release from prison, spring <nf>; demobilize, separate from the service

6 **loose,** loosen, let loose, cut loose *or* free, unloose,

unloosen; **unbind, untie,** unstrap, unbuckle, unlash, untruss *and* unpinion <old>; **unfetter, unshackle,** unmanacle, unchain, unhandcuff, untie one's hands; **unleash,** untether, unhobble; unharness, unyoke, unbridle; unmuzzle, ungag; unlock, unlatch, unbolt, unbar; unpen, uncage

7 **extricate, free, release, clear,** get out; **disengage,** disentangle, untangle, unsnarl, unravel, disentwine, disinvolve, unknot, disembarrass, disembroil; dislodge, break out *or* loose, cut loose, tear loose

8 **free oneself from,** deliver oneself from, **get free of,** get quit of, **get rid of,** get clear of, **get out of,** get well out of, get around, extricate oneself, get out of a jam <nf>; **throw off, shake off;** break out, bust out <nf>, go over the wall <nf>, **escape** 369.6; wriggle out of

9 **go free,** go scot free, go at liberty, **get off,** get off scot-free, get out of, beat the rap *and* walk <nf>

ADJS 10 **liberated, freed, emancipated, released;** delivered, rescued, ransomed, redeemed; extricated, unbound, untied, unshackled, etc; free 430.20; scot-free; on parole, out on bail

432 SUBJECTION

NOUNS 1 **subjection, subjugation; domination** 612.2; **restraint, control** 428.1; **bondage, captivity; thrall, thralldom,** enthrallment; **slavery,** enslavement, master-slave relationship; **servitude,** compulsory *or* involuntary servitude, servility, bond service, indentureship; **serfdom,** serfhood, villenage, **vassalage;** helotry, helotism; debt slavery, **peonage;** feudalism, feudality; absolutism, tyranny 612.9,10; deprivation of freedom, disenfranchisement, disfranchisement

2 **subservience** *or* subserviency, subjecthood, subordinacy, **subordination,** juniority, **inferiority;** lower status, subordinate role, satellite status; back seat *and* second fiddle *and* hind tit <nf>; **service,** servitorship 577.12

3 **dependence** *or* dependency, codependency, tutelage, chargeship, wardship; apprenticeship; clientship, clientage

4 **subdual, quelling,** crushing, trampling *or* treading down, reduction, **humbling, humiliation; breaking, taming,** domestication, gentling; conquering 412.1; **suppression** 428.2

5 **subordinate,** junior, secondary, second-in-command, lieutenant, **inferior; underling,** understrapper, low man on the totem pole <nf>, errand boy, flunky, gofer <nf>, grunt <nf>; assistant, personal assistant, helper 616.6; strong right arm, **right-hand man** 616.7; **servant, employee** 577

6 **dependent, charge, ward,** client, protégé, encumbrance; pensioner, pensionary; public charge, ward of the state; child; foster child; dependency *or* dependent state, client state, satellite *or* satellite state, puppet government, creature; hanger-on, parasite

7 **subject, vassal,** liege, liege man, liege subject, homager; **captive; slave,** servant, chattel, chattel slave, **bondsman,** bondman, **bondslave,** theow, thrall; indentured servant; laborer, esne; bondwoman, bondswoman, bondmaid; odalisque, concubine; galley slave; **serf,** helot, villein; churl; debt slave, **peon;** conscript

VERBS 8 **subjugate, subject, subordinate; dominate** 612.15; disfranchise, disenfranchise, divest *or* deprive of freedom; **enslave,** enthrall, hold in thrall, make a chattel of; take captive, lead captive *or* into captivity; **hold in subjection,** hold in bondage, **hold captive,** hold in captivity; **hold down,** keep down, keep under; **keep** *or* **have under one's thumb,** have tied to one's apron strings, hold in leash, hold in leading strings, hold in swaddling clothes, hold *or* keep at one's beck and call; vassalize, make dependent *or* tributary; peonize

9 **subdue, master,** overmaster, **quell, crush, reduce,** beat down, **break,** break down, overwhelm; tread underfoot, trample on *or* down, trample underfoot, roll in the dust, trample in the dust, drag at one's chariot wheel; oppress, **suppress** 428.8; make one give in *or* say 'uncle' <nf>, **conquer** 412.10; kick around <nf>, tyrannize 612.16; unman 19.12; bring low, **bring to terms, humble,** humiliate, take down a notch *or* peg, bend, **bring one to his knees, bend to one's will**

10 **have subject,** twist *or* turn *or* wind around one's little finger, make lie down and roll over, have eating out of one's hand, **lead by the nose,** make a puppet of, make putty of, make a sport *or* plaything of; use as a doormat, treat like dirt under one's feet, walk all over

11 **domesticate, tame, break,** bust *and* gentle <nf>, break in, break to harness; housebreak

12 **depend on,** be at the mercy of, be the sport *or* plaything *or* puppet of, be putty in the hands of; not dare to say one's soul is one's own; eat out of one's hands; play second fiddle, suck hind tit <nf>, take a back seat; pay tribute

ADJS 13 **subject, dependent,** tributary, client; **subservient, subordinate, inferior;** servile; liege, **vassal,** feudal, feudatory

14 **subjugated,** subjected, **enslaved, enthralled, in thrall, captive,** bond, unfree; disenfranchised, disfranchised, **oppressed, suppressed** 428.14; **in subjection, in bondage, in captivity,** in slavery, in bonds, in chains; under the lash, under the heel; **in**

one's power, in one's control, in one's hands *or* clutches, in one's pocket, **under one's thumb,** at one's mercy, under one's command *or* orders, at one's beck and call, at one's feet, at one's pleasure; **subordinated,** playing second fiddle; at the bottom of the ladder, sucking hind tit <nf>

15 **subdued, quelled,** crushed, broken, reduced, mastered, overmastered, humbled, humiliated, brought to one's knees, brought low, made to grovel; **tamed, domesticated,** broken to harness, gentled; housebroken *or* housebroke

16 **downtrodden,** downtrod <old>, kept down *or* under, ground down, overborne, trampled, **oppressed; abused,** misused; **henpecked, browbeaten,** led by the nose, in leading strings, tied to one's apron strings, ordered *or* kicked around <nf>, regimented, tyrannized; slavish, servile, submissive 433.12; unmanned 19.19; treated like dirt under one's feet, treated like shit <nf>

PREPS 17 **under, below, beneath,** underneath, subordinate to; at the feet of; under the heel of; at the beck and call of, at the whim *or* pleasure of

433 SUBMISSION

NOUNS 1 **submission,** submittal, **yielding; compliance,** complaisance, **acquiescence, acceptance;** going along with <nf>, **assent** 332; **consent** 441; **obedience** 326; subjection 432; **resignation,** resignedness, stoicism, philosophical attitude; **deference,** homage, kneeling, obeisance; **passivity, unassertiveness,** passiveness, supineness, longanimity, long-suffering, long-sufferance <old>, nonresistance, nonopposition, nonopposal, quietness, nondissent, quietude, quietism; **cowardice** 491

2 **surrender, capitulation;** renunciation, giving over, abandonment, relinquishment, **cession;** giving up *or* in, backing off *or* down <nf>, retreat, recession, recedence, caving in <nf>, giving up the fort, the white flag <nf>, throwing in the towel *or* sponge <nf>

3 **submissiveness, docility, tractability,** biddability, yieldingness, compliableness <old>, pliancy, pliability, flexibility, malleability, moldability, ductility, plasticity, facility; agreeableness, agreeability; subservience, **servility** 138

4 **manageability, governability, controllability,** manipulability, manipulatability, corrigibility, untroublesomeness; **tameness,** housebrokenness; tamableness, domesticability; milk-toast, milquetoast, Caspar Milquetoast

5 **meekness, gentleness, tameness, mildness,** mild-manneredness, peaceableness, lamblikeness, dovelikeness; **self-abnegation, humility** 137

VERBS 6 **submit, comply, take, accept,** go along with <nf>, suffer, bear, brook, **acquiesce,** be agreeable, accede, **assent** 332.8; **consent** 441.2; relent, **succumb,** resign, resign oneself, give oneself up, not resist; take one's medicine, swallow the pill, face the music, face the facts; **bite the bullet; knuckle down** *or* **under,** knock under <old>, take it, swallow it; jump through a hoop, dance to another's tune; take it lying down; put up with it, grin and bear it, make the best of it, take the bitter with the sweet, shrug, shrug off, **live with it;** obey 326.2

7 **yield, cede, give way, give ground, back down, give up, give in,** cave in <nf>, withdraw from *or* quit the field, break off combat, cease resistance, have no fight left

8 **surrender, give up, capitulate,** acknowledge defeat, **cry quits,** cry pax <Brit>, **say 'uncle'** <nf>, beg a truce, pray for quarter, implore mercy, **throw in the towel** *or* **sponge** <nf>, show *or* wave the white flag, lower *or* haul down *or* strike one's flag *or* colors, throw down *or* lay down *or* deliver up one's arms, hand over one's sword, yield the palm, ask for mercy, pull in one's horns <nf>, come to terms; renounce, abandon, relinquish, **cede,** give over, hand over

9 **submit to, yield to, defer to,** bow to, give way to, knuckle under to, succumb to

10 **bow down,** bow, bend, stoop, crouch, **bow one's head,** bend the neck, bow submission; genuflect, curtsy; **bow to,** bend to, knuckle to <nf>, bend *or* bow to one's will, bend to one's yoke; kneel to, **bend the knee to, fall on one's knees before,** crouch before, **fall at one's feet,** throw oneself at the feet of, prostrate oneself before, **truckle to,** cringe to, cave in; **kowtow,** bow and scrape, grovel, do obeisance *or* homage; kiss ass <nf>; take the line of least resistance

11 **eat dirt, eat crow, eat humble pie,** lick the dust, kiss the rod, take it on the chin

ADJS 12 **submissive, compliant,** compliable <old>, complaisant, complying, **acquiescent,** consenting 441.4; **assenting,** accepting, agreeable; subservient, abject, **obedient** 326.3; servile; **resigned,** uncomplaining; unassertive; **passive,** supine, **unresisting,** nonresisting, unresistant, nonresistant, nonresistive, long-suffering, longanimous, nonopposing, nondissenting

13 **docile, tractable,** biddable, unmurmuring, **yielding,** pliant, pliable, flexible, malleable, moldable, ductile, plastic, facile <old>, like putty in one's hands

14 **manageable, governable, controllable,** manipulable, manipulatable, handleable, corrigible, restrainable, untroublesome; domitable, tamable, domesticable; milk-toast *or* milquetoast

15 **meek, gentle, mild,** mild-mannered, peaceable, pacific, quiet; **subdued, chastened, tame,** tamed, broken, housebroken, domesticated; lamblike, gentle as a lamb, dovelike; humble; soft, weak-kneed

16 **deferential, obeisant; subservient, obsequious,** servile 138.13; crouching, prostrate, prone, on one's belly, on one's knees, on one's marrowbones <nf>, on bended knee

ADVS 17 **submissively, compliantly,** complaisantly, acquiescently, agreeably; **obediently** 326.6; **resignedly,** uncomplainingly, with resignation; **passively,** supinely, unresistingly, unresistantly, nonresistively

18 **docilely, tractably,** biddably, **yieldingly,** pliantly, pliably, malleably, flexibly, plastically, facilely <old>

19 **meekly, gently, tamely, mildly,** peaceably, pacifically, quietly, like a lamb

434 OBSERVANCE

NOUNS 1 **observance,** observation; **keeping,** adherence, heeding; compliance, conformance, conformity, accordance; **faith,** faithfulness, fidelity; **respect, deference** 155.1; **performance, practice,** execution, discharge, carrying out *or* through, dutifulness 641.2, acquittal *or* acquittance <old>, fulfillment, satisfaction; heed, care 339.1; obeying the law

VERBS 2 **observe, keep, heed, follow,** keep the faith, regard, defer to, **respect** 155.4, attend to, **comply with,** conform to; hold by, **abide by,** adhere to, **live up to,** act up to, practice what one preaches, **be faithful to,** keep faith with, do justice to, do the right thing by; **fulfill,** fill, meet, satisfy; **make good,** keep *or* make good one's word *or* promise, be as good as one's word, redeem one's pledge, stand to one's engagement; keep to the spirit of, keep faith with; obey the law

3 **perform, practice,** do, execute, discharge, carry out *or* through, carry into execution, do one's duty 641.10, do one's office, fulfill one's role, discharge one's function; honor one's obligations

ADJS 4 **observant,** respectful 155.8, regardful, mindful; **faithful,** devout, devoted, true, loyal, constant; dutiful 641.13, duteous; as good as one's word; **practicing,** active; compliant, conforming; punctual, punctilious, scrupulous, meticulous, conscientious 339.12; obedient

435 NONOBSERVANCE

NOUNS 1 **nonobservance,** inobservance, unobservance, nonadherence; nonconformity, disconformity, **nonconformance, noncompliance,** apostasy; inattention, indifference, **disregard** 984.1; laxity 426.1; **nonfulfillment, nonperformance,** nonfeasance, failure, **dereliction, delinquency,** omission, default, slight, oversight; **negligence; neglect** 340, laches; abandonment 370; lack of ceremony

2 **violation, infraction, breach,** breaking; **infringement, transgression, trespass,** contravention; offense 674.4; breach of promise, breach of contract, breach of trust *or* faith, bad faith, breach of privilege; breach of the peace

VERBS 3 **disregard,** lose sight of, pay no regard to; **neglect** 340.6; renege, abandon 370.5; defect 858.13; do one's own thing <nf>

4 **violate, break, breach, infringe, transgress, trespass,** contravene, trample on *or* upon, trample underfoot, do violence to, make a mockery of, outrage; **defy,** set at defiance, flout, set at naught, set naught by; take the law into one's own hands, break one's promise, break one's word

ADJS 5 **nonobservant,** inobservant, unobservant, nonadherent, nonconforming, unconforming, noncompliant, uncompliant; inattentive, **disregardful** 983.6; **negligent** 340.10; unfaithful, untrue, unloyal, inconstant, lapsed, renegade 858.20,363.11; contemptuous

436 PROMISE

NOUNS 1 **promise, pledge,** solemn promise, troth, plight, faith, parole, **word, word of honor,** debt of honor, solemn declaration *or* word; **oath, vow,** avouch, avouchment; **assurance, guarantee,** warranty; entitlement

2 **obligation, commitment, agreement, engagement,** undertaking, recognizance, **understanding,** gentlemen's agreement, unwritten agreement, handshake; verbal agreement, nonformal agreement, pactum <law>; tacit *or* unspoken agreement, **contract** 437.1, covenant, bond; designation, committal, earmarking

3 **betrothal,** betrothment, intention, espousal, **engagement,** handfasting *and* affiance <old>, troth, marriage contract *or* vow, plighted troth *or* faith *or* love, exchange of vows; banns, banns of matrimony; prenuptial agreement *or* contract, prenup <nf>

VERBS 4 **promise,** give *or* make a promise, hold out an expectation; **pledge,** plight, troth, **vow; give**

one's word, pledge *or* pass one's word, give one's parole, **give one's word of honor,** plight one's troth *or* faith, pledge *or* plight one's honor; cross one's heart *and* cross one's heart and hope to die <nf>, **swear;** vouch, avouch, **warrant, guarantee, assure;** underwrite, countersign

5 **commit, engage,** undertake, obligate, bind, **agree to,** say yes, answer for, be answerable for, take on oneself, be responsible for, be security for, go bail for, accept obligation *or* responsibility, bind oneself to, put oneself down for; have an understanding; enter into a gentlemen's agreement; take the vows *or* marriage vows; shake hands on, shake on it; contract, sign on the dotted line; designate, commit, earmark

6 **be engaged, affiance, betroth,** troth, plight one's troth, say 'I do'; **contract,** contract an engagement, pledge *or* promise in marriage; read *or* publish the banns

ADJS 7 **promissory,** votive; under *or* upon oath, on one's word, on one's word of honor, on the Book, under hand and seal, avowed

8 **promised, pledged, bound, committed,** compromised, **obligated; sworn,** warranted, **guaranteed,** assured, underwritten, cosigned; contracted 437.12; **engaged, plighted, affianced, betrothed,** intended

ADVS 9 on one's honor *or* word *or* word of honor *or* parole; solemnly

437 COMPACT

NOUNS 1 **compact, pact, contract,** legal contract, valid contract, **covenant,** convention, transaction, paction <Scot>, accord, **agreement,** mutual agreement, agreement between *or* among parties, signed *or* written agreement, formal agreement, legal agreement, undertaking, stipulation; adjustment, accommodation; **understanding, arrangement, bargain,** dicker *and* **deal** <nf>, informal agreement; **settlement,** negotiated settlement; **labor contract, union contract** 727.3, wage contract, employment contract, collective agreement; deed; cartel, consortium; protocol; bond, binding agreement, ironclad agreement, covenant of salt; gentleman's *or* gentlemen's agreement; prenuptial agreement; promise 436

2 **treaty,** international agreement, *entente* or *entente cordiale* <Fr>, concord, concordat, cartel, convention, consortium, protocol, paction, capitulation; **alliance, league;** nonaggression pact, mutual-defense treaty; trade agreement; arms control agreement; NATO *or* North Atlantic Treaty Organization; SEATO *or* Southeast Asia Treaty Organization; Warsaw Pact

3 signing, signature, sealing, closing, conclusion, solemnization; handshake

4 **execution, completion; transaction; carrying out, discharge, fulfillment,** prosecution, effectuation; enforcement; observance 434

VERBS 5 **contract,** compact, **covenant, bargain, agree, engage,** undertake, commit, mutually commit, make a deal <nf>, do a deal <Brit nf>, stipulate, agree to, bargain for, contract for; preset, prearrange, **promise** 436.4; subcontract, outsource; cut a deal <nf>

6 **treat with, negotiate, bargain,** make terms, sit down with, sit down at the bargaining table

7 **sign, shake hands** *or* shake <nf>, affix one's John Hancock <nf>, seal, formalize, make legal and binding, solemnize; agree on terms, come to terms, come to an agreement 332.10; strike a bargain 731.19; plea-bargain

8 **arrange, settle; adjust,** fine-tune, accommodate, reshuffle, rejigger <nf>, **compose,** fix, make up, straighten out, put *or* set straight, work out, sort out *and* square away <nf>; **conclude,** close, **close with,** settle with

9 **execute, complete, transact,** promulgate, make; close a deal; make out, fill out; **discharge, fulfill,** render, administer; **carry out,** carry through, put through, prosecute; effect, effectuate, set in motion, implement; enforce, put in force; **abide by, honor, live up to,** adhere to, live by, **observe** 434.2

ADJS 10 contractual, covenantal, conventional, consensual

11 **contracted,** compacted, **covenanted, agreed upon, bargained for,** agreed <Brit>, stipulated; engaged, undertaken; **promised** 436.8; arranged, settled; under hand and seal, **signed,** sealed; signed sealed and delivered, ratified

ADVS 12 **contractually, as agreed upon, as promised,** as contracted for, by the terms of the contract, according to the contract *or* bargain *or* agreement

438 SECURITY

<thing given as a pledge>

NOUNS 1 **security, surety,** indemnity, **guaranty, guarantee, warranty, insurance,** warrant, assurance, underwriting; **obligation** 436.2, full faith *and* credit; **bond,** tie; stocks and bonds 738.1

2 **pledge, gage,** *pignus* or *vadium* <L>; undertaking; **earnest,** earnest money, god's penny, handsel; escrow; token payment; pawn, hock <nf>; **bail,** bond, vadimonium; replevin, replevy, recognizance; mainprise; hostage, surety

3 **collateral,** collateral security *or* warranty; deposit, stake, forfeit; indemnity, IOU; caution money, caution; margin; cosigned promissory note

4 **mortgage,** mortgage deed, deed of trust, lien, security agreement; vadium mortuum *or* mortuum vadium; dead pledge; vadium vivum, living pledge, antichresis; hypothec, hypothecation, bottomry, bottomry bond; adjustment mortgage, blanket mortgage, chattel mortgage, closed mortgage, participating mortgage, installment mortgage, leasehold mortgage, trust mortgage, reverse mortgage; first mortgage, second mortgage, third mortgage; adjustable-rate mortgage *or* ARM, variable-rate mortgage *or* VRM, fixed-rate mortgage; equity loan; reverse equity

5 **lien,** general lien, particular lien; pignus legale, common-law lien, statutory lien, judgment lien, pignus judiciale, tax lien, mechanic's lien; mortgage bond

6 **guarantor,** warrantor, guaranty, guarantee; mortgagor; insurer, underwriter; sponsor, surety; godparent, godfather, godmother; bondsman, bailsman, mainpernor

7 **warrantee,** mortgagee; insuree, policyholder; godchild, godson, goddaughter

8 guarantorship, **sponsorship,** sponsion

VERBS 9 **secure, guarantee, guaranty, warrant, assure, insure,** ensure, bond, **certify;** countersecure; stand surety; **sponsor,** be sponsor for, sign for, sign one's note, **back,** stand behind *or* back of, stand up for; **endorse;** indemnify, countersign; sign, cosign, **underwrite,** undersign, subscribe to; confirm, attest

10 **pledge,** impignorate *and* handsel <old>, **deposit, stake,** post, put in escrow, **put up,** put up as collateral, lay out *or* down; **pawn,** put in pawn, spout *or* put up the spout <old>, **hock** *and* **put in hock** <nf>; mortgage, hypothecate, bottomry, bond; **put up** *or* **go bail,** bail out

ADJS 11 **secured,** covered, **guaranteed, warranted,** certified, **insured,** ensured, **assured;** certain, sure 970.13

12 **pledged,** staked, posted, deposited, in escrow, **put up,** put up as collateral; on deposit, at stake; as earnest; **pawned,** in pawn, **in hock** <nf>, hocked, up the spout <old>

13 **in trust,** held in trust, held in pledge, fiduciary; in escrow; mortgaged

439 OFFER

NOUNS 1 **offer,** offering, proffer, presentation, **bid,** submission; **advance, overture,** approach, invitation, come-on <nf>; hesitant *or* tentative *or* preliminary approach, feeling-out, **feeler** <nf>; asking price; **counteroffer, counterproposal**

2 **proposal, proposition, suggestion,** instance; **motion,** resolution; sexual advance *or* approach *or* invitation *or* overture, indecent proposal, pass <nf>, improper suggestion; request 440

3 **ultimatum,** last *or* final word *or* offer, firm bid *or* price, sticking point

VERBS 4 **offer, proffer, present,** tender, offer up, **put up, submit, extend,** prefer <old>, **hold out,** hold forth, place in one's way, lay at one's feet, put *or* place at one's disposal, put one in the way of

5 **propose, submit,** prefer; **suggest,** recommend, **advance,** commend to attention, **propound, pose, put forward,** bring forward, put *or* set forth, put it to, put *or* set *or* lay *or* bring before, dish up *and* come out *or* up with <nf>; put a bee in one's bonnet, put ideas into one's head; **bring up, broach, moot,** introduce, open up, launch, start, kick off <nf>; **move, make a motion,** offer a resolution; postulate 951.12

6 **bid,** bid for, make a bid

7 **make advances,** approach, overture, **make an overture,** throw *or* fling oneself at one <nf>; **solicit, importune**

8 <nf terms> **proposition, come on to,** hit on, put *or* make a move on, jump one's bones, make *or* throw a pass, george, **make a play for,** play footsie with, pitch, mash <old>

9 **urge upon, press upon,** ply upon, push upon, force upon, thrust upon; **press, ply;** insist

10 **volunteer, come** *or* **step forward, offer** *or* **proffer** *or* **present oneself,** be at one's service, not wait to be asked, not wait for an invitation, need no prodding, step into the breach, be Johnny-on-the-spot <nf>

440 REQUEST

NOUNS 1 **request,** asking; the touch <nf>; desire, wish, expressed desire; **petition,** petitioning, impetration, address; **application; requisition,** indent <Brit>; demand 421; special request

2 **entreaty, appeal, plea, bid,** suit, call, cry, clamor, *cri du cœur* <Fr>, beseeching, impetration, obtestation; **supplication, prayer,** rogation, **beseechment,** imploring, imploration, obsecration, obtestation, adjuration, imprecation; **invocation,** invocatory plea *or* prayer

3 **importunity,** importunateness, urgency, pressure, high pressure *and* hard sell <nf>; **urging, pressing, plying;** buttonholing; dunning; teasing, pestering, plaguing, nagging, nudging <nf>; **coaxing,** wheedling, cajolery, cajolement, blandishment

4 **invitation, invite** *and* **bid** <nf>, engraved invitation, bidding, biddance, **call,** calling, **summons**

5 **solicitation, canvass, canvassing; suit,** addresses; **courting, wooing;** fund-raising; the touch <nf>

6 **beggary,** mendicancy, mendicity; **begging,** cadging, scrounging; mooching *and* bumming *and* panhandling <nf>

7 **petitioner, supplicant,** suppliant, suitor; **solicitor** 730.7; **applicant,** solicitant, claimant; aspirant, seeker, wannabee <nf>; **candidate,** postulant; bidder

8 **beggar, mendicant,** scrounger, **cadger; bum** *and* bummer *and* **moocher** *and* **panhandler** *and* sponger <nf>; *schnorrer* <Yiddish>; hobo, tramp 178.3; loafer 331.8; mendicant friar; mendicant order

VERBS 9 **request, ask,** make a request, **beg leave,** make bold to ask; **desire,** wish, wish for, express a wish for, crave; **ask for,** order, put in an order for, bespeak, call for, trouble one for; whistle for <nf>; **requisition,** make *or* put in a requisition, indent <Brit>; make application, **apply for,** file for, **put in for;** demand 421.4

10 **petition,** present *or* prefer a petition, sign a petition, circulate a petition; **pray,** sue; **apply to, call on** or **upon;** memorialize

11 **entreat, implore, beseech, beg,** crave, **plead, appeal, pray, supplicate,** impetrate, obtest; adjure, conjure; invoke, imprecate <old>, **call on** *or* **upon,** cry on *or* upon, **appeal to,** cry to, run to; go cap *or* hat in hand to; kneel to, go down on one's knees to, fall on one's knees to, go on bended knee to, throw oneself at the feet of, get *or* come down on one's marrow-bones <nf>; **plead for,** clamor for, cry for, cry out for; call for help

12 **importune, urge, press,** pressure <nf>, prod, prod at, apply *or* exert pressure, push, **ply;** dun; **beset, buttonhole,** besiege, take *or* grasp by the lapels; work on <nf>, **tease,** pester, plague, nag, nag at, make a pest *or* nuisance of oneself, try one's patience, bug <nf>, nudge; **coax,** wheedle, cajole, blandish, flatter, soft-soap <nf>

13 **invite, ask, call, summon, call in, bid come,** extend *or* issue an invitation, request the presence of, request the pleasure of one's company, send an engraved invitation

14 **solicit, canvass; court, woo,** address, sue, sue for, pop the question <nf>; **seek, bid for,** look for; **fish for,** angle for; pass the hat

15 beg, **scrounge, cadge; mooch** *and* **bum** *and* **panhandle** <nf>; **hit** *and* hit up *and* **touch** *and* put the touch on *and* make a touch <nf>; pass the hat <nf>

ADJS 16 **supplicatory, suppliant,** supplicant, supplicating, **prayerful,** precative; **petitionary; begging,** mendicant, cadging, scrounging, mooching <nf>; on one's knees *or* bended knees, on one's marrow-bones <nf>; with joined *or* folded hands

17 **imploring, entreating, beseeching, begging, pleading, appealing,** precatory, precative, adjuratory

18 **importunate; teasing,** pesty, pesky <nf>, pestering, plaguing, nagging, dunning; **coaxing,** wheedling, cajoling, flattering, soft-soaping <nf>; **insistent, demanding, urgent**

19 **invitational,** inviting, invitatory

INTERJS 20 **please,** prithee <old>, pray, do, **pray do;** be so good as to, be good enough, have the goodness; will you, may it please you; **if you please,** *s'il vous plaît* <Fr>; I beg you, *je vous en prie* <Fr>; for God's *or* goodness *or* heaven's *or* mercy's sake; be my guest, feel free; gimme a break!, cut me some slack!

441 CONSENT

NOUNS 1 **consent, assent, agreement,** accord <old>, acceptance, approval, blessing, approbation, sanction, **endorsement,** ratification, backing; affirmation, affirmative, affirmative voice *or* vote, yea, aye, **nod** *and* **okay** *and* **OK** <nf>; **leave, permission** 443; **willingness,** readiness, promptness, promptitude, eagerness, unreluctance, unloathness, ungrudgingness, tacit *or* unspoken *or* silent *or* implicit consent, **connivance; acquiescence, compliance;** submission 433

VERBS 2 **consent, assent,** give consent, yield assent, be willing, be amenable, be persuaded, accede to, accord to *and* grant <old>, say yes *or* aye *or* yea, vote affirmatively, vote aye, **nod, nod assent; accept, play** *or* **go along** <nf>, **agree to, sign off on** <nf>, go along with <nf>; be in accord with, be in favor of, take kindly to, **approve of,** hold with; **approve,** give one's blessing to, **okay** *or* **OK** <nf>; sanction, **endorse, ratify;** consent to silently *or* by implication *or in petto* <Ital>; **wink at, connive at; be willing,** turn a willing ear; deign, condescend; have no objection, not refuse; permit 443.9

3 **acquiesce, comply, comply with,** fall in with, take one up on <nf>, be persuaded, come round *or* around, come over, come to <nf>, see one's way clear to; **submit** 433.6,9

ADJS 4 **consenting, assenting,** affirmative, amenable, persuaded, approving, agreeing, favorable, accordant, consentient, consentual; sanctioning, endorsing, ratifying; **acquiescent, compliant,** compliable <old>; submissive 433.12; **willing, agreeable,** content; ready, prompt, eager, unreluctant, unloath, nothing loath, unmurmuring, ungrudging, unrefusing; permissive 443.14

ADVS 5 **consentingly, assentingly,** affirmatively, approvingly, favorably, positively, agreeably, accordantly; acquiescently, compliantly; willingly 324.8; **yes** 332.18

442 REFUSAL

NOUNS 1 **refusal, rejection,** turndown, turning down; thumbs-down <nf>, *pollice verso* <L>; nonconsent, nonacceptance; **declining,** declination, declension, declinature; **denial,** disclamation, disclaimer, disallowance; decertification, disaccreditation; **repudiation** 372.1; disagreement, dissent 333; recantation 363.3; contradiction 335.2; negation, abnegation, negative, negative answer, nay, no, nix <nf>; unwillingness 325; disobedience 327; noncompliance, noncooperation, nonobservance 435; withholding, holding back, retention, deprivation

2 **repulse, rebuff,** peremptory *or* flat *or* point-blank refusal, summary negative; a flea in one's ear; kiss-off *and* slap in the face *and* kick in the teeth <nf>; short shrift

VERBS 3 **refuse, decline,** not consent, refuse consent, **reject, turn down** <nf>, decline to accept, **not have,** not buy <nf>; not hold with, not think *or* hear of; **say no,** say nay, vote nay, vote negatively *or* in the negative, side against, disagree, beg to disagree, dissent 333.4; shake one's head, negative, negate; vote down, **turn thumbs down on;** be unwilling 325.3; turn one's back on, turn a deaf ear to, set oneself against, set one's face against, be unmoved, harden one's heart, resist entreaty *or* persuasion; stand aloof, not lift a finger, have nothing to do with, wash one's hands of; hold out against; put *or* set one's foot down, refuse point-blank *or* summarily; decline politely *or* with thanks, beg off; **repudiate,** disallow, disclaim 372.2; decertify, disaccredit

4 **deny, withhold,** hold back; grudge, begrudge; close the hand *or* purse; deprive one of

5 **repulse, rebuff, repel,** kiss one off *and* slap one in the face *and* kick one in the teeth <nf>, send one away with a flea in one's ear, give one short shrift, shut *or* slam the door in one's face, turn one away; slap *or* smack one down <nf>; deny oneself to, refuse to receive, not be at home to, cut, **snub** 157.5; not want anything to do with

ADJS 6 **unconsenting,** nonconsenting, **negative; unwilling** 325.5; **uncompliant,** uncomplying, uncomplaisant, inacquiescent, uncooperative; disobedient; rejective, declinatory; deaf to, not willing to hear of; dissenting

PHRS 7 **I refuse, I won't,** I will not, I will do no such thing; over my dead body, far be it from me, not if I can help it, not likely, not on your life, count me out, include me out, I'm not taking any, I won't buy it, it's no go, like hell I will, I'll be hanged if I will, try and make me, you have another guess coming, you should live so long, I'll see you in hell first, nothing doing <nf>; out of the question, not to be thought of, impossible; **no,** by no means, **no way, no way José, there's no way;** in a pig's eye *or* ear *or* ass, my eye *or* ass

443 PERMISSION

NOUNS 1 **permission, leave, allowance,** vouchsafement; **consent** 441; permission to enter, admission, ticket, ticket of admission; implied consent; approbation, blessing; **license,** liberty 430.1; **okay** *and* **OK** *and* **nod** *and* **go-ahead** *and* **green light** *and* **go sign** *and* **thumbs-up** <nf>; special permission, charter, patent, dispensation, release, waiver; zoning variance, variance

2 **sufferance, tolerance,** toleration, **indulgence;** leniency; winking, overlooking, connivance; permissiveness; dispensation, exemption

3 **authorization, authority, sanction, licensing,** countenance, **warrant,** warranty, fiat; empowerment, enabling, entitlement, enfranchisement, certification; clearance, security clearance; ratification 332.4; legalization, legitimation, decriminalization

4 **carte blanche,** blank check <nf>, freedom, **full authority,** full power, free hand, open mandate

5 **grant, concession;** charter, franchise, liberty, diploma, patent, letters patent, brevet; royal grant

6 **permit, license, warrant;** building permit, learner's permit, work permit; driver's license, marriage license, hunting license, fishing license, etc; nihil obstat, imprimatur; credentials

7 **pass, passport, safe-conduct,** safeguard, protection; visa, entry visa, exit visa; green card; **clearance,** clearance papers; bill of health, clean bill of health, pratique, full pratique

8 **permissibility,** permissibleness, **allowableness; admissibility,** admissibleness; justifiableness, warrantableness, sanctionableness; **validity,** legitimacy, lawfulness, licitness, legality

VERBS 9 **permit, allow, admit, let,** leave <nf>, give permission, give leave, make possible; **allow** *or* **permit of;** give *or* leave room for, open the door to; consent 441.2; **grant,** accord, vouchsafe; **okay** *and* **OK** *and* **give the nod** *or* **go-ahead** *or* **green light** *or* **go sign** <nf>, say *or* give the word <nf>; dispense, release, waive

10 **suffer, countenance,** have, **tolerate, condone,** brook, endure, stomach, bear, bear with, put up with, stand for, hear of *and* go along with <nf>;

indulge 427.6; shut one's eyes to, **wink at,** blink at, overlook, connive at; leave the door *or* way open to

11 authorize, sanction, warrant; give official sanction *or* warrant, legitimize, validate, legalize; empower, give power, enable, entitle; **license; privilege;** charter, patent, enfranchise, franchise; accredit, certificate, certify; ratify 332.12; **legalize,** legitimate, legitimize, decriminalize

12 give carte blanche, issue *or* accord *or* give a blank check <nf>, give full power *or* authority, give an open mandate *or* invitation, give free rein, give a free hand, leave alone, leave it to one; permit all *or* anything, open the floodgates, remove all restrictions, let someone get away with murder <nf>

13 may, can, have permission, **be permitted** *or* **allowed**

ADJS **14 permissive,** admissive, permitting, allowing; consenting 441.4; **unprohibitive,** nonprohibitive; tolerating, obliging, **tolerant;** suffering, **indulgent, lenient** 427.7; hands-off <nf>; lax 426.4; easy come easy go <nf>

15 permissible, allowable, admissible; justifiable, warrantable, sanctionable; licit, **lawful, legitimate, legal,** legitimized, legalized, legitimated, decriminalized, legit <nf>

16 permitted, allowed, admitted; tolerated, on sufferance; unprohibited, unforbidden, unregulated, unchecked; unconditional, without strings

17 authorized, empowered, entitled; **warranted, sanctioned; licensed, privileged;** chartered, patented; franchised, enfranchised; accredited, certificated

ADVS **18 permissively,** admissively; **tolerantly, indulgently**

19 permissibly, allowably, admissibly; with permission, by one's leave; licitly, lawfully, legitimately, legally

PHRS **20 by your leave,** with your permission, if you please, with respect, may I?

444 PROHIBITION

NOUNS **1 prohibition, forbidding,** forbiddance; **ruling out, disallowance,** denial, rejection 372; refusal 442; **repression, suppression** 428.2; **ban, embargo, enjoinder, injunction,** prohibitory injunction, **proscription,** inhibition, **interdict,** *interdictum* <L>, interdiction; index, *Index Expurgatorius* and *Index Librorum Prohibitorum* <L>; gag order; **taboo;** thou-shalt-not *and* don't *and* no-no <nf>; law, statute 673.3; preclusion, exclusion, **prevention** 1012.2; forbidden fruit, contraband; sumptuary law *or* ordinance; zoning, zoning law, restrictive convenant; **forbidden ground** *or* **territory,** no-man's land <nf>, no-fly zone; curfew; restriction, circumscription

2 veto, negative <old>; absolute veto, qualified *or* limited *or* negative veto, countermand, suspensive *or* suspensory veto, item veto, pocket veto; **thumbs-down** <nf>, red light <nf>, *pollice verso* <L>; blacklist

VERBS **3 prohibit, forbid; disallow, rule out** *or* **against;** deny, **reject** 372.2; say no to, **refuse** 442.3; **bar,** debar, preclude, exclude, exclude from, shut out, shut *or* close the door on, **prevent** 1012.14; **ban,** put under the ban, **outlaw,** criminalize, proscribe**; repress, suppress** 428.8; **enjoin,** put under an injunction, issue an injunction against, issue a prohibitory injunction; **proscribe,** inhibit, **interdict,** put *or* lay under an interdict *or* interdiction; put on the Index; embargo, **lay** *or* **put an embargo on; taboo;** outlaw, criminalize

4 not permit *or* **allow, not have, not suffer** *or* **tolerate,** not endure, not stomach, not bear, not bear with, **not countenance,** not brook, brook no, not condone, not accept, not put up with, not go along with <nf>; not stand for *and* not hear of <nf>, put *or* set one's foot down on <nf>

5 veto, put one's veto upon, decide *or* rule against, **turn thumbs down on** <nf>, **negative,** kill, nix <nf>

ADJS **6 prohibitive,** prohibitory, prohibiting, **forbidding;** inhibitive, inhibitory, **repressive, suppressive** 428.11; proscriptive, interdictive, interdictory; preclusive, exclusive, **preventive** 1012.19

7 prohibited, forbidden, forbade, forbid, *verboten* <Ger>, **barred; vetoed; unpermissible,** nonpermissible, not permitted *or* allowed, unchartered, **unallowed;** disallowed, ruled out, contraindicated; beyond the pale, off limits, out of bounds; unauthorized, **unsanctioned,** unlicensed; banned, under the ban, **outlawed,** contraband; taboo, untouchable; **illegal,** unlawful, illicit

445 REPEAL

NOUNS **1 repeal, revocation,** revoke, revokement; reneging, renigging *and* going back on *and* welshing <nf>, **rescinding,** rescindment, rescission, **reversal, striking down, abrogation,** cassation; suspension; waiving, **waiver, setting aside; countermand,** counterorder; **annulment,** nullification, withdrawal, **invalidation,** voiding, voidance, vacation, vacatur, defeasance; **cancellation,** canceling, cancel, write-off; **abolition,** abolishment; **recall,** retraction, recantation 363.3

VERBS **2 repeal, revoke, rescind, reverse, strike**

down, abrogate; renege, renig *and* go back on *and* welsh <nf>; suspend; **waive, set aside; countermand,** counterorder; **abolish,** do away with; **cancel,** write off; **annul,** nullify, disannul, withdraw, **invalidate,** void, vacate, make void, declare null and void; **overrule,** override; **recall,** retract, recant; unwish

ADJS 3 **repealed, revoked, rescinded,** struck down, set aside; **invalid,** void, **null and void**

446 PROMOTION

NOUNS 1 **promotion, preferment, advancement, advance,** step-up *and* upping <nf>, rise, elevation, upgrading, jump, step up, step up the ladder; **raise, boost** <nf>; kicking *or* bumping upstairs <nf>; exaltation, aggrandizement; ennoblement, knighting; graduation, passing; pay raise

VERBS 2 **promote, advance,** prefer <old>, up *and* boost <nf>, elevate, upgrade, jump; kick *or* bump upstairs <nf>; **raise;** exalt, aggrandize; **ennoble,** knight; pass, graduate; raise one's pay, up *or* boost one's pay <nf>

447 DEMOTION, DEPOSAL

NOUNS 1 **demotion,** degrading, degradation, disgrading, downgrading, debasement; abasement, humbling, humiliation, casting down; **reduction,** bump *and* bust <nf>; stripping of rank, depluming, displuming

2 **deposal, deposition, removal,** displacement, outplacement, supplanting, supplantation, replacement, deprivation, **ousting,** unseating; **cashiering, firing** <nf>, **dismissal** 908.5; reduction in forces *or* RIF; forced resignation; kicking upstairs <nf>; **superannuation,** pensioning off, putting out to pasture, **retirement,** the golden handshake *or* parachute <nf>; **suspension;** impeachment; purge, **liquidation; overthrow,** overthrowal; **dethronement,** disenthronement, discrownment; **disbarment,** disbarring; unfrocking, defrocking, unchurching; deconsecration, expulsion, excommunication 909.4

VERBS 3 **demote, degrade,** disgrade, downgrade, debase, abase, humble, humiliate, **lower, reduce,** bump *and* bust <nf>; strip of rank, cut off one's spurs, deplume, displume

4 **depose, remove from office,** send to the showers *and* give the gate <nf>, divest *or* deprive *or* strip of office, **remove,** displace, outplace, supplant, replace; **oust; suspend; cashier,** drum out, strip of rank, **break,** bust <nf>; **dismiss** 909.19; **purge, liquidate; overthrow; retire,** superannuate, pension, pension off, put out to pasture, give the golden handshake *or* parachute <nf>; kick upstairs <nf>; **unseat,** unsaddle; **dethrone,** disenthrone, unthrone, uncrown, discrown; **disbar; unfrock,** defrock, unchurch; strike off the roll, read out of; **expel,** excommunicate 909.17; deconsecrate

448 RESIGNATION, RETIREMENT

NOUNS 1 **resignation,** demission, **withdrawal, retirement,** pensioning, pensioning off, golden handshake *or* parachute <nf>, superannuation, emeritus status; **abdication;** voluntary resignation; forced resignation, forced retirement, early retirement, deposal 447; relinquishment 370.3

VERBS 2 **resign,** demit, **quit,** leave, **vacate,** withdraw from; **retire,** superannuate, be superannuated, be pensioned *or* pensioned off, be put out to pasture, get the golden handshake *or* parachute <nf>; relinquish, give up 370.7; retire from office, stand down, stand *or* step aside, give up one's post, hang up one's spurs <nf>; **tender** *or* **hand in one's resignation,** send in one's papers, turn in one's badge *or* uniform; **abdicate,** renounce the throne, give up the crown; pension off 447.4; be invalided out

ADJS 3 **retired,** in retirement, superannuated, on pension, pensioned, pensioned off, emeritus, emerita <fem>

449 AID

NOUNS 1 **aid, help, assistance, support, succor, relief, comfort,** ease, remedy; mutual help *or* assistance; **service, benefit** 387.4; ministry, ministration, office, offices, good offices; yeoman's service; therapy 91; protection 1008; **bailout** <nf>, **rescue** 398; means to an end

2 **assist, helping hand, hand, lift; boost** *and* leg up <nf>; help in time of need; **support group,** self-help group, Alcoholics Anonymous *or* AA, Gamblers Anonymous, etc, 12-step group; tough love; social assistance, counsel, guidance, moral support, constructive criticism, tender loving care *or* TLC

3 **support, maintenance, sustainment,** sustentation, **sustenance, subsistence,** provision, total support, meal ticket <nf>; **keep, upkeep; livelihood, living,** meat, bread, daily bread; **nurture, fostering,** nurturance, nourishment, nutriture <old>, mothering, parenting, rearing, fosterage, foster-care, **care, caring,** care-giving, tender loving care *or* TLC <nf>; manna, manna in the wilderness; economic support, price support, subsidy, subsidization, subvention, endowment; **support services, social services,** welfare, relief, succor

4 **patronage, fosterage, tutelage, sponsorship, backing, auspices,** aegis, coattails <nf>, care, guidance, **championing, championship,** seconding; interest, advocacy, encouragement, **backing, abetment;** countenance, **favor, goodwill,** charity, **sympathy,** handout <nf>

5 **furtherance, helping along, advancement,** advance, **promotion, forwarding,** facilitation, speeding, easing *or* smoothing of the way, clearing of the track, greasing of the wheels, expedition, expediting, rushing; preferment, special *or* preferential treatment; tailwind

6 **self-help,** self-helpfulness, **self-support,** self-sustainment, self-improvement; independence 430.5

7 helper, assistant 616.6; benefactor 592; facilitator, animator

8 **reinforcements, support, relief,** auxiliaries, reserves, reserve forces, staff

9 **facility, accommodation, appliance, convenience,** amenity, appurtenance; advantage; labor-saving device, time-saving device

10 **helpfulness,** aidfulness <old>, cooperation, goodwill; serviceability, utility, **usefulness** 387.3; **advantageousness,** profitability, favorableness, beneficialness 999.1

VERBS 11 **aid, help, assist,** comfort, abet <old>, succor, relieve, **ease,** doctor, remedy; be of some help, put one's oar in <nf>; do good, do a world of good, **benefit, avail** 999.10; **favor, befriend; give help,** render assistance, offer *or* proffer aid, come to the aid of, rush *or* fly to the assistance of, lend aid, **give** *or* **lend** *or* **bear a hand** *or* helping hand, stretch forth *or* hold out a helping hand, cater for <chiefly Brit>; take by the hand, take in tow; **give an assist, give a leg up** *or* lift *or* boost <nf>, help a lame dog over a stile; **save,** redeem, bail out <nf>, **rescue** 398.3; protect 1008.18; set up, put on one's feet; give new life to, resuscitate, rally, reclaim, revive, **restore** 396.11,15; be the making of, set one up in business; see one through

12 **support, lend support,** give *or* furnish *or* afford support; **maintain, sustain, keep,** upkeep <Brit>; **uphold,** hold up, bear, upbear, **bear up,** bear out; reinforce, undergird, bolster, **bolster up,** buttress, shore, shore up, prop, prop up, crutch; **finance,** fund, subsidize, subvention, subventionize; comp *and* pick up the tab *or* check <nf>, give new life to

13 **back, back up, stand behind, stand back of** *or* in back of, get behind, get in behind, get in back of; **stand by,** stick by *and* **stick up for** <nf>, **champion; second, take the part of,** take up *or* adopt *or* espouse the cause of, take under one's wing, **go to bat for** <nf>, take up the cudgels for, run interference for <nf>, **side with,** take sides with, associate oneself with, join oneself to, align oneself with, ally with, come down *or* range oneself on the side of, find time for

14 **abet, aid and abet, encourage,** hearten, embolden, comfort <old>; advocate, hold a brief for <nf>, countenance, keep in countenance, **endorse, lend oneself to,** lend one's countenance to, lend one's favor *or* support to, lend one's offices, put one's weight in the scale, plump for *and* thump the tub for <nf>, lend one's name to, give one's support *or* countenance to, give moral support to, hold one's hand, make one's cause one's own, weigh in for <nf>; subscribe <Brit>, **favor, go for** <nf>, smile upon, shine upon

15 **patronize, sponsor,** take up, endow, finance

16 **foster, nurture,** nourish, mother, care for, lavish care on, feed, parent, rear, sustain, cultivate, **cherish;** pamper, coddle, cosset, fondle <old>; **nurse,** suckle, cradle; dry-nurse, wet-nurse; spoon-feed; take in hand

17 **be useful, further, forward, advance, promote,** stand in good stead, encourage, **boost** <nf>, favor, advantage, **facilitate,** set *or* put *or* push forward, give an impulse to, speed, expedite, quicken, hasten, lend wings to; conduce to, make for, contribute to

18 **serve, lend** *or* **give oneself,** render service to, do service for, **work for, labor in behalf of; minister to,** cater to, do for <Brit>; attend 577.13; pander to

19 **oblige, accommodate, favor,** do a favor, do a service

ADJS 20 **helping,** assisting, serving, promoting; **assistant, auxiliary,** adjuvant, subservient, subsidiary, ancillary, accessory; ministerial, ministering, ministrant; fostering, nurtural; care, caring, care-giving; instrumental

21 **helpful, useful,** utile, aidful <old>; **profitable, salutary,** good for, **beneficial** 999.12; remedial, therapeutic; **serviceable, useful** 387.18; **contributory,** contributing, conducive, **constructive, positive,** promotional, furthersome <old>; at one's service, at one's command, at one's beck and call

22 **favorable, propitious;** kind, kindly, kindly-disposed, all for <nf>, **well-disposed,** well-affected, well-intentioned, well-meant, **well-meaning;** benevolent, beneficent, benign, benignant; friendly, amicable, neighborly; cooperative

23 self-helpful, self-helping, self-improving; **self-supporting, self-sustaining;** self-supported, self-sustained; independent

ADVS 24 **helpfully,** helpingly; **beneficially,** favorably, profitably, advantageously, to advantage, to the good; serviceably, **usefully**

PREPS 25 helped by, with the help *or* assistance of, by the aid of; **by means of**

26 **for, on** *or* **in behalf of,** in aid of <chiefly Brit>, in the name of, on account of, **for the sake of,** in the service of, in furtherance of, in favor of; remedial of

27 **behind, back of** <nf>, supporting, **in support of**

450 COOPERATION

NOUNS 1 **cooperation, collaboration, coaction,** concurrence, synergy, synergism; support, backup; **consensus, commonality; community,** harmony, concordance, concord, fellowship, fellow feeling, solidarity, concert, united front, **teamwork;** pulling *or* working together, communal *or* community activity, joining of forces, pooling, pooling of resources, joining of hands, bipartisanship; **mutualism,** mutuality, mutual assistance, coadjuvancy; **reciprocity;** back-scratching, give and take; joint effort, common effort, combined *or* joint operation, common enterprise *or* endeavor, collective *or* united action, mass action; job-sharing; coagency; coadministration, cochairmanship, codirectorship; duet, duumvirate, trio, triumvirate, troika; quartet, quintet, sextet, septet, octet; government by committee; symbiosis, commensalism; **cooperativeness,** collaborativeness, team spirit, morale, esprit, *esprit de corps* <Fr>; communism, communalism, communitarianism, collectivism; ecumenism, ecumenicism, ecumenicalism; **collusion,** complicity; networking

2 **affiliation, alliance, allying, alignment, association,** consociation, combination, **union,** unification, **coalition,** fusion, merger, coalescence, coadunation, amalgamation, **league, federation, confederation,** confederacy, consolidation, incorporation, inclusion, integration; hookup *and* tie-up *and* tie-in <nf>; **partnership,** copartnership, copartnery <old>, cahoots <nf>, colleagueship, **collegialism, collegiality, fraternity,** confraternity, fraternization, fraternalism; sorority; **fellowship,** sodality; comradeship, camaraderie, freemasonry, communalism, ecumenicism

VERBS 3 **cooperate, collaborate,** do business *and* **play ball** <nf>, coact, concur, concert, harmonize, concord; **join,** band, league, **associate, affiliate,** ally, **combine, unite,** fuse, merge, coalesce, amalgamate, federate, confederate, consolidate; hook up *and* tie up *and* tie in <nf>, partner, be in league, **go into partnership with,** go partners <nf>, go *or* be in cahoots with; **join together,** club together, league together, band together; **work together,** get together *and* team up *and* buddy up <nf>, work as a team, act together, act in concert, **pull together; hold together, hang together,** keep together, **stand together,** stand shoulder to shoulder; lay *or* put *or* get heads together; **close ranks,** make common cause, throw in together <nf>, unite efforts, join in, pitch in; network; reciprocate; **conspire,** collude, aid and abet

4 **side with,** take sides with, **unite with; join, join with,** join up with *and* get together with *and* team up with <nf>, strike in with <old>; **throw in with** *and* string along with *and* swing in with <nf>, **go along with; line up with** <nf>, align with, align oneself with, range with, range oneself with, stand up with, stand in with; **join hands with,** be hand in glove with, go hand in hand with; act with, take part with, **go in with;** cast in one's lot with, join one's fortunes with, stand shoulder to shoulder with, be cheek by jowl with, sink or swim with, stand or fall with; **close ranks with,** fall in with, make common cause with, pool one's interests with; enlist under the banner of, rally round, flock to

ADJS 5 **cooperative, cooperating,** cooperant, **hand in glove;** in cahoots <nf>, **collaborative,** coactive, coacting, coefficient, synergetic, synergic, synergical, synergistic *or* synergistical; **fellow;** concurrent, concurring, concerted, **in concert; consensus,** consensual, agreeing, in agreement, of like mind, harmonious, harmonized, concordant, **common, communal,** collective, **mutual,** reciprocal; **joint, combined** 805.5; coadjuvant, coadjutant; symbiotic, symbiotical, commensal; uncompetitive, noncompetitive, communalist, communalistic, communist, communistic, communitarian, collectivist, collectivistic, ecumenic *or* ecumenical; **conniving, collusive**

ADVS 6 **cooperatively,** cooperatingly, coactively, coefficiently, concurrently; in consensus, consensually, **jointly,** combinedly, **conjointly,** concertedly, in concert with; harmoniously, concordantly; communally, collectively, **together;** as one, with one voice, unanimously, in chorus, in unison, as one man, en masse; **side by side, hand in hand, hand in glove, shoulder to shoulder, back to back;** "all for one, one for all"—Dumas père

7 **in cooperation, in collaboration, in partnership, in cahoots** <nf>, **in collusion,** in league

PREPS 8 **with, in cooperation with,** etc

451 OPPOSITION

NOUNS 1 **opposition,** opposing, opposure, crossing, oppugnancy, bucking <nf>, standing against; contraposition 779.1; **resistance** 453; **noncooperation; contention** 457; negation 335;

rejection 372, refusal; **counteraction,** counterworking 900.1; refusal 442; **contradiction,** challenge, contravention, contraversion, rebutment, rebuttal, denial, impugnation, impugnment; countercurrent, head wind; crosscurrent, undercurrent, undertow; unfriendliness, stiff opposition

2 **hostility, antagonism,** oppugnancy, oppugnance *and* oppugnation <old>, **antipathy,** enmity, bad blood, inimicalness; **contrariness, contrariety,** orneriness <nf>, repugnance *or* repugnancy, perverseness, **obstinacy** 361; fractiousness, refractoriness, recalcitrance 327.2; uncooperativeness, noncooperation, negativeness, **obstructionism,** traversal, bloody-mindedness <Brit>; **friction, conflict,** clashing, **collision,** cross-purposes, dissension, disaccord 456; rivalry, vying, competition 457.2; polarity

VERBS 3 **oppose, counter, cross,** go *or* act in opposition to, **go against,** run against, strive against, **run counter to,** fly in the face of, fly in the teeth of, conflict with; kick out against, make waves <nf>, **protest** 333.5; set oneself against, set one's face *or* heart against; be *or* play at cross-purposes, **obstruct,** traverse, sabotage; **take issue with, take one's stand against,** lift *or* raise a hand against, declare oneself against, stand and be counted against, side against, vote against, vote nay, veto; make a stand against, make a dead set against; join the opposition; not put up with, not abide, not be content with; counteract, counterwork, countervail 899.6; **resist,** withstand 453.3

4 **contend against,** militate against, **contest, combat, battle, clash with, clash, fight against, strive against,** struggle against, labor against, **take on** <nf>, grapple with, join battle with, close with, come to close quarters with, go the the mat with <nf>, antagonize <old>, **fight, buck** <nf>, **counter;** buffet, beat against, beat up against, breast, stem, breast *or* stem the tide *or* current *or* flood, breast the wave, buffet the waves; rival, compete with *or* against, vie with *or* against; fight back, **resist, offer resistance** 453.3

5 **confront, affront,** front, go eyeball-to-eyeball *or* one-on-one with <nf>, take on, **meet, face, meet head-on; encounter**

6 **contradict,** cross, traverse, contravene, controvert, rebut, deny, **gainsay;** challenge, contest; oppugn, call into question; **belie,** be contrary to, come in conflict with, negate 335.3; **reject** 372.2

7 **be against,** be agin <nf>, reject; discountenance 510.11; not hold with, not have anything to do with; have a crow to pluck *or* pick, have a bone to pick

ADJS 8 **oppositional, opponent, opposing, opposed; anti** <nf>, contra, confrontational, confrontive; at odds, at loggerheads; **adverse, adversary,** adversarial, adversative, oppugnant, antithetic, antithetical, repugnant, con <nf>, **set** *or* **dead set against; contrary, counter; negative; opposite,** oppositive, death on; overthwart <old>, cross; **contradictory;** unfavorable, unpropitious 133.17; **hostile, antagonistic,** unfriendly, enemy, inimical, alien, antipathetic, antipathetical, unsympathetic, averse; fractious, refractory, recalcitrant 327.10; uncooperative, noncooperative, **obstructive,** bloody-minded <Brit>; ornery <nf>, perverse, obstinate 361.8; **conflicting, clashing,** dissentient, disaccordant 456.15; rival, competitive

ADVS 9 **in opposition, in confrontation,** eyeball-to-eyeball *and* one-on-one <nf>, head-on, **at variance, at cross-purposes, at odds,** at issue, at war with, up in arms, with crossed bayonets, at daggers drawn, at daggers, in hostile array, poised against one another; contra, contrariwise, counter, cross, athwart; against the tide *or* wind *or* grain

PREPS 10 **opposed to, adverse to,** counter to, **in opposition to,** in conflict with, at cross-purposes with; **against,** agin <nf>, dead against, athwart; **versus,** vs; **con,** contra, face to face with, *vis-à-vis* <Fr>

452 OPPONENT

NOUNS 1 **opponent, adversary, antagonist, assailant, foe,** foeman, **enemy,** archenemy; adverse *or* opposing party, opposite camp, opposite *or* opposing side, **the opposition,** the loyal opposition, unfriendly <nf>; **combatant** 461

2 **competitor, contestant, contender,** corrival, vier, player, entrant; **rival,** arch-rival; emulator; the field; finalist, semifinalist, etc

3 **oppositionist,** opposer; obstructionist, obstructive, negativist, naysayer; contra; **objector, protester,** dissident, dissentient; **resister;** noncooperator; **disputant,** litigant, plaintiff, defendant; quarreler, irritable man, scrapper <nf>, wrangler, brawler; die-hard, bitter-ender, last-ditcher, intransigent, irreconcilable

453 RESISTANCE

NOUNS 1 **resistance,** withstanding, countering, renitence *or* renitency, repellence *or* repellency; **defiance** 454; **opposing, opposition** 451; **stand; repulsion,** repulse, rebuff; **objection, protest,** remonstrance, **dispute,** challenge, **demur; complaint;** dissentience, **dissent** 333; reaction, hostile *or* combative reaction, **counteraction** 900;

revolt 327.4; recalcitrance *or* recalcitrancy, recalcitration, fractiousness, refractoriness 327.2; **reluctance** 325.1; **obstinacy** 361; passive resistance, noncooperation; uncooperativeness, negativism; obstinacy; resistance movement, passive resistance, civil disobedience, mutiny, insurrection, insurgence

VERBS **2** **resist, withstand; stand; endure** 134.5; **stand up, bear up, hold up, hold out; defy** 454.3, tell one where to get off <nf>, throw down the gauntlet; be obstinate; be proof against, bear up against; **repel, repulse,** rebuff

3 **offer resistance, fight back,** bite back, not turn the other cheek, show fight, lift *or* raise a hand, stand *or* hold one's ground, **withstand,** stand, **take one's stand,** make a stand, make a stand against, take one's stand against, square off *and* put up one's dukes <nf>, **stand up to,** stand up against, stand at bay; front, **confront,** meet head-on, fly in the teeth *or* face of, **face up to,** face down, face out; **object, protest,** remonstrate, **dispute,** challenge, **complain,** complain loudly, exclaim at; **dissent** 333.4; revolt, mutiny; make waves <nf>; make a determined resistance; kick against, kick out against, recalcitrate; put up a fight *or* struggle <nf>, not take lying down, hang tough *and* tough it out <nf>; **revolt** 327.7; **oppose** 451.3; **contend with** 457.18; **strive against** 451.4

4 **stand fast, stand** *or* **hold one's ground,** make a resolute stand, **hold one's own,** remain firm, stick *and* stuck fast <nf>, **stick to one's guns, stay it out, stick it out** <nf>, **hold out,** not back down, not give up, not submit, **never say die; fight to the last ditch,** die hard, sell one's life dearly, go down with flying colors, refuse to bow down

ADJS **5** **resistant, resistive,** resisting, renitent, up against, **withstanding,** repellent; obstructive, retardant, retardative; **unyielding,** unsubmissive 361.12; hard-shell, hard-nosed; rebellious 327.11; **proof against; objecting, protesting,** disputing, disputatious, complaining, dissentient, dissenting 333.6; recalcitrant, fractious, obstinate, refractory 327.10; **reluctant** 325.6; noncooperative, uncooperative; up in arms, on the barricades, not lying down

454 DEFIANCE

NOUNS **1** **defiance,** defying, defial <old>; **daring,** daringness, **audacity,** boldness, bold front, brash bearing, brashness, brassiness <nf>, brazenness, bravado, insolence; bearding, beard-tweaking, nose-tweaking; **arrogance** 141; **sauciness,** sauce, **cheekiness** *or* cheek <nf>, pertness, impudence, impertinence; bumptiousness, cockiness; **contempt,** contemptuousness, derision, **disdain,** disregard, despite; **risk-taking,** tightrope walking, funambulism; disobedience, insubordination

2 **challenge, dare,** double dare, threat, taunt; fighting words; **defy** *or* defi; gage, gage of battle, gauntlet, glove, chip on one's shoulder, slap of the glove, invitation *or* bid to combat, call to arms; war cry, war whoop, battle cry, rebel yell; back talk, insult

VERBS **3** **defy,** bid defiance, hurl defiance, snarl *or* shout *or* scream defiance; **dare,** double-dare, outdare; **challenge,** call out, throw *or* fling down the gauntlet *or* glove *or* gage, stand up to, knock the chip off one's shoulder, cross swords; oppose, protest; beard, beard the lion in his den, face, face out, look in the eye, stare down, stare out <Brit>, **confront, affront,** front, say right to one's face, square up to, go eyeball-to-eyeball *or* one-on-one with <nf>; tweak the nose, pluck by the beard, slap one's face, double *or* shake one's fist at; give one the finger; **ask for it** <nf>, ask *or* look for trouble, make something of it <nf>, show fight, show one's teeth, bare one's fangs; dance the war dance; **brave** 492.11; be insubordinate

4 **flout,** disregard, **slight,** slight over, treat with contempt, set at defiance, fly in the teeth *or* face of, **snap one's fingers at; thumb one's nose at,** cock a snook at, bite the thumb at; **disdain, despise, scorn** 157.3; laugh at, laugh to scorn, laugh out of court, laugh in one's face; hold in derision, scout, scoff at, **deride** 508.8; give someone lip <nf>, sass <nf>

5 **show** *or* **put up a bold front,** bluster, throw out one's chest, strut, crow, look big, stand with arms akimbo

6 **take a dare,** accept a challenge, **take one up on** *and* **call one's bluff** <nf>; **start something,** take up the gauntlet

ADJS **7** **defiant,** defying, challenging; **daring, bold,** brash, brassy <nf>, brazen, **audacious,** insolent; arrogant 141.9; saucy, cheeky <nf>, pert, impudent, impertinent; stubborn, obstinate; bumptious, cocky, sassy; **contemptuous,** disdainful, derisive, disregardful, greatly daring, regardless of consequences

ADVS **8** **in defiance of,** in the teeth of, in the face of, under one's very nose

455 ACCORD

<harmonious relationship>

NOUNS **1** **accord,** accordance, **concord,** concordance, **harmony,** symphony, sync <nf>; **rapport;** good vibrations <nf>, good vibes <nf>, good karma; amity 587.1; frictionlessness; *rapprochement* <Fr>; **sympathy,** empathy, identity, feeling of identity, fellow feeling, **fellowship,** kinship, togetherness, **affinity; agreement, understanding, like-mindedness, congruence;** congeniality, **compatibility; oneness,** unity, unison, union; **community,** communion, community of interests; solidarity, team spirit, esprit, *esprit de corps* <Fr>; mutuality, sharing, reciprocity, mutual supportiveness; bonds of harmony, ties of affection, cement of friendship; happy family; peace 464; **love,** *agape* <Gk>, charity, *caritas* <L>, brotherly love; correspondence 788.1

VERBS 2 **get along,** harmonize, **agree with, agree, get along with,** get on with, cotton to *or* hit it off with <nf>, harmonize with, **be in harmony with,** be in tune with, fall *or* chime in with, blend in with, go hand in hand with, **be at one with;** sing in chorus, be on the same wavelength <nf>, see eye to eye; **sympathize,** empathize, identify with, respond to, understand one another, enter into one's views, enter into the ideas *or* feelings of; **accord,** correspond 788.6; reciprocate, interchange 863.4

ADJS 3 **in accord,** accordant <old>, **harmonious, in harmony,** congruous, congruent, in tune, attuned, agreeing, in concert, **in rapport,** *en rapport* <Fr>, amicable 587.15,18; frictionless; **sympathetic,** simpatico <nf>, empathic, empathetic, **understanding; like-minded,** akin, of the same mind, of one mind, at one, united, together; concordant, corresponding 788.9; agreeable, congenial, **compatible; peaceful** 464.9

456 DISACCORD
<unharmonious relationship>

NOUNS 1 **disaccord, discord,** discordance *or* discordancy, asynchrony, **unharmoniousness,** inharmoniousness, disharmony, inharmony, incongruence, disaffinity, incompatibility, incompatibleness; culture gap, generation gap, gender gap; noncooperation; **conflict,** open conflict *or* war, **friction,** rub; jar, **jarring,** jangle, clash, clashing; touchiness, strained relations, **tension;** bad blood; **unpleasantness;** mischief; **contention** 457; **enmity** 589; Eris, Discordia; the Apple of Discord

2 **disagreement, difficulty, misunderstanding, difference,** difference of opinion, agreement to disagree, **variance,** division, dividedness; cross-purposes; polarity of opinion, polarization; **disparity** 789.1

3 **dissension, dissent,** dissidence, flak <nf>; bickering, infighting, faction, factiousness, partisanship, partisan spirit; **divisiveness; quarrelsomeness;** litigiousness; pugnacity, bellicosity, combativeness, **aggressiveness,** contentiousness, belligerence; feistiness <nf>, **touchiness, irritability,** shrewishness, irascibility 110.2

4 **falling-out, breach of friendship,** parting of the ways, bust-up <nf>; **alienation, estrangement, disaffection,** disfavor; **breach, break, rupture, schism, split, rift,** cleft, **disunity, disunion, disruption,** separation, cleavage, divergence, division, dividedness; division in the camp, house divided against itself; open rupture, breaking off of negotiations, recall of ambassadors

5 **quarrel,** open quarrel, dustup, **dispute, argument,** polemic, argy-bargy *and* slanging match <Brit>, fliting <old>, lovers' quarrel, **controversy,** altercation, **fight, squabble, contention,** strife, **tussle,** bicker, wrangle, snarl, **tiff, spat,** fuss; **breach of the peace; fracas,** donnybrook *or* donnybrook fair; dissent; broil, embroilment, imbroglio; words, sharp words, war of words, logomachy; **feud,** blood feud, vendetta; brawl 457.5

6 <nf terms> **row, rumpus,** row-de-dow, ruckus, ruction, brannigan, shindy, foofooraw, hoo-ha, barney *and* shemozzle <Brit>, set-to, run-in, **scrap, hassle,** rhubarb; knock-down-and-drag-out, knock-down-and-drag-out quarrel *or* fight; the dozens

7 **bone of contention,** apple of discord, sore point, tender spot, delicate *or* ticklish issue, rub, beef <nf>; **bone to pick,** crow to pluck *or* pick *or* pull; *casus belli* <L>, grounds for war

VERBS 8 **disagree, differ,** differ in opinion, hold opposite views, disaccord, **be at variance,** not get along, pull different ways, be at cross-purposes, have no measures with, misunderstand one another; **conflict, clash,** collide, jostle, jangle, jar; live like cat and dog, live a cat-and-dog life

9 **have a bone to pick with,** have a crow to pluck with *or* pick with *or* pull with, have a beef with <nf>

10 **fall out,** have a falling-out, **break with, split,** separate, **diverge,** divide, agree to disagree, **part company,** come to *or* reach a parting of the ways

11 **quarrel, dispute,** oppugn, flite <old>, altercate, **fight, squabble,** tiff, spat, **bicker, wrangle,** spar, broil, have words, set to, join issue, make the fur fly; cross swords, **feud, battle; brawl; be quarrelsome** *or* contentious, be thin-skinned, be touchy *or* sensitive, get up on the wrong side of the bed

12 <nf terms> **row, scrap, hassle,** make *or* kick up a row; mix it up, lock horns, bump heads

13 **pick a quarrel,** fasten a quarrel on, look for trouble, pick a bone with, pluck a crow with; have a chip on one's shoulder; add insult to injury

14 **sow dissension,** stir up trouble, make *or* borrow trouble; **alienate, estrange,** separate, **divide, disunite,** disaffect, **come between; irritate, provoke,** aggravate; **set at odds,** set at variance; **set against,** pit against, **sic on** *or* **at, set on,** set by the ears, set at one's throat; add fuel to the fire *or* flame, fan the flame, pour oil on the blaze, light the fuse, stir the pot <nf>

ADJS 15 **disaccordant, unharmonious,** inharmonious, disharmonious, out of tune, asynchronous, unsynchronized, out of sync <nf>, **discordant,** out of accord, dissident, dissentient, **disagreeing, differing; conflicting,** clashing, colliding; like cats and dogs; **divided,** faction-ridden, fragmented

16 **at odds, at variance, at loggerheads,** at square <old>, at cross-purposes; at war, at strife, at feud, at swords' points, at daggers *or* at daggers drawn, up in arms

17 **partisan,** polarizing, **divisive,** factional, factious; **quarrelsome,** bickering, disputatious, wrangling, eristic, eristical, polemical; litigious, pugnacious, combative, **aggressive,** bellicose, belligerent; feisty <nf>, touchy, irritable, shrewish, **irascible** 110.19

457 CONTENTION

NOUNS 1 **contention, contest,** contestation, combat, **fighting, conflict, strife, war, struggle,** blood on the floor, cut and thrust; fighting at close quarters, infighting; **warfare** 458; **hostility,** enmity 589; **quarrel, altercation, controversy,** dustup, polemic, debate, forensics, **argument, dispute, disputation;** litigation; words, war of words, paper war, logomachy; **fighting,** scrapping *and* hassling <nf>; **quarreling, bickering, wrangling, squabbling;** oppugnancy, contentiousness, disputatiousness, litigiousness, **quarrelsomeness** 456.3; cat-and-dog life; Kilkenny cats; **competitiveness,** vying, rivalrousness, competitorship; cold war

2 **competition, rivalry,** trying conclusions *or* the issue, vying, emulation, jockeying <nf>; cutthroat competition; run for one's money; **sportsmanship, gamesmanship,** lifemanship, one-upmanship, **competitive advantage;** rat race <nf>; feeding frenzy <nf>

3 **contest, engagement, encounter, match,** matching, meet, meeting, derby, pissing match <nf>, **trial, test,** *concours* and *rencontre* <Fr>; **close contest, hard contest,** closely fought contest, close *or* tight one, horse race *and* crapshoot <nf>; fight, bout, go <nf>, tussle; joust, tilt; tournament, tourney; rally; **game** 743.9; **games,** Olympic games, Olympics, gymkhana; cookoff, Bake-Off <trademark>

4 **fight, battle, fray,** affray, combat, action, conflict, embroilment; gun battle; **clash; brush, skirmish,** scrimmage; tussle, **scuffle, struggle,** scramble, shoving match; exchange of blows, *passage d'armes* <Fr>, passage at *or* of arms, clash of arms; **quarrel** 456.5; pitched battle; battle royal; unarmed combat; **fistfight**, punch-out *and* duke-out <nf>, punch-up <Brit nf>; **hand-to-hand fight,** stand-up fight <nf>, running fight *or* engagement; tug-of-war; bull-fight, tauromachy; dogfight, cockfight; street fight, rumble <nf>; air *or* aerial combat, sea *or* naval combat, ground combat, armored combat, infantry combat, fire fight, hand-to-hand combat, house-to-house combat; **internal struggle,** intestine *or* internecine struggle *or* combat; rhubarb <nf>

5 **free-for-all, knock-down-and-drag-out** <nf>, **brawl,** broil, melee, scrimmage, **fracas,** riot

6 **death struggle, life-and-death** *or* **life-or-death struggle, struggle** *or* **fight** *or* **duel to the death,** *guerre à mort* and *guerre à outrance* <Fr>, all-out war, total war, last-ditch fight, fight to the last ditch, fight with no quarter given

7 **duel,** single combat, monomachy, satisfaction, **affair of honor,** *affaire d'honneur* <Fr>

8 **fencing, swordplay;** swordsmanship, dueling

9 **boxing** 754, **fighting,** noble *or* manly art of self-defense, **fisticuffs, pugilism, prize-fighting,** the fights <nf>, the ring; **boxing match, prizefight,** spar, bout; shadowboxing; close fighting, infighting, the clinches <nf>; Chinese boxing; savate

10 **wrestling,** rassling <nf>, grappling, *sumo* <Japanese>; **martial arts;** catch-as-catch-can; wrestling match, wrestling meet; Greco-Roman wrestling, Cornish wrestling, Westmorland wrestling, Cumberland wrestling

11 **racing, track,** track sports; **horse racing** 757, the turf, the sport of kings; dog racing, automobile racing 756

12 **race,** contest of speed *or* fleetness; derby; **horse race; automobile race**, off-road race; **heat, lap,** bell lap, victory lap; footrace, run, running event; torch race; match race, obstacle race, three-legged race, sack race, potato race; walk; ride and tie; endurance race, motorcycle race, bicycle race; boat race, yacht race, regatta; air race; dog race

VERBS 13 **contend, contest,** jostle; **fight, battle, combat, war, declare** *or* **go to war,** take *or* take up arms, put up a fight <nf>, open hostilities, call to arms; wage war; **strive, struggle,** scramble, go for the brass ring; make the fur *or* feathers fly, **tussle, scuffle; quarrel** 456.11,12; clash, collide; **wrestle,** rassle <nf>, grapple, grapple with, go to the mat with; **come to blows,** close, try conclusions, **mix it**

up *and* go toe-to-toe <nf>, exchange blows *or* fisticuffs, **box,** spar, give and take, give one a knuckle sandwich <nf>; cut and thrust, **cross swords, fence,** thrust and parry; **joust, tilt, tourney,** run a tilt *or* a tilt at, break a lance with; **duel,** fight a duel, give satisfaction; feud; skirmish; fight one's way; fight the good fight; **brawl,** broil; **riot;** do a job on <nf>

14 **lift** *or* **raise one's hand against;** make war on; draw the sword against, take up the cudgels, couch one's lance; square up *or* off <nf>, come to the scratch; have at, jump; lay on, lay about one; **pitch into** *and* **sail into** *and* light into *and* lay into *and* rip into <nf>, strike the first blow, draw first blood; **attack** 459.15

15 **encounter, come** *or* **go up against,** fall *or* run foul *or* afoul of; close with, come to close quarters, bring to bay, meet *or* fight hand-to-hand

16 **engage, take on** <nf>, go against *or* up against, close with, try conclusions with, enter the ring *or* arena with, put on the gloves with, match oneself against; **join issue** *or* **battle, do** *or* **give battle,** engage in battle *or* combat

17 **contend with, engage with,** cope with, **fight with, strive with, struggle with,** wrestle with, grapple with, bandy with <old>, try conclusions with, measure swords with, tilt with, **cross swords with;** exchange shots, shoot it out with <nf>; **lock horns** *and* **bump heads** <nf>, fall *or* go to loggerheads <old>; **tangle with** *and* **mix it up with** <nf>, have a brush with; have it out, fight *or* battle it out, settle it; **fight** *or* **go at it hammer and tongs** *or* tooth and nail, fight it out, duke it out <nf>, fight like devils, ask *and* give no quarter, make blood flow freely, battle *à outrance,* fight to the death, fight to the finish

18 **compete, contend, vie,** try conclusions *or* the issue, jockey <nf>; **compete with** *or* **against, vie with, challenge,** cope <old>, enter into competition with, give a run for one's money, **meet;** try *or* test one another; **rival,** emulate, outvie; keep up with the Joneses

19 **race,** race with, run a race; horse-race, boat-race

20 **contend for, strive for, struggle for, fight for,** vie for; stickle for, stipulate for, hold out for, make a point of

21 **dispute, contest,** oppugn, take issue with; **fight over, quarrel over, wrangle over, squabble over,** bicker over, strive *or* contend about

ADJS 22 **contending,** contesting; **contestant,** disputant; striving, struggling; fighting, battling, warring; **warlike; quarrelsome** 456.17

23 **competitive,** competitory, competing, **vying,** rivaling, **rival,** rivalrous, emulous, in competition, in rivalry; **cutthroat**

458 WARFARE

NOUNS 1 **war, warfare, warring, warmaking,** art of war, **combat, fighting,** *la guerre* <Fr>; armed conflict, armed combat, military operation, the sword, arbitrament of the sword, appeal to arms *or* the sword, resort to arms, force *or* might of arms, bloodshed; **state of war, hostilities,** belligerence *or* belligerency, open war *or* warfare *or* hostilities; **hot war, shooting war;** total war, **all-out war; wartime; battle** 457.4; **attack** 459; **war zone, theater of operations;** trouble spot; warpath; localized war, major war, world war, atomic war, nuclear war, civil war, chemical war, war of independence, naval war; offensive warfare, preventive warfare, psychological warfare; static warfare, trench warfare, guerrilla warfare; nuclear winter

2 "a brain-spattering, windpipe-slitting art," "the feast of vultures, and the waste of life"—both Byron, "the business of barbarians"—Napoleon, "politics with bloodshed"—Mao Tse-tung

3 **battle array,** order of battle, **disposition, deployment, marshaling;** open order; close formation; echelon

4 **campaign,** war, **drive, expedition,** battle plan, hostile expedition; **crusade,** holy war, jihad

5 **operation,** action; **movement; mission; operations,** military operations, land operations, naval *or* sea operations, air operations; combined operations, joint operations, coordinated operations; active operations, amphibious operations, airborne operations, fluid operations, major operations, minor operations, night operations, overseas operations; war plans, staff work; logistic; war game, dry run, kriegspiel, maneuver, maneuvers; **strategy, tactics; battle**

6 **military science,** art *or* rules *or* science of war, military affairs, military strategy, military tactics, military operations; siegecraft; warcraft, war, **arms,** profession of arms; **generalship,** soldiership; chivalry, knighthood, knightly skill

7 **declaration of war,** challenge; defiance 454

8 **call to arms, call-up,** call to the colors, **rally; mobilization; muster,** levy; conscription, recruitment; **rallying cry,** slogan, watchword, catchword, exhortation; **battle cry,** war cry, war whoop, rebel yell; banzai, gung ho, St George, Montjoie, Geronimo, go for broke; **bugle call,** trumpet call, clarion, clarion call; remember the Maine *or* the Alamo *or* Pearl Harbor; battle orders, military orders

9 **service, military service;** active service *or* duty; military duty, military obligation, compulsory service, conscription, draft, impressment; selective

service, national service <Brit>; reserve status; recruiting, recruitment; enlisting, volunteering

10 **militarization,** activation, **mobilization;** war *or* wartime footing, national emergency; **war effort, war economy;** martial law, suspension of civil rights; garrison state, military dictatorship; remilitarization, reactivation; arms race; war clouds, war scare

11 **warlikeness,** unpeacefulness, war *or* warlike spirit, ferocity, fierceness; **hard line; combativeness, contentiousness; hostility, antagonism;** unfriendliness 589.1; aggression, **aggressiveness;** aggro <Brit nf>; belligerence *or* belligerency, **pugnacity,** pugnaciousness, **bellicosity, bellicoseness, truculence,** fight <nf>; chip on one's shoulder <nf>; militancy, **militarism,** martialism, militaryism; saber rattling; **chauvinism, jingoism,** hawkishness <nf>, **warmongering;** waving of the bloody shirt; warpath; war fever; oppugnancy, **quarrelsomeness** 456.3

12 <rallying devices and themes> battle flag, banner, colors, gonfalon, bloody shirt, bluidy sark <Scot>, fiery cross *or* crostarie, atrocity story, enemy atrocities; martial music, war song, battle hymn, national anthem, military band; national honor, face; foreign threat, totalitarian threat, Communist threat, colonialist *or* neocolonialist *or* imperialist threat, Western imperialism, yellow peril; expansionism, manifest destiny; independence, self-determination

13 war-god, Mars, Ares, Odin *or* Woden *or* Wotan, Tyr *or* Tiu *or* Tiw; war-goddess, Athena, Minerva, Bellona, Enyo, Valkyrie

VERBS 14 **war, wage war, make war, carry on war** *or* **hostilities,** engage in hostilities, wield the sword; battle, **fight;** spill *or* shed blood

15 **make war on,** levy war on; **attack** 459.15,17; **declare war, challenge,** combat, attack, throw *or* fling down the gauntlet; defy 454.3; open hostilities, plunge the world into war; launch a holy war on, go on a crusade against

16 **go to war,** break *or* breach the peace, take up the gauntlet, **go on the warpath, rise up in arms, take** *or* **resort to arms,** take arms, take up arms, take up the cudgels *or* sword, fly *or* appeal to the sword, unsheathe one's weapon, come to cold steel; take the offensive, take the field

17 **campaign,** undertake operations, open a campaign, make an expedition, go on a crusade

18 **serve,** do duty; fulfill one's military obligation, wear the uniform; **soldier,** see *or* do active duty; **bear arms,** carry arms, shoulder arms, shoulder a gun, defend, protect; see action *or* combat, hear shots fired in anger

19 **call to arms, call up,** call to the colors, **rally; mobilize; muster,** levy; **conscript, recruit;** sound the call to arms, give the battle cry, wave the bloody shirt, beat the drums, blow the bugle *or* clarion

20 **militarize, activate, mobilize,** go on a wartime footing, put on a war footing, call to the colors, gird *or* gird up one's loins, muster one's resources; reactivate, remilitarize, take out of mothballs *and* retread <nf>

ADJS 21 **warlike, militant,** fighting, warring, battling; **martial, military,** soldierly, soldierlike; **combative, contentious,** gladiatorial; trigger-happy <nf>; **belligerent, pugnacious,** pugilistic, **truculent, bellicose,** scrappy <nf>, full of fight; **aggressive,** offensive; fierce, ferocious, savage, bloody, bloody-minded, bloodthirsty, sanguinary, sanguineous; **unpeaceful,** unpeaceable, unpacific; **hostile, antagonistic,** agonistic, **enemy,** inimical; unfriendly 589.9; **quarrelsome** 456.17; paramilitary, mercenary, soldierlike

22 **militaristic, warmongering,** war-loving, warlike, saber-rattling, battle-hungry; **chauvinistic,** chauvinist, **jingoistic,** jingoist, jingoish, jingo, crusading; **hard-line, hawkish** <nf>, of the war party

23 **embattled,** battled, **engaged,** at grips, in combat, on the warpath, on the offensive; **arrayed, deployed,** ranged, in battle array, in the field; **militarized; armed** 460.14; war-ravaged, war-torn

ADVS 24 **at war, up in arms;** in the midst of battle, in the thick of the fray *or* combat; in the cannon's mouth, at the point of the gun; at swords' points, at the point of the bayonet *or* sword

25 **wars**

American Civil War <1861–65>
American Revolution *or* War of Independence *or* Revolutionary War <1775–83>
Arab-Israeli War <1948–49, 1956, 1967, 1973–74, 1982>
Balkan Wars <1912–13>
Boer Wars <1880–81, 1899–1902>
Crimean War <1853–56>
Crusades <11th–13th centuries>
English Civil War <1642–46>
Franco-Prussian War <1870–71>
French and Indian War <1754–63>
French Revolution <1789–99>
Gallic War <58–50 BC>
Greco-Persian Wars <492–449 BC>
Hundred Years' War <1337–1453>
Indian Wars <1622–75, 1840–80s>
Iran-Iraq War <1980–90>
Italian Wars of Independence <1848–49, 1859–60>
Korean War <1950–53>
Kosovo Crisis <1998–99>
Mexican Civil War <1910–20>
Mexican War <1846–48>
Napoleonic Wars <1793–1815>

Norman Conquest <1066>
Opium Wars <1839–42, 1856–60>
Peloponnesian Wars <431–404 BC>
Persian Gulf War <1990–91>
Punic Wars <264–241 BC, 218–201 BC>
Russian Revolution *or* Russian Civil War <1918–20>
Russo-Finnish War *or* Winter War <1939–40>
Russo-Japanese War <1904–05>
Samnite Wars <343–341, 326–304, 298–290 BC>
Seven Weeks' War <1866>
Seven Years' War <1756–63>
Sino-Japanese Wars <1894–95, 1937–45>
Six-Day War <1967>
Spanish-American War <1898>
Spanish Civil War <1936–39>
Taiping Rebellion <1850–64>
Thirty Years' War <1618–48>
Vietnam War *or* War in Southeast Asia <1955–75>
War of 1812 <1812–14>
War of the Austrian Succession <1740–48>
War of the Polish Succession <1733–38>
War of the Spanish Succession <1701–14>
Wars of the Roses <1455–85>
World War I *or* Great War *or* War of the Nations <1914–18>
World War II <1939–45>
Yom Kippur War <1973>

459 ATTACK

NOUNS 1 **attack, assault,** assailing, assailment; **offense, offensive; aggression; onset, onslaught; strike;** surgical strike, first strike, preventive war; descent on *or* upon; **charge,** rush, dead set at, run at *or* against; **drive, push** <nf>; **sally, sortie;** infiltration; *coup de main* <Fr>; frontal attack *or* assault, head-on attack, flank attack; mass attack, kamikaze attack, banzai attack *or* charge, suicide attack *or* charge; hit-and-run attack; breakthrough; **counterattack, counteroffensive;** amphibious attack; gas attack; diversionary attack, diversion; assault and battery, simple assault, mugging <nf>, aggravated assault, armed assault, unprovoked assault; **preemptive strike; blitzkrieg, blitz,** lightning attack, lightning war, panzer warfare; sudden *or* devastating *or* crippling attack, deep strike, shock tactics; atomic *or* thermonuclear attack, first-strike capacity, megadeath, overkill; nuclear winter; land attack, air attack, combined attack, terrorist attack; personal attack

2 **surprise attack,** surprise, surprisal, unforeseen attack, **sneak attack** <nf>; Pearl Harbor; stab in the back; shock tactics

3 **thrust, pass, lunge, swing,** cut, stab, jab; feint; home thrust

4 **raid, foray,** razzia; **invasion, incursion,** inroad, irruption; **air raid, air strike,** air attack, shuttle raid, fire raid, saturation raid; escalade, scaling, boarding, **tank** *or* **armored attack,** panzer attack

5 **siege, besiegement, beleaguerment;** encompassment, investment, encirclement, envelopment; blockading, blockade; cutting of supply lines; vertical envelopment; pincer movement

6 **storm,** storming, taking by storm, overrunning

7 **bombardment, bombing, air bombing,** strategic bombing, tactical bombing, saturation bombing; strafing

8 **gunfire, fire, firing,** musketry, **shooting,** fireworks *or* gunplay <nf>; gunfight, shoot-out; **firepower,** offensive capacity, bang <nf>

9 **volley, salvo,** burst, spray, strafe, **fusillade,** rapid fire; cross fire; drumfire, **cannonade,** cannonry, **broadside,** enfilade; **barrage, artillery barrage;** sharpshooting, sniping

10 **stabbing,** piercing, sticking <nf>; **knifing,** bayonetting; the sword; **impalement, transfixion**

11 **stoning,** lapidation

12 **assailant,** assailer, **attacker;** assaulter, mugger <nf>; **aggressor;** invader, raider; warrior; terrorist

13 **zero hour,** H-hour; D-day, target day

VERBS 14 **attack, assault, assail,** harry, assume *or* take the offensive; commit an assault upon; **strike, hit, pound; go at, come at,** have at, **launch out against,** make a set *or* dead set at, **fall on** *or* **upon, set on** *or* **upon, descend on** *or* **upon,** come down on, swoop down on; pounce upon; **lift** *or* **raise a hand against,** draw the sword against, take up arms *or* the cudgels against; **lay hands on,** lay a hand on, bloody one's hands with; gang up on, attack in force; surprise, **ambush; blitz,** attack *or* hit like lightning

15 <nf terms> **pitch into, light into, lambaste,** pile into, sail into, wade into, lay into, plow into, tie into, rip into; **let one have it,** let one have it with both barrels, kick ass; **land on,** land on like a ton of bricks, climb all over, crack down on, lower the boom on, tee off on; **mug, jump,** bushwhack, sandbag, scrag; swipe at, lay at, **go for, go at;** blindside, blind-pop, sucker-punch; **take a swing** *or* **crack** *or* **swipe** *or* **poke** *or* punch *or* **shot at**

16 **lash out at, strike out at,** hit out at, let drive at, let fly at; **strike at,** hit at, poke at, thrust at, **swing at,** swing on, make a thrust *or* pass at, lunge at, aim *or* deal a blow at, flail at, flail away at, take a fling *or* shy at; cut and thrust; feint

17 **launch an attack,** kick off an attack, mount an attack, **push, thrust,** mount *or* open an offensive, **drive; advance against** *or* **upon, march upon** *or* **against,** bear down upon; **infiltrate; strike;** flank; press the attack, follow up the attack; **counterattack,** retaliate, take on

18 **charge,** rush, **rush at, fly at,** run at, dash at, make a dash *or* rush at; tilt at, go full tilt at, make *or* run

a tilt at, ride full tilt against; **jump off,** go over the top <nf>

19 **besiege, lay siege to,** encompass, surround, **encircle,** envelope, invest, hem in, set upon on all sides, get in a pincers, close the jaws of the pincers *or* trap; **blockade; beset, beleaguer, harry, harass,** drive *or* press one hard; soften up

20 **raid,** foray, make a raid; **invade,** inroad, make an inroad, make an irruption into; escalade, scale, scale the walls, board; storm, take by storm, overwhelm, inundate

21 **pull a gun on,** draw a gun on; **get the drop on** *and* **beat to the draw** <nf>

22 **pull the trigger, fire upon,** fire at, **shoot at,** pop at *and* take a pop at <nf>, take *or* fire *or* let off a shot at, blaze away at <nf>; **open fire,** commence firing, open up on <nf>; aim at, take aim at, level at <old>, zero in on, take dead aim at, draw a bead on; **snipe,** snipe at; **bombard, blast, strafe, shell,** cannonade, mortar, barrage, blitz; pepper, fusillade, fire a volley; rake, enfilade; pour a broadside into; cannon; **torpedo; shoot**

23 **bomb,** drop a bomb, lay an egg <nf>; dive-bomb, glide-bomb, skip-bomb, pattern-bomb, etc; atom-bomb, hydrogen-bomb; nuke <nf>, plaster <nf>

24 **mine,** plant a mine, trigger a mine

25 **stab, stick** <nf>, **pierce,** plunge in; **run through, impale,** spit, **transfix,** transpierce; **spear,** lance, poniard, bayonet, saber, sword, put to the sword; **knife,** dirk, dagger, stiletto; spike; cut down

26 **gore,** horn, tusk

27 **pelt, stone,** lapidate <old>, pellet; brickbat *or* egg <nf>, chuck

28 **hurl at, throw at, cast at,** heave at, fling at, sling at, toss at, shy at, fire at, let fly at; hurl against, hurl at the head of

ADJS 29 **attacking,** assailing, assaulting, charging, driving, thrusting, advancing; **invading,** invasive, invasionary, incursive, incursionary, irruptive, storming

30 **offensive, combative,** on the offensive *or* attack; **aggressive;** militant, hawkish, on the warpath

ADVS 31 **under attack, under fire;** under siege; counterattacking

INTERJS 32 **attack!, advance!, charge!,** over the top!, up and at 'em!, have at them!, give 'em hell!, let 'em have it!, fire!, open fire!; banzai!, Geronimo!

460 DEFENSE

NOUNS 1 **defense,** defence <Brit>, **guard,** ward; **protection** 1008; resistance 453; self-defense, self-protection, self-preservation; deterrent capacity; defense in depth; the defensive; covering one's ass *or* rear-end <nf>; defenses, psychological defenses, ego defenses, defense mechanism, escape mechanism, avoidance reaction, negative taxis *or* tropism; bunker atmosphere *or* mentality

2 **military defense, national defense,** defense capability; Air Defense Command; **civil defense;** CONELRAD *or* control of electromagnetic radiation for civil defense, Emergency Broadcast System *or* EBS, Civil Defense Warning System; radar defenses, distant early warning *or* DEW Line; antimissile missile, antiballistic-missile system *or* ABM; strategic defense initiative *or* Star Wars

3 **armor,** armature; armor plate; body armor, suit of armor, plate armor; panoply, harness; **mail,** chain mail, chain armor; bulletproof vest; **battlegear; protective covering,** cortex, **thick skin,** carapace, shell 295.15; spines, needles; human shield

4 **fortification,** work, defense work, **bulwark, rampart, fence,** earthwork, stockade, **barrier** 1012.5; **enclosure** 212.3

5 **entrenchment, trench,** ditch, fosse; **moat; dugout,** *abri* <Fr>; **bunker; foxhole,** slit trench; approach trench, communication trench, fire trench, gallery, parallel, coupure; tunnel, fortified tunnel; undermining, sap, single *or* double sap, flying sap; mine, countermine

6 **stronghold,** hold, safehold, fasthold, strong point, **fastness,** keep, ward, **bastion,** donjon, **citadel, castle,** tower, tower of strength; mote *or* motte; **fort, fortress,** post; **bunker, pillbox,** blockhouse, garrison *or* trenches *or* barricades; garrison house; acropolis; peel, peel tower; rath; martello tower, martello; **bridgehead, beachhead;** safeguard

7 **defender, champion, advocate; upholder; guardian angel,** angel <nf>; **supporter** 616.9; vindicator, apologist; **protector** 1007.5; **guard** 1008.9; henchman; paladin, knight, white knight; guard dog, attack dog, junkyard dog

VERBS 8 **defend, guard, shield,** screen, secure, guard against, ward; defend tooth and nail *or* to the death *or* to the last breath; **safeguard, protect** 1008.18; stand by the side of, flank; **advocate, champion** 600.10; **defend oneself,** cover one's ass *or* rear-end <nf>, CYA *or* cover your ass <nf>

9 **fortify,** embattle *or* battle <old>; **arm; armor,** armor-plate; **man;** garrison, man the garrison *or* trenches *or* barricades; **barricade, blockade;** bulwark, wall, palisade, fence; castellate, crenellate; bank; entrench, **dig in;** mine; beef up

10 **fend off, ward off, stave off, hold off, fight off,** keep off, beat off, parry, fend, counter, turn aside; **hold** *or* **keep at bay,** keep at arm's length; **hold the fort, hold the line,** stop, check, block, hinder, obstruct; **repel, repulse, rebuff, drive back,** put back, push back; avert; go on the defensive, fight a

holding *or* delaying action, fall back to prepared positions

ADJS 11 **defensive,** defending, **guarding,** shielding, screening; **protective** 1008.23; self-defensive, self-protective, self-preservative

12 **fortified,** battlemented, embattled *or* battled <old>, entrenched; castellated, crenellated, casemated, machicolated; secured, protected

13 **armored,** armor-plated; in armor, panoplied, armed cap-a-pie, armed at all points, in harness, "in complete steel"—Shakespeare; mailed, mailclad, ironclad; loricate, loricated

14 **armed,** heeled *and* carrying *and* gun-toting <nf>; accoutered, **in arms,** bearing *or* wearing *or* carrying arms, under arms, sword in hand; **well-armed,** heavy-armed, full-armed, bristling with arms, **armed to the teeth;** light-armed; **garrisoned,** manned

15 **defensible, defendable, tenable**

ADVS 16 **defensively, in defense,** in self-defense; **on the defensive,** on guard; **at bay,** *aux abois* <Fr>, with one's back to the wall

461 COMBATANT

NOUNS 1 **combatant, fighter, battler,** scrapper <nf>; **contestant, contender, competitor, rival,** adversary, opponent, agonist; disputant, wrangler, squabbler, bickerer, quarreler; struggler, tussler, scuffler; brawler, rioter; feuder; **belligerent,** militant; gladiator; jouster, tilter; knight, belted **knight;** swordsman, blade, sword, *sabreur* or *beau sabreur* <Fr>; fencer, foilsman, swordplayer <old>; duelist, dueler; gamecock, fighting cock; **tough,** rough, rowdy, **ruffian,** thug, **hoodlum, hood** <nf>, hooligan, streetfighter, bully, bullyboy, bravo; gorilla *and* goon *and* plug-ugly *and* skinhead <nf>; hatchet man *and* enforcer <nf>, strong-arm man, strong arm, strong-armer; fire-eater, swaggerer, swashbuckler

2 **boxer, pugilist,** pug *or* palooka <nf>; **street fighter,** scrapper, pit bull

3 **wrestler,** rassler *and* grunt-and-groaner <nf>, grappler, scuffler, matman

4 **bullfighter,** toreador, *torero* <Sp>; banderillero, picador, matador

5 **militarist, warmonger,** war dog *or* hound, war hawk, **hawk** <nf>; **chauvinist, jingo,** jingoist, hard-liner; conquistador, privateer, pirate, buccaneer

6 **military man** or **woman, serviceman, servicewoman,** navy man *or* woman; air serviceman *or* servicewoman; **soldier, warrior,** brave, fighting man, legionary, hoplite, **man-at-arms,** rifleman, rifle; ninja; **cannon fodder,** food for powder, trooper, militiaman; warrioress, Amazon; spearman, pikeman, halberdier; military training, boot camp

7 <common soldiers> **GI,** GI Joe, dough *and* doughfoot *and* Joe Tentpeg *and* John Dogface *and* grunt <nf>, **doughboy, Yank;** Tommy Atkins *or* **Tommy** *or* Johnny *or* swaddy <Brit>; redcoat; *poilu* <Fr>; Aussie *and* Anzac *and* digger <Austral>; jock <Scot>; Fritz, Jerry, Heinie, Hun, Boche, Kraut, krauthead <Ger soldier>; Janissary <Turkish soldier>; *sepoy* <India>; *askari* <Africa>; weekend warrior

8 **enlisted man,** noncommissioned officer 575.19; **common soldier, private, private soldier,** buck private <nf>; private first class *or* pfc

9 **infantryman, foot soldier;** light infantryman, chasseur, *Jäger* <Ger>, Zouave; **rifleman,** rifle, musketeer; fusileer, carabineer; **sharpshooter,** marksman, expert rifleman, *bersagliere* <Ital>; **sniper;** grenadier

10 <nf terms> **grunt, dogface,** footslogger, paddlefoot, doughfoot, blisterfoot, crunchie, line doggie, groundpounder

11 **artilleryman,** artillerist, **gunner,** guns <nf>, cannoneer, machine gunner; **bomber,** bomb thrower, bombardier

12 **cavalryman,** mounted infantryman, **trooper;** dragoon, light *or* heavy dragoon; lancer, lance, uhlan, hussar; cuirassier; spahi; cossack

13 **tanker,** tank corpsman, tank crewman

14 **engineer,** combat engineer, pioneer, Seabee; sapper, sapper and miner

15 **elite troops, shock troops,** storm troops; rapid deployment force *or* RDF; commandos, rangers, Special Forces, Green Berets, marines, paratroops; guardsmen, guards, household troops; Life Guards, Horse Guards, Foot Guards, Grenadier Guards, Coldstream Guards, Scot Guards, Irish Guards; Swiss Guards

16 **irregular,** casual; **guerrilla,** partisan, franctireur; **bushfighter,** bushwhacker <nf>; underground, resistance, maquis; Vietcong *or* VC, Charley <nf>; SWAPO *or* South West African People's Organization guerrilla; Shining Path Guerrilla; Contra; *maquisard* <Fr>, underground *or* resistance fighter, freedom fighter; terrorist

17 **mercenary, hireling,** *condottiere* <Ital>, free lance, free companion, **soldier of fortune,** adventurer; gunman, gun, hired gun, hired killer, professional killer

18 **recruit, rookie** <nf>, **conscript,** drafted man, **draftee, inductee, selectee, enlistee,** enrollee, trainee, boot <nf>; **raw recruit,** tenderfoot; awkward squad <nf>; draft, levy

19 **veteran, vet** <nf>, campaigner, old campaigner, old soldier, old trooper, war-horse <nf>, Veterans

of Foreign Wars *or* VFW member, American Legion member

20 **defense forces, services, the service, armed forces,** armed services, fighting machine; **the military,** the military establishment; professional forces, standing forces, regular forces, reserve forces, volunteer forces; combat troops, support troops

21 **branch, branch of the service, corps** <see list>; **service, arm of the service,** Air Force, Army, Navy, Marine Corps, Coast Guard, Merchant Marine

22 <military units> **unit, organization,** tactical unit, **outfit** <nf>; **army,** field army, army group, corps, army corps, **division,** infantry division, armored division, airborne division, triangular division, pentomic division, Reorganization Objective Army Division *or* ROAD; **regiment, battle group,** battalion, garrison, **company,** troop, brigade, legion, phalanx, cohort, **platoon,** section, **battery,** maniple; **combat team,** combat command; **task force;** commando unit, combat team; **squad,** squadron; detachment, detail, section, posse, unit, detachment; kitchen police *or* KP; column, flying column; rank, file; train, field train; cadre

23 **army,** this man's army <nf>, **soldiery, forces,** armed forces, **troops, host,** array, legions; ranks, rank and file; **standing army, regular army,** active forces, regulars, professional *or* career soldiers; the line, troops of the line; line of defense, first *or* second line of defense; ground forces, ground troops; storm troops, assault troops; **airborne troops,** paratroops; ski troops, mountain troops; occupation force; elite troops

24 **militia,** organized militia, national militia, mobile militia, territorial militia, reserve militia, citizen's army; home reserve; **National Guard,** Air National Guard, state guard; home guard <chiefly Brit>; minutemen, trainband, yeomanry

25 **reserves,** auxiliaries, **second line of defense,** reinforcements, ready reserves, landwehr, army reserves, home reserves, territorial reserves, territorial *or* home defense army <Brit>, supplementary reserves, organized reserves; US Army Reserve, US Naval Reserve, US Marine Corps Reserve, US Air Force Reserve, US Coast Guard Reserve, National Guard; ready reserves, standby reserves, retired reserves

26 **volunteers, enlistees,** volunteer forces, volunteer army, volunteer militia, volunteer navy

27 **navy,** naval forces, **first line of defense; fleet,** flotilla, argosy, armada, squadron, escadrille, division, task force, task group; amphibious force; mosquito fleet; support fleet, destroyer fleet, auxiliary fleet, reserve fleet, mothball fleet; United States Navy *or* USN; Royal Navy *or* RN; marine, mercantile *or* merchant marine, merchant navy, merchant fleet; naval militia; naval reserve; coast guard; Seabees, Naval Construction Battalion; admiralty; gunboat diplomacy

28 **marines,** sea soldiers, Marine Corps, Royal Marines; **leathernecks** *and* devil dogs *and* gyrenes <nf>, jollies <Brit nf>

29 **air force,** air corps, air service, air arm; US Air Force *or* USAF; strategic air force, tactical air force; squadron, escadrille, flight, wing

30 **war-horse, charger,** courser, trooper

31 **US Army branches and corps**

Adjutant General Corps
Air Defense Artillery
Armored Corps
Army Air Corps
Army Digitization Office
Army Nurse Corps
Army Research Laboratory
Army Service Corps
Chemical Corps
Corps of Cadets <West Point>
Corps of Engineers
Dental Command
Finance Corps
General Staff Corps
Infantry Corps
Judge Advocate General Corps
Medical Service Corps
Military Police Corps
Ordnance Corps
Quartermaster Corps
Signal Corps
Special Operations Command
Transportation Corps

32 **US Air Force branches and corps**

Air Combat Command
Air Education and Training Command
Air National Guard
Materiel Command
Mobility Command
Reserve Command
Reserve Officer Training Corps
Space Command
Special Operations Command

462 ARMS

NOUNS **1** **arms, weapons,** deadly weapons, instruments of destruction, offensive weapons, **military hardware,** matériel, **weaponry, armament, munitions, ordnance,** munitions of war, *apparatus belli* <L>; musketry; missilery; small arms; side arms; stand of arms; conventional weapons, nonnuclear weapons; **nuclear weapons,** atomic weapons, thermonuclear weapons, A-weapons, strategic nuclear weapon, tactical nuclear weapon; bacteriological *or* biological weapons, chemical weapon; weapons of mass destruction; arms industry, arms maker, military-industrial complex; natural weapon; secret weapon

2 **armory, arsenal,** magazine, dump; ammunition depot, ammo dump <nf>, arms depot; park, gun park, artillery park, park of artillery; atomic arsenal, thermonuclear arsenal, gun room, powder barrel *or* keg

3 **ballistics, gunnery,** musketry, artillery; rocketry, missilery; archery

4 **fist, clenched fist; brass knuckles;** knucks *and* brass knucks <nf>, knuckles, knuckle-dusters;

club, bludgeon, blackjack, truncheon, billy, blunt instrument, etc

5 **sword, blade,** cutlass, saber, rapier, foil, bayonet, machete; steel, **cold steel;** Excalibur; **knife,** switchblade; **dagger; axe**

6 **arrow, shaft, dart,** reed, **bolt;** quarrel; chested arrow, footed arrow, bobtailed arrow; arrowhead, barb; flight, volley

7 **bow,** longbow, carriage bow; **bow and arrow;** crossbow, arbalest

8 **spear,** throwing spear, javelin, lance, harpoon, sharp weapon

9 **sling, slingshot;** throwing-stick, throw stick, spear-thrower, atlatl, wommera; **catapult,** arbalest, ballista, trebuchet

10 **gun, firearm;** shooting iron *and* gat *and* rod *and* heater *and* piece <nf>; shoulder weapon *or* gun *or* arm; gun make; gun part; stun gun; automatic, BB gun, blunderbuss <old>, Bren, Browning automatic rifle, burp gun <nf>, carbine, derringer, flintlock, forty-five *or* .45, forty-four *or* .44, Gatling gun, handgun, machine gun, musket, pistol, piece *or* equalizer <nf>, automatic, semiautomatic, repeater, revolver, rifle, Saturday night special, sawed-off shotgun, shotgun, six-gun *or* six-shooter <nf>, submachine gun, thirty-eight *or* .38, thirty-thirty *or* .30-30, thirty-two *or* .32, Thompson submachine gun *or* tommy gun <nf>, twenty-two *or* .22, Uzi submachine gun, zip gun

11 **artillery, cannon,** guns, cannonry, ordnance, engines of war, Big Bertha, howitzer; field artillery; heavy artillery, heavy field artillery; self-propelled artillery; siege artillery, bombardment weapons; breakthrough weapons; siege engine; mountain artillery, coast artillery, trench artillery, antiaircraft artillery, flak <nf>; battery

12 **antiaircraft gun** *or* AA gun, ack-ack <nf>, pom-pom <nf>, *Fliegerabwehrkanone* <Ger>, skysweeper, Bofors, Oerlikon

13 **ammunition, ammo** <nf>, **powder and shot,** iron rations <nf>, round, live ammunition

14 **explosive,** high explosive; cellulose nitrate, cordite, dynamite, gelignite, guncotton, gunpowder, nitroglycerin *or* nitroglycerine, plastic explosive *or* plastique, powder, trinitrotoluene *or* trinitrotoluol *or* TNT

15 **fuse, detonator,** exploder; **cap,** blasting cap, percussion cap, mercury fulminate, fulminating mercury; electric detonator *or* exploder; detonating powder; **primer,** priming; primacord

16 **charge, load;** blast; warhead, payload

17 **cartridge,** cartouche, **shell;** ball cartridge; clip, blank cartridge, dry ammunition

18 **missile, projectile,** bolt; brickbat, stone, rock, alley apple *and* Irish confetti <nf>; boomerang; bola; throwing-stick, throw stick, waddy <Austral>; **ballistic missile,** cruise missile, Exocet missile, surface-to-air missile *or* SAM, surface-to-surface missile, Tomahawk missile; **rocket** 1074.2–6,14; **torpedo**

19 **shot; ball,** cannonball, rifle ball, minié ball; **bullet,** slug, pellet; buckshot; dumdum bullet, expanding bullet, explosive bullet, manstopping bullet, manstopper, copkiller *or* Teflon bullet <trademark>; tracer bullet, tracer; **shell,** high-explosive shell, **shrapnel**

20 **bomb,** bombshell, device <nf>; antipersonnel bomb, atomic bomb *or* atom bomb *or* A-bomb, atomic warhead, hydrogen bomb *or* H-bomb, nuclear bomb, blockbuster, depth charge *or* depth bomb *or* ash can <nf>, fire bomb *or* incendiary bomb *or* incendiary, grenade, hand grenade, pineapple <nf>, letter bomb, Molotov cocktail, napalm bomb, neutron bomb, nuclear warhead, pipe bomb, plastic *or* plastique bomb, plutonium bomb, smart bomb, stench *or* stink bomb, time bomb; clean bomb, dirty bomb; **mine,** landmine; booby trap

21 **launcher,** projector, bazooka; rocket launcher, grenade launcher, hedgehog, mine thrower, *Minenwerfer* <Ger>, **mortar**

463 ARENA

NOUNS 1 **arena, scene of action, site,** scene, setting, background, **field, ground,** terrain, sphere, place, locale, milieu, precinct, purlieu; course, range, walk <old>; campus; **theater,** stage, stage set *or* setting, scenery; **platform; forum,** agora, marketplace, open forum, public square; **amphitheater,** circus, **hippodrome, coliseum,** colosseum, **stadium, bowl; hall, auditorium;** gymnasium, gym <nf>, palaestra; **lists,** tiltyard, tilting ground; floor, **pit,** cockpit; bear garden; **ring,** prize ring, boxing ring, canvas, squared circle <nf>, wrestling ring, mat, bull ring; parade ground; athletic field, field, playing field, sports venue; stamping ground, turf, bailiwick 894.4

2 **battlefield, battleground,** battle site, **field,** combat area, **field of battle;** field of slaughter, field of blood *or* bloodshed, aceldama, killing ground *or* field, shambles; **battlefront, the front,** front line, line, enemy line *or* lines, firing line, battle line, line of battle; battle zone, war zone, combat zone; **theater, theater of operations,** theater *or* seat of war; beachhead, bridgehead; communications zone, zone of communications; no-man's-land; demilitarized zone *or* DMZ; jump area *or* zone, landing beach

3 campground, camp, encampment, bivouac, tented field

464 PEACE

NOUNS **1** **peace,** *pax* <L>; **peacetime,** state of peace, peaceable kingdom, the storm blown over; freedom from war, cessation of combat, exemption from hostilities, public tranquillity, peace movement; "liberty in tranquillity"—Cicero; **harmony,** concord, accord 455; universal peace, lasting peace, Pax Romana

2 **peacefulness, tranquillity, serenity, calmness, quiet,** peace and quiet, quietude, quietness, quiescence, quiet life, restfulness, rest, stillness; order, orderliness, law and order, imposed peace; no hassle <nf>

3 **peace of mind,** peace of heart, peace of soul *or* spirit, peace of God, "peace which passeth all understanding"—Bible; ataraxia, shanti

4 **peaceableness, unpugnaciousness,** uncontentiousness, nonaggression; irenicism, dovelikeness, dovishness <nf>, **pacifism,** pacificism; peaceful coexistence; **nonviolence,** ahimsa; line of least resistance; meekness, lamblikeness 433.5

5 **noncombatant,** nonbelligerent, nonresistant, nonresister; **civilian,** citizen

6 **pacifist,** pacificist, peacenik <nf>, **peace lover, dove,** *and* dove of peace <nf>; pacificator, peacemaker, bridgebuilder; peacemonger; **conscientious objector,** passive resister, conchie <nf>

7 peace treaty, peace agreement, nonaggression pact, disarmament treaty, arms reduction, arms control; test ban; deescalation; amnesty, pardon, forgiveness, burying the hatchet <nf>

VERBS **8** **keep the peace,** remain at peace, wage peace; refuse to shed blood, keep one's sword in its sheath; forswear violence, beat one's swords into plowshares; pursue the arts of peace, pour oil on troubled waters; make love not war; defuse

ADJS **9** **pacific, peaceful, peaceable; tranquil, serene;** idyllic, pastoral; halcyon, soft, piping, **calm, quiet,** quiet as a lamb, quiescent, still, restful, **untroubled,** orderly, **at peace;** concordant 455.3; bloodless; peacetime; postwar, postbellum

10 **unbelligerent, unhostile,** unbellicose, **unpugnacious, uncontentious,** unmilitant, unmilitary, nonaggressive, noncombative, nonmilitant; noncombatant, civilian; **antiwar, pacific, peaceable,** peace-loving, dovelike; meek, passive, lamblike 433.15; **pacifistic,** pacifist, irenic; nonviolent; conciliatory 465.12

INTERJS **11** **peace!, peace be with you!,** peace be to you!, *pax vobiscum!* and *pax tecum!* <L>; *shalom!* or *shalom aleichem!* <Heb>, *salaam aleikum!* <Arabic>; "peace be to this house!," "peace be within thy walls, and prosperity within thy palaces," "let the peace of God rule in your hearts," "be at peace among yourselves"—all Bible; go in peace!, *vade in pace!* <L>

465 PACIFICATION

NOUNS **1** **pacification, peacemaking,** irenics, peacemongering, **conciliation, propitiation, placation, appeasement, mollification,** dulcification; **calming, soothing,** tranquilization; détente, relaxation of tension, easing of relations; mediation 466; placability; peacekeeping force, United Nations peacekeeping force

2 **peace offer,** offer of parley, parley, peace overture; peace feelers; **peace offering,** propitiatory gift; **olive branch; white flag,** truce flag, flag of truce; calumet, peace pipe, **pipe of peace;** downing of arms, hand of friendship, empty hands, outstretched hand; **cooling off, cooling-off period;** peace sign; compensation, reparation, atonement, restitution; amnesty, pardon, mercy, leniency, clemency; dove, lamb

3 **reconciliation,** reconcilement, *rapprochement* <Fr>, **reunion,** shaking of hands, making up *and* kissing and making up <nf>

4 **adjustment,** accommodation, resolution, composition *or* settlement of differences, compromise, arrangement, settlement, terms; consensus building, consensus seeking

5 **truce, armistice, peace; pacification,** treaty of peace, suspension *or* end of hostilities, **cease-fire,** cessation, stand-down, breathing spell, cooling-off period, lull in hostilities; Truce *or* Peace of God, Pax Dei, Pax Romana; temporary truce, temporary arrangement, *modus vivendi* <L>; hollow truce, *pax in bello* <L>; demilitarized zone, buffer zone, neutral territory; uneasy truce

6 **disarmament,** reduction of armaments; unilateral disarmament; **demilitarization,** deactivation, disbanding, disbandment, **demobilization,** mustering out, reconversion, decommissioning; civilian life, mufti *and* civvy street <Brit>; defense cuts, arms reduction, arms control; test ban

VERBS **7** **pacify, conciliate, placate, propitiate, appease, mollify,** dulcify; **calm, settle, soothe,** tranquilize 670.7; smooth, smooth over *or* out, smooth down, smooth one's feathers; allay, lay, lay the dust; pour oil on troubled waters, pour balm on, take the edge off of, take the sting out of; cool <nf>, defuse; clear the air

8 **reconcile, bring to terms, bring together,** reunite, heal the breach; bring about a détente; **harmonize,** restore harmony, put in tune; **iron** *or* **sort out,** adjust, settle, compose, accommodate, arrange matters, settle differences, resolve, compromise; **patch things up,** fix up <nf>, patch up a friendship *or* quarrel, smooth it over; weave peace between, mediate 466.6

9 **make peace,** cease hostilities, cease fire, stand down, raise a siege; **cool it** *and* **chill out** <nf>, **bury the hatchet, smoke the peace pipe;** negotiate a peace, dictate peace; make a peace offering, hold out the olive branch, hoist *or* show *or* wave the white flag; make the world a safer place, make the lion lie down with the lamb; turn the other cheek

10 **make up** *and* **kiss and make up** *and* make it up *and* make matters up <nf>, **shake hands,** come round, come together, come to an understanding, **come to terms,** let the wound heal, let bygones be bygones, forgive and forget, put it all behind one, settle *or* compose one's differences, meet halfway, compromise

11 **disarm, lay down one's arms,** unarm, turn in one's weapons, down *or* ground one's arms, put down one's gun, sheathe the sword, turn swords into plowshares; **demilitarize,** deactivate, **demobilize, disband,** reconvert, decommission

ADJS 12 **pacificatory, pacific,** irenic, **conciliatory,** reconciliatory, **propitiatory,** propitiative, **placative,** placatory, **mollifying, appeasing; pacifying,** soothing 670.15, appeasable

13 **pacifiable, placable, appeasable, propitiable**

ADVS 14 **pacifically, peaceably; with no hard feelings**

466 MEDIATION

NOUNS 1 **mediation,** mediating, intermediation, **intercession; intervention,** interposition, putting oneself between, moderation, stepping in, declaring oneself in, involvement, interagency; interventionism; diplomacy, statesmanship; troubleshooting, good offices

2 **arbitration,** arbitrament, compulsory arbitration, binding arbitration; nonbinding arbitration; umpirage, refereeship, mediatorship

3 **mediator,** intermediator, intermediate agent, intermediate, intermedium, **intermediary,** interagent, internuncio; **medium; intercessor,** interceder; ombudsman; intervener, **intervenor;** interventionist; **go-between,** liaison, **middleman** 576.4; connection <nf>; front *and* front man <nf>; deputy, agent 576; **spokesman, spokeswoman,** spokesperson, spokespeople; **mouthpiece; negotiator,** negotiant, negotiatress *or* negotiatrix; Little Miss Fixit; troubleshooter; spin doctor <nf>

4 **arbitrator,** arbiter, impartial arbitrator, third party, unbiased observer; **moderator,** moderating influence; **umpire, referee, judge;** magistrate 596.1

5 **peacemaker,** make-peace, reconciler, smoother-over, peace negotiator, mediator; **pacifier,** pacificator, peace lover, pacifist; peacekeeper, United Nations peacekeeping force; **conciliator,** propitiator, **appeaser;** marriage counselor, family counselor; guidance counselor; patcher-up

VERBS 6 **mediate,** intermediate, **intercede,** go between; **intervene,** interpose, step in, step into the breach, declare oneself a party, involve oneself, put oneself between disputants, use one's good offices, act between; butt in *and* put one's nose in <nf>; represent 576.14; **negotiate,** bargain, **treat with,** make terms, meet halfway; **arbitrate,** moderate; **umpire, referee,** judge, officiate

7 **settle, arrange,** compose, patch up, adjust, straighten out, bring to terms *or* an understanding; make peace 465.9; reconcile, conciliate

ADJS 8 **mediatory,** mediatorial, mediative, mediating, arbitral, going *or* coming between; intermediatory, intermediary, intermedial, intermediate, **middle,** intervening, mesne, interlocutory; interventional, arbitrational, arbitrative; **intercessory,** intercessional; diplomatic; pacificatory 465.12

467 NEUTRALITY

NOUNS 1 **neutrality, neutralism,** strict neutrality; noncommitment, noninvolvement; **independence, nonpartisanism, unalignment, nonalignment;** anythingarianism *or* nothingarianism <nf>; mugwumpery, mugwumpism, fence-sitting *or* -straddling, trimming; **evasion, cop-out** <nf>, abstention; **impartiality** 649.4, coexistence, avoidance; nonintervention, nonaggression

2 **indifference,** indifferentness, Laodiceanism; passiveness 329.1; apathy 94.4

3 **middle course** *or* **way,** *via media* <L>; **middle ground,** neutral ground *or* territory, center; meeting ground, interface; gray area, penumbra; **middle of the road,** sitting on *or* straddling the fence <nf>; medium, **happy medium;** mean, **golden mean;** moderation, moderateness 670.1; compromise 468; halfway measures, half measures, half-and-half measures

4 **neutral,** neuter; **independent, nonpartisan;** mugwump, fence-sitter *or* -straddler, trimmer; anythingarian *and* nothingarian <nf>; unaligned *or* nonaligned nation, third force, third world

VERBS 5 **remain neutral,** stand neuter, hold no brief, **keep in the middle of the road, straddle** *or* **sit on the fence** *and* sit out *and* sit on the sidelines <nf>, trim; **evade,** evade the issue, duck the issue *and* waffle *and* **cop out** <nf>, abstain

6 **steer a middle course,** hold *or* keep *or* preserve a middle course, walk a middle path, follow the via media, strike *or* preserve a balance, stay on an even keel, **strike** *or* **keep a happy medium,** keep the golden mean, steer between *or* avoid Scylla and Charybdis; be moderate 670.5

ADJS **7** **neutral,** neuter; noncommitted, uncommitted, noninvolved, uninvolved; anythingarian *and* nothingarian <nf>; **indifferent,** Laodicean; tolerant; passive 329.6; apathetic 94.13; neither one thing nor the other, neither hot nor cold; even, half-and-half, fifty-fifty <nf>; **on the fence** *or* **sidelines** <nf>, **middle-of-the-road,** centrist, center, moderate, midway; **independent, nonpartisan; unaligned, nonaligned,** third-force, third-world; **impartial** 649.10

468 COMPROMISE

<mutual concession>

NOUNS **1** **compromise,** composition, adjustment, accommodation, settlement, mutual concession, give-and-take; abatement of differences; bargain, deal <nf>, arrangement, understanding; **concession,** giving way, yielding; surrender, desertion of principle, evasion of responsibility, cop-out <nf>; middle ground, happy medium; meeting halfway

VERBS **2** **compromise,** make *or* reach a compromise, compound, compose, accommodate, adjust, settle, make an adjustment *or* arrangement, **make a deal** <nf>, do a deal <Brit nf>, come to an understanding, strike a bargain, do something mutually beneficial; plea-bargain; strike a balance, take the mean, **meet halfway,** split the difference, go fifty-fifty <nf>, give and take; play politics; steer a middle course 467.6; **make concessions,** give way, yield, wimp *or* chicken out <nf>; **surrender** 433.8, desert one's principles, evade responsibility, sidestep, duck responsibility *and* cop out *and* punt <nf>

PHRS **3** half a loaf is better than none; you can't win them all

469 POSSESSION

NOUNS **1** **possession,** possessing, outright possession, free-and-clear possession; **owning,** having title to; seisin, nine points of the law, *de facto* possession, *de jure* possession, lawful *or* legal possession; property rights, proprietary rights; **title,** absolute title, free-and-clear title, original title; derivative title; adverse possession, squatting, squatterdom, **squatter's right; claim, legal claim,** lien; usucapion, usucaption <old>, prescription; **occupancy,** occupation; **hold, holding, tenure; tenancy,** tenantry, **lease,** leasehold, sublease, underlease, undertenancy; gavelkind; villenage, villein socage, villeinhold; socage, free socage; burgage; frankalmoign, lay fee; tenure in chivalry, knight service; fee fief, fiefdom, feud, feodum; freehold, alodium; fee simple, fee tail, fee simple absolute, fee simple conditional, fee simple defeasible *or* fee simple determinable; fee position; dependency, colony, mandate; prepossession <old>, preoccupation, preoccupancy; chose in possession, bird in hand, nine tenths of the law <nf>; **property** 471

2 **ownership, title,** possessorship, *dominium* <L>, **proprietorship,** proprietary, **property right** *or* rights; lordship, **overlordship,** seigniory; **dominion, sovereignty** 417.5; landownership, landowning, landholding, land tenure; nationalization, public domain, state ownership

3 **monopoly,** monopolization; **corner** *and* cornering *and* a corner on <nf>; exclusive possession; engrossment, forestallment

VERBS **4** **possess, have, hold,** have and hold, possess outright *or* free and clear, **occupy, fill, enjoy,** boast; be possessed of, have tenure of, have in hand, be seized of, have in one's grip *or* grasp, have in one's possession, be enfeoffed of; **command,** have at one's command *or* pleasure *or* disposition *or* disposal, have going for one <nf>; claim, usucapt; squat, squat on, claim squatter's rights

5 **own, have title to,** have for one's own *or* very own, have to one's name, call one's own, have the deed for, hold in fee simple, etc

6 **monopolize,** hog *and* grab all of *and* gobble up <nf>, call one's own, take it all, have all to oneself, have exclusive possession of *or* exclusive rights to; engross, forestall, tie up; **corner** *and* get a corner on *and* corner the market <nf>

7 **belong to,** pertain to, appertain to; vest in

ADJS **8** **possessed, owned,** held; in seisin, in fee, in fee simple, **free and clear; own,** of one's own, in one's name; **in one's possession, in hand,** in one's grip *or* grasp, at one's command *or* disposal; on hand, by one, in stock, in store

9 **possessing, having, holding,** having and holding, **occupying, owning; in possession of, possessed of,** seized of, master of; tenured; enfeoffed; endowed with, blessed with; worth; propertied, property-owning, landed, landowning, landholding

10 **possessive,** possessory, **proprietary**

11 **monopolistic,** monopolist, monopolizing, hogging *or* hoggish <nf>; exclusive

ADVS 12 **free and clear, outright;** bag and baggage; by fee simple, etc

470 POSSESSOR

NOUNS 1 **possessor, holder,** keeper, haver, enjoyer; a have <nf>

2 **proprietor,** proprietary, **owner;** *rentier* <Fr>; titleholder, deedholder; proprietress, proprietrix; **master, mistress, lord; landlord, landlady;** lord *or* lady of the manor <Brit>, man *or* lady of the house, mesne lord, mesne, feudatory, feoffee; squire, country gentleman; householder; beneficiary, cestui, cestui que trust, cestui que use

3 **landowner,** landholder, property owner, propertied *or* landed person, man of property, freeholder; landed interests, landed gentry, slumlord, rent gouger; absentee landlord

4 **tenant, occupant,** occupier, incumbent, **resident; lodger,** roomer, boarder, paying guest; **renter,** hirer <Brit>, rent-payer, **lessee,** leaseholder; subtenant, sublessee, underlessee, undertenant; tenant at sufferance, tenant at will; tenant from year to year, tenant for years, tenant for life; squatter; homesteader

5 **trustee,** fiduciary, holder of the legal estate; depository, depositary

471 PROPERTY

NOUNS 1 **property, properties, possessions, holdings,** havings, goods, chattels, goods *and* chattels, **effects,** estate and effects, what one can call one's own, what one has to one's name, all one owns *or* has, all one can lay claim to, one's all; household possessions *or* effects, lares *and* penates; hereditament, corporeal hereditament, incorporeal hereditament; acquest; acquisitions, receipts 627; **inheritance** 479.2; public property, common property

2 **belongings, appurtenances,** trappings, paraphernalia, appointments, accessories, perquisites, appendages, appanages, choses local; **things,** material things, mere things; consumer goods; choses, choses in possession, choses in action; **personal effects,** personal property, chattels personal, movables, choses transitory; what one can call one's own, what has to one's name

3 **impedimenta, luggage, dunnage, baggage,** bag and baggage, traps, tackle, apparatus, truck, gear, kit, outfit, duffel

4 **estate, interest, equity, stake,** part, percentage; **right, title** 469.1, **claim,** holding; use, trust, benefit; absolute interest, vested interest, contingent interest, beneficial interest, equitable interest; easement, right of common, common, right of entry; limitation; settlement, strict settlement; copyright, patent

5 freehold, estate of freehold; allodium, allod; frankalmoign, lay fee, tenure in *or* by free alms, appanage; mortmain, dead hand; leasehold

6 **real estate, realty,** real property, land *and* buildings, chattels real, tenements; immoveables; *praedium* <L>, landed property *or* estate, **land, lands,** property, grounds, acres; lot, lots, parcel, plot, plat, quadrat; demesne, domain <old>; messuage, manor, honor, toft <Brit>

7 **assets, means, resources,** total assets *or* resources; stock, stock-in-trade; **worth,** net worth, what one is **worth;** circumstances, funds 728.14; wealth 618; **material assets,** tangible assets, tangibles; intangible assets, intangibles; current assets, deferred assets, fixed assets, frozen assets, liquid assets, quick assets, assets *and* liabilities, net assets; assessed valuation

ADJS 8 **propertied,** proprietary; **landed;** copyrighted, patented

9 real, praedial; manorial, seigniorial, seigneurial; feudal, feudatory, feodal; patrimonial

10 freehold, leasehold, copyhold; allodial

472 ACQUISITION

NOUNS 1 **acquisition,** gaining, getting, getting hold of <nf>, coming by, **acquirement, obtainment,** obtention, **attainment,** securement, winning, realization; trover; accession; addition 253; **procurement,** procural, procurance, procuration; **earnings,** making, pulling *or* dragging *or* knocking down <nf>, moneymaking, breadwinning, moneygetting, moneygrubbing

2 **collection, gathering,** gleaning, bringing together, assembling, putting *or* piecing together, **accumulation,** cumulation, **amassment,** accretion, heaping up, grubbing

3 **gain, profit,** percentage <nf>, get <Brit nf>, **take** *or* take-in *and* piece *and* slice *and* end *and* rakeoff *and* skimmings <nf>; **gains, profits, earnings, winnings, return, returns, proceeds, bottom line** <nf>, gettings, makings; **income** 624.4; **receipts** 627; **fruits,** pickings, gleanings; **booty,** spoils 482.11; pelf, lucre, filthy lucre; perquisite, perk *or* perks; **pile** *and* bundle *and* cleanup *and* killing *and* haul *and* mint <nf>; net *or* neat profit, clean *or* clear profit, net; gross profit, gross; paper profits; capital gains; interest, dividends; getting ahead; hoard, store 386; wealth 618

4 **profitableness, profitability,** gainfulness, remunerativeness, rewardingness, bang for the buck <nf>

5 **yield, output,** make, production; **proceeds,** produce, product; **crop, harvest,** fruit, vintage, bearing; second crop, aftermath; bumper crop

6 **find,** finding, **discovery; trove,** *trouvaille* <Fr>; treasure trove, buried treasure; **windfall,** windfall money, windfall profit, found money, easy money, money in the bank, **bonus, gravy** <nf>, bunce <Brit nf>

7 **godsend, boon, blessing;** manna, manna from heaven, loaves and fishes, gift from on high; piece of luck

VERBS 8 **acquire, get, gain, obtain, secure, procure; win,** score; **earn,** make; **reap, harvest;** contract; take, catch, capture; **net;** come *or* enter into possession of, **come into, come by,** come in for, be seized of; draw, derive

9 <nf terms> **grab, latch** *or* glom on to, corral, bag, get *or* lay hold of, rake in *or* up *or* off, skim *or* skim off, catch, collar, cop, dig up, grub up, round up, drum up, get *or* lay one's hands, get *or* lay one's mitts on, get one's fingers *or* hands on, get one's hooks into, snag, snaffle, scratch together, hook, land, throw together, nab, pick up, nail, scare *or* scrape up; take home, pull *or* drag *or* knock down

10 **take possession, appropriate, take up,** take over, make one's own, move in *or* move in on <nf>, annex

11 **collect, gather, glean,** harvest, **pick, pluck,** cull, **take up,** pick up, get *or* gather in, gather to oneself, bring *or* get together, scrape together, scare up <nf>; heap up, amass, assemble, accumulate 386.11

12 **profit, make** *or* **draw** *or* **realize** *or* **reap profit, come out ahead, make money;** rake it in *and* coin money *and* make a bundle *or* pile *or* killing *or* mint *and* clean up <nf>, laugh all the way to the bank; gain by, **capitalize on,** commercialize, make capital out of, **cash in on** *and* make a good thing of <nf>, turn to profit *or* account, **realize on,** make money by, obtain a return, turn a penny *or* an honest penny; **gross, net; realize, clear;** kill two birds with one stone, turn to one's advantage; make a fast *or* quick buck <nf>; line one's pockets

13 **be profitable,** pay, repay, pay off <nf>, yield a profit, show a percentage, be gainful, be worthwhile *or* worth one's while, be a good investment, show a profit, pay interest; roll in <nf>

ADJS 14 **obtainable, attainable, available,** accessible, to be had

15 **acquisitive,** acquiring; grasping, hoggy *and* grabby <nf>; **greedy** 100.27

16 **gainful,** productive, **profitable, remunerative, remuneratory, lucrative,** fat, **paying,** well-paying, high-yield, high-yielding, bankable; advantageous, worthwhile, rewarding; banausic, moneymaking, breadwinning

ADVS 17 **profitably, gainfully,** remuneratively, lucratively, **at a profit,** in the black; for money; advantageously, to advantage, to profit, to the good

473 LOSS

NOUNS 1 **loss, losing, privation,** getting away, losing hold of; **deprivation, bereavement,** taking away, stripping, dispossession, despoilment, despoliation, spoliation, robbery; setback, reversal; divestment, denudation; **sacrifice, forfeit, forfeiture,** giving up *or* over, denial; nonrestoration; **expense, cost, debit;** detriment, injury, damage; **destruction, ruin,** perdition, total loss, dead loss; losing streak <nf>; **loser** 412.5

2 **waste,** wastage, **exhaustion, depletion,** sapping, depreciation, dissipation, diffusion, **wearing, wearing away, erosion,** ablation, leaching away; molting, shedding, casting *or* sloughing off; **using, using up, consumption, expenditure, drain;** stripping, clear-cutting; impoverishment, shrinkage; leakage, evaporation; decrement, decrease 252

3 **losses,** losings; red ink; net loss, bottom line <nf>; diminishing returns; going to the wall *or* going belly up <nf>

VERBS 4 **lose,** incur loss, **suffer loss,** undergo privation *or* deprivation, be bereaved *or* bereft of, have no more, meet with a loss; drop *and* kiss good-bye <nf>; let slip, let slip through one's fingers; **forfeit,** default; **sacrifice; miss,** wander from, go astray from; **mislay,** misplace; lose out; **lose everything,** go broke *and* lose one's shirt *and* take a bath *or* to the cleaners *and* tap out *and* go to Tap City <nf>; have a setback *or* reversal

5 **waste, deplete, depreciate,** dissipate, wear, wear away, erode, ablate, consume, drain, **shrink,** dribble away; **molt, shed,** cast *or* slough off; decrease 252.6; squander 486.3; labor in vain

6 **go to waste,** come to nothing, come to naught, go up in smoke *and* go down the drain <nf>; run to waste, go to pot <nf>, run *or* go to seed, go down the tubes <nf>, go to the dogs <nf>; dissipate, leak, leak away, scatter to the winds

ADJS 7 **lost, gone;** forfeited, forfeit; by the board, out the window *and* down the drain *or* tube <nf>; **nonrenewable,** irreclaimable; long-lost; lost to; wasted, consumed, depleted, dissipated, diffused, **expended; worn away, eroded,** ablated, used, used up, shrunken; stripped, clear-cut; squandered 486.9; irretrievable 125.15; astray; the worse for wear

8 **bereft, bereaved,** divested, denuded, **deprived of,**

shorn of, parted from, bereaved of, stripped of, dispossessed of, despoiled of, robbed of; **out of,** minus <nf>, wanting, lacking; cut off, cut off without a cent; out-of-pocket; **penniless, destitute, broke** *and* cleaned out *and* tapped out *and* wiped out *and* bust *and* belly up <nf>

ADVS 9 **at a loss, unprofitably,** to the bad <nf>; in the red <nf>; out, out-of-pocket

474 RETENTION

NOUNS 1 **retention,** retainment, **keeping, holding, maintenance, preservation;** prehension; keeping *or* holding in, **bottling** *or* corking up <nf>, locking in, suppression, repression, inhibition, retentiveness, retentivity; **tenacity** 803.3; adhesion; tenaciousness; detention

2 **hold, purchase, grasp, grip, clutch, clamp, clinch, clench;** seizure 480.2; bite, nip, toothhold; **cling,** clinging; toehold, foothold, footing; **clasp, hug, embrace,** bear hug, squeeze; grapple; handhold, firm hold, tight grip, iron grip, grip of iron *or* steel, death grip, stranglehold

3 <wrestling holds> half nelson, full nelson, quarter nelson, three-quarter nelson, stranglehold, toehold, flying mare, body slam, lock, hammerlock, headlock, scissors, bear hug, pin, fall

4 **clutches, claws, talons,** pounces, unguals; **nails,** fingernails; **pincers,** nippers, chelae; **tentacles; fingers,** digits, hooks <nf>; **hands,** paws *and* meathooks *and* mitts <nf>; palm; prehensile tail; **jaws,** mandibles, maxillae; **teeth,** fangs

VERBS 5 **retain, keep, save,** save up, pocket *and* hip-pocket <nf>; **maintain, preserve;** keep *or* hold in, **bottle** *or* cork up <nf>, lock in, suppress, repress, inhibit, keep to oneself; persist in; hold one's own, hold one's ground; get a foothold

6 **hold, grip, grasp, clutch,** clip, **clinch, clench;** bite, nip; grapple; **clasp, hug, embrace; cling, cling to,** cleave to, stick to, adhere to, freeze to; **hold on to,** hold fast *or* tight, hang on to, keep a firm *or* tight hold on; **hold on, hang on** <nf>, hold on like a bulldog, stick like a leech, cling like a winkle, hang on for dear life; keep hold of, never let go, not part with; **seize** 480.14

7 **hold, keep, harbor,** bear, have, have *and* hold, hold on to; **cherish,** fondle, entertain, treasure, treasure up; **foster, nurture, nurse;** embrace, hug, clip <Brit nf>, cling to; bosom *or* embosom <old>, take to the bosom

ADJS 8 **retentive,** retaining, keeping, holding, gripping, grasping; **tenacious,** clinging; viselike; anal

9 **prehensile,** raptorial; fingered, digitate *or* digitated, digital; clawed, taloned, jawed, toothed, dentate, fanged

ADVS 10 **for keeps** <nf>, to keep, **for good,** for good *and* all, for always; forever 829.12

475 RELINQUISHMENT

NOUNS 1 **relinquishment, release,** giving up, letting go, dispensation; **disposal,** disposition, riddance, getting rid of, dumping 390.3; **renunciation,** forgoing, forswearing, swearing off, abstinence, resignation, abjuration, **abandonment** 370; recantation, retraction 363.3; **surrender,** cession, handover, turning over, **yielding;** sacrifice; abdication

2 **waiver, quitclaim,** deed of release

VERBS 3 **relinquish, give up,** render up, **surrender, yield,** cede, hand *or* turn over, cough up <nf>; take one's hands off, loose one's grip on; spare; resign, vacate; drop, **waive,** dispense with; **forgo,** do without, get along without, forswear, abjure, **renounce,** swear off; walk away from, **abandon** 370.5; recant, retract; disgorge, throw up; have done with, wash one's hands of, pack it in; **part with,** give away, dispose of, rid oneself of, get rid of, see the last of, dump 390.7; kiss goodbye *or* off <nf>; **sacrifice,** make a sacrifice, forfeit; quitclaim; sell off

4 **release, let go,** leave go <nf>, **let loose of,** unhand, unclutch, unclasp, relax one's grip *or* hold

ADJS 5 **relinquished,** released, disposed of; waived, dispensed with; forgone, forsworn, renounced, abjured, **abandoned** 370.8; recanted, retracted; **surrendered,** ceded, yielded; sacrificed, forfeited

476 PARTICIPATION

NOUNS 1 **participation, partaking, sharing,** having a part *or* share *or* voice, contribution, association; **involvement,** engagement; complicity; **voting** 609.18, **suffrage** 609.17; **power-sharing;** partnership, copartnership, copartnery, joint control, cochairmanship, joint chairmanship; joint tenancy, cotenancy; joint ownership, condominium *or* condo, cooperative *or* coop; communal ownership, commune

2 **communion,** community, communal effort *or* enterprise, **cooperation,** cooperative society; social life, socializing; **collectivity,** collectivism, collective enterprise, collective farm, kibbutz, kolkhoz; **democracy,** participatory democracy, town meeting, self-rule; collegiality; common ownership, public ownership, state ownership, communism, socialism 611.5,6; profit sharing; sharecropping

3 **communization,** communalization, **socialization, nationalization, collectivization**

4 **participator, participant, partaker, player, sharer;**

party, **a party to,** accomplice, accessory; partner, copartner; cotenant; shareholder

VERBS **5 participate, take part, partake, contribute,** chip in, involve *or* engage oneself, get involved; **have** *or* **take a hand in,** get in on, have a finger in, have a finger in the pie, have to do with, have a part in, be an accessory to, be implicated in, be a party to, be a player in; **participate in,** partake of *or* in, **take part in,** take an active part in, **join, join in,** figure in, make oneself part of, join oneself to, associate oneself with, play *or* perform a part in, play a role in, get in the act <nf>; **join up,** sign on, enlist, volunteer, answer the call; climb on the bandwagon; **have a voice in,** help decide, be in on the decisions, **vote,** have suffrage, be enfranchised; **enter into,** go into; make the scene <nf>; sit in, sit on; bear a hand, pull an oar; come out of one's shell

6 share, share in, come in for a share, **go shares,** be partners in, have a stake in, have a percentage *or* piece of <nf>, **divide with, divvy up with** <nf>, halve, go halves; go halvers *and* **go fifty-fifty** *and* go even stephen <nf>, split the difference, **share and share alike;** do one's share *or* part, pull one's weight; cooperate 450.3; apportion 477.6

7 communize, communalize, **socialize, collectivize, nationalize**

ADJS **8 participating, participative,** participant, participatory; hands-on, involved, engaged, **in** *or* **in on** <nf>; implicated, accessory; **partaking, sharing**

9 communal, common, general, public, collective, popular, social, societal; **mutual,** commutual <old>, reciprocal, associated, **joint,** conjoint, **in common,** share *and* share alike; **cooperative** 450.5; power-sharing, profit-sharing; collectivistic, **communistic,** socialistic 611.22

477 APPORTIONMENT

NOUNS **1 apportionment, apportioning, portioning, division,** divvy <nf>, **partition,** repartition, partitionment, partitioning, parceling, budgeting, rationing, **dividing, sharing,** share-out, sharing out, splitting, cutting, slicing, cutting the pie *and* divvying up <nf>; reapportionment

2 distribution, dispersion, **disposal,** disposition; dole, doling, doling *or* parceling out, giving out, passing around; **dispensation,** administration, issuance; disbursal, disbursement, paying out; redistribution; maldistribution; dealing, dispensing, divvying <nf>

3 allotment, assignment, appointment, setting aside, **earmarking,** tagging; underallotment, overallotment; appropriation; **allocation;** misallocation; reallocation

4 dedication, commitment, devoting, devotion, consecration

5 portion, share, interest, part, stake, stock, **piece,** bit, segment; **bite** *and* **cut** *and* **slice** *and* **chunk** *and* slice *and* piece of the pie *or* melon <nf>, piece of the action <nf>, **lot, allotment, end** <nf>, **proportion, percentage,** measure, quantum, **quota,** deal *or* dole <old>, ratio, meed, moiety, mess, helping; contingent; dividend; **commission,** rake-off <nf>; equal share, half; **lion's share,** bigger half, big end <nf>; small share, modicum; **allowance, ration, budget; load,** work load; fate, destiny 964.2

VERBS **6 apportion, portion, parcel, partition, part, divide,** share; share with, cut *or* deal one in <nf>, share *and* share alike, divide with, go halvers *or* fifty-fifty *or* even stephen with <nf>; divide into shares, **share out** *or* **around,** divide up, divvy *or* divvy up *or* out <nf>, **split,** split up, carve, cut, slice, carve up, slice up, cut up, cut *or* slice the pie *or* melon <nf>; divide *or* split fifty-fifty

7 proportion, proportionate, **prorate,** divide *pro rata*

8 parcel out, portion out, measure out, serve out, spoon *or* ladle *or* dish out, **deal out, dole out, hand out, mete out,** ration out, give out, hand around, pass around; mete, dole, deal; **distribute,** disperse; **dispense,** dispose <old>, issue, administer; disburse, pay out

9 allot, lot, **assign, appoint, set,** detail; **allocate,** make assignments *or* allocations, schedule; **set apart** *or* **aside, earmark,** tag, mark out for; demarcate, set off, mark off, portion off; assign to, appropriate to *or* for; reserve, restrict to, restrict 210.5; **ordain, destine, fate**

10 budget, ration; allowance, put on an allowance; divvy <nf>

11 dedicate, commit, devote, consecrate, set apart

ADJS **12 apportioned,** portioned out, parceled, allocated, etc; **apportionable,** allocable, divisible, divvied <nf>, distributable, committable, appropriable, dispensable, donable, severable

13 proportionate, proportional; prorated, *pro rata* <L>; half; halvers *or* fifty-fifty *or* even stephen <nf>, half-and-half, equal; **distributive,** distributional; **respective,** particular, per head, per capita, several

ADVS **14 proportionately, in proportion,** *pro rata* <L>; **distributively; respectively,** severally, each to each; share *and* share alike, in equal shares, half-and-half; fifty-fifty *and* even stephen <nf>

478 GIVING

NOUNS **1 giving, donation,** bestowal, bestowment; **endowment,** gifting <nf>, **presentation,** presentment; **award,** awarding; grant, granting; accordance, vouchsafement <old>; conferment, conferral; investiture; **delivery,** deliverance, surrender; **concession,** communication, impartation, impartment; **contribution,** subscription; tithing; accommodation, supplying, furnishment, provision 385; **offer** 439; **liberality** 485

2 **commitment, consignment,** assignment, **delegation,** relegation, commendation, remanding, **entrustment;** enfeoffment, infeudation *or* infeodation; labor of love

3 **charity,** almsgiving; **philanthropy** 143.4

4 **gift, present,** presentation, *cadeau* <Fr>, **offering,** fairing <Brit>; tribute, **award;** free gift, freebie *and* gimme <nf>; oblation 696.7; handsel; box <Brit>; Christmas present *or* gift, birthday present *or* gift; peace offering; a little something

5 **gratuity, largess, bounty,** liberality, donative, sportula; perquisite, perks <Brit nf>; consideration, fee <old>, **tip,** *pourboire* <Fr>, *Trinkgeld* <Ger>, sweetener, inducement; grease *and* salve *and* palm oil <nf>; **premium, bonus,** something extra, **gravy** <nf>, bunce <Brit nf>, lagniappe; baker's dozen; honorarium; incentive pay, time and a half, double time; bribe 378.2; slush fund

6 **donation,** donative; **contribution, subscription; alms,** pittance, **charity, dole, handout** <nf>, alms fee, widow's mite; Peter's pence; **offering,** offertory, votive offering, collection; tithe

7 **benefit,** benefaction, benevolence, **blessing, favor, boon,** grace; manna, manna from heaven

8 **subsidy,** subvention, subsidization, support, price support, depletion allowance, tax benefit *or* write-off; **grant,** grant-in-aid, bounty; **allowance, stipend,** allotment; **aid,** assistance, financial assistance, financial aid; **help,** pecuniary aid; scholarship, fellowship; honorarium; **welfare,** public welfare, public assistance, relief, relief *or* welfare payments, welfare aid, dole, aid to dependent children, bailout, food stamps, meal ticket; guaranteed annual income; alimony, palimony; annuity; pension, old-age insurance, retirement benefits, social security, remittance; unemployment insurance; golden handcuffs; handout <nf>

9 **endowment,** investment, **settlement,** foundation; fund; charitable foundation; **dowry,** *dot* <Fr>, portion, marriage portion; **dower,** widow's dower; jointure, legal jointure, thirds; appanage; community chest; charity event, fund-raiser, telethon

10 **bequest,** bequeathal, **legacy,** devise; inheritance 479.2; **will, testament,** last will and testament, living will; probate, attested copy; codicil

11 **giver, donor,** donator, gifter <nf>, presenter, bestower, conferrer, grantor, awarder, imparter, vouchsafer; fairy godmother, Lady Bountiful, Santa Claus, Robin Hood, sugar daddy <nf>; cheerful giver; **contributor, subscriber,** supporter, backer, financer, funder, angel <nf>; subsidizer; patron, patroness, Maecenas; tither; almsgiver, almoner; **philanthropist** 143.8, humanitarian; assignor, consignor; settler; testate, testator, testatrix; feoffor; good neighbor, good Samaritan

VERBS 12 **give, present, donate,** slip <nf>, let have; **bestow, confer, award, allot, render,** bestow on; impart, let one know, communicate; **grant,** accord, **allow,** vouchsafe, yield, afford, make available; **tender,** proffer, offer, extend, come up with <nf>; **issue, dispense,** administer; serve, help to; distribute; deal, dole, mete; **give out, deal out, dole out, mete out, hand** *or* dish *or* shell out <nf>, fork out *or* over *or* up <nf>; make a present of, gift *or* gift with <nf>, give as a gift; **give generously,** give the shirt off one's back; be generous *or* liberal with, give freely; pour, shower, rain, snow, heap, lavish 486.3; give in addition *or* as lagniappe, give into the bargain

13 **deliver, hand, pass,** reach, forward, render, put into the hands of; transfer; **hand over,** give over, deliver over, fork over <nf>, **pass over, turn over,** come across with <nf>; hand out, give out, pass out, distribute, circulate; hand in, give in; **surrender,** resign

14 **contribute, subscribe, chip in** *and* kick in *and* pony up *and* pay up <nf>, give one's share *or* fair share; put oneself down for, pledge; contribute to, give to, **donate to,** gift *and* gift with <nf>; put something in the pot, sweeten the kitty

15 **furnish, supply, provide, afford,** provide for; **make available to,** put one in the way of; **accommodate with,** favor with, indulge with; **heap upon,** pour on, shower down upon, **lavish upon**

16 **commit, consign, assign, delegate,** relegate, confide, commend, remit, remand, give in charge; **entrust,** trust, give in trust; enfeoff, infeudate

17 **endow,** invest, vest; endow with, favor with, bless with, grace with, vest with; **settle on** *or* **upon; dower;** philanthropize, aid, benefit, relieve

18 **bequeath, will,** will and bequeath, **leave, devise, will to,** hand down, hand on, pass on, transmit, provide for; **make a will,** draw up a will, execute a will, make a bequest, write one's last will and testament, write into one's will; add a codicil; entail

19 **subsidize, finance,** bankroll *and* greenback <nf>, fund; angel <nf>; **aid, assist, support, help,** pay the bills, pick up the check *or* tab *and* spring for *and* pop for <nf>; pension, pension off

20 **thrust upon, force upon, press upon,** push upon, obtrude on, ram *or* cram down one's throat

21 **give away,** dispose of, part with, sacrifice, spare

ADJS 22 philanthropic, philanthropical, eleemosynary, **charitable** 143.15; giving, generous to a fault, liberal, **generous** 485.4; openhanded

23 **giveable,** presentable, bestowable; impartable, communicable; bequeathable, devisable; allowable; committable; fundable

24 **given,** allowed, accorded, granted, vouchsafed, bestowed, etc; gratuitous 634.5; God-given, providential

25 donative, contributory; concessive; testate, testamentary; intestate

26 **endowed,** dowered, subsidized, invested; dower, dowry, dotal; subsidiary, stipendiary, pensionary

ADVS 27 as a gift, gratis, on one, on the house, free; to his heirs, to the heirs of his body, to his heirs and assigns, to his executors *or* administrators and assigns

479 RECEIVING

NOUNS 1 **receiving, reception,** receival, **receipt, getting, taking; acquisition** 472; derivation; **assumption, acceptance;** admission, admittance; **reception** 187

2 **inheritance,** heritance <old>, **heritage, patrimony, birthright, legacy, bequest,** bequeathal; reversion; entail; heirship; **succession,** line of succession, mode of succession, law of succession; primogeniture, ultimogeniture, postremogeniture, borough-English, coheirship, coparcenary, gavelkind; hereditament, corporeal *or* incorporeal hereditament; **heritable; heirloom**

3 **recipient, receiver,** accepter, getter, taker, acquirer, obtainer, procurer; payee, endorsee; addressee, consignee; holder, trustee; **hearer,** viewer, beholder, audience, auditor, listener, looker, spectator; the receiving end; charity case; receiver of stolen property, fence <nf>

4 **beneficiary,** allottee, **donee, grantee,** patentee; **assignee, assign; devisee, legatee,** legatary <old>; trustee; feoffee; almsman, almswoman; stipendiary; pensioner, pensionary; annuitant

5 **heir,** heritor, inheritor, *heres* <L>; **heiress,** inheritress, inheritrix; coheir, joint heir, fellow heir, coparcener; heir expectant; **heir apparent,** apparent heir; **heir presumptive,** presumptive heir; statutory next of kin; legal heir, heir at law, heir general; heir by destination; heir of the body; heir in tail, heir of entail; fideicommissary heir, fiduciary heir; reversioner; remainderman; **successor,** next in line

VERBS 6 **receive, get, gain, secure,** have, come by, be in receipt of, be on the receiving end; **obtain, acquire** 472.8,9; **admit, accept, take,** take off one's hands; **take in** 187.10; assume, take on, take over; **derive, draw,** draw *or* derive from; have an income of, drag down *and* pull down *and* rake in <nf>, have coming in, take home; accept stolen property, fence <nf>

7 **inherit,** be heir to, **come into,** come in for, come by, fall *or* step into; step into the shoes of, succeed to

8 **be received, come in,** come to hand, pass *or* fall into one's hands, go into one's pocket, come *or* fall to one, fall to one's share *or* lot; **accrue,** accrue to

ADJS 9 **receiving,** on the receiving end; **receptive,** recipient 187.16

10 **received, accepted, admitted, recognized, approved**

480 TAKING

NOUNS 1 **taking,** possession, taking possession, taking away; **claiming,** staking one's claim; **acquisition** 472; **reception** 479.1; **theft** 482; bumming *or* mooching <nf>

2 **seizure, seizing, grab,** grabbing, snatching, snatch; **kidnapping, abduction,** forcible seizure; power grab <nf>, coup, coup d'état, seizure of power; hold 474.2; **catch,** catching; **capture,** collaring <nf>, nabbing <nf>; **apprehension,** prehension; **arrest,** arrestation, taking into custody; picking up *and* taking in *and* running in <nf>; dragnet

3 **sexual possession,** taking; sexual assault, ravishment, **rape,** violation, indecent assault, date rape *or* acquaintance rape, serial rape *or* gang bang <nf>; statutory rape; defloration, deflowerment, devirgination

4 **appropriation, taking over, takeover** <nf>, **adoption, assumption, usurpation,** arrogation; requisition, indent <Brit>; preoccupation, prepossession, preemption; **conquest,** occupation, subjugation, enslavement, colonization; infringement of copyright, plagiarism

5 **attachment, annexation,** annexure <Brit>; **confiscation,** sequestration; impoundment; **commandeering, impressment;** expropriation, nationalization, socialization, communalization, communization, collectivization; levy; distraint, distress; garnishment; execution; eminent domain, angary, right of eminent domain, right of angary

6 **deprivation, deprival,** privation, divestment, bereavement; relieving, disburdening, disburdenment; curtailment, abridgment <old>; disentitlement

7 **dispossession,** disseisin, expropriation; reclaiming, repossessing, **repossession,** foreclosure; **eviction**

909.2; disendowment; **disinheritance,** disherison, disownment

8 **extortion, shakedown** <nf>, **blackmail,** bloodsucking, vampirism; protection racket; badger game

9 **rapacity,** rapaciousness, ravenousness, sharkishness, wolfishness, **predaciousness,** predacity; pillaging, looting

10 **take, catch, bag,** capture, seizure, **haul;** booty 482.11; hot property

11 **taker;** partaker; **catcher, captor,** capturer; appropriator, expropriator

12 **extortionist,** extortioner, **blackmailer,** racketeer, shakedown artist <nf>, **bloodsucker,** leech, **vampire; predator,** raptor, bird of prey, beast of prey; harpy; **vulture,** shark; profiteer; rack-renter; kidnapper, abductor

VERBS 13 **take,** possess, take possession; **get,** get into one's hold *or* possession; pocket, palm; draw off, drain off; skim *and* skim off *and* take up front <nf>; **claim,** stake one's claim, enforce one's claim; partake; **acquire** 472.8,9; **receive** 479.6; **steal** 482.13

14 **seize,** take *or* get hold of, **lay hold of,** catch *or* grab hold of, glom *or* latch on to <nf>, **get** *or* **lay hands on,** clap hands on <nf>, put one's hands on, get into one's grasp *or* clutches; get one's fingers *or* hands on, get between one's finger *and* thumb; **grab, grasp, grip,** gripe <old>, **grapple, snatch,** snatch up, nip, nail <nf>, **clutch,** claw, clinch, clench; **clasp, hug, embrace;** snap up, nip up, whip up, catch up; pillage, loot; take by assault *or* storm; **kidnap, abduct,** snatch <nf>, carry off; shanghai; take by the throat, throttle

15 **possess sexually,** take; **rape,** commit rape, commit date *or* acquaintance rape, ravish, violate, assault sexually, lay violent hands on, have one's will of; deflower, deflorate, devirginate

16 **seize on** *or* **upon,** fasten upon; spring *or* pounce upon, jump <nf>, swoop down upon; **catch at, snatch at,** snap at, jump at, make a grab for, scramble for

17 **catch, take,** catch flatfooted, land *and* nail <nf>, hook, **snag, snare,** sniggle, spear, harpoon; ensnare, enmesh, entangle, tangle, foul, tangle up with; **net,** mesh; **bag,** sack; **trap,** entrap; lasso, rope, noose

18 **capture, apprehend, collar** <nf>, run down, run to earth, **nab** <nf>, grab <nf>, lay by the heels, take prisoner; **arrest,** place *or* put under arrest, take into custody; pick up *or* take in *or* run in <nf>

19 **appropriate, adopt, assume, usurp,** arrogate, accroach; requisition, indent <Brit>; **take possession of,** possess oneself of, take for oneself, arrogate to oneself, take up, **take over, help oneself to,** make use of, make one's own, make free with, dip one's hands into; take it all, take all of, hog <nf>, monopolize, sit on; preoccupy, prepossess, preempt; jump a claim; **conquer,** overrun, occupy, subjugate, enslave, colonize; squat on; bum *or* mooch <nf>

20 **attach, annex; confiscate,** sequester, sequestrate, impound; **commandeer,** press, **impress;** expropriate, nationalize, socialize, communalize, communize, collectivize; exercise the right of eminent domain, exercise the right of angary; levy, distrain, replevy, replevin; garnishee, garnish

21 **take from,** take away from, **deprive of,** do out of <nf>, relieve of, disburden of, lighten of, ease of; **deprive, bereave, divest;** tap, milk, mine, drain, bleed, curtail, abridge <old>; cut off; disentitle

22 **wrest,** wring, wrench, **rend,** rip; **extort, exact,** squeeze, screw, **shake down** <nf>, **blackmail,** levy blackmail, badger *and* play the badger game <nf>; **force from, wrest from, wrench from, wring from, tear from, rip from, rend from,** snatch from, pry loose from

23 **dispossess,** disseise, expropriate, foreclose; evict 909.15; disendow; **disinherit,** disherison, **disown,** cut out of one's will, **cut off,** cut off with a shilling, cut off without a cent

24 **strip,** strip bare *or* clean, **fleece** <nf>, **shear,** denude, skin *and* pluck <nf>, flay, **despoil, divest,** pick clean, pick the bones of; deplume, displume; **milk; bleed, bleed white;** exhaust, drain, dry, suck dry; **impoverish,** beggar; clean out *and* take to the cleaners <nf>; eat out of house *and* home

ADJS 25 **taking, catching;** private, deprivative; confiscatory, annexational, expropriatory; **thievish** 482.21; ripoff <nf>

26 **rapacious, ravenous,** ravening, vulturous, vulturine, sharkish, **wolfish,** lupine, predacious, **predatory,** raptorial; vampirish, **bloodsucking,** parasitic; **extortionate; grasping,** graspy, grabby <nf>, **insatiable** 100.27; all-devouring, all-engulfing

481 RESTITUTION

NOUNS 1 **restitution, restoration,** restoring, giving back, sending back, remitting, remission, **return;** reddition <old>; extradition, rendition; repatriation; recommitment, remandment, remand

2 **reparation, recompense,** paying back, squaring <nf>, repayment, reimbursement, refund, remuneration, **compensation, indemnification;** retribution, **atonement,** redress, satisfaction, **amends,** making good, **requital;** conscience money

3 **recovery,** regaining; **retrieval,** retrieve;

recuperation, recoup, recoupment; **retake,** retaking, recapture; **repossession,** resumption, reoccupation; **reclamation,** reclaiming; **redemption,** ransom, salvage, trover; replevin, replevy; **revival, restoration** 396, retro

VERBS **4** **restore, return, give back,** restitute, hand back, put back; take back, bring back; put the genie back into the bottle, put the toothpaste back into the tube; **remit,** send back; repatriate; extradite; recommit, remand; requite

5 **make restitution,** make reparation, **make amends,** make good, make up for, atone, give satisfaction, redress, **recompense,** pay back, square <nf>, repay, reimburse, refund, remunerate, **compensate, requite,** indemnify, make it up; pay damages, pay reparations; pay conscience money; overcompensate

6 **recover, regain, retrieve,** recuperate, **recoup, get back,** come by one's own; **redeem,** ransom; **reclaim; repossess,** resume, reoccupy; **retake,** recapture, take back; replevin, replevy; revive, renovate, **restore** 396.11,15

ADJS **7** **restitutive,** restitutory, **restorative;** compensatory, indemnificatory, retributive, reparative, reparatory; reversionary, reversional, revertible; redeeming, redemptive, redemptional; reimbursable

ADVS **8** **in restitution,** in reparation, in recompense, in compensation, to make up for, in return for, in retribution, in requital, in amends, in atonement, to atone for

482 THEFT

NOUNS **1** **theft, thievery,** stealage, **stealing,** thieving, **purloining;** swiping *and* lifting *and* snatching *and* snitching *and* pinching <nf>; conveyance <old>, **appropriation,** conversion, liberation *and* annexation <nf>; **pilfering,** pilferage, **filching,** scrounging <nf>; abstraction; sneak thievery; shoplifting, boosting <nf>; poaching; **graft; embezzlement** 389.1; **fraud, swindle** 356.8

2 **larceny,** petit *or* petty larceny, petty theft, grand larceny, grand theft, simple larceny, mixed *or* aggravated larceny; automobile theft

3 **theft, robbery,** robbing; bank robbery; banditry, highway robbery; **armed robbery, holdup,** assault *and* robbery, **mugging,** push-in job *or* crime; purse snatching; **pocket picking** *or* pick-pocketing, jostling; **hijacking,** asportation <old>; carjacking; cattle stealing, **cattle rustling** *and* cattle lifting <nf>; **extortion** 480.8

4 <nf terms> **heist, stickup,** job, stickup job, bag job, boost, hustle, pinch, swipe, lift, burn, knockover, **ripoff;** sticky fingers

5 **burglary,** burglarizing, housebreaking, **breaking and entering,** break and entry, break-in, unlawful entry; second-story work <nf>; safebreaking, **safecracking, safeblowing**

6 **plundering, pillaging, looting, sacking,** freebooting, ransacking, rifling, spoiling, **despoliation,** despoilment, despoiling; rapine, spoliation, depredation, direption <old>, **raiding,** ravage, ravaging, ravagement, rape, ravishment; **pillage, plunder,** sack; brigandage, brigandism, banditry; **marauding,** foraging; raid, foray, razzia

7 **piracy, buccaneering, privateering, freebooting;** letters of marque, letters of marque and reprisal; **air piracy,** airplane hijacking, skyjacking; carjacking

8 **plagiarism,** plagiarizing, plagiary, **piracy,** literary piracy, appropriation, borrowing, cribbing; infringement; infringement of copyright; autoplagiarism; cribbing <nf>

9 **abduction, kidnapping, snatching** <nf>; **shanghaiing,** impressment, crimping

10 **grave-robbing,** body-snatching <nf>, resurrectionism

11 **booty,** spoil, **spoils, loot, swag** <nf>, ill-gotten gains, **plunder,** prize, haul, take, pickings, stealings, stolen goods, hot goods *or* items <nf>; **boodle** *and* squeeze *and* **graft** <nf>; perquisite, perks <Brit nf>, pork barrel, spoils of office, public trough; till, public till; blackmail; hot property

12 **thievishness,** larcenousness, taking ways <nf>, light fingers, sticky fingers; kleptomania, bibliokleptomania, etc

VERBS **13** **steal, thieve, purloin, appropriate, take,** snatch, palm, **make off with,** walk off with, run off *or* away with, abstract, disregard the distinction between *meum* and *tuum;* have one's hand in the till; **pilfer, filch;** shoplift; poach; rustle; **embezzle** 389.4; defraud, swindle; **extort** 480.22

14 **rob,** commit robbery; pick pockets, jostle; hold up, stick someone up

15 **burglarize,** burgle <nf>, commit burglary, housebreak; crack *or* blow a safe

16 <nf terms> **swipe, pinch,** bag, **lift,** hook, crib, **cop,** nip, snitch, snare, boost, annex, borrow, burn, clip, **rip off,** nick *and* nobble <Brit>; **heist, knock off** *or* **over,** tip over; **stick up; mug;** roll, jackroll; do a job; cook the books

17 **plunder, pillage, loot, sack,** ransack, rifle, freeboot, spoil, spoliate, despoil, depredate, prey on *or* upon, **raid,** reive <Scot>, ravage, ravish, raven, sweep, gut; **fleece** 480.24; maraud, foray, forage

18 **pirate,** buccaneer, privateer, freeboot

19 **plagiarize, pirate,** borrow *and* crib <nf>, appropriate; **pick one's brains;** infringe a copyright

20 **abduct,** abduce, spirit away, **carry off** *or* **away,** magic away <Brit>, run off *or* away with; **kidnap,** snatch <nf>, hold for ransom; skyjack, hijack, carjack; **shanghai,** crimp, impress

ADJS 21 **thievish, thieving, larcenous, light-fingered, sticky-fingered;** kleptomaniacal, burglarious; brigandish, piratical, piratelike; fraudulent

22 **plunderous, plundering, looting,** pillaging, ravaging, marauding, spoliatory; predatory, predacious

23 **stolen,** pilfered, purloined, ripped off; pirated, plagiarized; hot <nf>

483 THIEF

NOUNS 1 **thief, robber,** stealer, purloiner, lifter <nf>, *ganef* <Yiddish>, **crook** <nf>; larcenist, larcener; **pilferer, filcher,** petty thief, chicken thief; sneak thief, prowler; shoplifter, booster <nf>; poacher; **grafter,** petty grafter; jewel thief; **swindler,** con man 357.3,4; land pirate, land shark, land-grabber; grave robber, body snatcher, resurrectionist, ghoul; embezzler, peculator, white-collar thief; den of thieves

2 **pickpocket,** cutpurse, fingersmith *and* dip <nf>; **purse snatcher;** light-fingered gentry

3 **burglar,** yegg *and* cracksman <nf>; housebreaker, cat burglar, cat man, second-story thief *or* worker; **safecracker,** safebreaker, safeblower; pete blower *or* pete man *or* peterman <nf>

4 **bandit, brigand,** dacoit; **gangster** *and* mobster <nf>, goodfella <nf>; racketeer; **thug, hoodlum** 593.4

5 **robber, holdup man** *and* stickup man <nf>; highwayman, highway robber, footpad, road agent, bushranger <Austral>; **mugger** <nf>, sandbagger; train robber; bank robber, **hijacker** <nf>

6 **plunderer, pillager, looter, marauder,** rifler, sacker, spoiler, despoiler, spoliator, depredator, **raider,** moss-trooper, free-booter rapparee, reiver <Scot>, forayer, forager, ravisher, ravager; wrecker

7 **pirate, corsair, buccaneer, privateer,** sea rover, rover, picaroon; viking, sea king; Blackbeard, Captain Kidd, Jean Lafitte, Henry Morgan; Captain Hook, Long John Silver; air pirate, airplane hijacker, skyjacker; hijacker, carjacker; record pirate, video pirate, bootlegger

8 cattle thief, abactor, rustler *and* cattle rustler <nf>; poacher

9 **plagiarist,** plagiarizer, cribber <nf>, **pirate,** literary pirate, copyright infringer

10 **abductor, kidnapper; shanghaier,** snatcher *and* baby-snatcher <nf>; crimp, crimper

11 <famous thieves> Barabbas, Robin Hood, Jesse James, Clyde Barrow, John Dillinger, Claude Duval, Jack Sheppard, Willie Sutton, Dick Turpin, Jonathan Wild; Autolycus, Macheath, Thief of Baghdad, Jean Valjean, Jimmy Valentine, Raffles, Bill Sikes

484 PARSIMONY

NOUNS 1 **parsimony,** parsimoniousness; frugality 635.1; **stinting, pinching, scrimping,** skimping, cheeseparing; economy, economy of means, economy of assumption, law of parsimony, Ockham's razor, elegance

2 **niggardliness,** penuriousness, **meanness,** minginess, shabbiness, sordidness

3 **stinginess, ungenerosity, illiberality, cheapness, chintziness** *and* tightness *and* narrowness <nf>, tight purse strings, nearness, closeness, closefistedness, closehandedness <old>, tightfistedness, hardfistedness, **miserliness,** penny-pinching, hoarding; **avarice** 100.8

4 **niggard, tightwad** *and* **cheapskate** <nf>, **miser,** hard man with a buck <nf>, **skinflint,** scrooge, penny pincher, moneygrubber <nf>, pinchfist, pinchgut <old>, churl, curmudgeon <old>, muckworm, save-all <nf>, Harpagon, Silas Marner

VERBS 5 **stint, scrimp, skimp, scamp,** scant, screw, **pinch,** starve, famish; **pinch pennies,** rub the print off a dollar bill, rub the picture off a nickel; live upon nothing; grudge, begrudge

6 **withhold,** hold back, hold out on <nf>

ADJS 7 **parsimonious, sparing,** cheeseparing, **stinting, scamping, scrimping,** skimping; frugal 635.6; too frugal, overfrugal, frugal to excess; penny-wise, penny-wise and pound-foolish

8 **niggardly,** niggard, pinchpenny, penurious, **grudging, mean,** mingy, shabby, sordid

9 **stingy, illiberal, ungenerous, chintzy, miserly,** save-all, **cheap** *and* **tight** *and* narrow <nf>, **near, close, closefisted,** closehanded <old>, tightfisted, pinchfisted, hardfisted; near as the bark on a tree; pinching, **penny-pinching; avaricious** 100.27

ADVS 10 **parsimoniously,** stintingly, scrimpingly, skimpingly

11 **niggardly, stingily,** illiberally, ungenerously, closefistedly, tightfistedly; meanly, shabbily, sordidly

485 LIBERALITY

NOUNS 1 **liberality,** liberalness, freeness, freedom; **generosity,** generousness, largeness, **unselfishness, munificence,** largess, charity; bountifulness, bounteousness, **bounty;** hospitality, welcome, graciousness; **openhandedness,** freehandedness, open *or* free hand, easy purse strings; **givingness;** open-heartedness, bigheartedness, largeheartedness, greatheartedness, freeheartedness; open heart, big *or* large *or* great heart, heart of gold; **magnanimity** 652.2

2 **cheerful giver,** free giver; contributor; Lady Bountiful; Santa Claus; philanthropist

VERBS 3 **give freely,** give cheerfully, give with an open hand, give with both hands, put one's hands in one's pockets, open the purse, loosen *or* untie the purse strings; **spare no expense,** spare nothing, not count the cost, let money be no object; **heap upon,** lavish upon, shower down upon; give the coat *or* shirt off one's back, give more than one's share, **give until it hurts;** give of oneself, give of one's substance, not hold back, offer oneself; tip well; keep the change!

ADJS 4 **liberal, free,** free with one's money, free-spending; **generous, munificent,** large, princely, handsome; **unselfish,** ungrudging; **unsparing, unstinting,** stintless, unstinted; **bountiful,** bounteous, **lavish,** profuse; hospitable, gracious; **openhanded,** freehanded, open; **giving;** openhearted, **bighearted,** largehearted, greathearted, freehearted; **magnanimous** 652.6

ADVS 5 **liberally, freely; generously, munificently,** handsomely; **unselfishly,** ungrudgingly; **unsparingly, unstintingly; bountifully,** bounteously, **lavishly,** profusely; hospitably, graciously; **openhandedly,** freehandedly; openheartedly, bigheartedly, largeheartedly, greatheartedly, freeheartedly; with open hands, with both hands, with an unsparing hand, without stint

486 PRODIGALITY

NOUNS 1 **prodigality, overliberality,** overgenerousness, overgenerosity; profligacy, **extravagance,** pound-foolishness, recklessness, reckless spending *or* expenditure, overspending, frittering away; incontinence, intemperance 669; lavishness, profuseness, profusion; **wastefulness, waste; dissipation, squandering,** squandermania; *carpe diem* <L>; slack *or* loose purse strings, leaking purse; conspicuous consumption *or* waste; splurge, spree

2 **prodigal, wastrel,** waster, **squanderer; spendthrift,** wastethrift, spender, spendall, big spender <nf>; Diamond Jim Brady; prodigal son; last of the big spenders

VERBS 3 **squander, lavish,** slather, blow <nf>, play ducks and drakes with; **dissipate,** scatter <old>, sow, broadcast, scatter to the winds, fritter away; **run through,** go through; **throw away,** throw one's money away, throw money around, **spend money like water,** hang the expense, let slip *or* flow through one's fingers, spend as if money grew on trees, spend money as if it were going out of style, spend like a drunken sailor; gamble away; burn the candle at both ends; seize the day, live for the day, let tomorrow take care of itself

4 **waste, consume, spend, expend, use up, exhaust;** deplete, drain, suck dry, milk dry; misuse, abuse; lose; spill, pour down the drain *or* rathole; pour water into a sieve, cast pearls before swine, kill the goose that lays the golden egg, *manger son blé en herbe* <Fr>, throw out the baby with the bathwater; waste effort, labor in vain

5 **fritter away,** fool away, fribble away, dribble away, drivel away, **trifle away,** dally away, potter away, piss away <nf>, muddle away, diddle away <nf>, squander in dribs and drabs; idle away, while away

6 **misspend,** misapply, **throw good money after bad,** throw the helve after the hatchet, throw out the baby with the bathwater, cast pearls before swine

7 **overspend,** spend more than one has, spend what one hasn't got; overdraw, overdraw one's account, live beyond one's means, have champagne tastes on a beer budget

ADJS 8 **prodigal, extravagant, lavish,** profuse, **overliberal,** overgenerous, overlavish, **spendthrift, wasteful,** profligate, dissipative; incontinent, intemperate 669.7; pound-foolish, penny-wise and pound-foolish; easy come, easy go

9 **wasted, squandered, dissipated,** consumed, spent, used, lost; **gone to waste,** run *or* gone to seed; down the drain *or* spout *or* rathole <nf>; misspent

487 CELEBRATION

NOUNS 1 **celebration,** celebrating; **observance,** formal *or* solemn *or* ritual observance, **solemnization;** marking *or* honoring the occasion; **commemoration,** memorialization, remembrance, memory; jubilee; red-letter day, **holiday** 20.4; anniversaries; **festivity** 743.3,4; **revel** 743.6; rejoicing 116; **ceremony,** rite 580.4; religious rites 701; ovation, triumph; **tribute;** testimonial, testimonial banquet *or* dinner; toast; roast; **salute;** salvo; flourish of trumpets, fanfare, fanfaronade; dressing ship; high-five; binge *or* bender <nf>, blowout <nf>

VERBS 2 **celebrate, observe, keep, mark,** solemnly mark, **honor; commemorate,** memorialize; **solemnize,** signalize, hallow, mark with a red letter; hold jubilee, jubilize, jubilate, maffick <Brit nf>; **make merry;** binge <nf>; kill the fatted calf; sound a fanfare, blow the trumpet, beat the drum, fire a salute; dress ship; high-five

ADJS 3 **celebrative,** celebratory, celebrating;

commemorative, commemorating; memorial; solemn; festive, festal, gala

ADVS 4 **in honor of, in commemoration of,** in memory *or* remembrance of, to the memory of

488 HUMOROUSNESS

NOUNS 1 **humorousness, funniness,** amusingness, laughableness, laughability, hilarity, hilariousness; wittiness 489.2; **drollness,** drollery; **whimsicalness,** quizzicalness; **ludicrousness, ridiculousness, absurdity,** absurdness, quaintness, eccentricity, incongruity, bizarreness, bizarrerie; richness, pricelessness <nf>; the funny side

2 **comicalness,** comicality, funiosity; farcicalness, **farcicality,** slapstick quality, broadness

3 bathos; anticlimax, comedown

ADJS 4 **humorous, funny, amusing;** witty 489.15; **droll, whimsical,** quizzical; **laughable,** risible, good for a laugh; **ludicrous, ridiculous, hilarious, absurd,** quaint, eccentric, incongruous, bizarre

5 <nf terms> **funny ha-ha,** priceless, too funny *or* too killing for words, hardy-har *or* hardy-har-har *or* har-har-har, rich, hysterical

6 **comic** *or* **comical; farcical,** slapstick, broad; **burlesque** 508.14; tragicomic, serio-comic, mock-heroic

ADVS 7 **humorously, amusingly,** funnily, **laughably;** wittily 489.18; drolly, whimsically, quizzically; **comically,** farcically, broadly; **ludicrously, ridiculously, absurdly,** quaintly, eccentrically, incongruously, bizarrely

489 WIT, HUMOR

NOUNS 1 **wit, humor,** pleasantry, *esprit* <Fr>, salt, spice *or* savor of wit; Attic wit *or* salt, Atticism; ready wit, quick wit, nimble wit, agile wit, pretty wit; dry wit, dry humor, subtle wit; **comedy** 704.6; black humor, sick humor, gallows humor; **satire,** sarcasm, irony; Varonnian satire, Menippean satire; **parody, lampoon,** lampoonery, travesty, **caricature, burlesque,** squib, takeoff, spoof; **farce,** mere farce; **slapstick,** slapstick humor, broad humor; visual humor, cartoon, comic strip, the funnies

2 **wittiness, humorousness** 488, **funniness; facetiousness,** pleasantry, **jocularity,** jocoseness, jocosity; **joking,** japery, joshing <nf>; smartness, cleverness, brilliance; pungency, saltiness; keenness, sharpness; keen-wittedness, quick-wittedness, nimble-wittedness

3 **drollery,** drollness; **whimsicality,** whimsicalness, humorsomeness, antic wit

4 **waggishness, waggery;** roguishness 322.2; **playfulness,** sportiveness, **levity, frivolity,** flippancy, merriment 109.5; **prankishness,** pranksomeness; trickery, trickiness, tricksiness, trickishness

5 **buffoonery,** buffoonism, clownery, clowning, clowning around, harlequinade; **clownishness,** buffoonishness; **foolery,** fooling, **tomfoolery;** horseplay; shenanigans *and* monkey tricks *and* monkeyshines <nf>; **banter** 490

6 **joke, jest, gag** *and* one-liner <nf>, **wheeze,** jape; **fun, sport, play,** kidding; story, yarn, **funny story,** good story; dirty story *or* joke, blue story *or* joke, *double entendre* <Fr>; one-liner; shaggy-dog story; sick joke <nf>; ethnic joke; capital joke, good one, laugh, belly laugh, rib tickler, sidesplitter, thigh-slapper, howler, wow, hoot, scream, riot, panic; visual joke, sight gag <nf>; **point,** punch line, gag line, tag line; cream of the jest; jest-book

7 **witticism, pleasantry,** *plaisanterie* and *boutade* <Fr>; **play of wit,** *jeu d'esprit* <Fr>; **crack** *and* smart crack *and* **wisecrack** <nf>; **quip,** conceit, bright *or* happy thought, bright *or* brilliant idea; **mot, bon mot,** smart saying, stroke of wit, one-liner *and* zinger <nf>; epigram, turn of thought, aphorism, apothegm; flash of wit, scintillation; sound bite; **sally,** flight of wit; **repartee,** backchat, retort, riposte, snappy comeback <nf>; facetiae <pl>, quips *and* cranks; **gibe, dirty** *or* **nasty crack** <nf>; persiflage 490.1

8 **wordplay, play on words,** *jeu de mots* <Fr>, missaying, corruption, paronomasia, *calembour* <Fr>, abuse of terms; **pun,** punning; equivoque, equivocality; anagram, logogram, logogriph, metagram; acrostic, double acrostic; amphiboly, amphibologism; palindrome; spoonerism; malapropism

9 **old joke,** old wheeze *or* turkey, **trite joke,** hoary-headed joke, joke with whiskers; **chestnut** *and* corn *and* **corny joke** *and* oldie <nf>; Joe Miller, Joe Millerism; twice-told tale, retold story, warmed-over cabbage <nf>

10 **prank, trick, practical joke,** waggish trick, *espièglerie* <Fr>, antic, caper, frolic; **monkeyshines** *and* **shenanigans** <nf>, leg-pull

11 **sense of humor, risibility,** funny bone

12 **humorist, wit, funnyman, comic,** *bel-esprit* <Fr>, life of the party; **joker,** jokester, gagman <nf>, **jester, quipster, wisecracker** *and* gagster <nf>; wag, wagwit; zany, madcap, cutup <nf>; **prankster; comedian,** stand-up comic *or* comedian, banana <nf>, straight man; **clown** 707.10; punster, punner; epigrammatist; satirist, ironist; burlesquer, caricaturist, cartoonist, parodist, lampooner; reparteeist; witling; gag writer <nf>, jokesmith

VERBS 13 **joke, jest, wisecrack** *and* crack wise <nf>, utter a mot, **quip,** jape, josh <nf>, fun <nf>, make fun, **kid** *or* **kid around** <nf>; **make a funny** <nf>; **crack a joke,** get off a joke, tell a good story; pun, play on words; scintillate, sparkle; **make fun of,** gibe at, fleer at, mock, scoff at, poke fun at, send up, take off, lampoon, make the butt of one's humor, be merry with; ridicule 508.8

14 **trick, play a practical joke,** play tricks *or* pranks, **play a joke** *or* **trick on,** make merry with; **clown around,** pull a stunt *or* trick; pull one's leg *and* put one on <nf>

ADJS 15 **witty, amusing,** *spirituel* <Fr>; **humorous** 488.4,5, **comic, comical,** farcical 488.6; **funny; jocular,** joky <nf>, **joking, jesting, jocose, tongue-in-cheek; facetious,** joshing <nf>, **whimsical, droll,** humorsome; smart, clever, brilliant, scintillating, sparkling, sprightly; keen, sharp, rapier-like, pungent, pointed, biting, mordant; teasing; satiric, **satirical, sarcastic, ironic,** ironical; salty, salt, Attic; **keen-witted, quick-witted, nimble-witted,** dry-witted, smart

16 **clownish,** buffoonish

17 **waggish;** roguish 322.6; **playful, sportive; prankish,** pranky, pranksome; tricky, trickish, tricksy

ADVS 18 **wittily, humorously; jocularly, jocosely; facetiously; whimsically, drolly**

19 **in fun, in sport, in play, in jest,** in joke, as a joke, jokingly, jestingly, with tongue in cheek; for fun, for sport

490 BANTER

NOUNS 1 **banter, badinage, persiflage, pleasantry, fooling, fooling around, kidding** *and* **kidding around** <nf>, **raillery,** rallying, **sport,** good-natured banter, harmless teasing; ridicule 508; exchange, give-and-take; side-talk, **byplay,** asides; flyting, slanging, the dozens <nf>

2 **bantering, twitting, chaffing, joking, jesting,** japing, **fooling, teasing,** hazing; playing the dozens <nf>

3 <nf terms> **kidding,** joshing, jollying, jiving, fooling around; **ribbing,** ragging, razzing, **roasting**

4 **banterer,** *persifleur* <Fr>, **chaffer, twitter; kidder** *and* josher <nf>

VERBS 5 **banter, twit, chaff,** rally, **joke, jest,** jape, **tease,** haze; have a slanging match, play the dozens <nf>

6 <nf terms> **kid,** jolly, josh, fool around, jive, rub, put on; **razz, roast,** ride, needle

ADJS 7 **bantering, chaffing, twitting; jollying** *and* **kidding** and joshing, etc <nf>, **fooling, teasing,** quizzical

491 COWARDICE

NOUNS 1 **cowardice, cowardliness; fear** 127; **faintheartedness,** faintheart, weakheartedness, chickenheartedness, henheartedness, pigeonheartedness; **yellowness,** white-liveredness *and* lily-liveredness *and* chicken-liveredness <nf>, weak-kneedness; weakness, softness; unmanliness, unmanfulness; timidness, **timidity,** timorousness, milksoppiness, milksoppishness, milksopism

2 **uncourageousness, unvaliantness,** unvalorousness, unheroicness, ungallantness, unintrepidness; **plucklessness, spunklessness** *and* gritlessness *and* gutlessness *and* spinelessness <nf>, spiritlessness, heartlessness; defeatism

3 **dastardliness,** pusillanimousness, **pusillanimity, poltroonery,** poltroonishness, poltroonism, baseness, abjectness, **cravenness;** desertion under fire, bugout *and* skedaddling <nf>, lack of moral fiber

4 **cold feet** <nf>, weak knees, **faintheart,** chicken heart, **yellow streak** <nf>, white feather; gutlessness

5 **coward,** jellyfish, invertebrate, faintheart, **weakling,** weak sister <nf>, milksop, milquetoast, mouse, **sissy, wimp** <nf>, baby, **big baby, chicken** <nf>; namby-pamby; **yellow-belly,** *and* white-liver *and* lily-liver *and* chicken-liver <nf>, jellyfish, white feather; fraid-cat *and* **fraidy-cat** *and* scaredy-cat <nf>; funk *and* funker <nf>

6 **dastard, craven, poltroon,** recreant, caitiff, arrant coward; **sneak;** deserter

VERBS 7 **dare not; have a yellow streak** <nf>, **have cold feet** <nf>, be unable to say 'boo' to a goose

8 **lose one's nerve,** lose courage, **get cold feet** <nf>, **show the white feather;** falter, boggle, funk <nf>, **chicken** <nf>; put one's tail between one's legs, back out, funk out <nf>, **wimp** *or* **chicken out** <nf>, have no stomach for; desert under fire, turn tail, bug out *and* skedaddle <nf>, **run scared** <nf>, scuttle, retreat

9 **cower, quail, cringe, crouch, skulk, sneak, slink**

ADJS 10 **cowardly,** coward; **afraid, fearful** 127.32,34; timid, timorous, overtimorous, overtimid, rabbity *and* mousy <nf>; **fainthearted,** weakhearted, chicken-hearted, henhearted, pigeonhearted; white-livered *and* lily-livered *and* chicken-livered *and* milk-livered <nf>; **yellow** *and* yellow-bellied *and* with a yellow streak <nf>; **weak-kneed, chicken** <nf>, afraid of one's shadow; weak, soft; **wimpy** *or* wimpish <nf>, unmanly, unmanful, sissy, sissified; milksoppy, milksoppish; panicky, panic-prone, funking *and* funky <nf>; daunted, dismayed, unmanned, cowed, intimidated

11 **uncourageous, unvaliant, unvalorous, unheroic,**

ungallant, **unintrepid, undaring,** unable to say 'boo' to a goose; unsoldierlike, unsoldierly; **pluckless, spunkless** *and* gritless <nf>, gutless <nf>, spiritless, heartless

12 dastardly, dastard; hit-and-run; **poltroonish,** poltroon; **pusillanimous,** base, craven, recreant, caitiff; dunghill, dunghilly

13 cowering, quailing, cringing; skulking, sneaking, slinking, sneaky, slinky

ADVS **14 cravenly,** poltroonishly, like a coward, **cowardly, uncourageously,** unvaliantly, unvalorously, unheroically, ungallantly, unintrepidly, undaringly; plucklessly, spunklessly *and* gritlessly <nf>, spiritlessly, heartlessly; faintheartedly, weakheartedly, chickenheartedly; wimpishly

492 COURAGE

NOUNS **1 courage,** courageousness, **nerve,** pluck, **bravery,** braveness, ballsiness *and* gutsiness *or* guttiness <nf>, **boldness,** nerves of steel, **valor,** valorousness, valiance, valiancy, **gallantry,** conspicuous gallantry, gallantry under fire *or* beyond the call of duty, gallantness, **intrepidity,** intrepidness, **prowess,** virtue; doughtiness, stalwartness, stoutness, stoutheartedness, lionheartedness, greatheartedness; **heroism,** heroicalness; chivalry, chivalrousness, knightliness; military *or* martial spirit, fighting spirit, soldierly quality *or* virtues; **manliness,** manfulness, **manhood,** virility, machismo; Dutch courage <nf>, pot-valor, bold front, bravado

2 "fear holding on a minute longer"—George Patton, "taking hard knocks like a man when occasion calls"—Plautus

3 fearlessness, dauntlessness, **undauntedness, unfearfulness,** unfearingness, unafraidness, **unapprehensiveness; confidence** 970.5; untimidness, untimorousness, unshrinkingness, unshyness, unbashfulness

4 <nf terms> **balls, guts,** intestinal fortitude, spunk, brass balls, cojones, moxie, spizzerinctum, **backbone,** chutzpah

5 daring, derring-do, deeds of derring-do; **bravado,** bravura; **audacity,** audaciousness, overboldness; **venturousness,** venturesomeness, risk-taking, tightrope walking, funambulism; **adventurousness,** adventuresomeness, enterprise; foolhardiness 493.3

6 fortitude, hardihood, hardiness; **pluckiness; spunkiness** *and* grittiness *and* nerviness <nf>, mettlesomeness; **gameness,** gaminess; grit, **stamina,** toughness, pith <old>, **mettle,** bottom; heart, spirit, stout heart, heart of oak; **resolution** 359, resoluteness, tenaciousness, tenacity, pertinaciousness, pertinacity, bulldog courage, true grit, stiff upper lip

7 exploit, feat, deed, enterprise, achievement, adventure, act of courage, gest, **bold stroke,** heroic act *or* deed; prowess; heroics; aristeia

8 <brave person> **hero, heroine;** brave, stalwart, gallant, valiant, man *or* woman of courage *or* mettle, a man, valiant knight, good soldier, warrior, knight in shining armor; demigod, paladin; demigoddess; the brave; decorated hero; Hector, Achilles, Roland, David; lion, **tiger,** bulldog, fighting cock, gamecock; he-man; daredevil, stunt person

9 encouragement, heartening, inspiration, inspiriting, inspiritment, emboldening, assurance, reassurance, pat *or* clap on the back, bucking up

VERBS **10 dare, venture, make bold to,** make so bold as to, take risks, walk the tightrope, **have the nerve, have the guts** *or* the balls <nf>, have the courage of one's convictions, be a man; defy 454.3

11 brave, face, confront, affront, front, look one in the eye, say to one's face, **face up to,** meet, **meet head-on** *or* boldly, square up to, stand up to *or* against, go eyeball-to-eyeball *or* one-on-one with <nf>; set at defiance 454.4; speak up, speak out, stand up and be counted; not flinch *or* shrink from, bite the bullet <nf>, look full in the face, put a bold face upon, show *or* present a bold front; head into, face up, come to grips with, grapple with; face the music <nf>; **brazen,** brazen out *or* through; beard, "beard the lion in his den"—Sir Walter Scott; put one's head in the lion's mouth, fly into the face of danger, take the bull by the horns, march up to the cannon's mouth, bell the cat, go through fire and water, court disaster, go in harm's way, throw caution to the wind, run the gauntlet, take one's life in one's hands, put one's ass *or* life on the line <nf>

12 outbrave, outdare; outface, face down, face out; **outbrazen,** brazen out; **outlook, outstare,** stare down, stare out <Brit>, stare out of countenance

13 steel oneself, get up nerve, nerve oneself, muster *or* summon up *or* gather courage, pluck up heart, screw up one's nerve *or* courage, stiffen one's backbone <nf>

14 take courage, take heart, pluck up courage, take heart of grace; **brace** *or* **buck up** <nf>

15 keep up one's courage, bear up, **keep one's chin up** <nf>, keep one's pecker up <Brit nf>, **keep a stiff upper lip** <nf>, hold up one's head, take what comes; hang in *or* hang in there *or* hang tough *or* stick it out <nf>, stick to one's guns, grin and bear it

16 encourage, hearten, embolden, nerve, pat *or* clap on the back, **assure, reassure,** bolster, support, cheer on, root for; **inspire,** inspirit; incite, exhort; buck *or* brace up <nf>; put upon one's mettle, make a man of; cheer 109.7

ADJS **17 courageous, plucky, brave, bold, valiant, valorous, gallant, intrepid,** doughty, **hardy,** stalwart, stout, stouthearted, ironhearted, lionhearted, greathearted, bold-spirited, bold as a lion; **heroic,** herolike; **chivalrous,** chivalric, knightly, knightlike, soldierly, soldierlike; **manly,** manful, virile, macho

18 resolute, tough, game; spirited, spiritful, red-blooded, **mettlesome;** bulldoggish, tenacious, pertinacious

19 <nf terms> **ballsy,** gutsy, gutty, nervy, stand-up, dead game, gritty, spunky, nervy

20 unafraid, unfearing, unfearful; unapprehensive, undiffident; **confident** 970.21; **fearless, dauntless,** aweless, dreadless; **unfrightened,** unscared, unalarmed, unterrified; **untimid,** untimorous, unshy, unbashful

21 undaunted, undismayed, uncowed, unintimidated, unappalled, unabashed, unawed; **unflinching, unshrinking,** unquailing, unbowed, uncringing, unwincing, unblenching, unblinking

22 daring, audacious, overbold; **adventurous, venturous, venturesome,** adventuresome, enterprising; foolhardy 493.9

ADVS **23 courageously, bravely, boldly, heroically, valiantly,** valorously, **gallantly, intrepidly,** doughtily, stoutly, hardily, stalwartly; **pluckily, spunkily** <nf>, gutsily <nf>, **resolutely, gamely,** tenaciously, pertinaciously, bulldoggishly, **fearlessly,** unfearingly, unfearfully; **daringly,** audaciously; chivalrously, knightly, yeomanly; like a man, like a soldier

493 RASHNESS

NOUNS **1 rashness, brashness,** brazen boldness, **incautiousness,** overboldness, **imprudence, indiscretion,** injudiciousness, improvidence; irresponsibility; **unwariness,** unchariness; overcarelessness; overconfidence, oversureness, overweeningness; **impudence,** insolence 142; **gall** *and* brass *and* cheek *and* chutzpah <nf>; hubris; **temerity,** temerariousness; heroics

2 recklessness, devil-may-careness; heedlessness, **carelessness** 340.2; **impetuousness** 365.2, impetuosity, hotheadedness; **haste** 401, **hastiness,** hurriedness, overeagerness, overzealousness, overenthusiasm; **furiousness,** desperateness, wantonness, wildness, wild oats; frivolity; **precipitateness,** precipitousness, precipitance, precipitancy, precipitation

3 foolhardiness, harebrainedness; **audacity,** audaciousness; more guts than brains <nf>, *courage fou* <Fr>; forwardness, boldness, **presumption,** presumptuousness; **daring,** daredeviltry, daredevilry, fire-eating; playing with fire, flirting with death, courting disaster, stretching one's luck, going for broke <nf>, brinkmanship, tightrope walking, funambulism; adventurousness

4 daredevil, devil, **madcap,** madbrain, wild man, hotspur, hellcat, rantipole, harumscarum *and* fire-eater <nf>; **adventurer,** adventuress, adventurist; brazen-face

VERBS **5** be rash, be reckless, carry too much sail, sail too near the wind, throw caution to the wind, go out of one's depth, go too far, go to sea in a sieve, take a leap in the dark, buy a pig in a poke, count one's chickens before they are hatched, catch at straws, lean on a broken reed, put all one's eggs in one basket, live in a glass house; go out on a limb <nf>, leave oneself wide open <nf>, drop one's guard, stick one's neck out *and* ask for it <nf>

6 court danger, ask for it, ask for trouble, mock *or* defy danger, go in harm's way, thumb one's nose at the consequences, **tempt fate** *or* **the gods** *or* **Providence,** tweak the devil's nose, bell the cat, play a desperate game, ride for a fall; play with fire, flirt with death, stretch one's luck, march up to the cannon's mouth, put one's head in a lion's mouth, beard the lion in his den, sit on a barrel of gunpowder, sleep on a volcano, play Russian roulette, playing with a loaded pistol *or* gun, working without a net; **risk all,** go for broke *and* shoot the works <nf>

ADJS **7 rash, brash, incautious,** overbold, **imprudent, indiscreet,** injudicious, improvident; ill-considered; irresponsible; **unwary, unchary;** overcareless; overconfident, oversure, overweening, **impudent,** insolent, brazenfaced, brazen; hubristic; temerarious

8 reckless, devil-may-care; careless 340.11; **impetuous,** hotheaded; **hasty** 401.9, hurried, overeager, overzealous, overenthusiastic; **furious,** desperate, mad, wild, wanton, harum-scarum <nf>; precipitate, **precipitous, precipitant; headlong, breakneck;** slapdash, slap-bang; accident-prone; asking for it

9 foolhardy, harebrained, madcap, **wild,** wild-ass <nf>, madbrain, madbrained; **audacious;** forward, bold, **presumptuous; daring,** daredevil, risk-taking, fire-eating, death-defying; adventurous; frivolous, flippant

ADVS **10 rashly, brashly, incautiously, imprudently, indiscreetly,** injudiciously, improvidently; **unwarily,** uncharily; overconfidently, overweeningly,

impudently, insolently, **brazenly,** hubristically, temerariously

11 **recklessly,** happen what may; heedlessly, **carelessly** 340.18; **impetuously,** hotheadedly; **hastily,** hurriedly, overeagerly, overzealously, overenthusiastically; **furiously,** desperately, wildly, wantonly, **madly,** like mad *or* crazy *and* like there was no tomorrow <nf>; **precipitately,** precipitiously, precipitantly; **headlong,** headfirst, headforemost, **head over heels,** heels over head, *à corps perdu* <Fr>; slapdash, slap-bang *or* slam-bang <nf>; helter-skelter, ramble-scramble <nf>, hurry-scurry, holus-bolus

12 **foolhardily, daringly, audaciously,** presumptuously, harebrainedly

494 CAUTION

NOUNS 1 **caution, cautiousness;** slowness to act *or* commit oneself *or* make one's move; **care, heed, solicitude; carefulness, heedfulness,** mindfulness, regardfulness, thoroughness; paying mind *or* attention; **guardedness;** uncommunicativeness 344; **gingerliness, tentativeness,** hesitation, hesitancy, unprecipitateness; slow and careful steps, deliberate stages, wait-and-see attitude *or* policy; **prudence,** prudentialness, **circumspection, discretion,** canniness <Scot>; **coolness, judiciousness** 920.7; calculation, **deliberateness,** deliberation, careful consideration, prior consultation; **safeness,** safety first, no room for error; **hedge, hedging,** hedging one's bets, cutting one's losses

2 **wariness, chariness, cageyness** *and* **leeriness** <nf>; **suspicion,** suspiciousness; **distrust,** distrustfulness, mistrust, mistrustfulness; reticence, skepticism, second thoughts, reservation

3 **precaution,** precautiousness; **forethought, foresight,** foresightedness, forehandedness, forethoughtfulness; **providence,** provision, nest egg, forearming; precautions, steps, measures, steps and measures, preventive measure *or* step; **safeguard,** protection 1008, preventive measure, safety net, safety valve, sheet anchor; **insurance;** rainy-day policy; lemon law

4 **overcaution, overcautiousness, overcarefulness,** overwariness; unadventurousness

VERBS 5 **be cautious, be careful;** think twice, give it a second thought; make haste slowly, take it easy *or* slow <nf>; put the right foot forward, take one step at a time, pick one's steps, go step by step, feel one's ground *or* way; pussyfoot, tiptoe, go *or* walk on tiptoe, walk on eggs *or* eggshells *or* thin ice; pull *or* draw in one's horns; doubt, have second thoughts

6 **take precautions, take steps** *or* **measures,** take steps and measures; **prepare** *or* **provide for** *or* **against,** forearm; **guard against, make sure against,** make sure; **play safe** <nf>, anticipate; keep on the safe side; leave no stone unturned, forget *or* leave out nothing, overlook no possibility, leave no room *or* margin for error, leave nothing to chance, consider every angle; **look before one leaps;** see how the land lies *or* the wind blows, see how the cat jumps <nf>; clear the decks, batten down the hatches, shorten sail, reef down, tie in *or* tuck in *or* take in a reef, get out a sheet-anchor, have an anchor to windward; **hedge,** provide a hedge, hedge one's bets, cut one's losses; take out insurance; keep something for a rainy day; provide for

7 **beware, take care, have a care,** take heed, take heed at one's peril; keep at a respectful distance, keep out of harm's way; mind, mind one's business; **be on one's guard,** be on the watch *or* lookout, be on the *qui vive*; **look out, watch out** <nf>; **look sharp,** keep one's eyes open, keep a weather eye out *or* open <nf>, keep one's eye peeled <nf>, **watch one's step** <nf>, look about one, look over one's shoulder, keep tabs on <nf>; stop, look, and listen; not stick one's neck out <nf>, not go out on a limb <nf>, not expose oneself, not be too visible, **keep a low profile,** lie low, stay in the background, blend with the scenery; not blow one's cover <nf>; hold one's tongue 51.5

ADJS 8 **cautious, careful,** heedful, mindful, alert, regardful, **thorough; prudent, circumspect,** slow to act *or* commit oneself *or* make one's move, noncommittal, uncommitted; canny <Scot>; sly, crafty, scheming; **discreet, politic, judicious** 920.19, Polonian, Macchiavelian; unadventurous, unenterprising, undaring; **gingerly; guarded,** on guard, on one's guard; uncommunicative 344.8; **tentative,** hesistant, unprecipitate, cool; **deliberate;** safe, on the safe side, leaving no stone unturned, forgetting *or* leaving out nothing, overlooking no possibility, leaving no room *or* margin for error

9 **wary, chary, cagey** <nf>, **leery** <nf>, **suspicious,** suspecting, **distrustful,** mistrustful, shy; guarded, on guard

10 **precautionary,** precautious, precautional; **preventive,** preemptive, prophylactic; **forethoughtful,** forethoughted, **foresighted,** foreseeing, forehanded; **provident,** provisional; anticipatory

11 **overcautious, overcareful,** overwary, unadventurous

ADVS 12 **cautiously, carefully,** heedfully, mindfully, regardfully; **prudently, circumspectly,** cannily, pawkily <Brit>, **discreetly,** judiciously; **gingerly,** guardedly, easy <nf>, with caution, with care

13 **warily, charily,** cagily <nf>; **askance,** askant, suspiciously, leerily <nf>, distrustfully

INTERJS 14 careful!, be careful!, **take care!,** have a care!, **look out!, watch out!, watch your step!,** watch it!, take heed!, steady!, look sharp!, easy!, take it easy!, easy does it!, go easy!

495 FASTIDIOUSNESS

NOUNS 1 **fastidiousness, particularity,** particularness; **scrupulousness,** scrupulosity; punctiliousness, punctilio, spit and polish; preciseness, precision; **meticulousness, conscientiousness,** criticalness; taste 496; **sensitivity, discrimination** 944, discriminatingness, discriminativeness; **selectiveness,** selectivity, pickiness <nf>, choosiness; **strictness** 339.3, **perfectionism,** precisianism, **purism; puritanism, priggishness, prudishness, prissiness** <nf>, propriety, strait-lacedness, censoriousness, judgmentalness

2 **finicalness,** finickiness, finickingness, finicality; **fussiness,** pernicketiness *or* persnicketiness <nf>; squeamishness, queasiness

3 **nicety,** niceness, **delicacy,** delicateness, daintiness, exquisiteness, fineness, refinement, **subtlety**

4 overfastidiousness, **overscrupulousness, overparticularity, overconscientiousness,** overmeticulousness, overniceness, **overnicety; overcriticalness,** hypercriticism, hairsplitting; overrefinement, oversubtlety, supersubtlety; oversqueamishness, oversensitivity, hypersensitivity, morbid sensibility

5 **exclusiveness,** exclusivity, selectness, selectiveness, selectivity; **cliquishness,** clannishness; **snobbishness,** snobbery, snobbism

6 **perfectionist,** precisian, precisianist, stickler, nitpicker <nf>, captious critic 946.7

7 **fussbudget, fusspot** <nf>, fuss, fusser, **fuddy-duddy** <nf>, granny, old woman, old maid; Mrs Grundy

VERBS 8 **be hard to please,** want everything just so, **fuss,** fuss over; pick and choose; **turn up one's nose,** look down one's nose, disdain, scorn, spurn; not dirty *or* soil one's hands

ADJS 9 **fastidious, particular, scrupulous, meticulous, conscientious,** exacting, precise, punctilious, spit-and-polish; **sensitive, discriminating** 943.7, discriminative; **selective,** picky <nf>, choosy, choicy <nf>; critical; **strict** 339.12, perfectionistic, precisianistic, puristic; puritanic, puritanical, priggish, prudish, prissy, proper, strait-laced, censorious, judgmental

10 **finical, finicky,** finicking, finikin; **fussy,** fussbudgety <nf>; **squeamish,** pernickety *and* persnickety <nf>, difficult, hard to please

11 **nice, dainty, delicate,** *délicat* <Fr>, fine, refined, exquisite, **subtle**

12 **overfastidious,** queasy, **overparticular, overscrupulous, overconscientious,** overmeticulous, **overnice,** overprecise; **overcritical,** hypercritical, ultracritical, hairsplitting; overrefined, oversubtle, supersubtle; oversqueamish, oversensitive, hypersensitive, morbidly sensitive; **compulsive,** anal, anal-compulsive

13 **exclusive,** selective, **select,** elect, elite; **cliquish,** clannish; **snobbish,** snobby

ADVS 14 **fastidiously, particularly, scrupulously, meticulously, conscientiously,** critically, punctiliously; discriminatingly, discriminatively, selectively; **finically,** finickily, finickingly; **fussily; squeamishly,** queasily; refinedly, subtly

496 TASTE, TASTEFULNESS

NOUNS 1 **taste, good taste,** sound critical judgment, discernment *or* appreciation of excellence, preference for the best, *goût raffiné* <Fr>; **tastefulness,** quality, excellence, choiceness, **elegance,** grace, gracefulness, gracility, graciousness, graciosity, gracious living; propriety; **refinement,** finesse, **polish, culture, cultivation,** civilizedness, refined *or* cultivated *or* civilized taste, finish; niceness, nicety, delicacy, daintiness, **subtlety, sophistication; discrimination** 944, fastidiousness 495; acquired taste, connoisseurship, "caviare to the general"—Shakespeare; etiquette

2 "good sense delicately put in force"—Chévier, "the microscope of the judgment"—Rousseau

3 **decorousness, decorum,** decency, properness, propriety, rightness, right thinking, **seemliness,** becomingness, fittingness, fitness, appropriateness, suitability, meetness, happiness, felicity; gentility, genteelness; civility, urbanity 504.1

4 **restraint,** restrainedness, **understatement,** unobtrusiveness, quietness, subduedness, quiet taste; simplicity 499.1; subtlety

5 **aesthetic** *or* **artistic taste,** virtuosity, virtu, **expertise,** expertism, connoisseurship; dilettantism; fine art of living; epicurism, epicureanism; gastronomy, *friandise* <Fr>; aesthetics

6 **aesthete,** person of taste, lover of beauty

7 **connoisseur,** *connaisseur* <Fr>, *cognoscente* <Ital>; **judge,** good judge, **critic, expert,** authority, maven <nf>, arbiter, arbiter of taste, *arbiter*

elegantiarum <L>, tastemaker, trend-setter; **epicure,** epicurean; **gourmet, gourmand,** *bon vivant* <Fr>, good *or* refined palate; virtuoso; dilettante, amateur; culture vulture <nf>; collector; gentleperson

ADJS 8 **tasteful, in good taste,** in the best taste; excellent, of quality, of the best, of the first water; **aesthetic,** artistic, pleasing, well-chosen, choice, of choice; pure, chaste; classic *or* classical, Attic, restrained, understated, unobtrusive, conservative, quiet, subdued, simple, low-key, unaffected 499.7

9 **elegant,** graceful, gracile, gracious; **refined, polished, cultivated,** civilized, **cultured;** nice, fine, delicate, dainty, **subtle, sophisticated,** discriminating 943.7, fastidious 495.9, sensitive, U <nf>

10 **decorous,** decent, proper, right, right-thinking, **seemly, becoming,** fitting, appropriate, suitable, meet, happy, felicitous; genteel; civil, urbane 504.14

ADVS 11 **tastefully, with taste,** in good taste, in the best taste; aesthetically, artistically; elegantly, gracefully; decorously, genteelly, decently, properly, seemly, becomingly; quietly, unobtrusively; simply 499.10

497 VULGARITY

NOUNS 1 **vulgarity,** vulgarness, vulgarism, commonness, meanness; **inelegance** *or* inelegancy, **indelicacy, impropriety, indecency, indecorum,** indecorousness, unseemliness, unbecomingness, unfittingness, inappropriateness, unsuitableness, unsuitability; ungentility; **untastefulness,** tastelessness, unaestheticness, unaestheticism, tackiness; low *or* bad *or* poor taste, *mauvais goût* <Fr>; vulgar taste, bourgeois taste, Babbittry, philistinism; popular taste, pop culture *and* pop <nf>; campiness, camp, high *or* low camp; baseness, kitsch

2 **coarseness, grossness,** *grossièreté* <Fr>, **rudeness, crudeness,** crudity, **crassness,** rawness, roughness, **earthiness;** ribaldness, ribaldry; raunchiness <nf>, **obscenity** 666.4; meretriciousness, **loudness** <nf>, **gaudiness** 501.3

3 **unrefinement, uncouthness, uncultivation,** uncultivatedness, unculturedness; uncivilizedness, wildness; impoliteness, incivility, ill breeding 505.1; **barbarism,** barbarousness, barbarity, philistinism, Gothicism; **savagery,** savagism; **brutality,** brutishness, bestiality, animality, **mindlessness;** Neanderthalism, troglodytism

4 **boorishness, churlishness,** carlishness, **loutishness,** lubberliness, lumpishness, cloddishness, clownishness, yokelism; ruffianism, rowdyism, hooliganism; parvenuism, arrivism, upstartness; roughness

5 **commonness, commonplaceness,** ordinariness, homeliness; **lowness, baseness, meanness; ignobility,** plebeianism

6 **vulgarian,** low *or* vulgar *or* ill-bred fellow, mucker <nf>, guttersnipe <nf>, *épicier* <Fr>; Babbitt, Philistine, bourgeois; *parvenu* and *arriviste* and *nouveau riche* <Fr>, upstart; bounder <nf>, cad, **boor,** churl, clown, **lout,** yahoo, redneck <nf>, looby, peasant, groundling, yokel; rough, **ruffian,** roughneck <nf>, **rowdy,** hooligan; vulgarist, ribald; rascal, rapscallion; vulgus, hoi polloi, rabble, riffraff, great unwashed, scum, huddled masses

7 **barbarian, savage,** Goth, animal, brute; Neanderthal, troglodyte

8 vulgarization, coarsening; popularization; *haute vulgarisation* <Fr>; dumbing down <nf>

VERBS 9 vulgarize, coarsen; popularize; dumb down <nf>; pander; commercialize

ADJS 10 **vulgar, inelegant, indelicate, indecorous, indecent, improper, unseemly,** unbeseeming, unbecoming, unfitting, inappropriate, unsuitable, **ungenteel,** undignified, discourteous; **untasteful,** tasteless, in bad *or* poor taste, tacky *and* chintzy *and* Mickey Mouse <nf>, gauche, garish; **offensive,** offensive to gentle ears

11 **coarse, gross, rude, crude,** crass, raw, rough, **earthy;** ribald; raunchy <nf>, **obscene** 666.9; meretricious, **loud** <nf>, **gaudy** 501.20; cacological, solecistic

12 **unrefined, unpolished, uncouth,** unkempt, uncombed, unlicked; **uncultivated, uncultured; uncivilized,** noncivilized; impolite, uncivil, ill-bred 505.6; **wild,** untamed; **barbarous,** barbaric, barbarian, infra dig; outlandish, Gothic; primitive; **savage, brutal,** brutish, bestial, animal, **mindless;** Neanderthal, troglodytic; wild-and-woolly, rough-and-ready

13 **boorish, churlish,** carlish, **loutish,** redneck <nf>, lubberly, lumpish, cloddish, clownish, loobyish, yokelish; rowdy, **rowdyish, ruffianly,** roughneck <nf>, hooliganish, raffish, raised in a barn

14 **common, commonplace, ordinary;** plebeian; homely, homespun; **general, public, popular,** pop <nf>; vernacular; Babbittish, Philistine, bourgeois; campy, high-camp, low-camp, kitschy

15 **low, base, mean, ignoble,** vile, scurvy, sorry, scrubby, beggarly; low-minded, base-minded

ADVS 16 **vulgarly, uncouthly, inelegantly,** indelicately, indecorously, indecently, improperly, unseemly, untastefully, offensively; **coarsely, grossly, rudely, crudely,** crassly, roughly; ribaldly

498 ORNAMENTATION

NOUNS **1 ornamentation, ornament; decoration,** decor; **adornment, embellishment,** embroidery, elaboration; nonfunctional addition *or* adjunct; garnish, garnishment, garniture; trimming, trim; flourish; emblazonment, emblazonry; illumination; **color,** color scheme, color pattern, color compatibility, color design, color arrangement; **arrangement,** flower arrangement, floral decoration, furniture arrangement; table setting *or* decoration; window dressing; **interior decoration** *or* decorating, room decoration, interior design; feng shui; **redecoration, refurbishment** 396.4, redoing

2 ornateness, elegance, fanciness, fineness, **elaborateness; ostentation** 501; richness, luxuriousness, luxuriance; **floweriness,** floridness, floridity; dizenment <old>, **bedizenment; gaudiness, flashiness** 501.3; flamboyance *or* flamboyancy, chi-chi; **overelegance,** overelaborateness, overornamentation, busyness; clutteredness; baroqueness, baroque, rococo, arabesque, moresque, chinoiserie

3 finery, frippery, gaudery, gaiety, bravery, trumpery, folderol, trickery, chiffon, trappings, festoons, superfluity; **frills,** frills and furbelows, bells and whistles *and* gimmickry *and* Mickey Mouse *and* glitz <nf>, **frillery,** frilling, frilliness; foofaraw <nf>, fuss <nf>, froufrou; gingerbread; tinsel, clinquant, pinchbeck, paste; gilt, gilding

4 trinket, gewgaw, **knickknack** *or* nicknack, knack <old>, **gimcrack,** kickshaw, doodad, whim-wham, **bauble,** fribble, bibelot, toy, gaud; bric-a-brac; sequin

5 jewelry, bijouterie, ice <nf>; costume jewelry, glass, paste, junk jewelry <nf>

6 jewel, bijou, **gem,** stone, precious stone; rhinestone; pin, brooch, stickpin, breastpin, scatter pin, chatelaine; cuff-link, tie clasp *or* clip, tie bar, tiepin *or* scarfpin, tie tack *or* tie tac; **ring,** band, wedding band, engagement ring, mood ring, signet ring, school *or* class ring, circle, earring, nose ring; bracelet, wristlet, wristband, armlet, anklet; chain, necklace, torque; locket; beads, chaplet, wampum; bangle; charm; fob; crown, coronet, diadem, tiara; laurel

7 motif, ornamental motif, **figure, detail,** form, touch, repeated figure; **pattern, theme,** design, ornamental theme, ornamental *or* decorative composition; foreground detail, background detail; **background,** setting, foil, **style,** ornamental *or* decorative style, national style, **period style**

VERBS **8 ornament, decorate, adorn, dress, trim, garnish,** array, **deck,** bedeck, dizen <old>, bedizen; prettify, **beautify; redecorate,** refurbish, redo; gimmick *or* glitz *or* sex up <nf>; **embellish, furbish,** embroider, enrich, grace, set off *or* out, paint, color, blazon, emblazon, paint in glowing colors; **dress up; spruce up** *and* gussy up *and* doll up *and* fix up <nf>, **primp up,** prink up, prank up, trick up *or* out, deck out, bedight <old>, fig out; primp, prink, prank, preen; smarten, smarten up, dandify, titivate, give a face lift

9 figure, filigree; **spangle, bespangle;** bead; tinsel; jewel, bejewel, gem, diamond; ribbon, beribbon; flounce; flower, garland, wreathe; feather, plume; flag; illuminate; paint 35.13; engrave

ADJS **10 ornamental, decorative,** adorning, embellishing

11 ornamented, adorned, decorated, embellished, bedecked, decked out, tricked out, garnished, trimmed, dizened <old>, bedizened; figured; flowered; festooned, befrilled, wreathed; spangled, bespangled, spangly; jeweled, bejeweled; beaded; studded; plumed, feathered; beribboned

12 ornate, elegant, fancy, fine, chichi, pretty-pretty; picturesque; **elaborate,** overornamented, overornate, overelegant; etc; labored, high-wrought; **ostentatious** 501.18; glitzy, flashy; **rich, luxurious,** luxuriant; **flowery,** florid; flamboyant, fussy, frilly, frilled, flouncy, gingerbread *or* gingerbready; **overelegant,** overelaborate, overlabored, overworked, overwrought, overornamented, busy; cluttered; **baroque,** rococo, arabesque, moresque, gilded; gimmicked- *or* glitzed- *or* sexed-up <nf>

499 PLAINNESS

<*unaffectedness*>

NOUNS **1 plainness, simplicity** 798, **simpleness, ordinariness, commonness, commonplaceness,** homeliness, prosaicness, prosiness, matter-of-factness; **purity,** chasteness, classic *or* classical purity, Attic simplicity

2 naturalness, inartificiality; **unaffectedness,** unassumingness, **unpretentiousness;** directness, straightforwardness; innocence, naïveté

3 unadornment, unembellishment, unadornedness, unornamentation; **no frills,** no nonsense, back-to-basics; **uncomplexity,** uncomplication, uncomplicatedness, **unsophistication,** unadulteration; bareness, baldness, nakedness, nudity, undress, beauty unadorned

4 inornateness, unelaborateness, unfanciness, unfussiness; **austerity,** severity, starkness, Spartan simplicity

VERBS **5 simplify** 798.4; chasten, restrain, purify; put in words of one syllable, spell out

ADJS 6 **simple** 798.6, **plain, ordinary, nondescript, common, commonplace, prosaic,** prosy, **matter-of-fact, homely, homespun,** everyday, vanilla <nf>, conventional, workday, workaday, household, garden, common- *or* garden-variety; pure, **pure and simple,** chaste, classic *or* classical, Attic

7 **natural,** native; **inartificial,** unartificial; **unaffected, unpretentious,** unpretending, unassuming, unfeigning, direct, straightforward, honest, candid; innocent, naive

8 **unadorned, undecorated, unornamented, unembellished,** ungarnished, unfurbished, unvarnished, untrimmed; olde *and* olde-worlde <nf>; back-to-basics, no-frills, no-nonsense, vanilla *or* plain-vanilla *and* white-bread *or* white-bready <nf>; back-to-nature; **uncomplex,** uncomplicated, **unsophisticated,** unadulterated; **undressed,** undecked, unarrayed; bare, bald, blank, naked, nude

9 **inornate,** unornate, **unelaborate,** unfancy, unfussy; austere, monkish, cloistral, severe, stark, Spartan

ADVS 10 **plainly, simply,** ordinarily, commonly, commonplacely, prosaically, matter-of-factly

11 **unaffectedly, naturally,** unpretentiously, unassumingly, directly, straightforwardly

500 AFFECTATION

NOUNS 1 **affectation, affectedness; pretension, pretense, airs,** pretentiousness, putting on airs, put-on <nf>; **show, false show,** mere show; front, false front <nf>, **facade,** mere facade, **image,** public image; feigned belief, **hypocrisy** 354.6; phoniness <nf>, sham 354.3; artificiality, unnaturalness, insincerity; prunes and prisms, airs and graces; stylishness, mannerism

2 **mannerism,** *minauderie* <Fr>, **trick of behavior,** trick, **quirk,** habit, peculiarity, peculiar trait, idiosyncrasy, trademark

3 **posing, pose, posturing,** attitudinizing, attitudinarianism; peacockery, peacockishness; pompousness; putting on airs

4 **foppery, foppishness, dandyism,** coxcombry, puppyism, conceit

5 **overniceness,** overpreciseness, **overrefinement, elegance,** exquisiteness, preciousness, preciosity; goody-goodyism *and* goody-goodness <nf>; purism, formalism, formality, pedantry, precisionism, precisianism; euphuism; euphemism

6 **prudery, prudishness, prissiness, priggishness, primness, smugness, stuffiness** <nf>, old-maidishness, **straitlacedness,** stiff-neckedness, hidebound, narrowness, censoriousness, sanctimony, sanctimoniousness, **puritanism,** puritanicalness; **false modesty,** overmodesty, demureness, *mauvaise honte* <Fr>

7 **phony** *and* **fake** *and* **fraud** <nf> 354.13; affecter; mannerist; **pretender,** actor, playactor <nf>, performer; paper tiger, hollow man, straw man, man of straw, empty suit <nf>

8 **poser, poseur,** striker of poses, **posturer,** posturist, posture maker, attitudinarian, attitudinizer, bluffer

9 **dandy, fop,** coxcomb, macaroni, gallant, dude *and* swell *and* sport <nf>, ponce *and* toff <Brit nf>, exquisite, blood, fine gentleman, puppy, jackanapes, jack-a-dandy, fribble, clotheshorse, fashion plate; beau, Beau Brummel, spark, blade, ladies' man, lady-killer <nf>, masher, cocksman <nf>; man-about-town, boulevardier

10 **fine lady,** *grande dame* and *précieuse* <Fr>; belle, toast

11 **prude, prig,** priss, puritan, bluenose, goody-goody <nf>, wowser <Brit nf>, old maid; Victorian, mid-Victorian

VERBS 12 **affect, assume, put on,** assume *or* put on airs, wear, **pretend, simulate, counterfeit, sham, fake** <nf>, **feign,** make out like <nf>, make a show of, play, playact <nf>, act *or* play a part, play a scene, do a bit <nf>, put up a front <nf>, dramatize, histrionize, show off, play to the gallery, lay it on thick <nf>, overact, ham *and* ham it up *and* chew up the scenery *and* emote <nf>, tug at the heartstrings

13 **pose, posture, attitudinize,** peacock, strike a pose, strike an attitude, pose for effect

14 **mince,** mince it, prink <Brit nf>; **simper,** smirk, bridle

ADJS 15 **affected, pretentious,** la-di-da, posy <Brit nf>; mannered, *maniéré* <Fr>; **artificial, unnatural,** insincere; theatrical, stagy, histrionic; overdone, overacted, hammed up <nf>

16 **assumed, put-on, pretended,** simulated, **phony** *and* **fake** *and* **faked** <nf>, feigned, counterfeited; spurious, sham; deceptive, specious; hypocritical

17 **foppish, dandified,** dandy, coxcombical, conceited, chichi, pompous

18 <affectedly nice> **overnice,** overprecise, precious, *précieuse* <Fr>, exquisite, **overrefined, elegant,** mincing, simpering, namby-pamby; **goody-goody** *and* goody good-good <nf>; puristic, formalistic, pedantic, precisionistic, precisian, precisianistic, euphuistic, euphemistic

19 **prudish, priggish, prim, prissy, smug, stuffy** <nf>, old-maidish, **overmodest,** demure, **straitlaced,** stiff-necked, hide-bound, narrow, censorious, po-faced <Brit>, sanctimonious, **puritanical,** Victorian, mid-Victorian

ADVS 20 **affectedly, pretentiously;** elegantly, mincingly; for effect, for show

21 **prudishly, priggishly,** primly, smugly, stuffily <nf>, straitlacedly, stiffneckedly, puritanically

501 OSTENTATION

NOUNS 1 **ostentation,** ostentatiousness, ostent; **pretentiousness, pretension, pretense;** loftiness, lofty affectations, **triumphalism**

2 **pretensions,** vain pretensions; **airs,** lofty airs, airs and graces, vaporing, highfalutin *or* highfaluting ways <nf>, side, swank <nf>, delusions of grandeur

3 **showiness, flashiness,** flamboyance, panache, dash, jazziness <nf>, jauntiness, sportiness <nf>, gaiety, glitter, glare, dazzle, dazzlingness; extravaganza; **gaudiness,** gaudery, glitz *and* gimmickry *and* razzmatazz *and* razzledazzle <nf>, **tawdriness,** meretriciousness; gorgeousness, colorfulness; loudness <nf>, **blatancy,** flagrancy, shamelessness, brazenness, luridness, extravagance, sensationalism, obtrusiveness, vulgarness, crudeness, extravagation

4 **display, show, demonstration,** manifestation, **exhibition, parade,** *étalage* <Fr>; **pageantry,** pageant, **spectacle,** gala; vaunt, fanfaronade, blazon, flourish, flaunt, flaunting; daring, brilliancy, éclat, bravura, flair; dash *and* splash *and* splurge <nf>; figure; showmanship, **exhibitionism,** showing-off, fuss and feathers; theatrics, histrionics, dramatics, staginess, camp; false front, **sham** 354.3

5 **grandeur,** grandness, grandiosity, **magnificence,** gorgeousness, **splendor,** splendidness, splendiferousness, resplendence, brilliance, glory; nobility, proudness, **state, stateliness, majesty;** impressiveness, imposingness; **sumptuousness, elegance, elaborateness, lavishness, luxuriousness;** ritziness *or* poshness *or* plushness *or* swankness *or* swankiness <nf>; **luxury,** barbaric *or* Babylonian splendor

6 **pomp,** circumstance, pride, **state,** solemnity, formality; **pomp and circumstance,** "pride, pomp, and circumstance"—Shakespeare; heraldry

7 **pompousness, pomposity,** pontification, pontificality, **stuffiness** <nf>, **self-importance,** inflation; grandiloquence, bombast, turgidity, orotundity

8 **swagger, strut,** swank <nf>, bounce, brave show; swaggering, strutting; swash, **swashbucklery,** swashbuckling, swashbucklering; peacockishness, peacockery

9 **stuffed shirt** <nf>, blimp <nf>, Colonel Blimp; bloated aristocrat

10 **strutter, swaggerer,** swanker <Brit>, swash, swasher, **swashbuckler,** peacock, miles gloriosus

11 **show-off** <nf>, **exhibitionist,** flaunter; **grandstander** *or* grandstand player *or* hot dog *or* **hotshot** *or* showboat <nf>

VERBS 12 **put** *or* **thrust oneself forward,** come forward, step to the front *or* fore, step into the limelight, take center stage, attract attention, make oneself conspicuous

13 **cut a dash,** make a show, put on a show, make one's mark, cut a swath, cut *or* **make a figure;** make a splash *or* a splurge <nf>; **splurge** *and* splash <nf>; shine, glitter, glare, dazzle

14 **give oneself airs, put on airs,** put on, put on side, put on the dog <nf>, put up a front <nf>, put on the ritz *and* ritz it <nf>, look big, **swank** <nf>, swell, swell it, act the grand seigneur; pontificate, play the pontiff

15 **strut, swagger,** swank <Brit>, prance, stalk, peacock, swash, swashbuckle

16 **show off** <nf>, **grandstand** *and* hotdog *and* showboat <nf>, play to the gallery *or* galleries <nf>, please the crowd, ham it up; exhibit *or* parade one's wares <nf>, strut one's stuff <nf>, go through one's paces, show what one has

17 **flaunt,** vaunt, **parade, display, demonstrate,** manifest, make a great show of, **exhibit,** air, put forward, put forth, hold up, flash *and* sport <nf>; advertise; **flourish,** brandish, wave; dangle, dangle before the eyes; emblazon, blazon forth; trumpet, trumpet forth

ADJS 18 **ostentatious, pretentious,** posy <Brit nf>; **ambitious,** vaunting, **lofty, highfalutin** *and* highfaluting <nf>, **high-flown,** high-flying; **high-toned,** tony <nf>, **fancy,** classy *or* glitzy *or* flossy <nf>

19 **showy, flaunting, flashy,** snazzy, flashing, glittering, **jazzy** *and* **glitzy** *and* gimmicky *and* splashy *and* splurgy <nf>; camp; exhibitionistic, showoffy <nf>, bravura; **gay,** jaunty, rakish, **dashing;** gallant, brave, daring; **sporty** *or* dressy <nf>; **frilly, flouncy,** frothy, chichi

20 **gaudy, tawdry;** gorgeous, colorful; **garish, loud** <nf>, **blatant, flagrant,** shameless, **brazen,** brazenfaced, lurid, extravagant, sensational, **spectacular,** glaring, flaring, flaunting, screaming <nf>, obtrusive, vulgar, crude; meretricious, low-rent *and* low-ride *and* tacky <nf>

21 **grandiose, grand, magnificent, splendid,** splendiferous, splendacious <nf>, **glorious,** superb, fine, superfine, fancy, superfancy, swell <nf>; **imposing, impressive,** larger-than-life, awful, awe-inspiring, awesome; **noble, proud, stately, majestic,** princely; **sumptuous, elegant, elaborate, luxurious,** luxuriant, extravagant, deluxe; executive *and* plush *and* posh *and* ritzy *and* swank *and* swanky <nf>, Corinthian; palatial, Babylonian

22 **pompous, stuffy** <nf>, **self-important,** impressed with oneself, pontific, pontifical; **inflated, swollen,** bloated, tumid, turgid, flatulent, gassy <nf>, stilted; grandiloquent, **bombastic** 545.9; solemn 111.3, formal

23 **strutting, swaggering;** swashing, **swashbuckling,** swashbucklering; peacockish, peacocky; too big for one's britches

24 **theatrical, theatric, stagy, dramatic, histrionic;** spectacular

ADVS 25 **ostentatiously, pretentiously, loftily;** with flourish of trumpet, with beat of drum, with flying colors

26 **showily, flauntingly,** flashily, with a flair, glitteringly; gaily, jauntily, **dashingly;** gallantly, bravely, daringly

27 **gaudily, tawdrily;** gorgeously, colorfully; **garishly, blatantly, flagrantly,** shamelessly, **brazenly,** brazenfacedly, luridly, sensationally, **spectacularly,** glaringly, flaringly, obtrusively

28 **grandiosely, grandly, magnificently, splendidly,** splendiferously, splendaciously <nf>, gloriously, superbly; nobly, proudly, majestically; imposingly, impressively; **sumptuously, elegantly,** elaborately, luxuriously, **extravagantly;** palatially

29 **pompously, pontifically,** stuffily <nf>, **self-importantly;** stiltedly; **bombastically** 545.12

502 BOASTING

NOUNS 1 **boasting, bragging,** vaunting; **boastfulness, braggadocio, braggartism; boast, brag,** vaunt; side, bombast, bravado, vauntery, fanfaronade, blowing-off *or* blowing *or* tooting one's own horn <nf>, gasconade, gasconism, rodomontade; bluster, swagger 503.1; vanity, conceit 140.4; jactation, jactitation; heroics

2 <nf terms> **big talk,** fine talk, fancy talk, tall talk, highfalutin *or* highfaluting, **hot air,** gas, bunk, bunkum, **bullshit;** tall story, fish story

3 **self-approbation,** self-praise, self-laudation, self-gratulation, self-applause, self-boosting, self-puffery, self-vaunting, self-advertising, self-advertisement, self-adulation, self-glorification, self-dramatizing, self-dramatization, self-promoting, self-promotion; **vainglory,** vaingloriousness

4 **crowing,** exultation, elation, triumph, jubilation; **gloating**

5 **braggart, boaster,** brag, braggadocio, exaggerator, hector, fanfaron, Gascon, gasconader, miles gloriosus; **blowhard** *and* blower *and* big mouth *and* bullshitter *and* bullshit artist *and* hot-air artist *and* gasbag *and* windbag *and* big bag of wind *and* windjammer *and* windy <nf>; blusterer 503.2, panjandrum; Texan, Fourth-of-July orator; Braggadocchio <Spenser>, Captain Bobadil <Ben Jonson>, Thraso <Terence>, Parolles <Shakespeare>

VERBS 6 **boast, brag,** make a boast of, vaunt, flourish, gasconade, vapor, puff, draw the longbow, advertise oneself, **blow one's own trumpet, toot one's own horn,** sing one's own praises, exaggerate one's own merits; bluster, swagger 503.3; speak for Buncombe

7 <nf terms> **blow,** blow off, mouth off, **blow hard, talk big,** sound off, blow off *and* toot *or* blow one's own horn, **bullshit,** shoot the shit, spread oneself, lay it on thick, brag oneself up

8 **flatter oneself,** conceit oneself, **congratulate oneself,** hug oneself, shake hands with oneself, form a mutual admiration society with oneself, **pat oneself on the back,** take merit to oneself; think one's shit doesn't stink <nf>

9 **exult,** triumph, glory, delight, joy, jubilate; **crow** *or* crow over, crow like a rooster *or* cock; **gloat,** gloat over

ADJS 10 **boastful, boasting, braggart, bragging,** thrasonical, thrasonic, big-mouthed <nf>, vaunting, vaporing, gasconading, Gascon, fanfaronading, fanfaron; vain, pompous, conceited 140.11; **vainglorious**

11 **self-approving,** self-approbatory, self-praising, self-gratulating, self-boosting, self-puffing, self-adulating, self-adulatory, self-glorifying, self-glorying, self-glorious, self-lauding, self-laudatory, self-congratulatory, self-applauding, self-flattering, self-vaunting, self-advertising, self-dramatizing, self-promoting

12 **inflated, swollen, windy** *and* gassy <nf>, **bombastic,** high-swelling, **high-flown, highfalutin** *and* highfaluting <nf>, **pretentious,** extravagant, big, tall <nf>, hyped <nf>

13 **crowing,** exultant, exulting, elated, elate, jubilant, **triumphant, flushed,** cock-a-hoop, in high feather; **gloating**

ADVS 14 **boastfully,** boastingly, braggingly, vauntingly, vaingloriously; **self-approvingly,** self-praisingly, etc

15 **exultantly,** exultingly, elatedly, jubilantly, triumphantly, triumphally, in triumph; **gloatingly**

503 BLUSTER

NOUNS 1 **bluster,** blustering, hectoring, bullying, **swagger,** swashbucklery, side; **bravado,** rant, rodomontade, fanfaronade; sputter, splutter; fuss, bustle, fluster, flurry; bluff, bluster and bluff; intimidation 127.6; **boastfulness** 502.1

2 **blusterer, swaggerer,** swasher, swashbuckler,

fanfaron, bravo, **bully,** bullyboy, bucko, roisterer, cock of the walk, vaporer, blatherskite <nf>; ranter, raver, hectorer, hector, Herod; slanger <Brit>; bluff, bluffer; **braggart** 502.5

VERBS **3** **bluster,** hector; **swagger,** swashbuckle; bully; bounce, vapor, roister, rollick, gasconade, kick up a dust <nf>; sputter, splutter; rant, rage, rave, rave on, storm, "out-herod Herod"—Shakespeare; slang <Brit>; bluff, bluster and bluff, put up a bluff <nf>; intimidate; shoot off one's mouth, sound off, **brag** 502.6

ADJS **4** **blustering,** blustery, blusterous, hectoring, **bullying, swaggering,** swashing, swashbuckling, boisterous, roisterous, roistering, rollicking; ranting, raging, raving, storming; tumultuous; noisy, "full of sound and fury"—Shakespeare

504 COURTESY

NOUNS **1** **courtesy,** courteousness, common courtesy, **politeness, civility,** *politesse* <Fr>, amenity, agreeableness, urbanity, comity, affability; graciousness, **gracefulness;** complaisance; **thoughtfulness, considerateness** 143.3, **tactfulness,** tact, consideration, **solicitousness, solicitude; respect,** respectfulness, deference; civilization, quality of life

2 **gallantry,** gallantness, **chivalry,** chivalrousness, knightliness; courtliness, courtly behavior *or* politeness; *noblesse oblige* <Fr>

3 **mannerliness, manners, good manners,** excellent *or* exquisite manners, good *or* polite deportment, good *or* polite behavior, *bienséance* <Fr>; *savoir-faire* and *savoir-vivre* <Fr>; decency; correctness, correctitude, **etiquette** 580.3

4 **good breeding, breeding; refinement, finish, polish, culture, cultivation; gentility,** gentleness, genteelness, elegance; gentlemanliness, gentlemanlikeness, ladylikeness

5 **suavity, suaveness, smoothness, smugness,** blandness; **unctuousness,** oiliness, oleaginousness, smarm *or* smarminess <nf>; **glibness,** slickness <nf>, fulsomeness; sweet talk, fair words, soft words *or* tongue, sweet *or* honeyed words *or* tongue, incense; soft soap *and* butter <nf>

6 **courtesy, civility,** amenity, urbanity, attention, polite act, act of courtesy *or* politeness, graceful gesture, pleasantry; old-fashioned courtesy *or* civility, courtliness

7 **amenities, courtesies, civilities,** gentilities, graces, elegancies; dignities; formalities, ceremonies, rites, rituals, observances

8 **regards, compliments, respects,** *égards* and *devoirs* <Fr>; **best wishes,** one's best, good wishes, best regards, kind *or* kindest regards, love, best love; greetings 585.3; remembrances, kind remembrances; compliments of the season

9 **gallant, cavalier,** chevalier, **knight**

10 "the very pink of courtesy"—Shakespeare, "the very pineapple of politeness"—R B Sheridan

VERBS **11** **mind one's manners,** mind one's P's and Q's <nf>; keep a civil tongue in one's head; mend one's manners; observe etiquette, observe *or* follow protocol; be polite, be considerate

12 **extend courtesy, do the honors, pay one's respects, make one's compliments,** present oneself, pay attentions to, do service, wait on *or* upon

13 **give one's regards** *or* **compliments** *or* love, give one's best regards, give one's best, send one's regards *or* compliments *or* love; wish one joy, wish one luck, bid Godspeed

ADJS **14** **courteous, polite, civil, urbane, gracious,** graceful, agreeable, affable, fair; complaisant; obliging, accommodating; **thoughtful, considerate,** tactful, solicitous; respectful, deferential, attentive

15 **gallant, chivalrous,** chivalric, knightly; **courtly; formal,** ceremonious; old-fashioned, old-world

16 **mannerly, well-mannered,** good-mannered, **well-behaved,** well- *or* fair-spoken; **correct,** correct in one's manners *or* behavior; housebroken <nf>

17 **well-bred,** highbred, **well-brought-up; cultivated, cultured, polished, refined, genteel,** gentle; gentlemanly, gentlemanlike, ladylike

18 **suave, smooth, smug,** bland, **glib, unctuous,** oily, oleaginous, smarmy <nf>, soapy *and* buttery <nf>, fulsome, ingratiating, disarming; suave-spoken, fine-spoken, fair-spoken, soft-spoken, smooth-spoken, smooth-tongued, oily-tongued, honey-tongued, honey-mouthed, sweet-talking

ADVS **19** **courteously, politely, civilly,** urbanely, mannerly; **gallantly, chivalrously,** courtly, knightly; **graciously,** gracefully, with a good grace; complaisantly, complacently; out of consideration *or* courtesy; obligingly, accommodatingly; respectfully, attentively, deferentially

505 DISCOURTESY

NOUNS **1** **discourtesy,** discourteousness; **impoliteness,** unpoliteness; **rudeness, incivility,** inurbanity, **ungraciousness, ungallantness,** uncourtesy, uncourtliness, ungentlemanliness, **unmannerliness,** mannerlessness, bad *or* ill manners, **ill breeding,** conduct unbecoming a gentleman, caddishness; inconsiderateness, inconsideration, unsolicitousness, unsolicitude, tactlessness, **insensitivity; grossness, crassness,** gross *or* crass behavior, **boorishness, vulgarity, coarseness, crudeness,** offensiveness, loutishness, nastiness

2 disrespect, disrespectfulness 156.1; **insolence** 142

3 **gruffness, brusqueness,** *brusquerie* <Fr>, **curtness,** shortness, sharpness, abruptness, bluntness, brashness; **harshness,** roughness, severity; truculence, aggressiveness; **surliness,** crustiness, bearishness, beastliness, churlishness

ADJS 4 **discourteous,** uncourteous; **impolite,** unpolite, inurbane; **rude, uncivil, ungracious, ungallant,** uncourtly, inaffable, uncomplaisant, unaccommodating; disrespectful; **insolent**

5 **unmannerly,** unmannered, mannerless, **ill-mannered, ill-behaved,** ill-conditioned, bad-mannered

6 **ill-bred, ungenteel,** ungentle, caddish; **ungentlemanly,** ungentlemanlike; **unladylike,** unfeminine; **vulgar, boorish, unrefined** 497.12, **inconsiderate, unsolicitous, tactless, insensitive; gross,** offensive, crass, **coarse, crude,** loutish, nasty

7 **gruff, brusque, curt,** short, sharp, snippy <nf>, abrupt, **blunt,** bluff, brash, cavalier; **harsh,** rough, severe; truculent, aggressive; **surly,** crusty, bearish, beastly, churlish; vituperative

ADVS 8 **discourteously, impolitely, rudely,** uncivilly, ungraciously, ungallantly, ungenteelly, caddishly; inconsiderately, unsolicitously, tactlessly, insensitively

9 **gruffly, brusquely, curtly,** shortly, sharply, snippily <nf>, abruptly, bluntly, bluffly, brashly, cavalierly; harshly, crustily, bearishly, churlishly, **boorishly,** nastily

506 RETALIATION

NOUNS 1 **retaliation, reciprocation,** exchange, interchange, give-and-take; **retort, reply,** return, comeback <nf>; counter, counterblow, counterstroke, counterblast, counterpunch, recoil, boomerang, backlash

2 **reprisal, requital, retribution; recompense, compensation** 338, **reward,** comeuppance <nf>, desert, deserts, **just deserts,** what is merited, what is due *or* condign, what's coming to one *and* a dose of one's own medicine <nf>; quittance, return of evil for evil; **revenge** 507; **punishment** 604

3 **tit for tat, measure for measure,** like for like, quid pro quo, something in return, blow for blow, a Roland for an Oliver, a game two can play, **an eye for an eye,** a tooth for a tooth, "eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot"—Bible, law of retaliation *or* equivalent retaliation, *lex talionis* <L>, talion; game at which two can play

VERBS 4 **retaliate, retort,** counter, **strike back,** hit back at <nf>, give in return; **reciprocate,** give in exchange, give and take; **get** *or* **come back at** <nf>, turn the tables upon; fight fire with fire, return the compliment

5 **requite,** quit, make requital *or* reprisal *or* retribution, get satisfaction, recompense, compensate, make restitution, indemnify, reward, redress, make amends, **repay,** pay, **pay back,** pay off; **give one his comeuppance** <nf>, give one his desserts *or* just desserts, serve one right, give one what is coming to him <nf>

6 **give in kind,** cap, match, give as good as one gets *or* as was sent; repay in kind, **pay one in one's own coin** *or* **currency, give one a dose of one's own medicine** <nf>; return the like, return the compliment; return like for like, **return evil for evil;** return blow for blow, **give one tit for tat,** give a quid pro quo, give as good as one gets, give measure for measure, give *or* get an eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth, follow *or* observe the *lex talionis* <L>

7 **get even with** <nf>, even the score, **settle** *or* **settle up with, settle** *or* **square accounts** *and* settle the score *and* fix <nf>, pay off old scores, pay back in full measure, be *or* make quits; fix one's wagon <nf>, **take revenge** 507.4; **punish** 604.10,11

ADJS 8 **retaliatory,** retaliative; **retributive,** retributory; reparative, compensatory, restitutive, recompensing, recompensive, reciprocal; punitive; recriminatory, like for like; revengeful, vindictive

ADVS 9 **in retaliation, in exchange,** in reciprocation; **in return,** in reply; **in requital, in reprisal,** in retribution, in reparation, in amends; **in revenge,** *en revanche* <Fr>

PHRS 10 what goes around comes around, one's chickens come home to roost; the shoe is on the other foot

507 REVENGE

NOUNS 1 **revenge, vengeance, avengement,** sweet revenge, getting even, evening of the score; **wrath;** revanche, revanchism; **retaliation, reprisal** 506.2; vendetta, feud, blood feud; the wrath of God

2 **revengefulness, vengefulness, vindictiveness,** rancor, grudgefulness, irreconcilableness, unappeasableness, implacableness, implacability

3 **avenger, vindicator;** revanchist; Nemesis, the Furies, the Erinyes, the Eumenides

VERBS 4 **revenge, avenge, take** *or* **exact revenge,** have one's revenge, wreak one's vengeance; **retaliate, even the score, get even with** 506.4–7; launch a vendetta

5 **harbor revenge,** breathe vengeance; have accounts to settle, have a crow to pick *or* pluck *or* pull with; nurse one's revenge, brood over, dwell on *or* upon, keep the wound open, wave the bloody shirt

6 **reap** *or* **suffer** *or* **incur vengeance** *or* revenge; sow the wind and reap the whirlwind; live by the sword and die by the sword

ADJS 7 **revengeful, vengeful,** avenging; **vindictive,** vindicatory; revanchist; **punitive,** punitory; **wrathful,** rancorous, grudgeful, irreconcilable, unappeasable, implacable, unwilling to forgive and forget, unwilling to let bygones be bygones; **retaliatory** 506.8

508 RIDICULE

NOUNS 1 **ridicule, derision, mockery, raillery,** rallying, chaffing; panning *and* razzing *and* roasting *and* ragging <nf>, **scoffing, jeering, sneering,** snickering, sniggering, smirking, grinning, leering, fleering, snorting, levity, flippancy, smartness, smart-aleckiness *and* joshing <nf>, fooling, japery, twitting, taunting, booing, hooting, catcalling, hissing; **banter** 490

2 **gibe, scoff, jeer,** fleer, flout, mock, barracking <Brit>, **taunt, twit,** quip, jest, jape, put-on *and* leg-pull <nf>, foolery; **insult** 156.2; scurrility, caustic remark; **cut,** cutting remark, verbal thrust; gibing retort, rude reproach, short answer, back answer, comeback <nf>, parting shot, Parthian shot

3 **boo,** booing, **hoot, catcall; Bronx cheer** *and* **raspberry** *and* razz <nf>; **hiss, hissing,** the bird <nf>

4 scornful laugh *or* smile, snicker, snigger, **smirk,** sardonic grin, leer, fleer, **sneer,** snort

5 **sarcasm, irony, cynicism, satire,** satiric wit *or* humor, invective, innuendo; causticity 144.8

6 **burlesque, lampoon,** squib, **parody, satire, farce,** mockery, imitation, wicked imitation *or* pastiche, takeoff <nf>, **travesty, caricature**

7 **laughingstock,** jestingstock, gazingstock, derision, mockery, **figure of fun,** byword, byword of reproach, jest, joke, **butt,** target, stock, **goat** <nf>, toy, game, **fair game,** victim, dupe, fool, everybody's fool, monkey, mug <Brit nf>

VERBS 8 **ridicule, deride,** ride <nf>, make a laughingstock *or* a mockery of; roast <nf>, **insult** 156.5; **make fun** *or* **game of, poke fun at,** make merry with, put one on *and* pull one's leg <nf>; **laugh at,** laugh in one's face, grin at, smile at, snicker *or* snigger at; **laugh to scorn,** hold in derision, laugh out of court, hoot down; point at, point the finger of scorn; pillory

9 **scoff, jeer,** gibe, barrack <Brit>, **mock, revile, rail at, rally,** chaff, **twit, taunt,** jape, flout, scout, have a fling at, cast in one's teeth; cut at; jab, jab at, dig at, take a dig at; pooh, **pooh-pooh;** sneer, **sneer at,** fleer, curl one's lip

10 **boo, hiss, hoot,** catcall, give the raspberry *or* Bronx cheer <nf>, give the bird <nf>, whistle at

11 **burlesque, lampoon, satirize, parody, caricature,** travesty, hit *or* take off on

ADJS 12 **ridiculing, derisive,** derisory; **mocking,** railing, rallying, chaffing; panning *and* razzing *and* roasting *and* ragging <nf>, **scoffing,** jeering, sneering, snickering, sniggering, smirky, smirking, grinning, leering, fleering, snorting, flippant, smart, smart-alecky *and* smart-ass *and* wise-ass <nf>; joshing *and* jiving <nf>, fooling, japing, twitting, taunting, booing, hooting, catcalling, hissing, bantering, kidding, teasing, quizzical

13 **satiric, satirical; sarcastic, ironic, ironical, sardonic, cynical,** Rabelaisian, dry; caustic

14 **burlesque, farcical, broad,** slapstick; parodic, caricatural, macaronic, doggerel

ADVS 15 **derisively, mockingly, scoffingly,** jeeringly, sneeringly, "with scoffs and scorns and contumelious taunts"—Shakespeare

509 APPROVAL

NOUNS 1 **approval, approbation;** "Our polite recognition of another's resemblance to ourselves"—Ambrose Bierce; **sanction,** acceptance, countenance, **favor; admiration, esteem, respect** 155; endorsement, support, backing, vote, favorable vote, yea vote, yea, voice, adherence, blessing, seal of approval, nod *or* nod of approval, wink, stamp of approval, **OK** 332.4, rubber stamp, green light, go-ahead, thumbs up

2 **applause,** plaudit, éclat, **acclaim, acclamation; popularity;** clap, handclap, **clapping,** handclapping, clapping of hands; **cheer** 116.2; burst of applause, peal *or* thunder of applause; **round of applause, hand, big hand; ovation,** standing ovation; encore

3 **commendation,** good word, acknowledgment, recognition, appreciation; boost *and* buildup <nf>; **puff,** promotion; citation, accolade, kudos; good review; **blurb** *and* **plug** *and* promo *and* hype <nf>; honorable mention

4 **recommendation,** recommend <Brit nf>, letter of recommendation; **advocacy,** advocating, advocation, patronage; **reference, credential,** letter of reference, voucher, **testimonial;** character reference, character, certificate of character, good character; letter of introduction

5 **praise,** bepraisement; **laudation,** laud; **glorification,** glory, exaltation, extolment, magnification, **honor; eulogy,** *éloge and hommage* <Fr>, eulogium; **encomium,** accolade, kudos, high marks, panegyric; paean; **tribute,** homage, meed of praise; congratulation 149.1; flattery 511; overpraise,

excessive praise, idolizing, idolatry, deification, apotheosis, adulation, lionizing, hero worship

6 **compliment,** polite commendation, complimentary *or* flattering remark, flattery, pat on the back, stroke <nf>; **bouquet** *and* posy <nf>, trade-last <old nf>

7 **praiseworthiness, laudability,** laudableness, commendableness, estimableness, meritoriousness, exemplariness, admirability

8 commender, eulogist, eulogizer; **praiser,** lauder, laudator, extoller, encomiast, panegyrist, **booster** <nf>, puffer, promoter, champion; plugger *and* tout *and* touter <nf>; **applauder,** *claqueur* <Fr>; claque; rooter *and* fan *and* buff <nf>, adherent; admirer; appreciator; **flatterer** 138.3, 511.4, fan club

VERBS 9 **approve, approve of,** think well of, take kindly to; **sanction, accept; admire, esteem, respect** 155.4; endorse, bless, sign off on <nf>, OK 332.12; **countenance,** keep in countenance; hold with, uphold; **favor,** be in favor of, view with favor, take kindly to

10 **applaud, acclaim, hail; clap,** clap one's hands, give a hand *or* big hand, have *or* hear a hand *or* big hand for, hear it for <nf>; **cheer** 116.6; root for <nf>, cheer on; encore; cheer *or* applaud to the very echo; huzzah; raise the roof <nf>

11 **commend, speak well** *or* **highly of,** speak in high terms of, speak warmly of, have *or* say a good word for; boost *and* give a boost to <nf>, puff, promote, cry up; plug *and* tout *and* hype; pour *or* spread *or* lay it on thick <nf>; **recommend, advocate,** put in a word *or* good word for, support, back, lend one's name *or* support *or* backing to, make a pitch for <nf>; condone, bless

12 **praise,** bepraise, talk one up <nf>; **laud,** belaud; **eulogize,** panegyrize, pay tribute, salute, hand it to one <nf>; **extol, glorify,** magnify, exalt, bless; cry up, blow up, puff, puff up; boast of, brag about <nf>, make much of; celebrate, emblazon, sound *or* resound the praises of, ring one's praises, sing the praises of, trumpet, hype <nf>; praise to the skies, *porter aux nues* <Fr>; flatter 511.5; overpraise, praise to excess, idolize, deify, apotheosize, adulate, lionize, hero-worship; put on a pedestal

13 **espouse,** join *or* associate oneself with, take up, take for one's own; **campaign for, crusade for,** put on a drive for, take up the cudgels for, push for <nf>; carry the banner of, march under the banner of; beat the drum for, thump the tub for; lavish oneself on, fight the good fight for; devote *or* dedicate oneself to, spend *or* give *or* sacrifice oneself for

14 **compliment, pay a compliment,** make one a compliment, give a bouquet *or* posy <nf>, say something nice about; hand it to *and* have to hand it to <nf>, pat on the back, take off one's hat to, doff one's cap to, congratulate 149.2

15 **meet with approval,** find favor with, **pass muster,** recommend itself, do credit to; redound to the honor of; ring with the praises of

ADJS 16 **approbatory, approbative, commendatory, complimentary, laudatory,** acclamatory, felicitous, eulogistic, panegyric, panegyrical, encomiastic, **appreciative, appreciatory; admiring, regardful, respectful** 155.8; flattering 511.8

17 **approving, favorable,** favoring, in favor of, **pro,** well-disposed, well-inclined, supporting, backing, **advocating;** promoting, promotional; touting *and* puffing *and* hyping <nf>; recommending

18 **uncritical,** uncriticizing, **uncensorious,** unreproachful; overpraising, overappreciative, unmeasured *or* excessive in one's praise, idolatrous, adulatory, lionizing, hero-worshiping, fulsome; knee-jerk <nf>

19 **approved,** favored, backed, advocated, supported; favorite; **accepted,** received, admitted; **recommended,** bearing the seal of approval, highly touted <nf>, **admired** 155.11, **applauded,** well-thought-of, in good odor, **acclaimed,** cried up; **popular;** given a blessing

20 **praiseworthy,** worthy, **commendable,** estimable, **laudable,** admirable, meritorious, creditable; exemplary, model, unexceptionable; deserving, well-deserving; beyond all praise, *sans peur et sans reproche* <Fr>; **good** 999.12,13

PREPS 21 **in favor of, for, pro,** all for

INTERJS 22 **bravo!,** bravissimo!, **well done!,** *¡ole!* <Sp>, *bene!* <Ital>, hear, hear!, aha!; hurrah!; **good!,** fine!, excellent!, whizzo! <Brit>, great!, beautiful!, swell!, good for you!, good enough!, not bad!, now you're talking!; way to go, attaboy!, attababy!, attagirl!, attagal!, good boy!, good girl!; that's the idea!, that's the ticket!; encore!, bis!, take a bow!, three cheers!, one cheer more!, **congratulations!** 149.4

23 **hail!,** all hail!, *ave!* <L>, *vive!* <Fr>, *viva!* or *evviva!* <Ital>, live live!, long life to!, glory be to!, honor be to!

510 DISAPPROVAL

NOUNS 1 **disapproval, disapprobation,** disfavor, disesteem, disrespect 156; dim view, poor *or* low opinion, low estimation, adverse judgment; **displeasure,** distaste, **dissatisfaction,** discontent, discontentment, discontentedness, disgruntlement, indignation, **unhappiness;** disillusion, disillusionment, disenchantment, disappointment;

disagreement, **opposition** 451, opposure; rejection, thumbs-down, exclusion, ostracism, blackballing, blackball, ban; **complaint, protest,** objection, **dissent** 333

2 **deprecation,** discommendation, dispraise, denigration, disvaluation; **ridicule** 508; depreciation, disparagement 512; **contempt** 157

3 **censure, reprehension,** stricture, reprobation, **blame, denunciation,** denouncement, decrying, decrial, bashing *and* trashing <nf>, impeachment, arraignment, indictment, **condemnation,** damnation, fulmination, anathema; castigation, flaying, skinning alive <nf>, fustigation, excoriation; pillorying

4 **criticism,** adverse criticism, harsh *or* hostile criticism, flak <nf>, bad notices, bad press, panning, brickbat, animadversion, imputation, reflection, **aspersion,** stricture, obloquy; **knock** *and* **swipe** *and* **slam** *and* **rap** *and* hit <nf>, roasting <nf>, home thrust; minor *or* petty criticism, niggle, cavil, quibble, exception, nit <nf>; **censoriousness,** reproachfulness, priggishness; **faultfinding,** taking exception, carping, caviling, pettifogging, quibbling, captiousness, niggling, nitpicking, pestering, nagging; hypercriticism, hypercriticalness, overcriticalness, hairsplitting, trichoschistism

5 **reproof,** reproval, reprobation, a flea in one's ear; **rebuke, reprimand, reproach,** reprehension, **scolding, chiding,** rating, **upbraiding,** objurgation; **admonishment, admonition; correction,** castigation, chastisement, spanking, rap on the knuckles; lecture, lesson, sermon; **disrecommendation**, low rating, adverse report, wolf ticket

6 <nf terms> **piece** *or* bit of one's mind, **talking-to,** speaking-to, roasting, raking-down, **raking-over,** raking over the coals, dressing, dressing-down, set-down; **bawling-out,** cussing-out, **calling-down,** jacking-up, going-over, chewing-out, chewing, reaming-out, reaming, ass-chewing, ass-reaming, what-for, ticking-off

7 **berating,** rating, tongue-lashing; **revilement, vilification,** blackening, **execration, abuse, vituperation,** invective, contumely, hard *or* cutting *or* bitter words; **tirade, diatribe,** jeremiad, screed, philippic; **attack, assault,** onslaught, assailing; **abusiveness; acrimony**

8 **reproving look,** dirty *or* nasty look <nf>, black look, frown, scowl, glare; hiss, boo; Bronx cheer *or* raspberry <nf>

9 **faultfinder,** disapprover, *frondeur* <Fr>, momus, basher *and* tracher *and* boo-bird <nf>; **critic** 946.7, criticizer, **nitpicker** <nf>, smellfungus, belittler, censor, censurer, castigator, carper, caviler, quibbler, pettifogger; **scold,** common scold; kvetch, **complainer** 108.3

VERBS **10** **disapprove, disapprove of,** not approve, raise an objection, go *or* side against, go contra; **disfavor, view with disfavor, raise one's eyebrows, frown at** *or* **on,** look black upon, look askance at, make a wry face at, grimace at, **turn up one's nose at,** shrug one's shoulders at; **take a dim view of** <nf>, not think much of, think ill of, think little of, have no respect for, have a low opinion of, not take kindly to, not hold with, hold no brief for *and* not sign off on <nf>; not hear of, not go for *and* not get all choked up over *and* be turned off by <nf>; not want *or* have any part of, wash one's hands of, dissociate oneself from; **object to,** take exception to; **oppose** 451.3, set oneself against, set one's face *or* heart against; **reject,** categorically reject, disallow, not hear of; **turn thumbs down on** *and* thumb down <nf>, vote down, veto, frown down, exclude, ostracize, blackball, ban; say no to, shake one's head at; **dissent from, protest, object** 333.4,5; turn over in one's grave

11 **discountenance,** not countenance, **not tolerate,** not brook, not condone, not suffer, not abide, not endure, not bear with, not put up with, **not stand for** <nf>

12 **deprecate,** discommend, dispraise, disvalue, not be able to say much for, denigrate, **fault,** faultfind, find fault with, put down <nf>, pick at *or* on, pick holes in, pick to pieces; **ridicule** 508.8; **depreciate, disparage** 512.8; **hold in contempt,** disdain, **despise** 157.3

13 **censure,** reprehend; **blame,** lay *or* cast blame upon; **bash** *and* trash *and* rubbish <nf>; **reproach,** impugn; **condemn,** damn, take out after; damn with faint praise; fulminate against, anathematize, anathemize, put on the Index; **denounce,** denunciate, **accuse** 599.7,9, **decry,** cry down, impeach, arraign, indict, call to account, exclaim *or* declaim *or* inveigh against, peg away at, cry out against, cry out on *or* upon, cry shame upon, raise one's voice against, raise a hue and cry against, shake up <old>; reprobate, hold up to reprobation; animadvert on *or* upon, reflect upon, cast reflection upon, cast a reproach *or* slur upon, complain against; throw a stone at, cast *or* throw the first stone

14 **criticize; pan** *and* **knock** *and* **slam** *and* hit *and* rap *and* take a rap *or* swipe at <nf>, snipe at, strike out at, tie into *and* tee off on *and* rip into *and* open up on *and* plow into <nf>; belittle

15 **find fault,** take exception, fault-find, pick holes, cut up, pick *or* pull *or* tear apart, **pick** *or* **pull** *or* **tear to pieces; tear down, carp, cavil,** quibble, **nitpick,** pick nits, pettifog, catch at straws

16 **nag,** niggle, **carp at, fuss at, fret at,** yap *or* **pick at** <nf>, peck at, nibble at, **pester, henpeck, pick on** <nf>, bug *and* hassle <nf>

17 **reprove, rebuke, reprimand,** reprehend, put a flea in one's ear, **scold, chide,** rate, **admonish, upbraid,** objurgate, have words with, take a hard line with; **lecture,** read a lesson *or* lecture to; **correct,** rap on the knuckles, **chastise,** spank, turn over one's knees; **take to task,** call to account, bring to book, call on the carpet, read the riot act, give one a tongue-lashing, tonguelash; take down, set down, set straight, straighten out

18 <nf terms> **call down** *or* **dress down, speak** *or* **talk to, tell off,** tell a thing or two, pin one's ears back, **give a piece** *or* **bit of one's mind, rake** *or* **haul over the coals,** rake up one side and down the other, give it to, let one have it, let one have it with both barrels, trim, come down on *or* down hard on, jump on *or* all over *or* down one's throat; give one a hard time *or* what for; **bawl out,** give a bawling out, chew, **chew out,** chew ass, ream, ream out, ream ass, cuss out, jack up, sit on *or* upon, lambaste, give a going-over, tell where to get off; give the deuce *or* devil, give hell, give hail Columbia

19 **berate,** rate, betongue, jaw <nf>, clapper-claw <nf>, **tongue-lash, rail at,** rag, thunder *or* fulminate against, rave against, yell at, bark *or* yelp at; **revile, vilify,** blacken, **execrate, abuse,** vituperate, load with reproaches

20 <criticize or reprove severely> **attack, assail; castigate, flay,** skin alive <nf>, lash, slash, **excoriate,** fustigate, scarify, scathe, **roast** <nf>, scorch, blister, trounce; lay into <nf>

ADJS 21 **disapproving, disapprobatory,** unapproving, turned-off, **displeased, dissatisfied,** less than pleased, discontented, disgruntled, indignant, **unhappy;** disillusioned, disenchanted, disappointed; **unfavorable,** low, poor, **opposed** 451.8, **opposing, con,** against, agin <nf>, dead set against, death on, down on, **dissenting** 333.6; **uncomplimentary;** unappreciative

22 **condemnatory, censorious,** censorial, damnatory, **denunciatory, reproachful,** blameful, reprobative, objurgatory, po-faced <Brit>, priggish, judgmental; deprecative, deprecatory; **derisive, ridiculing, scoffing** 508.12; **depreciative, disparaging** 512.13; **contemptuous** 157.8; invective, inveighing; reviling, vilifying, blackening, execrating, execrative, execratory, abusive, vituperative

23 **critical, faultfinding,** carping, picky *and* nitpicky <nf>, caviling, quibbling, pettifogging, captious, cynical; nagging, niggling; hypercritical, ultracritical, overcritical, hairsplitting, trichoschistic; abusive

24 **unpraiseworthy, illaudable; uncommendable,** discommendable, not good enough; objectionable, exceptionable, unacceptable, not to be thought of, beyond the pale

25 **blameworthy,** blamable, to blame, at fault, much at fault; **reprehensible,** censurable, reproachable, reprovable, open to criticism *or* reproach; **culpable,** chargeable, impeachable, accusable, indictable, arraignable, imputable

ADVS 26 **disapprovingly, askance,** askant, **unfavorably;** censoriously, critically, reproachfully, rebukingly; captiously

INTERJS 27 **God forbid!,** Heaven forbid!, Heaven forfend!, forbid it Heaven!; by no means!, not for the world!, not on your life!, over my dead body!, not if I know it!, nothing doing!, no way! *and* no way José! <nf>, perish the thought!, I'll be hanged *or* damned if!, **shame!,** for shame!, tuttut!

511 FLATTERY

NOUNS 1 **flattery, adulation; praise** 509.5; **blandishment,** palaver, **cajolery,** cajolement, wheedling, inveiglement; **blarney** *and* bunkum *and* **soft soap** *and* soap *or* butter salve <nf>, oil, grease, eyewash <nf>; strokes *and* stroking *and* ego massage <nf>, sweet talk, fair *or* sweet *or* honeyed words, soft *or* honeyed phrases, incense, pretty lies, sweet nothings; trade-last <old nf>, **compliment** 509.6; ass-kissing <nf>, ingratiation, **fawning, sycophancy** 138.2

2 **unction,** "that flattering unction"—Shakespeare; **unctuousness,** oiliness, sliminess; slobber, gush, smarm *and* smarminess <nf>; flattering tongue; insincerity 354.5

3 **overpraise,** overprizing, excessive praise, overcommendation, overlaudation, overestimation; idolatry 509.5

4 **flatterer,** *flatteur* <Fr>, adulator, courtier; **cajoler, wheedler; backslapper,** back-scratcher, yes-man, bootlicker; blarneyer *and* soft-soaper <nf>; ass-kisser <nf>, brown-noser, **sycophant** 138.3

VERBS 5 **flatter,** adulate, conceit; **cajole, wheedle, blandish,** palaver; slaver *or* slobber over, beslobber, beslubber; oil the tongue, lay the flattering unction to one's soul, make fair weather; **praise, compliment** 509.14, praise to the skies; scratch one's back, kiss ass <nf>, fawn upon 138.9

6 <nf terms> **soft-soap,** butter, honey, **butter up,** soften up; stroke <nf>, massage the ego <nf>; **blarney,** jolly, pull one's leg; lay it on <nf>, pour *or* spread *or* lay it on thick *or* with a trowel <nf>, overdo it, soap, oil; string along, kid along; play up to, get around; suck up to

7 **overpraise,** overprize, overcommend, overlaud;

overesteem, overestimate, overdo it, protest too much; idolize 509.12, put on a pedestal; puff

ADJS 8 **flattering, adulatory;** complimentary 509.16; **blandishing, cajoling, wheedling,** blarneying *and* soft-soaping <nf>; fair-spoken, fine-spoken, smooth-spoken, smooth-tongued, **mealymouthed,** honey-mouthed, honey-tongued, honeyed, oily-tongued; fulsome, slimy, slobbery, gushing, protesting too much, smarmy <nf>, insinuating, oily, buttery <nf>, soapy <nf>, soft-soaping <nf>, **unctuous,** smooth, bland; insincere, hypocritical, tongue-in-cheek; courtly, courtierly; **fawning, sycophantic, obsequious**

512 DISPARAGEMENT

NOUNS 1 **disparagement, faultfinding, depreciation, detraction,** deprecation, derogation, bad-mouthing *and* running down *and* knocking *and* putting down <nf>, **belittling;** sour grapes; slighting, minimizing, faint praise, lukewarm support, discrediting, decrying, decrial; **disapproval** 510; **contempt** 157; indignity, disgrace, comedown <nf>

2 **defamation,** malicious defamation, defamation of character, smear campaign, injury of *or* to one's reputation; **vilification,** revilement, defilement, blackening, denigration; **smear,** character assassination, *ad hominem* <L> *or* personal attack, name-calling, smear word; **muckraking, mudslinging**

3 **slander, scandal, libel,** traducement; calumny, calumniation; backbiting, cattiness *and* bitchiness <nf>

4 **aspersion,** slur, **remark, reflection,** imputation, **insinuation,** suggestion, sly suggestion, innuendo, whispering campaign; disparaging *or* uncomplimentary remark; poison-pen letter, hatchet job

5 **lampoon,** send-up <nf>, take-off, pasquinade, ridicule, pasquin, pasquil, squib, lampoonery, **satire,** malicious parody, **burlesque** 508.6; caricature

6 **disparager, depreciator,** decrier, detractor, basher *and* trasher *and* boo-bird <nf>, belittler, debunker, deflater, slighter, derogator, **knocker** <nf>, hatchet man; **slanderer,** libeler, defamer, backbiter; calumniator, traducer; **muckraker, mudslinger,** social critic; **cynic,** railer, Thersites, "A man who knows the price of everything, and the value of nothing"—Oscar Wilde

7 **lampooner,** lampoonist, **satirist,** pasquinader; poison-pen writer

VERBS 8 **disparage, depreciate, belittle,** slight, minimize, make little of, degrade, debase, **run** *or* **knock down** <nf>, **put down** <nf>, sell short; **discredit,** bring into discredit, reflect discredit upon, disgrace; detract from, derogate from, cut down to size <nf>; **decry,** cry down; speak ill of; speak slightingly of, not speak well of; disapprove of 510.10; hold in contempt 157.3; submit to indignity *or* disgrace, bring down, bring low

9 **defame, malign, bad-mouth** *and* poor-mouth <nf>; **asperse, cast aspersions on,** cast reflections on, injure one's reputation, damage one's good name, give one a black eye <nf>; **slur,** cast a slur on, do a number *or* a job on <nf>, tear down

10 **vilify, revile, defile, sully, soil, smear,** smirch, besmirch, bespatter, tarnish, **blacken,** denigrate, blacken one's good name, give a black eye <nf>; **call names,** give a bad name, give a dog a bad name, stigmatize 661.9; **muckrake, throw mud** at, mudsling, heap dirt upon, drag through the mud *or* the gutter; engage in personalities

11 **slander, libel;** calumniate, traduce; stab in the back, backbite, speak ill of behind one's back

12 **lampoon, satirize,** pasquinade; parody, send up <nf>, take off; dip the pen in gall, **burlesque** 508.11

ADJS 13 **disparaging, derogatory,** derogative, **depreciatory,** depreciative, deprecatory, slighting, belittling, minimizing, detractory, pejorative, backbiting, catty *and* bitchy <nf>, contumelious, contemptuous, derisive, derisory, ridiculing 508.12; **snide,** insinuating; censorious; **defamatory,** vilifying, **slanderous, scandalous, libelous;** calumnious, calumniatory; **abusive,** scurrilous, scurrile <old>

513 CURSE

NOUNS 1 **curse, malediction,** malison, damnation, denunciation, commination, imprecation, execration; blasphemy; anathema, fulmination, thundering, excommunication; ban, proscription; hex, evil eye, *malocchio* <Ital>, jinx, whammy *or* double whammy <nf>; ill wishes

2 **vilification, abuse,** revilement, **vituperation, invective,** opprobrium, obloquy, contumely, calumny, scurrility, blackguardism; **disparagement** 512; slanging match <nf>

3 **cursing,** cussing <nf>, **swearing, profanity,** profane swearing, foul *or* profane *or* obscene *or* blue *or* bad *or* strong *or* unparliamentary *or* indelicate language, vulgar language, vile language, colorful language, unrepeatable expressions, dysphemism, billingsgate, ribaldry, evil speaking, **dirty language** *or* **talk** <nf>, **obscenity,** scatology, coprology, **filthy language, filth;** foul mouth, dirty mouth <nf>

4 **oath,** profane oath, curse; cuss *or* cuss word *and* dirty word *and* four-letter word *and* **swearword** <nf>, profanity, bad word, naughty word, no-no <nf>, foul invective, **expletive, epithet,** dirty name <nf>, dysphemism, obscenity, vulgarity

VERBS 5 **curse,** accurse, **damn,** darn, **confound,** blast, anathematize, fulminate *or* thunder against, execrate, imprecate, proscribe; excommunicate; call down evil upon, call down curses on the head of; put a curse on; curse up hill *and* down dale; curse with bell, book, and candle; blaspheme; hex, give the evil eye, put a whammy on <nf>

6 **curse, swear, cuss** <nf>, curse and swear, execrate, rap out *or* rip out an oath, take the Lord's name in vain; swear like a trooper, cuss like a sailor, make the air blue, swear till one is blue in the face; **talk dirty** <nf>, scatologize, coprologize, dysphemize, use strong language; blaspheme, profane

7 **vilify, abuse, revile,** vituperate, blackguard, call names, epithet, epithetize; **swear at,** damn, cuss out <nf>

ADJS 8 **cursing, maledictory,** imprecatory, **damnatory,** denunciatory, epithetic, epithetical; **abusive,** vituperative, contumelious; calumnious, calumniatory; execratory, comminatory, fulminatory, excommunicative, excommunicatory; **scurrilous,** scurrile <old>; blasphemous, **profane, foul, foulmouthed, vile,** thersitical, **dirty** <nf>, **obscene,** dysphemistic, scatologic, scatological, coprological, toilet, sewer, cloacal; ribald, Rabelaisian, raw, risqué

9 **cursed,** accursed, bloody <Brit nf>, **damned, damn, damnable,** goddamned, goddamn, **execrable**

10 <euphemisms> **darned,** danged, **confounded,** deuced, blessed, **blasted,** dashed, blamed, goshdarn, doggone *or* doggoned, goldarned, goldanged, dadburned; blankety-blank; ruddy <Brit>

INTERJS 11 damn!, damn it!, God damn it! *or* goddam it!, confound it!, hang it!, devil take!, a plague upon!, a pox upon!, *parbleu*! <Fr>, *verdammt*! <Ger>, go to hell!

12 <euphemistic oaths> darn!, dern!, dang!, dash!, drat!, blast!, doggone!, goldarn!, goldang!, golding!, gosh-darn!, cripes!, crikey! <Brit>, golly!, gosh!, heck!, bugger it! <Brit>, goodness!, goodness gracious!, jeepers!, gee whillikers!, gee whiz!

514 THREAT

NOUNS 1 **threat, menace,** threateningness, threatfulness, promise of harm, knife poised at one's throat, arrow aimed at one's heart, sword of Damocles; imminent threat, powder keg, timebomb, imminence 840; **foreboding; warning** 399; saber-rattling, muscle-flexing, woofing <nf>, bulldozing, scare tactics, **intimidation** 127.6, arm-twisting <nf>; denunciation, commination; veiled *or* implied threat, idle *or* hollow *or* empty threat

VERBS 2 **threaten, menace,** bludgeon, bulldoze, put the heat *or* screws *or* squeeze on <nf>, lean on <nf>; hold a pistol to one's head, terrorize, **intimidate,** twist one's arm *and* arm-twist <nf>; utter threats against, shake *or* double *or* clench one's fist at; hold over one's head; denounce, comminate; **lower,** spell *or* mean trouble, look threatening, loom, loom up; **be imminent** 840.2; **forebode** 133.11; **warn** 399.5

ADJS 3 **threatening, menacing,** threatful, minatory, minacious; **lowering; imminent** 840.3; **ominous,** foreboding 133.17; denunciatory, comminatory, abusive; fear-inspiring, **intimidating,** bludgeoning, muscle-flexing, saber-rattling, bulldozing, browbeating, bullying, hectoring, blustering, terrorizing, terroristic

ADVS 4 under duress *or* threat, under the gun, at gunpoint *or* knifepoint

515 FASTING

NOUNS 1 **fasting,** abstinence from food; abstemiousness, starvation; punishment of Tantalus; religious fasting; hunger strike; anorexia nervosa

2 **fast,** lack of food; spare *or* meager diet, Lenten diet, Lenten fare, "Lenten entertainment"—Shakespeare; prison fare; short commons *or* rations, military rations, K rations; starvation diet, water diet, crash diet, bread and water, bare subsistence, bare cupboard; xerophagy, xerophagia; Barmecide *or* Barmecidal feast

3 **fast day,** *jour maigre* <Fr>; **Lent,** Good Friday, Quadragesima; Yom Kippur, Tishah B'Av *or* Ninth of Av; Ramadan; meatless day, fish day, day of abstinence

VERBS 4 **fast,** not eat, go hungry, eat nothing, eat like a bird, dine with Duke Humphrey; eat sparingly, eat less, count calories

ADJS 5 **fasting,** uneating, unfed; abstinent, abstemious; keeping Lent, **Lenten,** quadragesimal; underfed

516 SOBRIETY

NOUNS 1 **sobriety, soberness;** unintoxicatedness, uninebriatedness, undrunkenness; abstinence, abstemiousness; temperance 668; clear head; prohibition, temperance society; nondrinker, teetotaler

VERBS **2 sober up,** sober off; sleep it off; bring one down, take off a high <nf>; dry out, clear one's head, detoxify; give up alcohol, go on the wagon

ADJS **3 sober,** in one's sober senses, in one's right mind, in possession of one's faculties; clearheaded; **unintoxicated, uninebriated,** uninebriate, uninebrious, not drunk, undrunk, undrunken, untipsy, unfuddled; stone-cold sober <nf>, **sober as a judge;** able to walk the chalk, able to walk the chalk mark *or* line <nf>; nondrinking, off the bottle, dry, straight, on the wagon <nf>, temperate 668.9, abstinent

4 unintoxicating, nonintoxicating, uninebriating; **nonalcoholic, soft**

517 SIGNS, INDICATORS

NOUNS **1 sign,** telltale sign, sure sign, tip-off <nf>, **index,** indicant, **indicator,** signal <old>, measure; tip of the iceberg; **symptom;** note, keynote, **mark, earmark,** hallmark, **badge,** device, banner, stamp, signature, sigil, seal, trait, **characteristic,** character, peculiarity, idiosyncrasy, **property,** differentia; image, picture, **representation,** representative; **insignia** 647; notation; reference sign

2 symbol, emblem, icon, token, cipher <old>, type; **allegory; symbolism, symbology,** iconology, iconography, charactery; conventional symbol; symbolic system; **symbolization;** semiotics, semiology; **ideogram,** logogram, pictogram; **logo** <nf>, logotype; **totem,** totem pole; love knot; symbol list

3 indication, signification, identification, differentiation, denotation, **designation,** denomination; characterization, highlighting; **specification,** naming, pointing, pointing out *or* to, fingering <nf>, picking out, selection; symptomaticness, indicativeness; **meaning** 518; hint, suggestion 551.4; **expression, manifestation** 348; show, showing, disclosure 351

4 pointer, index, **lead; direction, guide;** fist, index finger *or* mark, finger, arm; **arrow;** hand, hour hand, minute hand, gauge, **needle,** compass needle, lubber line; **signpost,** guidepost, finger post, direction post; milepost; blaze; guideboard, signboard 352.7

5 mark, marking; watermark; **scratch,** scratching, engraving, graving, **score,** scotch, cut, hack, gash, blaze; bar code; nick, notch 289; **scar,** cicatrix, scarification, cicatrization; **brand, earmark; stigma; stain, discoloration** 1004.2; blemish, macula, **spot,** blotch, splotch, flick, patch, splash; mottle, dapple; **dot,** point; polka dot; tittle, jot; **speck, speckle,** fleck; tick, **freckle,** lentigo, mole; **birthmark,** strawberry mark, port-wine stain, vascular nevus, nevus, hemangioma; beauty mark *or* spot; caste mark; **check,** checkmark; prick, puncture; tattoo, tattoo mark

6 line, score, **stroke,** slash, virgule, diagonal, **dash, stripe, strip, streak, striation,** striping, streaking, bar, band; squiggle; hairline; dotted line; lineation, delineation; sublineation, **underline,** underlining, underscore, underscoring; hatching, cross-hatching, hachure

7 print, imprint, impress, impression; dint, dent, indent, indentation, indention, concavity; sitzmark; **stamp,** seal, sigil, signet; colophon; **fingerprint,** finger mark, thumbprint, thumbmark, dactylogram, dactylograph; **footprint,** footmark, footstep, step, vestige; hoofprint, hoofmark; pad, paw print, pawmark, pug, pugmark; claw mark; fossil print *or* footprint, ichnite, ichnolite; **bump,** boss, stud, pimple, lump, excrescence, convexity, embossment; ecological footprint

8 track, trail, path, course, *piste* <Fr>, **line, wake;** vapor trail, contrail, condensation trail; **spoor,** signs, traces, **scent**

9 clue, cue, key, tip-off <nf>, telltale, smoking gun <nf>, straw in the wind; **trace, vestige, spoor,** scent, whiff; **lead** *and* hot lead <nf>; catchword, cue word, key word; **evidence** 957; **hint, intimation,** suggestion 551.4

10 marker, mark; bookmark; **landmark,** seamark; bench mark; **milestone,** milepost; cairn, menhir, catstone; **lighthouse,** lightship, tower, Texas tower; platform, watchtower, pharos; buoy, aid to navigation, bell, gong, lighted buoy, nun, can, spar buoy, wreck buoy, junction buoy, special-purpose buoy; seamark, watermark, tidemark; **monument** 549.12

11 identification, identification mark; **badge,** identification badge, identification tag, dog tag <military>, passport, personal identification number *or* PIN number *or* PIN, **identity card** *or* **ID card** *or* **ID;** Social Security number, driver's license number; card, business card, calling card, visiting card, *carte de visite* <Fr>, press card; letter of introduction; signature, initials, monogram, calligram; credentials; serial number; countersign, countermark; theme, theme tune *or* song; **criminal identification,** forensic tool, DNA print, genetic fingerprint, voiceprint; fingerprint 517.7; dental record

12 password, watchword, countersign; token; open sesame; secret grip; shibboleth

13 label, tag; ticket, docket <Brit>, tally; **stamp, sticker; seal,** sigil, signet; cachet; stub, counterfoil; **token,** check; **brand, brand name, trade name,** trademark name; **trademark,** registered trademark; government mark, government stamp, broad arrow <Brit>; **hallmark,** countermark; price tag; plate, bookplate, book stamp, colophon, *ex libris* <L>, logotype *or* logo; International Standard Book Number *or* ISBN; masthead, imprint, title page; letterhead, billhead; running head *or* title

14 **gesture, gesticulation; motion,** movement; carriage, bearing, posture, poise, pose, stance, way of holding oneself; body language, kinesics; beck, beckon; shrug; charade, dumb show, **pantomime;** sign language, signing, gesture language; dactylology, deaf-and-dumb alphabet; hand signal; chironomy

15 **signal, sign; high sign** *and* the wink *and* the nod <nf>; wink, flick of the eyelash, glance, leer; look in one's eyes, tone of one's voice; nod; nudge, elbow in the ribs, poke, kick, touch; **alarm** 400; **beacon,** signal beacon, marker beacon, radio beacon, lighthouse beacon; signal light, signal lamp *or* lantern *or* light; blinker; signal fire, beacon fire, watch fire, balefire, smoke signal; **flare,** parachute flare; rocket, signal rocket, Roman candle; signal gun, signal shot; signal siren *or* whistle, signal bell, bell, signal gong, **police whistle,** watchman's rattle; fog signal *or* alarm, fog bell, **foghorn,** diaphone, fog whistle; **traffic signal,** traffic light, red *or* stop light, amber *or* caution light, green *or* go light; heliograph; signal flag; **semaphore,** semaphore telegraph, semaphore flag; **wigwag,** wigwag flag; international alphabet flag, international numeral pennant; red flag; white flag; yellow flag, quarantine flag; blue peter; pilot flag *or* jack; signal post, signal mast, signal tower; telecommunications

16 call, summons; whistle; moose call, bird call, duck call, hog call, goose call, crow call, hawk call, dog whistle; **bugle call,** trumpet call, fanfare, flourish; **reveille, taps,** last post <Brit>; alarm, alarum; **battle cry,** war cry, war whoop, rebel yell, rallying cry; call to arms; Angelus, Angelus bell

VERBS **17** **signify, betoken,** stand for, identify, differentiate, note <old>, speak of, talk, **indicate,** be indicative of, be an indication of, be significant of, connote, denominate, argue, bespeak, be symptomatic *or* diagnostic of, symptomize, **characterize, mark,** highlight, be the mark *or* sign of, give token, **denote, mean** 518.8; testify, give evidence, bear witness to; **show, express, display, manifest** 348.5, **hint,** suggest 551.10, reveal, **disclose** 351.4; entail, involve 772.4

18 **designate, specify;** denominate, name, denote; stigmatize; **symbolize, stand for,** typify, be taken as, symbol, emblematize, figure <old>; **point to,** refer to, advert to, allude to, make an allusion to; pick out, select; **point out,** point at, put *or* lay one's finger on, finger <nf>

19 **mark,** make a mark, put a mark on; pencil, chalk; mark out, demarcate, delimit, define; **mark off, check, check off,** tick, tick off, chalk up; punctuate, point; **dot, spot,** blotch, splotch, dash, **speck, speckle,** fleck, freckle; mottle, dapple; blemish; **brand,** stigmatize; **stain, discolor** 1004.6; stamp, seal, punch, impress, imprint, **print, engrave; score, scratch,** gash, scotch, scar, scarify, cicatrize; nick, notch 289.4; **blaze,** blaze a trail; **line, seam,** trace, **stripe, streak, striate;** hatch; **underline, underscore;** prick, puncture, tattoo, riddle, pepper

20 **label, tag,** tab, ticket; stamp, seal; **brand, earmark;** hallmark; bar-code

21 **gesture, gesticulate; motion,** motion to; use body language; beckon, wiggle the finger at; wave the arms, wig-wag, saw the air; shrug, shrug the shoulders; pantomime, mime, mimic, imitate, ape, take off

22 **signal,** signalize, sign, give a signal, make a sign; speak; flash; **give the high sign** *or* **the nod** *or* a high five <nf>; nod; nudge, poke, kick, dig one in the ribs, touch; wink, glance, raise one's eyebrows, leer; hold up the hand; wave, wave the hand, wave a flag, **flag,** flag down; **unfurl a flag,** hoist a banner, break out a flag; **show one's colors,** exchange colors; **salute,** dip; dip a flag, hail, hail *and* speak; half-mast; give *or* sound an alarm, raise a cry; beat the drum, sound the trumpet

ADJS **23** **indicative,** indicatory, signifying; connotative, indicating, signifying, signalizing; **significant,** significative, meaningful; symptomatic, symptomatologic, symptomatological, diagnostic, pathognomonic, pathognomonical; evidential, **designative,** denotative, denominative, naming; **suggestive,** implicative; **expressive,** demonstrative, exhibitive, telltale; representative; identifying, identificational; individual, peculiar, idiosyncratic; **emblematic, symbolic,** emblematical, symbolical; symbolistic, symbological, typical; figurative, figural, metaphorical; ideographic; semiotic, semantic; nominal, diagrammatic

24 **marked, designated,** flagged; signed, signposted; monogrammed, individualized, personal; own-brand, own-label; punctuated

25 **gestural,** gesticulative, gesticulatory; kinesic; pantomimic, **in pantomime,** in dumb show

518 MEANING

NOUNS **1** **meaning, significance, signification,** *significatum* <L>, *signifié* <Fr>, point, **sense,** idea, **purport, import,** where one is coming from <nf>;

reference, referent; intension, extension; **denotation;** dictionary meaning, lexical meaning; emotive *or* affective meaning, undertone, overtone, coloring; relevance, bearing, **relation,** pertinence *or* pertinency; **substance, gist,** pith, core, spirit, essence, gravamen, last word, name of the game *and* meat *and* potatoes *and* bottom line <nf>; **drift,** tenor; sum, sum and substance; **literal meaning, true** *or* **real meaning, unadorned meaning; secondary meaning, connotation** 519.2; more than meets the eye, what is read between the lines; effect, force, impact, consequence, practical consequence, response; shifted *or* displaced meaning, implied meaning, **implication** 519.2; Aesopian *or* Aesopic meaning, Aesopian *or* Aesopic language; totality of associations *or* references *or* relations, value; syntactic *or* structural meaning, grammatical meaning; symbolic meaning; metaphorical *or* transferred meaning; semantic content, deep structure; semantic field, semantic domain, semantic cluster; range *or* span of meaning, scope; topic, subject matter

2 **intent, intention, purpose,** point, **aim, object,** end, **design,** plan; value, worth, use

3 **explanation, definition,** construction, sense-distinction, **interpretation** 341

4 **acceptation,** acception, accepted *or* received meaning; **usage,** acceptance

5 **meaningfulness,** suggestiveness, expressiveness, pregnancy; **significance,** significancy, significantness; intelligibility, interpretability, readability; pithiness, meatiness, sententiousness; importance, import

6 <units> sign, symbol, significant, type, token, icon, verbal icon, lexeme, sememe, morpheme, glosseme, **word,** term, phrase, utterance, lexical form *or* item, linguistic form, semantic *or* semiotic *or* semasiological unit; text; synonym, antonym; derivation, etymology

7 **semantics,** semiotic, semiotics, significs, semasiology, semiology, linguistics; lexicology

VERBS **8** **mean, signify, denote, connote,** import, spell, have the sense of, be construed as, have the force of; be talking *and* be talking about <nf>; **stand for, symbolize; imply,** suggest, argue, breathe, bespeak, betoken, **indicate; refer to; mean something,** mean a lot, have impact, come home, hit one where one lives *and* hit one close to home <nf>; get across, convey

9 **intend,** have in mind, seek to communicate

ADJS **10** **meaningful,** meaning, **significant,** significative; literal, explicit; **denotative, connotative,** denotational, connotational, intensional, extensional, associational; **referential; symbolic, metaphorical,** figurative, allegorical, idiomatic; transferred, extended; intelligible, interpretable, definable, readable; **suggestive,** indicative, **expressive; pregnant,** full of meaning, loaded *or* laden *or* fraught *or* freighted *or* heavy with significance; **pithy, meaty,** sententious, substantial, full of substance; pointed, full of point

11 **meant,** implied 519.7, **intended**

12 **semantic,** semantological, semiotic, semasiological, semiological; linguistic; lexological; **symbolic,** signific, iconic, lexemic, sememic, glossematic, morphemic, **verbal,** phrasal, lexical, philological; structural

ADVS **13** **meaningfully,** meaningly, **significantly;** suggestively, indicatively; **expressively**

519 LATENT MEANINGFULNESS

NOUNS **1** **latent meaningfulness, latency,** latentness, delitescence, latent content; **potentiality,** virtuality, possibility; dormancy 173.4

2 **implication, connotation, import,** latent *or* underlying *or* implied meaning, ironic suggestion *or* implication, more than meets the eye, what is read between the lines; meaning 518; **suggestion,** allusion; coloration, tinge, undertone, overtone, undercurrent, more than meets the eye *or* ear, something between the lines, intimation, touch, nuance, innuendo; **code word,** weasel word; **hint** 551.4; **inference, supposition,** presupposition, assumption, presumption; secondary *or* transferred *or* metaphorical sense; undermeaning, undermention, subsidiary sense, subsense, **subtext;** Aesopian *or* Aesopic meaning, cryptic *or* hidden *or* esoteric *or* arcane meaning, occult meaning; **symbolism, allegory**

VERBS **3** **be latent, underlie, lie under the surface, lurk,** lie hid *or* low, lie beneath, hibernate, lie dormant, smolder; be read between the lines; make no sign, escape notice

4 **imply, implicate, involve,** import, connote, entail 772.4; mean 518.8; **suggest,** lead one to believe, bring to mind; **hint, insinuate, infer,** intimate 551.10; **allude to,** point to from afar, point indirectly to; write between the lines; allegorize; **suppose, presuppose,** assume, presume, take for granted; mean to say *or* imply *or* suggest

ADJS **5** **latent, lurking,** lying low, delitescent, **hidden** 346.11, obscured, obfuscated, veiled, muffled, covert, occult, mystic <old>, cryptic; esoteric; **underlying, under the surface,** submerged; **between the lines;** hibernating, sleeping, dormant 173.14; **potential,** unmanifested, virtual, possible

6 **suggestive, allusive,** allusory, **indicative, inferential; insinuating,** insinuative, insinuatory;

ironic; **implicative,** implicatory, implicational; referential

7 **implied,** implicated, involved; **meant,** indicated; **suggested, intimated, insinuated, hinted; inferred, supposed,** assumed, presumed, presupposed; hidden, arcane, esoteric, **cryptic,** Aesopian *or* Aesopic

8 **tacit, implicit, implied, understood,** taken for granted

9 **unexpressed,** unpronounced, **unsaid, unspoken, unuttered,** undeclared, unbreathed, unvoiced, wordless, silent; **unmentioned,** untalked-of, **untold,** unsung, unproclaimed, unpublished; unwritten, unrecorded

10 **symbolic,** symbolical, allegoric, allegorical, figural, figurative, tropological, **metaphoric,** metaphorical, anagogic, anagogical

ADVS **11** **latently,** underlyingly; **potentially,** virtually

12 **suggestively, allusively, inferentially,** insinuatingly; impliedly; by suggestion, by allusion, etc

13 **tacitly, implicitly,** unspokenly, wordlessly, silently

520 MEANINGLESSNESS

NOUNS **1** **meaninglessness,** unmeaningness, **senselessness,** nonsensicality; **insignificance,** unsignificancy, irrelevance; **noise,** mere noise, static, empty sound, talking to hear oneself talk, phatic communion; inanity, emptiness, nullity; "a tale told by an idiot, full of sound and fury, signifying nothing"—Shakespeare; purposelessness, aimlessness, futility; dead letter; no bearing

2 **nonsense, stuff and nonsense,** pack of nonsense, **folderol, balderdash,** *niaiserie* <Fr>, flummery, trumpery, **rubbish,** trash, *narrishkeit* <Yiddish>, vaporing, fudge; **humbug,** gammon, hocus-pocus; rant, claptrap, fustian, rodomontade, bombast, absurdity 923.3; stultiloquence, **twaddle,** twiddle-twaddle, fiddle-faddle, fiddledeedee, fiddlesticks, **blather, babble,** babblement, bibble-babble, **gabble,** gibble-gabble, **blabber, gibber, jabber,** prate, prattle, palaver, rigmarole *or* rigamarole, galimatias, skimble-skamble, drivel, drool; **gibberish,** jargon, mumbo jumbo, **double-talk,** evasion, equivoke, ambiguity, amphigory, gobbledygook <nf>; glossolalia, speaking in tongues

3 <nf terms> **bullshit,** shit, crap *or* crapola, horseshit, horsefeathers, bull, poppycock, bosh, tosh <Brit>, applesauce, bunkum, bunk, garbage, guff, hogwash, jive, bilge, piffle, moonshine, flapdoodle, a crock *or* a crock of shit, claptrap, tommyrot, rot, hogwash, malarkey, double Dutch, hokum, hooey, bushwa, balls <Brit>, blah-blah-blah, baloney, blarney, tripe, hot air, gas, wind, waffle <Brit>

VERBS **4** **be meaningless, mean nothing,** signify nothing, not mean a thing, not convey anything; not make sense, not figure <nf>, not compute; **not register,** not ring any bells

5 **talk nonsense, twaddle, piffle,** waffle <Brit>, **blather,** blether, **blabber, babble, gabble,** gibble-gabble, **jabber, gibber,** prate, **prattle,** rattle, spiel <nf>; talk through one's hat; gas *and* bull *and* **bullshit** *and* throw the bull *and* shoot off one's mouth *and* shoot the bull <nf>; **drivel,** vapor, drool, run off at the mouth <nf>; speak in tongues; not mean what one says

ADJS **6** **meaningless,** unmeaning, **senseless,** purportless, importless, nondenotative, nonconnotative; **insignificant,** unsignificant; empty, inane, null; phatic, garbled, scrambled; **purposeless, aimless,** designless, **without rhyme or reason**

7 **nonsensical,** silly, poppycockish <nf>; **foolish, absurd;** twaddling, twaddly; rubbishy, trashy; skimble-skamble; Pickwickian

ADVS **8** **meaninglessly,** unmeaningly, nondenotatively, nonconnotatively, **senselessly, nonsensically;** insignificantly, unsignificantly; **purposelessly,** aimlessly

521 INTELLIGIBILITY

NOUNS **1** **intelligibility, comprehensibility, apprehensibility,** prehensibility, graspability, **understandability,** knowability, cognizability, scrutability, penetrability, fathomableness, decipherability; recognizability, readability, interpretability; articulateness

2 **clearness, clarity; plainness, distinctness,** microscopical distinctness, explicitness, clear-cutness, definition; **lucidity,** limpidity, pellucidity, crystal *or* crystaline clarity, crystallinity, perspicuity, perspicuousness, transpicuity, transparency; **simplicity,** straightforwardness, directness, literalness; unmistakableness, unequivocalness, unambiguousness, unambiguity; **coherence,** connectedness, consistency, structure; plain language, plain style, plain English, plain speech, unadorned style; clear, plaintext, unencoded text; lowest common denominator

3 **legibility,** decipherability, **readability**

VERBS **4** **be understandable, make sense;** be plain *or* clear, be obvious, be self-evident, be self-explanatory; **speak for itself,** tell its own tale, speak volumes, have no secrets, put up no barriers; read easily

5 <be understood> **get over** *or* **across** <nf>, come through, **register** <nf>, **penetrate, sink in,** soak in; dawn on, be glimpsed; become apparent

6 **make clear,** make it clear, **let it be understood,** make crystal-clear, make oneself understood, get *or* put over *or* across <nf>; **simplify,** put in plain words *or* plain English, put in words of one syllable, spell out <nf>; elucidate, **explain,** define, demonstrate, explicate, **clarify** 341.10; illuminate, enlighten; put one in the picture <Brit>; disambiguate; demystify, descramble; **decode, decipher;** make available to all, popularize, vulgarize

7 **understand, comprehend, apprehend,** have, **know, conceive, realize,** appreciate, have no problem with, ken <Scot>, savvy <nf>, sense, make sense out of, make something of, make out, make heads or tails of; **fathom, follow; grasp, seize,** get hold of, grasp *or* seize the meaning, be seized of, take, **take in,** catch, **catch on,** get the meaning of, latch onto; **master, learn** 570.6–551.15,14; **assimilate, absorb, digest**

8 <nf terms> **read one loud and clear,** read, read one, dig, get the idea, be with one, be with it, get the message, get the word, get the picture, get up to speed, get into *or* through one's head *or* thick head, get, get it, catch *or* get the drift, have it taped, have it down pat, see where one is coming from, hear loud and clear, hear what one is saying, grok, have hold of, get the hang of, get *or* have a fix on, know like the back *or* palm of one's hand, know inside out

9 **perceive, see, discern, make out,** descry; see the light, see daylight <nf>, wake up, wake up to, tumble to <nf>, come alive; **see through,** see to the bottom of, penetrate, see into, pierce, plumb; see at a glance, see with half an eye; get *or* have someone's number *and* read someone like a book <nf>

ADJS 10 **intelligible, comprehensible, apprehensible,** prehensible, graspable, **knowable,** cognizable, scrutable, **fathomable,** decipherable, plumbable, penetrable, interpretable; **understandable,** easily understood, easy to understand, exoteric; readable; articulate

11 **clear, crystal-clear,** clear as crystal, clear as day, clear as the nose on one's face; **plain, distinct,** microscopically distinct, plain as pikestaffs; **definite,** defined, well-defined, **clear-cut,** clean-cut, crisp, obvious, made easy; **direct, literal;** simple, **straightforward; explicit, express; unmistakable, unequivocal,** univocal, unambiguous, unconfused; **loud and clear** <nf>; **lucid,** pellucid, limpid, crystal-clear, crystalline, perspicuous, transpicuous, **transparent,** translucent, luminous; **coherent,** connected, consistent

12 **legible, decipherable, readable,** fair; uncoded, unenciphered, in the clear, clear, plaintext

ADVS 13 **intelligibly, understandably, comprehensibly,** apprehensibly; articulately; **clearly, lucidly,** limpidly, pellucidly, perspicuously, **simply, plainly, distinctly,** definitely; **coherently; explicitly, expressly; unmistakably, unequivocally,** unambiguously; in plain terms *or* words, in plain English, in no uncertain terms, in words of one syllable

14 **legibly,** decipherably, readably, fairly

522 UNINTELLIGIBILITY

NOUNS 1 **unintelligibility, incomprehensibility,** inapprehensibility, ungraspability, unseizability, **ununderstandability,** inconceivability, unknowability, incognizability, inscrutability, impenetrability, unfathomableness, unsearchableness, numinousness; **incoherence,** unconnectedness, ramblingness; inarticulateness; **ambiguity** 539, equivocation

2 **abstruseness,** reconditeness; crabbedness, crampedness, knottiness; **complexity,** intricacy, **complication** 799.1; **hardness, difficulty; profundity,** profoundness, deepness; esotericism, esotery

3 **obscurity,** obscuration, obscurantism, obfuscation, mumbo jumbo <nf>, mystification; perplexity; **unclearness,** unclarity, unplainness, opacity; **vagueness,** indistinctness, indeterminateness, fuzziness, shapelessness, amorphousness; murkiness, murk, mistiness, mist, fogginess, fog, darkness, dark

4 **illegibility,** unreadability; undecipherability, indecipherability; invisibility; scribble, scrawl, hen track <nf>

5 **unexpressiveness,** inexpressiveness, **expressionlessness,** impassivity; uncommunicativeness; straight face, deadpan <nf>, poker face <nf>

6 **inexplicability,** unexplainableness, uninterpretability, indefinability, undefinability, unaccountableness; insolvability, inextricability; **enigmaticalness,** mysteriousness, mystery, strangeness, weirdness

7 <something unintelligible> Greek, Choctaw, double Dutch; gibberish, babble, jargon, garbage, gubbish, gobbledygook, noise, Babel; scramble, jumble, garble, muddle; purple prose; argot, cant, slang, secret language, Aesopian *or* Aesopic language, code, cipher, cryptogram; glossolalia, gift of tongues; enigma, riddle; double meaning

8 **enigma, mystery, puzzle,** puzzlement; Chinese puzzle, crossword puzzle, jigsaw puzzle; **problem,**

puzzling *or* baffling problem, why; question, question mark, vexed *or* perplexed question, enigmatic question, sixty-four dollar question <nf>; **perplexity;** obscure point; knot, knotty point, crux, point to be solved; **puzzler,** poser, brain twister *or* teaser <nf>, sticker <nf>; mind-boggler, **floorer** *or* **stumper** <nf>; nut to crack, **hard** *or* **tough nut to crack;** tough proposition <nf>, "a riddle wrapped in a mystery inside an enigma"—Winston Churchill

9 **riddle, conundrum,** paradox, charade, rebus; brainteaser, Chinese puzzle, tangram, acrostic, logogriph, anagram; riddle of the Sphinx, squaring of the circle

VERBS 10 **be incomprehensible, not make sense,** be too deep, go over one's head, defy comprehension, be beyond one, beat one <nf>, elude *or* escape one, lose one, need explanation *or* clarification *or* translation, be Greek to, pass comprehension *or* understanding, not penetrate, make one's head swim; **baffle, perplex** 971.13, riddle, be sphinxlike, speak in riddles; speak in tongues; talk double Dutch, babble, gibber, ramble, drivel, mean nothing

11 **not understand, be unable to comprehend,** not have the first idea, not get *or* not get it <nf>, be unable to get into *or* through one's head *or* thick skull; be out of one's depth, be at sea, be lost; **not know what to make of,** make nothing of, not have the slightest idea, not be able to account for, not make head or tail of, not register; be unable to see, not see the wood for the trees; go over one's head, escape one; give up, pass <nf>; rack one's brains

12 **make unintelligible, scramble,** jumble, garble, mix up; encode, encipher; **obscure,** obfuscate, mystify, shadow; **complicate** 799.3

ADJS 13 **unintelligible, incomprehensible,** inapprehensible, ungraspable, unseizable, **ununderstandable,** unknowable, incognizable; **unfathomable, inscrutable,** impenetrable, unsearchable, numinous; **ambiguous,** equivocal; **incoherent,** unconnected, rambling; **inarticulate; past comprehension,** beyond one's comprehension, beyond understanding; Greek to one

14 **hard to understand, difficult, hard,** tough <nf>, beyond one, **over one's head,** beyond *or* out of one's depth; knotty, cramp, crabbed; intricate, **complex,** overtechnical, perplexed, **complicated** 799.4; **scrambled,** jumbled, **garbled;** Johnsonian

15 **obscure,** obscured, obfuscated; **vague, indistinct,** indeterminate, undiscernible, fuzzy, shapeless, amorphous, obfuscatory; unclear, unplain, opaque, muddy, **clear as mud** *and* clear as ditch water <nf>; **dark, dim,** blind <old>, shadowy; **murky,** cloudy, foggy, fogbound, hazy, misty, nebulous

16 **recondite, abstruse,** abstract, transcendental; **profound, deep;** hidden 346.11; arcane, **esoteric,** occult; **secret** 345.11

17 **enigmatic,** enigmatical, cryptic, cryptical; sphinxlike; **perplexing, puzzling;** riddling; logogriphic, anagrammatic, mysterious

18 **inexplicable, unexplainable,** uninterpretable, undefinable, indefinable, funny, funny peculiar <nf>, **unaccountable; insolvable,** unsolvable, insoluble, inextricable; mysterious, mystic, mystical, shrouded *or* wrapped *or* enwrapped in mystery

19 **illegible, unreadable, unclear; undecipherable,** indecipherable

20 **inexpressive,** unexpressive, impassive, po-faced <Brit>; uncommunicative; **expressionless; vacant, empty, blank;** glassy, glazed, glazed-over, fishy, wooden; deadpan, poker-faced <nf>

ADVS 21 **unintelligibly, incomprehensibly,** inapprehensibly, ununderstandably

22 **obscurely, vaguely, indistinctly,** indeterminately; **unclearly,** unplainly; illegibly

23 reconditely, **abstrusely;** esoterically, occultly

24 **inexplicably, unexplainably,** undefinably, bafflingly, **unaccountably, enigmatically; mysteriously,** mystically

25 **expressionlessly, vacantly, blankly, emptily,** woodenly, glassily, fishily

PREPS 26 **beyond,** past, above; **too deep for**

PHRS 27 **I don't understand, I can't see,** I don't see how *or* why, **it beats me** <nf>, you've got me <nf>, **it's beyond me,** it's too deep for me, it has me guessing, I don't have the first *or* foggiest idea, it's Greek to me, I'm clueless <Brit>; **I give up,** I pass <nf>

523 LANGUAGE

NOUNS 1 **language** <see list>, speech, tongue, *lingua* <L>, spoken language, natural language; **talk, parlance, locution,** phraseology, **idiom, lingo** <nf>; dialect; idiolect, personal usage, individual speech habits *or* performance, parole; code *or* system of oral communication, individual speech, competence, langue; **usage,** use of words; **language type; language family, subfamily, language group;** area language, regional language; world language, universal language

2 **dead language,** ancient language, lost language; archaic language, archaism, archaic speech; parent language; classical language; living language, vernacular; sacred language *or* tongue

3 **mother tongue,** native language *or* tongue, natal tongue, native speech, vernacular, first language

4 **standard language,** standard *or* prestige dialect,

acrolect; national language, official language; educated speech *or* language; literary language, written language, formal written language; classical language; correct *or* good English, **Standard English, the King's** *or* **Queen's English,** Received Standard, Received Pronunciation

5 **nonformal language** *or* **speech,** nonformal standard speech, **spoken language, colloquial language** *or* **speech,** vernacular language *or* speech, vernacular; **slang;** colloquialism, colloquial usage, conversationalism, vernacularism; ordinary language *or* speech; nonformal English, conversational English, colloquial English, English as it is spoken

6 **substandard** *or* nonstandard language *or* **speech,** nonformal language *or* speech; vernacular language *or* speech, **vernacular,** demotic language *or* speech, vulgate, vulgar tongue, common speech, low language; uneducated speech, illiterate speech; substandard usage; basilect; **nonformal**

7 **dialect, idiom;** class dialect; regional *or* local dialect; idiolect; subdialect; folk speech *or* dialect, patois; **provincialism, localism, regionalism,** regional accent 524.9; Canadian French, French Canadian; Pennsylvania Dutch, Pennsylvania German; Yankee, New England dialect; Brooklynese; Southern dialect *or* twang; Black English, Afro-Americanese; Cockney; Yorkshire; Midland, Midland dialect; Anglo-Indian; Australian English; Gullah; Acadian, Cajun; dialect atlas, linguistic atlas; isogloss, bundle of isoglosses; speech community; linguistic community; linguistic ambience; speech *or* linguistic island, relic area

8 <idioms> Anglicism, Briticism, Englishism; Americanism, Yankeeism; Westernism, Southernism; Gallicism, Frenchism; Irishism, Hibernicism; Canadianism, Scotticism, Germanism, Russianism, Latinism, etc

9 **jargon, lingo** <nf>, **slang, cant, argot, patois, patter, vernacular;** vocabulary, terminology, nomenclature, phraseology; gobbledygook, mumbo jumbo, gibberish; **nonformal;** taboo language, vulgar language; obscene language, scatology; doublespeak, bizspeak, mediaspeak, policyspeak, technospeak, winespeak

10 <jargons> Academese, cinemese, collegese, constablese, ecobabble, economese, sociologese, legalese, pedagese, societyese, stagese, telegraphese, Varietyese, Wall Streetese, journalese, newspaperese, newspeak, officialese, federalese, Pentagonese, Washingtonese, medical Greek, medicalese, businessese *or* businessspeak, computerese, technobabble, technospeak, psychobabble; Yinglish, Franglais, Spanglish; Eurojargon; man-talk, bloke-talk <Brit nf>, woman-talk, hen-talk <nf>; shoptalk; pig Latin; glossolalia

11 **lingua franca,** international language, jargon, **pidgin,** trade language; auxiliary language, interlanguage; creolized language, creole language, creole; koine; diplomatic language, business language, language *or* linguistic universal; pidgin English, talkee-talkee, Bêche-de-Mer, Beach-la-mar; Kitchen Kaffir; Chinook *or* Oregon Jargon; Sabir; Esperanto; artificial language, sign language, sign, American Sign Language *or* ASL *or* Ameslan; Morse code, cryptography, cryptanalysis; computer language; shorthand, stenography

12 language family; Indo-European, Indo-Iranian, Anatolian, Hellenic, Tocharian, Italic, Celtic, Germanic, Baltic, Slavic; Finno-Ugric; Afroasiatic *or* Hamito-Semitic; Sino-Tibetan; Austronesian

13 **linguistics,** linguistic science, science of language; glottology, glossology <old>; linguistic analysis; linguistic terminology, metalanguage; **philology;** paleography; speech origins, language origins, bowwow theory, dingdong theory, pooh-pooh theory; language study, foreign-language study, linguistic theory

14 language element, morpheme, phoneme, grapheme; letter, alphabet, word, phrase, sentence; grammar, syntax, part of speech

15 **linguist,** linguistic scientist, linguistician, linguistic scholar; philologist, philologer, philologian; philologaster; **grammarian,** grammatist; grammaticaster; **etymologist,** etymologer; **lexicologist; lexicographer,** glossographer, glossarist; phoneticist, phonetician, phonemicist, phonologist, orthoepist; dialectician, dialectologist; semanticist, semasiologist; paleographer; logophile; morphologist, orthographer

16 **polyglot,** linguist, **bilingual** *or* diglot, trilingual, multilingual

17 **colloquializer;** jargonist, jargoneer, jargonizer; slangster

VERBS **18** **speak, talk,** use language, communicate orally *or* verbally; use nonformal speech *or* style, colloquialize, vernacularize; jargon, jargonize, cant; patter; utter, verbalize, articulate

ADJS **19** **linguistic,** lingual, glottological, glossological <old>; descriptive, structural, glottochronological, lexicostatistical, psycholinguistic, sociolinguistic, metalinguistic; **philological;** lexicological, lexicographic, lexicographical; syntactic, syntactical, **grammatical;** grammatic, semantic 518.12; phonetic 524.30, phonemic, phonological; morphological; morphophonemic, graphemic, paleographic, paleographical

20 **vernacular, colloquial, conversational, unliterary,**

nonformal, informal, demotic, spoken, vulgar, vulgate; unstudied, familiar, common, everyday; jargonistic; **substandard,** nonformal, uneducated, low

21 **jargonish,** jargonal; **slang,** slangy; taboo, four-letter, obscene, vulgar; scatological; rhyming slang

22 **idiomatic; dialect,** dialectal, dialectological; provincial, regional, local

WORD ELEMENTS 23 lingu-, linguo-, lingui-, gloss-, glosso-, glott-, glotto-

24 **types of language**

affixing
agglutinative
analytic
fusional
incorporative
inflectional
isolating
monosyllabic
polysyllabic
polysynthetic
polytonic
symbolic
synthetic
tonal

524 SPEECH

<utterance>

NOUNS 1 **speech, talk,** the power *or* faculty of speech, the verbal *or* oral faculty, talking, speaking, **discourse,** colloquy, oral communication, vocal *or* voice *or* viva-voce communication, communication, verbal intercourse; **palaver, prattle, gab** and jaw-jaw <nf>; rapping *and* yakking *and* yakkety-yak <nf>; **words, accents;** chatter 540.3; conversation 541; elocution 543.1; **language** 523; "the mirror of the soul"—Publilius Syrus

2 **utterance, speaking,** *parole* <Fr>, spoken language, vocalization, locution <old>, phonation, phonetics; **speech act,** linguistic act *or* behavior; string, utterance string, sequence of phonemes, expression; **voice, tongue,** vocalism, parlance; word of mouth, parol, the spoken word; vocable, **word** 526

3 **remark, statement,** earful *and* crack *and* one's two cents' worth <nf>, **word,** say, **saying, utterance, observation, reflection, expression; note,** thought, **mention; assertion,** averment, allegation, affirmation, pronouncement, position, dictum; **declaration;** interjection, exclamation; question 938.10; answer 939; address, greeting, apostrophe; sentence, phrase; subjoinder, Parthian shot

4 **articulateness,** articulacy, oracy, readiness *or* facility of speech; **eloquence** 544; way with words, word power

5 **articulation,** uttering, phonation, voicing, giving voice, **vocalization; pronunciation, enunciation,** utterance; **delivery, attack**

6 **intonation, inflection, modulation;** intonation pattern *or* contour, intonation *or* inflection of voice, speech tune *or* melody; suprasegmental, suprasegmental phoneme; **tone, pitch;** pitch accent, tonic accent

7 manner of speaking, way of saying, mode of expression *or* speech; **tone of voice, voice,** *voce* <Ital>, **tone;** speaking voice, voice quality, vocal style, **timbre;** voice qualifier; paralinguistic communication

8 **accent,** regional accent, brogue, twang, burr, drawl, broad accent, trill, whine, nasality, stridor; **foreign accent;** guttural accent, clipped accent; broken English; speech impediment, speech defect; speech community, isogloss

9 pause, juncture, open juncture, close juncture; terminal, clause terminal, rising terminal, falling terminal; sandhi; word boundary, clause boundary; pause

10 **accent,** accentuation, stress accent; **emphasis, stress, word stress;** ictus, beat, rhythmical stress; rhythm, rhythmic pattern, **cadence;** prosody, prosodics, metrics; stress pattern; level of stress; primary stress, secondary stress, tertiary stress, weak stress

11 vowel quantity, **quantity,** mora; long vowel, short vowel, full vowel, reduced vowel

12 **speech sound,** phone, vocable, phonetic unit *or* entity; puff of air, aspiration; stream of air, airstream, glottalic airstream; articulation, manner of articulation; **stop,** plosive, explosive, mute, check, occlusive, **affricate,** continuant, **liquid,** lateral, **nasal;** point *or* place of articulation; voice, voicing; sonority; aspiration, palatalization, labialization, pharyngealization, glottalization; surd, voiceless sound; sonant, voiced sound; **consonant; semivowel,** glide, transition sound; velar, guttural, voiced consonant, frictionless continuant, labial, labio-dental, labio-nasal, spirant, sibilant, aspirate, glottal stop, fricative, sonant, polyphone; vocalic, syllabic nucleus, syllabic peak, peak; vocoid; **vowel;** monophthong, **diphthong,** triphthong; **syllable; phoneme,** segmental phoneme, morphophoneme, digraph; modification, assimilation, dissimilation; **allophone;** parasitic vowel, epenthetic vowel, svarabhakti vowel, prothetic vowel; vowel gradation, vowel mutation; doubletalk

13 **phonetics,** articulatory phonetics, acoustic phonetics; phonology; morphophonemics, morphophonology; orthoepy; sound *or* phonetic law; pronunciation; phonography; sound shift, *Lautverschiebung* <Ger>; umlaut, mutation, ablaut, gradation; rhotacism, betacism; Grimm's law, Verner's law, Grassmann's law

14 **phonetician,** phonetist, phoneticist; orthoepist

15 **ventriloquism,** ventriloquy; **ventriloquist**

16 talking machine, sonovox, voder, vocoder

17 **talker, speaker,** sayer, utterer, patterer; chatterbox 540.4; conversationalist 541.8

18 **vocal** *or* **speech organ,** articulator, voice, mouth; tongue, apex, tip, blade, dorsum, back; vocal cords *or* bands, vocal processes, vocal folds; voice box, larynx, Adam's apple; syrinx; arytenoid cartilages; glottis, vocal chink, epiglottis; lips, teeth, palate, hard palate, soft palate, velum, alveolus, teeth ridge, alveolar ridge, uvula; nasal cavity, oral cavity; pharynx, throat *or* pharyngeal cavity

VERBS 19 **speak, talk; patter** *or* **gab** *or* wag the tongue <nf>; mouth; chatter 540.5; converse 541.9; declaim 543.10

20 <nf terms> **yak,** yap, yakkety-yak, gab, spiel, chin, jaw, shoot off one's face *or* mouth, shoot *or* bat the breeze, beat *or* bat one's gums, bend one's ear, make chin music, rattle away, talk a blue streak, talk someone's ear *or* head off, flap one's jaw, natter <Brit>, spout off, sound off

21 **speak up, speak out, speak one's piece** *or* **one's mind,** pipe up, open one's mouth, open one's lips, say out, say loud *and* clear, say out loud, sound off, lift *or* raise one's voice, break silence, find one's tongue; take the floor; put in a word, get in a word edgewise *or* edgeway; **have one's say,** put in one's two cents worth <nf>, relieve oneself, get a load off one's mind <nf>, give vent *or* voice to, pour one's heart out

22 **say, utter, breathe,** sound, **voice,** vocalize, phonate, **articulate, enunciate, pronounce,** lip, give voice, give tongue, give utterance; whisper; **express,** give expression, verbalize, put in words, find words to express; **word,** formulate, put into words, couch, phrase 532.4; **present,** deliver; **emit,** give, raise, **let out,** out with, come *or* give out with, put *or* set forth, pour forth; throw off, fling off; chorus, chime; **tell,** communicate 343.6,7; **convey, impart,** disclose 351.4

23 **state, declare, assert,** aver, affirm, asseverate, allege; **say,** make a statement, send a message; **announce,** tell the world; **relate, recite;** quote; proclaim, nuncupate

24 **remark, comment, observe, note; mention,** speak <old>, let drop *or* fall, say by the way, make mention of; refer to, allude to, touch on, make reference to, call attention to; muse, reflect; opine <nf>; interject; blurt, blurt out, exclaim

25 <utter in a certain way> murmur, mutter, mumble, whisper, breathe, buzz, sigh; gasp, pant; exclaim, yell 59.6,8; sing, lilt, warble, chant, coo, chirp; pipe, flute; squeak; cackle, crow; bark, yelp, yap; growl, snap, snarl; hiss, sibilate; grunt, snort; roar, bellow, blare, trumpet, bray, blat, bawl, thunder, rumble, boom; scream, shriek, screech, squeal, squawk, yawp, squall; whine, wail, keen, blubber, sob; drawl, twang

26 **address, speak to, talk to,** bespeak, beg the ear of; **appeal to,** invoke; apostrophize; **approach; buttonhole,** take by the button *or* lapel; take aside, talk to in private, closet oneself with; **accost, call to, hail,** halloo, greet, salute, speak, speak fair

27 **pass one's lips, escape one's lips,** fall from the lips *or* mouth

28 inflect, modulate, intonate

ADJS 29 **speech; language, linguistic,** lingual; **spoken, uttered, said,** vocalized, **voiced, verbalized, pronounced, sounded, articulated, enunciated;** vocal, voiceful; **oral, verbal, unwritten,** *viva voce* <L>, nuncupative, parol

30 **phonetic,** phonic; articulatory, acoustic; intonated; pitched, pitch, **tonal,** tonic, oxytone, oxytonic, paroxytonic, barytone; **accented, stressed,** strong, heavy; unaccented, unstressed, weak, light, pretonic, atonic, posttonic; articulated; stopped, muted, checked, occlusive, nasal, nasalized, twangy, continuant, liquid, lateral, affricated; alveolabial, alveolar, alveolingual, etc; low, high, mid, open, broad, close; front, back, central; wide, lax, tense, narrow; voiced, sonant, voiceless, surd; rounded, unrounded, flat; aspirated; labialized; palatalized, soft, *mouillé* <Fr>; unpalatalized, hard; pharyngealized, glottalized; velar, guttural; burring, frictionless, labial, spirant, sibilant, fricative, polyphonic, polyphonous, digraphic; **consonant,** consonantal, semivowel, glide, **vowel;** vowellike, vocoid, vocalic, syllabic; monophthongal, diphthongal, triphthongal; **phonemic,** allophonic; assimilated, dissimilated

31 **speaking, talking;** articulate, talkative 540.9; **eloquent** 544.8, well-spoken; true-speaking, clean-speaking, plain-speaking, plain-spoken, **outspoken,** free-speaking, free-spoken, loud-speaking, loud-spoken, soft-speaking, soft-spoken; English-speaking, etc

32 ventriloquial, ventriloquistic

ADVS 33 **orally, vocally, verbally, by word of mouth,** *viva voce* <L>; from the lips of, from his own mouth

525 IMPERFECT SPEECH

NOUNS 1 **speech defect,** speech impediment, speech difficulty, impairment of speech; dysarthria, dysphasia, dysphrasia; dyslalia, dyslogia; idioglossia, idiolalia; **broken speech,** cracked *or* broken voice, broken tones *or* accents; indistinct *or* blurred *or* muzzy speech; loss of voice, aphonia; **nasalization,** nasal tone *or* accent, **twang,** nasal twang, talking through one's nose; **falsetto,** childish treble, artificial voice; **shake, quaver,** tremor; **lisp,** lisping; hiss, sibilation, lallation; **croak,** choked voice, hawking voice; crow;

harshness, dysphonia, hoarseness 58.2; voicelessness, loss of voice

2 **inarticulateness,** inarticulacy, inarticulation; thickness of speech

3 **stammering, stuttering,** hesitation, faltering, traulism, dysphemia, *balbuties* <L>; palilalia; stammer, stutter

4 **mumbling, muttering,** maundering; unintelligible speech; droning, drone; mumble, mutter; jabber, jibber, gibber, gibbering, gabble; whispering, whisper, susurration; mouthing; murmuring

5 **mispronunciation,** misspeaking, cacology, cacoepy; lallation, lambdacism, paralambdacism; rhotacism, pararhotacism; gammacism; mytacism; **corruption,** language pollution

6 **aphasia, agraphia;** aphrasia, aphrasia paranoica; **aphonia,** loss of speech, aphonia clericorum, hysterical aphonia, stage fright, aphonia paralytica, aphonia paranoica, spastic aphonia, mutism, muteness 51.2; voiceless speech, sign language

VERBS 7 **speak poorly,** talk incoherently, be unable to put two words together; have an impediment in one's speech, have a bone in one's neck *or* throat; speak thickly; **croak; lisp; shake, quaver; drawl;** mince, clip one's words; lose one's voice, get stage fright, clank *or* clank up *and* freeze <nf>, be struck dumb

8 **stammer, stutter,** stammer out; hesitate, falter, halt, mammer <Brit nf>, stumble; hem, haw, hum, **hum and haw, hem and haw**

9 **mumble, mutter,** maunder; drone, drone on; swallow one's words, speak drunkenly *or* incoherently; jabber, gibber, gabble; splutter, sputter; blubber, sob; whisper, susurrate; murmur; babble; mouth

10 nasalize, whine, **speak through one's nose,** twang, snuffle

11 **mispronounce,** misspeak, missay, **murder the King's** *or* **Queen's English**

ADJS 12 <imperfectly spoken> inarticulate, indistinct, blurred, muzzy, unintelligible; **mispronounced; shaky,** shaking, **quavering,** breaking, cracked, tremulous, titubant; **drawling,** drawly; **lisping; throaty, guttural,** thick, velar; stifled, choked, choking, strangled; **nasal, twangy,** breathy, adenoidal, snuffling; croaking, hawking; harsh, dysphonic, hoarse 58.15

13 **stammering, stuttering,** halting, hesitating, faltering, stumbling, balbutient; **aphasic;** aphrasic; aphonic, dumb, **mute** 51.12

526 WORD

NOUNS 1 **word,** free form, minimum free form, semanteme, **term,** name, expression, locution, linguistic form, lexeme; written unit; content word, function word; *logos* <Gk>, *verbum* <L>; verbalism, vocable, utterance, articulation; **usage;** syllable, polysyllable; homonym, homophone, homograph; monosyllable; synonym; metonym; antonym; easy word, hard word

2 **root,** etymon, primitive; eponym; derivative, derivation; cognate; doublet

3 **morphology,** morphemics; morphophonemics; **morpheme;** morph, allomorph; bound morpheme *or* form, free morpheme *or* form; difference of form, formal contrast; accidence; **inflection,** conjugation, declension; paradigm; derivation, word-formation; formative; root, radical; theme, stem; word element, combining form; **affix, suffix, prefix,** infix; proclitic, enclitic; affixation, infixation, suffixation, prefixation; morphemic analysis, immediate constituent *or* IC analysis, cutting; morphophonemic analysis

4 **word form,** formation, construction; back formation; clipped word; spoonerism; **compound;** *tatpurusha, dvandva, karmadharaya, dvigu, avyayibhava, bahuvrihi* <all Skt>; endocentric compound, exocentric compound; acronym, acrostic; paronym, conjugate; proclitic, enclitic

5 **technical term,** technicality; jargon word; jargon 523.9,10

6 **barbarism, corruption, vulgarism, impropriety,** taboo word, dirty word *and* four-letter word <nf>, swearword, naughty word, bad word, obscenity, expletive; **colloquialism, slang, localism** 526.6

7 **loan word,** borrowing, borrowed word, paronym; loan translation, calque; foreignism

8 **neologism,** neology, neoterism, new word *or* term, newfangled expression; **coinage;** new sense *or* meaning; **nonce word;** ghost word *or* name

9 **catchword,** catch phrase, shibboleth, slogan, cry; **pet expression,** byword, cliché; **buzzword,** vogue word, fad word, in-word; euphemism, **code word;** commonplace, hackneyed expression

10 long word, hard word, jawbreaker *or* jawtwister *and* two-dollar *or* five-dollar word <nf>, polysyllable; sesquipedalian, sesquipedalia <pl>; lexiphanicism, grandiloquence 545

11 hybrid word, **hybrid;** macaronicism, macaronic; hybridism, contamination; blendword, blend, portmanteau word, portmanteau, portmantologism, telescope word, **counterword;** ghost word

12 **archaism,** archaicism, antiquated word *or* expression; obsoletism, obsolete

13 **vocabulary, lexis, words, word stock,** wordhoard, stock of words; phraseology; **thesaurus,** Roget's; lexicon

14 **lexicology; lexicography,** lexigraphy, glossography;

onomastics 527.1, toponymics; **meaning** 518, semantics, semasiology; denotation, connotation

15 **etymology, derivation, origin,** word origin, word history, semantic history, etymon; historical linguistics, comparative linguistics; eponymy; folk etymology

16 echoic word, onomatopoeic word, onomatope; onomatopoeia; bowwow theory

17 **neologist, word-coiner,** neoterist; phraser, phrasemaker, phrasemonger

ADJS **18** **verbal,** vocabular, vocabulary

19 lexical, lexicologic, lexicological; lexigraphic, lexigraphical, **lexicographical,** lexicographic; glossographic, glossographical; etymological, etymologic, derivational; onomastic, onomatologic; onomasiological; echoic, onomatopoeic; conjugate, paronymous, paronymic

20 neological, neoterical

21 **morphological,** morphemic; morphophonemic; inflective, inflectional, paradigmatic, derivational; affixal, prefixal, infixal, suffixal

WORD ELEMENTS **22** log-, logo-, onomato-, -onym, -onymy

527 NOMENCLATURE

NOUNS **1** **nomenclature, terminology,** orismology, glossology <old>, vocabulary; onomatology, onomastics; toponymics, toponymy, place-names, place-naming; antonomasia; orismology; polyonymy; **taxonomy,** classification, systematics, cladistics, biosystematics, cytotaxonomy, binomial nomenclature, binomialism, Linnaean method, trinomialism; kingdom, phylum, class, order, family, genus, species

2 **naming, calling, denomination,** appellation, designation, designating, styling, terming, definition, identification; **christening,** baptism; dubbing; nicknaming

3 **name, appellation,** appellative, **denomination, designation, style,** heading, *nomen* <L>, cognomen, cognomination, full name; proper name *or* noun; moniker *and* handle <nf>; **title,** honorific; empty title *or* name; **label, tag; epithet,** byword; **scientific name,** trinomen, trinomial name, binomen, binomial name; *nomen nudum* <L>, hyponym; tautonym; typonym; middle name; eponym; namesake; secret name, cryptonym, euonym, password; professional title; title of respect *or* address; military title; place name, toponym; trade name, trademark

4 **first name,** forename, **Christian name, given name,** baptismal name; **middle name**

5 **surname, last name, family name, cognomen,** byname; **maiden name;** married name; patronymic, matronymic

6 <Latin terms> *praenomen, nomen, agnomen, cognomen*

7 **nickname, sobriquet,** byname, cognomen; epithet, agnomen; **pet name,** diminutive, hypocoristic, affectionate name

8 **alias, pseudonym,** anonym, **assumed name,** false *or* fictitious name, *nom de guerre* <Fr>; **pen name, nom de plume;** stage name, *nom de théâtre* <Fr>, professional name; John Doe, Jane Doe, Richard Roe

9 **misnomer,** wrong name

10 **signature,** sign manual, **autograph, hand, John Hancock** <nf>; mark, mark of signature, cross, christcross, X; initials; subscription; countersignature, countersign, countermark, counterstamp; endorsement; visa, *visé* <Fr>; monogram, cipher, device; seal, sigil, signet

VERBS **11** **name, denominate,** nominate, **designate, call, term, style, dub,** color <nf>; specify; define, identify; title, entitle; **label, tag; nickname; christen,** baptize

12 **misname,** misnomer, **miscall,** misterm, misdesignate

13 **be called, be known by** *or* as, go by, go as, **go by the name of,** go *or* pass under the name of, bear the name of, rejoice in the name of; go under an assumed *or* a false name, have an alias

ADJS **14** **named, called,** yclept <old>, **styled, titled,** denominated, denominate <old>, **known as,** known by the name of, designated, termed, dubbed, identified as; christened, baptized; what one may well *or* fairly *or* properly *or* fitly call

15 **nominal,** cognominal; **titular, in name only,** nominative, formal; **so-called,** quasi; would-be, *soi-disant* <Fr>; **self-called, self-styled,** self-christened; honorific; agnominal, epithetic, epithetical; hypocoristic, diminutive; by name, by whatever name, under any other name; **alias,** a k a *or* also known as

16 denominative, nominative, appellative; eponymous, eponymic

17 **terminological,** nomenclatural, orismological; onomastic; toponymic, toponymous; taxonomic, classificatory, binomial, Linnaean, trinomial

WORD ELEMENTS **18** onomato-, -onym, -onymy

528 ANONYMITY

NOUNS **1** **anonymity, anonymousness, namelessness; incognito;** cover, cover name; code name; anonym; unknown quantity, no-name; Unknown Soldier; Anon.

2 **what's-its-name** *and* **what's-his-name** *and* what's-his-face *and* what's-her-name *and* **what-you-may-call-it** *and* whatchamacallit *and* what-you-may-call-'em *and* what-d'ye-call-'em *and* what-d'ye-call-it *and* whatzit <nf>; *je ne sais quoi* <Fr>, I don't know what; such-and-such; **so-and-so,** certain person, X *or* Mr X; you-know-who

ADJS 3 **anonymous, anon; nameless, unnamed,** unidentified, undesignated, unspecified, innominate, without a name, **unknown;** undefined; unacknowledged; **incognito;** cryptonymous, cryptonymic

529 PHRASE

NOUNS 1 **phrase, expression, locution, utterance,** usage, term, verbalism; **word-group,** fixed expression, construction, endocentric construction, headed group, syntagm; syntactic structure; noun phrase, verb phrase, verb complex, adverbial phrase, adjectival phrase, prepositional phrase; conditional phrase; **clause,** coordinate clause, subordinate clause, independent clause; **sentence,** period, periodic sentence; **paragraph; idiom,** idiotism, phrasal idiom; turn of phrase *or* expression, peculiar expression, manner *or* way of speaking; set phrase *or* term; conventional *or* common *or* standard phrase; phraseogram, phraseograph; maxim, adage, moral, proverb, slogan, motto, quotation, quote, sound bite

2 **diction, phrasing;** phraseology, choice of words, wording

3 **phraser, phrasemaker,** phrasemonger, phraseman

ADJS 4 **phrasal,** phrase; phrasey

5 in set phrases *or* terms, in good set terms, in round terms

530 GRAMMAR

NOUNS 1 **grammar,** rules of language, linguistic structure, syntactic structure, sentence structure; "the rule and pattern of speech"—Horace; grammaticalness, well-formedness, grammaticality, grammatical theory; **traditional grammar, school grammar;** descriptive grammar, **structural grammar;** case grammar; phrase-structure grammar; generative grammar, **transformational grammar, transformational generative grammar;** comparative grammar; tagmemic analysis; glossematics; stratificational grammar; **parsing,** construing, grammatical analysis; **morphology** 526.3; **phonology** 524.13, good grammar, good English, Standard English, correct grammar

2 **syntax, structure, syntactic structure,** word order, word arrangement; syntactics, syntactic analysis; immediate constituent analysis *or* IC analysis, cutting; phrase structure; surface structure, shallow structure, deep structure, underlying structure; levels, ranks, strata; tagmeme, form-function unit, slot, filler, slot *and* filler; **function, subject, predicate, complement, object,** direct object, indirect object, **modifier,** qualifier, sentence *or* construction modifier, appositive, attribute, attributive; inflection, diminuitive, intensive, formative; asyndeton, syndeton, apposition, hypotaxis, parataxis

3 **part of speech,** form class, major form class, function class; function *or* empty *or* form word; **adjective,** adjectival, attributive; **adverb,** adverbial; **preposition;** verbal adjective, gerundive; **participle,** present participle, past participle, perfect participle; **conjunction,** subordinating conjunction, coordinating conjunction, conjunctive adverb, adversative conjunction, copula, copulative, copulative conjunction, correlative conjunction, disjunctive, disjunctive conjunction; **interjection,** exclamatory noun *or* adjective; **particle**

4 **verb,** transitive, transitive verb, intransitive, intransitive verb, impersonal verb, neuter verb, deponent verb, defective verb, reflexive verb; predicate; finite verb; linking verb, copula; verbal, verbid, nonfinite verb form; **infinitive; auxiliary verb,** auxiliary, modal auxiliary; phrasal verb; verb phrase; present participle, past participle, perfect participle

5 **noun, pronoun,** substantive, substantival, common noun, proper noun, concrete noun, abstract noun, collective noun, quotation noun, hypostasis, adherent noun, adverbial noun; verbal noun, gerund; nominal; noun phrase; mass noun, count noun

6 **article,** definite article, indefinite article; determiner, noun determiner, determinative, post-determiner

7 **person;** first person; second person, proximate; third person; fourth person, obviative

8 number; singular, dual, trial, plural

9 **case;** common case, subject case, nominative; object *or* objective case, accusative, dative, possessive case, genitive; local case, locative, essive, superessive, inessive, adessive, abessive, lative, allative, illative, sublative, elative, ablative, delative, terminative, approximative, prolative, perlative, translative; comitative, instrumental, prepositional, vocative; oblique case

10 **gender,** masculine, feminine, neuter, common gender; grammatical gender, natural gender; animate, inanimate

11 **mood,** mode; indicative, subjunctive, imperative, conditional, potential, obligative, permissive, optative, jussive

12 **tense; present;** historical present; **past,** preterit *or* preterite; aorist; imperfect; future; **perfect,** present perfect, future perfect; past perfect, **pluperfect;** progressive tense, durative; point tense

13 **aspect;** perfective, imperfective, inchoative, iterative, frequentative, desiderative

14 **voice;** active voice, active, passive voice, passive; middle voice, middle; medio-passive; reflexive

15 **punctuation,** punctuation marks <see list>; diacritical mark *or* sign <see list>, accent; reference mark <see list>, reference; point, tittle; stop, end stop

VERBS 16 **grammaticize;** parse, analyze; inflect, **conjugate, decline; punctuate,** mark, point; parenthesize, hyphenate, bracket; diagram, notate

ADJS 17 **grammatical, syntactical,** formal, structural; correct, well-formed; tagmemic, glossematic; **functional;** substantive, nominal, pronominal; verbal, transitive, intransitive; linking, copulative; attributive, adjectival, adverbal, participial; prepositional, post-positional; conjunctive

18 **punctuation marks**

ampersand <&>
angle brackets <<>>
apostrophe <'>
braces <{}>
brackets *or* square brackets <[]>
colon <:>
comma <,>
ellipsis, suspension periods <. . .> *or* <***>
em dash <—>
en dash <–>
exclamation mark *or* point <!>
guillemets <<< >>>
hyphen <->
interrobang <‽>
parentheses *or* parens <nf> <()>
period, full stop <Brit>, point, decimal point, dot <.>
question mark *or* interrogation mark *or* point <?>
quotation marks, quotes <“”>
semicolon <;>
single quotation marks, single quotes <‘’>
virgule, diagonal, solidus, slash mark </>

19 **diacritical marks**

acute accent <´>
breve *or* caron <˘>
cedilla <¸>
circumflex accent <^, *or* ~>
diaeresis *or* umlaut <¨>
grave accent <`>
haček <Cz> *or* wedge <^>
krozek <°>
ligature <æ>
macron <¯>
tilde <~>

20 **reference marks**

asterisk, star <*>
asterism <***>
bullet *or* centered dot <·>
caret <>>
dagger *or* obelisk <†>
ditto mark <">
double dagger *or* diesis <‡>
double prime <">
index *or* fist <☞>
leaders <......>
obelus <÷>
paragraph <¶>
parallels <||>
prime <'>
section <§>
swung dash <~>

531 UNGRAMMATICALNESS

NOUNS 1 **ungrammaticalness,** bad *or* faulty grammar, faulty syntax; lack of concord *or* agreement, incorrect usage, faulty reference, misplaced *or* dangling modifier, shift of tense, shift of structure, anacoluthon, faulty subordination, faulty comparison, faulty coordination, faulty punctuation, lack of parallelism, sentence fragment, comma fault, comma splice; abuse of terms, corruption of speech, broken speech

2 **solecism,** ungrammaticism, **misusage, missaying, misconstruction,** barbarism, infelicity; corruption; antiphrasis, spoonerism, malapropism 975.7

VERBS 3 **solecize, commit a solecism, use faulty** *or* inadmissable *or* inappropriate grammar, ignore *or* disdain *or* violate grammar, murder the King's *or* Queen's English, break Priscian's head <old>

ADJS 4 **ungrammatic, ungrammatical,** solecistic, solecistical, **incorrect,** barbarous; faulty, erroneous 975.16; infelicitous, improper 789.7; careless, slovenly, slipshod 810.15; loose, imprecise 975.17

532 DICTION

NOUNS 1 **diction,** words, wordage, verbiage, word-usage, **usage,** *usus loquendi* <L>, use *or* choice of words, formulation, way of putting *or* couching, word garment, word dressing; **rhetoric,** speech, talk <nf>; **language,** dialect, parlance, locution, expression, **grammar** 530; **idiom;** composition

2 **style; mode, manner,** strain, vein; fashion, way; **rhetoric; manner of speaking,** mode of expression, literary style, style of writing, command of language *or* idiom, form of speech, expression of ideas; feeling for words *or* language, way with words, sense of language, *Sprachgefühl* <Ger>; gift of gab *or* of the gab <nf>, blarney *or* the blarney <nf>; the power *or* grace of expression; linguistic tact *or* finesse; personal style; mannerism, trick, pecularity; affectation; "the dress of thought"—Charles Dickens, "a certain absolute and unique manner of expressing a thing"—Walter Pater; editorial style; inflation, exaggeration, grandiloquence 545; the grand style, the sublime style, the sublime; the plain style; **stylistics,** stylistic analysis

3 stylist, master of style; rhetorician, rhetor, rhetorizer <old>; mannerist; wordsmith; phrasemonger

VERBS 4 **phrase, express,** find a phrase for, give expression *or* words to, **word,** state, **frame,** conceive, style, couch, **put in** *or* **into words,** clothe *or* embody in words, couch in terms, express by *or* in words, find words to express, find words for;

put, present, set out; **formulate,** formularize; paragraph; rhetorize <old>

ADJS 5 **phrased,** expressed, worded, formulated, styled, put, presented, couched; stylistic, overdone

533 ELEGANCE

<of language>

NOUNS 1 **elegance,** elegancy; **grace,** gracefulness, gracility; **taste,** tastefulness, good taste; **correctness,** seemliness, comeliness, **propriety,** aptness, fittingness; **refinement,** precision, exactitude, lapidary quality, finish; **discrimination,** choice; **restraint; polish, finish,** terseness, neatness; smoothness, flow, **fluency; felicity,** felicitousness, **ease;** clarity, clearness, lucidity, limpidity, pellucidity, perspicuity; distinction, dignity; **purity,** chastity, chasteness; **plainness,** straightforwardness, directness, **simplicity,** naturalness, unaffectedness, Atticism, unadorned simplicity, gracility, Attic quality; classicism, classicalism; well-rounded *or* well-turned periods, flowing periods; the right word in the right place, right word at the right time, *mot juste* <Fr>; fittingness, appropriateness; classicism, Atticism

2 **harmony, proportion,** symmetry, **balance,** equilibrium, order, orderedness, measure, measuredness, concinnity; rhythm; **euphony,** sweetness, beauty

3 <affected elegance> **affectation,** affectedness, studiedness, **pretentiousness, mannerism,** posiness <Brit>, manneredness, artifice, artfulness, **artificiality,** unnaturalness; **euphuism,** Gongorism, Marinism; **preciousness,** preciosity; euphemism; purism; overelegance, overelaboration, overniceness, overrefinement, hyperelegance, etc

4 purist, classicist, Atticist, plain stylist

5 euphuist, Gongorist, Marinist, *précieux* and *précieuse* <Fr>; phrasemaker, phrasemonger

ADJS 6 **elegant, tasteful, graceful, polished,** finished, round, terse; neat, trim, **refined, exact,** lapidary *or* lapidarian; **restrained; clear,** lucid, limpid, pellucid, perspicuous; **simple, unaffected, natural,** unlabored, fluent, flowing, **easy; pure,** chaste; **plain,** straightforward, direct, unadorned, gracile, no-frills *and* vanilla *and* plain vanilla <nf>; classic, classical; Attic, Ciceronian, Augustan

7 **appropriate, fit, fitting,** just <old>, **proper, correct, seemly,** comely; **felicitous,** happy, **apt, well-chosen; well-put,** well-expressed, inspired

8 **harmonious, balanced,** symmetrical, orderly, ordered, measured, concinnate, concinnous; **euphonious,** euphonic, euphonical <old>, sweet; **smooth,** tripping, smooth-sounding, fluent, flowing, fluid; classical

9 <affectedly elegant> **affected,** euphuistic, euphuistical; elaborate, elaborated; **pretentious, mannered, artificial, unnatural,** posy <Brit>, studied; precious, *précieux* or *précieuse* <Fr>, overnice, overrefined, overelegant, overelaborate, hyperelegant, etc; Gongoristic, Gongoresque, Marinistic

534 INELEGANCE

<of language>

NOUNS 1 **inelegance,** inelegancy; inconcinnity <old>, infelicity; **clumsiness,** cumbrousness, clunkiness *and* klutziness <nf>, leadenness, heavy-handedness, ham-handedness, ham-fistedness <chiefly Brit>, heavy-footedness, heaviness, stiltedness, **ponderousness,** unwieldiness; sesquipedalianism, sesquipedality; turgidity, bombasticness, pompousness 545.1; **gracelessness,** ungracefulness; **tastelessness,** bad taste, impropriety, indecorousness, unseemliness; incorrectness, impurity; **vulgarity,** vulgarism, Gothicism <old>, barbarism, barbarousness, **coarseness, unrefinement,** roughness, grossness, rudeness, crudeness, uncouthness; turgidity; dysphemism; solecism; cacology, poor diction; cacophony, uneuphoniousness, harshness; loose *or* slipshod construction, ill-balanced sentences; lack of finish *or* polish

ADJS 2 **inelegant, clumsy, clunky** *and* **klutzy** <nf>, heavy-handed, heavy-footed, ham-handed, ham-fisted <chiefly Brit>, graceless, ungraceful, inconcinnate *and* inconcinnous <old>, infelicitous, unfelicitous; **tasteless,** in bad taste, offensive to ears polite; **incorrect, improper; indecorous, unseemly,** uncourtly, undignified; **unpolished, unrefined;** impure, unclassical; **vulgar,** barbarous, barbaric, rude, **crude, uncouth,** Doric, outlandish; low, gross, **coarse,** dysphemistic, doggerel; cacologic, cacological, cacophonous, uneuphonious, harsh, ill-sounding; solecistic

3 **stiff, stilted, formal,** Latinate, *guindé* <Fr>, **labored,** ponderous, elephantine, lumbering, cumbrous, leaden, heavy, unwieldy, sesquipedalian, inkhorn, turgid, bombastic, pompous 545.8; **forced,** awkward, cramped, halting; crabbed

535 PLAIN SPEECH

NOUNS 1 **plain speech,** plain speaking, plain-spokenness, plain style, unadorned style, gracility, **plain English,** plain words, common speech, vernacular, household words, words of one syllable; **plainness,** simpleness, simplicity; "more matter with less art"—Shakespeare; soberness, restrainedness; severity, austerity; spareness, leanness, baldness, bareness, starkness, unadornedness, naturalness, unaffectedness; **directness, straightforwardness,** calling a spade a spade, mincing no words, making no bones about it <nf>; unimaginativeness, prosaicness, matter-of-factness, prosiness, unpoeticalness; homespun, rustic style; **candor,** frankness, openness

VERBS 2 **speak plainly,** waste no words, **call a spade a spade,** come to the point, lay it on the line, not beat about the bush, mince no words, make no bones about it *and* talk turkey <nf>

ADJS 3 **plain-speaking,** simple-speaking; **plain,** common; **simple,** unadorned, unvarnished, pure, neat; sober, severe, austere, ascetic, spare, lean, bald, bare, stark, Spartan; **natural, unaffected;** direct, straightforward, woman-to-woman, man-to-man, one-on-one; commonplace, homely, homespun, rustic; **candid,** up-front <nf>, plain-spoken, frank, straight-out <nf>, open; **prosaic,** prosing, prosy; unpoetical, unimaginative, dull, dry, **matter-of-fact**

ADVS 4 **plainly, simply,** naturally, unaffectedly, matter-of-factly; in plain words, plain-spokenly, **in plain English,** in words of one syllable; **directly,** point-blank, to the point; candidly, frankly

PHRS 5 read my lips, I'll spell it out

536 FIGURE OF SPEECH

NOUNS 1 **figure of speech** <see list>, **figure, image,** trope, turn of expression, manner *or* way of speaking, ornament, device, flourish, flower; purple passage; imagery, nonliterality, nonliteralness, figurativeness, figurative language; figured *or* florid *or* flowery style, Gongorism, floridity, euphuism

VERBS 2 metaphorize, figure <old>; similize; personify, personalize; symbolize

ADJS 3 **figurative,** tropologic, tropological; **metaphorical,** trolatitious; allusive, referential; mannered, figured, ornamented, **flowery** 545.11

ADVS 4 **figuratively,** tropologically; **metaphorically;** symbolically; **figuratively speaking,** so to say *or* speak, in a manner of speaking, **as it were**

5 **figures of speech (literary devices)**

adynaton
agnomination
alliteration
allusion
anacoluthon
anadiplosis
analogy
anaphora
anapodoton
anastrophe
antanaclasis
anthimeria
antimetabole
antiphrasis
antisthecon
antithesis
antonomasia
aphaersis
apocope
apophasis
aporia
aposiopesis
apostrophe
auxesis
catachresis
chiasmus
circumlocution
climax
congeries
conversion
correctio
ecphonesis
ellipsis
emphasis
enallage
epanalepsis
epanaphora
epanodos
epanorthosis
epenthesis
epidiplosis
epiphora
epistrophe
epizeuxis
eroteme
exclamation
gemination
gradatio
hendiadys
hypallage
hyperbaton
hyperbole
hypozeugma
hypozeuxis
hysteron proteron
inversion
irony
isocolon
kenning
litotes
malapropism
meiosis
metalepsis
metaphor
metathesis
metonymy
mixed metaphor
occupatio
onomatopoeia, onomatopy
oxymoron
paradiastole
paradox
paragoge
paralepsis
paregmenon
parenthesis
periphrasis
personification
pleonasm
ploce
polyptoton
polysyndeton
preterition
prolepsis
prosopopoeia
prosthesis
regression
repetition
rhetorical question
sarcasm
scesis onamaton
simile, similitude
spoonerism
syllepsis
symploce
syncope
synecdoche
tautology
Wellerism
zeugma

537 CONCISENESS

NOUNS 1 **conciseness,** concision, briefness, brachylogy, **brevity,** "the soul of wit"—Shakespeare; shortness, compactness; **curtness,** brusqueness, **crispness, terseness,** summariness; compression; taciturnity 344.2, reserve 344.3; **pithiness,** succinctness, pointedness, sententiousness; compendiousness; heart of the matter

2 laconicness, laconism, laconicism, economy of language *or* words; laconics

3 **aphorism, epigram** 974.1; **abridgment** 557

4 **abbreviation,** shortening, clipping, cutting, pruning, truncation; ellipsis, aposiopesis, contraction, syncope, apocope, elision, crasis, syneresis <all rhetoric>

VERBS 5 **be brief, come to the point,** get to the bottom line *or* the nitty-gritty <nf>, **make a long story short,** cut the matter short, cut the shit <nf>, be telegraphic, waste no words, put it in few words, give more matter and less art; shorten, condense, **abbreviate** 268.6

ADJS 6 **concise, brief, short,** "short and sweet"—Thomas Lodge; **condensed, compressed,** tight, close, compact; compendious 268.8; **curt,** brusque, **crisp, terse,** summary; taciturn 344.9; reserved 344.10; **pithy, succinct; laconic,** Spartan; **abridged, abbreviated,** vest-pocket, synopsized, shortened, clipped, cut, pruned, contracted, truncated, docked; elliptic, syncopic, aposiopestic; telegraphic; sententious, epigrammatic, epigrammatical, gnomic, aphoristic or aphoristical, **pointed,** to the point; brachylogous

ADVS 7 **concisely, briefly,** shortly, standing on one leg; laconically; **curtly,** brusquely, **crisply, tersely,** summarily; **pithily, succinctly,** pointedly; sententiously, aphoristically, epigrammatically

8 **in brief, in short,** for short, *tout court* <Fr>; in substance, in epitome, in outline; **in a nutshell,** in a capsule; **in a word,** in two words, in a few words, without wasting *or* mincing words; **to be brief,** to the point, to sum up, to come to the point, to cut the matter short, **to make a long story short**

538 DIFFUSENESS

NOUNS 1 **diffuseness,** diffusiveness, diffusion; shapelessness, **formlessness** 263, amorphousness, blobbiness <nf>, unstructuredness; obscurity 522.3

2 **wordiness, verbosity,** verbiage, verbalism, verbality; **prolixity, long-windedness,** longiloquence, loquacity; flow *or* flux of words, cloud of words; profuseness, **profusiveness,** profusion; **effusiveness,** effusion, gush, gushing; outpour, tirade; logorrhea, verbal diarrhea, diarrhea of the mouth, **talkativeness** 540; **copiousness, exuberance,** rampancy, amplitude, extravagance, prodigality, fertility, fecundity, rankness, teemingness, prolificity, prolificacy, productivity, abundance, overflow, fluency <old>; superfluity, superflux, superabundance, overflow, inundation; **redundancy,** pleonasm, repetitiveness, reiterativeness, reiteration, iteration, tautology, macrology, double-talk; repetition for effect *or* emphasis, palilogy

3 discursiveness, desultoriness, digressiveness, aimlessness; rambling, maundering, meandering, wandering, roving

4 **digression, departure,** deviation, **discursion,** excursion, excursus, sidetrack, side path, side road, byway, bypath; episode; rambling

5 **circumlocution, roundaboutness,** circuitousness, ambages <old>; deviousness, obliqueness, **indirection;** periphrase, periphrasis; ambagiousness

6 **amplification, expatiation, enlargement, expansion,** dilation, dilatation, dilating; **elaboration, laboring; development,** explication, unfolding, working-out, fleshing-out, detailing, filling in the empty places, filler, padding

VERBS 7 **amplify, expatiate, dilate, expand,** enlarge, **enlarge upon,** expand on, **elaborate;** relate *or* rehearse in extenso; detail, particularize; **develop,** open out, fill in, flesh out, evolve, unfold; work out, explicate; descant, relate at large

8 **protract, extend, spin out,** string out, draw out, stretch out, go on *or* be on about, **drag out,** run out, drive into the ground <nf>; pad, fill out; perorate; **speak at length,** spin a long yarn, never finish; verbify, chatter, talk one to death 540.5,6

9 **digress,** wander, **get off the subject, wander from the subject,** get sidetracked, excurse, ramble, maunder, stray, go astray; depart, **deviate,** turn aside, jump the track; **go off on a tangent,** go up blind alleys

10 circumlocute <nf>, say in a roundabout way, talk in circles, **go round about,** go around and around, **beat around** *or* **about the bush,** go round Robin Hood's barn; periphrase

ADJS 11 **diffuse,** diffusive; **formless** 263.4, unstructured; **profuse,** profusive; **effusive,** gushing, gushy; copious, exuberant, extravagant, prodigal, fecund, teeming, prolific, productive, abundant, superabundant, overflowing; **redundant,** pleonastic, repetitive, reiterative, iterative, tautologous, parrotlike

12 **wordy, verbose; talkative** 540.9; **prolix,** windy <nf>, **long-winded,** longiloquent; **protracted,** extended, *de longue haleine* <Fr>, lengthy, long, **long-drawn-out,** long-spun, spun-out, endless, unrelenting; padded, filled out

13 **discursive, aimless,** loose; **rambling, maundering, wandering,** peripatetic, roving, deviating; excursive, discursive, **digressive,** deviative, **desultory,** episodic; by the way; sidetracked

14 **circumlocutory,** circumlocutional, **roundabout, circuitous,** ambagious <old>, oblique, indirect; periphrastic

15 **expatiating,** dilative, dilatative, enlarging, amplifying, expanding; **developmental**

ADVS 16 **at length,** *ad nauseam* <L>, at large, in full, *in extenso* <L>, in detail, on and on

539 AMBIGUITY

NOUNS 1 **ambiguity,** ambiguousness; **equivocalness,** equivocacy, equivocality; **double meaning,** amphibology, multivocality, polysemy, polysemousness; punning, paronomasia; double reference, double entendre; twilight zone, gray area; six of one and half dozen of the other; inexplicitness, uncertainty 971; irony, contradiction, oxymoron, enantiosis; levels of meaning, richness of meaning, complexity of meaning

2 <ambiguous word or expression> **ambiguity,** equivoque, equivocal, equivocality; equivocation, amphibology, double entendre; counterword, portmanteau word; polysemant; weasel word; squinting construction; pun 489.8

VERBS **3** equivocate, weasel; ironize; have mixed feelings, be uncertain 971.9

ADJS **4** **ambiguous, equivocal,** equivocatory; multivocal, polysemous, polysemantic, amphibolous, amphibological; two-edged, two-sided, either-or, betwixt and between; bittersweet, mixed; inexplicit, uncertain 971.15; ironic; obscure, mysterious, funny, funny peculiar <nf>, enigmatic 522.17

540 TALKATIVENESS

NOUNS **1** **talkativeness, loquacity,** loquaciousness; overtalkativeness, loose tongue, runaway tongue, big mouth <nf>; gabbiness *and* windiness *and* gassiness <nf>; **garrulousness,** garrulity; **long-windedness, prolixity, verbosity** 538.2; multiloquence, multiloquy; **volubility, fluency, glibness;** fluent tongue, flowing tongue, **gift of gab** <nf>; openness, candor, frankness 644.4; effusion, gush, slush; gushiness, **effusiveness,** communicativeness; flow *or* flux *or* spate of words; *flux de bouche, flux de mots,* and *flux de paroles* <Fr>; **communicativeness** 343.3; gregariousness, sociability, conversableness 582

2 **logomania, logorrhea, diarrhea of the mouth, verbal diarrhea,** *cacoëthes loquendi* and *furor loquendi* <L>, gift of gab

3 **chatter, jabber,** gibber, **babble,** babblement, prate, **prating, prattle, palaver,** small talk, chat, natter <Brit>, **gabble, gab** *and* jaw-jaw <nf>, blab, **blabber, blather,** blether, blethers <Scot>, clatter, clack, cackle, talkee-talkee; *caquet* and *caqueterie* and *bavardage* <Fr>, twaddle, twattle, **gibble-gabble, bibble-babble, chitter-chatter, prittle-prattle, tittle-tattle,** mere talk, idle talk *or* chatter; **guff** *and* **gas** *and* **hot air** *and* blah-blah *and* yak *and* yakkety-yak *and* blah-blah-blah <nf>; **gossip;** nonsense talk 520.2

4 **chatterer, chatterbox, babbler, jabberer, prater, prattler, gabbler,** gibble-gabbler, **gabber** <nf>, **blabberer, blabber,** blatherer, patterer, word-slinger, *moulin à paroles* <Fr>, blab, rattle, bigmouth; magpie, jay, informer; **windbag** *and* gasbag *and* windjammer *and* hot-air artist *and* motor-mouth *and* ratchet-jaw *and* blabbermouth<nf>; idle chatterer, talkative person, **big** *or* **great talker** <nf>, nonstop talker, spendthrift of one's tongue

VERBS **5** **chatter, chat, prate, prattle, patter,** palaver, **babble, gab** <nf>, natter <Brit>, **gabble, gibble-gabble,** tittle-tattle, **jabber,** gibber, **blab, blabber, blather,** blether, clatter, twaddle, twattle, rattle, clack, haver <Brit>, dither, spout *or* **spout off** <nf>, hold forth, pour forth, spin out, **gush,** have a big mouth <nf>, love the sound of one's own voice, talk to hear one's head rattle <nf>; **jaw** *and* **gas** *and* yak *and* **yakkety-yak** *and* run off at the mouth *and* beat one's gums <nf>, **shoot off one's mouth** *or* **face** <nf>; reel off; **talk on,** talk away, **go on** <nf>, run on, rattle on, run on like a mill race; ramble on; talk oneself hoarse, talk till one is blue in the face, talk oneself out of breath; "varnish nonsense with the charms of sound"—Charles Churchill; **talk too much; gossip;** talk nonsense 520.5

6 <nf terms> **talk one to death, talk one's head** *or* **ear off,** talk one deaf *and* dumb, talk one into a fever, talk the hind leg off a mule, like the sound of one's own voice, oil one's tongue

7 **outtalk,** outspeak, **talk down,** outlast; filibuster

8 be loquacious *or* garrulous, be a windbag *or* gasbag <nf>; have a big mouth *or* bazoo <nf>

ADJS **9** **talkative, loquacious, talky,** big-mouthed <nf>, overtalkative, garrulous, running on, chatty; gossipy, newsy; gabby *and* windy *and* gassy <nf>, all jaw <nf>; multiloquent, multiloquious; **longwinded, prolix, verbose** 538.12; **voluble, fluent; glib,** flip <nf>, smooth; candid, frank 644.17; **effusive,** gushy; expansive, **communicative;** conversational; gregarious, sociable

10 **chattering, prattling, prating,** gabbling, jabbering, gibbering, babbling, blabbing, blabbering, blathering

ADVS **11** **talkatively, loquaciously,** garrulously; **volubly, fluently,** glibly; effusively, expansively, gushingly

541 CONVERSATION

NOUNS **1** **conversation, converse,** conversing, rapping <nf>; interlocution, colloquy; **exchange;** verbal intercourse, conversational interchange, interchange of speech, give-and-take, cross-talk, rapping <nf>, **repartee,** backchat; **discourse,** colloquial discourse; **communion, intercourse,** social intercourse, **communication** 343

2 **the art of conversation,** "a game of circles," "our account of ourselves"—both Emerson; "the feast of reason and the flow of soul"—Pope

3 **talk, palaver, speech, words;** confabulation, **confab** <nf>, banter, repartee; **chinfest** *and* **chinwag** *and* **talkfest** *and* **bull session** <nf>; **dialogue,** duologue, trialogue; **interview,** question-and-answer session, audience, audition, interlocution; interrogation, examination

4 **chat,** cozy chat, friendly chat *or* talk, **little talk,** coze, causerie, **visit** <nf>, gam, *tête-à-tête* <Fr>, **heart-to-heart talk** *or* heart-to-heart; pillow-talk, intimate discourse, backchat

5 **chitchat,** chitter-chatter, tittle-tattle, **small talk,** by-talk, cocktail-party chitchat, beauty-parlor chitchat, tea-table talk, table talk, idle chat *or* talk, gossip, backchat

6 **conference, congress, convention, parley, palaver, confab** <nf>, confabulation, **conclave, powwow, huddle** <nf>, **consultation,** colloquium, *pourparler* <Fr>, **meeting;** session, sitting, sit-down <nf>, séance; exchange *or* interchange of views; **council,** council of war; **discussion; interview, audience; news conference,** press conference; photo opportunity, photo op <nf>; high-level talk, conference at the summit, summit, summit conference; summitry; negotiations, bargaining, bargaining session; confrontation, eyeball-to-eyeball encounter <nf>; teleconference; council fire; conference table, negotiating table

7 **discussion, debate,** debating, **deliberation, nonformalogue,** exchange of views, canvassing, ventilation, airing, review, **treatment, consideration,** investigation, **examination, study, analysis,** logical analysis; logical discussion, dialectic; buzz session <nf>, rap *or* rap session <nf>; **panel,** panel discussion, open discussion, joint discussion, symposium, colloquium, conference, seminar; **forum,** open forum, town meeting; polemics

8 **conversationalist,** converser, conversationist; talker, discourser, verbalist, confabulator; colloquist, colloquialist, collocutor; conversational partner; interlocutor, interlocutress *or* interlocutrice *or* interlocutrix; parleyer, palaverer; dialogist; Dr Johnson; interviewer, examiner, interrogator, cross-examiner; chatterer

VERBS 9 **converse, talk together, talk** *or* **speak with,** converse with, strike up a conversation, visit with <nf>, discourse with, **commune with,** communicate with, take counsel with, commerce with, **have a talk with,** have a word with, **chin** <nf>, **chew the rag** *or* **fat** <nf>, **shoot the breeze** <nf>, hold *or* carry on *or* join in *or* engage in a conversation, exchange words; confabulate, confab <nf>, parley; colloque, colloquize; "inject a few raisins of conversation into the tasteless dough of existence"—O Henry; **bandy words; communicate** 343.6,7

10 **chat, visit** <nf>, gam, coze, pass the time of day, touch base with, have a friendly *or* cozy chat; **have a little talk,** have a heart-to-heart, let one's hair down; talk with one in private, talk tête-à-tête, be closeted with, make conversation *or* talk, engage in small talk; prattle, prittle-prattle, tittle-tattle; **gossip**

11 **confer,** hold a conference, parley, palaver, powwow, hold talks, hold a summit, sit down together, meet around the conference table, **go into a huddle** <nf>, deliberate, take counsel, counsel, **lay** *or* **put heads together;** collogue; **confer with,** sit down with, **consult with, advise with, discuss with, take up with,** reason with; **discuss,** talk over; **consult,** refer to, call in; **compare notes,** exchange observations *or* views; have conversations; negotiate, bargain

12 **discuss, debate, reason, deliberate,** deliberate upon, exchange views *or* opinions, talk, **talk over, hash over** <nf>, talk of *or* about, rap <nf>, exchange ideas, colloquize, comment upon, reason about, discourse about, **consider, treat,** dissertate on, handle, deal with, take up, **go into, examine,** investigate, talk out, brainstorm, **analyze,** sift, **study,** canvass, review, pass under review, controvert, ventilate, air, thrash *or* thresh out, reason the point, consider the pros *and* cons; **kick** *or* **knock around** <nf>

ADJS 13 conversational, colloquial, confabulatory, interlocutory; communicative; chatty, chitchatty, cozy

ADVS 14 conversationally, colloquially; *tête-à-tête* <Fr>

542 SOLILOQUY

NOUNS 1 **soliloquy,** monology, self-address; **monologue;** aside; solo; monodrama; monody; interior monologue, stream of consciousness, apostrophe, aside; one-man *or* -woman show

2 **soliloquist,** soliloquizer, Hamlet; monodist, **monologist**

VERBS 3 **soliloquize,** monologize; **talk to oneself,** say to oneself, tell oneself, think out loud *or* aloud; address the four walls, talk to the wall; have an audience of one; say aside, apostrophize; do all the talking, monopolize the conversation, hold forth without interruption

ADJS 4 soliloquizing, monologic, monological, self-addressing; apostrophic; soloistic; monodramatic; thinking aloud, talking to oneself

543 PUBLIC SPEAKING

NOUNS 1 **public speaking, declamation, speechmaking, speaking,** speechification <nf>, lecturing, speeching; after-dinner speaking; **oratory,** platform oratory *or* speaking; campaign oratory, stump speaking, the stump, the hustings <Brit>; the soap box; **elocution; rhetoric,** art of public speaking; **eloquence** 544; forensics, **debating;** speechcraft, wordcraft; **preaching,** pulpit oratory, Bible-thumping <nf>, the pulpit, homiletics; demagogism, demagogy <chiefly Brit>, demagoguery, rabble-rousing; **pyrotechnics**

2 **speech,** speeching, speechification <nf>, **talk, oration, address,** declamation, harangue; public speech *or* address, formal speech, set speech, prepared speech *or* text; welcoming address, farewell address; campaign speech, stump speech, stump oratory; soapbox oratory, tub-thumping <nf>; say; **tirade,** screed, **diatribe,** jeremiad, philippic, invective; after-dinner speech; funeral oration, eulogy; allocution, exhortation, hortatory address, forensic, forensic address; **recitation,** recital, reading; salutatory, salutatory address; valediction, valedictory, valedictory address; inaugural address, inaugural; chalk talk <nf>; pep talk <nf>; pitch, sales talk 734.5; talkathon, filibuster; peroration; debate

3 **lecture,** prelection, **discourse; sermon,** sermonette, homily, religious *or* pulpit discourse; preachment, preaching, preachification <nf>; **evangelism,** televison *or* TV evangelism; travel talk, travelogue

4 **speaker, talker, public speaker, speechmaker,** speecher, speechifier <nf>, spieler *and* jawsmith <nf>; after-dinner speaker; **spokesperson,** spokesman, spokeswoman; **demagogue,** rabble-rouser; declaimer, ranter, tub-thumper <nf>, haranguer, spouter <nf>; valedictorian, salutatorian; panelist, debater

5 **lecturer,** praelector, discourser, reader; **preacher;** sermonizer, sermonist, sermoner, homilist <old>, pulpitarian, pulpiteer <nf>, Boanerges, hellfire preacher; **evangelist,** televison *or* TV evangelist, televangelist; **expositor,** expounder; chalk talker <nf>

6 **orator, public speaker,** platform orator *or* speaker; rhetorician, rhetor; silver-tongued orator, **spellbinder;** Demosthenes, Cicero, Franklin D Roosevelt, Winston Churchill, William Jennings Bryan, Martin Luther King Jr.; **soapbox orator,** soapboxer, stump orator

7 **elocutionist,** elocutioner; **recitationist,** reciter, diseur, diseuse; reader; improvisator, *improvvisatore* <Ital>

8 **rhetorician,** teacher of rhetoric, rhetor, elocutionist; speech-writer

VERBS 9 **make a speech, give a talk, deliver an address,** speechify <nf>, **speak, talk, discourse; address;** stump <nf>, go on *or* take the stump; platform, soapbox; take the floor

10 **declaim,** hold forth, **orate,** elocute <nf>, spout <nf>, spiel <nf>, mouth; **harangue, rant,** "out-herod Herod"—Shakespeare, tub-thump, perorate, rodomontade; **recite,** read; debate; demagogue, rabble-rouse

11 **lecture,** prelect, read *or* deliver a lecture; **preach,** Bible-thump *and* preachify <nf>, **sermonize,** read a sermon

ADJS 12 **declamatory, elocutionary, oratorical, rhetorical,** forensic; eloquent 544.8; demagogic, demagogical

544 ELOQUENCE

NOUNS 1 **eloquence, rhetoric, silver tongue,** eloquent tongue, facundity; **articulateness;** gift of gab <nf>, **glibness,** smoothness, slickness; **felicitousness,** felicity; **oratory** 543.1; expression, **expressiveness,** command of words *or* language, gift of gab *or* of the gab <nf>, gift of expression, vividness, graphicness; pleasing *or* effective style; **meaningfulness** 518.5

2 **fluency,** flow; **smoothness, facility, ease; grace,** gracefulness, poetry; **elegance** 533

3 **vigor, force,** power, strength, vitality, drive, sinew, sinewiness, nervousness, nervosity, vigorousness, forcefulness, effectiveness, impressiveness, pizzazz *and* punch *and* clout <nf>; incisiveness, trenchancy, cuttingness, poignancy, bitingness, bite, mordancy; strong language, "thoughts that breathe and words that burn"—Thomas Gray

4 **spirit,** pep <nf>, liveliness, raciness, sparkle, vivacity, dash, verve, vividness; piquancy, poignancy, pungency

5 **vehemence, passion,** impassionedness, enthusiasm, **ardor,** ardency, **fervor,** fervency, fire, fieriness, glow, warmth

6 **loftiness,** elevation, sublimity; grandeur, **nobility,** stateliness, majesty, gravity, *gravitas* <L>, solemnity, **dignity**

VERBS 7 **have the gift of gab** *or* **of the gab** <nf>, have a tongue in one's head; **spellbind;** shine

ADJS 8 **eloquent, silver-tongued,** silver; well-speaking, well-spoken, **articulate,** facund; **glib, smooth,** smooth-spoken, smooth-tongued, **slick; felicitous;** facile, slick as a whistle <nf>, spellbinding; Demosthenic, Demosthenian; Ciceronian, Tullian

9 **fluent, flowing,** tripping; **smooth,** pleasing, facile, **easy, graceful, elegant** 533.6

10 **expressive, graphic, vivid,** suggestive, imaginative; well-turned; **meaningful** 518.10

11 **vigorous,** strong, **powerful,** imperative, **forceful,** forcible, vital, driving, sinewy, sinewed, punchy *and* full of piss and vinegar *and* zappy <nf>, **striking, telling, effective,** impressive; incisive, trenchant, cutting, biting, piercing, poignant, penetrating, slashing, mordant, acid, corrosive; sensational

12 **spirited, lively,** peppy *and* gingery <nf>, racy, sparkling, vivacious; piquant, poignant, pungent

13 **vehement,** emphatic, **passionate, impassioned,** enthusiastic, **ardent,** fiery, **fervent,** burning, glowing, warm; urgent, stirring, exciting, stimulating, provoking

14 **lofty, elevated, sublime, grand, majestic,** noble, stately, grave, solemn, dignified; serious, weighty; moving, inspiring

ADVS 15 **eloquently; fluently,** smoothly, glibly, trippingly on the tongue; **expressively,** vividly, graphically; **meaningfully** 518.13; **vigorously,** powerfully, forcefully, spiritedly; tellingly, strikingly, effectively, impressively; **vehemently, passionately,** ardently, fervently, warmly, glowingly, in glowing terms

545 GRANDILOQUENCE

NOUNS 1 **grandiloquence,** magniloquence, lexiphanicism, **pompousness,** pomposity, orotundity; **rhetoric,** mere rhetoric, rhetoricalness; high-flown diction, big *or* tall talk <nf>; grandioseness, grandiosity; loftiness, stiltedness; fulsomeness; **pretentiousness,** pretension, **affectation** 533.3; ostentation; **flamboyancy,** showiness, flashiness, gaudiness, meretriciousness, bedizenment, **glitz** <nf>, garishness; sensationalism, luridness, Barnumism; **inflation, inflatedness,** swollenness, turgidity, turgescence, flatulence *or* flatulency, tumidness, tumidity; sententiousness, pontification; swollen phrase *or* diction, swelling utterance; platitudinous ponderosity, polysyllabic profundity, pompous prolixity; Johnsonese; prose run mad; convolution, tortuosity, tortuousness, ostentatious complexity *or* profundity

2 **bombast,** bombastry, pomposity, **fustian,** highfalutin <nf>, **rant,** rodomontade; **hot air** <nf>; balderdash, gobbledygook <nf>, purple prose

3 high-sounding words, lexiphanicism, hard words; **sesquipedalian word,** big *or* long word, twodollar *or* five-dollar word <nf>, **jawbreaker,** jawtwister, mouthful; antidisestablishmentarianism, honorificabilitudinitatibus <Shakespeare>, pneumonoultramicroscopicsilicovolcanoconiosis; polysyllabism, sesquipedalianism, sesquipedality; Latinate diction; academic Choctaw, technical jargon

4 **ornateness, floweriness,** floridness, floridity, lushness, luxuriance; flourish, flourish of rhetoric, flowers of speech *or* rhetoric, **purple patches** *or* **passages,** beauties, fine writing; **ornament,** ornamentation, **adornment, embellishment,** elegant variation, **embroidery, frill,** colors *or* colors of rhetoric <old>, figure, **figure of speech** 536

5 **phrasemonger,** rhetorician; phraseman, phrasemaker, fine writer, wordspinner; euphuist, Gongorist, Marinist; pedant

VERBS 6 **talk big** <nf>, talk highfalutin <nf>, phrasemake, **pontificate, blow** <nf>, **vapor,** Barnumize; inflate, bombast, lay *or* pile it on <nf>, lay it on thick *and* lay it on with a trowel <nf>; smell of the lamp

7 **ornament, decorate, adorn, embellish, embroider,** enrich; overcharge, overlay, overload, load with ornament, festoon, weight down with ornament, flourish <old>; **gild,** gild the lily, trick out, varnish; paint in glowing colors, tell in glowing terms; "to gild refined gold, to paint the lily, to throw a perfume on the violet"—Shakespeare; elaborate, convolute, involve

ADJS 8 **grandiloquent,** magniloquent, **pompous, orotund; grandiose;** fulsome; lofty, elevated, tall <nf>, **stilted; pretentious,** affected 533.9; overdone, overwrought; **showy, flashy, ostentatious,** gaudy, glitzy <nf>, meretricious, flamboyant, flaming, bedizened, flaunting, garish; lurid, sensational, sensationalistic; **high-flown, high-falutin** <nf>, high-flying; high-flowing, **high-sounding, big-sounding,** great-sounding, grandisonant <old>, sonorous; **rhetorical,** declamatory; **pedantic,** inkhorn, lexiphanic <old>; sententious, Johnsonian; convoluted, tortuous, labyrinthine, overelaborate, overinvolved; euphuistic, Gongoresque

9 **bombastic,** fustian, mouthy, **inflated, swollen,** swelling, turgid, turgescent, tumid, tumescent, flatulent, windy *and* gassy <nf>; overadorned, fulsome

10 sesquipedalian, sesquipedal, polysyllabic, jawbreaking *and* jawtwisting <nf>

11 **ornate,** purple <nf>, colored, **fancy;** adorned, **embellished, embroidered,** lavish, decorated, festooned, overcharged, overloaded, befrilled; **flowery, florid,** lush, luxuriant; figured, **figurative** 536.3

ADVS 12 **grandiloquently,** magniloquently,

pompously, grandiosely, fulsomely, loftily, stiltedly, pretentiously; **ostentatiously,** showily; **bombastically,** turgidly, tumidly, flatulently, windily <nf>

13 **ornately,** fancily; **flowerily,** floridly

546 LETTER

NOUNS 1 **letter, written character, character, sign, symbol,** graph, digraph, grapheme, allograph, alphabetic character *or* symbol, phonetic character *or* symbol; diacritic, diacritical mark, vowel point; logographic *or* lexigraphic character *or* symbol; ideographic *or* ideogrammic *or* ideogrammatic character *or* symbol; initial; syllabic character *or* symbol, syllabic, syllabogram; pictographic character *or* symbol; cipher, device; monogram; graphy, *mater lectionis* <L>; **writing** 547

2 <phonetic *and* ideographic symbols> **phonogram;** phonetic symbol; **logogram,** logograph, grammalogue; word letter; **ideogram,** ideograph, phonetic, radical, determinative; **pictograph,** pictogram; **hieroglyphic,** hieroglyph, hieratic symbol, demotic character; **rune,** runic character *or* symbol; **cuneiform, character;** wedge, arrowhead, ogham; kana, hiragana, katakana; kanji; **shorthand** 547.8; hieroglyphics

3 **writing system, script, letters; alphabet,** letters of the alphabet, **ABC's;** christcross-row; **phonetic alphabet,** International Phonetic Alphabet *or* IPA; Initial Teaching Alphabet *or* ITA; phonemic alphabet; runic alphabet, futhark *or* futharc; alphabetism; **syllabary;** alphabetics, alphabetology, graphemics; paleography; speech sound 524.12

4 **spelling,** orthography; phonetic spelling *or* respelling, phonetics, phonography; normalization; spelling reform; spelling match *or* bee, spelldown; bad spelling, cacography; spelling pronunciation

5 **lettering,** initialing; **inscription,** epigraph, graffito, printing; handwriting; alphabetization; transliteration, romanization, pin-yin *or* pinyin, Wade-Giles system; transcription; phonetic transcription, phonography, lexigraphy

VERBS 6 **letter, initial, inscribe,** character, sign, mark; **capitalize; alphabetize,** alphabet; transliterate, transcribe

7 **spell,** orthographize; spell *or* respell phonetically; spell out, write out, trace out; spell backward; outspell, spell down; syllabify, syllabize, syllable, syllabicate

ADJS 8 **literal, lettered; alphabetic, alphabetical;** abecedarian; graphemic, allographic; large-lettered, majuscule, majuscular, uncial; **capital,** capitalized, upper-case; small-lettered, minuscule, minuscular, lower-case; logographic, logogrammatic, lexigraphic, ideographic, ideogrammic, ideogrammatic, pictographic; transliterated, transcribed; orthographic, spelled; symbolical, phonogramic, phonographic, cuneiform, cuneal, hieroglyphic, hieroglyphical

547 WRITING

NOUNS 1 **writing,** scrivening *or* scrivenery <old>, inscription, lettering; engrossment; pen, **pen-and-ink;** inkslinging *and* ink spilling <nf>, pen *or* pencil driving *or* pushing <nf>; **typing, typewriting;** macrography, micrography; stroke *or* dash of the pen, *coup de plume* <Fr>; secret writing, cryptography 345.6; **alphabet, writing system** 546.3

2 **authorship, writing,** authorcraft, pencraft, wordsmanship, **composition,** the art of composition, inditing, inditement; one's pen; **creative writing,** literary art, verbal art, literary composition, literary production, verse-writing, short-story writing, novel-writing, playwriting, drama-writing; essay-writing; **expository writing;** technical writing; journalism, newspaper writing, investigative reporting, editorial-writing, feature-writing, rewriting; magazine writing; songwriting, lyric-writing, libretto-writing; artistry, literary power, literary artistry, literary talent *or* flair, skill with words *or* language, facility in writing, ready pen; **writer's itch,** graphomania, scribblemania, graphorrhea, *cacoëthes scribendi* <L>; automatic writing; writer's cramp, graphospasm

3 **handwriting, hand, script,** fist <nf>, chirography, **calligraphy,** autography; **manuscript,** scrive <Scot>; **autograph,** holograph; **penmanship,** penscript, pencraft; stylography; graphology, graphanalysis, graphometry; paleography

4 handwriting style; **printing,** handprinting, block letter, **lettering; stationery; writing materials,** paper, foolscap, note paper, pad, papyrus, parchment, tracing paper, typing paper, vellum

5 <good writing> **calligraphy,** fine writing, elegant penmanship, **good hand,** fine hand, good fist <nf>, fair hand, copybook hand

6 <bad writing> **cacography, bad hand,** poor fist <nf>, cramped *or* crabbed hand, botched writing, childish scrawl, illegible handwriting, *griffonage* <Fr>

7 **scribbling,** scribblement; **scribble,** scrabble, **scrawl, scratch,** *barbouillage* <Fr>; *pattes de mouche* <Fr>, hen tracks *and* hen scratches <nf>, pothookery, pothooks, pothooks *and* hangers

8 **stenography, shorthand,** brachygraphy, tachygraphy; speedwriting; phonography, stenotype; contraction

9 **letter, written character** 546.1; **alphabet, writing system** 546.3; punctuation 530.15,18-20

10 <written matter> **writing, the written word; piece;** piece of writing, text, screed; **copy, matter;** printed matter, literature, reading matter; the written word, *literae scriptae* <L>; nonfiction; fiction 722; **composition, work,** opus, production, literary production, literary artefact *or* artifact, lucubration, brainchild; essay, article 556.1; poem; play 704.4; letter 553.2; **document** 549.5,8; **paper,** parchment, scroll; **script,** scrip, scrive <Scot>; **penscript, typescript; manuscript** *or* MS *or* Ms *or* ms, holograph, autograph; **draft,** first draft, second draft, etc, recension, **version;** edited version, finished version, final draft; transcription, transcript, fair copy, engrossment; flimsy; original, author's copy; camera-ready copy; printout, computer printout, hard copy

11 <ancient manuscript> **codex;** scroll; palimpsest, *codex rescriptus* <L>; papyrus, parchment

12 **literature, letters, belles lettres,** polite literature, humane letters, *litterae humaniores* <L>, republic of letters, writing; **work, literary work, text, literary text; works, complete works, oeuvre, canon, literary canon, author's canon;** serious literature; **classics,** ancient literature; medieval literature, Renaissance literature, etc; national literature, English literature, French literature, etc; contemporary literature; underground literature; pseudonymous literature; folk literature, oral history; travel literature; wisdom literature; erotic literature, erotica; pornographic literature, pornography, porn *and* hard porn *and* soft porn <nf>, obscene literature, scatological literature; popular literature, pop literature <nf>; kitsch

13 **writer, scribbler** <nf>, **penman,** pen, penner; pen *or* pencil driver *or* pusher <nf>, word-slinger, **inkslinger** *and* ink spiller <nf>, knight of the plume *or* pen *or* quill <nf>; **scribe, scrivener, amanuensis, secretary,** recording secretary, **clerk;** letterer; **copyist,** copier, transcriber; chirographer, calligrapher

14 **writing expert,** graphologist, handwriting expert, graphometrist; paleographer

15 **author, writer,** scribe <nf>, composer, inditer; authoress, penwoman; **creative writer,** *littérateur* <Fr>, literary artist, literary craftsman *or* artisan *or* journeyman, belletrist, man of letters, literary man; wordsmith, word painter; free lance, free-lance writer; ghostwriter, ghost <nf>; collaborator, coauthor; prose writer, logographer; fiction writer, fictioneer <nf>; story writer, **short story writer;** storyteller; **novelist;** novelettist; diarist; **newspaperman; annalist;** poet 720.13; **dramatist,** humorist 489.12; scriptwriter, scenario writer, scenarist; nonfiction writer; article writer, magazine writer; **essayist;** monographer; reviewer, critic, literary critic, music critic, art critic, drama critic, dance critic; columnist; pamphleteer; technical writer; copywriter, advertising writer; compiler, encyclopedist, bibliographer

16 **hack writer,** hack, literary hack, Grub Street writer <Brit>, **penny-a-liner, scribbler** <nf>, **potboiler** <nf>

17 **stenographer,** brachygrapher, tachygrapher; phonographer, stenotypist

18 **typist,** keyboarder; printer

VERBS 19 **write, pen, pencil,** drive *or* push the pen *or* pencil <nf>; stain *or* spoil paper <nf>, shed *or* spill ink <nf>, **scribe,** scrive <Scot>; inscribe, scroll; superscribe; enface; take pen in hand; **put in writing,** put in black and white; **draw up, draft, write out,** make out; **write down, record** 549.16; take down in shorthand; **type; transcribe,** copy out, engross, make a fair copy, copy; trace; **rewrite, revise, edit,** recense, make a recension, make a critical revision; highlight

20 **scribble,** scrabble, **scratch, scrawl,** make hen tracks *or* hen *or* chicken scratches <nf>, doodle

21 **write,** author, **compose, indite,** formulate, produce, prepare; dash off, knock off *or* out <nf>, throw on paper, pound *or* crank *or* grind *or* churn out; free-lance; collaborate, coauthor; ghostwrite, ghost <nf>; novelize; scenarize; pamphleteer; editorialize

ADJS 22 **written,** penned, penciled, lettered, literal, graphical, typed; **inscribed;** engrossed; **in writing, in black and white,** on paper; scriptural, scriptorial, graphic; calligraphic, chirographic, chirographical; stylographic, stylographical; manuscript, autograph, autographic, holograph, holographic, holographical, in one's own hand, under one's hand; **longhand,** in longhand, in script, handwritten; **shorthand,** in shorthand; italic, italicized; cursive, running, flowing; graphologic, graphological, graphometric, graphometrical; graphoanalytic, graphoanalytical; typewritten; printed

23 **scribbled,** scrabbled, **scratched, scrawled; scribbly, scratchy, scrawly**

24 **literary,** belletristic, lettered; classical

25 auctorial, authorial; polygraphic; graphomaniac, graphomaniacal, scribblemaniac, scribblemaniacal, scripturient <old>

26 **alphabetic,** ideographic, etc 546.8

27 stenographic, stenographical; **shorthand,** in shorthand

28 **clerical, secretarial**

WORD ELEMENTS 29 grapho-, -graphy, -graphia; -graph, -gram; -grapher

548 PRINTING

NOUNS 1 **printing,** publishing, publication, photographic reproduction, photochemical process, phototypography, phototypy; **photoengraving; letterpress,** relief printing, **typography,** letterpress photoengraving; zincography, photozincography; line engraving, halftone engraving; stereotypy; wood-block printing, xylotypography, chromoxylography; intaglio printing, **gravure;** rotogravure, rotary photogravure; planographic printing, planography, **lithography,** typolithography, photolithography, lithogravure, lithophotogravure; offset lithography, offset, dry offset, photo-offset; photogelatin process, albertype, collotype; electronography, electrostatic printing, onset, xerography, xeroprinting; stencil, mimeograph, silk-screen printing; color printing, chromotypography, chromotypy, two-color printing, three-color printing; book printing, job printing, sheetwork; history of printing, palaeotypography; photography 714; **graphic arts, printmaking** 713.1

2 **composition, typesetting, setting,** composing; hand composition, machine composition; hot-metal typesetting, cold-type typesetting, photosetting, photocomposition; imposition; justification; composing stick, galley chase, furniture, quoin; typesetting machine, phototypesetter, phototypesetting machine; computer composition, computerized typesetting; composition tape; line of type, slug; layout, dummy

3 **print, imprint, stamp, impression, impress,** letterpress; reprint, reissue; offprint; offcut; offset, setoff, mackle; duplicate, facsimile, carbon copy, repro <nf>

4 **copy,** printer's copy, manuscript, typescript; **camera-ready copy; matter;** composed matter, live matter, dead matter, standing matter

5 **proof,** proof sheet, pull <Brit>, trial impression; galley, **galley proof,** slip; page proof, foundry proof, plate proof, stone proof, press proof, cold-type proof, color proof, computer proof, engraver's proof, reproduction *or* repro proof, blueprint, blue <nf>, vandyke, progressive proof; author's proof; revise

6 **type, print, stamp, letter; type size;** type body *or* shank *or* stem, body, shank, stem, shoulder, belly, back, bevel, beard, feet, groove, nick, face, counter; ascender, descender, serif; lower case, minuscule; upper case, majuscule; capital, cap <nf>, small capital, small cap <nf>; ligature, logotype; bastard type, bottle-assed type, fat-faced type; **pi;** type lice; **font; face,** typeface; type class, roman, sans serif, script, italic, black letter; case, typecase; point, pica; en, em; typefounders, typefoundry

7 **space,** spacing, patent space, justifying space, justification space; spaceband, slug; quadrat, quad; em quad, en quad; em, en; three-em space, thick space; four-em space, five-em space, thin space; hair space

8 **printing surface, plate,** printing plate; typeform, locked-up page; duplicate plate, electrotype, stereotype, plastic plate, rubber plate; zincograph, zincotype; **printing equipment**

9 **presswork,** makeready; **press, printing press,** printing machine <Brit>; platen press, flatbed cylinder press, cylinder press, rotary press, web press, rotogravure press; bed, platen, web

10 **printed matter; reading matter, text,** letterpress <Brit>; advertising matter; advance sheets

11 **press,** printing office, print shop, printery, printers; publishers, **publishing house; pressroom,** composing room, proofroom

12 **printer,** printworker; **compositor, typesetter,** typographer, Linotyper; keyboarder; stoneman, makeup man; proofer; stereotyper, stereotypist, electrotyper; apprentice printer, devil, printer's devil; **pressman**

13 **proofreader,** reader, printer's reader <Brit>, copyholder; **copyreader,** copy editor

VERBS 14 **print; imprint, impress, stamp,** enstamp <old>; engrave; run, run off, strike; **publish, issue, put in print, bring out, put out, get out;** put to press, put to bed, see through the press; prove, proof, prove up, make *or* pull a proof, pull; overprint; reprint, reissue; mimeograph, hectograph; multigraph

15 autotype, electrotype, Linotype <trademark>, monotype, palaeotype, stereotype; keyboard

16 **compose,** set, set in print; **make up,** impose; justify, overrun; pi, pi a form

17 **copy-edit; proofread,** read, read *or* correct copy

18 <be printed> go to press, come off press, come out, appear in print

ADJS 19 **printed, in print;** typeset

20 **typographic, typographical;** phototypic, phototypographic; chromotypic, chromotypographic; stereotypic, palaeotypographical; **boldface,** bold-faced, blackface, black-faced, full-faced; **lightface,** light-faced; **upper-case, lower-case**

549 RECORD

NOUNS 1 **record, recording,** documentation, written word; **chronicle, annals,** history, story; roll, **rolls,** pipe roll <Brit>; account; register, registry, rota, roster, scroll, catalog, inventory, table, list 871, dossier, portfolio; letters, correspondence; **vestige, trace,** memorial, token, relic, remains; herstory <nf>

2 **archives,** public records, government archives, government papers, presidential papers, historical documents, historical records, memorabilia; clipping; cartulary; biographical records, life records, biographical material, papers, ana; parish rolls *or* register *or* records

3 registry, registry office; archives, files; chancery; National Archives, Library of Congress; Somerset House <Brit>

4 **memorandum, memo** <nf>, memoir, *aide-mémoire* <Fr>, memorial; **reminder** 989.6; **note, notation,** annotation, jotting, docket, marginal note, marginalia, scholium, scholia, adversaria, footnote; jottings; **entry,** register, **registry,** item; **minutes;** inscription, personal note

5 **document,** official document, legal document, legal paper, legal instrument, **instrument,** writ, **paper,** parchment, scroll, roll, **writing,** script, scrip; holograph, chirograph; **papers,** ship's papers; docket, **file,** personal file, **dossier;** blank, form; deed, title deed, muniments; registration document, insurance papers

6 **certificate,** certification, **ticket; authority,** authorization; **credential, voucher, warrant,** warranty, testimonial, charter; note; **affidavit,** sworn statement, notarized statement, deposition, witness, attestation, *procès-verbal* <Fr>; **visa,** *visé* <Fr>; passport; **bill of health,** clean bill of health; navicert <Brit>; **diploma,** sheepskin <nf>; certificate of proficiency, testamur <Brit>; birth certificate, death certificate, marriage certificate

7 **report, bulletin, brief, statement, account,** accounting; account rendered, *compte rendu* <Fr>; **minutes,** the record, proceedings, transactions, acta; official report, annual report; report card, transcript; **yearbook,** annual; **returns,** census report *or* returns, election returns, tally; case history

8 <official documents> state paper, white paper; blue book, green book, Red Book <Brit>, white book, yellow book, *livre jaune* <Fr>; gazette, official journal, Congressional Record, Hansard

9 <registers> genealogy, pedigree, studbook; Social Register, blue book; directory; Who's Who; Almanach de Gotha; Burke's Peerage Baronetage *and* Knightage; Debrett's Peerage Baronetage Knightage *and* Companionage; Red Book, Royal Kalendar; Lloyd's Register

10 <recording media> bulletin board, notice board; scoresheet, scorecard, scoreboard; **tape,** magnetic tape, magnetic track, magnetic storage, cassette tape, videotape, ticker tape; **computer disk,** magnetic disk, diskette, floppy disk *or* floppy, hard disk, disk cartridge, CD-ROM, laser disk, optical disk; memory; computer file, database; compact disk *or* CD, multimedia CD, laser disk, DVD; phonograph record, disc *or* disk, platter <nf>; film, motion-picture film; slip, card, index card, filing card; library catalog, catalog card; microcard, microfiche, microdot, microfilm; **file** 871.3; recording instrument, photocopier, camera, videocamera, camcorder, recorder, tape recorder, wiretap, bug <nf>, answering machine, videocassette recorder *or* VCR, flight recorder, black box

11 <record books> **notebook, pocketbook,** pocket notebook, blankbook; loose-leaf notebook, spiral notebook; **memorandum book,** memo book <nf>, commonplace book, adversaria; address book, directory; workbook; **blotter,** police blotter; docket, court calendar; **calendar,** desk calendar, appointment calendar, appointment schedule, engagement book, agenda, agenda book, Filofax <trademark>, datebook; **tablet,** table <old>, writing tablet; diptych, triptych; pad, **scratch pad,** notepad; Post-it Note <trademark>, sticky <nf>; **scrapbook,** memory book, **album; diary, journal,** daybook; **log,** ship's log, **logbook; account book, ledger,** daybook; **cashbook,** petty cashbook; checkbook; Domesday Book; catalog, classified catalog, index; yearbook, annual; guestbook, guest register, register, registry; cartulary *or* chartulary

12 **monument,** monumental *or* memorial record, **memorial;** necrology, obituary, **memento,** remembrance, testimonial; cup, trophy, prize, ribbon, plaque; **marker;** inscription; **tablet,** stone, hoarstone <Brit>, boundary stone, memorial stone; **pillar,** stele *or* stela, shaft, column, memorial column, rostral column, manubial column; cross; war memorial; arch, memorial arch, triumphal arch, victory arch; memorial statue, bust; monolith, obelisk, **pyramid; tomb,** grave 309.16; tomb of unknown soldier; **gravestone, tombstone**; memorial tablet, brass; headstone, footstone; mausoleum; cenotaph; cairn, mound, barrow, cromlech, dolmen, megalith, menhir, cyclolith, earthwork, mound; **shrine,** reliquary, tope, stupa

13 recorder, registrar 550.1

14 **registration, register, registry; recording,** record keeping, recordation; archiving; minuting, **enrollment,** matriculation, enlistment; impanelment; **listing, tabulation, cataloging,** inventorying, indexing; chronicling; **entry,** insertion, entering, posting; docketing, inscribing, **inscription; booking, logging;** recording instruments

VERBS **15** **record,** put *or* place upon record; **inscribe,** enscroll; **register, enroll,** matriculate, check in; impanel; poll; **file,** index, catalog, calendar, **tabulate, list,** docket; **chronicle,** document; minute, put in the minutes *or* on the record, spread on the record; commit to *or* preserve in an archive, archive; **write,** commit *or* reduce to writing, put in writing, put in black and white, put on paper; **write out; make out,** fill out; **write up,** chalk, chalk up; **write down, mark down, jot down, put down, set down, take down; note,** note down, make a note, make a memorandum; **post,** post up; **enter,** make an entry, insert, write in; **book, log;** cut, carve, grave, engrave, incise; put on tape, tape, tape-record; capture on film; record, cut; videotape; keyboard, key

ADJS **16** **recording,** recordative <old>, registrational; certificatory

17 **recorded,** registered; inscribed, written down, down; **filed,** indexed, enrolled, **entered,** logged, booked, posted; documented, chronicled; minuted; **on record,** on file, on the books; official, legal, of record; in black and white

18 **documentary,** documentational, documental, archival, archived; epigraphic, inscriptional; necrological, obituary; testimonial

550 RECORDER

NOUNS **1** **recorder,** recordist, record keeper; **registrar,** register, prothonotary; archivist, documentalist; master of the rolls <Brit>, *custos rotulorum* <L>; librarian; **clerk,** record clerk, penpusher <nf>, filing clerk; town *or* municipal clerk, county clerk; bookkeeper, accountant; **scribe,** scrivener; **secretary,** amanuensis; **stenographer** 547.17; notary, notary public; marker; scorekeeper, scorer, official scorer, timekeeper; engraver, stonecutter; reporter

2 **annalist,** genealogist, chronicler; cliometrician; historian

551 INFORMATION

NOUNS **1** **information,** info <nf>, gen <Brit nf>, **facts, data, knowledge** 928; public knowledge, open secret, common knowledge; general information; news, factual information, hard information; **evidence, proof** 957; **enlightenment,** light; incidental information, sidelight; **acquaintance,** familiarization, briefing; **instruction** 568.1; **intelligence; the dope** *and* the goods *and* **the scoop** *and* the skinny *and* the straight skinny *and* the inside skinny <nf>, the know <nf>, the gen <Brit>; transmission, **communication** 343; **report, word,** message, presentation, account, **statement,** mention; white paper, white book, blue book, command paper <Brit>; dispatch, bulletin, communiqué, handout <nf>, fact sheet, release; publicity, promotional material, broadside; **notice,** notification; notice board, bulletin board; announcement, publication 352; directory, guidebook 574.10; trivia

2 **inside information,** private *or* confidential information; **the lowdown** *and* **inside dope** *and* inside wire *and* **hot tip** *and* dirt <nf>; insider; pipeline <nf>; privileged information, classified information

3 **tip** *and* tip-off *and* **pointer** <nf>, clue, cue; steer <nf>; **advice;** whisper, passing word, **word to the wise,** word in the ear, bug in the ear <nf>, bee in the bonnet <nf>; warning, caution, monition, alerting, sound bite; aside

4 **hint,** gentle hint, **intimation, indication, suggestion, mere** *or* **faint suggestion, suspicion, inkling,** whisper, **glimmer, glimmering; cue, clue,** index, **symptom, sign,** spoor, track, scent, sniff, whiff, telltale, tip-off <nf>; **implication, insinuation, innuendo;** broad hint, gesture, signal, nod, wink, look, nudge, kick, prompt; disguised message, backward masking; rumor, leak, gossip

5 **informant, informer, source,** teller, interviewee, enlightener; **adviser,** monitor; **reporter,** notifier, **announcer,** annunciator; spokesperson, spokespeople, spokeswoman, spokesman, press secretary, press officer, information officer, mouthpiece, messenger, correspondent; spin doctor <nf>; communicator, communicant, publisher; **authority,** witness, expert witness; **tipster** <nf>, **tout** <nf>; newsmonger, gossipmonger; **information medium** *or* **media, mass media,** print media, electronic media, the press, radio, television; channel, the grapevine; information network, network; information center; public relations officer

6 **informer, betrayer,** double-crosser <nf>, delator <old>; fifth columnist; **snitch** *and* snitcher <nf>; whistle-blower <nf>; **tattler, tattletale, telltale, talebearer; blab** *or* blabber *or* blabberer *or* blabbermouth <nf>; **squealer** *and* preacher *and* **stool pigeon** *and* stoolie *and* **fink** *and* rat <nf>, nark <Brit nf>; **spy** 576.9; grapevine, channel

7 information technology, information *or* communication theory; data storage *or* retrieval, information retrieval *or* IT, EDP *or* electronic data processing, data processing, information processing; signal, noise; encoding, decoding; bit; redundancy, entropy; channel; information *or* communication explosion

VERBS **8** **inform, tell, speak on** *or* **for,** apprise,

advise, advertise, advertise of, **give word,** mention to, **acquaint, enlighten,** familiarize, brief, verse, give the facts, give an account of, give by way of information; **instruct,** educate; possess *or* seize one of the facts; **let know, have one to know, give** *or* **lead one to believe** *or* understand; tell once *and* for all; notify, give notice *or* notification, serve notice; **communicate** 343.6,7; bring *or* send *or* leave word; **report** 552.11; **disclose** 351.4; put in a new light, shed new *or* fresh light upon; announce, broadcast, convey, break the news

9 **post** *and* **keep posted** <nf>; wise up *and* clue *or* fill in *and* bring up to speed *or* date *and* put in the picture <nf>

10 **hint, intimate, suggest, insinuate, imply, indicate,** adumbrate, lead *or* leave one to gather, justify one in supposing, give *or* drop *or* throw out a hint, give an inkling of, signal, suggest, **hint at; leak,** let slip out; allude to, make an allusion to, glance at <old>; **prompt,** give the cue, put onto; put in *or* into one's head, put a bee in one's bonnet

11 **tip** *and* tip off *and* **give one a tip** <nf>, alert; **give a pointer to** <nf>; put hep *or* hip <nf>, **let in on,** let in on the know <nf>; let next to *and* put next to *and* **put on to** *and* put on to something hot <nf>; **confide,** confide to, entrust with information, give confidential information, mention privately *or* confidentially, whisper, buzz, breathe, whisper in the ear, **put a bug in one's ear** <nf>

12 **inform on** *or* **against, betray; tattle;** turn informer; testify against, **bear witness against;** turn state's evidence, turn king's *or* queen's evidence <Brit>

13 <nf terms> **sell one out** *or* **down the river,** tell on, blab, snitch, squeal, peach <old>, sell out, sing, rat, stool, fink, nark, finger, put the finger on, blow the whistle, shop <Brit>, dime, drop a dime, spill one's guts, spill the beans, squawk, weasel, let the cat out of the bag, sell down the river

14 **learn, come to know, be informed** *or* **apprised of,** have it reported, get the facts, **get wise to** <nf>, **get hep to** *and* **next to** *and* **on to** <nf>; become conscious *or* aware of, become alive *or* awake to, awaken to, tumble to <nf>, open one's eyes to; realize, get wind of; overhear

15 **know** 928.12, be informed *or* apprised, have the facts, be in the know <nf>, **come to one's knowledge,** come to *or* reach one's ears; be told, **hear, overhear,** hear tell of *and* hear say <nf>; get scent *or* wind of; **know well** 928.13; have inside information, know where the bodies are buried <nf>

16 **keep informed,** keep posted <nf>, stay briefed, **keep up on,** keep up to date *or* au courant, keep abreast of the times; **keep track of,** keep count *or* account of, keep watch on, keep tab *or* tabs on <nf>, keep a check on, keep an eye on

ADJS 17 **informed** 927.18-20; informed of, enlightened, briefed, in the know 928.16, clued-in *or* clued-up <nf>

18 **informative,** informing, informational, informatory; illuminating, **instructive, enlightening;** educative, educational; advisory, monitory; **communicative**

19 telltale, tattletale, kiss-and-tell

ADVS 20 from information received, according to reports *or* rumor, from notice given, as a matter of general information, by common report, from what one can gather, as far as anyone knows

552 NEWS

NOUNS 1 **news, tidings, intelligence, information, word,** advice; happenings, current affairs, hard news; newsiness <nf>; newsworthiness; a nose for news; **journalism,** reportage, coverage, news coverage, news gathering; **the press,** the fourth estate, the press corps, print journalism, electronic journalism, investigative journalism, broadcast journalism, broadcast news, radio journalism, television journalism; **news medium** *or* **media,** newspaper, newsletter, newsmagazine, radio, television, press association, news service, news agency, press agency, wire service, telegraph agency; press box, press gallery; yellow press, tabloid press; pack journalism; alternative press

2 **good news,** good word, **glad tidings;** gospel, evangel; bad news

3 **news item,** piece *or* budget of news; **article, story,** piece, account; copy; scoop *and* beat <nf>, exclusive; interview; breaking story, newsbreak; feature story; follow-up, sidebar; column, editorial; spot news; photo opportunity; outtake; sound bite; media hype <nf>

4 **message, dispatch, word, communication, communiqué,** advice, press *or* news release, release; press conference, news conference; express <Brit>; embassy, embassage <old>; **letter** 553.2; **telegram** 347.14; pneumatogram, *petit bleu* <Fr>

5 **bulletin,** news report, **flash,** brief, update

6 **report, rumor,** flying rumor, unverified *or* unconfirmed report, **hearsay,** *on-dit* <Fr>, **scuttlebutt** *and* latrine rumor <nf>; **talk, whisper, buzz, rumble,** bruit, cry; idea afloat, news stirring; **common talk,** town talk, **talk of the town,** topic of the day, *cause célèbre* <Fr>; **grapevine; canard,** roorback

7 **gossip,** gossiping, gossipry, gossipmongering, newsmongering, mongering, back-fence gossip <nf>; **talebearing,** taletelling; **tattle,** tittle-tattle,

chitchat, **talk,** idle talk, small talk, by-talk; "putting two and two together, and making it five"—Pascal; piece of gossip, groundless rumor, tale, story

8 **scandal, dirt** <nf>, **malicious gossip,** "gossip made tedious by morality"—Oscar Wilde; juicy morsel, tidbit, choice bit of dirt <nf>; **scandalmongering;** gossip column; character assassination, **slander** 512.3; whispering campaign

9 **newsmonger, rumormonger, scandalmonger, gossip,** gossipmonger, gossiper, *yenta* <Yiddish>, quidnunc, **busybody,** tabby <nf>; **talebearer,** taleteller, telltale, **tattletale** <nf>, tattler, tittle-tattler; gossip columnist; reporter, newspaperman

10 <secret news channel> **grapevine, grapevine telegraph,** channel, bush telegraph <Austral>; **pipeline;** a litle bird *or* birdie; informer, leak; contact

VERBS **11** **report,** give a report, give an account of, tell, relate, rehearse <old>; write up, make out *or* write up a report, publicize; editorialize; gather the news, newsgather; dig *or* dig up dirt <nf>; bring word, tell the news, break the news, give tidings of; bring glad tidings, give the good word; announce 352.12; put around, spread, **rumor** 352.10; clue in *or* clue up <nf>, **inform** 551.8

12 **gossip,** talk over the back fence <nf>; **tattle,** tittle-tattle; clatter <Scot>, **talk;** retail gossip, **dish the dirt** <nf>, tell idle tales

ADJS **13** **newsworthy,** front-page, with news value, newsy, informative; reportorial

14 **gossipy,** gossiping, newsy; **talebearing,** taletelling

15 **reported, rumored,** whispered; rumored about, talked about, whispered about, bruited about, bandied about; **in the news, in circulation, in the air, going around,** going about, going the rounds, **current, rife,** afloat, in every one's mouth, on all tongues, on the street, all over the town, hot off the press; made public 352.17

ADVS **16** reportedly, allegedly, as they say, as it is said, **as the story goes** *or* runs, as the fellow says <nf>, it is said

553 CORRESPONDENCE

NOUNS **1** **correspondence, letter writing,** written communication, exchange of letters, epistolary intercourse *or* communication; personal correspondence, business correspondence; mailing, mass mailing, electronic mail

2 **letter** <see list>, **epistle, message, communication, dispatch, missive,** favor <old>; personal letter, business letter; **note, line,** chit, billet <old>; **reply, answer, acknowledgment,** rescript

3 **card, postcard, postal card,** lettercard <Brit>; picture postcard

4 **mail, post** <chiefly Brit>, **postal services,** letter bag; post day <Brit>; domestic mail, general delivery, snail mail <nf>, airmail, surface mail, express mail, priority mail, special handling, special delivery, first- *or* second- *or* third- *or* fourth-class mail, parcel post, registered mail, certified mail, insured mail, metered mail; mailing list; junk mail <nf>; direct mail, direct-mail advertising *or* selling, mail-order selling; mail solicitation; fan mail; electronic mail; Pony Express <old>

5 **postage;** stamp, postage stamp; frank; postmark, cancellation; postage meter

6 **mailbox,** postbox *and* letter box <chiefly Brit>, pillar box <Brit>; letter drop, mail drop; mailing machine *or* mailer; mailbag, postbag <Brit>; e-mail box

7 **postal service, postal system; post office** *or* **PO,** general post office *or* GPO, sorting office, dead-letter office, sea post office, mailboat; postmaster, **mailman, postman,** mail carrier, letter carrier; mail clerk, post-office *or* postal clerk; messenger, courier; postal union, Universal Postal Union; electronic mail service

8 **correspondent, letter writer,** writer, communicator; pen pal <nf>; addressee

9 **address,** name *and* address, direction <old>, **destination,** superscription; zone, zip code *or* zip, zip plus four, postal code <Can>, postal code *or* postcode <Brit>; letterhead, billhead; drop, accommodation address <Brit>

VERBS **10** **correspond,** correspond with, **communicate with, write, write to,** write a letter, send a letter to, send a note, **drop a line** <nf>; use the mails; keep up a correspondence, exchange letters

11 **reply, answer, acknowledge,** respond; reply by return mail

12 **mail, post,** dispatch, send, forward; airmail

13 **address, direct,** superscribe

ADJS **14** epistolary; **postal,** post; letter; mail-order, direct-mail; mail-in; mailable; send-in, sendable

PHRS **15** please reply, RSVP *or* *répondez s'il vous plaît* <Fr>

16 **kinds of letters**

aerogram
air letter
airgraph <Brit>
apostolic *or* papal brief
bull
chain letter
circular letter
cover letter
dead letter
Dear John
dimissory letter *or* dimissorial
drop letter
encyclical
encyclical letter
epistle
fan letter
form letter
invitation
letter credential
letter of condolence
letter of credence
letter of credit
letter of delegation

letter of introduction
letter of marque
letter of recommendation
letter of request
letter of resignation
letter overt
letter patent
letter rogatory
letter testamentary
love letter *or* *billet doux* <Fr>
market letter
memorandum *or* memo
monitory *or* monitory letter
newsletter
open letter
paschal letter
pastoral letter
pink slip
poison-pen letter
round robin

554 BOOK

NOUNS 1 **book, volume, tome;** publication, writing, **work, opus, production; title;** opusculum, opuscule; **trade book; textbook,** schoolbook, reader, grammar; **reference book,** playbook; songbook 708.28; notebook 549.11; storybook, **novel; best seller** *or* bestseller; coffee-table book; nonbook; **children's book,** juvenile book, juvenile; picture book; coloring book, sketchbook; prayer book, psalter, psalmbook; **classic,** the book, the bible, magnum opus, great work, standard work, definitive work

2 **publisher,** book publisher; publishing house, press, small press, vanity press; **editor,** trade editor, reference editor, juvenile editor, textbook editor, dictionary editor, college editor, line editor; acquisitions editor, executive editor, managing editor, editor-in-chief; picture editor; packager; copy editor *or* copyeditor, fact checker, proofreader; production editor, permissions editor; **printer,** book printer, typesetter, compositor; **bookbinder,** bibliopegist; **bookdealer, bookseller,** book agent, book salesman; book manufacturer, press

3 **book, printed book, bound book,** bound volume, cased book, casebound book, cloth-bound book, clothback, leather-bound book; manufactured book, finished book; packaged book; **hardcover,** hardcover book, hardbound, hardbound book, hard book; **paperback,** paper-bound book; pocket book, soft-cover, soft-bound book, limp-cover book

4 **volume, tome;** folio; quarto *or* 4to; octavo *or* 8vo; twelvemo *or* 12mo; sextodecimo *or* sixteenmo *or* 16mo; octodecimo *or* eighteenmo *or* 18mo; imperial, super, royal, medium, crown; trim size

5 **edition,** issue; volume, number; **printing,** impression, press order, print order, print run; copy; series, set, boxed set, collection, library; library edition; back number; **trade edition,** subscription edition, subscription book; school edition, text edition

6 **rare book,** early edition; first edition; signed edition; Elzevir, Elzevir book *or* edition; Aldine, Aldine book *or* edition; manuscript, scroll, codex; incunabulum, cradle book

7 **compilation,** omnibus; symposium; collection, collectanea, miscellany; collected works, selected works, complete works, corpus, *œuvres* <Fr>, canon; **miscellanea,** analects; ana; chrestomathy, delectus; compendium, **anthology,** composition, garland, florilegium; flowers, beauties; garden; *Festschrift* <Ger>; quotation book; album, photograph album; scrapbook; yearbook; display, exhibition; series, serialization

8 **handbook, manual,** enchiridion, vade mecum, gradus, how-to book <nf>; **cookbook,** cookery book <Brit>; nature book, field guide; travel book, **guidebook** 574.10; sports book

9 **reference book,** work of reference; **encyclopedia,** cyclopedia; **concordance; catalog;** calendar; index; classified catalog, *catalogue raisonné* <Fr>, dictionary catalog; **directory,** city directory; telephone directory, telephone book, phone book <nf>; **atlas, gazetteer;** studbook; source book, casebook; record book 549.11; **language reference book** <see list>; **dictionary,** lexicon, wordbook, Webster's; glossary, gloss, **vocabulary,** onomasticon, nomenclator; **thesaurus, Roget's,** storehouse *or* treasury of words; **almanac**

10 **textbook, text, schoolbook, manual,** manual of instruction; **primer,** alphabet book, abecedary, abecedarium; hornbook, battledore; gradus, exercise book, workbook; **grammar, reader;** spelling book, speller, casebook

11 **booklet, pamphlet, brochure, chapbook, leaflet, folder, tract;** circular 352.8; comic book

12 **makeup, design;** front matter, preliminaries, text, back matter; head, fore edge, back, tail; page, leaf, folio; type page; trim size; flyleaf, endpaper, endleaf, endsheet, signature; recto, verso *or* reverso; title page, half-title page; title, bastard title, binder's title, subtitle, running title; copyright page, imprint, printer's imprint, imprimatur, colophon; catchword, catch line; dedication, inscription; acknowledgments, preface, foreword, introduction; contents, contents page, table of contents; appendix, notes, glossary; errata; bibliography; index

13 **part, section,** book, volume; article; serial, installment, *livraison* <Fr>; fascicle; **passage,** phrase, clause, verse, paragraph, chapter, column

14 **bookbinding,** bibliopegy; **binding, cover, book cover,** case, bookcase, hard binding, soft binding, mechanical binding, spiral binding, comb binding, plastic binding; library binding; headband, footband, tailband; **jacket, book jacket, dust**

jacket, dust cover, wrapper; slipcase, slipcover; book cloth, binder's cloth, binder's board, binder board; folding, tipping, gathering, collating, sewing; **signature;** collating mark, niggerhead; Smyth sewing, side sewing, saddle stitching, wire stitching, stapling, perfect binding; smashing, gluing-off, trimming, rounding, backing, lining, lining-up; casemaking, stamping, casing-in

15 <bookbinding styles> Aldine, Arabesque, Byzantine, Canevari, cottage, dentelle, Etruscan, fanfare, Grolier, Harleian, Jansenist, Maioli, pointillé, Roxburgh

16 **bookstore, bookshop,** *librairie* <Fr>, bookseller, book dealer; **bookstall,** bookstand; **book club**; bibliopole

17 **bookholder, bookrest,** book support, **book end; bookcase,** revolving bookcase *or* bookstand, bookrack, bookstand, **bookshelf;** stack, bookstack; book table, book tray, book truck; folder, folio; **portfolio**

18 **booklover,** philobiblist, bibliophile, bibliolater, book collector, bibliomane, bibliomaniac, bibliotaph; **bookworm,** bibliophage; book-stealer, biblioklept

19 **bibliology,** bibliography; bookcraft, bookmaking, book printing, book production, book manufacturing, bibliogenesis, bibliogony; bookselling, bibliopolism

ADJS 20 **bibliological,** bibliographical; bibliothecal, bibliothecary; bibliopolic; bibliopegic

21 **reference books**

almanac
atlas
bilingual dictionary
biographical dictionary
children's dictionary
college dictionary
concordance
desk dictionary
dialect dictionary
dictionary of quotations
directory
encyclopedia
etymological dictionary *or* etymologicon
foreign-language dictionary
geographical dictionary *or* gazetteer
glossary
guidebook
handbook
how-to book
idiom dictionary
index
lexicon
manual
reverse dictionary
rhyming dictionary
Roget's Thesaurus
school dictionary
specialized *or* special-subject dictionary
synonym dictionary
telephone directory *or* book
thesaurus
unabridged dictionary
usage dictionary
vade mecum

555 PERIODICAL

NOUNS 1 **periodical, serial, journal,** gazette; ephemeris; **magazine,** book *and* zine <nf>; pictorial; review; organ, **house organ; trade journal,** trade magazine; academic journal; daily, weekly, biweekly, bimonthly, fortnightly, monthly, quarterly, seasonal; annual, yearbook; newsletter; daybook, diary 549.11

2 **newspaper,** news, **paper,** sheet *or* rag <nf>, **gazette,** daily newspaper, daily, weekly newspaper, weekly, local paper, neighborhood newspaper, national newspaper; newspaper of record; **tabloid,** scandal sheet, extra, special, extra edition, special edition, Sunday paper, early edition, late edition; magazine section, comics, color supplement

3 **the press,** journalism, the public press, **the fourth estate;** print medium, the print media, print journalism, the print press, the public print; Fleet Street <Brit>; **wire service,** newswire, Associated Press, AP; United Press International, UPI; Reuters; **publishing, newspaper publishing, magazine publishing; the publishing industry, communications,** mass media, the communications industry, public communication; satellite publishing; reportage, coverage, legwork

4 **journalist, newspaperman, newspaperwoman, newsman, newswoman,** journo <Brit nf>, newspeople, inkstained wretch, pressman <Brit>, newswriter, gazetteer <old>, gentleman *or* representative of the press; **reporter,** newshawk *and* newshound <nf>; leg man <nf>; interviewer; investigative reporter *or* journalist; **cub reporter; correspondent, foreign correspondent,** war correspondent, special correspondent, stringer; publicist; rewriter, **rewrite man;** reviser, diaskeuast; **editor,** subeditor, managing editor, city editor, news editor, sports editor, woman's editor, feature editor, **copy editor,** copyman, copy chief, slotman; reader, **copyreader;** editorial writer, leader writer <Brit>; **columnist,** paragrapher, paragraphist; freelance reporter; **photographer, news photographer,** photojournalist; paparazzo; press baron; press corps

ADJS 5 **journalistic,** journalese <nf>; **periodical,** serial; magazinish, magaziny; newspaperish, newspapery; **editorial; reportorial**

556 TREATISE

NOUNS 1 **treatise,** piece, treatment, handling, tractate, tract; contribution; examination, survey, inquiry, **discourse, discussion,** disquisition, descant, exposition, screed; homily; memoir; **dissertation, thesis; essay,** theme; pandect; excursus; **study,** lucubration, étude; **paper,** research paper, term paper, position paper; **sketch,** outline, aperçu; causerie; **monograph,** research monograph; *morceau* <Fr>, paragraph, **note;** preliminary study, introductory study, first approach, prolegomenon; **article,** feature, special article

2 **commentary,** commentation <old>; **comment, remark; criticism,** critique, *compte-rendu critique* <Fr>, analysis; **review,** critical review, **report,** notice, **write-up** <nf>; **editorial,** leading article *or* leader <Brit>; gloss, running commentary, Op-Ed column

3 **discourser,** discusser, disquisitor, dissertator, doctoral candidate, expositor, descanter; symposiast, discussant; essayist; monographer, monographist; tractation, tractator <old>; **writer, author** 547.15; scholar

4 **commentator,** commenter; expositor, expounder, exponent; annotator, scholiast; glossarist, glossographer; **critic; reviewer,** book reviewer; **editor;** editorial writer, editorialist, leader writer <Brit>; news analyst; publicist

VERBS 5 **write upon,** touch upon, **discuss, treat, treat of, deal with,** take up, handle, go into, inquire into, survey; discourse, dissert, dissertate, descant, develop at thesis; **comment upon,** commentate, remark upon, annotate; expound; **criticize, review, write up**

ADJS 6 dissertational, disquisitional, discoursive, discursive; expository, expositorial, expositive, exegetical; essayistic; monographic, commentative, commentatorial, annotative; critical, interpretive *or* interpretative; editorial

557 ABRIDGMENT

NOUNS 1 **abridgment,** compendium, compend, *abrégé* <Fr>, **condensation,** short *or* shortened version, condensed version, potted version <Brit>, abbreviation, abbreviature, diminution, brief, digest, **abstract,** epitome, **précis, capsule,** nutshell *or* capsule version, capsulization, encapsulation, sketch, thumbnail sketch, **synopsis,** conspectus, syllabus, *aperçu* <Fr>, **survey, review,** overview, pandect, bird's-eye view; **outline,** skeleton, draft, blueprint, prospectus; topical outline; head, rubric

2 **summary, résumé,** curriculum vitae *or* CV, **recapitulation, recap** <nf>, rundown, run-through; **summation;** review; sum, substance, sum and substance, **wrapup** <nf>; pith, meat, gist, drift, core, essence, main point 997.6

3 **excerpt, extract, selection,** extraction, excerption, snippet; passage, selected passage; **clip** <nf>, film clip, outtake, sound bite <nf>

4 **excerpts,** *excerpta* <L>, **extracts, gleanings,** cuttings, clippings, snippets, selections; flowers, florilegium, **anthology;** compendium, treasury; ephemera; fragments; analects; **miscellany,** miscellanea; **collection,** collectanea; ana

VERBS 5 **abridge, shorten** 268.6, **condense, cut, clip; summarize,** synopsize, wrap up <nf>; **outline, sketch,** sketch out, hit the high spots; capsule, capsulize, encapsulate; **put in a nutshell**

ADJS 6 **abridged,** condensed; shortened, clipped, abstracted, abbreviated, truncated, compressed; nutshell, compendious, **brief** 268.8

ADVS 7 in brief, in summary, in sum, to the point, laconically, in a nutshell 537.8

558 LIBRARY

NOUNS 1 **library,** book depository; learning center; media center, media resource center, information center; **public library,** town *or* city *or* municipal library, county library, state library; school library, community college library, college library, university library; **special library,** medical library, law library, art library, etc; **circulating library, lending library** <Brit>; rental library; **book wagon, bookmobile;** bookroom, bookery <old>, *bibliothèque* <Fr>, *bibliotheca* <L>, athenaeum; reading room; **national library,** Bibliothèque Nationale, Bodleian Library, British Library, Deutsche Bücherei, Library of Congress, Vatican Library, Faculty of Advocates Library; American Library Association *or* ALA, Association of College and Research Libraries, Special Libraries Association, International Federation of Library Associations, American Society for Information Science, Association of Library and Information Service Educators, etc

2 **librarianship,** professional librarianship; **library science,** information science, library services, library and information services, library and information studies

3 **librarian,** professional librarian, library professional; **director, head librarian, chief librarian;** head of service; library services director

4 **bibliography** <see list>, Modern Language Association Bibliography; **index;** Books in Print, Paperbound Books in Print; **publisher's catalog,** publisher's list, backlist; National Union Catalog, Library of Congress Catalog, General Catalogue of Printed Books <Brit>, Union List of Serials; **library catalog,** computerized catalog, on-line catalog, integrated on-line system; CD-ROM workstation

5 **bibliographies**

annotated bibliography
annual bibliography
bibliography of bibliographies
critical bibliography
cumulative bibliography
national bibliography
period bibliography
subject bibliography
trade bibliography

559 RELATIONSHIP BY BLOOD

NOUNS 1 **blood relationship,** blood, ties of blood, consanguinity, common descent *or* ancestry, biological *or* genetic relationship, **kinship,** kindred, **relation, relationship,** sibship; propinquity; cognation; agnation, enation; filiation, affiliation; alliance, connection, **family connection** *or* tie; motherhood, maternity; fatherhood, paternity; patrocliny, matrocliny; patrilineage, matrilineage; patriliny, matriliny; patrisib, matrisib; brotherhood, brothership, fraternity; sisterhood, sistership; cousinhood, cousinship; **ancestry** 560

2 **kinfolk** *and* **kinfolks** <nf>, **kinsmen, kinsfolk, kindred,** kinnery <nf>, **kin,** kith and kin, **family, relatives, relations, people,** folks <nf>, connections; **blood relation** *or* **relative,** flesh, blood, flesh and blood, uterine kin, consanguinean; cognate; agnate, enate; kinsman, kinswoman, sib, sibling; german; near relation, distant relation; next of kin; collateral relative, collateral; distaff *or* spindle side, distaff *or* spindle kin; sword *or* spear side, sword *or* spear kin; **tribesman,** tribespeople, clansman *or* -woman; **ancestry** 560, **posterity** 561

3 **brother,** bub *and* bubba *and* bro *and* bud *and* buddy <nf>, frater; brethren 700.1; **sister,** sis *and* sissy <nf>; sistern <nf>; kid brother *or* sister; blood brother *or* sister, uterine brother *or* sister, brother- *or* sister-german; half brother *or* sister, foster brother *or* sister, stepbrother *or* stepsister; **aunt,** auntie <nf>; **uncle,** unc *and* uncs *and* nunks *and* nunky *and* nuncle <nf>, **nephew, niece; cousin,** cousin-german; first cousin, second cousin, etc; cousin once removed, cousin twice removed, etc; country cousin; great-uncle, granduncle; great-granduncle; great-aunt, grandaunt; great-grandaunt; grandnephew, grandniece; **father, mother; son, daughter** 561.2

4 **race, people, folk, family, house, clan, tribe, nation;** patriclan, matriclan, deme, sept, gens, phyle, phratry, totem; **lineage,** line, blood, strain, stock, stem, species, stirps, **breed,** brood, kind; plant *or* animal kingdom, class, order, etc 809.5; **ethnicity,** tribalism, clannishness, roots <nf>

5 **family,** brood, nuclear family, binuclear family, extended family, one-parent *or* single-parent family; **house, household,** hearth, hearthside, ménage, people, **folk,** homefolk, folks *and* homefolks <nf>; kin, relatives, relations; **children,** issue, descendants, progeny, **offspring,** litter, get, kids <nf>

ADJS 6 **related, kindred, akin;** consanguineous *or* consanguinean *or* consanguineal, consanguine, by *or* of the blood; **biological,** genetic; **natural, birth,** by birth; cognate, uterine, agnate, enate; sib, sibling; allied, affiliated, congeneric; german, germane; collateral; foster, novercal; patrilineal, matrilineal; patroclinous, matroclinous; patrilateral, matrilateral; avuncular; intimately *or* closely related, remotely *or* distantly related

7 **racial, ethnic, tribal, national, family,** clannish, totemic, **lineal; ethnic;** phyletic, phylogenetic, genetic; gentile, gentilic

WORD ELEMENTS 8 adelpho-, phyl-

560 ANCESTRY

NOUNS 1 **ancestry,** progenitorship; parentage, parenthood; grandparentage, grandfatherhood, grandmotherhood

2 **paternity, fatherhood,** fathership; natural *or* birth *or* biological fatherhood; fatherliness, paternalness; adoptive fatherhood

3 **maternity, motherhood,** mothership; natural *or* birth *or* biological motherhood; motherliness, maternalness; adoptive motherhood; surrogate motherhood

4 **lineage, line, bloodline, descent,** descendancy, line of descent, ancestral line, succession, **extraction,** derivation, birth, **blood,** breed, **family,** house, **strain,** sept, **stock,** race, stirps, seed; direct line, phylum; **branch,** stem; filiation, affiliation, apparentation; side, father's side, mother's side; enate, agnate, cognate; male line, spear *or* sword side; female line, distaff *or* spindle side; consanguinity, common ancestry 559.1

5 **genealogy, pedigree,** stemma, *Stammbaum* <Ger>, genealogical tree, **family tree,** tree; genogram; descent, lineage, line, bloodline, ancestry

6 **heredity, heritage, inheritance, birth;** patrocliny, matrocliny; endowment, inborn capacity *or* tendency *or* susceptibility *or* predisposition; diathesis; inheritability, heritability, hereditability; Mendel's law, Mendelism *or* Mendelianism; Weismann theory, Weismannism; Altmann theory, De Vries theory, Galtonian theory, Verworn theory, Wiesner theory; **genetics,** genetic engineering, genetic fingerprinting, pharmacogenetics, genesiology, eugenics; **gene,** factor, inheritance factor, determiner, determinant; **character,** dominant *or* recessive character, allele *or* allelomorph; germ cell, germ plasm; **chromosome;** sex chromosome, X chromosome, Y chromosome; chromatin, chromatid; genetic code; DNA, RNA, replication

7 **ancestors, antecedents, predecessors,** ascendants, **fathers, forefathers, forebears,** progenitors, primogenitors; **grandparents,** grandfathers; patriarchs, elders

8 **parent, progenitor, ancestor,** procreator, begetter;

natural *or* birth *or* biological parent; grandparent; ancestress, progenitress, progenitrix; stepparent; adoptive parent; surrogate parent

9 **father, sire,** genitor, paternal ancestor, pater <nf>, the old man <nf>, governor <nf>, *abba* <Heb>; patriarch, paterfamilias; stepfather; foster father, adoptive father; birth father

10 <nf terms> **papa,** pa, pap, pappy, **pop,** pops, **dad, daddy,** daddums, daddyo, big daddy, the old man, the governor, pater

11 **mother,** genetrix, dam, maternal ancestor, matriarch, materfamilias; stepmother; foster mother, adoptive mother; birth mother

12 <nf terms> **mama,** mater, the old woman, mammy, mam, **ma, mom, mommy,** mummy, mumsy, mimsy, motherkin, motherkins

13 **grandfather,** grandsire; old man 304.2; great-grandfather

14 <nf terms> **grandpa,** grampa, gramper, gramp, gramps, grandpapa, grandpap, grandpappy, **granddad,** granddaddy, granddada, granfer, gramfer, granther, pop, grandpop

15 **grandmother,** grandam; great-grandmother

16 <nf terms> **grandma,** granma, old woman 304.3; grandmamma, grandmammy, **granny,** grammy, gammy, grannam, gammer

ADJS 17 **ancestral,** ancestorial, patriarchal; **parental,** parent; **paternal,** fatherly, fatherlike; **maternal,** motherly, motherlike; grandparental; grandmotherly, grandmaternal; grandfatherly, grandpaternal

18 **lineal,** family, familial, genealogical; kindred, akin; enate *or* enatic, agnate *or* agnatic, cognate *or* cognatic; direct, in a direct line; phyletic, phylogenetic; diphyletic

19 **hereditary,** patrimonial, **inherited, innate;** genetic, genic; patroclinous, matroclinous

20 **inheritable,** heritable, hereditable

561 POSTERITY

NOUNS 1 **posterity, progeny, issue, offspring,** fruit, seed, brood, breed, family; **descent,** succession; lineage 560.4, blood, bloodline; **descendants,** heirs, inheritors, sons, **children, kids** <nf>, little ones, little people <nf>, treasures, hostages to fortune, youngsters, younglings; grandchildren, great-grandchildren; new *or* young *or* rising generation

2 <of animals> **young, brood,** get, **spawn,** spat, fry; **litter,** farrow <of pigs>; clutch, hatch

3 **descendant; offspring, child, scion; son,** son and heir, a chip of *or* off the old block, sonny; **daughter,** heiress; grandchild, grandson, granddaughter; stepchild, stepson, stepdaughter; foster child

4 <derived or collateral descendant> **offshoot,** offset, **branch,** sprout, shoot, filiation

5 **bastard,** illegitimate, illegitimate *or* bastard child, whoreson, by-blow, child born out of wedlock *or* without benefit of clergy *or* on the wrong side of the blanket, natural *or* love child, *nullius filius* <L>; illegitimacy, bastardy, bar *or* bend sinister; hellspawn

6 sonship, sonhood; daughtership, daughterhood

ADJS 7 **filial,** sonly, sonlike; **daughterly,** daughterlike

562 LOVEMAKING, ENDEARMENT

NOUNS 1 **lovemaking,** dalliance, amorous dalliance, billing and cooing; **fondling, caressing,** hugging, kissing; cuddling, snuggling, nestling, nuzzling; bundling; sexual intercourse 75.7

2 <nf terms> **making out, necking, petting,** spooning, smooching, lollygagging, canoodling, playing kissy-face *or* kissy-kissy *or* kissy-poo *or* kissy-huggy *or* lickey-face *or* smacky-lips, pitching *or* flinging woo, sucking face, swapping spit

3 **embrace, hug, squeeze,** fond embrace, embracement, clasp, enfoldment, bear hug <nf>

4 **kiss,** buss, smack, smooch <nf>, **osculation;** French kiss, soul kiss

5 **endearment; caress,** pat; sweet talk, soft words, honeyed words, sweet nothings; line <nf>, blandishments, artful endearments; love call, mating call, wolf whistle

6 <terms of endearment> **darling, dear,** deary, **sweetheart, sweetie, sweet,** sweets, sweetkins, **honey,** hon, honeybun, honey-bunny, honeybunch, honey child, sugar, love, lover, precious, precious heart, pet, petkins, babe, **baby, doll,** baby-doll, cherub, angel, chick, chickabiddy, buttercup, duck, duckling, ducks, lamb, lambkin, snookums, poppet <Brit>

7 **courtship, courting, wooing;** court, suit, suing, amorous pursuit, addresses; gallantry; serenade

8 **proposal,** marriage proposal, offer of marriage, popping of the question; engagement 436.3

9 **flirtation, flirtiness, coquetry,** dalliance; flirtatiousness, coquettishness, coyness; sheep's eyes, goo-goo eyes <nf>, amorous looks, coquettish glances, come-hither look; ogle, side-glance; bedroom eyes <nf>

10 **philandering,** philander, lady-killing <nf>; lechery, licentiousness, unchastity 665

11 **flirt, coquette,** gold digger *and* vamp <nf>; strumpet, whore 665.14,16

12 **philanderer,** philander, woman chaser, **ladies' man,** heartbreaker, rake, cad, man of the world; masher, lady-killer, wolf, skirt chaser, man on the make *and* make-out artist <nf>; libertine, lecher,

cocksman <nf>, seducer 665.12, gigolo, Casanova, Don Juan, Lothario; male prostitute, stud

13 **love letter,** billet-doux, mash note <nf>; valentine

VERBS 14 **make love,** bill and coo; dally, toy, trifle, wanton, make time; sweet-talk <nf>, whisper sweet nothings; go steady, keep company; copulate

15 <nf terms> **make out, neck,** pet, spoon, smooch, lollygag, canoodle, pitch *or* fling woo, play kissy-face *or* kissy-kissy *or* kissy-huggy *or* kissy-poo *or* lickey-face *or* smacky-lips, suck face, swap spit

16 **caress, pet,** pat; feel *or* feel up <nf>, **fondle,** dandle, coddle, cocker, cosset; pat on the head *or* cheek, chuck under the chin

17 **cuddle, snuggle, nestle,** nuzzle; lap; bundle

18 **embrace, hug, clasp, press, squeeze** <nf>, fold, **enfold,** bosom, embosom, put *or* throw one's arms around, take to *or* in one's arms, fold to the heart, press to the bosom

19 **kiss, osculate,** buss, smack, smooch <nf>; blow a kiss

20 **flirt, coquet; philander,** gallivant, play the field <nf>, run *or* play around, sow one's oats; **make eyes at, ogle,** eye, cast coquettish glances, cast sheep's eyes at, make goo-goo eyes at <nf>, *faire les yeux doux* <Fr>, look sweet upon <nf>; play hard to get

21 **court, woo,** sue, press one's suit, **pay court** *or* **suit to,** make suit to, cozy up to <nf>, eye up *and* chat up <Brit nf>, pay one's court to, address, pay one's addresses to, pay attention to, lay siege to, fling oneself at, throw oneself at the head of; **pursue,** follow; chase <nf>; set one's cap at *or* for <nf>; serenade; spark <nf>, squire, esquire, beau, sweetheart <nf>, swain

22 **propose, pop the question** <nf>, ask for one's hand; become engaged

ADJS 23 amatory, amative; sexual 75.28,29; caressive; **flirtatious,** flirty; **coquettish,** coy, come-hither

563 MARRIAGE

NOUNS 1 **marriage, matrimony, wedlock, married status,** holy matrimony, holy wedlock, match, matching, match-up, splicing <nf>, union, matrimonial union, alliance, marriage sacrament, sacrament of matrimony *or* marriage, bond *or* state of matrimony, wedding knot, conjugal bond *or* tie *or* knot, conjugality, nuptial bond *or* tie *or* knot, one flesh, alliance; married state *or* status, wedded state *or* status, wedded bliss, conjugal bliss, weddedness, wifehood, coverture, husbandhood, spousehood; coverture, cohabitation; bed, marriage bed, bridal bed, bridebed; cohabitation, living as man and wife, common-law marriage; tying the knot *and* getting hitched *and* getting spliced <nf>; intermarriage, mixed marriage, interfaith marriage, interracial marriage; remarriage; arranged marriage; lesbian marriage, homosexual marriage; miscegenation; misalliance, *mésalliance* <Fr>, ill-assorted marriage

2 **marriageability,** marriageableness, nubility, ripeness; age of consent

3 **wedding, marriage,** marriage *or* wedding ceremony, nuptial mass; church wedding, civil wedding, civil ceremony, courthouse wedding; espousement, bridal; banns; **nuptials,** spousals, espousals, marriage vows, hymeneal rites, wedding service; *chuppah* <Heb>, wedding canopy; white wedding; wedding song, marriage song, nuptial song, prothalamium, epithalamium, epithalamy, hymen, hymeneal; wedding veil, saffron veil *or* robe; bridechamber, bridal suite, nuptial apartment; **honeymoon;** forced marriage, shotgun wedding; Gretna Green wedding, elopement

4 **wedding party;** wedding attendant, usher; **best man,** bridesman, groomsman; paranymph; **bridesmaid,** bridemaiden, maid *or* matron of honor; attendant, flower girl, train bearer, ring bearer

5 **newlywed; bridegroom, groom; bride,** plighted bride, blushing bride; war bride, GI bride <nf>; honeymooner

6 **spouse,** espouser, espoused, **mate,** yokemate, partner, consort, **better half** <nf>, one's promised, one's betrothed, soul mate, helpmate, helpmeet, "bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh"—Bible

7 **husband, married man,** man, benedict, goodman <old>, old man <nf>, hubby <nf>

8 **wife, married woman,** wedded wife, goodwife *or* goody <old>, squaw, woman, lady, matron, old lady *and* old woman *and* little woman *and* ball and chain <nf>, feme, feme covert, **better half** <nf>, **helpmate,** helpmeet, rib, wife of one's bosom; wife in name only; wife in all but name, concubine, common-law wife; blushing bride, war bride, GI bride

9 **married couple,** wedded pair, bridal pair, happy couple, **man and wife,** husband and wife, man and woman, *vir et uxor* <L>, one flesh, Mr and Mrs; newlyweds, **bride and groom,** honeymooners

10 **harem, seraglio,** serai, gynaeceum; zenana, purdah

11 **monogamist,** monogynist; **bigamist;** digamist, deuterogamist; trigamist; **polygamist,** polygynist, polyandrist; Bluebeard

12 **matchmaker, marriage broker,** matrimonial agent, *shadchan* <Yiddish>; matrimonial agency *or* bureau; go-between; dating agency *or* service, lonely hearts club, computer dating

13 <god> Hymen; <goddesses> Hera, Teleia; Juno, Pronuba; Frigg

VERBS 14 <join in marriage> **marry,** wed, nuptial, **join, unite, hitch** *and* **splice** <nf>, couple, match, match up, make *or* arrange a match, join together, **unite in marriage,** join *or* unite in holy wedlock *or* matrimony, tie the knot, tie the nuptial *or* wedding knot, celebrate a marriage, make one, pronounce man and wife; give away, give in marriage; marry off, find a mate for, find a husband *or* wife for

15 <get married> **marry, wed,** contract matrimony, say "I do", mate, couple, espouse, wive, **take to wife,** take a wife *or* husband, **get hitched** *or* spliced <nf>, tie the knot, become one, be made one, pair off, give one's hand to, bestow one's hand upon, lead to the altar, take for better *or* for worse; make an honest man *or* woman of; remarry, rewed; intermarry, interwed, miscegenate

16 **honeymoon,** go on a honeymoon, consummate one's marriage

17 **cohabit,** live together, live as man and wife, share one's bed and board

ADJS 18 **matrimonial, marital, conjugal, connubial, nuptial,** wedded, married, hymeneal; epithalamic; **spousal;** husbandly, uxorious; bridal, wifely, uxorial; premarital, concubinal, concubinary

19 **monogamous,** monogynous, monandrous; **bigamous,** digamous; **polygamous,** polygynous, polyandrous; morganatic; miscegenetic

20 **marriageable,** nubile, eligible, ripe, of age, of marriageable age

21 **married, wedded,** newlywed, espoused, one, one bone and one flesh, mated, matched, coupled, partnered, paired, hitched *and* spliced *and* hooked <nf>

WORD ELEMENTS 22 -gamy; -gamous

564 RELATIONSHIP BY MARRIAGE

NOUNS 1 **marriage relationship,** affinity, marital affinity; connection, family connection, marriage connection, matrimonial connection

2 **in-laws** <nf>, **relatives-in-law;** brother-in-law, sister-in-law, father-in-law, mother-in-law, son-in-law, daughter-in-law

3 stepfather, stepmother; stepbrother, stepsister; stepchild, stepson, stepdaughter

ADJS 4 **affinal,** affined, by marriage

565 CELIBACY

NOUNS 1 **celibacy, singleness,** singlehood, single blessedness, single *or* unmarried *or* unwed state *or* condition; **bachelorhood,** bachelordom, bachelorism, bachelorship; **spinsterhood,** maidenhood, maidenhead, **virginity,** maiden *or* virgin state, chastity, chasteness; **monasticism,** monachism, spiritual marriage, holy orders, the veil; misogamy, misogyny; self-restraint, self-denial; sexual abstinence *or* abstention, continence 664.3

2 **celibate,** *célibataire* <Fr>; monk, monastic, priest, nun, cenobite, eremite; virgin, vestal; misogamist, misogynist; unmarried, single <nf>

3 **bachelor,** bach *and* old bach <nf>, single *or* unmarried man, confirmed bachelor, **single man,** unattached male; misogamist

4 **single** *or* unmarried woman, spinster, spinstress, **old maid,** maid, maiden, bachelor girl, single girl, lone woman, maiden lady, feme sole, unattached female; **virgin,** virgo intacta, cherry <nf>; vestal, vestal virgin

VERBS 5 **be unmarried, be single, live alone,** enjoy single blessedness, **bach** *and* bach it <nf>, keep bachelor quarters, keep one's freedom, sit on the shelf <nf>

ADJS 6 **celibate,** celibatic; **monastic,** monachal, **monkish,** cenobitic, nunnish; misogamic, misogynous; sexually abstinent *or* continent, abstinent, abstaining; self-restrained

7 **unmarried, unwedded, unwed, single,** sole, spouseless, wifeless, husbandless, unmated, mateless; **bachelorly,** bachelorlike; **spinsterly,** spinsterish, spinsterlike; **old-maidish,** old-maidenish; maiden, maidenly; virgin, virginal; independent, unattached, fancy-free; on the shelf <nf>

566 DIVORCE, WIDOWHOOD

NOUNS 1 **divorce,** divorcement, grasswidowhood, civil divorce, **separation,** legal *or* judicial separation, separate maintenance; interlocutory decree; dissolution of marriage; divorce decree, decree nisi, decree absolute; annulment, decree of nullity; nonconsummation of marriage, estrangement, living apart, desertion; broken marriage, broken home; breakup, split-up, split, marriage on the rocks <nf>

2 **divorcé,** divorced person, divorced man, divorced woman, *divorcée* <Fr>; divorcer; grass widow, grass widower

3 **widowhood,** viduity <old>; **widowerhood,** widowership; weeds, widow's weeds

4 **widow,** widow woman <nf>, relict; dowager, queen dowager *or* dowager queen, merry widow, war widow; **widower,** widowman <nf>

VERBS 5 **divorce, separate,** part, split up *and* split the sheets <nf>, unmarry, put away, obtain a divorce, dissolve one's marriage, come to a parting of the ways, untie the knot, sue for divorce, file for divorce; have one's marriage annulled; grant a divorce, grant a final decree; grant an annulment, grant a decree of nullity, annul a marriage, put asunder, regain one's freedom; break up, split up, split, sunder; separate, live apart, part, be estranged; desert, abandon, leave, walk out

6 **widow,** bereave, make a widow

ADJS 7 widowly, widowish, widowlike; **widowed,** widowered; **divorced;** separated, legally separated, split, estranged; on the rocks <nf>

567 SCHOOL

NOUNS 1 **school** <see list>, **educational institution,** teaching institution, academic *or* scholastic institution, teaching and research institution, **institute, academy,** seminary, *Schule* <Ger>, *école* <Fr>, *escuela* <Sp>; alternative school; magnet school

2 **preschool,** infant school <Brit>, nursery, **nursery school;** day nursery, **day-care center,** crèche; playschool; **kindergarten**

3 **elementary school, grade school** *or* graded school, the grades; **primary school;** junior school <Brit>; **grammar school;** folk school, *Volksschule* <Ger>, home schooling

4 **secondary school,** middle school, **academy,** *Gymnasium* <Ger>; *lycée* <Fr>, lyceum; **high school,** high <nf>; **junior high school,** junior high <nf>, intermediate school; **senior high school,** senior high <nf>; **preparatory school,** prep school <nf>, public school <Brit>, seminary; **grammar school** <Brit>, Latin school, *Progymnasium* <Ger>; *Realschule* <Ger>; *Realgymnasium* <Ger>

5 **college, university,** institution *or* institute of higher education *or* learning, degree-granting institution; tertiary school, graduate school, postgraduate school, coeducational school; academe, academia, the groves of Academe, **the campus,** the halls of learning or ivy, ivied halls; alma mater; women's college; polytechnic, adult education, correspondence course; distance learning

6 **service school, service academy** <see list>, military academy, naval academy

7 **art school, performing arts school,** music school, conservatory, arts conservatory, school of the arts, dance school

8 **religious school** <see list>, parochial school, church-related school, church school; Sunday school

9 **reform school, reformatory,** correctional institution, industrial school, training school; borstal *or* borstal school *or* remand school <Brit>

10 **schoolhouse,** school building; little red schoolhouse; classroom building; hall; campus

11 **schoolroom, classroom;** recitation room; lecture room *or* hall; auditorium, assembly hall; theater, amphitheater

12 **governing board, board;** board of education, school board; college board, board of regents, board of trustees, board of visitors

ADJS 13 **scholastic, academic,** institutional, **school,** classroom; **collegiate; university;** preschool; interscholastic, intercollegiate, extramural; intramural

14 **schools**

academy
adult-education school
alternate *or* alternative school
boarding school
business college *or* school
charm school
community college
comprehensive school
conservatory
correspondence school
country day school
day school
distance learning institution
elementary *or* grade school
extension school *or* program
finishing school
graduate school
gymnasium
institute
junior college
junior high school *or* junior school *or* middle school *or* intermediate school
law school
lyceum *or* lycée
medical school
military school *or* academy
night school
open-classroom school
polytechnic school *or* polytechnic <chiefly Brit>
preparatory school *or* prep school <nf>
preschool
primary school
private school
public school
reformatory school
school of continuing education *or* continuation school
secondary school *or* high school *or* senior high school
secretarial school
special needs school
state school
summer school
technical school *or* tech <nf>
university extension
vocational *or* trade school
women's college

15 **service schools or academies**

command and general staff school
École de l'Air <Salon-de-Provence>
École Navale <Brest>
École Spéciale Militaire Interarmes <St Cyr>
officer candidate school *or* OCS
Royal Air Force College <Cranwell>
Royal Military Academy <Woolwich>
Royal Military College <Sandhurst>
Royal Military College of Canada <Kingston>
Royal Naval College <Dartmouth>
US Air Force Academy <Colorado Springs>
US Coast Guard Academy <New London>
US Merchant Marine Academy <Kings Point>
US Military Academy <West Point>
US Naval Academy <Annapolis>

16 **religious schools**

Bible institute
Bible school
Catholic school
church school

convent school
denominational school
divinity school
Hebrew school *or heder* <Yiddish>
madrasah
mesivta
parish school
parochial school
religious *or* parochial school
Sabbath school
schola cantorum
scholasticate
seminary
Sunday school
Talmud Torah
theological seminary *or* school
vacation church school
yeshiva

568 TEACHING

NOUNS 1 **teaching, instruction, education, schooling, tuition; edification, enlightenment,** illumination; tutelage, tutorage, tutorship; tutoring, coaching, direction, training, preparation, private teaching, teacher 571; spoon-feeding; direction, guidance; **pedagogy,** pedagogics, didactics, didacticism; scholarship; catechization; computer-aided instruction, programmed instruction; home schooling; self-teaching, self-instruction; information 551; reeducation 857.4; **school** 567; **formal education,** coursework, school-work

2 **inculcation, indoctrination,** catechization, inoculation, **implantation,** infixation, infixion, **impression, instillment,** instillation, impregnation, **infusion,** imbuement; absorption and regurgitation; dictation; conditioning, brainwashing; reindoctrination 858.5

3 **training, preparation,** readying <nf>, **conditioning, grooming,** cultivation, development, improvement; **discipline;** breaking, housebreaking; **upbringing, bringing-up,** fetching-up <nf>, **rearing, raising, breeding, nurture,** nurturing, fostering; **practice,** rehearsal, **exercise, drill,** drilling; **apprenticeship,** in-service training, on-the-job training; work-study; military training, basic training; manual training, sloyd; vocational training *or* education

4 preinstruction, pre-education; **priming,** cramming <nf>

5 **elementary education,** nursery school, preschool, primary education, home schooling; **initiation, introduction,** propaedeutic; **rudiments,** grounding, first steps, elements, **ABC's, basics;** reading, writing, and arithmetic, **three R's;** primer, hornbook, abecedarium, abecedary

6 **instructions, directions, orders; briefing,** final instructions

7 **lesson, teaching, instruction, lecture,** lecture-demonstration, harangue, **discourse,** disquisition, exposition, **talk,** homily, **sermon,** preachment; chalk talk <nf>; skull session <nf>; **recitation,** recital; **assignment, exercise,** task, set task, homework; moral, morality, moralization, moral lesson; object lesson

8 **study,** branch of learning; **discipline,** subdiscipline; **field, specialty,** academic specialty, area; **course,** course of study, **curriculum,** syllabus, module, department; **subject;** major, minor; requirement *or* required course, elective course, core curriculum; refresher course; summer *or* summer-session course, intersession course; gut course <nf>; correspondence course; distance-learning course; **seminar,** proseminar

9 physical education, physical culture, gymnastics, calisthenics, eurythmics

VERBS 10 **teach, instruct,** give instruction, give lessons in, **educate, school; edify, enlighten,** civilize, illumine; **direct, guide;** get across, **inform** 551.8; **show,** show how, show the ropes, demonstrate; give an idea of; put in the right, set right; improve one's mind, enlarge *or* broaden the mind; sharpen the wits, open the eyes *or* mind; teach a lesson, give a lesson to; **ground,** teach the rudiments *or* elements *or* basics; catechize; teach an old dog new tricks; reeducate 858.14

11 **tutor, coach, direct; prime, cram** <nf>, cram with facts, stuff with knowledge

12 **inculcate, indoctrinate,** catechize, inoculate, **instill, infuse,** imbue, impregnate, **implant,** infix, impress; **impress upon the mind** *or* **memory,** urge on the mind, beat into, beat *or* knock into one's head, grind in, drill into, drum into one's head *or* skull; **condition, brainwash, program**

13 **train; drill, exercise; practice,** rehearse; keep in practice, keep one's hand in; **prepare,** ready, **condition, groom,** fit, put in tune, form, **lick into shape** <nf>; **rear, raise, bring up,** fetch up <nf>, bring up by hand, **breed; cultivate,** develop, improve; **nurture, foster,** nurse; **discipline,** take in hand; put through the mill *or* grind <nf>; break, break in, housebreak, house-train <Brit>; put to school, send to school, apprentice

14 **preinstruct,** pre-educate; **initiate,** introduce

15 **give instructions,** give directions; **brief,** give a briefing

16 **expound,** exposit; explain 341.10; **lecture, discourse,** harangue, hold forth, give or read a lesson; **preach,** sermonize; **moralize,** point a moral

17 **assign,** give *or* make an assignment, give homework, set a task, set hurdles; lay out a course, make a syllabus

ADJS 18 **educational,** educative, educating, educatory, teaching, **instructive,** instructional, **tuitional,** tuitionary; **cultural, edifying, enlightening,** illuminating; informative, informational; edifying; didactic, preceptive; self-instructional, self-teaching, autodidactic; lecturing, preaching, hortatory, exhortatory, homiletic, homiletical; initiatory, introductory, propaedeutic; **disciplinary;** coeducational; remedial

19 **scholastic, academic, schoolish, pedantic, donnish** <Brit>; **scholarly; pedagogical;** collegiate, graduate, professional, doctoral, graduate-professional, postgraduate; interdisciplinary, cross-disciplinary; curricular, intramural, extramural, varsity

20 extracurricular, extraclassroom; nonscholastic, noncollegiate

569 MISTEACHING

NOUNS **1** **misteaching,** misinstruction; **misguidance,** misdirection, misleading; sophistry 936; perversion, corruption; mystification, obscuration, obfuscation, obscurantism; **misinformation,** misknowledge; the blind leading the blind; college of Laputa

2 **propaganda;** propagandism, indoctrination; brainwashing; **propagandist,** agitprop; **disinformation**

VERBS **3** **misteach,** misinstruct, miseducate; **misinform;** misadvise, **misguide,** misdirect, **mislead;** pervert, corrupt; mystify, obscure, obfuscate

4 **propagandize,** carry on a propaganda; indoctrinate; **disinform,** brainwash

ADJS **5** **mistaught,** misinstructed; **misinformed;** misadvised, **misguided,** misdirected, **misled**

6 misteaching, misinstructive, miseducative, **misinforming; misleading,** misguiding, misdirecting; obscuring, mystifying, obfuscatory; propagandistic, indoctrinational; disinformational

570 LEARNING

NOUNS **1** **learning,** intellectual acquirement *or* acquisition *or* attainment, stocking *or* storing the mind, mental cultivation, mental culture, improving *or* broadening the mind, acquisition of knowledge, scholarship; **mastery,** mastery of skills; **self-education,** self-instruction; **knowledge, erudition** 928.5; education 568.1; memorization 989.4

2 **absorption,** ingestion, imbibing, assimilation, taking-in, getting, getting hold of, getting the hang of <nf>, soaking-up, digestion

3 **study, studying,** application, conning; **reading, perusal;** restudy, restudying, brushing up, boning up <nf>, **review; contemplation** 931.2; **inspection** 938.3; **engrossment; brainwork, headwork,** lucubration, mental labor; exercise, **practice, drill;** grind *and* grinding *and* boning <nf>, boning up <nf>; **cramming** *and* cram <nf>, swotting <Brit nf>; extensive study, wide reading; subject 568.8

4 **studiousness, scholarliness,** scholarship; bookishness, diligence 330.6; learnedness, intellectuality, literacy, polymathy, erudition

5 **teachableness, teachability, educability,** trainableness; **aptness, aptitude,** quickness, **readiness; receptivity,** mind like a blotter, ready grasp, quick mind, quick study; **willingness, motivation,** hunger *or* thirst for learning, willingness to learn, curiosity, inquisitiveness; docility, **malleability,** moldability, pliability, facility, plasticity, **impressionability,** susceptibility, formability; brightness, cleverness, quickness, readiness, **intelligence** 920

VERBS **6** **learn,** get, get hold of <nf>, get into one's head, get through one's thick skull <nf>; **gain knowledge,** pick up information, gather *or* collect *or* glean knowledge *or* learning; stock *or* store the mind, improve *or* broaden the mind; stuff *or* cram the mind; burden *or* load the mind; **find out, ascertain, discover,** find, determine; **become informed,** gain knowledge *or* understanding of, acquire information *or* intelligence about, research, become aware of, **learn about, find out about;** acquaint oneself with, make oneself acquainted with, become acquainted with; be informed 551.14

7 **absorb, acquire, take in,** ingest, imbibe, get by osmosis, **assimilate, digest, soak up,** drink in; **soak in, seep in,** percolate in

8 **memorize** 989.17, get by rote; fix in the mind 989.18

9 **master,** attain mastery of, make oneself master of, **gain command of, become adept in,** become familiar *or* conversant with, become versed *or* well-versed in, **get up in** *or* **on,** gain a good *or* thorough knowledge of, **learn all about, get down pat** <nf>, get down cold <nf>, get taped <Brit nf>, get to the bottom *or* heart of; **get the hang** *or* **knack of; learn the ropes,** learn the ins and outs; know well 928.13

10 **learn by experience,** learn by doing, **live and learn,** go through the school of hard knocks, learn the hard way <nf>; teach *or* school oneself; **learn a lesson,** be taught a lesson

11 **be taught, receive instruction,** be tutored, be instructed, undergo schooling, pursue one's education, attend classes, go to *or* attend school, take lessons, matriculate, enroll, register; **train,** prepare oneself, ready oneself, go into training; serve an apprenticeship; apprentice, apprentice oneself to; **study with,** read with, sit at the feet of, learn from, have as one's master; monitor, audit

12 **study,** regard studiously, apply oneself to, con, crack a book *and* hit the books <nf>; **read, peruse,** go over, read up *or* read up on, have one's nose in a book <nf>; restudy, **review; contemplate** 931.12; **examine** 938.23; give the mind to 983.5; **pore over,** vet <Brit nf>; be highly motivated, hunger *or* thirst for knowledge; bury oneself in, wade through, plunge into; **dig** *and* **grind** *and* **bone** *and* bone up on <nf>, swot <Brit nf>; lucubrate, elucubrate, **burn the midnight oil;** make a study of; **practice, drill**

13 **browse, scan, skim, dip into,** thumb over *or* through, run over *or* through, glance *or* run the eye over *or* through, turn over the leaves, have a look at, hit the high spots, graze

14 **study up, get up,** study up on, read up on, get up on; **review, brush up,** polish up <nf>, rub up, **cram** *or* cram up <nf>, **bone up** <nf>; pull an all-nighter

15 **study to be, study for, read for,** read law, etc; **specialize in, go in for,** make one's field; major in, minor in

ADJS 16 educated, **learned** 928.21,22; knowledgeable, erudite; literate, numerate; self-taught, self-instructed, autodidactic

17 **studious,** devoted to studies, **scholarly,** scholastic, academic, professorial, tweedy, donnish <Brit>; owlish; rabbinic, mandarin; pedantic, dryasdust; bookish 928.22; diligent 330.22

18 **teachable, instructable, educable,** schoolable, trainable; **apt,** quick, **ready,** ripe for instruction; **receptive, willing,** motivated; hungry *or* thirsty for knowledge; docile, **malleable, moldable,** pliable, facile, plastic, **impressionable,** susceptible, formable; bright, clever, **intelligent** 920.12

571 TEACHER

NOUNS 1 **teacher, instructor, educator,** preceptor, **mentor; master,** maestro; **pedagogue,** pedagogist, educationist, educationalist, tutor; schoolman; **schoolteacher, schoolmaster,** schoolkeeper; abecedarian <old>, certified *or* licensed teacher; **professor, academic,** member of academy; don <Brit>, fellow; guide 574.7, docent; rabbi, *melamed* <Heb>, pandit, pundit, guru, *mullah* <Persian>, *starets* <Russ>; home tutor, private tutor, mentor

2 <woman teachers> instructress, educatress, preceptress, **mistress; schoolmistress;** schoolma'am *or* **schoolmarm,** dame, schooldame; **governess,** duenna

3 <academic ranks> professor, associate professor, assistant professor, instructor, tutor, associate, assistant, lecturer, reader <Brit>; visiting professor; emeritus, professor emeritus, retired professor

4 teaching fellow, teaching assistant; teaching intern, fellow, intern; practice teacher, apprentice teacher, student *or* pupil teacher; teacher's aide, paraprofessional; monitor, proctor, prefect, praepostor <Brit>; student assistant, graduate assistant

5 **tutor,** tutorer; **coach,** coacher; **private instructor,** *Privatdocent* or *Privatdozent* <Ger>; crammer <Brit nf>

6 **trainer, handler, groomer;** driller, drillmaster; **coach,** athletic coach

7 **lecturer,** lector, **reader** <Brit>, praelector, **preacher,** homilist

8 **principal, headmaster,** headmistress, vice-principal; president, chancellor, vice-chancellor, rector, provost, master; **dean,** academic dean, dean of the faculty, dean of women, dean of men; administrator, educational administrator; administration; department head *or* chair

9 **faculty,** staff <Brit>, faculty members, professorate, professoriate, professors, professordom, teaching staff

10 **instructorship, teachership,** preceptorship, schoolmastery; **tutorship,** tutorhood, tutorage, tutelage; **professorship,** professorhood, professorate, professoriate; **chair,** endowed chair; lectureship, readership <Brit>; fellowship, research fellowship; assistantship

ADJS 11 **pedagogic, pedagogical,** preceptorial, tutorial; **teacherish,** teachery, teacherlike, teachy, **schoolteacherish,** schoolteachery, **schoolmasterish,** schoolmasterly, schoolmastering, schoolmasterlike; schoolmistressy, schoolmarmish <nf>; **professorial,** professorlike, academic, tweedy, donnish <Brit>; pedantic 928.22

572 STUDENT

NOUNS 1 **student, pupil, scholar,** learner, studier, educatee, **trainee,** *élève* <Fr>; tutee; inquirer; mature student, adult-education *or* continuing education student; self-taught person, autodidact; auditor; **reader,** reading enthusiast, great reader, printhead <nf>; bookworm, researcher

2 **disciple, follower,** apostle; convert, proselyte 858.7; **discipleship,** disciplehood, pupilage, tutelage, studentship, followership

3 **schoolchild,** school kid <nf>; **schoolboy,** school lad; **schoolgirl;** day-pupil, day boy, day girl; preschool child, preschooler, nursery school child, infant <Brit>; kindergartner, grade schooler, primary schooler, intermediate schooler; secondary schooler, prep schooler, preppie <nf>, high schooler; schoolmate, schoolfellow, fellow student, classmate

4 special *or* exceptional student, gifted student; special education *or* special ed <nf> student; learning disabled *or* LD student; learning impaired student; slow learner, underachiever; handicapped *or* retarded student; emotionally disturbed student; culturally disadvantaged student

5 **college student, collegian,** collegiate, university student, **varsity student** <Brit nf>, college boy *or* girl; co-ed <nf>; seminarian, seminarist; *bahur* <Heb>, *yeshiva bocher* <Yiddish>

6 **undergraduate,** undergrad <nf>, cadet, midshipman; underclassman, **freshman,** freshie <nf>, plebe, **sophomore,** soph <nf>; **upperclassman, junior, senior**

7 <Brit terms> commoner, pensioner, sizar, servitor <old>, exhibitioner, fellow commoner; sophister *and* questionist <old>; wrangler, optime; passman

8 **graduate,** grad <nf>; **alumnus,** alumni, alumna, alumnae; old boy <Brit>; **graduate student,** grad student <nf>, master's degree candidate, doctoral candidate; **postgraduate,** postgrad <nf>; degrees; college graduate, college man *or* woman, educated man *or* woman, educated class; meritocracy

9 **novice,** novitiate *or* noviciate, **tyro,** abecedarian, alphabetarian, **beginner** 818.2, entrant, **neophyte, tenderfoot** *and* **greenhorn** <nf>, freshman, **fledgling;** catechumen, initiate, debutant; new boy <Brit>, newcomer 774.4; ignoramus 930.8; **recruit, raw recruit,** inductee, **rookie** *and* yardbird <nf>, boot; **probationer,** probationist, postulant; **apprentice,** articled clerk

10 **nerd** *and* grind *or* greasy grind <nf>, swotter *or* mugger <Brit nf>; bookworm 929.4

11 **class, form** <Brit>, **grade;** track; year

ADJS 12 **studentlike,** schoolboyish, schoolgirlish; undergraduate, graduate, postgraduate; **collegiate,** college-bred; sophomoric; sophomorical; autodidactic; **studious** 570.17; **learned, bookish** 928.22; exceptional, gifted, special

13 **probationary,** probational, on probation; in detention

573 DIRECTION, MANAGEMENT

NOUNS 1 **direction, management, managing,** managery <old>, handling, **running** <nf>, **conduct;** governance, **command, control, chiefdom, government** 612, governance, controllership; **authority** 417; **regulation,** ordering, husbandry; manipulation, orchestration; **guidance, lead, leading; steering, navigation,** pilotage, conning, the conn, the helm, the wheel

2 **supervision, superintendence,** intendance *or* intendancy, heading, heading up *and* **bossing** *and* running <nf>; **surveillance,** oversight, eye; **charge, care, auspices, jurisdiction; responsibility,** accountability 641.2

3 **administration,** executive function *or* role, command function, say-so *and* last word <nf>; **decision-making; disposition,** disposal, **dispensation;** officiation; lawmaking, legislation, regulation

4 **directorship, leadership, managership,** directorate, headship, governorship, chairmanship, convenership <Brit>, presidency, premiership, generalship, captainship; mastership 417.7; dictatorship, sovereignty 417.8; superintendence *or* **superintendency,** intendancy, foremanship, overseership, supervisorship; stewardship, custody, guardianship, shepherding, proctorship; personnel management; collective leadership

5 **helm,** conn, rudder, tiller, wheel, steering wheel; **reins;** joystick; remote control *or* remote

6 **domestic management, housekeeping,** homemaking, housewifery, ménage, husbandry <old>; domestic economy, home economics

7 **efficiency engineering,** scientific management, bean-counting <nf>, industrial engineering, management engineering, management consulting; management theory; efficiency expert, management consultant; time and motion study, time-motion study, time study; therblig

VERBS 8 **direct, manage, regulate, conduct, carry on, handle, run** <nf>, be in charge; **control, command, head, govern** 612.12, rule, **boss** *and* head up *and* pull the strings *and* **mastermind** *and* quarterback *and* call the signals <nf>; **order, prescribe;** organize; lay down the law, make the rules, call the shots *or* tune <nf>; **head,** head up, office, captain, skipper <nf>; **lead,** take the lead, lead on; manipulate, maneuver, engineer; take command 417.14; be responsible for; hold the purse strings <nf>

9 **guide, steer, drive, run** <nf>; herd, counsel, advise, shepherd; channel; **pilot,** take the helm *or* wheel, be at the helm *or* wheel *or* tiller *or* rudder, hold the reins, **be in the driver's seat** <nf>; emcee

10 **supervise, superintend, boss, oversee,** overlook, ride herd on <nf>, crack the whip <nf>, stand over, keep an eye on *or* upon, keep in order; cut work out for; straw-boss <nf>; take care of 1007.19

11 **administer,** administrate; **officiate; preside,** preside over, preside at the board; chair, chairman, occupy the chair, take the chair

ADJS 12 **directing, directive,** directory, directorial; **managing, managerial; commanding, controlling, governing** 612.18; regulating, regulative, regulatory; **head, chief;** leading, guiding

13 **supervising, supervisory,** overseeing, **superintendent, boss; in charge** 417.21, in the driver's seat *and* holding the reins <nf>

14 **administrative, administrating;** ministerial, **executive; officiating, presiding**

ADVS 15 in the charge of, in the hands of, in the care of; **under the auspices of,** under the aegis of; in one's charge, on one's hands, under one's care, under one's jurisdiction

574 DIRECTOR

NOUNS 1 **director,** *directeur* <Fr>, director general, **governor,** rector, **manager, administrator,** intendant, **conductor;** person in charge, responsible person, key person; ship's husband, supercargo; impresario, producer; deputy, agent 576

2 **superintendent; supervisor, foreman,** monitor, **head,** headman, overman, **boss,** chief, gaffer *and* ganger <Brit nf>, taskmaster; *sirdar* <India>, **overseer,** overlooker; inspector, surveyor; proctor; subforeman, **straw boss** <nf>; slave driver; boatswain; floorman, floorwalker, floor manager; noncommissioned officer 575.19; controller, comptroller, auditor; department head

3 **executive,** officer, official, pinstriper <nf>, employer, company official; suit <nf>; **president,** prexy <nf>, chief executive officer *or* CEO, chief executive, chief operating officer *or* COO, managing director, director; provost, prefect, warden, archon; policy-maker, agenda-setter; magistrate; **chairman of the board; chancellor,** vice-chancellor; vice-president *or* VP *or* veep <nf>; secretary; treasurer; dean; executive officer, executive director, executive secretary; **management,** the administration 574.11

4 **steward,** bailiff <Brit>, reeve <old>, factor <Scot>, seneschal; majordomo, butler, housekeeper, *maître d'hôtel* <Fr>; master of ceremonies *or* MC *and* emcee <nf>, master of the revels; proctor, procurator, attorney; guardian, custodian 1008.6, executor; curator, librarian; croupier; factor

5 **chairman,** chairwoman, **chair,** chairperson, convener <Brit>, speaker, presiding officer; co-chairman, etc

6 **leader,** conductor <old>; file leader, fugleman; pacemaker, pacesetter; bellwether, bell mare, bell cow, Judas goat; standard-bearer, torchbearer; **leader of men,** born leader, charismatic leader *or* figure, inspired leader; messiah, Mahdi; führer, duce; forerunner 816.1; ringleader 375.11; precentor, coryphaeus, choragus, symphonic conductor, choirmaster 710.18

7 **guide,** guider; **shepherd,** herd, herdsman, drover, cowherd, goatherd, etc; tour guide, tour director *or* conductor, cicerone, mercury <old>, courier, dragoman; **pilot,** river pilot, navigator, **helmsman,** timoneer, steerman, steerer, coxswain, boatsteerer, boatheader; automatic pilot, Gyropilot; pointer, fingerpost <Brit>, guidepost 517.4; leader, motivator, pacesetter, standard-bearer

8 **guiding star,** cynosure <old>, **polestar,** polar star, lodestar, Polaris, **North Star**

9 **compass,** magnetic compass, gyrocompass, gyroscopic compass, gyrostatic compass, Gyrosin compass, surveyor's compass, mariner's compass; needle, magnetic needle; direction finder, radio compass, radio direction finder *or* RDF

10 **directory, guidebook,** handbook, Baedeker; city directory, business directory; telephone directory, telephone book, phone book <nf>, classified directory, Yellow Pages; **bibliography;** catalog, index, handlist, checklist, finding list; itinerary, road map, roadbook; gazetteer, reference book; portal, web directory

11 **directorate,** directory, **management, the administration,** the brass *and* top brass <nf>, the people upstairs *and* the people in the front office <nf>, executive hierarchy; the executive, executive arm *or* branch; middle management; **cabinet; board,** governing board *or* body, board of directors, board of trustees, board of regents; steering committee, executive committee, interlocking directorate; cadre, executive council; infrastructure; council 423

575 MASTER

NOUNS 1 **master, lord, lord and master,** overlord, seigneur, paramount, lord paramount, liege, liege lord, lord of the manor, *padrone* <Ital>, *patron* and *chef* <Fr>, patroon; **chief, boss,** *sahib* <India>, *bwana* <Swah>; employer; husband, man of the house, master of the house, goodman <old nf>, paterfamilias; patriarch, elder; teacher, rabbi, guru, starets; church dignitary, ecclesiarch

2 **mistress,** governess, dame <old>, madam; **matron, housewife,** homemaker, goodwife <Scot>, mistress *or* lady of the house, chatelaine; housemistress, housemother; rectoress, abbess, mother superior; great lady, first lady; materfamilias, matriarch, dowager

3 **chief,** principal, headman; **master,** dean, doyen, doyenne; high priest <nf>, superior, senior; **leader** 574.6; important person, personage 996.8; owner, landowner

4 <nf terms> **top dog,** boss man, big boy, Big Daddy, big cheese, kingpin, kingfish, el supremo, honcho *or* head honcho, top banana, big enchilada, bigwig,

big gun, big shot, big wheel, VIP, himself, herself, man *or* woman upstairs, cock of the walk; queen bee, heavy momma, Big Momma, old man, quarterback, ringmaster, skipper, high priest

5 **figurehead,** nominal head, dummy, lay figure, front man *and* front <nf>, stooge *and* Charlie McCarthy <nf>, puppet, creature

6 **governor, ruler; captain, master, commander,** commandant, commanding officer, intendant, castellan, chatelain, chatelaine; **director, manager, executive** 574.3

7 **head of state, chief of state, leader; premier, prime minister, chancellor,** grand vizier, *dewan* <India>; doge; **president,** chief executive, the man in the White House

8 **potentate, sovereign, monarch, ruler, prince,** dynast, **crowned head, emperor,** *imperator* <L>, king-emperor, **king,** anointed king, majesty, royalty, royal, royal personage, emperor, etc; petty king, tetrarch, kinglet; grand duke; paramount, lord paramount, suzerain, overlord, overking, high king; **chief, chieftain,** high chief; prince consort 608.7

9 <rulers> **caesar,** kaiser, **czar;** Holy Roman Emperor; Dalai Lama; **pharaoh;** pendragon, rig, ardri; **mikado,** tenno; shogun, tycoon; khan *or* cham; shah, padishah; negus; bey; **sheikh;** sachem, sagamore; Inca; cacique; kaid

10 <Muslim rulers> sultan, Grand Turk, grand seignior; caliph, imam; hakim; khan *or* cham; nizam, nabab; emir; Great Mogul, Mogul

11 **sovereign queen, sovereign princess, princess, queen,** queen regent, queen regnant, **empress,** czarina, *Kaiserin* <Ger>; *rani* and *maharani* <India>; grand duchess; queen consort

12 **regent,** protector, prince regent, queen regent

13 <regional governors> **governor,** governor-general, lieutenant governor; **viceroy,** vice-king, exarch, proconsul, khedive, stadtholder, vizier; *nabob* and *nabab* and *subahdar* <India>; gauleiter; eparch; palatine; tetrarch; burgrave; collector; hospodar, vaivode; dey, bey *or* beg, beglerbeg, wali *or* vali, satrap; provincial; warlord; military governor

14 **tyrant, despot,** warlord; **autocrat,** autarch; oligarch; absolute ruler *or* master *or* monarch, omnipotent *or* all-powerful ruler; **dictator,** duce, führer, commissar, pharaoh, caesar, czar; usurper, arrogator; **oppressor, hard master,** driver, **slave driver,** Simon Legree <Harriet B Stowe>; **martinet, disciplinarian,** stickler, tin god, petty tyrant

15 **the authorities, the powers that be,** ruling class *or* classes, the lords of creation, **the Establishment,** the interests, the power elite, **the power structure; they,** them; the inner circle; the ins *and* the in-group *and* those on the inside <nf>; **management, the administration;** higher echelons, top brass <nf>; higher-ups *and* the people upstairs *or* in the front office <nf>; **the top** <nf>, the corridors of power; prelacy, hierarchy; ministry; **bureaucracy, officialdom;** directorate 574.11

16 **official, officer,** officiary, functionary, *fonctionnaire* <Fr>, apparatchik; **public official,** public servant; officeholder, office-bearer *and* placeman <Brit>; government *or* public employee; **civil servant; bureaucrat,** politician, mandarin, red-tapist, *rond-de-cuir* <Fr>; petty tyrant, jack-in-office

17 <public officials> **minister,** secretary, secretary of state <Brit>, undersecretary, cabinet minister, cabinet member, minister of state <Brit>; chancellor; warden; archon; magistrate; syndic; commissioner; commissar; county commissioners; city manager, mayor, *maire* <Fr>, lord mayor, burgomaster; headman, *induna* <Africa>; **councilman,** councilwoman, councillor, city councilman, elder, city father, alderman, bailie <Scot>, selectman; supervisor, county supervisor; reeve, portreeve; legislator 610.3

18 **commissioned officer, officer,** military leader, military officer; top brass *and* the brass <nf>; **commander in chief,** generalissimo, captain general; hetman, sirdar, commanding officer, commandant; general of the army, general of the air force, five-star general <nf>, **marshal,** *maréchal* <Fr>, field marshal; general officer, **general,** four-star general <nf>; lieutenant general, three-star general <nf>; major general, two-star general <nf>, brigadier general, one-star general <nf>, brigadier <Brit>; field officer; **colonel,** chicken colonel <nf>; lieutenant colonel; **major;** company officer; **captain; lieutenant,** first lieutenant; second lieutenant, shavetail <nf>, subaltern *and* sublieutenant <Brit>; warrant officer, chief warrant officer; **commander,** commandant, the Old Man <nf>; **commanding officer** *or* CO; executive officer, exec <nf>; chief of staff; aide, aide-de-camp *or* ADC; officer of the day *or* OD, orderly officer <Brit>; staff officer; senior officer, junior officer; brass hat <nf>

19 **Army noncommissioned officer,** noncom *or* NCO <nf>; centurion; sergeant, sarge <nf>, *havildar* <India>; sergeant major of the Army, command sergeant major, sergeant major, first sergeant, top sergeant *and* topkick *and* first man <nf>, master sergeant, sergeant first class, technical sergeant, staff sergeant, sergeant, specialist seven, platoon sergeant, mess sergeant, color sergeant, acting sergeant, lance sergeant <Brit>; **corporal,** acting corporal, lance corporal <Brit>, lance-jack <Brit nf>; **Air Force noncommissioned officer,** chief

master sergeant of the Air Force, chief master sergeant, senior master sergeant, master sergeant, technical sergeant, staff sergeant, sergeant, airman first class

20 **Navy** *or* **naval officer; fleet admiral,** navarch, **admiral,** vice admiral, rear admiral, **commodore, captain, commander,** lieutenant commander, **lieutenant,** lieutenant junior grade, ensign; warrant officer; Navy *or* naval noncommissioned officer, master chief petty officer of the Navy, master chief petty officer, senior chief petty officer, chief petty officer, petty officer first class, petty officer second class, petty officer third class; **Marine Corps noncommissioned officer,** sergeant major of the Marine Corps, sergeant major, master gunnery sergeant, first sergeant, master sergeant, gunnery sergeant, staff sergeant, sergeant, corporal, lance corporal

21 <heraldic officials> herald, king of arms, king at arms, earl marshal; Garter, Garter King of Arms, Clarenceux, Clarenceux King of Arms, Norroy and Ulster, Norroy and Ulster King of Arms, Norroy, Norroy King of Arms, Lyon, Lyon King of Arms; College of Arms

576 DEPUTY, AGENT

NOUNS **1 deputy, proxy, representative, substitute,** sub <nf>, vice, vicegerent, **alternate,** backup *and* stand-in <nf>, body double, alternative, alter ego, **surrogate,** procurator, secondary, understudy, pinch hitter <nf>, utility man *or* woman, scrub <nf>, reserve, the bench <nf>; assistant, right hand, second in command, number two, executive officer; exponent, advocate, pleader, paranymph, attorney, champion; **lieutenant;** aide; vicar, vicar general; locum tenens *or* locum <chiefly Brit>; amicus curiae; **puppet,** dummy, creature, cat's-paw, figurehead; stunt man *or* woman; ghost writer

2 **delegate,** legate, appointee; **commissioner,** commissary, *commissionaire* <Fr>, commissar; **messenger,** herald, **emissary, envoy; minister,** secretary

3 **agent, instrument,** implement, implementer, trustee, broker; expediter, facilitator; **tool; steward** 574.4; **functionary; official** 575.16; clerk, **secretary;** amanuensis; factor, consignee; puppet, cat's-paw; dupe 358

4 **go-between, middleman, intermediary, medium,** intermedium, intermediate, interagent, **internuncio,** broker; connection <nf>, **contact; negotiator,** negotiant; interpleader; arbitrator, mediator 466.3

5 **spokesman, spokeswoman, spokesperson,** spokespeople, official spokesman *or* -woman *or* -person, press officer, speaker, voice, mouthpiece <nf>; spin doctor <nf>; herald; messenger; proloctor, prolocutress *or* prolocutrix; reporter, rapporteur

6 **diplomat,** diplomatist, diplomatic agent, diplomatic <old>; **emissary, envoy, legate, minister,** foreign service officer; **ambassador,** ambassadress, ambassador-at-large; envoy extraordinary, plentipotentiary, **minister plenipotentiary;** nuncio, internuncio, apostolic delegate; vice-legate; resident, minister resident; chargé d'affaires, chargé, chargé d'affaires ad interim; secretary of legation, chancellor <Brit>; **attaché,** commercial attaché, military attaché, **consul,** consul general, vice-consul, consular agent; career diplomat

7 **foreign office, foreign service,** diplomatic service; diplomatic mission, diplomatic staff *or* corps, *corps diplomatique* <Fr>; **embassy, legation;** consular service

8 vice-president, vice-chairman, vice-governor, vice-director, vice-master, vice-chancellor, vice-premier, vice-warden, vice-consul, vice-legate; vice-regent, viceroy, vicegerent, vice-king, vice-queen, vice-reine, etc

9 **secret agent,** operative, cloak-and-dagger operative, **undercover man,** inside man <nf>; **spy,** espionage agent; counterspy, double agent; **spotter; scout,** reconnoiterer; **intelligence agent** *or* **officer;** CIA man, military-intelligence man, naval-intelligence man; spymaster; spy-catcher <nf>, counterintelligence agent

10 **detective, operative, investigator, sleuth,** Sherlock Holmes <A Conan Doyle>; police detective, Bow Street runner *or* officer <Brit old>, **plainclothesman;** private detective *or* dick, private investigator *or* PI, inquiry agent <Brit>; hotel detective, house detective, house dick <nf>, store detective; arson investigator; narcotics agent, narc <nf>; FBI agent *or* G-man <nf>; treasury agent *or* T-man <nf>; Federal *or* fed <nf>; Federal Bureau of Investigation *or* FBI; Secret Service

11 <nf terms> **dick,** gumshoe, gumshoe man, hawkshaw, sleuthhound, beagle, flatfoot, tec; eye, private eye; skip tracer, spotter

12 **secret service,** intelligence service, intelligence bureau *or* department; intelligence, military intelligence, naval intelligence; **counterintelligence**

13 <group of delegates> **delegation, deputation, commission, mission,** legation; committee, subcommittee

VERBS **14 represent, act for,** act on behalf of, substitute for, appear for, answer for, speak for, be the voice of, give voice to, be the mouthpiece of <nf>, hold the proxy of, hold a brief for, act in the place of, stand in the stead of, serve in one's stead, pinch-hit for <nf>; understudy, double for *and* stand in for *and* back up <nf>, substitute for; front for <nf>; deputize, commission; ghostwrite *or* ghost

15 deputize, depute, authorize, empower, charge, designate, nominate

ADJS **16** **deputy,** deputative; **acting,** representative

17 diplomatic, ambassadorial, consular, ministerial, plenipotentiary

ADVS **18** by proxy, indirectly; in behalf of 862.12

577 SERVANT, EMPLOYEE

NOUNS **1** **retainer,** dependent, follower; myrmidon, yeoman; vassal, liege, liege man, henchman, feudatory, homager; inferior, **underling, subordinate,** understrapper; **minion,** creature, hanger-on, lackey, flunky, stooge <nf>, drudge; peon, serf, bond servant, thrall, vassal, slave 432.7

2 **servant,** servitor, help, paid helper; **domestic,** domestic help, domestic servant, house *or* household servant; live-in help, day help; **menial,** drudge, slavey <nf>; scullion, turnspit; humble servant

3 **employee;** pensioner, **hireling, mercenary,** myrmidon; wage earner, staff member; hired man, hired hand, man *or* girl Friday, right-hand man, assistant 616.6; worker 726, subordinate, subaltern; white-collar worker, nonmanual worker, skilled worker, semiskilled worker, unskilled worker, blue-collar worker, manual worker, laborer; part-time worker, freelance worker; hourly worker; officer worker, assistant, administrative assistant, secretary, clerk, messenger, runner, gofer

4 **man,** manservant, serving man, gillie <Scot>, **boy,** *garçon* <Fr>, houseboy, houseman; butler; valet, *valet de chambre* <Fr>, gentleman, gentleman's gentleman; driver, chauffeur, coachman; gardener; handyman, odd-job man; lord-in-waiting, lord of the bedchamber, equerry; bodyguard, chaperon

5 **attendant,** tender, usher, server, squire, yeoman; errand boy *or* girl, gofer <nf>, office boy *or* girl, copyboy; page, footboy; concierge; bellboy, bellman, bellhop; cabin boy, purser; porter, redcap; printer's devil; chore boy; caddie; bootblack, boots <Brit>, shoeshine boy, shoeblack; trainbearer; cupbearer, Ganymede, Hebe; orderly, batman <Brit>; **cabin** *or* **flight attendant, steward, stewardess, hostess,** airline stewardess *or* hostess, stew <nf>, cabin crew, skycap; hat-check girl, cloakroom attendant; salesclerk *or* clerk, salesperson, shop assistant <Brit>

6 **lackey, flunky,** livery *or* liveried servant; **footman,** *valet de pied* <Fr>

7 **waiter, waitress;** carhop; counterman, soda jerk <nf>; busboy; headwaiter, *maître d'hôtel* <Fr>, maître d' <nf>; hostess; wine steward, sommelier; bartender, barkeeper *or* barkeep, barman, barmaid

8 **maid, maidservant,** servitress, **girl,** servant girl, *bonne* <Fr>, serving girl, wench, biddy <nf>, hired girl; lady-help <Brit>, au pair girl, *ayah* <India>, *amah* <China>; live-in maid, live-out maid; **handmaid,** handmaiden; personal attendant; **lady's maid,** waiting maid *or* woman, gentlewoman, abigail, soubrette; lady-in-waiting, maid-in-waiting, lady of the bedchamber; companion; chaperon; betweenmaid *or* tweeny <Brit>; duenna; parlormaid; kitchenmaid, scullery maid; cook; housemaid, chambermaid, *femme de chambre* or *fille de chambre* <Fr>, upstairs maid; nursemaid 1008.8

9 **factotum, do-all** <old>, general servant <Brit>, man of all work; maid of all work, domestic drudge, slavey <nf>, Mister Fix-it

10 **major-domo, steward,** house steward, **butler,** chamberlain, *maître d'hôtel* <Fr>, seneschal; **housekeeper**

11 **staff, personnel, employees,** help, hired help, occasional help, the help, **crew, gang,** men, force, servantry, retinue 769.6

12 **service,** servanthood, servitude <old>, servitorship, *servitium* <L>; **employment, employ; ministry, ministration, attendance,** tendance; serfdom, peonage, thralldom, slavery 432.1

VERBS **13** **serve, work for,** be in service, serve one's every need; minister *or* administer to, pander to, do service; **help** 449.11; **care for,** do for <nf>, **look after,** wait on hand and foot, take care of; **wait, wait on** *or* **upon, attend,** tend, attend on *or* upon, dance attendance upon; make oneself useful; lackey, valet, maid, chore; drudge 725.14

ADJS **14** **serving,** servitorial, servitial, **ministering,** waiting, waiting on, **attending,** attendant; in the train of, in one's pay *or* employ; helping 449.20; **menial, servile**

578 FASHION

NOUNS **1** **fashion, style, mode, vogue,** trend, prevailing taste; proper thing, ton, bon ton; design; custom 373; convention 579.1,2; the swim <nf>, current *or* stream of fashion; height of fashion; the new look, the season's look; high fashion, *haute couture* <Fr>, designer label; flavor of the month, flavor of the week; personal style, signature

2 **fashionableness,** chic, ton, bon ton, fashionability, **stylishness, modishness,** voguishness; with-itness <nf>; **popularity,** prevalence, currency 864.2

3 **smartness, chic,** elegance; style-consciousness, clothes-consciousness; **spruceness, nattiness,** neatness, trimness, sleekness, **dapperness,** jauntiness; sharpness *and* spiffiness *and* classiness *and* niftiness <nf>; swankness *and* **swankiness** <nf>; foppery, foppishness, coxcombry, dandyism; hipness <nf>

4 **the rage,** the thing, **the last word** <nf>, *le dernier cri* <Fr>, **the latest thing,** the in thing *and* the latest wrinkle <nf>

5 **fad, craze, rage;** wrinkle <nf>; new take <nf>; novelty 841.2; faddishness, faddiness <nf>, faddism; **faddist;** the bandwagon, me-tooism

6 **society,** *société* <Fr>, fashionable society, **polite society, high society,** high life, *beau monde* and *haut monde* <Fr>, good society; best people, people of fashion, right people; *monde* <Fr>, world of fashion, Vanity Fair; **smart set** <nf>; the Four Hundred, **upper crust** *and* upper cut <nf>; **cream of society,** *crème de la crème* <Fr>, cream of the crop, elite, carriage trade; café society, jet set, beautiful people, in-crowd, glitterati <nf>; *jeunesse dorée* <Fr>; drawing room, salon; social register; fast track

7 person of fashion, fashionable, man-about-town, man *or* woman of the world, nob, *mondain* or *mondaine* <Fr>; leader *or* arbiter of fashion, tastemaker, trendsetter, tonesetter, *arbiter elegantiae* <L>, arbiter of fashion; ten best-dressed, fashion plate, clotheshorse, sharpy <nf>, snappy dresser; Beau Brummel, fop, dandy 500.9; **socialite; clubwoman,** clubman; salonist, salonnard; jet setter; swinger <nf>; **debutante,** subdebutante, deb *and* subdeb <nf>, Sloane Ranger <Brit nf>; rag trade <nf>

VERBS 8 **catch on,** become popular, **become the rage,** catch *or* take fire

9 **be fashionable, be the style, be the rage,** be the thing; have a run; cut a figure in society <nf>, give a tone to society, set the fashion *or* style *or* tone; dress to kill

10 **follow the fashion, get in the swim** <nf>, get *or* climb *or* jump on the bandwagon <nf>, join the parade, follow the crowd, go with the stream *or* tide *or* current *or* flow; keep in step, do as others do; keep up, **keep up appearances,** keep up with the Joneses

ADJS 11 **fashionable, in fashion, smart, in style, in vogue; all the rage,** all the thing; **popular,** prevalent, current 863.12; **up-to-date,** up-to-datish, up-to-the-minute, happening <nf>, switched-on *and* hip *and* with-it *and* in <nf>, trendy <nf>, newfashioned, modern, mod <nf>, new 840.9,10,12–14; **in the swim;** sought-after, much sought-after

12 **stylish, modish,** voguish, vogue; dressy <nf>; *soigné* or *soignée* <Fr>; *à la mode* <Fr>, in the mode

13 **chic, smart,** elegant; style-conscious, clothes-conscious; **well-dressed,** well-groomed, *soigné* or *soignée* <Fr>, dressed to advantage, all dressed up, dressed to kill, dressed to the teeth, dressed to the nines, well-turned-out; **spruce, natty,** neat, trim, sleek, smug, trig, tricksy <old>; **dapper,** dashing, jaunty, braw <Scot>; sharp *and* spiffy *and* classy *and* nifty *and* snazzy <nf>; **swank** *or* **swanky** <nf>, posh <nf>, ritzy <nf>, swell *and* nobby <nf>; genteel; exquisite, *recherché* <Fr>; cosmopolitan, sophisticated

14 **ultrafashionable,** ultrastylish, ultrasmart; chichi; foppish, dandified, dandyish, dandiacal

15 **trendy** <nf>, **faddish,** faddy <nf>, groovy

16 socially prominent, in society, high-society, elite; café-society, jet-set; lace-curtain, silk-stocking

ADVS 17 **fashionably, stylishly, modishly,** *à la mode* <Fr>, in the latest style *or* mode

18 **smartly,** dressily, chicly, elegantly, exquisitely; **sprucely, nattily,** neatly, trimly, sleekly; **dapperly,** jauntily, dashingly, swankly *or* swankily <nf>; foppishly, dandyishly

579 SOCIAL CONVENTION

NOUNS 1 **social convention, convention,** conventional usage, what is done, what one does, **social usage, form, formality; custom** 373; **conformism, conformity** 867; **propriety, decorum,** decorousness, correctness, *convenance* and *bienséance* <Fr>, decency, seemliness, civility <old>, good form, etiquette 580.3; **conventionalism, conventionality, Grundyism; Mrs Grundy**

2 **the conventions, the proprieties, the mores,** the right things, accepted *or* sanctioned conduct, what is done, civilized behavior; **dictates of society,** dictates of Mrs Grundy

3 conventionalist, Grundy, Mrs Grundy; conformist 867.2

VERBS 4 **conform,** observe the proprieties, play the game, follow the rules 867.4, fall in or into line

ADJS 5 **conventional, decorous,** orthodox, **correct,** right, **right-thinking, proper,** decent, seemly, meet; **accepted, recognized,** acknowledged, received, admitted, approved, being done; *comme il faut* and *de rigueur* <Fr>; **traditional, customary;** formal 580.7; conformable 867.5

ADVS 6 **conventionally,** decorously, orthodoxly; **customarily, traditionally;** correctly, properly, as is proper, as it should be, *comme il faut* <Fr>; according to use *or* custom, according to the dictates of society *or* Mrs Grundy

580 FORMALITY

NOUNS **1 formality, form, formalness; ceremony,** ceremonial, **ceremoniousness; the red carpet; ritual,** rituality; extrinsicality, impersonality 767.1; formalization, stylization, conventionalization; **stiffness, stiltedness,** primness, prissiness, rigidness, starchiness, buckram <old>, **dignity,** gravity, weight, *gravitas* <L>, weighty dignity, staidness, reverend seriousness, **solemnity** 111; **pomp** 501.6; pomposity 501.7

2 formalism, ceremonialism, ritualism; legalism; pedantry, pedantism, pedanticism; precisianism, preciseness, preciousness, preciosity, purism; punctiliousness, punctilio, scrupulousness; overrefinement

3 etiquette, social code, rules *or* code of conduct; **formalities,** social procedures, social conduct *or* convention, what is done, what one does; **manners,** good manners, exquisite manners, quiet good manners, **politeness,** *politesse* <Fr>, natural politeness, comity, civility 504.1; **amenities,** decencies, civilities, elegancies, **social graces, mores, proprieties;** decorum, good form; **courtliness,** elegance 533; **protocol,** diplomatic code; punctilio, point of etiquette; convention, social usage; table manners

4 <ceremonial function> **ceremony,** ceremonial; **rite, ritual, formality; solemnity, service, function,** office, **observance,** performance; **exercise,** exercises; **celebration,** solemnization; **liturgy,** religious ceremony; **rite of passage,** *rite de passage* <Fr>; convocation; commencement, commencement exercises; graduation, graduation exercises; baccalaureate service; inaugural, inauguration; initiation; formal, ball; wedding; funeral; set piece; empty formality or ceremony, mummery

VERBS **5 formalize,** ritualize, solemnize, **celebrate,** dignify; **observe;** conventionalize, stylize

6 stand on ceremony, observe the formalities, follow protocol, do things by the book

ADJS **7 formal,** formulary; formalist, formalistic; legalistic; pedantic, pedantical; official, stylized, conventionalized; extrinsic, outward, impersonal 768.3; surface, **superficial, nominal** 527.15

8 ceremonious, ceremonial; red-carpet; ritualistic, ritual; hieratic, hieratical, sacerdotal, liturgic; **grave, solemn** 111.3; **pompous** 501.22; **stately** 501.21; well-mannered 504.16; **conventional,** decorous 579.5

9 stiff, stilted, prim, prissy, rigid, starch, starchy, starched; buckram *and* in buckram <old>

10 punctilious, scrupulous, precise, precisian, precisionist, precious, puristic; by-the-book; exact, **meticulous** 339.12; **orderly, methodical** 807.6

ADVS **11 formally,** in due form, in set form; **ceremoniously, ritually,** ritualistically; **solemnly** 111.4; for form's sake, *pro forma* <L>, **as a matter of form;** by the book

12 stiffly, stiltedly, starchly, primly, rigidly

581 INFORMALITY

NOUNS **1 informality, informalness, unceremoniousness; casualness,** offhandedness, **ease, easiness,** easygoingness; **relaxedness;** affability, graciousness, cordiality, sociability 582; Bohemianism, unconventionality 868.2; **familiarity; naturalness,** simplicity, plainness, homeliness, homeyness, folksiness <nf>, common touch, **unaffectedness,** unpretentiousness 499.2; unconstraint, unconstrainedness, looseness; irregularity; lack of convention, freedom, license

VERBS **2 not stand on ceremony,** let one's hair down <nf>, be oneself, be at ease, feel at home, come as you are; relax

ADJS **3 informal, unceremonious; casual, offhand,** offhanded, throwaway <nf>, unstudied, easy, easygoing, free and easy, loose; *dégagé* <Fr>; **relaxed;** affable, gracious, cordial, sociable; Bohemian, unconventional 868.6, nonconformist; **familiar; natural,** simple, plain, homely, homey, down-home *and* folksy <nf>, *haymish* <Yiddish>; **unaffected, unassuming** 499.7; unconstrained, loose; irregular; unofficial

ADVS **4 informally, unceremoniously,** without ceremony, *sans cérémonie* and *sans façon* <Fr>; **casually,** offhand, offhandedly; relaxedly; familiarly; **naturally,** simply, plainly; **unaffectedly, unassumingly** 499.11; unconstrainedly, unofficially; *en famille* <Fr>

582 SOCIABILITY

NOUNS **1 sociability,** sociality, sociableness, fitness *or* fondness for society, socialmindedness, **gregariousness, affability,** companionability, compatibility, geniality, *Gemütlichkeit* <Ger>, **congeniality;** hospitality 585; clubbability <nf>, clubbishness, clubbiness, clubbism; intimacy, familiarity; amiability, **friendliness** 587.1; **communicativeness** 343.3; social grace, civility, urbanity, courtesy 504

2 camaraderie, comradery, comradeship, **fellowship, good-fellowship;** male bonding; consorting, hobnobbing, hanging *and* hanging out <nf>

3 conviviality, joviality, jollity, gaiety, heartiness, cheer, good cheer, festivity, partying, merrymaking, merriment, revelry

4 social life, social intercourse, social activity,

intercourse, communication, communion, intercommunion, **fellowship,** intercommunication, **community,** collegiality, commerce, congress, converse, conversation, social relations

5 **social circle** *or* **set,** social class, one's crowd *or* set, clique, coterie, crowd <nf>; **association** 617

6 **association,** consociation, affiliation, bonding, social bonding, **fellowship, companionship, company, society;** fraternity, **fraternization;** membership, participation, partaking, sharing, cooperation 450

7 **visit, social call,** call, drop-in; formal visit, duty visit, required visit; exchange visit; flying visit, look-in; visiting, visitation; round of visits; social round, social whirl, mad round

8 **appointment, engagement, date** <nf>, double date *and* blind date <nf>; arrangement, interview; engagement book

9 **rendezvous, tryst, assignation, meeting;** trysting place, meeting place, place of assignation; assignation house; love nest <nf>

10 **social gathering, social,** sociable, social affair, social hour, hospitality hour, affair, gathering, get-together <nf>; function; ladies' night, **reception,** at home, salon, levee, soiree; matinee; reunion, family reunion; wake

11 **party** <see list>, **entertainment,** celebration, fete, bash, party time, **festivity** 743.3,4

12 <nf terms> **brawl, bash,** blast, clambake, wingding, hoodang, blowout, shindig, shindy, do *and* bean-feast *and* knees-up *and* rave *and* rave-up <Brit>

13 **tea,** afternoon tea, five-o'clock tea, high tea, cream tea

14 bee, quilting bee, raising bee, husking bee, cornhusking, corn shucking, husking

15 **debut, coming out** <nf>, presentation

16 <sociable person> joiner, mixer *and* good mixer <nf>, good *or* pleasant company, excellent companion, life of the party, social butterfly, bon vivant; social chairman; man-about-town, playboy, social lion, habitué; clubman, clubwoman; salonnard, salonist

VERBS 17 **associate with,** assort with, sort with, consort with, hobnob with, fall in with, socialize, interact, go around with, **mingle with, mix with, touch** *or* **rub elbows** *or* **shoulders with,** eat off the same trencher; **fraternize,** fellowship, join in fellowship; **keep company with,** bear one's company, walk hand in hand with; **join; flock together,** herd together, club together

18 <nf terms> **hang with,** hang out *or* around with, clique, clique with, gang up with, run *or* run around with, chum, chum together, pal, pal with, pal up *or* around with; take *or* tie up with, hook up with

19 **visit,** make *or* pay a visit, **call on** *or* **upon, drop in,** run *or* stop in, look in, look one up, see, stop off *or* over <nf>, drop *or* run *or* stop by, drop around *or* round; leave one's card; exchange visits

20 have *or* give a party, entertain

21 <nf terms> **throw a party; party,** have fun, live it up, have a ball, ball, boogie, jam, kick up one's heels, make whoopee, whoop it up

ADJS 22 **sociable, social,** social-minded, fit for society, fond of society, **gregarious, affable; companionable,** companionate, compatible, genial, *gemütlich* <Ger>, **congenial;** hospitable 585.11; neighborly; clubby, clubbable <nf>, clubbish; **communicative** 343.10; amiable, **friendly;** civil, urbane, courteous 504.14

23 **convivial,** boon, free and easy, hail-fellow-well-met; **jovial, jolly,** hearty, festive, gay

24 **intimate, familiar,** cozy, chatty, *tête-à-tête* <Fr>; man-to-man, woman-to-woman

ADVS 25 **sociably,** socially, gregariously, affably; friendlily, companionably, arm in arm, hand in hand, hand in glove

26 **types of parties**

at-home
ball
birthday party
cocktail party
coffee party *or* kaffee klatsch *or* coffee klatsch
dinner party
fête champêtre <Fr>
garden party
hen party
housewarming
ladies' *or* men's night out
masked ball *or bal masqué* <Fr>
masquerade party *or* mask *or* masque *or* masquerade
open house
pajama party
rave
shindig *or* shindy
shower
smoker <nf>
social
soiree
stag *or* stag party <nf>
surprise party
tea party
thé dansante <Fr>

583 UNSOCIABILITY

NOUNS 1 **unsociability,** insociability, unsociableness, dissociability, dissociableness; **ungregariousness,** uncompanionability; unclubbableness *or* unclubbability <nf>, ungeniality, **uncongeniality;** incompatibility, social incompatibility; **unfriendliness** 589.1; **uncommunicativeness** 344; sullenness, mopishness, moroseness; self-sufficiency, self-containment; autism, catatonia; bashfulness 139.4

2 **aloofness, standoffishness,** offishness, withdrawnness, **remoteness,** distance, detachment; **coolness,** coldness, frigidity, chill, chilliness, iciness, frostiness; cold shoulder; inaccessibility, unapproachability; private world

3 seclusiveness, **seclusion** 584; exclusiveness, exclusivity

VERBS 4 **keep to oneself,** keep oneself to oneself, not mix *or* mingle, enjoy *or* prefer one's own company, stay at home, shun companionship, be a poor mixer, **stand aloof,** hold oneself aloof *or* apart, keep one's distance, keep at a distance, keep in the background, retire, retire into the shade, creep into a corner, seclude oneself, stay in one's shell; have nothing to do with 586.5, be unfriendly, not give one the time of day

ADJS 5 **unsociable,** insociable, dissociable, unsocial; **ungregarious,** nongregarious; **uncompanionable,** ungenial, uncongenial; incompatible, socially incompatible; unclubbable <nf>; **unfriendly** 589.9; **uncommunicative** 344.8; sullen, mopish, mopey, morose; close, snug; self-sufficient, self-contained; autistic, catatonic; bashful 139.12

6 **aloof, standoffish,** offish, standoff, **distant, remote,** withdrawn, removed, detached, **cool,** cold, coldfish, frigid, chilly, icy, frosty; seclusive; exclusive; inaccessible, unapproachable; tight-assed <nf>

584 SECLUSION

NOUNS 1 **seclusion,** reclusion, **retirement, withdrawal, retreat,** recess; renunciation *or* forsaking of the world; cocooning; **sequestration,** quarantine, separation, detachment, apartness; segregation, apartheid, Jim Crow; **isolation,** "splendid isolation"—Sir William Goschen; ivory tower, ivory-towerism, ivory-towerishness; **privacy,** privatism, **secrecy;** rustication; privatization; isolationism; opt-out

2 **hermitism,** hermitry, eremitism, anchoritism, anchoretism, cloistered monasticism

3 **solitude,** solitariness, **aloneness,** loneness, singleness; **loneliness, lonesomeness**

4 **forlornness, desolation;** friendlessness, kithlessness, fatherlessness, motherlessness, homelessness, rootlessness; helplessness, defenselessness; abandonment, desertion

5 **recluse, loner,** solitaire, solitary, solitudinarian; **shut-in,** invalid, bedridden invalid; cloistered monk *or* nun; **hermit,** eremite, anchorite, anchoret; marabout; hermitess, anchoress; **ascetic;** closet cynic; stylite, pillarist, pillar saint; Hieronymite, Hieronymian; Diogenes, Timon of Athens, St Simeon Stylites, St Anthony, desert saints, desert fathers; outcast, pariah 586.4; **stay-at-home, homebody; isolationist,** seclusionist; ivory-towerist, ivory-towerite

6 **retreat** 1009.5, **hideaway, cell, ivory tower,** hidey-hole <nf>, lair, sanctum, sanctum sanctorum, inner sanctum

VERBS 7 **seclude oneself, go into seclusion, retire, go into retirement,** retire from the world, abandon *or* forsake the world, live in retirement, lead a retired life, lead a cloistered life, sequester *or* sequestrate oneself, be *or* remain incommunicado, shut oneself up, live alone, live apart, retreat to one's ivory tower; stay at home; rusticate; take the veil; cop out <nf>, opt out *or* drop out of society

ADJS 8 **secluded, seclusive, retired, withdrawn;** isolated, shut off, insular, **separate,** separated, **apart,** detached, removed; segregated, quarantined; **remote, out-of-the-way,** up-country, in a backwater, out-of-the-world, out-back *and* back of beyond <Austral>; **unfrequented,** unvisited, off the beaten track; untraveled

9 **private,** privatistic, reclusive; ivory-towered, ivory-towerish

10 **recluse, reclusive, sequestered, cloistered,** sequestrated, shut up *or* in; hermitlike, hermitic, hermitical, eremitic, eremitical, hermitish; anchoritic, anchoritical; stay-at-home, domestic; homebound

11 **solitary, alone; in solitude,** by oneself, all alone; **lonely, lonesome, lone;** lonely-hearts

12 **forlorn,** lorn; **abandoned, forsaken, deserted, desolate,** godforsaken <nf>, friendless, unfriended, kithless, fatherless, motherless, homeless; helpless, defenseless; outcast 586.10

ADVS 13 **in seclusion, in retirement,** in retreat, in solitude; in privacy, in secrecy; "far from the madding crowd's ignoble strife"—Thomas Gray

585 HOSPITALITY, WELCOME

NOUNS 1 **hospitality,** hospitableness, receptiveness; honors *or* freedom of the house; **cordiality,** amiability, graciousness, **friendliness,** neighborliness, geniality, heartiness, bonhomie, **generosity,** liberality, openheartedness, warmth, warmness, warmheartedness; open door

2 **welcome,** welcoming, **reception,** *accueil* <Fr>; cordial *or* warm *or* hearty welcome, pleasant *or* smiling reception, the glad hand <nf>, **open arms; embrace, hug;** welcome mat

3 **greetings, salutations,** salaams; **regards,** best wishes 504.8

4 **greeting, salutation,** salute, salaam; **hail, hello,** how-do-you-do; accost, address; nod, bow, bob; curtsy 155.2; wave; handshake, handclasp; namaste; open arms, embrace, hug, kiss; smile, smile *or* nod of recognition, nod

5 **host,** mine host; hostess, receptionist, greeter; landlord 470.2

6 **guest, visitor,** visitant; **caller,** company; invited guest, invitee; frequenter, habitué, haunter; uninvited guest, gate-crasher <nf>; moocher *and* freeloader <nf>

VERBS **7** **receive, admit,** accept, take in, let in, open the door to; **be at home to,** have the latchstring out, keep a light in the window, put out the welcome mat, keep the door open, keep an open house, keep the home fires burning

8 **entertain,** entertain guests, guest; host, preside, do the honors <nf>; give a party, throw a party <nf>; spread oneself <nf>

9 **welcome,** make welcome, bid one welcome, bid one feel at home, make one feel welcome *or* at home or like one of the family, do the honors of the house, give one the freedom of the house, hold out the hand, extend the right hand of friendship; glad hand *and* give the glad hand *and* glad eye <nf>; **embrace, hug, receive** *or* **welcome with open arms;** give a warm reception to, "kill the fatted calf"—Bible, roll out the red carpet, give the red-carpet treatment, receive royally, make feel like a king *or* queen

10 **greet, hail, accost,** address; **salute,** make one's salutations; **bid** *or* **say hello,** bid good day *or* good morning, etc; exchange greetings, **pass the time of day; give one's regards** 504.13; shake hands, shake *and* give one some skin *and* give a high *or* a low five <nf>, press the flesh <nf>, press *or* squeeze one's hand; nod to, bow to; curtsy 155.6; tip the hat to, lift the hat, touch the hat *or* cap; take one's hat off to, uncover; pull *or* tug at the forelock; kiss, greet with a kiss, kiss hands *or* cheeks

ADJS **11** **hospitable, receptive,** welcoming; **cordial,** amiable, gracious, **friendly,** neighborly, genial, hearty, open, openhearted, warm, warmhearted; **generous,** liberal

12 **welcome,** welcome as the roses in May, wanted, desired, wished-for; **agreeable,** desirable, acceptable; **grateful,** gratifying, pleasing

ADVS **13** **hospitably, with open arms;** friendlily

INTERJS **14** **welcome!,** *soyez le bienvenu!* <Fr>, *¡bien venido!* <Sp>, *benvenuto!* <Ital>, *Willkommen!* <Ger>; glad to see you!

15 **greetings!,** salutations!, **hello!,** hullo!, hail!, hey! *or* heigh!, **hi!,** aloha!, *¡hola!* <Sp>; **how do you do?, how are you?,** *comment allez-vous?* and *comment ça va?* <Fr>, *¿cómo está Usted?* <Sp>, *come sta?* <Ital>, *wie geht's?* <Ger>; **good morning!,** *guten Morgen!* <Ger>; good day!, *bon jour!* <Fr>, *¡buenos días!* <Sp>, *buon giorno!* <Ital>, *guten Tag!* <Ger>; **good afternoon!,** *¡buenas tardes!* <Sp>; **good evening!,** *bon soir!* <Fr>, *buona sera!* <Ital>, *guten Abend!* <Ger>

16 <nf terms> **howdy!,** howdy-do!, how-de-do!, how-do-ye-do!, how-d'ye-do!, how you doin'?, hi ya!; how's things?, how's tricks?, how goes it?, how's every little thing?, how's the world treating you?, **yo!,** ahoy!, hey!; long time no see!

586 INHOSPITALITY

NOUNS **1** **inhospitality,** inhospitableness, unhospitableness, unreceptiveness; **uncordialness,** ungraciousness, **unfriendliness,** unneighborliness; nonwelcome, nonwelcoming

2 unhabitability, uninhabitability, unlivability

3 **ostracism,** ostracization, thumbs down; **banishment** 909.4; **proscription, ban; boycott,** boycottage; **blackball,** blackballing, blacklist; **rejection** 442.1

4 **outcast,** social outcast, outcast of society, **castaway, derelict,** Ishmael; **pariah, untouchable,** leper; outcaste; *déclassé* <Fr>; **outlaw; expellee, evictee; displaced person** *or* **DP; exile, expatriate,** man without a country; undesirable; *persona non grata* <L>, unacceptable person

VERBS **5** **have nothing to do with,** have no truck with <nf>, refuse to associate with, steer clear of <nf>, **spurn, turn one's back upon,** not give one the time of day <nf>; deny oneself to, refuse to receive, not be at home to; shut the door upon

6 **ostracize,** turn thumbs down, disfellowship; **reject** 442.3, **exile, banish** 909.17; **proscribe, ban, outlaw** 444.3, put under the ban, criminalize; **boycott, blackball,** blacklist

ADJS **7** **inhospitable,** unhospitable; **unreceptive,** closed; **uncordial,** ungracious, **unfriendly,** unneighborly

8 **unhabitable, uninhabitable,** nonhabitable, unoccupiable, untenantable, **unlivable, unfit to live in,** not fit for man or beast

9 **unwelcome, unwanted; unagreeable,** undesirable, unacceptable; **uninvited,** unasked, unbidden

10 **outcast, cast-off, castaway, derelict;** outlawed 444.7, outside the pale, outside the gates; **rejected, disowned; abandoned, forsaken**

587 FRIENDSHIP

NOUNS **1** **friendship, friendliness; amicability,** amicableness, amity, peaceableness, unhostility; **amiability,** amiableness, **congeniality,** well-affectedness; neighborliness, neighborlikeness; peaceableness; sociability 582; **affection, love** 104; **loving kindness, kindness** 143

2 fellowship, companionship, comradeship, colleagueship, chumship <nf>, palship <nf>, circle of friends, freemasonry, consortship, boon companionship; comradery, camaraderie, male bonding; **brotherhood, fraternity,** fraternalism, fraternization, sodality, confraternity; **sisterhood, sorority;** brotherliness, sisterliness; community of interest, *esprit de corps* <Fr>; chumminess <nf>

3 **good terms, good understanding,** good footing, friendly relations; **harmony,** compatibility, sympathy, fellow feeling, bonding, understanding, **rapport** 455.1, rapprochement; **favor, goodwill, good graces, regard,** respect, mutual regard *or* respect, favorable regard, the good *or* right side of <nf>, esprit de corps; an in <nf>; entente, entente cordiale, hands across the sea

4 **acquaintance,** acquaintedness, close acquaintance; **introduction,** presentation, knockdown <nf>

5 **familiarity, intimacy,** intimate acquaintance, closeness, nearness, inseparableness, inseparability; affinity, special affinity, mutual affinity; chumminess <nf>, palliness *or* palsiness *or* palsy-walsiness <nf>, mateyness <Brit nf>; togetherness

6 **cordiality, geniality,** heartiness, bonhomie, ardency, warmth, warmness, affability, warmheartedness; hospitality 585

7 **devotion, devotedness;** dedication, commitment; fastness, steadfastness, firmness, constancy, staunchness; triedness, trueness, true-blueness, tried-and-trueness

8 cordial friendship, warm *or* ardent friendship, close friendship, passionate friendship, devoted friendship, bosom friendship, intimate *or* familiar friendship, sincere friendship, beautiful friendship, fast *or* firm friendship, staunch friendship, loyal friendship, lasting friendship, undying friendship

VERBS 9 **be friends,** have the friendship of, have the ear of; be old friends *or* friends of long standing, be long acquainted, go way back; **know, be acquainted with;** associate with; cotton to *and* hit it off <nf>, get on well with, hobnob with, fraternize with, keep company with, go around with; be close friends with, be best friends, be inseparable; **be on good terms,** enjoy good *or* friendly relations with; keep on good terms, have an in with <nf>

10 **befriend, make** *or* **win friends,** gain the friendship of, **strike up a friendship,** get to know one another, take up with <nf>, shake hands with, **get acquainted,** make *or* scrape acquaintance with, pick up an acquaintance with; win friends, win friends and influence people; break the ice; warm to

11 <nf terms> **be buddy-buddy** *or* **palsy-walsy with,** click, have good *or* great chemistry, team up; **get next to, get palsy** *or* **palsy-walsy with,** get cozy with, cozy *or* snuggle up to, get close to, get chummy with, buddy *or* pal up with, play footsie with

12 **cultivate,** cultivate the friendship of, **court,** pay court to, pay addresses to, seek the company of, **run after** <nf>, **shine up to,** make up to <nf>, play up to *and* suck up to <nf>, hold out *or* extend the right of friendship *or* fellowship; **make advances,** approach, break the ice

13 **get on good terms with, get into favor,** win the regard of, **get in the good graces of, get in good with,** get in with *or* on the in with *and* get next to <nf>, **get on the good** *or* **right side of** <nf>; stay friends with, keep in with <nf>

14 **introduce, present, acquaint,** make acquainted, give an introduction, give a knockdown <nf>, do the honors <nf>

ADJS 15 **friendly,** friendlike; **amicable, peaceable,** unhostile; **harmonious** 455.3; **amiable, congenial,** *simpático* <Sp>, *simpatico* <Ital>, *sympathique* <Fr>, pleasant, agreeable, favorable, well-affected, well-disposed, well-intentioned, well-meaning, well-meant, well-intended; brotherly, fraternal, confraternal; sisterly; neighborly, neighborlike; sociable; kind 143.13

16 **cordial, genial,** gracious, courteous, hearty, ardent, warm, warmhearted, affable; compatible, cooperative; welcoming, receptive, hospitable 585.11

17 **friends with,** friendly with, at home with; **acquainted**

18 **on good terms,** on a good footing, on friendly *or* amicable terms, **on speaking terms,** on a first-name basis, on visiting terms; **in good with,** in with *and* on the in with *and* in <nf>, **in favor, in one's good graces,** in one's good books, on the good *or* right side of <nf>, regarded highly by, on a first-name basis with, in with <nf>

19 **familiar, intimate, close,** near, inseparable, on familiar *or* intimate terms, favorite, affectionate; just between the two, one-on-one, man-to-man, woman-to-woman; hand-in-hand, hand and glove *or* hand in glove; **thick, thick as thieves** <nf>; demonstrative, backslapping, effusive

20 **chummy** <nf>, matey <Brit nf>; pally *and* palsy *and* palsy-walsy *and* buddy-buddy <nf>; companionable

21 **devoted,** dedicated, committed, **fast,** steadfast, supportive, constant, faithful, staunch, firm; tried, true, **tried and true,** true-blue, loyal, tested, trusty, trustful, trustworthy

ADVS 22 **amicably,** friendly, friendlily, friendliwise; **amiably, congenially,** pleasantly, agreeably, favorably; **cordially, genially,** heartily, ardently, warmly, with open arms; familiarly, intimately; arm in arm, hand in hand, hand in glove

588 FRIEND

NOUNS 1 **friend,** acquaintance, close acquaintance; confidant, confidante, repository; **intimate,** familiar, **close friend,** intimate *or* familiar friend; **bosom friend,** friend of one's bosom, inseparable friend, **best friend;** alter ego, other self, shadow; brother, fellow, fellowman, fellow creature, neighbor; mutual friend; **sympathizer,** well-wisher, partisan, advocate, favorer, backer, **supporter** 616.9; casual acquaintance; pickup <nf>; lover 104.12; girlfriend, boyfriend; live-in lover, POSSLQ *or* person of opposite sex sharing living quarters, significant other

2 **good friend, best friend,** great friend, **devoted friend,** warm *or* ardent friend, **faithful friend,** trusted *or* trusty friend, *fidus Achates* <L>, constant friend, staunch friend, fast friend; friend in need, friend indeed

3 **companion, fellow,** fellow companion, **comrade,** *camarade* <Fr>, amigo <nf>, mate <Brit>, comate, company, **associate** 616, peer, consociate, compeer, confrere, consort, **colleague, partner,** copartner, side partner, **crony,** old crony, gossip; girlfriend <nf>; **roommate,** chamberfellow; flatmate; bunkmate, bunkie <nf>; bedfellow, bedmate; **schoolmate,** schoolfellow, classmate, classfellow, school companion, school chum, fellow student *or* pupil; **playmate,** playfellow; **teammate,** yokefellow, yokemate; workmate, workfellow 616.5; shipmate; messmate; comrade in arms; homeboy <nf>

4 <nf terms> **pal, buddy,** bud, buddy-boy, bosom buddy, asshole buddy, main man, home boy, goombah, landsman, paesan, paesano, pally, palsy-walsy, road dog, walkboy, cobber <Austral>, pardner, pard, sidekick, tillicum, **chum,** ace, mate *and* butty <Brit>, my man

5 **boon companion,** boonfellow; **good fellow,** jolly fellow, hearty, *bon vivant* <Fr>; pot companion

6 <famous friendships> Achilles and Patroclus, Castor and Pollux, Damon and Pythias, David and Jonathan, Diomedes and Sthenelus, Epaminondas and Pelopidas, Hercules and Iolaus, Nisus and Euryalus, Pylades and Orestes, Theseus and Pirithoüs, Christ and the beloved disciple; the Three Musketeers

589 ENMITY

NOUNS 1 **enmity, unfriendliness,** inimicality; **uncordiality,** unamiability, ungeniality, disaffinity, incompatibility, incompatibleness; personal conflict, strain, **tension;** coolness, coldness, chilliness, chill, frost, frostiness, iciness, the freeze; inhospitality 586, unsociability 583

2 **disaccord** 456; ruffled feelings, strained relations, alienation, **disaffection, estrangement** 456.4

3 **hostility, antagonism, repugnance, antipathy,** spitefulness, spite, despitefulness, bellicosity, malice, malevolence, malignity, **hatred, hate** 103; dislike; **conflict, contention** 457, collision, clash, clashing, **friction;** quarrelsomeness 456.3; belligerence, intolerance

4 **animosity,** animus; **ill will,** ill feeling, bitter feeling, **hard feelings,** no love lost; **bad blood,** ill blood, feud, blood feud, vendetta; **bitterness,** sourness, soreness, **rancor,** resentment, acrimony, virulence, venom, vitriol

5 **grudge, spite,** crow to pick *or* pluck *or* pull, bone to pick; peeve *and* pet peeve <nf>; peevishness

6 **enemy, foe,** foeman, **adversary, antagonist,** unfriendly <nf>; bitter enemy; sworn enemy; open enemy; secret enemy; public enemy, public enemy number one; archenemy, devil; "my nearest and dearest enemy"—Thomas Middleton; the other side, the opposition, opponent, rival; **bane** 395.8, bête noire; no friend

VERBS 7 **antagonize,** set against, make enemies, set at odds, set at each other's throat, sick on each other <nf>; aggravate, exacerbate, heat up, **provoke,** envenom, **embitter,** infuriate, irritate, madden; divide, disunite, **alienate,** estrange 456.14; be alienated *or* estranged, draw *or* grow apart

8 **bear ill will,** bear malice, have it in for <nf>, hold it against, be down on <nf>; **bear** *or* **harbor** *or* **nurse a grudge,** owe a grudge, have a bone to pick with; no love is lost between; have a crow to pick *or* pluck *or* pull with; pick a quarrel; take offense, take umbrage; scorn, **hate** 103.5

ADJS 9 **unfriendly, inimical, unamicable; uncordial,** unamiable, ungenial, incompatible; strained, tense; discordant, unharmonious; cool, cold, chill, chilly, frosty, icy; inhospitable 586.7; unsociable 583.5

10 **hostile, antagonistic,** repugnant, antipathetic, set against, ill-disposed, acrimonious, snide, spiteful, despiteful, malicious, malevolent, malignant, hateful, full of hate *or* hatred; virulent, **bitter,** sore, sour, rancorous, acrid, caustic, venomous, vitriolic; conflicting, clashing, colliding; resentful, grudging, peevish; quarrelsome 456.17, contentious; **provocative,** off-putting; belligerent, bellicose

11 **alienated, estranged,** pffft <nf>, disaffected, separated, divided, disunited, torn, at variance; irreconcilable; distant; not on speaking terms

12 **at outs, on the outs** <nf>, at enmity, at variance, **at odds,** at loggerheads, at cross-purposes, at sixes and sevens, at each other's throats, at swords points, at daggers drawn, at war; on bad terms, in bad with <nf>

13 **on bad terms,** not on speaking terms; in bad with <nf>, in bad odor with, in one's bad *or* black book, on one's shitlist *or* drop-dead list <nf>

ADVS 14 **unamicably,** inimically; **uncordially,** unamiably, ungenially; coolly, coldly, chillily, frostily; **hostilely, antagonistically**

590 MISANTHROPY

NOUNS 1 **misanthropy,** misanthropism, people-hating, Timonism, cynicism, antisociality, antisocial sentiments *or* attitudes; unsociability 583; **man-hating,** misandry; **woman-hating,** misogyny; **sexism,** sex discrimination, sexual stereotyping, male *or* female chauvinism

2 **misanthrope,** misanthropist, people-hater, cynic, Timon, Timonist; **man-hater,** misandrist; **woman-hater,** misogynist; **sexist,** male *or* female chauvinist, chauvinist

ADJS 3 **misanthropic,** people-hating, Timonist, Timonistic, cynical, **antisocial;** unsociable 583.5; **man-hating,** misandrist; **woman-hating,** misogynic, misogynistic, misogynous; **sexist,** male- *or* female-chauvinistic, chauvinistic

591 PUBLIC SPIRIT

NOUNS 1 **public spirit,** social consciousness *or* responsibility; **citizenship, good citizenship,** citizenism, civism; altruism

2 **patriotism,** love of country; "the last refuge of a scoundrel"—Samuel Johnson; **nationalism,** nationality, ultranationalism; Americanism, Anglicism, Briticism, etc; **chauvinism, jingoism,** overpatriotism; patriotics, flag-waving; saber-rattling

3 **patriot;** nationalist; ultranationalist; **chauvinist,** chauvin, **jingo,** jingoist; patrioteer <nf>, flag waver, superpatriot, hard hat <nf>, hundred-percenter, hundred-percent American; hawk

ADJS 4 **public-spirited, civic; patriotic; nationalistic;** ultranationalist, ultranationalistic; overpatriotic, superpatriotic, flagwaving, **chauvinist, chauvinistic,** jingoist, jingoistic; hawkish

592 BENEFACTOR

NOUNS 1 **benefactor,** benefactress, philanthropist, **benefiter,** succorer, befriender; ministrant, ministering angel; Samaritan, **good Samaritan; helper,** aider, assister, help, aid, helping hand; Johnny-on-the-spot <nf>, jack-at-a-pinch <old Brit nf>; **patron, backer** 616.9, angel *and* cash cow <nf>; **good person** 659

2 **savior, redeemer,** deliverer, **liberator,** rescuer, freer, **emancipator,** manumitter

VERBS 3 **benefit, aid,** assist, succor; befriend, take under one's wing; back, support; save the day, save one's neck *or* skin *or* bacon

ADJS 4 benefitting, aiding, befriending, assisting; backing, supporting; saving, salving, salvational, redemptive, redeeming; liberating, freeing, emancipative, emancipating, manumitting

ADVS 5 by one's aid *or* good offices, with one's support, on one's shoulders *or* coattails

PREPS 6 with *or* by benefit of, with *or* by the aid of

593 EVILDOER

NOUNS 1 **evildoer, wrongdoer,** worker of ill *or* evil, **malefactor,** malfeasant, malfeasor, misfeasor, malevolent, public enemy, **sinner, villain,** villainess, transgressor, delinquent, culprit; bad *or* bad guy *and* baddy *and* meany *and* wrongo *and* black hat <nf>, wrong'un <Brit nf>, villain; **criminal,** outlaw, felon, **crook** <nf>, lawbreaker, perpetrator, perp <nf>, gangster *and* mobster <nf>; racketeer, thief, robber, burglar, rapist, murderer, con; terrorist; **bad person** 660; deceiver 357

2 **troublemaker, mischief-maker;** holy terror; agitator 375.11

3 ruffian, rough, bravo, **rowdy, thug,** desperado, cutthroat, kill-crazy animal, mad dog; gunman; bully, bullyboy, bucko; devil, hellcat, hell-raiser; killer; gang member, gangster

4 <nf terms> **roughneck, tough,** bruiser, mug, mugger, bimbo, bozo, ugly customer, **hoodlum, hood, hooligan,** gorilla, ape, plug-ugly, strong-arm man, muscle man, **goon;** gun, gunsel, trigger man, rodman, torpedo, hatchet man; hellion, terror, holy terror, shtarker, ugly customer

5 **savage, barbarian, brute, beast, animal,** tiger, shark, hyena; wild man; cannibal, man-eater, anthropophagite; **wrecker, vandal,** nihilist, destroyer

6 **monster, fiend,** fiend from hell, **demon, devil,** devil incarnate, hellhound, hellkite; **vampire,** lamia, **harpy, ghoul;** werewolf, ape-man; ogre, ogress; Frankenstein's monster

7 **witch, hag, vixen,** hellhag, hellcat, she-devil, virago, brimstone, termagant, grimalkin, Jezebel, beldam, she-wolf, tigress, wildcat, bitch-kitty <nf>, siren, fury

594 JURISDICTION

<administration of justice>

NOUNS 1 **jurisdiction,** legal authority *or* power *or* right *or* sway, the confines of the law; original *or* appellate jurisdiction, exclusive *or* concurrent jurisdiction, civil *or* criminal jurisdiction, common-law *or* equitable jurisdiction, *in rem* jurisdiction, *in personam* jurisdiction, subject-matter jurisdiction, territorial jurisdiction; voluntary jurisdiction; mandate, cognizance

2 **judiciary,** judicial *or* legal *or* court system, judicature, judicatory, court, the courts; criminal-justice system; **justice,** the wheels of justice, judicial process; judgment 945

3 **magistracy,** magistrature, magistrateship; **judgeship,** justiceship; mayoralty, mayorship

4 **bureau, office, department;** secretariat, ministry, commissariat; municipality, bailiwick; constabulary, constablery, sheriffry, sheriffalty, shrievalty; constablewick, sheriffwick

VERBS 5 **administer justice,** administer, administrate; preside, preside at the board; **sit in judgment** 598.18; **judge** 946.8

ADJS 6 **jurisdictional,** jurisdictive; **judicatory,** judicatorial, judicative, **juridic** *or* **juridical;** jural, jurisprudential, **judicial, judiciary;** magisterial; forensic

595 TRIBUNAL

NOUNS 1 **tribunal, forum, board,** curia, Areopagus; judicature, judicatory, judiciary 594.2; council 423; inquisition, the Inquisition

2 **court, law court, court of law** *or* **justice,** court of arbitration, legal tribunal, judicature; **United States court** <see list>, federal court; **British court** <see list>, Crown court; high court, trial court, court of record, superior court, inferior court; criminal court, civil court

3 <ecclesiastical courts> Papal Court, Curia, Rota, Sacra Romana Rota, Court of Arches *and* Court of Peculiars <Brit>

4 **military court, court-martial,** general *or* special *or* summary court-martial, drumhead court-martial; naval court, captain's mast

5 **seat of justice, judgment seat,** mercy seat, siege of justice <old>; **bench;** woolsack <Brit>

6 **courthouse, court;** county *or* town hall, town house; **courtroom;** jury box; bench, bar; witness stand *or* box, dock

ADJS 7 **tribunal, judicial,** judiciary, court, curial; appellate

8 **United States courts**

Court of Private Land Claims
Federal Court of Claims
Supreme Court *or* United States Supreme Court
Territorial court
United States Circuit Court of Appeals
United States District Court

9 **British courts**

Board of Green Cloth
Council
court of admiralty
Court of Appeal
court of attachments
Court of Common
Court of Common Bank
Court of Common Pleas
Court of Criminal Appeal
Court of Divorce and Matrimonial Causes
Court of Exchequer
Court of Exchequer Chamber
court of piepoudre *or* dustyfoot
Court of Queen's *or* King's Bench
Court of Session <Scot>
Court of the Duchy of Lancaster
Green Cloth
High Court
High Court of Appeal
High *or* Supreme Court of Judicature
High Court of Justice
Judicial Committee of the Privy Council
Lords Justices' Court
Palatine Court
Rolls Court
Stannary Court
superior courts of Westminster
Teind Court <Scot>
Vice Chancellor's Court
Wardmote *or* Wardmote Court
Woodmote

596 JUDGE, JURY

NOUNS 1 **judge** <see list>, **magistrate, justice,** adjudicator, bencher, man *or* woman on the bench, presiding officer, beak <Brit nf>; **justice of the peace** *or* **JP;** arbiter, arbitrator, moderator; umpire, referee; his *or* her honor, your honor, his *or* her worship, his lordship; Mr Justice; critic 946.7; **special judge**

2 <historical> tribune, praetor, ephor, archon, syndic, podesta; Areopagite; justiciar, justiciary; dempster, deemster, doomster, doomsman

3 <Muslim> mullah, ulema, hakim, mufti, cadi

4 Chief Justice, Associate Justice, Justice of the Supreme Court; Lord Chief Justice, Lord Justice, Lord Chancellor, Master of the Rolls, Baron of the Exchequer; Judge Advocate General

5 Pontius Pilate, Solomon, Minos, Rhadamanthus, Aeacus

6 **jury** <see list>, **panel,** jury of one's peers, country, twelve men in a box, twelve good men and true; inquest; jury panel, jury list, venire facias; hung *or* deadlocked jury; grand jury, petit jury, common jury, special jury *or* blue-ribbon jury *or* struck jury

7 **juror, juryman, jurywoman,** venire-man *or* -woman, talesman; foreman of the jury, foreman *or* foreperson; grand-juror, grand-juryman; petit-juror, petit-juryman; recognitor

8 **judges**

amicus curiae
assessor *or* legal assessor
associate justice
bankruptcy judge
barmaster <Brit>
chancellor
chief justice
circuit judge
district judge
hearing officer

judge advocate general *or* JAG
judge *or* justice of assize
jurat
justice in eyre
justice of the peace
justiciar
lay judge
magistrate
master
military judge
ombudsman
ordinary *or* judge ordinary
police judge *or* justice *or* magistrate *or* PJ
presiding judge *or* officer
probate judge
puisne judge *or* justice
recorder
tax judge
trial judge
vice-chancellor

9 juries

blue-ribbon jury *or* panel
common jury
coroner's jury
elisor jury
grand jury
Jedburgh jury <Scot>
jury of inquest
jury of matrons *or* women
jury of the vicinage
petit jury *or* petty jury *or* traverse jury
police jury
pyx jury
sheriff's jury
special jury
struck jury
trial jury

597 LAWYER

NOUNS 1 **lawyer, attorney, attorney-at-law,** barrister, barrister-at-law, **counselor,** counselor-at-law, **counsel,** legal counsel *or* counselor, legal adviser, law officer, legal expert, **solicitor, advocate, pleader;** member of the bar, legal practitioner, officer of the court; smart lawyer, pettifogger, Philadelphia lawyer; Juris Doctor *or* JurD, proctor, procurator; friend at *or* in court, amicus curiae; deputy, agent 576; intercessor 466.3; sea lawyer, latrine *or* guardhouse lawyer <nf>, self-styled lawyer, legalist; public prosecutor, judge advocate, district attorney *or* DA, attorney general

2 legist, jurist, jurisprudent, jurisconsult; law member of a court-martial

3 <nf terms> **shyster, mouthpiece, ambulance chaser,** lip, fixer, legal eagle

4 **bar,** legal profession, members of the bar; representation, counsel, pleading, attorneyship; **practice,** legal practice, criminal practice, corporate practice, etc; legal-aid *or* pro bono practice; **law firm,** legal firm, partnership

VERBS 5 **practice law,** practice at the bar; be admitted to the bar; take silk <Brit>

ADJS 6 **lawyerly,** lawyerlike, barristerial; representing, of counsel

598 LEGAL ACTION

NOUNS 1 **lawsuit, suit,** suit in *or* at law; countersuit; **litigation, prosecution, action, legal action,** proceedings, legal proceedings, legal process, legal procedure, due process, course of law; legal remedy; **case, court case,** cause, cause in court, legal case; **judicial process;** claim, counterclaim; test case; one's day in court

2 **summons, subpoena,** writ of summons; **writ, warrant**

3 **arraignment, indictment, impeachment; complaint, charge** 599.1; presentment; information; bill of indictment, true bill; **bail** 438.2

4 **jury selection, impanelment,** venire, venire facias, venire facias de novo, jury service, sequestration

5 **trial, jury trial,** trial by jury, trial at the bar, trial by law, **hearing, inquiry, inquisition,** inquest, assize; court-martial; **examination,** cross-examination; retrial; mistrial; change of venue; civil trial, criminal trial, bench trial

6 **pleadings,** arguments at the bar; **plea,** pleading, argument; **defense,** statement of defense; demurrer, general *or* special demurrer; refutation 958.2; rebuttal 939.2

7 **declaration, statement,** allegation, allegation *or* statement of facts, procès-verbal; **deposition,** affidavit; claim; complaint; bill, bill of complaint; libel, narratio; nolle prosequi, nol pros; nonsuit

8 **testimony; evidence** 957; cross-examination, direct examination; **argument,** presentation of the case; resting of the case; **summing up,** summation, closing arguments, jury instructions, charge to the jury, charging of the jury

9 **judgment, decision,** landmark decision; **verdict,** directed verdict, special verdict, sealed verdict, **sentence** 946.5; acquittal 601; condemnation 602, penalty 603

10 **appeal,** appeal motion, application for retrial, appeal to a higher court; writ of error; certiorari, writ of certiorari

11 **litigant, litigator,** litigationist; suitor, **party,** party to a suit, injured *or* aggrieved party, **plaintiff** 599.5; **defendant** 599.6; witness; accessory, accessory before *or* after the fact; panel, parties litigant

12 <legal terms> motion for summary judgment, search warrant, bench warrant, discovery, written interrogatories, witness list, plea bargaining, objection, perjury

VERBS 13 **sue, litigate, prosecute,** go into litigation, **bring suit,** put in suit, sue *or* prosecute at law, **go to law,** seek in law, appeal to the law, seek justice *or* legal redress, implead, **bring action against,** bring legal action, start an action, prosecute a suit against, take *or* institute legal proceedings against; law *or* have the law in <nf>; take to court, bring into court, hale *or* haul *or* drag into court, bring a case before the court *or* bar, bring before a jury, bring to justice, bring to trial, **put on trial,** bring to the bar, take before the judge; set down for hearing; implead, seek legal protection

14 **summons, issue a summons,** subpoena

15 **arraign, indict, impeach,** cite, serve notice on, find an indictment against, present a true bill, claim, prefer *or* file a claim, have *or* pull up <nf>, bring up for investigation; press charges, **prefer charges** 599.7

16 **select** *or* **impanel a jury,** impanel, panel

17 **call to witness,** bring forward, put on the stand; swear in 334.7; take oath; take the stand, testify

18 **try,** try a case, conduct a trial, bring to trial, put on trial, **hear,** give a hearing to, sit on; charge the jury, deliver one's charge to the jury; **judge, sit in judgment**

19 **plead, enter a plea** *or* **pleading,** implead, conduct pleadings, argue at the bar; **plead** *or* **argue one's case,** stand trial, present one's case, make a plea, tell it to the judge <nf>; hang the jury <nf>; rest, rest one's case; sum up one's case; throw oneself on the mercy of the court

20 **bring in a verdict,** judge, **pass** *or* **pronounce sentence** 946.13; acquit 601.4; convict 602.3; penalize 603.4

ADJS **21** litigious, litigant, litigatory, litigating; causidical, lawyerly; litigable, actionable, justiciable, prosecutable; prosecutorial; moot, sub judice; unactionable, unprosecutable, unlitigable, frivolous, without merit

PHRS **22** **in litigation,** in court, in chancery, in jeopardy, **at law,** litigated, coram judice, brought before the court *or* judge, at bar, at the bar, **on trial,** up for investigation *or* hearing, before the court *or* bar *or* judge

599 ACCUSATION

NOUNS **1** **accusation,** accusal, finger-pointing <nf>, **charge, complaint,** plaint, count, **blame, imputation,** delation, reproach, taxing; **accusing, bringing of charges,** laying of charges, bringing to book; **denunciation,** denouncement; **impeachment, arraignment, indictment,** bill of indictment, true bill; **allegation,** allegement; **imputation,** ascription; **insinuation, implication, innuendo,** veiled accusation, unspoken accusation; information, information against, bill of particulars; charge sheet; specification; gravamen of a charge; prosecution, suit, lawsuit 598.1

2 **incrimination,** crimination, **inculpation,** implication, **citation,** involvement, impugnment; attack, assault; **censure** 510.3

3 **recrimination,** retort, countercharge

4 **trumped-up charge,** false witness; **put-up job** *and* **frame-up** *and* **frame** <nf>; false charge

5 **accuser,** accusant, accusatrix; incriminator, delator, allegator, impugner; informer 551.6; impeacher, indictor; **plaintiff, complainant,** claimant, appellant, petitioner, libelant, suitor, **party,** party to a suit, pursuer; **prosecutor,** the prosecution; hostile witness

6 **accused, defendant,** respondent, codefendant, corespondent, libelee, appellee, suspect, culprit, prisoner, prisoner before the court, accused person

VERBS **7** **accuse,** bring accusation; **charge, press charges, prefer** *or* **bring charges,** lay charges; complain, **lodge a complaint,** lodge a plaint; **impeach, arraign, indict,** bring in *or* hand up an indictment, return a true bill, article, **cite,** cite on several counts; book; **denounce,** denunciate; **finger** *and* point the finger at *and* put *or* lay the finger on <nf>, throw the book at <nf>, **inform on** *or* **against** 551.12,13; **impute,** ascribe; allege, insinuate, imply; bring to book; tax, task, take to task *or* account; **reproach,** twit, taunt with; report, put on report

8 **blame,** blame on *or* upon <nf>, lay on, hold against, **put** *or* **place** *or* **lay the blame on,** lay *or* cast blame upon, place *or* fix the blame *or* responsibility for; fasten on *or* upon, pin *or* hang on <nf>

9 **accuse of, charge with,** tax *or* task with, saddle with, lay to one's charge, place to one's account, lay at one's door, bring home to, cast *or* throw in one's teeth, throw up to one, throw *or* thrust in the face of

10 **incriminate,** criminate, **inculpate,** implicate, involve; cry out against, cry out on *or* upon, cry shame upon, raise one's voice against; attack, assail, impugn; **censure** 510.13; throw a stone at, cast *or* throw the first stone

11 **recriminate,** countercharge, retort an accusation

12 **trump up a charge, bear false witness; frame** *and* frame up *and* set up *and* put up a job on <nf>, plant evidence

ADJS **13** **accusing, accusatory,** accusatorial, accusative, pointing to; imputative, denunciatory; recriminatory; prosecutorial; **condemnatory**

14 **incriminating,** incriminatory, criminatory; delatorian; inculpative, inculpatory

15 **accused, charged, blamed,** tasked, taxed, reproached, **denounced, impeached, indicted, arraigned; under a cloud** *or* a cloud of suspicion, under suspicion; incriminated, recriminated, inculpated, implicated, involved, in complicity; **cited,** impugned; under attack, under fire

600 JUSTIFICATION

NOUNS **1** **justification, vindication; clearing,** clearing of one's name *or* one's good name, clearance, purging, purgation, destigmatizing, destigmatization, **exculpation** 601.1; no bill, failure to indict; explanation, rationalization; reinstatement, restitution, restoration, **rehabilitation**

2 **defense, plea,** pleading; argument, statement of defense; answer, reply, counterstatement, response, riposte; grounds; **refutation** 958.2, **rebuttal** 939.2; demurrer, general *or* special demurrer; denial, objection, exception; **special pleading;** self-defense, plea of self-defense, Nuremberg defense, the devil-made-me-do-it defense, blame-the-victim defense

3 **apology,** apologia, apologetic

4 **excuse, cop-out** *and* **alibi** *and* **out** <nf>; lame excuse, poor excuse, likely story; escape hatch, way out

5 **extenuation, mitigation, palliation,** softening; extenuative, palliative, saving grace; **whitewash, whitewashing,** decontamination; gilding, gloss, varnish, color, putting the best color on; qualification, allowance; extenuating circumstances, mitigating circumstances, diminished responsibility

6 **warrant, reason,** good reason, **cause,** call, **right, basis,** substantive *or* material basis, **ground, grounds,** foundation, substance

7 **justifiability, vindicability, defensibility;** explainability, explicability; **excusability,** pardonableness, forgivableness, remissibility, veniality; warrantableness, allowableness, admissibility, reasonableness, reasonability, legitimacy

8 **justifier, vindicator; defender,** pleader; **advocate,** successful advocate *or* defender, proponent, **champion; apologist,** apologizer, apologetic, excuser; whitewasher

VERBS **9** **justify, vindicate,** do justice to, make justice *or* right prevail; fail to indict, no-bill; **warrant,** account for, show sufficient grounds for, give good reasons for; **rationalize,** explain; cry sour grapes, "make a virtue of necessity"—Shakespeare; get off the hook <nf>, find an out, **exculpate** 601.4; **clear,** clear one's name *or* one's good name, purge, destigmatize, reinstate, restore, rehabilitate

10 **defend,** offer *or* say in defense, allege in support *or* vindication, **support, uphold, sustain, maintain,** assert, stick up for; **answer,** reply, respond, riposte, counter; refute 958.5, **rebut** 939.5; **plead for,** make a plea, offer as a plea, plead one's case *or* cause, put up a front *or* a brave front; **advocate,** champion, go to bat for <nf>, espouse, join *or* associate oneself with, stand *or* stick up for, speak up for, contend for, speak for, argue for, urge reasons for, put in a good word for

11 **excuse,** alibi <nf>, offer excuse for, give as an excuse, cover with excuses, **explain,** offer an explanation; plead ignorance *or* insanity *or* diminished responsibility; **apologize for,** make apology for; alibi out of <nf>, crawl *or* worm *or* squirm out of, lie out of, have an out *or* alibi *or* story <nf>

12 **extenuate, mitigate, palliate,** soften, lessen, diminish, **ease,** mince; **soft-pedal;** slur over, ignore, pass by in silence, give the benefit of the doubt, not hold it against one, **explain away, gloss** *or* **smooth over,** put a gloss upon, put a good face upon, varnish, **white-wash,** color, lend a color to, put the best color *or* face on, show in the best colors, show to best advantage; **allow for,** make allowance for; give the Devil his due

ADJS **13** **justifying,** justificatory; **vindicative,** vindicatory, rehabilitative; refuting 958.6; **excusing,** excusatory; **apologetic, apologetical; extenuating,** extenuative, **palliative**

14 **justifiable, vindicable, defensible; excusable, pardonable, forgivable,** expiable, remissible, exemptible, venial; **condonable,** dispensable; **warrantable,** allowable, admissible, reasonable, colorable, legitimate; innocuous, unobjectionable, inoffensive

601 ACQUITTAL

NOUNS **1** **acquittal,** acquittance; **exculpation,** disculpation, verdict of acquittal *or* not guilty; **exoneration, absolution, vindication, remission,** compurgation, purgation, purging; **clearing,** clearance, destigmatizing, destigmatization, quietus; **pardon, excuse, forgiveness, free pardon; discharge, release, dismissal,** setting free; quashing of the charge *or* indictment

2 **exemption, immunity,** impunity, nonliability; diplomatic immunity; **amnesty,** indemnity, nonprosecution, non prosequitur, nolle prosequi; stay; dispensation

3 **reprieve,** respite, grace

VERBS **4** **acquit, clear, exculpate, exonerate, absolve,** give *or* grant absolution, bring in *or* return a verdict of not guilty; **vindicate,** justify; **pardon, excuse, forgive,** show mercy; remit, grant remission, remit the penalty of; amnesty, grant or extend amnesty; **discharge, release, dismiss, free, set free,** let off <nf>, let go, let off scot-free, spare; quash the charge *or* indictment, withdraw the charge; **exempt,** grant immunity, exempt from, dispense from; clear the skirts of, shrive, purge; blot out one's sins, wipe the slate clean; **whitewash,** decontaminate; destigmatize; non-pros

5 **reprieve,** respite, give *or* grant a reprieve

602 CONDEMNATION

NOUNS 1 **condemnation, damnation, doom,** guilty verdict, verdict of guilty; proscription, excommunication, anathematizing; **denunciation,** denouncement; **censure** 510.3; **conviction; sentence, judgment,** rap <nf>; capital punishment, death penalty, death sentence, death warrant

2 attainder, attainture, attaintment; bill of attainder

VERBS 3 **condemn, damn, doom; denounce,** denunciate; **censure** 510.13; **convict,** find guilty, bring home to; proscribe, excommunicate, anathematize; blacklist, put on the Index; pronounce judgment 946.13; **sentence,** pronounce sentence, pass sentence on; penalize 603.4; attaint; sign one's death warrant

4 **stand condemned,** be convicted, be found guilty

ADJS 5 **condemnatory, damnatory,** denunciatory, proscriptive; **censorious**

6 convicted, condemned, guilty, blameworthy, liable, sentenced

603 PENALTY

NOUNS 1 **penalty,** penalization, penance, penal retribution; **sanctions,** penal *or* punitive measures; **punishment** 604; **reprisal** 506.2, retaliation 506, compensation, price; the devil to pay

2 **handicap,** disability, **disadvantage** 1012.6

3 **fine,** monetary *or* financial penalty, mulct, amercement, sconce, **damages,** punitive damages, compensatory damages; distress, distraint; forfeit, forfeiture; escheat, escheatment

VERBS 4 **penalize,** put *or* impose *or* inflict a penalty *or* sanctions on; **punish** 604.10; **handicap,** put at a disadvantage

5 **fine,** mulct, amerce, sconce, escheat; distrain, levy a distress; award damages

ADVS 6 **on pain of,** under *or* upon pain of, **on** *or* **under penalty of**

604 PUNISHMENT

NOUNS 1 **punishment,** punition, **chastisement, chastening, correction, discipline,** disciplinary measure *or* action, **castigation,** infliction, scourge, ferule, what-for <nf>; pains, pains and punishments; pay, payment; **retribution,** retributive justice, nemesis; judicial punishment; punishment that fits the crime, condign punishment, well-deserved punishment; **penalty,** penal retribution; penalization; penology; cruel and unusual punishment; judgment; what's coming to one, **just desserts, desserts**

2 <forms of punishment> penal servitude, jailing, imprisonment, incarceration, confinement; hard labor, rock pile, chain gang, labor camp; galleys; torture, torment, martyrdom; the gantlet, keelhauling, tar-and-feathering, railriding, picketing, the rack, impalement, dismemberment; walking the plank; house arrest; exile

3 **slap,** smack, whack, whomp, **cuff, box,** buffet, belt; blow 902.4; **rap on the knuckles,** box on the ear, slap in the face; slap on the wrist, token punishment

4 **corporal punishment, whipping, beating, thrashing, spanking, flogging,** paddling, flagellation, scourging, flailing, trouncing, basting, drubbing, buffeting, belaboring; **lashing, lacing,** stripes; horse-whipping, strapping, belting, rawhiding, cowhiding; **switching; clubbing,** cudgeling, caning, truncheoning, fustigation, bastinado; pistol-whipping; battery; dusting

5 <nf terms> **licking,** larruping, walloping, whaling, lathering, leathering, **hiding, tanning, dressing-down,** chewing out; **paddling,** swingeing; grounding

6 <old nf terms> strap oil, hazel oil, hickory oil, birch oil; dose of strap oil, etc

7 **capital punishment, execution;** legal *or* judicial murder, extreme penalty, death sentence *or* penalty *or* warrant; **hanging,** the gallows, the rope *or* noose; summary execution; **lynching,** necktie party *or* sociable <nf>, vigilanteism, vigilante justice; the necklace; **crucifixion,** impalement; **electrocution,** the chair <nf>, the hot seat <nf>; gassing, the gas chamber; lethal injection; **decapitation,** decollation, beheading, the guillotine, the ax, the block; **strangling,** strangulation, garrote; **shooting,** fusillade, firing squad; **burning,** burning at the stake; **poisoning,** hemlock; stoning, lapidation; drowning; defenestration

8 **punisher,** discipliner, chastiser, chastener; **executioner,** executionist, deathsman <old>, Jack Ketch <Brit>; **hangman; lyncher;** electrocutioner; headsman, **beheader,** decapitator; strangler, garroter; sadist, torturer; hatchet man, hit man <nf>

9 **penologist;** jailer 429.10

VERBS 10 **punish, chastise, chasten, discipline, correct, castigate, penalize, reprimand; take to task,** bring to book, bring *or* call to account; deal with, settle with, settle *or* square accounts, **give one his desserts** *or* **just desserts,** serve one right; inflict upon, visit upon; teach *or* give one a lesson, make an example of; pillory; masthead; reduce to the ranks

11 <nf terms> **attend to,** do for, take care of, serve one out, **give it to,** take *or* have it out of; pay, pay

out, **fix, settle,** fix one's wagon, settle one's hash, settle the score, give one his gruel, make it hot for one, **give one his comeuppance;** lower the boom, put one through the wringer, come down on *or* down hard on, throw the book at, throw to the wolves; **give what-for,** give a going-over, climb one's frame, let one have it, tell off, light into, lay into, land on, mop *or* wipe up the floor with, skin live, have one's hide

12 **slap,** smack, whack, thwack, whomp, **cuff, box,** buffet; strike 902.13; slap the face, box the ears, give a rap on the knuckles

13 **whip,** give a whipping *or* beating *or* thrashing, **beat, thrash, spank, flog,** scourge, flagellate, flay, flail, whale; **smite,** thump, trounce, baste, **pummel,** pommel, **drub, buffet, belabor,** lay on; **lash, lace,** cut, stripe; horsewhip; knout; **strap,** belt, rawhide, cowhide; **switch,** birch, give the stick; **club, cudgel,** cane, truncheon, fustigate, bastinado; pistol-whip

14 **thrash soundly, batter,** bruise

15 <nf terms> **beat up,** rough up, clobber, marmelize <Brit>, work over, lick, larrup, wallop, whop, swinge, beat one's brains out, whale, whale the tar out of, beat *or* kick the shit out of, beat to a jelly, **beat black and blue, knock one's lights out, nail,** welt, trim, flax, lather, leather, **hide,** tan, **tan one's hide,** dress down, **kick ass,** give a dressing-down, knock head, knock heads together; **paddle; lambaste, clobber,** dust one's jacket, give a dose of birch oil *or* strap oil *or* hickory oil *or* hazel oil, take it out of one's hide *or* skin

16 **torture,** put to the question; rack, put on *or* to the rack; dismember, tear limb from limb; draw and quarter, break on the wheel, tar and feather, ride on a rail, picket, keelhaul, impale, grill, thumbscrew, persecute, work over

17 **execute, put to death,** inflict capital punishment; **electrocute,** burn *and* fry <nf>; send to the gas chamber; **behead, decapitate,** decollate, guillotine, bring to the block; **crucify; shoot,** execute by firing squad; burn, **burn at the stake; strangle,** garrote, bowstring; stone, lapidate; defenestrate; send to the hot seat <nf>

18 **hang,** hang by the neck; **string up** *and* scrag *and* stretch <nf>; gibbet, noose, neck, bring to the gallows; **lynch;** hang, draw, and quarter

19 **be hanged,** suffer hanging, **swing,** dance upon nothing, kick the air *or* wind *or* clouds

20 **be punished, suffer,** suffer for, **suffer the consequences** *or* **penalty,** get it *and* **catch it** <nf>, get *or* catch it in the neck <nf>, catch hell *or* the devil <nf>, get *or* take a licking *or* shellacking <nf>; **get one's desserts** *or* **just desserts** 639.6; get it coming and going <nf>, be doubly punished, sow the wind and reap the whirlwind; get hurt, get one's fingers burned, have *or* get one's knuckles rapped

21 **take one's punishment,** bow one's neck, take the consequences, **take one's medicine** *or* what is coming to one, swallow the bitter pill *or* one's medicine, pay the piper, face the music <nf>, stand up to it, make one's bed and lie on it, get what one is asking for; take the rap <nf>, take the fall <nf>

22 **deserve punishment, have it coming** <nf>, be for it *or* in for it, be heading for a fall, be cruising for a bruising <nf>

ADJS **23** **punishing, chastising,** chastening, corrective, disciplinary, correctional; retributive; grueling <nf>; **penal, punitive,** punitory, inflictive; castigatory; baculine; penological; capital; corporal

605 INSTRUMENTS OF PUNISHMENT

NOUNS **1** **whip, lash, scourge,** flagellum, strap, thong, rawhide, cowhide, blacksnake, kurbash, sjambok, belt, razor strap; knout; bullwhip, bullwhack; horsewhip; crop; quirt; rope's end; cat, cat-o'-nine-tails; whiplash

2 **rod, stick, switch; paddle,** ruler, ferule, pandybat; birch, rattan; cane; club

3 <devices> **pillory, stocks,** finger pillory; cucking stool, ducking stool, trebuchet; whipping post, branks, triangle *or* triangles, wooden horse, treadmill, crank

4 <instruments of torture> **rack,** wheel, Iron Maiden of Nuremberg; screw, thumbscrew; boot, iron heel, scarpines; Procrustean bed *or* bed of Procrustes

5 <instruments of execution> **scaffold; block, guillotine,** ax, maiden; **stake; cross; gallows,** gallows-tree, gibbet, tree, drop; **hangman's rope, noose,** rope, halter, hemp, hempen collar *or* necktie *or* bridle <nf>; **electric chair,** death chair, the chair <nf>, hot seat <nf>; **gas chamber,** lethal chamber, death chamber; the necklace

606 THE PEOPLE

<the population>

NOUNS **1** **the people, the populace, the public,** the general public, people in general, everyone, everybody; **the population,** the citizenry, the whole people, the polity, the body politic; **the community, the commonwealth, society,** the society, the social order *or* fabric, the nation; the commonalty *or* commonality, commonage, commoners, commons, *demos* <Gk>; **common people, ordinary people** *or* **folk, persons, folk, folks,** gentry; the common sort, plain people *or* folks, the common run <nf>, the rank and file, the boy *or* girl next door, Brown Jones and Robinson, John Q Public, Middle America; Tom, Dick, and Harry; the salt of the earth, Everyman, Everywoman, the man *or* woman in the street, the common man, you and me, John Doe, Joe Sixpack <nf>, *vulgus* <L>, the third estate; **the upper class; the middle class; the lower class**; demography, demographics; social anthropology

2 **the masses, the hoi polloi,** *hoi polloi* <Gk>, the many, **the multitude,** the crowd, **the mob,** the horde, the million, "the booboisie"—H L Mencken, **the majority,** the mass of the people, the herd, the great unnumbered, the great unwashed, **the vulgar** *or* **common herd,** vulgar masses; *profanum vulgus* and *ignobile vulgus* and *mobile vulgus* <L>; "the beast with many heads," "the blunt monster with uncounted heads, the still-discordant wavering multitude"—both Shakespeare

3 **rabble,** rabblement, rout, ruck, common ruck, canaille, *racaille* <Fr>, ragtag <nf>, **ragtag and bobtail;** rag, tag, and bobtail; **riffraff, trash,** raff, chaff, **rubbish,** dregs, sordes, offscourings, offscum, **scum, scum of the earth, dregs** *or* **scum** *or* **off-scum** *or* **offscourings of society,** swinish multitude, vermin, cattle

4 **the underprivileged,** the disadvantaged, the poor, ghetto-dwellers, slum-dwellers, welfare cases, chronic poor, underclass, depressed class, poverty subculture, the wretched of the earth, outcasts, the homeless, the dispossessed, bag people, the powerless, the unemployable, lumpen, the lumpenproletariat *or* lumpenprole <nf>, lower orders, second-class citizens, the have-nots, small potatoes

5 **common man, commoner,** little man, **little fellow, average man,** ordinary man, typical man, **man in the street,** one of the people, man of the people, regular guy, Everyman; **plebeian,** pleb <slang>; **proletarian,** prole <Brit nf>, *roturier* <Fr>; ordinary *or* average Joe *and* Joe Doakes *and* Joe Sixpack <nf>, John Doe, Jane Doe, John Smith, Mr *or* Mrs Brown *or* Smith, Joe Blow, John Q Public, Mr Nobody; bourgeois

6 **peasant, countryman,** countrywoman, **provincial,** son of the soil, tiller of the soil; **peon,** hind, fellah, muzhik, serf, villein, churl; "hewers of wood and drawers of water"—Bible; **farmer** 1069.5, **hick** *and* yokel *and* rube *and* hayseed *and* shit-kicker <nf>, **bumpkin,** country bumpkin, rustic, clod, **clodhopper** <nf>, hillbilly *and* woodhick <nf>, **boor,** clown, lout, looby

7 **upstart, parvenu,** adventurer, sprout <nf>; *bourgeois gentilhomme* <Fr>, would-be gentleman; *nouveau riche* and *nouveau roturier* <Fr>, *arriviste* <Fr>, **newly-rich,** pig in clover <nf>; **social climber,** climber, name-dropper, tufthunter, status seeker

ADJS 8 **populational,** population; **demographic,** demographical; national, societal; **popular,** public, mass, grass-roots, cultural, **common,** common as dirt, commonplace, communal, folk, tribal, **plain, ordinary, lowly,** low, mean, base; **humble,** homely; rank-and-file, provincial, of the people; second-class, **lowborn,** lowbred, baseborn, earthborn, earthy, of humble birth, plebeian; third-estate; ungenteel, shabby-genteel, uncultured; **vulgar, rude,** coarse, below the salt; **parvenu, upstart,** risen from the ranks, jumped-up <nf>; newly rich, *nouveau-riche* <Fr>; non-U <Brit>

607 SOCIAL CLASS AND STATUS

NOUNS 1 **class, social class, economic class,** social group *or* grouping, status group, accorded status, social category, order, grade, caste, estate, rank; **status, social status, economic status,** socioeconomic status *or* background, standing, footing, prestige, rank, ranking, place, station, position, level, degree, stratum; **social structure, hierarchy,** pecking order, social stratification, social system, social gamut, social differentiation, social pyramid, class structure, class distinction, status system, power structure, ranking, stratification, ordering, social scale, gradation, division, social inequality, inequality, haves and have-nots, "the classes and the masses"—William Ewart Gladstone; **social bias, class conflict,** class identity, class difference, class prejudice, class struggle, class politics; ageism; **mobility, social mobility,** upward mobility, downward mobility, vertical mobility, horizontal mobility

2 **upper class, upper classes, aristocracy,** patriciate, second estate, ruling class, ruling circles, elite, elect, the privileged, the classes, the quality, the better sort, upper circles, upper cut *and* upper crust *and* crust *and* cream <nf>, upper-income group *or* higher-income group, gentry, gentlefolk, lords of creation; **high society,** high life, the Four Hundred, bon ton, *haut monde* <Fr>, First Families of Virginia *or* FFV; Social Register, Bluebook; nobility, gentry 608; status symbol

3 **aristocracy, aristocratic status,** aristocraticalness, aristocraticness, high status, high rank, quality, high estate, gentility, social distinction, social prestige; **birth,** high birth, distinguished ancestry *or* descent *or* heritage *or* blood, blue blood

4 **aristocrat, patrician,** Brahmin, blue-blood, thoroughbred, member of the upper class, socialite, swell *and* upper-cruster <nf>, grandee,

grand dame, dowager, magnifico, lord of creation; **gentleman, lady,** person of breeding; trophy wife <nf>

5 **middle class,** middle order *or* orders, lower middle class, upper middle class, bourgeoisie, educated class, professional class, middle-income group, white-collar workers, salaried workers; suburbia; Middle America, silent majority; white bread <nf>

6 **bourgeois,** member of the middle class, white-collar worker 726.2, salaried worker; pillar of society, solid citizen

7 **lower class, lower classes,** lower orders, plebeians, plebs, workers, working class, working people, proletariat, proles <Brit nf>, rank and file, grass roots, laboring class *or* classes, toilers, toiling class *or* classes, the other half, low-income group, wage-earners, hourly worker, blue-collar workers

8 **the underclass, the underprivileged**

9 **worker** 726.2, **workman, working man, working woman,** working girl, proletarian, laborer, laboring man, toiler, stiff *and* working stiff <nf>, artisan, mechanic, industrial worker, factory worker

ADJS **10** **upper-class, aristocratic, patrician, upscale;** gentle, genteel, of gentle blood; gentlemanly, gentlemanlike; ladylike, quite the lady; **wellborn, well-bred, blue-blooded,** of good breed; **thoroughbred,** purebred, pure-blooded, *pur sang* <Fr>, full-blooded; **highborn,** highbred; born to the purple, "to the manner born"—Shakespeare, born with a silver spoon in one's mouth; **high-society,** socialite, hoity-toity <nf>, posh; **middle-class, bourgeois,** *petit-bourgeois* <Fr>, petty-bourgeois, suburban, white-bread <nf>; **working class, blue collar,** proletarian, lower-class, born on the wrong side of the tracks; **class-conscious; mobile, socially mobile,** upwardly mobile, downwardly mobile, vertically mobile, horizontally mobile, déclassé

608 ARISTOCRACY, NOBILITY, GENTRY

<noble rank or birth>

NOUNS **1** **aristocracy, nobility,** titled aristocracy, hereditary nobility, noblesse; **royalty; elite,** upper class, elect, the classes, **upper classes** *or* circles, upper cut *and* **upper crust** <nf>, upper ten <Brit nf>, **upper ten thousand,** the Four Hundred, Social Register <trademark>, high society, high life, *haut monde* <Fr>; old nobility, *ancienne noblesse* <Fr>, *noblesse de robe* and *noblesse d'épée* <Fr>, *ancien régime* <Fr>; First Families of Virginia *or* FFV; **peerage,** baronage, lords temporal and spiritual; baronetage; knightage, chivalry; gentlefolk, beau monde, jet set

2 **nobility, nobleness, aristocracy,** aristocraticalness; **gentility,** genteelness; quality, rank, virtue, distinction; birth, high *or* noble birth, ancestry, high *or* honorable descent; lineage, pedigree; blood, **blue blood;** royalty 417.8

3 **gentry,** gentlefolk, gentlefolks, gentlepeople, better sort; lesser nobility, *petite noblesse* <Fr>; *samurai* <Japanese>; landed gentry, squirearchy

4 **nobleman, noble, gentleman; peer; aristocrat, patrician,** Brahman, **blue blood,** titled person, thoroughbred, silk-stocking, lace-curtain, swell *and* upper-cruster <nf>, life peer; **grandee,** magnifico, magnate, optimate; **lord,** laird <Scot>, lordling; seignior, seigneur, *hidalgo* <Sp>; **duke,** grand duke, archduke, marquis, **earl, count,** viscount, **baron,** daimio, **baronet;** squire; esquire, armiger; palsgrave, waldgrave, margrave, landgrave; jet-setter, patrician

5 **knight, cavalier,** chevalier, *caballero* <Sp>, *Ritter* <Ger>; **knight-errant,** knight-adventurer; companion; bachelor, knight bachelor; baronet, knight baronet; banneret, knight banneret; Bayard, Gawain, Lancelot, Sidney, Sir Galahad, Don Quixote

6 **noblewoman, peeress, gentlewoman; lady,** dame, *doña* <Sp>, khanum; **duchess,** grand duchess, archduchess, marchioness, marquise, viscountess, **countess, baroness,** margravine

7 **prince,** *Prinz* and *Fürst* <Ger>, *knez, atheling, sheikh, sherif, mirza, khan, emir, shahzada* <India>; princeling, princelet; crown prince, heir apparent; heir presumptive; prince consort; prince regent; **king;** princes of India; Muslim rulers 575.10

8 **princess,** *princesse* <Fr>, *infanta* <Sp>, *rani* and *maharani* and *begum* and *shahzadi* and *kumari* or *kunwari* and *raj-kumari* and *malikzadi* <India>; crown princess; **queen** 575.11

9 <rank or office> lordship, ladyship; dukedom, marquisate, earldom, barony, baronetcy; viscountship, viscountcy, viscounty; knighthood, knight-errantship; seigniory, seigneury, seignioralty; pashaship, pashadom; peerage; princeship, princedom; kingship, queenship 417.8

ADJS **10** **noble,** ennobled, titled, of rank, high, exalted; **aristocratic, patrician; gentle,** genteel, of gentle blood; gentlemanly, gentlemanlike; ladylike, quite the lady; knightly, chivalrous; ducal, archducal; princely, princelike; **regal** 417.17, kingly, kinglike, "every inch a king"—Shakespeare; queenly, queenlike; titled

11 **wellborn, well-bred, blue-blooded,** well-connected, of good breed; **thoroughbred,** purebred, pure-blooded, *pur sang* <Fr>, full-blooded; **highborn,** highbred; born to the purple, high-caste, of good family; classy <nf>, U <Brit>

609 POLITICS

NOUNS 1 **politics,** polity, the art of the possible; practical politics, *Realpolitik* <Ger>; empirical politics; **party** *or* **partisan politics, partisanism; politicization;** reform politics; multiparty politics; power politics, *Machtpolitik* <Ger>; machine politics, bossism <nf>, Tammany Hall, Tammanism <nf>; confrontation *or* confrontational *or* confro politics; **interest politics,** single-issue politics, interest-group politics, pressure-group politics, PAC *or* political action committee politics; consensus politics; fusion politics; career politics; petty politics, peanut politics <nf>; pork-barrel politics; kid-glove politics <nf>; silk-stocking politics <nf>; ward politics; electronic *or* technological politics; public affairs, civic affairs

2 **political science,** poli-sci <nf>, **politics, government, civics;** political philosophy, political theory; political behavior; political economy, comparative government, international relations, public administration; political geography, geopolitics, *Geopolitik* <Ger>

3 **statesmanship, statecraft,** political *or* governmental leadership, national leadership; transpartisan *or* suprapartisan leadership; kingcraft, queencraft; senatorship

4 **policy, polity,** public policy; line, **party line,** party principle *or* doctrine *or* philosophy, **position,** bipartisan policy; noninterference, nonintervention, *laissez-faire* <Fr>, laissez-faireism; free enterprise; go-slow policy; government control, governmentalism; planned economy, managed currency, price supports, pump-priming <nf>; autarky, economic self-sufficiency; free trade; protection, protectionism; bimetallism; strict constructionism; localism, sectionalism, states' rights, nullification; political correctness

5 **foreign policy, foreign affairs;** world politics; **diplomacy,** diplomatic *or* diplomatics <old>; shirt-sleeve diplomacy; shuttle diplomacy; dollar diplomacy, dollar imperialism; gunboat diplomacy; brinkmanship; **nationalism, internationalism;** expansionism, imperialism, manifest destiny, colonialism, neocolonialism; spheres of influence; balance of power; containment; deterrence; militarism, preparedness; tough policy, the big stick <nf>, twisting the lion's tail; brinksmanship; nonresistance, isolationism, neutralism, coexistence, peaceful coexistence; détente; compromise, appeasement; peace offensive; good-neighbor policy; open-door policy, open door; Monroe Doctrine; Truman Doctrine; Eisenhower Doctrine; Nixon Doctrine

6 **program;** Square Deal <Theodore Roosevelt>, New Deal <Franklin D Roosevelt>, Fair Deal <Harry S Truman>, New Frontier <John F Kennedy>, Great Society <Lyndon B Johnson>; austerity program; Beveridge Plan <Brit>; Thatcherism <Brit>

7 **platform,** party platform, **program,** declaration of policy; **plank; issue;** keynote address, keynote speech; position paper

8 **political convention, convention;** conclave, powwow <nf>; national convention, quadrennial circus <nf>; state convention, county convention, preliminary convention, nominating convention; constitutional convention

9 **caucus,** legislative *or* congressional caucus, packed caucus; secret caucus

10 **candidacy,** candidature <chiefly Brit>, **running, running for office,** throwing *or* tossing one's hat in the ring <nf>, standing *or* standing for office <Brit>

11 **nomination,** caucus nomination, direct nomination, petition nomination; acceptance speech

12 **electioneering,** campaigning, politicking <nf>, **stumping** *and* **whistle-stopping** <nf>; **rally,** clambake <nf>; campaign dinner, fund-raising dinner

13 **campaign,** all-out campaign, hard-hitting campaign, hoopla *or* hurrah campaign <nf>; **canvass, solicitation;** front-porch campaign; grass-roots campaign; stump excursion *and* stumping tour *and* whistle-stop campaign <nf>; TV *or* media campaign; campaign commitments *or* promises; campaign fund, campaign contribution; campaign button

14 **smear campaign,** mudslinging campaign, negative campaign; **whispering campaign;** muckraking, **mudslinging** *and* **dirty politics** *and* **dirty tricks** *and* dirty pool <nf>, character assassination; political canard, roorback; last-minute lie

15 **election,** general election, by-election; congressional election, presidential election; partisan election, nonpartisan election; **primary,** primary election; direct primary, open primary, closed primary, nonpartisan primary, mandatory primary, optional primary, preference primary, presidential primary, presidential preference primary, runoff primary; caucus 609.9; runoff, runoff election; disputed *or* contested election; referendum; close election, horse race *and* toss-up <nf>

16 **election district, precinct, ward, borough;** congressional district; safe district; swing district <nf>; close borough *and* pocket borough *and* rotten borough <Brit>; gerrymander,

gerrymandered district, shoestring district; silk-stocking district *or* ward; single-member district *or* constituency; body politic

17 **suffrage, franchise, the vote,** right to vote; universal suffrage, manhood suffrage, woman *or* female suffrage; suffragism, suffragettism; suffragist, woman-suffragist, suffragette; household franchise; one man one vote

18 **voting,** going to the polls, casting one's ballot; preferential voting, preferential system, alternative vote; proportional representation *or* PR, cumulative system *or* voting, Hare system, list system; single system *or* voting, single transferrable vote; plural system *or* voting; single-member district 609.16; absentee voting; proxy voting, card voting; voting machine; election fraud, colonization, floating, repeating, ballot-box stuffing; **vote** 371.6

19 **ballot, slate, ticket,** proxy <nf>; straight ticket, split ticket; Australian ballot; office-block ballot; Indiana ballot, party-column ballot; absentee ballot; long ballot, blanket ballot, jungle ballot <nf>; short ballot; nonpartisan ballot; sample ballot; party emblem

20 **polls,** poll, polling place, polling station <Brit>, balloting place; voting booth, polling booth; ballot box; voting machine; pollbook

21 **returns,** election returns, **poll,** count, official count; **recount;** landslide, tidal wave

22 **electorate,** electors; **constituency,** constituents; electoral college

23 **voter, elector, balloter;** registered voter; fraudulent voter, floater, repeater, ballot-box stuffer; proxy

24 **political party** <see list>, **party,** major party, minor party, third party, splinter party; party in power, opposition party, loyal opposition; **faction, camp; machine,** political *or* party machine, Tammany Hall; city hall; one-party system, two-party system, multiple party system, multiparty system; right, left, center; popular front; bloc, coalition

25 **partisanism,** partisanship, partisanry; Republicanism; Conservatism, Toryism; Liberalism; Whiggism, Whiggery

26 **nonpartisanism, independence,** neutralism; mugwumpery, mugwumpism

27 **partisan, party member,** party man *or* woman; regular, stalwart, loyalist; wheelhorse, party wheelhorse; heeler, ward heeler, **party hack;** party faithful

28 **nonpartisan, independent, neutral, mugwump,** undecided *or* uncommitted voter, centrist; swing vote

29 **political influence, wire-pulling** <nf>; **social pressure, public opinion, special-interest pressure,** group pressure; **influence peddling; lobbying,** lobbyism; **logrolling,** back scratching

30 **wire-puller** <nf>; **influence peddler,** four-percenter, power broker, fixer <nf>, five-percenter <nf>; logroller

31 **pressure group,** interest group, special-interest group, political action committee *or* PAC, single-issue group; **special interest;** vested interest; financial interests, farm interests, labor interests, etc; minority interests, ethnic vote, black vote, Jewish vote, Italian vote, etc; **Black Power,** White Power, Polish Power, etc

32 **lobby,** legislative lobby, special-interest lobby; **lobbyist,** registered lobbyist, lobbyer, parliamentary agent <Brit>

33 **front, movement,** coalition, political front; popular front, people's front, communist front, etc; grass-roots movement, ground swell, the silent majority

34 <political corruption> **graft,** boodling <nf>, jobbery; pork-barrel legislation *or* pork-barreling; political intrigue

35 **spoils of office; graft,** boodle <nf>; slush fund <nf>; campaign fund, campaign contribution; public tit *and* public trough <nf>; spoils system; cronyism, nepotism

36 **political patronage, patronage, favors of office, pork** *and* **pork barrel** <nf>, plum, melon <nf>

37 **political** *or* **official jargon; officialese** *and* federalese *and* Washingtonese *and* gobbledygook <nf>; bafflegab <nf>; political doubletalk, doublespeak, bunkum <nf>; pussyfooting; pointing with pride and viewing with alarm; new world order

VERBS 38 **politick** <nf>, politicize; look after one's fences *and* mend one's fences <nf>; caucus; gerrymander, lobby

39 **run for office,** run; **throw** *or* **toss one's hat in the ring** <nf>, go into politics, announce for, enter the lists *or* arena, stand *and* stand for office <Brit>; contest a seat <Brit>

40 **electioneer, campaign; stump** *and* take the stump *and* take to the stump *and* stump the country *and* take to the hustings *and* hit the campaign trail *and* **whistle-stop** <nf>; **canvass,** go to the voters *or* electorate, solicit votes, ring doorbells; shake hands and kiss babies

41 **support, back** *and* **back up** <nf>, come out for, **endorse;** go with the party, follow the party line; **get on the bandwagon** <nf>; **nominate, elect, vote** 371.18,20

42 **hold office,** hold *or* occupy a post, fill an office, be the incumbent, be in office, be elected, be voted in

ADJS 43 **political,** politic; governmental, civic; geopolitical; statesmanlike; diplomatic; suffragist; politico-commercial, politico-diplomatic, politico-ecclesiastical, politico-economic, politico-ethical, politico-geographical, politico-judicial, politico-military, politico-moral, politico-religious, politico-scientific, politico-social, politico-theological; politically correct

44 **partisan, party;** bipartisan, biparty, two-party

45 **nonpartisan, independent,** neutral, mugwumpian *and* mugwumpish <nf>, **on the fence**

WORD ELEMENT 46 politico-

47 **political parties**

American Labor Party
American Party *or* Know-Nothing Party
Anti-Masonic Party
Anti-Monopoly Party
Bull Moose Party
Citizens Party <US>
Communist Party
Conservative Party
Conservative Union Party <Can>
Constitutional Union Party
Democratic Party <US>
Democratic-Republican Party
Farmer-Labor Party
Federalist Party <US>
Fianna Fail <Ir>
Fine Gael <Ir>
Free Soil Party
Green Party
Greenback Party
Labour Party <Brit>
Liberal Democrat Party <Brit>
Liberal Party
Liberal Republican Party
Libertarian Party <US>
Militant Tendency <Brit>
National Republican Party
National Front <Brit>
New Alliance Party <US>
New Democratic Party <Can>
People's *or* Populist Party
Plaid Cymru <Wales>
Populist/America First Party <US>
Progressive Party
Progressive Conservative Party <US>
Progressive Democrat Party <Ir>
Prohibition Party
Republican Party *or* GOP *or* Grand Old Party <US>
Scottish National Party
Sinn Fein <N Ir>
Social and Liberal Democratic Party <Brit>
Social Democratic and Labour Party <N Ir>
Social Democratic Party *or* SDP <Brit>
Socialist Labor Party <US>
Socialist Party
Socialist Workers Party
States' Rights Democratic Party *or* Dixiecrats <US>
Tory Party <Brit>
Ulster Democratic Unionist Party <N Ir>
US Labor Party
Whig Party

610 POLITICIAN

NOUNS 1 **politician,** politico, political leader, professional politician; party leader, party boss *and* party chieftain <nf>; machine *or* clubhouse politician, **political hack,** Tammany man <old>; **pol** <nf>; old campaigner, war-horse; wheelhorse; reform politician, reformer, advocate

2 **statesman, stateswoman,** statesperson, solon, public man *or* woman, national leader; elder statesman; ruler; governor, executive, administrator, leader; president, vice president; prime minister, premier

3 **legislator, lawmaker,** legislatrix, solon, lawgiver; **congressman,** congresswoman, Member of Congress; **senator; representative;** Speaker of the House; majority leader, minority leader; floor leader; whip, party whip; Member of Parliament *or* MP; state senator, assemblyman, assemblywoman, chosen, freeholder, councilman, alderman, city father

4 <petty politician> **two-bit** *or* **peanut politician** <nf>, politicaster, statemonger <old>, political dabbler; **hack, party hack**

5 <corrupt politician> **dirty** *or* **crooked politician** *and* jackleg politician <nf>; **grafter,** boodler <nf>; spoilsman, spoilsmonger; influence peddler 609.30

6 <political intriguer> strategist, machinator, gamesman, wheeler-dealer <nf>; operator *and* finagler *and* **wire-puller** <nf>; **logroller,** pork-barrel politician; Machiavellian; behind-the-scenes operator, gray eminence, *éminence grise* <Fr>, power behind the throne, kingmaker <nf>, **powerbroker** 894.6

7 <political leader> **boss** <nf>, higher-up *or* man higher up <nf>, cacique *and* sachem <old>; keynoter <nf>, policy maker; standard-bearer; ringleader 375.11; **big shot** <nf> 997.9

8 **henchman,** cohort, hanger-on, buddy *and* sidekick <nf>; heeler *and* **ward heeler** <nf>; hatchet man

9 **candidate, aspirant,** hopeful *and* political hopeful *and* wannabee <nf>, office seeker *or* hunter, baby kisser <nf>; running mate; leading candidate, head of the ticket *or* slate; **dark horse;** stalking-horse; favorite son; presidential timber; defeated candidate, also-ran *and* dud <nf>

10 **campaigner,** electioneer, **stumper** <nf>, whistle-stopper <nf>, stump speaker *or* orator <nf>

11 **officeholder,** office-bearer <Brit>, jack-in-office, elected official, public servant, public official, **incumbent;** holdover, lame duck; new broom <nf>; president-elect; ins, the powers that be

12 **political worker, committeeman,** committeewoman, precinct captain, precinct leader, district leader; party chairperson, state chairperson, national chairperson, chairperson of the national committee; political philosopher

VERBS 13 go into politics; **run,** get on the ticket; **campaign,** stump

ADJS 14 **statesmanlike,** statesmanly

611 POLITICO-ECONOMIC PRINCIPLES

NOUNS 1 **conservatism, conservativeness, rightism;** standpattism <nf>, unprogressiveness, backwardness; **ultraconservatism, reaction,** arch-conservative, reactionism, reactionarism, reactionaryism, reactionariness, die-hardism <nf>

2 **moderatism, moderateness,** middle-of-the-roadism; middle of the road, moderate position, via media, **center,** centrism; third force, nonalignment

3 **liberalism, progressivism, leftism; left, left wing,** progressiveness

4 **radicalism, extremism,** ultraism; radicalization; revolutionism; ultraconservatism 611.1; extreme left, extreme left wing, left-wing extremism, loony left <Brit nf>; New Left, Old Left; Jacobinism, sansculottism, *sans-culotterie* <Fr>; **anarchism, nihilism,** syndicalism *and* anarcho-syndicalism *and* criminal syndicalism <old>; extreme rightism, radical rightism, know-nothingism; extreme right, extreme right wing; social Darwinism; laissez-faireism 329.1; **royalism, monarchism;** Toryism, Bourbonism

5 **communism, Bolshevism, Marxism,** Marxism-Leninism, Leninism, Trotskyism, Stalinism, Maoism, Titoism, Castroism, revisionism; Marxian socialism; dialectical materialism; democratic centralism; dictatorship of the proletariat; **Communist Party;** Communist International, Comintern; Communist Information Bureau, Cominform; iron curtain 1012.5

6 **socialism,** collective ownership, collectivization, public ownership; **collectivism;** creeping socialism; state socialism, *Staatsozialismus* <Ger>; guild socialism; Fabian socialism, Fabianism; utopian socialism; Marxian socialism, Marxism 611.5; phalansterism; Owenism; Saint-Simonianism, Saint-Simonism; **nationalization**

7 **welfarism,** welfare statism; womb-to-tomb security, cradle-to-grave security; social welfare; social security, social insurance; old-age and survivors insurance; unemployment compensation, unemployment insurance; workmen's compensation, workmen's compensation insurance; health insurance, Medicare, Medicaid, state medicine, **socialized medicine;** sickness insurance; public assistance, **welfare, relief,** welfare payments, aid to dependent children *or* ADC, old-age assistance, aid to the blind, aid to the permanently and totally disabled; guaranteed income, guaranteed annual income; welfare state; welfare capitalism

8 **capitalism,** capitalistic system, **free enterprise,** private enterprise, free-enterprise economy, free-enterprise system, free economy; finance capitalism; *laissez-faire* <Fr>, laissez-faireism; private sector; private ownership; state capitalism; **individualism,** rugged individualism

9 **conservative,** conservatist, **rightist, rightwinger;** dry <Brit nf>, "the leftover progressive of an earlier generation" —Edmund Fuller; standpat *and* standpatter <nf>; hard hat; social Darwinist; ultraconservative, arch-conservative, extreme right-winger, **reactionary,** reactionarist, reactionist, diehard; **royalist, monarchist,** Bourbon, Tory, imperialist; **right, right wing; radical right**

10 **moderate,** moderatist, moderationist, **centrist,** middle-of-the-roader <nf>; independent; center

11 **liberal,** liberalist, wet <Brit nf>, **progressive,** progressivist, **leftist, left-winger;** welfare stater; Lib-Lab <Brit nf>; **left**

12 **radical, extremist,** ultra, ultraist; **revolutionary,** revolutionist; subversive; extreme left-winger, left-wing extremist, **red** <nf>, Bolshevik; yippie; Jacobin, sansculotte; **anarchist,** nihilist; mild radical, parlor Bolshevik <nf>, pink *and* parlor pink *and* pinko <nf>; lunatic fringe

13 **Communist,** Bolshevist; Bolshevik, **Red** *and* commie *and* bolshie <nf>; Marxist, Leninist, Marxist-Leninist, Trotskyite *or* Trotskyist, Stalinist, Maoist, Titoist, Castroite, revisionist; card-carrying Communist, avowed Communist; fellow traveler, Communist sympathizer, comsymp <nf>

14 **socialist,** collectivist; social democrat; state socialist; Fabian, Fabian socialist; Marxist 611.13; utopian socialist; Fourierist, phalansterian; Saint-Simonian; Owenite

15 **capitalist;** coupon-clipper <nf>; rich man 618.7

VERBS 16 **politicize;** democratize, republicanize, socialize, communize; nationalize 476.7; deregulate, privatize, denationalize; radicalize

ADJS 17 **conservative, right-wing,** right of center, dry <Brit nf>; old-line, die-hard, unreconstructed, standpat <nf>, unprogressive, nonprogressive; ultraconservative, **reactionary,** reactionist

18 **moderate,** centrist, middle-of-the-road <nf>, independent

19 **liberal, liberalistic,** liberalist, wet <Brit nf>, bleeding-heart <nf>; **progressive,** progressivistic; **leftist, left-wing,** on the left, left of center

20 **radical, extreme, extremist,** extremistic, ultraist, ultraistic; revolutionary, revolutionist; subversive; ultraconservative 611.17; extreme left-wing, **red** <nf>; anarchistic, nihilistic, syndicalist *and* anarcho-syndicalist <old>; mildly radical, pink <nf>

21 **Communist, communistic,** Bolshevik, Bolshevist, commie *and* bolshie *and* Red <nf>; **Marxist,** Leninist, Marxist-Leninist, Trotskyite *or* Trotskyist, Stalinist, Maoist, Titoist, Castroite; revisionist

22 **socialist, socialistic,** collectivistic; social-democratic; Fabian; Fourieristic, phalansterian; Saint-Simonian

23 **capitalist, capitalistic,** bourgeois, individualistic, nonsocialistic, free-enterprise, private-enterprise

612 GOVERNMENT

NOUNS 1 **government,** governance, **discipline, regulation; direction, management, administration,** dispensation, disposition, oversight, **supervision** 573.2; **regime,** regimen; **rule, sway, sovereignty, reign,** regnancy, regency; empire, empery, dominion, dynasty, regime, regimen; social order, civil government, political government, political system; form *or* system of government, political organization, polity, political party; local government, state government, national government, world government, international government

2 **control, mastery, mastership, command, power, jurisdiction, dominion, domination; hold, grasp,** grip, gripe, command; hand, hands, iron hand, clutches; talons, claws; helm, reins of government

3 **the government, the authorities; the powers that be,** national government, central government, the Establishment; the corridors of power, government circles; Uncle Sam, Washington; John Bull, the Crown, His *or* Her Majesty's Government, Whitehall

4 <kinds of government> **federal government,** federation, federalism; **constitutional government,** majority rule; **republic,** commonwealth; **democracy,** representative government, representative democracy, direct *or* pure democracy, town-meeting democracy; "government of the people, by the people, for the people"—Lincoln, "the worst form of government except all those other forms that have been tried from time to time"—Winston Churchill, "the recurrent suspicion that more than half of the people are right more than half of the time" —E B White; **parliamentary government;** social democracy, welfare state; mob rule, tyranny of the majority, mobocracy <nf>, ochlocracy; minority government; pantisocracy; aristocracy, hierarchy, oligarchy, elitism, plutocracy, minority rule; feudal system; monarchy, monarchical government, absolute monarchy, constitutional monarchy, limited monarchy, kingship, queenship; dictatorship, tyranny, autocracy, autarchy; dyarchy, duarchy, duumvirate; triarchy, triumvirate; **totalitarian government** *or* regime, totalitarianism, police state, despotism; **fascism, communism;** stratocracy, demagogy, **military government,** militarism, garrison state; martial law, rule of the sword; regency; hierocracy, theocracy, thearchy; patriarchy, patriarchate; gerontocracy; technocracy, meritocracy; **autonomy, self-government,** autarchy, self-rule, self-determination, home rule; heteronomy, dominion rule, colonial government, colonialism, neocolonialism; provisional government; coalition government; tribalism, tribal system, clan system; isocracy, egalitarianism; caretaker government, interregnum, provisional government, coalition government

5 <government by women> matriarchy, matriarchate, gynarchy, gynocracy, gynecocracy; petticoat government

6 <nf terms> foolocracy, gunocracy, mediocracy, moneyocracy, landocracy, cottonocracy, beerocracy, oiligarchy, parsonarchy, pedantocracy, pornocracy, snobocracy, squirearchy

7 **supranational government,** supergovernment, **world government,** World Federalism; League of Nations, United Nations 614

8 <principles of government> democratism, power-sharing, republicanism; constitutionalism, rule of law, parliamentarism, parliamentarianism; monarchism, royalism; feudalism, feudality; imperialism; fascism, neofascism, Nazism, national socialism; statism, governmentalism; collectivism, communism 611.5, socialism 611.6; federalism; centralism; pluralism; political principles 611; glasnost

9 **absolutism, dictatorship, despotism,** tyranny, autocracy, autarchy, monarchy, absolute monarchy; **authoritarianism;** totalitarianism; one-man rule, one-party rule; Caesarism, Stalinism, kaiserism, czarism; benevolent despotism, paternalism

10 **despotism, tyranny, fascism,** domineering, domination, oppression; heavy hand, high hand, iron hand, iron heel *or* boot; big stick, *argumentum baculinum* <L>; **terrorism,** reign of terror; thought control

11 **officialism, bureaucracy;** beadledom, bumbledom; **red-tapeism** *and* red-tapery *and* **red tape** <nf>; federalese, official jargon 609.37

VERBS 12 **govern, regulate; wield authority** 417.13; **command,** officer, captain, **head, lead,** be master, be at the head of, **preside over,** chair; **direct, manage, supervise, administer,** administrate 573.11; discipline; stand over

13 **control, hold in hand,** have in one's power, be in power, have power, gain a hold upon; hold the reins, hold the helm, call the shots *or* tune *and* be in the driver's seat *or* saddle <nf>; direct, have control of, **have under control, have in hand** *or* **well in hand;** be master of the situation, have it all one's own way, have the game in one's own hands, hold all the aces <nf>; pull the strings *or* wires

14 **rule, sway,** hold sway, **reign,** bear reign, have the sway, wield the scepter, wear the crown, sit on the throne; rule over, overrule

15 **dominate, predominate,** preponderate, prevail;

have the ascendancy, have the upper *or* **whip hand,** get under control, have on the hip <old>; **master,** have the mastery of; bestride; dictate, lay down the law; **rule the roost** *and* wear the pants *and* crack the whip *and* ride herd <nf>; take the lead, play first fiddle; **lead by the nose, twist** *or* **turn around one's little finger; keep under one's thumb,** bend to one's will

16 domineer, domineer over, **lord it over;** browbeat, order around, henpeck <nf>, intimidate, bully, cow, bulldoze <nf>, walk over, walk all over; castrate, unman; daunt, terrorize; **tyrannize,** tyrannize over, push *or* kick around <nf>, despotize; **grind,** grind down, break, **oppress,** suppress, repress, weigh *or* press heavy on; keep under, keep down, beat down, clamp down on <nf>; overbear, overmaster, overawe; override, ride over, trample *or* stamp *or* tread upon, trample *or* tread down, **trample** *or* **tread underfoot,** keep down, crush under an iron heel, **ride roughshod over;** hold *or* keep a tight hand upon, rule with a rod of iron, rule with an iron hand *or* fist; enslave, subjugate 432.8; compel, coerce 424.7

ADJS **17 governmental,** gubernatorial; **political, civil,** civic; **official,** bureaucratic, administrative; democratic, republican, fascist, fascistic, oligarchal, oligarchic, oligarchical, aristocratic, aristocratical, theocratic, **federal,** federalist, federalistic, **constitutional,** parliamentary, parliamentarian; monarchic *or* monarchical, monarchial, monarchal <old>; autocratic, monocratic, absolute; **authoritarian;** despotic, **dictatorial; totalitarian;** pluralistic; paternalistic, patriarchal, patriarchic, patriarchical; matriarchal, matriarchic, matriarchical; heteronomous; autonomous, self-governing, self-ruling, autarchic; executive, presidential; gubernatorial

18 governing, controlling, regulating, regulative, regulatory, **commanding; ruling, reigning, sovereign,** regnant, regnal, titular; **master, chief,** general, **boss, head; dominant, predominant,** predominate, preponderant, preponderate, prepotent, prepollent, prevalent, **leading, paramount, supreme,** number one <nf>, hegemonic, hegemonistic; ascendant, in the ascendant, in ascendancy; at the head, in chief; in charge 417.21

19 executive, administrative, ministerial; official, bureaucratic; **supervisory, directing, managing** 573.12

ADVS **20 under control, in hand,** well in hand; **in one's power,** under one's control

WORD ELEMENTS **21** -archy, -cracy, -ocracy

613 LEGISLATURE, GOVERNMENT ORGANIZATION

NOUNS **1 legislature** <see list>, legislative body; **parliament, congress, assembly,** general assembly, house of assembly, legislative assembly, **national assembly, chamber of deputies,** federal assembly, diet, soviet, court; unicameral legislature, bicameral legislature; legislative chamber, **upper chamber** *or* **house** <see list>, **lower chamber** *or* **house** <see list>; state legislature, state assembly; provincial legislature, provincial parliament; city council, city board, board of aldermen, common council, commission; representative town meeting, town meeting

2 United States Government, Federal Government; Cabinet <see list>; Executive Department, executive branch; government agency; legislature; Congress, Senate, Upper House, Senate committee; House of Representatives, House, Lower House, House of Representatives committee; Supreme Court

3 cabinet, ministry, British cabinet <see list>, **council,** advisory council, council of state, privy council, divan; shadow cabinet; kitchen cabinet, camarilla

4 capitol, statehouse; courthouse; city hall

5 legislation, lawmaking, legislature <old>; **enactment,** enaction, constitution, passage, passing; **resolution,** concurrent resolution, joint resolution; act 673.3

6 <legislative procedure> introduction, first reading, committee consideration, tabling, filing, second reading, deliberation, debate, third reading, **vote,** division, roll call; **filibustering,** filibuster, talkathon <nf>; cloture 857.5; **logrolling;** steamroller methods; guillotine <Brit>

7 veto, executive veto, absolute veto, qualified *or* limited veto, suspensive *or* suspensory veto, item veto, pocket veto; veto power; veto message; senatorial courtesy

8 referendum, constitutional referendum, statutory referendum, optional *or* facultative referendum, compulsory *or* mandatory referendum; **mandate; plebiscite,** plebiscitum; initiative, direct initiative, indirect initiative; recall

9 bill, omnibus bill, hold-up bill, companion bills amendment; **clause, proviso;** enacting clause, dragnet clause, escalator clause, saving clause; **rider;** joker <nf>; **calendar, motion;** question, previous question, privileged question

VERBS **10 legislate,** make *or* enact laws, **enact, pass,** constitute, ordain, put in force; **put through, jam** *or* **steamroller** *or* **railroad through** <nf>, lobby through; table, pigeonhole; take the floor, get the floor, have the floor; yield the floor; **filibuster; logroll,** roll logs; **veto, pocket, kill; decree** 420.8

ADJS **11 legislative,** legislatorial, lawmaking; deliberative; **parliamentary, congressional;** senatorial; bicameral, unicameral

12 legislatures

Althing <Iceland>
bicameral legislature <Bosnia and Herzegovina, Haiti, Kazakhstan, Russia>
Assembly of the Republic <Portugal>
Chamber of Deputies <Luxembourg>
Congress <Argentina, Colombia, Liberia, Mexico, Philippines, Uruguay, US, Venezuela>
Cortes <Spain>
Diet <Japan>
Eduskunta <Finland>
Federal Assembly <Switzerland, Yugoslavia>
Federal Parliament <Australia>
Folketing <Denmark>
Grand National Assembly <Turkey>
Great and General Council <San Marino>
Great People's Khural <Mongolia>
House of Assembly <Bahamas, Kiribati>
House of Representatives <Cyprus, Gambia, Malta, Sierra Leone>
Knesset <Israel>
Landtag <Liechtenstein>
Legislative Assembly <Costa Rica, Tonga>
National Assembly <Benin, Bhutan, Bulgaria, Cameroon, Cuba, El Salvador, Gabon, Guyana, Haiti, Hungary, Ivory Coast, Kenya, Kuwait, Macedonia, Malawi, Mauritius, Morocco, Nicaragua, Pakistan, Panama, Rwanda, Senegal, South Korea, Sri Lanka, Suriname, Tanzania, Tunisia, Uganda, Zambia>
National Congress <Bolivia, Brazil, Chile, Ecuador, Honduras, Micronesia>
National Council <Monaco>
Oireachtas <Ireland>
Parliament <Afghanistan, Algeria, Andorra, Austria, Azerbaijan, Barbados, Belgium, Botswana, Canada, Czech Republic, Estonia, Ethiopia, Fiji, France, Germany, Ghana, Greece, Guinea, India, Italy, Jamaica, Jordan, Malaysia, Maldives, Mali, Moldova, Nauru, Nepal, Netherlands, New Zealand, Palau, Papua New Guinea, Romania, Sierra Leone, Singapore, Slovakia, Slovenia, South Africa, Swaziland, Taiwan, Tajikistan, Trinidad and Tobago, Turkmenistan, Tuvalu, Ukraine, United Kingdom, Yemen, Zimbabwe>
People's Assembly <Albania, Egypt, Seychelles>
People's Consultative Assembly <Indonesia>
People's Council <Syria>
Riksdag <Sweden>
Sejm <Poland>
Storting <Norway>
Supreme Assembly <Uzbekistan>
Supreme Military Council <Equatorial Guinea>
Supreme People's Assembly <North Korea>
unicameral legislature <Comoros, Djibouti, Dominican Republic, Georgia, Guatemala, Guinea-Bissau, Namibia, Peru, United Arab Emirates, Vanuatu>

13 upper houses

Bundesrat <Austria, Germany>
Federation Council <Russia>
House of Councilors <Japan>
House of Lords <United Kingdom>
Lagting <Norway>
Rajya Sabha <India>
Standerat <Switzerland>
Senate <Australia, Barbados, Belgium, Brazil, Canada, Chile, Colombia, Czech Republic, Dominican Republic, Ecuador, Ethiopia, Fiji, France, Iran, Ireland, Italy, Jamaica, Liberia, Malagasy Republic, Malaysia, Mexico, Nicaragua, Paraguay, Philippines, Rhodesia, South Africa, Swaziland, Trinidad and Tobago, US, Venezuela>

14 lower houses

Bundestag <Germany>
Chamber of Deputies <Brazil, Chile, Czech Republic, Dominican Republic, Ecuador, Ethiopia, Italy, Jordan, Mexico, Nicaragua, Paraguay, Venezuela>
Chamber of Representatives <Belgium, Colombia>
Dáil Eireann <Ireland>
House of Assembly <Barbados, Rhodesia, South Africa, Swaziland>
House of Commons <Canada, United Kingdom>
House of Representatives <Australia, Fiji, Jamaica, Japan, Liberia, Malaysia, Philippines, US>
Lok Sabha <India>
National Assembly <France, Laos, Malagasy Republic, Portugal, Turkey>
Nationalrat <Austria>
Odelsting <Norway>
State Duma <Russia>

15 US Cabinet

Attorney General
Secretary of Agriculture
Secretary of Commerce
Secretary of Defense
Secretary of Education
Secretary of Energy
Secretary of Health and Human Services
Secretary of Housing and Urban Development
Secretary of Labor
Secretary of State
Secretary of the Interior
Secretary of the Treasury
Secretary of Transportation
Secretary of Veterans' Affairs

16 British Cabinet and Ministries

Chancellor of the Exchequer
Chief Secretary to the Treasury
Deputy Prime Minister
Chancellor of the Duchy of Lancaster
First Lord of the Admiralty
First Lord of the Treasury
First Secretary of State
Home Secretary <Home Office>
Lord Chancellor
Lord President of the Council
Lord Privy Seal
Minister of Agriculture, Fisheries, and Food
Minister of Defence
Minister of Housing and Local Government
Minister of Public Service and Science
Minister of State <Cabinet Office>
Minister of Technology

Minister of Transport
Paymaster-General
President of the Board of Education
President of the Board of Trade
Prime Minister
Secretary of State for Culture, Media and Sport
Secretary of State for Defence
Secretary of State for Economic Affairs
Secretary of State for Education and Science
Secretary of State for Education and Employment
Secretary of State for Environment
Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs
Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs
Secretary of State for Health
Secretary of State for National Heritage
Secretary of State for Northern Ireland
Secretary of State for Scotland
Secretary of State for Social Security
Secretary of State for Trade and Industry
Secretary of State for Wales

614 UNITED NATIONS, INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS

NOUNS 1 United Nations *or* **UN;** League of Nations

2 <United Nations organs> Secretariat; General Assembly; Security Council; Trusteeship Council; International Court of Justice; United Nations agency <see list>, Economic and Social Council or ECOSOC, ECOSOC commission

3 international organization, non-UN international organization

4 **United Nations agencies**

Food and Agricultural Organization *or* FAO
General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade *or* GATT
Intergovernmental Maritime Consultative Organization *or* IMCO
International Atomic Energy Agency *or* IAEA
International Bank for Reconstruction and Development *or* World Bank
International Civil Aviation Organization *or* ICAO
International Development Association *or* IDA
International Finance Corporation *or* IFO
International Labor Organization *or* ILO
International Monetary Fund *or* the Fund
International Telecommunication Union *or* ITU
United Nations Children's Fund *or* UNICEF
United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization *or* UNESCO
United Nations Relief and Works Agency *or* UNRWA
Universal Postal Union *or* UPU
World Health Organization *or* WHO
World Meteorological Organization *or* WMO

615 COMMISSION

NOUNS 1 **commission,** commissioning, **delegation,** devolution, devolvement, vesting, investing, investment, investiture; **deputation;** commitment, entrusting, entrustment, **assignment,** consignment, consignation; **errand, task, office; care,** cure, **responsibility,** purview, jurisdiction; **mission,** legation, embassy; **authority** 417; **authorization,** empowerment, power to act, full power, plenipotentiary power, vicarious *or* delegated authority; **warrant,** license, **mandate, charge, trust,** brevet, exequatur; **agency,** agentship, factorship; regency, regentship; lieutenancy; trusteeship, executorship; **proxy,** procuration, **power of attorney**

2 **appointment, assignment,** designation, **nomination,** naming, selection, tabbing <nf>; **ordainment,** ordination; posting, transferral

3 **installation,** installment, **instatement,** induction, placement, **inauguration,** investiture, taking office; **accession,** accedence; coronation, crowning, enthronement

4 **engagement, employment, hiring, appointment,** taking on <nf>, recruitment, recruiting; executive recruiting, executive search; retaining, retainment, briefing <Brit>; preengagement, bespeaking; reservation, booking; exercise, function

5 executive search agency *or* firm; executive recruiter, executive recruitment consultant, executive development specialist; **headhunter** *and* body snatcher *and* flesh peddler *and* talent scout <nf>

6 **rental, rent; lease,** let <Brit>; hire, hiring; sublease, subrent; **charter,** bareboat charter; lend-lease

7 **enlistment, enrollment; conscription, draft, drafting, induction,** impressment, press; call, draft call, call-up, summons, call to the colors, letter from Uncle Sam <nf>; **recruitment,** recruiting; **muster,** mustering, mustering in, levy, levying; mobilization; selective service, compulsory military service

8 indenture, binding over; **apprenticeship**

9 **assignee, appointee,** selectee, nominee, candidate; licensee, licentiate; deputy, agent 576

VERBS 10 **commission, authorize,** empower, accredit; **delegate,** devolute, devolve, devolve upon, vest, invest; depute, **deputize; assign,** consign, **commit, charge, entrust,** give in charge; license, charter, warrant; detail, detach, post, transfer, send out, mission, send on a mission

11 **appoint, assign,** designate, **nominate,** name, select, tab <nf>, elect; **ordain,** ordinate <old>

12 **install,** instate, induct, **inaugurate,** invest, put in, place, **place in office;** chair; crown, throne, enthrone, anoint

13 **be instated, take office,** accede; take *or* mount the throne; attain to

14 **employ, hire,** give a job to, take into employment, take into one's service, take on <nf>, recruit, headhunt <nf>, **engage,** sign up *or* on <nf>; retain, brief <Brit>; bespeak, preengage; sign up for <nf>, **reserve,** book

15 **rent, lease,** let <Brit>, hire, job, **charter; sublease, sublet,** underlet

16 **rent out, rent; lease,** lease out; let *and* let off *and* let out <Brit>; **hire out,** hire; charter; **sublease, sublet,** underlet; lend-lease, lease-lend; lease-back; farm, farm out; job

17 **enlist,** list <old>, **enroll, sign up** *or* **on** <nf>; **conscript, draft, induct,** press, impress, commandeer; detach, detach for service; summon, call up, call to the colors; **mobilize,** call to active duty; **recruit, muster,** levy, raise, muster in; join 617.14

18 indenture, article, bind, bind over; **apprentice**

ADJS 19 **commissioned, authorized, accredited;** delegated, deputized, appointed; devolutionary

20 **employed, hired, hireling, paid,** mercenary; rented, leased, let <Brit>; sublet, underlet, subleased; chartered

21 **indentured,** articled, bound over; **apprenticed, apprentice,** prentice *or* 'prentice

ADVS 22 **for hire,** for rent, to let, to lease

616 ASSOCIATE

NOUNS 1 **associate, confederate,** consociate, **colleague,** fellow member, **companion, fellow,** bedfellow, **crony,** consort, cohort, compeer, compatriot, confrere, brother, brother-in-arms, **ally,** adjunct, coadjutor; comrade in arms, **comrade** 588.3

2 **partner,** pardner *or* pard <nf>, copartner, side partner, buddy <nf>, **sidekick** *and* sidekicker <nf>; **mate; business partner,** nominal *or* holding-out *or* ostensible *or* quasi partner, general partner, special partner, silent partner, secret partner, dormant *or* sleeping partner

3 **accomplice,** cohort, confederate, fellow conspirator, coconspirator, partner *or* accomplice in crime; *particeps criminis* and *socius criminis* <L>; **accessory,** accessory before the fact, accessory after the fact; **abettor**

4 **collaborator,** cooperator; coauthor; **collaborationist**

5 **co-worker, workfellow, workmate, fellow worker, buddy** <nf>, butty <Brit nf>; **teammate, yokefellow,** yokemate; benchfellow, shopmate

6 **assistant, helper,** auxiliary, aider, **aid,** aide, paraprofessional; **help, helpmate, helpmeet;** deputy, **agent** 576; **attendant, second,** acolyte; best man, groomsman, paranymph; **servant, employee** 577; adjutant, aide-de-camp; lieutenant, executive officer; coadjutant, coadjutor; coadjutress, coadjutrix; sidesman <Brit>; supporting actor *or* player; supporting instrumentalist, sideman

7 **right-hand man** *or* **woman, right hand,** strong right hand *or* arm, **man** *or* **gal Friday,** fidus Achates, second self, alter ego, confidant

8 **follower, disciple,** adherent, votary; **man, henchman,** camp follower, hanger-on, satellite, creature, lackey, flunky, stooge <nf>, jackal, minion, myrmidon; yes-man <nf>, sycophant 138.3; goon <nf>, thug 593.3; puppet, cat's-paw; dummy, figurehead

9 **supporter, upholder,** maintainer, sustainer; support, **mainstay, standby** <nf>, stalwart, reliance, dependence; **abettor, seconder,** second; endorser, sponsor; **backer, promoter,** angel <nf>, rabbi <nf>; **patron,** Maecenas; friend at *or* in court; **champion,** defender, apologist, **advocate,** exponent, **protagonist; well-wisher,** favorer, encourager, sympathizer; **partisan,** sider <old>, sectary, votary; **fan** *and* buff <nf>, aficionado, **admirer,** lover

617 ASSOCIATION

NOUNS 1 **association, society,** body, organization; **alliance, coalition, league, union;** council; **bloc,** axis; **partnership; federation, confederation,** confederacy; grouping, assemblage 770; **combination,** combine; *Bund* and *Verein* <Ger>; **unholy alliance, gang** *and* **ring** *and* mob <nf>; machine, **political machine;** economic community, common market, free trade area, customs union; credit union; cooperative, cooperative society, consumer cooperative, Rochdale cooperative; syndicate, guild; college, **group,** corps, band 770.3; labor union 727

2 **community, society, commonwealth,** social system; body; **kinship group, clan,** sept <Scot>, moiety, clan, tribe, totemic *or* totemistic group, phyle, phratry *or* phratria, gens, caste, subcaste, endogamous group; **family,** extended family, nuclear family, binuclear family; order, **class, social class** 607, economic class; colony, settlement; **commune,** ashram

3 **fellowship,** sodality; **society,** guild, order; **brotherhood, fraternity,** confraternity, confrerie, fraternal order *or* society; **sisterhood, sorority; club,** country club, lodge; peer group; secret society, **cabal**

4 **party, interest, camp, side;** interest group, lobby, pressure group, ethnic group; minority group, vocal minority; political action committee *or* PAC; silent majority; **faction,** division, **sect,** wing,

caucus, splinter, splinter group, breakaway group, offshoot; **political party** 609.24

5 **school, sect,** class, order; **denomination, communion,** confession, faith, church; **persuasion, ism; disciples, followers,** adherents

6 **clique, coterie, set, circle,** ring, junto, junta, cabal, camarilla, **clan,** group, grouping; **crew** *and* mob *and* **crowd** *and* **bunch** *and* outfit <nf>; cell; cadre, cohort, inner circle; closed *or* charmed circle; ingroup, in-crowd, popular crowd, we-group; elite, elite group; leadership group; **old-boy network;** peer group, age group

7 **team, outfit,** squad, string, corps; eleven, nine, eight, five, etc; **crew,** rowing crew; varsity, first team, first string; bench, reserves, second team, second string, third string; platoon, troupe; complement; **cast,** company

8 **organization,** establishment, **foundation, institution, institute**

9 **company, firm, business firm, concern, house,** *compagnie* <Fr>, *compañía* <Sp>, *Aktiengesellschaft* <Ger>, *aktiebolag* <Swed>; **business, industry, enterprise,** business establishment, commercial enterprise; **trust, syndicate, cartel,** combine, pool, consortium, plunderbund <nf>; combination in restraint of trade; chamber of commerce, junior chamber of commerce; trade association

10 **branch, organ, division,** wing, arm, offshoot, **affiliate; chapter,** lodge, post; chapel; **local;** branch office

11 **member,** affiliate, belonger, insider, initiate, one of us, cardholder, card-carrier, card-carrying member; **enrollee,** enlistee; **associate,** socius, **fellow;** brother, sister; comrade; honorary member; life member; member in good standing, dues-paying member; charter member; clubman, clubwoman, clubber <nf>; fraternity man, fraternity *or* frat brother, Greek <nf>, sorority woman; sorority sister, guildsman; committeeman; conventionist, conventioner, conventioneer; joiner <nf>; pledge

12 **membership,** members, associates, affiliates, body of affiliates, constituency

13 **partisanism,** partisanship, **partiality; factionalism, sectionalism,** faction; sectarianism, denominationalism; **cliquism,** cliquishness, cliqueyness; **clannishness,** clanship; exclusiveness, exclusivity; ethnocentricity; party spirit, *esprit de corps* <Fr>; the old college spirit

VERBS 14 **join,** join up <nf>, **enter, go into,** come into, get into, make oneself part of, swell the ranks of; **enlist, enroll, affiliate, sign up** *or* **on** <nf>, take up membership, take out membership; inscribe oneself, put oneself down; associate oneself with, affiliate with, league with, team *or* team up with; sneak in, creep in, insinuate oneself into; **combine, associate** 805.4

15 **belong,** hold membership, be a member, be on the rolls, be inscribed, subscribe, hold *or* carry a card, be in <nf>

ADJS 16 **associated, corporate,** incorporated; **combined** 805.5; non-profit-making, non-profit, not-for-profit

17 **associational, social, society, communal;** organizational; coalitional; sociable

18 **cliquish,** cliquey, **clannish;** ethnocentric; exclusive

19 **partisan,** party; **partial,** interested; **factional, sectional,** sectarian, sectary, denominational

ADVS 20 **in association, conjointly** 450.6

618 WEALTH

NOUNS 1 **wealth, riches, opulence** *or* opulency 991.2, **luxuriousness** 501.5; richness, wealthiness; **prosperity,** prosperousness, **affluence,** comfortable *or* easy circumstances, independence; **money,** lucre, pelf, gold, mammon; **substance, property, possessions,** material wealth; **assets** 728.14; **fortune, treasure,** handsome fortune; full *or* heavy *or* well-lined *or* bottomless *or* fat *or* bulging purse, deep pockets <nf>; *embarras de richesses* <Fr>, money to burn <nf>; high income, six-figure income; high tax bracket, upper bracket; old money, new money

2 **large sum,** good sum, tidy sum *and* **pretty penny, king's ransom;** heaps of gold; thousands, millions, cool million, billion, etc

3 <nf terms> **bundle, big bucks,** megabucks, gigabucks, big money, serious money, gobs, heaps, heavy lettuce, heavy jack, heavy money, important money, pot, potful, power, mint, barrel, raft, load, **loads,** pile, wad, wads, nice hunk of change, packet <Brit>, long green

4 <rich source> **mine,** mine of wealth, **gold mine,** bonanza, luau <nf>, lode, rich lode, mother lode, pot of gold, Eldorado, Golconda, Seven Cities of Cibola; gravy train <nf>; rich uncle; golden goose; cash cow <nf>

5 **the golden touch,** Midas touch; philosophers' stone; Pactolus

6 **the rich, the wealthy,** the well-to-do, the well-off, the haves <nf>, privileged class; jet set, glitterati, country-club set, beau monde; **plutocracy,** timocracy

7 **rich man** *or* **woman,** wealthy man *or* woman, warm man *or* woman <Brit nf>, **moneyed man** *or* **woman,** man *or* woman of wealth, **man** *or* **woman of means** *or* **substance,** fat cat <nf>, richling, deep pocket *and* moneybags *and* Mr Moneybags <nf>,

tycoon, magnate, baron, Daddy Warbucks <Harold Gray>, coupon-clipper, **nabob; capitalist, plutocrat,** bloated plutocrat; **millionaire,** multimillionaire, megamillionaire, millionairess, multibillionaire, multimillionairess, billionaire; parvenu

8 Croesus, Midas, Plutus, Dives, Timon of Athens, Danaë; Rockefeller, Vanderbilt, Whitney, DuPont, Ford, Getty, Rothschild, Onassis, Hughes, Hunt, Trump

VERBS 9 **enrich, richen;** endow

10 **grow rich, get rich,** fill *or* line one's pockets, feather one's nest, **make** *or* **coin money,** have a gold mine, have the golden touch, **make a fortune,** make one's pile <nf>; **strike it rich;** come into money; make good, get on in the world, do all right by oneself *and* rake it in <nf>; hit the jackpot, clean up <nf>

11 **have money,** command money, **be loaded** *and* have deep pockets <nf>, have the wherewithal, have means, have independent means; **afford,** well afford

12 **live well,** live high, live high on the hog <nf>, **live in clover,** live the life of Riley, roll *or* wallow in wealth, roll *or* live in the lap of luxury; have all the money in the world, have a mint, have money to burn <nf>

13 worship mammon, worship the golden calf, worship the almighty dollar

ADJS 14 **wealthy, rich, affluent, affluential, moneyed** *or* **monied,** in funds *or* cash, **well-to-do,** well-to-do in the world, **well-off, well-situated, prosperous,** comfortable, provided for, well provided for, fat, **flush,** flush with *or* of money, abounding in riches, worth a great deal, in clover, frightfully rich, rich as Croesus; independent, independently rich, independently wealthy; **luxurious** 501.21; **opulent** 990.7; privileged, born with a silver spoon in one's mouth; higher-income, upper-income, well-paid

15 <nf terms> **loaded, well-heeled, filthy rich,** warm <Brit>, in the money *or* dough *or* chips *or* gravy, well-fixed, worth a bundle, made of money, **rolling in money,** rolling *or* wallowing in it, disgustingly rich, big-rich, rich-rich, oofy, lousy rich, upscale

619 POVERTY

NOUNS 1 **poverty,** poorness, impecuniousness, impecuniosity; **straits,** dire straits, difficulties, **hardship** 1010.1; financial distress *or* embarrassment, **embarrassed** *or* **reduced** *or* **straitened circumstances,** tight squeeze, hard pinch, crunch <nf>, cash *or* credit crunch <nf>; cash-flow shortage, cash-flow blowout <nf>; slender *or* narrow means, insolvency, light purse; unprosperousness; broken fortune; genteel poverty; vows of poverty, voluntary poverty

2 **indigence, penury, pennilessness,** penuriousness, moneylessness; **pauperism,** pauperization, **impoverishment,** grinding *or* crushing poverty, chronic pauperism; subsistence level, poverty line; **beggary,** beggarliness, mendicancy; homelessness; **destitution, privation, deprivation; neediness, want,** need, lack, pinch, gripe, necessity, dire necessity, disadvantagedness, necessitousness, **homelessness; hand-to-mouth existence,** bare subsistence, wolf at the door, bare cupboard, empty purse *or* pocket

3 **the poor, the needy,** the have-nots <nf>, the down-and-out, the disadvantaged, the underprivileged, the distressed, the underclass; the urban poor, ghetto-dwellers, barrio-dwellers; welfare rolls, welfare clients, welfare families; the homeless, the ranks of the homeless, bag people; "wretched of the earth"—E Pottier; the other America; the forgotten man, "the forgotten man at the bottom of the economic pyramid"—F D Roosevelt; depressed population, depressed area, chronic poverty area; underdeveloped nation, Third World

4 **poor person,** poorling, poor devil, down-and-out *or* down-and-outer, **pauper,** indigent, penniless man, hard case, starveling; homeless person, bag woman *or* lady, bag person, shopping-bag lady, shopping-cart woman *or* lady, street person, skell <nf>; hobo, bum; **beggar** 440.8; welfare client; almsman, almswoman, charity case, casual; bankrupt 625.4

VERBS 5 **be poor,** be hard up <nf>, find it hard going, have seen better days, be on one's uppers, be pinched *or* strapped, **be in want,** want, need, lack; **starve,** not know where one's next meal is coming from, **live from hand to mouth,** eke out *or* squeeze out a living; **not have a penny** *or* **sou,** not have a penny to bless oneself with, not have one dollar to rub against another; sing for one's supper; go on welfare, use food stamps

6 **impoverish,** reduce, **pauperize, beggar;** eat out of house and home; cut off without a penny; **bankrupt** 625.8

ADJS 7 **poor, ill off,** badly *or* poorly off, hard up <nf>, downscale, impecunious, **unmoneyed; unprosperous;** reduced, in reduced circumstances; **straitened, in straitened circumstances,** narrow, in narrow circumstances, feeling the pinch, strapped, **financially embarrassed** *or* distressed, **pinched,** squeezed, put to one's shifts *or* last shifts, at the end of one's rope, on the edge *or* ragged edge <nf>, down to bedrock, in Queer Street; short, **short of money** *or* **funds** *or* **cash,** out-of-pocket; unable to make ends meet, unable to keep the wolf from the door; poor as a church mouse, "poor as Job"—John Gower; land-poor

8 **indigent, poverty-stricken; needy,** necessitous, **in need, in want,** disadvantaged, deprived, underprivileged; **beggared,** beggarly, mendicant; **impoverished, pauperized,** starveling; ghettoized; bereft, bereaved; stripped, fleeced; **down at heels,** down at the heel, on *or* down on one's uppers, out at the heels, out at elbows, in rags; on welfare, on relief, on the bread line, on the dole <Brit>

9 **destitute, down-and-out,** in the gutter; **penniless,** moneyless, fortuneless, out of funds, **without a sou,** without a penny to bless oneself with, without one dollar to rub against another; insolvent, in the red, **bankrupt** 625.11; homeless; propertyless, landless

10 <nf terms> **broke, dead broke,** bust, busted, **flat, flat broke,** flat on one's ass, flat-ass, down for the count, belly up, stone *or* stony broke, stony, **strapped,** skint <Brit>, hurting, beat, oofless; down to one's last penny *or* cent, cleaned out, tapped out, Tap City, oofless, wasted, wiped out, without a pot to piss in

620 LENDING

NOUNS 1 **lending, loaning;** moneylending, lending at interest; advance, advancing, advancement; **usury,** loan-sharking *and* shylocking <nf>; pawnbroking, hocking; **interest,** interest rate, lending rate, the price of money; points, mortgage points

2 **loan,** the lend <nf>, **advance,** accommodation; lending on security; lend-lease

3 **lender, loaner;** loan officer; commercial banker; **moneylender,** moneymonger; money broker; banker 729.11; **usurer,** shylock *and* loan shark <nf>; **pawnbroker;** uncle <nf>; mortgagee, mortgage holder; creditor; financier

4 **lending institution,** savings and loan association *or* thrift *or* thrift institution *or* savings institution; savings and loan *or* thrift industry; building society <Brit>; finance company *or* corporation, loan office, mortgage company; commercial bank, **bank** 729.14; **credit union; pawnshop, pawnbroker,** pawnbrokery, **hock shop** <nf>, *mont-de-piété* <Fr>, sign of the three balls; World Bank

VERBS 5 **lend, loan, advance,** accommodate with; loan-shark <nf>; float *or* negotiate a loan; lend-lease, lease-lend; give credit

ADJS 6 **loaned, lent,** on loan, on credit

ADVS 7 **on loan,** on security; in advance

621 BORROWING

NOUNS 1 **borrowing,** money-raising; touching *or* hitting *or* hitting up <nf>; financing, mortgaging; installment buying, installment plan, hire purchase <Brit>; debt, debtor 623.4; debt counseling

2 **adoption, appropriation, taking,** deriving, **derivation, assumption; imitation,** simulation, copying, mocking; borrowed plumes; a leaf from someone else's book; adaptation; plagiarism, plagiary, pastiche, pasticcio; infringement, pirating; cribbing, lifting

VERBS 3 **borrow,** borrow the loan of, get on credit *or* trust, get on tick *and* get on the cuff <nf>; get a loan, float *or* negotiate a loan, go into the money market, **raise money; touch** *and* hit up *and* hit one for *and* put the arm *or* bite *or* touch on <nf>; run into debt 623.6; pawn 438.10

4 **adopt, appropriate,** take, take on, take over, assume, make use of, take a leaf from someone's book, derive from; **imitate,** simulate, copy, mock, steal one's stuff <nf>; plagiarize, steal; pirate, infringe, crib, lift; adapt, parody

622 FINANCIAL CREDIT

NOUNS 1 **credit, trust,** tick <nf>; borrowing power *or* capacity; commercial credit, cash credit, bank credit, book credit, tax credit, investment credit; credit line, line of credit; installment plan, installment credit, consumer credit, store credit, hire purchase plan <Brit>, never-never <Brit nf>; **credit standing,** standing, **credit rating,** rating, Dun and Bradstreet rating, solvency 729.7; credit squeeze, insolvency; credit risk; credit bureau *or* agency; credit insurance, credit life insurance; credit union, cooperative credit union

2 **account,** credit account, charge account; bank account, savings account, checking account; share account; bank balance; expense account; current *or* open account; installment plan

3 **credit instrument;** paper credit; **letter of credit,** *lettre de créance* <Fr>, circular note; credit slip, credit memorandum, deposit slip, certificate of deposit; share certificate; negotiable instruments 728.11; **credit card,** plastic, plastic money *or* credit, bank card, affinity card, custom credit card, gold card, platinum card, charge card, charge plate; debit card; smart card, supersmart card; phonecard; automated teller machine *or* ATM, cash machine

4 **creditor,** creditress; debtee; mortgagee, mortgage-holder; note-holder; credit man; bill collector, collection agent; loan shark; pawnbroker; dunner, dun

VERBS 5 **credit, credit with; credit to one's account,** place to one's credit *or* account

6 **give** *or* **extend credit** *or* a line of credit; sell on credit, trust, entrust; give tick <nf>; carry, carry on one's books

7 **receive credit,** take credit, **charge,** charge to one's account, keep an account with, go on tick <nf>, buy on credit, buy on the cuff <nf>, buy on the installment plan, buy on time, defer payment, put on layaway; go in hock for <nf>; have one's credit good for

ADJS 8 **credited,** of good credit, **well-rated**

ADVS 9 **to one's credit** *or* **account,** to the credit *or* account of, to the good

10 **on credit, on account, on trust,** on tick *and* **on the cuff** <nf>; on terms, on good terms, on easy terms, on budget terms, in installments, on time

623 DEBT

NOUNS 1 **debt, indebtedness,** indebtment, **obligation, liability,** financial commitment, due, **dues,** score, pledge, unfulfilled pledge, amount due, outstanding debt; **bill, bills,** chits <nf>, **charges;** floating debt; funded debt, unfunded debt; accounts receivable; accounts payable; borrowing 621; maturity; bad debts, uncollectibles, frozen assets; **national debt,** public debt; deficit, national deficit; megadebt <nf>; debt explosion

2 **arrears,** arrear, arrearage, back debts, back payments; the red; **deficit,** default, deferred payments; cash *or* credit crunch <nf>; overdraft, bounced *or* bouncing check, rubber check <nf>; dollar gap, unfavorable trade balance *or* balance of payments; deficit financing

3 **interest, premium, price, rate;** interest rate, rate of interest, prime interest rate *or* **prime rate,** bank rate, lending rate, borrowing rate, the price of money; discount rate; annual percentage rate *or* APR; **usury** 620.1, excessive *or* exorbitant interest; points, mortgage points; simple interest, compound interest; net interest, gross interest; compensatory interest; lucrative interest; penal interest

4 **debtor,** borrower; mortgagor

VERBS 5 owe, be indebted, be obliged *or* obligated for, be financially committed, lie under an obligation, be bound to pay, owe money

6 **go in debt,** get into debt, run into debt, plunge into debt, incur *or* contract a debt, go in hock <nf>, be overextended, **run up a bill** *or* a score *or* an account *or* a tab; run *or* show a deficit, operate at a loss; borrow; overspend, overdraw

7 **mature, accrue, fall due**

ADJS 8 **indebted, in debt,** plunged in debt, in difficulties, embarrassed, in embarrassed circumstances, in the hole *and* in hock <nf>, in the red, in dire straits, encumbered, mortgaged, mortgaged to the hilt, tied up, involved; deep in debt, involved *or* deeply involved in debt, burdened with debt, head over heels *or* up to one's ears in debt <nf>; cash poor

9 **chargeable, obligated, liable,** pledged, responsible, answerable for

10 **due, owed, owing, payable,** receivable, redeemable, mature, **outstanding, unpaid,** in arrear *or* arrears, back

624 PAYMENT

NOUNS 1 **payment, paying,** paying off, paying up <nf>, payoff; **defrayment,** defrayal; paying out, doling out, **disbursal** 626.1; **discharge, settlement, clearance, liquidation, amortization, amortizement,** retirement, satisfaction; quittance; acquittance *or* acquitment or acquittal <old>; **debt service, interest payment,** sinking-fund payment; **remittance;** installment, installment plan, lay-away plan; hire purchase *or* hire purchase plan *or* never-never <Brit>; regular payments, monthly payments, weekly payments, quarterly payments, etc; down payment, deposit, earnest, earnest money, binder; god's penny; the King's shilling <Brit>; **cash,** hard cash, spot cash, cash payment, cash on the nail *and* cash on the barrelhead <nf>; pay-as-you-go; prepayment; **postponed** *or* **deferred payment,** contango *or* carryover *and* continuation *and* backwardation <Brit>; payment in kind; accounts receivable, receivables

2 **reimbursement,** recoupment, recoup, return, restitution, settlement; payment in lieu; **refund,** refundment; kickback <nf>; payback, chargeback, **repayment** 481.2

3 **recompense, remuneration, compensation;** requital, requitement, quittance, **retribution, reparation, redress,** satisfaction, **atonement, amends,** return, restitution 481; blood money, wergild <old>; **indemnity,** indemnification; price, consideration; **reward,** meed, guerdon; honorarium; workmen's compensation *or* comp <nf>, solatium, damages, smart money; salvage

4 **pay, payment, remuneration, compensation,** total compensation, wages plus fringe benefits, financial package, pay and allowances, financial remuneration; rate of pay; **salary, wage, wages, income, earnings,** hire; real wages, purchasing power; payday, pay check, pay envelope, pay packet <Brit>; take-home pay *or* income, wages after taxes, pay *or* income *or* wages after deductions, net income *or* wages *or* pay *or* earnings, taxable income; gross income; living wage; minimum wage, base pay; portal-to-portal pay; severance pay, discontinuance *or* dismissal

wage, golden parachute; wage scale; escalator plan, escalator clause, sliding scale; guaranteed income, guaranteed annual income, negative income tax; fixed income; wage freeze, wage rollback, wage reduction, wage control; guaranteed annual wage, guaranteed income plan; overtime pay; danger money, combat pay, flight pay; back pay; strike pay; **payroll;** golden handcuffs; royalty, advance

5 **fee, stipend, allowance,** emolument, tribute, honorarium; **reckoning,** account, bill; assessment, scot; initiation fee, footing <old>; retainer, retaining fee; hush money, blackmail; blood money; mileage

6 <extra pay or allowance> **bonus, premium, fringe benefit** *or* **benefits,** bounty, perquisite, perquisites, perks <nf>, gravy <nf>, lagniappe, solatium; **tip** 478.5; overtime pay; bonus system; health insurance, life insurance, disability insurance; profit-sharing; holidays, vacation time, flextime *or* flexitime; pension program

7 **dividend; royalty; commission,** rake-off *and* cut <nf>

8 <the bearing of another's expense> **treat,** standing treat, picking up the check *or* tab <nf>; paying the bills, maintenance, support 449.3; subsidy 478.8

9 **payer,** remunerator, compensator, recompenser; paymaster, purser, bursar, cashier, treasurer 729.12; defrayer; liquidator; **taxpayer, ratepayer** <Brit>

VERBS 10 **pay,** render, tender; **recompense, remunerate, compensate, reward,** guerdon, indemnify, satisfy; salary, fee; remit; prepay; pay by *or* in installments, pay on, pay in; make payments to *or* towards *or* on

11 **repay,** pay back, restitute, **reimburse,** recoup; **requite,** quit, **atone,** redress <old>, **make amends,** make good, make up for, make up to, make restitution, make reparation 481.5; pay in kind, pay one in his own coin, give tit for tat; **refund,** kick back <nf>

12 **settle with,** reckon with, account with <old>, pay out, **settle** *or* **square accounts with,** square oneself with, get square with, **get even with,** get quits with; even the score <nf>, wipe *or* clear off old scores, pay old debts, clear the board

13 **pay in full, pay off, pay up** <nf>, **discharge, settle,** square, **clear, liquidate, amortize,** retire, take up, lift, take up and pay off, honor, acquit oneself of <old>; satisfy; meet one's obligations *or* commitments, redeem, redeem one's pledge *or* pledges, tear up *or* burn one's mortgage, have a mortgage-burning party, settle *or* square accounts, make accounts square, strike a balance; pay the bill, pay the shot

14 **pay out, fork out** *or* **over** <nf>, **shell out** <nf>; **expend** 626.5

15 **pay over,** hand over; ante, **ante up,** put up; put down, lay down, lay one's money down, show the color of one's money

16 <nf terms> **kick in, fork over,** pony up, pay up, cough up, stump up <Brit>, come across, come through with, come across with, come down with, come down with the needful, plank down, plunk down, post, tickle *or* grease the palm, cross one's palm with, lay on one; pay to the tune of

17 **pay cash,** make a cash payment, cash, **pay spot cash, pay cash down,** pay cash on the barrelhead <nf>, plunk down the money *and* put one's money on the line <nf>, pay at sight; pay in advance; pay as you go; pay cash on delivery *or* pay COD

18 **pay for,** pay *or* stand the costs, **bear the expense** *or* **cost,** pay the piper <nf>; **finance, fund** 729.16; **defray,** defray expenses; pay the bill, **foot the bill** *and* pick up the check *or* tab *and* spring *or* pop for <nf>; honor a bill, acknowledge, redeem; pay one's way; pay one's share, chip in <nf>, go Dutch <nf>

19 **treat,** treat to, **stand treat,** go treat, stand to <nf>, pick up the check *or* tab <nf>, pay the bill, set up, blow to <nf>; stand drinks; maintain, support 449.12; subsidize 478.19

20 **be paid, draw wages,** be salaried, work for wages, be remunerated, collect for one's services, **earn,** get an income, pull down *and* drag down <nf>

ADJS 21 **paying, remunerative, remuneratory; compensating,** compensative, compensatory, disbursing; retributive, retributory; **rewarding,** rewardful; lucrative, moneymaking, profitable, gainful; repaying, satisfying, reparative; bankable

22 **paid, paid-up,** discharged, settled, liquidated, acquitted <old>, paid in full, receipted, remitted; **spent, expended;** salaried, waged, hired; prepaid, postpaid

23 **unindebted,** unowing, **out of debt,** above water, out of the hole *or* the red <nf>, **clear,** all clear, free and clear, all straight; solvent 729.18

ADVS 24 **in compensation,** as compensation, in recompense, for services rendered, for professional services, **in reward,** in requital, in reparation, in retribution, in restitution, in exchange for, **in amends,** in atonement, to atone for

25 **cash,** cash on the barrelhead <nf>, strictly cash; **cash down, money down,** down; cash on delivery *or* **COD;** on demand, on call; pay-as-you-go

625 NONPAYMENT

NOUNS 1 **nonpayment, default, delinquency,** delinquence <old>, nondischarge of debts, nonremittal, failure to pay; defection; protest, repudiation; dishonor, dishonoring; bad debt, uncollectible, dishonored *or* protested bill; tax evasion; creative accounting

2 **moratorium,** grace period; embargo, freeze; **write-off,** cancellation, obliteration 395.7

3 **insolvency, bankruptcy,** receivership, Chapter 11, **failure; crash,** collapse, bust <nf>, ruin; run on a bank; insufficient funds, overdraft, overdrawn account, not enough to cover, bounced *or* bouncing check, bad check, kited *or* rubber check

4 **insolvent,** insolvent debtor; **bankrupt,** failure; **loser,** heavy loser, lame duck <nf>

5 **defaulter,** delinquent, nonpayer; **welsher** <nf>, levanter; tax evader, tax dodger *or* cheat <nf>

VERBS 6 **not pay;** dishonor, repudiate, disallow, protest, stop payment, refuse to pay; **default, welsh** <nf>, levant; button up one's pockets, draw the purse strings; **underpay;** bounce *or* kite a check <nf>

7 **go bankrupt, go broke** <nf>, go into receivership, become insolvent *or* bankrupt, **fail,** break, bust <nf>, crash, collapse, **fold, fold up,** belly up *and* go up *and* go belly up *and* **go under** <nf>, shut down, shut one's doors, go out of business, **be ruined,** go to ruin, go on the rocks, go to the wall, go to pot <nf>, go to the dogs, go bust <nf>; take a bath *and* be taken to the cleaners *and* be cleaned out *and* lose one's shirt *and* tap out <nf>

8 **bankrupt, ruin, break,** bust *and* wipe out <nf>; put out of business, drive to the wall, scuttle, sink; impoverish 619.6

9 **declare a moratorium; write off, forgive,** absolve, **cancel,** nullify, wipe the slate clean; wipe out, obliterate 395.16

ADJS 10 defaulting, nonpaying, **delinquent;** behindhand, in arrear *or* arrears, in hock, in the red

11 **insolvent, bankrupt,** in receivership, in the hands of receivers, belly-up <nf>, broken, **broke** *and* busted <nf>, **ruined,** failed, out of business, unable to pay one's creditors, unable to meet one's obligations, on the rocks; destitute 619.9

12 **unpaid, unremunerated,** uncompensated, unrecompensed, **unrewarded,** unrequited; underpaid

13 **unpayable,** irredeemable, inconvertible

626 EXPENDITURE

NOUNS 1 **expenditure, spending,** expense, disbursal, **disbursement;** debit, debiting; budgeting, scheduling; costing, costing-out; **payment** 624; deficit spending; **use** 387; **consumption** 388

2 **spendings,** disbursements, payments, outgoings, outgo, outflow, **outlay,** money going out

3 **expenses, costs,** charges, disbursals, **liabilities,** damages <nf>; **expense, cost,** burden of expenditure; budget, budget item, budget line, line item; **overhead,** operating expense *or* expenses *or* costs *or* budget, general expenses; expense account, swindle sheet <nf>; business expenses, nonremunerated business expenses, out-of-pocket expenses; direct costs, indirect costs; distributed costs, undistributed costs; material costs; labor costs; carrying charge; unit cost; replacement cost; prime cost; cost of living, cost-of-living index, cost-of-living allowance *or* COLA, inflation

4 **spender,** expender, expenditor, disburser, buyer, purchaser

VERBS 5 **spend, expend, disburse, pay out,** fork out *or* over <nf>, shell out <nf>, **lay out,** outlay; go to the expense of; **pay** 624.10; put one's hands in one's pockets, open the purse, loosen *or* untie the purse strings *and* throw money around <nf>, go on a spending spree, splurge, spend money like a drunken sailor *and* spend money as if it were going out of style <nf>, go *or* run through, be out of pocket, **squander** 486.3; **invest,** sink money in <nf>, put out; throw money at the problem; **incur costs** *or* **expenses;** budget, schedule, cost, cost out; **use** 387.13; **consume**

6 **be spent,** burn in one's pocket, burn a hole in one's pocket

7 **afford,** well afford, spare, spare the price, bear, stand, support, endure, undergo, meet the expense of, swing

627 RECEIPTS

NOUNS 1 **receipts,** receipt, **income, revenue, profits, earnings, returns, proceeds,** avails <old>, **take,** takings, intake, take-in <nf>, get <Brit nf>; credit, credits; gains 472.3; gate receipts, gate, box office; net receipts, net; gross receipts, gross; national income; net income, gross income; earned income, unearned income; **dividend** 738.7, dividends, payout, payback; interest; royalties, commissions; receivables; disposable income; make, produce, **yield, output** 893.2, bang for the buck <nf>, fruits, first fruits; bonus, premium; income; legacy; winnings

2 <written acknowledgment> **receipt, acknowledgment, voucher,** warrant <Brit>; canceled check, bank statement; proof of purchase; **receipt in full,** receipt in full of all demands, release, acquittance, quittance, discharge

VERBS 3 **receive** 479.6, **pocket, acquire** 472.8,9; accrue; acknowledge receipt of, receipt, mark paid

4 **yield, bring in, afford, pay,** pay off <nf>, **return; gross, net**

628 ACCOUNTS

NOUNS 1 **accounts; outstanding accounts,** uncollected *or* unpaid accounts; **accounts receivable,** receipts, assets; **accounts payable,** expenditures, liabilities; **budget,** budgeting; costing out

2 **account, reckoning, tally, rendering-up, score;** account current; account rendered, *compte rendu* <Fr>, account stated; balance, trial balance

3 **statement, bill,** itemized bill, bill of account, **account, reckoning, check,** *l'addition* <Fr>, score *or* tab <nf>; **dun; invoice,** manifest, bill of lading

4 **account book, ledger, journal,** daybook; **register,** registry, **record book,** books; inventory, catalog; **log,** logbook; **cashbook; bankbook,** passbook; balance sheet; cost sheet, cost card

5 **entry,** item, line item, minute, note, notation; single entry, double entry; **credit, debit**

6 **accounting, accountancy, bookkeeping,** double-entry bookkeeping *or* accounting, single-entry bookkeeping *or* accounting; comptrollership *or* controllership; business *or* commercial *or* monetary arithmetic; cost accounting, costing <Brit>, cost system, cost-accounting system; **audit, auditing;** stocktaking, inspection of books

7 **accountant, bookkeeper; clerk,** actuary <old>, registrar, recorder, journalizer; calculator, reckoner; cost accountant, cost keeper; certified public accountant *or* CPA; chartered accountant *or* CA <Brit>; **auditor,** bank examiner; bank accountant; actuary; accountant general; comptroller *or* controller; statistician

VERBS 8 **keep accounts, keep books,** make up *or* cast up *or* render accounts; make an entry, enter, post, post up, journalize, book, docket, log, note, minute; **credit, debit;** charge off, write off; capitalize; carry, carry on one's books; carry over; **balance,** balance accounts, balance the books, strike a balance; close the books, close out

9 **take account of, take stock,** overhaul; **inventory; audit,** examine *or* inspect the books

10 **falsify accounts,** garble accounts, cook *or* doctor accounts <nf>, cook the books <nf>, salt, fudge; surcharge

11 **bill,** send a statement; **invoice;** call, call in, demand payment, **dun**

ADJS 12 accounting, bookkeeping; budget, budgetary

629 TRANSFER OF PROPERTY OR RIGHT

NOUNS 1 **transfer,** transference; **conveyance,** conveyancing; **giving** 478; **delivery,** deliverance; **assignment,** assignation; **consignment,** consignation; conferment, conferral, settling, settlement; vesting; bequeathal 478.10; **sale** 734; surrender, cession; transmission, transmittal; disposal, disposition, deaccession, deaccessioning; demise; alienation, abalienation; amortization, amortizement; enfeoffment; deeding; bargain and sale; lease and release; **exchange,** barter, trading; entailment

2 devolution, succession, reversion; shifting use, shifting trust

VERBS 3 **transfer, convey, deliver,** hand, pass, negotiate; **give** 478.12–14,16,21; **hand over, turn over, pass over; assign, consign,** confer, settle, settle on; cede, surrender; bequeath 478.18; entail; **sell** 734.8,11,12, sell off, deaccession; **make over, sign over,** sign away; transmit, **hand down, hand on, pass on,** devolve upon; demise; alienate, alien, abalienate, amortize; enfeoff; **deed,** deed over, give title to; **exchange,** barter, trade, trade away

4 **change hands,** change ownership; devolve, pass on, descend, succeed <old>

ADJS 5 **transferable, conveyable,** negotiable, alienable; **assignable,** consignable; devisable, bequeathable; heritable, inheritable

630 PRICE, FEE

NOUNS 1 **price, cost, expense,** expenditure, **charge,** damage *and* score *and* tab <nf>; rate, figure, amount; **quotation,** quoted price, price tag *and* **ticket** *and* **sticker** <nf>; **price list,** price range, prices current; stock market quotations; standard price, list price, sale price

2 **worth, value,** account, rate; face value, face; par value; market value; street value; fair value; net worth; conversion factor *or* value; monetary value; money's worth, pennyworth, value received; bang for the buck <nf>; going rate

3 **valuation, evaluation,** value-setting, value-fixing, pricing, price determination, **assessment, appraisal,** appraisement, estimation, rating; unit pricing, dual pricing

4 **price index,** business index; wholesale price index; consumer price *or* retail price index; cost-of-living index; price level; price ceiling, ceiling price, ceiling, top price; floor price, floor, bottom price; demand curve; rising prices, **inflation,** inflationary spiral

5 **price controls,** price-fixing, valorization; managed prices, fair-trading, fair trade, fair-trade agreement; **price supports,** rigid supports, flexible supports; price freeze; rent control; prix fixe

6 **fee, dues, toll, charge, charges, demand, exaction,** exactment, scot, shot, scot and lot; hire; **fare,**

carfare; user fee; airport fee *or* charge; license fee; entrance *or* entry *or* admission fee, admission; cover charge; portage, towage; wharfage, anchorage, dockage; pilotage; storage, cellarage; brokerage; salvage; service fee *or* charge; commission, cut

7 freightage, freight, haulage, carriage, cartage, drayage, expressage, lighterage; poundage, tonnage

8 **rent, rental;** rent-roll; rent charge; rack rent, quitrent; ground rent, wayleave rent

9 **tax, taxation, duty, tribute,** taxes, rates <Brit>, contribution, **assessment, revenue enhancement,** cess <Brit>, **levy, toll, impost,** imposition; tax code, tax law; **tithe;** indirect taxation, direct taxation; **tax burden,** overtaxation, undertaxation; bracket *or* tax-bracket creep; progressive taxation, graduated taxation; regressive taxation; tax withholding; tax return, separate returns, joint return; tax evasion *or* avoidance; tax haven *or* shelter; **tax deduction, deduction; tax write-off,** write-off, tax relief; tax exemption, tax-exempt status; tax structure, tax base; taxable income *or* goods *or* land *or* property, ratables

10 **tax collector,** taxer, taxman, publican; collector of internal revenue, internal revenue agent, revenuer; tax farmer, farmer; assessor, **tax assessor;** exciseman <Brit>, revenuer; Internal Revenue Service *or* IRS; Inland Revenue *or* IR <Brit>; **customs agent; customs,** US Customs Service, Bureau of Customs and Excise <Brit>; customhouse; taxpayer

VERBS **11** **price,** set *or* name a price, fix the price of; place a value on, **value, evaluate,** valuate, **appraise, assess, rate,** prize, apprize; quote a price; set an arbitrary price on, control *or* manage the price of, valorize; mark up, mark down, **discount;** fair-trade; reassess

12 **charge, demand, ask,** require; overcharge, undercharge; **exact, assess, levy, impose; tax,** assess a tax upon, slap a tax on <nf>, lay *or* put a duty on, make dutiable, subject to a tax *or* fee *or* duty, collect a tax *or* duty on; tithe; prorate, assess *pro rata;* charge for, stick for <nf>

13 **cost, sell for, fetch, bring,** bring in, stand one *and* set *or* move one back <nf>, knock one back <Brit nf>; **come to,** run to *or* into, **amount to,** mount up to, come up to, total up to

ADJS **14** **priced, valued,** evaluated, assessed, appraised, rated, prized; **worth,** valued at; good for; ad valorem, pro rata

15 **chargeable, taxable,** ratable <Brit>, assessable, dutiable, leviable, declarable; tithable

16 tax-free, nontaxable, nondutiable, tax-exempt; deductible, tax-deductible; duty-free

ADVS **17** **at a price,** for a consideration; to the amount of, to the tune of *and* in the neighborhood of <nf>

631 DISCOUNT

NOUNS **1** **discount, cut, deduction,** slash, abatement, reduction, price reduction, price-cutting, price-cut, rollback <nf>; underselling; **rebate,** rebatement; bank discount, cash discount, chain discount, time discount, trade discount; write-off, charge-off; **depreciation; allowance,** concession; setoff; drawback, **refund,** kickback <nf>; **premium,** percentage, agio; trading stamp

VERBS **2** **discount,** cut, deduct, bate, abate; **take off,** write off, charge off; knock down <nf>; **depreciate,** reduce; sell at a loss; **allow,** make allowance; rebate, **refund,** kick back <nf>; take a premium *or* percentage

ADVS **3** **at a discount,** at a reduction, at a reduced rate, below par, below *or* under cost

632 EXPENSIVENESS

NOUNS **1** **expensiveness, costliness, dearness,** high *or* great cost, highness, stiffness *or* **steepness** <nf>, priceyness; **richness, sumptuousness, luxuriousness;** pretty penny <nf>

2 **preciousness, dearness, value,** high *or* great value, **worth,** extraordinary worth, price *or* great price <old>, **valuableness; pricelessness, invaluableness**

3 **high price,** high *or* big price tag *and* big ticket *and* big sticker price <nf>, **fancy price,** good price, steep *or* stiff price <nf>, luxury price, a pretty penny *or* an arm and a leg <nf>, exorbitant *or* unconscionable *or* extortionate price; famine price, scarcity price; rack rent; inflationary prices, rising *or* soaring *or* spiraling prices, soaring costs; sellers' market; **inflation,** cost *or* cost-push inflation *or* cost-push, inflationary trend *or* pressure, hot economy, inflationary spiral, inflationary gap; reflation; stagflation, slumpflation

4 **exorbitance,** exorbitancy <old>, **extravagance,** excess, **excessiveness,** inordinateness, immoderateness, immoderation, undueness, unreasonableness, outrageousness, preposterousness; unconscionableness, extortionateness

5 **overcharge,** surcharge, overassessment; gouging *or* price-gouging; **extortion,** extortionate price; **holdup** *and* armed robbery *and* highway robbery <nf>; profiteering, rack-rent; ripoff <nf>

VERBS **6** **cost much,** cost money *and* cost you <nf>, be dear, cost a pretty penny *or* an arm and a leg *or* a packet <nf>, **run into money;** be overpriced, price out of the market

7 **overprice,** set the price tag too high; **overcharge,** surcharge, overtax; **hold up** *and* **soak** *and* **stick** *and* **sting** *and* **clip** <nf>, **make pay through the nose, gouge;** commit highway robbery; victimize, rip off, swindle 356.18; exploit, skin <nf>, **fleece,** screw *and* put the screws to <nf>, bleed, bleed white; profiteer; rack *or* rack up the rents, rack rent

8 **overpay,** overspend, pay too much, pay more than it's worth, **pay dearly,** pay exorbitantly, pay, **pay through the nose,** be had *or* taken <nf>

9 **inflate,** heat *or* heat up the economy; reflate

ADJS 10 **precious, dear, valuable,** worthy, rich, golden, of great price <old>, worth a pretty penny <nf>, worth a king's ransom, worth its weight in gold, good as gold, precious as the apple of one's eye; **priceless, invaluable,** inestimable, without *or* **beyond price,** not to be had for love or money, not for all the tea in China

11 **expensive, dear, costly,** of great cost, dear-bought, **high, high-priced,** premium, at a premium, top; big ticket <nf>, **fancy** *and* stiff *and* steep <nf>, pricey; beyond one's means, not affordable, more than one can afford, sky-high; unpayable; upmarket, upscale <nf> rich, sumptuous, executive *and* posh <nf>, **luxurious** 501.21, gold-plated

12 **overpriced,** grossly overpriced, **exorbitant, excessive, extravagant, inordinate, immoderate,** undue, unwarranted, unreasonable, fancy, unconscionable, outrageous, preposterous, out of bounds, out of sight <nf>, **prohibitive; extortionate,** cutthroat, **gouging, usurious,** exacting; **inflationary,** spiraling, skyrocketing, mounting; stagflationary, slumpflationary; reflationary

ADVS 13 **dear, dearly;** at a high price, at great cost, at a premium, at a great rate, at heavy cost, at great expense

14 **preciously, valuably,** worthily; pricelessly, invaluably, inestimably

15 **expensively,** richly, sumptuously, luxuriously

16 **exorbitantly, excessively,** grossly, **extravagantly, inordinately,** immoderately, unduly, unreasonably, unconscionably, outrageously, preposterously; **extortionately,** usuriously, gougingly

633 CHEAPNESS

NOUNS 1 **cheapness, inexpensiveness,** affordableness, affordability, reasonableness, modestness, moderateness, nominalness; drug *or* glut on the market; shabbiness, shoddiness 998.2

2 **low price, nominal price,** reasonable price, modest *or* manageable price, sensible price, moderate price; low *or* nominal *or* reasonable charge; bargain prices, budget prices, economy prices, easy prices *or* terms, popular prices, rock-bottom prices; buyers' market; low *or* small price tag *and* low sticker price *and* low tariff <nf>; **reduced price,** cut price, sale price; cheap *or* reduced rates

3 **bargain,** advantageous purchase, **buy** <nf>, **good buy, steal** <nf>; money's worth, pennyworth, good pennyworth; special offer; loss leader

4 **cheapening, depreciation, devaluation,** reduction, lowering; deflation, deflationary spiral, cooling *or* cooling off of the economy; **buyers' market; decline,** plummet, plummeting, plunge, dive, nose dive *and* slump *and* sag <nf>, free fall; price fall, break; **price cut** *or* **reduction,** cut, slash, **markdown;** oversupply

VERBS 5 **be cheap,** cost little, not cost anything *and* cost nothing *and* next to nothing <nf>; **go dirt cheap** *or* for a song *or* for nickels and dimes *or* for peanuts <nf>, buy at a bargain, buy for a mere nothing; get one's money's worth, get a good pennyworth; buy at wholesale prices *or* at cost

6 **cheapen, depreciate, devaluate,** lower, reduce, devalue, **mark down, cut prices, cut,** slash, shave, trim, pare, underprice, knock the bottom out of <nf>, knock down <nf>; deflate, cool *or* cool off the economy; beat down; come down *or* fall in price; **fall,** decline, plummet, dive, nose-dive <nf>, drop, crash, head for the bottom, plunge, sag, slump; break, give way; reach a new low; unload

ADJS 7 **cheap, inexpensive,** unexpensive, **low, low-priced,** frugal, reasonable, sensible, manageable, modest, moderate, affordable, to fit the pocketbook, budget, easy, economy, economic, economical; within means, within reach *or* easy reach; nominal, token; worth the money, well worth the money; cheap *or* good at the price, cheap at half the price; shabby, shoddy, cheapo <nf>; deflationary

8 **dirt cheap,** cheap as dirt, dog-cheap <nf>, **a dime a dozen,** bargain-basement, five-and-ten, dime-store

9 **reduced,** cut, cut-price, slashed, **marked down;** cut-rate; half-price; priced to go; giveaway, sacrificial; **lowest,** rock-bottom, bottom

ADVS 10 **cheaply, cheap,** on the cheap <Brit nf>; **inexpensively,** reasonably, moderately, nominally; **at a bargain,** *à bon marché* <Fr>, for a song *or* mere song <nf>, for pennies *or* nickels and dimes *or* peanuts <nf>, at small cost, at a low price, at budget prices, at piggy-bank prices, at a sacrifice; at cost *or* cost price, at prime cost, wholesale, at wholesale; at reduced rates

634 COSTLESSNESS

<absence of charge>

NOUNS 1 **costlessness,** gratuitousness, gratuity, **freeness,** expenselessness, complimentariness, no charge; free ride <nf>; freebie *and* gimme <nf>; labor of love; **gift** 478.4

2 **complimentary ticket, pass,** comp <nf>, free pass *or* ticket, paper <nf>, free admission, guest pass *or* ticket, Annie Oakley <nf>; discount ticket, twofer <nf>

3 **freeloader,** free rider, pass holder, deadhead <nf>

VERBS 4 **give, present** 478.12, comp <nf>; freeload, sponge

ADJS 5 **gratuitous, gratis, free, free of charge,** for free, for nothing, free for nothing, free for the asking, free gratis *and* free gratis for nothing <nf>, for love, free as air; freebie *and* freebee *and* freeby <nf>; costless, expenseless, untaxed, without charge, free of cost *or* expense; no charge; unbought, unpaid-for; **complimentary, on the house, comp** <nf>, given 478.24; giftlike; eleemosynary, charitable 143.15

ADVS 6 **gratuitously, gratis, free, free of charge,** for nothing, for the asking, at no charge, without charge, with the compliments of the management, as our guest, on the house

635 THRIFT

NOUNS 1 **thrift, economy, thriftiness,** economicalness, savingness, sparingness, unwastefulness, **frugality,** frugalness; tight purse strings; parsimony, **parsimoniousness** 484.1; false economy; carefulness, care, chariness, canniness; **prudence,** providence, forehandedness; **husbandry,** management, good management *or* stewardship, custodianship, prudent *or* prudential administration; **austerity,** austerity program, belt-tightening; economic planning; economy of means 484.1

2 **economizing,** economization, reduction of spending or government spending; **cost-effectiveness; saving,** scrimping, skimping <nf>, scraping, sparing, cheeseparing; **retrenchment, curtailment,** reduction of expenses, cutback, rollback, slowdown, cooling, cooling off *or* down, low growth rate; reduction in forces *or* RIF; budget, spending plan

3 **economizer,** economist <old>, **saver,** string-saver

VERBS 4 **economize, save,** make *or* enforce economies; **scrimp, skimp** <nf>, **scrape,** scrape and save; **manage, husband,** husband one's resources, conserve; budget; live frugally, get along on a shoestring, get by on little; keep within compass <old>, keep *or* stay within one's means *or* budget, balance income with outgo, live within one's income, make ends meet, cut one's coat according to one's cloth, keep *or* stay ahead of the game; put something aside, **save up,** save for a rainy day, have a nest egg; supplement *or* eke out one's income

5 **retrench, cut down,** cut *or* pare down expenses, **curtail expenses; cut corners, tighten one's belt,** cut back, roll back, take a reef, slow down

ADJS 6 **economical, thrifty, frugal,** economic, unwasteful, conserving, **saving,** economizing, spare, **sparing;** Scotch; **prudent,** prudential, provident, forehanded; careful, chary, canny; scrimping, skimping <nf>, cheeseparing, austere; penny-wise; **parsimonious** 484.7; **cost-effective, cost-efficient; efficient,** labor-saving, time-saving, money-saving

ADVS 7 **economically, thriftily, frugally,** husbandly <old>; **cost-effectively, cost-efficiently;** prudently, providently; carefully, charily, cannily; sparingly, with a sparing hand

636 ETHICS

NOUNS 1 **ethics, principles,** standards, norms, principles of conduct *or* behavior, principles of professional practice; **morals,** moral principles; code, ethical *or* moral code, **ethic,** code of morals *or* ethics, ethical system, value system, values, axiology; **norm,** behavioral norm, normative system; moral climate, **ethos,** *Zeitgeist* <Ger>; Ten Commandments, decalogue; social ethics, professional ethics, bioethics, medical ethics, legal ethics, business ethics, etc

2 ethical *or* moral philosophy, ethonomics, aretaics, eudaemonics, casuistry, deontology, empiricism, evolutionism, hedonism, ethical formalism, intuitionism, perfectionism, Stoicism, utilitarianism, categorical imperative, golden rule; egoistic ethics, altruistic ethics; Christian ethics; situation ethics; comparative ethics

3 **morality, morals,** morale; virtue 653; ethicality, ethicalness; scruples, good conscience, moral fiber

4 **amorality,** unmorality; amoralism; moral delinquency, moral turpitude

5 **conscience,** grace, **sense of right and wrong;** inward monitor, inner arbiter, moral censor, censor, ethical self, superego; **voice of conscience,** still small voice within, guardian *or* good angel; tender conscience; clear *or* clean conscience; social conscience; conscientiousness 644.2; twinge of conscience 113.2

ADJS 6 **ethical, moral,** moralistic; ethological; axiological

637 RIGHT

NOUNS 1 **right,** rightfulness, rightness; what is right *or* proper, what should be, what ought to be, the seemly, the thing, the right *or* proper thing, the right *or* proper thing to do, what is done

2 **propriety, decorum, decency,** good behavior *or* conduct, correctness, correctitude, rightness, properness, decorousness, goodness, goodliness, niceness, seemliness, cricket <Brit nf>; fitness, fittingness, appropriateness, suitability 995.1; normativeness, normality; proprieties, decencies; rightmindedness, **righteousness** 653.1

ADJS 3 **right,** rightful; fit, suitable 995.5; **proper, correct, decorous,** good, nice, decent, seemly, **due, appropriate,** fitting, condign, **right and proper,** as it should be, as it ought to be, up to par, *comme il faut* <Fr>; kosher *and* according to Hoyle <nf>; in the right; normative, normal; rightminded, right-thinking, **righteous**

ADVS 4 **rightly, rightfully,** right; **by rights,** by right, with good right, **as is right** *or* **only right; properly,** correctly, as is proper *or* fitting, **duly, appropriately,** fittingly, condignly, **in justice,** in equity; in reason, in all conscience

638 WRONG

NOUNS 1 **wrong,** wrongfulness, wrongness; **impropriety, indecorum;** incorrectness, improperness, indecorousness, unseemliness; unfitness, unfittingness, inappropriateness, unsuitability 996.1; infraction, violation, delinquency, criminality, illegality, unlawfulness; abnormality, deviance *or* deviancy, aberrance *or* aberrancy; sinfulness, wickedness, unrighteousness; **dysfunction,** malfunction; maladaptation, maladjustment; malfeasance, malversation, malpractice; malformation

2 **abomination, horror,** terrible thing; **scandal, disgrace, shame, pity,** atrocity, profanation, desecration, violation, sacrilege, infamy, ignominy

ADJS 3 **wrong, wrongful; improper, incorrect, indecorous,** undue, unseemly; unfit, unfitting, inappropriate, unsuitable 995.5; delinquent, criminal, illegal, unlawful; fraudulent, creative <nf>; abnormal, deviant, aberrant; **dysfunctional; evil, sinful, wicked, unrighteous;** not the thing, hardly the thing, not done, not cricket <Brit>; **off-base** *and* **out-of-line** *and* **off-color** *and* off the beam <nf>; abominable, terrible, scandalous, disgraceful, immoral, shameful, shameless, atrocious, sacrilegious, infamous, ignominious; maladapted, maladjusted

ADVS 4 **wrongly, wrongfully,** wrong; **improperly,** incorrectly, indecorously

WORD ELEMENTS 5 mis-, dis-; dys-, caco-

639 DUENESS

NOUNS 1 **dueness, entitlement,** entitledness, deservingness, deservedness, meritedness, expectation, just *or* justifiable expectation, expectations, outlook, prospect, prospects; **justice** 649

2 **due,** one's due, what one merits *or* is entitled to, what one has earned, what is owing, what one has coming, what is coming to one, acknowledgment, cognizance, recognition, credit, crediting; **right**

3 **deserts,** just deserts, deservings, merits, dues, due reward *or* punishment, **comeuppance** <nf>, all that is coming to one; the wrath of God; retaliation 506, vengeance 507.1

VERBS 4 **be due,** be one's due, **be entitled to,** have a right or title to, have a rightful claim to *or* upon, claim as one's right, **have coming,** come by honestly

5 **deserve, merit,** earn, rate *and* be in line for <nf>, **be worthy of,** be deserving, richly deserve

6 **get one's deserts,** get one's dues, **get one's comeuppance** *and* get his *or* hers <nf>, get what is coming to one; get justice; serve one right, be rightly served; get for one's pains, reap the fruits *or* benefit of, reap where one has sown, come into one's own

ADJS 7 **due, owed, owing,** payable, redeemable, coming, **coming to**

8 **rightful,** condign, appropriate, proper; fit, becoming 995.5; **fair, just** 649.8

9 **warranted, justified, entitled,** qualified, worthy; **deserved, merited,** richly deserved, earned, well-earned

10 **due, entitled to,** with a right to; **deserving, meriting, meritorious, worthy of;** attributable, ascribable

ADVS 11 **duly,** rightfully, condignly, as is one's due *or* right

PHRS 12 what's sauce for the goose is sauce for the gander; give the devil his due; give credit where credit is due; he's made his bed let him lie in it; let the punishment fit the crime

640 UNDUENESS

NOUNS 1 **undueness, undeservedness,** undeservingness, unentitledness, unentitlement, unmeritedness; disentitlement; lack of claim *or* title, false claim *or* title, invalid claim *or* title, no claim *or* title, empty claim *or* title; unearned increment; **inappropriateness** 996.1; **impropriety** 638.1; **excess** 993

2 **presumption,** assumption, **imposition; license,** licentiousness, **undue liberty,** liberties, familiarity, **presumptuousness,** freedom *or* liberty abused, hubris; lawlessness 418; injustice 650

3 **usurpation,** arrogation, seizure, unlawful seizure, **appropriation,** assumption, adoption, infringement, encroachment, invasion, trespass, trespassing; playing God

4 **usurper,** arrogator, pretender

VERBS 5 **not be entitled to,** have no right *or* title to, have no claim upon, not have a leg to stand on

6 **presume, assume, venture, hazard, dare,** pretend, attempt, **make bold** *or* so bold, make free, **take the liberty,** take upon oneself, go so far as to

7 **presume on** *or* **upon, impose on** *or* **upon,** encroach upon, obtrude upon; **take liberties,** take a liberty, overstep, overstep one's rights *or* bounds *or* prerogatives, make free with *or* of, abuse one's rights, abuse a privilege, give an inch and take an ell; **inconvenience,** bother, trouble, cause to go out of one's way

8 <take to oneself unduly> **usurp, arrogate,** seize, grab *and* latch on to <nf>, **appropriate,** assume, adopt, take over, arrogate *or* accroach to oneself, pretend to, infringe, encroach, invade, trespass; play God

ADJS 9 **undue, unowed, unowing,** not coming, not outstanding; **undeserved, unmerited,** unearned; **unwarranted, unjustified,** unprovoked; unentitled, undeserving, unmeriting, nonmeritorious, unworthy; preposterous, outrageous

10 **inappropriate** 996.5; **improper** 638.3; **excessive** 993.16

11 **presumptuous, presuming,** licentious; hubristic 493.7

PHRS 12 give him an inch he'll take a mile;
let a camel get his nose under the tent and he'll come in

641 DUTY
<moral obligation>

NOUNS 1 **duty, obligation,** charge, **onus, burden,** mission, devoir, must, ought, imperative, bounden duty, proper *or* assigned task, what ought to be done, what one is responsible for, where the buck stops <nf>, deference, respect 155, fealty, allegiance, loyalty, homage; devotion, dedication, **commitment;** self-commitment, self-imposed duty; **business** 724, function, province, place 724.3; ethics 636; line of duty; call of duty; duties and responsibilities, assignment, work-load

2 **responsibility,** incumbency; **liability, accountability,** accountableness, answerability, answerableness, amenability; product liability; **responsibleness, dutifulness,** duteousness, devotion *or* dedication to duty, sense of duty *or* obligation, code of honor, inner voice

VERBS 3 **should, ought to,** had best, had better, be expedient

4 **behoove, become,** befit, beseem, be bound, be obliged *or* obligated, be under an obligation; **owe it to,** owe it to oneself; must

5 **be the duty of, be incumbent on** *or* **upon,** be his *or* hers to, fall to, stand on *or* upon, be a must *or* an imperative for, duty calls one to

6 **be responsible for, answer for,** stand responsible for, **be liable for,** be answerable *or* accountable for; be on the hook for *and* take the heat *or* rap for <nf>

7 **be one's responsibility,** be one's office, be one's charge *or* mission, be one's concern, **rest with,** lie upon, devolve upon, rest on the shoulders of, lie on one's head *or* one's door *or* one's doorstep, fall to one *or* to one's lot

8 **incur a responsibility,** become bound to, become sponsor for

9 **take** *or* **accept the responsibility, take upon oneself,** take upon one's shoulders, commit oneself; be where the buck stops <nf>; **answer for,** respect *or* defer to one's duty; sponsor, be *or* stand sponsor for; do at one's own risk *or* peril; **take the blame,** be in the hot seat *or* on the spot *and* take the heat *or* rap for <nf>

10 **do one's duty,** perform *or* fulfill *or* discharge one's duty, do what one has to do, pay one's dues <nf>, **do what is expected,** do the needful, do the right thing, do justice to, **do** *or* **act one's part,** play one's proper role; answer the call of duty, do one's bit *or* part

11 **meet an obligation,** satisfy one's obligations, stand to one's engagement, stand up to, **acquit oneself, make good,** redeem one's pledge

12 **obligate, oblige, require,** make incumbent *or* imperative, tie, **bind,** pledge, commit, saddle with, put under an obligation; call to account, hold responsible *or* accountable *or* answerable

ADJS 13 **dutiful, duteous;** moral, ethical; conscientious, scrupulous, observant; obedient 326.3; deferential, respectful 155.8

14 **incumbent on** *or* **upon,** chargeable to, behooving

15 **obligatory, binding, imperative,** imperious, peremptory, mandatory, compulsory, must, *de rigueur* <Fr>; **necessary,** required 963.13

16 **obliged, obligated,** obligate, **under obligation; bound, duty-bound,** in duty bound, tied, pledged, committed, saddled, beholden, bounden; **obliged to,** beholden to, bound *or* bounden to, **indebted to**

17 **responsible, answerable; liable, accountable,** incumbent, amenable, unexempt from, chargeable,

on one's head, at one's doorstep, on the hook <nf>; responsible for, at the bottom of; to blame

ADVS **18** **dutifully, duteously, in the line of duty,** as in duty bound; beyond the call of duty

642 PREROGATIVE

NOUNS **1** **prerogative, right, due,** droit; power, authority, prerogative of office; faculty, appurtenance; **claim,** proper claim, demand, **interest, title,** pretension, pretense, prescription; birthright; natural right, presumptive right, inalienable right; divine right; vested right *or* interest; property right; conjugal right

2 **privilege, license, liberty, freedom, immunity;** franchise, patent, copyright, grant, warrant, blank check, carte blanche; favor, indulgence, **special favor,** dispensation

3 **human rights,** rights of man; constitutional rights, rights of citizenship, **civil rights** 430.2, civil liberties; rights of minorities, minority rights; gay rights, gay liberation

4 **women's rights,** rights of women; **feminism, women's liberation,** women's lib <nf>, womanism, women's movement *or* liberation movement, sisterhood

5 **women's rightist, feminist, women's liberationist,** women's liberation advocate *or* adherent *or* activist, womanist, women's libber *and* libber <nf>; suffragette, suffragist

VERBS **6** have *or* claim *or* assert a right, exercise a right; defend a right

643 IMPOSITION

<a putting or inflicting upon>

NOUNS **1** **imposition, infliction,** laying on *or* upon, charging, taxing, tasking; burdening, weighting *or* weighting down, freighting, loading *or* loading down, heaping on *or* upon, imposing an onus; **exaction, demand** 421; unwarranted demand, obtrusiveness, presumptuousness 142.1; inconvenience, trouble, bother, pain <nf>; inconsiderateness 144.3

2 administration, giving, bestowal; applying, application, dosing, dosage, meting out, prescribing; **forcing,** forcing on *or* upon, enforcing

3 **charge, duty, tax,** task; **burden,** weight, freight, cargo, load, onus

VERBS **4** **impose, impose on** *or* **upon, inflict on** *or* **upon, put on** *or* **upon, lay on** *or* **upon,** enjoin; **put, place, set, lay,** put down; **levy, exact, demand** 421.4; **tax,** task, **charge,** burden with, weight *or* freight with, weight down with, yoke with, **fasten upon,** saddle with, stick with <nf>; subject to

5 **inflict, wreak, do to,** bring, bring upon, bring down upon, bring on *or* down on one's head, visit upon

6 **administer, give, bestow; apply, put on** *or* **upon,** lay on *or* upon, dose, dose with, dish out <nf>, mete out, prescribe; **force, force upon,** impose by force *or* main force, strongarm <nf>, force down one's throat, enforce upon

7 **impose on** *or* **upon, take advantage of** 387.16; **presume upon** 640.7; **deceive,** play *or* work on, out on *or* upon, put over *or* across <nf>; palm *or* pass *or* fob off on, fob *or* foist on; shift the blame *or* responsibility, **pass the buck** <nf>

ADJS **8** **imposed, inflicted,** piled *or* heaped on; burdened with, stuck with <nf>; self-inflicted; exacted, demanded

644 PROBITY

NOUNS **1** **probity,** truthfulness, assured probity, **honesty, integrity, rectitude, uprightness,** upstandingness, erectness, **virtue,** virtuousness, **righteousness, goodness;** cleanness, **decency; honor,** honorableness, worthiness, estimableness, reputability, nobility; unimpeachableness, unimpeachability, irreproachableness, irreproachability, blamelessness; immaculacy, unspottedness, stainlessness, pureness, purity; respectability; principles, high principles, high ideals, high-mindedness; **character,** good *or* sterling character, moral strength, moral excellence; **fairness,** justness, justice 649; gentrification

2 **conscientiousness, scrupulousness,** scrupulosity, **scruples,** punctiliousness, meticulousness; scruple, point of honor, punctilio; qualm 325.2; twinge of conscience 113.2; overconscientiousness, overscrupulousness; fastidiousness 495

3 **honesty, veracity,** veraciousness, verity, **truthfulness,** truth, veridicality, truth-telling, truth-speaking; truth-loving; credibility, absolute credibility; objectivity

4 **candor, candidness, frankness,** plain dealing; sincerity, genuineness, authenticity; ingenuousness; artlessness 416; **openness,** openheartedness; freedom, freeness; **unreserve,** unrestraint, unconstraint; **forthrightness, directness, straightforwardness; outspokenness,** plainness, plainspokenness, plain speaking, plain speech, roundness, broadness; **bluntness,** bluffness, brusqueness

5 **undeceptiveness, undeceitfulness, guilelessness**

6 **trustworthiness,** faithworthiness, trustiness, trustability, **reliability, dependability,** dependableness, sureness; answerableness, responsibility 641.2; unfalseness, unperfidiousness, untreacherousness; incorruptibility, inviolability

7 **fidelity, faithfulness, loyalty,** faith; **constancy, steadfastness,** staunchness, firmness; trueness, troth, true blue; good faith, *bona fides* <L>, *bonne foi* <Fr>; **allegiance, fealty, homage;** bond, tie; attachment, adherence, adhesion; devotion, devotedness

8 **person** *or* **man** *or* **woman of honor,** man of his word, woman of her word; gentleman, *gentilhomme* <Fr>, *galantuomo* <Ital>; **honest man,** good man; **lady, real lady; honest woman, good woman;** salt of the earth; square *or* straight shooter *and* straight arrow <nf>; true blue, truepenny; trusty, faithful

VERBS 9 **keep faith,** not fail, **keep one's word** *or* **promise,** keep troth, show good faith, be as good as one's word, one's word is one's bond, redeem one's pledge, play by the rules, acquit oneself, make good; practice what one preaches

10 shoot straight <nf>, draw a straight furrow, **put one's cards on the table,** level with one <nf>, play it straight <nf>, shoot from the hip <nf>

11 **speak** *or* **tell the truth,** speak *or* tell true, paint in its true colors, tell the truth and shame the devil; tell the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, stick to the facts

12 **be frank, speak plainly,** speak out, speak one's mind, say what one thinks, **call a spade a spade,** tell it like it is, make no bones about it, not mince words

ADJS 13 **honest, upright,** uprighteous, **upstanding,** erect, right, **righteous, virtuous, good,** clean, squeaky-clean <nf>, **decent; honorable,** full of integrity, **reputable,** estimable, creditable, worthy, noble, sterling, manly, yeomanly; Christian <nf>; unimpeachable, beyond reproach, irreproachable, squeaky-clean <nf>, blameless, immaculate, spotless, stainless, unstained, unspotted, unblemished, untarnished, unsullied, undefiled, pure; **respectable,** highly respectable; **ethical, moral; principled, high-principled,** high-minded, right-minded; uncorrupt, uncorrupted, inviolate; truehearted, true-blue, true-souled, true-spirited; true-dealing, true-disposing, true-devoted; **law-abiding,** law-loving, law-revering; **fair, just** 649.8

14 **straight, square,** foursquare, straight-arrow <nf>, honest and aboveboard, right as rain; **fair and square; square-dealing,** square-shooting, straight-shooting, up-and-up, **on the up-and-up** *and* **on the level,** *and* on the square <nf>; **aboveboard, open and aboveboard;** bona fide, good-faith; authentic, all wool and a yard wide, veritable, genuine; single-hearted; honest as the day is long

15 **conscientious,** tender-conscienced; **scrupulous,** careful 339.10; punctilious, punctual, meticulous, religious, strict, nice; fastidious 495.9; overconscientious, overscrupulous

16 **honest, veracious, truthful,** true, true to one's word, veridical; truth-telling, truth-speaking, truth-declaring, truth-passing, truth-bearing, truth-loving, truth-seeking, truth-desiring, truth-guarding, truth-filled; true-speaking, true-meaning, true-tongued

17 **candid, frank, sincere,** genuine, ingenuous, frankhearted; **open,** openhearted, transparent, open-faced; artless 416.5; **straightforward, direct,** up-front *and* straight <nf>, **forthright,** downright, straight-out <nf>, straight-from-the-shoulder; plain, broad, round; **unreserved,** unrestrained, unconstrained, unchecked; unguarded, uncalculating; free; **outspoken, plain-spoken,** free-spoken, free-speaking, free-tongued; explicit, unequivocal; **blunt,** bluff, brusque; heart-to-heart

18 **undeceptive, undeceitful, undissembling,** undissimulating, undeceiving, undesigning, uncalculating; **guileless,** unbeguiling, unbeguileful; unassuming, unpretending, unfeigning, undisguising, unflattering; undissimulated, undissembled; unassumed, unaffected, unpretended, unfeigned, undisguised, unvarnished, untrimmed

19 **trustworthy, trusty,** trustable, faithworthy, **reliable, dependable, responsible,** straight <nf>, sure, to be trusted, **to be depended** *or* **relied upon,** to be counted *or* reckoned on, as good as one's word; tried, true, **tried and true,** tested, proven; unfalse, unperfidious, untreacherous; incorruptible, inviolable

20 **faithful, loyal,** devoted, allegiant; **true, true-blue,** true to one's colors; **constant, steadfast,** unswerving, steady, consistent, stable, unfailing, staunch, firm, solid

ADVS 21 **honestly, uprightly, honorably,** upstandingly, erectly, **virtuously, righteously, decently,** worthily, reputably, nobly; unimpeachably, irreproachably, blamelessly, immaculately, unspottedly, stainlessly, purely; high-mindedly, morally; **conscientiously, scrupulously,** punctiliously, meticulously, fastidiously 495.14

22 **truthfully, truly,** veraciously; to tell the truth, to speak truthfully; in truth, in sooth <old>, of a truth, with truth, in good *or* very truth; objectively

23 **candidly, frankly, sincerely,** genuinely, in all seriousness *or* soberness, from the heart, in all conscience; in plain words *or* English, straight from the shoulder, not to mince the matter, not to mince words, without equivocation, with no nonsense, all joking aside *or* apart; **openly,** openheartedly, **unreservedly,** unrestrainedly, unconstrainedly, **forthrightly, directly,**

straightforwardly, outspokenly, plainly, plainspokenly, uninhibitedly, broadly, roundly, **bluntly,** bluffy, brusquely

24 **trustworthily,** trustily, **reliably, dependably, responsibly;** undeceptively, undeceitfully, guilelessly; incorruptibly, inviolably

25 **faithfully, loyally,** devotedly; **constantly, steadfastly,** steadily, responsibly, consistently, unfailingly, unswervingly, staunchly, firmly; in *or* with good faith, *bona fide* <L>

645 IMPROBITY

NOUNS 1 **improbity, untruthfulness, dishonesty,** dishonor; **unscrupulousness,** unconscientiousness; **corruption,** corruptness, corruptedness; **crookedness,** criminality, feloniousness, **fraudulence** *or* fraudulency, underhandedness, unsavoriness, fishiness *and* shadiness <nf>, indirection, shiftiness, slipperiness, deviousness, evasiveness, unstraightforwardness, trickiness

2 **knavery, roguery, rascality**, rascalry, **villainy,** reprobacy, scoundrelism; chicanery 356.4; knavishness, roguishness, scampishness, villainousness; **baseness, vileness**, degradation, turpitude, moral turpitude

3 **deceitfulness; falseness** 354; perjury, forswearing, untruthfulness 354.8, credibility gap; inveracity; mendacity, mendaciousness; **insincerity,** unsincereness, uncandidness, uncandor, unfrankness, disingenuousness; hypocrisy; sharp practice 356.4; fraud 356.8; artfulness, craftiness 415.1; intrigue

4 **untrustworthiness,** unfaithworthiness, untrustiness, **unreliability, undependability,** irresponsibility

5 **infidelity, unfaithfulness,** unfaith, faithlessness, trothlessness; **inconstancy, unsteadfastness,** fickleness; **disloyalty,** unloyalty; **falsity,** falseness, untrueness; disaffection, recreancy, dereliction; bad faith, *mala fides* <L>, Punic faith; breach of promise, breach of trust *or* faith, barratry; breach of confidence

6 **treachery,** treacherousness; **perfidy,** perfidiousness, falseheartedness 354.4, two-facedness, doubleness, sycophancy, false face; **duplicity, double-dealing,** foul play, dirty work *and* dirty pool *and* dirty trick *and* dirty game <nf>; broken promise, breach of promise, breach of faith

7 **treason,** petty treason, misprision of treason, high treason; lese majesty, sedition; quislingism, fifth-column activity; collaboration, fraternization; subversion, subversiveness, subversivism

8 **betrayal,** betrayment, letting down <nf>, **double cross** *and* sellout <nf>, Judas kiss, kiss of death, stab in the back

9 **corruptibility, venality,** bribability, purchasability

10 criminal 660.9, perpetrator, perp <nf>, scoundrel 660.3, traitor 357.10, deceiver 357

VERBS 11 <be dishonest> live by one's wits; shift, shift about, evade; deceive; cheat; falsify; lie; sail under false colors, put on a false face, pass oneself off as

12 **be unfaithful,** not keep faith *or* troth, **go back on** <nf>, **fail,** break one's word *or* promise, renege, go back on one's word <nf>, break faith, betray, perjure *or* forswear oneself; forsake, desert 370.5; pass the buck <nf>; shift the responsibility *or* blame; cheat on *and* two-time <nf>

13 **play one false,** prove false; **stab one in the back,** knife one <nf>; bite the hand that feeds one; play dirty pool <nf>; shift *or* move the goalposts *and* change the rules <nf>

14 **betray, double-cross** *and* two-time <nf>, sell out *and* sell down the river <nf>, turn in; **mislead,** lead one down the garden path; let down *and* let down one's side <nf>; inform on 551.12

15 **act the traitor,** turn against, go over to the enemy, turn one's coat, sell oneself, sell out <nf>; collaborate, fraternize

ADJS 16 **dishonest, dishonorable;** unconscientious, unconscienced, conscienceless, unconscionable, shameless, without shame *or* remorse, **unscrupulous, unprincipled,** unethical, immoral, amoral; **corrupt,** corrupted, rotten; **crooked, criminal,** felonious, **fraudulent,** creative <nf>, underhand, underhanded; shady <nf>, up to no good, not kosher <nf>, unsavory, dark, sinister, insidious, indirect, slippery, devious, tricky, shifty, evasive, unstraightforward; fishy <nf>, questionable, suspicious, doubtful, dubious; ill-gotten, ill-got

17 **knavish, roguish, scampish, rascally, scoundrelly,** blackguardly, villainous, reprobate, recreant, **base, vile,** degraded; **infamous, notorious**

18 **deceitful;** falsehearted; perjured, forsworn, untruthful 354.34; **insincere,** unsincere, uncandid, unfrank, disingenuous; artful, crafty 415.12; calculating, scheming; **tricky,** cute *and* dodgy <nf>, slippery as an eel

19 **untrustworthy,** unfaithworthy, untrusty, trustless, **unreliable, undependable,** fly-by-night, irresponsible, unsure, not to be trusted, not to be depended *or* relied upon

20 **unfaithful,** faithless, of bad faith, trothless; **inconstant, unsteadfast,** fickle; **disloyal,** unloyal; false, **untrue,** not true to; disaffected, recreant, derelict, barratrous; two-timing <nf>

21 **treacherous, perfidious,** falsehearted; **shifty,** slippery, tricky; **double-dealing,** double, ambidextrous; **two-faced**

22 **traitorous,** turncoat, double-crossing *and* two-timing <nf>, betraying; Judas-like, Iscariotic; **treasonable,** treasonous; quisling, quislingistic, fifth-column, Trojan-horse; subversive, seditious

23 **corruptible,** venal, bribable, purchasable, on the pad <nf>, mercenary, hireling

ADVS 24 **dishonestly, dishonorably; unscrupulously,** unconscientiously; **crookedly,** criminally, feloniously, **fraudulently,** underhandedly, like a thief in the night, insidiously, deviously, shiftily, evasively, fishily <nf>, suspiciously, dubiously, by fair means or foul; **deceitfully;** knavishly, roguishly, villainously; basely, vilely; infamously, notoriously

25 **perfidiously,** falseheartedly; **unfaithfully,** faithlessly; **treacherously;** traitorously, treasonably

646 HONOR

<token of esteem>

NOUNS 1 **honor,** great honor, distinction, glory, credit, ornament

2 **award, reward, prize;** first prize, second prize, etc; blue ribbon; consolation prize; booby prize; Nobel Prize, Pulitzer Prize; sweepstakes; jackpot; Oscar, Academy Award, Emmy, Tony; Olympic Gold *or* Silver *or* Bronze medal

3 **trophy,** laurel, **laurels,** bays, palm, palms, crown, chaplet, wreath, garland, **feather in one's cap** <nf>; civic crown *or* garland *or* wreath; **cup,** loving cup, pot <nf>; America's Cup, Old Mug; **belt,** championship belt, black belt, brown belt, etc; banner, flag

4 **citation,** eulogy, mention, honorable mention, kudos, **accolade, tribute, praise** 511.1

5 **decoration,** decoration of honor, order, ornament; ribbon, riband; blue ribbon, *cordon bleu* <Fr>; red ribbon, red ribbon of the Legion of Honor; cordon, grand cordon; garter; star, gold star

6 **medal, military honor** <see list>, order, medallion; military medal, service medal, war medal, soldier's medal; lifesaving medal, Carnegie hero's medal; police citation, departmental citation; spurs, stripes, pips, star, gold star

7 scholarship, fellowship; grant

VERBS 8 **honor, do honor,** pay regard to, give *or* pay *or* render honor to, **recognize; cite; decorate,** pin a medal on; crown, crown with laurel; hand it to *or* take off one's hat to one <nf>, pay tribute, praise 511.5; give credit where credit is due; give one the red carpet treatment, roll out the red carpet

ADJS 9 **honored, distinguished;** laureate, crowned with laurel

10 **honorary, honorific, honorable**

ADVS 11 **with honor,** with distinction; *cum laude, magna cum laude, summa cum laude, insigne cum laude, honoris causa* <all L>

12 **military honors**

Air Medal
Bronze Star Medal
Congressional Medal of Honor
Croix de Guerre <France>
Distinguished Conduct Medal
Distinguished Flying Cross
Distinguished Service Cross
Distinguished Service Medal
Distinguished Service Order
Distinguished Unit Citation
Médaille Militaire <France>
Medal of Honor
Military Cross
Navy Cross
Order of the Purple Heart
Silver Star Medal
Unit Citation
Victoria Cross <Britain>

647 INSIGNIA

NOUNS 1 **insignia, regalia,** ensign, **emblem, badge, symbol,** logo <nf>, marking, attribute; badge of office, mark of office, chain, chain of office, collar; wand, verge, *fasces* <L>, **mace, staff, baton;** livery, uniform, mantle, dress; tartan, tie, old school tie, regimental tie, club tie; ring, school ring, class ring; pin, button, lapel pin *or* button; cap and gown, mortarboard; cockade; brassard; figurehead, eagle; cross 170.4, skull and crossbones, swastika, hammer and sickle, rose, thistle, shamrock, fleur-de-lis; medal, **decoration** 646.5; **heraldry,** armory, blazonry, sigillography, sphragistics

2 <heraldry terms> heraldic device, achievement, bearings, coat of arms, arms, armorial bearings, armory, blazonry, blazon; hatchment; shield, escutcheon, scutcheon, lozenge; charge, field; crest, torse, wreath, garland, bandeau, chaplet, mantling, helmet; crown, coronet; device, motto; pheon, broad arrow; animal charge, lion, unicorn, griffin, yale, cockatrice, falcon, alerion, eagle, spread eagle; marshaling, quartering, impaling, impalement, dimidiating, differencing, difference; ordinary, bar, bend, bar sinister, bend sinister, baton, chevron, chief, cross, fess, pale, paly, saltire; subordinary, billet, bordure, canton, flanch, fret, fusil, gyron, inescutcheon, mascle, orle, quarter, rustre, tressure; fess point, nombril point, honor point; cadency mark, file, label, crescent, mullet, martlet, annulet, fleur-de-lis, rose, cross moline, octofoil; tincture, gules, azure, vert, sable, purpure, tenne; metal, or, argent; fur, ermine, ermines, erminites, erminois, pean, vair; heraldic officials 575.21; Hershey bar *or* pip *or* hash mark <nf>

3 <royal insignia> regalia; scepter, rod, rod of empire; orb; armilla; purple, ermine, robe of state *or* royalty, robes of office; purple pall; crown, royal crown, coronet, tiara, diadem; cap of maintenance

or dignity *or* estate, triple plume, Prince of Wales's feathers; uraeus; seal, signet, great seal, privy seal; throne; badge of office

4 <ecclesiastical insignia> tiara, triple crown; ring, keys; miter, crosier, crook, pastoral staff; pallium; cardinal's hat, red hat

5 <military insignia> insignia of rank, grade insignia, chevron, stripe; star, bar, eagle, spread eagle, chicken <nf>, pip <Brit>, oak leaf; branch of service insignia, insignia of branch *or* arm; unit insignia, organization insignia, shoulder patch, patch; shoulder sleeve insignia, badge, aviation badge *or* wings; parachute badge, submarine badge; service stripe, hash mark <nf>, overseas bar, Hershey bar <nf>; epaulet

6 <national insignia> American eagle, British lion and unicorn, Canadian maple leaf, English rose, French fleur-de-lis, Irish shamrock, Japanese rising sun, Nazi swastika, Roman eagle, Russian bear, Scottish thistle, Soviet hammer and sickle, Swiss cross, Welsh leek *or* daffodil

7 **flag, banner,** oriflamme, **standard,** gonfalon *or* gonfanon, guidon, *vexillum* <L>, *labarum* <L>; **pennant,** pennon, pennoncel, banneret *or* bannerette, banderole, swallowtail, burgee, ensign, **streamer; bunting;** coachwhip, long pennant; **national flag, colors;** royal standard; **ensign,** merchant flag, jack, Jolly Roger, black flag; house flag; <US> Old Glory, Stars and Stripes, Star-Spangled Banner, red, white, and blue; <Confederacy> Stars and Bars; <France> tricolor, *le drapeau tricolore* <Fr>; <Britain> Union Jack, Union Flag, white *or* red *or* blue ensign; yellow flag, white flag; vexillology; signal, flag 517.15

648 TITLE

<appellation of dignity or distinction>

NOUNS **1** **title, honorific, honor,** title of honor; **handle** *and* handle to one's name <nf>; courtesy title

2 <honorifics> Excellency, Eminence, Reverence, Grace, Honor, Worship, Your *or* His *or* Her Excellency; Lord, My Lord, milord, Lordship, Your *or* His Lordship; Lady, My Lady, milady, Ladyship, Your *or* Her Ladyship; Highness, Royal Highness, Imperial Highness, Serene Highness, Your *or* His *or* Her Highness; Majesty, Royal Majesty, Imperial Majesty, Serene Majesty, Your *or* His *or* Her Majesty

3 Sir, sire, sirrah; Esquire; Master, Mister 76.7; mirza, effendi, sirdar, emir, khan, sahib

4 Mistress, madame 77.9

5 <ecclesiastical titles> Reverend, His Reverence, His Grace; Monsignor; Holiness, His Holiness; Dom, Brother, Sister, Father, Mother; Rabbi

6 **degree, academic degree** <see list>; **bachelor,** baccalaureate, *baccalaureus* <L>, bachelor's degree; **master,** master's degree; **doctor,** doctorate, doctor's degree

ADJS **7** **titular,** titulary; honorific; honorary

8 the Noble, the Most Noble, the Most Excellent, the Most Worthy, the Most Worshipful; the Honorable, the Most Honorable, the Right Honorable; the Reverend, the Very Reverend, the Right Reverend, the Most Reverend

9 **academic degrees**

AA *or* Associate of Arts
AAS *or* Associate in Applied Science
AB *or* Bachelor of Arts <Artium Baccalaureus>
ABLS *or* Bachelor of Arts in Library Science
AdjA *or* Adjunct in Arts
AM *or* Master of Arts <Artium Magister>
AMusD *or* Doctor of Musical Arts
AN *or* Associate in Nursing
ArtsD *or* Doctor of Arts
AS *or* Associate of Science
BA *or* Bachelor of Arts
BAE *or* Bachelor of Arts in Education
BAN *or* Bachelor of Arts in Nursing
BBA *or* Bachelor of Business Administration
BCE *or* Bachelor of Chemical Engineering
BCL *or* Bachelor of Civil Law
BD *or* Bachelor of Divinity
BFA *or* Bachelor of Fine Arts
BLitt *or* Blit *or* Bachelor of Literature
BMus *or* Bachelor of Music
BNS *or* Bachelor of Naval Science
BPhil *or* Bachelor of Philosophy
BS *or* Bachelor of Science
BSArch *or* Bachelor of Science in Architecture
ChD *or* Doctor of Chemistry
DD *or* Doctor of Divinity
DDS *or* Doctor of Dental Surgery
DEd *or* Doctor of Education
DJ *or* Djur *or* Doctor of Jurisprudence
DJS *or* D.Jur.Sc. *or* Doctor of Juridical Science
DLit *or* Dlitt *or* Doctor of Letters
DMD *or* Doctor of Dental Medicine
DMin *or* Doctor of Ministry
DMus *or* Doctor of Music
DO *or* Doctor of Osteopathy
DPH *or* Doctor of Public Health
DPhil *or* Doctor of Philosophy <Brit>
DS *or* Doctor of Science
DSC *or* Doctor of Surgical Chiropody
EdD *or* Doctor of Education
EdS *or* Education Specialist
JCD *or* Doctor of Canon Law
JD *or* Doctor of Jurisprudence
LittD *or* Doctor of Letters
LLB *or* Bachelor of Laws
LLD *or* Doctor of Laws
LLM *or* Master of Laws
MA *or* Master of Arts
MALS *or* Master of Arts in Library Science
MArch *or* Master of Architecture
MAT *or* Master of Arts in Teaching
MB *or* Bachelor of Medicine <Brit>
MBA *or* Master in Business Administration
MD *or* Doctor of Medicine
MDiv *or* Master of Divinity

MEd *or* Master of Education
MFA *or* Master of Fine Arts
MLitt *or* Master of Literature
MLS *or* Master of Library Science
MPhil *or* Master of Philosophy
MRE *or* Master of Religious Education
MS *or* Master of Science
MSW *or* Master of Social Work
MusD *or* Doctor of Music
OD *or* Doctor of Optometry
PharD *or* PharmD *or* Doctor of Pharmacy
PhD *or* Doctor of Philosophy
SB *or* Bachelor of Science
ScD *or* SD *or* Doctor of Science
SM *or* Master of Science
STD *or* Doctor of Sacred Theology
ThB *or* Bachelor of Theology
ThD *or* Doctor of Theology
ThM *or* Master of Theology
VMD *or* Doctor of Veterinary Medicine

649 JUSTICE

NOUNS 1 **justice, justness; equity,** equitableness, level playing field <nf>; **evenhandedness,** measure for measure, give-and-take; balance, equality 790; **right, rightness,** rightfulness, meetness, properness, propriety, what is right; dueness 639; justification, **justifiableness,** justifiability, warrantedness, warrantability, defensibility; poetic justice; retributive justice, nemesis; summary justice, drumhead justice, rude justice; scales of justice; lawfulness, legality 673

2 "truth in action"—Disraeli, "the firm and continuous desire to render to everyone that which is his due"—Justinian, "the ligament which holds civilized beings and civilized nations together"—Daniel Webster

3 **fairness,** fair-mindedness, candor; the fair thing, the right *or* proper thing, the handsome thing <nf>; level playing field, **square deal** *and* **fair shake** <nf>; **fair play,** cricket <nf>; sportsmanship, good sportsmanship, sportsmanliness, sportsmanlikeness

4 **impartiality,** detachment, **dispassion,** loftiness, Olympian detachment, **dispassionateness, disinterestedness,** disinterest, unbias, unbiasedness, a fair field and no favor; **neutrality** 467; selflessness, unselfishness 652

5 <personifications> Justice, Justitia, blind *or* blindfolded Justice; Rhadamanthus, Minos; <deities> Jupiter Fidius, Deus Fidius; Fides, Fides publica Romani, Fides populi Romani; Nemesis, Dike, Themis; Astraea

VERBS 6 **be just, be fair,** do the fair thing, do the handsome thing <nf>, do right, be righteous, do it fair and square, do the right thing by; **do justice to,** see justice done, see one righted *or* redressed, redress a wrong *or* an injustice, remedy an injustice, serve one right, shoot straight with *and* **give a square deal** *or* **fair shake** <nf>; give the Devil his due; give and take; bend *or* lean over backwards, go out of one's way, go the extra mile <nf>

7 **play fair, play the game** <nf>, be a good sport, show a proper spirit; judge on its own merits, hold no brief

ADJS 8 **just, fair,** square, **fair and square; equitable,** balanced, level <nf>, **even,** evenhanded; **right, rightful;** justifiable, justified, warranted, warrantable, defensible; **due** 639.7,10, deserved, merited; meet, meet and right, right and proper, fit, **proper, good,** as it should *or* ought to be; lawful, legal 673.11

9 fair-minded; **sporting,** sportsmanly, sportsmanlike; square-dealing *and* square-shooting <nf>

10 **impartial, impersonal, evenhanded,** equitable, **dispassionate, disinterested,** detached, objective, lofty, Olympian; **unbiased,** uninfluenced, unswayed; **neutral** 467.7; selfless, unselfish 652.5

ADVS 11 **justly, fairly,** fair, in a fair manner; rightfully, rightly, duly, deservedly, meetly, properly; **equitably, equally, evenly,** upon even terms; justifiedly, justifiably, warrantably, warrantedly; **impartially, impersonally, dispassionately, disinterestedly,** without distinction, without regard *or* respect to persons, without fear or favor

12 **in justice,** in equity, in reason, in all conscience, in all fairness, **to be fair,** as is only fair *or* right, as is right *or* just *or* fitting *or* proper

650 INJUSTICE

NOUNS 1 **injustice, unjustness; inequity,** iniquity, inequitableness, iniquitousness; inequality 791, inequality of treatment *or* dealing; **wrong, wrongness,** wrongfulness, unmeetness, improperness, **impropriety;** undueness 640; what should not be, what ought not *or* must not be; unlawfulness, illegality 674

2 **unfairness;** unsportsmanliness, **unsportsmanlikeness;** foul play, foul, a hit below the belt, dirty pool <nf>

3 **partiality, onesidedness; bias,** leaning, inclination, tendentiousness; undispassionateness, undetachment, interest, involvement, **partisanism,** partisanship, *parti pris* <Fr>, *Tendenz* <Ger>; unneutrality; **slant,** angle, spin <nf>; **favoritism,** preference, nepotism; unequal *or* preferential treatment, discrimination, unjust legal disability, inequality

4 **injustice, wrong, injury,** grievance, disservice; raw *or* rotten deal *and* bad rap <nf>; imposition; mockery *or* miscarriage of justice; great wrong, grave *or* gross injustice; atrocity, outrage

5 **unjustifiability, unwarrantability,** indefensibility;

inexcusability, unconscionableness, **unpardonability,** unforgivableness, inexpiableness, irremissibility

VERBS 6 not play fair, hit below the belt, give a raw deal *or* rotten deal *or* bad rap <nf>

7 **do one an injustice,** wrong, do wrong, do wrong by, **do one a wrong,** do a disservice; do a great wrong, do a grave *or* gross injustice, commit an atrocity *or* outrage

8 **favor,** prefer, show preference, **play favorites,** treat unequally, discriminate; **slant,** angle, put on spin <nf>

ADJS 9 **unjust, inequitable,** unequitable, iniquitous, **unbalanced, discriminatory, uneven, unequal** 791.4; **wrong, wrongful,** unrightful; **undue** 640.9, unmeet, undeserved, unmerited; unlawful, illegal 674.6

10 **unfair,** not fair; **unsporting,** unsportsmanly, **unsportsmanlike,** not done, not kosher <nf>, not cricket <Brit nf>; **dirty** <nf>, foul, below the belt; sexist

11 **partial, interested,** involved, **partisan,** unneutral, **one-sided,** all on *or* way over to one side, undetached, unobjective, **undispassionate, biased,** tendentious, tendential, warped, influenced, swayed, slanted

12 **unjustifiable, unwarrantable,** unallowable, unreasonable, indefensible; **inexcusable,** unconscionable, **unpardonable, unforgivable,** inexpiable, irremissible

ADVS 13 **unjustly, unfairly;** wrongfully, wrongly, undeservedly; inequitably, iniquitously, unequally, unevenly; partially, interestedly, one-sidedly, undispassionately; **unjustifiably, unwarrantably,** unallowably, unreasonably, indefensibly; inexcusably, unconscionably, unpardonably, unforgivably, inexpiably, irremissibly

651 SELFISHNESS

NOUNS 1 **selfishness,** selfism, **self-seeking,** self-serving, self-pleasing, **self-indulgence,** hedonism; self-advancement, self-promotion, self-advertisement; **careerism,** personal ambition; **narcissism, self-love,** self-devotion, self-jealousy, **self-consideration,** self-solicitude, self-sufficiency, self-absorption, ego trip, self-occupation; self-containment, self-isolation; autism, catatonia, remoteness 583.2; **self-interest,** self-concern, self-interestedness, interest; self-esteem, self-admiration 140.1; **self-centeredness, self-obsession, narcissism, egotism** 140.3; **avarice, greed,** graspingness, grabbiness <nf>, acquisitiveness, possessiveness, covetousness; **individualism** 430.5, personalism, privatism, private *or* personal desires, private *or* personal aims; looking out for number one

2 **ungenerousness, unmagnanimousness, illiberality,** meanness, smallness, littleness, paltriness, minginess, pettiness; **niggardliness, stinginess** 484.3

3 **self-seeker,** self-pleaser, self-advancer; member of the me generation; **narcissist, egotist** 140.5; timepleaser, timeserver, temporizer; fortune hunter, moneygrubber, tufthunter, name-dropper; self-server, careerist; opportunist; monopolist, hog, road hog; dog in the manger; **individualist,** loner *and* lone wolf <nf>

VERBS 4 **please oneself,** gratify oneself; ego-trip *and* be *or* go on an ego trip <nf>, be full of oneself; indulge *or* pamper *or* coddle oneself, consult one's own wishes, look after one's own interests, know which side one's bread is buttered on, take care of *or* look out for number one *or* numero uno <nf>, think only of oneself; want everything, have one's cake and eat it; covet; monopolize, hog

ADJS 5 **selfish, self-seeking, self-serving,** self-advancing, self-promoting, self-advertising, careerist, opportunistic, ambitious for self, **self-indulgent,** self-pleasing, hedonistic, self-jealous, self-sufficient, **self-interested,** self-considerative, self-besot, self-devoted, self-occupied, self-absorbed, wrapped up in oneself, self-contained, autistic, remote 583.6; self-esteeming, self-admiring 140.8; **self-centered, self-obsessed, narcissistic, egotistical** 140.10; possessive; **avaricious, greedy,** covetous, grasping, graspy *and* grabby <nf>, acquisitive; **individualistic,** personalistic, privatistic

6 **ungenerous, illiberal,** unchivalrous, mean, small, little, paltry, mingy, petty; **niggardly, stingy** 484.9

ADVS 7 **selfishly, for oneself,** in one's own interest, from selfish *or* interested motives, to gain some private ends

652 UNSELFISHNESS

NOUNS 1 **unselfishness, selflessness;** self-subjection, self-subordination, self-suppression, self-abasement, self-effacement; **humility** 137; modesty 139; self-neglect, self-neglectfulness, self-forgetfulness; **self-renunciation,** self-renouncement; **self-denial,** self-abnegation, self-effacement; **self-sacrifice,** sacrifice, self-immolation, self-devotion, devotion, dedication, commitment, consecration; disinterest, disinterestedness; unpossessiveness, unacquisitiveness; **altruism** 143.4; martyrdom

2 **magnanimity,** magnanimousness, greatness of spirit *or* soul, **generosity,** generousness,

openhandedness, **liberality,** liberalness; **bigness, bigheartedness,** greatheartedness, largeheartedness, big *or* large *or* great heart, greatness of heart; noble-mindedness, **high-mindedness, idealism; benevolence** 143.4; **nobleness,** nobility, princeliness, greatness, **loftiness,** elevation, exaltation, sublimity; chivalry, chivalrousness, knightliness, errantry, knight-errantry; heroism; consideration, considerateness, compassion

VERBS **3** not have a selfish bone in one's body, think only of others; be generous to a fault; put oneself out, go out of the way, lean over backwards; sacrifice, make a sacrifice; subject oneself, subordinate oneself, abase oneself; show compassion; take a backseat

4 observe the golden rule, do as one would be done by, do unto others as you would have others do unto you

ADJS **5** **unselfish, selfless;** self-unconscious, self-forgetful, self-abasing, self-effacing; **altruistic** 143.15, **humble; unpretentious, modest** 139.9; self-neglectful, self-neglecting; **self-denying,** self-renouncing, self-abnegating, self-abnegatory, self-effacing; **self-sacrificing,** self-immolating, sacrificing, self-devotional, self-devoted, devoted, dedicated, committed, consecrated, unsparing of self, disinterested; unpossessive, unacquisitive; ready to die for, martyred

6 **magnanimous,** great-souled *or* -spirited; **generous,** generous to a fault, openhanded, **liberal; big, bighearted,** greathearted, largehearted, great of heart *or* soul; noble-minded, **high-minded, idealistic; benevolent** 143.15, **noble,** princely, handsome, great, high, elevated, **lofty,** exalted, sublime; chivalrous, knightly; heroic

ADVS **7** **unselfishly, altruistically,** forgetful of self; for others

8 **magnanimously, generously,** openhandedly, **liberally; bigheartedly,** greatheartedly, largeheartedly; **nobly,** handsomely; chivalrously, knightly

653 VIRTUE

<moral goodness>

NOUNS **1** **virtue, virtuousness, goodness, righteousness,** rectitude, right conduct *or* behavior, the straight and narrow, the right thing, integrity; probity 644; **morality,** moral fiber *or* rectitude *or* virtue *or* excellence, morale; **saintliness,** saintlikeness, angelicalness; **godliness** 692.2

2 "victorious resistance to one's vital desire to do this, that or the other"—James Branch Cabell, "to do unwitnessed what we should be capable of doing before all the world"—La Rochefoucauld

3 **purity,** immaculacy, immaculateness, spotlessness, unspottedness; upstandingness; **uncorruptness,** uncorruptedness, incorruptness; **unsinfulness, sinlessness,** unwickedness, uniniquitousness; undegenerateness, undepravedness, undissoluteness, undebauchedness; **chastity** 664; guiltlessness, innocence 657

4 **cardinal virtues,** natural virtues; prudence, justice, temperance, fortitude; theological virtues *or* supernatural virtues; faith, hope, charity *or* love

VERBS **5** **be good,** do no evil, do the right thing; keep in the right path, walk the straight path, follow the straight and narrow, keep on the straight and narrow way *or* path, fly right, resist temptation; fight the good fight

ADJS **6** **virtuous, good, moral; upright, honest** 644.13,14,16; **righteous,** just, straight, rightminded, right-thinking; **angelic,** seraphic; **saintly,** saintlike; **godly** 692.9; irreproachable

7 **chaste, immaculate, spotless, pure** 664.4; **clean,** squeaky-clean <nf>; guiltless, **innocent** 657.6; pure as the driven snow

8 **uncorrupt,** uncorrupted, incorrupt, incorrupted; **unsinful,** sinless; **unwicked,** uniniquitous, unerring, unfallen; undegenerate, undepraved, undemoralized, undissolute, undebauched

654 VICE

<moral badness>

NOUNS **1** **vice,** viciousness; criminality, **wrongdoing** 655; **immorality,** unmorality, **evil; amorality** 636.4; **unvirtuousness,** ungoodness; **unrighteousness, ungodliness,** unsaintliness, unangelicalness; **uncleanness, impurity, unchastity** 665, fallenness, fallen state, lapsedness; waywardness, wantonness, prodigality; delinquency, moral delinquency; peccability; backsliding, recidivism; **evil nature, carnality** 663.2

2 **vice, weakness,** weakness of the flesh, **flaw,** moral flaw *or* blemish, **frailty, infirmity; failing,** failure; weak point, weak side, foible; bad habit, besetting sin; **fault, imperfection** 1003; laxity, lack of principle

3 **iniquity, evil,** bad, wrong, error, obliquity, villainy, knavery, reprobacy, peccancy, **abomination, atrocity, infamy,** shame, disgrace, scandal, unforgivable *or* cardinal *or* mortal sin, **sin** 655.2; seven deadly sins, pride, covetousness *or* avarice, lust, anger, gluttony, envy, sloth

4 **wickedness, badness,** naughtiness, **evilness, viciousness, sinfulness, iniquitousness,** wicked ways; **baseness,** rankness, **vileness,** foulness, arrantness, nefariousness, **heinousness,**

infamousness, villainousness, flagitiousness; fiendishness, hellishness; devilishness, devilry, deviltry

5 **turpitude, moral turpitude; corruption,** corruptedness, corruptness, rottenness, moral pollution *or* pollutedness, lack *or* absence of moral fiber; **decadence** *or* decadency, debasement, **degradation,** demoralization, abjection; **degeneracy,** degenerateness, degeneration, reprobacy, **depravity,** depravedness, depravation, corruption, perversion; **dissoluteness, profligacy;** abandonment, abandon; notoriety

6 **obduracy, hardheartedness, hardness, callousness,** heartlessness, hardness of heart, heart of stone

7 **sewer, gutter, pit, sink, sink of corruption,** sinkhole; **den of iniquity,** den, **fleshpot,** hellhole; hole *and* joint *and* the pits <nf>; Sodom, Gomorrah, Babylon; **brothel** 665.9; road to hell; hellhole

VERBS 8 **do wrong, sin** 655.5; misbehave, misdemean *and* misdo <old>

9 **go wrong,** stray, go astray, **err,** deviate, deviate from the path of virtue, leave the straight and narrow, step out of line, get *or* go off base <nf>; **fall,** fall from grace, **lapse,** slip, trip; **degenerate; go to the bad** 395.24, go to the dogs; **relapse,** recidivate, backslide 394.4

10 **corrupt; sully, soil, defile;** demoralize, vitiate; mislead; seduce, tempt

ADJS 11 vice-prone, vice-laden, vicious, **steeped in vice; immoral,** unmoral; **amoral,** nonmoral; unethical

12 **unvirtuous,** virtueless, ungood; **unrighteous, ungodly,** unsaintly, unangelic; morally weak, lax; **unclean, impure,** spotted, flawed, blemished, maculate <old>, **unchaste** 665.23; fleshly, carnal 663.6, wayward, wanton, prodigal; erring, **fallen, lapsed,** postlapsarian; frail, weak, infirm; Adamic; peccable; **relapsing, backsliding,** recidivist, recidivistic; of easy virtue 665.26

13 **diabolic, diabolical, devilish,** demonic, demoniac, demoniacal, **satanic,** Mephistophelian; **fiendish,** fiendlike; **hellish,** hellborn, **infernal**

14 **corrupt,** corrupted, vice-corrupted, polluted, morally polluted, rotten, tainted, contaminated, vitiated; warped, perverted; **decadent,** debased, degraded, reprobate, **depraved, debauched, dissolute, degenerate,** profligate, abandoned, gone to the bad *or* dogs, sunk *or* steeped in iniquity, rotten at *or* to the core, in the sewer *or* gutter

15 **evil-minded,** evilhearted, **blackhearted; base-minded,** low-minded; low-thoughted, dirty *or* dirty-minded <nf>; crooked

16 **wicked, evil, vicious, bad, naughty, wrong, sinful, iniquitous,** peccant, reprobate; dark, black; **base, low, vile,** foul, rank, flagrant, arrant, nefarious, **heinous,** villainous, criminal, up to no good, knavish, flagitious; abominable, atrocious, monstrous, unspeakable, execrable, damnable; shameful, disgraceful, scandalous, **infamous, unpardonable,** unforgivable; **improper,** reprehensible, blamable, blameworthy, unworthy

17 **hardened, hard, case-hardened, obdurate,** inured, indurated; **callous,** calloused, **seared; hardhearted,** heartless; **shameless,** lost to shame, blind to virtue, lost to all sense of honor, conscienceless, unblushing, **brazen**

18 **irreclaimable,** irredeemable, unredeemable, unregenerate, **irreformable,** incorrigible, past praying for; shriftless, graceless; **lost**

ADVS 19 **wickedly, evilly, sinfully, iniquitously,** peccantly, **viciously;** basely, vilely, foully, rankly, arrantly, flagrantly, flagitiously

655 WRONGDOING

NOUNS 1 **wrongdoing, evildoing, wickedness,** misdoing <old>, wrong conduct, **misbehavior** 322, **misconduct,** misdemeaning, misfeasance, malfeasance, malversation, **malpractice,** evil courses, machinations of the devil; **sin,** "the transgression of the law"—Bible; **crime, criminality,** lawbreaking, feloniousness, trespass, offense, transgression, infringement, infraction, breach, encroachment; criminal tendency; habitual criminality, criminosis; viciousness, **vice** 654; misprision, negative *or* positive misprision, misprision of treason *or* felony

2 **misdeed, misdemeanor,** misfeasance, malfeasance, malefaction, criminal *or* guilty *or* sinful act, **offense,** injustice, injury, **wrong, iniquity, evil,** peccancy, *malum* <L>; tort; **error, fault,** breach; **impropriety,** slight *or* minor wrong, venial sin, **indiscretion,** peccadillo, misstep, trip, slip, lapse; **transgression,** trespass; **sin; cardinal** *or* **deadly** *or* **mortal sin,** grave *or* heavy sin, unutterable sin, unpardonable *or* unforgivable *or* inexpiable sin, original sin, capital sin, carnal sin; sin against the Holy Ghost; sin of commission; sin of omission, nonfeasance, omission, failure, dereliction, delinquency; **crime, felony;** capital crime; white-collar crime, execu-crime; computer crime; copycat crime <nf>; war crime, crime against humanity, genocide; **outrage, atrocity,** enormity

3 **original sin,** fall from grace, fall, fall of man, fall of Adam *or* Adam's fall, sin of Adam

VERBS 4 **do wrong,** do amiss, misdo <old>, misdemean oneself, **misbehave** 322.4, **err,** offend; **sin,** commit sin; **transgress,** trespass

ADJS 5 **wrongdoing, evildoing,** malefactory, malfeasant; **wrong,** iniquitous, **sinful, wicked** 654.16; **criminal,** felonious, criminous <old>; crime-infested, crime-ridden

656 GUILT

NOUNS **1** **guilt, guiltiness; criminality,** peccancy; guilty *or* wrongful *or* criminal involvement; **culpability,** reprehensibility, blamability, blameworthiness; chargeability, answerability, much to answer for; censurability, censurableness, reproachability, reproachableness, reprovability, reprovableness, inculpation, implication, involvement, complicity, impeachability, impeachableness, indictability, indictableness, arraignability, arraignableness; bloodguilt *or* -guiltiness, red-handedness, dirty hands, red *or* bloody hands, "hangman's hands"—Shakespeare; much to answer for; **ruth,** ruefulness, remorse, guilty conscience, guilt feelings; onus, burden

VERBS **2** be guilty, look guilty, have no alibi, look like the cat that swallowed the canary, blush, stammer; have on one's hands *or* to one's discredit, have much to answer for; have a red face; be caught in the act *or* flatfooted *or* redhanded, be caught with one's pants down *or* with one's hand in the till *or* with one's hand in the cookie jar <nf>

ADJS **3** **guilty,** guilty as hell, peccant, **criminal, to blame, at fault,** faulty, in the wrong, on one's head; **culpable,** reprehensible, censurable, reproachable, reprovable, inculpated, implicated, involved, impeachable, indictable, arraignable; red-handed, bloodguilty; caught in the act *or* flatfooted *or* red-handed, caught with one's pants down *or* with one's hand in the till *or* with one's hand in the cookie jar <nf>

ADVS **4** **red-handed,** red-hand, **in the act,** in the very act, *in flagrante delicto* <L>

5 **guilty,** shamefacedly, sheepishly, with a guilty conscience

657 INNOCENCE

NOUNS **1** **innocence,** innocency, innocentness; unfallen *or* unlapsed *or* prelapsarian state, state of grace; unguiltiness, **guiltlessness,** faultlessness, blamelessness, reproachlessness, **sinlessness,** offenselessness; **spotlessness,** stainlessness, taintlessness, unblemishedness; **purity,** cleanness, cleanliness, whiteness, immaculateness, immaculacy, impeccability; clean hands, clean slate, clear conscience, nothing to hide

2 childlikeness 416.1; lamblikeness, dove-likeness, angelicness; unacquaintance with evil, uncorruptedness, incorruptness, pristineness, undefiledness; naiveté

3 **inculpability,** unblamability, unblamableness, **unblameworthiness,** irreproachability, irreproachableness, impeccability, impeccableness, unexceptionability, unexceptionableness, **irreprehensibility,** irreprehensibleness, uncensurability, uncensurableness, unimpeachability, unimpeachableness, unindictableness, unarraignableness

4 **innocent,** baby, babe, babe in arms, newborn babe, infant, babe in the woods, child, mere child, lamb, dove, angel; virgin

VERBS **5** know no wrong, have clean hands, have a clear conscience, look as if butter would not melt in one's mouth; have nothing to hide

ADJS **6** **innocent;** unfallen, unlapsed, prelapsarian; **unguilty,** not guilty, **guiltless, faultless, blameless,** reproachless, **sinless,** offenseless, with clean hands, "blameless in life and pure of crime"—Horace; clear, in the clear; without reproach, *sans reproche* <Fr>; innocent as a lamb, lamblike, dovelike, angelic, childlike 416.5; unacquainted with *or* untouched by evil, uncorrupted, incorrupt, pristine, undefiled; innocuous

7 **spotless,** stainless, taintless, unblemished, unspotted, **untainted, unsoiled, unsullied, undefiled; pure, clean, immaculate,** impeccable, white, pure *or* white as driven snow, squeaky-clean <nf>

8 **inculpable,** unblamable, unblameworthy, **irreproachable,** beyond reproach, irreprovable, **irreprehensible,** uncensurable, unimpeachable, unindictable, unarraignable, unobjectionable, unexceptionable, above suspicion, squeaky-clean <nf>, with clean hands

ADVS **9** **innocently, guiltlessly, unguiltily,** with a clear conscience; **unknowingly,** unconsciously, unawares

658 ATONEMENT

NOUNS **1** **atonement, reparation, amends,** making amends, **restitution, propitiation, expiation, redress, recompense,** compensation, setting right, making right *or* good, making up, squaring, redemption, reclamation, satisfaction, quittance; making it quits; indemnity, indemnification; compromise, composition; expiatory offering *or* sacrifice, piaculum, peace offering; eye for an eye, measure for measure; conciliation, propitiation

2 **apology, excuse,** regrets; acknowledgment, penitence, contrition, breast-beating, *mea culpa* <L>, confession 351.3; abject apology

3 **penance,** penitence, repentance; penitential act *or* exercise, **mortification,** maceration, flagellation, lustration; sacrifice, offering, peace offering; **asceticism** 667, **fasting** 515; **purgation,** purgatory; **sackcloth and ashes;** hair shirt; **Lent;** Day of Atonement, Yom Kippur

VERBS **4** **atone, atone for, propitiate, expiate,** compensate, restitute, recompense, redress, redeem, repair, satisfy, give satisfaction, **make amends, make reparation** *or* **compensation** *or* **expiation** *or* **restitution,** make good *or* right, rectify, set right, **make up for,** make matters up, square, square things, make it quits, pay the forfeit *or* penalty, pay one's dues <nf>, pay back, wipe off old scores; wipe the slate clean; set one's house in order; live down, unlive; reconcile, propitiate

5 **apologize, beg pardon, ask forgiveness,** beg indulgence, express regret; take back; get *or* fall down on one's knees, get down on one's marrowbones <nf>, come hat in hand; confess, admit

6 **do penance,** flagellate oneself, mortify oneself, mortify one's flesh, make oneself miserable, shrive oneself, purge oneself, cleanse oneself of guilt, stand in a white sheet, repent in sackcloth and ashes, wear a hair shirt, wear sackcloth *or* sackcloth and ashes; receive absolution; regret, show remorse *or* compunction

ADJS **7** **atoning, propitiatory, expiatory,** piacular, reparative, reparatory, restitutive, restitutory, restitutional, redressing, recompensing, compensatory, compensational, righting, squaring, conciliatory; redemptive, redeeming, reclamatory, satisfactional; **apologetic, apologetical;** repentant, repenting; **penitential,** purgative, purgatorial; lustral, lustrative, lustrational, cleansing, purifying; ascetic

659 GOOD PERSON

NOUNS **1** good person, fine person, good *or* fine man *or* woman *or* child, worthy, prince, nature's nobleman *or* -woman, man *or* woman after one's own heart; *persona grata* <L>, acceptable person; **good fellow,** capital fellow, **good sort,** right sort, a decent sort of fellow, good lot <Brit nf>, no end of a fellow; real person, real man *or* woman, mensch <nf>; **gentleman,** perfect gentleman, a gentleman and a scholar; **lady,** perfect lady; **gem,** jewel, pearl, diamond; rough diamond, diamond in the rough; honest man 644.8

2 <nf terms> **good guy,** crackerjack, brick, trump, good egg, stout fellow, nice guy, Mr Nice Guy, good Joe, likely lad, no slouch, doll, living doll, pussycat, **sweetheart, sweetie**

3 **good** *or* **respectable citizen,** excellent *or* exemplary citizen, good neighbor, burgher, taxpayer, **pillar of society,** pillar of the church, salt of the earth; Christian *and* true Christian <nf>

4 **paragon, ideal,** beau ideal, nonpareil, person to look up to, *chevalier sans peur et sans reproche* <Fr>, **good example, role model,** shining example; exemplar, epitome; **model, pattern, standard,** norm, mirror; *Übermensch* <Ger; Nietzsche>; **standout,** one in a thousand *or* ten thousand, man of men, a man among men, woman of women, a woman among women

5 **hero, god, demigod,** phoenix; **heroine, goddess,** demigoddess; **idol**

6 holy man; great soul, mahatma; guru, *rishi* <Skt>; *starets* <Russ>; saint, angel 679

660 BAD PERSON

NOUNS **1** bad person, bad man *or* woman *or* child, unworthy *or* disreputable person, unworthy, disreputable, **undesirable,** *persona non grata* <L>, unacceptable *or* unwanted *or* objectionable person, baddy *and* wrongo *and* bad news <nf>; bad example

2 **wretch,** mean *or* miserable wretch, **beggarly fellow, beggar, blighter** <Brit nf>; **bum** *and* bummer *and* lowlifer *and* lowlife *and* **mucker** <nf>, caitiff, *budmash* <India>, pilgarlic; devil, **poor devil,** *pauvre diable* <Fr>, poor creature, *mauvais sujet* <Fr>; **sad case,** sad sack *and* sad sack of shit <nf>; **good-for-nothing, good-for-naught, no-good** <nf>, **ne'er-do-well,** wastrel, *vaurien* <Fr>, worthless fellow; **derelict,** skid-row bum, Bowery bum, tramp, hobo, beachcomber, **drifter,** drunkard, vagrant, vag <nf>, vagabond, truant, stiff *and* bindlestiff <nf>, swagman *or* sundowner <Austral>; human wreck

3 **rascal,** precious rascal, rogue, knave, **scoundrel,** villain, blackguard, **scamp, scalawag** <nf>, spalpeen <Ir>, rapscallion, **devil;** shyster; sneak

4 **reprobate,** recreant, **miscreant,** bad *or* sorry lot <Brit nf>, bad egg *and* wrongo *and* wrong number <nf>, bad'un *or* wrong'un <Brit nf>; scapegrace, black sheep; lost soul, lost sheep, *âme damnée* <Fr>, backslider, recidivist, fallen angel; degenerate, pervert; profligate, **lecher** 665.11; trollop, **whore** 665.14,16; **pimp** 665.18

5 <nf terms> **asshole, prick, bastard, son of a bitch** *or* SOB, **jerk, horse's ass,** creep, motherfucker, mother, dork, **shit,** turd, birdturd, shithead, shitface, cuntface, dickhead, fart, **louse, meanie, heel, shitheel, rat, stinker,** stinkard, pill, bugger, dirtbag, geek, dweeb, nerd, twerp, sleaze, sleazoid, sleazebag, bad lot <Brit>; **hood, hooligan** 593.4

6 beast, **animal; cur,** dog, hound, whelp, mongrel; **reptile,** viper, serpent, snake; vermin, varmint <nf>, hyena; **swine,** pig; **skunk,** polecat; insect, worm

7 cad, bounder *and* rotter <nf>

8 **wrongdoer, malefactor, sinner,** transgressor, delinquent; malfeasor, misfeasor, nonfeasor; misdemeanant, misdemeanist; **culprit, offender; evil person, evil man** *or* **woman** *or* **child, evildoer** 593

9 **criminal, felon, perpetrator, crook** *and* perp <nf>, public enemy, **lawbreaker,** scofflaw; **gangster** *and* mobster *and* wiseguy <nf>, **racketeer; swindler** 357.3; thief 483; thug 593.3; **desperado,** desperate criminal; **outlaw,** fugitive, **convict,** jailbird, gaolbird <Brit>; gallows bird <nf>; **traitor,** betrayer, quisling, Judas, double-dealer, two-timer <nf>, **deceiver** 357; stalker

10 **the underworld,** gangland, gangdom, **organized crime,** organized crime family, the rackets, the mob, the syndicate, the Mafia, Cosa Nostra, Black Hand; **gangsterism; gangster,** ganglord, gangleader, caporegime *or* capo, button man, soldier

11 **the wicked,** the bad, the evil, the unrighteous, the reprobate; sons of men, sons of Belial, sons *or* children of the devil, limbs *or* get *or* imps of Satan, children of darkness; **scum of the earth,** dregs of society

661 DISREPUTE

NOUNS 1 **disrepute, ill repute,** bad repute, bad *or* poor reputation, evil repute *or* reputation, ill fame, shady *or* unsavory reputation, **bad name,** bad odor, bad report, bad character; **disesteem, dishonor,** public dishonor, **discredit; disfavor,** ill-favor; disapprobation 510.1

2 **disreputability,** disreputableness, **notoriety;** discreditableness, dishonorableness, unsavoriness, **unrespectability;** disgracefulness, **shamefulness**

3 **baseness, lowness, meanness, crumminess** <nf>, poorness, pettiness, paltriness, smallness, littleness, pokiness, cheesiness <nf>, beggarliness, **shabbiness, shoddiness, squalor,** scrubbiness, scumminess, scabbiness, scurviness, scruffiness, shittiness <nf>; **abjectness, wretchedness,** miserableness, despicableness, contemptibleness, contemptibility, abominableness, execrableness, obnoxiousness; **vulgarity,** tastelessness, crudity, crudeness, tackiness *and* chintziness <nf>; **vileness** 98.2, foulness, rankness, fulsomeness, grossness, nefariousness, heinousness, **atrociousness,** monstrousness, enormity; degradation, debasement, depravity

4 **infamy,** infamousness; **ignominy,** ignominiousness; ingloriousness, **ignobility,** odium, obloquy, opprobrium, "a long farewell to all my greatness"—Shakespeare; depluming, displuming, loss of honor *or* name *or* repute *or* face; degradation, comedown <nf>, **demotion** 447

5 **disgrace, scandal, humiliation; shame,** dirty shame *and* low-down dirty shame <nf>, crying *or* burning shame; **reproach,** byword, byword of reproach, a disgrace to one's name

6 **stigma,** stigmatism, onus; **brand,** badge of infamy; **slur,** reproach, censure, reprimand, imputation, aspersion, reflection, stigmatization; pillorying; **black eye** <nf>, black mark; **disparagement** 512; **stain, taint,** attaint, **tarnish,** blur, **smirch,** smutch *or* smooch, smudge, **smear,** spot, blot, blot on *or* in one's escutcheon *or* scutcheon; bend *or* bar sinister <heraldry>; baton *and* champain *and* point champain <heraldry>; mark of Cain; broad arrow <Brit>; shady past

VERBS 7 **incur disgrace,** incur disesteem *or* dishonor *or* discredit, get a black eye <nf>, be shamed, earn a bad name *or* reproach *or* reproof, forfeit one's good opinion, fall into disrepute, seal one's infamy; lose one's good name, **lose face,** lose countenance, lose credit, **lose caste; disgrace oneself,** lower oneself, demean oneself, drag one's banner in the dust, degrade *or* debase oneself, act beneath oneself, dirty *or* soil one's hands, get one's hands dirty, sully *or* lower oneself, derogate, stoop, descend, ride to a fall, fall from one's high estate, fall from grace *or* favor, foul one's own nest; **scandalize,** make oneself notorious, put one's good name in jeopardy; compromise oneself; raise eyebrows, cause eyebrows to raise, cause tongues to wag

8 **disgrace, dishonor, discredit,** reflect discredit upon, bring into discredit, reproach, cast reproach upon, be a reproach to; **shame, put to shame,** impute shame to, hold up to shame; hold up to public shame *or* public scorn *or* public ridicule, pillory, bring shame upon, **humiliate** 137.4; **degrade, debase** 447.3, deplume, displume, defrock, unfrock, bring low

9 **stigmatize, brand; stain, besmirch,** smirch, tarnish, taint, attaint, blot, **blacken, smear,** bespatter, desecrate, **sully,** soil, defile, vilify, **slur,** cast a slur upon, blow upon; disapprove 510.10; **disparage, defame** 512.9; censure, reprimand, **give a black eye** <nf>, give a black mark, put in one's bad *or* black books; give a bad name, give a dog a bad name; expose, expose to infamy; pillory, gibbet; burn *or* hang in effigy; **skewer,** impale, crucify

ADJS 10 **disreputable, discreditable, dishonorable,** unsavory, shady, **seamy, sordid; unrespectable, ignoble, ignominious, infamous,** inglorious; notorious; unpraiseworthy; derogatory 512.13

11 **disgraceful, shameful,** pitiful, deplorable,

opprobrious, sad, sorry, too bad; degrading, debasing, demeaning, beneath one, beneath one's dignity, *infra indignitatem* <L>, infra dig <nf>, unbecoming, unworthy of one; cheap, gutter; **humiliating,** humiliative; **scandalous,** shocking, outrageous

12 **base, low,** low rent *and* low ride *and* low-down *and* cotton-picking <nf>, **mean,** crummy <nf>, poor, petty, paltry, small, little, **shabby, shoddy, squalid,** lumpen, scrubby, scummy, scabby, **scurvy,** scruffy, mangy <nf>, measly *and* cheesy <nf>, poky, beggarly, **wretched, miserable,** abject, **despicable, contemptible,** abominable, execrable, obnoxious, **vulgar,** tasteless, crude, **tacky** *and* chintzy <nf>; **disgusting, odious** 98.18, vile, foul, **dirty,** rank, fulsome, gross, flagrant, grave, arrant, nefarious, heinous, reptilian, **atrocious,** monstrous, unspeakable, unmentionable; degraded, debased, depraved

13 **in disrepute,** in bad repute, in bad odor; **in disfavor,** in discredit, **in bad** <nf>, in one's bad *or* black books, out of favor, out of countenance, at a discount; **in disgrace,** in Dutch *and* **in the doghouse** <nf>, under a cloud; scandal-plagued *or* -ridden; stripped of reputation, disgraced, discredited, dishonored, shamed, loaded with shame, unable to show one's face; **in trouble**

14 **unrenowned,** renownless, nameless, inglorious, **unnotable, unnoted,** unnoticed, unremarked, **undistinguished, unfamed,** uncelebrated, unsung, unhonored, unglorified, unpopular; no credit to; **unknown,** little known, obscure, unheard-of, *ignotus* <L>

ADVS 15 **disreputably, discreditably, dishonorably, unrespectably, ignobly, ignominiously, infamously,** ingloriously

16 **disgracefully, scandalously,** shockingly, deplorably, outrageously; **shamefully,** to one's shame, to one's shame be it spoken

17 **basely, meanly,** poorly, pettily, **shabbily, shoddily,** scurvily, **wretchedly, miserably,** abjectly, **despicably, contemptibly,** abominably, execrably, obnoxiously, **odiously** 98.26, **vilely,** foully, grossly, flagrantly, arrantly, nefariously, heinously, **atrociously,** monstrously

662 REPUTE

NOUNS 1 **repute, reputation; name,** character, figure; **fame,** famousness, **renown, kudos,** report, **glory;** éclat, **celebrity, popularity,** recognition, a place in the sun; popular acceptance *or* favor, vogue; **acclaim, public acclaim,** réclame, **publicity; notoriety,** notoriousness, talk of the town; **exposure;** play *and* air-play <nf>

2 **reputability,** reputableness; good reputation, good name, **good** *or* **high repute,** good report, good track record <nf>, good odor, face, fair name, name to conjure with; good reference; good color

3 **esteem,** estimation, **honor, regard, respect,** approval, approbation, account, favor, consideration, **credit,** credibility, points *and* Brownie points <nf>

4 **prestige, honor; dignity; rank, standing,** stature, high place, eminence, position, station, face, **status**

5 **distinction, mark, note; importance, consequence,** significance; **notability, prominence, eminence, preeminence, greatness,** conspicuousness, outstandingness; **stardom;** elevation, exaltation, exaltedness, loftiness, high and mightiness <nf>; nobility, grandeur, sublimity; excellence 999.1, supereminence 999.2

6 **illustriousness, luster,** brilliance *or* brilliancy, radiance, splendor, resplendence *or* resplendency, refulgence *or* refulgency, refulgentness, **glory,** blaze of glory, nimbus, halo, aura, envelope; charisma, mystique, glamour, numinousness, magic; cult of personality, personality cult; claim to fame

7 <posthumous fame> **memory, remembrance,** blessed *or* sacred memory, legend, heroic legend *or* myth; **immortality,** lasting *or* undying fame, niche in the hall of fame, secure place in history; immortal name

8 **glorification, ennoblement,** dignification, **exaltation,** elevation, enskying, enskyment, magnification, aggrandizement; enthronement; immortalization, enshrinement; beatification, canonization, sainting, sanctification; **deification, apotheosis;** lionization

9 **celebrity,** man *or* woman of mark *or* note, person of note *or* consequence, **notable, notability, luminary, great man** *or* **woman,** eminence, master spirit, worthy, name, **big name,** figure, public figure, **somebody; important person, VIP** *and* **standout** <nf>, personage 997.8, one in a hundred *or* thousand *or* million etc; cynosure, model, very model, ideal type, **idol,** popular idol, tin god *or* little tin god <nf>; lion, social lion, pillar of the community; hero, heroine, popular hero, pop hero <nf>, folk hero, superhero; **star, superstar,** megastar, hot stuff <nf>; cult figure *or* hero; **immortal;** luminaries, galaxy, pleiad, constellation; semicelebrity; favorite

VERBS 10 **be somebody,** be something, **impress,** charismatize; **figure,** make *or* cut a figure, cut a dash *and* make a splash <nf>, **make a noise in the world,** make *or* leave one's mark; live, **flourish; shine,** glitter, gleam, glow

11 **gain recognition,** be recognized, get a reputation,

make a name *or* make a name for oneself, make oneself known, come into one's own, come to the front *or* fore, come into vogue; **burst onto the scene,** become an overnight celebrity, come onto the scene <nf>, come out of the woods *or* out of nowhere *or* out of left field <nf>; make points *or* Brownie points <nf>

12 **honor,** confer *or* bestow honor upon; **dignify,** adorn, grace; **distinguish,** signalize, confer distinction on, give credit where credit is due

13 **glorify,** glamorize; **exalt,** elevate, ensky, raise, uplift, set up, **ennoble,** aggrandize, magnify, exalt to the skies; crown; throne, enthrone; immortalize, enshrine, hand one's name down to posterity, make legendary; beatify, canonize, saint, sanctify; **deify,** apotheosize, apotheose; **lionize**

14 **reflect honor,** lend credit *or* distinction, shed a luster, redound to one's honor, give one a reputation

ADJS 15 **reputable,** highly reputed, of repute, **estimable, esteemed,** much *or* highly esteemed, **honorable,** honored; **meritorious,** worth one's salt, noble, worthy, creditable; respected, respectable, highly respectable; revered, reverend, venerable, venerated, worshipful; **well-thought-of,** highly regarded, held in esteem, in good odor, in favor, in high favor; in one's good books; prestigious

16 **distinguished,** distingué; **noted, notable,** marked, of note, of mark; **famous,** famed, honored, **renowned, celebrated, popular,** in favor, acclaimed, much acclaimed, sought-after, hot *and* world-class <nf>, **notorious, well-known,** best-known, in everyone's mouth, on everyone's tongue *or* lips, talked-of, talked-about; far-famed, far-heard; fabled, legendary, mythical

17 **prominent, conspicuous, outstanding,** stickout <nf>, much in evidence, to the front, in the limelight <nf>; **important,** consequential, significant

18 **eminent, high, exalted,** elevated, enskyed, lofty, sublime, held in awe, awesome; immortal; **great,** big <nf>, **grand;** excellent 999.12,13,15, supereminent, mighty, high and mighty <nf>; glorified, ennobled, magnified, aggrandized; enthroned, throned; immortalized, shrined, enshrined; beatified, canonized, sainted, sanctified; **idolized, godlike, deified,** apotheosized

19 **illustrious,** lustrous, glorious, brilliant, radiant, splendid, splendorous, splendrous, splendent, resplendent, bright, shining; charismatic, glamorous, numinous, magic, magical

ADVS 20 **reputably, estimably, honorably,** nobly, respectably, worthily, creditably

21 **famously, notably, notedly, notoriously,** popularly, celebratedly; **prominently, eminently,** conspicuously, outstandingly; **illustriously,** gloriously

663 SENSUALITY

NOUNS 1 **sensuality,** sensualness, sensualism; appetitiveness, appetite; **voluptuousness,** luxuriousness, luxury; **unchastity** 665; **pleasure-seeking;** sybaritism; **self-indulgence, hedonism,** Cyrenaic hedonism, Cyrenaicism, ethical hedonism, psychological hedonism, hedonics, hedonic calculus; epicurism, epicureanism; pleasure principle, *Lustprinzip* <Ger>; **instant gratification;** sensuousness 24.1

2 **carnality,** carnal-mindedness; **fleshliness,** flesh; animal *or* carnal nature, the flesh, the beast, Adam, the Old Adam, the offending Adam, fallen state *or* nature, lapsed state *or* nature, postlapsarian state *or* nature; **animality, animalism, bestiality,** beastliness, brutishness, **brutality;** coarseness, grossness; swinishness; **earthiness,** unspirituality, nonspirituality, materialism

3 **sensualist, voluptuary, pleasure-seeker,** sybarite, Cyrenaic, Sardanapalus, Heliogabalus, **hedonist,** *bon vivant* <Fr>, carpet knight; epicure, epicurean; gourmet, gourmand; swine

VERBS 4 sensualize, carnalize, coarsen, brutify; *carpe diem* <L, seize the day>, live for the moment

ADJS 5 **sensual,** sensualist, sensualistic; appetitive; **voluptuous,** luxurious; **unchaste** 665.23, **hedonistic, pleasure-seeking,** pleasure-bent, bent on pleasure, luxury-loving, hedonic, epicurean, sybaritic; Cyrenaic; sensory, sensuous

6 **carnal,** carnal-minded, **fleshly,** bodily, physical; Adamic, fallen, lapsed, postlapsarian; animal, animalistic; **brutish, brutal,** brute; **bestial,** beastly, beastlike; Circean; coarse, gross; swinish; orgiastic; **earthy,** unspiritual, nonspiritual, material, materialistic

664 CHASTITY

NOUNS 1 **chastity, virtue,** virtuousness, honor; **purity,** cleanness, cleanliness; whiteness, snowiness; **immaculacy,** immaculateness, spotlessness, stainlessness, taintlessness, blotlessness, unspottedness, unstainedness, unblottedness, untaintedness, unblemishedness, unsoiledness, unsulliedness, undefiledness, untarnishedness; uncorruptness; sexual innocence, innocence 657

2 **decency, seemliness, propriety, decorum,** decorousness, elegance, delicacy; **modesty,** shame, pudicity, pudency

3 **continence** *or* continency; abstemiousness,

abstaining, abstinence 668.2; celibacy; **virginity,** intactness, maidenhood, maidenhead; Platonic love; marital fidelity *or* faithfulness

ADJS 4 **chaste, virtuous; pure,** purehearted, pure in heart; **clean,** cleanly; **immaculate, spotless,** blotless, stainless, taintless, white, snowy, pure *or* white as driven snow; **unsoiled, unsullied, undefiled,** untarnished, unstained, unspotted, untainted, unblemished, unblotted, uncorrupt; sexually innocent, innocent 657.6,7

5 **decent, modest, decorous,** delicate, elegant, proper, becoming, seemly

6 **continent;** abstemious, abstinent 668.10; celibate; virginal, **virgin,** maidenly, vestal, intact; Platonic

7 **undebauched, undissipated, undissolute,** unwanton, unlicentious

665 UNCHASTITY

NOUNS 1 **unchastity,** unchasteness; unvirtuousness; **impurity,** uncleanness, uncleanliness, taintedness, soiledness, sulliedness; **indecency** 666

2 **incontinence,** uncontinence; intemperance 669; unrestraint 430.3

3 **profligacy, dissoluteness, licentiousness,** license, unbridledness, wildness, fastness, rakishness, gallantry, **libertinism,** libertinage; **dissipation, debauchery,** debauchment; venery, wenching, whoring, womanizing

4 **wantonness, waywardness; looseness,** laxity, lightness, loose morals, easy virtue, whorishness, chambering, **promiscuity,** sleeping around *and* swinging <nf>

5 **lasciviousness, lechery, lecherousness, lewdness,** bawdiness, **dirtiness,** salacity, salaciousness, **carnality,** animality, fleshliness, **sexuality, sexiness, lust, lustfulness; obscenity** 666.4; **prurience** *or* pruriency, sexual itch, concupiscence, lickerishness, libidinousness, randiness, horniness <nf>, lubricity, lubriciousness, **sensuality,** eroticism, goatishness; satyrism, satyriasis, gynecomania; nymphomania, *furor uterinus* <L>, hysteromania, uteromania, clitoromania; erotomania, eroticomania, aphrodisiomania

6 **seduction,** seducement, **betrayal; violation,** abuse; **debauchment, defilement,** ravishment, ravage, despoilment, fate worse than death; priapism; defloration, deflowering; **rape,** sexual *or* criminal assault; date *or* acquaintance rape

7 <illicit sexual intercourse> **adultery,** criminal conversation *or* congress *or* cohabitation, extramarital *or* premarital sex, extramarital *or* premarital relations, extracurricular sex *or* relations <nf>, **fornication;** free love, free-lovism; **incest;** concubinage; cuckoldry

8 **prostitution, harlotry,** whoredom, **street-walking;** soliciting, solicitation; Mrs Warren's profession; whoremonging, whoremastery, pimping, pandering

9 **brothel, house of prostitution,** house of assignation, house of joy *or* ill repute *or* ill fame, **whorehouse,** bawdyhouse, massage parlor, sporting house, disorderly house, **cathouse, bordello,** bagnio, stew, dive, den of vice, den *or* sink of iniquity, crib, joint; panel house *or* den; red-light district, tenderloin, stews, street of fallen women

10 **libertine, swinger** <nf>, **profligate, rake,** rakehell, rip <nf>, **roué,** wanton, womanizer, cocksman <nf>, walking phallus, debauchee, rounder <old>, **wolf** <nf>, woman chaser, skirt chaser <nf>, gay dog, gay deceiver, gallant, philanderer, lover-boy <nf>, lady-killer, Lothario, Don Juan, Casanova

11 **lecher, satyr, goat,** old goat, **dirty old man;** whorer *or* whoremonger <old>, whoremaster, whorehound <nf>; Priapus; gynecomaniac; erotomaniac, eroticomaniac, aphrodisiomaniac

12 **seducer, betrayer,** deceiver; **debaucher, ravisher,** ravager, violator, despoiler, defiler; raper, **rapist**

13 **adulterer, cheater, fornicator; adulteress,** fornicatress, fornicatrix

14 **strumpet, trollop, wench, hussy, slut, jade, baggage,** bimbo, *cocotte* <Fr>, grisette; **tart** *and* **chippy** *and* **floozy** *and* broad <nf>, bitch, drab, trull, quean, harridan, Jezebel, harlot, wanton, whore <nf>, bad woman, **loose woman,** easy woman <nf>, easy lay <nf>, woman of easy virtue, frail sister; pickup; nymphomaniac, nymphet, nympho <nf>, hysteromaniac, uteromaniac, clitoromaniac; nymphet

15 **demimonde,** demimondaine, demirep; **courtesan,** adventuress, **seductress,** femme fatale, vampire, vamp, temptress; hetaera, houri, harem girl, odalisque; Jezebel, Messalina, Delilah, Thais, Phryne, Aspasia, Lais

16 **prostitute, harlot, whore,** *fille de joie* <Fr>, daughter of joy, lady of the evening, call girl *and* B-girl <nf>, **scarlet woman,** unfortunate woman, painted woman, fallen woman, erring sister, **streetwalker,** hustler *and* **hooker** <nf>, woman of the town, *poule* <Fr>, stew, meretrix, Cyprian, Paphian; white slave

17 **mistress,** woman, **kept woman,** kept mistress, **paramour,** concubine, doxy, playmate, spiritual *or* unofficial wife; live-in lover <nf>

18 **procurer, pimp,** pander *or* panderer, *maquereau* <Fr>, mack *or* mackman, ponce <Brit nf>; **bawd; gigolo,** fancy man; procuress, **madam** <nf>; white slaver

VERBS 19 **be promiscuous,** sleep around *and* swing <nf>; **debauch, wanton,** rake, chase women, womanize, whore, sow one's wild oats; **philander; dissipate** 669.6; fornicate, **cheat, commit adultery,** get a little on the side <nf>; grovel, wallow, wallow in the mire

20 **seduce, betray, deceive,** mislead, lead astray, lead down the garden *or* the primrose path; **debauch, ravish,** ravage, despoil, ruin; deflower, pop one's cherry <nf>; **defile,** soil, sully; **violate,** abuse; **rape,** force

21 **prostitute oneself,** sell *or* peddle one's ass <nf>, streetwalk; pimp, procure, pander

22 **cuckold;** wear horns, wear the horn

ADJS 23 **unchaste, unvirtuous,** unvirginal; **impure, unclean; indecent** 666.5; soiled, sullied, smirched, besmirched, defiled, tainted, maculate

24 **incontinent,** uncontinent; **orgiastic;** intemperate 669.7; unrestrained

25 **profligate, licentious,** unbridled, untrammeled, uninhibited, free; **dissolute, dissipated, debauched,** abandoned; **wild, fast,** gallant, gay, rakish; rakehell, rakehellish, rakehelly

26 **wanton, wayward,** Paphian; **loose,** lax, slack, loose-moraled, of loose morals, of easy virtue, easy <nf>, **light,** no better than she should be, whorish, chambering, **promiscuous**

27 freeloving; **adulterous,** illicit, extramarital, premarital; incestuous

28 **prostitute, prostituted, whorish, harlot,** scarlet, fallen, meretricious, streetwalking, hustling <nf>, on the town *or* streets, on the *pavé,* in the life

29 **lascivious, lecherous, sexy, salacious, carnal,** animal, **sexual, lustful,** ithyphallic, **hot,** horny *and* sexed-up *and* hot to trot <nf>; prurient, itching, itchy <nf>; concupiscent, lickerish, libidinous, randy, horny <nf>, lubricious; **lewd, bawdy,** adult, X-rated, hard, pornographic, porno <nf>, **dirty, obscene** 666.9; erotic, **sensual,** fleshly; goatish, satyric, priapic, gynecomaniacal; nymphomaniacal, hysteromaniacal, uteromaniacal, clitoromaniacal; erotomaniacal, eroticomaniacal, aphrodisiomaniacal

666 INDECENCY

NOUNS 1 **indecency, indelicacy,** inelegance *or* inelegancy, **indecorousness,** indecorum, **impropriety** 638.1, inappropriateness, unseemliness, indiscretion, indiscreetness; **unchastity** 665

2 **immodesty,** unmodestness, impudicity; exhibitionism; **shamelessness,** unembarrassedness; **brazenness** 142.2, brassiness, pertness, forwardness, boldness, procacity, bumptiousness; **flagrancy,** notoriousness, scandal, scandalousness

3 **vulgarity** 497, **uncouthness, coarseness, crudeness, grossness,** rankness, rawness, raunchiness <nf>; **earthiness,** frankness; **spiciness, raciness,** saltiness

4 **obscenity, dirtiness,** bawdry, raunch <nf>, **ribaldry, pornography,** porno *and* porn <nf>, hard *or* hard-core pornography, soft *or* soft-core pornography, salacity, **smut, dirt, filth; lewdness, bawdiness,** salaciousness, **smuttiness, foulness, filthiness,** nastiness, vileness, offensiveness; scurrility, fescenninity; Rabelaisianism; erotic art *or* literature, pornographic art or literature; sexploitation; blue movie *and* dirty movie *and* porno film *and* skin flick <nf>, adult movie, stag film <nf>, X-rated movie; pornographomania, erotographomania, iconolagny, erotology; **dirty talk, scatology** 523.9

ADJS 5 **indecent, indelicate, inelegant, indecorous, improper,** inappropriate, **unseemly, unbecoming,** indiscreet

6 **immodest,** unmodest; exhibitionistic; **shameless,** unashamed, unembarrassed, unabashed, unblushing, **brazen,** brazenfaced, brassy; **forward,** bold, pert, procacious <old>, bumptious; **flagrant,** notorious, scandalous

7 **risqué,** risky, **racy,** salty, spicy, **off-color,** suggestive, scabrous

8 **vulgar, uncouth, coarse, gross,** rank, raw, broad, low, foul, gutter; **earthy,** frank, pulling no punches

9 **obscene, lewd, adult, bawdy,** ithyphallic, **ribald, pornographic, salacious,** sultry <nf>, lurid, **dirty, smutty,** raunchy <nf>, blue, smoking-room, impure, unchaste, unclean, **foul, filthy, nasty,** vile, fulsome, offensive, unprintable, unrepeatable, not fit for mixed company; scurrilous, scurrile, Fescennine; **foulmouthed,** foul-tongued, foul-spoken; Rabelaisian

667 ASCETICISM

NOUNS 1 **asceticism, austerity, self-denial,** self-abnegation, **rigor; puritanism,** eremitism, anchoritism, anchorite *or* anchoritic monasticism, monasticism, monachism; Sabbatarianism; Albigensianism, Waldensianism, Catharism; Yoga; mortification, self-mortification, maceration, flagellation; **abstinence** 668.2; belt-tightening, fasting 515; voluntary poverty, mendicantism, Franciscanism; Trappism

2 **ascetic, puritan,** Sabbatarian; Albigensian, Waldensian, Catharist; **abstainer** 668.4; anchorite, **hermit** 584.5; yogi, yogin; sannyasi, bhikshu, dervish, fakir, flagellant, Penitente; mendicant, Franciscan, Discalced *or* barefooted Carmelite; Trappist

VERBS 3 deny oneself; abstain, tighten one's belt;

flagellate oneself, wear a hair shirt, make oneself miserable

ADJS 4 ascetic, austere, self-denying, self-abnegating, **rigorous, rigoristic; puritanical,** eremitic, anchoritic, Sabbatarian; **penitential;** Albigensian, Waldensian, Catharist; **abstinent** 668.10; mendicant, discalced, barefoot, wedded to poverty, Franciscan; Trappist; flagellant

668 TEMPERANCE

NOUNS 1 temperance, temperateness, **moderation,** moderateness, sophrosyne; golden mean, via media, *juste milieu* <Fr>; nothing in excess, sobriety, soberness, frugality, forbearance, abnegation; renunciation, renouncement, forgoing; denial, **self-denial;** restraint, constraint, **self-restraint; self-control,** self-reining, self-mastery, **discipline,** self-discipline

2 abstinence, abstention, abstainment, **abstemiousness,** refraining, refrainment, avoidance, eschewal, denying *or* refusing oneself, saying no to, passing up <nf>; **total abstinence, teetotalism,** nephalism, Rechabitism; the pledge; Encratism, Shakerism; Pythagorism, Pythagoreanism; sexual abstinence, celibacy 565; chastity 664; gymnosophy; Stoicism; vegetarianism, veganism, fruitarianism; plain living, spare diet, simple diet; Spartan fare, Lenten fare; fish day, Friday, banyan day; fast 515.2,3; **continence** 664.3; **asceticism** 667; smokeout

3 prohibition, prohibitionism; Eighteenth Amendment, Volstead Act

4 abstainer, abstinent; **teetotaler,** teetotalist, sobersides <nf>; nephalist, Rechabite, hydropot, water-drinker; vegetarian, vegan, fruitarian; banian, banya; gymnosophist; Pythagorean, Pythagorist; Encratite, Apostolici, Shaker; **ascetic** 667.2; nonsmoker, nondrinker, etc

5 prohibitionist, dry <nf>; Anti-Saloon League; Women's Christian Temperance Union *or* WCTU

VERBS 6 restrain oneself, constrain oneself, curb oneself, hold back, **avoid excess; limit oneself, restrict oneself; control oneself,** control one's appetites, repress *or* inhibit one's desires, contain oneself, discipline oneself, master oneself, exercise self-control *or* self-restraint, keep oneself under control, keep in *or* within bounds, keep within compass *or* limits, know when one has had enough, **deny** *or* refuse oneself, **say no** *or* just say no; live plainly *or* simply *or* frugally; mortify oneself, mortify the flesh, control the fleshy lusts, control the carnal man *or* the old Adam; eat to live, not live to eat; eat sparingly, diet; tighten one's belt

7 abstain, abstain from, refrain, **refrain from, forbear, forgo,** spare, withhold, hold back, **avoid, shun,** eschew, **pass up** <nf>, **keep from,** keep *or* stand *or* hold aloof from, have nothing to do with, take no part in, have no hand in, **let alone,** let well enough alone, let go by, **deny oneself,** do without, go without, make do without, not *or* never touch, keep hands off; fast

8 swear off, renounce, forswear, **give up,** abandon, stop, discontinue; take the pledge, get on the wagon *or* water wagon <nf>, go on the wagon <nf>; **kick** *and* kick the habit <nf>, dry out

ADJS 9 temperate, moderate, sober, frugal, restrained, **sparing,** stinting, measured

10 abstinent, abstentious, **abstemious;** teetotal, sworn off, on the wagon *or* water wagon <nf>; nephalistic, Rechabite; Encratic, Apostolic, Shaker; Pythagorean; sexually abstinent, celibate, chaste; Stoic; fasting; vegetarian, veganistic, vegan, fruitarian; Spartan, Lenten; maigre, meatless; **continent** 664.6; **ascetic**

11 **prohibitionist, antisaloon, dry <nf>**

ADVS 12 temperately, moderately, sparingly, stintingly, frugally, in moderation, within compass *or* bounds

669 INTEMPERANCE

NOUNS 1 intemperance, intemperateness, **indulgence, self-indulgence,** self-absorption; **overindulgence,** overdoing; **unrestraint,** unconstraint, indiscipline, uncontrol; **immoderation,** immoderacy, immoderateness; inordinacy, inordinateness; **excess, excessiveness,** too much, too-muchness <nf>; addiction; prodigality, extravagance; crapulence *or* crapulency, crapulousness; **incontinence** 665.2; **swinishness, gluttony** 672; **drunkenness** 88.1

2 dissipation, licentiousness; riotous living, free living, high living <nf>, fast *or* killing pace, fast lane <nf>, burning the candle at both ends; **debauchery,** debauchment; **carousal** 88.5, carousing, carouse; **debauch, orgy,** saturnalia; hedonism, sybaritism

3 dissipater, rounder <old>, free liver, high liver <nf>; nighthawk *and* nightowl <nf>; debauchee; **playboy,** partyer, partygoer, party girl; pleasure-seeker

VERBS 4 indulge, indulge oneself, indulge one's appetites, "indulge in easy vices"—Samuel Johnson, deny oneself nothing *or* not at all; **give oneself up to,** give free course to, give free rein to; live well *or* high, live high on the hog <nf>, live it up <nf>, live off the fat of the land; indulge in, luxuriate in, wallow in; roll in; look out for number one

5 **overindulge, overdo, carry to excess,** carry too far,

go the limit, go whole hog <nf>, know no limits, not know when to stop, bite off more than one can chew, spread oneself too thin; dine not wisely but too well; live above *or* beyond one's means; binge <nf>

6 **dissipate,** plunge into dissipation, **debauch, wanton, carouse,** run riot, live hard *or* fast, squander one's money in riotous living, burn the candle at both ends, keep up a fast *or* killing pace, not know when to stop, sow one's wild oats, have one's fling, **party** <nf>, "eat, drink, and be merry"—Bible

ADJS 7 **intemperate, indulgent, self-indulgent; overindulgent,** overindulging, unthrifty, unfrugal, **immoderate,** inordinate, **excessive,** too much, prodigal, extravagant, extreme, unmeasured, unlimited; crapulous, crapulent; undisciplined, uncontrolled, unbridled, unconstrained, uninhibited, **unrestrained; incontinent** 665.24; **swinish, gluttonous** 672.6; bibulous

8 **licentious, dissipated, riotous, dissolute, debauched;** free-living, high-living <nf>

9 **orgiastic,** saturnalian, corybantic

ADVS 10 **intemperately,** prodigally, **immoderately,** inordinately, excessively, **in** *or* **to excess,** to extremes, beyond all bounds *or* limits, without restraint; high, high on the hog <nf>

670 MODERATION

NOUNS 1 **moderation,** moderateness; **restraint,** constraint, control; **judiciousness,** prudence; steadiness, evenness, balance, equilibrium, **stability** 855; **temperateness,** temperance, sobriety; self-abnegation, self-restraint, self-control, self-denial; abstinence, continence, abnegation; **mildness,** lenity, gentleness; calmness, serenity, tranquillity, repose, calm, cool <nf>; unexcessiveness, unextremeness, unextravagance, nothing in excess, *meden agan* <Gk>; **happy medium, golden mean,** *juste-milieu* <Fr>, middle way *or* path, *via media* <L>, balancing act <nf>; moderationism, **conservatism** 853.3; **nonviolence,** pacifism, pacification, peace movement, ahimsa; impartiality, neutrality, dispassion; irenics, ecumenism

2 modulation, **abatement,** remission, **mitigation,** diminution, defusing, de-escalation, **reduction,** lessening, falling-off; **relaxation,** relaxing, slackening, **easing,** loosening, letup *and* letdown <nf>; **alleviation,** assuagement, allayment, palliation, leniency, relenting, lightening, **tempering, softening,** subdual; **deadening, dulling,** damping, blunting; drugging, narcotizing, sedating, sedation; **pacification, tranquilization,** tranquilizing, mollification, demulsion, dulcification, **quieting,** quietening, lulling, **soothing, calming,** hushing

3 **moderator, mitigator,** modulator, stabilizer, temperer, assuager; **mediator, bridge-builder,** calming *or* restraining hand, wiser head; **alleviator,** alleviative, palliative, lenitive; **pacifier, soother,** comforter, peacemaker, pacificator, dove of peace, mollifier; **drug,** anodyne, dolorifuge, soothing syrup, **tranquilizer,** calmative; **sedative** 86.12; balm, salve; cushion, shock absorber

4 **moderate,** moderatist, moderationist, middle-of-the-roader, **centrist,** neutral, compromiser; **conservative** 853.4

VERBS 5 **be moderate, keep within bounds,** keep within compass; practice self-control *or* self-denial, live within one's means, live temperately, do nothing in excess, strike a balance, strike *or* keep a happy medium, seek the golden mean, steer *or* preserve an even course, keep to the middle path *or* way, steer *or* be between Scylla and Charybdis; keep the peace, not resist, espouse *or* practice nonviolence, be pacifistic; not rock the boat *and* not make waves *or* static <nf>; cool it *and* keep one's cool <nf>, keep one's head *or* temper; sober down, settle down; remit, relent; take in sail; go out like a lamb; be conservative 853.6

6 **moderate, restrain,** constrain, control, **keep within bounds; modulate, mitigate,** defuse, abate, weaken, **diminish, reduce,** de-escalate, slacken, lessen, slow down; **alleviate,** assuage, allay, lay, lighten, palliate, extenuate, **temper,** attemper, lenify; **soften, subdue,** tame, hold in check, keep a tight rein, chasten, underplay, play down, downplay, de-emphasize, tone *or* tune down; turn down the volume, lower the voice; **drug,** narcotize, sedate, tranquilize, deaden, dull, blunt, obtund, take the edge off, take the sting *or* bite out; smother, suppress, stifle; **damp, dampen,** bank the fire, reduce the temperature, throw cold water on, throw a wet blanket on; sober, sober down *or* up; clear the air

7 **calm,** calm down, **stabilize, tranquilize, pacify,** mollify, appease, dulcify; **quiet,** hush, still, rest, compose, **lull, soothe,** gentle, rock, cradle, rock to sleep; cool, **subdue,** quell; ease, steady, smooth, smoothen, smooth over, smooth down, even out; keep the peace, be the dove of peace, pour oil on troubled waters, pour balm into

8 **cushion,** absorb the shock, **soften the blow,** break the fall, deaden, damp *or* dampen, soften, suppress, neutralize, offset; show pity *or* mercy *or* consideration *or* sensitivity, temper the wind to the shorn lamb

9 **relax,** unbend; ease, **ease up,** ease off, **let up,** let

down; abate, bate, remit, mitigate; **slacken,** slack, slake, slack off, slack up; loose, **loosen;** unbrace, unstrain, unstring

ADJS **10** **moderate, temperate,** sober; **mild,** soft, bland, **gentle,** tame; mild as milk *or* mother's milk, mild as milk and water, gentle as a lamb; nonviolent, peaceable, peaceful, pacifistic; **judicious, prudent**

11 **restrained,** constrained, limited, controlled, **stable,** in control, in hand; tempered, **softened,** hushed, **subdued,** quelled, chastened

12 **unexcessive,** unextreme, unextravagant, **conservative;** reasonable

13 **equable,** even, low-key *or* low-keyed, **cool,** even-tempered, level-headed, dispassionate; tranquil, reposeful, serene, calm 173.12

14 **mitigating,** assuaging, abating, **diminishing, reducing,** lessening, allaying, **alleviating, relaxing, easing;** tempering, **softening,** chastening, **subduing;** deadening, dulling, blunting, damping, dampening, cushioning

15 **tranquilizing,** pacifying, mollifying, appeasing; cooling-off; **calming,** lulling, gentling, rocking, cradling, hushing, quietening, stilling; **soothing,** soothful, restful; dreamy, drowsy

16 **palliative, alleviative,** alleviatory, assuasive, lenitive, **calmative,** calmant, **narcotic, sedative,** demulcent, anodyne; antiorgastic, anaphrodisiac

ADVS **17** **moderately, in moderation,** restrainedly, subduedly, in *or* within reason, within bounds *or* compass, in balance; **temperately,** soberly, prudently, judiciously, dispassionately; composedly, calmly, coolly, evenly, steadily, equably, tranquilly, serenely; soothingly, conservatively

671 VIOLENCE

<vehement action>

NOUNS **1** **violence, vehemence, virulence, venom, furiousness, force, rigor,** roughness, harshness, ungentleness, extremity, impetuosity, inclemency, **severity, intensity,** acuteness, **sharpness; acrimony** 17.5; fierceness, ferociousness, ferocity, furiousness, viciousness, insensateness, savagery, destructiveness, **destruction, vandalism; terrorism, barbarity, brutality, atrocity,** inhumanity, bloodlust, killer instinct, murderousness, malignity, mercilessness, pitilessness, mindlessness, animality, brutishness; **rage,** raging, **anger** 152

2 **turbulence, turmoil,** chaos, upset, **fury, furor,** *furore* <Ital>, **rage, frenzy, passion,** fanaticism, zealousness, zeal, tempestuousness, storminess, wildness, tumultuousness, **tumult, uproar,** racket, cacophony, pandemonium, hubbub, **commotion, disturbance, agitation,** bluster, broil, brawl, embroilment, brouhaha, fuss, flap <Brit nf>, **row, rumpus,** ruckus <nf>, foofaraw <nf>, **ferment,** fume, boil, boiling, seething, ebullition, fomentation; all hell let loose

3 **unruliness, disorderliness,** obstreperousness, Katy-bar-the-door <nf>; **riot, rioting;** looting, pillaging, plundering, rapine; wilding <nf>; laying waste, sowing with salt, sacking; scorched earth; **attack** 459, **assault,** onslaught, battering; **rape, violation,** forcible seizure; **killing** 308, butchery, massacre, slaughter

4 **storm, tempest,** squall, line squall, **tornado, cyclone, hurricane,** tropical cyclone, typhoon, storm-center, tropical storm, eye of the storm *or* hurricane, war of the elements, "groans of roaring wind and rain"—Shakespeare; stormy weather, rough weather, foul weather, dirty weather; rainstorm 316.2; thunderstorm 316.3; windstorm 318.12; **snowstorm** 1023.8; **firestorm**

5 **upheaval, convulsion,** cataclysm, catastrophe, disaster; meltdown; **fit,** spasm, **paroxysm,** apoplexy, stroke; climax; **earthquake,** quake, temblor, diastrophism, epicentre, shock-wave; tidal wave, *tsunami* <Japanese>

6 **outburst, outbreak, eruption,** debouchment, eructation, belch, spew; **burst,** dissilience *or* dissiliency; meltdown, atomic meltdown; **torrent,** rush, gush, spate, cascade, spurt, jet, rapids, **volcano,** volcan, burning mountain

7 **explosion, discharge, blowout,** blowup, detonation, fulmination, **blast, burst, report** 56.1; flash, flash *or* flashing point, flare, flare-up, fulguration; bang, boom 56.4; backfire

8 **concussion, shock, impact, crunch,** smash; percussion, repercussion

9 <violent person> berserk *or* berserker; **hothead,** hotspur; **devil, demon, fiend, brute,** hellhound, hellcat, hellion, hell-raiser; **beast,** wild beast, tiger, dragon, mad dog, wolf, monster, mutant, savage; **rapist, mugger, killer;** Mafioso, hit man <nf>, contract killer, hired killer, hired gun; **fury,** virago, vixen, termagant, beldam, she-wolf, tigress, witch; firebrand, revolutionary 860.3, **terrorist,** incendiary, bomber, guerrilla

10 <nf terms> **goon, gorilla,** ape, knuckle dragger, muscle man, plug-ugly, shtarker, cowboy, bimbo, bozo, bruiser, hardnose, tough guy, tough, hoodlum, hood, meat-eater, gunsel, terror, holy terror, fire-eater, spitfire, tough *or* ugly customer

VERBS **11** **rage, storm, rant, rave,** roar; **rampage,** ramp, **tear,** tear around; go *or* carry on <nf>; come in like a lion; **destroy, wreck,** wreak havoc, ruin; sow chaos *or* disorder; **terrorize,** sow terror, vandalize, barbarize, brutalize; **riot,** loot, burn, pillage, sack, lay waste; **slaughter, butcher; rape,** violate; **attack, assault,** batter, savage, mug, maul, hammer; go for the jugular

12 **seethe, boil, fume,** foam, simmer, stew, ferment, stir, churn, see red

13 **erupt, burst forth** *or* **out, break out, blow out** *or* **open,** eruct, belch, **vomit,** spout, spew, disgorge, **discharge,** eject, throw *or* hurl forth

14 **explode, blow up, burst,** go off, go up, blow out, blast, bust <nf>; **detonate,** fulminate; **touch off,** trigger, trip, set off, let off; **discharge,** fire, shoot; backfire; melt down

15 **run amok, go berserk, go on a rampage,** cut loose, run riot, run wild

ADJS 16 **violent, vehement, virulent, venomous, severe, rigorous, furious, fierce, intense,** sharp, acute, keen, cutting, splitting, piercing; **destructive;** rough, bruising, tough <nf>; **drastic,** extreme, outrageous, excessive, exorbitant, unconscionable, intemperate, immoderate, extravagant; acrimonious 17.14; on the warpath

17 **unmitigated, unsoftened, untempered,** unallayed, unsubdued, unquelled; unquenched, unextinguished, unabated; unmixed, unalloyed; **total**

18 **turbulent, tumultuous, raging, chaotic,** hellish, anarchic, **storming,** stormy, **tempestuous,** troublous, **frenzied, wild, wild-eyed, frantic, furious,** infuriate, insensate, **mad,** demented, insane, enraged, ravening, raving, slavering; **angry; blustering,** blustery, blusterous; **uproarious,** rip-roaring <nf>; pandemoniac

19 **unruly, disorderly,** obstreperous; **unbridled; riotous,** wild, rampant; **terroristic,** anarchic, nihilistic, revolutionary 860.5

20 **boisterous, rampageous, rambunctious** <nf>, on the rampage, rumbustious, roisterous, wild, rollicking, **rowdy,** rough, hoody <nf>, harum-scarum <nf>; knockabout, rough-and-tumble, knock-down-and-drag-out <nf>

21 **savage, fierce, ferocious, vicious, murderous, cruel, atrocious, mindless, brutal,** brutish, **bestial,** insensate, monstrous, mutant, inhuman, pitiless, ruthless, merciless, bloody, sanguinary, kill-crazy <nf>; malign, malignant; feral, ferine; **wild,** untamed, tameless, undomesticated, ungentle; **barbarous,** barbaric; **uncivilized,** noncivilized

22 **fiery, heated, inflamed,** flaming, scorching, hot, red-hot, white-hot; **fanatic, zealous,** totally committed, hard-core, hard-line, ardent, passionate; **hotheaded**

23 **convulsive,** cataclysmic, disastrous, upheaving; seismic; **spasmodic,** paroxysmal, spastic, jerky, herky-jerky <nf>; orgasmic

24 **explosive,** bursting, detonating, explosible, explodable, fulminating, fulminant, fulminatory; cataclysmic; dissilient; **volcanic,** eruptive

ADVS 25 **violently, vehemently, virulently, venomously, rigorously, severely, fiercely, drastically; furiously,** wildly, madly, **like mad,** like fury <nf>, like blazes; all to pieces, with a vengeance

26 **turbulently, tumultuously,** riotously, uproariously, stormily, tempestuously, troublously, **frenziedly, frantically, furiously, ragingly, enragedly, madly; angrily** 152.33

27 **savagely, fiercely, ferociously, atrociously, viciously, murderously,** brutally *or* brutishly, mindlessly, bestially, barbarously, inhumanly, insensately, ruthlessly, pitilessly, mercilessly; **tooth and nail,** tooth and claw, *bec et ongles* <Fr>

672 GLUTTONY

NOUNS 1 **gluttony,** gluttonousness, **greed,** greediness, voraciousness, voracity, ravenousness, edacity, crapulence *or* crapulency, gulosity, rapacity, insatiability; omnivorousness; big appetite, **piggishness, hoggishness,** swinishness, "swinish gluttony"—Milton; **overindulgence, overeating;** eating disorder, polyphagia, hyperphagia, bulimia, bulimia nervosa, binge-purge syndrome, binging <nf>; **intemperance** 669

2 **epicurism, epicureanism, gourmandise;** gastronomy

3 **glutton,** greedy eater, big *or* hearty *or* good eater <nf>, trencherman, trencherwoman, belly-god, gobbler, greedygut *or* greedyguts <nf>, gorger, **gourmand,** gourmandizer, gormand, gormandizer, guttler, cormorant, bon vivant; animal, **hog** *and* **pig** *and* chow hound *and* khazer *and* gobbler *and* wolf <nf>; omnivore; binger

VERBS 4 **gluttonize,** gormandize, **indulge one's appetite,** live to eat, love to eat; **gorge,** engorge, glut, cram, stuff, batten, guttle, guzzle, **devour,** raven, bolt, gobble, gulp, **wolf,** gobble *or* gulp *or* bolt *or* wolf down, eat like a horse, tuck into, stuff oneself *and* hog it down *and* eat one's head off *and* fork *or* shovel it in <nf>, eat one out of house and home, wipe the plate clean

5 **overeat,** overgorge, **overindulge, make a pig** *or* **hog of oneself, pig out** *or* pork out *or* scarf out <nf>; glut oneself, stuff oneself

ADJS 6 **gluttonous, greedy,** voracious, ravenous, edacious, esurient, rapacious, insatiable, polyphagic, bulimic, hyperphagic, Apician; **piggish, hoggish,** swinish; crapulous, crapulent; intemperate 669.7; omnivorous, all-devouring; **gorging,** cramming, glutting, guttling, stuffing, guzzling, wolfing, bolting, **gobbling, gulping,** gluttonizing; binging <nf>

7 overfed, overgorged, overindulged

ADVS 8 **gluttonously, greedily,** voraciously, ravenously, edaciously; **piggishly, hoggishly, swinishly**

673 LEGALITY

NOUNS 1 **legality, legitimacy, lawfulness, legitimateness, licitness,** rightfulness, validity, scope, applicability; **jurisdiction** 594; actionability, justiciability, **constitutionality,** constitutional validity; letter of the law; legal process, legal form, **due process;** legalism, constitutionalism; **justice** 649

2 **legalization, legitimation, legitimatization, decriminalization;** money-washing *or* -laundering; validation; authorization, sanction; legislation, enactment, authority, license, warrant

3 **law,** *lex* and *jus* <L>, **statute,** rubric, **canon,** institution; **ordinance; act, enactment, measure,** legislation; **rule, ruling; prescript,** prescription; **regulation,** *règlement* <Fr>, reg <nf>; **dictate,** dictation; form, formula, formulary, formality; standing order; bylaw; **edict, decree** 420.4; **bill;** manifesto, order, standing order, rescript, precept

4 **law,** legal system, system of laws, legal branch *or* specialty

5 **code, digest,** pandect, capitulary, **body of law,** corpus juris, legal code, code of laws, digest of law; **codification; civil code, penal code;** Justinian Code; Napoleonic code, *Code Napoléon* <Fr>; lawbook, statute book, compilation; Blackstone; Uniform Code of Military Justice; written law, unwritten law, statute law, common law, private law, international law, military law, commercial law, contracts law, criminal law, civil law, labor law, constitutional law; law of the land; canon

6 **constitution,** written constitution, unwritten constitution; law and equity; charter, codification, codified law; constitutional amendment; Bill of Rights, constitutional guarantees; constitutional interpretation

7 **jurisprudence, law,** legal science; nomology, nomography; **forensic science,** science of law, forensic *or* legal medicine, medical jurisprudence, medico-legal medicine; forensic psychiatry; forensic *or* legal chemistry; criminology; constitutionalism, penology

8 <codes of law> Constitution of the U.S., Bill of Rights; Corpus Juris Civilis, Codex Juris Canonici, Digest *or* Pandects of Justinian; Law of Moses, Ten Commandments, Pentateuch, Torah, Koran *or* Qur'an, the Bible; Code of Hammurabi, Magna Carta, Napoleonic Code

VERBS 9 **legalize, legitimize,** legitimatize, legitimate, make legal, declare lawful, **decriminalize;** wash *or* launder money; validate; **authorize, sanction,** license, warrant; constitute, ordain, establish, put in force; prescribe, formulate; regulate, make a regulation, bring within the law; **decree; legislate, enact; enforce; litigate** 598.12, take legal action

10 **codify,** digest; compile, publish

ADJS 11 **legal, legitimate,** legit *and* kosher <nf>, competent, by right, de jure, **licit, lawful,** rightful, according to law, within the law; **actionable,** litigable, justiciable, within the scope of the law; **enforceable,** legally binding; **judicial,** juridical; **authorized, sanctioned,** valid, applicable, warranted; **constitutional;** statutory, statutable; legalized, legitimized, decriminalized; **legislative, lawmaking;** lawlike; **just** 649.8

12 jurisprudent, jurisprudential; **legalistic; forensic;** nomistic, nomothetic; criminological

ADVS 13 **legally, legitimately, licitly, lawfully,** by law, *de jure* <L>, in the eyes of the law, within the law

674 ILLEGALITY

NOUNS 1 **illegality, unlawfulness, illicitness, lawlessness,** wrongfulness; unauthorization, impermissibility, **unconstitutionality;** legal *or* technical flaw, legal irregularity; **outlawry; anarchy,** collapse *or* breakdown *or* paralysis of authority, anomie; illicit business 732

2 **illegitimacy, illegitimateness,** illegitimation; **bastardy,** bastardism; bend *or* bar sinister, baton

3 **lawbreaking, violation,** breach *or* violation of law, infringement, contravention, infraction, **transgression,** trespass, trespassing, offense, breach, nonfeasance, encroachment; vice, fraud; crime, **criminality,** criminalism, habitual criminality, delinquency; flouting *or* making a mockery of the law

4 **offense, wrong,** illegality; **violation** 435.2; **wrongdoing** 655; much to answer for; **crime, felony; misdemeanor;** tort; delict, delictum

VERBS 5 **break** *or* **violate the law,** breach the law, infringe, contravene, infract, violate 435.4, **transgress, trespass,** disobey the law, offend against the law, flout the law, make a mockery of the law, fly in the face of the law, set the law at defiance, snap one's fingers at the law, set the law at naught, circumvent the law, disregard the law, **take the law into one's own hands,** twist *or* torture the law to one's own ends *or* purposes; commit a crime; have much to answer for; live outside the law

ADJS 6 **illegal, unlawful, illegitimate, illicit,** nonlicit, nonlegal, lawless, wrongful, fraudulent, creative <nf>, **against the law; unauthorized,** unallowed, impermissible, unwarranted, unwarrantable, unofficial, unlicensed; unstatutory, instatutory, injudicial, extrajudicial; **unconstitutional,** nonconstitutional; flawed, irregular, contrary to law; actionable, chargeable, justiciable, litigable; triable, punishable; **criminal, felonious; outlaw, outlawed; contraband,** bootleg, black-market; under-the-table, under-the-counter; unregulated, unchartered; anarchic, anarchistic, anomic

7 **illegitimate, spurious,** false; **bastard,** misbegot, **misbegotten,** miscreated, gotten on the wrong side of the blanket, baseborn, born out of wedlock, without benefit of clergy

ADVS 8 **illegally, unlawfully, illegitimately, illicitly;** impermissibly; criminally, feloniously; contrary to law, in violation of law, against the law

675 RELIGIONS, CULTS, SECTS

NOUNS 1 **religion,** religious belief *or* faith, **belief, faith,** teaching, doctrine, creed, credo, dogma, theology 676, orthodoxy 687; system of beliefs; persuasion, tradition

2 **cult, ism;** cultism; **mystique**

3 **sect** <see list>, sectarism, religious order, **denomination, persuasion,** faction, **church,** communion, community, group, fellowship, affiliation, order, school, party, society, body, organization; branch, variety, version, segment; offshoot; **schism,** division

4 **sectarianism,** sectarism, **denominationalism,** partisanism, the clash of creeds; schismatism; syncretism, eclecticism

5 **theism; monotheism; polytheism,** multitheism, myriotheism; **ditheism,** dyotheism, dualism; **tritheism;** tetratheism; **pantheism,** cosmotheism, theopantism, acosmism; physitheism, psychotheism, animotheism; physicomorphism; hylotheism; anthropotheism, anthropomorphism; anthropolatry; allotheism; monolatry, henotheism; autotheism; zootheism, theriotheism; **deism**

6 **animism, animistic religion** *or* cult; voodooism, voodoo, hoodoo, wanga, juju, jujuism, obeah, obeahism; shamanism; fetishism, totemism; nature worship, naturism; primitive religion

7 **Christianity** <see list>, Christianism, Christendom; Latin *or* Roman *or* Western Christianity; Eastern *or* Orthodox Christianity; Protestant Christianity; Judeo-Christian religion *or* tradition *or* belief; fundamentalism, Christian fundamentalism

8 **Catholicism,** Catholicity; **Roman Catholicism,** Romanism, Rome; papalism; popery *and* popeism *and* papism *and* papistry <nf>; ultramontanism; Catholic Church, **Roman Catholic Church,** Church of Rome; Eastern Rites, Uniate Rites, Uniatism, Alexandrian *or* Antiochian *or* Byzantine Rite

9 **Orthodoxy;** Eastern Orthodox Church, Holy Orthodox Catholic Apostolic Church, Greek Orthodox Church, Russian Orthodox Church; patriarchate of Constantinople, patriarchate of Antioch, patriarchate of Alexandria, patriarchate of Jerusalem

10 **Protestantism,** Reform, Reformationism; Evangelicalism; Zwinglianism; dissent 333; apostasy 363.2; new theology

11 **Anglicanism;** High-Churchism, Low-Churchism; Anglo-Catholicism; Church of England, Established Church; High Church, Low Church; Broad Church, Free Church

12 **Judaism;** Hebraism, Hebrewism; Israelitism; Orthodox Judaism, Conservative Judaism, Reform Judaism, Reconstructionism; Hasidism; rabbinism, Talmudism; Pharisaism; Sadduceeism; Karaism *or* Karaitism

13 **Islam, Muslimism,** Islamism, Moslemism, Muhammadanism, Mohammedanism; Sufism, Wahabiism, Sunnism, Shiism, Druzism; Black Muslimism; Muslim fundamentalism, militant Muslimism

14 <other religions> Christian Science; Mormonism; New Thought, Higher Thought, Practical Christianity, Mental Science, Divine Science Church; Buddhism, Zen Buddhism; Hinduism; Sikhism; Shintoism; Jainism; Rastafarianism; Zoroastrianism; Confucianism

15 **religionist,** religioner; zealot, iconoclast; **believer** 692.4; worshiper; cultist

16 **theist; monotheist; polytheist,** multitheist, myriotheist; ditheist, dualist; tritheist; tetratheist; **pantheist,** cosmotheist; psychotheist; physitheist; hylotheist; anthropotheist; anthropolater; allotheist; henotheist; autotheist; zootheist, theriotheist; **deist**

17 **Christian,** Nazarene, Nazarite; practicing Christian; Christian sectarian

18 **sectarian,** sectary, **denominationalist,** factionist, schismatic

19 **Catholic,** Roman Catholic *or* RC <nf>, Romanist, papist <nf>; ultramontane; Eastern-Rite Christian, Uniate

20 **Protestant,** non-Catholic, Reformed believer, Reformationist, Evangelical; Zwinglian; dissenter 333.3; apostate 363.5; Anglican, Episcopalian, Unitarian, born-again Christian

21 **Jew, Hebrew,** Judaist, Israelite; Orthodox *or* Conservative *or* Reform Jew, Reconstructionist;

Hasid; Zionist; Essene; Rabbinist, Talmudist; Pharisee; Sadducee; Karaite

22 **Mormon,** Latter-day Saint, Josephite <nf>

23 **Muslim,** Muhammadan *and* Mohammedan <nf>, Mussulman, Moslem, Islamite; Shiite, Shia, Sectary; Motazilite, Sunni, Sunnite, Wahhabi, Sufi, Druze; dervish; abdal; Black Muslim; Muslim fundamentalist *or* militant

24 **Christian Scientist,** Christian Science Practitioner

ADJS 25 **religious, theistic; monotheistic; polytheistic,** ditheistic, tritheistic; **pantheistic,** cosmotheistic; physicomorphic; anthropomorphic, anthropotheistic; **deistic**

26 **sectarian,** sectary, **denominational,** schismatic, schismatical

27 **nonsectarian, undenominational, nondenominational;** interdenominational

28 **Protestant,** non-Catholic, Reformed, Reformationist, Evangelical; Lutheran, Calvinist, Calvinistic, Zwinglian; dissentient 333.6; apostate 363.11

29 **Catholic; Roman Catholic** *or* RC <nf>, Roman; Romish *and* popish *and* papish *and* papist *and* papistical <nf>; ultramontane

30 **Jewish, Hebrew,** Judaic, Judaical, Israelite, Israelitic, Israelitish; Orthodox, Conservative, Reform, Reconstructionist; Hasidic

31 **Muslim, Islamic,** Moslem, Islamitic, Islamistic, Muhammadan, Mohammedan; Shiite, Sunni, Sunnite

32 <Eastern> Buddhist, Buddhistic; Brahmanic, Brahmanistic; Vedic, Vedantic; Confucian, Confucianist; Taoist, Taoistic, Shintoist, Shintoistic; Zoroastrian, Zarathustrian, Parsee

33 **religions and sects**

anthroposophy
Babism *or* Babi
Baha'i *or* Bahaism
Brahmanism
Brahmoism
Buddhism
Ch'an Buddhism
Chen Yen Buddhism
Ching-t'u Buddhism
Christianity
Confucianism
Conservative Judaism
Dakshincharin Hinduism
Eleusinianism
Ethical Culture
Gnosticism
gymnosophy
Hare Krishna
Hasidism
Hinduism
Hinayana Buddhism
Islam
Jainism
Jodo Buddhism
Judaism
Lamaism
Lingayat Hinduism
Magianism
Mahayana Buddhism
Mandaeism
Mithraism
Nichiren Buddhism
Orphism
Orthodox Judaism
Parsiism *or* Parsism
Rastafarianism
Reconstructionism
Reform Judaism
reincarnationism
Rosicrucianism
Sabaeanism
Saivism
Shaivite Hinduism
Shamanism
Shiite Muslimism
Shin Buddhism
Shingon Buddhism
Shinto *or* Shintoism
Sikhism
Soka Gakkai Buddhism
Sufism
Sunni Muslimism
Taoism
Tendai Buddhism
Theosophy
Theravada Buddhism
T'ien-t'ai Buddhism
Unitarianism
Vaishnavite Hinduism
Vajrayana Buddhism
Vamacharin Hinduism
Vedanta *or* Vedantism
Wahabiism
Yoga *or* Yogism
Zen *or* Zen Buddhism
Zoroastrianism *or* Zoroastrism

34 **Christian denominations**

Adventism *or* Second Adventism
African Methodist Episcopal church
African Methodist Episcopal Zion church
Amish
Anabaptism
Anglicanism
Anglo-Catholicism
antinomianism
Arianism
Assemblies of God
Athanasianism
Baptist church
Boehmenism
Calvinism
Catholicism
Christadelphian
Christian Science *or* Church of Christ, Scientist
Churches of Christ
Churches of God
Churches of the Brethren
Churches of the Nazarene
Congregationalism
Coptic Church
Eastern Orthodox
Episcopalianism
Erastianism
Evangelicanism
Greek Orthodox
homoiousianism
homoousianism
Jansenism
Jehovah's Witness
latitudinarianism
Laudism *or* Laudianism
Liberal Catholicism
Lutheranism
Mennonitism
Methodism
Moral Rearmament
Mormonism
New Thought
Origenism
Orthodox Christianity
Oxford Movement
Pentecostal church
Practical Christianity
Presbyterianism
Puritanism
Puseyism
Quakerism *or* Society of Friends
quietism
Roman Catholicism
Rosicrucianism
Russian Orthodox
Sabellianism
Salvation Army
Seventh-Day Adventist
Socinianism
Stundism
Swedenborgianism
Tractarianism
Trinitarianism
Ubiquitarianism
Uniatism
Unification church
Universalism
Wesleyanism *or* Wesleyism

676 THEOLOGY

NOUNS 1 **theology** <see list>, **religion, divinity;** theologism; doctrinism, doctrinalism; religious studies, religious education

2 **doctrine, dogma** 953.2; **creed,** credo; credenda, articles of religion *or* faith; Apostles' Creed, Nicene Creed, Athanasian Creed; Catechism

3 **theologian,** theologist, theologizer, theologer, theologician, theologue; **divine;** scholastic, schoolman; theological *or* divinity student, theological, theologue; canonist

ADJS 4 **theological, religious; divine;** doctrinal, doctrinary, ecclesiological; canonic *or* canonical; physicotheological

5 **kinds and branches of theology**

angelology
apologetics
Buddhist theology
canonics
Christian theology
Christology
covenant theology
crisis theology
demonology
doctrinal theology
dogmatics *or* dogmatic theology
eschatology
existential theology
feminist theology
fideism
hagiology
hierography *or* hagiography
hierology
Islamic theology
Judaism theology
liberation theology
Mercersburg theology
natural *or* rational theology
neoorthodoxy *or* neoorthodox theology
nonformalogical theology
patristics *or* patristic theology
phenomenological theology
philosophical theology
physicotheology
rationalism
sacerdotalism
school theology *or* scholastic theology
secularism
sophiology
soteriology *or* Christology *or* logos theology *or* logos Christology
systematics *or* systematic theology
theological hermeneutics

677 DEITY

NOUNS 1 **deity, divinity,** divineness, supernatural being, immortal; **godliness,** godlikeness; **godhood,** godhead, godship, Fatherhood; heavenliness; divine essence; **transcendence;** god, goddess

2 **God;** Lord, Maker, Creator, Supreme Being, Almighty, King of Kings, Lord of Lords; Jehovah; *Yahweh, Adonai, Elohim* <all Heb>; **Allah;** the Great Spirit, Manitou, Prime Mover

3 <Hinduism> **Brahma,** the Supreme Soul, the Essence of the Universe; **Atman,** the Universal Ego *or* Self; **Vishnu,** the Preserver; **Siva,** the Destroyer, the Regenerator

4 <Buddhism> **Buddha,** the Blessed One, the Teacher, **the Lord Buddha,** bodhisattva

5 <Zoroastrianism> **Ahura Mazda,** Ormazd, Mazda, the Lord of Wisdom, the Wise Lord, the Wise One, the King of Light, the Guardian of Mankind

6 <Christian Science> **Mind, Divine Mind,** Spirit, Soul Principle, Life, Truth, Love

7 **world spirit** *or* **soul,** *anima mundi* <L>, universal life force, world principle, **world-self,** universal ego *or* self, infinite spirit, supreme soul *or* principle, **oversoul, nous, Logos,** World Reason

8 **Nature, Mother Nature,** Dame Nature, Natura, Great Mother

9 **Godhead, Trinity;** Trimurti, Hindu trinity *or* triad

10 **Christ,** Jesus Christ, Son of God, Emmanuel, Redeemer, Messiah; the Way, the Truth, and the Life; Light of the World

11 **the Word, Logos,** the Word Made Flesh, **the Incarnation,** God Incarnate, the Hypostatic Union

12 God the Holy Ghost, **the Holy Ghost, the Holy Spirit,** the Spirit of God, the Spirit of Truth, the Paraclete, the Comforter, the Intercessor, the Dove

13 <divine functions> creation, preservation, dispensation; **providence, divine providence,** dealings *or* dispensations *or* visitations of providence

14 <functions of Christ> salvation, redemption; atonement, propitiation; mediation, intercession; judgment

15 <functions of the Holy Ghost> inspiration, unction, regeneration, sanctification, comfort, consolation, grace, witness

ADJS 16 **divine,** heavenly, celestial, empyrean; **godly, godlike** 692.9; **transcendent,** superhuman, supernatural; self-existent; Christly, Christlike, redemptive, salvational, propitiative, propitiatory, mediative, mediatory, intercessive, intercessional; incarnate, incarnated, made flesh; messianic

17 **almighty, omnipotent,** all-powerful; creating, creative, making, shaping; **omniscient,** providential, all-wise, all-knowing, all-seeing; **infinite,** boundless, limitless, unbounded, unlimited, undefined, omnipresent, ubiquitous; perfect, sublime; eternal, everlasting, timeless, perpetual, immortal, permanent; one; immutable, unchanging, changeless, eternally the same; supreme, sovereign, highest; holy, hallowed, sacred, numinous; glorious, radiant, luminous; majestic; good, just, loving, merciful; triune, tripersonal, three-personed, three-in-one

678 MYTHICAL AND POLYTHEISTIC GODS AND SPIRITS

NOUNS 1 **the gods,** the immortals; the major deities, the greater gods, *di majores* <L>; the minor deities, the lesser gods, *di minores* <L>; pantheon; theogony; **spirits,** animistic spirit *or* powers, manitou, huaca, nagual, mana, pokunt, tamanoas, wakan, zemi

2 **god,** *deus* <L>; **deity, divinity,** immortal, heathen god, pagan deity *or* divinity; **goddess,** *dea* <L>; deva, devi, the shining ones; **idol,** false god, devil-god

3 godling, godlet, godkin; **demigod,** half-god, hero; cult figure; demigoddess, heroine

4 **god, goddesses; Greek and Roman deities** <see list>; **Norse and Germanic deities** <see list>; **Celtic deities** <see list>; **Hindu deities** <see list>; **avatars of Vishnu; Egyptian deities** <see list>; **Semitic deities; Chinese deities; Japanese deities; specialized** *or* **tutelary deities** <see list>

5 **spirit,** intelligence, supernatural being; **genius,** daemon, demon; atua; **specter** 988; **evil spirits** 680

6 **elemental,** elemental spirit; sylph, spirit of the air; gnome, spirit of the earth, earth-spirit; salamander, fire-spirit; undine, water spirit, water-sprite

7 **fairyfolk,** elfenfolk, shee *or* sidhe <Ir>, **the little people** *or* **men,** the good folk *or* people, denizens of the air; **fairyland,** faerie

8 **fairy, sprite, fay,** fairy man *or* woman; **elf, brownie, pixie, gremlin,** ouphe, hob, cluricaune, puca *or* pooka *or* pwca, kobold, nisse, peri; **imp, goblin** 680.8; **gnome,** dwarf; **sylph,** sylphid; **banshee; leprechaun;** fairy queen; Ariel, Mab, Oberon, Puck, Titania, Béfind, Corrigan, Finnbeara; little green men

9 **nymph;** nymphet, nymphlin; **dryad,** hamadryad, wood nymph; vila *or* willi; tree nymph; oread, mountain nymph; limoniad, meadow *or* flower nymph; Napaea, glen nymph; Hyades; Pleiades, Atlantides

10 **water god, water spirit** *or* **sprite** *or* **nymph;** undine, nix, nixie, kelpie; **naiad,** limniad, fresh-water nymph; Oceanid, Nereid, sea nymph, ocean nymph, **mermaid,** sea-maid, sea-maiden, siren; Thetis; **merman,** man fish; **Neptune,** "the old man of the sea"—Homer; Oceanus, Poseidon, Triton; Davy Jones, Davy

11 **forest god, sylvan deity,** vegetation spirit *or* daemon, field spirit, fertility god, corn spirit, **faun, satyr,** silenus, panisc, paniscus, panisca; **Pan,** Faunus; Cailleac; Priapus; Vitharr *or* Vidar, the goat god; Jack-in-the-green, Green Man

12 **familiar spirit,** familiar; **genius, good genius,** daemon, demon, *numen* <L>, totem; **guardian, guardian spirit, guardian angel,** angel, good angel, ministering angel, **fairy godmother;** guide, control, attendant godling *or* spirit, invisible helper, special providence; **tutelary** *or* **tutelar god** *or* **genius** *or* **spirit;** *genius tutelae, genius loci, genius domus, genius familiae* <all L>; **household gods;** *lares familiaris, lares praestites, lares compitales, lares viales, lares permarini* <all L>; penates, lares and penates; ancestral spirits; manes, pitris

13 **Santa Claus,** Santa, Saint Nicholas, Saint Nick, Kriss Kringle, Father Christmas

14 **mythology,** mythicism; **legend, lore, folklore,** mythical lore; fairy lore, fairyism; mythologist; urban legend

ADJS 15 **mythic, mythical, mythological; fabulous, legendary;** folkloric

16 **divine, godlike**

17 **fairy,** faery, **fairylike,** fairyish, fay; sylphine, sylphish, sylphy, sylphidine, sylphlike; **elfin,** elfish, elflike; gnomish, gnomelike; pixieish

18 nymphic, nymphal, nymphean, nymphlike

19 **Greek and Roman deities**

Aeolus
Apollo *or* Apollon *or* Phoebus *or* Phoebus Apollo
Athena *or* Pallas Athena *or* Minerva <Rom>
Bacchus *or* Dionysus
Chaos
Cupid *or* Amor *or* Eros <Gk>
Demeter *or* Ceres <Rom>
Diana *or* Artemis <Gk>
Erebus
Ge *or* Gaea *or* Gaia *or* Tellus <Rom>
Helios *or* Hyperion *or* Phaëthon
Hymen
Juno *or* Hera <Gk>
Lares and Penates
Mars *or* Ares <Gk>
Mercury *or* Hermes <Gk>
Mithras
Momus
Neptune *or* Poseidon <Gk>
Nike
Nyx
Olympic gods *or* Olympians
Persephone <Gk> *or* Proserpina *or* Proserpine
Pluto <Rom> *or* Hades *or* Dis *or* Orcus
Rhea *or* Ops
Saturn *or* Kronus <Gk>
Venus *or* Aphrodite <Gk>
Vesta *or* Hestia <Gk>
Vulcan *or* Hephaestus <Gk>
Zeus <Gk> *or* Jupiter <Rom> *or* Jove *or* Jupiter Fulgur *or* Fulminator *or* Jupiter Tonans *or* Jupiter Pluvius *or* Jupiter Optimus Maximus *or* Jupiter Fidius

20 **Norse and Germanic deities**

Aesir
Asgard
Balder
Bor
Bori
Bragi
Forseti
Frey *or* Freyr
Freya *or* Freyja
Frigg *or* Frigga
Heimdall
Hel
Hermoder
Höder *or* Hödr
Hoenir
Ing
Ithunn *or* Idun
Loki
Nanna
Nerthus *or* Hertha
Njorth *or* Njord
Odin *or* Woden *or* Wotan
Reimthursen
Sif
Sigyn
Thor *or* Donar
Tyr *or* Tiu
Ull *or* Ullr
Vali
Vanir
Vitharr *or* Vidar
Völund
Wayland
Weland
Wyrd
Ymir

21 **Celtic deities**

Aine
Amaethon
Angus Og
Arawn
Arianrhod
Blodenwedd
Bóann
Bodb
Bran
Brigit

Cernunnos
Dagda
Danu
Dewi
Dôn
Dylan
Epona
Fomorians
Goibniu
Gwydion
Lir
Llew Llaw Gyffes *or* Lleu
Lug *or* Lugh
Macha
Morrigan
Neman
Ogma
Ogmios
Rhiannon
Shannon
Teutates

22 Hindu deities

Aditi
Agni
Abhijit
Ardra
Aryaman
Asapurna
Asvins
Avalokita *or* Avalokitesvara
Bhaga
Bhairava
Bhairavi
Brahma
Bhudevi
Brahma
Brihaspati
Candika
Candra
Chandi
Chitragupta
Daksha
Devaki
Devi
Dhara
Dharma
Dhatar
Dharti Mai
Didi Thakrun
Dipti
Durga
Dyaus
Ganesa *or* Ganesh *or* Ganesha *or* Ganapati
Garuda
Gauri
Hanuman
Hardaul
Himavat
Hiranyagarbha
Hotra
Indra *or* Indrani
Jaganmati
Ka
Kala
Kali
Kama
Kamsa
Karttikeya
Kaumudi
Krishna
Lakshmi
Malhal Mata
Manasa
Marut
Mitra
Narada
Parjanya
Parvati
Pushan *or* Pusan
Rahu
Rhibhus
Rudra
Sarasvati
Savitar
Siddhi
Sita
Siva *or* Shiva
Soma
Surya
Uma
Ushas
Vaja
Varuna
Varuni
Vayu
Vibhu
Vijaya
Vishnu
Vivasvan
Vrta
Yama

23 Egyptian deities

Amon
Ammut
Anubis
Aten
Bast
Bastet
Bes
Buto
Geb
Hapi
Horus
Imhotep
Isis
Khem
Khensu
Ma'at
Min
Mut
Neph
Nephthys
Nut
Osiris
Ptah
Qebehsenuef
Ra *or* Amen-Ra *or* Re
Satet
Sekhmet
Selket
Seth *or* Set
Tefnut
Thoth

24 specialized or tutelary deities

agricultural deities 1069.4
deities of fertility 890.5
deities of justice 649.5
deities of the household 228.30
deities of the nether world 682.5
earth goddesses 1072.10
Fates 964.3
forest gods 678.11
goddesses of discord 456.1
gods of commerce 731.11
gods of evil 680.5
gods of lightning 1025.17
gods of marriage 563.13
love deities 104.8
moon goddesses 1072.12
Muses 986.2
music Muses 710.22
poetry Muses 720.10
rain gods 316.6
sea gods 240.4
sun gods 1072.14
thunder gods 56.5
war gods 458.13
water gods 678.10
wind gods 318.3

679 ANGEL, SAINT

NOUNS 1 **angel,** celestial, celestial *or* heavenly being; messenger of God; **seraph,** seraphim <pl>, angel of love; **cherub, cherubim** <pl>, angel of light; principality, archangel; recording angel; **saint,** beatified soul, canonized mortal; patron saint; martyr; redeemed *or* saved soul, soul in glory

2 **heavenly host,** host of heaven, choir invisible, angelic host, heavenly hierarchy, Sons of God, ministering spirits; Amesha Spentas

3 <celestial hierarchy of Pseudo-Dionysius> seraphim, cherubim, thrones; dominations *or* dominions, virtues, powers; principalities, archangels, angels; angelology

4 Azrael, angel of death, death's bright angel; Abdiel, Chamuel, Gabriel, Jophiel, Michael, Raphael, Uriel, Zadkiel

5 **the Madonna;** the Immaculate Conception; Mariology; Mariolatry

ADJS 6 **angelic, angelical, seraphic, cherubic; heavenly, celestial;** archangelic; **saintly, sainted,** full of grace, beatified, canonized; martyred; saved, redeemed, glorified, in glory

680 EVIL SPIRITS

NOUNS 1 **evil spirits, demons, demonkind,** powers of darkness, spirits of the air, host of hell, hellish host, hellspawn, denizens of hell, inhabitants of Pandemonium, souls in hell, damned spirits, lost souls, the lost, the damned

2 **devil,** *diable* <Fr>, *diablo* <Sp>, *diabolus* <L>, deil <Scot>, *Teufel* <Ger>, *diavolo* <Ital>

3 **Satan** <see list>, Satanas

4 Beelzebub, Belial, Eblis, Azazel, Ahriman *or* Angra Mainyu; Mephistopheles, Mephisto; Shaitan, Sammael, Asmodeus; Abaddon, Apollyon; Lilith; Aeshma, Pisacha, Putana, Ravana

5 <gods of evil> Set, Typhon, Loki; Nemesis; gods of the nether world; Namtar, Azazel, Asmodeus, Baba Yaga

6 **demon, fiend,** fiend from hell, **devil,** Satan, daeva, rakshasa, dybbuk, shedu, gyre <Scot>, bad *or* evil *or* unclean spirit; **hellion** <nf>, hellhound, hellkite <old>, she-devil; cacodemon, incubus, succubus; **jinni,** genie, genius, jinniyeh, afreet *or* afrit; evil genius; barghest; **ghoul,** lamia, Lilith, yogini, Baba Yaga, **vampire,** the undead

7 **imp, pixie, sprite, elf, puck,** kobold, *diablotin* <Fr>, tokoloshe, poltergeist, **gremlin,** Dingbelle, Fifinella, **bad fairy,** bad peri; little *or* young devil, devilkin, deviling; erlking; Puck, Robin Goodfellow, Hob, Hobgoblin

8 **goblin, hobgoblin,** hob, ouphe

9 **bugbear, bugaboo, bogey,** bogle, boggart; **booger, bugger,** bug <old>, **booger-man, bogeyman, boogeyman;** bête noire, fee-faw-fum, Mumbo Jumbo

10 **Fury,** avenging spirit; the Furies, the Erinyes, the Eumenides, the Dirae; Alecto, Megaera, Tisiphone

11 **changeling,** elf child; shape-shifter

12 **werefolk, were-animals; werewolf,** lycanthrope, *loup-garou* <Fr>; werejaguar, jaguar-man, uturuncu; wereass, werebear, werecalf, werefox, werehyena, wereleopard, weretiger, werelion, wereboar, werecrocodile, werecat, werehare

13 **devilishness,** demonishness, **fiendishness;** devilship, devildom; horns, the cloven hoof, the Devil's pitchfork

14 **Satanism,** diabolism, devil-worship, **demonism, devilry, diablerie, demonry;** demonomy, demonianism; black magic; Black Mass; sorcery 690; demonolatry, demon *or* devil *or* chthonian worship; demonomancy; demonology, diabolology *or* diabology, demonography, devil lore

15 **Satanist,** Satan-worshiper, diabolist, devil-worshiper, demonist; **demonomist,** demoniast; demonologist, demonologer; demonolater, chthonian, demon worshiper; sorcerer 690.5

VERBS 16 **demonize, devilize,** diabolize; possess, **obsess; bewitch,** bedevil

ADJS 17 **demoniac** *or* **demoniacal,** demonic *or* demonical, demonish, demonlike; **devilish,** devil-like; **satanic, diabolic, diabolical; hellish** 682.8; **fiendish,** fiendlike; ghoulish, ogreish; foul, unclean, damned; inhuman

18 **impish, puckish,** elfish, elvish; mischievous 322.6

19 **designations of Satan**

Adversary
Angel of the bottomless pit
Angel *or* Prince of darkness
Antichrist
Archfiend
Apollyon
Author *or* Father of Evil
Beelzebub
Common Enemy
Demon
Deuce <nf>
Devil Incarnate
Dickens <nf>
Eblis
Evil One
Evil Spirit
Father of Lies
Fiend
Foul Fiend
Haborym
His Satanic Majesty
Lord of the Flies
Lucifer
Mastema
Old Bendy <nf>
Old Enemy
Old Gentleman <nf>
Old Gooseberry <nf>
Old Harry <nf>
Old Ned <nf>
Old Nick <nf>
Old *or* Auld Clootie <Scot nf>
Old Poker <nf>
Old Scratch <nf>
Old Serpent
O-Yama
Prince of Darkness
Prince of the Devils
Prince of the power of the air
Prince of this world
Shaitan
Tempter
Typhon
Wicked One

681 HEAVEN

<abode of the deity and blessed dead>

NOUNS 1 **Heaven** <see list>; "my Father's house"—Bible, "God's residence"—Emily Dickinson, "the great world of light, that lies behind all human destinies"—Longfellow

2 **the hereafter,** the afterworld, immortal life, life to come, immortality, eternal life, the afterlife 839.2, life after death

3 Holy City, **Zion,** New Jerusalem, Heavenly *or* Celestial City, Kingdom of God, City Celestial, Heavenly City of God, City of God, *Civitas Dei* <L>, "heaven's high city"—Francis Quarles

4 **heaven of heavens, seventh heaven,** the empyrean, throne of God, God's throne, celestial throne, the great white throne

5 <Christian Science> bliss, harmony, spirituality, the reign of Spirit, the atmosphere of Soul

6 <Mormon> celestial kingdom, terrestrial kingdom, telestial kingdom

7 <Muslim> Alfardaws, Assama *or* Assuma; Falak al Aflak

8 <Hindu, Buddhist, and Theosophical> nirvana; Buddha-field; devaloka, land of the gods; kamavachara, kamaloka; devachan; samadhi

9 <mythological> Olympus, Mount Olympus; Elysium, Elysian fields; fields of Aalu; Islands *or* Isles of the Blessed, Happy Isles, Fortunate Isles *or*

Islands; Avalon; garden *or* abode of the Gods, garden of the Hesperides, Bower of Bliss; Tir-na-n'Og, Annwfn

10 <Norse> Valhalla, Asgard, Fensalir, Glathsheim, Vingolf, Valaskjalf, Hlithskjalf, Thruthvang *or* Thruthheim, Bilskirnir, Ydalir, Sökkvabekk, Breithablik, Folkvang, Sessrymnir, Noatun, Thrymheim, Glitnir, Himinbjorg, Vithi

11 <removal to heaven> **apotheosis, resurrection, translation,** gathering, **ascension,** the Ascension; **assumption,** the Assumption; removal to Abraham's bosom

ADJS 12 **heavenly,** heavenish; **paradisal, paradisaic, paradisaical,** paradisiac, paradisiacal, paradisic, paradisical; **celestial,** supernal, ethereal; empyrean, empyreal; **unearthly,** unworldly; **otherworldly,** extraterrestrial, extramundane, transmundane, transcendental; Elysian, Olympian; blessed, beatified, beatific *or* beatifical, glorified, in glory; from on high

ADVS 13 **celestially,** paradisally, supernally, ethereally; in heaven, in Abraham's bosom, *in sinu Abraham* <L>, on high, among the blest, in glory

14 **designations of Heaven**

a better place
abode of the blessed
Abraham's bosom
better world
Beulah
Beulah Land
eternal home
eternity
Fiddler's Green
firmament
glory
God's kingdom
God's presence
happy hunting ground
heaven above
high heaven
inheritance of the saints in light
kingdom come <nf>
Land o' the Leal <Scot>
my Father's house
Olympus
Paradise
Svarga *or* Swarga *or* Swerga
the happy land
the heavenly kingdom
the kingdom of glory
the kingdom of God
the kingdom of heaven
the otherworld
the place up there
the presence of God
the Promised Land
the realm of light
the world above
Zion

682 HELL

NOUNS 1 **hell, Hades,** Sheol, Gehenna, Tophet, Abaddon, Naraka, jahannan, avichi, **perdition,** Pandemonium, **inferno,** the pit, **the bottomless pit,** the abyss, "a vast, unbottom'd, boundless pit"—Robert Burns, **nether world,** lower world, underworld, infernal regions, abode *or* world of the dead, abode of the damned, eternal damnation, place of torment, the grave, shades below; **purgatory; limbo**

2 **hellfire,** fire and brimstone, lake of fire and brimstone, everlasting fire *or* torment, "the fire that never shall be quenched"—Bible

3 <mythological> **Hades,** Orcus, Tartarus, Avernus, Acheron, pit of Acheron; Amenti, Aralu; Hel, Niflhel, Niflheim, Naströnd

4 <rivers of Hades> Styx, Stygian creek; Acheron, River of Woe; Cocytus, River of Wailing; Phlegethon, Pyriphlegethon, River of Fire; Lethe, River of Forgetfulness

5 <deities of the nether world> Pluto, Orcus, Hades *or* Aides *or* Aidoneus, Dis *or* Dis pater, Rhadamanthus, Erebus, Charon, Cerberus, Minos; Osiris; Persephone, Proserpine, Proserpina, Persephassa, Despoina, Kore *or* Cora; Hel, Loki; Satan 680.3

VERBS 6 **damn,** doom, send *or* consign to hell, cast into hell, doom to perdition, condemn to hell *or* eternal punishment

7 go to hell *or* to the devil, be damned, go the other way *or* to the other place <nf>

ADJS 8 **hellish, infernal,** sulfurous, brimstone, fire-and-brimstone; chthonic, chthonian; pandemonic, pandemoniac; devilish; Plutonic, Plutonian; Tartarean; Stygian; Lethean; Acherontic; purgatorial, hellborn

ADVS 9 **hellishly, infernally,** in hell, in hellfire, below, in torment

683 SCRIPTURE

NOUNS 1 **scripture, scriptures, sacred writings** *or* **texts, bible;** canonical writings *or* books, sacred canon

2 **Bible, Holy Bible, Scripture, the Scriptures, Holy Scripture,** Holy Writ, the Book, the Good Book, the Book of Books, the Word, the Word of God; Vulgate, Septuagint, Douay Bible, Authorized *or* King James Version, Revised Version, American Revised Version; Revised Standard Version; Jerusalem Bible; Testament; canon

3 **Old Testament,** Tenach; Hexateuch, Octateuch; Pentateuch, Chumash, Five Books of Moses, **Torah,** the Law, the Jewish *or* Mosaic Law, Law of Moses; the Prophets, Nebiim, Major *or* Minor Prophets; the Writings, Hagiographa, Ketubim; Apocrypha, noncanonical writings

4 **New Testament; Gospels,** Evangels, the Gospel, Good News, Good *or* Glad Tidings; Synoptic Gospels, Epistles, Pauline Epistles, Catholic Epistles, Johannine Epistles; Acts, Acts of the Apostles; Apocalypse, Revelation

5 <Jewish> Torah, **Talmud,** Targum, Mishnah, Gemara; Masorah, Bahir, Midrash

6 <Islamic> **Koran, Qur'an,** Hadith, Sunna

7 <other text> sacred text, scripture, sacred writings, canonical writings, canon; Avesta, Zend-Avesta; Granth, Adigranth; Tao Té Ching; Analects of

Confucius; the Eddas; Arcana Caelestia; **Book of Mormon;** Science and Health with Key to the Scriptures

8 <Hindu> **the Vedas, Veda,** Rig-Veda, Yajur-Veda, Sama-Veda, Atharva-Veda, sruti; Brahmana, Upanishad, Aranyaka; Samhita; shastra, Smriti, Purana, Tantra, Agama; Bhagavad-Gita

9 <Buddhist> Pali Canon, Tripitaka; Vinaya Pitaka, Sutta Pitaka, Abhidamma Pitaka; Dhammapada, Jataka; The Diamond-Cutter, The Lotus of the True Law, Prajna-Paramita Sutra, Pure Land Sutras

10 **revelation, divine revelation; inspiration,** afflatus, divine inspiration; theopneusty, theopneustia; theophany, theophania, epiphany; **mysticism,** direct *or* immediate intuition *or* communication, mystical experience, mystical intuition, contemplation, ecstasy; **prophecy,** prophetic revelation, apocalypse

ADJS 11 **scriptural, Biblical,** Old-Testament, New-Testament, Gospel, Mosaic, Yahwist, Yahwistic, Elohist; **revealed, revelational;** prophetic, apocalyptic, apocalyptical; **inspired,** theopneustic; evangelic, evangelical, evangelistic, gospel; apostolic, apostolical; textual, textuary; canonical

12 Talmudic, Mishnaic, Gemaric, Masoretic; rabbinic

13 epiphanic, mystic, mystical

14 Koranic; Avestan; Eddic; Mormon

15 Vedic; tantrist

684 PROPHETS, RELIGIOUS FOUNDERS

NOUNS 1 **prophet** 962.4, *vates sacer* <L>; Old Testament prophets <see list>

2 <Christian founders> **evangelist, apostle, disciple,** saint; Matthew, Mark, Luke, John; Paul; Peter; **the Fathers, fathers of the church**

3 Martin Luther, John Calvin, John Wycliffe, Jan Hus, John Wesley, John Knox, George Fox <Protestant reformers>; Emanuel Swedenborg <Church of the New Jerusalem>; Mary Baker Eddy <Christian Science>; Joseph Smith <Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints>

4 Buddha, Gautama Buddha, Siddhartha Gautama <Buddhism>; Mahavira *or* Vardhamana *or* Jina <Jainism>; Mirza Ali Muhammad of Shiraz *or* the Bab <Babism>; Muhammad *or* Mohammed <Islam>; Confucius <Confucianism>; Lao-tzu <Taoism>; Zoroaster *or* Zarathustra <Zoroastrianism>; Nanak <Sikhism>; Ram Mohan Roy <Brahmo-Samaj>

5 **Old Testament prophets**

Abraham
Amos
Daniel
Ezekiel
Habakkuk
Haggai
Hosea
Isaac
Isaiah
Jacob
Jeremiah
Joel
Jonah
Joseph
Joshua
Malachi
Micah
Moses
Nahum
Obadiah
Samuel
Zechariah
Zephaniah

685 SANCTITY

<sacred quality>

NOUNS 1 **sanctity,** sanctitude; **sacredness, holiness,** hallowedness, numinousness; sacrosanctness, sacrosanctity; heavenliness, transcendence, divinity, divineness 677.1; venerableness, **venerability, blessedness;** awesomeness, awfulness; inviolableness, **inviolability;** ineffability, unutterability, unspeakability, inexpressibility, inenarrableness; godliness 692.2; odor of sanctity

2 **the sacred,** the holy, the holy of holies, the numinous, the ineffable, the unutterable, the unspeakable, the inexpressible, the inenarrable, the transcendent

3 **sanctification, hallowing; purification;** beatitude, blessing; **glorification,** exaltation, enskying; **consecration,** dedication, devotion, setting apart; sainting, canonization, enshrinement; **sainthood, beatification; blessedness; grace,** state of grace; justification, justification by faith, justification by works

4 **redemption,** redeemedness, **salvation,** conversion, regeneration, new life, reformation, adoption; **rebirth, new birth, second birth;** circumcision, spiritual purification *or* cleansing

VERBS 5 **sanctify, hallow; purify,** cleanse, wash one's sins away; **bless,** beatify; **glorify,** exalt, ensky; **consecrate,** dedicate, devote, set apart; **beatify, saint, canonize;** enshrine

6 **redeem,** regenerate, reform, convert, save, give salvation

ADJS 7 **sacred, holy,** numinous, **sacrosanct, religious, spiritual,** heavenly, divine; **venerable,** awesome, awful; inviolable, **inviolate,** untouchable; **ineffable,** unutterable, unspeakable, inexpressible, inenarrable

8 **sanctified, hallowed; blessed,** consecrated, devoted, dedicated, set apart; **glorified, exalted,** enskied; **saintly,** sainted, beatified, canonized

9 **redeemed, saved,** converted, regenerated, regenerate, justified, reborn, born-again, renewed; circumcised, spiritually purified *or* cleansed

WORD ELEMENTS 10 sacr-, sacro-, hier-, hiero-, hagi-, hagio-

686 UNSANCTITY

NOUNS 1 **unsanctity,** unsanctitude; **unsacredness, unholiness,** unhallowedness, unblessedness; profanity, profaneness; unregenerateness, reprobation; **worldliness,** secularity, secularism; secular humanism

2 **the profane,** the unholy; the temporal, the secular, **the worldly,** the fleshly, the mundane; the world, the flesh, and the devil

ADJS 3 **unsacred,** nonsacred, **unholy,** unhallowed, unsanctified, unblessed; profane, **secular, temporal, worldly,** fleshly, mundane; unsaved, unredeemed, unregenerate, reprobate

687 ORTHODOXY

NOUNS 1 **orthodoxy,** orthodoxness, orthodoxism; **soundness,** soundness of doctrine, rightness, right belief *or* doctrine; **authoritativeness,** authenticity, canonicalness, canonicity; traditionalism; the truth, religious truth, gospel truth

2 **the faith, true faith,** apostolic faith, primitive faith; old-time religion, faith of our fathers

3 **the Church, the true church,** Holy Church, Church of Christ, the Bride of the Lamb, body of Christ, temple of the Holy Ghost, body of Christians, members in Christ, disciples *or* followers of Christ; apostolic church; universal church, the church universal; church visible, church invisible; church militant, church triumphant

4 **true believer,** orthodox Christian; Sunni Muslim; Orthodox Jew; orthodox, orthodoxian, orthodoxist; textualist, textuary; canonist; fundamentalist; the orthodox

5 **strictness,** strict interpretation, scripturalism, evangelicalism; hyperorthodoxy, puritanism, puritanicalness, purism; staunchness; straitlacedness, stiff-neckedness, hideboundness; hard line <nf>; **bigotry** 980.1; **dogmatism** 970.6; **fundamentalism,** literalism, precisianism; bibliolatry; Sabbatarianism; sabbatism

6 **bigot** 980.5; **dogmatist** 970.7

ADJS 7 **orthodox,** orthodoxical; of the faith, of the true faith; **sound,** firm, faithful, true, true-blue, right-thinking; Christian; **evangelical; scriptural,** canonical; traditional, traditionalistic; literal, textual; standard, customary, conventional; **authoritative,** authentic, accepted, received, approved; correct, right, proper

8 **strict,** scripturalistic, evangelical; hyperorthodox, puritanical, purist *or* puristic, straitlaced; staunch; hidebound, hardline <nf>, creedbound; **bigoted** 979.10; **dogmatic** 970.22; **fundamentalist,** precisianist *or* precisianistic, literalist *or* literalistic; Sabbatarian

688 UNORTHODOXY

NOUNS 1 **unorthodoxy, heterodoxy;** unorthodoxness, **unsoundness,** un-Scripturality; **unauthoritativeness,** unauthenticity, uncanonicalness, uncanonicity; **nonconformity** 868

2 **heresy,** false doctrine, **misbelief; fallacy, error** 975

3 **infidelity,** infidelism; unchristianity; gentilism; **atheism, unbelief** 695.5

4 **paganism, heathenism;** paganry, heathenry; pagandom, heathendom; pagano-Christianism; allotheism; animism, animatism; idolatry 697

5 **heretic, misbeliever;** heresiarch; nonconformist 868.3; antinomian, Albigensian, Arian, Donatist, etc

6 **gentile;** non-Christian; **non-Jew,** goy, goyim, non-Jewish man *or shegets* <Yiddish>, non-Jewish woman *or shiksa* <Yiddish>; non-Muslim, non-Moslem, non-Muhammadan, non-Mohammedan, *giaour* <Turk>, kaffir; zendik, zendician, zendikite; non-Mormon; infidel; unbeliever 695.11

7 **pagan, heathen;** allotheist; animist; idolater 697.4

VERBS 8 **misbelieve, err,** stray, deviate, wander, go astray, stray from the path, step out of line <nf>, go wrong, fall into error; be wrong, be mistaken, be in error; serve Mammon

ADJS 9 **unorthodox,** nonorthodox, **heterodox, heretical; unsound; unscriptural,** uncanonical, apocryphal; **unauthoritative,** unauthentic, unaccepted, unreceived, unapproved; **fallacious,** erroneous 975.16; antinomian, Albigensian, Arian, Donatist, etc

10 **infidel,** infidelic, misbelieving; **atheistic,** unbelieving 695.19; **unchristian,** non-Christian; gentile, non-Jewish, goyish, uncircumcised; non-Muslim, non-Muham-madan, non-Mohammedan, non-Moslem, non-Islamic; non-Mormon

11 **pagan, paganish,** paganistic; **heathen, heathenish;** pagano-Christian; allotheistic; animist, animistic; idolatrous 697.7

689 OCCULTISM

NOUNS 1 **occultism, esoterics,** esotericism, esoterica, esoterism, esotery; cabalism, cabala *or* kabala *or* kabballa; yoga, yogism, yogeeism; **theosophy,** anthroposophy; symbolics, symbolism; anagogics; anagoge; hermetics; shamanism, spiritism, animism; mystery, mystification; hocus-pocus, mumbo jumbo; mysticism 683.10

2 **supernaturalism,** supranaturalism,

preternaturalism, **transcendentalism; the supernatural,** the supersensible, the paranormal

3 **metaphysics,** hyperphysics, transphysical science, the first philosophy *or* theology

4 **psychics,** psychism, psychicism; **parapsychology, psychical** *or* **psychic research;** metapsychics, metapsychism, metapsychology; psychosophy; panpsychism; psychic monism

5 **spiritualism,** spiritism; mediumism; necromancy; séance, sitting; spirit 988.1

6 psychic *or* psychical phenomena, spirit manifestation; materialization; spirit rapping, table tipping *or* turning; poltergeistism, poltergeist; telekinesis, psychokinesis, power of mind over matter, telesthesia, teleportation; levitation; trance speaking, glossolalia; psychorrhagy; hallucination, déjà vu; séance; automatism, psychography, automatic *or* trance *or* spirit writing; Ouija board, Ouija; planchette; out-of-body experience; cosmic vibration, synchronicity; UFO sighting, alien encounter

7 **ectoplasm,** exteriorized protoplasm; aura, emanation, effluvium; ectoplasy; bioplasma

8 **extrasensory perception** *or* ESP; **clairvoyance,** lucidity, second sight, insight, sixth sense, inner sense, third eye, the force <nf>; intuition 934; foresight 961; premonition 133.1; clairsentience, clairaudience, crystal vision, psychometry, metapsychosis, feyness

9 **telepathy, mental telepathy, mind reading,** thought transference, telepathic transmission; telergy, telesthesia; telepathic dream, telepathic hallucination, cosmic consciousness

10 **divination** 962.2; **sorcery** 690

11 **occultist,** esoteric, mystic, mystagogue, cabalist, supernaturalist, transcendentalist; adept, mahatma; yogi, yogin, yogist; theosophist, anthroposophist; fork bender, unspeller

12 **parapsychologist;** psychist, psychicist; **metapsychist;** panpsychist; **metaphysician,** metaphysicist

13 **psychic; spiritualist,** spiritist, **medium,** ecstatic, spirit rapper, automatist, psychographist; necromancer

14 **clairvoyant;** clairaudient, clairsentient; seer, prophet; psychometer, psychometrist

15 **telepathist, mental telepathist, mind reader,** thought reader

16 **diviner** 962.4; **sorcerer** 690.5

17 **astral body,** astral, linga sharira, design body, subtle body, vital body, etheric body, bliss body, Buddhic body, spiritual body, soul body; kamarupa, desire *or* kamic body; causal body; mental *or* mind body

18 <seven principles of man, theosophy> spirit, atman; mind, manas; soul, buddhi; life principle, vital force, prana; astral body, linga sharira; physical *or* dense *or* gross body, sthula sharira; principle of desire, kama

19 **spiritualization,** etherealization, idealization; **dematerialization,** immaterialization, unsubstantialization; **disembodiment,** disincarnation

VERBS **20** **spiritualize,** spiritize; etherealize; idealize; **dematerialize,** immaterialize, unsubstantialize; **disembody,** disincarnate

21 practice spiritualism, hold a séance *or* sitting; call up spirits 690.11

22 **telepathize, read one's mind**

ADJS **23** **occult, esoteric, esoterical, mysterious,** mystic, mystical, recondite, obscure, arcane; anagogic, anagogical; metaphysic, metaphysical; cabalic, cabalistic; **paranormal, supernatural** 870.15; theosophical, theosophist, anthroposophical

24 **psychic, psychical, spiritual; spiritualistic,** spiritistic; mediumistic; **clairvoyant,** second-sighted, clairaudient, clairsentient, **telepathic; extrasensory,** psychosensory; supersensible, supersensual, pretersensual; telekinetic, psychokinetic; automatist; unconscious, subconscious; transphysical

690 SORCERY

NOUNS **1** **sorcery, necromancy, magic,** sortilege, **wizardry,** theurgy, gramarye <old>, rune, glamour; **witchcraft,** spellcraft, spellbinding, spellcasting; **witchery,** witchwork, bewitchery, enchantment; possession; **voodooism, voodoo,** hoodoo, wanga, juju, jujuism, obeah, obeahism; shamanism; magism, magianism; fetishism; totemism; vampirism; thaumaturgy, thaumaturgia, thaumaturgics, thaumaturgism; theurgy; alchemy; white *or* natural magic; sympathetic magic, chaos magic; **divination** 962.2; spell, charm 691

2 **black magic,** the black art; **diabolism, demonism,** diablerie, demonology, Satanism

3 <practices> magic circle; ghost dance; Sabbath, coven, witches' Sabbath *or* Sabbat; ordeal, ordeal by battle *or* fire *or* water *or* lots; Halloween, Walpurgis Night, witching hour, black mass

4 **conjuration,** conjurement, evocation, invocation; **exorcism,** exorcisation; exsufflation; **incantation** 691.4

5 **sorcerer, necromancer, wizard, wonder-worker,** warlock, theurgist; warlock, male witch; thaumaturge, thaumaturgist, miracle- *or* wonder-worker; alchemist; **conjurer; diviner** 961.4; dowser, water witch *or* diviner; diabolist; Faust, Comus

6 **magician,** mage, magus; Merlin; prestidigitator, illusionist 357.2

7 **shaman,** shamanist; **voodoo,** voodooist, wangateur, **witch doctor,** obeah doctor, **medicine man,** mundunugu, isangoma; witch-hunter, witch-finder; exorcist, exorciser; unspeller

8 **sorceress,** shamaness; **witch,** witchwoman <nf>, witchwife <Scot>, **hex, hag,** lamia; witch of Endor; coven, witches' coven, Weird Sisters <Shakespeare>

9 **bewitcher, enchanter, charmer, spellbinder; enchantress, siren,** vampire; Circe; Medusa, Medea, Gorgon, Stheno, Euryale

VERBS 10 **sorcerize, shamanize; make** *or* **work magic,** wave a wand, rub the ring *or* lamp; ride a broomstick; alchemize

11 **conjure, conjure up,** evoke, invoke, raise, summon, call up; **call up spirits,** conjure *or* conjure up spirits, summon spirits, raise ghosts, evoke from the dead, "call spirits from the vasty deep"—Shakespeare

12 **exorcise,** lay; lay ghosts, **cast out devils;** unspell

13 cast a spell, wave a wand, bewitch 691.9

ADJS 14 sorcerous, necromantic, **magic, magical,** magian, numinous, thaumaturgic, thaumaturgical, miraculous, wizardlike, wizardly; alchemical, alchemistic, alchemistical; shaman, shamanic, shamanist *or* shamanistic; witchlike, witchy, witch; necromantic; voodoo, hoodoo <nf>, voodooistic; incantatory, incantational, spellbinding, hypnotic, autohypnotic; talismanic, fetishistic

691 SPELL, CHARM

NOUNS 1 **spell,** magic spell, **charm,** glamour, weird *or* cantrip <Scot>, wanga; hand of glory; evil eye, *malocchio* <Ital>, whammy <nf>; **hex, jinx, curse; exorcism**

2 **bewitchment, witchery, bewitchery; enchantment, entrancement,** fascination, captivation; illusion, maya; bedevilment; **possession, obsession**

3 **trance, ecstasy,** ecstasis, transport, mystic transport; meditation, contemplation; **rapture;** yoga trance, dharana, dhyana, samadhi; hypnosis 22.7

4 **incantation, conjuration,** magic words *or* formula, invocation, evocation, chant; hocus-pocus, abracadabra, mumbo jumbo; open sesame, abraxas, paternoster

5 **charm, amulet, talisman, fetish,** periapt, phylactery; **voodoo, hoodoo,** juju, obeah, mumbo jumbo; **good-luck charm,** good-luck piece, **lucky piece** or **charm,** rabbit's-foot, lucky bean, four-leaf clover, whammy <nf>; mascot; madstone; love charm, philter; scarab, scarabaeus, scarabee; veronica, sudarium; swastika, fylfot, gammadion; potion; bell, book, and candle

6 **wish-bringer,** wish-giver; **wand, magic wand,** Aaron's rod; Aladdin's lamp, magic ring, magic belt, magic spectacles, magic carpet, seven-league boots; wishing well, wishing stone, wishing cap, Fortunatus's cap; cap of darkness, Tarnkappe, Tarnhelm; fern seed; **wishbone,** wishing bone, merrythought <Brit>

VERBS 7 **cast a spell,** spell, **spellbind; entrance,** trance, put in a trance; **hypnotize, mesmerize**

8 **charm,** becharm, **enchant, fascinate,** captivate, glamour

9 **bewitch,** witch, **hex, jinx;** voodoo, hoodoo; **possess, obsess;** bedevil, diabolize, demonize; hagride; overlook, look on with the evil eye, cast the evil eye

10 **put a curse on,** put a hex on, put a juju on, put obeah on, give the evil eye, give the *malocchio,* give a whammy <nf>

ADJS 11 **bewitching, witching;** illusory, illusive, illusionary; **charming, enchanting, entrancing, spellbinding, fascinating,** glamorous, Circean

12 **enchanted, charmed,** becharmed, charmstruck, charm-bound; **spellbound,** spell-struck, spell-caught; **fascinated,** captivated; **hypnotized, mesmerized;** under a spell, in a trance

13 **bewitched,** witched, witch-charmed, witch-held, witch-struck; hag-ridden; **possessed,** taken over, obsessed

692 PIETY

NOUNS 1 **piety, piousness,** pietism; **religion, faith; religiousness, religiosity,** religionism, religious-mindedness; theism; love of God, adoration; **devoutness,** devotion, devotedness, worship 696, worshipfulness, prayerfulness, cultism; faithfulness, dutifulness, observance, churchgoing, conformity 867; sanctimony; **reverence,** veneration; discipleship, followership; daily communion; deism, mysticism, spirituality

2 **godliness,** godlikeness; fear of God; **sanctity,** sanctitude; odor of sanctity, beauty of holiness; **righteousness, holiness,** goodness; **spirituality,** spiritual-mindedness, holy-mindedness, heavenly-mindedness, godly-mindedness; **purity,** pureness, pure-heartedness, pureness of heart; **saintliness,** saintlikeness; saintship, sainthood; angelicalness, seraphicalness; heavenliness; **unworldliness,** unearthliness, other-worldliness

3 **zeal,** zealousness, zealotry, zealotism; unction; **evangelism, revival,** evangelicalism, revivalism; pentecostalism, charismatic movement; charismatic renewal, baptism in the spirit; charismatic gift, gift of tongues, glossolalia; **overreligiousness, religiosity,** overpiousness, overrighteousness, **overzealousness,**

overdevoutness; bibliolatry; fundamentalism, militance, **fanaticism** 925.11; **sanctimony** 693

4 **believer,** truster, accepter, receiver; God-fearing man, pietist, religionist, saint, theist; **devotee,** devotionalist, votary; **zealot,** zealotist, fundamentalist, militant; **churchgoer,** churchman, churchite; pillar of the church; communicant, daily communicant; **convert,** proselyte, neophyte, catechumen; **disciple,** follower, servant, faithful servant; **fanatic**

5 **the believing, the faithful,** the righteous, the good; the elect, the chosen, the saved; the children of God, the children of light; Christendom, the Church 687.3

VERBS 6 **be pious, be religious; have faith,** trust in God, love God, fear God; witness, bear witness, affirm, **believe** 952.10; keep the faith, fight the good fight, let one's light shine, praise and glorify God, walk humbly with one's God; be observant, follow righteousness

7 **be converted, get religion** <nf>, receive *or* accept Christ, stand up for Jesus, be washed in the blood of the Lamb; be born again, see the light, meet God, enter the church

ADJS 8 **pious,** pietistic; **religious,** religious-minded; theistic; **devout,** devoted, devotional, dedicated, worshipful, prayerful, cultish, cultist, cultistic; **reverent,** reverential, venerative, venerational, adoring, solemn; faithful, dutiful, worshipful; orthodox; affirming, witnessing, believing 953.21; keeping the faith; **observant, practicing**

9 **godly, godlike; God-fearing; righteous, holy,** good; **spiritual,** spiritual-minded, holy-minded, godly-minded, heavenly-minded; **pure,** purehearted, pure in heart; **saintly,** saintlike; **angelic, angelical,** seraphic, seraphical; heavenly; **unworldly,** unearthly, otherwordly, not of the earth, not of this world

10 **regenerate,** regenerated, **converted, redeemed, saved,** God-fearing, theopathic, humble, prostrate; reborn, **born-again;** sanctified 685.8

11 **zealous,** zealotical; ardent, unctuous; **overreligious,** ultrareligious, overpious, overrighteous, **overzealous,** overdevout; holier-than-thou; crusading, missionary, Bible-thumping; **fanatical** 926.32; sanctimonious 693.5

693 SANCTIMONY

NOUNS 1 **sanctimony, sanctimoniousness; pietism,** piety, **piousness,** pietisticalness, false piety; religionism, religiosity; **self-righteousness;** goodiness *and* goody-goodiness <nf>; pharisaism, pharisaicalness; Tartuffery, Tartuffism; **falseness, insincerity, hypocrisy** 354.6; affectation 500; **cant,** mummery, snivel, snuffle; unction, unctuousness, oiliness, smarm *and* smarminesss <nf>, mealymouthedness

2 **lip service,** mouth honor, mouthing, lip homage *or* worship *or* devotion *or* praise *or* reverence; formalism, solemn mockery; BOMFOG *or* brotherhood of man and fatherhood of God

3 **pietist,** religionist, **hypocrite,** religious hypocrite, canting hypocrite, pious fraud, religious *or* spiritual humbug, whited sepulcher, **pharisee,** Holy Willie <Robert Burns>, "a saint abroad and a devil at home"—Bunyan; bleeding heart <nf>; **canter,** ranter, snuffler, sniveler; dissembler, dissimulator; affecter, poser 500.8; **lip server,** lip worshiper, formalist; Pharisee, scribes and Pharisees; Tartuffe, Pecksniff, Mawworm, Joseph Surface

VERBS 4 be sanctimonious, be hypocritical; cant, snuffle, snivel; give mouth honor, render *or* pay lip service

ADJS 5 **sanctimonious,** sanctified, **pious, pietistic, pietistical,** self-righteous, pharisaic, pharisaical, **holier-than-thou,** holier-than-the-pope <nf>; goody *and* goody-goody *and* goo-goo <nf>; **false, insincere, hypocritical** 354.32; affected 500.15; Tartuffish, Tartuffian; canting, sniveling, unctuous, mealymouthed, smarmy <nf>

694 IMPIETY

NOUNS 1 **impiety, impiousness;** ungodliness, godlessness; **irreverence,** undutifulness; desertion, renegadism, apostasy, recreancy; backsliding, recidivism, lapse, fall *or* lapse from grace; **atheism, irreligion; unsanctity** 686

2 **sacrilege, blasphemy,** blaspheming, impiety; **profanity,** profaneness; sacrilegiousness, blasphemousness; **desecration, profanation;** tainting, pollution, contamination

3 sacrilegist, **blasphemer,** Sabbath-breaker; deserter, renegade, apostate, recreant; backslider, recidivist; **atheist,** unbeliever 695.11

VERBS 4 **desecrate, profane,** dishonor, unhallow, commit sacrilege

5 **blaspheme;** vilify, abuse 513.7; curse, swear 513.6; take in vain; taint, pollute, contaminate

ADJS 6 **impious, irreverent,** undutiful; **profane,** profanatory; **sacrilegious, blasphemous;** renegade, apostate, recreant, backsliding, recidivist *or* recidivistic, lapsed, fallen, lapsed *or* fallen from grace; atheistic, **irreligious** 695.17; **unsacred** 686.3

695 NONRELIGIOUSNESS

NOUNS 1 **nonreligiousness, unreligiousness; undevoutness;** indevoutness, indevotion, undutifulness, nonobservance; adiaphorism, indifferentism, Laodiceanism, lukewarm piety; indifference 102; **laicism,** unconsecration; **deconsecration, secularization,** laicization, desacralization

2 **secularism, worldliness,** earthliness, earthiness, mundaneness; **unspirituality,** carnality; worldly-mindedness, earthly-mindedness, carnal-mindedness; materialism, Philistinism

3 **ungodliness,** godlessness, **unrighteousness, irreligion, unholiness,** unsaintliness, unangelicalness; unchristianliness, un-Christliness; impiety 694; **wickedness, sinfulness** 654.4

4 **unregeneracy,** unredeemedness, **reprobacy,** gracelessness, shriftlessness

5 **unbelief, disbelief** 955.1; infidelity, infidelism, faithlessness; **atheism;** nullifidianism, minimifidianism

6 **agnosticism; skepticism, doubt, incredulity,** Pyrrhonism, Humism; scoffing 508.1

7 **freethinking,** free thought, **latitudinarianism; humanism,** secular humanism

8 antireligion; antichristianism, antichristianity; antiscripturism

9 **iconoclasm,** iconoclasticism, image breaking

10 **irreligionist; worldling,** earthling; **materialist;** iconoclast, idoloclast; anti-Christian, antichrist

11 **unbeliever, disbeliever,** nonbeliever; **atheist, infidel, pagan, heathen,** heretic; nullifidian, minimifidian; secularist; **gentile** 688.6

12 **agnostic; skeptic, doubter,** dubitante, **doubting Thomas,** scoffer, Pyrrhonist, Humist

13 **freethinker, latitudinarian,** *esprit fort* <Fr>; humanist, secular humanist

VERBS 14 **disbelieve,** doubt 955.6; scoff 508.9; **laicize,** deconsecrate, **secularize,** desacralize

ADJS 15 **nonreligious, unreligious,** having no religious preference; **undevout,** indevout, indevotional, undutiful, nonobservant, nonpracticing; adiamorphic, indifferentist *or* indifferentistic, Laodicean, lukewarm, indifferent 102.6; unconsecrated, **deconsecrated, secularized,** laicized, desacralized

16 **secularist, secularistic, worldly, earthly,** earthy, terrestrial, **mundane,** temporal; **unspiritual, profane,** carnal, **secular;** humanistic, secular-humanistic; worldly minded, earthly minded, carnal-minded; **materialistic,** material, Philistine

17 **ungodly,** godless, **irreligious, unrighteous, unholy,** unsaintly, unangelic, unangelical; impious 694.6; **wicked, sinful** 654.16

18 **unregenerate,** unredeemed, **unconverted,** godless, reprobate, graceless, shriftless, **lost, damned;** lapsed, fallen, recidivist, recidivistic

19 **unbelieving, disbelieving, faithless; infidel,** infidelic; **pagan, heathen; atheistic,** atheist; nullifidian, minimifidian

20 **agnostic; skeptic, skeptical, doubtful, dubious, incredulous,** Humean, Pyrrhonic; Cartesian

21 **freethinking, latitudinarian**

22 **antireligious;** antichristian; antiscriptural; **iconoclastic**

696 WORSHIP

NOUNS 1 **worship,** worshiping, **adoration, devotion, homage, veneration, reverence,** honor; adulation, esteem; cult, cultus, cultism; latria, dulia, hyperdulia; falling down and worshiping, prostration; co-worship; idolatry 697

2 **glorification,** glory, **praise,** extolment, laudation, laud, exaltation, magnification, dignification

3 **paean,** laud; hosanna, hallelujah, alleluia; **hymn,** hymn of praise, **doxology, psalm, anthem,** motet, canticle, chorale; **chant,** versicle; mantra, Vedic hymn *or* chant; plainsong, carol, gospel song; Introit, Miserere; Gloria, Gloria in Excelsis, Gloria Patri; Te Deum, Agnus Dei, Benedicite, Magnificat, Nunc Dimittis; response, responsory, report, answer; Trisagion; antiphon, antiphony; offertory, offertory sentence *or* hymn; hymnody, hymnology, hymnography, psalmody; hymnal

4 **prayer,** praying, **supplication, invocation,** imploration, impetration, entreaty, beseechment, appeal, petition, suit, aid prayer, bid *or* bidding prayer, request, petitionary prayer, orison, obsecration, obtestation, confession, rogation, **devotions;** genuflection, prostration; silent prayer, meditation, contemplation, communion; intercession *or* intercessory prayer, suffrage; **grace, thanks, thanksgiving;** litany; breviary, canonical prayers; collect, collect of the Mass, collect of the Communion; Angelus; Paternoster, the Lord's Prayer; Hail Mary, Ave, Ave Maria; Kyrie Eleison; Pax; chaplet; rosary, beads, beadroll; Kaddish, Mourner's Kaddish; prayer wheel *or* machine

5 **benediction, blessing,** benison, invocation, benedicite; sign of the cross; laying on of hands

6 **propitiation,** appeasement 465.1; atonement 658

7 **oblation, offering, sacrifice, immolation,** incense; libation, drink offering; burnt offering, holocaust; thank offering, votive *or* ex voto offering; heave offering, peace offering, sacramental offering, sin *or* piacular offering, whole offering; human sacrifice, mactation, infanticide, hecatomb; self-sacrifice, self-immolation; sutteeism; scapegoat, suttee; offertory, collection; penitence

8 divine service, **service,** public worship, **liturgy** 701.3, office, duty, exercises, **devotions;** meeting; church service, church, celebration; **revival,** revival

meeting, camp meeting, tent meeting, praise meeting; watch meeting, watch-night service, watch night; **prayer meeting,** prayers, prayer, call to prayer; morning devotions *or* services *or* prayers, matins, lauds; prime, prime song; tierce, undersong; sext; none, nones; novena; evening devotions *or* services *or* prayers, vesper, vespers, vigils, evensong; compline, night song *or* prayer; bedtime prayer; Mass; pilgrimage, hajj

9 **worshiper,** adorer, venerator, votary, adulator, communicant, daily communicant, celebrant, churchgoer, chapelgoer, parishioner, follower; prayer, suppliant, supplicant, supplicator, petitioner; orans, orant; beadsman; revivalist, evangelist; congregation; **idolater** 697.4; flock, sheep, congregation, concourse, minyan <Heb>

10 <sacred object> cross, crucifix, chalice, relic, incense, holy water, thurible, censer, chrism, rosary beads, votive candle, vigil light; phylactery, tefillin, mezuzah, menorah; totem, talisman, charm, amulet

VERBS 11 **worship, adore, reverence, venerate, revere, honor,** respect, adulate, do *or* pay homage to, pay divine honors to, do service, lift up the heart, bow down and worship, humble oneself before, prostrate, genuflect; **idolize** 697.5

12 **glorify, praise, laud, exalt, extol,** magnify, bless, celebrate; praise God, praise *or* glorify the Lord, bless the Lord, praise God from whom all blessings flow; praise Father, Son, and Holy Ghost; give thanks; sing praises, sing the praises of, sound *or* resound the praises of; doxologize, hymn

13 **pray, supplicate,** invoke, petition, make supplication, *daven* <Yiddish>; **implore, beseech** 440.11, obtest; offer a prayer, send up a prayer, commune with God; **say one's prayers;** tell one's beads, recite the rosary; **say grace, give** *or* **return thanks;** pray over

14 **bless, give one's blessing,** give benediction, confer a blessing upon, invoke benefits upon; cross, make the sign of the cross over *or* upon; lay hands on

15 **propitiate,** make propitiation; appease 465.7; **offer sacrifice,** sacrifice, make sacrifice to, immolate before, offer up an oblation

ADJS 16 **worshipful,** worshiping; **adoring,** adorant; **devout,** devotional; pious; **reverent,** reverential, dedicated; **venerative,** venerational; solemn; at the feet of; **prayerful,** praying, penitent, **supplicatory,** supplicant, suppliant; precatory, precative, imploring, honoring, on one's knees, on bended knee; prone *or* prostrate before, in the dust; blessing, benedictory, benedictional; propitiatory

INTERJS 17 **hallelujah**!, alleluia!, **hosanna!, praise God!,** praise the Lord!, praise ye the Lord!, amen!, "praise Him all His hosts!"—Bible, Heaven be praised!, glory to God!, glory be to God!, glory be to God in the highest!, bless the Lord!, "bless the Lord, O my soul, and all that is within me, bless His holy name!," "hallowed be Thy Name!"—both Bible, praise God from whom all blessings flow; thanks be to God!, *Deo gratias!* <L>; sursum corda! <Hindu>; om!, om mani padme hum!

18 O Lord!, our Father which art in heaven!; God grant!, pray God that!; God bless!, God save!, God forbid!

697 IDOLATRY

NOUNS 1 **idolatry,** idolatrousness, idolism, idolodulia, **idol worship;** heathenism, paganism; image worship, iconolatry, iconoduly; cult, cultism; totemism; **fetishism** *or* fetichism**; demonism,** demonolatry, demon *or* devil worship, Satanism; animal worship, snake worship, fire worship, pyrolatry, Parsiism, Zoroastrianism; sun worship, star worship, Sabaism; tree worship, plant worship, Druidism, nature worship; phallic worship, phallicism; hero worship; idolomancy

2 **idolization,** fetishization; **deification,** apotheosis

3 **idol; fetish,** totem, joss; **graven image, golden calf,** effigy; devil-god, "the god of my idolatry"—Shakespeare; Baal, Jaganatha *or* Juggernaut; sacred cow

4 **idolater,** idolatress, idolizer, idolatrizer, iconolater, cultist, idolist, idol worshiper, image-worshiper; fetishist, totemist; demon *or* devil worshiper, demonolater, chthonian; animal worshiper, zoolater, theriolater, therolater, snake worshiper, ophiolater; fire worshiper, pyrolater, Parsi, Zoroastrian; sun worshiper, heliolater; star worshiper, Sabaist; tree worshiper, arborolater, dendrolater, plant worshiper, Druid, nature worshiper; phallic worshiper; anthropolater, archaeolater, etc; groupie, hero-worshiper

VERBS 5 **idolatrize,** idolize, idolify, idol; fetishize, fetish, totemize; **make an idol of, deify,** apotheosize; idealize, lionize, hero-worship, look up to

6 **worship idols,** worship the golden calf, *adorer le veau d'or* <Fr>

ADJS 7 **idolatrous,** idolatric *or* idolatrical, **idol worshiping;** idolistic, idolizing, iconolatrous, cultish, fetishistic, totemistic; heathen, pagan; demonolatrous, chthonian; heliolatrous; bibliolatrous; zoolatrous; hero-worshiping, lionizing

698 THE MINISTRY

NOUNS 1 **the ministry, pastorate,** pastorage, pastoral care, cure *or* care of souls, **the Church,** the cloth, the pulpit, the desk; **priesthood,** priestship;

apostleship; call, vocation, sacred calling; holy orders; rabbinate

2 ecclesiasticalism, ecclesiology, priestcraft

3 **clericalism,** sacerdotalism; priesthood; priestism; episcopalianism; ultramontanism

4 **monasticism,** monachism, monkery, **monkhood,** friarhood; celibacy 565

5 ecclesiastical office <see list>, church office, dignity

6 **papacy,** papality, **pontificate,** popedom, the Vatican, Apostolic See, See of Rome, the Church

7 hierarchy, hierocracy; theocracy

8 **diocese, see,** archdiocese, bishopric, archbishopric; province; synod, conference; **parish**

9 **benefice,** living, **incumbency,** glebe, advowson; curacy, cure, charge, cure *or* care of souls; prelacy, rectory, vicarage

10 **holy orders, orders** 699.4, major orders, apostolic orders, minor orders; calling, election, nomination, appointment, preferment, induction, institution, installation, investiture; conferment, presentation; **ordination,** ordainment, consecration, canonization, reading in <Brit>

VERBS 11 **be ordained, take holy orders,** take orders, take vows, read oneself in <Brit>; **take the veil,** wear the cloth

12 **ordain,** frock, **canonize, consecrate;** saint

ADJS 13 **ecclesiastic, ecclesiastical, churchly;** ministerial, clerical, sacerdotal, **pastoral; priestly,** priestish; prelatic, prelatical, prelatial; episcopal, episcopalian; archiepiscopal; primatal, primatial, primatical; canonical; capitular, capitulary; abbatical, abbatial; ultramontane; **evangelistic;** rabbinic, rabbinical; priest-ridden; parochial

14 **monastic,** monachal, **monasterial, monkish;** conventual

15 **papal, pontific, pontifical,** apostolic, apostolical; **popish** *or* papist *or* papistic *or* papistical *or* papish <nf>

16 **hierarchical,** hierarchal, hieratic; hierocratic; theocratic, theocratist

17 **ordained;** in orders, in holy orders, of the cloth

18 **ecclesiastical offices**

abbacy
archbishopric *or* archiepiscopate *or* archiepiscopacy
archdeaconry
bishopric *or* bishopdom
canonry *or* canonicate
cardinalate *or* cardinalship
chaplaincy *or* chaplainship
curacy
deaconry *or* deaconship
deanery *or* deanship
episcopate *or* episcopacy
ministry
pastorate *or* pastorship *or* pastorage
pontificate *or* papacy *or* popedom
prebend *or* prebendaryship *or* prebendal stall
prelacy *or* prelature *or* prelateship *or* prelatehood
presbytery *or* presbyterate
primacy *or* primateship
rabbinate
rectorate *or* rectorship
vicariate *or* vicarship

699 THE CLERGY

NOUNS 1 **clergy, ministry,** the cloth; clerical order, clericals; **priesthood;** priestery; presbytery; prelacy; Sacred College; rabbinate; hierocracy, pastorage; clerical venue

2 **clergyman,** clergywoman, man *or* woman of the cloth, **divine, ecclesiastic, churchman, cleric,** clerical; clerk, clerk *or* person in holy orders, tonsured cleric; **minister, minister of the Gospel, parson, pastor,** *abbé* and *curé* <Fr>, **rector,** curate, vicar, man *or* woman of God, servant of God, shepherd, sky pilot *and* Holy Joe <nf>, reverend <nf>; supply minister *or* preacher, supply clergy; **chaplain;** military chaplain, padre <nf>; the Reverend, the Very *or* Right Reverend; Doctor of Divinity *or* DD; elder

3 **preacher,** sermoner, sermonizer, sermonist, homilist; pulpiter, pulpiteer; predicant, predikant; preaching friar; circuit rider; televison *or* TV preacher, telepreacher <nf>

4 holy orders, major orders, priest *or* presbyter, deacon *or* diaconus, subdeacon *or* subdiaconus; minor orders, acolyte *or* acolytus, exorcist *or* exorcista, reader *or* lector, doorkeeper *or* ostiarius; ordinand, candidate for holy orders

5 **priest,** *gallach* <Heb>, **father,** father in Christ, **padre,** cassock, presbyter; curé, parish priest; confessor, father confessor, spiritual father *or* director *or* leader, holy father; penitentiary

6 **evangelist,** revivalist, evangel, evangelicalist; **missionary,** missioner; missionary apostolic, missionary rector, colporteur; television *or* TV evangelist, televangelist <nf>

7 benefice-holder, beneficiary, **incumbent;** resident, residentiary

8 church dignitary, ecclesiarch, ecclesiast, hierarch; minor *or* lay officer

9 <Catholic> pope, pontiff; cardinal, dean, archbishop, bishop, provost, high priest, ecclesiarch, canon, monsignor

10 <Mormon> deacon, teacher, priest, elder, **Seventy,** high priest, bishop, patriarch, apostle; Aaronic priesthood, Melchizedek priesthood

11 <Jewish> **rabbi,** rebbe, rabbin; chief rabbi; *baal kore* <Yiddish>; cantor; priest, *kohen* <Heb>, high priest; maggid; Levite; scribe

12 <Muslim> imam, qadi, sheikh, mullah, murshid, mufti, hajji, muezzin, dervish, abdal, fakir, santon, ayatollah

13 <Hindu> Brahman, pujari, purohit, pundit, guru, bashara, vairagi *or* bairagi, Ramwat, Ramanandi; sannyasi; yogi, yogin; bhikshu, bhikhari

14 <Buddhist> bonze, bhikku, poonghie, talapoin; lama; Grand Lama, Dalai Lama, Panchen Lama

15 <pagan> Druid, Druidess; flamen; hierophant, hierodule, hieros, daduchus, mystes, epopt

16 **religious,** *religieux* <Fr>; **monk,** monastic; brother, lay brother; cenobite, conventual; caloyer, hieromonach; **mendicant, friar;** pilgrim, palmer; stylite, pillarist, pillar saint; beadsman; prior, claustral *or* conventual prior, grand prior, general prior; abbot; lay abbot, abbacomes; hermit 584.5; ascetic 667.2; celibate 565.2

17 **nun,** sister, *religieuse* <Fr>, clergywoman, conventual; abbess, prioress; **mother superior,** lady superior, superioress, the reverend mother, holy mother; canoness, regular *or* secular canoness; novice, postulant

18 **religious orders**

Augustinian *or* Austin Friars
Augustinian Hermit
Barnabite
Benedictine *or* Black Monks
Bernardine
Bonhomme
Brigittine
Capuchin
Carmelite *or* White Friars
Carthusian
Cistercian
Cluniac
Conventual
Crosier
Crutched Friars *or* Crossed Friars
Discalced Carmelite
Dominican *or* Black Friars
Franciscan *or* Gray Friars
Friars Minor
Friars Preacher
Gilbertine
Holy Cross
Hospitaler
Jesuit *or* Loyolite
Lorettine
Marist
Maryknoll
Maturine
Minorite
Observant
Oratorian
Pallottine Fathers and Brothers
preaching Friars *or* brothers
Premonstratensian
Recollect *or* Recollet
Redemptorist
Salesian
Templar
Trappist

700 THE LAITY

NOUNS 1 **the laity, lay persons,** laymen, laywomen, nonclerics, nonordained persons, seculars; brothers, sisters, brethren, sistren <nf>, people; flock, fold, sheep; **congregation,** parishioners, churchgoers, assembly; *minyan* <Heb>; **parish,** society; class

2 **layman,** laic, secular, churchman, **parishioner,** church member; brother, sister, lay brother, lay sister; laywoman, churchwoman; catchumen; communicant

ADJS 3 **lay,** laic *or* laical; **nonecclesiastical,** nonclerical, nonministerial, nonpastoral, nonordained; nonreligious; **secular,** secularist; secularistic; temporal, popular, civil; congregational

701 RELIGIOUS RITES

NOUNS 1 **ritualism,** rituality, ritualization, **ceremonialism, formalism,** liturgism; symbolism, symbolics; **cult,** cultus, cultism; sacramentalism, sacramentarianism; sabbatism, Sabbatarianism; ritualization, **solemnization,** solemn observance, **celebration;** liturgics, liturgiology

2 **ritualist, ceremonialist,** celebrant, liturgist, **formalist,** formulist, formularist; sacramentalist, sacramentarian; sabbatist, Sabbatarian; High-Churchman, High-Churchist; crucifer, thurifer, acolyte

3 **rite** <see list>, **ritual,** rituality, **liturgy,** holy rite; service, order of worship; **ceremony, ceremonial; observance,** ritual observance; **formality,** solemnity; **form,** formula, formulary, form of worship *or* service, mode of worship; prescribed form; service, function, duty, office, practice; **sacrament,** sacramental, mystery; ordinance; institution

4 **seven sacraments,** mysteries: baptism, confirmation, the Eucharist, penance, extreme unction, holy orders, matrimony

5 **unction,** sacred unction, sacramental anointment, chrism *or* chrisom, chrismation, chrismatory; **extreme unction, last rites,** viaticum; ointment; chrismal

6 **baptism,** baptizement; **christening; immersion,** total immersion; **sprinkling,** aspersion, aspergation; affusion, infusion; baptism for the dead; baptismal regeneration; baptismal gown *or* dress *or* robe, chrismal; baptistery, baptistry, **font; confirmation,** bar *or* bas mitzvah <Jewish>

7 **Eucharist, Lord's Supper, Last Supper, Communion,** Holy Communion, **the Sacrament,** the Holy Sacrament; intinction; consubstantiation, impanation, subpanation, transubstantiation; real presence; elements, consecrated elements, bread and wine, body and blood of Christ; Host, wafer, loaf, bread, altar bread, consecrated bread; Sacrament Sunday

8 **Mass,** *Missa* <L>, Eucharistic rites; **the Liturgy,** the Divine Liturgy; **parts of the Mass,** High Mass, Low Mass

9 <non-Christian rites> initiation, rite of passage; circumcision; bar mitzvah *and* bas mitzvah <Jewish>; Kaddish, shivah; female circumcision; ritual cleaning, ritual bathing; fertility rite; sun dance, rain dance, war dance, ghost dance, potlatch; witches' Sabbath, black mass; hara-kiri

10 **sacred object** *or* **article; ritualistic manual,** Book of Common Prayer, breviary, canon, haggadah <Jewish>, missal *or* Mass book, book of hours, lectionary, prayer book; siddur *and* mahzor <Jewish>

11 **psalter, psalmbook;** Psalm Book, Book of Common Order; the Psalms, Book of Psalms, the Psalter, the Psaltery

12 **holy day,** hallowday <nf>, holytide, holiday; feast, fast, fast day; Sabbath; Sunday, Lord's day; saint's day; church calendar, ecclesiastical calendar

13 Christian holy days <see list>; Jewish holy days <see list>

14 <Muslim holy days> Ramadan <month>, Bairam, Muharram

VERBS **15** **celebrate, observe, keep, solemnize;** ritualize; celebrate Mass; communicate, administer Communion; attend Communion, receive the Sacrament, partake of the Lord's Supper; attend Mass

16 **minister, officiate,** do duty, **perform a rite,** perform service *or* divine service; administer a sacrament, administer the Eucharist, etc; anoint, chrism, bless; confirm, impose, lay hands on; make the sign of the cross

17 **baptize, christen;** dip, immerse; sprinkle, asperge; circumcise

18 **confess,** make confession, receive absolution; **shrive,** hear confession; **absolve,** administer absolution; administer extreme unction

ADJS **19** **ritualistic, ritual; ceremonial, ceremonious;** formal, formular, formulaic, formulary; liturgic, liturgical, **liturgistic, liturgistical;** solemn, consecrated; High-Church; **sacramental,** sacramentarian; eucharistic, eucharistical, baptismal; paschal; Passover; matrimonial, nuptial; funereal

20 **religious rites**

ablution
absolution
anointing of the sick
aspersion *or* asperges
celebration
cleansing *or* purification
confession *or* auricular confession *or* the confessional *or* the confessionary
confirmation
greater *or* lesser litany
high celebration
imposition *or* laying on of hands
invocation
invocation of saints
last rites
litany
love feast *or* agape
lustration
offertory
pax *or* kiss of peace
penitence
processional
reciting the rosary *or* telling one's beads
sign of the cross *or* signum crucis <L> *or* signing *or* crossing oneself
sprinkling
Stations of the Cross
thurification *or* censing
viaticum

21 **Western Christian holy days**

Advent <pre-Christmas>
All Saints' Day *or* Allhallows <Nov 1>
All Souls' Day <Nov 2>
Annunciation *or* Lady Day <Mar 25>
Ascension Day *or* Holy Thursday <40 days after Easter>
Ash Wednesday <start of Lent>
Assumption <Aug 15>
Candlemas *or* Candlemas Day *or* Presentation <Feb 2>
Christmas <Dec 25>
Circumcision *or* Holy Name Day <Jan 1>
Corpus Christi <Thurs after Trinity Sun>
Easter *or* Eastertide <1st Sunday after 1st full moon after vernal equinox>
Easter Even *or* Holy Saturday
Ember days <beginning of seasons>
Epiphany *or* Three Kings' Day <Jan 6>
Good Friday <Fri before Easter>
Hallowmas *or* Allhallowmas *or* Allhallowtide *or* Halloween *or* Allhallows *or* All Saints' Day *or* All Souls' Day <Oct 31>
Holy Thursday *or* Maundy Thursday <before Easter>
Holy Week *or* Passion Week <before Easter>
Lammas *or* Lammas Day *or* Lammastide *or* Feast of St Peter's Chains <Aug 1>
Lent *or* Lententide <40 days before Easter>
Martinmas <Nov 11>
Michaelmas *or* Michaelmas Day *or* Michaelmastide <Sept 29>
Palm Sunday <Sun before Easter>
Pentecost *or* Whitsuntide *or* Whitsun *or* Whitsunday <7th Sun after Easter>
Quadragesima *or* Quadragesima Sunday
Septuagesima
Shrove Tuesday *or* Mardi Gras *or* Carnival *or* Pancake Day <Tues before Ash Wednesday>
Solemnity of Mary <Jan 1>
Trinity Sunday <Sun after Pentecost>
Twelfth-tide *or* Twelfth-night *or* Twelfth-day <night before Epiphany>
Whitweek and Whitmonday and Whit-Tuesday, etc <after Pentecost>

22 **Jewish holy days**

Fast of Av *or* Ninth of Av *or* Tishah b'Av
Hanukkah *or* Feast of the Dedication *or* Feast of Lights
High Holy Days <between Rosh Hashanah and Yom Kippur>
Lag b'Omer
Passover *or* Pesach
Purim
Rosh Hashanah *or* New Year
Rosh Hodesh *or* Rosh Chodesh
Shabuoth *or* Shavuoth *or* Pentecost *or* Feast of Weeks
Shemini Atzeres
Simhath Torah *or* Rejoicing over the Law
Sukkoth *or* Feast of Tabernacles
Yom Kippur *or* Day of Atonement

702 ECCLESIASTICAL ATTIRE

NOUNS **1** **canonicals,** clericals <nf>, robes, cloth; **vestments,** vesture; regalia; liturgical garments, ceremonial attire; pontificals, pontificalia, episcopal vestments; habit, veil

2 **robe,** frock, mantle, gown, cloak, surplice, scapular, cassock, cope, hood, clerical collar, etc

3 **staff,** pastoral staff, **crosier, cross,** cross-staff, crook, paterissa

ADJS 4 **vestmental,** vestmentary

703 RELIGIOUS BUILDINGS

NOUNS 1 **church,** kirk <Scot>, bethel, **meetinghouse,** church house, **house of God,** place of worship, house of worship *or* prayer; conventicle; **mission;** basilica, major *or* patriarchal basilica, minor basilica; **cathedral,** cathedral church, *duomo* <Ital>; collegiate church

2 **temple,** fane; **tabernacle; synagogue,** *shul* <Yiddish>; **mosque,** masjid; dewal, girja; pagoda; kiack; pantheon; wat, ziggurat

3 **chapel,** chapel of ease, chapel royal, side chapel, school chapel, sacrament chapel, Lady chapel, oratory, oratorium; chantry; sacellum, sacrarium

4 **shrine,** holy place, dagoba, cella, naos; sacrarium, sanctum sanctorum, holy of holies, delubrum; tope, stupa; reliquary, *reliquaire* <Fr>

5 **sanctuary, holy of holies, sanctum, sanctum sanctorum,** adytum, sacrarium

6 **cloister, monastery, house, abbey,** friary; priory, priorate; lamasery; **convent, nunnery;** ashram, hermitage, retreat

7 **parsonage, pastorage,** pastorate, manse, **church house,** clergy house; presbytery, **rectory,** vicarage, deanery; glebe; chapter house

8 bishop's palace; **Vatican;** Lambeth, Lambeth Palace

9 <church interior> vestry, sacristy, sacrarium, sanctuary, diaconicon *or* diaconicum; baptistery; aisle, ambry, apse, blindstory, chancel, choir, choir screen, cloisters, confessional, confessionary <old>, crypt, Easter sepulcher, narthex, nave, porch, presbytery, rood loft, rood stair, rood tower *or* spire *or* steeple, transept, triforium; organ loft

10 <church furnishings> piscina; stoup, holy-water stoup *or* basin; baptismal font; patent; reredos; jube, rood screen, rood arch, chancel screen; altar cloth, cerecloth, chrismal; communion *or* sacrament cloth, corporal, fanon, oblation cloth; rood cloth; baldachin, *baldacchino* <Ital>; kneeling stool, *prie-dieu* <Fr>; prayer rug *or* carpet *or* mat

11 <vessels> cruet; chalice; ciborium, pyx; chrismal, chrismatory; monstrance, ostensorium; reliquary; font, holy-water font

12 **altar,** scrobis; bomos, eschara, hestia; **Lord's table,** holy table, **Communion table,** chancel table, table of the Lord, God's board; rood altar; altar desk, missal stand; credence, prothesis, table *or* altar of prothesis, predella; superaltar, retable, retablo, ancona, gradin; altarpiece, altar side, altar rail, altar carpet, altar stair; altar facing *or* front, frontal; altar slab, altar stone, mensal

13 **pulpit, rostrum,** ambo; **lectern,** desk, reading desk

14 <seats> **pew; stall;** mourners' bench, anxious bench *or* seat, penitent form; amen corner; sedilia

ADJS 15 **churchly,** churchish, **ecclesiastical;** churchlike, templelike; cathedral-like, cathedralesque; tabernacular; synagogical, synagogal; pantheonic

16 **claustral, cloistered; monastic,** monachal, **monasterial; coventual,** conventical

704 SHOW BUSINESS, THEATER

NOUNS 1 **show business,** show biz <nf>, the entertainment industry; **the theater, the footlights, the stage, the boards,** the bright lights, Broadway, the Great White Way, the scenes <old>, traffic of the stage; avant-garde theater, contemporary theater, experimental theater, total theater, epic theater, theater of the absurd, theater of cruelty, guerrilla theater, street theater; stagedom, theater world, stage world, stageland, playland; **drama,** legitimate stage *or* theater, legit <nf>, off Broadway, off-off-Broadway; music *or* musical theater, fringe theater; café theater, dinner theater; regional theater; repertory drama *or* theater, stock; summer theater, summer stock, straw hat *or* straw hat circuit <nf>; **vaudeville,** variety; **burlesque; circus,** carnival; magic show; theatromania, theatrophobia

2 **dramatics;** dramatization, dramaticism, dramatism; **theatrics,** theatricism, **theatricalism,** theatricality, staginess; theatricals, amateur theatricals; **histrionics,** histrionism; dramatic *or* histrionic *or* Thespian art; dramatic stroke, *coup de théâtre* <Fr>; **melodramatics,** sensationalism; **dramaturgy,** dramatic structure, play construction, dramatic form; dramatic irony, tragic irony

3 **theatercraft, stagecraft,** stagery, scenecraft; **showmanship**

4 **stage show, show; play,** stage play, piece, vehicle, work; **hit** *or* hit show <nf>, gasser <nf>, success, critical success, audience success, word-of-mouth success, box-office hit, long run; short run, failure, **flop** *and* bomb *and* turkey <nf>

5 **tragedy,** tragic drama, melodrama; tragic flaw; buskin, cothurnus; tragic muse, Melpomene

6 **comedy;** comic relief; comic muse, Thalia; black comedy, satire, farce; sock, coxcomb, cap and bells, motley, bladder, slapstick, burlesque; historic comedy

7 **act, scene, number, turn,** bit *and* shtick <nf>,

routine <nf>; curtain raiser *or* lifter; introduction; expository scene; monologue, soliloquy; **prologue,** epilogue; **entr'acte,** intermezzo, intermission, interlude, *divertissement* <Fr>, *divertimento* <Ital>, climax; **finale,** afterpiece; exodus, exode; chaser <nf>; curtain call, curtain; encore, ovation; hokum *or* hoke act <nf>; song and dance; burlesque act; stand-up comedy act; sketch, skit

8 **acting, playing,** playacting, performing, **performance,** taking a role *or* part, role-playing; **representation, portrayal, characterization,** interpretation, projection, enactment; **impersonation,** personation, miming, mimicking, mimicry, mimesis; pantomiming, mummery; Method acting; improvisation; ham *and* hammy acting *and* hamming *or* hamming up <nf>, camping it up <nf>, overacting, histrionics; stage presence; stage directions, **business,** stage business, *jeu de théâtre* <Fr>, acting device; stunt *and* gag <nf>; hokum *or* hoke <nf>; buffoonery, slapstick; patter; stand-up comedy; crossover

9 **repertoire, repertory;** stock

10 **role, part,** piece <nf>; cue, **lines,** side; cast; **character,** person, personage; lead, starring *or* lead *or* leading role, fat part, leading man, leading woman *or* lady, hero, heroine; antihero; title role, top billing, protagonist, principal character; supporting role, supporting character; ingenue, *jeune première* or *jeune premier* <Fr>, romantic lead; <Fr>; *soubrette* <Fr>; villain, heavy <nf>, bad guy <nf>, antagonist, deuteragonist; bit, bit part, minor role, speaking part; feed *or* feeder, straight part; walking part, walk-on, extra; double, stand-in, stunt person, stunt man *or* woman, understudy; top banana, second banana; chorus, Greek chorus; stock part *or* character; **actor** 707.2

11 **engagement,** playing engagement, booking; **run; stand,** one-night stand *or* one-nighter; **circuit,** barnstorming, vaudeville circuit, borscht circuit; **tour, bus-and-truck, production tour;** date, gig <nf>

12 theatrical performance, **performance, show, presentation,** presentment, **production,** entertainment, stage presentation *or* performance; bill; **exhibit, exhibition;** benefit performance, benefit; personal appearance; showcase, tryout, preview; premiere, premier performance, debut, opening night; farewell performance, swan song <nf>; command performance; matinee; sellout, full house

13 **production,** mounting, staging, putting on; stage management; **direction,** *mise-en-scène* <Fr>; blocking; **rehearsal,** dress rehearsal, walk-through, run-through, technical *or* tech rehearsal *or* run, final dress, gypsy rehearsal *or* run-through *or* run

14 **theater, playhouse, house,** theatron, odeum; **auditorium; opera house,** opera; **hall,** music hall, concert hall; **amphitheater;** circle theater, arena, stadium, theater-in-the-round; vaudeville theater; burlesque theater; **little theater,** community theater; open-air theater, outdoor theater; Greek theater; children's theater; Elizabethan theater, Globe Theatre; showboat; dinner theater; cabaret, nightclub, club, night spot, *boîte de nuit* <Fr>

15 **auditorium,** seating; parquet, orchestra, **pit** <Brit>; **orchestra circle,** parquet circle, parterre; **dress circle;** fauteuil *or* theatre stall *or* **stall** <Brit>; **box,** box seat, **loge,** *baignoire* <Fr>; stage box; proscenium boxes, parterre boxes; balcony, gallery, mezzanine; **peanut gallery** *and* paradise <nf>; standing room; box office

16 **stage,** the boards; acting area, playing *or* performing area; thrust stage, three-quarter-round stage, theater-in-the-round; apron, passerelle, apron stage, forestage; proscenium stage, proscenium arch, proscenium; bridge; revolving stage; orchestra, pit, orchestra pit; **bandstand,** shell, band shell; stage right, R; stage left, L; upstage, downstage, backstage, center stage; **wings,** coulisse; dressing room, greenroom; flies, fly gallery, fly floor; gridiron, grid <nf>; board, lightboard, switchboard; dock; prompter's box; curtain, grand drape, safety curtain, asbestos curtain, fire curtain; stage door

17 <stage requisites> **property, prop;** practical piece *or* prop <nf>, handprop; costume 5.9; theatrical makeup, makeup, greasepaint, blackface, clown white; spirit gum

18 stage lighting, lights, instruments; **footlights,** foots <nf>, floats; floodlight, flood; bunch light; battens, houselights; **limelight,** follow spot, spotlight *or* spot <nf>, following spot <nf>, arc light, arc, klieg *or* kleig light; color filter, color wheel, medium, gelatin *or* gel; projector, stroboscope *or* strobe *or* strobe light; lightboard; dimmer; marquee; light plot

19 **setting, stage setting,** stage set, **set,** *mise-en-scène* <Fr>; location, locale

20 **scenery,** decor; **scene;** screen, **flat;** cyclorama *or* cyc; batten; side scene, **wing,** coulisse; border; tormentor, **teaser;** wingcut, woodcut; transformation, transformation scene; flipper; counterweight; **curtain,** rag <nf>, hanging; **drop,** drop scene, drop curtain, scrim, cloth; **backdrop,** back cloth <Brit>; act drop *or* curtain; tab, tableau curtain

21 **playbook, script,** text, **libretto;** promptbook; book, book of words; **score; scenario,** continuity, shooting script; scene plot; lines, actor's lines, cue, sides; stage direction; prompt book

22 **dramatist; playwright,** playwriter, dramaturge;

doctor *and* play doctor *and* play fixer <nf>; dramatizer; **scriptwriter, scenario writer,** scenarist, **scenarioist, screenwriter; gagman,** gag writer, joke writer, jokesmith; **librettist;** tragedian, comedian; farcist, *farceur* and *farceuse* <Fr>, farcer; melodramatist; monodramatist; mimographer; **choreographer**

23 **theater man,** theatrician; **showman,** exhibitor, **producer, impresario; director,** auteur; stage director, **stage manager;** set designer, scenewright; costume designer, costumer, *costumier* and *costumière* <Fr>, wardrobe master *or* mistress; dresser; hair *or* wigmaker *or* designer; makeup artist, visagiste; propsmaster *or* propsmistress; prompter; callboy; playreader; master of ceremonies, MC *or* emcee <nf>; box-office staff; ticket collector; usher, usherer, usherette, doorkeeper; ringmaster, equestrian director; barker, ballyhoo man *and* spieler <nf>

24 **stage technician, stagehand,** stage crew, machinist <old>, sceneman, scene master, **sceneshifter;** flyman; carpenter; **electrician;** sound man; scene painter, scenic artist, scenewright

25 **agent, actor's agent,** playbroker, ten-percenter <nf>; **booking agent;** advance agent, advance man; press agent; publicity man *or* agent; business manager, publicity manager

26 **patron,** patroness; **backer, angel** <nf>, promoter; Dionysus

27 **playgoer, theatergoer;** attender 221.5, spectator 918, audience 48.6, house; moviegoer, **motion-picture fan** <nf>; first-nighter; standee, groundling <old>; *claqueur* <Fr>, hired applauder; pass holder, deadhead <nf>, stage-door Johnny; critic, reviewer, talent scout

VERBS 28 **dramatize,** theatricalize; melodramatize; scenarize; **present, stage, produce, mount, put on,** put on the stage, adapt for the stage; **put on a show;** try out, preview; give a performance; premiere; **open,** open a show, open a show cold <nf>; set the stage; ring up the curtain, ring down the curtain; **star, feature** <nf>, bill, **headline,** give top billing to; succeed, make *or* be a hit *and* have legs <nf>, be a gas *or* gasser *and* run out of gas <nf>; fail, flop *and* bomb *and* bomb out <nf>; script

29 **act, perform, play,** playact, tread the boards, strut one's stuff <nf>; appear, **appear on the stage;** act like a trouper; register; emotionalize, emote <nf>; pantomime, mime; patter; sketch; troupe, barnstorm <nf>; improvise, ad-lib, wing it <nf>; steal the show, upstage, steal the spotlight; **debut,** make one's debut *or* bow, come out, take the stage, make an entrance; act as foil *or* feeder, stooge <nf>, be straight man for; **star,** play the lead, get top billing, have one's name in lights, costar, understudy

30 **enact, act out; represent, depict, portray;** act *or* play *or* perform a part *or* role, role-play, take a part, sustain a part, act *or* play the part of; create a role *or* character; **impersonate,** personate; play opposite, support

31 **overact,** overdramatize, chew up the scenery <nf>, act all over the stage; **ham** *and* ham it up <nf>, camp it up; play to the gallery; **mug** <nf>, grimace; spout, rant, roar, declaim, "out-herod Herod"—Shakespeare; milk a scene, milk it; **underact,** underplay, fluff, go blank, throw away <nf>

32 **rehearse, practice,** go through, walk *or* run through, go over; block; go through one's part, read one's lines; learn one's lines, memorize, con *or* study one's part; be a fast *or* slow study; interpret the part, get into character

ADJS 33 **dramatic,** dramatical <old>, **dramaturgic, dramaturgical; theatric, theatrical, histrionic, thespian;** scenic; **stagy;** theaterlike, stagelike; rehearsed, staged, interpreted, improvised; **spectacular; melodramatic;** ham *or* hammy *or* campy <nf>; overacted, overplayed, milked <nf>; underacted, underplayed, thrown away; musical, choral; **operatic;** choreographic, terpsichorean; ballet, balletic; legitimate; stellar, all-star; stagestruck, starstruck; stageworthy, actor-proof

34 **tragic,** heavy; buskined, cothurned; tragicomic *or* tragicomical

35 **comic, light;** tragicomical, **farcical, slapstick;** camp *or* campy <nf>; burlesque

ADVS 36 **on the stage** *or* boards, before an audience, before the footlights; **in the limelight** *or* spotlight; onstage; downstage, upstage; backstage, off stage, behind the scenes; down left *or* DL; down right *or* DR; up left *or* UL; up right *or* UR

705 DANCE

NOUNS 1 **dancing** <see list>, terpsichore, dance; the light fantastic; **choreography;** dance drama, choreodrama; **hoofing** <nf>

2 **dance, hop** <nf>, dancing party, **shindig** *and* shindy <nf>; **ball,** *bal* <Fr>; masked ball, masque, mask, masquerade ball, masquerade, *bal masqué* <Fr>, *bal costumé* <Fr>, fancy-dress ball, cotillion *or* cotillon; promenade, **prom** <nf>, formal <nf>; country dance, square dance, barn dance, hoedown; mixer, stag dance; record hop; dinner-dance, tea dance, *thé dansant* <Fr>, dinner dance

3 **dancer,** danseur, terpsichorean, **hoofer** <nf>, step dancer, tap dancer, clog dancer, go-go dancer, foxtrotter, etc; **ballet dancer; ballerina,** danseur,

danseuse, coryphée; *première danseuse* and *danseur noble* <Fr>, corps de ballet; classical dancer; **modern dancer;** *corps de ballet* <Fr>; figurant, figurante; **chorus girl, chorine,** chorus boy *or* man; chorus line; geisha *or* geisha girl; nautch girl, bayadere; hula girl; taxi dancer; topless dancer; burlesque dancer, strip-teaser, stripper *and* bump-and-grinder <nf>; choreographer

4 **ballroom, dance hall,** dancery; dance palace; discotheque, disco; dance floor; nightclub, casino

VERBS 5 **dance, trip the light fantastic,** go dancing, "trip it as we go, on the light fantastic toe"—Milton, trip, skip, hop, foot, prance <nf>, **hoof** *and* hoof it <nf>, clog, tap-dance, fold-dance, etc; shake, shimmy, shuffle; waltz, one-step, two-step, foxtrot, etc; choreograph

ADJS 6 **dancing, dance, terpsichorean;** balletic; choreographic

7 **kinds of dancing**

aerobic dancing
ballet
ballroom dancing
belly dancing
break dancing
character dancing
choral dancing
classical ballet
clog dancing
comedy ballet
country dancing
dirty dancing
disco dancing
fan dancing
flamenco
folklorico
folk dancing
go-go dancing
interpretive dancing
jazz dancing
jazz tap
jitterbugging
lap dancing
line dancing
marathon dancing
modern ballet
modern dance
morris dancing
ritual dancing
round dancing
slam dancing
social dancing
soft-shoe dancing
solo dancing
square dancing
step dancing
sword dancing
tap dancing
taxi dancing

706 MOTION PICTURES

NOUNS 1 **motion pictures, movies, the movies, the pictures,** moving pictures, films, the films, the cinema, the screen, the big screen, the silver screen, the flicks *and* the flickers <nf>, motion-picture industry, moviedom, filmdom, Hollywood; **motion picture, movie, picture, film,** flick *and* flicker <nf>, picture show, motion-picture show, moving-picture show, photoplay, photodrama; **sound film,** silent film *or* silent; cinéma vérité *or* direct cinema; vérité; magic realism; **documentary film** *or* **movie,** docudrama, docutainment; **feature,** feature film, feature-length film, main attraction; theatrical film, big-screen film; **motion-picture genre** *or* **type;** TV film *or* movie, made-for-television movie *or* film, cable movie, miniseries; **short,** short movie, short subject; preview, sneak preview; independent film, indie; **B-movie,** B-picture, Grade B movie, low-budget picture; **educational film** *or* **movie,** training film, promotional film, trigger film; **underground film** *or* **movie,** experimental film *or* movie, avant-garde film *or* movie, representational film, art film *or* movie, surrealistic film *or* movie; **cartoon,** animated cartoon, animation, cel animation, claymation, computer graphics; animatron, audioanimatron; video <nf>, rental movie, pay-per-view movie; **rated movie** *or* **film,** rating system, rating, G *or* general audience, PG *or* parental guidance suggested, PG-13 *or* parents strongly cautioned, R *or* restricted *or* children under 17 require accompanying parent or guardian, NC-17 *or* X *or* no children under 17 admitted; filmmaking

2 <movie type> drama, comedy, musical, love story, mystery, thriller, adventure, romance, Western, shoot-em-up <nf>, historical film, epic film, futuristic film, science-fiction *or* sci-fi film, foreign *or* foreign-language film, film noir, cult movie, girl flick

3 **script, screenplay,** motion-picture play *or* script, shooting script, storyboard, scenario, treatment, original screenplay, screen adaptation; plot, subplot, story; **dialogue,** book, lines; **role,** lead, romantic lead, stock character, ingenue, soubrette, cameo, bit, silent bit

4 **motion-picture studio, movie studio,** film studio, dream factory <nf>, animation studio, lot, back lot, sound stage, location; **set, motion-picture set, film set,** *mise-en-scène* <Fr>, properties *or* props, set dressing; **motion-picture company, film company,** production company; **producer,** filmmaker, moviemaker, **director,** auteur, screenwriter *or* scriptwriter *or* scenarist, editor *or* film editor, **actor, actress, film actor, film actress,** player, cinemactor, cinemactress, star, starlet, character actor, featured player, supporting actor *or* actress, supporting player, bit player, extra; **crew,** film crew

5 **motion-picture photography, photography,** cinematography, camera work, cinematics, camera work, camera angle, camera position, **shot, take,** footage, retake; screen test; **special effects,** rear-screen projection, mechanical effects, optical effects, process photography, FX; **color photography,** Technicolor *and* CinemaScope <trademark>; black-and-white, color, colorization; **cameraman** *or* **camerawoman, motion-picture cameraman** *or* **camerawoman,** cinematographer, director of photography *or* DP, first cameraman, lighting cameraman

6 **motion-picture editing, film editing, editing,** cutting, arranging, synchronizing; **transition,** fade, fade-out/fade-in, dissolve, lap *or* overlap dissolve, out-focus-dissolve, match dissolve, cross-dissolve, mix; colorizing, colorization; freeze-frame

7 **motion-picture theater, movie theater,** picture theater *or* house, film theater, cinema <Brit>, movie house *or* palace, dream palace <nf>, circuit theater, drive-in theater *or* movie, grind house <nf>, fleapit <Brit>; **screen,** movie screen, motion-picture screen, silver screen, aspect ratio *or* format, screen proportion, wide-screen, Cinerama *and* Cinemascope *and* VistaVision *and* Ultra-Panavision <trademarks>

VERBS 8 **film, shoot,** cinematize, filmmake; colorize

ADJS 9 **motion-picture, movie, film,** cinema, cinematic, filmistic, filmic; colorized; black-and-white; animated; animatronic, audioanimatronic

707 ENTERTAINER

NOUNS 1 **entertainer,** public entertainer, performer; artist, artiste; impersonator, female impersonator; **vaudevillian,** vaudevillist; dancer 705.3, hoofer <nf>; song and dance man; chorus girl, show girl, chorine <nf>; coryphée; chorus boy *or* man; burlesque queen <nf>, **stripteaser,** exotic dancer, ecdysiast; stripper *and* peeler *and* stripteuse *and* bump-and-grinder <nf>; dancing girl, nautch girl, belly dancer; go-go dancer; geisha, geisha girl; mountebank; **magician,** conjurer, prestidigitator, sleight-of-hand artist; circus performer, clown; mummer, guiser <Scot>, guisard; singer, musician 710; performance artist

2 **actor, actress, player,** stage player *or* performer, playactor, histrion, histrio, thespian, Roscius, theatrical <nf>, trouper; child actor; mummer, pantomime, pantomimist; monologist, diseur, diseuse, reciter; dramatizer; mime, mimer, mimic; strolling player, stroller; barnstormer <nf>; character actor *or* actress, character man *or* woman, character; **villain,** antagonist, **bad guy** *or* **heavy** *or* black hat <nf>, villainess; juvenile, ingenue; *jeune premier* and *jeune première* <Fr>; soubrette; foil, feeder *and* stooge <nf>, straight man *or* person; utility man *or* person; protean actor; featured actor, leading man *or* lady, lead actor *or* actress; Method actor; matinee idol <nf>, star of stage and screen; romantic lead

3 circus artist *or* performer; trapeze artist, aerialist, flier <nf>; high-wire artist, tightrope walker, slack-roper artist, equilibrist; acrobat, tumbler; bareback rider; juggler; lion tamer, sword swallower; snake charmer; clown; ringmaster, equestrian director

4 **motion-picture actor,** movie actor; **movie star,** film star; starlet; day player, under-five player, contract player

5 **ham** *or* ham actor <nf>; grimacer

6 **lead,** leading man *or* lady, leading actor *or* actress, principal, **star,** superstar, megastar, headliner, headline *or* feature attraction; costar; **hero, heroine,** protagonist; juvenile lead, *jeune premier* or *jeune première* <Fr>; first tragedian, heavy lead <nf>; **prima donna,** diva, singer 710.13; première danseuse, prima ballerina, *danseur noble* <Fr>

7 **supporting actor** *or* **actress; support,** supporting cast; **supernumerary,** super *or* supe <nf>, spear-carrier <nf>, **extra;** bit player; walking gentleman *or* lady <nf>, walk-on, mute; figurant, figurante; **understudy, stand-in,** standby, substitute, swing

8 **tragedian,** tragedienne

9 **comedian,** comedienne, **comic, funnyman;** farcist, farcer, *farceur* and *farceuse* <Fr>; stand-up comic *or* comedian <nf>, light comedian, genteel comedian, low comedian, slapstick comedian, hokum *or* hoke comic <nf>

10 **buffoon,** *buffo* <Ital>, **clown, fool, jester, zany, merry-andrew,** jack-pudding, pickle-herring, **motley fool,** motley, wearer of the cap and bells; harlequin; Pierrot; Pantaloon, Pantalone; Punch, Punchinello, Pulcinella, Polichinelle; Punch and Judy; Hanswurst; Columbine; Harlequin; Scaramouch

11 **cast,** cast of characters, characters, persons of the drama, *dramatis personae* <L>; supporting cast; **company,** acting company, outfit, **troupe;** repertory company, stock company, touring company; ensemble, chorus, *corps de ballet* <Fr>; circus troupe

708 MUSIC

NOUNS 1 **music** <see list>, harmonious sound, "the only universal tongue"—Samuel Rogers, "the universal language of mankind"—Longfellow

2 **melody,** melodiousness, **tunefulness,** musicalness, musicality; **tune, tone,** musical sound, musical quality, tonality; sweetness, dulcetness, mellifluence, mellifluousness

3 **harmony, concord,** concordance, concert, consonance *or* consonancy, consort, accordance, **accord,** monochord, concentus, symphony, diapason; synchronism, synchronization; **attunement,** tune, attune; chime, chiming; unison, unisonance, homophony, monody; **euphony;** chime; light *or* heavy harmony; two-part *or* three-part harmony, etc; harmony *or* music of the spheres; harmonics 709

4 **air,** aria, **tune, melody,** line, melodic line, refrain, note, **song,** solo, solo part, soprano part, treble, lay, descant, lilt, **strain,** measure; canto, cantus

5 **piece,** opus, **composition,** production, work; **score; arrangement,** adaptation, orchestration, harmonization, setting; **form**; transcription, accompaniment

6 **classical music,** classic; concert music, serious music, longhair music <nf>, symphonic music, chamber music, operatic music; semiclassic, semiclassical music

7 **popular music,** pop music, pop, light music, popular song *or* air *or* tune, **ballad;** hit, song hit, hit tune; Tin Pan Alley; karaoke

8 **dance music,** ballroom music, **dances;** syncopated music, **syncopation; ragtime** *or* rag, doo-wop; modern dance music

9 **jazz;** hot jazz, Dixieland, Basin Street, New Orleans, Chicago, traditional jazz *or* trad <Brit nf>; **swing,** jive <nf>; bebop, bop <nf>; mainstream jazz; avant-garde jazz, the new music <nf>, modern jazz, progressive jazz, third-stream jazz, cool jazz, acid jazz; boogie *or* boogie-woogie; rhythm-and-blues *or* R and B, blues; walking bass, stride *or* stride piano

10 **rock-and-roll, rock music,** rock-'n'-roll, rock, hard rock, soft rock, acid rock, folk rock, country rock, rockabilly, hard core, full-tilt boogie, heavy metal, punk rock, New Wave, fusion, grunge

11 **folk music,** folk songs, ethnic music, ethnomusicology; folk ballads, balladry; border ballads; country music, hillbilly music; country-and-western music, western swing; old-time country music *or* old-timey music; bluegrass; field holler; ethnic music, soul, reggae, ska

12 **march,** martial *or* military music; military march, quick *or* quickstep march; processional march, recessional march; funeral *or* dead march; wedding march

13 **vocal music, song; singing,** caroling, warbling, lyricism, vocalism, **vocalization;** operatic singing, bel canto, coloratura, bravura; choral singing; folk singing; croon, crooning; yodel, yodeling; scat, scat singing; intonation; hum, humming; solmization, tonic sol-fa, solfeggio, solfège, sol-fa, sol-fa exercise

14 **song,** lay, *Lied* <Ger>, *chanson* <Fr>, carol, **ditty,** canticle, lilt; **ballad,** ballade, *ballata* <Ital>; *canzone* <Ital>; canzonet, *canzonetta* <Ital>; aubade, serenade, lullaby, barcarole, glee, lay, chantey *or* chanty *or* shantey, chant, plainsong, canticle, chorale, carol, hymn, psalm, anthem

15 **solo;** karaoke; **aria;** operatic aria

16 <Italian terms for arias> arietta, arioso; aria buffa, aria da capo, aria d'agilità, aria da chiesa, aria d'imitazione, aria fugata, aria parlante; bravura, aria di bravura; coloratura, aria di coloratura; cantabile, aria cantabile; recitativo

17 **sacred music, church music,** liturgical music; **hymn,** hymn-tune, hymnody, hymnology; **psalm,** psalmody; **chorale,** choral fantasy, anthem; motet; **oratorio;** passion; **mass;** requiem mass, requiem, missa brevis, missa solemnis; offertory, offertory sentence *or* hymn; **cantata;** doxology, introit, canticle, paean, prosodion; recessional

18 **part music,** polyphonic music, part song, part singing, ensemble music, ensemble singing; **duet,** duo, *duettino* <Ital>; **trio,** terzet, *terzetto* <Ital>; **quartet; quintet; sextet,** sestet; **septet,** septuor; **octet;** cantata, lyric cantata; madrigal, *madrigaletto* <Ital>; **chorus** 710.16, chorale, glee club, choir; choral singing; four-part, soprano-alto-tenor-base *or* SATB; barbershop quartet

19 **round, rondo,** rondeau, **roundelay,** catch, troll; rondino, rondoletto; **fugue,** canon, fugato

20 **polyphony,** polyphonism; **counterpoint,** contrapunto; **plainsong,** Gregorian chant, Ambrosian chant; *faux-bourdon* <Fr>; musica ficta, false music

21 monody, monophony, homophony

22 **part,** melody *or* voice part, **voice** 709.5, **line;** descant, canto, cantus, cantus planus *or* firmus, plain song, plain chant; prick song, cantus figuratus; soprano, tenor, treble, alto, contralto, baritone, bass, bassus; undersong; drone; **accompaniment;** continuo, basso continuo, figured bass, thorough bass; ground bass, basso ostinato; drone, drone bass, bourdon, burden

23 **response,** responsory report, answer; echo; antiphon, antiphony, antiphonal chanting *or* singing

24 **passage, phrase,** musical phrase, strain, part, motive, motif, theme, subject, figure; leitmotiv; **movement;** introductory phrase, anacrusis; statement, exposition, development, variation; division; period, musical sentence; section; **measure;** figure; **verse, stanza;** burden, bourdon; **chorus, refrain,** response; folderol, **ornament** 709.18, cadence 709.23, harmonic close, resolution; **coda,** tailpiece; ritornello; intermezzo, interlude; bass passage; tutti, tutti passage; bridge, bridge passage

25 <fast, slow, etc passages> presto, prestissimo; allegro, allegretto; scherzo, scherzando; adagio, adagietto; andante, andantino; largo, larghetto, larghissimo; crescendo; diminuendo, decrescendo; rallentando, ritardando; ritenuto; piano, pianissimo; forte, fortissimo; staccato, marcato, marcando; pizzicato; spiccato; legato; stretto

26 **overture, prelude,** *Vorspiel* <Ger>, **introduction,** operatic overture, dramatic overture, concert overture, voluntary, descant, vamp; curtain raiser

27 **impromptu, extempore, improvisation, interpolation;** cadenza; **ornament** 709.18, flourish, ruffles and flourishes, grace note, appoggiatura, mordent, upper mordent, inverted mordent; **run,** melisma; vamp; lick, hot lick, riff

28 **score,** musical score *or* copy, **music,** notation, musical notation, written music, copy, draft, transcript, transcription, version, edition, text, arrangement; part; full *or* orchestral score, compressed *or* short score, piano score, vocal score, instrumental score; tablature, lute tablature; opera score, opera; **libretto;** sheet music; **songbook,** songster; hymnbook, hymnal; music paper; music roll

29 **staff,** stave <Brit>; line, ledger line; bar, bar line; space, degree; brace

30 **execution, performance; rendering,** rendition, music-making, **touch, expression;** fingering; pianism; intonation; repercussion; pizzicato, staccato, spiccato, parlando, legato, cantando, rubato, demilegato, mezzo staccato, slur; glissando

31 **musicianship;** musical talent *or* flair, musicality; virtuosity; pianism; musical ear, ear for music; musical sense, sense of rhythm; absolute *or* perfect pitch; relative pitch

32 musical occasion; choral service, service of lessons and carols, service of song, sing <nf>, singing, community singing *or* sing, singfest, songfest, sing-in; karaoke; folk-sing *and* hootenanny <nf>; **festival,** music festival; opera festival; folk-music festival, jazz festival, rock festival; *Sängerfest* <Ger>, *eisteddfod* <Welsh>; jam session <nf>

33 **performance,** musical performance, **program,** musical program, program of music; **concert,** symphony concert, chamber concert; philharmonic concert, philharmonic; popular concert, pops *and* pop concert <nf>; promenade concert, prom <nf>; band concert; **recital;** service of music; concert performance <of an opera>; **medley,** potpourri; swan song, farewell performance

34 **musical theater, music theater, lyric theater,** musical stage, lyric stage; **music drama,** lyric drama; song-play, *Singspiel* <Ger>; **opera,** grand opera, light opera, ballad opera; comic opera, *opéra bouffe* <Fr>, *opera buffa* <Ital>; **operetta; musical comedy; musical;** Broadway musical; musical drama; **ballet,** *opéra ballet* <Fr>, comedy ballet, *ballet d'action* <Fr>, *ballet divertissement* <Fr>; dance drama; chorus show; **song-and-dance act;** minstrel, minstrel show

VERBS **35** **harmonize,** be harmonious, be in tune *or* concert, chord, **accord,** symphonize, synchronize, **chime, blend,** blend in, symphonize, segue; tune, attune, atone, sound together, sound in tune; assonate; melodize, musicalize

36 **tune, tune up,** attune, atone, chord, **put in tune;** voice, string; tone up, tone down

37 **strike up,** strike up a tune, **strike up the band,** break into music, pipe up, pipe up a song, yerk out <nf>, **burst into song**

38 **sing, vocalize,** carol, descant, lilt, troll, line out *and* belt out *and* tear off <nf>; **warble,** trill, tremolo, quaver, shake; **chirp,** chirrup, twit <Brit nf>, **twitter;** pipe, whistle, tweedle, tweedledee; **chant; intone,** intonate; **croon; hum; yodel;** roulade; chorus, choir, sing in chorus; **hymn,** anthem, psalm, "make a joyful noise unto the Lord"—Bible; sing the praises of; minstrel; ballad; **serenade;** sol-fa, do-re-mi, solmizate

39 **play, perform, execute, render,** do; interpret; make music; concertize; symphonize; chord; accompany; play by ear; play at, pound out *and* saw away at <nf>

40 **strum, thrum, pluck,** plunk, **pick,** twang, sweep the strings

41 **fiddle** <nf>, play violin *or* the violin; scrape *and* saw <nf>

42 **blow a horn,** sound *or* wind the horn, sound, blow, wind, **toot,** tootle, pipe, tweedle; bugle, carillon, clarion, fife, flute, trumpet, whistle; bagpipe, doodle <Brit nf>; lip, tongue, double-tongue, triple-tongue

43 **syncopate,** play jazz, swing, jive <nf>, rag <nf>, jam <nf>, riff <nf>

44 **beat time,** keep time, tap, tap out the rhythm, keep tempo; count, count the beats; beat the drum, **drum** 55.4, play drum *or* the drums, thrum, beat, thump, pound; tomtom; ruffle; beat *or* sound a tattoo

45 **conduct, direct,** lead, wield the baton

46 **compose, write, arrange, score, set, set to music,** put to music; musicalize, melodize, **harmonize; orchestrate;** instrument, instrumentate; **adapt,** make an adaptation; transcribe, transpose

ADJS **47** **musical, musically inclined,** musicianly, with an ear for music; virtuoso, virtuose, virtuosic; **music-loving,** music-mad, musicophile, philharmonic; absolute, aleatory

48 **melodious,** melodic; **musical,** music-like; **tuneful,** tunable; fine-toned, tonal, **pleasant-sounding,** agreeable-sounding, pleasant, appealing, agreeable, catchy, singable; **euphonious** *or* euphonic, **lyric, lyrical,** melic; **lilting,** songful, songlike; **sweet, dulcet,** sweet-sounding, achingly sweet, sweet-flowing; honeyed, mellifluent, mellifluous, mellisonant, music-flowing; rich, mellow; sonorous, canorous; golden, golden-toned; silvery, silver-toned; sweet-voiced, golden-voiced, silver-voiced, silver-tongued, golden-tongued, music-tongued; ariose, arioso, cantabile

49 **harmonious,** harmonic, symphonious; harmonizing, **chiming,** blending, well-blended, blended; **concordant,** consonant, accordant, according, **in accord,** in concord, in concert; synchronous, synchronized, in sync <nf>, symphonic, **in tune,** tuned, attuned; in unison, in chorus; unisonous, unisonant; homophonic, monophonic, monodic; assonant, assonantal; rhythmic

50 **vocal,** singing; **choral,** choric; four-part; operatic; hymnal; psalmic, psalmodic, psalmodial; sacred, liturgical; treble, soprano, tenor, alto, falsetto; coloratura, lyric, bravura, dramatic, heroic; baritone; bass

51 **instrumental,** orchestral, symphonic, concert; dramatico-musical; jazz, syncopated, jazzy, rock, swing

52 **polyphonic, contrapuntal**

ADJS, ADVS 53 <directions, style> legato; staccato; spiccato; pizzicato; forte, fortissimo; piano, pianissimo; sordo; crescendo, accrescendo; decrescendo, diminuendo, morendo; dolce; amabile; affettuoso, con affetto; amoroso, con amore lamentabile; agitato, con agitazione; leggiero; agilmente, con agilità; capriccioso, a capriccio; scherzando, scherzoso; appassionato, appassionatamente; abbandono; brillante; parlando; a cappella; trillando, tremolando, tremoloso; sotto voce; stretto

54 <slowly> largo, larghetto, allargando; adagio, adagietto; andante, andantino, andante moderato; calando; a poco; lento; ritardando, rallentando

55 <fast> presto, prestissimo; veloce; accelerando; vivace, vivacissimo; desto, con anima, con brio; allegro, allegretto; affrettando, moderato

56 **varieties of music**

absolute music
acid rock
Afro-beat
aleatory music
art music
art rock
atonal music *or* atonalism
ballet music
baroque music
beach music
big band
bluegrass
bubblegum
calypso
cathedral music
chamber music
church music
circus music
classical music
country-and-western music
country music
country rock
dance hall
dance music
deca-rock *or* glitter rock
Delta blues
disco
ear candy <nf>
easy listening music
electronic *or* synthesized music
elevator music *or* Muzak <trademark>
ensemble music
field music
folk music
folk rock
funk
fusion
gospel music
Gregorian chant
grunge
hard rock
heavy metal
heavy rock
hillbilly music
hiphop
house music *or* House
inspirational music
instrumental music
jazz music *or* jazz
jazz rock
Latin rock
light music
loft jazz
martial *or* military music
new age *or* new wave
operatic music
organ music
part music
piped music
plainsong
political rock
pomp rock
polyphonic music
pop-rock
popular *or* pop music
program music
progressive rock
progressive soul
psychobilly
punkabilly
punk rock
raga-rock
ragtime music *or* ragtime
rap music
reggae
rhythm and blues *or* R and B *or* the blues
rock music *or* rock'n'roll
rockabilly
rococo music
romantic music
sacred music
salon music
semiclassical music
ska
soul music
swing music *or* swing
technopop
thirdstream music
through-composed music
twelve-tone music *or* serialism
vocal music
wind music
Zopf music
zydeco

709 HARMONICS, MUSICAL ELEMENTS

NOUNS 1 **harmonics,** harmony; melodics; rhythmics; musicality; music, **music theory,** theory; musicology; musicography

2 **harmonization; orchestration, instrumentation;** arrangement, setting, adaptation, transcription; accompaniment; harmonic progression, chordal progression; phrasing, modulation, intonation, preparation, suspension, solution, resolution; tone painting

3 **tone, tonality** 50.3

4 **pitch,** tuning, tune, **tone, key, note,** register, tonality; height, depth; pitch range, tessitura; classical pitch, high pitch, diapason *or* normal *or* French pitch, international *or* concert *or* new philharmonic pitch, standard pitch, low pitch, Stuttgart *or* Scheibler's pitch, philharmonic pitch, philosophical pitch; temperament, equal temperament; absolute pitch, perfect pitch

5 **voice,** *voce* <Ital>; *voce di petto* <Ital>, chest voice; *voce di testa* <Ital>, head voice; **soprano,** mezzo-soprano, dramatic soprano, soprano spinto, lyric soprano, coloratura soprano; boy soprano; male soprano, castrato; alto, contralto; tenor, lyric

tenor, operatic tenor, heldentenor *or* heroic tenor *or* Wagnerian tenor; countertenor *or* male alto; baritone, light *or* lyric baritone; **bass,** basso, basso profundo, basso cantante *or* lyric bass, basso buffo *or* comic bass; treble, falsetto, castrato

6 **scale, gamut,** register, compass, range, diapason; diatonic scale, chromatic scale, modal scale, enharmonic scale, major scale, minor scale, natural *or* harmonic *or* melodic minor, whole-tone scale; great scale; octave scale, dodecuple scale, pentatonic scale; tetrachordal scale; twelve-tone *or* dodecuple scale, tone block, tone row, tone cluster

7 **sol-fa,** tonic sol-fa, do-re-mi; Guidonian syllables, ut, re, mi, fa, sol, la; sol-fa syllables, do, re, mi, fa, sol, la, ti *or* si, do; solmization, solfeggio; fixed-do system, movable-do system; solmization; bobization

8 <diatonic series> tetrachord, chromatic tetrachord, enharmonic tetrachord, Dorian tetrachord; hexachord, hard hexachord, natural hexachord, soft hexachord; pentachord

9 **octave,** *ottava* <Ital>, eighth; *ottava alta* <Ital>, *ottava bassa* <Ital>; small octave, great octave; contraoctave, subcontraoctave, double contraoctave; one-line octave, two-line octave, four-line octave, two-foot octave, four-foot octave; tenor octave

10 **mode,** octave species; major mode, minor mode; Greek mode, Ionian mode, Dorian mode, Phrygian mode, Lydian mode, mixolydian mode, Aeolian mode, Locrian mode; hypoionian mode, hypodorian mode, hypophrygian mode, hypolydian mode, hypoaeolian mode, hypomixolydian mode, hypolocrian mode; Gregorian *or* ecclesiastical *or* church *or* medieval mode; plagal mode, authentic mode; Indian *or* Hindu mode, raga

11 **form,** arrangement, pattern, model, design; song *or* lied form, primary form; **sonata form,** sonata allegro, ternary form, symphonic form, canon form, toccata form, fugue form, rondo form

12 **notation,** character, mark, symbol, signature, sign, *segno* <Ital>; proportional notation; chart *or* paper <nf>, dot; custos, direct; cancel; bar, measure; measure *or* time signature, key signature; tempo mark, metronome *or* metronomic mark; fermata, hold, pause; *presa* <Ital>, lead; slur, tie, ligature, vinculum, enharmonic tie; swell; accent, accent mark, expression mark; ledger, staff, stave, line, space, brace, rest, interval

13 **clef;** C clef, soprano clef, alto *or* viola clef, tenor clef; F *or* bass clef, G *or* treble clef

14 **note,** musical note, notes of a scale; **tone** 50.2; **sharp, flat, natural; accidental;** double whole note, breve; whole note, semibreve; half note, minim; quarter note, crotchet; eighth note, quaver; sixteenth note, semiquaver; thirty-second note, demisemiquaver; sixty-fourth note, hemidemisemiquaver; tercet, triplet; sustained note, dominant, dominant note; enharmonic, enharmonic note; separation, hammering, staccato, spiccato; connected, smooth, legato; responding note, report; shaped note, patent note

15 **key,** key signature, tonality, sharps and flats; **keynote,** tonic; tonic key; major, minor, major *or* minor key, tonic major *or* minor; supertonic, mediant, submediant, dominant, subdominant, subtonic; pedal point, organ point

16 **harmonic,** harmonic tone, overtone, upper partial tone; flageolet tone

17 **chord,** *concento* <Ital>, combination of tones *or* notes; major *or* minor chord, primary *or* secondary chord, tonic chord, dominant chord; tertiary chord, third, fourth, etc; interval, major *or* minor interval

18 **ornament,** grace, arabesque, embellishment, *fioritura* <Ital>; **flourish,** roulade, flight, run; passage, division 708.24; florid phrase *or* passage; coloratura; incidental, incidental note; grace note, appoggiatura, arpeggio, acciaccatura; rubato; mordent, single mordent, double *or* long mordent; inverted mordent, pralltriller; turn, back *or* inverted turn; cadence, cadenza

19 **trill,** trillo; trillet, *trilleto* <Ital>; **tremolo,** tremolant, tremolando; quaver, quiver, tremble, tremor, flutter, falter, shake; **vibrato,** *Bebung* <Ger>

20 **interval,** degree, **step,** note, tone; second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, octave; prime *or* unison interval, major *or* minor interval, harmonic *or* melodic interval, enharmonic interval, diatonic interval; parallel *or* consecutive intervals, parallel fifths, parallel octaves; whole step, major second; half step, halftone, semitone, minor second; augmented interval; diminished interval; diatonic semitone, chromatic semitone, less semitone, quarter semitone, tempered *or* mean semitone; quarter step, enharmonic diesis; diatessaron, diapason; *tierce de Picardie* <Fr> *or* Picardy third; augmented fourth *or* tritone

21 **rest,** pause; whole rest, breve rest, semibreve rest, half rest, minim, quarter rest, eighth rest, sixteenth rest, thirty-second rest, sixty-fourth rest

22 **rhythm, beat, meter, measure,** number *or* numbers, movement, **lilt, swing;** prosody, metrics; rhythmic pattern *or* phrase

23 cadence *or* cadency, authentic cadence, plagal cadence, mixed cadence, perfect *or* imperfect cadence, half cadence, deceptive *or* false cadence, interrupted *or* suspended cadence

24 **tempo, time, beat,** time pattern, timing; time signature; simple time *or* measure, compound time *or* measure; two-part *or* duple time, three-part *or* triple time, triplet, four-part *or* quadruple time, five-part *or* quintuple time, six-part *or* sextuple time, seven-part *or* septuple time, nine-part *or* nonuple time; two-four time, six-eight time, etc; tempo rubato, rubato; mixed times; **syncopation,** syncope; **ragtime,** rag <nf>; waltz time, three-four *or* three-quarter time, andante tempo, march tempo, etc; largo, etc; presto, etc

25 **accent,** accentuation, rhythmical accent *or* accentuation, ictus, emphasis, stress arsis, thesis

26 **beat,** throb, pulse, pulsation; downbeat, upbeat, offbeat; bar beat

ADJS 27 **tonal,** tonic; chromatic, enharmonic; semitonic

28 **rhythmic, rhythmical,** cadent, cadenced, **measured, metric, metrical;** in rhythm, in numbers; beating, throbbing, pulsing, pulsating, pulsative, pulsatory

29 **syncopated; ragtime,** ragtimey <nf>; **jazz;** jazzy *and* jazzed *and* jazzed up <nf>, hot, swingy <nf>

ADVS 30 **in time,** in tempo 709.24, *a tempo* <Ital>

710 MUSICIAN

NOUNS 1 **musician,** musico, **music maker,** professional musician; performer, executant, interpreter, tunester, artiste, artist, concert artist, player, **virtuoso,** virtuosa; maestro; recitalist; **soloist,** duettist; singer; street musician, busker <chiefly Brit>

2 **popular** *or* **pop musician;** ragtime musician; **jazz musician, jazzman;** swing musician; big-band musician; **rock** *or* **rock'n'roll musician**

3 **player, instrumentalist,** instrumental musician; bandman, bandsman; orchestral musician; symphonist; concertist; accompanist, accompanyist

4 **wind player,** wind-instrumentalist, horn player, French-horn player *or* hornist, horner, piper, tooter; bassoonist, bugler, clarinetist, cornettist, fifer, oboist, piccoloist, saxophonist, trombonist; trumpeter, trumpet major; fluegelhornist; flutist *or* flautist

5 **string musician,** strummer, picker <nf>, thrummer, twanger; banjoist, banjo-picker <nf>, citharist, guitarist, guitar-picker <nf>, classical guitarist, folk guitarist, lute player, lutenist, lutist, lyrist, mandolinist, theorbist; violinist, fiddler <nf>; bass violinist, bassist, bass player, contrabassist; violoncellist, cellist, celloist; violist; harpist, harper; zitherist, psalterer

6 xylophonist, marimbaist, vibist *or* vibraphonist

7 **pianist,** pianiste, pianofortist, piano player, ivory tickler *or* thumper <nf>; keyboard player *or* keyboardist; harpsichordist, clavichordist, monochordist; accordionist, concertinist

8 **organist,** organ player

9 organ-grinder, hurdy-gurdist, hurdy-gurdyist, hurdy-gurdy man

10 **drummer, percussionist,** tympanist *or* timpanist, kettle-drummer; taborer

11 **cymbalist,** cymbaler; bell-ringer, **carilloneur,** campanologist, campanist; triangle player

12 **orchestra, band, ensemble,** combo <nf>, group; strings, woodwind *or* woodwinds, brass *or* brasses, string *or* woodwind *or* brass section, string *or* woodwind *or* brass choir; desks

13 **singer, vocalist,** vocalizer, voice, songster, songbird, warbler, lead singer, backup vocalist, caroler, melodist, minstrel, cantor; songstress, singstress, cantatrice, chanteuse, song stylist, canary <nf>; chanter, chantress; aria singer, lieder singer, opera singer, diva, prima donna; improvisator; rap singer; blues singer, torch singer <nf>; crooner, rock *or* rock-and-roll singer; yodeler; country singer, folk singer *or* folkie <nf>; psalm singer, hymner; Meistersinger; **singing voice, voice** 709.5

14 **minstrel, ballad singer,** balladeer, **bard,** rhapsode, rhapsodist; wandering *or* strolling minstrel, **troubadour,** trovatore, trouvère, minnesinger, scop, gleeman, fili, jongleur; street singer, wait; serenader; **folk singer,** folk-rock singer; country-and-western singer

15 **choral singer,** choir member, chorister, chorus singer, choralist; choirman, **choirboy; chorus girl,** chorine <nf>

16 **chorus, chorale, choir,** choral group, choral society, oratorio society, chamber chorus *or* *Kammerchor* <Ger>, men's *or* women's chorus, male chorus *or* *Männerchor* <Ger>, mixed chorus, ensemble, voices; **glee club,** *Liedertafel* and *Liederkranz* <Ger>, singing club *or* society; *a cappella* choir; choral symphony

17 **conductor,** leader, maestro, symphonic conductor, **music director,** director, *Kapellmeister* <Ger>; **orchestra leader, band leader, bandmaster,** band major, drum major

18 **choirmaster,** choral director *or* conductor, chorus master, song leader, *Kapellmeister* <Ger> or *maestro di cappella* <Ital>; choir chaplain, minister of music, precentor, cantor, chorister

19 **concertmaster,** concertmeister, *Konzertmeister* <Ger>, first violinist; first chair

20 **composer, scorer, arranger,** musicographer; melodist, melodizer; harmonist, harmonizer; **orchestrator;** adapter; symphonist; tone poet; ballad maker *or* writer, balladeer, balladist, balladmonger; madrigalist; lyrist; hymnist,

hymnographer, hymnologist; contrapuntist; song writer *or* songwriter, songsmith, tunesmith; lyricist, librettist; musicologist, ethnomusicologist; music teacher

21 **music lover,** philharmonic person, **music fan** *and* music buff <nf>, musicophile; musicmonger; concertgoer, operagoer, opera lover; tonalist

22 <patrons> the Muses, the Nine, sacred Nine, tuneful Nine, Pierides; Apollo, Apollo Musagetes; Orpheus; Erato, Euterpe, Polymnia *or* Polyhymnia, Terpsichore, St Cecilia

23 **songbird,** singing bird, **songster,** feathered songster, warbler; nightingale, Philomel; bulbul, canary, cuckoo, lark, mavis, mockingbird, oriole, ringdove, song sparrow, thrush

711 MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

1 **musical instrument,** instrument of music; electronic instrument, synthesizer, Mellotron <trademark>, Moog synthesizer <trademark>

2 **string** *or* **stringed instrument,** chordophone; strings, string choir

3 **harp, lyre**

4 **plucked stringed instrument** <see list>

5 **viol** *or* **violin family** <see list>, chest of viols; Stradivarius, Stradivari, Strad <nf>; Amati, Cremona, Guarnerius; bow, fiddlestick, fiddlebow; bridge, sound hole, soundboard, fingerboard, tuning peg, scroll; string, G string, D string, A string, E string

6 **wind instrument,** wind; aerophone; **horn,** pipe, tooter; mouthpiece, embouchure, lip, chops <nf>; valve, bell, reed, double reed, key, slide

7 **brass wind** <see list> brass *or* brass-wind instrument; brasses, brass choir

8 **woodwind** <see list>, wood *or* woodwind instrument; woods, woodwind choir; reed instrument, **reed;** double-reed instrument, **double reed; single-reed instrument,** single reed

9 **bagpipe** *or* bagpipes, pipes, union pipes, war pipes, Irish pipes, doodlesack, *Dudelsack* <Ger>; cornemuse, musette; sordellina; chanter, drone; pipe bag

10 **mouth organ,** mouth harp, harp, French harp <nf>, **harmonica,** harmonicon; jaws *or* Jew's harp, mouth bow; kazoo

11 **accordion,** piano accordion; **concertina;** squeeze box <nf>; mellophone; bandonion

12 keyboard instrument <see list>, **piano, harpsichord, clavichord, player piano;** music roll, piano player roll

13 **organ,** keyboard wind instrument

14 **hurdy-gurdy,** vielle, **barrel organ,** hand organ, grind organ, street organ

15 **music box,** musical box; orchestrion, orchestrina

16 **percussion instrument** <see list>, percussion, **drum;** drumstick, jazz stick, tymp stick

17 **keyboard,** fingerboard; console, **keys,** manual, claviature; piano keys, ivories <nf>, eighty-eight <nf>, organ manual, great, swell, choir, solo, echo; pedals

18 **carillon,** chimes 711.18, chime of bells; electronic carillon

19 **organ stop,** stop rank, register

20 string, chord, steel string, wound string, nylon string; fiddlestring, catgut; horsehair; music wire, piano wire

21 plectrum, plectron, pick

22 <aids> metronome, rhythmometer; tone measurer, monochord, sonometer; tuning fork, tuning bar, diapason; pitch pipe, tuning pipe; mute; music stand, music lyre; baton, conductor's baton, stick <nf>; MIDI

23 **plucked stringed instruments**

acoustic guitar
angelica *or* angel lute
Appalachian dulcimer
Autoharp <trademark>
archlute
balalaika
bandore
bandurria <Sp>
banjo
banjolin
banjorine
banjo-ukulele *or* banjuke *or* banjulele *or* banjo-uke
banjo-zither
bass guitar
bouzouki
centerhole guitar
chitarra
cittern
classical guitar
colascione
concert guitar
Dobro guitar <trademark>
electric guitar
F-hole guitar
gittern
harp
Hawaiian guitar
lute
lyre
mando-bass
mando-cello
mandolin *or* mandola
mandolute
mandore
oud
pandora
psaltery
samisen
sitar
Spanish guitar
steel guitar
tamboura *or* tambura
theorbo
troubadour fiddle
ukulele *or* uke <nf>
vina
zither

24 **viol or violin family**

alto *or* tenor viol
baritone viol *or* viola d'amore
baryton
basso da camera <Ital>
bass viol *or* viola da gamba
contrabass
crowd <old>
crwth
descant viol
double bass *or* violone *or* bass viol *or* bass *or* doghouse *or* bass fiddle *or* bull fiddle <nf>
gusla *or* gusle
kit
kit violin
lira da braccio
lira da gamba
lyra viol
nyckelharpa
pocket *or* kit fiddle

rebab
rebec
treble viol
trumpet marine *or* tromba marina
vielle
viol *or* viola da braccio
viol *or* viola da spalla
viol *or* viola di bordone
viol *or* viola di fagotto
viola *or* tenor
viola alta
viola bastarda
viola d'amore
viola pomposa
violette
violin *or* fiddle <nf>
violinette
violino piccolo
violoncello *or* cello
violoncello piccolo
violotta

25 brass wind instruments and brasses

alpenhorn *or* alphorn
althorn *or* alto horn
ballad horn
baritone horn
bass horn
bombardon
buccina
bugle *or* bugle horn
clarion
cornet *or* cornet-à-pistons
cornopean
double-bell euphonium
E-flat horn
euphonium
F horn
flugelhorn
French horn
helicon
horn
hunting horn *or corno di caccia* <Ital>
key trumpet
lituus
lur
mellophone
nyas taranga
oliphant
ophicleide
orchestral horn
pocket trumpet
post horn
sackbut
saxcornet
saxhorn
saxophone
saxtuba
serpent
slide trombone *or* sliphorn <nf>
sousaphone
tenor tuba
tromba
trombone
trumpet
tuba
valve trombone
valve trumpet

26 woodwinds

aulos
bagpipe
bass *or* basset oboe
bass clarinet
basset horn
bassoon
bombarde
bombardon
clarinet *or* licorice stick <nf>
contrabassoon *or* contrafagotto
double bassoon
English horn *or* cor anglais <Fr>
fife
fipple flute *or* pipe
flageolet
flute
heckclarina
heckelphone *or* bass oboe
hornpipe
krummhorn *or* cromorne *or* cromorna *or* crumhorn
musette
nose-flute
oaten reed
oboe *or* hautboy *or* hautbois
oboe d'amore <Ital>
oboe da caccia <Ital>
ocarina *or* sweet potato <nf>
Pandean pipe
panpipe
pibgorn *or* pibcorn
piccolo
pipe
pommer
recorder
saxophone *or* sax <nf>
shakuhachi
shawm
sonorophone
syrinx *or* shepherd's pipe
tabor pipe
tenoroon
tin-whistle *or* penny-whistle
transverse flute
whistle

27 keyboard stringed instruments

baby grand
cembalo
clarichord
clavichord
clavicittern
clavicymbal *or* clavicembalo
clavicytherium
clavier
concert grand
console piano
cottage piano
couched harp
digital piano
dulcimer harpsichord
electronic keyboard
fortepiano
grand piano
hammer dulcimer
harmonichord
harpsichord
lyrichord
manichord
melodion
melopiano
monochord
pair of virginals
parlor grand
pianette
pianino
piano *or* pianoforte
piano-violin
Pianola <trademark>
player *or* mechanical piano
sostinente pianoforte
spinet
square piano
street piano
upright *or* upright piano
violin piano
virginal

28 percussion instruments and drums

anvil
bass drum
bells
bones
bongo drum
carillon
castanets
celesta
chimes
clappers
conga
cowbell
crash cymbal
cymbals *or* potlids <nf>
drumhead
drumskin
finger cymbals
gamelan
glockenspiel
gong
handbells
highhat cymbal <nf>
kazoo
kettledrum *or* timbal *or* timpani
lithophone
lyra
maraca
marimba
mbira *or* kalimba
membranophone
metallophone
mirliton
musical glasses *or* glass harmonica
musical saw
nagara <India>
naker
orchestral bells
rattle
rattlebones
ride cymbal
side drum
sizzler
snappers
snare drum
spoons
tabor
tambourine
tam-tam
tenor drum
thumb piano
timbale
timbrel
timpani *or* kettledrums
tintinnabula
tom-tom
tonitruone
triangle
troll-drum

tubular bells
vibraphone *or* vibraharp *or* vibes <nf>
war drum
xylophone
xylorimba

29 **reed organs**

accordion
concertina
harmonica
harmonium
melodeon
mouth organ
organ
reed organ

712 VISUAL ARTS

NOUNS 1 **visual arts; art, artwork,** the arts; **fine arts,** *beaux arts* <Fr>; arts of design, **design,** designing; art form; abstract art, representative art; **graphic arts** 713; plastic art; **arts and crafts;** primitive art, cave art; folk art; calligraphy; commercial art, applied art, industrial art; sculpture 715; ceramics 742; photography 714; etching, engraving 713.2; decoration 498.1; artist 716

2 "the conveyance of spirit by means of matter"—Salvador de Madariaga, "an instant arrested in eternity"—James Huneker, "life upon the larger scale"—E B Browning, "the conscious utterance of thought, by speech or action, to any end"—Emerson, "the wine of life"—Jean Paul Richter, "a shadow of the divine perfection"—Michelangelo, "life seen through a temperament"—Zola, "a form of catharsis"—Dorothy Parker

3 **craft, manual art,** industrial art, **handicraft,** arts and crafts, artisan work, craftwork, artisanship; industrial design; woodcraft, woodwork, carpentry, woodworking, metalcraft, stonecraft; ceramics, glassmaking

4 <act or art of painting> **painting,** coloring, "a noble and expressive language"—Ruskin; the brush

5 <art of drawing> **drawing, draftsmanship, sketching, delineation; black and white,** charcoal; mechanical drawing, drafting; freehand drawing

6 scenography, ichnography, orthographic *or* orthogonal projection

7 **artistry, art, talent,** artistic skill, flair, artistic flair, artistic invention; artiness *and* arty-craftiness *and* artsy-craftsiness <nf>; artistic temperament, artistic taste; virtu, artistic quality

8 **style;** lines; genre; **school,** movement <see list>; the grand style

9 **treatment; technique,** draftsmanship, brushwork, painterliness; **composition, design,** arrangement; grouping, balance; **color,** values; atmosphere, tone; shadow, shading; **line;** perspective

10 **work of art, object of art,** objet d'art, art object, art work, artistic production *or* creation, piece, **work, study, design, composition;** creation, brainchild; virtu, article *or* object *or* piece of virtu; **masterpiece,** *chef d'œuvre* <Fr>, masterwork, master <old>, old master, classic; museum piece; grotesque; statue; mobile, stabile; nude, still life; pastiche, *pasticcio* <Ital>; artware, artwork; bric-a-brac; kitsch

11 **picture; image, likeness, representation,** tableau; "a poem without words"—Horace; photograph 714.3; **illustration,** illumination; miniature; copy, reproduction; print, color print; engraving 713.2, stencil, block print; daub; abstraction, abstract; mural, fresco, wall painting; cyclorama, panorama; montage, collage, assemblage; still life, study in still life; tapestry, mosaic, stained glass, stained glass window, **icon,** altarpiece, diptych, triptych

12 **scene, view, scape; landscape;** waterscape, riverscape, seascape, seapiece; airscape, skyscape, cloudscape; snowscape; cityscape, townscape; farmscape; pastoral; treescape; diorama; exterior, interior

13 **drawing; delineation;** line drawing; **sketch, draft; black and white,** chiaroscuro; **charcoal, crayon, pen-and-ink,** pencil drawing, charcoal drawing, pastel, pastel painting, crayon drawing; silhouette; vignette; doodle; rough draft *or* copy, rough outline, study, design; caricature; cartoon, sinopia, **study,** design; *brouillon* and *ébauche* and *esquisse* <Fr>; diagram, graph; mechanical drawing; silver-print drawing, tracing; doodle, graffito, scribble

14 **painting, canvas,** easel-picture, "silent poetry"—Simonides, "the intermediate somewhat between a thought and a thing"—Coleridge; **oil painting,** oil; **watercolor,** water, aquarelle, wash, wash drawing; acrylic; finger painting; tempera, egg tempera; *gouache* <Fr>

15 **portrait, portraiture, portrayal;** head; profile; silhouette, shadow figure; nude; miniature

16 **cartoon, caricature; comic strip;** comic section, comics, funny paper *and* funnies <nf>; comic book; animated cartoon

17 **studio,** *atelier* <Fr>; **gallery** 386.9

18 <art equipment> palette; easel; paintbox; art paper, drawing paper; sketchbook, sketchpad; canvas, artists' canvas; canvas board; scratchboard; lay figure; camera obscura, camera lucida; maulstick; palette knife, spatula; brush, paintbrush; air brush, spray gun; pencil, drawing pencil; pen, ink, marker, highlighter; crayon, charcoal, chalk, pastel; stump; painter's cream; ground; pigments, medium; siccative, drier; fixative, varnish; **paint** 35.8

VERBS 19 **portray, picture,** picturize, **depict, limn,** draw *or* paint a picture; **paint** 35.14; brush, brush in; color, tint, colorize; spread *or* lay on a color; **daub** <nf>; scumble; **draw, sketch, delineate;**

draft; pencil, chalk, crayon, charcoal; draw in, pencil in; dash off, scratch <nf>; doodle; design; diagram; cartoon; copy, trace; stencil; touch up; hatch, crosshatch, shade; doodle

ADJS **20 artistic,** painterly; **arty** *or* arty-crafty *or* artsy-craftsy *or* artsy-fartsy <nf>; **art-minded,** art-conscious; imaginative, creative, stylized, **aesthetic; tasteful; beautiful; decorative, ornamental** 498.10; **well-composed,** well-grouped, well-arranged, well-varied; of consummate art; in the grand style

21 pictorial, pictural, **graphic, picturesque;** picturable; photographic 714.17; scenographic; painty, pastose; scumbled; monochrome, polychrome; freehand

22 art schools, groups, movements

abstract expressionism
action painting
American scene painting
art deco
Art Nouveau
Arts and Crafts movement
Ashcan school *or* the Eight
avant-garde
Barbizon school
baroque
Bauhaus
Biedermeier
Bolognese
British
classical abstraction
Cobra
cubism
Dada
De Stijl
Der Blaue Reiter
Die Brücke
Dutch
eclectic
expressionism
fauvism *or* Les Fauves
Flemish
Florentine
Fontainebleau
French
Glasgow
Gothic
Honfleur
Hudson River
impressionism
International Gothic *or* International
Italian
Jugendstil
L'Age d'or
letrist
Lombard
Madinensor
Madrid
Mannerist
Milanese
Modenese
modernism
Momentum
'N'
Neapolitan
neoclassicism
Neonism
New Objectivity
New York
op art
Origine
Paduan
Parisian
Phases
plein-air *or* pleinairism
pointillism
pre-Columbian
Pre-Raphaelite
Raphaelite
realism
Reflex
Restany
Rocky Mountain
rococo
Roman *or* Romanesque
romanticism
Scottish Colorists
Sienese
Spur
Suprematism
tachisme
tenebrists
The Ten
Tuscan
Umbrian
Unit One
Venetian
Wanderers
Washington

713 GRAPHIC ARTS

NOUNS **1 graphic arts, graphics; printmaking; painting; drawing; relief-carving; photography** 714; **printing** 548; graphic artist 716.8

2 engraving <see list>, engravement, graving, enchasing, **tooling,** chiseling, incising, incision, lining, scratching, slashing, scoring; **inscription,** inscript; type-cutting; **marking,** line, scratch, slash, score; hatching, cross-hatching; etch, etching; stipple, stippling; tint, demitint, half tint; burr; photoengraving 548.1

3 lithography, planography, autolithography, artist lithography; chromolithography; photolithography, offset lithography 548.1

4 stencil printing, stencil; silk-screen printing, serigraphy; monotype; glass printing, decal, decalcomania; cameography

5 print, numbered print, imprint, impression, first impression, impress; negative; color print; **etching; lithograph;** autolithograph; chromolithograph; lithotype; crayon engraving, graphotype; **block, block print,** linoleum-block print, rubber-block print, wood engraving, **woodprint,** xylograph, **cut, woodcut,** woodblock; vignette

6 plate, steel plate, copperplate, chalcograph; zincograph; stone, lithographic stone; printing plate 548.8

7 proof, artist's proof, proof before letter, open-letter proof, remarque proof

8 engraving tool, graver, burin, tint tool, style, point, etching point, needle, etching needle; etching ball; etching ground *or* varnish; scorper; rocker; **die,** punch, stamp, intaglio, seal

VERBS **9 engrave, grave, tool, enchase, incise, sculpture, inscribe,** character, **mark,** line, crease, score, scratch, scrape, cut, carve, chisel; groove, furrow 290.3; stipple, cribble; hatch, crosshatch; lithograph, autolithograph; **be a printmaker** *or* graphic artist; make prints *or* graphics; print 548.14

10 etch, eat, eat out, corrode, bite, bite in

ADJS **11 engraved, graven,** graved, glypt- *or* glypto-; tooled, enchased, chased, inscribed, incised, marked, lined, creased, cut, carved, glyphic, **sculptured,** insculptured, "insculp'd upon"—Shakespeare; grooved, furrowed 290.4; **printed, imprinted, impressed, stamped,** numbered

12 glyptic, glyptical, glyptographic, lapidary, lapidarian; xylographic, wood-block; lithographic, autolithographic, chromolithographic; aquatint, aquatinta, mezzotint

13 kinds of engraving

acid-blast
aquatint
black-line engraving
cerography
chalcography
chalk engraving

chasing
copperplate engraving
crayon engraving
cribbling *or manière criblée* <Fr>
drypoint *or* draw-point engraving
eccentric engraving
electric engraving
etching
gem engraving
glass-cutting
glyptics *or* glyptography
intaglio
lignography
line cut
line engraving
linocut
lithograph
metal cut
metal engraving
mezzotint
photochemical engraving *or* photoetching
photoengraving
plate engraving
pyrography *or* pyrogravure *or* pokerwork
relief etching
relief method
soft-ground etching
steel engraving
stipple engraving
woodburning *or* xylopyrography
woodcut *or* wood engraving
xylography
zinc etching
zincography *or* zinc engraving

714 PHOTOGRAPHY

NOUNS 1 **photography** <see list>, picture-taking; **cinematography,** motion-picture photography; color photography, black-and-white photography; photochromy, heliochromy; **3-D,** three-dimensional photography; photofinishing; photogravure; radiography, X-ray photography; photogrammetry, phototopography

2 photographer 716.5, shutter-bug <nf>, photojournalist, press photographer, paparazzo, lensman, shooter *and* photog <nf>

3 **photograph, photo** <nf>, heliograph, **picture,** shot <nf>; **snapshot,** snap <nf>, image; black-and-white photograph; color photograph, color print, heliochrome; Polaroid <trademark>; slide, diapositive, transparency; candid photograph; take; still, still photograph; photomural; montage, photomontage; aerial photograph, photomap; facsimile *or* fax transmission; telephotograph, Telephoto <trademark>, Wirephoto <trademark>; photomicrograph, microphotograph; metallograph; microradiograph; electron micrograph; photochronograph, chronophotograph; radiograph, X ray; **portrait,** closeup; action shot, action sequence; pinup <nf>, cheesecake *and* beefcake <nf>; police photograph, **mug** *or* mug shot <nf>; rogues' gallery; photobiography

4 **tintype** *or* ferrotype, ambrotype, **daguerreotype,** calotype *or* talbotype, collotype *or* albertype *or* artotype *or* heliotype, photocollotype, autotype, vitrotype

5 **print,** photoprint, positive; glossy, matte, semimatte; **enlargement, blowup;** photocopy, Photostat <trademark>, photostatic copy, stat <nf>, Xerox <trademark>, Xerox copy; microfilm, microfiche, microphotocopy, microprint, microcopy; blueprint, cyanotype; **slide,** transparency, lantern slide; contact printing, projection printing; photogravure; hologram

6 shadowgraph, shadowgram, skiagraph, skiagram; radiograph, radiogram, scotograph; **X ray,** X-ray photograph, roentgenograph, roentgenogram; photofluorogram; photogram

7 spectrograph, spectrogram; spectroheliogram

8 <motion pictures> **shot; take, retake;** close-up, long shot, medium shot, full shot, group shot, deuce shot, matte shot, process shot, boom shot, travel shot, trucking shot, follow-focus shot, pan shot *or* panoramic shot, rap shot, reverse *or* reverse-angle shot, wild shot, zoom shot; motion picture; kinescope

9 **exposure,** time exposure; shutter speed; f-stop, lens opening; film rating, **film speed,** film gauge, ASA number, **DIN** *or Deutsche Industrie Normen* number, DX code; exposure meter, light meter

10 **film; negative;** printing paper, photographic paper; **plate;** dry plate; vehicle; motion-picture film, panchromatic film, monochromatic film, orthochromatic film, black-and-white film, color film, color negative film, color reversal film, Polaroid film <trademark>; microfilm, bibliofilm; sound-on-film, sound film; sound track, soundstripe; Super-8, videotape, 35mm; roll, cartridge; pack, bipack, tripack; frame; emulsion, dope, backing

11 **camera,** Kodak *and* Polaroid <trademark>; disposable camera; photo booth; video camera, camcorder; TV camera, motion-picture camera, cinematograph *or* kinematograph <Brit>; security camera

12 **projector;** motion-picture projector, cineprojector, cinematograph *or* kinematograph <Brit>, vitascope; **slide projector,** magic lantern, stereopticon; slide viewer

13 **processing solution;** developer, soup <nf>; fixer, fixing bath, sodium thiosulfate *or* sodium hyposulfite *or* hypo; acid stop, stop bath, shortstop, short-stop bath; emulsion

VERBS 14 **photograph, shoot** <nf>, **take a photograph,** take a picture, take one's picture; **snap,** snapshot, snapshoot; **film,** get *or* capture on film; **mug** <nf>; daguerreotype, talbotype, calotype; Photostat <trademark>; xerox; microfilm; photomap; pan; **X-ray,** radiograph, roentgenograph

15 **process; develop; print;** blueprint; **blow up, enlarge**

16 **project, show, screen**

ADJS 17 **photographic,** photo; **photogenic,** picturesome; photosensitive, photoactive; panchromatic; telephotographic, telephoto; tintype; three-dimensional, 3-D

18 **types of photography**

acoustical holography
aerophotography *or* aerial photography *or* air photography
animation photography
architectural photography
astrophotography
available-light photography
candid photography
chronophotography
cinematography *or* motion-picture photography
cinephotomicrography
color photography
documentary photography
electrophotography
fashion photography
flash photography
heliophotography
holography
infrared photography
integral photography
landscape photography
laser photography
macrophotography
microfilming
microphotography
miniature photography
motion-picture photography
phonophotography
photoheliography
photojournalism
photomacrography
photomicrography
photoreproduction
phototopography
portraiture
pyrophotography
radiation-field *or* Kirlian photography
radiography
reprography
schlieren photography
skiagraphy
spectroheliography
spectrophotography
sports photography
stereophotography
still-life photography
stroboscopic photography
studio photography
telephotography
thermography
time-lapse photography
underwater photography
uranophotography
wildlife photography
xerography
X-ray photography

715 SCULPTURE

NOUNS 1 **sculpture, sculpturing;** plastic art, **modeling; statuary; stonecutting;** gem-cutting, masonry; **carving,** stone carving, bone-carving, cameo carving, scrimshaw, *taille directe* <Fr>, whittling, woodcarving *or* xyloglyphy; embossing, **engraving** 713.2, **chasing,** toreutics, founding, casting, molding, plaster casting, lost-wax process, *cire perdue* <Fr>; sculptor 716.6

2 <sculptured piece> **sculpture; glyph; statue;** marble, bronze, terra cotta, scrimshaw, woodcarving; mobile, stabile; cast 785.6; found object, *objet trouvé* <Fr>; collage, assemblage

3 **relief,** relievo; **embossment,** boss; half relief, *mezzo-rilievo* <Ital>; high relief, *alto-rilievo* <Ital>; low relief, bas-relief, *basso-rilievo* <Ital>, *rilievo stiacciato* <Ital>; sunk relief, *cavo-rilievo* <Ital>, coelanaglyphic sculpture, **intaglio,** *intaglio rilievo* or *intaglio rilevato* <Ital>; *repoussé* <Fr>; glyph, anaglyph; glyptograph; **mask;** plaquette; **medallion; medal; cameo,** cameo glass, sculptured glass; cut glass

4 <tools, materials> chisel, point, mallet, burin, modeling tool, spatula; cutting torch, welding torch, soldering iron; solder; modeling clay, Plasticine <trademark>, sculptor's wax; plaster

VERBS 5 **sculpture,** sculp *or* sculpt <nf>, insculpture <old>; **carve,** chisel, cut, grave, engrave, chase; weld, solder; assemble; **model, mold;** cast, found

ADJS 6 **sculptural,** sculpturesque, sculptitory; statuary; **statuesque,** statuelike; **monumental,** marmoreal; plastic

7 **sculptured,** sculpted; sculptile; **molded, modeled,** ceroplastic; **carved,** chiseled; **graven,** engraven, engraved, incised; in relief, in high *or* low relief; glyphic, glyptic, anaglyphic, anaglyptic; anastatic; embossed, chased, hammered, toreutic; *repoussé* <Fr>; tactile

716 ARTIST

NOUNS 1 **artist,** *artiste* <Fr>, "a dreamer consenting to dream of the actual world"—Santayana, creator, maker; master, **old master;** dauber, daubster; copyist; **craftsman, artisan** 726.6

2 **limner,** delineator, depicter, picturer, portrayer, imager; **illustrator;** illuminator; calligrapher; commercial artist; drawer, renderer, doodler, scribbler; pastelist

3 **draftsman, draftswoman, sketcher, delineator; graphic artist;** drawer, architectural draftsman; crayonist, charcoalist, pastelist; **cartoonist, caricaturist,** animator

4 **painter,** *artiste-peintre* <Fr>; **colorist;** luminist, luminarist; **oil painter,** oil-colorist; **watercolorist;** aquarellist; finger painter; monochromist, polychromist; genre painter, historical painter, landscape painter, landscapist, miniaturist, portrait painter, portraitist, marine painter, still-life painter, animal painter, religious painter; pavement artist; sign painter; scene painter, scenewright, scenographer

5 **photographer,** photographist, lensman, **cameraperson,** camerawoman, cameraman; **cinematographer;** snapshotter, snap shooter, shutterbug <nf>; daguerreotypist, calotypist, talbotypist; skiagrapher, shadowgraphist, radiographer, X-ray technician

6 **sculptor,** sculptress, sculpturer; earth artist, environmental artist; statuary; figurer, figurist, *figuriste* <Fr>, **modeler,** molder, wax modeler, clay modeler; graver, chaser, carver; molder, caster; stonecutter, mason, monumental mason, wood carver, xyloglyphic artist, whittler; ivory carver, bone carver, shell carver; gem carver, glyptic *or* glyptographic artist; engraver, etcher; lapidary

7 **ceramist, ceramicist, potter;** china decorator *or*

painter, tile painter, majolica painter; glassblower, glazer, glass decorator, pyroglazer, glass cutter; enamelist, enameler

8 **printmaker,** graphic artist; **engraver,** graver, burinist; inscriber, carver; **etcher;** line engraver; **lithographer,** autolithographer, chromolithographer; serigrapher, silk-screen artist; cerographer, cerographist; chalcographer; gem engraver, glyptographer, lapidary; wood engraver, xylographer; pyrographer, xylopyrographer; zincographer

9 **designer, stylist,** styler; costume designer, dress designer, *couturier* <Fr>, *couturière* <Fr fem>; furniture designer, rug designer, textile designer

10 **architect,** civil architect; landscape architect, landscape gardener; city *or* urban planner, urbanist; functionalist

11 **decorator,** expert in decor, ornamentist, ornamentalist; **interior decorator** *or* designer, house decorator, room decorator, floral decorator, table decorator; window decorator *or* dresser; confectionery decorator

717 ARCHITECTURE, DESIGN

NOUNS 1 **architecture,** architectural design, building design, the art and technique of building, "inhabited sculpture"—Brancusi, "music in space"—Schelling, "the art of significant forms in space"—Claude Bragdon; **architectural science,** architectural engineering, structural engineering, architectural technology, building science, building technology; architectonics, tectonics; **architectural style** <see list>; **architectural specialty**; landscape architecture, landscape gardening 1069.2

2 **architectural element; ornamentation, architectural ornamentation;** column order, Doric, Ionic, Corinthian, Composite; **type of construction**, building type

3 **architect,** building designer; landscape architect, landscape gardener 1069.6; architectural engineer; city *or* urban planner, urbanist, urbanologist

4 **design, styling,** patterning, planning, shaping, "the conscious effort to impose meaningful order"—Victor Papanek; **design specialty**

5 <design specialties> accessory design, appearance design, architectural design, automotive design, book design, clothing design, costume design, ergonomics *or* ergonomy *or* human engineering *or* human factors engineering, fashion design, furniture design, graphics design, industrial *or* product design, interior design, jewelry design, landscape architecture, lighting design, package design, pottery design, reverse engineering, stage design, textile design, typographic design

6 **designer, stylist,** styler

ADJS 7 **architectural,** architectonic, tectonic; **design, designer**

8 **architectural styles and types**

absolute
academic
action
additive
American colonial
American Georgian
Anglo-Saxon
Art Deco *or* Art Moderne
Art Nouveau
arts and crafts
baroque
Bauhaus
Beaux Arts
brutalist
Byzantine
Carolingian
Chicago School
Chinese
churrigueresque *or* churrigueresco
cinquecento
Cistercian
classical
colonial
conceptual *or* invisible *or* imaginary *or* nowhere
Decorated
de Stijl
directed *or* programmed
duck
early American
early English
early Gothic
early Renaissance
earthwork
eclectic
ecological
Edwardian
Egyptian
Elizabethan
Empire
endless
English decorated Gothic
English Georgian
English Renaissance
flamboyant Gothic
formalist
Francois Premier
French colonial
French Renaissance
functionalist
Georgian
German Renaissance
gingerbread
Gothic
Great West Road
Greco-Roman
Greek
Greek Revival
hard
high Gothic
high Renaissance
hi-tech
indeterminate
international *or* international Gothic
Islamic
Italianate
Italian Gothic
Italian Mannerism
Italian Renaissance
Jacobean
Japanese
Jesuit
kinetic
Louis XIV
Louis XV
mannerism
medieval
Mesopotamian
Mestizo
mission
moderne *or* modernism
neo-Gothic
neoclassical
new brutalist
New England colonial
Norman
organicist
Palladian
perpendicular *or* rectilinear
Persian
pneumatic
postmodern
Prairie
Queen Anne
Regency
Renaissance
rococo
Roman
Romanesque
Romanesque Revival
Romantic
Shingle
Southern colonial
Spanish
Stuart
tensile

Tudor
Utopian *or* fantastic *or* visionary
vernacular
Victorian
Victorian Gothic

9 **architectural specialties**

church *or* religious *or* ecclesiastical architecture
civic architecture
college architecture
commercial architecture
domestic architecture
governmental architecture
industrial architecture
institutional architecture
landscape architecture
library architecture
military architecture
museum architecture
recreational architecture

718 LITERATURE

NOUNS 1 **literature, letters, belles lettres,** polite literature, humane letters, *litterae humaniores* <L>, republic of letters; **work, literary work, text, literary text; works, complete works, oeuvre, canon, literary canon, author's canon;** serious literature; **classics,** ancient literature; medieval literature, Renaissance literature, etc; national literature, English literature, French literature, etc; ethnic literature, black *or* Afro-American literature, Latino literature, etc; contemporary literature; underground literature; pseudonymous literature; folk literature; travel literature; wisdom literature; erotic literature, erotica; pornographic literature, pornography, porn *and* hard porn *and* soft porn <nf>, obscene literature, scatological literature; popular literature, pop literature <nf>; kitsch

2 **authorship, writing,** authorcraft, pencraft, wordsmanship, **composition,** the art of composition, inditing, inditement; one's pen; **creative writing,** literary art, verbal art, literary composition, literary production, verse-writing, short-story writing, novel-writing, playwriting, drama-writing; essay-writing; **expository writing;** technical writing; journalism, newspaper writing, editorial-writing, feature-writing, rewriting; magazine writing; songwriting, lyric-writing, libretto-writing; artistry, literary power, literary artistry, literary talent *or* flair, skill with words *or* language, facility in writing, ready pen; **writer's itch,** graphomania, scribblemania, graphorrhea, *cacoëthes scribendi* <L>

3 **writer, scribbler** <nf>, **penman,** pen, penner; pen *or* pencil driver *or* pusher <nf>, word-slinger, **inkslinger** *and* ink spiller *and* inkstained wretch <nf>, knight of the plume *or* pen *or* quill <nf>

4 **author, writer,** scribe <nf>, composer, inditer, penman, wordsmith; authoress, penwoman; **creative writer,** *littérateur* <Fr>, literary artist, literary craftsman *or* artisan *or* journeyman, belletrist, man of letters, literary scholar; word painter; freelance, freelance writer; ghostwriter, ghost <nf>; collaborator, coauthor; prose writer, logographer; fiction writer, fictioneer <nf>; story writer, **short story writer;** storyteller, narrator; **novelist;** novelettist; diarist; chronicler, historian, historiographer; biographer; **newspaperman; annalist; poet** 720.13; **dramatist,** humorist 489.12; scriptwriter, scenario writer, scenarist; nonfiction writer; article writer, magazine writer; **essayist;** monographer; reviewer, critic, literary critic, music critic, art critic, drama critic, dance critic; cultural commentator; columnist; pamphleteer; technical writer; copywriter, advertising writer; compiler, encyclopedist, bibliographer

5 **hack writer,** hack, literary hack, Grub Street writer <Brit>, **penny-a-liner, scribbler** <nf>, **potboiler** <nf>

VERBS 6 **write,** author, pen, **compose, indite,** formulate, produce, prepare; dash off, knock off *or* out <nf>, throw on paper, pound *or* crank *or* grind *or* churn out; freelance; collaborate, coauthor; ghostwrite, ghost <nf>; novelize; scenarize; pamphleteer; editorialize

ADJS 7 **literary,** belletristic, lettered; classical

8 auctorial, authorial

719 HISTORY

NOUNS 1 **history,** the historical discipline, the investigation of the past, the record of the past, the story of mankind, study of the past; historical research; **annals, chronicles,** memorabilia, chronology; chronicle, record 549; historical method, historical approach, philosophy of history, **historiography;** cliometrics; documentation, recording; narrative history, **oral history,** oral record, survivors' *or* witnesses' accounts; **biography, memoir,** memorial, **life,** story, **life story,** adventures, fortunes, reminiscences, experiences; résumé, vita, curriculum vitae *or* CV; life and letters, track record <nf>; legend, saint's legend, hagiology, hagiography; **autobiography, memoirs,** memorials, archive; **journal, diary,** confessions; **profile, biographical sketch;** obituary, necrology, martyrology; photobiography; case history; historiography, theory of history; epigraphy, archaeology; Clio, Muse of history; **the past** 837; **record, recording** 549; herstory <nf>

2 "a set of lies agreed upon"—Napoleon, "a cyclic poem written by Time upon the memories of man"—Shelley, "the essence of innumerable biographies"—Carlyle, "philosophy learned from examples"—Dionysius of Halicarnassus, "History is more or less bunk"—Henry Ford

3 **story, tale, yarn, account, narrative,** narration, chronicle, tradition, legend, folk tale, folk history;

anecdote, anecdotage; **epic,** epos, **saga;** minutes, notes; file, dossier

4 **historian,** cliometrician, historiographer; **chronicler,** annalist, recorder, archivist; **biographer,** memorialist, Boswell; autobiographer, autobiographist; diarist, Pepys; epigrapher, archaeologist

VERBS 5 **chronicle,** write history, historify; historicize; biograph, biography, biographize; immortalize; document, report, **record** 549.16

6 **narrate, tell, relate,** recount, report, **recite,** rehearse, give an account of; commentate, voice over

ADJS 7 **historical, historic,** historied, historically accurate; fact-based; historicized; historiographical; cliometric; **chronicled;** chronologic, chronological; **traditional, legendary;** biographical, autobiographic, autobiographical; documentary, documented, archival; hagiographic, hagiographical, martyrologic, martyrological; necrologic, necrological; retro

8 **narrative,** narrational; **fictional**

ADVS 9 **historically,** historically speaking; as chronicled, as history tells us, according to *or* by all accounts; as the record shows; retrospectively

720 POETRY

NOUNS 1 **poetry,** poesy, **verse, song, rhyme;** "musical thought"—Carlyle, "the supreme fiction"—Wallace Stevens, "the spontaneous overflow of powerful feelings recollected in tranquility"—Wordsworth, "painting with the gift of speech"—Simonides, "the poet's innermost feeling issuing in rhythmic language"—John Keble, "the journal of a sea animal living on land, wanting to fly in the air," "the achievement of the synthesis of hyacinths and biscuits"—both Sandburg, "not the thing said but a way of saying it"—A E Housman, "the art of uniting pleasure with truth, by calling imagination to the help of reason"—Samuel Johnson, "the music of the soul, and above all of great and of feeling souls"—Voltaire

2 **poetics,** poetcraft, versecraft, versification, versemaking, *ars poetica* <L>; "my craft and sullen art"—Dylan Thomas; **poetic language,** poetic diction, poeticism; **poetic license, poetic justice**

3 **bad poetry,** doggerel, versemongering, poetastering, poetastery; poesy; crambo, crambo clink *or* jingle <Scot>, Hudibrastic verse; nonsense verse, amphigory; macaronics, macaronic verse; lame verses, limping meters, halting meters

4 **poem, verse, rhyme,** "imaginary gardens with real toads in them"—Marianne Moore; verselet, versicle

5 **book of verse,** garland, **collection, anthology;** poetic works, poesy

6 **metrics, prosody, versification; scansion,** scanning; metrical pattern *or* form, prosodic pattern *or* form, meter, numbers, measure; quantitative meter, syllabic meter, accentual meter, accentual-syllabic meter, duple meter, triple meter; free verse, *vers libre* <Fr>; alliterative meter, *Stabreim* <Ger>

7 **meter, measure,** numbers; **rhythm, cadence,** movement, lilt, jingle, swing; sprung rhythm; **accent,** accentuation, metrical accent, stress, emphasis, ictus, **beat;** arsis, thesis; quantity, mora; metrical unit; **foot, metrical foot** <see list>; triseme, tetraseme; metrical group, metron, colon, period; dipody, syzygy, tripody, tetrapody, pentapody, hexapody, heptapody; monometer, dimeter, trimeter, tetrameter, pentameter, hexameter, heptameter, octameter; **iambic pentameter, dactylic hexameter;** Alexandrine; Saturnian meter; elegiac, elegiac couplet *or* distich, elegiac pentameter; heroic couplet; sprung rhythm; counterpoint; caesura, diaeresis, masculine caesura, feminine caesura; catalexis; anacrusis

8 **rhyme;** clink, crambo; **consonance, assonance; alliteration;** eye rhyme; male *or* masculine *or* single rhyme, female *or* feminine *or* double rhyme; initial rhyme, end rhyme; tail rhyme, rhyme royal; broken rhyme, half rhyme, near rhyme, pararhyme, slant rhyme; internal rhyme; *terza rima, ottava rima* <Ital>; rime riche, identical rhyme; rhyme scheme; rhyming dictionary; unrhymed poetry, blank verse

9 <poetic divisions> **measure, strain; syllable; line;** verse; stanza, stave; strophe, antistrophe, epode; **canto,** book; **refrain, chorus,** burden; envoi; monostich, distich, tristich, tetrastich, pentastich, hexastich, heptastich, octastich; **couplet;** triplet, tercet, *terza rima* <Ital>; **quatrain;** sextet, sestet; septet; octave, octet, *ottava rima* <Ital>; rhyme royal; Spenserian stanza

10 **Muse;** the Muses, Pierides, *Camenae* <L>; Apollo, Apollo Musagetes; Calliope, Polyhymnia, Erato, Euterpe; Helicon, Parnassus; Castilian Spring, Pierian Spring, Hippocrene; Bragi; **poetic genius,** poesy, afflatus, fire of genius, **creative imagination** 986.2, **inspiration** 920.8

11 **poet,** poetess, poetress <old>, maker <old>; "the painter of the soul"—Disraeli, "a nightingale who sits in darkness and sings to cheer its own solitude with sweet sounds"— Shelley, "all who love, who feel great truths, and tell them"—Philip James Bailey, "literalists of the imagination"—Marianne Moore; ballad maker; **bard, minstrel,** scop, fili, baird, skald, **jongleur, troubadour,** *trovatore* <Ital>, trouveur, *trouvère* <Fr>, *Meistersinger* <Ger>,

minnesinger; minor poet, major poet, arch-poet; laureate, **poet laureate;** occasional poet; **lyric poet;** epic poet; pastoral poet, pastoralist, idyllist, bucoliast <old>; rhapsodist, rhapsode; vers-librist, *vers libriste* <Fr>; elegist, librettist; lyricist, lyrist; odist; satirist; sonneteer; modernist, imagist, symbolist; Parnassian; beat poet

12 **bad poet;** rhymester, rhymer; metrist; versemaker, versesmith, versifier, verseman, versemonger; poetling, **poetaster,** poeticule; balladmonger

VERBS 13 **poetize, versify,** verse, write *or* compose poetry, build the stately rime, sing deathless songs, make immortal verse; tune one's lyre, climb Parnassus, mount Pegasus; **sing;** elegize; poeticize

14 **rhyme,** assonate, alliterate; **scan;** jingle; cap verses *or* rhymes

ADJS 15 **poetic, poetical,** poetlike; **lyrical, narrative,** dramatic, lyrico-dramatic; bardic; runic, skaldic; epic, heroic; mock-heroic, Hudibrastic; pastoral, bucolic, eclogic, idyllic, Theocritean; didactic; elegiac, elegiacal; dithyrambic, rhapsodic, rhapsodical, Alcaic, Anacreontic, Homeric, Pindaric, sapphic; Castalian, Pierian; Parnassian, Sapphic; poetico-mythological; poetico-mystical, poetico-philosophic; comic, concrete, epic, erotic, folk, metaphysical, nonsense, pattern, satirical, tragic

16 **metric, metrical, prosodic, prosodical; rhythmic, rhythmical, measured,** cadenced, scanning, scanned; accentual; iambic, dactylic, spondaic, pyrrhic, trochaic, anapestic, antispastic, etc

17 **rhyming; assonant,** assonantal; **alliterative,** onomatopoeic; resonant; jingling; musical, lilting

ADVS 18 **poetically, lyrically; metrically, rhythmically,** in measure; musically

19 **metrical feet**

amphibrach
amphimacer
anapest
antispast
bacchius
choriambus *or* choriamb
cretic *or* amphimacer
dactyl
dochmiac
epitrite
iamb *or* iambus *or* iambic
ionic
molossus
paeon
proceleusmatic
pyrrhic *or* dibrach
spondee
tribrach
trochee

721 PROSE

NOUNS 1 **prose,** "words in their best order"—Coleridge; prose fiction, nonfiction prose, expository prose; prose rhythm; prose style; poetic prose, polyphonic prose, prose poetry

2 **prosaism, prosaicism, prosaicness,** prosiness, pedestrianism, **unpoeticalness; matter-of-factness,** unromanticism, unidealism; **unimaginativeness** 987; **plainness,** commonness, commonplaceness, unembellishedness; insipidness, flatness, vapidity; **dullness** 117

VERBS 3 **prose,** write prose *or* in prose; pedestrianize

ADJS 4 **prose,** in prose; unversified, nonpoetic, nonmetricalf

5 **prosaic, prosy, prosing;** unpoetical, poetryless; **plain, common, commonplace, ordinary,** unembellished, mundane; **matter-of-fact, unromantic, unidealistic,** unimpassioned; pedestrian, **unimaginative** 987.5; insipid, vapid, flat; humdrum, tiresome, **dull** 117.6

722 FICTION

NOUNS 1 **fiction,** narrative, narrative literature, imaginative narrative, prose fiction; **narration,** relation, relating, recital, rehearsal, telling, retelling, recounting, recountal, review, portrayal, graphic narration, description, delineation, presentation; **storytelling,** tale-telling, yarn-spinning *and* yarning <nf>; narrative poetry; operatic libretto; computer *or* interactive fiction; pulp fiction

2 **narration, narrative, relation, recital,** rehearsal, telling, retelling, recounting, recountal, review; **storytelling,** tale-telling, yarn spinning *or* yarning <nf>

3 **story** <see list>, **short story,** tale, narrative, yarn, account, narration, chronicle, relation, version; **novel** <see list>, *roman* <Fr>

4 <story elements> **plot,** fable, argument, story, line, story line, subplot, secondary plot, mythos; **structure,** plan, architecture, architectonics, scheme, design; **subject, topic, theme,** motif; thematic development, development, continuity; **action,** movement; incident, episode; **complication;** rising action, turning point, climax, falling action, *peripeteia* <Gk>, switch <nf>; *anagnorisis* <Gk>, recognition; denouement, catastrophe; *deus ex machina* <L>; catharsis; device, contrivance, **gimmick** <nf>; angle *and* slant *and* twist <nf>; **character,** characterization; **speech,** dialogue; **tone, atmosphere,** mood; **setting,** locale, world, milieu, background, region, local color

5 **narrator,** relator, reciter, recounter, *raconteur* <Fr>; **anecdotist; storyteller,** storier, taleteller, teller of tales, spinner of yarns *and* yarn spinner <nf>; word painter; **persona,** central consciousness, the I of the story; point-of-view <see list>; **author, writer,** short-story writer, **novelist,** novelettist, fictionist; fabulist, fableist, fabler, mythmaker, mythopoet; romancer, romancist; sagaman

VERBS 6 **narrate, tell, relate, recount,** report, **recite,** rehearse, give an account of; tell a story, unfold a tale, a tale unfold, fable, fabulize; storify, fictionalize; romance; novelize; mythicize, mythify, mythologize, allegorize; retell

ADJS 7 **fictional,** fictionalized; **novelistic,** novelized, novelettish; mythical, mythological, **legendary, fabulous;** mythopoeic, mythopoetic *or* mythopoetical; **allegorical** *or* allegoric, parabolic *or* parabolical; **romantic,** romanticized; historical, historicized, fact-based

8 **narrative, narrational;** storied, storified; **anecdotal,** anecdotic; epic *or* epical

9 **types of stories**

- adventure story
- allegory
- apologue
- beast fable
- bedtime story
- chivalric romance
- classical detective story
- *conte* <Fr>
- crime story
- detective story *or* detective yarn *or* whodunit <nf>
- dime novel *or* penny dreadful <nf>
- epic *or* epos
- exemplum *or* didactic tale *or* moral tale
- fable
- fabliau
- fairy tale *or* *Märchen* <Ger>
- fantasy
- folktale *or* folk story
- gest *or* geste
- ghost story
- hard-boiled detective story *or* tough-tec story <nf>
- hero tale
- horror story *or* chiller *and* chiller-diller <nf>
- lai
- legend
- love story
- Milesian tale
- mystery *or* mystery story
- myth *or* mythos
- nursery tale
- parable
- romance
- romantic adventure
- saga
- saint's legend
- science fiction story *or* sci-fi story <nf>
- short short story *or* short-short
- short story
- sketch
- spy story
- supernatural tale
- suspense story
- thriller *or* thriller-diller <nf>
- vignette
- Western *or* Western story *or* cowboy story

10 **types of novels**

- adventure novel
- antinovel *or* anti-roman *or* nouveau roman
- autobiographical novel
- *Bildungsroman* <Ger>
- bodice ripper <nf>
- cliffhanger
- collage novel
- comic novel
- detective novel
- dime novel
- dystopia *or* cacotopia *or* dystopian
- entertainment
- epic novel
- epistolary novel
- erotic novel
- experimental novel
- fantasy novel
- fictional *or* fictionalized biography
- Gothic novel
- historical novel
- historical romance *or* bodice-ripper <nf>
- *Kunstlerroman* <Ger>
- lyrical novel
- naturalistic novel
- nouveau roman
- novel of character
- novel of ideas
- novel of incident
- novel of manners
- novel of sensibility *or* sentimental novel
- novel of the soil
- novelette
- novella *or* *nouvelle* <Fr>
- penny dreadful <Brit>
- picaresque novel
- political novel
- pornographic novel
- problem novel
- proletarian novel
- propaganda novel
- psychological novel
- psychological thriller
- realistic novel
- regional novel
- *roman à clef* <Fr>
- *roman-fleuve* <Fr> *or* river novel
- romance novel
- satirical novel
- science-fiction *or* sci-fi novel
- sentimental novel
- social melodrama
- sociological novel
- stream-of-consciousness novel
- surrealistic novel
- techno-thriller
- thesis novel
- thriller *or* psychological thriller
- utopia *or* utopian novel
- Victorian novel
- Western

11 **narrative points of view**

- documentary *or* camera-eye observer
- fallible observer
- first-person past narrator
- first-person present narrator
- omniscient observer
- stream of consciousness *or* interior monologue
- third-person past narrator
- third-person present narrator

723 CRITICISM OF THE ARTS

NOUNS 1 **criticism,** criticism of the arts, esthetic *or* artistic criticism, aesthetic *or* artistic evaluation, aesthetic *or* artistic analysis, aesthetic *or* artistic interpretation, critical commentary, critique, critical analysis, critical interpretation, critical evaluation, metacriticism, exegetics, hermeneutics; **art criticism,** formalist criticism, expressionist criticism, neoformalist criticism; music criticism; dramatic criticism; dance criticism; aesthetics

2 **review,** critical notice, commentary, *compte rendu critique* <Fr>, critical treatment *or* treatise

3 **literary criticism,** Lit-Crit <nf>, literary analysis *or* evaluation *or* interpretation *or* exegetics *or* hermeneutics, poetics; **critical approach** *or* **school; literary theory,** theory of literature, critical theory, theory of criticism

4 **critic,** interpreter, exegete, analyst, explicator, theoretician, aesthetician; reviewer

VERBS 5 **criticize,** critique, evaluate, interpret, explicate, analyze, judge; theorize

ADJS 6 **critical,** evaluative, interpretive, exegetical, analytical, explicative

724 OCCUPATION

NOUNS 1 **occupation, work, job, employment,** business, employ, **activity, function,** enterprise, undertaking, **affairs,** labor; thing *and* bag <nf>; **affair, matter, concern,** concernment, **interest,** lookout <nf>; what one is doing *or* about; **commerce** 731

2 **task, work, stint, job,** labor, toil, industry, piece of work, **chore,** chare, odd job; **assignment, charge,** project, errand, **mission,** commission, **duty,** service, exercise; things to do, matters in hand, irons in the fire, fish to fry; homework, take-home work; busywork, makework

3 **function, office, duty, job,** province, place, **role,** *rôle* <Fr>, part; **capacity,** character, **position**

4 <sphere of work or activity> **field, sphere,** profession, trade, province, bailiwick, turf <nf>, department, area, discipline, subdiscipline, orb, orbit, realm, arena, domain, walk; **specialty, niche,** speciality <Brit>, line of country <Brit nf>; beat, round; shop

5 **position, job,** employment, gainful employment, situation, **office, post, place,** station, berth, billet, **appointment,** engagement, gig <nf>; incumbency, tenure; opening, vacancy; second job, moonlighting <nf>

6 **vocation, occupation, business, work, line, line of work,** line of business *or* endeavor, number <nf>, walk, **walk of life, calling,** mission, **profession, practice, pursuit, specialty,** specialization, *métier* <Fr>, mystery <old>, **trade,** racket *and* game <nf>; **career,** lifework, life's work; career track, Mommy track <nf>; **craft,** art, handicraft; careerism, career building

7 **avocation, hobby,** hobbyhorse <old>, sideline, byline, side interest, pastime, spare-time activity; amateur pursuit, amateurism; unpaid work, volunteer work

8 **professionalism,** professional standing *or* status

9 **nonprofessionalism, amateurism,** amateur standing *or* status

VERBS 10 **occupy, engage, busy,** devote, spend, **employ,** occupy oneself, busy oneself, go about one's business, devote oneself; pass *or* employ *or* spend the time; occupy one's time, take up one's time; attend to business, attend to one's work; mind one's business, mind the store <nf>, stick to one's last *or* knitting <nf>; telecommute

11 **busy oneself with,** do, occupy *or* engage oneself with, employ oneself in *or* upon, pass *or* employ *or* spend one's time in; **engage in, take up,** devote oneself to, apply oneself to, address oneself to, have one's hands in, turn one's hand to; concern oneself with, make it one's business; **be about, be doing,** be occupied with, be engaged *or* employed in, be at work on; practice, follow as an occupation

12 **work,** work at, work for, have a job, be employed, **ply one's trade,** labor in one's vocation, do one's number <nf>, follow a trade, practice a profession, carry on a business *or* trade, keep up; **do** *or* **transact business,** carry on *or* conduct business; set up shop, set up in business, hang out one's shingle <nf>; stay employed, hold down a job <nf>; moonlight <nf>, consult; labor, toil 725.13,14

13 **officiate, function, serve; perform as, act as,** act *or* play one's part, **do duty,** discharge *or* perform *or* exercise the office *or* duties *or* functions of, serve in the office *or* capacity of

14 **hold office,** fill an office, occupy a post

ADJS 15 **occupied, busy,** working; practical, realistic 987.6; banausic, moneymaking, breadwinning, utilitarian 387.18; materialistic 695.16; workaday, workday, prosaic 117.8; **commercial** 731.21

16 **occupational, vocational,** functional; **professional,** pro <nf>; official; technical, industrial; all in the day's work

17 **avocational,** hobby, amateur, nonprofessional

ADVS 18 **professionally,** vocationally; as a profession *or* vocation; in the course of business

725 EXERTION

NOUNS 1 **exertion, effort, energy,** elbow grease; **endeavor** 403; **trouble, pains;** great *or* mighty effort, might and main, muscle, one's back, nerve and sinew, hard *or* strong *or* long pull, "a long pull, a strong pull, and a pull all together"—Dickens

2 **strain,** straining, **stress,** stressfulness, **stress and strain,** taxing, **tension,** stretch, rack; tug, pull, haul, heave; overexertion, overstrain, overtaxing, overextension, overstress

3 **struggle, fight, battle, tussle, scuffle, wrestle,** hassle <nf>

4 **work, labor, employment, industry, toil,** moil, travail, toil and trouble, sweat of one's brow; **drudgery, sweat,** slavery, spadework, rat race <nf>; treadmill; unskilled labor, hewing of wood *and* drawing of water; dirty work, grunt work *and* donkey work *and* shit-work *and* scut work <nf>, thankless task; **makework,** tedious *or* stupid *or* idiot *or* tiresome work, humdrum toil, grind <nf>, fag <chiefly Brit>; rubber room work *or* job *or* assignment, no-work job; **manual labor,** handwork, handiwork; forced labor; hand's turn, stroke of work, stroke; lick *and* lick of work *and* stitch of work <nf>; man-hour; **workload,** work schedule; task 724.2; fatigue 21

5 **hard work** *or* **labor, backbreaking work,** moil, warm work, uphill work, long haul, hard *or* tough grind <nf>, the hard way; **hard job** 1013.2; labor of Hercules; **laboriousness, toilsomeness,**

effortfulness, **strenuousness, arduousness,** operosity, operoseness; onerousness, oppressiveness, burdensomeness; troublesomeness

6 **exercise** 84, exercising; **practice, drill, workout,** preparation; yoga; constitutional <nf>, stretch; violent exercise; physical education

7 exerciser; horizontal bar, parallel bars, horse, side horse, long horse, rings; trapeze; trampoline; Indian club; medicine ball; punching bag; rowing machine; weight, dumbbell, barbell

VERBS 8 **exert, exercise, ply, employ, use, put forth,** put out *and* make with <nf>; practice

9 **exert oneself,** use some elbow grease <nf>, spread oneself, put forth one's strength, bend every effort, bend might and main, spare no effort, put on a full-court press <nf>, tax one's energies, break a sweat <nf>; put *or* lay oneself out <nf>, go all out <nf>; endeavor 403.4; **do one's best; apply oneself,** come to grips with; hump *and* hump it *and* hump oneself <nf>, **buckle** *or* **knuckle** *or* bear <nf>, lay to; lay to the oars, ply the oar

10 **strain, tense, stress, stretch, tax,** press, rack; **pull, tug,** haul, **heave;** strain the muscles, strain every nerve *or* every nerve and sinew; put one's back into it <nf>; sweat blood; overwork, work night and day, take on too much, spread oneself too thin, overexert, overstrain, overtax, overextend; drive *or* whip *or* flog oneself

11 **struggle, strive, contend, fight, battle,** buffet, scuffle, tussle, wrestle, hassle <nf>, work *or* fight one's way, agonize, huff and puff, grunt and sweat, sweat it <nf>, make heavy weather of it

12 **work, labor;** busy oneself 724.10,11; turn a hand, do a hand's turn, do a lick of work, earn one's keep; chore, do the chores, char *or* do chars, chare <Brit>

13 **work hard; scratch** *and* **hustle** *and* **sweat** <nf>, **slave, sweat and slave** <nf>, slave away, toil away, hammer at; **hit the ball** *and* bear down *and* pour it on <nf>; burn the candle at both ends; work one's head off <nf>, work one's fingers to the bone, break one's back, bust one's hump *or* ass <nf>; put one's heart and soul into it; beaver *or* beaver away <Brit nf>, work like a beaver, work like a horse *or* cart horse *or* dog, work like a slave *or* galley slave, work like a coal heaver, work like a Trojan; work overtime, be a workaholic <nf>, overwork, do double duty, work double hours *or* tides, **work day and night,** work late, **burn the midnight oil;** lucubrate, elucubrate; overwork 993.10

14 **drudge, grind** *and* **dig** <nf>, fag <Brit>, **grub, toil,** moil, toil and moil, travail, **plod, slog, peg, plug** <nf>, hammer, peg away *or* along, plug away *or* along <nf>, hammer away, pound away, struggle along, struggle on, work away; **get** *or* **keep one's nose to the grindstone;** wade through

15 **set to work, get rolling, get busy, get down to business** *or* **work,** roll up one's sleeves, spit on one's hands, gird up one's loins; **fall to work, fall to, buckle** *or* **knuckle down to** <nf>, **turn to, set to** *or* **about,** put *or* set one's hand to, start in, set up shop, enter on *or* upon, launch into *or* upon; **get on the job** *and* get going <nf>; **go to it** *and* **get with it** *and* get cracking *and* have at it *and* get one's teeth into it <nf>; hop *or* jump to it <nf>; **attack,** set at, **tackle** <nf>; **plunge into,** dive into; **pitch in** *or* **into** <nf>; light into *and* wade into *and* tear into *and* sail into <nf>, put *or* lay one's shoulder to the wheel, put one's hand to the plow; take on, undertake 404.3

16 **task, work, busy,** keep busy, fag <Brit>, sweat <nf>, **drive, tax;** overtask, overtax, **overwork,** overdrive; burden, oppress 297.13

ADJS 17 **laboring, working; struggling, striving,** straining; **drudging, toiling,** slaving, sweating *and* grinding <nf>, grubbing, **plodding,** slogging, pegging, plugging <nf>, persevering; hardworking; busy, industrious, hard at it

18 **laborious, toilsome, arduous, strenuous,** painful, effortful, operose, troublesome, onerous, oppressive, burdensome; wearisome, tiring, exhausting; **heavy,** hefty <nf>, tough <nf>, uphill, **backbreaking,** grueling, punishing, crushing, killing, Herculean; uphill; **labored,** forced, strained; straining, tensive, painstaking, **intensive;** hard-fought, hard-won, hard-earned

ADVS 19 **laboriously, arduously, toilsomely, strenuously,** operosely; effortfully, with effort, **hard,** by the sweat of one's brow; the hard way; with all one's might, for all one is worth, with a will, **with might and main,** with a strong hand, manfully; **hammer and tongs, tooth and nail,** *bec et ongles* <Fr>, heart and soul; **industriously** 330.27

726 WORKER, DOER

NOUNS 1 **doer, agent,** actor, **performer, worker, practitioner,** perpetrator; **producer, maker,** creator, fabricator, **author,** mover, prime mover; architect; **agent,** medium; **executor,** executant, executrix; **operator,** operative, operant, hand; subject *and* agent <gram>; coworker, colleague

2 **worker, laborer, toiler,** moiler; member of the working class, proletarian, prole <Brit nf>, blue-collar *or* lunch-bucket worker, laboring man, stiff *and* working stiff <nf>; **workman, working man; workwoman, working woman,** workfolk, workpeople; working girl, workgirl; **factory worker,**

industrial worker; autoworker, steelworker; construction worker; **commuter;** home worker, telecommuter; **office worker, white-collar worker;** career woman, career girl; **jobholder,** wageworker, **wage earner,** salaried worker; **breadwinner;** wage slave; employee, servant 577; **hand, workhand,** hourly worker; **laborer,** common laborer, **unskilled laborer,** navvy <Brit>, day laborer, roust-about; casual, casual laborer; **agricultural worker** 1069.5; migrant worker, migrant; menial, flunky; pieceworker, jobber; factotum, jack-of-all-trades; full-time worker, part-time worker; temporary employee, temporary, office temporary, temp <nf>; freelance worker, freelance, freelancer, self-employed person, independent contractor, consultant; volunteer; domestic worker, clerical worker, sales worker, service worker, repair worker, artistic worker, technical worker; **labor force, work force,** crew, shop floor <Brit>, factory floor; personnel; labor market

3 **drudge, grub, hack, fag, plodder, slave,** galley slave, **workhorse,** beast of burden, slogger; "hewers of wood and drawers of water"—Bible; grind *and* greasy grind <nf>, swot <Brit nf>; slave labor, sweatshop labor; busy bee *and* beaver *and* ant <nf>

4 **professional,** member of a learned profession, professional practitioner; businessman, businesswoman, career woman; executive; pro *and* old pro <nf>, seasoned professional; gownsman; doctor, lawyer, member of the clergy, teacher, accountant; social worker; health-care professional, military professional; law-enforcement professional, etc

5 **amateur, nonprofessional, layman,** member of the laity, laic

6 **skilled worker,** skilled laborer, **journeyman,** mechanic; **craftsman, handicraftsman;** craftswoman; craftsperson; craftspeople; **artisan,** artificer, artist; **maker,** *fabbro* <Ital>; **wright; technician;** apprentice, prentice <nf>; **master,** master craftsman, master workman, master carpenter, etc

7 **engineer,** professional engineer; **technician,** technical worker, techie <nf>; engineering, technology

8 **smith;** farrier <Brit>, forger, forgeman, metalworker; Vulcan, Hephaestus, Wayland *or* Völund

727 UNIONISM, LABOR UNION

NOUNS 1 **unionism,** trade unionism, trades unionism <Brit>, labor unionism; **unionization; collective bargaining; arbitration,** nonbinding arbitration; industrial relations, labor relations, work relations; employee rights, employer rights; salary negotiations, labor negotiations, negotiated *or* negotiation points, employee demands, management demands

2 **labor union,** trade union, trades union <Brit>; organized labor; collective bargaining; **craft union,** guild, horizontal union; **industrial union,** vertical union; **local,** union local, local union; company union

3 **union shop,** preferential shop, **closed shop;** open shop; nonunion shop; **labor contract, union contract,** sweetheart contract, yellow-dog contract; maintenance of membership

4 **unionist, labor unionist, trade unionist, union member,** trades unionist <Brit>, organized *or* unionized worker, cardholder; shop steward, bargainer, negotiator; business agent; union officer; union *or* labor organizer, organizer, labor union official; union contractor

5 **strike, walkout** *or* tie-up <nf>, industrial action <Brit>, **job action;** slowdown, rulebook slowdown, sick-in *and* sickout *and* blue flu <nf>; work stoppage, sit-down strike, sit-down, wildcat strike, out-law strike, called strike, organized strike; sympathy strike; **slowdown,** work-to-rule, rulebook slowdown; general strike; **boycott,** boycottage, picketing, picket; buyer's *or* consumer's strike; **lock-out;** revolt 327.4

6 **striker,** picket; sitdown striker; holdout <nf>

7 <strike enforcer> **picket; goon** <nf>, strong-arm man; flying squadron *or* squad, goon squad <nf>

8 **strikebreaker, scab** *and* **rat** *and* **fink** *and* scissorbill <nf>, goon, **blackleg** <Brit>

VERBS 9 **organize, unionize;** bargain, bargain collectively; arbitrate; submit to arbitration

10 **strike, go on strike, go out, walk, walk out;** hit the bricks <nf>, shut it down; slow down; sit down; **boycott;** picket; hold out <nf>; **lock out;** revolt 327.7

11 **break a strike; scab** *and* **rat** *and* **fink** <nf>, **blackleg** <Brit>

728 MONEY

NOUNS 1 **money, currency, legal tender, medium of exchange,** circulating medium, sterling <Brit>, **cash,** hard cash, cold cash; specie, coinage, mintage, coin of the realm, gold; **silver;** dollars; pounds, shillings, and pence; **the wherewithal,** the wherewith; lucre, **filthy lucre** <nf>, the almighty dollar, pelf, root of all evil, mammon; "the ruling spirit of all things"—Publilius Syrus, "coined liberty"—Dostoyevsky; **hard currency,** soft currency; fractional currency; managed currency; necessity money, scrip, emergency money; monetary unit, monetary denomination

2 <nf terms> **dough, bread, jack, kale,** bucks, scratch, change, mazuma, mopus, gelt, gilt, coin, spondulicks, oof, ooftish, wampum, possibles, moolah, boodle, blunt, dinero, do-re-mi, **sugar,** brass, tin, rocks, simoleons, shekels, berries, chips, **bucks,** green, green stuff, the needful, grease, ointment, palm oil, gravy, cabbage, lettuce, whip-out, the necessary, loot

3 **wampum,** wampumpeag, peag, sewan, roanoke, shell money; cowrie

4 **specie,** hard money; coinage; coin, piece, piece of money, piece of silver *or* gold; roll of coins, rouleau; **gold piece;** ten-dollar gold piece, eagle; five-dollar gold piece, half eagle; twenty-dollar gold piece, double eagle; guinea, sovereign, pound sovereign, crown, half crown; doubloon; ducat; napoleon, louis d'or; moidore

5 **paper money;** cash; **bill,** dollar bill, etc; **note,** negotiable note *or* instrument, legal-tender note; **bank note,** bill of exchange, Federal Reserve note; national bank note; government note, treasury note; silver certificate; gold certificate; scrip; fractional note, shinplaster <nf>; fiat money, assignat

6 <nf terms> **folding money, green stuff,** the long green, folding green, lean green, mint leaves, lettuce, greenbacks, frogskins, skins

7 <US denominations> mill; cent, penny, copper, red cent <nf>; five cents, nickel; ten cents, dime; twenty-five cents, quarter, two bits <nf>; fifty cents, half-dollar, four bits <nf>; dollar, dollar bill; buck *and* smacker *and* frogskin *and* fish *and* skin <nf>; silver dollar, beau dollar <old>, cartwheel *and* iron man <nf>; two-dollar bill, two-spot <nf>; five-dollar bill; fiver *and* five-spot *and* fin <nf>; ten-dollar bill; tenner *and* ten-spot *and* sawbuck <nf>; twenty-dollar bill, double sawbuck <nf>; fifty-dollar bill, half a C <nf>; hundred-dollar bill; C *and* C-note *and* century *and* bill <nf>; five hundred dollars, half grand <nf>, five-hundred-dollar bill, half G <nf>; thousand dollars, G *and* grand <nf>, thousand-dollar bill, G-note *and* yard *and* big one <nf>

8 <British denominations> mite; farthing; halfpenny *or* ha'penny, bawbee <nf>, mag *or* meg <nf>; penny; pence, p; new pence, np; two-pence *or* tuppence; threepence *or* thrippence, threepenny bit *or* piece; fourpence, fourpenny, groat; sixpence, tanner <nf>, teston; shilling, bob <nf>; florin; half crown, half-dollar <nf>; crown, dollar <nf>; pound, quid <nf>; guinea; fiver <£5>, tenner <£10>, pony <£25>, monkey <£500>, plum <£100,000>, marigold <£1,000,000> <nf>

9 **foreign money,** foreign denominations; **convertibility, foreign exchange;** rate of exchange *or* exchange rate; parity of exchange; agio

10 counterfeit, counterfeit money, funny *or* phony *or* bogus money <nf>, false *or* bad money, queer <nf>, base coin, green goods <nf>; **forgery,** bad check, rubber check *and* bounced check *and* kite <nf>

11 **negotiable instrument** *or* **paper,** commercial paper, paper, bill; **bill of exchange,** bill of draft; certificate, certificate of deposit *or* CD; **check,** cheque <Brit>; blank check; bank check, teller's check; treasury check; cashier's check, certified check; traveler's check *or* banker's check; letter of credit, commercial letter of credit; **money order** *or* MO; postal order *or* postoffice order <Brit>; draft, warrant, voucher, debenture; **promissory note, note, IOU;** note of hand; credit note; acceptance, acceptance bill, bank acceptance, trade acceptance; due bill; demand bill, sight bill, demand draft, sight draft; time bill, time draft; exchequer bill *or* treasury bill <Brit>; checkbook

12 **token, counter,** slug; **scrip, coupon; check, ticket,** tag; hat check, baggage check

13 **sum,** amount of money; round sum, lump sum

14 **funds, finances, moneys,** exchequer, purse, budget, pocket; treasury, treasure, substance, **assets,** resources, total assets, worth, net worth, **pecuniary resources, means,** available means *or* resources *or* funds, cash flow, wherewithal, command of money; balance; pool, **fund, kitty** <nf>, petty cash; war chest; checking account, bank account; Swiss bank account, unnumbered *or* unregistered bank account; reserves, cash reserves; savings, savings account, nest egg <nf>; life savings; bottom dollar <nf>; automated teller machine *or* ATM

15 **capital, fund;** moneyed capital; principal, corpus; circulating capital, floating capital; fixed capital, working capital, equity capital, **risk** *or* **venture capital;** capital structure; capital gains distribution; capitalization

16 **money market,** supply of short-term funds; tight money, cheap money; **borrowing** 621; **lending** 620; discounting, note discounting, note shaving, dealing in commercial paper

17 **bankroll;** roll *or* wad <nf>

18 **cash, ready money** *or* **cash,** the ready <nf>, available funds, money in hand, cash in hand, balance in hand, immediate resources, **liquid assets,** cash supply, **cash flow;** treasury

19 **petty cash, pocket money, pin money,** spending money, mad money, **change,** small change; nickels and dimes *and* chicken feed *and* peanuts <nf>, pittance

20 precious metals; **gold,** yellow stuff <nf>; nugget, gold nugget; **silver, copper, nickel,** coin gold *or* silver; bullion, ingot, bar

21 standard of value, gold standard, silver standard; monometallism, bimetallism; money of account

22 <science of coins> **numismatics,** numismatology; numismatist, numismatologist

23 monetization; issuance, circulation; remonetization; demonetization; revaluation, devaluation

24 **coining,** coinage, mintage, striking, stamping; **counterfeiting, forgery;** coin-clipping

25 **coiner,** minter, mintmaster, moneyer; **counterfeiter, forger;** coin-clipper

VERBS **26** monetize; **issue,** utter, **circulate;** remonetize, reissue; demonetize; revalue, devalue, devaluate

27 discount, discount notes, deal in commercial paper, shave; borrow, lend 620.5

28 **coin, mint; print,** stamp; **counterfeit, forge;** utter, pass *or* shove the queer <nf>; pass a bad check, kite a check

29 **cash,** cash in <nf>, liquidate, convert into cash, realize

ADJS **30** **monetary, pecuniary,** nummary, nummular, **financial,** fiduciary; capital; fiscal; sumptuary; numismatic; sterling

31 convertible, liquid, negotiable

729 FINANCE, INVESTMENT

NOUNS **1** **finance, finances, money matters;** world of finance, financial world, financial industry, **high finance,** investment banking, international banking, Wall Street banking, Lombard Street; the gnomes of Zurich; economics 731; purse strings

2 **financing, funding, backing,** financial backing, **sponsorship, patronization,** support, financial support; **stake** *and* **grubstake** <nf>; subsidy 478.8; **capitalizing,** capitalization, provision of capital; deficit financing

3 personal finance; bank account, savings account, checking account; budget; pension, 401K, Individual Retirement Account *or* IRA, Keogh plan

4 **investment, venture, risk,** plunge <nf>, speculation; prime investment; ethical *or* conscience investment; money market, mutual fund, stock market, bond market; **divestment,** disinvestment

5 **banking,** money dealing, money changing; investment banking; banking industry

6 **financial condition,** state of the exchequer; **credit rating,** Dun & Bradstreet rating

7 **solvency,** soundness, solidity; credit standing, creditworthiness; unindebtedness

8 **crisis,** financial crisis; dollar crisis, dollar gap

9 **financier,** moneyman, **capitalist,** finance capitalist; Wall Streeter; investor; financial expert, economist, authority on money and banking; international banker

10 **financer, backer,** funder, **sponsor, patron, supporter,** angel <nf>, Maecenas; cash cow *and* staker *and* grubstaker <nf>, meal ticket <nf>; **fundraiser**

11 **banker, money dealer,** moneymonger; money broker; discounter, note broker, bill broker <Brit>; moneylender 620.3; money changer, cambist; investment banker; bank president, bank manager, bank officer, loan officer, trust officer, banking executive; bank clerk, cashier, teller

12 **treasurer,** financial officer, bursar, purser, purse bearer, **cashier,** cashkeeper; accountant, auditor, controller *or* comptroller, bookkeeper; chamberlain, curator, steward, trustee; depositary, depository; receiver, liquidator; **paymaster;** Secretary of the Treasury, Chancellor of the Exchequer

13 **treasury, treasure-house;** subtreasury; **depository,** repository; storehouse 386.6; gold depository, Fort Knox; **strongbox, safe,** money chest, **coffer, locker, chest;** piggy bank, penny bank, bank; **vault,** strong room; safe-deposit *or* safety-deposit box *or* vault; cashbox, coin box, cash register, **till;** bursary; exchequer, fisc; **public treasury,** public funds, taxpayer funds *or* money, pork barrel, public crib *or* trough *or* till <nf>

14 **bank,** banking house, lending institution, savings institution; automated teller machine *or* ATM, cash machine; **central bank,** Bank of England *or* the Old Lady of Threadneedle Street, Bank of France; Federal Reserve Bank *or* System; World Bank, International Monetary Fund; clearing house

15 **purse, wallet, pocketbook, bag, handbag,** clutch, shoulder bag, porte-monnaie, **billfold,** money belt, money clip, poke <nf>, **pocket;** fanny pack; moneybag; purse strings

VERBS **16** **finance, back, fund, sponsor, patronize, support,** provide for, capitalize, provide capital *or* money for, pay for, bankroll <nf>, angel <nf>, put up the money, hold the purse strings; **stake** *or* **grubstake** <nf>; subsidize 478.19; set up, set up in business; refinance

17 **invest,** place, put, sink; **risk, venture;** make an investment, lay out money, place out *or* put out at interest; reinvest, roll over, plow back into <nf>; **invest in, put money in,** sink money in, pour money into, tie up one's money in; buy in *or* into, buy a piece *or* share of; financier; plunge <nf>, speculate 737.23; play the big board, play the stock exchange

ADJS **18** **solvent,** sound, substantial, solid, good, sound as a dollar, creditworthy; **able to pay,** good for, unindebted 624.23, out of the hole *or* the red

19 **insolvent,** unsound, indebted 623.8

20 financial, monetary, fiscal, pecuniary, economic; bull, bear

730 BUSINESSMAN, MERCHANT

NOUNS **1** **businessman,** businesswoman, businessperson, businesspeople; enterpriser, entrepreneur, man of commerce; small *or* little businessman; big businessman, magnate, tycoon <nf>, baron, king, top executive, business leader; director, manager 574.1; big boss; **industrialist,** captain of industry; banker, financier; robber baron; intrapreneur

2 **merchant,** merchandiser, marketer, **trader,** trafficker, **dealer,** monger, chandler; **tradesman,** tradeswoman; **storekeeper, shopkeeper;** regrater; **wholesaler,** jobber, middleman; importer, exporter; **distributor; retailer,** retail merchant, retail dealer *or* seller; **dealership, distributorship;** franchise; concession

3 **salesman,** seller, salesperson, salesclerk; **saleswoman,** saleslady, salesgirl; **clerk,** shop clerk, store clerk, shop assistant; floorwalker; **agent, sales agent,** selling agent; sales engineer; sales manager; salespeople, sales force, sales personnel; scalper *and* ticket scalper <nf>

4 **traveling salesman, traveler, commercial traveler,** traveling agent, traveling man *or* woman, road warrior, knight of the road, bagman <Brit>, drummer <old>; detail man; door-to-door salesman, canvasser

5 **vendor, peddler, huckster, hawker,** butcher <old>, higgler, cadger <Scot>, colporteur, chapman <Brit>; cheap-jack *and* cheap-john <nf>; coster *or* costermonger <Brit>; sidewalk salesman

6 **solicitor,** canvasser

7 <nf terms> tout, touter, **pitch-man** *or* **-woman** *or* person, barker, spieler, ballyhooer, **ballyhoo man**

8 **auctioneer,** auction agent

9 **broker,** note broker, bill broker <Brit>, discount broker, cotton broker, hotel broker, insurance broker, mortgage broker, diamond broker, furniture broker, ship broker, grain broker; stockbroker 737.10; pawnbroker 620.3; money broker, money changer, cambist; land broker, real estate broker, realtor, real estate agent, estate agent <Brit>

10 **ragman,** old-clothesman, rag-and-bone man <Brit>; **junkman,** junk dealer

11 **tradesmen, tradespeople,** tradesfolk, **merchantry**

ADJS **12** **business, commercial,** mercantile; entrepreneurial

731 COMMERCE, ECONOMICS

NOUNS **1** **commerce, trade, traffic,** truck, intercourse, **dealing, dealings; business,** business dealings *or* affairs *or* relations, commercial affairs *or* relations; the business world, the world of trade *or* commerce, the marketplace; merchantry, mercantile business; **market,** marketing, state of the market, buyers' market, sellers' market; **industry** 725.4; big business, small business; fair trade, free trade, reciprocal trade, unilateral trade, multilateral trade; most favored nation; balance of trade; restraint of trade

2 **trade, trading, doing business, trafficking;** barter, bartering, **exchange,** interchange, swapping <nf>; give-and-take, horse trading <nf>, **dealing, dealmaking,** wheeling and dealing <nf>; **buying and selling; wholesaling,** jobbing; brokerage, agency; **retailing,** merchandising 734.2; commercial trade, export and import

3 **negotiation, bargaining, haggling,** higgling, **dickering, chaffering,** chaffer, haggle; hacking out *or* working out *or* hammering out a deal, coming to terms; horse trading; collective bargaining, package bargaining, pattern bargaining

4 **transaction,** business *or* commercial transaction, **deal,** business deal, negotiation <old>, operation, turn; package deal

5 **bargain, deal** <nf>, dicker; agreement, contract; **trade, swap** <nf>; horse trade <nf>; trade-in; blind bargain, pig in a poke; hard bargain

6 **custom,** customers, clientele, patronage, patrons, trade; **goodwill,** repute, good name

7 **economy, economic system,** market, capitalist *or* capitalistic economy, free-enterprise *or* free-trade *or* private-enterprise economy, market economy, free-market economy, socialist *or* socialistic economy, collectivized economy; hot *or* overheated economy; healthy *or* sound economy, weak economy; **gross national product** *or* **GNP;** economic sector, public sector, private sector; economic self-sufficiency, autarky; economic policy, fiscal policy, monetary policy; microeconomics, macroeconomics; privatization, nationalization, denationalization, supply-side economics; economic theory; open market

8 **standard of living,** standard of life, standard of comfort; real wages, take-home pay *or* take-home; **cost of living;** cost-of-living index, consumer price index

9 economic indicator, econometrics; gross national product *or* GNP, price index, consumer price index, retail price index, cost-of-living index; unemployment rate, national debt, budget deficit

10 **business cycle, economic cycle,** business fluctuations; peak, peaking; low, bottoming out <nf>; prosperity, boom <nf>; boomlet *or* miniboom; crisis, **recession, depression,** slowdown, cooling off, slump *and* bust <nf>, downturn, downtick <nf>; upturn, uptick <nf>, expanding economy, recovery; **growth,** economic growth, business growth, high growth rate, expansion, market expansion, **economic expansion; trade cycle;** trade deficit, trade gap, balance of payments; **monetary cycle; inflation,** deflation, stagflation

11 **economics,** eco *or* econ <nf>, economic science, the dismal science; political economy; dynamic economics; theoretical economics, plutology; classical economics; Keynesian economics, Keynesianism; supply side economics; econometrics; economism, economic determinism

12 **economist,** economic expert *or* authority; political economist

13 **commercialism,** mercantilism; industrialism; mass marketing

14 **commercialization;** industrialization

VERBS 15 **trade, deal, traffic, truck, buy and sell, do business; barter; exchange,** change, interchange, give in exchange, take in exchange, **swap** <nf>, switch; swap horses *and* horse-trade <nf>; trade off; trade in; trade sight unseen, make a blind bargain, sell a pig in a poke; **ply one's trade** 724.12

16 **deal in, trade in, traffic in, handle,** carry, be in; market, merchandise, **sell,** retail, wholesale, job

17 **trade with, deal with, traffic with, traffic in, do business with,** have dealings with, have truck with, transact business with; frequent as a customer, shop at, trade at, **patronize,** take one's business *or* trade to; open an account with, have an account with; export, import; market, merchandise

18 **bargain, drive a bargain, negotiate, haggle,** higgle, chaffer, huckster, **deal, dicker,** barter, make a deal, do a deal <Brit>, hack out *or* work out *or* hammer out a deal, do a deal; **bid,** bid for, cheapen, beat down; underbid, outbid; drive a hard bargain; hold out for

19 **strike a bargain,** make a bargain, make a dicker, **make a deal,** get oneself a deal, put through a deal, shake hands, shake on it <nf>; bargain for, agree to; **come to terms** 332.10; be a bargain, be a go *and* be a deal <nf>, be on <nf>; network

20 put on a business basis *or* footing, make businesslike; commercialize; industrialize

21 <adjust the economy> cool *or* cool off the economy; heat *or* heat up the economy

ADJS 22 **commercial, business, trade,** trading, **mercantile,** merchant; commercialistic, mercantilistic; industrial; wholesale, retail

23 **economic,** fiscal, monetary, pecuniary, financial, budgetary; inflationary, deflationary; socioeconomic, politico-economic *or* -economical

732 ILLICIT BUSINESS

NOUNS 1 illicit business, illegitimate business, illegal operations, illegal commerce *or* traffic, shady dealings, **racket** <nf>; **the rackets** <nf>, the syndicate, **organized crime, Mafia,** Cosa Nostra; **black market,** gray market; **drug** *or* **narcotics traffic;** narcoterrorism; **prostitution,** streetwalking; **pimping,** traffic in women, white slavery; usury 623.3, loan-sharking *and* shylocking <nf>; protection racket; bootlegging, moon-shining <nf>; gambling 759.7

2 **smuggling,** contrabandage, contraband; narcotics smuggling, dope smuggling <nf>, jewel smuggling, cigarette smuggling; gunrunning, rumrunning

3 **contraband,** smuggled goods; narcotics, drugs, dope <nf>, jewels, cigarettes; bootleg liquor; stolen goods *or* property, hot goods *or* items <nf>

4 **racketeer;** Mafioso; **black marketeer,** gray marketeer; bootlegger, moonshiner <nf>; pusher *and* dealer <nf>, narcotics *or* dope *or* drug pusher <nf>; **drug lord;** Medellin cartel

5 **smuggler,** contrabandist, runner; drug smuggler, mule <nf>; gunrunner, rumrunner

6 **fence,** receiver, **receiver of stolen goods,** swagman *and* swagsman <nf>, bagman, bagwoman

VERBS 7 <deal in illicit goods> push *and* shove <nf>; **sell under the counter; black-market,** black-marketeer; bootleg, moonshine <nf>; fence <nf>

8 **smuggle,** run, sneak

733 PURCHASE

NOUNS 1 **purchase, buying, purchasing, acquisition; shopping, marketing;** shopping around, comparison shopping; window-shopping; impulse buying; shopping spree; repurchase, rebuying; mail-order buying, catalog shopping; teleshopping, home shopping, online shopping; installment buying, hire purchase <Brit>; layaway purchase; **buying up,** cornering, coemption <old>; **buying** *or* **purchasing power; consumerism;** consumer society, consumer sovereignty, consumer power, acquisitive society; retail *or* consumer price index; wholesale price index; shopping list

2 **option,** first option, **first refusal,** refusal,

preemption, right of preemption, prior right of purchase

3 **market,** public, purchasing public; urban market, rural market, youth market, suburban market, etc; **clientele, customers,** clientage, **patronage, custom,** trade; carriage trade; demand, consumer demand

4 **customer, client; patron,** patronizer <nf>, regular customer *or* buyer, regular; clientele; **prospect;** mark *or* sucker <nf>

5 **buyer,** purchaser, emptor, **consumer,** vendee; **shopper,** shopaholic, impulse buyer, marketer; bargain-hunter; bidder; window-shopper, browser; purchasing agent, customer agent

6 by-bidder, decoy, come-on man *and* shill <nf>

VERBS 7 **purchase, buy,** procure, make *or* complete a purchase, make a buy, make a deal for, blow oneself to <nf>; **buy up,** regrate, **corner,** monopolize, engross, hoard; buy out; buy in, buy into, buy a piece of; repurchase, rebuy, buy back; buy on credit, buy on the installment plan, charge; buy sight unseen *or* blind; trade up

8 **shop, market, go shopping,** go marketing; **shop around;** window-shop, comparison-shop, **browse,** graze; impulse-buy; shop till one drops *and* hit the shops <nf>

9 **bid,** make a bid, offer, offer to buy, make an offer; give the asking price; by-bid, shill <nf>; bid up; bid in

ADJS 10 **purchasing, buying,** in the market; cliental

11 **bought,** store-bought, boughten *or* store-boughten <nf>, purchased

734 SALE

NOUNS 1 **sale; wholesale, retail; market, demand,** outlet; buyers' market, sellers' market; mass market; conditional sale; tie-in sale, tie-in; turnover; bill of sale; cash sale, cash-and-carry

2 **selling, merchandising, marketing; wholesaling,** jobbing; **retailing;** direct selling; sell-through; telemarketing; mail-order selling, direct-mail selling, catalog selling; television *or* video selling; online selling, e-commerce; **vending, peddling, hawking, huckstering;** hucksterism; market *or* marketing research, consumer research, consumer preference study, consumer survey, data warehousing; sales campaign, promotion, sales promotion; **salesmanship,** high-pressure salesmanship, hard sell <nf>, low-pressure salesmanship, soft sell <nf>; cold call; sellout

3 **sale,** sellout, closing-out sale, going-out-of-business sale, inventory-clearance sale, distress sale, fire sale; bazaar; rummage sale, white elephant sale, garage sale, tag sale, yard sale, flea market; tax sale

4 **auction,** auction sale, vendue, outcry, sale at *or* by auction, sale to the highest bidder; Dutch auction; **auction block, block**

5 **sales talk, sales pitch,** patter; **pitch** *or* spiel *or* ballyhoo <nf>

6 **sales resistance,** consumer *or* buyer resistance

7 **salability,** salableness, commerciality, merchandisability, **marketability,** vendibility

VERBS 8 **sell, merchandise, market,** move, turn over, sell off, make *or* effect a sale; convert into cash, turn into money; **sell out,** close out; sell up <Brit>; **retail,** sell retail, sell over the counter; **wholesale,** sell wholesale, job, be jobber *or* wholesaler for; dump, unload, flood the market with, get rid of; sacrifice, sell at a sacrifice *or* loss; sell off, remainder; resell, sell over; undersell, undercut, cut under; sell short; sell on consignment

9 **vend,** dispense, **peddle, hawk, huckster;** tout

10 **put up for sale,** put up, ask bids *or* offers for, offer for sale, offer at a bargain

11 **auction, auction off, auctioneer,** sell at auction, sell by auction, put up for auction, **put on the block,** bring under the hammer; knock down, sell to the highest bidder

12 **be sold, sell,** bring, realize, sell for; change hands; sell like hotcakes, be in demand

ADJS 13 **sales,** selling, market, **marketing, merchandising, retail,** retailing, wholesale, wholesaling; vending

14 **salable, marketable,** retailable, merchandisable, merchantable, commercial, vendible; in demand

15 **unsalable,** nonsalable, **unmarketable;** on one's hands, on the shelves, not moving, not turning over, unbought, unsold

ADVS 16 **for sale,** to sell, up for sale, in *or* on the market, in the marts of trade; at a bargain, marked down

17 **at auction,** at outcry, at public auction *or* outcry, by auction, **on the block,** under the hammer

735 MERCHANDISE

NOUNS 1 **merchandise, commodities, wares, goods,** effects, vendibles; **items,** oddments; **consumer goods,** consumer items, retail goods, goods for sale; **stock, stock-in-trade;** staples; **inventory; line,** line of goods; sideline; job lot; mail-order goods, catalog goods; **luxury goods,** high-ticket *or* big-ticket *or* upscale items

2 **commodity, ware,** vendible, **product, article, item,** article of commerce *or* merchandise; staple, staple item, standard article; special, feature, leader, lead item, loss leader; seconds; drug, drug on the market

3 **dry goods, soft goods;** textiles; yard goods, white

goods, linens, napery; men's wear, ladies' wear, children's wear, infants' wear; sportswear, sporting goods; leatherware, leather goods

4 **hard goods, durables, durable goods;** fixtures, white goods, **appliances** 385.4; tools and machinery 1040; **hardware,** ironmongery <Brit>; sporting goods, **housewares,** home furnishings, kitchenware; tableware, dinnerware; flatware, hollow ware; metalware, brassware, copperware, silverware, ironware, tinware; woodenware; glassware; chinaware, earthenware, clayware, stoneware, graniteware; enamelware; ovenware

5 **furniture** 229, furnishings, home furnishings

6 **notions, sundries,** novelties, knickknacks, odds and ends; toilet goods, toiletries; cosmetics; giftware

7 **groceries,** grocery <Brit>, food items, edibles, victuals, baked goods, packaged goods, canned goods, tinned goods <Brit>; green goods, **produce,** truck

736 MARKET

<place of trade>

NOUNS 1 **market, mart, store, shop,** salon, boutique, wareroom, emporium, house, establishment, *magasin* <Fr>; **retail store; wholesale house, discount store, discount house, outlet store;** warehouse, megastore; mail-order house; **general store,** country store; **department store;** warehouse store, superstore; **co-op** <nf>, cooperative; **variety store,** variety shop, **dime store; ten-cent store** *or* five-and-ten *or* five-and-dime <nf>; convenience store, corner store, mom-and-pop store; chain store; concession; **trading post,** post; **supermarket**

2 **marketplace, mart, market, open market,** market overt, agora; **shopping center, shopping plaza** *or* **mall,** plaza, mall, arcade, shopping *or* shop *or* commercial complex; warehouse; emporium, rialto; staple; **bazaar, fair,** trade fair, show, auto show, boat show, etc, exposition; flea market, flea fair, street market, farmers' market, fish market, meat market, *marché aux puces* <Fr>; trading post; home shopping, e-commerce *or* electronic commerce

3 **booth, stall, stand;** newsstand, kiosk, news kiosk; pushcart; roadside stand

4 **vending machine,** vendor, coin machine, coin-operated machine, slot machine, automat; redeemer *or* reverse vending machine

5 **salesroom,** wareroom; showroom; auction room

6 **counter,** shopboard <old>; notions counter; showcase; peddler's cart, pushcart

737 STOCK MARKET

NOUNS 1 **stock market, the market, Wall Street;** securities market, commodity market; ticker market; open market, competitive market; steady market, strong market, hard *or* stiff market; unsteady market, spotty market; weak market; long market; top-heavy market; market index, stock price index, Dow-Jones Industrial Average

2 **active market,** brisk market, lively market

3 **inactive market,** slow market, stagnant market, flat market, tired market, sick market; investors on the sidelines

4 **rising market,** booming market, buoyant market; **bull market,** bullish market, bullishness

5 **declining market,** sagging market, retreating market, off market, soft market; **bear market,** bearish market, bearishness; **slump,** sag; break, break in the market; profit-taking, selloff; **crash,** smash

6 **rigged market,** manipulated market, pegged market, put-up market; **insider trading**

7 **stock exchange, exchange,** Wall Street, change <Brit>, **stock market,** bourse, **board;** the Exchange, New York Stock Exchange, the Big Board; American Stock Exchange, Amex, curb, curb market, curb exchange; over-the-counter market, telephone market, outside market; third market; exchange floor; commodity exchange, pit, corn pit, wheat pit, etc; quotation board; **ticker,** stock ticker; ticker tape

8 **financial district,** Wall Street, the Street; Lombard Street

9 **stockbrokerage,** brokerage, brokerage house, brokerage office; wire house; bucket shop *and* boiler room <nf>

10 **stockbroker,** sharebroker <Brit>, **broker,** jobber, stockjobber, dealer, stock dealer; Wall Streeter; stock-exchange broker, *agent de bourse* <Fr>; floor broker, floor trader, floorman, specialist, market maker; pit man; curb broker; odd-lot dealer; two-dollar broker; day trader, night trader; broker's agent, customer's broker *or* customer's man, registered representative; bond crowd

11 **speculator,** adventurer, operator; big operator, smart operator; **plunger,** gunslinger; scalper; stag <Brit>; lame duck; margin purchaser; **arbitrager** *or* arbitrageur *or* arb <nf>; inside trader

12 **bear,** short, short seller; shorts, short interest, short side; short account, bear account

13 **bull,** long, longs, long interest, long side; long account, bull account

14 **stockholder,** stockowner, **shareholder, shareowner;** bondholder, coupon-clipper <nf>; stockholder of record

15 **stock company,** joint-stock company; issuing company; stock insurance company

16 **trust,** investment company; investment trust, holding company; closed-end investment company, closed-end fund; open-end fund, mutual fund, money-market fund; unit trust <Brit>; load fund, no-load fund, low-load fund, back-end fund; growth fund, income fund, dual purpose fund; trust fund; blind trust

17 **pool,** bear pool, bull pool, blind pool

18 **stockbroking,** brokerage, stockbrokerage, jobbing, stockjobbing, stockjobbery, stock dealing; bucketing, legal bucketing

19 **trading,** stock-market trading, market-trading; computer *or* programmed selling; playing the market <nf>; **speculation,** stockjobbing, stockjobbery; **venture,** flutter; flier, plunge; scalping; liquidation, profit taking; **arbitrage,** arbitraging; buying in, covering shorts; short sale; spot sale; round trade *or* transaction, turn; risk *or* venture capital, equity capital; money-market trading, foreign-exchange trading, agiotage; **buyout, takeover,** hostile takeover, takeover bid; leveraged buyout; greenmail; **leverage**

20 **manipulation, rigging; raid,** bear raid, bull raid; **corner,** corner in, corner on the market, monopoly; washing, washed *or* wash sale

21 **option,** stock option, right, **put, call,** put and call, right of put and call; straddle, spread; strip; strap

22 **panic,** bear panic, rich man's panic

VERBS 23 **trade, speculate,** venture, operate, **play the market,** buy *or* sell *or* deal in futures; **arbitrage; plunge,** take a flier <nf>; scalp; bucket, bucketshop; stag *or* stag the market <Brit>; trade on margin; pyramid; be long, go long, be long of the market, be on the long side of the market; be short, be short of the market, be on the short side of the market; margin up, apply *or* deposit margin; wait out the market, hold on; be caught short, miss the market, overstay the market; scoop the market, make a scoop *or* killing *or* bundle *or* pile <nf>

24 **sell,** convert, liquidate; throw on the market, dump, unload; **sell short,** go short, make a short sale; cover one's short, fulfill a short sale; make delivery, clear the trade; close out, sell out, terminate the account

25 manipulate the market, **rig the market;** bear, **bear the market;** bull, **bull the market;** raid the market; hold *or* peg the market; whipsaw; wash sales

26 corner, get a corner on, **corner the market;** monopolize, engross; buy up, absorb

738 SECURITIES

NOUNS 1 **securities** <see list>, **stocks and bonds,** investment securities; arbitrage, program trading

2 **stock** <see list>, shares <Brit>, equity, equity security, corporate stock; stock split, split; reverse split; stock list; stock ledger, share ledger <Brit>; **holdings, portfolio,** investment portfolio

3 **share, lot;** preference share; dummy share; holding, holdings, stockholding, stockholdings; block; round lot, full lot, even lot, board lot; odd lot, fractional lot

4 **stock certificate,** certificate of stock; street certificate; interim certificate; **coupon**

5 **bond** <see list>; nominal rate, coupon rate, current yield, yield to maturity

6 **issue,** issuance; **flotation;** stock issue, secondary issue; bond issue; poison pill <nf>

7 **dividend;** regular dividend; extra dividend, special dividend, plum *and* melon <nf>; payout ratio; cumulative dividend, accumulated dividends, accrued dividends; interim dividend; cash dividend; stock dividend; optional dividend; scrip dividend; liquidating dividend; phony dividend; **interest** 623.3; **return, yield,** return on investment, payout, payback

8 **assessment,** Irish dividend

9 **price, quotation;** bid-and-asked prices, bid price, asked *or* asking *or* offering price; actual *or* delivery *or* settling price, put price, call price; opening price, closing price; high, low; market price, quoted price, flash price; issue price; fixed price; parity; **par,** issue par; par value, nominal value, face value; stated value; book value; market value; bearish prices, bullish prices; swings, fluctuations; flurry, flutter; rally, decline

10 **margin;** thin margin, shoestring margin; exhaust price

11 <commodities> spots, spot grain, etc; futures, future grain, etc

VERBS 12 **issue, float,** put on the market; issue stock, go public <nf>; float a bond issue

13 **declare a dividend,** cut a melon <nf>

ADVS 14 dividend off, ex dividend; dividend on, cum dividend; coupon off, ex coupon; coupon on, cum coupon; warrants off, ex warrants; warrants on, cum warrants; when issued

15 **kinds of securities**

active securities
American Depository Receipts *or* ADRs
banker's acceptance
callable securities
certificate of accrual on treasury securities *or* CATS
certificate of deposit *or* CD
convertible securities *or* convertibles *or* CVs
corporation securities
debenture *or* certificate of indebtedness
digested securities
fixed-income securities
foreign securities
futures contract
gilt-edged securities
government securities
international securities
junior securities
legal securities

liquid yield option notes *or* LYONs
listed securities
margined securities
marketable securities
money-market certificate
mortgage-based securities
municipal securities
negotiable securities *or* negotiables
noncallable securities
note
obsolete securities
outside securities
outstanding securities
over-the-counter securities
pass-throughs *or* participation certificate
program trading
registered securities
senior securities
separate trading of registered interest *and* principal securities *or* STRIPS
short-term note
speculative securities *or* cats and dogs <nf>
stamped securities
treasury bill
treasury bond
treasury certificate
treasury investment growth receipts *or* TIGRs
treasury note
undigested securities
unlisted securities
unregistered securities
warrant

16 kinds of stock

active stock
assessable stock
authorized capital stock
blue chip stock *or* blue chip
borrowed stock
capital stock
common stock *or* ordinary shares <Brit>
convertible preferred stock
cumulative convertible preferred stock
cumulative preferred stock
cyclical stock
debenture stock
defensive stock
deferred stock
eighth stock
floating stock
growth stock
guaranteed stock
high-grade stock
hypothecated stock
inactive stock
income stock
industrials *or* rails *or* utilities, etc
initial public offering
issued capital stock
letter stock
loaned stock
long stock
new issue
no-par stock
nonassessable stock
nonvoting stock
over-the-counter stock
pale blue chip
participating preferred stock
penny stock
preferred stock *or* preference stock <Brit>
protective stock
quality stock
quarter stock
seasoned stock
short stock
small cap stock
special situation stock
specialty stock
speculative stock
standard stock
ten-share unit stock
treasury stock
unissued capital stock
voting stock
voting-right certificate
watered stock

17 kinds of bond

adjustment bond
annuity bond
appreciation bond
assented bond
asset-backed bond
assumed bond
baby bond
bearer bond
bearer certificate
bond anticipation note
callable bond
collateral trust bond
consolidated annuities *or* consols *or* bank annuities <Brit>
consolidated stock
convertible bond
convertible debenture
corporate bond
corporation stock <Brit>
coupon bond
current income bond
deep-discount bond
defense bond
deferred bond
definitive bond
discount bond
equipment bond
equipment note
equipment trust
equipment trust bond
equipment trust certificate
extended bond
Fannie Mae bond
Federal Agency bond
FICO bond
first mortgage bond *or* first
foreign bond
Freddie Mac bond
general mortgage bond
general obligation bond
gilt-edged bond
Ginnie Mae bond
government bond
guaranteed bond
high-grade bond
high-yield bond *or* junk bond <nf>
income bond
indenture
installment bond
interchangeable bond
interim bond
joint bond
junk bond
Liberty bond
long-term bond
mortgage-backed bond
municipal bond
negotiable bond
noncallable bond
nonnegotiable bond
optional bond
par bond
participating bond
perpetual bond
premium bond
purchase money bond
redeemable bond
refunding bond
registered bond
registered certificate
revenue bond
savings bond
second mortgage bond *or* second
secured bond
serial bond
Series EE bond
Series HH bond
short-term bond
sinking-fund bond
small bond
state bond
subordinated bond
tax anticipation note
tax-exempt bond
tax-free bond
treasury bill
treasury bond
treasury note
trust indenture
trustee mortgage bond
turnpike bond
unsecured bond
voting bond
war bond
Z-bond *or* accrual bond *or* accretion bond
zero coupon bond

18 kinds of mutual fund

aggressive growth mutual fund
asset management mutual fund
balanced mutual fund
bond mutual fund
capital appreciation mutual fund
closed-end mutual fund
corporate bond mutual fund
double tax-exempt bond mutual fund
equity mutual fund
equity-income mutual fund
federal municipal bond mutual fund
federal municipal money market mutual fund
fixed-income mutual fund
global bond mutual fund
global mutual fund
government bond mutual fund
growth and income mutual fund
growth mutual fund
index mutual fund
international mutual fund
large-cap mutual fund
load mutual fund

mid-cap mutual fund
money market mutual fund
mutual funds of mutual fund
no-load mutual fund
small-cap mutual fund
speciality or sector mutual fund
state municipal bond mutual fund
state municipal money market mutual fund
state tax-exempt income mutual fund
stock mutual fund
tax-exempt income mutual fund
tax-exempt money market fund
triple tax-exempt bond mutual fund
U.S. Government money market fund

739 WORKPLACE

NOUNS 1 **workplace,** worksite, **workshop, shop;** shop floor, workspace, working space, work area, loft; **bench,** workbench, worktable; counter, worktop; **work station; desk,** desktop; **workroom; studio,** *atelier* <Fr>, library; parlor, beauty parlor, funeral parlor, etc; **establishment, facility,** installation; **company,** institution, house, firm, concern, agency, organization, **corporation; financial institution, stock exchange** 737, **bank** 729; **market, store** 736, mall, shopping mall; **restaurant, eating place** 8.17; hotel, motel; gas station; construction site, building site; dockyard, shipyard; farm, ranch, nursery; power station; government office

2 hive, hive of industry, beehive; factory *or* mill *or* manufacturing town; hub of industry, center of manufacture, industrial town

3 **plant, factory, works,** manufactory <old>, manufacturing plant, installation, shop floor, *usine* <Fr>; main plant, assembly plant, subassembly plant, feeder plant; foreign-owned plant, transplant; push-button plant, automated *or* cybernated *or* automatic *or* robot factory; assembly *or* production line; defense plant, munitions plant, armory, arsenal; **power plant** 1032.19; atomic energy plant; **machine shop; mill,** sawmill, flour mill, etc; **yard,** yards, railroad yard, brickyard, shipyard, dockyard, boatyard; rope-walk; mint; refinery, oil refinery, sugar refinery, etc; distillery, brewery, winery; boilery; bindery, bookbindery; packinghouse; cannery; dairy, creamery; pottery; tannery; sweatshop; **factory district,** industrial zone *or* area, industrial park, industrial estate <Brit>; factory belt, manufacturing quarter; enterprise zone

4 **foundry,** works, metalworks; steelworks, steelyard, steel mill; refinery, forge, furnace, bloomery; smelter; smithy, smithery, stithy, blacksmith shop *or* blacksmith's shop; brickworks; quarry, mine, colliery, coal mine; mint

5 **repair shop,** fix-it shop <nf>; **garage;** roundhouse; hangar

6 **laboratory, lab** <nf>; research laboratory, research installation *or* facility *or* center *or* park

7 **office,** shop <nf>; home *or* head *or* main office, headquarters, executive office, corporate *or* company headquarters; office suite, executive suite; chambers <chiefly Brit>; closet, cabinet <old>, **study,** den, carrell; **embassy,** consulate, legation, chancery, chancellery; box office, booking office, ticket office; branch, branch office, local office, subsidiary office, bureau, business house; office *or* executive park

8 <home workplace> home office, office, den, study; kitchen, laundry room, sewing room, workbench

740 WEAVING

NOUNS 1 **weaving,** weave, warpage, weftage, warp and woof *or* weft, texture, tissue; **fabric, web,** webbing; **interweaving,** interweavement, intertexture; **interlacing,** interlacement, interlacery; crisscross; **intertwining,** intertwinement; intertieing, interknitting, interthreading, intertwisting; **lacing,** enlacement; **twining,** entwining, entwinement; wreathing, knitting, twisting; **braiding,** plaiting, plashing

2 **braid,** plait, pigtail, **wreath,** wreathwork

3 **warp; woof, weft,** filling; shoot, pick

4 **weaver,** interlacer, webster <old>, knitter, spinner; weaverbird, weaver finch, whirligig beetle

5 **loom,** weaver; hand loom; Navajo loom; knitting machine; spinning wheel; shuttle, distaff

VERBS 6 **weave,** loom, tissue; **interweave, interlace, intertwine,** interknit, interthread, intertissue, intertie, intertwist; inweave, intort; web, net; **lace,** enlace; **twine,** entwine; **braid,** plait, pleach, **wreathe,** raddle, **knit,** twist, mat, wattle; crisscross; twill, loop, noose; splice; felt, mat, brush, nap; interconnect

ADJS 7 **woven,** loomed, textile; **interwoven, interlaced,** interthreaded, **intertwined,** interknit, intertissued, intertied, intertwisted; handwoven; **laced,** enlaced; **wreathed,** fretted, raddled, knit, knitted; **twined,** entwined; **braided,** plaited, platted, pleached; hooked; webbed; loomed

8 **weaving, twining,** entwining; **intertwining, interlacing,** interweaving, crosswise, crossways

741 SEWING

NOUNS 1 **sewing, needlework,** stitchery, stitching; mending, basting, darning, hemming, quilting, embroidery, cross-stitching; **fancywork;** tailoring, garment making 5.31; suture

2 **sewer, needleworker, seamstress,** sempstress, needlewoman; seamster, sempster, **tailor,** needleman <old>, needler <Brit>; embroiderer, embroideress; knitter; garmentmaker 5.33

3 **sewing machine,** sewer, embroidery hoop

VERBS 4 **sew, stitch,** needle; mend, baste; stitch up, sew up; **tailor**

742 CERAMICS

NOUNS 1 **ceramics** <see list>, **pottery;** potting

2 ceramic ware, ceramics; pottery, crockery; china, porcelain; enamelware; refractory, cement; bisque, biscuit; pot, crock, vase, urn, jug, bowl; tile, tiling; brick, firebrick, refractory brick, adobe; glass 1029.2; industrial ceramics; ceramist, ceramicist, potter

3 <materials> clay; potter's clay *or* earth, fireclay, refractory clay; argil, adobe, terra cotta; porcelain clay, kaolin, china clay, china stone, marl, feldspar, petuntze *or* petuntse; flux; slip; glaze, overglaze, underglaze; crackle

4 **potter's wheel,** wheel; kick wheel, pedal wheel, hand-turned wheel, power wheel

5 **kiln, oven, stove, furnace;** acid kiln, brick kiln, cement kiln, enamel kiln, muffle kiln, limekiln, bottle kiln, beehive kiln, reverberatory, reverberatory kiln; pyrometer, pyrometric cone, Seger cone

VERBS 6 pot, shape, **throw,** throw *or* turn a pot; cast, mold; **fire,** bake; glaze

ADJS 7 **ceramic,** earthen, clay, enamel, china, porcelain; fired, baked, glazed; refractory; hand-turned, hand-painted, thrown; industrial

8 **ceramics**

agateware
Albion ware
Allervale pottery
Aretine ware
Arita ware
Arretine ware *or* terra sigillata
basalt *or* basaltes *or* basaltware
Belleek ware
Berlin ware
biscuit *or* bisque ware
blackware
blue and white ware
bone china
Castleford ware
Castor ware
champlevé *or* champlevé enamel
Chelsea porcelain
china *or* chinaware
Ch'ing porcelain
clayware
cloisonné *or* cloisonné enamel
Coalport
cottage china
crackle *or* crackleware
creamware
crockery
crouch ware
Crown Derby ware
Dedham pottery
delft *or* delftware
Derby porcelain
Doulton ware
Dresden china
earthenware
eggshell porcelain
enamel *or* enamelware
faience
glassware
glazed ware
gombroon
hard-paste porcelain
Hirado ware
Hizen porcelain
Imari ware
industrial ceramics
ironstone *or* ironstone china
istoriato ware
Jackfield ware
jasper *or* jasperware
Kakiemon ware
Kinkozan ware
lambrequin
Leeds pottery
Limoges *or* Limoges ware
Lowestoft ware
lusterware *or* luster pottery
majolica
Meissen ware
mezza-majolica
Nabeshima ware
Nanking ware
Old Worcester ware
ovenware
Palissy ware
Parian ware
Pennsylvania Dutch *or* German ware
porcelain
porcelain enamel
queensware
redware
refractory ware
Rockingham ware
Royal Copenhagen porcelain
Royal Doulton porcelain
Royal Worcester porcelain
salt-glazed ware
Samian ware
sanda ware
Satsuma ware
semiporcelain
Sèvres *or* Sèvres ware
Seto ware
slipware
soft-paste porcelain
Spode
spongeware
Staffordshire *or* Staffordshire ware
stoneware
Sung ware
T'ang ware
terra cotta
terra sigillata *or* Arretine ware
Tiffany glass
ting ware *or* ting yao
Toft ware
tulip ware
Wedgwood *or* Wedgwood ware
whiteware *or* white pottery
willowware
Worcester ware
yi-hsing ware *or* yi-hsing yao

743 AMUSEMENT

NOUNS 1 **amusement, entertainment, diversion,** solace, divertisement, *divertissement* <Fr>, **recreation, relaxation,** regalement; **pastime,** *passe-temps* <Fr>; **mirth** 109.5; **pleasure, enjoyment** 95

2 fun, action <nf>; funmaking, fun and games, **play, sport,** game; **good time,** lovely time, pleasant time; big time *and* **high time** *and* high old time <nf>, picnic *and* laughs *and* lots of laughs *and* ball <nf>, great fun, time of one's life; a short life and a merry one; wild oats

3 **festivity, merrymaking, merriment, gaiety, jollity,** jollification <nf>, **joviality, conviviality,** whoopee *and* hoopla <nf>; larking <nf>, cavorting, skylarking, racketing, mafficking <Brit nf>, holiday-making; **revelry,** revelment, reveling, revels; nightlife

4 **festival, festivity,** festive occasion, *fiesta* <Sp>, **fete,** gala, **gala affair,** blowout <nf>, **jamboree** <nf>; **high jinks,** do, great doings <nf>; *fête champêtre* <Fr>; **feast, banquet** 8.9; picnic 8.6; party 582.11; waygoose <Brit nf>, wayzgoose; fair, carnival; kermis; *Oktoberfest* <Ger>; Mardi Gras; Saturnalia; harvest festival, harvest home <Brit>; **field day;** gala day, feria

5 frolic, play, romp, rollick, frisk, gambol, caper, dido <nf>

6 revel, lark, escapade, ploy; **celebration** 487; **party** 582.11; **spree, bout, fling,** wingding *and* randan <nf>, randy <Scot>; **carouse, drinking bout** 88.5

7 round of pleasure, mad round, **whirl,** merry-go-round, the rounds, the dizzy rounds

8 sports 744; **athletics,** agonistics; athleticism

9 game; card game; board game; parlor game, role-playing game; children's game; computer game, video game; gambling game; table game; word game; indoor game, outdoor game; **play; contest** 457.3; race 457.12; **event, meet; bout, match,** go <nf>; gambling 759

10 tournament, tourney, gymkhana, **field day;** rally; **regatta**

11 playground; field, athletic field, playing field; football field, gridiron; baseball field, diamond; infield, outfield; soccer field; archery ground, cricket ground, polo ground, croquet ground *or* lawn, bowling green; bowling alley; links, golf links, golf course; fairway, putting green; **gymnasium,** gym <nf>; **court,** badminton court, basketball court, tennis court, racket court, squash court; billiard parlor, poolroom, pool hall; racecourse, track, course turf, oval; stretch; rink, glaciarium, ice rink, skating rink; **playroom** 197.12

12 swimming pool, pool, swimming bath <Brit>, plunge, plunge bath, natatorium; swimming hole; wading pool

13 entertainment; entertainment industry, show business, show biz <nf>; **theater;** dinner theatre; **cabaret, tavern, roadhouse;** café dansant, chantant; nightclub, night spot *or* nitery *and* hot spot <nf>, *boîte* and *boîte de nuit* <Fr>; juke joint <nf>, discothèque *or* disco <nf>; dance hall, dancing pavilion, ballroom, dance floor; casino; **resort** 228.27

14 park, public park, pleasure garden *or* ground, pleasance, paradise, common, commons, playground; **amusement park,** Tivoli, fun fair, carnival; fairground; **theme park,** safari park

15 ride, merry-go-round, carousel, roundabout, ride, whirligig, whip, flying horses; Ferris wheel; seesaw, teeter-totter; slide; swing; roller coaster; chutes, chute-the-chute; funhouse, arcade; -drome

16 toy, plaything, sport; bauble, knickknack, gimcrack, gewgaw, kickshaw, whim-wham, trinket; **doll,** paper doll, golliwog, rag doll, stuffed animal, teddy bear, puppet, glove puppet, marionette, toy soldier, tin soldier; **dollhouse,** doll carriage; **hobbyhorse,** cockhorse, rocking horse; **hoop,** hula hoop; **top,** spinning top, teetotum; pinwheel; **jack-in-the-box;** jacks, jackstones; **jackstraws,** pick-up sticks; **blocks; checkerboard,** chessboard; **marble,** mig, agate, steelie, taw; pop-gun, BB gun, air gun; slingshot, catapult <Brit>; ball; blocks, building blocks

17 chessman, man, piece; **bishop, knight, king, queen, pawn, rook** *or* castle

18 player, frolicker, frisker, **funmaker,** funster, gamboler; **pleasure-seeker,** pleasurer, pleasurist, **playboy** <nf>; **reveler, celebrant, merrymaker,** rollicker, skylarker, **carouser,** cutup <nf>; contestant 452.2

19 athlete, jock <nf>, **player,** sportsman, sportswoman, contender, amateur athlete, professional athlete, competitor, sportsman; letter man

20 master of ceremonies, MC *or* **emcee** <nf>, compère <Brit>, marshal; **toastmaster;** host, master of the revels, revel master; Lord of Misrule, Abbot of Unreason <Scot>; social director

VERBS **21 amuse, entertain, divert,** regale, beguile, solace, recreate, refresh, enliven, exhilarate, put in good humor; **relax,** loosen up; **delight, tickle, titillate,** tickle pink *or* to death <nf>, tickle the fancy; **make one laugh, strike one as funny,** raise a smile *or* laugh, convulse, set the table on a roar, be the death of; wow *and* slay *and* knock dead *and* kill *and* break one up *and* crack one up *and* fracture one <nf>; have them rolling in the aisles; keep them in stitches

22 amuse oneself, pleasure oneself, take one's pleasure, give oneself over to pleasure; get one's kicks *or* jollies <nf>; **relax,** let oneself go, loosen up; **have fun, have a good time,** have a ball *and* have lots of laughs <nf>, live it up *and* laugh it up <nf>; drown care, drive dull care away; beguile the time, kill time, while away the time; get away from it all

23 play, sport, disport; frolic, rollick, gambol, frisk, romp, caper, cut capers <nf>, lark about <Brit nf>, antic, curvet, cavort, caracole, flounce, trip, skip, dance; **cut up** <nf>, cut a dido <nf>, horse around <nf>, fool around, carry on <nf>

24 make merry, revel, roister, jolly, lark <nf>, skylark, **make whoopee** <nf>, let oneself go, **blow** *or* **let off steam;** cut loose, let loose, let go, let one's hair down <nf>, whoop it up, **kick up one's heels;** hell around *and* raise hell *and* blow off the lid <nf>; step out <nf>, go places and do things, go on the town, see life, **paint the town red** <nf>; go the dizzy rounds, go on the merry-go-round <nf>; **celebrate** 487.2; spree, **go on a spree,** go on a bust *or* toot *or* bender *or* binge *or* rip *or* tear <nf>; carouse, jollify <nf>, wanton, debauch, pub-crawl <chiefly Brit>; **sow one's wild oats, have one's fling**

25 "eat, drink, and be merry"—Bible, feast, banquet

ADJS **26 amused,** entertained; diverted, **delighted,** tickled, tickled pink *or* to death <nf>, titillated

27 amusing, entertaining, diverting, beguiling; **fun,** funsome *and* more fun than a barrel of monkeys <nf>; recreative, recreational; **delightful,** titillative, titillating; humorous 488.4

28 festive, festal; merry, gay, jolly, jovial, joyous, joyful, gladsome, convivial, gala, hilarious; merrymaking, on the loose <nf>; on the town, out on the town

29 playful, sportive, sportful; **frolicsome,** gamesome, rompish, larkish, capersome; waggish 322.6

30 sporting, sports; **athletic,** agonistic; **gymnastic,** palaestral; **acrobatic**

ADVS **31 in fun,** for amusement, for fun, for the fun of it; for kicks *and* for laughs <nf>, for the devil *or* heck *or* hell of it <nf>; just to be doing

744 SPORTS

NOUNS **1 sport, sports, athletics,** athletic competition, game, sports activity, play, contest, match; round, set, tournament; aeronautical *or* air sport <see list>; animal sport <see list>; water *or* aquatic sport <see list>; **ball game; track and field** 755; **gymnastics** <see list>; indoor sport; **outdoor sport** <see list>; **winter sport** <see list>; contact sport; **combat sport,** martial art <see list>; **decathlon; triathlon,** biathlon; **bicycling,** bicycle touring, cross-country cycling, cyclo-cross, bicycle moto-cross, road racing, off-road racing, track racing; **motor sport,** automobile racing 756, go-carting, jet-skiing, water skiing, motorcycling, moto-cross, dirt-biking, snowmobiling, soapbox racing; **in-line skating** *or* blading *or* Roller-blading <trademark>, roller skating, roller hockey, skateboarding; **target sport,** archery, field archery, darts, marksmanship, target shooting, skeet shooting, trap shooting; **throwing sport** <see list>; **weightlifting, bodybuilding,** iron-pumping <nf>, Olympic lifting, powerlifting, weight training; blood sport; extreme sport

VERBS **2 play, compete;** practice, train, work out; try out, go out for; follow

3 aeronautical or air sports

aerial skiing
aerobatics
aeromodeling
aerotow
ballooning
bungee jumping
flying
freefalling
gliding
hang gliding
helicopter flying
hydroplane racing
kiting
microlighting
parachuting
paragliding
parasailing
sky-diving
soaring
sports parachuting

4 animal sports

barrel racing
bronc riding *and* bronco busting
bullfighting
bull riding
calf roping
camel racing
carriage driving
cockfighting
cross-country riding
dog racing
dogsled racing
dressage
driving
endurance riding
equestrian sport
falconry
greyhound racing
harness racing 463
horseback riding
horsemanship
horse racing
pack riding
pigeon racing
point-to-point
polo
rodeo
show jumping
steeplechase
steer roping
steer wrestling
team penning
team roping
three-day event
trail riding
trotting
vaulting
Western riding

5 aquatic or water sports

birling
boating
body surfing
canoeing
canoe polo
canoe slalom
distance swimming
diving
dragon boat racing
fin swimming
fishing
inner tube water polo
jet skiing
kayaking
lifesaving
motorboat racing
offshore yacht racing
powerboat racing
rafting
rowing
sailing
sailplaning
scuba diving
sculling
skin diving
snorkeling
surfing *or* surfboarding
swimming
synchronized swimming
underwater diving
underwater hockey
underwaterball
water polo
water skiing
whitewater canoeing
whitewater rafting
windsurfing *or* boardsailing *or* sailboarding
yachting

6 gymnastics

balance beam
floor exercises
horizontal bar
mini-trampolining
parallel bars
pommel horse
rhythmic gymnastics
rings
trampolining
tumbling
uneven parallel bars
vaulting

7 outdoor sports

backpacking
camping
Frisbee <trademark>
hiking
ice climbing
mountaineering *or* alpinism
orienteering
rock climbing
speleology *or* spelunking <nf>
superalpinism *or* Alpine climbing
wilderness survival

8 winter sports

Alpine combined event
Alpine skiing
bandy
biathlon
bobsledding
broomball
cross-country skiing *or* Nordic skiing *or* langlauf
curling
downhill skiing
figure skating
freestyle skiing *or* hotdogging <nf>
giant slalom
heli-skiing
hockey
ice boating *or* sailing
ice dancing
ice sailing
luge
mogul skiing
Nordic combined event
off-piste skiing
short-track speed skating
skating
skibob racing
skiing
skijoring
ski jumping
ski mountaineering
slalom
sledding
snowboarding
snowmobiling
snowshoeing
snow tubing
speed skating
super giant slalom
tobogganing

9 combat sports, martial arts

aikido *or* aiki-jutsu
arm *and* wrist wrestling
arnis
bando
bersilat
bojutsu
boxing
capoeira
Cornish wrestling
dumog
escrima
fencing
freestyle wrestling
glimae
go-ti
Greco-Roman wrestling
Greek boxing
hapkido
hwarang-do
Iaido
Iaijutsu
Icelandic wrestling
jeet kune do
jobajutsu
jojutsu
jousting
judo
jujitsu *or* jujutsu
jukendo
kalari payat
karate
kendo
kenipo
kenjutsu
kiaijutsu
kick boxing
kobu-jutsu
kung-fu
kyujutsu
laido
lua
main tindju
mud wrestling
naginata-jutsu
ninjutsu
pankation
pentjak-silat
pukulan
sambo wrestling
savate
self-defence
stick fighting
sumo wrestling
tae kwon do
t'ai chi
tang soo do
tegumi
Thai kick boxing
wrestling
wu shu *or* wushu

10 throwing sports

boomeranging
discus throw
Frisbee <trademark>
hammer throw
horseshoe pitching
javelin throw
shot put
ultimate Frisbee <trademark> *or* ultimate *or* airborne soccer
ultimate skate Frisbee <trademark>

11 target sports

archery
boccie *or* bocci
bowling
Canadian 5-pin bowling
candlepins
carom billiards
clay pigeon shooting
croquet
curling
darts
duckpins
golf
green bowling
horseshoe pitching
pistol shooting
pool
rifle shooting
skittles <Brit>
sharpshooting
skeet *or* skeet shooting
snooker
tenpins
trapshooting

12 team games

Australian rules football
bandy
baseball
basketball
Canadian football
cricket
curling
field hockey
football
Gaelic football
hurling
ice hockey
lacrosse
netball
roller hockey
rounders <Brit>
rugby
soccer *or* association football <Brit>
softball
speedball
team handball
volleyball

13 court sports

badminton
court tennis
handball
jai alai *or* pelota
racquetball
squash
table tennis *or* Ping-Pong <trademark>
tennis

745 BASEBALL

NOUNS 1 **baseball, ball,** the national pastime, hardball; **organized baseball, league,** loop, circuit, **major league,** big league, the majors *and* the big time *and* the bigs <nf>, professional baseball, the National League *or* Senior Circuit, the American League *or* Junior Circuit; **minor league,** triple-A, the minors *and* bush leagues *and* the bushes <nf>, college baseball; Little League baseball; division championship, playoff, League Championship Series, league championship *or* pennant, World Series, All-Star Game; **farm team,** farm club, farm, farm system; rotisserie league; **ball park, ball field,** field, park; **stands, grandstand,** boxes, lower deck, upper deck, outfield stands, bleachers; **diamond;** dugout; **home plate, the plate,** platter *and* dish <nf>; **base line, line,** base path; **base, bag,** sack, **first,** first base, **second,** second base, keystone *and* keystone sack <nf>, **third,** third base, hot corner

<nf>; **infield,** infield grass *or* turf; **outfield,** warning track, fences; foul line, foul pole; **mound,** pitcher's mound, hill; **equipment** <see list>, gear

2 **baseball team, team, nine,** roster, squad, the boys of summer, **club,** ball club, personnel, crew; **starting lineup, lineup batting order; starter, regular;** substitute, sub, utility player, benchwarmer *and* bench jockey <nf>, the bench; **pitcher,** hurler <nf>, motion, pitching motion, herky-jerky motion <nf>, **right-hander,** right-hand pitcher, righty <nf>, **left-hander, left-hand pitcher, lefty** *and* **southpaw** *and* portsider <nf>; **starting pitcher, starter,** fifth starter, spot starter; starting rotation, rotation, pitching rotation; **relief pitcher, reliever,** fireman *and* closer *and* stopper <nf>, long reliever, middle *or* inner reliever, short reliever, the bull pen; **battery; catcher,** backstop *and* receiver <nf>; **fielder,** glove man, outfielder, infielder, cover man, cut-off man, relay man; **first baseman,** first bagger *and* first sacker <nf>; **second baseman,** second bagger *and* second sacker *and* keystone bagger *and* keystone sacker <nf>; **third baseman,** third bagger *and* third sacker *and* hot-corner man <nf>; shortstop; **outfielder,** left fielder, center fielder, right fielder; pinch hitter; designated hitter *or* DH *or* desi; **batter, hitter,** man at the plate, man in the box *or* batter's box, **stance,** batting stance, pull hitter, power hitter, long-ball hitter, slugger <nf>, spray hitter, contact hitter, banjo hitter <nf>, switch hitter, leadoff hitter, cleanup hitter, closer; base runner, runner, designated runner; **manager, pilot, coach,** batting coach, pitching coach, bench coach, bullpen coach, first-base coach, third-base coach; official scorer; scout, talent scout

3 **game, ball game,** play, strategy; **umpire,** home-plate umpire, plate umpire, umpire in chief, umpire crew, first-base umpire, second-base umpire, third-base umpire; **pitch** <see list>, set, windup, kick, delivery, stuff, offering; **strike zone,** wheelhouse *and* kitchen <nf>; **throwing arm,** arm, cannon *and* soupbone <nf>; **balk; count,** balls and strikes, full count; **hit, base hit,** tater *and* bingle *and* dinger <nf>, opposite-field hit; hard-hit ball, shot *and* bullet *and* scorcher <nf>; **single,** seeing-eye hit *and* excuse-me hit *and* banjo hit <nf>; **double,** two-base hit, two-base shot, two-bagger; **triple,** three-base hit *or* three-base shot, three-bagger; **home run, homer,** four-bagger, tater *and* round trip *and* round tripper *and* circuit clout *and* big salami *and* dinger <nf>, one you can hang the wash on <nf>, grand-slam home run, grand-slammer, cheap homer *and* Chinese homer <nf>; **fly,** pop fly, pop-up, can of corn *and* looper *and* blooper *and* bloop *and* Texas Leaguer <nf>, sacrifice fly *or* sac fly <nf>; **line drive, liner,** line shot, rope *and* clothesline <nf>; **ground ball,** grounder, wormburner <nf>, slow roller, roller, bunt, drag bunt, bleeder *and* squibbler *and* nubber *and* dying quail <nf>, come-backer, chopper; **foul ball, foul; base on balls, walk,** intentional pass, free ticket *and* free ride <nf>; error, passed ball, unearned run, earned run; **out,** strikeout *or* K *or* punchout, put-out, foul-out, force-out, double play, DP, double killing *and* twin killing <nf>, triple play, triple killing <nf>, assist; **catch,** shoestring catch, basket catch, circus catch; squeeze play, hit-and-run play, pickoff play, pickoff, pitch-out; **base runner,** baseburner <nf>, pinch-runner; **run; inning,** frame, top of the inning, bottom of the inning, extra innings

4 **statistics,** averages, stats and numbers <nf>, percentages; batting average, earned-run average *or* ERA, slugging average *or* slugging percentage, fielding average, run batted in *or* RBI, ribby <nf>; **the record book,** the book

VERBS 5 **play,** play ball, take the field; **umpire,** call balls and strikes, officiate; **pitch, throw,** deliver, fire, offer, offer up, bring it *and* burn it *and* throw smoke *and* blow it by *and* throw seeds <nf>; throw a bean ball, dust the batter off, back the batter off; **relieve,** put out the fire <nf>; **bat, be up,** step up to the plate, be in the batter's box; **hit,** belt *and* clout *and* connect <nf>, golf, chop, tomahawk; **fly,** hit a fly, sky it *and* pop *and* pop up <nf>; **ground,** bounce, lay it down, lay down a bunt; sacrifice, hit a sacrifice fly; **hit,** get a base hit, put on one's hitting shoes <nf>; **connect,** blast it *and* cream it *and* tear the cover off *and* hit it right on the screws *and* hit it right on the button *and* hit with the good wood *and* get good wood on it <nf>; **hit a home run, homer,** hit it out; **single, double, triple;** get aboard, be a base runner; **walk, get a free ride** *or* free pass <nf>; **strike out,** go down *or* out on strikes, go down swinging, fan *and* whiff <nf>, be called out on strikes, be caught looking <nf>; ground out, fly out, pop out; catch, haul in, grab *and* glove *and* flag down <nf>; misplay, make an error, bobble *and* boot <nf>; take a trip to the showers <nf>

6 **baseball equipment**

bar mask
base
baseball *or* ball; pill *or* apple <nf>
bat; lumber *or* Louisville slugger <nf>
batting cage
batting glove
batting helmet
birdcage mask
catcher's mask
chest protector
cleats
glove
pine-tar rag
rosin bag
shin pads *or* shin guards

7 baseball pitches

back door
beanball *or* beaner
bender
breaking ball *or* breaker
brush-off *or* brushing *or* dust-off
Captain Hook
change-up *or* change-of-pace ball
curve ball *or* curve *or* breaking ball *or* bender *or* Captain Hook *or* slurve
cut fastball
dime
duster
eefus ball
fadeaway
fast ball *or* smoke *or* bullet *or* heater *or* hummer
floater
forkball
gopher ball
intentional walk *or* pass
knuckleball *or* knuckler
knucklecurve
off-speed pitch
palmball
reverse curve
roundhouse curve
sailing fastball
screwball
screwgy <nf>
sinker
slider
slow ball
spitball *or* spitter
split-finger fastball
splitter
Uncle Charlie
wild pitch

746 FOOTBALL

NOUNS **1 football, ball,** American football; **organized football, college football,** NCAA football, conference, league; conference championship, post-season game, bowl invitation, Cotton Bowl, Gator Bowl, Orange Bowl, Rose Bowl, Sugar Bowl, Fiesta Bowl, national championship *or* mythical national championship; **professional football,** pro football <nf>, National Football League *or* NFL; division championship, playoff, Super Bowl, Super Bowl championship, Pro Bowl; high school football; Pop Warner football, Pee Wee football; **stadium,** bowl, domed stadium, dome; **field, gridiron; line,** sideline, end line, end zone, goal line, goalpost, crossbar, yard line, midfield stripe, inbounds marker *or* hash mark; **equipment** <see list>, gear, armament; official, sideline crew, chain gang <nf>, zebra <nf>; fantasy football

2 football team, eleven, team, squad, roster, personnel; first team, regulars, starting lineup, offensive team *or* platoon, defensive team *or* platoon, special team, kicking team; substitute *or* sub, benchwarmer; **ball,** football, pigskin *and* oblate spheroid <nf>; **line, linemen, forward wall,** offensive linemen, front four, **end, tackle, nose tackle, guard, noseguard, center,** flanker, **tight end; backfield,** back, **quarterback,** signal-caller *or* field general <nf>, passer; **halfback, fullback,** kicker, punter, tailback, plunging back, slotback, flanker back, running back, wingback, blocking back, linebacker, defensive back, cornerback, safety, free safety, strong safety, weak safety; **pass receiver, receiver,** wide receiver *or* wide out, primary receiver

3 game, strategy, game plan, ball control; **official** <see list>, zebra <nf>; **kickoff,** kick, coin-toss *or* -flip, place kick, squib kick, free kick, onside kick, runback, kickoff return; **play** <see list>, down, first down, second down, third down, fourth down; **line,** line of scrimmage *or* scrimmage line, flat; **lineup, formation** <see list>; **pass from center, snap,** hand-to-hand snap; live ball, ball in play, ball out of play, dead ball, play stopped, ball whistled dead; **running play, passing play, kick; ball-carrier,** ball-handling, tuck, feint, hand-off, pocket, straightarm; **block,** blocking, body block, brush block, chop block, cross block, lead block, screen block, shoulder block; **tackle,** neck tackle, shirt tackle, face-mask tackle, sack; **yardage,** gain, loss, long yardage, short yardage; **forward pass, pass,** pass pattern <see list>, pitchout, screen pass, quick release, bomb <nf>, incomplete pass, completed pass, pass completion; **pass rush,** blitz; **possession,** loss of possession, turnover, fumble, pass interception, interception, turnover; in bounds, out of bounds; **penalty** <see list>, infraction, foul, flag on the play; **punt, kick,** quick kick, squib kick *or* knuckler; punt return, fair catch; **touchdown,** conversion, field goal, safety; **period, quarter, half,** halftime, intermission, two-minute warning, thirty-second clock, sudden-death overtime; **gun,** final gun

4 statistics, averages, stats *and* numbers <nf>, average running yardage, average passing yardage, average punting yardage, average punt-return yardage

VERBS **5 play,** kick, kick off, run, scramble, pass, punt; complete a pass, catch a pass; **block, tackle,** double-team, blindside, sack, blitz, red-dog; **lose possession,** fumble, bobble <nf>, give up the ball; **score,** get on the scoreboard; **officiate,** blow the whistle, whistle the ball dead, drop a flag, call a penalty

6 football equipment

cleats
face mask
football
helmet
hip pads
jersey
kicking tee
kneepads
mouth guard
numbers
pads
pants
shirt *or* jersey
shoes
shoulder pads
thigh pads

7 football officials

back judge
chain gang <nf>
field judge
head linesman
line judge
referee
side judge
umpire
zebra <nf>

8 football plays and calls

automatic *or* audible
blitz *or* red dog
bomb
bootleg
buck lateral
conversion
counter
cutback
draw
end around
end run
fair catch
flare pass
flea-flicker
hail-Mary
hand-off
inside run
keeper
lateral pass *or* lateral
man in motion
mousetrap
naked bootleg
naked reverse
off-tackle slant
option
pass
pitchout
play-action pass
plunge
power sweep
quarterback sneak
quick kick
reverse
rollout
scramble
screen pass
slant
Statue of Liberty
sweep
trap
two-point conversion

9 football formations

3-4 defense
4 3 2 2
4-3 defense
6 2 2 1
7 diamond
dime defense
double coverage
double wing *or* wingback
flexbone *or* flex defense
huddle
I
man-to-man defense
nickel defense
Notre Dame box
option
overshift
power I
prevent defense
pro set
run-and-shoot offense
shotgun offense
short punt formation
single coverage
single wing *or* wingback
slot
split end
split T
straight T
strong side
T formation
tight end
undershift
veer
weak side
wedge *or* flying wedge
wing T
wishbone T
zone blocking
zone defense

10 football pass patterns

buttonhook
circle
crossing pattern
curl
down and out
flag pattern
flare *or* swing pass
flood
fly
hook pattern
look-in pass
option pass
post pattern
screen pass
sideline pass
slant-in pattern
spot pass
square-in
square-out
streak pattern
up the middle *or* the gut
zig in
zig out
Z pattern

11 football penalties

5-yard penalty
10-yard penalty
15-yard penalty
clipping
crackback block
dead-ball foul
delay of game
encroachment
excessive timeouts
false start
grabbing the face mask *or* facemask
holding
illegal blocking below the waist
illegal formation
illegal motion
illegal position
illegal procedure
illegal shift
illegal use of hands
ineligible receiver
intentional grounding
kick-catching interference
late hit <nf>
more than 11 players on the field
offside
out-of-bounds kickoff
pass interference
personal foul
piling on
roughing the kicker
roughing the passer
running into the kicker
tackling by the facemask
tripping
unnecessary roughness
unsportsmanlike conduct

747 BASKETBALL

NOUNS 1 **basketball,** hoop, hoop sport, ball; **organized basketball, college basketball,** NCAA *or* National Collegiate Athletic Association; **professional basketball,** pro basketball <nf>, National Basketball Association *or* NBA; **tournament,** competition, championship, Olympic Games, NCAA *or* National Collegiate Athletic Association Tournament, March Madness, NIT *or* National Invitational Tournament, Sweet 16, Final Four, NAIA *or* National Association of Intercollegiate Athletics Tournament; **basketball court, court,** hardwood *and* pine <nf>, forecourt, midcourt, backcourt, end line *or* base line, sideline, basket *or* hoop, iron <nf>, backboard, glass <nf>, defensive board, offensive board, free throw line, charity line <nf>, free throw lane *or* foul lane, key *and* keyhole <nf>, foul line *or* the line

2 **basketball team, five,** team, roster, squad, personnel; **basketball player,** hoopster, cager, center, right forward, left forward, corner man, right guard, left guard, point guard, shooting guard, point player *or* playmaker, swingman, trailer, backcourt man, disher-upper, gunner, sixth man

3 **basketball game,** game, play, strategy, defense <see list>, offense <see list>; **official, referee,** umpire, official scorekeeper, timer; **foul,** violation <see list>, infraction; **play, strategy,** running game, fast break, passing game, draw and kick game; **jump,** center jump, jump ball, live ball; **pass,** passing, pass ball, assist, bounce pass, dish *and* feed <nf>; rebound; **tactics, action,** dribble, fake, hand-off, ball control, ball-handling, boxing out, sky shot *or*

air ball, clear-out *or* outlet pass, basket hanging, freelancing, pivot *or* post, high post, low post, one-on-one, screening, pick, pick and roll, trap, turnover, steal *or* burn, out-of-bounds, dead ball, throw-in, corner throw, buzzer play; **restrictions,** three-second rule, five-second rule, ten-second rule, twenty-four-second rule, thirty-second rule; **shot** <see list>, **score, basket** *or* **field goal,** bucket <nf>, three-point play *or* three-pointer, free throw *or* foul shot; **quarter,** half, overtime period *or* overtime

VERBS 4 **play,** play basketball, play ball, ride the pine <nf>, **dribble,** fake, pass, dish <nf>, work the ball around, take it coast to coast, give and go, sky it, clear the ball, hand off, **guard,** play tight, play loose, double-team, hand-check, block, screen, pick, press, set a pick, steal, burn, freelance, shoot, score, sink one *and* can *and* swish <nf>, finger-roll, tip it in, use the backboard, dunk, slam dunk, make a free throw, shoot a brick <nf>, rebound, clear the board, freeze the ball, kill the clock; **foul,** commit a foul *or* violation, foul out

5 basketball defensive strategies

box-and-one defense
combination defense
man-to-man defense
matchup defense
multiple defense
pressure *or* pressing defense
sagging *or* collapsing defense
set pattern
slough
stack defense
zone defense *or* zone

6 basketball offensive strategies

ball-control offense
clear out one side
delay offense
fast-break offense
flip-flop offense
full-court press
full-court zone press
gap offense
give and go offense
half-court press
high post
low post
motion offense
press
pressure offense
rotation offense
run and gun offense
running offense
shuffle offense
stack offense
stall offense

7 basketball fouls

blocking
charging
disqualifying foul
double dribble
double foul
force-out
goaltending
hacking
held ball
intentional foul
kicking the ball
multiple foul
offensive foul
palming
personal foul *or* personal
pushing off
stepping over the line <free throw, throw-in>
technical foul *or* technical
ten-second backcourt violation
three-second lane violation
traveling *or* walking *or* running with the ball
tripping

8 basketball shots

bank shot
brick <nf>
bunny <nf>
charity toss *and* charity throw *and* charity shot <nf>
cripple <nf>
dunk <nf>
finger-roll
free throw *or* foul shot *or* penalty shot
hook shot *or* hook
jump shot *or* jumper
lay-up
one-and-one
one-hand shot
pivot shot
penalty free throw
scoop shot
set shot
slam dunk <nf>
swish <nf>
tip-in
two-hand shot

748 TENNIS

NOUNS 1 **tennis,** lawn tennis, indoor tennis, outdoor tennis, singles, doubles, mixed doubles, Canadian doubles, team tennis; court *or* real *or* royal tennis; table tennis, Ping-Pong <trademark>; **organized tennis,** International Tennis Federation *or* ITF, United States Tennis Association *or* USTA; **tournament,** tennis competition, championship, crown, match, trophy; **tennis ball, ball, tennis racket, racket,** aluminum racket, Fiberglas racket, graphite racket, wooden racket, bat <nf>, sweet spot; **tennis court, court,** sideline, alley, doubles sideline, baseline, center mark, service line, half court line, backcourt, forecourt, midcourt, net, band; **surface,** slow surface, fast surface, grass surface *or* grass *or* grass court, hard court, clay court, competition court, all-weather court; squash, squash racquets, squash tennis, badminton

2 **game,** strategy, serve-and-volley, power game; **official, umpire,** baseline umpires *or* linesmen, line umpires *or* linesmen, service-line umpire *or* linesman, net-court judge; **play,** coin-toss, racket-flip, grip, Eastern grip, Continental grip, Western grip, two-handed grip, **stroke** <see list>, **shot,** service *or* serve, return, spin, top-spin, let ball *or* let, net-cord ball, rally, fault, double fault, foot fault; error, unforced error; **score, point,** service ace *or* ace, love, deuce, advantage *or* ad, game point, service break, break point, set point, match point, tiebreaker, lingering death <nf>, game, set, match; Van Alen Streamlined Scoring System *or* VASSS

VERBS 3 **play tennis, play,** serve, return, drive, volley, smash, lob, place the ball, serve and volley, play serve-and-volley tennis, fault, foot-fault, double-fault, make an unforced error; **score** *or* **make a point,** score, ace one's opponent, break service, break back

4 tennis strokes

approach shot
backhand
backhand drive
chop

drive
drop shot
forehand
forehand drive
ground drive
ground stroke
half-volley
lob
lob volley
overhead
passing shot
reverse twist service
service *or* serve
slice
smash *or* overhead smash
topspin
twist service
two-handed backhand
volley

749 HOCKEY

NOUNS **1** **hockey,** ice hockey, Canadian national sport; **professional hockey,** National Hockey League *or* NHL, Clarence Campbell Conference, Smythe Division, Norris Division, Prince of Wales Conference, Patrick Division, Adams Division; **amateur hockey,** bantam hockey, midget hockey, pee-wee hockey, junior hockey, Canadian Amateur Hockey Association, Amateur Hockey Association of the United States, International Ice Hockey Federation; **competition,** series, championship, cup, Olympic Games, Stanley Cup, All-Star Game; **rink,** ice rink, hockey rink, boards, end zone, defending *or* defensive zone, attacking *or* offensive zone, neutral zone *or* center ice, blue line, red line, goal line, crease, goal *and* net *and* cage, face-off spot, face-off circle, penalty box, penalty bench, players' bench; **equipment,** gear <see list>

2 **hockey team, team, skaters, squad, bench; line,** forward line, center, forward, winger, right wingman, left wingman, linesman; **defense,** defender, right defenseman, left defenseman, goaltender *or* goalie, goalkeeper, goalminder; specialized player, playmaker, penalty killer, point *or* point man, enforcer <nf>

3 game, match; **referee,** linesman, goal judge, timekeepers, scorer; **foul,** penalty <see list>, infraction, offside, icing *or* icing the puck; **play,** skating, stick *or* puck handling, ragging, deking, checking, backchecking, forechecking, passing, shooting; **pass,** blind pass, drop pass, through-pass; **check; offense,** breakout, Montreal offense, headmanning, Toronto offense, play-off hockey, give-and-go, breakaway, peel-off, screening; **shot,** slap shot, wrist shot, backhand shot, flip, sweep shot; power play; **score,** point, finish off a play, feed, assist, hat trick; **period,** overtime *or* overtime period, sudden death overtime, shoot-out

4 **field hockey,** banty *or* bandy, hurley *or* hurling, shinty *or* shinny; International Hockey Board, *Fédération Internationale de Hockey* <Can Fr>, International Federation of Women's Hockey Associations, United States Field Hockey Association, Field Hockey Association of America; **hockey field,** field, pitch, goal line, center line, center mark, bully circle, sideline, 7-yard line, alley, 25-yard line, striking *or* shooting circle, goalpost, goal, goal mouth; **equipment,** gear, stick, ball, shin pads

5 **team,** attack, outside left, inside left, center forward, inside right, outside right, defense, left halfback, center halfback, right halfback, left fullback, wing half, right fullback, goalkeeper

6 **game,** match; **umpire,** timekeeper; **foul,** infraction, advancing, obstructing, sticks, undercutting, **penalty,** free hit, corner hit, defense hit, penalty bully, penalty shot; **play, bully, bully-off,** pass-back, stroke, marking, pass, tackle, circular tackle, out-of-bounds, roll-in *or* push-in, hit-in; **goal,** point, score; **period,** half

VERBS **7** **play, skate,** pass, check, block, stick-handle *or* puck-handle, face off, rag, deke, give-and-go, headman, break out, shoot, score, clear, dig, freeze the puck, center, ice *or* ice the puck; tackle, mark; make a hat trick

8 **hockey equipment**

abdominal protector
catching glove
chest protector
elbow pads
face mask
gloves
goaltender's stick
helmet
hip pads
knee pads
left-handed stick
leg pads
neutral stick
puck
right-handed stick
shin guards
shoulder pads
skates
stick
stick glove

9 **hockey fouls and penalties**

bench minor penalty
board-checking *or* boarding
body-checking
butt-ending
charging
clipping
crosschecking
ejection
elbowing
falling on the puck
fighting
handling the puck
high-sticking
holding
hooking
icing
interference
kneeing
match penalty
major *or* five-minute penalty
minor *or* two-minute penalty
misconduct penalty
offsides
penalty shot
poke checking
roughing
slashing
spearing
tripping

750 BOWLING

NOUNS **1** **bowling,** kegling *or* kegeling <nf>, tenpin bowling *or* tenpins, candlepin bowling *or* candlepins, duckpin bowling *or* duckpins, fivepin bowling, rubberband duckpin bowling, ninepins, skittles <Brit>; **bowling organization,** league, American Bowling Congress *or* ABC, Women's International Bowling Congress *or* WIBC, American Junior Bowling Congress; amateur bowling, league bowling; **professional bowling,** pro bowling <nf>, tour, Professional Bowlers Association *or* PBA, Professional Women's Bowling Association; **tournament,** competition, match-play tournament, round-robin tournament; **alley, lane,** gutter, foul line, rear cushion, bed, spot, pin spot, 1-3-strike pocket; **equipment, pin,** candlepin, duckpin, fivepin, rubberband duckpin, tenpin; automatic pinsetter; **ball,** two-hole ball, three-hole ball, bowling shoes; bowling bag

2 **game** *or* string, frame; **delivery,** grip, two-finger grip, three-finger grip, conventional grip, semi-fingertip grip, full-fingertip grip, **approach,** three-step approach *or* delivery, four-step approach, five-step approach, push-away, downswing, backswing, timing step, release, follow-through, straight ball, curve ball, backup, hook ball, gutter ball; **pocket,** Brooklyn side, Brooklyn hit *or* Jersey hit *or* crossover, **strike** *or* ten-strike, mark, double, turkey, foundation; **spare,** mark, leave, spare leave, split <see list>, railroad, open frame; **score,** pinfall, miss, perfect game *or* 300 game, Dutch

3 **lawn bowling,** green bowling, lawn bowls, bowling on the green, bowls; American Lawn Bowling Association; **bowling green,** green, crown green, level green, rink, ditch; **ball,** bowl, jack *or* kitty, mat *or* footer; **team,** side, rink, lead *or* leader, second player, third player, skip

4 **spare leaves and splits**

baby split
bed posts *or* fenceposts *or* goal posts
bucket
Christmas tree
Cincinnati
converted split
double pinochle
double wood *or* tandem
fence
fit-in split
Golden Gate
left fence
mother-in-law
right fence
washout
Woolworth

751 GOLF

NOUNS **1** **golf,** the royal and ancient; **professional golf,** pro golf <nf>, tour, Professional Golfers Association of America *or* PGA, Ladies' Professional Golfers' Association *or* LPGA; **amateur golf,** club, United States Golf Association *or* USGA; **tournament,** championship, title, cup; **golf course,** course, links, 9-hole course, 18-hole course, penal course, strategic course, green, tee, teeing ground, back *or* championship marker, middle *or* men's marker, front *or* womens' marker, hole, par-3 hole, par-4 hole, par-5 hole, front nine *or* side, back nine *or* side, water hole, fairway, dogleg, obstruction, rub of the green, casual water, rough, hazard, water hazard, bunker, sand hazard, sand trap, beach <nf>, collar, apron, fringe, putting green, grass green, sand green, out of bounds, pin, flagstick, flag, lip, cup; **equipment** <see list>

2 **golfer,** player, scratch golfer *or* player, handicapped golfer, dub *and* duffer *and* hacker <nf>, linksman, putter; **team,** twosome, threesome, foursome; caddie

3 **round,** 9 holes, 18 holes, 72 holes, match, stroke play, match play, medal play, four-ball match, three-ball match, best ball, mixed foursome, Scotch foursome; **official,** referee, official observer, marker; **play,** golfing grip, overlapping *or* Vardon grip, reverse overlap, interlocking grip, full-finger grip, address, stance, closed stance, square stance, open stance, waggle, swing, backswing, downswing, follow-through, pivot, body pivot, tee-off; **stroke, shot** <see list>, backspin, bite, distance, carry, run, lie, plugged lie, blind, stymie; **score,** scoring, strokes, eagle, double eagle, birdie, par, bogey, double bogey, penalty, hole-in-one *and* ace, halved hole, gross, handicap, net

VERBS **4** **play, shoot,** tee up, tee off, drive, hit, sclaff, draw, fade, pull, push, hook, slice, top, sky, loft, dunk, putt, can <nf>, borrow, hole out, sink, shoot par, eagle, double eagle, birdie, par, bogey, double bogey, make a hole in one, ace; play through; concede, default

INTERJ **5** **fore!**

6 **golf equipment**

1 iron *or* driving iron
2 iron *or* midiron
3 iron *or* mid mashie
4 iron *or* mashie iron
5 iron *or* mashie
6 iron *or* spade mashie
7 iron *or* mashie niblick
8 iron or pitching niblick
9 iron or niblick
ball *or* pill <nf>
chipping iron club
club cover
driver
golf bag
golf cart
golf glove
iron
lofter *or* lofting iron
long iron
middle iron
number 1 wood *or* driver
number 2 wood *or* brassie
number 3 wood *or* spoon
number 4 wood *or* cleek *or* short spoon
number 5 wood *or* baffy
pitching wedge
putter
sand iron
sand wedge
short iron
tee
Texas wedge
track iron
utility iron
wedge
wood

7 **golf shots**

approach shot *or* approach
blast
bunker shot
chip shot *or* chip
chip-and-run
cut shot

draw
drive
dubbed shot
duck hook
fade
fairway wood shot
full shot
gimme <nf>
hole in one
hole out
hook
lag
lob
lofted shot
long iron shot
Mulligan *or* Shapiro
pitch
pitch-and-run
pull
punch
putt
recovery shot
run-up
sand shot
sclaff
slice
snake
tee shot
water shot

752 SOCCER

NOUNS 1 **soccer,** football, association football <Brit>, soccer football; **league,** college soccer, Intercollegiate Soccer Football Association of America, National Collegiate Athletic Association *or* NCAA, Federation of International Football Associations *or* FIFA; **tournament,** competition, championship, cup; **professional soccer,** pro soccer, North American Soccer League *or* NASL; **soccer field,** field, soccer pitch, pitch, goal line, touch line, halfway line, penalty area, penalty spot *or* penalty-kick mark, goal area, goal, goalpost, crossbar, 6-yard box, 18-yard box, corner area, corner flag, center mark, center circle; **equipment,** gear, ball, suit, uniform, shirt, shorts, knee socks, shin guards, soccer shoes

2 **team,** squad, side, footballer <Brit>, forward, striker, outside right, inside right, center forward, lineman, midfielder, inside left, outside left, right half, center half, left half, defender, back, center back, right back, left back, winger, back four, sweeper, stopper, goalkeeper *or* goaltender *or* goalie

3 **game, match; official,** referee, linesman; **play,** coin-toss *or* -flip, 3-3-4 offense, 5-2 offense, man-to-man offense, kickoff, kick <see list>, throw-in, goal kick, corner kick *or* corner, offside, ball-control, pass, back-heel pass, outside-of-the-foot pass, push pass, back pass, tackle, sliding tackle, sliding block tackle, trap, chest trap, thigh trap, breakaway, header *or* head, shot, save; **rule,** law; **foul** <see list>; **penalty,** caution, red card, free kick, direct free kick, indirect free kick, caution, penalty kick, yellow card; **goal,** score, point, tie-breaker, series of penalty kicks, shootout, bonus point; **period,** quarter, overtime period

VERBS 4 **play,** kick, kick off, trap, pass, dribble, screen, head, center, clear, mark, tackle, save

5 **soccer kicks**

bicycle kick
chip
corner kick
direct free kick
flick kick
free kick
goal kick
half-volley
instep *or* inside-of-the-foot kick
lofted kick
long pass
low drive
overhead volley
penalty kick
punt
scissors kick
volley *or* volley kick

6 **soccer fouls**

charging dangerously
charging from behind
charging the goalkeeper
continual breaking of rules
dangerous play
dissenting from referee's decision
foul *or* abusive language
handling the ball
holding an opponent
jumping at an opponent
kicking an opponent
obstruction
offside
onside
pushing an opponent
spitting at an opponent
striking an opponent
tripping an opponent
ungentlemanly conduct

753 SKIING

NOUNS 1 **skiing,** snow-skiing, Alpine skiing, downhill skiing, **Nordic skiing,** cross-country skiing *or* langlauf, snowboarding, ski-jumping, jumping, freestyle skiing *or* hotdog skiing *or* hotdogging, ballet skiing, mogul skiing, skijoring, helicopter skiing *or* heli-skiing, off-trail skiing, mountain skiing, grass-skiing, ski mountaineering; **organized skiing,** competitive skiing, *Fédération Internationale de Ski* <Fr> *or* FIS, International Freestyle Skiers Association, World Hot Dog Ski Association; **competition, championship,** cup, race; **slope,** ski slope, ski run, nursery *or* beginner's slope, expert's slope, intermediate slope, expert's trail, marked trail, moguled trail, course, trail, mogul; **ski lift, lift,** ski tow, rope tow, J-bar, chairlift, T-bar, poma; **race course,** downhill course, slalom course, giant slalom course, super giant slalom course, parallel *or* dual slalom course; starting gate, fall line, drop *or* vertical drop, control gate, obligatory gate, flagstick, open gate, closed *or* blind gate, hairpin, flush, H, men's course, women's course, **ski-jump,** ramp, inrun, outrun, hill rating, 60-point hill, normal hill, big hill, cross-country course; equipment, gear <see list>

2 **skier,** snow-skier, cross-country skier, ski-jumper, racer, downhill racer, slalom racer, giant slalom racer, mogul racer, snowboarder, freestyle skier, touring skier, forerunner, forejumper, skimeister

3 **race,** downhill race, slalom, giant slalom, super giant slalom *or* super G, slalom pole, rapid slalom pole, parallel *or* dual slalom, Alpine race, cross-

country race, biathlon; **technique,** style, Arlberg technique, Lilienfeld technique, wedeln, **position,** tuck *and* egg, Vorlage, sitting position, inrun position, fish position, flight position; **maneuver, turn** <see list>

VERBS **4 ski,** run, schuss, traverse, turn, check; hot dog, ski freestyle; snowboard

5 skiing equipment

- aluminum alloy pole
- Alpine boots
- Arlberg *or* safety strap
- basket *or* snow basket
- bent pole
- cross-country binding
- cross-country pole
- cross-country ski
- double boot
- downhill pole
- downhill ski
- fiberglass pole
- giant slalom ski
- jumping ski
- laminated wood ski
- metal ski
- molded boot
- plastic ski
- pole *or* stick
- racing ski
- release binding
- short ski
- ski boots
- ski wax
- slalom ski
- snowboard
- step-in binding
- toe clamp

6 skiing maneuvers and turns

- carved turn
- check
- Christiania *or* christie
- climb
- diagonal stride
- double-pole stride
- double-poling
- edging
- Gelondesprung
- herringbone
- hockey stop
- jet turn
- jump turn
- kick turn
- parallel christie
- parallel swing
- parallel turn
- pole plant
- rotation turn
- schuss
- short swing
- sideslip
- sidestep
- snap
- snowplow *or* double stem *or* wedge
- snowplow turn
- stem turn
- stem christie
- step acceleration
- step turn
- Telemark
- tempo
- traverse
- tuck
- unweighting
- uphill christie
- wedeln

754 BOXING

NOUNS **1 boxing, prizefighting,** fighting, pugilism, noble *or* manly art of self-defense, the noble *or* sweet science, fisticuffs, the fistic sport, the fights *and* the fight game <nf>, the ring; **amateur boxing,** Olympic Games, International Amateur Boxing Association *or* IABA, Amateur Athletic Union *or* AAU, Gold *or* Golden Gloves; **professional boxing,** International Boxing Federation, World Boxing Council *or* WBC, World Boxing Association *or* WBA, European Boxing Union, club boxing *or* fighting; Queensbury rules, Marquess of Queensbury rules; shadowboxing; **boxing ring, ring,** prize ring, square circle *or* ring, canvas, corner, ropes, bell; **equipment, gloves,** mitts *and* mittens <nf>, boxing shorts, tape, bandages, sparring helmet, mouthpiece; boxing purse

2 boxer, fighter, pugilist, prizefighter, pug *and* palooka <nf>, slugger, mauler; **weight** <see list>; division; **manager; trainer; handler,** second, sparring partner

3 fight, match, bout, prizefight, battle, duel, slugfest *or* haymaker <nf>; **official, referee,** ref <nf>, judge, timekeeper; **strategy, fight-plan, style,** stance, footwork, **offense, punch** <see list>, blow, belt *and* biff *and* sock <nf>, sparring, jabbing, socking, pummeling; **defense,** blocking, ducking, parrying, slipping, feint, clinching; **foul; win, knockout** *or* **KO**, technical knockout *or* TKO, decision, unanimous decision, split decision, win on points; **round,** canto *and* stanza <nf>

VERBS **4 fight, box,** punch, spar, mix it up <nf>, prizefight, jab, sock, clinch, break, block, catch, slip a punch, duck, feint, parry, heel, thumb, knock down, knock out, slug, maul, land a rabbit punch, hit below the belt; go down, go down for the count, hit the canvas <nf>, shadow-box

5 boxing weight divisions

- light flyweight
- flyweight
- bantamweight
- super bantamweight
- featherweight
- junior lightweight
- lightweight
- light welterweight
- welterweight
- light middleweight
- middleweight
- light heavyweight
- cruiserweight
- heavyweight
- super-heavyweight

6 boxing punches

- backhand *or* backhander
- backstroke
- body blow *or* body slam
- bolo punch
- chop
- combination
- corkscrew punch
- counter-punch
- cross
- flanker
- follow-up
- haymaker
- hook
- jab
- knockdown punch
- knockout punch
- left *or* left-hander *or* portsider
- Long Melford
- mishit *or* mislick
- rabbit punch
- right *or* right-hander
- round-arm blow
- roundhouse
- short-arm blow
- sideswipe
- sidewinder
- sneak punch *or* sucker punch
- solar-plexus punch
- straight punch
- swing
- swipe
- the one-two *or* the old one-two
- uppercut

755 TRACK AND FIELD

NOUNS **1 track, track and field,** athletics <Brit>, light athletics <Ger>; governing organization, International Amateur Athletic Federation *or* IAAF, Amateur Athletic Union of the US *or* AAU, Amateur Athletic Federation of Canada, Amateur Athletic Union of Canada, National Federation of State High School Athletic Associations; **games,** competition, cup; **stadium, arena,** oval, armory, field house; **track,** oval, lane, start line, starting block, finish line, **infield**; lap, lap of honor, victory lap

2 **track meet, meet,** games, program; **running event**, race, run *or* running, heat, sprint racing, middle-distance running, long-distance running, relay racing, hurdles, cross-country racing; **field event** <see list>; **all-around event,** decathlon <see list>, heptathlon <see list>, pentathlon <see list>; triathlon <see list>, biathlon <see list>; **walking, race walking,** the walk, heel-and-toe racing

3 **field events**

discus throw
hammer throw
high jump
javelin throw
long jump *or* broad jump
multi-event contest
pole vault
shot put
triple jump

4 **heptathlon**

100-meter hurdles
200-meter run
800-meter run
high jump
javelin
long jump
shot put

5 **decathlon**

100-meter run
110-meter hurdles
400-meter run
1500-meter run
discus
high jump
javelin
long jump
pole vault
shot put

6 **pentathlon**

100-meter hurdles
200-meter run
high jump
javelin
long jump

7 **triathlon**

100-meter dash
high jump
shot put

8 **biathlon**

cross-country skiing
rifle shooting

756 AUTOMOBILE RACING

NOUNS 1 **automobile racing, auto racing, car racing,** motor sport; Indy car racing, stock-car racing, drag racing, Formula car racing, midget-car racing, hot-rod racing, autocross, go-karting; **racing association; race,** competition, championship; **track,** speedway, Indianapolis Motor Speedway *or* the Brickyard <nf>, closed course, road course *or* circuit, dirt track, grasstrack, super speedway; **car, racing car** <see list>, racer; **racing engine; supercharger,** turbocharger, blower *and* windmill <nf>; **tires, racing tires,** shoes <nf>, slicks; **body,** body work, spoiler, sidepod, roll bar, roll cage; **wheel,** wire wheel *or* wire, magnesium wheel *or* mag; **fuel, racing fuel,** methanol, nitromethane *or* nitro, blend, pop *and* juice <nf>

2 **race driving, racing driver, driver,** fast driver *or* leadfoot <nf>, slow driver *or* balloon foot, novice driver *or* yellowtail

3 **race, driving, start,** Le Mans start, flying start, paced start, grid start; **position,** qualifying, qualifying heat, starting grid, inside position, pole *or* pole position, bubble; **track,** turn, curve, hairpin, switchback, banked turn, corner, chicane, groove, shut-off, drift, straightaway *or* chute, pit, pit area; **signal,** black flag, white flag, checkered flag; **lap,** pace lap, victory lap *or* lane

VERBS 4 **drive, race,** start, jump, rev, accelerate, put the hammer down <nf>, slow down, back off, stroke it, draft, fishtail, nerf, shut the gate

ADVS 5 **at top speed,** flat-out, full-bore, ten-tenths ride the rail, spin, spin out, crash, t-bone

6 **racing cars**

championship car
compact sprint car
dirt car
dragster
experimental car *or* X-car
Formula A
formula car
Formula F
Formula One
Formula Super Vee
Formula Vee
fuel dragster *or* slingshot
  or rail job
fueler
funny car
gas dragster
grand touring car *or* GT
hobby car
Indy car
late-model sportsman
midget car
modified stock car
production car
prototype
quarter-midget car
Formula SCCA
sportsman
sports car
sprint car *or* big car
stock car
supercharger
touring car
turbine car
turbocharger

757 HORSE RACING

NOUNS 1 **horse racing, the turf,** the sport of kings, the turf sport, the racing world *or* establishment; **flat racing; harness racing,** trotting, pacing; steeplechase, hurdle race, point-to-point race; **Jockey Club,** Trotting Horse Club, Thoroughbred Racing Association *or* TRA, Thoroughbred Racing Protective Bureau *or* TRPB, state racing commission; **General Stud Book, American Stud Book,** Wallace's Trotting Register; **Triple Crown,** Kentucky Derby, Preakness Stakes, Belmont Stakes; Grand National, Derby, 2000 Guineas, Sty Leger, Gold Cup Race, Oaks; **racetrack, track,** racecourse, turf, oval, course, strip; rail, inside rail, infield, paddock, post; turf track, steeplejack course; gate *and* barrier; **track locations** <see list> *and* **calls; track conditions**, footing; racing equipment, tack

2 **jockey,** jock, rider, race rider, pilot, bug boy <nf>, money rider; apprentice jockey, bug <nf>; breeder, owner; trainer; steward, racing secretary; **railbird** *and* race bird <nf>, turf-man; **racehorse, pony,** thoroughbred, standardbred, mount, flyer, running horse, trotter, pacer, quarter horse, bangtail *and* daisy-cutter *and* filly *and* gee-gee <nf>; **sire, dam,** stallion, stud, stud horse, racing stud, mare, brood mare, gelding, ridgeling *or* rigling; **horse,** aged horse, three-year-old, sophomore, two-year-old, juvenile, colt, racing colt, filly, baby, foal, tenderfoot, bug, maiden *or* maiden horse, yearling, weanling; **favorite,** chalk, choice, odds-on favorite, public choice, top horse; runner, front-runner, pacesetter; strong horse, router, stayer; winner *or* win horse, place horse, show horse, also-ran; **nag** *and* racenag *and* beagle *and* beetle *and* hayburner *and* nine of hearts *and* palooka *and* pelter *and* pig *and* plater *and* selling plater <nf>; **rogue,** bad actor, cooler

3 **horse race, race;** race meeting, race card, scratch sheet; **starters,** field, weigh-in *or* weighing-in, post parade, post time, post position *or* PP; **start, break,** off; easy race, romp, shoo-in, armchair ride, hand ride; **finish,** dead heat, blanket finish, photo finish, Garison finish; **dishonest race,** boat race *and* fixed race <nf>

4 **statistics, records,** condition book, chart, **form, racing form,** daily racing form, past performance, **track record,** dope *or* tip *or* tout sheet <nf>, par time, parallel-time chart; **betting;** pari-mutuel 759.4; horse-racing bets

VERBS **5** **race, run; start, break, be off;** air *and* breeze; make a move, drive, extend, straighten out; fade, come back; screw in *or* through; ride out, run wide; **win,** romp *or* breeze in; **place, show,** be in the money; be out of the money

ADJS **6** **winning, in the money;** losing, out of the money; on the chinstrap; out in front, on the Bill Daley

7 **horse track locations or calls**

backstretch
clubhouse turn
eighth pole *or* post
far turn
five-eighths pole *or* post
half-mile pole *or* post
mile pole *or* post
post
quarter pole *or* post
sixteenth pole *or* post
straightaway *or* home stretch *or* home straight
winner's circle

758 CARDPLAYING

NOUNS **1** **cardplaying** *or* card playing, shuffling, cutting, cut, dealing, deal; **card game,** game; gambling 759, gambling games

2 **card, playing card,** board, pasteboard; **deck, pack; suit,** hearts, diamonds, spades, clubs, puppy-feet <nf>; hand; **face card,** blaze, coat card, coat, count card, court card, paint, paint-skin, picture card, redskin; **king,** figure, cowboy *and* sergeant from K Company <nf>, one-eyed king, king of hearts *or* suicide king; queen, bitch *and* hen *and* lady *and* mop-squeezer *and* whore <nf>, queen of spades, Black Maria *and* Maria *and* slippery Anne <nf>; **jack,** knave, boy *and* fishhook *and* j-bird *and* j-boy *and* john <nf>, one-eyed jack, jack of trumps *or* right bower, left bower; **joker,** bower, best bower; spot card, rank card, plain card; **ace,** bull *and* bullet *and* seed *and* spike <nf>, ace of diamonds *or* pig's eye <nf>, ace of clubs *or* puppyfoot <nf>; **two, deuce,** two-spot, duck <nf>, two of spades *or* curse of Mexico <nf>; **three, trey,** three-spot; **four,** four-spot, four of clubs *or* devil's bedposts <nf>; **five,** five-spot, fever <nf>; **six,** six-spot; **seven,** seven-spot, fishhook <nf>; **eight,** eight-spot; **nine,** nine-spot, nine of diamonds *or* curse of Scotland <nf>; **ten,** ten-spot; wild card

3 **bridge,** auction bridge, contract bridge, rubber bridge, duplicate *or* tournament bridge; **bridge player,** partner, dummy, North and South, East and West, left hand opponent *or* LHO, bidder, responder, declarer, senior, dummy; **suit,** major suit, minor suit, trump suit *or* trumps, lay suit *or* plain suit *or* side suit; **call, bid** <see list>; pass; **hand** <see list>; **play,** lead, opening lead, **trick,** quick trick *or* honor trick, high-card trick, overtrick, odd trick, finesse, ruff, crossruff; **score,** adjusted score, grand slam, little slam *or* small slam, game, rubber, premium, honors *or* honors cards, yarborough, set *or* setback

4 **poker,** draw poker, stud poker, five-card stud, six-card stud, seven-card stud, eight-card stud, strip poker; poker hand, five of a kind, straight flush, royal flush, four of a kind, full house, flush, straight, three of a kind, two pairs, one pair; pot, jackpot, pool, ante, chip, stake, call, checking, raise

VERBS **5** **shuffle,** make up, make up the pack, fan *and* wash <nf>; cut; **deal,** serve, pitch <nf>

6 **bridge bids**

asking bid
bidding convention
borderline bid
business double
demand bid
double
forcing bid
forcing pass
free bid
insufficient bid
jump bid
no-trump bid
opening bid
original bid
overbid *or* overcall
pass
rebid
redouble

renege
response
sacrifice bid
score bid
shut-out bid
sign-off
skip bid
suit bid
takeout double
underbid

7 bridge hands

balanced hand
doubleton
exposed hand
long trump
long suit
major tenace
minor tenace
offensive strength
perfect tenace
piano hand
pianola hand
side strength
singleton
short suit
tenace
unbalanced hand
void
yarborough

759 GAMBLING

NOUNS **1 gambling, playing, betting, action,** wagering, punting, hazarding, risking, staking, gaming, laying, taking *or* giving *or* laying odds, sporting <old>; **speculation, play;** drawing *or* casting lots, tossing *or* flipping a coin, sortition

2 gamble, chance, risk, risky thing, hazard; gambling *or* **gambler's chance,** betting proposition, bet, matter of chance, sporting chance, **luck of the draw,** hazard of the die, roll *or* cast *or* throw of the dice, turn *or* roll of the wheel, turn of the table, turn of the cards, fall of the cards, flip *or* toss of a coin, toss-up, toss; heads or tails, touch and go; blind bargain, pig in a poke; leap in the dark, shot in the dark; potshot, random shot, potluck; **speculation, venture,** flier *and* plunge <nf>; calculated risk; uncertainty 970; fortune, luck 972.1

3 bet, wager, stake, hazard, lay, play *and* chunk *and* shot <nf>; cinch bet *or* sure thing, mortal cinch *and* mortal lock *and* nuts <nf>; long shot; **ante;** parlay, double or nothing; **dice bet, craps bet,** golf bet, **horse-racing bet, poker bet,** roulette bet, telebet

4 betting system; pari-mutuel, off-track betting *or* OTB; perfecta, exacta, win, place, show, all-way bet, daily double

5 pot, jackpot, pool, stakes, kitty; bank; office pool

6 gambling odds, odds, price; **even** *or* **square odds,** even break; **short odds, long odds,** long shot; even chance, good chance, small chance, no chance 971.10; **handicapper,** odds maker, pricemaker

7 gambling game <see list>, game of chance, game, friendly game; card games

8 dice, bones *and* rolling bones *and* ivories *and* babies *and* cubes *and* devil's bones *or* teeth *and* galloping dominoes *and* golf balls *and* marbles and Memphis dominoes *and* Mississippi marbles *and* Missouri marbles <nf>, **craps,** crap shooting, crap game, bank craps *or* casino craps, muscle craps, African dominoes *and* African golf *and* alley craps *and* army craps *and* blanket craps *and* army marbles *and* Harlem tennis *and* poor man's roulette <nf> floating crap game, floating game, sawdust game; poker dice; **false** *or* crooked *or* loaded dice

9 <throw of dice> **throw, cast, rattle, roll, shot,** hazard of the die; dice points and rolls <see list>

10 poker, draw poker *or* draw *or* five-card draw *or* open poker, stud poker *or* stud *or* closed poker, five-card stud *or* seven-card stud, up card *or* open card, down card *or* closed card; common *or* community *or* communal card; highball, high-low, lowball; **straight** *or* **natural poker,** wild-card poker; **poker hand,** duke *and* mitt <nf>, good hand *or* cards, lock *or* cinch *or* cinch hand *or* ironclad hand *or* iron duke *or* mortal cinch *or* nut hand *or* nuts *or* immortals; bad hand *or* cards, trash *and* rags <nf>; **openers,** progressive openers, bet, raise *or* kick *or* bump *or* pump *or* push, showdown

11 blackjack *or* **twenty-one** *or* vingt-et-un; deal, card count, stiff, hard seventeen, hard eighteen, soft count, soft hand, soft eighteen, hit, blackjack *or* natural *or* snap *or* snapper, California blackjack; cut card *or* indicator card *or* sweat card; card-counting *or* ace-count *or* number count

12 roulette, American roulette, European roulette; **wheel,** American wheel, European wheel, wheel well, canoe, fret; **layout,** column, damnation alley, outside; zero, double zero, knotholes *or* house numbers

13 cheating, cheating scheme, cheating method, angle, con *and* grift *and* move *and* racket *and* scam *and* sting <nf>; deception 356

14 lottery, drawing, sweepstakes *or* sweepstake *or* sweep; draft lottery; **raffle; state lottery,** Lotto, Pick Six, Pick Four; tombola <Brit>; number lottery, numbers pool, **numbers game** *or* policy, Chinese lottery <nf>; interest lottery, Dutch *or* class lottery; tontine; grab bag *or* barrel *or* box

15 bingo, slow death <nf>, beano, keno, lotto; bingo card, banker, counter

16 <gambling device> gambling wheel, wheel of fortune, big six wheel, Fortune's wheel, raffle wheel *or* paddle wheel; roulette wheel, American wheel, European wheel; raffle wheel; cage, birdcage; goose *or* shaker, gooseneck; pinball machine; slot machine, slot, the slots, one-armed bandit <nf>; **layout** *or* green cloth, gambling table, craps table, Philadelphia layout, roulette table; **cheating device,** gaff *and* gimmick *and* tool <nf>

17 pari-mutuel, pari-mutuel machine; totalizator, totalizer, tote *and* tote board <nf>, odds board

18 **chip, check, counter bean** *and* fish <nf>

19 **casino, gambling house, house,** store *and* shop <nf>, gaming house, betting house, betting parlor, gambling den, gambling hall, sporting house <old>, gambling hell <nf>; luxurious casino, carpet joint *and* rug joint <nf>; honest gambling house, right joint <nf>; disreputable gambling house, crib *and* dive *and* joint *and* sawdust joint *and* store *and* toilet <nf>; illegal gambling house, cheating gambling house, brace house *and* bust-out joint *and* clip joint *and* deadfall *and* flat joint *and* flat store *and* hell *and* juice joint *and* low den *and* nick joint *and* peek store *and* skinning house *and* snap house *and* sneak joint *and* steer joint *and* wire joint *and* wolf trap <nf>; **handbook, book,** sports book, bookie joint <nf>, racebook, horse parlor, horse room, off-track betting parlor, OTB

20 **bookmaker, bookie** <nf>, turf accountant; **tout,** turf consultant; numbers runner; bagman

21 **gambler, player,** gamester, sportsman *or* sporting man <old>, sport, hazarder <old>; **speculator,** venturer, adventurer; **bettor,** wagerer, punter; high-stakes gambler, money player, high roller, plunger; petty gambler, low roller, piker *and* tinhorn *and* tinhorn gambler <nf>; professional gambler, pro *and* nutman <nf>; skillful gambler, sharp, shark, sharper, dean *and* professor *and* river gambler *and* dice gospeller *and* sharpie <nf>; cardsharp *or* cardshark, cardsharper; card counter, counter, caser, matrix player; crap shooter *and* boneshaker <nf>; compulsive gambler; spectator, kibitzer, lumber *and* sweater *and* wood <nf>

22 **cheater,** cheat, air bandit *and* bilk *and* bunco artist *and* dildock *and* grec *and* greek *and* grifter *and* hustler *and* mechanic *and* mover *and* rook *and* worker <nf>; deceiver 357; **dupe, victim,** coll *and* flat *and* john *and* lamb *and* lobster *and* mark *and* monkey *and* patsy *and* **sucker** <nf>

VERBS 23 **gamble,** game, sport <old>, play, **try one's luck** *or* **fortune; speculate; run** *or* **bank a game;** draw lots, draw straws, lot, cut lots, **cast lots;** cut the cards *or* deck; match coins, toss, flip a coin, call, call heads or tails; shoot craps, play at dice, roll the bones <nf>; play the ponies <nf>; raffle off

24 **chance, risk, hazard,** set at hazard, **venture,** wager, take a flier <nf>; **gamble on,** take a gamble on; **take a chance,** take one's chance, take the chances of, try the chance, **chance it,** "stand the hazard of the die"—Shakespeare; **take** *or* **run the risk,** run a chance; **take chances,** tempt fortune; **leave** *or* **trust to chance** *or* **luck,** rely on fortune, take a leap in the dark; buy a pig in a poke; take potluck

25 **bet, wager, gamble, hazard, stake,** punt, lay, lay down, put up, **make a bet, lay a wager,** give *or* take *or* lay odds, make book, get a piece of the action <nf>; plunge <nf>; **bet on** *or* **upon, back;** bet *or* play against; play *or* follow the ponies <nf>; parlay; **ante, ante up; cover, call,** match *or* meet a bet, see, fade; **check, sandbag** <nf>, **pass,** stand pat *or* stand stiff

26 **cheat, pluck** *and* skin *and* rook <nf>; load the dice, mark the cards

ADJS 27 speculative, **uncertain** 971.15; **hazardous, risky** 1006.10, dicey <nf>; **lucky,** winning, hot *and* red hot *and* on a roll <nf>; **unlucky,** losing, cold <nf>

28 **gambling games**

all fours
auction bridge
baccarat
bezique
bingo
blind poker
bridge
canasta
casino
crazy eights
chemin de fer
chuck-a-luck *or* birdcage
contract bridge *or* contract
craps
cribbage
draw poker
écarté
euchre
fan tan
faro
fish *or* go fish
gin
gin rummy
hazard
hearts
high, low, jack and the game
keno
loo
lottery
lotto
lowball poker
monte
numbers *or* policy
old maid
ombre
paddle wheel *or* raffle wheel
penny ante
picquet
pinball
pinochle
pitch and toss
poker
poker dice
quinze
rouge et noir
roulette
rum
rummy
seven-up
stud poker
three-card monte
trente-et-quarante
twenty-one *or* blackjack *or* vingt-et-un
war
wheel of fortune *or* big six wheel
whist

29 **dice points and rolls**

blanket roll *or* soft-pad roll
boxes *or* hard eight
craps
doublet
drop shot
dump over shot
eight *or* eighter from Decatur *or* Ada from Decatur *or* Ada Ross *or* Ada Ross the stable
hoss
English *or* ass English *or* body English *or* Jonah
even roll
fimps *or* hard ten
five *or* fee-bee *or* fever *or* phoebe *or* little Phoebe
four *or* little Dick Fisher *or* little Dick *or* little joe *or* little joe from Baltimore *or* little joe from Chicago *or* little joe from Kokomo
greek shot
little natural *or* slow crap

nine *or* carolina *or* carolina nina *or* nina from caroliner *or* nina from carolina
number *or* point
puppy feet
seven *or* natural *or* little natural *or* pass *or* craps *or* skinny Dugan
six *or* captain hicks *or* sister hicks *or* Jimmy Hicks *or* sixie from dixie *or* sixty days *or* sice
ten *or* big dick *or* big Joe from Boston *or* slow crap
three *or* cock-eyes
twelve *or* boxcars *or* high noon *or* Gary Cooper
two *or* snake eyes *or* Dolly Parton

760 OTHER SPORTS

NOUNS 1 **billiards,** pool, pocket billiards, snooker; billiard table, pool table, pocket, cue ball, cue stick, chalk; pool hall, billiards club

2 **boating,** sailing, canoeing, rowing, sculling, windsurfing, sailboarding, surfing, rafting, whitewater rafting; yachting, competitive sailing, day sailing; sailboat, canoe, catamaran, rowboat, kayak; regatta, America's Cup; sailor, yachtsman, yachtswoman, canoeist, rower, oarsman *or* oar, sculler, windsurfer, surfer, sailboarder; mariner, boater

3 **martial arts;** judo, the way of gentleness; karate, the way of the empty hand, sport karate, recreational karate; tae kwon do, the way of the foot and fist; aikido, the way of harmony of the spirit, competition aikido; belt, grade, dan grade; dojo

4 **fencing;** foil fencing, épée fencing, saber fencing, *escrime* <Fr>; en garde, parry, riposte, thrust, feint, lunge

5 **gymnastics;** floor exercise, tumbling, vaulting, trampolining, balance beam, horizontal bar, uneven parallel bars, pommel *or* side horse, stationary rings

6 **mountain climbing,** mountaineering, rock climbing, bouldering, free climbing, clean climbing, aid climbing, big wall climbing, snow climbing, ice climbing, Alpine-style climbining, alpinism; climbing expedition, base camp, advance camp; rock face

7 **ice skating,** figure skating, free skating, pairs skating, ice dancing, speed skating; Olympic skating, professional skating; compulsory figure, loop, salchow, jump, axel jump, double axel, triple axel, toe jump, spin, camel spin, lay-back spin, sit spin

8 **swimming,** natation; synchronized swimming, diving, scuba, snorkeling, skinny-dipping <nf>, dog-paddling, Olympic swimming; crawl *or* American crawl *or* Australian crawl, back crawl, backstroke, breaststroke, butterfly stroke; flutter kick, scissors kick, back kick, wedge kick, frog kick, whip kick; lifeguarding, lifesaving; swimming pool, natatorium

761 EXISTENCE

NOUNS 1 **existence, being;** subsistence, entity, essence, isness, absolute *or* transcendental essence, *l'être* <Fr>, pure being, *Ding-an-sich* <Ger, thing-in-itself>, noumenon; **occurrence,** presence, monadism; **materiality** 1052, **substantiality** 763; **life** 306

2 **reality, actuality,** factuality, empirical *or* demonstrable *or* objective existence, the here and now; historicity; necessity; the real thing; facticity; **truth** 972; **authenticity;** sober *or* grim reality, hardball *and* the nitty-gritty <nf>, not a dream, more truth than poetry; thing, something, ens, entity, being, object, substance, phenomenon

3 **fact,** the case, fact *or* truth of the matter, not opinion, not guesswork, what's what *and* where it's at <nf>; **matter of fact; bare fact,** naked fact, bald fact, **simple fact,** sober fact, simple *or* sober truth; **cold fact,** hard fact, **stubborn fact, brutal fact,** painful fact, the nitty-gritty *and* the bottom line <nf>; **actual fact,** positive fact, absolute fact; **self-evident fact,** axiom, postulate, premise, accomplished fact, *fait accompli* <Fr>; **accepted fact,** conceded fact, admitted fact, fact of experience, well-known fact, established fact, inescapable fact, irreducible fact, indisputable fact, undeniable fact; **demonstrable fact,** provable fact; empirical fact; protocol, protocol statement *or* sentence *or* proposition; given fact, given, donné datum, **circumstance** 766; **salient fact,** significant fact; factoid

4 **the facts,** the information 551, the particulars, the details, the specifics, **the data;** the dope *and* the scoop *and* the score *and* the skinny *and* the inside skinny <nf>; the picture <nf>, the gen <Brit nf>, what's what <nf>; the fact *or* facts *or* truth of the matter, the facts of the case, the whole story <nf>; "irreducible and stubborn facts"—W James; essentials, basic *or* essential facts, brass tacks *or* nitty-gritty <nf>

5 **self-existence,** uncreated being, noncontingent existence, aseity, innascibility

6 **mere existence,** simple existence, **vegetable existence, vegetation,** mere tropism

7 <philosophy of being> ontology, metaphysics, existentialism

VERBS 8 **exist, be,** be in existence, be extant, have being; breathe, **live** 306.9; subsist, stand, obtain, hold, prevail, be the case; **occur,** be present, be there, be found, be true, be met with, happen to be

9 **live on,** continue to exist, persist, last, stand the test of time, abide, endure 827.6

10 **vegetate,** merely exist, just be, pass the time

11 **exist in, consist in,** subsist in, lie in, rest in, repose in, reside in, abide in, inhabit, dwell in, **inhere in,** be present in, be a quality of, be comprised in, be contained in, be constituted by, be coextensive with

12 **become,** come to be, go, get, get to be, turn out to be, materialize; be converted into, turn into 858.17; grow 861.5; be changed

ADJS **13** **existent, existing,** in existence, de facto; **subsistent,** subsisting; **being,** in being; **living** 306.13; **present, extant, prevalent, current,** in force *or* effect, afoot, on foot, under the sun, on the face of the earth

14 **self-existent,** self-existing, innascible; uncreated, increate

15 **real, actual,** factual, veritable, for real <nf>, de facto, simple, sober, **hard; absolute, positive; self-evident,** axiomatic; accepted, conceded, stipulated, given; admitted, well-known, **established, inescapable, indisputable, undeniable; demonstrable,** provable; empirical, **objective,** historical; **true** 973.12; honest-to-God <nf>, genuine, card-carrying <nf>, **authentic; substantial** 763.6

ADVS **16** **really, actually; factually; genuinely,** veritably, basically, **truly; in reality,** in actuality, in effect, in fact, de facto, in point of fact, as a matter of fact; positively, absolutely; no buts about it <nf>; no ifs, ands, or buts <nf>; obviously, manifestly 348.14

WORD ELEMENTS **17** onto-

762 NONEXISTENCE

NOUNS **1** **nonexistence,** nonsubsistence; **nonbeing,** unbeing, not-being, nonentity; **nothingness,** nothing, nullity, nihility, invalidity; vacancy, deprivation, emptiness, inanity, vacuity 222.2; vacuum, void 222.3; nix <nf>; negativeness, negation, negativity; nonoccurrence, nonhappening; **unreality,** nonreality, unactuality; nonpresence, absence 222

2 **nothing, nil,** *nihil* <L>, *nichts* <Ger>, *nada* <Sp>, **naught, aught;** zero, 0, cipher; nothing whatever, nothing at all, nothing on earth *or* under the sun, no such thing; thing of naught 764.2

3 <nf terms> **zilch, zip,** zippo, nix, goose egg, Billy be damn, diddly, shit, diddly shit, squat, diddly squat, Sweet Fanny Adams <Brit>, bubkes, beans, a hill of beans, a hoot, **a fart,** a fuck, fuck all *and* bugger all <Brit>, jack-shit, a rat's ass

4 **none,** not any, none at all, not a one, not a blessed one <nf>, never a one, ne'er a one, nary one <nf>; **not a bit,** not a whit, not a hint, not a smitch *or* smidgen <nf>, not a speck, not a mite, not a particle, not an iota, not a jot, not a one, not a sausage <Brit>, not a scrap, not a trace, not a lick *or* a whiff <nf>, not a shadow, not a suspicion, not a shadow of a suspicion, neither hide nor hair

VERBS **5** **not exist,** not be in existence, not be met with, not occur, not be found, found nowhere, be absent *or* lacking *or* wanting, be null and void

6 **cease to exist** *or* **be, be annihilated,** be destroyed, **be wiped out,** be extirpated, be eradicated; **go, vanish,** be no more, leave no trace; **vanish, disappear** 34.2, evaporate, fade, fade away *or* out, fly, flee, dissolve, melt away, die out *or* away, pass, pass away, pass out of the picture <nf>, turn to nothing *or* naught, peter out <nf>, come to an end, wind down, tail off *and* trail off <nf>, reach an all-time low; **perish, expire,** pass away, **die** 307.19

7 **annihilate** 395.13, **exterminate** 395.14, eradicate, extirpate, **eliminate,** liquidate, **wipe out, stamp out,** waste *and* take out *and* nuke *and* zap <nf>, put an end to 395.12

ADJS **8** **nonexistent,** unexistent, inexistent, nonsubsistent, unexisting, without being, nowhere to be found; **minus, missing,** lacking, wanting; **null, void,** devoid, empty, inane, vacuous; **negative,** less than nothing; absent

9 **unreal,** unrealistic, unactual, not real; merely nominal; **immaterial** 1053.7; **unsubstantial** 764.5; **imaginary, imagined,** make believe, **fantastic, fanciful, fancied** 985.19–22; illusory

10 **uncreated, unmade,** unborn, unbegotten, unconceived, unproduced

11 **no more, extinct, defunct, dead** 307.30, expired, passed away; vanished, gone glimmering; perished, obsolete, annihilated; gone, all gone; all over with, had it <nf>, finished *and* phut *and* pffft *and* kaput <nf>, down the tube *and* down the drain *and* up the spout <nf>, done for *and* dead and done for <nf>

ADVS **12** **none, no,** not at all, in no way, to no extent

WORD ELEMENTS **13** nulli-

763 SUBSTANTIALITY

NOUNS **1** **substantiality,** substantialness; materiality 1052; **substance, body,** mass; **solidity,** density, concreteness, **tangibility,** palpability, ponderability; **sturdiness, stability,** soundness, firmness, steadiness, stoutness, toughness, **strength,** durability

2 **substance, stuff, fabric, material, matter** 1052.2, medium, the tangible; **elements,** constituent elements, constituents, ingredients, components, atoms, building blocks, parts

3 **something, thing,** an existence; **being, entity,** unit, individual, entelechy, monad; **person,** persona, personality, body, soul; **creature,** created being, contingent being; **organism,** life form, living thing, life; **object** 1052.4

4 **embodiment, incarnation,** materialization, substantiation, concretization, hypostasis, reification

VERBS 5 **embody,** incarnate, **materialize,** concretize, body forth, lend substance to, reify, entify, hypostatize

ADJS 6 **substantial,** substantive; **solid, concrete; tangible,** sensible, appreciable, palpable, ponderable; **material** 1052.9; **real** 761.15; **created,** creatural, organismic *or* organismal, contingent

7 **sturdy,** stable, **solid,** sound, firm, steady, tough, stout, **strong,** rugged; **durable,** lasting, enduring; **hard, dense,** unyielding, steely, adamantine; **well-made,** well-constructed, well-built, well-knit; **well-founded,** well-established, well-grounded; **massive,** bulky, heavy, chunky

ADVS 8 **substantially,** essentially, materially

WORD ELEMENTS 9 stere-, ont-

764 UNSUBSTANTIALITY

NOUNS 1 **unsubstantiality,** insubstantiality, unsubstantialness; **immateriality** 1053; bodilessness, incorporeality, unsolidity, unconcreteness; **intangibility,** impalpability, imponderability; **thinness, tenuousness,** attenuation, tenuity, evanescence, subtlety, subtility, fineness, airiness, mistiness, vagueness, ethereality; **fragility, frailness; flimsiness** 16.2; **transience** 828, **ephemerality,** ephemeralness, fleetingness, fugitiveness

2 thing of naught, nullity, zero; **nonentity, nobody** *and* nonstarter *and* nebbish <nf>, nonperson, unperson, cipher, man of straw, jackstraw <old>, lay figure, puppet, dummy, hollow man; flash in the pan, dud <nf>; **trifle** 998.5; *nugae* <L>; nothing 761.2

3 **spirit,** air, **thin air,** breath, mere breath, smoke, vapor, mist, ether, **bubble,** "such stuff as dreams are made on"—Shakespeare, **shadow,** mere shadow; illusion 976; phantom 988.1

VERBS 4 **spiritualize, disembody,** dematerialize; etherealize, **attenuate,** subtilize, rarefy, fine, refine; **weaken,** enervate, sap

ADJS 5 **unsubstantial,** insubstantial, nonsubstantial, unsubstanced; intangible, impalpable, imponderable; **immaterial** 1053.7; **bodiless,** incorporeal, unsolid, unconcrete; weightless 298.10; **transient** 828.7, ephemeral, fleeting, fugitive

6 **thin, tenuous,** subtile, subtle, evanescent, fine, overfine, refined, rarefied; **ethereal,** airy, windy, spirituous, vaporous, gaseous; air-built, cloud-built; **chimerical,** gossamer, gossamery, gauzy, shadowy, phantomlike 988.7; dreamlike, **illusory, unreal;** fatuous, fatuitous, inane; **imaginary,** fanciful 986.20

7 **fragile, frail** 1050.4; **flimsy,** shaky, weak, papery, paper-thin, **unsound,** infirm 16.15

8 **baseless, groundless,** ungrounded, **without foundation,** unfounded, not well-founded, built on sand, "writ on water"—Keats

WORD ELEMENTS 9 pseudo-

765 STATE

NOUNS 1 **state,** mode, modality; **status, situation,** status quo *or* status in quo, position, standing, footing, location, bearings, spot, walk of life; **rank,** estate, station, place, place on the ladder, **standing; condition,** circumstance 766; **case, lot; predicament, plight,** pass, pickle *and* picklement *and* fix *and* jam *and* spot *and* bind <nf>

2 **the state of affairs,** the nature *or* shape of things, the way it shapes up <nf>, the way of the world, how things stack up <nf>, **how things stand,** how things are, the way of things, the way it is, like it is, where it's at <nf>, **the way things are,** the way of it, the way things go, how it goes, the way the cookie crumbles, **how it is,** the status quo *or* status in quo, the size of it <nf>; how the land lies, the lay of the land; shape, phase, state of the art

3 **good condition, bad condition;** adjustment, fettle, form, order, repair, **shape** <nf>, trim

4 **mode, manner, way,** tenor, vein, fashion, style, lifestyle, way of life, preference, thing and bag <nf>; **form,** shape, guise, complexion, make-up; **role,** capacity, character, part; modus vivendi, modus operandi

VERBS 5 **be in** *or* **have a certain state,** be such *or* so *or* thus, **fare,** go on *or* along; **enjoy** *or* **occupy** a certain position; **get on** *or* **along,** come on *or* along <nf>; **manage** <nf>, **contrive, make out** <nf>, come through, get by; **turn out,** come out, stack up <nf>, shape up <nf>

ADJS 6 conditional, modal, formal, situational, statal

7 **in condition** *or* **order** *or* repair *or* shape; **out of order,** out of commission *and* **out of kilter** *or* kelter *and* out of whack <nf>

766 CIRCUMSTANCE

NOUNS 1 **circumstance, occurrence, occasion, event** 831, **incident;** juncture, conjuncture, contingency, eventuality; **condition** 765.1

2 **circumstances,** total situation, existing conditions *or* situation, set of conditions, terms of reference, **environment** 209, environing circumstances, context, frame, setting, surround, surrounding conditions, parameters, status quo *or* status in quo, setup; state of affairs; **the picture,** the whole picture, full particulars, ins and outs, ball game <nf>, the score <nf>, how things stand, lay of the land, layout, play-by-play description, blow-by-blow account

3 **particular, instance, item, detail,** point, count, case, fact, matter, article, datum, element, part, ingredient, factor, facet, aspect, thing; **respect, regard,** angle; minutia, minutiae <pl>, trifle, petty *or* trivial matter; incidental, minor detail

4 **circumstantiality,** particularity, specificity, thoroughness, minuteness of detail; accuracy

5 **circumstantiation,** itemization, particularization, specification, spelling-out, detailing, anatomization, atomization, analysis 801

VERBS **6** **itemize, specify,** circumstantiate, particularize, **spell out, detail,** go *or* enter into detail, descend to particulars, give full particulars, put in context, atomize, anatomize; **analyze** 801.6; **cite,** instance, adduce, document, give *or* quote chapter and verse; **substantiate**

ADJS **7** **circumstantial,** conditional, provisional; **incidental,** occasional, contingent, adventitious, **accidental, chance,** fortuitous, casual, aleatory, unessential *or* inessential *or* nonessential; background

8 environmental, environing, surrounding, conjunctive, conjoined, contextual, attending, attendant, limiting, determining, parametric; grounded, based

9 **detailed, minute, full, particular,** meticulous, fussy, finicky *or* finicking *or* finical, persnickety, picayune, picky <nf>, nice <old>, precise, exact, specific, special

ADVS **10** **thus, thusly,** <nf>, in such wise, thuswise, this way, this-a-way <nf>, thus and thus, thus and so, **so,** just so, like so *and* yea <nf>, like this, like that, just like that; similarly 784.18, precisely

11 **accordingly, in that case, in that event, at that rate,** that being the case, such being the case, that being so, **under the circumstances,** the condition being such, as it is, as matters stand, as the matter stands, **therefore** 888.7, **consequently; as the case may be,** as it may be, according to circumstances; as it may happen *or* turn out, as things may fall; **by the same token,** equally

12 **circumstantially,** conditionally, provisionally; provided 959.12

13 **fully, in full, in detail,** minutely, specifically, particularly, in particular, wholly 792.13, *in toto* <L>, completely 793.14, **at length,** *in extenso* <L>, *ad nauseam* <L>

767 INTRINSICALITY

NOUNS **1** **intrinsicality,** internality, innerness, **inwardness; inbeing,** indwelling, immanence; **innateness, inherence,** indigenousness; essentiality, fundamentality; **subjectivity,** internal reality, nonobjectivity

2 **essence, substance,** stuff, very stuff, inner essence, essential nature, quiddity; **quintessence, epitome,** embodiment, incarnation, model, pattern, purest type, typification, perfect example *or* exemplar, elixir, flower; **essential,** principle, essential principle, fundamental, hypostasis, postulate, axiom; **gist,** gravamen, **nub** <nf>, nucleus, center, focus, kernel, **core, pith,** meat; **heart,** soul, heart and soul, spirit, sap, lifeblood, marrow, entelechy

3 <nf terms> **meat and potatoes,** nuts and bolts, the nitty-gritty, the guts, the name of the game, the bottom line, where it's at, what it's all about, the ball game, the payoff, the score, where the rubber meets the road; back to basics

4 **nature, character,** quality, suchness; **constitution,** crasis <old>, composition, **characteristics,** makeup, constituents, building blocks; physique 262.4, physio; **build,** body-build, somatotype, frame, constitution, genetic make-up, system; complexion <old>, humor *and* humors <old>; **temperament,** temper, fiber, **disposition,** spirit, ethos, genius, dharma; **way, habit,** tenor, cast, hue, tone, grain, vein, streak, stripe, mold, brand, stamp; **kind** 809.3, **sort, type,** ilk; **property, characteristic** 865.4; **tendency** 896; the way of it, the nature of the beast <nf>

5 **inner nature,** inside, insides <nf>, internal *or* inner *or* esoteric *or* intrinsic reality, iniety, true being, essential nature, what makes one tick <nf>, center of life, vital principle, nerve center; **spirit, indwelling spirit, soul, heart, heart and soul, breast, bosom, inner person,** heart of hearts, secret heart, inmost heart *or* soul, secret *or* innermost recesses of the heart, heart's core, bottom *or* cockles of the heart; vitals, the quick, depths of one's being, guts *and* kishkes <nf>, where one lives <nf>; **vital principle,** archeus, life force, *élan vital* <Fr>

VERBS **6** **inhere,** indwell, belong to *or* permeate by nature, makes one tick <nf>; run in the blood, run in the family, inherit, be born so, have it in the genes, be made that way, be built that way <nf>, be part and parcel of

ADJS **7** **intrinsic,** internal, **inner,** inward; **inherent,** resident, implicit, immanent, indwelling; inalienable, unalienable, uninfringeable, unquestionable, unchallengeable, irreducible, qualitative; **ingrained,** in the very grain; infixed, implanted, inwrought, deep-seated; **subjective,** esoteric, private, secret

8 **innate, inborn,** born, congenital; **native, natural,** natural to, connatural, native to, indigenous; **constitutional,** bodily, physical, temperamental, organic; **inbred, genetic, hereditary,** inherited, bred in the bone, in the blood, running in the blood *or* race *or* strain, radical, rooted; connate, connatal, coeval; **instinctive,** instinctual, atavistic, primal

9 **essential,** of the essence, **fundamental; primary,** primitive, primal, elementary, elemental, simple, bare-bones *and* no-frills *and* bread-and-butter <nf>, original, *ab ovo* <L>, **basic, gut** <nf>, basal, underlying; **substantive,** substantial, material; constitutive, constituent; mandatory, compulsory

ADVS 10 **intrinsically, inherently,** innately; internally, inwardly, immanently; originally, primally, primitively; **naturally, congenitally,** genetically, **by birth, by nature**

11 **essentially, fundamentally, primarily, basically; at bottom,** *au fond* <Fr>, at heart; in essence, at the core, in substance, in the main; substantially, materially, most of all; per se, of *or* in itself, as such, qua

WORD ELEMENTS 12 physi-, physic-

768 EXTRINSICALITY

NOUNS 1 **extrinsicality,** externality, outwardness, extraneousness, otherness, discreteness; foreignness; **objectivity,** nonsubjectivity, impersonality

2 **nonessential,** inessential *or* unessential, nonvitalness, carrying coals to Newcastle, gilding the lily; **accessory, extra,** collateral; the other, not-self; **appendage,** appurtenance, auxiliary, supernumerary, **supplement,** addition, addendum, superaddition, adjunct 254; **subsidiary,** subordinate, secondary; **contingency,** contingent, incidental, accidental, accident, happenstance, mere chance; **superfluity,** superfluousness; fifth wheel *and* tits on a boar <nf>; triviality

ADJS 3 **extrinsic, external,** outward, outside, outlying; **extraneous,** foreign; **objective,** nonsubjective, impersonal, extraorganismic *or* extraorganismal; not of this world

4 **unessential,** inessential *or* nonessential, unnecessary, nonvital, superfluous; **accessory, extra,** collateral, auxiliary, supernumerary; adventitious, appurtenant, adscititious; **additional, supplementary,** supplemental, superadded, supervenient, make-weight; **secondary,** subsidiary, subordinate; **incidental,** circumstantial, contingent; trivial, throwaway; **accidental, chance,** fortuitous, casual, aleatory; **indeterminate, unpredictable,** capricious

769 ACCOMPANIMENT

NOUNS 1 **accompaniment,** concomitance *or* concomitancy, withness and togetherness <nf>; synchronism, **simultaneity** 836, simultaneousness; coincidence, co-occurrence, concurrence, concurrency, coexistence, symbiosis; parallelism; coagency

2 **company, association,** consociation, **society,** community; **companionship, fellowship,** consortship, partnership; cohabitation

3 **attendant,** concomitant, corollary, **accessory,** appendage; **adjunct** 254

4 **accompanier, accompanist; attendant, companion, fellow, mate,** comate, consort, **partner;** companion piece

5 **escort, conductor, usher,** shepherd; **guide,** tourist guide, cicerone; **squire,** esquire, swain, cavalier; **chaperon,** duenna; **bodyguard,** guard, **convoy,** muscle <nf>; companion, sidekick <nf>, fellow traveler, travel companion, satellite, outrider

6 **attendance, following, cortege, retinue, entourage,** suite, followers, followership, rout, train, body of retainers; **court,** cohort; parasite 138.5

VERBS 7 **accompany,** bear *or* keep one company, **keep company with,** companion, go *or* travel *or* run with, go together, go along for the ride <nf>, **go along with, attend,** wait on *or* upon; **associate with,** assort with, sort with, **consort with,** couple with, hang around with *and* hang out with *and* hang with <nf>, go hand in hand with; **combine** 804.3, **associate,** consociate, confederate, flock *or* band *or* herd together

8 **escort, conduct,** have in tow <nf>, marshal, **usher,** shepherd, **guide, lead; convoy,** guard; **squire,** esquire, **attend,** wait on *or* upon, **take out** <nf>; **chaperon;** attend, dance attendance on

ADJS 9 **accompanying, attending, attendant, concomitant,** accessory, collateral; **combined** 805.5, **associated,** coupled, paired; **fellow, twin, joint, joined** 800.13, conjoint, hand-in-hand, hand-in-glove, mutual; **simultaneous, concurrent,** coincident, synchronic, synchronized; correlative; parallel; complementary, accessory

ADVS 10 **hand in hand** *or* glove, arm in arm, side by side, cheek by jowl, shoulder to shoulder; therewith, therewithal, herewith

11 **together, collectively, mutually,** jointly, unitedly, in conjunction, conjointly, *en masse* <Fr>, communally, corporately, **in a body,** all at once, *ensemble* <Fr>, in association, in company; simultaneously, coincidentally, concurrently, at once

PREPS 12 **with, in company with, along with, together with,** in association with, coupled *or* paired *or* partnered with, in conjunction with

WORD ELEMENTS 13 co-, con-, col-, com-, cor-, meta-, syn-, sym-

770 ASSEMBLAGE

NOUNS 1 **assemblage, assembly, collection, gathering,** ingathering, forgathering, **congregation**, assembling; concourse, concurrence, conflux, confluence, convergence; collocation, juxtaposition, junction 800.1; combination 805; mobilization, call-up, muster, *attroupement* <Fr>; roundup, rodeo, corralling, shepherding, marshaling; **comparison** 943; canvass, census, data-gathering, survey, inventory

2 **assembly** <of persons>, *assemblée* <Fr>, **gathering, forgathering, congregation,** congress, conference, convocation, concourse, **meeting,** meet, **get-together** *and* turnout <nf>; convention, conventicle, synod, council, diet, **conclave,** levee; caucus; mass meeting, **rally,** sit-in, demonstration, demo <nf>; **session,** séance, sitting, sit-down <nf>; **panel,** forum, symposium, colloquium; committee, commission; *eisteddfod* <Welsh>; plenum, quorum; **party, festivity** 743.4, fete, at home, housewarming, soiree, reception, **dance,** ball, prom, do <chiefly Brit>, shindig *and* brawl <nf>; rendezvous, date, assignation

3 **company, group,** grouping, groupment, network, **party, band, knot, gang, crew,** complement, cast, outfit, pack, cohort, troop, troupe, tribe, **body,** corps, stable, bunch *and* mob *and* crowd <nf>; squad, platoon, battalion, regiment, brigade, division, fleet; **team,** squad, string; covey, bevy; posse, detachment, contingent, detail, *posse comitatus* <L>; phalanx; **party, faction,** movement, wing, persuasion; in-group, old-boy network, out-group, peer group, age group; coterie, salon, clique, **set;** junta, cabal

4 **throng, multitude, horde,** host, heap <nf>, army, panoply, legion; flock, cluster, galaxy; **crowd,** press, crush, flood, spate, deluge, mass, surge, storm, squeeze; **mob,** mass, rabble, rout, ruck, jam, *cohue* <Fr>, everybody and his uncle *or* his brother <nf>, all and them some

5 <animals> **flock, bunch, pack,** colony, host, troop, army, **herd, drove,** drive, drift, trip; pride <of lions>, sloth <of bears>, skulk <of foxes>, gang <of elk>, kennel <of dogs>, clowder <of cats>, pod <of seals>, gam <of whales>, **school** *or* shoal <of fish>; <animal young> **litter**

6 <birds, insects> **flock,** flight, **swarm,** cloud; covey <of partridges>, bevy <of quail>, skein <of geese in flight>, gaggle <of geese on water>, watch <of nightingales>, charm <of finches>, murmuration <of starlings>, spring <of teal>; hive <of bees>, plague <of locusts>

7 **bunch, group,** grouping, groupment, crop, **cluster, clump,** knot, wad; grove, copse, thicket; **batch, lot,** slew <nf>, **mess** <nf>; tuft, wisp; tussock, hassock; shock, stook; arrangement, nosegay, posy, spray

8 **bundle,** bindle <nf>, **pack, package,** packet, deck, budget, **parcel,** fardel <nf>, sack, bag, poke <nf>, rag-bag <nf>, bale, truss, **roll,** rouleau, bolt; fagot, fascine, fasces; quiver, sheaf; bouquet, nosegay, posy

9 **accumulation,** cumulation, gathering, **amassment,** congeries, acervation, collection, collecting, grouping; agglomeration, conglomeration, glomeration, conglomerate, agglomerate; **aggregation,** aggregate; conglobation; **mass, lump,** gob <nf>, chunk *and* hunk <nf>, wad; snowball; stockpile, stockpiling

10 **pile, heap, stack, mass; mound, hill;** molehill, anthill; bank, embankment, dune; haystack, hayrick, haymow, haycock, cock, mow, rick; drift, snowdrift; pyramid

11 **collection,** collector's items, collectibles *or* collectables; **holdings,** fund, treasure, hoard; corpus, corpora, **body,** data, raw data; compilation, collectanea; ana; anthology, florilegium, treasury, store, stockpile; *Festschrift* <Ger>; chrestomathy; **museum, library,** zoo, menagerie, aquarium

12 **set, suit, suite, series,** outfit *and* kit <nf>

13 **miscellany,** miscellanea, collectanea; **assortment, medley, variety, mixture** 797; mixed bag, hodgepodge, conglomerate, **conglomeration,** omnium-gatherum <nf>, potpourri, smorgasboard; **sundries,** oddments, **odds and ends,** bits and pieces

14 <a putting together> **assembly**, assemblage; assembly line, production line; assembly-line production

15 **collector,** gatherer, accumulator, connoisseur, fancier, enthusiast, pack rat *and* magpie <nf>, hoarder; beachcomber; collection agent, bill collector, dunner; tax collector, tax man, exciseman <Brit>, customs agent, *douanier* <Fr>; **miser** 484.4

VERBS 16 **come together, assemble, congregate,**

collect, come from far and wide, come *or* arrive in a body; league 805.4, ally; **unite** 800.5; muster, **meet, gather, forgather,** gang up <nf>, mass, amass; **merge,** converge, flow together, fuse; group, flock, flock together; herd together; **throng, crowd,** swarm, teem, hive, surge, seethe, mill, stream, horde; **be crowded,** be mobbed, burst at the seams, be full to overflowing; **cluster,** bunch, bunch up, clot; gather around, gang around <nf>; rally, rally around; **huddle,** go into a huddle, close ranks; rendezvous, date; **couple,** copulate, link, link up

17 **convene, meet,** hold a meeting *or* session, sit; **convoke,** summon, call together

18 <bring or gather together> **assemble, gather;** drum up, muster, rally, **mobilize; collect,** collect up, fund-raise, take up a collection, raise, take up; **accumulate,** cumulate, **amass,** mass, bulk, batch; agglomerate, conglomerate, aggregate; **combine** 805.3, **network, join** 800.5, **bring together,** get together, **gather together,** draw *or* lump *or* batch *or* bunch together, pack, pack in, cram, cram in; **bunch,** bunch up; **cluster,** clump; **group,** aggroup; **gather in,** get *or* whip in; scrape *or* scratch together, scrape up, together, rake *or* dredge *or* dig up; round up, corral, drive together; **put together,** make up, compile, colligate; collocate, **juxtapose,** pair, match, partner; hold up together, **compare** 942.4

19 **pile, pile on, heap, stack,** heap *or* pile *or* stack up; mound, hill, bank, bank up; rick; pyramid; drift; stockpile, build up

20 **bundle,** bundle up, **package,** parcel, parcel up, **pack,** bag, sack, truss, truss up; bale; wrap, **wrap up,** do *or* tie *or* bind up; roll up

ADJS 21 **assembled, collected, gathered;** congregate, congregated; meeting, in session; **combined** 805.5; **joined** 799.13; joint, leagued 805.6; **accumulated,** cumulate, massed, **amassed;** heaped, stacked, piled; glomerate, agglomerate, conglomerate, aggregate; **clustered,** bunched, lumped, clumped, knotted; bundled, packaged, wrapped up; fascicled, fasciculated; herded, shepherded, rounded up

22 **crowded, packed, crammed;** bumper-to-bumper <nf>, jam-packed, packed *or* crammed like sardines <nf>, chockablock; **compact,** firm, solid, dense, close, serried; **teeming, swarming, crawling,** seething, bristling, populous, milling, **full** 794.11

23 **cumulative,** accumulative, total, overall

771 DISPERSION

NOUNS 1 **dispersion** *or* **dispersal, scattering,** scatter, scatteration, diffraction; ripple effect; **distribution, spreading,** strewing, sowing, broadcasting, **broadcast, spread,** narrowcast, publication 352, **dissemination,** propagation, dispensation; **radiation,** divergence 171; expansion, splay; **diffusion,** circumfusion; **dilution,** attenuation, thinning, thinning-out, watering, watering-down, weakening; **evaporation,** volatilization, dissipation; fragmentation, shattering, pulverization; sprinkling, spattering; peppering, buckshot *or* shotgun pattern; deployment

2 **decentralization,** deconcentration

3 **disbandment,** dispersion *or* dispersal, diaspora, separation, parting; breakup, split-up <nf>; **demobilization,** deactivation, **release,** detachment; dismissal 908.5; dissolution, disorganization, disintegration 806; population drift, urban sprawl, sprawl

VERBS 4 **disperse, scatter,** diffract; **distribute, broadcast, sow,** narrowcast, disseminate, propagate, pass around *or* out, publish 352.10; **diffuse, spread,** dispread, circumfuse, strew, bestrew, dot; **radiate,** diverge 171.5; expand, splay, branch *or* fan *or* spread out; **issue, deal out,** dole out, retail, utter, dispense; sow broadcast, scatter to the winds; overscatter, overspread, oversow; sunder, hive off <nf>

5 **dissipate, dispel,** dissolve, attenuate, dilute, thin, thin out, water, water down, weaken; **evaporate,** volatilize; drive away, clear away, cast forth, blow off

6 **sprinkle,** besprinkle, asperge, **spatter,** splatter, splash; **dot,** spot, speck, speckle, freckle, stud; **pepper,** powder, dust; flour, crumb, bread, dredge

7 **decentralize,** deconcentrate

8 **disband, disperse, scatter, separate, part,** break up, split up; part company, go separate ways, bug out <nf>; **demobilize,** demob <nf>, deactivate, muster out, debrief, **release,** detach, discharge, let go; dismiss 909.18; **dissolve,** disorganize, disintegrate 806.3

ADJS 9 **dispersed, scattered, distributed,** dissipated, disseminated, strown, strewn, broadcast, **spread,** dispread; **widespread,** diffuse, discrete, sparse; **diluted,** thinned, thinned-out, watered, watered-down, weakened; **sporadic;** straggling, straggly; all over the lot *or* place <nf>, few and far between, from hell to breakfast <nf>

10 **sprinkled,** spattered, splattered, asperged, splashed, **peppered,** spotted, dotted, powdered, dusted, specked, speckled, **studded,** freckled

11 dispersive, **scattering, spreading,** diffractive *or* diffractional, **distributive,** disseminative, diffusive, dissipative, attenuative

ADVS 12 **scatteringly, dispersedly,** diffusely, sparsely, **sporadically,** *passim* <L>, **here and there;** in places, **in spots** <nf>; at large, everywhere, throughout, wherever you look *or* turn <nf>, in all quarters

772 INCLUSION

NOUNS 1 **inclusion, comprisal, comprehension,** coverage, envisagement, embracement, encompassment, incorporation, embodiment, assimilation, reception; **membership,** participation, admission, admissibility, eligibility, legitimation, legitimization; **power-sharing,** enablement, enfranchisement; **completeness** 794, **inclusiveness, comprehensiveness,** exhaustiveness; **whole** 792; openness, toleration *or* tolerance; universality, generality

2 **entailment, involvement, implication;** assumption, presumption, presupposition, subsumption

VERBS 3 **include, comprise, contain, comprehend,** hold, **take in; cover,** cover a lot of ground <nf>, occupy, take up, fill; fill in *or* out, build into, **complete** 794.6; **embrace,** encompass, enclose, encircle, incorporate, assimilate, embody, constitute, admit, receive, envisage; **legitimize,** legitimatize; **share power,** enable, enfranchise, cut in *and* deal in *and* give a piece of the action <nf>; among, count in, work in; **number among,** take into account *or* consideration

4 <include as a necessary circumstance or consequence> **entail, involve, implicate,** imply, assume, presume, presuppose, subsume, affect, take in, contain, comprise, **call for, require,** take, bring, lead to

ADJS 5 **included, comprised,** comprehended, envisaged, embraced, encompassed, added-in, covered, subsumed; bound up with, forming *or* making a part of, built-in, tucked-in, integrated; **involved** 898.3

6 **inclusive, including, containing, comprising,** covering, embracing, encompassing, enclosing, encircling, assimilating, incorporating, envisaging; counting, numbering; broad-brush *and* ballpark <nf>, all-in

7 **comprehensive, sweeping, complete** 794.9; whole 792.9; **all-comprehensive,** all-inclusive 863.14; without omission *or* exception, **overall,** universal, global, wall-to-wall <nf>, around-the-world, **total,** blanket, omnibus, umbrella, across-the-board; encyclopedic, compendious; synoptic; bird's-eye, panoramic

773 EXCLUSION

NOUNS 1 **exclusion, barring,** debarring, debarment, preclusion, exception, omission, nonadmission, cutting-out, leaving-out, omission; **restriction, circumscription,** narrowing, demarcation; **rejection,** repudiation; **ban,** bar, taboo, injunction; relegation; prohibition, embargo, blockade; boycott, lockout; inadmissibility, excludability, exclusivity

2 **elimination, riddance,** culling, culling out, winnowing-out, shakeout, eviction, chasing, bum's rush <nf>; **severance** 802.2; withdrawal, **removal,** detachment, disjunction 802.1; discard, eradication, clearance, **ejection,** expulsion, suspension; **deportation, exile,** expatriation, ostracism, outlawing *or* outlawry; disposal, disposition; **liquidation, purge;** obliteration

3 **exclusiveness, narrowness,** tightness; **insularity,** snobbishness, parochialism, ethnocentrism, ethnicity, xenophobia, know-nothingism; special case, exemption; **segregation, separation, separationism,** division; **isolation,** insulation, seclusion; quarantine; racial segregation, apartheid, color bar, Jim Crow, race hatred; **out-group; outsider,** non-member, stranger, the other, they; **foreigner, alien** 774.3, outcast 586.4, outlaw; *persona non grata* <L>; blacklist, blackball; monopoly; sexual discrimination

VERBS 4 **exclude, bar,** debar, bar out, lock out, **shut out, keep out,** count out <nf>, close the door on, close out, cut out, cut off, preclude; **reject, repudiate,** blackball *and* turn thumbs down on <nf>, read *or* drum out, ease *or* freeze out *and* leave *or* keep out in the cold <nf>, cold-shoulder, send to Coventry <Brit>, ostracize, wave off *or* aside; **ignore,** turn a blind eye, turn a deaf ear, filter out, tune out; **ban,** prohibit, proscribe, taboo, **leave out,** omit, pass over, ignore; relegate; **blockade,** embargo; **tariff,** trade barrier

5 **eliminate, get rid of,** rid oneself of, **get quit of,** get shut of <nf>, **dispose of, remove,** abstract, eject, expel, give the bum's rush <nf>, kick downstairs, cast off *or* out, chuck <nf>, throw over *or* overboard <nf>; **deport, exile,** outlaw, expatriate; clear, clear out, clear away, clear the decks; **weed out,** pick out; **cut out,** strike off *or* out, elide, censor; eradicate, root up *or* out; **purge, liquidate**

6 **segregate, separate,** separate out *or* off, divide, cordon, cordon off; **isolate,** insulate, seclude; **set apart,** keep apart; **quarantine,** put in isolation; put beyond the pale, ghettoize; **set aside,** lay aside, put aside, keep aside, box off, wall off, fence off; **sort** *or* **pick out,** cull out, sift, screen, sieve, bolt, riddle, winnow, winnow out; thresh, thrash, gin

ADJS 7 **excluded, barred,** debarred, precluded, kept-out, **shut-out, left-out,** left out in the cold <nf>, passed-over; not included, not in it, not in the picture <nf>; excepted, excused; **ignored;** cold-shouldered; relegated; **banned,** prohibited, proscribed, tabooed; **expelled,** ejected, **purged,** liquidated; deported, exiled; **blockaded,** embargoed

8 **segregated, separated, cordoned-off, divided;** isolated, insulated, secluded; **set apart,** sequestered; **quarantined; ghettoized,** beyond the pale; peripheral

9 **exclusive, excluding,** exclusory; seclusive, preclusive, exceptional, inadmissible, prohibitive, preventive, prescriptive, restrictive; separative, segregative, closed-door; select, selective; narrow, insular, parochial, ethnocentric, xenophobic, snobbish; racist, sexist

PREPS 10 **excluding, barring,** bar, exclusive of, precluding, omitting, without, absent, **leaving out; excepting, except, except for,** with the exception of, outside of <nf>, **save,** saving, save and except, let alone; **besides,** beside, **aside from**

774 EXTRANEOUSNESS

NOUNS 1 **extraneousness, foreignness;** otherness, alienism, alienage, alienation; **extrinsicality** 768; **exteriority** 206; nonassimilation, nonconformity; intrusion

2 **intruder,** foreign body *or* element, foreign intruder *or* intrusion, interloper, encroacher; **impurity,** blemish 1004; speck 258.7, spot, macula, blot; mote, splinter *or* sliver, **weed,** misfit 789.4; oddball 870.4; black sheep

3 **alien, stranger, foreigner, outsider,** non-member, not one of us, not our sort, not the right sort, the other, outlander, *Uitlander* <Afrikaans>, tramontane, ultramontane, barbarian, foreign devil <Chin>, *gringo* <Sp Amer>; **exile,** outcast, outlaw, wanderer, refugee, émigré, displaced person *or* DP, *déraciné* <Fr>; the Wandering Jew

4 **newcomer, new arrival,** *novus homo* <L>; *arriviste* <Fr>, Johnny-come-lately <nf>, new boy <Brit>; **tenderfoot,** greenhorn; settler, emigrant, immigrant; recruit, rookie <nf>; **intruder, squatter,** gate-crasher, stowaway

ADJS 5 **extraneous, foreign, alien,** strange, exotic, foreign-looking; unearthly, extraterrestrial 1072.26; exterior, **external;** extrinsic 768.3; ulterior, outside, outland, outlandish; barbarian, barbarous, barbaric; foreign-born; intrusive

ADVS 6 **abroad,** in foreign parts; oversea, **overseas,** beyond seas; on one's travels

WORD ELEMENTS 7 ep-, epi-, eph-, ex-, exo-, ef-, xen-, xeno-

775 RELATION

NOUNS 1 **relation, relationship, connection;** relatedness, connectedness, **association** 617, **affiliation,** filiation, bond, union, alliance, **tie,** tie-in <nf>, link, linkage, linking, linkup, liaison, **addition** 253, adjunct 254, junction 799.1, **combination** 805, assemblage 770; deduction 255.1, disjunction 802.1, **contrariety** 779, **disagreement** 789, negative *or* bad relation; **positive** *or* **good relation, affinity, rapport,** mutual attraction, sympathy, accord 455; **closeness,** propinquity, **proximity,** approximation, contiguity, nearness 223, intimacy; **relations, dealings,** affairs, business, transactions, doings *and* truck <nf>, intercourse; **similarity** 784, homology

2 **relativity,** dependence, contingency; **relativism,** indeterminacy, uncertainty, variability, variance; **interrelation, correlation** 777

3 **kinship,** common source *or* stock *or* descent *or* ancestry, consanguinity, agnation, cognation, enation, relationship by blood 559; family relationship, affinity 564.1

4 **relevance, pertinence,** pertinency, cogency, relatedness, materiality, **appositeness,** germaneness; application, applicability, effect, appropriateness; **connection,** reference, **bearing,** concern, concernment, interest, respect, regard

VERBS 5 **relate to,** refer to, **apply to, bear on** *or* **upon,** respect, regard, **concern, involve,** touch, affect, interest; **pertain, pertain to,** appertain, appertain to, belong to, fit; **agree, agree with,** answer to, correspond to, chime with; **have to do with,** have connection with, link with *or* link up with, connect, put in context, tie in with <nf>, liaise with <nf>, deal with, treat of, touch upon

6 **relate, associate, connect,** interconnect, ally, link, link up, wed, marry, marry up, weld, bind, tie, couple, bracket, equate, identify; bring into relation with, bring to bear upon, apply; **parallel,** parallelize, draw a parallel; symmetrize; **interrelate,** relativize, **correlate** 777.4

ADJS 7 **relative, comparative,** relational; **relativistic,** indeterminate, uncertain, variable; **connective, linking,** associative; **relating,** pertaining, appertaining, pertinent, referring, referable

8 **approximate,** approximating, approximative, proximate; **near, close** 223.14; **comparable,** relatable, commensurable; **proportional,** proportionate, proportionable; correlative; **like,** homologous, **similar** 784.10

9 **related, connected; linked,** tied, coupled, knotted, twinned, wedded, wed, married *or* married up, welded, conjugate, bracketed, bound, yoked, spliced, conjoined, conjoint, conjunct, joined 799.13; **associated, affiliated,** filiated, **allied,** associate, affiliate; interlocked, **interrelated,** interlinked, involved, implicated, overlapping, interpenetrating, relevant, **correlated;** in the same

category, of that kind *or* sort *or* ilk, corresponding; parallel, collateral; **congenial,** *en rapport* <Fr>, sympathetic, compatible, affinitive

10 **kindred, akin, related,** of common source *or* stock *or* descent *or* ancestry, agnate, cognate, enate, connate, connatural, congeneric *or* congenerous, consanguine *or* consanguineous, genetically related, related by blood 559.6, affinal 564.4

11 **relevant, pertinent,** appertaining, **germane, apposite,** cogent, material, admissible, applicable, applying, pertaining, belonging, involving, appropriate, **apropos,** *à propos* <Fr>, to the purpose, **to the point,** in point, *ad rem* <L>

ADVS 12 **relatively,** comparatively, proportionately, not absolutely, to a degree, to an extent, to some extent; **relevantly,** pertinently, appositely, germanely

PREPS 13 **with** *or* **in relation to,** with *or* in reference to, **with** *or* **in regard to,** with respect to, in respect to *or* of, in what concerns, relative to, **relating** *or* **pertaining to,** pertinent to, appertaining to, referring to, in relation with, **in connection with,** apropos of, speaking of; **as to,** as for, as respects, as regards; in the matter of, on the subject of, in point of, on the score of; re, *in re* <L>; **about,** anent, of, on, upon, **concerning,** touching, respecting, **regarding**

776 UNRELATEDNESS

NOUNS 1 **unrelatedness,** irrelativeness, irrelation; **irrelevance,** irrelevancy, impertinence, inappositeness, uncogency, ungermaneness, immateriality, inapplicability; inconnection *or* disconnection, inconsequence, independence; **unconnectedness,** separateness, delinkage, discreteness, dissociation, disassociation, disjuncture, disjunction 802.1

2 **misconnection,** misrelation, wrong *or* invalid linking, **mismatch,** mismatching, misalliance, *mésalliance* <Fr>; misapplication, misapplicability, misreference

3 **an irrelevance,** *or* irrelevancy, quite another thing, something else again *and* a whole nother thing *and* a whole different story *and* a whole different ball game <nf>

VERBS 4 **not concern,** not involve, not imply, not implicate, not entail, not relate to, not connect with, have nothing to do with, have no business with, cut no ice *and* make no never mind <nf>, have no bearing

5 foist, drag in 213.6; impose on 643.7

ADJS 6 **unrelated,** irrelative, unrelatable, unrelational, **unconnected,** unallied, unlinked, **unassociated,** unaffiliated *or* disaffiliated; disrelated, disconnected, dissociated, detached, discrete, disjunct, removed, **separated,** segregated, apart, other, independent, marked off, bracketed; **isolated,** insular; **foreign, alien,** strange, exotic, outlandish; incommensurable, incomparable; inconsistent, inconsonant; extraneous 768.3

7 **irrelevant,** irrelative; **impertinent, inapposite,** ungermane, uncogent, inconsequent, inapplicable, immaterial, inappropriate, inadmissible; wide of *or* away from the point, *nihil ad rem* <L>, **beside the point,** beside the mark, wide of the mark, **beside the question,** off the subject, not to the purpose, **nothing to do with the case,** not at issue, out-of-the-way; **unessential,** nonessential, extraneous, extrinsic 768.3; incidental, parenthetical

8 **farfetched, remote,** distant, out-of-the-way, strained, forced, dragged in, neither here nor there, brought in from nowhere; **imaginary** 986.19; improbable 969.3

ADVS 9 **irrelevantly,** irrelatively, impertinently, inappositely, ungermanely, uncogently, amiss; without connection, without reference *or* regard

777 CORRELATION

<reciprocal or mutual relation>

NOUNS 1 **correlation,** corelation; correlativity, correlativism; **reciprocation,** reciprocity, reciprocality, two-edged sword, relativity 774.2; **mutuality,** communion, community, commutuality, common ground; **common denominator,** common factor; proportionality, direct *or* inverse relationship, direct *or* inverse ratio, direct *or* inverse proportion, covariation; **equilibrium, balance,** symmetry 264; **correspondence, equivalence,** equipollence, coequality

2 **interrelation,** interrelationship; **interconnection,** interlocking, interdigitation, intercoupling, interlinking, interlinkage, interalliance, interassociation, interaffiliation, interdependence, interdependency, codependency; dovetail

3 **interaction,** interworking, intercourse, intercommunication, **interplay;** alternation, seesaw; **meshing,** intermeshing, mesh, engagement; **complementation,** complementary relation, complementary distribution; **interweaving,** interlacing, intertwining 740.1; **interchange** 863, tit for tat, trade-off, *quid pro quo* <L>; **concurrence** 899, coaction, **cooperation** 450, compromise; codependency

4 **correlate,** correlative; **correspondent,** analogue, counterpart; reciprocator, reciprocatist; each other, one another

VERBS 5 **correlate,** corelate; **interrelate, interconnect,** interassociate, interlink, intercouple, interlock, interdigitate, interally, intertie, interjoin, interdepend; interface; find common ground; dovetail

6 **interact,** interwork, **interplay;** mesh, intermesh, engage, fit, fit like a glove, dovetail, mortise; **interweave,** interlace, intertwine; **interchange;** coact, **cooperate;** codepend

7 **reciprocate, correspond,** correspond to, respond to, answer, answer to, go tit-for-tat; **complement,** coequal; **cut both ways,** cut two ways; counteract

ADJS 8 **correlative,** corelative, correlational, corelational; **correlated,** corelated; **interrelated, interconnected,** interassociated, interallied, interaffiliated, interlinked, interlocked, intercoupled, intertied, interdependent; interchanged, converse

9 **interacting,** interactive, interworking, interplaying; in gear, in mesh; dovetailed, mortised; cooperative, **cooperating** 450.5

10 **reciprocal,** reciprocative, tit-for-tat, seesaw, seesawing; **corresponding,** correspondent, answering, analogous, homologous, equipollent, tantamount, equivalent, coequal; **complementary,** complemental

11 **mutual,** commutual, **common, joint, communal,** shared, sharing, conjoint; respective, two-way, cooperative

ADVS 12 **reciprocally,** back and forth, backward and forward, backwards and forwards, alternately, seesaw, to and fro; vice versa

13 **mutually, commonly,** communally, **jointly;** respectively, each to each; *entre nous* <Fr>, *inter se* <L>

WORD ELEMENTS 14 equi-

778 SAMENESS

NOUNS 1 **sameness, identity,** identicalness, selfsameness, indistinguishability, undifferentiation, nondifferentiation, two peas in a pod; **coincidence,** correspondence, agreement, congruence; **equivalence, equality** 790, coequality; **synonymousness,** synonymity, synonymy; **oneness, unity,** homogeneity, consubstantiality

2 **identification,** likening, unification, coalescence, combination, union, fusion, merger, blending, melding, synthesis

3 **the same, selfsame,** very same, one and the same, identical same, no other, none other, very *or* actual thing, a distinction without a difference, the same difference <nf>; **equivalent** 783.3; **synonym;** homonym, homograph, homophone; ditto <nf>, *idem* <L>, *ipsissima verba* <L, the very words>; **duplicate,** double, clone *and* cookie-cutter copy <nf>, *Doppelgänger* <Ger>, twin, very image, look-alike, dead ringer <nf>, the image of, the picture of, spitting image *and* spit and image <nf>, **exact counterpart, copy** 785.1,3–5, replica, facsimile, carbon copy

VERBS 4 **coincide, correspond,** agree, chime with, match, tally, go hand in glove with, twin; complement

5 **identify,** make one, **unify,** unite, join, combine, coalesce, synthesize, merge, blend, meld, fuse 805.3

6 **reproduce,** copy, reduplicate, **duplicate,** ditto <nf>, clone

ADJS 7 **identical,** identic; **same, selfsame,** one, **one and the same,** all the same, all one, of the same kidney; **indistinguishable,** without distinction, without difference, undifferent, undifferentiated; **alike, all alike, like** 784.10, just alike, exactly alike, like two peas in a pod; **duplicate,** reduplicated, copied, twin; **homogeneous,** consubstantial; redundant, tautological

8 **coinciding,** coincident, coincidental; **corresponding,** correspondent, congruent; complementary; **synonymous, equivalent,** six of one and half a dozen of the other <nf>; **equal** 789.7, coequal, coextensive, coterminous; in *or* at parity

ADVS 9 **identically,** synonymously, **alike;** coincidentally, correspondently, correspondingly, congruently; **equally** 790.11, coequally, coextensively, coterminously; on the same footing, on all fours with; **likewise,** the same way, just the same, as is, ditto, same here <nf>; *ibid* and *ibidem* <L>

779 CONTRARIETY

NOUNS 1 **contrariety, oppositeness, opposition** 451; **antithesis, contrast,** contraposition 215, counterposition, contradiction, contraindication, contradistinction; **antagonism,** repugnance, oppugnance, oppugnancy, **hostility,** perversity, naysaying, negativeness, orneriness <nf>, inimicalness, **antipathy,** scunner <nf>; **confrontation,** showdown, standoff, Mexican standoff <nf>, clashing, collision, cross-purposes 456.2, conflict; polarity; discrepancy, inconsistency, **disagreement** 788; antonymy

2 **the opposite, the contrary, the antithesis, the reverse,** the other way round *or* around, the inverse, the converse, the obverse, the counter; **the other side,** the mirror *or* reverse image, the other side of the coin, the flip *or* B side <nf>; the direct *or* polar opposite, the other *or* opposite extreme, other end of the spectrum; antipode, antipodes; countercheck *or* counterbalance *or* counterpoise,

offset, setoff; **opposite pole,** antipole, counterpole, counterpoint; opposite number <nf>, vis-à-vis; **antonym,** opposite, opposite term, counterterm

3 <contrarieties when joined or coexisting> self-contradiction, **paradox** 789.2, antinomy, oxymoron, ambivalence, **irony,** enantiosis, equivocation, **ambiguity**

VERBS **4** **go contrary to, run counter to,** counter, contradict, contravene, controvert, fly in the face of, be *or* play at cross-purposes, go against; **oppose,** be opposed to, go *or* run in opposition to, run counter to, side against; **conflict with,** come in conflict with, oppugn, conflict, clash; contrast with, **offset,** set off, countercheck *or* counterbalance, countervail; **counteract,** counterwork; counterpose *or* contrapose, counterpoise, juxtapose in opposition

5 **reverse,** invert, obvert, **transpose** 205.5, flip <nf>

ADJS **6** **contrary;** contrarious, perverse, **opposite,** antithetic, antithetical, **contradictory,** counter, contrapositive, contrasted; **converse, reverse,** obverse, inverse; **adverse,** adversative *or* adversive, adversarial, **opposing, opposed,** oppositive, oppositional; anti <nf>, dead against; **antagonistic,** repugnant, oppugnant, perverse, contrarious, ornery <nf>, nay-saying, negative, hostile, combative, bellicose, belligerent, inimical, antipathetic, antipathetical, discordant; inconsistent, discrepant, conflicting, clashing, at cross-purposes, confronting, **confrontational,** confrontive, squared off <nf>, face to face, vis-à-vis, eyeball to eyeball *and* toe-to-toe <nf>, at loggerheads; contradistinct; antonymous; countervailing, counterpoised, balancing, counterbalancing, compensating

7 **diametric, diametrical, diametrically opposite,** diametrically opposed, at opposite poles, in polar opposition, antipodal *or* antipodean; opposite as black and white *or* light and darkness *or* day and night *or* fire and water *or* the poles, etc, "Hyperion to a satyr"—Shakespeare

8 self-contradictory, **paradoxical,** antinomic, oxymoronic, ambivalent, **ironic;** equivocal, **ambiguous**

ADVS **9** contrarily, contrariwise, counter, conversely, inversely, **vice versa,** topsy-turvy, upside down, arsy-varsy <nf>, **on the other hand,** *per contra* <L>, **on** *or* **to the contrary,** *tout au contraire* <Fr>, at loggerheads, in flat opposition; rather, nay rather, quite the contrary, otherwise 780.11, just the other way, just the other way around, **oppositely,** just the opposite *or* reverse; by contraries, by way of opposition; against the grain, *à rebours* <Fr>; contrariously, perversely, ornerily <nf>

PREPS **10** **opposite,** over against, contra, in contrast with, contrary to, vis-à-vis

WORD ELEMENTS **11** con-, contra-, counter-

780 DIFFERENCE

NOUNS **1** **difference,** otherness, separateness, discreteness, distinctness, **distinction;** unlikeness, **dissimilarity** 787; **variation,** variance, variegation, variety, **mixture** 797, **heterogeneity, diversity; deviation,** divergence *or* divergency, departure; **disparity,** gap, inequality 790, odds; **discrepancy,** inconsistency, inconsonance, incongruity, discongruity, unconformity *or* nonconformity, disconformity, **strangeness** 870, unorthodoxy 688, incompatibility, irreconcilability; culture gap; **disagreement, dissent** 333, disaccord *or* disaccordance, inaccordance, discordance, dissonance, inharmoniousness, inharmony; **contrast,** opposition, **contrariety** 779; a far cry, a whale of a difference <nf>; biodiversity

2 **margin,** wide *or* narrow margin, **differential;** differentia, distinction, point of difference; **nicety, subtlety,** refinement, delicacy, nice *or* fine *or* delicate *or* subtle distinction, fine point; shade *or* particle of difference, **nuance,** hairline; **seeming difference,** distinction without a difference

3 **a different thing,** a different story <nf>, **something else,** something else again <nf>, *tertium quid* <L, a third something>, *autre chose* <Fr>, another kettle of fish <nf>, another tune, different breed of cat <nf>, another can of worms, horse of a different color, bird of another feather; **nothing of the kind,** no such thing, **quite another thing; other, another,** tother *and* whole nother thing *and* different ball game *and* whole different ball game <nf>, special case, exception to the rule

4 **differentiation,** differencing, **discrimination,** distinguishing, **distinction;** demarcation, limiting, drawing the line; **separation, separateness,** discreteness 801.1, division, atomization, anatomization, analysis, disjunction, segregation, severance, severalization; **modification, alteration, change** 852, tweak, variation, diversification, disequalization; **particularization,** specification, individualization, individuation, personalization, specialization

VERBS **5** **differ, vary,** diverge, stand apart, be distinguished *or* distinct; **deviate from,** diverge from, divaricate from, depart from; **disagree with,** disaccord with, conflict with, contrast with, stand over against, clash with, jar with; not be like, bear no resemblance to 787.2, not square with, not accord with, not go on all fours with; ring the changes

6 **differentiate,** difference; **distinguish, make a distinction, discriminate, secern; separate,** sever, severalize, segregate, divide; **demarcate,** mark, mark out *or* off, set off, set apart, draw a line, set limits; **modify,** vary, diversify, disequalize, **change** 852.5,6; **particularize,** individualize, individuate, personalize, specify, specialize; atomize, analyze, anatomize, disjoin; split hairs, sharpen *or* refine a distinction, chop logic

ADJS 7 **different,** differing; unlike, not like, **dissimilar** 787.4; **distinct,** distinguished, differentiated, discriminated, discrete, separated, separate, disjoined 802.21, widely apart; **various,** variant, varying, varied, heterogeneous, multifarious, motley, assorted, variegated, diverse, divers, **diversified** 783.4; **several,** many; **divergent,** deviative, diverging, deviating, departing; **disparate,** unequal 790.4; **discrepant,** inconsistent, inconsonant, incongruous, incongruent, unconformable, incompatible, irreconcilable; **disagreeing,** in disagreement; **at odds,** at variance, clashing, inaccordant, disaccordant, discordant, dissonant, inharmonious, out of tune; **contrasting,** contrasted, poles apart, poles asunder, worlds apart; **contrary** 779.6; **discriminable,** separable, severable

8 **other, another,** whole nother <nf>, else, otherwise, other than *or* from; not the same, not the type <nf>, not that sort, of another sort, of a sort *and* of sorts <nf>; **unique,** one of a kind, rare, **special,** peculiar, *sui generis* <L, of its own kind>, in a class by itself

9 **differentiative,** differentiating, diacritic, diacritical, differential; **distinguishing,** discriminating, discriminative, discriminatory, characterizing, individualizing, individuating, personalizing, differencing, separative; diagnostic; **distinctive,** contrastive, characteristic, peculiar, idiosyncratic

ADVS 10 **differently,** diversely, variously; in a different manner, in another way, with a difference; differentiatingly, distinguishingly

11 **otherwise,** in other ways, **in other respects;** elsewise, else, or else; than; other than; **on the other hand;** contrarily 779.9; alias

WORD ELEMENTS 12 all-, de-, dis-, heter-, xen-

781 UNIFORMITY

NOUNS 1 **uniformity, evenness,** equability; **steadiness,** stability 855, steadfastness, firmness, unbrokenness, seamlessness, constancy, unwaveringness, undeviatingness, persistence, perseverance, continuity, **consistency;** consonance, correspondence, accordance; unity, **homogeneity,** consubstantiality, monolithism; **equanimity,** equilibrium, unruffledness, serenity, tranquility, calm, calmness, cool <nf>

2 **regularity, constancy,** invariability, unvariation, undeviation, even tenor *or* pace, smoothness, clockwork regularity; **sameness** 778, **monotony,** monotonousness, undifferentiation, the same old thing <nf>, the daily round *or* routine, the treadmill; monotone, drone, dingdong, singsong, monologue

VERBS 3 **persist, prevail,** persevere, run true to form *or* type, continue the same; drag on *or* along; hum, drone

4 **make uniform,** uniformize; **regulate,** regularize, normalize, stabilize, damp; **even, equalize,** symmetrize, harmonize, balance, balance up, equilibrize; **level,** level out *or* off, smooth, smooth out, even, even out, flatten; **homogenize, assimilate,** standardize, stereotype; clone <nf>

ADJS 5 **uniform, equable,** equal, **even; level,** flat, smooth; **regular, constant,** steadfast, persistent, continuous; **unvaried,** unruffled, unbroken, seamless, undiversified, undifferentiated, unchanged; invariable, unchangeable, immutable; **unvarying,** undeviating, unchanging, steady, stable; cloned *or* clonish *and* cookie-cutter <nf>; **ordered,** balanced, measured; **orderly,** methodical, systematic, mechanical, faceless, robotlike, automatic; **consistent,** consonant, correspondent, accordant, homogeneous, **alike,** all alike, all of a piece, of a piece, consubstantial, monolithic; nonsexist, inclusive, nondiscriminatory

6 **same,** wall-to-wall, back-to-back; **monotonous, humdrum,** unrelieved, repetitive, drab, gray, ho-hum <nf>, samey <Brit nf>, usual, as usual; tedious, boring

ADVS 7 **uniformly,** equably, **evenly;** monotonously, in a rut *or* groove, dully, tediously, routinely, unrelievedly

8 **regularly; constantly, steadily,** continually; **invariably,** without exception, at every turn, every time one turns around, all the time, all year round, week in week out, year in year out, day in day out, never otherwise; methodically, orderly, systematically; **always** 829.11; like clockwork

WORD ELEMENTS 9 equi-, hol-, hom-, is-, mon-

782 NONUNIFORMITY

NOUNS 1 **nonuniformity, unevenness, irregularity,** raggedness, crazy-quilt, choppiness, jerkiness, **disorder** 810; **difference** 780; inequality; **inconstancy, inconsistency,** variability, changeability, changeableness, mutability, capriciousness, mercuriality, wavering, **instability, unsteadiness; variation, deviation,** deviance, divergence, differentiation, divarication, ramification; versatility, **diversity,** diversification, nonformalization; **nonconformity,** nonconformism, unconformity, unconformism, **unorthodoxy; pluralism,** variegation, variety, variousness, motleyness, dappleness; multiculturalism, multiculturism

VERBS 2 **diversify, vary,** variegate 47.7, chop and change, waver, mutate; **differentiate,** divaricate, diverge, ramify; **differ** 780.5; dissent 333.4; **disunify,** break up, break down, fragment, partition, **analyze** 801.6

ADJS 3 **nonuniform,** ununiform, **uneven, irregular,** ragged, erose, choppy, jerky, jagged, rough, disorderly, unsystematic; **different** 779.7, unequal, unequable; **inconstant, inconsistent, variable,** varying, **changeable,** changing, mutable, capricious, impulsive, mercurial, erratic, spasmodic, sporadic, wavery, wavering, **unstable, unsteady;** deviating, deviative, deviatory, divergent, divaricate, ramified; **diversified,** variform, diversiform, nonformal; **nonconformist,** unorthodox; **pluralistic,** variegated, various, motley 47.9,12; multicultural, multiracial

ADVS 4 **nonuniformly,** ununiformly, unequally, **unevenly, irregularly,** inconstantly, **inconsistently,** unsteadily, erratically, spasmodically, by fits and starts, capriciously, impulsively, sporadically; unsystematically, chaotically, helter-skelter, higgledy-piggledy; in all manner of ways, every which way <nf>, all over the shop *and* all over the ball park <nf>; here there and everywhere

WORD ELEMENTS 5 diversi-, vari-, heter-

783 MULTIFORMITY

NOUNS 1 **multiformity,** multifariousness, **variety,** nonuniformity 782, **diversity,** diversification, variation, variegation 47, variability, versatility, proteanism, manifoldness, multiplicity, heterogeneity; omniformity, omnifariousness; pluralism, multiculturalism; everything but the kitchen sink <nf>, all colors of the rainbow, polymorphism, heteromorphism; allotropy *or* allotropism <chemistry>; Proteus, shapeshifting, shapeshifter; "her infinite variety"—Shakespeare

VERBS 2 **diversify, vary,** change form, change shape, shift shape, ring changes, cover the spectrum, **variegate** 47.7; branch out, spread one's wings; have many irons in the fire

ADJS 3 **multiform,** diversiform, variable, versatile; **protean,** proteiform; **manifold,** multifold, multiplex, multiple, multifarious, multiphase; polymorphous, polymorphic, heteromorphous, heteromorphic, metamorphic; omniform, omniformal, omnifarious, omnigenous; allotropic *or* allotropical <chemistry>

4 **diversified, varied, assorted,** heterogeneous, nonuniform; **various,** many and various, divers <old>, diverse, sundry, **several, many;** of all sorts *or* conditions *or* kinds *or* shapes *or* descriptions *or* types; multiethnic, multicultural

ADVS 5 **variously, severally,** sundrily, multifariously, diversely, manifoldly

WORD ELEMENTS 6 allo-, diversi-, heter-, multi-, omni-, parti-, party-, poecil- *or* poikil-, poly-, vari-

784 SIMILARITY

NOUNS 1 **similarity, likeness,** alikeness, **sameness,** similitude; **resemblance,** semblance; **analogy, correspondence,** conformity, accordance, agreement, comparability, commensurability, comparison, **parallelism, parity,** community, alliance, consimilarity; **approximation,** approach, closeness, nearness; assimilation, likening, **simile, metaphor**, parable, allegory; **simulation, imitation,** copying, aping, mimicking, taking-off, takeoff, burlesque, pastiche, *pasticcio* <Ital>; identity 778.1; equivalence

2 **kinship,** affinity, connection, family resemblance *or* likeness, family favor, generic *or* genetic resemblance; connaturality *or* connaturalness, connature, connateness, congeneracy; compatibility

3 **likeness,** like, the like of *or* the likes of <nf>, point of likeness, point in common; suchlike, such; **analogue, parallel;** cognate, congener; **counterpart, complement, correspondent,** pendant, similitude, tally; **approximation,** rough idea, sketch; coordinate, reciprocal, obverse, equivalent; correlate, correlative; **close imitation** *or* reproduction *or* copy *or* facsimile *or* replica, near duplicate, simulacrum; **close match, match-up, fellow, mate;** soul mate, kindred spirit *or* soul, **companion, twin,** brother, sister, brother *or* sister under the skin; *mon semblable* <Fr>, second self, alter ego; a chip off the old block; **look-alike,** the image of, the picture of, shadow, another edition

4 **close** *or* **striking resemblance,** startling *or* marked *or* decided resemblance; close *or* near likeness; **faint** *or* **remote resemblance,** mere hint *or* shadow

5 **set,** group, matching pair *or* set, his and hers <nf>, couple, pair, twins, look-alikes, two of a kind, birds of a feather, peas in a pod

6 <of words or sounds> assonance, alliteration, rhyme, slant rhyme, near rhyme, jingle, clink; pun, paronamasia

VERBS 7 resemble, be like, bear resemblance; put one in mind of <nf>, remind one of, bring to mind, be reminiscent of, suggest, evoke, call up, call to mind; **look like,** favor <nf>, mirror; **take after,** partake of, follow, appear *or* seem like, sound like; savor *or* smack of, be redolent of; **have all the earmarks of,** have every appearance of, have all the features of, have all the signs of, have every sign *or* indication of; **approximate,** approach, near, come near, come close; **compare with,** stack up with <nf>; **correspond, match, parallel**, connect, relate; not tell apart, not tell one from the other; **imitate** 336.5, **simulate,** copy, ape, mimic, take off, counterfeit; nearly reproduce *or* duplicate *or* reduplicate

8 **similarize,** approximate, assimilate, bring near; connaturalize

9 **assonate,** alliterate, rhyme, chime; pun

ADJS 10 **similar, like, alike,** something like, not unlike; **resembling,** resemblant, following, favoring <nf>, savoring *or* smacking of, suggestive of, **on the order of;** consimilar; **simulated, imitated,** imitation, copied, aped, mimicked, taken off, fake *or* phony <nf>, counterfeit, **mock,** synthetic, ersatz; nearly reproduced *or* duplicated *or* reduplicated; uniform with, homogeneous, identical 778.7

11 **analogous,** comparable; **corresponding,** correspondent, equivalent; **parallel,** paralleling; **matching,** cast in the same mold, of a kind, of a size, of a piece; duplicate, twin, of the same hue *or* stripe

12 **such as,** suchlike, so

13 **akin,** affinitive, related; connatural, connate, cognate, agnate, enate, conspecific, correlative; congenerous, congeneric, congenerical; brothers *or* sisters under the skin

14 **approximating,** approximative, approximate, approximable; **near, close;** much of a muchness <Brit nf>, much the same, much at one, nearly the same, same but different, "like—but oh! how different"—Wordsworth; quasi, pseudo

15 **very like, mighty like,** powerful like <nf>, uncommonly like, remarkably like, extraordinarily like, strikingly like, **ridiculously like, for all the world like,** as like as can be; a lot alike, pretty much the same, the same difference *and* damned little difference <nf>; as like as two peas in a pod, *comme deux gouttes d'eau* <Fr, like two drops of water>; faintly *or* remotely like

16 **lifelike,** speaking, faithful, living, breathing, to the life, **true to life** *or* nature; **realistic, natural**

17 <of words or sounds> assonant, assonantal, alliterative, alliteral; **rhyming,** jingling, chiming, punning

ADVS 18 **similarly,** correspondingly, **like, likewise,** either; in the same manner, **in like manner,** in kind; in that way, like that, like this; **thus** 765.10; so; by the same token, by the same sign; identically 778.9

19 **so to speak,** in a manner of speaking, **as it were,** in a manner, in a way; kind of *and* sort of <nf>

785 COPY

NOUNS 1 **copy, representation, facsimile, image, likeness** 784.3, **resemblance,** semblance, similitude, picture, portrait, life mask, death mask, icon, simulacrum; ectype; pastiche, *pasticcio* <Ital>; fair copy, faithful copy; certified copy; **imitation** 336.3, **counterfeit** 354.13, forgery, fake *and* phony <nf>

2 reproduction, duplication, reduplication; reprography; transcription; tracing, rubbing; mimeography, xerography, hectography

3 **duplicate, duplication,** dupe and ditto <nf>; **double,** cookie-cutter copy, clone; representation, **reproduction, replica,** repro <nf>, reduplication, facsimile, model, **counterpart;** a chip off the old block; triplicate, quadruplicate, etc; repetition 849

4 **transcript, transcription,** apograph, tenor <law>; **transfer,** tracing, rubbing, **carbon copy,** carbon; manifold <old>; microcopy, microform; microfiche, fiche; recording

5 **print,** offprint; **impression,** impress; **reprint,** proof, reproduction proof, repro proof *and* repro <nf>, second edition; photostatic copy, Photostat <trademark>, stat <nf>; mimeograph copy, Ditto copy <trademark>, hectograph copy, xerographic copy, Xerox copy <trademark> *or* Xerox <trademark>; **facsimile,** fax <nf>; **photograph,** positive, negative, print, enlargement, contact print, photocopy

6 **cast,** casting; mold, **molding,** die, stamp, seal

7 **reflection,** reflex; **shadow,** silhouette, outline 211.2; **echo**

VERBS 8 **copy, reproduce,** replicate, **duplicate,** dupe <nf>; clone; reduplicate; **transcribe;** trace; double; triplicate, quadruplicate, etc; manifold <old>, multigraph, mimeograph, mimeo, Photostat <trademark>, stat <nf>, facsimile, fax <nf>, hectograph, ditto, Xerox <trademark>; microcopy, microfilm

ADVS 9 in duplicate, in triplicate, etc

786 MODEL
<thing copied>

NOUNS 1 **model, pattern, standard, criterion,** classic example, rule, mirror, paradigm; showpiece, showplace; **original,** urtext, *locus classicus* <L>;

type, prototype, antetype, **archetype,** genotype, biotype, type specimen, type species; **precedent**

2 **example,** exemplar; **representative,** type, symbol, emblem, exponent; **exemplification,** illustration, demonstration, explanation; **instance,** relevant instance, **case,** typical example *or* case, case in point, object lesson

3 **sample, specimen;** piece, taste, swatch; instance, for-instance <nf>

4 **ideal,** beau ideal, ego ideal, ideal type, acme, highest *or* perfect *or* best type; cynosure, apotheosis, idol; **shining example,** role-model, **hero, superhero; model,** the very model, mirror, paragon, epitome; cult figure

5 artist's model, dressmaker's model, photographer's model, mannequin; dummy, lay figure; clay model, wood model, pilot model, mock-up

6 **mold, form** 262, cast, template, matrix, negative; **die,** punch, stamp, intaglio, seal, mint; last, shoe last

VERBS 7 **set an example,** set the pace, lead the way; **exemplify,** epitomize, fit the pattern; **emulate,** follow, hold up as a model, model oneself on

ADJS 8 **model, exemplary,** precedential, typical, paradigmatic, representative, standard, normative, classic; ideal

9 **prototypal,** prototypic, prototypical, archetypal, archetypic, archetypical, antitypic, antitypical

787 DISSIMILARITY

NOUNS 1 **dissimilarity,** unsimilarity; **dissimilitude,** dissemblance, **unresemblance; unlikeness,** unsameness; **disparity,** diversity, divergence, gap, **contrast, difference** 780; nonuniformity 782; uncomparability, uncomparableness, incomparability, incomparableness, uncommensurableness, uncommensurability, incommensurableness, incommensurability, no resemblance, no common ground; culture gap; **disguise,** dissimilation, camouflage, masking; cosmetics; poor imitation, bad likeness *or* copy, botched copy, mere caricature *or* counterfeit

VERBS 2 **not resemble, bear no resemblance,** not look like, **not compare with; differ** 780.5; have little *or* nothing in common; diverge, deviate

3 disguise, dissimilate, camouflage; do a cosmetic job on; vary 852.6

ADJS 4 **dissimilar,** unsimilar, unresembling, unresemblant; **unlike, unalike,** unidentical; **disparate,** diverse, divergent, **contrasting, different** 779.7; nonuniform 782.3; scarcely like, hardly like, a bit *or* mite different; **off,** a bit on the off side, offbeat <nf>; unmatched, odd, counter, out

5 **nothing like,** not a bit alike, not a bit of it, **nothing of the sort,** nothing of the kind, something else, something else again <nf>, different as night from day, quite another thing, cast in a different mold, not the same thing at all; not so you could tell it *and* not that you would know it and **far from it** *and* far other <nf>; way off, away off, a mile off, way out, no such thing, no such a thing <nf>; "no more like than an apple to an oyster"—Sir Thomas More

6 **uncomparable,** not comparable, not to be compared, incomparable; incommensurable, uncommensurable, uncommensurate, incommensurate; unrelated, extraneous

ADVS 7 **dissimilarly, differently** 780.10, with a difference, disparately, contrastingly

788 AGREEMENT

NOUNS 1 **agreement, accord** 455, accordance; **concord,** concordance; **harmony, cooperation** 450, peace 464, *rapport* <Fr>, concert, consort, **consonance,** unisonance, **unison,** union, chorus, oneness; **correspondence,** coincidence, intersection, overlap, parallelism, symmetry, tally, equivalence 778.1; congeniality, compatibility, affinity; **conformity,** conformance, conformation, uniformity 780; congruity, congruence, congruency; **consistency,** self-consistency, coherence; synchronism, sync <nf>, timing; **assent** 332

2 **understanding,** entente; mutual *or* cordial understanding, consortium, *entente cordiale* <Fr>; **compact** 437

3 <general agreement> consensus, consentaneity, consentaneousness, *consensus omnium* <L, consent of all> and *consensus gentium* <L, consent of the people>, sense, **unanimity** 332.5; **likemindedness,** meeting *or* intersection *or* confluence of minds, sense of the meeting; family feeling; good vibrations <nf>

4 **adjustment, adaptation,** mutual adjustment, **compromise,** coaptation, arbitration, arbitrament; **regulation,** attunement, harmonization, **coordination,** accommodation, squaring, integration, assimilation; reconciliation, reconcilement, synchronization; consensus-building *or* -seeking

5 **fitness** *or* fittedness, **suitability, appropriateness,** propriety, admissibility; **aptness,** aptitude, qualification; **relevance** 775.4, felicity, appositeness, applicability

VERBS 6 **agree, accord** 455.2, **harmonize, concur** 332.9, have no problem with, go along with <nf>, **cooperate** 450.3, **correspond, conform,** coincide, parallel, intersect, overlap, **match,** tally, hit, register, lock, interlock, check <nf>, square, dovetail, jibe <nf>; **be consistent,** cohere, stand *or* hold *or* hang together, fall in together, fit together, chime, chime with, chime in with; **assent** 332.8, come to an agreement 332.10, be of one *or* the same *or* like mind, subscribe to, see eye to eye, sing in chorus, have a meeting of the minds, climb on the bandwagon; **go together,** go with, conform with, be uniform with, square with, sort *or* assort with, go on all fours with, consist with, register with, answer *or* respond to

7 <make agree> **harmonize,** coordinate, bring into line, accord, make uniform 781.4, equalize 790.6, similarize, assimilate, homologize; pull together; **adjust, set,** regulate, **accommodate, reconcile,** synchronize, sync <nf>; adapt, fit, tailor, measure, proportion, adjust to, trim to, cut to, gear to, key to; fix, **rectify,** true, true up, right, set right, make plumb; **tune,** attune, put in tune

8 **suit,** fit, suit *or* fit to a tee, fit like a glove, **qualify, do,** serve, answer, be OK <nf>, do the job *and* do the trick *and* fill the bill *and* cut the mustard <nf>

ADJS 9 **agreeing, in agreement; in accord, concurring,** positive, affirmative, in rapport, *en rapport* <Fr>, **in harmony,** in accordance, in sync <nf>, **at one,** on all fours, of one *or* the same *or* like mind, **like-minded,** consentient, consentaneous, **unanimous** 332.15, unisonous *or* unisonant; **harmonious,** accordant, **concordant,** consonant; **consistent,** self-consistent; uniform, coherent, conformable, of a piece, equivalent, **coinciding** 778.8, coincident, corresponding *or* correspondent; answerable, reconcilable; commensurate, proportionate; **congruous,** congruent; **agreeable,** congenial, compatible, cooperating *or* cooperative 450.5, coexisting *or* coexistent, symbiotic; **synchronized,** synchronous, synchronic; empathetic

10 **apt, apposite, appropriate, suitable;** applicable, relevant, pertinent, likely, sortable, seasonable, opportune; **fitting,** befitting, **suiting,** becoming; **fit,** fitted, qualified, **suited,** adapted, geared, tailored, dovetailing, meshing; **right,** just right, well-chosen, **pat,** happy, felicitous, just what the doctor ordered <nf>; to the point, to the purpose, *ad rem* <L>, *à propos* <Fr>, **apropos,** on the button *and* on the money <nf>, spot-on <Brit nf>

ADVS 11 **in step,** in concert, **in unison,** in chorus, **in line, in conformity, in keeping,** hand in glove, just right; with it <nf>; **unanimously, as one, with one voice, harmoniously,** concordantly, consonantly, in synchronization, in sync <nf>, **by consensus;** agreeably, congenially, compatibly; fittingly

PREPS 12 in agreement with, together with, with, right with, in there with, right along there with; in line with, in keeping with; together on

PHRS 13 that's it, that's the thing, that's just the thing, that's the very thing, that's the idea *and* that's the ticket <nf>; right on <nf>; touché

789 DISAGREEMENT

NOUNS 1 **disagreement, discord,** discordance *or* discordancy; **disaccord** 456, disaccordance, inaccordance; disunity, disunion; **disharmony,** unharmoniousness; dissonance, dissidence; **jarring,** clashing; **difference** 780, **variance,** divergence, diversity; **disparity,** discrepancy, inequality; antagonism, **opposition** 451, **conflict,** controversy, faction, oppugnancy, repugnance, dissension 456.3, argumentation 935.4; **dissent** 333, negation 335, contradiction; parting of the ways

2 **inconsistency, incongruity,** asymmetry, inconsonance, incoherence; **incompatibility,** irreconcilability, incommensurability; disproportion, disproportionateness, nonconformity *or* unconformity, nonconformability *or* unconformability, heterogeneity, heterodoxy, unorthodoxy, heresy; self-contradiction, paradox, antinomy, oxymoron, **ambiguity** 539.2, ambivalence, equivocality, equivocalness, mixed message *or* signal

3 **unfitness, inappropriateness, unsuitability,** impropriety; **inaptness,** inaptitude, **inappositeness, irrelevance** *or* irrelevancy, infelicity, uncongeniality, inapplicability, inadmissibility; abnormality, anomaly; **maladjustment,** misjoining, misjoinder; mismatch, mismatchment; misalliance, *mésalliance* <Fr>

4 **misfit, nonconformist,** individualist, inner-directed person, oddball <nf>; **freak,** sport, anomaly; naysayer, crosspatch, dissenter; a fish out of water, a square peg in a round hole <nf>

VERBS 5 **disagree, differ** 780.5, vary, not see eye-to-eye, be at cross-purposes, tangle assholes <nf>, **disaccord** 456.8, **conflict,** clash, **jar,** jangle, jostle, collide, square off, cross swords, break, break off; **mismatch,** mismate, mismarry, misally; part company, split up; **dissent** 333.4, agree to disagree, object, **negate** 335.3, **contradict,** counter; be *or* march out of step, "hear a different drummer" —Thoreau

ADJS 6 **disagreeing, differing** 780.7, **discordant** 456.15, disaccordant; dissonant, dissident; **inharmonious,** unharmonious, disharmonious; discrepant, disproportionate; divergent, variant; at variance, **at odds,** at war, at daggers drawn, at opposite poles, at loggerheads, at cross-purposes; **hostile,** antipathetic, antagonistic, repugnant;

inaccordant, out of accord, out of whack <nf>; **jarring,** clashing, grating, jangling; **contradictory, contrary; disagreeable,** cross, cranky, disputatious, ornery <nf>, negative, uncongenial, incompatible; immiscible <chem>

7 **inappropriate, inapt,** unapt, inapposite, misplaced, **irrelevant,** malapropos, *mal à propos* <Fr>; **unsuited,** ill-suited; **unfitted,** ill-fitted; **maladjusted,** unadapted, ill-adapted; ill-sorted, ill-assorted, ill-chosen; ill-matched, ill-mated, mismatched, mismated, mismarried, misallied; **unfit,** inept, unqualified; unfitting, unbefitting; **unsuitable,** improper, **unbecoming,** unseemly; infelicitous, inapplicable, inadmissible; **unseasonable, untimely,** ill-timed; **out of place,** out of line, out of keeping, out of character, out of proportion, out of joint, out of tune, out of time, out of season, out of its element

8 **inconsistent, incongruous, inconsonant,** inconsequent, incoherent, **incompatible,** irreconcilable; incommensurable, incommensurate; disproportionate, out of proportion, self-contradictory, paradoxical, oxymoronic, **absurd; abnormal,** anomalous; misfiting; ambivalent, ambiguous

9 **nonconformist,** individualistic, inner-directed, perverse; **unorthodox,** heterodox, heretical

PREPS **10 in disagreement with, against,** agin <nf>, counter to, clean counter to, **contrary to,** in defiance of, in contempt of, in opposition to; out of line with, not in keeping with

WORD ELEMENTS **11** contra-, counter-, dis-, ill-, mal-, mis-

790 EQUALITY

NOUNS **1 equality, parity,** par, equation, **identity** 778.1; equivalence *or* equivalency, convertibility, **correspondence,** parallelism, equipollence, coequality; **likeness,** levelness, evenness, coextension; **balance,** poise, equipoise, **equilibrium,** equiponderance; symmetry, proportion; level playing field; **justice** 649, equity, equal rights

2 **equating, equation; equalizing,** equilibration, evening, evening up; coordination, integration, accommodation, adjustment; **even break** *and* fair shake <nf>, affirmative action, equal opportunity

3 **the same** 778.3; **tie, draw, standoff** *and* Mexican standoff *and* wash *and* dead heat <nf>, stalemate, deadlock, impasse, neck-and-neck race, photo finish, even money; tied *or* knotted score, deuce; a distinction without a difference, six of one and half a dozen of the other, Tweedledum and Tweedledee

4 **equal, match,** mate, twin, fellow, **like, equivalent,** opposite number, counterpart, answer <nf>, vis à vis, equipollent, coequal, parallel, ditto <nf>; **peer,** compeer, colleague, peer group

VERBS **5 equal, match, rival, correspond, be even-steven,** be tantmount to, be equal to; **keep pace with, keep step with, run abreast; amount to,** come to, come down to, run to, reach, touch; **measure up to,** come up to, stack up with <nf>, match up with; lie on a level with, **balance, parallel,** ditto <nf>; break even <nf>; **tie, draw,** knot; go shares, go halves, go Dutch

6 **equalize; equate; even,** equal out, equal, even up, even off, square, level, level out, level off, make both ends meet, synchronize; **balance,** strike a balance, poise, balance out, balance the accounts, balance the books; **compensate,** make up for, counterpoise; countervail, counterbalance, cancel; coordinate, integrate, proportion; fit, accommodate, adjust

ADJS **7 equal, equalized,** like, **alike, even,** level, par, **on a par,** at par, at parity, au pair, commensurate, proportionate, flush; on the same level, on the same plane, on the same *or* equal footing; on terms of equality, **on even** *or* **equal terms,** on even ground; on a level, on a level playing field, on a footing, in the same boat; **square,** quits, zero-sum, even-steven <nf>; half-and-half, **fifty-fifty;** nip and tuck, **drawn, tied,** neck-and-neck <nf>, abreast, too close to call, deadlocked, stalemated, knotted

8 **equivalent, tantamount,** equiparant, equipollent, coequal, coordinate; **identical** 778.7; corresponding *or* correspondent; convertible, much the same, as broad as long, neither more nor less, **all one,** all the same, neither here nor there

9 **balanced, poised,** apoise, **on an even keel;** equibalanced, equiponderant *or* equiponderous

10 **equisized,** equidimensional, equiproportional, equispaced; equiangular, isogonic, isometric; equilateral, equisided; coextensive

ADVS **11 equally, correspondingly, proportionately,** equivalently, **evenly; identically** 778.9; without distinction, indifferently; to the same degree, *ad eundem* <L>; as, **so;** as well; to all intents and purposes, other things being equal, *ceteris paribus* <L>; as much as to say

12 to a standoff <nf>, to a tie *or* draw

WORD ELEMENTS **13** co-, equi-, aequi-, homal-, is-, pari-

791 INEQUALITY

NOUNS **1 inequality, disparity, unevenness, contrariety** 779, **difference** 780; **irregularity,** nonuniformity 782, heterogeneity; **disproportion,** asymmetry; **unbalance,** imbalance, disequilibrium, overbalance, inclination of the balance, overcompensation, tippiness; **inadequacy,** insufficiency, shortcoming; **odds,** handicap; **injustice,** inequity, tilting of the scales, unfair discrimination, second-class citizenship, untouchability; unfair advantage, loaded dice

VERBS **2** **unequalize,** disproportion

3 **unbalance,** disbalance, disequilibrate, overbalance, overcompensate, **throw off balance,** upset, skew, destabilize

ADJS **4** **unequal,** disparate, **uneven; irregular** 782.3; disproportionate, **out of proportion,** skew, skewed, asymmetric *or* asymmetrical; mismatched *or* ill-matched, ill-sorted; **inadequate,** insufficient; at a disadvantage

5 **unbalanced, ill-balanced,** overbalanced, off-balance, tippy, listing, heeling, leaning, canting, top-heavy, off-center; **lopsided,** slaunchways *and* cockeyed *and* skewgee *and* skygodlin <nf>, skew-whiff <Brit nf>; **unstable,** unsteady, tender <nautical>

ADVS **6** **unequally,** disparately, disproportionately, variously, **unevenly;** nonuniformly 782.4

792 WHOLE

NOUNS **1** **whole, totality, entirety,** collectivity; complex; integration, embodiment; **unity, integrity, wholeness;** organic unity, oneness; integer

2 **total, sum,** sum total, sum and substance, **the amount,** whole *or* gross amount, grand total; entity

3 **all, the whole, the entirety, everything,** all the above *or* all of the above <nf>, the aggregate, the assemblage, one and all, all and sundry, each and every <nf>, complete works; **package,** set, complement, package deal; **the lot,** the corpus, all she wrote <nf>, **the ensemble; be-all,** be-all and end-all, beginning and end, "alpha and omega"—Bible, A to Z, A to izzard, the whole range *or* spectrum, length and breadth, sum and substance; everything from soup to nuts *and* everything but the kitchen sink <nf>; grand design, world view, big picture

4 <nf terms> **whole bunch, whole mess, whole caboodle, the kit and caboodle, whole kit and caboodle,** whole kit and boodle, whole bit *or* shtick, whole megillah, **whole shooting match,** whole hog, whole animal <old>, **whole deal,** whole schmear, **whole shebang,** whole works, the works, the full monty <Brit nf>, whole ball of wax, whole show, whole nine yards

5 **wholeness,** totality, **completeness** 794, **unity, fullness,** inclusiveness, exhaustiveness, comprehensiveness; holism, holistic *or* total approach; universality

6 **major part, best part,** better part, **most; majority,** generality, plurality; **bulk, mass,** body, main body; **lion's share; substance,** gist, meat, essence, thrust, gravamen

VERBS **7** **form** *or* **make a whole,** constitute a whole; **integrate,** unite, form a unity

8 **total, amount to, come to, run to** *or* **into,** mount up to, add up to, tot *or* tot up to <nf>, tote *or* tote up to <nf>, reckon up to <nf>, aggregate to; aggregate, unitize; **number, comprise,** contain, encompass

ADJS **9** <not partial> **whole, total, entire,** aggregate, gross, all; integral, integrated; **one,** one and indivisible; **inclusive,** all-inclusive, **exhaustive,** comprehensive, omnibus, all-embracing, across-the-board, global; holistic; universal

10 **intact,** untouched, undamaged 1002.8, all in one piece <nf>, unimpaired, virgin, pristine, unspoiled, pure

11 **undivided,** uncut, unsevered, unclipped, uncropped, unshorn; **undiminished,** unreduced, complete

12 **unabridged,** uncondensed, unexpurgated

ADVS **13** <not partially> **wholly, entirely,** all; **totally,** *in toto* <L>, from start to finish, from soup to nuts <nf>, from A to Z, from A to izzard, across the board; **altogether, all put together,** in its entirety, *tout ensemble* <Fr>; **in all,** on all counts, in all respects, at large; **as a whole, in the aggregate,** in the lump, in the gross, in bulk, in the mass, *en masse* <Fr>, *en bloc* <Fr>; **collectively, corporately,** bodily, in a body, as a body; lock, stock, and barrel; hook, line, and sinker

14 **on the whole, in the long run, over the long haul, all in all,** to all intents and purposes, on balance, **by and large, in the main, mainly, mostly, chiefly,** substantially, essentially, effectually, **for the most part,** almost entirely, for all practical purposes, **virtually;** approximately, nearly, all but

WORD ELEMENTS **15** pan-, pant-, panta-, coen-

793 PART

NOUNS **1** **part, portion, fraction;** percentage; **division** 802.1; **share,** parcel, dole, quota, piece *or* piece of the action <nf>; cut *and* slice *and* vigorish <nf>; **section,** sector, **segment;** quarter, quadrant; **item,** detail, particular; installment; **subdivision,** subset, subgroup, subspecies; detachment, contingent; **cross section,** sample, random sample, sampling; **component** 796.2, module, constituent, ingredient; **adjunct** 254; **remainder** 256; minority

2 <part of writing> section, front *or* back matter, prologue, epilogue, foreword, preface, introduction, afterword, text, chapter, verse, article; sentence, clause, phrase, segment, string, constituent, paragraph, passage; number, book, fascicle; sheet, folio, page, signature, gathering

3 **piece, particle, bit, scrap** 248.3, bite, **fragment, morsel, crumb,** shard, potsherd, snatch, snack, appetizer; **cut,** cutting, clip, clipping, paring, shaving, rasher, snip, snippet, chip, slice, collop, dollop, scoop; **tatter, shred,** stitch; **splinter,** sliver; **shiver, smithereen** <nf>; **lump,** gob <nf>, gobbet, **hunk, chunk; stump,** butt, end, butt-end, fag-end, tail-end; modicum 248.2, moiety; bits and pieces, odds and ends; sound bite, outtake

4 **member, organ;** appendage; **limb; branch,** imp, bough, twig, sprig, spray, switch; runner, tendril; **off-shoot,** ramification, scion, spur; **arm** 906.5, **leg,** tail; hand 474.4; **wing,** pinion; lobe, lobule, hemisphere; facet, feature, integrant, integral part

5 **dose, portion;** slug *and* shot *and* nip *and* snort *and* dram <nf>; helping

VERBS 6 **separate,** apportion, share, share out, distribute, cut, cut up, slice, slice up, divide 802.18; **analyze** 800.6

ADJS 7 **partial,** part; **fractional,** sectional, componential, partitive; segmentary, segmental, modular; **fragmentary;** incomplete 794.4, open-ended

ADVS 8 **partly, partially,** part, **in part**

9 **piece by piece, bit by bit,** part by part, **little by little,** inch by inch, foot by foot, drop by drop; **piecemeal,** piecewise, bitwise, inchmeal, by inchmeal; **by degrees,** by inches; **by** *or* **in snatches,** by *or* in installments, in lots, in small doses, in driblets, in dribs and drabs; in detail

WORD ELEMENTS 10 organo-; chir-; ali-, pter-, pterus-, pteryg-

794 COMPLETENESS

NOUNS 1 **completeness, totality; wholeness** 792.5, **entireness, entirety; unity,** integrity, integrality, undividedness, intactness, untouchedness, unbrokenness; solidity, solidarity; **thoroughness,** exhaustiveness, unstintedness, inclusiveness, comprehensiveness, universality; pervasiveness, ubiquity, omnipresence; **universe,** cosmos, plenum

2 **fullness,** full; **amplitude, plenitude;** impletion, **repletion,** plethora; saturation, saturation point, satiety, congestion

3 **full measure, fill,** full house; max <nf>; **load, capacity, complement,** lading, **charge;** the whole bit <nf>; bumper, brimmer; bellyful *and* snootful <nf>, skinful *or* mouthful <nf>; **crush,** cram <nf>, jam-up <nf>

4 **completion, fulfillment, consummation,** culmination, perfection, realization, actualization, fruition, **accomplishment** 407, topping-off, closure

5 **limit, end** 820, **extremity,** extreme, **acme,** apogee, climax, **maximum,** max <nf>, ceiling, **peak,** summit, **pinnacle,** crown, top; **utmost,** uttermost, utmost extent, highest degree, nth degree *or* power, *ne plus ultra* <L>; **all, the whole** 792.3,4, the whole hog <nf>

VERBS 6 <make whole> **complete,** bring to completion *or* fruition, mature; **fill in, fill out,** piece out, top off, eke *or* eke out, round out; **make up,** make good, replenish, refill; **accomplish** 407.4, fulfill

7 **fill, charge, load,** lade, freight, weight; **stuff, wad,** pad, **pack,** crowd, **cram,** jam, jam-pack, ram in, chock; **fill up,** fill to the brim, brim, top up *or* top off, fill to overflowing, fill the measure of; supercharge, saturate, satiate, congest; overfill 993.15, make burst at the seams, surfeit

8 <be thorough> **go to all lengths, go all out, go the limit** <nf>, go the whole way, **go the whole hog** <nf>, cover a lot of ground, make a federal case of *and* make a big deal of *and* do up brown *and* do with a vengeance <nf>, **see it through** <nf>, follow out *or* up, follow *or* prosecute to a conclusion; leave nothing undone, not overlook a bet *and* use every trick in the book <nf>; **move heaven and earth, leave no stone unturned;** put the finishing touches to

ADJS 9 **complete, whole, total,** global, **entire,** intact, solid; **full, full-fledged,** full-dress, **full-scale;** full-grown, mature, matured, ripe, developed; **uncut,** unabbreviated, undiminished, unexpurgated

10 **thorough, thoroughgoing,** thorough-paced, exhaustive, intensive, broad-based, wall-to-wall <nf>, house-to-house *and* door-to-door <nf>, A-to-Z, comprehensive, all-embracing, all-encompassing, omnibus, radical, sweeping; **pervasive,** all-pervading, ubiquitous, omnipresent, **universal; unmitigated, unqualified, unconditional,** unrestricted, unreserved, **all-out,** wholesale, whole-hog <nf>; **out-and-out, through-and-through,** outright, downright, straight; congenital, born, **consummate,** unmitigated, unalloyed, perfect, veritable, egregious, deep-dyed, dyed-in-the-wool; **utter, absolute, total; sheer,** clear, clean, **pure,** plumb <nf>, **plain,** regular <nf>

11 **full,** filled, **replete,** plenary, capacity, flush, round; **brimful,** brimming; **chock-full,** chock-a-block, chuck-full, **cram-full,** topful, no room to spare; **jam-full, jam-packed, overcrowded;** stuffed, overstuffed, **packed, crammed,** *farci* <Fr>; **swollen** 259.13, bulging, bursting, bursting at the seams, ready to burst, full to bursting, fit to bust <nf>; as full as a tick, packed like sardines *or* herrings; standing room only *or* SRO; **saturated,** satiated, soaked; fully laden, coming out of one's ears; congested; overfull 993.20, surfeited

12 **fraught,** freighted, **laden, loaded, charged,** burdened; heavy-laden; full-laden, full-fraught, full-charged, super-charged

13 **completing, fulfilling,** filling; completive *or* completory, consummative *or* consummatory, culminative, perfective; **complementary,** complemental

ADVS 14 **completely, totally,** globally, **entirely, wholly, fully,** integrally, roundly, **altogether,** hundred percent, **exhaustively,** inclusively, comprehensively, bag and baggage *and* lock, stock, and barrel <nf>; **unconditionally,** unrestrictedly, unreservedly, with no strings attached, no ifs, ands, or buts; **one and all;** outright, *tout à fait* <Fr>; **thoroughly,** inside out <nf>; in full, in full measure; to the hilt

15 **absolutely, perfectly, quite,** right, stark, clean, sheer, plumb <nf>, plain; irretrievably, unrelievedly, irrevocably

16 **utterly, to the utmost,** all the way, **all out,** flat out <Brit>, *à outrance* <Fr>, *à toute outrance* <Fr>, hammer and tongs *and* tooth and nail <nf>, **to the full, to the limit,** to the max <nf>, mondo <nf>, to the backbone, to the marrow, to the nth degree *or* power, to the sky *or* skies, to the top of one's bent, **to a fare-thee-well,** to a fare-you-well *or* fare-ye-well, to beat the band *or* the Dutch *and* nine ways to Sunday <nf>, with a vengeance, all hollow <nf>

17 **throughout, all over,** overall, **inside and out, through and through;** through thick and thin, down to the ground <nf>, **from the ground up,** from the word 'go' *and* from the git-go <nf>; **to the end** *or* **bitter end,** to the death; **at full length,** *in extenso* <L>, *ad infinitum* <L>; every inch, every whit, every bit; root and branch, head and shoulders, heart and soul; to the brim, to the hilt, neck deep, up to the ears, up to the eyes; **in every respect,** in all respects, you name it <nf>; **on all counts,** at all points, for good and all

18 **from beginning to end, from start to finish,** from end to end, **from first to last, from A to Z,** from A to izzard, from soup to nuts *and* from hell to breakfast <nf>, from cover to cover; **from top to bottom,** *de fond en comble* <Fr>; from top to toe, **from head to foot,** *a capite ad calcem* <L>, cap-a-pie; **from stem to stern,** from clew to earing, fore and aft; *ab ovo usque ad mala* <L, from eggs to apples>—Horace

WORD ELEMENTS 19 hol-, integri-, pan-, per-, tel-, teleut-

795 INCOMPLETENESS

NOUNS 1 **incompleteness,** incompletion; **deficiency,** defectiveness, imperfection, **inadequacy;** underdevelopment, hypoplasia, **immaturity,** callowness, arrestment; **sketchiness,** scrappiness, patchiness; short measure *or* weight; lick and a promise

2 <part lacking> **deficiency,** want, **lack, need, deficit,** defect, **shortage,** shortfall, underage; wantage, outage, ullage, slippage; defalcation, arrearage, default; **omission,** gap, hiatus, hole, vacuum, break, lacuna, discontinuity, interval

VERBS 3 **lack** 991.7, want, want for; fall short 910.2; be arrested, underdevelop, undergrow

ADJS 4 **incomplete, uncompleted, deficient,** defective, unfinished, imperfect, unperfected, **inadequate; undeveloped,** underdeveloped, undergrown, stunted, hypoplastic, **immature,** callow, infant, arrested, embryonic, **wanting, lacking,** needing, missing, **partial,** part, failing; in default, in arrear *or* arrears; **in short supply,** scanty; **short,** scant, shy <nf>; **sketchy,** patchy, scrappy; left hanging

5 **mutilated,** garbled, hashed, **mangled, butchered,** docked, hacked, lopped, truncated, castrated, cut short; abridged

ADVS 6 **incompletely, partially,** by halves, by *or* in half measures, in installments, in *or* by bits and pieces; **deficiently,** imperfectly, inadequately

WORD ELEMENTS 7 semi-, parti-

796 COMPOSITION

<manner of being composed>

NOUNS 1 **composition,** constitution, construction, formation, fabrication, fashioning, shaping, organization; **embodiment,** incorporation, incarnation; **make, makeup,** getup *or* setup <nf>; **building,** buildup, structure, structuring, shaping-up; **assembly,** assemblage, putting *or* piecing together; synthesis, syneresis; **combination** 804; **compound** 796.5; **junction** 799.1; **mixture** 796

2 **component, constituent, ingredient,** integrant, makings *and* fixings <nf>, **element, factor, part** 792, player, module, part and parcel; appurtenance, adjunct 254; **feature,** aspect, specialty, circumstance, detail, item

VERBS 3 **compose, constitute,** construct, fabricate; **incorporate,** embody, incarnate; **form, organize,** structure, shape, shape up; **enter into,** go into, go to make up; **make, make up, build,** build up, assemble, put *or* piece together; **consist of,** be a feature of, form a part of, combine *or* unite in, merge in; **consist,** be made up of, be constituted of, contain; **synthesize; combine** 804.3; join 799.5; **mix**

ADJS 4 **composed of,** formed of, **made of,** made up of, made out of, compact of, consisting of; composing, comprising, constituting, including, inclusive of, containing, incarnating, embodying, subsuming; contained in, embodied in

5 **component,** constituent, modular, integrant, integral; **formative,** elementary

797 MIXTURE

NOUNS 1 **mixture,** mixing, blending; **admixture,** composition, commixture, immixture, intermixture, **mingling,** minglement, commingling *or* comminglement, intermingling *or* interminglement, interlarding *or* interlardment; **eclecticism,** syncretism; **pluralism,** melting pot, multiculturism *or* multiculturalism, ethnic *or* racial *or* cultural diversity; **fusion,** interfusion, conflation; amalgamation, **integration,** alloyage, coalescence; **merger, combination** 804

2 **imbuement, impregnation, infusion,** suffusion, decoction, infiltration, instillment, instillation, permeation, pervasion, interpenetration, penetration; saturation, steeping, soaking, marination

3 **adulteration, corruption,** contamination, denaturalization, **pollution, doctoring** <nf>; fortifying, lacing, spiking <nf>; **dilution,** cutting <nf>, watering, watering down; debasement, bastardizing

4 **crossbreeding,** crossing, **interbreeding,** miscegenation; **hybridism,** hybridization, mongrelism, mongrelization; intermarriage

5 **compound, mixture, admixture,** intermixture, immixture, commixture, **composite, blend,** meld, composition, confection, concoction, **combination,** combo <nf>, ensemble, marriage; amalgam, alloy; paste, magma; cocktail

6 **hodgepodge,** hotchpotch, hotchpot; **medley, miscellany,** mélange, pastiche, *pasticcio* <Ital>, **conglomeration, assortment,** assemblage, mixed bag, ragbag, grab bag, olio, *olla podrida* <Sp>, **scramble, jumble,** mingle-mangle, **mix,** mishmash, **mess,** can of worms <nf>, dog's breakfast <Can nf>, mare's nest, rat's nest, hurrah's nest <nautical nf>, hash, patchwork, salad, gallimaufry, salmagundi, sundries, **potpourri,** stew, gumbo, sauce, slurry, omnium-gatherum, Noah's ark, **odds and ends,** oddments, all sorts, everything but the kitchen sink <nf>, all colors of the rainbow, broad spectrum, what you will

7 <slight admixture> **tinge, tincture, touch, dash, smack,** taint, tinct, tint, **trace,** vestige, hint, inkling, intimation, soupçon, suspicion, suggestion, whiff, modicum, thought, shade, tempering; sprinkling, seasoning, sauce, spice, infusion

8 **hybrid, crossbreed,** cross, mixed-blood, mixblood, **half-breed,** half-bred, half blood, half-caste; **mongrel,** cur; *ladino* <Sp>; mustee *or* mestee, *mestizo* <Sp>, *mestiza* <Sp fem>, *métis* <Fr>, *métisse* <Fr fem>; Eurasian; **mulatto,** high yellow <nf>, quadroon, quintroon, octoroon; sambo, zambo, *cafuso* <Brazil Pg>, Cape Colored <S Africa>, griqua <S Africa>; griffe; zebrule, zebrass, cattalo, mule, hinny, liger, tigon; tangelo, citrange, plumcot; alley cat

9 **mixer, blender,** beater, agitator, food processor, shaker; cement mixer, eggbeater, churn; homogenizer, colloid mill, emulsifier; crucible, melting pot

VERBS 10 **mix,** admix, commix, immix, **intermix, mingle,** bemingle, commingle, immingle, **intermingle,** interlace, interweave, intertwine, interlard, intersperse, interleave; syncretize; **blend,** interblend, stir in; **amalgamate, integrate,** alloy, coalesce, **fuse, merge,** meld, compound, compose, conflate, concoct; **combine** 805.3; mix up, hash, stir up, **scramble,** conglomerate, shuffle, **jumble,** jumble up, mingle-mangle, throw *or* toss together, entangle; knead, work; homogenize, emulsify

11 **imbue,** imbrue, **infuse,** suffuse, transfuse, breathe, **instill,** infiltrate, **impregnate, permeate,** pervade, penetrate, leaven; **tinge, tincture,** entincture, temper, color, dye, flavor, season, dredge, besprinkle; **saturate,** steep, decoct, brew

12 **adulterate, corrupt,** contaminate, **debase,** infect, denaturalize, pollute, denature, bastardize, **tamper with, doctor** *and* doctor up <nf>; **fortify,** spike <nf>, pep up <nf>, lace; **dilute,** cut <nf>, water, water down <nf>

13 **hybridize, crossbreed, cross, interbreed,** miscegenate, mongrelize

ADJS 14 **mixed, mingled,** blended, compounded, amalgamated; **combined** 805.5; **composite,** compound, **complex,** many-sided, multifaceted, intricate; **conglomerate,** pluralistic, multiracial, multicultural, multiethnic, multinational, heterogeneous, varied, **miscellaneous,** medley, motley, dappled, patchy, sundry, divers; promiscuous, indiscriminate, **scrambled, jumbled,** thrown together; half-and-half, fifty-fifty <nf>; amphibious; equivocal, **ambiguous,** ambivalent, ironic; syncretic, eclectic

15 **hybrid, mongrel,** interbred, **crossbred,** crossed, cross; **half-breed,** half-bred, half-blooded, half-caste

16 miscible, mixable, assimilable, integrable

PREPS 17 **among,** amongst, 'mongst; **amid,** mid, amidst, midst, **in the midst of, in the thick of; with,** together with

798 SIMPLICITY

<freedom from mixture or complexity>

NOUNS 1 **simplicity, purity,** simpleness, **plainness,** no frills, starkness, severity; unmixedness, monism; **unadulteration,** unsophistication, unspoiledness, intactness, fundamentality, elementarity, primitiveness *or* primitivity, primariness, naturalness; **singleness,** oneness, unity, integrity, homogeneity, uniformity 781; homeyness, unpretentiousness; unadornment

2 **simplification,** streamlining, refinement, purification, distillation; **disentanglement,** disinvolvement; uncluttering, unscrambling, unsnarling, unknotting; stripping, stripping away *or* down, paring down, narrowing, confining, bracketing; **analysis** 801; deconstruction

3 **oversimplification, oversimplicity,** oversimplifying; **simplism,** reductivism; intellectual childishness *or* immaturity, conceptual crudity

VERBS 4 **simplify,** streamline, **reduce,** reduce to elements *or* essentials, factorize; purify, refine, distill; strip, strip down; narrow, confine, bracket, zero in <nf>; streamline; oversimplify; **analyze** 801.6

5 **disinvolve,** disintricate, unmix, disembroil, **disentangle,** untangle, **unscramble, unsnarl,** unknot, untwist, unbraid, unweave, untwine, unwind, uncoil, unthread, **unravel,** ravel; **unclutter,** clarify, clear up, disambiguate, sort out, get to the core *or* nub *or* essence

ADJS 6 **simple, plain,** bare, bare-bones *and* no-frills <nf>, mere; **single,** uniform, homogeneous, of a piece; **pure,** simon-pure, pure and simple; **essential,** elementary, indivisible, **primary,** primal, primitive, prime, pristine, **irreducible, fundamental,** basic; undifferentiable *or* undifferentiated, undifferenced, monolithic; **austere,** chaste, unadorned, uncluttered, spare, stark, severe; homely, homespun, grass-roots, bread-and-butter, down-home *and* vanilla *or* plain-vanilla *and* white-bread <nf>; beginning, entry-level; common *or* garden, everyday; unpretentious; unadorned, natural

7 **unmixed, unmingled,** unblended, **uncombined,** uncompounded; unleavened; **unadulterated,** unspoiled, untouched, intact, virgin, uncorrupted, unsophisticated, unalloyed, untinged, undiluted, unfortified; **clear,** clarified, purified, refined, **distilled,** rectified; **neat, straight,** absolute, sheer, naked, bare

8 **uncomplicated, uninvolved,** incomplex, straightforward

9 **simplified,** streamlined, stripped down

10 **oversimplified,** oversimple; **simplistic,** reductive; intellectually childish *or* immature, conceptually crude

ADVS 11 **simply, plainly, purely;** merely, barely; **singly, solely,** only, **alone,** exclusively, just, simply and solely

WORD ELEMENTS 12 hapl-

799 COMPLEXITY

NOUNS 1 **complexity, complication, involvement,** complexness, involution, convolution, tortuousness, Byzantinism, *chinoiserie* <Fr>, tanglement, **entanglement,** perplexity, **intricacy,** intricateness, ramification, crabbedness, technicality, subtlety

2 **complex,** perplex <nf>, tangle, tangled skein, **mess** *and* snafu *and* fuck-up <nf>, ravel, snarl, snarl-up; knot, Gordian knot; **maze,** meander, Chinese puzzle, **labyrinth;** webwork, mesh; **wilderness, jungle,** morass, quagmire; Rube Goldberg contraption, Heath Robinson device <Brit>, wheels within wheels; mare's nest, rat's nest, hurrah's nest <nautical nf>, can of worms <nf>, snake pit; hard nut to crack, riddle of the Sphinx, squaring the circle

VERBS 3 **complicate, involve, perplex,** ramify; **confound, confuse,** muddle, **mix up,** mess up *and* ball up *and* bollix up *and* screw up *and* foul up *and* fuck up *and* snafu *and* muck up *and* louse up <nf>, implicate; **tangle,** entangle, embrangle, **snarl, snarl up,** ravel, knot, tie in knots

ADJS 4 **complex, complicated,** many-faceted, multifarious, ramified, perplexed, **confused,** confounded, **involved,** implicated, crabbed, **intricate,** elaborate, involuted, convoluted, multilayered, multilevel; **mixed up,** balled up *and* bollixed up *and* screwed up *and* loused up *and* fouled up *and* fucked up *and* snafued *and* mucked up *and* messed up <nf>; **tangled,** entangled, tangly, embrangled, **snarled,** knotted, matted, twisted, raveled; mazy, daedal, **labyrinthine,** labyrinthian, meandering; **devious,** roundabout, deep-laid, Byzantine, subtle

5 **inextricable,** irreducible, unknottable, unsolvable

800 JOINING

NOUNS 1 **joining, junction,** joinder, jointure, **connection, union,** unification, bond, bonding, connectedness *or* connectivity, conjunction, conjoining, conjugation, liaison, marriage, hookup <nf>, splice, tie, tie-up *and* tie-in <nf>, knotting, entanglement, commerce; merger, merging; symbiosis; **combination** 805; conglomeration, **aggregation,** agglomeration, congeries; **coupling,** copulation, accouplement, coupledness, **bracketing,** yoking, pairing, splicing, wedding; **linking,** linkup, linkage, bridging, **concatenation,** chaining, articulation, agglutination; **meeting,** meeting place *or* point, confluence, convergence, concurrence, concourse, gathering, massing, clustering; communication, intercommunication, intercourse

2 **interconnection,** interjoinder, **interlinking,** interlocking, interdigitation; **interassociation,** interaffiliation

3 **fastening, attachment, affixation,** annexation; ligature, ligation, ligating; **binding,** bonding, gluing, sticking, tying, lashing, splicing, knotting, linking, trussing, girding, hooking, clasping, zipping, buckling, buttoning; knot <see list>; adhesive 803.4; splice, bond, fastener, Velcro

4 **joint,** join, joining, **juncture, union, connection,** link, connecting link, **coupling, accouplement;** clinch, embrace; articulation <anatomy and botany>, symphysis <anatomy>; **pivot, hinge; knee; elbow; wrist; ankle; knuckle; hip; shoulder; neck,** cervix; ball-and-socket joint, pivot joint, hinged joint, gliding joint; toggle joint; connecting rod, tie rod; seam, suture, stitch, closure, mortise and tenon, miter, butt, scarf, dovetail, rabbet, weld; boundary, interface

VERBS 5 **put together, join,** conjoin, **unite,** unify, bond, **connect,** associate, league, band, merge, **assemble,** accumulate; **join up,** become a part of, associate oneself, enter into, come aboard <nf>; **gather,** mobilize, marshal, mass, amass, **collect,** conglobulate; **combine** 805.3; **couple,** pair, accouple, copulate, conjugate, marry, wed, tie the knot <nf>, **link,** link up, build bridges, yoke, knot, splice, tie, chain, bracket, ligate; **concatenate,** articulate, agglutinate; glue, tape, cement, solder, weld; **put together,** fix together, lay together, piece together, clap together, tack together, stick together, lump together, roll into one; bridge over *or* between, span; **include,** encompass, take in, cover, embrace, comprise

6 **interconnect, interjoin,** intertie, interassociate, interaffiliate, **interlink,** interlock, interdigitate

7 **fasten, fix, attach, affix,** annex, put to, set to; graft, engraft; **secure,** anchor, moor; cement, knit, set, grapple, belay, **make fast;** clinch, clamp, cramp; tighten, trim, trice up, screw up; cinch *or* cinch up

8 **hook,** hitch; **clasp,** hasp, clip, snap; **button,** buckle, zipper; lock, latch; **pin,** skewer, peg, nail, nail up, tack, staple, toggle, screw, bolt, rivet; **sew,** stitch; **wedge,** jam, stick; rabbet, butt, scarf, mortise, miter, dovetail; batten, batten down; cleat; **hinge,** joint, articulate

9 **bind, tie,** brace, truss, **lash,** leash, rope, strap, lace, wire, chain; handcuff; **splice,** bend; **gird,** girt, belt, girth, girdle, band, cinch; **tie up,** bind up, do up, batten; **wrap,** wrap up, bundle; shrink-wrap; **bandage,** bandage up, swathe, swaddle

10 **yoke, hitch up,** hook up; harness, harness up; halter, bridle; saddle; tether, fetter

11 <be joined> **join, connect, unite, meet,** meet up, link up, merge, converge, **come together;** communicate, intercommunicate, network, interface; knit, grow together; cohere, adhere, hang *or* hold together, clinch, embrace

ADJS 12 **joint, combined,** joined, **conjoint,** conjunct, conjugate, corporate, compact, cooperative, cooperating; concurrent, coincident; inclusive, comprehensive; coherent

13 **joined, united, connected,** copulate, **coupled,** linked, knit, bridged, tight-knit, knitted, bracketed, associated, conjoined, incorporated, integrated, **merged,** gathered, assembled, accumulated, **collected; associated,** joined up, on board; **allied,** leagued, banded together; hand-in-hand, hand-in-glove, intimate, liaising; unseparated, undivided; **wedded,** matched, married, paired, yoked, mated; **tied, bound,** knotted, spliced, lashed

14 **fast, fastened, fixed,** secure, firm, close, tight, set, zipped up; **bonded,** glued, cemented, taped; **jammed,** wedged, stuck, frozen, seized, seized up

15 **inseparable,** impartible, **indivisible,** undividable, indissoluble, inalienable, inseverable, bound up in *or* with

16 **joining, connecting,** meeting; **communicating,** intercommunicating; **connective,** connectional; conjunctive, combinative, combinatorial, copulative, linking, bridging, binding

17 jointed, articulate

ADVS 18 jointly, conjointly, corporately, **together; in common,** in partnership, mutually, in concord; **all together,** as one, in unison, in agreement, in harmony; concurrently, at once, at *or* in one fell swoop

19 **securely, firmly, fast,** tight; **inseparably,** indissolubly

20 **knots**

anchor knot
barrel knot *or* blood knot
becket knot
Blackwall hitch
bow
bowknot
bowline
bowline knot
builder's knot
butcher's knot
carrick bend
cat's-paw
clinch
clove hitch
constrictor knot
crossing knot
crown knot
cuckold's neck
diamond knot
double hitch
Englishman's tie
eye splice
figure-eight knot
figure-of-eight bend
fisherman's bend
fisherman's knot
flat knot
Flemish knot

French shroud knot
German knot
granny knot
half crown
half hitch
half-Windsor knot
hangman's knot
harness hitch
hawser bend
hawser fastening
heaving-line bend
inside clinch
lanyard knot
long splice
loop knot
magnus hitch
manrope knot
marlinespike hitch
marling hitch
masthead knot
Matthew Walker knot
mesh knot
midshipman's hitch
monkey's fist
netting knot
open hand knot
outside clinch
overhand knot
prolonge knot
reef knot
reeving-line bend
ring hitch *or* lark's head
ring knot
rolling hitch
rope-yarn knot
round seizing
round turn and half hitch
running bowline
running knot
sennit knot
sheepshank
Shelby knot
short splice
shroud knot
single knot
slide knot
slipknot *or* nooseknot
square knot
star knot
stevedore's knot
stopper's knot
studding-sail halyard bend
stunner hitch
surgeon's knot
sword knot
tack bend
timber knot *or* hitch
truckman's knot
truelove knot
Turk's-head
wall knot
weaver's knot *or* hitch
Windsor knot

801 ANALYSIS

NOUNS 1 **analysis,** analyzation, **breakdown,** breaking down, breakup, breaking up; anatomy, anatomizing, dissection; separation, **division, subdivision,** segmentation, reduction to elements *or* parts; chemical analysis, **assay** *or* assaying, resolution, titration, docimasy <old>, qualitative analysis, quantitative analysis, volumetric analysis, gravimetric analysis; ultimate analysis, proximate analysis; microanalysis, semimicroanalysis; profiling

2 **itemization,** enumeration, detailing, breakout, isolation; outlining, schematization, blocking, blocking out; resolution; scansion, parsing

3 **classification, categorization, sorting,** taxonomy, sorting out, sifting, sifting out, grouping, factoring, winnowing, shakeout, pigeonholing, categorizing; **weighing, evaluation,** gauging, assessment, appraisal, position statement *or* paper, **judgment** 946; impact statement

4 **outline,** structural outline, **plan,** scheme, schema, chart, flow chart, graph; table, table of contents, index; **diagram,** block diagram, exploded view, **blueprint; catalog,** *catalogue raisonné* <Fr>

5 **analyst, analyzer, examiner** 938.16; taxonomist

VERBS 6 **analyze, break down,** break up, anatomize, dissect, atomize, unitize; **divide, subdivide,** segment; assay, titrate; separate, make discrete, isolate, reduce, reduce to elements, resolve

7 **itemize,** enumerate, factorize, number, detail, break out; **outline,** schematize, block out, diagram, graph, chart; resolve; scan, parse

8 **classify,** class, **categorize,** catalog, sort, sort out, sift, group, factor, winnow, thrash out; weigh, weigh up, **evaluate, judge,** gauge 946.9, assess, appraise 946.9

ADJS 9 **analytical,** analytic; segmental; classificatory, enumerative; schematic

ADVS 10 **analytically,** by parts *or* divisions *or* sections; by categories *or* types

802 SEPARATION

NOUNS 1 **separation, disjunction,** severalty, disjointure, disjointing, split-up, splitting-up, demerger, delinkage, disarticulation, **disconnection,** disconnectedness, discontinuity, incoherence, disengagement, disunion, nonunion, disassociation, segregation; **parting,** alienation, estrangement, **removal,** withdrawal, isolation, detachment, sequestration, abstraction; **subtraction** 255; divorce, divorcement; **division,** subdivision, partition, compartmentalization, segmentation, marking off; districting, zoning; **dislocation,** luxation; separability, partibility, dividableness, divisibility; separatism; **separateness,** discreteness, singleness, monism, unitariness

2 **severance,** disseverment *or* disseverance, **sunderance,** scission, fission, cleavage, dichotomy, parting; **cutting, slitting,** slashing, **splitting,** slicing; **rending, tearing,** ripping, laceration, hacking, chopping, butchering, mutilation; section, resection; **surgery**

3 **disruption, dissolution,** abruption, cataclasm; revolution 860; **disintegration** 806, breakup, crack-up, shattering, splintering, fragmentizing, fragmentation; **bursting,** dissilience *or* dissiliency; **scattering,** dispersal, diffusion; **stripping,** scaling, exfoliation

4 **break,** breakage, **breach,** burst, **rupture, fracture; crack,** cleft, **fissure, cut, split,** slit; slash, slice; **gap, rift,** rent, rip, tear; chip, splinter, scale; dividing line, caesura, solidus

5 **dissection, analysis** 801, vivisection, resolution, breakdown, diaeresis; anatomy

6 **disassembly, dismantlement,** taking down *or* apart, dismemberment, dismounting; undoing,

unbuilding; **stripping,** stripping away *or* down, divestiture, divestment, defoliation, deprivation; disrobing, unclothing, doffing

7 **separator,** sieve, centrifuge, ultracentrifuge; creamer, cream separator; breaker, stripper, mincer; slicer, cutter, microtome; analyzer

VERBS **8** **separate, divide, disjoin, disunite,** draw apart, dissociate, disassociate, grow apart, **disjoint,** disengage, disarticulate, **disconnect;** uncouple, unyoke; **part,** cut the knot, **divorce,** estrange; **alienate, segregate,** separate off, factor out, sequester, isolate, curtain off, shut off, set apart *or* aside, split off, cut off *or* out *or* loose *or* adrift; **withdraw, leave, depart,** take one's leave, cut out *and* split <nf>; pull out *or* away *or* back, stand apart *or* aside *or* aloof, step aside; subtract 255.9; delete 255.12; **expel,** eject, throw off *or* out, cast off *or* out

9 **come apart,** spring apart, fly apart, come unstuck, come unglued, come undone, come apart at the seams, **come** *or* **drop** *or* fall to pieces, **disintegrate, come to pieces,** go to pieces, fall apart, fall apart at the seams, fall to pieces, atomize, unitize, fragmentize, pulverize, break up, bust up <nf>, unravel; come *or* fall off, peel off, carry away; get loose, give way, start

10 **detach, remove,** disengage, take *or* lift off, doff; **unfasten, undo,** unattach, unfix; **free, release,** liberate, loose, unloose, unleash, unfetter; **unloosen,** loosen; cast off, weigh anchor; **unhook,** unhitch, unclasp, unclinch, unbuckle, unbutton, unsnap, unscrew, unpin, unbolt; **untie,** unbind, unknit, unbandage, unlace, unzip, unstrap, unchain; unstick, unglue

11 **sever, dissever,** cut off *or* away *or* loose, shear off, hack through, hack off, ax, amputate; **cleave, split,** fissure; sunder, cut in two, dichotomize, halve, bisect; **cut,** incise, carve, **slice,** pare, prune, trim, trim away, resect, excise 255.10; slit, snip, lance, scissor; **chop, hew,** hack, **slash;** gash, whittle, butcher; saw, jigsaw; **tear, rend,** rive, rend asunder

12 **break, burst,** bust <nf>, breach; **fracture, rupture; crack,** split, check, craze, fissure; snap; chip, scale, exfoliate

13 **shatter, splinter,** shiver, break to *or* into pieces, fragmentize, break to *or* into smithereens <nf>; **smash,** crush, crunch, squash, squish <nf>; **disrupt,** demolish, break up, smash up; **scatter,** disperse, diffuse; **fragment,** fission, atomize; **pulverize** 1051.9, grind, cut to pieces, mince, make mincemeat of, make hamburger of <nf>

14 **tear** *or* **rip apart,** take *or* pull apart, **pick** *or* **rip** *or* **tear to pieces,** tear to rags *or* tatters, **shred,** rip to shreds; **dismember,** tear limb from limb, draw and quarter; **mangle,** lacerate, mutilate, maim; skin, flay, strip, peel, denude; defoliate

15 **disassemble,** take apart *or* down, tear down; **dismantle, demolish,** dismount, unrig <nautical>

16 **disjoint,** unjoint, **unhinge,** disarticulate, **dislocate,** luxate, throw out of joint, unseat

17 **dissect, analyze** 801.6, vivisect, anatomize, break down

18 **apportion, portion,** section, partition, compartmentalize, segment; **divide,** divide up, divvy *and* divvy up <nf>, **parcel,** parcel up *or* out, **split,** split up, cut up, subdivide; district, zone

19 **part company, part, separate,** split up, dispel, disband, scatter, **disperse,** break up, break it up <nf>, **go separate ways,** diverge

ADJS **20** **separate, distinct, discrete; unjoined, unconnected, unattached,** unaccompanied, unattended, unassociated; **apart,** asunder, **in two;** discontinuous, noncontiguous, divergent; **isolated,** insular, detached, detachable, free-standing, free-floating, autonomous; **independent,** self-contained, stand-alone <nf>; noncohesive, noncohering, incoherent 804.4; bipartite, dichotomous, multipartite, multisegmental; **subdivided,** partitioned, curtained-off, marked-off, compartmentalized

21 **separated,** disjoined, disjoint, disjointed, disjunct, **disconnected,** disengaged, detached, **disunited, divided,** removed, divorced, **alienated,** estranged, distanced, **segregated,** sequestered, isolated, cloistered, shut off; **scattered,** dispersed, helter-skelter; disarticulated, dislocated, luxated, out of joint

22 **unfastened, unbound,** uncaught, unfixed, **undone, loose, free,** loosened, unloosened, clear; **untied, unbound,** unknit, unleashed, unfettered, unchained, unlaced, unbandaged, unhitched; unstuck, unglued; unclasped, unclinched, unbuckled, unbuttoned, unzipped, unsnapped; unscrewed, unpinned, unbolted; **unanchored,** adrift, afloat, floating, free, free-floating

23 **severed, cut,** cleaved, cleft, cloven, riven, hewn, sheared; **splintered,** shivered, cracked, **split,** slit, reft; **rent, torn;** tattered, shredded, in shreds; quartered, **dismembered,** in pieces

24 **broken,** busted <nf>, **burst, ruptured,** dissilient; sprung; **shattered,** broken up, broken to pieces *or* bits, fragmentized, fragmentary, fragmented, in shards, in smithereens <nf>

25 **separating, dividing,** parting, distancing; separative, disjunctive

26 **separable,** severable, **divisible,** alienable, cleavable, partible; **fissionable,** fissile, scissile; dissoluble, dissolvable

ADVS **27** **separately,** severally, piecemeal, one by one; **apart,** adrift, asunder, **in two,** in twain; apart from, away from, aside from; abstractly, in the abstract, objectively, impersonally

28 **disjointedly,** unconnectedly, sporadically, spasmodically, discontinuously, by bits and pieces, by fits and starts

29 **to pieces,** all to pieces, **to bits, to smithereens** <nf>, to splinters, to shards, to tatters, to shreds

803 COHESION

NOUNS **1 cohesion,** cohesiveness, **coherence, adherence, adhesion, sticking,** sticking together, cling, clinging, binding, colligation, inseparability; cementation, conglutination, agglutination; concretion, condensation, accretion, solidification, set, congelation, congealment, clotting, coagulation, curdling; **conglomeration,** conglobation, compaction, agglomeration, consolidation; inspissation, incrassation; **clustering,** massing, bunching, nodality; colloidality, emulsification

2 **consistency** 788.1, connection, connectedness; junction 800.1; continuity, seriality, sequence 815, sequentialness, consecutiveness 812.1, orderliness

3 **tenacity,** tenaciousness, **adhesiveness,** cohesiveness, retention, adherence; **tightness,** snugness; stickiness, **tackiness,** gluiness, gumminess, **viscidity,** consistency, viscosity, glutinosity, mucilaginousness; gelatinousness, jellylikeness, gelatinity; pulpiness; persistence *or* persistency, **stick-to-itiveness** <nf>, toughness, **stubbornness, obstinacy 361,** bulldoggedness *or* bulldoggishness, bullheadedness

4 <something adhesive or tenacious> **adhesive,** adherent, adherer; **bulldog,** barnacle, leech, limpet, remora; burr, cocklebur, clotbur, bramble, brier, prickle, thorn; sticker, bumper sticker, decalcomania, decal <nf>; **glue, cement,** gluten, mucilage, epoxy resin, paste, stickum *and* gunk <nf>; gum; resin, tar; **plaster,** adhesive plaster, court plaster; putty, size; syrup, molasses, honey; mucus; thickener; pulper; fixative; tape, Scotch tape <trademark>, masking tape; Band-Aid <trademark>

5 **conglomeration, consolidation, conglomerate,** breccia <geology>, agglomerate, agglomeration, cluster, bunch, mass, clot; concrete, concretion; compaction

VERBS **6 cohere, adhere, stick, cling,** cleave, hold; **persist,** stay, stay put <nf>; cling to, freeze to <nf>; hang on, hold on; take hold of, clasp, grasp, hug, embrace, clinch; **stick together, hang** *or* **hold together;** grow to, grow together; **solidify, set,** conglomerate, agglomerate, conglobate; **congeal,** coagulate, clabber <nf>, **clot; cluster,** mass, bunch

7 **be consistent** 788.6, **connect,** connect with, follow; **join** 800.11, link up

8 **hold fast, stick close,** stick like glue, stick like a wet shirt *or* wet T-shirt *or* second skin, hug *or* mold to the figure; stick closer than a brother, stick like a barnacle *or* limpet *or* leech, cling like ivy *or* a burr, hold on like a bulldog

9 **stick together, cement, bind, colligate, paste, glue,** agglutinate, conglutinate, gum; **weld,** fuse, **solder,** braze; gum up <nf>

ADJS **10 cohesive,** cohering, coherent; adhering, **sticking, clinging,** inseparable, cleaving, holding together; **cemented,** stuck, agglutinative, agglutinated, agglutinate, conglutinate, conglutinated; **concrete, condensed, solidified, set, congealed,** clotted, coagulated; conglomerated, conglobate, **compacted, consolidated,** agglomerated; **clustered,** massed, bunched, nodal

11 **consistent** 788.9, **connected;** continuous 812.8, **serial,** uninterrupted, contiguous, sequential, sequent, **consecutive** 812.9; orderly, tight; **joined** 800.13

12 **adhesive, adherent,** stickable, self-adhesive, retentive; **tenacious,** clingy; **sticky, tacky,** gluey, gummy, gummous, glutenous, **viscid,** viscous, viscose, glutinous; inspissate, incrassate; colloidal; gooey *and* gunky <nf>; **persistent,** tough, **stubborn, obstinate** 361.8, bulldoggish *or* bulldogged *or* bulldoggy, bullheaded; stick-to-it-ive <nf>

804 NONCOHESION

NOUNS **1 noncohesion,** uncohesiveness, incoherence, inconsistency, discontinuity 813, nonadhesion, unadhesiveness, unadherence, untenacity, immiscibility; **separateness,** discreteness, aloofness, standoffishness <nf>; **disjunction** 802.1, unknitting, unraveling, dismemberment; **dislocation; dissolution, chaos** 810.2, anarchy, **disorder** 810, confusion, entropy; **scattering,** dispersion *or* dispersal; diffusion

2 **looseness, slackness,** bagginess, **laxness,** laxity, relaxation, floppiness; sloppiness, shakiness, ricketiness

VERBS **3 loosen, slacken, relax;** slack, slack off; ease, ease off, let up; **loose, free,** let go, unleash; **disjoin,** unknit, unravel, dismember, undo, unfasten, unpin; **sow confusion,** open Pandora's box; unstick, unglue; **scatter,** disperse, diffuse

ADJS **4 incoherent,** uncoherent, noncoherent, **inconsistent, uncohesive, unadhesive,** nonadhesive, noncohesive, nonadherent, like grains of sand, **untenacious, unconsolidated,** tenuous; unjoined 802.20, disconnected, unconnected, unraveled, dismembered, gapped, open; **disordered** 810.12, chaotic, anarchic, anomic, confused; **discontinuous** 813.4, broken, detached, discrete, aloof, standoffish <nf>

5 **loose, slack, lax, relaxed,** easy, sloppy; shaky, rickety; flapping, streaming; loose-fitting, hanging, drooping, dangling; bagging, baggy

805 COMBINATION

NOUNS 1 **combination,** combine, combo <nf>, composition; **union, unification,** marriage, wedding, coupling, accouplement, linking, linkage, yoking; **incorporation,** aggregation, agglomeration, conglomeration, congeries; **amalgamation, consolidation,** assimilation, **integration,** solidification, **encompassment,** inclusion, ecumenism; **junction** 800.1; conjunction, conjugation; **alliance,** affiliation, reaffiliation, **association** 617, **merger,** league, hookup <nf>, tie-up <nf>; **taking** 480, buyout, takeover, leveraged buyout; **federation, confederation,** confederacy; collaboration; federalization, centralization, cartel; **fusion,** blend, blending, meld, melding; coalescence, coalition; **synthesis,** syncretism, syneresis; syndication; **conspiracy,** cabal, junta; *enosis* <Gk>, *Anschluss* <Ger>; package, package deal; collection; **agreement** 788; **addition** 253

2 **mixture** 797, **compound** 797.5

VERBS 3 **combine, unite, unify,** marry, wed, couple, link, yoke, yoke together; **incorporate, amalgamate, consolidate,** assimilate, **integrate,** solidify, coalesce, compound, put *or* lump together, roll into one, come together, make one, unitize; **connect, join** 800.5; **mix; add** 253.4; **merge,** meld, **blend,** stir in, merge *or* blend *or* meld *or* shade into, **fuse,** flux, melt into one, conflate; interfuse, interblend; **encompass,** include, comprise; **take,** take over, buy out; **synthesize,** syncretize; syndicate; reembody

4 **league, ally, affiliate, associate,** consociate; unionize, organize, cement a union; **federate, confederate,** federalize, centralize; **join forces,** join *or* unite with, join *or* come together, join up with <nf>, hook up with <nf>, tie up *or* in with <nf>, **throw in with** <nf>, stand up with, go *or* be in cahoots <nf>, **pool one's interests, join fortunes with,** stand together, close ranks, make common cause with; **marry, wed, couple, yoke,** yoke together, link; **band together,** club together, bunch, bunch up <nf>, gang up <nf>, gang, club; team with, **team up with** <nf>, couple, pair, double up, buddy up <nf>, pair off, partner; go in partnership, go in partners <nf>; **conspire,** cabal, put heads together

ADJS 5 **combined, united, amalgamated, incorporated, consolidated, integrated,** assimilated, one, unitary, unitive, unitized, **joined** 799.13, joint 800.12, conjoint; conjunctive, combinative *or* combinatory, connective, conjugate; **merged,** blended, fused; **mixed; synthesized,** syncretized, syncretistic, eclectic

6 **leagued,** enleagued, **allied, affiliated,** affiliate, **associated,** associate, corporate; federated, confederated, federate, confederate; **in league,** in cahoots <nf>, in with; **conspiratorial,** cabalistic; partners with, in partnership; teamed, coupled, paired, married, wed, wedded, yoked, yoked together, linked, linked up

7 **combining, uniting,** unitive, unitizing, incorporating; merging, blending, fusing; combinative, combinatory; associative; federative, federal; corporative, incorporative, corporational; coalescent, symphystic

806 DISINTEGRATION

NOUNS 1 **disintegration, decomposition, dissolution, decay,** coming-apart, resolution, disorganization, degradation, breakup, breakdown, fragmentation, atomization; corruption; ruin, **ruination,** destruction 395; **erosion,** corrosion, crumbling, dilapidation, wear, wear and tear, waste, wasting, wasting away, ablation, ravagement, ravages of time; **disjunction** 802.1; **incoherence** 803.1; **impairment** 393

2 dissociation; electrolysis, catalysis, dialysis, hydrolysis, proteolysis, thermolysis, photolysis <all chemistry>, catabolism; catalyst, hydrolyst <chemistry>; hydrolyte <chemistry>; **decay,** fission <physics>, splitting, atom smashing

VERBS 3 **disintegrate, decompose, decay,** biodegrade, dissolve, come apart, disorganize, **break up** 395.22, go to rack and ruin 395.24, crack up, disjoin, unknit, split, fission, atomize, **come** *or* **fall to pieces; erode,** corrode, ablate, consume, wear *or* waste away, molder, molder away, crumble, crumble into dust

4 <chemical terms> dissociate; catalyze, dialyze, hydrolyze, electrolyze, photolyze; split, fission, atomize

ADJS 5 **disintegrative,** decomposing, disintegrating, disruptive, disjunctive; **destructive,** ruinous 395.26; chaotic; **erosive,** corrosive, ablative; resolvent, solvent, separative; **dilapidated,** disintegrated, ruinous, shacky, worn-out, worn, clapped-out <Brit nf>, moldering, ravaged, wrecked, totaled <nf>; disintegrable, decomposable, degradable, biodegradable

6 <chemical terms> dissociative; catalytic, dialytic,

hydrolytic, proteolytic, thermolytic, electrolytic, photolytic; catabolic

WORD ELEMENTS 7 -lysis, lyso-, lysi-, -lyte

807 ORDER

NOUNS 1 **order, arrangement** 808; **organization** 808.2; **disposition,** disposal, deployment, marshaling; prioritization, putting in order; **formation, structure, configuration,** array, makeup, lineup, setup, layout; system, scheme, schedule; routine, even tenor, standard operating procedure; **peace,** quiet, quietude, **tranquillity; regularity,** uniformity 781; symmetry, proportion, concord, **harmony,** order, the music of the spheres, Tao *or* Dào

2 **continuity,** logical order, serial order, reverse order, ascending *or* descending order, alphabetical order, numerical order; **degree** 245; **hierarchy,** pecking order, ontology, **gradation,** subordination, superordination, rank, place, position, status; progression; **sequence** 815; category, class

3 **orderliness, trimness, tidiness, neatness;** good shape <nf>, good condition, fine fettle, good trim, apple-pie order <nf>, a place for everything and everything in its place; **discipline,** method, methodology, methodicalness, system, systematicness; anality, compulsiveness, compulsive neatness

VERBS 4 **order, arrange** 808.8, get it together <nf>, **organize, regulate;** dispose, deploy, marshal; form, form up, configure, structure, array, pull it together, get *or* put one's ducks in a row <nf>, straighten it out, get *or* put one's house in order, run a tight ship, line up, set up, lay out; **pacify,** quiet, cool off *or* down <nf>, **tranquilize; regularize,** harmonize; **systematize,** methodize, normalize, standardize, routinize; hierarchize, categorize, classify, grade, rank, prioritize

5 **form, take form,** take order, **take shape,** crystallize, **shape up;** arrange *or* range itself, place itself, take its place, fall in, **fall** *or* **drop into place,** fall into line *or* order *or* series, fall into rank, take rank; come together, draw up, gather around, rally round; put to rights, whip into shape

ADJS 6 **orderly,** ordered, **regular, well-regulated, well-ordered, methodical, formal,** regular as clockwork, punctilious, uniform 780.5, **systematic,** symmetrical, **harmonious;** businesslike, routine, steady, normal, habitual, usual, en règle, in hand; **arranged** 808.14; scientific, businesslike; hierarchical, taxonomic, ontological

7 in order, in trim, to rights *and* in apple-pie order <nf>; **in condition,** in good condition, in kilter *or* kelter <nf>, in shape, in good shape <nf>, in perfect order, in good form, in fine fettle, in good trim, in the pink <nf>, in the pink of condition; **in repair,** in commission, in adjustment, in working order, fixed; up to scratch *or* snuff <nf>

8 **tidy, trim, natty, neat,** spruce, sleek, slick *and* slick as a whistle <nf>, smart, trig, dinky <Brit nf>, snug, tight, **shipshape,** shipshape and Bristol fashion; **well-kept,** well-kempt, well-cared-for, well-groomed; neat as a button *or* pin <nf>, not a hair out of place

ADVS 9 **methodically, systematically, regularly,** through channels, uniformly, harmoniously, like clockwork

10 **in order, in turn, in sequence, in succession,** hierarchically, in series, *seriatim* <L>; step by step, by stages

808 ARRANGEMENT

<putting in order>

NOUNS 1 **arrangement, ordering,** structuring, shaping, forming, configurating, configuration, constitution; **disposition, disposal, deployment,** placement, marshaling, **arraying; distribution,** collation, collocation, allocation, allotment, apportionment; **formation,** formulation, **configuration,** form, array; regimentation; syntax; **order** 807

2 **organization, methodization,** ordering, planning, charting, codification, regulation, regularization, routinization, normalization, rationalization; **adjustment,** harmonization, tuning, fine-tuning, tune-up, tinkering; **systematization,** ordination, coordination

3 **grouping, classification** 809, categorization, taxonomy; **gradation,** subordination, superordination, **ranking,** placement; **sorting,** sorting out, assortment, sifting, screening, triage, culling, selection, shakeout

4 **table,** code, digest, **index, inventory,** census; table of organization

5 **arranger, organizer,** coordinator, spreadsheet; **sorter,** sifter, **sieve,** riddle, **screen,** bolter, colander, grate, grating

6 <act of making neat> **cleanup,** red-up <nf>; tidy-up, trim-up, police-up <nf>

7 **rearrangement, reorganization,** reconstitution, **reordering, restructuring,** *perestroika* <Russ>, shake-up <nf>; **redeployment,** redisposition, realignment

VERBS 8 **arrange,** order 807.4, reduce to order, **put** *or* **get** *or* **set in order,** right, prioritize, put first things first, get one's ducks in a row <nf>; **put** *or* **set to rights, get it together** <nf>, **pull it together,** put in *or* into shape, whip into shape <nf>, sort out <chiefly Brit>, unsnarl, make sense out of <nf>

9 **dispose, distribute, fix, place,** set out, collocate, allocate, **compose,** space, **marshal,** rally, array; align, line, **line up,** form up, range; regiment; **allot, apportion,** parcel out, deal, **deal out**

10 **organize,** methodize, **systematize,** rationalize, regularize, get *or* put one's house in order; **harmonize,** synchronize, **tune,** tune up; **regularize,** routinize, normalize, standardize; **regulate,** adjust, coordinate, fix, settle; **plan,** chart, codify

11 **classify** 809.6, **group,** categorize; grade, gradate, rank, subordinate; **sort,** sort out <chiefly Brit>, assort; **separate,** divide; collate; **sift,** size, sieve, **screen,** bolt, riddle

12 tidy, **tidy up,** neaten, trim, **put in trim,** trim up, trig up <chiefly Brit>, **straighten up,** fix up <nf>, **clean up,** police *and* police up <nf>, groom, spruce *and* spruce up <nf>, **clear up,** clear the decks

13 **rearrange, reorganize,** reconstitute, **reorder, restructure,** reshuffle, rejigger <nf>, tinker *or* tinker with, tune, tune up, fine-tune; **shake up,** shake out; redispose, redistribute, reallocate, realign

ADJS 14 **arranged, ordered, disposed,** configured, composed, constituted, fixed, placed, aligned, ranged, arrayed, marshaled, grouped, ranked, **graded;** organized, methodized, **regularized,** routinized, normalized, standardized, **systematized;** regulated, harmonized, synchronized; **classified** 809.8, categorized, **sorted,** assorted; **orderly** 807.6

15 **organizational,** formational, structural

WORD ELEMENTS 16 tax-, taxi-, -taxia, -taxis

809 CLASSIFICATION

NOUNS 1 **classification, categorization,** classing, placement, ranging, **pigeonholing,** compartmentalizing, **sorting, grouping; grading,** stratification, ranking, rating, classing; division, subdivision; **cataloging,** codification, tabulation, rationalization, indexing, filing; **taxonomy,** typology; ontology; analysis 801, **arrangement** 807

2 **class, category, head, order, division,** branch, set, **group,** grouping, bracket, pigeonhole; **section,** heading, rubric, **label,** title; **grade,** rank, rating, status, estate, stratum, level, station, position; **caste,** clan, race, strain, blood, kin, sept; **subdivision,** subgroup, suborder, subclass, subcategory, subset; hyponym, hypernym, superordinate, subordinate

3 **kind, sort, ilk, type,** breed of cat <nf>, lot <nf>, **variety, species, genus,** *genre* <Fr>, phylum, denomination, designation, description, style, strain, manner, **nature, character,** persuasion, the like *or* likes of <nf>; **stamp, brand,** feather, color, stripe, line, grain, kidney; **make,** mark, label, shape, cast, form, mold, model; tribe, clan, race, strain, blood, kin, breed; league, realm, domain, sphere

4 **hierarchy,** class structure, power structure, pyramid, establishment, pecking order; natural hierarchy, order *or* chain of being, domain, realm, **kingdom,** animal kingdom, vegetable kingdom, mineral kingdom

5 <botanical and zoological classifications, in descending order> **kingdom;** subkingdom, **phylum** <zoology>, branch <botany>; superclass, **class,** subclass, superorder, **order,** suborder, superfamily, **family,** subfamily, tribe, subtribe, **genus,** subgenus, series, section, superspecies, **species;** subspecies, **variety,** subvariety, scion; biotype, genotype

VERBS 6 **classify,** class, assign, designate; **categorize,** type, put down as, **pigeonhole,** place, **group, arrange** 807.8, range; **order** 807.4, put in order, rank, rate, **grade; sort,** assort; distribute; **divide,** analyze 801.6, subdivide, break down; **catalog,** list, file, tabulate, rationalize, **index,** alphabetize, digest, codify

ADJS 7 **classificational,** classificatory; **categorical, taxonomic** *or* taxonomical, typologic *or* typological; ordinal; divisional, divisionary, subdivisional; ontological; **typical,** typal; **special,** specific, characteristic, particular, peculiar, denominative, differential, distinctive, defining, varietal

8 **classified, classed, cataloged, pigeonholed,** indexed, ordered, sorted, assorted, **graded, grouped,** ranked, rated, stratified, hierarchic, hierarchical, pyramidal; placed; filed, on file; tabular, indexical

ADVS 9 **any kind** *or* sort, **of any description, at all,** whatever, soever, whatsoever

WORD ELEMENTS 10 speci-, specie-, gen-

810 DISORDER

NOUNS 1 **disorder, disorderliness, disarrangement,** derangement, disarticulation, disjunction 802.1, **disorganization;** discomposure, **dishevelment, disarray,** upset, disturbance, discomfiture, disconcertedness; **irregularity,** randomness, turbulence, perturbation, ununiformity *or* nonuniformity, unsymmetry *or* nonsymmetry, no rhyme or reason, **disproportion, disharmony;** indiscriminateness, promiscuity, promiscuousness, haphazardness; **randomness,** randomicity, vagueness, trendlessness; entropy; **disruption** 802.3, destabilization; **incoherence** 804.1, unintelligibility; untogetherness <nf>;

disintegration 806; "most admired disorder"—Shakespeare, "inharmonious harmony"—Horace

2 **confusion, chaos,** anarchy, misrule, license, madhouse; **Babel,** cognitive dissonance; **muddle,** morass, **mix-up** *and* foul-up *and* fuck-up *and* snafu *and* screw-up <nf>, ball-up <nf>, balls-up <Brit nf>, hoo-ha *and* fine how-de-do <nf>, pretty kettle of fish, pretty piece of business, nice piece of work

3 **jumble, scramble, tumble, snarl-up, mess,** bloody *or* holy *or* unholy *or* god-awful mess <nf>, pickle <nf>, shemozzle <Brit>, **turmoil,** welter, mishmash, hash, helter-skelter, farrago, crazy-quilt, higgledy-piggledy; shambles, tohubohu; **clutter, litter,** hodgepodge 797.6, rat's nest, mare's nest, hurrah's nest <nautical>; topsy-turviness *or* topsy-turvydom, arsy-varsiness, hysteron proteron

4 **commotion, hubbub, Babel, tumult,** turmoil, **uproar, racket,** riot, **disturbance, rumpus** <nf>, ruckus *and* ruction <nf>, disruption, **fracas, hassle,** shemozzle <Brit nf>, shindy <nf>, hullabaloo, rampage; **ado,** to-do <nf>, trouble, bother, pother, dustup <Brit nf>, stir <nf>, **fuss,** brouhaha, foofaraw <nf>, aggro <Brit, Austral>; **row** *and* hassle <nf>, **brawl,** free-for-all <nf>, donnybrook *or* donnybrook fair, broil, embroilment, melee, scramble; helter-skelter, pell-mell, **roughhouse, rough-and-tumble**

5 **pandemonium, hell, bedlam,** witches' Sabbath, Babel, confusion of tongues; **cacophony,** din, noise, static, racket

6 slovenliness, **slipshodness,** carelessness, negligence; **untidiness,** uneatness, looseness, **messiness** <nf>, **sloppiness,** dowdiness, seediness, **shabbiness,** tawdriness, chintziness <nf>, shoddiness, tackiness <nf>, grubbiness <nf>, frowziness, blowziness; **slatternliness,** frumpishness <nf>, sluttishness; **squalor,** squalidness, sordidness; derangement

7 **slob** <nf>, **slattern, sloven,** frump <nf>, sloppy Joe, schlep, schlump; drab, **slut, trollop; pig,** swine; **litterbug**

VERBS 8 lapse into disorder, fall into confusion, come apart, come apart at the seams, dissolve into chaos, slacken 804.3, come unstuck *or* unglued <nf>, disintegrate 806.3, degenerate, detune, untune

9 **disorder, disarrange** 811.2, **disorganize,** dishevel; **confuse** 811.3, sow confusion, open Pandora's box, **muddle,** jumble, jumble up, mix up; **discompose** 811.4, **upset,** destabilize, unsettle, **disturb,** perturb

10 **riot, roister,** roil, carouse; **create a disturbance, make a commotion,** make trouble, cause a stir *or* commotion, **make an ado** or to-do, create a riot, **cut loose, run wild, run riot,** run amok, go on a rampage, go berserk

11 <nf terms> **kick up a row,** kick up a shindy *or* a fuss *or* a storm, piss up a storm, **raise the devil,** raise the deuce *or* dickens, raise a rumpus *or* a storm, raise a ruckus, raise Cain, **raise hell,** raise sand, raise the roof, whoop it up, hell around, horse around *or* about; **carry on,** go on, maffick <Brit>; **cut up,** cut up rough, roughhouse

ADJS 12 **unordered, orderless, disordered, unorganized, random, entropic, unarranged,** ungraded, unsorted, unclassified; untogether <nf>; **unmethodical,** immethodical; **unsystematic,** systemless, nonsystematic; disjunct, unjoined 802.20; disarticulated, **incoherent** 804.4; discontinuous; **formless,** amorphous, inchoate, shapeless; ununiform *or* nonuniform, unsymmetrical *or* nonsymmetrical, disproportionate, misshapen; **irregular, haphazard,** desultory, **erratic,** sporadic, spasmodic, fitful, promiscuous, indiscriminate, casual, frivolous, capricious, random, hit-or-miss, vague, dispersed, wandering, planless, undirected, **aimless,** straggling, straggly; senseless, meaningless, gratuitous

13 **disorderly, in disorder,** disordered, **disorganized, disarranged, discomposed,** dislocated, deranged, convulsed; **upset, disturbed,** perturbed, unsettled, discomfited, disconcerted; **turbulent,** turbid, roily; out of order, **out of place,** misplaced, shuffled; **out of kilter** *or* **kelter** <nf>, **out of whack** <nf>, out of gear, out of joint, out of tune, on the fritz <nf>, haywire; **cockeyed** *and* skewgee *and* slaunchways *and* skygodlin <nf>, skew-whiff <Brit nf>, awry, amiss, askew, on the blink and haywire <nf>

14 **disheveled, mussed up** <nf>, messed up <nf>, slobby <nf>, **rumpled,** tumbled, ruffled, snarled, snaggy; **tousled,** tously; uncombed, shaggy, matted; windblown

15 **slovenly, slipshod, careless, loose, slack,** nonformal, negligent; **untidy, unsightly,** unneat, slobby *and* scuzzy <nf>, **unkempt; messy** <nf>, mussy <nf>, **sloppy** <nf>, scraggly, poky, seedy <nf>, **shabby,** shoddy, schlocky <nf>, lumpen, chintzy, grubby <nf>, **frowzy, blowzy,** tacky <nf>; **slatternly, sluttish, frumpish,** frumpy, draggletailed, drabbletailed, draggled, bedraggled; down at the heel, out at the heels, out at the elbows, in rags, ragged, raggedy-ass *or* ragged-ass <nf>, raggedy, tattered; **squalid,** sordid; dilapidated, ruinous, **beat-up** *and* shacky <nf>

16 **confused, chaotic,** anarchic, **muddled, jumbled,** scattered, scatterbrained, helter-skelter <nf>, higgledy-piggledy, hugger-mugger, skimble-skamble, in a mess; **topsy-turvy,** arsy-varsy, upside-down, ass-backwards <nf>; **mixed up, balled** *or* **bollixed up** <nf>, **screwed up** <nf>, mucked up

<nf>, **fouled up** *and* fucked up *and* snafu *and* snafued <nf>; discomposed, discombobulated

ADVS **17 in disorder, in disarray, in confusion,** Katy bar the door <nf>, in a jumble, in a tumble, in a muddle, in a mess; higgledy-piggledy, helter-skelter <nf>, hugger-mugger, skimble-skamble, harum-scarum <nf>, willy-nilly <nf>, all over, all over hell <nf>, **all over the place, all over the shop** <nf>

18 haphazardly, unsystematically, unmethodically, irregularly, desultorily, **erratically,** capriciously, promiscuously, indiscriminately, **sloppily** <nf>, **carelessly,** randomly, **fitfully;** by *or* at intervals, sporadically, spasmodically, by fits, **by fits and starts,** by *or* in snatches, in spots <nf>; every now and then *and* every once in a while <nf>; **at random,** at haphazard, **by chance, hit** *or* **miss**

19 chaotically, anarchically, turbulently, **riotously; confusedly,** dispersedly, vaguely, wanderingly, **aimlessly,** planlessly, senselessly

811 DISARRANGEMENT

<bringing into disorder>

NOUNS **1 disarrangement, derangement,** misarrangement, convulsion, dislocation; **disorganization,** shuffling; **discomposure,** disturbance, perturbation, disconcertedness; **disorder** 810; insanity 926

VERBS **2 disarrange, derange,** misarrange; **disorder,** disorganize, disorient, throw out of order, put out of gear, dislocate, upset the apple-cart, **disarray; dishevel,** rumple, ruffle; tousle <nf>, muss *and* **muss up** <nf>, mess *and* **mess up** <nf>; **litter, clutter,** scatter

3 confuse, muddle, jumble, confound, garble, tumble, scramble, snarl, tie in knots, fumble, pi; **shuffle,** riffle; **mix up,** snarl up, **ball** *or* **bollix up** <nf>, **foul up** *and* fuck up *and* **screw up** *and* muck up *and* snafu <nf>; make a hash *or* mess of <nf>, play hob with <nf>; disrupt

4 discompose, throw into confusion, **upset, unsettle, disturb,** trip up, perturb, trouble, distract, throw <nf>, throw into a tizzy *or* snit *or* stew <nf>, agitate, convulse, embroil; **psych** *and* spook *and* bug <nf>; put out, inconvenience

ADJS **5 disarranged** 810.13, **confused** 810.16, **disordered** 810.12

812 CONTINUITY

<uninterrupted sequence>

NOUNS **1 continuity, uninterruption, uninterruptedness,** uninterrupted course, featurelessness, unrelievedness, monotony, unintermittedness, unbrokenness, **uniformity** 781, undifferentiation; fullness, plenitude; seamlessness, jointlessness, gaplessness, smoothness; **consecutiveness,** successiveness; continuousness, **endlessness, ceaselessness, incessancy;** constancy 847.2, continualness, constant flow; steadiness, steady state, equilibrium, stability 855

2 series, succession, run, **sequence,** consecution, progression, course, gradation; one thing after another; **continuum,** plenum; lineage, descent, filiation; **connection, concatenation,** catenation, catena, **chain,** chaining, linkup, articulation, reticulation, nexus; chain reaction, powder train; **train,** range, rank, **file, line, string,** thread, queue, **row,** bank, tier; windrow, swath; single file, Indian file; array; **round, cycle,** rotation, routine, the daily grind <nf>, recurrence, periodicity, flywheel effect, pendulum; endless belt *or* chain, Möbius band *or* strip, *la ronde* <Fr>, endless round; gamut, spectrum, scale; drone, monotone, hum, buzz

3 procession, train, column, line, string, cortège; stream, steady stream; cavalcade, caravan, motorcade; **parade,** pomp; dress parade; promenade, review, march-past, flyover, flypast <Brit>, funeral; skimmington <Brit>; chain gang, coffel; mule train, pack train; queue, crocodile <Brit>

VERBS **4 continue,** be continuous, not stop, **connect, connect up, concatenate,** continuate, catenate, join 800.5, link *or* link up, **string together,** string, thread, chain *or* chain up, follow in *or* form a series, run on, maintain continuity

5 align, line, line up, string out, rank, array, range, arrange, get *or* put in a row

6 line up, get in *or* **get on line,** queue *or* queue up <Brit>, make *or* form a line, get in formation, get in line, **fall in,** fall in *or* into line, fall into rank, take rank, take one's place

7 file, defile, file off; **parade,** go on parade, promenade, march past, fly over, fly past <Brit>

ADJS **8 continuous,** continued, **continual,** continuing; **uninterrupted, unintermittent,** unintermitted, featureless, unrelieved, monotonous; **connected, joined** 800.13, linked, chained, concatenated, catenated, articulated; **unbroken,** serried, **uniform** 781.5, homogeneous, homogenized, cloned *or* clonish *and* cookie-cutter <nf>, undifferentiated, wall-to-wall *and* back-to-back <nf>, seamless, jointless, gapless, smooth, unstopped; unintermitting, unremitting; **incessant, constant,** steady, stable, **ceaseless,** unceasing, **endless,** unending, never-ending, **interminable,** perpetual, perennial; **cyclical,** repetitive, **recurrent,** periodic; straight, running, **nonstop; round-the-clock,** twenty-four-hour, all-hours; immediate, direct

9 **consecutive, successive,** successional, back-to-back <nf>, in order, running; progressive; **serial,** ordinal, seriate, catenary; sequent, **sequential;** linear, lineal, in-line; chronological

ADVS **10 continuously, continually; uninterruptedly, unintermittently; without cease,** without stopping, with every other breath, without a break, back-to-back *and* wall-to-wall <nf>, unbrokenly, gaplessly, seamlessly, jointlessly, **connectedly,** together, cumulatively, on end; unceasingly, **endlessly,** *ad infinitum* <L>, perennially, **interminably,** again and again, repeatedly, time after time, time and again, time and time again, repetitively, cyclically, monotonously, unrelievedly, week in week out, year in year out, year-round, on and on, at *or* on a stretch; round the clock, all day long, all the livelong day

11 **consecutively, progressively,** sequentially, successively, **in succession,** one after the other, back-to-back <nf>, **in turn,** turn about, turn and turn about; step by step; running, hand running <nf>; **serially,** in a series, *seriatim* <L>; **in a line,** in a row, in column, in file, in a chain, in single file, in Indian file

813 DISCONTINUITY

<interrupted sequence>

NOUNS **1 discontinuity,** discontinuousness, discontinuation, discontinuance, noncontinuance; **incoherence** 804.1, **disconnectedness,** disconnection, delinkage, decoupling, discreteness, **disjunction** 802.1; **nonuniformity** 782; irregularity, **intermittence,** fitfulness 851.1; brokenness; nonseriality, nonlinearity, non sequitur; incompleteness 795; episode, parenthesis; time lag, time warp; broken thread, missing link; digression, non sequitur, parenthesis

2 **interruption, suspension, break,** fissure, breach, gap, hiatus, lacuna, caesura, crevasse; **interval, pause,** interim 826, lull, cessation, letup <nf>, **intermission**

VERBS **3 discontinue, interrupt** 857.10, **break,** break off, **disjoin,** disconnect; disarrange 811.2; intermit 851.2; pause; digress

ADJS **4 discontinuous,** noncontinuous, unsuccessive, **incoherent** 804.4, nonserial, nonlinear, nonsequential, discontinued, **disconnected,** unconnected, unjoined 802.20, delinked, decoupled, *décousu* <Fr>, **broken;** nonuniform 782.3, irregular; broken, broken off, fragmentary, **interrupted,** suspended; disjunctive, discrete, discretive; **intermittent,** fitful 851.3, stop-and-go, on-again off-again; scrappy, snatchy, spotty, patchy, jagged; choppy, chopped-off, herky-jerky <nf>, jerky, spasmodic; episodic, parenthetic

ADVS **5 discontinuously, disconnectedly,** brokenly, fragmentarily; at intervals; **haphazardly** 810.18, randomly, occasionally, infrequently, now and then, now and again, intermittently, fitfully, **by fits and starts,** by fits, by snatches, by catches, by jerks, spasmodically, episodically, by skips, skippingly, *per saltum* <L>; willy-nilly, **here and there,** in spots, sporadically, patchily

814 PRECEDENCE

<in order>

NOUNS **1 precedence** *or* precedency, antecedence *or* antecedency, anteposition, anteriority, precession; the lead, front position, front seat, pole position, first chair; **priority,** preference, urgency; top priority, taking precedence, preemption; prefixation, prothesis; **superiority** 249; **dominion** 417.6; **precursor** 816; prelude 816.2; preliminaries, run-up *and* walk-up <nf>; preceding 165.1

VERBS **2 precede,** antecede, **come first,** come *or* go before, **go ahead of, go in advance,** stand first, stand at the head, **head,** head up <nf>, front, **lead** 165.2, take precedence, have priority, preempt; lead off, kick off, usher in; pilot, lead the way, blaze a trail, spearhead; head the table *or* board, sit on the dais; rank, outrank, rate; anticipate, foreshadow

3 <place before> **prefix, preface,** premise, prelude, prologize, preamble, introduce

ADJS **4 preceding,** precedent, **prior,** antecedent, anterior, precessional, **leading** 165.3; preemptive; **preliminary,** precursory, prevenient, prefatory, exordial, prelusive, preludial, proemial, preparatory, initiatory, propaedeutic, inaugural; **first, foremost,** headmost, **chief** 249.14

5 **former,** foregoing, erstwhile, one-time, late, previous; aforesaid, aforementioned, beforementioned, above-mentioned, aforenamed, forenamed, forementioned, said, named, same

ADVS **6 before** 216.12; above, hereinbefore, hereinabove, *supra* <L>, *ante* <L>

815 SEQUENCE

NOUNS **1 sequence,** logical sequence, **succession,** successiveness, consecution, **consecutiveness,** following, coming after, accession; descent, lineage, line, family tree; **series** 812.2, serialization; **order,** order of succession; **priority; progression,** procession, rotation; **continuity** 812; **continuation,** prolongation, extension, posteriority; suffixation, subjunction, postposition; subsequence, sequel

VERBS **2** **succeed, follow, ensue,** come *or* go after, **come next; inherit,** take the mantle of, step into the shoes *or* place of, take over; segue; tailgate, follow on the heels of, tail <nf>

3 <place after> suffix, append, subjoin

ADJS **4** **succeeding, successive, following, ensuing,** sequent, sequential, sequacious, posterior, **subsequent,** consequent; proximate, **next;** appendant, suffixed, postpositive, postpositional; serial; progressive; tailgating

816 PRECURSOR

NOUNS **1** **precursor, forerunner,** foregoer, *voorlooper* <Dutch>, vaunt-courier, avant-courier, front- *or* lead-runner; pioneer, *voortrekker* <Dutch>, frontiersman, bushwhacker; scout, pathfinder, explorer, point, point man, trailblazer *or* trailbreaker, guide; **leader** 574.6, leadoff man *or* woman, bellwether, fugleman; **herald,** announcer, *buccinator* <L>, messenger, harbinger, stormy petrel; **predecessor,** forebear, precedent, antecedent, **ancestor; vanguard, avant-garde,** avant-gardist, innovator, groundbreaker

2 **curtain raiser,** countdown, run-up *and* walk-up <nf>, lead-in, warm-up, kickoff, opening gun *or* shot; **opening episode,** first episode, prequel; **prelude, preamble, preface,** prologue, foreword, introduction, *avant-propos* <Fr>, protasis, proem, proemium, prolegomenon *or* prolegomena, exordium; **prefix,** prefixture; frontispiece; **preliminary,** front matter; overture, voluntary, verse; premise, presupposition, postulate, prolepsis; **innovation, breakthrough** <nf>, leap

VERBS **3** **go before, pioneer,** blaze *or* break the trail, break new ground, be in the van *or* vanguard; guide; **lead** 165.2, lead *or* show the way; **precede** 814.2; herald, count down, run up, lead in, forerun, usher in, introduce

ADJS **4** **preceding** 814.4; preliminary, exploratory, pioneering, trailblazing, door-opening, kickoff, inaugural; **advanced,** avant-garde, original 337.5

817 SEQUEL

NOUNS **1** **sequel,** sequela *or* sequelae, sequelant, sequent, sequitur, **consequence** 887.1; **continuation,** continuance, **follow-up** *or* **follow-through** <nf>, perseverance; caboose; **supplement,** addendum, appendix, back matter; postfix, suffix; postscript *or* PS, subscript, postface; postlude, **epilogue,** conclusion, peroration, codicil; refrain, chorus, coda; envoi, colophon, tag; afterthought, second thought, double take <nf>, *arrière-pensée* <Fr>, *esprit d'escalier* <Fr>; parting *or* Parthian shot; last words, swan song, dying words, famous last words

2 **afterpart,** afterpiece; **wake,** trail, train, queue; **tail,** tailpiece, rear, rear end; tab, tag, trailer

3 **aftermath, afterclap,** afterglow, afterimage, aftereffect, side effect, by-product, spin-off, aftertaste; **aftergrowth,** aftercrop; **afterbirth,** placenta, secundines; afterpain

4 **successor, replacement,** backup, backup man *or* woman, substitute, stand-in; **descendant,** posterity, **heir,** inheritor

VERBS **5** **succeed,** follow, come next, come after, come on the heels of; **follow through,** carry through, take the next step, drop the other shoe

818 BEGINNING

NOUNS **1** **beginning, commencement, start,** running *or* flying start, starting point, square one <nf>, **outset,** outbreak, **onset,** oncoming; dawn; **creation, foundation, establishment, establishing, institution, origin,** origination, setting-up, setting in motion; **launching,** launch, launch *or* launching pad; alpha, A; **opening,** rising of the curtain; day one; first crack out of the box <nf>, leadoff, kickoff *and* jump-off *and* send-off *and* start-off *and* take-off *and* blast-off *and* git-go <nf>, the word 'go' <nf>; fresh start, new departure; **opening wedge,** leading edge, cutting edge, thin end of the wedge; entry level, bottom rung, bottom of the ladder, low place on the totem pole; daybreak

2 **beginner, neophyte, tyro;** newcomer 774.4, new arrival, Johnny-come-lately <nf>; entry-level employee, low man on the totem pole; entrant, **novice,** novitiate, probationer, catechumen; **recruit,** raw recruit, rookie <nf>; **apprentice,** trainee, learner, student; baby, infant, newborn; nestling, fledging; freshman 572.6; tenderfoot, greenhorn, greeny <nf>, initiate; debutant, deb <nf>; starter

3 **first,** first ever, prime, primal, primary, **initial,** alpha; **initiation,** initialization, first move, opening move, gambit, **first step,** baby step, *le premier pas* <Fr>, openers, starters, first lap, first round, first inning, first stage, first leg; breaking-in, warming-up; first blush, first glance, first sight, first impression; early days

4 **origin,** origination, **genesis, inception,** incipience *or* incipiency, inchoation; **divine creation,** creationism, creation science; **birth,** birthing, bearing, parturition, pregnancy, nascency *or* nascence, nativity; **infancy,** babyhood, childhood, youth; freshman year; incunabula, beginnings, cradle; fountainhead, wellspring, source

5 **inauguration,** installation *or* installment, induction, **introduction,** initiation; inception; setting in motion; embarkation *or* embarkment, **launching,** floating, flotation, unveiling; debut, first appearance, coming out <nf>; opener <nf>, preliminary, curtain raiser *or* lifter; maiden speech, inaugural address

6 **basics, essentials, rudiments, elements, nuts and bolts** <nf>; **principles,** principia, first principles, first steps, **outlines, primer,** hornbook, first reader, grammar, alphabet, **ABC's,** abecedarium; introduction, induction; groundwork, spacework

VERBS 7 **begin, commence, start; start up, kick** *or* **click in** <nf>; **start in, start off, start out, set out,** set sail, set in, set to *or* about, go *or* swing into action, get to *or* down to, **turn to,** fall to, pitch in <nf>, dive in <nf>, plunge into, head into <nf>, **go ahead,** let her rip <nf>, fire *or* blast away <nf>, take *or* jump *or* kick *or* tee *or* blast *or* send off <nf>, get the show on the road <nf>, get *or* set *or* start the ball rolling <nf>, roll it *and* let it roll <nf>

8 **make a beginning,** make a move <nf>, **start up,** get going <nf>, get off, set forth, set out, launch forth, get off the ground <nf>, **get under way,** set up shop, get in there <nf>; set a course, **get squared away** <nf>; make an auspicious beginning, **get off to a good start,** make a dent; get in on the ground floor <nf>; **break in, warm up,** get one's feet wet <nf>, cut one's teeth

9 enter, **enter on** *or* **upon** *or* **into, embark in** *or* **on** *or* **upon,** take up, go into, have a go at <chiefly Brit>, take a crack *or* whack *or* shot at <nf>; **debut,** make one's debut

10 **initiate, originate, create,** invent; **precede** 814.2, **take the initiative, take the first step,** take the lead, pioneer 815.3; **lead,** lead off, lead the way; **ahead,** head up <nf>, stand at the head, stand first; **break the ice,** take the plunge, break ground, cut the first turf, lay the first stone, get one's feet wet

11 **inaugurate,** institute, **found, establish,** set up <nf>; **install,** initiate, induct; **introduce,** broach, bring up, lift up, raise; **launch,** float; christen <nf>; **usher in,** ring in <nf>; **set on foot,** set abroach, set agoing, turn on, kick-start *and* jump-start <nf>, start up, start going, start the ball rolling <nf>, get cracking <nf>

12 **open,** open up, breach, open the door to, cut the ribbon; open fire

13 **originate, take** *or* **have origin,** be born, take birth, get started, come into the world, **become,** come to be, get to be <nf>, see the light of day, rise, **arise,** take rise, take its rise, **come forth, issue,** issue forth, come out, spring *or* crop up; burst forth, break out, erupt, irrupt; debut

14 **engender, beget, procreate** 78.8; **give birth to, bear,** birth, bring to birth, bring into the world; father, mother, sire

ADJS 15 **beginning, initial,** initiatory *or* initiative; incipient, inceptive, **introductory,** inchoative, inchoate; inaugural *or* inauguratory; **prime,** primal, **primary,** primitive, primeval; **original, first,** first ever, first of all; aboriginal, autochthonous; **elementary,** elemental, **fundamental,** foundational; **rudimentary,** rudimental, abecedarian; **ancestral,** primogenital *or* primogenitary; **formative, creative,** procreative, inventive; embryonic, in embryo, in the bud, budding, fetal, gestatory, parturient, pregnant, in its infancy, formative; infant, infantile, incunabular; **natal,** nascent, prenatal, antenatal, neonatal; early

16 **preliminary, prefatory,** preludial, proemial, precursory, preparatory; entry-level, door-opening; prepositive, prefixed

17 **first, foremost,** front, frontal, up-front <nf>, **head, chief, principal,** premier, **leading, main,** flagship, foremost; maiden

ADVS 18 **first,** firstly, **at first,** first off, first thing, for openers *or* starters <nf>, as a gambit, up front <nf>, **in the first place,** first and foremost, before everything, *primo* <L>; **principally,** mainly, chiefly, most of all; **primarily,** initially; **originally, in the beginning,** *in limine* <L>, **at the start,** at first glance *or* first blush, at the outset, at the first go-off <nf>; from the ground up, from the foundations, from the beginning, **from scratch** <nf>, from the first, **from the word 'go'** *and* from the git-go <nf>, *ab origine* <L>, *ab initio* <L>; *ab ovo* <L>

WORD ELEMENTS 19 acro-, arche-, eo-, ne-, neo-, proto-; *Ur-* <Ger>

819 MIDDLE

NOUNS 1 **middle,** median, midmost, **midst;** thick, thick of things; **center** 208.2, inside; **heart, core,** nucleus, kernel, heart of the matter; **mean** 246, midpoint; interior 207.2; midriff, diaphragm; **waist,** waistline, zone, girth, tummy *and* belly girt <nf>; equator; diameter; midday, midnight

2 **mid-distance,** middle distance; **equidistance; half,** moiety; **middle ground,** middle of the road, centrism; halfway point *or* place, midway, midcourse, midstream, halfway house; bisection; neutral ground, gray area, happy medium

VERBS 3 seek the middle, bisect, split down the middle; center, focus; average 246.2; double, fold, middle <nautical>; straddle, compromise

ADJS 4 **middle, medial,** median, mesial, middling, mediocre, average, **medium** 246.3, mezzo

<music>, **mean,** mid; **midmost,** middlemost; **central** 208.11, core, nuclear; focal, pivotal; interior, inside, internal; **intermediate,** intermediary; equidistant, halfway, midway, equatorial, diametral, midfield, midcourse, midstream; midland, mediterranean; midships, amidships; centrist, moderate, middle-of-the-road; center-seeking, centripetal

ADVS **5** **midway, halfway, in the middle,** betwixt and between <nf>, halfway in the middle <nf>; plump *or* smack *or* slap- *or* smack-dab in the middle <nf>; half-and-half, neither here nor there, *mezzo-mezzo* <Ital>; medially, mediumly; in the mean; *in medias res* <L>; **in the midst of,** in the thick of; midships, amidships

WORD ELEMENTS **6** mid-, medi-, medio-, mes-, meso-, mesio-; intermedi-, intermedio-

820 END

NOUNS **1** **end,** end point, ending, perfection, be-all and end-all, **termination, terminus, terminal,** terminating, term, period, **expiration,** expiry, phaseout, phasedown, discontinuation, closeout, **cessation** 857, ceasing, consummation, culmination, close, **conclusion, finish, finis, finale,** the end, finishing, finalizing *or* finalization, a wrap <nf>, quietus, stoppage, windup *and* payoff <nf>, curtain, curtains <nf>, all she wrote <nf>, fall of the curtain, end of the road *or* line <nf>; decease, taps, **death** 307; **last,** demise, "latter end"—Bible, last gasp *or* breath, final twitch, last throe, last legs, last hurrah <nf>; omega, à, izzard, Z; **goal,** destination, stopping place, resting place, finish line, tape *and* wire <nf>, journey's end, last stop; denouement, catastrophe, apocalypse, final solution, resolution; last *or* final words, peroration, swan song, dying words, envoi, coda, epilogue; **fate, destiny,** last things, eschatology, last trumpet, Gabriel's trumpet, crack of doom, doom; **effect** 887; **happy ending,** Hollywood ending, walking into the sunset

2 **extremity, extreme; limit** 794.5, ultimacy, definitiveness, **boundary,** farthest bound, jumping-off place, Thule, *Ultima Thule* <L>, **pole; tip,** point, nib; tail, **tail end,** butt end, tag, tag end, fag end; bitter end; stub, stump, butt; bottom dollar <nf>, bottom of the barrel <nf>

3 **close,** closing, cessation; decline, lapse; **homestretch, last lap** *or* **round** *or* **inning** <nf>, ninth inning, last stage; beginning of the end; deadline, closing time

4 **finishing stroke,** ender, **end-all,** quietus, stopper, **deathblow,** death stroke, *coup de grâce* <Fr>, kiss of death, mortal blow; **finisher,** clincher, equalizer, crusher, **settler;** knockout *and* knockout blow <nf>; sockdolager, KO *or* kayo *and* kayo punch <nf>; final stroke, finishing *or* perfecting *or* crowning touch, last dab *or* lick <nf>, last straw <nf>

VERBS **5** **end, terminate,** determine, close, close out, close the books on, phase out *or* down, **finish, conclude,** finish with, resolve, finish *or* wind up <nf>; **put an end to,** put a period to, put paid to <Brit>, put *or* lay to rest, **make an end of,** bring to an end, bring to a close *or* halt, end up; **get it over,** get over with *or* through with <nf>, be done with; bring down *or* drop the curtain; put the lid on <nf>, fold up <nf>, wrap *and* wrap up <nf>, sew up <nf>; call off <nf>, call all bets off <nf>; **dispose of,** polish off <nf>; kibosh *and* put the kibosh on <nf>, put the skids under <nf>; **stop, cease** 857.6; perorate; abort; scrap *and* scratch <nf>; **kill** 308.14, extinguish, scrag *and* waste *and* take out *and* zap <nf>, **give the quietus,** put the finisher *or* settler on <nf>, knock on *or* in the head, knock out <nf>, kayo *or* KO <nf>, shoot down *and* shoot down in flames <nf>, stop dead in one's tracks, wipe out <nf>; **cancel, delete,** expunge, censor, censor out, blank out, erase

6 **come to an end, draw to a close, expire, die** 307.19, come to rest, end up, land up; lapse, become void *or* extinct *or* defunct, run out, run its course, have its time *and* have it <nf>, pass, **pass away,** die away, wear off *or* away, go out, blow over, be all over, be no more; peter out, fizzle out

7 **complete** 794.6, perfect, finish, finish off, finish up, polish off, put the last *or* final *or* finishing touches on, finalize <nf>

ADJS **8** **ended, at an end, terminated, concluded, finished, complete** 794.9, perfected, settled, decided, set at rest; **over, all over,** all up <nf>; all off <nf>, all bets off <nf>; **done,** done with, over with, over and done with, through *and* through with <nf>; wound up <nf>, washed up <nf>; all over but the shouting <nf>; **dead 307.30,** defunct, extinct; **finished,** defeated, out of action, disabled, *hors de combat* <Fr>; **canceled, deleted,** expunged, censored *or* censored out, blanked *or* blanked out, bleeped *or* bleeped out; scrapped

9 <nf terms> **belly-up, dead meat,** kaput, shot, done for, SOL *or* shit out of luck, scragged, shot down, shot down in flames, down in flames, wasted, zapped, pffft *or* phut, wiped out, washed up, down and out, down the tubes, totaled

10 **ending, closing, concluding, finishing,** culminating *or* culminative, consummative *or* consummatory, **ultimate,** definitive, perfecting *or* perfective, terminating, crowning, capping, conclusive

11 **final, terminal,** terminating *or* terminative, determinative, definitive, **conclusive; last,** last-ditch <nf>, last but not least, eventual, farthest, extreme, boundary, border, limbic, limiting, polar, endmost, ultimate; caudal, tail, tail-end

ADVS 12 **finally,** in fine; **ultimately, eventually, as a matter of course; lastly,** last, **at last,** at the last *or* end *or* conclusion, at length, at long last; **in conclusion, in sum;** conclusively, once and for all

13 **to the end, to the bitter end, all the way,** to the last gasp, the last extremity, **to a finish,** *à outrance* <Fr>, till hell freezes over <nf>, "to the edge of doom," "to the last syllable of recorded time"—both Shakespeare

PHRS 14 **that's all for, that's final, that's that,** that's all she wrote *and* that buttons it up <nf>, that's the end of the matter, so much for that, nuf said *and* enough said <nf>; the subject is closed, the matter is ended, the deal is off <nf>; "the rest is silence"—Shakespeare

WORD ELEMENTS 15 acr-, acro-, tel-, telo-, tele-

821 TIME

NOUNS 1 **time, duration,** *durée* <Fr>, lastingness, continuity 812, term, while, tide, space; real time; psychological time; biological time; tense 530.12; **period** 824, time frame; time warp; cosmic time; kairotic time; quality time; space-time 158.6; the past 837, the present 838, the future 838; timebinding; **chronology** 832.1, chronometry, chronography, horology; tempo

2 Time, **Father Time,** Cronus, Kronos; "the illimitable, silent, never-resting thing called Time"—Carlyle, "a sandpile we run our fingers in"—Sandburg

3 tract of time, corridors of time, whirligig of time, glass *or* hourglass of time, sands of time, ravages of time, noiseless foot of Time, scythe of Time, time's winged chariot

4 **passage of time, course of time, lapse of time,** progress of time, process of time, succession of time, time-flow, flow *or* flowing *or* flux of time, sweep of time, stream *or* current *or* tide of time, time and tide, march *or* step of time, flight of time, time's caravan, "Time's revolving wheels"—Petrarch, "Time's wingèd chariot"—Andrew Marvell; timeframe

VERBS 5 **elapse,** lapse, **pass, expire,** run its course, run out, go *or* pass by; **flow,** tick away *or* by *or* on, run, proceed, advance, roll *or* press on, roll by, flit, fly, slip, slide, glide; drag by *or* on; **continue** 812.4, last, **endure,** go *or* run *or* flow on

6 spend time, pass time, put in time, employ *or* use time, fill *or* occupy time, kill time <nf>, consume time, take time, take up time, while away the time; find *or* look for time; race with *or* against time, buy time, work against time, run out of time, make time stand still; weekend, winter, summer; keep time, mark time, measure time

ADJS 7 **temporal, chronological;** chronometric, chronographic; durational, durative; lasting, continuous 812.8; temporary, pending

ADVS 8 **when, at which time,** what time *and* whenas <old>, at which moment *or* instant, on which occasion, **upon which, whereupon,** at which, in which time, at what time, in what period, on what occasion, whenever

9 **at that time,** on that occasion, at the same time as, at the same time *or* moment that, then, concurrently, simultaneously, contemporaneously

10 in the meantime, meanwhile 826.5; during the time; for the duration; at a stretch

11 **then,** thereat, thereupon, **at that time,** at that moment *or* instant, in that case *or* instance, on that occasion; **again,** at another time, at some other time, anon

12 **whenever,** whene'er, whensoever, whensoe'er, **at whatever time,** at any time, anytime, no matter when; if ever, once

13 in the year of our Lord, *anno Domini* <L>, AD, in the Common *or* Christian Era, CE; *ante Christum* <L>, AC, before Christ, BC, before the Common *or* Christian era, BCE; *anno urbis conditae* <L>, AUC; *anno regni* <L>, AR

PREPS 14 **during,** pending, durante <law>; **in the course of,** in the process of, in the middle of; **in the time of,** at the time of, in the age *or* era of; over, through, **throughout,** throughout the course of, **for the period of;** until the conclusion of

15 **until, till,** to, unto, **up to,** up to the time of

16 CONJS **when, while,** whilst <chiefly Brit>, the while; **during the time that,** at the time that, at the same time that, at *or* during which time; **whereas, as long as,** as far as

17 PHRS **time flies,** *tempus fugit* <L>, time runs out, time marches on, "Time and tide stayeth for no man"—Richard Braithwaite

WORD ELEMENTS 18 chron-, chrono-, -chronous

822 TIMELESSNESS

NOUNS 1 **timelessness,** neverness, datelessness, eternity 829.1,2; no time, no time at all, running out of time; time out of time, stopping time; everlasting moment; immortality

2 <a time that will never come> Greek calends *or* kalends, when hell freezes over, the thirtieth of February

ADJS 3 **timeless, dateless**

ADVS 4 **never,** ne'er, **not ever,** at no time, on no occasion, not at all; **nevermore;** never in the world, never on earth; not in donkey's years <Brit>, never in all one's born days <nf>, never in my life, *jamais de la vie* <Fr>

5 without date, *sine die* <L>, open, open-ended

823 INFINITY

NOUNS 1 **infinity,** infiniteness, infinitude, the all, the be-all and end-all; **boundlessness, limitlessness, endlessness;** illimitability, interminability, termlessness; **immeasurability,** unmeasurability, immensity, incalculability, innumerability, incomprehensibility; measurelessness, countlessness, unreckonability, numberlessness; exhaustlessness, inexhaustibility; universality, "world without end"—Bible; **all-inclusiveness,** all-comprehensiveness; **eternity** 829.1,2, **perpetuity** 829, forever; vastness; bottomless pit

VERBS 2 **have no limit** *or* **bounds** *or* end, know no limit *or* bounds *or* end, be without end, **go on and on,** go on forever, never cease *or* end; last forever, perpetuate

ADJS 3 **infinite, boundless, endless, limitless,** termless, shoreless; unbounded, uncircumscribed, **unlimited,** illimited, infinitely continuous *or* extended, stretching *or* extending everywhere, without bound, without limit *or* end, no end of *or* to, bottomless; illimitable, **interminable,** interminate; **immeasurable,** incalculable, unreckonable, innumerable, incomprehensible, beyond comprehension, unfathomable; measureless, countless, sumless; **unmeasured,** unmeasurable, immense, unplumbed, untold, unnumbered, without measure *or* number *or* term; exhaustless, inexhaustible; **all-inclusive,** all-comprehensive 864.14, **universal** 864.14; **perpetual,** eternal 828.7; "as boundless as the sea"—Shakespeare; mind-boggling <nf>

ADVS 4 **infinitely, illimitably,** boundlessly, limitlessly, **interminably; immeasurably,** measurelessly, immensely, incalculably, innumerably, incomprehensibly; **endlessly,** without end *or* limit; *ad infinitum* <L>, to infinity; **forever, eternally** 829.10, in perpetuity, "to the last syllable of recorded time"—Shakespeare

824 PERIOD

<portion or point of time>

NOUNS 1 **period, point, juncture,** stage; **interval,** lapse of time, time frame, space, span, timespan, stretch, time-lag, time-gap; **time,** while, **moment,** minute, instant, hour, day, **season;** psychological moment; pregnant *or* fateful moment, fated moment, kairos, moment of truth; **spell** 825; "this bank and shoal of time"—Shakespeare

2 <periods> **moment, second,** millisecond, microsecond, nanosecond; **minute,** New York minute <nf>; hour, man-hour; **day,** sun; weekday; **week;** fortnight; **month,** moon, lunation; calendar month, lunar month; **quarter; semester,** trimester, term, session, academic year; **year,** annum, sun, twelvemonth; common year, regular year, intercalary year, leap year, bissextile year, defective year, perfect *or* abundant year; solar year, lunar year, sidereal year; fiscal year; calendar year; quinquennium, lustrum, luster; **decade,** decennium, decennary; **century; millennium**

3 **term,** time, duration, **tenure;** spell 825

4 **age, generation,** time, day, date, cycle; eon *or* aeon; Platonic year, great year, *annus magnus* <L>

5 **era, epoch,** age; Golden Age, Silver Age; Ice Age, glacial epoch; Stone Age, Bronze Age, Iron Age, Steel Age; Middle Ages, Dark Ages; Era of Good Feeling; Jacksonian Age; Reconstruction Era *and* Gilded Age <1870s and 1880s>; Gay Nineties *and* Naughty Nineties *and* Mauve Decade *and* Golden Age *and* Gilded Age <1890s>; Roaring Twenties *and* Golden Twenties *and* Mad Decade *and* Age of the Red-Hot Mamas *and* Jazz Age *and* Flapper Era <1920s>; Depression Era; New Deal Era; Prohibition Era

6 <modern age> Technological Age, Automobile Age, Air Age, Jet Age, Supersonic Age, Atomic Age, Electronic Age, Computer Age, Space Age, Age of Anxiety, Age of Aquarius

7 **geological time periods**

Algonkian
Archean
Archeozoic
Cambrian
Carboniferous
Cenozoic
Comanchean
Cretaceous
Devonian
Eocene
Glacial
Holocene *or* Recent Epoch
Jurassic
Lower Cretaceous
Lower Tertiary
Mesozoic
Miocene
Mississippian
Oligocene
Ordovician
Paleocene
Paleozoic
Pennsylvanian
Permian
Pleistocene
Pliocene
Precambrian
Proterozoic
Quaternary
Silurian
Tertiary
Triassic
Upper Cretaceous
Upper Tertiary

825 SPELL

<period of duty, etc>

NOUNS 1 **spell,** fit, stretch, go <nf>

2 **turn, bout, round, inning,** innings <Brit>, time,

time at bat, place, say, whack *and* go <nf>; opportunity, chance; **relief, spell;** one's turn, one's move <nf>, one's say

3 **shift,** work shift, **tour,** tour of duty, stint, bit, **watch, trick,** time, **turn,** relay, spell *or* turn of work; day shift, night shift, swing shift, graveyard shift <nf>, dogwatch, anchor watch; lobster trick *or* tour, sunrise watch; split shift, split schedule; flextime *or* flexitime; half-time, part-time, full-time; **overtime**

4 **term,** time; **tenure,** continuous tenure, tenure in *or* of office; **enlistment, hitch** <nf>, tour; prison term, stretch <nf>; fiscal year; biorhythm, circadian rhythm, biological clock

VERBS 5 **take one's turn,** have a go <nf>; **take turns,** alternate, turn and turn about; **time off, spell** *and* **spell off** <nf>, **relieve,** cover, **fill in for,** take over for; put in one's time, work one's shift; **stand one's watch** *or* **trick,** keep a watch; have one's innings <Brit>; do a stint; hold office, have tenure *or* tenure of appointment; **enlist,** sign up; reenlist, re-up <nf>; do a hitch <nf>, do a tour *or* tour of duty; serve *or* do time

826 INTERIM

<intermediate period>

NOUNS 1 **interim, interval, interlude, intermission,** pause, break, **time-out,** recess, coffee break, halftime *or* halftime intermission, interruption; **lull,** quiet spell, resting point, point of repose, plateau, letup, relief, vacation, holiday, time off, off-time; downtime; **respite** 20.2; **intermission,** interval <Brit>, entr'acte; *intermezzo* <Ital>; interregnum

2 **meantime, meanwhile,** while, the while

VERBS 3 **intervene,** interlude, interval; **pause,** break, **recess,** declare a recess; call a halt *or* break *or* intermission; **call time** *or* time-out; take five *and* ten, etc *and* take a break <nf>

ADJS 4 **interim, temporary,** tentative, provisional, provisory

ADVS 5 **meanwhile, meantime, in the meanwhile** *or* **meantime,** in the interim, *ad interim* <L>; between acts *or* halves *or* periods, betweenwhiles, betweentimes, between now and then; till *or* until then; *en attendant* <Fr>, in the intervening time, during the interval, at the same time, for the nonce, for a time *or* season; *pendente lite* <L>

827 DURATION

NOUNS 1 **durability, endurance,** duration, durableness, **lastingness,** *longueur* <Fr>, perenniality, abidingness, long-lastingness, perdurability; **continuance,** perseverance, maintenance, **steadfastness,** constancy, **stability** 855, **persistence, permanence** 853, standing, long standing; **longevity,** long-livedness; **antiquity, age; survival,** survivability, viability, defiance *or* defeat of time; **service life,** serviceable life, useful life, shelf life, mean life; **perpetuity** 828

2 **protraction, prolongation,** continuation, extension, lengthening, drawing- *or* stretching- *or* dragging- *or* spinning-out, lingering; perpetuation; procrastination 845.5

3 **length of time,** distance of time, vista *or* stretch *or* desert of time; corridor *or* tunnel of time

4 **long time,** long while, long; **age** *and* **ages** <nf>, **aeon, century, eternity,** years, **years on end,** time immemorial, coon's age <nf>, donkey's years <Brit nf>, month of Sundays <nf>, right smart spell <nf>

5 **lifetime, life,** life's duration, life expectancy, lifespan, expectation of life, "threescore years and ten"—Bible, period of existence, all the days of one's life; **generation, age;** all one's born days *or* natural life <nf>

VERBS 6 **endure, last** *or* **last out,** bide, **abide,** dwell, perdure, **continue,** run, extend, **go on,** carry on, hold on, keep on, stay on, run on, stay the course, go the distance, go through with, grind *or* slog on, grind *or* plug away; live, **live on,** continue to be, subsist, exist, tarry; get *or* keep one's head above water; **persist,** persevere; hang in *and* hang in there *and* hang tough <nf>; maintain, sustain, **remain, stay,** keep, hold, stand, prevail, last long, hold out; **survive,** defy *or* defeat time; live to fight another day; perennate; live on, live through; wear, wear well; stand the test of time

7 **linger on,** linger, tarry, go on, **go on and on, wear on,** crawl, creep, drag, **drag on,** drag along, drag its slow length along, drag a lengthening chain

8 **outlast, outstay,** last out, outwear, **outlive, survive**

9 **protract, prolong,** continue, **extend, lengthen,** lengthen out, **draw out, spin out,** drag *or* stretch out; linger on, dwell on; dawdle, procrastinate, temporize, drag one's feet

ADJS 10 **durable,** perdurable, **lasting, enduring,** perduring, **abiding, continuing,** remaining, staying, **stable** 854.12, persisting, **persistent,** perennial; inveterate, agelong; **steadfast, constant,** intransient, immutable, unfading, evergreen, sempervirent, **permanent** 853.7, perennial, **long-lasting,** long-standing, of long duration *or* standing, diuturnal; long-term; **long-lived,** tough, hardy, vital, longevous *or* longeval; **ancient,** aged, antique; macrobiotic; chronic; **perpetual** 828.7

11 **protracted, prolonged,** extended, lengthened; **long,** overlong, time-consuming, interminable,

marathon, lasting, **lingering,** languishing; long-continued, long-continuing, long-pending; drawn- *or* stretched- *or* dragged- *or* spun-out, long-drawn, **long-drawn-out;** long-winded, prolix, verbose 538.12

12 daylong, nightlong, weeklong, monthlong, yearlong

13 **lifelong,** livelong, lifetime, for life

ADVS **14** **for a long time, long, for long, interminably,** unendingly, undyingly, persistently, protractedly, enduringly; for ever so long <nf>, for many a long day, for life *or* a lifetime, for an age *or* ages, for a coon's *or* dog's age <nf>, for a month of Sundays <nf>, for donkey's years <Brit nf>, **forever and a day, forever and ever, for years on end, for days on end,** etc; all the year round, all the day long, the livelong day, as the day is long; morning, noon, and night; hour after hour, day after day, month after month, year after year; day in day out, month in month out, year in year out; till hell freezes over <nf>, till you're blue in the face <nf>, till the cows come home <nf>, till shrimps learn to whistle <nf>, till doomsday, from now till doomsday, from here to eternity, till the end of time; since time began, from way back, long ago, long since, time out of mind, time immemorial

828 TRANSIENCE

<short duration>

NOUNS **1** **transience** *or* transiency, transientness, **impermanence** *or* impermanency, transitoriness, changeableness 854, rootlessness, **mutability, instability, temporariness,** fleetingness, **momentariness;** finitude; **ephemerality,** ephemeralness, short duration; evanescence, volatility, fugacity, **short-livedness; mortality,** death, perishability, corruptibility, caducity; **expedience** 995, ad hoc, ad hockery *or* ad hocism, adhocracy

2 **brevity, briefness,** shortness; swiftness 174, fleetness

3 **short time, little while,** little, **instant,** moment 830.3, mo <nf>, small space, span, spurt, **short spell;** no time, less than no time; bit *or* **little bit,** a breath, the wink of an eye, pair of winks <nf>; **two shakes** *and* two shakes of a lamb's tail <nf>, half a mo <nf>; just a second

4 **transient,** transient guest *or* boarder, temporary lodger; **sojourner;** passer, passerby; **wanderer; vagabond,** drifter, derelict, homeless person, bag person, tramp, hobo, bum <nf>; caller, guest, visitor

5 **ephemeron,** ephemera, ephemeral; ephemerid, ephemeris, ephemerides <pl>; mayfly; bubble, smoke; nine days' wonder, flash in the pan, passing fancy; snows of yesteryear, *neiges d'antan* <Fr>; shooting star, meteor; ship that passes in the night

VERBS **6** <be transient> **flit, fly,** fleet; **pass, pass away, vanish, evaporate,** dissolve, evanesce, disappear, fade, melt, sink; fade like a shadow *or* dream, vanish like a dream, vanish into thin air, burst like a bubble, **go up in smoke,** melt like snow

ADJS **7** **transient, transitory,** transitive; **temporary,** temporal; **impermanent,** unenduring, undurable, nondurable, nonpermanent; frail, brittle, fragile, insubstantial; changeable 854.6, **mutable, unstable,** inconstant 854.7; capricious, fickle, impulsive, impetuous; **short-lived, ephemeral,** fly-by-night, evanescent, volatile, **momentary;** deciduous; **passing,** fleeting, flitting, flying, fading, dying; fugitive, fugacious; perishable, mortal, corruptible; "as transient as the clouds"—Robert Green Ingersoll, here today and gone tomorrow; **expedient** 995.5, ad-hoc

8 **brief, short,** short-time, quick, brisk, swift, fleet, speedy, "short and sweet"—Thomas Lodge; meteoric, cometary, flashing, flickering; short-term, short-termed

ADVS **9** **temporarily,** for the moment, for the time, *pro tempore* <L>, pro tem, for the nonce, **for the time being,** for a time, awhile

10 **transiently,** impermanently, evanescently, transitorily, changeably, mutably, ephemerally, fleetingly, flittingly, flickeringly, **briefly, shortly,** swiftly, quickly, **for a little while,** for a short time; **momentarily,** for a moment; **in an instant** 830.7

829 PERPETUITY

<endless duration>

NOUNS **1** **perpetuity,** perpetualness; **eternity,** eternalness, sempiternity, infinite duration; everness, foreverness, **everlastingness, permanence** 852, ever-duringness, duration 827, perdurability, indestructibility; **constancy,** stability, immutability, continuance, perseverance, continualness, perennialness *or* perenniality, **ceaselessness,** unceasingness, incessancy; timelessness 822; **endlessness,** never-endingness, **interminability; infinity** 823; coeternity

2 **forever, an eternity,** endless time, **time without end;** "a moment standing still for ever"—James Montgomery, "a short parenthesis in a long period"—Donne

3 **immortality,** eternal life, **deathlessness,** imperishability, undyingness, incorruptibility *or* incorruption, athanasy *or* athanasia, life everlasting; eternal youth, fountain of youth

4 **perpetuation,** preservation, eternalization, immortalization; eternal re-creation, eternal return *or* recurrence; steady-state universe

VERBS 5 **perpetuate, preserve,** preserve from oblivion, keep fresh *or* alive, perennialize, **eternalize,** eternize, **immortalize;** monumentalize; freeze, embalm

6 last *or* endure forever, **go on forever,** go on and on, live forever, **have no end,** have no limits *or* bounds *or* term, never cease *or* end *or* die *or* pass

ADJS 7 **perpetual, everlasting,** everliving, ever-being, ever-abiding, ever-during, ever-durable, permanent 853.7, perdurable, indestructible; **eternal,** sempiternal, eterne <old>, **infinite** 823.3, aeonian *or* eonian; dateless, ageless, timeless, immemorial; **endless,** unending, never-ending, without end, **interminable,** nonterminous, nonterminating; **continual,** continuous, steady, **constant, ceaseless,** nonstop, unceasing, never-ceasing, **incessant,** unremitting, unintermitting, uninterrupted, "continuous as the stars that shine"—Wordsworth; coeternal

8 **perennial,** indeciduous, **evergreen,** sempervirent, ever-new, ever-young; ever-blooming, ever-bearing

9 **immortal,** everlasting, **deathless,** undying, never-dying, **imperishable,** incorruptible, amaranthine; fadeless, **unfading,** never-fading, ever-fresh; frozen, embalmed

ADVS 10 **perpetually,** in perpetuity, **everlastingly, eternally,** permanently 853.9, perennially, perdurably, indestructibly, **constantly,** continually, steadily, **ceaselessly,** unceasingly, never-ceasingly, **incessantly,** never-endingly, **endlessly,** unendingly, **interminably,** without end, world without end, time without end, "from everlasting to everlasting"—Bible; **infinitely,** *ad infinitum* <L> 823.4

11 **always, all along, all the time,** all the while, at all times, *semper et ubique* <L, always and everywhere>; ever and always, **invariably,** without exception, never otherwise, *semper eadem* <L, ever the same; Elizabeth I>

12 **forever, forevermore, for ever and ever,** forever and aye; forever and a day <nf>, now and forever, *ora e sempre* <Ital>, "yesterday and today and forever"—Bible; **ever, evermore,** ever and anon, ever and again; aye, for aye; **for good,** for keeps <nf>, for good and all, for all time; throughout the ages, from age to age, in all ages, "for ages of ages"—Douay Bible; **to the end of time,** till time stops *or* runs out, "to the last syllable of recorded time"—Shakespeare, to the crack of doom, to the last trumpet, till doomsday; till you're blue in the face <nf>, till hell freezes over <nf>, till the cows come home <nf>

13 **for life,** for all one's natural life, for the term of one's days, while life endures, while one draws breath, in all one's born days <nf>; from the cradle to the grave, from the womb to the tomb; **till death,** till death do us part

830 INSTANTANEOUSNESS
<imperceptible duration>

NOUNS 1 **instantaneousness** *or* **instantaneity,** momentariness, **momentaneousness** <old>, **immediateness** *or* immediacy, near-simultaneity *or* -simultaneousness; simultaneity 836

2 **suddenness, abruptness, precipitateness,** precipitance *or* precipitancy; **unexpectedness,** unanticipation, inexpectation 131

3 **instant, moment, second,** sec <nf>, split second, millisecond, microsecond, nanosecond, half a second, half a mo <Brit nf>, minute, **trice,** twinkle, **twinkling, twinkling** *or* **twinkle of an eye,** twink, **wink,** bat of an eye <nf>, **flash,** crack, tick, stroke, coup, breath, twitch; two shakes of a lamb's tail *and* two shakes *and* shake *and* half a shake *and* **jiffy** *and* jiff *and* half a jiffy <nf>

ADJS 4 **instantaneous,** instant, momentary, momentaneous <old>, **immediate,** presto, quick as thought *or* lightning; lightning-like, lightning-swift; nearly simultaneous; simultaneous; split-second; urgent, on-the-spot; fast-food, convenience-food; ready-to-wear, off-the-rack

5 **sudden, abrupt,** precipitant, **precipitate, precipitous; hasty,** headlong, impulsive, impetuous; speedy, swift, quick; **unexpected** 131.10, unanticipated, unpredicted, unforeseen, unlooked-for; **surprising** 131.11, startling, electrifying, shocking, nerve-shattering

ADVS 6 **instantly,** instanter, momentaneously <old>, momentarily, momently, **instantaneously, immediately, right off the bat** <nf>; on the instant, on the dot <nf>, on the nail

7 **quickly, in an instant, in a trice, in a second,** in a moment, in a mo *or* half a mo <Brit nf>, in a bit *or* little bit, in a jiff *or* jiffy *or* half a jiffy <nf>, in a flash, in a wink <nf>, in a twink, **in a twinkling, in the twinkling of an eye, as quick as a wink,** as quick as greased lightning <nf>, in two shakes *or* a shake *or* half a shake <nf>, in two shakes of a lamb's tail <nf>, before you can say 'Jack Robinson' <nf>; **in no time,** in less than no time, in nothing flat <nf>, in short order; at the drop of a hat *or* handkerchief, like a shot, like a shot out of hell <nf>; with the speed of light

8 **at once,** at once and on the spot, **then and there, now, right now, right away, right off,** straightway, straightaway, forthwith, this minute, this very

minute, **without delay,** without the least delay, in a hurry <nf>, *pronto* <Sp>, *subito* <Ital>; **simultaneously,** at the same instant, in the same breath; **all at once,** all together, at one time, at a stroke, at one stroke, at a blow, at one blow, at one swoop, "at one fell swoop"—Shakespeare; at one jump, *per saltum* <L>, *uno saltu* <L>

9 **suddenly,** sudden, of a sudden, on a sudden, **all of a sudden, all at once: abruptly,** sharp; **precipitously** *or* precipitately, precipitantly, impulsively, impetuously, hastily; dash; smack, bang, slap, plop, plunk, plump, pop; **unexpectedly** 131.14, out of a clear blue sky, when least expected, before you know it; on short notice, without notice *or* warning, without further ado, unawares, **surprisingly** 131.15, startlingly, like a thunderbolt *or* thunderclap, like a flash, like a bolt from the blue

10 PHRS no sooner said than done

831 EVENT

NOUNS **1** **event, eventuality,** eventuation, effect 887, issue, outcome, result, aftermath, consequence; **realization,** materialization, coming to be *or* pass, incidence; contingency, contingent; accident 972.6

2 **event, occurrence, incident, episode, experience,** adventure, hap, **happening,** happenstance, **phenomenon,** fact, matter of fact, reality, particular, circumstance, **occasion,** turn of events; **nonevent,** pseudo-event, media event *or* happening, photo opportunity; what's happening

3 **affair, concern, matter,** thing, concernment, interest, **business,** job <nf>, **transaction,** proceeding, doing; current affairs *or* events; cause célèbre, matter of moment

4 **affairs, concerns, matters,** circumstances, relations, **dealings, proceedings,** doings, goings-on <nf>; course *or* run of events, run of things, the way of things, the way things go, what happens, current of events, march of events; the world, life, the times; order of the day; **conditions, state of affairs,** environing *or* ambient phenomena, state *or* condition of things

VERBS **5** **occur, happen** 972.11, hap, eventuate, **take place,** come *or* go down <nf>, go on, **transpire,** be realized, come, **come off** <nf>, **come about,** come true, **come to pass,** pass, pass off, go off, fall, **befall,** betide; **be found,** be met with

6 **turn up, show up** <nf>, **come along,** come one's way, cross one's path, come into being *or* existence, chance, **crop up,** spring up, pop up <nf>, arise, come forth, come *or* draw on, appear, approach, materialize, present itself, be destined for one

7 **turn out, result** 887.5

8 **experience, have, know, feel,** taste; **encounter, meet,** meet with, meet up with <nf>, run up against <nf>; **undergo, go through,** pass through, be subjected to, be exposed to, stand under, labor under, **endure, suffer,** sustain, pay, spend

ADJS **9** **happening, occurring, current, actual,** passing, taking place, on, **going on,** ongoing <nf>, **prevalent, prevailing,** that is, that applies, in the wind, afloat, afoot, under way, in hand, **on foot,** ado, doing; incidental, circumstantial, accompanying; accidental; occasional; resultant; eventuating

10 **eventful, momentous, stirring,** bustling, full of incident; phenomenal

11 **eventual, coming, final,** last, **ultimate; contingent,** collateral, secondary, indirect

ADVS **12** **eventually, ultimately, finally, in the end, after all is said and done, in the long run, over the long haul;** in the course of things, in the natural way of things, as things go, as times go, as the world goes, as the tree falls, the way the cookie crumbles <nf>, as things turn out, as it may be *or* happen *or* turn out, as luck *or* fate *or* destiny wills

CONJS **13** **in the event that, if, in case,** if it should happen that, just in case, in any case, in either case, in the contingency that, in case that; provided 959.12

832 MEASUREMENT OF TIME

NOUNS **1** **chronology,** timekeeping, timing, clocking, horology, **chronometry,** horometry, chronoscopy, chronography; watch- *or* clock-making; scheduling, calendar-making; **dating,** carbon-14 dating, radiocarbon dating, dendrochronology

2 **time of day, time** 821, **the time,** the exact time; time of night; **hour,** minute; stroke of the hour, time signal, bell

3 standard time, civil time, zone time, slow time <nf>; mean time, solar time, mean solar time, sidereal time, apparent time, local time; universal time *or* Greenwich time *or* Greenwich mean time *or* GMT, Eastern time, Central time, Mountain time, Pacific time; Atlantic time; Alaska time, Yukon time; daylight-saving time; fast time <nf>, summer time <Brit>; **time zone**

4 **date,** point of time, time, day; postdate, antedate; datemark; date line, International Date Line; calends, nones, ides; name day, saint's day; red-letter day, anniversary

5 epact, annual epact, monthly *or* menstrual epact

6 **timepiece,** timekeeper, **timer, chronometer,** ship's watch; horologe, horologium; **clock,** Big Ben, ticker <nf>, **watch,** turnip <nf>; hourglass, sundial; watch *or* clock movement, clockworks, watchworks

7 **almanac,** The Old Farmer's Almanac, Nautical Almanac, Poor Richard's Almanac, World Almanac

8 **calendar,** calends; calendar stone, chronogram; almanac *or* astronomical calendar, ephemeris; perpetual calendar; Chinese calendar, church *or* ecclesiastical calendar, Cotsworth calendar, Gregorian calendar, Hebrew *or* Jewish calendar, Hindu calendar, international fixed calendar, Julian calendar, Muslim calendar, Republican *or* Revolutionary calendar, Roman calendar, ordo calendar

9 **chronicle, chronology, register,** registry, record; **annals,** journal, diary; time sheet, time book, **log,** daybook; timecard, time ticket, clock card, check sheet; datebook; date slip; **timetable,** schedule, timeline, time schedule, time chart, schedule; time scale; time study, motion study, time and motion study

10 **chronologist,** chronologer, chronographer, horologist, horologer; watchmaker *or* clockmaker; timekeeper, timer; chronicler, annalist, diarist, historian, historiographer; calendar maker, calendarist

VERBS 11 **time, fix** *or* **set the time,** mark the time; **keep time,** mark time, measure time, beat time; **clock** <nf>; watch the clock; set the alarm; synchronize

12 **punch the clock** *and* punch in *and* punch out *and* **time in** *and* **time out** <nf>; ring in, ring out; clock in, clock out; check in, check out; check off

13 **date,** be dated, date at *or* from, date back, bear a date of, bear the date of, carry a date; fix *or* set the date, make a date; **predate,** backdate, antedate; **postdate; update,** bring up to date; datemark; date-stamp; dateline

14 chronologize, chronicle, calendar, intercalate

ADJS 15 **chronologic** *or* **chronological,** temporal, timekeeping; **chronometric** *or* chronometrical, chronoscopic, chronographic *or* chronographical, chronogrammatic *or* chronogrammatical, horologic *or* horological, horometric *or* horometrical, metronomic *or* metronomical, calendric *or* calendrical, intercalary *or* intercalated; dated; annalistic, diaristic; calendarial

ADVS 16 **o'clock,** of the clock, by the clock; half past, half *or* half after <Brit>; a quarter of *or* to, a quarter past *or* after

833 ANACHRONISM

<false estimation or knowledge of time>

NOUNS 1 **anachronism,** chronological *or* historical error, **mistiming, misdating,** misdate, postdating, antedating; parachronism, metachronism, prochronism; prolepsis, anticipation; earliness, lateness, tardiness, unpunctuality

VERBS 2 **mistime, misdate;** antedate, foredate, postdate; lag

ADJS 3 **anachronous** *or* anachronistical *or* **anachronistic,** parachronistic, metachronistic, prochronistic, unhistorical, unchronological; **mistimed, misdated;** antedated, foredated, postdated; ahead of time, **beforehand, early;** behind time, **behindhand, late,** unpunctual, tardy; **overdue,** past due; unseasonable, out of season; **dated,** out-of-date

834 PREVIOUSNESS

NOUNS 1 **previousness, earliness** 845, **antecedence** *or* antecedency, priority, **anteriority, precedence** *or* precedency 814, precession; *status quo ante* <L>, previous *or* prior state, earlier state; preexistence; **anticipation,** predating, antedating; antedate; **past time** 836

2 antecedent, precedent, premise; forerunner, **precursor** 816, ancestor

VERBS 3 **be prior,** be before *or* early *or* earlier, come on the scene *or* appear earlier, **precede, antecede, forerun,** come *or* go before, set a precedent; **herald,** usher in, proclaim, announce; **anticipate,** antedate, predate; **preexist**

ADJS 4 **previous, prior, early** 845.7, **earlier,** *ci-devant* or *ci-dessus* <Fr>, **former,** fore, prime, first, **preceding** 165.3, foregoing, above, anterior, **anticipatory,** antecedent; **preexistent;** older, elder, senior

5 prewar, ante-bellum, before the war; prerevolutionary; premundane *or* antemundane; prelapsarian, before the Fall; antediluvian, before the Flood; protohistoric, prehistoric 836.10; precultural; pre-Aryan; pre-Christian; premillenarian, premillennial; anteclassical, preclassical, pre-Roman, pre-Renaissance, pre-Romantic, pre-Victorian, etc

ADVS 6 **previously,** priorly, **hitherto, heretofore,** thitherto, theretofore; **before, early** 845.11, **earlier,** ere, erenow, ere then, or ever; already, yet; before all; **formerly** 837.13

PREPS 7 **prior to, previous to, before,** in advance of, in anticipation of, in preparation for

WORD ELEMENTS 8 ante-, anti-, fore-, pre-, pro-, prot-, proto-, proter-, protero-, supra-

835 SUBSEQUENCE

<later time>

NOUNS 1 **subsequence,** posteriority, **succession, ensuing, following** 166, sequence, coming after, supervenience, supervention; lateness 846; afterlife, next life; remainder 256, hangover <nf>; postdating; postdate; future time 838

2 **sequel** 817, **follow-up,** sequelae, **aftermath; consequence, effect** 887; **posterity,** offspring, descendant, heir, inheritor; **successor;** replacement, line, **lineage,** dynasty, family

VERBS 3 **come** *or* **follow** *or* **go after, follow, follow on** *or* **upon,** succeed, replace, take the place of, displace, overtake, supervene; **ensue,** issue, emanate, attend, **result;** follow up, trail, track, come close on *or* tread on the heels of, "follow hard upon"—Shakespeare, dog the footsteps of; **step into** or fill the shoes of, don the mantle of, assume the robe of

ADJS 4 **subsequent, after, later,** after-the-fact, *post factum* and *ex post facto* <L>, posterior, **following, succeeding,** successive, sequent, lineal, consecutive, ensuing, attendant; **junior,** cadet, puisne <law>, younger

5 **posthumous,** afterdeath; **postprandial,** postcibal, postcenal, after-dinner; **post-war,** *postbellum* <L>, after the war; **postdiluvian,** postdiluvial, after the flood, postlapsarian, after the Fall, post-industrial, post-modern, post-millenial, etc

ADVS 6 **subsequently, after, afterwards,** after that, after all, **later, next,** since; **thereafter,** thereon, thereupon, therewith, **then;** in the process *or* course of time, as things worked out, in the sequel; at a subsequent *or* later time, in the aftermath; *ex post facto* <L>; hard on the heels *or* on the heels

7 **after which, on** *or* **upon which, whereupon,** whereon, whereat, whereto, whereunto, wherewith, wherefore, on, upon; hereinafter

PREPS 8 **after, following, subsequent to,** later than, past, beyond, behind; below, farther down *or* along

WORD ELEMENTS 9 ante-, anti-, fore-, pre-, pro-, prot-, proto-, proter-, protero-, supra-; epi-, eph-, infra-, meta-, post-

836 SIMULTANEITY

NOUNS 1 **simultaneity** *or* **simultaneousness,** coincidence, co-occurrence, concurrence *or* concurrency, concomitance *or* concomitancy; **coexistence; contemporaneousness** *or* contemporaneity, coetaneousness *or* coetaneity, coevalness *or* coevalneity; unison; **synchronism,** synchronization, sync <nf>; isochronism; accompaniment 769, agreement 788

2 **contemporary,** coeval, concomitant, compeer; age group, peer group

3 **tie,** dead heat, draw, wash <nf>

VERBS 4 **coincide,** co-occur, concur; **coexist;** coextend; **synchronize,** isochronize, put *or* be in phase, be in time, keep time, time; contemporize; **accompany** 769.7, **agree** 788.6, match, go along with, go hand in hand, keep pace with, keep in step; sync <nf>

ADJS 5 **simultaneous, concurrent,** co-occurring, coinstantaneous, concomitant; **tied,** neck-and-neck; coexistent, coexisting; **contemporaneous,** contemporary, coetaneous, coeval; coterminous, conterminous; unison, unisonous; photo-finish; isochronous, isochronal; coeternal; accompanying 769.9, collateral; agreeing 788.9

6 **synchronous,** synchronized, synchronic *or* synchronal, in sync <nf>, isochronal, isochronous; **in time,** in step, in tempo, in phase, with *or* on the beat, in sync <nf>

ADVS 7 **simultaneously, concurrently,** coinstantaneously; **together,** all together, **at the same time,** at one and the same time, as one, as one man, in concert with, in chorus, with one voice, in unison, in a chorus, in the same breath; at one time, at a clip <nf>; synchronously, **synchronically,** isochronously, in phase, **in sync** <nf>, with *or* on the beat, on the downbeat

837 THE PAST

NOUNS 1 **the past,** past, foretime, former times, past times, times past, water under the bridge, **days** *or* **times gone by, bygone times** *or* **days,** bygones, **yesterday, yesteryear;** recent past, just *or* only yesterday; history, past **history;** dead past, dead hand of the past; the years that are past, "the days that are no more"—Tennyson, "the irrevocable Past"—Longfellow

2 **old** *or* **olden times,** early times, **old** *or* **olden days,** the olden time, times of old, **days of old, days** *or* **times of yore,** yore, yoretime, foretime, eld <old>, good old times *or* days, the way it was, lang syne *or* auld lang syne <Scot>, **the long ago,** time out of mind, days beyond recall; the old story, the same old story

3 **antiquity, ancient times,** time immemorial, ancient history, prehistory, protohistory, remote age *or* time, remote *or* far *or* dim *or* **distant past,** distance of time, past age, way back when; geological past, ice age; "the dark backward and abysm of time"—Shakespeare; ancientness 842

4 **memory** 989, **remembrance, recollection, reminiscence, fond remembrance, retrospection,** retrospective, musing on the past, looking back, reprise; "the remembrance of things past"—Shakespeare, "*la recherche du temps perdu*"—Proust; **reliving,** reexperiencing; revival 396.3; youth 301

5 <grammatical terms> past tense, preterit, perfect

tense, past perfect tense, pluperfect, historical present tense, past progressive tense, past participle; aorist; perfective aspect; preterition

VERBS 6 **pass,** be past, **be a thing of the past,** be history, elapse, lapse, slip by *or* away, be gone, fade, fade away, be dead and gone, be all over, have run its course, have run out, have had its day; pass into history; **disappear** 34.2; **die** 307.19

ADJS 7 **past, gone,** by, **gone-by, bygone,** gone glimmering, bypast, ago, **over,** departed, passed, passed away, elapsed, lapsed, vanished, faded, no more, lost forever, long gone, irrecoverable, never to return, not coming back; **dead** 307.30, dead as a dodo, expired, extinct, dead and buried, defunct, deceased; run out, blown over, finished, forgotten, wound up; **passé, obsolete,** has-been, dated, antique, **antiquated**

8 **reminiscent** 989.22, **retrospective, remembered** 989.23, **recollected; relived, reexperienced; restored, revived**; retro; diachronic

9 <grammatical terms> past, preterit *or* preteritive, pluperfect, past perfect; aorist, aoristic; perfective

10 **former,** past, fore, **previous,** late, recent, **once, onetime,** sometime, **erstwhile,** then, quondam; obsolescent; retired, emeritus, superannuated; **prior** 833.4; **ancient, immemorial,** early, primitive, primeval, prehistoric; **old,** olden

11 **foregoing,** aforegoing, **preceding** 814.4; last, latter

12 **back,** backward, into the past; early; retrospective, retro, retroactive, *ex post facto* <L>, *a priori* <L>

ADVS 13 **formerly, previously, priorly** 834.6; **earlier, before,** before now, erenow, erst, whilom, erewhile, **hitherto, heretofore,** thitherto, aforetime, beforetime, **in the past,** in times past; then; **yesterday,** only yesterday, recently; **historically,** prehistorically, in historic *or* prehistoric times

14 **once,** once upon a time, one day, one fine morning, time was

15 **ago, since,** gone by; back, back when; backward, to *or* into the past; **retrospectively,** reminiscently, retroactively

16 **long ago,** long since, **a long while** *or* **time ago,** some time ago *or* since, some time back, a way *or* away back <nf>, ages ago, **years ago,** donkey's years ago <Brit nf>; **in times past,** in times gone by, in the old days, in the good old days; **anciently, of old, of yore,** in ancient times, in olden times, in the olden times, **in days of yore,** early, in the memory of man, time out of mind

17 **since,** ever since, until now; **since long ago, long since,** from away back <nf>, since days of yore, ages ago, **from time immemorial,** from time out of mind, aeons ago, since the world was made, since the world was young, since time began, since the year one, since Hector was a pup and since God knows when <nf>

WORD ELEMENTS 18 archae-, archaeo-, archeo-; pale-, paleo-, praeter-, preter-, retro-; -ed, y- <old>

838 THE PRESENT

NOUNS 1 **the present,** presentness, present time, the here and now; **now,** the present juncture *or* occasion, the present hour *or* moment *or* minute, this instant *or* second *or* moment, **the present day** *or* **time** etc; **the present age; today,** this day, **this day and age; this point,** this stage, this hour, **now,** nowadays, the now, the way things are, the nonce, **the time being; the times,** our times, these days, modern times; **contemporaneousness** *or* contemporaneity, nowness, actuality, topicality; **newness** 841, modernity; the Now Generation, the me generation; historical present *and* present tense <gram>, present participle

ADJS 2 **present, immediate,** latest, current, running, extant, **existent,** existing, actual, topical, being, that is, as is, that be; **present-day,** present-time, present-age, **modern** 841.13, modern-day; **contemporary,** contemporaneous; up-to-date, up-to-the-minute, fresh, with it <nf>, **new** 841.7

ADVS 3 **now, at present, at this point,** at this juncture, at this stage *or* at this stage of the game, on the present occasion, **at this time,** at this moment *or* instant, at the present time; **today,** this day, in these days, **in this day and age,** in our time, **nowadays;** this night, **tonight;** here, hereat, **here and now,** *hic et nunc* <L>, even now, but now, **just now,** as of now, as things are; on the spot; for the nonce, for the time being; for this occasion

4 **until now, hitherto,** till now, thitherto, **hereunto,** heretofore, until this time, by this time, **up to now,** up to the present, up to this time, to this day, to the present moment, to this very instant, **so far,** thus far, **as yet, to date,** yet, already, still, now *or* then as previously

WORD ELEMENTS 5 ne-, neo-, nov-, novo-; cen-, ceno-, caen-, caeno-, -cene

839 THE FUTURE

NOUNS 1 **the future,** future, futurity, what is to come, imminence 840, subsequence 834, eventuality 831.1, **hereafter,** aftertime, afteryears, **time to come,** years to come, etc; **futurism,** futuristics; **tomorrow,** the morrow, the morning after, *mañana* <Sp>; **immediate** *or* **near future,** time just ahead, immediate prospect, offing, next period; **distant future,** remote *or* deep *or* far future, long run, long term; **by-and-by,** the sweet by-and-by <nf>; time ahead, course ahead, **prospect,** outlook, anticipation, expectation, project, probability, prediction, extrapolation, forward look, foresight, prevision, prevenience, envisionment, envisagement, prophecy, divination, clairvoyance, crystal ball; what is to be *or* come; determinism; future tense, future perfect; futurism; the womb of time

2 **destiny** 964.2, **fate,** doom, karma, kismet, what bodes *or* looms, what is fated *or* destined *or* doomed, what is written, what is in the books, "whatever limits us"—Emerson; the Fates, the Parcae *or* Parcae Fates, Lachesis, Clotho, Atropos, Moira, Moirai, **the hereafter,** the great hereafter, a better place, Paradise, Heaven, Elysian Fields, Happy Isles, the Land of Youth *or* Tir na n'Og, Valhalla; Hades, the Underworld, Hell, Gehenna; **the afterworld,** the otherworld, **the next world,** the world to come, life *or* world beyond the grave, **the beyond,** the great beyond, the unknown, the great unknown, **the grave,** home *or* abode *or* world of the dead, eternal home; "the great world of light, that lies behind all human destinies"—Longfellow; **afterlife, postexistence,** future state, **life to come,** life after death

3 **doomsday,** doom, day of doom, day of reckoning, crack of doom, trumpet *or* trump of doom; **Judgment Day,** Day of Judgment, the Judgment; eschatology, last things, **last days**

4 **futurity;** ultimateness, eventuality, finality

5 **advent, coming, approach of time,** time drawing on

VERBS **6** **come,** come on, **approach,** near, **draw on** *or* **near;** be to be *or* come; be fated *or* destined *or* doomed, be in the books, be in the cards; **loom,** threaten, await, stare one in the face, be imminent 840.2; lie ahead *or* in one's course, lie just around the corner; **predict,** foresee, envision, envisage, see ahead, previse, foretell, prophesy; **anticipate, expect,** hope, hope for, look for, look forward to, **project,** plot, plan, scheme, think ahead, extrapolate, take the long view

7 **live on,** postexist, survive, get by *or* through, make it <nf>

ADJS **8** **future, later,** hereafter; **coming, forthcoming, imminent** 840.3, approaching, nearing, close at hand, waiting in the wings, nigh, **prospective;** eventual 831.11, ultimate, to-be, **to come; projected,** plotted, planned, looked- *or* hoped-for, desired, emergent, **predicted,** prophesied, foreseen, anticipated, anticipatory, previsional, prevenient, envisioned, envisaged, probable, extrapolated; determined, fatal, fatidic, fated, destinal, destined, doomed; eschatological; futuristic

ADVS **9** **in the future,** in aftertime, **afterward** *or* afterwards, **later,** at a later time, after a time *or* while, anon; **by and by,** in the sweet by-and-by <nf>; **tomorrow,** *mañana* <Sp>, the day after tomorrow; *proximo* <L>, prox, **in the near** *or* **immediate future,** just around the corner, **imminently** 839.4, **soon, before long;** probably, predictably, hopefully; fatally, by destiny *or* necessity

10 in future, **hereafter,** hereinafter, thereafter, **henceforth, henceforward** *or* henceforwards, thence, **thenceforth,** thenceforward *or* thenceforwards, over the long haul *or* short haul <nf>, from this time forward, from this day on *or* forward, from this point, from this *or* that time, from then on, **from here** *or* **now on,** from now on in <nf>, from here in *or* out <nf>, from this moment on

11 **in time, in due time,** in due season *or* course, all in good time, **in the fullness of time,** in God's good time, in the course *or* process of time, **eventually** 830.12, **ultimately,** in the long run

12 **sometime, someday, some of these days,** one of these days, some fine day *or* morning, one fine day *or* morning, some sweet day, sometime or other, somewhen, sooner or later, when all is said and done

PREPS **13** **about to, at** *or* **on the point of,** on the eve of, on the brink *or* edge *or* verge of, near to, close upon, in the act of

840 IMMINENCE

<future event>

NOUNS **1** **imminence** *or* **imminency,** impendence *or* impendency, forthcomingness; **forthcoming,** coming, **approach, loom;** immediate *or* near future; futurity 839.1

VERBS **2** **be imminent, impend, overhang,** hang *or* lie over, **loom,** hang over one's head, hover, **threaten, menace,** lower; brew, gather; **come** *or* **draw on,** draw near *or* nigh, rush up on one, forthcome, **approach, loom up, near,** be on the horizon, be in the offing, be just around the corner, await, face, **confront, loom,** stare one in the face, be in store, breathe down one's neck, be about to be borning

ADJS **3** **imminent, impending,** impendent, **overhanging,** hanging over one's head, waiting, lurking, **threatening, looming,** lowering, **menacing,** lying in ambush; **brewing,** gathering, preparing; **coming, forthcoming, upcoming, to come,** about to be, about *or* going to happen, **approaching, nearing,** looming, looming up, looming in the distance *or* future; **near, close,** immediate, instant, soon to be, **at hand,** near at hand, close at hand; **in the offing,** on the horizon, **in prospect,** already in sight, just around the corner, in view, in one's eye, in store, in reserve, **in the wind,** in the womb of time; on the knees *or* lap of the gods, in the cards <nf>; that will be, that is to be; future 839.8

ADVS 4 **imminently,** impendingly; **any time,** any time now, any moment, any second, any minute, any hour, any day; **to be expected,** as may be expected, as may be

CONJS 5 **on the point of, on the verge of,** on the eve of

841 NEWNESS

NOUNS 1 **newness,** freshness, maidenhood, dewiness, pristineness, mint condition, new-mintedness, newbornness, virginity, intactness, greenness, immaturity, rawness, callowness, brand-newness; presentness, nowness; **recentness,** recency, lateness; **novelty,** gloss of novelty, newfangledness *or* newfangleness; originality 337.1; **uncommonness,** unusualness, strangeness, unfamiliarity

2 **novelty, innovation,** neology, neologism, newfangled device *or* contraption <nf>, neoism, neonism, **new** *or* **latest wrinkle** <nf>, **the last word** *or* **the latest thing** <nf>, *dernier cri* <Fr>; what's happening *and* what's in *and* the in thing *and* where it's at <nf>; new ball game; new look, latest fashion *or* fad; advance guard, vanguard, **avant-garde**; neophilia, neophiliac; start-up

3 **modernity,** modernness; modernism; modernization, updating, *aggiornamento* <Ital>; state of the art; postmodernism, space age

4 **modern,** modern man; modernist; modernizer; neologist, neoterist, neology, neologism, neoterism, neoteric; modern *or* rising *or* new generation; neonate, fledgling, stripling, neophyte, *novus homo* <L>, new man, upstart, *arriviste* <Fr>, *nouveau riche* <Fr>, parvenu; Young Turk, bright young man, comer <nf>; trendsetter; new kid on the block <nf>

VERBS 5 **innovate, invent,** make from scratch *or* from the ground up, coin, new-mint, mint, inaugurate, neologize, neoterize; **renew,** renovate 396.17; give a new lease on life

6 **modernize,** streamline; update, **bring up to date,** keep *or* stay current, move with the times

ADJS 7 **new,** young, **fresh,** fresh as a daisy, fresh as the morning dew; **unused, firsthand, original;** untried, untouched, unhandled, unhandseled, untrodden, unbeaten; virgin, virginal, intact, maiden, maidenly; green, vernal; dewy, pristine, ever-new, sempervirent, evergreen; **immature,** undeveloped, raw, callow, fledgling, unfledged, nestling; neological, neologistic, neophytic

8 **fresh, additional, further,** other, another; **renewed**

9 **new-made,** new-built, new-wrought, new-shaped, new-mown, new-minted, new-coined, uncirculated, in mint condition, mint, new-begotten, new-grown, new-laid; **newfound;** newborn, neonatal, new-fledged; **new-model,** late-model, like new, factory-new, factory-fresh, oven-fresh, in its original carton

10 <nf terms> **brand-new,** fire-new, **brand-spanking new,** spanking, **spanking new; just out; hot,** hottest, hot off the fire *or* griddle *or* spit, hot off the press; newfangled *or* newfangle

11 **novel, original, unique, different;** strange, unusual, uncommon; unfamiliar, unheard-of; **first, first ever** 818.15

12 **recent, late,** newly come, of yesterday; latter, later

13 **modern, contemporary, present-day,** present-time, twentieth-century, latter-day, space-age, neoteric, now <nf>, topical, **newfashioned,** fashionable, modish, mod, *à la mode* <Fr>, **up-to-date,** up-to-datish, **up-to-the-minute, in,** abreast of the times; **advanced,** progressive, forward-looking, modernizing, **avant-garde;** ultramodern, ultra-ultra, ahead of its time, far out, way out, modernistic, modernized, streamlined; postmodern, trendy, faddish

14 **state-of-the-art, newest, latest,** the very latest, up-to-the-minute, last, most recent, newest of the new, farthest out

ADVS 15 **newly,** freshly, new, **anew,** once more, from the ground up, from scratch <nf>, *ab ovo* <L>, *de novo* <L>, **afresh, again;** as new

16 **now, recently, lately,** latterly, **of late,** not long ago, a short time ago, the other day, only yesterday; just now, right now <nf>; neoterically

842 OLDNESS

NOUNS 1 **oldness, age,** eld <old>, hoary eld; elderliness, seniority, senior citizenship, senility, **old age** 303.5; **ancientness, antiquity,** dust of ages, rust *or* cobwebs of antiquity; venerableness, eldership, primogeniture, great *or* hoary age, "the ancient and honourable"—Bible; old order, old style, *ancien régime* <Fr>; **primitiveness,** primordialism *or* primordiality, aboriginality; atavism

2 **tradition, custom, immemorial usage,** immemorial wisdom; Sunna <Muslim>; Talmud *and* Mishnah <Jewish>, ancient wisdom, ways of the fathers; traditionalism *or* traditionality; oral tradition; myth, mythology, legend, lore, folklore, folktale, folk motif, folk history; racial memory, archetypal myth *or* image *or* pattern, archetype; collective unconscious; "Spiritus Mundi"—Yeats

3 **antiquation, superannuation,** staleness, disuse; **old-fashionedness,** unfashionableness, out-of-dateness; **old-fogyishness,** fogyishness, stuffiness, stodginess, fuddy-duddiness

4 **antiquarianism;** classicism, medievalism, Pre-Raphaelitism, longing *or* yearning *or* nostalgia for the past; **archaeology;** Greek archaeology, Roman archaeology, etc, Assyriology, Egyptology, Sumerology; crisis archeology, industrial archeology, underwater *or* marine archeology, paleology, epigraphy, paleontology, human paleontology, paleethnology, paleonanthropology, paleoethnography; paleozoology, paleornithology, prehistoric anthropology

5 **antiquarian,** antiquary, *laudator temporis acti* <L>; dryasdust, the Rev Dr Dryasdust, Jonathan Oldbuck, Herr Teufelsdrö-ckh; **archaeologist;** classicist, medievalist, Miniver Cheevy, Pre-Raphaelite; antique dealer, antique collector, antique-car collector; archaist

6 **antiquity, antique,** archaism; **relic,** relic of the past; **remains,** survival, vestige, ruin *or* ruins; old thing, oldie *and* golden oldie <nf>; monument; **fossil,** index fossil, zone fossil, trace fossil, fossil record; petrification, petrified wood, petrified forest; **artifact,** artefact, eolith, mezzolith, microlith, neolith, paleolith, plateaulith; cave painting, petroglyph; ancient manuscript 547.11; museum piece

7 **ancient,** man *or* woman *or* person of old, old Homo, **prehistoric mankind** <see list>; preadamite, antediluvian; anthropoid, humanoid, primate, fossil man, protohuman, prehuman, missing link, apeman, hominid; **primitive, aboriginal,** aborigine, bushman, autochthon; **caveman,** cave dweller, troglodyte; bog man, bog body, Lindow man; Stone Age man, Bronze Age man, Iron Age man

8 <antiquated person> back number <nf>; pop *and* pops *and* dad <nf>, dodo *and* old dodo <nf>; fossil *and* antique *and* relic <nf>; **mossback** <nf>, longhair *and* square <nf>, **mid-Victorian,** antediluvian; old liner, old believer, conservative, hard-shell, traditionalist, reactionary; has-been; **fogy, old fogy,** regular old fogy, old poop *or* crock <nf>, **fud** *and* **fuddy-duddy** <nf>; granny <nf>, **old woman,** matriarch; **old man,** patriarch, elder, *starets* <Russ>, old-timer <nf>, Methuselah

VERBS 9 **age,** grow old 303.10, grow *or* have whiskers; **antiquate,** fossilize, date, **superannuate,** outdate; obsolesce, go out of use *or* style, molder, fust, rust, fade, perish; lose currency *or* novelty; become obsolete *or* extinct; belong to the past, be a thing of the past; deteriorate, crumble

ADJS 10 **old, age-old,** auld <Scot>, olden <old>, old-time, old-timey <nf>; **ancient,** antique, archaic, venerable, hoary; of old, of yore; dateless, timeless, ageless; **immemorial,** old as Methuselah *or* Adam, old as God, old as history, old as time, old as the hills, out of the Ark; **elderly** 303.16

11 **primitive,** prime, **primeval,** primogenial, primordial, pristine; atavistic; **aboriginal,** autochthonous; ancestral, patriarchal; **prehistoric,** protohistoric, preglacial, preadamite, antepatriarchal; prehuman, protohuman, humanoid; archetypal

12 **traditional;** mythological, heroic; **legendary,** unwritten, oral, handed down; true-blue, tried and true; **prescriptive, customary,** conventional, understood, admitted, recognized, acknowledged, received; **hallowed, time-honored,** immemorial; **venerable,** hoary, worshipful; **long-standing, of long standing,** long-established, established, fixed, inveterate, rooted; folk, of the folk, folkloric, legendary

13 **antiquated,** grown old, **superannuated, antique, old,** age-encrusted, of other times, old-world; Victorian, mid-Victorian; historic, classical, medieval, Gothic; antediluvian; **fossil,** fossilized, petrified

14 **stale, fusty, musty,** rusty, dusty, moldy, mildewed; **worn, timeworn,** time-scarred; **moth-eaten,** moss-grown, crumbling, moldering, gone to seed, dilapidated, ruined, ruinous

15 **obsolete, passé, extinct,** gone out, gone-by, dead, past, run out, **outworn**

16 **old-fashioned,** old-fangled, old-timey <nf>, **dated, out, out-of-date, outdated, outmoded,** out of style *or* fashion, out of use, disused, out of season, **unfashionable,** styleless, **behind the times,** of the old school, old hat *and* back-number *and* has-been <nf>

17 **old-fogyish,** fogyish, old-fogy; fuddy-duddy, square *and* corny *and* cornball <nf>; **stuffy, stodgy;** aged 303.16, senile, bent *or* wracked *or* ravaged with age

18 **secondhand, used,** worn, previously owned, **unnew,** not new, pawed-over; hand-me-down *and* reach-me-down <nf>

19 **older,** senior, Sr, major, elder, dean; **oldest,** eldest; first-born, firstling, primogenitary; former 837.10

20 **archaeological,** paleological; antiquarian; archaic; paleolithic, eolithic, neolithic, mezzolithic

ADVS 21 anciently 837.16

22 **Stone Age cultures**

Acheulean
Aurignacian
Azilian
Capsian
Chellean
Combe-Capelle
Cro-Magnon
Dabban
Eolithic
Goodwin

Magdalenian
Middle Awash
Mousterian
Neolithic
Oldowan
Olduvai
Paleolithic
Pre-Chellean
Solutrean

23 prehistoric men and manlike primates

Aurignacian man
Australanthropus
Australopithecus
Australopithecus afarensis
Australopithecus africanus
Australopithecus boisei
Australopithecus robustus
Bronze Age man
Brünn race
caveman *or* cave dweller
Cro-Magnon man
Dawn man <the Piltdown hoax>
eolithic man
Florisbad man
Furfooz *or* Grenelle man
Galley Hill man
Gigantopithecus
Grimaldi man
Heidelberg man
hominid
Homo erectus
Homo habilis
Iron Age man
Java man
Lucy
Meganthropus
Neanderthal man
neolithic man
Oreopithecus
paleolithic man
Paranthropus
Peking man
Piltdown man <hoax>
Pithecanthropus
Plesianthropus
protohuman
Rhodesian man
Sinanthropus
Stone Age man
Swanscombe man
Zinjanthropus

24 prehistoric animals

allosaurus
ammonite
anatosaurus
ankylosaurus
apatosaurus
archaeohippus
archaeopteryx
archaeornis
archaeotherium
archelon
archosaur
arthrodiran
atlantosaurus
aurochs
baryonyx Walker
bothriolepis
brachiosaurus
brontops
brontosaurus
brontothere
camarasaurus
cantius trigonodus
ceratopsid
ceratosaurus
cetiosaurus
coccostean
coelacanth
coelodont
compsognathus
coryphodon
cotylosaur
creodont
crossopterygian
cynodictis
cynodont
deinonychus
denversaurus
diacodexis
diatryma
dimetrodon
dinichthyid
dinosaur
dinothere
diplodocus
dipnoan
diprotodon
dodo
duck-billed dinosaur
edaphosaurid
elasmosaurus
eohippus
eryopsid
eurypterid
eurypterus remipes
giant sloth
glyptodont
gorgosaurus
hadrosaurus
hesperornis
hoplophoneus
hyaenodon
hyracodont
hyracothere
ichthyornis
ichthyosaurus
iguanodon
imperial mammoth *or* elephant
labyrinthodont
machairodont
mamenchisaurus
mammoth
mastodon
megalosaurus
megathere
merodus
merychippus
merycoidodon
merycopotamus
mesohippus
mesosaur
miacis
mosasaurus
nummulite
ornithomimid
ornithopod
ostracoderm
palaeodictyopteron
palaeomastodon
palaeoniscid
palaeophis
palaeosaur
palaeospondylus
pelycosaur
phytosaur
pinchosaurus
plesiosaurus
pliosaur
protoceratops
protohippus
protylopus
pteranodon
pteraspid
pterichthys
pterodactyl
pterosaur
quetzalcoatlus northropii
raptor
rhamphorhynchus
saber-toothed cat *or* tiger
sauropod
scelidosaurus
smilodon
stegocephalian
stegodon
stegosaurus
struthiomimus
teleoceras
therapsid
theriodont
theropod
thrinaxodon liorhinus
titanosaurus
titanothere
trachodon
triceratops
trilobite
tyrannosaurus *or* tyrannosaurus rex
uintathere
urus
woolly *or* northern mammoth

843 TIMELINESS

NOUNS 1 **timeliness, seasonableness, opportuneness,** convenience; **expedience** *or* **expediency,** meetness, fittingness, fitness, appropriateness, rightness, propriety, suitability; **favorableness, propitiousness,** auspiciousness, felicitousness; **ripeness,** pregnancy, cruciality, criticality, criticalness, expectancy, loadedness, chargedness

2 **opportunity, chance, time, occasion; opening,** room, scope, space, place, liberty; clear stage, fair field, level playing field, fair game, fair shake *and* even break <nf>; **opportunism;** equal opportunity, nondiscrimination, affirmative action, positive discrimination <Brit>; trump card; a leg up, stepping-stone, rung of the ladder; time's forelock; window of opportunity

3 **good opportunity, good chance,** favorable opportunity, golden opportunity, well-timed opportunity, the chance of a lifetime, a once-in-a-

lifetime chance, happy coincidence, lucky break, "a tide in the affairs of men"—Shakespeare; suitable occasion, proper occasion, suitable *or* proper time, **good time,** high time, due season; propitious *or* well-chosen moment; window of opportunity

4 **crisis, critical point,** crunch, crucial period, climax, climacteric; **turning point,** hinge, turn, turn of the tide, cusp, nexus; **emergency, exigency,** juncture *or* conjuncture *or* convergence of events, critical juncture, crossroads; **pinch,** clutch <nf>, rub, push, pass, strait, extremity, spot <nf>; **emergency,** state of emergency, red alert, race against time

5 **crucial moment,** critical moment, loaded *or* charged moment, decisive moment, kairotic moment, kairos, pregnant moment, defining moment, turning point, climax, **moment of truth,** crunch *and* when push comes to shove <nf>, when the balloon goes up <Brit nf>, point of no return; **psychological moment,** right moment; nick of time, eleventh hour; **zero hour,** H-hour, D-day, A-day, target date, deadline

VERBS 6 **be timely,** suit *or* befit the time *or* season *or* occasion, come *or* fall just right

7 **take** *or* **seize the opportunity,** use the occasion, take the chance; take the bit in the teeth, leap into the breach, take the bull by the horns, bite the bullet, **make one's move,** cross the Rubicon, *prendre la balle au bond* <Fr, take the ball on the rebound>; **commit oneself,** make an opening, drive an entering wedge

8 **improve the occasion,** "improve each shining hour"—Isaac Watts, turn to account *or* good account, avail oneself of, **take advantage of,** put to advantage, profit by, **cash in** *or* **capitalize on;** take time by the forelock, seize the opportunity, seize the present hour, *carpe diem* <L, seize the day>, make hay while the sun shines; strike while the iron is hot; not be caught flatfooted, not be behindhand, not be caught looking <nf>, don't let the chance slip by, get going *and* get off the dime <nf>

ADJS 9 **timely, well-timed, seasonable, opportune,** *in loco* <L>, convenient; **expedient,** meet, fit, fitting, befitting, suitable, sortable, appropriate; **favorable, propitious,** ripe, auspicious, lucky, providential, heaven-sent, fortunate, happy, felicitous; heaven-sent

10 **critical, crucial,** pivotal, climactic, climacteric *or* climacterical, decisive; pregnant, kairotic, loaded, charged; exigent, emergent; eleventh-hour

11 **incidental, occasional, casual,** accidental; parenthetical, by-the-way

ADVS 12 **opportunely, seasonably, propitiously,** auspiciously, in proper time *or* season, in due time *or* course *or* season, in the fullness of time, **in good time,** all in good time; in the nick of time, just in time, at the eleventh hour; now *or* never

13 **incidentally, by the way, by the by; while on the subject,** speaking of, *à propos* <Fr>, apropos *or* apropos of; **in passing,** *en passant* <Fr>; parenthetically, by way of parenthesis, *par parenthèse* <Fr>; for example, *par exemple* <Fr>

14 a bird in the hand is worth two in the bush, better late than never, every minute *or* moment counts; live for the moment, you can't take it with you

844 UNTIMELINESS

NOUNS 1 **untimeliness, unseasonableness,** inopportuneness, inopportunity, unripeness, inconvenience; **inexpedience,** irrelevance *or* irrelevancy; **awkwardness,** inappropriateness, impropriety, unfitness, unfittingness, wrongness, unsuitability; **unfavorableness,** unfortunateness, inauspiciousness, unpropitiousness, infelicity; **intrusion,** interruption; **prematurity** 844.2; **lateness** 846, afterthought, thinking too late, *l'esprit de l'escalier* <Fr>

2 **wrong time, bad time,** wrong *or* bad *or* poor timing, unsuitable time, unfortunate time; evil hour, unlucky day *or* hour, off-year, *contretemps* <Fr>; inopportune moment

VERBS 3 **ill-time, mistime,** miss the time; **lack the time,** not have time, have other *or* better things to do, be otherwise occupied, be engaged, be preoccupied, have other fish to fry <nf>

4 **talk out of turn,** speak inopportunely, interrupt, **put one's foot in one's mouth** <nf>, intrude, butt in *and* stick one's nose in <nf>, **go off half-cocked** <nf>, open one's big mouth *or* big fat mouth <nf>; blow it <nf>, speak too late *or* too soon

5 **miss an opportunity, miss the chance, miss out, miss the boat,** miss one's turn, lose the opportunity, ignore opportunity's knock, lose the chance, blow the chance <nf>, throw away *or* waste *or* neglect the opportunity, allow the occasion to go by, let slip through one's fingers, be left at the starting gate *or* post, be caught looking <nf>, oversleep, lock the barn door after the horse is stolen

ADJS 6 **untimely, unseasonable, inopportune, ill-timed,** ill-seasoned, mistimed, unripe, unready, ill-considered, too late *or* soon, out of phase *or* time *or* sync; ill-starred; **inconvenient,** unhandy, discommodious; **inappropriate,** irrelevant, improper, unfit, wrong, out of line, off-base, unsuitable, **inexpedient,** unfitting, unbefitting, untoward, malapropos, *mal à propos* <Fr>, intrusive; **unfavorable,** unfortunate, infelicitous, inauspicious, **unpropitious,** unhappy, unlucky, misfortuned; **premature** 845.8; not in time, **late** 845.16

ADVS 7 **inopportunely, unseasonably,** inconveniently, inexpediently; **unpropitiously,** inauspiciously, unfortunately, in an evil hour, at just the wrong time

845 EARLINESS

NOUNS 1 **earliness,** early hour, time to spare; **head start,** running start, ground floor, first crack, early start, beginnings, first *or* early stage, very beginning, preliminaries; **anticipation, foresight,** prevision, prevenience; advance notice, lead time, a stitch in time, readiness, preparedness, preparation

2 **prematurity,** prematureness; **untimeliness** 844; precocity, **precociousness,** forwardness; precipitation, precipitancy, haste, hastiness, **overhastiness,** rush, impulse, impulsivity, impulsiveness

3 **promptness, promptitude, punctuality,** punctualness, readiness; instantaneousness 830, immediateness *or* immediacy, summariness, decisiveness, **alacrity,** quickness 174.1, speediness, swiftness, rapidity, expeditiousness, expedition, dispatch

4 **early bird** <nf>, early riser, early *or* first comer, first arrival, first on the scene; Johnny-on-the-spot <nf>; **precursor** 816

VERBS 5 **be early,** be ahead of time, take time by the forelock, be up and stirring, be beforehand *or* betimes, be ready and waiting, be off and running; gain time, draw on futurity *or* on the future; get there first; get a wiggle on *or* hop to it <nf>

6 **anticipate, foresee,** foreglimpse, previse, see the handwriting on the wall, foretaste, pave the way for, prevent <old>; **forestall,** forerun, go before, **get ahead of,** win the start, break out ahead, get a head start, steal a march on, beat someone to the punch *or* the draw <nf>; **jump the gun,** beat the gun, go off half-cocked <nf>; preempt; take the words out of one's mouth

ADJS 7 **early,** bright and early *and* with the birds <nf>, **beforetime,** in good time *or* season; **forehand,** forehanded; foresighted, **anticipative** *or* **anticipatory,** prevenient, previsional

8 **premature, too early, too soon,** oversoon; previous *and* a bit previous <nf>, prevenient; **untimely; precipitate,** hasty 830.5, **overhasty,** too soon off the mark, too quick on the draw *or* trigger *or* uptake <nf>; **unprepared,** unripe, impulsive, rushed, unmatured; unpremeditated, unmeditated, ill-considered, **half-cocked** *and* **half-baked** <nf>, unjelled, uncrystallized, not firm; **precocious, forward, advanced,** far ahead, born before one's time

9 **prompt, punctual, immediate, instant,** instantaneous 830.4, **quick** 174.19, speedy, swift, expeditious, summary, decisive, apt, alert, **ready,** alacritous, Johnny-on-the-spot <nf>; as soon as possible *or* ASAP

10 **earlier,** previous 834.4

ADVS 11 **early, bright and early, beforehand, beforetime,** early on, betimes, precociously, **ahead of time,** foresightedly, in advance, in anticipation, ahead, before, **with time to spare**

12 **in time, in good time, soon enough,** time enough, early enough; just in time, **in the nick of time,** with no time to spare, just under the wire, without a minute to spare

13 **prematurely, too soon, oversoon,** untimely, too early, before its *or* one's time; **precipitately,** impulsively, in a rush, hastily, **overhastily;** at half cock <nf>

14 **punctually, precisely,** exactly, sharp; **on time,** on the minute *or* instant, to the minute *or* second, **on the dot** <nf>, spot on *and* bang on <Brit nf>, at the gun

15 **promptly, without delay,** without further delay *or* ado, directly, **immediately,** immediately if not sooner <nf>, **instantly** 830.6, instanter, on the instant, on the spot, **at once,** right off, **right away, straightway,** straightaway, **forthwith,** *pronto* <Sp>, *subito* <Ital>, PDQ *or* pretty damned quick <nf>, **quickly,** swiftly, speedily, with all speed, **summarily,** decisively, smartly, expeditiously, apace, in no time, in less than no time; no sooner said than done

16 **soon, presently, directly, shortly,** in a short time *or* while, **before long,** ere long, in no long time, in a while, **in a little while, after a while, by and by,** anon, betimes, *bientôt* <Fr>, in due time, in due course, at the first opportunity; in a moment *or* minute, *tout à l'heure* <Fr>

PHRS 17 the early bird gets the worm

846 LATENESS

NOUNS 1 **lateness, tardiness, belatedness, unpunctuality;** late hour, small hours; eleventh hour, last minute, high time; unreadiness, unpreparedness; untimeliness 844

2 **delay,** stoppage, jam *and* logjam <nf>, obstruction, tie-up *and* bind <nf>, **block,** blockage, **hang-up** <nf>; delayed reaction, double take, afterthought; **retardation** *or* retardance, slow development, slowdown *and* slow-up <nf>,

slowness, lag, time lag, lagging, dragging, dragging one's feet *and* foot-dragging <nf>, pigeonholing; **detention,** suspension, holdup <nf>, **obstruction, hindrance;** delaying action, delaying tactics; **wait, halt, stay, stop,** down-time, break, pause, interim 826, respite; reprieve, stay of execution; moratorium; **red tape,** red-tapery, red-tapeism, bureaucratic delay, *paperasserie* <Fr>

3 **waiting,** cooling one's heels <nf>, **tarrying,** tarriance <old>; **lingering, dawdling,** dalliance, dallying, dillydallying; back burner

4 **postponement, deferment** *or* **deferral,** prorogation, putting-off, tabling, holding up, holding in suspension, carrying over; **prolongation,** protraction, continuation, extension of time; **adjournment** *or* adjournal, adjournment sine die

5 **procrastination,** "the thief of time"—Edward Young, hesitation 362.3; **temporization, a play for time, stall** *and* tap-dancing <nf>; Micawberism, Fabian policy; **dilatoriness,** slowness, backwardness, remissness, slackness, laxness

6 **latecomer,** late arrival, Johnny-come-lately; slow starter, dawdler, dallier, dillydallier; late bloomer *or* developer; retardee; late riser, slug-abed; ten o'clock scholar

VERBS 7 **be late, not be on time,** be overdue, be behindhand, show up late, miss the boat; keep everyone waiting; **stay late,** stay up late *or* into the small hours, burn the midnight oil, keep late hours; get up late, keep banker's hours; oversleep

8 **delay, retard, detain,** make late, slacken, lag, drag, drag one's feet *and* stonewall <nf>, dilly-dally, slow down, **hold up** <nf>, hold *or* keep back, check, **stay, stop,** arrest, impede, **block,** hinder, obstruct, throw a monkey wrench in the works <nf>, confine; tie up with red tape

9 **postpone, delay, defer, put off,** give one a rain check <nf>, shift off, hold off *or* up <nf>, prorogue, put on hold *or* ice *or* the back burner <nf>, reserve, waive, **suspend,** hang up, stay, hang fire; protract, drag *or* stretch out <nf>, **prolong, extend,** spin *or* string out, continue, adjourn, recess, take a recess, prorogue; **hold over,** lay over, stand over, let the matter stand, **put aside,** lay *or* set *or* push aside, lay *or* set by, **table,** lay on the table, pigeonhole, **shelve,** put on the shelf, put on ice <nf>; consult one's pillow about, sleep on

10 **be left behind,** be outrun *or* outdistanced, make a slow start, be slow *or* late *or* last off the mark, be left at the post *or* starting gate; bloom *or* develop late

11 **procrastinate,** be dilatory, hesitate, let something slide, hang, hang back, hang fire; **temporize,** gain *or* make time, **play for time,** drag one's feet <nf>, hold off <nf>; **stall,** stall off, **stall for time,** stall *or* stooge around *and* tap-dance <nf>; talk against time, filibuster

12 **wait, delay, stay,** bide, abide, **bide** *or* **abide one's time; take one's time,** take time, mark time; **tarry, linger, loiter,** dawdle, dally, dillydally; hang around *or* about *or* out <nf>, stick around <nf>; **hold on** <nf>, sit tight <nf>, hold one's breath; wait a minute *or* second, wait up; hold everything *and* hold your horses *and* hold your water *and* keep your shirt on <nf>; wait *or* stay up, sit up; **wait and see,** bide the issue, see which way the cat jumps, see how the cookie crumbles *or* the ball bounces <nf>, let sleeping dogs lie; wait for something to turn up; **await** 130.8

13 wait impatiently, tear one's hair *and* sweat it out *and* champ *or* chomp at the bit <nf>

14 be kept waiting, be stood up <nf>, be left; **cool one's heels** <nf>

15 **overstay,** overtarry

ADJS 16 **late, belated, tardy,** slow, slow on the draw *or* uptake *or* trigger <nf>, **behindhand,** never on time, backward, back, **overdue, long-awaited, untimely; unpunctual,** unready; latish; **delayed,** detained, **held up** <nf>, **retarded, arrested,** blocked, **hung up** *and* in a bind <nf>, obstructed, stopped, jammed, congested; weather-bound; **postponed, in abeyance,** held up, put off, **on hold** *or* put on hold <nf>, on the back burner *or* put on the back burner <nf>; delayed-action; moratory

17 **dilatory, delaying,** Micawberish; slow *or* late *or* last off the mark; **procrastinating,** procrastinative *or* procrastinatory, go-slow; **obstructive,** obstructionist *or* obstructionistic, bloody-minded <Brit nf>; **lingering,** loitering, lagging, dallying, dillydallying, **slow,** sluggish, laggard, foot-dragging, shuffling, backward; easygoing, **lazy, lackadaisical; remiss,** slack, work-shy, lax

18 later 835.4; last-minute, eleventh-hour, deathbed

ADVS 19 **late, behind, behindhand, belatedly,** backward, slow, **behind time,** after time; far on, deep into; late in the day, at the last minute, at the eleventh hour, none too soon, in the nick of time, under the wire

20 **tardily, slow, slowly,** deliberately, dilatorily, sluggishly, lackadaisically, leisurely, at one's leisure, lingeringly; until all hours, into the night

847 FREQUENCY

NOUNS 1 **frequency,** frequence, **oftenness; commonness,** usualness, prevalence, **common occurrence,** routineness, habitualness; **incidence,** relative incidence; radio frequency

2 **constancy, continualness,** steadiness, sustainment, **regularity,** noninterruption *or* uninterruption,

nonintermission *or* unintermission, incessancy, ceaselessness, constant flow, continuity 812; perpetuity 829; repetition 849; **rapidity** 174.1; rapid recurrence *or* succession, rapid *or* quick fire, tattoo, **staccato,** chattering, stuttering; **vibration,** shuddering, juddering <Brit>, pulsation, **oscillation** 916

VERBS **3** be frequent, occur often, have a high incidence, continue 812.4, recur 850.5; shudder, judder <Brit>, vibrate, oscillate 916.10; frequent, hang out at <nf>

ADJS **4** **frequent,** oftentime, many, many times, **recurrent,** recurring, **oft-repeated,** thick-coming; **common,** of common occurrence, not rare, thick on the ground <Brit>, **prevalent,** usual, routine, habitual, ordinary, everyday; frequentative

5 **constant, continual** 812.8, **perennial; steady,** sustained, **regular;** periodic; **incessant, ceaseless, unceasing,** unintermitting, unintermittent *or* unintermitted, unremitting, relentless, unrelenting, unchanging, unvarying, uninterrupted, unstopped, unbroken; **perpetual** 829.7; repeated 848.12; **rapid, staccato,** stuttering, chattering, machine gun; pulsating, juddering <Brit>, vibrating, **oscillating** 916.15

ADVS **6** **frequently, commonly,** usually, ordinarily, routinely, habitually; **often,** oft, **oftentimes,** oft times; **repeatedly** 848.16, **again and again, time after time; most often** *or* frequently, in many instances, **many times,** many a time, full many a time, many a time and oft, as often as can be, as often as not, more often than not; **in quick** *or* **rapid succession;** often enough, not infrequently, not seldom, unseldom; as often as you wish *or* like, whenever you wish *or* like

7 **constantly, continually** 812.10, **steadily,** sustainedly, **regularly,** as regular as clockwork, with every other breath, every time one turns around, right along <nf>, unvaryingly, uninterruptedly, unintermittently, **incessantly,** unceasingly, **ceaselessly,** without cease *or* ceasing, perennially, all the time, at all times, ever, ever and anon, on and on, without letup *or* break *or* intermission, without stopping; **perpetually, always** 829.11; **rapidly;** all year round, every day, every hour, every moment; daily, hourly, daily and hourly; **night and day,** day and night; **morning, noon, and night;** hour after hour, day after day, month after month, year after year; **day in day out,** month in month out, year in year out

848 INFREQUENCY

NOUNS **1** **infrequency,** infrequence, unfrequentness, seldomness; occasionalness; **rarity, scarcity, scarceness,** rareness, **uncommonness,** uniqueness, unusualness; **sparsity** 885.1; **slowness** 175; one-time offer

ADJS **2** **infrequent,** unfrequent, **rare,** scarce, scarce as hens' teeth, scarcer than hens' teeth, **uncommon,** unique, unusual, almost unheard-of, seldom met with, seldom seen, few and far between, **sparse** 885.5; one-time, one-shot, once in a lifetime; **slow** 175.10; like snow in August; unprecedented

3 **occasional, casual, incidental; odd,** sometime, extra, side, off, off-and-on, out-of-the-way, spare, sparetime, **part-time**

ADVS **4** **infrequently,** unfrequently, **seldom, rarely, uncommonly,** scarcely, hardly, **scarcely** *or* hardly ever, very seldom, not often, only now and then, at infrequent intervals, unoften, off-and-on; **sparsely** 885.8

5 **occasionally,** on occasion, **sometimes, at times,** at odd times, every so often <nf>, at various times, on divers occasions, **now and then,** every now and then <nf>, now and again, **once in a while,** every once in a while <nf>, every now and again, once and again, once or twice, betweentimes, betweenwhiles, at intervals, **from time to time;** only occasionally, only when the spirit moves, only when necessary, only now and then, at infrequent intervals, once in a blue moon *and* once in a coon's age <nf>; irregularly, sporadically

6 **once, one-time,** on one occasion, just *or* only once, just this once, once and no more, once for all, once and for all *or* always

849 REPETITION

NOUNS **1** **repetition, reproduction,** duplication 874, reduplication, doubling, redoubling; **recurrence,** reoccurrence, cyclicality, return, reincarnation, rebirth, reappearance, renewal, resumption; resurfacing, reentry; echo, reecho, parroting; regurgitation, rehearsal, rote recitation; **quotation; imitation** 336; plagiarism 621.2; reexamination, second *or* another look

2 **iteration, reiteration, recapitulation,** recap *and* wrapup <nf>, retelling, recounting, recountal, **recital, rehearsal, restatement,** rehash <nf>; reissue, reprint; review, summary, précis, résumé, summing up, peroration; going over *or* through, practicing; reassertion, reaffirmation; elaboration, dwelling upon; **copy** 785

3 **redundancy, tautology,** tautologism, pleonasm, macrology, battology; stammering, stuttering; padding, filling, filler, expletive

4 **repetitiousness,** repetitiveness, stale *or* unnecessary repetition; harping; **monotony,** monotone, drone; **tedium** 118, daily round *or* grind, same old story; **humdrum,** dingdong, singsong, chime, jingle, jingle-jangle, trot, pitter-patter; **rhyme, alliteration,** assonance, slant *or* near rhyme; echolalia, **repeated sounds** 55

5 **repeat,** repetend, bis, ditto <nf>, echo; **refrain,** burden, chant, undersong, chorus, bob; bob wheel, bob and wheel; ritornel, *ritornello* <Ital>; rerun; rehash; reprint, reissue; remake; second helping

6 **encore,** repeat performance, repeat, **reprise;** replay, replaying, return match; repeat order

VERBS **7** **repeat, redo,** do again, do over, do a repeat, **reproduce, duplicate** 874.3, reduplicate, double, redouble, ditto <nf>, **echo, parrot,** reecho; **rattle off,** reel off, regurgitate; renew, reincarnate, revive; come again *and* run it by again <nf>, say again, repeat oneself, **quote,** repeat word for word *or* verbatim, repeat like a broken record; **copy, imitate** 336.5; plagiarize 621.4, 336.5; **reexamine,** take *or* have a second look, take *or* have another look

8 **iterate, reiterate, rehearse, recapitulate, recount,** rehash <nf>, **recite, retell,** retail, **restate,** reword, review, run over, sum up, summarize, précis, resume, encapsulate; reissue, reprint; do *or* say over again, **go over** *or* **through,** practice, say over, go over the same ground, give an encore, quote oneself, go the same round, fight one's battles over again; **tautologize,** battologize, pad, fill; **reaffirm,** reassert

9 **dwell on** *or* **upon,** insist upon, **harp on,** beat a dead horse, have on the brain, constantly recur *or* revert to, labor, belabor, hammer away at, always trot out, sing the same old song *or* tune, play the same old record, plug the same theme, never hear the last of; **thrash** *or* **thresh over,** cover the same ground, go over again and again, go over and over

10 **din, ding;** drum 55.4, beat, hammer, pound; **din in the ear,** din into, drum into, say over and over

11 <be repeated> **repeat, recur,** reoccur, **come again,** come round again, go round again, come up again, resurface, reenter, **return, reappear, resume;** resound, reverberate, echo; revert, turn *or* go back; keep coming, come again and again, happen over and over, run through like King Charles's head

ADJS **12** **repeated,** reproduced, doubled, redoubled; **duplicated,** reduplicated; regurgitated, recited by rote; **echoed,** reechoed, parroted; **quoted,** plagiarized; **iterated, reiterated,** reiterate; retold, **twice-told;** warmed up *or* over, *réchauffé* <Fr>

13 **recurrent,** recurring, **returning,** reappearing, revenant, ubiquitous, ever-recurring, cyclical, periodic, yearly, monthly, weekly, daily, circadian, thick-coming, frequent, incessant, continuous 812.8, year-to-year, month-to-month, week-to-week, etc; haunting, thematic

14 **repetitious,** repetitive, repetitional *or* repetitionary, repeating; **duplicative,** reduplicative; **imitative** 336.9, parrotlike; echoing, reechoing, echoic; **iterative, reiterative,** reiterant; recapitulative, recapitulatory; battological, **tautological** *or* **tautologous, redundant**

15 **monotonous,** monotone; **tedious;** harping, labored, belabored, cliché-ridden; **humdrum,** singsong, chiming, chanting, dingdong <nf>, jog-trot, jingle-jangle; **rhymed, rhyming, alliterative,** alliterating, assonant

ADVS **16** **repeatedly, often, frequently, recurrently, every time one turns around,** with every other breath, like a tolling bell, **again and again, over and over,** over and over again, many times over, time and again, **time after time,** times without number, **ad nauseam;** year in year out, week in week out, etc, year after year, day after day, day by day, "tomorrow and tomorrow and tomorrow"—Shakespeare; **many times,** several times, a number of times, many a time, many a time and oft, full many a time and oft; every now and then, every once in a while

17 **again,** over, over again, **once more,** *encore* and *bis* <Fr>, two times, twice over, ditto; **anew,** *de novo* <L>, afresh; from the beginning, *da capo* <Ital>

INTERJS **18** **encore!,** *bis!* <Fr>, once more!, again!

850 REGULARITY OF RECURRENCE

NOUNS **1** **regularity,** regularness, clockwork regularity, predictability, punctuality, smoothness, **steadiness, evenness, unvariableness, methodicalness,** systematicalness; **repetition** 849; **uniformity** 781; **constancy** 847.2

2 **periodicity,** periodicalness; cyclical motion, piston motion, pendulum motion, regular wave motion, undulation, **pulsation; intermittence** *or* intermittency, alternation; rhythm 709.22, meter, beat; **oscillation** 916; **recurrence,** go-round, reoccurrence, reappearance, return, the eternal return, **cyclicalness,** cyclicality, seasonality; resurfacing, reentry

3 **round, revolution, rotation, cycle,** circle, wheel, **circuit; beat,** upbeat, downbeat, thesis, arsis, **pulse;** systole, diastole; course, series, **bout, turn,** rota <Brit>, spell 825

4 **anniversary, commemoration;** immovable feast, annual holiday; biennial, triennial, quadrennial, quinquennial, sextennial, septennial, octennial, nonennial, decennial, tricennial, jubilee, silver jubilee, golden jubilee, diamond jubilee; centennial, centenary; quasquicentennial;

sesquicentennial; bicentennial, bicentenary; tercentennial, tercentenary, tricentenary; quincentennial, quincentenary; **wedding anniversary,** silver wedding anniversary, golden wedding anniversary; **birthday,** birthdate, natal day; saint's day, name day; leap year, bissextile day; annual holiday, government holiday, bank holiday; **religious holiday,** holy day

VERBS **5** <occur periodically> **recur, reoccur, return, repeat** 849.7, reappear, **come again,** come up again, be here again, resurface, reenter, **come round** *or* around, come round again, come in its turn; **rotate, revolve,** turn, circle, wheel, cycle, **roll around,** roll about, wheel around, go around, go round; **intermit,** alternate, **come and go,** ebb and flow; undulate 916.11; **oscillate** 916.10, **pulse, pulsate** 916.12; commute, shuttle

ADJS **6** **regular, systematic** *or* systematical, methodical, ordered, orderly, regular as clockwork; everyday; **uniform** 780.5; **constant** 847.5

7 **periodic** *or* periodical, seasonal, epochal, **cyclic** *or* cyclical, serial, isochronal, metronomic; measured, steady, even, **rhythmic** *or* rhythmical 709.28; **recurrent,** recurring, reoccurring; **intermittent,** reciprocal, alternate, every other; circling, wheeling, rotary, rotational, wavelike, undulant, undulatory, oscillatory 915.15, pulsing, beating 916.18

8 **momentary,** momently, **hourly; daily,** diurnal, quotidian, circadian, nightly, tertian; biorhythmic; **weekly,** tertian, hebdomadal, hebdomadary; biweekly, semiweekly; fortnightly; **monthly,** menstrual, catamenial, estrous; bimonthly, semimonthly; quarterly; biannual, semiannual, semiyearly, half-yearly, semestral; **yearly, annual;** perennial; biennial, triennial, decennial, etc; centennial, centenary; bissextile; secular

ADVS **9** **regularly, systematically, methodically,** like clockwork, at regular intervals, punctually, steadily; at stated times, at fixed *or* established periods; intermittently, every so often, every now and then; **uniformly** 781.7; **constantly** 847.7

10 **periodically, recurrently, seasonally,** cyclically, epochally; rhythmically, on the beat, in time, synchronously, **hourly, daily,** etc; every hour, every day, etc; hour by hour, day by day, etc; from hour to hour, from day to day, *de die in diem* <L>

11 **alternately, by turns, in turns, in rotation,** turn about, **turn and turn about,** reciprocally, every other, one after the other; to and fro, up and down, from side to side; off and on, make and break, round and round

PHRS **12** **what goes around comes around,** *plus ça change plus c'est la même chose* <Fr>

851 IRREGULARITY OF RECURRENCE

NOUNS **1** **irregularity,** unmethodicalness, unsystematicness; **inconstancy, unevenness, unsteadiness,** uncertainty, desultoriness; **variability,** capriciousness, unpredictability, whimsicality, eccentricity; stagger, wobble, weaving, erraticness; roughness; **fitfulness, sporadicity** *or* sporadicalness, spasticity, jerkiness, fits and starts, patchiness, spottiness, choppiness, brokenness, disconnectedness, discontinuity 813; **intermittence, fluctuation;** nonuniformity 781; arrhythmia *and* fibrillation <medical>; assymetry; unusualness

VERBS **2** **intermit, fluctuate,** vary, lack regularity, go by fits and starts; break, disconnect

ADJS **3** **irregular,** unregular, unsystematic, unmethodical *or* immethodical; **inconstant, unsteady, uneven, unrhythmical,** unmetrical, rough, unequal, uncertain, unsettled; **variable,** deviative, heteroclite; **capricious, erratic,** off-again-on-again, eccentric; wobbly, wobbling, weaving, staggering, lurching, careening; **fitful, spasmodic** *or* spasmodical, spastic, spasmic, **jerky,** herky-jerky <nf>, halting; **sporadic,** patchy, spotty, scrappy, snatchy, catchy, choppy, halting, **broken, disconnected, discontinuous** 813.4; **nonuniform** 782.3; **intermittent,** intermitting, **desultory, fluctuating, wavering,** wandering, rambling, veering; flickering, guttering; haphazard, disorderly

ADVS **4** **irregularly,** unsystematically, unmethodically; **inconstantly, unsteadily, unevenly,** unrhythmically, roughly, uncertainly; **variably,** capriciously, unpredictably, whimsically, eccentrically, wobblingly, lurchingly, erratically; **intermittently, disconnectedly, discontinuously** 813.5; **nonuniformly** 781.4; **brokenly, desultorily,** patchily, spottily, in spots, in snatches; **by fits and starts,** by fits, by jerks, by snatches, by catches; **fitfully, sporadically, jerkily, spasmodically,** haltingly; **off and on,** at irregular intervals, sometimes and sometimes not; when the mood strikes, when the spirit moves, at random

852 CHANGE

NOUNS **1** **change, alteration, modification; variation,** variety, difference, diversity, diversification; **deviation,** diversion, aberrance *or* aberrancy, **divergence; switch, switchover, changeover, turn,** change of course, turnabout, about-face, U-turn, **reversal,** flip-flop <nf>; apostasy, defection, change of heart, change of mind; **shift,** transition, **modulation,** qualification; **conversion, renewal,** revival, revivification, retro; remaking, reshaping, re-creation, redesign, restructuring, *perestroika* <Russ>; realignment, **adaptation, adjustment,** accommodation, fitting, tweaking, tweak; **reform,** reformation, **improvement,** amelioration, melioration, mitigation, constructive change, **betterment,** change for the better; **take** *and* **new take** <nf>; **social mobility,** vertical mobility, horizontal mobility, upward *or* downward mobility; gradual change, progressive change, **continuity** 812; **degeneration, deterioration,** worsening, degenerative change, change for the worse, disorder 810, entropy; changeableness 854; "the ever whirling wheels of Change"—Spenser, "Nature's mighty law"—Robert Burns, "the changes and chances of this mortal life"—Book of Common Prayer

2 **revolution,** revolt, **break,** break with the past, sudden change, radical *or* revolutionary *or* violent *or* total change, catastrophic change, **upheaval,** overthrow, **quantum jump** *or* **leap,** sea change; **discontinuity** 813

3 **transformation,** transmogrification; **translation;** metamorphosis, metamorphism; makeover; **mutation,** transmutation, permutation, vicissitude; **mutant,** mutated form, sport; **transfiguration** *or* transfigurement; metathesis, transposition, translocation, **displacement,** metastasis, heterotopia; **transubstantiation,** consubstantiation; transanimation, transmigration, reincarnation, metempsychosis avatar; metasomatism, metasomatosis; catalysis; metabolism, anabolism, catabolism; metagenesis; transformism; redecoration

4 **innovation, introduction,** discovery, invention, launching; neologism, neoterism, coinage; **breakthrough,** leap, quantum jump *or* leap, new phase; **novelty** 840.2

5 **transformer,** transmogrifier, **innovator,** innovationist, introducer; precursor 816; **alterant,** alterer, alterative, **agent,** catalytic agent, catalyst; the wind *or* winds of change; **leaven,** yeast, ferment; **modifier,** modificator; magician

VERBS 6 **be changed, change, undergo a change,** go through a change, sing *or* dance to a different tune <nf>, be converted into, turn into 857.17; **alter,** mutate, modulate; **vary,** checker, diversify; **deviate, diverge,** turn, take a turn, take a new turn, turn aside, turn the corner, **shift,** veer, jibe, tack, come about, come round *or* around, haul around, chop, chop and change, swerve, warp; change sides, change horses in midstream; **revive,** be renewed, feel like a new person; **improve,** ameliorate, meliorate, mitigate, turn the corner; **degenerate, deteriorate, worsen;** hit bottom, bottom out <nf>, reach the nadir, flop <nf>

7 **change, work** *or* **make a change, alter,** change someone's tune; **mutate; modify;** adapt; modulate, accommodate, adjust, fine-tune, fit, **qualify; vary, diversify; convert, renew, recast, revamp** <nf>, change over, exchange, **revive;** remake, reshape, re-create, redesign, **rebuild,** reconstruct, restructure; realign; refit; **reform, improve,** better, ameliorate, meliorate, mitigate; **revolutionize,** turn upside down, subvert, overthrow, break up; worsen, deform, denature; ring the changes; give a turn to, give a twist to, turn the tide, turn the tables, turn the scale *or* balance; shift the scene; shuffle the cards; turn over a new leaf; **about-face,** do an about-face, do a 180 <nf>, change direction, reverse oneself, turn one's coat, sing *or* dance to a different tune, flip-flop <nf>, make a U-turn, change one's mind

8 **transform, transfigure, transmute,** transmogrify; **translate;** transubstantiate, metamorphose; metabolize; perform magic, conjure

9 **innovate,** make innovations, invent, discover, make a breakthrough, make a quantum jump *or* leap, **pioneer** 816.3, **revolutionize, introduce,** introduce new blood; neologize, neoterize, coin

ADJS 10 **changed, altered, modified,** qualified, **transformed,** transmuted, **metamorphosed;** translated, metastasized; deviant, aberrant, mutant; divergent; **converted, renewed,** revived, **rebuilt**, remodeled; **reformed,** improved, **better,** ameliorative, ameliatory; before-and-after; **degenerate, worse,** unmitigated; subversive, **revolutionary**; changeable 854.6,7

11 **innovational,** innovative, ameliorative

12 **metamorphic, metabolic,** anabolic, catabolic; metastatic, **catalytic**

13 presto, presto chango, hey presto <Brit>

PHRS 14 the shoe is on the other foot

853 PERMANENCE

NOUNS 1 **permanence** *or* permanency, **immutability, changelessness,** unchangingness, invariableness *or* invariability; **unchangeableness,** unchangeability, unchangingness, inalterability *or* inalterableness, inconvertibility *or* inconvertibleness; **fixedness, constancy,** steadfastness, firmness, solidity, immovableness *or* immovability, persistence *or* persistency, establishment, faithfulness, **lastingness, abidingness, endurance,** duration, continuance, perseverance, continuity, standing, long standing, inveteracy; durableness, durability 827; **perpetualness** 829.1; **stability** 855; **unchangeability** 855.4; **immobility,** stasis, frozenness, hardening, **rigidity; quiescence,** torpor, coma

2 **maintenance, preservation** 397, **conservation**

3 **conservatism, conservativeness,** opposition *or* resistance to change, unprogressiveness, fogyism, fuddy-duddyism, backwardness, old-fashionedness, standpattism <nf>; ultraconservatism, arch-conservatism; misocainea, misoneism; political conservatism, rightism 611.1; laissez-faireism 329.1; old school tie <Brit>; "adherence to the old and tried, against the new and untried"—Lincoln

4 **conservative,** conservatist; conservationist; ultraconservative, arch-conservative, knee-jerk conservative <nf>, **diehard,** standpat *and* standpatter <nf>, **old fogy,** fogy, stick-in-the-mud <nf>, mossback <nf>, *laudator temporis acti* <L>, rightist, right-winger 611.9, "the leftover progressive of an earlier generation"—Edmund Fuller; old school

VERBS **5** **remain, endure** 827.6, last, stay, persist, bide, abide, stand, hold, subsist; be ever the same; take root, be here to stay; cast in stone

6 **be conservative,** save, preserve, oppose change, stand on ancient ways; stand pat *and* stand still <nf>; **let things take their course,** leave things as they are, let be, let *or* leave alone, stick with it *and* let it ride <nf>, follow a hands-off policy, let well enough alone, do nothing; stop *or* turn back the clock

ADJS **7** **permanent, changeless, unchanging, immutable,** unvarying, unshifting; unchanged, unchangeable, unvaried, **unaltered,** inalterable, inviolate, undestroyed, intact; **constant, persistent,** sustained, fixed, firm, solid, steadfast, like the Rock of Gibraltar, faithful; unchecked, unfailing, unfading; **lasting, enduring,** abiding, remaining, staying, continuing; **durable** 827.10, entrenched; **perpetual** 829.7; stable 855.12; **unchangeable** 854.17; **immobile, static,** stationary, frozen, **rigid,** rocklike; **quiescent,** torpid, comatose, vegetable

8 **conservative, preservative,** old-line, **diehard,** standpat <nf>, opposed to change; backward, backward-looking, old-fashioned, **unprogressive,** nonprogressive, unreconstructed, status-quo, stuck-in-the-mud; ultraconservative, misoneistic, fogyish, **old-fogyish; right-wing** 611.17; *laissez-faire* <Fr>, hands-off; noninvasive, noninterventionist

ADVS **9** **permanently,** abidingly, lastingly, steadfastly, unwaveringly, changelessly, unchangingly; enduringly, **perpetually,** invariably, **forever, always** 829.11; statically, rigidly, inflexibly

10 *in status quo* <L>, as things are, **as is, as usual,** as per usual <nf>; at a stand *or* standstill, without a shadow of turning

PHRS **11** *plus ça change, plus c'est la même chose* <Fr, the more it changes, the more it's the same thing>; if it isn't broken don't fix it, let sleeping dogs lie

854 CHANGEABLENESS

NOUNS **1** **changeableness,** changefulness, **changeability, alterability,** convertibility, modifiability; **mutability,** permutability, impermanence, **transience,** transitoriness; mobility, motility, movability; plasticity, malleability, workability, rubberiness, fluidity; **resilience, adaptability,** adjustability, **flexibility,** suppleness; **nonuniformity** 781

2 **inconstancy, instability,** changefulness, unstableness, **unsteadiness,** unsteadfastness, unfixedness, unsettledness, rootlessness; **uncertainty,** undependability, inconsistency, shiftiness, unreliability; **variability,** variation, variety, restlessness, deviability; unpredictability, irregularity 851.1; **desultoriness,** waywardness, wantonness; **erraticism, eccentricity;** freakishness, freakery; flightiness, impulsiveness *or* impulsivity, mercuriality, moodiness, whimsicality, **capriciousness,** caprice, **fickleness** 364.3

3 **changing, fluctuation,** vicissitude, **variation, shiftingness;** alternation, oscillation, **vacillation,** pendulation; **mood swings; wavering,** shifting, shuffling, teetering, tottering, seesawing, teeter-tottering; **exchange,** trading, musical chairs; bobbing and weaving

4 <comparisons> Proteus, kaleidoscope, chameleon, shifting sands, rolling stone, April showers, cloud shapes, feather in the wind; water; wheel of fortune; whirligig; mercury, quicksilver; the weather, weathercock, weather vane; moon, phases of the moon; iridescence

VERBS **5** **change, fluctuate, vary; shift; alternate, vacillate,** tergiversate, oscillate, pendulate, waffle <Brit nf>, blow hot and cold <nf>; ebb and flow, wax and wane; go through phases, waver, shuffle, swing, sway, wobble, wobble about, flounder, stagger, teeter, totter, **seesaw, teeter-totter;** back and fill, turn, blow hot and cold, ring the changes, have as many phases as the moon; **exchange,** trade, play musical chairs; metamorphose

ADJS **6** **changeable, alterable,** alterative, modifiable; mutable, permutable, impermanent, transient, **transitory; variable,** checkered, ever-changing, many-sided, kaleidoscopic, variegated; **movable,** mobile, motile; plastic, malleable, rubbery, fluid; **resilient, adaptable,** adjustable, **flexible,** supple, able to adapt, able to roll with the punches *or* bend without breaking; protean, proteiform; metamorphic; **nonuniform** 782.3

7 **inconstant, changeable, changeful, changing,**

shifting, uncertain, inconsistent, in a state of flux; **shifty,** unreliable, undependable; **unstable, unfixed,** infirm, restless, **unsettled,** unstaid, **unsteady,** wishy-washy, spineless, shapeless, amorphous, indecisive, irresolute, waffling <Brit nf>, blowing hot and cold <nf>, like a feather in the wind, unsteadfast, unstable as water; **variable,** deviable, dodgy <nf>; unaccountable, unpredictable; vicissitudinous *or* vicissitudinary; whimsical, **capricious, fickle** 364.6, off-again-on-again; **erratic, eccentric,** freakish; volatile, giddy, dizzy, ditzy <nf>, scatterbrained, mercurial, moody, flighty, impulsive, impetuous; **fluctuating,** alternating, **vacillating, wavering,** wavery, wavy, mazy, flitting, flickering, guttering, fitful, shifting, shuffling; irregular, spasmodic 851.3; **desultory,** rambling, roving, vagrant, homeless, wanton, wayward, wandering, afloat, adrift; **unrestrained, undisciplined,** irresponsible, uncontrolled, fast and loose

ADVS 8 **changeably, variably, inconstantly,** shiftingly, shiftily, uncertainly, **unsteadily,** unsteadfastly, whimsically, capriciously, desultorily, erratically, waveringly; **impulsively, impetuously,** precipitately; back and forth, to and fro, in and out, off and on, on and off, round and round

855 STABILITY

NOUNS 1 **stability, firmness, soundness, substantiality, solidity; security,** secureness, securement; **rootedness,** fastness; reliability 969.4; **steadiness,** steadfastness; constancy 847.2, invariability, undeflectability; **imperturbability,** unflappability <nf>, nerve, steady *or* unshakable nerves, nerves of steel, unshakableness, unsusceptibility, unimpressionability, stolidness *or* stolidity, stoicism, **cool** <nf>, *sang-froid* <Fr>; iron will; **equilibrium, balance,** stable state, stable equilibrium, homeostasis; steady state; emotional stability, balanced personality; aplomb; **uniformity** 781

2 **fixity,** fixedness, fixture, fixation; infixion, implantation, embedment; **establishment, stabilization,** confirmation, entrenchment; inveteracy, deep-rootedness, **deep-seatedness**

3 **immobility,** immovability, unmovability, immovableness, irremovability, immotility; inextricability; **firmness,** solidity, unyieldingness, rigidity, **inflexibility** 1044.3; inertia, *vis inertiae* <L>, inertness; immobilization

4 **unchangeableness, unchangeability,** unalterability, inalterability, unmodifiability, **immutability,** incommutability, inconvertibility; nontransferability; lastingness, **permanence** 852; irrevocability, indefeasibility, **irreversibility;** irretrievability, unreturnableness, unrestorableness; intransmutability

5 **indestructibility, imperishability,** incorruptibility, inextinguishability, immortality, **deathlessness;** invulnerability, invincibility, inexpugnability, impregnability; ineradicability, indelibility, ineffaceability, inerasableness

6 <comparisons> rock, Rock of Gibraltar, bedrock, pillar *or* tower of strength, foundation; leopard's spots

VERBS 7 **stabilize,** stabilitate *or* stabilify <old>; **firm, firm up** <nf>; **steady, balance,** counterbalance, ballast; **immobilize,** freeze, keep, retain; **transfix,** stick, hold, pin *or* nail down <nf>; set *or* cast *or* write in stone

8 **secure,** make sure *or* secure, firm up, tie, tie off *or* up, chain, tether; cleat, belay; **wedge, jam, seize; make fast, fasten,** fasten down; **anchor,** moor; batten *and* batten down; "build one's house upon a rock"—Bible; **confirm,** ratify

9 **fix, define,** set, **settle; establish,** found, ground, lodge, seat, **entrench; root;** infix, ingrain, set in, plant, implant, engraft, bed, embed; **print,** imprint, **stamp,** inscribe, **etch,** engrave, impress; deep-dye, **dye in the wool;** stereotype

10 <become firmly fixed> **root, take root,** strike root, settle down; **stick,** stick fast; seize, seize up, freeze; **catch, jam,** lodge, foul

11 **stand fast,** stand *or* remain firm, **stand pat** <nf>, stay put <nf>, hold fast, not budge, not budge an inch, **stand** *or* **hold one's ground,** persist, persevere, hold one's own, dig in one's heels, take one's stand, **stick to one's guns,** put one's foot down <nf>; **hold out,** stick *or* gut *or* tough it out *and* hang tough <nf>, stay the course; **hold up; weather,** weather the storm, ride it out, get home free <nf>; be imperturbable, be unflappable *and* not bat an eye *or* eyelash *and* keep one's cool <nf>

ADJS 12 **stable, substantial, firm, solid, sound,** stabile; firm as Gibraltar, solid as a rock, rock-like, built on bedrock; **fast, secure; steady,** unwavering, steadfast; **balanced,** in equilibrium, in a stable state; **well-balanced; imperturbable,** unflappable <nf>, unshakable, **cool** <nf>, unimpressionable, unsusceptible, impassive, stolid, stoic; without nerves, without a nerve in one's body, unflinching, iron-willed; **reliable** 970.17, predictable; fiducial

13 **established,** stabilized, **entrenched,** vested, firmly established; **well-established,** well-founded, **well-grounded,** on a rock, in *or* on bedrock, aground; old-line, long-established; **confirmed, inveterate; settled, set;** well-settled, well-set, in place, entrenched; **rooted,** well-rooted; **deep-rooted, deep-seated,** deep-set, deep-settled, deep-fixed, deep-dyed, deep-engraven, deep-grounded, deep-

laid; **infixed, ingrained,** implanted, engrafted, embedded, ingrown, inwrought; impressed, indelibly impressed, imprinted; engraved, etched, graven, embossed; **dyed-in-the-wool**

14 **fixed,** fastened, anchored, riveted; **set, settled, stated;** staple

15 **immovable,** unmovable, **immobile,** immotile, unmoving, **irremovable, stationary,** frozen, not to be moved, at a standstill, on dead center; **firm, unyielding,** adamant, adamantine, rigid, **inflexible** 1046.12; pat, standpat <nf>; at anchor

16 **stuck, fast,** stuck fast, **fixed, transfixed, caught,** fastened, tied, chained, tethered, anchored, moored, held, inextricable; **jammed,** impacted, congested, packed, wedged; seized, seized up, frozen; aground, grounded, stranded, high and dry

17 **unchangeable,** not to be changed, changeless, unchanged, unchanging, unvarying, unvariable, **unalterable,** unaltered, unalterative, **immutable,** incommutable, inconvertible, unmodifiable; insusceptible of change; **constant, invariable,** undeviating, undeflectable; lasting, unremitting, **permanent** 853.7; irrevocable, indefeasible, **irreversible,** nonreversible, reverseless; irretrievable, unrestorable, unreturnable, nonreturnable; intransmutable, inert, noble <chemistry>

18 **indestructible,** undestroyable, **imperishable,** nonperishable, incorruptible; **deathless,** immortal, undying; **invulnerable, invincible,** inexpugnable, impregnable, indivisible; **ineradicable,** indelible, ineffaceable, inerasable; **inextinguishable,** unquenchable, quenchless, undampable

PHRS 19 **stet, let it stand; what's done is done**

856 CONTINUANCE

<continuance in action>

NOUNS 1 **continuance, continuation, ceaselessness,** unceasingness, uninterruptedness, unremittingness, **continualness** 812.1; **prolongation, extension, protraction, perpetuation,** lengthening, spinning *or* stringing out; **survival** 827.1, holding out, hanging on *or* in; **maintenance,** sustenance, sustained action *or* activity; pursuance; run, way, straight *or* uninterrupted course; **progress,** progression; **persistence, perseverance** 360; **endurance** 826.1, **stamina,** staying power; **continuity** 812; **repetition** 849

2 **resumption, recommencement,** rebeginning, reestablishment, revival, recrudescence, resuscitation, **renewal,** reopening, reentrance, reappearance; **fresh start,** new beginning; another try, another shot *or* crack *or* go <nf>

VERBS 3 **continue** 812.4, keep *or* stay with it, keep *or* stay at it, carry on; **remain,** bide, **abide, stay,** tarry, linger; **go on,** go along, **keep on,** keep on keeping on, keep going, carry on, see it through, stay on, hold on, hold one's way *or* course *or* path, hold steady, run on, jog on, drag on, bash ahead *or* on <nf>, slog on, soldier on, plug away <nf>, grind away *or* on, stagger on, put one foot in front of the other; never cease, cease not; **endure** 827.6

4 **sustain, protract, prolong, extend,** perpetuate, lengthen, spin *or* string out; **maintain,** keep, hold, retain, preserve; **keep up,** keep going, keep alive, **survive** 826.6

5 **persist, persevere,** keep at it 360.2, stick it out, stick to it, stick with it, never say die, see it through, hang in *and* hang tough *and* not know when one is licked <nf>; survive, make out, manage, get along, get on, eke out an existence, keep the even tenor of one's way; go on, go on with, go on with the show <nf>, press on; perseverate, iterate, reiterate, **harp,** go on about, chew one's ear off *and* run off at the mouth <nf>, beat a dead horse

6 **resume, recommence,** rebegin, **renew,** reestablish; **revive,** resuscitate, recrudesce; reenter, reopen, **return to,** go back to, begin again, take up again, make a new beginning, make a fresh start, start all over, have another try, have another shot *or* crack *or* go <nf>

ADJS 7 **continuing, abiding** 827.10; staying, remaining, sticking; **continuous** 811.8, **ceaseless, unceasing,** unending, endless, incessant, unremitting, steady, sustained, protracted, undying, indefatigable, **persistent; repetitious,** repetitive 848.14; **resumed,** recommenced, rebegun, renewed, reopened

857 CESSATION

NOUNS 1 **cessation, discontinuance,** discontinuation, phaseout, phasedown, scratching *and* scrubbing *and* breakoff <nf>; **desistance,** desinence, cease, surcease, **ceasing,** ending, halting, stopping, termination; **close,** closing, shutdown; sign-off; log-off; **relinquishment,** renunciation, abandonment, breakup

2 **stop,** stoppage, **halt, stay, arrest,** check, cutoff <nf>; stand, **standstill;** full stop, dead stop, screaming *or* grinding *or* shuddering *or* squealing halt; **strike** 727.7, walkout, work stoppage, sit-down strike, lockout; sick-out *and* blue flu <nf>; **end,** ending, endgame, final whistle, gun, bell, checkmate; **tie,** stalemate, deadlock, wash *and* toss-up <nf>, standoff *and* Mexican standoff <nf>; **terminal,** end of the line, rest stop, stopping place, terminus; closure

3 **pause, rest, break,** caesura, fermata, **recess, intermission,** interim 826, intermittence, interval, interlude, *intermezzo* <Ital>; **respite,** letup <nf>; **interruption, suspension,** time-out, break in the action, breathing spell, cooling-off period; **postponement** 846.4, rain-out; **remission;** abeyance, stay, drop, lull, lapse; truce, cease-fire, stand-down; **vacation, holiday,** time off, day off, recess, playtime, leisure

4 <grammatical terms> pause, juncture, boundary, caesura; <punctuation> stop *or* point *or* period, comma, colon, semicolon

5 <legislatures> **cloture,** *clôture* <Fr>; cloture by compartment, kangaroo cloture; guillotine <Brit>; closure of debate

VERBS 6 **cease, discontinue, end, stop, halt,** end-stop, terminate, close the books on, close the books, put paid to <Brit>, abort, cancel, scratch *and* scrub <nf>, hold, **quit,** stay, belay <nf>; **desist, refrain,** leave off, lay off <nf>, give over, **have done with;** cut it out *and* drop it *and* knock it off <nf>, relinquish, renounce, abandon; **come to an end** 819.6, draw to a close; hang up, ring off <nf>

7 **stop, come to a stop** *or* halt, halt, stop in one's tracks, skid to a stop, stop dead, **stall; bring up, pull up,** pull in, head in, draw up, **fetch up; stop short,** come up short, bring up short, come to a screaming *or* squealing *or* grinding *or* shuddering halt, stop on a dime <nf>, come to a full stop, put on the brake, come to a standstill, grind to a halt, fetch up all standing; **stick,** jam, hang fire, seize, seize up, freeze; **cease fire,** stand down; run into a brick wall

8 <stop work> **lay off, knock off** <nf>, call it a day <nf>, call it quits <nf>; lay down one's tools, **shut up shop,** close shop, shut down, lock up, close down, secure <nautical nf>; **strike,** walk out, call a strike, go *or* go out on strike, stand down; work to rule

9 **pause, rest,** let up *and* take it easy <nf>, **relax,** rest on one's oars; **recess,** take *or* call a recess; call time-out; **take a break,** break, take five *or* ten; hang fire

10 **interrupt, suspend,** intermit, **break, break off,** take a break <nf>, cut off, break *or* snap the thread

11 **put a stop to, call a halt to,** get it over with, blow the whistle on <nf>, **put an end to** 820.5, put paid to <Brit nf>, call off the dogs <nf>; **stop, stay, halt, arrest, check,** flag down, wave down; block, brake, dam, stem, stem the tide *or* current; pull up, draw rein, put on the brakes, hit the brake pedal; **bring to a stand** *or* **standstill,** bring to a close *or* halt, freeze, bring to, bring up short, **stop dead** *or* dead in one's tracks, set one back on his heels, stop cold, stop short, cut short, check in full career; checkmate, stalemate, deadlock; thwart; do in <nf>

12 **turn off, shut off,** shut, shut down, close; **phase out,** phase down, taper off, wind up *or* down; **kill, cut,** cut off short, switch off

INTERJS 13 **cease!, stop!, halt!,** *halte!* <Fr>, hold!, freeze!, stay!, desist!, quit it!; **let up!,** easy!, take it easy!, relax!, get off it!, **leave off!,** *arrêtez!* <Fr>, stop it!, forget it!, no more!, have done!, *tenez!* <Fr>, **hold everything!, hold it!,** hold to!, hold on!, whoa!, that's it!, that's enough!, that will do!, enough!, enough is enough!, genug!, all right already!, *basta!* <Ital>

14 <nf terms> **cut it out!,** cool it!, bag it!, chill out!, call it quits!, can it!, turn it off!, chuck it!, stow it!, drop it!, lay off!, all right already!, come off it!, **knock it off!,** break it off!, break it up!

858 CONVERSION

<change to something different>

NOUNS 1 **conversion,** reconversion, **change-over,** turning into, becoming; convertibility; **change** 852, sea change, **transformation,** transubstantiation, transmutation, metamorphosis; **transition,** transit, **switch** *and* **switchover** <nf>, passage, **shift; reversal,** about-face *and* flip-flop <nf>, *volte-face* <Fr>; makeover; **relapse,** lapse, descent; **breakthrough; growth,** progress, development; transcendence; **resolution** 940.1; reduction, simplification; **assimilation,** naturalization, adoption, assumption; processing; alchemy

2 **new start, new beginning,** fresh start, clean slate, square one <nf>; **reformation, reform, regeneration, revival, reclamation,** redemption, amendment, improvement 392, renewal, recrudescence, **rebirth,** renascence, new birth, **change of heart;** change of mind *or* commitment *or* allegiance *or* loyalty *or* conviction

3 apostasy, renunciation, **defection, desertion,** treason, crossing-over, abandonment; degeneration 393.3

4 **rehabilitation,** reconditioning, recovery, readjustment, reclamation, restoration; **reeducation,** reinstruction; **repatriation**

5 **indoctrination,** reindoctrination, counterindoctrination; **brainwashing,** menticide; subversion, alienation, corruption

6 **conversion,** proselytization, proselytism, evangelization, persuasion 375.3; indoctrination; spiritual rebirth

7 **convert, proselyte,** neophyte, catechumen, disciple, new man *or* woman, born-again person

8 **apostate, defector,** turncoat, traitor, deserter, **renegade**

9 **converter, proselyter,** proselytizer, **missionary, apostle, evangelist,** televangelist; reformer, rehabilitator

10 <instruments> philosopher’s stone, melting pot, crucible, alembic, test tube, caldron, retort, mortar; potter’s wheel, anvil, lathe; converter, transformer, transducer, engine, motor, machine 1040.4

VERBS 11 **convert,** reconvert; **change over,** switch *and* switch over <nf>, **shift,** slide into; **do over,** redo, make over, rejigger <nf>; **change, transform** 852.5,8, transmute, metamorphose; **change into, turn into, become,** resolve into, assimilate to, bring to, reduce to, naturalize; **make,** render; **reverse,** do an about-face; change one’s tune, sing a different tune, dance to another tune; turn back 859.5

12 **re-form,** remodel, reshape, refashion, recast; regroup, redeploy, rearrange 808.13; **renew,** new-model; be reborn, be born again, be a new person, feel like a new person; get it together *and* get one’s act *or* shit together *and* get one’s ducks in a row <nf>; **regenerate, reclaim,** redeem, amend, set straight; **reform, rehabilitate,** set on the straight and narrow, make a new man of, restore self-respect; mend *or* change one’s ways, **turn over a new leaf,** put on the new man, undergo a personality change

13 **defect,** renege, wimp *or* chicken *or* cop out <nf>, turn one’s coat, desert, apostatize, change one’s colors, turn against, turn traitor; leave *or* desert a sinking ship; lapse, relapse; degenerate

14 **rehabilitate,** recondition, reclaim, recover, restore, readjust; **reeducate,** reinstruct; **repatriate**

15 **indoctrinate, brainwash,** reindoctrinate, counterindoctrinate; subvert, alienate, win away, corrupt

16 **convince, persuade,** wean, bring over, sweep off one’s feet <nf>, **win over;** proselyte, **proselytize,** evangelize

17 be converted into, **turn into** *or* **to, become** 761.12, **change into,** alter into, run *or* fall *or* pass into, slide *or* glide into, **grow into,** ripen into, **develop** *or* **evolve into,** merge *or* blend *or* melt into, shift into, lapse into, open into, resolve itself *or* settle into, come round to

ADJS 18 **convertible,** changeable, resolvable, transmutable, **transformable, transitional, modifiable;** reformable, reclaimable, renewable

19 **converted, changed, transformed;** naturalized, assimilated; **reformed,** regenerated, renewed, redeemed, reborn, born-again; liquidated; brainwashed

20 **apostate, treasonable, traitorous,** degenerate, **renegade**

859 REVERSION

<change to a former state>

NOUNS 1 **reversion,** reverting, retroversion, retrogradation, **retrogression,** retrocession, regress, **relapse** 394, **regression, backsliding,** lapse, slipping back, backing, recidivism, recidivation; reconversion; **reverse, reversal,** turnabout, about-face, right about-face, 180-degree shift, flip-flop <nf>, **turn; return,** returning, retreat; disenchantment; **reclamation, rehabilitation,** redemption, return to the fold; **reinstatement,** restitution, restoration; retroaction; turn of the tide

2 **throwback,** atavism

3 **returnee, repeater;** prodigal son, lost lamb; reversioner, reversionist; recidivist, habitual criminal *or* offender, two-time loser <nf>; backslider

VERBS 4 **revert,** retrovert, **regress, retrogress,** retrograde, retrocede, **reverse, return,** return to the fold; backslide, slip back, recidivate, lapse, lapse back, relapse 394.4

5 **turn back, change back, go back, hark back,** cry back, break back, **turn,** turn around *or* about; make a round trip; do an about-face *and* flip-flop *and* do a flip-flop *and* hang a 180 <nf>, ricochet; undo, turn back the clock, put the genie back into the bottle, put the toothpaste back into the tube; go back to go *or* to square one *or* to the drawing board <nf>

6 **revert to, return to,** recur to, go back to; hark *or* cry back to

ADJS 7 **reversionary,** reversional, **regressive,** recessive, **retrogressive, retrograde;** reactionary; recidivist *or* recidivistic, recidivous, lapsarian; retroverse, retrorse; retroactive; atavistic; revertible, returnable, reversible, recoverable

WORD ELEMENTS 8 retro-

860 REVOLUTION

<sudden or radical change>

NOUNS 1 **revolution, radical** *or* **total change, violent change,** striking alteration, sweeping change, clean sweep, clean slate, square one <nf>, tabula rasa; transilience, quantum leap *or* jump; **overthrow,** overturn, upset, *bouleversement* <Fr>, convulsion, spasm, subversion, coup d’état; breakup, breakdown; **cataclysm, catastrophe,** debacle, *débâcle* <Fr>; **revolution,** revolutionary war, war of national liberation; bloodless revolution, palace revolution; technological revolution, electronic *or* communications *or* computer *or* information revolution; green revolution; counterrevolution; **revolt** 327.4

2 **revolutionism,** revolutionariness, anarchism, syndicalism, terrorism; Bolshevism *or* Bolshevikism <Russ>, Carbonarism <Ital>, Sinn Feinism <Ir>, Jacobinism <Fr>; sans-culottism <Fr>, *sans-culotterie* <Fr>, Castroism <Cuba>, Maoism <Chin>, Shining Path <Peru>, Sandinistism <Nicaragua>

3 **revolutionist, revolutionary,** revolutionizer; **rebel** 327.5; anarchist, anarch, syndicalist, criminal syndicalist, terrorist 671.9; subversive; red; Red Republican <Fr>, *bonnet rouge* <Fr>; Jacobin <Fr>, sans-culotte, sans-culottist; Yankee *or* Yankee Doodle *or* Continental <US>; Puritan *or* Roundhead <Brit>; Bolshevik *or* Bolshevist *or* Bolshie <Russ>, Marxist, Leninist, Communist, Commie <nf>, Red, Trotskyite *or* Trotskyist, Castroist *or* Castroite <Cuba>, Guevarist, Maoist; Vietcong *or* VC *and* Cong *and* Charley <Vietnam>; *Carbonaro* <Ital>, Carbonarist <Ital>; Sinn Feiner, Fenian <Ir>; revolutionary junta

VERBS 4 **revolutionize, make a radical change,** make a clean sweep, break with the past; **overthrow, overturn,** throw the rascals out *and* let heads roll <nf> *boulverse* <Fr>, upset; revolt 327.7

ADJS 5 **revolutionary;** revulsive, revulsionary; transilient; cataclysmic, catastrophic; **radical,** sweeping 794.10; **insurrectionary** 327.11

6 **revolutionist, revolutionary,** anarchic *or* anarchical, syndicalist, terrorist *or* terroristic, agin the government <nf>; Bolshevistic, Bolshevik; sans-culottic, sans-culottish; Jacobinic *or* Jacobinical, Carbonarist, Fenian, Marxist, Leninist, Communist, Trotskyist *or* Trotskyite, Guevarist, Castroist *or* Castroite, Maoist, Vietcong, Mau-Mau

861 EVOLUTION

NOUNS 1 **evolution, evolving,** evolvement; evolutionary change, gradual change, step-by-step change, peaceful *or* nonviolent change; **development, growth,** rise, incremental change, developmental change, natural growth *or* development; flowering, blossoming; ripening, coming of age, maturation 303.6; accomplishment 407; **advance,** advancement, furtherance; **progress,** progression; **elaboration,** enlargement, amplification, **expansion;** devolution, degeneration 393.3

2 **unfolding,** unfoldment, unrolling, unfurling, unwinding; revelation, gradual revelation

3 <biological terms> **genesis;** phylogeny, phylogenesis; ontogeny, ontogenesis; physiogeny, physiogenesis; **biological evolution,** speciation, convergent evolution, parallel evolution; natural selection, adaptation; horotely, bradytely, tachytely

4 **evolutionism,** theory of evolution; **Darwinism,** Darwinianism, punctuated equilibrium, Neo-Darwinism, organic evolution, survival of the fittest; Haeckelism, Lamarckism *or* Lamarckianism, Neo-Lamarckism, Lysenkoism, Weismannism, Spencerianism; social Darwinism, social evolution

VERBS 5 **evolve; develop, grow,** wax, change gradually *or* step-by-step; **progress, advance,** come a long way; accomplish 407.4; ripen, mellow, mature 303.9, maturate; flower, bloom, blossom, bear fruit; degenerate

6 **elaborate, develop, work out,** enlarge, enlarge on *or* upon, amplify, **expand,** expand on *or* upon, detail, go *or* enter into detail, go into, flesh out, **pursue,** spell out <nf>; complete 407.6

7 unfold, unroll, unfurl, unwind, unreel, uncoil, reveal, reveal *or* expose gradually

ADJS 8 **evolutionary,** evolutional, evolutionist *or* evolutionistic; **evolving, developing, unfolding; maturing,** maturational, maturative; **progressing, advancing;** devolutionary, degenerative; genetic, phylogenetic, ontogenetic, physiogenetic; horotelic, bradytelic, tachytelic

862 SUBSTITUTION

<change of one thing for another>

NOUNS 1 **substitution, exchange, change,** switch, switcheroo <nf>, swap, commutation, subrogation; **surrogacy;** vicariousness, **representation,** deputation, **delegation;** deputyship, **agency, power of attorney; supplanting,** supplantation, succession; **replacement,** displacement, shuffle; provision, provisionalness *or* provisionality, adhocracy, ad hockery *or* ad hocery, ad hocism; superseding, supersession *or* supersedure; tit for tat, *quid pro quo* <L>; job sharing

2 **substitute,** sub <nf>, **substitution, replacement,** backup, second *or* third string <nf>, secondary, utility player, succedaneum; **change, exchange; ersatz,** phony *and* fake <nf>, counterfeit, imitation 336, copy 785; surrogate; reserves, bench <nf>, backup, backup personnel, spares; **alternate,** alternative, next best thing, lesser of two evils; **successor,** supplanter, superseder, capper <nf>; **proxy,** dummy, ghost; vicar, agent,

representative; **deputy** 576; locum tenens, vice, vice-president, vice-regent, etc; **relief,** fill-in, **stand-in, understudy, pinch hitter** *or* runner <nf>; double; **equivalent,** equal; ringer <nf>; ghostwriter; **analogy,** comparison; **metaphor,** metonymy, synecdoche <all grammar>; **symbol, sign,** token, icon; makeshift 995.2

3 **scapegoat, goat** <nf>, fall guy *and* can-carrier *and* patsy *and* catch dog <nf>, whipping boy, lamb to the slaughter

VERBS **4** **substitute, exchange, change,** take *or* ask *or* offer in exchange, switch, swap, ring in <nf>, **put in the place of,** change for, make way for, give place to; commute, redeem, compound for; **pass off,** pawn *or* foist *or* palm *or* fob off; rob Peter to pay Paul; dub in; make do with, shift with, put up with; shuffle

5 **substitute for,** sub for <nf>, subrogate; **act for,** double for *or* as, stand *or* sit in for, understudy for, fill in for, serve as proxy, don the mantle of, change places with, swap places with <nf>, stand in the stead of, step into *or* fill the shoes of, pinch-hit *and* pinch-run <nf>; deputize; relieve, spell *and* spell off <nf>, cover for; ghost, ghostwrite; **represent** 576.14; **supplant, supersede,** succeed, **replace,** displace, **take the place of,** crowd out, cut out <nf>

6 <nf terms> **cover up for,** front for; **take the rap for** *and* take the fall for <nf>, carry the can *and* be the goat *or* patsy *or* fall guy <nf>

7 **delegate, deputize, commission,** give the nod to <nf>, designate an agent *or* a proxy

ADJS **8** **substitute, alternate, alternative,** other, tother <nf>, equivalent, token, dummy, pinch, utility, backup, secondary; ad hoc, provisional; **vicarious,** ersatz, mock, phony *and* fake *and* bogus <nf>, counterfeit, imitation 336.8; **proxy,** deputy; makeshift, reserve, **spare,** stopgap, temporary, provisional, tentative

9 **substitutional,** substitutionary, substitutive, provisional, supersessive; **substituted,** substituent

10 **replaceable,** substitutable, supersedable, expendable

ADVS **11** **instead, rather,** *faute de mieux* <Fr>; in its stead *or* place; in one's stead, in one's behalf, in one's place, in one's shoes; by proxy; as an alternative; *in loco parentis* <L>

PREPS **12** **instead of,** in the stead of, rather than, sooner than, **in place of,** in the place of, **in** *or* **on behalf of, in lieu of; for,** as proxy for, as a substitute for, as representing, in preference to, as an alternative to; **replacing,** as a replacement for, vice

WORD ELEMENTS **13** pro-, vice-, quasi-, pseudo-

863 INTERCHANGE

<double or mutual change>

NOUNS **1** **interchange, exchange,** counterchange; **transposition,** transposal; mutual transfer *or* replacement; mutual admiration, mutual support; **cooperation** 450; commutation, permutation, intermutation; alternation; **interplay, tradeoff, compromise, reciprocation** 777.1, reciprocality, reciprocity, mutuality, two-way traffic; give-and-take, something for something, *quid pro quo* <L>, measure for measure, tit for tat, an eye for an eye, "an eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth"—Bible; retaliation, *lex talionis* <L>; cross fire; battledore and shuttlecock; repartee

2 **trading, swapping** <nf>; trade, swap <nf>, even trade, even-steven trade, **switch;** barter 731.2; logrolling, back scratching, pork barrel; pawning, castling <chess>

3 **interchangeability,** exchangeability, changeability, standardization; convertibility, commutability, permutability

VERBS **4** **interchange, exchange,** change, counterchange; alternate; **transpose;** convert, commute, permute; **trade, swap** <nf>, **switch;** bandy, bandy about, play at battledore and shuttlecock; **reciprocate, trade off,** compromise, settle, settle for, respond, keep a balance; **give and take,** give tit for tat, give a Roland for an Oliver, give as much as one takes, give as good as one gets, return the compliment *or* favor, pay back, compensate, **requite,** return; **retaliate,** get back at, get even with, be quits with; logroll, scratch each other's back, **cooperate** 450.3

ADJS **5** **interchangeable, exchangeable,** changeable, standard; equivalent; **even,** equal; returnable, **convertible,** commutable, permutable; commutative; retaliatory, equalizing; **reciprocative** *or* reciprocating, reciprocatory, reciprocal, traded-off, two-way; **mutual,** give-and-take; **exchanged, transposed,** switched, **swapped** <nf>, traded, **interchanged;** requited, reciprocated

ADVS **6** **interchangeably, exchangeably; in exchange, in return; even, evenly,** *au pair* <Fr>; **reciprocally,** mutually; **in turn,** each in its turn, every one in his turn, by turns, turn about, turn and turn about

PHRS **7** one good turn deserves another; you scratch my back I scratch yours

864 GENERALITY

NOUNS **1** **generality, universality,** cosmicality, inclusiveness 772.1; worldwideness, globality *or* globalism, globaloney <nf>, ecumenicity *or* ecumenicalism; catholicity; **internationalism,** cosmopolitanism; **generalization,** universalization, globalization, ecumenization, internationalization; **labeling,** stereotyping

2 **prevalence, commonness,** commonality, usualness, **currency,** occurrence; **extensiveness,** widespreadness, pervasiveness, sweepingness, rifeness, rampantness; **normality,** normalness, averageness, ordinariness, routineness, habitualness, standardness

3 **average,** ruck, **run,** general *or* common *or* average *or* ordinary run, **run of the mill;** any Tom, Dick, or Harry; Everyman; common *or* average man, the man in the street, John Q Public, John *or* Jane Doe, ordinary Joe, Joe Six-pack, Joe Blow, lowest common denominator; girl next door; everyman, everywoman; *homme moyen sensuel* <Fr>

4 **all, everyone, everybody, each and every one, one and all,** all comers *and* all hands *and* every man Jack *and* every mother's son <nf>, every living soul, **all the world,** everyone and his brother, *tout le monde* <Fr>, the devil and all <nf>, **whole, totality** 792.1; **everything,** all kinds *or* all manner of things; you name it *and* what have you *and* all the above <nf>

5 **any, anything,** any one, aught, either; **anybody, anyone**

6 **whatever,** whate'er, **whatsoever,** whatsoe'er, **what, whichever,** anything soever which, no matter what *or* which, what have you, what you will

7 **whoever,** whoso, **whosoever, whomever,** whomso, **whomsoever,** anyone, no matter who, anybody

8 <idea or expression> **generalization,** general idea, **abstraction,** generalized proposition; glittering generality, sweeping statement, vague generalization; **truism, platitude, conventional wisdom,** commonplace, *lieu commun* <Fr>, *locus communis* <L>; **cliché,** tired cliché, bromide, trite *or* hackneyed expression; labeling, stereotyping

VERBS 9 **generalize, universalize,** catholicize, ecumenicize, globalize, internationalize; **broaden, widen, expand,** extend, spread; make a generalization, deal in generalities *or* abstractions; **label,** stereotype

10 **prevail, predominate, obtain,** dominate, reign, rule; be in force *or* effect; be the rule *or* fashion, be the rage *or* thing <nf>, have currency, be in <nf>

ADJS 11 **general, generalized, nonspecific,** generic, **indefinite,** indeterminate, vague, abstract, nebulous, unspecified, undifferentiated, featureless, uncharacterized, bland, neutral

12 **prevalent, prevailing, common,** popular, **current,** running; regnant, reigning, **ruling, predominant,** predominating, **dominant; rife, rampant,** pandemic, epidemic, besetting; **ordinary, normal, average, usual,** routine, standard, par for the course <nf>, stereotyped, stereotypical; public, communal

13 **extensive, broad, wide,** liberal, diffuse, large-scale, broad-scale, broad-scope, broadly-based, wide-scale, **sweeping; cross-disciplinary,** interdisciplinary; widespread, far-spread, far-stretched, **far-reaching,** far-going, far-embracing, far-extending, far-spreading, far-flying, far-ranging, **far-flung,** wide-flung, wide-reaching, wide-extending, wide-extended, wide-ranging, wide-stretching; **wholesale, indiscriminate;** rife; panoramic, bird's-eye

14 **universal,** cosmic *or* cosmical, heaven-wide, galactic, planetary, world-wide, transnational, planet-wide, **global; total,** allover, holistic; catholic, **all-inclusive,** all-including, **all-embracing,** all-encompassing, all-comprehensive, all-comprehending, all-filling, all-pervading, all-covering, encyclopedic; nonsectarian, nondenominational, ecumenic *or* ecumenical; omnipresent, ubiquitous; **cosmopolitan,** international; **national,** nation-wide, country-wide, state-wide

15 **every, all,** any, whichever, whichsoever; **each,** each one; every one, each and every, each and all, **one and all, all and sundry,** all and some

16 **trite, commonplace,** hackneyed, platitudinous, truistic, overworked, quotidian; common *or* garden

ADVS 17 **generally, in general; generally speaking,** speaking generally, **broadly,** broadly speaking, **roughly,** roughly speaking, as an approximation; **usually, as a rule, ordinarily, commonly, normally,** routinely, as a matter of course, in the usual course; **by and large,** at large, altogether, overall, over the long haul <nf>, **all things considered,** taking one thing with another, taking all things together, on balance, **all in all,** taking all in all, taking it for all in all, **on the whole,** as a whole, **in the long run,** for the most part, for better *or* for worse; **prevailingly, predominantly, mostly,** chiefly, mainly

18 **universally,** galactically, cosmically; **everywhere, all over,** the world over, all over the world, internationally; in every instance, without exception, **invariably, always,** never otherwise

WORD ELEMENTS 19 glob-, globo-, omn-, omni-, pan-, pano-, pant-, panto-, panta-

865 PARTICULARITY

NOUNS 1 **particularity, individuality, singularity, differentiation,** differentness, distinctiveness, uniqueness; identity, individual *or* separate *or* concrete identity; **personality,** personship, personal identity; soul; **selfness,** selfhood, **egohood,** self-identity, "a single separate person"—Whitman; oneness 871.1, wholeness, integrity; personal equation, human factor; **nonconformity** 868; **individualism,** particularism; nominalism

2 **speciality, specialness,** specialty, specificality, **specificness,** definiteness; special case; specialty of the house, soup du jour, flavor of the month, today's specials

3 the **specific,** the special, **the particular,** the concrete, the individual, the unique; "all things counter, original, spare, strange"—G M Hopkins

4 **characteristic, peculiarity, singularity,** particularity, specialty, individualism, **character,** property, nature, **trait,** quirk, point of character, bad point, good point, saving grace, redeeming feature, mannerism, keynote, trick, **feature,** distinctive feature, lineament; claim to fame, expertise, métier, forte; **mark,** marking, **earmark,** hallmark, index, signature; badge, token; **brand,** cast, stamp, cachet, seal, mold, cut, figure, shape, configuration; impress, impression; differential, differentia; **idiosyncrasy,** idiocrasy, eccentricity, peculiarity; **quality, property, attribute;** savor, flavor, taste, gust, aroma, odor, smack, tang, taint

5 **self, ego; oneself, I,** myself, me, my humble self, number one <nf>, yours truly <nf>; yourself, himself, herself, itself; ourselves, yourselves; themselves; you; he, she; him, her; they, them; it; inner self, inner man; subliminal *or* subconscious self; superego, better self, ethical self; other self, alter ego, alter, *alterum* <L>

6 **specification, designation, stipulation,** specifying, designating, stipulating, singling-out, featuring, highlighting, focusing on, denomination; **allocation,** attribution, fixing, selection, assignment, pinning down; specifications, particulars, minutiae, fine print

7 **particularization, specialization;** individualization, peculiarization, personalization; localization; itemization 766.5; special interest, pursuit, vocation, field

8 **characterization,** distinction, **differentiation;** definition, description

VERBS 9 **particularize, specialize; individualize,** peculiarize, personalize; **descend to particulars,** go into detail, get precise, get down to brass tacks *or* to cases <nf>, get down to the nitty-gritty <nf>, come to the point, lay it on the line <nf>, spell out; **itemize** 766.6, detail, spell out

10 **characterize, distinguish, differentiate, define, describe; mark, earmark,** mark off, mark out, demarcate, **set apart,** make special *or* unique; keynote <nf>, sound the keynote, set the tone *or* mood, set the pace; be characteristic, **be a feature** *or* **trait of**

11 **specify,** specialize, **designate, stipulate,** determine, single out, feature, highlight, focus on, mention, select, pick out, **fix,** set, assign, pin down; **name,** denominate, name names, state, mark, check, check off, **indicate, signify,** point out, put *or* lay one's finger on; mention, cite, quote, attribute

ADJS 12 **particular, special, especial, specific, express,** precise, **concrete; singular, individual,** individualist *or* individualistic, unique; **personal,** private, intimate, inner, solipsistic, esoteric; respective, several; **fixed, definite, defined,** distinct, different, different as night and day, determinate, certain, absolute; **distinguished,** noteworthy, **exceptional, extraordinary;** minute, detailed

13 **characteristic, peculiar, singular,** single, quintessential, intrinsic, unique, qualitative, **distinctive,** marked, distinguished, notable, nameable; appropriate, proper; idiosyncratic, idiocratic, **in character, true to form,** typical

14 **this,** this and no other, this one, this single; **these; that,** that one; those

ADVS 15 **particularly, specially, especially, specifically, expressly,** concretely, exactly, precisely, **in particular,** to be specific; **definitely, distinctly; minutely,** in detail, item by item, singly, separately

16 **personally,** privately, idiosyncratically, **individually; in person,** in the flesh, *in propria persona* <L>; as for me, for all of me, **for my part, as far as I am concerned**

17 **characteristically, peculiarly,** singularly, intrinsically, **uniquely,** markedly, **distinctively,** in its own way, like no other

18 **namely,** nominally, **that is to say,** *videlicet* <L>, viz, *scilicet* <L>, scil, sc, **to wit**

19 **each, apiece;** severally, respectively, one by one, each to each; *per annum* or *per diem* or *per capita* <L>

PREPS 20 **per, for each**

WORD ELEMENTS 21 -ness, -hood, -dom; aut-, auto-, idio-, self-; -acean, -aceous, -ey, -y, -ious, -ous, -ish, -ist, -istic, -istical, -itious, -itic, -ose, -some

866 SPECIALTY

<object of special attention or preference>

NOUNS 1 **specialty,** speciality, **line, pursuit, pet subject, business, line of business, line of country** <Brit>, **field,** area, main interest; **vocation** 724.6; **forte, métier, strong point,** long suit; specialism, specialization; technicality; **way,** manner, **style,** type; **lifestyle,** way of life, preferences; cup of tea *and* bag *and* thing *and* thang *and* weakness <nf>

2 **special, feature,** main feature; **leader,** lead item, leading card

3 **specialist,** specializer, **expert, authority,** savant,

scholar, connoisseur, maven <nf>; technical expert, technician, techie <nf>, nerd <nf>; pundit, critic; amateur, dilettante; fan, buff, freak *and* nut <nf>, aficionado

VERBS 4 **specialize, feature; narrow, restrict,** limit, confine; specialize in, **go in for,** be into <nf>, have a weakness *or* taste for, be strong in, follow, pursue, **make one's business;** major in, minor in; do one's thing <nf>

ADJS 5 **specialized,** specialist, specialistic; down one's alley <nf>, cut out for one, fits one like a glove; technical; **restricted, limited,** confined; **featured,** feature; **expert, authoritative,** knowledgeable

867 CONFORMITY

NOUNS 1 **conformity; conformance,** conformation, other-directedness; **compliance,** acquiescence, goose step, lockstep, obedience, observance, subordination, traditionalism, **orthodoxy;** strictness; **accordance,** accord, **correspondence,** harmony, agreement, **uniformity** 781; **consistency,** congruity; **accommodation,** adaptation, adaption, pliancy, malleability, flexibility, adjustment; reconciliation, reconcilement; **conventionality** 579.1

2 **conformist,** conformer, sheep, trimmer, parrot, yes-man, organization man, company man, lackey; **conventionalist,** Mrs Grundy, Babbitt, Philistine, middle-class type, button-down *or* white-bread type <nf>, **bourgeois,** burgher, Middle American, plastic person *and* clone *and* square <nf>, three-piecer *and* yuppie <nf>, Barbie Doll <trademark nf>; model child; teenybopper <nf>; **formalist,** methodologist, perfectionist, precisianist *or* precisian, stick-in-the-mud; anal character, compulsive character; pedant

VERBS 3 **conform, comply, correspond,** accord, harmonize; **adapt,** adjust, **accommodate,** bend, meet, suit, fit, shape; **comply with,** agree with, tally with, chime *or* fall in with, go by, be guided *or* regulated by, observe, follow, bend, yield, take the shape of; **adapt to,** adjust to, gear to, assimilate to, **accommodate to** *or* **with; reconcile,** settle, compose; rub off corners; **make conform,** shape, lick into shape, mold, force into a mold; straighten, rectify, correct, **discipline**

4 **follow the rule, toe the mark,** do it according to Hoyle *or* by the book <nf>, play the game <nf>; go through channels; **fit in, follow the crowd,** go with the crowd, follow the fashion, swim *or* go with the stream *or* tide *or* current, get on the bandwagon, trim one's sails to the breeze, follow the beaten path, **do as others do, get** *or* **stay in line,** fall in *or* into line, fall in with; run true to form; **keep in step,** goose-step, walk in lockstep; keep up to standard, pass muster, come up to scratch <nf>

ADJS 5 **conformable, adaptable,** adaptive, adjustable; **compliant,** pliant, complaisant, malleable, flexible, plastic, acquiescent, unmurmuring, other-directed, submissive, tractable, obedient

6 **conformist, conventional** 579.5, bourgeois, plastic *and* square *and* straight *and* white-bread *and* white-bready *and* button-down *and* buttoned-down <nf>, cloned *and* clonish *and* cookie-cutter <nf>; **orthodox,** traditionalist *or* traditionalistic; kosher; **formalistic,** legalistic, precisianistic, anal, compulsive; pedantic, stuffy *and* hidebound <nf>, strait-laced, uptight <nf>; in accord, in keeping, in line, in step, in lockstep; **corresponding,** accordant, concordant, harmonious

ADVS 7 conformably, conformingly, in conformity, **obediently, pliantly,** flexibly, malleably, complaisantly, yieldingly, **compliantly,** submissively; **conventionally,** traditionally; anally, **compulsively;** pedantically

8 **according to rule,** *en règle* <Fr>, according to regulations; **according to Hoyle** *and* **by the book** *and* by the numbers <nf>

PREPS 9 **conformable to, in conformity with,** in compliance with; **according to, in accordance with, consistent with, in harmony with,** in agreement with, in correspondence to; adapted to, adjusted to, accommodated to; proper to, suitable for, agreeable to, agreeably to; answerable to, in obedience to; congruent with, uniform with, in uniformity with; **in line with,** in step with, in lockstep with, **in keeping with; after, by, per, as per**

PHRS 10 **don't rock the boat, don't make waves,** get in line, shape up, shape up or ship out <nf>; when in Rome do as the Romans do

868 NONCONFORMITY

NOUNS 1 **nonconformity,** unconformity, nonconformism, **inconsistency,** incongruity; **inaccordance,** disaccord, disaccordance; originality 337.1; **nonconformance,** disconformity; **nonobservance, noncompliance,** nonconcurrence, **dissent** 333, **protest** 333.2, rebellion, disagreement, contrariety, recalcitrance, refractoriness, recusance *or* recusancy; **deviation** 870.1, deviationism

2 **unconventionality, unorthodoxy** 688, revisionism, heterodoxy, heresy, originality, Bohemianism, beatnikism, hippiedom, counterculture, iconoclasm; eccentricity; alternative lifestyle *or* society *or* medicine

3 **nonconformist,** unconformist, **original,** eccentric, gonzo <nf>, deviant, deviationist, maverick <nf>,

dropout, Bohemian, beatnik, free spirit, freethinker, hippie, hipster, freak <nf>, flower child, New-Age Traveler; **misfit,** square peg in a round hole, ugly duckling, fish out of water; *enfant terrible* <Fr>; **dissenter** 333.3; **heretic** 688.5; sectary, sectarian; nonjuror

VERBS 4 **not conform,** nonconform, not comply; **get out of line** *and* **rock the boat** *and* make waves <nf>, **leave the beaten path, go out of bounds,** upset the apple cart, break step, break bounds; drop out, opt out; **dissent** 333.4, swim against the current *or* against the tide *or* upstream, **protest** 333.5; "hear a different drummer"—Thoreau

ADJS 5 **nonconforming,** unconforming, nonconformable, unadaptable, unadjustable; **uncompliant,** unsubmissive; **nonobservant;** contrary, recalcitrant, refractory, recusant; **deviant,** deviationist, atypic *or* atypical, unusual; **dissenting** 333.6, **dissident;** antisocial

6 **unconventional, unorthodox, eccentric,** gonzo <nf>, heterodox, heretical; unfashionable, not done, not kosher, not cricket <Brit nf>; offbeat <nf>, way out *and* far out *and* kinky *and* out in left field <nf>, fringy, breakaway, **out-of-the-way; original,** maverick, Bohemian, beat, hippie, counterculture; **nonformal,** free and easy <nf>, "at ease and lighthearted"—Whitman

7 **out of line, out of keeping,** out of order *or* place, misplaced, **out of step,** out of turn <nf>, out of tune

869 NORMALITY

NOUNS 1 **normality,** normalness, typicality, normalcy, **naturalness;** health, wholesomeness, propriety, **regularity;** naturalism, naturism, realism; **order** 806

2 **usualness, ordinariness, commonness,** commonplaceness, averageness, mediocrity; **generality** 864, **prevalence,** currency

3 **the normal, the usual, the ordinary, the common,** the commonplace, the day-to-day, the way things are, the normal order of things; common *or* garden variety, the run of the mine *or* the mill

4 **rule, law, principle, standard,** criterion, canon, code, code of practice, maxim, prescription, guideline, rulebook, the book <nf>, regulation, reg *or* regs <nf>; **norm, model,** rule of behavior, ideal, ideal type, specimen type, exemplar; **rule** *or* **law** *or* **order of nature,** natural *or* universal law; **form, formula,** formulary, formality, prescribed *or* set form; standing order, standard operating procedure; **hard-and-fast rule,** Procrustean law

5 **normalization, standardization, regularization; codification,** formalization

VERBS 6 **normalize, standardize, regularize; codify,** formalize

7 **do the usual thing, make a practice of,** carry on, carry on as usual, do business as usual

ADJS 8 **normal, natural; general** 864.11; typical, unexceptional; **normative,** prescribed, model, ideal, desired, white-bread *or* white-bready <nf>; naturalistic, naturistic, realistic; orderly 807.6

9 **usual, regular; customary,** habitual, accustomed, wonted, normative, prescriptive, standard, regulation, conventional; **common, commonplace, ordinary, average, everyday,** mediocre, familiar, household, vernacular, stock; **prevailing, predominating,** current, popular; **universal** 864.14

ADVS 10 **normally, naturally; normatively,** prescriptively, **regularly; typically,** usually, commonly, ordinarily, customarily, habitually, generally; mostly, chiefly, mainly, for the most part, most often *or* frequently; **as a rule,** as a matter of course; **as usual,** as per usual <nf>; **as may be expected,** to be expected, as things go

WORD ELEMENTS 11 norm-, normo-

870 ABNORMALITY

NOUNS 1 **abnormality,** abnormity; **unnaturalness,** unnaturalism, strangeness; **anomaly,** anomalousness, anomalism; **aberration,** aberrance *or* aberrancy; **atypicality,** atypicalness; **irregularity, deviation,** divergence, **difference** 780; **eccentricity,** erraticism, unpredictability, unpredictableness, randomness, chaos; **monstrosity,** teratism, amorphism, heteromorphism; **subnormality; inferiority** 250; **superiority** 249; **derangement** 811.1

2 **unusualness, uncommonness,** unordinariness, unwontedness, exceptionalness, exceptionality, extraordinariness; **rarity,** rareness, **uniqueness; prodigiousness,** marvelousness, wondrousness, fabulousness, mythicalness, remarkableness, stupendousness; **incredibility** 955.3, increditability, inconceivability, **impossibility** 966

3 **oddity, queerness,** curiousness, quaintness, **peculiarity, absurdity** 967.1, singularity; **strangeness,** outlandishness; bizarreness, *bizarrerie* <Fr>; fantasticality, anticness; **freakishness, grotesqueness,** grotesquerie, strangeness, weirdness, gonzo <nf>, monstrousness, monstrosity, malformation, deformity, teratism

4 <odd person> oddity, **character** <nf>, type, **case** <nf>, natural, original, odd fellow, queer specimen; **oddball** *and* **weirdo** <nf>, odd *or* queer fish, queer duck, rum one <Brit nf>; **rare bird,** *rara avis* <L>; flake, eccentric 927.3; *meshuggenah* <Yiddish>; **freak** *and* **screwball** *and* **crackpot** *and*

kook *and* **nut** *and* bird *and* gonzo <nf>; **fanatic, crank,** zealot; **outsider, alien,** foreigner; **alien,** extraterrestrial, Martian, little green man, visitor from another planet; pariah, loner, lone wolf, solitary, hermit; hobo, tramp; maverick; **outcast,** outlaw, scapegoat; **nonconformist** 868.3

5 <odd thing> **oddity, curiosity, wonder,** funny *or* peculiar *or* strange thing; **abnormality, anomaly; rarity,** improbability, exception, one in a thousand *or* million; **prodigy,** prodigiosity; curio, conversation piece; museum piece

6 **monstrosity, monster** <see list>, miscreation, abortion, teratism, abnormal *or* defective birth, abnormal *or* defective fetus; **freak,** freak of nature, *lusus naturae* <L>

7 **supernaturalism,** supernaturalness, supernaturality, supranaturalism, supernormalness, **preternaturalism,** supersensibleness, superphysicalness, superhumanity; **the paranormal;** numinousness; **unearthliness,** unworldliness, **otherworldliness,** eeriness; transcendentalism; New Age; the supernatural, **the occult,** the supersensible; **paranormality;** supernature, supranature; **mystery,** mysteriousness, miraculousness, strangeness; faerie, witchery, elfdom

8 **miracle, sign, signs and portents, prodigy, wonder,** wonderwork, ferlie <Scot>; thaumatology, thaumaturgy; fantasy, enchantment

ADJS **9** **abnormal, unnatural; anomalous,** anomalistic; **irregular,** eccentric, erratic, deviative, divergent, **different** 779.7; **aberrant,** stray, straying, wandering; heteroclite, heteromorphic; formless, shapeless, amorphous; **subnormal**

10 **unusual,** unordinary, **uncustomary,** unwonted, **uncommon, unfamiliar,** atypic *or* atypical, unheard-of, *recherché* <Fr>; **rare, unique,** *sui generis* <L, of its own kind>; **out of the ordinary,** out of this world, out-of-the-way, out of the common, out of the pale, **off the beaten track,** offbeat, breakaway; unexpected, not to be expected, unthought-of, undreamed-of

11 **odd, queer, peculiar, absurd** 967.7, **singular, curious, oddball** <nf>, weird *and* kooky *and* freaky *and* freaked-out <nf>, quaint, **eccentric,** gonzo <nf>, funny, rum <Brit nf>; **strange, outlandish, off-the-wall** <nf>, surreal, not for real <nf>, passing strange, "wondrous strange"—Shakespeare; **weird,** unearthly; off, out

12 **fantastic,** fantastical, fanciful, antic, **unbelievable** 955.10, **impossible, incredible,** logic-defying, incomprehensible, unimaginable, unexpected, unaccountable, inconceivable

13 **freakish,** freak *or* freaky <nf>; **monstrous, deformed,** malformed, misshapen, **misbegotten,** teratogenic, teratoid; **grotesque, bizarre,** baroque, rococo

14 **extraordinary, exceptional, remarkable,** noteworthy, **wonderful, marvelous,** fabulous, mythical, legendary; **stupendous,** stupefying, prodigious, portentous, phenomenal; unprecedented, unexampled, unparalleled, not within the memory of man; indescribable, unspeakable, ineffable

15 **supernatural,** supranatural, **preternatural; supernormal,** hypernormal, preternormal, **paranormal; superphysical,** hyperphysical; numinous; supersensible, **supersensual,** pretersensual; **superhuman,** preterhuman, unhuman, nonhuman; **supramundane,** extramundane, transmundane, extraterrestrial; **unearthly, unworldly, otherworldly, eerie;** fey; psychical, **spiritual, occult; transcendental; mysterious,** arcane, esoteric

16 **miraculous, wondrous,** wonder-working, thaumaturgic *or* thaumaturgical, necromantic, **prodigious; magical,** enchanted, bewitched

ADVS **17** **unusually, uncommonly, incredibly, unnaturally,** abnormally, unordinarily, **uncustomarily,** unexpectedly; **rarely, seldom,** seldom if ever, once in a thousand years, hardly, hardly ever

18 **extraordinarily, exceptionally, remarkably, wonderfully, marvelously,** prodigiously, fabulously, unspeakably, ineffably, phenomenally, stupendously

19 **oddly, queerly, peculiarly, singularly, curiously,** quaintly, **strangely,** outlandishly, **fantastically,** fancifully; **grotesquely, monstrously; eerily, mysteriously,** supernaturally

WORD ELEMENTS **20** terat-, terato-; medus-, medusi-, -pagus, anom-, anomo-, anomal-, anomalo-, anomali-, dys-, dis-, mal-, ne-, neo-, par-, para-, poly-, pseud-, pseudo-

21 **mythical and imaginary monsters**

abominable snowman *or* yeti
Argus
basilisk
Bigfoot *or* Sasquatch
Briareus
bucentur
Cacus
Caliban
centaur
Cerberus
Ceto
Charybdis
chimera
cockatrice
Cyclops
dipsas
dragon
drake <old>
Echidna
Erebus
Frankenstein
Geryon
Gigantes
Gorgon
green-eyed monster
Grendel
griffin
Harpy
hippocampus
hippocentaur
hippocerf

hippogriff
hircocervus
Hydra
Jabberwock
Kraken
Ladon
Lamia
Leviathan
Loch Ness monster
manticore
Medusa
mermaid
merman
Midgard serpent
Minotaur
Mylodont
nixie
ogre
ogress
opinicus
Orthos *or* Orthros
Pegasus
Pongo
Python
roc
Sagittary
salamander
Sasquatch
satyr
Scylla
sea horse
sea serpent
simurgh *or* simurg
siren
Sphinx
Talos
troll
Typhoeus
Typhon
unicorn
vampire
werewolf
windigo
wivern *or* wyvern
xiphopagus
yowie
zombie

871 LIST

NOUNS **1 list, enumeration, itemization,** listing, shopping list *and* laundry list *and* want list *and* wish list *and* hit list *and* shit list *and* drop-dead list <nf>, items, **schedule, register,** registry; **inventory,** repertory, tally; database *and* data base; **spreadsheet,** electronic spreadsheet; **checklist;** tally sheet; active list, civil list <Brit>, retired list, sick list; waiting list; blacklist; short list; reading list; syllabus

2 table, contents, table of contents; computer listing, menu; chart

3 catalog; classified catalog, *catalogue raisonné* <Fr>; **card catalog, bibliography,** finding list, handlist, reference list; filmography, discography; publisher's catalog *or* list; **file,** filing system, letter file, pigeonholes

4 dictionary, word list, **lexicon, glossary, thesaurus, Roget's, vocabulary,** terminology, nomenclator; promptorium, gradus; **gazetteer; almanac;** telephone directory, address book; book of lists

5 bill, statement, account, itemized account, invoice; ledger, books; **bill of fare, menu,** carte, wine list, dessert menu; **bill of lading,** manifest, waybill, docket

6 roll, roster, scroll, rota; **roll call,** muster, **census,** nose *or* head count <nf>, **poll,** questionnaire, returns, census report *or* returns; property roll, tax roll, cadastre; muster roll; checkroll, checklist; jury list *or* panel; calendar, docket, **agenda,** order of business; daybook, journal, agenda book, diary; **program,** dramatis personae, credits, lineup; honor roll, dean's list; timetable, schedule, itinerary, prospectus

7 index, listing, tabulation; **cataloging, itemization,** filing, card file, card index, Rolodex <trademark>, thumb index, indexing; **registration,** registry, enrollment

VERBS **8 list, enumerate, itemize, tabulate, catalog,** tally; **register,** post, enter, **enroll, book;** impanel; **file,** pigeonhole, classify; **index;** inventory; calendar; score, keep score; **schedule,** program, put on the agenda; diarize; short-list

ADJS **9 listed, enumerated, entered, itemized, cataloged,** tallied, inventoried; filed, **indexed, tabulated; scheduled,** programmed; put on the agenda; inventorial, glossarial, cadastral, classificatory, taxonomic; registered, recorded, noted

872 ONENESS

<state of being one>

NOUNS **1 oneness, unity, singleness,** singularity, **individuality,** identity, selfsameness; **particularity** 865; **uniqueness;** intactness, inviolability, purity, simplicity 798, irreducibility, **integrity,** integrality; **unification,** uniting, integration, fusion, combination 804; **solidification,** solidity, solidarity, **indivisibility,** undividedness, **wholeness** 792.5; univocity, organic unity; uniformity 780; "the sacredness of private integrity"—Emerson

2 aloneness, loneness, **loneliness, lonesomeness,** soleness, singleness; **privacy,** solitariness, **solitude;** separateness, aloofness, detachment, seclusion, sequestration, **withdrawal, alienation,** standing *or* moving *or* keeping apart, **isolation,** "splendid isolation"—Sir William Goschen; celibacy, single blessedness

3 one, I, 1, **unit,** ace, atom; monad; one and only, none else, no other, nothing else, nought beside

4 individual, single, unit, **integer, entity,** singleton, **item,** article, point, module; person, wight <old>, persona, soul, body, warm body <nf>; **individuality,** personhood; isolated case, single instance

VERBS **5 unify,** reduce to unity, unitize, make one; **integrate,** unite 805.3

6 stand alone, stand *or* move *or* keep apart, keep oneself to oneself, withdraw, alienate *or* seclude *or* sequester *or* isolate oneself, feel out of place; individuate, become an individual; go solo, paddle one's own canoe, do one's own thing <nf>

ADJS **7 one, single, singular, individual, sole, unique,** a certain, **solitary, lone;** exclusive; **integral,** indivisible, irreducible, monadic, monistic, unanalyzable, noncompound, atomic, unitary, unitive, unary, undivided, solid, whole-cloth, seamless, uniform 781.5, simple 798.6, whole 792.9; an, any, any one, either

8 **alone, solitary,** solo, *solus* <L>; isolated, insular, apart, separate, separated, alienated, withdrawn, aloof, standoffish, detached, removed; **lone, lonely, lonesome,** lonely-hearts; **private,** reserved, reticent, reclusive, shy, nonpublic, ungregarious; **friendless,** kithless, homeless, rootless, companionless, **unaccompanied,** unescorted, unattended; **unaided,** unassisted, unabetted, unsupported, unseconded; **single-handed,** solo, one-man, one-woman, one-person

9 **sole, unique,** singular, absolute, unrepeated, **alone,** lone, **only,** only-begotten, **one and only,** first and last; odd, impair, unpaired, azygous; celibate

10 **unitary, integrated,** integral, integrant; **unified,** united, rolled into one, composite

11 **unipartite,** unipart, **one-piece;** monadic *or* monadal; **unilateral, one-sided;** unilateralist, uniangulate, unibivalent, unibranchiate, unicameral, unicellular, unicuspid, unidentate, unidigitate; **unidimensional, unidirectional;** uniflorous, unifoliate, unifoliolate, unigenital, uniglobular, unilinear, uniliteral, unilobed, unilobular, unilocular, unimodular, unimolecular, uninuclear, uniocular, unisexual, unisex; unipolar, **univalent, univocal;** one-size; monolingual, monochromatic

12 **unifying, uniting,** unific; **combining,** combinative 805.5,7, combinatory; connective, connecting, connectional; conjunctive 799.16, conjunctival; coalescing, coalescent

ADVS 13 **singly, individually,** particularly, severally, one by one, one at a time; **singularly,** in the singular; **alone,** by itself, *per se* <L>; **by oneself,** by one's lonesome <nf>, on one's own, under one's own steam, **single-handedly, solo,** unaided; separately, apart; **once** 848.6

14 **solely, exclusively, only,** merely, **purely,** simply; **entirely,** wholly, totally; **integrally, indivisibly,** irreducibly, unanalyzably, undividedly

873 DOUBLENESS

NOUNS 1 **doubleness, duality,** dualism, duplexity, **twoness;** twofoldness, biformity; polarity; conjugation, pairing, coupling, yoking; **doubling,** duplication 874, twinning, bifurcation; **dichotomy,** bisection 875, halving, splitting down the middle *or* fifty-fifty; **duplicity,** two-facedness, double-think, hypocrisy, Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde; **irony,** enantiosis, ambiguity, equivocation, equivocality, **ambivalence;** Janus

2 **two,** 2, II, twain <old>; **couple, pair, matching pair, twosome,** set of two, duo, duet, brace, team, span, yoke, double harness; match, matchup, mates; **couplet,** distich, double, doublet; duad, dyad; the two, **both;** Darby and Joan; tandem

3 **deuce;** pair, doubleton; **craps** *and* **snake eyes** <gambling>

4 **twins,** pair of twins <nf>, identical twins, fraternal twins, exact mates, look-alikes, dead ringers <nf>, mirror image, carbon copy, Doppelganger, spit and image *or* spitting image; Tweedledum and Tweedledee, Siamese twins; Twin stars, Castor and Pollux, Gemini

VERBS 5 **double,** duplicate, replicate, dualize, twin; **halve,** split down the middle *or* fifty-fifty <nf>, bifurcate, dichotomize, bisect, transect; team, **yoke,** yoke together, span, double-team, double-harness; **mate, match,** couple, conjugate; **pair,** pair off, pair up, couple up, team up, match up, buddy up <nf>; talk out of both sides of one's mouth at once; square; copy, mirror, echo

ADJS 6 **two,** twain <old>; **dual, double,** duple, duplex, doubled, twinned, duplicated, replicated, dualized; **dualistic;** dyadic; duadic; biform; bipartite, bipartisan, bilateral, either-or, two-sided, double-sided, binary; dichotomous; bifurcated, bisected, dichotomized, split down the middle *or* fifty fifty <nf>; twin, identical, matched, twinned, duplicated; **two-faced,** duplicitous, hypocritical, double-faced, Janus-like; second, secondary; two-way, two-ply, dual-purpose, two-dimensional

7 **both,** the two, the pair; for two, tête-à-tête, *à deux* <Fr>

8 coupled, paired, yoked, yoked together, matched, matched up, mated, paired off, paired up, teamed up, buddied up <nf>; **bracketed;** conjugate, conjugated; biconjugate, bigeminate; bijugate

PHRS 9 it takes two to tango *and* it's not a one-way street <nf>

WORD ELEMENTS 10 ambi-, amph-, amphi-, bi-, bin-, bis-, deut-, deuto-, deuter-, deutero-, di-, dis-, didym-, didymo-, duo-, dyo-, gem-, twi-, zyg-, zygo-

874 DUPLICATION

NOUNS 1 **duplication, reduplication,** replication, conduplication; **reproduction, repro** <nf>, **doubling;** twinning, gemination, ingemination; **repetition** 849, iteration, reiteration, echoing; **imitation** 336, parroting; **copying** 336.1; **duplicate** 785.3

2 repeat, encore, repeat performance; echo

VERBS 3 **duplicate,** dupe <nf>, ditto <nf>; **double,** double up; multiply by two; twin, geminate, ingeminate; **reduplicate, reproduce,** replicate, redouble; **repeat** 849.7; **copy**

ADJS 4 **double, doubled, duplicate,** duplicated, reproduced, replicated, cloned, twinned, geminate, geminated, dualized

ADVS 5 **doubly; twofold,** as much again, twice as much; twice, two times

6 **secondly,** second, secondarily, **in the second place** *or* instance

7 **again,** another time, **once more,** once again, over again, yet again, *encore* and *bis* <Fr>; **anew,** afresh, new, freshly, newly

WORD ELEMENTS 8 bi-, bis-, deuter-, deutero-, di-, dis-, diphy-, diphyo-, dipl-, diplo-, diss-, disso-, twi-

875 BISECTION

NOUNS 1 **bisection,** halving, bipartition, bifidity; **dichotomy, halving, division, in half** *or* **by two,** splitting *or* dividing *or* cutting in two, splitting *or* dividing fifty-fifty <nf>; subdivision; bifurcation, forking, ramification, branching

2 **half,** moiety; hemisphere, semisphere, semicircle, **fifty percent;** half-and-half *and* fifty-fifty <nf>

3 bisector, diameter, equator, halfway mark, divider, partition 213.5, line of demarcation, boundary 211.3

VERBS 4 **bisect, halve, divide, in half** *or* **by two,** transect, subdivide; cleave, fission, **divide** *or* split *or* **cut in two,** share and share alike, go halfers *or* go Dutch <nf>, **dichotomize;** bifurcate, fork, ramify, branch

ADJS 5 **half, part, partly, partial,** halfway

6 **halved, bisected, divided;** dichotomous; bifurcated, forked *or* forking, ramified, branched, branching; riven, **split,** cloven, cleft

7 **bipartite,** bifid, biform, bicuspid, biaxial, bicameral, binocular, binomial, binominal, biped, bipetalous, bipinnate, bisexual, bivalent, unibivalent

ADVS 8 **in half,** in halves, **in two,** in twain, by two, down the middle; half-and-half *and* fifty-fifty <nf>; apart, asunder

WORD ELEMENTS 9 bi-, demi-, dich-, dicho-, hemi-, semi-, sesqui-

876 THREE

NOUNS 1 **three,** 3, III, **trio,** trey, **threesome,** trialogue, set of three, tierce <cards>, leash, troika; **triad,** trilogy, trine, **trinity,** triunity, ternary, ternion; **triplet,** tercet, terzetto; trefoil, shamrock, clover; tripod, trivet; **triangle,** tricorn, trihedron, trident, trisul, triennium, trimester, trinomial, trionym, triphthong, triptych, triplopy, trireme, triseme, triskelion, triumvirate; triple crown, triple threat; trey *and* threespot <cards>, deuce-ace <dice>; triple-decker; ménage à trois; hat trick

2 **threeness,** triplicity, triality, tripleness, trebleness, threefoldness; triunity, trinity

ADJS 3 **three, triple,** triplex, trinal, trine, trial; triadic *or* triadical; triune, three-in-one, *tria juncta in uno* <L>; triform; treble; **triangular,** deltoid, fan-shaped

WORD ELEMENTS 4 tri-, ter-, ternati-

877 TRIPLICATION

NOUNS 1 **triplication,** triplicity, trebleness, **threefoldness;** triplicate

VERBS 2 **triplicate, triple, treble, multiply by three,** threefold; cube

ADJS 3 **triple,** triplicate, **treble, threefold,** trifold, triplex, trinal, trine, tern, ternary, ternal, ternate; three-ply; trilogic *or* trilocial

4 **third, tertiary**

ADVS 5 **triply, trebly,** trinely; **threefold; thrice,** three times, again and yet again

6 **thirdly,** in the third place

WORD ELEMENTS 7 cub-, cubo-, cubi-; ter-; tert-, trit-, trito-

878 TRISECTION

NOUNS 1 **trisection,** tripartition, trichotomy, trifurcation

2 **third,** tierce, third part, one-third; *tertium quid* <L, a third something>

VERBS 3 **trisect, divide in thirds** *or* **three,** third, trichotomize; trifurcate

ADJS 4 **tripartite,** trisected, triparted, **three-parted,** trichotomous; three-sided, trihedral, trilateral; **three-dimensional;** three-forked, three-pronged, trifurcate; trident, tridental, tridentate, trifid; tricuspid; three-footed, tripodic, tripedal; trifoliate, trifloral, triflorate, triflorous, tripetalous, triadelphous, triarch; trimerous, 3-merous; three-cornered, tricornered, tricorn; trigonal, trigonoid; triquetrous, triquetral; trigrammatic, triliteral; **triangular,** triangulate, deltoid

879 FOUR

NOUNS 1 **four,** 4, IV, tetrad, quatern, quaternion, quaternary, quaternity, **quartet, quadruplet, foursome;** quatre; Little Joe *and* Little Joe from Kokomo *and* Little Dick Fisher <gambling>; quadrennium; tetralogy; tetrapody; tetraphony, four-part diaphony; quadrille, square dance; quatrefoil *or* quadrifoil, four-leaf clover; tetragram, tetragrammaton; quadrangle, quad <nf>, rectangle; tetrahedron; tetragon, square; biquadrate; quadrinomial; quadrature, squaring; quadrilateral

2 **fourness,** quaternity, quadruplicity, fourfoldness

VERBS **3** **square, quadrate,** form *or* make four; form fours *or* squares; **cube, dice**

ADJS **4** **four;** foursquare; quaternary, quartile, quartic, quadric, quadratic; tetrad, tetradic; quadrinomial, biquadratic; tetractinal, four-rayed, **quadruped,** four-legged; quadrivalent, tetravalent; quadrilateral 278.9

WORD ELEMENTS **5** quadr-, quadri-, quadru-, tetr-, tetra-, tessar-, tessara-, tri-, trip-, tripl-, triplo-, tris-

880 QUADRUPLICATION

NOUNS **1** **quadruplication,** quadruplicature, quadruplicity, fourfoldness

VERBS **2** **quadruple, quadruplicate,** fourfold, form *or* make four, multiply by four; quadrate, biquadrate, quadruplex

ADJS **3** **quadruplicate, quadruple,** quadraple, **quadruplex, fourfold,** four-ply, four-part, tetraploid, quadrigeminal, biquadratic

WORD ELEMENTS **4** quadr-, quadri-, quadru-, quater-, tetr-, tetra-, tetrakis-

881 QUADRISECTION

NOUNS **1** **quadrisection,** quadripartition, **quartering**

2 fourth, one-fourth, **quarter,** one-quarter, fourth part, twenty-five percent, twenty-five cents, two bits <old nf>; quartern; quart; farthing; quarto *or* 4to *or* 4°

VERBS **3** **divide by four** *or* **into four; quadrisect, quarter**

ADJS **4** **quadrisected, quartered,** quarter-cut; quadripartite, quadrifid, quadriform; quadrifoliate, quadrigeminal, quadripinnate, quadriplanar, quadriserial, quadrivial, quadrifurcate, quadrumanal *or* quadrumanous

5 **fourth, quarter**

ADVS **6** **fourthly,** in the fourth place; quarterly, by quarters

882 FIVE AND OVER

NOUNS **1** **five,** V, cinque <cards and dice>, Phoebe *and* Little Phoebe *and* fever <gambling>; **quintet, fivesome,** quintuplets, quints <nf>, cinquain, quincunx, pentad; fifth; **five dollars,** fiver *and* fin *and* finniff *and* five bucks <nf>; pentagon, pentahedron, pentagram; pentapody, pentameter, pentastich; pentarchy; Pentateuch; pentachord; pentathlon; five-pointed star, pentacle, pentalpha, mullet <heraldry>; five-spot <nf>; quinquennium

2 **six,** VI, sixie from Dixie *and* sister Hicks *and* Jimmy Hicks *and* Captain Hicks <gambling>, **half a dozen, sextet,** sestet, sextuplets, hexad; hexagon, hexahedron, hexagram, six-pointed star, estoile <heraldry>, Jewish star, star of David, *Magen David* <Heb>; hexameter, hexapody, hexastich; hexapod; hexarchy; Hexateuch; hexastyle; hexachord; six-shooter; sixth sense; six-pack

3 **seven,** VII, heptad, little natural <crapshooting>; septet, heptad; heptagon, heptahedron; heptameter, heptastich; septemvir, heptarchy; Septuagint, Heptateuch; heptachord; **week;** seven deadly sins; seven seas; Seven Wonders of the World

4 **eight,** VIII, ogdoad, eighter *or* Ada from Decatur <crapshooting>, Ada Ross *and* Ada Ross the stable hoss <gambling>; octad, octonary; octagon, octahedron; octastylos *or* oktostylos; octave, octavo *or* 8vo; octachord; octet *or* octal, octameter; Octateuch; piece of eight; Eightfold Path

5 **nine,** IX, niner <radio communication>, Nina from Carolina *and* Nina Ross the stable hoss *and* Nina Nina ocean liner <gambling>; ennead; nonagon *or* enneagon, enneahedron; novena; enneastylos; nine days' wonder

6 **ten,** X, Big Dick *and* Big Dick from Battle Creek <gambling>; **decade;** decagon, decahedron; decagram, decigram, decaliter, deciliter, decare, decameter, decimeter, decastere; decapod; decastylos; decasyllable; decemvir, decemvirate, decurion; decennium, decennary; Ten Commandments *or* Decalogue; tithe; decathlon

7 <eleven to ninety> **eleven; twelve, dozen,** boxcar *and* boxcars <gambling>, duodecimo *or* twelvemo *or* 12mo; **teens; thirteen,** long dozen, baker's dozen; **fourteen,** two weeks, fortnight; **fifteen,** quindecima, quindene, quindecim, quindecennial; **sixteen,** sixteenmo *or* 16mo; **twenty, score; twenty-four,** four and twenty, two dozen, twenty-fourmo *or* 24mo; **twenty-five,** five and twenty, quarter of a hundred *or* century; thirty-two, thirty-twomo *or* 32mo; **forty,** twoscore; **fifty,** L, half a hundred; **sixty,** sexagenary; Sexagesima; sexagenarian, threescore; **sixty-four,** sixty-fourmo *or* 64mo *or* sexagesimo-quarto; **seventy,** septuagenarian, threescore and ten; **eighty,** octogenarian, fourscore; **ninety,** nonagenarian, four-score and ten

8 **hundred, century,** C, one C <nf>; centennium, centennial, centenary; centenarian; cental, centigram, centiliter, centimeter, centare, centistere; hundredweight *or* cwt; hecatomb; centipede; centumvir, centumvirate, centurion; <120> great *or* long hundred; <144> gross; <150> sesquicentennial, sesquicentenary;

<200> bicentenary, bicentennial; <300> tercentenary, tercentennial, etc

9 **five hundred,** D, five centuries; five C's <nf>

10 **thousand,** M, chiliad; **millennium;** G *and* grand *and* thou *and* yard <nf>; chiliagon, chiliahedron *or* chiliaüdron; chiliarchia *or* chiliarch; millepede; milligram, milliliter, millimeter, kilogram *or* kilo, kiloliter, kilometer; kilocycle, kilohertz; kilobyte; gigabyte; **ten thousand,** myriad; **one hundred thousand,** *lakh* <India>

11 **million;** ten million, *crore* <India>

12 **billion,** thousand million, milliard

13 trillion, quadrillion, quintillion, sextillion, septillion, octillion, nonillion, decillion, undecillion, duodecillion, tredecillion, quattuordecillion, quindecillion, sexdecillion, septendecillion, octodecillion, novemdecillion, vigintillion; googol, googolplex; zillion *and* jillion <nf>

14 <division into five or more parts> quinquesection, quinquepartition, sextipartition, etc; decimation, decimalization; fifth, sixth, etc; **tenth, tithe,** decima

VERBS **15** <divide by five, etc> quinquesect; decimalize

16 <multiply by five, etc> fivefold, sixfold, etc; quintuple, quintuplicate; sextuple, sextuplicate; centuple, centuplicate

ADJS **17** **fifth,** quinary; **fivefold, quintuple,** quintuplicate; quinquennial; quinquepartite, pentadic, quinquefid; quincuncial, pentastyle; pentad, pentavalent, quinquevalent; pentagonal

18 **sixth,** senary; **sixfold, sextuple;** sexpartite, hexadic, sextipartite, hexapartite; hexagonal, hexahedral, hexangular; hexad, hexavalent; sextuplex, hexastyle; sexennial; hexatonic

19 **seventh,** septimal; **sevenfold, septuple,** septenary; septempartite, heptadic, septemfid; heptagonal, heptahedral, heptangular; heptamerous; hebdomal

20 **eighth,** octonary; **eightfold, octuple;** octadic; octal, octofid, octaploid; octagonal, octahedral, octan, octangular; octosyllabic; octastyle

21 **ninth,** novenary, nonary; **ninefold, nonuple,** enneadic; enneahedral, enneastyle, nonagonal

22 **tenth,** denary, **decimal,** tithe; **tenfold, decuple;** decagonal, decahedral; decasyllabic; decennial

23 **eleventh,** undecennial, undecennary

24 **twelfth,** duodenary, duodenal; duodecimal

25 thirteenth, fourteenth, etc; eleventeenth, umpteenth <nf>; in one's teens

26 **twentieth,** vicenary, vicennial, vigesimal, vicesimal

27 **sixtieth,** sexagesimal, sexagenary

28 **seventieth,** septuagesimal, septuagenary

29 **hundredth,** centesimal, **centennial,** centenary, centurial; **hundredfold, centuple,** centuplicate; secular; centigrado

30 **thousandth,** millenary, **millennial; thousandfold**

31 millionth; billionth, quadrillionth, quintillionth, etc

WORD ELEMENTS **32** pent-, penta-, pen-, quinqu-, quinque-, quintquinti-; hex-, hexa-, sex-, sexi-, sexti-; hept-, hepta-, sept-, septi-; oct-, octa-, octo-; non-, nona-, ennea-; deca-, deka-, deci-; undec-, hendec-, hendeca-; dodec-, dodeca-; icos-, icosa-, icosi-, eicos-, eicosa-, cent-, centi-, hect-, hecto-, hecato-, hecaton; kilo-, milli-; meg-, mega-, micro-; giga-, nano-; pico-

883 PLURALITY

<more than one>

NOUNS **1** **plurality,** pluralness; a greater number, a certain number; **several,** some, a few 885.2, more; plural number, the plural; compositeness, nonsingleness, nonuniqueness; **pluralism** 782.1, variety; numerousness 884

2 **majority,** plurality, more than half, the greater number, the greatest number, **most,** preponderance *or* preponderancy, greater *or* better part, **bulk, mass;** lion's share

3 pluralization, plurification <old>

4 **multiplication,** multiplying, proliferation, **increase** 251; duplication 874; multiple, multiplier, multiplicand, product, factor; factorization, exponentiation; multiplication table; lowest *or* least common multiple, greatest common divisor, highest *or* greatest common factor; prime factor, submultiple, power, square, cube, fourth power, exponent, index, square root, cube root, surd, root mean square, factorial

VERBS **5** **pluralize,** plurify <old>; raise to *or* make more than one

6 **multiply,** proliferate, **increase** 251.4,6, duplicate 874.3

ADJS **7** **plural,** pluralized, more than one, more, several, severalfold; **some,** certain; not singular, composite, nonsingle, nonunique; plurative <logic>; **pluralistic** 782.3, various; many, beaucoup <nf>, numerous 884.6

8 **multiple,** multiplied, multifold, **manifold** 884.6; **increased** 251.7; multinomial *and* polynomial <mathematics>

9 **majority, most,** the greatest number

ADVS **10** **in the majority;** and others, et al, et cetera 253.14; plurally

WORD ELEMENTS **11** multi-; -fold

884 NUMEROUSNESS

NOUNS **1** **numerousness, multiplicity, manyness,** manifoldness, multifoldness, multitudinousness, multifariousness, teemingness, swarmingness, rifeness, profuseness, profusion; **plenty,** abundance 991.2; **countlessness,** innumerability, infinitude, infinity

2 <indefinite number> **a number,** a certain number, one or two, two or three, **a few, several,** parcel, passel <nf>; eleventeen *and* umpteen <nf>

3 <large number> **multitude, throng** 770.4; a many, numbers, quantities, lots 247.4, flocks, **scores,** scads; an abundance of, all kinds *or* sorts of, no end of, quite a few, tidy sum; muchness, any number of, **large amount; host, army,** more than one can shake a stick at, fistful *and* slew *and* shitload *and* shithouse full <nf>, legion, rout, ruck, mob, jam, clutter; **swarm, flock** 770.5, flight, cloud, hail, bevy, covey, shoal, hive, nest, pack, litter, bunch 769.7; a world of, a mass of, worlds of, masses of

4 <immense number> a **myriad,** a thousand, **a thousand and one,** *a lakh* <India>, *a crore* <India>, a million, a billion, a quadrillion, a nonillion, etc 881.13; umpteen, a zillion *or* jillion <nf>; googol, googolplex

VERBS 5 **teem with,** overflow with, **abound with,** burst with, bristle with, pullulate with, **swarm with,** throng with, creep with, **crawl with, be alive with, have coming out of one's ears** *and* **have up the gazoo** *and* **kazoo** <nf>; clutter, crowd, jam, pack, overwhelm, overflow; multiply 883.6; outnumber; overcrowd

ADJS 6 **numerous, many, manifold,** not a few, no few; **very many,** full many, **ever so many,** considerable *and* quite some <nf>, quite a few; **multitudinous,** multitudinal, multifarious, multifold, multiple, **myriad,** thousand, million, billion; zillion *and* jillion <nf>; heaped-up; numerous as the stars, numerous as the sands, numerous as the hairs on the head

7 **several,** divers, **sundry,** various; fivish, sixish, etc; some five or six, etc; upwards of

8 **abundant,** copious, ample, plenteous, **plentiful** 991.7, thick on the ground <Brit>

9 **teeming, swarming, crowding,** thronging, overflowing, overcrowded, overwhelming, bursting, **crawling, alive with,** lousy with <nf>, populous, prolific, proliferating, crowded, packed, jammed, bumper-to-bumper <nf>, jam-packed, like sardines in a can <nf>, thronged, studded, bristling, rife, lavish, prodigal, superabundant, **profuse,** in profusion, thick, **thick with,** thick-coming, thick as hail *or* flies

10 **innumerable, numberless,** unnumbered, countless, uncounted, **uncountable,** unreckonable, untold, incalculable, immeasurable, unmeasured, measureless, inexhaustible, endless, infinite, without end *or* limit, more than one can tell, more than you can shake a stick at <nf>, no end of *or* to; countless as the stars *or* sands; **astronomical,** galactic; millionfold, trillionfold, etc

11 **and many more,** *cum multis aliis* <L>, and what not, and heaven knows what

ADVS 12 **numerously,** multitudinously, **profusely,** swarmingly, teemingly, thickly, copiously, **abundantly, prodigally; innumerably,** countlessly, infinitely, incalculably, inexhaustibly, immeasurably; in throngs, in crowds, in swarms, in heaps, *acervatim* <L>; **no end** <nf>

WORD ELEMENTS 13 multi-, myri-, myrio-, pluri-, poly-

885 FEWNESS

NOUNS 1 **fewness,** infrequency, **sparsity,** sparseness, **scarcity, paucity, scantiness, meagerness,** miserliness, niggardliness, tightness, thinness, stringency, restrictedness; chintziness *and* chinchiness *and* stinginess <nf>, scrimpiness *and* skimpiness <nf>; **rarity,** exiguity; smallness 258.1; unsubstantiality *or* insubstantiality; skeleton staff

2 **a few,** too few, mere *or* piddling *or* piddly few, only a few, **small number,** limited *or* piddling *or* piddly number, not enough to count *or* matter, not enough to shake a stick at, **handful, scattering,** corporal's guard, sprinkling, trickle; low *or* poor turnout, too few to mention

3 **minority,** least; the minority, the few; minority group; "we happy few"—Shakespeare; minimum; less, least

ADJS 4 **few, not many;** hardly *or* scarcely any, precious little *or* few, of small number, to be counted on one's fingers, too few

5 **sparse,** scant, **scanty,** exiguous, **infrequent,** sporadic, scarce, scarce as hen's teeth <nf>, poor, piddling, piddly, thin, slim, **meager,** not much; miserly, niggardly, cheeseparing, tight; chintzy *and* chinchy *and* stingy <nf>, scrimpy *and* skimpy <nf>, skimping *and* scrimping <nf>; **scattered,** sprinkled, spotty, **few and far between; rare,** seldom met with, seldom seen, not thick on the ground <Brit>

6 **fewer, less,** smaller, not so much *or* many, reduced, minimal

7 **minority,** least

ADVS 8 **sparsely,** *sparsim* <L>, **scantily, meagerly,** exiguously, piddlingly; stingily *and* scrimpily *and* skimpily <nf>, thinly; **scarcely,** rarely, infrequently; **scatteringly,** scatteredly, spottily, in dribs and drabs *and* in bits and pieces <nf>, **here and there,** in places, in spots

886 CAUSE

NOUNS **1 cause, occasion,** antecedents, **grounds,** ground, background, stimulus, base, **basis,** element, principle, factor; **determinant,** determinative; causation, causality, cause and effect; etiology

2 reason, reason why, rationale, reason for *or* behind, underlying reason, rational ground, **explanation,** answer, **the why,** the wherefore, the whatfor *or* whyfor <nf>, **the why and wherefore,** the idea <nf>, the big idea <nf>; stated cause, pretext, pretense, excuse

3 immediate cause, proximate cause, trigger, spark; **domino effect,** causal sequence, chain *or* nexus of cause and effect, ripple effect, slippery slope, contagion effect, knock-on *or* knock-on effect <chiefly Brit>; transient cause, occasional cause; formal cause; efficient cause; ultimate cause, immanent cause, remote cause, causing cause, *causa causans* <L>, first cause; **final cause,** *causa finalis* <L>, **end,** end in view, teleology; provocation, **last straw,** straw that broke the camel's back, match in the powder barrel; butterfly effect *or* strange attraction *or* sensitive dependence on initial conditions; planetary influence, astrological influence

4 author, agent, **originator,** generator, begetter, engenderer, producer, maker, beginner, **creator,** mover, inventor; **parent, mother, father,** sire; **prime mover,** *primum mobile* <L>; causer, effector; inspirer, instigator, catalyst; motivator, inspiration

5 source, origin, genesis, original, origination, **derivation, rise, beginning,** conception, inception, commencement, **head;** provenance, provenience, background; **root,** radix, radical, taproot, grass roots; stem, stock

6 fountainhead, headwater, headstream, riverhead, springhead, headspring, **mainspring,** wellspring, wellhead, well, **spring, fountain,** fount, font, *fons et origo* <L>; mine, quarry

7 vital force *or* **principle,** *élan vital* <Fr>, reproductive urge, a gleam in one's father's eye <nf>; **egg,** ovum 305.12, **germ,** germen <old>, spermatozoon 305.11, nucleus 305.7, **seed; embryo** 305.14; bud 310.23; loins; **womb,** matrix, uterus

8 birthplace, breeding place, breeding ground, birthsite, rookery, hatchery; **hotbed,** forcing bed; incubator, brooder; **nest,** nidus; **cradle,** nursery

9 <a principle or movement> **cause, principle,** interest, issue, burning issue, commitment, faith, great cause, lifework; reason for being, *raison d'être* <Fr>; **movement,** mass movement, activity; **drive, campaign, crusade;** zeal, passion, fanaticism

VERBS **10 cause,** be the cause of, lie at the root of; **bring about, bring to pass,** effectuate, **effect,** bring to effect, realize; **impact,** impact on, influence; **occasion, make, create, engender,** generate, **produce,** breed, work, do; **originate,** give origin to, give occasion to, **give rise to,** spark, spark off, set off, trigger, trigger off; **give birth to, beget,** bear, bring forth, labor *or* travail and bring forth, author, **father,** sire, sow the seeds of; gestate, **conceive,** have the idea, have a bright idea <nf>; set up, set afloat, **set on foot;** found, establish, inaugurate, institute; engineer

11 induce, lead, procure, get, obtain, contrive, **effect,** bring, **bring on,** draw on, **call forth, elicit, evoke, provoke,** inspire, influence, instigate, egg on, **motivate;** draw down, open the door to; suborn; superinduce; incite, kindle

12 determine, decide, turn the scale, have the last word, tip the scale; **necessitate,** entail, require; contribute to, have a hand in, lead to, conduce to; **advance, forward,** influence, subserve; **spin off,** hive off <Brit>

ADJS **13 causal,** causative; chicken-and-egg <nf>; occasional; originative, institutive, constitutive; **at the bottom of,** behind the scenes; **formative,** determinative, effectual, decisive, pivotal; etiological

14 original, primary, primal, primitive, pristine, primo <nf>, primeval, aboriginal, **elementary,** elemental, **basic,** basal, **rudimentary,** crucial, central, radical, **fundamental;** embryonic, in embryo, *in ovo* <L>, germinal, seminal, pregnant; **generative,** genetic, protogenic; effectual

WORD ELEMENTS **15** uter-, utero-, metr-, metro-, -metrium, venter; etio-, aetio-, prot-, proto-; -facient, -factive, -fic, -ic, -ical, -etic

887 EFFECT

NOUNS **1 effect, result,** resultant, **consequence,** consequent, sequent, sequence, sequel, sequela, sequelae; event, eventuality, eventuation, **upshot, outcome,** logical outcome, possible outcome, scenario; **outgrowth,** spin-off, offshoot, offspring, issue, aftermath, legacy; side effect; **product** 893, precipitate, distillate, **fruit,** first fruits, crop, harvest, payoff; development, corollary; derivative, derivation, by-product; net result, end result

2 impact, force, **repercussion,** reaction; backwash, backlash, reflex, recoil, response; mark, print, imprint, impress, impression; significance, import, meaning

3 aftereffect, aftermath, aftergrowth, aftercrop, **afterclap,** aftershock, afterimage, afterglow, aftertaste; wake, trail, track; domino effect

VERBS **4 result, ensue, issue, follow,** attend, accompany; **turn out, come out,** fall out, redound,

work out, pan out <nf>, fare; have a happy result, turn out well, come up roses <nf>; turn out to be, prove, prove to be; **become of,** come of, come about; **develop,** unfold; **eventuate,** terminate, end; **end up,** land up <Brit>, come out, wind up

5 **result from,** be the effect of, be due to, originate in *or* from, **come from,** come out of, grow from, **grow out of,** follow from *or* on, proceed from, descend from, emerge from, issue from, ensue from, emanate from, flow from, **derive from,** accrue from, rise *or* arise from, take its rise from, **spring from, stem from,** sprout from, bud from, germinate from; **spin off; depend on,** hinge *or* pivot *or* turn on, hang on, be contingent on; pay off, bear fruit

ADJS 6 **resultant, resulting, following, ensuing; consequent,** consequential, following, sequent, sequential, sequacious; necessitated, entailed, required; **final;** derivative, derivational

ADVS 7 **consequently, as** a **result,** as a consequence, in consequence, in the event, naturally, *naturellement* <Fr>, necessarily, of necessity, inevitably, of course, as a matter of course, and so, it follows that; **therefore; accordingly** 766.11; **finally**

CONJS 8 **resulting from,** coming from, arising from, deriving *or* derivable from, consequent to, in consequence of; **owing to, due to;** attributed *or* attributable to, dependent *or* contingent on; **caused by,** occasioned by, at **the bottom of;** required by, entailed by, following from, following strictly from

PHRS 9 one thing leads to another, *post hoc, ergo propter hoc* <L>, what goes up must come down <nf>, what goes around comes around <nf>

888 ATTRIBUTION

<assignment of cause>

NOUNS 1 **attribution, assignment,** assignation, **ascription, imputation,** arrogation, placement, application, attachment, saddling, **charge, blame; indictment; responsibility,** answerability; **credit,** honor; accounting for, reference to, derivation from, connection with; etiology

2 **acknowledgment,** citation, tribute; confession; **reference;** trademark, signature; **by-line,** credit line

VERBS 3 **attribute, assign, ascribe, impute,** give, place, put, apply, attach, refer

4 **attribute to, ascribe to, impute to,** assign to, **lay to,** put *or* set down to, apply to, refer to, point to; **pin on,** pinpoint <nf>, fix on *or* upon, attach to, acrete to, connect with, fasten upon, hang on <nf>, **saddle on** *or* **upon,** place upon, **father upon,** settle upon, saddle with; blame, **blame for,** blame on *or* upon, charge on *or* upon, place *or* put the blame on, place the blame *or* responsibility for, indict, **fix the responsibility for,** point to one, put the finger on *and* finger <nf>, fix the burden of, **charge to,** lay to one's charge, place to one's account, set to the account of, account for, lay at the door of, bring home to; acknowledge, confess; **credit** *or* **accredit with;** put words in one's mouth

5 **trace to,** follow the trail to; **derive from,** trace the origin *or* derivation of; affiliate to, filiate to, father, fix the paternity of

ADJS 6 **attributable, assignable, ascribable, imputable,** traceable, referable, accountable, explicable; owing, **due,** assigned *or* referred to, derivable from, derivative, derivational; **charged,** alleged, imputed, putative; **credited, attributed**

ADVS 7 **hence, therefore,** therefor, **wherefore,** wherefrom, whence, then, thence, *ergo* <L>, for which reason; **consequently** 886.7; **accordingly** 766.11; **because of that,** for that, by reason of that, for that reason, for the reason that, in consideration of something, from *or* for that cause, **on that account,** on that ground, thereat; **because of this, on this account,** for this cause, on account of this, *propter hoc* <L>, for this reason, hereat; thus, thusly <nf>, thuswise; on someone's head, on *or* at someone's doorstep

8 **why,** whyever, whyfor *and* for why <nf>, how come <nf>, how is it that, **wherefore, what for,** for which, **on what account,** on account of what *or* which, for what *or* whatever reason, from what cause, *pourquoi* <Fr>

PREPS 9 **because of,** by reason of, **as** a **result of,** by *or* in virtue of, **on account of,** on the score of, for the sake of, **owing to, due to,** thanks to; **considering,** in consideration of, **in view of;** after

CONJS 10 **because,** *parce que* <Fr>, **since,** as, for, **whereas, inasmuch as, forasmuch as, insofar as, insomuch as,** as things go; in that, for the cause that, for the reason that, in view of the fact that, taking into account that, **seeing that,** seeing as how <nf>, being as how <nf>; **resulting from** 887.8

889 OPERATION

NOUNS 1 **operation, functioning, action, performance,** performing, **working, work,** workings, exercise, practice; agency; implementation; operations; **management** 573, **direction, conduct, running, carrying-on** *or* **-out,** execution, seeing to, overseeing, oversight; **handling,** manipulation; responsibility 641.2; **occupation** 724; joint operation

2 **process, procedure,** proceeding, course; what

makes it tick; **act,** step, measure, initiative, *démarche* <Fr>, move, maneuver, motion

3 **workability, operability,** operativeness, performability, negotiability <nf>, manageability, compassability, manipulatability, maneuverability; **practicability, feasibility,** viability

4 **operator,** operative, operant; **handler,** manipulator; **manager** 574.1, **executive** 574.3; functionary, agent; driver

VERBS 5 **operate, function, run, work; manage, direct** 573.8, **conduct; carry on** *or* **out** *or* **through,** make go *or* work, carry the ball <nf>, perform; **handle,** manipulate, maneuver; deal with, see to, take care of; occupy oneself with 724.10; be responsible for 641.6

6 operate on, **act on** *or* **upon, work on, affect, influence,** bear on, impact, impact on; have to do with, treat, focus *or* concentrate on; bring to bear on

7 <be operative> **operate, function, work, act, perform, go, run,** be in action *or* operation *or* commission; percolate *and* perk *and* tick <nf>; be effective, go into effect, have effect, take effect, militate; be in force; have play, have free play

8 **function as,** work as, **act as,** act *or* play the part of, have the function *or* role *or* job *or* mission of; do one's thing <nf>

ADJS 9 **operative, operational,** go <nf>, **functional, practical,** in working order; **effective,** effectual, efficient, efficacious; relevant, significant

10 **workable, operable,** operatable, **performable,** actable, **doable,** manageable, compassable, negotiable, manipulatable, maneuverable; **practicable, feasible,** practical, viable, useful

11 **operating, operational, working, functioning,** operant, functional, acting, active, running, **going,** going on, ongoing; **in operation,** in action, **in practice, in force,** in play, in exercise, at work, on foot; **in process,** in the works, on the fire, in the pipe *or* pipeline <nf>, in hand, up and going

12 operational, functional; **managerial** 573.12; agential, agentive *or* agentival; manipulational

WORD ELEMENTS 13 -age, -al, -ance, -ence, -ation, -ing, -ion, -ism, -ization, -isation, -ment, -osis, -sis, -th, -ure

890 PRODUCTIVENESS

NOUNS 1 **productiveness, productivity,** productive capacity; **fruitfulness,** fructification, procreativeness, progenitiveness, **fertility,** fecundity, fecundation, prolificness, prolificity, prolificacy; **pregnancy; luxuriance, exuberance,** generousness, bountifulness, plentifulness, plenteousness, richness, lushness, **abundance** 991.2, superabundance, copiousness, teemingness, swarmingness; teeming womb *or* loins

2 proliferation, multiplication, fructification, pullulation, teeming; **reproduction** 78, **production** 891

3 **fertilization, enrichment,** fecundation; propagation, pollination; insemination; impregnation 78.4

4 **fertilizer,** dressing, top dressing, enricher, richener, procreator, propagator; organic fertilizer, manure, muck, mulch, night soil, dung, guano, compost, leaf litter, leaf mold, humus, peat moss, castor-bean meal, bone meal, fish meal; commercial fertilizer, inorganic fertilizer, chemical fertilizer, phosphate, superphosphate, ammonia, nitrogen, nitrate, potash, ammonium salts, sulfate, lime, marl

5 <goddesses of fertility> Demeter, Ceres, Isis, Astarte *or* Ashtoreth, Venus of Willenburg; <gods> Frey, Priapus, Dionysus, Pan, Baal; fertility cult

6 <comparisons> rabbit, Hydra, warren, seed plot, hotbed, rich soil, land flowing with milk and honey

VERBS 7 **produce, be productive, proliferate,** pullulate, fructify, be fruitful, **multiply,** procreate, propagate, generate, multiply, mushroom, spin off, hive off <Brit>, engender, beget, teem; **reproduce** 78.7,8

8 **fertilize, enrich,** make fertile, richen, fatten, feed; fructify, fecundate, fecundify, prolificate; inseminate, impregnate 78.10; pollinate, germinate, seed; cross-fertilize, cross-pollinate; dress, top-dress; manure, compost, feed, mulch, marl

ADJS 9 **productive, fruitful,** fructiferous, fecund; **fertile, pregnant,** seminal, **rich,** flourishing, thriving, blooming; **prolific,** proliferous, uberous, **teeming,** swarming, bursting, bursting out, plenteous, **plentiful,** copious, generous, bountiful, **abundant** 991.7, **luxuriant, exuberant, lush,** superabundant; creative

10 **bearing, yielding, producing;** fruitbearing, fructiferous

11 **fertilizing, enriching,** richening, fattening, fecundatory, fructificative, **seminal,** germinal

891 UNPRODUCTIVENESS

NOUNS 1 **unproductiveness,** unproductivity, ineffectualness 19.3; **unfruitfulness,** fruitlessness, **barrenness,** nonfruition, dryness, aridity, dearth, famine; sterileness, **sterility,** unfertileness, **infertility,** infecundity; wasted *or* withered loins, dry womb; **birth control, contraception,** family planning, planned parenthood; abortion; impotence 19, incapacity

2 **wasteland, waste,** desolation, barren *or* **barrens,** barren land, "An old man in a dry season"— T S Eliot; heath; **desert,** Sahara, "a barren waste, a wild of sand"—Addison, sands, desert sands, karroo <Africa>, badlands, dust bowl, salt flat, Death Valley, Arabia Deserta, lunar waste *or* landscape; desert island; wilderness, howling **wilderness,** wild, wilds; treeless plain; bush, brush, outback <Austral>; fallowness, aridness; desertification, desertization

VERBS 3 be unproductive, **come to nothing,** come to naught, prove infertile, hang fire <nf>, flash in the pan, fizzle *or* peter out <nf>; **lie fallow;** stagnate, run to seed

ADJS 4 **unproductive,** nonproductive *or* nonproducing; **infertile, sterile,** unfertile *or* nonfertile, **unfruitful,** unfructuous, acarpous <botany>, infecund, unprolific *or* nonprolific; **impotent,** gelded 19.19; **ineffectual** 19.15; **barren, desert, arid,** dry, dried-up, sere, exhausted, drained, leached, sucked dry, wasted, gaunt, **waste, desolate,** jejune; **childless,** issueless, without issue, *sine prole* <L>; fallow, unplowed, unsown, untilled, uncultivated, unfecundated; celibate; virgin; menopausal

5 **uncreative,** noncreative, nonseminal, nongerminal, unfructified, unpregnant; uninventive, unoriginal, derivative

892 PRODUCTION

NOUNS 1 **production, creation, making, origination, invention, conception,** innovation, originating, engenderment, engendering, genesis, beginning; **devising,** hatching, fabrication, **concoction,** coinage, mintage, **contriving,** contrivance; **authorship;** creative effort, **generation** 78.6; improvisation, making do; **gross national product** *or* GNP, net national product *or* NNP, national production of goods and services

2 **production, manufacture** *or* **manufacturing, making, producing,** devising, design, fashioning, framing, forming, formation, formulation; engineering, tooling-up; processing, conversion; casting, **shaping,** molding; machining, milling, finishing; **assembly,** composition, elaboration; **workmanship, craftsmanship,** skill 413; **construction, building,** erection, architecture; **fabrication,** prefabrication; handiwork, handwork, handicraft, crafting; **mining,** extraction, smelting, **refining; growing,** cultivation, **raising,** harvesting

3 **industrial production, industry, mass production,** volume production, **assembly-line production;** production line, assembly line; modular production *or* assembly, standardization; division of labor, industrialization; **cottage industry;** piecework, farmed-out work

4 **establishment, foundation,** constitution, institution, installation, formation, **organization,** inauguration, **inception, setting-up,** realization, materialization, effectuation; spinning-off, hiving-off <Brit>

5 **performance, execution, doing, accomplishment, achievement,** productive effort *or* effect, realization, bringing to fruition, fructification, effectuation, operation 888; overproduction, glut; underproduction, scarcity; **productiveness** 890, fructuousness

6 **bearing, yielding, birthing; fruition,** fruiting, fructification

7 **producer, maker,** craftsman, wright, smith; **manufacturer,** industrialist; **creator,** begetter, engenderer, **author,** mother, **father,** sire; **ancestors** 560.7; **precursor** 816; **originator,** initiator, establisher, inaugurator, introducer, institutor, beginner, mover, prime mover, motive force, instigator; **founder,** organizer, founding father, founding *or* founder member, founding partner, cofounder; **inventor,** discoverer, deviser; developer; engineer; **builder,** constructor, artificer, **architect,** planner, **conceiver,** designer, **shaper,** master *or* leading spirit; executor, executrix; facilitator, animator; **grower,** raiser, cultivator; effector, realizer; **apprentice, journeyman, master,** master craftsman *or* workman, artist, past master

VERBS 8 **produce, create, make, manufacture, form,** formulate, evolve, mature, elaborate, fashion, **fabricate,** prefabricate, cast, shape, configure, carve out, mold, extrude, frame; **construct, build,** erect, put up, set up, run up, raise, rear; make up, get up, prepare, compose, write, indite, devise, design, concoct, compound, churn out *and* crank out *and* pound out *and* hammer out *and* grind out *and* rustle up *and* gin up <nf>; **put together, assemble,** piece together, patch together, whomp up *and* fudge together *and* slap up *or* together <nf>, improvise 365.8; **make to order,** custom-make, custom-build, purpose-build <Brit>

9 **process,** convert 858.11; mill, machine; carve, chisel; **mine,** extract, pump, smelt, **refine; raise,** rear, **grow,** cultivate, harvest

10 **establish, found,** constitute, institute, install, form, **set up, organize,** equip, endow, inaugurate, realize, materialize, effect, effectuate

11 **perform, do,** work, act, execute, **accomplish, achieve** 407.4, **deliver,** come through with, realize, engineer, effectuate, **bring about,** bring to fruition *or* into being, cause; mass-produce, volume-produce, industrialize; overproduce; underproduce; **be productive** 890.7

12 **originate, invent, conceive,** discover, **make up, devise, contrive,** concoct, fabricate, coin, mint, frame, hatch, hatch *or* cook up, strike out; improvise, make do with; think up, think out, dream up, **design,** plan, formulate, set one's wits to work; **generate, develop,** mature, **evolve;** breed, engender, beget, spawn, hatch; bring forth, give rise to, give being to, bring *or* call into being; procreate 78.8

13 **bear, yield, produce,** furnish; **bring forth,** usher into the world; fruit, **bear fruit,** fructify; spawn

ADJS 14 **productional, creational,** formational; executional; **manufacturing,** manufactural, fabricational, **industrial,** smokestack

15 **constructional, structural,** building, housing, edificial; **architectural,** architectonic

16 **creative, originative,** causative, **productive** 890.9, **constructive,** formative, fabricative, demiurgic; inventive; generative 78.16

17 **produced, made, caused, brought about;** effectuated, executed, performed, done; grown, raised

18 **made,** man-made; **manufactured,** created, crafted, formed, shaped, molded, cast, forged, machined, milled, fashioned, **built, constructed,** fabricated; **mass-produced,** volume-produced, assembly-line; **well-made,** well-built, well-constructed; **homemade,** homespun, **handmade,** handcrafted, handicrafted, self-made, DIY *or* do it yourself; machine-made; **processed; assembled,** put together; **custom-made,** custom-built, purpose-built <Brit>, custom, made to order, bespoke; **ready-made,** ready-formed, ready-prepared, ready-to-wear, ready-for-wear, off-the-shelf, off-the-rack; prefabricated, prefab <nf>; **mined,** extracted, smelted, **refined; grown, raised,** harvested, gathered

19 **invented,** originated, **conceived,** discovered, newfound; fabricated, coined, minted, new-minted; **made-up,** made out of whole cloth

20 **manufacturable, producible,** productible

ADVS 21 **in production;** in the works, in hand, on foot; under construction; in the pipeline; on-line

893 PRODUCT

NOUNS 1 **product,** end product, production, manufacture; **work,** *œuvre* <Fr>, **handiwork, artifact; creation;** creature; **offspring,** child, fruit, fruit of one's loins; **result,** effect 887, issue, outgrowth, outcome; **invention,** origination, coinage, mintage *or* new mintage, brainchild; **concoction,** composition; opus, opuscule; apprentice work; journeyman work; **masterwork, masterpiece,** *chef d'œuvre* <Fr>, *Meisterstück* <Ger>, work of an artist *or* a master *or* a past master, crowning achievement; gross national product 892.1

2 **production,** produce, proceeds, net, **yield, output,** throughput; **crop,** harvest, take <nf>, return, bang <nf>

3 **extract, distillation,** essence; **by-product,** secondary *or* incidental product, spin-off, outgrowth, offshoot; **residue,** leavings, waste, waste product, industrial waste, solid waste, lees, dregs, ash, slag

4 <amount made> make, making; batch, lot, run, boiling

894 INFLUENCE

NOUNS 1 **influence,** influentiality; **power** 18, force, clout <nf>, potency, pressure, effect, indirect *or* incidental power, **say,** the final say, the last word, say-so *and* a lot to do with *or* to say about <nf>, veto power; **prestige,** favor, good feeling, credit, esteem, repute, personality, leadership, charisma, magnetism, charm, enchantment; **weight,** moment, consequence, importance, eminence; **authority** 417, control, domination, hold; **sway** 612.1, reign, rule; **mastery,** ascendancy, supremacy, dominance, predominance, preponderance; upper hand, whip hand, trump card; leverage, purchase; **persuasion** 375.3, suasion, suggestion, subtle influence, insinuation

2 **favor,** special favor, **interest; pull** *and* drag *and* suction <nf>; **connections,** the right people, inside track <nf>; amicus curiae

3 **backstairs influence,** intrigues, deals, schemes, **games,** Machiavellian *or* Byzantine intrigues, ploys; **wires** *and* **strings** *and* ropes <nf>; **wire-pulling** <nf>; **influence peddling;** lobbying, lobbyism; Big Brother

4 **sphere of influence,** orbit, ambit; bailiwick, vantage, stamping ground, footing, **territory,** turf, home turf, constituency, **power base,** niche

5 **influenceability,** swayableness, movability; **persuadability,** persuadableness, persuasibility, suasibility, openness, open-mindedness, get-at-ableness <Brit nf>, perviousness, accessibility, receptiveness, responsiveness, amenableness; **suggestibility, susceptibility,** impressionability, malleability; weakness 16; putty in one's hands

6 <influential person or thing> **influence,** good influence; bad influence, sinister influence; **person** *or* **woman** *or* **man of influence,** an influential, an affluential, a presence, a palpable presence, a mover and shaker <nf>, a person to be reckoned with, a player *or* player on the scene; heavyweight, big wheel *and* biggie *and* heavy *or* long-ball hitter

and piledriver <nf>, very important person *or* VIP <nf>, big shot *or* bigwig *or* big cheese <nf>; wheeler-dealer <nf>, influencer, **wire-puller** <nf>; **powerbroker; power behind the throne,** gray eminence, *éminence grise* <Fr>, hidden hand, manipulator, friend at *or* in court, kingmaker; **influence peddler,** five-percenter, lobbyist; Svengali, Rasputin; **pressure group,** special-interest group, special interests, single-issue group, PAC *or* political action committee; lobby; the Establishment, ingroup, court, powers that be 575.15, superpower, lords of creation; **key,** key to the city, access, open sesame

VERBS 7 **influence,** make oneself felt, **affect,** weigh with, **sway,** bias, bend, incline, dispose, predispose, **move,** prompt, lead; color, tinge, tone, slant, impart spin; **induce,** persuade 375.23, jawbone *and* twist one's arm *and* hold one's feet to the fire <nf>, work, work *or* bend to one's will; lead by the nose <nf>, wear down, soften up; win friends and influence people, ingratiate oneself

8 <exercise influence over> **govern** 612.12, **rule, control** 612.13, order, **regulate,** direct, guide; **determine,** decide, dispose; have the say *or* say-so, have veto power over, have the last word, call the shots *and* be in the driver's seat *and* wear the pants <nf>; charismatize

9 **exercise** *or* **exert influence, use one's influence, bring pressure to bear upon,** lean on <nf>, act on, **work on,** bear upon, throw one's weight around *or* into the scale, say a few words to the right person *or* in the right quarter; charismatize; draw, draw on, lead on, magnetize; **approach,** go up to with hat in hand, make advances *or* overtures, make up to *or* get cozy with <nf>; get at *or* get the ear of <nf>; **pull strings** *or* **wires** *or* **ropes,** wire-pull <nf>; lobby, lobby through; wheel and deal <nf>

10 **have influence, be influential, carry weight, weigh, tell, count,** cut ice, throw a lot of weight <nf>, have a lot to do with *or* say about <nf>; be the decisive factor *or* the one that counts, have pull *or* suction *or* drag *or* leverage <nf>; have a way with one, have personality *or* magnetism *or* charisma, charm the birds out of the trees, charm the pants off one <nf>, be persuasive; have an in <nf>, have the inside track <nf>; have full play; have friends in high places

11 have influence *or* power *or* a hold over, have pull *or* clout with <nf>; **lead by the nose, twist** *or* **turn** *or* **wind around one's little finger,** have in one's pocket, keep under one's thumb, make sit up and beg *or* lie down and roll over; hypnotize, mesmerize, **dominate** 612.15

12 gain influence, **get in with** <nf>, ingratiate oneself with, get cozy with <nf>; make peace, **mend fences;** gain a footing, take hold, move in, take root, strike root in, make a dent in; gain a hearing, make one's voice heard, make one sit up and take notice, be listened to, be recognized; get the mastery *or* control of, get the inside track <nf>, gain a hold upon; change the preponderance, turn the scale *or* balance, turn the tables

ADJS 13 **influential, powerful** 18.12, affluential, potent, strong, to be reckoned with; **effective,** effectual, efficacious, telling; **weighty,** momentous, important, consequential, substantial, earth-shattering, **prestigious,** estimable, authoritative, reputable; **persuasive,** suasive, personable, **winning,** magnetic, charming, enchanting, charismatic

14 <in a position of influence> **well-connected,** favorably situated, near the seat of power; **dominant** 612.18, **predominant,** preponderant, prepotent, prepollent, regnant, ruling, swaying, prevailing, prevalent, on the throne, in the driver's seat <nf>; **ascendant,** in the ascendant, in ascendancy

15 **influenceable, swayable, movable; persuadable,** persuasible, suasible, open, open-minded, pervious, accessible, receptive, responsive, amenable; **under one's thumb,** in one's pocket, on one's payroll; coercible, bribable, compellable, vulnerable; **plastic, pliant,** pliable, malleable; **suggestible, susceptible, impressionable,** weak 16.12

895 ABSENCE OF INFLUENCE

NOUNS 1 **lack of influence** *or* **power** *or* **force,** uninfluentiality, **unauthoritativeness,** powerlessness, forcelessness, impotence 19, impotency; **ineffectiveness,** inefficaciousness, inefficacy, ineffectuality; **no say,** no say-so, nothing to do with *or* say about <nf>; unpersuasiveness, lack of personality *or* charm, lack of magnetism *or* charisma; **weakness** 16, wimpiness *or* wimpishness <nf>

2 **uninfluenceability,** unswayableness, unmovability; **unpersuadability,** impersuadability, impersuasibility, unreceptiveness, imperviousness, unresponsiveness; unsuggestibility, **unsusceptibility,** unimpressionability; invulnerability; **obstinacy** 361

ADJS 3 **uninfluential, powerless,** forceless, impotent 19.13; **weak** 16.12, wimpy *or* wimpish <nf>; unauthoritative; **ineffective,** ineffectual, inefficacious; **of no account,** no-account, without any weight, featherweight, lightweight

4 **uninfluenceable, unswayable, unmovable;** unpliable, unyielding, inflexible; **unpersuadable**

361.13, impersuadable, impersuasible, unreceptive, unresponsive, unamenable; impervious, closed to; **unsuggestible, unsusceptible,** unimpressionable; invulnerable; **obstinate** 361.8

5 **uninfluenced, unmoved, unaffected, unswayed**

896 TENDENCY

NOUNS 1 **tendency, inclination, leaning,** penchant, proneness, conatus, weakness, susceptibility; liability 897, readiness, willingness, eagerness, aptness, aptitude, **disposition, proclivity, propensity,** predisposition, **predilection,** a thing for <nf>, affinity, prejudice, **liking,** delight, soft spot, penchant; **yen,** lech <nf>, hunger, thirst; instinct *or* feeling for, sensitivity to; **bent, turn, bias,** slant, tilt, spin <nf>, cast, warp, twist; probability 968; diathesis <medicine>, tropism <biology>

2 **trend, drift, course, current,** *Tendenz* <Ger>, flow, stream, mainstream, main current, movement, glacial movement, motion, run, **tenor,** tone, **set,** set of the current, swing, bearing, line, direction, the general tendency *or* drift, the main course, the course of events, the way the wind blows, **the way things go,** sign of the times, spirit of the age *or* time, time spirit, *Zeitgeist* <Ger>; climate; the way it looks

VERBS 3 **tend,** have a tendency, **incline,** be disposed, **lean, trend,** have a penchant, set, **go,** head, lead, point, verge, turn, warp, tilt, bias, bend to, work *or* gravitate *or* set toward; show a tendency *or* trend *or* set *or* direction, swing toward, point to, look to; **conduce,** contribute, serve, redound to; bode well

ADJS 4 **tending;** tendentious *or* tendential; **leaning, inclining,** inclinatory, inclinational; **mainstream,** main-current, mainline

PREPS 5 **tending to, conducive to,** leading to, inclined toward, inclining toward, heading *or* moving *or* swinging *or* working toward, pointing to

6 **inclined to, leaning to, prone to, disposed to,** drawn to, predisposed to, given to; **apt to, likely to, liable to** 897.6, calculated to, minded to, ready to, in a fair way to

897 LIABILITY

NOUNS 1 **liability, likelihood** *or* **likeliness;** probability 968, contingency, chance 972, eventuality 831.1; weakness, **proneness** 896.1; **possibility** 965; **responsibility** 641.2, legal responsibility; **indebtedness** 623.1, financial commitment, pecuniary obligation

2 **susceptibility, liability,** susceptivity, liableness, **openness, exposure; vulnerability** 1006.4

VERBS 3 **be liable; be subjected** *or* **subjected to,** be a pawn *or* plaything of, be the prey of, lie under; **expose oneself to, lay** *or* **leave oneself open to,** open the door to; **gamble,** stand to lose *or* gain, stand a chance, **run the chance** *or* **risk,** let down one's guard *or* defenses; **admit of,** open the possibility of, be in the way of, bid *or* stand fair to; **owe,** be in debt *or* indebted for

4 **incur, contract, invite,** welcome, run, **bring on, bring down,** bring upon *or* down upon, bring upon *or* down upon oneself; **be responsible for** 641.6; fall into, fall in with; get, gain, acquire

ADJS 5 **liable, likely, prone; probable; responsible,** legally responsible, answerable; **in debt, indebted,** financially burdened, heavily committed, overextended; **exposed, susceptible, at risk,** overexposed, open, like a sitting duck, **vulnerable**

6 **liable to, subject to,** standing to, in a position to, incident to, dependent on; **susceptible** *or* **prone to,** susceptive to, **open** *or* vulnerable *or* **exposed to,** naked to, in danger of, within range of, at the mercy of; **capable of,** ready for; **likely to,** apt to 896.6; obliged to, responsible *or* answerable for

CONJS 7 **lest,** that, **for fear that**

898 INVOLVEMENT

NOUNS 1 **involvement,** involution, **implication, entanglement,** enmeshment, engagement, involuntary presence *or* cooperation, embarrassment; relation 775; **inclusion** 772; **absorption** 983.3

VERBS 2 **involve, implicate,** tangle, **entangle,** embarrass, enmesh, engage, **draw in,** drag *or* hook *or* suck into, catch up in, **make a party to;** interest, concern; **absorb** 983.13

3 **be involved, be into** <nf>, partake, participate, take an interest, interest oneself, have a role *or* part

ADJS 4 **involved, implicated;** interested, concerned, a party to; **included** 772.5

5 **involved in, implicated in,** tangled *or* entangled in, enmeshed in, **caught up in,** tied up in, wrapped up in, all wound up in, dragged *or* hooked *or* sucked into; in deep, deeply involved, **up to one's neck** *or* **ears in,** up to one's elbows *or* ass in, head over heels in, **absorbed in** 983.17, immersed *or* submerged in, far-gone

899 CONCURRENCE

NOUNS 1 **concurrence, collaboration,** coaction, **co-working,** collectivity, combined effort *or* operation, united *or* concerted action, concert, synergy; **cooperation** 450; **agreement** 788; me-tooism; **coincidence,** simultaneity 835, synchronism;

concomitance, accompaniment 769; **union,** junction 800.1, **conjunction,** combination 805, association, alliance, consociation; conspiracy, collusion, cahoots <nf>; concourse, confluence; **accordance** 455.1, concordance, correspondence, consilience; symbiosis, parasitism; saprophytism

VERBS 2 **concur, collaborate,** coact, **co-work,** synergize; **cooperate** 450.3; conspire, collude, connive, be in cahoots <nf>; **combine** 805.3, **unite, associate** 805.4, coadunate, join, conjoin; harmonize; **coincide,** synchronize, happen together; **accord** 455.2, correspond, **agree** 788.6

3 go with, **go along with, go hand in hand with,** be hand in glove with, team *or* join up with, buddy up with <nf>; keep pace with, run parallel to

ADJS 4 **concurrent,** concurring; **coacting,** coactive, **collaborative,** collective, **co-working,** cooperant, synergetic *or* synergic *or* synergistic; **cooperative** 450.5; conspiratorial, collusive; **united, joint,** conjoint, **combined, concerted,** associated, associate, coadunate; **coincident,** synchronous, synchronic, in sync, coordinate; concomitant, accompanying 769.9; meeting, uniting, combining; **accordant, agreeing** 788.9, concordant, harmonious, consilient, at one with; symbiotic, parasitic, saprophytic

ADVS 5 **concurrently,** coactively, **jointly, conjointly, concertedly,** in concert, in harmony *or* unison with, synchronously, **together; with one accord,** with one voice, as one, as one man; hand in hand, hand in glove, shoulder to shoulder, cheek by jowl

900 COUNTERACTION

NOUNS 1 **counteraction, counterworking;** opposition 451, opposure, counterposition *or* contraposition, confutation, **contradiction; antagonism,** repugnance, oppugnance *or* oppugnancy, **antipathy, conflict, friction,** interference, clashing, collision; reaction, repercussion, **backlash, recoil,** kick, backfire, boomerang effect; resistance, recalcitrance, dissent 333, revolt 327.4, perverseness, nonconformity 868, crankiness, crotchetiness, orneriness <nf>, renitency; going against the current *or* against the tide, swimming upstream; **contrariety** 779

2 **neutralization, nullification, annulment,** cancellation, voiding, invalidation, vitiation, frustration, thwarting, undoing; **offsetting,** counterbalancing, countervailing, balancing; negation

3 **counteractant,** counteractive, **counteragent;** counterirritant; **antidote,** remedy, preventive *or* preventative, prophylactic, contraceptive; **neutralizer,** nullifier, offset; antacid, buffer

4 **counterforce,** countervailing force, counterinfluence, counterpressure; counterpoise, counterbalance, counterweight; countercurrent, crosscurrent, undercurrent; counterblast; headwind, foul wind, crosswind; friction, drag

5 **countermeasure, counterattack,** counterstep; **counterblow** *or* counterstroke *or* countercoup *or* counterblast, counterfire; counterrevolution, counterinsurgency; counterterrorism; counterculture; **retort,** comeback <nf>; defense 460

VERBS 6 **counteract,** counter, counterwork, counterattack, countervail; counterpose *or* contrapose, **oppose,** antagonize, **go in opposition to, go** *or* **run counter to, go** *or* **work against,** go clean counter to, go *or* fly in the face of, run against, beat against, militate against; **resist,** fight back, bite back, lift a hand against, defend oneself; **dissent,** dissent from; **cross,** confute, **contradict,** contravene, oppugn, **conflict,** be antipathetic *or* hostile *or* inimical, interfere *or* conflict with, come in conflict with, **clash,** collide, meet head-on, lock horns; rub *or* go against the grain; swim upstream *or* against the tide *or* against the current; boomerang

7 **neutralize, nullify, annul, cancel,** cancel out, negate, negative, negativate, invalidate, vitiate, void, frustrate, stultify, thwart, come *or* bring to nothing, undo; **offset,** counterbalance 338.5; buffer

ADJS 8 counteractive *or* counteractant, **counteracting, counterworking, counterproductive,** countervailing; **opposing,** oppositional; contradicting, contradictory; **antagonistic,** hostile, antipathetic, inimical, oppugnant, repugnant, **conflicting, clashing;** reactionary; resistant, recalcitrant, dissentient, dissident, revolutionary, breakaway, nonconformist, perverse, cranky, crotchety, ornery <nf>, renitent

9 **neutralizing, nullifying,** stultifying, annulling, canceling, negating, invalidating, vitiating, voiding; **balanced,** counterbalanced, poised, in poise, offset, **zero-sum; offsetting,** counterbalancing, countervailing; antacid, buffering; antidotal

ADVS 10 counteractively, antagonistically, opposingly, **in opposition to, counter to**

WORD ELEMENTS 11 ant-, anti-, anth-, contra-, counter-

901 SUPPORT

NOUNS 1 **support, backing, aid** 449; upholding, upkeep, carrying, carriage, maintenance, **sustaining,** sustainment, sustenance, sustentation; **reinforcement,** backup; subsidy, subvention;

support services, infrastructure; moral support; emotional *or* psychological support, security blanket <nf>; reassurance; **power base, constituency, party;** supportive relationship, supportive therapy; strokes <nf>; **approval** 509; **assent,** concurrence 332; **reliance** 953.1; life-support, life-sustainment

2 **supporter, support; upholder,** bearer, carrier, sustainer, maintainer; staff 273.2, stave, cane, stick, walking stick, alpenstock, crook, crutch; **advocate** 616.9; **stay, prop,** fulcrum, **bracket, brace,** bracer, guy, guywire *or* guyline, shroud, rigging, standing rigging; bulwark, anchor; buttress, shoulder, arm, good right arm; mast, sprit, yard, yardarm; **mainstay,** backbone, spine, neck, cervix; athletic supporter, jock *and* jockstrap <nf>, G-string <nf>; brassiere, bra <nf>, bandeau, corset, girdle, foundation garment; **reinforcement,** reinforce, reinforcing, reinforcer, strengthener, stiffener; back, backing; rest, resting place

3 <mythology> Atlas, Hercules, Telamon, the tortoise that supports the earth

4 **buttress,** buttressing; abutment, shoulder; **bulwark,** rampart; **embankment,** bank, retaining wall, bulkhead, bulkheading, plank buttress, piling; **breakwater,** seawall, mole, **jetty,** jutty, groin; **pier,** pier buttress, buttress pier; flying buttress, *arc-boutant* <Fr>, arch buttress; hanging buttress; **beam**

5 **footing, foothold, toehold,** hold, perch, **purchase** 906; **standing,** stand, stance, standing place, pou sto, *point d'appui* <Fr>, *locus standi* <L>; footrest, footplate, footrail

6 **foundation,** *fond* <Fr>, firm foundation, **base, basis, footing,** basement, pavement, **ground,** grounds, **groundwork, seat,** sill, floor *or* flooring, fundament; bed, bedding; **substructure,** substruction, substratum; infrastructure; **understructure,** understruction, underbuilding, undergirding, undercarriage, underpinning, bearing wall; stereobate, stylobate; firm *or* solid ground, *terra firma* <L>; solid rock *or* bottom, rock bottom, bedrock; hardpan; riprap; **fundamental** 997.6, **principle, premise** 957.1; grounds, precedent; root, radical; rudiment

7 **foundation stone,** footstone; **cornerstone, keystone,** headstone, first stone, quoin

8 **base, pedestal; stand,** standard; **shaft** 273, **upright, column, pillar, post,** jack, pole, staff, stanchion, pier, pile *or* piling, king-post, queen-post, pilaster, newel-post, banister, baluster, balustrade, colonnade, caryatid; dado, die; plinth, subbase; surbase; socle; **trunk,** stem, **stalk,** pedicel, peduncle, footstalk

9 **sill,** groundsel; mudsill; window sill; doorsill, threshold; doorstone

10 **frame,** underframe, infrastructure, chassis, **skeleton;** armature; **mounting,** mount, **backing, setting;** surround

11 **handle, hold,** grip, grasp, haft, helve

12 **scaffold,** scaffolding, *échafaudage* <Fr>; stage, staging

13 **platform; stage,** estrade, dais, floor; **rostrum, podium, pulpit,** speaker's platform *or* stand, **soapbox** <nf>; hustings, **stump;** tribune, tribunal; emplacement; catafalque; landing stage, landing; heliport, landing pad; launching pad; **terrace,** step terrace, deck; **balcony, gallery**

14 **shelf, ledge,** shoulder, corbel, beam-end; mantel, mantelshelf, mantelpiece; retable, superaltar, gradin, *gradino* <Ital>, predella; hob

15 **table,** board, **stand; bench,** workbench; **counter,** bar, buffet; **desk,** writing table, **secretary,** *secrétaire* <Fr>, escritoire; **lectern,** reading stand, ambo, reading desk

16 **trestle, horse; sawhorse,** buck *or* sawbuck; clotheshorse; trestle board *or* table, trestle and table; trestlework, trestling; A-frame

17 **seat, chair;** saddle

18 <saddle parts> **pommel,** horn; jockey; girth, girt, surcingle, bellyband; cinch, stirrup

19 sofa, **bed; couch;** the sack *and* the hay *and* kip *and* doss <nf>; futon; bedstead; **litter, stretcher,** gurney

20 **bedding,** underbed, underbedding; **mattress,** paillasse, pallet; air mattress, foam-rubber mattress, innerspring mattress; sleeping bag; pad, mat, rug; litter, bedstraw; **pillow,** cushion, bolster; **springs,** bedsprings, box springs; futon

VERBS 21 **support, bear,** carry, **hold, sustain, maintain, bolster, reinforce,** back, back up, shoulder, give *or* furnish *or* afford *or* supply *or* lend support; go to bat for <nf>; **hold up, bear up,** bolster up, keep up, buoy up, keep afloat, back up; **uphold,** upbear, upkeep; **brace, prop,** crutch, buttress; shore, **shore up;** stay, mainstay; underbrace, undergird, underprop, underpin, underset; **underlie,** be at the bottom of, form the foundation of; cradle; cushion, pillow; **subsidize;** subvene; assent 332.8; concur 332.9; **approve** 509.9

22 **rest on, stand on, lie on,** recline on, repose on, bear on, **lean on,** abut on; **sit on,** perch, ride, piggyback on; **straddle,** bestraddle, stride, bestride; be based on, rely on

ADJS 23 **supporting, supportive, bearing,** carrying, burdened; **holding,** upholding, maintaining, sustaining, sustentative, suspensory; bracing, propping, shoring, bolstering, buttressing; life-sustaining; collaborative, corroborative, cooperative

24 **supported, borne,** upborne, held, buoyed-up, **upheld, sustained,** maintained; **braced,** guyed, stayed, propped, shored *or* shored up, bolstered, buttressed; based *or* founded *or* grounded on

ADVS **25** **on, across, astride, astraddle,** straddle, straddle-legged, straddleback, on the back of; horseback, on horseback; pickaback *or* piggyback

902 IMPULSE, IMPACT
<driving and striking force>

NOUNS **1** **impulse,** impulsion, impelling force, impellent; **drive,** driving force *or* power; **motive power,** power 18; **force,** irresistible force; clout <nf>; **impetus; momentum;** moment, moment of force; propulsion 904.1; incitement 375.4, incentive 375.7, compulsion 424

2 **thrust, push, shove,** boost <nf>; **pressure; stress;** press; **prod, poke, punch, jab,** dig, nudge; **bump,** jog, joggle, jolt; **jostle,** hustle; **butt,** bunt; head <of water, steam, etc>

3 **impact, collision, clash,** appulse, **encounter,** meeting, impingement, **bump, crash,** crump, whomp; **carom,** carambole, cannon; sideswipe <nf>; smash *and* crunch <nf>; **shock, brunt; concussion,** percussion; **thrusting, ramming,** bulling, **bulldozing,** shouldering, muscling, steamrollering, railroading; hammering, smashing, mauling, sledgehammering; onslaught 459.1

4 **hit, blow, stroke, knock, rap, pound,** slam, bang, crack, **whack, smack, thwack,** smash, dash, swipe, swing, **punch, poke, jab,** dig, drub, thump, pelt, cut, chop, dint, slog; drubbing, drumming, tattoo, fusillade; beating 604.4

5 <nf terms> **sock,** bang, bash, bat, belt, bonk, bust, clip, clout, duke, swat, yerk, plunk, larrup, paste, lick, biff, clump, clunk, clonk, wallop, whop, slam, slug, whomp, swack

6 **punch, boxing punch,** blow, belt, sock

7 **tap, rap, pat,** dab, chuck, touch, tip; love-tap; **snap, flick, flip,** fillip, flirt, whisk, brush; **peck,** pick

8 **slap, smack,** flap; **box, cuff,** buffet; **spank;** whip, **lash,** cut, stripe

9 **kick, boot;** punt, drop kick, place kick, kicking, calcitration <old>

10 **stamp,** stomp <nf>, drub, clump, clop

VERBS **11** **impel,** give an impetus, **set going** *or* agoing, put *or* set in motion, give momentum; **drive, move,** animate, actuate, forward; **thrust,** power; drive *or* whip on; goad; **propel;** motivate, incite 375.17; compel 424.4

12 **thrust, push, shove,** boost <nf>; press, stress, **bear,** bear upon, bring pressure to bear upon; **ram,** ram down, tamp, pile drive, jam, crowd, cram; bull, bulldoze, muscle, steamroller, railroad; **drive, force,** run; **prod, goad, poke, punch, jab,** dig, nudge; **bump,** jog, joggle, jolt, shake, rattle; **jostle,** hustle, hurtle; elbow, shoulder; **butt,** bunt, buck <nf>, run *or* bump *or* butt against, bump up against, knock *or* run one's head against; assault

13 **collide,** come into collision, be on a collision course, **clash,** meet, encounter, confront each other, impinge; percuss, concuss; **bump, hit, strike, knock, bang; run into, bump into,** bang into, slam into, smack into, **crash into, impact,** smash into, dash into, carom into, cannon into <Brit>; rear-end; **hit against,** strike against, knock against; foul, fall *or* run foul *or* afoul of; hurtle, hurt; **carom,** cannon <chiefly Brit>; **sideswipe** <nf>; **crash,** smash, crump, whomp; smash up *or* crack up *or* crunch <nf>

14 **hit, strike, knock,** knock down *or* out, smite; land a blow, draw blood; **poke, punch, jab,** thwack, **smack,** clap, crack, swipe, **whack;** deal, fetch, swipe at, take a punch at, throw one at <nf>, deal *or* fetch a blow, hit a clip <nf>, let have it; **thump,** snap; strike at 459.16

15 <nf terms> **belt,** bat, clout, bang, slam, bash, biff, paste, wham, whop, clump, bonk, wallop, clip, cut, plunk, swat, soak, sock, slog, slug, yerk <old>, clunk, clonk

16 **pound, beat, hammer, maul,** sledgehammer, **knock, rap, bang,** thump, **drub,** buffet, **batter,** pulverize, paste <nf>, patter, pommel, pummel, pelt, baste, lambaste; thresh, thrash; flail; spank, flap; whip

17 <nf terms> **clobber,** knock for a loop, marmelize <Brit>, knock cold, dust off, bash up, punch out, rough up, slap down, smack down, sandbag, work over, deck, coldcock, wallop, larrup

18 **tap, rap, pat,** dab, chuck, touch, tip; **snap, flick, flip,** fillip, tickle, flirt, whisk, **graze,** brush; bunt; **peck,** pick, beak

19 **slap, smack,** flap; **box, cuff,** buffet; **spank;** whip

20 **club,** cudgel, blackjack, sandbag, cosh <Brit>

21 **kick,** boot, kick about *or* around, calcitrate <old>; kick downstairs <old>; kick out; knee

22 **stamp,** stomp <nf>, trample, tread, drub, clump, clop

ADJS **23** **impelling,** impellent; impulsive, pulsive, **moving,** motive, animating, actuating, **driving;** thrusting

24 concussive, percussive, crashing, smashing

903 REACTION

NOUNS **1** **reaction, response,** respondence, feedback; reply, answer 940.1, **rise** <nf>; **reflex,** reflection, **reflex action;** echo, bounce back, reverberation, resonance, sympathetic vibration; return; reflux, refluence; action and reaction; opposite response, negative response, retroaction, revulsion; predictable response, automatic *or* autonomic reaction, knee-jerk *and* knee-jerk response <nf>, spontaneous *or* unthinking response, spur-of-the-moment response; conditioned reflex

2 **recoil, rebound,** resilience, repercussion, *contrecoup* <Fr>; **bounce, bound, spring,** bounce-back; **repulse, rebuff; backlash,** backlashing, kickback, **kick,** a kick like a mule <nf>, recalcitration <old>; **backfire, boomerang;** ricochet, carom, cannon <Brit>

3 <a drawing back or aside> **retreat,** recoil, fallback, pullout, pullback, contingency plan, backup plan; evasion, avoidance, sidestepping; **flinch,** wince, cringe; **side step,** shy; **dodge, duck** <nf>

4 **reactionary,** reactionist, recalcitrant

VERBS 5 **react, respond,** reply, answer, riposte, snap back, come back at <nf>; rise to the fly, take the bait; go off half-cocked *or* at half cock

6 **recoil, rebound,** resile; **bounce, bound, spring; spring** *or* **fly back,** bounce *or* bound back, snap back; repercuss, have repercussions; **kick,** kick back, kick like a mule <nf>, recalcitrate <old>; **backfire, boomerang;** backlash, lash back; ricochet, carom, cannon *and* cannon off <Brit>

7 **pull** *or* **draw back,** retreat, recoil, fade, **fall back,** reel back, hang back, start back, shrink back, give ground; **shrink, flinch, wince, cringe,** blink, blench, quail; **shy,** shy away, start *or* turn aside, evade, avoid, sidestep, weasel, weasel out, cop out <nf>; **dodge, duck** <nf>; jib, swerve, sheer off, give a wide berth

8 get a reaction, get a response, evoke a response, ring a bell, strike a responsive chord, strike fire, strike *or* hit home, hit a nerve, get a rise out of <nf>

ADJS 9 **reactive,** reacting, merely reactive; **responsive,** respondent, responding, antiphonal; **quick on the draw** *or* trigger *or* uptake; **reactionary;** retroactionary, retroactive; revulsive; **reflex,** reflexive, knee-jerk <nf>; refluent

10 recoiling, rebounding, **resilient; bouncing,** bouncy, bounding, springing, springy; repercussive; recalcitrant

ADVS 11 **on the rebound,** on the return, on the bounce; on the spur of the moment, off the top of the head

904 PUSHING, THROWING

NOUNS 1 **pushing, propulsion, propelling; shoving,** butting; **drive, thrust,** motive power, driving force, means of propulsion; **push, shove;** butt, bunt; shunt, impulsion 902.1

2 **throwing, projection,** jaculation, ejaculation, trajection, flinging, slinging, **pitching, tossing,** casting, hurling, lobbing, chucking, chunking <nf>, heaving, firing *and* burning *and* pegging <nf>; bowling, rolling; **shooting,** firing, gunnery, gunning, musketry; trap-shooting, skeet *or* skeet shooting; archery

3 **throw, toss, fling, sling, cast, hurl,** chuck, chunk <nf>, lob, **heave,** shy, **pitch,** peg <nf>; **flip;** put, shot-put; <football> pass, forward pass, lateral pass, lateral; <tennis> serve, service; bowl; <baseball> pitch

4 **shot,** discharge; ejection 909; detonation 56.3; gunfire; gun, cannon; bullet; **salvo, volley,** fusillade, tattoo, spray; bowshot, gunshot, stoneshot, potshot

5 **projectile;** ejecta, ejectamenta; **missile;** ball; discus, quoit

6 **propeller,** prop <nf>, airscrew, prop-fan; propellant, propulsor, driver; screw, wheel, screw propeller, twin screws; bow thruster; paddle wheel; turbine; fan, impeller, rotor; piston

7 **thrower, pitcher,** hurler, bowler <cricket>, chucker, chunker <nf>, **heaver, tosser,** flinger, slinger, caster, jaculator, ejaculator; bowler; shot-putter; javelin thrower; discus thrower, discobolus

8 **shooter,** shot; **gunner,** gun, **gunman; rifleman,** musketeer, carabineer, pistoleer; cannoneer, artilleryman; Nimrod, hunter 382.5; trapshooter; archer, bowman, toxophilite; **marksman, markswoman,** targetshooter, **sharpshooter,** sniper; good shot, dead shot, deadeye, **crack shot**

VERBS 9 **push, propel,** impel, **shove,** thrust 902.11; **drive, move,** forward, advance, traject; sweep, sweep along; butt, bunt; shunt; pole, row; pedal, treadle; **roll,** troll, bowl, trundle

10 **throw, fling, sling, pitch, toss, cast, hurl, heave, chuck,** chunk *and* peg <nf>, lob, shy, fire, burn, pepper <nf>, launch, dash, let fly, let go, let rip, let loose; catapult; **flip,** snap, jerk; bowl; pass; serve; put, put the shot; bung <Brit nf>; dart, lance, tilt; fork, pitchfork; pelt 459.27

11 **project,** jaculate, ejaculate

12 **shoot, fire,** fire off, let off, let fly, **discharge,** eject 909.13; detonate 56.8; gun <nf>, pistol; sharpshoot; shoot at 459.22, gun for <nf>; strike, hit, plug <nf>; shoot down, fell, drop, stop in one's tracks; **riddle, pepper,** pelt, pump full of lead <nf>; snipe, pick off; torpedo; pot; potshoot, potshot, take a potshot; load, prime, charge; cock

13 **start,** start off, start up, give a start, crank up, give a push *or* shove <nf>, jump-start, kick-start, **put** *or* **set in motion, set on foot,** set going *or* agoing, start going; **kick off** *and* **start the ball rolling** <nf>; get off the ground *or* off the mark, **launch,**

launch forth *or* out, float, set afloat; send, send off *or* forth; bundle off

ADJS 14 **propulsive,** propulsory, **propellant,** propelling; **motive; driving, pushing, shoving**

15 **projectile,** trajectile, jaculatory, ejaculatory; **ballistic,** missile; ejective

16 jet-propelled, rocket-propelled, steam-propelled, gasoline-propelled, gas-propelled, diesel-propelled, wind-propelled, self-propelled, etc

17 <means of propulsion> battery, diesel, diesel-electric, electric, gas *or* gasoline, gravity, jet, plasma-jet, prop-fan, pulse-jet, ram-jet, reaction, resojet, rocket, spring, steam, turbofan, turbojet, turbopropeller *or* turboprop, wind

905 PULLING

NOUNS 1 **pulling, traction, drawing,** draft, dragging, heaving, tugging, towing; pulling *or* tractive power, **pull;** tug-of-war; towing, towage; towrope, towbar, towing cable *or* hawser; tow car, wrecker; **hauling,** haulage, drayage; man-hauling, man-haulage; attraction 907; extraction 192

2 **pull, draw, heave, haul, tug,** tow, lug, a long pull and a strong pull, strain, drag

3 **jerk, yank** <nf>, quick *or* sudden pull; **twitch,** tweak, pluck, hitch, wrench, snatch, start, bob; **flip,** flick, flirt, flounce; jig, **jiggle;** jog, joggle

VERBS 4 **pull, draw, heave, haul,** hale, lug, **tug, tow,** take in tow; trail, train; **drag,** man-haul, draggle, snake <nf>; troll, trawl

5 **jerk,** yerk <nf>, **yank** <nf>; **twitch,** tweak, pluck, snatch, hitch, wrench, snake <nf>; **flip,** flick, flirt, flounce; **jiggle,** jig, jigget, jigger; jog, joggle

ADJS 6 **pulling, drawing,** tractional, tractive, hauling, tugging, towing, towage; man-hauled

906 LEVERAGE, PURCHASE

<mechanical advantage applied to moving or raising>

NOUNS 1 **leverage,** fulcrumage; **pry,** prize <nf>

2 **purchase, hold,** advantage; **foothold,** toehold, footing; differential purchase; collier's purchase; traction

3 **fulcrum, axis, pivot,** bearing, rest, resting point, *point d'appui* <Fr>; thole, tholepin, rowlock, oarlock

4 **lever; pry,** prize <nf>; **bar,** pinch bar, crowbar, crow, pinchbar, iron crow, wrecking bar, ripping bar, claw bar; cant hook, peavey; **jimmy;** handspike, marlinespike; boom, spar, beam, outrigger; pedal, treadle, crank; limb

5 **arm;** forearm; wrist; elbow; upper arm, biceps

6 **tackle,** purchase

7 **windlass; capstan** <nautical>; **winch,** crab; reel; Chinese windlass, Spanish windlass

VERBS 8 get a purchase, get leverage, get a foothold; **pry,** prize, **lever,** wedge; pry *or* prize out; **jimmy,** crowbar, pinchbar

9 **reel in,** wind in, bring in, draw in, pull in, crank in, trim, tighten, tauten, draw taut, take the strain; windlass, winch, crank, reel; tackle

907 ATTRACTION

<a drawing toward>

NOUNS 1 **attraction,** traction 905.1, attractiveness, attractivity; mutual attraction *or* magnetism; pulling power, **pull,** drag, draw, tug; magnetism 1032.7; gravity, gravitation; centripetal force; capillarity, capillary attraction; adduction; **affinity, sympathy; allurement** 377

2 attractor, attractant, attrahent; adductor; cynosure, focus, center, center of attraction *or* attention; crowd-pleaser *or* drawer, charismatic figure; **lure** 377.2

3 **magnet,** artificial magnet, field magnet, bar magnet, horseshoe magnet, electromagnet, solenoid, paramagnet, permanent magnet, keeper, superconducting magnet, electromagnetic lifting magnet, magnetic needle; lodestone, magnetite; magnetic pole, magnetic north; lodestar, polestar; siderite

VERBS 4 **attract, pull, draw,** drag, tug, pull *or* draw towards, have an attraction; **magnetize,** magnet, be magnetic; **lure;** adduct

ADJS 5 attracting, drawing, pulling, dragging, tugging; eye-catching; **attractive, magnetic;** charismatic; magnetized, attrahent; sympathetic; **alluring;** adductive, adducent; associative

ADVS 6 attractionally, attractively; magnetically; charismatically

908 REPULSION

<a thrusting away>

NOUNS 1 **repulsion,** repellence *or* repellency, **repelling;** mutual repulsion, polarization; disaffinity; centrifugal force; magnetic repulsion, diamagnetism; antigravity; ejection 909

2 **repulse, rebuff; dismissal,** cold shoulder, snub, spurning, brush-off, cut; kiss-off <nf>; turn-off <nf>; rejection; refusal; discharge 909.5

VERBS 3 **repulse, repel, rebuff, turn back,** put back, beat back, drive *or* push *or* thrust back; drive away, chase, chase off *or* away; send off *or* away, send about one's business, **send packing,** pack off, dismiss; snub, cut, brush off, drop; kiss off <nf>, show someone the door; spurn, refuse; **ward off,** hold off, keep off, fend off, fight off, push off, keep at arm's length; slap *or* smack down <nf>; eject 909.13, discharge 909.19

ADJS 4 **repulsive,** repellent, **repelling;** diamagnetic, of opposite polarity, centrifugal, abducent, abductive; off-putting

ADVS 5 repulsively, repellently

909 EJECTION

NOUNS 1 **ejection,** ejectment, throwing out, **expulsion, discharge,** extrusion, obtrusion, detrusion, **ousting, ouster,** removal, kicking *or* booting *or* chucking out <nf>; throwing *or* kicking downstairs; the boot *and* the bounce *and* the bum's rush *and* the old heave-ho <nf>, the chuck *or* the push <Brit nf>; defenestration; **rejection** 372; jettison

2 **eviction,** ousting, dislodgment, dispossession, expropriation; **ouster,** throwing overboard

3 **depopulation,** dispeoplement, unpeopling; devastation, desolation

4 **banishment,** relegation, exclusion 773; **excommunication,** disfellowship; **disbarment,** unfrocking, defrocking; proscription; **expatriation, exile,** exilement; outlawing *or* outlawry, fugitation <Scot>; **ostracism,** ostracization, thumbs-down, thumbing-down, *pollice verso* <L>, blackballing, silent treatment, sending to Coventry, cold shoulder; **deportation,** transportation, **extradition;** rustication; degradation, **demotion** 447, stripping, depluming, displuming; deprivation

5 **dismissal, discharge,** forced separation, *congé* <Fr>; outplacement; **firing** *and* canning <nf>, **cashiering,** drumming out, dishonorable discharge, rogue's march; disemployment, **layoff,** removal, surplusing, displacing, furloughing; suspension; **retirement;** marching orders, the elbow, the bounce, **the sack** *and* the chuck <Brit nf>, heave-ho <nf>; the boot *and* the gate *and* the ax *and* the sack <nf>; walking papers *or* ticket <nf>, pink slip <nf>; deposal 447

6 **evacuation, voidance,** voiding; **elimination,** removal; **clearance, clearing,** clearage; unfouling, freeing; scouring *or* cleaning out, unclogging; exhaustion, exhausting, venting, emptying, depletion; **unloading,** off-loading, discharging cargo *or* freight; draining, drainage; egress 190.2; **excretion,** defecation 12.2,4

7 **disgorgement,** disemboguement, expulsion, ejaculation, **discharge,** emission; **eruption,** eructation, extravasation, **blowout, outburst;** outpour, jet, spout, squirt, spurt

8 **vomiting,** vomition, **disgorgement, regurgitation,** egestion, emesis, the pukes *and* the heaves <nf>; **retching,** heaving, gagging; nausea; vomit, vomitus, puke *and* puking *and* barf *and* barfing <nf>, spew, egesta; the dry heaves <nf>; vomiturition

9 **belch, burp** <nf>, belching, wind, gas, eructation; **hiccup**

10 **fart** <nf>, **flatulence** *or* flatulency, flatuosity, flatus, breaking wind, passing gas, gas, wind

11 **ejector,** expeller, -fuge; **ouster,** evictor; **bouncer** *and* chucker <nf>, chucker-out <Brit nf>

12 **dischargee,** expellee; ejectee; evictee

VERBS 13 **eject, expel, discharge,** extrude, obtrude, detrude, exclude, **reject,** cast, remove; **oust, bounce** *and* give the hook <nf>, **put out, turn out,** thrust out; **throw out,** run out <nf>, cast out, chuck out, give the chuck to <Brit nf>, toss out, heave out, throw *or* kick downstairs; kick *or* boot out <nf>; give the bum's rush *or* give the old heave-ho *or* throw out on one's ear <nf>; defenestrate; jettison, throw overboard, discard, junk, throw away; **be rid of,** be shut of, see the last of

14 **drive out, run out,** chase out, chase away, run off, **rout out;** drum out, read out; freeze out <nf>, push out, force out, send packing, send about one's business; **hunt out,** harry out; **smoke out,** drive into the open; run out of town, ride on a rail

15 **evict, oust,** dislodge, dispossess, put out, turn out, **turn out of doors,** turn out of house and home, turn *or* put out bag and baggage, throw into the street; unhouse, unkennel

16 **depopulate,** dispeople, unpeople; devastate, desolate

17 **banish, expel, cast out,** thrust out, relegate, **ostracize,** disfellowship, exclude, send down, **blackball,** spurn, thumb down, turn thumbs down on, snub, cut, give the cold shoulder, send to Coventry, give the silent treatment; **excommunicate; exile, expatriate, deport,** transport, send away, **extradite; deport; outlaw,** fugitate <Scot>, ban, proscribe; rusticate

18 **dismiss, send off** *or* **away, turn off** *or* **away,** bundle, bundle off *or* out, hustle out, pack off, **send packing,** send about one's business, send to the showers <nf>; bow out, **show the door,** show the gate; **give the gate** *or* the air <nf>

19 **dismiss, discharge, expel, cashier,** drum out, disemploy, outplace, separate forcibly *or* involuntarily, **lay off,** suspend, surplus, furlough, turn off, make redundant, riff <nf>, turn out, release, let go, let out, remove, displace, replace, strike off the rolls, give the pink slip ; unfrock, defrock; degrade, demote, strip, deplume, displume, deprive; depose, disbar 447.4; break, bust <nf>; **retire,** put on the retired list; pension

off, superannuate, put out to pasture; read out of; kick upstairs

20 <nf terms> **fire, can, sack, bump,** bounce, kick, boot, give the ax, give the gate, give one the sack *or* the ax *or* the boot *or* the gate *or* the air *or* one's walking papers, send one to the showers, show one the door *or* gate

21 **do away with, exterminate, annihilate;** purge, liquidate; **shake off,** shoo, dispel; **throw off,** fling off, cast off; **eliminate,** get rid of 772.5; throw away 390.7

22 **evacuate, void; eliminate,** remove; **empty,** empty out, deplete, **exhaust,** vent, drain; **clear, purge,** clean *or* scour out, clear off *or* away, clear, unfoul, unclog, flush out, blow, blow out, sweep out, make a clean sweep, clear the decks; defecate 12.13

23 **unload,** off-load, unlade, unpack, disburden, unburden, **discharge, dump;** unship, break bulk; pump out

24 **let out, give vent to,** give out *or* off, throw off, blow off, **emit, exhaust,** evacuate, let go; **exhale,** expire, breathe out, let one's breath out, blow, puff; fume, steam, vapor, smoke, reek; open the sluices *or* floodgates, turn on the tap

25 **disgorge,** debouch, disembogue, **discharge, exhaust, expel,** ejaculate, throw out, **cast forth,** send out *or* forth; **erupt,** eruct, **blow out,** extravasate; **pour out** *or* **forth,** pour, outpour, decant; spew, jet, spout, squirt, **spurt**

26 **vomit,** spew, **disgorge, regurgitate,** egest, **throw up,** bring up, be sick <Brit>, sick up <Brit nf>, cast *or* heave the gorge; **retch,** keck, **heave, gag;** reject; be seasick, feed the fish

27 <nf terms> **puke,** upchuck, chuck up, urp, oops, oops up, shoot *or* blow *or* toss one's cookies *or* lunch, barf, ralph, ralph up, blow grits

28 **belch, burp** <nf>, eruct, eructate; **hiccup**

29 **fart** <nf>, let *or* lay *or* cut a fart <nf>, let *or* break wind

ADJS 30 **ejective, expulsive,** ejaculative, emissive, extrusive; eliminant; vomitive, vomitory; eructative; flatulent, flatuous; **rejected** 372.3, rejective

INTERJS 31 **go away!,** begone!, get you gone!, go along!, get along!, **run along!, get along with you!,** away!, away with you!, **off with you!,** off you go!, on your way!, go about your business!, be off!, **get out of here!,** get out!, clear out!, leave!, *allez!* <Fr>, *allez-vous-en!* <Fr>, *va-t'-en!* <Fr>, *raus mit dir!* <Ger>, *heraus!* <Ger>, *¡váyase!* <Sp>, *via!* or *va' via!* <Ital>, shoo!, scat!, git! <nf>, "stand not on the order of your going, but go at once"—Shakespeare, "go and hang yourself"—Plautus

32 <nf terms> **beat it!, scram!,** buzz off!, bug off!, shoo!, skiddoo!, skedaddle!, vamoose!, cheese it!, make yourself scarce!, **get lost!,** take a walk!, take a hike!, go chase yourself!, go play in the traffic!, get the hell out!, push off!, shove off!, take a powder!, blow!

910 OVERRUNNING

NOUNS 1 **overrunning, overgoing, overpassing;** overrun, overpass; **overspreading,** overgrowth; inundation, whelming, overwhelming; burying, burial; seizure, taking 480; overflowing 238.6; exaggeration 355; surplus, excess 992; superiority 249

2 **infestation,** infestment; **invasion,** swarming, swarm, teeming, ravage, plague; **overrunning, overswarming,** overspreading; lousiness, pediculosis

3 **overstepping, transgression, trespass,** inroad, usurpation, incursion, intrusion, **encroachment,** infraction, **infringement**

VERBS 4 **overrun, overgo, overpass,** overreach, go beyond; overstep, overstride, overstep the mark *or* bounds; overleap, overjump; **overshoot,** overshoot the mark, overshoot the field; exaggerate 355.3; superabound, exceed, **overdo** 993.10

5 **overspread,** bespread, spread over, spill over; **overgrow,** grow over, run riot, cover, swarm over, teem over

6 **infest, beset,** invade, swarm, ravage, plague; **overrun, overswarm,** overspread; **creep with, crawl with,** swarm with; seize 480.14

7 **run over,** overrun; **ride over,** override, **run down,** ride down; **trample, trample on** *or* **upon,** trample down, tread upon, step on, walk on *or* over, trample underfoot, **ride roughshod over;** hit-and-run; **inundate, whelm, overwhelm;** overflow 238.17; shout down

8 **pass, go** *or* **pass by,** get *or* shoot ahead of; bypass; **pass over, cross,** go across, ford; step over, overstride, bestride, straddle

9 **overstep, transgress, trespass,** intrude, break bounds, overstep the bounds, go too far, know no bounds, **encroach, infringe,** invade, breach, irrupt, make an inroad *or* incursion *or* intrusion, advance upon; usurp

ADJS 10 **overrun, overspread,** overpassed, bespread; overgrown; inundated, whelmed, overwhelmed; buried

11 **infested,** beset, ravaged, teeming, lagued; lousy, pediculous, pedicular; wormy, grubby; ratty

911 SHORTCOMING

<motion or action short of>

NOUNS 1 **shortcoming,** falling short, not measuring up, coming up short, **shortfall; shortage,** short measure, underage, deficit; **inadequacy** 794.1; insufficiency 992; delinquency; **default,** defalcation; arrear, **arrears,** arrearage; decline, slump; defectiveness, imperfection 1002; **inferiority** 250; **undercommitment;** failure 410

VERBS 2 **fall short, come short, run short,** stop short, not make the course, not reach; not measure up, not hack it *and* not make the grade *and* not make the cut <nf>, not make it, not make out; want, want for, lack, not have it <nf>, **be found wanting,** not answer, not fill the bill, not suffice; not reach to, not stretch; decline, lag, lose ground, slump, collapse, fall away, run out of gas *or* steam; **lose out,** fail 410.9

3 **fall through,** fall down, **fall to the ground,** fall flat, **collapse,** break down; get bogged down, get mired, get mired down, get hung up, come to nothing, come to naught, end up *or* go up in smoke; **fizzle** *or* peter *or* poop out <nf>; fall *or* drop by the wayside, end "not with a bang but a whimper"—T S Eliot

4 **miss, miscarry, go amiss,** go astray, **miss the mark,** miss by a mile <nf>; misfire; **miss out,** miss the boat *or* bus; miss stays, miss one's mooring

ADJS 5 **short of,** short, fresh *or* clean out of <nf>, not all *or* what it is cracked up to be; **deficient,** inadequate 794.4; **insufficient** 992.9; undercommitted; **inferior** 250.6; **lacking,** wanting, minus; unreached

ADVS 6 **behind, behindhand, in arrears** *or* arrear

7 **amiss, astray, beside the mark,** below the mark, beside the point, far from it, to no purpose, in vain, vainly, fruitlessly, bootlessly

912 ELEVATION

<act of raising>

NOUNS 1 **elevation, raising, lifting,** upping, boosting *and* hiking <nf>; **rearing,** escalation, **erection;** uprearing, uplifting; upbuoying; **uplift,** upheaval, upthrow, upcast, upthrust; **exaltation;** apotheosis, deification; beatification, canonization; enshrinement, assumption; *sursum corda* <L>; height 272; ascent 193; increase 251; antigravity

2 **lift, boost** *and* **hike** <nf>, hoist, heave; a leg up; promotion

3 **lifter, erector;** crane, derrick, gantry crane, crab; **jack,** jackscrew; **hoist,** lift, hydraulic lift; forklift; hydraulic tailgate; lever 906.4; windlass 906.7; tackle; yeast, leaven

4 **elevator,** *ascenseur* <Fr>, **lift** <Brit>; escalator, moving staircase *or* stairway, ski lift, chair lift; dumbwaiter

VERBS 5 **elevate, raise, rear,** escalate, up, boost *and* hike <nf>; **erect, heighten, lift,** levitate, boost <nf>, **hoist,** heist <nf>, heft, heave; raise up, rear up, lift up, hold up, set up; stick up, cock up, perk up; buoy up, upbuoy; **upraise, uplift,** uphold, uprear, uphoist; upheave, upthrow, upcast; throw up, cast up; jerk up, hike <nf>; knock up, lob, loft; sky <nf>

6 **exalt,** elevate, ensky; deify, apotheosize; beatify, canonize; enshrine; put on a pedestal

7 **give a lift,** give a boost, give a leg up <nf>, **help up,** put on; mount, horse; enhance, upgrade

8 **pick up,** take up, pluck up, **gather up;** draw up, fish up, haul up, drag up; dredge, dredge up

ADJS 9 **raised, lifted, elevated;** upraised, **uplifted,** upcast; **reared,** upreared; rearing, rampant; upthrown, upflung; **exalted, lofty;** deified, apotheosized; canonized, sainted, beatified; enshrined, sublime; antigravitational; stilted, on stilts; erect, upright 200.11; high 272.19

10 **elevating,** elevatory, escalatory; lifting; **uplifting;** erective, erectile; levitative

913 DEPRESSION

<act of lowering>

NOUNS 1 **depression, lowering; sinking;** ducking, submergence, pushing *or* thrusting under, downthrust, down-thrusting, detrusion, pushing *or* pulling *or* hauling down; reduction, de-escalation, diminution; demotion 447, debasement, degradation; concavity, hollowness 284.1; descent 194; decrease 252; deflation

2 **downthrow,** downcast; **overthrow,** overturn 205.2; **precipitation,** fall, downfall; downpour, downpouring

3 **crouch, stoop,** bend, squat; **bow,** genuflection, kneeling, kowtow, kowtowing, salaam, reverence, obeisance, **curtsy;** bob, duck, nod; prostration, supination; crawling, groveling; abasement, self-abasement

VERBS 4 **depress, lower,** let *or* take down, debase, de-escalate, **sink,** bring low, deflate, reduce, couch; pull *or* haul down, take down a peg <nf>; bear down, downbear, squash; thrust *or* press *or* push down, detrude; indent 284.14

5 **fell, drop, bring down,** fetch down, down <nf>, take down, take down a peg, lay low, reduce to the ranks, cashier; **raze,** rase, raze to the ground; **level,** lay level; pull down, pull about one's ears; **cut down,** chop down, hew down, whack down <nf>, mow down; **knock down,** dash down, send headlong, **floor,** deck *and* lay out <nf>, lay by the heels, ground, **bowl down** *or* **over** <nf>; trip, trip up, topple, tumble; **prostrate,** supinate; throw, **throw** *or* fling *or* cast down, **precipitate;** bulldog; spread-eagle <nf>, pin, pin down; blow over *or* down

6 **overthrow,** overturn 205.6; depose 447.4; demote 447.3

7 **drop, let go of,** let drop *or* fall

8 **crouch, duck,** cringe, **cower; stoop, bend, stoop down, squat,** squat down, get down, hunker *and* hunker down *and* get down on one's hunkers <nf>; hunch, hunch down, hunch over, scrooch *or* scrouch down <nf>

9 **bow, bend, kneel,** genuflect, bend the knee, **curtsy,** make a low bow, make a leg, make a reverence *or* an obeisance, salaam, bob, duck; **kowtow,** prostrate oneself; crawl, grovel; wallow, welter

10 **sit down,** seat oneself, park oneself <nf>, **be seated** 173.10

11 **lie down, couch, drape oneself, recline 201.5; prostrate,** supinate, prone <nf>; flatten oneself, prostrate oneself; hit the ground *or* the dirt <nf>

ADJS 12 **depressed, lowered,** debased, reduced, **fallen,** deflated; sunk, **sunken,** submerged; downcast, downthrown; prostrated, prostrate 201.8; low, at a low ebb; falling, precipitous

914 CIRCUITOUSNESS

NOUNS 1 **circuitousness,** circuity, circuition <old>; **roundaboutness,** indirection, ambagiousness <old>, meandering, deviance *or* deviancy, **deviation** 164; deviousness, **digression,** circumlocution 538.5; **excursion,** excursus; **circling, wheeling,** circulation, rounding, orbit, **orbiting; spiraling,** spiral, gyring, gyre; circumambulation, circumambience *or* circumambiency, circumflexion, circumnavigation, circummigration; turning, **turn** 164.1; circularity 280; convolution 281

2 **circuit, round,** revolution, **circle,** full circle, go-round, **cycle,** orbit, ambit; pass; round trip, *aller retour* <Fr>; **beat,** rounds, **walk,** tour, turn, lap, loop; round robin

3 **detour, bypass, roundabout way,** roundabout, ambages <old>, circuit, circumbendibus <nf>, the long way around, digression, deviation, excursion

VERBS 4 **go roundabout,** meander, deviate, go around Robin Hood's barn, take *or* go the long way around, twist and turn; **detour,** make a detour, **go around,** go round about, go out of one's way, **bypass;** deviate 164.3; digress 538.9; **talk in circles,** say in a roundabout way; equivocate 936.9, shilly-shally; dodge 368.8

5 **circle, circuit,** describe a circle, make a circuit, move in a circle, **circulate; go round** *or* **around,** go about; **wheel,** orbit, go into orbit, round; make a pass; come full circle, close the circle, make a round trip, return to the starting point; cycle; spiral, gyre; go around in circles, chase one's tail, go round and round; revolve 915.9; **compass,** encompass, encircle, surround; skirt, flank; go the round, make the round of, make one's rounds, circuiteer <old>; lap; circumambulate, circummigrate; circumnavigate, girdle, girdle the globe, "put a girdle round about the earth" —Shakespeare

6 **turn, go around, round,** turn *or* round a corner, corner, round a bend, double *or* round a point

ADJS 7 **circuitous, roundabout, out-of-the-way, devious, oblique, indirect,** ambagious <old>, meandering, backhanded; **deviative** 164.7, **deviating,** digressive, discursive, excursive; equivocatory 936.14; evasive 368.15; vacillating 362.10; **circular** 280.11, **round,** wheel-shaped, O-shaped; spiral, helical; orbital; rotary 915.15

8 circumambient, circumambulatory, circumforaneous, circumfluent, circumvolant, circumnavigatory, circumnavigable

ADVS 9 **circuitously, deviously, obliquely,** ambagiously <old> **indirectly, round about,** about it *and* about, round Robin Hood's barn, in a roundabout way, by a side door, by a side wind; circlewise, wheelwise

915 ROTATION

NOUNS 1 **rotation, revolution,** roll, **gyration, spin,** circulation; axial motion, rotational motion, angular motion, angular momentum, angular velocity; circumrotation, circumgyration, circumvolution, full circle; **turning, whirling,** swirling, **spinning,** wheeling, reeling, whir; **spiraling,** twisting upward *or* downward, gyring, volution, turbination; centrifugation; swiveling, pivoting, swinging; **rolling,** trolling, trundling, bowling, volutation <old>

2 **whirl,** wheel, reel, **spin, turn,** round; spiral, helix, helicoid, gyre; pirouette; **swirl,** twirl, **eddy,** gurge, surge; vortex, **whirlpool,** maelstrom, Charybdis; dizzy round, rat race; tourbillion, **whirlwind** 318.14, twister; rotary, traffic circle

3 revolutions, **revs** <nf>; revolutions per minute *or* rpm

4 **rotator, rotor; roller,** rundle; **whirler,** whirligig, **top,** whirlabout; **merry-go-round,** carousel, roundabout; **wheel,** disk; Ixion's wheel; rolling stone; revolving door; spit

5 **axle, axis; pivot,** gudgeon, trunnion, **swivel, spindle,** arbor, pole, radiant; fulcrum 901.2; pin, pintle; **hub,** nave; axle shaft, axle spindle, axle bar, axle-tree;

distaff; mandrel; gimbal; **hinge,** hingle <nf>; rowlock, oarlock

6 **axle box,** journal, journal box; hotbox; universal joint

7 **bearing,** ball bearing, journal bearing, saw bearing, tumbler bearing, main bearing, needle bearing, roller bearing, thrust bearing, bevel bearing, bushing; jewel; headstock

8 <science of rotation> trochilics, gyrostatics

VERBS 9 **rotate, revolve, spin, turn,** round, **go round** *or* **around,** turn round *or* around; **spiral, gyrate,** gyre, whirl like a dervish; circumrotate, circumvolute; circle, circulate; **swivel, pivot, wheel,** swing; pirouette, turn a pirouette; wind, twist, screw, crank; wamble

10 **roll,** trundle, troll, **bowl;** roll up, **furl**

11 **whirl,** whirligig, twirl, **wheel, reel, spin,** spin like a top *or* teetotum, whirl like a dervish; centrifuge, centrifugate; **swirl,** gurge, surge, **eddy,** whirlpool

12 <move around in confusion> **seethe, mill,** mill around *or* about, stir, roil, moil, be turbulent

13 <roll about in> **wallow, welter,** grovel, roll, flounder, tumble

ADJS 14 **rotating, revolving, turning,** gyrating; **whirling, swirling,** twirling, **spinning,** wheeling, **reeling; rolling,** trolling, bowling

15 **rotary, rotational,** rotatory, rotative; trochilic, vertiginous; circumrotatory, circumvolutory, circumgyratory; spiral, spiralling, helical, gyral, gyratory, gyrational, gyroscopic, gyrostatic; whirly, swirly, gulfy; whirlabout, whirligig; vortical, cyclonic, tornadic, whirlwindy, whirlwindish

ADVS 16 **round, around,** round about, **in a circle; round and round,** in circles, like a horse in a mill; in a whirl, in a spin; head over heels, heels over head; clockwise, counterclockwise, anticlockwise, widdershins

916 OSCILLATION

<motion to and fro>

NOUNS 1 **oscillation, vibration,** vibrancy; to-and-fro motion; harmonic motion, simple harmonic motion; libration, nutation; pendulation; **fluctuation,** vacillation, wavering 362.2; electrical oscillation, mechanical oscillation, oscillating current; libration of the moon, libration in latitude *or* longitude; vibratility; **frequency,** frequency band *or* spectrum; resonance, resonant *or* resonance frequency; **periodicity** 850.2

2 **waving,** wave motion, **undulation,** undulancy; **brandishing, flourishing,** flaunting, shaking; brandish, flaunt, flourish; wave 238.14

3 **pulsation, pulse, beat, throb;** beating, throbbing; systole, diastole; rat-a-tat, staccato, rataplan, drumming 55.1; **rhythm,** tempo 709.24; **palpitation,** flutter, arrhythmia, pitter-patter, pit-a-pat; fibrillation, ventricular fibrillation, tachycardia, ventricular tachycardia <all medicine>; **heartbeat,** heartthrob

4 **wave,** wave motion, ray; transverse wave, longitudinal wave; electromagnetic wave, electromagnetic radiation; **light** 1025; **radio wave** 1034.11; mechanical wave; acoustic wave, **sound wave** 50.1; seismic wave, **shock wave;** de Broglie wave; diffracted wave, guided wave; one- *or* two- *or* three-dimensional wave; periodic wave; standing wave, node, antinode; sea wave, surface wave, **tidal wave,** tsunami, seismic sea wave; traveling wave; surge, storm surge; amplitude, crest, trough; scend; **surf,** roller, curler, comber, whitecap, white horse; tube; wavelength; frequency, frequency band *or* spectrum; resonance, resonant *or* resonance frequency; period; wave number; diffraction; reinforcement, interference; in phase, out of phase; wave equation, Schrödinger equation; Huygens' principle

5 **alternation, reciprocation;** regular *or* rhythmic play, **coming and going,** to-and-fro, back-and-forth, ebb and flow, *va-et-vien* <Fr>, flux and reflux, systole and diastole, ups and downs, wax and wane, systole and diastole; sine wave, Lissajous figure *or* curve; **seesawing,** teetering, tottering, **teeter-tottering;** seesaw, teeter, teeter-totter, wigwag; zig-zag, zig-zagging, zig, zag

6 **swing,** swinging, **sway,** swag; **rock, lurch, roll, reel,** careen; wag, waggle; wave, waver; swing of the pendulum

7 seismicity, seismism; seismology, seismography, seismometry

8 <instruments> oscilloscope, oscillograph, oscillometer; wavemeter; harmonograph; vibroscope, vibrograph; kymograph; seismoscope, seismograph, seismometer; wave gauge

9 **oscillator, vibrator;** pendulum, pendulum wheel; metronome; swing; seesaw, teeter, teeter-totter, teeterboard, teetery-bender; rocker, rocking chair, cradle; rocking stone, logan stone, shuttle; shuttlecock

VERBS 10 **oscillate, vibrate,** librate, nutate; pendulate; **fluctuate,** vacillate, waver, wave; resonate; **swing, sway,** swag, dangle, **reel, rock, lurch, roll,** careen, toss, pitch; **wag,** waggle; **wobble,** coggle <Scot>, wamble; **bob,** bobble; shake, flutter 917.10,12

11 **wave, undulate; brandish, flourish,** flaunt, shake, swing, wield; float, fly; **flap, flutter;** wag, wigwag

12 **pulsate, pulse, beat, throb,** not miss a beat; **palpitate,** go pit-a-pat; miss a beat; beat time, beat out, tick, ticktock; drum 55.4

13 **alternate,** reciprocate, swing, **go to and fro,** to-

and-fro, **come and go,** pass and re-pass, ebb and flow, wax and wane, ride and tie, hitch and hike, back and fill; **seesaw,** teeter, **teeter-totter;** shuttle, shuttlecock, battledore and shuttlecock; **wigwag,** wibble-wabble; zigzag

14 <move up and down> **pump, shake,** bounce

ADJS 15 **oscillating,** oscillatory; **vibrating,** vibratory, harmonic; vibratile; librational, libratory; nutational; **periodic,** pendular, pendulous; **fluctuating,** fluctuational, fluctuant; wavering; vacillating, vacillatory; resonant

16 **waving, undulating,** undulatory, undulant; seismic

17 **swinging, swaying,** dangling, **reeling, rocking, lurching,** careening, **rolling,** tossing, pitching

18 pulsative, pulsatory, pulsatile; **pulsating, pulsing, beating, throbbing, palpitating,** palpitant, pit-a-pat, staccato; rhythmic 709.28

19 **alternate, reciprocal,** reciprocative; sine-wave; **back-and-forth, to-and-fro,** up-and-down, seesaw

20 seismatical, seismological, seismographic, seismometric; succussive, succussatory, sussultatory

ADVS 21 **to and fro, back and forth,** backward and forward, backwards and forwards, **in and out, up and down,** seesaw, shuttlewise, from side to side, from pillar to post, off and on, ride and tie, hitch and hike, round and round, like buckets in a well

917 AGITATION

<irregular motion>

NOUNS 1 **agitation, perturbation,** hecticness, conturbation <old>; **frenzy,** excitement 105; **trepidation** 127.5, trepidity, fidgets *and* jitters *and* ants in the pants <nf>, antsiness *and* jitteriness <nf>, heebie-jeebies <nf>, jumpiness, nervousness, yips <nf>, nerviness <Brit>, nervosity, twitter, upset; **unrest, malaise, unease,** restlessness; fever, feverishness, febrility; **disquiet,** disquietude, inquietude, discomposure, hand-wringing; **stir, churn, ferment,** fermentation, foment; seethe, seething, ebullition, boil, boiling; embroilment, roil, turbidity, fume, **disturbance, commotion,** moil, **turmoil,** turbulence 671.2, **swirl, tumult,** tumultuation, hubbub, shemozzle <Brit nf>, rout, fuss, row, to-do, bluster, fluster, flurry, flutteration, hoo-ha *and* flap <nf>, bustle, brouhaha, bobbery, hurly-burly; maelstrom; **disorder** 810

2 **shaking, quaking,** palsy, **quivering, quavering, shivering, trembling,** tremulousness, **shuddering, vibration;** juddering <Brit>, succussion; jerkiness, fits and starts, spasms; jactation, jactitation; joltiness, bumpiness, the shakes *and* the shivers *and* the cold shivers <nf>, ague, chattering; chorea, rigor, St Vitus's dance; delirium tremens *or* the DT's

3 **shake, quake, quiver, quaver,** falter, **tremor, tremble, shiver, shudder,** twitter, didder, dither; **wobble; bob,** bobble; **jog,** joggle; **shock, jolt,** jar, jostle; **bounce,** bump; **jerk, twitch,** tic, grimace, rictus, vellication; jig, jiggle; the shakes <nf>

4 **flutter,** flitter, flit, **flicker, waver,** dance; shake, quiver 917.3; **sputter, splutter; flap,** flop <nf>; **beat,** beating; **palpitation,** throb, pit-a-pat, pitter-patter

5 **twitching, jerking,** vellication; **fidgets,** fidgetiness; itchiness, formication, pruritus

6 **spasm, convulsion,** cramp, **paroxysm,** throes; **orgasm,** sexual climax; epitasis, eclampsia; **seizure,** grip, attack, **fit,** access, ictus; epilepsy, falling sickness; stroke, apoplexy

7 **wiggle, wriggle;** wag, waggle; writhe, **squirm**

8 **flounder,** flounce, stagger, totter, stumble, falter; wallow, welter; **roll, rock, reel, lurch,** careen, **swing, sway; toss, tumble,** pitch, plunge

9 <instruments> **agitator,** shaker, jiggler, vibrator; beater, stirrer, paddle, whisk, eggbeater; churn; blender

VERBS 10 **agitate, shake, disturb, perturb,** shake up, perturbate, **disquiet, discompose, upset, trouble, unsettle, stir,** swirl, flurry, flutter, flutter the dovecot, fret, roughen, ruffle, rumple, ripple, ferment, convulse; **churn,** whip, whisk, beat, paddle; **excite** 105.11; **stir up,** cause a stir *or* commotion, muddy the waters, shake up a hornet's nest <nf>; work up, shake up, churn up, whip up, beat up; roil, rile <nf>; disarrange 811.2

11 **shake, quake, vibrate,** jactitate; **tremble, quiver, quaver,** falter, **shudder, shiver,** twitter, didder, chatter; shake in one's boots *or* shoes, quake *or* shake *or* tremble like an aspen leaf, have the jitters *or* the shakes <nf>, have ants in one's pants <nf>; have an ague; **wobble; bob,** bobble; jiggle, **jog,** joggle; **shock, jolt,** jar, jostle, hustle, jounce, **bounce,** jump, bump

12 **flutter,** flitter, flit, flick, **flicker,** gutter, bicker, wave, **waver,** dance; **sputter, splutter; flap,** flop <nf>, flip, beat, slat; **palpitate,** pulse, throb, pitter-patter, go pit-a-pat

13 **twitch, jerk,** vellicate; itch; **jig, jiggle,** jigger *or* jigget <nf>; **fidget,** have the fidgets

14 **wiggle, wriggle;** wag, waggle; **writhe, squirm,** twist and turn; have ants in one's pants <nf>

15 **flounder,** flounce, **stagger,** totter, stumble, falter, blunder, wallop; **struggle,** labor; **wallow, welter; roll, rock, reel, lurch,** careen, career, **swing, sway; toss, tumble,** thrash about, **pitch, plunge,** pitch and plunge, toss and tumble, toss and turn, be the sport of winds and waves; **seethe**

ADJS 16 **agitated, disturbed, perturbed, disquieted,**

discomposed, troubled, upset, ruffled, flurried, flustered, unsettled; stirred up, shaken, shaken up, all worked up, all shook up <nf>; troublous, feverish, fidgety *and* jittery *and* antsy <nf>, jumpy, nervous, nervy <Brit>, restless, uneasy, unquiet, unpeaceful; all of a twitter <nf>, all of a flutter, giddy, in a spin; turbulent; excited 105.18,20,22

17 **shaking, vibrating,** chattering; **quivering, quavering, quaking, shivering, shuddering, trembling, tremulous,** palsied, aspen; succussive, succussatory; **shaky,** quivery, quavery, shivery, trembly; wobbly; juddering

18 **fluttering, flickering, wavering,** guttering, dancing; sputtering, spluttering, sputtery; fluttery, flickery, bickering, flicky, wavery, unsteady, desultory

19 **jerky,** herky-jerky <nf>, twitchy *or* twitchety, jerking, **twitching, fidgety, jumpy,** jiggety <nf>, vellicative; **spastic, spasmodic,** eclamptic, orgasmic, convulsive; fitful, saltatory

20 **jolting,** jolty, **joggling,** joggly, jogglety, jouncy, **bouncy, bumpy,** choppy, rough; **jarring,** bone-bruising

21 **wriggly,** wriggling, crawly, creepy-crawly <nf>; **wiggly,** wiggling; squirmy, squirming; writhy, writhing, antsy <nf>

ADVS 22 **agitatedly, troublously, restlessly,** uneasily, unquietly, unpeacefully, nervously, feverishly; **excitedly**

23 **shakily,** quiveringly, quaveringly, quakingly, **tremblingly,** shudderingly, tremulously; flutteringly, waveringly, unsteadily, desultorily; **jerkily,** spasmodically, fitfully, by jerks, by snatches, saltatorily, by fits and starts, "with many a flirt and flutter"—Pope

918 SPECTATOR

NOUNS 1 **spectator, observer; looker, onlooker,** looker-on, **watcher,** gazer, gazer-on, gaper, goggler, **viewer,** seer, beholder, perceiver, percipient; spectatress, spectatrix; **witness, eyewitness; bystander,** passerby; innocent bystander; sidewalk superintendent; kibitzer; girl-watcher, ogler, drugstore cowboy <nf>; bird-watcher; **viewer,** television-viewer, televiewer, video-gazer, TV-viewer, couch potato <nf>

2 **attender** 221.5, attendee; theatergoer; **audience** 48.6, house, crowd, gate, fans

3 **sightseer,** excursionist, **tourist,** rubberneck *or* **rubbernecker** <nf>; slummer; tour group

4 **sight-seeing,** rubbernecking <nf>, lionism <Brit nf>; **tour,** walking tour, bus tour, sightseeing tour *or* excursion, **rubberneck tour** <nf>

VERBS 5 spectate <nf>, witness, **see** 27.12, look on, eye, **ogle, gape;** take in, **look at, watch;** attend 221.8

6 **sight-see,** see the sights, take in the sights, lionize *or* see the lions <Brit nf>; **rubberneck** <nf>; go slumming; go on a tour, join a tour

ADJS 7 spectating, spectatorial; onlooking; sight-seeing, rubberneck <nf>; passing by, caught in the cross-fire *or* in the middle

919 INTELLECT

<mental faculty>

NOUNS 1 **intellect, mind,** *mens* <L>; mental *or* intellectual faculty, nous, **reason, rationality,** rational *or* reasoning faculty, power of reason, *Vernunft* <Ger>, *esprit* <Fr>, *raison* <Fr>, ratio, discursive reason, "discourse of reason"—Shakespeare, **intelligence,** mentality, mental capacity, **understanding,** reasoning, intellection, conception; cognition, perception; **brain, brains,** brainpower, smarts *and* gray matter <nf>; **thought** 931; head, headpiece

2 **wits, senses, faculties,** parts, capacities, intellectual gifts *or* talents, mother wit; intellectuals <old>; consciousness 928.2

3 **inmost mind,** inner recesses of the mind, mind's core, deepest mind, center of the mind; inner man; subconscious, subconscious mind; inmost heart

4 **psyche, spirit,** spiritus, **soul,** geist, *âme* <Fr>, **heart, mind,** inner mind, inner being, anima, *anima humana* <L>, animus; shade, shadow, manes; breath, pneuma, breath of life, divine breath; *atman* and *purusha* and *buddhi* and *jiva* and *jivatma* <all Skt>; *ba* and *khu* <Egyptian myth>; *ruach* and *nephesh* <Heb>; spiritual being, inner man, "the Divinity that stirs within us"—Addison; **ego,** the self, the I

5 **life principle,** vital principle, vital spirit *or* soul, *élan vital* <Fr>, **vital force,** *prana* <Hindu>; essence *or* substance of life, individual essence, *ousia* <Gk>; divine spark, vital spark *or* flame

6 **brain** 2.15, seat *or* organ of thought; sensory, sensorium; encephalon; gray matter, head, cerebrum, pate *and* sconce *and* noddle <nf>; noodle *or* noggin *or* bean *or* upper story <nf>; sensation 24

ADJS 7 **mental, intellectual, rational, reasoning, thinking,** noetic, conceptive, conceptual, phrenic; intelligent 920.12; noological; endopsychic, psychic, psychical, psychologic, psychological, spiritual; cerebral; subjective, internal

920 INTELLIGENCE, WISDOM

<mental capacity>

NOUNS 1 **intelligence, understanding,** *Verstand* <Ger>, **comprehension,** apprehension, mental *or* intellectual grasp, prehensility of mind, intellectual power, brainpower, thinking power, power of mind *or* thought; ideation, conception; integrative power, esemplastic power; rationality, reasoning *or* deductive power, ratiocination; **sense, wit,** mother wit, natural *or* native wit; **intellect** 919; **intellectuality,** intellectualism; capacity, mental capacity, **mentality,** caliber, reach *or* compass *or* scope of mind; **IQ** *or* intelligence quotient, mental ratio, mental age; sanity 925; knowledge 928

2 **smartness, braininess,** smarts *and* savvy <nf>, **brightness, brilliance, cleverness,** aptness, aptitude, native cleverness, mental alertness, nous, **sharpness, keenness,** acuity, acuteness; high IQ, **mental ability** *or* **capability,** gift, gifts, giftedness, **talent, flair, genius;** quickness, nimbleness, quickness *or* nimbleness of wit, adroitness, dexterity; sharp-wittedness, keen-wittedness, quick-wittedness, nimble-wittedness; nimble mind, mercurial mind, quick parts, clear *or* quick thinking; ready wit, quick wit, sprightly wit, *esprit* <Fr>

3 **shrewdness, artfulness, cunning,** cunningness, canniness, **craft, craftiness,** wiliness, guilefulness, slickness <nf>, **slyness,** pawkiness <Brit>, foxiness <nf>, peasant *or* animal cunning, low cunning; subtility, subtilty, **subtlety;** insinuation, insidiousness, deviousness

4 **sagacity,** sagaciousness, **astuteness, acumen,** longheadedness; **foresight,** foresightedness, providence; **farsightedness,** farseeingness, longsightedness; **discernment, insight,** intuition, penetration, acuteness, acuity; perspicacity, perspicaciousness, perspicuity, perspicuousness; incisiveness, trenchancy, cogency; **percipience** *or* percipiency, **perception,** apperception; **sensibility** 24.2

5 **wisdom,** ripe wisdom, seasoned understanding, mellow wisdom, wiseness, sageness, sapience, good *or* sound understanding; Sophia <female personification of wisdom>; erudition 927.5; **profundity,** profoundness, depth; broad-mindedness 979; **conventional wisdom,** received wisdom, prudential judgment

6 **sensibleness, reasonableness,** reason, rationality, sanity, saneness, **soundness; practicality,** practical wisdom, practical mind; **sense,** good *or* common *or* plain sense, **horse sense** <nf>; due sense of; level head, cool head, **levelheadedness,** balance, coolheadedness, coolness; soberness, sobriety, **sober-mindedness;** savvy, smarts

7 **judiciousness, judgment,** good *or* sound judgment, cool judgment, soundness of judgment; **prudence,** prudentialism, providence, policy, polity; weighing, consideration, circumspection, circumspectness, reflection, reflectiveness, **thoughtfulness; discretion,** discreetness; **discrimination**

8 **genius,** *Geist* <Ger>, spirit, soul; daimonion, demon, daemon; **inspiration,** afflatus, divine afflatus; Muse; fire of genius; **creativity;** talent 413.4; creative thought 986.2

9 <intelligent being> **intelligence, intellect,** head, brain, mentality, consciousness; wise man 921; intellectual, thinker, academic, savant, scholar, walking encyclopedia

VERBS **10** **have all one's wits about one,** have all one's marbles *and* have smarts *or* savvy <nf>, have a head on one's shoulders *and* have one's head screwed on right <nf>; have method in one's madness; use one's head *or* wits, get *or* keep one's wits about one; know what's what, know the score <nf>, be wise as a serpent *or* an owl; be reasonable, listen to reason

11 be brilliant, **scintillate,** sparkle, coruscate

ADJS **12** **intelligent,** intellectual <old>; ideational, conceptual, conceptive, discursive; sophic, noetic, phrenic; **knowing, understanding, reasonable, rational, sensible, bright;** sane 925.4; not so dumb <nf>, strong-minded

13 **clear-witted,** clearheaded, clear-eyed, clear-sighted; no-nonsense; awake, **wide-awake,** alive, **alert,** on the ball <nf>

14 **smart, brainy** <nf>, **bright, brilliant,** scintillating; **clever,** apt, **gifted,** talented; **sharp,** keen; **quick,** nimble, adroit, astute, dexterous; **sharp-witted,** keen-witted, needle-witted, **quick-witted,** quick-thinking, steel-trap, nimble-witted, quick on the trigger *or* uptake <nf>; smart as a whip, sharp as a tack <nf>; nobody's fool *and* no dumbbell *and* not born yesterday <nf>, all there <nf>

15 **shrewd, artful, cunning, knowing, crafty, wily,** guileful, canny, slick, sly, pawky <Brit>, smart as a fox, foxy *and* crazy like a fox <nf>; **subtle,** subtile; insinuating, insidious, devious, Byzantine, calculating

16 **sagacious, astute,** longheaded, argute; **understanding, discerning,** penetrating, incisive, acute, trenchant, cogent, piercing; **foresighted,** foreseeing; forethoughted, forethoughtful, provident; **farsighted,** farseeing, longsighted; **perspicacious,** perspicuous; **perceptive, percipient,** apperceptive, appercipient

17 **wise, sage,** sapient, seasoned, **knowing,** knowledgeable; **learned** 928.21; **profound,** deep; wise as an owl *or* a serpent, wise as Solomon; wise beyond one's years, in advance of one's age, wise in one's generation; broad-minded 979.8

18 **sensible, reasonable, reasoning, rational, logical; practical,** pragmatic; philosophical; commonsense, commonsensical <nf>; **levelheaded,** balanced, coolheaded, cool, clearheaded, **sound, sane,** sober, **sober-minded,** well-balanced, lucid; realistic, ratiocinative; well thought-out; profound

19 **judicious,** judicial, judgmatic, judgmatical, **prudent,** prudential, politic, careful, provident, **considerate,** circumspect, sapient, **thoughtful,** reflective, reflecting; **discreet;** discriminative, discriminating; **well-advised,** well-judged, enlightened

ADVS 20 **intelligently, understandingly,** knowingly, discerningly; **reasonably,** rationally, sensibly; **smartly, cleverly; shrewdly,** artfully, cunningly; **wisely,** sagaciously, astutely; **judiciously, prudently,** discreetly, providently, considerately, circumspectly, thoughtfully

921 WISE PERSON

NOUNS 1 **wise man, wise woman, sage,** sapient, man *or* woman of wisdom; **master, mistress,** authority, mastermind, master spirit of the age, oracle; **philosopher,** thinker, lover of wisdom; "he who, seeing the furthest, has the deepest love for mankind"—Maurice Maeterlinck; rabbi; doctor; great soul, mahatma, guru, rishi; *starets* <Russ>, elder, wise old man, elder statesman; illuminate; seer; mentor; intellect, man of intellect; mandarin, **intellectual** 929; savant, **scholar** 929.3; logician, dialectician, sophist, syllogist, metaphysician

2 Solomon, Socrates, Plato, Mentor, Nestor, Confucius, Buddha, Gandhi, Albert Schweitzer, Martin Luther King Jr

3 **the wise,** the intelligent, the sensible, the prudent, the knowing, the understanding

4 Seven Wise Men of Greece, Seven Sages, Seven Wise Masters; Solon, Chilon, Pittacus, Bias, Periander, Epimenides, Cleobulus, Thales

5 Magi, Three Wise Men, Wise Men of the East, Three Kings; Three Kings of Cologne; Gaspar *or* Caspar, Melchior, Balthasar

6 **wiseacre,** wisehead, wiseling, **witling,** wisenheimer <nf>, wise guy, smart ass <nf>; wise fool; Gothamite, wise man of Gotham, wise man of Chelm

922 UNINTELLIGENCE

NOUNS 1 **unintelligence,** unintellectuality <old>, unwisdom, unwiseness, intellectual *or* mental weakness; **senselessness, witlessness, mindlessness,** brainlessness, primal stupidity, *Urdummheit* <Ger>, reasonlessness, lackwittedness, lackbrainedness, slackwittedness, slackmindedness; **irrationality;** ignorance 930; **foolishness** 922; incapacity, ineptitude; low IQ, low mental age

2 **unperceptiveness,** imperceptiveness, insensibility, impercipience *or* impercipiency, undiscerningness, unapprehendingness, **incomprehension,** nonunderstanding; **blindness,** mindblindness, purblindness; **unawareness,** lack of awareness, unconsciousness, lack of consciousness; **shortsightedness,** nearsightedness, dimsightedness

3 **stupidity,** stupidness, *bêtise* <Fr>, **dumbness** <nf>, **doltishness,** boobishness, duncery <old>, dullardism, blockishness, cloddishness, lumpishness, sottishness, **asininity,** ninnyism, simplemindedness, simpletonianism; oafishness, oafdom, yokelism, loutishness; **density,** denseness, opacity; grossness, crassness, crudeness, boorishness; **dullness,** dopiness <nf>, **obtuseness,** sluggishness, bovinity, cowishness, slowness, lethargy, stolidity, hebetude; **dim-wittedness,** dimness, **dull-wittedness,** slow-wittedness, beefwittedness, dull-headedness, **thick-wittedness,** thick-headedness, unteachability, ineducability; wrongheadedness

4 <nf terms> **blockheadedness,** woodenheadedness, klutziness, dunderheadedness, goofiness, jolterheadedness *or* joltheadedness <Brit>, chowderheadedness, chuckleheadedness, beetleheadedness, chumpiness, numskulledness *or* numskullery, cabbageheadedness, sapheadedness, muttonheadedness, meatheadedness, fatheadedness, boneheadedness, knuckleheadedness, blunderheadedness

5 **muddleheadedness,** addleheadedness, addlepatedness, puzzleheadedness

6 **empty-headedness,** empty-mindedness, absence of mind, airheadedness *and* bubbleheadedness <nf>; **vacuity,** vacuousness, vacancy, vacuum, emptiness, mental void, blankness, hollowness, inanity, vapidity, jejunity

7 **superficiality, shallowness, unprofundity,** lack of depth, unprofoundness, thinness; shallowwittedness, shallow-mindedness; **frivolousness,** flightiness, lightness, fluffiness, frothiness, volatility, dizziness *and* ditziness <nf>

8 **feeblemindedness,** weak-mindedness; infirmity, weakness, feebleness, softness, mushiness <nf>

9 **mental deficiency,** mental retardation, amentia, mental handicap, subnormality, mental defectiveness; brain damage; **arrested development,** infantilism, retardation, retardment, backwardness; **simplemindedness,** simplewittedness, simpleness, simplicity; **idiocy,** idiotism <old>, profound idiocy, **imbecility, halfwittedness,** blithering idiocy; moronity, moronism,

cretinism; mongolism, mongolianism, mongoloid idiocy, Down's syndrome; insanity 926

10 **senility,** senilism, senile weakness, senile debility, caducity, decreptitude, senectitude, decline; **childishness, second childhood, dotage, dotardism;** anility; senile dementia, senile psychosis, Alzheimer's disease

11 **puerility,** puerilism, immaturity, **childishness; infantilism,** babyishness

VERBS 12 **be stupid,** show ignorance, not have all one's marbles; drool, slobber, drivel, dither, blither, blather, maunder, dote, burble; not see an inch beyond one's nose, not have enough sense to come in out of the rain, not find one's way to first base; lose one's mind *or* marbles; not be all there; have a low IQ

ADJS 13 **unintelligent,** unintellectual <old>, **unthinking, unreasoning, irrational,** unwise, inept, **not bright;** ungifted, untalented; **senseless,** insensate; **mindless, witless, reasonless, brainless,** pin-brained, pea-brained, of little brain, headless, empty-headed; **lackwitted,** lackbrained, slackwitted, slackminded, lean-minded, lean-witted, short-witted; **foolish** 922.8; **ignorant** 930.12

14 **undiscerning, unperceptive,** imperceptive, impercipient, insensible, unapprehending, uncomprehending, nonunderstanding; **shortsighted,** myopic, nearsighted, dim-sighted; **blind,** purblind, mind-blind, blind as a bat; blinded, blindfold, blindfolded

15 **stupid, dumb,** dullard, **doltish,** blockish, klutzy *and* klutzish <nf>, duncish, duncical, cloddish, clottish <Brit>, chumpish <nf>, lumpish, **oafish,** boobish, sottish, **asinine,** lamebrained, Boeotian; **dense,** thick <nf>, opaque, gross, crass, fat; bovine, cowish, beef-witted, beef-brained, beefheaded; unteachable, ineducable; wrongheaded

16 **dull,** dull of mind, **dopey** <nf>, **obtuse,** blunt, dim, wooden, heavy, sluggish, slow, **slow-witted,** hebetudinous, **dim-witted, dull-witted,** blunt-witted, dull-brained, dull-headed, dull-pated, **thick-witted,** thick-headed, thick-pated, thick-skulled, thick-brained, fat-witted, gross-witted, gross-headed

17 <nf terms> **blockheaded,** woodenheaded, stupidheaded, dumbheaded, dunderheaded, blunderheaded, clueless *or* jolterheaded *or* joltheaded *or* jingle-brained <Brit>, chowderheaded, chuckleheaded, beetleheaded, nitwitted, numskulled, cabbageheaded, pumpkin-headed, sapheaded, lunkheaded, muttonheaded, meatheaded, fatheaded, boneheaded, knuckleheaded, clodpated; dead from the neck up, dead above *or* between the ears, muscle-bound between the ears; featherheaded, airheaded, bubbleheaded, out to lunch, lunchy, dufus, dufus-assed, spastic, spazzy, three bricks shy of a load, without brain one, not playing with a full deck, not sixteen ounces to the pound, not all there, soft in the head

18 **muddleheaded, fuddlebrained** *and* scramblebrained <nf>, mixed-up, muddled, addled, addleheaded, **addlepated,** addlebrained, muddybrained, puzzleheaded, blear-witted; dizzy <nf>, muzzy, foggy

19 **empty-headed,** empty-minded, empty-noddled, empty-pated, empty-skulled; **vacuous,** vacant, empty, hollow, inane, vapid, jejune, blank, airheaded *and* bubbleheaded <nf>; **rattlebrained,** rattleheaded; scatterbrained 985.16

20 **superficial, shallow, unprofound;** shallow-witted, shallow-minded, shallow-brained, shallow-headed, shallow-pated; **frivolous,** dizzy *and* ditzy <nf>, flighty, light, volatile, frothy, fluffy, **featherbrained, birdwitted, birdbrained**

21 **feebleminded, weak-minded,** weak, feeble, infirm, soft, soft in the head, weak in the upper story <nf>

22 **mentally deficient,** mentally defective, mentally handicapped, retarded, **mentally retarded,** backward, arrested, subnormal, not right in the head, **not all there** <nf>; **simpleminded,** simplewitted, simple, simpletonian; **half-witted,** half-baked <nf>; **idiotic, moronic, imbecile,** imbecilic, cretinous, cretinistic, mongoloid, spastic <nf>; crackbrained, cracked, crazy; babbling, driveling, slobbering, drooling, blithering, dithering, maundering, burbling; brain-damaged

23 **senile,** decrepit, doddering, doddery; **childish,** childlike, in one's second childhood, **doting**

24 **puerile,** immature, **childish;** childlike; **infantile,** infantine; **babyish,** babish

ADVS 25 **unintelligently, stupidly;** insensately, foolishly

923 FOOLISHNESS

NOUNS 1 **foolishness, folly,** foolery, foolheadedness, **stupidity, asininity,** *niaiserie* <Fr>; *bêtise* <Fr>; **inanity, fatuity,** fatuousness; ineptitude; **silliness; frivolousness,** frivolity, giddiness; triviality, triflingness, nugacity, desipience; **nonsense,** tomfoolery, poppycock; **senselessness, insensateness, witlessness, thoughtlessness,** brainlessness, mindlessness; **idiocy, imbecility; craziness, madness,** lunacy, **insanity,** daftness; **eccentricity, queerness,** crankiness, crackpottedness; weirdness; screwiness *and* nuttiness *and* wackiness *and* goofiness *and* daffiness *and* battiness *and* sappiness <nf>;

zaniness, zanyism, **clownishness, buffoonery,** clowning, fooling *or* horsing *or* dicking around <nf>

2 **unwiseness,** unwisdom, **injudiciousness, imprudence;** indiscreetness, **indiscretion,** inconsideration, thoughtlessness, witlessness, inattention, unthoughtfulness, lack of sensitivity; **unreasonableness, unsoundness, unsensibleness,** senselessness, reasonlessness, **irrationality, unreason,** inadvisability; recklessness; childishness, immaturity, puerility, callowness; gullibility, bamboozlability <nf>; inexpedience 996; unintelligence 922; pompousness, stuffiness

3 **absurdity,** absurdness, **ridiculousness;** ludicrousness 488.1; **nonsense,** nonsensicality, stuff and nonsense, codswallop <Brit nf>, horseshit *and* bullshit <nf>; **preposterousness,** fantasticalness, monstrousness, wildness, **outrageousness**

4 <foolish act> **folly, stupidity,** act of folly, absurdity, *sottise* <Fr>, foolish *or* stupid thing, dumb thing to do <nf>; fool *or* fool's trick, dumb trick <nf>; **imprudence, indiscretion,** imprudent *or* unwise step; blunder 975.5, blooper <nf>, gaffe

5 stultification; infatuation; trivialization

VERBS 6 **be foolish;** be stupid 922.12; **act** *or* **play the fool;** get funny, do the crazy act *or* bit *or* shtick <nf>; **fool,** tomfool <nf>, **trifle,** frivol; **fool** *or* **horse around** <nf>, dick around <nf>, clown, clown around; **make a fool of oneself,** make a monkey of oneself <nf>, stultify oneself, invite ridicule, put oneself out of court, play the buffoon; **lose one's head, take leave of one's senses,** go haywire; pass from the sublime to the ridiculous; strain at a gnat and swallow a camel; tilt at windmills; tempt fate, never learn

7 stultify, infatuate, turn one's head, befool; gull, dupe; **make a fool of,** make a monkey of *and* play for a sucker *and* put on <nf>

ADJS 8 **foolish,** fool <nf>, foolheaded <nf>, **stupid, dumb** <nf>, clueless <Brit nf>, **asinine,** wet <Brit>; buffoonish; **silly,** apish, dizzy <nf>; **fatuous,** fatuitous, inept, **inane;** futile; **senseless, witless, thoughtless,** insensate, brainless; **idiotic,** moronic, imbecile, imbecilic, spastic <nf>; **crazy, mad,** daft, **insane;** infatuated, besotted, credulous, gulled, befooled, beguiled, fond, doting, gaga; sentimental, maudlin; dazed, fuddled

9 <nf terms> **screwy, nutty,** cockeyed, wacky, goofy, daffy, loony, batty, sappy, kooky, flaky, damn-fool, out of it, out to lunch, lunchy, dorky, dippy, bird-brained, spaced-out, doodle-brained, lame, ditzy, dizzy, loony-tune, dopey, fluffheaded, loopy, scatty, zerking

10 **unwise,** injudicious, **imprudent,** unpolitic, impolitic, contraindicated, **counterproductive;** indiscreet; inconsiderate, thoughtless, mindless, witless, unthoughtful, unthinking, unreflecting, unreflective; **unreasonable, unsound, unsensible,** senseless, insensate, reasonless, **irrational,** reckless, inadvisable; inexpedient 995.5; **ill-advised, ill-considered,** ill-gauged, ill-judged, ill-imagined, ill-contrived, ill-devised, on the wrong track, unconsidered; unadvised, misadvised, misguided; undiscerning; unforseeing, unseeing, shortsighted, myopic; suicidal, self-defeating

11 **absurd, nonsensical,** insensate, ridiculous, laughable, ludicrous 488.4; **foolish, crazy;** preposterous, cockamamie <nf>, fantastic, fantastical, grotesque, monstrous, wild, weird, **outrageous,** incredible, beyond belief, *outré* <Fr>, extravagant, **bizarre;** high-flown

12 foolable, befoolable, gullible, bamboozlable <nf>; naive, artless, guileless, inexperienced, impressionable; malleable, like putty; persuasible, biddable

ADVS 13 foolishly, stupidly, sillily, idiotically; **unwisely,** injudiciously, imprudently, indiscreetly, inconsiderately; myopically, blindly, senselessly, unreasonably, thoughtlessly, witlessly, imsensately, unthinkingly; absurdly, ridiculously

924 FOOL

NOUNS 1 **fool, damn fool,** tomfool, perfect fool, born fool; *schmuck* <Yiddish>; **ass,** jackass, stupid ass, egregious ass; zany, **clown, buffoon,** doodle; sop, milksop; mome <old>, mooncalf, softhead; figure of fun; **lunatic** 926.15; **ignoramus** 930.8

2 **stupid person, dolt, dunce,** clod, Boeotian, **dullard,** *niais* <Fr>, donkey, yahoo, thickwit, **dope, nitwit,** dimwit, lackwit, half-wit, lamebrain, putz, lightweight, witling

3 <nf terms> **chump, boob,** booby, sap, prize sap, klutz, basket case, dingbat, dingdong, ding-a-ling, **ninny,** ninnyhammer, **nincompoop,** looby, noddy, saphead, mutt, jerk, jerk-off, asshole, goof, schlemiel, sawney <Brit>, galoot, gonzo, dumbo, dweeb, dropshop, dipshit, nerd, twerp, yo-yo

4 <nf terms> **blockhead, airhead,** bubblehead, fluffhead, featherhead, woodenhead, dolthead, dumbhead, dummy, dum-dum, dumbo, dumb cluck, dodo head, doodoohead, dumbbell, dumb bunny, stupidhead, dullhead, bufflehead, bonehead, jughead, thickhead, thickskull, numskull, putz, lunkhead, chucklehead, knucklehead, chowderhead, headbanger *and* jolterhead <Brit>, muttonhead, beefhead, meathead, noodle, noodlehead, thimblewit, pinhead, pinbrain, peabrain, cabbagehead,

pumpkin head, fathead, blubberhead, muddlehead, puzzlehead, addlebrain, addlehead, addlepate, tottyhead <old>, puddinghead, stupe, mushhead, blunderhead, dunderhead, dunderpate, clodpate, clodhead, clodpoll, jobbernowl *and* gaby *and* gowk <Brit>, vegetable, dim-bulb, twit, sucker

5 **oaf, lout,** boor, lubber, oik <Brit>, **gawk,** gawky, **lummox,** yokel, rube, hick, hayseed, bumpkin, clod, clodhopper

6 **silly,** silly Billy <nf>, **silly ass, goose**

7 **scatterbrain,** scatterbrains *and* shatterbrain *or* shatterplate <old>, ditz <nf>, **rattlebrain,** rattlehead, rattlepate, **harebrain,** featherbrain, shallowbrain, shallowpate <old>, featherhead, giddybrain, giddyhead, giddypate, **flibbertigibbet**

8 **idiot,** driveling *or* blithering *or* adenoidal *or* congenital idiot; **imbecile, moron, half-wit,** natural, natural idiot, born fool, natural-born fool, mental defective, defective; cretin, basket case *and* spastic *and* spaz <nf>; simpleton, simp <nf>, juggins *and* jiggins <nf>, clot *and* berk <Brit nf>, golem

9 **dotard,** senile; fogy, **old fogy,** fuddy-duddy, old fart *or* fud

925 SANITY

NOUNS 1 **sanity, saneness,** sanemindedness, soundness, **soundness of mind,** soundmindedness, sound mind, healthy mind, right mind <nf>, senses, reason, **rationality,** reasonableness, intelligibility, lucidity, coherence, stability, balance, wholesomeness; normalness, normality, normalcy; **mental health;** mental hygiene; mental balance *or* poise *or* equilibrium; sobriety, sober senses; a sound mind in a sound body, a healthy mind in a healthy body; contact with reality; lucid interval; knowing right from wrong; good sense, common sense, wits

VERBS 2 **come to one's senses,** sober down *or* up, recover one's sanity *or* balance *or* equilibrium, get things into proportion; see in perspective; have all one's marbles <nf>; have a good head on one's shoulder; have one's wits about one

3 **bring to one's senses,** bring to reason

ADJS 4 **sane,** sane-minded, not mad, **rational,** reasonable, sensible, **lucid,** normal, wholesome, clearheaded, clearminded, sober, balanced, **sound,** mentally sound, of sound mind, *compos mentis* <L>, sound-minded, healthy-minded, right, right in the head, **in one's right mind,** in possession of one's faculties *or* senses, together *and* all there <nf>; in touch with reality; with both oars in the water *and* playing with a full deck <nf>

926 INSANITY, MANIA

NOUNS 1 **insanity,** insaneness, unsaneness, **lunacy, madness,** *folie* <Fr>, **craziness, daftness,** oddness, strangeness, queerness, abnormality; loss of touch *or* contact with reality, loss of mind *or* reason; dementedness, dementia, athymia, brainsickness, mindsickness, mental sickness, sickness; **criminal insanity,** homicidal mania, hemothymia; **mental illness, mental disease;** brain damage; rabidness, **mania,** furor; alienation, aberration, mental disturbance, **derangement,** distraction, disorientation, mental derangement *or* disorder, unbalance, mental instability, unsoundness, **unsoundness of mind;** unbalanced mind, diseased *or* unsound mind, **sick mind,** disturbed *or* troubled *or* clouded mind, shattered mind, mind overthrown *or* unhinged, darkened mind, disordered mind *or* reason; senselessness, witlessness, reasonlessness, irrationality; possession, pixilation; mental deficiency 922.9

2 <nf terms> **nuttiness,** craziness, daffiness, battiness, screwiness, goofiness, kookiness, wackiness, dottiness, pottiness, *mishegas* <Yiddish>, looniness, lunchiness, balminess; bats in the belfry, a screw loose, one wheel in the sand, one sandwich short of a picnic; lame brains

3 **psychosis,** psychopathy, psychopathology, psychopathic condition; certifiability; **neurosis;** psychopathia sexualis, sexual pathology 75.18; pathological drunkenness *or* intoxication, dipsomania; pharmacopsychosis, drug addiction 87.1; moral insanity, psychopathic personality, *folie du doute* and *folie à deux* <Fr>, abulia 362.4

4 **schizophrenia, dementia praecox,** mental dissociation, dissociation of personality; catatonic schizophrenia, catatonia, residual schizophrenia, hebephrenia, hebephrenic schizophrenia; schizothymia; schizophasia; thought disorder; schizoid personality, split personality, schizotypal personality; **paranoia,** paraphrenia, paranoiac *or* paranoid psychosis; paranoid schizophrenia; schizoaffective disorder

5 **depression, melancholia,** depressive psychosis, dysthymia, barythymia, lypothymia, "moping, melancholy and moonstruck madness"—Milton; melancholia hypochrondriaca; involutional melancholia *or* psychosis; stuporous melancholia, melancholia attonita; flatuous melancholia; melancholia religiosa; postpartum depression; **manic-depressive disorder, manic-depression, bipolar disorder;** cyclothymia, poikilothymia, mood swings

6 **rabies, hydrophobia,** lyssa, canine madness; dumb *or* sullen rabies, paralytic rabies; furious rabies

7 **frenzy, furor,** fury, maniacal excitement, fever, **rage; seizure,** attack, acute episode, episode, **fit,** paroxysm, spasm, **convulsion; snit,** *crise* <Fr>; amok, murderous insanity *or* frenzy, homicidal mania, hemothymia; psychokinesia; furor epilepticus

8 **delirium,** deliriousness, brainstorm; calenture of the brain, afebrile delirium, lingual delirium, delirium mussitans; incoherence, wandering, raving, ranting; exhaustion delirium *or* infection, exhaustion psychosis

9 **delirium tremens,** mania *or* dementia a potu, delirium alcoholicum *or* ebriositatis

10 <nf terms> **the DT's,** the horrors, the shakes, the heebie-jeebies, the jimjams, the screaming meemies; blue Johnnies, blue devils, pink elephants, pink spiders, snakes, snakes in the boots

11 **fanaticism,** fanaticalness, **rabidness, overzealousness,** overenthusiasm, ultrazealousness, zealotry, zealotism, bigotry, perfervidness; extremism, extremeness, extravagance, excessiveness, overreaction; overreligiousness 692.3

12 **mania** <see lists>, **craze, infatuation, enthusiasm,** passion, fascination, crazy fancy, bug <nf>, rage, furor; manic psychosis; megalomania

13 **obsession,** prepossession, preoccupation, **hang-up** <nf>, **fixation,** tic, complex, fascination; hypercathexis; **compulsion,** morbid drive, obsessive compulsion, irresistible impulse; **monomania,** ruling passion, fixed idea, *idée fixe* <Fr>, one-track mind; **possession**

14 **insane asylum,** asylum, lunatic asylum, **madhouse,** mental institution, mental home, bedlam; **bughouse** *and* nuthouse *and* laughing academy *and* **loony bin** *and* **booby hatch** *and* funny farm <nf>; mental hospital, psychopathic hospital *or* ward, psychiatric hospital *or* ward; padded cell, rubber room

15 **lunatic, madman, madwoman,** dement, phrenetic *and* fanatic <old>, *fou* and *aliéné* <Fr>, non compos, *bacayaro* <Japanese>; bedlamite, Tom o' Bedlam; demoniac, energumen; mental case, **maniac,** raving lunatic; homicidal maniac, psychopathic killer, berserk *or* berserker; borderline case; mental defective, idiot 924.8; hypochondriac; melancholic, depressive; neurotic; headcase

16 <nf terms> **nut,** nutso, nutter, nutball, nutbar, nutcase, loon, loony, loony tune, headcase <Brit>, crazy, psycho, crackpot, screwball, weirdie, weirdo, kook, flake, crackbrain, *meshugana* <Yiddish>, fruitcake, schizo, wack, wacko, sickie, sicko, space cadet

17 **psychotic,** psycho <nf>, mental, mental case, certifiable case, **psychopath,** psychopathic case; psychopathic personality; paranoiac, paranoid; schizophrenic, schizophrene, schizoid; schiz *and* schizy *and* schizo <nf>; catatoniac; hebephreniac; manic-depressive; megalomaniac

18 **fanatic,** infatuate, **bug** <nf>, **nut** <nf>, **buff** *and* **fan** <nf>, freak <nf>, *fanatico* and *aficionado* <Sp>, devotee, **zealot, enthusiast,** energumen; monomaniac, crank <nf>; lunatic fringe

19 psychiatry, alienism, psychiatric care, psychotherapy; psychiatrist, alienist, psychotherapist

VERBS 20 **be insane, be out of one's mind,** not be in one's right mind, not be right in the head, **not be all there** <nf>, have a demon *or* devil; have bats in the belfry *and* have a screw loose, not have all one's buttons *or* marbles <nf>, not play with a full deck *and* not have both oars in the water <nf>; **wander, ramble; rave,** rage, **rant,** have a fit; dote, babble; drivel, drool, slobber, slaver; froth *or* foam at the mouth, run mad, run amok, go berserk

21 **go mad, take leave of one's senses,** lose one's mind *or* senses *or* reason *or* wits, **crack up,** go off one's head <nf>

22 <nf terms> **go crazy, go bats,** go cuckoo, go bughouse, go nuts, go nutso, go out of one's gourd *or* skull *or* tree, go off one's nut *or* rocker, go off the track *or* trolley, go off the deep end, blow one's top *or* stack, pop one's cork, flip one's lid *or* wig, wig out, go ape *or* apeshit, schiz out, go bananas, go crackers *and* go bonkers <Brit>, go bonzo, blow one's mind, freak out, flip out, go hog wild, go round the bend <Brit>, have a screw loose, have bats in one's belfry, have rocks in one's head, lose one's marbles

23 addle the wits, **affect one's mind, go to one's head**

24 **madden,** dement, **craze,** mad <old>, make mad, send mad, **unbalance,** unhinge, undermine one's reason, **derange,** distract, frenzy, shatter, **drive insane** *or* mad *or* **crazy,** put *or* send out of one's mind, overthrow one's mind *or* reason, drive up the wall <nf>

25 **obsess, possess,** beset, infatuate, **preoccupy,** be uppermost in one's thoughts, have a thing about <nf>; grip, hold, get a hold on, not let go; **fixate; drive,** compel, impel

ADJS 26 **insane,** unsane, **mad,** stark-mad, mad as a hatter, mad as a march hare, **stark-staring mad,** maddened, **sick,** crazed, **lunatic,** moonstruck, **daft, non compos mentis,** non compos, *baca* <Japanese>, **unsound,** of unsound mind, **demented, deranged,** deluded, disoriented, unhinged, **unbalanced,** unsettled, distraught, wandering, mazed, crackbrained, brainsick, sick *or* soft in the head, not right, not in one's right mind, **touched,** touched in the head, **out of one's mind,** out of one's senses *or* wits, bereft of reason, reasonless, irrational, deprived of reason, senseless, witless; hallucinated; manic; queer, queer in the head, odd, strange, off, flighty <old>; abnormal 870.9, mentally deficient 921.22

27 <nf terms> **crazy, nutty,** daffy, dotty, dippy, crazy as a bedbug *or* coot *or* loon, loony, loony-tune, goofy, wacky, balmy *or* barmy, flaky, kooky, potty, batty, ape, apeshit, wiggy, lunchy, out to lunch, bonzo, bats, nuts, nutso, nutty as a fruitcake, fruity, fruitcakey, screwy, screwball, screwballs, crackers <Brit>, bananas, bonkers <Brit>, loopy, beany, buggy, bughouse, bugs, cuckoo, slaphappy, flipped, freaked-out, off-the-wall, gaga, haywire, off in the upper story, off one's nut *or* rocker, off the track *or* trolley, off the hinges, round the bend <Brit>, minus some buttons, nobody home, with bats in the belfry, just plain nuts, loco, mental <Brit>, psycho, cracked, not right in the head, tetched, off one's head, out of one's head, out of one's gourd *or* skull, out of one's tree, not all there, *meshuga* or *meshugga* <Yiddish>, not tightly wrapped, three bricks shy of a load, rowing with one oar in the water, up the wall, off the wall, schizzy, schizoid, schizo

28 **psychotic, psychopathic, psychoneurotic, mentally ill,** mentally sick, certifiable; sociopathic; traumatized, deluded, disturbed, neurotic; schizophrenic, schizoid, schiz *or* schizy <nf>; hypochondriacal; dissociated, disconnected; depressed, depressive; manic; manic-depressive; maniacal; paranoiac, **paranoid;** catatonic; brain-damaged, brain-injured

29 **possessed,** possessed with a demon *or* devil, **pixilated, bedeviled,** demonized, devil-ridden, demonic, demonical, demoniacal

30 **rabid, maniac** *or* **maniacal,** manic, raving mad, stark-raving mad, **frenzied, frantic,** frenetic; **mad,** madding, **wild, furious, violent;** desperate; hysterical, **beside oneself,** like one possessed, uncontrollable; **raving, raging,** ranting; frothing *or* foaming at the mouth; **amok, berserk,** running wild; maenadic, corybantic, bacchic, Dionysiac

31 **delirious,** out of one's head <nf>, off one's head <nf>, off, deluded; **giddy,** dizzy, lightheaded; hallucinating, **wandering, rambling, raving, ranting,** babbling, incoherent

32 **fanatic, fanatical, rabid; overzealous,** ultrazealous, **overenthusiastic,** zealotic, bigoted, perfervid; **extreme,** extremist, extravagant, inordinate; **unreasonable, irrational; wild-eyed,** wild-looking, haggard; overreligious

33 **obsessed, possessed,** prepossessed, infatuated, preoccupied, fixated, **hung up** <nf>, besotted, gripped, held; monomaniac *or* monomaniacal

34 **obsessive,** obsessional; **obsessing, possessing, preoccupying,** gripping, holding; driving, impelling, **compulsive, compelling**

ADVS **35** madly, insanely, crazily; deliriously; fanatically, rabidly, etc

36 **manias by subject**

<activity> ergasiomania
<acute mania> hypermania
<alcohol> alcoholomania
<alcoholic beverages> dipsomania
<animals> zoomania
<ablutomania> bathing
<Beatles> Beatlemania
<becoming larger> macromania
<becoming smaller> micromania
<bed rest> clinomania
<bees> apimania
<being in vehicles> amaxomania
<birds> ornithomania
<blushing> erythromania
<book theft> bibliokleptomania
<books> bibliomania
<bullets> ballistomania
<buying> oniomania
<cats> ailuromania
<China> Chinamania
<cliffs> cremnomania
<complaints> paramania
<counting> arithmomania
<crossing bridges> gephyromania
<crowds> demomania *or* ochlomania
<dancing> choreomania
<Dante> Dantomania
<death; the dead> necromania
<death> thanatomania
<deep melancholy> lypemania
<delirium tremens> tromomania
<demonic possession> cacodemonomania
<dogs> cynomania
<drinking water> hydrodipsomania
<drinking> potomania
<England> Anglomania
<erotica> eroticomania
<erotic literature> erotographomania
<falsities> pseudomania
<female lust> nymphomania
<fires> pyromania
<fish> ichthyomania
<flowers> anthomania
<food; eating> phagomania
<food> sitomania
<foreigners> xenomania
<foul speech> coprolalomania
<France> Francomania *or* Gallomania
<freedom> eleuthromania
<fur> doramania
<gaiety> cheromania
<genitals> edeomania
<Germany> Germanomania *or* Teutonomania
<God> theomania
<great wealth> cresomania *or* plutomania
<Greece> Grecomania
<grinding one's teeth> bruxomania
<hair> trichomania
<home> oikomania
<homesickness> philopatridomania
<horses> hippomania
<hypnosis> mesmeromania
<icons> iconomania
<idols> idolomania
<imagined disease> nosomania
<incurable insanity> acromania
<insects> entomomania
<Italy> Italomania
<lies; exaggerations> mythomania
<light> photomania
<lycanthropy> lycomania
<male lust> satyromania
<marriage> gamomania

<medicines> pharmacomania
<melancholia> tristimania
<men> andromania
<mice> musomania
<mild mania> hypomania *or* submania
<money> chrematomania
<moral insanity> pathomania
<movement> kinesomania
<murder> homicidomania
<music> melomania *or* musicomania
<nakedness> gymnomania
<narcotics> letheomania
<night> noctimania
<noise> phonomania
<novelty> kainomania
<nudity> nudomania
<nymphomania> hysteromania *or* oestromania *or* uteromania
<one’s own wisdom> sophomania
<one’s self> egomania
<one subject> monomania
<open spaces> agoramania
<opium> opiomania
<own importance> megalomania
<penis> mentulomania
<picking at growths> phaneromania
<pinching off one’s hair> trichorrhexomania
<plants> florimania
<pleasing delusions> amenomania
<pleasure> hedonomania
<politics> politicomania
<pornography> pornographomania
<postage stamps> timbromania
<priests> hieromania
<public employment> empleomania
<railroad travel> siderodromomania
<religion> entheomania
<reptiles> ophidiomania
<return home> nostomania
<running away> drapetomania
<Russia> Russomania
<satyriasis> gynecomania
<sea> thalassomania
<second coming of Christ> parousiamania
<several subjects> oligomania
<sexual pleasure> aphrodisiomania *or* erotomania
<sin> hamartomania
<sitting> kathisomania
<sleep> hypnomania
<snow> chionomania
<solitude> automania
<speech> lalomania
<spending> squandermania
<stealing> kleptomania
<stillness> eremiomania
<suicide> autophonomania
<sun> heliomania
<surgery> tomomania
<symmetry> symmetromania
<talking> logomania
<testicles> orchidomania
<theater> theatromania
<thinking> phronemomania
<travel> hodomania
<traveling> dromomania
<tuberculosis> phthisiomania
<United States> Americamania
<wandering> ecdemiomania
<wanderlust> poriomania
<washing, bathing> ablutomania
<water> hydromania
<wine> enomania *or* oinomania
<woods> hylomania
<words> verbomania
<work> ergomania
<writing for publication> typomania
<writing verse> metromania
<writing> graphomania *or* scribblemania *or* scribomania

37 manias by name

ablutomania <washing, bathing>
acromania <incurable insanity>
agoramania <open spaces>
agromania <living alone>
agyiomania <streets>
ailuromania <cats>
alcoholomania <alcohol>
amaxomania <being in vehicles>
amenomania <pleasing delusions>
Americamania <United States>
andromania <men>
Anglomania <Eng>
anthomania <flowers>
aphrodisiomania *or* erotomania <sexual pleasure>
apimania <bees>
arithmomania <counting>
automania <solitude>
autophonomania <suicide>
ballistomania <bullets>
Beatlemania <the Beatles>
bibliomania <books>
bibliokleptomania <book theft>
bruxomania <grinding one’s teeth>
cacodemonomania <demonic possession>
cheromania <gaiety>
Chinamania <Chin>
chionomania <snow>
choreomania <dancing>
chrematomania <money>
cleptomania <stealing>
clinomania <bed rest>
coprolalomania <foul speech>
cremnomania <cliffs>
cresomania <great wealth>
cynomania <dogs>
Dantomania <Dante>
demomania <crowds>
dipsomania <alcoholic beverages>
doramania <fur>
drapetomania <running away>
dromomania <traveling>
ecdemiomania <wandering>
edeomania <genitals>
egomania <one’s self>
eleuthromania <freedom>
empleomania <public employment>
enomania <wine>
entheomania <religion>
entomomania <insects>
eremiomania <stillness>
ergasiomania <activity>
ergomania <work>
eroticomania <erotica>
erotographomania <erotic literature>
erotomania <sexual desire>
erythromania <blushing>
etheromania <ether>
ethnomania <ethnic or racial autonomy>
florimania <plants>
Francomania <Fr>
Gallomania <Fr>
gamomania <marriage>
gephyromania <crossing bridges>
glazomania <list making>
Germanomania <Ger>
Gorbymania <Mikhail S Gorbachev>
graphomania <writing>
Grecomania <Greece>
gymnomania <nakedness>
gynecomania <male lust>
hamartomania <sin>
hedonomania <pleasure>
heliomania <sun>
hieromania <priests>
hippomania <horses>
hodomania <travel>
homicidomania <murder>
hydrodipsomania <drinking water>
hydromania <water>
hylomania <woods>
hypermania <acute mania>
hypnomania <sleep>
hypomania <mild mania>
hysteromania <female lust>
ichthyomania <fish>

iconomania <icons>
idolomania <idols>
Italomania <Italy>
kainomania <novelty>
kathisomania <sitting>
kinesomania <movement>
kleptomania <stealing>
lalomania <speech>
letheomania <narcotics>
litigiomania <legal disputes>
logomania <talking>
lycomania <lycanthropy>
lypemania <deep melancholy>
macromania <becoming larger>
megalomania <self-importance>
melomania <music>
mentulomania <penis>
mesmeromania <hypnosis>
metromania <writing>
micromania <becoming smaller>
monomania <one idea or subject>
musicomania <music>
musomania <mice>
mythomania <lying, exaggerations>
necromania <death; the dead>
nesomania <islands>
noctimania <night>
nosomania <imagined disease>
nostomania <homesickness>
nudomania <nudity>
nymphomania <female lust>
ochlomania <crowds>
oestromania <female lust>
oikomania <home>
oinomania <wine>
oligomania <several subjects>
oniomania <buying>
onomatomania <words, names>
ophidiomania <reptiles>
orchidomania <testicles>
ornithomania <birds>
paramania <complaints>
parousiamania <second coming of Christ>
pathomania <moral insanity>
phagomania <food; eating>
phaneromania <growths on one's body>
pharmacomania <medicines>
philopatridomania <homesickness>
phonomania <noise>
photomania <light>
phronemomania <thinking>
phthisiomania <tuberculosis>
plutomania <great wealth>
politicomania <politics>
poriomania <wanderlust>
pornographomania <pornography>
potomania <drinking; delirium tremens>
pseudomania <falsities>
pyromania <fire>
Russomania <Russ>
satyromania <male lust>
scribblemania <writing>
scribomania <writing>
siderodromomania <railroad travel>
sitomania <food>
sophomania <wisdom>
squandermania <spending>
submania <mild mania>
symmetromania <symmetry>
Teutonomania <Ger>
thalassomania <sea>
thanatomania <death>
theatromania <theater>
theomania <God>
timbromania <postage stamps>
tomomania <surgery>
trichomania <hair>
trichotillomania <pulling out one's hair>
tristimania <melancholia>
tromomania <delirium tremens>
Turkomania <Turk>
typomania <writing for publication>
uteromania <female lust>
verbomania <words>
xenomania <foreigners>
zoomania <animals>

927 ECCENTRICITY

NOUNS 1 **eccentricity, idiosyncrasy,** idiocrasy, erraticism, erraticness, queerness, oddity, peculiarity, strangeness, singularity, freakishness, freakiness, quirkiness, crotchetiness, dottiness, crankiness, crankism, crackpotism; whimsy, whimsicality; abnormality, anomaly, unnaturalness, irregularity, deviation, deviancy, differentness, divergence, aberration; nonconformity, unconventionality 868.2

2 **quirk, twist,** kink, crank, quip, trick, mannerism, **crotchet,** conceit, whim, maggot, maggot in the brain, bee in one's bonnet *or* head <nf>

3 **eccentric,** erratic, character; odd person 870.4; **nonconformist** 868.3, recluse 584.5

4 freak, character, crackpot, nut, screwball, weirdie, weirdo, kook, queer potato, oddball, flake, strange duck, odd fellow, crank, bird, goofus, wack, wacko

ADJS 5 **eccentric, erratic,** idiocratic, idiocratical, idiosyncratic, idiosyncratical, **queer,** queer in the head, **odd, peculiar,** strange, fey, singular, anomalous, freakish, funny; unnatural, abnormal, irregular, divergent, deviative, deviant, different, exceptional; unconventional 868.6; **crotchety,** quirky, dotty, maggoty <Brit>, cranky, crank, crankish, whimsical, twisted; solitary, reclusive, antisocial

6 <nf terms> **kooky, goofy,** birdy, funny, kinky, loopy, goofus, haywire, squirrely, screwy, screwball, nutty, wacky, flaky, oddball, wacko, lunch, out to lunch, nobody home, weird

928 KNOWLEDGE

NOUNS 1 **knowledge,** knowing, knowingness, ken; **command,** reach; **acquaintance, familiarity,** intimacy; private knowledge, privity; **information,** data, database, datum, items, facts, factual base, corpus; **certainty,** sure *or* certain knowledge 970; protocol, protocol statement *or* sentence *or* proposition; intelligence; practical knowledge, **experience, know-how, expertise,** métier; technic, technics, technique; self-knowledge; *ratio cognoscendi* <L>

2 **cognizance;** cognition, noesis; **recognition, realization; perception,** insight, apperception, sudden insight, illumination, dawning, aha reaction, flashing <nf>; **consciousness, awareness,**

mindfulness, note, notice; altered state of consciousness *or* ASC; **sense,** sensibility; appreciation, appreciativeness

3 **understanding, comprehension, apprehension,** intellection, prehension; conception, conceptualization, ideation; hipness *and* savvy <nf>; **grasp,** mental grasp, grip, **command,** mastery; precognition, familiarity, foreknowledge 961.3, clairvoyance 689.8; intelligence, wisdom 920; savoir-faire, *Aufklarung* <Ger>

4 **learning, enlightenment, education, schooling, instruction,** edification, illumination; acquirements, acquisitions, attainments, accomplishments, skills; sophistication; store of knowledge; liberal education; acquisition of knowledge 570

5 **scholarship, erudition,** eruditeness, **learnedness,** reading, letters; **intellectuality,** intellectualism; **literacy;** computer literacy, computeracy, numeracy; **culture, literary culture, high culture,** book learning, booklore; **bookishness,** bookiness, **pedantry,** pedantism, donnishness <Brit>; bluestockingism; bibliomania, book madness, bibliolatry, bibliophilism; classicism, classical scholarship, humanism, humanistic scholarship

6 **profound knowledge,** deep knowledge, total command *or* mastery; specialism, specialized *or* special knowledge; expertise, proficiency 413.1; wide *or* vast *or* extensive knowledge, generalism, general knowledge, interdisciplinary *or* cross-disciplinary knowledge; **encyclopedic knowledge,** polymathy, polyhistory, pansophy; **omniscience,** all-knowingness

7 slight knowledge 930.6

8 tree of knowledge, tree of knowledge of good and evil; forbidden fruit; bo *or* bodhi tree

9 **lore, body of knowledge,** corpus, body of learning, store of knowledge, system of knowledge, treasury of information; common knowledge; **canon;** literature, literature of the field, publications, materials; bibliography; encyclopedia, cyclopedia

10 **science,** -ology <see list>, **art, study, discipline; field,** field of inquiry, concern, province, domain, area, arena, sphere, branch *or* field of study, branch *or* department of knowledge, specialty, academic specialty, academic discipline; **technology, technics,** technicology, high technology, high-tech *or* hi-tech <nf>; social science, natural science; applied science, pure science, experimental science; Big Science

11 **scientist,** man of science; **technologist;** practical scientist, experimental scientist; boffin <Brit>; savant, **scholar** 929.3; authority, expert, maven <nf>; technocrat; intellectual; egghead <nf>

VERBS 12 **know, perceive, apprehend,** prehend, cognize, recognize, discern, see, make out; conceive, conceptualize; **realize, appreciate, understand, comprehend,** fathom; dig *and* savvy <nf>; wot *or* wot of <Brit nf>, ken <Scot>; have, possess, **grasp,** seize, have hold of; have knowledge of, be informed, be apprised of, command, master, have a good command of, have information about, be acquainted with, be conversant with, be cognizant of, be conscious *or* aware of; know something by heart *or* by rote *or* from memory

13 **know well, know full well,** know damn well *or* darn well <nf>, have a good *or* thorough knowledge of, be well-informed, be learned in, be proficient in, **be up on** <nf>, be master of, command, be thoroughly grounded in, retain, **have down pat** *or* **cold** <nf>, have it taped <Brit nf>, have at one's fingers' ends *or* fingertips, have in one's head, **know by heart** *or* rote, **know like a book,** know like the back of one's hand, **know backwards,** know backwards and forwards, **know inside out,** know down to the ground <nf>, **know one's stuff** *and* know one's onions <nf>, know a thing or two, know one's way around; be expert in; **know the ropes,** know all the ins and outs, know the score <nf>, know all the answers <nf>; know what's what

14 learn <acquire knowledge> 570.6,9–11; come to one's knowledge 551.15

ADJS 15 **knowing,** knowledgeable, informed; **cognizant, conscious, aware, mindful, sensible;** intelligent 920.12; **understanding, comprehending,** apprehensive, apprehending; **perceptive,** insightful, apperceptive, percipient, perspicacious, appercipient, prehensile; shrewd, sagacious, wise 920.17; omniscient, all-knowing

16 **cognizant of, aware of, conscious of, mindful of, sensible to** *or* **of, appreciative of,** appreciatory of, no stranger to, seized of <Brit>; privy to, in the secret, let into, in the know <nf>, behind the scenes *or* curtain; alive to, awake to; **wise to** <nf>, hep to *and* on to <nf>; streetwise, street-smart; apprised of, informed of; undeceived, undeluded

17 <nf terms> **hep, hip,** on the beam, go-go, **with it,** into, really into, groovy; chic, clued-up, clued in, in the know, trendy

18 **informed, enlightened, instructed,** versed, well-versed, educated, schooled, **taught;** posted, briefed, primed, trained; **up on,** up-to-date, abreast of, *au courant* <Fr>, *au fait* <Fr>, in the picture, wise to <nf>

19 **versed in, informed in,** read *or* well-read in, up on, strong in, at home in, master of, expert *or* authoritative in, proficient in, **familiar with,** at

home with, **conversant with, acquainted with,** intimate with

20 **well-informed,** well-posted, well-educated, **well-grounded, well-versed, well-read,** widely read

21 **learned, erudite, educated, cultured,** cultivated, lettered, literate, civilized, **scholarly,** scholastic, studious; wise 920.17; **profound,** deep, abstruse; **encyclopedic,** pansophic, polymath *or* polymathic, polyhistoric

22 **book-learned,** book-read, **literary,** book-taught, book-fed, book-wise, book-smart, **bookish,** booky, book-minded; book-loving, bibliophilic, bibliophagic; **pedantic,** donnish <Brit>, scholastic, inkhorn; **bluestocking**

23 **intellectual,** intellectualistic; **highbrow** *and* highbrowed *and* highbrowish <nf>; elitist

24 **self-educated,** self-taught, autodidactic

25 **knowable,** cognizable, recognizable, **understandable, comprehensible,** apprehendable, apprehensible, prehensible, graspable, seizable, discernible, conceivable, appreciable, perceptible, distinguishable, ascertainable, discoverable

26 **known, recognized,** ascertained, conceived, grasped, apprehended, prehended, seized, perceived, discerned, appreciated, **understood, comprehended,** realized; pat *and* **down pat** <nf>

27 **well-known,** well-understood, well-recognized, **widely known,** commonly known, universally recognized, generally *or* universally admitted; **familiar,** familiar as household words, household, **common, current; proverbial;** public, notorious; known by every schoolboy; talked-of, talked-about, in everyone's mouth, **on everyone's tongue** *or* **lips;** commonplace, trite 117.9, hackneyed, platitudinous, truistic

28 **scientific; technical, technological,** technicological; high-tech *or* hi-tech <nf>; **scholarly;** disciplinary

ADVS **29** **knowingly, consciously, wittingly,** with forethought, understandingly, intelligently, studiously, learnedly, eruditely, as every schoolboy knows

30 to one's knowledge, **to the best of one's knowledge,** as far as one can see *or* tell, as far as one knows, as well as can be said

31 **-ologies by name**

abiology <inanimate things>
acarology <lice and ticks>
acrology <initial sounds or signs>
adenology <glands>
aesthology <sensory organs>
agrology <soil>
alethology <truth>
algology *or* phycology <algae, seaweeds>
ambrology <amber>
anatripsology <friction>
andrology <male diseases>
angiology <blood vessels>
anorganology <inorganic things>
anthropology <mankind>
apiology *or* melittology <bees>
arachnology *or* araneology <spiders>
archeology *or* archaeology <ancient or historical artifacts>
archology <government>
areology <Mars>
argyrology <money boxes>
aristology <dining>
arthrology <joints>
asthenology <diseases of debility>
astrolithology <meteorites>
astrology <stellar and planetary influence>
atmology <water vapor>
audiology <hearing disorders>
auxology <growth>
axiology <values, ethics>
azoology <inanimate things>
bacteriology <bacteria>
balneology <therapeutic baths>
barology <weight>
batology <brambles>
bibliology <books>
bioecology <biological interrelationships>
biology <life, living things>
biometeorology <organic-atmospheric interrelationships>
bromatology <food>
brontology <thunder>
bryology *or* muscology <mosses>
Buddhology <Buddha, Buddhahood>
caliology <bird nests>
campanology <bells; bell-ringing>
carcinology <crustaceans>
cardiology <heart>
carpology *or* pomology <fruits>
cartology <maps>
cephalology <the head>
cetology <whales, dolphins>
cholology *or* choledology <bile>
choreology <dance notation>
chorology <geographical boundaries>
chrondrology <cartilage>
chronology <dates, time>
climatology <climate>
coleopterology <beetles>
conchology <shells>
cosmology <universe>
craniology <skull>
criminology <criminal behavior>
crustaceology <crustaceans>
cryology <snow and ice>
cryptology <codes and ciphers>
curiology <picture writing>
cyesiology <pregnancy>
cytology <cells>
cytopathology <cell pathology>
dactylology <fingers>
deltiology <picture postcards>
demology <human activities>
dendrochronology <tree-ring dating>
dendrology <trees, shrubs>
deontology <ethics>
dermatology <skin>
desmology <ligaments>
diabiology <the devil, devils>
dipteriology <flies>
dittology <double interpretation>
docimology <metal assaying>
dolorology <pain>
dosiology <dosage>
dysteleology <purposelessness>
ecclesiology <churches; church history>
ecology <environment>
edaphology <soils>
Egyptology <ancient Egypt>
eidology <mental imagery>
electrology <electricity>
embryology <embryos>
endocrinology <endocrine glands>

enterology <internal organs>
entomology <insects>
epiphuytology <plant diseases>
epistemology <human knowledge>
eremology <deserts>
ergology <work and its effects>
eschatology <last things, esp final judgment>
ethnology <races and ethnic groups>
ethology <animal behavior>
etiology <causes, esp of disease>
etymology <derivation and history of words>
exobiology <life on other planets>
faunology <animal distribution>
fetology <fetus>
fluviology <watercourses, rivers>
garbology *or* garbageology <garbage, refuse>
gastrology <stomach>
gemology <gemstones>
geology <Earth's crust>
geomorphology <origin of geological features>
geratology <approaching extinction>
gerontology <old age>
glaciology <glaciers>
glossology <linguistics>
gnotobiology <germ-free biology>
grammatology <systems of writing>
graphology <handwriting>
gynecology <women's health>
hagiology <saints>
hamartiology <sin>
hedonology <pleasure>
helcology <ulcers>
heliology <Sun>
helminthology <worms, esp parasitic worms>
hematology <blood>
heortology <religious festivals>
hepatology <liver>
heresiology <heresies>
herpetology <reptiles>
hierology <sacred things>
hippology <horses>
hippopathology <diseases of the horse>
histology *or* histiology <tissues and organs>
historology <history>
horology <time, clocks>
hydrology <water>
hyetology <rainfall>
hygiology <health and hygiene>
hygrology <humidity>
hymenology <membranes>
hymenopterology <wasps, bees, ants>
hypnology <sleep; hypnotism>
hysterology <uterus>
iatrology <healing, medicine>
ichnolithology *or* ichnology <fossil footprints>
ichthyology *or* piscology <fish>
immunology <immunity to diseases>
irenology <peace>
journology <newspapers>
kalology <beauty>
kinesiology <bodily movement>
lalopathology <speech therapy>
laryngology <larynx>
lexicology <word forms and meanings>
lepidopterology <butterflies, moths>
limnology <lakes and ponds>
lithology *or* lithoidology <rock, stone>
loimology <infectious diseases>
malacology <mollusks>
malacostracology <crustaceology>
mantology <divination>
mastology <mammals>
meteorology <atmosphere and weather>
metrology <weights and measures>
microbiology <microorganisms>
micrology <tiny things>
microseismology <earthquake tremors>
morphology <form, shape>
muscology <mosses>
musicology <music>
mycology <fungi>
myology <muscles>
myrmecology <ants>
naology <church buildings>
nasology *or* rhinology <nose>
neonatology <newborns>
nephology <clouds>
nephrology <kidneys>
neurology <nervous system>
neuropathology <nervous system pathology>
neurypnology <hypnotism>
nomology <law>
noology <intuition>
nosology <classification of diseases>
nostology <old age, geriatrics>
numerology <numbers>
numismatology <coins>
odontology <the teeth>
oenology *or* enology <wine>
olfactology <smells>
ombrology <rain>
oncology <tumors>
oneirology <dreams>
onomasiology *or* onomatology <names, naming>
ontology <being, metaphysics>
oology <eggs, esp birds'>
ophiology <snakes>
ophthalmology <eyes>
organology <body organs>
orismology <terminology>
ornithology <birds>
orology *or* oreology <mountains>
oryctology <fossils>
osmology <odors>
osteology <bones>
otolaryngology <ear, nose, throat>
otology <ear>
paleobiology <fossil life>
paleoethnology <prehistoric mankind>
paleoichtyology <fossil fishes>
paleontology <early history of life>
paleornithology <fossil birds>
paleopedology <early soils>
paleoetiology <explanation of past phenomena>
paleozoology *or* zoogeolology <fossil animals>
palynology <pollen, spores>
parapsychology <beyond psychology>
parasitology <parasites>
paroemiology <proverbs>
pathology <diseases>
pedology <soil science>
penology <punishment>
petrology *or* stromatology <rocks>
pharmacology <drugs>
phenology <natural cycles>
philology <languages>
phitology <political economy>
phlebology <blood vessels>
phonology <vocal sounds>
photology <light and optics>
phrenology <skull shape>
phycology <algae>
physicotheology <natural theology>
physiology <living body>
phytology <plants>
phytopathology <plant diseases>
phytophysiology <plant physiology>
phytoserology <plant viruses>
piscatology <fishing>
pistology <religious faith>
planetology <planets>
pleology <running water>
pneumatology <spirit>
pomology <fruits>
ponerology <evil>
posology <drug administration>
potamology <rivers>
proctology <anus, rectum>
promorphology <fundamental shapes and forms>

psephology <election statistics>
psychology <the mind>
psychonosology <mental diseases>
psychopathology <insanity>
psychophysiology <body and mind>
pteridology <ferns>
pterology <insect wings>
pterylology <feathers>
ptochology <pauperism, unemployment>
pyretology <fever>
pyrgology <towers>
pyrology <fire and heat>
radiology *or* Röntgenology <X-rays>
reflexology <reflexes and behavior>
rheology <flow and deformation of matter>
rhinology <nose>
roentgenology <medical X-rays>
runology <runes>
satanology <devil worship>
scatology <feces>
seismology <earthquakes>
selenology <the Moon>
semasiology <word meanings>
sematology *or* semeiology <symptoms>
semiology <signs, symbols>
serology <serums>
silphology <larval forms>
sinology <China>
siphonapterology <fleas>
sitology <diet, dietetics>
sociobiology <biology and behavior>
sociology <society>
somatology <organic bodies>
sophiology <ideas>
soteriology <salvation>
speciology <species>
spectrology <ghosts, phantoms>
speleology <caves>
spermatology <sperm>
sphygmoology <the pulse>
splanchnology <the viscera>
splenology <the spleen>
stereology <2-, 3-dimensional figures>
stoichiology <fundamental laws>
stomatology <mouth>
storiology <folklore>
suicidology <suicide>
symbology <symbols>
synchronology <comparative chronology>
synecology <plant, animal communities>
systematology <ordered arrangements>
taxology <scientific classification>
technology <mechanical and manufacturing arts>
tectology <structural morphology>
teleology <aims, determined ends>
teratology <tall tales; monsters>
terminology <system of names or terms>
thanatology <death>
thaumatology <miracles>
theology <divinity>
thermology *or* thermatology <heat>
therology <mammals>
thremmatology <plant or animal breeding>
threpsology <nutrition>
tidology <tides>
timbrology <stamps, stamp-collecting>
timology <values>
tocology <obstetrics>
tonology <tones, speech>
toxicology <poisons>
traumatology <wounds; shock>
tribology <friction; interacting surfaces>
trichology <hair>
typhology <blindness>
ufology <UFOs>
uranology <astronomy>
urbanology <cities>
urology <urogenital organs and diseases>
venereology <veneral disease>
vermiology <worms>
vexillology <flags>
victimology <victims>
virology <viruses>
vvulcanology <volcanoes>
xyloology <the structure of wood>
zoology <animal life>
zoonosology <animal diseases>
zoophysiology <animal physiology>
zymology *or* zymotechnology <fermentation>

32 -ologies by subject

<aims, determined ends> teleology
<ancient or historical artifacts> archeology
<animal behavior> ethology
<animal diseases> zoonosology
<animal distribution> faunology
<animal life> zoology
<animal physiology> zoophysiology
<ants> myrmecology
<anus, rectum> proctology
<astronomy> uranology
<atmosphere and weather> meteorology
<beauty> kalology
<bees> apiology *or* melittology
<beetles> coleopterology
<being, metaphysics> ontology
<bells; bell-ringing> campanology
<bile> chology *or* choledology
<biological interrelationships> bioecology
<bird nests> caliology
<birds> ornithology
<blindness> typhology
<blood vessels> angiology *or* phlebology
<blood> hematology
<body and mind> psychophysiology
<body organs> organology
<bones> osteology
<books> bibliology
<cartilage> chrondrology
<causes of disease> etiology
<caves> speleology
<cell pathology> cytopathology
<cells> cytology
<China> sinology
<church buildings> naology
<churches; church history> ecclesiology
<cities> urbanology
<classification of diseases> nosology
<clouds> nephology
<codes and ciphers> cryptology
<coins> numismatology
<comparative chronology> synchronology
<crustaceans> carcinology *or* crustaceology
<crustaceology> malacostracology
<dance notation> choreology
<dates, dating> chronology
<death> thanatology
<derivation and history of words> etymology
<deserts> eremology
<devil worship> satanology
<didactic literature> gnomology
<diet> sitology
<dining> aristology
<diseases of debility> asthenology
<diseases> pathology
<divination> mantology
<divinity> theology
<dosage> dosiology *or* dosology *or* posology
<double interpretation> dittology
<dreams> oneirology
<drugs> pharmacology
<ear> otology
<early history of life> paleontology
<early soils> paleopedology
<Earth's crust> geology
<earthquake tremors> microseismology

<earthquakes> seismology
<eggs> oology
<election statistics> psephology
<electricity> electrology
<embryos> embryology
<endocrine glands> endocrinology
<environment> ecology *or* environmentology
<evil> ponerology
<explanation of past phenomena> paleoetiology
<extinction> geratology
<eyes> ophthalmology
<feathers> pterylology
<female health and disease> gynecology
<fermentation> zymology *or* zymotechnology
<ferns> pteridology
<fetus> fetology
<fever> pyretology
<fingers> dactylology
<fire and heat> pyrology
<fish> ichthyology *or* piscology
<fishing> piscatology
<flags> vexillology
<fleas> siphonapterology
<flies> dipteriology
<flow and deformation of matter> rheology
<folklore> storiology
<food> bromatology
<form, shape> morphology
<fossil animals> paleozoology *or* zoogeolology
<fossil birds> paleoornithology
<fossil excrement> scatology
<fossil fishes> paleoichtyology
<fossil footprints> ichnolithology *or* ichnology
<fossil life> paleobiology
<fossils> oryctology
<friction> anatripsology
<fruits> carpology *or* pomology
<fundamental laws> stoichiology
<fundamental shapes and forms> promorphology
<fungi> mycology
<garbage, refuse> garbology *or* garbageology
<geographical boundaries> chorology
<germ-free biology> gnotobiology
<glands> adenology
<government> archology
<growth> auxology
<hair> trichology
<handwriting> graphology
<head> cephalology
<healing, medicine> iatrology
<health and hygiene> hygiology
<hearing disorders> audiology
<heart> cardiology
<heat> thermology *or* thermatology
<heresies> heresiology
<history> historology
<horses> hippology
<human activities> demology
<human knowledge> epistemology
<humidity> hygrology
<hypnotism> neurypnology
<ideas> sophiology
<immunity to diseases> immunology
<inanimate things> abiology *or* azoology
<infectious diseases> loimology
<initial sounds or signs> acrology
<inorganic things> anorganology
<insanity> psychopathology
<insect wings> pterology
<insects> entomology
<interacting surfaces> tribology
<internal organs> enterology
<intuition> noology
<joints> arthrology
<lakes and ponds> limnology
<language meaning> semasiology
<languages> philology
<larval forms> silphology
<larynx> laryngology
<last things, esp final judgment> eschatology
<law> nomology
<lice and ticks> acarology
<life on other planets> exobiology
<life, living things> biology
<ligaments> desmology
<light and optics> photology
<linguistics> glossology
<liver> hepatology
<living body> physiology
<male diseases> andrology
<mammals> mastology *or* therology
<mankind> anthropology
<maps> cartology
<Mars> areology
<mechanical and manufacturing arts> technology
<membranes> hymenology
<mental diseases> psychonosology
<mental imagery> eidology
<metal assaying> docimology
<meteorites> astrolithology
<microorganisms> microbiology
<miracles> thaumatology
<mollusks> mallacology
<monsters> teratology
<moral obligation> deontology
<mosses> bryology *or* muscology
<mountains> orology *or* oreology
<mouth diseases> stomatology
<muscles> myology
<names, naming> onomasiology *or* onomatology
<natural cycles> phenology
<natural theology> physicotheology
<nervous system> neurology
<newspapers> journology
<nose> nasology *or* rhinology
<nutrition> threpsology
<obstetrics> tocology
<odors> osmology
<old age, geriatrics> nostology
<old age> gerontology
<ordered arrangements> systematology
<organic bodies> somatology
<organic-atmospheric interrelationships> biometeorology
<pain> dolorology
<pathology of the nervous system> neuropathology
<peace> irenology
<physiology of the nervous system> neurophysology
<picture postcards> deltiology
<picture writing> curiology
<plant diseases> epiphuytology *or* phytopathology
<plant or animal breeding> thremmatology
<plant physiology> phytophysiology
<plant viruses> phytoserology
<plants> phytology
<poisons> toxicology
<political economy> phitology
<pollen> palynology
<pregnancy> cyesiology
<prehistoric mankind> paleoethnology
<proverbs> paroemiology
<punishment of crime> penology
<purposelessness> dysteleology
<races and peoples> ethnology
<rain> ombrology
<rainfall> hyetology
<religious faith> pistology
<religious festivals> heortology
<reptiles> herpetology
<rivers> potamology
<rock, stone> lithology *or* lithoidology

<rocks> petrology *or* stromatology
<runes> runology
<running water> pleology
<sacred things> hierology
<saints> hagiology
<salvation> soteriology
<scientific classification> taxology
<seaweeds> algology *or* phycology
<sensory organs> aesthology
<serums> serology
<shells> conchology
<sin> hamartiology
<skin> dermatology
<skull shape> phrenology
<skull> craniology
<sleep> hypnology
<smells> olfactology
<snakes> ophiology
<society> sociology
<soils> edaphology *or* pedology
<species> speciology
<spectroscopic analysis> spectrology
<sperm> spermatology
<spiders> arachnology *or* araneology
<spirit> pneumatology
<spleen> splenology
<stamps, stamp-collecting> timbrology
<stellar and planetary influence> astrology
<stomach> gastrology
<structural morphology> tectology
<structure of wood> xyloology
<suicide> suicidology
<Sun> heliology
<symptoms> sematology *or* semeiology
<system of names or terms> terminology
<teeth> odontology
<terminology> orismology
<the devil, devils> diabiology
<the mind> psychology
<the Moon> selenology
<the pulse> sphygmoology
<therapeutic agents> acology
<therapeutic baths> balneology
<thunder> brontology
<tides> tidology
<time, clocks> horology
<tiny things> micrology
<tissues and organs> histology *or* histiology
<towers> pyrgology
<tree-ring dating> dendrochronology
<trees> dendrology
<truth> alethology
<tumors> oncology
<ulcers> helcology
<universe> cosmology
<urogenital organs and diseases> urology
<uterus> hysterology
<values> timology
<victims> victimology
<viscera> splanchnology
<vocal sounds> phonology
<volcanoes> vulcanology
<wasps, bees, ants> hymenopterology
<water vapor> atmology
<water> hydrology
<weight> barology
<weights and measures> metrology
<whales and dolphins> cetology
<wine> oenology *or* enology
<words and meanings> lexicology
<work and its effects> ergology
<worms, esp parasitic worms> helminthology
<worms> vermiology
<wounds, shock> traumatology
<X-rays> radiology *or* Röentgenology

929 INTELLECTUAL

NOUNS **1 intellectual, intellect,** intellectualist, literate, member of the intelligentsia, white-collar intellectual; "someone whose mind watches itself"—Camus; brainworker, thinker; brain *and* rocket scientist *and* brain surgeon <nf>; **pundit, Brahmin, mandarin,** egghead *and* pointy-head <nf>; **highbrow** <nf>; wise man 921

2 intelligentsia, literati, illuminati; intellectual elite; clerisy

3 scholar, scholastic <old>, clerk *or* learned clerk <old>; a gentleman and a scholar; student 572; **learned person,** man of learning, giant of learning, colossus of knowledge, mastermind, **savant,** pundit; genius 413.12; polymath, polyhistor *or* polyhistorian, **mine of information,** walking encyclopedia; literary man, *littérateur* <Fr> *or* litterateur, **man of letters;** philologist, philologue; philomath, lover of learning; philosopher, philosophe; bookman; **academician,** academic, schoolman; classicist, classicalist, Latinist, humanist; Renaissance man *or* woman

4 bookworm, bibliophage; **grind** *and* greasy grind <nf>; **booklover, bibliophile,** bibliophilist, philobiblist, bibliolater, bibliolatrist; bibliomaniac, bibliomane

5 pedant; formalist, precisionist, precisian, purist, *précieux* <Fr>, **bluestocking,** *bas bleu* <Fr>, *précieuse* <Fr fem>; Dr Pangloss <Voltaire>, Dryasdust <Rev Dr Carlyle>

6 dilettante, half scholar, sciolist, **dabbler,** dabster, amateur, trifler, smatterer; grammaticaster, philologaster, criticaster, philosophaster, Latinitaster

930 IGNORANCE

NOUNS **1 ignorance,** ignorantness, **unknowingness,** unknowing, nescience; lack of information, knowledge-gap, hiatus of learning; empty-headedness, blankmindedness, vacuousness, vacuity, inanity; tabula rasa; **unintelligence** 922; **unacquaintance, unfamiliarity; greenness,** greenhornism, rawness, callowness, unripeness, green in the eye, **inexperience** 414.2; innocence, ingenuousness, simpleness, simplicity; crass *or* gross *or* primal *or* pristine ignorance; ignorantism, know-nothingism, obscurantism; agnosticism

2 "the mother of prejudice"—John Bright, "the dominion of absurdity"—J A Froude

3 incognizance, unawareness, unconsciousness, insensibility, unwittingness, nonrecognition; deniability; nonrealization, incomprehension; **unmindfulness;** mindlessness; blindness 30, deafness 49

4 unenlightenment, benightedness, benightment, dark, darkness; savagery, barbarism, paganism, heathenism, Gothicism; age of ignorance, dark age; rural idiocy

5 unlearnedness, inerudition, ineducation, unschooledness, unletteredness; **unscholarliness,**

unstudiousness; **illiteracy,** illiterateness, functional illiteracy, semiliteracy; **unintellectuality,** unintellectualism, Philistinism, bold ignorance

6 **slight knowledge,** vague notion, imperfect knowledge, a little learning, glimmering, glimpse <old>, smattering, **smattering of knowledge,** smattering of ignorance, **half-learning,** semi-learning, semi-ignorance, sciolism; **superficiality,** shallowness, surface-scratching; **dilettantism,** dilettantship, amateurism

7 **the unknown,** the unknowable, the strange, the unfamiliar, the incalculable; **matter of ignorance,** sealed book, riddle, enigma, mystery, puzzle 971.3; *terra incognita* <L>, unexplored ground *or* territory; frontier, frontiers of knowledge, **unknown quantity,** x, y, z, n; dark horse; guesswork, anybody's guess; complete blank; closed *or* sealed book; all Greek <nf>

8 **ignoramus, know-nothing;** no scholar, puddinghead, dunce, fool 924; simpleton; **illiterate;** aliterate; **lowbrow** <nf>; unintelligentsia, illiterati; **greenhorn,** greeny <nf>, beginner, tenderfoot, neophyte, novice, duffer <nf>; **dilettante,** dabbler 929.6; layperson; **middlebrow** <nf>

VERBS **9 be ignorant,** be green, have everything to learn, **know nothing,** know from nothing <nf>; wallow in ignorance; not know any better; **not know what's what,** not know what it is all about, not know the score <nf>, not be with it <nf>, not know any of the answers; not know the time of day *or* what o'clock it is, not know beans, not know the first thing about, not know one's ass from one's elbow <nf>, not know the way home, not know enough to come in out of the rain, not know chalk from cheese, **not know up from down,** not know which way is up

10 **be in the dark,** be blind, labor in darkness, walk in darkness, be benighted, grope in the dark, have nothing to go on, have a lot to learn

11 **not know,** not rightly know <nf>, know not, know not what, know nothing of, wot not of <Brit nf>, be innocent of, have no idea *or* notion *or* conception, **not have the first idea, not have the least** *or* **remotest idea,** be clueless *and* not have a clue <nf> not have idea one, not have the foggiest <nf>, **not pretend to say,** not take upon oneself to say; be stumped; not know the half of it; not know from Adam, not know from the man in the moon; wonder, wonder whether; half-know, have a little learning, scratch the surface, know a little, smatter, dabble, toy with, coquet with; pass, give up

ADJS **12 ignorant,** nescient, **unknowing,** uncomprehending, **know-nothing;** simple, **dumb** <nf>, empty, empty-headed, blank, blankminded, vacuous, inane, **unintelligent** 922.13; **ill-informed, uninformed, unenlightened,** unilluminated, unapprized, unposted <nf>, clueless <nf>, pig-ignorant <Brit nf>; **unacquainted, unconversant,** unversed, uninitiated, **unfamiliar,** strange to; **inexperienced** 414.17; **green,** callow, innocent, ingenuous, gauche, awkward, naive, unripe, raw; groping, tentative, unsure

13 **unaware, unconscious, insensible, unknowing, incognizant;** mindless, witless; unprehensive, unrealizing, nonconceiving, **unmindful,** unwitting, unsuspecting; unperceiving, impercipient, unhearing, unseeing, uninsightful; unaware of, in ignorance of, unconscious of, unmindful of, insensible to, out of it <nf>, not with it <nf>; **blind to, deaf to,** dead to, a stranger to; asleep, napping, **off one's guard,** caught napping, caught tripping

14 **unlearned, inerudite,** unerudite, **uneducated,** unschooled, uninstructed, untutored, unbriefed, untaught, unedified, unguided; ill-educated, misinstructed, misinformed, mistaught, led astray; hoodwinked, deceived; **illiterate,** functionally illiterate, unlettered, grammarless; **unscholarly,** unscholastic, unstudious; **unliterary, unread,** unbookish, unbook-learned, bookless <old>, unbooked; **uncultured,** uncultivated, unrefined, rude, Philistine; barbarous, pagan, heathen; Gothic; nonintellectual, **unintellectual; lowbrow** *and* lowbrowed *and* lowbrowish <nf>

15 **half-learned,** half-baked <nf>, half-cocked *and* half-assed <nf>, sciolistic; semiskilled; **shallow, superficial;** immature, sophomoric, sophomorical; **dilettante,** dilettantish, smattering, dabbling, amateur, amateurish, inexperienced; **wise in one's own conceit**

16 **benighted, dark,** in darkness, in the dark

17 **unknown,** unbeknown <nf>, unheard <old>, **unheard-of,** unapprehended, unapparent, unperceived, unsuspected; unexplained, unascertained; uninvestigated, unexplored; unidentified, unclassified, uncharted, unfathomed, unplumbed, virgin, untouched; undisclosed, unrevealed, undivulged, undiscovered, unexposed, sealed; **unfamiliar,** strange; incalculable, **unknowable,** incognizable, undiscoverable; enigmatic 522.17, mysterious, puzzling

ADVS **18 ignorantly, unknowingly,** unmindfully, unwittingly, witlessly, unsuspectingly, **unawares;** unconsciously, insensibly; for anything *or* aught one knows, not that one knows

INTERJS **19 God knows!,** God only knows!, Lord knows!, Heaven knows!, nobody knows!, damned if I know!, search me!, **beats me!,** beats the hell *or* heck *or* shit out of me!, your guess is as good as mine!, it has me guessing!, it's Greek to me!; **search me!,** you've got me!, I give up!, I pass!, **who knows?,** how should I know?, I don't know what!

931 THOUGHT

<exercise of the intellect>

NOUNS 1 **thought, thinking, cogitation,** cerebration, ideation, noesis, mentation, intellection, intellectualization, ratiocination; using one's head *or* noodle <nf>; workings of the mind; **reasoning** 935; **brainwork, headwork,** mental labor *or* effort, mental act *or* process, act of thought, mental *or* intellectual exercise; deep-think <nf>; **way of thinking,** logic, habit of thought *or* mind, thought-pattern; heavy thinking, straight thinking; conception, conceit <old>, conceptualization; abstract thought, imageless thought; excogitation, thinking out *or* through; thinking aloud; **idea** 932; creative thought 985.2

2 **consideration, contemplation, reflection, speculation, meditation, musing, rumination, deliberation,** lucubration, brooding, study, **pondering,** weighing, revolving, turning over in the mind, looking at from all angles, noodling *or* noodling around <nf>; lateral thought *or* thinking; advisement, counsel

3 **thoughtfulness,** contemplativeness, speculativeness, reflectiveness; **pensiveness,** wistfulness, reverie, musing, melancholy; **preoccupation, absorption, engrossment,** abstraction, brown study, intense *or* deep *or* profound thought; **concentration,** study, close study; deep thinking

4 **thoughts,** burden of one's mind, mind's content; inmost *or* innermost thoughts *or* mind, secret thoughts, mind's core, one's heart of hearts; **train of thought,** current *or* flow of thought *or* ideas, succession *or* sequence *or* chain of thought *or* ideas; **stream of consciousness; association,** association of ideas

5 **mature thought,** developed thought, ripe idea; **afterthought,** *arrière-pensée* <Fr>, *esprit d'escalier* <Fr>, second thought *or* thoughts; **reconsideration,** reappraisal, revaluation, rethinking, re-examination, review, thinking over

6 **introspection,** self-communion, self-counsel, self-consultation, subjective inspection *or* speculation, head trip <nf>

7 subject for thought, food for thought, something to chew on, something to get one's teeth into

VERBS 8 **think, cogitate,** cerebrate, put on one's thinking *or* considering cap <nf>, intellectualize, ideate, conceive, conceptualize, form ideas, entertain ideas; **reason** 935.15; **use one's head** *or* brain, use one's noodle *or* noggin <nf>, use *or* exercise the mind, set the brain *or* wits to work, bethink oneself, have something on one's mind, have a lot on one's mind

9 **think hard,** think one's head off, **rack** *or* **ransack one's brains,** crack one's brains <nf>, **beat** *or* **cudgel one's brains,** work one's head to the bone, do some heavy thinking, bend *or* apply the mind, knit one's brow; sweat *or* stew over <nf>, hammer *or* hammer away at; puzzle, **puzzle over**

10 **concentrate,** concentrate the mind *or* thoughts, concentrate on *or* upon, attend closely to, brood on, **focus on** *or* **upon,** give *or* devote the mind to, glue the mind to, cleave to the thought of, fix the mind *or* thoughts upon, bend the mind upon, bring the mind to bear upon; get to the point; gather *or* collect one's thoughts, pull one's wits together, focus *or* fix one's thoughts, marshal *or* arrange one's thoughts *or* ideas

11 **think about,** cogitate, **give** *or* **apply the mind to,** put one's mind to, apply oneself to, bend *or* turn the mind *or* thoughts to, direct the mind upon, **give thought to, trouble one's head about,** occupy the mind *or* thoughts with; think through *or* out, puzzle out, sort out, reason out, excogitate, ratiocinate, work out, take stock of

12 **consider, contemplate, speculate, reflect, wonder, study, ponder,** perpend, **weigh, deliberate, debate, meditate, muse, brood, ruminate,** chew the cud <nf>, digest; introspect, be abstracted; wrinkle one's brow; fall into a brown study, retreat into one's mind *or* thoughts; **toy with, play with,** play around with, flirt *or* coquet with the idea

13 **think over, ponder over, brood over, muse over, mull over, reflect over,** con over, **deliberate over,** run over, **meditate over,** ruminate over, chew over, digest, turn over, **revolve,** revolve *or* turn over in the mind, deliberate upon, meditate upon, muse on *or* upon, bestow thought *or* consideration upon, noodle *or* noodle around <nf>

14 **take under consideration,** entertain, take under advisement, take under active consideration, inquire into, **think it over,** have a look at *and* see about <nf>; **sleep upon,** consult with *or* advise with *or* take counsel of one's pillow

15 **reconsider, re-examine,** review; revise one's thoughts, reappraise, revaluate, rethink; view in a new light, have second thoughts, think better of

16 **think of,** bethink oneself of, seize on, flash on <nf>; tumble to <nf>; **entertain the idea of,** entertain thoughts of; conceive of; have an idea of, have thoughts about; **have in mind, contemplate, consider, have under consideration;** take it into one's head; **bear in mind, keep in mind,** hold the

thought; harbor an idea, keep *or* hold an idea, cherish *or* foster *or* nurse *or* nurture an idea; ideate, premise, theorize, invent

17 <look upon mentally> **contemplate, look upon, view, regard,** see, view with the mind's eye, **envisage,** envision, **visualize** 986.15, imagine, image

18 **occur to,** occur to one's mind, occur, **come to mind,** rise to mind, rise in the mind, come into one's head, impinge on one's consciousness, claim one's mind *or* thoughts, pass through one's head *or* mind, dawn upon one, **enter one's mind,** pass in the mind *or* thoughts, cross one's mind, race *or* tumble through the mind, flash on *or* across the mind; **strike,** strike one, strike the mind, grab one <nf>, **suggest itself,** present itself, offer itself, present itself to the mind *or* thoughts, give one pause

19 **impress, make an impression, strike, grab** <nf>, hit; catch the thoughts, arrest the thoughts, seize one's mind, sink *or* penetrate into the mind, embed itself in the mind, lodge in the mind, **sink in** <nf>

20 **occupy the mind** *or* **thoughts,** engage the thoughts, monopolize the thoughts, fasten itself on the mind, seize the mind, fill the mind, take up one's thoughts; **preoccupy,** occupy, **absorb, engross,** absorb *or* enwrap *or* engross the thoughts, obsess the mind, run in the head; foster in the mind; come uppermost, be uppermost in the mind; have in *or* on one's mind, **have on the brain** <nf>, have constantly in one's thoughts

ADJS 21 **cognitive,** prehensive, **thought,** conceptive, conceptual, conceptualized, ideative, ideational, noetic, **mental,** cerebral; **rational** 935.18, logical, ratiocinative; **thoughtful,** cogitative, **contemplative, reflective, speculative, deliberative, meditative, ruminative,** ruminant, in a brown study, museful <old>; **pensive,** wistful, musing; introspective; thinking, reflecting, contemplating, pondering, deliberating, excogitating, excogitative, meditating, ruminating, musing; reasoned, cogitative; studious, studying; sober, serious, deepthinking; concentrating, concentrative, concentrated, attentive

22 absorbed *or* engrossed in thought, **absorbed, engrossed,** introspective, rapt, **wrapped in thought, lost in thought,** pensive, abstracted, immersed in thought, buried in thought, engaged in thought, occupied, **preoccupied**

ADVS 23 **thoughtfully,** contemplatively, reflectively, meditatively, ruminatively, musefully <old>, cogitatively, introspectively; **pensively,** wistfully; on reconsideration, on second thought

24 **on one's mind, on the brain** *and* on one's chest <nf>, in the thoughts; in the heart, *in petto* <Ital>, in one's inmost *or* innermost thoughts

932 IDEA

NOUNS 1 **idea; thought,** mental *or* intellectual object, **notion, concept,** conception, conceit, fancy; **perception, sense, impression,** mental impression, image, **mental image,** picture in the mind, mental picture, representation, recept, visualization; imago, ideatum, noumenon, essence; memory trace; **sentiment,** apprehension; reflection, observation; **opinion** 952.6; viewpoint, point of view; supposition, **theory** 951; plan, scheme

2 <philosophy> ideatum, ideate; noumenon; universal, universal concept *or* conception; idée-force; Platonic idea *or* form, archetype, prototype, subsistent form, eternal object, transcendent universal, eternal universal, pattern, model, exemplar, ideal, transcendent idea *or* essence, universal essence, innate idea; Aristotelian form, form-giving cause, formal cause; complex idea, simple idea; percept; construct of memory and association; Kantian idea, supreme principle of pure reason, regulative first principle, highest unitary principle of thought, transcendent nonempirical concept; Hegelian idea, highest category, the Absolute, the Absolute Idea, the Self-determined, the realized ideal; logical form *or* category; noosphere <Teilhard de Chardin>; history of ideas, *Geistesgeschichte* <Ger>; **idealism** 1053.3

3 **abstract idea, abstraction,** general idea, generality, abstract

4 **main idea,** intellectual *or* philosophical basis, leading *or* principal idea, fundamental *or* basic idea, *idée-maitresse* <Fr>, guiding principle, crowning principle, **big idea** <nf>, precept, premise

5 **novel idea,** intellectual *or* conceptual breakthrough, new *or* **latest wrinkle** <nf>, new slant *or* twist *or* take <nf>

6 **good idea, great idea,** not a bad idea; **bright thought,** bright *or* brilliant idea, **insight; brainchild** *and* **brainstorm** <nf>, brain wave <nf>, **inspiration;** quantum leap

7 **absurd idea,** crazy idea, fool notion *and* brainstorm <nf>

8 **ideology,** system of ideas, body of ideas, system of theories; world view, *Weltanschauung* <Ger>; philosophy; **ethos**

ADJS 9 ideational, ideal, **conceptual, conceptive,** notional, fanciful, imaginative; **intellectual;** theoretical 950.13; **ideological**

10 ideaed, notioned, thoughted

933 ABSENCE OF THOUGHT

NOUNS 1 **thoughtlessness,** thoughtfreeness; **vacuity,** vacancy, **emptiness of mind, empty-headedness,** blankness, mental blankness, blankmindedness; fatuity, inanity, foolishness 923; tranquillity, calm of mind; **nirvana,** ataraxia, calm *or* tranquillity of mind; **oblivion,** forgetfulness, lack *or* loss of memory, amnesia; mental block; quietism, passivity, apathy; blank mind, fallow mind, tabula rasa; unintelligence 922; ignorance; head in the clouds

VERBS 2 **not think, make the mind a blank,** let the mind lie fallow; **not think of,** not consider, be unmindful of; **not enter one's mind** *or* **head,** be far from one's mind *or* head *or* thoughts; pay no attention *or* mind

3 **get it off one's mind, get it off one's chest** <nf>, clear the mind, relieve one's mind; **put it out of one's thoughts,** dismiss from the mind *or* thoughts, push from one's thoughts, put away thought

ADJS 4 **thoughtless, thoughtfree,** incogitant, **unthinking,** unreasoning; unideaed; unintellectual; **vacuous,** vacant, blank, blankminded, relaxed, empty, **empty-headed,** fallow, fatuous, inane 922.19; unoccupied; calm, tranquil; nirvanic; oblivious, ignorant; quietistic, passive

5 **unthought-of, undreamed-of,** unconsidered, unconceived, unconceptualized; unimagined, unimaged; imageless

934 INTUITION, INSTINCT

NOUNS 1 **intuition, intuitiveness, sixth sense;** intuitive reason *or* knowledge, direct perception *or* apprehension, immediate apprehension *or* perception, unmediated perception *or* apprehension, subconscious perception, unconscious *or* subconscious knowledge, immediate cognition, knowledge without thought *or* reason, flash of insight; intuitive understanding, tact, spontaneous sense; **revelation,** epiphany, moment of illumination; **insight,** inspiration, aperçu; precognition, anticipation, a priori knowledge; *satori* <Japanese>, *buddhi* <Skt>; woman's intuition; second sight, second-sightedness, precognition 961.3, clairvoyance 689.8, extrasensory perception, presentiment; intuitionism, intuitivism

2 **instinct,** natural instinct, unlearned capacity, innate *or* inborn proclivity, native *or* natural tendency, **impulse,** blind *or* unreasoning impulse, vital impulse; **libido, id,** primitive self; archetype, archetypal pattern *or* idea; unconscious *or* subconscious urge *or* drive; collective unconscious, race memory; "the *not ourselves,* which is in us and all around us"—Matthew Arnold, "an unfathomable Somewhat, which is *Not we*"—Carlyle, "that which is imprinted upon the spirit of man by an inward instinct"—Francis Bacon; **reflex,** spontaneous reaction, unthinking response, knee-jerk, Pavlovian response, gut reaction <nf>

3 **hunch** <nf>, sense, **presentiment, premonition,** preapprehension, intimation, foreboding; suspicion, **impression,** intuition, intuitive impression, **feeling,** forefeeling, vague feeling *or* idea, funny feeling <nf>, feeling in one's bones, gut feeling <nf>, flash

VERBS 4 **intuit, sense, feel,** feel intuitively, **feel** *or* **know in one's bones** <nf>, **have a feeling,** have a funny feeling <nf>, **get** *or* **have the impression,** have a hunch <nf>, just know, know instinctively; grok <nf>; perceive, divine

ADJS 5 **intuitive,** intuitional, sensing, sensitive, perceptive, feeling; second-sighted, precognitive 961.7, telepathic, clairvoyant

6 **instinctive,** natural, **inherent, innate,** unlearned; unconscious, subliminal; **involuntary, automatic,** spontaneous, impulsive, reflex, knee-jerk <nf>; **instinctual,** libidinal

ADVS 7 **intuitively,** by intuition; **instinctively,** automatically, spontaneously, on *or* by instinct, **instinctually**

935 REASONING

NOUNS 1 **reasoning, reason,** logical thought, discursive reason, rationalizing, rationalization, ratiocination; the divine faculty, "a harmony among irrational impulses"—Santayana; **rationalism, rationality,** discourse *or* discourse of reason <old>; sweet reason, reasonableness; demonstration, proof 957; specious reasoning, sophistry 936; philosophy 952

2 **logic,** logics; **dialectics,** dialectic, dialecticism; art of reason, science of discursive thought, "the art of making truth prevail"—La Bruyère; formal logic, material logic; doctrine of terms, doctrine of the judgment, doctrine of inference, traditional *or* Aristotelian logic, Ramist *or* Ramistic logic, modern *or* epistemological logic, pragmatic *or* instrumental *or* experimental logic; psychological logic, psychologism; symbolic *or* mathematical logic, logistic; propositional calculus, calculus of individuals, functional calculus, combinatory logic, algebra of relations, algebra of classes, set theory, Boolean algebra

3 <methods> a priori reasoning, a fortiori reasoning, a posteriori reasoning; discursive reasoning; **deduction, deductive reasoning,** syllogism, syllogistic reasoning; hypothetico-

deductive method; **induction, inductive reasoning,** epagoge; philosophical induction, inductive *or* Baconian method; **inference; generalization,** particularization; synthesis, analysis; hypothesis and verification

4 **argumentation, argument, controversy, dispute, disagreement, disputation, polemic, debate,** disceptation <old>, eristic, art of dispute; **contention, wrangling, bickering,** hubbub 53.3, quibble, bicker, setto <nf>, rhubarb *and* hassle <nf>, passage of arms; war of words, verbal engagement *or* contest, logomachy, flyting; paper war, *guerre de plume* <Fr>; adversarial procedure, confrontational occasion; academic disputation, defense of a thesis; defense, apology, apologia, apologetics; dialectics, dialecticism; pilpul, casuistry; polemics; litigation; examination, cross-examination

5 **argument,** *argumentum* <L>; **case, plea,** pleading, *plaidoyer* <Fr>, brief; special pleading; **reason, consideration; refutation,** elenchus, ignoratio elenchi; stance, position; grounds, evidence; pros, cons, **pros and cons;** talking point; **dialogue,** reasoning together, dialectic; formal argument; rationale, pretext, premise

6 **syllogism;** prosyllogism; mode; figure; mood; pseudosyllogism, paralogism; sorites, progressive *or* Aristotelian sorites, regressive *or* Goclenian sorites; categorical syllogism; enthymeme; dilemma; **rule,** rule of deduction, transformation rule; modus ponens, modus tollens

7 **premise, proposition, position,** assumed position, sumption, **assumption,** supposal, presupposition, **hypothesis, thesis, theorem,** lemma, **statement,** affirmation, categorical proposition, premise, assertion, basis, ground, foundation; **postulate, axiom, postulation,** postulatum; data; major premise, minor premise; first principles; a priori principle, apriorism; philosophical proposition, philosopheme; hypothesis ad hoc; sentential *or* propositional function, truth-function, truth table, truth-value

8 **conclusion** 946.4

9 **reasonableness,** reasonability, **logicalness,** logicality, **rationality, sensibleness, soundness,** justness, justifiability, admissibility, cogency; sense, common sense, sound sense, sweet reason, **logic, reason;** plausibility 968.3

10 **good reasoning, right thinking,** sound reasoning, ironclad reasoning, irrefutable logic; cogent argument, **cogency;** strong argument, knockdown argument; good case, good reason, sound evidence, strong point

11 **reasoner,** ratiocinator, **thinker; rationalist;** rationalizer; synthesizer; **logician,** logistician; logicaster; dialectician; syllogist, syllogizer; sophist 935.6; philosopher 952.8

12 **arguer, controversialist, disputant,** plaintiff, defendant, **debater,** eristic, argufier <nf>, advocate, wrangler, proponent, litigator, mooter, lawyer, jurist, Philadelphia lawyer <nf>, guardhouse *or* latrine *or* forecastle lawyer <nf>, disceptator <old>, pilpulist, casuist; polemic, polemist, polemicist; logomacher, logomachist; apologist

13 **contentiousness,** litigiousness, **quarrelsomeness,** argumentativeness, disputatiousness, testiness, feistiness <nf>, combativeness; ill humor 110

14 **side,** interest; **the affirmative,** pro, yes, aye, yea; **the negative,** con, no, nay

VERBS 15 **reason;** logicalize, logicize; rationalize, provide a rationale; intellectualize; bring reason to bear, apply *or* use reason, put two and two together; construe, **deduce, infer, generalize; synthesize, analyze, work out; theorize,** hypothesize; premise; philosophize; syllogize; ratiocinate

16 **argue,** argufy <nf>, **dispute,** discept <old>, dissent, disagree, logomachize, polemize, polemicize, moot, **bandy words, chop logic, plead,** pettifog <nf>, join issue, give and take, cut and thrust, try conclusions, cross swords, lock horns, **contend, contest,** spar, **bicker, wrangle,** hassle <nf>, have it out, have words; thrash out; take one's stand upon, **put up an argument** <nf>; take sides, take up a side; argue to no purpose; **quibble, squabble,** cavil 936.9; litigate

17 **be reasonable, be logical, make sense,** figure <nf>, **stand to reason,** be demonstrable, be irrefutable; hold good, hold water <nf>; have a leg to stand on; show wisdom

ADJS 18 **reasoning, rational,** ratiocinative *or* ratiocinatory; analytic, analytical; conceptive, conceptual; cerebral, noetic, phrenic

19 **argumentative, argumental, dialectic, dialectical, controversial, disputatious, contentious,** quarrelsome, dissenting, disputing, litigious, combative, factious, testy, feisty <nf>, petulant, ill-humored 110.18, eristic, eristical, polemic, polemical, logomachic, logomachical, pilpulistic, pro and con; diectic, apodeictic, aporetic; at cross-purposes, at odds

20 **logical, reasonable, rational, cogent, sensible, sane, wise, sound,** well-thought-out, legitimate, just, justifiable, admissible; credible 953.24; plausible 968.7; as it should be, as it ought to be; well-argued, **well-founded, well-grounded**

21 **reasoned, advised, considered,** calculated, meditated, contemplated, deliberated, studied, weighed, thought-out, well-reasoned

22 dialectic, dialectical, maieutic; syllogistic, syllogistical, enthymematic, enthymematical, soritical, epagogic, inductive, deductive, inferential, synthetic, synthetical, analytic, analytical, discursive, heuristic; a priori, a fortiori, a posteriori; categorical, hypothetical, propositional, postulated, conditional

23 **deducible, derivable, inferable;** sequential, following

ADVS **24** **reasonably, logically, rationally,** by the rules of logic, **sensibly,** sanely, soundly; syllogistically, analytically; realistically, pragmatically, plausibly; **in reason,** in all reason, within reason, within the bounds *or* limits of reason, within reasonable limitations, **within bounds,** within the bounds of possibility, as far as possible, in all conscience

936 SOPHISTRY

<specious reasoning>

NOUNS **1** **sophistry,** sophistication, sophism, philosophism, **casuistry,** Jesuitry, Jesuitism, subtlety, oversubtlety; **false** *or* **specious reasoning, rationalization,** evasive reasoning, vicious reasoning, sophistical reasoning, special pleading; **fallacy,** fallaciousness; **speciousness,** speciosity, superficial *or* apparent soundness, plausibleness, plausibility; **insincerity, disingenuousness; equivocation,** equivocalness; fudging *and* waffling <nf>, fudge and mudge <Brit nf>; perversion, distortion, misapplication; vicious circle, circularity; mystification, obfuscation, obscurantism; reduction, trivialization

2 **illogicalness,** illogic, illogicality, **unreasonableness, irrationality, reasonlessness, senselessness, unsoundness,** unscientificness, invalidity, untenableness, inconclusiveness; **inconsistency,** incongruity, antilogy; invalidity

3 <specious argument> **sophism,** sophistry, insincere argument, mere rhetoric, philosophism, solecism; paralogism, pseudosyllogism; claptrap, moonshine, empty words, doubletalk, doublespeak, "sound and fury, signifying nothing"—Shakespeare; bad case, weak point, flawed argument, circular argument, "lame and impotent conclusion"—Shakespeare; **fallacy,** logical fallacy, formal fallacy, material fallacy, verbal fallacy; *argumentum ad hominem, argumentum ad baculum, argumentum ad captandum, argumentum ad captandum vulgus* <all L>, crowd-pleasing argument, argument by analogy, *tu quoque* <L>, argument, *petitio principii* <L>, begging the question, **circular argument,** undistributed middle, *non sequitur* <L>, *hysteron proteron* <Gk>, *post hoc* and *ergo propter hoc* <L>, paradox; contradiction in terms

4 **quibble,** quiddity, quodlibet, quillet <old>, Jesuitism, **cavil;** quip, quirk, shuffle, dodge

5 **quibbling, caviling,** boggling, captiousness, nitpicking, **bickering; logic-chopping,** choplogic, **hairsplitting,** trichoschistism; subterfuge, chicane, chicanery, pettifoggery; **equivocation,** tergiversation, prevarication, **evasion, hedging, pussyfooting** <nf>, **sidestepping,** dodging, shifting, shuffling, fencing, parrying, boggling, paltering, beating around the bush

6 **sophist,** sophister, philosophist <old>, **casuist,** Jesuit; choplogic <old>, logic-chopper; paralogist

7 **quibbler, caviler,** pettifogger, hairsplitter, captious *or* picayune critic, nitpicker; **equivocator,** Jesuit, mystifier, mystificator, obscurantist, prevaricator, palterer, tergiversator, shuffler, mudger <Brit nf>; **hedger;** pussyfoot *or* **pussyfooter** <nf>, waffler <nf>

VERBS **8** reason speciously, reason ill, paralogize, reason in a circle, argue insincerely, pervert, distort, misapply; explain away, rationalize; prove that black is white and white black; not have a leg to stand on

9 **quibble, cavil, bicker,** boggle, chop logic, **split hairs,** nitpick, pick nits; Jesuitize; **equivocate,** mystify, obscure, prevaricate, tergiversate, doubletalk, doublespeak, tap-dance <nf>, misrepresent, misinform, fudge, palter, fence, parry, shift, shuffle, **dodge,** shy, **evade,** sidestep, hedge, skate around <Brit nf>, pussyfoot <nf>, evade the issue; twist, slant; **beat about** *or* **around the bush,** avoid the issue, not come to the point, **beg the question;** pick holes in, pick to pieces; blow hot and cold; strain at a gnat and swallow a camel

ADJS **10** **sophistical,** sophistic, philosophistic, philosophistical <old>, casuistic, casuistical, Jesuitic, Jesuitical, **fallacious, specious,** colorable, plausible, hollow, superficially *or* apparently sound; deceptive, illusive, empty; overrefined, oversubtle, **insincere, disingenuous**

11 **illogical, unreasonable, irrational, reasonless,** contrary to reason, **senseless,** without reason, **without rhyme** *or* **reason;** unscientific, nonscientific, unphilosophical; **invalid,** inauthentic, unauthentic, faulty, flawed, paralogical, fallacious; inconclusive, inconsequent, inconsequential, not following; **inconsistent,** incongruous, absonant <old>, loose, unconnected; contradictory, **self-contradictory,** self-annulling, self-refuting, oxymoronic

12 **unsound, unsubstantial,** insubstantial, weak, feeble, poor, flimsy, unrigorous, inconclusive, unproved, unsustained, poorly argued

13 **baseless, groundless,** ungrounded, **unfounded,** ill-founded, unbased, **unsupported,** unsustained, invalid, **without foundation,** without basis *or* sound basis; **untenable, unsupportable,** unsustainable; **unwarranted,** idle, empty, vain

14 **quibbling, caviling, equivocatory,** equivocal, captious, nitpicky *and* nit-picking <nf>, bickering; picayune, petty, trivial, trifling; paltering, shuffling, hedging, pussyfooting <nf>, **evasive; hairsplitting,** trichoschistic, logic-chopping, choplogic *or* choplogical <old>

ADVS 15 **illogically, unreasonably, irrationally, reasonlessly, senselessly;** baselessly, groundlessly; untenably, unsupportably, unsustainably; out of all reason, out of all bounds

937 TOPIC

NOUNS 1 **topic, subject,** subject of thought, **matter, subject matter,** what it is about, **concern,** focus of interest *or* attention, discrete matter, category; field, branch, discipline; **theme,** burden, **text,** motif, motive, angle, business at hand, **case,** matter in hand, **question, problem, issue,** bone of contention; **point,** point at issue, point in question, topic for discussion, main point, gist 997.6; plot; item on the agenda; head, heading, chapter, rubric, category; contents, substance, meat, essence, material part, basis; living issue, topic of the day; thesis

2 **caption, title, heading, head,** superscription, rubric; **headline;** overline; banner, banner head *or* line, streamer; **scarehead,** screamer; spread, spreadhead; drop head, dropline, hanger; running head *or* title, jump head; **subhead, subheading,** subtitle; legend, motto, epigraph; title page

VERBS 3 focus on, have regard to, distinguish, lift up, set forth, specify, zero in on <nf>, center on, be concerned with; include; caption, title, head, head up <nf>; **headline;** subtitle, subhead

ADJS 4 **topical, thematic**

938 INQUIRY

NOUNS 1 **inquiry,** inquiring, probing, **inquest** 307.18, inquirendo; inquisition; interpellation; inquiring mind; analysis 801

2 **examination,** school examination, examen, **exam** <nf>, **test, quiz;** oral examination, oral, doctor's oral, master's oral, viva voce examination, viva <nf>; catechesis, catchization; **audition, hearing;** multiple-choice test, multiple-guess test <nf>; written examination, written <nf>, blue book <nf>, test paper; course examination, midterm, midyear, midsemester; qualifying examination, preliminary examination, prelim <nf>; take-home examination; unannounced examination, pop *or* shotgun *or* surprise quiz <nf>; final examination, **final** <nf>, comprehensive examination, comps <nf>, great go <old> *or* greats <Oxford>; honors <Brit>, tripos <Cambridge>

3 **examination, inspection, scrutiny; survey, review, perusal,** look-over, once over *and* look-see <nf>, perlustration, **study,** look-through, scan, run-through; visitation; overhaul, overhauling; quality control; confirmation, cross-check

4 **investigation,** indagation <old>, **research,** legwork <nf>, inquiry into; data-gathering, gathering *or* amassing evidence; perscrutation, **probe,** searching investigation, close inquiry, exhaustive study; police inquiry *or* investigation, criminal investigation, detective work, detection, sleuthing; investigative bureau *or* agency, bureau *or* department of investigation; legislative investigation, Congressional investigation, hearing; witch-hunt, fishing expedition, Inquisition

5 preliminary *or* tentative examination; quick *or* cursory inspection, glance, quick look, first look, once-over-lightly <nf>

6 **checkup, check;** spot check; physical examination, **physical,** physical checkup, health examination; self-examination; exploratory examination; testing, drug testing, alcohol testing, random testing

7 **re-examination,** reinquiry, recheck, **review,** reappraisal, revaluation, rethinking, revision, rebeholding, second *or* further look

8 **reconnaissance;** recce *and* recco *and* recon <nf>; **reconnoitering,** reconnoiter, exploration, **scouting**

9 **surveillance,** shadowing, following, trailing, tailing <nf>, 24-hour surveillance, observation, stakeout <nf>; **spying, espionage,** espial, **intelligence,** military intelligence, intelligence work, cloak-and-dagger work <nf>; intelligence agency, secret service, secret police; counterespionage, counterintelligence; wiretap, wiretapping, bugging <nf>, electronic surveillance; tagging

10 **question, query, inquiry, demand** <old>, **interrogation,** interrogatory; interrogative; frequently asked question *or* FAQ; **problem, issue,** topic 936, case *or* point in question, bone of contention, controversial point, question before the house, debating point, controversy, question *or* point at issue, **moot point** *or* case, question mark, *quodlibet* <L>; difficult question, vexed *or* knotty question, burning question; sixty-four-thousand-dollar question; leader, leading question; feeler, trial balloon, fishing question; trick question, poser, stumper, tough nut to crack, conundrum, enigma, mind-boggler <nf>; trivia question; cross-question, rhetorical question; cross-interrogatory; catechism, catechizing; easy question

11 **interview,** press conference, press opportunity, photo opportunity, photo op <nf>

12 **questioning, interrogation, querying,** asking, seeking, pumping, probing, inquiring; **quiz,** quizzing, **examination;** challenge, dispute; interpellation, bringing into question; catechizing, catechization; catechetical method, Socratic method *or* induction

13 **grilling,** the grill <nf>, inquisition, pumping; police interrogation; **the third-degree** <nf>; direct examination, redirect examination, **cross-examination,** cross-interrogation, **cross-questioning**

14 **canvass, survey, inquiry, questionnaire,** questionary; exit poll; **poll, public-opinion poll,** opinion poll *or* survey, statistical survey, opinion sampling, voter-preference survey; consumer-preference survey, market-research survey; consumer research, market research

15 **search,** searching, **quest, hunt,** hunting, stalk, stalking, still hunt, dragnet, posse, search party; search warrant; search-and-destroy operation *or* mission; **rummage, ransacking,** turning over *or* upside down; **forage;** house-search, perquisition, domiciliary visit; exploration, probe; **body search,** frisk *and* toss *and* shake *and* shakedown *and* skin-search *and* body-shake *and* pat-down search <nf>

16 **inquirer, asker, prober,** querier, querist, **questioner,** questionist, interrogator; interviewer; interrogatrix; interpellator; **quizzer,** examiner, catechist; inquisitor, inquisitionist; cross-questioner, cross-interrogator, **cross-examiner;** interlocutor; **pollster,** poller, sampler, canvasser, opinion sampler; **interviewer; detective** 576.10; secret agent 576.9; quiz-master

17 **examiner,** examinant, **tester; inspector,** scrutinizer, scrutator, scrutineer, quality-control inspector; **monitor,** reviewer; fact-checker; check-out pilot; observer; visitor, visitator; **investigator,** indagator <old>; editor, copy editor, proofreader

18 seeker, hunter, searcher, perquisitor; rummager, ransacker; digger, delver; zetetic; **researcher, fact finder,** researchist, research worker, market researcher, consumer researcher; surveyor

19 **examinee,** examinant, examinate, questionee, quizzee; interviewee; informant, subject, interviewee; witness; candidate; defendant, plaintiff, suspect

VERBS **20** **inquire, ask, question, query; make inquiry,** take up *or* institute *or* pursue *or* follow up *or* conduct *or* carry on an inquiry, ask after, inquire after, ask about, ask questions, put queries; inquire of, require an answer, ask a question, put a question to, pose *or* set *or* propose *or* propound a question; bring into question, interpellate; **demand** <old>, **want to know;** introspect

21 **interrogate, question, query, quiz, test, examine;** catechize; **pump,** pump for information, shoot questions at, pick the brains of, worm out of; interview; draw one out

22 **grill,** put on the grill <nf>, inquisition, pump, make inquisition; roast <nf>, put the pressure on *and* put the screws to *and* go over <nf>; **cross-examine, cross-question,** cross-interrogate; third-degree <nf>, give *or* put through the third degree <nf>; put to the question; extract information, pry *or* prize out; run *or* put through the mill <nf>

23 **investigate,** indagate <old>, sift, **explore, look into,** peer into, **search into, go into, delve into,** dig into, poke into, pry into; fact-find; **probe, sound, plumb, fathom; check into, check on, check out,** nose into, see into; poke about, root around *or* about, scratch around *or* about, cast about *or* around

24 **examine, inspect, scrutinize, survey,** canvass, **look at,** peer at, eyeball <nf>, **observe, scan, peruse, study; look over,** give the once-over <nf>, run the eye over, cast *or* pass the eyes over, scope out <nf>; go over, run over, pass over, pore over; overlook, overhaul; **monitor, review,** pass under review; set an examination, give an examination; **take stock of,** size *or* **size up,** take the measure <nf>; **check, check out, check over** *or* **through; check up on;** autopsy, postmortem 307.18; soul-search

25 **make a close study of, research, scrutinize,** examine thoroughly, vet <Brit>, **go deep into,** look closely at, probe; examine point by point, go over with a fine-tooth comb, go over step by step, subject to close scrutiny, view *or* try in all its phases, get down to nuts and bolts <nf>; perscrutate, perlustrate

26 **examine cursorily,** take a cursory view of, give a quick *or* cursory look, give a once-over-lightly <nf>, give a dekko <Brit nf>, **scan, skim, skim over** *or* **through,** slur, slur over, slip *or* skip over *or* through, **glance at,** give the once-over <nf>, pass over lightly, zip through, **dip into, touch upon,** touch upon lightly *or* in passing, **hit the high spots; thumb through,** flip through the pages, turn over the leaves, leaf *or* page *or* flick through

27 **re-examine,** recheck, reinquire, **reconsider,** reappraise, revaluate, rethink, **review,** revise, rebehold, take another *or* a second *or* a further look; retrace, retrace one's steps, go back over; rejig *or* rejigger <nf>; take back to the old drawing board

28 **reconnoiter,** make a reconnaissance, case <nf>, scout, **scout out,** spy, **spy out,** play the spy, peep;

watch, put under surveillance, stake out <nf>; bug <nf>; check up on, check up

29 **canvass, survey,** make a survey; **poll,** conduct a poll, sample, **questionnaire** <nf>

30 **seek, hunt,** look <old>, **quest, pursue,** go in pursuit of, follow, go in search of, prowl after, see to, try to find; **look up, hunt up; look for,** look around *or* about for, look for high and low, look high and low, search out, **search for,** seek for, **hunt for,** cast *or* beat about for; shop around for; **fish for, angle for,** bob for, dig for, delve for, go on a fishing expedition; **ask for,** inquire for; **gun for,** go gunning for; still-hunt <nf>

31 **search, hunt, explore;** research; read up on; **hunt through, search through, look through, go through;** dig, delve, burrow, root, pick over, poke, pry; look round *or* around, poke around, nose around, smell around; beat the bushes; forage; frisk <nf>

32 **grope,** grope for, **feel for,** fumble, grabble, scrabble, feel around, poke around, pry around, beat about, grope in the dark; **feel** *or* **pick one's way**

33 **ransack, rummage, rake, scour, comb;** rifle; **look everywhere,** look into every hole and corner, **look high and low,** look upstairs and downstairs, **look all over,** look all over hell <nf>, search high heaven, turn upside down, turn inside out, **leave no stone unturned;** shake down *and* shake *and* toss <nf>

34 **search out, hunt out, spy out,** scout out, **ferret out,** fish out, pry out, winkle out <Brit nf>, dig out, root out, grub up

35 **trace, stalk, track, trail; follow,** follow up, shadow, tail <nf>, dog the footsteps of, have *or* keep an eye on; nose, nose out, **smell** *or* **sniff out,** follow the trail *or* scent *or* spoor of; follow a clue; **trace down, hunt down, track down, run down, run to earth**

ADJS 36 **inquiring, questioning, querying,** quizzing; **quizzical, curious; interrogatory,** interrogative, interrogational; inquisitorial, inquisitional; visitatorial, visitorial; catechistic, catechistical, catechetic, catechetical

37 **examining,** examinational; scrutatorial, examinatorial; **testing,** trying, **tentative;** groping, feeling; inspectional; **inspectorial;** interpellant; **investigative,** indagative <old>; zetetic; heuristic, investigatory, investigational; **exploratory,** explorative, explorational; fact-finding; analytic, analytical; curious

38 **searching, probing, prying, nosy** <nf>; poking, digging, fishing, delving; in search *or* quest of, looking for, **out for,** on the lookout for, **in the market for,** loaded *or* out for bear <nf>; all-searching; fact-finding, knowledge-seeking

ADVS 39 **in question, at issue,** in debate *or* dispute, **under consideration,** under active consideration, **under advisement,** *subjudice* <L>, under examination, under investigation, under surveillance, up *or* open for discussion; **before the house, on the docket, on the agenda, on the table, on the floor**

939 ANSWER

NOUNS 1 **answer, reply, response,** responsion, replication; answering, respondence; riposte, **uptake** <nf>, **retort, rejoinder,** reaction 902, return, **comeback** *and* **take** <nf>, back answer, short answer, back talk, backchat <nf>; **repartee,** backchat, clever *or* ready *or* witty reply *or* retort, snappy comeback <nf>, witty repartee; yes-and-no answer, evasive reply; **acknowledgment,** receipt, confirmation; rescript, rescription; antiphon; **echo,** reverberation 54.2

2 **rebuttal, counterstatement,** counterreply, counterclaim, counterblast, counteraccusation, countercharge, *tu quoque* <L, you too>, defense, contraremonstrance; **rejoinder,** replication, defense, rebutter, surrebutter *or* surrebuttal, surrejoinder; confutation, refutation; last word, parting shot

3 **answerer, replier,** responder, **respondent,** responser; defendant

VERBS 4 **answer,** make *or* give answer, return answer, return for answer, offer, proffer, **reply, respond,** say, say in reply; **retort,** riposte, **rejoin,** return, throw back, flash back; come back *and* come back at *and* come right back at <nf>, answer back *and* talk back *and* shoot back <nf>, **react; acknowledge,** make *or* give acknowledgement; echo, reecho, reverberate 54.7

5 **rebut,** make a rebuttal; **rejoin,** surrebut, surrejoin; counterclaim, countercharge; confute, refute; have the last word, have the final say; fire the parting shot; lip off <nf>

ADJS 6 **answering, replying, responsive,** respondent, responding; rejoining, returning; antiphonal; echoing, echoic, reechoing 54.12; confutative, refutative; acknowledging, confirming

ADVS 7 in answer, in reply, in response, in return, in rebuttal

940 SOLUTION

<answer to a problem>

NOUNS 1 **solution,** resolution, **answer, reason,** explanation 341.4; **finding,** conclusion, determination, ascertainment, verdict, judgment; **outcome, upshot,** denouement, **result,** issue, end

820, end result; accomplishment 407; **solving,** working, **working-out,** finding-out, resolving, **clearing up,** cracking; **unriddling,** riddling, unscrambling, unraveling, sorting out, untwisting, unspinning, unweaving, untangling, disentanglement; **decipherment, deciphering, decoding,** decryption; interpretation 341; **happy ending** *or* outcome, the answer to one's prayers, the light at the end of the tunnel; possible solution, **scenario**

VERBS 2 **solve, resolve,** find the solution *or* answer, **clear up,** get, get right, do, work, **work out, find out, figure out,** dope *and* dope out <nf>; **straighten out, iron out,** sort out, puzzle out; debug; psych *and* psych out <nf>; **unriddle,** riddle, unscramble, undo, untangle, disentangle, untwist, unspin, unweave, **unravel,** ravel, ravel out; **decipher, decode,** decrypt, crack; **make out,** interpret 341.9; **answer,** explain 341.10; unlock, pick *or* open the lock; find the key of, find a clue to; **get to the bottom** *or* **heart of,** fathom, plumb, bottom; have it, hit it, hit upon a solution, hit the nail on the head, hit it on the nose <nf>; guess, divine, guess right; end happily, work out right *and* come up roses <nf>

ADJS 3 **solvable,** soluble, **resolvable,** open to solution, capable of solution, workable, doable, answerable; explainable, explicable, determinable, ascertainable; **decipherable,** decodable

941 DISCOVERY

NOUNS 1 **discovery, finding, detection,** spotting, catching, catching sight of, sighting, espial; recognition, determination, distinguishment; locating, **location; disclosure, exposure, revelation, uncovering, unearthing,** digging up, exhumation, excavation, bringing to light *or* view; **find,** trove, treasure trove, *trouvaille* <Fr>, strike, lucky strike; accidental *or* chance discovery, happening *or* stumbling upon, tripping over, casual discovery; serendipity; **learning, finding out,** determining, becoming conscious *or* cognizant of, becoming aware of; self-discovery; realization, enlightenment; rediscovery; invention; archaeology

VERBS 2 **discover, find,** get; strike, hit; put *or* lay one's hands on, lay one's fingers on, **locate** 159.10; **hunt down,** search out, trace down, track down, **run down, run** *or* **bring to earth;** trace; **learn, find out,** determine, become cognizant *or* conscious of, become aware of, get it <nf>; discover *or* find out the hard way, discover to one's cost; discover *or* find oneself; rediscover; invent

3 **come across, run across, meet with,** meet up with <nf>, fall in with, **encounter, run into,** bump into <nf>, come *or* run up against <nf>, **come on** *or* **upon, hit on** *or* **upon,** strike on, light on *or* upon, alight on *or* upon, fall on, tumble on *or* upon; **chance on** *or* **upon,** happen on *or* upon *or* across, **stumble on** *or* **upon,** *or* **across** *or* **into,** stub one's toe on *or* upon, trip over, bump up against, blunder upon, discover serendipitously

4 **uncover, unearth, dig up,** disinter, exhume, excavate; **disclose, expose, reveal,** blow the lid off, crack wide open, **bring to light,** lay bare; **turn up,** root up, rootle up <Brit>, fish up; worm out, ferret out, winkle out <Brit>, pry out

5 **detect, spot** <nf>, **see, lay eyes on,** catch sight of, catch a glimpse of, perceive, **spy,** espy, descry, sense, pick up, notice, discern, **perceive, make out, recognize,** distinguish, identify

6 **scent,** catch the scent of, sniff, smell, get a whiff of <nf>, **get wind of;** sniff *or* scent *or* smell out, nose out; be on the right scent, be near the truth, be warm <nf>, burn <nf>, have a fix on, place

7 **catch,** catch out; catch off side, catch off base; catch tripping, **catch napping, catch off-guard,** catch asleep at the switch; **catch at,** catch in the act, **catch red-handed,** catch in *flagrante delicto,* **catch with one's pants down** <nf>, catch flat-footed, have the goods on <nf>, ensnare

8 <detect the hidden nature of> **see through, penetrate,** see as it really is, see in its true colors, see the inside of, read between the lines, see the cloven hoof; open the eyes to, tumble to, catch on to, wise up to <nf>; **be on to, be wise to, be hep to** <nf>, have one's measure, **have one's number,** have dead to rights <nf>, read someone like a book

9 **turn up, show up,** be found; discover itself, expose *or* betray itself; hang out <nf>; materialize, **come to light,** come out; come along, come to hand; show one's true colors

ADJS 10 on the right scent, **on the right track,** on the trail of; **hot** *and* **warm** <nf>; **discoverable,** determinable, findable, **detectable,** spottable, disclosable, exposable, locatable, **discernible;** exploratory

INTERJS 11 **eureka!,** I have it!, at last!, at long last!, finally!, *thalassa!* or *thalatta!* <Gk>; ah hah!

942 EXPERIMENT

NOUNS 1 **experiment, experimentation;** experimental method; testing, trying, trying-out, **trial;** research and development *or* R and D; running it up the flagpole <nf>, trying it on *or* out <nf>, exploration; **trial and error,** hit and miss, cut and try <nf>; empiricism, experimentalism, pragmatism, instrumentalism; **rule of thumb;** tentativeness, tentative method; control experiment, controlled experiment, **control;** experimental design; experimental proof *or* verification; noble experiment; single-blind experiment, double-blind experiment; guesswork

2 **test, trial, try;** essay; check; docimasy <old>, assay; determination, blank determination; **proof,** verification; touchstone, standard, criterion 300.2; crucial test; acid test, litmus *or* litmus-paper test; ordeal, crucible; probation; **feeling out, sounding out;** test case; first *or* rough draft, rough sketch, mock-up; stab *and* crack *and* whack <nf>; *brouillon* <Fr>

3 **tryout,** workout, **rehearsal,** practice; pilot plan *or* program; **dry run,** dummy run, practice run; *Gedankenexperiment* <Ger>; road test; **trial run,** practical test; shakedown, shakedown cruise, bench test; flight test, test flight *or* run; audition, hearing

4 **feeler, probe,** sound, sounder; **trial balloon,** *ballon d'essai* <Fr>, pilot balloon, barometer; weather vane, weathercock; straw to show the wind, straw vote; sample, random sample, experimental sample

5 **laboratory, lab** <nf>, research laboratory, research center *or* establishment *or* facility *or* institute, experiment station, field station, research and development *or* R and D establishment; **proving ground;** think tank <nf>, workshop

6 **experimenter,** experimentist, experimentalist, empiricist, bench scientist, **researcher,** research worker, R and D worker; experimental engineer; **tester,** tryer-out, test driver, test pilot; essayer; assayer; analyst, analyzer, investigator

7 **subject, experimental subject,** experimentee, testee, patient, sample; laboratory animal, experimental *or* test animal, **guinea pig,** lab rat

VERBS 8 **experiment,** experimentalize, **research,** make an experiment, **run an experiment,** run a sample *or* specimen; **test, try,** essay, cut and try <nf>, **test** *or* **try out,** have a dry run *or* dummy run *or* rehearsal *or* test run, rehearse; run it up the flagpole and see who salutes <nf>; put to the test, **put to the proof, prove, verify,** validate, substantiate, confirm, put to trial, bring to test, make a trial of, give a trial to; **give a try,** have a go, give it a go <nf>, have *or* take a stab *or* crack *or* whack at <nf>; sample, taste; assay; play around *or* fool around with <nf>; try out under controlled conditions; give a tryout *or* workout <nf>, **road-test,** shake down; try one out, put one through his paces; experiment *or* practice upon; try it on; try on, try it for size <nf>; try one's strength, see what one can do

9 **sound out, check out, feel out, sound,** get a sounding *or* reading *or* sense, probe, **feel the pulse,** read; **put** *or* **throw out a feeler,** put out feelers, send up a trial balloon, fly a kite; **see which way the wind blows,** see how the land lies, test out, test the waters; take a straw vote, take a random sample, use an experimental sample

10 **stand the test, stand up, hold up, hold up in the wash,** pass, **pass muster,** get by <nf>, make it *and* hack it *and* cut the mustard <nf>, meet *or* satisfy requirements

ADJS 11 **experimental, test, trial;** pilot; testing, proving, trying; probative, probatory, verificatory; probationary; **tentative,** provisional; empirical; trial-and-error, hit-or-miss, cut-and-try; heuristic

12 **tried, well-tried, tested, proved,** verified, confirmed, tried and true

ADVS 13 **experimentally,** by rule of thumb, by trial and error, by hit and miss, hit or miss, by guess and by God

14 **on trial,** under examination, **on** *or* **under probation,** under suspicion, **on approval**

943 COMPARISON

NOUNS 1 **comparison,** compare, examining side by side, matching, matchup, holding up together, proportion <old>, comparative judgment *or* estimate; **likening,** comparing, **analogy;** parallelism; comparative relation; weighing, balancing; opposing, opposition, **contrast;** contrastiveness, distinctiveness, distinction 944.3; confrontment, confrontation; **relation** 775, relating, relativism; correlation 777; simile, similitude, metaphor, allegory, figure *or* trope of comparison; comparative degree; comparative method; comparative linguistics, comparative grammar, comparative literature, comparative anatomy, etc

2 **collation,** comparative scrutiny, point-by-point comparison; **verification, confirmation, checking;** check, cross-check

3 **comparability,** comparableness, comparativeness; analogousness, equivalence, **commensurability;** proportionateness *or* proportionability <old>; ratio, proportion, balance; **similarity** 784

VERBS 4 **compare, liken,** assimilate, similize, liken to, compare with; **make** *or* **draw a comparison,** run a comparison, do a comparative study, bring into comparison; **analogize,** bring into analogy; relate 775.6; metaphorize; **draw a parallel,** parallel; **match,** match up; examine side by side, view together, hold up together; weigh *or* measure against; confront, bring into confrontation, **contrast, oppose,** set in opposition, set off against, set in contrast, **put** *or* **set over against,** set *or* place against, counterpose; compare and contrast, note similarities and differences; **weigh,** balance

5 **collate,** scrutinize comparatively, compare point by point, painstakingly match; **verify, confirm, check, cross-check**

6 **compare notes,** exchange views *or* observations, match data *or* findings, put heads together <nf>

7 **be comparable, compare, compare to** *or* **with,** not compare with 787.2, admit of comparison, be commensurable, be of the same order *or* class, be worthy of comparison, be fit to be compared; **measure up to, come up to,** match up with, stack up with <nf>, hold a candle to <nf>; **match, parallel;** vie, vie with, rival; **resemble** 784.7

ADJS 8 **comparative, relative** 775.7, **comparable,** commensurate, commensurable, parallel, matchable, **analogous;** analogical; collatable; **correlative;** much at one, much of a muchness <nf>; **similar** 784.10; something of the sort *or* to that effect

9 **incomparable,** incommensurable, not to be compared, of different orders; apples and oranges; **unlike, dissimilar** 787.4

ADVS 10 **comparatively, relatively;** comparably; dollar for dollar, pound for pound, ounce for ounce, etc; on the one hand, on the other hand

PREPS 11 **compared to, compared with,** as compared with, by comparison with, **in comparison with, beside,** over against, taken with; than

944 DISCRIMINATION

NOUNS 1 **discrimination,** discriminateness, discriminatingness, discriminativeness; seeing *or* making distinctions, appreciation of differences; analytic power *or* faculty; **criticalness; finesse,** refinement, delicacy; niceness of distinction, nicety, subtlety, refined discrimination, critical niceness; **tact, tactfulness,** feel, feeling, sense, **sensitivity** 24.3, **sensibility** 24.2; intuition, instinct 934; appreciation, appreciativeness; judiciousness 920.7; taste, discriminating taste, aesthetic *or* artistic judgment; palate, fine *or* refined palate; ear, good ear, educated ear; eye, good eye; connoisseurship, savvy <nf>, selectiveness, fastidiousness 495

2 **discernment,** critical discernment, penetration, **perception,** perceptiveness, **insight,** perspicacity; **flair; judgment,** acumen 920.4; analysis 801

3 **distinction,** contradistinction, distinctiveness <old>; **distinguishment,** differentiation 780.4, winnowing, shakeout, separation, separationism, division, segregation, segregationism, demarcation; nice *or* subtle *or* fine distinction, **nuance,** shade of difference, microscopic distinction; hairsplitting, trichoschistism

VERBS 4 **discriminate, distinguish,** draw *or* make distinctions, contradistinguish, compare and contrast, pick and choose, secern, distinguish in thought, **separate,** separate out, divide, analyze 801.6, subdivide, **segregate,** sever, severalize, **differentiate,** demark, demarcate, mark the interface, set off, **set apart,** grade, graduate, sift, sift out, sieve, sieve out, winnow, screen, screen out, sort, classify, sort out; **pick out,** select 371.14; separate the sheep from the goats, separate the men from the boys, separate the wheat from the tares *or* chaff, winnow the chaff from the wheat; **draw the line,** fix *or* set a limit; **split hairs,** draw *or* make a fine *or* overfine *or* nice *or* subtle distinction, subtilize

5 **be discriminating,** discriminate, exercise discrimination, tell which is which; **be tactful,** show *or* exercise tact; be tasteful, use one's palate; shop around, pick and choose; use advisedly

6 **distinguish between, make** *or* **draw a distinction,** appreciate differences, see nuances *or* shades of difference, see the difference, tell apart, tell one thing from another, know which is which, know what's what <nf>, not confound *or* mix up; "know a hawk from a handsaw"—Shakespeare, know one's ass from one's elbow <nf>

ADJS 7 **discriminating, discriminate,** discriminative, selective; discriminatory; **tactful, sensitive;** appreciative, appreciatory; **critical;** distinctive <old>, **distinguishing;** differential; precise, accurate, exact; nice, fine, delicate, subtle, subtile, refined; fastidious 495.9; distinctive, contrastive

8 **discerning, perceptive,** perspicacious, insightful; **astute,** judicious 920.19; perfectionist, choosy

9 **discriminable, distinguishable,** separable, differentiable, contrastable, opposable

ADVS 10 **discriminatingly,** discriminatively, discriminately; with finesse; **tactfully; tastefully**

945 INDISCRIMINATION

NOUNS 1 **indiscrimination,** indiscriminateness, undiscriminatingness, undiscriminativeness, unselectiveness, **uncriticalness, unparticularness;** syncretism; unfastidiousness; lack of refinement, coarseness *or* crudeness *or* crudity of intellect; **casualness,** promiscuousness, **promiscuity; indiscretion,** indiscreetness, **imprudence** 922.2; **untactfulness,** tactlessness, lack of feeling, insensitivity, **insensibility** 25, unmeticulousness, unpreciseness 340.4, inexactitude; **generality** 864, catholicity, catholic tastes; indifference; color blindness, tone-deafness; impartiality

2 **indistinction,** indistinctness, vagueness 32.2; **indefiniteness** 971.4; uniformity 780; facelessness, impersonality; indistinguishableness, **undistinguishableness,** indiscernibility; a distinction without a difference; randomness, generality, universality

VERBS 3 **confound, confuse,** mix, mix up, muddle, tumble, jumble, jumble together, **blur,** blur distinctions, overlook distinctions; lump together, take as one, roll into one

4 **use loosely,** use unadvisedly

ADJS 5 **undiscriminating, indiscriminate,** indiscriminative, undiscriminative, undifferentiating, unselective; wholesale, **general** 863.11, **blanket; uncritical,** uncriticizing, undemanding, nonjudgmental; **unparticular,** unfastidious; unsubtle; **casual, promiscuous;** undiscerning; unexacting, unmeticulous 340.13; **indiscreet,** undiscreet, **imprudent; untactful,** tactless, insensitive; catholic; indifferent; color-blind

6 **indistinguishable,** undistinguishable, undistinguished, indiscernible, **indistinct,** indistinctive, **without distinction,** not to be distinguished, undiscriminated, nondiscriminatory, inclusive, unindividual, unindividualized, undifferentiated, **alike,** six of one and half a dozen of the other <nf>; desultory; undefined, **indefinite;** faceless, impersonal; standard, interchangeable, stereotyped, uniform 781.5; random; miscellaneous, motley

946 JUDGMENT

NOUNS 1 **judgment,** judging, adjudgment, adjudication, judicature, deeming <old>; judgment call <nf>; arbitrament, arbitration 466.2; **resolution** 359; good judgment 920.7; **choice** 371; **discrimination** 943

2 **criticism; censure** 510.3; **approval** 509; **critique,** review, notice, critical notice, report, comment; book review, critical review, thumbnail review; literary criticism, art criticism, music criticism, etc, critical journal, critical bibliography

3 **estimate, estimation; view, opinion** 953.6; **assessment,** assessing, **appraisal,** appraisement, appraising, appreciation, reckoning, **stocktaking,** valuation, valuing, **evaluation,** evaluating, value judgment, evaluative criticism, analyzing, weighing, weighing up, gauging, ranking, rank-ordering, **rating;** measurement 300; comparison 943; second opinion; public opinion

4 **conclusion, deduction, inference,** consequence, consequent, corollary; derivation, illation; induction; judgment day

5 **verdict, decision,** resolution <old>, **determination, finding,** holding; diagnosis, prognosis; **decree, ruling,** consideration, order, **pronouncement,** deliverance; **award,** action, **sentence; condemnation,** doom; dictum; precedent; edict, decree; execution of judgment

6 **judge,** judger, adjudicator, justice; arbiter 596.1; referee, umpire

7 **critic,** criticizer; connoisseur, *cognoscente* <Ital>; literary critic, man of letters; textual critic; editor; social critic, muckraker; captious critic, smellfungus, caviler, carper, faultfinder; criticaster, criticule, critickin; **censor,** censurer; **reviewer, commentator,** commenter; scholiast, annotator

VERBS 8 **judge,** exercise judgment *or* the judgment; make a judgment call <nf>; adjudge, adjudicate; be judicious *or* judgmental; **consider, regard,** hold, **deem, esteem, count, account,** think of; allow <nf>, **suppose,** presume 951.10, opine, form an opinion, give *or* pass *or* express an opinion, weigh in *and* put in one's two cents' worth <nf>

9 **estimate,** form an estimate, make an estimation; **reckon,** call, guess, figure <nf>; **assess, appraise,** give an appreciation, **gauge, rate, rank,** rank-order, put in rank order, class, mark, **value,** deem, **evaluate,** valuate, place *or* set a value on, weigh, weigh up, prize, appreciate; size up *or* take one's measure <nf>, **measure** 300.11

10 **conclude,** draw a conclusion, be forced to conclude, **come to** *or* **arrive at a conclusion, come up with a conclusion** *and* **end up** <nf>; find, hold; deduce, derive, take as proved *or* demonstrated, extract, **gather,** collect, glean, fetch; **infer,** draw an inference; induce; **reason,** reason that; put two and two together

11 **decide,** determine; **find,** hold, ascertain; **resolve** 359.7, **settle,** fix; make a decision, come to a decision, **make up one's mind,** settle one's mind, come down <nf>, settle the matter

12 **sit in judgment,** hold the scales, hold court; **hear,** give a hearing to; **try** 598.18; **referee, umpire,** officiate; arbitrate 466.6

13 **pass judgment, pronounce judgment,** utter a judgment, deliver judgment; agree on a verdict, return a verdict, hand down a verdict, **bring in** a **verdict, find,** find for *or* against; pronounce on, act on, **pronounce,** report, **rule,** decree, order; **sentence,** pass sentence, hand down a sentence, doom, condemn; charge the jury

14 **criticize,** critique; **censure** 510.13, pick holes in, pick to pieces; **approve** 509.9; **review;** comment upon, annotate; moralize upon; pontificate; vet <nf>

15 **rank, rate,** count, be regarded, be thought of, be in one's estimation

ADJS 16 **judicial, judiciary,** judicative, judgmental;

juridic, juridical, juristic, juristical; **judicious** 920.19; **evaluative; critical;** approbatory 509.16

ADVS 17 **all things considered, on the whole, taking one thing with another,** on balance, taking everything into consideration *or* account; everything being equal, other things being equal, *ceteris paribus* <L>, taking into account, considering, after all, this being so; therefore, wherefore; on the one hand, on the other hand, having said that; *sub judice* <L>, in court, before the bench *or* bar *or* court

947 PREJUDGMENT

NOUNS 1 **prejudgment,** prejudication, forejudgment; **preconception, presumption, supposition, presupposition,** presupposal, presurmise, preapprehension, prenotion, **prepossession; predilection,** predisposition; preconsideration, **predetermination,** predecision, preconclusion, premature judgment; ulterior motive, hidden agenda, *parti pris* <Fr>, an ax to grind, **prejudice** 980.3

VERBS 2 **prejudge,** forejudge; **preconceive, presuppose, presume,** presurmise; **be predisposed;** predecide, predetermine, preconclude, judge beforehand *or* prematurely, judge before the evidence is in, have one's mind made up; **jump to a conclusion,** go off half-cocked *or* at half cock *and* beat the gun *and* jump the gun *and* shoot from the hip <nf>

ADJS 3 **prejudged,** forejudged, **preconceived,** preconceptual, **presumed, presupposed,** presurmised; predetermined, predecided, preconcluded, judged beforehand *or* prematurely; **predisposed,** predispositional; prejudicial, prejudging, prejudicative

948 MISJUDGMENT

NOUNS 1 **misjudgment,** poor judgment, error in judgment, warped *or* flawed *or* skewed judgment; **miscalculation,** miscomputation, **misreckoning, misestimation,** misappreciation, misperception, misevaluation, misvaluation, misconjecture, wrong impression; **misreading,** wrong construction, misconstruction, **misinterpretation** 342; **inaccuracy, error** 975; unmeticulousness 340.4; injudiciousness 923.2; wrong end of the stick

ERBS 2 **misjudge,** judge amiss, **miscalculate, misestimate, misreckon,** misappreciate, misperceive, get a wrong impression, misevaluate, misvalue, miscompute, misdeem, misesteem, misthink, misconjecture; **misread,** misconstrue, put the wrong construction on things, get wrong, misread the situation *or* case; **misinterpret** 342.2; err 975.9; fly in the face of facts; get hold of the wrong end of the stick <nf>

949 OVERESTIMATION

NOUNS 1 **overestimation,** overestimate, **overreckoning,** overcalculation, **overrating,** overassessment, overvaluation, overappraisal; overreaction; **overstatement, exaggeration** 355, hype <nf>

VERBS 2 **overestimate, overreckon,** overcalculate, overcount, overmeasure, see more than is there; **overrate,** overassess, overappraise, overesteem, **overvalue,** overprize, overprice, think *or* make too much of, put on a pedestal, idealize, see only the good points of; overreact to; **overstate,** exaggerate 355.3; pump up *and* jump up *and* make a big deal *or* federal case <nf>; hype <nf>

ADJS 3 **overestimated, overrated,** puffed up, pumped up <nf>, overvalued, on the high side; **exaggerated** 355.4

950 UNDERESTIMATION

NOUNS 1 **underestimation,** misestimation, underestimate, **underrating,** underreckoning, undervaluation, misprizing, misprizal, misprision; **belittlement, depreciation,** deprecation, **minimization,** disparagement 512; conservative estimate; negative outlook, pessimism

VERBS 2 **underestimate,** misestimate, **underrate,** underreckon, **undervalue,** underprize, **misprize,** underprice; **make little of,** set at little, set at naught, set little by, attach little importance to, not do justice to, sell short, think little of, make *or* think nothing of, see less than is there, miss on the low side, set no store by, make light of, shrug off, soft-pedal <nf>; **depreciate, deprecate,** minimize, belittle, bad-mouth *and* poor-mouth *and* put down *and* run down <nf>, take someone for an idiot *or* a fool; disparage 512.8; play down, understate

ADJS 3 **underestimated, underrated,** undervalued, on the low side; unvalued, unprized, misprized; underpriced, cheap

951 THEORY, SUPPOSITION

NOUNS 1 **theory,** theorization, *theoria* <Gk>; theoretics, theoretic, theoric <old>; **hypothesis,** hypothecation, hypothesizing; **speculation,** mere theory; doctrinairism, doctrinality, doctrinarity; analysis, **explanation,** abstraction; theoretical basis *or* justification; body of theory, theoretical structure *or* construct; unified theory

2 **theory, explanation,** proposed *or* tentative explanation, rationalization, proposal, proposition, statement covering the facts *or* evidence; **hypothesis,** working hypothesis

3 **supposition, supposal,** supposing; **presupposition,** presupposal; **assumption, presumption, conjecture, inference, surmise, guesswork; postulate,** postulation, *postulatum* <L>, set of postulates; **proposition, thesis, concept, premise** 935.7; **axiom** 974.2

4 **guess, conjecture,** unverified supposition, perhaps, speculation, guesswork, surmise, educated guess; guesstimate *and* hunch *and* shot *and* stab <nf>; rough guess, wild guess, blind guess, bold conjecture, shot in the dark <nf>, crude estimate

5 <vague supposition> **suggestion,** bare suggestion, **suspicion, inkling, hint, clue, sense, feeling, feeling in one's bones, intuition** 934, **intimation, impression, notion,** mere notion, hunch *and* sneaking suspicion <nf>, instinct, trace of an idea, half an idea, vague idea, hazy idea, **idea** 932

6 supposititiousness, presumptiveness, presumableness, theoreticalness, hypotheticalness, conjecturableness, speculativeness

7 **theorist, theorizer,** theoretic, **theoretician,** notionalist <old>; **speculator;** hypothesist, hypothesizer; doctrinaire, doctrinarian; inquirer; synthesizer; armchair authority *or* philosopher; thinker; researcher, experimenter

8 **supposer,** assumer, surmiser, **conjecturer, guesser,** guessworker, speculator, gambler

VERBS 9 **theorize, hypothesize, hypothecate,** form a hypothesis, **speculate,** postulate, have *or* entertain a theory, espouse a theory, generalize

10 **suppose, assume, presume, surmise,** expect, **suspect, infer, understand, gather, conclude, deduce, consider,** reckon, reason, derive, divine, imagine, **fancy,** dream, conceive, **believe, deem,** repute, feel, **think,** be inclined to think, opine, say, daresay, be afraid <nf>; take, take it, take it into one's head, take for, take to be, take for granted, take as a precondition, **presuppose, presurmise,** prefigure; provisionally accept *or* admit *or* agree to, take one up on <nf>, grant, stipulate, take it as given, let, let be, say *or* assume for argument's sake, say for the hell of it <nf>; draw a mental picture

11 **conjecture, guess,** guesstimate <nf>, give a guess, talk off the top of one's head <nf>, hazard a conjecture, venture a guess, risk assuming *or* stating, tentatively suggest, go out on a limb <nf>

12 **postulate, predicate, posit,** set forth, lay down, put forth, assert; pose, advance, **propose,** propound 439.5

ADJS 13 **theoretical, hypothetical,** hypothetic; postulatory, notional; **speculative, conjectural,** blue-sky; impressionistic, intuitive 933.5; general, generalized, abstract, ideal; unverified, merely theoretical, academic, moot; impractical, armchair, thought-provoking

14 **supposed,** suppositive, **assumed, presumed, conjectured, inferred,** understood, deemed, **reputed,** putative, alleged, accounted as; suppositional, supposititious; assumptive, **presumptive;** guessed; given, granted, taken as *or* for granted, agreed, stipulated; **postulated,** postulational, premised; granted for the sake of argument

15 **supposable, presumable,** assumable, conjecturable, surmisable, imaginable, premissable

ADVS 16 **theoretically, hypothetically,** *ex hypothesi* <L>, notionally, conceptually, ideally; **in theory,** in idea, in the ideal, in the abstract, on paper, in Never-Neverland <nf>

17 **supposedly,** supposably, **presumably,** presumedly, assumably, assumedly, presumptively, assumptively, reputedly, presumingly; suppositionally, supposititiously; **seemingly,** in seeming, quasi; as it were; on the assumption that

18 conjecturably, **conjecturally;** to guess, to make a guess, **as a guess,** as a rough guess *or* an approximation, speculatively

CONJS 19 **supposing,** supposing that, **assuming that,** allowing that, if we assume that, let's say that, granting *or* granted that, given that, on the assumption *or* supposition that; if, as if, as though, by way of hypothesis

952 PHILOSOPHY

NOUNS 1 **philosophy,** "life's guide"—Cicero, "a handmaid to religion"—Francis Bacon; philosophical inquiry *or* investigation, philosophical speculation; inquiry *or* investigation into first causes; branch of philosophy <see list>, department *or* division of philosophy; school of philosophy <see list>, philosophic system, school of thought; philosophic doctrine, philosophic theory; theory of knowledge; philosophastry, philosophastering; sophistry 936

2 viewpoint, point of view, outlook, attitude, opinion; feeling, sentiment, idea, thought, notion; tenet, dogma, doctrine, canon, principle; assertion, proposition, premise, assumption, precept, thesis, postulate, hypothesis, concept; supposition, presupposition, conjecture, speculation; maxim, axiom; rationalization, justification; conclusion, judgment; philosophical system, belief system,

value system, set of beliefs *or* values, ethics, morals, school of thought, moral code, code of conduct, value judgment, standards, principles, ideology

3 Platonic philosophy, Platonism, philosophy of the Academy; Aristotelian philosophy, Aristotelianism, philosophy of the Lyceum, Peripateticism, Peripatetic school; Stoic philosophy, Stoicism, philosophy of the Porch *or* Stoa; Epicureanism, philosophy of the Garden

4 **materialism; idealism** 1053.3

5 monism, philosophical unitarianism, mind-stuff theory; pantheism, cosmotheism; hylozoism

6 pluralism; dualism, mind-matter theory

7 <political and economic philosophy> anarchism, capitalism, collectivism, communism, internationalism, isolationism, Marxism, monetarism, nationalism, socialism, utilitarianism, utopianism

8 **philosopher,** philosophizer, philosophe; philosophaster; **thinker,** speculator; casuist; metaphysician, cosmologist, logician, dialectician, syllogist; sophist 935.6; idealist, idealogue, visionary, dreamer

VERBS **9** **philosophize,** reason 935.15, probe

ADJS **10** **philosophical,** philosophic, sophistical 936.10; philosophicohistorical, philosophicolegal, philosophicojuristic, philosophicopsychological, philosophicoreligious, philosophicotheological; notional, abstract, esoteric, ideological, ideational, hypothetical, theoretical

11 absurdist, acosmistic, aesthetic, African, agnostic, Alexandrian, analytic, animalistic, animist *or* animistic, atomistic, etc <see list of schools and doctrines>

12 Aristotelian, Peripatetic; Augustinian, Averroist *or* Averroistic, Bergsonian, Berkeleian, Cartesian, Comtian, Hegelian, Neo-Hegelian, Heideggerian, Heraclitean, Humean, Husserlian, Kantian, Leibnizian, Parmenidean, Platonic, Neoplatonic, pre-Socratic, Pyrrhonic, Pyrrhonian, Pythagorean, Neo-Pythagorean, Sartrian, Schellingian, Schopenhauerian, Scotist, Socratic, Spencerian, Thomist *or* Thomistic, Viconian, Wittgensteinian

13 **branches or departments of philosophy**

aesthetics *or* theory of beauty *or* philosophy of art
analytic philosophy
axiology *or* value theory
casuistry
commonsense *or* naïve realism
cosmology
deontology
ethics *or* moral philosophy
logic *or* theory of argument
metaphysics *or* first philosophy *or* theory of existence
ontology *or* science of being
phenomenology
philosophy of biology
philosophy of education
philosophy of history
philosophy of language *or* semantics
philosophy of law
philosophy of logic
philosophy of nature
philosophy of physics
philosophy of religion
philosophy of science
philosophy of signs *or* semiotics
political philosophy
sentential *or* propositional calculus
teleology
theology
theory of knowledge *or* epistemology *or* gnosiology

14 **schools and doctrines of philosophy**

Augustinianism
Aristotelianism
Atomism
Augustinianism
Averroism
Baconism
Bergsonism
Berkeleianism
Bonaventurism
Bradleianism
Brahmanism
Buddhism
Cartesianism
Comtism
Confucianism
cosmotheism
criticism *or* critical philosophy
Cynicism
Cyrenaic hedonism *or* Cyrenaicism
deconstructionism
deism
dialectical materialism
dualism
eclecticism
egoism
egoistic hedonism
Eleaticism *or* the Elean school
empiricism
Epicureanism
Eretrian school
eristic school
essentialism
ethicism
ethics
eudaemonism
existentialism *or* existential philosophy
Fabianism
Fichteanism
Gnosticism
hedonism
Hegelianism
Heideggerianism
Heracliteanism
Herbartianism
Hinduism
Hobbism
humanism
Humism
hylomorphism
hylotheism
hylozoism
idealism
immaterialism
individualism
instrumentalism
intuitionism
Ionian school
Jainism
Juddaism
Kantianism
Leibnizianism
linguistic *and* analytic philosophy
logical empiricism *or* logical positivism
Manichaeism
Marxism
materialism
mechanism
Megarianism
mentalism
Mimamsa
Mithraism
monism
mysticism
naturalism
Neo-Hegelianism
Neo-Platonism
Neo-Pythagoreanism
Neo-Scholasticism
neocriticism
Neoplatonism
new ethical movement
nominalism
noumenalism
Nyaya
ontologism
ontology
optimism
ordinary language philosophy
organic mechanism

organicism
panlogism
panpneumatism
panpsychism
pantheism
panthelism
Parmenidean school
patristic philosophy
patristicism
Peripateticism
pessimism
phenomenalism
phenomenology
philosophy of organism
philosophy of signs
philosophy of the ante-Nicene Fathers
philosophy of the post-Nicene Fathers
physicalism
physicism
Platonism
pluralism
positivism
pragmatism *or* pragmaticism
probabilism
Protestantism
psychism
psychological hedonism
Puritanism
Purva Mimamsa
Pyrrhonism
Pythagoreanism
rationalism
realism
Sankhya
Sartrianism
Satyagraha
Schellingism
Scholasticism
Schopenhauerism
Scotism
secular humanism
semiotic *or* semiotics *or* semi-idiotics <nf>
sensationalism
sensism
Shintoism
Sikhism
skepticism
Socratism *or* Socratic philosophy
solipsism
Sophism *or* Sophistry
Spencerianism
Spinozism
Stoicism
substantialism
syncretism
Taoism
theism
Thomism
transcendentalism
universalistic hedonism
utilitarianism
Uttara Mimamsa
Valsheshika
vitalism
voluntarism
zetetic philosophy

953 BELIEF

NOUNS 1 **belief,** credence, credit, believing, faith, trust; hope; **confidence,** assuredness, convincedness, persuadedness, **assurance;** sureness, surety, **certainty** 970; **reliance, dependence,** reliance on *or* in, dependence on, stock *and* store <nf>; acceptation, acception, acceptance; reception, acquiescence; blind faith, full faith and credit; suspension of disbelief; fideism; **credulity** 954

2 **a belief, tenet, dogma,** precept, **principle, principle** *or* **article of faith,** premise, canon, maxim, axiom; **doctrine,** teaching

3 **system of belief; religion,** faith 675.1, belief-system; **school, cult, ism,** philosophy, **ideology,** *Weltanschauung* <Ger>, world view; political faith *or* belief *or* philosophy; **creed, credo,** credenda, dogma, canon; articles of religion, articles of faith, creedal *or* doctrinal statement, formulated *or* stated belief; gospel; catechism

4 **statement of belief** *or* **principles,** manifesto, position paper; solemn declaration; deposition, affidavit, sworn statement

5 **conviction, persuasion, certainty; firm belief,** moral certainty, implicit *or* staunch belief, settled judgment, mature judgment *or* belief, fixed opinion, unshaken confidence, steadfast faith, rooted *or* deep-rooted belief

6 **opinion, sentiment, feeling, sense, impression,** reaction, **notion, idea, thought,** mind, thinking, **way of thinking, attitude,** stance, posture, position, mindset, **view,** viewpoint, eye, sight, lights, observation, **conception,** concept, conceit, **estimation,** estimate, consideration, angle, **theory** 951, conjecture, supposition, assumption, presumption, **conclusion,** judgment 946, personal judgment; **point of view** 978.2; public opinion, public belief, general belief, prevailing belief *or* sentiment, *consensus gentium* <L>, common belief, community sentiment, popular belief, conventional wisdom, vox pop, *vox populi* <L>, climate of opinion; ethos; mystique

7 **profession, confession,** declaration, **profession** *or* **confession** *or* **declaration of faith**

8 **believability, persuasiveness,** believableness, convincingness, **credibility, credit, trustworthiness, plausibility,** tenability, acceptability, conceivability; **reliability** 969.4

9 **believer, truster;** religious believer; true believer; the assured, the faithful, the believing; fideist; ideologist, ideologue; conformist; innocent, naïf

VERBS 10 **believe, credit, trust, accept,** receive, buy <nf>; give credit *or* credence to, give faith to, put faith in, take stock in *or* set store by <nf>, take to heart, attach weight to; be led to believe; accept implicitly, believe without reservation, rest assured, take for granted, take *or* accept for gospel, take as gospel truth <nf>, take *or* accept on faith, take on trust *or* credit, pin one's faith on; take at face value; **take one's word for,** trust one's word, take at one's word; fall for; **buy** *and* **buy into** <nf>, **swallow** 953.6; **be certain** 970.9

11 **think, opine, be of the opinion, be persuaded, be convinced;** be afraid <nf>, **have the idea,** have an idea, **suppose, assume, presume, judge** 945.8, **guess, surmise, suspect,** have a hunch <nf>, have an inkling, expect <nf>, have an impression, be under the impression, have a sense *or* the sense, conceive, ween *and* trow <old>, **imagine, fancy,** daresay; **deem, esteem, hold, regard, consider, maintain,** reckon, estimate; hold as, account as, set down as *or* for, view as, look upon as, take for, take, take it, get it into one's head

12 **state, assert,** swear, swear to God <nf>, declare, **affirm,** vow, avow, avouch, warrant, asseverate,

confess, be under the impression, profess, express the belief, swear to a belief; depose, make an affidavit *or* a sworn statement

13 **hold the belief, have the opinion,** entertain a belief *or* an opinion, adopt *or* embrace a belief, take as an article of faith; foster *or* nurture *or* cherish a belief, be wedded to *or* espouse a belief; get hold of an idea, get it into one's head, form a conviction

14 **be confident,** have confidence, **be satisfied, be convinced, be certain,** be easy in one's mind about, be secure in the belief, **feel sure, rest assured,** rest in confidence; doubt not, **have no doubt,** have no misgivings *or* diffidence *or* qualms, have no reservations, have no second thoughts

15 **believe in, have faith in,** pin one's faith to, confide in, **have confidence in,** place *or* repose confidence in, place reliance in, put onself in the hands of, **trust in,** put trust in, have simple *or* childlike faith in, rest in, repose in *or* hope in <old>; give *or* get the benefit of the doubt

16 **rely on** *or* **upon, depend on** *or* **upon,** place reliance on, rest on *or* upon, repose on, lean on, **count on,** calculate on, reckon on, **bank on** *or* **upon** <nf>; **trust to** *or* **unto,** swear by, take one's oath upon; **bet on** *and* gamble on *and* lay money on *and* bet one's bottom dollar on *and* make book on <nf>; take one's word for

17 **trust, confide in, rely on, depend on,** repose, place trust *or* confidence in, have confidence in, **trust in** 953.15, trust utterly *or* implicitly, deem trustworthy, think reliable *or* dependable, take one's word, take at one's word

18 **convince; convert, win over,** lead one to believe, bring over, bring round, take in, talk over, talk around, bring to reason, bring to one's senses, **persuade, lead to believe, give to understand; satisfy, assure;** put one's mind at rest on; sell *and* sell one on <nf>; make *or* carry one's point, bring *or* drive home to; cram down one's throat *and* beat into one's head <nf>; be convincing, carry conviction; inspire belief *or* confidence; evangelize, proselytize, propagandize

19 **convince oneself, persuade oneself,** sell oneself <nf>, make oneself easy about, make oneself easy on that score, satisfy oneself on that point, make sure of, make up one's mind

20 **find credence, be believed,** be accepted, be received; be swallowed *and* **go down** *and* pass current <nf>; produce *or* carry conviction; have the ear of, gain the confidence of

ADJS 21 **believing,** of belief, preceptive, principled; attitudinal; **believing, undoubting, undoubtful,** doubtless <old>; faithful <old>, God-fearing, pious, pietistic, observant, **devout;** under the impression, impressed with; **convinced, confident,** positive, dogmatic, secure, **persuaded,** sold on, **satisfied, assured;** born-again; **sure, certain** 970.13,20; fideistic

22 **trusting, trustful,** trusty <old>, **confiding, unsuspecting, unsuspicious,** without suspicion; childlike, innocent, guileless, naive 416.5; **knee-jerk, credulous** 954.8; relying, depending, reliant, dependent; gullible, naive

23 **believed, credited, held, trusted, accepted;** received, of belief, authoritative, maintained; **undoubted,** unsuspected, **unquestioned,** undisputed, uncontested

24 **believable, credible, creditable; tenable,** conceivable, **plausible,** colorable, realistic; worthy of faith, trustworthy, trusty; fiduciary; reliable 969.17; unimpeachable, unexceptionable, **unquestionable** 970.15

25 fiducial, fiduciary; convictional

26 **convincing,** convictional, well-founded, **persuasive,** assuring, impressive, satisfying, satisfactory, confidence-building; decisive, absolute, conclusive, determinative; authoritative

27 **doctrinal, creedal,** preceptive, canonical, dogmatic, confessional, mandatory, of faith

ADVS 28 **believingly, undoubtingly,** undoubtfully, without doubt *or* question *or* quibble, unquestioningly; **trustingly,** trustfully, unsuspectingly, unsuspiciously; piously, devoutly; with faith; **with confidence,** on *or* upon trust, on faith, on one's say-so

29 **in one's opinion, to one's mind,** in one's thinking, **to one's way of thinking,** the way one thinks, **in one's estimation,** according to one's lights, **as one sees it, to the best of one's belief;** in the opinion of, in the eyes of

954 CREDULITY

NOUNS 1 **credulity, credulousness,** inclination *or* disposition to believe, ease of belief, will *or* willingness to believe, wishful belief *or* thinking; **blind faith,** unquestioning belief, knee-jerk response *or* agreement <nf>; uncritical acceptance, premature *or* unripe acceptation, hasty *or* rash conviction; **trustfulness, trustingness, unsuspiciousness,** unsuspectingness; uncriticalness, unskepticalness; overcredulity, overcredulousness, overtrustfulness, overopenness to conviction *or* persuasion, gross credulity; infatuation, fondness, dotage; one's blind side

2 **gullibility, dupability,** bamboozlability <nf>, cullibility <old>, **deceivability,** seduceability, persuadability, hoaxability; biddability; easiness <nf>, softness, weakness; **simpleness,** simplicity,

ingenuousness, unsophistication; greenness, naïveness, **naïveté,** naivety

3 **superstition,** superstitiousness; popular belief, **old wives' tale;** tradition, lore, folklore; charm, spell 691

4 trusting soul; **dupe** 358; sucker *and* patsy *and* easy mark *and* pushover <nf>

VERBS 5 **be credulous,** accept unquestioningly; not boggle at anything, **believe anything,** be easy of belief *or* persuasion, be uncritical, believe at the drop of a hat, be a dupe, think the moon is made of green cheese, buy a pig in a poke

6 <nf terms> kid oneself, fall for, swallow, swallow anything, swallow whole, not choke *or* gag on; swallow hook, line, and sinker; eat up, lap up, devour, gulp down, gobble up *or* down, buy, buy into, bite, nibble, rise to the fly, take the bait, swing at, go for, tumble for, be taken in, be suckered, be a sucker *or* a patsy *or* an easy mark

7 **be superstitious;** knock on wood, keep one's fingers crossed

ADJS 8 **credulous, knee-jerk** <nf>, easy of belief, ready *or* inclined to believe, easily taken in; **undoubting** 953.21; **trustful, trusting; unsuspicious, unsuspecting;** unthinking, uncritical, unskeptical; overcredulous, overtrustful, overtrusting, overconfiding; fond, infatuated, doting; **superstitious**

9 **gullible, dupable,** bamboozlable <nf>, cullible <old>, **deceivable, foolable, deludable, exploitable,** victimizable, seduceable, persuadable, hoaxable, humbugable, hoodwinkable; biddable; soft, easy <nf>, **simple; ingenuous, unsophisticated, green, naive** 416.5

955 UNBELIEF

NOUNS 1 **unbelief, disbelief,** nonbelief, unbelievingness, discredit; refusal *or* inability to believe; **incredulity** 955; **unpersuadedness,** unconvincedness, lack of conviction; **denial** 335.2, **rejection** 372; misbelief, heresy 688.2; infidelity, atheism, **agnosticism** 695.6; minimifidianism, nullifidianism

2 **doubt, doubtfulness, dubiousness,** dubiety; half-belief; **reservation, question,** question in one's mind; **skepticism,** skepticalness; total skepticism, Pyrrhonism; **suspicion,** suspiciousness, wariness, leeriness, **distrust, mistrust, misdoubt,** distrustfulness, mistrustfulness; **misgiving,** self-doubt, diffidence; qualm; scruple *and* scrupulousness <old>; hesitation; apprehension 127.4; **uncertainty** 971; shadow of doubt

3 **unbelievability,** unbelievableness, **incredibility, implausibility,** impossibility, improbability, inconceivability, untenableness, untenability; unpersuasiveness, unconvincingness; **doubtfulness, questionableness;** credibility gap; unreliability 971.6

4 doubter, doubting Thomas; scoffer, skeptic, cynic, pooh-pooher, nay-sayer, disbeliever, nonbeliever, unbeliever 695.11

VERBS 5 **disbelieve,** unbelieve, misbelieve, **not believe,** find hard to believe, not admit, refuse to admit, not buy <nf>, take no stock in *and* set no store by <nf>; **discredit,** refuse to credit, refuse to give credence to, give no credit *or* credence to; gag on, **not swallow** 956.3; negate, **deny** 335.4, nay-say, say nay; scoff at, pooh-pooh; **reject** 372.2

6 **doubt, be doubtful, be dubious, be skeptical,** doubt the truth of, beg leave to doubt, **have one's doubts,** have *or* harbor *or* entertain doubts *or* suspicions, half believe, have reservations, **take with a grain of salt,** be from Missouri <nf>, scruple <old>, **distrust, mistrust,** misgive, cross one's fingers; **be uncertain** 971.9; **suspect,** smell a rat *and* see something funny <nf>; **question,** query, **challenge, contest, dispute,** cast doubt on, greet with skepticism, keep one's eye on, treat with reserve, bring *or* call into question, raise a question, throw doubt upon, awake a doubt *or* suspicion; **doubt one's word,** give one the lie; doubt oneself, be diffident

7 **be unbelievable,** be incredible, be hard to swallow, defy belief, pass belief, be hard to believe, strain one's credulity, **stagger belief;** shake one's faith, undermine one's faith; perplex, boggle the mind, stagger, fill with doubt

ADJS 8 **unbelieving, disbelieving,** nonbelieving; faithless, without faith; unconfident, unconvinced, unconverted; nullifidian, minimifidian, creedless; **incredulous** 956.4; repudiative; **heretical** 688.9; **irreligious** 695.17

9 **doubting, doubtful, in doubt, dubious; questioning; skeptical,** Pyrrhonic, from Missouri <nf>; **distrustful, mistrustful, untrustful,** mistrusting, untrusting; **suspicious,** suspecting, scrupulous <old>, shy, wary, leery; **agnostic; uncertain**

10 **unbelievable, incredible,** unthinkable, **implausible,** unimaginable, inconceivable, not to be believed, **hard to believe,** hard of belief, beyond belief, unworthy of belief, not meriting *or* not deserving belief, tall <nf>; **defying belief,** staggering belief, passing belief; **mind-boggling,** preposterous, absurd, ridiculous, unearthly, ungodly; **doubtful, dubious,** doubtable, dubitable, **questionable,** problematic, problematical, **unconvincing,** open to doubt *or* suspicion; **suspicious,** suspect, funny; so-called, self-styled; thin *and* a bit thin <nf>; thick *and* a bit thick *and* a little too thick <nf>

11 under a cloud, unreliable

12 **doubted, questioned,** disputed, contested, moot; **distrusted,** mistrusted; **suspect,** suspected, **under suspicion,** under a cloud; **discredited,** exploded, rejected, **disbelieved**

ADVS **13** **unbelievingly,** doubtingly, **doubtfully, dubiously,** questioningly, **skeptically,** suspiciously; **with a grain of salt,** with reservations, with some allowance, with caution

14 **unbelievably, incredibly,** unthinkably, implausibly, inconceivably, unimaginably, staggeringly

956 INCREDULITY

NOUNS **1** **incredulity, incredulousness,** uncredulousness, refusal *or* disinclination to believe, resistance *or* resistiveness to belief, tough-mindedness, hardheadedness, **inconvincibility,** unconvincibility, unpersuadability, unpersuasibility; **suspiciousness,** suspicion, wariness, leeriness, guardedness, cautiousness, caution; **skepticism** 955.2

2 **ungullibility,** uncullibility <old>, **undupability, undeceivability,** unhoaxability, unseduceability; **sophistication**

VERBS **3** **refuse to believe,** resist believing, **not allow oneself to believe,** be slow to believe *or* accept; not kid oneself <nf>; **disbelieve** 954.5; **be skeptical** 955.6; **not swallow,** not be able to swallow *or* down <nf>, not go for *and* **not fall for** <nf>, not be taken in by; **not accept, not buy** *or* **buy into** <nf>, **reject** 372.2

ADJS **4** **incredulous,** uncredulous, **hard of belief,** shy of belief, disposed to doubt, indisposed *or* disinclined to believe, unwilling to accept; impervious to persuasion, **inconvincible,** unconvincible, unpersuadable, unpersuasible; **suspicious, suspecting,** wary, leery, cautious, guarded; **skeptical** 955.9

5 **ungullible,** uncullible <old>, **undupable, undeceivable, unfoolable, undeludable,** unhoaxable, unseduceable, hoaxproof; **sophisticated, wise, hardheaded,** practical, realistic, tough-minded; nobody's fool, not born yesterday, nobody's sucker *or* patsy <nf>

957 EVIDENCE, PROOF

NOUNS **1** **evidence, proof; reason to believe,** reason, grounds for belief; **ground, grounds,** material grounds, **facts, data,** information, record, premises, basis for belief; piece *or* item of evidence, **fact,** datum, relevant fact; **indication, manifestation, sign, symptom,** mark, token, mute witness; body of evidence, documentation; muniments, title deeds and papers; chain of evidence; **clue;** exhibit; intelligence; lowdown <nf>

2 **testimony, attestation,** attest <old>, **witness;** testimonial, testimonium <old>; **statement, declaration, assertion,** asseveration, affirmation 334, avouchment, avowal, averment, allegation, admission, **disclosure** 351, profession, word; confession; **deposition,** legal evidence, sworn evidence *or* testimony; *procès-verbal* <Fr>; compurgation; affidavit, sworn statement; instrument in proof, *pièce justificative* <Fr>

3 **proof, demonstration,** ironclad proof, incontrovertible proof; **determination, establishment, settlement; conclusive evidence,** indisputable evidence, incontrovertible evidence, damning evidence, unmistakable sign, sure sign, absolute indication, smoking gun <nf>; open-and-shut case; burden of proof, onus, *onus probandi* <L>; the proof of the pudding

4 **confirmation, substantiation,** proof, proving, proving out, bearing out, affirmation, attestation, **authentication, validation, certification,** ratification, **verification; corroboration, support,** supporting evidence, corroboratory evidence, fortification, buttressing, bolstering, backing, backing up, reinforcement, undergirding, strengthening, circumstantiation, fact sheet; **documentation**

5 **citation, reference,** quotation; **exemplification,** instance, example, case, case in point, particular, item, illustration, demonstration; cross reference

6 **witness, eyewitness,** spectator, earwitness; **bystander,** passerby; **deponent, testifier,** attestant, attester, attestator, voucher, swearer; **informant,** informer; character witness; cojuror, compurgator

7 **provability, demonstrability,** determinability; confirmability, supportability, verifiability

VERBS **8** **evidence, evince,** furnish evidence, **show, go to show, mean,** tend to show, witness to, testify to; **demonstrate, illustrate,** exhibit, manifest, display, express, set forth; approve; **attest; indicate, signify,** signalize, symptomatize, mark, **denote, betoken, point to,** give indication of, show signs of, bear on, touch on; **connote, imply, suggest,** involve; argue, breathe, tell, bespeak; **speak for itself,** speak volumes

9 **testify, attest, give evidence,** witness, witness to, **give** *or* **bear witness;** disclose 351.4; vouch, state one's case, **depose,** depone, **warrant, swear,** take one's oath, acknowledge, avow, **affirm,** avouch, aver, allege, asseverate, **certify, give one's word;** turn state's evidence, rat *and* squeal *and* sing <nf>; grass <Brit nf>

10 **prove, demonstrate, show,** afford proof of, prove to be, prove true; **establish,** fix, **determine, ascertain,** make out, remove all doubt; **settle,** settle the matter; **set at rest;** clinch *and* cinch *and* nail down <nf>; **prove one's point,** make one's case, bring home to, make good, have *or* make out a case; hold good, hold water; follow, follow from, follow as a matter of course

11 **confirm,** affirm, **attest,** warrant, uphold <Brit nf>, **substantiate, authenticate, validate, certify,** ratify, **verify;** circumstantiate, **corroborate, bear out,** support, buttress, **sustain,** fortify, bolster, back, back up, reinforce, undergird, strengthen; **document;** probate, prove; double-check

12 **adduce,** produce, **advance, present,** bring to bear, **offer,** proffer, invoke, obtest, allege <old>, plead, **bring forward,** bring on; rally, marshal, deploy, array; call to witness, call to *or* put in the witness box

13 **cite, name,** call to mind; **instance,** cite a particular *or* particulars, cite cases *or* a case in point, itemize, particularize, produce an instance, give a for-instance <nf>; **exemplify,** example <old>, **illustrate,** demonstrate; **document; quote,** quote chapter and verse

14 **refer to,** direct attention to, **appeal to,** invoke; make reference to; cross-refer, make a cross-reference; reference, cross-reference

15 **have evidence** *or* **proof,** have a case, possess incriminating evidence, **have something on** <nf>; **have the goods on** *and* have dead to rights *or* bang to rights <nf>

ADJS 16 **evidential,** evidentiary, **factual,** symptomatic, **significant, relevant, indicative,** attestative, attestive, probative; founded on, grounded on, based on; implicit, suggestive; material, telling, convincing, weighty; overwhelming, damning; **conclusive,** determinative, **decisive,** final, incontrovertible, irresistible, indisputable, irrefutable, sure, certain, absolute; documented, documentary; **valid, admissible;** adducible; firsthand, authentic, reliable 970.17, empirical, eyewitness; hearsay, circumstantial, presumptive, nuncupative, cumulative, ex parte

17 **demonstrative,** demonstrating, demonstrational, telltale; evincive, apodictic

18 **confirming,** confirmatory, confirmative, certificatory; substantiating, **verifying,** verificative; **corroborating,** corroboratory, **corroborative,** supportive, **supporting**

19 **provable, demonstrable,** demonstratable, apodictic, evincible, attestable, **confirmable,** checkable, **substantiatable, establishable,** supportable, sustainable, **verifiable,** validatable, authenticatable

20 **proved, proven, demonstrated,** shown; **established,** fixed, **settled, determined,** nailed down <nf>, ascertained; evident, self-evident; **confirmed, substantiated,** attested, **authenticated, certified, validated, verified;** circumstantiated, **corroborated,** borne out; cross-checked, double-checked; collated; ostensible

21 **unrefuted,** unconfuted, unanswered, uncontroverted, uncontradicted, **undenied;** unrefutable 970.15

ADVS 22 **evidentially,** according to the evidence, on the evidence, as attested by, judging by; **in confirmation, in corroboration of, in support of;** at first hand, at second hand; dead to rights *or* bang to rights *and* with a smoking gun *and* with one's pants down <nf>

23 **to illustrate,** to prove the point, as an example, as a case in point, to name an instance, by way of example, **for example, for instance,** to cite an instance, as an instance, e.g., *exempli gratia* <L>; as, **thus**

24 **which see, q.v.,** *quod vide* <L>; *loco citato* <L>, loc cit; *opere citato* <L>, op cit

PHRS 25 **it is proven,** *probatum est* <L>, there is nothing more to be said, it must follow; QED, *quod erat demonstrandum* <L>

958 DISPROOF

NOUNS 1 **disproof,** disproving, disproval, **invalidation,** disconfirmation, explosion, negation, redargution <old>; exposure, exposé; *reductio ad absurdum* <L>; circumstantial evidence, hearsay evidence, inadmissible evidence, incriminating evidence

2 **refutation, confutation,** confounding, refutal, **rebuttal, answer,** complete answer, crushing *or* effective rejoinder, squelch, comeback; discrediting; **overthrow,** overthrowal, upset, upsetting, subversion, undermining, demolition; renunciation; contention; **contradiction,** controversion, **denial** 335.2

3 **conclusive argument, elenchus, knockdown argument, floorer,** sockdolager <nf>; **clincher** *or* crusher *or* **settler** *and* finisher *and* squelcher <nf>

VERBS 4 **disprove, invalidate,** disconfirm, discredit, prove the contrary, belie, give the lie to, redargue <old>; **negate,** negative; **expose, show up;** explode, blow up, blow sky-high, **puncture,** deflate, **shoot** *or* **poke full of holes, cut to pieces, cut the ground from under; knock the bottom out of** <nf>, knock the props *or* chocks out from under, knock down, take the ground from under, undercut, cut the ground from under one's feet, not leave a leg to stand on, have the last word, leave nothing to say, put *or* lay to rest

5 **refute, confute, confound, rebut,** parry, answer, **answer conclusively,** dismiss, dispose of; **overthrow,** overturn, overwhelm, upset, subvert, defeat, demolish, undermine; argue down, argue into a corner; show what's what; floor *and* finish *and* settle *and* squash *and* squelch <nf>, crush, smash all opposition; silence, put *or* reduce to silence, shut up, stop the mouth of; nonplus, take the wind out of one's sails; **contradict,** controvert, counter, run counter, **deny** 335.4

ADJS 6 **refuting, confuting,** confounding, confutative, refutative, refutatory, discomfirmatory; contradictory, contrary 335.5

7 **disproved,** disconfirmed, **invalidated,** negated, negatived, discredited, belied; **exposed,** shown up; **punctured,** deflated, **exploded; refuted,** confuted, confounded; **upset, overthrown,** overturned; **contradicted,** disputed, denied, impugned; dismissed, discarded, rejected 372.3

8 **unproved,** not proved, unproven, **undemonstrated,** unshown, not shown; **untried,** untested; **unestablished,** unfixed, **unsettled, undetermined,** unascertained; **unconfirmed, unsubstantiated,** unattested, **unauthenticated,** unvalidated, uncertified, **unverified; uncorroborated,** unsustained, **unsupported,** unsupported by evidence, **groundless,** without grounds *or* basis, **unfounded** 935.13; **inconclusive,** indecisive; **moot,** sub judice; not following

9 **unprovable,** controvertible, **undemonstrable,** undemonstratable, unattestable, unsubstantiatable, **unsupportable,** unconfirmable, unsustainable, unverifiable

10 **refutable,** confutable, **disprovable,** defeasible

959 QUALIFICATION

NOUNS 1 **qualification, limitation, limiting, restriction,** circumscription, **modification,** hedge, hedging; setting conditions, conditionality, provisionality, circumstantiality; specification; **allowance, concession,** cession, grant; grain of salt; **reservation, exception,** waiver, exemption; **exclusion,** ruling out, including out <nf>; specialness, special circumstance, special case, special treatment; **mental reservation,** salvo <old>, *arrière-pensée* <Fr>, crossing one's fingers; extenuating circumstances

2 **condition, provision, proviso, stipulation,** whereas; definition; frame of reference; **specification,** parameter, given, *donnée* <Fr>, **limitation,** limiting condition, boundary condition; **contingency,** circumstance 766; **catch** *and* joker *and* kicker *and* string *and* a string to it <nf>; **requisite, prerequisite,** obligation; *sine qua non* <L>, *conditio sine qua non* <L>; clause, escape clause, escapeway, escape hatch, saving clause; escalator clause; **terms,** provisions; grounds; small *or* fine print *and* fine print at the bottom <nf>; ultimatum

VERBS 3 **qualify, limit,** condition <old>, hedge, hedge about, **modify, restrict,** restrain, circumscribe, delimit, set limits *or* conditions, box in <nf>, narrow, set criteria; adjust to, regulate by; alter 852.6; **temper, season,** leaven, soften, modulate, moderate, assuage, **mitigate,** palliate, abate, reduce, diminish

4 **make conditional,** make contingent, **condition;** make it a condition, attach a condition *or* proviso, **stipulate;** insist upon, make a point of; **have a catch** *and* have a joker *or* kicker *and* have a joker in the deck *and* have a string attached <nf>; cross one's fingers behind one's back

5 **allow for, make allowance for,** make room for, provide for, open the door to, take account of, **take into account** *or* **consideration, consider,** consider the circumstances; allow, **grant, concede,** admit, admit exceptions, see the special circumstances; **relax,** relax the condition, **waive, set aside,** ease, lift temporarily, pull one's punches <nf>; disregard, **discount,** leave out of account; consider the source, take with a grain of salt

6 **depend,** hang, rest, hinge; **depend on** *or* **upon,** hang on *or* upon, **rest on** *or* **upon,** rest with, repose upon, lie on, lie with, stand on *or* upon, be based on, be bounded *or* limited by, be dependent on, be predicated on, **be contingent** *or* **conditional on; hinge on** *or* **upon, turn on** *or* **upon, revolve on** *or* **upon,** have as a fulcrum

ADJS 7 **qualifying,** qualificative, qualificatory, **modifying,** modificatory, altering; **limiting, limitational, restricting,** limitative, restrictive, bounding; circumstantial, contingent; **extenuating,** extenuatory, **mitigating,** mitigative, mitigatory, modulatory, palliative, assuasive, lenitive, softening

8 **conditional, provisional,** provisory, stipulatory; parametric; specificative; **specified, stipulated,** defined, fixed, stated, given; **temporary,** expedient

9 **contingent, dependent, depending;** contingent on, **dependent on, depending on,** predicated on, based on, hanging *or* hinging on, turning on, revolving on; depending on circumstances; circumscribed by, hedged *or* hedged about by; boxed in <nf>; **subject to,** incidental to, incident to

10 **qualified, modified, conditioned, limited, restricted,** delimited, hedged, hedged about; **tempered, seasoned,** leavened, palliative, softened, moderated, **mitigated,** modulated

ADVS 11 **conditionally, provisionally, with**

qualifications, with a string *or* catch *or* joker *or* kicker to it <nf>; with a reservation *or* an exception, with a grain of salt; **temporarily,** for the time being

CONJS 12 **provided,** provided that, provided always, **providing,** with this proviso, it being provided; **on condition,** on condition that, **with the stipulation,** with the understanding, according as, subject to

13 **granting, admitting, allowing,** admitting that, allowing that, seeing that; exempting, waiving

14 **if,** an *or* an' <old>, if and when, only if, if only, if and only if, if it be so, if it be true that, if it so happens *or* turns out

15 **so,** just so, so that <old>, **so as, so long as, as long as**

16 **unless,** unless that, **if not, were it not,** were it not that; **except, excepting,** except that, with the exception that, save, **but; without,** absent

960 NO QUALIFICATIONS

NOUNS 1 **unqualifiedness,** unlimitedness, **unconditionality,** unrestrictedness, **unreservedness,** uncircumscribedness; categoricalness; **absoluteness,** definiteness, **explicitness;** decisiveness

ADJS 2 **unqualified, unconditional,** unconditioned, **unrestricted,** unhampered, **unlimited,** uncircumscribed, unmitigated, **categorical,** straight, **unreserved,** without reserve; unaltered, unadulterated, intact; **implicit,** unquestioning, undoubting, unhesitating; **explicit, express, unequivocal,** clear, unmistakable; **peremptory,** indisputable, inappealable; **without exception,** admitting no exception, unwaivable; **positive, absolute, flat,** definite, definitive, determinate, decided, decisive, fixed, final, conclusive; **complete, entire, whole, total,** global; **utter,** perfect, downright, outright, out-and-out, straight-out <nf>, all-out, flat-out <nf>

ADVS 3 <nf terms> **no ifs, ands, or buts;** no strings attached, no holds barred, no catch *or* joker *or* kicker, no joker in the deck, no small print *or* fine print, no fine print at the bottom; downright, that's that, what you see is what you get

961 FORESIGHT

NOUNS 1 **foresight,** foreseeing, looking ahead, **prevision,** divination 962.2, forecast; **prediction** 961; **foreglimpse,** foreglance, foregleam; preview, prepublication; **prospect,** prospection; **anticipation,** contemplation, envisionment, envisagement; **foresightedness; farsightedness,** longsightedness, farseeingness; sagacity, providence, discretion, preparation, provision, forehandedness, readiness, consideration, prudence 920.7

2 **forethought, premeditation,** predeliberation, preconsideration 380.3; caution 494; lead time, advance notice; run-up; plan, long-range plan, contingency plan; prospectus

3 **foreknowledge,** foreknowing, forewisdom, **precognition,** prescience, presage, presentiment, foreboding; clairvoyance 689.8; foreseeability 961.8; insight; premonition, expectation

4 **foretaste,** antepast <old>, prelibation

VERBS 5 **foresee,** see beforehand *or* ahead, foreglimpse, foretaste, **anticipate,** contemplate, envision, envisage, **look forward to,** look ahead, look beyond, look *or* pry *or* peep into the future; **predict** 962.9; think ahead *or* beforehand; have an eye to the future

6 **foreknow,** know beforehand, precognize, know in advance, have prior knowledge; smell in the wind, scent from afar; **have a presentiment,** have a premonition 133.11; see the handwriting on the wall, have a hunch *or* feel in one's bones <nf>, just know, intuit 934.4

ADJS 7 **foreseeing, foresighted; foreknowing, precognizant,** precognitive, prescient; divinatory 962.11; **forethoughted,** forethoughtful; anticipant, anticipatory, expectant; **farseeing, farsighted,** longsighted; sagacious, provident, providential, forehanded, prepared, ready, prudent 920.19; intuitive 933.5; clairvoyant, telepathic

8 foreseeable 962.13; foreseen 962.14; predictable; intuitable

ADVS 9 **foreseeingly, foreknowingly,** with foresight; against the time when, for a rainy day

962 PREDICTION

NOUNS 1 **prediction, foretelling,** foreshowing, forecasting, **prognosis,** prognostication, presage <old>, presaging; **prophecy,** prophesying, vaticination; **soothsaying,** soothsay; prefiguration, prefigurement, prefiguring; preshowing, presignifying, presigning <old>; **forecast, promise;** apocalypse; prospectus; foresight 961; presentiment, foreboding; omen 133.3,6; **guesswork,** speculation, guestimation <nf>, hunch, feeling; **probability** 968, statistical prediction, actuarial prediction; improbability 969

2 **divination,** divining; **augury,** haruspication, haruspicy, pythonism, mantic, mantology <old>; **fortunetelling,** crystal gazing, palm-reading, palmistry, tea-leaf reading, tarot reading, I Ching; crystal ball; astrology, horoscopy, astrology 1072.20; sorcery 690; clairvoyance 689.8, telepathy

3 dowsing, witching, water witching; **divining rod** *or* stick, wand, witch *or* witching stick, dowsing rod, doodlebug; water diviner, dowser, water witch *or* witcher; hydromancy

4 **predictor, foreteller, prognosticator,** seer, foreseer, forecaster, foreknower, presager <old>, prefigurer; **forecaster;** prophet, prophesier, soothsayer, *vates* <L>; **diviner,** divinator; augur; psychic 689.13; clairvoyant; prophetess, seeress, divineress, pythoness; Druid; **fortuneteller;** crystal gazer; palmist; geomancer; haruspex *or* aruspex, astrologer 1070.23; weather prophet 317.6; prophet of doom, calamity howler, Cassandra; religious prophets 684; speculator

5 <nf terms> **dopester, tipster, tout** *or* touter

6 **sibyl;** Pythia, Pythian, Delphic sibyl; Babylonian *or* Persian sibyl, Cimmerian sibyl, Cumaean sibyl, Erythraean sibyl, Hellespontine *or* Trojan sibyl, Libyan sibyl, Phrygian sibyl, Samian sibyl, Tiburtine sibyl

7 **oracle;** Delphic *or* Delphian oracle, Python, Pythian oracle; Delphic tripod, tripod of the Pythia; Dodona, oracle *or* oak of Dodona; sage

8 **predictability,** divinability, foretellableness, **calculability, foreseeability,** foreknowableness

VERBS 9 **predict,** make a prediction, **foretell, soothsay,** prefigure, **forecast, prophesy, prognosticate,** call <nf>, make a prophecy *or* prognosis, vaticinate, forebode, presage, see ahead, see *or* tell the future, read the future, see in the crystal ball; **foresee** 961.5; dope *and* dope out <nf>; call the turn *and* call one's shot <nf>; **divine;** witch *or* dowse for water; **tell fortunes,** fortune-tell, cast one's fortune; read one's hand, read palms, read tea leaves, cast a horoscope *or* nativity; **guess,** speculate, guesstimate <nf>, make an educated guess; **bet, bet on, gamble**

10 **portend,** foretoken 133.12, foreshow, foreshadow

ADJS 11 **predictive,** predictory, predictional; **foretelling,** forewarning, forecasting; prefiguring, prefigurative, presignifying, presignificative; **prophetic,** prophetical, fatidic, fatidical, apocalyptic, apocalyptical; vatic, vaticinatory, vaticinal, mantic, sibyllic, sibylline, fatidic, fatidical; **divinatory, oracular,** auguring, augural; haruspical; **foreseeing** 960.7; presageful, presaging; **prognostic,** prognosticative, prognosticatory; fortunetelling; weather-wise

12 **ominous,** premonitory, foreboding 133.17, unfavorable, adverse

13 **predictable, divinable, foretellable, calculable,** anticipatable; **foreseeable, foreknowable,** precognizable; **probable** 968.6; improbable 969.3

14 **predicted,** prophesied, presaged, **foretold, forecast,** foreshown; foreseen, foreglimpsed, **foreknown**

963 NECESSITY

NOUNS 1 **necessity,** necessariness, necessitude <old>, necessitation, entailment; mandatoriness, mandatedness, obligatoriness, **obligation,** obligement; compulsoriness, **compulsion,** duress 424.3

2 **requirement, requisite,** requisition; **necessity, need, want,** occasion; need for, **call for, demand,** demand for; desideratum, desideration; **prerequisite,** prerequirement; **must,** must item; sine qua non; **essential,** indispensable; the necessary, the needful; necessities, necessaries, essentials, bare necessities, fundamentals

3 **needfulness,** requisiteness; **essentiality,** essentialness, vitalness; **indispensability,** indispensableness; irreplaceability; irreducibleness, irreducibility

4 **urgent need, dire necessity; exigency** *or* exigence, **urgency,** imperative, imperativeness, immediacy, pressingness, pressure; "necessity's sharp pinch"—Shakespeare; matter of necessity, case of need *or* emergency, **matter of life and death;** predicament 1013.4

5 **involuntariness,** unwilledness, **instinctiveness;** compulsiveness; reflex action, Pavlovian reaction, conditioning, automatism; echolalia, echopraxia; automatic writing; **instinct,** impulse 365; blind impulse *or* instinct, knee-jerk reaction, sheer chemistry

6 **choicelessness,** no choice, no alternative, lack of choice, **Hobson's choice,** only choice, zero option, coercion; that *or* nothing; not a pin to choose, six of one and half a dozen of the other, distinction without a difference; indiscrimination 945

7 **inevitability,** inevitableness, **unavoidableness,** necessity, inescapableness, inevasibleness, unpreventability, undeflectability, ineluctability; irrevocability, indefeasibility; uncontrollability; relentlessness, inexorability, unyieldingness, inflexibility; fatedness, fatefulness, **certainty,** sureness; *force majeure* <Fr>, vis major, act of God, inevitable accident, unavoidable casualty; **predetermination;** God's will, will of Allah; doom, karma, one's lot, **fate** 964.2

VERBS 8 **necessitate, oblige,** dictate, **constrain;** coerce, impel, force, mandate; insist upon, **compel** 424.4

9 **require, need, want,** lack, must have, feel the want of, have occasion for, be in need of, be hurting for <nf>, stand in need of, not be able to dispense with, not be able to do without; **call for,** cry for, cry out for, clamor for; **demand,** ask, claim, exact; prerequire <old>; need *or* want doing, take doing <nf>, be indicated

10 **be necessary,** lie under a necessity, be one's fate; be

a must <nf>; can't be avoided, can't be helped; be under the necessity of, be in for; be obliged, **must,** need *or* needs must <old>, **have to,** have got to <nf>, should, need, **need to,** have need to; not able to keep from, not able to help, **cannot help but,** cannot do otherwise; be forced *or* driven

11 **have no choice** *or* **alternative,** have one's options reduced *or* closed *or* eliminated, have no option but, cannot choose but, be robbed *or* relieved of choice; be pushed to the wall, be driven into a corner; take it or leave it *and* like it or lump it <nf>, have that or nothing

ADJS 12 **necessary, obligatory, compulsory,** entailed, mandatory, fundamental; **exigent, urgent,** necessitous, importunate, **imperative;** choiceless, without choice, out of one's hands *or* control

13 **requisite, needful, required, needed,** necessary, **wanted, called for,** indicated, imperative; **essential, vital, indispensable,** unforgoable, irreplaceable; irreducible, irreductible; prerequisite

14 **involuntary, instinctive, automatic, mechanical,** reflex, reflexive, knee-jerk <nf>, autonomic, conditioned; **unconscious,** unthinking, blind; **unwitting,** unintentional, independent of one's will, unwilling, unwilled, against one's will; compulsory, **compulsive;** forced; **impulsive** 365.9

15 **inevitable, unavoidable,** necessary, **inescapable,** inevasible, unpreventable, undeflectable, ineluctable, irrevocable, indefeasible; uncontrollable, unstoppable; relentless, inexorable, unyielding, inflexible; irresistible, resistless; **certain,** fateful, **sure,** sure as fate, sure as death, sure as death and taxes; preordained, predestined, **destined, fated** 964.9; necessitarian, deterministic

ADVS 16 **necessarily, needfully,** requisitely; **of necessity,** from necessity, need *or* needs <old>, perforce; without choice; **willy-nilly,** *nolens volens* <L>, willing or unwilling, *bon gré mal gré* <Fr>, whether one will or not; come what may; compulsorily

17 **if necessary, if need be,** if worst comes to worst; for lack of something better, *faute de mieux* <Fr>

18 **involuntarily, instinctively, automatically, mechanically,** by reflex, reflexively; blindly, **unconsciously,** unthinkingly, without premeditation; **unwittingly,** unintentionally; **compulsively; unwillingly** 325.8

19 **inevitably, unavoidably,** necessarily, **inescapably,** come hell *or* high water <nf>, inevasibly, unpreventably, ineluctably; irrevocably, indefeasibly; uncontrollably; relentlessly, inexorably, unyieldingly, inflexibly; fatefully, **certainly, surely**

PHRS 20 **it is necessary, it must be,** if need be, it needs must be *or* it must needs be <old>, it will be, there's no two ways about it, it must have its way; it cannot be helped, there is no helping it *or* help for it, that's the way the cookie crumbles *or* the ball bounces <nf>, what will be will be, it's God's will; the die is cast; it is fated 963.11

964 PREDETERMINATION

NOUNS 1 **predetermination, predestination,** foredestiny, **preordination,** foreordination, foreordainment; decree; foregone conclusion, par for the course <nf>, preconceived notion *or* opinion; **necessity** 963; foreknowledge, prescience 960.3

2 **fate,** fatality, **fortune, lot,** cup, **portion,** appointed lot, karma, kismet, weird, *moira* <Gk>, future 839; **destiny,** destination, **end,** final lot; **doom,** foredoom <old>, God's will, will of Heaven; **inevitability** 963.7; "a tyrant's authority for crime and a fool's excuse for failure"—Ambrose Bierce; the handwriting on the wall; book of fate; Fortune's wheel, wheel of fortune *or* chance; astral influences, stars, planets, constellation, astrology 1070.20; unlucky day, ides of March, Friday, Friday the thirteenth, *dies funestis* <L>

3 **Fates,** *Fata* <L>, Parcae, *Moirai* <Gk>, Clotho, Lachesis, Atropos; Nona, Decuma, Morta; Weird Sisters, Weirds; Norns; Urdur, Verthandi, Skuld; Fortuna, Lady *or* Dame Fortune, *Tyche* <Gk>; Providence, Heaven, "a divinity that shapes our ends, rough-hew them how we will"—Shakespeare

4 **determinism, fatalism,** necessitarianism, necessarianism, predeterminism; predestinarianism, Calvinism, election

5 **determinist, fatalist,** necessitarian, necessarian; predestinationist, predestinarian, Calvinist

VERBS 6 **predetermine, predecide,** preestablish, preset; **predestine,** predestinate, **preordain,** foreordain; agree beforehand, preconcert

7 **destine, predestine,** necessitate 963.8, destinate <old>, **ordain,** fate, mark, appoint, decree, intend; come with the territory <nf>; have in store for; **doom,** foredoom

ADJS 8 **determined, predetermined, predecided,** preestablished, **predestined,** predestinate, **preordained,** foreordained; foregone; open-and-shut; arranged

9 **destined, fated,** fateful, fatal <old>, ordained, written, in the cards, marked, appointed <old>, in store, cut-and-dried; **doomed,** foredoomed, devoted; inevitable 962.15

10 **deterministic, fatalistic,** necessitarian, necessarian

PHRS 11 **it is fated, it is written,** it's in the cards; what will be will be, *che sarà sarà* <Ital>, *que será será* <Sp>; *c'est la vie* and *c'est la guerre* <Fr>

965 PREARRANGEMENT

NOUNS 1 **prearrangement,** preordering, preconcertedness; premeditation, plotting, planning, scheming; directed verdict; **reservation,** booking; overbooking

2 <nf terms> **put-up job,** packed *or* rigged game *or* jury, packed deal, stacked deck, cold deck, boat race, tank job; **frame-up,** frame, setup

3 **schedule, program,** programma, **bill,** card, **calendar,** docket, slate; playbill; batting order, **lineup, roster,** rota <chiefly Brit>; blueprint, budget; **prospectus;** schedule *or* program of operation, **order of the day,** things to be done, **agenda,** list of agenda; protocol; laundry list *and* wish list <nf>; **bill of fare, menu,** *carte du jour* <Fr>

VERBS 4 **prearrange,** precontrive, predesign <old>, preorder, preconcert; premeditate, plot, plan, scheme; **reserve,** book, overbook

5 <nf terms> **fix, rig,** pack, cook, cook up; **stack the cards,** cold-deck, pack the deal; put in the bag, sew up; frame, frame-up, set up; **throw,** tank, go in the tank, hold a boat race

6 **schedule, line up** <nf>, **slate, book,** book in, bill, program, calendar, docket, budget, put on the agenda

ADJS 7 **prearranged,** precontrived, predesigned <old>, preordered, preconcerted, cut out; premeditated, plotted, planned, schemed; cut-and-dried, cut-and-dry

8 <nf terms> **fixed, rigged, put-up,** packed, stacked, cooked, cooked-up; **in the bag,** on ice, iced, cinched, sewed up; **framed, framed-up,** set-up

9 scheduled, slated, booked, billed, booked-in, to come

966 POSSIBILITY

NOUNS 1 **possibility,** possibleness, **the realm of possibility,** the domain of the possible, conceivableness, **conceivability,** thinkability, thinkableness, imaginability; **probability,** likelihood 968; what may be, what might be, what is possible, what one can do, what can be done, the possible, the attainable, the feasible; **potential, potentiality,** virtuality; contingency, eventuality; **chance, prospect, odds; outside chance** <nf>, off chance, remote possibility, ghost of a chance; hope, outside hope, small hope, slim odds; **good possibility, good chance,** even chance 972.7; bare possibility 972.9

2 **practicability, practicality, feasibility; workability,** operability, actability, performability, realizability, negotiability; **viability,** viableness; **achievability,** doability, compassability, **attainability;** surmountability, superability; realm of possibility

3 **accessibility,** access, **approachability, openness,** reachableness, come-at-ableness *and* get-at-ableness <nf>; **penetrability,** perviousness; **obtainability,** obtainableness, **availability, donability, procurability,** procurableness, securableness, getableness, acquirability

VERBS 4 **be possible,** could be, might be, **have** *or* **stand a chance** *or* **good chance,** bid fair to

5 make possible, **enable,** permit, permit of, clear the road *or* path for, smooth the way for, open the way for, open the door to, open up the possibility of, give a chance to

ADJS 6 **possible,** within the bounds *or* realm *or* range *or* domain of possibility, in one's power, in one's hands, humanly possible; **probable,** likely 968.6; **conceivable,** conceivably possible, **imaginable, thinkable,** cogitable; plausible 968.7; **potential,** virtual; contingent; able, apt

7 **practicable, practical, feasible; workable,** actable, performable, effectible <old>, realizable, compassable, operable, negotiable, doable, swingable, bridgeable; **viable; achievable, attainable;** surmountable, superable, overcomable

8 **accessible, approachable,** come-at-able *and* get-at-able <nf>, **reachable,** within reach; **open,** open to; **penetrable,** get-in-able <nf>, pervious; **obtainable, attainable, available,** procurable, securable, findable, easy to come by, getable, to be had, donable

ADVS 9 **possibly, conceivably,** imaginably, feasibly; within the realm of possibility; **perhaps,** perchance, haply; maybe, it may be, for all *or* aught one knows

10 **by any possibility, by any chance,** by any means, **by any manner of means;** in any way, in any possible way, **at any cost, at all,** if at all, ever; on the bare possibility, on the off chance, by merest chance

11 **if possible,** if humanly possible, **God willing,** *Deo volente* <L>, wind and weather permitting, Lord willing and the creek don't rise

967 IMPOSSIBILITY

NOUNS 1 **impossibility,** impossibleness, the realm *or* domain of the impossible, **inconceivability,** unthinkability, unimaginability, what cannot be, what can never be, what cannot happen, hopelessness, Chinaman's chance *and* a snowball's chance in hell <nf>, **no chance** 972.10; **self-contradiction,** unreality, absurdity, paradox, oxymoron, logical impossibility; impossible, the impossible, impossibilism; no-no <nf>

2 **impracticability,** unpracticability, **impracticality, unfeasibility; unworkability,** inoperability,

unperformability; **unachievability, unattainability;** unrealizability, uncompassability; insurmountability, **insuperability**

3 **inaccessibility,** unaccessibility; **unapproachability,** un-come-at-ableness <nf>, unreachableness; **impenetrability,** imperviousness; **unobtainability,** unobtainableness, **unattainability, unavailability,** unprocurableness, unsecurableness, ungettableness <nf>, unacquirability; undiscoverability, unascertainableness

VERBS 4 **be impossible,** be an impossibility, **not have a chance,** be a waste of time; **contradict itself,** be a logical impossibility, be a paradox; fly in the face of reason

5 **attempt the impossible,** try for a miracle, look for a needle in a haystack *or* in a bottle of hay, try to be in two places at once, try to fetch water in a sieve *or* catch the wind in a net *or* weave a rope of sand *or* get figs from thistles *or* gather grapes from thorns *or* make bricks from straw *or* make cheese of chalk *or* make a silk purse out of a sow's ear *or* change the leopard's spots *or* get blood from a turnip; ask the impossible, cry for the moon; turn back time; walk on water

6 **make impossible,** rule out, disenable, disqualify, close out, **bar,** prohibit, put out of reach, leave no chance, make things difficult

ADJS 7 **impossible, not possible,** beyond the bounds of possibility *or* reason, contrary to reason, at variance with the facts; **inconceivable, unimaginable, unthinkable, not to be thought of, out of the question;** hopeless; **absurd,** ridiculous, preposterous; **self-contradictory,** paradoxical, oxymoronic, logically impossible; **ruled-out,** excluded, closed-out, **barred,** prohibited, forbidden; self-contradictory, self-defeating

8 **impracticable, impractical, unpragmatic, unfeasible; unworkable,** unviable, unperformable, inoperable, undoable, unnegotiable, unbridgeable; **unachievable, unattainable,** uneffectible <old>; unrealizable, uncompassable; insurmountable, unsurmountable, **insuperable,** unovercomable; **beyond one,** beyond one's power, beyond one's control, out of one's depth, too much for

9 **inaccessible,** unaccessible; **unapproachable,** un-come-at-able <nf>; **unreachable,** beyond reach, out of reach; **impenetrable,** impervious; closed to, denied to, lost to, closed forever to; **unobtainable, unattainable, unavailable,** unprocurable, unsecurable, ungettable <nf>, unacquirable; not to be had, **not to be had for love or money;** undiscoverable, unascertainable

ADVS 10 **impossibly, inconceivably,** unimaginably, unthinkably; not at any price

PHRS 11 no can do, no way, no way José <nf>

968 PROBABILITY

NOUNS 1 **probability, likelihood,** likeliness, liability, aptitude, verisimilitude; **chance, odds; expectation, outlook,** prospect; favorable prospect, well-grounded hope, some *or* reasonable hope, fair expectation; **good chance** 972.8; presumption, presumptive evidence; tendency; probable cause, reasonable ground *or* presumption; probabilism; possibility 966

2 **mathematical probability,** statistical probability, statistics, **predictability;** probability theory, game theory, theory of games; operations research; probable error, standard deviation; stochastic *or* statistical independence, stochastic variable; probability curve, frequency curve, frequency polygon, frequency distribution, probability function, probability density function, probability distribution, cumulative distribution function; **statistical mechanics,** quantum mechanics, uncertainty *or* indeterminancy principle, Maxwell-Boltzmann distribution law, Bose-Einstein statistics, Fermi-Dirac statistics; **mortality table,** actuarial table, life table, combined experience table, Commissioners Standard Ordinary table; blip, hiccup

3 **plausibility; reasonability** 935.9; **credibility** 953.8; verisimilitude

VERBS 4 **be probable, seem likely,** could be, offer a good prospect, offer the expectation, have *or* run a good chance, be in the running, come as no surprise; **promise,** be promising, make fair promise, **bid fair to,** stand fair to, show a tendency, be in the cards, have the makings of, have favorable odds, lead one to expect; **make probable,** probabilize, make more likely, smooth the way for; increase the chances

5 **think likely, daresay,** venture to say; anticipate; **presume,** suppose 951.10

ADJS 6 **probable, likely, liable, apt,** verisimilar, in the cards, odds-on; **promising, hopeful,** fair, in a fair way; foreseeable, **predictable; presumable,** presumptive; **statistical,** actuarial; mathematically *or* statistically probable, predictable within limits; prone, apt

7 **plausible,** colorable, apparent <old>; **reasonable** 935.20; credible 953.24; **conceivable** 966.6

ADVS 8 **probably, in all probability or likelihood,** likely, **most likely, very likely;** as likely as not, very like *and* like enough *and* like as not <nf>; **doubtlessly,** doubtless, **no doubt,** indubitably; **presumably,** presumptively; by all odds, ten to one, a hundred to one, dollars to doughnuts

PHRS 9 **there is reason to believe,** I am led to believe, it can be supposed, it would appear, it stands to reason, it might be thought, one can assume, appearances are in favor of, the chances *or* odds are, you can bank on it, you can make book on it, you can bet on it, you can bet your bottom dollar, you can just bet, you can't go wrong; I daresay, I venture to say

969 IMPROBABILITY

NOUNS 1 **improbability, unlikelihood,** unlikeliness; **doubtfulness,** dubiousness, **questionableness; implausibility,** incredibility 954.3; little expectation, low order of probability, poor possibility, bare possibility, faint likelihood, poor prospect, poor outlook, a ghost of a chance, fat chance <nf>, chance in a million; **small chance** 971.9

VERBS 2 **be improbable, not be likely,** be a stretch of the imagination, strain one's credulity, go beyond reason, go beyond belief, go far afield, go beyond the bounds of reason *or* probability, be far-fetched *or* fetched from afar

ADJS 3 **improbable, unlikely,** unpromising, hardly possible, logic-defying, scarcely to be expected *or* anticipated; statistically improbable; **doubtful,** dubious, **questionable,** doubtable, dubitable, more than doubtful; far-fetched, **implausible,** incredible 955.10; unlooked-for, unexpected, unpredictable

PHRS 4 **not likely!,** no fear!, never fear!, I ask you!, you should live so long! <nf>, don't hold your breath!, don't bet *or* make book on it <nf>

970 CERTAINTY

NOUNS 1 **certainty, certitude,** certainness, **sureness,** surety, **assurance, assuredness,** certain knowledge; **positiveness, absoluteness, definiteness,** dead *or* moral *or* absolute certainty; unequivocalness, unmistakableness, unambiguity, nonambiguity, univocity, univocality; **infallibility,** infallibilism, inerrability, inerrancy; **necessity,** determinacy, determinateness, noncontingency, Hobson's choice, ineluctability, predetermination, predestination, **inevitability** 963.7; **truth** 972; **proved fact,** probatum

2 <nf terms> **sure thing,** dead certainty, dead cert <Brit nf>, dead-sure thing, sure bet, sure card, aces wired, cinch, lead-pipe cinch, dead cinch, lock, mortal lock, shoo-in, open-and-shut case

3 **unquestionability, undeniability,** indubitability, indubitableness, **indisputability,** incontestability, incontrovertibility, **irrefutability,** unrefutability, unconfutability, irrefragability, unimpeachability; **doubtlessness, questionlessness; demonstrability,** provability, verifiability, confirmability; factuality, **reality,** actuality 761.2

4 **reliability, dependability, dependableness, validity, trustworthiness,** faithworthiness; unerringness; predictability, calculability; stability, substantiality, firmness, **soundness,** solidity, staunchness, steadiness, **steadfastness;** secureness, **security;** invincibility 15.4; **authoritativeness, authenticity**

5 **confidence,** confidentness, conviction, belief 953, fixed *or* settled belief, **sureness, assurance, assuredness,** surety, security, certitude; **faith,** subjective certainty; trust 953.1; **positiveness, cocksureness; self-confidence, self-assurance, self-reliance;** poise 106.3; courage 492; **overconfidence, oversureness,** overweening <old>, overweeningness, hubris; pride 136, arrogance 141, pomposity 501.7, self-importance 140.1

6 **dogmatism,** dogmaticalness, pontification, **positiveness,** positivism, peremptoriness, **opinionatedness,** self-opinionatedness; bigotry; infallibilism

7 **dogmatist,** dogmatizer, opinionist, doctrinaire, bigot; positivist; infallibilist

8 **ensuring, assurance;** reassurance, reassurement; **certification;** ascertainment, **determination,** establishment; **verification, corroboration,** substantiation, validation, collation, check, cross-check, double-check, checking; independent *or* objective witness; **confirmation**

VERBS 9 **be certain, be confident,** feel sure, rest assured, have sewed up <nf>, **have no doubt,** doubt not; know, just know, know for certain; **bet on** *and* gamble on *and* bet one's bottom dollar on *and* bet the ranch on <nf>; admit of no doubt; **go without saying,** *aller sans dire* <Fr>, be axiomatic *or* apodictic, bet one's life <nf>

10 **dogmatize,** lay down the law, pontificate, oracle, oraculate, proclaim, assert oneself

11 **make sure, make certain,** make sure of, make no doubt, make no mistake; remove *or* dismiss *or* expunge *or* erase all doubt; **assure, ensure,** insure, **certify; ascertain, get a fix** *or* **lock on** <nf>; **find out,** get at, see to it, see that; **determine,** decide, **establish,** settle, fix, lock in *and* nail down *and* clinch *and* cinch <nf>, pin down, clear up, sort out, set at rest; assure *or* satisfy oneself, make oneself easy about *or* on that score; **reassure**

12 **verify, confirm,** test, prove, audit, **collate,** validate, check, check up *or* on *or* out <nf>, check over *or* through, **double-check,** triple-check, cross-check, recheck, check and doublecheck, check up and down, check over and through, check in and out, "make assurance double sure"—Shakespeare, measure twice cut once

ADJS **13 certain, sure,** sure-enough <nf>; well-founded; bound; **positive, absolute, definite,** perfectly sure, apodictic; decisive, conclusive; clear, clear as day, clear and distinct, unequivocal, unmistakable, unambiguous, nonambiguous, univocal; **necessary,** determinate, ineluctable, predetermined, predestined, **inevitable** 962.15; true 973.12

14 <nf terms> dead sure, sure as death, sure as death and taxes, sure as fate, sure as can be, sure as shooting, sure as God made little green apples, sure as hell *or* the devil, shit-sure, as sure as I live and breathe

15 obvious, patent, unquestionable, unexceptionable, undeniable, self-evident, axiomatic; indubitable, unarguable, indisputable, incontestable, **irrefutable,** unrefutable, unconfutable, incontrovertible, irrefragable, unanswerable, inappealable, unimpeachable, absolute; admitting no question *or* dispute *or* doubt *or* denial; **demonstrable,** demonstratable, provable, verifiable, testable, confirmable; well-founded, well-established, well-grounded; factual, **real,** historical, actual 761.15

16 undoubted, not to be doubted, indubious, **unquestioned, undisputed, uncontested,** uncontradicted, unchallenged, uncontroverted, uncontroversial; **doubtless, questionless,** beyond a shade *or* shadow of doubt, past dispute, beyond question

17 reliable, dependable, sure, surefire <nf>, **trustworthy, trusty,** faithworthy, **to be depended** *or* **relied upon,** to be counted *or* reckoned on; predictable, calculable; **secure, solid, sound, firm,** fast, **stable, substantial,** staunch, steady, **steadfast, faithful, unfailing;** true to one's word; invincible

18 authoritative, authentic, magisterial, **official;** cathedral, ex cathedra; standard, approved, accepted, received, pontific; from *or* straight from the horse's mouth

19 infallible, inerrable, inerrant, unerring

20 assured, made sure; **determined, decided, ascertained; settled, established,** fixed, cinched *and* iced *and* sewed up *and* taped <nf>, set, stated, determinate, secure; **certified,** attested, guaranteed, warranted, tested, tried, proved; wired *and* cinched *and* open-and-shut *and* nailed down *and* in the bag *and* on ice <nf>

21 confident, sure, secure, **assured,** reassured, decided, determined; **convinced,** persuaded, positive, **cocksure; unhesitating,** unfaltering, unwavering; **undoubting** 952.21; **self-confident, self-assured, self-reliant,** sure of oneself; poised 106.13; unafraid; **overconfident, oversure,** overweening, hubristic; proud 136.8, arrogant 141.9, pompous 501.22, self-important 140.8

22 dogmatic, dogmatical, dogmatizing, pronunciative, didactic, **positive,** positivistic, peremptory, pontifical, oracular; **opinionated,** opinioned, opinionative, conceited 140.11; **self-opinionated,** self-opinioned; doctrinarian, doctrinaire; bigoted

ADVS **23 certainly, surely, assuredly, positively, absolutely, definitely,** decidedly; without batting an eye <nf>; decisively, distinctly, clearly, unequivocally, unmistakably; **for certain,** for sure *and* for a fact <nf>, in truth, certes *or* forsooth <old>, and no mistake <nf>; **for a certainty,** to a certainty, *à coup sûr* <Fr>; **most certainly,** most assuredly; **indeed,** indeedy <nf>; truly; **of course,** as a matter of course; **by all means,** by all manner of means; at any rate, at all events; nothing else but <nf>, no two ways about it, no buts about it <nf>; no ifs, ands, or buts

24 surely, sure, to be sure, sure enough, for sure <nf>; sure thing *and* surest thing you know <nf>

25 unquestionably, without question, undoubtedly, beyond the shadow of a doubt, beyond a reasonable doubt, indubitably, admittedly, undeniably, unarguably, indisputably, incontestably, incontrovertibly, irrefutably, irrefragably; **doubtlessly,** doubtless, **no doubt, without doubt,** beyond doubt *or* question, out of question

26 without fail, unfailingly, whatever may happen, **come what may,** come hell or high water <nf>; cost what it may, *coûte que coûte* <Fr>; rain or shine, live or die, sink or swim

PHRS **27 it is certain,** there is no question, there is not a shadow of doubt, that's for sure <nf>; that goes without saying, *cela va sans dire* <Fr>; that is evident, that leaps to the eye, *cela saute aux yeux* <Fr>

971 UNCERTAINTY

NOUNS **1 uncertainty, incertitude, unsureness,** uncertainness; indemonstrability, unverifiability, unprovability, unconfirmability; **unpredictability,** unforeseeableness, incalculability, unaccountability; **indetermination,** indeterminacy, indeterminism; **relativity,** relativism, contingency, conditionality; **randomness, chance,** chanciness, hit-or-missness, **luck;** entropy; **indecision,** indecisiveness, undecidedness, undeterminedness; **hesitation, hesitancy; suspense,** suspensefulness, agony *or* state of suspense; **fickleness, capriciousness,** whimsicality, **erraticness,** erraticism, **changeableness** 853; **vacillation, irresolution** 362; trendlessness; Heisenberg *or* indeterminacy *or* uncertainty principle; question mark

2 doubtfulness, dubiousness, doubt, dubiety, dubitancy, dubitation <old>; **questionableness, disputability,** contestability, controvertibility, refutability, confutability, deniability; disbelief 955.1

3 **bewilderment,** disconcertion, disconcertedness, disconcert, disconcertment, **embarrassment, confoundment,** discomposure, unassuredness, **confusion,** cognitive dissonance; **perplexity, puzzlement,** baffle, **bafflement,** predicament, plight, **quandary, dilemma,** horns of a dilemma, nonplus; **puzzle,** problem, riddle, conundrum, mystery, enigma; fix *and* jam *and* pickle *and* scrape *and* stew <nf>; perturbation, **disturbance, upset, bother,** pother

4 **vagueness, indefiniteness, indecisiveness,** indeterminateness, indeterminableness, indefinableness, **unclearness, indistinctness,** haziness, fogginess, mistiness, murkiness, blurriness, fuzziness; **obscurity,** obscuration; **looseness, laxity, inexactness,** inaccuracy, imprecision; **broadness, generality,** sweepingness; ill-definedness, amorphousness, shapelessness, blobbiness; inchoateness, disorder, incoherence

5 **equivocalness,** equivocality, polysemousness, ambiguity 539

6 **unreliability, undependability, untrustworthiness,** unfaithworthiness, treacherousness, treachery; **unsureness, insecurity, unsoundness, infirmity,** insolidity, unsolidity, **instability,** insubstantiality, unsubstantiality, **unsteadfastness,** unsteadiness, desultoriness, shakiness; **precariousness,** hazard, danger, risk, riskiness, diceyness *and* dodginess <Brit nf>, knife-edge, moment of truth, tightrope walking, peril, perilousness, ticklishness, slipperiness, shiftiness, shiftingness; speculativeness; **unauthoritativeness,** unauthenticity

7 **fallibility,** errability, errancy, liability to error

8 <an uncertainty> **gamble, guess,** piece of guesswork, question mark, estimate, guesstimate *and* ball-park figure <nf>; **chance, wager; toss-up** *and* **coin-toss** <nf>, **touch and go;** contingency, double contingency, possibility upon a possibility; **question, open question;** undecided issue, loose end; wild guess; **gray area,** twilight zone, borderline case; blind bargain, pig in a poke, sight-unseen transaction; leap in the dark; enigma

VERBS 9 **be uncertain, feel unsure; doubt,** have one's doubts, **question,** puzzle over, agonize over; **wonder,** wonder whether, wrinkle one's brow; not know what to make of, not be able to make head *or* tail of; be at sea, float in a sea of doubt; be at one's wit's end, **not know which way to turn,** be of two minds, be at sixes and sevens, not know where one stands, have mixed feelings, not know whether one stands on one's head or one's heels, be in a dilemma *or* quandary, flounder, grope, beat about, thrash about, not know whether one is coming or going, go around in circles; go off in all directions at once

10 **hang in doubt,** stop to consider, think twice; **falter,** dither, **hesitate,** vacillate 362.8

11 **depend,** all depend, be contingent *or* conditional on, hang on *or* upon; **hang, hang in the balance,** be touch and go, tremble in the balance, **hang in suspense; hang by a thread,** cliffhang, hang by a hair, hang by the eyelids

12 **bewilder, disconcert,** discompose, **upset,** perturb, **disturb, dismay,** tie one in knots; abash, **embarrass, put out,** pother, **bother,** moider <Brit nf>, flummox <nf>, keep one on tenterhooks

13 **perplex, baffle, confound,** daze, amaze <old>, maze, addle, fuddle, muddle, **mystify, puzzle,** nonplus, put to one's wit's end; keep one guessing, keep in suspense

14 <nf terms> **stump,** boggle <Brit>, buffalo, bamboozle, stick, floor, throw, get, beat, beat the shit out of, lick

15 **make uncertain, obscure, muddle, muddy,** fuzz, fog, **confuse** 985.7

ADJS 16 **uncertain, unsure; doubting,** agnostic, skeptical, unconvinced, unpersuaded; chancy, dicey <Brit>, touch-and-go; **unpredictable,** unforeseeable, incalculable, uncountable, unreckonable, unaccountable, undivinable; indemonstrable, unverifiable, unprovable, unconfirmable; **equivocal,** polysemous, inexplicit, imprecise, ambiguous; **fickle, capricious,** whimsical, **erratic,** variable, wavering, irresponsible, changeable 854.6; **hesitant,** hesitating; **indecisive,** irresolute 362.9

17 **doubtful,** iffy <nf>; **in doubt,** *in dubio* <L>; dubitable, doubtable, **dubious, questionable, problematic, problematical, speculative,** conjectural, suppositional; debatable, moot, arguable, **disputable,** contestable, controvertible, **controversial,** refutable, confutable, deniable; mistakable; **suspicious,** suspect; open to question *or* doubt; in question, in dispute, at issue

18 **undecided, undetermined, unsettled,** unfixed, unestablished; untold, uncounted; pendent, dependent, **pending,** depending, contingent, conditional, conditioned; **open,** in question, at issue, **in the balance, up in the air,** up for grabs <nf>, **in suspense,** in a state of suspense, suspenseful

19 **vague, indefinite, indecisive, indeterminate,** indeterminable, **undetermined,** unpredetermined, undestined; **random,** stochastic, entropic, **chance,** chancy <nf>, dicey *and* dodgy <Brit nf>, aleatory

or aleatoric, hit-or-miss; indefinable, undefined, ill-defined, unclear, unplain, **indistinct,** fuzzy, **obscure, confused, hazy,** shadowy, shadowed forth, misty, foggy, fog-bound, murky, blurred, blurry, veiled; **loose, lax, inexact, inaccurate,** imprecise; nonspecific, unspecified; **broad, general,** sweeping; amorphous, shapeless, blobby; inchoate, disordered, orderless, chaotic, incoherent

20 **unreliable, undependable, untrustworthy,** unfaithworthy, treacherous, unsure, not to be depended *or* relied on; **insecure, unsound, infirm,** unsolid, **unstable,** unsubstantial, insubstantial, **unsteadfast,** unsteady, desultory, shaky; **precarious,** hazardous, dangerous, perilous, risky, ticklish; shifty, shifting, slippery, slippery as an eel; provisional, tentative, temporary

21 **unauthoritative, unauthentic, unofficial,** nonofficial, apocryphal; **uncertified, unverified,** unchecked, unconfirmed, uncorroborated, unauthenticated, unvalidated, unattested, unwarranted; **undemonstrated, unproved**

22 **fallible, errable,** errant, liable *or* open to error, error-prone

23 **unconfident, unsure, unassured, insecure,** unsure of oneself; unselfconfident, unselfassured, unselfreliant

24 **bewildered, dismayed,** distracted, distraught, abashed, **disconcerted, embarrassed,** discomposed, **put-out, disturbed, upset,** perturbed, **bothered,** all hot and bothered <nf>; **confused** 985.12; clueless, without a clue, guessing, mazed, in a maze; turned around, going around in circles, like a chicken with its head cut off <nf>; in a fix *or* stew *or* pickle *or* jam *or* scrape <nf>; **lost,** astray, abroad, adrift, **at sea,** off the track, out of one's reckoning, out of one's bearings, disoriented

25 **in a dilemma,** on the horns of a dilemma; **perplexed, confounded, mystified, puzzled, nonplussed, baffled,** bamboozled <nf>, buffaloed <nf>; **at a loss, at one's wit's end,** fuddled, addled, muddled, dazed; **on tenterhooks,** in suspense

26 <nf terms> **beat,** licked, stuck, floored, stumped, thrown, buffaloed, boggled <Brit>

27 **bewildering, confusing, distracting, disconcerting,** discomposing, **dismaying, embarrassing,** disturbing, **upsetting,** perturbing, bothering; **perplexing, baffling, mystifying, mysterious, puzzling,** funny, funny peculiar, confounding; **problematic** *or* problematical; intricate 799.4; **enigmatic** 522.17

ADVS **28** **uncertainly,** in an uncertain state, **unsurely; doubtfully, dubiously;** in suspense, at sea, on the horns of a dilemma, at sixes and sevens; perplexedly, disconcertedly, confusedly, dazedly, mazedly, in a daze, in a maze, around in circles

29 **vaguely, indefinitely,** indeterminably, indefinably, **indistinctly,** indecisively, **obscurely; broadly, generally,** in broad *or* general terms

972 CHANCE

<absence of assignable cause>

NOUNS **1** **chance,** happenstance, hap, "heedless hap"—Spenser; **luck;** good luck *or* fortune, serendipity, happy chance, dumb luck <nf>, rotten *and* tough luck <nf>; **fortune,** fate, **destiny,** whatever comes, *moira* <Gk>, lot 964.2; **fortuity, randomness,** randomicity, fortuitousness, adventitiousness, indeterminateness *or* indeterminacy, problematicness, uncertainty 971, flukiness <nf>, casualness, flip of a coin, crazy quilt, patternlessness, trendlessness, accidentality; break <nf>, the breaks <nf>, run of luck, the luck of the draw, the rub of the green, run *or* turn of the cards, fall *or* throw of the dice, the way things fall, the way the cards fall, how they fall, the way the cookie crumbles *or* the ball bounces <nf>; uncertainty principle, principle of indeterminacy, Heisenberg's principle; **probability** 967, stochastics, theory of probability, law of averages, statistical probability, actuarial calculation; random sample, **risk, risk-taking, chancing,** gamble 759; **opportunity** 843.2

2 Chance, Fortune, Lady *or* Dame Fortune, wheel of fortune, Fortuna, the fickle finger of fate <nf>; Luck, Lady Luck; "a nickname of Providence"—de Chamfort, "blind Chance"—Lucan, "the pseudonym of God when He did not want to sign"—Anatole France

3 **purposelessness, causelessness,** randomness, dysteleology, **unpredictability** 971.1, designlessness, **aimlessness;** lack of motive, no attributable cause, nonintention

4 **haphazard,** chance-medley <law>, **random;** random shot; potluck; spin of the wheel

5 **vicissitudes,** vicissitudes of fortune, ins and outs, **ups and downs,** ups and downs of life, chapter of accidents, feast and famine, "the various turns of chance"—Dryden; **chain of circumstances,** concatenation of events, chain reaction, vicious circle, causal nexus, **domino effect**

6 <chance event> **happening,** hap, happenstance; **fortuity, accident,** casualty, adventure, hazard; contingent, contingency; **fluke** <nf>, freak, freak occurrence *or* accident, coincidence; chance hit, lucky shot, long shot, one in a million, long odds

7 **even chance,** even break *and* fair shake <nf>, even *or* square odds, level playing field, touch and go, odds; **half a chance,** fifty-fifty; toss, **toss-up,** standoff <nf>

8 **good chance, sporting chance,** good opportunity, good possibility; odds-on, odds-on chance, **likelihood,** possibility 966, probability 968, favorable prospect, well-grounded hope; **sure bet,** sure thing *and* dollars to doughnuts <nf>; **best bet,** main chance, winning chance

9 **small chance,** little chance, dark horse, **poor prospect** *or* prognosis, poor lookout <nf>, little opportunity, poor possibility, **unlikelihood,** improbability 968, hardly a chance, not half a chance; **off chance, outside chance** <nf>, **remote possibility,** bare possibility, a ghost of a chance, slim chance, gambling chance, **fighting chance** <nf>; poor bet, long odds, long shot <nf>, hundred-to-one shot <nf>, one chance in a million

10 **no chance,** not a Chinaman's chance *and* not a snowball's chance in hell <nf>, Buckley's chance <Austral nf>, not a prayer; **impossibility** 966, hopelessness

VERBS 11 **chance,** bechance <old>, betide, come *or* happen by chance, hap, hazard, **happen** 831.5, happen *or* fall on, come, come *or* happen along, bump into <nf>, **turn up,** pop up <nf>, **befall;** fall to one's lot, be one's fate

12 **risk,** take a chance, run a risk, push *or* press one's luck, lay one's ass on the line *and* put one's money where one's mouth is <nf>, **gamble,** bet 759.19; risk one's neck *and* shoot the works *and* go for broke <nf>; **predict** 962.9, prognosticate, make book <nf>; call someone's bluff

13 have a chance *or* an opportunity, **stand a chance, run a good chance, bid** *or* **stand fair to,** admit of; be in it *or* in the running <nf>; have *or* take a chance at, have a fling *or* shot at <nf>; have a small *or* slight chance, be a dark horse, barely have a chance

14 **not have** *or* **stand a chance,** have no chance *or* opportunity, not have a prayer, not have a Chinaman's chance <nf>, not stand a snowball's chance in hell <nf>; not be in it <nf>, be out of it <nf>, **be out of the running**

ADJS 15 **chance;** chancy <nf>, dicey <Brit nf>, **risky** <nf>; **fortuitous, accidental,** aleatory; **lucky,** fortunate, blessed by fortune, serendipitous; **casual,** adventitious, incidental, contingent, iffy <nf>; **causeless,** uncaused; indeterminate, undetermined; **unexpected** 131.10, **unpredictable,** unforeseeable, unlooked-for, **unforeseen; fluky** <nf>; fatal, fatidic, destinal

16 **purposeless, causeless,** designless, **aimless,** driftless, undirected, objectless, unmotivated, mindless; **haphazard, random,** dysteleological, stochastic, stray, inexplicable, unaccountable, promiscuous, indiscriminate, casual, leaving much to chance

17 **unintentional,** unintended, **unmeant, unplanned,** undesigned, unpurposed, unthought-of; **unpremeditated,** unmeditated, unprompted, unguided, unguarded; **unwitting, unthinking,** unconscious, involuntary

18 impossible 967.7; **improbable** 969.3; certain 970.13; **probable** 968.6

ADVS 19 **by chance,** perchance, **by accident, accidentally, casually,** incidentally, by coincidence, **unpredictably, fortuitously, out of a clear blue sky;** by a piece of luck, by a fluke <nf>, by good fortune; **as it chanced, as luck would have it,** by hazard, as it may happen, as it may be, as the case may be, as it may chance, as it may turn up *or* out; somehow, in some way, in some way or other, somehow or other, for some reason

20 **purposelessly, aimlessly; haphazardly, randomly,** dysteleologically, stochastically, inexplicably, unaccountably, promiscuously, indiscriminately, casually, **at haphazard, at random,** at hazard

21 **unintentionally, without design, unwittingly,** unthinkingly, unexpectedly, unconsciously, involuntarily

INTERJS 22 break a leg!, best of luck!, good luck!

PHR 23 it's a crapshoot

973 TRUTH

<conformity to fact or reality>

NOUNS 1 **truth, trueness, verity,** veridicality, conformity to fact *or* reality *or* the evidence *or* the data, simple *or* unadorned truth, very truth, sooth *or* good sooth <old>; more truth than poetry; **unerroneousness, unfalseness,** unfallaciousness; historical truth, **objective truth, actuality,** historicity, impersonality; **fact, actuality,** reality 761.2, the real world, things as they are; the true, ultimate truth; eternal verities; truthfulness, veracity 644.3

2 **a truth, a self-evident truth, an axiomatic truth,** an **axiom;** a premise, a given, a donnée *or* donné, an accomplished fact *or fait accompli* <Fr>

3 **the truth,** the truth of the matter, the case; the home truth, the unvarnished truth, the simple truth, the basic truth, indisputable truth, the unadorned truth, the naked truth, the plain truth, the unqualified truth, the honest truth, the sober truth, the exact truth, the straight truth; the absolute truth, the intrinsic truth, the unalloyed truth, the cast-iron truth, the hard truth, the stern truth, gospel, gospel truth, Bible truth, revealed truth; the truth the whole truth and nothing but the truth

4 <nf terms> **what's what,** how it is, how things are, like it is, where it's at, dinkum oil <Austral>, the straight of it, the straight goods *or* skinny *or* scoop, the honest-to-God truth, God's truth, the real thing, the very model, the genuine article, the very thing, it, the article, the goods, the McCoy, the real McCoy, no imitation, chapter and verse, the gospel, the gospel truth, the lowdown, the skinny

5 **accuracy, correctness,** care for truth, attention to fact, right, subservience to the facts *or* the data, **rightness, trueness, rigor, rigorousness, exactness, exactitude; preciseness, precision;** mathematical precision, pinpoint accuracy *or* precision, scientific exactness *or* exactitude; factualness, factualism; **faultlessness,** perfection, absoluteness, flawlessness, impeccability, unimpeachability; **faithfulness, fidelity;** literalness, literality, literalism, textualism, the letter, literal truth; strictness, severity, rigidity; niceness, nicety, delicacy, subtlety, fineness, refinement; **meticulousness** 339.3; attention to detail; pinpoint accuracy, mathematical precision, clockwork precision

6 **validity, soundness,** solidity, substantiality, **justness;** authority, **authoritativeness; cogency,** weight, force, persuasiveness

7 **genuineness, authenticity,** bona fides, bona fideness, **legitimacy; realness, realism,** photographic realism, absolute realism, realistic representation, **naturalism,** naturalness, truth to nature, **lifelikeness,** truth to life, slice of life, *tranche de vie* <Fr>, kitchen sink, true-to-lifeness, verisimilitude, *vraisemblance* <Fr>, faithful rendering, verism, verismo, faithfulness; absolute likeness, **literalness,** literality, literalism, truth to the letter; socialist realism; inartificiality, unsyntheticness; **unspuriousness,** unspeciousness, unfictitiousness, artlessness, unaffectedness; **honesty, sincerity;** unadulteration 797.1

VERBS 8 **be true,** be the case; conform to fact, square *or* chime with the facts *or* evidence; **prove true,** prove to be, **prove out,** be so in fact; **hold true, hold good, hold water** <nf>, hold *or* stick together <nf>, **hold up, hold up in the wash** <nf>, wash <nf>, **stand up,** stand the test, be consistent *or* self-consistent, **hold,** remain valid; **be truthful**

9 seem true, ring true, sound true, **carry conviction,** convince, persuade, win over, hold *or* have the ring of truth

10 **be right, be correct,** be just right, get it straight; be OK <nf>, add up; **hit the nail on the head,** hit it on the nose *or* on the money *and* say a mouthful <nf>, hit the bull's-eye, score a bull's-eye

11 **be accurate, dot one's i's and cross one's t's,** draw *or* cut it fine <nf>, be precise; make precise, precise, particularize; stick to the letter, go by the book

12 **come true, come about,** attain fulfillment, **turn out, come to pass** *or* **to be,** happen as expected, become a reality

ADJS 13 **true, truthful; unerroneous,** not in error, in conformity with the facts *or* the evidence *or* reality, on the up-and-up *or* strictly on the up-and-up <nf>; gospel, **hard,** cast-iron; unfalse, unfallacious, unmistaken; **real, veritable,** veracious, sure-enough <nf>, objective, true to the facts, in conformity with the facts *or* the evidence *or* the data *or* reality, **factual,** actual 761.15, effectual, **historical,** documentary; objectively true; **certain,** undoubted, unquestionable 970.15; unrefuted, unconfuted, undenied; **ascertained, proved, proven, verified,** validated, **certified,** demonstrated, confirmed, determined, established, attested, substantiated, **authenticated,** corroborated; true as gospel; substantially true, categorically true; **veracious** 644.16

14 **valid, sound, well-grounded, well-founded,** conforming to the facts *or* the data *or* the evidence *or* reality, hard, solid, substantial; consistent, self-consistent, logical; **good, just,** sufficient; **cogent, weighty, authoritative; legal, lawful,** legitimate, **binding**

15 **genuine, authentic,** veridic, veridical, **real, natural, realistic, naturalistic,** true to reality, **true to nature, lifelike,** true to life, verisimilar, veristic; **literal,** following the letter, letter-perfect, *au pied de la lettre* <Fr>, true to the letter; verbatim, verbal, word-perfect, **word-for-word;** true to the spirit; **legitimate,** rightful, lawful; **bona fide,** card-carrying <nf>, **good,** sure-enough <nf>, **sincere, honest;** candid, honest-to-God <nf>, dinkum <Austral nf>; **inartificial, unsynthetic;** unspurious, unspecious, unsimulated, unfaked, unfeigned, **undisguised, uncounterfeited, unpretended, unaffected, unassumed; unassuming, simple,** unpretending, unfeigning, undisguising; **unfictitious,** unfanciful, unfabricated, unconcocted, uninvented, unimagined; unromantic; **original,** unimitated, uncopied; unexaggerated, undistorted; unflattering, unvarnished, uncolored, unqualified; **unadulterated** 798.7, honest-to-goodness; **pure,** simon-pure; **sterling,** twenty-four carat, all wool and a yard wide <nf>

16 **accurate, correct, right,** proper, just; all right *or* OK *or* okay <nf>, just right as rain, right, dead right, on target *and* on the money *and* on the nose *and* on the button <nf>, bang on <Brit nf>,

straight, straight-up-and-down; **faultless,** flawless, impeccable, unimpeachable, unexceptionable; **absolute, perfect,** letter-perfect; meticulous 339.12; factual, literal

17 **exact, precise,** express; even, square; absolutely *or* definitely *or* positively right; **faithful;** direct; **unerring, undeviating, constant; infallible, inerrant, inerrable; strict,** close, severe, **rigorous,** rigid; mathematically exact, mathematical; mechanically *or* micrometrically precise; scientifically exact, scientific; religiously exact, religious; **nice,** delicate, subtle, **fine,** refined; pinpoint, microscopic

ADVS 18 **truly, really,** really-truly <nf>, **verily,** veritably, forsooth *or* in very sooth <old>, **in truth,** in good *or* very truth, **actually,** historically, objectively, impersonally, rigorously, strictly, strictly speaking, unquestionably, without question, **in reality, in fact,** factually, technically, in point of fact, as a matter of fact, for that matter, for the matter of that, to tell the truth, if you want to know the truth, to state the fact *or* truth, of a truth, with truth; **indeed,** indeedy <nf>; **certainly; indubitably,** undoubtedly 970.25; no buts about it <nf>, nothing else but

19 **genuinely, authentically, really,** naturally, **legitimately, honestly,** veridically; warts and all; unaffectedly, unassumedly, from the heart, in one's heart of hearts, with all one's heart and soul

20 **accurately, correctly,** rightly, properly, straight; **perfectly, faultlessly,** flawlessly, impeccably, unimpeachably, unexceptionably; **just right,** just so; **so,** sic

21 **exactly, precisely,** to a T, expressly; **just, dead,** right, straight, even, square, **plumb,** directly, squarely, point-blank; unerringly, undeviatingly; verbatim, **literally,** *literatim* <L>, verbally, word-perfectly, word for word, word by word, word for word and letter for letter, *verbatim et litteratim* <L>, in the same words, *ipsissimis verbis* <L>, to the letter, according to the letter, *au pied de la lettre* <Fr>; **faithfully, strictly, rigorously,** rigidly; **definitely, positively, absolutely; in every respect,** in all respects, for all the world, neither more nor less

22 **to be exact, to be precise, strictly, technically, strictly speaking,** not to mince the matter, by the book

23 **to a nicety,** to a T *or* tittle, to a turn, to a hair, to *or* within an inch

PHRS 24 **right!, that's right, that is so,** amen!, that's it, that's just it, just so, it is that, *c'est ça* <Fr>; **you are right,** right you are, right as rain, it is for a fact, you speak truly, as you say, **right;** believe it or not; touché!

25 <nf terms> **right on!,** you better believe it!, you've got something there, I'll say, I'll tell the world, I'll drink to that, righto, quite, rather!, you got it!, you said it, you said a mouthful, now you're talking, you can say that again, you're not kidding, that's for sure, ain't it the truth?, you're damn tootin', don't I know it?, you're telling me?, you're not just whistling Dixie, bet your ass *or* sweet ass *or* bippy *or* boots *or* life *or* you bet the rent, fucking ay, fucking ay right

974 WISE SAYING

NOUNS 1 **maxim, aphorism,** apothegm *or* apophthegm, **epigram, dictum, adage, proverb,** gnome, words of wisdom, **saw, saying,** witticism, sentence, expression, phrase, catchword, catchphrase, word, byword, mot, motto, moral; **precept,** prescript, teaching, text, verse, sutra, distich, sloka; golden saying, proverbial saying; common *or* current saying, stock saying, pithy saying, wise saying *or* expression, oracle, sententious expression *or* saying; **conventional wisdom, common knowledge; ana, analects, proverbs, wisdom, wisdom literature, collected sayings**

2 **axiom, truth,** a priori truth, postulate, truism, self-evident truth, general *or* universal truth, home truth, obvious truth, intrinsic truth; theorem; **proposition;** brocard, **principle,** *principium* <L>, settled principle; **formula; rule, law,** dictate <old>, **dictum;** golden rule

3 **platitude, cliché, saw, old saw, commonplace, banality,** bromide, **chestnut** <nf>, corn <nf>, triticism <old>, tired phrase, trite saying, hackneyed *or* stereotyped saying, stock phrase, commonplace expression, *lieu commun* <Fr>, *locus communis* <L>, **familiar tune** *or* **story,** old song *or* story, old song and dance <nf>, twice-told tale, retold story; reiteration 849.2; prosaicism, prosaism; prose; old joke 489.9

4 **motto, slogan,** watchword, catchword, catchphrase, tag line *or* tag, byword; **device;** epithet; inscription, epigraph

VERBS 5 aphorize, apothegmatize, epigrammatize, coin a phrase; proverb

ADJS 6 **aphoristic, proverbial,** epigrammatic, epigrammatical, **axiomatical; sententious, pithy,** gnomic, pungent, succinct, enigmatic, pointed; formulistic, formulaic; **cliché** *or* clichéd, banal, tired, stock, trite, tritical <old>, **platitudinous** 117.9

ADVS 7 **proverbially,** to coin a phrase, in a nutshell, **as the saying is** *or* **goes,** as they say, as the fellow says <nf>, as it has been said, as it was said of old

975 ERROR

NOUNS 1 **error, erroneousness; untrueness,** untruthfulness, **untruth; wrongness, wrong; falseness, falsity; fallacy, fallaciousness,** self-contradiction; fault, **faultiness,** defectiveness; **sin** 655, sinfulness, peccancy, flaw, flawedness, *hamartia* <Gk>; misdoing, misfeasance; errancy, aberrancy, aberration, **deviancy,** wrongdoing; **heresy,** unorthodoxy, heterodoxy; perversion, **distortion; mistaking,** misconstruction, misapplication, misprision <old>; **delusion,** illusion 976; misjudgment 948; **misinterpretation** 342; faulty reasoning, flawed logic; fallibility, human error

2 **inaccuracy,** inaccurateness, **incorrectness, uncorrectness, inexactness,** unfactualness, inexactitude, **unpreciseness,** imprecision, unspecificity, looseness, laxity, unrigorousness; tolerance, allowance; negligence; approximation; **deviation,** standard deviation, probable error, predictable error, range of error; uncertainty 971

3 **mistake, error,** *erratum* <L>, *corrigendum* <L>; **fault,** *faute* <Fr>; gross error, bevue; human error; **misconception, misapprehension, misunderstanding;** misstatement, misquotation; misreport; **misprint, typographical error,** typo <nf>, printer's error, typist's error; clerical error; misidentification; **misjudgment,** miscalculation 948.1; misplay; misdeal; miscount; misuse; failure, miss, miscarriage

4 **slip,** slipup *and* miscue <nf>; **lapse,** *lapsus* <L>, **oversight,** omission, balk <old>, inadvertence *or* inadvertency, loose thread; **misstep,** trip, stumble, false *or* wrong step, wrong *or* bad *or* false move; false note; **slip of the tongue,** *sus linguae* and *lapsus linguae* <L>; **slip of the pen,** *lapsus calami* <L>; Freudian slip

5 **blunder, faux pas,** gaffe, solecism; stupidity, indiscretion 923.4; **botch,** bungle 414.5

6 <nf terms> **goof, boo-boo,** muff, flub, foozle, bloomer, bloop, blooper, boot, bobble, boner, bonehead play *or* trick, dumb trick, boob stunt, fool mistake; howler, clanger <Brit>, screamer; fuck-up, screw-up, foul-up, snafu, muck-up, balls-up <Brit>, louse-up; pratfall, whoops

7 **grammatical error, solecism,** anacoluthon, anacoluthia, misusage, faulty syntax, missaying, mispronunciation; **bull, Irish bull,** fluff, **malapropism,** malaprop, Mrs Malaprop <R B Sheridan>; Pickwickian sense; spoonerism, marrow-sky; hypercorrection, hyperform; folk etymology; catachresis; misspelling

VERBS 8 **not hold water** *and* not hold together <nf>, not stand up, not square, not figure <nf>, not add up, **not hold up, not hold up in the wash** *and* not wash <nf>

9 **err,** fall into error, **go wrong, go amiss,** go astray, go *or* get out of line, go awry, stray, get off-base <nf>, **deviate,** wander, transgress, sin; **lapse, slip, slip up,** trip, stumble; **miscalculate** 948.2

10 **be wrong, mistake oneself, be mistaken, be in error, be at fault,** be out of line, be off the track, be in the wrong, miss the truth, miss the point, miss by a mile <nf>, have another think coming <nf>; take wrong, receive a false impression, take the shadow for the substance, misconstrue, misinterpret, be misled, be misguided; deceive oneself, be deceived, delude oneself; labor under a false impression, get it wrong

11 bark up the wrong tree, back the wrong horse, count one's chickens before they are hatched

12 **misdo,** do amiss; misuse, misemploy, misapply; misconduct, mismanage; miscall, miscount, miscalculate, misdeal, misplay, misfield; misprint, miscite, misquote, misread, misreport, misspell

13 **mistake, make a mistake;** miscue *and* make a miscue <nf>; **misidentify; misunderstand,** misapprehend, misconceive, **misinterpret** 342.2; **confuse** 811.3, mix up, not distinguish

14 **blunder, make a blunder, make a faux pas,** blot one's copy book, make a colossal blunder, make a false *or* wrong step, make a misstep; **misspeak,** misspeak oneself, trip over one's tongue; embarrass oneself, have egg on one's face <nf>; blunder into; **botch,** bungle 414.11

15 <nf terms> **make** *or* **pull a boner** *or* boo-boo *or* blooper; drop a brick <Brit>, goof, fluff, duff <Brit>, foozle, boot, bobble, blow, blow it, drop the ball; fuck up, screw up, foul up, muck up, louse up; put *or* stick one's foot in it *or* in one's mouth; muff one's cue, muff *or* blow *or* fluff one's lines, fall flat on one's face *or* ass, step on one's dick, trip up

ADJS 16 **erroneous, untrue,** not true, **not right;** unfactual, **wrong,** all wrong; peccant, perverse, corrupt; **false, fallacious,** self-contradictory; **illogical** 936.11; **unproved** 958.8; **faulty,** faultful, flawed, defective, **at fault;** out, off, all off, off the track *or* rails; wide <old>, wide of the mark, beside the mark; amiss, awry, askew, deviant, deviative, deviational; erring, errant, **aberrant;** straying, astray, adrift; **heretical,** unorthodox, heterodox; abroad, all abroad; perverted, **distorted; delusive,** deceptive, **illusory**

17 **inaccurate, incorrect, inexact,** unfactual, **unprecise,** imprecise, unspecific, loose, lax, unrigorous; negligent; **vague;** approximate, approximative; out of line, out of plumb, out of true, out of square; off-base <nf>

18 **mistaken, in error, erring,** under an error, **wrong, all wet** <nf>, full of bull *or* shit *or* hot air *or* it *or* prunes *or* crap *or* beans <nf>; off *or* out in one's reckoning; in the wrong box, in the right church but the wrong pew

19 **unauthentic** *or* **inauthentic, unauthoritative, unreliable** 971.20; **misstated,** misreported, miscited, misquoted, **garbled;** unfounded 936.13; spurious

ADVS **20** **erroneously, falsely,** by mistake, fallaciously; faultily, faultfully; **untrue** <old>, untruly; **wrong,** wrongly; **mistakenly;** amiss, astray, on the wrong track

21 **inaccurately, incorrectly,** inexactly, unprecisely, by guess and by God *or* by golly <nf>

INTERJS **22** whoops! *and* sorry about that! <nf>

PHRS **23** **you are wrong, you are mistaken,** you're all wet *or* you're way off *or* you have another guess coming *or* don't kid yourself <nf>

976 ILLUSION

NOUNS **1** **illusion, delusion,** deluded belief; **deception** 356, **trick;** self-deception, self-deceit, self-delusion; dereism, autism; **misconception, misbelief,** false belief, wrong impression, warped *or* distorted conception; **bubble, chimera,** vapor, "airy nothing"—Shakespeare; wishful thinking, *ignis fatuus* <L>, will-o'-the-wisp; **dream,** dream vision; dreamworld, dreamland, dreamscape; **daydream;** pipe dream *and* trip <nf>; fool's paradise, castle in the air, fond illusion, dreamscape; maya, confabulation

2 **illusoriness,** illusiveness, delusiveness; **falseness,** fallaciousness; **unreality,** unactuality; unsubstantiality, airiness, immateriality; **idealization** 985.7; **seeming,** semblance, simulacrum, **appearance,** false *or* specious appearance, show, false show, false light; **magic,** sorcery 690, illusionism, sleight of hand, prestidigitation, magic show, magic act; magician, **sorcerer** 690.5, illusionist, Prospero <Shakespeare>; Mahamaya <Hindu>

3 **fancy, phantasy, imagination** 986

4 **phantom, phantasm,** phantasma, wraith, specter; shadow, shade; phantasmagoria; **fantasy,** wildest dream; **figment of the imagination** 986.5, phantom of the mind; **apparition, appearance; vision,** waking dream, image <old>; shape, form, figure, presence; eidolon, idolum; "such stuff as dreams are made on"—Shakespeare

5 **optical illusion, trick of eyesight;** afterimage, spectrum, ocular spectrum

6 **mirage,** fata morgana, will-o'-the-wisp, looming

7 **hallucination;** hallucinosis; tripping <nf>, mind-expansion; consciousness-expansion; delirium tremens 926.9,10; dream 985.9

VERBS **8** **go on a trip** *and* **blow one's mind** <nf>, freak out <nf>; **hallucinate;** expand one's consciousness; make magic, prestidigitate

ADJS **9** **illusory,** illusive; illusional, illusionary; Barmecide *or* Barmecidal; **delusory,** delusive; delusional, delusionary, deluding; dereistic, autistic; **dreamy, dreamlike; visionary;** imaginary 986.19; **erroneous** 975.16; **deceptive;** self-deceptive, self-deluding; **chimeric, chimerical, fantastic; unreal,** unactual, unsubstantial 764.5, airy; unfounded 936.13; **false,** fallacious, misleading; **specious, seeming,** apparent, ostensible, supposititious, all in the mind; spectral, apparitional, phantom, phantasmal; phantasmagoric, surreal

10 **hallucinatory,** hallucinative, hallucinational; hallucinogenic, psychedelic, consciousness-expanding, mind-expanding, mind-blowing <nf>

977 DISILLUSIONMENT

NOUNS **1** **disillusionment,** disillusion, **disenchantment,** undeception, unspelling, return to reality, loss of one's illusions, loss of innocence, cold light of reality, enlightenment, bursting of the bubble; awakening, rude awakening, bringing back to earth; disappointment 132; debunking <nf>

VERBS **2** **disillusion,** disillude, disillusionize; **disenchant,** unspell, uncharm, break the spell *or* charm; **disabuse, undeceive;** correct, **set right** *or* **straight,** put straight, tell the truth, enlighten, let in on, put one wise <nf>; clear the mind of; open one's eyes, awaken, wake up, unblindfold; disappoint 132.2; dispel *or* dissipate one's illusions, rob *or* strip one of one's illusions; bring one back to earth, let down easy <nf>; **burst** *or* **prick the bubble,** puncture one's balloon <nf>; let the air out of, take the wind out of; knock the props out from under, take the ground from under; debunk <nf>; expose, show up 351.4

3 be disillusioned, be disenchanted, get back to earth, get one's feet on the ground, have one's eyes opened, return to *or* embrace reality; charge to experience; have another thing *or* guess coming <nf>

ADJS **4** **disillusioning,** disillusive, disillusionary, **disenchanting,** disabusing, undeceiving, enlightening

5 **disillusioned, disenchanted,** unspelled, uncharmed, **disabused,** undeceived, stripped *or* robbed of illusion, enlightened, set right, put straight; with one's eyes open, sophisticated, **blasé;** disappointed 132.5

978 MENTAL ATTITUDE

NOUNS **1 attitude,** mental attitude; psychology; **position, posture,** stance; **way of thinking; feeling, sentiment,** the way one feels; feeling tone, affect, affectivity, emotion, emotivity; opinion 953.6

2 outlook, mental outlook; *Anschauung* <Ger>, **point of view, viewpoint, standpoint, perspective,** *optique* <Fr>; position, stand, place, situation; side; footing, basis; where one is *or* sits *or* stands; **view,** sight, light, eye; respect, regard; angle, angle of vision, slant, way of looking at things, slant on things, where one is coming from <nf>; **frame of reference,** intellectual *or* ideational frame of reference, framework, arena, world, universe, world *or* universe of discourse, system, reference system; phenomenology

3 disposition, character, nature, temper, temperament, mettle, constitution, complexion *and* humor <old>, makeup, stamp, type, stripe, kidney, make, mold; **turn of mind, inclination,** mind, **tendency,** grain, vein, set, mental set, mindset, **leaning,** animus, propensity, proclivity, predilection, preference, predisposition; **bent, turn, bias,** slant, cast, warp, twist; idiosyncrasy, eccentricity, individualism; diathesis, aptitude; strain, streak

4 mood, humor, feeling, feelings, temper, frame of mind, state of mind, mindset, **morale,** cue *or* frame <old>, tone, note, **vein; mind,** heart, spirit *or* **spirits**

5 <pervading attitudes> **climate,** mental *or* intellectual climate, spiritual climate, moral climate, mores, norms, climate of opinion, **ethos,** ideology, *Weltanschauung* <Ger>, world view; *Zeitgeist* <Ger>, spirit of the time *or* the age

VERBS **6 take the attitude,** feel about it, look at it, **view,** look at in the light of; **be disposed to,** tend *or* incline toward, prefer, lean toward, be bent on

ADJS **7 attitudinal; temperamental, dispositional,** inclinational, constitutional; emotional, affective; mental, intellectual, ideational, ideological; spiritual; characteristic 865.13; innate

8 disposed, dispositioned, **predisposed, prone, inclined, given,** bent, bent on, apt, likely, **minded, in the mood** *or* **humor**

ADVS **9 attitudinally; temperamentally, dispositionally,** constitutionally; emotionally; mentally, intellectually, ideationally, ideologically; morally, spiritually; **by temperament** *or* **disposition,** by virtue of mind-set, by the logic of character *or* temperament; from one's standpoint *or* viewpoint *or* angle, from where one stands *or* sits, from where one is; within the frame of reference *or* framework *or* reference system *or* universe of discourse

979 BROAD-MINDEDNESS

NOUNS **1 broad-mindedness,** wide-mindedness, large-mindedness; **breadth,** broadness, broad gauge, latitude; **unbigotedness,** unhideboundness, unprovincialism, noninsularity, unparochialism, cosmopolitanism; ecumenicity, ecumenicism, ecumenicalism, ecumenism; broad mind, spacious mind

2 liberalness, liberality, catholicity, **liberalmindedness;** liberalism, libertarianism, latitudinarianism; freethinking, free thought

3 open-mindedness, openness, receptiveness, receptivity; persuadableness, persuadability, persuasibility; open mind

4 tolerance, toleration; **indulgence,** lenience *or* **leniency** 427, condonation, lenity; **forbearance, patience,** long-suffering; easiness, **permissiveness; charitableness,** charity, **generousness, magnanimity** 652.2; **compassion** 427.1, sympathy; sensitivity

5 unprejudicedness, unbiasedness; impartiality 649.4, evenhandedness, equitability, **justice** 649, **fairness** 649.3, justness, **objectivity, detachment, dispassionateness, disinterestedness,** impersonality; indifference, neutrality; unopinionatedness

6 liberal, liberalist; libertarian; freethinker, latitudinarian, ecumenist, ecumenicist; big person, broad-gauge person; bleeding heart, bleeding-heart liberal

VERBS **7 keep an open mind,** be big <nf>, judge not, not write off, suspend judgment, listen to reason, open one's mind to, see both sides, judge on the merits; **live and let live;** lean over backwards, **tolerate** 134.5; **accept,** be easy with, **view with indulgence, condone,** brook, abide with, be content with; **live with** <nf>; shut one's eyes to, look the other way, wink at, blink at, **overlook, disregard, ignore;** "swear allegiance to the words of no master"—Horace

ADJS **8 broad-minded,** wide-minded, large-minded, **broad, wide,** wide-ranging, broad-gauged, catholic, spacious of mind; **unbigoted,** unfanatical, **unhidebound,** unprovincial, cosmopolitan, noninsular, unparochial; ecumenistic, ecumenical

9 liberal, liberal-minded, liberalistic; libertarian; freethinking, latitudinarian; bleeding-heart

10 open-minded, open, receptive, rational, admissive; **persuadable,** persuasible; unopinionated, **unopinioned,** unwedded to an opinion; **unpositive, undogmatic;** uninfatuated, unbesotted, unfanatical

11 tolerant 134.9, tolerating; **indulgent,** lenient 427.7, **condoning;** forbearing, forbearant <old>, **patient, long-suffering; charitable, generous, magnanimous** 652.6; compassionate 427.7, sympathetic, sensitive

12 **unprejudiced, unbiased, unprepossessed, unjaundiced; impartial,** evenhanded, **fair,** just 649.8, equitable, **objective, dispassionate, impersonal, detached, disinterested;** indifferent, neutral; **unswayed, uninfluenced,** undazzled; nonsexist, inclusive

13 **liberalizing, liberating, broadening,** enlightening

980 NARROW-MINDEDNESS

NOUNS 1 **narrow-mindedness,** narrowness, illiberality, uncatholicity; little-mindedness, **small-mindedness, smallness, littleness, meanness, pettiness; bigotry,** bigotedness, fanaticism, *odium theologicum* <L>; insularity, insularism, provincialism, parochialism; **hideboundness,** straitlacedness, stuffiness <nf>; authoritarianism; **shortsightedness,** nearsightedness, purblindness; blind side, blind spot, tunnel vision, blinders; closed mind, mean mind, petty mind, shut mind; narrow views *or* sympathies, cramped ideas; *parti pris* <Fr>, an ax to grind

2 **intolerance,** intoleration; **uncharitableness,** ungenerousness; unforbearance; noncompassion, insensitivity

3 **prejudice,** prejudgment, forejudgment, **predilection, prepossession,** preconception; **bias,** bent, leaning, inclination, twist; **jaundice,** jaundiced eye; **partiality,** partialism, partisanship, favoritism, onesidedness, undispassionateness, undetachment

4 **discrimination,** social discrimination, minority prejudice; xenophobia, know-nothingism; **chauvinism,** ultranationalism, superpatriotism; fascism; **class consciousness,** class prejudice, class distinction, class hatred, class war; anti-Semitism; redbaiting <nf>; **racism,** racialism, race hatred, **race prejudice,** race snobbery, racial discrimination; white *or* black supremacy, white *or* black power; **color line,** color bar; **social barrier,** Jim Crow, Jim Crow law; **segregation,** apartheid; sex discrimination, sexism, manism, masculism, male chauvinism, feminism, womanism; ageism, age discrimination; class prejudice, class hatred, social prejudice; glass ceiling

5 **bigot,** intolerant, illiberal, little person; **racist,** racialist, racial supremacist, white *or* black supremacist, pig <nf>; **chauvinist,** ultranationalist, jingo, superpatriot; **sexist,** male chauvinist, male chauvinist pig *or* MCP <nf>, manist, masculist, feminist, female chauvinist, womanist, **dogmatist,** doctrinaire 970.7; fanatic

VERBS 6 **close one's mind,** shut the eyes of one's mind, take narrow views, put on blinders, blind oneself, have a blind side *or* spot, have tunnel vision, constrict one's views; not see beyond one's nose *or* an inch beyond one's nose; **view with a jaundiced eye,** see but one side of the question, look only at one side of the shield

7 **prejudge,** forejudge, judge beforehand, precondemn, prejudicate <old>, take one's opinions ready-made, accede to prejudice

8 **discriminate against, draw the line,** draw the color line; bait, **bash;** red-bait

9 **prejudice,** prejudice against, prejudice the issue, prepossess, **jaundice, influence, sway, bias,** bias one's judgment; warp, twist, bend, distort

ADJS 10 **narrow-minded,** narrow, narrow-gauged, closed, closed-minded, cramped, constricted, po-faced <Brit>, *borné* <Fr>, little-minded, small-minded, mean-minded, petty-minded, narrow-hearted, narrow-souled, narrow-spirited, mean-spirited, small-souled; **small, little, mean, petty;** uncharitable, ungenerous; bigot, **bigoted,** fanatical; **illiberal,** unliberal, uncatholic; provincial, insular, parochial; **hidebound,** creedbound, **straitlaced,** stuffy <nf>; authoritarian; **shortsighted,** nearsighted, purblind; deaf, deaf-minded, deaf to reason

11 **intolerant,** untolerating; **unindulgent,** uncondoning, unforbearing

12 **discriminatory; prejudiced,** prepossessed, **biased, jaundiced,** colored; **partial,** one-sided, partisan; influenced, swayed, warped, twisted; interested, nonobjective, **undetached,** undispassionate; xenophobic, know-nothing; **chauvinistic,** ultranationalist, superpatriotic; **racist,** racialist, anti-Negro, antiblack, antiwhite; anti-Semitic; sexist; dogmatic, doctrinaire, **opinionated** 969.22

981 CURIOSITY

NOUNS 1 **curiosity,** curiousness, **inquisitiveness; interest,** interestedness, lively interest; thirst *or* desire *or* lust *or* itch for knowledge, mental acquisitiveness, inquiring *or* curious mind; **attention** 983; **alertness, watchfulness,** vigilance; **nosiness** *and* snoopiness <nf>, prying, snooping <nf>; eavesdropping; officiousness, meddlesomeness 214.2; **morbid curiosity, ghoulishness;** voyeurism, scopophilia, prurience, prurient interest; rubbernecking <nf>

2 inquisitive person, quidnunc; **inquirer,** questioner, querier, querist, inquisitor, inquisitress; detective; **busybody,** gossip, *yenta* <Yiddish>, **pry,** Paul Pry, **snoop,** snooper, nosy Parker <nf>; eavesdropper; sightseer; rubbernecker *or* rubberneck <nf>; watcher, Peeping Tom, voyeur, scopophiliac; Lot's wife; explorer

VERBS 3 **be curious, want to know, take an interest in,** take a lively interest, burn with curiosity; be alert, alert oneself, watch, be watchful, be vigilant; prick up one's ears, keep one's ear to the ground; eavesdrop; interrogate, quiz, question, inquire, query; keep one's eyes open, keep one's eye on, stare, gape, peer, gawk, rubber *and* rubberneck <nf>; seek, dig up, dig around for, nose out, nose around for; investigate

4 **pry, snoop,** peep, peek, spy, nose, nose into, have a long *or* big nose, poke *or* stick one's nose in; meddle 214.7

ADJS 5 **curious, inquisitive,** inquisitorial, inquiring, interested, quizzical; **alert,** keen, tuned in <nf>, **attentive** 982.15; burning with curiosity, eaten up *or* consumed with curiosity, curious as a cat; agape, agog, all agog, openmouthed, open-eyed; gossipy; overcurious, supercurious; morbidly curious, **morbid, ghoulish; prurient,** itchy, voyeuristic, scopophiliac; rubbernecking <nf>

6 **prying,** snooping, **nosy** *and* **snoopy** <nf>; meddlesome 214.9

982 INCURIOSITY

NOUNS 1 **incuriosity,** incuriousness, **uninquisitiveness;** boredom; **inattention** 984; **uninterestedness,** disinterest, disinterestedness, **unconcern,** uninvolvement, detachment, **indifference** 102, indifferentness, indifferentism, uncaring, **apathy,** passivity, passiveness, impassivity, impassiveness, listlessness, stolidity, **lack of interest;** carelessness, heedlessness, regardlessness, insouciance, unmindfulness; unperturbability; aloofness, detachment, withdrawal, reclusiveness; intellectual inertia; catatonia, autism; gullibility, credulity, blind faith; objectivity

VERBS 2 **take no interest in, not care;** mind one's own business, pursue the even tenor of one's way, glance neither to the right nor to the left, keep one's nose out, keep an open mind; be indifferent, not care less <nf>, lack emotion; disregard; take it *or* leave it; take on trust; live and let live

ADJS 3 **incurious, uninquisitive,** uninquiring; bored; **inattentive** 984.6; **uninterested,** unconcerned, disinterested, uninvolved, nonaligned, detached, **indifferent,** impersonal, **apathetic,** passive, impassive, stolid, phlegmatic, imperturbable, listless; careless, heedless, regardless, insouciant, mindless, unmindful; aloof, detached, distant, withdrawn, reclusive, sequestered, eremitic; catatonic, autistic; apathetic, not bothered; lackadaisical; unbiased, objective

983 ATTENTION

NOUNS 1 **attention, attentiveness,** mindfulness, regardfulness, heedfulness; **attention span; heed,** ear; consideration, thought, mind; **awareness, consciousness,** alertness 339.5; **observation,** observance, advertence, advertency, **note, notice,** remark, put one's finger on, **regard,** respect; **intentness,** intentiveness, concentration; diligence, assiduity, assiduousness, earnestness; **care** 339.1; **curiosity** 981

2 **interest, concern,** concernment; **curiosity** 981; **enthusiasm,** passion, ardor, zeal; cathexis; matter of interest, special interest; solicitude

3 **engrossment, absorption, intentness,** single-mindedness, **concentration, application,** study, studiousness, **preoccupation,** engagement, **involvement, immersion,** submersion; obsession, monomania; rapt attention, absorbed attention *or* interest; deep study, deep *or* profound thought, contemplation, meditation

4 **close attention,** close study, scrutiny, fixed regard, rapt *or* fascinated attention, whole *or* total *or* undivided attention; minute *or* meticulous attention, attention to detail, microscopic *or* microscopical scrutiny, finicalness, finickiness; constant *or* unrelenting attention, close observance, harping, strict attention; special consideration

VERBS 5 **attend to,** look to, **see to,** advert to, be aware of; **pay attention to,** pay regard to, give mind to, pay mind to <nf>, not forget, spare a thought for, **give heed to;** bethink, bethink oneself; have a look at; **turn to,** give thought to, trouble one's head about; give one's mind to, direct one's attention to, turn *or* bend *or* set the mind *or* attention to; **devote oneself to,** devote the mind *or* thoughts to, fix *or* rivet *or* focus the mind *or* thoughts on, set one's thoughts on, apply the mind *or* attention to, apply oneself to, **occupy oneself with, concern oneself with,** give oneself up to, be absorbed *or* engrossed in, be into <nf>; sink one's teeth, take an interest in, take hold of; **have a lot on one's mind** *or* **plate;** be preoccupied with; **lose oneself in; hang on one's words,** hang on the lips; **drink in,** drink in with rapt attention; be solicitous, suck up to <nf>, brown-nose <nf>

6 **heed, attend,** be heedful, tend, **mind, watch, observe, regard,** look, see, view, mark, remark, animadvert <old>, **note, notice,** take note *or* notice, get a load of <nf>

7 **hearken to,** hark, **listen, hear,** give ear to, lend an ear to, incline *or* bend an ear to, prick up the ears, strain one's ears, **keep one's ears open,** unstopper one's ears, have *or* keep an ear to the ground, listen with both ears, **be all ears**

8 **pay attention** *or* **heed,** take heed, give heed, **look out, watch out** <nf>, **take care** 339.7; look lively *or* alive, **look sharp,** stay *or* be alert, sit up and take notice; be on the ball *or* keep one's eye on the ball *or* not miss a trick *or* not overlook a bet <nf>, keep a weather eye out *or* on; miss nothing; get after, seize on, keep one's eyes open 339.8; attend to business, mind one's business; pay close *or* strict attention, strain one's attention, not relax one's concern, give one's undivided attention, give special attention to, dance attendance on; keep in the center of one's attention, keep uppermost in one's thought; **concentrate on,** focus *or* fix on; **study,** scrutinize, survey; be obsessed with; cathect

9 **take cognizance of, take note** *or* **notice of,** take heed of, **take account of, take into consideration** *or* **account,** bear in mind, keep *or* hold in mind, reckon with, keep in sight *or* view, not lose sight of, have in one's eye, have an eye to, have regard for

10 **call attention to,** direct attention to, **bring under** *or* **to one's notice,** hold up to notice, bring to attention, **mention,** mention in passing, touch on; **single out,** pick out, lift up, focus on, call *or* bring to notice, direct to the attention, **feature,** highlight, brightline; **direct to,** address to; **mention,** specify, mention in passing, touch on, cite, **refer to,** allude to; **alert one,** call to one's attention, put one wise *and* put one on <nf>; **point out, point to,** point at, put *or* lay one's finger on; **excite** *or* **stimulate attention,** drum up attention

11 **meet with attention,** fall under one's notice; **catch the attention,** strike one, impress one, draw *or* hold *or* focus the attention, take *or* catch *or* meet *or* strike the eye, get *or* catch one's ear, attract notice *or* attention, arrest *or* engage attention, fix *or* rivet one's attention, arrest the thoughts, awaken the mind *or* thoughts, **excite notice,** arouse notice, arrest one's notice, invite *or* solicit attention, claim *or* demand attention, act as a magnet

12 **interest, concern,** involve in *or* with, affect the interest, give pause; **pique, titillate,** tantalize, tickle, tickle one's fancy, **attract,** invite, **fascinate, provoke, stimulate, arouse, excite,** pique one's interest, excite interest, excite *or* whet one's interest, arouse one's passion *or* enthusiasm, turn one on <nf>

13 **engross, absorb,** immerse, **occupy, preoccupy, engage,** involve, monopolize, exercise, take up; **obsess; grip, hold, arrest, hold the interest, fascinate, enthrall,** spellbind, **hold spellbound,** grab <nf>, charm, enchant, mesmerize, hypnotize, catch; absorb the attention, claim one's thoughts, engross the mind *or* thoughts, engage the attention, involve the interest, occupy the attention, monopolize one's attention, engage the mind *or* thoughts

14 **come to attention,** stand at attention

ADJS 15 **attentive, heedful, mindful, regardful,** advertent; intent, intentive, on top of <nf>, diligent, assiduous, intense, earnest, concentrated; **careful** 339.10, on guard, vigilant; **observing,** observant; watchful, aware, conscious, alert 339.14; **curious** 981.5; agog, openmouthed; open-eared, open-eyed, **all eyes, all ears,** all eyes and ears; on the job <nf>, on the ball *and* Johnny-on-the-spot <nf>; **meticulous** 339.12, sedulous, nice, finical, finicky, finicking, niggling

16 **interested,** concerned; **alert to, sensitive to, on the watch;** curious 981.5; tantalized, piqued, titillated, tickled, **attracted,** fascinated, excited, turned-on <nf>; keen on *or* about, enthusiastic, passionate; fixating, cathectic

17 **engrossed, absorbed,** totally absorbed, single-minded, **occupied, preoccupied, engaged,** devoted, devoted to, intent, intent on, monopolized, obsessed, monomaniacal, swept up, taken up with, **involved, caught up in,** wrapped in, **wrapped up in,** engrossed in, **absorbed in** *or* with *or* by, **lost in, immersed in,** submerged in, buried in; over head and ears in, head over heels in <nf>, up to one's elbows in, up to one's ears in; contemplating, contemplative, studying, studious, meditative, meditating; solicitous, indulgent

18 **gripped, held, fascinated, enthralled, rapt, spellbound,** charmed, enchanted, mesmerized, **hypnotized,** fixed, caught, riveted, **arrested,** switched on <nf>

19 **interesting, stimulating, provocative,** provoking, thought-provoking, thought-challenging, thought-inspiring; **titillating,** tickling, **tantalizing, inviting, exciting; piquant,** lively, racy, juicy, succulent, spicy, rich; readable

20 **engrossing, absorbing,** consuming, **gripping,** riveting, holding, **arresting,** engaging, attractive, **fascinating, enthralling, spellbinding,** enchanting, magnetic, hypnotic, mesmerizing, mesmeric; obsessive, obsessing

ADVS 21 **attentively,** with attention; **heedfully,** mindfully, regardfully, advertently; observingly, observantly; **interestedly,** with interest; **raptly,** with rapt attention; engrossedly, absorbedly, preoccupiedly; devotedly, **intently,** without distraction, **with undivided attention**

INTERJS 22 **attention!, look!,** see!, look you!, look here!, looky! <nf>, witness!; tah-dah! <nf>, presto!, hey presto! <Brit>, voilà!; lo!, behold!, lo and behold!; **hark!,** listen!, listen up! <nf>, hark ye!, hear ye!, oyez!; *nota bene* <L, note well>, NB; mark my words!

23 **hey!, hail!, ahoy!, hello!,** hollo!, hallo!, halloo!, halloa!, ho!, heigh!, hi!, hist!; hello there!, ahoy there!, yo!

984 INATTENTION

NOUNS 1 **inattention,** inattentiveness, **heedlessness, unheedfulness, unmindfulness, thoughtlessness,** inconsideration; **incuriosity** 981, **indifference** 102; inadvertence *or* inadvertency; unintentness, unintentiveness; disregard, disregardfulness, regardlessness, apathy; **flightiness** 984.5, giddiness 985.4, lightmindedness, dizziness *and* ditziness <nf>, scattiness <Brit nf>; levity, frivolousness, flippancy; shallowness, superficiality; **inobservance,** unobservance, nonobservance; **unalertness,** unwariness, unwatchfulness; **obliviousness,** unconsciousness, unawareness; **carelessness,** negligence 340.1, oversight; distraction, **absentmindedness, woolgathering,** daydreaming 985.2, head in the clouds; attention deficit disorder *or* ADD, attention deficit hyperactivity disorder *or* ADHD

VERBS 2 **be inattentive, pay no attention,** pay no mind <nf>, not attend, not notice, **take no note** *or* **notice of,** take no thought *or* account of, miss, not heed, give no heed, pay no regard to, not listen, hear nothing, not hear a word; **disregard, overlook, ignore,** pass over *or* by, have no time for, let pass *or* get by *or* get past; think little of, think nothing of, **slight,** make light of; **close** *or* **shut one's eyes to,** see nothing, be blind to, turn a blind eye, **look the other way, blink at, wink at,** connive at; stick *or* bury *or* hide one's head in the sand; **turn a deaf ear to,** stop one's ears, let come in one ear and go out the other, tune out <nf>; let well enough alone; not trouble oneself with, not trouble one's head with *or* about; **be unwary,** be off one's guard, be caught out

3 **wander, stray,** divagate, wander from the subject, ramble; have no attention span, have a short attention span, let one's attention wander, allow one's mind to wander, get off the track <nf>; **fall asleep at the switch** <nf>, woolgather, **daydream** 985.9

4 **dismiss,** dismiss *or* drive from one's thoughts; **put out of mind,** put out of one's head *or* thoughts, wean *or* force one's thoughts from, **think no more of, forget, forget it,** forget about it, **let it go** <nf>, let slip, not give it another *or* a second thought, **drop the subject,** give it no more thought; turn one's back upon, turn away from, turn one's attention from, walk away, abandon, leave out in the cold <nf>; put *or* set *or* lay aside, push *or* thrust aside *or* to one side, wave aside; put on the back burner *or* on hold <nf>; **turn up one's nose at,** sneeze at; **shrug off, brush off** *or* **aside** *or* **away,** blow off *and* laugh off *or* away <nf>, dismiss with a laugh; slight 157.6, kiss off *and* slap *or* smack down <nf>

5 **escape notice** *or* **attention,** escape one, get by, be missed, pass one by, not enter one's head, never occur to one, fall on deaf ears, not register, go over one's head

ADJS 6 **inattentive, unmindful,** inadvertent, thoughtless, **incurious** 982.3, **indifferent** 102.6; **heedless,** unheeding, unheedful, regardless, *distrait* <Fr>, **disregardful,** disregardant; **unobserving,** inobservant, unobservant, unnoticing, unnoting, unremarking, unmarking; **distracted** 985.10; **careless,** negligent 340.10; **scatterbrained,** giddy 985.16, ditzy <nf>, scatty <Brit nf>, flighty; absent-minded, out to lunch <nf>

7 **oblivious, unconscious,** insensible, dead to the world, out of it *and* not with it <nf>; blind, deaf; **preoccupied** 985.11; in a world of one's own

8 **unalert, unwary, unwatchful, unvigilant,** uncautious, incautious; **unprepared,** unready; unguarded, **off one's guard,** off-guard; **asleep,** sleeping, nodding, napping, **asleep at the switch** *and* asleep on the job *and* **not on the job** *and* goofing off *and* looking out the window <nf>; daydreaming, woolgathering

985 DISTRACTION, CONFUSION

NOUNS 1 **distraction,** distractedness, **diversion,** separation *or* withdrawal of attention, divided attention, competing stimuli; too much on one's mind *or* on one's plate, cognitive dissonance, sensory overload; inattention 984

2 **abstractedness, abstraction, preoccupation, absorption,** engrossment, depth of thought, fit of abstraction; **absentmindedness, absence of mind; bemusement,** musing, musefulness <old>; **woolgathering,** mooning <nf>, moonraking <old>, stargazing, **dreaming, daydreaming,** fantasying, pipe-dreaming <nf>, castle-building; **brown study,** study, reverie, muse, dreamy abstraction, quiet *or* muted ecstasy, trance; dream, **daydream,** fantasy, pipe dream <nf>; daydreamer, Walter Mitty

3 **confusion, fluster,** flummox <nf>, **flutter,** flurry, ruffle; disorientation, **muddle, muddlement,** fuddle *and* fuddlement <nf>, befuddlement, muddleheadedness, daze, maze <nf>; unsettlement, disorganization, **disorder,** chaos, **mess** *and* mix-up *and* snafu <nf>, balls-up *and*

shemozzle <Brit nf>, shuffle, jumble, **discomfiture, discomposure, disconcertion,** discombobulation <nf>, **bewilderment, embarrassment, disturbance,** perturbation, **upset,** frenzy, pother, bother, botheration *and* stew <nf>, pucker <old>; tizzy *and* swivet *and* sweat <nf>; haze, fog, mist, cloud; maze; **perplexity** 971.3

4 **dizziness, vertigo,** vertiginousness, spinning head, swimming, swimming of the head, **giddiness,** wooziness <nf>, **lightheadedness;** tiddliness <Brit nf>, **drunkenness** 88.1,3

5 **flightiness, giddiness,** volatility, mercuriality; **thoughtlessness,** witlessness, brainlessness, empty-headedness, frivolity, frivolousness, dizziness *and* ditziness <nf>, scattiness <Brit nf>, foolishness 923; **scatterbrain,** flibbertigibbet 924.7

VERBS 6 **distract, divert,** detract, distract the attention, divert *or* detract attention, divert the mind *or* thoughts, draw off the attention, call away, take the mind off of, relieve the mind of, cause the mind to stray *or* wander, put off the track, derail, throw off the scent, lead the mind astray, beguile; throw off one's guard, catch off balance, put off one's stride, trip up

7 **confuse,** throw into confusion *or* chaos, entangle, **mix up, fluster;** flummox <nf>, **flutter,** put into a flutter, **flurry, rattle, ruffle,** moider <Brit nf>; **muddle,** fuddle <nf>, **befuddle, addle,** addle the wits, **daze,** maze, **dazzle,** bedazzle; **upset, unsettle,** raise hell, disorganize; throw into a tizzy *or* swivet; **disconcert, discomfit, discompose,** discombobulate <nf>, disorient, disorientate, **bewilder, embarrass, put out, disturb, perturb, bother,** pother, bug <nf>; fog, mist, cloud, becloud; **perplex** 971.13

8 **dizzy, make one's head swim,** cause vertigo, send one spinning, whirl the mind, swirl the senses, make one's head reel *or* whirl *or* spin *or* revolve, go to one's head; **intoxicate** 88.22

9 **muse, moon** <nf>, **dream, daydream,** pipe-dream <nf>, fantasy; abstract oneself, be lost in thought, let one's attention wander, let one's mind run on other things, dream of *or* muse on other things; **wander, stray, ramble,** divagate, let one's thoughts *or* mind wander, give oneself up to reverie, **woolgather, go woolgathering,** let one's wits go bird's nesting, **be in a brown study,** be absent, be somewhere else, stargaze, be out of it *and* be not with it <nf>

ADJS 10 **distracted, distraught,** *distrait* <Fr>; **wandering, rambling; wild, frantic, beside oneself**

11 **abstracted, bemused,** museful <old>, **musing, preoccupied, absorbed, engrossed,** taken up; **absentminded, absent,** faraway, elsewhere, somewhere else, not there; pensive, meditative; lost, **lost in thought,** wrapped in thought; rapt, transported, ecstatic; dead to the world, **unconscious, oblivious; dreaming, dreamy,** drowsing, dozing, nodding, half-awake, betwixt sleep and waking, napping; **daydreaming,** daydreamy, pipe-dreaming <nf>; **woolgathering,** mooning *and* moony <nf>, moonraking <old>, castle-building, in the clouds, off in the clouds, stargazing, in a reverie

12 **confused, mixed-up,** crazy mixed-up <nf>; **flustered,** fluttered, **ruffled, rattled,** fussed <nf>; **upset, unsettled,** off-balance, off one's stride; **disorganized, disordered,** disoriented, disorientated, chaotic, jumbled, in a jumble, shuffled; shaken, shook <nf>, **disconcerted, discomposed,** discombobulated <nf>, **embarrassed, put-out, disturbed, perturbed,** bothered, all hot and bothered <nf>; in a stew *or* botheration <nf>, in a pucker <old>; in a tizzy *or* swivet *or* sweat <nf>, in a pother; **perplexed**

13 **muddled,** in a muddle; fuddled <nf>, **befuddled;** muddleheaded, fuddlebrained <nf>; puzzleheaded, puzzlepated; **addled,** addleheaded, addlepated, addlebrained; adrift, at sea, foggy, fogged, in a fog, hazy, muzzy <nf>, misted, misty, cloudy, beclouded

14 **dazed,** mazed, **dazzled,** bedazzled, in a daze; **silly,** knocked silly, cockeyed <nf>; **groggy** <nf>, **dopey** <nf>, woozy <nf>; **punch-drunk** *and* punchy *and* **slap-happy** <nf>

15 **dizzy, giddy,** vertiginous, spinning, swimming, turned around, going around in circles; lightheaded, tiddly <Brit nf>, **drunk, drunken** 88.31

16 **scatterbrained,** shatterbrained *or* shatterpated <old>, rattlebrained, rattleheaded, rattlepated, scramblebrained, harebrain, harebrained, **giddy, dizzy** *and* ditzy *and* gaga <nf>, scatty <Brit nf>, giddy-brained, giddy-headed, giddy-pated, giddy-witted, giddy as a goose, fluttery, frivolous, featherbrained, featherheaded; **thoughtless, witless, brainless, empty-headed** 922.19

17 **flighty,** volatile, mercurial

986 IMAGINATION

NOUNS 1 **imagination,** imagining, imaginativeness, **fancy, fantasy,** conceit <old>; mind's eye, "that inward eye which is the bliss of solitude"—Wordsworth, "the mad boarder"—Malebranche; flight of fancy, fumes of fancy; fantasticism

2 **creative thought,** conception; lateral thinking, association of ideas; productive *or* constructive *or* creative imagination, creative power *or* ability, esemplastic imagination *or* power, shaping

imagination, poetic imagination, artistic imagination; mythopoeia, *mythopoesis* <Gk>; mythification, mythicization; inspiration, stimulus, muse; Muses: Calliope <poetry>, Clio <history>, Erato <lyric and love poetry>, Euterpe <music>, Melpomene <tragedy>, Polyhymnia <sacred song>, Terpsichore <dancing and choral song>, Thalia <comedy>, Urania <astronomy>; genius 920.8; afflatus, divine afflatus; frenzy, ecstasy

3 **invention, inventiveness, originality, creativity, fabrication,** creativeness, **ingenuity;** productivity, prolificacy, **fertility,** fecundity; rich *or* teeming imagination, fertile *or* pregnant imagination, seminal *or* germinal imagination, fertile mind; imagineering; **fiction,** fictionalization

4 **lively imagination,** active fancy, **vivid imagination,** colorful *or* highly colored *or* lurid imagination, warm *or* ardent imagination, fiery *or* heated imagination, excited imagination, bold *or* daring *or* wild *or* fervent imagination; verve, vivacity of imagination

5 **figment of the imagination,** creature of the imagination, creation *or* coinage of the brain, fiction of the mind, maggot <old>, whim, whimsy, figment, imagination, invention; caprice, vagary; brainchild; **imagining,** fancy, idle fancy, vapor, "thick-coming fancies"—Shakespeare, imagery; **fantasy, make-believe;** fabrication; phantom, vision, apparition, insubstantial image, eidolon, **phantasm** 976.4; **fiction,** myth, romance; wildest dreams, **stretch** of the imagination; **chimera, bubble, illusion** 976; hallucination, delirium, sick fancy; trip *or* drug trip <nf>

6 **visualization, envisioning,** envisaging, picturing, objectification, imaging, calling to *or* before the mind's eye, figuring *or* portraying *or* representing in the mind; depicting *or* delineating in the imagination; conceptualization; **picture, vision, image,** mental image, mental picture, visual image, visualization, vivid *or* lifelike image, eidetic image, concept, **conception,** mental representation *or* presentation, *Vorstellung* <Ger>; image-building, **imagery,** word-painting; poetic image, poetic imagery; imagery study; imagism, imagistic poetry

7 **idealism, idealization; ideal,** ideality; rose-colored glasses; visionariness, **utopianism;** flight of fancy, play of fancy, imaginative exercise; **romanticism,** romanticizing, romance; **quixotism,** quixotry; dreamery; **impracticality,** unpracticalness, **unrealism,** unreality; **wishful thinking,** wish fulfillment, wish-fulfillment fantasy, dream come true; autistic thinking, dereistic thinking, autism, dereism, autistic distortion

8 **dreaminess,** dreamfulness, musefulness, pensiveness; dreamlikeness; **dreaming, musing; daydreaming,** pipe-dreaming <nf>, dreamery, fantasying, castlebuilding

9 **dream; reverie, daydream, pipe dream** <nf>, wishful thinking; **brown study** 985.2; **vision; nightmare,** incubus, bad dream

10 **air castle, castle in the air,** castle in the sky *or* skies, castle in Spain; Xanadu *and* pleasure dome of Kubla Khan, pie in the sky, end of the rainbow

11 **utopia** *or* Utopia <Sir Thomas More>, **paradise,** heaven 681, **heaven on earth;** millennium, kingdom come; dreamland, dream world, lotus land, land of dreams, land of enchantment, land of heart's desire, wonderland, cloudland, fairyland, land of faerie, faerie; Eden, Garden of Eden; the Promised Land, land of promise, land of plenty, land of milk and honey, Canaan, Goshen; Shangri-la, New Atlantis <Francis Bacon>, Arcadia, Agapemone, Happy Valley, land of Prester John, Eldorado, Seven Cities of Cibola, Quivira; Laputa; Cockaigne, Big Rock-Candy Mountain, Fiddler's Green, never-never land, Never-land, Cloudcuckooland *or* Nephelococcygia, Erewhon, Land of Youth, Tir-na-n'Og <Ir>; dystopia *or* kakotopia; Pandemonium

12 **imaginer, fancier,** fantast; fantasist; mythmaker, mythopoet; mythifier, mythicizer; **inventor; creative artist,** composer, poet, creative writer; imagineer

13 **visionary, idealist;** prophet, **seer; dreamer, daydreamer,** dreamer of dreams, castle-builder, lotus-eater, **wishful thinker; romantic,** romanticist, romancer; Quixote, Don Quixote; utopian, utopianist, utopianizer; escapist, ostrich; enthusiast, rhapsodist

VERBS 14 **imagine, fancy, conceive,** conceit <old>, conceptualize, ideate, figure to oneself; **invent, create, originate, make,** think up, dream up, shape, mold, coin, hatch, concoct, fabricate, produce; **suppose** 951.10; **fantasize;** fictionalize; use one's imagination; give free rein to the imagination, let one's imagination riot *or* run riot *or* run wild, allow one's imagination to run away with one; experience imaginatively *or* vicariously

15 **visualize,** vision, **envision, envisage, picture, image,** objectify; picture in one's mind, picture to oneself, **view with the mind's eye,** contemplate in the imagination, form a mental picture of, represent, **see,** just see, have a picture of; call up, summon up, conjure up, **call to mind,** realize; have an inspiration

16 **idealize,** utopianize, quixotize, rhapsodize; **romanticize,** romance; paint pretty pictures of, paint in bright colors; see through rose-colored glasses; **build castles in the air** *or* **Spain;** live in a dream world

17 dream; dream of, dream on; **daydream,** pipe-dream <nf>, get *or* have stars in one's eyes, have one's head in the clouds, indulge in wish fulfillment; fantasy, conjure up a vision, "see visions and dream dreams"—Bible; blow one's mind *and* go on a trip *and* trip *and* freak out <nf>

ADJS **18 imaginative,** conceptual, conceptive, ideational, ideative, notional; perceptive; **inventive, original,** innovative, originative, esemplastic, shaping, **creative, ingenious, resourceful; productive, fertile,** fecund, prolific, seminal, germinal, teeming, pregnant; **inspired,** visioned

19 imaginary, imaginational, notional; **imagined, fancied; unreal,** unrealistic, airy-fairy <Brit>, unactual, nonexistent, never-never; visional, supposititious, **all in the mind; illusory;** not of this world

20 fanciful, notional, notiony <nf>, whimsical, maggoty <Brit>; airy-fairy <nf>; brain-born; fancy-bred, fancy-born, fancy-built, fancy-framed, fancy-woven, fancy-wrought; dream-born, dream-built, dream-created; **fantastic, fantastical,** fantasque, extravagant, preposterous, outlandish, wild, baroque, rococo, florid; Alice-in-Wonderland, bizarre, grotesque, Gothic

21 fictitious, make-believe, figmental, fictional, fictive, fabricated, fictionalized; nonhistorical, nonfactual, nonactual, nonrealistic; **fabulous, mythic, mythical,** mythological, legendary; mythified, mythicized

22 chimeric, chimerical, aerial, ethereal, phantasmal; vaporous, vapory; gossamer; air-built, cloud-built, cloud-born, cloud-woven

23 ideal, idealized; utopian, Arcadian, Edenic, paradisal; pie in the sky <nf>; heavenly, celestial; millennial

24 visionary, idealistic, quixotic; romantic, romanticized, romancing, romanticizing; poetic *or* poetical; storybook; **impractical, unpractical, unrealistic;** wish-fulfilling, autistic, dereistic; starry-eyed, dewy-eyed; in the clouds, with one's head in the clouds; airy, **otherworldly,** transmundane, transcendental

25 dreamy, dreamful; dreamy-eyed, dreamy-minded, dreamy-souled; dreamlike; day-dreamy, **dreaming, daydreaming,** pipe-dreaming <nf>, castle-building; **entranced,** tranced, in a trance, dream-stricken, enchanted, spellbound, spelled, charmed

26 imaginable, fanciable, conceivable, thinkable, cogitable; **supposable** 951.15

987 UNIMAGINATIVENESS

NOUNS **1 unimaginativeness,** unfancifulness; **prosaicness,** prosiness, prosaism, prosaicism, unpoeticalness; **staidness, stuffiness** <nf>; stolidity; **dullness, dryness;** aridness, aridity, barrenness, infertility, infecundity; **unoriginality,** uncreativeness, uninventiveness, dearth of ideas

2 <practical attitude> **realism,** realisticness, **practicalness, practicality, practical-mindedness,** sober-mindedness, sobersidedness, **hardheadedness, matter-of-factness;** down-to-earthness, earthiness, worldliness, secularism; real world, the here and now; nuts and bolts, no nonsense, no frills; **pragmatism,** pragmaticism, positivism, scientism; unidealism, unromanticalness, unsentimentality; sensibleness, saneness, reasonableness, rationality; freedom from illusion, lack of sentimentality; lack of feelings 94

3 realist, pragmatist, positivist, practical person, hardhead

VERBS **4 keep both feet on the ground,** stick to the facts, call a spade a spade; **come down to earth,** come down out of the clouds, know when the honeymoon is over.

ADJS **5 unimaginative, unfanciful;** unidealized, unromanticized; **prosaic,** prosy, prosing, unpoetic, unpoetical; **literal,** literal-minded; earthbound, mundane; **staid, stuffy** <nf>; stolid; **dull, dry;** arid, barren, infertile, infecund; **unoriginal,** uninspired; hedged, undaring, unaspiring, **uninventive** 891.5

6 realistic, realist, **practical;** pragmatic, pragmatical, scientific, scientistic, positivistic; **unidealistic,** unideal, **unromantic, unsentimental, practical-minded,** sober-minded, sobersided, **hardheaded,** straight-thinking, **matter-of-fact, down-to-earth, with both feet on the ground;** worldly, earthy, secular; sensible, sane, reasonable, rational, sound, sound-thinking; **reductive, simplistic**

988 SPECTER

NOUNS **1 specter, ghost,** spectral ghost, **spook** <nf>, **phantom,** phantasm, phantasma, **wraith, shade,** shadow, fetch, **apparition,** appearance, presence, shape, form, eidolon, idolum, revenant, larva; **spirit;** sprite, shrouded spirit, disembodied spirit, departed spirit, restless *or* wandering spirit *or* soul, soul of the dead, dybbuk; oni; Masan; astral spirit, astral; unsubstantiality, immateriality, incorporeal, incorporeity, incorporeal being *or* entity; walking dead man, zombie; jinn *or* dijn, genie; duppy; vision, theophany; materialization; haunt *or* hant <nf>; banshee; poltergeist; control, guide; manes, lemures; grateful dead

2 White Lady, White Lady of Avenel, White Ladies of Normandy; Brocken specter; Wild Hunt; Flying Dutchman

3 **double,** etheric double *or* self, co-walker, *Doppelgänger* <Ger>, doubleganger, fetch, wraith

4 **eeriness, ghostliness, weirdness, uncanniness, spookiness** <nf>

5 **possession,** spirit control; obsession

VERBS 6 **haunt,** hant <nf>, spook <nf>; **possess,** control; obsess

ADJS 7 **spectral,** specterlike; **ghostly,** ghostish, ghosty, ghostlike; **spiritual, psychic,** psychical; **phantomlike,** phantom, phantomic *or* phantomical, phantasmal, phantasmic, **wraithlike,** wraithy, shadowy; etheric, ectoplasmic, astral, ethereal 764.6; incorporeal 1053.7; **occult, supernatural** 870.15

8 **disembodied,** bodiless, immaterial 1053.7, discarnate, decarnate, decarnated

9 **weird, eerie,** eldritch, **uncanny,** unearthly, macabre; **spooky** *and* spookish *and* hairy <nf>

10 **haunted,** spooked *and* spooky <nf>, spirit-haunted, ghost-haunted, specter-haunted; **possessed,** ghost-ridden; obsessed

989 MEMORY

NOUNS 1 **memory, remembrance, recollection,** mind, *souvenir* <Fr>; memory trace, engram; mind's eye, eye of the mind, mirror of the mind, tablets of the memory; corner *or* recess of the memory, inmost recesses of the memory; Mnemosyne, mother of the Muses; short-term memory, long-term memory, anterograde memory; computer memory, information storage; group memory, collective memory, mneme, racial memory; atavism; cover *or* screen memory, affect memory; eye *or* visual memory, kinesthetic memory; skill, verbal response, emotional response

2 "that inward eye"—Wordsworth, "the warder of the brain"—Shakespeare, "the treasury and guardian of all things"—Cicero, "storehouse of the mind, garner of facts and fancies"—M F Tupper, "the diary that we all carry around with us"—Oscar Wilde

3 **retention, retentiveness,** retentivity, memory span; good memory, retentive memory *or* mind; total memory, eidetic memory *or* imagery, photographic memory, total recall; camera-eye

4 **remembering, remembrance, recollection,** recollecting, exercise of memory, **recall,** recalling; reflection, reconsideration; **retrospect,** retrospection, hindsight, looking back, harking back; flashback, **reminiscence,** review, contemplation of the past, review of things past, nostalgia; **memoir; memorization,** memorizing, **rote,** rote memory, rote learning, learning by heart, commitment to memory; déjà vu

5 **recognition, identification, reidentification,** distinguishment; realization 928.2

6 **reminder, remembrance,** remembrancer; **prompt,** prompter, tickler; prompting, cue, hint; jogger <nf>, flapper; *aide-mémoire* <Fr>, **memorandum** 549.4

7 **memento, remembrance, token, trophy, souvenir, keepsake, relic,** favor, token of remembrance; commemoration, memorial 549.12; *memento mori* <L>; **memories, memorabilia,** memorials; history, memoirs

8 memorability, rememberability

9 mnemonics, memory training, mnemotechny, mnemotechnics, mnemonization; mnemonic, mnemonic device, *aide-mémoire* <Fr>

VERBS 10 **remember, recall, recollect,** flash on *and* mind <nf>; have a good *or* ready memory, remember clearly, remember as if it were yesterday; have total recall, remember everything; reflect; **think of,** bethink oneself <old>; **call** *or* **bring to mind,** recall to mind, call up, summon up, conjure up, evoke, reevoke, revive, recapture, call back, bring back, "call back yesterday, bid time return"—Shakespeare; **think back,** go back, **look back,** cast the eyes back, carry one's thoughts back, look back upon things past, use hindsight, retrospect, **see in retrospect,** go back over, hark back, retrace, reconstruct, review, hark back, turn back time; review, review in retrospect; write one's memoirs

11 **reminisce,** rake *or* dig up the past

12 **recognize, know, tell, distinguish, make out; identify, place,** have; spot *and* nail *and* peg *and* cotton on <nf>, **reidentify,** know again, recover *or* recall knowledge of, know by sight; realize 928.12

13 **keep in memory, bear in mind,** keep *or* hold in mind, hold *or* retain the memory of, **keep in view,** have in mind, hold *or* carry *or* retain in one's thoughts, store in the mind, **retain, keep;** tax *or* burden the memory, **treasure, cherish,** treasure up in the memory, enshrine *or* embalm in the memory, cherish the memory of; keep up the memory of, keep the memory alive, keep alive in one's thoughts; brood over, dwell on *or* upon, fan the embers, let fester in the mind, let rankle in the breast

14 **be remembered,** sink in, penetrate, make an impression; live *or* dwell in one's memory, be easy to recall, remain in one's memory, be green *or* fresh in one's memory, stick in the mind, remain indelibly impressed on the memory, be stamped on one's memory, **never be forgotten; haunt one's thoughts,** obsess, run in the head, be in one's thoughts, be on one's mind; be burnt into one's memory, plague one; be like King Charles's head; **rankle,** rankle in the breast, fester in the mind

15 recur, recur to the mind, return to mind, come back, resurface, reenter

16 come to mind, pop into one's head, come to me, come into one's head, flash on the mind, pass in review

17 memorize, commit to memory, con; study; **learn by heart,** get by heart, learn *or* get by rote, get word-perfect *or* letter-perfect, learn word for word, learn verbatim; know by heart *or* from memory, have by heart *or* rote, have at one's fingers' ends *or* tips; repeat by heart *or* rote, give word for word, recite, repeat, parrot, repeat like a parrot, say one's lesson, rattle *or* reel off; be a quick study; retain

18 fix in the mind *or* memory, instill, infix, inculcate, impress, imprint, stamp, inscribe, etch, grave, engrave; **impress on the mind, get into one's head,** drive *or* hammer into one's head, get across, get into one's thick head *or* skull <nf>; **burden the mind with,** task the mind with, load *or* stuff *or* cram the mind with; inscribe *or* stamp *or* rivet in the memory, set in the tablets of memory, etch indelibly in the mind

19 refresh the memory, review, restudy, **brush up, rub up,** polish up *and* bone up <nf>, get up on; **cram** <nf>, swot up <Brit nf>

20 remind, put in mind, remember, put in remembrance, bring back, bring to recollection, refresh the memory of; **remind one of, recall,** suggest, **put one in mind of; take one back,** carry back, carry back in recollection; **jog the memory,** awaken *or* arouse the memory, flap the memory, give a hint *or* suggestion, refresh one's memory; **prompt,** prompt the mind, give the cue, hold the promptbook; nudge, pull by the sleeve, nag; brush up; make a note

21 try to recall, think hard, rack *or* ransack one's brains, **cudgel one's brains,** crack one's brains <nf>; have on the tip of one's tongue, have on the edge of one's memory *or* consciousness

ADJS **22 recollective, memoried;** mnemonic; retentive; **retrospective,** in retrospect; **reminiscent,** nostalgic, **mindful, remindful, suggestive,** redolent, evocative

23 remembered, recollected, recalled; retained, pent-up in the memory, kept in remembrance, enduring, lasting, **unforgotten;** present to the mind, lodged in one's mind, stamped on the memory; vivid, eidetic, fresh, green, alive

24 remembering, mindful, keeping *or* bearing in mind, holding in remembrance; unable to forget, haunted, plagued, obsessed, nagged, rankled

25 memorable, rememberable, recollectable; notable

26 unforgettable, never to be forgotten, never to be erased from the mind, **indelible,** indelibly impressed on the mind, fixed in the mind; haunting, persistent, recurrent, nagging, plaguing, rankling, festering; obsessing, obsessive

27 memorial, commemorative

ADVS **28 by heart,** *par cœur* <Fr>, **by rote, by** *or* **from memory,** without book; **memorably;** rememberingly

29 in memory of, to the memory of, in remembrance *or* commemoration, *in memoriam* <L>; *memoria in aeterna* <L>, in perpetual remembrance

990 FORGETFULNESS

NOUNS **1 forgetfulness,** unmindfulness, absentmindedness, **memorylessness;** short memory, short memory span, little retentivity *or* recall, mind *or* memory like a sieve; loose memory, vague *or* fuzzy memory, dim *or* hazy recollection; **lapse of memory,** decay of memory; **obliviousness, oblivion,** nirvana; obliteration; Lethe, Lethe water, waters of Lethe *or* oblivion, river of oblivion; insensibility; trance; nepenthe; **forgetting;** heedlessness 340.2; forgiveness 148

2 loss of memory, memory loss, amnesia, failure; **memory gap,** blackout <nf>; fugue; agnosia, unrecognition, body-image agnosia, ideational agnosia, astereognosis *or* astereocognosy; paramnesia, retrospective falsification, false memory, misremembrance; amnesiac

3 block, blocking, **mental block,** memory obstruction; repression, suppression, defense mechanism, conversion, sublimation, symbolization

VERBS **4 be forgetful,** suffer memory loss, be absentminded, have a short memory, have a mind *or* memory like a sieve, have a short memory span, be unable to retain, have little recall, forget one's own name, be oblivious; misremember

5 forget, clean forget <nf>; **not remember,** disremember *and* disrecollect <nf>, fail to remember, forget to remember, **have no remembrance** *or* **recollection of,** be unable to recollect *or* recall, draw a blank <nf>; lose, lose sight of, lose one's train of thought, lose track of what one was saying; have on the tip of the tongue; blow *or* go up in *or* fluff one's lines, forget one's lines, dry up; misremember, misrecollect

6 efface *or* erase from the memory, consign to oblivion, unlearn, obliterate, **dismiss from one's thoughts** 984.4; forgive 148.3,5

7 be forgotten, escape one, miss, **slip one's mind,** fade *or* die away from the memory, slip *or* escape the memory, drop from one's thoughts; fall *or* sink into oblivion, go in one ear and out the other

ADJS **8 forgotten,** clean forgotten <nf>, **unremembered,** disremembered *and* disrecollected

<nf>, **unrecollected, unretained, unrecalled,** past recollection *or* recall, out of the mind, lost, erased, effaced, obliterated, gone out of one's head *or* recollection, beyond recall, consigned to oblivion, buried *or* sunk in oblivion; out of sight out of mind; misremembered, misrecollected; half-remembered; on the tip of one's tongue

9 **forgetful, forgetting,** inclined to forget, **memoryless, unremembering, unmindful,** absentminded, **oblivious,** insensible to the past, with a mind *or* memory like a sieve; blank, vacant, vacuous, empty-headed, absent-minded; suffering from *or* stricken with amnesia, amnesic, amnestic; blocked, repressed, suppressed, sublimated, converted; heedless 340.11; Lethean; in a trance, preoccupied, spaced-out <nf>, out to lunch <nf>

10 **forgettable,** unrememberable, unrecollectable; effaceable, eradicable, erasable

ADVS 11 **forgetfully,** forgettingly, unmindfully, absentmindedly, **obliviously**

991 SUFFICIENCY

NOUNS 1 **sufficiency,** sufficientness, **adequacy,** adequateness, **enough,** a competence *or* competency; satisfactoriness, satisfaction, satisfactory amount, enough to go around; good *or* adequate supply; exact measure, right amount, no more and no less; bare sufficiency, minimum, bare minimum, just enough, enough to get by on, enough to live on; self-sufficiency

2 **plenty,** plenitude, plentifulness, plenteousness, muchness <old>; myriad, myriads, numerousness 884; **amplitude,** ampleness; substantiality, substantialness; **abundance, copiousness;** exuberance, riotousness; **bountifulness,** bounteousness, liberalness, **liberality,** generousness, **generosity; lavishness, extravagance, prodigality;** luxuriance, fertility, teemingness, productiveness 890; **wealth, opulence** *or* opulency, richness, affluence; more than enough; maximum; **fullness,** full measure, repletion, repleteness; **overflow, outpouring,** flood, inundation, flow, shower, spate, stream, gush, avalanche; landslide; **prevalence,** profuseness, **profusion,** riot; **superabundance** 993.2; **overkill;** no end of, great abundance, great plenty, quantities, much, as much as one could wish, one's fill, more than one can shake a stick at, lots, a fistful <nf>, **scads** 247.4; bumper crop, rich harvest, foison <old>; rich vein, bonanza, oodles *and* luau <nf>; an ample sufficiency, enough and to spare, enough and then some; fat of the land

3 cornucopia, horn of plenty, horn of Amalthea, endless supply, bottomless well

VERBS 4 **suffice, do,** just do, serve, **answer,** quench; work, be equal to, **avail;** answer *or* serve the purpose, do the trick <nf>, **suit;** qualify, meet, fulfill, **satisfy,** meet requirements; **pass muster,** make the grade *or* the cut *and* hack it *and* cut the mustard *and* **fill the bill** <nf>, measure up to, prove acceptable; get by *and* scrape by <nf>, do it, do'er <nf>, do in a pinch, **pass,** pass in the dark <nf>; hold, stand, stand up, take it, bear; stretch <nf>, reach, go around; rise to the occasion

5 **abound,** be plentiful, exuberate <old>, teem, **teem with,** creep with, crawl with, swarm with, be lousy with <nf>, bristle with; proliferate 890.7; **overflow,** run over, flood; flow, stream, rain, **pour,** shower, gush; flow with milk and honey, rain cats and dogs *and* stink of *and* roll in <nf>

ADJS 6 **sufficient,** sufficing; **enough, ample,** substantial, **plenty, satisfactory, adequate,** decent, due; competent, up to the mark, up to snuff; commensurate, proportionate, corresponding 788.9; suitable, fit 788.10; good, **good enough,** plenty good enough <nf>; sufficient for *or* to *or* unto, up to, equal to; barely sufficient, minimal, minimum; hand-to-mouth

7 **plentiful,** plenty, **plenteous,** plenitudinous; **galore** *and* a gogo *and* up the gazoo *or* kazoo *and* up to the ass in <nf>, in plenty, in quantity *or* quantities, aplenty <nf>; numerous 884.6; beaucoup <nf>, much, many 247.8; **ample,** all-sufficing; wholesale; well-stocked, well-provided, well-furnished, well-found; abundant, abounding, **copious,** exuberant, riotous; flush; **bountiful,** bounteous, **lavish, generous, liberal, extravagant, prodigal; luxuriant,** fertile, productive 890.9, **rich,** fat, **wealthy, opulent, affluent;** maximal; **full,** replete, well-filled, running over, overflowing; inexhaustible, exhaustless, bottomless; **profuse,** profusive, effuse, diffuse; **prevalent,** prevailing, rife, rampant, epidemic; lousy with <nf>, teeming 884.9; **superabundant** 993.19; a dime a dozen

ADVS 8 **sufficiently, amply,** substantially, **satisfactorily, enough;** competently, **adequately;** minimally

9 **plentifully,** plenteously, **aplenty** <nf>, **in plenty,** in quantity *or* quantities, in good supply; **abundantly,** in abundance, copiously, no end <nf>; **superabundantly** 992.24; **bountifully,** bounteously, **lavishly, generously, liberally, extravagantly, prodigally;** maximally; **fully,** in full measure, to the full, overflowingly; inexhaustibly, exhaustlessly, bottomlessly; exuberantly, luxuriantly, riotously; richly, opulently, affluently; **profusely,** diffusely, effusely; beyond one's wildest dreams, beyond the dreams of avarice

992 INSUFFICIENCY

NOUNS 1 **insufficiency, inadequacy,** insufficientness, inadequateness; short supply, seller's market; none to spare; unsatisfactoriness, nonsatisfaction, nonfulfillment, coming *or* falling short *or* shy, slippage, shortfall; **undercommitment;** disappointment, too little too late; a band-aid <nf>, a drop in the bucket *or* the ocean, a lick and a promise, a cosmetic measure; **incompetence,** incompetency, unqualification, unsuitability 789.3

2 **meagerness,** exiguousness, exiguity, scrimpiness, skimpiness, scantiness, spareness; meanness, miserliness, niggardliness, narrowness <nf>, stinginess, parsimony; smallness, slightness, puniness, paltriness; thinness, leanness, slimness, slim pickings <nf>, slenderness, scrawniness; jejuneness, jejunity; austerity; skeleton crew, corporal's guard

3 **scarcity,** scarceness; **sparsity,** sparseness; **scantiness,** scant sufficiency; **dearth, paucity,** poverty; **rarity,** rareness, uncommonness

4 **want, lack, need, deficiency, deficit, shortage, shortfall,** wantage, **incompleteness,** defectiveness, shortcoming 911, imperfection; **absence** 222, omission; **destitution,** impoverishment, beggary, deprivation; starvation, famine, drought, drying-up

5 **pittance,** dole, scrimption <nf>; drop in the bucket *or* the ocean; **mite,** bit 248.2; short allowance, short commons, half rations, cheeseparings and candle ends; mere subsistence, starvation wages; widow's mite

6 **dietary deficiency,** vitamin deficiency; undernourishment, undernutrition, **malnutrition,** starvation diet, half rations, bread and water; Lenten fare, Spartan fare

VERBS 7 **want, lack, need, require;** miss, feel the want of, be sent away empty-handed; run short of

8 **be insufficient,** not qualify, be found wanting, leave a lot to be desired, kick the beam, not make it *and* not hack it *and* not make the cut *and* not cut it *and* not cut the mustard <nf>, be beyond one's depth *or* ken, be in over one's head, **fall short,** fall shy, come short, not come up to; run short; want, want for, lack, fail, fail of *or* in; cramp one's style <nf>

ADJS 9 **insufficient,** unsufficing, **inadequate;** found wanting, defective, incomplete, imperfect, deficient, lacking, failing, wanting; **too few,** undersupplied, low on, light on; **too little,** not enough, precious little, a trickle *or* mere trickle; **unsatisfactory,** unsatisfying; cosmetic, merely cosmetic, surface, superficial, symptomatic, merely symptomatic; **incompetent,** unequal to, unqualified, not up to it, not up to snuff, beyond one's depth *or* over one's head, outmatched; short-staffed, understaffed, short-handed

10 **meager, slight,** scrimpy, skimp, skimpy, exiguous; scant, **scanty,** spare; miserly, niggardly, stingy, narrow <nf>, parsimonious, mean; hard to find, out of stock; austere, Lenten, Spartan, abstemious, ascetic; stinted, frugal, sparing; poor, impoverished; small, puny, paltry; thin, lean, slim, slender, scrawny; dwarfish, dwarfed, stunted, undergrown; straitened, limited; jejune, watered, watery, unnourishing, unnutritious; subsistence, starvation

11 **scarce, sparse, scanty; in short supply,** at a premium; **rare,** uncommon, infrequent; scarcer than hen's teeth <nf>; not to be had, not to be had for love *or* money, not to be had at any price; out of print, out of stock *or* season, nonexistent; few and far between

12 **ill-provided,** ill-furnished, ill-equipped, ill-found, ill off; **unprovided,** unsupplied, unreplenished; bare-handed; unfed, underfed, undernourished; shorthanded, undermanned; **empty-handed, poor,** pauperized, impoverished, beggarly; hungry, starved, half-starved, on short commons, starving, starveling, famished, anorectic

13 **wanting, lacking, needing, missing, in want of;** for want of, in default of, in the absence of; short, **short of,** scant of; shy, **shy of** *or* **on;** out of, clean *or* fresh out of <nf>, destitute of, bare of, void of, empty of, devoid of, forlorn of, bereft of, deprived of, denuded of, unpossessed of, unblessed with, bankrupt in; out of pocket; at the end of one's rope *or* tether

ADVS 14 **insufficiently; inadequately,** unsubstantially, incompletely

15 **meagerly, slightly,** sparely, punily, scantily, poorly, frugally, sparingly

16 **scarcely, sparsely, scantily,** skimpily, scrimpily; **rarely,** uncommonly

PREPS 17 **without,** minus, less, sans, absent

WORD ELEMENTS 18 hyp-, hypo-, under-, mal-, ill-, sub-

993 EXCESS

NOUNS 1 **excess, excessiveness, inordinance,** inordinateness, nimiety, **immoderateness,** immoderacy, immoderation, **extravagance** *or* extravagancy, intemperateness, incontinence, overindulgence, **intemperance** 669; unrestrainedness, abandon; gluttony 672; **extreme,** extremity, **extremes; boundlessness** 823.1; overlargeness, overgreatness, monstrousness, enormousness 247.1; overgrowth, overdevelopment, hypertrophy, gigantism, giantism, elephantiasis; **overmuch,** overmuchness, too much, too-muchness; **exorbitance** *or* exorbitancy, undueness, **outrageousness,** unconscionableness, **unreasonableness;** radicalism, extremism 611.4; egregiousness; fabulousness, hyperbole, **exaggeration** 355

2 **superabundance,** overabundance, superflux, **plethora,** redundancy, overprofusion, too many, too much, too much of a good thing, **overplentifulness,** overplenteousness, overplenty, **oversupply,** overstock, overaccumulation, **oversufficiency,** overmuchness, overcopiousness, overlavishness, overluxuriance, overbounteousness, overnumerousness; lavishness, **extravagance** *or* extravagancy, **prodigality; plenty** 991.2; **more than enough, enough and to spare,** enough in all conscience; **overdose,** overmeasure, "enough, with over-measure"—Shakespeare, one too many; too much of a good thing, egg in one's beer <nf>; more than one knows what to do with, drug on the market; spate, avalanche, landslide, deluge, flood, inundation; *embarras de richesses* <Fr>, money to burn <nf>; overpopulation; spare tire, fifth wheel; lagniappe

3 **overfullness,** plethora, **surfeit, glut;** satiety 994; engorgement, repletion, congestion; hyperemia; **saturation,** supersaturation; **overload,** overburden, overcharge, surcharge, overfreight, overweight; **overflow,** overbrimming, overspill; **insatiability,** insatiableness; all the market can bear

4 **superfluity,** superfluousness, fat; **redundancy,** redundance; unnecessariness, needlessness; fifth wheel *and* tits on a boar <nf>; featherbedding, payroll padding; duplication, duplication of effort, overlap; **luxury,** extravagance, frill *and* **frills** *and* bells and whistles *and* gimcrackery <nf>; frippery, froufrou, overadornment, bedizenment, gingerbread; **ornamentation,** embellishment 498.1; expletive, **padding, filling;** pleonasm, tautology; verbosity, prolixity 538.2; more than one really wants to know

5 **surplus,** surplusage, leftovers, plus, **overplus,** overstock, **overage,** overset, overrun, **overmeasure, oversupply;** margin; **remainder, balance, leftover, extra, spare,** something extra *or* to spare; bonus, dividend; lagniappe <nf>; gratuity, tip, *pourboire* <Fr>

6 **overdoing,** overcarrying, **overreaching,** supererogation; **overkill;** piling on <nf>, overimportance, overemphasis; overuse; overreaction; **overwork, overexertion,** overexercise, overexpenditure, overtaxing, overstrain, tax, strain; too much on one's plate, too many irons in the fire, too much at once; **overachievement,** overachieving

7 **overextension, overdrawing,** drawing *or* spreading too thin, **overstretching,** overstrain, overstraining, stretching, straining, stretch, strain, tension, extreme tension, snapping *or* breaking point; **overexpansion;** inflation, distension, overdistension, edema, turgidity, swelling, bloat, bloating 259.2

VERBS 8 **superabound,** overabound, **know no bounds, swarm,** pullulate, run riot, luxuriate, **teem;** overflow, flood, overbrim, overspill, spill over, overrun, overspread, overswarm, overgrow, fill, saturate; meet one at every turn; hang heavy on one's hands, remain on one's hands; burst at the seams

9 **exceed, surpass, pass, top, transcend, go beyond;** overpass, overstep, overrun, **overreach,** overshoot, overshoot the mark

10 **overdo, go too far,** do twice over, do it to death <nf>, pass all bounds, know no bounds, overact, **carry too far,** overcarry, go to an extreme, **go to extremes,** go overboard, go *or* jump off the deep end; **run** *or* **drive into the ground; make a big deal of** *and* make a federal case of <nf>; overemphasize, overstress; max out; overplay, overplay one's hand <nf>; **overreact,** protest too much; overreach oneself; **overtax,** overtask, overexert, overexercise, overstrain, overdrive, overspend, exhaust, overexpend, overuse; overtrain; **overwork,** overlabor; overelaborate, overdevelop, tell more than one wants to know; overstudy; burn the candle at both ends; **spread oneself too thin, take on too much,** have too much on one's plate, have too many irons in the fire, do too many things at once; **exaggerate** 355.3; **overindulge** 669.5

11 **pile it on,** lay it on, **lay it on thick,** lay it on with a trowel <nf>, talk too much, exaggerate

12 **carry coals to Newcastle,** teach fishes to swim, teach one's grandmother to suck eggs, kill the slain, beat *or* flog a dead horse, labor the obvious, butter one's bread on both sides, preach to the converted, paint *or* gild the lily, "to gild refined gold, to paint the lily, to throw a perfume on the violet"—Shakespeare

13 **overextend, overdraw, overstretch, overstrain,** stretch, strain; reach the breaking *or* snapping point; **overexpand,** overdistend, overdevelop, inflate, swell 259.4

14 **oversupply, overprovide,** overlavish, overfurnish, overequip; **overstock;** overprovision, overprovender; overdose; flood the market, oversell; **flood, deluge,** inundate, engulf, swamp, whelm, overwhelm; lavish with, be prodigal with

15 **overload,** overlade, **overburden,** overweight, **overcharge,** surcharge; **overfill,** stuff, crowd, cram, jam, pack, jam-pack, **congest,** choke; **overstuff,**

overfeed; gluttonize 672.4; **surfeit, glut, gorge,** satiate 994.4; **saturate,** soak, drench, supersaturate, supercharge

ADJS **16 excessive, inordinate, immoderate,** overweening, hubristic, **intemperate, extravagant,** incontinent; unrestrained, unbridled, abandoned; gluttonous 672.6; **extreme; overlarge, overgreat,** overbig, larger than life, monstrous, enormous, jumbo, elephantine, gigantic 247.7; overgrown, overdeveloped, hypertrophied; **overmuch,** too much, a bit much, de trop; **exorbitant, undue, outrageous,** unconscionable, **unreasonable;** fancy *and* high *and* stiff *and* steep <nf>; **out of bounds** *or* **all bounds,** out of sight *and* out of this world <nf>, **boundless** 823.3; egregious; fabulous, hyperbolic, hyperbolical, **exaggerated** 355.4

17 superfluous, redundant; excess, in excess, duplicative; unnecessary, unessential, nonessential, **needless,** otiose, expendable, dispensable, needless, unneeded, gratuitous, uncalled-for; expletive; pleonastic, tautologous, tautological; verbose, prolix 538.12; *de trop* <Fr>, supererogatory, supererogative; spare, to spare; on one's hands

18 surplus, overplus; **remaining,** unused, **leftover;** over, **over and above; extra, spare,** supernumerary, for lagniappe <nf>, as a bonus

19 superabundant, overabundant, plethoric, **overplentiful,** overplenteous, overplenty, **oversufficient, overmuch; lavish, prodigal,** overlavish, overbounteous, overgenerous, overliberal; overcopious, overluxuriant, riotous, overexuberant; overprolific, overnumerous; **swarming,** pullulating, **teeming,** overpopulated, overpopulous; plentiful 991.7

20 overfull, overloaded, overladen, overburdened, overfreighted, overfraught, overweighted, **overcharged,** surcharged, **saturated,** drenched, soaked, supersaturated, supercharged; **surfeited, glutted,** gorged, overfed, bloated, replete, swollen, **satiated** 994.6, **stuffed,** overstuffed, **crowded, overcrowded, crammed,** jammed, packed, jam-packed, like sardines in a can *or* tin, bumper-to-bumper <nf>; choked, **congested,** stuffed up; **overstocked, oversupplied; overflowing,** in spate, running over, filled to overflowing; plethoric, hyperemic; **bursting,** ready to burst, bursting at the seams, at the bursting point, overblown, distended, **swollen,** bloated 259.13

21 overdone, overwrought; overdrawn, overstretched, overstrained; overwritten, overplayed, overacted

ADVS **22 excessively, inordinately, immoderately, intemperately,** overweeningly, hubristically, **overly,** over, **overmuch,** too much; **too,** too-too <nf>; **exorbitantly, unduly, unreasonably,** unconscionably, **outrageously**

23 in *or* **to excess,** to extremes, to the extreme, all out *and* to the max <nf>, flat out <Brit nf>, to a fault, too far, out of all proportion

24 superabundantly, overabundantly, **lavishly, prodigally, extravagantly;** more than enough, plentifully 991.9; without measure, out of measure, beyond measure

25 superfluously, redundantly, supererogatorily; tautologously; unnecessarily, needlessly, beyond need, beyond reason, to a fare-thee-well <nf>

PREPS **26 in excess of,** over, beyond, past, above, **over and above,** above and beyond

WORD ELEMENTS **27** arch-, hyper-, over-, super-, sur-, ultra-, extra-

994 SATIETY

NOUNS **1 satiety, satiation, satisfaction, fullness, surfeit, glut,** repletion, engorgement; contentment; **fill, bellyful** *and* skinful <nf>; **saturation,** oversaturation, saturatedness, supersaturation; saturation point; more than enough, enough in all conscience, all one can stand *or* take; too much of a good thing, much of a muchness <nf>

2 satedness, surfeitedness, cloyedness, jadedness; overfullness, fed-upness <nf>

3 cloyer, surfeiter, sickener; **overdose;** a diet of cake; warmed-over cabbage

VERBS **4 satiate, sate, satisfy,** slake, allay; **surfeit, glut, gorge,** engorge; **cloy,** jade, pall; **fill,** fill up; saturate, oversaturate, supersaturate; **stuff,** overstuff, cram; **overfill,** overgorge, overdose, overfeed

5 have enough, have about enough of, have quite enough, **have one's fill;** have too much, have too much of a good thing, **have a bellyful** *or* skinful <nf>, have an overdose, **be fed up** <nf>, have all one can take *or* stand, have it up to here *and* up the gazoo *or* kazoo <nf>, have had it

ADJS **6 satiated, sated, satisfied,** slaked, allayed; **surfeited, gorged,** replete, engorged, **glutted; cloyed,** jaded; **full,** full of, with one's fill of, **overfull,** saturated, oversaturated, supersaturated; **stuffed,** overstuffed, crammed, overgorged, overfed; **fed up** *and* fed to the gills *or* fed to the teeth *and* stuffed to the gills <nf>; **with a bellyful** *or* skinful <nf>, with enough of; disgusted, **sick of,** tired of, sick and tired of

7 satiating, sating, satisfying, filling; surfeiting, overfilling; jading, **cloying,** cloysome

INTERJS **8** enough!, *basta* <Ital>, *genug!* and *genug shayn!* <Yiddish>, all right already!, enough already!

995 EXPEDIENCE

NOUNS 1 **expedience** *or* **expediency, advisability,** politicness, **desirability,** recommendability; **fitness, fittingness, appropriateness,** propriety, decency <old>, seemliness, **suitability,** rightness, feasibility, **convenience;** seasonableness, timeliness, **opportuneness;** usefulness 387.3; **advantage, advantageousness,** beneficialness, **profit,** profitability, percentage *and* mileage <nf>, worthwhileness, fruitfulness; wisdom, prudence 920.7; **temporariness, provisionality**

2 **expedient, means,** means to an end, **provision, measure, step, action,** effort, **stroke,** stroke of policy, coup, **move,** countermove, **maneuver,** demarche, course of action; tactic, **device,** contrivance, artifice, stratagem, **shift; gimmick** *and* dodge *and* trick <nf>; **resort,** resource; answer, solution; quick-and-dirty solution <nf>; working proposition, working hypothesis; **temporary expedient, improvisation,** ad hoc measure, ad hoc *or* ad hockery *or* ad hocism; **fix** *and* **quick fix** <nf>, jury-rigged expedient, **makeshift,** stopgap, shake-up, jury-rig; last expedient, **last resort** *or* resource, *pis aller* <Fr>, last shift, trump

VERBS 3 **expedite one's affair,** work to one's advantage, not come amiss, come in handy, be just the thing, be just what the doctor ordered <nf>, fit to a T *or* like a glove *or* like a second skin; forward, advance, promote, profit, advantage, benefit; **work, serve,** answer, answer *or* serve one's purpose, fill the bill *and* do the trick <nf>; suit the occasion, **be fitting,** fit, befit, be right

4 **make shift, make do,** make out <nf>, rub along <Brit>, cope, manage, manage with, get along on, get by on, do with; do as well as *or* the best one can; use a last resort, scrape the bottom of the barrel

ADJS 5 **expedient, desirable,** to be desired, much to be desired, **advisable, politic,** recommendable; **appropriate, meet, fit, fitting,** befitting, **right, proper,** good, decent <old>, **becoming,** seemly, likely, congruous, **suitable,** sortable, feasible, doable, swingable <nf>, **convenient,** happy, heaven-sent, felicitous; timely, seasonable, opportune, well-timed, in the nick of time; **useful** 387.18; **advantageous,** favorable; **profitable,** fructuous, worthwhile, worth one's while; **wise** 920.17

6 **practical,** practicable, pragmatic *or* pragmatical, banausic; feasible, workable, operable, realizable; **efficient,** effective, **effectual**

7 **makeshift,** makeshifty, **stopgap,** band-aid <nf>, improvised, improvisational, **jury-rigged; last-ditch; ad hoc;** quick *and* dirty <nf>; temporary, provisional, tentative

ADVS 8 **expediently, fittingly,** fitly, **appropriately, suitably,** sortably, congruously, rightly, properly, decently <old>, feasibly, conveniently; practically; seasonably, opportunely; desirably, advisably; advantageously, to advantage, all to the good; as a last resort

PHRS 9 there's more than one way to skin a cat, where there's a will there's a way

996 INEXPEDIENCE

NOUNS 1 **inexpedience** *or* inexpediency, **undesirability, inadvisability,** impoliticness *or* impoliticalness; **unwiseness** 922.2; **unfitness, unfittingness, inappropriateness, unaptness, unsuitability,** incongruity, **unmeetness,** wrongness, unseemliness; **inconvenience** *or* inconveniency, awkwardness; ineptitude, inaptitude; unseasonableness, untimeliness, inopportuneness; unfortunateness, infelicity; disadvantageousness, unprofitableness, unprofitability, worthlessness, futility, uselessness 391

2 **disadvantage, drawback, liability; detriment,** impairment, prejudice, loss, damage, hurt, harm, mischief, injury; **a step back** *or* **backward,** a loss of ground; **handicap** 1012.6, disability; drag, millstone around one's neck

3 **inconvenience,** discommodity, incommodity, disaccommodation <old>, **trouble, bother;** inconvenientness, inconveniency, **unhandiness,** awkwardness, clumsiness, unwieldiness, troublesomeness, clunkiness <nf>; gaucheness, gaucherie

VERBS 4 **inconvenience,** put to inconvenience, **put out, discommode,** incommode, disaccommodate <old>, disoblige, **burden, embarrass; trouble, bother,** put to trouble, put to the trouble of, **impose upon;** harm, disadvantage 1000.6

ADJS 5 **inexpedient, undesirable, inadvisable, counterproductive,** impolitic, impolitical, unpolitic, not to be recommended, contraindicated; **impractical, impracticable,** dysfunctional, unworkable; **ill-advised, ill-considered, unwise; unfit, unfitting,** unbefitting, **inappropriate, unsuitable,** unmeet, inapt, inept, unseemly, **improper, wrong,** bad, out of place, out of order, incongruous, ill-suited; malapropos, *mal à propos* <Fr>, inopportune, untimely, ill-timed, badly timed, unseasonable; infelicitous, unfortunate, unhappy; unprofitable 391.12; futile 391.13

6 **disadvantageous,** unadvantageous, **unfavorable;** unprofitable, profitless, unrewarding, worthless, useless 391.9; **detrimental,** deleterious, injurious, harmful, prejudicial, disserviceable

7 **inconvenient, incommodious,** discommodious; **unhandy, awkward,** clumsy, unwieldy, troublesome, onerous; gauche

ADVS 8 **inexpediently, inadvisably,** impoliticly *or* impolitically, **undesirably; unfittingly, inappropriately, unsuitably,** ineptly, inaptly, incongruously; inopportunely, unseasonably; infelicitously, unfortunately, unhappily

9 **disadvantageously,** unadvantageously, unprofitably, unrewardingly; uselessly 391.15; **inconveniently,** unhandily, with difficulty, ill

997 IMPORTANCE

NOUNS 1 **importance, significance, consequence,** consideration, **import,** note, mark, **moment, weight, gravity;** materiality; concern, concernment, interest; **first order,** high order, high rank; **priority,** primacy, precedence, preeminence, paramountcy, superiority, **supremacy;** value, worth, merit, excellence 999.1; self-importance 140.1; emphasis, oomph <nf>

2 **notability, noteworthiness,** remarkableness, salience, memorability; **prominence, eminence, greatness,** distinction, magnitude; prestige, esteem, repute, reputation, honor, glory, renown, dignity, **fame** 662.1; **stardom,** celebrity, celebrityhood, superstardom; semicelebrity

3 **gravity, graveness, seriousness,** solemnity, weightiness; *gravitas* <L>, grave affair; no joke, no laughing matter, nothing to sneeze at <nf>, hardball <nf>, matter of life and death, heavy scene <nf>

4 **urgency,** imperativeness, exigence *or* exigency; **momentousness, crucialness, cruciality;** consequentiality, consequentialness; **press,** pressure, high pressure, **stress,** tension, **pinch;** clutch *and* crunch <nf>; **crisis, emergency;** moment of truth, turning point, climax, defining moment; crunch

5 **matter of importance** *or* **consequence,** thing of interest, point of interest, matter of concern, object of note, one for the book *and* something to write home about <nf>, something special, no tea party, no picnic; not chicken feed <nf>; vital concern *or* interest; notabilia, memorabilia, great doings

6 **salient point,** cardinal point, high point, great point, key point; important thing, chief thing, **the point, main point,** main thing, essential matter, **essence,** the name of the game *and* the bottom line *and* what it's all about *and* where it's at <nf>, substance, gravamen, *sine qua non* <L>, issue, real issue, front-burner issue <nf>, prime issue; **essential,** fundamental, substantive point, material point; **gist, nub** <nf>, **heart,** meat, pith, kernel, **core; crux,** crucial *or* pivotal *or* critical point, pivot; turning point, **climax, cusp, crisis;** keystone, cornerstone; landmark, milestone, bench mark; linchpin; secret weapon, trump card

7 **feature, highlight,** high spot, main attraction, centerpiece, pièce de résistance; outstanding feature; best part, cream

8 **personage, important person,** person of importance *or* consequence, **great man** *or* **woman,** man *or* woman of mark *or* note, **somebody, notable,** notability, figure; **celebrity,** famous person, person of renown, personality; name, big name, megastar, nabob, **mogul,** captain of industry, panjandrum, person to be reckoned with, very important person, heavyweight; sachem; mover and shaker, lord of creation; **worthy,** pillar of society, salt of the earth, elder, father; **dignitary,** dignity; **magnate;** tycoon <nf>, baron; power; power elite, Establishment; interests; brass, top brass; top people, the great; ruling circle, lords of creation, "the choice and master spirits of the age"—Shakespeare; the top, the summit

9 <nf terms> **big shot,** wheel, **big wheel,** big boy, big cat, big fish, biggie, big cheese, big noise, big-timer, big-time operator, **bigwig,** big man, big gun, **high-muck-a-muck** *or* high-muckety-muck, kingpin, lion, something, **VIP,** brass hat, high man on the totem pole, suit; sacred cow, little tin god, tin god; big man on campus *or* BMOC; 800-pound gorilla; queen bee, heavy momma; first fiddle; mega-

10 **chief, principal,** chief executive, chief executive officer *or* CEO, paramount, lord of the manor, overlord, **king,** queen, monarch, electronics king, etc; leading light, luminary, master spirit, **star,** superstar, superman, superwoman, prima donna, lead 707.6

11 <nf terms> **boss, honcho,** big enchilada, biggest frog in the pond, big man, top *or* high man on the totem pole, top dog, Mr Big, head cheese, his nibs, himself, man upstairs

VERBS 12 **matter,** import <old>, signify, **count, tell, weigh, carry weight,** cut ice *and* cut some ice <nf>, be prominent, stand out, mean much; be something, be somebody, amount to something; have a key to the executive washroom; be featured, star, get top billing, take the limelight

13 **value, esteem, treasure, prize,** appreciate, respect, **rate highly,** think highly of, think well of, **think much of,** set store by; give *or* attach *or* ascribe importance to; make much of, make a fuss *or* stir about, make an ado *or* much ado about; hold up as an example

14 **emphasize, stress,** lay emphasis *or* stress upon, feature, highlight, brightline, place emphasis on, give emphasis to, **accent, accentuate, punctuate,**

point up, bring to the fore, put in the foreground, put in bright lights; prioritize; **highlight,** spotlight; **star, underline, underscore,** italicize; overemphasize, overstress, overaccentuate, hammer home, rub in; harp on; dwell on, belabor; attach too much importance to, make a big deal *or* federal case of <nf>, make a mountain out of a molehill; pull no punches <nf>

15 **feature,** headline <nf>; **star,** give top billing to

16 **dramatize, play up** <nf>, splash, make a production of; put on the map

ADJS 17 **important, major, consequential, momentous, significant, considerable,** substantial, material, **great,** grand, big; superior, world-shaking, earthshaking; big-time *and* big-league *and* major-league *and* heavyweight <nf>; high-powered <nf>, double-barreled <nf>; bigwig *and* bigwigged <nf>; name *and* big-name <nf>, self-important 140.8; mega; A-1 <nf>

18 **of importance, of significance, of consequence,** of note, of moment, of weight; of concern, of concernment, of interest, not to be overlooked *or* despised, not hay *and* not chopped liver *and* not to be sneezed at <nf>; viable

19 **notable, noteworthy, celebrated, remarkable, marked, standout** <nf>, of mark, signal; **memorable,** rememberable, unforgettable, classic, historic, never to be forgotten; striking, telling, salient; **eminent, prominent,** conspicuous, noble, **outstanding, distinguished;** prestigious, esteemed, estimable, elevated, sublime, reputable 662.15; **extraordinary,** *extraordinaire* <Fr>, out of the ordinary, **exceptional, special,** rare; top-ten

20 **weighty,** heavy, **grave,** sober, sobering, **solemn, serious,** earnest; portentous, fateful, fatal; formidable, awe-inspiring, imposing, larger than life; world-shaking, earth-shattering

21 **emphatic, decided, positive, forceful,** forcible; **emphasized, stressed,** accented, accentuated, punctuated, pointed; underlined, underscored, starred, italicized, highlighted; red-letter, in red letters, in letters of fire

22 **urgent, imperative,** imperious, **compelling, pressing,** high-priority, high-pressure, crying, clamorous, insistent, instant, exigent; crucial, critical, pivotal, acute; fateful

23 **vital, all-important,** crucial, of vital importance, life-and-death *or* life-or-death; earth-shattering, epoch-making; **essential,** fundamental, indispensable, basic, substantive, bedrock, material; **central,** focal; bottom-line *and* meat-and-potatoes *and* gut <nf>; grass-roots

24 **paramount, principal, leading, foremost, main, chief,** number one <nf>, premier, **prime, primary,** preeminent, **supreme,** capital <old>, cardinal; highest, uppermost, topmost, toprank, ranking, of the first rank, world-class, **dominant,** predominant, master, controlling, **overruling,** overriding, all-absorbing

ADVS 25 **importantly, significantly,** consequentially, materially, momentously, greatly, grandly; eminently, prominently, conspicuously, outstandingly, saliently, signally, notably, markedly, remarkably

26 **at the decisive moment,** in the clutch *and* when the chips are down *and* when push comes to shove <nf>

998 UNIMPORTANCE

NOUNS 1 **unimportance, insignificance,** inconsequence, inconsequentiality, indifference, **immateriality;** inessentiality; ineffectuality; unnoteworthiness, unimpressiveness; inferiority, secondariness, low order of importance, low priority, dispensability, expendability, marginality; lack of substance; **smallness,** littleness, slightness, inconsiderableness, negligibility; irrelevancy, meaninglessness; **pettiness,** puniness, pokiness, picayune, picayunishness; marginalization; irrelevance 776.1

2 **paltriness,** poorness, **meanness,** sorriness, sadness, pitifulness, contemptibleness, pitiableness, despicableness, miserableness, wretchedness, vileness, crumminess <nf>, shabbiness, shoddiness, cheapness, cheesiness, beggarliness, worthlessness, uselessness, unworthiness, meritlessness; tawdriness, meretriciousness, gaudiness 501.3

3 **triviality,** trivialness, triflingness, nugacity, nugaciousness; **superficiality,** shallowness; slightness, slenderness, slimness, flimsiness; **frivolity,** frivolousness, lightness, levity; **foolishness,** silliness; inanity, emptiness, vacuity; triteness, vapidity; vanity, idleness, futility; **much ado about nothing,** tempest *or* storm in a teacup *or* teapot, much cry and little wool, piss *and* wind *and* big deal <nf>; pettiness; snap of the fingers

4 **trivia, trifles; trumpery,** *nugae* <L>, gimcrackery, knickknackery, bric-a-brac; **rubbish,** trash, chaff; peanuts *and* chicken feed *and* chickenshit *and* Mickey Mouse <nf>, small change; small beer; froth, "trifles light as air"—Shakespeare; minutiae, details, minor details; inessential, nonessential

5 **trifle, triviality, oddment, bagatelle,** fribble, **gimcrack, gewgaw,** frippery, froth, **trinket,** bibelot, curio, **bauble,** gaud, toy, **knickknack,** knickknackery, kickshaw, minikin <old>, whim-wham, folderol; pin, button, hair, straw, rush, feather, fig, bean, hill of beans <nf>, molehill, row

of pins *or* buttons <nf>, sneeshing <Brit nf>, pinch of snuff; bit, snap; a curse, a continental, a hoot *and* a damn *and* a darn *and* a shit <nf>, a tinker's damn; picayune, rap, sou, halfpenny, farthing, brass farthing, cent, red cent, two cents, twopence *or* tuppence <Brit>, penny, dime, plugged nickel; peppercorn; drop in the ocean *or* the bucket; fleabite, pinprick; joke, jest, farce, mockery, child's play; small potatoes

6 **an insignificancy,** an inessential, a marginal matter *or* affair, a trivial *or* paltry affair, a small *or* trifling *or* minor matter, **no great matter;** a little thing, *peu de chose* <Fr>, hardly *or* scarcely anything, matter of no importance *or* consequence, matter of indifference; **a nothing, a big nothing, a naught,** a mere nothing, nothing in particular, nothing to signify, nothing to speak *or* worth speaking of, nothing to think twice about, nothing to boast of, nothing to write home about, thing of naught, *rien du tout* <Fr>, nullity, nihility; **technicality,** mere technicality; red herring

7 **a nobody, insignificancy,** hollow man, jackstraw <old>, **nonentity,** nonperson, empty suit *and* nebbish <nf>, an obscurity, a nothing, cipher, little man, nobody one knows; lightweight, mediocrity; whippersnapper *and* whiffet *and* pip-squeak *and* squirt *and* shrimp *and* scrub *and* runt <nf>; squit <Brit nf>, punk <nf>; small potato, small potatoes; **the little fellow,** the little guy <nf>, **the man in the street;** common man 864.3; man of straw, dummy, figurehead; **small fry,** Mr and Mrs Nobody, John Doe and Richard Roe *or* Mary Roe; Tom, Dick, and Harry; Brown, Jones, and Robinson

8 **trifling,** dallying, **dalliance,** flirtation, flirtiness, coquetry; toying, fiddling, playing, fooling, **puttering,** tinkering, pottering, piddling; dabbling, smattering; loitering, idling 331.4

9 <nf terms> **monkeying, monkeying around,** buggering around, diddling around, fiddling around, frigging around, horsing around, fooling around, kidding around, messing around, pissing around, playing around, screwing around, mucking around, farting around; jerking off

10 **trifler, dallier,** fribble; **putterer,** potterer, piddler, tinkerer, smatterer, dabbler; amateur, dilettante, Sunday painter; **flirt, coquet**

VERBS 11 **be unimportant,** be of no importance, not signify, **not matter,** not count, signify nothing, matter little, **not make any difference; cut no ice, not amount to anything,** make no never mind *and* not amount to a hill of beans *or* a damn <nf>; have no clout *or* pull

12 **attach little importance to,** give little weight to; make little of, underplay, de-emphasize, downplay, play down, **minimize,** marginalize, disregard, **make light of,** think little of, throw away, **make** *or* **think nothing of,** take no account of, set little by, set no store by, set at naught; snap one's fingers at; not care a straw about; not give a shit *or* a hoot *or* two hoots for <nf>, not give a damn about, not give a dime a dozen for; bad-mouth <nf>, deprecate, depreciate 512.8; **trivialize**

13 **make much ado about nothing,** make mountains out of molehills, have a storm *or* tempest in a teacup *or* teapot

14 **trifle, dally; flirt, coquet; toy,** fribble, **play, fool,** play at, **putter, potter,** tinker, **piddle; dabble,** smatter; toy with, fiddle with, fool with, play with; idle, loiter 331.12,13; nibble, niggle, nickel-and-dime <nf>

15 <nf terms> **monkey, monkey around,** fiddle, fiddle around, fiddle-faddle, frivol, horse around, fool around, play around, mess around, kid around, **screw around,** muck around, muck about <Brit>, fart around, piss around, bugger around, diddle around, frig around; jerk off

ADJS 16 **unimportant, of no importance,** of little *or* small importance, of no great importance, **of no account,** of no significance, of no concern, of no matter, of little *or* no consequence, no great shakes <nf>; no skin off one's nose *or* elbow *or* ass <nf>; inferior, secondary, of a low order of importance, low-priority, expendable; marginal; one-dimensional, two-dimensional; not apropos, not related, irrelevant

17 **insignificant** 248.6, **inconsequential, immaterial,** of no consequence, insubstantial; nonessential, unessential, inessential, **not vital,** back-burner <nf>, dispensable; unnoteworthy, unimpressive; **inconsiderable,** inappreciable, negligible; **small, little,** minute, footling, petit <old>, minor, inferior; technical

18 <nf terms> **measly, small-time, two-bit,** Mickey Mouse, chickenshit, nickel-and-dime, low-rent, piddly, pissy-ass, dinky, poky <Brit>, tinhorn, punk; not worth a dime *or* a red cent *or* beans *or* a hill of beans *or* bubkes *or* shit, not worth a second thought; **one-horse, two-by-four,** jerkwater

19 **trivial, trifling;** fribble, fribbling, nugacious, nugatory; catchpenny; **slight,** slender, flimsy; **superficial, shallow; frivolous, light,** windy, airy, frothy; idle, futile, vain, otiose; **foolish,** fatuous, asinine, **silly; inane,** empty, vacuous; trite, vapid; unworthy of serious consideration

20 **petty, puny, piddling,** piffling, niggling, pettifogging, technical, picayune, picayunish; small-beer

21 **paltry, poor,** common, **mean, sorry, sad,** pitiful, pitiable, pathetic, **despicable, contemptible,**

beneath contempt, **miserable, wretched,** beggarly, vile, **shabby,** scrubby, scruffy, shoddy, scurvy, scuzzy <nf>, scummy, **crummy** *and* cheesy <nf>, **trashy,** rubbishy, garbagey <nf>, trumpery, gimcracky <nf>; tinpot <nf>; **cheap,** worthless, valueless, twopenny *or* twopenny-halfpenny <Brit>, two-for-a-cent *or* -penny, dime-a-dozen; tawdry, meretricious, gaudy 501.20; mickey mouse *or* rinky-dink <nf>

22 **unworthy, worthless,** meritless, unworthy of regard *or* consideration, beneath notice; no great shakes <nf>

ADVS 23 **unimportantly, insignificantly, inconsequentially,** immaterially, unessentially; **pettily,** paltrily; **trivially,** triflingly; superficially, shallowly; frivolously, lightly, idly

PHRS 24 **it does not matter,** it matters not, it does not signify, mox nix <nf>, **it is of no consequence** *or* **importance,** it makes no difference, it makes no never mind <nf>, it cannot be helped, it is all the same; *n'importe* and *de rien* and *ça ne fait rien* <Fr>; it will all come out in the wash <nf>, it will be all the same a hundred years from now

25 **no matter, never mind,** think no more of it, do not give it another *or* a second thought, don't lose any sleep over it, let it pass, let it go <nf>, ignore it, forget it <nf>, skip it *and* drop it <nf>; fiddle-dee-dee

26 **what does it matter?, what matter?, what's the difference?,** what's the diff? <nf>, what do I care?, what of it?, what boots it?, what's the odds?, so what?, what else is new?; for aught one cares, big deal <nf>

999 GOODNESS

<good quality or effect>

NOUNS 1 **goodness, excellence, quality,** class <nf>; **virtue,** grace; **merit,** desert; **value, worth; fineness,** goodliness, fairness, niceness; **superiority,** first-rateness, **skillfulness** 413.1, proficiency; wholeness, **soundness,** healthiness 81.1; **virtuousness** 653.1; **kindness, benevolence,** benignity 143.1; beneficialness, helpfulness 449.10; favorableness, auspiciousness 133.9; expedience, advantageousness 995.1; **usefulness** 387.3; pleasantness, agreeableness 97.1; cogency, validity; profitableness, rewardingness 472.4

2 **superexcellence,** supereminence, preeminence, supremacy, primacy, paramountcy, peerlessness, unsurpassedness, matchlessness, superfineness; **superbness,** exquisiteness, **magnificence,** splendidness, splendiferousness, marvelousness, distinction

3 **tolerableness,** tolerability, goodishness, passableness, fairishness, **adequateness, satisfactoriness,** acceptability, admissibility; sufficiency 991

4 **good, welfare,** well-being, **benefit;** public weal, common good; **interest, advantage; behalf,** behoof, edification; blessing, benison, boon; **profit,** avail <old>, gain, betterment; world of good; favor, advantage; use, usefulness

5 **good thing,** a thing to be desired, "a consummation devoutly to be wish'd"—Shakespeare; **treasure,** gem, jewel, diamond, pearl; boast, pride, **pride and joy;** prize, trophy, plum; winner *and* no slouch *and* nothing to sneeze at <nf>; catch, find <nf>, *trouvaille* <Fr>; godsend, windfall; tour de force, chef-d'oeuvre, masterpiece; bestseller; collector's item; hit

6 **first-rater, topnotcher, world-beater; wonder, prodigy,** genius, virtuoso, **star, superstar;** luminary, leading light, one in a thousand *or* a million; hard *or* tough act to follow <nf>

7 <nf terms> **dandy, jim dandy, dilly, humdinger, pip,** pippin, **peach,** ace, beaut, **lulu, daisy,** darb, doozy, honey, sweetheart, dream, lollapalooza, bitch, hot shit *or* poo, pisser, pistol, corker, whiz, blinger, **crackerjack,** knockout, something else, something else again, barn-burner, killer, killer-diller, smash, smash hit, the nuts, the cat's pajamas *or* balls *or* meow, bitch-kitty, whiz, whizbang, wow, wowser

8 **the best,** the very best, the best ever, the top of the heap *or* the line <nf>, head of the class, tops; **quintessence,** essence, prime, optimum, superlative; **choice, pick, select, elect, elite,** *corps d'élite* <Fr>, chosen; **cream, flower,** fat; cream *or* pick of the crop, *crème de la crème* <Fr>, grade A, salt of the earth; *pièce de résistance* <Fr>; prize, champion, queen; nonesuch, paragon, nonpareil; gem of the first water

9 **harmlessness,** hurtlessness, uninjuriousness, **innocuousness,** benignity, benignancy; unobnoxiousness, inoffensiveness; innocence; heart of gold, kindness of heart, milk of human kindness

VERBS 10 **do good, profit,** avail; do a world of good; **benefit, help, serve,** be of service, advance, advantage, favor 449.11,14,17,19; be the making of, make a man *or* woman of; do no harm, break no bones

11 **excel, surpass,** outdo, pass, do *or* go one better, transcend; do up brown *or* in spades <nf>, do with a vengeance; be as good as, equal, emulate, rival, vie, vie with, challenge comparison, go one-on-one with <nf>; **make the most of, optimize,** exploit; cream off <Brit>, skim off the cream

ADJS 12 **good, excellent,** *bueno* <Sp>, *bon* <Fr>, bonny <Brit>, **fine, nice,** goodly, fair; **splendid, capital, grand,** elegant <nf>, braw <Scot>, famous <nf>, noble; royal, regal, fit for a king; very good, *très bon* <Fr>; commendable, laudable, **estimable** 509.20; skillful 413.22; **sound,** healthy 81.5; virtuous; kind, benevolent 143.15; beneficial, helpful 449.21; profitable; favorable, auspicious 133.18; expedient, advantageous 995.5; useful 387.18; pleasant 97.6; cogent, valid 973.13

13 <nf terms> **great,** swell, dandy, bitchin', jim dandy, neat, neato, cool, super, super-duper, bully <old>, tough, mean, gnarly, heavy, bad, groovy, out of sight, fab, fantabulous, marvy, gear, something else, ducky, dynamite, keen, killer, hot, nifty, sexy, spiffy, spiffing, ripping, nobby, peachy, peachy-keen, delicious, scrumptious, not too shabby, tits, out of this world, hunky-dory, crackerjack, boss, stunning, corking, smashing, solid, all wool and a yard wide; rum *or* wizard <Brit>, bonzer <Austral>; bang-up, jam-up, slap-up, ace-high, fine and dandy, just dandy, but good, OK, okay, A-OK; copacetic; phat

14 **superior,** above par, head and shoulders above, **crack** <nf>; **high-grade, high-class,** high-quality, high-caliber, high-test, **world-class,** grade A; impressive

15 **superb,** super <nf>, **superexcellent, supereminent,** superfine, **exquisite; magnificent,** splendid, splendiferous, tremendous, immense, **marvelous, wonderful,** glorious, divine, heavenly, terrific, sensational; sterling, golden; gilt-edged *and* gilt-edge, blue-chip; of the highest type, of the best sort, of the first water, as good as good can be, as good as they come, as good as they make 'em *and* out of this world <nf>

16 **best,** very best, greatest *and* top-of-the-line <nf>, **prime,** optimum, optimal; **choice, select, elect,** elite, **picked,** handpicked; **prize, champion; supreme,** paramount, **unsurpassed,** surpassing, unparalleled, unmatched, unmatchable, matchless, makeless <old>, **peerless;** quintessential; for the best, all for the best

17 **first-rate, first-class,** in a class by itself; of the first *or* highest degree; unmatched, matchless; champion, record-breaking

18 <nf terms> **A-1, A number one,** primo, first-chop, tip-top, top-notch, topflight, top-drawer, tops; topping *or* top-hole <Brit>

19 **up to par,** up to standard, **up to snuff** <nf>; **up to the mark,** up to the notch *and* **up to scratch** <nf>

20 **tolerable, goodish, fair, fairish,** moderate, tidy <nf>, **decent,** respectable, presentable, good enough, **pretty good, not bad,** not amiss, not half bad, not so bad, **adequate, satisfactory, all right,** OK *or* okay <nf>; better than nothing; **acceptable,** admissible, **passable,** unobjectionable, unexceptionable; workmanlike; sufficient 991.6

21 **harmless,** hurtless, unhurtful; well-meaning, well-meant; **uninjurious,** undamaging, **innocuous,** innoxious, innocent; unobnoxious, inoffensive; nonmalignant, **benign;** nonpoisonous, nontoxic, nonvirulent, nonvenomous

ADVS 22 **excellently, nicely,** finely, **capitally, splendidly, famously,** royally; **well,** very well, **fine** <nf>, right, aright; one's best, at one's best, at the top of one's bent

23 **superbly,** exquisitely, **magnificently,** tremendously, immensely, terrifically, **marvelously, wonderfully,** gloriously, divinely

24 **tolerably, fairly,** fairishly, moderately, respectably, **adequately, satisfactorily,** passably, **acceptably,** unexceptionably, presentably, decently; fairly well, well enough, pretty well; **rather, pretty**

1000 BADNESS

<bad quality or effect>

NOUNS 1 **badness, evil,** evilness, viciousness, damnability, reprehensibility; moral badness, dereliction, peccancy, iniquity, sinfulness, wickedness 654.4; unwholesomeness, unhealthiness 82.1; inferiority 1005.3; unskillfulness 414.1; unkindness, malevolence 144; inauspiciousness, unfavorableness 133.8; inexpedience 996; unpleasantness 98; invalidity 19.3; inaccuracy 975.2; improperness 638.1; deviltry

2 **terribleness, dreadfulness,** direness, **awfulness** <nf>, horribleness; **atrociousness, outrageousness,** heinousness, nefariousness; **notoriousness, egregiousness,** scandalousness, shamefulness, **infamousness; abominableness,** odiousness, **loathsomeness, detestableness,** despicableness, contemptibleness, hatefulness; **offensiveness,** grossness, obnoxiousness; squalor, squalidness, sordidness, **wretchedness,** filth, **vileness,** fulsomeness, **nastiness,** rankness, **foulness,** noisomeness; disgustingness, repulsiveness; uncleanness 80; beastliness, bestiality, brutality; **rottenness** *and* lousiness <nf>; the pits <nf>; shoddiness, shabbiness; scurviness, **baseness** 661.3; **worthlessness** 998.2

3 **evil, bad, wrong, ill; harm, hurt, injury, damage, detriment; destruction** 395; despoliation; mischief, havoc; outrage, atrocity; crime, foul play; abomination, grievance, vexation, woe, crying evil; poison 1001.3; blight, venom, toxin, **bane** 1001; **corruption,** pollution, infection, befoulment, defilement; environmental pollution, fly in the ointment, worm in the apple *or* rose; skeleton in

the closet; snake in the grass, Pandora's Box; "something rotten in the state of Denmark"—Shakespeare; ills the flesh is heir to, "all ills that men endure"—Abraham Cowley; the worst

4 **bad influence,** malevolent influence, evil star, **ill wind;** evil genius, **hoodoo** *and* **jinx** <nf>, **Jonah; curse,** enchantment, whammy *and* double *or* triple whammy <nf>, spell, hex, voodoo; **evil eye,** *malocchio* <Ital>; malediction

5 **harmfulness, hurtfulness,** injuriousness, banefulness, balefulness, detrimentalness, deleteriousness, perniciousness, mischievousness, noxiousness, venomousness, poisonousness, toxicity, virulence, noisomeness, **malignance** *or* **malignancy, malignity, viciousness;** unhealthiness 82.1; disease 85; deadliness, lethality 308.9; ominousness 133.7

VERBS 6 work evil, do ill; **harm, hurt; injure,** scathe, wound, **damage; destroy** 395.10; despoil, prejudice, disadvantage, impair, disserve, distress; **wrong,** do wrong, do wrong by, aggrieve, do evil, do a mischief, do an ill office to; **molest,** afflict; lay a hand on; get into trouble; **abuse,** bash <nf>, batter, outrage, violate, maltreat, mistreat 389.5; torment, **harass,** hassle <nf>, persecute, savage, crucify, torture 96.18; play mischief *or* havoc with, wreak havoc on, play hob with <nf>; **corrupt,** deprave, taint, pollute, infect, befoul, defile; poison, envenom, blight; **curse,** put a whammy on <nf>, give the evil eye, hex, jinx, bewitch; spell *or* mean trouble, threaten, menace 514.2; doom; condemn 602.3

ADJS 7 **bad, evil, ill,** untoward, black, sinister; **wicked, wrong,** peccant, iniquitous, **vicious;** sinful 654.16; criminal; unhealthy 82.5; **inferior** 1005.9; unskillful 414.15; unkind, malevolent 144.19; inauspicious, unfavorable 133.17; inexpedient 996.5; unpleasant 98.17; invalid 19.15; inaccurate 975.17; improper 638.3

8 <nf terms> **lousy,** punk, bum, badass, shitty, crappy, cruddy, cheesy, dog-ass, gnarly, gross, raunchy, piss-poor, rat-ass, **crummy,** grim, low-rent, low-ride, putrid, icky, skanky, yecchy, vomity, barfy, stinking, stinky, creepy, hairy, god-awful, gosh-awful

9 **terrible, dreadful,** awful <nf>, dire, horrible, horrid; atrocious, outrageous, heinous, villainous, nefarious; enormous, monstrous; **deplorable,** lamentable, regrettable, pitiful, pitiable, woeful, woesome <old>, grievous, sad 98.20; flagrant, **scandalous,** shameful, **shocking,** infamous, **notorious,** arrant, **egregious;** unclean 80.20; shoddy, schlocky <nf>, shabby, scurvy, **base** 661.12; **odious, obnoxious,** offensive, gross, **disgusting,** repulsive, loathsome, **abominable, detestable, despicable, contemptible,** beneath contempt, hateful; blameworthy, **reprehensible;** rank, fetid, foul, filthy, vile, fulsome, noisome, **nasty,** squalid, sordid, **wretched;** beastly, brutal; as bad as they come, as bad as they make 'em <nf>, as bad as bad can be; worst; too bad; below par, subpar, not up to scratch *or* snuff *or* the mark, poor-quality, **worthless**

10 **execrable, damnable;** damned, accursed, cursed 513.9; infernal, hellish, devilish, fiendish, satanic, ghoulish, demoniac, demonic, demonical, diabolic, diabolical, unholy, ungodly

11 evil-fashioned, ill-fashioned, evil-shaped, ill-shaped, evil-qualitied, evil-looking, ill-looking, evil-favored, ill-favored, evil-hued, evil-faced, evil-minded, evil-eyed, ill-affected <old>, evil-gotten, ill-gotten, ill-conceived

12 **harmful, hurtful,** scatheful, **baneful,** baleful, distressing, **injurious, damaging, detrimental,** deleterious, counterproductive, **pernicious,** mischievous; noxious, mephitic, venomous, venenate, poisonous, venenous, veneniferous, toxic, virulent, noisome; malignant, malign, malevolent, malefic, vicious; prejudicial, disadvantageous, disserviceable; corruptive, corrupting, corrosive, corroding; deadly, lethal; ominous 133.17

ADVS 13 **badly,** bad <nf>, **ill,** evil, evilly, wrong, wrongly, amiss; to one's cost

14 **terribly, dreadfully,** dreadful <nf>, **horribly,** horridly, **awfully** <nf>, **atrociously, outrageously;** flagrantly, scandalously, shamefully, shockingly, infamously, notoriously, egregiously, grossly, offensively, nauseatingly, fulsomely, odiously, **vilely,** obnoxiously, **disgustingly,** loathsomely; wretchedly, sordidly, shabbily, basely, abominably, detestably, despicably, contemptibly, foully, nastily; brutally, bestially, savagely, viciously; something fierce *or* terrible <nf>

15 **harmfully, hurtfully, banefully,** balefully, **injuriously, damagingly, detrimentally,** deleteriously, counterproductively, **perniciously,** mischievously; noxiously, venomously, poisonously, toxically, virulently, noisomely; **malignantly,** malignly, malevolently, malefically, **viciously;** prejudicially, disadvantageously, disserviceably; corrosively, corrodingly

1001 BANE

NOUNS 1 **bane, curse, affliction,** infliction, visitation, **plague, pestilence,** pest, calamity, scourge, **torment,** open wound, running sore, grievance, woe, burden, crushing burden; disease 85; death 307; evil, harm 1000.3; destruction 395; vexation 96.2; thorn, thorn in the flesh *or* side, pea in the shoe; bugbear, **bête noire,** bogy, bogeymen, nemesis, arch-nemesis

2 **blight,** blast; canker, cancer; mold, fungus, mildew, smut, must, rust; rot, dry rot; **pest;** worm, worm in the apple *or* rose; moth <old>

3 **poison, venom,** venin, virus <old>, toxic, toxin, toxicant; eradicant, **pesticide; insecticide,** insect powder, bug bomb <nf>; roach powder, roach paste; stomach poison, contact poison, systemic insecticide *or* systemic, fumigant, chemosterilant; chlorinated hydrocarbon insecticide, organic chlorine; organic phosphate insecticide; carbamate insecticide, sheepdip; termiticide, miticide, acaricide, vermicide, anthelminthic; rodenticide, ratsbane, rat poison; **herbicide,** defoliant, Agent Orange, paraquat, **weed killer;** fungicide; microbicide, germicide, antiseptic, disinfectant, antibiotic; **toxicology;** toxic waste, **environmental pollutant;** hemlock, arsenic, cyanide; carcinogen

4 **miasma, mephitis,** malaria <old>; effluvium, exhaust, exhaust gas; coal gas, chokedamp, blackdamp, firedamp; air *or* atmospheric pollution, smoke, smog, exhaust fumes, carbon monoxide; secondhand smoke; acid rain

5 sting, stinger, dart; **fang,** tang <nf>; beesting, snakebite

6 **poisonous plants**

aconite
amanita
angel's trumpet
banewort
bearded darnel
belladonna
black henbane
black nightshade
bleeding heart
castor-oil plant
chinaberry
corn cackle
cowbane
datura
deadly nightshade
death camas
death cup *or* angel
devil's trumpet
elderberry
ergot
fiddleneck
foxglove
gastrolobium
hairy vetch
hellebore
hemlock
henbane
horsetail
jack-in-the-pulpit
jimsonweed
laburnum
larkspur
locoweed
marijuana
mayapple
mescal bean
monkshood
nightshade
nux vomica
opium poppy
poinsettia
poison bean
poisonberry
poison bush
poison hemlock *or* parsley
poison ivy
poison oak
poison rye grass
poison sumac
poison tobacco
poisonweed
pokeweed
sheep laurel
thornapple
tobacco
upas
water hemlock
white snakeroot
wisteria
wolfsbane

1002 PERFECTION

NOUNS **1** **perfection, faultlessness, flawlessness,** defectlessness, indefectibility, impeccability, absoluteness; infallibility; spotlessness, stainlessness, taintlessness, purity, immaculateness; sinlessness; chastity 664

2 **soundness, integrity,** intactness, wholeness, entireness, completeness; **fullness,** plenitude; finish; mint condition

3 **acme of perfection, pink, pink of perfection, culmination,** perfection, height, top, acme, ultimate, summit, pinnacle, peak, highest pitch, climax, consummation, *ne plus ultra* <L>, **the last word,** a dream come true

4 pattern *or* standard *or* mold *or* norm of perfection, very model, quintessence; archetype, prototype, exemplar, mirror, **epitome;** *ne plus ultra* <L>, perfect specimen, highest type; **classic,** masterwork, masterpiece, *chef d'œuvre* <Fr>, crowning achievement, showpiece; **ideal** 786.4; role model; **paragon** 659.4; a 10 <nf>

VERBS **5** **perfect,** develop, flesh out, ripen, mature; improve 392.7; crown, culminate, put on the finishing touch; lick *or* whip into shape, fine-tune; complete 407.6; do to perfection 407.7

ADJS **6** **perfect, ideal, faultless, flawless,** unflawed, defectless, not to be improved, **impeccable,** absolute; **just right,** just so; spotless, stainless, taintless, unblemished, untainted, unspotted, immaculate, **pure,** uncontaminated, unadulterated, unmixed; sinless; chaste 664.4; indefective <old>, indefectible, trouble-free; infallible; beyond all praise, irreproachable, unfaultable, *sans peur et sans reproche* <Fr>, **matchless,** peerless 249.15; A-1, world-class, number-one

7 **sound, intact, whole, entire, complete,** integral; **full;** total, utter, unqualified 960.2

8 **undamaged, unharmed, unhurt, uninjured,** unscathed, **unspoiled,** virgin, inviolate, **unimpaired;** harmless, scatheless; **unmarred,** unmarked, unscarred, unscratched, undefaced, unbruised; **unbroken,** unshattered, untorn; undemolished, undestroyed; undeformed, unmutilated, unmangled, unmaimed; unfaded, unworn, unwithered, bright, fresh, untouched, pristine, mint; none the worse for wear, right as rain

9 **perfected, finished,** polished, refined; done to a T *or* to a turn; **classic, classical,** masterly, masterful, expert, proficient; ripened, ripe, matured, mature, developed, fully developed; thorough-going, thorough-paced; **consummate,** quintessential, archetypical, exemplary, model

ADVS **10** **perfectly,** ideally; **faultlessly, flawlessly,**

impeccably; just right; spotlessly; immaculately, purely; infallibly; **wholly, entirely, completely, fully,** thoroughly, totally, absolutely 794.15

11 **to perfection, to a turn, to a T,** to a finish, to a nicety; to a fare-thee-well *or* fare-you-well *or* fare-ye-well <nf>; to beat the band <nf>

1003 IMPERFECTION

NOUNS 1 **imperfection,** imperfectness, room for improvement; **unperfectedness; faultiness, defectiveness,** defectibility; **shortcoming, deficiency,** lack, want, shortage, **inadequacy,** inadequateness; erroneousness, **fallibility;** inaccuracy, inexactness, inexactitude 975.2; **unsoundness,** incompleteness, patchiness, sketchiness, unevenness; **impairment** 393; **mediocrity** 1005; immaturity, undevelopment 406.4; impurity, adulteration 797.3

2 **fault,** *faute* <Fr>, **defect, deficiency, inadequacy,** imperfection, kink, defection <old>, hangup; **flaw,** hole, bug <nf>; something missing; catch <nf>, fly in the ointment, problem, little problem, curate's egg <Brit>, snag, drawback; **crack,** rift; **weakness,** frailty, infirmity, failure, **failing, foible, shortcoming;** weak point, Achilles' heel, vulnerable place, chink in one's armor, weak link, soft spot, underbelly; **blemish,** taint 1004; **malfunction,** glitch <nf>

VERBS 3 **fall short,** come short, miss, miss out, miss the mark, miss by a mile <nf>, not qualify, fall down <nf>, **not measure up,** not come up to par, not come up to the mark, not come up to scratch *or* to snuff <nf>, not pass muster, not bear inspection, not hack it *and* not make it *and* not cut it *and* not make the cut <nf>; not make the grade; fail

ADJS 4 **imperfect,** not perfect, less than perfect; good in parts; unperfected; **defective, faulty, inadequate, deficient,** short, not all it's cracked up to be <nf>, lacking, wanting, found wanting, "weighed in the balance and found wanting"—Bible; off; erroneous, **fallible;** inaccurate, inexact, imprecise 974.17; **unsound, incomplete,** unfinished, partial, patchy, sketchy, uneven, unthorough; makeshift 995.7; **damaged,** impaired 393.27; mediocre 1005.7; **blemished** 1004.8; half-baked <nf>, immature, undeveloped 406.12; impure, adulterated, mixed

ADVS 5 **imperfectly, inadequately,** deficiently; **incompletely,** partially; **faultily, defectively**

1004 BLEMISH

NOUNS 1 **blemish, disfigurement,** disfiguration, **defacement;** scar, keloid, cicatrix; needle scar, track *or* crater <nf>; scratch; scab; blister, vesicle, bulla, bleb; weal, wale, welt, wen, sebaceous cyst; port-wine stain *or* mark, hemangioma, strawberry mark, macula; pock, pustule; pockmark, pit; nevus, birthmark, mole; freckle, lentigo; milium, whitehead, blackhead, comedo, pimple, zit <nf>, hickey <nf>, sty; crud; wart, verruca; **crack,** craze, check, rift, split; **deformity,** deformation, warp, twist, kink, **distortion; flaw, defect,** fault 1003.2

2 **discoloration,** discolorment, discolor <old>; bruise; foxing

3 **stain, taint, tarnish;** mark, brand, **stigma;** maculation, macule, macula; **spot, blot,** blur, **blotch,** patch, speck, speckle, fleck, flick, flyspeck; daub, dab; **smirch, smudge,** smutch *or* smouch, smut, **smear;** splotch, splash, splatter, spatter; bloodstain; eyesore; caste mark, tattoo, brand

VERBS 4 **blemish, disfigure,** deface, **flaw, mar;** scab; scar, cicatrize, scarify; **crack,** craze, check, split; **deform,** warp, twist, kink, **distort**

5 **spot,** bespot, **blot, blotch, speck, speckle,** bespeckle, maculate <old>; freckle; flyspeck; **spatter, splatter,** splash, splotch

6 **stain,** bestain, **discolor,** smirch, besmirch, **taint,** attaint, **tarnish; mark, stigmatize,** brand; smear, besmear, daub, bedaub, slubber <Brit nf>; blur, slur <nf>; **darken, blacken;** smoke, besmoke; scorch, singe, sear; dirty, **soil** 80.16

7 **bloodstain, bloody,** ensanguine

ADJS 8 **blemished, disfigured,** defaced, **marred,** scarred, keloidal, cicatrized, scarified, stigmatized, scabbed, scabby; pimpled, pimply; cracked, crazed, checked, split; deformed, warped, twisted, kinked, distorted; **faulty, flawed, defective** 1003.4

9 **spotted, spotty,** maculate, maculated, macular, blotched, **blotchy,** splotched, splotchy; **speckled,** speckly, bespeckled; freckled, freckly, freckle-faced; spattered, splattered, splashed

10 **stained, discolored,** foxed, foxy, **tainted, tarnished,** smirched, besmirched; stigmatized, stigmatic, stigmatiferous; darkened, blackened, murky, smoky, inky; polluted, **soiled** 80.21

11 **bloodstained,** blood-spattered, **bloody,** sanguinary, **gory,** ensanguined

1005 MEDIOCRITY

NOUNS 1 **mediocrity,** mediocreness, fairishness, modestness, modesty, moderateness, middlingness, **indifference;** respectability, passableness, **tolerableness** 999.3; **dullness,** lackluster, tediousness 117.1

2 **ordinariness,** averageness, normalness, normality, **commonness, commonplaceness;** unexceptionality, unremarkableness, unnoteworthiness; conventionality

3 **inferiority,** inferiorness, **poorness,** lowliness, humbleness, **baseness, meanness, commonness,** coarseness, tackiness, tack; **second-rateness,** third-rateness, fourth-rateness

4 **low grade,** low class, low quality, poor quality; second best, next best

5 **mediocrity, second-rater,** third-rater, fourth-rater, nothing *or* nobody special, no great shakes <nf>, no prize, no prize package, no brain surgeon, no rocket scientist, not much of a bargain, small potatoes *and* small beer <nf>; tinhorn <nf>; **nobody, nonentity** 998.7; middle class, bourgeoisie, burgherdom; suburbia, the burbs <nf>; Middle America, silent majority

6 **irregular,** second, third; schlock <nf>

ADJS 7 **mediocre, middling, indifferent, fair, fairish, fair to middling** <nf>, moderate, modest, medium, betwixt and between; respectable, passable, tolerable; so-so, *comme ci comme ça* <Fr>; of a kind, of a sort, of sorts <nf>; nothing to brag about, not much to boast of, nothing to write home about; bush-league; dull, lackluster, tedious 117.6; insipid, vapid, wishy-washy, namby-pamby

8 **ordinary, average,** normal, **common, commonplace,** garden *and* garden-variety <nf>, run-of-mine *or* -mill, run-of-the-mine *or* -mill, vanilla <nf>; **unexceptional, unremarkable, unnoteworthy,** unspectacular, nothing *or* nobody special *and* no great shakes <nf>, no prize, no prize package, no brain surgeon, no rocket scientist; conventional; middle-class, bourgeois, plastic <nf>; suburban; usual, regular

9 **inferior, poor,** punk <nf>, **base, mean, common,** coarse, cheesy *and* tacky <nf>, tinny; shabby, seedy; cheap, Mickey Mouse <nf>, paltry; irregular; second-best; **second-rate,** third-rate, fourth-rate; **second-class,** third-class, fourth-class, etc; **low-grade, low-class,** low-quality, low-test, low-rent *and* low-ride <nf>

10 **below par,** below standard, **below the mark** <nf>, substandard, **not up to scratch** *or* snuff *or* the mark <nf>, not up to sample *or* standard *or* specification, off

ADVS 11 **mediocrely, middlingly,** fairly, fairishly, middling well, fair to middling <nf>, moderately, modestly, **indifferently, so-so;** passably, **tolerably**

12 inferiorly, poorly, basely, meanly, commonly

1006 DANGER

NOUNS 1 **danger, peril, endangerment, imperilment, jeopardy, hazard, risk,** cause for alarm, **menace, threat** 514; **crisis, emergency,** hot spot, nasty *or* tricky spot, pass, pinch, strait, plight, predicament 1013.4; powder keg, time bomb; dangerous *or* unpredictable *or* uncontrollable person, loose cannon <nf>; rocks *or* breakers *or* white water ahead, gathering clouds, storm clouds; dangerous ground, yawning *or* gaping chasm, quicksand, thin ice; hornet's nest; house of cards, cardhouse; hardball <nf>, no tea party, no picnic; desperate situation

2 **dangerousness, hazardousness, riskiness, treachery, precariousness** 971.6, chanciness, dodginess <chiefly Brit nf>, diceyness <nf>, **perilousness; unsafeness,** unhealthiness <nf>; criticalness; **ticklishness,** slipperiness, touchiness, delicacy, ticklish business *and* shaky ground <nf>; **insecurity,** unsoundness, instability, unsteadiness, shakiness, totteriness, wonkiness <Brit nf>; sword of Damocles; **unreliability,** undependability, untrustworthiness 971.6; **unsureness,** unpredictability, **uncertainty,** doubtfulness, dubiousness 971.2

3 **exposure, openness,** liability, nonimmunity, susceptibility; **unprotectedness, defenselessness,** nakedness, helplessness; lamb, sitting duck; roadkill <nf>; naiveté

4 **vulnerability,** pregnability, penetrability, assailability, vincibility; weakness 16; vulnerable point, **weak link, weak point, soft spot,** heel of Achilles, chink, chink in one's armor, "the soft underbelly"—Sir Winston Churchill; tragic flaw, fatal flaw

5 <hidden danger> snags, rocks, reefs, ledges; coral heads; shallows, shoals; sandbank, sandbar, sands; quicksands; crevasses; rockbound *or* ironbound coast, lee shore; undertow, undercurrent; **pitfall;** snake in the grass; trap, booby trap, springe, snare, tripwire, pitfall; snarling dog, ticking package; cloud on the horizon

VERBS 6 **endanger, imperil,** peril; **risk, hazard, gamble, gamble with; jeopardize,** jeopard, jeopardy, compromise, put in danger, **put in jeopardy,** put on the spot *and* lay on the line <nf>; **expose,** lay open; incur danger, run into *or* encounter danger

7 **take chances, take a chance, chance, risk, stake, gamble,** hazard, press *or* push one's luck, **run the chance** *or* **risk** *or* **hazard;** risk one's neck, run a risk, go out on a limb, stick one's neck out<nf>, **expose oneself,** bare one's breast, lower one's guard, **lay oneself open to,** leave oneself wide open, open the door to, let oneself in for; drive recklessly; **tempt Providence** *or* **fate,** forget the odds, **defy danger,** skate on thin ice, court destruction, dance on the razor's edge, go in harm's way, hang by a hair *or* a thread, stand *or* sleep on a volcano, sit on a barrel of gunpowder,

build a house of cards, put one's head in the lion's mouth, "beard the lion in his den"—Sir Walter Scott, march up to the cannon's mouth, play with fire, go through fire and water, go out of one's depth, go to sea in a sieve, carry too much sail, sail too near the wind; risk one's life, throw caution to the wind, **take one's life in one's hand, dare, face up to,** brave 492.11

8 **be in danger,** be in peril, be *in extremis,* be in a desperate case, have one's name on the danger list, have the chances *or* odds against one, have one's back to the wall, have something hanging over one's head; be despaired of; hang by a thread; tremble on the verge, totter on the brink, teeter on the edge; feel the ground sliding from under one; have to run for it; race against time *or* the clock; be threatened, be on the spot *or* in a bind <nf>

ADJS 9 **dangerous,** dangersome <nf>, **perilous,** periculous, parlous, jeopardous, bad, ugly, serious, critical, explosive, attended *or* beset *or* fraught with danger; alarming, too close for comfort *or* words, **menacing,** threatening 514.3

10 **hazardous, risky, chancy,** dodgy <chiefly Brit nf>, dicey <nf>, hairy <nf>, aleatory, riskful, full of risk; **adventurous,** venturous, venturesome; **speculative,** wildcat

11 **unsafe,** unhealthy <nf>; **unreliable, undependable, untrustworthy,** treacherous, **insecure, unsound,** unstable, unsteady, shaky, tottery, wonky <Brit nf>, rocky; **unsure, uncertain,** unpredictable, doubtful, dubious; on the brink *or* verge

12 **precarious, ticklish, touchy,** touch-and-go, **critical, delicate;** slippery, slippy; on thin ice, on slippery ground; hanging by a thread, trembling in the balance; nerve-racking

13 **in danger, in jeopardy, in peril, at risk,** in a bad way; **endangered, imperiled, jeopardized,** *in periculo* <L>, at the last extremity, *in extremis* <L>, in deadly peril, *in periculo mortis* <L>, in desperate case; threatened, up against it, in a bad way, on the spot *and* on *or* in the hot seat <nf>; sitting on a powder keg; between the hammer and the anvil, between Scylla and Charybdis, between two fires, between the devil and the deep blue sea, between a rock and a hard place <nf>; in a predicament 1013.21; cornered

14 **unprotected, unshielded, unsheltered,** uncovered, unscreened, **unguarded, undefended,** unattended, unwatched, unfortified; armorless, unarmored, **unarmed,** bare-handed, weaponless; guardless, ungarrisoned, insecure, **defenseless, helpless;** unwarned, unsuspecting

15 **exposed, open,** out in the open, naked, bare; out on a limb <nf>; liable, susceptible, nonimmune

16 **vulnerable,** naïve, **pregnable,** penetrable, expugnable; assailable, attackable, surmountable; conquerable, beatable <nf>, vincible; weak 16.12–14

ADVS 17 **dangerously, perilously, hazardously, riskily,** critically, unsafely; **precariously,** ticklishly; at gun point

1007 SAFETY

NOUNS 1 **safety,** safeness, **security,** surety <old>, assurance; risklessness, immunity, clear sailing; **protection,** safeguard 1007.3; harmlessness 999.9; airworthiness, crashworthiness, roadworthiness, seaworthiness; invulnerability 15.4; safety in numbers; wide berth, safe distance; safekeeping

VERBS 2 **be safe, be on the safe side; keep safe, come through;** weather, ride out, weather the storm; keep one's head above water, tide over; keep a safe distance; land on one's feet; save one's bacon <nf>, save one's neck; lead a charmed life, have nine lives

3 **play safe** <nf>, **keep on the safe side,** give danger a wide berth, watch oneself, watch out, take precautions 494.6, demand assurances; assure oneself, make sure, keep an eye *or* a weather eye out, look before one leaps; **save, protect** 1008.18

ADJS 4 **safe, secure, safe and sound,** not at risk; immune, immunized; insured; **protected** 1008.21; on the safe side; unthreatened, unmolested; unhurt, unharmed, unscathed, intact, untouched, with a whole skin, undamaged, whole

5 **unhazardous, undangerous, unperilous, unrisky,** riskless, **unprecarious;** fail-safe, trouble-free; recession-proof; guaranteed, warranteed; dependable, reliable, trustworthy, sound, stable, steady, firm 970.17; "founded upon a rock"—Bible; as safe as houses; harmless; invulnerable; -proof

6 **in safety, out of danger,** past danger, out of the meshes *or* toils, in, home, out of the woods *and* over the hump *or* home free <nf>, free and dry <Brit nf>, **in the clear, out of harm's reach** *or* **way;** under cover, under lock and key; in shelter, in harbor *or* port, at anchor *or* haven, in the shadow of a rock; on sure *or* solid ground, on *terra firma,* high and dry, above water; in safe keeping

7 **snug, cozy,** home free; crashworthy, roadworthy, airworthy, seaworthy, seakindly

ADVS 8 **safely, securely,** reliably, dependably; with safety, **with impunity**

INTERJS 9 **all's well!,** all clear!, all serene!, A-OK!; ally-ally out'n free!

PHRS 10 the danger is past, the storm has blown over, the coast is clear

1008 PROTECTION

NOUNS 1 **protection, guard, shielding, safekeeping; policing, law enforcement; patrol, patroling,** community policing, professional *or* bureaucratic policing; eye, protectiveness, watchfulness, vigilance, watchful eye, shepherding; house-sitting <nf>; protective custody; **safeguarding, security,** security industry, public safety, safety 1007; **shelter, cover,** shade, shadow <old>, windbreak, lee; **refuge** 1009; preservation 397; **defense** 460; protective coating, Teflon coating <trademark>

2 **protectorship, guardianship,** stewardship, custodianship; **care, charge, keeping, nurture, nurturing, nurturance, custody, fostering, fosterage,** cocooning, fatherly *or* motherly eye; **hands,** safe hands, wing; **auspices, patronage, tutelage, guidance; ward,** wardship, wardenship, watch and ward; cure, pastorship, pastorage, pastorate; **oversight,** jurisdiction, management, ministry, administration, government, governance; **child care,** infant care, day-care, family service; baby-sitting, baby-minding <Brit>

3 **safeguard,** palladium, **guard,** preventive measure, precautionary steps; **shield, screen,** aegis; umbrella, protective umbrella; patent, copyright; **bulwark** 460.4; backstop; fender, mudguard, **bumper, buffer, cushion,** pad, padding; seat *or* safety belt; protective clothing; shin guard, knuckle guard, knee guard, nose guard, hand guard, arm guard, ear guard, finger guard, foot guard; goggles, mask, face mask, welder's mask, fencer's mask; safety shoes; helmet, hard hat <nf>, crash helmet, sun helmet; cowcatcher, pilot; dashboard; windshield, windscreen <Brit>; dodger *and* cockpit dodger <Brit>; life preserver 397.6; lifeline, safety rail, guardrail, handrail; governor; safety, safety switch, interlock; safety valve, safety plug; fuse, circuit breaker; insulation; safety glass, laminated glass; lightning rod, lightning conductor; **anchor,** bower, sea anchor, sheet anchor, drogue; **parachute; safety net;** prophylactic, preventive 86.20; contraceptive 86.23

4 **insurance,** assurance <Brit>; **annuity,** variable annuity; **social security** 611.7; nest egg, savings account, provision; **insurance company,** stock company, mutual company; **insurance policy,** policy, certificate of insurance; deductible; insurance man, underwriter, insurance broker, insurance agent, insurance adjuster, actuary; lemon law

5 **protector, keeper,** protectress, safekeeper, minder; patron, patroness; tower, pillar, strong arm, tower of strength, rock; champion, **defender** 460.7

6 **guardian, warden,** governor; **custodian,** steward, **keeper, caretaker,** warder <Brit>, attendant; caregiver; next friend, prochein ami, guardian *ad litem;* **curator,** conservator; janitor; castellan; **shepherd,** herd, cowherd; **game warden,** gamekeeper; **ranger,** forest ranger, forester; lifeguard, lifesaver <Brit>; air warden; guardian angel

7 **chaperon,** duenna; **governess;** escort

8 **nurse, nursemaid,** nurserymaid, nanny <chiefly Brit>, amah, ayah, mammy <nf>; dry nurse, wet nurse; **baby-sitter,** baby-minder <Brit>, sitter <nf>

9 **guard,** guarder, guardsman <old>, warder; **outguard, outpost; picket,** outlying picket, inlying picket, outrider; advance guard, **vanguard,** van; **rear guard;** coast guard; armed guard, security guard; jailer 429.10; bank guard; railway *or* train guard; goalkeeper, goaltender, goalie <nf>; garrison; cordon, *cordon sanitaire* <Fr>

10 **watchman, watch,** watcher; watchkeeper; **lookout,** lookout man; **sentinel,** picket, **sentry; scout,** vedette; **point,** forward observer, spotter; **patrol, patrolman,** patroller, roundsman; night watchman, Charley <nf>; fireguard, fire patrolman, fire warden; airplane spotter; Argus

11 **watchdog,** bandog, guard dog, attack dog; sheep dog; Cerberus

12 **doorkeeper, doorman, gatekeeper,** Cerberus, warden, **porter, janitor,** commissionaire <Brit>, *concierge* <Fr>, ostiary, usher; receptionist

13 **picket, picketer,** demonstrator, picket line; counterdemonstrator

14 **bodyguard,** safeguard; **convoy, escort;** guards, praetorian guard; guardsman; yeoman *or* yeoman of the guard *or* beefeater, gentleman-at-arms, Life Guardsman <all England>

15 **policeman, policewoman, constable, officer, police officer,** *flic* <Fr nf>, *gendarme* <Fr>, *carabiniere* <Ital>; peace officer, law enforcer, law enforcement agent, arm of the law; military policeman *or* MP; detective 576.10; police matron; patrolman, police constable <Brit>; trooper, mounted policeman, state police, state trooper; reeve, portreeve; **sheriff, marshal;** deputy sheriff, deputy, bound bailiff, catchpole, beagle <nf>, bombailiff <Brit nf>; sergeant, police sergeant; roundsman; lieutenant, police lieutenant; captain, police captain; inspector, police inspector; superintendent, chief of police; commissioner, police commissioner; government man, federal, fed *and* G-man <nf>; narc <nf>; **bailiff,** tipstaff, tipstaves <pl>; mace-bearer, lictor, sergeant at arms; beadle; traffic officer, meter maid; detective

16 <nf terms> cop, copper, John Law, bluecoat, bull, flatfoot, gumshoe, gendarme, shamus, dick, pig, flattie, bizzy *and* bobby *and* peeler <Brit>,

Dogberry; the cops, the law, the fuzz, feds, heat; New York's finest; tec, op

17 **police, police force,** law enforcement agency; the force, forces of law and order, long arm of the law; **constabulary;** state police, troopers *or* state troopers, highway patrol, county police, provincial police; security force; special police; tactical police, riot police; SWAT *or* special weapons and tactics, SWAT team, **posse,** *posse comitatus* <L>; **vigilantes,** vigilance committee; secret police, political police; Federal Bureau of Investigation *or* FBI; military police *or* MP; shore patrol *or* SP; Scotland Yard <Brit>; *Sûreté* <Fr>; Cheka, NKVD, MVD, OGPU <Russ>; Gestapo <Ger>; Royal Canadian Mounted Police *or* RCMP *and* Mounties <Can>; Interpol, International Criminal Police Commission; neighborhood watch

VERBS 18 **protect, guard, safeguard, secure, keep,** bless, make safe, **police, enforce the law;** keep from harm; **insure,** underwrite; ensure, guarantee 438.9; patent, copyright, register; **cushion;** champion, go to bat for <nf>; ride shotgun <nf>, fend, defend 460.8; **shelter, shield, screen, cover,** cloak, shroud <old>, temper the wind to the shorn lamb; **harbor, haven;** nestle; compass about, fence; arm, armor; put in a safe place, keep under cover

19 **care for, take care of;** preserve, conserve; provide for, support; take charge of, **take under one's wing,** make one a protégé; **look after,** see after, **attend to, minister to,** look *or* see to, look *or* watch out for <nf>, have *or* keep an eye on *or* upon, keep a sharp eye on *or* upon, **watch over,** keep watch over, **watch, mind, tend;** keep tab *or* tabs on <nf>; **shepherd,** ride herd on <nf>; **chaperon,** matronize; baby-sit <nf>; **foster, nurture, cherish, nurse; mother,** be a mother *or* father to

20 **watch, keep watch, keep guard,** keep watch over, keep vigil, keep watch and ward; stand guard, stand sentinel; be on the lookout 339.8; mount guard; **police,** patrol, pound a beat <nf>, go on one's beat

ADJS 21 **protected, guarded,** safeguarded, defended; safe 1006.4–6; patented, copyrighted; **sheltered, shielded,** screened, covered, cloaked; policed; armed 460.14; invulnerable

22 **under the protection of,** under the shield of, under the auspices of, under the aegis of, **under one's wing,** under the wing of, under the shadow of one's wing

23 **protective, custodial,** guardian, tutelary; curatorial; vigilant, watchful, on the watch, on top of; prophylactic, preventive; immunizing; protecting, guarding, safeguarding, sheltering, **shielding,** screening, covering; fostering, parental; defensive 460.11; Teflon-coated <trademark>

1009 REFUGE

NOUNS 1 **refuge, sanctuary,** safehold, **asylum, haven, port,** harborage, **harbor;** harbor of refuge, port in a storm, snug harbor, safe haven; game sanctuary, bird sanctuary, preserve, forest preserve, game preserve; stronghold 460.6; **political asylum;** Rock of Gibraltar

2 **recourse, resource, resort;** last resort *or* resource, *dernier ressort* and *pis aller* <Fr>; **hope; expedient** 995.2

3 **shelter, cover, covert,** coverture; concealment 346; *abri* <Fr>, dugout, cave, earth, funk hole <Brit nf>, foxhole; **bunker;** trench; storm cellar, storm cave, cyclone cellar; air-raid shelter, bomb shelter, bombproof, fallout shelter, safety zone *or* isle *or* island; stockade, fort

4 **asylum, home,** retreat; **poorhouse,** almshouse, workhouse <Brit>, poor farm; **orphanage; hospice,** hospitium; old folks' home, rest home, nursing home, old soldiers' home, sailors' snug harbor; foster home; safe house; halfway house; retirement home *or* village *or* community, life-care home, continuing-care retirement community *or* CCRC

5 **retreat,** recess, hiding place, **hideaway,** hideout, hidey-hole <nf>, priest hole; **sanctum, inner sanctum, sanctum sanctorum,** holy ground, holy of holies, adytum; private place, privacy <old>, secret place; **den,** lair, mew; safe house; **cloister,** hermitage, ashram, cell; **ivory tower;** study, library

6 **harbor, haven, port, seaport,** port of call, free port, treaty port, home port; hoverport; harborage, **anchorage,** anchorage ground, protected anchorage, moorage, moorings; **roadstead,** road, roads; berth, slip; **dock,** dockage, marina, basin; dry dock; shipyard, dockyard; **wharf, pier,** quay; harborside, dockside, pierside, quayside, landing, landing place *or* stage, jetty, jutty <old>; breakwater, mole, groin; seawall, embankment, bulkhead

VERBS 7 **take refuge, take shelter,** seek refuge, **claim sanctuary,** claim refugee status, ask for political asylum; run into port; fly to, throw oneself into the arms of; bar the gate, lock *or* bolt the door, raise the drawbridge, let the portcullis down; take cover 346.8

8 **find refuge** *or* sanctuary, make port, reach safety; seclude *or* sequester oneself, dwell *or* live in an ivory tower; make port

1010 PROSPERITY

NOUNS 1 **prosperity,** prosperousness, thriving *or* flourishing condition; **success** 409; **welfare, well-being,** weal, happiness, felicity; quality of life;

comfortable *or* easy circumstances, **comfort, ease,** security; **life of ease,** life of Riley <nf>, **the good life; clover** *and* **velvet** <nf>, **bed of roses, luxury,** lap of luxury, Easy Street *and* Fat City *and* hog heaven <nf>; the affluent life, gracious life, gracious living; fat of the land; fleshpots, fleshpots of Egypt; milk and honey, loaves and fishes; a chicken in every pot, a car in every garage; purple and fine linen; high standard of living; upward mobility; **affluence,** wealth 618

2 **good fortune** *or* **luck,** happy fortune, **fortune, luck,** the breaks <nf>; **fortunateness, luckiness,** felicity <old>; blessing, smiles of fortune, fortune's favor

3 **stroke of luck,** piece of good luck; blessing; **fluke** *and* lucky strike *and* scratch hit *and* **break** <nf>, **good** *or* **lucky break** <nf>; **run** *or* **streak of luck** <nf>; bonanza; Midas touch

4 **good times,** piping times, bright *or* palmy *or* halcyon days, days of wine and roses, rosy era; heyday; prosperity, era of prosperity; fair weather, sunshine; golden era, **golden age,** golden time, golden days, Saturnian age, reign of Saturn, *Saturnia regna* <L>; honeymoon; holiday; prime, youth; age of Aquarius, millennium; **utopia** 986.11; **heaven** 681

5 **roaring trade, land-office business** <nf>, bullishness, bull *or* bullish market, seller's market; **boom,** booming economy, expanding economy

6 **lucky dog** <nf>, lucky devil, fortune's favorite, favorite of the gods, fortune's child, destiny's darling

VERBS 7 **prosper,** enjoy prosperity, **fare well,** get on well, do well, have it made *or* hacked <nf>, have a good thing going, have everything going one's way, get on swimmingly, go great guns <nf>; **turn out well, go well,** take a favorable turn; **succeed;** come on *or* along <nf>, come a long way, get on <nf>; **advance,** progress, make progress, make headway, get ahead <nf>, move up in the world, pull oneself up by one's own boot-straps

8 **thrive, flourish,** boom; blossom, bloom, flower; batten, fatten, grow fat; be fat, dumb, and happy <nf>

9 **be prosperous, make good, make one's mark,** rise *or* get on in the world, make a noise in the world <nf>, do all right by oneself <nf>, **make one's fortune;** grow rich; drive a roaring trade, do a land-office business <nf>, rejoice in a seller's market

10 **live well, live in clover** *or* on velvet <nf>, **live a life of ease,** live *or* lead the life of Riley, **live high, live high on the hog** <nf>, live on *or* off the fat of the land, ride the gravy train *and* piss on ice <nf>, roll in the lap of luxury; bask in the sunshine, have one's place in the sun; have a good *or* fine time of it

11 **be fortunate, be lucky,** be in luck, luck out <nf>, have all the luck, have one's moments <nf>, **lead** *or* **have a charmed life;** fall into the shithouse *and* come up with a five-dollar gold piece <nf>; **get a break** *and* get the breaks <nf>; hold aces *and* turn up trumps *or* roses <nf>; have a run of luck *and* hit a streak of luck <nf>; have it break good for one <nf>, have a stroke of luck; strike it lucky *and* make a lucky strike *and* strike oil <nf>, **strike it rich** <nf>, hit it big <nf>, strike a rich vein, come into money, drop into a good thing

ADJS 12 **prosperous,** in good case; **successful,** rags-to-riches; **well-paid, high-income,** higher-income, well-heeled *and* upscale <nf>; **affluent, wealthy; comfortable,** comfortably situated, **easy;** on Easy Street *and* in Fat City *and* in hog heaven <nf>, **in clover** *and* **on velvet** <nf>, on a bed of roses, in luxury, high on the hog <nf>; up in the world, on top of the heap <nf>

13 **thriving, flourishing, prospering, booming** <nf>; vigorous, exuberant; in full swing, going strong <nf>; halcyon, palmy, balmy, rosy, piping, clear, fair; blooming, blossoming, flowering, fruiting; fat, sleek, in good case; fat, dumb, and happy <nf>

14 **fortunate, lucky, providential; in luck; blessed,** blessed with luck, favored; born under a lucky star, born with a silver spoon in one's mouth, born on the sunny side of the hedge; out of the woods, over the hump; **auspicious**

ADVS 15 **prosperously, thrivingly, flourishingly,** boomingly, swimmingly <nf>

16 **fortunately, luckily, providentially**

1011 ADVERSITY

NOUNS 1 **adversity,** adverse circumstances, difficulties, hard knocks *and* rough going <nf>, **hardship, trouble,** troubles, "sea of troubles"—Shakespeare, **rigor,** vicissitude, care, stress, pressure, stress of life; hard case *or* plight, **hard life,** dog's life, vale of tears; wretched *or* miserable *or* hard *or* unhappy lot, tough *or* hard row to hoe <nf>, ups and downs of life, things going against one; bitter cup, bitter pill; bummer *and* downer <nf>; the bad part, the downside <nf>; annoyance, irritation, aggravation; **difficulty** 1012; **trial,** tribulation, cross, bane, curse, blight, **affliction** 96.8; plight, predicament 1013.4; the pits <nf>, raw deal <nf>

2 **misfortune, mishap,** ill hap, **misadventure, mischance,** *contretemps* <Fr>, grief; **disaster, calamity, catastrophe,** meltdown, cataclysm, **tragedy;** missed chance; **shock, blow,** hard *or* nasty *or* staggering blow; **accident,** casualty, collision, crash, plane *or* car crash; **wreck,** shipwreck; smash

and smashup *and* crack-up *and* pileup <nf>; bad news <nf>

3 **reverse, reversal,** reversal of fortune, **setback,** check, severe check, backset *and* throwback <nf>; **comedown,** descent, down

4 **unfortunateness, unluckiness,** lucklessness, ill success; unprosperousness; starcrossed *or* ill-fated life; "the slings and arrows of outrageous fortune"—Shakespeare; inauspiciousness 133.8

5 **bad luck,** ill luck, **hard luck,** hard lines <Brit>, **tough** *or* **rotten luck** <nf>, raw deal <nf>, bad *or* tough *or* rotten break <nf>, devil's own luck; **ill fortune,** bad fortune, evil fortune, evil star, ill wind, evil dispensation; frowns of fortune

6 **hard times,** bad times, sad times; evil day, ill day; rainy day; hard *or* stormy *or* heavy weather, storm clouds; **depression,** recession, **slump,** economic stagnation, **bust** <nf>; rough patch, bad spell; winter of discontent

7 **unfortunate,** poor unfortunate, the plaything *or* toy *or* sport of fortune, fortune's fool; **loser** *and* sure loser *and* non-starter <nf>, born loser; hard case *and* sad sack *and* hard-luck guy <nf>; *schlemiel* or *schlimazel* <Yiddish>; odd man out; the underclass, the dispossessed, the homeless, the wretched of the earth; victim 96.11, victim of fate; martyr

VERBS 8 **go hard with,** go ill with; run one hard; **oppress, weigh on** *or* **upon,** weigh heavy on, weigh down, **burden,** overburden, load, overload, bear hard upon, lie on, lie hard *or* heavy upon; try one, put one out

9 **have trouble;** be born to trouble, be born under an evil star, be "born unto trouble, as the sparks fly upward"—Bible; **have a hard time of it,** be up against it <nf>, make heavy weather of it, meet adversity, have a bad time, lead *or* live a dog's life, have a tough *or* hard row to hoe; bear the brunt, bear more than one's share; be put to one's wit's end, not know which way to turn; **be unlucky, have bad** *or* **rotten luck,** be misfortuned, get the short *or* shitty end of the stick <nf>, hit the skids <nf>

10 **come to grief,** have a mishap, suffer a misfortune, fall, be stricken, be staggered, be shattered, be poleaxed, be felled, come a cropper <Brit nf>, be clobbered <nf>; run aground, go on the rocks *or* shoals, split upon a rock; sink, drown; **founder**

11 **fall on evil days, go** *or* **come down in the world,** go downhill, slip, be on the skids <nf>, come down, have a comedown, fall from one's high estate; deteriorate, **degenerate,** run *or* go to seed, sink, decline; **go to pot** <nf>, go to the dogs, go belly up <nf>; reach the depths, touch bottom, hit rock bottom; have seen better days

12 bring bad luck; hoodoo *and* hex *and* jinx *and* Jonah *and* put the jinx on <nf>; put the evil eye on, whammy <nf>, put the *or* a double whammy on <nf>

ADJS 13 **adverse, untoward, detrimental, unfavorable;** sinister; hostile, antagonistic, inimical; contrary, counter, counteractive, conflicting, opposing, opposed, opposite, in opposition; **difficult, troublesome, troublous, hard,** trying, rigorous, stressful; wretched, miserable 96.26; **not easy;** harmful 1000.12

14 **unfortunate, unlucky, unprovidential,** unblessed, **unprosperous,** sad, unhappy, hapless, fortuneless, misfortuned, luckless, donsie <Brit nf>; **out of luck,** short of luck; **down on one's luck** <nf>, badly *or* ill off, down in the world, in adverse circumstances; underprivileged, depressed; ill-starred, evil-starred, born under a bad sign, born under an evil star, planet-stricken, planet-struck, star-crossed; fatal, dire, doomful, funest <old>, **ominous, inauspicious** 133.17; **in a jam** *and* in a pickle *or* pretty pickle *and* in a tight spot *and* between a rock and a hard place <nf>, between the devil and the deep blue sea, caught in the crossfire *or* middle; up a tree *and* up the creek *or* up shit creek without a paddle *and* up to one's ass in alligators <nf>

15 **disastrous, calamitous, catastrophic, cataclysmic,** cataclysmal, **tragic,** ruinous, wreckful <old>, fatal, dire, black, woeful, sore, baneful, grievous; destructive 395.26; **life-threatening, terminal**

ADVS 16 **adversely, untowardly,** detrimentally, **unfavorably;** contrarily, conflictingly, opposingly, oppositely

17 **unfortunately, unluckily,** unprovidentially, sadly, unhappily, **as ill luck would have it;** by ill luck, by ill hap; in adverse circumstances, if worse comes to worse

18 **disastrously,** calamitously, catastrophically, cataclysmically, grievously, woefully, sorely, banefully, tragically, crushingly, shatteringly

INTERJS 19 **tough luck!,** tough tiddy! *and* tough shit! *and* tough darts! <nf>

1012 HINDRANCE

NOUNS 1 **hindrance,** hindering, **hampering,** let, let or hindrance; **check, arrest,** arrestment, arrestation; fixation; **impediment,** holdback; **resistance,** opposition 451; suppression, **repression, restriction,** restraint 428; **obstruction,** blocking, blockage, clogging, occlusion; **bottleneck,** traffic jam, gridlock; speed bump, sleeping policeman <Brit>; **interruption,** interference; **retardation,** retardment, **detention,** detainment, **delay,** holdup, setback; **inhibition;** constriction, squeeze, stricture, cramp, stranglehold; **closure,** closing up *or* off; obstructionism, bloody-mindedness <Brit>, negativism, foot-dragging <nf>; nuisance value

2 **prevention, stop, stoppage, stopping,** arrestation, estoppel; stay, staying, halt, halting; **prohibition,** forbiddance; debarment; **determent,** deterrence, **discouragement; forestalling, preclusion, obviation,** foreclosure

3 **frustration, thwarting, balking, foiling; discomfiture, disconcertion,** bafflement, confounding; **defeat,** upset; check, checkmate, balk, foil <old>; derailing, derailment; vicious circle

4 **obstacle, obstruction,** obstructer; **hang-up** <nf>; **block,** blockade, cordon, curtain; **difficulty,** hurdle, hazard; **deterrent,** determent; **drawback,** objection; **stumbling block,** stumbling stone, stone in one's path; fly in the ointment, one small difficulty, **hitch,** hang-up <nf>, **catch,** joker <nf>, a "but," a "however"; bureaucracy, red tape, regulations

5 **barrier, bar;** gate, portcullis; **fence, wall,** stone wall, brick wall, impenetrable wall; seawall, jetty, groin, mole, breakwater; **bulwark, rampart,** defense, buffer, bulkhead, parapet, breastwork, work, earthwork, mound; bank, embankment, levee, dike; ditch, moat; dam, weir, leaping weir, barrage, milldam, beaver dam, cofferdam, wicket dam, shutter dam, bear-trap dam, hydraulic-fill dam, rock-fill dam, arch dam, arch-gravity dam, gravity dam; boom, jam, logjam; roadblock; speed bump; backstop; iron curtain, bamboo curtain; glass ceiling

6 **impediment,** embarrassment, hamper; encumbrance, cumbrance; **trouble,** difficulty 1013; **handicap,** disadvantage, inconvenience, penalty; white elephant; **burden,** burthen <old>, imposition, onus, cross, weight, deadweight, ball and chain, millstone around one's neck; **load,** pack, cargo, freight, charge; impedimenta, lumber; technical difficulty, flat tire, gremlin, glitch, bug <nf>, hiccup <nf>

7 **curb, check,** countercheck, arrest, **stay, stop,** damper, holdback; **brake,** clog, drag, drogue, remora; chock, scotch, spoke, spoke in one's wheel; doorstop; check-rein, bearing rein, martingale; bit, snaffle, pelham, curb bit; shackle, chain, fetter, trammel 428.4; sea anchor, drift anchor, drift sail, drag sail *or* sheet; boot *or* Denver boot

8 **hinderer,** impeder, **marplot,** obstructer; frustrater, thwarter; obstructionist, negativist; filibuster, filibusterer

9 **spoilsport,** wet blanket, **killjoy,** grouch, grinch *and* sourpuss <nf>, malcontent, **dog in the manger** <nf>, party pooper <nf>

VERBS **10** **hinder, impede, inhibit, arrest, check,** countercheck, scotch, **curb,** snub; **resist,** oppose 451.3; stonewall <nf>, stall, stall off; **suppress,** repress 428.8; **interrupt,** intercept <old>; intervene, interfere, intermeddle, meddle 214.7; damp, dampen, pour *or* dash *or* throw cold water; **retard,** slacken, **delay,** detain, **hold back, keep back,** set back, hold up <nf>; **restrain** 428.7; keep *or* hold in check, bottle up, dam up

11 **hamper, impede, cramp,** embarrass; trammel, entrammel, enmesh, entangle, ensnarl, entrap, entwine, involve, entoil, toil, net, lime, tangle, snarl; fetter, shackle; **handcuff,** tie one's hands; **encumber,** cumber, **burden,** lumber, **saddle with,** weigh *or* weight down, press down; hang like a millstone round one's neck; **handicap,** put at a disadvantage; lame, cripple, hobble, hamstring; cramp one's style, crab one's deal; gum up *or* gum up the works <nf>

12 **obstruct, get** *or* **stand in the way; dog, block,** block the way, put up a roadblock, blockade, block up, occlude; **jam,** crowd, pack; **bar,** barricade, bolt, lock; **debar,** shut out; shut off, **close,** close off *or* up, close tight, shut tight; constrict, squeeze, squeeze shut, **strangle,** strangulate, **stifle,** suffocate, **choke,** choke off, chock; stop up 293.7

13 **stop, stay, halt,** bring to a stop, put a stop *or* end to, bring to a shuddering *or* screeching halt <nf>; **brake,** slow down, put on the brakes, hit the brakes <nf>; **block, stall, stymie,** deadlock; nip in the bud

14 **prevent, prohibit, forbid; bar,** estop; save, help, **keep from; deter, discourage,** dishearten; **avert, parry, keep off, ward off, stave off, fend off,** fend, repel, deflect, turn aside; **forestall,** foreclose, **preclude,** exclude, debar, **obviate,** anticipate; rule out

15 **thwart, frustrate, foil, cross, balk;** spike, scotch, checkmate; **counter,** contravene, counteract, countermand, counterwork; stand in the way of, confront, brave, defy, challenge; **defeat** 412.6,8,9; **discomfit,** upset, **disrupt, confound,** flummox <nf>, discountenance, put out of countenance, **disconcert, baffle,** nonplus, perplex, stump <nf>; throw on one's beam ends, trip one up, throw one for a loss <nf>; **circumvent,** elude; sabotage, **spoil, ruin,** dish <nf>, dash, blast; **destroy** 395.10; throw a wrench in the machinery, **throw a monkey wrench** *or* **spanner** <Brit> **into the works** <nf>; put a spoke in one's wheel, scotch one's wheel, spike one's guns, put one's nose out of joint <nf>, upset one's applecart; **derail;** take the wind out of one's sails, steal one's thunder, cut the ground from under one, knock the chocks *or* props from under one, knock the bottom out of <nf>; tie one's hands, clip one's wings

16 <nf terms> **queer, crab, foul up, louse up,** snafu, bollix *or* bollix up, gum, **gum up,** gum up the works; crimp, cramp, **put a crimp in,** cramp one's style; cook one's goose, cut one down to size; give one a hard time

ADJS 17 **hindering,** troublesome; **inhibitive,** inhibiting, suppressive, repressive; constrictive, strangling, stifling, choking; restrictive 428.12; **obstructive,** obstructing, occlusive, obstruent <old>; cantankerous <nf>, bloody-minded <Brit>, contrary, crosswise; interruptive, interrupting; in the way

18 **hampering, impeding, counterproductive,** impedimental, impeditive; onerous, oppressive, burdensome, cumbersome, cumbrous, encumbering

19 **preventive,** preventative, avertive, prophylactic; **prohibitive, forbidding; deterrent,** deterring, **discouraging;** preclusive, forestalling; foot-dragging

20 **frustrating,** confounding, disconcerting, baffling, defeating

ADVS 21 under handicap, at a disadvantage, on the hip <old>, with everything against one

1013 DIFFICULTY

NOUNS 1 **difficulty,** difficultness; "the nurse of greatness"—William Cullen Bryant; **hardness, toughness** <nf>, strain, the hard way <nf>, **rigor,** rigorousness, ruggedness; **arduousness,** laboriousness, strenuousness, toilsomeness, severity; **troublesomeness,** bothersomeness; onerousness, oppressiveness, burdensomeness; formidability, hairiness <nf>; complication, intricacy, **complexity** 799; abstruseness 522.2

2 **tough proposition** *and* tough one *and* toughie <nf>, large *or* tall order <nf>; **hard job, tough job** *and* heavy lift <nf>, big undertaking, backbreaker, ballbuster <nf>, **chore,** man-sized job; brutal task, Herculean task, Augean task; uphill work *or* going, rough go <nf>, **heavy sledding,** hard pull <nf>, dead lift <old>; tough lineup to buck <nf>, hard road to travel; hard *or* tough nut to crack *and* hard *or* tough row to hoe *and* hard row of stumps <nf>; bitch <nf>; **handful** <nf>, all one can manage, no easy task

3 **trouble, the matter;** headache <nf>, problem, besetment, **inconvenience,** disadvantage; the bad part, the downside <nf>; **ado,** great ado; peck of troubles, "sea of troubles"—Shakespeare; hornet's nest, Pandora's box, can of worms <nf>; **evil** 1000.3; **bother, annoyance** 98.7; **anxiety,** worry 126.2

4 **predicament, plight,** spot of trouble, **strait,** straits, parlous straits, tightrope, knife-edge, thin edge; **pinch, bind,** pass, clutch, situation, emergency; pretty pass, nice *or* pretty predicament, pretty *or* fine state of affairs, **sorry plight;** slough, quagmire, morass, swamp, quicksand; **embarrassment,** embarrassing position *or* situation; **complication,** imbroglio; the devil to pay

5 <nf terms> **pickle,** crunch, hobble, pretty pickle, fine kettle of fish, how-do-you-do, fine how-do-you-do; **spot, tight spot; squeeze, tight squeeze,** ticklish *or* tricky spot, hot spot, hot seat, sticky wicket <Brit>; **scrape, jam, hot water,** tail in a gate, tit in the wringer; **mess,** holy *or* unholy mess, mix, stew; hell to pay; no-win situation

6 **impasse, corner** *and* **box** *and* **hole** <nf>, cleft stick; **cul-de-sac, blind alley, dead end,** dead-end street, blank wall; **extremity, end of one's rope** *or* **tether,** wit's end, nowhere to turn; **stalemate,** deadlock; stand, standoff, standstill, logjam, halt, stop

7 **dilemma,** horns of a dilemma, double bind, damned-if-you-do-and-damned-if-you-don't, no-win situation, **quandary,** nonplus, conundrum; **vexed question,** thorny problem, knotty point, knot, crux, node, nodus, Gordian knot, hard nut to crack, can of worms, headache, poser, teaser, perplexity, puzzle, enigma 522.8; paradox, oxymoron; asses' bridge, *pons asinorum* <L>; bad hair day

8 **crux, hitch, pinch, rub,** snag, hurdle, catch, joker <nf>, where the shoe pinches, complication

9 **unwieldiness, unmanageability; unhandiness,** inconvenience, impracticality; **awkwardness, clumsiness; cumbersomeness,** ponderousness, bulkiness, hulkiness; ham-handedness

VERBS 10 **be difficult, present difficulties, pose problems, take some doing** <nf>

11 **have difficulty, have trouble,** have a rough time <nf>, hit a snag, have a hard time of it, have one's hands full, have one's work cut out, get off to a bad start *or* on the wrong foot; be hard put, have much ado with; labor under difficulties, labor under a disadvantage, have the cards stacked against one *and* have two strikes against one <nf>; struggle, **flounder,** beat about, make heavy weather of it; have one's back to the wall, not know where to turn, come to a dead end *or* standstill, not know whether one is coming *or* going, go around in circles, swim against the current; walk a tightrope, walk on eggshells *or* hot coals, dance on a hot griddle

12 **get into trouble,** plunge into difficulties; **let oneself in for, put one's foot in it** <nf>; **get in a jam** *or* **hot water** *or* **the soup** <nf>, **get into a scrape** <nf>, **get in a mess** *or* **hole** *or* **box** *or* **bind** <nf>; paint oneself into a corner <nf>, get one's ass in a bind *and* put oneself in a spot <nf>,

put one's foot in one's mouth, strike a bad patch, be up a tree; have a tiger by the tail; burn one's fingers; get all tangled *or* snarled *or* wound up, get all balled *or* bollixed up <nf>

13 **trouble,** beset; **bother,** pother, get one down, <nf>, **disturb, perturb,** irk, plague, **torment,** drive one up the wall <nf>, give one gray hair, make one lose sleep; **harass, vex, distress** 96.16; inconvenience, **put out,** put out of the way, discommode 996.4; **concern, worry** 126.3; **puzzle, perplex** 971.13; put to it, give one trouble, complicate matters; give one a hard time *and* give one a bad time *and* make it tough for <nf>; be too much for; ail, be the matter; tree <nf>

14 **cause trouble,** bring trouble, "sow the wind and reap the whirlwind"—Bible; ask for trouble, ask for it <nf>, bring down upon one, bring down upon one's head, bring down around one's ears; **stir up a hornet's nest,** kick up *or* piss up a fuss *or* storm *or* row <nf>; stir up a hornet's nest, open Pandora's box, open a can of worms <nf>, put fire to tow; **raise hob** *or* **hell** <nf>; raise merry hell *and* play hob *and* play hell <nf>, play the deuce *or* devil <nf>

15 **put in a hole** <nf>, put in a spot <nf>; **embarrass; involve,** enmesh, entangle

16 **corner,** run *and* drive into a corner <nf>, **tree** <nf>, chase up a tree *or* stump <nf>, drive *or* force to the wall, push one to the wall, put one's back to the wall, have one on the ropes <nf>

ADJS **17** **difficult,** difficile; **not easy,** no picnic, hairy; **hard, tough** *and* **rough** *and* **rugged** <nf>, rigorous, brutal, severe; wicked *and* mean *and* hairy <nf>, **formidable; arduous, strenuous, toilsome, laborious,** operose, Herculean; steep, uphill; hard-fought; hard-earned; jawbreaking; knotty, knotted; thorny, spiny, set with thorns; delicate, ticklish, tricky, sticky <nf>, critical, easier said than done, like pulling teeth; exacting, demanding; intricate, complex 799.4; abstruse 522.16; hard-ass <nf>

18 **troublesome,** besetting; **bothersome,** irksome, vexatious, painful, plaguey <nf>, problematic, annoying 98.22; **burdensome,** oppressive, onerous, heavy *and* hefty <nf>, crushing, backbreaking; **trying,** grueling

19 **unwieldy, unmanageable, unhandy;** inconvenient, impractical; **awkward, clumsy, cumbersome,** unmaneuverable; contrary, perverse, crosswise; ponderous, bulky, hulky, hulking, ungainly

20 **troubled,** trouble-plagued, beset, sore beset; **bothered, vexed,** irked, annoyed 96.21; plagued, **harassed** 96.24; distressed, perturbed 96.22; inconvenienced, embarrassed; put to it *and* hard put to it <nf>; **worried, anxious** 126.6,7; puzzled

21 in trouble, in deep trouble, in a predicament, in a sorry plight, in a pretty pass; in deep water, out of one's depth

22 <nf terms> **in deep shit** *or* doo-doo, in a jam, in a pickle, in a pretty pickle, in a spot, in a tight spot, in a fix, in a hole, in a bind, in a box; in a mess, in a scrape, in hot water, in the soup; up a tree, up to one's ass in alligators, up the creek, up shit creek without a paddle, in Dutch, on the spot, behind the eight ball, on Queer Street, out on a limb, on the hot seat

23 **in a dilemma,** on the horns of a dilemma, **in a quandary;** between two stools; between Scylla and Charybdis, between the devil and the deep blue sea, between a rock and a hard place <nf>

24 **at an impasse, at one's wit's end, at a loss,** at a stand *or* standstill, deadlocked; **nonplussed,** at a nonplus; **baffled, perplexed, bewildered,** mystified, stuck *and* stumped <nf>, stymied

25 **cornered,** in a corner, with one's back to the wall; **treed** *and* **up a tree** *and* up a stump <nf>; **at bay,** *aux abois* <Fr>

26 **straitened,** reduced to dire straits, in desperate straits, **pinched,** sore *or* sorely pressed, **hard-pressed, hard up** <nf>, **up against it** <nf>; driven from pillar to post; **desperate, in extremities,** *in extremis* <L>, **at the end of one's rope** *or* **tether**

27 **stranded, grounded,** aground, **on the rocks,** high and dry; **stuck,** stuck *or* set fast; foundered, swamped; castaway, marooned, wrecked, shipwrecked

ADVS **28** **with difficulty,** difficultly, with much ado; hardly, painfully; the hard way, **arduously, strenuously, laboriously,** toilsomely

29 **unwieldily, unmanageably, unhandily,** inconveniently; **awkwardly, clumsily, cumbersomely;** ponderously

1014 FACILITY

NOUNS **1** **facility, ease, easiness,** facileness, effortlessness; lack of hindrance, **smoothness,** freedom; clear coast, clear road *or* course; smooth road, royal road, highroad; easy going, plain sailing, smooth *or* straight sailing; clarity, intelligibility 521; uncomplexity, uncomplicatedness, **simplicity** 797

2 **handiness, wieldiness,** wieldableness, handleability, manageability, **manageableness,** maneuverability; **convenience,** practicality, practicableness, untroublesomeness; **flexibility,** pliancy, **pliability,** ductility, malleability; adaptability, feasibility

3 **easy thing,** mere child's play, simple matter, mere twist of the wrist; easy target, sitting duck <nf>; sinecure

4 <nf terms> **cinch, snap,** pushover, breeze, waltz, duck soup, velvet, picnic, pie, cherry pie, apple pie, cakewalk, piece of cake <Brit>, kid stuff, turkey shoot, no-brainer, setup, high road, walkover, no sweat

5 **facilitation, facilitating, easing,** smoothing, smoothing out, smoothing the way; **speeding,** expediting, expedition, quickening, hastening; streamlining; lubricating, greasing, oiling

6 **disembarrassment, disentanglement, disencumbrance,** disinvolvement, uncluttering, uncomplicating, unscrambling, unsnarling, disburdening, unburdening, unhampering; **extrication,** disengagement, **freeing,** clearing; deregulation; **simplification** 798.2

VERBS 7 **facilitate, ease; grease the wheels** <nf>; **smooth, smooth** *or* **pave the way,** ease the way, grease *or* soap the ways <nf>, prepare the way, **clear the way,** make all clear for, make way for; run interference for <nf>, open the way, open the door to; not stand in the way of; **open up, unclog,** unblock, unjam, unbar, loose 431.6; **lubricate,** make frictionless *or* dissipationless, remove friction, grease, oil; **speed, expedite,** quicken, hasten; **help along,** help on its way; **aid** 449.11; **explain,** make clear 521.6; **simplify** 798.4

8 **do easily,** make short work of, do with one's hands tied behind one's back, do with both eyes shut, do standing on one's head, do hands down, sail *or* dance *or* waltz through, wing it <nf>, take to like a duck to water

9 **disembarrass, disencumber, unload,** relieve, disburden, unhamper, get out from under; **disentangle,** disembroil, disinvolve, unclutter, unscramble, unsnarl; **extricate,** disengage, **free,** free up, clear; liberate 431.4

10 **go easily, run smoothly,** work well, work like a machine, go like clockwork *or* a sewing machine; present no difficulties, give no trouble, be painless, be effortless; flow, roll, glide, slide, coast, sweep, sail

11 **have it easy, have it soft** <nf>, have it all one's own way, have the game in one's hands, have it in the bag; win easily; breeze in <nf>, walk over the course <nf>, win in a walk *or* in a canter *or* hands down <nf>

12 **take it easy** *and* **go easy** <nf>, swim with the stream, drift with the current, go with the tide; cool it *and* not sweat it <nf>; take the line of least resistance; take it in one's stride, make little *or* light of, think nothing of

ADJS 13 **easy, facile, effortless,** smooth, painless; soft <nf>, cushy <nf>; plain, uncomplicated, straightforward, **simple** 797.6, Mickey Mouse <nf>, simple as ABC <nf>, easy as pie *and* easy as falling off a log <nf>, downhill all the way, like shooting fish in a barrel, like taking candy from a baby, no sooner said than done; **clear;** glib; **light,** unburdensome; nothing to it; casual, throwaway <nf>

14 **smooth-running,** frictionless, dissipationless, easy-running, easy-flowing; well-lubricated, well-oiled, well-greased

15 **handy, wieldy,** wieldable, handleable; tractable; flexible, pliant, yielding, malleable, ductile, pliable, **manageable,** maneuverable; **convenient,** foolproof, goofproof <nf>, practical, untroublesome, user-friendly; adaptable, feasible

ADVS 16 **easily,** facilely, **effortlessly, readily, simply,** lightly, swimmingly <nf>, without difficulty; no sweat *and* like nothing *and* slick as a whistle <nf>; hands down <nf>, with one hand tied behind one's back, with both eyes closed, standing on one's head; like a duck takes to water; **smoothly,** frictionlessly, like clockwork; on easy terms

1015 UGLINESS

NOUNS 1 **ugliness, unsightliness, unattractiveness,** uncomeliness, unhandsomeness, unbeautifulness, unprettiness, unloveliness, unaestheticness, unpleasingness 98.1; unprepossessingness, ill-favoredness, inelegance; **homeliness,** plainness; unshapeliness, shapelessness; ungracefulness, gracelessness, clumsiness, ungainliness 414.3; **uglification, uglifying, disfigurement,** defacement; dysphemism; cacophony

2 **hideousness,** horridness, horribleness, frightfulness, dreadfulness, terribleness, awfulness <nf>; **repulsiveness** 98.2, repugnance, repugnancy, repellence, repellency, offensiveness, forbiddingness, loathsomeness; ghastliness, gruesomeness, grisliness; **deformity,** misshapenness

3 forbidding countenance, vinegar aspect, wry face, face that would stop a clock

4 **eyesore,** blot, blot on the landscape, blemish, **sight** <nf>, **fright, horror, mess,** no beauty, no beauty queen, ugly duckling; baboon; **scarecrow,** gargoyle, monster, **monstrosity,** teratism; witch, bag *and* dog <nf>, **hag,** harridan; something the cat dragged in, back end of a bus

VERBS 5 **offend,** offend the eye, offend one's aesthetic sensibilities, **look bad;** look something terrible *and* look like hell *and* look like the devil *and* look **a** sight *or* a fright *or* a mess *or* like something the cat dragged in <nf>; **uglify, disfigure,** deface, blot, blemish, mar, scar, spoil; dysphemize

ADJS 6 **ugly, unsightly, unattractive, unhandsome, unpretty, unlovely,** uncomely, **inelegant;**

unbeautiful, unbeauteous, beautiless, unaesthetic, unpleasing 98.17; **homely, plain;** not much to look at, not much for looks, short on looks <nf>, hard on the eyes <nf>; ugly as sin, ugly as the wrath of God, ugly as hell, homely as a mud fence, homely enough to sour milk, homely enough to stop a clock, not fit to be seen, grotty <nf>; **uglified, disfigured,** defaced, blotted, blemished, marred, spoiled; dysphemized, dysphemistic; cacophonous, cacophonic

7 **unprepossessing, ill-favored,** hard-favored, evil-favored, ill-featured; ill-looking, evil-looking; hard-featured, hard-visaged; grim, grim-faced, grim-visaged; hatchet-faced, horse-faced

8 **unshapely,** shapeless, **ill-shaped,** ill-made, ill-proportioned; **deformed,** misshapen, misproportioned, malformed, misbegotten; grotesque, scarecrowish, gargoylish; monstrous, teratic, cacogenic

9 **ungraceful,** ungraced, graceless; clumsy, clunky <nf>, **ungainly** 414.20

10 **inartistic,** unartistic, **unaesthetic; unornamental, undecorative**

11 **hideous, horrid, horrible, frightful, dreadful, terrible, awful** <nf>; **repulsive** 98.18, repellent, repelling, rebarbative, **repugnant,** offensive, foul, forbidding, loathsome, loathly <old>, revolting; **ghastly,** gruesome, grisly

ADVS 12 **uglily,** homelily, uncomelily, **unattractively, unhandsomely, unbeautifully, unprettily**

13 **hideously, horridly, horribly, frightfully, dreadfully, terribly, awfully** <nf>; **repulsively, repugnantly,** offensively, forbiddingly, loathsomely, revoltingly; gruesomely, ghastly

1016 BEAUTY

NOUNS 1 **beauty, beautifulness,** beauteousness, **prettiness, handsomeness,** attractiveness 97.2, **loveliness, pulchritude, charm,** grace, elegance, exquisiteness; bloom, glow; the beautiful; source of aesthetic pleasure *or* delight; beauty unadorned

2 "God's handwriting"—Emerson, "a form of genius"—Oscar Wilde, "the power by which a woman charms a lover and terrifies a husband"—Ambrose Bierce

3 **comeliness, fairness,** sightliness, personableness, becomingness, pleasingness 97.1, goodliness, bonniness, agreeability, agreeableness; charisma

4 **good looks,** good appearance, good effect; good proportions, aesthetic proportions; **shapeliness,** good figure, good shape, *belle tournure* <Fr>, nice body, lovely build, physical *or* bodily charm, curvaceousness, curves <nf>, pneumaticness, sexy body, sexiness; good bone structure; bodily grace, **gracefulness,** gracility; good points, **beauties, charms, delights,** perfections, good features, delicate features

5 **daintiness, delicacy,** delicateness; **cuteness** *or* cunningness <nf>

6 **gorgeousness,** ravishingness; **gloriousness,** heavenliness, sublimity; **splendor,** splendidness, splendiferousness, splendorousness *or* splendrousness, sublimeness, resplendence; **brilliance,** brightness, radiance, luster; **glamour** 377.1

7 **thing of beauty,** vision, picture <nf>, poem, eyeful <nf>, **sight for sore eyes** <nf>, cynosure; masterpiece

8 **beauty, charmer,** *charmeuse* <Fr>; beauty queen, beauty contest winner, Miss America, bathing beauty; **glamour girl,** cover girl, model; sex goddess; **belle,** reigning beauty, great beauty, lady fair; beau ideal, paragon; enchantress; "the face that launch'd a thousand ships"—Marlowe

9 <nf terms> **doll, dish, cutie,** angel, angelface, babyface, beaut, honey, dream, looker, good-looker, stunner, dazzler, dreamboat, fetcher, bird *and* crumpet <Brit>, peach, knockout, raving beauty, centerfold, pinup girl, pinup, bunny, cutie *or* cutesy pie, cute *or* slick chick, pussycat, sex kitten, ten; treasure; babe, hunk

10 <famous beauties> Venus, Venus de Milo; Aphrodite, Hebe; Adonis, Appollo, Apollo Belvedere, Hyperion, Antinoüs, Narcissus; Astarte; Balder, Freya; Helen of Troy, Cleopatra; the Graces, houri, peri

11 **beautification,** prettification, cutification <nf>, **adornment;** decoration 498.1; **beauty care,** beauty treatment, cosmetology; facial <nf>; manicure; hairdressing; cosmetic surgery, plastic surgery

12 **makeup, cosmetics, beauty products, beauty-care products;** war paint *and* drugstore complexion <nf>; pancake makeup; powder, talcum, talcum powder; foundation, base; rouge, blush *or* blusher, paint; lip rouge, **lipstick,** lip color; **nail polish;** greasepaint, clown white; eye makeup, eyeliner, mascara, eye shadow, kohl; cold cream, hand cream *or* lotion, vanishing cream, foundation cream; mudpack; eyebrow pencil; puff, powder puff; makeup brush; compact, vanity case; toiletries, shampoo, soap, deodorant, perfume

13 **beautician,** beautifier, cosmetologist, makeup artist, cosmetician; hairdresser, *coiffeur* and *coiffeuse* <Fr>, hairstylist; barber; manicurist, pedicurist

14 **beauty parlor** *or* salon *or* shop, *salon de beauté* <Fr>, hairdressing salon, hair salon; barbershop, barber

15 **hairdressing,** hair styling, hair coloring, barbering; shave, depilation, tweezing, electrolysis, waxing; hair replacement; hairstyle, hairdo; haircut, trim, permanent, perm; crop, bob, cut, ponytail, plait, cornrows, braids, pigtails, bangs, chignon, bun, beehive, pompadour, pageboy, dreadlocks, sideburns, crewcut, flattop, ducktail, DA, Mohawk, Afro

VERBS 16 **beautify, prettify,** cutify <nf>, pretty up *or* gussy up *or* doll up <nf>, grace, **adorn; decorate** 498.8; set off, set off to advantage *or* good advantage, become one; **glamorize; make up,** paint *and* put on one's face <nf>, titivate, cosmetize, cosmeticize; primp

17 **look good;** look like a million *and* look fit to kill *and* knock dead *and* knock one's eyes out <nf>; take the breath away, beggar description; shine, beam, **bloom, glow**

ADJS 18 **beautiful, beauteous,** endowed with beauty; **pretty, handsome, attractive** 97.7, pulchritudinous, **lovely, graceful,** gracile; elegant; esthetic, aesthetically appealing; **cute;** pretty as a picture, "lovely as the day"—Longfellow, "fair as is the rose in May"—Chaucer; tall dark and handsome; picturesque, scenic

19 **comely, fair, good-looking, nice-looking,** well-favored, **personable,** presentable, agreeable, becoming, pleasing 97.6, goodly, bonny, likely <nf>, **sightly;** pleasing to the eye, lovely to behold; **shapely,** well-built, built, well-shaped, well-proportioned, well-made, well-formed, stacked *or* well-stacked <nf>, shapely, curvaceous, curvy <nf>, pneumatic, amply endowed, built for comfort *or* built like a brick shithouse <nf>, buxom, callipygian, callipygous; Junoesque, statuesque, goddess-like; slender 270.16; Adonis-like, hunky <nf>

20 **fine, exquisite,** flowerlike, **dainty, delicate;** *mignon* <Fr>

21 **gorgeous, ravishing; glorious,** heavenly, divine, sublime; **resplendent,** splendorous *or* splendrous, splendiferous, **splendid; brilliant,** bright, radiant, shining, beaming, glowing, blooming, abloom, sparkling, **dazzling; glamorous**

22 <nf terms> **eye-filling, easy on the eyes,** not hard to look at, long on looks, looking fit to kill, dishy <chiefly Brit>; cutesy, cutesy-poo; raving, devastating, **stunning,** killing

23 **beautifying,** cosmetic; decorative 498.10; cosmetized, cosmeticized, beautified, made-up, mascaraed, titivated

ADVS 24 **beautifully,** beauteously, **prettily, handsomely, attractively, becomingly,** comelily; elegantly, exquisitely; charmingly, enchantingly

25 **daintily, delicately; cutely**

26 **gorgeously, ravishingly;** ravingly *and* devastatingly *and* stunningly <nf>; **gloriously,** divinely, sublimely; **resplendently,** splendidly, splendorously, splendrously; **brilliantly,** brightly, radiantly, glowingly, **dazzlingly**

WORD ELEMENTS **27** cal-, calo-, callo-, cali-, calli-

1017 MATHEMATICS

NOUNS **1** **mathematics** <see list>, math <US nf>, maths <Brit nf>, mathematic, **numbers, figures;** pure mathematics, abstract mathematics, applied mathematics, higher mathematics, elementary mathematics, classical mathematics, metamathematics, new mathematics; algorithm, logarithm; mathematical element <see list>

2 <mathematical operations> notation, **addition** 253, **subtraction** 255, **multiplication, division,** numeracy, calculation, computation, reckoning, proportion, practice, equation, extraction of roots, inversion, reduction, involution, evolution, approximation, interpolation, extrapolation, transformation, differentiation, integration; arithmetic operation, algebraic operation, logical operation, associative operation, distributive operation

3 **number** <see list>, **numeral,** *numero* <Sp and Ital>, no *or* n, digit, binary digit *or* bit, **cipher,** character, symbol, sign, notation, figure, base; decimal

4 <number systems> **Arabic numerals,** algorism *or* algorithm, Roman numerals; **decimal system,** binary system, octal system, duodecimal system, hexadecimal system; place-value notation, positional notation, fixed-point notation, floating-point notation

5 large number, astronomical number, boxcar number <nf>, zillion *and* jillion <nf>; googol, googolplex; infinity, infinite number, transfinite number, infinitude 822.1; billion, trillion, etc 882.13

6 **sum,** summation, difference, product, **number, count,** x number, n number; account, cast, **score, reckoning, tally,** tale, the story *and* whole story *and* all she wrote <nf>, the bottom line <nf>, **aggregate, amount,** quantity 244; **whole** 792, **total** 792.2, running total; box score <nf>

7 **ratio, rate, proportion; quota,** quotum; **percentage,** percent; **fraction,** proper fraction, improper fraction, compound fraction, continued fraction, decimal fraction; common *or* vulgar fraction; geometric ratio *or* proportion, arithmetical proportion, harmonic proportion; rule of three; numerator, denominator

8 **series, progression;** arithmetical progression,

geometrical progression, harmonic progression; Fibonacci numbers

9 **numeration, enumeration, numbering, counting,** count, accounting, census, inventorying, telling, tally, tallying, scoring; page numbering, pagination, foliation; counting on the fingers, dactylonomy; **measurement** 300; quantification, quantifying, quantization

10 **calculation, computation, estimation, reckoning,** figuring, number work, mental arithmetic, calculus; adding, footing, casting, ciphering, totaling, toting *or* totting <nf>; rounding up, rounding down, rounding off

11 **summation, summary, summing, summing up, recount,** recounting, rehearsal, capitulation, **recapitulation,** recap *and* rehash <nf>, statement, **reckoning, count,** bean-counting <nf>, repertory, census, inventory, head count, nose count, body count; account, accounts; **table,** reckoner, ready reckoner

12 **division;** long division, short division, divisibility; quotient, ratio, proportion, percentage, fraction; reciprocal, inverse, dividend, divisor, aliquot part, remainder, residue; numerator, denominator, common denominator

13 **account of, count of,** a reckoning of, **tab** *or* **tabs of** <nf>, tally of, check of, track of

14 **figures, statistics,** indexes *or* indices; vital statistics

15 **calculator** <see list>, **computer** 1042.2; estimator, figurer, reckoner, abacist, pollster; statistician, actuary; number-cruncher <nf>; accountant, bookkeeper 628.7

16 **mathematician, arithmetician;** geometer, geometrician; algebraist, trigonometrician, statistician, geodesist, mathematical physicist, topologist; analyst

VERBS 17 **number,** numerate, number off, **enumerate, count, tell, tally,** give a figure to, put a figure on, call off, name, call over, run over; **count noses** *or* **heads** <nf>, call the roll; census, poll; page, paginate, foliate; **measure** 300.11; **round,** round out *or* off *or* down; quantify, quantitate, quantize

18 **calculate, compute, estimate, reckon, figure,** solve, reckon at, put at, cipher, cast, tally, score; **figure out,** work out, dope out <nf>, determine; take account of, figure in *and* figure on <nf>; **add,** add up, sum, **subtract,** take away, **multiply, divide,** multiply out, cross-multiply, times, algebraize, extract roots, raise to the power of, cube, square, decimalize; factor, factor out, factorize; **measure** 300.11

19 **sum up,** sum, summate, say it all <nf>; aggregate, **figure up,** cipher up, reckon up, **count up, add up,** foot up, cast up, score up, **tally up; total,** total up, tote *or* tot up <nf>; **summarize, recapitulate,** recap *and* rehash <nf>, **recount,** rehearse, recite, relate; detail, itemize, inventory; round up, round down, round off

20 **keep account of,** keep count of, **keep track of, keep tab** *or* **tabs** <nf>, keep tally, keep a check on *or* of

21 **check, verify** 970.12, double-check, check on *or* out; **prove,** demonstrate; balance, balance the books; **audit,** overhaul; take stock, inventory

ADJS 22 **mathematical,** numeric *or* numerical, numerary, arithmetic *or* arithmetical, algebraic *or* algebraical, geometric *or* geometrical, trigonometric *or* trigonometrical, analytic *or* analytical, combinatorial, topological, statistical

23 **numeric** *or* **numerical,** numeral, numerary, numerative; **odd,** impair, **even,** pair; arithmetical, algorismic *or* algorithmic; **cardinal, ordinal;** figural, **figurate,** figurative, **digital;** aliquot, submultiple, **reciprocal,** prime, fractional, decimal, exponential, **logarithmic,** logometric, differential, integral; positive, negative; rational, irrational, transcendental; surd, radical; real, imaginary; possible, impossible, finite, infinite, transfinite; integral, whole; decenary, binary, ternary; signed, unsigned, nonnegative

24 **numerative, enumerative; calculative,** computative, estimative; **calculating,** computing, computational, estimating; statistical; quantifying, quantizing

25 **calculable,** computable, **reckonable,** estimable, countable, numberable, enumerable, numerable; **measurable,** mensurable, quantifiable; addable, subtractive, multipliable, dividable

26 **branches and kinds of mathematics**

addition algebra
affine geometry
algebra
algebraic geometry
algebraic topology
analysis
analytic geometry
applied mathematics
arithmetic
associative algebra
binary arithmetic
Boolean algebra
calculus
calculus of differences
category theory
circle geometry
combinatorial mathematics *or* combinatorics
combinatorial topology
commutative algebra
complex *or* double algebra
control theory
denumerative geometry
descriptive geometry
differential calculus
differential geometry
division algebra
elementary arithmetic
elementary *or* ordinary algebra
equivalent algebras
Euclidean geometry
Fourier analysis
functional analysis
game theory
geodesic geometry
geodesy
geometry
Gödel's proof
graphic algebra
group theory

harmonic analysis
higher algebra
higher arithmetic
homological algebra
hyperalgebra
hyperbolic geometry
infinitesimal calculus
integral calculus
intuitional geometry
invariant subalgebra
inverse geometry
Lagrangian function
Laplace's equation
linear algebra
line geometry
mathematical biology
mathematical biophysics
mathematical computing
mathematical ecology
mathematical geography
mathematical logic
mathematical physics
matrix algebra
measure theory
metageometry
modular arithmetic
multiple algebra
natural geometry
nilpotent algebra
noncommutative algebra
non-Euclidean geometry
n-tuple linear algebra
number theory
numerical analysis
operational calculus
operations research
plane geometry
plane trigonometry
point-set topology
political arithmetic
potential theory
probability theory
projective geometry
proper subalgebra
quadratics
quaternian algebra
reducible algebra
Riemannian geometry
semisimple algebra
set theory
simple algebra
solid geometry
speculative geometry
sphere geometry
spherical trigonometry
statistics
subalgebra
systems analysis *or* theory
topology
trigonometry *or* trig <nf>
universal algebra
universal geometry
vector algebra
zero algebra

27 mathematical elements

addend
algorithm
aliquot
antilogarithm
argument
auxiliary equation
base
Bessel function
binomial
characteristic
characteristic equation
characteristic function
characteristic polynomial
characteristic root *or* characteristic value *or* eigenvalue *or* latent root *or* proper value
characteristic vector
coefficient
combination
common divisor *or* measure
complement
congruence
coordinate
constant
cosecant
cosine
cotangent
cube
cube root
decimal
denominator
derivative
determinant
difference *or* remainder
differential
discriminate
dividend
division sign
divisor
e
elliptical function
empty set *or* null set
equal sign
equation
exponent
exponential
expression
factor
factorial
formula
fraction
function
greatest common divisor *or* GCD
haversine
hyperbolic
i
increment
index
integral
Laplace transform
least common denominator *or* LCD
least common multiple *or* LCM
logarithm *or* log
mantissa
matrix
minuend
minus sign
mixed decimal
modulus
monomial
multinomial
multiple
multiplicand
multiplicator
multiplier
norm
numerator
parameter
part
permutation
pi <π>
plus sign
polynomial
power
quadratic equation
quaternion
quotient
radical
radix
reciprocal
repeating *or* circulating decimal
root
secant
sequence
series
set
simultaneous equations
sine
solution
square root
submultiple
subtrahend
summand
tangent
tensor
topological group
topological space
variable
vector
vector product
vector sum
versed sine *or* versine
vulgar fraction

28 kinds of numbers

abundant number
algebraic number
Avogadro's
cardinal number *or* cardinal
complex *or* Gaussian integer
complex number
composite *or* rectangular number
deficient *or* defective number
directed number
even number *or* pair
Fermat number
figurate number
finite number
fraction
imaginary number *or* pure imaginary
infinity
integer *or* whole number
irrational number *or* irrational
Mersenne number
mixed number
natural number
negative number
nonnegative number
odd number *or* impair
ordinal number *or* ordinal
perfect number
polygonal number
positive number
prime *or* rectilinear number *or* prime
pyramidal number
random number
rational number *or* rational
real number *or* real
round *or* rounded number
serial number
signed number
surd *or* surd quantity
transcendental number
transfinite number
whole number

29 calculators

- abacus
- adding machine
- analog computer
- arithmograph
- arithmometer
- calculating machine
- cash register
- compass
- computer
- counter
- difference engine
- digital computer
- Napier's bones *or* rods
- number-cruncher <nf>
- online calculator
- pari-mutuel machine
- pocket calculator
- programmable calculator
- quipu
- rule
- scientific calculator
- score card
- slide rule *or* sliding scale
- suan pan <Chin>
- tabulator
- tally *or* tally stick
- totalizator
- Turing machine

1018 PHYSICS

NOUNS 1 **physics;** natural *or* physical science; philosophy *or* second philosophy *or* natural philosophy *or* physic <old>; **branch of physics** <see list>; physical theory, quantum theory, relativity theory, special relativity theory, general relativity theory, unified field theory, grand unified theory *or* GUT, superunified theory *or* theory of everything *or* TOE, eightfold way, superstring theory, kinetic theory, wave theory, electromagnetic theory

2 **physicist,** aerophysicist, astrophysicist, biophysicist, etc

ADJS 3 **physical;** aerophysical, astrophysical, biophysical, etc

4 **branches of physics**

- acoustics
- aerodynamics
- aerophysics
- applied physics
- astrophysics
- basic conductor physics
- biophysics
- chaos theory *or* chaos dynamics *or* chaology
- chemical physics *or* chemicophysics
- classical physics *or* Newtonian physics
- condensed-matter physics
- cryogenics
- crystallography
- cytophysics
- dynamics
- electricity
- electrodynamics
- electromagnetism
- electron optics
- electronics *or* electron physics
- electrophysics
- fluid dynamics
- fluid mechanics
- geometric optics
- geophysics
- high-energy physics
- hyperphysics
- hypophysics
- iatrophysics
- kinematics
- macrophysics
- magnetism
- mathematical physics
- mechanics
- medicophysics
- microphysics
- molecular physics
- morphophysics
- myophysics
- Newtonian mechanics
- nuclear physics
- optics
- organismic physics
- physical chemistry *or* physicochemistry
- physical optics
- physicomathematics
- plasma physics
- psychophysics
- quantum physics
- radiation physics
- radionics
- solar physics
- solid-state physics
- statics
- stereophysics
- theoretical physics
- thermodynamics
- X-ray crystallography
- zoophysics

1019 HEAT

NOUNS 1 **heat, hotness,** heatedness; superheat, superheatedness; calidity *or* caloric <old>; **warmth,** warmness; incalescence; radiant heat, thermal radiation, induction heat, convector *or* convected heat, coal heat, gas heat, oil heat, hot-air heat, steam heat, electric heat, solar heat, dielectric heat, ultraviolet heat, atomic heat, molecular heat; latent heat, specific heat; animal heat, body heat, blood heat, hypothermia; fever heat, fever, pyrexia, feverishness, flush, calescence; heating, burning 1020.5; smoke detector

2 <metaphors> **ardor,** ardency, **fervor,** fervency, fervidness, fervidity; eagerness 101; excitement 105; **anger** 152.5,8,9; **sexual desire** 75.5; love 104

3 **temperature,** temp <nf>; room temperature, comfortable temperature; comfort index, temperature-humidity index *or* THI; flash point; boiling point; melting point, freezing point; dew point; recalescence point; zero, absolute zero; thermometry, pyrometry

4 **lukewarmness,** tepidness, tepidity; tepidarium

5 **torridness,** torridity; extreme heat, intense heat, torrid heat, red heat, white heat, tropical heat, sweltering heat, African heat, Indian heat, Bengal heat, summer heat, oppressive heat; "where the sun beats, and the dead tree gives no shelter, the cricket no relief"—T S Eliot; **hot wind** 318.7; incandescence, flash point

6 **sultriness, stuffiness, closeness,** oppressiveness; **humidity, humidness, mugginess,** stickiness <nf>, swelter, fug; tropical heat; overheating

7 **hot weather,** sunny *or* sunshiny weather; sultry weather, stuffy weather, humid weather, muggy weather, sticky weather <nf>; summer, midsummer, high summer; Indian Summer, **dog days,** canicular days, canicule; **heat wave,** hot wave, hot spell, warm front; broiling sun, midday sun; vertical rays; warm weather, fair weather; global warming, greenhouse effect

8 **hot day,** summer day; **scorcher** *and* **roaster** *and* broiler *and* sizzler *and* swelterer <nf>

9 **hot air,** superheated air; thermal; firestorm

10 **hot water,** boiling water; **steam,** vapor; volcanic water; hot *or* warm *or* thermal spring, thermae; geyser, Old Faithful; steaminess; boiling point

11 <hot place> **oven, furnace,** fiery furnace, inferno, hell; heater, warmer, burner; steam bath, sauna,

solarium; **tropics,** subtropics, Torrid Zone, Sahara, Dearth Valley; equator; melting point

12 **glow,** incandescence, fieriness; **flush, blush, bloom,** redness 41, rubicundity, rosiness; whiteness 37; thermochromism; hectic, hectic flush; sunburn

13 **fire; blaze, flame,** ingle, devouring element; **combustion, ignition,** ignition temperature *or* point, flash *or* flashing point; **conflagration;** flicker 1024.8, wavering *or* flickering flame, "lambent flame"—Dryden; smoldering fire, sleeping fire; marshfire, fen fire, ignis fatuus, will-o'-the-wisp; fox fire; witch fire, St Elmo's fire, corposant; **cheerful fire,** cozy fire, crackling fire; **roaring fire,** blazing fire; **raging fire,** sheet of fire, sea of flames; bonfire, balefire; beacon fire, beacon, signal beacon, watch fire; towering inferno; alarm fire, two-alarm fire, three-alarm fire, etc; wildfire, prairie fire, forest fire; backfire; brushfire; open fire; campfire; smudge fire; death fire, pyre, funeral pyre, crematory; burning ghat; fireball; first-degree burn, second-degree burn, third-degree burn

14 **flare,** flare-up, **flash,** flash fire, **blaze,** burst, outburst; deflagration

15 **spark,** sparkle; **scintillation,** scintilla; ignescence

16 **coal,** live coal, brand, firebrand, **ember,** burning ember; **cinder**

17 **fireworks** <see list>, **pyrotechnics** *or* pyrotechny

18 <perviousness to heat> transcalency; adiathermancy, athermancy

19 **thermal unit;** British thermal unit *or* BTU; Board of Trade unit *or* BOT; centigrade thermal unit; centigrade *or* Celsius scale, Fahrenheit scale; **calorie,** mean calorie, centuple *or* rational calorie, small calorie, large *or* great calorie, kilocalorie, kilogram-calorie; therm; joule

20 **thermometer,** thermal detector; mercury, glass; thermostat; calorimeter; thermograph, thermostat

21 <science of heat> thermochemistry, thermology, thermotics, thermodynamics; volcanology; pyrology, pyrognostics; pyrotechnics *or* pyrotechny, ebulliometry; calorimetry

VERBS 22 <be hot> **burn** 1020.24, **scorch,** parch, scald, **swelter, roast,** toast, cook, bake, fry, broil, sizzle, boil, seethe, simmer, stew; **be in heat;** shimmer with heat, give off waves of heat, radiate heat; **blaze,** combust, spark, **catch fire,** flame 1020.23, flame up, **flare,** flare up; **flicker** 1025.25; **glow,** incandesce, flush, blush, bloom; smolder; steam; sweat 12.16; gasp, pant; **suffocate, stifle,** smother, choke; keep warm; run a temperature; sunbathe

23 **smoke, fume,** reek, smolder; smudge; carbonize

ADJS 24 **warm,** calid <old>, **thermal,** thermic; **toasty** <nf>, warm as toast; **sunny,** sunshiny, sunbaked; fair, mild, genial; summery, aestival; **temperate,** warmish; balmy, **tropical,** equatorial, subtropical; semitropical; **tepid, lukewarm,** luke; room-temperature; blood-warm, blood-hot; unfrozen

25 **hot, heated, torrid, thermal,** thermic; **sweltering,** sweltry, canicular; **burning,** parching, scorching, searing, scalding, blistering, baking, roasting, toasting, broiling, grilling, simmering, sizzling; **boiling,** seething, ebullient; **piping hot,** scalding hot, burning hot, roasting hot, scorching hot, sizzling hot, smoking hot; **red-hot,** white-hot; ardent; flushed, sweating, sweaty, sudorific; overwarm, overhot, overheated; hot as fire, hot as a three-dollar pistol <nf>, hot as hell *or* blazes, hot as the hinges of hell, hot enough to roast an ox, hot enough to fry an egg on, so hot you can fry eggs on the sidewalk <nf>, like a furnace *or* an oven; feverish

26 **fiery,** igneous, firelike, pyric; combustive, conflagrative

27 **burning, ignited,** kindled, enkindled, **blazing,** ablaze, ardent, flaring, flaming, aflame, inflamed, alight, **afire, on fire,** in flames, in a blaze, flagrant <old>; conflagrant, comburent; live, living; molten; **glowing,** aglow, in a glow, incandescent, candescent, candent; sparking, scintillating, scintillant, ignescent; **flickering,** aflicker, guttering; unquenched, unextinguished; slow-burning; **smoldering; smoking,** fuming, reeking

28 **sultry, stifling, suffocating, stuffy, close,** oppressive, steamy; **humid, sticky** <nf>, **muggy**

29 warm-blooded, hot-blooded

30 isothermal, isothermic; centigrade, Fahrenheit

31 diathermic, diathermal, transcalent; adiathermic, adiathermal, athermanous

32 pyrological, pyrognostic, pyrotechnic *or* pyrotechnical; pyrogenic *or* pyrogenous *or* pyrogenetic; thermochemical; thermodynamic, thermodynamical

WORD ELEMENTS 33 igni-, pyr-, pyro-; therm-, thermo-, -thermous

34 **fireworks**

Bengali-light
bomb
candlebomb
cannon cracker
cap
Catherine wheel
chaser
cherry bomb
colored fire
cracker
cracker bonbon
firecracker
fizgig *or* fisgig
fizzer
flare
flowerpot
fountain
girandole
ladyfinger
mandarin cracker
maroon
pastille
peeoy
petard
pinwheel
rocket
Roman candle
serpent
six-inch salute
skyrocket

snake
sparkler
squib
tantrum
throwdown
torpedo
tourbillion
Vesuvius fountain
volcano
wheel
whiz-bang

1020 HEATING

NOUNS 1 **heating, warming,** calefaction, torrefaction, increase *or* raising of temperature; superheating; pyrogenesis; decalescence, recalescence; preheating; **heating system** <see list>, heating method; solar radiation, insolation; dielectric heating; induction heating; heat exchange; cooking 11

2 **boiling,** seething, **stewing,** ebullition, ebullience *or* ebulliency, coction; decoction; **simmering;** boil; simmer

3 **melting, fusion,** liquefaction, liquefying, liquescence, running; **thawing,** thaw; liquation; fusibility; thermoplasticity

4 **ignition, lighting,** lighting up *or* off, **kindling,** firing; reaching flash point *or* flashing point

5 **burning, combustion,** blazing, flaming; **scorching,** parching, singeing; **searing,** branding; **blistering,** vesication; **cauterization,** cautery; **incineration; cremation;** suttee, self-cremation, self-immolation; the stake, burning at the stake, *auto da fé* <Pg>; scorification; carbonization; oxidation, oxidization; calcination; cupellation; deflagration; distilling, distillation; refining, smelting; pyrolysis; cracking, thermal cracking, destructive distillation; **spontaneous combustion,** thermogenesis

6 **burn,** scald, scorch, singe; sear; brand; sunburn, sunscald; windburn; mat burn; first- *or* second- *or* third-degree burn

7 **incendiarism, arson,** torch job <nf>, fire-raising <Brit>; **pyromania;** pyrophilia; pyrolatry, fire worship

8 **incendiary, arsonist,** torcher <nf>; pyromaniac, firebug <nf>; pyrophile, fire buff <nf>; pyrolater, fire worshiper

9 **flammability, inflammability,** combustibility; spontaneous combustion

10 **heater, warmer; stove, oven, furnace; cooker,** cookery; firebox; tuyere, tewel <old>; burner, jet, gas jet, pilot light *or* burner, element, heating element, Bunsen burner; heat lamp; heating pipe, steam pipe, hot-water pipe; heating duct, caliduct

11 **fireplace, hearth,** ingle; **fireside,** hearthside, ingleside, inglenook, ingle cheek <Scot>, chimney corner; hearthstone; hob, hub; fireguard, fireboard, fire screen, fender; chimney, chimney piece, chimney-breast, chimney-pot, chimney-stack, flue, grate; smokehole; brazier, kiln, smelter, forge; pyre

12 **fire iron; andiron,** firedog; tongs, pair of tongs, fire tongs, coal tongs; poker, stove poker, salamander, fire hook; lifter, stove lifter; pothook, crook, crane, chain; trivet, tripod; spit, turnspit; grate, grating; gridiron, grid, griddle, grill, griller; damper

13 **incinerator,** cinerator, burner; solid-waste incinerator, garbage incinerator; **crematory,** cremator, crematorium, burning ghat; calcinatory

14 **blowtorch,** blowlamp <Brit>, blast lamp, torch, alcohol torch, butane torch; soldering torch; blowpipe; **burner; welder;** acetylene torch *or* welder, cutting torch *or* blowpipe, oxyacetylene blowpipe *or* torch, welding blowpipe *or* torch

15 cauterant, cauterizer, cauter, cautery, thermocautery, actual cautery; hot iron, **branding iron,** brand iron, brand; moxa; electrocautery; **caustic, corrosive,** mordant, escharotic, potential cautery; acid; lunar caustic; radium

16 <products of combustion> scoria, sullage, slag, dross; **ashes,** ash; **cinder,** clinker, coal; coke, charcoal, brand, lava, carbon, calx; **soot,** smut, coom <Brit nf>; **smoke,** smudge, fume, reek

VERBS 17 **heat,** raise *or* increase the temperature, heat up, hot *or* hot up <Brit>, **warm,** fire, fire up, stoke up; chafe; take the chill off; tepefy; gas-heat, oil-heat, hot-air-heat, hot-water-heat, steam-heat, electric-heat, solar-heat; superheat; overheat; preheat; **reheat,** recook, warm over *or* up; mull; steam; foment; cook 11.5; glow; cook, roast, toast, bake, braise, broil, fry

18 <metaphors> **excite, inflame;** incite, **kindle, arouse** 375.17,19; anger, **enrage**

19 insolate, sun-dry; **sun,** bask, bask in the sun, sun oneself, sunbathe, suntan, get a tan, tan

20 **boil, stew, simmer, seethe**; distill; scald, parboil, steam

21 **melt,** melt down, liquefy; **run,** colliquate, **fuse,** flux; refine, smelt; render; **thaw,** thaw out, unfreeze; defrost, de-ice

22 **ignite, set fire to, fire, set on fire, set alight, kindle,** enkindle, inflame, **light,** light up, strike a light, put a match *or* torch to, torch <nf>, touch off, **burn,** conflagrate; **build a fire;** rekindle, relight, relume; feed, feed the fire, **stoke,** stoke the fire, add fuel to the flame; bank; poke *or* stir the fire, blow up the fire, fan the flame; open the draft; reduce to ashes

23 **catch fire,** catch on fire, catch, take fire, **burn, flame,** combust, blaze, **blaze up, burst into flames,** go up in flames

24 **burn,** torrefy, **scorch, parch, sear; singe,** swinge; **blister,** vesicate; **cauterize,** brand, burn in; char, coal, carbonize; scorify; calcine; pyrolyze, crack; solder, weld, fuse, lag; vulcanize; cast, found; oxidize, oxidate; deflagrate; cupel; burn off; blaze, flame 1019.22

25 **burn up,** incendiarize, **incinerate, cremate,** consume, burn *or* reduce to ashes, **burn to a crisp,** burn to a cinder; **burn down,** burn to the ground, **go up in smoke;** burn at the stake

ADJS 26 **heating, warming,** chafing, calorific; calefactory, calefactive, calefacient, calorifacient, calorigenic; fiery, burning 1018.25,27; cauterant, cauterizing; calcinatory

27 **inflammatory,** inflammative, **inflaming, kindling,** enkindling, lighting; **incendiary,** incendive; arsonous

28 **flammable, inflammable, combustible,** burnable

29 **heated,** het *or* het up <nf>, hotted up <Brit>, **warmed,** warmed up, centrally heated, gas-heated, oil-heated, kerosene-heated, hot-water-heated, hot-air-heated, steam-heated, solar-heated, electric-heated, baseboard-heated; superheated; overheated; preheated; **reheated,** recooked, **warmed-over,** *réchauffé* <Fr>; hot 1019.25

30 **burned, burnt,** burned to the ground, incendiarized, torched <nf>, burned-out *or* -down, gutted; **scorched, blistered, parched, singed, seared, charred,** pyrographic, adust; sunburned; **burnt-up,** incinerated, cremated, consumed, consumed by fire; ashen, ashy, carbonized, pyrolyzed, pyrolytic

31 **molten, melted,** fused, liquefied; liquated; meltable, fusible; thermoplastic

32 **heating systems**

baseboard heating
central heating
convection heating
electric heating
furnace heating
gas heating
heat pump
hot-air heating
hot-water heating
hypocaust
kerosene heating
oil heating
panel heating
radiant heating
solar heating
space heating
steam heating
stove heating

1021 FUEL

NOUNS 1 **fuel** <see list>, energy source; heat source, firing, combustible *or* inflammable *or* flammable material, burnable, combustible, inflammable, flammable; fossil fuel, nonrenewable energy *or* fuel source; alternate *or* alternative energy source, renewable energy *or* fuel source; solar energy, solar radiation, insolation; wind energy; geothermal energy, geothermal heat, geothermal gradient; synthetic fuels *or* synfuels; solid fuel; fuel starter; fuel additive, dope, fuel dope; propellant; **oil** 1054; gas 1067

2 slack, coal dust, coom *or* comb <Brit nf>, culm

3 **firewood,** stovewood, wood; woodpile; **kindling,** kindlings, kindling wood; brush, brushwood; fagot, bavin <Brit>; log, backlog, yule log *or* yule clog <old>

4 **lighter,** light, igniter, sparker; pocket lighter, cigar *or* cigarette lighter, butane lighter; **torch,** flambeau, taper, spill; brand, **firebrand;** portfire; **flint,** flint *and* steel; **detonator,** fuse, spark plug, ignition system

5 **match,** matchstick, lucifer; friction match, locofoco *and* vesuvian *and* vesta *and* fusee *and* Congreve *or* Congreve match <old>; safety match; matchbook

6 **tinder,** touchwood; **punk,** spunk, German tinder, amadou; tinder fungus; pyrotechnic sponge; tinderbox

7 renewable energy, soft energy; solar power, solar energy; photovoltaic cell, solar cell; wind power; geothermal energy; water power, hydroelectric power; wave power, tidal power; biomass

VERBS 8 **fuel,** fuel up; fill up, top off; refuel; coal, oil; **stoke, feed,** add fuel to the flame; detonate, explode

ADJS 9 **fuel,** energy, heat; fossil-fuel; alternate- *or* alternative-energy; oil-fired, coal-fired, etc; gas-powered, oil-powered, wind-powered, etc; water-driven, hydroelectric, etc; wood-burning; coaly, carbonaceous, carboniferous; anthracite; clean-burning; bituminous; high-sulfur; lignitic; peaty; gas-guzzling

10 **fuels**

alcohol
anthracite *or* hard coal
aviation fuel *or* gas
benzine
bituminous *or* soft coal
blind coal
briquette *or* briquet
broken coal
buckwheat coal
butane
cannel *or* cannel coal
carbon
charcoal
chestnut coal
coal
coal gas
coke
crude oil
diesel fuel *or* diesel *or* diesel oil *or* derv <Brit>
egg coal
electricity
ethane
ethanol
ethyl gasoline
flaxseed coal
gas carbon
gasohol
gasoline *or* gas
glance coal
grate coal
heptane
hexane
high-octane gasoline
isooctane
jet fuel
kerosene *or* paraffin <Brit>
leaded gasoline
lignite *or* brown coal
liquid oxygen
lump coal
methane
methanol
motor fuel
mustard-seed coal
naphtha
natural gas
nuclear power *and* nuclear energy
nut coal
octane
oil *or* petroleum
pea coal
peat *or* turf
pentane
petrol <Brit>

premium *or* high-test gasoline
producer *or* air gas
propane
propellant
regular gasoline
renewable energy
rocket fuel
sea coal
solar power
steamboat coal
stove coal
unleaded *or* lead-free gasoline
water power
white gasoline
wind power
wood

1022 INCOMBUSTIBILITY

NOUNS **1** **incombustibility, uninflammability,** noninflammability, **nonflammability;** unburnableness; fire resistance

2 **extinguishing,** extinguishment, extinction, **quenching,** dousing <nf>, **snuffing,** putting out; **choking, damping, stifling, smothering,** smotheration; controlling; fire fighting; going out, dying, burning out, flame-out, burnout

3 **extinguisher, fire extinguisher;** fire apparatus, fire engine, hook-and-ladder, ladder truck; ladder pipe, snorkel, deluge set, deck gun; pumper, superpumper; **foam,** carbon-dioxide foam, Foamite <trademark>, foam extinguisher; drypowder extinguisher; carbon tetrachloride, carbon tet; water, soda, acid, wet blanket; sprinkler, automatic sprinkler, sprinkler system, sprinkler head; hydrant, fire hydrant, fireplug; fire hose

4 **fire fighter, fireman,** fire-eater <nf>; pumpman; forest fire fighter, fire warden, fire-chaser, smokechaser, smokejumper; volunteer fireman, vamp <nf>; fire department, fire brigade <chiefly Brit>

5 **fireproofing;** fire resistance; fireproof *or* fire-resistant *or* fire-resisting *or* fire-resistive *or* fire-retardant material, fire retardant; asbestos; amianthus, earth flax, mountain flax; asbestos curtain, fire wall; fire break, fire line

VERBS **6** **fireproof,** flameproof

7 **fight fire; extinguish, put out, quench,** out, douse <nf>, **snuff,** snuff out, blow out, stamp out; stub out, dinch <nf>; **choke, damp, smother, stifle,** slack; bring under control, contain

8 **burn out, go out, die,** die out *or* down *or* away; fizzle *and* **fizzle out** <nf>; flame out

ADJS **9** **incombustible, noncombustible, uninflammable,** noninflammable, noncombustive, **nonflammable,** unburnable; asbestine, asbestous, asbestoid, asbestoidal; amianthine

10 **fireproof, flameproof,** fireproofed, fire-retarded, fire-resisting *or* -resistant *or* -resistive, fire-retardant

11 **extinguished,** quenched, snuffed, **out;** contained, under control

1023 COLD

NOUNS **1** **cold, coldness; coolness,** coolth, freshness; low temperature, arctic temperature, drop *or* decrease in temperature, lack of heat; **chilliness,** nippiness, freshness, crispness, briskness, sharpness, bite; **chill, nip,** sharp air; **frigidity, iciness,** frostiness, extreme *or* intense cold, gelidity, algidity, algidness; **rawness,** bleakness, keenness, sharpness, bitterness, severity, inclemency, rigor; freezing point; cryology; cryonics; cryogenics; absolute zero

2 <sensation of cold> **chill,** chilliness, chilling; shivering, chills, **shivers,** cold shivers, shakes, didders <Brit nf>, dithers, chattering of the teeth; creeps, **cold creeps** <nf>; **gooseflesh, goose pimples,** goose *or* duck bumps <nf>, horripilation; **frostbite, chilblains,** kibe, cryopathy; ache, aching; ice-cream headache

3 **cold weather,** bleak weather, raw weather, bitter weather, wintry weather, arctic weather, **freezing weather,** zero weather, subzero weather; **cold wave,** snap, **cold snap,** cold spell, cold front; **freeze,** frost, hard frost, deep freeze, arctic frost, big freeze, hard freeze; winter, wintriness, depths of winter, hard winter, arctic conditions; wintry wind 318.8; coolness, chill, nip in the air, chilliness, nippiness; chill factor, wind-chill factor; ice age

4 <cold place> Siberia, Hell, Novaya Zemlya, Alaska, Iceland, the Hebrides, Greenland, "Greenland's icy mountains"—Reginald Heber, the Yukon, Tierra del Fuego, Lower Slobbovia <Al Capp>; North Pole, South Pole; Frigid Zones; the Arctic, Arctic Circle *or* Zone; Antarctica, the Antarctic; Antarctic Circle *or* Zone; tundra; the freezer, the deep-freeze, igloo

5 **ice,** frozen water; ice needle *or* crystal; **icicle,** iceshockle <Brit nf>; cryosphere; ice sheet, ice field, ice barrier, ice front; **floe, ice floe,** sea ice, ice island, ice raft, ice pack; ice foot, ice belt; shelf ice, sheet ice, pack ice, bay ice, berg ice, field ice; **iceberg,** berg, growler; calf; snowberg; **icecap,** *jokul* <Iceland>; ice pinnacle, serac, nieve penitente; **glacier,** glacieret, glaciation, ice dike, "motionless torrents, silent cataracts"—Samuel Taylor Coleridge; piedmont glacier; icefall; ice banner; ice cave; **sleet,** glaze, glazed frost, verglas; snow ice; névé, black ice, granular snow, firn; ground ice, anchor ice, frazil; lolly; sludge, slob *or* slob ice <chiefly Can>; ice cubes; crushed ice; Dry Ice <trademark>, solid carbon dioxide; icequake; ice storm, freezing rain

6 **hail,** hailstone; soft hail, graupel, snow pellets, tapioca snow; **hailstorm**

7 **frost,** Jack Frost; **hoarfrost,** hoar, rime, rime frost, white frost; black frost; hard frost, sharp frost; killing frost; frost smoke; frost line; permafrost; silver frost; glaze frost; ground frost

8 **snow;** granular snow, corn snow, spring corn, spring snow, powder snow, wet snow, tapioca snow; **snowfall; snowstorm,** snow blast, snow squall, snow flurry, flurry, snow shower, blizzard, whiteout; **snowflake,** snow-crystal, flake, crystal; snow dust; **snowdrift,** snowbank, snow cover, snow blanket, snow mantle, snow wreath <Brit nf>, driven snow, drifting snow; snowcap; snow banner; snow blanket; snow bed, snowpack, snowfield, mantle of snow; snowscape; snowland; snowshed; snow line; snowball, snowman; snowslide, snowslip, avalanche; snow slush, **slush,** slosh, snowmelt, melt, meltwater; snowbridge; snow fence; snowhouse, igloo; mogul

VERBS 9 freeze, be cold, grow cold, lose heat; **shiver, quiver,** shiver to death, quake, shake, tremble, shudder, didder <Brit nf>, dither; **chatter; chill,** have a chill, have the cold shivers; **freeze,** freeze to death, freeze one's balls off <nf>, die *or* perish with the cold, horripilate, have goose pimples, have goose *or* duck bumps <nf>; have chilblains; get frostbite

10 <make cold> **freeze, chill,** chill to the bone *or* marrow, make one shiver, make one's teeth chatter; **nip,** bite, cut, **pierce,** penetrate, penetrate to the bone, go through *or* right through; freshen; air-condition; glaciate; freeze-dry; **freeze** 1024.11; frost, frostbite; numb, benumb; **refrigerate** 1023.10

11 **hail, sleet, snow;** snow in; snow under; **frost,** ice, ice up, ice over, glaze, glaze over, freeze over

ADJS 12 **cool,** coolish, temperate; chill, **chilly,** parky <Brit nf>; **fresh,** brisk, crisp, bracing, sharpish, **invigorating,** stimulating

13 **unheated,** unwarmed; unmelted, unthawed

14 **cold, freezing,** freezing cold, **crisp, brisk,** nipping, **nippy, snappy** <nf>, **raw, bleak, keen, sharp,** bitter, biting, pinching, cutting, **piercing,** penetrating, perishing; inclement, severe, rigorous; snowcold; sleety; slushy; **icy,** icelike, **ice-cold,** glacial, ice-encrusted; cryospheric; supercooled; **frigid,** bitter *or* bitterly cold, gelid, algid; below zero, subzero; numbing; **wintry,** wintery, winterlike, winterbound, hiemal, brumal, hibernal; **arctic,** Siberian, boreal, hyperborean; stone-cold, cold as death, cold as ice, cold as marble, cold as charity, "cold as the north side of a gravestone in winter"—Anon

15 <nf terms> **cold as hell,** cold as a welldigger's ass, cold as a witch's tit *or* kiss, cold enough to freeze the tail *or* balls off a brass monkey, cold as a bastard *or* a bitch, colder than hell *or* the deuce *or* the devil

16 <feeling cold> **cold, freezing; cool, chilly,** nippy; **shivering,** shivery, shaky, dithery; algid, aguish, aguey; chattering, with chattering teeth; **frozen** 1023.14, half-frozen, frozen to death, chilled to the bone, blue with cold, *figé de froid* <Fr>, so cold one could spit ice cubes

17 **frosty,** frostlike; **frosted,** frosted-over, frost-beaded, frost-covered, frost-chequered, rimed, **hoary,** hoar-frosted, rime-frosted; frost-riven, frost-rent; frosty-faced, frosty-whiskered; frostbound, frost-fettered

18 **snowy,** snowlike, niveous, nival; snow-blown, snow-drifted, snow-driven; **snow-covered,** snow-clad, snow-mantled, snow-robed, snow-blanketed, snow-sprinkled, snow-lined, snow-encircled, snow-laden, snow-loaded, snow-hung; **snow-capped,** snow-peaked, snow-crested, snow-crowned, snow-tipped, snow-topped; snow-bearded; snow-feathered; snow-still

19 frozen out *or* in, **snowbound,** snowed-in, **icebound**

20 **cold-blooded,** hypothermic, heterothermic, poikilothermic; cryogenic; cryological

WORD ELEMENTS 21 cryo- *or* kryo-, frigo-, psychro-; glacio-; chio-, chion-

1024 REFRIGERATION

<reduction of temperature>

NOUNS 1 **refrigeration,** infrigidation, reduction of temperature; **cooling, chilling; freezing,** glacification, glaciation, congelation, congealment; refreezing, regelation; mechanical refrigeration, electric refrigeration, electronic refrigeration, gas refrigeration; food freezing, quick freezing, deep freezing, sharp freezing, blast freezing, dehydrofreezing; adiabatic expansion, adiabatic absorption, adiabatic demagnetization; cryogenics; super-cooling; air conditioning, **air cooling,** *climatisation* <Fr>; climate control

2 refrigeration anesthesia, crymoanesthesia, hypothermia *or* hypothermy; crymotherapy, cryo-aerotherapy; cold cautery, cryocautery; cryopathy

3 **cooler,** chiller; water cooler, air cooler, air conditioner; ventilator; fan; surface cooler; ice cube, ice pail *or* bucket, wine cooler; ice bag, ice pack, cold pack

4 **refrigerator,** refrigeratory, **icebox,** ice chest; Frigidaire <trademark>, fridge <nf>, electric refrigerator, electronic refrigerator, gas refrigerator, refrigerator-freezer; refrigerator car, refrigerator truck, reefer <nf>; freezer ship; ice house

5 **freezer, deep freeze,** deep-freezer, quick-freezer, sharp-freezer; ice-cream freezer; ice machine, ice-cube machine, freezing machine, refrigerating

machine *or* engine; **ice plant,** icehouse, refrigerating plant

6 **cold storage; frozen-food locker,** locker, freezer locker, locker plant; coolhouse; coolerman; frigidarium; cooling tower

7 <cooling agent> **coolant; refrigerant;** cryogen; ice, Dry Ice <trademark>, ice cubes; freezing mixture, liquid air, ammonia, carbon dioxide, Freon <trademark>, ether; ethyl chloride; liquid air, liquid oxygen *or* lox, liquid nitrogen, liquid helium, etc

8 **antifreeze,** coolant, radiator coolant, alcohol, ethylene glycol

9 refrigerating engineering, refrigerating engineer

VERBS 10 **refrigerate; cool, chill;** refresh, freshen; ice, ice-cool; water-cool, air-cool; **air-condition;** ventilate

11 **freeze** 1023.9,10, ice, glaciate, congeal; **deep-freeze,** quick-freeze, sharp-freeze, blast-freeze; freeze solid; freeze-dry; **nip,** blight, blast; refreeze, regelate

ADJS 12 **refrigerative,** refrigeratory, refrigerant, frigorific, algific; **cooling, chilling; freezing,** congealing; quick-freezing, deep-freezing, sharp-freezing, blast-freezing; freezable, glaciable

13 **cooled, chilled; air-conditioned;** iced, ice-cooled; air-cooled, water-cooled; super-cooled

14 **frozen,** frozen solid, glacial, gelid, congealed; icy, ice-cold, icy-cold, ice, icelike; deep-frozen, quick-frozen, sharp-frozen, blast-frozen; frostbitten, frostnipped

15 antifreeze, antifreezing

1025 LIGHT

NOUNS 1 **light,** radiant *or* luminous energy, visible radiation, radiation in the visible spectrum, **illumination,** illuminance, **radiation, radiance** *or* radiancy, irradiance *or* irradiancy, irradiation, emanation; "God's first creature"—Francis Bacon, "the first of painters"—Emerson, "the white radiance of eternity"—Shelley; light wave; highlight; sidelight; photosensitivity; light source 1026; **invisible light,** black light, infrared light, ultraviolet light

2 **shine,** shininess, **luster, sheen, gloss,** glint, glister; **glow, gleam,** flush, sunset glow; light emission; lambency; **incandescence,** candescence; shining light; afterglow; skylight, air glow, night glow, day glow, twilight glow

3 **lightness, luminousness,** lightedness, luminosity, luminance; **lucidity,** lucence *or* lucency, translucence *or* translucency; backlight

4 **brightness, brilliance** *or* brilliancy, **splendor,** radiant splendor, **glory, radiance** *or* radiancy, resplendence *or* resplendency, **vividness,** luminance, contrast, flamboyance *or* flamboyancy; effulgence, refulgence *or* refulgency, fulgentness, fulgidity, fulgor; **glare,** blare, blaze; bright light, brilliant light, blazing light, glaring light, dazzling light, blinding light; TV lights, Klieg light, footlights, house lights; streaming light, flood of light, burst of light

5 **ray,** radiation 1037, **beam, gleam,** leam <Scot>, **stream, streak, pencil, patch,** ray of light, beam of light; "slant of light"—Emily Dickinson; ribbon, ribbon of light, streamer, stream of light; electromagnetic radiation; violet ray, ultraviolet ray, infrared ray, X ray, gamma ray, invisible radiation; actinic ray *or* light, actinism; atomic beam, atomic ray; laser beam; solar rays; photon; visible spectrum

6 **flash, blaze, flare, flame, gleam, glint, glance;** blaze *or* flash *or* gleam of light; green flash; solar flare, solar prominence, facula; Bailey's beads

7 **glitter, glimmer, shimmer, twinkle, blink; sparkle,** spark; **scintillation,** scintilla; coruscation; **glisten,** glister, spangle, tinsel, glittering, glimmering, shimmering, twinkling; stroboscopic *or* strobe light <nf>, blinking; firefly, glowworm

8 **flicker, flutter, dance, quiver;** flickering, fluttering, bickering, guttering, dancing, quivering, lambency; wavering *or* flickering light, play, play of light, dancing *or* glancing light; light show; "the lambent easy light"—Dryden

9 **reflection;** reflected *or* incident light; reflectance, albedo; blink, iceblink, ice sky, snowblink, waterblink, water sky

10 **daylight,** dayshine, day glow, light of day; day, daytime, daytide; **natural light; sunlight, sunshine,** shine; noonlight, white light, midday sun, noonday *or* noontide light, "the blaze of noon"—Milton; broad day *or* daylight, full sun; bright time; dusk, twilight 315.3; the break *or* crack of dawn, cockcrow, dawn 314.4; sunburst, sunbreak; **sunbeam,** sun spark, ray of sunshine; green flash; solar energy

11 **moonlight, moonshine,** moonglow; **moonbeam,** moonrise

12 **starlight,** starshine; earthshine

13 **luminescence;** luciferin, luciferase; phosphor, luminophor; **ignis fatuus, will-o'-the-wisp,** will-with-the-wisp, wisp, jack-o'-lantern, marshfire; friar's lantern; fata morgana; fox fire; St Elmo's light *or* fire, corona discharge, wild fire, witch fire, corposant; double corposant; bioluminescence, thermoluminescence, fluorescence, phosphorescence, radioluminescence

14 **halo, nimbus,** aura, **aureole,** circle, ring, glory; **rainbow,** solar halo, lunar halo, ring around the

sun *or* moon; white rainbow *or* fogbow; **corona,** solar corona, lunar corona; parhelion, parhelic circle *or* ring, mock sun, sun dog; anthelion, antisun, countersun; paraselene, mock moon, moon dog

15 <nebulous light> nebula 1072.7; zodiacal light, gegenschein, counterglow, streamers

16 polar lights, **aurora; northern lights, aurora borealis,** merry dancers; southern lights, **aurora australis;** aurora polaris; aurora glory; streamer *or* curtain *or* arch aurora; polar ray

17 **lightning, flash** *or* **stroke of lightning,** fulguration, fulmination, bolt, lightning strike, **bolt of lightning,** streak, bolt from the blue, **thunderbolt,** thunderstroke, thunderball, fireball, firebolt, levin bolt *or* brand; “the lightning's gleaming rod”—Joaquin Miller, fork *or* forked lightning, chain lightning, globular *or* ball lightning, summer *or* heat lightning, sheet lightning, dark lightning; Jupiter Fulgur *or* Fulminator; Thor

18 **iridescence,** opalescence, nacreousness, pearliness; **rainbow;** nacre, mother-of-pearl; nacreous *or* mother-of-pearl cloud

19 **lighting, illumination,** artificial light *or* lighting; lamp light, arc light, calcium light, candlelight, electric light, fluorescent light, gaslight, incandescent light, mercury-vapor light, neon light, sodium light, strobe light, torchlight, streetlight, floodlight, spotlight; Christmas tree lights, safety light; tonality; light and shade, black and white, chiaroscuro, clairobscure, contrast, highlights; photoemission, light-emitting diode *or* LED, liquid-crystal display *or* LCD, light pen

20 **illuminant,** luminant; electricity; gas, illuminating gas; oil, petroleum, benzine; gasoline, petrol <Brit>; kerosene, paraffin <Brit>, coal oil; light source 1025; fire, lantern

21 <measurement of light> **candle power,** luminous intensity, luminous power, luminous flux, flux, intensity, light; quantum, **light quantum, photon;** unit of light, unit of flux; lux, candle-meter, lumen meter, lumeter, lumen, candle lumen; **exposure meter,** light meter, ASA scale, Scheiner scale

22 <light units> *bougie décimale* <Fr>, British candle, candle, candle-foot, candle-hour, decimal candle, foot-candle, Hefner candle, international candle, lamp-hour, lumen-hour

23 <science of light> photics, photology, photometry; **optics,** geometrical optics, physical optics; dioptrics, catoptrics, fiber optics; actinology, actinometry; heliology, heliometry, heliography

VERBS 24 **shine,** shine forth, **burn, give light,** incandesce; glow, beam, gleam, glint, luster, glance; **flash, flare, blaze, flame,** fulgurate; **radiate,** shoot, shoot out rays, send out rays; spread *or* diffuse light; be bright, shine brightly, beacon; **glare;** daze, blind, dazzle, bedazzle

25 **glitter, glimmer, shimmer, twinkle, blink,** spangle, tinsel, coruscate; **sparkle,** spark, **scintillate; glisten,** glister, glisk <Scot>

26 **flicker,** bicker, gutter, **flutter, waver, dance,** play, quiver

27 **luminesce,** phosphoresce, fluoresce; iridesce, opalesce

28 **grow light,** grow bright, light, **lighten,** brighten; dawn, break

29 **illuminate,** illumine, illume, luminate, **light, light up, lighten,** enlighten, brighten, brighten up, irradiate; bathe *or* flood with light; relumine, relume; **shed light upon,** cast *or* throw light upon, shed luster on, shine upon, overshine; spotlight, highlight; floodlight; beacon

30 **strike a light,** light, **turn** *or* **switch on the light,** open the light <nf>, make a light, shine a light

ADJS 31 **luminous,** luminant, luminative, luminificent, luminiferous, luciferous *or* lucific <old>, luciform, illuminant; **incandescent,** candescent; **lustrous,** orient; **radiant,** irradiative; **shining,** shiny, burning, lamping, streaming; **beaming,** beamy; **gleaming,** gleamy, glinting; **glowing,** aglow, suffused, blushing, flushing; rutilant, rutilous; **sunny, sunshiny,** bright and sunny, light as day; starry, starlike, starbright

32 **light,** lightish, lightsome; **lucid,** lucent, luculent, relucent; translucent, translucid, pellucid, diaphanous, transparent; **clear,** serene; **cloudless,** unclouded, unobscured

33 **bright, brilliant, vivid, splendid,** splendorous, splendent, **resplendent,** bright and shining; fulgid <old>, fulgent, effulgent, refulgent; **flamboyant,** flaming; **glaring,** glary, garish; **dazzling,** bedazzling, blinding, pitiless; shadowless, shadeless

34 **shiny,** shining, **lustrous, glossy,** glassy, *glacé* <Fr>, bright as a new penny, **sheeny, polished,** burnished, shined

35 **flashing,** flashy, **blazing, flaming, flaring, burning,** fulgurant, fulgurating; aflame, ablaze; meteoric

36 **glittering, glimmering, shimmering, twinkling, blinking, glistening,** glistering; glittery, glimmery, glimmerous, shimmery, twinkly, blinky, spangly, tinselly; **sparkling, scintillating,** scintillant, scintillescent, coruscating, coruscant

37 **flickering,** bickering, **fluttering, wavering, dancing,** playing, quivering, lambent; flickery, flicky <nf>, aflicker, fluttery, wavery, quivery; blinking, flashing, stroboscopic

38 **iridescent,** opalescent, nacreous, pearly, pearl-like; rainbowlike

39 **luminescent,** photogenic; autoluminescent, bioluminescent

40 **illuminated,** luminous, **lightened,** enlightened, brightened, **lighted,** lit, **lit up,** well-lit, flooded *or* bathed with light, floodlit; irradiated, irradiate; **alight, glowing,** aglow, lambent, suffused with light; ablaze, blazing, in a blaze, fiery; lamplit, lanternlit, candlelit, torchlit, gaslit, firelit; sunlit, moonlit, starlit; spangled, bespangled, tinseled, studded; starry, starbright, star-spangled, star-studded

41 **illuminating,** illumining, **lighting, lightening,** brightening

42 **luminary,** photic; photologic *or* photological; photometric *or* photometrical; heliological, heliographic; actinic, photoactinic; catoptric *or* catoptrical; luminal

43 photosensitive; photophobic; phototropic

WORD ELEMENTS 44 phot-, photo-, lumin-, lumino-, lumini-; fluoro- *or* fluori-; irido-; actino-, actini-

1026 LIGHT SOURCE

NOUNS 1 **light source,** source of light, **luminary,** illuminator, luminant, illuminant, incandescent body *or* point, **light,** glim; **lamp,** light bulb, electric light bulb, lantern, candle, taper, torch, flame; match; **fluorescent light, fluorescent tube,** fluorescent lamp; starter, ballast; “a lamp unto my feet, and a light unto my path”—Bible; fire 1019.13; sun, moon, stars 1072.4

2 **candle,** taper; dip, farthing dip, tallow dip; tallow candle; wax candle, bougie; bayberry candle; rush candle, rushlight; corpse candle; votary candle

3 **torch,** flaming torch, flambeau, cresset, link <old>; **flare,** signal flare, fusee; beacon

4 **traffic light** *or* light, stop-and-go light; stop *or* red light, go *or* green light, caution *or* amber light, pedestrian light

5 **firefly,** lightning bug, lampyrid, **glowworm,** fireworm; fire beetle; lantern fly, candle fly; luciferin, luciferase; phosphor, luminophor

6 **chandelier,** gasolier, electrolier, hanging *or* ceiling fixture, luster; corona, corona lucis, crown, circlet; light holder, light fixture, candlestick

7 **wick,** taper; candlewick, lampwick

1027 DARKNESS, DIMNESS

NOUNS 1 **darkness, dark, lightlessness; obscurity,** obscure, tenebrosity, tenebrousness, leadenness; **night** 315.4, dead of night, deep night; sunlessness, moonlessness, starlessness; **pitch-darkness,** pitch-blackness, utter *or* thick *or* total darkness, intense darkness, velvet darkness, Cimmerian *or* Stygian *or* Egyptian darkness, Stygian gloom, Erebus; “the suit of night”—Shakespeare, “darkness which may be felt”—Bible; **blackness,** swarthiness 38.2; darkest hour

2 **darkishness,** darksomeness, **duskiness,** duskness; **murkiness, murk; dimness,** dim, dimming; **semidarkness,** semidark, partial darkness, bad light, dim light, half-light, *demi-jour* <Fr>; gloaming, crepuscular light, **dusk,** twilight 314.4,315.3; romantic lighting, dimmed lights

3 **shadow, shade, shadiness;** umbra, umbrage, umbrageousness; thick *or* dark shade, gloom; mere shadow; penumbra; silhouette; skiagram, skiagraph

4 **gloom, gloominess, somberness,** sombrousness, somber; lowering, lower

5 **dullness, flatness,** lifelessness, **drabness, deadness,** somberness, **lackluster, lusterlessness,** lack of sparkle *or* sheen; matte, matte finish

6 **darkening, dimming, bedimming; obscuration,** obscurement, obumbration, obfuscation; eclipsing, occulting, blocking the light; **shadowing, shading,** overshadowing, overshading, overshadowment, **clouding,** overclouding, obnubilation, gathering of the clouds, overcast; blackening 38.5; extinguishment 1022.2; hatching, cross-hatching

7 **blackout,** dimout, brownout; fadeout

8 **eclipse,** occultation; total eclipse, partial eclipse, central eclipse, annular eclipse; solar eclipse, lunar eclipse

VERBS 9 **darken,** bedarken; **obscure,** obfuscate, obumbrate; **eclipse,** occult, occultate, block the light; **black out,** brown out; black, brown; blot out; **overcast,** darken over; **shadow, shade,** cast a shadow, spread a shadow *or* shade over, encompass with shadow, overshadow; **cloud,** becloud, encloud, cloud over, overcloud, obnubilate; gloom, begloom, somber, cast a gloom over, murk; **dim, bedim,** dim out; blacken 38.7

10 **dull,** mat, deaden; **tone down**

11 turn *or* switch off the light, close the light <nf>; extinguish 1022.7

12 **grow dark, darken,** darkle, lower *or* lour; gloom <old>, gloam <Scot>; dusk; **dim, grow dim;** go out

ADJS 13 **dark, black,** darksome, darkling; **lightless,** beamless, rayless, unlighted, **unilluminated,** unlit; obscure, caliginous, **obscured,** obfuscated, eclipsed, occulted, clothed *or* shrouded *or* veiled *or* cloaked *or* mantled in darkness; tenebrous, tenebrific, tenebrious, tenebrose; Cimmerian, Stygian; **pitch-dark,** pitch-black, pitchy, dark as pitch, “dark as a wolf's mouth”—Sir Walter Scott, dark as the inside of a black cat; ebon, ebony; night-dark, night-black, dark *or* black as night; night-clad, night-cloaked, night-enshrouded, night-mantled, night-veiled, night-hid, night-filled; sunless, moonless, starless

14 **gloomy,** gloomful <old>, glooming, dark and gloomy, Acheronian, Acherontic, **somber,** sombrous; lowering; **funereal;** stormy, cloudy, clouded, overcast; ill-lighted, ill-lit

15 **darkish,** darksome, **semidark; dusky,** dusk; fuscous, subfuscous, subfusc; **murky,** murksome, murk <old>; **dim,** dimmed, bedimmed, dimmish, dimpsy <Brit nf>, half-lit, semidark; dark-colored 38.9

16 **shadowy, shady, shadowed, shaded,** casting a shadow, tenebrous, darkling, umbral, umbrageous; overshadowed, overshaded, obumbrate, obumbrated; penumbral

17 **lackluster, lusterless; dull, dead,** deadened, **lifeless,** somber, **drab,** wan, **flat,** mat, murky

18 obscuring, obscurant

ADVS **19** **in the dark,** darkling, in darkness; in the night, in the dark of night, in the dead of night, at *or* by night; dimly, wanly

1028 SHADE

<a thing that shades>

NOUNS **1** **shade,** shader, **screen, light shield, curtain,** drape, drapery, blind, veil; **awning,** sunblind <Brit>; **sunshade,** parasol, **umbrella,** beach umbrella; cover 295.2; shadow 1027.3; partial eclipse

2 **eyeshade,** eyeshield, visor, bill; goggles, colored spectacles, smoked glasses, dark glasses, **sunglasses,** shades <nf>

3 **lamp shade;** moonshade; globe, light globe

4 **light filter,** filter, diffusing screen; smoked glass, frosted glass, ground glass; stained glass; butterfly; gelatin filter, celluloid filter; frosted lens; lens hood; sunscreen

VERBS **5** **shade, screen,** veil, curtain, shutter, draw the curtains, put up *or* close the shutters; cover 295.19; **shadow** 1027.9; cast a shadow

ADJS **6** **shading, screening,** veiling, curtaining; shadowing; covering

7 **shaded, screened,** veiled, curtained; sunproof; visored; shadowed, shady 1027.16

1029 TRANSPARENCY

NOUNS **1** **transparency,** transparence, transpicuousness, show-through, transmission *or* admission of light; **lucidity,** pellucidity, **clearness, clarity,** limpidity; nonopacity, uncloudedness; **crystallinity,** crystal-clearness; **glassiness,** glasslikeness, vitreousness, vitrescence; vitreosity, hyalescence; **diaphanousness,** diaphaneity, sheerness, thinness, **gossameriness,** filminess, gauziness; colorlessness

2 transparent substance, diaphane; **glass** <see list>, glassware, glasswork; vitrics; stemware; window, pane, windowpane, light, windowlight, shopwindow; vitrine; showcase, display case; watch crystal *or* glass; water, air

VERBS **3** be transparent, show through; pass *or* transmit light; vitrify; reveal; crystallize

ADJS **4** **transparent,** transpicuous, light-pervious; show-through, see-through, peekaboo, revealing; **lucid,** lucent, pellucid, **clear,** limpid; nonopaque, colorless, unclouded, **crystalline,** crystal, **crystal-clear,** clear as crystal; **diaphanous,** diaphane <old>, sheer, thin; **gossamer,** gossamery, filmy, flimsy, gauzy, open-textured; insubstantial

5 **glass, glassy,** glasslike, clear as glass, vitric, vitreous, vitriform, hyaline, hyalescent; hyalinocrystalline

WORD ELEMENTS **6** vitri-

7 **glass**

agate glass
antimony glass
arsenic glass
Baccarat glass
basalt glass
Bilbao glass
borax glass
blown glass
bone glass
bottle glass
bulletproof glass
camphor glass
carnival glass
Chevalier glass
coralene
cranberry glass
crown glass
cryolite glass
crystal *or* crystal glass
custard glass
cut glass
etched glass
Fiberglas <trademark>
flashed glass
flat glass
flint glass
float glass
Fostoria <trademark>
frosted glass
fused quartz
glass bead
glass brick
glass wool
ground glass
hobnail glass
ice glass
lace glass
Lalique glass
laminated glass *or* laminated safety glass
lead crystal
lead glass
milk glass
mirror
obsidian
opal glass
opaline
optical glass
ornamental glass
Orrefors glass
photosensitive glass
plastic glass
plate glass
porcelain glass
pressed glass
prism glass
Pyrex <trademark>
quartz glass
reinforced glass
rhinestone
rock crystal
ruby glass
safety glass
Sandwich glass
satin glass
sheet glass
show glass
Silex glass <trademark>
stained glass
Steuben glass
Swedish glass
Syracuse watch glass

tempered glass *or* tempered safety glass
uranium glass
uviol glass
Venetian glass
Vitaglass <trademark>
vitreous silica
Waterford glass
window glass
wire *or* wired glass

1030 SEMITRANSPARENCY

NOUNS 1 **semitransparency,** semipellucidity, semidiaphaneity; semiopacity

2 **translucence, translucency,** lucence, lucency, translucidity, pellucidity, lucidity; transmission *or* admission of light; milkiness, pearliness, opalescence

VERBS 3 **frost,** frost over

ADJS 4 **semitransparent,** semipellucid, semidiaphanous, semiopaque; frosty, frosted; milky, pearly, opalescent, opaline

5 **translucent,** lucent, translucid, lucid, pellucid; semitranslucent, semipellucid

1031 OPAQUENESS

NOUNS 1 **opaqueness,** opacity, intransparency, nontranslucency, imperviousness to light, adiaphanousness; roil, roiledness, turbidity, turbidness; cloudiness; blackness; **darkness, obscurity,** inscrutability, **dimness** 1027

VERBS 2 opaque, **darken, obscure** 1027.9; **cloud,** becloud; devitrify

ADJS 3 **opaque,** intransparent, nontransparent, nontranslucent, adiaphanous, impervious to light, impenetrable; **dark,** black, **obscure** 1026.13, lightproof; **cloudy,** roiled, roily, grumly <Scot>, turbid; covered; semiopaque

1032 ELECTRICITY, MAGNETISM

NOUNS 1 **electricity; electrical science** <see list>; **electrical** *or* **electric unit,** unit of measurement

2 **current, electric current** <see list>, current flow, amperage, electric stream *or* flow, juice <nf>

3 **electric** *or* **electrical field,** static field, electrostatic field, field of electrical force; tube of electric force, electrostatic tube of force; **magnetic field,** magnetic field of currents; **electromagnetic field;** variable field

4 **circuit, electrical circuit, path**

5 **charge, electric** *or* **electrical charge,** positive charge, negative charge; live wire

6 discharge, arc, electric discharge; **shock,** electroshock, galvanic shock

7 **magnetism,** magnetic attraction; **electromagnetism;** magnetization; diamagnetism, paramagnetism, ferromagnetism; residual magnetism, magnetic remanence; magnetic memory, magnetic retentiveness; magnetic elements; magnetic dip *or* inclination, magnetic variation *or* declination; hysteresis, magnetic hysteresis, hysteresis curve, magnetic friction, magnetic lag *or* retardation, magnetic creeping; permeability, magnetic permeability, magnetic conductivity; magnetic circuit, magnetic curves, magnetic figures; magnetic flux, gilbert, weber, maxwell; magnetic moment; magnetic potential; magnetic viscosity; magnetics

8 **polarity,** polarization; **pole, positive pole, anode, negative pole, cathode,** magnetic pole, magnetic axis; north pole, N pole; south pole, S pole

9 **magnetic force** *or* **intensity,** magnetic flux density, gauss, oersted; magnetomotive force; magnetomotivity; magnetic tube of force; line of force; **magnetic field, electromagnetic field**

10 electromagnetic radiation, light, radio wave, microwave, infrared radiation, visible radiation, ultraviolent radiation *or* UV, UVA, UVB, X-rays, gamma rays; radar; electromagnetic spectrum, visible spectrum, radio spectrum

11 **electroaffinity,** electric attraction; electric repulsion

12 voltage, volt, **electromotive force** *or* EMF, electromotivity, potential difference; **potential, electric potential;** tension, high tension, low tension

13 **resistance,** ohm, ohms, ohmage, ohmic resistance, electric resistance; surface resistance, skin effect, volume resistance; insulation resistance; reluctance, magnetic **reluctance** *or* resistance; specific reluctance, reluctivity; **reactance,** inductive reactance, capacitive reactance; **impedance**

14 **conduction,** electric conduction; **conductance,** conductivity, mho; superconductivity; gas conduction, ionic conduction, metallic conduction, liquid conduction, photoconduction; **conductor,** semiconductor, superconductor; **nonconductor,** dielectric, insulator

15 **induction;** electrostatic induction, magnetic induction, electromagnetic induction, electromagnetic induction of currents; self-induction, mutual induction; **inductance,** inductivity, henry

16 **capacitance,** capacity, farad; collector junction capacitance, emitter junction capacitance, resistance capacitance

17 **gain,** available gain, current gain, operational gain

18 **electric power, wattage,** watts; electric horsepower; hydroelectric power, hydroelectricity; power load

19 **powerhouse, power station, power plant,** central station; oil-fired power plant, coal-fired power

plant; hydroelectric plant; nuclear *or* atomic power plant; power grid, distribution system

20 **blackout, power failure,** power cut, power loss; **brownout,** voltage drop, voltage loss

21 **electrical device,** electrical appliance; **battery** <see list>, accumulator, storage battery, storage device; **electric meter,** meter; **wire, cable,** electric wire, electric cord, cord, power cord, power cable

22 **electrician, electrotechnician;** radio technician 1034.24; wireman; **lineman,** linesman; rigger; groundman; power worker

23 **electrotechnologist,** electrobiologist, electrochemist, electrometallurgist, electrophysicist, electrophysiologist, **electrical engineer**

24 **electrification,** electrifying, supplying electricity

25 **electrolysis;** ionization; galvanization, electrogalvanization; electrocoating, electroplating, electrogilding, electrograving, electroetching; ion, cation, anion; electrolyte, ionogen; nonelectrolyte

VERBS **26** **electrify, galvanize,** energize, **charge;** wire, wire up; shock; **generate,** step up, amplify, stiffen; step down; plug in, loop in; switch on *or* off, turn on *or* off, turn on *or* off the juice <nf>; short-circuit, short

27 **magnetize; electromagnetize;** demagnetize, degauss

28 **electrolyze;** ionize; galvanize, electrogalvanize; electroplate, electrogild

29 **insulate,** isolate; **ground**

ADJS **30** **electric, electrical, electrifying;** galvanic, voltaic; dynamoelectric, hydroelectric, photoelectric, piezoelectric, etc; electrothermal, electrochemical, electromechanical, electropneumatic, electrodynamic, static, electrostatic; electromotive; electrokinetic; electroscopic, galvanoscopic; electrometric, galvanometric, voltametric; **electrified,** electric-powered, battery-powered, cordless; solar-powered

31 **magnetic, electromagnetic;** diamagnetic, paramagnetic, ferromagnetic; **polar**

32 **electrolytic;** hydrolytic; ionic, anionic, cationic; ionogenic

33 **electrotechnical;** electroballistic, electrobiological, electrochemical, electrometallurgical, electrophysiological

34 **charged, electrified, live,** hot; high-tension, low-tension

35 **positive,** plus, electropositive; **negative,** minus, electronegative

36 **nonconducting,** nonconductive, insulating, dielectric

WORD ELEMENTS **37** electr-, electro-; rheo-; magnet-, magneto-

38 **electrical sciences**

electrical engineering
electroacoustics
electroballistics
electrobiology
electrochemistry
electrodynamics
electrokinematics
electrokinetics
electromagnetics
electromechanics
electrometallurgy
electrometry
electronics
electro-optics
electrophotomicrography
electrophysics
electrophysiology
electrostatics
electrotechnology *or* electrotechnics
electrotherapeutics *or* electrotherapy
electrothermics
galvanism
hydroelectricity
magnetics
magnetometry
photoelectricity
pyroelectricity
thermionics
thermoelectricity
voltaism

39 **electric currents**

absorption current
active current
alternating current *or* AC
conduction current
convection current
delta current
dielectric displacement current
direct current *or* DC
displacement current
eddy current
emission current
exciting current
free alternating current
galvanic current
high-frequency current
induced current
induction current
ionization current
juice <nf>
low-frequency current
magnetizing current
multiphase current
oscillating current
pulsating direct current
reactive current
rotary current
single-phase alternating current
stray current
supercurrent
thermionic current
thermoelectric current
three-phase alternating current
transient current
voltaic current
watt current
wattless *or* idle current

40 **batteries**

A battery
AA battery
AAA battery
acid cell
accumulator
air cell
alkaline cell
atomic battery
B battery
C battery
cell
D battery
dry battery
dry cell
electronic battery
fuel cell
lead-acid battery
Leyden battery
Leyden jar
mercury cell
nickel-cadmium battery
nine-volt battery
primary battery
primary cell
secondary battery
secondary cell
solar battery
solar cell
storage battery
storage cell
voltaic battery
voltaic cell
voltaic pile
wet cell

1033 ELECTRONICS

NOUNS **1** **electronics,** radionics, radioelectronics; electron physics, electrophysics, electron dynamics; electron optics; semiconductor physics, transistor physics; photoelectronics, photoelectricity; microelectronics; electronic engineering; avionics; electron microscopy; nuclear physics 1038; radio 1033; television 1035; radar 1036; automation 1041

2 <electron theory> electron theory of atoms, electron theory of electricity, electron theory of solids, free electron theory of metals, band theory of solids

3 **electron** <see list>, negatron, cathode particle, beta particle; thermion; electron capture, electron transfer; electron spin; electron state, energy level; ground state, excited state; electron pair, lone pair, shared pair, electron-positron pair, duplet, octet; electron cloud; shells, electron layers, electron shells, valence shell, valence electrons, subvalent electrons; electron affinity, relative electron affinity

4 **electronic effect;** Edison effect, thermionic effect, photoelectric effect

5 **electron emission; thermionic emission;** photoelectric emission, photoemission; collision emission, bombardment emission, secondary emission; field emission; grid emission, thermionic grid emission; electron ray, electron beam, cathode ray, anode ray, positive ray, canal ray; glow discharge, cathode glow, cathodoluminescence, cathodofluorescence; electron diffraction

6 electron flow, electron stream, electron *or* **electronic current;** electric current 1032.2; electron gas, electron cloud, space charge

7 **electron volt;** ionization potential; input voltage, output voltage; base signal voltage, collector signal voltage, emitter signal voltage; battery supply voltage; screen-grid voltage; inverse peak voltage; voltage saturation

8 **electronic circuit,** transistor circuit, semiconductor circuit; vacuum-tube circuit, thermionic tube circuit; **printed circuit, microcircuit; chip, silicon chip,** microchip; **circuitry**

9 **conductance,** electronic conductance; **resistance,** electronic resistance

10 **electron tube, vacuum tube,** tube, valve <Brit>, thermionic tube; radio tube, television tube; **special-purpose tube; vacuum tube component**

11 **photoelectric tube** *or* **cell, phototube,** photocell; electron-ray tube, **electric eye;** photosensitivity, **photosensitive devices**

12 **transistor,** semiconductor *or* solid-state device

13 **electronic device, electronic meter,** electronic measuring device; **electronic tester,** electronic testing device

14 **electronics engineer,** electronics physicist

ADJS **15** **electronic;** photoelectronic, **photoelectric;** autoelectronic; microelectronic; thermoelectronic; thermionic; anodic, cathodic; transistorized

16 **electrons**

beta particle
bonding electron
bound electron
conduction electron
d-electron
delta ray
excess electron
extranuclear electron
f-electron
free electron
negaton <old>
nuclear electron
orbital electron
p-electron
peripheral electron
photoelectron
planetary electron
positive electron
primary electron
recoil electron
secondary electron
s-electron
spinning electron
surface-bound electron
valence electron
wandering electron

1034 RADIO

NOUNS **1** **radio, wireless** <Brit>; radiotelephony, radiotelegraphy; radio communications, telecommunication 347.1

2 radiotechnology, radio engineering, communication engineering; radio electronics, radioacoustics; radiogoniometry; conelrad *or* Control of Electromagnetic Radiation for Civil Defense <old>, emergency warning network

3 **radio, radio receiver** <see list>; radio telescope; **radio set, receiver,** receiving set, **wireless** *and* wireless set <Brit>, set; cabinet, console, housing; chassis; receiver part

4 **radio transmitter** <see list>, **transmitter;** transmitter part; microphone 50.9, radiomicrophone; **antenna,** aerial

5 radiomobile, mobile transmitter, remote-pickup unit

6 **radio station,** transmitting station, **studio,** studio plant; AM station, FM station, shortwave station, ultrahigh-frequency station, clear-channel station; direction-finder station, RDF station; relay station, radio relay station, microwave relay station; amateur station, ham station <nf>, ham shack <nf>; pirate radio station, offshore station

7 **control room,** mixing room, monitor room, monitoring booth; **control desk,** console, master control desk, instrument panel, control panel *or* board, jack field, mixer <nf>

8 **network,** net, radio links, **hookup,** communications net, circuit, network stations, network affiliations, affiliated stations; coaxial network, circuit network, coast-to-coast hookup

9 **radio circuit,** radio-frequency circuit, audio-frequency circuit, superheterodyne circuit, amplifying circuit; electronic circuit 1033.8

10 **radio signal,** radio-frequency *or* RF signal, direct signal, shortwave signal, AM signal, FM signal; reflected signal, bounce; unidirectional signal, beam; signal-noise ratio; **radio-frequency** *or* **RF amplifier,** radio-frequency *or* RF stage

11 **radio wave,** electric wave, electromagnetic wave, hertzian wave; shortwave, long wave, microwave, high-frequency wave, low-frequency wave, medium wave; ground wave, sky wave; carrier, carrier wave; **wavelength**

12 **frequency;** radio frequency *or* RF, intermediate frequency *or* IF, audio frequency *or* AF; high frequency *or* HF; very high frequency *or* VHF; ultrahigh frequency *or* UHF; superhigh frequency *or* SHF; extremely high frequency *or* EHF; medium frequency *or* MF; low frequency *or* LF; very low frequency *or* VLF; upper frequencies, lower frequencies; **carrier frequency;** spark frequency; spectrum, frequency spectrum; cycles, CPS, hertz, Hz, **kilohertz, kilocycles; megahertz, megacycles**

13 **band,** frequency band, standard band, broadcast band, amateur band, citizens band, police band, shortwave band, FM band; **channel,** radio channel, broadcast channel

14 **modulation;** amplitude modulation *or* AM; frequency modulation *or* FM; phase modulation *or* PM; sideband, side frequency, single sideband, double sideband

15 **amplification,** radio-frequency *or* RF amplification, audio-frequency *or* AF amplification, intermediate-frequency *or* IF amplification, high-frequency amplification

16 **radio broadcasting, broadcasting,** the air waves, radiocasting; **airplay, airtime;** commercial radio, public radio, college radio, satellite radio, Citizens Band *or* CB, amateur radio, ham radio; AM broadcasting, FM broadcasting, shortwave broadcasting; **transmission, radio transmission;** direction *or* beam transmission, asymmetric *or* vestigial transmission; multipath transmission, multiplex transmission; mixing, volume control, sound *or* tone control, fade-in, fade-out; broadcasting regulation, Federal Communications Commission *or* FCC

17 **pickup,** outside pickup, **remote pickup,** spot pickup

18 **radiobroadcast, broadcast,** radiocast, **radio program;** rebroadcast, rerun; simulcast; electronic *or* broadcast journalism, broadcast news, newscast, newsbreak, newsflash; all-news radio *or* format; sportscast; **talk radio;** talk show, audience-participation show, call-in *or* phone-in show, interview show; network show; commercial program, commercial; sustaining program, sustainer; serial, soap opera <nf>; taped program, canned show <nf>, electrical transcription; sound effects

19 **signature, station identification,** call letters, call sign; theme song; **station break,** pause for station identification

20 **commercial,** commercial announcement, commercial message, message, **spot announcement,** spot *and* plug <nf>

21 **reception; fading,** fade-out; **drift,** creeping, crawling; **interference,** noise interference, station interference; **static,** atmospherics, noise; blasting, blaring; blind spot; **jamming,** deliberate interference

22 **radio listener,** listener-in *and* tuner-inner <nf>; radio audience, listeners, **listenership**

23 **broadcaster,** radiobroadcaster, radiocaster; newscaster, sportscaster; commentator, news commentator; anchor, news anchor, anchorman *or* anchorwoman; host, talk-show host, talk jockey <nf>; veejay *or* VJ; announcer, voiceover; disk jockey *or* DJ *or* deejay <nf>; shock jock <nf>; master of ceremonies, MC *or* emcee <nf>; program director, programmer; sound-effects man, sound man; American Federation of Radio *and* Television Artists *or* AFTRA

24 **radioman,** radio technician, radio engineer; radiotrician, radio electrician, radio repairman; **radio operator;** control engineer, volume engineer; mixer; **amateur radio operator, ham** *and* ham operator <nf>, radio amateur; Amateur Radio Relay League *or* ARRL; monitor; radiotelegrapher 347.16

VERBS **25 broadcast,** radiobroadcast, radiocast, simulcast, **radio, wireless** <Brit>, radiate, **transmit,** send; narrowcast; shortwave; beam; newscast, sportscast, put *or* go on the air, sign on; go off the air, sign off

26 **monitor,** check

27 **listen in, tune in;** tune up, tune down, tune out, tune off

ADJS **28 radio, wireless** <Brit>; radiosonic; neutrodyne; heterodyne; superheterodyne; shortwave; radio-frequency, audio-frequency; high-frequency, low-frequency, etc; radiogenic

29 **radio receivers**

all-wave receiver
AM receiver
AM tuner
AM-FM receiver
AM-FM tuner
antenna
aviation radio
battery radio
boom box <nf>
car radio
citizens band *or* CB radio *or* CB
clock radio
communications receiver
crystal set
direction finder
facsimile receiver *or* fax
FM receiver
FM tuner

ghetto blaster *or* box *or* beat box
headband receiver
loudspeaker
mobile radio
multiplex receiver
pager *or* beeper
pocket radio
portable radio
radar receiver
radio direction finder *or* RDF
radio-phonograph
radio-record player
radiophone
railroad radio
receiver
rechargeable-battery radio
regenerative receiver
relay receiver
scanner
ship-to-shore radio
shortwave receiver
single-signal receiver
six-band receiver
stereo receiver
superheterodyne
telephone receiver
three-way *or* three-power receiver
transceiver
transistor radio
transmit-receiver
transponder
tuner
two-way radio
universal receiver
VHF-FM receiver
walkie-talkie
Walkman <trademark>
weather radio
wireless

30 radio transmitters

AM transmitter
amateur *or* ham transmitter *or* rig <nf>
arc *or* spark transmitter
continuous-wave *or* CW transmitter
Dictograph <trademark>
facsimile transmitter *or* fax
fan marker
FM transmitter
link transmitter
microphone
picture transmitter
portable transmitter
pulse transmitter
radio beacon
radio marker
radio range beacon
radiometeorograph
radiosonde
radiotelephone transmitter
relay transmitter
RT transmitter
shortwave transmitter
spark transmitter
standby transmitter
tape transmitter
teleprinter
television transmitter
Telex
transceiver
transmitter receiver *or* transceiver
vacuum-tube transmitter
VHF-FM transmitter
walkie-talkie

1035 TELEVISION

NOUNS 1 **television, TV, video,** telly <Brit nf>; the small screen *or* the tube <nf>, the boob tube <nf>; **network television,** free television, local television; the dream factory; subscription television, pay TV; cable television, cable TV, cable-television system *or* cable system, cable; closed-circuit television *or* closed circuit TV; public-access television *or* public-access TV; satellite broadcasting, satellite television

2 **television broadcast, telecast, TV show;** direct broadcast, live show <nf>; taped show, canned show <nf>; prime time, prime-time show *or* attraction; syndicated program; television drama *or* play, teleplay, made-for-television *or* -TV movie; telefilm; series, dramatic series, miniseries; situation comedy *or* sitcom <nf>; variety show; game show; **serial,** daytime serial, soap opera *or* soap <nf>; quiz show; giveaway show; panel show; talk show; electronic *or* broadcast journalism, broadcast news, newscast, news show; documentary, docudrama; telethon; public service announcement; edutainment, infotainment; film pickup; colorcast; simulcast; childrens' television, kidvid <nf>; television *or* TV performer, television *or* TV personality; news anchor, anchor, anchor man, anchor woman, anchor person; ratings, Nielsen rating, sweeps; people meter

3 **televising, telecasting;** facsimile broadcasting; monitoring, mixing, shading, blanking, switching; scanning, parallel-line scanning, interlaced scanning

4 <transmission> photoemission, audioemission; television channel, TV band; video *or* picture channel, audio *or* sound channel, video frequency; picture carrier, sound carrier; beam, scanning beam, return beam; triggering pulse, voltage pulse, output pulse, timing pulse, equalizing pulse; synchronizing pulse, vertical synchronizing pulse, horizontal synchronizing pulse; video signal, audio signal; IF video signal, IF audio signal; synchronizing signal, blanking signal

5 <reception> **picture, image; color television,** dot-sequential *or* field-sequential *or* line-sequential color television; **black-and-white television;** HDTV *or* high-definition television; definition, blacker than black synchronizing; shading, black spot, hard shadow; test pattern, scanning pattern, grid; vertical interference, rain; granulation, scintillation, snow, snowstorm; flare, bloom, woomp; picture shifts, blooping, rolling; double image, multiple image, ghost; video static, noise, picture noise; signal-to-noise ratio; fringe area

6 **television studio, TV station**

7 **mobile unit,** TV mobile; video truck, audio truck, transmitter truck

8 **transmitter,** televisor; audio transmitter, video transmitter; transmitter part, adder, encoder; television mast, television tower; satellite transmitter

9 **relay links, boosters,** booster amplifiers, relay transmitters, **booster** *or* **relay stations;** microwave link; aeronautical relay, stratovision; communication satellite, satellite relay; Telstar, Intelsat, Syncom; Comsat

10 **television camera,** telecamera, pickup camera, pickup; **camera tube,** iconoscope, orthicon, vidicon; video camera, camcorder; mobile camera

11 **television receiver, television** *or* **TV set,** TV, telly <Brit nf>, televisor, boob tube *and* idiot box <nf>;

picture tube, cathode-ray tube, kinescope, monoscope, projection tube; receiver part, amplifier, detector, convertor, electron tube, deflector, synchronizer, limiter, mixer; portable television *or* TV set; **screen,** telescreen, videoscreen; raster; **video-cassette recorder** *or* **VCR,** videorecorder, video-tape recorder; video tape, video-cassette; videophone, Picturephone <trademark>; satellite dish, dish <nf>; television recording, videocassette, videocassette recorder *or* VCR, videotape

12 televiewer, viewer; television *or* viewing audience; viewership

13 **television technician,** TV man *or* woman, television *or* TV repairman *or* repairwoman, television engineer; monitor, sound *or* audio monitor, picture *or* video monitor; pickup unit man, cameraman, camerawoman, sound man, sound woman; media personality, host, newscaster, newsreader, commentator, announcer

VERBS 14 **televise, telecast;** colorcast; simulcast

15 **teleview,** watch television *or* TV; telerecord, record, tape; channel-surf, graze <nf>; zap <nf>

ADJS 16 **televisional,** televisual, televisionary, **video;** telegenic, videogenic; in synchronization, in sync <nf>, locked in

WORD ELEMENTS 17 tele-, video-, TV-

1036 RADAR, RADIOLOCATORS

NOUNS 1 **radar,** radio detection *and* ranging; **radar set,** radiolocator <Brit>; radar part; oscilloscope, radarscope; radar antenna; radar reflector

2 airborne radar, aviation radar; **navar,** navigation *and* ranging; **teleran,** television radar air navigation; radar bombsight, K-1 bombsight; radar dome, radome

3 **loran,** long range aid to navigation; **shoran,** short range aid to navigation; GEE navigation, consolan

4 **radiolocator;** direction finder, radio direction finder *or* RDF; radiogoniometer, high-frequency direction finder *or* HFDF, huff-duff <nf>; radio compass, wireless compass <Brit>

5 **radar speed meter,** electronic cop <nf>; radar highway patrol; **radar detector,** Fuzzbuster <trademark>

6 **radar station,** control station; Combat Information Center *or* CIC; Air Route Traffic Control Center *or* ARTCC; beacon station, display station; fixed station, home station; portable field unit, mobile trailer unit; tracking station; direction-finder station, radio compass station; triangulation stations

7 **radar beacon, racon;** transponder; radar beacon buoy, marker buoy, radar marked beacon, ramark

8 <radar operations> data transmission, scanning, scan conversion, flector tuning, signal modulation, triggering signals; phase adjustment, locking signals; triangulation, three-pointing; mapping; range finding; tracking, automatic tracking, locking on; precision focusing, pinpointing; radar-telephone relay; radar navigation

9 <applications> detection, interception, ranging, ground control of aircraft, air-traffic control, blind flying, blind landing, storm tracking, hurricane tracking; radar fence *or* screen; radar astronomy

10 **pulse,** radio-frequency *or* RF pulse, high-frequency *or* HF pulse, intermediate-frequency *or* IF pulse, trigger pulse, echo pulse

11 **signal,** radar signal; transmitter signal, output signal; return signal, echo signal, video signal, reflection, picture, target image, display, signal display, trace, reading, return, **echo, bounces, blips, pips;** spot, CRT spot; three-dimensional *or* 3-D display, double-dot display; deflection-modulated *or* DM display, intensity-modulated *or* IM display; radio-frequency *or* RF echoes, intermediate-frequency *or* IF signal; beat signal, Doppler signal, local oscillator signal; beam, beavertail beam

12 **radar interference,** deflection, refraction, superrefraction; atmospheric attenuation, signal fades, blind spots, false echoes; clutter, ground clutter, sea clutter

13 <radar countermeasure> **jamming, radar jamming;** tinfoil, aluminum foil, chaff, window <Brit>

14 **radar technician,** radar engineer, radarman; air-traffic controller; jammer

VERBS 15 **transmit, send,** radiate, beam; **jam**

16 **reflect,** return, echo, bounce back

17 **receive, tune in,** pick up, spot, home on; pinpoint; identify, trigger; lock on; sweep, scan; map

1037 RADIATION, RADIOACTIVITY

NOUNS 1 **radiation,** radiant energy; ionizing radiation; **radioactivity,** activity, radioactive radiation *or* emanation, atomic *or* nuclear radiation; natural radioactivity, artificial radioactivity; curiage; specific activity, high-specific activity; actinic radiation, ultra-violet *or* violet radiation; radiotransparency, radiolucence *or* radiolucency; radiopacity; radiosensitivity, radiosensibility; half-life; radiocarbon dating; contamination, decontamination; saturation point; radiac *or* radioactivity detection identification *and* computation; fallout 1038.16; China syndrome, nuclear winter

2 **radioluminescence, autoluminescence;** cathode luminescence; Cerenkov radiation, synchrotron radiation

3 **ray, radiation** <see list>, cosmic ray bombardment, electron shower; electron emission 1033.5

4 **radioactive particle;** alpha particle, beta particle; heavy particle; high-energy particle; meson, mesotron; cosmic particle, solar particle, aurora particle, V-particle

5 <radioactive substance> **radiator;** alpha radiator, beta radiator, gamma radiator; fluorescent paint, radium paint; radium; fission products; radiocarbon, radiocopper, radioiodine, radiothorium, etc; mesothorium; **radioactive element** <see list>, radioelement; radioisotope; tracer, tracer element, tracer atom; radioactive waste

6 <units of radioactivity> curie, dose equivalent, gray, half-life, megacurie, microcurie, millicurie, multicurie, rad, roentgen

7 **counter, radioscope,** radiodetector, **atom-tagger;** ionization chamber; ionizing event; X-ray spectrograph, X-ray spectrometer

8 **radiation physics,** radiological physics; radiobiology, radiochemistry, radiometallography, radiography, roentgenography, roentgenology, radiometry, spectroradiometry, radiotechnology, radiopathology; radiology; radiotherapy; radioscopy, curiescopy, roentgenoscopy, radiostereoscopy, fluoroscopy, photofluorography, orthodiagraphy; X-ray photometry, X-ray spectrometry; tracer investigation, atom-tagging; **unit of radioactivity;** exposure, dose, absorbed dose

9 **radiation physicist;** radiobiologist, radiometallographer, radiochemist, etc; radiologist

VERBS 10 **radioactivate,** activate, **irradiate,** charge; radiumize; **contaminate,** poison, infect

ADJS 11 **radioactive,** activated, radioactivated, irradiated, charged, **hot; contaminated,** infected, poisoned; exposed; radiferous; radioluminescent, autoluminescent

12 **radiable;** radiotransparent, radioparent, radiolucent; radiopaque, radium-proof; radiosensitive

13 **rays, radiation**

actinic ray
alpha ray *or* radiation
anode ray
Becquerel ray
beta ray *or* radiation
canal ray
cathode ray
cosmic ray *or* radiation
crepuscular ray
delta ray
extraordinary ray
gamma ray *or* radiation
Grenz ray
infraroentgen ray
Leonard ray
nuclear radiation
ordinary ray
positive ray
Roentgen ray
X ray *or* radiation

14 **radioactive elements**

actinium
americium
astatine
berkelium
californium
curium
einsteinium
fermium
francium
hahnium
lawrencium
mendelevium
neptunium
nobelium
plutonium
polonium
promethium
protactinium
radium
radon *or* radium emanation
technetium
thorium
uranium

1038 NUCLEAR PHYSICS

NOUNS 1 **nuclear physics,** particle physics, nucleonics, atomics, atomistics, atomology, atomic science; quantum mechanics, wave mechanics; molecular physics; thermionics; mass spectrometry, mass spectrography; radiology 1037.8

2 <atomic theory> quantum theory, Bohr theory, Dirac theory, Rutherford theory, Schrödinger theory, Lewis-Langmuir *or* octet theory, Thomson's hypothesis; law of conservation of mass, law of definite proportions, law of multiple proportions, law of Dulong and Petit, law of parity, correspondence principle; Standard Model; supersymmetry theory, unified field theory; atomism; quark model

3 **atomic scientist, nuclear physicist,** particle physicist; radiologist 1037.9

4 **atom** <see list>; tracer, tracer atom, tagger atom; atomic model, nuclear atom; nuclide; **ion; shell,** subshell, planetary shell, valence shell; **atomic unit;** atomic constant; atomic mass, atomic weight, atomic number, proton number, mass number, nucleon number, neutron number

5 **isotope;** protium, deuterium *or* heavy hydrogen *and* tritium <of hydrogen>; radioactive isotope, **radioisotope;** carbon 14, strontium 90, uranium 235; artificial isotope; isotone; isobar, isomer, nuclear isomer

6 **elementary particle,** fundamental particle, atomic particle, **subatomic particle** <see list>, subnuclear particle, ultraelementary particle; **atomic nucleus, nucleus,** *Kern* <Ger>; **nuclear particle,** nucleon; proton, neutron <see list>; deuteron *or* deuterium nucleus, triton *or* tritium nucleus, alpha particle *or* helium nucleus; **nuclear force,** weak force *or* weak nuclear force, strong force *or* strong nuclear force; weak interaction, strong interaction; fifth force; nucleosynthesis; nuclear resonance, Mössbauer effect, nuclear magnetic resonance *or* NMR; strangeness; charm

7 atomic cluster, molecule; radical, simple radical, compound radical, chain, straight chain, branched chain, side chain; ring, closed chain, cycle; homocycle, heterocycle; benzene ring *or* nucleus, Kekulé formula; lattice, space-lattice

8 **fission, nuclear fission,** fission reaction; **atom-smashing,** atom-chipping, **splitting the atom;** atomic reaction; atomic disintegration *or* decay, alpha decay, beta decay, gamma decay; stimulation, dissociation, photodisintegration, ionization, nucleization, cleavage; neutron reaction, proton reaction, etc; reversible reaction, nonreversible reaction; thermonuclear reaction; **chain reaction;** exchange reaction; breeding; disintegration series; bombardment, atomization; bullet, target; proton gun

9 **fusion, nuclear fusion,** fusion reaction, thermonuclear reaction, thermonuclear fusion, laser-induced fusion, cold fusion

10 **fissionable material,** nuclear fuel; fertile material; **critical mass,** noncritical mass; parent element, daughter element; end product

11 **accelerator** <see list>, **particle accelerator,** atomic accelerator, atom smasher, atomic cannon

12 mass spectrometer, mass spectrograph

13 **reactor** <see list>, **nuclear reactor, pile,** atomic pile, reactor pile, chain-reacting pile, chain reactor, **furnace,** atomic *or* nuclear furnace, neutron factory; fast pile, intermediate pile, slow pile; lattice; bricks; rods; radioactive waste

14 atomic engine, **atomic** *or* **nuclear power plant,** reactor engine

15 **atomic energy, nuclear energy** *or* **power,** thermonuclear power; activation energy, binding energy, mass energy; energy level; atomic research, atomic project; Atomic Energy Commission *or* AEC

16 **atomic explosion, atom blast, A-blast; thermonuclear explosion,** hydrogen blast, **H-blast;** ground zero; blast wave, Mach stem; Mach front; mushroom cloud; **fallout,** airborne radioactivity, fission particles, dust cloud, radioactive dust; flash burn; **atom bomb** *or* **atomic bomb** *or* **A-bomb, hydrogen bomb,** thermonuclear bomb, nuke <nf>; A-bomb shelter, fallout shelter

VERBS 17 **atomize,** nucleize; activate, accelerate; bombard, cross-bombard; cleave, fission, **split** *or* **smash the atom**

ADJS 18 **atomic;** atomistic; atomiferous; monatomic, diatomic, triatomic, tetratomic, pentatomic, hexatomic, heptatomic; heteratomic, heteroatomic; subatomic, subnuclear, ultraelementary; dibasic, tribasic; cyclic, isocyclic, homocyclic, heterocyclic; isotopic, isobaric, isoteric

19 **nuclear, thermonuclear,** isonuclear, homonuclear, heteronuclear, extranuclear

20 **fissionable,** fissile, scissile

21 **atoms**

acceptor atom
anion
antiatom
asymmetric carbon atom
Bohr atom
cation
diradical *or* biradical
discrete atom
excited atom
free radical
hot atom
impurity atom
isobar
isotere
isotopic isobar
labeled atom
neutral atom
normal atom
nuclear isomer
nuclide
radiation atom
recoil atom
stripped atom

22 **subatomic or elementary particles**

alpha particle
antibaryon
antielectron
antilepton
antimeson
antineutrino
antineutron
antiparticle
antiproton
antiquark
b *or* bottom quark
baryon
beta particle
B meson *or* B particle
boson
cascade particle
D meson *or* D particle
deuteron
electron
energy particle
fermion
flavor
gauge boson
gluino
gravitino
graviton
hadron
Higgs boson
hyperon
intermediate-vector boson
J/psi *or* J *or* psi particle
kaon *or* K meson *or* K particle
lambda particle
lepton
magnetic monopole
matter particle
meson *or* mesotron
muon *or* mu-meson
neucleon
neutrino
neutron
omega *or* omega-zero *or* omega nought particle
phi-meson
photino
photon
pion *or* pi-meson
positron *or* positive electron
proton
quark
quark color
quark flavor
quarkonium
rho particle
s *or* strange quark
sigma particle
slepton
squark
strange particle
subnuclear particle
superstring
tachyon
tardyon
tau *or* tauon *or* tau lepton
tau meson
tau neutrino *or* tauonic neutrino
technifermion
t *or* top quark
triton
u *or* up quark
upsilon
virtual particle
weakon
WIMP *or* weakly interactive massive particle
W particle
xi-particle
zino
Z particle
Z-zero particle

23 neutrons

delayed neutron
fast neutron
monoenergetic neutron
photoneutron
resonance neutron
slow neutron
thermal neutron

24 accelerators

atom smasher
betatron
bevatron
cascade transformer
charge-exchange accelerator
Cockcroft-Walton voltage multiplier
colliding-beam machine *or* collider
cosmotron
cyclotron
electron accelerator
electrostatic generator
induction accelerator
linear accelerator
microwave linear accelerator
particle accelerator
positive-ion accelerator
superconducting supercollider *or* SSC
synchrocyclotron
synchrotron
tevatron
tokamak
Van de Graaff generator
wake-field accelerator

25 reactors

boiling water reactor
breeder reactor
CANDU *or* Canada deuterium oxide-uranium reactor
gas-cooled reactor
fast-breeder reactor
fusion reactor
heterogeneous reactor
homogeneous reactor
nuclear reactor
plutonium reactor
power-breeder reactor
power reactor
pressurized-water reactor
stellarator
uranium reactor

1039 MECHANICS

NOUNS 1 **mechanics** <see list>; leverage 906; tools and machinery 1040

2 **statics** <see list>

3 **dynamics** <see list>, **kinetics,** energetics

4 **hydraulics, fluid dynamics,** hydromechanics, hydrokinetics, fluidics, hydrodynamics, hydrostatics; hydrology, hydrography, hydrometry, fluviology

5 **pneumatics,** pneumatostatics; aeromechanics, aerophysics, aerology, aerometry, aerography, aerotechnics, aerodynamics, aerostatics

6 **engineering,** mechanical engineering, jet engineering, etc; engineers

ADJS 7 **mechanical,** mechanistic, mechanized; locomotive, locomotor; motorized, power-driven; hydraulic, electronic; labor-saving; zoomechanical, biomechanical, aeromechanical, hydromechanical, etc

8 **static;** biostatic, electrostatic, geostatic, etc

9 **dynamic, dynamical, kinetic, kinetical, kinematic, kinematical;** geodynamic, radiodynamic, electrodynamic, etc

10 **pneumatic,** pneumatological; aeromechanical, aerophysical, aerologic, aerological, aerotechnical, aerodynamic, aerostatic, aerographic, aerographical

11 hydrologic, hydrometric, hydrometrical, hydromechanic, hydromechanical, hydrodynamic, hydrostatic, hydraulic

12 kinds and branches of mechanics

aerodynamics
aeromechanics
animal mechanics
applied mechanics
atomechanics
auto mechanics
biomechanics
celestial mechanics
classical mechanics
dynamics
electromechanics
fluid mechanics
hydromechanics *or* hydrodynamics
kinematics
kinetics
magnetohydrodynamics *or* MHD
matrix mechanics
mechanical arts
Newtonian mechanics
micromechanics
practical mechanics
pure *or* abstract mechanics
quantum mechanics
rational mechanics
servomechanics
statistical mechanics
telemechanics
theoretical *or* analytical mechanics
wave mechanics
zoomechanics *or* biomechanics

13 kinds and branches of statics

aerostatics
biostatics
electrostatics
geostatics
gnathostatics
graphostatics
gyrostatics
hemastatics *or* hematostatics
hydrostatics
hygrostatics
magnetostatics
rheostatics
social statics
stereostatics
thermostatics

14 kinds and branches of dynamics

aerodynamics
astrodynamics
barodynamics
biodynamics
cardiodynamics
chromodynamics
electrodynamics
fluid dynamics
geodynamics
gnathodynamics
hemadynamics *or* hematodynamics
hydrodynamics
kinesiology
magnetohydrodynamics *or* magnetofluid dynamics
megadynamics
myodynamics
pharmacodynamics
photodynamics
phytodynamics
pneodynamics *or* pneumatics
pneumodynamics
quantum chromodynamics
radiodynamics
thermodynamics
trophodynamics
zoodynamics

1040 TOOLS, MACHINERY

NOUNS 1 **tool, instrument, implement, utensil; apparatus, device,** mechanical device, contrivance, contraption <nf>, gadget, gizmo, gimcrack, gimmick <nf>, means, mechanical means; gadgetry; **hand tool; power tool;** machine tool; speed tool; precision tool *or* instrument; garden tool, agricultural tool <see list>; **mechanization,** mechanizing; motorizing

2 **cutlery,** edge tool <see list>; **knife, ax,** dagger, sword, blade, cutter, whittle; steel, cold steel, naked steel; shiv *and* pigsticker *and* toad stabber *and* toad sticker <nf>; perforator, piercer, puncturer, point; sharpener; **saw;** trowel; shovel; plane; drill; valve 239.10

3 **machinery,** enginery; **machine, mechanism,** mechanical device; heavy machinery, earthmoving machinery, earthmover; farm machinery; mill; welder; pump; **engine,** motor; engine part; power plant, **power source,** drive, motive power, prime mover; **appliance,** convenience, facility, utility, home appliance, mechanical aid; fixture; labor-saving device

4 **mechanism,** machinery, **movement,** movements, **action, motion, works,** workings, inner workings, what makes it work, innards, nuts and bolts, what makes it tick; drive train, power train; wheelwork, **wheelworks,** wheels, gear, wheels within wheels, epicyclic train; clockworks, watchworks, servomechanism 1040.13; robot, automaton

5 **simple machine;** lever, wheel and axle, pulley, inclined plane; machine part, gear, gearwheel, shaft, crank, rod, hub, cam, coupling, bearing, ball bearing, roller bearing, journal, bush, differential

6 **machine tool;** drill, press drill, borer, lathe, mill, broaching machine, facing machine, threading machine, tapping machine, grinder, planer, shaper <see list>, saw

7 **hand tool;** hammer <see list>, screwdriver <see list>, drill <see list>, punch, awl, wrench <see list>, pliers, clamp, vise, chisel, wedge, ax, knife, saw <see list>, lever, crowbar, jack, pulley, wheel

8 **garden tool;** spade, shovel <see list>, trowel, fork, rake, hoe, tiller, plow, hedge trimmer, shears, lawn mower

9 **gear,** gearing, gear train; gearwheel, cogwheel, rack; **gearshift;** low, intermediate, high, neutral, reverse; differential, differential gear *or* gearing; **transmission,** gearbox; automatic transmission; selective transmission; standard transmission, stick shift, manual transmission, five-speed, five on the floor; synchronized shifting, synchromesh; spur gear, rack and pinion, helical gear, bevel gear, skew gear, worm gear, internal gear, external gear; gear tooth

10 **clutch,** cone clutch, plate clutch, dog clutch, disk clutch, multiple-disk clutch, rim clutch, friction clutch, cone friction clutch, slip friction clutch, spline clutch, rolling-key clutch

11 **tooling,** tooling up; **retooling;** instrumentation, industrial instrumentation; servo instrumentation

12 **mechanic,** mechanician; grease monkey <nf>; artisan, artificer; machinist, machiner; auto mechanic, aeromechanic, etc

VERBS **13** **tool,** tool up, instrument; retool; **machine,** mill; **mechanize,** motorize; sharpen

ADJS **14** **mechanical;** machinelike; power, powered, power-driven, motor-driven, motorized; **mechanized,** mechanistic; electronic; labor-saving

15 **agricultural, gardening tools**

baler
billhook
binder
blower
brush cutter
cant hook
chisel plow
colter
combine
crop duster
cultivator
dibble *or* dibber
draw hoe
edger
flail
grub hoe
harvester
hayfork
hay rake
hedge clipper
hoe
lawn mower
loy
mattock
maul
pick
pickax
pitchfork
plow
pruner
pruning saw
rake
reaper
roller
rototiller
scuffle hoe
scythe
shears
shovel
shredder
sickle
spade
spading fork
sprinkler
tiller
tractor
trowel
weed trimmer
wheelbarrow

16 **blacksmithing tools**

anvil
ball peen hammer
blower
chisel
clinch cutter
clincher
clipping hammer
cold chisel
creaser
cross peen hammer
dipper
drift
drill
fileflatter
floor mandrel
forge
fuller
hammer
hardie
hoof gauger
hoof tester
hot chisel
mandrel
nipper
post drill
post vise
power hammer
pritchel
puncher
rasp
set hammer
sledge hammer
straight peen hammer
swage
swage block
swedge
swedge block
tongs
treadle hammer
vise

17 **cutting, pointed, edged tools**

adz
awl
ax
bill
blade
bodkin

bolster chisel
burin
butcher knife
carving knife
chisel
cleaver
clipper
cold chisel
drove or boaster
firmer chisel
gouge
graver
hardy
hatchet
hook
jackknife
knife
machete
masonry chisel
paring chisel
pick
pinking shears
pipe cutter
punch
razor
router
scissors
scorper
scraper
scythe
shears
sickle
square-end chisel
wire cutter

18 drills

auger
bench drill
bit
bore
bow drill
breast drill
broach
cordless drill
corkscrew
countersink
diamond drill
drill press
eggbeater drill
electric drill
gimlet
hand drill
portable drill
power drill
push drill
reamer
rose reamer
seed drill
twist drill
wimble
woodborer

19 fastening, gripping tools

adjustable bar clamp
band clamp
bar clamp
bench dog
bench vise
bent-nose pliers
brace
C-clamp
channel-type pliers
chuck
clamp
claw
clip
corner clamp
cutting pliers
diagonal-cutting pliers
electric riveter
forceps
glue gun
grip
hand vise
holddown clamp
joint fastener
lineman's pliers
locking pliers
long-nose pliers
nail puller
needlenose pliers
pincers
pinchcock
pipe clamp
plate joiner
pliers
power nailer
pucellas
puller
riveter
screw clamp
slip-joint pliers
snap ring pliers
spring clamp
staple gun
stapler
toggle clamp
tongs
tweezers
vise
vise grip
web clamp

20 hammers, mallets

ball peen hammer
beetle
blacksmith's hammer
brick hammer
bushhammer
chipping hammer
claw hammer
cross peen hammer
demolition hammer
double-claw hammer
drywall hammer
electric hammer
engineer's hammer
framing hammer
fuller
joiner's mallet
long-handled hammer
machinist's hammer
maul
peen hammer
pile hammer
rip hammer
rubber mallet
scutch
shingler's hammer
shoemaker's hammer
sledgehammer
small anvil
soft-faced hammer
soft-faced mallet
stonemason's hammer
tack hammer
tilt hammer
triphammer
Warington hammer
wooden mallet

21 measuring, marking tools

bevel
butt gauge
caliper
carpenter's level
carpenter's pencil
carpenter's square
center punch
chalk liner
combination square
compass
depth gauge
dividers
electronic level
feeler gauge
folding rule
framing square
gauge
level
line level
marking gauge
mason's level
micrometer
miter box
miter square
mortise gage
plumb bob
plumb rule
protractor
rafter square
rule
ruler
scale
scratch awl
scriber
slide caliper
square
steel rule
straight edge
studfinder
tape measure
torpedo level
T square
turning caliper
wing divider

22 saws

backsaw
band saw
bench saw
bucksaw
butcher's saw
buzz saw
chain saw
circular saw
compass saw
coping saw
crosscut saw
crown saw
cutoff saw
diamond saw
dovetail saw
dry-wall saw
electric saw
flooring saw
flush cut saw
folding saw
frame saw
fretsaw
hacksaw
hand saw
jeweler's saw
jigsaw
keyhole saw
log saw
lumberman's saw
meat saw

one-man crosscut saw
pad saw
panel saw
pit saw
plumber's saw
portable circular saw
power saw
radial arm saw
reciprocating saw
ripsaw
saber saw
scroll saw
stationary circular saw
table saw
tree saw
two-handed saw
two-man crosscut saw
utility saw
vertical saw

23 screwdrivers

auger screwdriver
cabinet-pattern screwdriver
clutch-head tip screwdriver
cordless screwdriver
electric screwdriver
flat-head screwdriver
impact driver
magnetic screwdriver
offset screwdriver
Phillips screwdriver
ratcheting screwdriver
screw gun
spiral ratchet screwdriver
stubby screwdriver
Yankee screwdriver

24 shaping, smoothing tools

adz
anvil
beading plane
belt sander
bench plane
block plane
brick trowel
buffer
bullnose plane
chamfering plane
circular file
corner trowel
die
disk sander
double cut file
drum sander
electric sander
emery wheel
file
finishing sander
flat file
flatter
float
fore plane
grinder
grinding wheel
grindstone
grooving plane
half-round file
hand sander
hone
jack plane
lathe
machine tool
multiplane
oilstone
plane
planer
power sander
putty knife
rasp
round file
router
router plane
sander
sandpaper
scraper
shaper
sharpener
shavehook
single cut file
slipstone
smoothing plane
spokeshave
stone
swage
swage block
tamper
thickness planer
trimming plane
trowel
trying plane
waterstone
whetstone

25 shovels, diggers

bail
bar spade
bull tongue
coal shovel
cultivator
ditch spade
draw hoe
fire shovel
fork
garden spade
garden trowel
grub hoe
hoe
irrigating shovel
loy
mattock
peat spade
pitchfork
plow
posthole digger
power shovel
rake
scoop
scooper
power shovel
rake
scoop
scooper
spade
spatula
spud
trowel

26 wrenches

adjustable wrench
Allen wrench
alligator wrench
bicycle wrench
box wrench
box-end wrench
box *or* open-end wrench
crescent Wrench
crowfoot wrench
flare-nut wrench
gooseneck wrench
hexagonal wrench
lug wrench
monkey wrench
obstruction wrench
open-end wrench
pin wrench
pipe-gripping wrench
pipe wrench
ratcheting box-end wrench
socket wrench
spanner
spark plug wrench
Stillson wrench
torque wrench
valve wrench

1041 AUTOMATION

NOUNS **1** **automation,** automatic control; robotization, cybernation; **self-action,** self-activity; self-movement, self-motion, **self-propulsion;** self-direction, self-determination, self-government, automatism, self-regulation; automaticity, automatization; servo instrumentation; computerization

2 autonetics, automatic *or* automation technology, automatic electronics, automatic engineering, automatic control engineering, servo engineering, **servomechanics,** system engineering, systems analysis, feedback system engineering; robotics, **cybernetics;** telemechanics; radiodynamics, radio control; systems planning, systems design; circuit analysis; bionics; communication *or* communications theory, information theory

3 **automatic control,** cybernation, servo control, robot control, robotization; cybernetic control; electronic control, electronic-mechanical control; feedback control, digital feedback control, analog feedback control; cascade control, piggyback control <nf>; supervisory control; action, control action; derivative *or* rate action, reset action; control agent; control means

4 semiautomatic control; **remote control,** push-button control, remote handling, tele-action; radio control; telemechanics; telemechanism; telemetry, telemeter, telemetering; transponder; bioinstrument, bioinstrumentation

5 control system, **automatic control system,** servo system, robot system; closed-loop system; open-sequence system; linear system, nonlinear system; carrier-current system; integrated system, complex control system; data system, data-handling system, data-reduction system, data-input system, data-interpreting system, digital data reducing system; process-control system, annunciator system, flow-control system, motor-speed control system; automanual system; automatic telephone system; electrostatic spraying system; automated factory, automatic *or* robot factory, push-button plant; servo laboratory, servolab; electronic banking; electronic cottage

6 **feedback,** closed sequence, feedback loop, closed loop; multiple-feed closed loop; process loop, quality loop; feedback circuit, current-control circuit, direct-current circuit, alternating-current circuit, calibrating circuit, switching circuit, flip-flop circuit, peaking circuit; multiplier channels; open sequence, linear operation; positive feedback, negative feedback; reversed feedback, degeneration

7 <functions> accounting, analysis, automatic electronic navigation, automatic guidance, braking, comparison of variables, computation, coordination, corrective action, fact distribution, forecasts, impedance matching, inspection, linear *or* nonlinear calibrations, manipulation, measurement of variables, missile guidance, output measurement, processing, rate determination, record keeping, statistical communication, steering, system stabilization, ultrasonic *or* supersonic flow detection

8 **process control,** bit-weight control, color control, density control, dimension control, diverse control, end-point control, flavor control, flow control, fragrance control, hold control, humidity control, light-intensity control, limit control, liquid-level control, load control, pressure control, precision-production control, proportional control, quality control, quantity control, revolution control, temperature control, time control, weight control

9 variable, process variable; simple variable, complex variable; manipulated variable; steady state, transient state

10 values, target values; set point; differential gap; proportional band; dead band, dead zone; neutral zone

11 time constants; time lead, gain; time delay, dead time; lag, process lag, hysteresis, holdup, output lag; throughput

12 automatic device, automatic; semi-automatic; self-actor, self-mover; **robot, automation,** mechanical man; cyborg; bionic man, bionic woman

13 **servomechanism,** servo; cybernion, automatic machine; **servomotor;** synchro, selsyn, autosyn; synchronous motor, synchronous machine

14 **system component; control mechanism; regulator, control,** controller, **governor;** servo control, servo regulator; control element

15 **automatic detector;** automatic analyzer; automatic indicator

16 **control panel,** console; coordinated panel, graphic panel; panelboard, set-up board

17 **computer, computer science** 1042, electronic computer, electronic brain; electronic organizer; information machine, thinking machine; computer unit, hardware, computer hardware

18 <automatic devices> automatic pilot *or* autopilot, automaton, guided missile, robot, self-starter, speedometer

19 **control engineer,** servo engineer, system engineer, systems analyst, automatic control system engineer, feedback system engineer, automatic technician, robot specialist; computer engineer, computer technologist, computer technician, **computer programmer;** cybernetic technologist, cyberneticist

VERBS **20** **automate,** automatize, robotize; robot-control, servo-control; program; computerize

21 **self-govern,** self-control, **self-regulate,** selfdirect

ADJS **22** **automated,** cybernated, robotized; **automatic,** automatous, **spontaneous; self-acting,** self-active; **self-operating,** self-operative, self-working; **self-regulating,** self-regulative, self-governing, self-directing; **self-regulated, self-controlled,** self-governed, self-directed, self-steered; self-adjusting, self-closing, self-cocking, self-cooking, self-dumping, self-emptying, self-lighting, self-loading, self-opening, self-priming, self-rising, self-sealing, self-starting, self-winding, automanual; semiautomatic; computerized, computer-controlled

23 **self-propelled,** self-moved, horseless; **self-propelling,** self-moving, self-propellent; self-driven, self-drive; **automotive,** automobile, automechanical; **locomotive,** locomobile

24 **servomechanical,** servo-controlled; **cybernetic;** isotronic

25 **remote-control,** remote-controlled, telemechanic; telemetered, telemetric; by remote control

WORD ELEMENTS **26** aut-, auto-, automat-, automato-, self-

1042 COMPUTER SCIENCE

NOUNS **1** **computer science** <see list>, computer systems *and* applications, computer hardware *and* software, computers, digital computers, computing, machine computation, number-crunching <nf>; **computerization,** digitization;

data processing, electronic data processing *or* EDP, data storage and retrieval; data bank; **information science,** information processing, informatics; computer security; computer crime *or* fraud, computer virus *or* worm; hacking

2 **computer,** electronic data processor, information processor, electronic brain, digital computer, general purpose computer, analog computer, hybrid computer, machine, **hardware,** computer hardware, microelectronics device; **processor,** central processing unit *or* CPU, multiprocessor, microprocessor, coprocessor, mainframe computer *or* mainframe, dataflow computer, hybrid computer, work station, minicomputer, microcomputer, personal computer *or* PC, home computer, desktop computer, laptop computer, notebook computer, briefcase computer, pocket computer, handheld computer, personal organizer, personal digital assistant *or* PDA, minisupercomputer, superminicomputer, supermicrocomputer, supercomputer, graphoscope, array processor, neurocomputer; multimedia computer; neural net *or* network, semantic net *or* network; management information system *or* MIS; clone; abacus, calculator

3 **circuitry,** circuit, integrated circuit, logic circuit, **chip,** silicon chip, gallium arsenide chip, semiconductor chip, hybrid chip, wafer chip, superchip, microchip, neural network chip, transputer, **board,** printed circuit board *or* PCB, card, motherboard; **peripheral,** peripheral device *or* unit, input device, output device; expansion slot; **port,** channel interface, serial interface, serial port, parallel port; **read-write head;** vacuum tube, transistor, bus, LED, network adapter, small computer systems interface *or* SCSI, register

4 **input device,** keyboard, keypad; reader, tape reader, card punch, scanner, optical scanner, optical character reader, optical character recognition *or* OCR device, data tablet *or* tablet, touchscreen, light pen, mouse, joystick, trackball, wand

5 **drive, disk drive,** floppy disk drive, hard disk drive *or* Winchester drive, tape drive, removable drive

6 **disk, magnetic disk, floppy disk** *or* floppy <nf> *or* diskette, minifloppy, microfloppy, hard *or* fixed *or* Winchester disk, removable disk, optical disk, disk pack; magnetic tape *or* mag tape <nf>, magnetic tape unit, magnetic drum; CD-ROM, compact-disk read-only memory, magneto-optical disk

7 **memory, storage,** memory bank, memory chip, firmware; **main memory,** main storage *or* store, cache memory *or* cache, random-access memory *or* RAM, read-only memory *or* ROM, programmable read-only memory *or* PROM, semiconductor memory, magnetic core memory, core, core storage *or* store, solid-state memory, auxiliary *or* secondary memory, disk pack, magnetic disk, primary storage, backing store, read/write memory, optical disk memory, bubble memory; read-only memory *or* ROM, programmable read-only memory *or* PROM

8 **retrieval, access,** random access, sequential access, direct access, data capture, capture

9 **output device,** peripheral, terminal, workstation, video terminal, video display terminal *or* VDT, video display unit *or* VDU, visual display unit *or* VDU, graphics terminal, **monitor,** screen, display, cathode ray tube *or* CRT, monochrome monitor, color monitor, RGB monitor, active matrix display, window; **printer,** color printer, **serial printer,** character printer, impact printer, dot-matrix printer, daisy-wheel *or* printwheel printer, drum printer, **line printer,** line dot-matrix printer, chain printer, **page printer,** nonimpact printer, laser printer, electronic printer, graphics printer, color graphics printer, ink-jet printer, thermal printer, bubble-jet printer, electrostatic printer; plotter; **modem** *or* modulator-demodulator

10 **forms, computer forms, computer paper,** continuous stationery

11 **software, program,** computer program, source program, object program, binary file, binary program; program suite, suite of applications; bundle; software package, courseware, groupware, routine, subroutine, intelligent agent *or* agent; applet; shareware, freeware

12 **systems program, operating system** *or* **OS,** disk operating system *or* DOS, system software; Microsoft <trademark> disk operating system *or* MS-DOS <trademark>; UNIX; control program monitor *or* CPM; **word processor,** text editor, editor, print formatter, WYSIWYG *or* what-you-see-is-what-you-get word processor, post-formatted word processor; spreadsheet, electronic spreadsheet, desktop publishing program, database management system *or* DBMS, authoring tool, utility program, screen saver, computer game; **computer application** <see list>, applications program, application software, bootloader *or* bootstrap loader

13 **language** <see list>, assembler *or* assemblage language, programming language, machine language, machine-readable language, conventional programming language, computer language, high-level language, fourth generation language, macro language, preprocessor language, compiler, interpreter, low-level language, application development language, assembly language, assembly code, object code, job-control language *or* JCL, procedural language, problem-oriented language, query language; **computer** *or* **electronic virus,** computer worm, phantom bug,

Trojan horse, logic bomb; source code, machine code; loader, parser, debugger; Java, HTML, SGML

14 **bit, binary digit,** infobit, kilobit, megabit, gigabit, terbit; **byte,** kilobyte, megabyte

15 **data, information,** database, data capture, database management, file, record, data bank, input, input-output *or* I/O; **file,** data set, record, data record, data file, text file

16 **network, computer network,** communications network, local area network *or* LAN, workgroup computing, mesh; neural network, neural net; **on-line system,** interactive system, on-line service; intranet; Internet

17 **programmer,** liveware, wetware; software engineer, computer engineer, computer scientist; systems programmer, system software specialist, application programmer, systems analyst, systems engineer, system operator *or* sysop; computer designer, computer architect, operator, technician, key puncher, keyboarder; techie; hacker <nf>

18 <computer terms> access, archive, authoring, backup, bandwidth, batch processing, baud rate, benchmark, beta test, binary tree, bit, bitmap, block, boot, bootstrap, bug, byte, click, clock rate, command, compatibility, computerate, computer-literate, controller, crash, cursor, data, desktop, diagnostic, digital, direct access, directory, display, download, downtime, emulator, escape key, field, file, file folder, footprint, FTP, function key, gigabyte, gopher, graphics, hacking, helpdesk, home page, icon, input, interactive, interface, job, key, kilobyte, login, logon, logoff, megabyte, menu, millennium bug, morphing, mouse potato, multimedia, multitasking, mouse potato <nf>, output, parity, password, plug-and-play, power user, pulldown, queue, random access, real time, record, save, scrollable, sector, sequential access, signature, sleep mode, smiley, spell-check, turnkey operation, upload, virus, WYSIWYG *or* what you see is what you get

19 <computer communications> Internet, the Net <nf>, World Wide Web *or* Web *or* WWW, cyberspace, information superhighway; Internet service provider *or* ISP, electronic mail *or* e-mail *or* email, mailbox, website, communications protocol; compression, encryption; intranet; Usenet; local area network *or* LAN, wide area network *or* WAN, file server, client-server; browser; gateway; search engine; bulletin board service *or* BBS, chat room, newsgroup, workgroup; netizen, surfer; spam

20 artificial intelligence, knowledge engineering, knowledge representation, intelligent retrieval, natural language processing, expert systems, speech synthesis, robotics, hypertext, hypermedia, intelligent agent

VERBS **21** **computerize,** digitize; **program,** boot, boot up, initialize, log in, log out, run, load, download, upload, **compute,** crunch numbers <nf>; capture; **keyboard,** key in, input; browse, surf; search; cut and paste; export, import

ADJS **22** **computerized;** wired; machine-usable, computer-usable; computer-aided, computer-assisted; computer-driven, computer-guided, computer-controlled, computer-governed; computer-literate, computerate

23 **branches of computer science**

artificial intelligence *or* AI
automata theory
combinatorial processes
compiler design
computer-aided design *or* CAD
computer-aided *or* computer-assisted learning *or* CAL
computer-aided manufacturing *or* CAM
computer-aided molecular design *or* CAMD
computer-aided testing *or* CAT
computer applications
computer architecture
computer-based learning
computer graphics
computer-integrated manufacture *or* CIM
computer-managed instruction *or* CMI
computer systems
cybernetics
data entry
data processing
desktop publishing
electronic data processing
information retrieval *or* IR
information storage and retrieval
information technology *or* IT
language processing
logical design
machine organization
management information system *or* MIS
natural language processing
neural networks
nonnumerical applications
numerical analysis
numerical applications
office automation
operating systems
optimization
programming
programming languages
robotics
simulation
switching theory
symbol manipulation
systems analysis
theory of computation
theory of formal languages
utility programs

24 **computer applications**

authoring tool
batch processing
communications software
computer art
computer bulletin boards
computer conferencing
computer games
computer graphics
computer typesetting
computer-aided design
computer-aided engineering
computer-aided manufacturing
computer-assisted instruction
database management system
desktop publishing *or* DTP
electronic publishing
Internet access *or* Internet service provider software
musical instrument digital interface program *or* MIDI
office automation program
presentation software
screen saver
simulation software
spell checking
spreadsheet program
time-sharing
Web design software
word processing

25 **computer languages**

ADA
ALGOL *or* algorithmic-oriented language
APL *or* a programming language
APT *or* automatic programmed tools
awk *or* Aho Weinberger and Kernighan
BAL *or* basic assembly language
BASIC *or* beginners all-purpose symbolic instruction code
BCPL
C
C++
COBOL *or* common business-oriented language
COMIT
COMPACT II
CPL
efl
eqn
FLOWMATIC
FORMAC
FORTH
FORTRAN *or* formula translator
GPSS
HTML
IPL-V
Java
JOSS
JOVIAL
Lex
LISP *or* list-processing
Logo
MUMPS
OCCAM
PASCAL
Perl
pic
PILOT *or* programmed inquiry learning *or* teaching
PL/1 *or* programming language 1
Ratfor
RPG II
SNOBOL *or* sno *or* string-oriented symbolic language
SOL
yacc *or* yet another computer compiler

1043 ENGINEERING

NOUNS 1 **engineering**, mechanical engineering, civil engineering, chemical engineering, electrical engineering, mining and metallurgy, industrial engineering; automotive engineering, aerospace engineering, aeronautical engineering, astronautical engineering, marine engineering, agricultural engineering; structural engineering, transportation engineering, hydraulic engineering, geotechnical engineering, construction engineering; material engineering, biochemical engineering, environmental engineering

2 **engineer,** registered engineer; mechanical engineer, civil engineer, chemical engineer, electrical engineer, mining engineer, metallurgical engineer, industrial engineer; automotive engineer, aerospace engineer, aeronautical engineer, astronautical engineer, marine engineer, agricultural engineer; structural engineer, transportation engineer, hydraulic engineer, construction engineer; material engineer, biochemical engineer, biomedical engineer, environmental engineer; electronics engineer; mechanic, technician

3 <engine types> internal-combustion, external-combustion; Wankel, reciprocating, steam, gasoline, diesel, jet, turboprop, turbojet, rocket, Stirling, locomotive; automotive, aircraft, marine, railroad

VERBS 4 **engineer,** construct, build, erect, survey, map, excavate, dig, grade, dredge, drill, tunnel, blast, pave; process, manufacture, measure; reverse-engineer

1044 FRICTION

NOUNS 1 **friction, rubbing,** rub, frottage; frication *and* confrication *and* perfrication <old>; **drag,** skin friction; **resistance,** frictional resistance; static friction, rolling friction, internal friction, sliding friction, slip friction

2 **abrasion, attrition, erosion, wearing away, wear,** detrition, ablation; rubbing against *or* together; ruboff; corrosion; erasure, erasing, rubbing away *or* off *or* out, obliteration; **grinding, filing,** rasping, limation; fretting; galling; **chafing, chafe;** levigation; **scraping,** grazing, scratching, scuffing; scrape, scratch, **scuff;** scrubbing, scrub; scouring, scour; **polishing,** burnishing, sanding, smoothing, dressing, buffing, shining; sandblasting; abrasive; brass-rubbing, heelball rubbing, graphite rubbing

3 **massage,** massaging, stroking, kneading; **rubdown;** massotherapy; whirlpool bath, Jacuzzi <trademark>; vibrator; facial massage, facial

4 massager, **masseur, masseuse;** massotherapist

5 <mechanics> force of friction; force of viscosity; coefficient of friction; friction head; friction clutch, friction drive, friction gearing, friction pile, friction saw, friction welding

VERBS 6 **rub,** frictionize; **massage,** knead, rub down; caress, pet, stroke 73.8; pulverize; smooth, iron

7 **abrade,** abrase, gnaw, gnaw away; **erode,** erode away, ablate, wear, wear away, corrode; erase, rub away *or* off *or* out, rub against; **grind, rasp, file, grate; chafe,** fret, gall; **scrape,** scratch, **graze,** raze <old>, **scuff,** bark, skin; **fray,** frazzle; **scrub, scour**

8 **buff, burnish, polish,** rub up, sandpaper, **sand,** smooth, dress, shine, furbish, sandblast; brush, curry

ADJS 9 **frictional,** friction; fricative; **rubbing**

10 **abrasive,** abradant, attritive, gnawing, erosive, ablative; scraping; **grinding, rasping;** chafing, fretting, galling

1045 DENSITY

NOUNS 1 **density,** denseness, **solidity, solidness,** firmness, **compactness, closeness,** spissitude <old>; **congestion,** congestedness, crowdedness, jammedness; **impenetrability,** impermeability, imporosity; hardness 1046; incompressibility; specific gravity, relative density; **consistency,** consistence, thick consistency, thickness; viscidity, viscosity, **viscousness, thickness,** gluiness, ropiness

2 **indivisibility, inseparability,** impartibility, infrangibility, indiscerptibility; indissolubility; cohesion, coherence 803; unity 791; insolubility, infusibility

3 **densification, condensation, compression, concentration,** inspissation, concretion, consolidation, conglobulation; hardening, **solidification** 1046.5; agglutination, clumping, clustering

4 **thickening,** inspissation; congelation, **congealment, coagulation,** clotting, **setting,** concretion; gelatinization, gelatination, jellification, jellying, **jelling,** gelling; **curdling,** clabbering; **distillation**

5 **precipitation,** deposit, sedimentation; precipitate

6 **solid,** solid body, body, mass, bulk; lump, clump, cluster; block, cake; node, knot; concrete, concretion; conglomerate, conglomeration

7 **clot,** coagulum, coagulate; blood clot, grume, embolus, crassamentum; **coagulant,** coagulator, clotting factor, coagulase, coagulose, thromboplastin *or* coagulin; casein, caseinogen, paracasein, legumin; **curd,** clabber, loppered milk *and* bonnyclabber <nf>, clotted cream, Devonshire cream

8 <instruments> densimeter, densitometer; aerometer, hydrometer, lactometer, urinometer, pycnometer

VERBS **9** **densify,** inspissate, densen; **condense, compress,** compact, **consolidate, concentrate,** come to a head; **congest; squeeze, press, crowd,** cram, jam, pack, ram down; steeve; pack *or* jam in; **solidify** 1046.8

10 **thicken,** thick <old>; inspissate, incrassate; **congeal, coagulate, clot,** set, concrete; gelatinize, gelatinate, jelly, jellify, **jell,** gel; **curdle,** curd, clabber, lopper <nf>; cake, lump, clump, cluster, knot

11 **precipitate,** deposit, sediment, sedimentate

ADJS **12** **dense, compact, close;** close-textured, close-knit, close-woven, tight-knit; serried, **thick, heavy,** massy, thickset, thick-packed, thick-growing, thick-spread, thick-spreading; **condensed, compressed,** compacted, concrete, consolidated, concentrated; **crowded, jammed,** packed, jam-packed, packed *or* jammed in, packed *or* jammed in like sardines; **congested,** crammed, crammed full; **solid,** firm, substantial, massive; impenetrable, impermeable, imporous, nonporous; hard 1046.10; incompressible; viscid, viscous, ropy, gluey; thick enough to be cut with a knife <nf>

13 **indivisible,** nondivisible, undividable, **inseparable,** impartible, infrangible, indiscerptible, indissoluble; cohesive, coherent 803.10; unified; insoluble, indissolvable, infusible

14 **thickened,** inspissate *or* inspissated, incrassate; **congealed, coagulated, clotted,** grumous; **curdled,** curded, clabbered; **jellied,** jelled *or* gelled, gelatinized; lumpy, lumpish; caked, cakey; coagulant, coagulating

ADVS **15** **densely,** compactly, **close,** closely, **thick,** thickly, heavily; solidly, firmly

1046 HARDNESS, RIGIDITY

NOUNS **1** **hardness,** durity <old>, induration; **callousness,** callosity; stoniness, rock-hardness, flintiness, steeliness; **strength,** toughness 1047; solidity, impenetrability, density 1045; restiveness, resistance 453; obduracy 361.1; hardness of heart 94.3

2 **rigidity, rigidness,** rigor <old>; **firmness,** renitence *or* renitency, incompressibility; nonresilience *or* nonresiliency, inelasticity; **tension,** tensity, **tenseness,** tautness, tightness

3 **stiffness, inflexibility,** unpliability, unmalleability, intractability, unbendingness, unlimberness, starchiness; **stubbornness,** unyieldingness 361.2; **unalterability,** immutability; immovability 855.3; inelasticity, irresilience *or* irresiliency; inextensibility *or* unextensibility, unextendibility, inductility

4 **temper,** tempering; chisel temper, die temper, razor temper, saw file temper, set temper, spindle temper, tool temper; precipitation hardening, heat treating; hardness test, Brinell test; hardness scale, Brinell number *or* Brinell hardness number *or* Bhn; indenter; hardener, hardening, hardening agent

5 **hardening, toughening,** induration, firming; **strengthening; tempering,** case hardening, steeling; seasoning; **stiffening,** rigidification, starching; **solidification, setting,** curing, caking, concretion; crystallization, granulation; callusing; sclerosis, arteriosclerosis, atherosclerosis, hardening of the arteries; lithification; lapidification <old>; **petrification,** fossilization, ossification; glaciation; cornification, hornification; calcification; vitrification, vitrifaction

6 <comparisons> stone, rock 1059, adamant, granite, flint, marble, diamond; steel, iron, nails; concrete, cement; brick; oak, heart of oak; bone

VERBS **7** **harden,** indurate, firm, **toughen** 1049.3; **callous; temper,** anneal, oil-temper, heat-temper, **case-harden,** steel; season; **petrify,** lapidify <old>, fossilize; lithify; vitrify; calcify; ossify; cornify, hornify

8 **solidify,** concrete, **set,** take a set, cure, cake; condense, thicken 1045.10; **crystallize,** granulate, candy; hard-boil; anneal; freeze

9 **stiffen,** rigidify, starch; **strengthen,** toughen 1049.3; back, brace, reinforce, shore up; **tense, tighten,** tense up, tension; trice up, screw up

ADJS 10 **hard, solid,** dure <old>, lacking give, **tough** 1049.4; resistive, resistant, steely, steellike, iron-hard, ironlike; **stony,** rocky, stonelike, rock-hard, rocklike, lapideous, lapidific, lapidifical, lithoid *or* lithoidal; diamondlike, adamant, adamantine; flinty, flintlike; marble, marblelike; granitic, granitelike; gritty; concrete, cement, cemental; horny; bony, osseous, ossific; petrifactive; vitreous; hard-boiled; hard as nails *or* a rock, etc 1044.6; dense 1045.12; obdurate 361.10; hard-hearted 94.12

11 **rigid, stiff, firm,** renitent, incompressible; **tense, taut, tight,** unrelaxed; nonresilient, inelastic; **rodlike,** virgate; ramrod-stiff, ramrodlike, pokerlike; stiff as a poker *or* rod *or* board, stiff as buckram; starched, starchy

12 **inflexible,** unflexible, **unpliable, unpliant, unmalleable, intractable,** untractable, intractile, **unbending,** unlimber, **unyielding** 361.9, ungiving, **stubborn, unalterable,** immutable; **immovable** 855.15; **adamant,** adamantine; **inelastic,** nonelastic, irresilient; inextensile, inextensible, unextensible, inextensional, unextendible, nonstretchable, inductile; intransigent

13 **hardened, toughened,** steeled, indurate, indurated, fortified; **callous,** calloused; **solidified,** set; crystallized, granulated; petrified, lapidified <old>, fossilized; vitrified; sclerotic; ossified; cornified, hornified; calcified; crusted, crusty, incrusted; **stiffened, strengthened,** rigidified, backed, reinforced; frozen solid

14 **hardening, toughening,** indurative; petrifying, petrifactive

15 **tempered, case-hardened,** heat-treated, **annealed,** oil-tempered, heat-tempered, tempered in fire; seasoned; indurate, indurated

1047 SOFTNESS, PLIANCY

NOUNS 1 **softness,** give, nonresistiveness, insolidity, unsolidity, nonrigidity; **gentleness,** easiness, delicacy, tenderness; *morbidezza* <Ital>; lenity, leniency 427; mellowness; fluffiness, flossiness, downiness, featheriness; velvetiness, plushiness, satininess, silkiness; sponginess, pulpiness

2 **pliancy, pliability, plasticity, flexibility,** flexility, flexuousness, bendability, ductility, ductibility <old>, tensileness, tensility, tractility, **tractability,** amenability, adaptability, facility, give, **suppleness,** willowiness, **litheness, limberness;** elasticity 1048, **resilience,** springiness, resiliency, rubberiness; sponginess, pulpiness, doughiness, compressibility; malleability, moldability, fictility, sequacity <old>; **impressionability,** susceptibility, responsiveness, receptiveness, sensibility, sensitiveness; formability, formativeness; extensibility, extendibility; agreeability 324.1; submissiveness 433.3

3 **flaccidity,** flaccidness, **flabbiness, limpness,** rubberiness, floppiness; **looseness,** laxness, laxity, laxation, relaxedness, relaxation

4 <comparisons> putty, clay, dough, blubber, rubber, wax, butter, soap, pudding; velvet, plush, satin, silk; wool, fleece; pillow, cushion; kapok; baby's bottom; puff; fluff, floss, flue; down, feathers, feather bed, eiderdown, swansdown, thistledown; breeze, zephyr; foam; snow

5 **softening,** softening-up; **easing,** padding, cushioning; mollifying, mollification; **relaxation,** laxation; mellowing; tenderizing

VERBS 6 **soften,** soften up; unsteel; **ease,** cushion; gentle, mollify, milden; **subdue,** tone *or* tune down; mellow; tenderize; **relax,** laxate, loosen; limber, limber up, supple; massage, knead, plump, plump up, fluff, fluff up, shake up; **mash,** whip, **smash,** squash, pulp, pulverize; masticate, macerate; thaw, liquefy

7 **yield, give,** relent, relax, bend, unbend, give way; comply; mellow, loosen up, chill out <nf>; submit 433.6,9

ADJS 8 **soft,** nonresistive, nonrigid; mild, **gentle, easy, delicate, tender;** complaisant 427.8; mellow, mellowy <old>; **softened,** mollified; whisper-soft, soft as putty *or* clay *or* dough, etc 1047.4, soft as a kiss *or* a sigh *or* a whisper *or* a baby's bottom

9 **pliant, pliable, flexible,** flexile, flexuous, **plastic,** elastic 1048.7, **ductile,** sequacious *or* facile <old>, tractile, **tractable, yielding,** giving, bending; adaptable, **malleable,** moldable, shapable, fabricable, fictile; compliant 324.5, submissive 433.12; **impressionable,** impressible, susceptible, responsive, receptive, sensitive; **formable,** formative; **bendable; supple,** willowy, **limber; lithe,** lithesome, lissome, double-jointed, loose-limbed, whippy; **elastic,** resilient, springy; extensile, extensible, extendible; putty, waxy, doughy, pasty, puttylike

10 **flaccid, flabby, limp,** rubbery, flimsy, floppy; **loose,** lax, relaxed, slack, unstrung

11 **spongy,** pulpy, pithy, medullary; edematous; foamy; juicy

12 **pasty, doughy;** loamy, clayey, argillaceous

13 **squashy,** squishy, squushy, squelchy

14 **fluffy,** flossy, **downy,** pubescent, feathery; fleecy, flocculent, woolly, lanate; furry

15 **velvety,** velvetlike, velutinous; plushy, plush; **satiny,** satinlike; cottony; **silky,** silken, silklike, sericeous, soft as silk

16 **softening, easing;** subduing, mollifying, emollient; demulcent; **relaxing,** loosening

ADVS 17 **softly, gently,** easily, delicately, tenderly; compliantly 324.9, submissively 433.17

1048 ELASTICITY

NOUNS 1 **elasticity, resilience** *or* resiliency, **give;** snap, **bounce,** bounciness; **stretch, stretchiness,** stretchability; extensibility; tone, tonus, tonicity; **spring, springiness;** rebound 903.2; **flexibility** 1047.2; **adaptability,** responsiveness; **buoyancy** *or* buoyance; **liveliness** 330.2

2 **stretching;** extension; distension 259.2; **stretch, tension, strain**

3 **elastic;** elastomer; **rubber,** gum elastic; stretch fabric, latex, spandex; gum, chewing gum 1062.6; whalebone, baleen; rubber band, rubber ball, handball, tennis ball; sponge rubber, crepe rubber; spring; springboard; trampoline; racket, battledore; gutta-percha; neoprene; spring, shock absorber

VERBS 4 **stretch;** extend; distend 259.4; flex

5 **give,** yield 1047.7; bounce, spring, snap back, recoil, rebound, spring back 903.6

6 **elasticize;** rubberize, rubber; vulcanize, plasticize

ADJS 7 **elastic, resilient, springy,** bouncy; **stretchable, stretchy,** stretch; extensile; **flexible** 1047.9; flexile; **adaptable,** adaptive, responsive; buoyant; lively 330.17; tensile

8 rubber, **rubbery,** rubberlike; rubberized

1049 TOUGHNESS

NOUNS 1 **toughness, resistance, ruggedness; strength, hardiness, vitality,** stamina 15.1, sturdiness; stubbornness, stiffness; **unbreakableness** *or* **unbreakability,** infrangibility; cohesiveness, tenacity, viscidity 803.3; durability, lastingness 826.1; **hardness** 1046; **leatheriness,** leatherlikeness; stringiness; staying power

2 <comparisons> leather; gristle, cartilage

VERBS 3 **toughen,** harden, stiffen, work-harden, **temper,** strengthen; season; be tough; **endure, hang tough** <nf>

ADJS 4 **tough, resistant;** shockproof, shock-resistant, impactproof, impact-resistant; stubborn, stiff; **heavy-duty;** hard *or* tough as nails; **strong, hardy,** vigorous; cohesive, **tenacious,** viscid; **durable,** lasting 827.10; untiring; **hard** 1046.10; chewy <nf>; leathery, leatherlike, coriaceous, tough as leather; sinewy, wiry; gristly, cartilaginous; stringy, fibrous; long-lasting

5 **unbreakable,** nonbreakable, infrangible, unshatterable, shatterproof, chip-proof, fractureproof; bulletproof, bombproof, fireproof; indestructible

6 **toughened,** hardened, tempered, annealed; seasoned; casehardened; vulcanized

1050 BRITTLENESS, FRAGILITY

NOUNS 1 **brittleness, crispness,** crispiness; **fragility, frailty,** damageability, delicacy 16.2, flimsiness, **breakability,** breakableness, frangibility, fracturableness, crackability, crackableness, crunchability, crushability, crushableness; lacerability; fissility; friability, friableness, crumbliness 1051, flakiness; vulnerableness, **vulnerability** 1006.4; inelasticity

2 <comparisons> eggshell, old bone, piecrust, peanut brittle; matchwood, balsa, old paper, parchment, rice paper, dead leaf; glass, glass jaw, china, ice, icicle, glass house; house of cards; lamina, shale, slate, pottery

VERBS 3 **break, shatter,** fragment, fragmentize, fragmentate, fall to pieces, shard, fracture, chip off, flake, shiver, **disintegrate** 805

ADJS 4 **brittle, crisp,** crispy; **fragile, frail,** delicate 16.14, flimsy, **breakable,** frangible, crushable, crackable, crunchable, fracturable; lacerable; **shatterable,** shattery, shivery, splintery; friable, crumbly 1051.13, flaky; fissile, scissile; brittle as glass; **vulnerable** 1005.16; wafer-thin, papery; inelastic

1051 POWDERINESS, CRUMBLINESS

NOUNS 1 **powderiness,** pulverulence, dustiness; chalkiness; **mealiness,** flouriness, branniness; efflorescence, bloom

2 **granularity, graininess,** granulation; **sandiness, grittiness,** gravelliness, sabulosity, sandiness

3 **friability,** pulverableness, crispness, crumbliness, flakiness; brittleness 1050

4 **pulverization,** comminution, trituration, attrition, detrition; levigation; reduction to powder *or* dust, pestling; fragmentation, sharding; brecciation; atomization, micronization; **powdering, crumbling,** flaking; abrasion 1044.2; **grinding,** milling, grating, shredding; granulation, granulization; **beating, pounding, shattering,** flailing, mashing, smashing, crushing; disintegration 806, decomposition

5 **powder, dust,** chalk; dust ball *or* kitten *or* bunny, slut's wool <Brit nf>, lint; efflorescence; **crumb,** crumble; **meal,** bran, flour, farina, grist; grits, groats; filings, raspings, sawdust; soot, smut;

particle, particulate, particulates, airborne particles, air pollution; fallout; cosmic dust; dust cloud, dust devil; spore, pollen

6 **grain,** granule, granulet; **grit, sand; gravel,** shingle; detritus, debris; breccia, collapse breccia; speck, mote, particle

7 **pulverizer,** comminutor, triturator, levigator; **crusher; mill; grinder;** granulator, pepper grinder, pepper mill; **grater,** cheese grater, nutmeg grater; **shredder;** pestle, **mortar and pestle; masher;** pounder; grindstone, millstone, quern, quernstone, muller; roller, steamroller; hammer; abrasive

8 koniology; konimeter

VERBS 9 **pulverize, powder,** comminute, triturate, contriturate, levigate, bray, pestle, disintegrate, reduce to powder *or* dust, grind to powder *or* dust, grind up; **fragment,** shard, shatter; brecciate; atomize, micronize; **crumble,** crumb, chip, flake; **granulate,** granulize, grain; **grind, grate, shred,** abrade 1044.7; **mill,** flour; **beat, pound, mash, smash, crush,** crunch, flail, squash, scrunch <nf>; grate, shred, mince, kibble

10 <be reduced to powder> **powder,** come *or* fall to dust, **crumble,** crumble to *or* into dust, **disintegrate** 806, fall to pieces, break up; effloresce; granulate, grain

ADJS 11 **powdery, dusty,** powder, pulverulent, pulverous, lutose; **pulverized,** pulverant, powdered, disintegrated, comminute, gone to dust, reduced to powder, dust-covered; **particulate; ground, grated,** pestled, milled, stone-ground, comminuted, triturated, levigated; sharded, **crushed; fragmented; shredded;** sifted; **fine,** impalpable; **chalky,** chalklike; **mealy,** floury, farinaceous; branny; furfuraceous, scaly, scurfy; flaky 296.7; detrited, detrital; scobiform, scobicular; efflorescent

12 **granular, grainy,** granulate, **granulated; sandy, gritty,** sabulous, arenarious, arenaceous, arenose; shingly, shingled, pebbled, pebbly; **gravelly;** breccial, brecciated

13 **pulverable, pulverizable,** pulverulent, triturable; **friable,** crimp <old>, crisp, **crumbly**

1052 MATERIALITY

NOUNS 1 **materiality,** materialness; **corporeity,** corporality, corporeality, corporealness, bodiliness, embodiment, existence; **substantiality** 762, concreteness 763.1; **physicalness,** physicality; tangibility; palpability

2 **matter, material,** materiality, **substance** 763, **stuff,** hyle; raw material, organic matter; **primal matter,** initial substance, xylem; brute matter; **element;** chemical element 1060.1; the four elements; earth, air, fire, water; elementary particle, fundamental particle; elementary unit, building block, unit of being, monad; constituent, component; **atom** 1038.4; atomic particles 1037.6; **molecule;** material world, physical world, real world, nature, natural world; hypostasis, substratum; plenum; antimatter

3 **body,** physical body, material body, corpus <nf>, anatomy <nf>, person, **figure, form,** frame, **physique,** carcass <nf>, bones, flesh, clay, clod, hulk; soma; **torso, trunk;** warm body <nf>

4 **object, article, thing,** material thing, affair, something, entity; whatsit <nf>, what's-its-name 528.2; something *or* other, *etwas* <Ger>, *eppes* <Yiddish>, *quelque chose* <Fr>; artifact; inanimate object; animate being

5 <nf terms> **gadget** 1040.1; thingum, **thingamabob,** thingumadad, thingy, thingumadoodle, **thingamajig** *or* thingumajig, thingumajigger, thingumaree, thingummy, **doodad,** dofunny, **dojigger,** dojiggy, domajig, domajigger, **dohickey** *or* doohickey, dowhacky, flumadiddle, gigamaree, **gimmick, gizmo,** dingus, hickey, jigger, hootmalalie, hootenanny, whatchy, widget, whatsis *or* whatsit, gismo *or* gizmo

6 **materialism,** physicism, epiphenomenalism, identity theory of mind, atomism, mechanism; physicalism, behaviorism, instrumentalism, pragmatism, pragmaticism; historical materialism, dialectical materialism, Marxism; **positivism,** logical positivism, positive philosophy, empiricism, **naturalism;** realism, natural realism, commonsense realism, commonsense philosophy, naïve realism, new realism, critical realism, representative realism, epistemological realism; substantialism; hylomorphism; hylotheism; hylozoism; worldliness, earthliness, animalism, secularism, temporality

7 **materialist,** physicist, atomist; historical *or* dialectical materialist, Marxist; **naturalist;** realist, natural realist, commonsense realist, commonsense philosopher, epistemological realist; humanist, positivist; physical scientist

8 **materialization,** corporealization; substantialization, substantiation; **embodiment, incorporation,** personification, **incarnation,** manifestation; **reincarnation,** reembodiment, transmigration, metempsychosis

VERBS 9 **materialize** 763.5, corporalize; substantialize, substantify, substantiate; **embody** 763.5, body, **incorporate,** corporify, personify, **incarnate; reincarnate,** reembody, transmigrate; externalize

ADJS 10 **material,** materiate, hylic, **substantial** 763.6, tangible; **corporeal,** corporeous, corporal, **bodily;**

physical, somatic, somatical, somatous; **fleshly;** worldly, earthly, here-and-now, **secular,** temporal, **unspiritual,** nonspiritual; empirical, spatiotemporal; objective, clinical

11 **embodied,** bodied, **incorporated, incarnate**

12 **materialist** *or* **materialistic,** atomistic, mechanist, mechanistic; Marxian, Marxist; **naturalist, naturalistic, positivist, positivistic;** commonsense, **realist,** realistic; hylotheistic; hylomorphous; hylozoic, hylozoistic

1053 IMMATERIALITY

NOUNS 1 **immateriality,** immaterialness; incorporeity, incorporeality, incorporealness, **bodilessness;** unsubstantiality 763, unsubstantialness; **intangibility,** impalpability, imponderability; inextension, nonextension; nonexteriority, nonexternality; **unearthliness, unworldliness,** ethereality, unreality; **supernaturalism** 689.2; **spirituality,** spiritualness, spirituousness <old>, otherworldliness, ghostliness, shadowiness; occultism 689, the occult, occult phenomena; ghost-raising, ghost-hunting, ghostbusting <nf>; psychism, psychics, psychic *or* psychical research, psychicism; spirit world, astral plane

2 incorporeal, incorporeity, immateriality, unsubstantiality 764

3 **immaterialism, idealism,** philosophical idealism, metaphysical idealism; objective idealism; absolute idealism; epistemological idealism; monistic idealism, pluralistic idealism; critical idealism; transcendental idealism; subjectivism; solipsism; subjective idealism; **spiritualism;** personalism; panpsychism, psychism, animism, hylozoism, animatism; Platonism, Platonic realism, Berkeleianism, Cambridge Platonism, Kantianism, Hegelianism, New England Transcendentalism; Neoplatonism; Platonic idea *or* ideal *or* form, pure form, form, universal; transcendental object; transcendental

4 immaterialist, **idealist;** Berkeleian, Platonist, Hegelian, Kantian; Neoplatonist; **spiritualist;** psychist, panpsychist, animist; **occultist** 689.11; medium; ghost-raiser, ghost-hunter, ghostbuster <nf>

5 dematerialization; **disembodiment,** disincarnation; **spiritualization**

VERBS 6 dematerialize, immaterialize, unsubstantialize, insubstantialize, desubstantialize, **disembody,** disincarnate; **spiritualize,** spiritize; meditate

ADJS 7 **immaterial,** nonmaterial; **unsubstantial** 764.5, insubstantial, **intangible,** impalpable, imponderable; unextended, extensionless; **incorporeal,** incorporate, incorporeous; **bodiless,** unembodied, without body, asomatous; **disembodied,** disbodied, discarnate, decarnate, decarnated; metaphysical; **unphysical,** nonphysical; **unfleshly;** airy, ghostly, spectral, phantom, shadowy, ethereal; **spiritual,** astral, psychic *or* psychical; **unearthly, unworldly, otherworldly,** extramundane, transmundane; supernatural; **occult;** parapsychological

8 **idealist, idealistic,** immaterialist, immaterialistic; solipsistic; spiritualist, spiritualistic; panpsychist, panpsychistic; animist, animistic; Platonic, Platonistic, Berkeleian, Hegelian, Kantian; Neoplatonic, Neoplatonistic

1054 MATERIALS

NOUNS 1 **materials,** substances, stuff, matter; **raw material, staple, stock,** grist, basic material; material resources *or* means; store, supply 386; strategic materials; matériel; natural resource

2 <building materials> sticks and stones, lath and plaster, bricks and mortar, wattle and daub; **roofing,** roofage, tiles, shingles; walling, siding; **flooring,** pavement, paving material, paving, paving stone; masonry, stonework, flag, flagstone, ashlar, stone 1059.1; covering materials; mortar, plasters; **cement, concrete,** cyclopean concrete, ferroconcrete, prestressed concrete, reinforced concrete, slag concrete, cinder concrete; brick, firebrick; cinder block, concrete block; clinker, adobe, clay; **tile,** tiling; glass, steel, slate, cobble, tar, asphalt, gravel

3 **wood** <see list>, **lumber, timber,** forest-product; hardwood, softwood; stick, stick of wood, stave; billet; log, pole, post, beam 273.3, **board,** plank; deal; two-by-four, three-by-four, etc; slab, puncheon; slat, splat, lath; boarding, timbering, timberwork, planking; lathing, lathwork; sheeting; paneling, panelboard, panelwork; plywood, plyboard; sheathing, sheathing board; siding, sideboard; weatherboard, clapboard; shingle, shake; log; driftwood; firewood, kindling, stovewood; cordwood; cord, cordage; brushwood; dead wood; pulpwood, sapwood, alburnum, heartwood, duramen; early wood, late wood, springwood, summerwood

4 cane, bamboo, rattan

5 **paper** <see list>, paper stock, stock; sheet, leaf, page; quire, ream, stationery; cardboard

6 **plastic** <see list>; thermoplastic; thermosetting plastic; resin plastic; cellulose plastic; protein plastic; cast plastic, molded plastic, extruded plastic; molding compounds; laminate; adhesive;

plasticizer; polymer <see list>; **synthetic;** synthetic fabric *or* textile *or* cloth; synthetic rubber

VERBS 7 gather *or* procure materials; **store, stock,** stock up 386.11, lay in, restock; **process,** utilize

8 **woods**

- acacia
- alder
- applewood
- ash
- aspen
- balsa
- balsam
- banyan
- bass *or* basswood
- beech *or* beechwood
- betel palm
- birch
- boxwood
- brierwood
- burl
- buttonwood
- cacao
- cedar *or* cedarwood
- cherry
- chestnut
- citrus
- coconut
- cork
- cottonwood
- cypress
- dogwood
- ebony
- elder
- elm *or* elmwood
- eucalyptus
- fig
- fir
- fruit wood
- gum *or* gumwood
- hawthorn
- hazel *or* hazelwood
- hemlock
- hickory
- ironwood
- juniper
- knotty pine
- lancewood
- larch
- laurel
- lignum vitae
- linden
- loblolly pine
- locust
- logwood
- magnolia
- mahogany
- maple
- mesquite
- monkeypod
- myrtle
- oak
- olive
- palm
- pear
- pecan
- pine
- poplar
- redwood
- rosewood
- rubber
- sandalwood
- satinwood
- sequoia
- sisal
- sour gum
- spruce
- sugar maple
- sumac
- sycamore
- teak *or* teakwood
- tulipwood
- tupelo
- walnut
- willow
- yew
- zebrawood

9 **plastics**

- acetate
- acetate nitrate
- acrylic
- alkyd
- aminoplast
- Bakelite <trademark>
- casein plastic
- cellophane
- celluloid
- cellulose acetate
- cellulose ether
- cellulose nitrate
- cellulosic
- coumarone-indene
- epoxy
- fluorocarbon plastic
- Formica <trademark>
- furane
- laminate
- lignin
- Lucite <trademark>
- melamine
- multiresin
- Mylar <trademark>
- neoprene
- nitrate
- nylon
- phenolic
- phenolic urea
- Plexiglas <trademark>
- polyester
- polyethylene
- polymeric amide
- polypropylene
- polystyrene
- polyurethane
- polyvinyl chloride *or* PVC
- polyvinyl-formaldehyde
- resinoid
- silicone resin
- Styrofoam <trademark>
- Teflon <trademark>
- terpene
- tetrafluoroethylene
- urea
- urea formaldehyde
- vinyl
- Vinylite <trademark>

10 **polymers**

- addition polymer
- atactic polymer
- chloroprene rubber
- condensation polymer
- copolymer
- epoxide resin
- homopolymer
- isoprene rubber
- isotactic polymer
- macromolecule
- monomer
- nylon
- plasticizer
- Plexiglas <trademark>
- polycarbonate
- polyester
- polyethylene *or* polyethene *or* polythene
- polypropylene *or* polypropene
- polystyrene
- polyurethane
- polyvinyl chloride *or* PVC
- resin
- stereoregular polymer
- syndiotactic polymer
- Teflon <trademark>
- thermosetting plastic
- vulcanite

11 **paper**

- bond paper
- carbon paper
- cardboard
- computer paper
- crepe paper
- fiberboard
- foolscap
- glossy paper
- laminated paper
- newsprint
- onionskin
- paper towel
- posterboard
- rag paper
- rice paper
- stationery
- tissue paper
- toilet paper
- tracing paper
- typing paper
- watermarked paper
- wax paper
- wrapping paper
- writing paper

1055 INORGANIC MATTER

NOUNS 1 **inorganic matter,** nonorganic matter; inanimate *or* lifeless *or* nonliving matter, inorganized *or* unorganized matter, inert matter, dead matter, **brute matter;** mineral kingdom *or* world; matter, mere matter

2 **inanimateness,** inanimation, **lifelessness,** inertness; **insensibility,** insentience, insensateness, senselessness, unconsciousness, unfeelingness

3 inorganic chemistry; chemicals 1060

ADJS 4 **inorganic,** unorganic, nonorganic; **mineral,** nonbiological; unorganized, inorganized; material 1052.9

5 **inanimate,** inanimated, unanimated, exanimate,

azoic, nonliving, dead, **lifeless,** soulless; inert; insentient, unconscious, nonconscious, **insensible,** insensate, senseless, unfeeling; dumb, mute

1056 OILS, LUBRICANTS

NOUNS 1 **oil,** *oleum* <L>; **fat,** lipid, **grease;** sebum, tallow, vegetable oil, animal oil; **ester,** glyceryl ester; fixed oil, fatty oil, nonvolatile oil, volatile oil, essential oil; saturated fat, hydrogenated fat, unsaturated fat, polyunsaturated fat; drying oil, semidrying oil, nondrying oil; glycerol, wax

2 **lubricant,** lubricator, lubricating oil, lubricating agent, antifriction; graphite, plumbago, black lead; silicone; glycerin *or* glycerine; silicone; wax, cerate; mucilage, mucus, synovia; spit, spittle, saliva; Vaseline <trademark>, petroleum jelly, K-Y <trademark>; soap, lather

3 **ointment, balm, salve, lotion, cream, unguent,** unguentum, inunction, inunctum, unction, chrism *or* chrisom; soothing syrup, lenitive, embrocation, demulcent, emollient, liniment; spikenard, nard; balsam; **pomade,** pomatum, brilliantine; styling mousse, styling gel; cold cream, hand lotion, face cream, lanolin; eyewash, collyrium; sun-block, sun-tan lotion, tanning cream

4 **petroleum,** rock oil, fossil oil, shale oil, coal oil; **fuel;** fuel oil; mineral oil; crude oil, crude; motor oil; gasoline *or* gas; kerosene, paraffin

5 **oiliness, greasiness, unctuousness,** unctiousness, unctuosity; **fattiness,** fatness, pinguidity; richness; sebaceousness; adiposis, adiposity; **soapiness,** saponacity *or* saponaceousness; smoothness, slickness, sleekness, **slipperiness,** lubricity; waxiness; creaminess; soapiness, saponaceousness

6 **lubrication,** lubricating, **oiling, greasing,** lubrification <old>; nonfriction; lubricity, lube <nf>, grease *or* lube job <nf>; **anointment,** unction, inunction; chrismatory, chrismation

7 lubritorium, lubritory; grease rack, grease pit; lubricator, oilcan, grease gun

VERBS 8 **oil,** grease; **lubricate,** lubrify <old>; **anoint,** salve, unguent, embrocate, dress, pour oil *or* balm upon; smear, daub; slick, slick on <nf>; pomade; lard; glycerolate, glycerinate, glycerinize; wax, beeswax; smooth the way *and* soap the way *and* grease the wheels <nf>; soap, lather

ADJS 9 **oily, greasy; unctuous,** unctional; unguinous; **oleaginous,** oleic; unguentary, **unguent,** unguentous; chrismal, chrismatory; **fat, fatty,** adipose; pinguid, pinguedinous, pinguescent; rich; sebaceous; blubbery, tallowy, suety; lardy, lardaceous; buttery, butyraceous; soapy, saponaceous; paraffinic; mucoid; smooth, slick, sleek, **slippery;** creamy; waxy, waxen, cereous, cerated

10 **lubricant,** lubricating, **lubricative,** lubricatory, lubricational; lenitive, unguentary, emollient, soothing, moisturizing

WORD ELEMENTS 11 ole-, oleo-, oli-; lip-, lipo-, lipar-, liparo-; cer-, cero-; sebo-, sebi-; steat-, steato-; petr-, petro-, petri-

1057 RESINS, GUMS

NOUNS 1 **resin; gum,** gum resin; oleoresin; hard *or* varnish resin, vegetable resin; synthetic resin, plastic, resinoid; resene; **rosin,** colophony, colophonium, colophonone, resinate

VERBS 2 resin, resinize, resinate; rosin

ADJS 3 **resinous,** resinic, resiny; resinoid; rosiny; **gummy,** gummous, gumlike; pitchy

1058 MINERALS, METALS

NOUNS 1 **mineral** <see list>; inorganic substance, lifeless matter found in nature; extracted matter *or* material; **mineral world** *or* **kingdom;** mineral resources; mineraloid, gel mineral, mineral aggregate; mineralization; crystalline element *or* compound; inorganic mineral, natural mineral, silicate, carbonate, oxide, sulfide, sulfate etc

2 **ore** <see list>, mineral; mineral-bearing material; unrefined *or* untreated mineral; natural *or* native mineral

3 **metal,** elementary metal, metallic element <see list>; metallics; native metals, alkali metals, earth metals, alkaline-earth metals, noble metals, precious metals, base metals, rare metals, rare-earth metals *or* elements; metalloid, semimetal, nonmetal; gold *or* silver bullion; gold dust; leaf metal, metal leaf, metal foil; metalwork, metalware; metallicity, metalleity

4 **alloy,** alloyage, fusion, compound; **amalgam**

5 **cast, casting; ingot, bullion;** pig, sow; sheet metal; button, gate, regulus

6 **mine,** pit; **quarry; diggings, workings;** open cut, opencast; bank; shaft; coal mine, colliery; strip mine; gold mine, silver mine, etc

7 **deposit,** mineral deposit, pay dirt; **vein, lode,** seam, dike, ore bed; shoot *or* chute, ore shoot *or* chute; chimney; stock; placer, placer deposit, placer gravel; country rock; lodestuff, gangue, matrix, veinstone

8 **mining;** coal mining, gold mining, etc; long-wall mining; room-and-pillar mining; strip mining; placer mining; hydraulic mining; prospecting; mining claim, lode claim, placer claim; gold fever; gold rush

9 **miner,** mineworker, pitman; coal miner, collier <Brit>; gold miner, gold digger; gold panner;

placer miner; quarry miner; **prospector,** desert rat <nf>, sourdough; wildcatter; **forty-niner;** hand miner, rockman, powderman, driller, draw man; butty

10 **mineralogy;** mineralogical chemistry; crystallography; **petrology,** petrography, micropetrography; **geology;** mining geology, mining engineering

11 **metallurgy;** metallography, metallurgical chemistry, metallurgical engineering, physical metallurgy, powder metallurgy, electrometallurgy, hydrometallurgy, pyrometallurgy, production metallurgy, extractive metallurgy

12 **mineralogist; metallurgist,** electrometallurgist, metallurgical engineer; **petrologist,** petrographer; **geologist;** mining engineer

VERBS **13** mineralize; petrify 1046.7

14 **mine;** quarry; pan, pan for gold; prospect; hit pay dirt; mine out

ADJS **15** **mineral;** inorganic 1055.4; mineralized, petrified; asbestine, carbonous, graphitic, micaceous, alabastrine, quartzose, silicic; sulfurous, sulfuric; ore-bearing, ore-forming

16 **metal, metallic,** metallike, metalline, metalloid *or* metalloidal, metalliform; semimetallic; nonmetallic; metallo-organic *or* metallorganic, organometallic; bimetallic, trimetallic; metalliferous, metalbearing

17 brass, brassy, brazen; bronze, bronzy; copper, coppery, cuprous, cupreous; gold, golden, gilt, aureate; nickel, nickelic, nickelous, nickeline; silver, silvery; iron, ironlike, ferric, ferrous, ferruginous; steel, steely; tin, tinny; lead, leaden; pewter, pewtery; mercurial, mercurous, quicksilver; gold-filled, gold-plated, silver-plated, etc

18 **mineralogical, metallurgical,** petrological, crystallographic

19 **minerals**

alabaster
amphibole
anhydrite
antimony
apatite
argillite
arsenic
asbestos
asphalt
augite
azurite
barite
bauxite
bitumen
boron
brimstone
bromine
brookite
brucite
calcite
carbon
carnelian
chalcedony
chert
chlorite
chromite
clay
coal
coke
corundum
cryolite
diamond
diatomite
dolomite
elaterite
emery
epidote
epsomite
feldspar
flint
fluorite
fluorspar
fool's gold
garnet
glauconite
graphite
gypsum
holosiderite
hornblende
ilmenite
iolite
iron pyrites
jet
kaolinite
kyanite
lazurite
lignite
lime
magnesite
malachite
maltha
marcasite
marl
meerschaum
mica
microlite
microlith
mineral charcoal
mineral coal
mineral oil
mineral salt
mineral tallow
mineral tar
mineral wax
molybdenite
monazite
moonstone
obsidian
olivine
orthoclase
ozokerite
peat
peridot
perlite
phosphate rock
phosphorus
pitchblende
pumice
pumicite
pyrite
pyroxene
quartz
realgar
red clay
rhodonite
rock salt
serpentine
siderite
silica
silicate
silicon
sodalite
spar
spinel
sulfur
talc
tellurium
topaz
tourmaline
tripoli
umber
vermiculite
wollastonite
wulfenite
zeolite
zircon

20 **ores**

amblygonite
argentite
arsenopyrite *or* mispickel
azurite
barite
bauxite
beryl
bornite
calaverite
carnotite
cassiterite
celestite
cerussite
chalcocite
chalcopyrite
chromite
cinnabar
cuprite
galena
garnierite
goethite
hematite
hemimorphite
hydrozincite
ilmenite
iron ore
ironstone
limonite
lodestone
magnetite
malachite
molybdenite
monazite
niobite

pitchblende
pyrargyrite
pyrite
scheelite
siderite
smithsonite
sphalerite
stibnite
sylvanite
tetrahedrite
tinstone
turgite
uranitite
wolframite
zincite

21 metallic elements

actinium
aluminum
americium
antimony
barium
beryllium
bismuth
cadmium
cerium
cesium
chromium
cobalt
copper
dysprosium
erbium
europium
gadolinium
gallium
germanium
gold
hafnium
holmium
indium
iridium
iron
lanthanum
lawrencium
lead
lithium
lutetium
magnesium
manganese
mercury
molybdenum
neodymium
nickel
niobium
osmium
palladium
phosphorus
platinum
polonium
potassium
praseodymium
promethium
protactinium
quicksilver
radium
rhenium
rhodium
rubidium
ruthenium
samarium
scandium
silver
sodium
strontium
tantalum
technetium
terbium
thallium
thorium
thulium
tin
titanium
tungsten
uranium
vanadium
ytterbium
yttrium
zinc
zirconium

1059 ROCK

NOUNS **1** **rock, stone** <see list>; living rock, rock formation; **igneous rock,** plutonic *or* abyssal rock, hypabyssal rock, magmatic rock, acid rock, mafic rock, felsic rock, ultrabasic rock, ultramafic rock; volcanic rock, extrusive *or* effusive rock, scoria; magma, intrusive rock; granite, basalt, porphyry, **lava,** aa *and* pahoehoe <Hawaiian>; **sedimentary rock,** lithified sediment, stratified rock, clastic rock, nonclastic rock; limestone, sandstone; **metamorphic rock,** schist, gneiss; conglomerate, pudding stone, breccia, rubble, rubblestone, scree, talus, tuff, tufa, brash; sarsen, sarsen stone, druid stone; monolith; crag, craig <Scot>; bedrock; mantlerock, regolith; saprolite, geest, laterite; building stone

2 **sand;** grain of sand; sands of the sea; sand pile, sand dune, sand hill; sand reef, sandbar

3 **gravel,** shingle, chesil <Brit>

4 **pebble,** pebblestone, gravelstone; jackstone *and* checkstone <nf>; fingerstone; slingstone; drakestone; spall

5 **boulder,** river boulder, shore boulder, glacial boulder

6 geological sediment, organic sediment, inorganic sediment, oceanic sediment, alluvial deposit, lake sediment, glacial deposit, eolian deposit; mud, sand, silt, clay, loess; rock, boulder, stone, gravel, granule, pebble

7 **precious stone, gem, gemstone** <see list>; stone: crystal, crystal lattice, crystal system; semiprecious stone; gem of the first water; birthstone

8 petrification, petrifaction, lithification, crystallization; rock cycle, sedimentation, deposition, consolidation, cementation, compaction, magmatism, metamorphosis, recrystallization, foliation

9 geology, petrology, crystallography; petrochemistry; petrogenesis

VERBS **10** petrify, lithify, crystallize, turn to stone; harden 1046.7

ADJS **11** **stone, rock,** lithic; petrified; petrogenic, petrescent; adamant, adamantine; flinty, flintlike; marbly, marblelike; granitic, granitelike; slaty, slatelike

12 **stony, rocky,** lapideous; stonelike, rocklike, lithoid *or* lithoidal; sandy, gritty 1051.12; gravelly, shingly, shingled; pebbly, pebbled; porphyritic, trachytic; crystal, crystalline; bouldery, rock- *or* boulder-strewn, rock-studded, rock-ribbed; craggy; monolithic

WORD ELEMENTS **13** petr-, petro-, petri-, saxi-, lith-, litho-, -lith; grano-; blast-, blasto-, -blast, orth-, ortho-, par-; para-; -clast; -lithic, litic; -clastic; crystall-, crystallo-

14 **stones**

anthraconite
aplite
basalt
beetlestone
boulder
brimstone
brownstone
buhr *or* buhrstone
cairngorm
chalk
clinkstone
dendrite
diabase
diorite
dolerite
dolmen
dolomite
dripstone
eaglestone
emery
fieldstone
flag *or* flagstone
flint
floatstone

freestone
geode
gneiss
goldstone
granite
granulite
graywacke
greenstone
grit
gritrock *or* gritstone
hairstone
hoarstone
ironstone
lava
limestone
lodestone
Lydian stone
marble
megalith
menhir
milkstone
monolith
mudstone
obsidian
omphalos
pitchstone
porphyry
pumice
quarrystone
quartz
quartzite
rance
rottenstone
sandstone
serpentine
shale
slab
slate
smokestone
snakestone
soapstone
stalactite
stalagmite
starstone
steatite
stinkstone
stone
tinstone
touchstone
trap *or* traprock
tufa
wacke
whitestone

15 gemstones

achroite
agate
alexandrite
amethyst
aquamarine
beryl
black opal
bloodstone
brilliant
carbuncle
carnelian
cat's-eye
chalcedony
chrysoberyl
chrysolite
chrysoprase
citrine
coral
demantoid *or* Uralian emerald
diamond
emerald
fire opal
garnet
girasol
harlequin opal
heliotrope
hyacinth
jacinth
jade *or* jadestone
jargoon
jasper
kunzite
lapis lazuli
moonstone
morganite
onyx
opal
pearl
peridot
plasma
rhodolite
rose quartz
ruby
sapphire
sard
sardonyx
siberite
spinel *or* spinel ruby
sunstone
tanzanite
tiger's eye
topaz
tourmaline
turquoise
water sapphire
white sapphire
zircon

1060 CHEMISTRY, CHEMICALS

NOUNS 1 **chemistry,** chemical science, science of substances, science of matter; branch of chemistry <see list>

2 **element** <see list>, chemical element; table of elements, periodic table, periodic table of elements; **radical group;** free radical, diradical; **ion,** anion, cation; atom 1037.4; **molecule,** macromolecule; trace element, microelement, micronutrient, minor element; **chemical, chemical compound;** organic chemical, biochemical, inorganic chemical; fine chemicals, heavy chemicals; agent, **reagent;** metal, nonmetal, semimetal, metalloid, heavy metal, alkali metal, noble metal; alkaline-earth element, transition element, noble gas, rare-earth element, lanthanide, actinide, transuranic element, supertransuranic element, superheavy element; inert gas, rare gas; period, short period, long period; family, group; s-block, p-block, d-block, f-block

3 **acid;** hydracid, oxyacid, sulfacid; acidity; **base, alkali,** nonacid; pH; neutralizer, antacid; alkalinity

4 **valence,** valency <Brit>, positive valence, negative valence; monovalence, univalence, bivalence, trivalence, tervalence, quadrivalence, tetravalence, etc, multivalence, polyvalence; covalence, electrovalence

5 **atomic weight,** atomic mass, atomic volume, mass number; **molecular weight,** molecular mass, molecular volume; atomic number, valence number

6 **chemicalization,** chemical process <see list>, chemical action, chemism; **chemical apparatus,** beaker, Bunsen burner, burette, centrifuge, condenser, crucible, graduated cylinder *or* graduate, pipette, test tube

7 chemist, chemical scientist; agricultural chemist, analytical chemist, astrochemist, biochemist, inorganic chemist, organic chemist, physical chemist, physiochemist, theoretical chemist, etc

VERBS 8 **chemicalize,** chemical; alkalize, alkalinize, alkalify; acidify, acidulate, acetify; borate, carbonate, chlorinate, hydrate, hydrogenate, hydroxylate, nitrate, oxidize, reduce, pepsinate, peroxidize, phosphatize, sulfate, sulfatize, sulfonate; calcify, carburize, deuterate, esterify, fluorinate, fluoridate, halogenate, tritrate; isomerize, metamerize, polymerize, copolymerize, homopolymerize; ferment, work; catalyze 806.4; electrolyze; bond, intercalate, invert, neutralize, ionize

ADJS 9 **chemical;** astrochemical, biochemical, chemicobiologic; physicochemical, physiochemical, chemicophysical, chemicobiological, chemicophysiologic *or* chemicophysiological, chemicodynamic, chemicoengineering, chemicomechanical, chemicomineralogical, chemicopharmaceutical, chemurgic, electrochemical, iatrochemical, chemotherapeutic *or* chemotherapeutical, chemophysiologic *or* chemophysiological, macrochemical, microchemical, physicochemical, phytochemical, photochemical, radiochemical, thermochemical, zoochemical; organic, inorganic; elemental, elementary; acid; alkaline, alkali, nonacid, basic; isomeric, isomerous, metameric, metamerous, heteromerous, polymeric, polymerous, copolymeric, copolymerous, monomeric, monomerous, dimeric, dimerous, etc

10 valent; univalent, monovalent, monatomic, bivalent, trivalent, tervalent, quadrivalent, tetravalent, etc, multivalent, polyvalent; covalent, electrovalent

WORD ELEMENTS **11** chem-, chemo-, chemi-, chemic-, chemico-; -mer, -merous, -meric; -valent

12 branches of chemistry

- actinochemistry
- agricultural chemistry
- alchemy *or* alchemistry
- analytical chemistry
- applied chemistry
- astrochemistry
- atomic chemistry
- biochemistry
- biogeochemistry
- business chemistry
- capillary chemistry
- catalysis
- chemiatry
- chemical dynamics
- chemical engineering
- chemical physics
- chemicobiology
- chemicoengineering
- chemophysiology
- chemurgy <old>
- colloid chemistry
- colorimetry *or* colorimetric analysis
- crystallography
- cytochemistry
- electrochemistry
- engineering chemistry
- galactochemistry
- galvanochemistry
- geochemistry
- histochemistry
- hydrochemistry
- iatrochemistry
- immunochemistry
- industrial chemistry
- inorganic chemistry
- lithochemistry
- macrochemistry
- magnetochemistry
- metachemistry
- metallurgy
- microchemistry
- mineralogical chemistry
- natural product chemistry
- neurochemistry
- nuclear chemistry
- organic chemistry
- pathological chemistry *or* pathochemistry
- petrochemistry
- pharmaceutical chemistry
- phonochemistry
- photochemistry
- physical chemistry *or* physiochemistry
- physiological chemistry *or* physiochemistry
- phytochemistry
- piezochemistry
- pneumatochemistry
- polymer chemistry
- psychobiochemistry *or* psychochemistry
- pure chemistry
- quantum chemistry
- radiochemistry
- soil chemistry
- spectrochemistry
- stereochemistry
- structural chemistry
- surface chemistry
- synthetic chemistry
- technochemistry
- theoretical chemistry
- thermochemistry
- topochemistry
- ultramicrochemistry
- zoochemistry *or* zoochemy
- zyochemistry *or* zymurgy

13 chemical elements

- actinium *or* Ac
- aluminum *or* Al
- americium *or* Am
- antimony *or* Sb
- argon *or* Ar *or* A
- arsenic *or* As
- astatine *or* At
- barium *or* Ba
- berkelium *or* Bk
- beryllium *or* Be
- bismuth *or* Bi
- boron *or* B
- bromine *or* Br
- cadmium *or* Cd
- calcium *or* Ca
- californium *or* Cf
- carbon *or* C
- cerium *or* Ce
- cesium *or* Cs
- chlorine *or* Cl
- chromium *or* Cr
- cobalt *or* Co
- copper *or* Cu
- curium *or* Cm
- dysprosium *or* Dy
- einsteinium *or* Es *or* E
- erbium *or* Er
- europium *or* Eu
- fermium *or* Fm
- fluorine *or* F
- francium *or* Fr
- gadolinium *or* Gd
- gallium *or* Ga
- germanium *or* Ge
- gold *or* Au
- hafnium *or* Hf
- helium *or* He
- holmium *or* Ho
- hydrogen *or* H
- indium *or* In
- iodine *or* I
- iridium *or* Ir
- iron *or* Fe
- krypton *or* Kr
- lanthanum *or* La
- lawrencium *or* Lw
- lead *or* Pb
- lithium *or* Li
- lutetium *or* Lu
- magnesium *or* Mg
- manganese *or* Mn
- mendelevium *or* Md *or* Mv
- mercury *or* Hg
- molybdenum *or* Mo
- neodymium *or* Nd
- neon *or* Ne
- neptunium *or* Np
- nickel *or* Ni
- niobium *or* Nb
- nitrogen *or* N
- nobelium *or* No
- osmium *or* Os
- oxygen *or* O
- palladium *or* Pd
- phosphorus *or* P
- platinum *or* Pt
- plutonium *or* Pu
- polonium *or* Po
- potassium *or* K
- praseodymium *or* Pr
- promethium *or* Pm
- protactinium *or* Pa
- radium *or* Ra
- radon *or* Rn
- rhenium *or* Re
- rhodium *or* Rh
- rubidium *or* Rb
- ruthenium *or* Ru
- samarium *or* Sm
- scandium *or* Sc
- selenium *or* Se
- silicon *or* Si
- silver *or* Ag
- sodium *or* Na
- strontium *or* Sr
- sulfur *or* S
- tantalum *or* Ta
- technetium *or* Tc
- tellurium *or* Te
- terbium *or* Tb
- thallium *or* Tl
- thorium *or* Th
- thulium *or* Tm
- tin *or* Sn
- titanium *or* Ti
- tungsten *or* wolfram *or* W
- unnihexium *or* Unh
- unnilpentium *or* Unp *or* hahnium
- unnilquadrium *or* Unq *or* rutherfordium
- uranium *or* U
- vanadium *or* V
- xenon *or* Xe
- ytterbium *or* Yb
- yttrium *or* Y
- zinc *or* Zn
- zirconium *or* Zr

14 **chemical processes**

acetification
acidification *or* acidulation
alkalization *or* alkalinization
aromatization
carbonation
catalysis
chain reaction
chlorination
condensation
copolymerization
cyclization
electrolysis
electrophilic reaction
fermentation *or* ferment
geometric isomerization
heterolysis
heterolytic fission
homolysis
homolytic fission
homopolymerization
hydration
hydrogenation
hydroxylation
ionization
isomerization
isotope effect
metamerization
neutralization
nitration
nucleophilic reaction
optical isomerization
oxidation
oxidization
phosphatization
photochemical reaction
polymerization
position isomerization
pyrolysis
radiochemical reaction
reduction
ring opening
saturization
sulfation
sulfatization
sulfonation
synthesis
tautoisomerization

1061 LIQUIDITY

NOUNS 1 **liquidity, fluidity,** fluidness, liquidness, liquefaction 1064; wateriness; rheuminess, runniness; **juiciness,** sappiness, succulence; milkiness, lactescence; lactation; chylifaction, chylification; serosity; suppuration; **moisture,** wetness 1065.1; **fluency,** flow, flowage, flux, fluxion, fluxility <old>; **circulation;** turbulence, turbidity, turbulent flow; streamline flow; hemorrhage; suppuration, secretion; liquid state; solubleness; fluid mechanics, hydrology

2 **fluid, liquid;** liquor 10.49, drink, beverage; liquid extract, fluid extract, condensation; **juice, sap,** latex, extract; milk, whey, buttermilk, ghee; water 1065.3; **body fluid, blood;** stock, meat juice, gravy, sauce, soup; semiliquid 1062.5; fluid mechanics, hydraulics, etc 1039.4; solvent, liquefier, liquefacient; solution, infusion, decoction

3 flowmeter, fluidmeter, hydrometer, sphygmomanometer

ADJS 4 **fluid,** fluidal, fluidic, **fluent, flowing,** fluxible *or* fluxile <old>, fluxional, fluxionary, runny; circulatory, **circulation,** turbid; **liquid,** liquidy; watery 1065.16; **juicy,** sappy, succulent, moist; **wet** 1065.15; uncongealed, unclotted; rheumy; bloody; liquefied, liquefying, liquefiable

5 **milky,** lacteal, lacteous, **lactic;** lactescent, lactiferous; milk, milch

1062 SEMILIQUIDITY

NOUNS 1 **semiliquidity,** semifluidity; butteriness, creaminess; pulpiness 1063

2 **viscosity,** viscidity, viscousness, slabbiness, lentor <old>; thickness, spissitude <old>, heaviness, stodginess; **stickiness, tackiness,** glutinousness, glutinosity, toughness, tenaciousness, tenacity, **adhesiveness,** clinginess, clingingness, **gumminess,** gauminess <nf>, gumlikeness; **ropiness, stringiness;** clamminess, sliminess, mucilaginousness; gooeyness *and* gunkiness <nf>; **gluiness,** gluelikeness; syrupiness, treacliness <Brit>; gelatinousness, jellylikeness, gelatinity, gelation; colloidality; doughiness, pastiness; **thickening,** curdling, clotting, coagulation, incrassation, inspissation, clabbering *and* loppering *or* lobbering <nf>, jellification

3 **mucosity,** mucidness, mucousness, pituitousness <old>, snottiness <nf>; **sliminess**

4 **muddiness,** muckiness, miriness, **slushiness,** sloshiness, sludginess, **sloppiness,** slobbiness, slabbiness <old>, squashiness, squelchiness, **ooziness; turbidity,** turbidness, dirtiness

5 semiliquid, semifluid; **goo** *and* goop *and* gook *and* gunk *and* glop <nf>, sticky mess, gaum <nf>; **paste,** pap, pudding, putty, **butter,** cream; **pulp** 1063.2; **jelly,** gelatin *or* gelatine, jell, gel, jam, agar, isinglass; **glue;** size; **gluten;** mucilage; mucus; **dough,** batter; mousse, pudding; **syrup,** molasses, treacle <Brit>, honey; egg white, albumen, glair; starch, cornstarch; **curd,** clabber, bonnyclabber; gruel, porridge, loblolly <nf>; soup, gumbo, gravy, purée, pulp; yogurt

6 **gum** 1057, chewing gum, bubble gum; chicle, chicle gum

7 **emulsion,** emulsoid; emulsification; emulsifier; **colloid,** colloider

8 **mud, muck, mire, slush, slosh,** sludge, slob <Ir>, squash, swill, **slime; slop, ooze, mire;** clay, slip; gumbo; gook *or* gunk *or* gook *or* glop *or* guck <nf>

9 **mud puddle, puddle,** loblolly <nf>, slop; **mudhole,** slough, muckhole, chuckhole, chughole <nf>; hog wallow

VERBS 10 **emulsify,** emulsionize; colloid, colloidize; cream; churn, whip, beat up; **thicken,** inspissate, incrassate, curdle, clot, coagulate, congeal, clabber *and* lopper <nf>; jell, jelly, jellify, gel

ADJS 11 **semiliquid,** semifluid, semifluidic; buttery; creamy; emulsive, colloidal; **pulpy** 1063.6; half-frozen, half-melted

12 **viscous, viscid,** viscose, slabby; **thick,** heavy, stodgy, soupy, thickened, inspissated, incrassated; curdled, clotted, grumous, coagulated, clabbered *and*

loppered <nf>; **sticky, tacky,** tenacious, adhesive, clingy, clinging, tough; gluey, gluelike, glutinous, glutenous, glutinose; gumbo, gumbolike; **gummy,** gaumy <nf>, gummous, gumlike, **syrupy;** treacly <Brit>; ropy, stringy; mucilaginous, clammy, slimy, slithery; gooey *and* gunky *and* gloppy *and* goopy *and* gooky <nf>; **gelatinous,** jellylike, jellied, jelled; tremelloid *or* tremellose; glairy; **doughy, pasty;** starchy, amylaceous; pulpy, soft, mushy

13 **mucous,** muculent, mucoid, mucinous, pituitous <old>, phlegmy, snotty <nf>; mucific, muciferous

14 **slimy; muddy,** miry, mucky, **slushy, sloshy,** sludgy, sloppy, slobby, slabby <old>, splashy, **squashy,** squishy, **squelchy, oozy,** sloughy, plashy, sposhy <nf>; **turbid, dirty**

1063 PULPINESS

NOUNS 1 **pulpiness,** pulpousness; softness 1047; flabbiness; **mushiness,** mashiness, squashiness, creaminess; **pastiness,** doughiness; **sponginess,** pithiness; fleshiness, overripeness, succulence

2 **pulp, paste, mash, mush,** smash, squash, crush; tomato paste *or* pulp; pudding, porridge, sponge; sauce, butter; poultice, cataplasm, plaster; pith; paper pulp, wood pulp, sulfate pulp, sulfite pulp, rag pulp; pulpwood; pulp lead, white lead; dental *or* tooth pulp

3 **pulping,** pulpification, pulpefaction; blending, steeping; digestion; **maceration,** mastication

4 **pulper,** pulpifier, macerator, pulp machine *or* engine, digester; **masher,** smasher, potato masher, ricer, beetle; blender, food processor, food mill

VERBS 5 **pulp,** pulpify; **macerate,** masticate, chew; regurgitate; **mash,** smash, squash, crush

ADJS 6 **pulpy,** pulpous, pulpal, pulpar, pulplike, pulped; **pasty,** doughy; pultaceous; **mushy;** macerated, masticated, chewed; regurgitated; **squashy,** squelchy, squishy; soft, flabby; fleshy, succulent; **spongy,** pithy

1064 LIQUEFACTION

NOUNS 1 **liquefaction,** liquefying, liquidizing, liquidization, fluidification, fluidization; liquescence *or* liquescency, deliquescence, deliquiation *and* deliquium <old>; **solution,** dissolution, dissolving; **infusion,** soaking, steeping, brewing; **melting,** thawing, running, fusing, fusion; decoagulation, unclotting; solubilization; colliquation; lixiviation, percolation, leaching

2 **solubility,** solubleness, dissolvability, dissolvableness, dissolubility, dissolubleness; meltability, fusibility

3 **solution;** decoction, infusion, mixture; chemical solution; lixivium, leach, leachate; **suspension,** colloidal suspension; **emulsion,** gel, aerosol

4 **solvent** <see list>, dissolvent, dissolver, dissolving agent, resolvent, resolutive, **thinner,** diluent; anticoagulant; liquefier, liquefacient; menstruum; universal solvent, alkahest; flux

VERBS 5 **liquefy,** liquidize, liquesce, fluidify, fluidize; **melt, run,** thaw, colliquate; melt down; fuse, flux; deliquesce; **dissolve,** solve; thin, cut; solubilize; hold in solution; unclot, decoagulate; leach, lixiviate, percolate; **infuse,** decoct, steep, soak, brew

ADJS 6 **liquefied, melted, molten,** thawed; unclotted, decoagulated; in solution, in suspension, liquescent, deliquescent; colloidal

7 **liquefying,** liquefactive; colliquative, melting, fusing, thawing; **dissolving,** dissolutive, dissolutional

8 **solvent,** dissolvent, resolvent, resolutive, thinning, cutting, diluent; alkahestic

9 liquefiable; **meltable,** fusible, thawable; **soluble, dissolvable,** dissoluble; water-soluble

10 **solvents**

acetone
alcohol
alkahest
amyl alcohol
benzene
benzine *or* benzol
carbolic acid
carbon disulfide
carbon tetrachloride *or* carbon tet <nf>
chloroform
denatured alcohol
ether
ethyl acetate
ethyl chloride
furfural
gasoline
glycerol
glycol
kerosene
methyl alcohol
naphtha
pentane
phenol
propylene glycol
pyridine
toluene
turpentine
urethane
xylene *or* xylol

1065 MOISTURE

NOUNS 1 **moisture,** damp, wet; **dampness, moistness,** moistiness, **wetness,** wettedness, wettishness, **wateriness,** humor *or* humectation <old>; soddenness, soppiness, soppingness, sogginess; swampiness, bogginess, marshiness; dewiness; mistiness, fogginess 319.4; raininess, pluviosity, showeriness; rainfall; exudation 190.6; secretion 13

2 **humidity,** humidness, **dankness,** dankishness, **mugginess,** closeness, stickiness, sweatiness; absolute humidity, relative humidity; dew point, saturation, saturation point; humidification

3 **water,** *aqua* <L>, *agua* <Sp>, *eau* <Fr>; Adam's ale *or* wine, **H_2O**; hydrol; hard water, soft water;

heavy water; water supply, water system, waterworks; drinking water, tap water; rain water, rain 316; snowmelt, melt water; **groundwater,** underground water, subsurface water, subterranean water; water table, aquifer, artesian basin, artesian spring, sinkhole; spring water, well water; seawater, salt water; limewater; fresh water; standing water; mineral water *or* waters; soda water, carbonated water; steam, water vapor; hydrosphere; hydrometeor; head, hydrostatic head; hydrothermal water; distilled water; wetting agent, wetting-out agent, liquidizer, moisturizer; humidifier; bottled water, commercially bottled water, designer water <nf>; water cycle, hydrological cycle, evaporation, transpiration, precipitation, runoff, percolation

4 **dew, dewdrops,** dawn *or* morning dew, night dew, evening damp; fog drip, false dew; guttation; haze, mist, fog, cloud

5 **sprinkle, spray,** sparge, shower; spindrift, spume, froth, foam; **splash,** plash, swash, slosh; **splatter,** spatter

6 **wetting, moistening, dampening,** damping; humidification; dewing, bedewing; **watering, irrigation;** hosing, wetting *or* hosing down; **sprinkling, spraying,** spritzing <nf>, sparging, aspersion, aspergation; **splashing,** swashing, splattering, spattering; affusion, baptism; bath, bathing, rinsing, laving; **flooding,** drowning, inundation, deluge; **immersion,** submersion 367.2

7 **soaking,** soakage, soaking through, sopping, **drenching,** imbruement, sousing; ducking, dunking <nf>; soak, drench, souse; **saturation,** permeation; waterlogging; **steeping,** maceration, seething, infusion, brewing, imbuement; injection, impregnation; infiltration, percolation, leaching, lixiviation; pulping 1063.3

8 **sprinkler,** sparger, sparge, sprayer, speed sprayer, concentrate sprayer, mist concentrate sprayer, spray, spray can, atomizer, aerosol; nozzle; aspergil, aspergillum; **shower,** shower bath, shower head, needle bath; syringe, fountain syringe, douche, enema, clyster; sprinkling *or* watering can; water pistol *or* gun, squirt gun; lawn sprinkler; sprinkling system, sprinkler head; hydrant, irrigator

9 <sciences> hygrology, hygrometry, psychrometry, hydrography, hydrology; hydraulics; hydrotherapy, hydrotherapeutics, taking the waters

10 <instruments> hygrometer, hair hygrometer, hygrograph, hygrodeik, hygroscope, hygrothermograph; psychrometer, sling psychrometer; hydrostat; rain gauge *or* pluviometer; hydrograph; humidor; hygrostat

VERBS 11 be damp, not have a dry thread; **drip,** weep; **seep, ooze,** percolate; exude 190.15; sweat; secrete 13.5

12 **moisten, dampen,** moisturize, damp, **wet,** wet down; humidify, humect *or* humectate <old>; **water, irrigate;** dew, bedew; **sprinkle,** besprinkle, **spray,** spritz <nf>, sparge, asperge; bepiss; **splash,** dash, **swash, slosh, splatter, spatter,** bespatter; dabble, paddle; slop, slobber; hose, hose down; syringe, douche; sponge; dilute, adulterate

13 **soak, drench,** imbrue, **souse, sop,** sodden; **saturate,** permeate; **bathe,** lave, wash, rinse, douche, flush; water-soak, waterlog; **steep,** seethe, macerate, infuse, imbue, brew, impregnate, inject, injest; infiltrate, percolate, leach, lixiviate

14 **flood,** float, **inundate, deluge,** turn to a lake *or* sea, swamp, whelm, overwhelm, drown; duck, dip, dunk <nf>; **submerge** 367.7; sluice, pour on, flow on; rain 316.10

ADJS 15 **moist,** moisty; **damp,** dampish; **wet,** wettish; undried, tacky; **humid, dank, muggy, sticky;** dewy, bedewed, roric *and* roriferous <old>; rainy 316.11; marshy, swampy, fenny, boggy

16 **watery,** waterish, **aqueous, aquatic;** liquid; **splashy,** plashy, sloppy, swashy <Brit>; hydrous, hydrated; hydraulic; moist; hydrodynamic, hydraulic

17 **soaked, drenched,** soused, bathed, steeped, macerated; **saturated,** permeated; **watersoaked, waterlogged; soaking, sopping; wringing wet,** soaking wet, sopping wet, wet to the skin, like a drowned rat; **sodden,** soppy, **soggy,** soaky; dripping, **dripping wet;** dribbling, seeping, weeping, oozing; flooded, overflowed, whelmed, swamped, engulfed, inundated, deluged, drowned, submerged, submersed, immersed, dipped, dunked <nf>; awash, weltering

18 wetting, dampening, moistening, watering, humectant; **drenching, soaking,** sopping; **irrigational,** irriguous <old>

19 hygric, hygrometric, hygroscopic, hygrophilous, hygrothermal

WORD ELEMENTS 20 hydr-, hydro-, hydrat-, hydrato-, aqui-, aqua-; hygr-, hygro-

1066 DRYNESS

NOUNS 1 **dryness, aridness,** aridity, waterlessness, siccity; **drought;** juicelessness, saplessness; **thirst,** thirstiness, dehydration, xerostomia; corkiness; watertightness, watertight integrity; parchedness

2 <comparisons> desert, dust, bone, parchment, stick, mummy, biscuit, cracker

3 **drying, desiccation,** drying up, exsiccation; **dehydration,** anhydration; evaporation; air-drying; blow-drying; freeze-drying; insolation, sunning; drainage; withering, mummification; dehumidification; blotting

4 **drier,** desiccator, desiccative, siccative, exsiccative,

exsiccator, **dehydrator,** dehydrant; dehumidifier; evaporator; hair-drier, blow-dryer; clothes dryer; tumbler-dryer; absorbent; clothesline

VERBS **5** thirst; drink up, soak up, sponge up; parch

6 **dry, desiccate,** exsiccate, dry up, **dehydrate,** anhydrate; evaporate; dehumidify; air-dry; drip-dry; dry off; insolate, sun, sun-dry; hang out to dry, air; spin-dry, tumbler-dry; blow-dry; freeze-dry; smoke, smoke-dry; cure; torrefy, burn, fire, kiln, **bake, parch,** scorch, sear; **wither, shrivel;** wizen, weazen; mummify; sponge, blot, soak up; **wipe,** rub, swab, brush; towel; drain 192.12; evaporate

ADJS **7** **dry, arid; waterless,** unwatered, undamped, anhydrous; **bone-dry,** dry as dust, dry as a bone; like parchment, parched; droughty; juiceless, sapless; moistureless; **thirsty,** thirsting, athirst; high and dry; sandy, dusty; desert, Saharan

8 rainless, fine, fair, bright and fair, pleasant

9 **dried, dehydrated, desiccated,** dried-up, exsiccated; evaporated; squeezed dry; **parched, baked,** sunbaked, burnt, scorched, **seared,** sere, sun-dried, adust; wind-dried, air-dried; drip-dried; blow-dried; freeze-dried; **withered, shriveled,** wizened, weazened; corky; mummified

10 **drying, dehydrating, desiccative,** desiccant, exsiccative, exsiccant, siccative, siccant; evaporative

11 **watertight, waterproof,** moistureproof, dampproof, leakproof, seepproof, dripproof, stormproof, stormtight, rainproof, raintight, showerproof, floodproof; dry-shod

1067 VAPOR, GAS

NOUNS **1** **vapor,** volatile; **fume, reek,** exhalation, breath, effluvium, expiration; fluid; **miasma,** mephitis, malaria <old>, fetid air, fumes; **smoke,** smudge; smog; wisp *or* plume *or* puff of smoke; **damp,** chokedamp, blackdamp, firedamp, afterdamp; **steam,** water vapor; **cloud** 319

2 **gas** <see list>; rare *or* noble *or* inert gas, halogen gas; fluid, compressible fluid; **atmosphere, air** 317; pneumatics, aerodynamics 1039.5

3 **vaporousness,** vaporiness; vapor pressure *or* tension; **aeriness; ethereality,** etherialism; **gaseousness,** gaseous state, gassiness, gaseity; **gas,** stomach gas, gassiness, flatulence, flatus, wind, windiness, farting <nf>, flatuosity <old>; burping; fluidity

4 **volatility,** vaporability, vaporizability, evaporability

5 **vaporization, evaporation,** volatilization, gasification; sublimation; distillation, fractionation; etherification; aeration, aerification; fluidization; atomization; exhalation; fumigation; smoking; steaming; etherealization; exhalation

6 vaporizer, evaporator; atomizer, aerosol, spray; propellant; condenser; still, retort

7 vaporimeter, manometer, pressure gauge; gas meter, gasometer; pneumatometer, spirometer; aerometer, airometer; eudiometer

VERBS **8** **vaporize, evaporate,** volatilize, **gasify;** sublimate, sublime; distill, fractionate; etherify; **aerate,** aerify; carbonate, oxygenate, hydrogenate, chlorinate, halogenate, etc; atomize, spray; fluidize; **reek, fume;** exhale, give off, emit, send out, exhale; **smoke; steam;** fumigate, perfume; **etherize**

ADJS **9** **vaporous,** vaporish, vapory, vaporlike; **airy, aerial, ethereal,** atmospheric; **gaseous,** in the gaseous state, gasified, gassy, gaslike, gasiform, fizzy, carbonated; vaporing; **reeking,** reeky; miasmic *or* miasmal *or* miasmatic, mephitic, fetid, effluvial; **fuming,** fumy; smoky, smoking, smoggy; steamy, steaming; ozonic; oxygenous; oxyacetylene; pneumatic, aerostatic, aerodynamic

10 **volatile,** volatilizable; **vaporable,** vaporizable, vaporescent, vaporific; **evaporative,** evaporable

WORD ELEMENTS **11** vapo-, vapori-, atm-, atmo-; aer-, aero-, mano-, pneum-, pneumo-, pneumat-, pneumato-

12 **gases**

acetylene *or* ethyne
air *or* producer gas
ammonia
argon
avgas
biogas
blister gas
bottled gas
butane
carbon dioxide
carbon monoxide
carbonic-acid gas
carbureted-hydrogen gas
chlorine
chlorofluorocarbon
coal gas
damp
ethane
ether *or* ethyl ether
ethyl chloride
ethylene *or* ethene *or* olefiant gas
ethylene oxide
fluorocarbon
fluorine
formaldehyde
Freon <trademark>
helium
hydrogen
hydrogen bromide
hydrogen chloride
hydrogen cyanide
hydrogen fluoride
hydrogen iodide
hydrogen sulfide
ideal *or* perfect gas
illuminating gas
inert gas
ketene
krypton
lewisite
liquid oxygen
marsh *or* swamp gas
mephitis
methane
mustard gas
natural gas
neon
nerve gas
nitric oxide
nitrogen
nitrogen dioxide
nitrous oxide *or* laughing gas
noble gas
oil gas
oxygen
ozone
phosgene *or* carbon oxychloride
phosphine
Pintsch gas

poison gas
propane
propylene
radon
refrigerator gas
sewer gas
sneeze gas
synthesis gas
tear gas *or* lachrymatory gas
vesicatory gas
vinyl chloride
water *or* blue gas
xenon

1068 BIOLOGY

NOUNS 1 **biology** <see list>, biological science, life science, the science of life, the study of living things; **botany** <see list>, plant biology, phytobiology, phytology, plant science; **plant kingdom,** vegetable kingdom; **plants** 310, flora, plantlife; **zoology** <see list>, animal biology, animal science; **animal kingdom,** kingdom Animalia, phylum, class, order, family, genus, species; **animals** 311, fauna, animal life

2 **biologist, naturalist,** life scientist; **botanist,** plant scientist, plant biologist, phytobiologist, phytologist; **zoologist,** animal biologist, animal scientist <for other NOUNS add -ist *or* -er to names of branches listed>

3 life science; natural history, biological science; anatomy, biochemistry, biology, biophysics, botany, cell biology, embryology, ethnobiology, microbiology, paleontology, pathology, physiology, zoology; taxonomy, systematics

ADJS 4 **biological,** biologic, microbiological; **botanical,** botanic, plant, phytological, phytologic, phytobiological; **zoological,** zoologic, faunal <for other ADJS add -ic *or* -ical to the names of branches listed>

5 **branches of biology**

aerobiology
agrobiology
anatomy
aquatic biology
aquatic microbiology
autoecology
bacteriology
biobehavioral science
biochemical genetics
biochemistry
biodynamics
bioecology
biogeography
biometry *or* biometrics *or* biostatistics
bionics
biophysics
biostatistics
biotechnology *or* biotech <nf>
biothermodynamics
biophysics
botany
cell biology
cell physiology
chronobiology
cryobiochemistry
cryobiology
cytogenetics
cytology
cytotaxonomy
ecology *or* bioecology *or* bionomics
electrobiology
electrophysiology
embryology
enzymology
ethnobiology
eugenics
evolution
exobiology *or* astrobiology *or* bioastronautics *or* space biology *or* space bioscience *or* xenobiology
genetics
gnotobiosis
histology
human ecology
hydrobiology
hydrology *or* hydrogeology *or* geohydrology
limnology
marine biology
mathematical biology
medicine
microbiology
molecular biology
morphology
natural classification
natural history
neurobiology
neurochemistry
neuroendocrinology
neurogenetics
neuroscience
organology
paleontology
palynology
parasitology
phylogenetic classification *or* phyletic classification *or* phyletics
physiology
population biology
population genetics
radiobiology
sociobiology
somatology
synecology
taxonomy *or* systematics
virology
zoogeography *or* animal geography
zoology

6 **branches of botany**

agriculture
agrobiology
agronomy
algology
applied botany
aquiculture
bacteriology
botanical histochemistry
bryology
dendrology
economic botany
ethnobotany
evolution
floriculture
forestry
fungology
genetics
geobotany
gnotobiology
histology
horticulture
hydroponics
mycology
olericulture
paleobotany
palynology
phycology
physiology
phytobiology
phytochemistry
phytoecology
phytography
phytology
phytosociology
plant anatomy *or* phytotomy
plant biochemistry *or* phytochemistry
plant breeding
plant cytology
plant ecology *or* phytoecology
plant geography *or* phytogeography
plant morphology
plant pathology *or* phytopathology *or* vegetable pathology
plant physiology *or* vegetable physiology
plant taxonomy
pomology
pteridology
research botany
seed biology
silviculture
systematic botany *or* taxonomy

7 **branches of zoology**

anatomy
animal behavior
animal chemistry *or* zoochemistry
animal pathology *or* zoopathology
animal physiology *or* zoonomy
animal psychology
apiculture
applied zoology
arachnology
behavioral ecology
biochemistry
biometrics
biophysics

comparative anatomy *or* zootomy
comparative embryology
comparative psychology
conchology
cytogenetics
cytology
ecology
embryology
endocrinology
entomology
ethology
evolution
genetics
helminthology
herpetology
histology
ichthyology
invertebrate zoology
malacology
mammalogy
marine biology
morphology
ophiology
ornithology
paleontology
parasitology
physiological chemistry
physiology
protozoology
research zoology
sociobiology
systematic zoology *or* systematics *or* taxonomy
vertebrate zoology
veterinary medicine
wildlife management
zoogeography
zoography

1069 AGRICULTURE

NOUNS 1 **agriculture, farming** <see list>, husbandry; cultivation, culture, geoponics, tillage, tilth; green revolution; agrology, agronomy, agronomics, agrotechnology, agricultural science, agroscience, agriscience; thremmatology; agroecosystem; agrogeology, agricultural geology; agrochemistry; agricultural engineering; agricultural economics; rural economy *or* economics, farm economy *or* economics, agrarian economy *or* economics, agrarianism; agribusiness *or* agrobusiness, agribiz <nf>, agroindustry; sharecropping; intensive farming, factory farming, mixed farming, crop farming, organic farming, subsistence farming

2 **horticulture, gardening;** landscape gardening, landscape architecture, groundskeeping; truck gardening, market gardening, olericulture; flower gardening, flower-growing, floriculture; viniculture, viticulture; orcharding, fruit-growing, pomiculture, citriculture; arboriculture, silviculture; indoor gardening

3 **forestry,** arboriculture, tree farming, silviculture, forest management; Christmas tree farming; forestation, afforestation, reforestation; lumbering, logging; deforestation; woodcraft

4 <agricultural deities> vegetation spirit *or* daemon, fertility god *or* spirit, year-daemon, forest god *or* spirit, green man, corn god, Ceres, Demeter, Gaea, Triptolemus, Dionysus, Persephone, Kore, Flora, Aristaeus, Pomona, Frey

5 **agriculturist,** agriculturalist; agrologist, agronomist; **farmer,** granger, husbandman, **yeoman,** cultivator, tiller, sodbuster, **tiller of the soil;** rural economist, agrotechnician; boutique farmer, contour farmer, crop-farmer, dirt farmer <nf>, truck farmer, etc; gentleman-farmer; **peasant,** *campesino* <Sp>, *Bauer* <Ger>, countryman, rustic; **grower,** raiser; **planter,** tea-planter, coffee-planter, etc; peasant holder *or* proprietor, *kulak* and *muzhik* <Russ>; tenant farmer, crofter <Brit>, peasant farmer; sharecropper, cropper, collective farm worker, *kolkhoznik* <Russ>, *kibbutznik* <Yiddish>; **agricultural worker, farm worker,** farmhand, farm laborer, migrant *or* migratory worker *or* laborer, bracero, picker; plowman, plowboy; farmboy, farmgirl; planter, sower; reaper, harvester, harvestman; haymaker

6 **horticulturist, nurseryman, gardener,** grower, green thumb, propagator; landscape gardener, landscapist, landscape architect; truck gardener, market gardener, olericulturist; **florist,** floriculturist; vinegrower, viniculturist, viticulturist, vintager; *vigneron* <Fr>; vinedresser; orchardist, orchardman, fruitgrower

7 **forester;** arboriculturist, arborist, silviculturist, dendrologist, verderer, tree farmer, topiarist; conservationist; **ranger,** forest ranger, forest manager; woodsman, woodman <Brit>, woodcraftsman, woodlander; **logger, lumberman,** timberman, lumberjack, lumberer; woodcutter, wood chopper; tapper; tree surgeon

8 **farm,** farmplace, farmstead, farmhold <old>, farmery <Brit>, **grange,** location <Austral>, pen <Jamaica>; boutique farm, crop farm, dirt farm, tree farm, etc; **plantation,** cotton plantation, etc, *hacienda* <Sp>; croft, homecroft <Brit>; **homestead,** steading; toft <Brit>; mains <Brit nf>; demesne, homefarm, demesne farm, manor farm; **barnyard,** farmyard, barton <Brit nf>; collective farm, *kolkhoz* <Russ>, *kibbutz* <Heb>; farmland, cropland, arable land, plowland, fallow; grassland, pasture 310.8

9 **field, tract,** plat, **plot, patch,** piece *or* parcel of land; cultivated land; clearing; hayfield, corn field, wheat field, etc; paddy, paddy field, rice paddy

10 **garden,** *jardin* <Fr>; bed, **flower bed,** border, ornamental border; paradise; garden spot; **vineyard,** vinery, grapery, grape ranch; herbarium; botanical garden; compost pile *or* heap, seed tray

11 **nursery; conservatory, greenhouse,** glasshouse <Brit>, forcing house, summerhouse, lathhouse, **hothouse,** coolhouse; potting shed; force *or* forcing bed, forcing pit, **hotbed,** cold frame; seedbed; cloche; pinery, orangery

12 **growing, raising,** rearing, cultivation; **green thumb**

13 **cultivation,** cultivating, culture, **tilling,** dressing, working; harrowing, plowing, contour plowing, furrowing, listing, fallowing, weeding, hoeing,

pruning, thinning; overcropping, overcultivation; irrigation, overirrigation

14 **planting,** setting; **sowing, seeding,** semination, insemination; breeding, hydridizing; **dissemination,** broadcast, broadcasting; transplantation, resetting; retimbering, reforestation

15 **harvest,** harvesting, **reaping, gleaning,** gathering, cutting; nutting; cash crop, root crop, **crop** 472.5

VERBS 16 **farm, ranch, work the land; grow, raise,** rear; crop; dryfarm; sharecrop; **garden; have** a **green thumb**

17 **cultivate,** culture, **dress, work, till,** till the soil, dig, delve, spade; mulch; **plow,** plow in, plow under, plow up, list, fallow, backset <W US>, double-dig, rototill, fork; take cuttings, graft; irrigate; **harrow,** rake; **weed,** weed out, hoe, cut, prune, thin, thin out; force; overcrop, overcultivate; slash and burn; top-dress, compost, fertilize 889.8

18 **plant,** implant <old>, **set,** put in; **sow, seed,** seed down, seminate, inseminate; **disseminate,** broadcast, sow broadcast, scatter seed; drill; bed; dibble; transplant, reset, pot, **transplant;** vernalize; **forest,** afforest; deforest; retimber, reforest

19 **harvest, reap,** crop, **glean, gather,** gather in, bring in, get in the harvest, reap and carry; **pick,** pluck; dig, grabble <S US>; mow, cut; hay; nut; crop herbs

ADJS 20 **agricultural, agrarian,** agro-, geoponic, geoponical, agronomic, agronomical; farm, **farming;** arable; rustic, bucolic, **rural** 233.6

21 **horticultural;** olericultural; vinicultural, viticultural; arboricultural, silvicultural

22 **types of farming**

boutique farming
contour farming
crop farming
dirt farming <nf>
dry farming
dryland farming
factory farming
fruit farming
grain farming
hydroponics *or* tank farming
intensive farming
livestock farming
mixed farming
organic farming
sharecropping
share farming
slash-and-burn
strip farming
stubble-mulch farming *or* trash farming
subsistence farming
tree farming
truck farming

1070 ANIMAL HUSBANDRY

NOUNS 1 **animal husbandry,** animal rearing *or* raising *or* culture, stock raising, **ranching;** zooculture, zootechnics, zootechny; thremmatology; gnotobiotics; herding, grazing, keeping flocks and herds, running livestock, livestock farming; transhumance; breeding, stockbreeding, stirpiculture; horse training, dressage, manège; horsemanship; pisciculture, fish culture; apiculture, bee culture, beekeeping; cattle raising; sheepherding; stock farming, fur farming; factory farming; pig-keeping; dairy-farming, chicken-farming, pig-farming, etc; cattle-ranching, mink-ranching, etc

2 **stockman,** stock raiser, stockkeeper <Austral>; breeder, stockbreeder; sheepman; cattleman, cow keeper, cowman, grazier <Brit>; **rancher,** ranchman, ranchero; ranchhand; dairyman, dairy farmer; milkmaid; **stableman,** stableboy, **groom,** hostler, equerry; trainer, breaker, tamer; broncobuster *and* buckaroo <nf>; **blacksmith,** horseshoer, farrier

3 **herder, drover, herdsman,** herdboy; **shepherd,** shepherdess, **sheepherder,** sheepman; goatherd; swineherd, pigman, pigherd, hogherd; gooseherd, gooseboy, goosegirl; swanherd; **cowherd,** neatherd <Brit>; cowboy, cowgirl, cowhand, puncher *and* **cowpuncher** *and* cowpoke <nf>, waddy <W US>, cowman, cattleman, *vaquero* <Sp>, gaucho; horseherd, **wrangler,** horse wrangler

4 **apiarist,** apiculturist, **beekeeper,** beeherd

5 **farm,** stock farm, animal farm; **ranch,** rancho, rancheria; station <Austral>; horse farm, stable, stud farm; **cattle ranch;** dude ranch; pig farm, piggery; chicken farm *or* ranch, turkey farm, duck farm, poultry farm; sheep farm *or* ranch; fur farm *or* ranch, mink farm *or* ranch; **dairy farm;** factory farm; animal enclosure

VERBS 6 **raise, breed,** rear, grow, hatch, feed, nurture, fatten; keep, run; ranch, farm; culture; back-breed

7 **tend; groom,** rub down, brush, curry, currycomb; water, drench, feed, fodder; bed, bed down, litter; milk; harness, saddle, hitch, bridle, yoke; gentle, handle, manage; tame, train, break

8 **drive, herd,** drove <Brit>, herd up, punch cattle, **shepherd,** ride herd on; spur, goad, prick, lash, whip; wrangle, round up; corral, cage

1071 EARTH SCIENCE

NOUNS 1 **earth science, earth sciences** <see list>; geoscience; geography, geology, rock hunting *and* rock hounding <nf>, geological science, oceanography, oceanographic science, meteorology, atmospheric science, planetary science, space science

2 **earth scientist,** geoscientist; **geologist,** rock hound *and* rock hunter <nf>, **geographer, oceanographer, astronomer,** star-gazer <nf>, **meteorologist,** weather man <for other NOUNS, add -ist *or* -er to names of branches listed below>

3 earth sciences

aerology
aeronomy
astrogeology
bathymetry
biogeography
biostratigraphy
chronostratigraphy
climatology
crystallography
economic geology
engineering geology
environmental geology
geobotanical prospecting
geobotany
geochemistry
geochronology
geochronometry
geocosmogony
geodesy
geodynamics
geography
geological cartography
geology
geomagnetism
geomorphology
geophysics
geopolitics
glacial geology
glaciology
gravimetry
historical geology
hydrography
igneous petrology
invertebrate paleontology
hydrology *or* geohydrology *or* hydrogeology
lithostratigraphy
magnetostratigraphy
marine geology
metamorphic petrology
meteorology
micropaleontology
mineralogy
mining geology
oceanography
oceanology
paleobiogeography
paleobotany
paleoclimatology
paleogeography
paleogeophysics
paleolimnology
paleomagnetism
paleontology
paleopedology
palynology
pedology *or* soil science
petrochemistry
petrogenesis
petrography
petroleum geology
petrology *or* lithology
physical climatology
physical geography *or* physiography
physical geology
physical oceanography
planetology
plate *or* global tectonics
radiometric dating
sedimentary petrology
sedimentology
seismography
seismology
stratigraphy
structural geology
submarine geology
tectonic *or* geotectonic *or* structural geology
tectonics
tectonophysics
thalassography
topography
urban geology
vertebrate paleontology
volcanology *or* vulcanology

1072 THE UNIVERSE, ASTRONOMY

NOUNS 1 **universe, world, cosmos,** cosmological model; creation, created universe, created nature, all, **all creation,** all tarnation <nf>, all *or* everything that is, all being, totality, totality of being, sum of things; omneity, allness; nature, system; wide world, whole wide world, "world without end"—Bible; plenum; **macrocosm,** macrocosmos, megacosm; metagalaxy; open universe, closed universe, inflationary universe, flat universe, oscillating universe, steady-state universe, expanding universe, pulsating universe; Einsteinian universe, Newtonian universe, Friedmann universe; Ptolemaic universe, Copernican universe; sidereal universe

2 **the heavens,** heaven, **sky, firmament;** empyrean, welkin, *caelum* <L>, lift *or* lifts <nf>; **the blue,** blue sky, azure, cerulean, the blue serene; **ether, air,** hyaline; vault, cope, canopy, vault *or* canopy of heaven, "the arch of heaven"—Vergil, "that inverted bowl they call the sky"—Omar Khayyám, starry sphere, celestial sphere, starry heaven *or* heavens, "this majestical roof fretted with golden fire"—Shakespeare; Caelus

3 **space, outer space,** cosmic space, deep space, empty space, ether space, pressureless space, celestial spaces, interplanetary *or* interstellar *or* intergalactic *or* intercosmic space, metagalactic space, **the void,** the void above, ocean of emptiness; chaos; outermost reaches of space; astronomical unit, light-year, parsec; interstellar medium

4 **stars,** fixed stars, starry host, "living sapphires"—Milton, "the burning tapers of the sky"—Shakespeare, "the mystical jewels of God"—Robert Buchanan, "golden fruit upon a tree all out of reach"—George Eliot; music *or* harmony of the spheres; orb, sphere; **heavenly body,** celestial body *or* sphere; **comet; comet cloud; morning star,** daystar, Lucifer, Phosphor, Phosphorus; **evening star,** Vesper, Hesper, Hesperus, Venus; **North Star,** polestar, polar star, lodestar, Polaris; Dog Star, Sirius, Canicula; Bull's Eye, Aldebaran

5 **constellation** <see list>, **configuration,** asterism, stellar group, stellar population; zodiacal constellation; cluster, **star cluster,** galactic cluster, open cluster, globular cluster, stellar association, supercluster; Magellanic clouds

6 **galaxy, island universe,** galactic nebula; spiral galaxy *or* nebula, spiral; barred spiral galaxy *or* nebula, barred spiral; elliptical *or* spheroidal galaxy; disk galaxy; irregular galaxy; radio galaxy; lenticular galaxy; active galaxy; Seyfert galaxy, starburst galaxy; **the Local Group; the Galaxy, the Milky Way,** the galactic circle, *Via Lactea* <L>; galactic cluster, supergalaxy; great attractor; chaotic attractor; continent of galaxies, great wall *or* sheet of galaxies; galactic coordinates, galactic pole, galactic latitude, galactic longitude; galactic noise, cosmic noise; galactic nucleus, active galactic nucleus; cosmic string; Hubble classification

7 **nebula,** nebulosity; gaseous nebula; hydrogen cloud; dark nebula; dust cloud; dark matter; interstellar cloud; planetary nebula; whirlpool nebula; cirro-nebula; ring nebula; diffuse nebula; emission nebula; reflection nebula; absorption nebula; galactic nebula; anagalactic nebula; bright

diffuse nebula; dark nebula, dark cloud, coalsack; Nebula of Lyra *or* Orion, Crab Nebula, the Coalsack, Black Magellanic Cloud; nebulous stars; nebular hypothesis

8 **star** <see list>; **quasar,** quasi-stellar radio source; **pulsar,** pulsating star, eclipsing binary X-ray pulsar; luminary; Nemesis, the Death Star; Hawking radiation; magnitude, stellar magnitude, visual magnitude; relative magnitude, absolute magnitude, apparent nebula; star *or* stellar populations; mass-luminosity law; spectrum-luminosity diagram, Hertzsprung-Russell diagram; star catalog, star atlas, star chart, sky atlas, sky survey, Messier catalog, Dreyer's New General Catalog *or* NGC; star cloud, star cluster, globular cluster, open cluster; Pleiades *or* Seven Sisters, Hyades, Beehive; stellar evolution, stellar birth, protostar, molecular cloud, main sequence, gravitational collapse, dying star, red giant, white dwarf; nova, supernova, supernova remnant, neutron star, pulsar, **black hole,** giant black hole, mini-black hole, starving black hole, supermassive black hole, frozen black hole, event horizon, singularity, white hole, active galactic nucleus

9 **planet,** wanderer, wandering star, terrestrial planet, inferior planet, superior planet, secondary planet, major planet; minor planet, planetoid, asteroid; asteroid belt; Earth; Jupiter; Mars, the Red Planet; Mercury; Neptune; Pluto; Saturn; Uranus; Venus; solar system; syzygy

10 **Earth,** planet Earth, third planet, **the world,** *terra* <L>; **globe,** terrestrial globe, Spaceship Earth, the blue planet; geosphere, biosphere, magnetosphere; vale, vale of tears; "this goodly frame, the earth," "a stage where every man must play a part"—both Shakespeare; Mother Earth, Ge *or* Gaea *or* Gaia, Tellus *or* Terra; whole wide world, four corners of the earth, "the round earth's imagined corners"—Donne, the length and breadth of the land; geography; Gaia hypothesis

11 **moon, satellite,** natural satellite; orb of night, queen of heaven, queen of night; silvery moon; **new moon,** wet moon; **crescent moon,** crescent, increscent moon, increscent, waxing moon, waxing crescent moon, first quarter, last quarter; decrescent moon, decrescent, waning moon, waning crescent moon; gibbous moon; **half-moon,** demilune; **full moon, harvest moon,** hunter's moon; horned moon; **eclipse,** lunar eclipse, eclipse of the moon; artificial satellite 1075.6,14

12 <moon goddess, the moon personified> Diana, Phoebe, Cynthia, Artemis, Hecate, Selene, Luna, Astarte, Ashtoreth; man in the moon

13 **sun;** orb of day, daystar; sunshine, solar radiation, sunlight; solar disk; "the glorious lamp of Heav'n, the radiant sun"—Dryden, "that orbed continent, the fire that severs day from night"—Shakespeare; photosphere, chromosphere, corona; sunspot; sunspot cycle; solar flare, solar prominence; solar wind; **eclipse,** eclipse of the sun, solar eclipse, total eclipse, partial eclipse, central eclipse, annular eclipse; corona, solar corona, Baily's beads

14 <sun god or goddess, the sun personified> Sol, Helios, Hyperion, Titan, Phaëthon, Phoebus, Phoebus Apollo, Apollo, Ra *or* Amen-Ra, Shamash, Surya, Savitar, Amaterasu

15 **meteor;** falling *or* shooting star, meteoroid, fireball, bolide; **meteorite,** meteorolite; micrometeoroid, micrometeorite; aerolite; chondrite; siderite; siderolite; tektite; meteor dust, cosmic dust; meteor trail, meteor train; meteor swarm; meteor *or* meteoric shower; radiant, radiant point; meteor crater

16 **orbit, circle, trajectory;** circle of the sphere, great circle, small circle; **ecliptic; zodiac;** zone; meridian, celestial meridian; colures, equinoctial colure, solstitial colure; equator, celestial equator, equinoctial, equinoctial circle *or* line; equinox, vernal equinox, autumnal equinox; longitude, celestial longitude, geocentric longitude, heliocentric longitude, galactic longitude, astronomical longitude, geographic *or* geodetic longitude; apogee, perigee; aphelion, perihelion; period; revolution, eccentric inclination, rotation, rotational axis, rotational period; parabolic orbit, hyperbolic orbit

17 **observatory,** astronomical observatory; radio observatory, orbiting astronomical observatory *or* OAO, orbiting solar observatory *or* OSO; ground-based observatory, optical observatory, infrared observatory; **planetarium;** orrery; **telescope,** astronomical telescope; planisphere, astrolabe, flux collector; reflector, refractor, Newtonian telescope, Cassegrainian telescope; **radio telescope,** radar telescope; **spectroscope,** spectrograph; spectrohelioscope, spectroheliograph; coronagraph; heliostat, coelostat; **observation;** seeing, bright time, dark time

18 **cosmology,** cosmography, **cosmogony;** stellar cosmogeny, astrogony; cosmism, cosmic philosophy, cosmic evolution; nebular hypothesis; **big bang** *or* expanding universe theory, oscillating *or* pulsating universe theory, steady state *or* continuous creation theory, plasma theory; creationism, creation science

19 **astronomy, stargazing,** uranology, starwatching, astrognosy, astrography, uranography, uranometry; astrophotography, stellar photometry; spectrography, spectroscopy, radio astronomy,

radar astronomy, X-ray astronomy; **astrophysics,** solar physics; celestial mechanics, gravitational astronomy; astrolithology; meteoritics; astrogeology; stellar statistics; astrochemistry, cosmochemistry; optical astronomy, observational astronomy; infrared astronomy, ultraviolet astronomy; exobiology, astrobotany

20 **astrology,** astromancy, **horoscopy;** astrodiagnosis; natural astrology; judicial *or* mundane astrology; genethliacism, genethlialogy, genethliacs, genethliac astrology; **horoscope,** nativity; zodiac, **signs of the zodiac; house,** mansion; house of life, mundane house, planetary house *or* mansion; aspect

21 **cosmologist;** cosmogenist, cosmogener; cosmographer, cosmographist; cosmic philosopher, cosmist

22 **astronomer,** stargazer, observer, uranologist, uranometrist, uranographer, uranographist, astrographer, astrophotographer; radio astronomer, radar astronomer; **astrophysicist,** solar physicist; astrogeologist; cosmochemist

23 **astrologer,** astrologian, astromancer, stargazer, Chaldean, astroalchemist, horoscoper, horoscopist, genethliac <old>

ADJS **24** **cosmic,** cosmical, **universal;** cosmologic *or* cosmological, cosmogonal, cosmogonic *or* cosmogonical; cosmographic, cosmographical

25 **celestial, heavenly, empyrean,** empyreal; uranic; **astral, starry, stellar,** stellary, sphery; star-spangled, star-studded; cometary; galactic, intergalactic, extragalactic; side-real; zodiacal; equinoctial; **astronomic** *or* **astronomical,** astrophysical, astrologic *or* astrological, astrologistic, astrologous; **planetary,** planetarian, planetal, circumplanetary; planetoidal, planetesimal, asteroidal; **solar,** heliacal; terrestrial; **lunar,** lunular, lunate, lunulate, lunary, cislunar, translunar, Cynthian; semilunar; meteoric, meteoritic; extragalactic, anagalactic; galactic; nebular, nebulous, nebulose; interstellar, intersidereal; interplanetary; intercosmic

26 **extraterrestrial,** exterrestrial, extraterrene, extramundane, alien, space; **transmundane, otherworldly,** transcendental; extra-solar

ADVS **27** **universally,** everywhere

28 **star types**

A star
alpha
astral body
B star
beta
binary star
black dwarf
blaze star
blue-white giant
brown dwarf
C star *or* carbon star
Cepheid *or* Cepheid variable
circumpolar star
close binary star
comparison star
dark star
delta
double star
dwarf star
early-type star
eclipsing binary
eclipsing variable
eruptive variable
evening star
F star
fixed star
flare star
gamma
giant star
gravity star
Greenwich star
G star
hydrogen star
intrinsic variable
irregular star
K star
late-type star
long-period variable
M star
main sequence star
morning star
multiple star
N star
nautical star
nebulous star
neutron star
nova
O-type star
quasar
quasi-stellar radio source
R star
radio star
red dwarf
red giant
red supergiant
RR Lyrae star
runaway star
semiregular variable
silicon star
solar *or* sun star
spectroscopic binary
standard star
supermassive star
supernova
variable star
visible *or* visual binary
white dwarf
x-ray binary star
x-ray star
yellow dwarf
yellow giant
zenith star

29 **constellations**

Air Pump *or* Pump
Andromeda *or* the Chained Lady
Antlia *or* Antlia Pneumatica *or* the Air Pump
Apus *or* the Bird of Paradise
Aquarius *or* the Water Bearer
Aquila *or* the Eagle
Ara *or* the Altar
Argo *or* Argo Navis *or* the Ship Argo
Aries *or* the Ram
Auriga *or* the Charioteer
Big Dipper *or* Ursa Major *or* Charles' Wain
Bootes *or* the Herdsman
Caelum *or* Caela Sculptoris *or* the Sculptor's Tool *or* Chisel
Camelopardalis *or* Camelopardus *or* the Giraffe
Cancer *or* the Crab
Canes Venatici *or* the Hunting Dogs
Canis Major the Larger Dog *or* Orion's Hound
Canis Minor *or* the Lesser Dog
Capricorn *or* the Goat
Carina *or* the Keel
Cassiopeia *or* the Lady in the Chair
Centaurus *or* the Centaur
Cepheus *or* the Monarch
Cetus *or* the Whale
Chamaeleon *or* the Chameleon
Circinus *or* the Compasses
Columba *or* Columba Noae *or* Noah's Dove
Coma Berenices *or* Berenice's Hair
Corona Australis *or* the Wreath *or* the Southern Crown
Corona Borealis *or* the Northern Crown
Corvus *or* the Crow
Crater *or* the Cup
Crux *or* the Southern Cross
Cygnus *or* the Swan
Delphinus *or* the Dolphin
Dorado *or* Swordfish
Draco *or* the Dragon
Equuleus *or* the Foal

Eridanus *or* the River
Fornax *or* the Furnace
Gemini *or* the Twins
Grus *or* the Crane
Hercules
Horologium *or* the Clock
Hydra *or* the Sea Serpent
Hydrus *or* the Water Snake
Indus *or* the Indian
Lacerta *or* the Lizard
Leo *or* the Lion
Leo Minor *or* the Lesser Lion
Lepus *or* the Hare
Libra *or* the Balance
Little Dipper *or* Ursa Minor
Lupus *or* the Wolf
Lynx *or* the Lynx
Lyra *or* the Lyre
Malus *or* the Mast
Mensa *or* the Table
Microscopium *or* the Microscope
Monoceros *or* the Unicorn
Musca *or* the Fly
Norma *or* the Rule
Northern Cross
Octans *or* the Octant
Ophiuchus *or* the Serpent Bearer
Orion *or* the Giant Hunter
Orion's Belt
Orion's Sword
Pavo *or* the Peacock
Pegasus *or* the Winged Horse
Perseus
Phoenix
Pictor *or* the Painter
Pisces *or* the Fishes
Piscis Australis *or* the Southern Fish
Puppis *or* the Stern
Pyxis *or* Mariner's Compass
Reticulum *or* the Net
Sagitta *or* the Arrow
Sagittarius *or* the Archer
Scorpio *or* Scorpius *or* the Scorpion
Sculptor
Scutum *or* the Shield
Serpens *or* the Serpent
Sextans *or* the Sextant
Southern Cross
Taurus *or* the Bull
Telescopium *or* the Telescope
Triangulum *or* the Triangle
Triangulum Australe *or* the Southern Triangle
Tucana *or* the Toucan
Ursa Major *or* the Great Bear *or* the Big Dipper
Ursa Minor *or* the Lesser Bear *or* the Little Dipper
Vela *or* the Sails
Virgo *or* the Virgin *or* Maiden
Volans *or* Piscis Volans *or* the Flying Fish
Vulpecula *or* the Little Fox

30 signs of the zodiac

Capricorn the Goat <Dec 23–Jan 19>
Aquarius the Water Carrier <Jan 20–Feb 19>
Pisces the Fishes <Feb 20–Mar 21>
Aries the Ram <Mar 22–Apr 20>
Taurus the Bull <Apr 21–May 21>
Gemini the Twins <May 22–June 22>
Cancer the Crab <June 23–July 23>
Leo the Lion <July 24–Aug 23>
Virgo the Virgin <Aug 24–Sept 23>
Libra the Scales *or* the Balance <Sept 24–Oct 23>
Scorpio the Scorpion <Oct 24–Nov 22>
Sagittarius the Archer <Nov 23–Dec 22>

1073 THE ENVIRONMENT

NOUNS **1 the environment,** the natural world, the ecology, global ecology, ecosystem, global ecosystem, the biosphere, the ecosphere, the balance of nature, macroecology, microecology; **ecology,** bioregion; **environmental protection,** environmental policy; **environmental control,** environmental management; environmental assessment, environmental auditing, environmental monitoring, environmental impact analysis; emission control; **environmental science** <see list>, environmentology

2 environmental destruction, ecocide, ecocatastrophe; environmental pollution, pollution, contamination; **air pollution,** atmospheric pollution, air quality; **water pollution,** stream pollution, lake pollution, ocean pollution, groundwater pollution, pollution of the aquifer; **environmental pollutant** <see list>; eutrophication; **biodegradation,** biodeterioration, microbial degradation

3 environmentalist, conservationist, preservationist, nature-lover, environmental activist, doomwatcher <Brit>, duck-squeezer *and* ecofreak *and* tree-hugger *and* eagle freak <nf>; Green Panther

4 environmental sciences

autecology
bioecology *or* bionomics
ecology
environmental archaeology
environmental biology
environmental chemistry
environmental design
environmental engineering
environmental geology
environmental health
environmental horticulture
environmental management
environmental toxicology
human ecology
land management
synecology
wildlife management
zoo-ecology

5 environmental pollutants

acid rain
aerosol sprays
aircraft noise
asbestos
automobile exhaust
azo compounds
benzene
beryllium
calcium carbonates
carbon dioxide
carbon monoxide
carbon tetrachloride
carcinogens
chemical waste
chlordane
chlorine
chlorobenzenes
chloroethanes
chlorofluorocarbons *or* CFCs
chlorohydrocarbons
chloromethane
chlorophenol
chloropropanones
chlorpropham
chromium
coal smoke
dibromochloropropane *or* DBCP
dichlorides
dichloroacetate
dichlorobenzenes
dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane *or* DDT
dichloroethanes
dichlorophenol
dichloropropane
dioxins
endosulfan
endrin
ethanes
ethylene
ethylene dibromide *or* EDB
ethylene glycol
ethylene oxide
exhaust fumes
fenoxaprop ethyl
fluorenes
fluorocarbons
fluorohydrocarbons

formaldehyde
fungicides
gasoline
halon
heptachlor
herbicides
hexachlorethane
hexone
hydrocarbons
hydrochlorofluorocarbon *or* HCFC
industrial particulate matter
isocyanuric acid
kepone
lead
lead paint
leaded gasoline
leptophos
malathion
mercury
metalaxyl
methyl ethyl ketone
methyl parathion
mining waste
mirex
nabam
naphthalene
nitro compounds
nitrogen oxides
nitroso compounds
noise
nuclear waste
paraquat dichloride
parathion
pentachloraphenol *or* PCP
pesticides
phosphate
polybrominated biphenyls *or* PBBs
polychlorinated biphenyls *or* PCBs
radon
radionuclides
secondhand smoke
sewage
smog
smoke
solid waste
sulfur oxides
sulfuric acid
tobacco smoke
toxaphene
toxic waste
trichloroacetic acid
trichlorobenzene
trichloroethylene *or* TCE
trimethylbenzenes
triphenyltin hydroxide *or* DuTer <trademark>
ultraviolet radiation
vinyl chloride

1074 ROCKETRY, MISSILERY

NOUNS **1** **rocketry,** rocket science *or* engineering *or* research *or* technology; **missilery,** missile science *or* engineering *or* research *or* technology; rocket *or* missile testing; ground test, firing test, static firing; rocket *or* missile project *or* program; instrumentation; telemetry

2 **rocket, rocket engine** *or* **motor,** reaction engine *or* motor; rocket thruster, thruster; retrorocket; rocket exhaust; plasma jet, plasma engine; ion engine; jetavator

3 **rocket, missile** <see list>, **ballistic missile, guided missile; torpedo;** projectile rocket, ordnance rocket, combat *or* military *or* war rocket; bird <nf>; **payload; warhead,** nuclear *or* thermonuclear warhead, atomic warhead; multiple *or* multiple-missile warhead

4 **rocket bomb,** flying bomb *or* torpedo, cruising missile; **robot bomb,** robomb, *Vergeltungswaffe* <Ger>, V-weapon, P-plane; **buzzbomb,** bumblebomb, doodle-bug

5 **multistage rocket, step rocket;** two- *or* three-stage rocket, two- *or* three-step rocket; single-stage rocket, single-step rocket, one-step rocket; **booster,** booster unit, booster rocket, takeoff booster *or* rocket; piggyback rocket

6 **test rocket,** research rocket, high-altitude research rocket, registering rocket, instrument rocket, instrument carrier, test instrument vehicle, rocket laboratory; probe

7 **proving ground,** testing ground; firing area; impact area; control center, mission control, bunker; radar tracking station, tracking station, visual tracking station; meteorological tower

8 **rocket propulsion,** reaction propulsion, jet propulsion, blast propulsion; **fuel, propellant,** solid fuel, liquid fuel, hydrazine, liquid oxygen *or* lox; charge, propelling *or* propulsion charge, powder charge *or* grain, high-explosive charge; **thrust,** constant thrust; **exhaust,** jet blast, backflash

9 **rocket launching** *or* **firing,** ignition, launch, shot, shoot; countdown; **lift-off,** blast-off; guided *or* automatic control, programming; flight, trajectory; **burn; burnout,** end of burning; velocity peak, *Brennschluss* <Ger>; altitude peak, ceiling; descent; airburst; impact

10 **rocket launcher,** projector; **launching** *or* **launch pad,** launching platform *or* rack, firing table; **silo;** takeoff ramp; tower projector, launching tower; launching mortar, launching tube, projector tube, firing tube; rocket gun, bazooka, antitank rocket, *Panzerfaust* <Ger>; superbazooka; multiple projector, calliope, Stalin organ, Katusha; antisubmarine projector, Mark 10, hedgehog <nf>; Minnie Mouse launcher, mousetrap <nf>; Meilewagon

11 rocket scientist *or* technician, rocketeer *or* rocketer, rocket *or* missile man, rocket *or* missile engineer

VERBS **12** **rocket, skyrocket**

13 **launch,** project, **shoot, fire,** blast off; abort

14 **rockets, missiles**

AAM *or* air-to-air missile
AA target rocket
ABM *or* antiballistic missile
airborne rocket
anchor rocket
antiaircraft rocket
antimine rocket
antimissile
antiradar rocket
antisubmarine *or* antisub rocket
antitank rocket
ASM *or* air-to-surface missile
ATA missile *or* air-to-air
ATG rocket *or* air-to-ground
atom-rocket
ATS *or* air-to-ship
AUM *or* air-to-underwater missile
barrage rocket
bat bomb
bazooka rocket
bombardment rocket
booster
chemical rocket
combat high-explosive rocket
Congreve rocket
countermissile
demolition rocket
fin-stabilized rocket
fireworks rocket
flare rocket
flying tank

GAPA *or* ground-to-air pilotless aircraft
glide bomb
GTA rocket *or* ground-to-air
GTG rocket *or* ground-to-ground
guided missile
harpoon rocket
high-altitude rocket
homing rocket
HVAR *or* high velocity aircraft rocket
ICBM *or* intercontinental ballistic missile
incendiary antiaircraft rocket
incendiary rocket
ion rocket
IRBM *or* intermediate range ballistic missile
launch vehicle *or* launcher
line-throwing rocket
liquid-fuel rocket
long-range rocket
MIRV *or* multiple independently targetable re-entry vehicle
MRV *or* multiple re-entry vehicle
multistage rocket
ram rocket
retro-float light
retrorocket
rockoon
SAM *or* surface-to-air missile
scud
signal rocket
skyrocket
smart rocket
smokeless powder rocket
smoke rocket
snake *or* antimine
solid-fuel rocket
solid rocket booster *or* SRB
space rocket
spinner
spin-stabilized rocket
SSM *or* surface-to-surface missile
STS rocket *or* ship-to-shore
submarine killer
supersonic rocket
target missile
torpedo rocket
training rocket *or* missile
trajectory missile
transoceanic rocket
ullage rocket
vernier *or* vernier rocket
window rocket *or* antiradar
winged rocket
XAAM *or* experimental air-to-air missile
XASM *or* experimental air-to-surface missile
XAUM *or* experimental air-to-underwater missile
XSAM *or* experimental surface-to-air missile
XSSM *or* experimental surface-to-surface missile

1075 SPACE TRAVEL

NOUNS 1 **space travel, astronautics,** cosmonautics, **space flight,** navigation of empty space; interplanetary travel, space exploration; manned flight; space walk; space navigation, astrogation; **space science,** space technology *or* engineering; **aerospace science,** aerospace technology *or* engineering; space *or* aerospace research; space *or* aerospace medicine, bioastronautics; astrionics; escape velocity; rocketry 1074; multistage flight, step flight, shuttle flights; trip to the moon, trip to Mars, grand tour; space terminal, target planet; space age; science fiction, cyberpunk

2 **spacecraft** <see list>, **spaceship, space rocket,** rocket ship, manned rocket, interplanetary rocket; rocket 1074.2; orbiter; **shuttle,** space shuttle; **capsule, space capsule,** ballistic capsule; **nose cone, heat shield,** heat barrier, thermal barrier; module, command module, lunar excursion module *or* LEM, lunar module *or* LM; moon ship, Mars ship, etc; deep-space ship; exploratory ship, reconnaissance rocket; ferry rocket, tender rocket, tanker ship, fuel ship; **multistage rocket** 1074.5, shuttle rocket, retrorocket, rocket thruster *or* thruster, attitude-control rocket, main rocket; **burn;** space docking, docking, docking maneuver; **orbit,** parking orbit, geostationary orbit; earth orbit, apogee, perigee; lunar *or* moon orbit, apolune, perilune, apocynthion, pericynthion; **guidance system,** terrestrial guidance; soft landing, hard landing; injection, insertion, lunar insertion, Earth insertion; **reentry, splashdown**

3 **flying saucer,** unidentified flying object *or* UFO

4 **rocket engine** 1074.2; atomic power plant; solar battery; power cell

5 **space station,** astro station, **space island,** island base, cosmic stepping-stone, halfway station, advance base; manned station; inner station, outer station, transit station, space airport, **spaceport,** spaceport station, space platform, space dock, launching base, research station, space laboratory, space observatory; tracking station, radar tracking station; radar station, radio station; radio relay station, radio mirror; space mirror, solar mirror; moon station, moon base, lunar base, lunar city, observatory on the moon

6 **artificial satellite** <see list>, **satellite,** space satellite, robot satellite, unmanned satellite, sputnik; communications satellite, active communications satellite, communications relay satellite, weather satellite, earth satellite, astronomical satellite, meteorological satellite, geostationary satellite, geosynchronous satellite, spy satellite, orbiting observatory, space observatory, geophysical satellite, navigational satellite, geodetic satellite, research satellite, interplanetary monitoring satellite, automated satellite; **probe, space probe** <see list>, geo probe, interplanetary explorer, planetary probe; orbiter, lander

7 <satellite telemetered recorders> microinstrumentation; aurora particle counter, cosmic ray counter, gamma ray counter, heavy particle counter, impulse recorder, magnetometer, solar ultraviolet detector, solar X-ray detector, telecamera

8 **astronaut,** astronavigator, cosmonaut, **spaceman, spacewoman,** space crew member, shuttle crew member, space traveler, rocketeer, rocket pilot; space doctor; space crew; planetary colony, lunar colony; extraterrestrial visitor, alien, saucerman, man from Mars, Martian, little green man

9 rocketry, rocket propulsion; burn, thrust, escape velocity, orbit, parking orbit, transfer orbit,

insertion, injection, trajectory, flyby, rendezvous, docking, reentry, splashdown, soft landing, hard landing; launch vehicle, multistage rocket, payload, retrorocket, solid rocket booster, engine, booster, propellant, liquid fuel, solid fuel; **rocket society,** American Rocket Society, American Interplanetary Society, British Interplanetary Society

10 <space hazards> cosmic particles, intergalactic matter, aurora particles, radiation, cosmic ray bombardment; rocket *or* satellite debris, space junk <nf>; meteors, meteorites; asteroids; meteor dust impacts, meteoric particles, space bullets; extreme temperatures; the bends, blackout, weightlessness

11 **space suit,** pressure suit, G suit, anti-G suit; space helmet

VERBS **12** travel in space, go into outer space; launch, lift off, blast off, enter orbit, orbit the earth, go into orbit, orbit the moon, etc; navigate in space, astrogate; escape earth, break free, leave the atmosphere, shoot into space; rocket to the moon, park in space, hang *or* float in space, spacewalk

ADJS **13** **astronautical,** cosmonautical, spacetraveling, spacefaring; astrogational; rocketborne, spaceborne

14 **spacecraft, artificial satellites, space probes**

A-1
Alouette
Anik
Anna
Apollo
Ariane
Ariel
Astro
ATDA
Atlas-Score
ATS
Aurora 7 <Mercury>
Biosatellite
Cassini
communications satellites *or* comsats
Comsat
Copernicus
cosmic background explorer *or* COBE
Cosmos
Courier
D1-C
D2-D
Deep Space
Diapason
Discoverer
Early Bird
Echo
Einstein
Elektron
ERS
ESSA *or* environmental survey satellite
Explorer
Explorer 760
Faith 7 <Mercury>
FR-1
Freedom 7 <Mercury>
Friendship 7 <Mercury>
Galileo
GATV
Gemini
Geostationary Operational Environmental Satellite *or* GOES
Greb
Hubble Space Telescope
Injun
Intelsat
killersat
Lageos *or* laser geodynamic satellite
Lani Bird
Liberty Bell 7 <Mercury>
Lofti
Luna
Lunar Orbiter
Lunar Prospector
Lunik
Mariner
Mars Global Surveyor
Mars Pathfinder
Mars Sojourner
Mars Surveyor
Mercury
Midas
MIR
Molniya
Nimbus
OAO *or* orbiting astronomical observatory
OGO *or* orbiting geophysical observatory
orbiter
OSO *or* orbiting solar observatory
OV1
OV3
Pageos
Pegasus
Pioneer
Polyot
probe
Proton
Ranger
Relay
ROSAT
Samos
San Marco
Secor
Sigma 7 <Mercury>
Skylab
Solar Max
Soyuz
Spacelab
space shuttle *or* shuttle
space station
Spartan
Sputnik
Stardust
Surveyor
Syncom
Tardis
Telstar
TIROS *or* television and infrared observation satellite
Transit
Ulysses
Vanguard
Venera
Viking
Voskhod
Vostok
WRESAT
Zondd

Index

A
C

D
G

How to Use This Index

Numbers after index entries refer to categories and paragraphs in the front section of this book, not to page numbers. The part of the number before the decimal point refers to the category in which you will find synonyms and related words for the word you are looking up. The part of the number after the decimal point refers to the paragraph or paragraphs within the category. Look at the index entry for **abdomen** on the next page:

abdomen 2.18

This entry listing tells you that you can find words related to **abdomen** in paragraph 18 of category 2.

Words, of course, frequently have more than one meaning. Each of those meanings may have synonyms or associated related words. Look at the entry for **abhor**:

abhor dislike 99.3
hate 103.5

This tells you that you will find synonyms for **abhor** in the sense meaning "dislike" in category 99, paragraph 3. It also tells you that you will find synonyms for **abhor**, meaning "hate," in category 103, paragraph 5.

In many cases, words are spelled the same as nouns, verbs, adjectives, etc. Look at the entry for **abandon** and notice that here you are directed to **abandon** when it is used as a noun and when it is used as a verb in a variety of meanings. Here, as in the examples above, you are referred to the category and paragraph number.

Not all words in the main part of the book are included in the index. Many adverbs ending with **-ly** have been left out of the index, but you will find the common adverbs ending in **-ly** here, such as **lightly** or **easily**. If you can't find the adverb ending in **-ly** that you are looking for, look up the word in its adjective form and go to that category. Frequently, you can use the words in the adjective paragraphs you find and convert them into the adverb you are looking for by simply adding **-ly** to the adjective.

To make it easier to find phrases, we have indexed them according to their first word, unless that first word is an article such as **a**, **the**, or **an**. You do not have to guess what the main word of the phrase is to find it in the index. Simply look up the first word in the phrase. For example, **hot air** will be found in the Hs, **fat cat** in the Fs, and **let go** in the Ls.

A-1 important 997.17
  perfect 1002.6
abaft aft 182.69
  after 217.14
abandon
  n zeal 101.2
  fury 105.8
  carelessness 340.2
  unrestraint 430.3
  turpitude 654.5
  excess 993.1
  v quit 188.9
  leave undone 340.7
  desert 370.5
  break the habit 374.3
  discard 390.7
  surrender 433.8
  disregard 435.3
  relinquish 475.3
  swear off 668.8
  cease 857.6
  dismiss 984.4
abandoned
  zealous 101.9
  frenzied 105.25
  available 222.15
  neglected 340.14
  forsaken 370.8
  disused 390.10
  unrestrained 430.24
  relinquished 475.5
  forlorn 584.12
  outcast 586.10
  corrupt 654.14
  profligate 665.25
  excessive 993.16
abase debase 137.5
  demote 447.3
abashed
  distressed 96.22
  humiliated 137.14
  bewildered 971.24
abate weaken 16.10
  relieve 120.5
  decrease 252.6
  bate 252.8
  subtract 255.9
  discount 631.2
  moderate 670.6
  relax 670.9
  qualify 959.3
abatement
  weakening 16.5
  relief 120.1
  decrease 252.1
  discount 631.1
  modulation 670.2
abattoir 308.12
abbé 699.2
abbess
  mistress 575.2
  nun 699.18
abbey 703.6
abbot 699.16
abbreviate
  delete 255.12
  contract 260.7
  shorten 268.6
  be brief 537.5
abbreviated
  short 268.8
  shortened 268.9
  concise 537.6
abbreviation
  deletion 255.5
  contraction 260.1
  shortening 268.3
  shortening 537.4
  abridgment 557.1
ABC's
  writing system 546.3
  elementary education 568.5
  basics 818.6
abdicate give up 370.7
  cease to use 390.4
  resign 448.2
abdication 475.1
abdomen 2.18
abdominal 2.31
abduct seize 480.14
  abduce 482.20
abduction
  seizure 480.2
  kidnapping 482.9
abductor 483.10
abeam 218.11
abed 20.11
Abélard and Héloïse 104.18
aberrant
  deviative 164.7
  wrong 638.3
  changed 852.10
  abnormal 870.9
  erroneous 975.16
aberration
  deviation 164.1
  divergence 171.1
  obliquity 204.1
  abnormality 870.1
  insanity 926.1
  eccentricity 927.1
  error 975.1
abet advance 162.5
  encourage 375.21
  aid 449.11
  encourage 449.14
abettor
  prompter 375.10
  accomplice 616.3
  supporter 616.9
abeyance
  inertness 173.4
  discontinuance 390.2
  pause 857.3
abhor dislike 99.3
  hate 103.5
abhorrent
  offensive 98.18
  unlikable 99.7
  hating 103.7
abide await 130.8
  endure 134.5
  inhabit 225.7
  live on 761.9
  endure 827.6
  wait 846.12
  remain 853.5
  continue 856.3
abide by
  assent 332.8
  observe 434.2
  execute 437.9
abide in 761.11
abiding
  n habitation 225.1
  adj resident 225.13
  durable 827.10
  permanent 853.7
  continuing 856.7
ability
  capability 18.2
  means 384.2
  preparedness 405.4
  skill 413.1
  talent 413.4
abject penitent 113.9
  humblehearted 137.11
  obsequious 138.14
  submissive 433.12
  base 661.12
abjure
  n recant 363.8
  v deny 335.4
  give up 370.7
  reject 372.2
  cease to use 390.4
  relinquish 475.3
ablate decrease 252.6
  consume 388.3
  wear 393.20
  waste 473.5
  disintegrate 806.3
  abrade 1044.7
ablaze fervent 93.18
  burning 1019.27
  flashing 1025.34
  illuminated 1025.39
able
  capable 18.14
  fitted 405.17
  competent 413.24
  possible 966.6
able-bodied 15.16
abloom floral 310.38
  ripe 407.13
  gorgeous 1016.21
ablution 79.5
ably capably 18.16
  skillfully 413.31
abnormal wrong 638.3
  inconsistent 789.8
  unnatural 870.9
  insane 926.26
  eccentric 927.5
abnormality
  disease 85.1
  wrong 638.1
  unfitness 789.3
  unnaturalness 870.1
  fluke 870.1
  oddity 870.5
  insanity 926.1
  eccentricity 927.1
aboard here 159.23
  on board 182.62
abode location 159.1
  habitation 225.1
  dwelling 228
  living place 228.1
abolish nullify 395.13
  repeal 445.2
abolition
  extinction 395.6
  repeal 445.1
A-bomb 1038.16
abominable
  offensive 98.18
  wrong 638.3
  wicked 654.16
  base 661.12
  terrible 1000.9
abominate 103.5
abomination
  defilement 80.4
  hostility 99.2
  hate 103.1
  hated thing 103.3
  horror 638.2
  iniquity 654.3
  evil 1000.3
aborigine native 227.3
  ancient 842.7
abort miscarry 410.15
  end 820.5
  cease 857.6
  launch 1074.13
abortion
  miscarriage 410.5
  monstrosity 870.6
  unproductiveness 891.1
abortive
  fruitless 391.12
  unsuccessful 410.18
abound
  teem with 884.5
  exuberate 991.5
about
  adv around 209.12
  near 223.20
  approximately 244.6
  prep around 223.26
  in relation to 775.13
about-face
  n reverse 163.3
  denial 335.2
  switch 363.1
  change 852.1
  conversion 858.1
  reversion 859.1
  v regress 163.10
  change 852.7
about to
  adj prepared 405.16
  prep at the point of 839.13
above
  adj superior 249.12
  higher 272.19
  previous 834.4
  adv additionally 253.11
  on high 272.21
  before 814.6
  prep on 295.37
  beyond 522.26
  in excess of 993.26
above all 249.17
above all that 141.12
above and beyond 993.26
aboveboard
  adj straight 644.14
  adv openly 348.15
above it all 94.13
above suspicion 657.8
above water
  unindebted 624.23

A C
D G

in safety 1007.6
ab ovo
adj essential 767.9
adv first 818.18
newly 841.15
abracadabra 691.4
abrade subtract 255.9
grind 287.8
injure 393.13
wear 393.20
abrase 1044.7
pulverize 1051.9
abrasion trauma 85.38
subtraction 255.1
roughness 288.1
attrition 1044.2
pulverization 1051.4
abrasive
n cleanser 79.17
smoother 287.4
abrasion 1044.2
pulverizer 1051.7
adj unpleasant 98.17
out of humor 110.17
rugged 288.7
abradant 1044.10
abreast
in parallel 203.7
beside 218.11
informed 928.18
abridge reduce 252.7
delete 255.12
abbreviate 268.6
take from 480.21
shorten 557.5
abridged
shortened 268.9
concise 537.6
condensed 557.6
mutilated 795.5
abridgment
decrease 252.1
deletion 255.5
shortening 268.3
deprivation 480.6
aphorism 537.3
compendium 557.1
abroad
adj nonresident 222.12
bewildered 971.24
erroneous 975.16
adv extensively 158.12
outdoors 206.11
far and wide 261.16
wide 261.19
in foreign parts 774.6
abrogate
abolish 395.13
repeal 445.2
abrupt steep 204.18
blunt 286.3
precipitate 401.10
commanding 420.13
gruff 505.7
sudden 830.5
abruptly short 268.13
precipitately 401.15
gruffly 505.9
abscess
symptom 85.9
sore 85.37
abscissa 300.5
abscond quit 188.9
flee 368.10
absconded 222.11
absconder 368.5
absence
nonpresence 222.1
nonattendance 222.4
nonexistence 762.1
want 992.4
absent
adj not present 222.11
abstracted 985.11
prep lacking 222.19
excluding 773.10
without 992.17
conj unless 959.16
absentee 222.5
absentee ballot vote 371.6
ballot 609.19
absentminded
abstracted 985.11
forgetful 990.9
absolute
omnipotent 18.13
downright 247.12
affirmative 334.8
authoritative 417.15
imperious 417.16
mandatory 420.12
unrestricted 430.27
governmental 612.17
musical 708.47
real 761.15
thorough 794.10
unmixed 798.7
particular 865.12
sole 872.9
convincing 953.26
evidential 957.16
unqualified 960.2
certain 970.13
obvious 970.15
accurate 973.16
perfect 1002.6
absolutely
adv extremely 247.22
affirmatively 334.10
really 761.16
fully 794.15
certainly 970.23
exactly 973.21
perfectly 1002.10
interj yes 332.18
absoluteness 1002.1
absolve
forgive 148.3
exempt 430.14
acquit 601.4
declare a moratorium 625.9
confess 701.18
absorb digest 7.18
adsorb 187.13
consume 388.3
understand 521.7
acquire 570.7
corner 737.26
involve 898.2
occupy the thoughts 931.20
engross 983.13
absorbed
engrossed in thought 931.22
occupied 983.17
abstracted 985.11
absorbent
n sorption 187.6
drier 1066.4
adj sorbent 187.17
absorbing
deep-felt 93.24
engrossing 983.20
absorption
body function 2.17
digestion 7.8
sorption 187.6
permeation 221.3
consumption 388.1
ingestion 570.2
involvement 898.1
thoughtfulness 931.3
engrossment 983.3
abstractedness 985.2
abstain refrain 329.3
not use 390.5
remain neutral 467.5
deny oneself 667.3
abstain from 668.7
abstainer ascetic 667.2
abstinent 668.4
abstemious
continent 664.6
abstinent 668.10
meager 992.10
abstention disuse 390.1
neutrality 467.1
abstinence 668.2
abstinence disuse 390.1
fasting 515.1
continence 664.3
asceticism 667.1
refraining 668.2
moderation 670.1
abstract
n shortening 268.3
abridgment 557.1
picture 712.11
abstract idea 932.3
v subtract 255.9
shorten 268.6
steal 482.13
eliminate 773.5
adj recondite 522.16
general 864.11
theoretical 951.13
abstracted shortened 268.9
absorbed in thought 931.22
bemused 985.11
abstraction subtraction 255.1
theft 482.1
picture 712.11
separation 802.1
generalization 864.8
thoughtfulness 931.3
abstract idea 932.3
theory 951.1
abstractedness 985.2
abstruse
concealed 346.11
recondite 522.16
learned 928.21
difficult 1013.17
absurd vain 391.13
humorous 488.4
nonsensical 520.7
inconsistent 789.8
odd 870.11
foolish 923.11
unbelievable 955.10
impossible 967.7
abulia weak will 362.4
psychosis 926.3
abundance
quantity 247.3
store 386.1
wordiness 538.2
numerousness 884.1
productiveness 890.1
plenty 991.2
abundant much 247.8
diffuse 538.11
copious 884.8
productive 890.9
plentiful 991.7
abuse
n misuse 389.1
mistreatment 389.2
berating 510.7
vilification 513.2
seduction 665.6
v exploit 387.16
misuse 389.4
mistreat 389.5
berate 510.19
vilify 513.7
seduce 665.20
blaspheme 694.5
work evil 1000.6
abusive caustic 144.23
insulting 156.8
condemnatory 510.22
disparaging 512.13
cursing 513.8
threatening 514.3
abut adjoin 223.9
juxtapose 223.13
rest on 901.22
abysmal huge 257.20
abyssal 275.11
abyss crack 224.2
something deep 275.2
ocean depths 275.4
pit 284.4
hell 682.1
academia 567.5
academic
n teacher 571.1
adj learning 567.13
scholastic 568.19
studious 570.17
pedagogic 571.11
theoretical 951.13
academician 929.3
academic journal 555.1
academy school 567.1
secondary school 567.4
accede assent 332.8
submit 433.6
consent 441.2
be instated 615.13
accelerate
speed up 174.10
intensify 251.5
hasten 401.4

drive 756.4
atomize 1038.17
acceleration
quickening 174.4
intensification 251.2
hastening 401.3
accelerator 1038.11
accent
n regional accent 524.8
enunciation 524.10
notation 709.12
accentuation 709.25
meter 720.7
v emphasize 997.14
accept
take for granted 123.2
condone 134.7
forgive 148.4
assent 332.8
acknowledge 332.11
ratify 332.12
adopt 371.15
undertake 404.3
submit 433.6
consent 441.2
take 479.6
approve 509.9
receive 585.7
believe 953.10
keep an open mind 979.7
acceptable
desirable 100.30
admissible 107.12
eligible 371.24
welcome 585.12
tolerable 999.20
acceptance
composure 106.2
contentment 107.1
patience 134.1
admission 187.2
assent 332.1
acknowledgment 332.3
ratification 332.4
adoption 371.4
lenience 427.1
submission 433.1
consent 441.1
receiving 479.1
approval 509.1
usage 518.4
negotiable instrument 728.11
accepted
allowed 332.14
chosen 371.26
customary 373.13
undertaken 404.7
received 479.10
approved 509.19
conventional 579.5
orthodox 687.7
real 761.15
believed 953.23
authoritative 970.18
accepter
assenter 332.6
recipient 479.3
believer 692.4
accepting
content 107.7
patient 134.9
lenient 427.7
submissive 433.12
access
n seizure 85.6
outburst 152.9
approach 167.1
entree 187.3
ingress 189.1
entrance 189.5
increase 251.1
passageway 383.3
influence 894.6
spasm 917.6
accessibility 966.3
retrieval 1042.8
v arrive 186.6
enter 189.7
accessibility 223.1
accessible
approachable 167.5
present 221.12
permeable 292.21
communicative 343.10
published 352.17
handy 387.20
obtainable 472.14
influenceable 894.15
possible 966.8
accession
approach 167.1
increase 251.1
addition 253.1
adjunct 254.1
assent 332.1
authority 417.12
acquisition 472.1
installation 615.3
accessory
n adjunct 254.1
belongings 471.2
participator 476.4
litigant 598.11
accomplice 616.3
nonessential 768.2
attendant 769.3
adj additional 253.10
helping 449.20
participating 476.8
unessential 768.4
accompanying 769.9
accident
nonessential 768.2
event 831.1
chance event 972.6
misfortune 1011.2
accidental
n note 709.14
nonessential 768.2
adj circumstantial 766.7
unessential 768.4
happening 831.9
incidental 843.11
chance 972.15
accident-prone
bungling 414.20
reckless 493.8
acclaim
n applause 509.2
repute 662.1
v assent 332.8
applaud 509.10
acclaimed
approved 509.19
distinguished 662.16
acclamation
unanimity 332.5
applause 509.2
acclimated 373.15
acclivity 204.6
accolade
praise 509.5
citation 646.4
accommodate
be kind 143.9
orient 161.11
accustom 373.9
provide 385.7
furnish accommodations 385.10
arrange 437.8
oblige 449.19
reconcile 465.8
compromise 468.2
make agree 788.7
equalize 790.6
change 852.7
conform 867.3
accommodating
resigned 134.10
considerate 143.16
indulgent 427.8
courteous 504.14
accommodation
orientation 161.4
quarters 228.4
capacity 257.2
habituation 373.7
lodgings 385.3
compact 437.1
facility 449.9
appeasement 465.4
compromise 468.1
giving 478.1
loan 620.2
adjustment 788.4
equating 790.2
change 852.1
conformity 867.1
accommodation address
hiding place 346.4
address 553.9
accommodation ladder 193.4
accompaniment
adjunct 254.1
part 708.22
togetherness 769.1
concomitance 769.1
simultaneity 836.1
concurrence 899.1
accompanist
player 710.3
accompanier 769.4
accompany play 708.39
keep one company 769.7
coincide 836.4
result 887.4
accompanying
attending 769.9
happening 831.9
simultaneous 836.5
concurrent 899.4
accomplice
participator 476.4
cohort 616.3
accomplice in crime 616.3
accomplish
arrive 186.6
do 328.6
perform 328.9
achieve 407.4
succeed with 409.11
complete 794.6
evolve 861.5
finish 892.11
accomplished
achieved 407.10
skilled 413.26
accomplishment
arrival 186.1
superiority 249.1
development 328.2
act 328.3
fulfillment 407.1
achievement 407.1
success 409.1
acquirement 413.8
completion 794.4
evolution 861.1
performance 892.5
learning 928.4
solution 940.1
accord
n unanimity 332.5
compact 437.1
consent 441.1
relationship 455
accordance 455.1
peace 464.1
harmony 708.3
relation 775.1
agreement 788.1
conformity 867.1
v consent 332.9
permit 443.9
get along 455.2
give 478.12
harmonize 708.35
agree 788.6
make agree 788.7
conform 867.3
concur 899.2
accordingly
in that case 766.11
consequently 887.7
hence 888.7
according to 867.9
according to Hoyle
adj right 637.3
adv according to rule 867.8
accordion 711.11
accost
n greeting 585.4
v approach 167.3
address 524.26
greet 585.10
account
n recounting 349.3
record 549.1
report 549.7
information 551.1
credit account 622.2
fee 624.5

reckoning 628.2
statement 628.3
worth 630.2
esteem 662.3
story 719.3
tale 722.3
bill 871.5
sum 1017.6
summary 1017.11
v judge 946.8
accountability 130.4
accountable
interpretable 341.17
responsible 641.17
attributable 888.6
accountant
recorder 550.1
bookkeeper 628.7
professional 726.4
treasurer 729.12
calculator 1017.15
accountant general 628.7
account for
explain 341.10
justify 600.9
attribute to 888.4
accounting
n report 549.7
accountancy 628.6
numeration 1017.9
automation 1041.7
adj bookkeeping 628.12
accredit ratify 332.12
authorize 443.11
commission 615.10
attribute to 888.4
accredited
authorized 443.17
commissioned 615.19
accretion 472.2
accrue grow 251.6
be received 479.8
mature 623.7
result from 887.5
acculturate
naturalize 226.4
accustom 373.9
make better 392.9
accumulate grow 251.6
store up 386.11
collect 472.11
assemble 770.18
put together 800.5
accumulation
increase 251.1
store 386.1
collection 472.2
cumulation 770.9
accuracy
meticulousness 339.3
circumstantiality 766.4
correctness 973.5
accurate
meticulous 339.12
discriminating 944.7
correct 973.16
accurately
meticulously 339.16
correctly 973.20
accursed cursed 513.9
execrable 1000.10
accusation charge 599.1
accusal 599.1
accusatory 599.13
accuse
bring accusation 599.7
censure 510.13
accused
n defendant 599.6
adj charged 599.15
accuser 599.5
accustomed
wont 373.15
usual 869.9
ace military pilot 185.3
short distance 223.2
modicum 248.2
superior 249.4
skillful person 413.14
friend 588.4
game 748.2
round 751.4
card 758.2
one 872.3
first-rate 999.7
acedia apathy 94.4
wretchedness 96.6
unconcern 102.2
dejection 112.3
despair 125.2
languor 331.6
ace in the hole
advantage 249.2
reserve 386.3
aceldama
place of killing 308.12
battlefield 463.2
acerbic bitter 64.6
sour 67.5
pungent 68.6
caustic 144.23
resentful 152.26
acetify sour 67.4
chemicalize 1060.8
ache
n aching 26.5
pain 96.5
cold 1023.2
v suffer 26.8
discomfort 96.19
grieve 112.17
ache for 100.16
achievable 966.7
achieve arrive 186.6
do 328.6
accomplish 407.4
succeed with 409.11
perform 892.11
achievement
arrival 186.1
production 328.2
act 328.3
accomplishment 407.1
exploit 492.7
heraldry 647.2
performance 892.5
Achilles' heel
weak point 16.4
fault 1003.2
aching
n ache 26.5
pain 96.5
yearning 100.5
cold 1023.2
adj achy 26.12
pained 96.23
desirous of 100.22
achromatic 36.7
acid
n sour 67.2
LSD 87.10
bitterness 152.3
cauterant 1020.15
extinguisher 1022.3
hydracid 1060.3
adj acrimonious 17.14
acidulous 67.6
pungent 68.6
out of humor 110.17
caustic 144.23
resentful 152.26
vigorous 544.11
chemical 1060.9
acidhead 87.21
acidic
caustic 144.23
resentful 152.26
acidify sour 67.4
chemicalize 1060.8
acidity acrimony 17.5
sourness 67.1
pungency 68.1
causticity 144.8
bitterness 152.3
acid 1060.3
acid rain 1001.4
acid rock 708.10
acid test 942.2
acidulous
acrimonious 17.14
acid 67.6
caustic 144.23
resentful 152.26
acknowledge
thank 150.4
admit 332.11
confess 351.7
reply 553.11
pay for 624.18
attribute to 888.4
answer 939.4
testify 957.9
acknowledged
accepted 332.14
conventional 579.5
traditional 842.12
acknowledgment
thanks 150.2
recognition 332.3
confession 351.3
commendation 509.3
letter 553.2
receipt 627.2
due 639.2
apology 658.2
citation 888.2
answer 939.1
acme
summit 198.2
supremacy 249.3
height 272.2
ideal 786.4
limit 794.5
culmination 1002.3
acne 85.35
acolyte assistant 616.6
holy orders 699.4
acoustic
n sound 50.1
adj auditory 48.13
sonic 50.17
phonetic 524.30
acoustics 50.5
acquaint inform 551.8
introduce 587.14
acquaintance
information 551.1
acquaintedness 587.4
friend 588.1
knowledge 928.1
acquiesce
be willing 324.3
assent 332.8
submit 433.6
comply 441.3
acquiescent
resigned 134.10
willing 324.5
obedient 326.3
assenting 332.13
submissive 433.12
consenting 441.4
conformable 867.5
acquire get 472.8
receive 479.6
take 480.13
absorb 570.7
receive 627.3
incur 897.4
acquired immune deficiency syndrome or AIDS
deficiency diseases 85.11
venereal disease or VD 85.18
acquisition
acquirement 472.1
gaining 472.1
receiving 479.1
taking 480.1
purchase 733.1
acquisitive
greedy 100.27
acquiring 472.15
selfish 651.5
acquit
bring in a verdict 598.20
clear 601.4
acquit oneself
behave 321.4
meet an obligation 641.11
keep faith 644.9
acquittal
observance 434.1
judgment 598.9
exculpation 601.1
acquittance 601.1
payment 624.1
acreage 158.1
acres land 234.1
real estate 471.6
acrid
acrimonious 17.14
bitter 64.6
pungent 68.6
caustic 144.23

sharp 285.8
hostile 589.10
acrimonious
acrid 17.14
caustic 144.23
resentful 152.26
violent 671.16
acrimony acridity 17.5
causticity 144.8
bitterness 152.3
berating 510.7
animosity 589.4
violence 671.1
acrobat 707.3
acrobatic
n maneuvers 184.13
adj sporting 743.30
acromegaly 257.5
acronym 526.4
across
adj crosswise 170.9
transverse 204.19
adv crosswise 170.13
transversely 204.24
on 901.25
prep opposite to 215.7
beyond 261.21
across the board
comprehensive 772.7
wholly 792.13
acrostic
wordplay 489.8
word form 526.4
acrylic 712.14
act
n doing 328.1
action 328.3
legislation 613.5
law 673.3
scene 704.7
process 889.2
v behave 321.4
serve 328.4
impersonate 349.12
sham 354.21
stage 704.29
be operative 889.7
perform 892.11
act as
impersonate 349.12
officiate 724.13
function as 889.8
act for
be instrumental 384.7
represent 576.14
substitute for 862.5
acting
n action 328.1
impersonation 349.4
sham 354.3
playing 704.8
adj performing 328.10
deputy 576.16
operating 889.11
acting-out 92.25
actinic 1025.41
action behavior 321.1
activity 328.1
doing 328.1
act 328.3
activeness 330.1
undertaking 404.1
fight 457.4
military operation 458.5
lawsuit 598.1
plot 722.4
fun 743.2
basketball game 747.3
gambling 759.1
operation 889.1
verdict 946.5
expedient 995.2
mechanism 1040.4
automatic control 1041.3
actionable
litigious 598.21
legal 673.11
illegal 674.6
activate
reactivate 17.12
militarize 458.20
radioactivate 1037.10
atomize 1038.17
active
n voice 530.14
adj energetic 17.13
moving 172.7
lively 330.17
effectual 387.21
observant 434.4
operating 889.11
activewear 5.2
activist
n man of action 330.8
instigator 375.11
adj energetic 17.13
active 330.17
enterprising 330.23
activity animation 17.4
motion 172.1
behavior 321.1
active 328.1
movement 330.1
action 330.1
occupation 724.1
cause 886.9
radiation 1037.1
act of God 963.7
act of grace 143.7
act on
take action 328.5
operate on 889.6
exercise influence 894.9
pass judgment 946.13
act on behalf of 576.14
actor deceiver 357.1
phony 500.7
role 704.10
motion-picture studio 706.4
actress 707.2
doer 726.1
actual real 761.15
happening 831.9
present 838.2
obvious 970.15
true 973.13
actuality reality 761.2
the present 838.1
unquestionability 970.3
truth 973.1
actualize 206.5
actually
positively 247.19
really 761.16
truly 973.18
actuarial 968.6
actuary
accountant 628.7
insurance 1008.4
calculator 1017.15
actuate
set in motion 172.6
motivate 375.12
impel 902.11
act up 322.4
acuity sharpness 285.1
alertness 339.5
smartness 920.2
sagacity 920.4
acumen sagacity 920.4
discernment 944.2
acupuncture anesthetic 25.3
practice of medicine 90.13
acute energetic 17.13
sensitive 24.13
painful 26.10
shrill 58.14
deep-felt 93.24
sharp 285.8
pointed 285.9
cunning 415.12
violent 671.16
sagacious 920.16
urgent 997.22
acutely 247.20
ad advertisement 352.6
AD 821.13
adage 529.1
adagio
n music 708.25
adj music 708.54
adamant
n hardness 1046.6
adj unyielding 361.9
immovable 855.15
hard 1046.10
inflexible 1046.12
stone 1059.11
Adam's apple 524.18
adapt orient 161.11
accustom 373.9
fit 405.8
compose 708.46
make agree 788.7
change 852.7
conform 867.3
adaptable
handy 387.20
versatile 413.25
changeable 854.6
conformable 867.5
facile 1014.15
pliant 1047.9
elastic 1048.7
adaptation
orientation 161.4
fitting 405.2
piece 708.5
harmonization 709.2
adjustment 788.4
change 852.1
evolution 861.3
conformity 867.1
adapter 710.2
add plus 253.4
combine 805.3
calculate 1017.18
added-in 772.5
addendum
adjunct 254.1
nonessential 768.2
sequel 817.1
add fuel to the fire
excite 105.12
aggravate 119.2
intensify 251.5
sow dissension 456.14
addict
drug addict 87.21
desirer 100.12
enthusiast 101.4
addiction 373.8
addiction
substance abuse 87.1
addict 373.8
addictive 375.27
adding machine 253.3
add insult to injury
aggravate 119.2
offend 156.5
impair 393.9
pick a quarrel 456.13
addition increase 251.1
attachment 253.1
accession 253.1
component 254.1
adjunct 254.3
expansion 259.1
acquisition 472.1
nonessential 768.2
relation 775.1
combination 805.1
notation 1017.2
additional
additive 253.8
supplementary 253.10
unessential 768.4
fresh 841.8
additive
n adjunct 254.1
adj additional 253.8
addle intoxicate 88.22
perplex 971.13
confuse 985.7
addled
intoxicated 88.31
muddleheaded 922.18
in a dilemma 971.25
befuddled 985.13
address
n abode 228.1
behavior 321.1
skill 413.1
request 440.1
remark 524.3
speech 543.2
name and address 553.9
greeting 585.4
round 751.3
v solicit 440.14
speak to 524.26
make a speech 543.9

direct 553.13
court 562.21
greet 585.10
address book 871.4
addressee
inhabitant 227.2
recipient 479.3
correspondent 553.8
address oneself to
practice 328.8
undertake 404.3
busy oneself with 724.11
add to increase 251.4
augment 253.5
enlarge 259.4
adduction 907.1
add up compute 253.6
be right 973.10
sum up 1017.19
adenoidal 525.12
adept
n expert 413.11
occultist 689.11
adj skillful 413.22
adequacy ability 18.2
satisfactoriness 107.3
mean 246.1
sufficiency 991.1
adequate able 18.14
satisfactory 107.11
sufficient 991.6
tolerable 999.20
adhere join 800.11
cohere 803.6
adherent
n hanger-on 138.6
associate 166.2
commender 509.8
follower 616.8
adhesive 803.4
adj adhesive 803.12
adhere to
observe 434.2
execute 437.9
hold 474.6
adhesion retention 474.1
fidelity 644.7
cohesion 803.1
adhesive
n fastening 800.3
adherent 803.4
plastic 1054.6
adj adherent 803.12
viscous 1062.12
ad hoc
n transience 828.1
expedient 995.2
adj extemporaneous 365.12
unprepared 406.8
transient 828.7
substitute 862.8
makeshift 995.7
ad hominem attack 512.2
adieu
n leave-taking 188.4
interj farewell! 188.22
ad infinitum
lengthily 267.10
throughout 794.17
continuously 812.10
infinitely 823.4
perpetually 829.10
adios! 188.22
adipose
corpulent 257.18
oily 1056.9
adiposity
corpulence 257.8
oiliness 1056.5
adit
entrance 189.5
channel 239.1
adjacent 223.16
adjective 530.3
adjoin
border 211.10
join 223.9
juxtapose 223.13
add 253.4
adjoining 223.16
adjourn 846.9
adjournment 846.4
adjudicate 946.8
adjunct
n thing added 253.1
addition 254.1
expansion 259.1
associate 616.1
nonessential 768.2
attendant 769.3
relation 775.1
part 793.1
component 796.2
adj added 253.9
adjure
administer an oath 334.7
entreat 440.11
adjust
orient 161.11
size 257.15
accustom 373.9
fit 405.8
arrange 437.8
reconcile 465.8
settle 466.7
compromise 468.2
make agree 788.7
equalize 790.6
organize 808.10
change 852.7
conform 867.3
adjustable
versatile 413.25
changeable 854.6
conformable 867.5
adjusted
accustomed 373.15
fitted 405.17
adjustment
rehabilitation 92.27
orientation 161.4
habituation 373.7
fitting 405.2
compact 437.1
accommodation 465.4
compromise 468.1
good condition 765.3
adaptation 788.4
equating 790.2
organization 808.2
change 852.1
conformity 867.1
adjutant 616.6
adjuvant
n adjunct 254.1
adj remedial 86.39
helping 449.20
ad lib
n improvisation 365.5
unpreparedness 406.1
adv at will 323.5
extemporaneously 365.15
ad-lib
v improvise 365.8
be unprepared 406.6
adj extemporaneous 365.12
unprepared 406.8
administer
execute 437.9
parcel out 477.8
give 478.12
administrate 573.11
administer justice 594.5
govern 612.12
give 643.6
administer to 577.13
administration
performance 328.2
governance 417.5
distribution 477.2
principal 571.8
executive function 573.3
government 612.1
giving 643.2
protectorship 1008.2
administrative authoritative 417.15
governmental 612.17
administrative assistant 577.3
administrator
principal 571.8
director 574.1
admirable
endearing 104.25
praiseworthy 509.20
admiral 575.20
admire
cherish 104.21
respect 155.4
approve 509.9
admirer
enthusiast 101.4
lover 104.12
supporter 616.9
admissible
acceptable 107.12
receptive 187.16
eligible 371.24
permissible 443.15
justifiable 600.14
relevant 775.11
logical 935.20
evidential 957.16
tolerable 999.20
admission
admittance 187.2
entrance 189.1
naturalization 226.3
acknowledgment 332.3
confession 351.3
permission 443.1
receiving 479.1
fee 630.6
inclusion 772.1
testimony 957.2
admit receive 187.10
enter 189.7
naturalize 226.4
acknowledge 332.11
confess 351.7
permit 443.9
take in 479.6
welcome 585.7
include 772.3
allow for 959.5
admit of
be liable 897.3
have a chance 972.13
admitted
accepted 332.14
disclosive 351.10
permitted 443.16
received 479.10
approved 509.19
conventional 579.5
real 761.15
traditional 842.12
admixture
addition 253.1
mixture 797.1
compound 797.5
admonish
dissuade 379.3
warn 399.5
exhort 422.6
reprove 510.17
admonition
dissuasion 379.1
warning 399.1
advice 422.1
reproof 510.5
ad nauseam
lengthily 267.10
at length 538.16
fully 766.13
repeatedly 849.16
ado
n agitation 105.4
bustle 330.4
commotion 810.4
trouble 1013.3
adj happening 831.9
adobe
n ceramic ware 742.2
building material 1054.2
adj earthy 234.5
adolescence 303.1
adolescent
n youngster 302.1
adj grown 14.3
pubescent 301.13
immature 406.11
Adonis 1016.10
adopt naturalize 226.4
approve 371.15
use 384.5
appropriate 480.19
borrow 621.4
usurp 640.8
adoptive parent 560.8
adorable
desirable 100.30
endearing 104.25
adore enjoy 95.13

cherish 104.21
respect 155.4
worship 696.11
adorn ornament 498.8
make grandiloquent 545.7
honor 662.12
beautify 1016.16
adrift
adj afloat 182.61
unfastened 802.22
inconstant 854.7
bewildered 971.24
erroneous 975.16
muddled 985.13
adv separately 802.27
adroit skillful 413.22
smart 920.14
adsorb 187.13
adsorption 187.6
adulation praise 509.5
flattery 511.1
adult
n grownup 304.1
adj grown 14.3
mature 303.12
lascivious 665.29
obscene 666.9
adult education 567.5
adulterate dilute 16.11
rarefy 299.3
tamper with 354.17
weaken 393.12
corrupt 797.12
adulterated
diluted 16.19
rare 299.4
imperfect 1003.4
adulterer 665.13
adulterous 665.27
adultery
copulation 75.7
love affair 104.6
illicit sex 665.7
adulthood 303.1
adumbrate
foreshow 133.10
image 349.11
hint 551.10
advance
n progression 162.1
approach 167.1
course 172.2
increase 251.1
improvement 392.1
offer 439.1
promotion 446.1
furtherance 449.5
lending 620.1
loan 620.2
evolution 861.1
v progress 162.2
further 162.5
approach 167.3
move 172.5
grow 251.6
be instrumental 384.7
improve 392.7
make better 392.9
make good 409.10
propose 439.5
promote 446.2
be useful 449.17
lend 620.5
elapse 821.5
evolve 861.5
determine 886.12
push 904.9
postulate 951.12
adduce 957.12
expedite one's affair 995.3
do good 999.10
prosper 1010.7
advance! 459.32
advanced front 216.10
aged 303.16
improved 392.13
preceding 816.4
modern 841.13
premature 845.8
advancement
progression 162.1
improvement 392.1
promotion 446.1
furtherance 449.5
lending 620.1
evolution 861.1
advantage
n vantage 249.2
benefit 387.4
facility 449.9
game 748.2
purchase 906.2
expedience 995.1
good 999.4
v avail 387.17
be useful 449.17
expedite one's affair 995.3
do good 999.10
advantageous
useful 387.18
gainful 472.16
expedient 995.5
good 999.12
advent approach 167.1
arrival 186.1
coming 839.5
adventitious
circumstantial 766.7
unessential 768.4
chance 972.15
adventure act 328.3
emprise 404.2
exploit 492.7
event 831.2
happening 972.6
adventurer
traveler 178.1
mercenary 461.17
daredevil 493.4
upstart 606.7
speculator 737.11
gambler 759.21
adventurous
dynamic 330.23
enterprising 404.8
daring 492.22
foolhardy 493.9
hazardous 1006.10
adverb 530.3
adverbial 530.3
adversarial
contrapositive 215.5
oppositional 451.8
contrary 779.6
adversarial procedure 935.4
adversary
n opponent 452.1
enemy 589.6
adj oppositional 451.8
adverse
oppositional 451.8
contrary 779.6
untoward 1011.13
adversity 1011
advertent 983.15
advertise
publish 352.10
publicize 352.15
flaunt 501.17
inform 551.8
advertisement 352.6
advertising 352.5
advice counsel 422
tip 551.3
news 552.1
message 552.4
advisable 995.5
advise warn 399.5
counsel 422.5
inform 551.8
advised
intentional 380.8
reasoned 935.21
advisement advice 422.1
adviser counsel 422.3
informant 551.5
advisory
recommendatory 422.8
conciliar 423.5
informative 551.18
advocacy
promotion 352.5
advice 422.1
patronage 449.4
recommendation 509.4
advocate
n defender 460.7
deputy 576.1
friend 588.1
lawyer 597.1
justifier 600.8
associate 616.9
supporter 901.2
arguer 935.12
v urge 375.14
advise 422.5
abet 449.14
defend 460.8
commend 509.11
defend 600.10
aegis patronage 449.4
safeguard 1008.3
aeon age 824.4
long time 827.4
aerate air 317.11
foam 320.5
vaporize 1067.8
aerial
n radio transmitter 1034.4
adj aviation 184.49
high 272.14
airy 317.12
chimeric 986.22
vaporous 1067.9
aerialist 707.3
aerification 1067.5
aerify 317.11
aerobe 85.42
aerobics 84.2
aerodynamic
aviation 184.49
pneumatic 1039.10
vaporous 1067.9
aerodynamics
pneumatics 1039.5
gas 1067.2
aerography
meteorology 317.5
pneumatics 1039.5
aerology
meteorology 317.5
pneumatics 1039.5
aerometer
density 1045.8
vaporimeter 1067.7
aerometry 1039.5
aeronaut aviator 185.1
balloonist 185.7
aeronautical 184.49
aeronautical engineering 1043.1
aeronautics 184.1
aeroplane
n aircraft 181.1
v fly 184.36
aerosol
solution 1064.3
sprinkler 1065.8
vaporizer 1067.6
aerospace
n atmosphere 184.32
adj aviation 184.49
aerospace engineering 1043.1
aerospace technology 1075.1
aerostatic
aviation 184.49
pneumatic 1039.10
vaporous 1067.9
aerostatics 1039.5
aerotechnics 1039.5
aery 317.12
aesthete 496.6
aesthetic
tasteful 496.8
artistic 712.20
absurdist 952.11
aesthetician 723.4
aesthetics
artistic taste 496.5
criticism 723.1
aestival green 44.4
seasonal 313.9
warm 1019.24
aestivate
hibernate 22.15
lie idle 331.16
AF tone 50.2
frequency 1034.12
afar 261.15
afeared 127.22
affable pleasant 97.6
good-natured 143.14
indulgent 427.8
courteous 504.14

informal 581.3
sociable 582.22
cordial 587.16
affair
love affair 104.6
undertaking 404.1
social gathering 582.10
occupation 724.1
concern 831.3
object 1052.4
affaire d'honneur 457.7
affairs action 328.1
occupation 724.1
relation 775.1
concerns 831.4
affect
n feeling 93.1
attitude 978.1
v wear 5.44
touch 93.14
impress 93.15
move 145.5
imitate 336.5
manifest 348.5
sham 354.21
assume 500.12
entail 772.4
relate to 775.5
operate on 889.6
influence 894.7
affectation
behavior 321.1
sham 354.3
pretension 500.1
airs 500.1
style 532.2
elegance 533.3
grandiloquence 545.1
sanctimony 693.1
affecting
touching 93.22
distressing 98.20
pitiful 145.8
affection
disease 85.1
feeling 93.1
liking 100.2
love 104.1
amorousness 104.3
friendship 587.1
affectionate
loving 104.27
kind 143.13
affective
emotional 93.17
attitudinal 978.7
affectless
insensible 25.6
unfeeling 94.9
affiance
n betrothal 436.3
v be engaged 436.6
affianced
n fiancé 104.17
adj promised 436.8
affidavit
deposition 334.3
certificate 549.6
declaration 598.7
statement of principles 953.4
testimony 957.2
affiliate
n branch 617.10
member 617.11
v naturalize 226.4
adopt 371.15
cooperate 450.3
join 617.14
league 805.4
adj related 775.9
leagued 805.6
affiliates 617.12
affiliation
naturalization 226.3
adoption 371.4
alliance 450.2
blood relationship 559.1
lineage 560.4
association 582.6
sect 675.3
relation 775.1
combination 805.1
affinity
inclination 100.3
preference 371.5
accord 455.1
marriage relationship 564.1
familiarity 587.5
relation 775.1
kinship 775.3
similarity 784.2
agreement 788.1
tendency 896.1
attraction 907.1
affirm
ratify 332.12
assert 334.5
announce 352.12
say 524.23
be pious 692.6
state 953.12
testify 957.9
confirm 957.11
affirmation
ratification 332.4
assertion 334.1
declaration 334.1
deposition 334.3
consent 441.1
remark 524.3
premise 935.7
testimony 957.2
confirmation 957.4
affirmative
n yes 332.2
consent 441.1
adj affirming 334.8
consenting 441.4
agreeing 788.9
affix
n added to writing 254.2
morphology 526.3
v add 253.4
fasten 800.7
afflatus
inspiration 375.9
revelation 683.10
Muse 720.10
genius 920.8
afflict pain 26.7
disorder 85.50
distress 96.16
aggrieve 112.19
work evil 1000.6
affliction
disease 85.1
infliction 96.8
bane 1001.1
adversity 1011.1
affluent
n tributary 238.3
adj flowing 238.24
wealthy 618.14
plentiful 991.7
prosperous 1010.12
afflux approach 167.1
influx 189.2
flow 238.4
afford provide 385.7
give 478.12
furnish 478.15
have money 618.11
well afford 626.7
yield 627.4
affordable 633.7
afforestation
woodland 310.13
forestry 1069.3
affray 457.4
affright
n fear 127.1
v frighten 127.15
affront
n provocation 152.11
indignity 156.2
v offend 152.21
disrespect 156.5
confront 216.8
oppose 451.5
defy 454.3
brave 492.11
affusion baptism 701.6
wetting 1065.6
afghan 295.10
aficionado
enthusiast 101.4
attender 221.5
supporter 616.9
specialist 866.3
fanatic 926.18
afield 261.19
afire fervent 93.18
zealous 101.9
inspired 375.31
burning 1019.27
afloat
adj floating 182.60
adrift 182.61
flooded 238.25
afoot 405.23
reported 552.15
unfastened 802.22
happening 831.9
inconstant 854.7
adv on board 182.62
at sea 240.10
afoot
adj astir 330.19
on foot 405.23
existent 761.13
happening 831.9
adv walking 177.43
aforementioned 814.5
aforethought
n intentionality 380.3
adj premeditated 380.9
afoul of sail into 182.41
collide 902.13
afraid scared 127.22
weak-willed 362.12
cowardly 491.10
afresh newly 841.15
repeated 849.17
again 874.7
African-American 312.3
aft
adj rear 217.9
adv abaft 182.69
after 217.14
after
adj rear 217.9
subsequent 835.4
adv behind 166.6
aft 217.14
like 336.12
in pursuit of 382.12
subsequently 835.6
following 835.8
conformable to 867.9
because of 888.9
after a fashion
limited 248.10
somehow 384.11
after all
notwithstanding 338.8
subsequently 835.6
all things considered 946.17
afterglow
remainder 256.1
aftermath 817.3
aftereffect 887.3
shine 1025.2
afterimage
remainder 256.1
aftermath 817.3
aftereffect 887.3
optical illusion 976.5
afterlife 681.2
aftermath yield 472.5
afterclap 817.3
event 831.1
sequel 835.2
result 887.1
aftereffect 887.3
afternoon
n post meridiem 315.1
adj post meridian 315.7
aftertaste taste 62.1
aftermath 817.3
aftereffect 887.3
afterthought
change of mind 363.1
sequel 817.1
untimeliness 844.1
delay 846.2
mature thought 931.5
afterwards
subsequently 835.6
in the future 839.9
afterword 254.2
afterworld
the hereafter 681.2
destiny 839.2
aftmost 217.9

again
adv additionally 253.11
notwithstanding 338.8
then 821.11
newly 841.15
over 849.17
another time 874.7
interj encore! 849.18
again and again
continuously 812.10
frequently 847.6
repeatedly 849.16
against
adj disapproving 510.21
prep toward 161.26
contraposed 215.7
up against 223.25
in preparation for 405.24
opposed to 451.10
in disagreement with 789.10
against the grain
adj unlikable 99.7
adv backwards 163.13
crosswise 170.13
cross-grained 288.12
in opposition 451.9
contrarily 779.9
agape love 104.1
benevolence 143.4
accord 455.1
agape
wondering 122.9
expectant 130.11
gaping 292.18
curious 981.5
age
n time of life 303.1
years 303.1
generation 824.4
era 824.5
durability 827.1
long time 827.5
duration 827.5
oldness 842.1
v ripen 303.10
grow old 842.9
aged ripe 303.13
elderly 303.16
mature 304.7
durable 827.10
old-fogyish 842.17
agee 204.14
ageism class 607.1
discrimination 980.4
ageless perpetual 829.7
old 842.10
agency
instrumentality 384.3
commission 615.1
trade 731.2
workplace 739.1
substitution 862.1
operation 889.1
agenda
record book 549.11
roll 871.6
schedule 965.3
agent
intermediary 213.4
instrument 384.4
mediator 466.3
director 574.1
representative 576.1
deputy 576.3
lawyer 597.1
assignee 615.9
assistant 616.6
advance man 704.25
doer 726.1
salesman 730.3
transformer 852.5
substitute 862.2
author 886.4
operator 889.4
element 1060.2
agent provocateur
shill 357.5
instigator 375.11
age-old 842.10
ages 827.4
agglomeration
accumulation 770.9
joining 800.1
cohesion 803.1
conglomeration 803.5
combination 805.1
agglutination
addition 253.1
joining 800.1
cohesion 803.1
densification 1045.3
agglutinative 803.10
aggrandize
increase 251.4
enlarge 259.4
exaggerate 355.3
promote 446.2
glorify 662.13
aggravate annoy 96.13
irritate 96.14
vex 98.15
worsen 119.2
provoke 152.24
intensify 251.5
impair 393.9
sow dissension 456.14
antagonize 589.7
aggravating
annoying 98.22
exasperating 119.5
aggravation annoyance 96.2
irritation 96.3
vexatiousness 98.7
excitation 105.11
worsening 119.1
increase 119.1
resentment 152.1
intensification 251.2
adversity 1011.1
aggregate
n accumulation 770.9
sum 1017.6
v math term 253.2
assemble 770.18
total 792.8
adj assembled 770.21
whole 792.9
aggregation
accumulation 770.9
joining 800.1
combination 805.1
aggression
enterprise 330.7
warlikeness 458.11
attack 459.1
aggressive energetic 17.13
enterprising 330.23
partisan 456.17
warlike 458.21
offensive 459.30
gruff 505.7
aggressor 459.12
aggrieve pain 96.17
oppress 112.19
offend 152.21
work evil 1000.6
aghast
wondering 122.9
terrified 127.26
agile fast 174.15
quick 330.18
alert 339.14
nimble 413.23
agility quickness 330.3
alertness 339.5
nimbleness 413.2
aging
n maturation 303.6
adj growing old 303.17
agitated
distressed 96.22
perturbed 105.23
anxious 126.7
jittery 128.12
bustling 330.20
disturbed 917.16
agitation
perturbation 105.4
excitation 105.11
anxiety 126.1
trepidation 127.5
nervousness 128.1
bustle 330.4
incitement 375.4
turbulence 671.2
violence 917
stimulation 917.1
agitator rebel 327.5
instigator 375.11
troublemaker 593.2
mixer 797.9
shaker 917.9
agitprop
instigator 375.11
propaganda 569.2
aglow burning 1019.27
luminous 1025.30
illuminated 1025.39
agnate
n kinfolk 559.2
lineage 560.4
adj related 559.6
lineal 560.18
kindred 775.10
akin 784.13
agnostic
n skeptic 695.12
adj skeptic 695.20
absurdist 952.11
doubting 955.9
uncertain 971.16
ago
adj past 837.7
adv since 837.15
agog eager 101.8
excited 105.20
wondering 122.9
expectant 130.11
curious 981.5
attentive 983.15
agonize pain 26.7
suffer 26.8
torture 96.18
cause upleasantness 96.19
excruciate 98.12
grieve 112.17
struggle 725.11
be uncertain 971.9
agony anguish 26.6
wretchedness 96.6
harshness 98.4
sorrow 112.10
moribundity 307.9
agrarian rustic 233.6
agricultural 1069.20
agree be willing 324.3
assent 332.8
concur 332.9
come to an agreement 332.10
contract 437.5
get along 455.2
relate to 775.5
be the same 778.4
accord 788.6
coincide 836.4
collaborate 899.2
agreeable tasty 63.8
pleasant 97.6
desirable 100.30
acceptable 107.12
good-natured 143.14
considerate 143.16
willing 324.5
indulgent 427.8
submissive 433.12
consenting 441.4
in accord 455.3
courteous 504.14
welcome 585.12
friendly 587.15
melodious 708.48
agreeing 788.9
comely 1016.19
agreed
adj assenting 332.13
contracted 437.11
supposed 951.14
interj so be it 332.20
agreement assent 332.1
unanimity 332.5
obligation 436.2
compact 437.1
consent 441.1
harmony 455.1
sameness 778.1
similarity 784.1
accord 788.1
understanding 788.2
combination 805.1
simultaneity 836.1
conformity 867.1
concurrence 899.1
agree to assent 332.8
commit 436.5

  contract 437.5
  consent 441.2
  strike a bargain 731.19
agree with
  make for health 81.4
  assent 332.8
  concur 332.9
  come to an agreement 332.10
  get along 455.2
  relate to 775.5
  conform 867.3
agricultural
  rustic 233.6
  agrarian 1069.20
agricultural engineering 1043.1
agriculturalist 1069.5
agriculture
  farming 1069.1
  working the land 1069.1
agronomic 1069.20
agronomist 1069.5
agronomy 1069.1
aground
  adj stuck 855.16
  stranded 1013.27
  adv on the rocks 182.73
ague symptom 85.9
  shaking 917.2
aguey 1023.16
ah! 122.20
aha! 509.22
ahead
  v initiate 818.10
  adj front 216.10
  superior 249.12
  adv forward 162.8
  before 216.12
  early 845.11
ahead of time
  adj anachronous 833.3
  adv early 845.11
ahimsa peaceableness 464.4
  moderation 670.1
ahoy! greeting 585.16
  hey! 983.23
aid
  n remedy 86.1
  support 449.1
  help 449.1
  subsidy 478.8
  benefactor 592.1
  assistant 616.6
  backing 901.1
  v advance 162.5
  help 449.11
  subsidize 478.19
  benefit 592.3
  facilitate 1014.7
aid and abet
  encourage 375.21
  abet 449.14
aid and comfort 121.4
aide
  commissioned officer 575.18
  assistant 616.6
aidless 19.18
ail pain 26.8
  suffer 85.46
  trouble 1013.13
ailing 85.56
ailment 85.1
aim
  n direction 161.1
  motive 375.1
  intention 380.1
  objective 380.2
  meaning 518.2
  v direct 161.5
  head for 161.7
  intend 380.4
  endeavor 403.5
aim at desire 100.14
  direct 161.5
  intend 380.4
  pull the trigger 459.22
aimless useless 391.9
  meaningless 520.6
  discursive 538.13
  unordered 810.12
  purposeless 972.16
aim to 403.8
air
  n looks 33.4
  milieu 209.3
  lightness 298.2
  ether 317.1
  atmosphere 317.2
  breeze 318.5
  behavior 321.1
  aria 708.4
  spirit 764.3
  gas 1067.2
  the heavens 1072.2
  v air out 317.11
  divulge 351.5
  publish 352.10
  make public 352.11
  flaunt 501.17
  discuss 541.12
  race 757.5
air a grievance 115.15
airborne 184.50
air-built thin 764.6
  chimeric 986.22
airburst 1074.9
air conditioner 1024.3
air conditioner 317.10
air conditioning
  ventilation 317.9
  refrigeration 1024.1
air corps 461.29
aircraft vehicle 179.1
  air travel mode 181
  airplane 181.1
  internal-combustion 1043.3
aircraft carrier 180.8
aircrew 185.4
air-cushion vehicle
  hovercraft 179.22
  flying platform 181.7
airdrop 184.9
air duct 239.13
airfield 184.22
Air Force
  service branch 461.21
  air corps 461.29
air force
  military aircraft 181.9
  aeronautical organization 184.7
  combat pilot 185.3
airfreight
  n transportation 176.3
  air travel 184.10
  v send 176.15
airhead
  vanguard 216.2
  fool 924.4
air hole
  atmosphere 184.32
  air passage 239.13
airing ride 177.7
  walk 177.10
  ventilation 317.9
  publication 352.1
  discussion 541.7
air lane airway 184.33
  route 383.1
airless 173.16
airlift
  n transportation 176.3
  flight 184.9
  v fly 184.36
airline 184.10
air line airway 184.33
  shortcut 268.5
  straight line 277.2
air lock entrance 189.5
  floodgate 239.11
airmail send 176.15
  mail 553.12
airman 185.1
air mass
  atmosphere 317.2
  weather map 317.4
air out air 317.11
  flee 368.11
airplane
  n aircraft 181.1
  v fly 184.36
airplay repute 662.1
  radio broadcasting 1034.16
air pocket 184.32
air pollution
  unhealthfulness 82.1
  miasma 1001.4
  powder 1051.5
  environmental destruction 1073.2
airport airfield 184.22
  destination 186.5
air pressure 317.4
air raid
  Air Force mission 184.11
  raid 459.4
air route 184.33
airs contempt 157.1
  affectation 500.1
  pretensions 501.2
air shaft 239.13
airship 181.11
air shuttle 184.10
airsick nauseated 85.57
  aviation 184.49
air space room 158.1
  open space 158.4
  region 231.1
  plot 231.4
air strike 459.4
airstrip 184.23
airtight resistant 15.20
  close 293.12
air-traffic control 184.1
air-traffic controller
  aviation 184.1
  radar technician 1036.14
airward 272.21
airway air lane 184.33
  air passage 239.13
airworthy
  aviation 184.49
  snug 1007.7
airy
  lighthearted 109.12
  thin 270.16
  high 272.14
  light 298.10
  rare 299.4
  atmospheric 317.12
  windy 318.22
  careless 340.11
  unsubstantial 764.6
  illusory 976.9
  visionary 986.24
  trivial 998.19
  immaterial 1053.7
  vaporous 1067.9
aisle passageway 383.3
  church interior 703.9
ait 235.2
ajar clashing 61.5
  gaping 292.18
akimbo 278.6
akin in accord 455.3
  related 559.6
  kindred 775.10
  affinitive 784.13
alabaster
  n whiteness 37.2
  smoothness 287.3
  adj whitish 37.8
à la carte 8.11
alack 98.31
alacrity
  eagerness 101.1
  willingness 324.1
  quickness 330.3
  hastiness 401.2
  promptness 845.3
Aladdin's lamp 691.6
à la mode
  stylish 578.12
  fashionably 578.17
  modern 841.13
alarm
  n fear 127.1
  warning 399.1
  danger signal 400.1
  red light 400.1
  signal 517.15
  call 517.16
  v frighten 127.15
  alert 400.3
alarm clock 400.1
alarming
  frightening 127.28
  dangerous 1006.9
alarmist 127.8
alas 98.31
albeit 338.8
albinism
  faulty eyesight 28.1
  whiteness 37.1

albino
n whiteness 37.1
adj albinic 37.10
album
record book 549.11
compilation 554.7
albumen egg 305.15
semiliquid 1062.5
albuminous 305.23
alchemist 690.5
alchemy sorcery 690.1
conversion 858.1
alcohol sedative 86.12
spirits 88.13
antifreeze 1024.8
alcoholic
n addict 87.21
drinker 88.11
adj spirituous 88.37
alcoholism
substance abuse 87.1
dipsomania 88.3
alcove nook 197.3
summerhouse 228.12
recess 284.7
alderman
public official 575.17
legislator 610.3
aleatory
musical 708.47
circumstantial 766.7
unessential 768.4
vague 971.19
chance 972.15
hazardous 1006.10
alee leeward 182.68
downwind 218.9
alehouse 88.20
alert
n warning sign 399.3
alarm 400.1
v warn 399.5
alarm 400.3
tip off 551.11
adj awake 23.8
wary 339.14
prepared 405.16
prompt 845.9
clear-witted 920.13
curious 981.5
attentive 983.15
alfresco
outdoor 206.8
exterior 206.11
airy 317.12
algae 310.4
algebraic 1017.22
algebraic operation 1017.2
algesia 26.4
algid
cold 1023.14
frigid 1023.16
algorithm
mathematics 1017.1
Arabic numerals 1017.4
alias
n pseudonym 527.8
adj nominal 527.15
adv otherwise 780.11
alibi
n pretext 376.1
justification 600.4
v excuse 600.11
alien
n exclusiveness 773.3
stranger 774.3
oddity 870.4
astronaut 1075.8
v transfer 629.3
adj extraterritorial 206.9
oppositional 451.8
extraneous 774.5
unrelated 776.6
extraterrestrial 1072.26
alienate
sow dissension 456.14
antagonize 589.7
transfer 629.3
separate 802.8
indoctrinate 858.15
alienation
defense mechanism 92.23
dissent 333.1
falling-out 456.4
disaccord 589.2
transfer 629.1
extraneousness 774.1
separation 802.1
indoctrination 858.5
aloneness 872.2
insanity 926.1
alight
v land 184.43
arrive 186.8
light upon 194.7
adj burning 1019.27
illuminated 1025.39
alight upon
light upon 194.10
meet 223.11
come across 941.3
align level 201.6
parallelize 203.5
dispose 808.9
line 812.5
alignment
orientation 161.4
parallelism 203.1
affiliation 450.2
align oneself with
back 449.13
side with 450.4
alike identical 778.7
congruent 778.9
uniform 781.5
similar 784.10
equal 790.7
indistinguishable 945.6
alimentary 7.21
alimentation
nutrition 7.1
food 10.3
alimony 478.8
aliquot 1017.23
alive living 306.13
active 330.17
alert 339.14
clear-witted 920.13
remembered 989.23
alive and kicking
healthy 83.9
living 306.13
alive to sensible 24.11
cognizant of 928.16
alkali
n acid 1060.3
adj chemical 1060.9
alkali metal 1060.1
alkaline-earth element 1060.1
alkalinity 1060.3
alkalizer 86.25
all
n the whole 792.3
limit 794.5
everyone 864.4
universe 1072.1
adj whole 792.9
every 864.15
adv wholly 792.13
the all 823.1
all aboard 182.62
all-absorbing 997.24
Allah 677.2
all along 829.11
all and sundry
n all 792.3
adj every 864.15
all around
handy 387.20
versatile 413.25
all-around event 755.2
all at once
together 769.11
abruptly 830.8
suddenly 830.9
allay gratify 95.8
relieve 120.5
pacify 465.7
moderate 670.6
satiate 994.4
all but nearly 223.22
on the whole 792.14
all clear
n alarm 400.1
adj unindebted 624.23
interj all's well! 1007.9
all-consuming 395.27
all creation 1072.1
all ears listening 48.14
vigilant 339.13
attentive 983.15
allegation
affirmation 334.1
claim 376.2
remark 524.3
declaration 598.7
accusation 599.1
testimony 957.2
allege affirm 334.5
pretext 376.3
state 524.23
accuse 599.7
testify 957.9
adduce 957.12
alleged affirmed 334.9
pretexted 376.5
attributable 888.6
supposed 951.14
allegiance
obedience or obediency 326.1
duty 641.1
fidelity 644.7
allegorical
meaningful 518.10
symbolic 519.10
fictional 722.7
allegorist 341.7
allegory symbol 517.2
implication 519.2
similarity 784.1
comparison 943.1
allegro
n music 708.25
adv actively 330.25
music 708.55
alleluia
n cheer 116.2
paean 696.3
interj hallelujah! 696.17
all-embracing
whole 792.9
thorough 794.10
universal 864.14
allergen allergy 85.34
antitoxin 86.27
allergic sensitive 24.12
anemic 85.61
averse 99.8
allergy sensitivity 24.3
allergic disorder 85.34
hostility 99.2
alleviate relieve 120.5
abate 252.8
lighten 298.6
moderate 670.6
alleviation relief 120.1
decrease 252.1
lightening 298.3
modulation 670.2
alleviative
n palliative 86.10
moderator 670.3
adj palliative 86.40
relieving 120.9
lightening 298.16
sedative 670.16
alley
passageway 383.3
tennis 748.1
field hockey 749.4
bowling 750.1
all eyes and ears
vigilant 339.13
attentive 983.15
all for
adj favorable 449.22
prep in favor of 509.21
all fours 177.17
alliance treaty 437.2
affiliation 450.2
blood relationship 559.1
marriage 563.1
association 617.1
relation 775.1
similarity 784.1
combination 805.1
concurrence 899.1
allied akin 559.6
related 775.9
joined 800.13
leagued 805.6
alligator 311.25
all in 21.8

all in all
on the average 246.5
on the whole 792.14
generally 864.17
all-inclusive
comprehensive 772.7
whole 792.9
infinite 823.3
universal 864.14
all in the mind
illusory 976.9
imaginary 986.19
alliteration
rhyme 720.8
assonance 784.6
repetitiousness 849.4
alliterative
rhyming 720.17
assonant 784.17
monotonous 849.15
all-knowing
almighty 677.17
knowing 928.15
allocate locate 159.11
allot 477.9
dispose 808.9
allocation
placement 159.6
allotment 477.3
arrangement 808.1
specification 865.6
allocution 543.2
all of a sudden
short 268.13
suddenly 830.9
all off ended 820.8
erroneous 975.16
all one's got 403.4
allopathic 90.15
allot quantify 244.4
lot 477.9
give 478.12
dispose 808.9
allotment rations 10.6
amount 244.2
assignment 477.3
portion 477.5
subsidy 478.8
arrangement 808.1
allottee 479.4
all out
at full speed 174.20
extremely 247.22
actively 330.25
utterly 794.16
thorough 794.10
unqualified 960.2
to excess 993.23
allover 864.14
all over
adj ended 820.8
adv everywhere 158.13
throughout 794.17
in disorder 810.17
universally 864.18
prep over 159.28
all over the place
adj dispersed 771.9
adv everywhere 158.13
in every direction 161.25
in disorder 810.17
all over with
completed 407.11
no more 762.11
allow
acknowledge 332.11
permit 443.9
give 478.12
discount 631.2
judge 946.8
qualify 959.5
allowable
permissible 443.15
giveable 478.23
justifiable 600.14
allowance
n rations 10.6
acknowledgment 332.3
permission 443.1
portion 477.5
subsidy 478.8
extenuation 600.5
fee 624.5
discount 631.1
qualification 959.1
inaccuracy 975.2
v budget 477.10
allowed
accepted 332.14
permitted 443.16
given 478.24
allow for
condone 148.4
extenuate 600.12
make allowance for 959.5
alloy
n compound 797.5
amalgam 1058.4
v corrupt 393.12
mix 797.10
all-pervading
thorough 794.10
universal 864.14
all points bulletin 382.1
all-powerful
omnipotent 18.13
almighty 677.17
all-presence 221.2
all right
adj well 83.10
acceptable 107.12
accurate 973.16
tolerable 999.20
interj congratulations! 149.5
yes 332.18
all round
everywhere 158.13
in every direction 161.25
all about 209.13
all said and done 407.11
all-seeing 677.18
all set 405.16
all sorts 797.6
all sorts of 884.3
all the better for 392.14
all the more 249.17
all there 925.4
all the same
adj identical 778.7
equivalent 790.8
adv notwithstanding 338.8
all the time
regularly 781.8
always 829.11
constantly 847.7
all the way
through thick and thin 360.10
utterly 794.16
to the end 820.13
all the worse for 393.27
all things considered
on the average 246.5
generally 864.17
on the whole 946.17
all through over 159.28
through 161.27
all thumbs 414.20
all together
unanimously 332.17
jointly 800.18
at once 830.8
simultaneously 836.7
allude to
designate 517.18
imply 519.4
remark 524.24
hint 551.10
call attention to 983.10
allurement
loveableness 104.7
inducement 375.3
enticement 377.1
allure 377.1
attraction 907.1
alluring
provocative 375.27
fascinating 377.8
attracting 907.5
allusion 519.2
allusive
suggestive 519.6
figurative 536.3
allusory 519.6
alluvium deposit 176.9
land 234.1
overflow 238.6
dregs 256.2
all wet 975.18
ally
n country 232.1
associate 616.1
v cooperate 450.3
come together 770.16
relate 775.6
league 805.4
alma mater 567.5
almanac reference book 554.9
The Old Farmer's Almanac 832.7
calendar 832.8
dictionary 871.4
almighty
adj powerful 18.13
omnipotent 677.17
adv very 247.18
almost 223.22
alms act of kindness 143.7
donation 478.6
almsgiver
philanthropist 143.8
giver 478.11
almshouse 1009.4
almsman
beneficiary 479.4
poor man 619.4
aloft on board 182.62
on high 272.21
aloha
n leave-taking 188.4
interj farewell! 188.22
greetings! 585.15
alone
adj secluded 584.11
solitary 872.8
sole 872.9
adv independently 430.33
simply 798.11
singly 872.13
along
v walk 177.27
adv forward 162.8
lengthwise 267.11
alongside
adj side 218.6
adv board and board 182.70
in parallel 203.7
aside 218.10
prep beside 218.11
along with also 253.13
with 769.12
aloof
adj apathetic 94.13
unsociable 141.12
reticent 344.10
standoffish 583.6
incoherent 804.4
alone 872.8
incurious 982.3
adv at a distance 261.14
on high 272.21
aloofness 261.1
aloud audibly 50.18
loudly 53.14
alp 237.6
alpen 272.18
alpha beginning 818.1
first 818.3
alphabet
n representation 349.1
symbols 546.3
writing 547.1
letter 547.9
basics 818.6
v letter 546.6
alphabetic
literal 546.8
ideographic 547.26
alphabetical order 807.2
alphabetize letter 546.6
classify 809.6
alpine highland 237.8
hilly 272.18
alpinist traveler 178.1
climber 193.6
already
previously 834.6
until now 838.4
alright 107.12
also
adv additionally 253.11
conj and 253.13
also known as 527.15

also-ran failure 410.8
  loser 412.5
  candidate 610.9
  jockey 757.2
altar 703.12
altarpiece altar 703.12
  picture 712.11
alter
  n self 865.5
  v castrate 255.11
  be changed 852.6
  change 852.7
  qualify 959.3
alterable 854.6
alteration
  differentiation 780.4
  change 852.1
altercation
  quarrel 456.5
  contention 457.1
alter ego deputy 576.1
  friend 588.1
  right-hand man 616.7
  likeness 784.3
  self 865.5
alterer 852.5
alternate
  n deputy 576.1
  substitute 862.2
  v vacillate 362.8
  take one's turn 825.5
  recur 850.5
  change 854.5
  interchange 863.4
  reciprocate 916.13
  adj periodic 850.7
  substitute 862.8
  reciprocal 916.19
alternating 854.7
alternation
  interaction 777.3
  periodicity 850.2
  changing 854.3
  interchange 863.1
  reciprocation 916.5
alternative
  n loophole 369.4
  option 371.2
  substitute 862.2
  adj elective 371.22
  substitute 862.8
alternative energy 17.1
alternative medicine
  practice of medicine 90.13
  unconventionality 868.2
although 338.8
altimeter 272.9
altitude
  height 272.1
  coordinates 300.5
alto
  n high voice 58.6
  part 708.22
  harmonics 709.5
  adj high 58.13
  vocal 708.50
altogether
  additionally 253.11
  wholly 792.13
  completely 794.14
  generally 864.17
the altogether 6.3
alto-rilievo
  protuberance 283.2
  relief 715.3
altruism
  benevolence 143.4
  public spirit 591.1
  unselfishness 652.1
altruist 143.8
altruistic
  benevolent 143.15
  unselfish 652.5
alum 260.6
alumna 572.8
alumnus 572.8
alveolar
  indented 284.17
  phonetic 524.30
alveolus
  cavity 284.2
  indentation 284.6
  speech organ 524.18
always regularly 781.8
  all along 829.11
  constantly 847.7
  permanently 853.9
  universally 864.18
Alzheimer's disease 85.25
AM morning 314.1
  modulation 1034.14
amalgam
  compound 797.5
  alloy 1058.4
amalgamate
  cooperate 450.3
  mix 797.10
  combine 805.3
amalgamation
  affiliation 450.2
  mixture 797.1
  combination 805.1
amanuensis
  writer 547.13
  recorder 550.1
  agent 576.3
amass store up 386.11
  collect 472.11
  assemble 770.18
  put together 800.5
amassed stored 386.14
  assembled 770.21
amateur
  n enthusiast 101.4
  connoisseur 496.7
  nonprofessional 726.5
  specialist 866.3
  dilettante 929.6
  trifler 998.10
  adj avocational 724.17
  half-learned 930.15
amateurish
  unskilled 414.16
  half-learned 930.15
amateurism
  inexperience 414.2
  avocation 724.7
  nonprofessionalism 724.9
  slight knowledge 930.6
amatory
  amorous 104.26
  lovemaking 562.23
amaze
  n wonder 122.1
  v astonish 122.6
  perplex 971.13
amazement
  wonder 122.1
  marvel 122.2
amazing 122.12
amazon
  mannish female 76.9
  giantess 257.13
Amazon 461.6
ambages
  convolution 281.1
  circumlocution 538.5
  detour 914.3
ambassador 576.6
ambergris 70.2
ambidextrous
  ambidextral 219.6
  falsehearted 354.31
  versatile 413.25
  treacherous 645.21
ambience
  environment 209.1
  milieu 209.3
ambiguity
  unintelligibility 522.1
  complexity of meaning 539.1
  gray area 539.1
  equivoque 539.2
  self-contradiction 779.3
  inconsistency 789.2
  doubleness 873.1
  equivocalness 971.5
ambiguous
  unintelligible 522.13
  equivocal 539.4
  self-contradictory 779.8
  mixed 797.14
  uncertain 971.16
ambition
  ambitiousness 100.10
  desire 100.11
  motive 375.1
  intention 380.1
ambitious
  aspiring 100.28
  agressive 330.23
  enterprising 404.8
  ostentatious 501.18
ambivalence
  psychological stress 92.17
  irresolution 362.1
  self-contradiction 779.3
  inconsistency 789.2
  doubleness 873.1
ambivalent
  irresolute 362.9
  self-contradictory 779.8
  mixed 797.14
amble
  n walk 177.10
  gait 177.12
  v go slowly 175.6
  stride 177.28
  go on horseback 177.34
amblyopia 28.2
ambrosia
  delicacy 10.8
  sweetening 66.2
  perfumery 70.2
ambulance chaser 597.3
ambulate 177.27
ambulatory
  n passageway 383.3
  adj traveling 177.36
ambush
  n trap 346.3
  v surprise 131.7
  ambuscade 346.10
  attack 459.14
ameliorate
  improve 392.7
  make better 392.9
  be changed 852.6
  change 852.7
amelioration
  improvement 392.1
  change 852.1
amen
  n affirmative 332.2
  v ratify 332.12
  adv right! 973.24
  interj yes 332.18
  so be it 332.20
amenable
  resigned 134.10
  willing 324.5
  consenting 441.4
  responsible 641.17
  influenceable 894.15
amend improve 392.7
  make better 392.9
  revise 392.12
  remedy 396.13
  re-form 858.12
amendment
  improvement 392.1
  revision 392.4
  new start 858.2
amends
  compensation 338.1
  reparation 396.6
  restitution 481.2
  recompense 624.3
  atonement 658.1
amenities
  creature comforts 121.3
  courtesies 504.7
  etiquette 580.3
amenity
  pleasantness 97.1
  facility 449.9
  polite act 504.1
  courtesy 504.6
amentia 922.9
America
  world region 231.6
  United States 232.3
American Indian 312.3
Americanism
  language 523.8
  patriotism 591.2
Americanize 226.4
American Sign Language 523.12
amiable pleasant 97.6
  good-natured 143.14
  indulgent 427.8
  sociable 582.22
  hospitable 585.11

friendly 587.15
amicable pleasant 97.6
favorable 449.22
in accord 455.3
friendly 587.15
amicus curiae
deputy 576.1
lawyer 597.1
favor 894.2
amid between 213.12
among 797.17
amidships
adj middle 819.4
adv midway 819.5
amidst between 213.12
among 797.17
amigo 588.3
amino acid 7.6
amiss
adj disorderly 810.13
erroneous 975.16
adv irrelevantly 776.9
astray 911.7
erroneously 975.20
badly 1000.13
amity accord 455.1
friendship 587.1
ammonia
fertilizer 890.4
coolant 1024.7
ammunition 462.13
amnesia trance 92.19
thoughtlessness 933.1
loss of memory 990.2
amnesty
n pardon 148.2
peace treaty 464.7
peace offer 465.2
exemption 601.2
v forgive 148.3
acquit 601.4
amoeba 85.42
amoebic 258.15
amok
n frenzy 926.7
adj frenzied 105.25
rabid 926.30
among
v include 772.3
prep at 159.27
between 213.12
amongst 797.17
amor 104.9
Amor love god 104.1
deity 104.8
amoral
dishonest 645.16
vice-prone 654.11
amorality
unmorality 636.4
vice 654.1
amorous sexual 75.25
amatory 104.26
amorphous
formless 263.4
obscure 522.15
unordered 810.12
inconstant 854.7
abnormal 870.9
vague 971.19
amortization
payment 624.1
transfer 629.1
amount count 244.1
quantity 244.2
degree 245.1
price 630.1
sum 1017.6
amount to cost 630.13
equal 790.5
total 792.8
amour 104.6
amperage power 18.1
current 1032.2
amphibian
n seaplane 181.8
plant 310.3
creature 311.3
batrachian 311.27
adj reptile 311.48
amphibious
versatile 413.25
mixed 797.14
amphitheater
hall 197.4
arena 463.1
schoolroom 567.11
theater 704.14
ample
satisfactory 107.11
spacious 158.11
much 247.8
voluminous 257.17
broad 269.6
abundant 884.8
sufficient 991.6
plentiful 991.7
amplification
aggravation 119.1
increase 251.1
expansion 259.1
translation 341.3
exaggeration 355.1
expatiation 538.6
evolution 861.1
radio-frequency amplification 1034.15
amplifier
listening device 48.8
audio 50.10
amplify
aggravate 119.2
increase 251.4
enlarge 259.4
exaggerate 355.3
expatiate 538.7
elaborate 861.6
electrify 1032.26
amplitude sound 50.1
loudness 53.1
spaciousness 158.5
quantity 244.1
greatness 247.1
size 257.1
breadth 269.1
wordiness 538.2
fullness 794.2
wave 916.4
plenty 991.2
amputate
excise 255.10
sever 802.11
amputation 255.3
amputee 85.45
amulet 691.5
amusement
pleasure 95.1
merriment 109.5
diversion 743.1
entertainment 743.1
amusing
humorous 488.4
witty 489.15
entertaining 743.27
ana archives 549.2
compilation 554.7
excerpts 557.4
collection 770.11
maxim 974.1
anabolism
body function 2.20
metabolism 7.12
transformation 852.3
anachronism
false estimation of time 833
chronological error 833.1
anachronistic 833.3
anaerobe 85.42
anagram
wordplay 489.8
riddle 522.9
anal retentive 474.8
overfastidious 495.12
conformist 867.6
analects
compilation 554.7
excerpts 557.4
maxim 974.1
analeptic
n remedy 86.1
tonic 86.8
adj refreshing 9.3
remedial 86.39
tonic 86.44
restorative 396.22
analgesic
n anesthetic 25.3
sedative 86.12
adj deadening 25.9
sedative 86.45
relieving 120.9
analogy
parallelism 203.1
similarity 784.1
substitute 862.2
comparison 943.1
analysis
psychoanalysis 92.6
discussion 541.7
commentary 556.2
circumstantiation 766.5
differentiation 780.4
simplification 798.2
breaking down 801.1
analyzation 801.1
dissection 802.5
classification 809.1
reasoning 935.3
inquiry 938.1
discernment 944.2
theory 951.1
automation 1041.7
analyst
psychologist 92.10
critic 723.4
analyzer 801.5
experimenter 942.6
analytic
schematic 801.9
reasoning 935.18
dialectic 935.22
examining 938.37
absurdist 952.11
mathematical 1017.22
analyze
grammaticize 530.16
discuss 541.12
criticize 723.5
itemize 766.6
differentiate 780.6
diversify 782.2
separate 793.6
simplify 798.4
break down 801.6
dissect 802.17
classify 809.6
reason 935.15
discriminate 944.4
anaphylactic 24.12
anaphylaxis 24.3
anarchic
formless 263.4
lawless 418.6
turbulent 671.18
unruly 671.19
illegal 674.6
incoherent 804.4
confused 810.16
revolutionist 860.6
anarchist
law-breaker 418.3
radical 611.12
revolutionist 860.3
anarchy
formlessness 263.1
lawlessness 418.2
illegality 674.1
noncohesion 804.1
confusion 810.2
anathema
hated thing 103.3
censure 510.3
curse 513.1
anathematize
censure 510.13
curse 513.5
condemn 602.3
anatomical 266.6
anatomize
itemize 766.6
differentiate 780.6
analyze 801.6
dissect 802.17
anatomy body 2.1
human form 262.4
structure 266.1
anthropology 312.10
analysis 801.1
dissection 802.5
physical being 1052.3
ancestor parent 560.8
precursor 816.1
antecedent 834.2

- **ancestral**
  - parental 560.17
  - beginning 818.15
  - primitive 842.11
- **ancestry** blood relationship 559.1
  - kinfolk 559.2
  - progenitorship 560.1
  - genealogy 560.5
  - nobility 608.2
- **anchor**
  - *n* mooring 180.16
  - safeguard 1008.3
  - broadcaster 1034.23
  - television broadcast 1035.2
  - *v* settle 159.17
  - moor 182.15
  - land 186.8
  - bind 428.10
  - fasten 800.7
  - secure 855.8
- **anchorage**
  - establishment 159.7
  - ship 180.16
  - destination 186.5
  - fee 630.6
  - harbor 1009.6
- **anchorite**
  - recluse 584.5
  - ascetic 667.2
- **anchorman or anchorwoman** 1034.23
- **ancient**
  - *n* man of old 842.7
  - *adj* aged 303.16
  - durable 827.10
  - former 837.10
  - old 842.10
- **ancient history** 837.3
- **ancillary**
  - additional 253.10
  - helping 449.20
- **and** 253.13
- **andante**
  - *n* slow motion 175.2
  - music 708.25
  - *adj* music 708.54
- **andiron** 1020.12
- **and/or** 371.29
- **andric** 76.12
- **androgynous** 75.31
- **androgyny**
  - intersexuality 75.12
  - effeminacy 77.2
- **and so forth** 253.14
- **anecdotal** 722.8
- **anecdote** 719.3
- **anemia** weakness 16.1
  - paleness 36.2
  - symptom 85.9
- **anemic** weak 16.12
  - colorless 36.7
  - chlorotic 85.61
- **anemometer**
  - speedometer 174.7
  - weather vane 318.17
- **anent** 775.13
- **anesthesia**
  - insensibility 25.1
  - unfeeling 94.1
  - numb 94.2
  - relief 120.1
- **anesthesiologist** 90.4
- **anesthetic**
  - *n* sleep-inducer 22.10
  - general anesthetic 25.3
  - drug 86.15
  - *adj* deadening 25.9
  - remedy 86.47
  - relieving 120.9
- **anesthetist** 90.11
- **anesthetize**
  - put to sleep 22.20
  - deaden 25.4
  - numb 94.8
  - relieve 120.5
- **anew** newly 841.15
  - repeated 849.17
  - again 874.7
- **angel**
  - *n* ladylove 104.15
- **angel** defender 460.7
  - giver 478.11
  - endearment term 562.6
  - benefactor 592.1
  - supporter 616.9
  - innocent 657.4
  - holy man 659.6
  - familiar spirit 678.12
  - celestial being 679.1
  - heaven figure 679.1
  - patron 704.26
  - financer 729.10
  - beauty 1016.9
  - *v* subsidize 478.19
  - finance 729.16
- **angelic**
  - endearing 104.25
  - virtuous 653.6
  - innocent 657.6
  - seraphic 679.6
  - godly 692.9
- **anger**
  - *n* darkness 38.2
  - ill humor 110.1
  - vexation 152.1
  - wrath 152.5
  - violence 671.1
  - heat metaphor 1019.2
  - *v* lose one's temper 152.17
  - make angry 152.22
  - heat 1020.18
- **angina** 26.5
- **angioplasty** 85.19
- **angle**
  - *n* viewpoint 27.7
  - aspect 33.3
  - station 159.2
  - point 278.2
  - partiality 650.3
  - plot 722.4
  - cheating 759.13
  - particular 766.3
  - outlook 978.2
  - *v* deviate 164.3
  - oblique 204.9
  - go sideways 218.5
  - crook 278.5
  - plot 381.9
  - fish 382.10
  - maneuver 415.10
  - favor 650.8
- **angle for** solicit 440.14
  - seek 938.30
- **angler** 382.6
- **Anglicism**
  - language 523.8
  - patriotism 591.2
- **Anglicize** 226.4
- **angry** sore 26.11
  - dark 38.9
  - annoyed 96.21
  - out of humor 110.17
  - angered 152.28
  - stormy 318.23
  - turbulent 671.18
- **angst** unpleasure 96.1
  - anxiety 126.1
- **anguish**
  - *n* agony 26.6
  - unpleasure 96.1
  - wretchedness 96.6
  - sorrow 112.10
  - *v* feel discomfort 26.8
  - pain 96.17
  - suffer 96.19
  - aggrieve 112.19
- **angularity**
  - inclination 204.2
  - having sharp angles 278
  - crookedness 278.1
- **anhydrous** 1066.7
- **anima** psyche 92.28
  - life force 306.3
  - mind 919.4
- **animadversion** 510.4
- **animal**
  - *n* beast 144.14
  - creature 311.2
  - barbarian 497.7
  - savage 593.5
  - bad person 660.6
  - glutton 672.3
  - *adj* cruel 144.26
  - animalian 311.40
  - unrefined 497.12
  - carnal 663.6
  - lascivious 665.29
- **animal enclosure** 1070.5
- **animal husbandry**
  - rearing 1070.1
  - animal culture 1070.1
- **animalistic**
  - cruel 144.26
  - animal 311.40
  - carnal 663.6
  - absurdist 952.11
- **animality**
  - cruelty 144.11
  - animal life 311.1
  - unrefinement 497.3
  - carnality 663.2
  - lasciviousness 665.5
  - violence 671.1
- **animal kingdom**
  - animal life 311.1
  - race 559.4
  - hierarchy 809.4
  - biology 1068.1
- **animal magnetism** hypnotism 22.8
  - sex appeal 75.3
- **animal rights** 311.1
- **animal shelter** 228.19
- **animal sounds** 60
- **animal spirits**
  - gaiety 109.4
  - life 306.1
- **animal worship** 697.1
- **animate**
  - *n* gender 530.10
  - *v* refresh 9.2
  - energize 17.10
  - stimulate 105.13
  - cheer 109.7
  - vivify 306.11
  - motivate 375.12
  - inspire 375.20
  - impel 902.11
  - *adj* organic 305.17
  - living 306.13
- **animate being** 1052.4
- **animated** refreshed 9.4
  - energetic 17.13
  - eager 101.8
  - gay 109.14
  - living 306.13
  - active 330.17
  - moved 375.30
  - motion-picture 706.9
- **animation**
  - vivacity 17.4
  - energizing 17.8
  - eagerness 101.1
  - excitation 105.11
  - gaiety 109.4
  - life 306.1
  - vivification 306.7
  - liveliness 330.2
  - motivation 375.2
  - inspiration 375.9
  - motion pictures 706.1
- **animism**
  - animistic religion 675.6
  - paganism 688.4
  - immaterialism 1053.3
- **animosity**
  - bad feeling 93.7
  - enmity 103.2
  - bitterness 152.3
  - animus 589.4
- **animus** will 323.1
  - inspiration 375.9
  - intention 380.1
  - animosity 589.4
  - disposition 978.3
- **anion**
  - electrolysis 1032.25
  - element 1060.2
- **ankle**
  - *n* member 2.7
  - leg 177.14
  - joint 800.4
  - *v* walk 177.27
- **ankle-deep** deep 275.10
  - shallow 276.5
- **annalist** writer 547.15
  - genealogist 550.2
  - author 718.4
  - historian 719.4
  - chronologist 832.10
- **annals** record 549.1
  - history 719.1
  - chronicle 832.9

annealed
  tempered 1046.15
  toughened 1049.6
annex
  n addition 254.1
  adjunct 254.3
  v add 253.4
  take possession 472.10
  attach 480.20
  rob 482.16
  fasten 800.7
annexation
  addition 253.1
  adjunct 254.1
  attachment 480.5
  theft 482.1
  fastening 800.3
annihilate
  excise 255.10
  kill 308.13
  abolish 395.13
  destroy 395.14
  exterminate 762.7
  do away with 909.21
annihilation
  excision 255.3
  death 307.1
  extinction 395.6
anniversary 850.4
annotate
  comment upon 341.11
  criticize 946.14
annotation
  comment 341.5
  memorandum 549.4
announce
  herald 133.14
  affirm 334.5
  annunciate 352.12
  state 524.23
  report 552.11
  be prior 834.3
announcement
  affirmation 334.1
  communication 343.2
  annunciation 352.2
  information 551.1
announcer
  harbinger 133.5
  annunciator 353.3
  informant 551.5
  precursor 816.1
  broadcaster 1034.23
annoy irk 96.13
  vex 98.15
  excite 105.12
  aggravate 119.2
  provoke 152.24
annoyance
  displeasure 96.2
  vexatiousness 98.7
  aggravation 119.1
  resentment 152.1
  adversity 1011.1
  trouble 1013.3
annoying
  irritating 98.22
  aggravating 119.5
  troublesome 126.10
  difficult 1013.18
annual
  n plant 310.3
  report 549.7
  record book 549.11
  periodical 555.1
  adj momentary 850.8
annual holiday 850.4
annual report 549.7
annuity
  subsidy 478.8
  insurance 1008.4
annul abolish 395.13
  repeal 445.2
  neutralize 900.7
annular 280.11
annulment
  denial 335.2
  extinction 395.6
  divorce 566.1
  neutralization 900.2
annulus 280.2
annunciation
  affirmation 334.1
  announcement 352.2
anode 1032.8
anodic 1033.15
anodized 295.33
anodyne
  n anesthetic 25.3
  sedative 86.12
  relief 120.1
  moderator 670.3
  adj sedative 86.45
  relieving 120.9
  palliative 670.16
anoint medicate 91.25
  install 615.12
  minister 701.16
  oil 1056.8
anointment
  authority 417.12
  lubrication 1056.6
anomalous
  inconsistent 789.8
  abnormal 870.9
  eccentric 927.5
anomaly
  unfitness 789.3
  misfit 789.4
  abnormality 870.1
  oddity 870.5
  eccentricity 927.1
anomie 674.1
anon
  adj anonymous 528.3
  adv then 821.11
  in the future 839.9
  soon 845.16
anonymity
  privacy 345.2
  namelessness 528.1
  incognito 528.1
anonymous
  private 345.13
  anon 528.3
anorexia nervosa 270.6
  fasting 515.1
another
  n a different thing 780.3
  adj additional 253.10
  other 780.8
  fresh 841.8
answer
  n communication 343.1
  remark 524.3
  letter 553.2
  defense 600.2
  paean 696.3
  response 708.23
  equal 790.4
  reaction 903.1
  retort 939.1
  reply 939.1
  solution 940.1
  refutation 958.2
  expedient 995.2
  v communicate with 343.8
  avail 387.17
  reply 553.11
  defend 600.10
  reciprocate 777.7
  suit 788.8
  react 903.5
  make answer 939.4
  solve 940.2
  refute 958.5
  suffice 991.4
  expedite one's affair 995.3
answerable
  responsible 641.17
  agreeing 788.9
  liable 897.5
  solvable 940.3
answer for
  go for 349.10
  commit 436.5
  represent 576.14
  be responsible for 641.6
  take the responsibility 641.9
answering machine 549.1
ant 311.34
antacid
  n gastric antacid 86.25
  counteractant 900.3
  acid 1060.3
  adj antidotal 86.41
  neutralizing 900.9
antagonism
  hostility 99.2
  opposition 451.2
  warlikeness 458.11
  enmity 589.3
  contrariety 779.1
  disagreement 789.1
  counteraction 900.1
antagonist
  opponent 452.1
  enemy 589.6
  role 704.10
  actor 707.2
antagonize repel 99.6
  aggravate 119.2
  contend against 451.4
  set against 589.7
  counteract 900.6
ante
  n bet 759.3
  v pay over 624.15
  bet 759.25
ante-bellum 834.5
antecede
  precede 814.2
  be prior 834.3
antecedent
  n precursor 816.1
  precedent 834.2
  adj leading 165.3
  preceding 814.4
  previous 834.4
antecedents
  ancestors 560.7
  cause 886.1
antechamber 197.20
antedate
  n date 832.4
  previousness 834.1
  v date 832.13
  mistime 833.2
  be prior 834.3
antediluvian
  n ancient 842.7
  back number 842.8
  adj prewar 834.5
  antiquated 842.13
antelope
  swiftness 174.6
  hoofed animal 311.5
antemeridian 314.6
antenna whiskers 3.10
  feeler 73.4
  radio transmitter 1034.4
anterior front 216.10
  preceding 814.4
  previous 834.4
anteroom 197.20
anthem
  n paean 696.3
  sacred music 708.17
  v sing 708.38
anthill hill 237.4
  pile 770.10
anthology
  compilation 554.7
  excerpts 557.4
  book of verse 720.5
  collection 770.11
anthrax 85.41
anthropocentric 312.13
anthropoid
  n ancient 842.7
  adj manlike 312.14
anthropological 312.13
anthropology 312.10
anthropomorphic
  animal 311.40
  manlike 312.14
  religious 675.25
anti oppositional 451.8
  contrary 779.6
antibacterial cleansing 79.28
antibiotic
  n panacea 86.3
  miracle drug 86.29
  poison 1001.3
  adj antidotal 86.41
antibody blood 2.25
  immunity 83.4
  antitoxin 86.27
antic
  n prank 489.10
  v play 743.23
  adj gay 109.14
  fantastic 870.12
antichrist 695.10

anticipate expect 130.5
  be prior 834.3
  come 839.6
  foresee 845.6
  predict 961.5
  prevent 1012.14
anticipating
  pregnant 78.18
  expectant 130.11
anticipation
  expectation 130.1
  carefulness 339.1
  anachronism 833.1
  previousness 834.1
  the future 839.1
  earliness 845.1
  intuition 934.1
  foresight 961.1
anticipatory
  expectant 130.11
  previous 834.4
  future 839.8
  early 845.7
  foreseeing 961.7
anticlimax 488.3
anticoagulant 1064.4
antidepressant
  n drug 87.3
  adj psychochemical 86.46
antidotal 900.9
antidote
  counterpoison 86.26
  counteractant 900.3
antiestablishment 333.6
antifreeze
  n coolant 1024.8
  adj antifreezing 1024.15
antigen blood 2.25
  immunity 83.4
  antitoxin 86.27
antihero 704.10
antinomian
  n anarchist 418.3
  heretic 688.5
  adj anarchic 418.6
  unorthodox 688.9
antinomy
  self-contradiction 779.3
  inconsistency 789.2
antipasto 10.9
antipathetic
  oppositional 451.8
  hostile 589.10
  contrary 779.6
  disagreeing 789.6
  counteractive 900.8
antipathy
  dislike 99.2
  loathing 103.1
  hated thing 103.3
  refusal 325.1
  hostility 451.2
  enmity 589.3
  contrariety 779.1
  counteraction 900.1
antiphon paean 696.3
  response 708.23
  answer 939.1
antipodes
  opposites 215.2
  remote region 261.4
  poles 779.2
Antipodes 231.6
antipyretic
  n febrifuge 86.14
  adj antidotal 86.41
antiquarian
  n antiquary 842.5
  adj archaeological 842.20
antiquated
  disused 390.10
  past 837.7
  grown old 842.13
antique
  n relic 842.6
  back number 842.8
  adj disused 390.10
  durable 827.10
  past 837.7
  old 842.10
  antiquated 842.13
antiquity
  durability 827.1
  ancient times 837.3
  oldness 842.1
  antique 842.6
antireligious 695.22
anti-Semitism
  hate 103.1
  discrimination 980.4
antiseptic
  n disinfectant 86.21
  poison 1001.3
  adj sanitary 79.27
  disinfectant 86.43
antisocial
  misanthropic 590.3
  eccentric 927.5
antithesis
  contraposition 215.1
  contrariety 779.1
antithetical
  contrapositive 215.5
  oppositional 451.8
  contrary 779.6
antitoxin
  antitoxic serum 86.27
  inoculation 91.16
antler 285.4
antonym word 526.1
  the opposite 779.2
antrum 284.2
antsy
  excited 105.23
  restless 105.27
  apprehensive 127.24
  impatient 135.6
  agitated 917.16
  wriggly 917.21
anus
  digestive system 2.18
  asshole 292.5
anvil ear 2.10
  instrument of conversion 858.10
anxiety
  unpleasure 96.1
  eagerness 101.1
  apprehensiveness 126.1
  anxiousness 126.1
  fear 127.4
  suspense 130.3
  impatience 135.1
  trouble 1013.3
anxious
  pleasureless 96.20
  eager 101.8
  concerned 126.7
  apprehensive 127.24
  in suspense 130.12
  impatient 135.6
  troubled 1013.20
any
  n some 244.3
  anything 864.5
  adj quantitative 244.5
  every 864.15
  one 872.7
anybody 864.5
anyhow
  carelessly 340.18
  anyway 384.10
any kind 809.9
anyone any 864.5
  whoever 864.7
any one
  n any 864.5
  adj one 872.7
anyplace 159.22
anything some 244.3
  any 864.5
anytime
  whenever 821.12
  imminently 840.4
anyway 384.10
anywhere
  adj addicted 87.25
  adv wherever 159.22
aorta 2.23
apace swiftly 174.17
  hastily 401.12
  promptly 845.15
apart
  adj distant 261.8
  secluded 584.8
  unrelated 776.6
  separate 802.20
  alone 872.8
  adv away 261.17
  privately 345.19
  separately 802.27
  singly 872.13
  in half 875.8
apartheid
  seclusion 584.1
  exclusiveness 773.3
  discrimination 980.4
apartment 228.13
apathetic insensible 25.6
  incurious 982.3
apathy
  insensibility 25.1
  lack of feeling 94.4
  unconcern 102.2
  despair 125.2
  inertness 173.4
  languor 331.6
  indifference 467.2
  thoughtlessness 933.1
  incuriosity 982.1
ape
  n strong man 15.7
  wild animal 311.23
  imitator 336.4
  ruffian 593.4
  violent person 671.10
  v mimic 336.6
  impersonate 349.12
  gesture 517.21
  resemble 784.7
  adj crazy 926.27
aperéu
  treatise 556.1
  abridgment 557.1
  intuition 934.1
apéritif appetizer 10.9
  drink 88.9
aperture
  opening 292.1
  passageway 383.3
apex summit 198.2
  height 272.2
  angle 278.2
  speech organ 524.18
aphasia muteness 51.2
  loss of speech 525.6
aphorism
  witticism 489.7
  epigram 537.3
  maxim 974.1
aphrodisiac
  love potion 75.6
  aphroditous 75.26
Aphrodite Love 104.8
  beauty 1016.10
apical 198.10
apiece 865.19
apish imitative 336.9
  representational 349.13
  foolish 923.8
aplenty
  adj sufficient 991.7
  adv plentifully 991.9
aplomb
  equanimity 106.3
  verticalness 200.1
  self-control 359.5
  stability 855.1
apnea 85.9
apocalypse
  disclosure 351.1
  revelation 683.10
  prediction 962.1
Apocalypse 683.4
apocalyptic
  ominous 133.17
  scriptural 683.11
  predictive 962.11
apocryphal
  spurious 354.26
  unorthodox 688.9
  unauthoritative 971.21
apogee summit 198.2
  boundary 211.3
  long way 261.2
  limit 794.5
  orbit 1072.16
  spacecraft 1075.2
Apollo music 710.22
  Muse 720.10
  sun 1072.14
apologetic
  n apology 600.3
  justifier 600.8

adj penitent 113.9
justifying 600.13
atoning 658.7
apologia apology 600.3
argumentation 935.4
apologist
defender 460.7
justifier 600.8
supporter 616.9
arguer 935.12
apologize
repent 113.7
beg pardon 658.5
apology
penitence 113.4
pretext 376.1
apologia 600.3
excuse 658.2
argumentation 935.4
apophthegm 974.1
apoplectic
n sick person 85.43
adj anemic 85.61
apoplexy seizure 85.6
paralysis 85.27
upheaval 671.5
spasm 917.6
apostasy dissent 333.1
denial 335.2
recreancy 363.2
desertion 370.2
backsliding 394.2
nonobservance 435.1
Protestantism 675.10
impiety 694.1
change 852.1
renunciation 858.3
apostate
n dissenter 333.3
turncoat 363.5
backslider 394.3
Protestant 675.20
sacrilegist 694.3
defector 858.8
adj recreant 363.11
relapsing 394.5
Protestant 675.28
impious 694.6
treasonable 858.20
apostle disciple 572.2
religion 684.2
clergy 699.10
converter 858.9
apostolic
abstinent 668.10
scriptural 683.11
papal 698.15
apostrophe
remark 524.3
soliloquy 542.1
apothecary 86.35
apothegm
witticism 489.7
maxim 974.1
apotheosis
respect 155.1
praise 509.5
glorification 662.8
removal to heaven 681.11
idolization 697.2
ideal 786.4
elevation 912.1
appall offend 98.11
terrify 127.17
dismay 127.19
appalling horrid 98.19
terrible 127.30
remarkable 247.10
appanage 471.5
apparatus
equipment 385.4
impedimenta 471.3
tool 1040.1
apparel
n clothing 5.1
v outfit 5.39
apparent visible 31.6
appearing 33.11
exterior 206.7
manifest 348.8
specious 354.27
plausible 968.7
illusory 976.9
apparently visibly 31.8
seemingly 33.12
externally 206.10
manifestly 348.14
falsely 354.35
apparition ghost 33.1
appearance 33.5
phantom 976.4
figment of the imagination 986.5
specter 988.1
appeal
n delightfulness 97.2
desirability 100.13
loveableness 104.7
allurement 377.1
entreaty 440.2
appeal motion 598.10
prayer 696.4
v attract 377.6
entreat 440.11
appealing
delightful 97.7
alluring 377.8
imploring 440.17
melodious 708.48
appeal to
entreat 440.11
address 524.26
refer to 957.14
appear show 31.4
become visible 33.8
seem 33.10
attend 221.8
come out 348.6
be revealed 351.8
be published 352.16
act 704.29
turn up 831.6
appearance
showing-up 33.1
appearing 33.1
exterior 33.2
apparition 33.5
arrival 186.1
front 206.1
lineaments 262.3
manifestation 348.1
sham 354.3
illusoriness 976.2
phantom 976.4
specter 988.1
appear for 576.14
appease gratify 95.8
relieve 120.5
pacify 465.7
calm 670.7
propitiate 696.15
appeasement
relief 120.1
pacification 465.1
foreign policy 609.5
propitiation 696.6
appellate 595.7
appellation
naming 527.2
nomenclature 527.3
append add 253.4
place after 815.3
appendage member 2.7
hanger-on 138.6
follower 166.2
adjunct 254.1
belongings 471.2
nonessential 768.2
attendant 769.3
part 793.4
appendix
digestive system 2.18
added to writing 254.2
sequel 817.1
appertaining
relative 775.7
relevant 775.11
appertain to
belong to 469.7
relate to 775.5
appetite eating 8.1
craving 100.6
stomach 100.7
eagerness 101.1
will 323.1
sensuality 663.1
appetizer bite 8.2
food 10.9
sample 62.4
piece 793.3
appetizing
mouth-watering 63.10
desirable 100.30
alluring 377.8
applaud cheer 116.6
congratulate 149.2
assent 332.8
acclaim 509.10
applause
cheer 116.2
congratulation 149.1
plaudit 509.2
apple pie 1014.4
apple-polisher 138.4
applet 1042.11
appliance
instrument 384.4
use 387.1
facility 449.9
machinery 1040.3
applicable
usable 387.23
legal 673.11
relevant 775.11
apt 788.10
applicant 440.7
application
dressing 86.33
industry 330.6
perseverance 360.1
use 387.1
request 440.1
study 570.3
administration 643.2
relevance 775.4
attribution 888.1
engrossment 983.3
application software 1042.12
applied 387.24
appliqué 295.4
apply
cover 295.19
put to use 387.11
petition 440.10
administer 643.6
relate 775.6
attribute 888.3
apply for 440.9
apply oneself
practice 328.8
endeavor 403.5
undertake 404.3
study 570.12
busy oneself with 724.11
exert oneself 725.9
think about 931.11
attend to 983.5
appoint
elect 371.20
equip 385.8
prescribe 420.9
allot 477.9
assign 615.11
destine 964.7
appointee 615.9
appointment
election 371.9
authority 417.12
decree 420.4
allotment 477.3
engagement 582.8
assignment 615.2
commission 615.4
holy orders 698.10
position 724.5
appointments
equipment 385.4
belongings 471.2
Appollo 1016.10
apportion
quantify 244.4
share 476.6
mete out 477.6
separate 793.6
portion 802.18
dispose 808.9
apposite
relevant 775.11
apt 788.10
apposition 223.3
appraisal
measurement 300.1
valuation 630.3
classification 801.3

estimate 946.3
appreciable
weighable 297.19
measurable 300.14
substantial 763.6
knowable 928.25
appreciate
savor 63.5
enjoy 95.13
be grateful 150.3
respect 155.4
grow 251.6
measure 300.10
understand 521.7
know 928.12
estimate 946.9
value 997.13
appreciation
gratitude 150.1
respect 155.1
increase 251.1
acknowledgment 332.3
commendation 509.3
cognizance 928.2
discrimination 944.1
estimate 946.3
appreciative
grateful 150.5
approbatory 509.16
aware of 928.16
discriminating 944.7
apprehend sense 24.6
fear 127.10
forebode 133.11
arrest 429.15
capture 480.18
understand 521.7
know 928.12
apprehension
anxiety 126.1
apprehensiveness 127.4
suspense 130.3
foreboding 133.2
arrest 429.6
seizure 480.2
intelligence 920.1
understanding 928.3
idea 932.1
doubt 955.2
apprehensive
anxious 126.7
misgiving 127.24
nervous 128.11
in suspense 130.12
knowing 928.15
apprentice
n novice 572.9
skilled worker 726.6
beginner 818.2
producer 892.7
v train 568.13
indenture 615.18
adj indentured 615.21
apprenticeship 432.3
apprise 551.8
apprised of 928.16
approach
n motion towards 167
access 167.1
convergence 169.1
landing 184.18
arrival 186.1
entrance 189.5
nearness 223.1
plan 381.1
manner 384.1
attempt 403.2
offer 439.1
game 750.2
similarity 784.1
imminence 840.1
v come close 167.3
converge 169.2
arrive 186.6
near 223.7
be around 223.8
communicate with 343.8
bribe 378.3
use 384.5
attempt 403.6
make advances 439.7
address 524.26
cultivate 587.12
resemble 784.7
turn up 831.6
be in the future 839.6
be imminent 840.2
exercise influence 894.9
approachable
accessible 167.5
communicative 343.10
bribable 378.4
possibility 966.8
approbation
respect 155.1
ratification 332.4
consent 441.1
approval 509.1
esteem 662.3
appropriate
v take possession 472.10
adopt 480.19
steal 482.13
plagiarize 482.19
borrow 621.4
usurp 640.8
adj useful 387.18
decorous 496.10
fit 533.7
right 637.3
due 639.8
relevant 775.11
apt 788.10
timely 843.9
characteristic 865.13
expedient 995.5
appropriation
allotment 477.3
taking over 480.4
theft 482.1
plagiarism 482.8
adoption 621.2
usurpation 640.3
approval
respect 155.1
ratification 332.4
consent 441.1
high marks 509.5
approbation 509.1
esteem 662.3
support 901.1
criticism 946.2
approve
ratify 332.12
adopt 371.15
consent 441.2
accept 509.9
support 901.21
criticize 946.14
evidence 957.8
approved
accepted 332.14
chosen 371.26
received 479.10
favored 509.19
conventional 579.5
orthodox 687.7
authoritative 970.18
approximate
v be around 223.8
imitate 336.5
resemble 784.7
similarize 784.8
adj approaching 167.4
near 223.14
approximating 775.8
similar 784.14
inaccurate 975.17
v approach 167.3
approximately
also 223.23
nearly 244.6
on the whole 792.14
approximation
approach 167.1
nearness 223.1
measurement 300.1
reproduction 336.3
relation 775.1
similarity 784.1
likeness 784.3
inaccuracy 975.2
notation 1017.2
appurtenance
adjunct 254.1
equipment 385.4
facility 449.9
belongings 471.2
prerogative 642.1
nonessential 768.2
component 796.2
apron clothing 5.17
runway 184.23
stage 704.16
golf 751.1
apropos
relevant 775.11
apt 788.10
incidentally 843.13
apse arch 279.4
church 703.9
apt skillful 413.22
appropriate 533.7
teachable 570.18
apposite 788.10
prompt 845.9
smart 920.14
probable 968.6
disposed 978.8
aptitude
innate skill 413.5
teachableness 570.5
fitness 788.5
tendency 896.1
smartness 920.2
probability 968.1
disposition 978.3
apt to
adj liable to 897.6
prep inclined to 896.6
aquarium
vivarium 228.24
collection 770.11
aquatic
n creatures 311.3
adj water-dwelling 182.58
watery 1065.16
aquatics 182.11
aqueduct
watercourse 239.2
trench 290.2
aqueous 1065.16
aquiline hooked 279.8
birdlike 311.49
aquiver 105.20
Arab 178.4
arabesque
n network 170.3
detailed design 498.2
ornament 709.18
adj ornate 498.12
Arabesque 554.15
Arabic numerals 1017.4
arable 1069.20
arachnid 311.33
arbiter
arbitrator 466.4
connoisseur 496.7
referee 596.1
judge 946.6
arbitrage
n stocks 737.19
v trade 737.23
arbitrary
voluntary 324.7
capricious 364.5
unthinking 365.10
imperious 417.16
arbitration
arbitrament 466.2
unionism 727.1
adjustment 788.4
judgment 946.1
arbitrator arbiter 466.4
go-between 576.4
judge 596.1
arbor
summerhouse 228.12
axle 915.5
arboreal forked 171.10
arborical 310.39
arboretum 397.7
arc
n curve 279.2
lights 704.18
discharge 1032.6
v curve 279.6
arcade corridor 197.18
fence 212.4
pillar 273.5
arch 279.4
passageway 383.3
Arcadian rustic 233.6
natural 416.6

  ideal 986.23
arcane secret 345.11
  implied 519.7
  recondite 522.16
  supernatural 870.15
arch
  n foot 199.5
  span 279.4
  monument 549.12
  v curve 279.6
  adj chief 249.14
  mischievous 322.6
  cunning 415.12
archaeological 842.20
archaeologist 842.5
archaeology oldness 842.4
  discovery 941.1
archaic language 523.2
archaism
  archaicism 526.12
  antiquity 842.6
archangel 679.1
archbishop 699.9
archdiocese
  region 231.5
  diocese 698.8
arched bowed 279.10
  convex 283.13
archenemy
  opponent 452.1
  enemy 589.6
archer 904.8
archery ballistics 462.3
  sport 744.1
  throwing 904.2
archetypal 842.11
archetype
  engram 92.29
  form 262.1
  original 337.2
  model 786.1
  philosophy 932.2
  instinct 934.2
  standard of perfection 1002.4
archetypical
  unimitated 337.6
  prototypal 786.9
  perfected 1002.9
archipelago 235.2
architect planner 381.6
  draftsman 716.10
  landscape planner 717.3
  doer 726.1
  producer 892.7
architectonics 717.1
architectural
  structural 266.6
  design 717.7
  constructional 892.15
architecture
  structure 266.1
  design 717.4
  construction 717.1
  plot 722.4
  production 892.2
archives
  storehouse 386.6
  preserve 397.7
  public records 549.2
  registry 549.3
archivist 550.1
archway 279.4
arctic unfeeling 94.9
  northern 161.14
  seasonal 313.9
  cold 1023.14
ardent alcoholic 88.37
  fervent 93.18
  zealous 101.9
  amorous 104.26
  willing 324.5
  industrious 330.22
  vehement 544.13
  cordial 587.16
  fiery 671.22
  hot 1019.25
  burning 1019.27
ardor animation 17.4
  passion 93.2
  desire 100.1
  zeal 101.2
  love 104.1
  willingness 324.1
  industry 330.6
  vehemence 544.5
  interest 983.2
  heat 1019.2
arduous
  laborious 725.18
  difficult 1013.17
area space 158.1
  location 159.1
  region 231.1
  size 257.1
  study 568.8
  occupation 724.4
  specialty 866.1
  science 928.10
arear 163.13
arena space 158.1
  hall 197.4
  setting 209.2
  enclosed place 212.3
  sphere 231.2
  sports venue 463.1
  scene of action 463.1
  occupation 724.4
  track 755.1
  science 928.10
  outlook 978.2
argosy ship 180.1
  fleet 180.10
  navy 461.27
argot
  Greek 522.7
  jargon 523.9
arguable 971.17
argue
  affirm 334.5
  signify 517.17
  mean 518.8
  support 600.10
  reason 935.16
  evidence 957.8
argument
  quarrel 456.5
  contention 457.1
  pleadings 598.6
  testimony 598.8
  defense 600.2
  plot 722.4
  reason 935.4
  case 935.5
  specious argument 936.3
aria
  air 708.4
  solo 708.15
arid
  dull 117.6
  unproductive 891.4
  unimaginative 987.5
  dry 1066.7
aright 999.22
arise
  get up 23.6
  appear 33.8
  emerge 190.11
  ascend 193.8
  rise 200.8
  revolt 327.7
  originate 818.13
  turn up 831.6
arise from 887.5
aristocracy
  the best 249.5
  mastership 417.7
  upper class 607.2
  social status 607.3
  noble rank 608
  nobility 608.1
  aristocracy 608.1
  blue blood 608.2
  government 612.4
aristocrat
  patrician 607.4
  nobleman 608.4
aristocratic
  dignified 136.12
  lordly 141.11
  imperious 417.16
  upper-class 607.10
  noble 608.10
  governmental 612.17
arithmetic 1017.22
arithmetical 1017.22
arithmetic operation 1017.2
arm
  n appendage 2.7
  inlet 242.1
  branch 617.10
  game 745.3
  member 793.4
  supporter 901.2
  forearm 906.5
  v empower 18.10
  equip 385.8
  fortify 460.9
  protect 1008.18
armada 461.27
armament
  provision 385.1
  equipment 385.4
  arms 462.1
  football 746.1
armchair 951.13
armed provided 385.13
  prepared 405.16
  embattled 458.23
  heeled 460.14
  protected 1008.21
armed forces 461.20
arm in arm
  adj near 223.14
  adv sociably 582.25
  amicably 587.22
  hand in hand 769.10
armistice 465.5
armor
  n callousness 94.3
  shell 295.15
  armature 460.3
  v fortify 460.9
  protect 1008.18
armory
  storehouse 386.6
  arsenal 462.2
  insignia 647.1
  heraldry 647.2
  plant 739.3
  track 755.1
arms
  military science 458.6
  matériel 462.1
  weapons 462.1
  heraldry 647.2
arms control peace treaty 464.7
  disarmament 465.6
arms race 458.10
arm-twisting
  inducement 375.3
  coercion 424.3
  threat 514.1
army branch 461.21
  military units 461.22
  forces 461.23
  throng 770.4
  group of animals 770.5
  multitude 884.3
aroma odor 69.1
  fragrance 70.1
  characteristic 865.4
aromatherapy odorousness 69.2
  fragrance 70.1
aromatic
  n perfumery 70.2
  adj odorous 69.9
  fragrant 70.9
around
  adv in every direction 161.25
  round 209.12
  near 223.20
  rotating 915.16
  prep through 161.27
  about 223.26
arousal
  awakening 23.2
  stimulation 105.1
  excitation 105.11
  elicitation 192.5
  incitement 375.4
arouse energize 17.10
  wake someone up 23.5
  excite 105.12
  provoke 152.24
  elicit 192.14
  incite 375.17
  rouse 375.19
  alarm 400.3
  interest 983.12
  heat 1020.18
arousing
  n excitation 105.11
  adj aphrodisiac 75.26

extractive 192.17
arraignment
censure 510.3
indictment 598.3
accusation 599.1
arrange plan 381.8
prepare 405.6
settle 437.8
mediate 466.7
compose 708.46
order 807.4
align 808.8
classify 809.6
arranged
planned 381.12
contracted 437.11
orderly 807.6
composed 808.14
arrangement
form 262.1
structure 266.1
plan 381.1
preparation 405.1
compact 437.1
adjustment 465.4
compromise 468.1
ornamentation 498.1
appointment 582.8
piece 708.5
score 708.28
harmonization 709.2
music 709.11
treatment 712.9
order 807.1
configuration 808.1
organization 808.1
classification 809.1
arrant
downright 247.12
conspicuous 348.12
wicked 654.16
base 661.12
terrible 1000.9
array
n clothing 5.1
army 461.23
order 807.1
arrangement 808.1
series 812.2
v clothe 5.39
ornament 498.8
order 807.4
dispose 808.9
align 812.5
adduce 957.12
arrayed clothing 5.45
embattled 458.23
arranged 808.14
arrears debt 623.2
shortcoming 911.1
arrest
n seizure 85.6
slowing 175.4
restraint 428.1
arrestment 429.6
confinement 480.2
stop 857.2
hindrance 1012.1
curb 1012.7
v slow 175.9
restrain 428.7
confine 429.15
capture 480.18
delay 846.8
put a stop to 857.11
engross 983.13
hinder 1012.10
arrested
retarded 175.12
undeveloped 406.12
restrained 428.13
incomplete 795.4
late 846.16
mentally deficient 922.22
gripped 983.18
arrested development
fixation 92.21
mental deficiency 922.9
arrival
landing 184.18
entrant 186.1
incomer 189.4
arrive
appear 33.8
arrive at 186.6
make good 409.10
arrivederci! 188.22
arriving
adj approaching 186.9
adv on arrival 186.10
arriviste
vulgarian 497.6
upstart 606.7
newcomer 774.4
modern 841.4
arrogant
vain 136.9
proud 140.9
overbearing 141.9
insolent 142.9
contemptuous 157.8
imperious 417.16
defiant 454.7
confident 970.21
arrogate
take command 417.14
appropriate 480.19
usurp 640.8
arrow
n swiftness 174.6
shaft 462.6
pointer 517.4
v be straight 277.4
arsenal
storehouse 386.6
armory 462.2
plant 739.3
arson 1020.7
arsonist
destroyer 395.8
incendiary 1020.8
art
representation 349.1
knack 413.6
science 413.7
cunning 415.1
stratagem 415.3
visual arts 712.1
artistry 712.7
vocation 724.6
science 928.10
artefact 842.6
arterial 2.33
arteriosclerosis 1046.5
artery duct 2.23
passageway 383.3
artful
falsehearted 354.31
deceitful 356.22
cunning 415.12
insincere 645.18
shrewd 920.15
arthritic
n sick person 85.43
adj anemic 85.61
arthropod animal 311.3
insect 311.32
article
n definite article 530.6
writing 547.10
news item 552.3
part 554.13
treatise 556.1
commodity 735.2
particular 766.3
part of grammar 793.2
individual 872.4
object 1052.4
v accuse 599.7
indenture 615.18
articulate
v say 524.22
put together 800.5
hook 800.8
adj audible 50.16
intelligible 521.10
speaking 524.31
eloquent 544.8
jointed 800.17
articulation
uttering 524.5
speech sound 524.12
word 526.1
joining 800.1
joint 800.4
series 812.2
artifact antiquity 842.6
product 893.1
object 1052.4
artifice
falseheartedness 354.4
chicanery 356.4
trick 356.6
intrigue 381.5
cunning 415.1
stratagem 415.3
affectation 533.3
expedient 995.2
artificial
spurious 354.26
put on 500.15
affected 533.9
artificial coloring 35.8
artificial insemination 78.3
artificial intelligence 1042.2
artillery ballistics 462.3
cannon 462.11
artilleryman
artillerist 461.11
shooter 904.8
artisan expert 413.11
worker 607.9
artist 716.1
skilled laborer 726.6
mechanic 1040.12
artist expert 413.11
entertainer 707.1
musician 710.1
visual arts 712.1
creator 716.1
artiste 716.1
skilled worker 726.6
producer 892.7
artistic
skillful 413.22
tasteful 496.8
painterly 712.20
artistry skill 413.1
authorship 547.2
art 712.7
talent 718.2
artless natural 406.13
unskillful 414.15
simple 416.5
candid 644.17
foolable 923.12
artlessness
naturalness 406.3
simplicity 416.1
ingenuousness 416.1
candor 644.4
genuineness 973.7
arts and crafts 712.1
artsy-craftsy 712.20
artwork
visual arts 712.1
work of art 712.10
arty 712.20
as
adv how 384.9
equally 790.11
to illustrate 957.23
conj because 888.10
as a matter of course
finally 820.12
generally 864.17
normally 869.10
consequently 887.7
certainly 970.23
as a matter of fact
really 761.16
truly 973.18
as a rule
generally 864.17
normally 869.10
asbestos 1022.5
ascend move 172.5
climb 184.39
fly 193.8
rise 200.8
incline 204.10
tower 272.10
levitate 298.9
ascendancy
superiority 249.1
victory 411.1
dominance 417.6
influence 894.1
ascendant
rising 193.14
superior 249.12
victorious 411.7
authoritative 417.15

governing 612.18
influential 894.14
ascending
n course 172.2
rising 200.5
adj flowing 172.8
in the ascendant 193.14
sloping upward 204.17
high 272.14
ascension ascent 193.1
rising 200.5
removal to heaven 681.11
ascent course 172.2
motion upward 193
ascension 193.1
rising 200.5
acclivity 204.6
increase 251.1
lightness 298.1
improvement 392.1
elevation 912.1
ascertain learn 570.6
decide 946.11
prove 957.10
make sure 970.11
ascertained
known 928.26
proved 957.20
assured 970.20
true 973.13
ascetic
n recluse 584.5
puritan 667.2
abstainer 668.4
religious 699.16
adj plain-speaking 535.3
atoning 658.7
austere 667.4
abstinent 668.10
meager 992.10
asceticism
penance 658.3
self-denial 667.1
austerity 667.1
abstinence 668.2
ascribable
due 639.10
attributable 888.6
ascribe accuse 599.7
attribute 888.3
aseptic 79.27
asexual 75.29
as far as to 261.20
when 821.16
as for 775.13
as good as 223.22
ash dregs 256.2
extract 893.3
combustion product 1020.16
ashamed
regretful 113.8
humiliated 137.14
ashen colorless 36.7
gray 39.4
terrified 127.26
burned 1020.30
ashes corpse 307.16
combustion product 1020.16
ashore 234.8
ashram
community 617.2
retreat 1009.5
aside
n interjection 213.2
byplay 490.1
soliloquy 542.1
adv in an undertone 52.22
laterally 218.8
on one side 218.10
apart 261.17
privately 345.19
in reserve 386.17
aside from
adv separately 802.27
prep excluding 773.10
as if 951.19
asinine
ungulate 311.46
stupid 922.15
foolish 923.8
trivial 998.19
as is
adj present 838.2
adv identically 778.9
as it were
by interpretation 341.18
figuratively 536.4
so to speak 784.19
supposedly 951.17
ask demand 421.5
request 440.9
invite 440.13
charge 630.12
inquire 938.20
require 963.9
ask about 938.19
askance
obliquely 204.14
askew 204.22
laterally 218.8
warily 494.13
disapprovingly 510.26
askew skew 204.14
awry 204.22
distorted 265.10
disorderly 810.13
erroneous 975.16
ask for
encourage 375.21
demand 421.5
request 440.9
seek 938.30
ask for it defy 454.3
be rash 493.5
cause trouble 1013.14
asking price offer 439.1
price 738.9
ask no quarter 430.20
aslant
adj inclining 204.15
adv slantingly 204.23
asleep sleeping 22.22
insensible 25.6
unconscious 25.8
dead 307.30
unaware 930.13
unalert 984.8
as long as
prep when 821.16
conj so 959.15
aslope
adj inclining 204.15
adv slantingly 204.23
as much as 244.7
as new 841.15
as of now 838.3
as one
unanimously 332.17
cooperatively 450.6
in step 788.11
jointly 800.18
simultaneously 836.7
concurrently 899.5
aspect look 33.3
navigation 159.3
perfective 530.13
particular 766.3
component 796.2
astrology 1072.20
as per 867.9
asperity
pungency 68.1
ill humor 110.1
causticity 144.8
bitterness 152.3
roughness 288.1
aspersion
indignity 156.2
criticism 510.4
slur 512.4
stigma 661.6
baptism 701.6
wetting 1065.6
asphalt
n ground covering 199.3
pavement 383.6
v floor 295.22
asphyxiate
suffocate 307.24
strangle 308.19
suppress 428.8
asphyxiation
symptom 85.9
violent death 307.6
suffocation 308.6
aspic 10.13
aspirant desirer 100.12
optimist 124.6
petitioner 440.7
candidate 610.9
aspiration
breathing 2.21
murmur 52.4
reaching high 100.9
hope 124.1
inhaling 187.5
drawing 192.3
motive 375.1
intention 380.1
speech sound 524.12
aspire
be ambitious 100.20
take off 193.10
aspiring
ambitious 100.28
hopeful 124.11
high 272.14
as regards 775.13
ass sex object 75.4
copulation 75.7
beast of burden 176.8
buttocks 217.5
donkey 311.16
obstinate person 361.6
fool 924.1
assail attack 459.14
criticize 510.20
incriminate 599.10
assailant
opponent 452.1
assailer 459.12
assailing
n attack 459.1
berating 510.7
adj attacking 459.29
assassin
alarmist 127.8
killer 308.11
assassination 308.2
assault
n attack 459.1
berating 510.7
incrimination 599.2
unruliness 671.3
v attack 459.14
rage 671.11
thrust 902.12
assay
n measurement 300.1
attempt 403.2
analysis 801.1
test 942.2
v measure 300.10
attempt 403.6
analyze 801.6
experiment 942.8
ass-backwards
adj backward 163.12
misinterpreted 342.3
botched 414.22
confused 810.16
adv backwards 163.13
clumsily 414.24
assemblage
association 617.1
picture 712.11
gathering 770.1
assembly 770.1
all 770.14
relation 775.1
composition 796.1
hodgepodge 797.6
assemble
collect 472.11
sculpture 715.5
come together 770.16
gather 770.18
compose 796.3
join 800.5
produce 892.8
assembly
council 423.1
legislature 613.1
the laity 700.1
assemblage 770.1
bunch 770.2
meeting 770.14
composition 796.1
production 892.2
assembly code 1042.13
assembly hall 567.11
assembly line
plant 739.3
assembly 770.14
industrial production 892.3

assembly-line 892.18
assemblyman 610.3
assent
  n agreement 332
  acquiescence 332.1
  submission 433.1
  consent 441.1
  vote yes 788.1
  support 901.1
  v acquiesce 332.8
  submit 433.6
  consent 441.2
  agree 788.6
  support 901.21
assenting
  agreeing 332.13
  submissive 433.12
  consenting 441.4
assert
  affirm 334.5
  insist 421.8
  state 524.23
  defend 600.10
  postulate 951.12
  maintain 953.12
assertative 334.8
assertion
  affirmation 334.1
  remark 524.3
  premise 935.7
  testimony 957.2
assertive 334.8
assert oneself 348.6
assess
  measure 300.10
  price 630.11
  charge 630.12
  classify 801.8
  estimate 946.9
assessment
  measurement 300.1
  fee 624.5
  valuation 630.3
  tax 630.9
  Irish dividend 738.8
  classification 801.3
  estimate 946.3
assessor
  measurer 300.9
  tax collector 630.10
assets
  supply 386.2
  means 471.7
  wealth 618.1
  accounts 628.1
  funds 728.14
asseverate
  affirm 334.5
  speech 524.23
  state 953.12
  testify 957.9
asshole anus 292.5
  bad person 660.5
  fool 924.3
assiduous
  industrious 330.22
  painstaking 339.11
  persevering 360.8
  attentive 983.15
assign
  n beneficiary 479.4
  v locate 159.11
  transfer 176.10
  allot 477.9
  commit 478.16
  give homework 568.17
  commission 615.10
  appoint 615.11
  transfer property 629.3
  classify 809.6
  specify 865.11
  attribute 888.3
assignation
  rendezvous 582.9
  transfer 629.1
  assembly 770.2
  attribution 888.1
assignee
  beneficiary 479.4
  appointee 615.9
assignment
  placement 159.6
  authority 417.12
  allotment 477.3
  commitment 478.2
  lesson 568.7
  commission 615.1
  appointment 615.2
  transfer 629.1
  duty 641.1
  task 724.2
  specification 865.6
  attribution 888.1
assimilate digest 7.18
  absorb 187.13
  internalize 207.5
  naturalize 226.4
  consume 388.3
  understand 521.7
  conform 570.7
  include 772.3
  make uniform 781.4
  similarize 784.8
  make agree 788.7
  combine 805.3
  compare 943.4
assimilation
  digestion 2.17
  metabolism 2.20
  nutrition 7.8
  body function 7.12
  sorption 187.6
  naturalization 226.3
  consumption 388.1
  speech sound 524.12
  absorption 570.2
  inclusion 772.1
  similarity 784.1
  adjustment 788.4
  combination 805.1
  conversion 858.1
assist
  n helping hand 449.2
  baseball 745.3
  basketball game 747.3
  hockey 749.3
  v be instrumental 384.7
  aid 449.11
  subsidize 478.19
  benefit 592.3
assistance remedy 86.1
  aid 449.1
  subsidy 478.8
assistant
  n subordinate 432.5
  helper 449.7
  academic rank 571.3
  employee 577.3
  aid 616.6
  adj helping 449.20
assisted suicide 307.6
ass-kisser
  yes-man 138.4
  assenter 332.6
  flatterer 511.4
associate
  n academic rank 571.3
  companion 588.3
  partner 616.2
  confederate 616.1
  member 617.11
  v cooperate 450.3
  join 617.14
  accompany 769.7
  relate 775.6
  put together 800.5
  league 805.4
  concur 899.2
  adj related 775.9
  leagued 805.6
  concurrent 899.4
associate oneself with
  undertake 404.3
  back 449.13
  participate 476.5
  espouse 509.13
  defend 600.10
  join 617.14
association
  association of ideas 92.33
  council 423.1
  affiliation 450.2
  participation 476.1
  social set 582.5
  consociation 582.6
  society 617.1
  social grouping 617.1
  company 769.2
  relation 775.1
  combination 805.1
  concurrence 899.1
  thoughts 931.4
assonance rhyme 720.8
  repetitiousness 849.4
assonant
  harmonious 708.49
  rhyming 720.17
  monotonous 849.15
assorted different 780.7
  diversified 783.4
  arranged 808.14
  classified 809.8
assortment
  miscellany 770.13
  hodgepodge 797.6
  grouping 808.3
assuage gratify 95.8
  relieve 120.5
  moderate 670.6
  qualify 959.3
assuasive
  n palliative 86.10
  adj palliative 86.40
  relieving 120.9
  moderating 670.16
  qualifying 959.7
as such 767.11
assume don 5.43
  imitate 336.5
  sham 354.21
  undertake 404.3
  take command 417.14
  receive 479.6
  appropriate 480.19
  affect 500.12
  imply 519.4
  adopt 621.4
  presume 640.6
  usurp 640.8
  entail 772.4
  suppose 951.10
  think 953.11
assumed
  spurious 354.26
  undertaken 404.7
  put-on 500.16
  implied 519.7
  supposed 951.14
assumed name 527.8
assuming 141.10
assumption
  hope 124.1
  presumptuousness 141.2
  authority 417.12
  receiving 479.1
  appropriation 480.4
  implication 519.2
  adoption 621.2
  presumption 640.2
  usurpation 640.3
  removal to heaven 681.11
  entailment 772.2
  conversion 858.1
  elevation 912.1
  premise 935.7
  supposition 951.3
  opinion 953.6
assumptive 951.14
assurance
  equanimity 106.3
  consolation 121.4
  hope 124.1
  insolence 142.1
  oath 334.4
  promise 436.1
  security 438.1
  encouragement 492.9
  belief 953.1
  certainty 970.1
  confidence 970.5
  ensuring 970.8
  safety 1007.1
  insurance 1008.4
assure comfort 121.6
  give hope 124.10
  depose 334.6
  promise 436.4
  secure 438.9
  encourage 492.16
  convince 953.18
  make sure 970.11
assured
  composed 106.13

  hopeful 124.11
  insolent 142.9
  promised 436.8
  secured 438.11
  belief 953.21
  made sure 970.20
  confident 970.21
assuredly 332.18
assuring
  comforting 121.13
  convincing 953.26
assymetry 851.1
astern
  backwards 163.13
  aft 182.69
  in reverse 217.14
asteroid 1072.9
as the crow flies 161.23
asthma
  symptom 85.9
  allergy 85.34
asthmatic
  n breathing 2.21
  adj respiratory 2.32
as though 951.19
astigmatic 28.11
astigmatism
  faulty eyesight 28.1
  bad likeness 350.2
astir
  adj stirring 330.19
  afoot 405.23
  adv under way 172.9
as to 775.13
astonish
  amaze 122.6
  surprise 131.7
astonishing
  amazing 122.12
  surprising 131.11
  remarkable 247.10
astonishment
  marvel 122.2
  surprise 131.2
astound astonish 122.6
  dismay 127.19
astounded
  wondering 122.9
  terrified 127.26
astounding
  astonishing 122.12
  terrible 127.30
astral
  n astral body 689.17
  specter 988.1
  adj spectral 988.7
  immaterial 1053.7
  celestial 1072.25
astray
  adj bewildered 971.24
  erroneous 975.16
  adv wide 261.19
  amiss 911.7
  erroneously 975.20
astride 901.25
astringency
  acrimony 17.5
  acridness 64.2
  pungency 68.1
  harshness 144.9
  contraction 260.1
  strictness 425.1
astringent
  n contractor 260.6
  adj acrimonious 17.14
  bitter 64.6
  pungent 68.6
  penetrating 105.31
  harsh 144.24
  contractive 260.11
  strict 425.6
astrologer
  predictor 962.4
  astrologian 1072.23
astrological 1072.25
astrology
  divination 962.2
  fate 964.2
  astromancy 1072.20
astronaut
  traveler 178.1
  aviator 185.1
  astronavigator 1075.8
astronautical engineering 1043.1
astronomer
  earth scientist 1071.2
  stargazer 1072.22
astronomical
  large 247.7
  huge 257.20
  innumerable 884.10
  the universe 1072.25
astronomy
  cosmos 1072.1
  stargazing 1072.19
astrophysical
  physical 1018.3
  celestial 1072.25
astrophysics 1072.19
astute cunning 415.12
  sagacious 920.16
  discerning 944.8
asunder
  adj distant 261.8
  separate 802.20
  adv separately 802.27
  in half 875.8
as usual
  adj same 781.6
  adv in status quo 853.10
  normally 869.10
as well
  additionally 253.11
  equally 790.11
as yet 838.4
asylum
  hiding place 346.4
  infirmary 926.14
  refuge 1009.1
  home 1009.4
asymmetric
  distorted 265.10
  unequal 791.4
asymmetry
  distortion 265.1
  inconsistency 789.2
  inequality 791.1
asymptotic 169.3
at by 159.27
  in 207.13
at all anyhow 384.10
  any kind 809.9
  by any possibility 966.10
at all costs 338.9
at a loss
  adj in a dilemma 971.25
  at an impasse 1013.24
  adv unprofitably 473.9
at any rate
  limited 248.10
  notwithstanding 338.8
  anyhow 384.10
  certainly 970.23
ataraxy apathy 94.4
  unconcern 102.2
  inexcitability 106.1
  quiescence 173.1
at arm's length 261.14
at a standstill
  adj motionless 173.13
  inactive 331.17
  immovable 855.15
  at an impasse 1013.24
  adv at a halt 329.7
  in status quo 853.10
at a stretch
  continuously 812.10
  in the meantime 821.10
atavism
  inversion 205.1
  relapse 394.1
  oldness 842.1
  throwback 859.2
  memory 989.1
atavistic
  inverted 205.7
  innate 767.8
  primitive 842.11
  reversionary 859.7
at bay
  adj cornered 1013.25
  adv defensively 460.16
at best 248.10
at bottom deep 275.16
  essentially 767.11
at cost 633.10
at cross-purposes
  adj at odds 456.16
  at outs 589.12
  contrary 779.6
  disagreeing 789.6
  adv in opposition 451.9
at ease
  adj content 107.7
  comfortable 121.12
  adv at rest 20.11
atelier library 197.6
  studio 712.17
  workplace 739.1
at fault
  blameworthy 510.25
  guilty 656.3
  erroneous 975.16
at first sight
  vision 27.22
  apparently 33.12
at hand
  adj present 221.12
  handy 387.20
  imminent 840.3
  adv near 223.20
at heart 767.11
atheism
  infidelity 688.3
  impiety 694.1
  unorthodoxy 695.5
  unbelief 955.1
atheist
  n sacrilegist 694.3
  impious person 695.11
  adj unbelieving 695.19
atherosclerosis 1046.5
athlete 743.19
athletic able-bodied 15.16
  sporting 743.30
athletics sports 743.8
  gymnastics 744.1
  track 755.1
athletic shoes 5.27
at home
  n social gathering 582.10
  assembly 770.2
  adj at ease 121.12
  adv in the bosom of one's family 225.16
at home with
  used to 373.16
  friends with 587.17
  versed in 928.19
athwart
  adj transverse 170.9
  oblique 204.19
  adv crosswise 170.13
  transversely 204.24
  in opposition 451.9
  prep opposed to 451.10
atilt
  adj inclining 204.15
  adv slantingly 204.23
at issue
  adj doubtful 971.17
  undecided 971.18
  adv in opposition 451.9
  in question 938.39
at it 330.21
at large
  adj escaped 369.11
  free 430.21
  adv at length 538.16
  scatteringly 771.12
  wholly 792.13
  generally 864.17
atlas pillar 273.5
  reference book 554.9
Atlas strong man 15.6
  support 901.3
at last
  adv finally 820.12
  interj eureka! 941.11
at least 248.10
at length
  lengthily 267.10
  lengthwise 267.11
  ad nauseam 538.16
  fully 766.13
  finally 820.12
at liberty idle 331.18
  free 430.21
at loose ends
  idle 331.18
  irresolute 362.9
atmosphere
  milieu 209.3

aerosphere 317.2
treatment 712.9
plot 722.4
gas 1067.2
atmospheric 317.12
at most 248.10
at odds
adj unwilling 325.5
oppositional 451.8
at variance 456.16
at outs 589.12
different 780.7
disagreeing 789.6
adv in opposition 451.9
atoll 235.2
atom modicum 248.2
particle 258.8
one 872.3
tracer 1038.4
matter 1052.2
element 1060.2
atom bomb
n atomic explosion 1038.16
v bomb 459.23
atomic
infinitesimal 258.14
one 872.7
atomistic 1038.18
atomic energy 1038.15
atomic nucleus 1038.6
atomic number 1060.5
atomic scientist 1038.3
atomic war 458.1
atomic weight
unit of measure 297.5
weight 297.8
chemistry 1060.5
atomize
demolish 395.17
itemize 766.6
differentiate 780.6
analyze 801.6
come apart 802.9
shatter 802.13
disintegrate 806.3
nucleize 1038.17
pulverize 1051.9
vaporize 1067.8
atomizer perfume 70.6
sprinkler 1065.8
vaporizer 1067.6
atom smasher 1038.11
atonal 61.4
atonality 61.1
at once hastily 401.12
together 769.11
jointly 800.18
at once 830.8
promptly 845.15
atone
compensate 338.4
make restitution 481.5
repay 624.11
make amends 658.4
harmonize 708.35
tune 708.36
at one
unanimous 332.15
in accord 455.3
agreeing 788.9
atonement
compensation 338.1
peace offer 465.2
restitution 481.2
recompense 624.3
reparation 658.1
function of Christ 677.14
propitiation 696.6
at one's disposal
at one's command 326.4
handy 387.20
possessed 469.8
at one's fingertips
adj handy 387.20
adv near 223.20
at one's mercy 432.14
at one's wit's end
in a dilemma 971.25
at an impasse 1013.24
at one with
unanimous 332.15
concurrent 899.4
atop on top 198.15
on high 198.16
at par 790.7
at present 838.3
at random
haphazardly 810.18
irregularly 851.4
purposelessly 972.20
at rest
adj at ease 121.12
quiescent 173.12
dead 307.30
adv at ease 20.11
beneath the sod 309.23
at risk
liable 897.5
in danger 1006.13
atrocious
painful 26.10
horrid 98.19
cruel 144.26
insulting 156.8
wrong 638.3
wicked 654.16
base 661.12
savage 671.21
terrible 1000.9
atrocity
dreadfulness 98.3
act of cruelty 144.12
indignity 156.2
mistreatment 389.2
abomination 638.2
injustice 650.4
iniquity 654.3
misdeed 655.2
violence 671.1
evil 1000.3
atrophy
n symptom 85.9
shrinking 260.3
emaciation 270.6
waste 393.4
v waste 393.19
at sea
adj bewildered 971.24
muddled 985.13
adv under way 182.63
on the water 240.10
at stake 438.12
attach add 253.4
annex 480.20
fasten 800.7
attribute 888.3
attaché expert 413.11
diplomat 576.6
attached to 104.30
attachment love 104.1
addition 253.1
adjunct 254.1
annexation 480.5
fidelity 644.7
fastening 800.3
attribution 888.1
attack
n seizure 85.6
plan 381.1
manner 384.1
war 458.1
assault 459.1
accusation 459.1
berating 510.7
articulation 524.5
incrimination 599.2
unruliness 671.3
team 749.5
spasm 917.6
frenzy 926.7
v use 384.5
undertake 404.3
raise one's hand against 457.14
make war on 458.15
assault 459.14
criticize 510.20
incriminate 599.10
rage 671.11
set to work 725.15
interj advance! 459.32
attacker 459.12
attain arrive 186.6
accomplish 407.4
attainable
approachable 167.5
obtainable 472.14
practicable 966.7
accessible 966.8
attainder 602.2
attainment
arrival 186.1
accomplishment 407.1
skill 413.8
acquisition 472.1
learning 928.4
attempt
n trial 403.2
undertaking 404.1
v try 403.6
undertake 404.3
presume 640.6
attend
v listen 48.10
be at 221.8
aid 449.18
serve 577.13
accompany 769.7
escort 769.8
come after 835.3
result 887.4
spectate 918.5
heed 983.6
interj hark! 48.16
attendant
n hospital staff 90.11
follower 166.2
tender 577.5
assistant 616.6
concomitant 769.3
accompanier 769.4
guardian 1008.6
adj present 221.12
serving 577.14
environmental 766.8
accompanying 769.9
subsequent 835.4
attending
serving 577.14
environmental 766.8
accompanying 769.9
attend to
listen 48.10
observe 434.2
punish 604.11
look to 983.5
care for 1008.19
attention
n hearing 48.1
audition 48.2
carefulness 339.1
alertness 339.5
courtesy 504.6
curiosity 981.1
attentiveness 983.1
respects 983.1
interj hark! 48.16
look! 983.22
attention deficit disorder or ADD 984.1
attention deficit hyperactivity disorder or ADHD 984.1
attentive
listening 48.14
considerate 143.16
respectful 155.8
careful 339.10
meticulous 339.12
alert 339.14
courteous 504.14
curious 981.5
heedful 983.15
attenuate
v weaken 16.10
dilute 16.11
abate 252.8
shrink 260.9
thin 270.12
rarefy 299.3
spiritualize 764.4
dissipate 771.5
adj thin 270.16
smooth 294.8
rare 299.4
attenuated
diluted 16.19
reduced 252.10
shrunk 260.13
thin 270.16
haggard 270.20
smooth 294.8
rare 299.4
attest
n testimony 957.2

v depose 334.6
secure 438.9
evidence 957.8
testify 957.9
confirm 957.11
attestation
deposition 334.3
certificate 549.6
testimony 957.2
confirmation 957.4
attested affirmed 334.9
proved 957.20
assured 970.20
true 973.13
at the bottom of
adj responsible 641.17
causal 886.13
conj resulting from 887.8
at the drop of a hat
willingly 324.8
quickly 830.7
at the end of one's rope
dying 307.33
poor 619.7
wanting 992.13
straitened 1013.26
at the mercy of 897.6
at the pleasure of 432.17
at the point of
near 223.24
about to 839.13
at the same time
additionally 253.11
notwithstanding 338.8
meanwhile 826.5
simultaneously 836.7
at the wheel 417.21
attic room 197.16
storehouse 386.6
Attic witty 489.15
tasteful 496.8
simple 499.6
elegant 533.6
Attila 144.14
at times 848.5
attire
n clothing 5.1
v clothe 5.39
attitude
navigation 159.3
opinion 953.6
mental disposition 978.1
attitudinal
belief 953.21
temperamental 978.7
attitudinize 500.13
attorney steward 574.4
deputy 576.1
lawyer 597.1
attorney general 597.1
attract enamor 104.23
allure 377.6
pull 907.4
interest 983.12
attraction
desirability 100.13
allurement 377.1
lure 377.3
pulling 905.1
a drawing toward 907
traction 907.1
attractive
delightful 97.7
desirable 100.30
alluring 377.8
attracting 907.5
engrossing 983.20
beautiful 1016.18
attributable
adj due 639.10
assignable 888.6
conj resulting from 887.8
attribute
n syntax 530.2
insignia 647.1
characteristic 865.4
v assign 888.3
attribution
specification 865.6
assignment of cause 888
designation 888.1
attrition
weakening 16.5
regret 113.1
decrement 252.3
reduction 255.2
consumption 388.1
abrasion 1044.2
pulverization 1051.4
attune
n harmony 708.3
v fit 405.8
harmonize 708.35
tune 708.36
make agree 788.7
attuned in accord 455.3
harmonious 708.49
at variance
adj at odds 456.16
at outs 589.12
different 780.7
disagreeing 789.6
adv in opposition 451.9
at war
adj at odds 456.16
disagreeing 789.6
adv up in arms 458.24
at which 821.8
atwitter 105.20
at worst 248.10
atypical
nonconforming 868.5
unusual 870.10
auburn
reddish-brown 40.4
redheaded 41.10
au courant 928.18
auction
n sale 734.4
v sell 734.11
auctioneer
n auction agent 730.8
v sell 734.11
audacious
insolent 142.9
defiant 454.7
daring 492.22
foolhardy 493.9
audacity
insolence 142.1
defiance 454.1
daring 492.5
foolhardiness 493.3
audible auditory 48.13
hearable 50.16
audience audition 48.2
auditory 48.6
attender 221.5
recipient 479.3
conference 541.6
playgoer 704.27
spectator 918.2
audio 48.13
audio frequency
n tone 50.2
frequency 1034.12
adj radio 1034.28
audiologist 90.11
audio-visual 48.13
audit
n accounting 628.6
v be taught 570.11
take account of 628.9
verify 970.12
check 1017.21
audition recital 48.1
hearing 48.2
examination 938.2
tryout 942.3
auditor listener 48.5
recipient 479.3
student 572.1
superintendent 574.2
accountant 628.7
treasurer 729.12
auditorium hall 197.4
arena 463.1
schoolroom 567.11
theater 704.14
parquet 704.15
auditory
n audience 48.6
adj audio 48.13
auf Wiedersehen! 188.22
auger
n point 285.3
v perforate 292.15
aught some 244.3
nothing 762.2
any 864.5
augment
aggravate 119.2
increase 251.4
add to 253.5
enlarge 259.4
augur
n predictor 962.4
v hint 133.12
augur well 124.10
augury omen 133.3
divination 962.2
august dignified 136.12
venerable 155.12
eminent 247.9
au naturel 11.6
aunt 559.3
au pair girl 577.8
aura milieu 209.3
illustriousness 662.6
ectoplasm 689.7
halo 1025.14
aural eye 2.28
auditory 48.13
aureole radiation 171.2
circle 280.2
halo 1025.14
au revoir! 188.22
auricle
the hearing sense 2.10
ear 310.29
auricular
auditory 48.13
confidential 345.14
aurora dawn 314.3
foredawn 314.4
polar lights 1025.16
Aurora 314.2
auscultate 48.10
auspices
patronage 449.4
supervision 573.2
protectorship 1008.2
auspicious
promising 124.13
of good omen 133.18
timely 843.9
good 999.12
fortunate 1010.14
austere harsh 144.24
strict 425.6
inornate 499.9
plain-speaking 535.3
ascetic 667.4
simple 798.6
meager 992.10
austerity
harshness 144.9
strictness 425.1
inornateness 499.4
plain speech 535.1
thrift 635.1
asceticism 667.1
meagerness 992.2
autarchy
independence 430.5
government 612.4
absolutism 612.9
auteur
theater man 704.23
motion-picture studio 706.4
authentic
original 337.5
straight 644.14
orthodox 687.7
real 761.15
evidential 957.16
authoritative 970.18
genuine 973.15
authenticate
ratify 332.12
confirm 957.11
authenticated
accepted 332.14
proved 957.20
true 973.13
authenticity
nonimitation 337.1
candor 644.4
orthodoxy 687.1
reality 761.2
reliability 970.4
genuineness 973.7
author
n writer 547.15

discourser 556.3
literary person 718.4
narrator 722.5
doer 726.1
agent 886.4
producer 892.7
v write 547.21
pen 718.6
cause 886.10
authoritarian
authoritative 417.15
imperious 417.16
strict 425.6
governmental 612.17
narrow-minded 980.10
authoritative
powerful 18.12
skillful 413.22
vested with authority 417.15
imperious 417.16
preceptive 419.4
commanding 420.13
orthodox 687.7
specialized 866.5
influential 894.13
convincing 953.26
authentic 970.18
valid 973.14
the authorities
the powers that be 575.15
the government 612.3
authority
power 18.1
supremacy 249.3
expert 413.11
sanction 417.12
prerogative 417.1
authoritativeness 417.2
prestige 417.4
governance 417.5
command 420.1
authorization 443.3
connoisseur 496.7
certificate 549.6
informant 551.5
direction 573.1
commission 615.1
prerogative 642.1
specialist 866.3
influence 894.1
wise man 921.1
scientist 928.11
validity 973.6
authorize
empower 18.10
ratify 332.12
prescribe 420.9
sanction 443.11
commission 615.10
legalize 673.9
authorized
authoritative 417.15
empowered 443.17
commissioned 615.19
legal 673.11
authorship
creation 547.2
writing 718.2
production 892.1
autism
defense mechanism 92.23
unfeeling 94.1
unsociability 583.1
selfishness 651.1
illusion 976.1
incuriosity 982.1
idealism 986.7
autistic unfeeling 94.9
unsociable 583.5
selfish 651.5
illusory 976.8
incurious 982.3
visionary 986.24
auto 179.9
autobiographical 719.7
autobiography 719.1
autocracy
government 612.4
absolutism 612.9
autocrat 575.14
autocratic
authoritative 417.15
imperious 417.16
governmental 612.17
auto-da-fé killing 308.1
burning 1020.5
autoerotic
homosexual 75.30
vain 140.8
autoeroticism
masturbation 75.8
sexual preference 75.10
vanity 140.1
autograph
n holograph 337.3
signature 527.10
handwriting 547.3
writing 547.10
v ratify 332.12
adj written 547.22
automat
restaurant 8.17
vending machine 736.4
automate 1041.20
automated 1041.22
automated teller machine or ATM credit 622.3
funds 728.14
automatic
n automatic device 1041.12
adj unpremeditated 365.11
habitual 373.14
uniform 781.5
instinctive 934.6
involuntary 963.14
automated 1041.22
automatic pilot 574.7
automatic transmission 1040.9
automatic writing
authorship 547.2
psychic phenomena 689.6
involuntariness 963.5
automation
electronics 1033.1
robotics 1041.2
automatic control 1041.1
automatic device 1041.12
automatism
habit 373.3
psychic phenomena 689.6
involuntariness 963.5
self-action 1041.1
automaton figure 349.6
mechanism 1040.4
automatic device 1041.18
automaton automatous 1041.22
automobile
n car 179.9
adj self-propelled 1041.23
automotive
vehicular 179.23
self-propelled 1041.23
automotive engineering 1043.1
autonomous
voluntary 324.7
independent 430.22
governmental 612.17
separate 802.20
autonomy
voluntariness 324.2
independence 430.5
government 612.4
autopsy
n postmortem 307.18
v examine 938.24
autosuggestion 22.8
autumn
n fall 313.4
adj seasonal 313.9
autumnal 313.9
auxiliaries
reinforcements 449.8
reserves 461.25
auxiliary
n verb 530.4
assistant 616.6
nonessential 768.2
adj additional 253.10
helping 449.20
unessential 768.4
avail
n utility 387.3
benefit 387.4
good 999.4
v be of use 387.17
aid 449.11
suffice 991.4
do good 999.10
availability
presence 221.1
utility 387.3
accessibility 966.3
available
present 221.12
open 222.15
idle 331.18
handy 387.20
prepared 405.16
obtainable 472.14
accessible 966.8
avail oneself of
make use of 387.14
take advantage of 387.15
improve the occasion 843.8
avalanche
n slide 194.4
plenty 991.2
superabundance 993.2
snow 1023.8
v slide 194.9
avant-garde
n vanguard 216.2
precursor 816.1
novelty 841.2
adj original 337.5
preceding 816.4
modern 841.13
avarice greed 100.8
stinginess 484.3
selfishness 651.1
avaricious greedy 100.27
stingy 484.9
selfish 651.5
avatar appearance 33.1
manifestation 348.1
avenge 507.4
avenger 507.3
avenue outlet 190.9
passageway 383.3
aver affirm 334.5
state 524.23
testify 957.9
average
n mean 246.1
ruck 864.3
v strike a balance 246.2
seek the middle 819.3
adj medium 246.3
middle 819.4
prevalent 864.12
usual 869.9
ordinary 1005.8
average man
common man 606.5
average 864.3
averages
statistics 745.4
numbers 746.4
averred 334.9
averse allergic 99.8
unwilling 325.5
aversion hostility 99.2
loathing 103.1
hated thing 103.3
refusal 325.1
avert avoid 164.6
prevent 1012.14
avian 311.49
aviary 228.23
aviation
n aeronautics 184.1
adj aeronautic 184.49
aviator flier 185.1
airman 185.1
avid greedy 100.27
eager 101.8
avidly
greedily 100.32
eagerly 101.13
avocation 724.7
avoid detour 157.7
evade 164.6
shun 368.6
abstain 668.7
pull back 903.7
avoidable 368.14
avoidance
working around 368.1
shunning 368.1
abstinence 668.2
retreat 903.3
avoidance mechanism 92.23
avoirdupois 297.1

avouch
n promise 436.1
v affirm 334.5
promise 436.4
state 953.12
testify 957.9
avow
n oath 334.4
v acknowledge 332.11
affirm 334.5
confess 351.7
pretext 376.3
state 953.12
testify 957.9
avowal
acknowledgment 332.3
affirmation 334.1
confession 351.3
testimony 957.2
avulsion 192.1
avuncular 559.6
await wait 130.8
come 839.6
be imminent 840.2
be in the future 846.12
awake
v get up 23.4
revive 23.5
excite 105.12
come to life 306.10
adj conscious 23.8
alert 339.14
clear-witted 920.13
awaken
get up 23.4
revive 23.5
excite 105.12
come to life 306.10
rouse 375.19
disillusion 977.2
awakening
wakening 23.2
disillusionment 977.1
awake to 928.16
award
n giving 478.1
gift 478.4
reward 646.2
verdict 946.5
v give 478.12
aware sensible 24.11
knowing 928.15
attentive 983.15
awash
floating 182.60
flooded 238.25
soaked 1065.17
away
adj gone 34.4
absent 222.11
distant 261.8
adv backwards 163.13
hence 188.20
aside 218.10
elsewhere 222.18
at a distance 261.14
apart 261.17
interj go away! 909.31
away from
adv separately 802.27
prep departed 188.21
awe
n wonder 122.1
fear 127.1
respect 155.1
v astonish 122.6
terrify 127.17
daunt 127.18
command respect 155.7
awe-inspiring
awesome 122.11
terrible 127.30
venerable 155.12
grandiose 501.21
weighty 997.20
awesome awful 122.11
terrible 127.30
venerable 155.12
large 247.7
grandiose 501.21
eminent 662.18
sacred 685.7
awestruck
wondering 122.9
terrified 127.26
reverent 155.9
awful horrid 98.19
awesome 122.11
terrible 127.30
venerable 155.12
remarkable 247.11
grandiose 501.21
sacred 685.7
ugly 1000.9
hideous 1015.11
awfully
awesomely 122.15
frightfully 127.34
very 247.18
distressingly 247.21
terribly 1000.14
hideously 1015.13
awhile 828.9
awkward
mortifying 98.21
bulky 257.19
bungling 414.20
stiff 534.3
ignorant 930.12
inconvenient 996.7
unwieldy 1013.19
awning 1028.1
AWOL
n absence 222.4
flight 368.4
adj truant 222.13
awry
adj askew 204.14
disorderly 810.13
erroneous 975.16
adv askew 204.22
ax
n blade 462.5
execution 605.5
cutlery 1040.2
v sever 802.11
axial
flowing 172.8
central 208.11
axiom fact 761.3
essence 767.2
premise 935.7
supposition 951.3
a belief 953.2
truth 974.2
axiomatic
manifest 348.8
real 761.15
obvious 970.15
aphoristic 974.6
axis center 208.2
straight line 277.2
stem 310.21
association 617.1
fulcrum 906.3
axle 915.5
axle 915.5
an ax to grind
prejudgment 947.1
narrow-mindedness 980.1
aye
n affirmative 332.2
vote 371.6
consent 441.1
side 935.14
adv forever 829.12
interj yes 332.18
azimuth
navigation 159.3
position 161.1
direction 161.2
horizon 201.4
coordinates 300.5
azure
n blueness 45.1
heraldry 647.2
the heavens 1072.2
v blue 45.2
adj blue 45.3
Babbitt
vulgarian 497.6
conformist 867.2
babble
n nonsense 520.2
Greek 522.7
chatter 540.3
v ripple 52.11
betray 351.6
talk nonsense 520.5
be incomprehensible 522.10
chatter 540.5
be insane 926.20
babbling
n divulgence 351.2
v chattering 540.10
adj rippling 52.19
mentally deficient 922.22
delirious 926.31
babe woman 77.6
gal 302.7
infant 302.9
dupe 358.1
simple soul 416.3
endearment term 562.6
innocent 657.4
Babel clash 61.2
Greek 522.7
confusion 810.2
commotion 810.4
pandemonium 810.5
baboon 1015.4
baby
n weakling 16.6
loved one 104.11
ladylove 104.15
miniature 258.6
youngster 302.1
gal 302.7
infant 302.9
simple soul 416.3
coward 491.5
endearment term 562.6
innocent 657.4
jockey 757.2
beginner 818.2
adj miniature 258.12
infant 301.12
baby boom
reproduction 78.1
intensification 251.2
babyish infant 301.12
puerile 922.24
Babylon 654.7
baby-sit 1008.19
baby-sitter 1008.8
baccalaureate 648.6
bacchanal spree 88.5
drinker 88.11
bacchic 926.30
Bacchus 88.2
bachelor
single man 565.3
knight 608.5
degree 648.6
bachelor girl
woman 77.5
single woman 565.4
bachelorhood independence 430.5
unmarried 565.1
bacillus 85.42
back
n exterior 206.2
setting 209.2
rear 217.1
dorsum 217.3
speech organ 524.18
type 548.6
makeup 554.12
football team 746.2
soccer team 752.2
supporter 901.2
v reverse 163.7
move 172.5
backwater 182.34
mount 193.12
be behind 217.8
secure 438.9
back up 449.13
commend 509.11
benefit 592.3
support 609.41
finance 729.16
bet 759.25
subsidize 901.21
confirm 957.11
stiffen 1046.9
adj backward 163.12
flowing 172.8
rear 217.9
hinterland 233.9
phonetic 524.30
due 623.10
past 837.12

late 846.16
adv backwards 163.13
in compensation 338.7
in reserve 386.17
ago 837.15
backache
ache 26.5
symptom 85.9
back and forth
n alternation 916.5
adj alternate 916.19
adv reciprocally 777.12
changeably 854.8
to and fro 916.21
back away 163.7
backbiting
n slander 512.3
adj disparaging 512.13
backbone pluck 359.3
fearlessness 492.4
supporter 901.2
backbreaking
laborious 725.18
troublesome 1013.18
back burner
n discontinuance 390.2
adj insignificant 998.17
back country
n open space 158.4
hinterland 233.2
adj country 233.9
backdoor 345.12
back door rear 217.1
secret passage 346.5
byway 383.4
back down
n recant 363.8
v retreat 163.6
hesitate 362.7
yield 433.7
backdrop setting 209.2
scenery 704.20
backer giver 478.11
friend 588.1
benefactor 592.1
supporter 616.9
patron 704.26
financer 729.10
backfill 266.3
backfire
n explosion 671.7
counteraction 900.1
recoil 903.2
fire 1019.13
v explode 671.14
recoil 903.6
backflow 238.12
background
setting 209.2
the distance 261.3
experience 413.9
arena 463.1
motif 498.7
plot 722.4
cause 886.1
source 886.5
backhanded
insulting 156.8
oblique 204.13
circuitous 914.7
backing
n regress 163.3
course 172.2
means 384.2
consent 441.1
patronage 449.4
bookbinding 554.14
film 714.10
financing 729.2
reversion 859.1
support 901.1
supporter 901.2
frame 901.10
confirmation 957.4
adj approving 509.17
benefitting 592.4
backlash
n retaliation 506.1
impact 887.2
counteraction 900.1
recoil 903.2
v recoil 903.6
backlist 558.4
backlog
n store 386.1
reserve 386.3
firewood 1021.3
v store up 386.11
back matter
added to writing 254.2
makeup 554.12
part of a book 793.2
sequel 817.1
back number
n edition 554.5
old man 842.8
adj trite 117.9
old-fashioned 842.16
back off retreat 163.6
reverse 163.7
hesitate 362.7
not interfere 430.17
drive 756.4
back out
n recant 363.8
v retreat 163.6
abandon 370.5
lose one's nerve 491.8
backpack 177.30
backpedal
reverse 163.7
slow 175.9
back room 381.1
back scratching
n obsequiousness 138.2
political influence 609.29
trading 863.2
adj obsequious 138.14
back seat
rear 217.1
inferiority 250.1
subservience 432.2
backseat driver
traveler 178.10
meddler 214.4
adviser 422.3
back side
rear 217.1
buttocks 217.5
golf 751.1
back side forward 205.7
backslapper 511.4
backslide
regress 163.5
invert 205.5
relapse 394.4
go wrong 654.9
revert 859.4
backstage
n stage 704.16
adv on the boards 704.36
back stairs
n stairs 193.3
secret passage 346.5
byway 383.4
adj covert 345.12
backstop
baseball team 745.2
safeguard 1008.3
barrier 1012.5
backstroke 182.11
back talk sass 142.4
answer 939.1
back to back
following 166.5
opposite 215.6
behind 217.13
cooperatively 450.6
same 781.6
continuously 812.8
consecutively 812.9
ongoing 812.10
sequentially 812.11
backtrack
n reverse 163.3
v reverse 163.7
backup
n reverse 163.3
reserve 386.3
deputy 576.1
game 750.2
successor 817.4
substitute 862.2
support 901.1
adj substitute 862.8
back up
reverse 163.7
move 172.5
be behind 217.8
back 449.13
represent 576.14
second 609.41
support 901.21
confirm 957.11
backward
adj reserved 139.11
reversed 163.12
flowing 172.8
retarded 175.12
inverted 205.7
rear 217.9
reluctant 325.6
distorted 342.3
reticent 344.10
undeveloped 406.12
back 837.12
late 846.16
dilatory 846.17
conservative 853.8
mentally deficient 922.22
adv inversely 205.8
rearward 217.15
ago 837.15
late 846.19
backwater
n eddy 238.12
recant 363.8
v reverse 163.7
slow 175.9
back 182.34
back when 837.15
backwoods
n hinterland 233.2
adj country 233.9
backyard rear guard 217.2
area 231.1
bacteria 85.42
bacterial 258.15
bactericide 86.21
bad
n vice 593.1
iniquity 654.3
evil 1000.3
adj nasty 64.7
malodorous 71.5
unhealthful 82.5
ill 85.56
diseased 85.60
ominous 133.17
dying 307.33
misbehaving 322.5
crippled 393.30
decayed 393.40
wicked 654.16
inexpedient 996.5
excellent 999.13
evil 1000.7
dangerous 1006.9
adv badly 1000.13
bad blood
bad feeling 93.7
malevolence 144.4
hostility 451.2
disaccord 456.1
animosity 589.4
bad chemistry 93.7
bad egg 660.4
bad faith
falseheartedness 354.4
violation 435.2
infidelity 645.5
bad for 82.5
badge sign 517.1
identification 517.11
insignia 647.1
military symbol 647.5
characteristic 865.4
badger annoy 96.13
wrest 480.22
bad guy
evildoer 593.1
actor 707.2
bad hand
handwriting 547.6
poker 759.10
badinage 490.1
badlands 891.2
bad lot
reprobate 660.4
bad person 660.5
badly off poor 619.7
unfortunate 1011.14

bad-mouth
be disrespectful 156.6
defame 512.9
underestimate 950.2
attach little importance to 998.12
bad move 975.4
bad name 661.1
bad news
good news 552.2
bad person 660.1
bad press 510.4
bad rap 650.4
bad taste
unsavoriness 64.1
vulgarity 497.1
inelegance 534.1
bad temper
ill humor 110.1
malevolence 144.4
temper 152.6
bad trip 87.1
bad turn 144.13
bad vibes 93.7
bad word oath 513.4
barbarism 526.6
baffle
n silencer 51.4
bewilderment 971.3
v muffle 51.9
disappoint 132.2
be incomprehensible 522.10
perplex 971.13
thwart 1012.15
baffled
disappointed 132.5
in a dilemma 971.25
at an impasse 1013.24
bafflement
disappointment 132.1
discomfiture 412.2
bewilderment 971.3
frustration 1012.3
baffling
bewildering 971.27
frustrating 1012.20
bag
n genitals 2.13
contraceptive 86.23
dose 87.20
sack 195.2
hang 202.2
quantity 247.3
breast 283.6
old woman 304.3
preference 371.5
take 480.10
occupation 724.1
purse 729.15
baseball 745.1
mode 765.4
bundle 770.8
specialty 866.1
eyesore 1015.4
v load 159.15
hang 202.6
package 212.9
bulge 283.11
acquire 472.9
catch 480.17
rob 482.16
bundle 770.20
bag and baggage
n impedimenta 471.3
adv free and clear 469.12
completely 794.14
bagatelle
hardly anything 248.5
trifle 998.5
baggage
freight 176.6
container 195.1
impedimenta 471.3
strumpet 665.14
baggy
drooping 202.10
formless 263.4
bulging 283.15
loose 804.5
bag of tricks 384.2
bag lady 619.4
bagman
traveling salesman 730.4
fence 732.6
bookmaker 759.20
bag person displaced person 160.4
vagabond 178.3
transient 828.4
baignoire 704.15
bail
n pledge 438.2
arraignment 598.3
v ladle 176.17
bailiff steward 574.4
policeman 1008.15
bailiwick area 231.2
region 231.5
arena 463.1
bureau 594.4
occupation 724.4
sphere of influence 894.4
bail out
n rescue 398.1
aid 449.1
v parachute 184.47
emerge 190.11
escape 369.6
pledge 438.10
aid 449.11
bait
n snare 356.13
incentive 375.7
lure 377.3
v annoy 96.13
lure 377.5
discriminate against 980.8
baited 96.24
bake cook 11.5
pot 742.6
be hot 1019.22
dry 1066.6
baker 11.3
baker's dozen
extra 254.4
gratuity 478.5
thirteen 882.7
bakery food preparation 11.4
sweetness 66.1
baking
n cooking 11.2
adj hot 1019.25
balance
n equanimity 106.3
mean 246.1
difference 255.8
remainder 256.1
symmetry 264.1
offset 338.2
supply 386.2
harmony 533.2
account 628.2
justice 649.1
moderation 670.1
treatment 712.9
funds 728.14
correlation 777.1
equality 790.1
stability 855.1
sensibleness 920.6
sanity 925.1
comparability 943.3
surplus 993.5
v symmetrize 264.3
weigh 297.10
offset 338.5
hesitate 362.7
keep accounts 628.8
make uniform 781.4
equal 790.5
make the same 790.6
stabilize 855.7
compare 943.4
check 1017.21
balanced
composed 106.13
symmetric 264.4
harmonious 533.8
just 649.8
uniform 781.5
poised 790.9
stable 855.12
neutralizing 900.9
sensible 920.18
sane 925.4
balance sheet 628.4
balance the books
keep accounts 628.8
equalize 790.6
check 1017.21
balcony
gallery 197.22
auditorium 704.15
platform 901.13
bald hairless 6.17
uncovered 292.17
open 348.10
unadorned 499.8
plain-speaking 535.3
balderdash
nonsense 520.2
bombast 545.2
bale
n wretchedness 96.6
burden 297.7
bundle 770.8
v bundle 770.20
balk
n disappointment 132.1
discomfiture 412.2
game 745.3
slip 975.4
frustration 1012.3
v disappoint 132.2
refuse 325.3
stickle 361.7
thwart 1012.15
balky
reluctant 325.6
obstinate 361.8
ball
n sphere 282.2
shot 462.19
dance 705.2
fun 743.2
baseball 745.1
prolate spheroid 746.1
football team 746.2
basketball 747.1
tennis 748.1
field hockey 749.4
bowling 750.1
bocci 750.3
soccer 752.1
assembly 770.2
projectile 904.5
v copulate 75.21
snowball 282.7
have a party 582.21
ballad
n popular music 708.7
song 708.14
v sing 708.38
balladeer
minstrel 710.14
composer 710.20
balladry 708.11
ball and chain
wife 563.8
impediment 1012.6
ballast
n counterbalance 297.4
offset 338.2
light source 1026.1
v trim ship 182.49
weight 297.12
stabilize 855.7
ball bearing 915.7
ballerina 705.3
ballet
n musical theater 708.34
adj dramatic 704.33
balletic
dramatic 704.33
dancing 705.6
ball game 766.2
ballistic 904.15
ballistics 462.3
ball of fire
energizer 17.6
man of action 330.8
balloon
n aerostat 181.11
bag 195.2
sphere 282.2
bubble 320.1
v grow 14.2
fly 184.36
increase 251.6
enlarge 259.5
ball 282.7
bulge 283.11

ballooning
n aviation 184.1
increase 251.1
adj drooping 202.10
bulging 283.15
balloonist 185.7
ballot
n vote 371.6
slate 609.19
v vote 371.18
ballpark figure
measurement 300.1
gamble 971.8
ballroom hall 197.4
dance emporium 705.4
entertainment 743.13
balls genitals 2.13
fearlessness 492.4
bull 520.3
ballsy 492.19
ball up
n confusion 810.2
v spoil 393.11
complicate 799.3
confuse 811.3
ballyhoo
n publicity 352.4
exaggeration 355.1
sales talk 734.5
v publicize 352.15
exaggerate 355.3
balm anesthetic 25.3
perfumery 70.2
remedy 86.1
medicine 86.4
lotion 86.11
condolence 147.1
moderator 670.3
ointment 1056.3
balmy fragrant 70.9
palliative 86.40
bright 97.11
relieving 120.9
crazy 926.27
thriving 1010.13
balneal 79.28
baloney
humbug 354.14
bullshit 520.3
balsa 180.11
balsam perfumery 70.2
remedy 86.1
medicine 86.4
balm 86.11
ointment 1056.3
balsamic
palliative 86.40
relieving 120.9
balustrade fence 212.4
post 273.4
base 901.8
bambino 302.9
bamboo grass 310.5
cane 1054.4
bamboo curtain
frontier 211.5
veil of secrecy 345.3
barrier 1012.5
bamboozle
deceive 356.14
stump 971.14
ban
n prohibition 444.1
disapproval 510.1
curse 513.1
ostracism 586.3
exclusion 773.1
v excise 255.10
prohibit 444.3
disapprove 510.10
ostracize 586.6
exclude 773.4
banish 909.17
banal trite 117.9
medium 246.3
aphoristic 974.6
banality triteness 117.3
platitude 974.3
bananas 926.27
band
n stripe 47.5
dressing 86.33
strip 271.4
circle 280.3
layer 296.1
jewel 498.6
line 517.6
association 617.1
orchestra 710.12
tennis 748.1
company 770.3
frequency 1034.13
v variegate 47.7
encircle 209.7
cooperate 450.3
put together 800.5
bind 800.9
bandage
n dressing 86.33
strip 271.4
wrapper 295.18
v blind 30.7
treat 91.24
bind 800.9
Band-Aid 86.33
band-aid
n pretext 376.1
adj makeshift 995.7
B and B 228.15
bandeau brassiere 5.24
heraldry 647.2
supporter 901.2
banded 47.15
bandied about 552.15
bandit
military aircraft 181.9
brigand 483.4
banditry theft 482.3
plundering 482.6
bandmaster 710.17
bandstand 704.16
band together
cooperate 450.3
accompany 769.7
league 805.4
the bandwagon 578.5
bandwidth 1042.18
bandy
n field hockey 749.4
v interchange 863.4
adj deformed 265.12
bowed 279.10
bandy about
publish 352.10
interchange 863.4
bandy-legged 265.12
bane death 307.1
killing 308.1
end 395.2
destroyer 395.8
enemy 589.6
evil 1000.3
affliction 1001.1
curse 1001.1
baneful
unhealthful 82.5
horrid 98.19
ominous 133.17
deadly 308.23
harmful 1000.12
disastrous 1011.15
bang
n tuft 3.6
energy 17.3
power 18.1
noise 53.3
report 56.1
detonation 56.3
dose 87.20
excitement 105.3
gunfire 459.8
explosion 671.7
production 893.2
hit 902.4
blow 902.5
v din 53.7
crack 56.6
blast 56.8
close 293.6
collide 902.13
strike 902.15
pound 902.16
adv suddenly 830.9
interj boom! 56.13
banging crashing 56.11
large 257.21
bangle 498.6
bang one's head against a brick wall
be impotent 19.7
be useless 391.8
bangs 3.6
banish
ostracize 586.6
expel 909.17
banishment
ostracism 586.3
relegation 909.4
banister
post 273.4
base 901.8
bank
n incline 204.4
border 211.4
side 218.1
shore 234.2
slope 237.2
shoal 276.2
storehouse 386.6
preserve 397.7
lending institution 620.4
treasury 729.13
banking house 729.14
workplace 739.1
pot 759.5
pile 770.10
series 812.2
buttress 901.4
barrier 1012.5
mine 1058.6
v maneuver 184.40
incline 204.10
store 386.10
fortify 460.9
pile 770.19
ignite 1020.22
bankable useful 387.18
valuable 387.22
gainful 472.16
paying 624.21
bank account
account 622.2
funds 728.14
bankbook 628.4
banker
lender 620.3
money dealer 729.11
businessman 730.1
bingo 759.15
bank holiday 20.4
banking
maneuvers 184.13
money dealing 729.5
bank note 728.5
bank on
hope 124.7
plan 380.6
rely upon 953.16
bankroll
n means 384.2
roll 728.17
v subsidize 478.19
finance 729.16
bankrupt
n failure 410.7
poor man 619.4
insolvent 625.4
v impoverish 619.6
ruin 625.8
adj ruined 395.28
destitute 619.9
insolvent 625.11
bankruptcy
impairment 393.1
failure 410.1
insolvency 625.3
bank statement 627.2
bank upon
rely on 953.16
plan 380.6
banned
prohibited 444.7
excluded 773.7
banner
n poster 352.7
rallying device 458.12
sign 517.1
trophy 646.3
flag 647.7
caption 937.2
adj chief 249.14
banns
betrothal 436.3
wedding 563.3

banquet
n feast 8.9
festival 743.4
v feast 8.24
banshee
fairy 678.8
specter 988.1
Bantam 311.29
bantam
n runt 258.4
adj miniature 258.12
bantamweight
n weight 297.3
adj lightweight 298.13
banter
n buffoonery 489.5
kidding 490.1
badinage 490.1
ridicule 508.1
v twit 490.5
banty
n runt 258.4
poultry 311.29
field hockey 749.4
adj miniature 258.12
banzai
n call to arms 458.8
interj attack! 459.32
baptism
admission 187.2
submergence 367.2
naming 527.2
christening 701.6
wetting 1065.6
baptismal
introductory 187.18
ritualistic 701.19
baptistery
baptism 701.6
church 703.9
baptize
dilute 16.11
wash 79.19
submerge 367.7
name 527.11
christen 701.17
bar
n stripe 47.5
barroom 88.20
island 235.2
line 267.3
shaft 273.1
shoal 276.2
obstruction 293.3
wild animal 311.23
lock 428.5
line 517.6
legal profession 597.4
heraldry 647.2
military insignia 647.5
staff 708.29
notation 709.12
precious metals 728.20
exclusion 773.1
table 901.15
lever 906.4
barrier 1012.5
v variegate 47.7
cross 170.6
fence 212.7
excise 255.10
close 293.6
stop 293.7
prohibit 444.3
exclude 773.4
make impossible 967.6
obstruct 1012.12
prevent 1012.14
prep excluding 773.10
barb
n whiskers 3.10
feather part 3.17
bristle 288.3
arrow 462.6
v sharpen 285.7
barbarian
n savage 497.7
evildoer 593.5
alien 774.3
adj unrefined 497.12
extraneous 774.5
barbaric
cruel 144.26
unrefined 497.12
inelegant 534.2
savage 671.21
extraneous 774.5
barbarism
unrefinement 497.3
corruption 526.6
solecism 531.2
inelegance 534.1
unenlightenment 930.4
barbecue
n meal 8.6
meat 10.13
v cook 11.5
barbed 285.9
barbel
whiskers 3.10
feeler 73.4
bristle 288.3
barbell fitness 84.1
exerciser 725.7
barber
n beautician 1016.13
v cut the hair 3.22
barbershop 1016.14
barbershop quartet 708.18
barbiturates 87.5
bar code
n mark 517.5
v label 517.20
bard
minstrel 710.14
poet 720.11
bare
v divest 6.5
unclose 292.12
disclose 351.4
adj naked 6.14
vacant 222.14
mere 248.8
open 292.17
uncovered 348.10
worn 393.31
unadorned 499.8
plain-speaking 535.3
simple 798.6
unmixed 798.7
bare-boned 270.17
bare bones
n base 199.2
adj mere 248.8
essential 767.9
simple 798.6
bared 6.12
barefaced
bare 6.16
brazen 142.11
barefoot unshod 6.15
ascetic 667.4
bare-handed
bare 6.16
ill-provided 992.12
unprotected 1006.14
bare-headed 6.16
barely nakedly 6.19
scarcely 248.9
narrowly 270.22
simply 798.11
bare minimum 991.1
bare necessities 963.2
barf
n vomiting 909.8
v feel disgust 99.4
vomit 909.27
barfly 88.11
barfy nasty 64.7
filthy 80.23
nauseated 85.57
bad 1000.8
bargain
n compact 437.1
compromise 468.1
advantageous purchase 633.3
deal 731.5
v plan 380.6
contract 437.5
treat with 437.6
mediate 466.6
confer 541.11
organize 727.9
haggle 731.18
make a deal 731.19
bargain-basement 633.8
bargain-hunter 733.5
barge haul 176.13
way of walking 177.28
barge in enter 189.7
intrude 214.5
baritone
n part 708.22
voice 709.5
adj deep 54.11
vocal 708.50
bark
n detonation 56.3
cry 59.1
animal noise 60.1
ship 180.1
skin 295.3
hull 295.16
v peel 6.8
blast 56.8
cry 59.6
yelp 60.2
publicize 352.15
injure 393.13
berate 510.19
speak 524.25
abrade 1044.7
barker publicist 352.9
theater man 704.23
solicitor 730.7
barley 10.4
barmaid
liquor dealer 88.19
waiter 577.7
bar mitzvah 701.6
barmy leavening 298.17
foamy 320.7
crazy 926.27
barn 228.20
barnacle parasite 138.5
adhesive 803.4
barnstorm
pilot 184.37
act 704.29
Barnumesque 105.32
barnyard 1069.8
barometer
measure 300.2
weather instrument 317.8
feeler 942.4
barometric 317.13
baron nobleman 608.4
businessman 730.1
personage 997.8
baronet
nobleman 608.4
knight 608.5
baroque
n ornateness 498.2
adj ornate 498.12
freakish 870.13
fanciful 986.20
barracks
n camp 228.29
v restrict 428.9
barrage
n staccato 55.1
volley 459.9
barrier 1012.5
v pull the trigger 459.22
barred striped 47.15
netlike 170.11
enclosed 212.10
closed 293.9
prohibited 444.7
excluded 773.7
impossible 967.7
barrel
n feather part 3.17
quantity 247.3
cylinder 282.4
wealth 618.3
v speed 174.9
package 212.9
barrel-chested 15.16
barrel organ 711.14
barren
n wasteland 891.2
adj ineffective 19.15
dull 117.6
vacant 222.14
fruitless 391.12
unproductive 891.4
unimaginative 987.5
barrens 891.2
barricade fortify 460.9
obstruct 1012.12
barrier boundary 211.3

fence 212.4
partition 213.5
obstruction 293.3
lock 428.5
fortification 460.4
horse racing 757.1
bar 1012.5
barring
n exclusion 773.1
prep off 255.14
excluding 773.10
barrio 230.6
barrister 597.1
barroom 88.20
barrow hill 237.4
tomb 309.16
swine 311.9
monument 549.12
bartender
liquor dealer 88.19
waiter 577.7
barter
n transfer 629.1
commerce 731.2
trading 863.2
v transfer 629.3
trade 731.15
basal basic 199.8
essential 767.9
original 886.14
basalt 1059.1
base
n station 159.2
point of departure 188.5
basement 199.2
headquarters 208.6
bottom 274.4
baseball 745.1
cause 886.1
foundation 901.6
pedestal 901.8
makeup 1016.12
acid 1060.3
v establish 159.16
adj offensive 98.18
servile 138.13
inadequate 250.7
dastardly 491.12
vulgar 497.15
populational 606.8
knavish 645.17
wicked 654.16
low 661.12
terrible 1000.9
inferior 1005.9
baseboard 199.2
baseborn
populational 606.8
illegitimate 674.7
base camp 760.6
based on
supported 901.24
evidential 957.16
contingent 959.9
baseless
unsubstantiated 764.8
groundless 936.13
baseline
point of departure 188.5
baseball 745.1
basketball 747.1
tennis 748.1
basement latrine 12.10
cellar 197.17
base 199.2
storehouse 386.6
foundation 901.6
base metals 1058.3
baseness 497.1
base pay 624.4
bash
n attempt 403.3
party 582.12
blow 902.5
v injure 393.13
censure 510.13
strike 902.15
discriminate against 980.8
work evil 1000.6
bashful fearful 127.23
shy 139.12
demurring 325.7
unsociable 583.5
reticent 344.10
bashing
persecution 389.3
censure 510.3
basic basal 199.8
essential 767.9
simple 798.6
original 886.14
vital 997.23
chemical 1060.9
basics
elementary education 568.5
essentials 818.6
basic training
preparation 405.1
training 568.3
basilar 199.8
basilica 703.1
basin washbasin 79.12
container 195.1
bed 199.4
plain 236.1
valley 237.7
cavity 284.2
harbor 1009.6
basis
point of departure 188.5
motive 375.1
warrant 600.6
cause 886.1
foundation 901.6
premise 935.7
topic 937.1
outlook 978.2
bask 1020.19
basket
n genitals 2.13
container 195.1
basketball 747.1
score 747.3
v package 212.9
basket case
fool 924.3
idiot 924.8
basketwork 170.3
bask in 95.13
bas-relief
protuberance 283.2
relief 715.3
bass
n part 708.22
voice 709.5
adj deep 54.11
vocal 708.50
bassist 710.5
basso 709.5
basso continuo 708.22
bastard
n man 76.5
illegitimate 561.5
bad person 660.5
adj spurious 354.26
illegitimate 674.7
bastardize 797.12
baste cook 11.5
whip 604.13
pound 902.16
bastille 429.8
bastion 460.6
bat
n the blind 30.4
drinking spree 88.6
tennis 748.1
blow 902.5
v play 745.5
strike 902.15
batch
n amount 244.2
lot 247.4
lump 257.10
bunch 770.7
product 893.4
v assemble 770.18
bate decrease 252.6
abate 252.8
subtract 255.9
blunt 286.2
discount 631.2
relax 670.9
bated muffled 52.17
reduced 252.10
bath
n bathe 79.8
dip 79.9
shower 79.10
washbasin 79.12
wetting 1065.6
v wash 79.19
bathe
n bath 79.8
aquatics 182.11
v wash 79.19
treat 91.24
swim 182.56
soak 1065.13
bather 182.12
bathetic 93.21
bathhouse 79.10
bathing
balneation 79.7
aquatics 182.11
wetting 1065.6
bathing suit 5.29
bathos
sentimentality 93.8
sadness 112.1
anticlimax 488.3
bathrobe 5.21
bathroom
latrine 12.10
bathing place 79.10
lavatory 197.26
baths
bathing place 79.10
health resort 91.23
spa 228.27
bathtub 79.12
bathysphere 367.5
bat of an eye 830.3
baton staff 273.2
scepter 417.9
insignia 647.1
heraldry 647.2
stigma 661.6
illegitimacy 674.2
music 711.22
batrachian
n amphibian 311.27
adj reptile 311.48
bats 926.27
battalion
military unit 461.22
company 770.3
batten
n strip 271.4
scenery 704.20
v close 293.6
gluttonize 672.4
hook 800.8
secure 855.8
thrive 1010.8
batter
n baseball team 745.2
semiliquid 1062.5
v mistreat 389.5
injure 393.13
thrash soundly 604.14
rage 671.11
pound 902.16
work evil 1000.6
battered 393.33
battering trauma 85.38
unruliness 671.3
battery
military unit 461.22
artillery 462.11
corporal punishment 604.4
baseball team 745.2
electrical device 1032.21
battle
n contention 457.4
war 458.1
operation 458.5
struggle 725.3
fight 754.3
v oppose 451.4
quarrel 456.11
contend 457.13
war 458.14
fortify 460.9
struggle 725.11
battle-ax 110.12
battle cry cry 59.1
challenge 454.2
call to arms 458.8
call 517.16
battledore
textbook 554.10
elastic 1048.3
battle fatigue 92.14
battlefield 463.2

battlefront
  vanguard 216.2
  battlefield 463.2
battlement 289.3
battleship 180.7
batty foolish 923.9
  crazy 926.27
bauble trinket 498.4
  toy 743.16
  trifle 998.5
bawd 665.18
bawdy
  lascivious 665.29
  obscene 666.9
bawdyhouse 665.9
bawl
  n cry 59.1
  lament 115.3
  v sob 59.6
  cry 60.2
  weep 115.12
  wail 115.13
  speak 524.25
bawl out 510.18
bay
  n blare 53.5
  nook 197.3
  shore 234.2
  ocean 240.3
  inlet 242.1
  recess 284.7
  horse 311.11
  storehouse 386.6
  v blare 53.10
  cry 60.2
  adj reddish-brown 40.4
bay at the moon
  cry 60.2
  wail 115.13
  be useless 391.8
bayonet 459.25
bayou tributary 238.3
  inlet 242.1
bayside
  n shore 234.2
  adj coastal 234.7
bay window 2.19
bazaar sale 734.3
  marketplace 736.2
bazooka
  weapon 462.21
  rocket launcher 1074.10
BC 821.13
be exist 761.8
be able 18.11
beach
  n shore 234.2
  golf 751.1
  v shipwreck 182.42
beachcomber
  vagabond 178.3
  bum 331.9
  wretch 660.2
beachfront
  n shore 234.2
  adj coastal 234.7
beachhead
  vanguard 216.2
  stronghold 460.6
beachside 234.7
beacon
  n observation post 27.8
  flying marker 184.19
  alarm 400.1
  signal 517.15
  fire 1019.13
  torch 1026.3
  v lead 165.2
  shine 1025.23
  illuminate 1025.28
bead
  n drop 282.3
  v ball 282.7
  figure 498.9
beaded beady 282.10
  ornamented 498.11
beaded brow 12.7
beading 211.7
beadle 1008.15
beads jewel 498.6
  prayer 696.4
beagle detective 576.11
  jockey 757.2
  policeman 1008.15
beak
  n prow 216.3
  spout 239.8
  nose 283.8
  judge 596.1
  v tap 902.18
beaked 279.8
be-all and end-all
  end 820.1
  supremacy 249.3
  all 792.3
beam
  n smile 116.3
  flying marker 184.19
  side 218.1
  breadth 269.1
  shaft 273.3
  buttress 901.4
  lever 906.4
  ray 1025.5
  radio wave 1034.10
  television 1035.4
  signal 1036.11
  wood 1054.3
  v be pleased 95.12
  exude cheerfulness 109.6
  smile 116.7
  look good 1016.17
  shine 1025.23
  broadcast 1034.25
  transmit 1036.15
be a man 492.10
beaming happy 95.16
  cheerful 109.11
  gorgeous 1016.21
  luminous 1025.30
beam out 171.6
bean man 76.5
  head 198.6
  plant 310.4
  brain 919.6
  trifle 998.5
beanery 8.17
beanpole slim 270.8
  longlegs 272.7
beans vegetables 10.35
  mescaline 87.13
  nothing 762.3
beanstalk 270.8
bear
  n sorehead 110.11
  wild animal 311.23
  short 737.12
  v give birth 1.3
  endure 134.5
  take direction 161.7
  transport 176.12
  submit 433.6
  suffer 443.10
  aid 449.12
  hold 474.7
  afford 626.7
  exert oneself 725.9
  manipulate the market 737.25
  engender 818.14
  cause 886.10
  yield 892.13
  support 901.21
  thrust 902.12
  suffice 991.4
bearable 107.13
bear arms 458.18
beard
  n genitals 2.13
  whiskers 3.8
  type 548.6
  v defy 454.3
  brave 492.11
beardless hairless 6.17
  childish 301.11
bear down
  aggrieve 112.19
  work hard 725.13
  depress 913.4
bear down on
  approach 167.3
  sail for 182.35
  press 424.6
bearer carrier 176.7
  mourner 309.7
  supporter 901.2
bear false witness
  swear falsely 354.20
  trump up a charge 599.12
bear fruit ripen 407.8
  evolve 861.5
  bear 892.13
bear hug hold 474.2
  wrestling 474.3
  embrace 562.3
bearing
  n looks 33.4
  navigation 159.3
  direction 161.1
  transportation 176.3
  behavior 321.1
  yield 472.5
  gesture 517.14
  meaning 518.1
  relevance 775.4
  origin 818.4
  producing 892.6
  trend 896.2
  fulcrum 906.3
  ball bearing 915.7
  adj born 1.4
  yielding 890.10
  supporting 901.23
bearings location 159.1
  navigation 159.3
  orientation 161.4
  heraldry 647.2
  state 765.1
bear in mind think of 931.16
  take cognizance of 983.9
  keep in memory 989.13
bearish
  irascible 110.19
  ursine 311.44
  gruff 505.7
bear malice
  harshen 144.15
  bear ill will 589.8
bear market 737.5
bear on
  weigh on 297.11
  relate to 775.5
  operate on 889.6
  rest on 901.22
  evidence 957.8
bear one's cross 134.5
bear out
  support 449.12
  confirm 957.11
bear the brunt
  endure 134.5
  have trouble 1011.9
bear up
  not weaken 15.10
  be of good cheer 109.10
  comfort 121.6
  approach 167.3
  buoy 298.8
  stay with it 360.4
  support 449.12
  resist 453.2
  keep up one's courage 492.15
  support 901.21
bear upon
  exercise influence 894.9
  thrust 902.12
bear with endure 134.5
  condone 148.4
  be easy on 427.5
  suffer 443.10
bear witness
  be pious 692.6
  testify 957.9
beastly hoggish 80.24
  offensive 98.18
  horrid 98.19
  cruel 144.26
  animal 311.40
  gruff 505.7
  carnal 663.6
  terrible 1000.9
beast of burden
  pack animal 176.8
  drudge 726.3
beat
  n staccato 55.1
  parasite 138.5
  sphere 231.2
  routine 373.5
  route 383.1
  accent 524.10
  news item 552.3
  rhythm 709.22
  tempo 709.24

throb 709.26
meter 720.7
occupation 724.4
periodicity 850.2
round 850.3
circuit 914.2
pulsation 916.3
flutter 917.4
v get tired 21.6
drum 55.4
sail near the wind 182.25
change course 182.30
best 249.7
foam 320.5
deceive 356.19
hunt 382.9
injure 393.13
vanquish 411.5
defeat 412.9
whip 604.13
time 708.44
din 849.10
pound 902.16
pulsate 916.12
agitate 917.10
flutter 917.12
stump 971.14
pulverize 1051.9
adj tired 21.8
defeated 412.15
without money 619.10
unconventional 868.6
licked 971.26
beat about
change course 182.30
grope 938.32
be uncertain 971.9
have difficulty 1013.11
beat a dead horse
be useless 391.8
dwell on 849.9
persist 856.5
carry coals to Newcastle 993.12
beat around the bush
dodge 368.8
circumlocute 538.10
quibble 936.9
beat back 908.3
beat down
sadden 112.18
raze 395.19
subdue 432.9
domineer 612.16
cheapen 633.6
bargain 731.18
beaten burnt-out 21.10
bubbly 320.6
habitual 373.14
defeated 412.14
beaten path
routine 373.5
path 383.2
beater hunter 382.5
mixer 797.9
agitator 917.9
beatific happy 95.16
blissful 97.9
heavenly 681.12
beatified happy 95.16
eminent 662.18
angelic 679.6
heavenly 681.12
sanctified 685.8
raised 912.9
beatify gladden 95.9
glorify 662.13
sanctify 685.5
exalt 912.6
beating
n staccato 55.1
defeat 412.1
corporal punishment 604.4
hit 902.4
pulsation 916.3
flutter 917.4
pulverization 1051.4
adj staccato 55.7
rhythmic 709.28
periodic 850.7
pulsative 916.18
beat into one's head
inculcate 568.12
convince 953.18
beat it
v depart 188.7
leave 222.10
flee 368.11
interj go away! 909.31
beatitude
happiness 95.2
sanctification 685.3
beatnik 868.3
beat one's brains 931.9
beat one's breast 115.11
beat out best 249.7
pulsate 916.12
beat someone to the punch 845.6
beat the drum for
publicize 352.15
espouse 509.13
beat the rap
get off 369.7
go free 431.9
beat the system 409.13
beat time
keep rhythm 708.44
time 832.11
pulsate 916.12
beat up
v punish 604.15
agitate 917.10
emulsify 1062.10
adj tired 21.8
spoiled 393.29
dilapidated 393.33
slovenly 810.15
beau
n inamorato 104.13
dandy 500.9
v court 562.21
Beau Brummel
dandy 500.9
person of fashion 578.7
beaucoup
adj much 247.8
plural 883.7
plentiful 991.7
adv greatly 247.15
beau monde noble 608.1
the rich 618.6
beaut
first-rate 999.7
beauty 1016.9
beautician 1016.13
beautification
development 392.2
prettification 1016.11
beautified
improved 392.13
beautifying 1016.23
beautiful
adj artistic 712.20
beauteous 1016.18
interj bravo! 509.22
beautiful people 578.6
beautify
develop 392.10
ornament 498.8
prettify 1016.16
beauty harmony 533.2
attractiveness 1016.1
beautifulness 1016.1
charmer 1016.8
beauty parlor
workplace 739.1
salon de beauté 1016.14
beauty queen 1016.8
beauty sleep 22.2
beaux arts 712.1
beaver
n beard 3.8
man of action 330.8
v work hard 725.13
bebop 708.9
becalm 173.11
becalmed 173.17
because 888.10
bechance 972.11
becharm
delight 95.10
enamor 104.23
fascinate 377.7
charm 691.8
beck and call 420.5
beckon
n gesture 517.14
v attract 377.6
gesture 517.21
becloud fog 319.7
conceal 346.6
confuse 985.7
darken 1027.9
opaque 1031.2
become behoove 641.4
come to be 761.12
originate 818.13
convert 858.11
change into 858.17
become of 887.4
become one
get married 563.15
beautify 1016.16
becoming
n conversion 858.1
adj decorous 496.10
rightful 639.8
decent 664.5
apt 788.10
expedient 995.5
comely 1016.19
bed
n bottom 199.1
floor 199.4
furniture 229.1
watercourse 239.2
layer 296.1
accommodations 385.3
presswork 548.9
marriage 563.1
bowling 750.1
foundation 901.6
sofa 901.19
garden 1069.10
v rest 20.6
retire 22.17
put to bed 22.19
inset 191.5
house 225.10
fix 855.9
plant 1069.18
tend 1070.7
bed and board 385.3
bed and breakfast 228.15
bedarken blacken 38.7
darken 1027.9
bedaub soil 80.16
coat 295.24
stain 1004.6
bedazzle blind 30.7
astonish 122.6
confuse 985.7
shine 1025.23
bedazzled
blinded 30.10
dazed 985.14
bedbug 311.38
bedchamber 197.7
bedding blanket 295.10
layer 296.1
foundation 901.6
underbed 901.20
bedecked clothing 5.45
ornamented 498.11
bedevil annoy 96.13
demonize 680.16
bewitch 691.9
bedeviled
tormented 96.24
possessed 926.29
bedew 1065.12
bedfast 85.59
bedfellow companion 588.3
associate 616.1
bedim 1027.9
bedimming
inconspicuousness 32.2
decoloration 36.3
darkening 1027.6
bedizen dress up 5.42
color 35.14
ornament 498.8
bedizened
ornamented 498.11
grandiloquent 545.8
bedlam
noise 53.3
pandemonium 810.5
insane asylum 926.14
bed of roses
comfort 121.1
prosperity 1010.1

Bedouin 178.4
bedpan 12.11
bedraggled
  soiled 80.21
  slovenly 810.15
bedrape 5.39
bedridden 85.59
bedrock
  n bottom 199.1
  base 274.4
  stability 855.6
  foundation 901.6
  rock 1059.1
  adj bottom 199.7
  deepest 275.15
  vital 997.23
bedroom
  n boudoir 197.7
  v restrict 428.9
bedsheet 295.10
bedsore 85.37
bedspread 295.10
bedsprings 901.20
bedstead 901.19
bedtime sleep 22.2
  night 315.4
bedwarf 252.9
bee honeybee 311.35
  quilting bee 582.14
beef
  n food 10.14
  muscularity 15.2
  power 18.1
  complaint 115.5
  weight 297.1
  cattle 311.6
  objection 333.2
  bone of contention 456.7
  v be discontented 108.6
  complain 115.16
  object 333.5
beefcake sex object 75.4
  photo 714.3
beefeater 1008.14
beefheaded 922.15
beefing
  n complaint 115.5
  adj discontented 108.8
  complaining 115.20
beefsteak 10.18
beef up
  strengthen 15.13
  intensify 251.5
  add to 253.5
beefy strong 15.15
  corpulent 257.18
beehive nest 228.25
  hive 739.2
bee in one's bonnet 927.2
beekeeper 1070.4
beekeeping 1070.1
beeline
  shortcut 268.5
  straight line 277.2
Beelzebub 680.4
beep
  n noise 53.5
  v blare 53.10
beeper
  telephone 347.4
  alarm 400.1
beer 88.16
beerbelly 2.19
beer garden 88.20
beery
  intoxicated 88.31
  sentimental 93.21
beeswax 1056.8
beetle
  n insect 311.33
  jockey 757.2
  pulper 1063.4
  v overhang 202.7
  adj overhanging 202.11
beetle-browed
  sullen 110.24
  overhanging 202.11
befall occur 831.5
  chance 972.11
befit behoove 641.4
  expedite one's affair 995.3
befitting apt 788.10
  timely 843.9
  expedient 995.5
befog cover 295.19
  cloud 319.7
  conceal 346.6
befool fool 356.15
  stultify 923.7
before
  adv in front 165.4
  ahead 216.12
  preferably 371.29
  above 814.6
  previously 834.6
  formerly 837.13
  early 845.11
  prep in the presence of 221.18
  prior to 834.7
beforehand
  adj anachronistic 833.3
  adv early 845.11
before long in the future 839.9
  soon 845.16
beforementioned 814.5
before one's eyes
  adj visible 31.6
  adv before 216.12
  openly 348.15
before the bar
  adv all things considered 946.17
  phrs in litigation 598.22
before the house 938.38
beforetime
  adj early 845.7
  adv formerly 837.13
  early 845.11
befoul defile 80.17
  misuse 389.4
  work evil 1000.6
befouling 393.2
befriend aid 449.11
  make friends with 587.10
  benefit 592.3
befrilled
  ornamented 498.11
  ornate 545.11
befringed 211.12
befuddle
  intoxicate 88.22
  confuse 985.7
befuddled 985.13
beg
  n governor 575.13
  v evade 368.7
  find means 384.6
  entreat 440.11
  scrounge 440.15
beget procreate 78.8
  engender 818.14
  cause 886.10
  produce 890.7
  originate 892.12
begetter parent 560.8
  author 886.4
  producer 892.7
beggar
  n vagabond 178.3
  bum 331.9
  nonworker 331.11
  mendicant 440.8
  poor man 619.4
  wretch 660.2
  v strip 480.24
  impoverish 619.6
beggar description
  stagger belief 122.8
  look good 1016.17
beggarly
  obsequious 138.14
  low 497.15
  indigent 619.8
  base 661.12
  ill-provided 992.12
  paltry 998.21
begild color 35.14
  yellow 43.3
begin 818.7
begin again 856.6
beginner novice 572.9
  neophyte 818.2
  author 886.4
  producer 892.7
beginning
  n start 818
  commencement 818.1
  source 886.5
  production 892.1
  adj simple 798.6
  initial 818.15
beginnings
  origin 818.4
  earliness 845.1
beg off abandon 370.5
  refuse 442.3
begone
  v depart 188.6
  interj go away! 909.31
beg pardon
  repent 113.7
  apologize 658.5
begrime 80.15
begrudge envy 154.3
  refuse 325.3
  deny 442.4
  stint 484.5
beg the question
  dodge 368.8
  quibble 936.9
beg to differ 333.4
beguile
  deceive 356.14
  fascinate 377.7
  amuse 743.21
  distract 985.6
beguiled
  wondering 122.9
  foolish 923.8
beguiling
  n allurement 377.1
  adj wonderful 122.10
  deceptive 356.21
  alluring 377.8
  amusing 743.27
be had 632.8
behalf benefit 387.4
  good 999.4
behave act 321.4
  conduct oneself 321.5
  be good 328.4
behavior
  conditioning 92.26
  tendency 321
  conduct 321.1
  action 328.1
behavioral
  behaviorist 321.7
  acting 328.10
behaviorism
  behavioral science 321.3
  materialism 1052.6
behaviorist 321.7
behavior modification 92.6
behead 604.17
behemoth 257.14
behest 420.1
behind
  n rear 217.1
  buttocks 217.5
  adj retarded 175.12
  adv after 166.6
  in the rear 217.13
  late 846.19
  short 911.6
  prep back of 449.27
  after 835.8
behindhand
  adj defaulting 625.10
  anachronous 833.3
  late 846.16
  adv late 846.19
  in arrears 911.6
behind the eight ball 1013.22
behind the scenes
  adj invisible 32.5
  manipulation 415.4
  causal 886.13
  cognizant of 928.16
  adv behind 217.13
  secretly 345.17
  on the stage 704.36
behind the times 842.16
behold
  v see 27.12
  interj attention! 983.22
beholden
  grateful 150.5
  obliged 641.16
beholder
  recipient 479.3
  spectator 918.1

behoof
benefit 387.4
good 999.4
behoove 641.4
beige brown 40.3
yellow 43.4
being
n heart 93.3
organism 305.2
person 312.5
existence 761.1
something 763.3
adj existent 761.13
present 838.2
being as how 888.10
be it so 332.20
bejeweled 498.11
belabor whip 604.13
dwell on 849.9
emphasize 997.14
belabored 849.15
belaboring 604.4
belated 846.16
belay fasten 800.7
secure 855.8
cease 857.6
bel canto 708.13
belch
n rasp 58.3
outburst 671.6
burp 909.9
v sound harshly 58.9
erupt 671.13
burp 909.28
beldam bitch 110.12
old woman 304.3
witch 593.7
violent person 671.9
beleaguer annoy 96.13
enclose 212.5
besiege 459.19
belfry 272.6
belie deny 335.4
misrepresent 350.3
falsify 354.16
contradict 451.6
disprove 958.4
belied 958.7
belief
n religion 675.1
trust 953.1
credence 953.1
confidence 970.5
adj of belief 953.21
belief system 952.2
believable 953.24
believe be pious 692.6
suppose 951.10
credit 953.10
have faith in 953.15
believer
religionist 675.15
truster 692.4
zealot 953.9
belittle minimize 252.9
disparage 512.8
underestimate 950.2
belittled 252.10
belittle oneself 137.7
bell
n gong 54.4
marker 517.10
signal 517.15
wind instrument 711.6
time of day 832.2
stop 857.2
v blare 53.10
cry 60.2
belle
fine lady 500.10
beauty 1016.8
belles lettres
writing 547.12
literature 718.1
bellhop
errand boy 353.4
attendant 577.5
bellicose
contentious 110.26
partisan 456.17
warlike 458.21
contrary 779.6
bellied
rotund 282.8
bulged 283.16
belligerent
n combatant 461.1
adj contentious 110.26
partisan 456.17
warlike 458.21
hostile 589.10
contrary 779.6
bellow
n cry 59.1
v roar 59.6
cry 60.2
be excitable 105.16
speak 524.25
bellowing 105.25
bellows lungs 2.22
blower 318.18
bell-shaped 279.13
bell the cat
brave 492.11
court danger 493.6
bellwether
n sheep 311.7
leader 574.6
precursor 816.1
adj original 337.5
belly
n digestive system 2.18
bottom 199.1
sphericity 282.1
type 548.6
v bulge 283.11
bellyache
n ache 26.5
complaint 115.5
v be discontented 108.6
complain 115.16
belly dancer 707.1
bellyful
full measure 794.3
satiety 994.1
bellying
n convexity 283.1
protuberance 283.2
adj bulging 283.15
bellyland 184.43
belly laugh
n laughter 116.4
joke 489.6
v laugh 116.8
belly up
v die 307.20
go bankrupt 625.7
adj ruined 395.29
insolvent 625.11
ended 820.9
belong
have place 159.9
hold membership 617.15
belonging 775.11
belongings 471.2
belong to
pertain to 469.7
relate to 775.5
beloved
n sweetheart 104.10
adj loved 104.24
below
adv down 194.13
on earth 234.9
underneath 274.10
hellishly 682.9
prep under 274.11
subordinate to 432.17
after 835.8
below par
adj ill 85.56
terrible 1000.9
sub-standard 1005.10
adv beneath norm 274.10
at a discount 631.3
below the belt 650.10
below the mark
below 274.10
amiss 911.7
belt
n waistband 5.19
stripe 47.5
excitement 105.3
region 231.1
inlet 242.1
strip 271.4
circle 280.3
layer 296.1
attempt 403.3
victory 411.1
slap 604.3
whip 605.1
trophy 646.3
fight 754.3
blow 902.5
punch 902.6
v encircle 209.7
whip 604.13
play 745.5
bind 800.9
strike 902.15
belt out 708.38
belt-tightening
strictness 425.1
thrift 635.1
asceticism 667.1
belvedere
observation post 27.8
cigar 89.4
bemingle 797.10
bemire dirty 80.15
mire 243.2
bemist 319.7
bemoan regret 113.6
lament 115.10
bemuse 88.22
bemused
intoxicated 88.31
abstracted 985.11
be my guest 440.20
bench
fitness 84.1
plateau 272.4
authority 417.10
council 423.1
seat of justice 595.5
team 617.7
workplace 739.1
hockey players 749.2
substitute 862.2
table 901.15
bench mark
location 159.1
marker 517.10
salient point 997.6
bench warrant 598.12
bend
n obeisance 155.2
deviation 164.1
bias 204.3
diagonal 204.7
angle 278.2
bending 279.3
heraldry 647.2
crouch 913.3
v bow 155.6
direct 161.5
deviate 164.3
deflect 164.5
oblique 204.9
distort 265.5
angle 278.5
curve 279.6
conquer 412.10
subdue 432.9
submit 433.10
bind 800.9
conform 867.3
influence 894.7
crouch 913.8
depress 913.9
prejudice 980.9
yield 1047.7
bend an ear
listen 48.10
hearken to 983.7
bender 88.6
bending
n deflection 164.2
bend 279.3
deliberate falsehood 354.9
adj pliant 1047.9
bend one's ear 524.20
bend over backwards
be willing 324.3
make a special effort 403.11
jump at 101.6
be careful 339.7
be just 649.6
the bends 1075.10
bene! 509.22
beneath
below 274.11
under 432.17

beneath one's dignity
inferior 250.6
disgraceful 661.11
Benedict Arnold 357.10
benediction
thanks 150.2
blessing 696.5
benedictory 696.16
benefaction
act of kindness 143.7
benefit 478.7
benefactor helper 449.7
philanthropist 592.1
benefactress 592.1
benefice 698.9
beneficence 143.4
beneficent
benevolent 143.15
favorable 449.22
beneficial
healthful 81.5
useful 387.18
helpful 449.21
good 999.12
beneficiary
proprietor 470.2
allottee 479.4
benefice-holder 699.7
beneficience 133.9
benefit
n act of kindness 143.7
use 387.4
aid 449.1
estate 471.4
benefaction 478.7
theatrical performance 704.12
good 999.4
v do a favor 143.12
avail 387.17
aid 449.11
help 592.3
expedite one's affair 995.3
do good 999.10
benevolence
auspiciousness 133.9
good nature 143.2
charity 143.4
act of kindness 143.7
pity 145.1
forgiveness 148.1
compliance 427.2
benefit 478.7
magnanimity 652.2
goodness 999.1
benevolent
charitable 143.15
forgiving 148.6
favorable 449.22
magnanimous 652.6
indulgent 427.8
good 999.12
benighted blind 30.9
night-overtaken 315.10
dark 930.16
benign
healthful 81.5
auspicious 133.18
kind 143.13
indulgent 427.8
favorable 449.22
harmless 999.21
benignity
auspiciousness 133.9
kindness 143.1
act of charity 143.7
compliance 427.2
goodness 999.1
harmlessness 999.9
benison
benediction 696.5
good 999.4
bent
n inclination 100.3
direction 161.1
bias 204.3
preference 371.5
aptitude 413.5
tendency 896.1
disposition 978.3
prejudice 980.3
adj high 87.24
drunk 88.33
distorted 265.10
angular 278.6
curved 279.7
disposed 978.8
benthic 275.14
bent on
desirous of 100.22
determined upon 359.16
disposed 978.8
bent out of shape 152.30
benumb deaden 25.4
numb 94.8
relieve 120.5
freeze 1023.10
benumbed
insensible 25.6
apathetic 94.13
languid 331.20
be off
v depart 188.6
set out 188.8
race 757.5
interj go away! 909.31
be on to 941.8
bequeath will 478.18
transfer 629.3
bequeathal
bequest 478.10
inheritance 479.2
transfer 629.1
bequest
bequeathal 478.10
inheritance 479.2
be quiet! 51.14
bereave leave 307.28
take from 480.21
widow 566.6
bereaved bereft 307.35
sorrowful 473.8
indigent 619.8
bereavement
deathliness 307.11
loss 473.1
deprivation 480.6
bereft bereaved 307.35
at a loss 473.8
indigent 619.8
wanting 992.13
berg 1023.5
beribboned 498.11
berm shore 234.2
path 383.2
Bermuda shorts pants 5.18
berry fruit 10.38
plant 310.31
berserk
n violent person 671.9
lunatic 926.15
adj frenzied 105.25
rabid 926.30
berth
n anchor 180.16
quarters 228.4
position 724.5
harbor 1009.6
v inhabit 225.7
house 225.10
beseech entreat 440.11
pray 696.13
beset
v annoy 96.13
make anxious 126.5
enclose 212.5
persecute 389.7
importune 440.12
besiege 459.19
infest 910.6
obsess 926.25
trouble 1013.13
adj distressed 96.22
tormented 96.24
worried 126.8
enclosed 212.10
infested 910.11
troubled 1013.20
besetting
prevalent 864.12
troublesome 1013.18
beside
adj side 218.6
adv in juxtaposition 223.21
additionally 253.11
prep alongside 218.11
excluding 773.10
compared to 943.11
beside oneself
overjoyed 95.17
frenzied 105.25
angry 152.28
rabid 926.30
distracted 985.10
beside the point
adj irrelevant 776.7
adv amiss 911.7
besiege enclose 212.5
importune 440.12
lay siege to 459.19
besmear color 35.14
soil 80.16
coat 295.24
stain 1004.6
besmirch blacken 38.7
soil 80.16
vilify 512.10
stigmatize 661.9
stain 1004.6
besmirched
dingy 38.11
soiled 80.21
unchaste 665.23
stained 1004.10
besot deaden 25.4
intoxicate 88.22
besotted
intoxicated 88.31
foolish 923.8
obsessed 926.33
bespangled
spotted 47.13
ornamented 498.11
illuminated 1025.39
bespatter
spatter 80.18
vilify 512.10
stigmatize 661.9
moisten 1065.12
bespeak outfit 5.41
request 440.9
signify 517.17
mean 518.8
address 524.26
employ 615.14
evidence 957.8
bespeckle
variegate 47.7
spot 1004.5
bespoke tailored 5.48
made 892.18
best
v excel 249.6
beat 249.7
vanquish 411.5
defeat 412.6
adj superlative 249.13
reduced 633.9
the tops 999.16
n creature comforts 121.3
the top of the line 249.5
choice 999.8
best bet 972.8
best case
n hope 124.1
adj promising 124.13
bestial cruel 144.26
animal 311.40
unrefined 497.12
carnal 663.6
savage 671.21
bestiality
perversion 75.11
cruelty 144.11
sadism 144.12
unrefinement 497.3
carnality 663.2
terribleness 1000.2
be still 51.14
bestir oneself
stir 330.11
make haste 401.5
best man
wedding party 563.4
assistant 616.6
bestow spend 387.13
give 478.12
administer 643.6
bestraddle
mount 193.12
rise above 272.11
overlie 295.30
rest on 901.22

bestride mount 193.12
rise above 272.11
overlie 295.30
dominate 612.15
rest on 901.22
pass 910.8
best seller
great success 409.3
book 554.1
best wishes
congratulation 149.1
regards 504.8
greetings 585.3
bet
n gamble 759.2
wager 759.3
poker 759.10
v ante 759.25
predict 962.9
risk 972.12
betake oneself 177.18
beta particle
electron 1033.3
radioactive particle 1037.4
beta test 1042.18
bête noire
frightener 127.9
enemy 589.6
bugbear 680.9
bane 1001.1
be that as it may 338.8
bethink oneself
think 931.8
attend to 983.5
remember 989.10
betide occur 831.5
chance 972.11
betimes early 845.11
soon 845.16
bétise stupidity 922.3
foolishness 923.1
betoken augur 133.12
manifest 348.5
signify 517.17
mean 518.8
evidence 957.8
bet on bet 759.25
rely on 953.16
predict 962.9
be certain 970.9
betray inform 351.6
deceive 356.14
defect 370.6
rat on 551.12
double-cross 645.14
seduce 665.20
betrayal
divulgence 351.2
apostasy 363.2
desertion 370.2
betrayment 645.8
seduction 665.6
betrayed 132.5
betrothal love affair 104.6
promise 436.3
betrothed
n fiancé 104.17
adj promised 436.8
better
v excel 249.6
improve 392.9
change 852.7
adj superior 249.12
preferable 371.25
augmented 392.14
changed 852.10
better half
spouse 563.6
wife 563.8
betterment
improvement 392.1
change 852.1
better self
compunction 113.2
self 865.5
betting parlor 759.19
bettor 759.21
between 213.12
between the devil and the deep blue sea
in danger 1006.13
unfortunate 1011.14
in a dilemma 1013.23
between the lines 519.5
betweentimes
meanwhile 826.5
occasionally 848.5
betwixt 213.12
betwixt and between
adj ambiguous 539.4
mediocre 1005.7
adv midway 819.5
prep between 213.12
bet your life 973.25
bevel
n incline 204.4
instrument 278.4
type 548.6
adj inclining 204.15
beveled 204.15
beverage liquid 8.4
drink 10.49
spirits 88.13
fluid 1061.2
bevy company 770.3
assemblage 770.6
multitude 884.3
bewail regret 113.6
lament 115.10
beware 494.7
bewhiskered
bearded 3.25
trite 117.9
bewilder
astonish 122.6
disconcert 971.12
confuse 985.7
bewildered
wondering 122.9
dismayed 971.24
at an impasse 1013.24
bewildering
wonderful 122.10
confusing 971.27
bewitch
delight 95.10
enamor 104.23
fascinate 377.7
demonize 680.16
cast a spell 690.13
witch 691.9
work evil 1000.6
bewitched
enamored 104.28
wondering 122.9
witched 691.13
miraculous 870.16
bewitching
delightful 97.7
alluring 377.8
witching 691.11
bey
ruler 575.9
governor 575.13
beyond
adv additionally 253.11
prep distant 261.21
past 522.26
after 835.8
in excess of 993.26
the beyond 839.2
beyond a shadow of doubt 970.16
beyond belief
absurd 923.11
unbelievable 955.10
beyond compare
adj peerless 249.15
adv extremely 247.22
beyond measure
extremely 247.22
superabundantly 993.24
beyond one
adj hard to understand 522.14
impracticable 967.8
adv unrealistic 19.20
beyond question
adj undoubted 970.16
adv unquestionably 970.25
beyond recall 125.15
beyond the call of duty 492.1
beyond the pale
prohibited 444.7
unpraiseworthy 510.24
segregated 773.8
beyond words 98.19
biannual 850.8
bias
n inclination 100.3
deviation 164.1
bend 204.3
diagonal 204.7
preference 371.5
partiality 650.3
tendency 896.1
disposition 978.3
prejudice 980.3
v deflect 164.5
oblique 204.9
pervert 265.6
influence 894.7
tend 896.3
prejudice 980.9
adj inclining 204.15
transverse 204.19
adv diagonally 204.25
biaxial 875.7
bib
n apron 5.17
v drink 8.29
tipple 88.24
bibacious 88.35
bibelot trinket 498.4
trifle 998.5
Bible scripture 683.1
Holy Bible 683.2
Biblical 683.11
bibliographer
writer 547.15
author 718.4
bibliography
makeup 554.12
bibliology 554.19
Modern Language Association Bibliography 558.4
directory 574.10
catalog 871.3
lore 928.9
bibliolatry
strictness 687.5
zeal 692.3
scholarship 928.5
bibliophile
booklover 554.18
bookworm 929.4
bibliophilic 928.22
bibulous
bibacious 88.35
sorbent 187.17
intemperate 669.7
bicameral
legislative 613.11
bipartite 875.7
bicentenary 850.4
bicentennial
anniversary 850.4
hundred 882.8
biceps member 2.7
arm 906.5
bicker
n quarrel 456.5
argumentation 935.4
v quarrel 456.11
flutter 917.12
argue 935.16
quibble 936.9
flicker 1025.25
bickerer 461.1
bicolored 47.9
bicorn 279.11
bicuspid
n teeth 2.8
adj bipartite 875.7
bicycle
n cycle 179.8
v exercise 84.4
ride 177.33
bicycling
riding 177.6
sport 744.1
bicyclist 178.11
bid
n attempt 403.2
offer 439.1
entreaty 440.2
invitation 440.4
bridge 758.3
v command 420.8
offer 439.6
bargain 731.18
bet 733.9
bid come
summon 420.11

  invite 440.13
bidding
  command 420.1
  summons 420.5
  invitation 440.4
biddy woman 77.6
  female animal 77.10
  poultry 311.29
  maid 577.8
bide expect 130.8
  endure 134.5
  be still 173.7
  sit through 827.6
  wait 846.12
  remain 853.5
  continue 856.3
bide one's time
  expect 130.8
  be still 173.7
  do nothing 329.2
  wait 846.12
bidet washbasin 79.12
  hunter 311.13
bid fair to
  be liable 897.3
  be possible 966.4
  be probable 968.4
  have a chance 972.13
biennial
  n plant 310.3
  anniversary 850.4
  adj momentary 850.8
bier 309.13
biff
  n energy 17.3
  fight 754.3
  blow 902.5
  v strike 902.15
bifid 875.7
bifocals 29.3
bifurcated
  forked 171.10
  two 873.6
  halved 875.6
bifurcation
  forking 171.3
  angle 278.2
  doubleness 873.1
  bisection 875.1
big enthusiastic 101.10
  arrogant 141.9
  large 257.16
  adult 303.12
  inflated 502.12
  magnanimous 652.6
  eminent 662.18
  important 997.17
bigamist 563.11
bigamous 563.19
the Big Board 737.7
Big Brother 894.3
big bucks 618.3
big business 731.1
big cheese chief 575.4
  important person 997.9
big deal
  n triviality 998.3
  phrs what does it matter? 998.26
big game
  animal life 311.1
  quarry 382.7
biggety conceited 140.11
  impudent 142.10
biggie influence 894.6
  important person 997.9
big gun 997.9
big hand 509.2
bighearted
  benevolent 143.15
  liberal 485.4
  magnanimous 652.6
bight inlet 242.1
  angle 278.2
big league
  n baseball 745.1
  adj important 997.17
big mouth
  braggart 502.5
  talkativeness 540.1
big-mouthed
  talkative 540.9
  boastful 502.10
big name
  n celebrity 662.9
  personage 997.8
  adj important 997.17
bigot
  n hater 103.4
  obstinate person 361.6
  prejudiced person 687.6
  dogmatist 970.7
  intolerant 980.5
  adj narrow-minded 980.10
bigotry hate 103.1
  obstinacy 361.1
  strictness 687.5
  fanaticism 926.11
  dogmatism 970.6
  narrow-mindedness 980.1
the big picture 381.1
big shot superior 249.4
  politics 610.7
  important person 997.9
big talk
  exaggeration 355.1
  boasting 502.2
  grandiloquence 545.1
big talker 540.4
big ticket
  n high price 632.3
  adj expensive 632.11
big time
  n fun 743.2
  adj important 997.17
big wheel
  influence 894.6
  important person 997.9
bigwig
  n important person 997.9
  adj important 997.17
bijou 498.6
bike
  n cycle 179.8
  v ride 177.33
biker 178.11
bikini 5.29
bilateral sided 218.7
  two 873.6
bile digestion 2.17
  body function 7.8
  secretion 13.2
  ill humor 110.1
  bitterness 152.3
bilge
  n offal 80.9
  receptacle of filth 80.12
  bulge 283.3
  bullshit 520.3
  v bulge 283.11
bilgewater offal 80.9
  refuse 391.4
bilingual 523.16
bilious anemic 85.61
  sour 110.23
bilk
  n cheater 759.22
  v disappoint 132.2
  cheat 356.18
bill
  n nose 283.8
  point of land 283.9
  poster 352.7
  advertising matter 352.8
  declaration 598.7
  omnibus bill 613.9
  debt 623.1
  fee 624.5
  account 628.3
  law 673.3
  theatrical performance 704.12
  paper money 728.5
  legal tender 728.7
  negotiable instrument 728.11
  statement 871.5
  schedule 965.3
  eyeshade 1028.2
  v publicize 352.15
  send a statement 628.11
  dramatize 704.28
  schedule 965.6
bill and coo 562.14
billboard 352.7
bill collector
  creditor 622.4
  collector 770.15
billed hooked 279.8
  scheduled 965.9
billet
  n letter 553.2
  heraldry 647.2
  position 724.5
  wood 1054.3
  v house 225.10
billfold 729.15
billiards 760.1
billion
  n thousand million 882.12
  large number 1017.5
  adj numerous 884.6
billionaire 618.7
billionth 882.31
bill of attainder 602.2
bill of fare menu 8.14
  bill 871.5
  schedule 965.3
bill of goods 356.9
bill of health
  pass 443.7
  certificate 549.6
bill of particulars 599.1
Bill of Rights
  right 430.2
  constitution 673.6
bill of sale 734.1
billow
  n wave 238.14
  v surge 238.22
  bulge 283.11
billowy curved 279.7
  wavy 281.10
  bulging 283.15
billy goat
  male animal 76.8
  goat 311.8
bimbo
  roughneck 593.4
  strumpet 665.14
  violent person 671.10
bimonthly
  n periodical 555.1
  adj momentary 850.8
bin 386.6
binary digit
  number 1017.3
  bit 1042.14
bind
  n state 765.1
  delay 846.2
  predicament 1013.4
  v border 211.10
  stop 293.7
  compel 424.4
  restrain 428.10
  commit 436.5
  indenture 615.18
  obligate 641.12
  relate 775.6
  tie 800.9
  stick together 803.9
binder
  dressing 86.33
  wrapper 295.18
  payment 624.1
binding
  n edging 211.7
  wrapper 295.18
  bookbinding 554.14
  fastening 800.3
  cohesion 803.1
  adj preceptive 419.4
  mandatory 420.12
  compulsory 424.11
  obligatory 641.15
  joining 800.16
  valid 973.14
bind up
  bundle 770.20
  bind 800.9
binge
  n celebration 487.1
  v stuff 8.25
  drink 88.6
  celebrate 487.2
  overindulge 669.5
bingo 759.15
binocular optic 29.9
  bipartite 875.7
binoculars 29.4
binomial
  terminological 527.17
  bipartite 875.7

biochemical
  n element 1060.2
  adj chemical 1060.9
biochemistry 1068.3
biodegradable
  degradable 393.47
  disintegrative 806.5
bioethics 636.1
biographer 719.4
biographical 719.7
biography
  n history 719.1
  v chronicle 719.5
biohazard 85.32
biological
  organic 305.17
  related 559.6
  botanical 1068.4
biological clock 306.3
biological urge 75.5
biologist 1068.2
biology
  organic matter 305.1
  animal life 311.1
  the study of living things 1068.1
  biological science 1068.1
bioluminescence 1025.13
biomechanical 1039.7
bionics 1041.2
biophysicist 1018.2
biopsy 91.12
biorhythm life force 306.3
  term 825.4
biosphere
  organic matter 305.1
  ecosphere 306.8
  atmosphere 317.2
  Earth 1072.10
biotic 305.17
bipartisan
  partisan 609.44
  two 873.6
bipartisanship 450.1
bipartite
  separate 802.20
  two 873.6
  bifid 875.7
biped
  n creature 311.3
  adj bipartite 875.7
birch
  n rod 605.2
  v whip 604.13
bird poultry 10.22
  man 76.5
  woman 77.6
  fowl 311.28
  oddity 870.4
  freak 927.4
  beauty 1016.9
  rocket 1074.3
birdbrained 922.20
birdcage gambling wheel 759.16
  birdhouse 228.23
birdcall
  animal noise 60.1
  call 517.16
birdhouse 228.23
bird in hand 469.1
bird of passage
  wanderer 178.2
  bird 311.28
bird of prey
  hunter 311.28
  extortionist 480.12
bird sanctuary
  preserve 397.7
  refuge 1009.1
bird's-eye 864.13
bird's-eye view
  viewpoint 27.7
  appearance 33.6
  abridgment 557.1
birds of a feather 784.5
bird song 60.1
bird-watcher 918.1
birth
  n genesis 1.1
  beginning 1.1
  generation 78.6
  life 306.1
  lineage 560.4
  heredity 560.6
  aristocracy 607.3
  nobility 608.2
  origin 818.4
  v engender 818.14
  adj related 559.6
birth control 891.1
birth control device 86.23
birthday 850.4
birthday suit 6.3
birth defect 85.1
birthmark mark 517.5
  blemish 1004.1
birth parent 560.8
birthplace
  fatherland 232.2
  breeding place 886.8
birthright
  inheritance 479.2
  prerogative 642.1
birthstone 1059.7
biscuit sinker 10.30
  cookie 10.43
  ceramic ware 742.2
  dryness 1066.2
bisect sever 802.11
  seek the middle 819.3
  double 873.5
  halve 875.4
bisector 875.3
bisexual
  n homosexual 75.14
  adj homosexual 75.30
  bipartite 875.7
bisexuality
  sexuality 75.2
  sexual preference 75.10
bishop clergy 699.10
  chessman 743.17
bishopric region 231.5
  mastership 417.7
  diocese 698.8
bison 311.6
bisque 742.2
bistro restaurant 8.17
  bar 88.20
bit short distance 223.2
  modicum 248.2
  point 285.3
  portion 477.5
  information theory 551.7
  act 704.7
  role 704.10
  script 706.3
  piece 793.3
  shift 825.3
  short time 828.3
  pittance 992.5
  trifle 998.5
  curb 1012.7
  binary digit 1042.14
a bit to a degree 245.7
  scarcely 248.9
bit by bit
  by degrees 245.6
  piece by piece 793.9
bitch
  n woman 77.6
  female animal 77.10
  shrew 110.12
  complaint 115.5
  dog 311.17
  objection 333.2
  strumpet 665.14
  card 758.2
  first-rate 999.7
  tough proposition 1013.2
  v be discontented 108.6
  sulk 110.14
  complain 115.16
  object 333.5
  bungle 414.12
bitchy irascible 110.20
  malicious 144.20
  spiteful 144.21
  disparaging 512.13
bite
  n morsel 8.2
  light meal 8.7
  acrimony 17.5
  pang 26.2
  sip 62.2
  zest 68.2
  modicum 248.2
  minute 258.7
  hold 474.2
  portion 477.5
  vigor 544.3
  round 751.3
  piece 793.3
  cold 1023.1
  v chew 8.27
  pain 26.7
  nip 68.5
  come to a point 285.6
  hold 474.6
  etch 713.10
  kid oneself 954.6
  freeze 1023.10
bite off more than one can chew
  overextend oneself 404.6
  overindulge 669.5
bite one's tongue
  n change one's tune 363.6
  v be silent 51.5
  regret 113.6
  be humiliated 137.9
  keep to oneself 344.6
bite the bullet
  endure 134.6
  submit 433.6
  brave 492.11
  seize the opportunity 843.7
bite the dust die 307.20
  be destroyed 395.22
  lose 412.12
bite the hand that feeds one
  be ungrateful 151.3
  play one false 645.13
biting
  acrimonious 17.14
  painful 26.10
  pungent 68.6
  penetrating 105.31
  caustic 144.23
  witty 489.15
  vigorous 544.11
  cold 1023.14
a bit much
  insufferable 98.25
  excessive 993.16
bits and pieces miscellany 770.13
  parts 793.3
bitter
  v sour 110.16
  adj acrimonious 17.14
  flavored 62.9
  galling 64.6
  pungent 68.6
  unpleasant 98.17
  distressing 98.20
  sour 110.23
  caustic 144.23
  resentful 152.26
  hostile 589.10
  cold 1023.14
bitter end 820.2
bitterly
  caustically 144.32
  distressingly 247.21
bitter pill
  acridness 64.2
  affliction 96.8
bittersweet
  flavored 62.9
  sweet 66.4
  ambiguous 539.4
bituminous 1021.9
bivalent bipartite 875.7
  valent 1060.10
bivouac
  n settlement 228.29
  campground 463.3
  v settle 159.17
  camp 225.11
biweekly
  n periodical 555.1
  adj momentary 850.8
bizarre
  awesome 122.11
  humorous 488.4
  freakish 870.13
  absurd 923.11
  fanciful 986.20
blabber
  n nonsense 520.2
  chatter 540.3
  gabber 540.4

informer 551.6
v betray 351.6
talk nonsense 520.5
chatter 540.5
blabbermouth 551.6
black
n pitch 38.1
mourning 115.7
Caucasian 312.3
v blacken 38.7
soil 80.16
darken 1027.9
adj black as ink 38.8
dark-skinned 38.10
sullen 110.24
gloomy 112.24
ominous 133.17
wicked 654.16
bad 1000.7
disastrous 1011.15
dark 1027.13
black-and-blue mark 85.38
black and white
opposites 215.2
motion-pictures 706.5
drawing 712.5
photographs 712.13
lighting 1025.19
blackball
n disapproval 510.1
ostracism 586.3
v reject 372.2
disapprove 510.10
ostracize 586.6
exclude 773.4
banish 909.17
black belt
the country 233.1
trophy 646.3
black box 549.1
black comedy 704.6
blackdamp
miasma 1001.4
vapor 1067.1
blacken cook 11.5
black 38.7
soil 80.16
berate 510.19
vilify 512.10
stigmatize 661.9
stain 1004.6
darken 1027.9
black eye
trauma 85.38
stigma 661.6
blackface
n theater 704.17
adj typographic 548.20
blackguard
n rascal 660.3
v vilify 513.7
blackhead 1004.1
blackhearted 654.15
black hole prison 429.8
star 1072.8
black humor 489.1
blackjack
n deal 759.11
twenty-one 759.11
v coerce 424.7
club 902.20
blackleg
n disease 85.41
cheater 357.4
strikebreaker 727.8
v break a strike 727.11
black light 1025.1
blacklist
n ostracism 586.3
list 871.1
v reject 372.2
ostracize 586.6
condemn 602.3
black look 510.8
black magic Satanism 680.14
the black art 690.2
blackmail
n demand 421.1
extortion 480.8
booty 482.11
fee 624.5
v demand 421.5
wrest 480.22
black man 312.3
black mark 661.6
black market
n illicit business 732.1
v illicit goods 732.7
adj illegal 674.6
Black Mass 680.14
blackout
unconsciousness 25.2
disappearance 34.1
grayout 184.21
veil of secrecy 345.3
loss of memory 990.2
dimout 1027.7
power failure 1032.20
space hazard 1075.10
black out
faint 25.5
gray out 184.46
cover up 345.8
darken 1027.9
black sheep
reprobate 660.4
intruder 774.2
blacktop
n ground covering 199.3
pavement 383.6
v floor 295.22
bladder bag 195.2
sphere 282.2
bubble 320.1
comedy 704.6
blade sled 179.20
leaf 310.19
combatant 461.1
sword 462.5
dandy 500.9
vocal organ 524.18
cutlery 1040.2
blah
n apathy 94.4
bullshit 520.3
adj apathetic 94.13
dull 117.6
tedious 118.9
blahs apathy 94.4
blues and blue devils and mulligrubs 112.6
blame
n censure 510.3
accusation 599.1
attribution 888.1
v censure 510.13
accuse 599.8
attribute to 888.4
blamed curse 513.10
accused 599.15
blameless
honest 644.13
innocent 657.6
blameworthy
blamable 510.25
wicked 654.16
terrible 1000.9
blanch cook 11.5
suffer 26.8
pale 36.5
lose color 36.6
whiten 37.5
change color 105.19
blanched
bleached 36.8
terrified 127.26
weatherworn 393.34
bland
wishy-washy 16.17
insipid 65.2
vacant 222.14
suave 504.18
flattering 511.8
moderate 670.10
general 864.11
blandishment
inducement 375.3
allurement 377.1
importunity 440.3
flattery 511.1
endearment 562.5
blank
n absence 222.1
void 222.3
document 549.5
adj dull 117.6
vacant 222.14
closed 293.9
reticent 344.10
unadorned 499.8
inexpressive 522.20
empty-headed 922.19
thoughtless 933.4
blank check
latitude 430.4
carte blanche 443.4
privilege 642.2
negotiable paper 728.11
blanket
n coverlet 295.10
coating 295.12
v cover 295.19
conceal 346.6
adj comprehensive 772.7
undiscriminating 945.5
blankminded
ignorant 930.12
thoughtless 933.4
blank out 820.5
blank slate 222.3
blank verse 720.8
blank wall 293.3
blare
n blast 53.5
rasp 58.3
brightness 1025.4
v blast 53.10
sound harshly 58.9
cry 60.2
proclaim 352.13
speak 524.25
blaring
n reception 1034.21
adj noisy 53.13
blarney
n flattery 511.1
bullshit 520.3
style 532.2
v flatter 511.6
blasé apathetic 94.13
nonchalant 106.15
weary 118.11
languid 331.20
sophistication 413.9
experienced 413.28
disillusioned 977.5
blaspheme
curse 513.5
vilify 694.5
blasphemous
cursing 513.8
impious 694.6
blasphemy
curse 513.1
sacrilege 694.2
blast
n noise 53.3
blare 53.5
detonation 56.3
excitement 105.3
gust 318.6
success 409.4
charge 462.16
party 582.12
explosion 671.7
blight 1001.2
v din 53.7
blare 53.10
detonate 56.8
use 87.22
kill 308.14
blow 318.20
blow up 395.18
pull the trigger 459.22
curse 513.5
explode 671.14
thwart 1012.15
freeze 1024.11
interj damn! 513.12
blasted high 87.24
disappointed 132.5
blighted 393.42
ruined 395.28
curse 513.10
blast off
v begin 818.7
launch 1074.13
n beginning 818.1
rocket launching 1074.9
blat
n blare 53.5
rasp 58.3
v blare 53.10

sound harshly 58.9
cry 60.2
speak 524.25
blatant
noisy 53.13
vociferous 59.10
howling 60.6
conspicuous 348.12
gaudy 501.20
blatantly
distressingly 247.21
conspicuously 348.16
gaudily 501.27
blather
n nonsense 520.2
chatter 540.3
v talk nonsense 520.5
chatter 540.5
be stupid 922.12
blaze
n outburst 105.9
notch 289.1
pointer 517.4
mark 517.5
card 758.2
fire 1019.13
flare 1019.14
brightness 1025.4
flash 1025.6
v notch 289.4
proclaim 352.13
mark 517.19
be hot 1019.22
catch fire 1020.23
burn 1020.24
shine 1025.23
blaze up
flare up 152.19
catch fire 1020.23
blazon
n display 501.4
heraldry 647.2
v proclaim 352.13
ornament 498.8
bleach
n decoloration 36.3
bleacher 36.4
v decolor 36.5
pale 36.6
whiten 37.5
clean 79.18
bleached
decolored 36.8
clean 79.25
vacant 222.14
weatherworn 393.34
bleachers
observation post 27.8
baseball 745.1
bleak distressing 98.20
gloomy 112.24
hopeless 125.12
windblown 318.24
cold 1023.14
bleakness
distressfulness 98.5
gloom 112.7
vacancy 222.2
cold 1023.1
bleary-eyed 28.13
bleat 60.2
bleb sore 85.37
bulge 283.3
bubble 320.1
blemish 1004.1
bleed
hemorrhage 12.17
let blood 91.27
suffer 96.19
grieve 112.17
pity 145.3
exude 190.15
draw off 192.12
exploit 387.16
take from 480.21
strip 480.24
overprice 632.7
bleeding
n hemorrhage 12.8
decoloration 36.3
symptom 85.9
bloodletting 91.20
drawing 192.3
adj bloody 12.23
pained 96.23
pitying 145.7
bleeding heart
n sentimentality 93.8
wretchedness 96.6
heartache 112.9
philanthropist 143.8
compassionateness 145.2
pietist 693.3
liberal 979.6
adj liberal 611.19
pious 979.9
bleed white
exploit 387.16
consume 388.3
strip 480.24
overprice 632.7
bleep out excise 255.10
suppress 428.8
blemish
n mark 517.5
intruder 774.2
fault 1003.2
disfigurement 1004.1
blot 1004.1
eyesore 1015.4
v deform 265.7
mark 517.19
disfigure 1004.4
offend 1015.5
injure 393.13
blemished
deformed 265.12
unvirtuous 654.12
imperfect 1003.4
disfigured 1004.8
ugly 1015.6
blench flinch 127.13
demur 325.4
pull back 903.7
blend
n hybrid word 526.11
automobile racing 756.1
compound 797.5
combination 805.1
v harmonize 708.35
identify 778.5
mix 797.10
combine 805.3
blender mixer 797.9
agitator 917.9
blend in with 455.2
bless gladden 95.9
congratulate 149.2
thank 150.4
approve 509.9
praise 509.12
sanctify 685.5
glorify 696.12
give one's blessing 696.14
protect 1008.18
blessed happy 95.16
curse 513.10
heavenly 681.12
sanctified 685.8
fortunate 1010.14
blessed event 1.1
blessed with 469.9
blessing
n act of kindness 143.7
congratulation 149.1
consent 441.1
godsend 472.7
benefit 478.7
approval 509.1
sanctification 685.3
benediction 696.5
good 999.4
good fortune 1010.2
stroke of luck 1010.3
adj worshipful 696.16
blight
n disease 85.1
evil 1000.3
blast 1001.2
adversity 1011.1
v spoil 393.10
work evil 1000.6
freeze 1024.11
blighted
disappointed 132.5
spoiled 393.28
blasted 393.42
ruined 395.28
blighter 660.2
blimp aerostat 181.11
heavyweight 257.12
stuffed shirt 501.9
blind
n aviation 184.1
ambush 346.3
trick 356.6
pretext 376.1
stratagem 415.3
round 751.3
shade 1028.1
v cover the eyes 30.7
conceal 346.6
hoodwink 356.17
shine 1025.23
adj insensible 25.6
poor-sighted 28.11
sightless 30.9
high 87.24
closed 293.9
concealed 346.11
unpersuadable 361.13
obscure 522.15
undiscerning 922.14
involuntary 963.14
oblivious 984.7
blind alley
n obstruction 293.3
impasse 1013.6
adj closed 293.9
blind date 582.8
blinders blindfold 30.5
narrow-mindedness 980.1
blind faith 954.1
blindfold
n eye patch 30.5
v blind 30.7
hoodwink 356.17
adj blinded 30.10
undiscerning 922.14
blinding
n blindness 30.1
adj obscuring 30.11
garish 35.20
rainy 316.11
bright 1025.32
blindness
insensibility 25.1
faulty eyesight 28.1
sightlessness 30.1
total darkness 30.1
carelessness 340.2
unpersuadableness 361.5
unperceptiveness 922.2
incognizance 930.3
blindsided 131.12
blind spot
blindness 30.1
narrow-mindedness 980.1
reception 1034.21
blind to
insensible 94.10
unaware 930.13
blink
n glance 27.4
glitter 1025.7
reflection 1025.9
v wink 28.10
flinch 127.13
slight 340.8
pull back 903.7
glitter 1025.24
blink at
be blind 30.8
condone 148.4
suffer 443.10
keep an open mind 979.7
be inattentive 984.2
blinkers
spectacles 29.3
blindfold 30.5
signals 517.15
blinking
n winking 28.7
glitter 1025.7
adj poor-sighted 28.11
glittering 1025.35
flickering 1025.36
blintz 10.45
blips 1036.11
bliss happiness 95.2
pleasantness 97.1
heaven 681.5
blissful happy 95.16
pleasant 97.6

beatific 97.9
blister
n sore 85.37
bulge 283.3
bubble 320.1
blemish 1004.1
v criticize 510.20
burn 1020.24
blistering
n burning 1020.5
adj bubbly 320.6
hot 1019.25
blithe 109.11
blithering 922.22
blitz
n attack 459.1
game 746.3
v blow up 395.18
attack 459.14
pull the trigger 459.22
play 746.5
blitzkrieg 459.1
blizzard
windstorm 318.12
snow 1023.8
bloat
n oversize 257.5
distension 259.2
overextension 993.7
v grow 251.6
enlarge 259.4
expand 259.5
bloated
puffed up 136.10
increased 251.7
corpulent 257.18
distended 259.13
deformed 265.12
bulging 283.15
pompous 501.22
overfull 993.20
blob sphere 282.2
bulge 283.3
blobby formless 263.4
vague 971.19
bloc 617.1
block
n suppression 92.24
boundary 211.3
city block 230.7
plot 231.4
lump 257.10
obstruction 293.3
execution 605.5
print 713.5
auction 734.4
share 738.3
game 746.3
delay 846.2
mental state 990.3
obstacle 1012.4
solid 1045.6
v stop 293.7
cover 295.19
fend off 460.10
play 746.5
pick 747.4
check 749.7
fight 754.4
delay 846.8
cease 857.11
obstruct 1012.12
hinder 1012.13
blockade
n enclosure 212.1
closure 293.1
obstruction 293.3
siege 459.5
exclusion 773.1
obstacle 1012.4
v enclose 212.5
stop 293.7
besiege 459.19
fortify 460.9
exclude 773.4
obstruct 1012.12
blockage seizure 85.6
suppression 92.24
obstruction 293.3
delay 846.2
hindrance 1012.1
blockbuster 131.2
blockhead
bungler 414.8
fool 924.4
blockhouse 460.6
blockish 922.15
block out form 262.7
outline 381.11
itemize 801.7
blocks 743.16
blocky 268.10
bloke 76.5
blond
n hair color 35.9
adj flaxen-haired 37.9
yellow-haired 43.5
blood
n whole blood 2.25
life force 306.3
killing 308.1
dandy 500.9
relationship 559.1
kinfolk 559.2
race 559.4
lineage 560.4
offspring 561.1
nobility 608.2
class 809.2
kind 809.3
fluid 1061.2
adj circulatory 2.33
blood and thunder
n emotionalism 93.9
adj sensational 105.32
blood bank
transfusion 91.18
hospital room 197.25
bloodbath carnage 308.4
destruction 395.1
blood brother 559.3
bloodcurdling 127.29
bloodied 96.25
bloodless weak 16.12
colorless 36.7
dull 117.6
pacific 464.9
bloodletting
bleeding 91.20
drawing 192.3
killing 308.1
bloodline lineage 560.4
offspring 561.1
bloodlust
cruelty 144.11
violence 671.1
bloodmobile 91.18
blood money
recompense 624.3
fee 624.5
blood relationship
bond 559.2
kinship 775.3
bloodshed killing 308.1
war 458.1
bloodshot 28.13
blood-sport 382.2
bloodstained 1004.11
bloodstream 2.25
bloodsucker
parasite 311.38
extortionist 480.12
bloodthirsty
cruel 144.26
murderous 308.24
warlike 458.21
blood vessel 2.23
bloody
v bleed 12.17
torture 96.18
injure 393.13
bloodstain 1004.7
adj circulatory 2.33
bleeding 12.23
sanguine 41.7
cruel 144.26
murderous 308.24
warlike 458.21
cursed 513.9
savage 671.21
bloodstained 1004.11
bloody hands 656.1
bloom
n reddening 41.3
health 83.1
youth 301.1
flower 310.24
budding 310.26
beauty 1016.1
glow 1019.12
television reception 1035.5
v enjoy good health 83.6
mature 303.9
flower 310.35
ripen 407.8
evolve 861.5
thrive 1010.8
look good 1016.17
be hot 1019.22
blooper game 745.3
goof 975.6
blossom
n plant 310.24
flowering 310.26
v grow 14.2
expand 259.7
mature 303.9
flower 310.35
ripen 407.8
evolve 861.5
thrive 1010.8
blot
n soil 80.5
obliteration 395.7
stigma 661.6
intruder 774.2
stain 1004.3
eyesore 1015.4
v blacken 38.7
absorb 187.13
obliterate 395.16
stigmatize 661.9
spot 1004.5
offend 1015.5
dry 1066.6
blotch
n spottiness 47.3
soil 80.5
mark 517.5
stain 1004.3
v blacken 38.7
variegate 47.7
mark 517.19
spot 1004.5
blotchy dingy 38.11
blemished 47.13
spotted 1004.9
blot out delete 255.12
kill 308.14
obliterate 395.16
darken 1027.9
blotter LSD 87.10
sorption 187.6
record book 549.11
blotto 88.33
blouse 5.15
blow
n feast 8.9
cocaine 87.7
pain 96.5
surprise 131.2
disappointment 132.1
plant 310.24
flowering 310.26
gust 318.6
windstorm 318.12
act 328.3
slap 604.3
fight 754.3
hit 902.4
punch 902.6
misfortune 1011.2
v burn out 21.5
blare 53.10
use 87.22
leave 222.10
flower 310.35
waft 318.20
flee 368.11
spoil 393.11
ripen 407.8
bungle 414.12
squander 486.3
boast 502.7
talk big 545.6
blow a horn 708.42
evacuate 909.22
let out 909.24
make a boner 975.15
interj go away! 909.31
blow about 352.16
blow a gasket
get excited 105.17
fly into a rage 152.20

blow-by-blow description 349.3
blow down raze 395.19
  fell 913.5
blower ventilator 317.10
  bellows 318.18
  fan 318.19
  braggart 502.5
  automobile racing 756.1
blow for blow 506.3
blowhard
  n braggart 502.5
  v boast 502.7
blowhole outlet 190.9
  air passage 239.13
blow hot and cold
  vacillate 362.8
  keep off and on 364.4
  change 854.5
  quibble 936.9
blown
  windblown 318.24
  tainted 393.41
  blighted 393.42
blow off steam 743.24
blow one's cool 105.17
blow one's cover 351.8
blow one's mind
  use 87.22
  lose self-control 128.8
  go mad 926.22
  freak out 976.8
  dream 986.17
blow one's top
  get excited 105.17
  fly into a rage 152.20
  go mad 926.22
blowout feast 8.9
  party 582.12
  explosion 671.7
  festival 743.4
  disgorgement 909.7
blow out
  run out 190.13
  erupt 671.13
  explode 671.14
  evacuate 909.22
  disgorge 909.25
  fight fire 1022.7
blow over
  die down 318.20
  come to an end 820.6
  fell 913.5
blowpipe
  blower 318.18
  blowtorch 1020.14
blow the lid off
  disclose 351.4
  uncover 941.4
blow the whistle
  have no patience with 135.5
  inform on 551.13
  play 746.5
blow to 624.19
blowtorch
  jet plane 181.3
  blowlamp 1020.14
blowup outburst 152.9
  intensification 251.2
  explosion 671.7
  print 714.5
blow up excite 105.12
  get pumped 105.17
  fly into a rage 152.20
  intensify 251.5
  enlarge 259.4
  strike dead 308.18
  blow 318.20
  misrepresent 350.3
  blast 395.18
  come to nothing 410.13
  praise 509.12
  explode 671.14
  process 714.15
  disprove 958.4
blowy 318.22
blowzy
  red-complexioned 41.9
  corpulent 257.18
  slovenly 810.15
blubber
  n softness 1047.4
  v weep 115.12
  bubble 320.4
  speak 524.25
  mumble 525.9
blubbery 1056.9
bludgeon
  intimidate 127.20
  coerce 424.7
  threaten 514.2
blue
  n blueness 45.1
  proof 548.5
  the heavens 1072.2
  v azure 45.2
  adj bluish 45.3
  melancholy 112.23
  deathly 307.29
  obscene 666.9
blue blood
  aristocracy 607.3
  upper class 607.4
  nobility 608.2
  nobleman 608.4
blue-blooded
  upper-class 607.10
  wellborn 608.11
blue book
  official document 549.8
  register 549.9
  information 551.1
  examination 938.2
blue-chip 999.15
blue-collar worker 726.2
bluegrass 708.11
blue in the face 105.25
bluejacket
  mariner 183.1
  navy man 183.4
blue language 513.3
bluenose 500.11
blue-pencil
  delete 255.12
  revise 392.12
  obliterate 395.16
blueprint
  n representation 349.1
  plan 381.1
  diagram 381.3
  proof 548.5
  print 714.5
  outline 801.4
  schedule 965.3
  v plot 381.10
  process 714.15
blue ribbon
  supremacy 249.3
  victory 411.1
  award 646.2
  decoration 646.5
blues
  sulks 110.10
  mumps 112.6
  folk music 708.11
bluestocking
  n pedant 929.5
  adj book-learned 928.22
blue streak 174.6
bluff
  n precipice 200.3
  slope 237.2
  sham 354.3
  trick 356.6
  impostor 357.6
  bluster 503.1
  actor 503.2
  v sham 354.21
  deceive 356.14
  bluster 503.3
  adj impudent 142.10
  steep 204.18
  blunt 286.3
  artless 416.5
  gruff 505.7
  candid 644.17
blunder
  n bungle 414.5
  foolish act 923.4
  error 975.5
  v miss 410.14
  bungle 414.11
  flounder 917.15
  make an error 975.14
blunderheaded
  bungling 414.20
  unintelligent 922.17
blundering
  n bungling 414.4
  adj inept 414.20
blunder upon
  bungle 414.11
  come across 941.3
blunt
  n money 728.2
  v weaken 16.10
  deaden 25.4
  numb 94.7
  dull 286.2
  disincline 379.4
  moderate 670.6
  adj unfeeling 94.9
  dull 286.3
  artless 416.5
  free-acting 430.23
  gruff 505.7
  candid 644.17
  dim-witted 922.16
blunted 286.3
blur
  n inconspicuousness 32.2
  stigma 661.6
  stain 1004.3
  v dim 32.4
  deform 263.3
  confound 945.3
  stain 1004.6
blurb publicity 352.4
  commendation 509.3
blurred
  inconspicuous 32.6
  formless 263.4
  inarticulate 525.12
  vague 971.19
blurt out
  exclaim 59.7
  betray 351.6
  act on the spur of the moment 365.7
  remark 524.24
blush
  n warmth 35.2
  reddening 41.3
  blushing 139.5
  glow 1019.12
  v redden 41.5
  change color 105.19
  flush 139.8
  be guilty 656.2
blushing
  n reddening 41.3
  flushing 139.5
  adj reddening 41.11
  humiliated 137.14
  blushful 139.13
  luminous 1025.30
bluster
  n boasting 502.1
  swagger 503.1
  loud talk 503.1
  turbulence 671.2
  agitation 917.1
  v intimidate 127.20
  be angry 152.15
  blow 318.20
  put up a bold front 454.5
  boast 502.6
  hector 503.3
blustering
  n act 503.1
  adj noisy 53.13
  windy 318.22
  blustery 503.4
  threatening 514.3
  turbulent 671.18
boar male animal 76.8
  swine 311.9
board
  n meal 8.5
  food 10.1
  rations 10.6
  accommodations 385.3
  council 423.1
  governing board 567.12
  directorate 574.11
  tribunal 595.1
  stage 704.16
  stock exchange 737.7
  card 758.2
  table 901.15
  circuitry 1042.3
  wood 1054.3
  v feed 8.18

D G
H L
M Q

dine 8.21
ship activity 182.48
embark 188.15
mount 193.12
face 295.23
provision 385.9
accommodate 385.10
raid 459.20
boarder eater 8.16
lodger 227.8
board game 743.9
boardinghouse 228.15
board meeting 423.3
the boards
show business 704.1
stage 704.16
boardwalk 383.2
boast
n boasting 502.1
good thing 999.5
v be stuck on oneself 140.6
possess 469.4
brag 502.6
praise 509.12
boastful vain 136.9
proud 140.9
boasting 502.10
boat
n car 179.10
watercraft 180.1
ship 180.1
v navigate 182.13
boathouse 197.27
boating 182.1
boatload 196.2
boat person 368.5
boatswain
ship's officer 183.7
superintendent 574.2
boatyard 739.3
bob
n obeisance 155.2
float 180.11
instrument 200.6
weight 297.6
greeting 585.4
money 728.8
repeat 849.5
jerk 905.3
crouch 913.3
shake 917.3
v cut the hair 3.22
bow 155.6
excise 255.10
shorten 268.6
caper 366.6
fish 382.10
depress 913.9
oscillate 916.10
shake 917.11
bobble
n bungle 414.5
shake 917.3
goof 975.6
v bungle 414.12
mishandle 745.5
play 746.5
oscillate 916.10
shake 917.11
make a boner 975.15
bobby 1008.16
bobbysoxer 302.8
bobcat 311.22
bob up burst forth 33.9
be unexpected 131.6
arrive 186.6
shoot up 193.9
bode 133.11
bodice 5.15
bodiless
unsubstantial 764.5
disembodied 988.8
immaterial 1053.7
bodily
adj carnal 663.6
innate 767.8
material 1052.10
adv in person 221.17
wholly 792.13
body
n the one 2.1
man 76.5
population 227.1
size 257.1
human form 262.4
thickness 269.2
corpse 307.16
person 312.5
type 548.6
association 617.1
community 617.2
sect 675.3
automobile racing 756.1
substantiality 763.1
something 763.3
company 770.3
collection 770.11
major part 792.6
individual 872.4
solid 1045.6
physical being 1052.3
v materialize 1052.9
bodybuilding
exercise 84.2
sport 744.1
body count
obituary 307.14
summation 1017.11
body double 576.1
bodyguard escort 769.5
safeguard 1008.14
body language 517.14
body politic
population 227.1
country 232.1
the people 606.1
body snatcher
thief 483.1
executive search agency 615.5
boffo 409.4
bog
n receptacle of filth 80.12
marsh 243.1
v mire 243.2
bog down 243.2
bogey
n frightener 127.9
military aircraft 181.9
bugbear 680.9
round 751.3
v play 751.4
bogeyman
frightener 127.9
bugbear 680.9
bogeymen 1001.1
boggle
n demur 325.2
bungle 414.5
v astonish 122.6
start 127.12
demur 325.4
object 333.5
not know one's own mind 362.6
bungle 414.11
lose one's nerve 491.8
quibble 936.9
stump 971.14
boggle the mind
astonish 122.6
be unbelievable 955.7
boggy marshy 243.3
moist 1065.15
bogus
spurious 354.26
substitute 862.8
Bohemian
n nomad 178.4
nonconformist 868.3
adj informal 581.3
unconventional 868.6
boil
n dish 10.7
sore 85.37
swelling 283.4
turbulence 671.2
agitation 917.1
heating 1020.2
v cook 11.5
sanitize 79.24
be angry 152.15
bubble 320.4
seethe 671.12
be hot 1019.22
stew 1020.20
boil down 268.6
boiler room
noisemaker 53.6
confidence game 356.10
stockbrokerage 737.9
boiling over
fervent 93.18
heated 105.22
boiling point 1019.1
boisterous noisy 53.13
turbulent 105.24
blustering 503.4
rampageous 671.20
bold insolent 142.9
brazen 142.11
seaworthy 180.18
steep 204.18
protruding 283.14
in relief 283.18
conspicuous 348.12
defiant 454.7
courageous 492.17
foolhardy 493.9
immodest 666.6
boldfaced
brazen 142.11
typographic 548.20
bole cylinder 282.4
stem 310.21
boll sphere 282.2
seed vessel 310.30
bollix up spoil 393.11
bungle 414.12
complicate 799.3
confuse 811.3
hinder 1012.16
Bolshevik
n radical 611.12
Communist 611.13
revolutionist 860.3
adj Communist 611.21
revolutionist 860.6
bolster
n bedding 901.20
v comfort 121.6
aid 449.12
encourage 492.16
support 901.21
confirm 957.11
bolt
n a length 267.2
apostasy 363.2
change one's mind 363.7
flight 368.4
desertion 370.2
lock 428.5
arrow 462.6
missile 462.18
bundle 770.8
lightning 1025.17
v gobble 8.23
refine 79.22
speed 174.8
close 293.6
flee 368.10
defect 370.6
gluttonize 672.4
segregate 773.6
hook 800.8
classify 808.11
obstruct 1012.12
bolt-hole
hiding place 346.4
secret passage 346.5
means of escape 369.3
bolt out of the blue 131.2
bolt upright
vertical 200.11
straight 200.13
bolus bite 8.2
pill 86.7
sphere 282.2
bomb
n marijuana 87.11
surprise 131.2
failure 410.2
bombshell 462.20
stage show 704.4
game 746.3
v fall flat 117.4
blow up 395.18
fail 410.10
attack 459.23
dramatize 704.28
bombardier crew 185.4
artilleryman 461.11
bombardment
bombing 459.7

  fission 1038.8
bombast
  n boasting 502.1
  nonsense 520.2
  bombastry 545.2
  v talk big 545.6
bombastic
  pompous 501.22
  inflated 502.12
  stiff 534.3
  fustian 545.9
bombed out 87.24
bomber alarmist 127.8
  destroyer 395.8
  artilleryman 461.11
  violent person 671.9
bombshell
  surprise 131.2
  bomb 462.20
bomb shelter 346.4
bona fide
  adj straight 644.14
  genuine 973.15
  adv faithfully 644.25
bonanza
  source of supply 386.4
  rich source 618.4
  plenty 991.2
bon appetit! 8.35
bond
  n shackle 428.4
  compact 437.1
  security 438.1
  pledge 438.2
  fidelity 644.7
  nominal rate 738.5
  relation 775.1
  joining 800.1
  fastening 800.3
  v secure 438.9
  pledge 438.10
  put together 800.5
  adj subjugated 432.14
bondage 432.1
bondholder 737.14
bondsman
  subject 432.7
  guarantor 438.6
bone
  n the skeleton 2.2
  whiteness 37.2
  hardness 1046.6
  dryness 1066.2
  v study 570.12
  adj skeleton 2.26
bonehead
  bungler 414.9
  fool 924.4
bone of contention
  apple of discord 456.7
  question 938.10
boner bungle 414.5
  goof 975.6
bones heart 93.3
  corpse 307.16
  refuse 391.4
  dice 759.8
  body 1052.3
bone to pick
  bone of contention 456.7
  grudge 589.5
bone up
  study up 570.14
  refresh the memory 989.19
bonfire 1019.13
bonhomie
  good nature 143.2
  hospitality 585.1
  cordiality 587.6
bon jour! 585.15
bonkers 926.27
bon mot 489.7
bonnet cloak 5.40
  top 295.21
bonny good 999.12
  comely 1016.19
bon ton custom 373.1
  fashion 578.1
  chic 578.2
  upper class 607.2
bonus extra 254.4
  find 472.6
  gratuity 478.5
  premium 624.6
  surplus 993.5
bon vivant
  eater 8.16
  connoisseur 496.7
  sociable person 582.16
  boon companion 588.5
  sensualist 663.3
bon voyage! 188.22
bony
  skeleton 2.26
  lean 270.17
  hard 1046.10
boo
  n marijuana 87.11
  booing 508.3
  v hiss 508.10
  interj bah! 157.10
boob dupe 358.2
  fool 924.3
boo-boo
  bungle 414.5
  goof 975.6
boobs 283.7
boob tube 1035.11
booby loser 412.5
  fool 924.3
booby hatch 926.14
booby prize 646.2
booby trap
  ambush 346.3
  deception 356.12
  hidden danger 1006.5
boodle bribe 378.2
  booty 482.11
  spoils of office 609.35
  money 728.2
boogie-woogie 708.9
boo-hoo 115.12
book
  n publication 352.1
  volume 554.1
  edition 554.1
  printed product 554.3
  part 554.13
  periodical 555.1
  playbook 704.21
  script 706.3
  poetry 720.9
  casino 759.19
  part of writing 793.2
  v depose 334.6
  flee 368.11
  curse 513.5
  record 549.15
  accuse 599.7
  employ 615.14
  keep accounts 628.8
  list 871.8
  prearrange 965.4
  schedule 965.6
bookbinding 554.14
bookcase
  storehouse 386.6
  bookbinding 554.14
  bookholder 554.17
bookdealer 554.2
book end 554.17
bookie 759.20
booking
  registration 549.14
  engagement 615.4
  show 704.11
  prearrangement 965.1
bookish learned 570.17
  studentlike 572.12
  book-smart 928.22
bookkeeper
  recorder 550.1
  accountant 628.7
  treasurer 729.12
  calculator 1017.15
bookkeeping
  n accounting 628.6
  adj recording 628.12
book learning 928.5
booklet 554.11
booklover
  philobiblist 554.18
  bookworm 929.4
bookmaker 759.20
bookmark 517.10
book review 946.2
book reviewer 556.4
books
  account book 628.4
  bill 871.5
bookseller 554.2
bookshelf 554.17
bookstore 554.16
book value 738.9
bookworm
  booklover 554.18
  nerd 572.10
  bibliophage 929.4
boom
  n noise 53.3
  reverberation 54.2
  volume 56.4
  float 180.11
  intensification 251.2
  explosion 671.7
  business cycle 731.10
  lever 906.4
  roaring trade 1010.5
  barrier 1012.5
  v hum 52.13
  din 53.7
  reverberate 54.7
  thunder 56.9
  speed 174.9
  ship activity 182.48
  grow 251.6
  speak 524.25
  thrive 1010.8
  interj bang! 56.13
boom box 50.11
boomerang
  n missile 462.18
  retaliation 506.1
  recoil 903.2
  v return 903.6
booming
  n hum 52.7
  reverberation 54.2
  explosion 56.4
  adj humming 52.20
  loud 53.11
  reverberating 54.12
  thundering 56.12
  thriving 1010.13
boon
  n godsend 472.7
  benefit 478.7
  good 999.4
  adj convivial 582.23
boondocks
  open space 158.4
  hinterland 233.2
  remote region 261.4
  woodland 310.13
boor bungler 414.8
  vulgarian 497.6
  peasant 606.6
  oaf 924.5
boorish insensible 25.6
  countrified 233.7
  bungling 414.20
  churlish 497.13
  ill-bred 505.6
boost
  n increase 251.1
  improvement 392.1
  promotion 446.1
  assist 449.2
  theft 482.4
  commendation 509.3
  thrust 902.2
  lift 912.2
  v cheer 109.7
  increase 251.4
  publicize 352.15
  make better 392.9
  promote 446.2
  be useful 449.17
  rob 482.16
  commend 509.11
  thrust 902.12
  elevate 912.5
booster dose 86.6
  inoculation 91.16
  enthusiast 101.5
  publicist 352.9
  thief 483.1
  commender 509.8
  multistage rocket 1074.5
boot
  n excitement 105.3
  navy man 183.4
  recruit 461.18

D G
H L
M Q

novice 572.9
torture 605.4
kick 902.9
goof 975.6
v cloak 5.40
play 745.5
kick 902.21
dismiss 909.20
make a boner 975.15
computerize 1042.21
bootblack 577.5
boot camp 461.6
booth
compartment 197.2
hut 228.9
stall 736.3
bootleg
v distill 88.30
illicit goods 732.7
adj illegal 674.6
bootlegger
liquor dealer 88.19
racketeer 732.4
bootless
ineffective 19.15
fruitless 391.12
unsuccessful 410.18
bootlicker
flatterer 138.4
assenter 332.6
bootmaker 5.38
boot out 909.13
booty gain 472.3
take 480.10
spoil 482.11
booze
n spirits 88.13
v imbibe 8.29
use 87.22
drink 88.25
bop 708.9
bordello
disapproved place 228.28
brothel 665.9
border
n exterior 206.2
limbus 211.4
frontier 211.5
partition 213.5
side 218.1
sphere 231.2
size 257.1
scenery 704.20
garden 1069.10
v edge 211.10
side 218.4
adjoin 223.9
adj final 820.11
bordering
n edging 211.7
adj environing 209.8
fringing 211.11
adjacent 223.16
borderland
frontier 211.5
sphere 231.2
hinterland 233.2
borderline 211.11
borderline case
lunatic 926.15
gamble 971.8
bore
n annoyance 96.2
crashing bore 118.4
wave 238.14
diameter 269.3
hole 292.3
v give no pleasure 96.12
leave one cold 118.7
excavate 284.15
perforate 292.15
boreal
northern 161.14
seasonal 313.9
windy 318.22
cold 1023.14
boredom
unpleasure 96.1
weariness 118.3
languor 331.6
incuriosity 982.1
borehole 292.3
borer 285.3
boring
n hole 292.3
adj irritating 26.13
wearying 118.10
same 781.6
born
given birth 1.4
innate 767.8
thorough 794.10
born-again
redeemed 685.9
regenerate 692.10
converted 858.19
borne 901.24
borne out 957.20
born for 413.29
born yesterday 416.5
borough town 230.1
region 231.5
election district 609.16
borrow
imitate 336.5
rob 482.16
plagiarize 482.19
take a loan of 621.3
go in debt 623.6
discount 728.27
play 751.4
borrowing
plagiarism 482.8
loan word 526.7
appropriation 621.2
money-raising 621.1
debt 623.1
money market 728.16
borscht circuit 704.11
borstal
prison 429.8
reform school 567.9
bosh humbug 354.14
bullshit 520.3
bos'n 183.7
bosom
n heart 93.3
interior 207.2
breast 283.6
inner nature 767.5
v keep secret 345.7
conceal 346.7
hold 474.7
embrace 562.18
bosom buddy 588.4
bosomy
corpulent 257.18
bulging 283.15
pectoral 283.19
boss
n superior 249.4
bulge 283.3
print 517.7
superintendent 574.2
master 575.1
politics 610.7
important person 997.11
v emboss 283.12
roughen 288.4
direct 573.8
supervise 573.10
adj supervising 573.13
governing 612.18
excellent 999.13
bossism
authoritativeness 417.3
politics 609.1
bossy
n female animal 77.10
cattle 311.6
adj in relief 283.18
imperious 417.16
botanical
vegetable 310.36
biological 1068.4
botanical garden 1069.1
botany biology 1068.1
plants 310.1
botch
n slipshodness 340.3
bad likeness 350.2
fiasco 410.6
bungle 414.5
blunder 975.5
v do carelessly 340.9
misdraw 350.4
spoil 393.10
miss 410.14
bungle 414.11
blunder 975.14
both
n two 873.2
adj the two 873.7
bother
n annoyance 96.2
dither 105.6
bustle 330.4
imposition 643.1
commotion 810.4
bewilderment 971.3
confusion 985.3
inconvenience 996.3
trouble 1013.3
v annoy 96.13
distress 96.16
vex 98.15
concern 126.4
presume upon 640.7
bewilder 971.12
confuse 985.7
inconvenience 996.4
trouble 1013.13
bothered
annoyed 96.21
distressed 96.22
anxious 126.7
bewildered 971.24
confused 985.12
troubled 1013.20
bothersome
annoying 98.22
troublesome 126.10
difficult 1013.18
bottle
n container 195.1
v package 212.9
put up 397.11
bottleneck
convergence 169.1
contraction 260.1
narrow place 270.3
obstruction 293.3
hindrance 1012.1
bottle up enclose 212.6
secrete 346.7
suppress 428.8
confine 429.12
retain 474.5
hinder 1012.10
bottom
n ship 180.1
under side 199.1
bed 199.4
buttocks 217.4
marsh 243.1
base 274.4
valley 284.9
pluck 359.3
fortitude 492.6
v base on 199.6
solve 940.2
adj bottommost 199.7
reduced 633.9
bottom dollar
funds 728.14
extremity 820.2
bottoming out 731.10
bottomless
greedy 100.27
abysmal 275.11
plentiful 991.7
bottomless pit
depths 275.3
infinity 823.1
the bottom line
essential content 196.5
fact 761.3
essence 767.3
salient point 997.6
sum 1017.6
bottom of the barrel 820.2
bottom out
base on 199.6
be changed 852.6
boudoir 197.7
bouffant 259.13
bough branch 310.20
member 793.4
bought 733.11
bougie 1026.2
bouillabaisse 10.11
bouillon 10.14
boulder 1059.5

bounce
n lightheartedness 109.3
leap 366.1
swagger 501.8
recoil 903.2
shake 917.3
radio signal 1034.10
elasticity 1048.1
v leap 366.5
caper 366.6
bluster 503.3
play 745.5
recoil 903.6
eject 909.13
dismiss 909.20
alternate 916.14
shake 917.11
give 1048.5
bounce a check 625.6
bounce back
n reaction 903.1
v reverberate 54.7
recover 396.19
recoil 903.6
reflect 1036.16
bouncer 909.11
bouncing
n leaping 366.3
adj strong 15.15
hale 83.12
active 330.17
leaping 366.7
recoiling 903.10
bound
n boundary 211.3
leap 366.1
recoil 903.2
v speed 174.8
circumscribe 210.4
limit 210.5
separate 211.8
border 211.10
enclose 212.5
leap 366.5
recoil 903.6
adj limited 210.7
enclosed 212.10
stopped 293.11
resolute 359.11
tied 428.16
promised 436.8
obliged 641.16
related 775.9
joined 800.13
certain 970.13
boundary
n limitation 210.2
bound 211.3
border 211.3
fence 212.4
size 257.1
joint 800.4
extremity 820.2
grammar 857.4
bisector 875.3
adj bordering 211.11
final 820.11
bounder
vulgarian 497.6
cad 660.7
bound for 161.26
boundless large 247.7
almighty 677.17
infinite 823.3
excessive 993.16
bound over 615.21
bountiful liberal 485.4
productive 890.9
plentiful 991.7
bounty gratuity 478.5
subsidy 478.8
liberality 485.1
bonus 624.6
bouquet fragrance 70.1
nosegay 310.25
compliment 509.6
bundle 770.8
bourgeois
n townsman 227.6
vulgarian 497.6
member of the middle class 607.6
conformist 867.2
adj common 497.14
upper-class 607.10
capitalist 611.23
conformist 867.6
ordinary 1005.8
bourgeoisie
middle class 607.5
mediocrity 1005.5
bout spree 88.5
contest 457.3
boxing 457.9
revel 743.6
game 743.9
fight 754.3
turn 825.2
round 850.3
boutique 736.1
boutonniere 310.25
bovine
n cattle 311.6
adj unconcerned 102.7
inexcitable 106.10
complacent 107.10
ungulate 311.46
stupid 922.15
bow curve 279.2
bend 279.3
bulge 283.3
longbow 462.7
violin family 711.5
bow
n obeisance 155.2
prow 216.3
greeting 585.4
crouch 913.3
v fawn 138.7
make obeisance 155.6
curve 279.6
lose 412.12
submit 433.10
bend 913.9
bowdlerize
clean 79.18
delete 255.12
shorten 268.6
bowel movement
defecation 12.2
feces 12.4
bowels
digestive system 2.18
insides 207.4
depths 275.3
bower
summerhouse 228.12
card 758.2
safeguard 1008.3
Bowery 230.6
bowl
n tableware 8.12
cavity 284.2
arena 463.1
ceramic ware 742.2
football 746.1
lawn bowling 750.3
throw 904.3
v be concave 284.12
hollow 284.13
push 904.9
throw 904.10
roll 915.10
bowl down
astonish 122.6
startle 131.8
fell 913.5
bowlegged 265.12
bowlegs 265.3
bowl over
astonish 122.6
startle 131.8
fell 913.5
bow out quit 188.9
exit 190.12
absent oneself 222.8
die 307.20
dismiss 909.18
box
n container 195.1
compartment 197.2
cottage 228.8
coffin 309.11
storehouse 386.6
gift 478.4
slap 604.3
auditorium 704.15
slap 902.8
impasse 1013.6
v package 212.9
wrap 295.20
restrict 428.9
contend 457.13
hit 604.12
fight 754.4
slap 902.19
boxed packed 212.12
covered 295.31
boxer pugilist 461.2
fighter 754.2
box in enclose 212.5
confine 212.6
restrict 428.9
qualify 959.3
boxing packaging 212.2
fighting 457.9
sports 754
prizefighting 754.1
box office
attendance 221.4
receipts 627.1
office 739.7
box score 1017.6
boy
n heroin 87.9
lad 302.5
man 577.4
card 758.2
interj goody! 95.21
boycott
n objection 333.2
ostracism 586.3
strike 727.5
exclusion 773.1
v object 333.5
ostracize 586.6
strike 727.10
boyfriend admirer 104.13
friend 588.1
boyhood
childhood 301.2
young people 302.2
boyish thin 270.16
childish 301.11
immature 406.11
boy wonder 413.12
bra brassiere 5.24
supporter 901.2
brace
n dressing 86.33
verticalness 200.1
staff 708.29
two 873.2
supporter 901.2
v refresh 9.2
strengthen 15.13
stand 200.7
bind 800.9
support 901.21
stiffen 1046.9
bracelet circle 280.3
jewel 498.6
brace oneself
be determined 359.8
prepare oneself 405.13
bracer refreshment 9.1
tonic 86.8
drink 88.8
supporter 901.2
brace up refresh 9.2
strengthen 15.13
cheer up 109.9
recuperate 396.19
take courage 492.14
encourage 492.16
bracing
n refreshment 9.1
adj refreshing 9.3
energizing 17.15
healthful 81.5
tonic 86.44
supporting 901.23
cool 1023.12
bracket
n boundary 211.3
class 809.2
supporter 901.2
v parenthesize 212.8
grammaticize 530.16
relate 775.6
simplify 798.4
put together 800.5

brackish nasty 64.7
salty 68.9
bract 310.28
brag
n boasting 502.1
braggart 502.5
v boast 502.6
bluster 503.3
praise 509.12
braggart
n egotist 140.5
boaster 502.5
blusterer 503.2
adj boastful 502.10
Brahman cattle 311.6
nobleman 608.4
clergy 699.13
Brahmin snob 141.7
aristocrat 607.4
intellectual 929.1
braid
n hair 3.7
cord 271.2
plait 740.2
v spin 271.6
weave 740.6
Braille 30.6
brain
n encephalon 2.15
sensory area 919.1
seat of thought 919.6
intelligence 920.9
intellectual 929.1
v strike dead 308.18
adj nerve 2.30
brainchild
writing 547.10
work of art 712.10
product 893.1
good idea 932.6
figment of the imagination 986.5
brain-damaged 926.28
brain death
fatal disease 85.2
death 307.1
brainless
unintelligent 922.13
foolish 923.8
scatterbrained 985.16
brainstorm
caprice 364.1
impulse 365.1
delirium 926.8
good idea 932.6
absurd idea 932.7
brainteaser 522.9
brain trust 423.1
brain twister 522.8
brainwash
inculcate 568.12
propagandize 569.4
indoctrinate 858.15
brainy 920.14
braise cook 11.5
brown 40.2
brake
n thicket 310.15
curb 1012.7
v slow 175.9
put a stop to 857.11
halt 1012.13
bramble
thorn 285.5
shrubbery 310.9
adhesive 803.4
brambly 285.10
bran feed 10.4
hull 295.16
powder 1051.5
branch
n divergence 171.4
stream 238.1
tributary 238.3
fork 310.20
part of the service 461.21
lineage 560.4
offshoot 561.4
organ 617.10
sect 675.3
office 739.7
member 793.4
class 809.2
arm 809.5
v fork 171.7
spread 259.6
angle 278.5
bisect 875.4
branching
n forking 171.3
bisection 875.1
adj forked 171.10
leafy 310.41
halved 875.6
branch off deviate 164.3
fork 171.7
branch out fork 171.7
spread 259.6
disperse 771.4
brand
n mark 517.5
label 517.13
stigma 661.6
nature 767.4
kind 809.3
characteristic 865.4
stain 1004.3
coal 1019.16
burn 1020.6
cauterant 1020.15
combustion product 1020.16
lighter 1021.4
v mark 517.19
label 517.20
stigmatize 661.9
stain 1004.6
burn 1020.24
brandish
n waving 916.2
v manifest 348.5
flaunt 501.17
wave 916.11
brand-new 841.10
brandy 88.15
brash
n rainstorm 316.2
rock 1059.1
adj impudent 142.10
defiant 454.7
rash 493.7
gruff 505.7
brass
n impudence 142.3
rashness 493.1
monument 549.12
orchestra 710.12
money 728.2
personage 997.8
adj brazen 1058.17
the brass the best 249.5
directorate 574.11
commissioned officer 575.18
brassiere bra 5.24
supporter 901.2
brass knuckles 462.4
brass tacks 761.4
brass wind instrument 711.7
brassy noisy 53.13
raucous 58.15
brazen 142.11
defiant 454.7
immodest 666.6
brass 1058.17
brat urchin 302.4
bravado defiance 454.1
daring 492.5
boasting 502.1
bluster 503.1
brave
n military man 461.6
brave person 492.8
v endure 134.5
confront 216.8
defy 454.3
face 492.11
take chances 1006.7
thwart 1012.15
adj courageous 492.17
showy 501.19
bravery courage 492.1
finery 498.3
bravo
n killer 308.11
combatant 461.1
blusterer 503.2
ruffian 593.3
interj congratulations! 149.4
bravissimo! 509.22
bravura
n skill 413.1
daring 492.5
display 501.4
vocal music 708.13
aria 708.16
adj skillful 413.22
showy 501.19
vocal 708.50
brawl
n noise 53.3
quarrel 456.5
free-for-all 457.5
party 582.12
turbulence 671.2
assembly 770.2
commotion 810.4
v be noisy 53.9
quarrel 456.11
contend 457.13
brawler rebel 327.5
oppositionist 452.3
combatant 461.1
brawling noisy 53.13
vociferous 59.10
brawn
muscularity 15.2
organic matter 305.1
brawny
able-bodied 15.16
corpulent 257.18
bray
n blare 53.5
rasp 58.3
v blare 53.10
sound harshly 58.9
cry 60.2
speak 524.25
pulverize 1051.9
brazen
v brave 492.11
adj reddish-brown 40.4
noisy 53.13
raucous 58.15
insolent 142.11
defiant 454.7
gaudy 501.20
hardened 654.17
immodest 666.6
brass 1058.17
rash 493.7
brazen it out 360.4
breach
n crack 224.2
violation 435.2
falling-out 456.4
misdeed 655.2
break 802.4
interruption 813.2
v cleave 224.4
rupture 292.14
violate 435.4
break 802.12
open 818.12
breach of confidence 645.5
breach of faith 645.6
bread
n food 10.1
pain 10.28
support 449.3
Eucharist 701.7
money 728.2
v feed 8.18
sprinkle 771.6
breadth space 158.1
size 257.1
width 269.1
expanse 269.1
extent 300.3
broad-mindedness 979.1
breadwinner 726.2
break
n respite 20.2
trauma 85.38
act of kindness 143.7
start 188.2
boundary 211.3
crack 224.2
escape 369.1
falling-out 456.4
cheapening 633.4
declining market 737.5
horse race 757.3
deficiency 795.2

breakage 802.4
interruption 813.2
interim 826.1
delay 846.2
revolution 852.2
pause 857.3
chance 972.1
stroke of luck 1010.3
v weaken 16.9
take a rest 20.8
change course 182.30
set out 188.8
cleave 224.4
billow 238.22
be published 352.16
accustom 373.9
injure 393.13
crack up 393.23
conquer 412.10
subdue 432.9
domesticate 432.11
violate 435.4
depose 447.4
train 568.13
domineer 612.16
go bankrupt 625.7
ruin 625.8
cheapen 633.6
fight 754.4
race 757.5
disagree 789.5
burst 802.12
discontinue 813.3
intervene 826.3
pause 857.9
interrupt 857.10
dismiss 909.19
grow light 1025.27
shatter 1050.3
tend 1070.7
breakable frail 16.14
brittle 1050.4
breakaway
n apostasy 363.2
desertion 370.2
scoring chance 749.3
game 752.3
adj rebellious 327.11
dissenting 333.6
repudiative 363.12
unconventional 868.6
unusual 870.10
counteractive 900.8
break away
n apostacize 363.7
v revolt 327.7
escape 369.6
defect 370.6
break bread with 8.21
breakdown
exhaustion 21.2
collapse 85.8
impairment 393.1
debacle 395.4
failure 410.3
analysis 801.1
dissection 802.5
disintegration 806.1
revolution 860.1
break down
burn out 21.5
aggrieve 112.19
weep 115.12
founder 393.24
be impaired 393.26
raze 395.19
subdue 432.9
diversify 782.2
analyze 801.6
dissect 802.17
classify 809.6
fall through 911.3
breakers wave 238.14
foam 320.2
break even 790.5
breakfast
n meal 8.6
v dine 8.21
break for 161.9
break forth
burst forth 33.9
emerge 190.11
be revealed 351.8
break ground
weigh anchor 182.18
initiate 818.10
break in
n burglary 482.5
v enter 189.7
intrude 214.5
interrupt 214.6
breach 292.14
accustom 373.9
domesticate 432.11
train 568.13
make a beginning 818.8
breaking point 993.7
breaking story 552.3
break loose
escape 369.6
extricate 431.7
breakneck fast 174.15
steep 204.18
precipitate 401.10
reckless 493.8
break off
n cessation 857.1
v disaccustom 374.2
disagree 789.5
discontinue 813.3
interrupt 857.10
break one's heart 112.19
break one's neck
be active 330.14
make haste 401.5
do one's best 403.14
break one up
make laugh 116.9
amuse 743.21
breakout escape 369.1
game 749.3
itemization 801.2
break out take ill 85.47
find vent 369.10
extricate 431.7
free oneself from 431.8
erupt 671.13
play 749.7
itemize 801.7
originate 818.13
break the ice
prepare the way 405.12
cultivate 587.12
initiate 818.10
break the news
divulge 351.5
report 552.11
breakthrough
improvement 392.1
attack 459.1
curtain-raiser 816.2
innovation 852.4
conversion 858.1
break through
breach 292.14
find vent 369.10
make good 409.10
breakup decay 393.6
destruction 395.1
debacle 395.4
disbandment 771.3
analysis 801.1
disruption 802.3
disintegration 806.1
revolution 860.1
break up laugh 116.8
decay 393.22
break 393.23
be destroyed 395.22
disband 771.8
diversify 782.2
analyze 801.6
come apart 802.9
shatter 802.13
part company 802.19
disintegrate 806.3
change 852.7
powder 1051.10
breakwater
point of land 283.9
buttress 901.4
harbor 1009.6
barrier 1012.5
break water
submarines 182.47
shoot up 193.9
break wind 909.29
break with 456.10
breast
n fowl part 10.23
heart 93.3
bosom 283.6
inner nature 767.5
v confront 216.8
contend against 451.4
breast-beating 658.2
breast-feed 8.19
breastwork 1012.5
breath breathing 2.21
respite 20.2
murmur 52.4
odor 69.1
touch 73.1
life 306.1
vitality 306.3
puff 318.4
spirit 764.3
instant 830.3
psyche 919.4
vapor 1067.1
breathe take a rest 20.8
murmur 52.10
have an odor 69.6
smell 69.8
live 306.9
tell confidentially 345.9
manifest 348.5
divulge 351.5
mean 518.8
say 524.22
speak 524.25
tip off 551.11
exist 761.8
imbue 797.11
evidence 957.8
breathe easy 120.8
breather 402.1
breathing
n respiration 2.21
adj respiratory 2.32
living 306.13
lifelike 784.16
breathing spell
respite 20.2
truce 465.5
pause 857.3
breathless
winded 21.12
mute 51.12
fervent 93.18
eager 101.8
wondering 122.9
impatient 135.6
stuffy 173.16
dead 307.30
precipitate 401.10
breathtaking
exciting 105.30
astonishing 122.12
breathy 525.12
breech
n bottom 199.1
rear 217.1
v cloak 5.40
breeches 5.18
breed
n race 559.4
lineage 560.4
offspring 561.1
kind 809.3
v procreate 78.8
be pregnant 78.12
grow 251.6
train 568.13
cause 886.10
originate 892.12
raise 1070.6
breeding
n procreation 78.2
good breeding 504.4
training 568.3
fission 1038.8
planting 1069.14
animal husbandry 1070.1
adj pregnant 78.18
breeding ground 886.8
breeze
n light wind 318.5
easy 1014.4
softness 1047.4
v speed 174.9
blow 318.20
race 757.5
breezeway 197.18

breezy
lighthearted 109.12
airy 317.12
windy 318.22
active 330.17
brethren brother 559.3
the laity 700.1
brevet decree 420.4
grant 443.5
commission 615.1
brevity shortness 268.1
taciturnity 344.2
conciseness 537.1
briefness 828.2
brew
n spirits 88.13
beer 88.16
concoction 405.3
v cook 11.5
grow 14.2
distill 88.30
expand 259.7
blow 318.20
plot 381.9
make up 405.7
imbue 797.11
be imminent 840.2
liquefy 1064.5
soak 1065.13
brewer 88.19
brewery
distillery 88.21
plant 739.3
bribable
corruptible 378.4
improbity 645.23
influenceable 894.15
bribe
n incentive 375.7
bribe money 378.2
gratuity 478.5
v throw a sop to 378.3
bribery
graft 378.1
bribing 378.1
bric-a-brac
trinket 498.4
work of art 712.10
trivia 998.4
brick
n pavement 383.6
good person 659.2
ceramic ware 742.2
hardness 1046.6
building material 1054.2
v face 295.23
brickbat
n indignity 156.2
disrespect 156.3
missile 462.18
v pelt 459.27
brick wall 1012.5
brickyard 739.3
bridal
n wedding 563.3
adj matrimonial 563.18
bride 563.5
bridegroom 563.5
bridesmaid 563.4
bridge
n observation post 27.8
railway 383.7
span 383.9
stage 704.16
passage 708.24
violin family 711.5
auction bridge 758.3
v overlie 295.30
bridged 800.13
bridgehead
vanguard 216.2
stronghold 460.6
bridging
n joining 800.1
adj overlying 295.36
joining 800.16
bridle
n shackle 428.4
v give oneself airs 141.8
anger 152.17
restrain 428.7
bind 428.10
mince 500.14
yoke 800.10
tend 1070.7
brief
n airmanship 184.3
report 549.7
abridgment 557.1
argument 935.5
v give a briefing 184.48
outline 381.11
advise 422.5
inform 551.8
give instructions 568.15
employ 615.14
adj short 268.8
taciturn 344.9
concise 537.6
abridged 557.6
transient 828.8
briefing
airmanship 184.3
preparation 405.1
advice 422.1
information 551.1
instructions 568.6
engagement 615.4
briefly
shortly 268.12
concisely 537.7
transiently 828.10
brier thorn 285.5
shrubbery 310.9
adhesive 803.4
brig prison 429.8
jail 429.9
brigade
military unit 461.22
company 770.3
brigadier 575.18
brigand 483.4
bright
n tobacco 89.2
adj colorful 35.19
clean 79.25
sunny 97.11
cheerful 109.11
optimistic 124.12
auspicious 133.18
alert 339.14
teachable 570.18
illustrious 662.19
intelligent 920.12
smart 920.14
undamaged 1002.8
gorgeous 1016.21
brilliant 1025.32
bright and early 845.7
brighten
make pleasant 97.5
cheer 109.7
grow light 1025.27
illuminate 1025.28
bright side
cheerfulness 97.4
optimism 124.3
brilliant
colorful 35.19
skillful 413.22
witty 489.15
illustrious 662.19
smart 920.14
gorgeous 1016.21
bright 1025.32
brim
n border 211.4
v fill 794.7
brimming 794.11
brim over 238.17
brimstone
n bitch 110.12
witch 593.7
adj hellish 682.8
brindle 47.15
brine
n saltiness 68.4
preservative 397.4
v preserve 397.9
bring fetch 176.16
induce 375.22
cost 630.13
inflict 643.5
be sold 734.12
entail 772.4
cause 886.11
bring about
change course 182.30
do 328.6
prompt 375.13
bring to pass 407.5
cause 886.10
perform 892.11
bring back fetch 176.16
revive 396.16
restore 481.4
remember 989.10
remind 989.20
bring down
n disrespect 156.3
v abase 137.5
strike dead 308.18
raze 395.19
disparage 512.8
incur 897.4
fell 913.5
bring down the curtain 820.5
bring forth
elicit 192.14
manifest 348.5
cause 886.10
originate 892.12
bear 892.13
bring forward
confront 216.8
manifest 348.5
make better 392.9
propose 439.5
call to witness 598.17
adduce 957.12
bring home to
impress upon 93.16
accuse of 599.9
condemn 602.3
attribute to 888.4
convince 953.18
prove 957.10
bring in
introduce 187.14
yield 627.4
cost 630.13
reel in 906.9
harvest 1069.19
bring into play 387.14
bring into question
inquire 938.20
doubt 955.6
bring off do 328.6
carry out 328.7
bring about 407.5
succeed with 409.11
bring on induce 886.11
incur 897.4
adduce 957.12
bring oneself 324.3
bring out
elicit 192.14
externalize 206.5
manifest 348.5
issue 352.14
print 548.14
bring pressure to bear upon
urge 375.14
press 424.6
exercise influence 894.9
thrust 902.12
bring round
change course 182.30
persuade 375.23
cure 396.15
revive 396.16
convince 953.18
bring to
sail against the wind 182.24
revive 396.16
put a stop to 857.11
convert 858.11
bring to a head
aggravate 119.2
focus 208.10
ripen 407.8
bring to bear upon
apply 387.11
relate 775.6
bring together
add 253.4
reconcile 465.8
collect 472.11
assemble 770.18
bring to light
elicit 192.14
disclose 351.4
uncover 941.4

bring to mind
  imply 519.4
  resemble 784.7
  remember 989.10
bring to one's senses
  persuade 375.23
  bring to reason 925.3
  convince 953.18
bring to pass do 328.6
  bring about 407.5
  cause 886.10
bring to terms
  subdue 432.9
  reconcile 465.8
  settle 466.7
bring up confront 216.8
  propose 439.5
  train 568.13
  inaugurate 818.11
  stop 857.7
  vomit 909.26
bring upon inflict 643.5
  incur 897.4
bring up the rear
  follow 166.3
  be behind 217.8
brink 211.4
brinkmanship
  foolhardiness 493.3
  foreign policy 609.5
brio 17.4
brisk
  v refresh 9.2
  adj refreshing 9.3
  energetic 17.13
  zestful 68.7
  penetrating 105.31
  windy 318.22
  active 330.17
  brief 828.8
  cool 1023.12
  cold 1023.14
bristle
  n hair 3.2
  thorn 285.5
  barb 288.3
  v anger 152.17
  provoke 152.24
  rise 200.8
  ruffle 288.5
bristle with
  come to a point 285.6
  teem with 884.5
  abound 991.5
bristling bristly 288.9
  crowded 770.22
  teeming 884.9
Britain 232.4
britches 5.18
brittle frail 16.14
  wasted 393.35
  transient 828.7
  crisp 1050.4
broach
  n hole 292.3
  v draw off 192.12
  open 292.11
  perforate 292.15
  make public 352.11
  propose 439.5
  inaugurate 818.11
broad
  n woman 77.6
  gal 302.7
  strumpet 665.14
  adj spacious 158.11
  voluminous 257.17
  wide 269.6
  comic 488.6
  burlesque 508.14
  phonetic 524.30
  candid 644.17
  vulgar 666.8
  extensive 864.13
  vague 971.19
  open-minded 979.8
broadcast
  n publication 352.1
  dispersion 771.1
  radiobroadcast 1034.18
  planting 1069.14
  v communicate 343.7
  publish 352.10
  disperse 771.4
  radiobroadcast 1034.25
  plant 1069.18
  adj published 352.17
  dispersed 771.9
broadcasting 343.5
broaden
  increase 251.4
  grow 251.6
  enlarge 259.4
  expand 259.5
  widen 269.4
  generalize 864.9
broadening
  n increase 251.1
  expansion 259.1
  adj liberalizing 979.13
broad humor 489.1
broadly
  extensively 158.12
  far and wide 261.16
  humorously 488.7
  candidly 644.23
  generally 864.17
  vaguely 971.29
broad-minded
  nonrestrictive 430.25
  wise 920.17
  wide-minded 979.8
broadsheet 352.8
broad-shouldered
  able-bodied 15.16
  virile 76.13
broadside
  n side 218.1
  announcement 352.2
  advertising matter 352.8
  volley 459.9
  information 551.1
  adv laterally 218.8
  breadthwise 269.9
Broadway 704.1
brochure advertising matter 352.8
  booklet 554.11
brogue 524.8
broil
  n dish 10.7
  cooking 11.2
  quarrel 456.5
  free-for-all 457.5
  turbulence 671.2
  commotion 810.4
  v cook 11.5
  quarrel 456.11
  contend 457.13
  be hot 1019.22
broke bereft 473.8
  without money 619.10
  insolvent 625.11
broken
  domesticated 228.34
  rough 288.6
  impaired 393.27
  in disrepair 393.37
  ruined 395.28
  conquered 412.17
  subdued 432.15
  meek 433.15
  insolvent 625.11
  busted 802.24
  incoherent 804.4
  discontinuous 813.4
  irregular 851.3
broken-down
  overcome 112.29
  dilapidated 393.33
brokenhearted 112.29
broken-in 373.15
broken record 118.5
broker
  intermediary 213.4
  go-between 576.4
  businessman 730.9
  stockbroker 737.10
brokerage fee 630.6
  trade 731.2
  commerce 737.9
  stockbroking 737.18
bromide
  generalization 864.8
  platitude 974.3
bronchial 2.32
bronco 311.10
broncobuster
  rider 178.8
  stockman 1070.2
Bronx cheer 508.3
bronze
  n sculpture 715.2
  v brown 40.2
  adj reddish-brown 40.4
  brass 1058.17
brooch 498.6
brood
  n race 559.4
  family 559.5
  offspring 561.1
  v be pregnant 78.12
  consider 931.12
brooder
  sourpuss 112.13
  coop 228.22
  poultry 311.29
  birthplace 886.8
brood over
  grieve 112.17
  harbor revenge 507.5
  think over 931.13
  keep in memory 989.13
brook
  n stream 238.1
  v endure 134.5
  submit 433.6
  suffer 443.10
  keep an open mind 979.7
broom 79.23
broomstick 270.8
brothel
  disapproved place 228.28
  sewer 654.7
  house of prostitution 665.9
brother buddy 559.3
  friend 588.1
  associate 616.1
  member 617.11
  religious 699.16
  layman 700.2
  likeness 784.3
brotherhood
  kindness 143.1
  blood relationship 559.1
  fellowship 587.2
  association 617.3
brotherly love
  love 104.1
  benevolence 143.4
  accord 455.1
brouhaha noise 53.3
  outcry 59.4
  excitement 105.4
  turbulence 671.2
  commotion 810.4
  agitation 917.1
brow eyelashes 3.12
  looks 33.4
  summit 198.2
  head 198.6
  border 211.4
  forehead 216.5
browbeat
  intimidate 127.20
  domineer 612.16
browbeaten 432.16
brown
  n brownness 40.1
  heroin 87.9
  v cook 11.5
  embrown 40.2
  darken 1027.9
  adj brownish 40.3
brownie flatterer 138.4
  dwarf 258.5
  fairy 678.8
Brownie points 662.3
brown-nose
  n flatterer 138.4
  assenter 332.6
  v fawn 138.7
brownout
  n darkness 1027.7
  blackout 1032.20
  v darken 1027.9
brown study
  thoughtfulness 931.3
  abstractedness 985.2
  dream 986.9
browse feed on 8.28
  scan 570.13
  shop 733.8

browser 1042.19
bruise
n trauma 85.38
discoloration 1004.2
v pain 96.17
mistreat 389.5
injure 393.13
thrash soundly 604.14
bruiser ruffian 593.4
violent person 671.10
bruit
n report 552.6
v publish 352.10
bruit about 352.10
brumal seasonal 313.9
cold 1023.14
brunch 8.6
brunet
n hair color 35.9
adj black-haired 38.13
brown 40.3
brown-haired 40.5
brunt 902.3
brush
n plant beard 3.9
touch 73.1
tail 217.6
contact 223.5
hinterland 233.2
scrub 310.16
fight 457.4
art equipment 712.18
wasteland 891.2
tap 902.7
firewood 1021.3
v touch lightly 73.7
sweep 79.23
speed 174.9
contact 223.10
portray 712.19
tap 902.18
dry 1066.6
tend 1070.7
brush aside
dismiss 984.4
reject 372.2
brush off
n rejection 372.1
repulse 908.2
v sweep 79.23
repulse 908.3
dismiss 984.4
brush up groom 79.20
perfect 392.11
study up 570.14
refresh the memory 989.19
brusque taciturn 344.9
gruff 505.7
concise 537.6
candid 644.17
brutal cruel 144.26
deadly 308.23
animal 311.40
unrefined 497.12
carnal 663.6
savage 671.21
terrible 1000.9
difficult 1013.17
brutality
cruelty 144.11
unkindness 144.12
unrefinement 497.3
carnality 663.2
violence 671.1
terribleness 1000.2
brutalize callous 94.6
bear malice 144.15
rage 671.11
brute
n beast 144.14
animal 311.2
barbarian 497.7
savage 593.5
violent person 671.9
adj cruel 144.26
animal 311.40
carnal 663.6
brute force
power 18.1
force 424.2
bub boy 302.5
brother 559.3
bubble
n airy hope 124.5
structure 266.2
sphere 282.2
bulge 283.3
lightness 298.2
globule 320
bleb 320.1
race 756.3
spirit 764.3
ephemeron 828.5
illusion 976.1
figment of the imagination 986.5
fragility 1050.2
v ripple 52.11
foam up 320.4
bubble over
be enthusiastic 101.7
carbonate 320.4
bubbly light 298.10
burbly 320.6
active 330.17
buccaneer
n mariner 183.1
hijacker 483.7
v pirate 482.18
buck
n male animal 76.8
boy 302.5
hoofed animal 311.5
goat 311.8
hare 311.24
leap 366.1
money 728.7
trestle 901.16
v leap 366.5
contend against 451.4
thrust 902.12
buckaroo
rider 178.8
stockman 1070.2
bucket
n ship 180.1
basketball game 747.3
v ladle 176.17
trade 737.23
buck for 375.14
buckle
n distortion 265.1
v distort 265.5
exert oneself 725.9
hook 800.8
buckled 265.10
buckle down to
undertake 404.3
set to work 725.15
buck-passing 415.5
bucks 728.2
buckskin 311.11
bucktooth 2.8
buck up
refresh 9.2
cheer up 109.9
take courage 492.14
encourage 492.16
bucolic rustic 233.6
natural 416.6
poetic 720.15
bud
n boy 302.5
burgeon 310.23
brother 559.3
friend 588.4
vital force 886.7
v graft 191.6
vegetate 310.34
Buddha Deity 677.4
religious founder 684.4
Solomon 921.2
Buddhism 675.14
budding
n bodily 14.1
growth 259.3
vegetation 310.32
adj grown 14.3
expanding 259.12
immature 301.10
beginning 818.15
buddy boy 302.5
brother 559.3
friend 588.4
henchman 610.8
partner 616.2
co-worker 616.5
buddy-buddy 587.20
budge 172.5
budget
n amount 244.2
store 386.1
portion 477.5
expenses 626.3
accounts 628.1
funds 728.14
bundle 770.8
schedule 965.3
v ration 477.10
spend 626.5
schedule 965.6
adj accounting 628.12
cheap 633.7
buenos días! 585.15
buff
n enthusiast 101.5
follower 166.2
attender 221.5
commender 509.8
supporter 616.9
specialist 866.3
fanatic 926.18
v polish 287.7
burnish 1044.8
adj yellow 43.4
the buff nudity 6.3
skin 295.3
buffalo
n cattle 311.6
v stump 971.14
buffer
n partition 213.5
counteractant 900.3
safeguard 1008.3
barrier 1012.5
v neutralize 900.7
buffer state 223.6
buffer zone 465.5
buffet feast 8.9
restaurant 8.17
table 901.15
buffet
n disappointment 132.1
knock 604.3
slap 902.8
v mistreat 389.5
injure 393.13
contend against 451.4
slap 604.12
whip 604.13
struggle 725.11
pound 902.16
knock 902.19
buffoon
mischief-maker 322.3
buffo 707.10
fool 924.1
buffoonery
clownishness 489.5
acting 704.8
foolishness 923.1
bug
n microphone 50.9
germ 85.42
enthusiast 101.5
insect 311.33
bugbear 680.9
jockey 757.2
mania 926.12
fanatic 926.18
fault 1003.2
v listen 48.10
annoy 96.13
bulge 283.11
importune 440.12
nag 510.16
discompose 811.4
reconnoiter 938.28
confuse 985.7
bugbear
frightener 127.9
false alarm 400.2
bugaboo 680.9
bane 1001.1
bug-eyed
cross-eyed 28.12
bulged 283.16
bugger
n sexual pervert 75.16
man 76.5
mischief-maker 322.3
bad person 660.5
bugbear 680.9
v disable 19.9

masturbate 75.22
spoil 393.11
bungle 414.12
buggy
n car 179.10
adj insectile 311.52
crazy 926.27
bugle
n nose 283.8
v blare 53.10
blow a horn 708.42
bugle call
call to arms 458.8
signal 517.16
bug off! 909.32
build
n muscularity 15.2
frame 262.1
human form 262.4
structure 266.1
nature 767.4
v establish 159.16
increase 251.4
enlarge 259.4
construct 266.5
compose 796.3
produce 892.8
building
n house 228.5
structure 266.1
edifice 266.2
composition 796.1
production 892.2
adj constructional 892.15
building blocks
essential content 196.5
substance 763.2
build on 199.6
buildup
increase 251.1
promotion 352.5
commendation 509.3
composition 796.1
build up
aggravate 119.2
increase 251.4
enlarge 259.4
publicize 352.15
exaggerate 355.3
prepare oneself 405.13
compose 796.3
built made 892.18
comely 1016.19
built-in 772.5
bulb sphere 282.2
bulge 283.3
root 310.22
bulbous
spherical 282.9
bulging 283.15
vegetable 310.36
bulge
n goozle 2.19
advantage 249.2
bilge 283.3
v bilge 283.11
bulging
n convexity 283.1
protuberance 283.2
adj rotund 282.8
spherical 282.9
swelling 283.15
full 794.11
bulimia 672.1
bulk
n quantity 244.1
greatness 247.1
size 257.1
bulkiness 257.9
thickness 269.2
major part 792.6
majority 883.2
v loom 247.5
size 257.15
enlarge 259.4
expand 259.5
assemble 770.18
bulkhead
partition 213.5
buttress 901.4
harbor 1009.6
barrier 1012.5
bulky large 247.7
hulky 257.19
thick 269.8
sturdy 763.7
unwieldy 1013.19
bull
n male animal 76.8
cattle 311.6
humbug 354.14
decree 420.4
jailer 429.10
bullshit 520.3
long 737.13
card 758.2
grammatical error 975.7
police 1008.16
v talk nonsense 520.5
manipulate the market 737.25
thrust 902.12
adj masculine 76.12
bulldog
n brave person 492.8
adhesive 803.4
v fell 913.5
bulldoze
intimidate 127.20
raze 395.19
defeat 412.9
coerce 424.8
threaten 514.2
domineer 612.16
thrust 902.12
bulldozer
n strong man 15.6
tractor 179.18
adj coercive 424.12
bullet swiftness 174.6
round 462.19
game 745.3
card 758.2
shot 904.4
fission 1038.8
bulletin
n press release 352.3
report 549.7
information 551.1
news report 552.5
v publicize 352.15
bulletin board 352.7
bulletproof 15.20
bullfight 457.4
bullfighter 461.4
bullheaded
obstinate 361.8
adhesive 803.12
bullion
precious metals 728.20
cast 1058.5
bullish 124.12
bull market
rising market 737.4
roaring trade 1010.5
bull session 541.3
bull's-eye center 208.2
objective 380.2
score 409.5
bullshit
n humbug 354.14
boasting 502.2
shit 520.3
absurdity 923.3
v boast 502.7
talk nonsense 520.5
bullwhack 605.1
bullwhacker 178.9
bully
n beef 10.14
strong man 15.7
tormentor 96.10
combatant 461.1
blusterer 503.2
ruffian 593.3
game 749.6
v intimidate 127.20
coerce 424.7
bluster 503.3
domineer 612.16
adj excellent 999.13
bulwark
n fortification 460.4
buttress 901.4
safeguard 1008.3
barrier 1012.5
v fortify 460.9
bum
n drunk 88.12
vagabond 178.3
buttocks 217.5
stiff 331.9
failure 410.8
beggar 440.8
wretch 660.2
transient 828.4
v hum 52.13
wander 177.23
beg 440.15
adj bad 1000.8
the bum's rush 909.1
bum around 331.12
bumble 414.11
bumbledom 612.11
bumbler 414.8
bummer
substance abuse 87.1
vagabond 178.3
nonworker 331.11
beggar 440.8
wretch 660.2
adversity 1011.1
bump
n thud 52.3
report 56.1
atmosphere 184.32
bulge 283.3
swelling 283.4
talent 413.4
demotion 447.1
print 517.7
poker 759.10
thrust 902.2
impact 902.3
shake 917.3
v crack 56.6
demote 447.3
thrust 902.12
collide 902.13
dismiss 909.20
shake 917.11
bumper
n drink 8.4
partition 213.5
full measure 794.3
safeguard 1008.3
adj large 257.16
bump into meet 223.11
collide 902.13
come across 941.3
bumpkin peasant 606.6
oaf 924.5
bump off
n homicide 308.2
v kill 308.14
bumptious
conceited 140.11
insolent 142.9
defiant 454.7
immodest 666.6
bumpy bulging 283.15
rough 288.6
nappy 294.7
jolting 917.20
bum's rush 372.1
bum steer 356.2
bun braid 3.7
roll 10.31
bunch
n amount 244.2
bulge 283.3
clique 617.6
company 770.3
group of animals 770.5
assemblage 770.7
conglomeration 803.5
multitude 884.3
v come together 770.16
assemble 770.18
cohere 803.6
league 805.4
bunchy 283.15
bunco
n fraud 356.8
cheater 357.4
v cheat 356.18
bundle
n gain 472.3
wealth 618.3
bindle 770.8
v snuggle 121.10
way of walking 177.28
package 212.9
hasten 401.4
move quickly 401.5

cuddle 562.17
swaddle 770.20
bind 800.9
dismiss 909.18
bundle off start 904.13
dismiss 909.18
bundle up clothe 5.39
bundle 770.20
bung
n anus 292.5
stopper 293.4
v stop 293.7
injure 393.13
bungalow 228.8
bungle
n fiasco 410.6
blunder 414.5
error 975.5
v do carelessly 340.9
miss 410.14
blunder 414.11
fail 975.14
bunion sore 85.37
swelling 283.4
bunk
n humbug 354.14
boasting 502.2
bullshit 520.3
v inhabit 225.7
house 225.10
bunker
n cellar 197.17
cave 284.5
storehouse 386.6
entrenchment 460.5
stronghold 460.6
golf 751.1
shelter 1009.3
proving ground 1074.7
v provision 385.9
bunkum
humbug 354.14
boasting 502.2
flattery 511.1
bullshit 520.3
political jargon 609.37
bunny hare 311.24
beauty 1016.9
bunt
n game 745.3
thrust 902.2
pushing 904.1
v thrust 902.12
tap 902.18
push 904.9
bunting 647.7
buoy
n float 180.11
life preserver 397.6
marker 517.10
v lighten up 298.8
buoyant
lighthearted 109.12
floaty 298.14
recuperative 396.23
elastic 1048.7
buoy up cheer 109.7
buoy 298.8
support 901.21
elevate 912.5
burble
n flow 184.29
v ripple 52.11
bubble 320.4
be stupid 922.12
burden
n affliction 96.8
load 196.2
capacity 257.2
burthen 297.7
duty 641.1
charge 643.3
guilt 656.1
part 708.22
passage 708.24
poetry 720.9
repeat 849.5
topic 937.1
bane 1001.1
impediment 1012.6
v distress 96.16
oppress 98.16
load 159.15
add 253.4
burthen 297.13
task 725.16
inconvenience 996.4
go hard with 1011.8
hamper 1012.11
burdened
weighted 297.18
fraught 794.12
supporting 901.23
burden of proof 957.3
burdensome
oppressive 98.24
onerous 297.17
laborious 725.18
hampering 1012.18
troublesome 1013.18
bureau 594.4
bureaucracy
routine 373.5
the authorities 575.15
officialism 612.11
bureaucratic
governmental 612.17
executive 612.19
burg 230.1
burgeon
n branch 310.20
bud 310.23
v grow 14.2
expand 259.7
vegetate 310.34
burgher
townsman 227.6
respectable citizen 659.3
conformist 867.2
burglar 483.3
burglary 482.5
burial interment 309.1
funeral 309.5
tomb 309.16
concealment 346.1
submergence 367.2
overrunning 910.1
buried
underground 275.12
underwater 275.13
concealed 346.11
overrun 910.10
engrossed 983.17
burl 283.3
burlesque
n imitation 336.1
reproduction 336.3
bad likeness 350.2
exaggeration 355.1
wit 489.1
lampoon 508.6
disparagement 512.5
show business 704.1
similarity 784.1
v misrepresent 350.3
exaggerate 355.3
ridicule 508.11
lampoon 512.12
adj comical 488.6
farcical 508.14
burly
able-bodied 15.16
corpulent 257.18
burn
n smart 26.3
trauma 85.38
stream 238.1
deception 356.9
theft 482.4
basketball game 747.3
scald 1020.6
rocket launching 1074.9
spacecraft 1075.2
v pain 26.7
brown 40.2
be angry 152.15
cremate 309.20
deceive 356.19
injure 393.13
rob 482.16
execute 604.17
rage 671.11
play 747.4
throw 904.10
scent 941.6
be hot 1019.22
ignite 1020.22
catch fire 1020.23
torrefy 1020.24
shine 1025.23
dry 1066.6
burner destroyer 395.8
heater 1020.10
incinerator 1020.13
blowtorch 1020.14
burn in effigy 661.9
burning
n smart 26.3
cremation 309.2
discard 390.3
capital punishment 604.7
throwing 904.2
heat 1019.1
combustion 1020.5
adj sore 26.11
colorful 35.19
zestful 68.7
in heat 75.28
feverish 85.58
fervent 93.18
zealous 101.9
excited 105.22
resentful 152.26
seething 152.29
near 223.14
vehement 544.13
hot 1019.25
ignited 1019.27
heating 1020.26
luminous 1025.30
flashing 1025.34
burnish
n polish 287.2
smoother 287.4
v polish 287.7
buff 1044.8
burn one's bridges
leave home 188.17
be determined 359.8
burnout fatigue 21.1
apathy 94.4
extinguishing 1022.2
rocket launching 1074.9
burn out fatigue 21.4
get tired 21.5
go out 1022.8
burnt
red-complexioned 41.9
burned 1020.30
dried 1066.9
burn the candle at both ends
squander 486.3
dissipate 669.6
overdo 993.10
burn the midnight oil
study 570.12
work hard 725.13
be late 846.7
burn up annoy 96.13
consume 388.3
incendiarize 1020.25
burp
n belch 909.9
v expel 909.28
burr
n rasp 58.3
thorn 285.5
seed vessel 310.30
accent 524.8
engraving 713.2
adhesive 803.4
v hum 52.13
sound harshly 58.9
burro 311.16
burrow
n lair 228.26
cave 284.5
v settle 159.17
excavate 284.15
hide 346.8
search 938.31
bursar payer 624.9
treasurer 729.12
burst
n report 56.1
detonation 56.3
outburst 105.9
resentment 152.9
run 174.3
bustle 330.4
volley 459.9
violence 671.6
explosion 671.7

separate 802.4
flare 1019.14
v blast 56.8
break 393.23
explode 671.14
break 802.12
adj impaired 393.27
broken 802.24
burst forth
break forth 33.9
emerge 190.11
vegetate 310.34
erupt 671.13
originate 818.13
burst in enter 189.7
intrude 214.5
breach 292.14
bursting
n disruption 802.3
adj banging 56.11
excited 105.20
explosive 671.24
full 794.11
teeming 884.9
productive 890.9
brimming 993.20
burst one's bubble
sadden 112.18
shatter one's hopes 125.11
burst out erupt 671.13
exclaim 59.7
laugh 116.8
bury inter 309.19
secrete 346.7
submerge 367.7
bury oneself in 570.12
bury the hatchet
forget 148.5
make peace 465.9
bus
n car 179.10
public vehicle 179.13
v haul 176.13
ride 177.33
busboy 577.7
bush
marijuana 87.11
lining 196.3
hinterland 233.2
shrubbery 310.9
woodland 310.13
brush 310.16
wasteland 891.2
bushed 21.8
bush-league 1005.7
bushwhack
surprise 131.7
kill 308.14
attack 459.15
bushwhacker
irregular 461.16
precursor 816.1
bushy hairy 3.24
arboreal 310.39
sylvan 310.40
business
n action 328.1
activity 330.1
undertaking 404.1
company 617.9
duty 641.1
acting 704.8
occupation 724.1
vocation 724.6
commerce 731.1
relation 775.1
affair 831.3
specialty 866.1
adj occupational 730.12
commercial 731.22
the business 356.9
businesslike 807.6
businessman
businessperson 730.1
businesswoman 730.1
business manager 704.25
busman's holiday 20.3
buss
n kiss 562.4
v kiss 562.19
bust
n drinking spree 88.6
breast 283.6
figure 349.6
failure 410.2
washout 410.8
arrest 429.6
demotion 447.1
monument 549.12
insolvency 625.3
business cycle 731.10
blow 902.5
hard times 1011.6
v flunk 410.17
arrest 429.16
domesticate 432.11
demote 447.3
depose 447.4
go under 625.7
bankrupt 625.8
explode 671.14
break 802.12
dismiss 909.19
busted
impaired 393.27
without money 619.10
insolvent 625.11
broken 802.24
bust in enter 189.7
breach 292.14
bustle
n excitement 105.4
fuss 330.4
haste 401.1
bluster 503.1
agitation 917.1
v fuss 330.12
hasten 401.4
move quickly 401.5
bustling
fussing 330.20
eventful 831.10
bust out 431.8
busty
corpulent 257.18
pectoral 283.19
busy
v occupy 724.10
task 725.16
adj meddlesome 214.9
full of business 330.21
ornate 498.12
occupied 724.15
busybody
n meddler 214.4
newsmonger 552.9
inquisitive person 981.2
v meddle 214.7
adj meddlesome 214.9
busywork 724.2
but
notwithstanding 338.8
unless 959.16
butch
n mannish female 76.9
adj homosexual 75.30
butcher
n killer 308.11
vendor 730.5
v slaughter 308.17
misdraw 350.4
bungle 414.11
rage 671.11
sever 802.11
butchered
botched 414.21
mutilated 795.5
butler steward 574.4
man 577.4
major-domo 577.10
butt
n cigarette 89.5
buttocks 217.5
remainder 256.1
objective 380.2
laughingstock 508.7
piece 793.3
joint 800.4
extremity 820.2
thrust 902.2
pushing 904.1
v adjoin 223.9
hook 800.8
thrust 902.12
push 904.9
butte plateau 237.3
hill 237.4
butter
n suavity 504.5
softness 1047.4
semiliquid 1062.5
pulp 1063.2
v coat 295.24
flatter 511.6
butterfingers 414.9
butterflies 128.2
buttery
n storehouse 386.6
larder 386.8
adj slippery 287.12
suave 504.18
flattering 511.8
oily 1056.9
semiliquid 1062.11
butt in intrude 214.5
mediate 466.6
talk out of turn 844.4
buttinsky 422.3
buttocks bottom 199.1
rump 217.4
button
n chin 216.6
runt 258.4
bulge 283.3
insignia 647.1
trifle 998.5
cast 1058.5
v close 293.6
hook 800.8
buttoned-down 867.6
buttonhole
n bouquet 310.25
v bore 118.7
importune 440.12
address 524.26
button up
be silent 51.6
close 293.6
complete 407.6
butt out
v not interfere 430.17
phrs none of your business 214.10
buttress
n supporter 901.2
buttressing 901.4
v strengthen 15.13
help 449.12
support 901.21
confirm 957.11
buxom
merry 109.15
corpulent 257.18
comely 1016.19
buy
n bargain 633.3
v assent 332.8
bribe 378.3
take advice 422.7
purchase 733.7
believe 953.10
kid oneself 954.6
buyer 733.5
buyers' market
low price 633.2
cheapening 633.4
commerce 731.1
sale 734.1
buy into
take advice 422.7
invest 729.17
purchase 733.7
believe 953.10
kid oneself 954.6
buyout
n trading 737.19
combination 805.1
v purchase 733.7
combine 805.3
buzz
n sibilation 57.1
rasp 58.3
tingle 74.1
substance abuse 87.1
telephone call 347.13
report 552.6
series 812.2
v hum 52.13
sibilate 57.2
sound harshly 58.9
flathat 184.42
telephone 347.19
publish 352.10
speak 524.25

tip off 551.11
buzzer 400.1
buzzing
n hum 52.7
flathatting 184.17
adj humming 52.20
buzz off
v depart 188.7
interj go away! 909.31
by
adj past 837.7
adv in reserve 386.17
prep at 159.27
through 161.27
beside 218.11
by means of 384.13
conformable to 867.9
by all means
adv certainly 970.23
interj yes 332.18
by all odds
by far 247.17
probably 968.8
by and by
in the future 839.9
soon 845.16
by and large
approximately 244.6
on the whole 792.14
generally 864.17
by any means
anyhow 384.10
by any possibility 966.10
by bits and pieces
incompletely 795.6
disjointedly 802.28
by chance
haphazardly 810.18
perchance 972.19
by degrees
degreewise 245.6
piece by piece 793.9
by design 380.10
by dint of
adv usefully 387.26
prep by virtue of 18.18
by means of 384.13
by ear 365.15
bye-bye 22.2
by far 247.17
by fits and starts
nonuniformly 782.4
disjointedly 802.28
haphazardly 810.18
discontinuously 813.5
irregularly 851.4
shakily 917.23
bygone 837.7
by hand 176.19
by heart 989.28
by hook or by crook 384.11
by inches
by degrees 245.6
piece by piece 793.9
bylaw 673.3
by law 673.13
by leaps and bounds
in progress 162.7
swiftly 174.17
by-line
avocation 724.7
acknowledgment 888.2
by means of
through the agency of 384.13
helped by 449.25
by nature 767.10
by no means
adv noway 248.11
interj by no manner of means 335.9
God forbid! 510.27
phrs I refuse 442.7
by oneself
adj solitary 584.11
adv independently 430.33
singly 872.13
bypass
n byway 383.4
detour 914.3
v pass 910.8
go roundabout 914.4
by-product
aftermath 817.3
effect 887.1
extract 893.3
by proxy
indirectly 576.18
instead 862.11
by rights 637.4
bystander
neighbor 223.6
spectator 918.1
witness 957.6
by storm 18.17
byte 1042.14
by the board
adj lost 473.7
adv overboard 182.74
by the same token
additionally 253.11
accordingly 766.11
similarly 784.18
by the way
discursive 538.13
incidental 843.11
timely 843.13
by virtue of
by dint of 18.18
by means of 384.13
by authority of 417.20
because of 888.9
by virtue of office 417.18
byway
bypath 383.4
digression 538.4
by way of
through 161.27
by means of 384.13
byword
laughingstock 508.7
catchword 526.9
name 527.3
disgrace 661.5
maxim 974.1
Byzantine
n Aldine 554.15
adj convolutional 281.6
scheming 381.13
complex 799.4
shrewd 920.15
c'est la vie 964.11
cab 179.13
cabal
n intrigue 381.5
fellowship 617.3
clique 617.6
company 770.3
combination 805.1
v plot 381.9
league 805.4
cabalistic secret 345.11
occult 689.23
leagued 805.6
caballero beau 104.13
rider 178.8
knight 608.5
cabaret bar 88.20
theater 704.14
entertainment 743.13
cabbagehead 924.4
cabdriver driver 178.9
chauffeur 178.10
cabin
n stateroom 197.9
cottage 228.8
v confine 212.6
cabin boy hand 183.6
attendant 577.5
cabinet container 195.1
sanctum 197.8
furniture 229.1
council 423.1
directorate 574.11
ministry 613.3
office 739.7
radio 1034.3
cable
n cord 271.2
telegram 347.14
line 347.17
electrical device 1032.21
v telegraph 347.20
caboose kitchen 11.4
sequel 817.1
cache
n hiding place 346.4
reserve 386.3
v secrete 346.7
store 386.10
cache memory 1042.7
cachet
label 517.13
characteristic 865.4
cachinnation noise 53.3
cry 59.1
cackle
n rasp 58.3
laughter 116.4
chatter 540.3
v sound harshly 58.9
bird sound 60.5
laugh 116.8
speak 524.25
cacophony
raucousness 58.2
discord 61.1
inelegance 534.1
turbulence 671.2
pandemonium 810.5
ugliness 1015.1
cactus mescaline 87.13
peyote 87.17
thorn 285.5
cad vulgarian 497.6
bounder 660.7
cadastral 871.9
cadaver 307.16
cadaverous
tired-looking 21.9
colorless 36.7
haggard 270.20
deathly 307.29
caddie carrier 176.7
attendant 577.5
cadence sinkage 194.2
accent 524.10
passage 708.24
ornament 709.18
harmony 709.23
meter 720.7
cadenza
impromptu 708.27
ornament 709.18
cadet
n navy man 183.4
undergraduate 572.6
adj subsequent 835.4
cadger
nonworker 331.11
beggar 440.8
vendor 730.5
cadre frame 266.4
military unit 461.22
directorate 574.11
clique 617.6
caduceus 417.9
caesar ruler 575.9
tyrant 575.14
caesura
interval 224.1
meter 720.7
interruption 813.2
pause 857.3
grammar 857.4
café
restaurant 8.17
bar 88.20
cafeteria
restaurant 8.17
dining room 197.11
caftan 5.21
cage
n place of confinement 429.7
hockey 749.1
gambling wheel 759.16
v enclose 212.5
confine 429.12
drive 1070.8
cagey evasive 368.15
cunning 415.12
wary 494.9
cahoots
affiliation 450.2
concurrence 899.1
Cain 308.11
cairn marker 517.10
monument 549.12
cajole deceive 356.14
urge 375.14
lure 377.5
importune 440.12
flatter 511.5

cake
  n food 10.42
  solid 1045.6
  v thicken 1045.10
  solidify 1046.8
caked 1045.14
calamitous
  destructive 395.26
  disastrous 1011.15
calamity fatality 308.8
  bane 1001.1
  misfortune 1011.2
calcify 1046.7
calcimine
  n whitening agent 37.4
  v color 35.14
  whitewash 37.6
calculable
  measurable 300.14
  predictable 962.13
  reliable 970.17
  computable 1017.25
calculate
  measure 300.10
  intend 380.6
  premeditate 380.7
  plan 381.8
  compute 1017.18
calculated
  intentional 380.8
  planned 381.12
  reasoned 935.21
calculating
  deceitful 356.22
  scheming 381.13
  sly 645.18
  shrewd 920.15
  numerative 1017.24
calculation
  measurement 300.1
  intentionality 380.3
  plan 381.1
  caution 494.1
  computation 1017.10
calculator adding 253.3
  strategist 415.7
  accountant 628.7
  computer 1017.15
calculus 1017.10
caldron 858.10
calefacient 1020.26
calendar
  n record book 549.11
  reference book 554.9
  bill 613.9
  calends 832.8
  roll 871.6
  schedule 965.3
  v record 549.15
  chronologize 832.14
  list 871.8
  schedule 965.6
calender 287.6
calf member 2.7
  leg 177.14
  fledgling 302.10
  cattle 311.6
  ice 1023.5
caliber ability 18.2
  degree 245.1
  size 257.1
  diameter 269.3
  talent 413.4
  intelligence 920.1
calibrate
  graduate 245.4
  measure 300.10
calico 47.12
caliper 300.10
caliph 575.10
calisthenics
  exercise 84.2
  physical education 568.9
call
  n audition 48.2
  yell 59.1
  cry 59.1
  animal noise 60.1
  telephone message 347.13
  command 420.5
  demand 421.1
  entreaty 440.2
  invitation 440.4
  summons 517.16
  visit 582.7
  warrant 600.6
  enlistment 615.7
  the ministry 698.1
  option 737.21
  bridge 758.3
  v cry 59.6
  wail 60.2
  bird sound 60.5
  telephone 347.19
  summon 420.11
  invite 440.13
  name 527.11
  bill 628.11
  gamble 759.23
  estimate 946.9
  predict 962.9
call a halt to 857.11
call a spade a spade
  be frank 644.12
  keep both feet on the ground 987.4
call attention to
  remark 524.24
  direct attention to 983.10
call down 510.18
caller
  telephoner 347.11
  errand boy 353.4
  guest 585.6
call for
  n requirement 963.2
  v fetch 176.16
  summon 420.11
  demand 421.5
  oblige 424.5
  request 440.9
  entail 772.4
  require 963.9
call forth excite 105.12
  elicit 192.14
  prompt 375.13
  summon 420.11
  induce 886.11
call girl 665.16
calligrapher
  writer 547.13
  limner 716.2
calligraphy
  handwriting 547.3
  fine writing 547.5
  visual arts 712.1
calling motive 375.1
  summons 420.5
  invitation 440.4
  naming 527.2
  holy orders 698.10
  vocation 724.6
calling card 517.11
call into question
  contradict 451.6
  doubt 955.6
call it a day
  take a rest 20.8
  complete 407.6
  stop work 857.8
call names offend 156.5
  vilify 512.10
  curse 513.7
call off end 820.5
  number 1017.17
call on urge 375.14
  command 420.8
  petition 440.10
  entreat 440.11
  visit 582.19
call one's bluff 454.6
callous
  v harden 94.6
  numb 1046.7
  adj insensible 25.6
  calloused 94.12
  impenitent 114.5
  heartless 144.25
  hardened 654.17
  unfeeling 1046.13
call out vociferate 59.8
  elicit 192.14
  summon 420.11
  demand 421.5
  defy 454.3
callow
  immature 301.10
  unprepared 406.11
  inexperienced 414.17
  incomplete 795.4
  new 841.7
  ignorant 930.12
call sign 1034.19
call someone's bluff
  confront 216.8
  risk 972.12
call the shots
  command 420.8
  direct 573.8
  control 612.13
  exercise influence 894.8
call time 826.3
call to account
  censure 510.13
  reprove 510.17
  punish 604.10
  obligate 641.12
call to arms 457.13
call up excite 105.12
  elicit 192.14
  telephone 347.19
  prompt 375.13
  summon 420.11
  call to arms 458.19
  enlist 615.17
  conjure 690.11
  resemble 784.7
  visualize 986.15
  remember 989.10
call-up
  call to arms 458.8
  enlistment 615.7
  assemblage 770.1
call upon
  petition 440.10
  entreat 440.11
  visit 582.19
  urge 375.14
  avail oneself of 387.14
  command 420.8
callus 85.39
calm
  n composure 106.2
  unastonishment 123.1
  lull 173.5
  moderation 670.1
  uniformity 781.1
  v be cool 106.6
  quiet 173.8
  pacify 465.7
  moderate 670.7
  adj placid 106.12
  unastonished 123.3
  unnervous 129.2
  quiescent 173.12
  pacific 464.9
  equable 670.13
  thoughtless 933.4
calmative
  n sedative 86.12
  moderator 670.3
  adj sedative 86.45
  palliative 670.16
calming
  n pacification 465.1
  modulation 670.2
  adj tranquilizing 670.15
calorie energy unit 17.7
  thermal unit 1019.19
calorific 1020.26
calumnious
  insulting 156.8
  disparaging 512.13
  cursing 513.8
calumny slander 512.3
  vilification 513.2
Calvinist
  n determinist 964.5
  adj Protestant 675.28
camaraderie
  affiliation 450.2
  fellowship 582.2
  companionship 587.2
camber arch 279.4
  convexity 283.1
camel
  beast of burden 176.8
  hoofed animal 311.5
camelback
  n deformity 265.3
  adj humpbacked 265.13
cameo
  description 349.2

script 706.3
relief 715.3
camera lens 29.2
Kodak 714.11
cameraman
motion-picture photography 706.5
photographer 716.5
television technician 1035.13
camisole 428.4
camouflage
n cover 356.11
dissimilarity 787.1
v conceal 346.6
misrepresent 350.3
falsify 354.16
disguise 787.3
camouflaged
invisible 32.5
disguised 346.13
camp
n camping 225.4
encampment 228.29
settlement 463.3
vulgarity 497.1
political party 609.24
association 617.4
v settle 159.17
encamp 225.11
adj comic 704.35
campaign
n journey 177.5
war 458.4
politics 609.13
cause 886.9
v journey 177.21
undertake operations 458.17
electioneer 609.40
go into politics 610.13
campaigner
veteran 461.19
electioneer 610.10
campaign for 509.13
campanile 272.6
camper traveler 178.1
vehicle 179.19
trailer 228.17
campfire 1019.13
camp follower
follower 166.2
associate 616.8
campground 463.3
campo plain 236.1
grassland 310.8
campus arena 463.1
schoolhouse 567.10
can
n latrine 12.10
toilet 12.11
battleship 180.7
buttocks 217.5
jail 429.9
marker 517.10
v be able 18.11
package 212.9
put up 397.11
may 443.13
sink 747.4
play 751.4
dismiss 909.20
canal
n duct 2.23
channel 239.1
watercourse 239.2
inlet 242.1
narrow place 270.3
trench 290.2
v furrow 290.3
canape 62.4
canard
fabrication 354.10
report 552.6
canary
n singer 710.13
songbird 710.23
adj yellow 43.4
cancel
n obliteration 395.7
repeal 445.1
notation 709.12
v excise 255.10
delete 255.12
abolish 395.13
obliterate 395.16
repeal 445.2
declare a moratorium 625.9
equalize 790.6
end 820.5
cease 857.6
neutralize 900.7
canceled forgiven 148.7
ended 820.8
cancellate 170.11
cancer growth 85.39
blight 1001.2
cancerous 85.61
candescent
burning 1019.27
luminous 1025.30
candid
v talkative 540.9
adj communicative 343.10
artless 416.5
free-acting 430.23
natural 499.7
plain-speaking 535.3
frank 644.17
genuine 973.15
candidacy 609.10
candidate
desirer 100.12
petitioner 440.7
aspirant 610.9
assignee 615.9
candle
light source 1026.1
taper 1026.2
candlelit 1025.39
can do
v be able 18.11
adj energetic 17.13
active 330.17
candor
communicativeness 343.3
artlessness 416.1
plain speech 535.1
talkativeness 540.1
candidness 644.4
fairness 649.3
candy
n sweets 10.40
amyl nitrate 87.5
v sweeten 66.3
solidify 1046.8
candy store 66.1
candy-stripe
n stripe 47.5
adj striped 47.15
cane
n blind 30.6
staff 273.2
grass 310.5
stem 310.21
rod 605.2
supporter 901.2
bamboo 1054.4
v whip 604.13
canicular
seasonal 313.9
hot 1019.25
canine
n teeth 2.8
creature 311.3
dog 311.17
adj doggish 311.42
canker
n sore 85.37
blight 1001.2
v corrupt 393.12
corrode 393.21
decay 393.22
cankered
diseased 85.60
irascible 110.19
decayed 393.40
cannibal
n eater 8.16
killer 308.11
creature 311.3
savage 593.5
adj eating 8.31
cannibalize 365.8
cannon
n artillery 462.11
game 745.3
impact 902.3
recoil 903.2
shot 904.4
v pull the trigger 459.22
collide 902.13
recoil 903.6
cannonade
n boom 56.4
volley 459.9
v pull the trigger 459.22
cannonball
swiftness 174.6
plunge 367.1
shot 462.19
cannot 19.8
canny cunning 415.12
cautious 494.8
economical 635.6
shrewd 920.15
canoe
n roulette 759.12
v navigate 182.13
can of worms
hodgepodge 797.6
complex 799.2
trouble 1013.3
canon music 280.9
measure 300.2
precept 419.2
literature 547.12
compilation 554.7
law 673.3
Bible 683.2
round 708.19
scripture 718.1
rule 869.4
lore 928.9
a belief 953.2
canonical
preceptive 419.4
theological 676.4
scriptural 683.11
orthodox 687.7
ecclesiastic 698.13
doctrinal 953.27
canonize
glorify 662.13
sanctify 685.5
ordain 698.12
exalt 912.6
canopy
n the heavens 1072.2
v cover 295.19
cant
n inclination 204.2
angle 278.2
hypocrisy 354.6
Greek 522.7
jargon 523.9
sanctimony 693.1
v change course 182.30
careen 182.43
incline 204.10
be hypocritical 354.23
speak 523.18
be sanctimonious 693.4
cantankerous
irascible 110.20
perverse 361.11
hindering 1012.17
cantata
sacred music 708.17
part music 708.18
canteen 8.17
canter
n run 174.3
hypocrite 357.8
pietist 693.3
v speed 174.8
go on horseback 177.34
canticle paean 696.3
song 708.14
sacred music 708.17
cantilever 202.3
cantina 8.17
canto air 708.4
part 708.22
poetry 720.9
fight 754.3
canton region 231.5
heraldry 647.2
cantor clergy 699.11
singer 710.13
choirmaster 710.18
canvas sail 180.14
tent 295.8
arena 463.1
painting 712.14

art equipment 712.18
boxing 754.1
canvass
n vote 371.6
solicitation 440.5
campaign 609.13
assemblage 770.1
survey 938.14
v vote 371.18
solicit 440.14
discuss 541.12
electioneer 609.40
examine 938.24
survey 938.29
canvasser
traveling salesman 730.4
solicitor 730.6
canyon 237.7
cap
n headdress 5.25
LSD 87.10
summit 198.2
top part 198.4
architectural topping 198.5
cover 295.5
fuse 462.15
type 548.6
v cloak 5.40
top 198.9
excel 249.6
cover 295.21
complete 407.6
give in kind 506.6
capability ability 18.2
preparedness 405.4
skill 413.1
talent 413.4
capable able 18.14
fitted 405.17
competent 413.24
liable to 897.6
capacious
spacious 158.11
voluminous 257.17
capacitate 405.8
capacities 919.2
capacity
n ability 18.2
spaciousness 158.5
volume 257.2
means 384.2
skill 413.1
talent 413.4
function 724.3
mode 765.4
full measure 794.3
intelligence 920.1
capacitance 1032.16
adj full 794.11
caparison
n wardrobe 5.2
horsecloth 295.11
harness 385.5
v outfit 5.41
cape 283.9
caper
n dido 366.2
prank 489.10
frolic 743.5
v exude cheerfulness 109.6
rejoice 116.5
leap 366.6
play 743.23
capillary
n duct 2.23
adj circulatory 2.33
hairlike 3.23
threadlike 271.7
capital
n architectural topping 198.5
metropolis 208.7
city 230.4
means 384.2
supply 386.2
type 548.6
fund 728.15
adj top 198.10
chief 249.14
literal 546.8
monetary 728.30
paramount 997.24
good 999.12
capitalism
noninterference 430.9
political system 611.8
capitalist
n coupon-clipper 611.15
rich man 618.7
financier 729.9
adj bourgeois 611.23
capitalize letter 546.6
keep accounts 628.8
finance 729.16
capitalize on
take advantage of 387.15
profit 472.12
improve the occasion 843.8
capital punishment
condemnation 602.1
execution 604.7
capital sin 655.2
capitol 613.4
capitulate 433.8
capitulation
surrender 433.2
treaty 437.2
summation 1017.11
a cappella 708.53
capping
topping 198.11
superior 249.12
ending 820.10
caprice whim 364.1
impulse 364.1
capriciousness 364.2
thoughtlessness 365.3
capricious
irresolute 362.9
whimsical 364.5
unthinking 365.10
unessential 768.4
nonuniform 782.3
unordered 810.12
transient 828.7
irregular 851.3
inconstant 854.7
uncertain 971.16
capriole
n leap 366.1
caper 366.2
v leap 366.5
caper 366.6
capsize
n overturn 205.2
v upset 182.44
tumble 194.8
overturn 205.6
capstone 407.3
capsule
n pill 86.7
hull 295.16
seed vessel 310.30
abridgment 557.1
spacecraft 1075.2
v package 212.9
abridge 557.5
adj shortened 268.9
captain
n ship's officer 183.7
aviator 185.1
governor 575.6
commissioned officer 575.18
naval officer 575.20
policeman 1008.15
v direct 573.8
govern 612.12
caption
n title 937.2
v focus on 937.3
captious
critical 510.23
quibbling 936.14
captivate delight 95.10
enamor 104.23
persuade 375.23
fascinate 377.7
charm 691.8
captivated
enamored 104.28
wondering 122.9
enchanted 691.12
captivating
delightful 97.7
alluring 377.8
captive
n prisoner 429.11
subject 432.7
adj subjugated 432.14
capture
n arrest 429.6
seizure 480.2
take 480.10
v triumph 411.3
arrest 429.15
acquire 472.8
apprehend 480.18
car
vehicle 179.9
railway car 179.15
automobile racing 756.1
carabineer
infantryman 461.9
shooter 904.8
caracole
n caper 366.2
v exude cheerfulness 109.6
rejoice 116.5
go on horseback 177.34
caper 366.6
play 743.23
carapace
shell 295.15
armor 460.3
caravan wagon 179.2
trailer 179.19
train 228.17
procession 812.3
carbohydrate 7.5
carbon
radiotherapy 91.8
transcript 785.4
combustion product 1020.16
isotope 1038.5
carbonated bubbly 320.6
vaporous 1067.9
carbon copy
the same 778.3
transcript 785.4
carboniferous 1021.9
carbonize 1020.24
carbonous 1058.15
carbuncle sore 85.37
swelling 283.4
carcass body 2.1
corpse 307.16
wreck 393.8
dead thing 1052.3
carcinogen 85.42
carcinogenic 85.61
carcinoma 85.39
card
n identification 517.11
recording media 549.10
postcard 553.3
playing card 758.2
schedule 965.3
v comb 79.21
cardboard 1054.5
card-carrying
real 761.15
genuine 973.15
card game game 743.9
cardplaying 758.1
cardholder
member 617.11
unionist 727.4
cardinal red 41.6
chief 249.14
paramount 997.24
numeric 1017.23
cardiovascular disease 85.19
cardsharp cheat 357.3
gambler 759.21
care
n medicine 90.1
affliction 96.8
sorrow 112.10
anxiety 126.1
carefulness 339.1
usage 387.2
custody 429.5
observance 434.1
support 449.3
patronage 449.4
caution 494.1
supervision 573.2
commission 615.1
thrift 635.1
attention 983.1
protectorship 1008.2
adversity 1011.1
v respond 93.11
mind 339.6

adj helping 449.20
careen
n swing 916.6
flounder 917.8
v list 182.43
tumble 194.8
incline 204.10
overturn 205.6
oscillate 916.10
flounder 917.15
career
n progression 162.1
course 172.2
vocation 724.6
v speed 174.8
flounder 917.15
adj skilled 413.26
careerism
ambition 100.10
selfishness 651.1
vocation 724.6
care for treat 91.24
love 104.19
minister to 387.12
foster 449.16
serve 577.13
protect 1008.19
carefree content 107.7
lighthearted 109.12
careful
adj heedful 339.10
cautious 494.8
economical 635.6
conscientious 644.15
judicious 920.19
attentive 983.15
interj be careful! 494.14
caregiver nurse 90.10
guardian 1008.6
care-giving
n support 449.3
adj helping 449.20
careless
unconcerned 102.7
heedless 340.11
unthinking 365.10
bungling 414.20
lax 426.4
reckless 493.8
ungrammatic 531.4
slovenly 810.15
incurious 982.3
inattentive 984.6
caress
n touch 73.1
contact 223.5
endearment 562.5
v stroke 73.8
contact 223.10
pet 562.16
rub 1044.6
caretaker keeper 429.1
guardian 1008.6
careworn
sorrowful 112.26
heavy-laden 126.9
carfare 630.6
cargo freight 176.6
load 196.2
burden 297.7
charge 643.3
impediment 1012.6
caricature
n bad likeness 350.2
exaggeration 355.1
wit 489.1
burlesque 508.6
cartoon 712.16
v misrepresent 350.3
exaggerate 355.3
burlesque 508.11
caries 85.40
carillon
n bell 54.4
chimes 711.18
v blow a horn 708.42
caring
n sympathy 93.5
love 104.1
carefulness 339.1
support 449.3
adj careful 339.10
helping 449.20
carjacking theft 482.3
piracy 482.7
carmine
v make red 41.4
adj red 41.6
carnage
massacre 308.4
destruction 395.1
carnal sexual 75.25
unvirtuous 654.12
sensual 663.6
lascivious 665.29
secularist 695.16
carnality sexuality 75.2
amorousness 104.3
vice 654.1
sensuality 663.2
lasciviousness 665.5
secularism 695.2
carnival treat 95.3
show business 704.1
festival 743.4
park 743.14
carnivore eater 8.16
creature 311.3
carnivorous 8.31
carol
n song 708.14
v bird sound 60.5
rejoice 116.5
sing 708.38
carom
n impact 902.3
recoil 903.2
v collide 902.13
recoil 903.6
carouse
n spree 88.5
dissipation 669.2
revel 743.6
v go on a spree 88.28
dissipate 669.6
make merry 743.24
riot 810.10
carousel
merry-go-round 743.15
rotator 915.4
carp 510.15
carpentry 712.3
carpet
n ground covering 199.3
rug 295.9
v floor 295.22
carpetbagger 357.3
carping
n criticism 510.4
adj critical 510.23
carriage looks 33.4
transportation 176.3
vehicle 179.1
four-wheeler 179.4
behavior 321.1
gesture 517.14
freightage 630.7
support 901.1
carriage trade
society 578.6
market 733.3
carried away
overjoyed 95.17
excited 105.20
frenzied 105.25
carrier infection 85.4
vector 85.44
conveyer 176.7
vehicle 179.1
aircraft ship 180.8
messenger 353.1
mail deliverer 353.6
supporter 901.2
radio wave 1034.11
carrion
n filth 80.7
offal 80.9
corpse 307.16
rot 393.7
adj dead 307.30
carry
n range 158.2
transportation 176.3
round 751.3
v be pregnant 78.12
use 87.22
extend 158.9
transport 176.12
adopt 371.15
induce 375.22
triumph 411.3
give credit 622.6
keep accounts 628.8
deal in 731.16
support 901.21
carry a torch for 104.20
carry away delight 95.10
enamor 104.23
remove 176.11
kill 308.13
fascinate 377.7
triumph 411.3
abduct 482.20
come apart 802.9
carry off
remove 176.11
kill 308.13
carry out 328.7
bring about 407.5
succeed with 409.11
triumph 411.3
seize 480.14
abduct 482.20
carry on
be patient 134.4
be angry 152.15
misbehave 322.4
practice 328.8
keep going 330.15
persevere 360.2
direct 573.8
rage 671.11
play 743.23
create disorder 810.11
endure 827.6
continue 856.3
do the usual thing 869.7
operate 889.5
carry out
reach out 261.5
carry through 328.7
apply 387.11
bring about 407.5
perform 434.3
execute 437.9
operate 889.5
carry over
n thing added 254.1
v transfer 176.10
keep accounts 628.8
carry the day 411.3
carry through
be patient 134.4
carry out 328.7
not hesitate 359.10
prosecute to a conclusion 360.5
bring about 407.5
perform 434.3
execute 437.9
succeed 817.5
operate 889.5
carry weight
weigh 297.10
have influence 894.10
matter 997.12
carsick 85.57
cart
n two-wheeler 179.3
v haul 176.13
carte blanche
latitude 430.4
blank check 443.4
privilege 642.2
cartel compact 437.1
treaty 437.2
company 617.9
combination 805.1
carter carrier 176.7
driver 178.9
cartilage
n the skeleton 2.2
the muscles 2.3
toughness 1049.2
adj skeleton 2.26
cart off 176.11
cartographer
map 159.5
measurer 300.9
carton 212.9
cartoon
n diagram 381.3
motion pictures 706.1
drawing 712.13

caricature 712.16
v portray 712.19
cartoonist 716.3
cartridge
sound reproduction system 50.11
record 50.12
cartouche 462.17
film 714.10
carve form 262.7
furrow 290.3
apportion 477.6
record 549.15
engrave 713.9
sculpture 715.5
sever 802.11
process 892.9
carving figure 349.6
sculpture 715.1
Casanova
deceiver 357.1
philanderer 562.12
libertine 665.10
cascade
n descent 194.1
waterfall 238.11
outburst 671.6
v descend 194.5
hang 202.6
overflow 238.17
case
n sick person 85.43
infatuation 104.4
container 195.1
frame 266.4
blanket 295.10
hull 295.16
casing 295.17
grammar 530.9
type 548.6
bookbinding 554.14
lawsuit 598.1
state 765.1
particular 766.3
example 786.2
oddity 870.4
argument 935.5
topic 937.1
citation 957.5
v package 212.9
wrap 295.20
reconnoiter 938.28
the case fact 761.3
the truth 973.3
casebook
reference book 554.9
text 554.10
case-hardened
callous 94.12
obstinate 361.8
accustomed 373.15
hardened 654.17
tempered 1046.15
case history
medical history 91.10
record 719.1
casement frame 266.4
window 292.7
caseworker 143.8
cash
n payment 624.1
dollars 728.1
ready money 728.18
v pay 624.17
transact 728.29
adv cash on the barrelhead 624.25
cashbook
record book 549.11
account book 628.4
cashbox 729.13
cashier
n payer 624.9
banker 729.11
treasurer 729.12
v depose 447.4
dismiss 909.19
cash in die 307.20
cash 728.29
cash in on
take advantage of 387.15
profit 472.12
improve the occasion 843.8
casing frame 266.4
case 295.17
casino
resort 228.27
ballroom 705.4
entertainment 743.13
gambling house 759.19
cask
n container 195.1
cylinder 282.4
v package 212.9
casket
n coffin 309.11
v confine 212.6
Cassandra
pessimist 125.7
warner 399.4
predictor 962.4
casserole 10.7
cassette 50.12
cassette tape 549.1
cassock 699.5
cast
n slough 2.5
glance 27.4
strabismus 28.5
looks 33.4
color 35.1
dressing 86.33
hint 248.4
form 262.1
team 617.7
role 704.10
cast of characters 707.11
sculpture 715.2
throw 759.9
nature 767.4
company 770.3
copy 785.6
mold 786.6
kind 809.3
characteristic 865.4
tendency 896.1
throw 904.3
disposition 978.3
sum 1017.6
casting 1058.5
v give birth 1.3
shed 6.10
place violently 159.13
change course 182.30
form 262.7
plan 381.8
discard 390.7
sculpture 715.5
produce 892.8
throw 904.10
eject 909.13
calculate 1017.18
burn 1020.24
adj born 1.4
formative 262.9
made 892.18
cast about
change course 182.30
investigate 938.23
cast aside
put away 390.6
discard 390.7
castaway
n derelict 370.4
discard 390.3
outcast 586.4
adj abandoned 370.8
discarded 390.11
outcast 586.10
stranded 1013.27
cast down
v chagrin 96.15
sadden 112.18
disappoint 132.2
raze 395.19
fell 913.5
adj distressed 96.22
dejected 112.22
caste rank 245.2
social status 607.1
community 617.2
class 809.2
cast forth
dissipate 771.5
disgorge 909.25
castigate
criticize 510.20
punish 604.10
casting sculpture 715.1
copy 785.6
production 892.2
throwing 904.2
calculation 1017.10
cast 1058.5
cast-iron strong 15.15
unyielding 361.9
true 973.13
castle estate 228.7
stronghold 460.6
chessman 743.17
castle-building
n abstractedness 985.2
dreaminess 986.8
adj abstracted 985.11
dreamy 986.25
cast lots 759.23
castoff derelict 370.4
discard 390.3
cast off take off 6.6
weigh anchor 182.18
discard 390.7
waste 473.5
eliminate 773.5
separate 802.8
detach 802.10
do away with 909.21
cast-off adrift 182.61
discarded 390.11
outcast 586.10
cast out
eliminate 773.5
separate 802.8
eject 909.13
banish 909.17
castrate unman 19.12
feminize 77.13
geld 255.11
cripple 393.14
domineer 612.16
castrated
unmanned 19.19
unsexual 75.29
crippled 393.30
mutilated 795.5
cast the first stone
censure 510.13
incriminate 599.10
cast up erect 200.9
elevate 912.5
sum up 1017.19
casual
n irregular 461.16
poor man 619.4
worker 726.2
adj in dishabille 5.47
unconcerned 102.7
nonchalant 106.15
careless 340.11
unpremeditated 365.11
informal 581.3
circumstantial 766.7
unessential 768.4
unordered 810.12
incidental 843.11
occasional 848.3
undiscriminating 945.5
chance 972.15
purposeless 972.16
easy 1014.13
casualty fatality 308.8
chance event 972.6
misfortune 1011.2
casuistry
insincerity 354.5
ethical philosophy 636.2
argumentation 935.4
sophistry 936.1
cat sharp vision 27.11
man 76.5
bitch 110.12
feline 311.21
whip 605.1
catabolism
the body 2.20
metabolism 7.12
transformation 852.3
cataclasm 802.3
cataclysm
overflow 238.6
debacle 395.4
upheaval 671.5
revolution 860.1
misfortune 1011.2

catacombs 309.16
catalepsy
stupor 22.6
unconsciousness 25.2
paralysis 85.27
trance 92.19
inertness 173.4
catalog
n description 349.2
record 549.1
book 549.11
reference 554.9
directory 574.10
account book 628.4
outline 801.4
classified list 871.3
v record 549.15
classify 801.8
represent 809.6
list 871.8
catalysis
dissociation 806.2
transformation 852.3
catalyst
instigator 375.11
dissociation 806.2
transformer 852.5
author 886.4
catamaran 760.2
cataplexy
paralysis 85.27
trance 92.19
catapult
n takeoff 184.8
sling 462.9
toy 743.16
v throw 904.10
cataract
n blindness 30.1
descent 194.1
waterfall 238.11
v descend 194.5
overflow 238.17
catastrophe
debacle 395.4
upheaval 671.5
plot 722.4
end 820.1
revolution 860.1
misfortune 1011.2
catatonic
unconscious 25.8
unfeeling 94.9
inert 173.14
unsociable 583.5
psychotic 926.28
incurious 982.3
catcall
n noisemaker 53.6
boo 508.3
v boo 508.10
catch
n desire 100.11
lover 104.12
surprise 131.2
trick 356.6
proviso 421.3
lock 428.5
seizure 480.2
take 480.10
round 708.19
game 745.3
condition 959.2
good thing 999.5
fault 1003.2
obstacle 1012.4
crux 1013.8
v hear 48.11
take sick 85.47
jump at 101.6
row 182.53
attend 221.8
trap 356.20
acquire 472.8
hook 472.9
take 480.17
understand 521.7
play 745.5
fight 754.4
fix 855.10
discover 941.7
engross 983.13
flame up 1020.23
catch at straws
be hopeful 124.8
be rash 493.5
find fault 510.15
catcher taker 480.11
baseball team 745.2
catch fire
be excitable 105.16
succeed 409.7
catch on 578.8
be hot 1019.22
heat up 1020.23
catching
n seizure 480.2
discovery 941.1
adj poisonous 82.7
contagious 85.62
alluring 377.8
taking 480.25
catch it 604.20
catch on succeed 409.7
understand 521.7
become popular 578.8
catch one's breath
take a rest 20.8
recuperate 396.19
catch short 131.7
catch the eye show 31.4
appear 33.8
meet with attention 983.11
catch up
overtake 174.13
seize 480.14
catchword
call to arms 458.8
clue 517.9
phrase 526.9
makeup 554.12
maxim 974.1
motto 974.4
catchy
deceptive 356.21
melodious 708.48
irregular 851.3
catechism
doctrine 676.2
question 938.10
system of belief 953.3
catechize teach 568.10
inculcate 568.12
interrogate 938.21
catechumen
novice 572.9
believer 692.4
beginner 818.2
convert 858.7
categorical
classificational 809.7
dialectic 935.22
unqualified 960.2
categorize
analyze 801.8
arrange 808.11
classify 809.6
category class 809.2
topic 937.1
catenary
n sinkage 194.2
curve 279.2
adj consecutive 812.9
cater 385.9
catercorner
v cut 204.11
adj transverse 204.19
adv diagonally 204.25
caterer 11.3
catering cooking 11.1
provision 385.1
caterpillar larva 302.12
insect 311.33
cater to toady to 138.8
indulge 427.6
serve 449.18
caterwaul
n screech 58.4
cry 59.1
animal noise 60.1
v screech 58.8
cry 59.6
wail 60.2
catharsis
defecation 12.2
cleansing 79.2
purgation 92.25
release 120.2
cathartic
n cleanser 79.17
laxative 86.17
adj cleansing 79.28
laxative 86.48
relieving 120.9
cathedral
n church 703.1
adj authoritative 970.18
catheter 239.6
cathexis
cathection 92.34
feeling 93.1
interest 983.2
cathode 1032.8
cathode ray 1033.5
catholic
universal 864.14
broad-minded 979.8
Catholic
n Roman Catholic 675.19
adj religious denomination 675.29
cathouse
disapproved place 228.28
brothel 665.9
cation
electrolysis 1032.25
element 1060.2
cat man 483.3
catnap
n nap 22.3
v sleep 22.13
cat-o'-nine-tails 605.1
cat's-paw
sycophant 138.3
breeze 318.5
dupe 358.1
instrument 384.4
deputy 576.1
agent 576.3
follower 616.8
cattle
animal life 311.1
kine 311.6
rabble 606.3
cattleman
stockman 1070.2
herder 1070.3
cattle rustler 483.8
catty peevish 110.22
spiteful 144.21
feline 311.43
disparaging 512.13
cattycorner
adj transverse 204.19
adv diagonally 204.25
catwalk 383.2
Caucasian race 312.2
white man 312.3
caucus
n legislative gathering 609.9
election 609.15
party 617.4
assembly 770.2
v politick 609.38
caudal tail 217.11
final 820.11
caught stuck 855.16
gripped 983.18
caught short
surprised 131.12
unprepared 406.8
caught up in
involved in 898.5
engrossed 983.17
caulk 293.7
cause
n motive 375.1
lawsuit 598.1
warrant 600.6
reason 886.2
occasion 886.1
principle 886.9
v prompt 375.13
compel 424.4
reason 886.10
perform 892.11
cause célèbre
report 552.6
affair 831.3
caused by 887.8
causeless
chance 972.15

  purposeless 972.16
causerie chat 541.4
  treatise 556.1
causeway 295.22
caustic
  n curve 279.2
  cauterant 1020.15
  adj acrimonious 17.14
  bitter 64.6
  pungent 68.6
  penetrating 105.31
  out of humor 110.17
  mordant 144.23
  resentful 152.26
  satiric 508.13
  hostile 589.10
cauterant
  n cauterizer 1020.15
  adj heating 1020.26
cauterize 1020.24
caution
  n wariness 339.1
  hesitation 362.3
  dissuasion 379.1
  warning 399.1
  advice 422.1
  collateral 438.3
  carefulness 494.1
  cautiousness 494.1
  tip-off 551.3
  game 752.3
  incredulity 956.1
  forethought 961.2
  v dissuade 379.3
  warn 399.5
  admonish 422.6
cautious slow 175.10
  careful 339.10
  hesitant 362.11
  wary 494.8
  incredulous 956.4
cavalcade 812.3
cavalier
  n beau 104.13
  rider 178.8
  gallant 504.9
  knight 608.5
  escort 769.5
  adj disdainful 141.13
  gruff 505.7
cave
  n lair 228.26
  cavern 284.5
  debacle 395.4
  shelter 1009.3
  v sink 194.6
  collapse 260.10
  hollow 284.13
caveat dissuasion 379.1
  warning 399.1
  advice 422.1
cave in weaken 16.9
  sink 194.6
  collapse 260.10
  hollow 284.13
  breach 292.14
  break down 393.24
  yield 433.7
cave-in collapse 260.4
  debacle 395.4
caveman real man 76.6
  ancient 842.7
cavern 284.5
cavernous
  abysmal 275.11
  concave 284.16
cavil
  n criticism 510.4
  quibble 936.4
  v find fault 510.15
  argue 935.16
  quibble 936.9
cavity
  compartment 197.2
  crack 224.2
  pit 275.2
  concavity 284.2
  opening 292.1
cavort
  n caper 366.2
  v caper 366.6
  play 743.23
caw
  n rasp 58.3
  v sound harshly 58.9
  bird sound 60.5
cay 235.2
cease
  n cessation 857.1
  v disappear 34.2
  quiet 173.8
  close shop 293.8
  give up 370.7
  perish 395.23
  end 820.5
  discontinue 857.6
  interj stop! 857.13
cease-fire truce 465.5
  pause 857.3
ceaseless nonstop 812.8
  perpetual 829.7
  constant 847.5
  continuing 856.7
cede give up 370.7
  yield 433.7
  surrender 433.8
  relinquish 475.3
  transfer 629.3
ceiling
  distinctness 31.2
  atmosphere 184.32
  boundary 211.3
  height 272.1
  roof 295.6
  price index 630.4
  limit 794.5
  rocket launching 1074.9
celebrate party 487.2
  praise 509.12
  formalize 580.5
  glorify 696.12
  observe 701.15
  make merry 743.24
celebrated
  distinguished 662.16
  notable 997.19
celebration
  spree 88.5
  treat 95.3
  rejoicing 116.1
  observance 487.1
  ceremony 580.4
  ritualism 701.1
  revel 743.6
celebrity glory 247.2
  publicity 352.4
  repute 662.1
  man of mark 662.9
  notability 997.2
  personage 997.8
celerity velocity 174.1
  quickness 330.3
celestial
  n angel 679.1
  adj divine 677.16
  angelic 679.6
  heavenly 681.12
  ideal 986.23
  the universe 1072.25
celibate
  n abstainer 565.2
  religious 699.16
  adj monastic 565.6
  continent 664.6
  abstinent 668.10
  sole 872.9
  unproductive 891.4
cell
  compartment 197.2
  bioplast 305.4
  prison 429.8
  refuge 584.6
  clique 617.6
  retreat 1009.5
cellar cellarage 197.17
  storehouse 386.6
cell biology 1068.3
cellist 710.5
cellular 305.19
cellulose 305.6
Celsius scale 1019.19
cement
  n pavement 383.6
  ceramic ware 742.2
  adhesive 803.4
  hardness 1046.6
  building material 1054.2
  v floor 295.22
  plaster 295.25
  put together 800.5
  fasten 800.7
  stick together 803.9
  adj hard 1046.10
cemetery 309.15
cenotaph tomb 309.16
  monument 549.12
censer 70.6
censor
  n restrictionist 428.6
  faultfinder 510.9
  conscience 636.5
  critic 946.7
  v delete 255.12
  cover up 345.8
  suppress 428.8
  end 820.5
censorious averse 99.8
  fastidious 495.9
  prudish 500.19
  disapproving 510.22
  condemnatory 602.5
censorship
  suppression 92.24
  deletion 255.5
  veil of secrecy 345.3
  restraint 428.2
censure
  n reprehension 510.3
  incrimination 599.2
  condemnation 602.1
  stigma 661.6
  criticism 946.2
  v reprehend 510.13
  incriminate 599.10
  condemn 602.3
  stigmatize 661.9
  criticize 946.14
census
  n contents 196.1
  population 227.1
  assemblage 770.1
  table 808.4
  roll 871.6
  numeration 1017.9
  summation 1017.11
  v number 1017.17
cent money 728.7
  trifle 998.5
centenarian
  old man 304.2
  hundred 882.8
centennial
  n anniversary 850.4
  hundred 882.8
  adj momentary 850.8
  hundredth 882.29
center
  n interior 207.2
  centrum 208.2
  mean 246.1
  middle course 467.3
  moderatism 611.2
  core 611.10
  football team 746.2
  basketball team 747.2
  hockey team 749.2
  essence 767.2
  median 819.1
  attractor 907.2
  v converge 169.2
  centralize 208.9
  play 749.7
  position 752.4
centerpiece
  focus 208.4
  feature 997.7
center stage 704.16
centigrade scale 1019.19
centipede
  insect 311.33
  hundred 882.8
central
  n exchange 347.7
  telephone operator 347.9
  adj interior 207.6
  centric 208.11
  medium 246.3
  chief 249.14
  phonetic 524.30
  middle 819.4
  original 886.14
  vital 997.23
centralize
  converge 169.2

center 208.9
league 805.4
centrifugal 171.8
centrifugal force
centripetal force 18.6
repulsion 908.1
centrifuge
n separator 802.7
v whirl 915.11
centripetal
converging 169.3
focal 208.13
middle 819.4
centripetal force
centrifugal force 18.6
attraction 907.1
centrist
n nonpartisan 609.28
political follower 611.10
moderate 670.4
adj neutral 467.7
moderate 611.18
middle 819.4
centurion
Army noncommissioned officer 575.19
hundred 882.8
century money 728.7
moment 824.2
long time 827.4
eleven 882.7
hundred 882.8
cephalic 198.14
ceramic 742.7
ceramics
visual arts 712.1
pottery 742.1
earthenware 742.1
ceramic ware 742.2
cereal
n breakfast food 10.34
grass 310.5
adj vegetable 310.36
cerebellum 2.15
cerebral nerve 2.30
mental 919.7
cerebrate 931.8
cerebrum brain part 2.15
mental capacity 919.6
ceremonial
n formality 580.1
ceremony 580.4
rite 701.3
adj solemn 580.8
ritualistic 701.19
ceremonious
respectful 155.8
gallant 504.15
solemn 580.8
ritualistic 701.19
ceremony
celebration 487.1
formality 580.1
function 580.4
rite 701.3
cerise 41.6
certain
expectant 130.11
quantitative 244.5
secured 438.11
particular 865.12
plural 883.7
evidential 957.16
inevitable 963.15
sure 970.13
impossible 972.18
true 973.13
belief 953.21
certainly 332.18
certainty
expectation 130.1
knowledge 928.1
belief 953.1
conviction 953.5
inevitability 963.7
sureness 970.1
certitude 970.1
certifiable 926.28
certificate
n certification 549.6
negotiable instrument 728.11
v authorize 443.11
certification
ratification 332.4
deposition 334.3
authorization 443.3
credential 549.6
confirmation 957.4
ensuring 970.8
certified
accepted 332.14
affirmed 334.9
secured 438.11
proved 957.20
assured 970.20
true 973.13
certify ratify 332.12
depose 334.6
secure 438.9
authorize 443.11
testify 957.9
confirm 957.11
make sure 970.11
cerulean
n the heavens 1072.2
adj blue 45.3
cervix genitals 2.13
contraction 260.1
joint 800.4
supporter 901.2
cessation
standstill 173.3
abandonment 370.1
disuse 390.2
interruption 813.2
end 820.1
close 820.3
stop 857.2
discontinuance 857.1
cession
abandonment 370.3
surrender 433.2
relinquishment 475.1
transfer 629.1
qualification 959.1
cesspool 80.12
chafe
n trauma 85.38
irritation 96.3
abrasion 1044.2
v pain 26.7
irritate 96.14
feel anxious 126.6
be impatient 135.4
be angry 152.15
provoke 152.24
injure 393.13
heat 1020.17
abrade 1044.7
chaff
n remainder 256.1
hull 295.16
lightness 298.2
refuse 391.4
rabble 606.3
trivia 998.4
radar 1036.13
v banter 490.5
scoff 508.9
chagrin
n distress 96.4
humiliation 137.2
v embarrass 96.15
chain
n mountain 237.6
jewel 498.6
insignia 647.1
series 812.2
curb 1012.7
fire iron 1020.12
atomic cluster 1038.7
v bind 428.10
put together 800.5
join 800.9
continue 812.4
secure 855.8
chain gang
prisoner 429.11
procession 812.3
chain reaction
series 812.2
vicissitudes 972.5
fission 1038.8
chains 428.4
chain-smoke
n smoking 89.10
v use 87.22
smoke 89.14
chair
n furniture 229.1
mastership 417.7
authority 417.10
instructorship 571.10
chairman 574.5
seat 901.17
v administer 573.11
govern 612.12
install 615.12
the chair
capital punishment 604.7
execution 605.5
chairmanship
mastership 417.7
directorship 573.4
chairperson 574.5
chaise 179.4
chalet 228.8
chalice 703.11
chalk
n whiteness 37.2
art equipment 712.18
jockey 757.2
v whiten 37.5
mark 517.19
record 549.15
portray 712.19
chalky white 37.7
powdery 1051.11
challenge
n objection 333.2
opposition 451.1
resistance 453.1
dare 454.2
declaration of war 458.7
questioning 938.12
v confront 216.8
object 333.5
demand 421.5
claim 421.6
contradict 451.6
offer resistance 453.3
defy 454.3
compete 457.18
make war on 458.15
doubt 955.6
thwart 1012.15
challenging
provocative 375.27
defiant 454.7
chamber
n toilet 12.11
room 197.1
compartment 197.2
bedroom 197.7
council 423.1
v enclose 212.5
chamberlain
major-domo 577.10
treasurer 729.12
chambermaid 577.8
chamber music 708.6
chamber of commerce 617.9
chamber pot 12.11
chambers
apartment 228.13
office 739.7
chameleon
variegation 47.6
timeserver 363.4
changeableness 854.4
champ
n bite 8.2
victor 411.2
champion 413.15
v chew 8.27
champ at the bit
have energy 17.11
be impatient 135.4
wait impatiently 846.13
champion
n superior 249.4
victor 411.2
champ 413.15
defender 460.7
deputy 576.1
justifier 600.8
supporter 616.9
the best 999.8
protector 1008.5
v back 449.13
defend 460.8
justify 600.10
protect 1008.18
adj peerless 249.15

  best 999.16
  first-rate 999.17
chance
  n gamble 759.2
  turn 825.2
  opportunity 843.2
  liability 897.1
  possibility 966.1
  probability 968.1
  uncertainty 971.1
  lottery 971.8
  absence of assignable cause 972
  happenstance 972.1
  v attempt 403.6
  risk 759.24
  turn up 831.6
  bechance 972.11
  take a gamble 1006.7
  adj circumstantial 766.7
  unessential 768.4
  vague 971.19
  iffy 972.15
chancellery
  mastership 417.7
  office 739.7
chancellor
  principal 571.8
  executive 574.3
  head of state 575.7
  public official 575.17
  diplomat 576.6
chancery registry 549.3
  office 739.7
chance upon 941.3
chancre 85.37
chandelier 1026.6
chandler
  provider 385.6
  merchant 730.2
change
  n custody 429.5
  money 728.2
  petty cash 728.19
  stock exchange 737.7
  differentiation 780.4
  alteration 852.1
  modification 852.1
  conversion 858.1
  substitution 862.1
  surrogate 862.2
  v don 5.43
  move 172.5
  vacillate 362.8
  trade 731.15
  differentiate 780.6
  alter 852.6
  make a change 852.7
  fluctuate 854.5
  convert 858.11
  substitute 862.4
  interchange 863.4
changeable
  wishy-washy 16.17
  irresolute 362.9
  fickle 364.6
  nonuniform 782.3
  transient 828.7
  changed 852.10
  alterable 854.6
  inconstant 854.7
  convertible 858.18
  interchangeable 863.5
  uncertain 971.16
change hands 629.4
changeless
  almighty 677.17
  permanent 853.7
  unchangeable 855.17
changeling 680.11
change of heart
  penitence 113.4
  conversion 852.1
  new start 858.2
change of life 303.7
change one's mind
  n sing a different tune 363.6
  v repent 113.7
  vacillate 362.8
changing
  n fluctuation 854.3
  adj nonuniform 782.3
  inconstant 854.7
channel
  n seaway 182.10
  outlet 190.9
  bed 199.4
  stream 238.1
  conduit 239.1
  pipe 239.1
  narrow place 270.3
  trench 290.2
  passageway 383.3
  informant 551.5
  communication theory 551.7
  band 1034.13
  v transport 176.14
  focus 208.10
  direct 239.15
  furrow 290.3
  guide 573.9
chant
  n paean 696.3
  repeat 849.5
  v speak 524.25
  sing 708.38
chanting 849.15
chaos
  formlessness 263.1
  anarchy 418.2
  turbulence 671.2
  noncohesion 804.1
  disorder 810.2
  confusion 985.3
  space 1072.3
chaotic formless 263.4
  anarchic 418.6
  turbulent 671.18
  incoherent 804.4
  disordered 810.16
  vague 971.19
  confused 985.12
chap man 76.5
  crack 224.2
chapel hall 197.4
  branch 617.10
  religious building 703.3
chaperon
  n maid 577.8
  escort 769.5
  duenna 1008.7
  v escort 769.8
  care for 1008.19
chapfallen
  distressed 96.22
  glum 112.25
  disappointed 132.5
  humiliated 137.14
chaplain 699.2
chapter
  ecclesiastical council 423.4
  part 554.13
  branch 617.10
  part of writing 793.2
  topic 937.1
char
  n cleaner 79.14
  v work 725.12
  burn 1020.24
character
  n man 76.5
  description 349.2
  recommendation 509.4
  sign 517.1
  letter 546.1
  phonetic symbol 546.2
  heredity 560.6
  probity 644.1
  repute 662.1
  role 704.10
  actor 707.2
  notation 709.12
  plot 722.4
  function 724.3
  mode 765.4
  nature 767.4
  kind 809.3
  characteristic 865.4
  oddity 870.4
  eccentric 927.3
  freak 927.4
  disposition 978.3
  number 1017.3
  v represent 349.8
  describe 349.9
  letter 546.6
  engrave 713.9
character assassination
  defamation 512.2
  scandal 552.8
  smear campaign 609.14
characteristic
  n habit 373.3
  sign 517.1
  nature 767.4
  peculiarity 865.4
  adj typical 349.15
  differentiative 780.9
  classificational 809.7
  peculiar 865.13
  attitudinal 978.7
characterization
  representation 349.1
  description 349.2
  impersonation 349.4
  indication 517.3
  acting 704.8
  plot 722.4
  distinction 865.8
characterless
  dull 117.6
  vacant 222.14
  formless 263.4
charade gesture 517.14
  riddle 522.9
charcoal
  n blackness 38.4
  blacking 38.6
  drawing 712.5
  sketching 712.13
  art equipment 712.18
  combustion product 1020.16
  v blacken 38.7
  portray 712.19
charge
  n power 18.1
  cathexis 92.34
  excitement 105.3
  load 196.2
  burden 297.7
  precept 419.1
  injunction 420.2
  dependent 432.6
  attack 459.1
  load 462.16
  supervision 573.2
  arraignment 598.3
  accusation 599.1
  commission 615.1
  price 630.1
  fee 630.6
  duty 641.1
  imposition 643.3
  heraldry 647.2
  benefice 698.9
  task 724.2
  full measure 794.3
  attribution 888.1
  protectorship 1008.2
  impediment 1012.6
  electrical charge 1032.5
  rocket propulsion 1074.8
  v energize 17.10
  burden 297.13
  prime 405.9
  command 420.8
  admonish 422.6
  rush 459.18
  accuse 599.7
  commission 615.10
  receive credit 622.7
  demand 630.12
  impose 643.4
  fill 794.7
  shoot 904.12
  electrify 1032.26
  radioactivate 1037.10
  interj attack! 459.32
charge card 622.3
chargé d'affaires 576.6
charge in 214.5
charge off
  n discount 631.1
  v forget 148.5
  keep accounts 628.8
  discount 631.2
charger animal 311.10
  war-horse 461.30
charisma power 18.1
  allurement 377.1
  illustriousness 662.6
  influence 894.1
charismatic
  alluring 377.8

illustrious 662.19
influential 894.13
attracting 907.5
charitable
loving 104.27
kind 143.13
benevolent 143.15
pitying 145.7
philanthropic 478.22
gratuitous 634.5
tolerant 979.11
charity love 104.1
benevolence 143.4
patronage 449.4
accord 455.1
almsgiving 478.3
donation 478.6
cardinal virtues 653.4
tolerance 979.4
charity case 619.4
charity event 478.9
charlatan
n impostor 357.6
adj quack 354.28
charlatanism 354.7
charley horse 26.2
charm
n delightfulness 97.2
loveableness 104.7
allurement 377.1
lure 377.3
jewel 498.6
sorcery 690.1
magic spell 691.1
spell 691.1
amulet 691.5
assemblage 770.6
influence 894.1
superstition 954.3
beauty 1016.1
elementary particle 1038.6
v delight 95.10
enamor 104.23
persuade 375.23
fascinate 377.7
becharm 691.8
engross 983.13
charmer deceiver 357.1
tempter 377.4
slyboots 415.6
bewitcher 690.9
beauty 1016.8
charming
delightful 97.7
endearing 104.25
alluring 377.8
bewitching 691.11
influential 894.13
charnel house
mortuary 309.9
tomb 309.16
chart
n map 159.5
representation 349.1
diagram 381.3
statistics 757.4
outline 801.4
v locate 159.11
represent 349.8
plot 381.10
itemize 801.7
organize 808.10
charter
n exemption 430.8
permission 443.1
grant 443.5
rental 615.6
v authorize 443.11
commission 615.10
hire 615.15
rent out 615.16
chartreuse 44.4
chary wary 494.9
economical 635.6
chase
n furrow 290.1
woodland 310.13
pursuit 382.1
hunting 382.2
v follow 166.3
emboss 283.12
pursue 382.8
hunt 382.9
make haste 401.5
court 562.21
sculpture 715.5
repulse 908.3
chase away
repulse 908.3
drive out 909.14
chaser drink 88.9
pursuer 382.4
act 704.7
sculptor 716.6
chasm crack 224.2
pit 275.2
concavity 284.4
opening 292.1
chassis base 199.2
structure 266.4
frame 901.10
radio 1034.3
chaste tasteful 496.8
celibate 499.6
elegant 533.6
immaculate 653.7
virtuous 664.4
abstinent 668.10
simple 798.6
perfect 1002.6
chasten
simplify 499.5
punish 604.10
moderate 670.6
chastened meek 433.15
restrained 670.11
chastise reprove 510.17
punish 604.10
chastity elegance 533.1
purity 653.3
celibacy 664.3
virtue 664.1
abstinence 668.2
perfection 1002.1
chat
n talk 540.3
cozy chat 541.4
v chatter 540.5
visit 541.10
château 228.7
chatelaine jewel 498.6
mistress 575.2
governor 575.6
chattel subject 432.7
property 471.1
chatter
n rattle 55.3
speech 524.1
jabber 540.3
v rattle 55.6
bird sound 60.5
speak 524.19
protract 538.8
talk 540.5
shake 917.11
freeze 1023.9
chatty
v talkative 540.9
adj conversational 541.13
intimate 582.24
chauffeur
n driver 178.10
man 577.4
v ride 177.33
chauvinist
n militarist 461.5
misanthrope 590.2
patriot 591.3
bigot 980.5
adj militaristic 458.22
public-spirited 591.4
cheap
adj worthless 391.11
stingy 484.9
inexpensive 633.7
disgraceful 661.11
paltry 998.21
inferior 1005.9
adv cheaply 633.10
cheapen corrupt 393.12
depreciate 633.6
bargain 731.18
cheat
n fake 354.13
fraud 356.8
cheater 357.3
deceiver 759.22
v victimize 356.18
be dishonest 645.11
be promiscuous 665.19
rook 759.26
check
n plaid 47.4
trauma 85.38
slowing 175.4
crack 224.2
opening 292.1
measure 300.2
discomfiture 412.2
restraint 428.1
confinement 429.1
mark 517.5
label 517.13
speech sound 524.12
statement 628.3
negotiable instrument 728.11
token 728.12
game 749.3
chip 759.18
stop 857.2
checkup 938.6
collation 943.2
ensuring 970.8
blemish 1004.1
reverse 1011.3
hindrance 1012.1
frustration 1012.3
curb 1012.7
v look 27.13
variegate 47.7
slow 175.9
cleave 224.4
injure 393.13
thwart 412.11
restrain 428.7
confine 429.12
fend off 460.10
mark 517.19
play 749.7
ski 753.4
bet 759.25
agree 788.6
break 802.12
delay 846.8
put a stop to 857.11
specify 865.11
examine 938.24
collate 943.5
verify 970.12
blemish 1004.4
hinder 1012.10
recalculate 1017.21
monitor 1034.26
adj checked 47.14
checkered
checked 47.14
changeable 854.6
check in arrive 186.6
die 307.20
record 549.15
punch the clock 832.12
checking account
finances 622.2
funds 728.14
checklist
directory 574.10
list 871.1
roll 871.6
checkmate
n discomfiture 412.2
stop 857.2
frustration 1012.3
v defeat 412.11
put a stop to 857.11
thwart 1012.15
check out look 27.13
depart 188.7
clock out 188.13
die 307.20
qualify 405.15
punch out 832.12
investigate 938.23
examine 938.24
verify 970.12
check 1017.21
cheek impudence 142.3
side 218.1
rashness 493.1
cheek by jowl
adj near 223.14
adv hand in glove 769.10
concurrently 899.5
phrs side by side 218.12

cheeky
impudent 142.10
defiant 454.7
cheer
n food 10.1
cry 59.1
happiness 95.2
cheerfulness 109.1
hurrah 116.2
applause 509.2
conviviality 582.3
v refresh 9.2
cry 59.6
please 95.9
gladden 109.7
rejoice 116.6
comfort 121.6
give hope 124.10
assent 332.8
encourage 492.16
applaud 509.10
cheerful happy 95.16
pleasant 97.6
glad 109.11
cheering 109.16
optimistic 124.12
homelike 228.33
cheerless
pleasureless 96.20
distressing 98.20
unhappy 112.21
hopeless 125.12
cheese 10.48
cheesecake 714.3
cheeseparing
n parsimony 484.1
economizing 635.2
adj parsimonious 484.7
economical 635.6
sparse 885.5
cheesy base 661.12
paltry 998.21
bad 1000.8
inferior 1005.9
chef 11.3
chef d'œuvre
masterpiece 413.10
work of art 712.10
product 893.1
standard of perfection 1002.4
chemical
n element 1060.2
v chemicalize 1060.8
adj biochemical 1060.9
chemical engineering 1043.1
chemist
pharmacist 86.35
drugstore 86.36
chemistry science of matter 1060.1
chemical science 1060.1
cheque 728.11
cherish
hold dear 104.21
foster 449.16
retain 474.7
keep in memory 989.13
care for 1008.19
cherry bomb 53.6
cherub child 302.3
endearment term 562.6
angel 679.1
chessboard check 47.4
toy 743.16
chest
n breast 283.6
storehouse 386.6
treasury 729.13
adj pectoral 283.19
chestnut
n horse 311.11
old joke 489.9
platitude 974.3
adj reddish-brown 40.4
redheaded 41.10
chesty conceited 140.11
corpulent 257.18
pectoral 283.19
chevalier rider 178.8
gallant 504.9
knight 608.5
chevron zigzag 204.8
angle 278.2
heraldry 647.2
military insignia 647.5
chew
n bite 8.2
chewing tobacco 89.7
v masticate 8.27
smoke 89.14
disapprove 510.18
pulp 1063.5
chewed-up 393.27
chewing gum
elastic 1048.3
gum 1062.6
chew out 510.18
chew the fat 541.9
chewy delightful 97.8
tough 1049.4
chiaroscuro
drawing 712.13
lighting 1025.19
chic
n smartness 578.3
adj dressed up 5.46
smart 578.13
knowledgeable 928.17
chicanery
quackery 354.7
chicane 356.4
trick 356.6
stratagem 415.3
knavery 645.2
quibbling 936.5
chichi ornate 498.12
showy 501.19
ultrafashionable 578.14
chick woman 77.6
gal 302.7
fledgling 302.10
bird 311.28
poultry 311.29
endearment term 562.6
chicken
n weakling 16.6
homosexual 75.14
effeminate male 77.11
poultry 311.29
dupe 358.2
coward 491.5
military insignia 647.5
v lose one's nerve 491.8
adj weak 16.12
effeminate 77.15
irresolute 362.12
cowardly 491.10
chicken feed
feed 10.4
petty cash 728.19
trivia 998.4
chicken out
hesitate 362.7
compromise 468.2
lose one's nerve 491.8
defect 858.13
chide 510.17
chief
n superior 249.4
superintendent 574.2
master 575.1
head 575.3
potentate 575.8
heraldry 647.2
principal 997.10
adj leading 165.3
top 198.10
front 216.10
main 249.14
directing 573.12
governing 612.18
preceding 814.4
first 818.17
paramount 997.24
chiefly
mainly 249.17
on the whole 792.14
first 818.18
generally 864.17
normally 869.10
chieftain 575.8
chiffon
n finery 498.3
adj bubbly 320.6
chigger 311.37
chignon braid 3.7
false hair 3.13
chilblain sore 85.37
cold 1023.2
child one 302.3
person 312.5
simple soul 416.3
descendant 561.3
innocent 657.4
product 893.1
child's play 998.5
childbearing 1.1
childhood
preteens 301.2
origin 818.4
childishness
childlikeness 301.4
senility 922.10
puerility 922.11
unwiseness 923.2
childless 891.4
childlike
childish 301.11
artless 416.5
innocent 657.6
senile 922.23
puerile 922.24
trusting 953.22
children
young people 302.2
family 559.5
offspring 561.1
chill
n symptom 85.9
unfeeling 94.1
indifference 102.1
dejection 112.3
deterrent 379.2
aloofness 583.2
enmity 589.1
cold 1023.1
frost 1023.2
v disincline 379.4
freeze 1023.9
frost 1023.10
refrigerate 1024.10
adj unfeeling 94.9
unfriendly 589.9
cool 1023.12
chilling
n cold 1023.2
refrigeration 1024.1
adj frightening 127.28
refrigerative 1024.12
chill out 1047.7
chilly unfeeling 94.9
aloof 141.12
reticent 344.10
unsociable 583.6
unfriendly 589.9
cool 1023.12
feeling cold 1023.16
chime
n ringing 54.3
harmony 708.3
repetitiousness 849.4
v ring 54.8
interrupt 214.6
say 524.22
harmonize 708.35
assonate 784.9
agree 788.6
chimera
airy hope 124.5
illusion 976.1
figment of the imagination 986.5
chimerical
thin 764.6
illusory 976.9
imaginary 986.22
chimney valley 237.7
flue 239.14
fireplace 1020.11
deposit 1058.7
chimpanzee 311.23
chin
n point of the chin 216.6
v speak 524.20
converse 541.9
china
n tableware 8.12
ceramic ware 742.2
fragility 1050.2
adj ceramic 742.7
chink
n thud 52.3
ringing 54.3
crack 224.2

furrow 290.1
vulnerability 1006.4
v thud 52.15
ring 54.8
open 292.11
stop 293.7
chink in one's armor
weak point 16.4
fault 1003.2
vulnerability 1006.4
chinoiserie 498.2
chinook 318.7
chintzy stingy 484.9
vulgar 497.10
base 661.12
slovenly 810.15
sparse 885.5
chip
n trauma 85.38
scrap 248.3
flake 296.3
lightness 298.2
check 759.18
piece 793.3
break 802.4
electronic circuit 1033.8
component 1042.3
v use 87.22
injure 393.13
break 802.12
chip away at 252.7
chip in
interrupt 214.6
participate 476.5
contribute 478.14
pay for 624.18
a chip off the old block
descendant 561.3
likeness 784.3
duplicate 785.3
chip on one's shoulder
challenge 454.2
warlikeness 458.11
chipper healthy 83.9
pert 109.13
active 330.17
chippy
n strumpet 665.14
v use 87.22
chiropractor 90.4
chirp
n insect sound 58.5
v stridulate 58.7
bird sound 60.5
exude cheerfulness 109.6
rejoice 116.5
speak 524.25
sing 708.38
chisel
n sculpture tool 715.4
v form 262.7
furrow 290.3
deceive 356.19
engrave 713.9
sculpture 715.5
process 892.9
chiseler 357.4
chiseling
n fraud 356.8
engraving 713.2
adj deceitful 356.22
chit
runt 258.4
child 302.3
gal 302.7
letter 553.2
chitchat
conversation 541.5
gossip 552.7
chits 623.1
chivalry
military science 458.6
courage 492.1
gallantry 504.2
aristocracy 608.1
magnanimity 652.2
chivy
n hunting 382.2
v annoy 96.13
pursue 382.8
chlorinate
sanitize 79.24
chemicalize 1060.8
vaporize 1067.8
chloroform deaden 25.4
kill 308.13
chlorophyll 44.1
chock
n curb 1012.7
v fill 794.7
obstruct 1012.12
chock-full 794.11
chocolate 40.3
choice
n will 323.1
loophole 369.4
selection 371.1
option 371.1
free will 430.6
elegance 533.1
jockey 757.2
judgment 946.1
the best 999.8
adj tasteful 496.8
best 999.16
choicy 495.9
choir
n church 703.9
part music 708.18
chorus 710.16
keyboard 711.17
v sing 708.38
choirboy 710.15
choirmaster
leader 574.6
choral conductor 710.18
choke
n asphyxiation 307.6
suffocation 308.6
v silence 51.8
gag 99.4
contract 260.7
close 293.6
stop 293.7
asphyxiate 307.24
strangle 308.19
extinguish 395.15
overload 993.15
obstruct 1012.12
be hot 1019.22
fight fire 1022.7
choke back 106.8
choked raucous 58.15
contracted 260.12
closed 293.9
stopped 293.11
inarticulate 525.12
overfull 993.20
chokedamp
miasma 1001.4
vapor 1067.1
choked up mute 51.12
closed 293.9
stopped 293.11
choleric
n personality type 92.12
adj sour 110.23
resentful 152.26
cholesterol 7.7
chomp
n bite 8.2
v chew 8.27
chomp at the bit 846.13
choose desire 100.14
will 323.2
elect 371.13
choosing
n choice 371.1
adj selective 371.23
choosy selective 371.23
fastidious 495.9
chop
n feed 10.4
cutlet 10.19
side 218.1
wave 238.14
roughness 288.2
hit 902.4
v notch 289.4
play 745.5
sever 802.11
be changed 852.6
chop down raze 395.19
fell 913.5
chop logic
differentiate 780.6
argue 935.16
quibble 936.9
chopped-off 813.4
chopper cycle 179.8
rotor plane 181.5
game 745.3
choppy rough 288.6
nonuniform 782.3
discontinuous 813.4
irregular 851.3
jolting 917.20
chops mouth 292.4
wind instrument 711.6
choral 708.50
chorale paean 696.3
sacred music 708.17
part music 708.18
chorus 710.16
chord
n sympathy 93.5
straight line 277.2
concento 709.17
string 711.20
v harmonize 708.35
tune 708.36
play 708.39
chore
n task 724.2
tough proposition 1013.2
v serve 577.13
work 725.12
chorea 917.2
choreographer
dramatist 704.22
dancer 705.3
choreography
representation 349.1
dancing 705.1
chorister
choral singer 710.15
choirmaster 710.18
chorographic
locational 159.19
measuring 300.12
chortle
n laughter 116.4
v laugh 116.8
chorus
n unanimity 332.5
cast 707.11
part music 708.18
passage 708.24
chorale 710.16
poetry 720.9
agreement 788.1
sequel 817.1
repeat 849.5
v imitate 336.5
say 524.22
sing 708.38
chorus line 705.3
chosen
n legislator 610.3
the best 999.8
adj superior 249.12
selected 371.26
chow 10.2
chowder 10.11
chrismal
n unction 701.5
baptism 701.6
church 703.10
holy vessels 703.11
adj oily 1056.9
Christ 677.10
christen name 527.11
baptize 701.17
inaugurate 818.11
Christendom
Christianity 675.7
the believing 692.5
Christian
n respectable citizen 659.3
Nazarene 675.17
adj kind 143.13
honest 644.13
orthodox 687.7
Christianity 675.7
Christian name 527.4
Christian Scientist 675.24
Christlike
humblehearted 137.11
kind 143.13
divine 677.16
Christmas
n Yuletide 313.6
v vacation 20.9

chromatic
coloratiomal 35.16
tonal 709.27
chromatics 35.10
chromatography 35.10
chromosome
allosome 305.8
heredity 560.6
chronic
confirmed 373.18
durable 827.10
chronicle
n record 549.1
history 719.1
annals 719.3
story 722.3
chronology 832.9
v record 549.15
write history 719.5
chronologize 832.14
chronicler annalist 550.2
historian 719.4
chronologist 832.10
chronography time 821.1
chronology 832.1
chronological
historical 719.7
temporal 821.7
chronology
history 719.1
time 821.1
timekeeping 832.1
chronicle 832.9
chronometer
navigation 182.2
timepiece 832.6
chrysalis 302.12
chthonian
n Satanist 680.15
idolater 697.4
adj hellish 682.8
idolatrous 697.7
chubby
corpulent 257.18
stubby 268.10
chuck
n food 10.2
tap 902.7
throw 904.3
v bird sound 60.5
place violently 159.13
reject 372.2
discard 390.7
eliminate 773.5
tap 902.18
throw 904.10
chuckhole
pothole 284.3
mud puddle 1062.9
chuckle
n ripple 52.5
laughter 116.4
v laugh 116.8
chuck up 909.27
chug-a-lug 88.25
chum
n friend 588.4
v associate with 582.18
chummy 587.20
chump dupe 358.2
fool 924.3
chunk
n amount 244.2
lump 257.10
portion 477.5
bet 759.3
accumulation 770.9
piece 793.3
throw 904.3
v throw 904.10
chunky
corpulent 257.18
stubby 268.10
sturdy 763.7
church school 617.5
sect 675.3
divine service 696.8
kirk 703.1
the Church
the true church 687.3
the believing 692.5
the ministry 698.1
papacy 698.6
churchgoer
attender 221.5
believer 692.4
worshiper 696.9
the laity 700.1
churchly
ecclesiastic 698.13
churchish 703.15
churchman
believer 692.4
clergyman 699.2
layman 700.2
Church of England 675.11
churchyard 309.15
churlish
irascible 110.19
countrified 233.7
boorish 497.13
gruff 505.7
churn
n mixer 797.9
blend 917.1
agitator 917.9
v seethe 671.12
agitate 917.10
emulsify 1062.10
churn out write 547.21
pen 718.6
produce 892.8
chute parachute 181.13
outlet 190.9
incline 204.4
rapids 238.10
gutter 239.3
race 756.3
deposit 1058.7
chutzpah
impudence 142.3
rashness 493.1
fearlessness 492.4
CIA man 576.9
ciao! 188.22
cicatrix mark 517.5
blemish 1004.1
cicerone
traveler 178.1
interpreter 341.7
guide 574.7
escort 769.5
cigar 89.4
cigarette 89.5
cilia
eyelashes 3.12
organelle 305.5
cinch
n dupe 358.2
sure success 409.2
poker 759.10
saddle parts 901.18
certainty 970.2
easy 1014.4
v fasten 800.7
bind 800.9
prove 957.10
make sure 970.11
cincture
n surrounding 209.5
enclosed place 212.3
circle 280.3
v encircle 209.7
cinder dregs 256.2
coal 1019.16
combustion product
1020.16
cinder block 1054.2
cinema
n motion-picture theater
706.7
adj motion-picture 706.9
cinematic 706.9
cinematographer
motion-picture photography
706.5
photographer 716.5
cinerary 309.22
cinereous colorless 36.7
gray 39.4
cipher
n discord 61.1
cryptography 345.6
symbol 517.2
Greek 522.7
signature 527.10
letter 546.1
nothing 762.2
thing of naught 764.2
a nobody 998.7
number 1017.3
v code 345.10
calculate 1017.18
circa
adv approximately 244.6
prep about 223.26
circadian
recurrent 849.13
momentary 850.8
circle
n environment 209.1
region 230.9
sphere 231.2
curve 279.2
circus 280.2
jewel 498.6
clique 617.6
round 850.3
circuit 914.2
halo 1025.14
orbit 1072.16
v move 172.5
encircle 209.7
round 280.10
recur 850.5
circuit 914.5
rotate 915.9
circuit
n journey 177.5
environment 209.1
sphere 231.2
circle 280.2
route 383.1
engagement 704.11
baseball 745.1
routine 850.3
round 914.2
detour 914.3
electrical circuit 1032.4
network 1034.8
circuitry 1042.3
v circle 914.5
circuitous
deviative 164.7
oblique 204.13
convolutional 281.6
circumlocutory 538.14
roundabout 914.7
circuitry
electronic circuit 1033.8
computer parts 1042.3
circular
n announcement 352.2
advertising matter 352.8
booklet 554.11
adj round 280.11
circuitous 914.7
circularity
curvature 279.1
roundness 280.1
orbit 280.1
circuitousness 914.1
sophistry 936.1
circulate
distribute 352.10
be published 352.16
deliver 478.13
monetize 728.26
circle 914.5
rotate 915.9
circulation
n blood 2.25
publication 352.1
monetization 728.23
circuitousness 914.1
rotation 915.1
liquidity 1061.1
adj fluid 1061.4
circumcise 701.17
circumcision 685.4
circumference
exterior 206.2
bounds 211.1
circle 280.2
circumferential
environing 209.8
outlining 211.14
circumlocution
convolution 281.1
roundaboutness 538.5
circuitousness 914.1
circumnavigate
navigate 182.13
circle 914.5

circumscribe
bound 210.4
limit 211.8
contract 260.7
restrict 428.9
qualify 959.3
circumscription
restriction 210.2
limiting 210.1
confines 211.1
boundary 211.3
enclosure 212.1
contraction 260.1
restraint 428.3
exclusion 773.1
qualification 959.1
circumspect
slow 175.10
careful 339.10
cautious 494.8
judicious 920.19
circumstance
pomp 501.6
fact 761.3
state 765.1
existing conditions 766.2
occurrence 766.1
component 796.2
event 831.2
qualification 959.2
circumstances
environment 209.1
assets 471.7
total situation 766.2
affairs 831.4
circumstantial
conditional 766.7
unessential 768.4
happening 831.9
evidential 957.16
qualifying 959.7
circumstantiate
itemize 766.6
confirm 957.11
circumvent
deceive 356.14
avoid 368.6
evade 368.7
outwit 415.11
thwart 1012.15
circus town 230.9
circle 280.2
arena 463.1
show business 704.1
cirrous
threadlike 271.7
cloudy 319.8
cirrus filament 271.1
coil 281.2
cist 309.16
cistern 241.1
citadel 460.6
citation
incrimination 599.2
eulogy 646.4
acknowledgment 888.2
reference 957.5
Citation 311.15
cite summon 420.11
accuse 599.7
honor 646.8
itemize 766.6
name 957.13
call attention to 983.10
citified 230.11
citizen national 227.4
freeman 430.11
noncombatant 464.5
citizenry
population 227.1
the people 606.1
citizens band 1034.13
citizenship
native-born citizenship 226.2
public spirit 591.1
citrus fruit 10.38
city
n metropolis 230
town 230.1
region 231.5
adj urban 230.11
city dweller 227.6
city father
public official 575.17
legislator 610.3
city hall
town hall 230.5
political party 609.24
capitol 613.4
city planner
artist 716.10
architect 717.3
city planning 230.10
city slicker
townsman 227.6
sophisticate 413.17
city-state 232.1
civic urban 230.11
public 312.16
public-spirited 591.4
political 609.43
governmental 612.17
civics 609.2
civil public 312.16
decorous 496.10
courteous 504.14
sociable 582.22
governmental 612.17
lay 700.3
civil ceremony 563.3
civil code 673.5
civil disobedience 327.1
civil disorder 327.4
civil engineering 1043.1
civilian dress 5.8
civilian life 465.6
civility
cultivation 392.3
decorousness 496.3
courtesy 504.1
manners 504.6
amenities 504.7
social convention 579.1
etiquette 580.3
sociability 582.1
civilization
culture 373.2
cultivation 392.3
courtesy 504.1
civilize
humanize 312.12
make better 392.9
teach 568.10
civilized
improved 392.13
elegant 496.9
learned 928.21
civil law 673.5
civil liberties
freedom 430.2
human rights 642.3
civil rights
freedom 430.2
human rights 642.3
civil servant 575.16
civil war 458.1
civvies 5.8
clabber
n clot 1045.7
semiliquid 1062.5
v cohere 803.6
thicken 1045.10
emulsify 1062.10
clack
n noisemaker 53.6
rattle 55.3
snap 56.2
chatter 540.3
v rattle 55.6
snap 56.7
bird sound 60.5
chatter 540.5
clad 5.45
cladding exterior 206.2
plating 295.13
lamina 296.2
claim
n extortion 192.6
profession 376.2
demand 421.1
possession 469.1
estate 471.4
declaration 598.7
prerogative 642.1
v extort 192.15
pretext 376.3
demand 421.5
pretend to 421.6
possess 469.4
take 480.13
require 963.9
claimant
petitioner 440.7
accuser 599.5
clairvoyance ESP 689.8
the future 839.1
understanding 928.3
intuition 934.1
foreknowledge 961.3
divination 962.2
clairvoyant 962.4
clam
n discord 61.1
marine animal 311.30
man of few words 344.5
v fish 382.10
clambake meal 8.6
party 582.12
electioneering 609.12
clamber
n ascent 193.1
v climb 193.11
clammy sweaty 12.22
viscous 1062.12
clamor
n noise 53.3
outcry 59.4
clash 61.2
entreaty 440.2
v be noisy 53.9
vociferate 59.8
complain 115.15
clamor for
wish for 100.16
demand 421.5
entreat 440.11
require 963.9
clamorous noisy 53.13
vociferous 59.10
turbulent 105.24
demanding 421.9
urgent 997.22
clamp
n contractor 260.6
hold 474.2
v squeeze 260.8
fasten 800.7
clampdown 428.1
clamp down on
restrain 428.7
suppress 428.8
domineer 612.16
clam up
v be silent 51.6
keep to oneself 344.6
keep secret 345.7
interj silence! 51.14
clan race 559.4
community 617.2
clique 617.6
class 809.2
kind 809.3
clandestine 345.12
clangor
n noise 53.3
ringing 54.3
rasp 58.3
v be noisy 53.9
ring 54.8
sound harshly 58.9
clank
n ringing 54.3
rasp 58.3
v ring 54.8
sound harshly 58.9
speak poorly 525.7
clannish
contemptuous 157.8
exclusive 495.13
racial 559.7
cliquish 617.18
clansman 559.2
clap
n noise 53.3
report 56.1
applause 509.2
v crack 56.6
place violently 159.13
close 293.6
applaud 509.10
hit 902.14
clapboard
n wood 1054.3
v face 295.23

clapper
noisemaker 53.6
bell 54.4
claptrap
humbug 354.14
nonsense 520.2
bull 520.3
specious argument 936.3
claque 509.8
clarification
refinement 79.4
explanation 341.4
clarify refine 79.22
explain 341.10
make clear 521.6
disinvolve 798.5
clarinetist 710.4
clarion call 458.8
clarity
distinctness 31.2
clearness 521.2
elegance 533.1
facility 1014.1
transparency 1029.1
clash
n report 56.1
rasp 58.3
jangle 61.2
disaccord 456.1
fight 457.4
hostility 589.3
impact 902.3
v conflict 35.15
crack 56.6
sound harshly 58.9
strike a sour note 61.3
disagree 456.8
contend 457.13
go contrary to 779.4
fight 789.5
counteract 900.6
collide 902.13
clasp
n hold 474.2
embrace 562.3
v stay near 223.12
hold 474.6
seize 480.14
embrace 562.18
hook 800.8
cohere 803.6
class
n rank 245.2
nomenclature 527.1
race 559.4
form 572.11
social class 607.1
community 617.2
school 617.5
the laity 700.1
category 809.2
classifications 809.5
goodness 999.1
biology 1068.1
v analyze 801.8
classify 809.6
estimate 946.9
classic
n book 554.1
classical music 708.6
work of art 712.10
standard of perfection 1002.4
adj simple 499.6
elegant 533.6
model 786.8
perfected 1002.9
classical
downright 247.12
tasteful 496.8
simple 499.6
elegant 533.6
literary 547.24
artistic 718.7
antiquated 842.13
perfected 1002.9
classicist purist 533.4
antiquarian 842.5
scholar 929.3
classification
veil of secrecy 345.3
nomenclature 527.1
analysis 801.3
grouping 808.3
categorization 809.1
listing 809.1
classify
keep secret 345.7
analyze 801.8
group 808.11
class 809.6
discriminate 944.4
classmate
schoolchild 572.3
companion 588.3
classroom
n schoolroom 567.11
adj scholastic 567.13
classy
ostentatious 501.18
chic 578.13
clatter
n noise 53.3
rattle 55.3
chatter 540.3
v rattle 55.6
chatter 540.5
gossip 552.12
clause phrase 529.1
part 554.13
bill 613.9
part of writing 793.2
condition 959.2
clavichord 711.12
claw torture 96.18
injure 393.13
seize 480.14
clawed tortured 96.25
pedal 199.9
prehensile 474.9
claws governance 417.5
clutches 474.4
control 612.2
clay
n pipe 89.6
land 234.1
corpse 307.16
humankind 312.1
person 312.5
ceramics 742.3
softness 1047.4
body 1052.3
mud 1062.8
adj ceramic 742.7
clayey earthy 234.5
pasty 1047.12
clean
v cleanse 79.18
adj pure 79.25
shapely 264.5
skillful 413.22
honest 644.13
virtuous 653.7
spotless 657.7
chaste 664.4
thorough 794.10
adv cleanly 79.29
absolutely 794.15
clean bill of health
healthiness 83.2
pass 443.7
certificate 549.6
clean-cut distinct 31.7
shapely 264.5
clear 521.11
clean-limbed 264.5
cleanliness
purity 79.1
innocence 657.1
chastity 664.1
clean out clean 79.18
strip 480.24
evacuate 909.22
cleanse clean 79.18
release 120.6
sanctify 685.5
cleanser
sweeper 79.16
cleaner 79.17
clean-shaven 6.17
cleansing
n cleaning 79.2
release 120.2
adj cleaning 79.28
relieving 120.9
atoning 658.7
clean slate void 222.3
innocence 657.1
new start 858.2
revolution 860.1
cleanup gain 472.3
red-up 808.6
clean up clean 79.18
complete 407.6
triumph 411.3
profit 472.12
tidy 808.12
clear
n clarity 521.2
v refine 79.22
take off 184.38
rise above 272.11
unclose 292.12
leap 366.5
manage 409.12
extricate 431.7
profit 472.12
justify 600.9
acquit 601.4
pay in full 624.13
pass 749.7
play 752.4
eliminate 773.5
evacuate 909.22
disembarrass 1014.9
adj distinct 31.7
audible 50.16
vacant 222.14
open 292.17
manifest 348.8
free 430.21
unhampered 430.26
quit 430.31
crystal-clear 521.11
legible 521.12
elegant 533.6
unindebted 624.23
innocent 657.6
thorough 794.10
unmixed 798.7
unfastened 802.22
unqualified 960.2
certain 970.13
thriving 1010.13
easy 1014.13
light 1025.31
transparent 1029.4
adv wide 261.19
clearance room 158.3
open space 158.4
altitude 184.35
interval 224.1
distance 261.1
latitude 430.4
authorization 443.3
pass 443.7
justification 600.1
acquittal 601.1
payment 624.1
elimination 773.2
evacuation 909.6
clear-cut
distinct 31.7
lost 473.7
clear 521.11
clearheaded
sober 516.3
clear-witted 920.13
sane 925.4
clearing opening 292.1
extrication 431.3
justification 600.1
acquittal 601.1
evacuation 909.6
disembarrassment 1014.6
field 1069.9
clearing house 729.14
clearly visibly 31.8
audibly 50.18
positively 247.19
manifestly 348.14
intelligibly 521.13
certainly 970.23
clear out
v disappear 34.2
clean 79.18
depart 188.7
flee 368.11
eliminate 773.5
evacuate 909.22
interj go away! 909.31
clear sailing 1007.1
clear-sighted
clear-eyed 27.21
clear-witted 920.13

clear the air
explain 341.10
pacify 465.7
moderate 670.6
clear the decks
trim ship 182.49
prepare 405.6
take precautions 494.6
eliminate 773.5
tidy 808.12
evacuate 909.22
clear the way
prepare the way 405.12
facilitate 1014.7
clear up explain 341.10
disinvolve 798.5
tidy 808.12
solve 940.2
make sure 970.11
cleavage
falling-out 456.4
severance 802.2
fission 1038.8
cleave crack 224.4
open 292.11
demolish 395.17
sever 802.11
cohere 803.6
bisect 875.4
atomize 1038.17
cleft
n crack 224.2
notch 289.1
opening 292.1
falling-out 456.4
break 802.4
adj cut 224.7
severed 802.23
halved 875.6
cleft palate 265.3
clemency pity 145.1
leniency 427.1
clench
n hold 474.2
v hold 474.6
seize 480.14
clerestory floor 197.23
top 198.1
clergy priesthood 699.1
ministry 699.1
clerical
n clergyman 699.2
adj secretarial 547.28
ecclesiastic 698.13
clerical worker 726.2
clerk writer 547.13
recorder 550.1
agent 576.3
accountant 628.7
clergyman 699.2
salesman 730.3
scholar 929.3
clever skillful 413.22
well-laid 413.30
cunning 415.12
witty 489.15
teachable 570.18
smart 920.14
cliché
n triteness 117.3
catchword 526.9
generalization 864.8
platitude 974.3
adj aphoristic 974.6
click
n thud 52.3
snap 56.2
v thud 52.15
snap 56.7
succeed 409.7
befriend 587.11
clicking
n ticking 55.2
adj staccato 55.7
client
n advisee 422.4
dependent 432.6
customer 733.4
adj subject 432.13
clientele 733.3
cliff precipice 200.3
slope 237.2
climacteric
n change of life 303.7
crisis 843.4
adj critical 843.10
climactic top 198.10
critical 843.10
climate
milieu 209.3
zone 231.3
weather 317.3
mental climate 978.5
climatic 317.13
climatology 317.5
climax
n copulation 75.7
summit 198.2
finishing touch 407.3
upheaval 671.5
plot 722.4
limit 794.5
crisis 843.4
crucial moment 843.5
urgency 997.4
salient point 997.6
acme of perfection 1002.3
v come 75.24
top 198.9
complete 407.6
climb
n ascent 193.1
acclivity 204.6
v move 172.5
ascend 184.39
clamber 193.11
incline 204.10
climb down
n recant 363.8
v humble oneself 137.7
get down 194.7
climber
traveler 178.1
ascender 193.6
plant 310.4
upstart 606.7
clime zone 231.3
weather 317.3
clinch
n hold 474.2
joint 800.4
v hold 474.6
seize 480.14
fight 754.4
fasten 800.7
join 800.11
cohere 803.6
prove 957.10
make sure 970.11
clincher
finishing stroke 820.4
conclusive argument 958.3
cling
n hold 474.2
cohesion 803.1
v stay near 223.12
hold 474.6
retain 474.7
cohere 803.6
clinic facility 91.21
hospital room 197.25
clinical 90.15
clink
n thud 52.3
ringing 54.3
jail 429.9
rhyme 720.8
assonance 784.6
v thud 52.15
ring 54.8
clinker
discord 61.1
dregs 256.2
combustion product 1020.16
building material 1054.2
clip
n velocity 172.4
excerpt 557.3
piece 793.3
blow 902.5
v speed 174.9
excise 255.10
shorten 268.6
deceive 356.19
hold 474.6
retain 474.7
rob 482.16
abridge 557.5
overprice 632.7
hook 800.8
strike 902.15
clipper 181.8
clippings 557.4
clique
n social set 582.5
coterie 617.6
company 770.3
v associate with 582.18
cliquish
contemptuous 157.8
exclusive 495.13
clannish 617.18
clitoris 2.13
cloak
n overgarment 5.12
cover 295.2
pretext 376.1
robe 702.2
v mantle 5.40
cover 295.19
conceal 346.6
protect 1008.18
cloak-and-dagger
sensational 105.32
covert 345.12
cloakroom 197.15
clobber
best 249.7
defeat 412.9
punish 604.15
beat 902.17
clock
n furniture 229.1
timepiece 832.6
v check out 188.13
time 832.11
clock in
arrive 186.6
punch the clock 832.12
clock watcher
idler 331.8
shirker 368.3
clockwise
adj right 219.4
adv rightward 161.24
round 915.16
clod land 234.1
lump 257.10
bungler 414.8
peasant 606.6
stupid person 924.2
oaf 924.5
body 1052.3
cloddish
countrified 233.7
boorish 497.13
stupid 922.15
clog
n obstruction 293.3
curb 1012.7
v stop 293.7
dance 705.5
clogs 5.27
cloister
n corridor 197.18
enclosed place 212.3
passageway 383.3
monastery 703.6
retreat 1009.5
v enclose 212.6
confine 429.12
cloistered
quiescent 173.12
walled off 212.10
enclosing 212.11
confined 429.19
recluse 584.10
claustral 703.16
separated 802.21
clone
n the same 778.3
duplicate 785.3
conformist 867.2
v reproduce 778.6
make uniform 781.4
copy 785.8
close
n completion 407.2
closing 820.3
cessation 857.1
v approach 167.3
converge 169.2
surround 209.6

  shut 293.6
  arrange 437.8
  contend 457.13
  end 820.5
  turn off 857.12
  obstruct 1012.12
close
  n enclosed place 212.3
  plot 231.4
  adj stuffy 173.16
  near 223.14
  narrow 270.14
  tight 293.12
  meticulous 339.12
  taciturn 344.9
  secret 345.11
  secretive 345.15
  concealed 346.11
  stingy 484.9
  phonetic 524.30
  concise 537.6
  unsociable 583.5
  familiar 587.19
  crowded 770.22
  approximate 775.8
  approximating 784.14
  fast 800.14
  imminent 840.3
  exact 928.17
  sultry 1019.28
  dense 1045.12
  adv around 209.12
  nigh 223.20
  nearly 223.22
  densely 1045.15
close call 369.2
closed shut 293.9
  secret 345.11
  inhospitable 586.7
  narrow-minded 980.10
closed-minded
  unpersuadable 361.13
  narrow-minded 980.10
close down
  close shop 293.8
  suppress 428.8
  stop work 857.8
closefisted 484.9
close in approach 167.3
  converge 169.2
  enclose 212.5
closemouthed
  taciturn 344.9
  secretive 345.15
close one's eyes to
  be blind 30.8
  condone 148.4
  be inattentive 984.2
close out
  n end 820.1
  v reject 372.2
  complete 407.6
  keep accounts 628.8
  deal 734.8
  sell 737.24
  exclude 773.4
  end 820.5
  make impossible 967.6
close shave 369.2
closet
  n latrine 12.10
  sanctum 197.8
  clothes room 197.15
  bathroom 197.26
  storehouse 386.6
  office 739.7
  v confine 212.6
  adj secret 345.11
close up
  n motion picture 714.8
  v converge 169.2
  shut 293.6
  close shop 293.8
  heal 396.21
  complete 407.6
  obstruct 1012.12
closing arguments 598.8
closure shutting 293.1
  closing 293.1
  completion 794.4
  joint 800.4
  hindrance 1012.1
clot
  n bungler 414.8
  conglomeration 803.5
  idiot 924.8
  coagulum 1045.7
  v come together 770.16
  cohere 803.6
  thicken 1045.10
  emulsify 1062.10
cloth material 4.1
  sail 180.14
  canonicals 702.1
  scenery 704.20
clothe enclothe 5.39
  empower 18.10
  cover 295.19
  equip 385.8
clothes apparel 5.1
  blanket 295.10
clothes-conscious 578.13
clotheshorse
  dandy 500.9
  person of fashion 578.7
  trestle 901.16
clothier 5.33
clothing
  n apparel 5.1
  wear 5.1
  adj dress 5.45
cloture
  legislative procedure 613.6
  cessation 857.5
cloud
  high fog 319.1
  assemblage 770.6
  multitude 884.3
  confusion 985.3
  vapor 1067.1
  v cover 295.19
  becloud 319.7
  conceal 346.6
  confuse 985.7
  darken 1027.9
  opaque 1031.2
cloudburst 316.2
cloudless 1025.31
cloud nine
  happiness 95.2
  summit 198.2
cloudy stormy 318.23
  nebulous 319.8
  obscure 522.15
  muddled 985.13
  gloomy 1027.14
  opaque 1031.3
clout
  n power 18.1
  authoritativeness 417.2
  vigor 544.3
  influence 894.1
  impulse 902.1
  blow 902.5
  v play 745.5
  strike 902.15
cloven cleft 224.7
  severed 802.23
  halved 875.6
clover feed 10.4
  comfort 121.1
  three 876.1
  prosperity 1010.1
cloverleaf 170.2
clown
  n bungler 414.8
  humorist 489.12
  vulgarian 497.6
  peasant 606.6
  circus performer 707.3
  buffoon 707.10
  fool 924.1
  v be foolish 923.6
cloying nasty 64.7
  oversweet 66.5
  sentimental 93.21
  satiating 994.7
club
  n resort 228.27
  fist 462.4
  rod 605.2
  fellowship 617.3
  theater 704.14
  baseball team 745.2
  golf 751.1
  v whip 604.13
  league 805.4
  cudgel 902.20
clubby 582.22
clubfoot
  foot 199.5
  deformity 265.3
clubhouse 228.27
clubwoman
  person of fashion 578.7
  sociable person 582.16
  member 617.11
cluck 60.5
clue cue 517.9
  tip-off 551.3
  hint 551.4
  evidence 957.1
clue one in 351.4
clump
  n thud 52.3
  lump 257.10
  bulge 283.3
  growth 310.2
  bunch 770.7
  blow 902.5
  stamp 902.10
  solid 1045.6
  v thud 52.15
  way of walking 177.28
  assemble 770.18
  strike 902.15
  stamp 902.22
  thicken 1045.10
clumsy
  n bungler 414.9
  adj bulky 257.19
  slipshod 340.12
  bungling 414.20
  inelegant 534.2
  inconvenient 996.7
  unwieldy 1013.19
  ungraceful 1015.9
clunk
  n thud 52.3
  blow 902.5
  v thud 52.15
  strike 902.15
cluster
  n throng 770.4
  bunch 770.7
  conglomeration 803.5
  solid 1045.6
  v come together 770.16
  assemble 770.18
  cohere 803.6
  thicken 1045.10
clutch
  n amount 244.2
  hold 474.2
  offspring 561.2
  crisis 843.4
  urgency 997.4
  predicament 1013.4
  cone clutch 1040.10
  v hold 474.6
  seize 480.14
clutch at straws 124.8
clutches
  governance 417.5
  claws 474.4
  control 612.2
clutter
  n jumble 810.3
  multitude 884.3
  radar interference 1036.12
  v disarrange 811.2
  teem with 884.5
coach
  n preparer 405.5
  tutor 571.5
  trainer 571.6
  baseball team 745.2
  v advise 422.5
  tutor 568.11
coach-and-four 179.5
coachman driver 178.9
  man 577.4
coact cooperate 450.3
  interact 777.6
  concur 899.2
coactive
  compulsory 424.10
  cooperative 450.5
  concurrent 899.4
coadjutant
  n assistant 616.6
  adj cooperative 450.5

coagulate
n clot 1045.7
v cohere 803.6
thicken 1045.10
emulsify 1062.10
coagulation
thickening 1045.4
viscosity 1062.2
coal
n blackness 38.4
live coal 1019.16
combustion product 1020.16
v provision 385.9
burn 1020.24
fuel 1021.8
coalesce
cooperate 450.3
identify 778.5
mix 797.10
combine 805.3
coalescent 872.12
coalition
affiliation 450.2
front 609.33
association 617.1
combination 805.1
coarse raucous 58.15
bitter 64.6
offensive 98.18
thick 269.8
rough 288.6
textured 294.6
undeveloped 406.12
gross 497.11
ill-bred 505.6
inelegant 534.2
populational 606.8
carnal 663.6
vulgar 666.8
inferior 1005.9
coarsened 94.12
coast
n slide 194.4
border 211.4
side 218.1
shore 234.2
v be still 173.7
glide 177.35
navigate 182.13
sail coast-wise 182.39
slide 194.9
do nothing 329.2
take it easy 331.15
go easily 1014.10
coastal
bordering 211.11
littoral 234.7
coast guard
rescuer 398.2
branch 461.21
navy 461.27
guard 1008.9
coastguardsman 183.4
coat
n hair 3.2
outerwear 5.13
color 35.8
cover 295.2
blanket 295.12
lamina 296.2
card 758.2
v cloak 5.40
color 35.14
spread on 295.24
coating
n color 35.8
painting 35.12
covering 295.1
blanket 295.12
lamina 296.2
adj covering 295.35
coat of arms 647.2
coattails 449.4
coauthor
n writer 547.15
collaborator 616.4
author 718.4
v write 547.21
publish 718.6
coax
n prompter 375.10
v urge 375.14
lure 377.5
importune 440.12
coaxial 208.14
coaxial cable 347.17
cob ear 310.29
race horse 311.14
cobalt 91.8
cobbler
shoemaker 5.38
mender 396.10
cobblestone
n pavement 383.6
v floor 295.22
cobelligerent 232.1
cobweb filament 271.1
lightness 298.2
snare 356.13
coccus 85.42
co-chairman 574.5
cochlear 281.8
cock
n male animal 76.8
valve 239.10
stopper 293.4
poultry 311.29
weather vane 318.17
pile 770.10
v regress 163.5
prime 405.9
shoot 904.12
cock-a-doodle-doo 60.5
cockamamie 923.11
cock-and-bull story 354.11
cockatrice
traitor 357.10
heraldry 647.2
cockeyed
cross-eyed 28.12
drunk 88.33
askew 204.14
distorted 265.10
unbalanced 791.5
disorderly 810.13
foolish 923.9
dazed 985.14
cockle
n wrinkle 291.3
marine animal 311.30
v wrinkle 291.6
cockles of the heart
heart 93.3
inner nature 767.5
Cockney 523.7
cockpit 463.1
cockroach 311.37
cocksure 970.21
cocktail 88.9
cocktail hour 315.2
cocktail lounge 88.20
cocky conceited 140.11
impudent 142.10
defiant 454.7
cocoa 40.3
coconspirator
schemer 381.7
accomplice 616.3
cocoon 302.12
coction 1020.2
coda adjunct 254.1
added to writing 254.2
passage 708.24
sequel 817.1
end 820.1
coddle cook 11.5
indulge 427.6
foster 449.16
caress 562.16
code
n cryptography 345.6
telegraph 347.2
precept 419.2
Greek 522.7
ethics 636.1
digest 673.5
table 808.4
rule 869.4
v encode 345.10
code of honor 641.2
codependency 777.3
code word
cryptography 345.6
implication 519.2
catchword 526.9
codex
manuscript 547.11
rare book 554.6
codicil
added to writing 254.2
bequest 478.10
sequel 817.1
codification 673.6
codify digest 673.10
organize 808.10
classify 809.6
normalize 869.6
co-ed 572.5
coeducational 568.18
coequal
n equal 790.4
v reciprocate 777.7
adj symmetric 264.4
reciprocal 777.10
coinciding 778.8
equivalent 790.8
coerce
use violence 424.7
domineer 612.16
coercion 424.3
coercive 424.12
coeternal
perpetual 829.7
simultaneous 836.5
coeval
n contemporary 836.2
adj innate 767.8
simultaneous 836.5
coexistence
foreign policy 609.5
simultaneity 836.1
coexisting
agreeing 788.9
simultaneous 836.5
coextend parallel 203.4
coincide 836.4
coextensive
parallel 203.6
coinciding 778.8
coffee 40.3
coffee break meal 8.7
respite 20.2
interim 826.1
coffee shop 8.17
coffer
n treasury 729.13
v store 386.10
coffin
n casket 309.11
v confine 212.6
inter 309.19
cofounder 892.7
cog
n inferior 250.2
projection 285.4
v cheat 356.18
cogent powerful 18.12
relevant 775.11
sagacious 920.16
logical 935.20
valid 973.14
good 999.12
cogitate
ruminate 931.8
think about 931.11
cognate
n root 526.2
kinfolk 559.2
lineage 560.4
likeness 784.3
adj related 559.6
lineal 560.18
kindred 775.10
akin 784.13
cognition 928.2
cognitive 931.21
cognizance
thanks 150.2
due 639.2
cognition 928.2
cognizant
sensible 24.11
knowing 928.15
cognomen name 527.3
surname 527.5
nomenclature 527.6
nickname 527.7
cognoscente
connoisseur 496.7
critic 946.7
cogwheel 1040.9
cohabit copulate 75.21

  inhabit 225.7
  live together 563.17
cohabitation 769.2
cohere agree 788.6
  join 800.11
  adhere 803.6
coherent clear 521.11
  agreeing 788.9
  clinging 803.10
  indivisible 1045.13
cohesion adhesion 803.1
  sticking 803.1
  indivisibility 1045.2
cohesive
  cohering 803.10
  indivisible 1045.13
  tough 1049.4
cohort hanger-on 138.6
  military unit 461.22
  henchman 610.8
  associate 616.1
  accomplice 616.3
  attendance 769.6
  company 770.3
coif
  n hairdo 3.15
  v cut the hair 3.22
  cloak 5.40
  top 295.21
coiffure
  n hairdo 3.15
  v cut the hair 3.22
coil
  n braid 3.7
  a length 267.2
  whorl 281.2
  v curl 281.5
coin
  n angle 278.2
  money 728.2
  specie 728.4
  v mint 728.28
  innovate 841.5
  change 852.9
  originate 892.12
  imagine 986.14
coinage
  neologism 526.8
  money 728.1
  coining 728.24
  innovation 852.4
  production 892.1
  result 893.1
coin a phrase 974.5
coincide assent 332.9
  correspond 778.4
  agree 788.6
  co-occur 836.4
  concur 899.2
coincidence
  accompaniment 769.1
  sameness 778.1
  agreement 788.1
  simultaneity 836.1
  concurrence 899.1
coincidental 778.8
coital 75.25
coitus 75.7
coke cocaine 87.7
  combustion product 1020.16
col ridge 237.5
  valley 237.7
colander refinery 79.13
  porousness 292.8
  arranger 808.5
cold
  n low temperature 1023.1
  chilliness 1023.1
  adj unconscious 25.8
  chromatic 35.16
  unsexual 75.29
  unfeeling 94.9
  indifferent 102.6
  dull 117.6
  insolent 142.9
  heartless 144.25
  stone-dead 307.31
  reticent 344.10
  aloof 583.6
  unfriendly 589.9
  speculative 759.27
  freezing 1023.14
  chilly 1023.16
cold blood 94.1
cold-blooded
  unfeeling 94.9
  heartless 144.25
  hypothermic 1023.20
cold comfort 108.1
cold cream
  cleanser 79.17
  makeup 1016.12
  ointment 1056.3
cold feet 491.4
coldhearted
  unfeeling 94.9
  heartless 144.25
cold shoulder
  n aloofness 583.2
  repulse 908.2
  banishment 909.4
  v snub 157.5
  slight 340.8
cold sore allergy 85.34
  sore 85.37
cold spell 1023.3
cold storage
  storage 386.5
  discontinuance 390.2
  frozen-food locker 1024.6
cold sweat sweat 12.7
  hostility 99.2
  trepidation 127.5
  nervousness 128.2
cold turkey 87.1
cold water 379.2
colic ache 26.5
  symptom 85.9
colicky aching 26.12
  anemic 85.61
coliseum 463.1
collaborate
  be willing 324.3
  cooperate 450.3
  write 547.21
  act the traitor 645.15
  co-author 718.6
  concur 899.2
collaboration 805.1
collaborator
  subversive 357.11
  apostate 363.5
  author 547.15
  cooperator 616.4
  author 718.4
collage 712.11
collapse
  n weakness 16.1
  exhaustion 21.2
  breakdown 85.8
  descent 194.1
  decline 252.2
  prostration 260.4
  impairment 393.1
  debacle 395.4
  crash 410.3
  defeat 412.1
  insolvency 625.3
  v weaken 16.9
  burn out 21.5
  take sick 85.47
  descend 194.5
  cave 260.10
  break down 393.24
  fail 410.12
  go bankrupt 625.7
  fall short 911.2
  fall through 911.3
collapsible 260.11
collar
  n circle 280.3
  foam 320.2
  shackle 428.4
  arrest 429.6
  insignia 647.1
  golf 751.1
  v arrest 429.16
  acquire 472.9
  capture 480.18
collate classify 808.11
  scrutinize comparatively 943.5
  verify 970.12
collateral
  n security 438.3
  kinfolk 559.2
  nonessential 768.2
  adj parallel 203.6
  additional 253.10
  related 559.6
  unessential 768.4
  accompanying 769.9
  related 775.9
  eventual 831.11
  simultaneous 836.5
collation
  light meal 8.7
  arrangement 808.1
  comparative scrutiny 943.2
  ensuring 970.8
colleague
  companion 588.3
  associate 616.1
  equal 790.4
collect
  n prayer 696.4
  v store up 386.11
  gather 472.11
  come together 770.16
  assemble 770.18
  put together 800.5
  conclude 946.10
collected
  composed 106.13
  stored 386.14
  assembled 770.21
  joined 800.13
collection
  store 386.1
  gathering 472.2
  donation 478.6
  edition 554.5
  compilation 554.7
  excerpts 557.4
  oblation 696.7
  book of verse 720.5
  assemblage 770.1
  collector's items 770.11
collective
  cooperative 450.5
  communal 476.9
  concurrent 899.4
collective bargaining
  unionism 727.1
  labor union 727.2
  negotiation 731.3
collective unconscious 842.2
collectivism
  cooperation 450.1
  communion 476.2
  socialism 611.6
  government 612.8
collectivize
  communize 476.7
  attach 480.20
collect oneself 106.7
collector desirer 100.12
  enthusiast 101.4
  connoisseur 496.7
  governor 575.13
  gatherer 770.15
collector's items 770.11
colleen 302.6
college university 567.5
  association 617.1
collegiality
  affiliation 450.2
  communion 476.2
  social life 582.4
collegiate
  n college student 572.5
  adj scholastic 567.13
  studentlike 572.12
collide clash 35.15
  sail into 182.41
  disagree 456.8
  contend 457.13
  argue 789.5
  counteract 900.6
  come into collision 902.13
collier 1058.9
collimation
  orientation 161.4
  parallelism 203.1
collision
  crash 184.20
  opposition 451.2
  hostility 589.3
  contrariety 779.1
  counteraction 900.1
  impact 902.3
  misfortune 1011.2

collision course
convergence 169.1
meeting 223.4
collocation
placement 159.6
assemblage 770.1
arrangement 808.1
colloid
n emulsion 1062.7
v emulsify 1062.10
colloquial
vernacular 523.20
conversational 541.13
colloquialism
nonformal language 523.5
barbarism 526.6
colloquium
forum 423.3
discussion 541.7
assembly 770.2
colloquy 541.1
collusion
chicanery 356.4
intrigue 381.5
cooperation 450.1
concurrence 899.1
cologne 70.3
colon
digestive system 2.18
meter 720.7
grammar 857.4
colonel 575.18
colonial 227.9
colonialism
foreign policy 609.5
government 612.4
colonist 227.9
colonization
establishment 159.7
peopling 225.2
appropriation 480.4
voting 609.18
colonnade
corridor 197.18
pillar 273.5
passageway 383.3
base 901.8
colony country 232.1
possession 469.1
community 617.2
group of animals 770.5
colophon print 517.7
label 517.13
makeup 554.12
sequel 817.1
color
n looks 33.4
hue 35.1
shade 35.1
colorfulness 35.4
dye 35.8
redness 41.1
timbre 50.3
milieu 209.3
sham 354.3
pretext 376.1
ornamentation 498.1
extenuation 600.5
motion-picture photography 706.5
treatment 712.9
kind 809.3
v hue 35.14
redden 41.5
change color 105.19
blush 139.8
show resentment 152.14
pervert 265.6
misrepresent 350.3
falsify 354.16
ornament 498.8
name 527.11
extenuate 600.12
portray 712.19
imbue 797.11
influence 894.7
coloration
color 35.1
applying color 35.11
implication 519.2
coloratura
n vocal music 708.13
aria 708.16
ornament 709.18
adj vocal 708.50
color-blind 30.9
colored hued 35.17
dark-skinned 38.10
spurious 354.26
specious 354.27
ornate 545.11
discriminatory 980.12
colored person 312.3
colorfast 35.18
colorful colory 35.19
variegated 47.9
gaudy 501.20
colorful imagination 986.4
colorize 706.8
colorless hueless 36.7
dull 117.6
color line 980.4
colors
rallying device 458.12
ornateness 545.4
flag 647.7
color scheme 35.4
colossal large 247.7
huge 257.20
high 272.14
giant 272.16
colosseum 463.1
colossus
strong man 15.6
giant 257.13
tower 272.6
colt boy 302.5
fledgling 302.10
horse 311.10
jockey 757.2
coltish gay 109.14
childish 301.11
column tower 272.6
pillar 273.5
cylinder 282.4
military unit 461.22
monument 549.12
part 554.13
roulette 759.12
procession 812.3
base 901.8
columnar 282.11
columnist
writer 547.15
journalist 555.4
author 718.4
coma stupor 22.6
unconsciousness 25.2
apathy 94.4
permanence 853.1
comatose sleepy 22.21
asleep 22.22
unconscious 25.8
apathetic 94.13
permanent 853.7
comb
n ridge 237.5
wave 238.14
projection 285.4
slack 1021.2
v curry 79.21
billow 238.22
ransack 938.33
combat
n contention 457.1
fight 457.4
war 458.1
v oppose 451.4
contend 457.13
combatant
opponent 452.1
fighter 461.1
contender 461.1
combative
partisan 456.17
warlike 458.21
offensive 459.30
contrary 779.6
argumentative 935.19
combination
concoction 405.3
affiliation 450.2
association 617.1
assemblage 770.1
relation 775.1
identification 778.2
composition 796.1
mixture 797.1
compound 797.5
joining 800.1
consolidation 805.1
combine 805.1
oneness 872.1
concurrence 899.1
combine
n association 617.1
company 617.9
combination 805.1
v cooperate 450.3
join 617.14
accompany 769.7
assemble 770.18
identify 778.5
compose 796.3
mix 797.10
put together 800.5
unite 805.3
concur 899.2
combo
orchestra 710.12
compound 797.5
combination 805.1
combustible
n fuel 1021.1
adj hot-tempered 110.25
flammable 1020.28
combustion
fire 1019.13
burning 1020.5
come
n sperm 305.11
v appear 33.8
climax 75.24
approach 167.3
sail into 182.41
arrive 186.6
emerge 190.11
occur 831.5
come on 839.6
chance 972.11
come about
turn around 163.9
change course 182.30
rally 392.8
occur 831.5
be changed 852.6
result 887.4
come true 973.12
come across
meet 223.11
be manifest 348.7
pay 624.16
run across 941.3
come after follow 166.3
be behind 217.8
succeed 815.2
replace 817.5
follow 835.3
come along
progress 162.2
improve 392.7
manage 409.12
be in a certain state 765.5
turn up 831.6
discover 941.9
chance 972.11
prosper 1010.7
come apart
weaken 16.9
be excitable 105.16
lose self-control 128.7
break 393.23
spring apart 802.9
disintegrate 806.3
lapse into disorder 810.8
come at arrive at 186.7
attack 459.14
comeback
recovery 396.8
retaliation 506.1
gibe 508.2
countermeasure 900.5
answer 939.1
come back
turn back 163.8
recover 396.20
race 757.5
answer 939.4
recur 989.15
come back at
retaliate 506.4
react 903.5
answer 939.4

come between
intrude 214.5
sow dissension 456.14
come by acquire 472.8
receive 479.6
inherit 479.7
come clean 351.7
comedian
humorist 489.12
dramatist 704.22
comedienne 707.9
comedown
disappointment 132.1
humiliation 137.2
descent 194.1
deterioration 393.3
collapse 410.3
bathos 488.3
disparagement 512.1
infamy 661.4
reverse 1011.3
come down use 87.22
land 184.43
descend 194.5
occur 831.5
decide 946.11
fall on evil days 1011.11
come down on
light upon 194.10
attack 459.14
disapprove 510.18
punish 604.11
come down to 790.5
come down with
take ill 85.47
pay 624.16
comedy wit 489.1
comic relief 704.6
come forth appear 33.8
emerge 190.11
come out 348.6
be published 352.16
find vent 369.10
originate 818.13
turn up 831.6
come forward
appear 33.8
approach 167.3
volunteer 439.10
thrust oneself forward 501.12
come-hither
n allurement 377.1
adj alluring 377.8
amatory 562.23
come-hither look
gaze 27.5
flirtation 562.9
come in lust 75.20
land 184.43
arrive 186.6
enter 189.7
be received 479.8
come in handy 387.17
come into
acquire 472.8
inherit 479.7
join 617.14
comely shapely 264.5
appropriate 533.7
fair 1016.19
come of 887.4
come of age grow 14.2
expand 259.7
mature 303.9
develop 392.10
come off
cease to use 390.4
succeed 409.7
come apart 802.9
occur 831.5
come on to lure 377.5
make advances 439.8
come out appear 33.8
emerge 190.11
come into the open 348.6
be revealed 351.8
be published 352.16
find vent 369.10
be printed 548.18
act 704.29
be in a certain state 765.5
originate 818.13
result 887.4
turn up 941.9
come out for 609.41
come out with
divulge 351.5
act on the spur of the moment 365.7
propose 439.5
say 524.22
comer incomer 189.4
successful person 409.6
modern 841.4
come round
n change one's tune 363.6
v rally 392.8
recover 396.20
acquiesce 441.3
make up 465.10
recur 850.5
be changed 852.6
come round to 858.17
comestibles 10.1
comet 1072.4
come through
carry out 328.7
accomplish 407.4
succeed 409.7
make good 409.10
win through 409.13
get over 521.5
be in a certain state 765.5
be safe 1007.2
come to arrive 186.6
attend 221.8
extend to 261.6
come to life 306.10
recover 396.20
acquiesce 441.3
cost 630.13
equal 790.5
total 792.8
come to a head
fester 12.15
focus 208.10
ripen 407.8
densify 1045.9
come together
copulate 75.21
converge 169.2
kiss and make up 465.10
assemble 770.16
join 800.11
combine 805.3
league 805.4
form 807.5
come to grips with
confront 216.8
treat 387.12
endeavor 403.5
attempt 403.6
brave 492.11
exert oneself 725.9
come to light
appear 33.8
be revealed 351.8
turn up 941.9
come to mind
occur to 931.18
pop into one's head 989.16
come to nothing
be disappointing 132.3
perish 395.23
hang up and get nowhere 410.13
go to waste 473.6
be unproductive 891.3
neutralize 900.7
fall through 911.3
come to one's senses 925.2
come to pass
occur 831.5
come true 973.12
come to terms
come to an agreement 332.10
surrender 433.8
make up 465.10
strike a bargain 731.19
come to the point
speak plainly 535.2
be brief 537.5
particularize 865.9
come true occur 831.5
come about 973.12
come up against
meet 223.11
encounter 457.15
come across 941.3
come upon
be unexpected 131.6
arrive at 186.7
meet 223.11
come across 941.3
comeuppance
reprisal 506.2
deserts 639.3
come up with
overtake 174.13
propose 439.5
give 478.12
come what may
adv through thick and thin 360.10
necessarily 963.16
without fail 970.26
phrs resolutely 359.20
come within earshot 48.12
comfit 10.40
comfort
n rest 20.1
pleasure 95.1
contentment 107.1
ease 121.1
relaxation 121.1
consolation 121.4
condolence 147.1
blanket 295.10
aid 449.1
function of Holy Ghost 677.15
prosperity 1010.1
v console 121.6
condole with 147.2
aid 449.11
abet 449.14
comfortable
vacational 20.10
pleased 95.15
content 107.7
comfy 121.11
homelike 228.33
wealthy 618.14
prosperous 1010.12
comforter
consoler 121.5
blanket 295.10
moderator 670.3
comfort station
latrine 12.10
bathroom 197.26
comic
n humorist 489.12
comedian 707.9
adj farcical 488.6
witty 489.15
light 704.35
comics 712.16
comic strip 489.1
coming
n appearance 33.1
approach 167.1
arrival 186.1
advent 839.5
imminence 840.1
adj approaching 167.4
arriving 186.9
emerging 190.18
superior 249.12
successful 409.14
due 639.7
eventual 831.11
future 839.8
imminent 840.3
coming out
emergence 190.1
debut 582.15
inauguration 818.5
comity courtesy 504.1
etiquette 580.3
comma 857.4
command
n field of view 31.3
supremacy 249.3
will 323.1
skill 413.1
governance 417.5
precept 419.1
order 420.1
commandment 420.1
compulsion 424.1
direction 573.1
control 612.2
knowledge 928.1

D G
H L
M Q

understanding 928.3
v rule 249.11
rise above 272.11
will 323.2
order 420.8
possess 469.4
direct 573.8
govern 612.12
know well 928.13
command performance 704.12
commandant
jailer 429.10
governor 575.6
commissioned officer 575.18
commandeer
attach 480.20
enlist 615.17
commander ship's officer 183.7
superior 249.4
governor 575.6
commissioned officer 575.18
naval officer 575.20
commanding
authoritative 417.15
imperious 420.13
directing 573.12
governing 612.18
commandment
rule 419.2
command 420.1
commandos 461.15
command post 208.6
commemoration
celebration 487.1
anniversary 850.4
memento 989.7
commemorative
celebrative 487.3
memorial 989.27
commence 818.7
commencement
ceremony 580.4
beginning 818.1
source 886.5
commend
commit 478.16
speak highly of 509.11
commendable
praiseworthy 509.20
good 999.12
commensal eating 8.31
cooperative 450.5
commensurable
approximate 775.8
comparative 943.8
commensurate
satisfactory 107.11
agreeing 788.9
equal 790.7
comparative 943.8
sufficient 991.6
comment
n word of explanation 341.5
commentary 556.2
criticism 946.2
v remark 524.24
commentary
added to writing 254.2
comment 341.5
treatise 556.2
review 723.2
commentator
interpreter 341.7
reviewer 556.4
critic 946.7
broadcaster 1034.23
commerce
copulation 75.7
communication 343.1
social life 582.4
occupation 724.1
trade 731.1
business 731.1
commercial
n advertisement 352.6
radiobroadcast 1034.18
announcement 1034.20
adj occupied 724.15
business 730.12
trade 731.22
salable 734.14
commercialism 731.13
commercialize
profit 472.12
put on a business footing 731.20
commingle 797.10
comminute
v pulverize 1051.9
adj powdery 1051.11
commiserate pity 145.3
condole with 147.2
commissar
tyrant 575.14
public official 575.17
delegate 576.2
commissary
provisions 10.5
provider 385.6
store 386.1
delegate 576.2
commission
n performance 328.2
precept 419.1
injunction 420.2
portion 477.5
deputy 576.13
legislature 613.1
delegation 615.1
assignment 615.1
dividend 624.7
task 724.2
assembly 770.2
v repair 396.14
command 420.8
represent 576.14
authorize 615.10
delegate 862.7
commissioner
public official 575.17
delegate 576.2
policeman 1008.15
commit do 328.6
confine 429.17
engage 436.5
agree 436.5
contract 437.5
dedicate 477.11
consign 478.16
commission 615.10
obligate 641.12
commitment
zeal 101.2
resolution 359.1
undertaking 404.1
committal 429.4
obligation 436.2
dedication 477.4
consignment 478.2
devotion 587.7
commission 615.1
duty 641.1
unselfishness 652.1
cause 886.9
commit oneself
be determined 359.8
undertake 404.3
take the responsibility 641.9
seize the opportunity 843.7
commit suicide 308.22
committed
zealous 101.9
resolute 359.11
promised 436.8
devoted 587.21
obliged 641.16
unselfish 652.5
committee
subcommittee 423.2
delegation 576.13
assembly 770.2
commixture
mixture 797.1
compound 797.5
commodious
comfortable 121.11
spacious 158.11
useful 387.18
commodity 735.2
commodity market 737.1
commodore 575.20
common
n green 310.7
estate 471.4
park 743.14
the normal 869.3
adj trite 117.9
medium 246.3
inferior 250.6
public 312.16
cooperative 450.5
communal 476.9
commonplace 497.14
simple 499.6
vernacular 523.20
plain-speaking 535.3
populational 606.8
prosaic 721.5
mutual 777.11
frequent 847.4
prevalent 864.12
usual 869.9
well-known 928.27
paltry 998.21
ordinary 1005.8
inferior 1005.9
common denominator 777.1
commoner
student 572.7
common man 606.5
common good 999.4
common ground 777.1
common knowledge
n publicity 352.4
information 551.1
maxim 974.1
adj published 352.17
common-law wife 563.8
common man
commoner 606.5
average 864.3
a nobody 998.7
commonplace
n generalization 864.8
platitude 974.3
adj dull 117.9
common 497.14
simple 499.6
plain-speaking 535.3
populational 606.8
prosaic 721.5
trite 864.16
usual 869.9
well-known 928.27
ordinary 1005.8
common practice 373.4
commons
nutriment 10.3
rations 10.6
dining room 197.11
the people 606.1
park 743.14
common sense
sensibleness 920.6
reasonableness 935.9
common touch 581.1
commonweal
welfare 143.5
country 232.1
commonwealth
population 227.1
country 232.1
government 612.4
community 617.2
commotion
noise 53.3
excitement 105.4
bustle 330.4
turbulence 671.2
hubbub 810.4
agitation 917.1
communal
public 312.16
cooperative 450.5
common 476.9
associational 617.17
mutual 777.11
commune region 231.5
participation 476.1
community 617.2
commune with
communicate 343.6
converse 541.9
communicable
poisonous 82.7
contagious 85.62
transferable 176.18
impartable 343.11
giveable 478.23
communicant
informant 551.5
believer 692.4
worshiper 696.9

layman 700.2
communicate
transfer 176.10
be in touch 343.6
impart 343.7
give 478.12
say 524.22
converse 541.9
inform 551.8
celebrate 701.15
join 800.11
communication
n transferal 176.1
intercourse 343.1
communion 343.1
passageway 383.3
giving 478.1
speech 524.1
conversation 541.1
information 551.1
message 552.4
letter 553.2
social life 582.4
joining 800.1
adj telephonic 347.21
communications
n electronic communications 343.5
signaling 347.1
the press 555.3
radio 1034.1
adj telephonic 347.21
communicative
v talkative 540.9
adj talkative 343.10
conversational 541.13
informative 551.18
sociable 582.22
communion
communication 343.1
accord 455.1
community 476.2
conversation 541.1
social life 582.4
school 617.5
sect 675.3
prayer 696.4
correlation 777.1
communiqué
announcement 352.2
information 551.1
message 552.4
communism
cooperation 450.1
communion 476.2
Bolshevism 611.5
participation 612.4
government 612.8
Communist
n Bolshevist 611.13
revolutionist 860.3
adj cooperative 450.5
communistic 611.21
Marxist 860.6
community
population 227.1
humankind 312.1
cooperation 450.1
accord 455.1
communion 476.2
social life 582.4
the people 606.1
society 617.2
sect 675.3
company 769.2
correlation 777.1
similarity 784.1
community center 230.5
community chest 478.9
communize
communalize 476.7
attach 480.20
politicize 611.16
commutation
travel 177.1
compensation 338.1
substitution 862.1
interchange 863.1
commute travel 177.18
substitute 862.4
interchange 863.4
commuter
traveler 178.1
worker 726.2
compact
n contract 437
pact 437.1
understanding 788.2
makeup 1016.12
v contract 260.7
squeeze 437.5
densify 1045.9
adj miniature 258.12
contracted 260.12
short 268.8
close 293.12
concise 537.6
crowded 770.22
joint 800.12
dense 1045.12
compacted
contracted 260.12
crowded 437.11
cohesive 803.10
dense 1045.12
compaction petrification 1059.8
conglomeration 803.5
companion
n lover 104.12
stairs 193.3
image 349.5
maid 577.8
fellow 588.3
knight 608.5
associate 616.1
accompanier 769.4
escort 769.5
likeness 784.3
v accompany 769.7
companionable 582.22
companionship
association 582.6
fellowship 587.2
company 769.2
company
military unit 461.22
association 582.6
guest 585.6
companion 588.3
team 617.7
firm 617.9
cast 707.11
workplace 739.1
association 769.2
actors 770.3
company headquarters 739.7
comparable
approximate 775.8
analogous 784.11
comparative 943.8
comparative 943.8
compare
n comparison 943.1
v assemble 770.18
liken 943.4
be comparable 943.7
comparison
assemblage 770.1
similarity 784.1
substitute 862.2
examining side by side 943.1
compare 943.1
estimate 946.3
compartment 197.2
compartmentalize 802.18
compass
n range 158.2
environment 209.1
bounds 211.1
boundary 211.3
degree 245.1
distance 261.1
magnetic compass 574.9
scale 709.6
v surround 209.6
enclose 212.5
accomplish 407.4
succeed with 409.11
circle 914.5
compassion
sensitivity 24.3
kindness 143.1
pity 145.1
leniency 427.1
tolerance 979.4
compatible
pleasant 97.6
in accord 455.3
sociable 582.22
related 775.9
agreeing 788.9
compatriot
fellow citizen 227.5
associate 616.1
compeer
companion 588.3
associate 616.1
equal 790.4
compel
motivate 375.12
force 424.4
domineer 612.16
impel 902.11
obsess 926.25
necessitate 963.8
compelling
motivating 375.25
commanding 420.13
compulsory 424.10
obsessive 926.34
urgent 997.22
compendious
short 268.8
concise 537.6
abridged 557.6
comprehensive 772.7
compendium 557.1
compensate
symmetrize 264.3
make compensation 338.4
remedy 396.13
make restitution 481.5
requite 506.5
pay 624.10
atone 658.4
equalize 790.6
interchange 863.4
compensation
defense mechanism 92.23
symmetrization 264.2
repayment 338.1
recompense 338.1
reparation 396.6
reimbursement 481.2
reprisal 506.2
penalty 603.1
damages 624.3
pay 624.4
atonement 658.1
compete
contend 457.18
play 744.2
competence
power 18.1
ability 18.2
preparedness 405.4
skill 413.1
authority 417.1
competent able 18.14
fitted 405.17
capable 413.24
authoritative 417.15
legal 673.11
sufficient 991.6
competitive
oppositional 451.8
competitory 457.23
competitor
contestant 452.2
combatant 461.1
athlete 743.19
compilation
omnibus 554.7
code 673.5
collection 770.11
compile codify 673.10
assemble 770.18
compiler 1042.13
complacent
bovine 107.10
vain 140.8
complain
dissatisfy 108.5
groan 115.15
object 333.5
offer resistance 453.3
accuse 599.7
complainer
malcontent 108.3
lamenter 115.8
faultfinder 510.9
complaint disease 85.1

grievance 115.4
objection 333.2
resistance 453.1
disapproval 510.1
arraignment 598.3
declaration 598.7
accusation 599.1
complaisant
pleasant 97.6
considerate 143.16
indulgent 427.8
submissive 433.12
courteous 504.14
conformable 867.5
soft 1047.8
complement
n hand 183.6
adjunct 254.1
syntax 530.2
team 617.7
company 770.3
likeness 784.3
all 792.3
full measure 794.3
v reciprocate 777.7
complementary
reciprocal 777.10
completing 794.13
complete
v perform 328.9
perfect 407.6
execute 437.9
include 772.3
bring to fruition 794.6
end 820.7
elaborate 861.6
develop 1002.5
adj downright 247.12
perfect 407.12
comprehensive 772.7
undivided 792.11
whole 794.9
ended 820.8
unqualified 960.2
sound 1002.7
completely 766.13
completion
performance 328.2
completing 407.2
execution 437.4
fulfillment 794.4
complex
n inferiority complex 92.22
culture 373.2
whole 792.1
perplex 799.2
obsession 926.13
adj hard to understand 522.14
mixed 797.14
complicated 799.4
difficult 1013.17
complexion
n looks 33.4
color 35.1
personality 92.11
mode 765.4
nature 767.4
disposition 978.3
v color 35.14
complexity
convolution 281.1
abstruseness 522.2
complication 799.1
difficulty 1013.1
compliance
resignation 134.2
willingness 324.1
obedience 326.1
assent 332.1
complaisance 427.2
submission 433.1
observance 434.1
consent 441.1
conformity 867.1
complicate
intensify 251.5
add 253.4
make unintelligible 522.12
involve 799.3
complication
disease 85.1
abstruseness 522.2
plot 722.4
complexity 799.1
difficulty 1013.1
predicament 1013.4
complicity
intrigue 381.5
cooperation 450.1
participation 476.1
guilt 656.1
compliment
n congratulation 149.1
regards 504.8
polite commendation 509.6
flattery 511.1
v congratulate 149.2
pay a compliment 509.14
flatter 511.5
complimentary
congratulatory 149.3
approbatory 509.16
flattering 511.8
gratuitous 634.5
comply obey 326.2
assent 332.8
submit 433.6
acquiesce 441.3
conform 867.3
component
n part 793.1
constituent 796.2
matter 1052.2
adj constituent 796.5
components
contents 196.1
substance 763.2
comportment 321.1
compose
make up 405.7
arrange 437.8
reconcile 465.8
settle 466.7
compromise 468.2
pen 547.21
set 548.16
calm 670.7
write 708.46
author 718.6
constitute 796.3
mix 797.10
dispose 808.9
conform 867.3
produce 892.8
composed
collected 106.13
content 107.7
unastonished 123.3
arranged 808.14
composer
songwriter 547.15
scorer 710.20
author 718.4
composite
n compound 797.5
adj mixed 797.14
unitary 872.10
plural 883.7
composition
contents 196.1
form 262.1
structure 266.1
concoction 405.3
compromise 468.1
diction 532.1
written piece 547.2
writing 547.10
typesetting 548.2
atonement 658.1
piece 708.5
treatment 712.9
work of art 712.10
authorship 718.2
nature 767.4
construction 796.1
constitution 796.1
mixture 797.1
compound 797.5
combination 805.1
production 892.2
product 893.1
compositor 554.2
compost 890.4
compost heap 391.7
composure
countenance 106.2
contentment 107.1
unastonishment 123.1
quiescence 173.1
self-control 359.5
compound
n word form 526.4
composition 796.1
mixture 797.5
combination 805.2
alloy 1058.4
v make up 405.7
compromise 468.2
mix 797.10
combine 805.3
produce 892.8
adj mixed 797.14
comprehend
understand 521.7
include 772.3
know 928.12
comprehension
inclusion 772.1
intelligence 920.1
understanding 928.3
comprehensive
great 247.6
voluminous 257.17
broad 269.6
sweeping 772.7
whole 792.9
thorough 794.10
joint 800.12
compress
n dressing 86.33
v reduce 252.7
contract 260.7
squeeze 260.8
shorten 268.6
densify 1045.9
compressed
contracted 260.12
shortened 268.9
concise 537.6
dense 1045.12
comprise
internalize 207.5
include 772.3
entail 772.4
total 792.8
put together 800.5
combine 805.3
compromise
n adjustment 465.4
middle course 467.3
mutual concession 468
composition 468.1
foreign policy 609.5
atonement 658.1
agreement 788.4
interchange 863.1
v reconcile 465.8
reach an agreement 468.2
interchange 863.4
endanger 1006.6
compromise oneself 661.7
comptroller
superintendent 574.2
accountant 628.7
treasurer 729.12
compulsion power 18.1
urge 375.6
obligation 424.1
duty 424.1
impulse 902.1
obsession 926.13
necessity 963.1
compulsive
driving 424.10
overfastidious 495.12
conformist 867.6
obsessive 926.34
involuntary 963.14
compulsory
mandatory 420.12
driving 424.10
obligatory 424.11
necessary 963.12
compunction
qualm 113.2
demur 325.2
objection 333.2
computation
adding 253.3
measurement 300.1

calculation 1017.10
automation 1041.7
compute
add up 253.6
measure 300.10
calculate 1017.18
computerize 1042.21
computer
calculator 1017.15
computer science 1041.17
electronic data processor 1042.2
computer engineer 1042.17
computer game program 1042.12
game 743.9
computerized
automated 1041.22
machine-usable 1042.22
computer language 523.12
computer-literate 1042.18
computer program 1042.11
computer scientist 1042.17
comrade
companion 588.3
associate 616.1
member 617.11
comradeship
affiliation 450.2
camaraderie 582.2
fellowship 587.2
con
n prisoner 429.11
cheating 759.13
side 935.14
v cheat 356.18
persuade 375.23
study 570.12
memorize 989.17
adj oppositional 451.8
disapproving 510.21
prep opposed to 451.10
con artist 357.4
concatenation
association 92.33
joining 800.1
series 812.2
concave
n cavity 284.2
v hollow 284.13
adj bowed 279.10
concaved 284.16
concavity
compartment 197.2
crack 224.2
curvature 279.1
hollowness 284.1
imprint 284.1
cavity 284.2
print 517.7
depression 913.1
conceal
keep secret 345.7
hide 346.6
concealment
invisibility 32.1
secrecy 345.1
hiding 346.1
veil 346.1
hiding place 346.4
shelter 1009.3
concede
acknowledge 332.11
confess 351.7
play 751.4
allow for 959.5
conceit
n pride 136.1
conceitedness 140.4
caprice 364.1
witticism 489.7
foppery 500.4
boasting 502.1
quirk 927.2
thought 931.1
idea 932.1
opinion 953.6
imagination 986.1
v flatter 511.5
imagine 986.14
conceited
vain 136.9
self-proud 140.11
contemptuous 157.8
foppish 500.17
boastful 502.10
dogmatic 970.22
conceivable
knowable 928.25
believable 953.24
possible 966.6
plausible 968.7
imaginable 986.26
conceive
get in the family way 78.11
vivify 306.11
understand 521.7
phrase 532.4
cause 886.10
originate 892.12
know 928.12
think 931.8
suppose 951.10
believe 953.11
imagine 986.14
concentrate
n extract 192.8
v converge 169.2
extraction 192.16
focus 208.10
intensify 251.5
contract 260.7
narrow thoughts 931.10
densify 1045.9
concentration
convergence 169.1
extract 192.7
formula 192.8
centralization 208.8
intensification 251.2
contraction 260.1
industry 330.6
firmness 359.2
perseverance 360.1
thoughtfulness 931.3
attention 983.1
engrossment 983.3
densification 1045.3
concentration camp
camp 228.29
place of killing 308.12
prison 429.8
concentric 208.14
concept
idea 932.1
opinion 953.6
visualization 986.6
conception
conceiving 78.4
plan 381.1
source 886.5
production 892.1
intellect 919.1
intelligence 920.1
understanding 928.3
thought 931.1
idea 932.1
opinion 953.6
creative thought 986.2
visualization 986.6
conceptual
mental 919.7
intelligent 920.12
cognitive 931.21
ideational 932.9
imaginative 986.18
conceptualize
know 928.12
think 931.8
imagine 986.14
concern
n sensitivity 24.3
sympathy 93.5
anxiety 126.1
considerateness 143.3
carefulness 339.1
undertaking 404.1
company 617.9
occupation 724.1
workplace 739.1
relevance 775.4
affair 831.3
science 928.10
topic 937.1
interest 983.2
importance 997.1
v give anxiety 126.4
relate to 775.5
involve 898.2
interest 983.12
trouble 1013.13
concerning 775.13
concert
n unanimity 332.5
cooperation 450.1
harmony 708.3
performance 708.33
agreement 788.1
concurrence 899.1
v plan 381.8
cooperate 450.3
adj instrumental 708.51
concerted
cooperative 450.5
concurrent 899.4
concert hall hall 197.4
theater 704.14
concession
acknowledgment 332.3
confession 351.3
grant 443.5
compromise 468.1
giving 478.1
discount 631.1
merchant 730.2
market 736.1
qualification 959.1
concierge 1008.12
conciliate 465.7
conciliatory
forgiving 148.6
unbelligerent 464.10
pacificatory 465.12
concise short 268.8
taciturn 344.9
brief 537.6
conclave council 423.1
ecclesiastical council 423.4
conference 541.6
political convention 609.8
assembly 770.2
conclude resolve 359.7
complete 407.6
arrange 437.8
end 820.5
draw a conclusion 946.10
suppose 951.10
conclusion
affirmation 334.1
completion 407.2
signing 437.3
sequel 817.1
end 820.1
reasonableness 935.8
solution 940.1
deduction 946.4
opinion 953.6
conclusive
completing 407.9
mandatory 420.12
final 820.11
convincing 953.26
evidential 957.16
unqualified 960.2
certain 970.13
concoct
fabricate 354.18
plot 381.9
make up 405.7
mix 797.10
produce 892.8
originate 892.12
imagine 986.14
concoction
fabrication 354.10
decoction 405.3
compound 797.5
production 892.1
product 893.1
concomitant
n adjunct 254.1
attendant 769.3
contemporary 836.2
adj accompanying 769.9
simultaneous 836.5
concurrent 899.4
concord
n unanimity 332.5
treaty 437.2
cooperation 450.1
accord 455.1
harmony 708.3
agreement 788.1

order 807.1
v cooperate 450.3
concordance
unanimity 332.5
cooperation 450.1
accord 455.1
reference book 554.9
harmony 708.3
agreement 788.1
concurrence 899.1
concordant
unanimous 332.15
cooperative 450.5
in accord 455.3
pacific 464.9
harmonious 708.49
agreeing 788.9
conformist 867.6
concurrent 899.4
concourse
convergence 169.1
flow 238.4
assemblage 770.1
assembly 770.2
joining 800.1
concurrence 899.1
concrete
n ground covering 199.3
pavement 383.6
conglomeration 803.5
solid 1045.6
hardness 1046.6
building material 1054.2
v floor 295.22
plaster 295.25
thicken 1045.10
solidify 1046.8
adj substantial 763.6
cohesive 803.10
particular 865.12
dense 1045.12
hard 1046.10
concubine
subject 432.7
wife 563.8
mistress 665.17
concupiscence
sexual desire 75.5
desire 100.1
lasciviousness 665.5
concur accord 332.9
cooperate 450.3
agree 788.6
coincide 836.4
collaborate 899.2
support 901.21
concurrence
convergence 169.1
parallelism 203.1
assent 332.1
unanimity 332.5
cooperation 450.1
accompaniment 769.1
assemblage 770.1
interaction 777.3
joining 800.1
simultaneity 836.1
collaboration 899.1
agreement 899.1
support 901.1
concussion
trauma 85.38
shock 671.8
impact 902.3
condemn
destroy 395.10
censure 510.13
damn 602.3
pass judgment 946.13
work evil 1000.6
condemnation
censure 510.3
judgment 598.9
conviction 602.1
damnation 602.1
verdict 946.5
condemnatory
censorious 510.22
accusing 599.13
damnatory 602.5
condensation 1061.2
condense trickle 238.18
intensify 251.5
contract 260.7
shorten 268.6
be brief 537.5
abridge 557.5
densify 1045.9
solidify 1046.8
condescend deign 137.8
give oneself airs 141.8
consent 441.2
condescending 141.9
condescension
humility 137.3
arrogance 141.1
condign right 637.3
due 639.8
condiment
cooking 11.1
flavoring 63.3
condition
n fitness 84.1
disease 85.1
rank 245.2
preparedness 405.4
stipulation 421.2
state 765.1
circumstance 766.1
provision 959.2
v limit 210.5
accustom 373.9
repair 396.14
fit 405.8
inculcate 568.12
train 568.13
qualify 959.3
make conditional 959.4
conditional
n mood 530.11
adj modal 765.6
circumstantial 766.7
dialectic 935.22
provisional 959.8
undecided 971.18
conditioning
n classical conditioning 92.26
habituation 373.7
fitting 405.2
inculcation 568.2
training 568.3
involuntariness 963.5
adj healthful 81.5
condolence
comfort 121.4
pity 145.1
consolation 147
reassurance 147.1
condom 86.23
condominium
apartment house 228.14
participation 476.1
condone accept 134.7
overlook 148.4
suffer 443.10
keep an open mind 979.7
conducive
adj modal 384.8
helpful 449.21
prep tending to 896.5
conduct
n behavior 321.1
performance 328.2
direction 573.1
operation 889.1
v transport 176.12
channel 239.15
practice 328.8
perform 328.9
direct 573.8
lead an orchestra 708.45
escort 769.8
operate 889.5
conduction
transferal 176.1
electric conduction 1032.14
conductor
trainman 178.13
director 574.1
leader 574.6
musician 710.17
escort 769.5
conduction 1032.14
conduit
channel 239.1
passageway 383.3
cone
n loudspeaker 50.8
conoid 282.5
plant 310.27
v round 282.6
confabulation
deliberate falsehood 354.9
talk 541.3
conference 541.6
confection sweets 10.40
concoction 405.3
compound 797.5
confectionery 66.1
confederacy
intrigue 381.5
affiliation 450.2
association 617.1
combination 805.1
confederate
n associate 616.1
accomplice 616.3
v cooperate 450.3
accompany 769.7
league 805.4
adj leagued 805.6
confer advise 422.5
give 478.12
hold a conference 541.11
transfer 629.3
conference
audition 48.2
council 423.1
forum 423.3
ecclesiastical council 423.4
congress 541.6
discussion 541.7
diocese 698.8
football 746.1
assembly 770.2
confess
acknowledge 332.11
break down 351.7
make confession 701.18
attribute to 888.4
state 953.12
confession assent 332.3
disclosure 351.3
school 617.5
apology 658.2
acknowledgment 888.2
profession 953.7
confessor
penitent 113.5
priest 699.5
confetti 47.6
confidant
adviser 422.3
friend 588.1
right-hand man 616.7
confide hope 124.7
divulge 351.5
commit 478.16
tip off 551.11
confide in
believe in 953.15
trust 953.17
confidence
equanimity 106.3
hope 124.1
expectation 130.1
secret 345.5
fearlessness 492.3
belief 953.1
confidentness 970.5
confident
composed 106.13
hopeful 124.11
expectant 130.11
unafraid 492.20
belief 953.21
sure 970.21
confidential 345.14
configuration
aspect 33.3
gestalt 92.32
environment 209.1
outline 211.2
form 262.1
forming 262.5
structure 266.1
order 807.1
arrangement 808.1
characteristic 865.4
constellation 1072.5
confine
n boundary 211.3

  enclosed place 212.3
  v limit 210.5
  immure 212.6
  narrow 270.11
  restrict 428.9
  shut in 429.12
  simplify 798.4
  delay 846.8
  specialize 866.4
confinement
  birth 1.1
  limitation 210.2
  enclosure 212.1
  narrowness 270.1
  restriction 428.3
  imprisonment 429.3
  locking up 429.1
  punishment 604.2
confirm
  strengthen 15.13
  ratify 332.12
  accustom 373.9
  secure 438.9
  minister 701.16
  stabilize 855.8
  experiment 942.8
  collate 943.5
  affirm 957.11
  verify 970.12
confirmation
  ratification 332.4
  seven sacraments 701.4
  baptism 701.6
  fixity 855.2
  examination 938.3
  collation 943.2
  substantiation 957.4
  ensuring 970.8
confirmed
  accepted 332.14
  inveterate 373.18
  established 855.13
  tried 942.12
  proved 957.20
  true 973.13
confiscate
  demand 421.5
  attach 480.20
conflagration 1019.13
conflict
  n psychological stress 92.17
  hostility 451.2
  disaccord 456.1
  contention 457.1
  fight 457.4
  enmity 589.3
  contrariety 779.1
  disagreement 789.1
  counteraction 900.1
  v clash 35.15
  hit a sour note 61.3
  disaccord 456.8
  go contrary to 779.4
  disagree 789.5
  counteract 900.6
confluence
  convergence 169.1
  flow 238.4
  assemblage 770.1
  joining 800.1
  concurrence 899.1
conform obey 326.2
  observe the proprieties 579.4
  agree 788.6
  comply 867.3
conformation
  form 262.1
  forming 262.5
  structure 266.1
  agreement 788.1
  conformity 867.1
conformist
  n imitator 336.4
  conventionalist 579.3
  conformer 867.2
  adj customary 373.13
  conventional 867.6
conformity
  symmetry 264.1
  obedience 326.1
  custom 373.1
  observance 434.1
  social convention 579.1
  piety 692.1
  similarity 784.1
  agreement 788.1
  compliance 867.1
  conformance 867.1
confound chagrin 96.15
  astonish 122.6
  dismay 127.19
  corrupt 393.12
  destroy 395.10
  overwhelm 412.8
  curse 513.5
  complicate 799.3
  disarrange 811.3
  confuse 945.3
  refute 958.5
  perplex 971.13
  thwart 1012.15
confrere
  companion 588.3
  associate 616.1
confront
  approach 167.3
  contrapose 215.4
  front 216.8
  meet 223.11
  affront 451.5
  offer resistance 453.3
  defy 454.3
  brave 492.11
  be imminent 840.2
  compare 943.4
  thwart 1012.15
confrontation
  contraposition 215.1
  meeting 223.4
  conference 541.6
  contrariety 779.1
  comparison 943.1
Confucius
  Buddha 684.4
  Solomon 921.2
confuse chagrin 96.15
  deform 263.3
  complicate 799.3
  disorder 810.9
  muddle 811.3
  confound 945.3
  make uncertain 971.15
  mistake 975.13
  throw into chaos 985.7
confused
  inconspicuous 32.6
  clashing 61.5
  distressed 96.22
  shy 139.12
  formless 263.4
  complex 799.4
  incoherent 804.4
  chaotic 810.16
  disarranged 811.5
  vague 971.19
  bewildered 971.24
  mixed-up 985.12
confusion chagrin 96.4
  shyness 139.4
  formlessness 263.1
  discomfiture 412.2
  anarchy 418.2
  noncohesion 804.1
  chaos 810.2
  bewilderment 971.3
  distractedness 985.1
  fluster 985.3
confute
  counteract 900.6
  rebut 939.5
  refute 958.5
con game 356.10
congeal cohere 803.6
  freeze 1024.11
  thicken 1045.10
congenial pleasant 97.6
  in accord 455.3
  sociable 582.22
  friendly 587.15
  related 775.9
  agreeing 788.9
congenital innate 767.8
  thorough 794.10
congested
  diseased 85.60
  stopped 293.11
  full 794.11
  late 846.16
  stuck 855.16
  overfull 993.20
  dense 1045.12
congestion
  obstruction 293.3
  fullness 794.2
  overfullness 993.3
  density 1045.1
conglomerate
  n accumulation 770.9
  miscellany 770.13
  cohesive object 803.5
  solid 1045.6
  rock 1059.1
  v assemble 770.18
  mix 797.10
  cohere 803.6
  adj assembled 770.21
  mixed 797.14
conglomeration
  accumulation 770.9
  miscellany 770.13
  hodgepodge 797.6
  joining 800.1
  cohesion 803.1
  conglomerate 803.5
  combination 805.1
  solid 1045.6
congratulate
  gratulate 149.2
  compliment 509.14
congratulations
  n appplause 149.1
  interj take a bow! 149.4
  bravo! 509.22
congregate
  v come together 770.16
  adj assembled 770.21
congregation
  audience 48.6
  ecclesiastical council 423.4
  worshiper 696.9
  the laity 700.1
  assemblage 770.1
  assembly 770.2
congress
  copulation 75.7
  convergence 169.1
  communication 343.1
  council 423.1
  conference 541.6
  social life 582.4
  legislature 613.1
  assembly 770.2
congressional 613.11
congressman 610.3
congruent
  in accord 455.3
  coinciding 778.8
  agreeing 788.9
congruity
  symmetry 264.1
  agreement 788.1
  conformity 867.1
congruous
  in accord 455.3
  agreeing 788.9
  expedient 995.5
conic 282.12
conjectural
  theoretical 951.13
  doubtful 971.17
conjecture
  n supposition 951.3
  guess 951.4
  v guess 951.11
conjoined added 253.9
  environmental 766.8
  related 775.9
  joined 800.13
conjoint
  communal 476.9
  accompanying 769.9
  related 775.9
  mutual 777.11
  joint 800.12
  combined 805.5
  concurrent 899.4
conjugal loving 104.27
  matrimonial 563.18
conjugate
  n word form 526.4
  v grammaticize 530.16
  put together 800.5
  double 873.5
  adj lexical 526.19

related 775.9
joint 800.12
combined 805.5
coupled 873.8
conjugation
fertilization 78.3
juxtaposition 223.3
morphology 526.3
joining 800.1
combination 805.1
doubleness 873.1
conjunction
juxtaposition 223.3
part of speech 530.3
joining 800.1
combination 805.1
concurrence 899.1
conjure deceive 356.14
summon 420.11
entreat 440.11
make up 690.11
conjurer
trickster 357.2
sorcerer 690.5
entertainer 707.1
conjure up
summon 420.11
make appear 690.11
visualize 986.15
remember 989.10
conk out weaken 16.9
stall 184.45
die 307.20
be impaired 393.26
perish 395.23
fail 410.16
con man cheater 357.4
thief 483.1
connate innate 767.8
kindred 775.10
akin 784.13
connect use 87.22
converge 169.2
adjoin 223.9
succeed 409.7
play 745.5
apply to 775.5
relate 775.6
put together 800.5
join 800.11
be consistent 803.7
combine 805.3
continue 812.4
connection
copulation 75.7
addict 87.21
intermediary 213.4
juxtaposition 223.3
communication 343.1
passageway 383.3
mediator 466.3
blood relationship 559.1
marriage 564.1
go-between 576.4
relation 775.1
relevance 775.4
joining 800.1
joint 800.4
consistency 803.2
series 812.2
connections
kinfolk 559.2
favor 894.2
conniption 152.8
connivance
chicanery 356.4
intrigue 381.5
consent 441.1
sufferance 443.2
connive plot 381.9
concur 899.2
connive at
condone 148.4
consent 441.2
suffer 443.10
be inattentive 984.2
conniving
scheming 381.13
cooperative 450.5
connoisseur
expert 413.11
judge 496.7
collector 770.15
specialist 866.3
critic 946.7
connoisseurship
aesthetic taste 496.5
discrimination 944.1
connotation
meaning 518.1
implication 519.2
connote signify 517.17
mean 518.8
imply 519.4
evidence 957.8
connubial 563.18
conquer
vanquish 412.10
subdue 432.9
appropriate 480.19
conqueror 411.2
conquistador 461.5
consanguinity
blood relationship 559.1
lineage 560.4
kinship 775.3
conscience
n psyche 92.28
grace 636.5
v confess 351.7
conscience-stricken 113.8
conscientious
meticulous 339.12
observant 434.4
fastidious 495.9
dutiful 641.13
proper 644.15
conscientious objector pacifist 464.6
dissenter 333.3
conscious awake 23.8
sensible 24.11
shy 139.12
living 306.13
intentional 380.8
knowing 928.15
attentive 983.15
consciousness
wakefulness 23.1
sensation 24.1
wits 919.2
intelligence 920.9
cognizance 928.2
attention 983.1
consciousness-expanding 976.10
conscript
n recruit 461.18
v call to arms 458.19
enlist 615.17
conscription 458.9
consecrate
dedicate 477.11
sanctify 685.5
ordain 698.12
consecration
authority 417.12
dedication 477.4
unselfishness 652.1
sanctification 685.3
holy orders 698.10
consecutive
following 166.5
consistent 803.11
successive 812.9
subsequent 835.4
consensus
n unanimity 332.5
cooperation 450.1
agreement 788.3
adj cooperative 450.5
consent
n willingness 324.1
obedience 326.1
assent 332.1
unanimity 332.5
submission 433.1
approval 441.1
authorization 441.1
permission 443.1
v be willing 324.3
assent 332.8
submit 433.6
approve 441.2
permit 443.9
consequence
glory 247.2
prestige 417.4
meaning 518.1
distinction 662.5
sequel 817.1
event 831.1
subsequence 835.2
effect 887.1
influence 894.1
conclusion 946.4
importance 997.1
consequential
vain 140.8
great 247.6
authoritative 417.15
prominent 662.17
resultant 887.6
influential 894.13
important 997.17
consequently
accordingly 766.11
as a result 887.7
hence 888.7
conservation
storage 386.5
preservation 397.1
maintenance 853.2
conservationist
n preserver 397.5
conservative 853.4
forester 1069.7
environmentalist 1073.3
adj preservative 397.12
conservative
n right side 219.1
political party 611.9
moderate 670.4
back number 842.8
conservatist 853.4
adj right 219.4
preservative 397.12
right-wing 611.17
unexcessive 670.12
permanence 853.8
conservatory
n summerhouse 228.12
storehouse 386.6
nursery 1069.11
adj preservative 397.12
conserve
n sweets 10.40
v reserve 386.12
preserve 397.8
care for 1008.19
consider
be considerate 143.10
care 339.6
discuss 541.12
contemplate 931.12
think of 931.16
judge 946.8
suppose 951.10
believe 953.11
allow for 959.5
considerable
n lot 247.4
adj great 247.6
large 257.16
authoritative 417.15
numerous 884.6
important 997.17
adv greatly 247.15
considerate
sensitive 24.12
thoughtful 143.16
careful 339.10
courteous 504.14
judicious 920.19
consideration
thoughtfulness 143.3
respect 155.1
offset 338.2
carefulness 339.1
motive 375.1
gratuity 478.5
courtesy 504.1
discussion 541.7
recompense 624.3
esteem 662.3
judiciousness 920.7
contemplation 931.2
argument 935.5
verdict 946.5
opinion 953.6
attention 983.1
importance 997.1

considered
intentional 380.8
reasoned 935.21
considering
adv all things considered 946.17
prep because of 888.9
consign transfer 176.10
send 176.15
commit 429.17
give 478.16
commission 615.10
transfer 629.3
consignment
freight 176.6
confinement 429.4
commitment 478.2
commission 615.1
transfer 629.1
consistency
symmetry 264.1
clearness 521.2
uniformity 781.1
agreement 788.1
connection 803.2
tenacity 803.3
conformity 867.1
density 1045.1
consistent
clear 521.11
faithful 644.20
uniform 781.5
agreeing 788.9
connected 803.11
valid 973.14
consist of 796.3
consolation
solace 121.4
condolence 147.1
function of Holy Ghost 677.15
console
n keyboard 711.17
radio 1034.3
control room 1034.7
panel 1041.16
v comfort 121.6
condole with 147.2
consolidate
intensify 251.5
contract 260.7
cooperate 450.3
combine 805.3
densify 1045.9
consolidation
intensification 251.2
contraction 260.1
affiliation 450.2
cohesion 803.1
combination 805.1
densification 1045.3
consonance
harmony 708.3
rhyme 720.8
uniformity 781.1
agreement 788.1
consonant
n speech sound 524.12
adj phonetic 524.30
harmonious 708.49
uniform 781.5
agreeing 788.9
consort spouse 563.6
companion 588.3
associate 616.1
harmony 708.3
accompanier 769.4
agreement 788.1
consortium
compact 437.1
company 617.9
understanding 788.2
consort with
associate with 582.17
accompany 769.7
conspicuous
distinct 31.7
remarkable 247.10
noticeable 348.12
prominent 662.17
notable 997.19
conspiracy
chicanery 356.4
intrigue 381.5
stratagem 415.3
combination 805.1
concurrence 899.1
conspirator
traitor 357.10
schemer 381.7
conspire plot 381.9
cooperate 450.3
league 805.4
concur 899.2
constable 1008.15
constabulary
bureau 594.4
police 1008.17
constant
deep-dyed 35.18
firm 359.12
persevering 360.8
habitual 373.14
observant 434.4
devoted 587.21
faithful 644.20
uniform 781.5
continuous 812.8
durable 827.10
perpetual 829.7
continual 847.5
regular 850.6
permanent 853.7
unchangeable 855.17
exact 973.17
constantly
faithfully 644.25
uniformly 781.8
perpetually 829.10
continually 847.7
regularly 850.9
constellation
celebrity 662.9
fate 964.2
configuration 1072.5
consternation 127.1
constipated 293.11
constipation
symptom 85.9
obstruction 293.3
constituency
population 227.1
means 384.2
electorate 609.22
membership 617.12
sphere of influence 894.4
support 901.1
constituent
n piece 793.1
part of writing 793.2
component 796.2
matter 1052.2
adj selective 371.23
essential 767.9
component 796.5
constitute
legislate 613.10
legalize 673.9
compose 796.3
establish 892.10
constitution
structure 266.1
legislation 613.5
written document 673.6
nature 767.4
composition 796.1
arrangement 808.1
establishment 892.4
disposition 978.3
constitutional
n exercise 84.2
walk 177.10
fitness 725.6
adj healthful 81.5
governmental 612.17
legal 673.11
innate 767.8
attitudinal 978.7
constitutional law 673.5
constrain compel 424.4
restrain 428.7
confine 429.12
moderate 670.6
necessitate 963.8
constraint
reserve 139.3
reticence 344.3
self-control 359.5
urge 375.6
compulsion 424.1
restraint 428.1
confinement 429.1
temperance 668.1
moderation 670.1
constrict
contract 260.7
narrow 270.11
close 293.6
obstruct 1012.12
constricted
contracted 260.12
narrow 270.14
closed 293.9
narrow-minded 980.10
construct
n structure 266.2
v build 266.5
compose 796.3
produce 892.8
construction
structure 266.1
frame 266.2
interpretation 341.1
explanation 518.3
word form 526.4
phrase 529.1
composition 796.1
production 892.2
constructive
interpretative 341.14
helpful 449.21
creative 892.16
construe
interpret 341.9
translate 341.12
consular 576.17
consulate house 228.5
mastership 417.7
office 739.7
consult 541.11
consultant
expert 413.11
adviser 422.3
consultation
advice 422.1
conference 541.6
consume devour 8.22
decrease 252.6
shrink 260.9
use 387.13
spend 388.3
impair 393.19
destroy 395.10
lose 473.5
waste 486.4
expend 626.5
disintegrate 806.3
burn up 1020.25
consumer
eater 8.16
user 387.9
buyer 733.5
consuming
n consumption 388.1
adj agonizing 98.23
destructive 395.26
engrossing 983.20
consummate
v top 198.9
accomplish 407.4
adj top 198.10
downright 247.12
complete 407.12
thorough 794.10
perfected 1002.9
consumption
eating 8.1
tuberculosis 85.17
decrement 252.3
shrinking 260.3
use 387.1
using up 388.1
consuming 388.1
impairment 393.4
destruction 395.1
waste 473.2
expenditure 626.1
contact
n touch 73.1
addict 87.21
nearness 223.5
communication 343.1
go-between 576.4
v be heard 48.12

come near 223.10
communicate with 343.8
contact sport 744.1
contagious
poisonous 82.7
infectious 85.62
transferable 176.18
communicable 343.11
contain
internalize 207.5
limit 210.5
enclose 212.5
close 293.6
restrain 428.7
include 772.3
entail 772.4
total 792.8
compose 796.3
fight fire 1022.7
container
receptacle 195.1
can 195.1
enclosed place 212.3
cavity 284.2
containment
surrounding 209.5
enclosure 212.1
foreign policy 609.5
contaminate
defile 80.17
infect 85.51
corrupt 393.12
blaspheme 694.5
adulterate 797.12
radioactivate 1037.10
contamination
defilement 80.4
unhealthfulness 82.1
infection 85.4
corruption 393.2
hybrid word 526.11
sacrilege 694.2
adulteration 797.3
radiation 1037.1
environmental destruction 1073.2
contemn disdain 157.3
reject 372.2
contemplate
scrutinize 27.14
expect 130.5
meditate 380.5
study 570.12
consider 931.12
think of 931.16
mull over 931.17
foresee 961.5
contemplation
scrutiny 27.6
expectation 130.1
quiescence 173.1
inaction 329.1
study 570.3
revelation 683.10
trance 691.3
prayer 696.4
consideration 931.2
foresight 961.1
engrossment 983.3
contemporary
n coeval 836.2
adj simultaneous 836.5
present 838.2
modern 841.13
contempt hate 103.1
insolence 142.1
indignity 156.2
disdain 157.1
disrespect 157.1
rejection 372.1
defiance 454.1
deprecation 510.2
disparagement 512.1
contemptible
offensive 98.18
base 661.12
paltry 998.21
terrible 1000.9
hateful 103.8
contemptuous
hating 103.7
arrogant 141.13
insolent 142.9
insulting 156.8
disdainful 157.8
rejective 372.4
defiant 454.7
condemnatory 510.22
disparaging 512.13
contend
contrapose 215.4
affirm 334.5
insist 421.8
contest 457.13
compete 457.18
struggle 725.11
argue 935.16
contender
competitor 452.2
combatant 461.1
contend for
try for 403.9
strive for 457.20
defend 600.10
contend with
treat 387.12
offer resistance 453.3
engage with 457.17
content
components 196.1
n material within 196.1
stuffing 196.1
capacity 257.2
makeup 554.12
table 871.2
content
n pleasure 95.1
contentment 107.1
v satisfy 107.4
adj pleased 95.15
contented 107.7
willing 324.5
assenting 332.13
consenting 441.4
contention
contraposition 215.1
opposition 451.1
disaccord 456.1
quarrel 456.5
contest 457.1
fight 457.1
hostility 589.3
argumentation 935.4
contentious
quarrelsome 110.26
aggravating 119.5
warlike 458.21
argumentative 935.19
contest
n contention 457.1
engagement 457.3
game 743.9
sport 744.1
v deny 335.4
contend against 451.4
contradict 451.6
oppose 457.13
dispute 457.21
argue 935.16
doubt 955.6
contestant
n competitor 452.2
combatant 461.1
player 743.18
adj contending 457.22
context
environment 209.1
circumstances 766.2
contiguity
juxtaposition 223.3
relation 775.1
contiguous
adjacent 223.16
consistent 803.11
continence
limitation 210.2
celibacy 565.1
abstemiousness 664.3
abstinence 668.2
moderation 670.1
continent
n world region 231.6
mainland 235.1
adj abstemious 664.6
abstinent 668.10
contingency
circumstance 766.1
nonessential 768.2
relativity 775.2
event 831.1
liability 897.1
condition 959.2
possibility 966.1
uncertainty 971.1
gamble 971.8
chance event 972.6
contingency plan 961.2
contingent
n portion 477.5
nonessential 768.2
company 770.3
part 793.1
event 831.1
chance event 972.6
adj in contact 223.17
substantial 763.6
circumstantial 766.7
unessential 768.4
eventual 831.11
qualifying 959.7
dependent 959.9
possible 966.6
undecided 971.18
chance 972.15
contingent on 887.8
continual
continuous 812.8
perpetual 829.7
constant 847.5
continuation
adjunct 254.1
payment 624.1
sequence 815.1
sequel 817.1
protraction 827.2
postponement 846.4
continuance 856.1
continue lengthen 267.6
persevere 360.2
be continuous 812.4
elapse 821.5
endure 827.6
protract 827.9
postpone 846.9
be frequent 847.3
stay with it 856.3
continuing
persevering 360.8
continuous 812.8
durable 827.10
permanent 853.7
abiding 856.7
continuity
playbook 704.21
plot 722.4
uniformity 781.1
consistency 803.2
logical order 807.2
uninterruption 812.1
cohesion 812.1
sequence 815.1
time 821.1
constancy 847.2
change 852.1
continuance 856.1
continuous
omnipresent 221.13
uniform 781.5
consistent 803.11
continued 812.8
temporal 821.7
perpetual 829.7
recurrent 849.13
continuing 856.7
continuum space 158.1
omnipresence 221.2
series 812.2
contort deflect 164.5
distort 265.5
convolve 281.4
misinterpret 342.2
contortion
n deflection 164.2
distortion 265.1
adj torsional 265.9
contour
n outline 211.2
tournure 262.2
v outline 211.9
contra
n oppositionist 452.3
adj negative 335.5
oppositional 451.8
adv in opposition 451.9

prep opposed to 451.10
opposite 779.10
contraband
n prohibition 444.1
smuggling 732.2
illicit goods 732.3
adj prohibited 444.7
illegal 674.6
contraceptive
birth control device 86.23
safeguard 1008.3
contract
n make small 258.9
undertaking 404.1
obligation 436.2
compact 437.1
v take sick 85.47
compress 260.7
shorten 268.6
narrow 270.11
close 293.6
commit 436.5
be engaged 436.6
compact 437.5
acquire 472.8
incur 897.4
contraction
decrease 252.1
compression 260.1
narrowing 270.2
abbreviation 537.4
stenography 547.8
contractive
decreasing 252.11
compressible 260.11
contractual 437.10
contradict deny 335.4
reject 372.2
cross 451.6
go contrary to 779.4
disagree 789.5
counteract 900.6
refute 958.5
contradiction
denial 335.2
rejection 372.1
refusal 442.1
opposition 451.1
ambiguity 539.1
contrariety 779.1
disagreement 789.1
counteraction 900.1
refutation 958.2
contradictory
negative 335.5
oppositional 451.8
contrary 779.6
disagreeing 789.6
counteractive 900.8
illogical 936.11
refuting 958.6
contradistinction
contrariety 779.1
distinction 944.3
contraindicated
prohibited 444.7
unwise 923.10
inexpedient 996.5
contraindication 379.1
contralto
n part 708.22
voice 709.5
adj deep 54.11
contraposition
opposition 215.1
anteposition 215.1
contrast 451.1
contrariety 779.1
counteraction 900.1
contraption
novelty 841.2
tool 1040.1
contrariety
offensiveness 98.2
contraposition 215.1
hostility 451.2
relation 775.1
oppositeness 779.1
difference 780.1
inequality 791.1
nonconformity 868.1
counteraction 900.1
contrary
adj negative 335.5
perverse 361.11
oppositional 451.8
contrarious 779.6
different 780.7
disagreeing 789.6
nonconforming 868.5
refuting 958.6
adverse 1011.13
hindering 1012.17
unwieldy 1013.19
adv opposite 215.6
contrast
n contraposition 215.1
contrariety 779.1
difference 780.1
dissimilarity 787.1
comparison 943.1
lighting 1025.19
v contrapose 215.4
compare 943.4
contravene deny 335.4
violate 435.4
contradict 451.6
break the law 674.5
go contrary to 779.4
counteract 900.6
thwart 1012.15
contretemps
wrong time 844.2
misfortune 1011.2
contribute
provide 385.7
participate 476.5
subscribe 478.14
tend 896.3
contribute to
advance 162.5
be useful 449.17
subscribe 478.14
determine 886.12
contribution
demand 421.1
participation 476.1
giving 478.1
donation 478.6
treatise 556.1
tax 630.9
contributor 478.11
contributory
additional 253.10
helpful 449.21
donative 478.25
contrite 113.9
contrition regret 113.1
apology 658.2
contrivance
plan 381.1
intrigue 381.5
instrument 384.4
stratagem 415.3
plot 722.4
production 892.1
expedient 995.2
tool 1040.1
contrive plan 381.8
manage 409.12
maneuver 415.10
fare 765.5
induce 886.11
originate 892.12
control
n supremacy 249.3
self-control 359.5
skill 413.1
governance 417.5
restraint 428.1
subjection 432.1
direction 573.1
mastery 612.2
moderation 670.1
familiar spirit 678.12
influence 894.1
experiment 942.1
specter 988.1
system component 1041.14
v pilot 184.37
possess authority 417.13
restrain 428.7
direct 573.8
hold in hand 612.13
moderate 670.6
exercise influence 894.8
haunt 988.6
controller
superintendent 574.2
accountant 628.7
treasurer 729.12
system component 1041.14
controlling
n extinguishing 1022.2
adj authoritative 417.15
restraining 428.11
directing 573.12
governing 612.18
paramount 997.24
control oneself
compose oneself 106.7
restrain oneself 668.6
controversial
contentious 110.26
argumentative 935.19
doubtful 971.17
controversy
quarrel 456.5
contention 457.1
disagreement 789.1
argumentation 935.4
controvert deny 335.4
contradict 451.6
discuss 541.12
go contrary to 779.4
refute 958.5
controvertible
unprovable 958.9
doubtful 971.17
contumacious
defiant 327.10
ungovernable 361.12
contumely
insolence 142.1
indignity 156.2
contempt 157.1
berating 510.7
vilification 513.2
contusion 85.38
conundrum
riddle 522.9
bewilderment 971.3
convalescence 396.8
convalescent 396.23
convalescent home 91.21
convection 176.1
convene
summon 420.11
meet 770.17
convenience
latrine 12.10
comfortableness 121.2
benefit 387.4
leisure 402.1
facility 449.9
timeliness 843.1
expedience 995.1
handiness 1014.2
machinery 1040.3
convenience store 736.1
convenient
comfortable 121.11
nearby 223.15
handy 387.20
timely 843.9
expedient 995.5
convent 703.6
convention
custom 373.1
rule 419.2
ecclesiastical council 423.4
compact 437.1
treaty 437.2
conference 541.6
fashion 578.1
social rule 579.1
etiquette 580.3
political convention 609.8
assembly 770.2
conventional
customary 373.13
preceptive 419.4
contractual 437.10
decorous 579.5
ceremonious 580.8
orthodox 687.7
traditional 842.12
conformist 867.6
usual 869.9
ordinary 1005.8
conventional medicine 90.13

- **converge**
  - come together 169.2
  - focus 208.10
  - near 223.7
  - assemble 770.16
  - join 800.11
- **convergence**
  - coming together 169
  - meeting 169.1
  - centralization 208.8
  - nearness 223.1
  - assemblage 770.1
  - joining 800.1
- **conversant with**
  - used to 373.16
  - versed in 928.19
- **conversation**
  - communication 343.1
  - speech 524.1
  - interchange of speech 541.1
  - converse 541.1
  - social life 582.4
- **conversational**
  - *v* talkative 540.9
  - *adj* communicational 343.9
  - vernacular 523.20
  - colloquial 541.13
- **conversation piece** 870.5
- **converse**
  - *v* communicate 343.6
  - speak 524.19
  - talk together 541.9
- **converse**
  - *n* inverse 205.4
  - opposite side 215.3
  - communication 343.1
  - conversation 541.1
  - social life 582.4
  - *adj* contrapositive 215.5
  - contrary 779.6
- **convert**
  - *n* apostate 363.5
  - disciple 572.2
  - believer 692.4
  - proselyte 858.7
  - *v* invert 205.5
  - misuse 389.4
  - redeem 685.6
  - sell 737.24
  - change 852.7
  - reconvert 858.11
  - interchange 863.4
  - process 892.9
  - convince 953.18
- **converted**
  - improved 392.13
  - redeemed 685.9
  - regenerate 692.10
  - altered 852.10
  - changed 858.19
  - forgetful 990.9
- **convertible**
  - liquid 728.31
  - equivalent 790.8
  - changeable 858.18
  - interchangeable 863.5
- **convertor** 1035.11
- **convex**
  - *n* bulge 283.3
  - *adj* bowed 279.10
  - rotund 282.8
  - convexed 283.13
- **convey**
  - transport 176.12
  - channel 239.15
  - communicate 343.7
  - say 524.22
  - transfer 629.3
- **conveyability**
  - transferability 176.2
  - communicability 343.4
- **conveyable**
  - transferable 176.18
  - communicable 343.11
  - moveable 629.5
- **conveyance**
  - transportation 176.3
  - vehicle 179.1
  - informing 343.2
  - theft 482.1
  - transfer 629.1
- **conveyor** 176.7
- **convict**
  - *n* prisoner 429.11
  - criminal 660.9
  - *v* bring in a verdict 598.20
  - condemn 602.3
- **conviction** hope 124.1
  - condemnation 602.1
  - persuasion 953.5
  - confidence 970.5
- **convince**
  - persuade 375.23
  - cause to believe 858.16
  - convert 953.18
  - seem true 973.9
- **convinced** belief 953.21
  - confident 970.21
- **convincing**
  - convictional 953.26
  - evidential 957.16
- **conviviality**
  - joviality 582.3
  - festivity 743.3
- **convocation**
  - summons 420.5
  - ecclesiastical council 423.4
  - ceremony 580.4
  - assembly 770.2
- **convolution**
  - curvature 279.1
  - involution 281.1
  - grandiloquence 545.1
  - complexity 799.1
  - circuitousness 914.1
- **convoy**
  - *n* escort 769.5
  - bodyguard 1008.14
  - *v* maneuver 182.46
  - escort 769.8
- **convulse** pain 26.7
  - torture 96.18
  - amuse 743.21
  - discompose 811.4
  - agitate 917.10
- **convulsion** seizure 85.6
  - symptom 85.9
  - outburst 105.9
  - laughter 116.4
  - fit 152.8
  - fall 395.3
  - upheaval 671.5
  - disarrangement 811.1
  - revolution 860.1
  - spasm 917.6
  - frenzy 926.7
- **coo** murmur 52.10
  - bird sound 60.5
  - speak 524.25
- **co-occurrence** 836.1
- **cook**
  - *n* chef 11.3
  - maid 577.8
  - *v* prepare food 11.5
  - tamper with 354.17
  - spoil 393.11
  - do for 395.11
  - prearrange 965.5
  - be hot 1019.22
  - heat 1020.17
- **cookbook** 11.4
- **cookery**
  - cooking 11.1
  - kitchen 11.4
  - heater 1020.10
- **cookie** biscuit 10.43
  - man 76.5
- **cookout** 8.6
- **cook up** cook 11.5
  - fabricate 354.17
  - improvise 365.8
  - plot 381.9
  - originate 892.12
  - prearrange 965.5
- **cool**
  - *n* composure 106.2
  - unastonishment 123.1
  - moderation 670.1
  - uniformity 781.1
  - stability 855.1
  - *v* disincline 379.4
  - restrain 428.7
  - pacify 465.7
  - calm 670.7
  - refrigerate 1024.10
  - *adj* chromatic 35.16
  - unfeeling 94.9
  - indifferent 102.6
  - calm 106.12
  - unastonished 123.3
  - aloof 141.12
  - insolent 142.9
  - quiescent 173.12
  - reticent 344.10
  - cautious 494.8
  - unsociable 583.6
  - unfriendly 589.9
  - equable 670.13
  - stable 855.12
  - sensible 920.18
  - excellent 999.13
  - chilly 1023.12
  - feeling cold 1023.16
- **coolant**
  - refrigerant 1024.7
  - antifreeze 1024.8
- **cooler** jail 429.9
  - jockey 757.2
  - chiller 1024.3
- **coolheaded**
  - calm 106.12
  - unnervous 129.2
  - sensible 920.18
- **coolie** 176.7
- **cool off**
  - compose oneself 106.7
  - restrain 428.7
  - order 807.4
- **cool one's heels**
  - await 130.8
  - do nothing 329.2
  - be kept waiting 846.14
- **coop**
  - *n* enclosed place 212.3
  - chicken house 228.22
  - place of confinement 429.7
  - jail 429.9
  - participation 476.1
  - *v* enclose 212.5
  - confine 429.12
- **co-op**
  - apartment house 228.14
  - market 736.1
- **cooperation**
  - working together 450.1
  - collaboration 450.1
  - communion 476.2
  - association 582.6
  - interaction 777.3
  - agreement 788.1
  - interchange 863.1
  - concurrence 899.1
- **cooperative**
  - *n* participation 476.1
  - association 617.1
  - market 736.1
  - *adj* willing 324.5
  - favorable 449.22
  - collaborative 450.5
  - communal 476.9
  - interacting 777.9
  - agreeing 788.9
  - joint 800.12
  - concurrent 899.4
- **co-opt** 371.13
- **co-option** 371.1
- **coordinate**
  - *n* likeness 784.3
  - *v* symmetrize 264.3
  - make agree 788.7
  - equalize 790.6
  - organize 808.10
  - *adj* symmetric 264.4
  - equivalent 790.8
  - concurrent 899.4
- **coordinated** 413.22
- **coordinates**
  - bounds 211.1
  - Cartesian coordinates 300.5
- **cop**
  - *n* cone 282.5
  - police 1008.16
  - *v* acquire 472.9
  - rob 482.16
- **copacetic** 999.13
- **cop a plea**
  - confess 351.7
  - get off 369.7
- **cope**
  - *n* the heavens 1072.2
  - *v* cover 295.19
  - support oneself 385.12
  - compete 457.18

  make shift 995.4
cope with treat 321.6
  perform 328.9
  deal 387.12
  contend with 457.17
copious much 247.8
  voluminous 257.17
  diffuse 538.11
  abundant 884.8
  productive 890.9
  plentiful 991.7
cop out hesitate 362.7
  get off 369.7
  remain neutral 467.5
  compromise 468.2
  seclude oneself 584.7
  defect 858.13
  pull back 903.7
cop-out
  neutrality 467.1
  compromise 468.1
  excuse 600.4
copper
  n money 728.7
  precious metals 728.20
  police 1008.16
  adj reddish-brown 40.4
  brass 1058.17
copse
  grove 310.14
  thicket 310.15
  bunch 770.7
copula 530.3
copulate
  v couple 75.21
  procreate 78.8
  make love 562.14
  come together 770.16
  join 800.5
  adj joined 800.13
copy
  n duplicate 78.1
  imitation 336.3
  image 349.5
  diagram 381.3
  writing 547.10
  printer's copy 548.4
  news item 552.3
  edition 554.5
  score 708.28
  picture 712.11
  the same 778.3
  reproduction 785.2
  representation 785.1
  iteration 849.2
  substitute 862.2
  v reproduce 78.7
  imitate 336.5
  impersonate 349.12
  write 547.19
  adopt 621.4
  portray 712.19
  mimic 778.6
  resemble 784.7
  substitute 785.8
  repeat 849.7
  duplicate 874.3
copycat
  n imitator 336.4
  v mimic 336.6
copy-edit 548.17
copyreader
  proofreader 548.13
  journalist 555.4
copyright
  n patent 210.3
  privilege 642.2
  safeguard 1008.3
  v limit 210.5
  preserve 397.8
  protect 1008.18
copywriter
  publicist 352.9
  writer 547.15
  author 718.4
coquette lover 104.12
  tempter 377.4
  flirt 562.11
coquettish fickle 364.6
  alluring 377.8
  amatory 562.23
coral 41.8
coral reef island 235.2
  shoal 276.2
  point of land 283.9
cord line 271.2
  electrical device 1032.21
  wood 1054.3
cordage capacity 257.2
  cording 271.3
cordial
  n refreshment 9.1
  tonic 86.8
  liqueur 88.15
  adj refreshing 9.3
  fervent 93.18
  pleasant 97.6
  good-natured 143.14
  receptive 187.16
  informal 581.3
  hospitable 585.11
  genial 587.16
cordless 1032.30
cordon
  n quarantine 429.2
  decoration 646.5
  guard 1008.9
  obstacle 1012.4
  v enclose 212.5
  quarantine 429.13
  segregate 773.6
cordon bleu
  expert 413.11
  decoration 646.5
corduroy
  n roughness 288.2
  adj furrowed 290.4
core
  n essential content 196.5
  interior 207.2
  center 208.2
  city district 230.6
  summary 557.2
  essence 767.2
  middle 819.1
  salient point 997.6
  memory 1042.7
  adj urban 230.11
  middle 819.4
cork
  n float 180.11
  stopper 293.4
  skin 295.3
  lightness 298.2
  v blacken 38.7
  stop 293.7
  top 295.21
  suppress 428.8
corkscrew
  n extractor 192.9
  coil 281.2
  opener 292.10
  v convolve 281.4
  adj spiral 281.8
corn
  n feed 10.4
  growth 85.39
  swelling 283.4
  grass 310.5
  old joke 489.9
  platitude 974.3
  v preserve 397.9
corncob pipe 89.6
  ear 310.29
cornea 2.9
corner
  n deviation 164.1
  nook 197.3
  small space 258.3
  angle 278.2
  recess 284.7
  hiding place 346.4
  monopoly 469.3
  manipulation 737.20
  boxing 754.1
  race 756.3
  impasse 1013.6
  v monopolize 469.6
  purchase 733.7
  get a corner on 737.26
  turn 914.6
  run into a corner 1013.16
cornerstone
  foundation 901.7
  salient point 997.6
corn-fed 257.18
cornice 198.5
cornified pointed 285.9
  hardened 1046.13
cornucopia store 386.1
  source of supply 386.4
  horn of plenty 991.3
corny trite 117.9
  old-fogyish 842.17
corollary adjunct 254.1
  attendant 769.3
  effect 887.1
  conclusion 946.4
corona
  n cigar 89.4
  radiation 171.2
  circle 280.2
  flower 310.28
  halo 1025.14
  chandelier 1026.6
  sun 1072.13
  adj circular 280.11
coronation
  authority 417.12
  installation 615.3
coroner doctor 90.4
  autopsy 307.18
coronet circle 280.2
  jewel 498.6
  heraldry 647.2
  royal insignia 647.3
corporal
  n Army noncommissioned officer 575.19
  naval officer 575.20
  church 703.10
  adj material 1052.10
corporate
  associated 617.16
  joint 800.12
  leagued 805.6
corporation goozle 2.19
  workplace 739.1
corporeal 1052.10
corps branch 461.21
  military unit 461.22
  association 617.1
  company 770.3
corpse slim 270.8
  dead body 307.16
corpulent stout 257.18
  thick 269.8
corpus capital 728.15
  collection 770.11
  knowledge 928.1
  lore 928.9
  body 1052.3
corpuscle blood 2.25
  cell 305.4
corpus delicti 307.16
corral enclose 212.5
  acquire 472.9
  assemble 770.18
  drive 1070.8
correct
  v revise 392.12
  remedy 396.13
  reprove 510.17
  punish 604.10
  conform 867.3
  disillusion 977.2
  adj meticulous 339.12
  mannerly 504.16
  grammatical 530.17
  appropriate 533.7
  conventional 579.5
  right 637.3
  orthodox 687.7
  accurate 973.16
correction
  measurement 300.1
  revision 392.4
  reparation 396.6
  reproof 510.5
  punishment 604.1
corrective
  n remedy 86.1
  adj remedial 86.39
  emendatory 392.16
  punishing 604.23
correlation
  relativity 775.2
  reciprocal relation 777
  mutuality 777.1
  comparison 943.1
correlative
  n correspondent 777.4
  likeness 784.3
  adj accompanying 769.9

approximate 775.8
correlative 777.8
akin 784.13
comparative 943.8
correspondence
symmetry 264.1
communication 343.1
accord 455.1
record 549.1
written communication 553.1
letter writing 553.1
correlation 777.1
sameness 778.1
uniformity 781.1
similarity 784.1
agreement 788.1
equality 790.1
conformity 867.1
concurrence 899.1
correspondent
n letter writer 553.8
journalist 555.4
correlate 777.4
likeness 784.3
adj reciprocal 777.10
coinciding 778.8
uniform 781.5
analogous 784.11
agreeing 788.9
equivalent 790.8
corridor airway 184.33
entrance 189.5
hall 197.18
region 231.1
passageway 383.3
corrigible
improvable 392.17
remediable 396.25
manageable 433.14
corroborate 957.11
corrode
decrease 252.6
erode 393.21
etch 713.10
disintegrate 806.3
corrosion
decrement 252.3
decay 393.6
disintegration 806.1
corrosive
n cauterant 1020.15
adj acid 110.17
caustic 144.23
corrupting 393.44
vigorous 544.11
disintegrative 806.5
harmful 1000.12
corrugated rough 288.6
rugged 288.7
furrowed 290.4
wrinkled 291.8
corrupt
v defile 80.17
bribe 378.3
debase 393.12
decay 393.22
misteach 569.3
sully 654.10
adulterate 797.12
indoctrinate 858.15
work evil 1000.6
adj bribable 378.4
decayed 393.40
dishonest 645.16
corrupted 654.14
erroneous 975.16
corruptible
bribable 378.4
venal 645.23
transient 828.7
corruption filth 80.7
perversion 265.2
bribery 378.1
pollution 393.2
decay 393.6
wordplay 489.8
mispronunciation 525.5
barbarism 526.6
solecism 531.2
misteaching 569.1
improbity 645.1
turpitude 654.5
adulteration 797.3
indoctrination 858.5
evil 1000.3
corsage shirt 5.15
bouquet 310.25
corsair 483.7
corset stays 5.23
supporter 901.2
cortege funeral 309.5
attendance 769.6
procession 812.3
cortex exterior 206.2
skin 295.3
shell 295.15
armor 460.3
cosmetic
exterior 206.7
shallow 276.5
hasty 401.9
insufficient 992.9
beautifying 1016.23
cosmetics
appearance 33.2
exteriority 206.1
pretext 376.1
notions 735.6
dissimilarity 787.1
makeup 1016.12
cosmetic surgery 90.2
cosmic large 247.7
universal 864.14
cosmologic 1072.24
cosmology 1072.18
cosmonaut 1075.8
cosmopolitan
n citizen 227.4
sophisticate 413.17
adj traveled 177.40
public 312.16
experienced 413.28
chic 578.13
universal 864.14
broad-minded 979.8
cosmos
completeness 794.1
universe 1072.1
cossack 461.12
cosset
n favorite 104.16
v indulge 427.6
foster 449.16
caress 562.16
cost
n loss 473.1
expenses 626.3
value 630.1
high price 632.3
v spend 626.5
sell for 630.13
cost-effective 635.6
costive 293.11
costly 632.11
cost of living
expenses 626.3
standard of living 731.8
costume
n clothing 5.1
suit 5.6
costumery 5.9
theater 704.17
v outfit 5.41
costume design 717.5
cot 228.8
coterie
social set 582.5
clique 617.6
company 770.3
coterminous
adjacent 223.16
coinciding 778.8
simultaneous 836.5
cottage
cot 228.8
Aldine 554.15
cottager 227.1
cotton 86.33
cotton-picking 661.12
cotton to
fall in love 104.22
get along 455.2
be friends 587.9
couch
n lair 228.26
sofa 901.19
v rest 20.6
lie low 274.5
lurk 346.9
say 524.22
phrase 532.4
depress 913.4
lie down 913.11
the couch 92.6
couchant
recumbent 201.8
low 274.7
couch potato
idler 331.8
spectator 918.1
cougar 311.22
cough 2.21
cough drops 86.16
coughing 85.9
cough up 624.16
council
n advice 422.1
committee 423.2
conclave 423.1
conference 541.6
directorate 574.11
tribunal 595.1
cabinet 613.3
association 617.1
assembly 770.2
adj conciliar 423.5
councilman
public official 575.17
legislator 610.3
counsel
n advice 422.1
adviser 422.3
lawyer 597.1
legal representation 597.4
consideration 931.2
v advise 422.5
confer 541.11
counseling 92.6
counselor
psychologist 92.10
adviser 422.3
lawyer 597.1
count
n amount 244.2
accusation 599.1
nobleman 608.4
returns 609.21
game 745.3
particular 766.3
total 1017.6
summation 1017.11
v quantify 244.4
beat time 708.44
have influence 894.10
judge 946.8
rank 946.15
matter 997.12
number 1017.17
countdown
rocket launching 1074.9
curtain-raiser 816.2
countenance
n looks 33.4
composure 106.2
face 216.4
authorization 443.3
patronage 449.4
approval 509.1
v accept 134.7
encourage 375.21
suffer 443.10
abet 449.14
approve 509.9
counter
n stern 217.7
retaliation 506.1
type 548.6
token 728.12
shopboard 736.6
workplace 739.1
bingo 759.15
gambler 759.21
table 901.15
radioscope 1037.7
v deny 335.4
oppose 451.3
contend against 451.4
fend off 460.10
retaliate 506.4
defend 600.10
go contrary to 779.4
disagree 789.5
counteract 900.6
refute 958.5

thwart 1012.15
adj backward 163.12
oppositional 451.8
contrary 779.6
dissimilar 787.4
adverse 1011.13
adv opposite 215.6
in opposition 451.9
contrarily 779.9
counteract
contrapose 215.4
offset 338.5
oppose 451.3
go contrary to 779.4
counter 900.6
thwart 1012.15
counterattack
n attack 459.1
countermeasure 900.5
v launch an attack 459.17
counteract 900.6
counterbalance
n makeweight 297.4
offset 338.2
the opposite 779.2
counterforce 900.4
v weigh 297.10
offset 338.5
go contrary to 779.4
equalize 790.6
stabilize 855.7
neutralize 900.7
countercharge
n recrimination 599.3
rebuttal 939.2
v recriminate 599.11
rebut 939.5
counterclockwise
adj left 220.4
adv clockwise 161.24
backwards 163.13
round 915.16
counterculture
n dissent 333.1
unconventionality 868.2
countermeasure 900.5
adj dissenting 333.6
unconventional 868.6
counterespionage 938.9
counterfeit
n fake 354.13
phony money 728.10
copy 785.1
substitute 862.2
v imitate 336.5
fabricate 354.18
sham 354.21
affect 500.12
coin 728.28
resemble 784.7
adj imitation 336.8
spurious 354.26
similar 784.10
substitute 862.8
counterforce 900.4
counterinsurgency 900.5
counterintelligence
secret service 576.12
surveillance 938.9
counterirritant 900.3
countermand
n take back 445.1
v repeal 445.2
thwart 1012.15
countermeasure 900.5
countermine
n entrenchment 460.5
v plot 381.9
countermove 995.2
counteroffensive 459.1
counterorder
n countermand 445.1
v repeal 445.2
counterpane 295.10
counterpart
correlate 777.4
likeness 784.3
duplicate 785.3
equal 790.4
counterpoint
polyphony 708.20
meter 720.7
the opposite 779.2
counterpose
go contrary to 779.4
counteract 900.6
compare 943.4
counterproductive
ineffective 19.15
counteractive 900.8
unwise 923.10
inexpedient 996.5
harmful 1000.12
hampering 1012.18
counterrevolution
revolution 860.1
countermeasure 900.5
countersign
n identification 517.11
password 517.12
signature 527.10
v ratify 332.12
promise 436.4
counterspy 576.9
counterstatement
defense 600.2
rebuttal 939.2
counter to
counteractively 900.10
opposed to 451.10
in disagreement with 789.10
countervailing
n neutralization 900.2
adj compensating 338.6
contrary 779.6
counteractive 900.8
neutralizing 900.9
counterweight
offset 338.2
scenery 704.20
counterforce 900.4
countess 608.6
counting
n numeration 1017.9
adj inclusive 772.6
countless much 247.8
infinite 823.3
innumerable 884.10
count on hope 124.7
look forward to 130.6
plan 380.6
rely on 953.16
count out 773.4
countrified 233.7
country
n region 231.1
nation 232.1
land 232.1
jury 596.6
adj rustic 233.6
country bumpkin 606.6
country house 228.5
countryman
fellow citizen 227.5
peasant 606.6
agriculturist 1069.5
country music 708.11
countryside 233.1
count sheep 23.3
count up 1017.19
county region 231.5
country 232.1
county seat 230.4
coup act 328.3
attempt 403.2
stratagem 415.3
seizure 480.2
instant 830.3
expedient 995.2
coup d'état revolt 327.4
seizure 480.2
revolution 860.1
couple
n set 784.5
two 873.2
v copulate 75.21
wed 563.14
get married 563.15
come together 770.16
relate 775.6
put together 800.5
combine 805.3
league 805.4
double 873.5
couplet poetry 720.9
two 873.2
coupon token 728.12
stock certificate 738.4
courage pluck 359.3
fortitude 492.6
bravery 492.1
confidence 970.5
courageous
resolute 359.14
plucky 492.17
courier
messenger 353.1
guide 574.7
course
n serving 8.10
dish 10.7
direction 161.1
progression 162.1
career 172.2
travel 177.1
journey 177.5
voyage 182.6
heading 184.34
flow 238.4
channel 239.1
layer 296.1
policy 381.4
route 383.1
manner 384.1
arena 463.1
track 517.8
study 568.8
golf 751.1
skiing 753.1
horse racing 757.1
series 812.2
round 850.3
process 889.2
trend 896.2
v travel 177.18
traverse 177.20
flow 238.16
hunt 382.9
adv under way 182.63
course of action 995.2
courser swiftness 174.6
horse 311.10
hunter 382.5
war-horse 461.30
court
n enclosed place 212.3
estate 228.7
council 423.1
courtship 562.7
judiciary 594.2
law court 595.2
courthouse 595.6
legislature 613.1
playground 743.11
basketball 747.1
tennis 748.1
attendance 769.6
influence 894.6
v curry favor 138.9
solicit 440.14
woo 562.21
cultivate 587.12
adj tribunal 595.7
courteous
sensitive 24.12
respectful 155.8
polite 504.14
sociable 582.22
courtesan 665.15
courtesy
sensitivity 24.3
act of kindness 143.7
respect 155.1
good behavior 321.2
politeness 504.1
courteousness 504.1
civility 504.6
sociability 582.1
courthouse
town hall 230.5
court 595.6
capitol 613.4
courtier
sycophant 138.3
follower 166.2
flatterer 511.4
courtliness
proud bearing 136.2
gallantry 504.2
courtesy 504.6
etiquette 580.3
courtly
dignified 136.12

gallant 504.15
flattering 511.8
court-martial
military court 595.4
trial 598.5
courtroom 595.6
courtship 562.7
courtyard 212.3
cousin 559.3
couturier
dressmaker 5.36
designer 716.9
cove man 76.5
nook 197.3
inlet 242.1
arch 279.4
cave 284.5
recess 284.7
coven 690.8
covenant
n compact 437.1
v come to an agreement 332.10
contract 437.5
cover
n serving 8.10
food service 8.11
dish 10.7
Air Force mission 184.11
ground covering 199.3
covering 295.2
lid 295.5
blanket 295.10
concealment 346.1
veil 346.2
hiding place 346.4
disguise 356.11
pretext 376.1
anonymity 528.1
bookbinding 554.14
protection 1008.1
shelter 1009.3
shade 1028.1
v color 35.14
copulate 75.21
be pregnant 78.12
extend 158.9
traverse 177.20
close 293.6
stop 293.7
cover up 295.19
compensate 338.4
explain 341.10
conceal 346.6
hide under 376.4
bet 759.25
include 772.3
put together 800.5
take one's turn 825.5
overspread 910.5
protect 1008.18
shade 1028.5
coverage size 257.1
scope 295.1
protection 295.2
news 552.1
inclusion 772.1
cover charge
food service 8.11
fee 630.6
cover for 862.5
cover girl 1016.8
covert
n plumage 3.18
lair 228.26
cover 295.2
thicket 310.15
hiding place 346.4
shelter 1009.3
adj covered 295.31
clandestine 345.12
concealed 346.11
latent 519.5
cover-up
veil of secrecy 345.3
pretext 376.1
covet crave 100.18
envy 154.3
covey company 770.3
assemblage 770.6
multitude 884.3
cow
n female animal 77.10
cattle 311.6
v intimidate 127.20
domineer 612.16
coward
n jellyfish 491.5
adj cowardly 491.10
cowardice frailty 16.2
fear 127.1
weak will 362.4
submission 433.1
spinelessness 491.2
cowardliness 491.1
cowardly weak 16.12
fearful 127.23
weak-willed 362.12
coward 491.10
cowboy rider 178.8
violent person 671.10
card 758.2
herder 1070.3
cower be weak 16.8
fawn 138.7
quail 491.9
crouch 913.8
cowl
n cover 295.2
v hood 295.19
cowlick 3.6
co-worker 616.5
coxcomb dandy 500.9
comedy 704.6
coxswain
n steersman 183.8
guide 574.7
v pilot 182.14
coy shy 139.12
amatory 562.23
coyote 311.20
cozen 356.18
cozy pleased 95.15
comfortable 121.11
homelike 228.33
conversational 541.13
intimate 582.24
snug 1007.7
crab
n malcontent 108.4
complainer 115.9
marine animal 311.30
vermin 311.37
windlass 906.7
lifter 912.3
v be discontented 108.6
complain 115.16
maneuver 184.40
hinder 1012.16
adj sour 67.5
crabbed sour 67.5
irascible 110.19
stricken in years 303.18
hard to understand 522.14
stiff 534.3
complex 799.4
crack
n stripe 47.5
report 56.1
snap 56.2
detonation 56.3
trauma 85.38
cocaine 87.7
cleft 224.2
furrow 290.1
opening 292.1
attempt 403.3
witticism 489.7
remark 524.3
break 802.4
instant 830.3
hit 902.4
fault 1003.2
blemish 1004.1
v clap 56.6
snap 56.7
blast 56.8
lose self-control 128.8
cleave 224.4
furrow 290.3
open 292.11
unclose 292.12
explain 341.10
injure 393.13
break 393.23
separate 802.12
hit 902.14
solve 940.2
blemish 1004.4
burn 1020.24
adj skillful 413.22
superior 999.14
crack down on
restrain 428.7
suppress 428.8
attack 459.15
cracked raucous 58.15
dissonant 61.4
cleft 224.7
gaping 292.18
impaired 393.27
severed 802.23
mentally deficient 922.22
crazy 926.27
blemished 1004.8
cracker
biscuit 10.30
noisemaker 53.6
wilderness settler 227.10
dryness 1066.2
crackerjack
n skillful person 413.14
good person 659.2
first-rate 999.7
adj skillful 413.22
excellent 999.13
crackle
n snap 56.2
trauma 85.38
v pop 56.7
crackpot oddity 870.4
lunatic 926.16
freak 927.4
crack the whip 573.1
crack up
n exhaustion 21.2
collapse 85.8
mental disorder 92.14
frayed nerves 128.4
crash 184.20
impairment 393.1
debacle 395.4
disruption 802.3
misfortune 1011.2
v burn out 21.5
laugh 116.8
lose self-control 128.8
crash 184.44
disintegrate 806.3
collide 902.13
go mad 926.21
cradle
n refinery 79.13
fatherland 232.2
infancy 301.5
origin 818.4
birthplace 886.8
v put to bed 22.19
foster 449.16
calm 670.7
support 901.21
craft ship 180.1
deceit 356.3
skill 413.1
art 413.7
cunning 415.1
stratagem 415.3
manual work 712.3
vocation 724.6
shrewdness 920.3
crafted 892.18
craftsman
expert 413.11
artist 716.1
skilled worker 726.6
producer 892.7
crafty
falsehearted 354.31
deceitful 356.22
cunning 415.12
cautious 494.8
sly 645.18
shrewd 920.15
crag
precipice 200.3
mountain 237.6
projection 285.4
rock 1059.1
craggy rugged 288.7
stony 1059.12
cram
n study 570.3
full measure 794.3
v stuff 8.25

tutor 568.11
study up 570.14
gluttonize 672.4
assemble 770.18
fill 794.7
thrust 902.12
refresh the memory 989.19
overload 993.15
satiate 994.4
densify 1045.9
cramp
n pang 26.2
seizure 85.6
pain 96.5
restriction 428.3
spasm 917.6
hindrance 1012.1
v weaken 16.10
confine 212.6
contract 260.7
squeeze 260.8
restrict 428.9
fasten 800.7
hamper 1012.11
hinder 1012.16
adj narrow 270.14
hard to understand 522.14
cramped limited 210.7
enclosed 212.10
little 258.10
contracted 260.12
constricted 270.14
restricted 428.15
stiff 534.3
narrow-minded 980.10
cramp one's style 1012.16
cramps 85.29
crane
n lifter 912.3
fire iron 1020.12
v gaze 27.15
be long 267.5
demur 325.4
cranium 198.7
crank
n amphetamines 87.4
malcontent 108.4
sorehead 110.11
complainer 115.9
angle 278.2
caprice 364.1
punishment 605.3
oddity 870.4
lever 906.4
fanatic 926.18
quirk 927.2
freak 927.4
v zigzag 204.12
angle 278.5
reel in 906.9
rotate 915.9
adj eccentric 927.5
cranky
discontented 108.8
irascible 110.19
complaining 115.20
capricious 364.5
disagreeing 789.6
counteractive 900.8
eccentric 927.5
cranny nook 197.3
crack 224.2
furrow 290.1
hiding place 346.4
crap
n defecation 12.2
feces 12.4
heroin 87.9
humbug 354.14
bull 520.3
v defecate 12.13
crape 115.7
craps dice 759.8
deuce 873.3
crapulent
intoxicated 88.31
intemperate 669.7
gluttonous 672.6
crash
n noise 53.3
report 56.1
substance abuse 87.1
crack-up 184.20
descent 194.1
decline 252.2
impairment 393.1
debacle 395.4
collapse 410.3
defeat 412.1
insolvency 625.3
declining market 737.5
impact 902.3
misfortune 1011.2
v sleep 22.14
go to bed 22.18
din 53.7
boom 56.6
use 87.22
crack up 184.44
penetrate 189.8
descend 194.5
intrude 214.5
inhabit 225.7
billow 238.22
break down 393.24
fall 410.12
go bankrupt 625.7
cheapen 633.6
collide 902.13
adv at top speed 756.5
crash diet fast 515.2
diet 7.13
crass downright 247.12
thick 269.8
coarse 497.11
ill-bred 505.6
stupid 922.15
crate
n car 179.10
storehouse 386.6
v package 212.9
wrap 295.20
crater valley 237.7
pit 275.2
cavity 284.2
blemish 1004.1
crave covet 100.18
request 440.9
entreat 440.11
craven
n dastard 491.6
adj cowardly 491.12
craving
n coveting 100.6
adj desiring 100.24
craw
digestive system 2.18
narrow place 270.3
crawl
n slow motion 175.2
creeping 177.17
aquatics 182.11
v feel creepy 74.7
fawn 138.7
go slow 175.6
creep 177.26
lie 201.5
get low 274.5
linger on 827.7
bow 913.9
crawl with
pervade 221.7
teem with 884.5
infest 910.6
abound 991.5
crayon
n drawing 712.13
art equipment 712.18
v portray 712.19
craze
n stripe 47.5
trauma 85.38
greed 100.8
eagerness 101.1
fury 105.8
crack 224.2
caprice 364.1
fad 578.5
mania 926.12
blemish 1004.1
v cleave 224.4
injure 393.13
break 802.12
madden 926.24
blemish 1004.4
crazy
n lunatic 926.16
adj variegated 47.9
distorted 265.10
mentally deficient 922.22
foolish 923.8
absurd 923.11
nutty 926.27
adv swiftly 174.18
crazy about
enthusiastic 101.11
nuts about 104.31
creak
n screech 58.4
insect sound 58.5
v stridulate 58.7
screech 58.8
cream
n whiteness 37.2
cleanser 79.17
superior 249.5
upper class 607.2
the best 999.8
ointment 1056.3
semiliquid 1062.5
v foam 320.5
defeat 412.9
emulsify 1062.10
adj whitish 37.8
yellow 43.4
cream of the crop 578.6
crease
n fold 291.1
wrinkle 291.3
hockey 749.1
v fold 291.5
wrinkle 291.6
engrave 713.9
create form 262.7
originate 337.4
initiate 818.10
cause 886.10
produce 892.8
imagine 986.14
creation
forming 262.5
structure 266.1
divine function 677.13
work of art 712.10
beginning 818.1
production 892.1
work 893.1
universe 1072.1
creative
nonimitative 337.5
falsehearted 354.31
wrong 638.3
dishonest 645.16
illegal 674.6
almighty 677.17
beginning 818.15
productive 890.9
originative 892.16
imaginative 986.18
creative writer 986.12
creativity
nonimitation 337.1
genius 920.8
invention 986.3
creator artist 716.1
doer 726.1
author 886.4
producer 892.7
creature
sycophant 138.3
inferior 250.2
organism 305.2
animal 311.2
person 312.5
assenter 332.6
instrument 384.4
dependent 432.6
figurehead 575.5
deputy 576.1
retainer 577.1
follower 616.8
something 763.3
product 893.1
credence altar 703.12
belief 953.1
credential
preparedness 405.4
recommendation 509.4
identification 517.11
certificate 549.6
credibility
honesty 644.3
believability 953.8
plausibility 968.3

credibility gap
untruthfulness 354.8
deceitfulness 645.3
unbelievability 955.3
credible logical 935.20
believable 953.24
plausible 968.7
credit
n thanks 150.2
difference 255.8
trust 622.1
receipts 627.1
entry 628.5
due 639.2
honor 646.1
esteem 662.3
attribution 888.1
influence 894.1
belief 953.1
credible 953.8
v thank 150.4
pay 622.5
keep accounts 628.8
believe 953.10
creditable
praiseworthy 509.20
honest 644.13
reputable 662.15
creditor 622.4
credit union
association 617.1
lending institution 620.4
credit 622.1
credo religion 675.1
doctrine 676.2
system of belief 953.3
credulous foolish 923.8
trusting 953.22
knee-jerk 954.8
creed affirmation 334.1
policy 381.4
religion 675.1
doctrine 676.2
system of belief 953.3
creedbound strict 687.8
narrow-minded 980.10
creek stream 238.1
inlet 242.1
creep
n slow motion 175.2
crawling 177.17
bad person 660.5
v feel creepy 74.7
fawn 138.7
go slow 175.6
crawl 177.26
lurk 346.9
linger on 827.7
creep in enter 189.7
intrude 214.5
join 617.14
creeps
creeping of the flesh 74.4
trepidation 127.5
nervousness 128.2
cold 1023.2
creep with
pervade 221.7
teem with 884.5
infest 910.6
abound 991.5
creepy crawly 74.11
spooky 127.31
bad 1000.8
cremation
incineration 309.2
burning 1020.5
crematorium
mortuary 309.9
incinerator 1020.13
crenellated
notched 289.5
fortified 460.12
creole 523.11
crépe 10.45
crepitant 56.10
crepuscular 315.8
crepuscule
foredawn 314.4
dusk 315.3
crescendo
n loudness 53.1
increase 251.1
expansion 259.1
music 708.25
v din 53.7
grow 251.6
enlarge 259.4
increase 259.5
adj music 708.53
crescent
n circle 230.9
curve 279.5
semicircle 280.8
heraldry 647.2
moon 1072.11
adj grown 14.3
increasing 251.8
expanding 259.12
curving 279.11
crest
n feather 3.16
summit 198.2
top part 198.4
mountain 237.6
notching 289.2
heraldry 647.2
wave 916.4
v top 198.9
crestfallen glum 112.25
disappointed 132.5
humiliated 137.14
cretin 924.8
cretinism 922.9
crevasse
n valley 237.7
pit 275.2
v open 292.11
crevice 224.2
crew aircrew 185.4
staff 577.11
clique 617.6
team 617.7
motion-picture studio 706.4
baseball team 745.2
company 770.3
crewcut 1016.15
crib
n compartment 197.2
quarters 228.4
hut 228.9
translation 341.3
storehouse 386.6
garner 386.7
brothel 665.9
casino 759.19
v enclose 212.6
imitate 336.5
cheat 356.18
confine 429.12
rob 482.16
plagiarize 482.19
crick
n pang 26.2
insect sound 58.5
stream 238.1
v stridulate 58.7
cricket
noisemaker 53.6
locust 311.36
propriety 637.2
fairness 649.3
crier 353.3
crime
wrongdoing 655.1
misdeed 655.2
offense 674.4
criminal
n evildoer 593.1
perpetrator 645.10
felon 660.9
adj wrong 638.3
dishonest 645.16
wicked 654.16
evil 655.5
guilty 656.3
illegal 674.6
bad 1000.7
criminalize prohibit 444.3
ostracize 586.6
criminal law 673.5
criminology 673.7
crimp
n lock 3.5
trench 290.2
fold 291.1
wrinkle 291.3
cheat 357.3
abductor 483.10
v curl 281.5
notch 289.4
furrow 290.3
fold 291.5
wrinkle 291.6
abduct 482.20
hinder 1012.16
adj pulverable 1051.13
crimson
v color 41.4
redden 41.5
change color 105.19
blush 139.8
adj red 41.6
cringe
n retreat 903.3
v be weak 16.8
flinch 127.13
fawn 138.7
retract 168.3
cower 491.9
pull back 903.7
crouch 913.8
crinkle
n convolution 281.1
wrinkle 291.3
v rustle 52.12
convolve 281.4
ruffle 288.5
wrinkle 291.6
cripple
n defective 85.45
v weaken 16.10
disable 19.9
lame 393.14
hamper 1012.11
crisis
financial trouble 729.8
business cycle 731.10
critical point 843.4
urgency 997.4
salient point 997.6
danger 1006.1
crisp
v curl 281.5
fold 291.5
adj refreshing 9.3
curly 281.9
clear 521.11
concise 537.6
aphoristic 974.6
cool 1023.12
cold 1023.14
brittle 1050.4
pulverable 1051.13
crisscross
v cross 170.6
adj cross 170.8
adv crosswise 170.13
criterion
measure 300.2
model 786.1
rule 869.4
test 942.2
critic
opinion maker 341.7
connoisseur 496.7
faultfinder 510.9
columnist 547.15
commentator 556.4
judge 596.1
author 718.4
interpreter 723.4
specialist 866.3
criticizer 946.7
critical
meticulous 339.12
explanatory 341.15
fastidious 495.9
faultfinding 510.23
dissertational 556.6
evaluative 723.6
crucial 843.10
discriminating 944.7
judicial 946.16
urgent 997.22
dangerous 1006.9
precarious 1006.12
difficult 1013.17
criticism
exegetics 341.8
adverse reaction 510.4
commentary 556.2
review of the arts 723.1

censure 946.2
criticize pan 510.14
write upon 556.5
critique 723.5
judge 946.14
critter animal 311.2
cattle 311.6
horse 311.10
croak
n rasp 58.3
speech defect 525.1
v sound harshly 58.9
bird sound 60.5
complain 115.15
forebode 133.11
die 307.20
kill 308.14
speak poorly 525.7
crock
n horse 311.12
ceramic ware 742.2
v intoxicate 88.23
crocodile 311.25
Croesus 618.8
croft 231.4
Cronus 821.2
crony
companion 588.3
associate 616.1
cronyism 609.35
crook
n deviation 164.1
bias 204.3
shaft 273.2
angle 278.2
curve 279.2
cheater 357.4
scepter 417.9
thief 483.1
evildoer 593.1
ecclesiastical insignia 647.4
criminal 660.9
staff 702.3
supporter 901.2
fire iron 1020.12
v deflect 164.5
oblique 204.9
distort 265.5
angle 278.5
curve 279.6
crooked askew 204.14
zigzag 204.20
distorted 265.10
fake 265.11
angular 278.6
hooked 279.8
falsehearted 354.31
dishonest 645.16
crooner 710.13
crop
n digestive system 2.18
head of hair 3.4
breast 283.6
growth 310.2
yield 472.5
whip 605.1
bunch 770.7
effect 887.1
production 893.2
harvest 1069.15
v feed on 8.28
excise 255.10
shorten 268.6
farm 1069.16
harvest 1069.19
crop out
be exposed 31.5
appear 33.8
crop up
originate 818.13
turn up 831.6
crosier shaft 273.2
scepter 417.9
ecclesiastical insignia 647.4
staff 702.3
cross
n affliction 96.8
crux 170.4
staff 273.2
signature 527.10
monument 549.12
execution 605.5
insignia 647.1
heraldry 647.2
rood 702.3
hybrid 797.8
adversity 1011.1
impediment 1012.6
v disappoint 132.2
converge 169.2
crisscross 170.6
traverse 177.20
navigate 182.13
deny 335.4
oppose 451.3
contradict 451.6
bless 696.14
hybridize 797.13
counteract 900.6
pass 910.8
thwart 1012.15
adj irascible 110.19
angry 152.28
crossing 170.8
transverse 170.9
cruciform 170.10
oppositional 451.8
disagreeing 789.6
hybrid 797.15
adv crosswise 170.13
in opposition 451.9
crossbow 462.7
crossbreed
n hybrid 797.8
v procreate 78.8
hybridize 797.13
cross-check
n examination 938.3
collation 943.2
ensuring 970.8
v collate 943.5
verify 970.12
cross-country racing 755.2
crosscurrent flow 238.4
wind 318.1
opposition 451.1
counterforce 900.4
crossed
disappointed 132.5
cross 170.8
cruciform 170.10
hybrid 797.15
cross-examination
trial 598.5
argumentation 935.4
grilling 938.13
cross-eyed 28.12
cross-fertilization 78.3
cross-fertilize
reproduce 78.10
fertilize 890.8
cross fire 863.1
crossgrained
adj irascible 110.19
rough 288.6
coarse 294.6
negative 335.5
perverse 361.11
adv crosswise 170.13
against the grain 288.12
cross-hatching
network 170.3
line 517.6
engraving 713.2
crossing-over 858.3
cross-interrogation 938.13
cross one's fingers
be hopeful 124.8
await 130.8
doubt 955.6
cross one's heart
depose 334.6
promise 436.4
cross one's mind 931.18
cross out delete 255.12
obliterate 395.16
crosspatch
sorehead 110.11
misfit 789.4
crosspiece 170.5
cross purposes
hostility 451.2
disagreement 456.2
contrariety 779.1
crossroads
convergence 169.1
village 230.2
crisis 843.4
cross section
crossing 170.1
representative 349.7
part 793.1
crosswind airflow 318.1
counterforce 900.4
crosswise
adj transverse 170.9
oblique 204.19
hindering 1012.17
unwieldy 1013.19
adv decussatively 170.13
transversely 204.24
crotch genitals 2.13
fork 171.4
crotchet angle 278.2
caprice 364.1
note 709.14
quirk 927.2
crotchety
capricious 364.5
counteractive 900.8
eccentric 927.5
crouch
n stoop 913.3
v fawn 138.7
lie low 274.5
bow down 433.10
cower 491.9
duck 913.8
crow
n blackness 38.4
laughter 116.4
speech defect 525.1
lever 906.4
v bird sound 60.5
laugh 116.8
put up a bold front 454.5
exult 502.9
speak 524.25
crow's-feet 291.3
crowbar
n extractor 192.9
lever 906.4
v get a purchase 906.8
crowd
n audience 48.6
social circle 582.5
the masses 606.2
clique 617.6
company 770.3
throng 770.4
attender 918.2
v make one's way 162.4
hurry 401.4
make haste 401.5
come together 770.16
fill 794.7
teem with 884.5
thrust 902.12
overload 993.15
obstruct 1012.12
densify 1045.9
crowd in enter 189.7
thrust in 191.7
intrude 214.5
crown
n summit 198.2
top part 198.4
architectural topping 198.5
head 198.6
supremacy 249.3
circle 280.2
finishing touch 407.3
victory 411.1
jewel 498.6
volume 554.4
trophy 646.3
heraldry 647.2
royal insignia 647.3
specie 728.4
money 728.8
tennis 748.1
limit 794.5
chandelier 1026.6
v top 198.9
cover 295.21
complete 407.6
take command 417.14
install 615.12
honor 646.8
glorify 662.13
perfect 1002.5
the Crown
sovereignty 417.8
the government 612.3

crowning
  topping 198.11
  chief 249.14
  completing 407.9
  ending 820.10
crowning achievement 1002.4
crown of thorns 96.8
crucial critical 843.10
  original 886.14
  urgent 997.22
  vital 997.23
crucible mixer 797.9
  instrument of conversion 858.10
  test 942.2
crucifix 170.4
crucifixion
  agony 26.6
  torment 96.7
  capital punishment 604.7
crucify pain 26.7
  torture 96.18
  execute 604.17
  stigmatize 661.9
  work evil 1000.6
crude
  n raw material 406.5
  petroleum 1056.4
  adj garish 35.20
  offensive 98.18
  raw 406.10
  undeveloped 406.12
  coarse 497.11
  gaudy 501.20
  ill-bred 505.6
  inelegant 534.2
  base 661.12
crudity
  undevelopment 406.4
  coarseness 497.2
  baseness 661.3
cruel painful 26.10
  cruel-hearted 144.26
  pitiless 146.3
  murderous 308.24
  savage 671.21
cruelty
  cruelness 144.11
  unkindness 144.12
  pitilessness 146.1
cruise
  n journey 177.5
  voyage 182.6
  v journey 177.21
  navigate 182.13
  fly 184.36
  make good 409.10
cruiser traveler 178.1
  police car 179.11
  motorboat 180.4
  battleship 180.7
cruller 10.44
crumb
  n scrap 248.3
  minute 258.7
  piece 793.3
  powder 1051.5
  v sprinkle 771.6
  pulverize 1051.9
crumble
  n powder 1051.5
  v weaken 16.9
  decrease 252.6
  decay 393.22
  be destroyed 395.22
  disintegrate 806.3
  pulverize 1051.9
  powder 1051.10
crumbly frail 16.14
  brittle 1050.4
  pulverable 1051.13
crummy base 661.12
  paltry 998.21
  bad 1000.8
crumple
  n wrinkle 291.3
  v distort 265.5
  ruffle 288.5
  wrinkle 291.6
crunch
  n rasp 58.3
  poverty 619.1
  concussion 671.8
  crisis 843.4
  crucial moment 843.5
  impact 902.3
  urgency 997.4
  predicament 1013.5
  v grate 58.10
  shatter 802.13
  collide 902.13
  pulverize 1051.9
crunched 265.10
crusade
  n campaign 458.4
  cause 886.9
  v espouse 509.13
crush
  n liking 100.2
  infatuation 104.4
  squeezing 260.2
  throng 770.4
  full measure 794.3
  pulp 1063.2
  v sadden 112.18
  aggrieve 112.19
  unnerve 128.10
  abase 137.5
  squeeze 260.8
  conquer 412.10
  suppress 428.8
  subdue 432.9
  shatter 802.13
  refute 958.5
  pulverize 1051.9
  pulp 1063.5
crushing
  n wretchedness 96.6
  suppression 428.2
  subdual 432.4
  pulverization 1051.4
  adj mortifying 98.21
  oppressive 98.24
  humiliating 137.15
  laborious 725.18
  troublesome 1013.18
crust
  n bread 10.28
  impudence 142.3
  exterior 206.2
  land 234.1
  incrustation 295.14
  upper class 607.2
  v incrust 295.27
crustacean
  n marine animal 311.30
  invertebrate 311.32
  adj invertebrate 311.51
crusty
  irascible 110.20
  impudent 142.10
  gruff 505.7
  hardened 1046.13
crutch
  n genitals 2.13
  fork 171.4
  staff 273.2
  aid 901.2
  v support 449.12
  help 901.21
crux cross 170.4
  enigma 522.8
  salient point 997.6
  dilemma 1013.7
  hitch 1013.8
cry
  n yell 59.1
  call 59.1
  animal noise 60.1
  weeping 115.2
  lament 115.3
  cheer 116.2
  publicity 352.4
  entreaty 440.2
  catchword 526.9
  report 552.6
  v call 59.6
  yelp 60.2
  weep 115.12
  wail 115.13
  cheer 116.6
  proclaim 352.13
crybaby 16.6
cry for wish for 100.16
  demand 421.5
  entreat 440.11
  require 963.9
cry havoc warn 399.5
  alarm 400.3
crying
  n weeping 115.2
  adj vociferous 59.10
  howling 60.6
  tearful 115.21
  demanding 421.9
  urgent 997.22
cryogenics cold 1023.1
  refrigeration 1024.1
crypt compartment 197.2
  understructure 266.3
  cavity 284.2
  tomb 309.16
  church 703.9
cryptic secret 345.11
  latent 519.5
  implied 519.7
  enigmatic 522.17
cryptography
  exegetics 341.8
  cryptoanalysis 345.6
  writing 547.1
crystal
  n amphetamines 87.4
  snow 1023.8
  adj transparent 1029.4
  stony 1059.12
crystal ball
  the future 839.1
  divination 962.2
crystallize form 807.5
  solidify 1046.8
  petrify 1059.10
crystallography
  mineralogy 1058.10
  geology 1059.9
cry uncle weaken 16.9
  flinch 127.13
cry wolf 400.3
cub
  n boy 302.5
  fledgling 302.10
  adj unaccustomed 374.4
  immature 406.11
cubbyhole nook 197.3
  small space 258.3
  hiding place 346.4
cube triplicate 877.2
  square 879.3
cubes 759.8
cubic spatial 158.10
  quadrangular 278.9
cubicle nook 197.3
  bedroom 197.7
cuckold 665.22
cuckoldry
  love affair 104.6
  illicit sex 665.7
cuckoo
  n imitator 336.4
  songbird 710.23
  v bird sound 60.5
  adj crazy 926.27
cud bite 8.2
  chewing tobacco 89.7
cuddle comfort 121.10
  snuggle 562.17
cuddly 104.25
cudgel whip 604.13
  club 902.20
cue braid 3.7
  tail 217.6
  clue 517.9
  tip 551.3
  hint 551.4
  role 704.10
  playbook 704.21
  mood 978.4
  reminder 989.6
cuff
  n slap 604.3
  punishment 902.8
  v slap 604.12
  hit 902.19
cuffs 428.4
cuisine food 10.1
  cooking 11.1
  kitchen 11.4
cul-de-sac
  obstruction 293.3
  impasse 1013.6
culinary 11.6
cull excise 255.10
  select 371.14
  collect 472.11

culling
elimination 773.2
grouping 808.3
culmination
summit 198.2
completion 407.2
accomplishment 794.4
end 820.1
acme of perfection 1002.3
culpable
blameworthy 510.25
guilty 656.3
culprit 660.8
cult ism 675.2
worship 696.1
ritualism 701.1
system of belief 953.3
cultist
n religionist 675.15
adj pious 692.8
cultivate
sensitize 24.7
develop 392.10
foster 449.16
train 568.13
nurture 587.12
process 892.9
culture 1069.17
cultivated
improved 392.13
elegant 496.9
well-bred 504.17
learned 928.21
cultural 568.18
culture
n humankind 312.1
society 373.2
cultivation 392.3
taste 496.1
good breeding 504.4
scholarship 928.5
agriculture 1069.1
cultivation 1069.13
v growth 1069.17
raise 1070.6
cultured
improved 392.13
elegant 496.9
well-bred 504.17
learned 928.21
culvert 239.2
cumbersome
bulky 257.19
onerous 297.17
bungling 414.20
hampering 1012.18
unwieldy 1013.19
cumbrous
bulky 257.19
onerous 297.17
stiff 534.3
hampering 1012.18
cum laude 646.11
cumulate
v store up 386.11
assemble 770.18
adj assembled 770.21
cumulative
additive 253.8
accumulative 770.23
evidential 957.16
cuneiform
n phonetic symbol 546.2
adj triangular 278.8
cunning
n falseheartedness 354.4
deceit 356.3
skill 413.1
craftiness 415.1
artfulness 415.1
shrewdness 920.3
adj falsehearted 354.31
deceitful 356.22
skillful 413.22
well-laid 413.30
crafty 415.12
shrewd 920.15
cup
n container 195.1
cupful 196.4
cavity 284.2
victory 411.1
monument 549.12
trophy 646.3
hockey 749.1
golf 751.1
soccer 752.1
skiing 753.1
track 755.1
fate 964.2
v bleed 91.27
ladle 176.17
be concave 284.12
hollow 284.13
cupboard
container 195.1
storehouse 386.6
Cupid symbol 104.9
Love 104.8
cupidity 100.8
cupola tower 272.6
arch 279.4
roof 295.6
cupping
bloodletting 91.20
drawing 192.3
cur mongrel 311.19
beast 660.6
curable 396.25
curate 699.2
curative
remedial 86.39
tonic 396.22
curator steward 574.4
treasurer 729.12
guardian 1008.6
curb
n kerb 211.6
pavement 383.6
restraint 428.1
stock exchange 737.7
check 1012.7
v slow 175.9
restrain 428.7
hinder 1012.10
curd
n clot 1045.7
semiliquid 1062.5
v thicken 1045.10
curdle thicken 1045.10
emulsify 1062.10
cure
n remedy 86.1
treatment 91.14
curing 396.7
commission 615.1
benefice 698.9
protectorship 1008.2
v remedy 86.38
treat 91.24
disaccustom 374.2
restore 396.15
preserve 397.9
prepare 405.6
solidify 1046.8
dry 1066.6
curé 699.5
cure-all 86.3
curfew 315.5
curio oddity 870.5
trifle 998.5
curiosity desire 100.1
marvel 122.2
oddity 870.5
inquisitiveness 981
alertness 981.1
attention 983.1
interest 983.2
curious careful 339.10
odd 870.11
inquiring 938.36
inquisitive 981.5
attentive 983.15
interested 983.16
curl
n lock 3.5
exercise 84.2
curve 279.2
coil 281.2
v curve 279.6
coil 281.5
curler
curling iron 281.3
wave 916.4
curlicue 281.2
curl up rest 20.6
snuggle 121.10
curly 281.9
curmudgeon
sorehead 110.11
niggard 484.4
currency
publicity 352.4
fashionableness 578.2
money 728.1
prevalence 864.2
usualness 869.2
current
n direction 161.1
course 172.2
flow 238.4
wind 318.1
trend 896.2
thoughts 931.4
electricity 1032.2
v follow the rule 867.4
adj published 352.17
customary 373.13
reported 552.15
fashionable 578.11
existent 761.13
happening 831.9
present 838.2
prevalent 864.12
usual 869.9
well-known 928.27
current affairs 552.1
curriculum 568.8
curried cooked 11.7
zestful 68.7
curry
n stew 10.11
v cook 11.5
comb 79.21
tend 1070.7
curry favor 138.9
curse
n affliction 96.8
malediction 513
hex 513.1
oath 513.4
spell 691.1
bad influence 1000.4
bane 1001.1
adversity 1011.1
v accurse 513.5
swear 513.6
blaspheme 694.5
work evil 1000.6
cursed
accursed 513.9
execrable 1000.10
cursive 547.22
cursory
insignificant 248.6
shallow 276.5
unwilling 325.5
careless 340.11
hasty 401.9
curt short 268.8
taciturn 344.9
gruff 505.7
concise 537.6
curtail reduce 252.7
subtract 255.9
contract 260.7
shorten 268.6
restrain 428.7
take from 480.21
curtain
n cover 295.2
partition 345.3
veil 346.2
act 704.7
stage 704.16
scenery 704.20
end 820.1
obstacle 1012.4
shade 1028.1
v cover 295.19
conceal 346.6
shade 1028.5
curtain call 704.7
curtain raiser act 704.7
overture 708.26
countdown 816.2
inauguration 818.5
curtains death 307.1
end 820.1
curtsy
n obeisance 155.2
greeting 585.4
crouch 913.3

v bow 155.6
show respect 433.10
greet 585.10
be polite 913.9
curvaceous
curved 279.7
comely 1016.19
curvature curving 279.1
turn 279.1
curve
n deviation 164.1
angle 278.2
sinus 279.2
trick 356.6
race 756.3
v deviate 164.3
deflect 164.5
angle 278.5
turn 279.6
adj curved 279.7
curvy crooked 204.20
wavy 279.7
comely 1016.19
cushion
n silencer 51.4
partition 213.5
moderator 670.3
bedding 901.20
safeguard 1008.3
softness 1047.4
v muffle 51.9
relieve 120.5
absorb the shock 670.8
support 901.21
protect 1008.18
soften 1047.6
cushioned 121.11
cushy
comfortable 121.11
easy 1014.13
cusp point 285.3
crisis 843.4
salience 997.6
cuss
n oath 513.4
v curse 513.6
cussedness
ill humor 110.3
malice 144.5
perversity 361.3
custodian cleaner 79.14
hospital staff 90.11
jailer 429.10
steward 574.4
guardian 1008.6
custodianship
vigilance 339.4
usage 387.2
preservation 397.1
custody 429.5
thrift 635.1
protectorship 1008.2
custody vigilance 339.4
storage 386.5
preservation 397.1
custodianship 429.5
directorship 573.4
protectorship 1008.2
custom
n behavior 321.1
convention 373.1
rite 373.1
habit 373.3
fashion 578.1
social more 579.1
patronage 731.6
market 733.3
tradition 842.2
adj made 892.18
customary
wonted 373.13
conventional 579.5
orthodox 687.7
traditional 842.12
usual 869.9
customer man 76.5
client 733.4
custom-made
tailored 5.48
made 892.18
customs 630.10
cut
n trauma 85.38
pain 96.5
indignity 156.2
snub 157.2
absence 222.4
crack 224.2
degree 245.1
gains 251.3
curtailment 252.4
reduction 255.2
form 262.1
shortcut 268.5
notch 289.1
furrow 290.1
trench 290.2
lamina 296.2
attempt 403.3
thrust 459.3
portion 477.5
gibe 508.2
mark 517.5
dividend 624.7
discount 631.1
cheapening 633.4
print 713.5
part 793.1
piece 793.3
break 802.4
characteristic 865.4
hit 902.4
slap 902.8
repulse 908.2
v dilute 16.11
pain 26.7
bite 68.5
hurt 96.17
offend 152.21
snub 157.5
slant across 204.11
leave 222.10
cleave 224.4
reduce 252.7
excise 255.10
delete 255.12
form 262.7
shorten 268.6
come to a point 285.6
notch 289.4
furrow 290.3
open 292.11
rarefy 299.3
leave undone 340.7
injure 393.13
discard 442.5
apportion 477.6
record 549.15
abridge 557.5
whip 604.13
discount 631.2
cheapen 633.6
engrave 713.9
sculpture 715.5
shuffle 758.5
separate 793.6
adulterate 797.12
sever 802.11
turn off 857.12
strike 902.15
repulse 908.3
banish 909.17
freeze 1023.10
liquefy 1064.5
cultivate 1069.17
harvest 1069.19
adj diluted 16.19
pained 96.23
cleft 224.7
formative 262.9
furrowed 290.4
rare 299.4
impaired 393.27
concise 537.6
reduced 633.9
engraved 713.11
severed 802.23
cut across
v cross 170.6
slice 204.11
take a short cut 268.7
adj cross 170.8
cut-and-dried
trite 117.9
ready-made 405.19
prearranged 965.7
cutaneous
n injection 91.17
adj cuticular 2.27
covering 295.32
cutback
n curtailment 252.4
economizing 635.2
adj reduced 252.10
cut back reduce 252.7
shorten 268.6
retrench 635.5
cut corners
take a short cut 268.7
slight 340.8
retrench 635.5
cut down reduce 252.7
shorten 268.6
kill 308.13
strike dead 308.18
raze 395.19
retrench 635.5
fell 913.5
cute deceitful 356.22
skillful 413.22
cunning 415.12
tricky 645.18
beautiful 1016.18
cuticle 295.3
cutie gal 302.7
beauty 1016.9
cut in intrude 214.5
interrupt 214.6
include 772.3
cut it be able 18.11
do 328.6
cut it out
v cease 857.6
interj stop! 857.13
cutlery tableware 8.12
edge tool 1040.2
cutlet 10.19
cut loose release 120.6
ship activity 182.48
escape 369.6
let oneself go 430.19
loose 431.6
extricate 431.7
run amok 671.15
make merry 743.24
separate 802.8
sever 802.11
riot 810.10
cutoff boundary 211.3
shortcut 268.5
end 395.2
stop 857.2
cut off
v excise 255.10
kill 308.13
put an end to 395.12
take from 480.21
dispossess 480.23
exclude 773.4
separate 802.8
sever 802.11
interrupt 857.10
adj bereft 473.8
cut out
v depart 188.7
extract 192.10
leave 222.10
excise 255.10
reject 372.2
plan 381.8
cease to use 390.4
exterminate 395.14
exclude 773.4
eliminate 773.5
separate 802.8
substitute for 862.5
adj talented 413.29
prearranged 965.7
cut-rate 633.9
cut short
v shorten 268.6
destroy 395.12
put a stop to 857.11
adj shortened 268.9
mutilated 795.5
cutter teeth 2.8
garmentmaker 5.34
shortener 268.4
separator 802.7
cutlery 1040.2
cut the mustard
be able 18.11
do 328.6
manage 409.12

suit 788.8
stand the test 942.10
suffice 991.4
cutthroat
n killer 308.11
ruffian 593.3
adj murderous 308.24
competitive 457.23
overpriced 632.12
cutting
n reduction 255.2
plant 310.3
apportionment 477.1
morphology 526.3
syntax 530.2
abbreviation 537.4
motion-picture editing 706.6
piece 793.3
adulteration 797.3
severance 802.2
harvest 1069.15
adj acrimonious 17.14
pungent 68.6
penetrating 105.31
caustic 144.23
sharp 285.8
vigorous 544.11
violent 671.16
cold 1023.14
solvent 1064.8
cutting edge
leading 165.1
border 211.4
vanguard 216.2
sharp 285.2
beginning 818.1
cutting remark 508.2
cutup
mischief-maker 322.3
humorist 489.12
player 743.18
cut up
v pain 96.17
aggrieve 112.19
misbehave 322.4
apportion 477.6
find fault 510.15
play 743.23
separate 793.6
divide 802.18
create disorder 810.11
adj wretched 96.26
sorrowful 112.26
overcome 112.29
cyanosis blueness 45.1
symptom 85.9
cybernetic
n autonetic 1041.2
adj servomechanical 1041.24
cyberspace 1042.19
cycle
n wheel 179.8
circle 280.2
series 812.2
age 824.4
round 850.3
circuit 914.2
atomic cluster 1038.7
v ride 177.33
recur 850.5
circle 914.5
cycles 1034.12
cyclical circular 280.11
continuous 812.8
recurrent 849.13
periodic 850.7
cyclist 178.11
cyclone outburst 105.9
weather map 317.4
whirlwind 318.14
storm 671.4
cyclonic
climatal 317.13
stormy 318.23
rotary 915.15
cyclopedia reference book 554.9
lore 928.9
Cyclops 15.6
cygnet 311.28
cylinder 282.4
cylindrical
tubular 239.16
columnar 282.11
cynic pessimist 125.7
disparager 512.6
misanthrope 590.2
doubter 955.4
cynical
pessimistic 125.16
satiric 508.13
critical 510.23
misanthropic 590.3
cynosure focus 208.4
guiding star 574.8
celebrity 662.9
ideal 786.4
attractor 907.2
cyst growth 85.39
swelling 283.4
cytoplasm 305.4
czar ruler 575.9
tyrant 575.14
dab
n fish 10.24
modicum 248.2
tap 902.7
stain 1004.3
v color 35.14
smooth 287.5
coat 295.24
tap 902.18
dabble spatter 80.18
waste time 331.13
not know 930.11
trifle 998.14
moisten 1065.12
dabbler
dilettante 929.6
ignoramus 930.8
trifler 998.10
da capo 849.17
dactylic 720.16
dad father 560.10
patriarch 842.8
dado
n base 199.2
furrow 290.1
support 901.8
v furrow 290.3
daedal variegated 47.9
skillful 413.22
complex 799.4
daemon spirit 678.5
familiar 678.12
genius 920.8
agricultural deity 1069.4
daft foolish 923.8
insane 926.26
dagger
n cross 170.4
sword 462.5
cutlery 1040.2
v stab 459.25
daguerreotype
n tintype 714.4
v photograph 714.14
daily
n cleaner 79.14
periodical 555.1
newspaper 555.2
adj recurrent 849.13
momentary 850.8
dainty
n delicacy 10.8
adj edible 8.33
frail 16.14
tasty 63.8
clean 79.25
delicate 248.7
smooth 294.8
light 298.12
nice 495.11
elegant 496.9
fine 1016.20
dairy larder 386.8
plant 739.3
dairyman 1070.2
dais authority 417.10
platform 901.13
daisy 999.7
dale valley 237.7
concavity 284.9
dalliance
love affair 104.6
dawdling 175.3
lovemaking 562.1
flirtation 562.9
waiting 846.3
trifling 998.8
dally dawdle 175.8
dillydally 331.14
make love 562.14
wait 846.12
trifle 998.14
dam
n lake 241.1
mother 560.11
jockey 757.2
barrier 1012.5
v close 293.7
put a stop to 857.11
damage
n impairment 393.1
loss 473.1
price 630.1
disadvantage 996.2
evil 1000.3
v impair 393.9
work evil 1000.6
damages fine 603.3
recompense 624.3
dame female 77.5
damsel 77.6
woman 77.9
gal 302.7
old woman 304.3
teacher 571.2
mistress 575.2
noblewoman 608.6
damn
n trifle 998.5
v destroy 395.10
censure 510.13
curse 513.5
vilify 513.7
condemn 602.3
doom 682.6
adj cursed 513.9
interj damn it! 513.11
damnable cursed 513.9
wicked 654.16
execrable 1000.10
damnation
destruction 395.1
censure 510.3
curse 513.1
condemnation 602.1
damndest 403.16
damned
n evil spirits 680.1
adj cursed 513.9
demoniac 680.17
unregenerate 695.18
execrable 1000.10
damning 957.16
damp
n silencer 51.4
killjoy 112.14
deterrent 379.2
moisture 1065.1
vapor 1067.1
v weaken 16.10
muffle 51.9
sadden 112.18
reduce 252.7
disincline 379.4
moderate 670.6
cushion 670.8
make uniform 781.4
hinder 1012.10
fight fire 1022.7
moisten 1065.12
adj moist 1065.15
damp down 428.8
damper silencer 51.4
killjoy 112.14
deterrent 379.2
curb 1012.7
fire iron 1020.12
damsel 302.6
dance
n dancing 705.1
ball 705.1
hop 705.2
assembly 770.2
flutter 917.4
flicker 1025.8
v exude cheerfulness 109.6
rejoice 116.5
trip the light fantastic 705.5
play 743.23
flutter 917.12
flicker 1025.25

adj dancing 705.6
dance hall
hall 197.4
ballroom 705.4
entertainment 743.13
dancer performer 705.3
entertainer 707.1
dander 152.6
dandified
foppish 500.17
ultrafashionable 578.14
dandruff filth 80.7
flake 296.3
dandy
n fop 500.9
person of fashion 578.7
first-rate 999.7
adj foppish 500.17
excellent 999.13
danger
unreliability 971.6
peril 1006.1
hazard 1006.1
dangerous
unreliable 971.20
perilous 1006.9
danger sign 399.3
dangle
n hang 202.2
v attach oneself to 138.11
hang 202.6
manifest 348.5
flaunt 501.17
oscillate 916.10
dangling
n pendency 202.1
adj pendent 202.9
loose 804.5
swinging 916.17
dank 1065.15
dankness 1065.2
dapper 578.13
dapple
n spottiness 47.3
mark 517.5
v variegate 47.7
mark 517.19
adj mottled 47.12
dare
n challenge 454.2
v have the audacity 142.7
confront 216.8
defy 454.3
venture 492.10
presume 640.6
take chances 1006.7
daredevil
n devil 493.4
adj foolhardy 493.9
daresay
suppose 951.10
believe 953.11
think likely 968.5
dare to 403.8
daring
n defiance 454.1
derring-do 492.5
foolhardiness 493.3
display 501.4
adj defiant 454.7
audacious 492.22
foolhardy 493.9
showy 501.19
dark
n obscurity 522.3
unenlightenment 930.4
night 1027.1
adj blind 30.9
inconspicuous 32.6
black 38.8
dark-colored 38.9
sullen 110.24
gloomy 112.24
ominous 133.17
cloudy 319.8
secret 345.11
clandestine 345.15
obscure 522.15
dishonest 645.16
wicked 654.16
benighted 930.16
pitch 1027.13
opaque 1031.3
dark age 930.4
Dark Ages 824.5
darken blind 30.7
blacken 38.7
change color 105.19
sadden 112.18
cloud 319.7
stain 1004.6
bedarken 1027.9
grow dark 1027.12
opaque 1031.2
dark horse
candidate 610.9
the unknown 930.7
small chance 972.9
darkness
blindness 30.1
inconspicuousness 32.2
blackness 38.1
duskiness 38.2
gloom 112.7
night 315.4
obscurity 522.3
unenlightenment 930.4
lightlessness 1027.1
opaqueness 1031.1
dark-skinned 38.10
darling
n sweetheart 104.10
favorite 104.16
child 302.3
endearment term 562.6
adj beloved 104.24
darn
v repair 396.14
curse 513.5
interj damn! 513.12
a darn 998.5
dart
n swiftness 174.6
arrow 462.6
sting 1001.5
v speed 174.8
throw 904.10
Darwinism 861.4
dash
n vim 17.2
disappointment 132.1
run 174.3
hint 248.4
haste 401.1
showiness 501.3
display 501.4
line 517.6
spirit 544.4
admixture 797.7
hit 902.4
v sadden 112.18
unnerve 128.10
disappoint 132.2
speed 174.8
billow 238.22
make haste 401.5
defeat 412.11
mark 517.19
throw 904.10
thwart 1012.15
moisten 1065.12
adv suddenly 830.9
interj damn! 513.12
dashing
fast 174.15
showy 501.19
chic 578.13
dash off
hasten off 188.10
do carelessly 340.9
improvise 365.8
make haste 401.5
write 547.21
portray 712.19
transcribe 718.6
dash one's hope
shatter 125.11
disappoint 132.2
dastardly 491.12
data records 551.1
the facts 761.4
collection 770.11
knowledge 928.1
premise 935.7
evidence 957.1
information 1042.15
database 871.1
data processing 1042.1
data transmission 347.2
date
n lover 104.12
appointment 582.8
engagement 704.11
assembly 770.2
age 824.4
point of time 832.4
v come together 770.16
be dated 832.13
age 842.9
datebook 549.11
dated chronologic 832.15
anachronous 833.3
past 837.7
old-fashioned 842.16
dateless timeless 822.3
perpetual 829.7
old 842.10
datum particular 766.3
knowledge 928.1
evidence 957.1
daub
n bad likeness 350.2
picture 712.11
stain 1004.3
v color 35.14
soil 80.16
coat 295.24
misdraw 350.4
portray 712.19
stain 1004.6
oil 1056.8
daughter
brother 559.3
descendant 561.3
daunt deter 127.18
dissuade 379.3
domineer 612.16
daunting 127.28
dauntless
plucky 359.14
unafraid 492.20
dawdle
n slowpoke 175.5
idler 331.8
v lag 166.4
linger 175.8
dally 331.14
protract 827.9
wait 846.12
dawn
n morning 314.3
beginning 818.1
daylight 1025.10
v grow light 1025.27
adj morning 314.6
dawn on 521.5
dawn upon one 931.18
day period 824.1
moment 824.2
age 824.4
date 832.4
daylight 1025.10
day after day
for a long time 827.14
constantly 847.7
repeatedly 849.16
daybook
record book 549.11
periodical 555.1
account book 628.4
chronicle 832.9
daybreak 314.3
day-care center 567.2
daydream
n wistfulness 100.4
illusion 976.1
abstractedness 985.2
dream 986.9
v wander 984.3
muse 985.9
dream 986.17
day in day out
regularly 781.8
for a long time 827.14
constantly 847.7
daylight dawn 314.3
publicity 352.4
dayshine 1025.10
daylong 827.12
day off vacation 20.3
holiday 20.4
absence 222.4
pause 857.3
day of reckoning 839.3

day of rest 20.5
daytime 1025.10
daze
n trance 92.19
confusion 985.3
v blind 30.7
astonish 122.6
perplex 971.13
confuse 985.7
shine 1025.23
dazed stupefied 25.7
blinded 30.10
foolish 923.8
in a dilemma 971.25
mazed 985.14
dazzle
n showiness 501.3
v blind 30.7
astonish 122.6
cut a dash 501.13
confuse 985.7
shine 1025.23
dazzling
blinding 30.11
gorgeous 1016.21
bright 1025.32
D-day zero hour 459.13
crucial moment 843.5
deacon
holy orders 699.4
clergy 699.10
deactivate
disarm 465.11
disband 771.8
dead
n silence 51.1
corpse 307.16
the majority 307.17
adj tired 21.8
asleep 22.22
insensible 25.6
unconscious 25.8
colorless 36.7
muffled 52.17
insipid 65.2
dull 117.6
inert 173.14
closed 293.9
lifeless 307.30
languid 331.20
no more 762.11
ended 820.8
past 837.7
obsolete 842.15
lackluster 1027.17
inanimate 1055.5
adv directly 161.23
extremely 247.22
exactly 973.21
deadbeat 138.5
dead duck 125.8
deaden weaken 16.10
desensitize 25.4
muffle 51.9
numb 94.8
relieve 120.5
moderate 670.6
cushion 670.8
dull 1027.10
dead end
n obstruction 293.3
impasse 1013.6
adj closed 293.9
deadening
n weakening 16.5
relief 120.1
modulation 670.2
adj numbing 25.9
anesthetic 86.47
relieving 120.9
mitigating 670.14
deadeye 904.8
dead giveaway 351.2
deadhead
freeloader 634.3
playgoer 704.27
dead letter 520.1
deadline
boundary 211.3
plan 381.1
crucial moment 843.5
deadlock
n standstill 173.3
the same 790.3
stop 857.2
impasse 1013.6
v put a stop to 857.11
halt 1012.13
deadly
poisonous 82.7
remarkable 247.11
deathly 307.29
lethal 308.23
destructive 395.26
harmful 1000.12
dead march dirge 115.6
slow motion 175.2
funeral 309.5
march 708.12
dead of night
silence 51.1
midnight 315.6
darkness 1027.1
deadpan
adj inexpressive 522.20
adv unfeelingly 94.14
dead reckoning
location 159.3
navigation 182.2
dead ringer
image 349.5
the same 778.3
dead set against
unwilling 325.5
oppositional 451.8
disapproving 510.21
dead set on 359.16
dead to the world
asleep 22.22
unconscious 25.8
oblivious 984.7
abstracted 985.11
deadweight
n impediment 1012.6
weight 297.1
onerousness 297.2
burden 297.7
adj heavy 297.16
deadwood
branch 310.20
refuse 391.4
deaf
hard of hearing 49.6
unpersuadable 361.13
narrow-minded 980.10
oblivious 984.7
deafen stun 49.5
muffle 51.9
din 53.7
deafening intense 15.22
loud 53.11
deaf-mute
n the deaf 49.2
mute 51.3
adj deaf 49.6
deafness
hardness of hearing 49
handicap 49.1
ear disease 85.15
unpersuadableness 361.5
incognizance 930.3
deaf to insensible 94.10
unconsenting 442.6
unaware 930.13
deal
n amount 244.2
lot 247.4
lamina 296.2
act 328.3
undertaking 404.1
compact 437.1
compromise 468.1
portion 477.5
transaction 731.4
bargain 731.5
blackjack 759.11
wood 1054.3
v use 87.22
parcel out 477.8
give 478.12
trade 731.15
bargain 731.18
shuffle 758.5
dispose 808.9
hit 902.14
dealer merchant 730.2
racketeer 732.4
stockbroker 737.10
dealings act 328.3
communication 343.1
commerce 731.1
relation 775.1
affairs 831.4
deal one in 477.6
deal with treat 321.6
perform 328.9
communicate 343.6
use 387.12
accomplish 407.4
discuss 541.12
write upon 556.5
punish 604.10
trade with 731.17
relate to 775.5
operate 889.5
dean
n superior 249.4
senior 304.5
principal 571.8
executive 574.3
chief 575.3
gambler 759.21
adj older 842.19
dear
n sweetheart 104.10
endearment term 562.6
adj beloved 104.24
precious 632.10
expensive 632.11
adv dearly 632.13
interj my! 122.21
dearth
unproductiveness 891.1
scarcity 992.3
death fatal disease 85.2
dying 307.1
finality 307.1
destruction 395.2
end 820.1
transience 828.1
bane 1001.1
deathbed
n moribundity 307.9
adj later 846.18
deathblow
early death 307.5
death stroke 308.10
end 395.2
defeat 412.1
finishing stroke 820.4
death-defying 493.9
death grip 474.2
death knell dirge 115.6
death 307.1
end 395.2
deathless
immortal 829.9
indestructible 855.18
deathly
deathlike 307.29
deadly 308.23
death penalty 602.1
death song dirge 115.6
swan song 307.10
death struggle
moribundity 307.9
life-and-death struggle 457.6
deathwatch
moribundity 307.9
last offices 309.4
debacle descent 194.1
disaster 395.4
defeat 412.1
revolution 860.1
debar prohibit 444.3
exclude 773.4
obstruct 1012.12
prevent 1012.14
debarkation 186.2
debase abase 137.5
lower 274.6
misuse 389.4
corrupt 393.12
demote 447.3
disparage 512.8
disgrace 661.8
adulterate 797.12
depress 913.4
debased low 274.7
corrupt 654.14
base 661.12
depressed 913.12
debatable 971.17

debate
n contention 457.1
discussion 541.7
speech 543.2
legislative procedure 613.6
argumentation 935.4
v hesitate 362.7
discuss 541.12
declaim 543.10
consider 931.12
debauch
n spree 88.5
dissipation 669.2
v go on a spree 88.28
corrupt 393.12
be promiscuous 665.19
seduce 665.20
dissipate 669.6
make merry 743.24
debauchery
profligacy 665.3
dissipation 669.2
debenture 728.11
debilitate 252.8
debilitated weak 16.12
ineffective 19.15
unmanned 19.19
tired 21.7
unhealthy 85.54
stricken in years 303.18
languid 331.20
debility weakness 16.1
fatigue 21.1
unhealthiness 85.3
old age 303.5
debit
n loss 473.1
expenditure 626.1
entry 628.5
v keep accounts 628.8
debonair 109.12
debouch
n outlet 190.9
v burst forth 33.9
emerge 190.11
find vent 369.10
disgorge 909.25
debrief brief 184.48
disband 771.8
debris deposit 176.9
remainder 256.1
rubbish 391.5
grain 1051.6
debt borrowing 621.1
liability 623
indebtedness 623.1
debtor borrowing 621.1
borrower 623.4
debug 940.2
debunk 977.2
debunker 512.6
debut
n coming out 582.15
theatrical performance 704.12
inauguration 818.5
v act 704.29
enter 818.9
debutante 578.7
decade moment 824.2
ten 882.6
decadent
deteriorating 393.45
corrupt 654.14
decal
stencil printing 713.4
adhesive 803.4
decalogue 636.1
decamp depart 188.6
break camp 188.14
flee 368.10
decant ladle 176.17
draw off 192.12
disgorge 909.25
decapitate 604.17
decathlon sport 744.1
track meet 755.2
decay
n filth 80.7
decomposition 393.6
rot 393.7
disintegration 806.1
dissociation 806.2
v decompose 393.22
disintegrate 806.3
decease
n death 307.1
end 820.1
v die 307.19
deceased
n corpse 307.16
adj dead 307.30
past 837.7
deceit
falseness 356.3
stratagem 415.3
deceitful
falsehearted 354.31
false 356.22
cunning 415.12
improper 645.18
deceive lie 354.19
beguile 356.14
live by one's wits 415.9
outwit 415.11
impose on 643.7
be dishonest 645.11
seduce 665.20
deceiver imitator 336.4
misleader 357.1
deluder 357.1
evildoer 593.1
con man 645.10
criminal 660.9
seducer 665.12
cheater 759.22
deceleration
slowing 175.4
decline 252.2
restraint 428.1
decent kind 143.13
indulgent 427.8
decorous 496.10
conventional 579.5
right 637.3
honest 644.13
modest 664.5
sufficient 991.6
expedient 995.5
tolerable 999.20
decentralization
divergence 171.1
deconcentration 771.2
deception
concealment 346.1
sham 354.3
falseness 356.3
calculated lie 356.1
hoax 356.7
cheating 759.13
illusion 976.1
deceptive
deceiving 356.21
sophistical 936.10
erroneous 975.16
illusory 976.9
decibel 50.7
decide
resolve 359.7
induce 375.22
determine 886.12
exercise influence 894.8
judge 946.11
make sure 970.11
will 323.2
decide against 444.5
decided
downright 247.12
affirmative 334.8
resolute 359.11
ended 820.8
unqualified 960.2
assured 970.20
confident 970.21
emphatic 997.21
decide upon 371.16
deciduous
descending 194.11
arboreal 310.39
perennial 310.44
transient 828.7
decimal tenth 882.22
numeric 1017.23
decimate
slaughter 308.17
destroy 395.10
decipher
explain 341.10
make clear 521.6
solve 940.2
decipherable
intelligible 521.10
legible 521.12
solvable 940.3
decision will 323.1
resolution 359.1
choice 371.1
judgment 598.9
fight 754.3
verdict 946.5
decisive
resolute 359.11
mandatory 420.12
critical 843.10
prompt 845.9
causal 886.13
convincing 953.26
evidential 957.16
unqualified 960.2
certain 970.13
deck
n dose 87.20
ground covering 199.3
layer 296.1
card 758.2
bundle 770.8
platform 901.13
v clothe 5.39
overcome 412.7
ornament 498.8
beat 902.17
fell 913.5
deckhand 183.6
declaim
proclaim 352.13
speak 524.19
hold forth 543.10
overact 704.31
declamatory
elocutionary 543.12
grandiloquent 545.8
declaration
acknowledgment 332.3
affirmation 334.1
announcement 352.2
decree 420.4
remark 524.3
statement 598.7
profession 953.7
testimony 957.2
declare affirm 334.5
announce 352.12
command 420.8
speak 524.23
state 953.12
declare war
contend 457.13
make war on 458.15
déclassé
n outcast 586.4
adj upper-class 607.10
decline
n sinkage 194.2
declivity 204.5
declension 252.2
deterioration 393.3
cheapening 633.4
price 738.9
close 820.3
shortcoming 911.1
senility 922.10
v weaken 16.9
fail 85.48
recede 168.2
sink 194.6
slope 204.10
decrease 252.6
age 303.10
reject 372.2
sink 393.17
refuse 442.3
grammaticize 530.16
cheapen 633.6
fall short 911.2
fall on evil days 1011.11
declivity descent 204.5
slope 237.2
decoction extract 192.7
product 192.8
concoction 405.3
imbuement 797.2
boiling 1020.2
solution 1064.3

decode
make clear 521.6
solve 940.2
decoding
translation 341.3
explanation 341.4
information theory 551.7
solution 940.1
décolleté
n nudity 6.3
adj unclad 6.13
decoloration 36.3
decommission 465.11
decompose
decay 393.22
disintegrate 806.3
decompression
rest 20.1
composure 106.2
relief 120.1
rarefaction 299.2
deconcentrate 771.7
deconsecrate
depose 447.4
disbelieve 695.14
decontamination
sanitation 79.3
extenuation 600.5
radiation 1037.1
decontrolled 430.27
decor furniture 229.1
ornamentation 498.1
scenery 704.20
decorate add 253.4
trim 498.8
ornament 545.7
honor 646.8
beautify 1016.16
decoration extra 254.4
ornamentation 498.1
honor 646.5
insignia 647.1
visual arts 712.1
beautification 1016.11
decorative
ornamental 498.10
artistic 712.20
beautifying 1016.23
decorator 716.11
decorous solemn 111.3
tasteful 496.10
conventional 579.5
ceremonious 580.8
right 637.3
decent 664.5
decorum
decorousness 496.3
social convention 579.1
etiquette 580.3
propriety 637.2
decency 664.2
decoy
n trap 356.12
shill 357.5
lure 377.3
by-bidder 733.6
v trap 356.20
lure 377.5
decrease
n descent 194.1
lessening 252.1
decrescence 252.1
reduction 255.2
contraction 260.1
deterioration 393.3
waste 473.2
depression 913.1
v quantify 244.4
graduate 245.4
diminish 252.6
reduce 252.7
subtract 255.9
contract 260.7
waste 473.5
decree
n command 420.4
law 673.3
verdict 946.5
predetermination 964.1
v will 323.2
command 420.8
legislate 613.10
legalize 673.9
pass judgment 946.13
decrepit unsound 16.15
stricken in years 303.18
dilapidated 393.33
senile 922.23
decrescendo
n faintness 52.1
decline 252.2
music 708.25
adj faint 52.16
decreasing 252.11
music 708.53
adv decreasingly 252.12
decriminalize
authorize 443.11
legalize 673.9
decry
censure 510.13
disparage 512.8
dedicate
commit 477.11
sanctify 685.5
dedicated
zealous 101.9
resolute 359.11
devoted 587.21
unselfish 652.5
sanctified 685.8
dedicate oneself to
be determined 359.8
espouse 509.13
dedication
zeal 101.2
resolution 359.1
commitment 477.4
makeup 554.12
devotion 587.7
duty 641.1
unselfishness 652.1
sanctification 685.3
deduce elicit 192.14
reason 935.15
conclude 946.10
suppose 951.10
deduct reduce 252.7
subtract 255.9
discount 631.2
deductible
n insurance 1008.4
adj tax-free 630.16
deduction
decrease 252.1
subtraction 255.1
decrement 255.7
tax 630.9
discount 631.1
relation 775.1
reasoning 935.3
conclusion 946.4
deductive
subtractive 255.13
dialectic 935.22
deed
n act 328.3
exploit 492.7
v transfer 629.3
deedholder 470.2
deejay 1034.23
deem judge 946.8
suppose 951.10
think 953.11
de-emphasize
minimize 252.9
moderate 670.6
attach little importance to 998.12
deep
n pit 275.2
secret 345.5
adj colored 35.17
resonant 54.11
heart-felt 93.24
spacious 158.11
interior 207.6
great 247.6
broad 269.6
profound 275.10
cunning 415.12
recondite 522.16
wise 920.17
learned 928.21
adv beyond one's depth 275.16
the deep sea 240.1
ocean depths 275.4
deep-dyed
fast-dyed 35.18
confirmed 373.18
thorough 794.10
established 855.13
deepen aggravate 119.2
intensify 251.5
broaden 269.4
lower 275.8
deep-felt 93.24
deep-freezer 1024.5
deep-fry 11.5
deep-rooted deep 275.10
confirmed 373.18
established 855.13
deep-sea
aquatic 182.58
oceanic 240.9
deep-water 275.14
deep-seated
deep 275.10
confirmed 373.18
intrinsic 767.7
established 855.13
deep-set deep 275.10
confirmed 373.18
established 855.13
deep-six abandon 370.5
discard 390.7
deep sleep 22.5
the Deep South 231.7
deep thought
thoughtfulness 931.3
engrossment 983.3
deer 311.5
de-escalation
decrease 252.1
modulation 670.2
depression 913.1
deface deform 265.7
blemish 1004.4
offend 1015.5
de facto
adj existent 761.13
real 761.15
adv really 761.16
defame malign 512.9
stigmatize 661.9
default
n absence 222.4
disobedience 327.1
neglect 340.1
nonobservance 435.1
arrears 623.2
nonpayment 625.1
shortcoming 911.1
v be absent 222.7
neglect 340.6
lose 473.4
not pay 625.6
play 751.4
defeat
n disappointment 132.1
failure 410.1
beating 412.1
frustration 1012.3
v disappoint 132.2
best 249.7
do for 395.11
triumph over 411.5
worst 412.6
overcome 412.7
refute 958.5
thwart 1012.15
defeatism negation 335.1
uncourageousness 491.2
defeatist
n pessimist 125.7
adj pessimistic 125.16
defecate
have a bowel movement 12.13
evacuate 909.22
defect
n disease 85.1
apostatize 363.7
deficiency 795.2
fault 1003.2
blemish 1004.1
v leave home 188.17
emigrate 190.16
deny 335.4
secede 370.6
disregard 435.3
renege 858.13
defection
departure 188.1

emigration 190.7
denial 335.2
apostasy 363.2
desertion 370.2
nonpayment 625.1
change 852.1
conversion 858.3
fault 1003.2
defective
n cripple 85.45
idiot 924.8
adj incomplete 795.4
erroneous 975.16
insufficient 992.9
imperfect 1003.4
blemished 1004.8
defend guard 460.8
offer in defense 600.10
protect 1008.18
defendant
oppositionist 452.3
litigant 598.11
accused 599.6
defender
champion 460.7
justifier 600.8
supporter 616.9
team 752.2
protector 1008.5
defense protection 460
front 460.1
pleadings 598.6
plea 600.2
basketball game 747.3
hockey strategy 749.2
team 749.5
fight 754.3
countermeasure 900.5
argumentation 935.4
rebuttal 939.2
wall 1008.1
barrier 1012.5
defenseless
helpless 19.18
forlorn 584.12
unprotected 1006.14
defense mechanism
reaction 92.23
avoidance 368.1
instinct 460.1
block 990.3
defensive
defending 460.11
protective 1008.23
defer retreat 163.6
retract 168.3
postpone 846.9
deference respect 155.1
obedience 326.1
submission 433.1
observance 434.1
courtesy 504.1
duty 641.1
deferential
respectful 155.8
obedient 326.3
obeisant 433.16
courteous 504.14
dutiful 641.13
defer to respect 155.4
obey 326.2
submit to 433.9
observe 434.2
defiance
impenitence 114.2
refractoriness 327.2
ungovernability 361.4
resistance 453.1
defying 454
disobedience 454.1
declaration of war 458.7
defiant
impenitent 114.5
disobedient 327.8
refractory 327.10
ungovernable 361.12
defying 454.7
deficiency
inadequacy 250.3
incompleteness 795.1
want 795.2
lack 992.4
imperfection 1003.1
fault 1003.2
deficient
inadequate 250.7
slipshod 340.12
incomplete 795.4
short of 911.5
insufficient 992.9
imperfect 1003.4
deficit difference 255.8
debt 623.1
arrears 623.2
deficiency 795.2
shortcoming 911.1
want 992.4
defile
n valley 237.7
narrow place 270.3
passageway 383.3
v foul 80.17
march 177.30
misuse 389.4
corrupt 393.12
vilify 512.10
impair 654.10
stigmatize 661.9
seduce 665.20
file 812.7
work evil 1000.6
define
circumscribe 210.4
interpret 341.9
mark 517.19
name 527.11
fix 855.9
characterize 865.10
defined distinct 31.7
circumscribed 210.6
clear 521.11
particular 865.12
defining
limiting 210.9
classificational 809.7
definite distinct 31.7
audible 50.16
circumscribed 210.6
resolute 359.11
clear 521.11
particular 865.12
unqualified 960.2
certain 970.13
definite article 530.6
definition
distinctness 31.2
circumscription 210.1
interpretation 341.1
explanation 518.3
clearness 521.2
naming 527.2
characterization 865.8
television reception 1035.5
definitive
limiting 210.9
downright 247.12
ending 820.10
final 820.11
unqualified 960.2
deflate disable 19.10
humiliate 137.4
reduce 252.7
collapse 260.10
cheapen 633.6
disprove 958.4
deflation
humiliation 137.2
decrease 252.1
contraction 260.4
collapse 410.3
cheapening 633.4
business cycle 731.10
deflect deviate 164.5
oblique 204.9
curve 279.6
disincline 379.4
prevent 1012.14
deflection
bending 164.2
obliquity 204.1
angle 278.2
curve 279.3
radar interference 1036.12
deflector 1035.11
deflower
corrupt 393.12
possess sexually 480.15
seduce 665.20
defluxion outflow 190.4
descent 194.1
stream 238.4
defoliant 1001.3
defoliate 802.14
deforestation 1069.3
deform distort 263.3
misshape 265.7
change 852.7
blemish 1004.4
deformation
disfigurement 265.3
misrepresentation 350.1
deterioration 393.3
blemish 1004.1
deformed
malformed 265.12
freakish 870.13
blemished 1004.8
unshapely 1015.8
deformity disease 85.1
cripple 85.45
deformation 265.3
oddity 870.3
blemish 1004.1
hideousness 1015.2
defraud cheat 356.18
steal 482.13
defray 624.18
defrock depose 447.4
disgrace 661.8
dismiss 909.19
defrost 1020.21
deft 413.22
defunct dead 307.30
no more 762.11
ended 820.8
past 837.7
defuse relieve 120.5
keep the peace 464.8
pacify 465.7
moderate 670.6
defy
n challenge 454.2
v confront 216.8
disobey 327.6
violate 435.4
bid defiance 454.3
dare 492.10
resist 453.2
make war on 458.15
thwart 1012.15
dégagé
nonchalant 106.15
careless 340.11
informal 581.3
degenerate
n reprobate 660.4
v corrupt 393.12
deteriorate 393.16
go wrong 654.9
lapse into disorder 810.8
be changed 852.6
defect 858.13
evolve 861.5
fall on evil days 1011.11
adj deteriorating 393.45
corrupt 654.14
changed 852.10
apostate 858.20
degradable
biodegradable 393.47
disintegrative 806.5
degradation
deterioration 393.3
decay 393.6
demotion 447.1
knavery 645.2
turpitude 654.5
baseness 661.3
infamy 661.4
disintegration 806.1
banishment 909.4
depression 913.1
degrade abase 137.5
corrupt 393.12
demote 447.3
disparage 512.8
disgrace 661.8
dismiss 909.19
degree grade 245.1
rank 245.1
measure 300.2
extent 300.3
class 607.1
academic honor 648.6

  staff 708.29
  interval 709.20
  continuity 807.2
degrees
  points of the compass 161.3
  graduate 572.8
dehumanize 144.15
dehumidify 1066.6
dehydrate
  preserve 397.9
  dry 1066.6
dehydration 1066.1
deice 1020.21
deification
  respect 155.1
  praise 509.5
  glorification 662.8
  idolization 697.2
  elevation 912.1
deify respect 155.4
  praise 509.12
  glorify 662.13
  idolatrize 697.5
  exalt 912.6
deign condescend 137.8
  give oneself airs 141.8
  consent 441.2
deism 675.5
deist 675.16
deity divinity 677.1
  spirit 677.1
  god 678.2
déjà vu 689.6
  remembering 989.4
deject 112.18
dejected sullen 110.24
  depressed 112.22
dejection
  defecation 12.2
  excrement 12.3
  sullenness 110.8
  depression 112.3
de jure 673.13
delay
  n slowing 175.4
  stoppage 846.2
  hindrance 1012.1
  v dawdle 175.8
  slow 175.9
  do nothing 329.2
  put away 390.6
  retard 846.8
  postpone 846.9
  wait 846.12
  hinder 1012.10
delectable tasty 63.8
  delicious 97.10
delectation 95.2
delegate
  n legate 576.2
  v commit 478.16
  commission 615.10
  deputize 862.7
delegation
  authority 417.12
  commitment 478.2
  deputation 576.13
  commission 615.1
  substitution 862.1
delete erase 255.12
  obliterate 395.16
  separate 802.8
  end 820.5
deleted absent 222.11
  ended 820.8
deleterious
  disadvantageous 996.6
  harmful 1000.12
deliberate
  v hesitate 362.7
  confer 541.11
  discuss 541.12
  consider 931.12
  adj slow 175.10
  intentional 380.8
  leisurely 402.6
  cautious 494.8
deliberated
  intentional 380.8
  reasoned 935.21
deliberation
  slowness 175.1
  intentionality 380.3
  leisureliness 402.2
  caution 494.1
  discussion 541.7
  legislative procedure 613.6
  consideration 931.2
deliberative
  conciliar 423.5
  legislative 613.11
  cognitive 931.21
delicacy tidbit 10.8
  frailty 16.2
  sensitivity 24.3
  unhealthiness 85.3
  sensibility 93.4
  tenderness 93.6
  considerateness 143.3
  insignificance 248.1
  thinness 270.4
  smoothness 294.3
  lightness 298.1
  meticulousness 339.3
  nicety 495.3
  taste 496.1
  decency 664.2
  margin 780.2
  discrimination 944.1
  accuracy 973.5
  dangerousness 1006.2
  daintiness 1016.5
  softness 1047.1
  brittleness 1050.1
delicate frail 16.14
  sensitive 24.12
  soft-colored 35.22
  tasty 63.8
  feeling 93.20
  considerate 143.16
  dainty 248.7
  thin 270.16
  smooth 294.8
  light 298.12
  meticulous 339.12
  nice 495.11
  elegant 496.9
  decent 664.5
  discriminating 944.7
  exact 973.17
  precarious 1006.12
  difficult 1013.17
  fine 1016.20
  soft 1047.8
  brittle 1050.4
delicatessen 8.17
delicious edible 8.33
  tasty 63.8
  delightful 97.7
  delectable 97.10
  excellent 999.13
delight
  n happiness 95.2
  tendency 896.1
  v delectate 95.10
  be pleased 95.12
  rejoice 116.5
  exult 502.9
  amuse 743.21
delighted pleased 95.15
  amused 743.26
delightful tasty 63.8
  exquisite 97.7
  amusing 743.27
Delilah 665.15
delimit
  circumscribe 210.4
  mark 517.19
delimitation
  circumscription 210.1
  boundary 211.3
delineate outline 211.9
  represent 349.8
  describe 349.9
  plan 381.11
  portray 712.19
delineation
  outline 211.2
  representation 349.1
  description 349.2
  diagram 381.3
  line 517.6
  drawing 712.5
  sketch 712.13
  fiction 722.1
delineator limner 716.2
  draftsman 716.3
delinquency
  misbehavior 322.1
  disobedience 327.1
  nonobservance 435.1
  nonpayment 625.1
  wrong 638.1
  vice 654.1
  misdeed 655.2
  lawbreaking 674.3
  shortcoming 911.1
delinquent
  n evildoer 593.1
  defaulter 625.5
  wrongdoer 660.8
  adj defaulting 625.10
  wrong 638.3
deliquescent
  decreasing 252.11
  liquefied 1064.6
delirious feverish 85.58
  fervent 93.18
  overzealous 101.12
  frenzied 105.25
  out of one's head 926.31
delirium fever 85.7
  fury 105.8
  deliriousness 926.8
  figment of the imagination 986.5
delirium tremens
  alcoholism 88.3
  shaking 917.2
  mania 926.9
  hallucination 976.7
deliver release 120.6
  transfer 176.10
  do 328.6
  rescue 398.3
  accomplish 407.4
  succeed 409.7
  liberate 431.4
  hand 478.13
  say 524.22
  send 629.3
  play 745.5
  perform 892.11
deliverance
  release 120.2
  escape 369.1
  rescue 398.1
  liberation 431.1
  giving 478.1
  transfer 629.1
  verdict 946.5
deliverer
  preserver 397.5
  savior 592.2
delivery birth 1.1
  transportation 176.3
  escape 369.1
  rescue 398.1
  liberation 431.1
  giving 478.1
  articulation 524.5
  transfer 629.1
  pitch 745.3
  game 750.2
dell highland 237.7
  valley 284.9
delocalize 176.11
delouse 79.24
Delphic oracle 962.7
delta fork 171.4
  plain 236.1
  point of land 283.9
deltoid
  diverging 171.8
  spread 259.11
  triangular 278.8
  three 876.3
  tripartite 878.4
delude deceive 356.10
  be mistaken 975.10
deluded 926.26
deluge
  n torrent 238.5
  overflow 238.6
  rainstorm 316.2
  throng 770.4
  superabundance 993.2
  wetting 1065.6
  v overflow 238.17
  submerge 367.7
  oversupply 993.14
  flood 1065.14
delusion sham 354.3
  deception 356.1

error 975.1
illusion 976.1
delusional 356.21
deluxe 501.21
delve
excavate 284.15
search 938.31
cultivate 1069.17
demagnetize 1032.27
demagogue
n instigator 375.11
speaker 543.4
v declaim 543.10
demand
n extortion 192.6
stipulation 421.2
claim 421.1
request 440.1
fee 630.6
prerogative 642.1
imposition 643.1
sale 734.1
question 938.10
requirement 963.2
v extort 192.15
prescribe 420.9
summon 420.11
ask 421.5
oblige 424.5
request 440.9
charge 630.12
impose 643.4
inquire 938.20
require 963.9
demanding
meticulous 339.12
exacting 421.9
strict 425.6
importunate 440.18
difficult 1013.17
demarcate
circumscribe 210.4
mark 517.19
differentiate 780.6
characterize 865.10
discriminate 944.4
demarcation
circumscription 210.1
exclusion 773.1
differentiation 780.4
distinction 944.3
demasculinize
unman 19.12
feminize 77.13
demean 137.5
demeaning
inferior 250.6
disgraceful 661.11
demeanor looks 33.4
behavior 321.1
demented
turbulent 671.18
insane 926.26
dementia 926.1
demesne
sphere 231.2
real estate 471.6
farm 1069.8
Demeter
fertility 890.5
agricultural deity 1069.4
demigod
brave person 492.8
hero 659.5
godling 678.3
demilitarize 465.11
demimonde 665.15
demise
n death 307.1
transfer 629.1
v transfer 629.3
demobilize
release 431.5
disarm 465.11
disband 771.8
democracy
communion 476.2
government 612.4
democratic centralism
611.5
demographic
human 312.13
populational 606.8
demography
population 227.1
anthropology 312.10
the people 606.1
demolish
wreck 395.17
shatter 802.13
disassemble 802.15
refute 958.5
demolition
demolishment 395.5
refutation 958.2
demon
enthusiast 101.5
monster 593.6
violent person 671.9
spirit 678.5
familiar spirit 678.12
fiend 680.6
genius 920.8
demonic
frenzied 105.25
diabolic 654.13
demoniac 680.17
possessed 926.29
execrable 1000.10
demonism
Satanism 680.14
black magic 690.2
idolatry 697.1
demonology 690.2
demonstrable
manifested 348.13
real 761.15
provable 957.19
obvious 970.15
demonstrate
object 333.5
explain 341.10
manifest 348.5
image 349.11
flaunt 501.17
teach 568.10
evidence 957.8
prove 957.10
cite 957.13
check 1017.21
demonstrated
manifested 348.13
proved 957.20
true 973.13
demonstration
objection 333.2
explanation 341.4
manifestation 348.2
representation 349.1
display 501.4
assembly 770.2
example 786.2
reasoning 935.1
proof 957.3
citation 957.5
demonstrative
emotional 93.17
loving 104.27
explanatory 341.15
communicative 343.10
manifesting 348.9
indicative 517.23
evincive 957.17
demonstrator
interpreter 341.7
picket 1008.13
demoralize
intimidate 127.20
unnerve 128.10
corrupt 654.10
demos 606.1
Demosthenes 543.6
demote degrade 447.3
dismiss 909.19
overthrow 913.6
demotion
deterioration 393.3
downgrading 447.1
degrading 447.1
infamy 661.4
banishment 909.4
depression 913.1
demulcent
n balm 86.11
ointment 1056.3
adj palliative 86.40
relieving 120.9
moderate 670.16
softening 1047.16
demur
n scruple 325.2
objection 333.2
resistance 453.1
v scruple 325.4
object 333.5
hesitate 362.7
demure solemn 111.3
shy 139.12
prudish 500.19
demurrer
objection 333.2
dissenter 333.3
pleadings 598.6
defense 600.2
demystify 521.6
demythologize 341.10
den sanctum 197.8
lair 228.26
disapproved place 228.28
hiding place 346.4
sewer 654.7
office 739.7
retreat 1009.5
denature
corrupt 393.12
adulterate 797.12
change 852.7
deniability
incognizance 930.3
doubtfulness 971.2
denial
disaffirmation 335.2
disavowal 335.2
recantation 363.3
rejection 372.1
refusal 442.1
prohibition 444.1
opposition 451.1
loss 473.1
defense 600.2
temperance 668.1
unbelief 955.1
refutation 958.2
denied rejected 372.3
disproved 958.7
denied to 967.9
denigrate blacken 38.7
deprecate 510.12
vilify 512.10
denizen
n inhabitant 227.2
v people 225.9
den of iniquity
sewer 654.7
brothel 665.9
denomination
indication 517.3
naming 527.2
name 527.3
school 617.5
sect 675.3
kind 809.3
specification 865.6
denominator division
1017.12
ratio 1017.7
denotation
indication 517.3
meaning 518.1
denote signify 517.17
designate 517.18
mean 518.8
evidence 957.8
denouement plot 722.4
end 820.1
solution 940.1
denounce
censure 510.13
threaten 514.2
accuse 599.7
condemn 602.3
dense thick 269.8
luxuriant 310.43
sturdy 763.7
crowded 770.22
stupid 922.15
compact 1045.12
hard 1046.10
density
substantiality 763.1
stupidity 922.3
solidness 1045.1
compactness 1045.1
hardness 1046.1

- **dent**
  - *n* indentation 284.6
  - print 517.7
  - *v* indent 284.14
- **dental hygienist** 81.3
- **dentate** notched 289.5
  - prehensile 474.9
- **denticulate** 285.14
- **dentist** 90.6
- **dentistry** 90.3
- **denude** divest 6.5
  - strip 480.24
  - tear apart 802.14
- **denuded** divested 6.12
  - bereft 473.8
- **denuded of** 992.13
- **denunciation**
  - censure 510.3
  - curse 513.1
  - threat 514.1
  - accusation 599.1
  - condemnation 602.1
- **deny**
  - *n* recant 363.8
  - *v* not admit 335.4
  - reject 372.2
  - withhold 442.4
  - prohibit 444.3
  - contradict 451.6
  - disbelieve 955.5
  - refute 958.5
- **deny oneself**
  - abstain 667.3
  - restrain oneself 668.6
  - detemperate 668.7
- **deodorant** 72.3
- **deodorize**
  - fumigate 72.4
  - falsify 354.16
- **Deo volente** 966.11
- **depart** disappear 34.2
  - deviate 164.3
  - make off 188.6
  - exit 190.12
  - absent oneself 222.8
  - die 307.19
  - flee 368.10
  - abandon 370.5
  - digress 538.9
  - differ 780.5
  - separate 802.8
- **departed**
  - left 188.19
  - absent 222.11
  - dead 307.30
  - past 837.7
- **department**
  - region 231.1
  - sphere 231.2
  - bureau 594.4
  - occupation 724.4
- **department store** 736.1
- **departure**
  - disappearance 34.1
  - deviation 164.1
  - leaving 188.1
  - leave-taking 188.4
  - egress 190.2
  - absence 222.4
  - death 307.1
  - digression 538.4
  - difference 780.1
- **depend** pend 202.6
  - hang 959.6
  - all depend 971.11
- **dependability**
  - trustworthiness 644.6
  - reliability 970.4
- **dependable**
  - trustworthy 644.19
  - reliable 970.17
  - unhazardous 1007.5
- **dependence** hope 124.1
  - pendency 202.1
  - tutelage 432.3
  - supporter 616.9
  - relativity 775.2
  - belief 953.1
- **dependency**
  - pendency 202.1
  - tutelage 432.3
  - dependent 432.6
  - possession 469.1
- **dependent**
  - *n* hanger-on 138.6
  - follower 166.2
  - charge 432.6
  - retainer 577.1
  - *adj* pendent 202.9
  - subject 432.13
  - trusting 953.22
  - contingent 959.9
  - undecided 971.18
- **depend on**
  - be at the mercy of 432.12
  - result from 887.5
  - rely on 953.16
  - trust 953.17
  - depend 959.6
- **depersonalization** 92.20
- **depict**
  - represent 349.8
  - describe 349.9
  - enact 704.30
  - portray 712.19
- **depiction**
  - representation 349.1
  - description 349.2
- **depilation** 1016.15
- **depilatory** 6.4
- **deplane** 186.8
- **deplete** consume 388.3
  - waste 473.5
  - evacuate 909.22
- **depletion**
  - decrement 252.3
  - reduction 255.2
  - consumption 388.1
  - waste 473.2
  - evacuation 909.6
- **deplorable**
  - distressing 98.20
  - regrettable 113.10
  - disgraceful 661.11
  - terrible 1000.9
- **deplore**
  - regret 113.6
  - lament 115.10
- **deploy** locate 159.11
  - diverge 171.5
  - spread 259.6
  - prepare 405.6
  - order 807.4
  - adduce 957.12
- **deployment**
  - placement 159.6
  - divergence 171.1
  - expansion 259.1
  - battle array 458.3
  - order 807.1
  - arrangement 808.1
- **deplume**
  - demote 447.3
  - strip 480.24
  - disgrace 661.8
  - dismiss 909.19
- **depopulate**
  - slaughter 308.17
  - dispeople 909.16
- **deport** transfer 176.10
  - emigrate 190.16
  - eliminate 773.5
  - banish 909.17
- **deportment** 321.1
- **depose** dislodge 160.6
  - depone 334.6
  - remove from office 447.4
  - dismiss 909.19
  - overthrow 913.6
  - state 953.12
  - testify 957.9
- **deposit**
  - *n* placement 159.6
  - sediment 176.9
  - collateral 438.3
  - payment 624.1
  - precipitation 1045.5
  - mineral deposit 1058.7
  - *v* lay 78.9
  - repose 159.14
  - secrete 346.7
  - store 386.10
  - pledge 438.10
  - precipitate 1045.11
- **deposition**
  - placement 159.6
  - dregs 256.2
  - sworn statement 334.3
  - deposal 447.2
  - certificate 549.6
  - declaration 598.7
  - statement of belief 953.4
  - testimony 957.2
- **depository**
  - storehouse 386.6
  - trustee 470.5
  - treasurer 729.12
  - treasury 729.13
- **depot** 386.6
- **deprave**
  - corrupt 393.12
  - work evil 1000.6
- **depravity**
  - turpitude 654.5
  - baseness 661.3
- **deprecate**
  - discommend 510.12
  - underestimate 950.2
  - attach little importance to 998.12
- **deprecatory**
  - self-effacing 139.10
  - condemnatory 510.22
  - disparaging 512.13
- **depreciate**
  - reduce 252.7
  - subtract 255.9
  - waste 473.5
  - deprecate 510.12
  - disparage 512.8
  - discount 631.2
  - cheapen 633.6
  - underestimate 950.2
  - attach little importance to 998.12
- **depreciation**
  - decrease 252.1
  - reduction 255.2
  - deterioration 393.3
  - waste 473.2
  - deprecation 510.2
  - disparagement 512.1
  - discount 631.1
  - cheapening 633.4
  - underestimation 950.1
- **depredate**
  - destroy 395.10
  - plunder 482.17
- **depress**
  - sadden 112.18
  - reduce 252.7
  - lower 274.6
  - deepen 275.8
  - indent 284.14
  - press down 913.4
- **depressant**
  - *n* sedative 86.12
  - drug 87.3
  - *adj* sedative 86.45
  - depressing 112.30
- **depressed**
  - pleasureless 96.20
  - dejected 112.22
  - low 274.7
  - indented 284.17
  - lowered 913.12
  - unfortunate 1011.14
- **depression**
  - mental disorder 92.14
  - wretchedness 96.6
  - distressfulness 98.5
  - dejection 112.3
  - decrease 252.1
  - lowness 274.1
  - deepening 275.7
  - concavity 284.1
  - cavity 284.2
  - notch 289.1
  - business cycle 731.10
  - lowering 913.1
  - melancholia 926.5
  - hard times 1011.6
- **Depression Era** 824.5
- **deprivation**
  - absence 222.1
  - refusal 442.1
  - deposal 447.2
  - loss 473.1
  - divestment 480.6
  - indigence 619.2
  - nonexistence 762.1
  - disassembly 802.6
  - banishment 909.4
  - want 992.4

deprive
take from 480.21
dismiss 909.19
deprived limited 210.7
bereaved 307.35
indigent 619.8
deprived of
bereft 473.8
wanting 992.13
depth space 158.1
interiority 207.1
size 257.1
thickness 269.2
deepness 275.1
pit 275.2
pitch 709.4
wisdom 920.5
deputation
authority 417.12
delegation 576.13
commission 615.1
substitution 862.1
deputize
empower 18.10
represent 576.14
commission 615.10
delegate 862.7
deputy
n mediator 466.3
director 574.1
representative 576.1
proxy 576.1
lawyer 597.1
assignee 615.9
assistant 616.6
substitute 862.2
policeman 1008.15
adj deputative 576.16
deracinate
dislodge 160.6
extract 192.10
exterminate 395.14
derail miscarry 410.15
distract 985.6
thwart 1012.15
derange afflict 85.50
disarrange 811.2
madden 926.24
derangement
disorder 810.1
disarrangement 811.1
abnormality 870.1
insanity 926.1
derby contest 457.3
race 457.12
Derby 757.1
deregulate
not interfere 430.16
politicize 611.16
deregulation
noninterference 430.9
disembarrassment 1014.6
derelict
n bum 331.9
castoff 370.4
outcast 586.4
wretch 660.2
transient 828.4
adj negligent 340.10
abandoned 370.8
dilapidated 393.33
outcast 586.10
unfaithful 645.20
dereliction
disobedience 327.1
neglect 340.1
desertion 370.2
nonobservance 435.1
infidelity 645.5
misdeed 655.2
badness 1000.1
deride disdain 157.3
flout 454.4
ridicule 508.8
have the audacity 142.7
de rigueur
conventional 579.5
obligatory 641.15
derisive
impudent 142.10
disrespectful 156.7
defiant 454.7
ridiculing 508.12
condemnatory 510.22
disparaging 512.13
derivation
receiving 479.1
root 526.2
morphology 526.3
etymology 526.15
lineage 560.4
adoption 621.2
source 886.5
effect 887.1
conclusion 946.4
derivative
n root 526.2
effect 887.1
adj resultant 887.6
attributable 888.6
uncreative 891.5
derive elicit 192.14
acquire 472.8
receive 479.6
conclude 946.10
derive from
receive 479.6
adopt 621.4
result from 887.5
trace to 888.5
dermal
cutaneous 2.27
covering 295.32
dermis the skin 2.4
skin 295.3
dernier cri 841.2
derogation
reduction 255.2
deterioration 393.3
disparagement 512.1
derogatory
disparaging 512.13
disreputable 661.10
derrick tower 272.6
lifter 912.3
derriére 217.4
derring-do 492.5
dervish ascetic 667.2
Muslim 675.23
clergy 699.12
désœuvré 331.18
descant
n treatise 556.1
air 708.4
part 708.22
overture 708.26
v amplify 538.7
write upon 556.5
sing 708.38
descend
condescend 137.8
give oneself airs 141.8
move 172.5
land 184.43
go down 194.5
incline 204.10
gravitate 297.15
change hands 629.4
incur disgrace 661.7
descendant
offspring 561.3
successor 817.4
sequel 835.2
descending
n course 172.2
descent 194.1
adj flowing 172.8
descendant 194.11
sloping downward 204.16
descend upon
light upon 194.10
attack 459.14
descent
humiliation 137.2
course 172.2
motion downward 194
descending 194.1
declivity 204.5
deterioration 393.3
lineage 560.4
offspring 561.1
series 812.2
sequence 815.1
conversion 858.1
depression 913.1
reverse 1011.3
rocket launching 1074.9
describe
interpret 341.9
portray 349.9
characterize 865.10
description
interpretation 341.1
portrayal 349.2
portrait 349.5
fiction 722.1
kind 809.3
characterization 865.8
descriptive
interpretative 341.14
depictive 349.14
linguistic 523.19
descry see 27.12
perceive 521.9
detect 941.5
desecrate misuse 389.4
corrupt 393.12
profane 694.4
desecration
misuse 389.1
abomination 638.2
sacrilege 694.2
desensitize deaden 25.4
dull 94.7
desensitization 25.3
desert
n open space 158.4
plain 236.1
wasteland 891.2
dryness 1066.2
adj unproductive 891.4
dry 1066.7
desert
n reprisal 506.2
goodness 999.1
v quit 188.9
apostatize 363.7
flee 368.10
abandon 370.5
be unfaithful 645.12
defect 858.13
deserted available 222.15
neglected 340.14
abandoned 370.8
disused 390.10
forlorn 584.12
deserter apostate 363.5
desertion 370.2
sacrilegist 694.3
apostate 858.8
desertion
departure 188.1
apostasy 363.2
flight 368.4
defection 370.2
forlornness 584.4
impiety 694.1
apostasy 858.3
deserts reprisal 506.2
just deserts 639.3
deserve 639.5
deserved
warranted 639.9
just 649.8
deserving
praiseworthy 509.20
due 639.10
desex 19.12
déshabillé 5.20
desiccate
languish 393.18
preserve 397.9
dry 1066.6
desideratum
desire 100.11
intention 380.1
requirement 963.2
design
n trick 356.6
intention 380.1
plan 381.1
diagram 381.3
stratagem 415.3
motif 498.7
intent 518.2
makeup 554.12
form 709.11
visual arts 712.1
treatment 712.9
work of art 712.10
drawing 712.13
architectural design 717.1
styling 717.4

plot 722.4
production 892.2
v intend 380.4
plan 381.8
portray 712.19
produce 892.8
originate 892.12
designate
nominate 371.19
commit 436.5
specify 517.18
name 527.11
appoint 615.11
classify 809.6
specify 865.11
designation
nomination 371.8
obligation 436.2
indication 517.3
naming 527.2
name 527.3
appointment 615.2
kind 809.3
specification 865.6
designer planner 381.6
theater man 704.23
stylist 716.9
architect 717.6
producer 892.7
designing
n visual arts 712.1
adj scheming 381.13
cunning 415.12
desirable sexual 75.25
pleasant 97.6
sought-after 100.30
eligible 371.24
welcome 585.12
expedient 995.5
desire
n sexual desire 75.5
want 100.1
wish 100.1
heart's desire 100.11
love 104.1
hope 124.1
will 323.1
intention 380.1
request 440.1
v lust 75.20
desiderate 100.14
jump at 101.6
hope 124.7
will 323.2
intend 380.4
request 440.9
desired wanted 100.29
welcome 585.12
future 839.8
normal 869.8
desirous
keen on 100.21
eager 101.8
amorous 104.26
desirous of
keen on 100.22
envious 154.4
desist
v cease to use 390.4
cease 857.6
interj cease! 857.13
desk furniture 229.1
pulpit 703.13
workplace 739.1
table 901.15
desktop computer 1042.2
desktop publishing program 1042.12
desolate
v agonize 98.12
aggrieve 112.19
destroy 395.10
depopulate 909.16
adj wretched 96.26
distressing 98.20
disconsolate 112.28
forlorn 584.12
unproductive 891.4
desolation
wretchedness 96.6
harshness 98.4
disconsolateness 112.12
destruction 395.1
forlornness 584.4
wasteland 891.2
depopulation 909.3
despair
n wretchedness 96.6
dejection 112.3
desperation 125.2
v lose heart 112.16
despair of 125.10
desperado
killer 308.11
ruffian 593.3
criminal 660.9
desperate
hopeless 125.12
reckless 493.8
rabid 926.30
straitened 1013.26
desperation 125.2
despicable
offensive 98.18
base 661.12
paltry 998.21
terrible 1000.9
despise hate 103.5
disdain 157.3
reject 372.2
flout 454.4
deprecate 510.12
despite
n hate 103.1
spite 144.6
indignity 156.2
contempt 157.1
defiance 454.1
adv in spite of 338.9
despoil
corrupt 393.12
destroy 395.10
strip 480.24
plunder 482.17
seduce 665.20
work evil 1000.6
despoliation
destruction 395.1
loss 473.1
plundering 482.6
evil 1000.3
despondency
n wretchedness 96.6
dejection 112.3
despair 125.2
v lose heart 112.16
despondent
dejected 112.22
hopeless 125.12
despot 575.14
despotic
imperious 417.16
governmental 612.17
despotism
absolutism 612.9
tyranny 612.10
dessert serving 8.10
delicacy 10.8
desserts 604.1
destabilize 810.9
destigmatize
justify 600.9
acquit 601.4
destination goal 186.5
objective 380.2
address 553.9
end 820.1
fate 964.2
destined future 839.8
inevitable 963.15
fated 964.9
destiny portion 477.5
end 820.1
predestiny 839.2
fate 964.2
chance 972.1
destitute bereft 473.8
down-and-out 619.9
insolvent 625.11
destitution
indigence 619.2
want 992.4
destroy excise 255.10
kill 308.13
spoil 393.10
deal destruction 395.10
defeat 412.6
rage 671.11
work evil 1000.6
thwart 1012.15
destroyer
battleship 180.7
ruiner 395.8
savage 593.5
destructible 16.14
destruction
excision 255.3
killing 308.1
impairment 393.1
ruin 395.1
defeat 412.1
loss 473.1
violence 671.1
disintegration 806.1
evil 1000.3
bane 1001.1
destructive
poisonous 82.7
deadly 308.23
destroying 395.26
violent 671.16
disintegrative 806.5
disastrous 1011.15
desuetude
abandonment 370.1
disuse 390.1
desultory
deviative 164.7
discursive 538.13
unordered 810.12
irregular 851.3
inconstant 854.7
fluttering 917.18
unreliable 971.20
detach
commission 615.10
enlist 615.17
disband 771.8
remove 802.10
detached
apathetic 94.13
reticent 344.10
free 430.21
aloof 583.6
secluded 584.8
impartial 649.10
unrelated 776.6
distinct 802.20
separated 802.21
incoherent 804.4
alone 872.8
unprejudiced 979.12
incurious 982.3
detachment
apathy 94.4
unconcern 102.2
reticence 344.3
military unit 461.22
aloofness 583.2
seclusion 584.1
impartiality 649.4
company 770.3
disbandment 771.3
elimination 773.2
part 793.1
separation 802.1
aloneness 872.2
unprejudicedness 979.5
incuriosity 982.1
detail
n meticulousness 339.3
military unit 461.22
motif 498.7
particular 766.3
company 770.3
part 793.1
component 796.2
v allot 477.9
amplify 538.7
commission 615.10
itemize 766.6
analyze 801.7
elaborate 861.6
particularize 865.9
sum up 1017.19
details
description 349.2
trivia 998.4
detain
slow 175.9
confine 429.12
delay 846.8
hinder 1012.10

detect 941.5
detectable
visible 31.6
discoverable 941.10
detection
investigation 938.4
discovery 941.1
radar 1036.9
detective
operative 576.10
inquirer 938.16
policeman 1008.15
détente
pacification 465.1
foreign policy 609.5
detention
slowing 175.4
imprisonment 429.3
delay 846.2
hindrance 1012.1
deter daunt 127.18
disincline 379.4
prevent 1012.14
detergent 79.17
deteriorate
aggravate 119.2
impair 393.9
sicken 393.16
be changed 852.6
degenerate 1011.11
determinant
n boundary 211.3
heredity 560.6
cause 886.1
adj bordering 211.11
determinate
circumscribed 210.6
particular 865.12
unqualified 960.2
certain 970.13
assured 970.20
determination
circumscription 210.1
measurement 300.1
will 323.1
resolution 359.1
obstinacy 361.1
intention 380.1
endeavor 403.1
solution 940.1
discovery 941.1
test 942.2
verdict 946.5
proof 957.3
ensuring 970.8
determine
direct 161.5
circumscribe 210.4
will 323.2
resolve 359.7
induce 375.22
intend 380.4
learn 570.6
end 820.5
specify 865.11
decide 886.12
exercise influence 894.8
discover 941.2
decide 946.11
prove 957.10
make sure 970.11
determined
circumscribed 210.6
resolute 359.11
trial 403.16
future 839.8
proved 957.20
predetermined 964.8
assured 970.20
confident 970.21
true 973.13
determinism
the future 839.1
fatalism 964.4
deterrent
n determent 379.2
obstacle 1012.4
adj frightening 127.28
dissuasive 379.5
warning 399.7
preventive 1012.19
detest dislike 99.3
hate 103.5
detestable
offensive 98.18
hateful 103.8
terrible 1000.9
dethrone 447.4
detonate blast 56.8
explode 671.14
shoot 904.12
fuel 1021.8
detour
n deviation 164.1
byway 383.4
bypass 914.3
v deviate 164.3
go roundabout 914.4
detoxification 87.1
detoxify 516.2
detract subtract 255.9
distract 985.6
detraction
minimization 252.5
reduction 255.2
disparagement 512.1
detrain 186.8
detriment
impairment 393.1
loss 473.1
disadvantage 996.2
evil 1000.3
detrimental
disadvantageous 996.6
harmful 1000.12
adverse 1011.13
detritus deposit 176.9
remainder 256.1
grain 1051.6
de trop
excessive 993.16
superfluous 993.17
deuce game 748.2
card 758.2
pair 873.3
deuced 513.10
deus ex machina 722.4
devaluate
cheapen 633.6
monetize 728.26
devalue corrupt 393.12
monetize 728.26
devastate
destroy 395.10
depopulate 909.16
devastation
destruction 395.1
depopulation 909.3
develop
age 14.2
grow 251.6
enlarge 259.4
become larger 259.5
expand 259.7
mature 303.9
manifest 348.5
disclose 351.4
improve 392.7
elaborate 392.10
amplify 538.7
train 568.13
process 714.15
turn into 858.17
evolve 861.5
get better 861.6
result 887.4
originate 892.12
perfect 1002.5
developer
planner 381.6
processing solution
714.13
producer 892.7
development
bodily development 14.1
birth 78.6
increase 251.1
growth 259.3
maturation 303.6
refinement 392.2
amplification 538.6
training 568.3
passage 708.24
plot 722.4
conversion 858.1
evolution 861.1
effect 887.1
deviance
deviation 164.1
obliquity 204.1
wrong 638.1
nonuniformity 782.1
circuitousness 914.1
deviant
n sexual pervert 75.16
nonconformist 868.3
adj homosexual 75.30
deviative 164.7
oblique 204.13
wrong 638.3
changed 852.10
nonconforming 868.5
eccentric 927.5
erroneous 975.16
deviate
n sexual pervert 75.16
v depart from 164.3
deflect 164.5
oblique 204.9
digress 538.9
go wrong 654.9
misbelieve 688.8
be changed 852.6
go roundabout 914.4
err 975.9
deviation
orientation 161.4
divergence 164.1
deviance 164.1
divergency 171.1
obliquity 204.1
distortion 265.1
digression 538.4
difference 780.1
nonuniformity 782.1
change 852.1
nonconformity 868.1
abnormality 870.1
circuitousness 914.1
detour 914.3
eccentricity 927.1
inaccuracy 975.2
device
surgery 91.19
trick 356.6
pretext 376.1
plan 381.1
instrumentality 384.3
instrument 384.4
stratagem 415.3
sign 517.1
signature 527.10
figure of speech 536.1
letter 546.1
heraldry 647.2
plot 722.4
motto 974.4
expedient 995.2
tool 1040.1
devil
n beast 144.14
dust storm 318.13
mischief-maker 322.3
daredevil 493.4
printer 548.12
enemy 589.6
ruffian 593.3
monster 593.6
wretch 660.2
rascal 660.3
violent person 671.9
diable 680.2
demon 680.6
v cook 11.5
annoy 96.13
devilish cruel 144.26
mischievous 322.6
diabolic 654.13
demoniac 680.17
hellish 682.8
execrable 1000.10
devil-may-care
unconcerned 102.7
nonchalant 106.15
reckless 493.8
deviltry 1000.1
devil worship
Satanism 680.14
idolatry 697.1
devious
deviative 164.7
oblique 204.13
dishonest 645.16
complex 799.4

circuitous 914.7
shrewd 920.15
devise
n bequest 478.10
v plan 381.8
bequeath 478.18
produce 892.8
originate 892.12
devitalize
weaken 16.10
unman 19.12
afflict 85.50
devoid
vacant 222.14
nonexistent 762.8
devoid of 992.13
devoir 641.1
devolve
relapse 394.4
commission 615.10
change hands 629.4
devote
spend 387.13
dedicate 477.11
sanctify 685.5
occupy 724.10
devoted
zealous 101.9
loving 104.27
obedient 326.3
resolute 359.11
observant 434.4
dedicated 587.21
faithful 644.20
unselfish 652.5
sanctified 685.8
pious 692.8
destined 964.9
engrossed 983.17
devotee
desirer 100.12
enthusiast 101.4
lover 104.12
believer 692.4
fanatic 926.18
devote oneself to
practice 328.8
be determined 359.8
undertake 404.3
espouse 509.13
busy oneself with 724.11
attend to 983.5
devotion
zeal 101.2
love 104.1
resolution 359.1
dedication 477.4
commitment 587.7
duty 641.1
fidelity 644.7
unselfishness 652.1
sanctification 685.3
piety 692.1
worship 696.1
devour
swallow 8.22
enjoy 95.13
ingest 187.11
destroy 395.10
gluttonize 672.4
kid oneself 954.6
devouring
n eating 8.1
adj greedy 100.27
devout
zealous 101.9
observant 434.4
pious 692.8
worshipful 696.16
belief 953.21
dew
n dewdrops 1065.4
v moisten 1065.12
dew point
temperature 1019.3
humidity 1065.2
dewy
young 301.9
immature 301.10
new 841.7
moist 1065.15
dewy-eyed 986.24
dexterity
rightness 219.2
skill 413.1
smartness 920.2
dexterous
right-handed 219.5
skillful 413.22
smart 920.14
diabetic 85.61
diabolic cruel 144.26
diabolical 654.13
demoniac 680.17
execrable 1000.10
diabolism
Satanism 680.14
black magic 690.2
diacritical mark
punctuation 530.15
letter 546.1
diadem circle 280.2
jewel 498.6
royal insignia 647.3
diaeresis meter 720.7
dissection 802.5
diagnosis
examination 91.12
interpretation 341.1
verdict 946.5
diagnostic
interpretative 341.14
indicative 517.23
differentiative 780.9
diagonal
crosspiece 170.5
oblique 204.7
straight line 277.2
line 517.6
diagram
n representation 349.1
plot 381.3
drawing 712.13
outline 801.4
v represent 349.8
plot 381.10
grammaticize 530.16
portray 712.19
itemize 801.7
diagrammatic 517.23
dial 216.4
dialect language 523.1
idiom 523.7
diction 532.1
dialectic
n discussion 541.7
logic 935.2
argument 935.5
adj argumentative 935.19
dialectical 935.22
dialogue talk 541.3
script 706.3
plot 722.4
argument 935.5
diameter size 257.1
bore 269.3
straight line 277.2
middle 819.1
bisector 875.3
diametric 779.7
diamond
n good person 659.1
playground 743.11
baseball 745.1
good thing 999.5
hardness 1046.6
v figure 498.9
Diana 1072.12
diapason range 158.2
harmony 708.3
scale 709.6
interval 709.20
music 711.22
diaper 5.19
diaphanous
dainty 248.7
thin 270.16
light 1025.31
transparent 1029.4
diaphragm
digestive system 2.18
loudspeaker 50.8
contraceptive 86.23
partition 213.5
middle 819.1
diarist writer 547.15
author 718.4
historian 719.4
chronologist 832.10
diarrhea
defecation 12.2
symptom 85.9
diary
record book 549.11
periodical 555.1
history 719.1
chronicle 832.9
diaspora 771.3
diastole
distension 259.2
round 850.3
pulsation 916.3
diatonic scale 709.6
diatribe berating 510.7
speech 543.2
dice
n gambling device 759.8
v square 879.3
dicey
speculative 759.27
uncertain 971.16
vague 971.19
chance 972.15
hazardous 1006.10
dichotomy
severance 802.2
doubleness 873.1
bisection 875.1
dichromatic
chromatic 35.16
variegated 47.9
dick detective 576.10
gumshoe 576.11
police 1008.16
dick around 923.6
dicker
n compact 437.1
bargain 731.5
v bargain 731.18
Dick Turpin 483.11
dictate
n precept 419.1
command 420.1
law 673.3
axiom 974.2
v command 420.8
prescribe 420.9
oblige 424.5
dominate 612.15
necessitate 963.8
dictator 575.14
dictatorial
lordly 141.11
imperious 417.16
governmental 612.17
dictatorship
mastership 417.7
directorship 573.4
government 612.4
absolutism 612.9
diction phrasing 529.2
word-usage 532
words 532.1
dictionary
reference book 554.9
word list 871.4
dictum
affirmation 334.1
rule 419.2
decree 420.4
remark 524.3
verdict 946.5
maxim 974.1
axiom 974.2
didactic
preceptive 419.4
advisory 422.8
educational 568.18
poetic 720.15
dogmatic 970.22
diddle
n deception 356.9
v copulate 75.21
waste time 331.13
dally 331.14
deceive 356.14
fake 356.19
die
n engraving tool 713.8
cast 785.6
mold 786.6
base 901.8
v disappear 34.2
decease 307.19

decline 393.17
perish 395.23
stall 410.16
cease to exist 762.6
come to an end 820.6
pass 837.6
burn out 1022.8
die away
disappear 34.2
recede 168.2
decrease 252.6
cease to exist 762.6
come to an end 820.6
burn out 1022.8
die down quiet 173.8
decrease 252.6
burn out 1022.8
die for 100.14
diehard
n obstinate person 361.6
rightwinger 611.9
conservative 853.4
adj conservative 853.8
the die is cast 963.20
die laughing 116.8
die out disappear 34.2
be dying 307.26
cease to exist 762.6
burn out 1022.8
diesel means of propulsion 904.17
engine type 1043.3
diet
n dieting 7.13
council 423.1
legislature 613.1
assembly 770.2
v go on a diet 7.19
eat 8.20
slenderize 270.13
dietary
n diet 7.13
adj dietetic 7.23
dietitian
nutritionist 7.15
hospital staff 90.11
differ dissent 333.4
argue 456.8
vary 780.5
diversify 782.2
not resemble 787.2
disagree 789.5
difference
n remainder 255.8
dissent 333.1
disagreement 456.2
heraldry 647.2
dissimilarity 780.1
otherness 780.1
nonuniformity 782.1
argument 789.1
inequality 791.1
change 852.1
abnormality 870.1
sum 1017.6
v differentiate 780.6
different
differing 780.7
nonuniform 782.3
dissimilar 787.4
novel 841.11
particular 865.12
abnormal 870.9
eccentric 927.5
differential
n margin 780.2
characteristic 865.4
gear 1040.9
adj differentiative 780.9
classificational 809.7
discriminating 944.7
numeric 1017.23
differentiate
signify 517.17
difference 780.6
diversify 782.2
characterize 865.10
discriminate 944.4
differentiation
indication 517.3
differencing 780.4
nonuniformity 782.1
particularity 865.1
characterization 865.8
distinction 944.3
notation 1017.2
difficult perverse 361.11
finical 495.10
hard to understand 522.14
adverse 1011.13
difficile 1013.17
difficulties
poverty 619.1
adversity 1011.1
difficulty
annoyance 96.2
disagreement 456.2
abstruseness 522.2
adversity 1011.1
obstacle 1012.4
impediment 1012.6
difficultness 1013.1
diffidence
fearfulness 127.3
self-effacement 139.2
demur 325.2
hesitation 362.3
doubt 955.2
diffraction
deflection 164.2
dispersion 771.1
wave 916.4
diffuse
v deflect 164.5
radiate 171.6
transfer 176.10
pervade 221.7
rarefy 299.3
publish 352.10
disperse 771.4
shatter 802.13
loosen 804.3
adj deflective 164.8
rare 299.4
formless 538.11
dispersed 771.9
extensive 864.13
plentiful 991.7
diffusion
deflection 164.2
radiation 171.2
transferal 176.1
permeation 221.3
rarefaction 299.2
publication 352.1
waste 473.2
diffuseness 538.1
dispersion 771.1
disruption 802.3
noncohesion 804.1
diffusive
formless 538.11
dispersive 771.11
dig
n disrespect 156.3
pit 284.4
thrust 902.2
hit 902.4
v respond 93.11
deepen 275.8
excavate 284.15
read one loud and clear 521.8
study 570.12
drudge 725.14
play 749.7
thrust 902.12
know 928.12
search 938.31
cultivate 1069.17
harvest 1069.19
digest
n abridgment 557.1
code 673.5
table 808.4
v assimilate 7.18
take 134.8
absorb 187.13
consume 388.3
understand 521.7
learn 570.7
codify 673.10
classify 809.6
consider 931.12
think over 931.13
digestion
ingestion 2.17
assimilation 7.8
sorption 187.6
consumption 388.1
absorption 570.2
pulping 1063.3
dig in
remain firm 359.9
fortify 460.9
digit finger 73.5
foot 199.5
number 1017.3
digital prehensile 474.9
numeric 1017.23
computer term 1042.18
dignified solemn 111.3
stately 136.12
lofty 544.14
dignify formalize 580.5
honor 662.12
dignitary 997.8
dignity solemnity 111.1
proud bearing 136.2
elegance 533.1
loftiness 544.6
formality 580.1
prestige 662.4
ecclesiastical office 698.5
notability 997.2
personage 997.8
digression
deviation 164.1
obliquity 204.1
departure 538.4
circuitousness 914.1
detour 914.3
digs 228.4
dig up
extract 192.10
disinter 192.11
acquire 472.9
assemble 770.18
uncover 941.4
be curious 981.3
dike
n crack 224.2
lake 241.1
trench 290.2
barrier 1012.5
deposit 1058.7
v excavate 284.15
furrow 290.3
dilapidated
unsteady 16.16
ramshackle 393.33
disintegrative 806.5
slovenly 810.15
stale 842.14
dilate enlarge 259.4
make larger 259.5
bulge 283.11
amplify 538.7
dilation
distension 259.2
swelling 283.4
exaggeration 355.1
amplification 538.6
dilatory
dawdling 175.11
reluctant 325.6
indolent 331.19
delaying 846.17
dilemma
no choice 371.3
syllogism 935.6
bewilderment 971.3
horns of a dilemma 1013.7
dilettante
enthusiast 101.4
connoisseur 496.7
specialist 866.3
half scholar 929.6
ignoramus 930.8
trifler 998.10
diligence
industry 330.6
painstakingness 339.2
perseverance 360.1
studiousness 570.4
attention 983.1
diligent
industrious 330.22
painstaking 339.11
persevering 360.8
studious 570.17
attentive 983.15
dillydally dawdle 175.8
dally 331.14

wait 846.12
dilute
v cut 16.11
abate 252.8
thin 270.12
rarefy 299.3
dissipate 771.5
adulterate 797.12
adj insipid 65.2
rare 299.4
diluvium deposit 176.9
dregs 256.2
dim
n darkishness 1027.2
v blind 30.7
blur 32.4
decolor 36.5
darken 1027.9
grow dark 1027.12
adj dim-sighted 28.13
inconspicuous 32.6
colorless 36.7
faint 52.16
obscure 522.15
dull 922.16
darkish 1027.15
dime
n money 728.7
v inform on 551.13
dime-a-dozen
dirt cheap 633.8
plentiful 991.7
common 998.21
dimension space 158.1
size 257.1
dime store 736.1
diminish relieve 120.5
abase 137.5
recede 168.2
decrease 252.6
reduce 252.7
subtract 255.9
narrow 270.11
languish 393.18
extenuate 600.12
moderate 670.6
qualify 959.3
diminution relief 120.1
decrease 252.1
reduction 255.2
modulation 670.2
depression 913.1
diminutive
n runt 258.4
nickname 527.7
adj miniature 258.12
nominal 527.15
dimple
n indentation 284.6
v indent 284.14
dim view 510.1
dimwit 924.2
din
n noise 53.3
pandemonium 810.5
v boom 53.7
ding 849.10
dine feed 8.18
dinner 8.21
diner meal 8.6
eater 8.16
restaurant 8.17
dining room 197.11
ding
n ringing 54.3
disrespect 156.3
v ring 54.8
din 849.10
ding-a-ling
ringing 54.3
fool 924.3
dingdong
n ringing 54.3
regularity 781.2
repetitiousness 849.4
fool 924.3
v ring 54.8
adj monotonous 849.15
dingy colorless 36.7
grimy 38.11
gray 39.4
dirty 80.22
dining room
restaurant 8.17
cafeteria 197.11
dinky inferior 250.6
little 258.10
tidy 807.8
insignificant 998.18
dinner
n meal 8.6
v dine 8.21
dinner party 8.9
dinnerware 735.4
dinosaur
behemoth 257.14
reptile 311.25
dint
n power 18.1
indentation 284.6
print 517.7
hit 902.4
v indent 284.14
diocese region 231.5
see 698.8
Dionysus
bibulousness 88.2
patron 704.26
fertility 890.5
agricultural deity 1069.4
diorama spectacle 33.7
scene 712.12
dip
n bath 79.9
declivity 204.5
cavity 284.2
submergence 367.2
pickpocket 483.2
candle 1026.2
v color 35.14
ladle 176.17
maneuver 184.40
incline 204.10
submerge 367.7
signal 517.22
baptize 701.17
flood 1065.14
diphthong 524.12
diploma grant 443.5
certificate 549.6
diplomacy skill 413.1
Machiavellianism 415.2
foreign policy 609.5
diplomat expert 413.11
Machiavellian 415.8
diplomatist 576.6
diplomatic
n diplomat 576.6
foreign policy 609.5
adj skillful 413.22
cunning 415.12
ambassadorial 576.17
political 609.43
diplomatic agent 576.6
dipsomania
substance abuse 87.1
alcoholism 88.3
psychosis 926.3
diptych
record book 549.11
picture 712.11
dire horrid 98.19
terrible 127.30
ominous 133.17
bad 1000.9
unfortunate 1011.14
disastrous 1011.15
dire straits 619.1
direct
v exercise influence 894.8
adj directional 161.12
straight 277.6
artless 416.5
free-acting 430.23
natural 499.7
clear 521.11
elegant 533.6
plain-speaking 535.3
lineal 560.18
candid 644.17
continuous 812.8
exact 973.17
adv directly 161.23
direction bearing 161.1
directionality 161.1
motivation 375.2
precept 419.1
directive 420.3
advice 422.1
pointer 517.4
address 553.9
teaching 568.1
supervision 573.2
management 573.1
government 612.1
production 704.13
operation 889.1
trend 896.2
directive
n direction 420.3
adj directable 161.13
motivating 375.25
commanding 420.13
advisory 422.8
directing 573.12
director librarian 558.3
person in charge 574.1
directeur 574.1
governor 575.6
theater man 704.23
motion-picture studio 706.4
conductor 710.17
businessman 730.1
directorship 417.1
directory
n council 423.1
register 549.9
information 551.1
reference book 554.9
guidebook 574.10
directorate 574.11
adj directing 573.12
dirge
n funeral song 115.6
last offices 309.4
funeral 309.5
v lament 115.10
dirigible
n aerostat 181.11
adj directable 161.13
dirt
n grime 80.6
land 234.1
scandal 552.8
obscenity 666.4
v dirty 80.15
dirt cheap 633.8
dirty
v dirty up 80.15
stain 1004.6
adj dingy 38.11
grimy 80.22
stormy 318.23
cloudy 319.8
cursing 513.8
unfair 650.10
evil-minded 654.15
base 661.12
lascivious 665.29
obscene 666.9
slimy 1062.14
dirty look 27.5
dirty pool
juggling 356.5
smear campaign 609.14
treachery 645.6
unfairness 650.2
dirty trick trick 356.6
treachery 645.6
dirty word oath 513.4
barbarism 526.6
disability
inability 19.2
disease 85.1
handicap 603.2
disadvantage 996.2
disable
disenable 19.9
afflict 85.50
cripple 393.14
disabled
weakened 16.18
incapacitated 19.16
crippled 393.30
ended 820.8
disabled person 85.45
disabuse 977.2
disaccord
n dissent 333.1
hostility 451.2
unharmonious relationship 456
discord 456.1
ruffled feelings 589.2

difference 780.1
disagreement 789.1
nonconformity 868.1
v discord 456.8
disagree 789.5
disaccustomed 374.4
disadvantage
n handicap 603.2
drawback 996.2
impediment 1012.6
trouble 1013.3
v inconvenience 996.4
work evil 1000.6
disadvantaged
inferior 250.6
indigent 619.8
the disadvantaged
the underprivileged 606.4
the poor 619.3
disaffected
averse 99.8
alienated 589.11
unfaithful 645.20
disaffirm 335.4
disagree dissent 333.4
refuse 442.3
differ 456.8
dispute 789.5
disagreeable
unsavory 64.5
unpleasant 98.17
irascible 110.19
unkind 144.16
disagreeing 789.6
disagreement
dissent 325.1
dissidence 333.1
refusal 442.1
difficulty 456.2
disapproval 510.1
relation 775.1
contrariety 779.1
difference 780.1
disaccord 789
discord 789.1
nonconformity 868.1
disagree with
not be good for 82.4
dissent 333.4
differ 780.5
disallow deny 335.4
refuse 442.3
prohibit 444.3
disapprove 510.10
not pay 625.6
disappear
be invisible 32.3
vanish 34.2
quit 188.9
absent oneself 222.8
hide 346.8
perish 395.23
cease to exist 762.6
flit 828.6
pass 837.6
disappearance
invisibility 32.1
vanishing 34.1
disappearing 34.1
absence 222.4
flight 368.4
disappoint
dissatisfy 108.5
shatter one's hopes 125.11
defeat expectation 132.2
disillusion 977.2
disappointed
discontented 108.7
bitterly disappointed 132.5
unaccomplished 408.3
disapproving 510.21
disillusioned 977.5
disappointment 992.1
disapprobation
dislike 99.1
resentment 152.1
dissent 333.1
disapproval 510.1
disrepute 661.1
disapproval
dislike 99.1
resentment 152.1
dissent 333.1
rejection 372.1
disapprobation 510.1
disparagement 512.1
disapprove reject 372.2
disfavor 510.10
stigmatize 661.9
disarm disable 19.9
lay down one's arms 465.11
disarmament 465.6
disarming 504.18
disarrange
dislocate 160.5
disorder 810.9
derange 811.2
discontinue 813.3
agitate 917.10
disarray
n disorder 810.1
v undress 6.7
disarrange 811.2
disassemble
demolish 395.17
take apart 802.15
disassociation
unrelatedness 776.1
separation 802.1
disaster
fatality 308.8
debacle 395.4
upheaval 671.5
misfortune 1011.2
disastrous
destructive 395.26
convulsive 671.23
calamitous 1011.15
disavow
n recant 363.8
v deny 335.4
disavowal denial 335.2
recantation 363.3
rejection 372.1
disband disarm 465.11
disperse 771.8
part company 802.19
disbar depose 447.4
dismiss 909.19
disbelief
nonreligious 695.5
unbelief 955.1
doubtfulness 971.2
disbelieve doubt 695.14
unbelieve 955.5
refuse to believe 956.3
disburden ease 120.7
lighten 298.6
confess 351.7
unload 909.23
disembarrass 1014.9
disburse
parcel out 477.8
spend 626.5
disc record 50.12
recording media 549.10
discard
n derelict 370.4
rejection 372.1
discarding 390.3
elimination 773.2
v abandon 370.5
reject 372.2
eliminate 390.7
eject 909.13
discern see 27.12
perceive 521.9
know 928.12
detect 941.5
discernible visible 31.6
manifest 348.8
knowable 928.25
on the right scent 941.10
discerning
sagacious 920.16
perceptive 944.8
discharge
n humor 2.24
excretion 12.1
excrement 12.3
detonation 56.3
release 120.2
emergence 190.1
outflow 190.4
performance 328.2
accomplishment 407.1
exemption 430.8
freedom 431.2
observance 434.1
execution 437.4
acquittal 601.1
payment 624.1
acknowledgment 627.2
explosion 671.7
shot 904.4
repulse 908.2
ejection 909.1
dismissal 909.5
disgorgement 909.7
arc 1032.6
v excrete 12.12
blast 56.8
exude 190.15
perform 328.9
accomplish 407.4
exempt 430.14
release 431.5
perform 434.3
execute 437.9
acquit 601.4
pay in full 624.13
erupt 671.13
explode 671.14
disband 771.8
shoot 904.12
repulse 908.3
eject 909.13
dismiss 909.19
unload 909.23
disgorge 909.25
disciple
enthusiast 101.4
follower 166.2
protégé 572.2
associate 616.8
religion 684.2
believer 692.4
convert 858.7
disciplinarian 575.14
discipline
n limitation 210.2
self-control 359.5
strictness 425.1
training 568.3
study 568.8
punishment 604.1
government 612.1
temperance 668.1
occupation 724.4
orderliness 807.3
science 928.10
v limit 210.5
hold a tight hand upon 425.4
train 568.13
punish 604.10
govern 612.12
conform 867.3
disclaim
n recant 363.8
v deny 335.4
reject 372.2
refuse 442.3
disclose unclose 292.12
manifest 348.5
reveal 351.4
signify 517.17
say 524.22
inform 551.8
uncover 941.4
testify 957.9
disclosure
appearance 33.1
opening 292.1
informing 343.2
manifestation 348.1
revelation 351.1
publicizing 351.1
indication 517.3
discovery 941.1
testimony 957.2
disco 743.13
discolor
n discoloration 1004.2
v decolor 36.5
mark 517.19
stain 1004.6
discombobulate
agitate 105.14
confuse 985.7
discomfit chagrin 96.15
dismay 127.19
overwhelm 412.8
confuse 985.7
thwart 1012.15

- **discomfiture**
  - chagrin 96.4
  - disappointment 132.1
  - rout 412.2
  - disorder 810.1
  - confusion 985.3
  - frustration 1012.3
- **discomfort**
  - *n* pain 26.1
  - unpleasure 96.1
  - distressfulness 98.5
  - *v* chagrin 96.16
  - distress 98.14
- **disconcert**
  - *n* bewilderment 971.3
  - *v* chagrin 96.15
  - mortify 98.13
  - agitate 105.14
  - dismay 127.19
  - bewilder 971.12
  - confuse 985.7
  - thwart 1012.15
- **disconnect** 802.8
- **disconnected**
  - unrelated 776.6
  - separated 802.21
  - incoherent 804.4
  - discontinuous 813.4
  - irregular 851.3
- **disconsolate**
  - wretched 96.26
  - inconsolable 112.28
  - hopeless 125.12
- **discontent**
  - *n* unpleasure 96.1
  - dissatisfaction 108.1
  - discontentment 108.1
  - ill humor 110.1
  - unhappiness 112.2
  - resentment 152.1
  - disapproval 510.1
  - *v* give no pleasure 96.12
  - dissatisfy 108.5
- **discontinue**
  - break the habit 374.3
  - cease to use 390.4
  - swear off 668.8
  - interrupt 813.3
  - cease 857.6
- **discontinuity**
  - dislocation 160.1
  - interval 224.1
  - deficiency 795.2
  - separation 802.1
  - noncohesion 804.1
  - interrupted sequence 813
  - discontinuousness 813.1
  - irregularity 851.1
  - revolution 852.2
- **discontinuous**
  - separate 802.20
  - incoherent 804.4
  - unordered 810.12
  - noncontinuous 813.4
  - irregular 851.3
- **discord**
  - noise 53.3
  - raucousness 58.2
  - dissonant sounds 61
  - discordance 61.1
  - disaccord 456.1
  - disagreement 789.1
- **discordance**
  - dissonance 61.1
  - disaccord 456.1
  - difference 780.1
  - disagreement 789.1
- **discordant**
  - off-color 35.21
  - dissonant 61.4
  - disaccordant 456.15
  - contrary 779.6
  - different 780.7
  - disagreeing 789.6
- **discotheque** 743.13
- **discount**
  - *n* deduction 631.1
  - cut 631.1
  - *v* reject 372.2
  - price 630.11
  - cut 631.2
  - discount notes 728.27
  - allow for 959.5
- **discourage**
  - sadden 112.18
  - daunt 127.18
  - disincline 379.4
  - prevent 1012.14
- **discouragement**
  - dejection 112.3
  - deterrent 379.2
  - prevention 1012.2
- **discourse**
  - *n* speech 524.1
  - conversation 541.1
  - lecture 543.3
  - treatise 556.1
  - lesson 568.7
  - reasoning 935.1
  - *v* make a speech 543.9
  - write upon 556.5
  - expound 568.16
- **discourteous**
  - disrespectful 156.7
  - uncourteous 505.4
- **discourtesy**
  - insensibility 25.1
  - disrespect 156.1
  - bad behavior 321.2
  - misbehavior 322.1
  - impoliteness 505.1
  - discourteousness 505.1
- **discover** see 27.12
  - disclose 351.4
  - learn 570.6
  - innovate 852.9
  - originate 892.12
  - find 941.2
- **discovery**
  - disclosure 351.1
  - find 472.6
  - innovation 852.4
  - finding 941.1
- **discredit**
  - *n* disrepute 661.1
  - unbelief 955.1
  - *v* disparage 512.8
  - disgrace 661.8
  - disbelieve 955.5
  - disprove 958.4
- **discreet** reticent 344.10
  - secretive 345.15
  - cautious 494.8
  - judicious 920.19
- **discrepancy**
  - difference 255.8
  - contrariety 779.1
  - differentness 780.1
  - disagreement 789.1
- **discrete**
  - dispersed 771.9
  - unrelated 776.6
  - different 780.7
  - separate 802.20
  - incoherent 804.4
  - discontinuous 813.4
- **discretion**
  - will 323.1
  - reticence 344.3
  - secrecy 345.1
  - option 371.2
  - free will 430.6
  - caution 494.1
  - judiciousness 920.7
  - foresight 961.1
- **discriminate**
  - favor 650.8
  - differentiate 780.6
  - distinguish 944.4
  - be discriminating 944.5
- **discriminate against** 980.8
- **discriminating**
  - selective 371.23
  - fastidious 495.9
  - elegant 496.9
  - differentiative 780.9
  - judicious 920.19
  - discriminate 944.7
- **discrimination**
  - selectivity 371.10
  - fastidiousness 495.1
  - taste 496.1
  - elegance 533.1
  - partiality 650.3
  - differentiation 780.4
  - judiciousness 920.7
  - critical discernment 944.2
  - discriminateness 944.1
  - judgment 946.1
  - social discrimination 980.4
- **discursive**
  - deviative 164.7
  - wandering 177.37
  - aimless 538.13
  - circuitous 914.7
  - intelligent 920.12
  - dialectic 935.22
- **discuss** confer 541.11
  - debate 541.12
  - write upon 556.5
- **discussion**
  - conference 541.6
  - debate 541.7
  - treatise 556.1
- **disdain**
  - *n* disdainfulness 141.5
  - insolence 142.1
  - contempt 157.1
  - rejection 372.1
  - defiance 454.1
  - *v* scorn 157.3
  - reject 372.2
  - flout 454.4
  - be hard to please 495.8
  - deprecate 510.12
- **disease**
  - *n* illness 85.1
  - harmfulness 1000.5
  - bane 1001.1
  - *v* infect 85.51
- **disembark**
  - anchor 182.15
  - land 186.8
- **disembarrass**
  - lighten 120.7
  - extricate 431.7
  - disencumber 1014.9
- **disembody**
  - spiritualize 689.20
  - unsubstantiate 764.4
  - dematerialize 1053.6
- **disembowel** 192.13
- **disembroil**
  - extricate 431.7
  - disinvolve 798.5
  - disembarrass 1014.9
- **disenchanted**
  - averse 99.8
  - disapproving 510.21
  - disillusioned 977.5
- **disencumber**
  - relieve 120.7
  - lighten 298.6
  - disembarrass 1014.9
- **disenfranchise** 432.8
- **disengage**
  - retreat 163.6
  - extricate 431.7
  - separate 802.8
  - detach 802.10
  - disembarrass 1014.9
- **disentangle**
  - extract 192.10
  - straighten 277.5
  - extricate 431.7
  - disinvolve 798.5
  - solve 940.2
  - disembarrass 1014.9
- **disfavor**
  - *n* dislike 99.1
  - falling-out 456.4
  - disapproval 510.1
  - disrepute 661.1
  - *v* dislike 99.3
  - disapprove 510.10
- **disfigure** deform 265.7
  - blemish 1004.4
  - offend 1015.5
- **disfranchise** 432.8
- **disgorge**
  - relinquish 475.3
  - erupt 671.13
  - debouch 909.25
  - vomit 909.26
- **disgrace**
  - *n* humiliation 137.2
  - disparagement 512.1
  - abomination 638.2
  - iniquity 654.3
  - scandal 661.5
  - *v* humiliate 137.4
  - disparage 512.8
  - dishonor 661.8

disgraceful
wrong 638.3
wicked 654.16
shameful 661.11
disgruntled
discontented 108.7
disapproving 510.21
disguise
n costume 5.9
veil 346.2
sham 354.3
cover 356.11
dissimilarity 787.1
v conceal 346.6
misrepresent 350.3
falsify 354.16
dissimilate 787.3
disgust
n hostility 99.2
v repel 64.4
offend 98.11
displease 99.6
disgusted
pleasureless 96.20
hating 103.7
satiated 994.6
disgusting filthy 80.23
offensive 98.18
horrid 98.19
base 661.12
terrible 1000.9
dish
n serving 8.10
tableware 8.12
culinary preparation 10.7
cooking 11.1
baseball 745.1
basketball game 747.3
beauty 1016.9
v ladle 176.17
be concave 284.12
hollow 284.13
do for 395.11
play 747.4
thwart 1012.15
dishabille 5.20
disharmony
discord 61.1
disaccord 456.1
disagreement 789.1
disorder 810.1
dishearten
dissatisfy 108.5
sadden 112.18
daunt 127.18
prevent 1012.14
dishevel
disorder 810.9
disarrange 811.2
dishonest
falsehearted 354.31
insincere 354.32
untruthful 354.34
dishonorable 645.16
dishonesty
falseheartedness 354.4
untruthfulness 354.8
fraud 356.8
improbity 645.1
dishonor
n disrespect 156.1
nonpayment 625.1
improbity 645.1
disrepute 661.1
v offend 156.5
not pay 625.6
disgrace 661.8
desecrate 694.4
dish out
ladle 176.17
parcel out 477.8
give 478.12
administer 643.6
dishpan 79.12
dish up
ladle 176.17
provide 385.7
propose 439.5
dishwasher
washbasin 79.12
washer 79.15
dishwater
symbol of weakness 16.7
offal 80.9
refuse 391.4
dishy delightful 97.8
desirable 100.30
alluring 377.8
beautiful 1016.22
disillusion
n disapproval 510.1
disillusionment 977.1
v disappoint 132.2
disillude 977.2
disincentive 379.2
disinclination
dislike 99.1
refusal 325.1
disinfect 79.24
disinfectant
n cure 86.21
poison 1001.3
adj antiseptic 86.43
disingenuous
insincere 354.32
deceitful 645.18
sophistical 936.10
disinherit 480.23
disintegrate
weaken 16.9
strike dead 308.18
decay 393.22
break 393.23
demolish 395.17
be destroyed 395.22
disband 771.8
come apart 802.9
decompose 806.3
lapse into disorder 810.8
be brittle 1050.3
pulverize 1051.9
powder 1051.10
disintegration
frailty 16.2
decay 393.6
destruction 395.1
disbandment 771.3
disruption 802.3
coming-apart 806.1
decomposition 806.1
disorder 810.1
pulverization 1051.4
disinterest
n apathy 94.4
unconcern 102.2
impartiality 649.4
unselfishness 652.1
incuriosity 982.1
v disincline 379.4
disinterested
apathetic 94.13
unconcerned 102.7
impartial 649.10
unselfish 652.5
unprejudiced 979.12
incurious 982.3
disinvolve
extricate 431.7
disintricate 798.5
disembarrass 1014.9
disjoin
differentiate 780.6
separate 802.8
loosen 804.3
disintegrate 806.3
discontinue 813.3
disjointed
dislocated 160.9
separated 802.21
disjunction
elimination 773.2
relation 775.1
unrelatedness 776.1
differentiation 780.4
separation 802.1
noncohesion 804.1
disintegration 806.1
disorder 810.1
discontinuity 813.1
disk circle 280.2
lamina 296.2
recording media 549.10
rotator 915.4
magnetic disk 1042.6
diskette
recording media 549.10
disk 1042.6
disk jockey 1034.23
dislike
n unpleasure 96.1
distaste 99.1
hate 103.1
v mislike 99.3
have it in for 103.6
dislocate
displace 160.5
disjoint 802.16
disarrange 811.2
dislocation
displacement 160.1
separation 802.1
noncohesion 804.1
disarrangement 811.1
dislodge
unplace 160.6
remove 176.11
extricate 431.7
evict 909.15
disloyal
apostate 363.11
unfaithful 645.20
dismal gray 39.4
distressing 98.20
gloomy 112.24
dull 117.6
hopeless 125.12
pessimistic 125.16
funereal 309.22
dismantle
demolish 395.17
disassemble 802.15
dismay
n fear 127.1
v distress 98.14
disconcert 127.19
bewilder 971.12
dismayed
frightened 127.25
cowardly 491.10
bewildered 971.24
dismember
torture 604.16
tear apart 802.14
loosen 804.3
dismiss slight 157.6
reject 372.2
release 431.5
depose 447.4
acquit 601.4
disband 771.8
repulse 908.3
send off 909.18
discharge 909.19
refute 958.5
dismiss from one's thoughts 984.4
dismissal snub 157.2
rejection 372.1
release 431.2
deposal 447.2
acquittal 601.1
disbandment 771.3
repulse 908.2
discharge 909.5
dismount
dislodge 160.6
get down 194.7
disassemble 802.15
disobedience
refusal 325.1
noncompliance 327.1
nonobedience 327.1
lawlessness 418.1
refusal 442.1
disoblige offend 156.5
inconvenience 996.4
disorder
n disease 85.1
formlessness 263.1
misbehavior 322.1
anarchy 418.2
nonuniformity 782.1
noncohesion 804.1
disarrangement 810.1
disorderliness 810.1
change 852.1
agitation 917.1
vagueness 971.4
confusion 985.3
v afflict 85.50
deform 263.3
disorganize 810.9
disarrange 811.2

disorganization
decay 393.6
destruction 395.1
anarchy 418.2
disbandment 771.3
disintegration 806.1
disorder 810.1
disarrangement 811.1
confusion 985.3
disorientation
orientation 161.4
insanity 926.1
confusion 985.3
disoriented
insane 926.26
bewildered 971.24
confused 985.12
disown
n recant 363.8
v deny 335.4
reject 372.2
dispossess 480.23
disparage
disrespect 156.4
disdain 157.3
subtract 255.9
deprecate 510.12
depreciate 512.8
stigmatize 661.9
underestimate 950.2
disparaging
disrespectful 156.7
condemnatory 510.22
derogatory 512.13
disparate
different 780.7
dissimilar 787.4
unequal 791.4
disparity dissent 333.1
lack of agreement 456.2
difference 780.1
dissimilarity 787.1
disagreement 789.1
inequality 791.1
dispassion
unfeeling 94.1
apathy 94.4
unconcern 102.2
inexcitability 106.1
impartiality 649.4
moderation 670.1
dispatch
n velocity 174.1
killing 308.1
performance 328.2
quickness 330.3
accomplishment 407.1
information 551.1
message 552.4
letter 553.2
promptness 845.3
v devour 8.22
send 176.15
kill 308.13
perform 328.9
hasten 401.4
accomplish 407.4
mail 553.12
dispel disappear 34.2
dissipate 771.5
part company 802.19
do away with 909.21
dispensable
apportioned 477.12
justifiable 600.14
superfluous 993.17
insignificant 998.17
dispensary
drugstore 86.36
hospital room 197.25
dispensation
permission 443.1
relinquishment 475.1
distribution 477.2
administration 573.3
government 612.1
privilege 642.2
divine function 677.13
dispersion 771.1
dispense
exempt 430.14
permit 443.9
parcel out 477.8
give 478.12
vend 734.9
disperse 771.4
dispense with
not use 390.5
exempt 430.14
relinquish 475.3
disperse
disappear 34.2
deflect 164.5
radiate 171.6
spread 259.6
rarefy 299.3
parcel out 477.8
scatter 771.4
disband 771.8
shatter 802.13
part company 802.19
loosen 804.3
dispersion
deflection 164.2
radiation 171.2
expansion 259.1
rarefaction 299.2
distribution 477.2
scattering 771.1
disbandment 771.3
noncohesion 804.1
dispirited
dejected 112.22
weary 118.11
displace
dislocate 160.5
remove 176.11
depose 447.4
come after 835.3
substitute for 862.5
dismiss 909.19
displaced person
stateless person 160.4
migrant 178.5
fugitive 368.5
outcast 586.4
display
n appearance 33.2
spectacle 33.7
externalization 206.4
front 216.1
demonstration 348.2
publication 352.1
show 501.4
signal 1036.11
v externalize 206.5
manifest 348.5
make public 352.11
flaunt 501.17
signify 517.17
evidence 957.8
displeased averse 99.8
discontented 108.7
disapproving 510.21
displeasing
unsavory 64.5
unpleasant 98.17
unlikable 99.7
unsatisfactory 108.9
displeasure
unpleasure 96.1
unpleasantness 98.1
dislike 99.1
unhappiness 112.2
resentment 152.1
disapproval 510.1
disposal
placement 159.6
discard 390.3
relinquishment 475.1
distribution 477.2
administration 573.3
transfer 629.1
elimination 773.2
order 807.1
arrangement 808.1
dispose locate 159.11
take direction 161.7
induce 375.22
parcel out 477.8
order 807.4
distribute 808.9
influence 894.7
exercise influence 894.8
disposed
adj willing 324.5
arranged 808.14
dispositioned 978.8
prep inclined to 896.6
dispose of devour 8.22
kill 308.13
perform 328.9
discard 390.7
put an end to 395.12
accomplish 407.4
relinquish 475.3
give away 478.21
eliminate 773.5
end 820.5
refute 958.5
disposition
placement 159.6
will 323.1
plan 381.1
governance 417.5
battle array 458.3
relinquishment 475.1
distribution 477.2
administration 573.3
government 612.1
transfer 629.1
nature 767.4
elimination 773.2
order 807.1
arrangement 808.1
tendency 896.1
character 978.3
dispossess
foreclose 480.23
evict 909.15
dispossession
loss 473.1
reclaiming 480.7
eviction 909.2
disproportion
n distortion 265.1
inconsistency 789.2
inequality 791.1
disorder 810.1
v deform 265.7
unequalize 791.2
disproportionate
exaggerated 355.4
disagreeing 789.6
inconsistent 789.8
unequal 791.4
unordered 810.12
disprove deny 335.4
invalidate 958.4
disputable 971.17
disputatious
contentious 110.26
resistant 453.5
partisan 456.17
argumentative 935.19
dispute
n resistance 453.1
quarrel 456.5
contention 457.1
argumentation 935.4
questioning 938.12
v object 333.5
deny 335.4
offer resistance 453.3
quarrel 456.11
contest 457.21
argue 935.16
doubt 955.6
disqualification
inability 19.2
unpreparedness 406.1
disqualify
invalidate 19.11
make impossible 967.6
disquiet
n unpleasure 96.1
trepidation 105.5
anxiety 126.1
fearfulness 127.5
nervousness 128.1
impatience 135.1
agitation 917.1
v give no pleasure 96.12
distress 96.16
excite 105.14
concern 126.4
frighten 127.15
agitate 917.10
disquisition
treatise 556.1
lesson 568.7
disregard
n unconcern 102.2
forgiveness 148.1

snub 157.2
neglect 340.1
rejection 372.1
nonobservance 435.1
defiance 454.1
inattention 984.1
v take 134.8
condone 148.4
slight 157.6
disobey 327.6
neglect 340.6
reject 372.2
lose sight of 435.3
flout 454.4
allow for 959.5
keep an open mind 979.7
be inattentive 984.2
disrepair
uselessness 391.1
impairment 393.1
disreputable
n bad person 660.1
adj discreditable 661.10
disrepute 661.1
disrespect
n impudence 142.2
irreverence 156.1
low esteem 156.1
disobedience 327.1
discourteousness 505.2
disapproval 510.1
v not respect 156.4
disrobe 6.7
disrupt shatter 802.13
thwart 1012.15
disruption
misbehavior 322.1
destruction 395.1
anarchy 418.2
falling-out 456.4
dissolution 802.3
disorder 810.1
dissatisfaction
unpleasure 96.1
discontent 108.1
disappointment 132.1
resentment 152.1
dissent 333.1
disapproval 510.1
dissatisfied
discontented 108.7
disappointed 132.5
disapproving 510.21
dissect analyze 801.6
separate 802.17
dissemblance sham 354.3
dissimilarity 787.1
dissemble conceal 346.6
sham 354.21
dissembler
imitator 336.4
deceiver 357.1
pietist 693.3
disseminate
transfer 176.10
communicate 343.7
publish 352.10
disperse 771.4
plant 1069.18
dissension
dissent 333.1
hostility 451.2
dissent 456.3
disagreement 789.1
dissent
n complaint 115.4
dissension 325.1
dissidence 333.1
refusal 442.1
resistance 453.1
dissension 456.3
disapproval 510.1
Protestantism 675.10
difference 780.1
disagreement 789.1
nonconformity 868.1
counteraction 900.1
v dissent from 333.4
refuse 442.3
offer resistance 453.3
diversify 782.2
disagree 789.5
not conform 868.4
counteract 900.6
dissertation 556.1
disservice
bad deed 144.13
injustice 650.4
dissident
n dissenter 333.3
oppositionist 452.3
adj dissenting 333.6
disaccordant 456.15
disagreeing 789.6
nonconforming 868.5
counteractive 900.8
dissimilar
different 780.7
unsimilar 787.4
incomparable 943.9
dissimilitude 787.1
dissimulate 354.20
dissimulator
imitator 336.4
deceiver 357.1
pietist 693.3
dissipate
disappear 34.2
spend 387.13
waste 473.5
go to waste 473.6
squander 486.3
be promiscuous 665.19
plunge into dissipation 669.6
dispel 771.5
dissociate
separate 802.8
chemical terms 806.4
dissociated 776.6
dissociate oneself from 510.10
dissoluble
separable 802.26
liquefiable 1064.9
dissolute
corrupt 654.14
profligate 665.25
licentious 669.8
dissolution
disappearance 34.1
decrement 252.3
death 307.1
decay 393.6
destruction 395.1
disbandment 771.3
disruption 802.3
noncohesion 804.1
disintegration 806.1
liquefaction 1064.1
dissolvable
separable 802.26
liquefiable 1064.9
dissolve
n motion-picture editing 706.6
v disappear 34.2
destroy 395.10
cease to exist 762.6
dissipate 771.5
disband 771.8
disintegrate 806.3
flit 828.6
liquefy 1064.5
dissonant
discordant 61.4
different 780.7
disagreeing 789.6
dissuade 379.3
distaff
n woman 77.5
axle 915.5
adj feminine 77.14
distance
n station 159.2
setting 209.2
farness 261.1
remoteness 261.1
length 267.1
extent 300.3
reticence 344.3
aloofness 583.2
round 751.3
v outdistance 249.10
distance learning 567.5
distant faint 52.16
aloof 141.12
distal 261.8
reticent 344.10
aloof 583.6
farfetched 776.8
incurious 982.3
distaste dislike 99.1
refusal 325.1
disapproval 510.1
distasteful
unsavory 64.5
unpleasant 98.17
unlikable 99.7
distemper
n color 35.8
illness 85.1
disease 85.41
v color 35.14
annoy 96.13
distended
corpulent 257.18
dilated 259.13
bulging 283.15
overfull 993.20
distension
expanding 259.2
swelling 283.4
overextension 993.7
stretching 1048.2
distich poetry 720.9
two 873.2
maxim 974.1
distill refine 79.22
brew 88.30
leak 190.14
extraction 192.16
trickle 238.18
simplify 798.4
boil 1020.20
vaporize 1067.8
distillation
refinement 79.4
leakage 190.5
take out 192.7
extract 192.8
essential content 196.5
trickle 238.7
simplification 798.2
product 893.3
burning 1020.5
thickening 1045.4
vaporization 1067.5
distinct plain 31.7
audible 50.16
manifest 348.8
clear 521.11
different 780.7
separate 802.20
particular 865.12
distinction glory 247.2
elegance 533.1
nobility 608.2
honor 646.1
mark 662.5
difference 780.1
margin 780.2
differentiation 780.4
characterization 865.8
comparison 943.1
contradistinction 944.3
notability 997.2
distinctive
audible 50.16
typical 349.15
differentiative 780.9
classificational 809.7
characteristic 865.13
discriminating 944.7
distinguish see 27.12
honor 662.12
differentiate 780.6
characterize 865.10
focus on 937.3
detect 941.5
discriminate 944.4
recognize 989.12
distinguished
eminent 247.9
superior 249.12
honored 646.9
distingué 662.16
different 780.7
particular 865.12
characteristic 865.13
notable 997.19
distort deflect 164.5
deform 263.3
contort 265.5
misinterpret 342.2

misrepresent 350.3
falsify 354.16
corrupt 393.12
reason speciously 936.8
prejudice 980.9
blemish 1004.4
distortion
audio distortion 50.13
deflection 164.2
twistedness 265
torsion 265.1
misinterpretation 342.1
misrepresentation 350.1
bad likeness 350.2
deliberate falsehood 354.9
sophistry 936.1
error 975.1
blemish 1004.1
distract
disincline 379.4
discompose 811.4
madden 926.24
divert 985.6
distracted
frenzied 105.25
bewildered 971.24
inattentive 984.6
distraught 985.10
distraught
insane 926.26
bewildered 971.24
distracted 985.10
distress
n pain 26.1
chagrin 96.4
unpleasantness 96.5
affliction 96.8
distressfulness 98.5
anxiety 126.1
attachment 480.5
fine 603.3
v pain 26.7
afflict 96.16
dismay 98.14
concern 126.4
work evil 1000.6
trouble 1013.13
distribute
publish 352.10
parcel out 477.8
give 478.12
deliver 478.13
disperse 771.4
separate 793.6
dispose 808.9
distributor
intermediary 213.4
merchant 730.2
district
n location 159.1
area 231.1
region 231.5
v apportion 802.18
distrust
n suspiciousness 153.2
wariness 494.2
doubt 955.2
v suffer pangs of jealousy 153.3
doubt 955.6
disturb
annoy 96.13
distress 96.16
mortify 98.13
excite 105.14
concern 126.4
disorder 810.9
discompose 811.4
agitate 917.10
bewilder 971.12
confuse 985.7
trouble 1013.13
disturbed
neurotic 92.39
annoyed 96.21
distressed 96.22
excited 105.23
anxious 126.7
disorderly 810.13
agitated 917.16
psychotic 926.28
bewildered 971.24
confused 985.12
disunity
falling-out 456.4
disagreement 789.1
ditch
n crack 224.2
channel 239.1
trench 290.2
entrenchment 460.5
lawn bowling 750.3
barrier 1012.5
v land 184.43
cleave 224.4
furrow 290.3
evade 368.7
discard 390.7
dither
n tizzy 105.6
shake 917.3
v vacillate 362.8
chatter 540.5
be stupid 922.12
hang in doubt 971.10
freeze 1023.9
ditto
n the same 778.3
duplicate 785.3
equal 790.4
repeat 849.5
v concur 332.9
imitate 336.5
reproduce 778.6
copy 785.8
equal 790.5
repeat 849.7
duplicate 874.3
adv identically 778.9
again 849.17
ditty 708.14
ditzy inconstant 854.7
superficial 922.20
foolish 923.9
inattentive 984.6
scatterbrained 985.16
diuretic
n cleanser 79.17
laxative 86.17
adj cleansing 79.28
cathartic 86.48
diurnal 850.8
diva lead 707.6
singer 710.13
divaricate
v deviate 164.3
diverge 171.5
fork 171.7
open 292.11
diversify 782.2
adj diverging 171.8
nonuniform 782.3
dive
n bar 88.20
submarines 182.8
maneuvers 184.13
tumble 194.3
disapproved place 228.28
decline 252.2
plunge 367.1
cheapening 633.4
brothel 665.9
casino 759.19
v submarines 182.47
swim 182.56
nose-dive 184.41
decrease 252.6
deepen 275.8
plunge 367.6
cheapen 633.6
dive into
rush into 401.7
set to work 725.15
diverge deviate 164.3
deflect 164.5
divaricate 171.5
oblique 204.9
fall out 456.10
disperse 771.4
differ 780.5
diversify 782.2
part company 802.19
be changed 852.6
divergence
deviation 164.1
divarication 171.1
obliquity 204.1
distance 261.1
falling-out 456.4
dispersion 771.1
difference 780.1
nonuniformity 782.1
dissimilarity 787.1
disagreement 789.1
change 852.1
abnormality 870.1
eccentricity 927.1
diverse different 780.7
diversified 783.4
dissimilar 787.4
diversify
differentiate 780.6
diverge 782.2
vary 783.2
be changed 852.6
change 852.7
diversion
deviation 164.1
misuse 389.1
attack 459.1
amusement 743.1
change 852.1
distraction 985.1
diversity dissent 333.1
difference 780.1
nonuniformity 782.1
multiformity 783.1
dissimilarity 787.1
disagreement 789.1
change 852.1
divert deflect 164.5
disincline 379.4
misuse 389.4
amuse 743.21
distract 985.6
divest strip 6.5
take from 480.21
take 480.24
divested stripped 6.12
bereft 473.8
divestment
unclothing 6.1
loss 473.1
deprivation 480.6
investment 729.4
disassembly 802.6
divide
n watershed 272.5
v diverge 171.5
bound 211.8
partition 213.8
quantify 244.4
open 292.11
measure 300.10
vote 371.18
fall out 456.10
sow dissension 456.14
apportion 477.6
segregate 773.6
differentiate 780.6
part 793.6
analyze 801.6
separate 802.8
apportion 802.18
arrange 808.11
classify 809.6
bisect 875.4
discriminate 944.4
calculate 1017.18
dividend portion 477.5
royalty 624.7
receipts 627.1
regular dividend 738.7
surplus 993.5
divination
sorcery 689.10
augury 690.1
the future 839.1
foresight 961.1
divining 962.2
divine
n theologian 676.3
clergyman 699.2
v augur 133.12
solve 940.2
suppose 951.10
predict 962.9
adj blissful 97.9
theological 676.4
heavenly 677.16
godlike 678.16
sacred 685.7
superb 999.15

gorgeous 1016.21
divine right 417.1
diving 760.8
divinity theology 676.1
deity 677.1
god 678.2
sanctity 685.1
division
divergence 171.1
partition 213.5
region 231.1
vote 371.6
disagreement 456.2
falling-out 456.4
military unit 461.22
navy 461.27
apportionment 477.1
class 607.1
legislative procedure 613.6
party 617.4
branch 617.10
sect 675.3
passage 708.24
ornament 709.18
boxer 754.2
company 770.3
exclusiveness 773.3
differentiation 780.4
part 793.1
analysis 801.1
separation 802.1
classification 809.1
class 809.2
bisection 875.1
distinction 944.3
notation 1017.2
divorce
n dissolution of marriage 566
divorcement 566.1
separation 802.1
v separate 566.5
sever 802.8
divot wig 3.14
turf 310.6
divulge
manifest 348.5
divulgate 351.5
make public 352.11
divvy
n apportionment 477.1
v apportion 477.6
separate 802.18
Dixie 231.7
dizzy
v make one's head swim 985.8
adj weak 16.12
intoxicated 88.31
inconstant 854.7
muddleheaded 922.18
superficial 922.20
giddy 923.8
foolish 923.9
delirious 926.31
giddy 985.15
scatterbrained 985.16
DJ 1034.23
DNA
genetic material 305.9
heredity 560.6
DNA double helix 305.9
DNA print 517.11
do
n party 582.12
festival 743.4
assembly 770.2
v cook 11.5
be satisfactory 107.6
travel 177.19
traverse 177.20
attend 221.8
average 246.2
behave 321.4
effect 328.6
practice 328.8
imitate 336.5
impersonate 349.12
deceive 356.19
avail 387.17
accomplish 407.4
perform 434.3
play 708.39
busy oneself with 724.11
suit 788.8
cause 886.10
perform 892.11
solve 940.2
suffice 991.4
interj please 440.20
do all right by oneself
make good 409.10
grow rich 618.10
be prosperous 1010.9
do a number on
deceive 356.19
defame 512.9
do away with
kill 308.13
commit suicide 308.22
put an end to 395.12
repeal 445.2
exterminate 909.21
do business
cooperate 450.3
work 724.12
trade 731.15
docile willing 324.5
tractable 433.13
teachable 570.18
dock
n hangar 184.24
tail 217.6
storehouse 386.6
courthouse 595.6
stage 704.16
harbor 1009.6
v anchor 182.15
land 186.8
excise 255.10
shorten 268.6
docket
n label 517.13
memorandum 549.4
document 549.5
record book 549.11
roll 871.6
schedule 965.3
v record 549.15
keep accounts 628.8
schedule 965.6
doctor
n physician 90.4
mender 396.10
degree 648.6
dramatist 704.22
professional 726.4
wise man 921.1
v practice medicine 90.14
treat 91.24
undergo treatment 91.29
tamper with 354.17
repair 396.14
aid 449.11
adulterate 797.12
doctoral 568.19
doctorate 648.6
doctrinaire
n theorist 951.7
dogmatist 970.7
bigot 980.5
adj dogmatic 970.22
discriminatory 980.12
doctrine religion 675.1
dogma 676.2
a belief 953.2
document
n writing 547.10
official document 549.5
v itemize 766.6
confirm 957.11
cite 957.13
documentary
n television broadcast 1035.2
adj documentational 549.18
evidential 957.16
true 973.13
documentation
record 549.1
evidence 957.1
confirmation 957.4
doddering
unsteady 16.16
stricken in years 303.18
senile 922.23
dodge
n trick 356.6
fraud 356.8
avoidance 368.1
stratagem 415.3
retreat 903.3
quibble 936.4
expedient 995.2
v avoid 157.7
deviate 164.6
slight 340.8
prevaricate 344.7
duck 368.8
shirk 368.9
live by one's wits 415.9
pull back 903.7
go roundabout 914.4
quibble 936.9
doe
female animal 77.10
hoofed animal 311.5
goat 311.8
hare 311.24
dog
n member 2.7
male animal 76.8
foot 199.5
horse 311.12
canine 311.17
telephone 347.4
beast 660.6
eyesore 1015.4
v annoy 96.13
make anxious 126.5
follow 166.3
pursue 382.8
hunt 382.9
obstruct 1012.12
dog days summer 313.3
hot weather 1019.7
dog-eared eared 48.15
folded 291.7
worn 393.31
dog-eat-dog 146.3
dogged
tormented 96.24
worried 126.8
persevering 360.8
obstinate 361.8
doggerel
n bad poetry 720.3
adj burlesque 508.14
inelegant 534.2
doghouse
kennel 228.21
small space 258.3
dog in the manger
self-seeker 651.3
spoilsport 1012.9
dog-in-the-manger 108.7
dog it shirk 368.9
flee 368.11
dogleg 204.9
dogma
doctrine 676.2
a belief 953.2
dogmatic
obstinate 361.8
unpersuadable 361.13
strict 687.8
belief 953.21
doctrinal 953.27
positive 970.22
discriminatory 980.12
do good
do a favor 143.12
aid 449.11
profit 999.10
dog tag 517.11
dog-tired 21.10
doohickey 1052.5
do in fatigue 21.4
get tired 21.6
kill 308.14
do for 395.11
put an end to 395.12
defeat 412.9
do it yourself 892.18
do justice to
feast 8.24
savor 63.5
enjoy 95.13
observe 434.2
justify 600.9
do one's duty 641.10
be just 649.6
doldrums
blues 112.6
calm 173.5
prevailing wind 318.10

dole
n modicum 248.2
distribution 477.2
portion 477.5
donation 478.6
subsidy 478.8
part 793.1
pittance 992.5
v parcel out 477.8
give 478.12
the dole 143.5
doleful
sorrowful 112.26
pitiful 145.8
doll woman 77.6
ladylove 104.15
miniature 258.6
gal 302.7
figure 349.6
endearment term 562.6
good person 659.2
toy 743.16
beauty 1016.9
dollar currency 728.7
money 728.8
dollars to doughnuts
n good chance 972.8
adv probably 968.8
dollhouse
small space 258.3
toy 743.16
dollop 793.3
doll up dress up 5.42
ornament 498.8
beautify 1016.16
dolorous
distressing 98.20
sorrowful 112.26
dolphin 311.30
dolt bungler 414.8
stupid person 924.2
domain sphere 231.2
country 232.1
real estate 471.6
occupation 724.4
hierarchy 809.4
science 928.10
dome
n hall 197.4
head 198.6
highlands 237.1
mountain 237.6
tower 272.6
arch 279.4
football 746.1
v curve 279.6
top 295.21
domestic
n servant 577.2
adj residential 228.32
recluse 584.10
domesticate
settle 159.17
accustom 373.9
tame 432.11
domicile
n abode 228.1
v inhabit 225.7
house 225.10
dominance
dominion 417.6
influence 894.1
dominant
n note 709.14
key 709.15
adj chief 249.14
victorious 411.7
authoritative 417.15
governing 612.18
prevalent 864.12
influential 894.14
paramount 997.24
dominate show 31.4
rise above 272.11
subjugate 432.8
predominate 612.15
prevail 864.10
have influence over 894.11
domineering
n arrogance 141.1
authoritativeness 417.3
despotism 612.10
adj arrogant 141.9
imperious 417.16
dominion
sphere 231.2
country 232.1
supremacy 249.3
governance 417.5
dominance 417.6
ownership 469.2
control 612.2
precedence 814.1
domino effect
immediate cause 886.3
aftereffect 887.3
vicissitudes 972.5
don
n man 76.7
teacher 571.1
v put on 5.43
donate provide 385.7
give 478.12
done
adj well-done 11.8
tired 21.8
worn-out 393.36
completed 407.11
ended 820.8
produced 892.17
interj so be it 332.20
done deal act 328.3
accomplishment 407.1
done for dead 307.30
dying 307.33
spoiled 393.29
ruined 395.29
defeated 412.14
no more 762.11
ended 820.9
done with
disused 390.10
completed 407.11
ended 820.8
Don Juan
beau 104.13
deceiver 357.1
tempter 377.4
philanderer 562.12
libertine 665.10
donkey ass 311.16
obstinate person 361.6
stupid person 924.2
donnybrook noise 53.4
quarrel 456.5
commotion 810.4
donor provider 385.6
giver 478.11
do-nothing
passive 329.6
indolent 331.19
Don Quixote
knight 608.5
visionary 986.13
doodad 498.4
doodle
n drawing 712.13
fool 924.1
v waste time 331.13
dally 331.14
scribble 547.20
blow a horn 708.42
portray 712.19
doohickey 1052.5
doom
n death 307.1
destruction 395.2
condemnation 602.1
end 820.1
destiny 839.2
doomsday 839.3
verdict 946.5
fate 964.2
v condemn 602.3
damn 682.6
pass judgment 946.13
destine 964.7
work evil 1000.6
do one's bit
lay down one's life for one's country 307.25
be willing 324.3
do one's duty 641.10
do one's duty feast 8.24
perform 434.3
perform one's duty 641.10
do one's heart good
please 95.6
gratify 95.8
make proud 136.6
do one's own thing disregard 435.3
stand alone 872.6
function as 889.8
do one's part
be willing 324.3
do 328.6
share 476.6
do one's duty 641.10
door entrance 189.5
porch 189.6
outlet 190.9
doorway 292.6
doormat wig 3.14
weakling 16.6
dupe 358.2
doorstep 193.5
doorway porch 189.6
door 292.6
do out of cheat 356.18
take from 480.21
do over
reproduce 78.7
repeat 849.7
convert 858.11
dope
n anesthetic 25.3
drug 87.3
film 714.10
contraband 732.3
stupid person 924.2
fuel 1021.1
v put to sleep 22.20
deaden 25.4
medicate 91.25
relieve 120.5
solve 940.2
predict 962.9
the dope
information 551.1
the facts 761.4
dopey inert 173.14
languid 331.20
dull 922.16
foolish 923.9
dazed 985.14
Doppelgänger
the same 778.3
double 988.3
do right by 143.9
dormant
asleep 22.22
inert 173.14
passive 329.6
languid 331.20
latent 519.5
dormitory
bedroom 197.7
inn 228.15
dorsal 217.10
DOS 1042.12
dose
n venereal disease 85.18
draft 86.6
hit 87.20
amount 244.2
portion 793.5
radiation physics 1037.8
v medicate 91.25
administer 643.6
a dose of one's own medicine 506.2
dossier 549.5
dot
n spottiness 47.3
modicum 248.2
minute 258.7
endowment 478.9
mark 517.5
notation 709.12
v variegate 47.7
interspace 224.3
mark 517.19
disperse 771.4
sprinkle 771.6
dotage old age 303.5
senility 922.10
credulity 954.1
dote on 104.19
do the honors
extend courtesy 504.12
entertain 585.8
introduce 587.14

do the right thing
  behave oneself 321.5
  do one's duty 641.10
  be good 653.5
do the right thing by
  observe 434.2
  be just 649.6
do the trick do 328.6
  avail 387.17
  accomplish 407.4
  succeed with 409.11
  suit 788.8
  suffice 991.4
  expedite one's affair 995.3
do time
  be imprisoned 429.18
  take one's turn 825.5
dotty
  spotted 47.13
  crazy 926.27
  eccentric 927.5
double
  n deviation 164.1
  fold 291.1
  image 349.5
  game 745.3
  string 750.2
  the same 778.3
  duplicate 785.3
  substitute 862.2
  etheric double 988.3
  v turn back 163.8
  intensify 251.5
  fold 291.5
  play 745.5
  copy 785.8
  seek the middle 819.3
  repeat 849.7
  double 873.5
  duplicate 874.3
  adj falsehearted 354.31
  treacherous 645.21
  two 873.6
  doubled 874.4
double agent
  traitor 357.10
  secret agent 576.9
double-check
  n ensuring 970.8
  v verify 970.12
  check 1017.21
double-cross
  deceive 356.14
  betray 645.14
double-dealing
  n falseheartedness 354.4
  treachery 645.6
  adj falsehearted 354.31
  treacherous 645.21
double-edged
  acrimonious 17.14
  sharp 285.8
double entendre
  joke 489.6
  ambiguity 539.1
  equivocation 539.2
double meaning 539.1
double or nothing 759.3
doubles 748.1
double standard 354.4
doublet root 526.2
  two 873.2
double take
  sequel 817.1
  delay 846.2
double-talk
  n nonsense 520.2
  speech sound 524.12
  specious argument 936.3
  v quibble 936.9
double vision 28.1
doubt
  n apprehension 127.4
  suspiciousness 153.2
  agnosticism 695.6
  doubtfulness 955.2
  uncertainty 971.2
  v suffer pangs of jealousy 153.3
  disbelieve 695.14
  be doubtful 955.6
  be uncertain 971.9
doubtful
  dishonest 645.16
  agnostic 695.20
  doubting 955.9
  unbelievable 955.10
  improbable 969.3
  iffy 971.17
  unsafe 1006.11
doubting Thomas
  agnostic 695.12
  doubter 955.4
doubtless
  adj belief 953.21
  undoubted 970.16
  adv probably 968.8
  unquestionably 970.25
douche
  n washing 79.5
  bath 79.8
  sprinkler 1065.8
  v wash 79.19
  moisten 1065.12
  soak 1065.13
dough soldier 461.7
  money 728.2
  softness 1047.4
  semiliquid 1062.5
doughboy 461.7
doughnut 10.44
doughty strong 15.15
  courageous 492.17
doughy pasty 1047.12
  viscous 1062.12
  pulpy 1063.6
dour sullen 110.24
  harsh 144.24
  unyielding 361.9
  strict 425.6
  firm 425.7
douse take off 6.6
  submerge 367.7
  fight fire 1022.7
dove bird 311.28
  simple soul 416.3
  pacifist 464.6
  innocent 657.4
dovecote 228.23
dovetail
  n joint 800.4
  v interact 777.6
  agree 788.6
  hook 800.8
dowager woman 77.5
  old woman 304.3
  widow 566.4
  mistress 575.2
  aristocrat 607.4
dowdiness 810.6
dowdy
  n pastry 10.41
  adj shabby 393.32
dowel 283.3
do well 1010.7
dower
  n talent 413.4
  endowment 478.9
  v endow 478.17
  adj endowed 478.26
do without
  not use 390.5
  relinquish 475.3
  abstain 668.7
Dow-Jones Industrial Average 737.1
down
  n beard 3.8
  fluff 3.19
  descent 194.1
  plain 236.1
  hill 237.4
  smoothness 294.3
  lightness 298.2
  game 746.3
  reverse 1011.3
  softness 1047.4
  v devour 8.22
  tipple 88.24
  take 134.8
  descend 194.5
  thin 270.12
  change 852.7
  fell 913.5
  adj ill 85.56
  laid up 85.59
  dejected 112.22
  motionless 173.13
  descending 194.11
  lower 274.8
  defeated 412.14
  recorded 549.17
  adv downward 194.13
  cash 624.25
Down's syndrome 922.9
down-and-out
  n poor man 619.4
  adj ruined 395.28
  destitute 619.9
  ended 820.9
down-at-the-heel
  shabby 393.32
  indigent 619.8
  slovenly 810.15
downbeat
  n beat 709.26
  round 850.3
  adj depressing 112.30
  pessimistic 125.16
downcast
  n downthrow 913.2
  adj dejected 112.22
  downturned 194.12
  depressed 913.12
downer annoyance 96.2
  dejection 112.3
  adversity 1011.1
downers 87.5
downfall descent 194.1
  rainstorm 316.2
  fall 395.3
  collapse 410.3
  defeat 412.1
  downthrow 913.2
downgrade
  n descent 194.1
  declivity 204.5
  v reduce 252.7
  demote 447.3
  adj sloping downward 204.16
  adv down 194.13
  slantingly 204.23
downhearted 112.22
downhill
  n declivity 204.5
  adj descending 194.11
  sloping downward 204.16
  adv down 194.13
  slantingly 204.23
down-home
  comfortable 121.11
  informal 581.3
  simple 798.6
down in the dumps 112.22
download 1042.18
down on averse 99.8
  disapproving 510.21
down on one's luck 1011.14
down pat 928.26
down payment 624.1
downplay
  minimize 252.9
  moderate 670.6
  attach little importance to 998.12
downpour
  descent 194.1
  flow 238.4
  rainstorm 316.2
  downthrow 913.2
downright
  adj vertical 200.11
  outright 247.12
  candid 644.17
  thorough 794.10
  unqualified 960.2
  adv down 194.13
  extremely 247.22
  no ifs, ands, or buts 960.3
the downside
  adversity 1011.1
  trouble 1013.3
downsize 252.7
downstage
  n stage 704.16
  adv on the stage 704.36
downstairs
  down 194.13
  below 274.10
down the drain
  lost 473.7
  wasted 486.9
  no more 762.11
down the hatch! 88.38

down the tube
ruined 395.29
lost 473.7
no more 762.11
downtime respite 20.2
leisure 402.1
interim 826.1
delay 846.2
down-to-earth 987.6
downtown
n city district 230.6
adj urban 230.11
adv down 194.13
downtrodden 432.16
downturn
descent 194.1
decline 252.2
deterioration 393.3
business cycle 731.10
down under 231.6
downward
adj flowing 172.8
descending 194.11
adv down 194.13
downward mobility
deterioration 393.3
class 607.1
change 852.1
downy feathery 3.27
smooth 287.10
smooth-textured 294.8
light 298.10
fluffy 1047.14
do wonders 409.7
dowry
n talent 413.4
endowment 478.9
adj endowed 478.26
doxology paean 696.3
sacred music 708.17
doyen senior 304.5
chief 575.3
doze
n sleep 22.2
v sleep 22.13
dozen 882.7
drab
n strumpet 665.14
slob 810.7
adj brown 40.3
same 781.6
lackluster 1027.17
Draconian 144.26
Dracula 127.9
draft
n beverage 8.4
dose 86.6
drink 88.7
submergence 275.6
wind 318.1
diagram 381.3
demand 421.1
recruit 461.18
writing 547.10
abridgment 557.1
enlistment 615.7
score 708.28
drawing 712.13
negotiable instrument 728.11
pulling 905.1
v draw off 192.12
outline 381.11
write 547.19
enlist 615.17
portray 712.19
drive 756.4
drag
n substance abuse 87.1
smoking 89.10
annoyance 96.2
killjoy 112.14
tedious person 118.5
slowing 175.4
gait 177.12
resistance 184.27
burden 297.7
favor 894.2
pull 905.2
attraction 907.1
disadvantage 996.2
curb 1012.7
friction 1044.1
v use 87.22
smoke 89.14
lag 166.4
go slow 175.6
dawdle 175.8
way of walking 177.28
hang 202.6
smooth 287.5
linger on 827.7
delay 846.8
pull 905.4
attract 907.4
drag in
interpose 213.6
foist 776.5
drag into 898.2
dragnet
snare 356.13
seizure 480.2
search 938.15
dragon
sorehead 110.11
violent person 671.9
drag on
be tedious 118.6
persist 781.3
linger on 827.7
continue 856.3
drag one's feet
go slow 175.6
hesitate 362.7
protract 827.9
delay 846.8
procrastinate 846.11
dragoon
n cavalryman 461.12
v intimidate 127.20
compel 424.4
coerce 424.7
drag out go slow 175.6
elicit 192.14
lengthen 267.6
diffuse 538.8
protract 827.9
postpone 846.9
drag queen 75.15
drag racing 756.1
drain
n receptacle of filth 80.12
outflow 190.4
sough 239.5
consumption 388.1
demand 421.1
waste 473.2
v disable 19.9
decolor 36.5
run out 190.13
draw off 192.12
subtract 255.9
exploit 387.16
consume 388.3
waste 473.5
take from 480.21
strip 480.24
evacuate 909.22
dry 1066.6
drake
male animal 76.8
poultry 311.29
dram
n beverage 8.4
drink 88.7
modicum 248.2
dose 793.5
v tipple 88.24
drama
show business 704.1
representation 349.1
dramatic
emotionalistic 93.19
theatrical 501.24
thespian 704.33
vocal 708.50
poetic 720.15
dramatist
author 547.15
playwright 704.22
writer 718.4
dramatize
manifest 348.5
affect 500.12
theatricalize 704.28
play up 997.16
drape
n pendant 202.4
cover 295.2
shade 1028.1
v clothe 5.39
hang 202.6
drastic 671.16
drat! 513.12
draw
n attendance 221.4
valley 237.7
lure 377.3
poker 759.10
the same 790.3
tie 836.3
pull 905.2
attraction 907.1
v smoke 89.14
extract 192.10
draw off 192.12
contract 260.7
lengthen 267.6
represent 349.8
describe 349.9
lure 377.5
acquire 472.8
receive 479.6
portray 712.19
play 751.4
equal 790.5
exercise influence 894.9
pull 905.4
attract 907.4
draw a blank
fail 410.10
forget 990.5
draw and quarter
torture 604.16
tear apart 802.14
draw apart
antagonize 589.7
separate 802.8
drawback
discount 631.1
disadvantage 996.2
fault 1003.2
obstacle 1012.4
drawer lure 377.3
storehouse 386.6
draftsman 716.3
draw in retract 168.3
suck 187.12
contract 260.7
narrow 270.11
lure 377.5
portray 712.19
involve 898.2
reel in 906.9
drawing
n extraction 192.1
drafting 192.3
representation 349.1
diagram 381.3
draftsmanship 712.5
delineation 712.13
graphic arts 713.1
lottery 759.14
pulling 905.1
adj pulling 905.6
attracting 907.5
drawing card 377.3
drawing room
parlor 197.5
room on train 197.10
society 578.6
drawl
n slowness 175.1
accent 524.8
v speak 524.25
speak poorly 525.7
draw lots 759.23
drawn
tired-looking 21.9
lengthened 267.8
equal 790.7
draw out
extract 192.10
elicit 192.14
lengthen 267.6
diffuse 538.8
protract 827.9
draw the line at 325.3
draw up
write 547.19
form 807.5
stop 857.7
pick up 912.8
dray 179.2

dread
n unpleasure 96.1
anxiety 126.1
fear 127.1
suspense 130.3
v fear 127.10
expect 130.5
adj terrible 127.30
dreadful
adj horrid 98.19
terrible 127.30
venerable 155.12
remarkable 247.11
bad 1000.9
hideous 1015.11
adv terribly 1000.14
dream
n aspiration 100.9
airy hope 124.5
illusion 976.1
hallucination 976.7
abstractedness 985.2
reverie 986.9
first-rate 999.7
beauty 1016.9
v suppose 951.10
muse 985.9
dream of 986.17
dreamland sleep 22.2
illusion 976.1
utopia 986.11
dream up
originate 892.12
imagine 986.14
dreamy sleepy 22.21
tranquilizing 670.15
illusory 976.9
abstracted 985.11
dreamful 986.25
dreary gray 39.4
distressing 98.20
gloomy 112.24
dull 117.6
tedious 118.9
ominous 133.17
dredge
n excavator 284.10
v extract 192.10
excavate 284.15
sprinkle 771.6
imbue 797.11
pick up 912.8
dredge up
extract 192.10
assemble 770.18
pick up 912.8
dregs grounds 256.2
refuse 391.4
rabble 606.3
extract 893.3
drench
n inhibition 8.4
drink 88.7
soaking 1065.7
v overload 993.15
soak 1065.13
tend 1070.7
dress
n clothing 5.1
suit 5.6
gown 5.16
insignia 647.1
v clothe 5.39
groom 79.20
smooth 287.5
equip 385.8
prepare 405.6
ornament 498.8
fertilize 890.8
buff 1044.8
oil 1056.8
cultivate 1069.17
adj clothing 5.45
dressage 1070.1
dress down
dress up 5.42
disapprove 510.18
punish 604.15
dressed to kill
dressed up 5.46
chic 578.13
dressing clothing 5.1
stuffing 10.27
application 86.33
disapproval 510.6
fertilizer 890.4
abrasion 1044.2
cultivation 1069.13
dressing room
closet 197.15
stage 704.16
dress rehearsal 704.13
dried-up shrunk 260.13
wasted 393.35
unproductive 891.4
dried 1066.9
drift
n direction 161.1
deviation 164.1
course 172.2
deposit 176.9
drift angle 184.28
flow 238.4
meaning 518.1
race 756.3
group of animals 770.5
pile 770.10
trend 896.2
reception 1034.21
v stray 164.4
wander 177.23
drift off course 182.29
float 182.54
fly 184.36
do nothing 329.2
take it easy 331.15
pile 770.19
drifter
displaced person 160.4
wanderer 178.2
bum 331.9
fisher 382.6
wretch 660.2
transient 828.4
drift off 22.16
driftwood 1054.3
drill
n exercise 84.2
point 285.3
action 328.1
rule 373.4
training 568.3
study 570.3
exercise 725.6
cutlery 1040.2
v deepen 275.8
excavate 284.15
perforate 292.15
train 568.13
study 570.12
plant 1069.18
drink
n potation 8.4
beverage 10.49
dram 88.7
cocktail 88.9
spirits 88.13
ocean 240.1
fluid 1061.2
v drink in 8.29
use 87.22
tipple 88.24
ingest 187.11
absorb 187.13
drink in drink 8.29
absorb 187.13
learn 570.7
attend to 983.5
drinking habit 87.1
drink to drink 8.29
toast 88.29
drink up drink 8.29
tipple 88.24
absorb 187.13
thirst 1066.5
drip
n tedious person 118.5
leakage 190.5
trickle 238.7
v leak 190.14
trickle 238.18
be damp 1065.11
drive
n vim 17.2
power 18.1
desire 100.1
acceleration 174.4
ride 177.7
enterprise 330.7
motive 365.1
urge 375.6
haste 401.1
campaign 458.4
attack 459.1
vigor 544.3
group of animals 770.5
cause 886.9
impulse 902.1
pushing 904.1
machinery enginery 1040.3
disk drive 1042.5
v set in motion 172.6
ride 177.33
drift off course 182.29
pilot 184.37
excavate 284.15
hustle 330.13
hunt 382.9
compel 424.4
launch an attack 459.17
guide 573.9
task 725.16
play tennis 748.3
play 751.4
race 756.4
ride 757.5
impel 902.11
thrust 902.12
push 904.9
obsess 926.25
herd 1070.8
drive a bargain 731.18
drive at 380.4
drive away
dissipate 771.5
repulse 908.3
drive crazy 926.24
drive home to 953.18
drive-in movie 706.7
drive insane 926.24
drive-in theater 706.7
drivel
n saliva 13.3
nonsense 520.2
v salivate 13.6
talk nonsense 520.5
be incomprehensible 522.10
be stupid 922.12
be insane 926.20
drive on
make one's way 162.4
hustle 330.13
urge on 375.16
hasten 401.4
impel 902.11
driver reinsman 178.9
motorist 178.10
tyrant 575.14
man 577.4
race driving 756.2
operator 889.4
propeller 904.6
driver's license 443.6
driver's seat 417.10
drive up the wall
annoy 96.13
madden 926.24
driving
n riding 177.6
race 756.3
adj moving 172.7
rainy 316.11
enterprising 330.23
motivating 375.25
compulsory 424.10
attacking 459.29
vigorous 544.11
impelling 902.23
propulsive 904.14
obsessive 926.34
drizzle
n rain 316.1
v rain 316.10
droit 642.1
droll
humorous 488.4
witty 489.15
dromedary
beast of burden 176.8
hoofed animal 311.5
drone
n slowpoke 175.5
bee 311.35
nonworker 331.11

mumbling 525.4
part 708.22
bagpipes 711.9
regularity 781.2
series 812.2
repetitiousness 849.4
v hum 52.13
mumble 525.9
persist 781.3
drool
n saliva 13.3
nonsense 520.2
v salivate 13.6
talk nonsense 520.5
be stupid 922.12
be insane 926.20
droop
n gait 177.12
sinkage 194.2
hang 202.2
v weaken 16.9
burn out 21.5
fail 85.48
lose heart 112.16
sink 194.6
hang 202.6
languish 393.18
drooping weak 16.12
languishing 16.21
tired 21.7
dejected 112.22
descending 194.11
limp 202.10
deteriorating 393.45
loose 804.5
drop
n drink 88.7
leakage 190.5
descent 194.1
declivity 204.5
trickle 238.7
modicum 248.2
advantage 249.2
decline 252.2
minute 258.7
droplet 282.3
hiding place 346.4
plunge 367.1
deterioration 393.3
address 553.9
execution 605.5
scenery 704.20
skiing 753.1
pause 857.3
v give birth 1.3
take off 6.6
weaken 16.9
burn out 21.5
faint 25.5
lay 78.9
snub 157.5
leak 190.14
descend 194.5
incline 204.10
trickle 238.18
decrease 252.6
gravitate 297.15
strike dead 308.18
plunge 367.6
give up 370.7
break the habit 374.3
cease to use 390.4
lose 473.4
relinquish 475.3
cheapen 633.6
shoot 904.12
repulse 908.3
fell 913.5
let go of 913.7
drop a hint 551.10
drop a line
communicate with 343.8
correspond 553.10
drop anchor
settle 159.17
land 186.8
drop by go to 177.25
enter 189.7
visit 582.19
drop cloth 295.9
drop dead 307.22
drop in go to 177.25
enter 189.7
visit 582.19
drop in on 131.7
drop in the bucket
pittance 992.5
trifle 998.5
drop off
go to sleep 22.16
descend 194.5
decrease 252.6
die 307.20
drop out
dissent 333.4
abandon 370.5
not conform 868.4
drops 86.4
dropsy symptom 85.9
distension 259.2
drop the ball
fail 410.10
bungle 414.12
make a boner 975.15
drop the other shoe 817.5
drop the subject 984.4
dross dregs 256.2
combustion product
1020.16
drought
appetite 100.7
want 992.4
dryness 1066.1
drove
n group of animals 770.5
v drive 1070.8
drown choke 307.24
strangle 308.19
submerge 367.7
suppress 428.8
come to grief 1011.10
flood 1065.14
drown out 53.8
drowsy sleepy 22.21
tranquilizing 670.15
drub
n hit 902.4
stamp 902.10
v defeat 412.9
whip 604.13
pound 902.16
stamp 902.22
drudge
n servant 577.2
grub 726.3
v be busy 330.10
keep doggedly at 360.3
serve 577.13
grind and dig 725.14
drug
n anesthetic 25.3
medicine 86.4
narcotic drug 86.5
narcotic 87.3
moderator 670.3
commodity 735.2
v put to sleep 22.20
deaden 25.4
medicate 91.25
numb 94.8
moderate 670.6
drug abuse 87.1
drug addict 87.21
drugged 25.8
drug habit 87.1
drug pusher 732.4
drugstore 86.36
drug trafficking 87.2
Druid
idolater 697.4
pagan clergy 699.15
predictor 962.4
drum
n staccato 55.1
cylinder 282.4
percussion instrument 711.16
v thrum 55.4
bird sound 60.5
rain 316.10
beat time 708.44
din 849.10
pulsate 916.12
drum out
depose 447.4
exclude 773.4
drive out 909.14
dismiss 909.19
drumstick
fowl part 10.23
leg 177.14
percussion instrument 711.16
drum up acquire 472.9
assemble 770.18
drunk
n drinking spree 88.6
drinker 88.11
lush 88.12
adj intoxicated 88.31
fervent 93.18
dizzy 985.15
druthers
preference 371.5
free will 430.6
dry
n conservative 611.9
prohibitionist 668.5
v preserve 397.9
strip 480.24
desiccate 1066.6
adj raucous 58.15
sour 67.5
thirsty 100.26
dull 117.6
tedious 118.9
right 219.4
satiric 508.13
sober 516.3
plain-speaking 535.3
conservative 611.17
prohibitionist 668.11
unproductive 891.4
unimaginative 987.5
arid 1066.7
dry-clean 79.18
dry goods 735.3
dry goods dealer 5.33
drying
n shrinking 260.3
food preservation 397.2
desiccation 1066.3
adj dehydrating 1066.10
dry land 234.1
dry out use 87.22
sober up 516.2
swear off 668.8
dry run
Air Force mission 184.11
preparation 405.1
operation 458.5
tryout 942.3
dry up
v shrink 260.9
be consumed 388.4
languish 393.18
dry 1066.6
interj silence! 51.14
dual
n number 530.8
adj two 873.6
dualism theism 675.5
doubleness 873.1
pluralism 952.6
dualist 675.16
dub
n bungler 414.9
golfer 751.2
v smooth 287.5
name 527.11
dub in 862.4
dubious
deceptive 356.21
irresolute 362.9
dishonest 645.16
agnostic 695.20
doubting 955.9
unbelievable 955.10
improbable 969.3
doubtful 971.17
unsafe 1006.11
ducal 608.10
ducat 728.4
duchess 608.6
duchy region 231.5
country 232.1
duck
n man 76.5
poultry 311.29
submergence 367.2
avoidance 368.1
loser 412.5
endearment term 562.6
card 758.2
retreat 903.3
crouch 913.3

v avoid 164.6
retract 168.3
prevaricate 344.7
submerge 367.7
dodge 368.8
shirk 368.9
fight 754.4
pull back 903.7
crouch 913.8
bow 913.9
flood 1065.14
duck out
absent oneself 222.8
flee 368.11
slip away 368.12
duck soup 1014.4
ducky
n ladylove 104.15
adj excellent 999.13
duct vessel 2.23
channel 239.1
ductile docile 433.13
handy 1014.15
pliant 1047.9
dud
n impotent 19.6
false alarm 400.2
failure 410.2
abortion 410.5
flop 410.8
candidate 610.9
thing of naught 764.2
v clothe 5.39
dude man 76.5
dandy 500.9
dudgeon 152.7
duds clothing 5.1
garment 5.3
due
n debt 623.1
one's due 639.2
prerogative 642.1
adj expected 130.13
owed 623.10
right 637.3
payable 639.7
entitled to 639.10
just 649.8
attributable 888.6
sufficient 991.6
adv directly 161.23
duel
n single combat 457.7
fight 754.3
v contend 457.13
duelist 461.1
dues debt 623.1
fee 630.6
deserts 639.3
duet cooperation 450.1
part music 708.18
two 873.2
due to
conj resulting from 887.8
prep because of 888.9
duffel equipment 385.4
impedimenta 471.3
duffer
incompetent 414.7
bungler 414.9
golfer 751.2
dugout cave 284.5
hiding place 346.4
entrenchment 460.5
baseball 745.1
shelter 1009.3
dugs 283.6
duke nobleman 608.4
poker 759.10
blow 902.5
duke it out 457.17
dulcet pleasant 97.6
melodious 708.48
dulcify sweeten 66.3
pacify 465.7
calm 670.7
dull
v weaken 16.10
deaden 25.4
decolor 36.5
muffle 51.9
blunt 94.7
relieve 120.5
blunt 286.2
moderate 670.6
mat 1027.10
adj weak 16.12
insensible 25.6
colorless 36.7
gray 39.4
muffled 52.17
unfeeling 94.9
apathetic 94.13
inexcitable 106.10
dry 117.6
tedious 118.9
inert 173.14
blunt 286.3
languid 331.20
plain-speaking 535.3
prosaic 721.5
dull of mind 922.16
unimaginative 987.5
mediocre 1005.7
lackluster 1027.17
dullard 924.2
dumb
adj mute 51.12
animal 311.40
taciturn 344.9
stammering 525.13
stupid 922.15
foolish 923.8
ignorant 930.12
inanimate 1055.5
dumbbell
exerciser 725.7
fool 924.4
dumbfound
silence 51.8
astonish 122.6
dumbstruck
mute 51.12
wondering 122.9
dumbwaiter 912.4
dummy
n mute 51.3
reproduction 336.3
figure 349.6
fake 354.13
instrument 384.4
composition 548.2
figurehead 575.5
deputy 576.1
follower 616.8
bridge 758.3
thing of naught 764.2
artist's model 786.5
substitute 862.2
fool 924.4
a nobody 998.7
adj spurious 354.26
substitute 862.8
dump
n sty 80.11
receptacle of filth 80.12
humiliation 137.2
disrespect 156.3
hovel 228.11
disapproved place 228.28
derelict 370.4
store 386.1
storehouse 386.6
trash pile 391.6
armory 462.2
v abase 137.5
place 159.12
load 159.15
discard 390.7
relinquish 475.3
sell 734.8
divest 737.24
unload 909.23
dumpling 10.33
dump on
abase 137.5
be disrespectful 156.6
disdain 157.3
dumps
sulks 110.10
blues 112.6
dumpy
corpulent 257.18
dwarf 258.13
stubby 268.10
dun
n horse 311.11
creditor 622.4
statement 628.3
v importune 440.12
bill 628.11
adj brown 40.3
dunce
stupid person 924.2
ignoramus 930.8
dunderhead 924.4
dune hill 237.4
pile 770.10
dung
n feces 12.4
fertilizer 890.4
v defecate 12.13
dungeon 429.8
dunghill
n manure pile 80.10
adj dastardly 491.12
dunk
submerge 367.7
play 751.4
flood 1065.14
duo
part music 708.18
two 873.2
duodecimal system 1017.4
duodenal 882.24
dupe
n sycophant 138.3
dupable person 358
gull 358.1
instrument 384.4
simple soul 416.3
laughingstock 508.7
agent 576.3
cheater 759.22
duplicate 785.3
trusting soul 954.4
v deceive 356.14
copy 785.8
duplicate 874.3
stultify 923.7
duplex
n apartment house 228.14
adj two 873.6
duplicate
n image 349.5
the same 778.3
replica 785.3
duplication 874.1
v reproduce 78.7
re-create 778.6
copy 785.8
repeat 849.7
double 873.5
dupe 874.3
multiply 883.6
adj identical 778.7
analogous 784.11
double 874.4
duplication
remake 78.1
replica 336.3
reproduction 785.2
clone 785.3
repetition 849.1
doubleness 873.1
replication 874.1
reduplication 874.1
multiplication 883.4
superfluity 993.4
duplicity
falseheartedness 354.4
deceit 356.3
treachery 645.6
doubleness 873.1
durable sturdy 763.7
perdurable 827.10
permanent 853.7
tough 1049.4
duration time 821.1
term 824.3
lastingness 827
durability 827.1
perpetuity 829.1
permanence 853.1
duress power 18.1
coercion 424.3
imprisonment 429.3
necessity 963.1
during 821.14
dusk
n dusking time 315.3
daylight 1025.10
darkishness 1027.2

v grow dark 1027.12
adj dark 38.9
evening 315.8
darkish 1027.15
dust
n dirt 80.6
cocaine 87.7
drugs 87.18
land 234.1
lightness 298.2
corpse 307.16
refuse 391.4
rubbish 391.5
powder 1051.5
dryness 1066.2
v clean 79.18
dirty 80.15
sprinkle 771.6
dust bowl
the country 233.1
wasteland 891.2
dust jacket
wrapper 295.18
bookbinding 554.14
dusty gray 39.4
dirty 80.22
dull 117.6
tedious 118.9
wayworn 177.41
stale 842.14
powdery 1051.11
dry 1066.7
Dutch courage 87.1
Dutch uncle 422.3
dutiful respectful 155.8
obedient 326.3
observant 434.4
duteous 641.13
pious 692.8
duty respect 155.1
function 387.5
demand 421.1
tax 630.9
obligation 641.1
charge 643.3
divine service 696.8
rite 701.3
task 724.2
job 724.3
duty-free 630.16
duvet 295.10
dwarf
n modicum 248.2
dwarfling 258.5
fairy 678.8
v minimize 252.9
adj dwarfed 258.13
dwell inhabit 225.7
endure 827.6
dwell in
be present 221.6
exist in 761.11
dwelling
n habitation 225.1
abode 228.1
house 228.5
adj resident 225.13
dwell on
harp on 118.8
harbor revenge 507.5
protract 827.9
insist upon 849.9
keep in memory 989.13
emphasize 997.14
dwindle disappear 34.2
fail 85.48
recede 168.2
quiet 173.8
decrease 252.6
dyad 873.2
dybbuk demon 680.6
specter 988.1
dye
n color 35.8
v infuse 35.14
imbue 797.11
dyed-in-the-wool
deep-dyed 35.18
confirmed 373.18
thorough 794.10
established 855.13
dying
n decrease 252.1
death 307.1
terminal case 307.15
deterioration 393.3
extinguishing 1022.2
adj unhealthy 85.54
impatient 135.6
receding 168.5
terminal 307.33
transient 828.7
dying breath 307.9
dying to
wanting 100.21
desirous of 100.22
eager 101.8
dying words
sequel 817.1
end 820.1
dyke 76.9
dynamic
energetic 17.13
powerful 18.12
enterprising 330.23
dynamical 1039.9
dynamite 999.13
dynastic 417.17
dynasty 835.2
dyne 17.7
dysentery
defecation 12.2
symptom 85.9
dysfunction 638.1
dyspeptic
n sick person 85.43
adj anemic 85.61
sour 110.23
each
adj every 864.15
adv apiece 865.19
each other 777.4
eager
desirous 100.21
anxious 101.8
expectant 130.11
impatient 135.6
willing 324.5
active 330.17
enterprising 404.8
prepared 405.16
consenting 441.4
eagle
n sharp vision 27.11
swiftness 174.6
ascent 193.7
bird 311.28
insignia 647.1
heraldry 647.2
military insignia 647.5
specie 728.4
round 751.3
v play 751.4
eagle eye
sharp eye 27.10
vigilance 339.4
ear
n auditory apparatus 2.10
hearing 48.1
audition 48.2
lug 48.7
bulge 283.3
spike 310.29
discrimination 944.1
attention 983.1
adj eye 2.28
earache ache 26.5
ear disease 85.15
an ear for
good hearing 48.3
aptitude 413.5
earful 524.3
earl 608.4
earlier
adj lower 274.8
previous 834.4
prior 845.10
adv previously 834.6
formerly 837.13
earliest 216.10
ear lobe ear 2.10
pendant 202.4
early
adj anachronous 833.3
previous 834.4
former 837.10
back 837.12
bright 845.7
adv previously 834.6
long ago 837.16
bright and early 845.11
early bird 845.4
earmark
n sign 517.1
mark 517.5
characteristic 865.4
v commit 436.5
allot 477.9
label 517.20
characterize 865.10
earn acquire 472.8
be paid 624.20
deserve 639.5
earnest
n pledge 438.2
payment 624.1
adj zealous 101.9
solemn 111.3
resolute 359.11
attentive 983.15
weighty 997.20
earnings
acquisition 472.1
gain 472.3
pay 624.4
receipts 627.1
earn one's keep
make a living 385.11
work 725.12
earphone 50.8
ear-piercing
loud 53.11
shrill 58.14
earring circle 280.3
jewel 498.6
earshot earreach 48.4
short distance 223.2
ear-splitting 58.14
earth
n ground covering 199.3
horizontal 201.3
lair 228.26
land 234.1
corpse 307.16
shelter 1009.3
adj terrestrial 234.4
Earth planet 1072.9
the world 1072.10
earthborn human 312.13
populational 606.8
earthbound
terrestrial 234.4
unimaginative 987.5
earthen earthy 234.5
ceramic 742.7
earthling person 312.5
irreligionist 695.10
earthly
terrestrial 234.4
secularist 695.16
material 1052.10
earthquake 671.5
earthshaking
loud 53.11
important 997.17
earthworm 311.39
earthy earthen 234.5
human 312.13
coarse 497.11
populational 606.8
carnal 663.6
vulgar 666.8
secularist 695.16
realistic 987.6
ease
n rest 20.1
pleasure 95.1
contentment 107.1
relief 120.1
comfort 121.1
leisure 402.1
aid 449.1
elegance 533.1
fluency 544.2
informality 581.1
prosperity 1010.1
facility 1014.1
v relax 20.7
relieve 120.5
release 120.6
comfort 121.6
abate 252.8
lighten 298.6
liberalize 430.13

aid 449.11
extenuate 600.12
calm 670.7
relax 670.9
loosen 804.3
allow for 959.5
facilitate 1014.7
soften 1047.6
ease in 191.3
easel 712.18
ease off
let up 20.7
avoid 164.6
slow 175.9
relax 670.9
loosen 804.3
ease out 773.4
ease up relax 20.7
slow 175.9
relax 670.9
ease up on
have pity 145.4
be easy on 427.5
east
n points of the compass 161.3
adj northern 161.14
adv E 161.17
East 231.6
East Coast 231.7
easter
n north wind 318.9
v go west 161.8
eastward
n points of the compass 161.3
adv east 161.17
easy
adj pleased 95.15
nonchalant 106.15
content 107.7
comfortable 121.11
at ease 121.12
good-natured 143.14
slow 175.10
light 298.12
indolent 331.19
leisurely 402.6
unstrict 426.5
lenient 427.7
elegant 533.6
fluent 544.9
informal 581.3
cheap 633.7
wanton 665.26
loose 804.5
gullible 954.9
prosperous 1010.12
facile 1014.13
soft 1047.8
adv cautiously 494.12
interj careful! 494.14
cease! 857.13
easy come 486.8
easy does it
interj take it easy! 402.8
careful! 494.14
phrs take it easy 175.15
easygoing
unconcerned 102.7
nonchalant 106.15
content 107.7
careless 340.11
unstrict 426.5
lenient 427.7
free 430.21
informal 581.3
dilatory 846.17
easy mark dupe 358.2
trusting soul 954.4
easy money 472.6
easy on the eyes 1016.22
easy pickings 358.2
Easy Street 1010.1
easy target 1014.3
eat feed 8.20
take 134.8
ingest 187.11
consume 388.3
corrode 393.21
etch 713.10
eat away
subtract 255.9
corrode 393.21
eat crow
n recant 363.8
v humble oneself 137.7
eat dirt 433.11
eat humble pie
n recant 363.8
v humble oneself 137.7
eat dirt 433.11
eating disorder mental disorder 92.14
gluttony 672.1
eat one's words
n recant 363.8
v humble oneself 137.7
eat up
v devour 8.22
feast 8.24
enjoy 95.13
consume 388.3
kid oneself 954.6
interj chow down! 8.35
eau de Cologne 70.3
eaves 295.6
eavesdrop
listen 48.10
be curious 981.3
eaves trough 239.3
ebb
n standstill 173.3
tide 238.13
decline 252.2
deterioration 393.3
v recede 168.2
move 172.5
quiet 173.8
flow 238.16
decrease 252.6
decline 393.17
ebb and flow
n tide 238.13
alternation 916.5
v billow 238.22
change 854.5
alternate 916.13
ebony
n blackness 38.1
darkness 38.4
adj black 38.8
dark 1027.13
ebullient
excited 105.20
bubbly 320.6
active 330.17
hot 1019.25
eccentric
n nonconformist 868.3
oddity 870.4
erratic 927.3
adj off-center 160.12
humorous 488.4
irregular 851.3
inconstant 854.7
unconventional 868.6
abnormal 870.9
odd 870.11
erratic 927.5
eccentricity
humorousness 488.1
irregularity 851.1
inconstancy 854.2
abnormality 870.1
foolishness 923.1
idiosyncrasy 927.1
disposition 978.3
ecclesiastic
n clergyman 699.2
adj ministerial 698.13
ecdysiast
nudity 6.3
entertainer 707.1
ECG 91.9
echelon
flight formation 184.12
rank 245.2
battle array 458.3
echo
n reverberation 54.2
sympathy 93.5
imitator 336.4
response 708.23
keyboard 711.17
reflection 785.7
repetition 849.1
repeat 849.5
duplicate 874.2
reaction 903.1
answer 939.1
signal 1036.11
v reverberate 54.7
respond 93.11
concur 332.9
imitate 336.5
repeat 849.7
recurrence 849.11
answer 939.4
reflect 1036.16
éclat publicity 352.4
display 501.4
applause 509.2
repute 662.1
eclectic
selective 371.23
mixed 797.14
combined 805.5
eclecticism
selectivity 371.10
sectarianism 675.4
mixture 797.1
eclipse
n disappearance 34.1
covering 295.1
occultation 1027.8
moon 1072.11
sun 1072.13
v blind 30.7
overshadow 249.8
cover 295.19
conceal 346.6
darken 1027.9
ecological 209.9
ecology 1073.1
e-commerce 736.2
economic cheap 633.7
thrifty 635.6
socio-economic 731.23
economic indicator 731.9
economics
finance 729.1
trade 731.1
eco 731.11
economist
economizer 635.3
financier 729.9
economic expert 731.12
economy
n parsimony 484.1
thrift 635.1
economic system 731.7
adj cheap 633.7
ecosphere
organic matter 305.1
biosphere 306.8
atmosphere 317.2
the environment 1073.1
ecosystem 1073.1
ecru brown 40.3
yellow 43.4
ecstasy
amphetamines 87.4
passion 93.2
happiness 95.2
amorousness 104.3
fury 105.8
revelation 683.10
trance 691.3
ecstatic
n psychic 689.13
adj overjoyed 95.17
frenzied 105.25
abstracted 985.11
ectomorph 92.12
ectoplasm cell 305.4
exteriorized protoplasm 689.7
ecumenical
cooperative 450.5
universal 864.14
broad-minded 979.8
ecumenism
cooperation 450.1
moderation 670.1
combination 805.1
broad-mindedness 979.1
eczema 85.34
eddy
n agitation 105.4
back stream 238.12
whirl 915.2
v gurge 238.21
whirl 915.11
edema symptom 85.9

increase 251.1
distension 259.2
swelling 283.4
overextension 993.7
Eden 986.11
edge
n acrimony 17.5
pungency 68.1
summit 198.2
border 211.4
advantage 249.2
straight line 277.2
sharpness 285.1
sharp edge 285.2
v border 211.10
side 218.4
go sideways 218.5
sharpen 285.7
edge in enter 189.7
interpose 213.6
intrude 214.5
edge out outdo 249.9
triumph 411.3
defeat 412.6
edgy
excitable 105.28
nervous 128.11
impatient 135.6
edible 8.33
edict
announcement 352.2
decree 420.4
law 673.3
edification
teaching 568.1
learning 928.4
edifice house 228.5
structure 266.2
edify
make better 392.9
teach 568.10
edit delete 255.12
comment upon 341.11
revise 392.12
write 547.19
edition rendering 341.2
issue 554.5
score 708.28
editor interpreter 341.7
publisher 554.2
journalist 555.4
commentator 556.4
motion-picture studio 706.4
examiner 938.17
critic 946.7
systems program 1042.12
editorial
n commentary 556.2
adj explanatory 341.15
journalistic 555.5
educate
make better 392.9
teach 568.10
educated
improved 392.13
learned 570.16
informed 928.18
scholarly 928.21
educated guess 951.4
education
cultivation 392.3
teaching 568.1
learning 570.1
erudition 928.4
educational 551.18
educe 192.14
EEG 91.9
eel 10.24
eerie awesome 122.11
creepy 127.31
deathly 307.29
supernatural 870.15
weird 988.9
efface 395.16
effect
n power 18.1
aspect 33.3
intention 380.1
meaning 518.1
relevance 775.4
end 820.1
event 831.1
sequel 835.2
consequence 887.1
result 887.1
product 893.1
influence 894.1
v do 328.6
use 384.5
accomplish 407.4
execute 437.9
cause 886.10
induce 886.11
establish 892.10
effective
powerful 18.12
able 18.14
effectual 387.21
vigorous 544.11
operative 889.9
influential 894.13
practical 995.6
effects
equipment 385.4
property 471.1
merchandise 735.1
effectual able 18.14
effective 387.21
causal 886.13
operative 889.9
influential 894.13
true 973.13
practical 995.6
effeminate
n mama's boy 77.11
v feminize 77.13
adj frail 16.14
homosexual 75.30
womanish 77.15
effervescence
sibilation 57.1
agitation 105.4
bubbling 320.3
liveliness 330.2
effervescent
sibilant 57.3
excited 105.20
bubbly 320.6
active 330.17
effete weak 16.12
weakened 16.18
ineffective 19.15
dull 117.6
used up 388.5
worn-out 393.36
deteriorating 393.45
efficacious able 18.14
effectual 387.21
operative 889.9
influential 894.13
efficiency
ability 18.2
utility 387.3
skill 413.1
efficient able 18.14
effectual 387.21
competent 413.24
economical 635.6
operative 889.9
practical 995.6
effigy 349.5
efflorescence
skin eruption 85.36
flowering 310.26
powderiness 1051.1
powder 1051.5
effluent
n excrement 12.3
tributary 238.3
refuse 391.4
adj outgoing 190.19
effluvium odor 69.1
ectoplasm 689.7
miasma 1001.4
vapor 1067.1
effluxion 190.4
effort act 328.3
endeavor 403.1
attempt 403.2
undertaking 404.1
exertion 725.1
expedient 995.2
effortless 1014.13
effrontery 142.1
effulgence 1025.4
effuse
v excrete 12.12
emerge 190.11
exude 190.15
adj plentiful 991.7
effusive
v talkative 540.9
adj outgoing 190.19
communicative 343.10
diffuse 538.11
egalitarianism 612.4
egest excrete 12.12
vomit 909.26
egestion excretion 12.1
vomiting 909.8
egg
n ovum 305.12
ovule 305.15
race 753.3
vital force 886.7
v pelt 459.27
egghead snob 141.7
intellectual 929.1
egg on urge on 375.16
induce 886.11
egg on one's face
chagrin 96.4
mortification 98.6
humiliation 137.2
eggshell
n egg 305.15
fragility 1050.2
adj soft-colored 35.22
whitish 37.8
ego psyche 92.28
egotism 140.3
self 865.5
psyche 919.4
egocentric
n egotist 140.5
adj unfeeling 94.9
egotistic 140.10
egoist
proudling 136.3
egotist 140.5
egomaniac 140.1
egotism egoism 140.3
selfishness 651.1
egotist egoist 140.5
self-seeker 651.3
egotistical
self-centered 140.10
selfish 651.5
ego trip vanity 140.1
selfishness 651.1
egregious
remarkable 247.10
downright 247.12
thorough 794.10
excessive 993.16
terrible 1000.9
egress
n departure 188.1
exit 190.2
outlet 190.9
channel 239.1
evacuation 909.6
v exit 190.12
eiderdown
down 3.19
blanket 295.10
softness 1047.4
eidetic 989.23
eidolon aspect 33.3
phantom 976.4
figment of the imagination 986.5
specter 988.1
eight team 617.7
card 758.2
number 882.4
eighth
n octave 709.9
adj octonary 882.20
eighty-six 390.7
Einstein theory 158.6
either
n any 864.5
adj one 872.7
adv similarly 784.18
either-or
ambiguous 539.4
two 873.6
ejaculate exclaim 59.7
climax 75.24
project 904.11
disgorge 909.25
eject erupt 671.13
eliminate 773.5

separate 802.8
shoot 904.12
repulse 908.3
expel 909.13
ejection
excretion 12.1
excrement 12.3
outburst 190.3
elimination 773.2
shot 904.4
repulsion 908.1
discharge 909.1
ejectment 909.1
eke out
support oneself 385.12
be poor 619.5
complete 794.6
EKG 91.9
el 179.14
elaborate
v develop 392.10
amplify 538.7
ornament 545.7
develop 861.6
produce 892.8
adj painstaking 339.11
ornate 498.12
grandiose 501.21
complex 799.4
elaborated 533.9
elaboration
development 392.2
ornamentation 498.1
amplification 538.6
iteration 849.2
evolution 861.1
production 892.2
élan animation 17.4
eagerness 101.1
gaiety 109.4
elapse lapse 821.5
pass 837.6
elastic
n elastomer 1048.3
adj expansive 259.9
recuperative 396.23
pliant 1047.9
resilient 1048.7
elate
v exalt 109.8
make proud 136.6
adj overjoyed 95.17
rejoicing 116.10
crowing 502.13
elbow
n member 2.7
angle 278.2
joint 800.4
arm 906.5
v angle 278.5
thrust 902.12
elbow bender 88.12
elbow grease 725.1
elbowroom room 158.3
latitude 430.4
elder
n old man 304.2
senior 304.5
master 575.1
public official 575.17
clergy 699.10
back number 842.8
wise man 921.1
personage 997.8
adj previous 834.4
older 842.19
elder statesman
expert 413.11
statesman 610.2
wise man 921.1
elect
n elite 371.12
upper class 607.2
aristocracy 608.1
the best 999.8
v choose 371.13
vote in 371.20
support 609.41
adj chosen 371.26
exclusive 495.13
best 999.16
the elect 692.5
election
choice 371.1
appointment 371.9
authority 417.12
general election 609.15
holy orders 698.10
determinism 964.4
electioneer
n campaigner 610.10
v campaign 609.40
elective
voluntary 324.7
volitional 371.22
selective 371.23
electorate
population 227.1
region 231.5
selector 371.7
electors 609.22
Electra complex 92.22
electric
n streetcar 179.17
adj exciting 105.30
provocative 375.27
galvanic 1032.30
electrical engineering 1043.1
electric chair 605.5
electric current
current 1032.2
electron flow 1033.6
electric field 1032.3
electrician
stage technician 704.24
electrotechnician 1032.22
electricity
swiftness 174.6
telegraph 347.2
illuminant 1025.20
electrical science 1032.1
electric power
manpower 18.4
wattage 1032.18
electrify energize 17.10
agitate 105.14
startle 131.8
galvanize 1032.26
electrolysis 1032.25
electromagnetic field
electric field 1032.3
magnetic force 1032.9
electron atom 258.8
negatron 1033.3
electronic device 1033.13
electronic mail computer networking 347.18
delivery 353.5
correspondence 553.1
mail 553.4
postal service 553.7
computer communications 1042.19
electronic media 551.5
electronics radio 347.3
electron physics 1033.1
radionics 1033.1
electron theory of atoms 1033.2
electrostatic
electric 1032.30
static 1039.8
eleemosynary
benevolent 143.15
philanthropic 478.22
gratuitous 634.5
elegance
parsimony 484.1
taste 496.1
ornateness 498.2
overniceness 500.5
grandeur 501.5
good breeding 504.4
refinement 533.1
grace 533.1
fluency 544.2
smartness 578.3
etiquette 580.3
decency 664.2
beauty 1016.1
elegant graceful 496.9
ornate 498.12
overnice 500.18
grandiose 501.21
tasteful 533.6
fluent 544.9
chic 578.13
decent 664.5
good 999.12
beautiful 1016.18
elegiac
n meter 720.7
adj dirgelike 115.22
poetic 720.15
elegy 115.6
element
natural environment 209.4
particular 766.3
component 796.2
cause 886.1
heater 1020.10
matter 1052.2
chemical element 1060.2
elemental
n elemental spirit 678.6
adj basic 199.8
climatal 317.13
essential 767.9
beginning 818.15
original 886.14
chemical 1060.9
elementary basic 199.8
essential 767.9
component 796.5
simple 798.6
beginning 818.15
original 886.14
chemical 1060.9
elementary school 567.3
elements
contents 196.1
elementary education 568.5
Eucharist 701.7
substance 763.2
basics 818.6
the elements 317.3
elephant drugs 87.18
beast of burden 176.8
behemoth 257.14
pachyderm 311.4
elephantine dull 117.6
bulky 257.19
huge 257.20
elephantlike 311.47
stiff 534.3
excessive 993.16
elevate elate 109.8
erect 200.9
heighten 272.13
make better 392.9
promote 446.2
glorify 662.13
raise 912.5
exalt 912.6
elevated
n train 179.14
adj drunk 88.33
lofty 136.11
eminent 247.9
increased 251.7
high 272.14
lofty 544.14
grandiloquent 545.8
magnanimous 652.6
eminent 662.18
raised 912.9
elevation ascent 193.1
erection 200.4
increase 251.1
height 272.1
steep 272.2
diagram 381.3
promotion 446.1
loftiness 544.6
magnanimity 652.2
distinction 662.5
glorification 662.8
raising 912.1
elevator
people mover 176.5
garner 386.7
ascenseur 912.4
eleven team 617.7
football team 746.2
twelve 882.7
eleventh hour
curfew 315.5
crucial moment 843.5
lateness 846.1
elf dwarf 258.5
brat 302.4
mischief-maker 322.3
fairy 678.8
imp 680.7

elfish
  mischievous 322.6
  fairy 678.17
  impish 680.18
elicit educe 192.14
  prompt 375.13
  induce 886.11
elide shorten 268.6
  eliminate 773.5
eligibility
  qualification 371.11
  inclusion 772.1
eligible
  n eligibility 371.11
  adj qualified 371.24
eliminate excrete 12.12
  excise 255.10
  murder 308.16
  discard 390.7
  exterminate 395.14
  annihilate 762.7
  get rid of 773.5
  do away with 909.21
  evacuate 909.22
elimination
  excretion 12.1
  disappearance 34.1
  excision 255.3
  homicide 308.2
  discard 390.3
  extinction 395.6
  riddance 773.2
  evacuation 909.6
elision
  shortening 268.3
  abbreviation 537.4
elite
  n superior 249.5
  elect 371.12
  society 578.6
  upper class 607.2
  aristocracy 608.1
  clique 617.6
  the best 999.8
  adj exclusive 495.13
  socially prominent 578.16
  best 999.16
elixir panacea 86.3
  medicine 86.4
  extract 192.8
  essential content 196.5
  essence 767.2
elk 311.5
ell adjunct 254.3
  angle 278.2
ellipse curve 279.2
  oval 280.6
ellipsis
  shortening 268.3
  abbreviation 537.4
ellipsoid
  n sphere 282.2
  adj parabolic 279.13
  spherical 282.9
elliptical
  oblong 267.9
  shortened 268.9
  parabolic 279.13
elocution speech 524.1
  public speaking 543.1
elongated
  lengthened 267.8
  oblong 267.9
elope 368.10
elopement
  flight 368.4
  wedding 563.3
eloquence
  articulateness 524.4
  public speaking 543.1
  rhetoric 544.1
else
  adj other 780.8
  adv additionally 253.11
  otherwise 780.11
elsewhere
  adj abstracted 985.11
  adv away 222.18
elucidate
  explain 341.10
  make clear 521.6
elude evade 368.7
  outwit 415.11
  thwart 1012.15
elvish
  mischievous 322.6
  impish 680.18
Elysian blissful 97.9
  heavenly 681.12
Elysian Fields
  mythological 681.9
  destiny 839.2
emaciate
  v shrink 260.9
  thin 270.12
  waste 393.19
  adj haggard 270.20
emaciation
  symptom 85.9
  shrinking 260.3
  emaceration 270.6
  waste 393.4
emanate radiate 171.6
  emerge 190.11
  come after 835.3
emanation odor 69.1
  radiation 171.2
  emergence 190.1
  ectoplasm 689.7
  light 1025.1
emancipated
  free 430.21
  liberated 431.10
emasculate
  v unman 19.12
  feminize 77.13
  castrate 255.11
  cripple 393.14
  adj unmanned 19.19
embalm perfume 70.8
  lay out 309.21
  mummify 397.10
  perpetuate 829.5
embankment
  shore 234.2
  railway 383.7
  pile 770.10
  buttress 901.4
  harbor 1009.6
  barrier 1012.5
embargo
  n closure 293.1
  prohibition 444.1
  exclusion 773.1
  v stop 293.7
  prohibit 444.3
  exclude 773.4
embark send 176.15
  get under way 182.19
  go aboard 188.15
embark on 818.9
embarrass
  chagrin 96.15
  mortify 98.13
  humiliate 137.4
  involve 898.2
  bewilder 971.12
  confuse 985.7
  inconvenience 996.4
  hamper 1012.11
  put in a hole 1013.15
embarrassed
  distressed 96.22
  humiliated 137.14
  blushing 139.13
  indebted 623.8
  bewildered 971.24
  confused 985.12
  troubled 1013.20
embarrassment
  chagrin 96.4
  mortification 98.6
  humiliation 137.2
  shyness 139.4
  involvement 898.1
  bewilderment 971.3
  confusion 985.3
  impediment 1012.6
  predicament 1013.4
embassy house 228.5
  message 552.4
  foreign office 576.7
  commission 615.1
  office 739.7
embattled
  battled 458.23
  fortified 460.12
embed inset 191.5
  internalize 207.5
  fix 855.9
embellish falsify 354.16
  develop 392.10
  ornament 498.8
  bombast 545.7
embellishment
  development 392.2
  ornamentation 498.1
  ornateness 545.4
  ornament 709.18
  superfluity 993.4
ember dregs 256.2
  coal 1019.16
embezzle misuse 389.4
  steal 482.13
embitter sour 110.16
  aggrieve 112.19
  aggravate 119.2
  provoke 152.24
  impair 393.9
  antagonize 589.7
embittered sour 110.23
  aggravated 119.4
  resentful 152.26
  impaired 393.27
emblazon color 35.14
  ornament 498.8
  flaunt 501.17
  praise 509.12
emblem symbol 517.2
  insignia 647.1
  example 786.2
embodiment
  manifestation 348.1
  impersonation 349.4
  representative 349.7
  incarnation 763.4
  essence 767.2
  inclusion 772.1
  whole 792.1
  composition 796.1
  materiality 1052.1
  materialization 1052.8
embody manifest 348.5
  image 349.11
  incarnate 763.5
  include 772.3
  compose 796.3
  materialize 1052.9
embolden
  encourage 375.21
  abet 449.14
  motivate 492.16
embolism 293.3
embossed
  in relief 283.18
  sculptured 715.7
  established 855.13
embouchure
  mouth 292.4
  wind instrument 711.6
embrace
  n hold 474.2
  hug 562.3
  welcome 585.2
  greeting 585.4
  joint 800.4
  v surround 209.6
  wrap 295.20
  adopt 371.15
  hold 474.6
  retain 474.7
  seize 480.14
  hug 562.18
  welcome 585.9
  include 772.3
  put together 800.5
  join 800.11
  cohere 803.6
embroider
  falsify 354.16
  ornament 498.8
  grandiloquent 545.7
embroidery exaggeration 355.1
  sewing 741.1
embroilment
  agitation 105.4
  quarrel 456.5
  fight 457.4
  turbulence 671.2
  commotion 810.4
  agitation 917.1

embryo
zygote 305.14
vital force 886.7
embryology 1068.3
embryonic
infinitesimal 258.14
germinal 305.22
undeveloped 406.12
incomplete 795.4
beginning 818.15
original 886.14
emcee steward 574.4
theater man 704.23
master of ceremonies 743.20
broadcaster 1034.23
emend
make better 392.9
revise 392.12
remedy 396.13
emendation
explanation 341.4
revision 392.4
emerald 44.4
emerge
show 31.4
appear 33.8
come out 190.11
find vent 369.10
emergency
hospital room 197.25
crisis 843.4
urgency 997.4
danger 1006.1
predicament 1013.4
emergent
emerging 190.18
future 839.8
critical 843.10
emeritus
n academic rank 571.3
adj retired 448.3
emery 287.8
emetic
n nastiness 64.3
cleanser 79.17
vomitive 86.18
adj cleansing 79.28
vomitive 86.49
emigrant
migrant 178.5
goer 190.10
newcomer 774.4
emigrate
migrate 177.22
leave home 188.17
out-migrate 190.16
eminence hill 237.4
glory 247.2
height 272.1
steep 272.2
protuberance 283.2
prestige 417.4
distinction 662.5
influence 894.1
notability 997.2
éminence grise
Machiavellian 415.8
politics 610.6
influence 894.6
eminent
prominent 247.9
superior 249.12
high up 272.14
protruding 283.14
authoritative 417.15
high 662.18
notable 997.19
eminent domain 417.1
emir
Muslim ruler 575.10
prince 608.7
Sir 648.3
emissary
messenger 353.1
delegate 576.2
diplomat 576.6
emit excrete 12.12
exude 190.15
issue 352.14
say 524.22
let out 909.24
vaporize 1067.8
emollient
n balm 86.11
ointment 1056.3
adj palliative 86.40
relieving 120.9
softening 1047.16
lubricant 1056.10
emote
emotionalize 93.13
affect 500.12
act 704.29
emotion feeling 93.1
excitement 105.1
attitude 978.1
emotional
affective 93.17
excitable 105.28
attitudinal 978.7
emotive
feeling 93.17
emotionalistic 93.19
affecting 93.22
empathic
sensitive 24.12
condoling 147.3
in accord 455.3
empathize with
respond 93.11
condole with 147.2
empathy
sensitivity 24.3
sympathy 93.5
accord 455.1
emperor 575.8
emphasis
impressiveness 524.10
accent 709.25
meter 720.7
emphasize 997.14
emphatic
affirmative 334.8
vehement 544.13
decided 997.21
empire country 232.1
dominion 417.5
sovereignty 417.8
government 612.1
empirical
real 761.15
experimental 942.11
empiricism
ethical philosophy 636.2
experiment 942.1
materialism 1052.6
emplacement
location 159.1
placement 159.6
platform 901.13
emplane 188.15
employ
n use 387.1
service 577.12
occupation 724.1
v practice 328.8
use 387.10
spend 387.13
hire 615.14
occupy 724.10
exert 725.8
employee
subordinate 432.5
hireling 577.3
pensioner 577.3
assistant 616.6
worker 726.2
emporium
market 736.1
marketplace 736.2
empower
enable 18.10
authorize 443.11
commission 615.10
empty
v run out 190.13
draw off 192.12
evacuate 909.22
adj ineffective 19.15
hungry 100.25
dull 117.6
vacant 222.14
concave 284.16
insincere 354.32
vain 391.13
meaningless 520.6
inexpressive 522.20
nonexistent 762.8
empty-headed 922.19
ignorant 930.12
thoughtless 933.4
sophistical 936.10
baseless 936.13
trivial 998.19
empty-headed
empty-minded 922.19
ignorant 930.12
thoughtless 933.4
scatterbrained 985.16
emulate follow 336.7
compete 457.18
set an example 786.7
excel 999.11
emulsify mix 797.10
emulsionize 1062.10
emulsion film 714.10
emulsoid 1062.7
solution 1064.3
enable
empower 18.10
fit 405.8
authorize 443.11
include 772.3
make possible 966.5
enact perform 328.9
manifest 348.5
impersonate 349.12
accomplish 407.4
legislate 613.10
legalize 673.9
act out 704.30
enamel
n blanket 295.12
v color 35.14
coat 295.24
adj ceramic 742.7
enamored 104.28
enate
n kinfolk 559.2
lineage 560.4
adj related 559.6
lineal 560.18
kindred 775.10
akin 784.13
encampment
camping 225.4
camp 228.29
campground 463.3
encapsulate
shorten 268.6
wrap 295.20
abridge 557.5
iterate 849.8
encase confine 212.6
package 212.9
wrap 295.20
enchant
delight 95.10
fascinate 377.7
charm 691.8
engross 983.13
enchanted
overjoyed 95.17
enamored 104.28
wondering 122.9
charmed 691.12
miraculous 870.16
gripped 983.18
dreamy 986.25
encipher 345.10
encircle
surround 209.7
enclose 212.5
circle 280.10
besiege 459.19
include 772.3
enclose 914.5
enclave
enclosed place 212.3
plot 231.4
enclitic
added to writing 254.2
morphology 526.3
enclose
internalize 207.5
surround 209.6
circumscribe 210.4
bound 211.8
close in 212.5
confine 429.12
include 772.3
enclosure
the enclosed 196.6
surrounding 209.5

confinement 212.1
enclosed place 212.3
place of confinement 429.7
fortification 460.4
encode 345.10
encomiastic 509.16
encompass
extend 158.9
surround 209.6
enclose 212.5
circle 280.10
wrap 295.20
besiege 459.19
include 772.3
total 792.8
put together 800.5
combine 805.3
encircle 914.5
encore
n repeat performance 849.6
repeat 874.2
v applaud 509.10
adv recurrently 849.17
again 874.7
interj bravo! 509.22
bis! 849.18
encounter
n meeting 223.4
contest 457.3
impact 902.3
v approach 167.3
confront 216.8
meet 223.11
oppose 451.5
come up against 457.15
experience 831.8
collide 902.13
come across 941.3
encourage cheer 109.7
comfort 121.6
hearten 375.21
admonish 422.6
abet 449.14
be useful 449.17
hearten 492.16
encouraging
cheering 109.16
comforting 121.13
promising 124.13
provocative 375.27
encroach intrude 214.5
usurp 640.8
overstep 910.9
encroachment
intrusion 214.1
impairment 393.1
usurpation 640.3
overstepping 910.3
encrust 295.27
encumber add 253.4
burden 297.13
hamper 1012.11
encumbered
weighted 297.18
indebted 623.8
encyclical 352.2
encyclopedia
reference book 554.9
lore 928.9
encyclopedic
comprehensive 772.7
learned 928.21
end
n boundary 211.3
remainder 256.1
death 307.1
motive 375.1
objective 380.2
fatality 395.2
completion 407.2
gain 472.3
portion 477.5
football team 746.2
piece 793.3
limit 794.5
end point 820.1
stop 857.2
immediate cause 886.3
solution 940.1
fate 964.2
v kill 308.13
put an end to 395.12
perish 395.23
complete 407.6
terminate 820.5
cease 857.6
result 887.4
endanger 1006.6
endearing
delightful 97.7
lovable 104.25
endeavor
n act 328.3
effort 403.1
attempt 403.2
exertion 725.1
v strive 403.5
undertake 404.3
exert oneself 725.9
endemic
contagious 85.62
native 226.5
endless wordy 538.12
continuous 812.8
infinite 823.3
perpetual 829.7
continuing 856.7
innumerable 884.10
endocrine
n digestive secretion 13.2
adj glandular 13.8
endomorph 92.12
endorse ratify 332.12
adopt 371.15
secure 438.9
consent 441.2
abet 449.14
approve 509.9
support 609.41
endow empower 18.10
provide 385.7
invest 478.17
establish 892.10
endowed
provided 385.13
talented 413.29
dowered 478.26
end up arrive 186.6
end 820.5
come to an end 820.6
result 887.4
conclude 946.10
endurance
strength 15.1
patience 134.1
perseverance 360.1
durability 827.1
permanence 853.1
continuance 856.1
endure bear 134.5
condone 148.4
keep alive 306.12
persevere 360.2
suffer 443.10
resist 453.2
afford 626.7
live on 761.9
elapse 821.5
last 827.6
experience 831.8
remain 853.5
continue 856.3
toughen 1049.3
enema washing 79.5
cleanser 79.17
clyster 86.19
sprinkler 1065.8
enemy
n opponent 452.1
foe 589.6
adj oppositional 451.8
warlike 458.21
energetic
vigorous 17.13
powerful 18.12
active 330.17
industrious 330.22
energize
dynamize 17.10
vivify 306.11
motivate 375.12
electrify 1032.26
energy
n strength 15.1
vigor 17.1
power 18.1
liveliness 330.2
industry 330.6
exertion 725.1
adj fuel 1021.9
enervate weaken 16.10
unman 19.12
fatigue 21.4
afflict 85.50
spiritualize 764.4
enervation
weakening 16.5
helplessness 19.4
fatigue 21.1
unhealthiness 85.3
languor 331.6
enfant terrible
brat 302.4
mischief-maker 322.3
spoiled child 427.4
enfeeble weaken 16.10
disable 19.9
afflict 85.50
enfeebled
weakened 16.18
tired 21.7
enflame 375.18
enfold
internalize 207.5
surround 209.6
fold 291.5
wrap 295.20
embrace 562.18
enforce apply 387.11
compel 424.4
execute 437.9
legalize 673.9
enfranchise
liberate 431.4
authorize 443.11
include 772.3
enfranchisement
empowerment 18.8
vote 371.6
liberation 431.1
authorization 443.3
inclusion 772.1
engage induce 375.22
attract 377.6
attempt 403.6
commit 436.5
contract 437.5
take on 457.16
employ 615.14
occupy 724.10
interact 777.6
involve 898.2
engross 983.13
engage in
practice 328.8
undertake 404.3
busy oneself with 724.11
engagement
inducement 375.3
undertaking 404.1
obligation 436.2
betrothal 436.3
contest 457.3
participation 476.1
proposal 562.8
appointment 582.8
employment 615.4
playing engagement 704.11
position 724.5
interaction 777.3
involvement 898.1
engrossment 983.3
engaging
delightful 97.7
alluring 377.8
engrossing 983.20
en garde 760.4
engender
procreate 78.8
beget 818.14
cause 886.10
produce 890.7
originate 892.12
engine
instrument of conversion 858.10
machinery enginery 1040.3
engineer
n engineman 178.12
planner 381.6
combat engineer 461.14
professional engineer 726.7
producer 892.7

  v plot 381.9
  manage 409.12
  maneuver 415.10
  direct 573.8
  perform 892.11
engineering 1043.1
English 341.12
English-speaking 524.31
engorge stuff 8.25
  ingest 187.11
  destroy 395.10
  gluttonize 672.4
  satiate 994.4
engrave
  impress upon 93.16
  indent 284.14
  furrow 290.3
  figure 498.9
  mark 517.19
  print 548.14
  record 549.15
  grave 713.9
  sculpture 715.5
  fix 855.9
  fix in the mind 989.18
engross
  absorb 187.13
  fatten 259.8
  monopolize 469.6
  write 547.19
  purchase 733.7
  corner 737.26
  occupy the mind 931.20
  take in 983.13
engrossed in 983.17
engulf ingest 187.11
  overflow 238.17
  submerge 367.7
  overwhelm 395.21
  oversupply 993.14
enhance
  aggravate 119.2
  intensify 251.5
  make better 392.9
enhancement
  aggravation 119.1
  intensification 251.2
  exaggeration 355.1
  improvement 392.1
enigma secret 345.5
  mystery 522.8
  the unknown 930.7
  bewilderment 971.3
  dilemma 1013.7
enigmatic
  wonderful 122.10
  secret 345.11
  cryptic 522.17
  unknown 930.17
  bewildering 971.27
  ambiguous 539.4
enjoin command 420.8
  admonish 422.6
  restrain 428.7
  prohibit 444.3
  impose 643.4
enjoy savor 63.5
  pleasure in 95.13
  possess 469.4
enjoyment
  pleasure 95.1
  amusement 743.1
enkindle
  excite 105.12
  kindle 375.18
  ignite 1020.22
enlace 740.6
enlarge
  aggravate 119.2
  increase 251.4
  size 257.15
  expand 259.4
  grow 259.5
  amplify 538.7
  process 714.15
  elaborate 861.6
enlargement
  aggravation 119.1
  increase 251.1
  expansion 259.1
  exaggeration 355.1
  amplification 538.6
  print 714.5
  photoprint 785.5
  evolution 861.1
enlighten
  explain 341.10
  make better 392.9
  inform 551.8
  teach 568.10
  disillusion 977.2
  illuminate 1025.28
enlightening
  explanatory 341.15
  informative 551.18
  educational 568.18
  disillusioning 977.4
  liberalizing 979.13
enlightenment
  explanation 341.4
  cultivation 392.3
  information 551.1
  teaching 568.1
  learning 928.4
  disillusionment 977.1
enlist install 191.4
  induce 375.22
  participate 476.5
  list 615.17
  join 617.14
  take one's turn 825.5
enlistee recruit 461.18
  member 617.11
enliven refresh 9.2
  energize 17.10
  stimulate 105.13
  cheer 109.7
  inspire 375.20
  amuse 743.21
en masse
  cooperatively 450.6
  together 769.11
  wholly 792.13
enmesh trap 356.20
  catch 480.17
  involve 898.2
  hamper 1012.11
  put in a hole 1013.15
enmity hostility 99.2
  bitterness 103.2
  hatefulness 451.2
  disaccord 456.1
  contention 457.1
  unfriendliness 589.1
ennoble promote 446.2
  glorify 662.13
ennui unpleasure 96.1
  weariness 118.3
  languor 331.6
enormity
  indignity 156.2
  greatness 247.1
  hugeness 257.7
  misdeed 655.2
  baseness 661.3
enormous large 247.7
  huge 257.20
  excessive 993.16
  terrible 1000.9
enough
  n sufficiency 991.1
  adj satisfactory 107.11
  sufficient 991.6
  sated 994.6
  adv satisfactorily 107.15
  sufficiently 991.8
  interj cease! 857.13
en passant
  on the way 176.20
  incidentally 843.13
enplane 188.15
en plein air 206.11
enrage excite 105.12
  infuriate 152.25
  heat 1020.18
enraptured
  overjoyed 95.17
  enamored 104.28
  frenzied 105.25
  wondering 122.9
en règle 867.8
enrich
  vitaminize 7.20
  make better 392.9
  ornament 498.8
  ornament 545.7
  richen 618.9
  fertilize 890.8
enrobe 5.39
enroll install 191.4
  record 549.15
  be taught 570.11
  enlist 615.17
  join 617.14
  list 871.8
en route
  on the way 176.20
  on the move 177.42
ensconce settle 159.17
  conceal 346.6
ensemble
  n furniture 229.1
  cast 707.11
  orchestra 710.12
  chorus 710.16
  compound 797.5
  adv together 769.11
enshrine
  enclose 212.5
  inter 309.19
  glorify 662.13
  sanctify 685.5
  exalt 912.6
enshroud clothe 5.39
  wrap 295.20
  conceal 346.6
ensign
  Navy officer 575.20
  insignia 647.1
  flag 647.7
enslave
  subjugate 432.8
  appropriate 480.19
  domineer 612.16
ensnare trap 356.20
  lure 377.5
  catch 480.17
ensue succeed 815.2
  come after 835.3
  result 887.4
ensure secure 438.9
  make sure 970.11
  protect 1008.18
entail
  n inheritance 479.2
  v bequeath 478.18
  signify 517.17
  imply 519.4
  transfer 629.3
  involve 772.4
  determine 886.12
entangle trap 356.20
  catch 480.17
  complicate 799.3
  involve 898.2
  confuse 985.7
  hamper 1012.11
  put in a hole 1013.15
entente treaty 437.2
  understanding 788.2
enter appear 33.8
  go in 189.7
  insert 191.3
  record 549.15
  join 617.14
  keep accounts 628.8
  enter on 818.9
  list 871.8
enter into
  participate 476.5
  compose 796.3
  put together 800.5
  enter 818.9
enterprise vim 17.2
  act 328.3
  enterprisingness 330.7
  plan 381.1
  endeavor 403.1
  undertaking 404.1
  daring 492.5
  exploit 492.7
  company 617.9
  occupation 724.1
entertain hold 474.7
  have a party 582.20
  entertain guests 585.8
  amuse 743.21
  take under consideration 931.14
entertainment meal 8.5
  pleasure 95.1
  party 582.11
  theatrical performance 704.12
  amusement 743.1

entertainment industry 743.13
enter upon
undertake 404.3
set to work 725.15
enter 818.9
enthrall delight 95.10
fascinate 377.7
subjugate 432.8
engross 983.13
enthrone
install 615.12
glorify 662.13
enthusiasm
animation 17.4
eagerness 101.1
willingness 324.1
vehemence 544.5
mania 926.12
interest 983.2
enthusiastic
energetic 17.13
fervent 93.18
enthused and big 101.10
willing 324.5
vehement 544.13
interested 983.16
entice 377.5
entire
n male animal 76.8
horse 311.10
adj whole 792.9
complete 794.9
unqualified 960.2
sound 1002.7
entitle
authorize 443.11
name 527.11
entitled
authorized 443.17
warranted 639.9
entity existence 761.1
something 763.3
individual 872.4
entomb confine 212.6
inter 309.19
entourage
follower 166.2
environment 209.1
attendance 769.6
entrails
digestive system 2.18
insides 207.4
entrance
put to sleep 22.20
delight 95.10
fascinate 377.7
cast a spell 691.7
entrance entrée 187.3
access 189.1
entry 189.1
opening 189.5
insertion 191.1
vestibule 197.19
intrusion 214.1
channel 239.1
door 292.6
entranced
overjoyed 95.17
wondering 122.9
dreamy 986.25
entrant incomer 189.4
competitor 452.2
novice 572.9
beginner 818.2
entrap trap 356.20
catch 480.17
hamper 1012.11
entreaty appeal 440.2
prayer 696.4
entrée serving 8.10
dish 10.7
entrée 187.3
entrance 189.1
entrench
intrude 214.5
fortify 460.9
fix 855.9
entre nous
confidentially 345.20
mutually 777.13
entrep(tm)t 386.6
entrepreneuer 381.6
entrepreneur 730.1
entropy
inertness 173.4
formlessness 263.1
information theory 551.7
noncohesion 804.1
disorder 810.1
change 852.1
uncertainty 971.1
entrust commit 478.16
commission 615.10
give credit 622.6
entry entrée 187.3
entrance 189.1
opening 189.5
vestibule 197.19
door 292.6
memorandum 549.4
registration 549.14
item 628.5
entry fee 630.6
entwine weave 740.6
hamper 1012.11
enumerate
quantify 244.4
itemize 801.7
list 871.8
number 1017.17
enunciate affirm 334.5
announce 352.12
say 524.22
envelop clothe 5.39
surround 209.6
wrap 295.20
conceal 346.6
envelope
n exterior 206.2
wrapper 295.18
illustriousness 662.6
v besiege 459.19
enviable 100.30
envious
discontented 108.7
jealous 153.5
envying 154.4
environment
neighborhood 209.1
natural environment 209.4
surrounding 209.5
circumstances 766.2
the natural world 1073.1
environmental engineering 1043.1
environs
environment 209.1
nearness 223.1
region 231.1
envision expect 130.5
contemplate 380.5
come 839.6
think of 931.17
foresee 961.5
visualize 986.15
envoy delegate 576.2
diplomat 576.6
envoy extraordinary 576.6
envy
n discontent 108.1
jealousy 153.1
resentfulness 154
enviousness 154.1
v be envious of 154.3
enwrap clothe 5.39
surround 209.6
package 212.9
wrap 295.20
enzyme 7.9
eon 824.4
epaulet 647.5
ephemeral
n plant 310.3
ephemeron 828.5
adj mortal 307.34
perennial 310.44
unsubstantial 764.5
transient 828.7
epic
n story 719.3
adj huge 257.20
poetic 720.15
narrative 722.8
epicedium 115.6
epicenter control center 208.5
upheaval 671.5
epicureanism
gastronomy 8.15
pleasure-loving 95.4
aesthetic taste 496.5
sensuality 663.1
epicurism 672.2
epidemic
n plague 85.5
adj contagious 85.62
prevalent 864.12
plentiful 991.7
epidermic
epidermal 2.27
exterior 206.7
cutaneous 295.32
epigram
witticism 489.7
aphorism 537.3
maxim 974.1
epigrammatic
concise 537.6
aphoristic 974.6
epigraph
lettering 546.5
caption 937.2
motto 974.4
epigraphy 341.8
epilepsy seizure 85.6
spasm 917.6
epilogue
added to writing 254.2
act 704.7
part of writing 793.2
sequel 817.1
end 820.1
epiphany visibility 31.1
appearance 33.1
manifestation 348.1
revelation 683.10
intuition 934.1
episcopal 698.13
episode
interjection 213.2
digression 538.4
plot 722.4
discontinuity 813.1
event 831.2
frenzy 926.7
epistle 553.2
epitaph 309.18
epithalamium 563.3
epithet
n oath 513.4
name 527.3
nickname 527.7
motto 974.4
v vilify 513.7
epitome
shortening 268.3
abridgment 557.1
paragon 659.4
essence 767.2
ideal 786.4
pattern of perfection 1002.4
epitomize
shorten 268.6
set an example 786.7
epoch 824.5
epode 720.9
eponym root 526.2
name 527.3
equal
n match 790.4
substitute 862.2
v parallel 203.4
match 790.5
excel 999.11
adj parallel 203.6
symmetric 264.4
proportionate 477.13
coinciding 778.8
uniform 781.5
equalized 790.7
interchangeable 863.5
equality
symmetry 264.1
justice 649.1
sameness 778.1
parity 790.1
equalize level 201.6
symmetrize 264.3
smooth 287.5
make uniform 781.4
make agree 788.7
equate 790.6
equal opportunity
equating 790.2

opportunity 843.2
equal rights 790.1
equanimity
equilibrium 106.3
uniformity 781.1
equate
parallelize 203.5
relate 775.6
equalize 790.6
equator zone 231.3
circle 280.3
middle 819.1
bisector 875.3
hot place 1019.11
orbit 1072.16
equestrian
n rider 178.8
adj ungulate 311.46
equidistant
parallel 203.6
central 208.11
middle 819.4
equilibrium
equanimity 106.3
symmetry 264.1
inaction 329.1
harmony 533.2
moderation 670.1
correlation 777.1
uniformity 781.1
equality 790.1
continuity 812.1
stability 855.1
equine
n horse 311.10
adj ungulate 311.46
equinox
vernal equinox 313.7
orbit 1072.16
equip outfit 5.41
furnish 385.8
fit 405.8
establish 892.10
equipment
supplies 385.2
provision 385.1
matériel 385.4
preparation 405.1
fitting 405.2
talent 413.4
baseball 745.1
football 746.1
hockey 749.1
field hockey 749.4
bowling 750.1
golf 751.1
soccer 752.1
skiing 753.1
boxing 754.1
equitable just 649.8
impartial 649.10
unprejudiced 979.12
equity estate 471.4
justice 649.1
stock 738.2
equality 790.1
equivalence
correlation 777.1
sameness 778.1
agreement 788.1
equality 790.1
comparability 943.3
equivalent
n offset 338.2
the same 778.3
likeness 784.3
equal 790.4
substitute 862.2
adj reciprocal 777.10
coinciding 778.8
analogous 784.11
agreeing 788.9
tantamount 790.8
substitute 862.8
interchangeable 863.5
equivocal
n ambiguity 539.2
adj prevaricating 344.11
untruthful 354.34
ambiguous 539.4
self-contradictory 779.8
mixed 797.14
uncertain 971.16
equivocate
prevaricate 344.7
lie 354.19
vacillate 362.8
dodge 368.8
weasel 539.3
go roundabout 914.4
quibble 936.9
era 824.5
eradicate
extract 192.10
excise 255.10
exterminate 395.14
annihilate 762.7
eliminate 773.5
erase delete 255.12
kill 308.14
obliterate 395.16
end 820.5
abrade 1044.7
Erato music 710.22
Muse 720.10
creative thought 986.2
Erebus
nether world deity 682.5
darkness 1027.1
erect
v elevate 200.9
produce 892.8
elevate 912.5
adj proud 136.8
vertical 200.11
honest 644.13
raised 912.9
erection
sexual desire 75.5
erecting 200.4
house 228.5
structure 266.2
production 892.2
elevation 912.1
eremite 584.5
erg 17.7
ergo 888.7
ergonomics 717.5
eristic
n argumentation 935.4
arguer 935.12
adj partisan 456.17
argumentative 935.19
ermine heraldry 647.2
royal insignia 647.3
erode disappear 34.2
recede 168.2
decrease 252.6
subtract 255.9
consume 388.3
wear 393.20
corrode 393.21
waste 473.5
disintegrate 806.3
abrade 1044.7
erogenous 75.25
Eros god 104.1
Love 104.8
erose notched 289.5
nonuniform 782.3
erosion
decrement 252.3
subtraction 255.1
consumption 388.1
wear 393.5
waste 473.2
disintegration 806.1
abrasion 1044.2
erotic sexual 75.25
amorous 104.26
lascivious 665.29
erotica
literature 547.12
pornographic literature 718.1
err stray 164.4
miss 410.14
go wrong 654.9
do wrong 655.4
misbelieve 688.8
misjudge 948.2
fall into error 975.9
errand
commission 615.1
task 724.2
errant
deviative 164.7
wandering 177.37
fallible 971.22
erroneous 975.16
errata 554.12
erratic
n eccentric 927.3
adj deviative 164.7
nonuniform 782.3
unordered 810.12
irregular 851.3
inconstant 854.7
abnormal 870.9
eccentric 927.5
uncertain 971.16
erratum 975.3
erroneous false 354.25
ungrammatic 531.4
unorthodox 688.9
untrue 975.16
illusory 976.9
imperfect 1003.4
error
misinterpretation 342.1
miss 410.4
bungle 414.5
iniquity 654.3
misdeed 655.2
heresy 688.2
muff 745.3
game 748.2
misjudgment 948.1
erroneousness 975.1
mistake 975.3
ersatz
n substitute 862.2
adj imitation 336.8
spurious 354.26
similar 784.10
substitute 862.8
erstwhile 837.10
eruct erupt 671.13
disgorge 909.25
belch 909.28
erudite 570.16
erudition
learning 570.1
wisdom 920.5
scholarship 928.5
erupt
burst forth 33.9
take sick 85.47
emerge 190.11
find vent 369.10
burst out 671.13
originate 818.13
disgorge 909.25
escalator
people mover 176.5
elevator 912.4
escapade 743.6
escape
n defense mechanism 92.23
departure 188.1
outlet 190.9
absence 222.4
avoidance 368.1
getaway 369.1
v absent oneself 222.8
evade 368.7
make one's escape 369.6
free oneself from 431.8
escape clause
loophole 369.4
condition 959.2
escape one
be incomprehensible 522.10
not understand 522.11
escape notice 984.5
be forgotten 990.7
escapism
defense mechanism 92.23
escape 369.1
escargot 10.25
escarpment
precipice 200.3
slope 237.2
eschatology end 820.1
doomsday 839.3
eschew 668.7
escort
n lover 104.12
conductor 769.5
chaperon 1008.7
bodyguard 1008.14
v conduct 769.8
escrow
storage 386.5
pledge 438.2

esker 237.5
esophagus 2.18
esoteric
  n occultist 689.11
  adj secret 345.11
  confidential 345.14
  latent 519.5
  implied 519.7
  recondite 522.16
  occult 689.23
  intrinsic 767.7
  particular 865.12
  supernatural 870.15
ESP
  communication 343.1
  clairvoyance 689.8
espionage
  observation 27.2
  surveillance 938.9
esplanade 383.2
espousal
  adoption 371.4
  betrothal 436.3
espouse
  adopt 371.15
  join with 509.13
  get married 563.15
  defend 600.10
esprit heart 93.3
  gaiety 109.4
  cooperation 450.1
  accord 455.1
  wit 489.1
  intellect 919.1
  smartness 920.2
esprit de corps 587.3
espy see 27.12
  detect 941.5
esquire
  n beau 104.13
  nobleman 608.4
  escort 769.5
  v court 562.21
  escort 769.8
essay
  n attempt 403.2
  writing 547.10
  treatise 556.1
  test 942.2
  v attempt 403.6
  experiment 942.8
essence odor 69.1
  perfumery 70.2
  extract 192.8
  essential content 196.5
  meaning 518.1
  summary 557.2
  existence 761.1
  substance 767.2
  major part 792.6
  intrinsicalness 893.3
  topic 937.1
  salient point 997.6
essential
  n essence 767.2
  requirement 963.2
  adj quintessential 192.18
  basic 199.8
  of the essence 767.9
  simple 798.6
  requisite 963.13
  vital 997.23
establish fix 159.16
  publicize 352.15
  accustom 373.9
  legalize 673.9
  inaugurate 818.11
  stable 855.9
  cause 886.10
  found 892.10
  prove 957.10
  make sure 970.11
establishment
  foundation 159.7
  the best 249.5
  structure 266.2
  organization 617.8
  market 736.1
  workplace 739.1
  hierarchy 809.4
  beginning 818.1
  fixity 855.2
  foundation 892.4
  proof 957.3
  ensuring 970.8
the Establishment
  the authorities 575.15
  the government 612.3
  influence 894.6
estate
  mansion 228.7
  rank 245.2
  interest 471.4
  class 607.1
  state 765.1
  category 809.2
esteem
  n respect 155.1
  approval 509.1
  estimation 662.3
  influence 894.1
  notability 997.2
  v cherish 104.21
  respect 155.4
  approve 509.9
  judge 946.8
  think 953.11
  value 997.13
esthetic 1016.18
estimable
  venerable 155.12
  measurable 300.14
  praiseworthy 509.20
  honest 644.13
  reputable 662.15
  influential 894.13
  notable 997.19
  good 999.12
  calculable 1017.25
estimate
  n measurement 300.1
  estimation 946.3
  opinion 953.6
  gamble 971.8
  v measure 300.10
  form an estimate 946.9
  think 953.11
  calculate 1017.18
estivation 313.3
estrange
  sow dissension 456.14
  antagonize 589.7
  separate 802.8
estrangement 566.1
estuary outlet 190.9
  inlet 242.1
et al
  adv in the majority 883.10
  phrs et cetera 253.14
et cetera
  adv in the majority 883.10
  phrs and so forth 253.14
etch eat 713.10
  fix 855.9
etching 713.2
eternal
  mandatory 420.12
  almighty 677.17
  infinite 823.3
  perpetual 829.7
eternity
  timelessness 822.1
  infinity 823.1
  long time 827.4
  perpetuity 829.1
an eternity 829.2
ether height 272.2
  lightness 298.2
  air 317.1
  spirit 764.3
  coolant 1024.7
  the heavens 1072.2
ethereal thin 270.16
  high 272.14
  light 298.10
  rare 299.4
  airy 317.12
  heavenly 681.12
  unsubstantial 764.6
  chimeric 986.22
  spectral 988.7
  immaterial 1053.7
  vaporous 1067.9
ethical moral 636.6
  dutiful 641.13
  honest 644.13
ethics principles 636.1
  duty 641.1
ethnic
  n person 312.5
  adj racial 559.7
ethnic cleansing 308.4
ethnicity
  humankind 312.1
  race 559.4
  exclusiveness 773.3
ethology 321.3
ethos culture 373.2
  ethics 636.1
  nature 767.4
  ideology 932.8
  opinion 953.6
  climate 978.5
etiology cause 886.1
  attribution 888.1
etiquette
  good behavior 321.2
  custom 373.1
  mannerliness 504.3
  social convention 579.1
  social code 580.3
etymologist 523.15
etymology 526.15
eugenics
  improvement 392.1
  heredity 560.6
euhemeristic 341.15
eulogy dirge 115.6
  last offices 309.4
  praise 509.5
  speech 543.2
  citation 646.4
eunuch impotent 19.6
  sexlessness 75.9
euphemism
  overniceness 500.5
  catchword 526.9
  affectation 533.3
euphonious
  harmonious 533.8
  melodious 708.48
euphoric pleased 95.15
  content 107.7
  cheerful 109.11
euphuistic
  overnice 500.18
  affected 533.9
  grandiloquent 545.8
eureka! 941.11
Europe
  world region 231.6
  continent 235.1
eurythmic 264.4
Euterpe music 710.22
  Muse 720.10
  creative thought 986.2
euthanasia
  natural death 307.7
  killing 308.1
evacuate defecate 12.13
  quit 188.9
  abandon 370.5
  void 909.22
  let out 909.24
evade avoid 164.6
  prevaricate 344.7
  elude 368.7
  escape 369.6
  outwit 415.11
  remain neutral 467.5
  be dishonest 645.11
  pull back 903.7
  quibble 936.9
evaluate
  measure 300.10
  price 630.11
  criticize 723.5
  classify 801.8
  estimate 946.9
evanescence
  disappearance 34.1
  recession 168.1
  infinitesimalness 258.2
  unsubstantiality 764.1
  transience 828.1
evanescent
  infinitesimal 258.14
  thin 764.6
  transient 828.7
evangelical
  scriptural 683.11
  orthodox 687.7
  strict 687.8
evangelist herald 353.2

- lecturer 543.5
- religion 684.2
- worshiper 696.9
- revivalist 699.6
- converter 858.9
- **evangelistic**
  - scriptural 683.11
  - ecclesiastic 698.13
- **evaporate**
  - disappear 34.2
  - preserve 397.9
  - cease to exist 762.6
  - dissipate 771.5
  - flit 828.6
  - dry 1066.6
  - vaporize 1067.8
- **evasion**
  - prevarication 344.4
  - secrecy 345.1
  - avoidance 368.1
  - escape 369.1
  - circumvention 415.5
  - neutrality 467.1
  - retreat 903.3
  - quibbling 936.5
- **Eve** 77.5
- **even**
  - *n* evening 315.2
  - *v* level 201.6
  - symmetrize 264.3
  - smooth 287.5
  - make uniform 781.4
  - equalize 790.6
  - *adj* horizontal 201.7
  - parallel 203.6
  - symmetric 264.4
  - straight 277.6
  - smooth 287.10
  - neutral 467.7
  - just 649.8
  - equable 670.13
  - uniform 781.5
  - equal 790.7
  - periodic 850.7
  - interchangeable 863.5
  - exact 973.17
  - numeric 1017.23
  - *adv* chiefly 249.17
  - notwithstanding 338.8
  - interchangeably 863.6
  - exactly 973.21
- **even break**
  - gambling odds 759.6
  - equating 790.2
  - opportunity 843.2
  - even chance 972.7
- **evenhanded**
  - just 649.8
  - impartial 649.10
  - unprejudiced 979.12
- **evening**
  - symmetrization 264.2
  - equating 790.2
- **evening**
  - *n* post meridiem 315
  - eve 315.2
  - *adj* evensong 315.8
- **event** game 743.9
  - circumstance 766.1
  - eventuality 831.1
  - occurrence 831.2
  - effect 887.1
- **even-tempered**
  - inexcitable 106.10
  - equable 670.13
- **event horizon** 1072.8
- **eventuality**
  - circumstance 766.1
  - event 831.1
  - the future 839.1
  - futurity 839.4
  - effect 887.1
  - liability 897.1
  - possibility 966.1
- **ever** forever 829.12
  - constantly 847.7
  - by any possibility 966.10
- **everglade** 243.1
- **evergreen**
  - *n* plant 310.3
  - tree 310.10
  - *adj* arboreal 310.39
  - perennial 310.44
  - durable 827.10
  - perennial 829.8
  - new 841.7
- **everlasting**
  - tedious 118.9
  - almighty 677.17
  - perpetual 829.7
  - immortal 829.9
- **ever so** greatly 247.15
  - chiefly 249.17
- **ever so little** 248.9
- **every** 864.15
- **everybody**
  - the people 606.1
  - all 864.4
- **everyday**
  - customary 373.13
  - simple 499.6
  - vernacular 523.20
  - frequent 847.4
  - usual 869.9
- **everyman** 864.3
- **every now and then**
  - haphazardly 810.18
  - occasionally 848.5
  - repeatedly 849.16
  - regularly 850.9
- **everyone**
  - the people 606.1
  - all 864.4
- **every so often**
  - occasionally 848.5
  - regularly 850.9
- **everything** all 792.3
  - all 864.4
- **everywhere**
  - *adj* omnipresent 221.13
  - *adv* everywheres 158.13
  - from everywhere 158.14
  - in every direction 161.25
  - scatteringly 771.12
  - generally 864.18
  - universally 1072.27
- **evict** dislodge 160.6
  - dispossess 480.23
  - oust 909.15
- **eviction**
  - dislocation 160.1
  - dispossession 480.7
  - elimination 773.2
  - ousting 909.2
- **evidence**
  - *n* distinctness 31.2
  - appearance 348.1
  - manifestness 348.3
  - clue 517.9
  - information 551.1
  - testimony 598.8
  - grounds for belief 957.1
  - proof 957.1
  - *v* manifest 348.5
  - evince 957.8
- **evil**
  - *n* vice 654.1
  - iniquity 654.3
  - misdeed 655.2
  - badness 1000.1
  - ill 1000.3
  - bane 1001.1
  - trouble 1013.3
  - *adj* ominous 133.17
  - wrong 638.3
  - wicked 654.16
  - bad 1000.7
  - *adv* badly 1000.13
- **evil eye** gaze 27.5
  - malevolence 144.4
  - curse 513.1
  - spell 691.1
  - bad influence 1000.4
- **evince** manifest 348.5
  - evidence 957.8
- **eviscerate**
  - weaken 16.10
  - disembowel 192.13
- **evocation**
  - elicitation 192.5
  - description 349.2
  - summons 420.5
  - conjuration 690.4
- **evocative**
  - extractive 192.17
  - recollective 989.22
- **evoke** elicit 192.14
  - describe 349.9
  - prompt 375.13
  - summon 420.11
  - conjure 690.11
  - resemble 784.7
  - induce 886.11
  - remember 989.10
- **evolution**
  - development 392.2
  - evolutionary change 861.1
  - evolving 861.1
  - notation 1017.2
- **evolve**
  - extract 192.10
  - develop 392.10
  - amplify 538.7
  - develop 861.5
  - produce 892.8
  - originate 892.12
- **evolve into** 858.17
- **ewe** female animal 77.10
  - sheep 311.7
- **ewer** 79.12
- **exacerbate** pain 26.7
  - irritate 96.14
  - sour 110.16
  - aggravate 119.2
  - intensify 251.5
  - impair 393.9
  - antagonize 589.7
- **exacerbation**
  - irritation 96.3
  - excitation 105.11
  - aggravation 119.1
  - intensification 251.2
- **exact**
  - *v* extort 192.15
  - demand 421.5
  - oblige 424.5
  - wrest 480.22
  - charge 630.12
  - impose 643.4
  - require 963.9
  - *adj* meticulous 339.12
  - elegant 533.6
  - punctilious 580.10
  - detailed 766.9
  - discriminating 944.7
  - precise 973.17
- **exacting**
  - extractive 192.17
  - meticulous 339.12
  - demanding 421.9
  - strict 425.6
  - fastidious 495.9
  - overpriced 632.12
  - difficult 1013.17
- **exactitude**
  - meticulousness 339.3
  - elegance 533.1
  - accuracy 973.5
- **exact revenge** 507.4
- **exaggerate**
  - intensify 251.5
  - misrepresent 350.3
  - lie 354.19
  - hyperbolize 355.3
  - overrun 910.4
  - overestimate 949.2
  - overdo 993.10
- **exaggeration**
  - intensification 251.2
  - misrepresentation 350.1
  - deliberate falsehood 354.9
  - lie 354.11
  - overstatement 355.1
  - exaggerating 355.1
  - style 532.2
  - overrunning 910.1
  - overestimation 949.1
  - excess 993.1
- **exalt** elate 109.8
  - respect 155.4
  - increase 251.4
  - promote 446.2
  - praise 509.12
  - glorify 662.13
  - sanctify 685.5
  - idolize 696.12
  - elevate 912.6
- **exalted** overjoyed 95.17
  - cheerful 109.11
  - great 247.9
  - high 272.14
  - noble 608.10
  - magnanimous 652.6
  - eminent 662.18

sanctified 685.8
raised 912.9
exam 938.2
examination
scrutiny 27.6
diagnosis 91.12
discussion 541.7
treatise 556.1
trial 598.5
argumentation 935.4
school examination 938.2
inspection 938.3
questioning 938.12
examine
scrutinize 27.14
discuss 541.12
study 570.12
interrogate 938.21
inspect 938.24
example
n sample 62.4
representative 349.7
warning 399.1
exemplar 786.2
citation 957.5
v cite 957.13
exasperate annoy 96.13
vex 98.15
aggravate 119.2
provoke 152.24
exasperation
annoyance 96.2
vexatiousness 98.7
excitation 105.11
aggravation 119.1
resentment 152.1
incitement 375.4
ex cathedra
adj authoritative 970.18
adv authoritatively 417.18
excavation
extraction 192.1
crack 224.2
deepening 275.7
pit 284.4
digging 284.11
discovery 941.1
exceed loom 247.5
excel 249.6
overrun 910.4
surpass 993.9
excel superior 249.6
be master of 413.18
surpass 999.11
excellence
superiority 249.1
taste 496.1
distinction 662.5
importance 997.1
goodness 999.1
excellent
adj superior 249.12
skillful 413.22
tasteful 496.8
eminent 662.18
good 999.12
interj bravo! 509.22
excelsior 193.17
except
v excise 255.10
reject 372.2
exempt 430.14
prep off 255.14
excluding 773.10
conj unless 959.16
exception marvel 122.2
objection 333.2
rejection 372.1
stipulation 421.2
exemption 430.8
criticism 510.4
defense 600.2
exclusion 773.1
oddity 870.5
qualification 959.1
excerpt
n extract 557.3
v select 371.14
excess
n surplus 256.4
exaggeration 355.1
exorbitance 632.4
undueness 640.1
intemperance 669.1
overrunning 910.1
overabundance 993.2
excessiveness 993.1
adj superfluous 993.17
exchange
n communication 343.1
telephone number 347.12
banter 490.1
retaliation 506.1
conversation 541.1
transfer 629.1
trade 731.2
stock exchange 737.7
changing 854.3
substitution 862.1
substitute 862.2
transpose 863.1
v transfer 629.3
trade 731.15
change 852.7
interchange 854.5
substitute 862.4
transpose 863.4
exchange rate 728.9
exchequer
storehouse 386.6
funds 728.14
treasury 729.13
excise
extract 192.10
cut out 255.10
sever 802.11
excitable
emotional 105.28
irascible 110.19
nervous 128.11
excitation
arousal 105.11
incitement 375.4
excite sensitize 24.7
impassion 105.12
incite 375.17
agitate 917.10
interest 983.12
heat 1020.18
excitement
passion 93.2
stimulation 105
emotion 105.1
excitation 105.11
impatience 135.1
incitement 375.4
agitation 917.1
heat metaphor 1019.2
exciting
desirable 100.30
thrilling 105.30
provocative 375.27
alluring 377.8
vehement 544.13
interesting 983.19
exclaim
give an exclamation 59.7
remark 524.24
speak 524.25
exclaim at
object 333.5
offer resistance 453.3
exclamation
ejaculation 59.2
remark 524.3
exclude excise 255.10
close 293.6
reject 372.2
prohibit 444.3
disapprove 510.10
bar 773.4
eject 909.13
banish 909.17
prevent 1012.14
exclusion
excision 255.3
closure 293.1
rejection 372.1
prohibition 444.1
disapproval 510.1
barring 773.1
banishment 909.4
qualification 959.1
exclusive
n news item 552.3
adj contemptuous 157.8
limiting 210.9
closed 293.9
selective 371.23
prohibitive 444.6
selective 495.13
aloof 583.6
cliquish 617.18
excluding 773.9
one 872.7
exclusivity
contempt 157.1
selectness 495.5
seclusiveness 583.3
partisanism 617.13
exclusion 773.1
excogitate 931.11
excommunication
deposal 447.2
curse 513.1
condemnation 602.1
banishment 909.4
excoriation
unclothing 6.1
torment 96.7
censure 510.3
excrement
dejection 12.3
filth 80.7
excretion discharge 12
egestion 12.1
secretion 13.1
exuding 190.6
evacuation 909.6
excruciating
sensitive 24.13
painful 26.10
agonizing 98.23
exculpate
forgive 148.3
justify 600.9
acquit 601.4
excursion
deviation 164.1
journey 177.5
obliquity 204.1
digression 538.4
circuitousness 914.1
detour 914.3
excursus
deviation 164.1
digression 538.4
treatise 556.1
circuitousness 914.1
excuse
n pardon 148.2
pretext 376.1
cop-out 600.4
acquittal 601.1
apology 658.2
reason 886.2
v forgive 148.3
exempt 430.14
alibi 600.11
acquit 601.4
execrable
offensive 98.18
cursed 513.9
wicked 654.16
base 661.12
damnable 1000.10
execration hate 103.1
hated thing 103.3
berating 510.7
curse 513.1
execute kill 308.13
perform 328.9
accomplish 407.4
perform 434.3
complete 437.9
put to death 604.17
play 708.39
produce 892.11
execution
killing 308.1
action 328.2
accomplishment 407.1
observance 434.1
completion 437.4
attachment 480.5
capital punishment 604.7
performance 708.30
operation 889.1
performance 892.5
executive
n officer 574.3
governor 575.6
operator 889.4
adj grandiose 501.21

officiating 573.14
administrative 612.19
expensive 632.11
the executive 574.11
executor doer 726.1
producer 892.7
exegesis
explanation 341.4
comment 341.5
exegetic
interpretative 341.14
explanatory 341.15
exemplar
representative 349.7
paragon 659.4
example 786.2
rule 869.4
philosophy 932.2
pattern of perfection 1002.4
exemplary
typical 349.15
warning 399.7
praiseworthy 509.20
model 786.8
perfected 1002.9
exemplify
explain 341.10
image 349.11
set an example 786.7
cite 957.13
exempt
v free 430.14
acquit 601.4
adj immune 430.30
exemption
pardon 148.2
exception 430.8
immunity 601.2
qualification 959.1
exercise
n physical conditioning 84.1
motion 84.2
action 328.1
use 387.1
training 568.3
lesson 568.7
study 570.3
ceremony 580.4
task 724.2
exercising 725.6
operation 889.1
v work out 84.4
annoy 96.13
practice 328.8
use 387.10
train 568.13
exert 725.8
engross 983.13
exert use 387.10
exercise 725.8
exertion use 387.1
endeavor 403.1
effort 725.1
exfoliate scale 6.11
layer 296.5
break 802.12
exfoliation
unclothing 6.1
stratification 296.4
disruption 802.3
exhalation
breathing 2.21
murmur 52.4
odor 69.1
outflow 190.4
cloud 1067.1
vaporization 1067.5
exhaust
n wash 184.30
outflow 190.4
outlet 190.9
miasma 1001.4
rocket propulsion 1074.8
v weaken 16.10
unman 19.12
fatigue 21.4
oppress 98.16
run out 190.13
draw off 192.12
spend 387.13
consume 388.3
strip 480.24
waste 486.4
evacuate 909.22
let out 909.24
disgorge 909.25
overdo 993.10
exhaustion
weakness 16.1
debilitation 16.5
draining 21.2
unhealthiness 85.3
collapse 85.8
decrement 252.3
consumption 388.1
waste 473.2
evacuation 909.6
exhaustive great 247.6
broad 269.6
complete 407.12
whole 792.9
thorough 794.10
exhibit
n display 348.2
theatrical performance 704.12
evidence 957.1
v externalize 206.5
manifest 348.5
flaunt 501.17
evidence 957.8
exhibition
spectacle 33.7
demonstration 348.2
display 501.4
theatrical performance 704.12
exhibitionism
unclothing 6.1
perversion 75.11
display 501.4
immodesty 666.2
exhilarate refresh 9.2
energize 17.10
stimulate 105.13
cheer 109.7
inspire 375.20
amuse 743.21
exhilaration
refreshment 9.1
energizing 17.8
happiness 95.2
excitement 105.1
excitation 105.11
good humor 109.2
inspiration 375.9
exhortation
inducement 375.3
advice 422.1
call to arms 458.8
speech 543.2
exhumation
disinterment 192.2
discovery 941.1
exigency
insistence 421.4
crisis 843.4
urgent need 963.4
urgency 997.4
exigent
meticulous 339.12
demanding 421.9
strict 425.6
critical 843.10
necessary 963.12
urgent 997.22
exiguous little 258.10
sparse 885.5
meager 992.10
exile
n displaced person 160.4
migrant 178.5
emigration 190.7
outcast 586.4
elimination 773.2
alien 774.3
banishment 909.4
v emigrate 190.16
ostracize 586.6
eliminate 773.5
banish 909.17
exist be present 221.6
live 306.9
be 761.8
endure 827.6
existence
presence 221.1
life 306.1
being 761.1
existentialism 761.7
exit
n departure 188.1
egress 190.2
outlet 190.9
channel 239.1
death 307.1
flight 368.4
passageway 383.3
v disappear 34.2
depart 188.6
make an exit 190.12
absent oneself 222.8
find vent 369.10
exodus departure 188.1
egress 190.2
act 704.7
exonerate 601.4
exorbitant
exaggerated 355.4
demanding 421.9
overpriced 632.12
violent 671.16
excessive 993.16
exorcism
conjuration 690.4
spell 691.1
exorcist shaman 690.7
holy orders 699.4
exoskeleton 206.2
exotic
n plant 310.3
adj colorful 35.19
distant 261.8
alluring 377.8
extraneous 774.5
unrelated 776.6
expand increase 251.4
grow 259.4
enlarge 259.5
spread 259.6
broaden 269.4
rarefy 299.3
amplify 538.7
disperse 771.4
elaborate 861.6
generalize 864.9
expand on
amplify 538.7
elaborate 861.6
expanse space 158.1
spaciousness 158.5
greatness 247.1
size 257.1
breadth 269.1
expansion
space 158.1
increase 251.1
size 257.1
increase in size 259
extension 259.1
exaggeration 355.1
amplification 538.6
business cycle 731.10
dispersion 771.1
evolution 861.1
expansive
spacious 158.11
voluminous 257.17
extensive 259.9
broad 269.6
communicative 343.10
talkative 540.9
expatriate
n migrant 178.5
outcast 586.4
v migrate 177.22
leave home 188.17
emigrate 190.16
eliminate 773.5
banish 909.17
expect hope 124.7
be expectant 130.5
come 839.6
suppose 951.10
think 953.11
expectation
unastonishment 123.1
hope 124.1
anticipation 130.1
expectance 130.1
dueness 639.1
the future 839.1
probability 968.1

expecting
pregnant 78.18
unastonished 123.3
expectant 130.11
expectorate 13.6
expedience
transience 828.1
timeliness 843.1
advisability 995.1
goodness 999.1
expedient
n instrumentality 384.3
stratagem 415.3
means 995.2
recourse 1009.2
adj useful 387.18
transient 828.7
timely 843.9
conditional 959.8
desirable 995.5
good 999.12
expedite
advance 162.5
send 176.15
hasten 401.4
be useful 449.17
facilitate 1014.7
expedition
velocity 174.1
journey 177.5
quickness 330.3
adventure 404.2
furtherance 449.5
campaign 458.4
promptness 845.3
facilitation 1014.5
expeditious fast 174.15
quick 330.18
hasty 401.9
prompt 845.9
expel
transfer 176.10
depose 447.4
eliminate 773.5
separate 802.8
eject 909.13
banish 909.17
dismiss 909.19
disgorge 909.25
expend
spend 387.13
consume 388.3
waste 486.4
pay out 624.14
spend 626.5
expendable
consumable 388.6
replaceable 862.10
superfluous 993.17
unimportant 998.16
expenditure use 387.1
consumption 388.1
waste 473.2
spending 626.1
price 630.1
expense loss 473.1
expenditure 626.1
charges 626.3
price 630.1
expensive 632.11
experience
n sensation 24.1
practice 413.9
event 831.2
knowledge 928.1
v sense 24.6
feel 93.10
have 831.8
experienced
accustomed 373.15
practiced 413.28
experiment
n attempt 403.2
testing 942.1
trial 942.1
v see what one can do 403.10
experimentalize 942.8
expert
n adept 413.11
adviser 422.3
connoisseur 496.7
specialist 866.3
scientist 928.11
adj skillful 413.22
specialized 866.5
perfected 1002.9
expertise skill 413.1
aesthetic taste 496.5
knowledge 928.1
profound knowledge 928.6
expert systems 1042.2
expiate
compensate 338.4
atone 658.4
expiration
breathing 2.21
death 307.1
end 820.1
expire die 307.19
perish 395.23
cease to exist 762.6
come to an end 820.6
elapse 821.5
let out 909.24
explain
explicate 341.10
make clear 521.6
expound 568.16
justify 600.9
excuse 600.11
solve 940.2
facilitate 1014.7
explain away
explain 341.10
extenuate 600.12
reason speciously 936.8
explainer 341.7
explain oneself 341.10
explanation
explication 341.4
definition 518.3
justification 600.1
example 786.2
reason 886.2
solution 940.1
theory 951.1
theorization 951.2
expletive
n exclamation 59.2
oath 513.4
redundancy 849.3
superfluity 993.4
adj superfluous 993.17
explicable
interpretable 341.17
attributable 888.6
solvable 940.3
explicate
explain 341.10
make clear 521.6
amplify 538.7
criticize 723.5
explicit manifest 348.8
clear 521.11
candid 644.17
unqualified 960.2
explode blast 56.8
be excitable 105.16
fly into a rage 152.20
grow 251.6
destruct 395.18
come to nothing 410.13
blow up 671.14
disprove 958.4
fuel 1021.8
exploit
n act 328.3
feat 492.7
v take advantage of 387.15
use 387.16
overprice 632.7
exploration
adventure 404.2
reconnaissance 938.8
search 938.15
exploratory
preceding 816.4
examining 938.37
explore
investigate 938.23
search 938.31
explosion
detonation 56.3
outbreak 105.9
outburst 152.9
intensification 251.2
discharge 671.7
disproof 958.1
explosive
n high explosive 462.14
speech sound 524.12
adj banging 56.11
excitable 105.28
hot-tempered 110.25
bursting 671.24
dangerous 1006.9
exponent
interpreter 341.7
representative 349.7
deputy 576.1
supporter 616.9
example 786.2
export
n transferal 176.1
exporting 190.8
v transfer 176.10
send 176.15
send abroad 190.17
expose
divest 6.5
unclose 292.12
disclose 351.4
stigmatize 661.9
uncover 941.4
disprove 958.4
disillusion 977.2
endanger 1006.6
exposé
disclosure 351.1
disproof 958.1
expose oneself to 897.3
exposition
spectacle 33.7
explanation 341.4
display 348.2
disclosure 351.1
treatise 556.1
lesson 568.7
passage 708.24
marketplace 736.2
expository
explanatory 341.15
manifesting 348.9
dissertational 556.6
expostulate
object 333.5
dissuade 379.3
admonish 422.6
exposure
unclothing 6.1
visibility 31.1
distinctness 31.2
appearance 33.1
navigation 159.3
display 348.2
disclosure 351.1
publicity 352.4
repute 662.1
time exposure 714.9
susceptibility 897.2
discovery 941.1
disproof 958.1
openness 1006.3
radiation physics 1037.8
expound
explain 341.10
exposit 568.16
express
n carrier 176.7
train 179.14
messenger 353.1
message 552.4
v send 176.15
extraction 192.16
affirm 334.5
manifest 348.5
describe 349.9
signify 517.17
say 524.22
phrase 532.4
evidence 957.8
adj fast 174.15
manifest 348.8
clear 521.11
particular 865.12
unqualified 960.2
exact 973.17
adv posthaste 401.13
expression
extraction 192.1
extract 192.7
manifestation 348.1
indication 517.3

remark 524.3
word 526.1
phrase 529.1
diction 532.1
eloquence 544.1
execution 708.30
maxim 974.1
expressive
manifesting 348.9
descriptive 349.14
indicative 517.23
meaningful 518.10
graphic 544.10
express mail 553.4
expropriate
attach 480.20
dispossess 480.23
expulsion
transferal 176.1
deposal 447.2
elimination 773.2
ejection 909.1
disgorgement 909.7
expunge
delete 255.12
obliterate 395.16
end 820.5
expurgate clean 79.18
delete 255.12
exquisite
n dandy 500.9
adj sensitive 24.13
painful 26.10
tasty 63.8
delightful 97.7
meticulous 339.12
nice 495.11
overnice 500.18
chic 578.13
superb 999.15
fine 1016.20
exsanguineous 36.7
exsiccated 1066.9
extant remaining 256.7
existent 761.13
present 838.2
extemporaneous
extemporary 365.12
unprepared 406.8
extemporize
improvise 365.8
be unprepared 406.6
extend reach 158.9
increase 251.4
enlarge 259.4
grow 259.5
spread 259.6
reach out 261.5
be long 267.5
lengthen 267.6
broaden 269.4
straighten 277.5
offer 439.4
give 478.12
diffuse 538.8
race 757.5
endure 827.6
protract 827.9
postpone 846.9
sustain 856.4
generalize 864.9
stretch 1048.4
extension
space 158.1
increase 251.1
adjunct 254.1
addition 254.3
size 257.1
expansion 259.1
length 267.1
lengthening 267.4
telephone 347.4
meaning 518.1
sequence 815.1
protraction 827.2
continuance 856.1
stretching 1048.2
extensive
spacious 158.11
large 247.7
voluminous 257.17
expansive 259.9
long 267.7
broad 269.6
general 864.13
extensive knowledge 928.6
extent space 158.1
spaciousness 158.5
quantity 244.1
degree 245.1
size 257.1
distance 261.1
length 267.1
breadth 269.1
measure 300.3
extenuate
weaken 16.10
abate 252.8
mitigate 600.12
moderate 670.6
extenuating
justifying 600.13
qualifying 959.7
exterior
n appearance 33.2
external 206.2
scene 712.12
adj external 206.7
extraneous 774.5
exterminate kill 308.13
eliminate 395.14
annihilate 762.7
do away with 909.21
extermination
killing 308.1
extinction 395.6
external
n exterior 206.2
adj exterior 206.7
extrinsic 768.3
extraneous 774.5
exterrestrial
extraterritorial 206.9
space 1072.26
exterritorial 206.9
extinct gone 34.4
no more 762.11
ended 820.8
past 837.7
obsolete 842.15
extinction
disappearance 34.1
excision 255.3
death 307.1
extermination 395.6
extinguishing 1022.2
extinguish
overshadow 249.8
excise 255.10
quench 395.15
suppress 428.8
end 820.5
fight fire 1022.7
turn off the light 1027.11
extirpate
excise 255.10
exterminate 395.14
annihilate 762.7
extol praise 509.12
glorify 696.12
extort exact 192.15
demand 421.5
wrest 480.22
steal 482.13
extortionate
extractive 192.17
demanding 421.9
rapacious 480.26
overpriced 632.12
extra
n bonus 254.4
newspaper 555.2
motion-picture studio 706.4
supporting actor 707.7
nonessential 768.2
surplus 993.5
adj additional 253.10
unused 390.12
unessential 768.4
occasional 848.3
surplus 993.18
adv additionally 253.11
extract
n perfumery 70.2
extraction 192.8
excerpt 557.3
distillation 893.3
v refine 79.22
take out 192.10
subtract 255.9
select 371.14
rescue 398.3
process 892.9
conclude 946.10
extraction
refinement 79.4
egress 190.2
taking out 192
withdrawal 192.1
extract 192.8
reduction 255.2
excerpt 557.3
lineage 560.4
production 892.2
pulling 905.1
extracurricular 568.20
extradite
transfer 176.10
restore 481.4
banish 909.17
extramarital 665.27
extramural
extraterritorial 206.9
scholastic 567.13
extraneous
extrinsic 768.3
foreign 774.5
unrelated 776.6
irrelevant 776.7
extraordinary
wonderful 122.10
unexpected 131.10
remarkable 247.10
particular 865.12
exceptional 870.14
notable 997.19
extrapolate 839.6
extrapolation
adjunct 254.1
the future 839.1
notation 1017.2
extrasensory 689.24
extrasensory perception
intuition 934.1
mental state 22.5
extraterrestrial
n oddity 870.4
adj extraterritorial 206.9
heavenly 681.12
extraneous 774.5
supernatural 870.15
otherworldly 1072.26
extravagant
exaggerated 355.4
prodigal 486.8
gaudy 501.20
grandiose 501.21
inflated 502.12
diffuse 538.11
overpriced 632.12
intemperate 669.7
violent 671.16
absurd 923.11
fanatic 926.32
fanciful 986.20
plentiful 991.7
excessive 993.16
extravaganza 354.10
extravagation 501.3
extreme
n exaggeration 355.1
limit 794.5
extremity 820.2
excess 993.1
adj sensitive 24.13
bordering 211.11
great 247.13
farthest 261.12
rebellious 327.11
exaggerated 355.4
radical 611.20
intemperate 669.7
violent 671.16
final 820.11
fanatic 926.32
excessive 993.16
extremes 993.1
extremism
rebelliousness 327.3
reform 392.5
radicalism 611.4
fanaticism 926.11
excess 993.1

extremist
  n rebel 327.5
  reformer 392.6
  radical 611.12
  adj radical 611.20
  fanatic 926.32
extremity
  wretchedness 96.6
  summit 198.2
  foot 199.5
  boundary 211.3
  moribundity 307.9
  violence 671.1
  limit 794.5
  extreme 820.2
  crisis 843.4
  excess 993.1
  impasse 1013.6
extricate extract 192.10
  rescue 398.3
  free 431.7
  disembarrass 1014.9
extrication
  extraction 192.1
  escape 369.1
  rescue 398.1
  freeing 431.3
  disembarrassment 1014.6
extrinsic
  exterior 206.7
  formal 580.7
  external 768.3
  extraneous 774.5
  irrelevant 776.7
extrovert
  n personality type 92.12
  adj extroverted 92.41
extroverted
  out-going 92.41
  communicative 343.10
extrude
  emerge 190.11
  protrude 283.10
  produce 892.8
  eject 909.13
exuberance
  happiness 95.2
  gaiety 109.4
  unrestraint 430.3
  wordiness 538.2
  productiveness 890.1
  plenty 991.2
exuberant
  fervent 93.18
  gay 109.14
  luxuriant 310.43
  unrestrained 430.24
  diffuse 538.11
  productive 890.9
  plentiful 991.7
  thriving 1010.13
exude excrete 12.12
  sweat 12.16
  exudate 190.15
  be damp 1065.11
exult rejoice 116.5
  triumph 502.9
exultant
  overjoyed 95.17
  rejoicing 116.10
  crowing 502.13
exultation
  rejoicing 116.1
  crowing 502.4
exurbanite 227.6
exuvial 6.18
eye
  n visual organ 2.9
  vision 27.1
  look 27.3
  eyeball 27.9
  circlet 280.5
  supervision 573.2
  detective 576.11
  discrimination 944.1
  opinion 953.6
  outlook 978.2
  protection 1008.1
  v look 27.13
  scrutinize 27.14
  gaze 27.15
  flirt 562.20
  spectate 918.5
  adj optic 2.28
  visual 27.20
the eye 27.3
eyeball
  n eye 2.9
  visual organ 27.9
  v look 27.13
  examine 938.24
  adj visual 27.20
eyeball to eyeball
  contrapositive 215.5
  opposite 215.6
  front 216.10
  in opposition 451.9
  contrary 779.6
eyebrows 3.12
eye-catching
  alluring 377.8
  attracting 907.5
an eye for 413.5
an eye for an eye
  tit for tat 506.3
  interchange 863.1
eyeglasses 29.3
eyelashes 3.12
eyelet 280.5
eyelid eye 2.9
  visual organ 27.9
eye of the storm
  center 208.2
  storm 671.4
eye-opening
  astonishing 122.12
  surprising 131.11
  disclosive 351.10
eyesight vision 27.1
  field of view 31.3
eyesore stain 1004 3
  blot 1015.4
eyewitness
  spectator 918.1
  witness 957.6
eyrie 228.23
Fabianism
  reform 392.5
  socialism 611.6
fable
  n fabrication 354.10
  plot 722.4
  v narrate 722.6
fabled 662.16
fabric material 4.1
  essential content 196.5
  house 228.5
  structure 266.1
  building 266.2
  frame 266.4
  weaving 740.1
  substance 763.2
fabricate invent 354.18
  compose 796.3
  produce 892.8
  originate 892.12
  imagine 986.14
fabrication
  structure 266.1
  falsehood 354.10
  composition 796.1
  production 892.1
  manufacture 892.2
  invention 986.3
fabricator liar 357.9
  doer 726.1
fabulous
  wonderful 122.10
  remarkable 247.10
  fabricated 354.29
  mythic 678.15
  fictional 722.7
  extraordinary 870.14
  fictitious 986.21
  excessive 993.16
facade appearance 33.2
  exterior 206.2
  front 216.1
  sham 354.3
  pretext 376.1
  affectation 500.1
face
  n looks 33.4
  pride 136.1
  impudence 142.3
  precipice 200.3
  exterior 206.2
  front 216.1
  facies 216.4
  slope 237.2
  sham 354.3
  rallying device 458.12
  type 548.6
  worth 630.2
  reputability 662.2
  prestige 662.4
  v color 35.14
  expect 130.5
  fill 196.7
  contrapose 215.4
  confront 216.8
  veneer 295.23
  plaster 295.25
  oppose 451.5
  defy 454.3
  brave 492.11
  be imminent 840.2
faceless uniform 781.5
  indistinguishable 945.6
face-lift
  n renovation 396.4
  v renovate 396.17
face mask 1008.3
facet aspect 33.3
  exterior 206.2
  front 216.1
  particular 766.3
face the facts 433.6
face the music
  submit 433.6
  brave 492.11
  take one's punishment 604.21
facetious 489.15
face-to-face
  adj adjacent 223.16
  adv opposite 215.6
  openly 348.15
facial
  beautification 1016.11
  massage 1044.3
facile docile 433.13
  eloquent 544.8
  fluent 544.9
  teachable 570.18
  easy 1014.13
  pliant 1047.9
facilitate
  advance 162.5
  be instrumental 384.7
  be useful 449.17
  ease 1014.7
facilitator
  planner 381.6
  instrument 384.4
  helper 449.7
  agent 576.3
  producer 892.7
facility ability 18.2
  equipment 385.4
  skill 413.1
  submissiveness 433.3
  accommodation 449.9
  fluency 544.2
  teachableness 570.5
  workplace 739.1
  ease 1014.1
  machinery 1040.3
  pliancy 1047.2
facing
  n lining 196.3
  blanket 295.12
  adj contrapositive 215.5
  fronting 216.11
  adv frontward 216.13
  prep opposite to 215.7
facsimile
  n reproduction 336.3
  Telephoto 347.15
  the same 778.3
  copy 785.1
  duplicate 785.3
  print 785.5
  v copy 785.8
  adj communicational 347.21
fact the case 761.3
  particular 766.3
  event 831.2
  evidence 957.1
  truth 973.1
fact-finding 938.38
faction
  dissension 456.3
  party 617.4
  partisanism 617.13

  sect 675.3
  company 770.3
  disagreement 789.1
factitious 354.25
factoid 761.3
factor
  n heredity 560.6
  steward 574.4
  agent 576.3
  particular 766.3
  component 796.2
  cause 886.1
  v classify 801.8
  calculate 1017.18
factory 739.3
factotum 577.9
facts
  information 551.1
  knowledge 928.1
  evidence 957.1
the facts 761.4
factual real 761.15
  evidential 957.16
  obvious 970.15
  true 973.13
faculty
  ability 18.2
  talent 413.4
  authority 417.1
  staff 571.9
  prerogative 642.1
  intellect 919.2
fad
  caprice 364.1
  great success 409.3
  craze 578.
fade
  n motion-picture editing 706.6
  v weaken 16.9
  disappear 34.2
  decolor 36.5
  lose color 36.6
  fail 85.48
  recede 168.2
  age 303.10
  decline 393.17
  languish 393.18
  play 751.4
  race 757.5
  bet 759.25
  cease to exist 762.6
  flit 828.6
  pass 837.6
  age 842.9
  pull back 903.7
  adj insipid 65.2
  trite 117.9
fag
  n homosexual 75.15
  cigarette 89.5
  work 725.4
  drudge 726.3
  v get tired 21.6
  drudge 725.14
  task 725.16
fail weaken 16.9
  lose strength 85.48
  be inferior 250.4
  age 303.10
  neglect 340.6
  decline 393.17
  neglect 408.2
  be unsuccessful 410.9
  flunk 410.17
  go bankrupt 625.7
  be unfaithful 645.12
  dramatize 704.28
  fall short 911.2
  be insufficient 992.8
failing
  n deterioration 393.3
  vice 654.2
  fault 1003.2
  adj languishing 16.21
  unhealthy 85.54
  deteriorating 393.45
  unsuccessful 410.18
  incomplete 795.4
  insufficient 992.9
fail-safe 1007.5
failure
  ineffectiveness 19.3
  disappointment 132.1
  inadequacy 250.3
  neglect 340.1
  deterioration 393.3
  nonaccomplishment 408.1
  unsuccessfulness 410.1
  flash in the pan 410.7
  defeat 412.1
  nonobservance 435.1
  bankruptcy 625.3
  insolvent 625.4
  vice 654.2
  misdeed 655.2
  stage show 704.4
  shortcoming 911.1
  mistake 975.3
  loss of memory 990.2
  fault 1003.2
faint
  n unconsciousness 25.2
  v weaken 16.9
  burn out 21.5
  swoon 25.5
  adj weak 16.12
  tired 21.7
  inconspicuous 32.6
  colorless 36.7
  low 52.16
  ill 85.56
  weak-willed 362.12
fainthearted
  weak-willed 362.12
  cowardly 491.10
fair
  n marketplace 736.2
  festival 743.4
  adj whitish 37.8
  clean 79.25
  pleasant 97.6
  bright 97.11
  auspicious 133.18
  courteous 504.14
  legible 521.12
  rightful 639.8
  honest 644.13
  just 649.8
  probable 968.6
  unprejudiced 979.12
  good 999.12
  tolerable 999.20
  mediocre 1005.7
  thriving 1010.13
  comely 1016.19
  warm 1019.24
  rainless 1066.8
  adv pleasantly 97.12
  justly 649.11
fair game
  laughingstock 508.7
  opportunity 843.2
fair-haired boy 104.16
fairly to a degree 245.7
  limited 248.10
  legibly 521.14
  justly 649.11
  tolerably 999.24
  mediocrely 1005.11
fair-minded 649.9
fair name 662.2
fairway seaway 182.10
  runway 184.23
  green 310.7
  playground 743.11
  golf 751.1
fair-weather friend 357.8
fairy
  n homosexual 75.15
  lightness 298.2
  sprite 678.8
  adj elfin 678.17
fairy tale 354.11
fait accompli
  act 328.3
  accomplishment 407.1
  fact 761.3
  a truth 973.2
faith zeal 101.2
  hope 124.1
  obedience 326.1
  observance 434.1
  promise 436.1
  school 617.5
  fidelity 644.7
  cardinal virtues 653.4
  religion 675.1
  piety 692.1
  cause 886.9
  belief 953.1
  system of belief 953.3
  confidence 970.5
the faith 687.2
faithful
  n person of honor 644.8
  adj zealous 101.9
  loving 104.27
  obedient 326.3
  descriptive 349.14
  persevering 360.8
  observant 434.4
  devoted 587.21
  loyal 644.20
  orthodox 687.7
  pious 692.8
  lifelike 784.16
  permanent 853.7
  belief 953.21
  reliable 970.17
  exact 973.17
the faithful
  the believing 692.5
  believer 953.9
faith healer 90.9
faithless
  falsehearted 354.31
  apostate 363.11
  unfaithful 645.20
  atheistic 695.19
  unbelieving 955.8
fake
  n fakement 354.13
  hoax 356.7
  impostor 357.6
  affecter 500.7
  basketball game 747.3
  copy 785.1
  substitute 862.2
  v imitate 336.5
  tamper with 354.17
  fabricate 354.17
  sham 354.21
  improvise 365.8
  affect 500.12
  play 747.4
  adj imitation 336.8
  spurious 354.26
  assumed 500.16
  similar 784.10
  substitute 862.8
faker imitator 336.4
  deceiver 357.1
  impostor 357.6
fakir ascetic 667.2
  clergy 699.12
falafel 10.9
falcate 279.11
falcon
  n bird 311.28
  heraldry 647.2
  v hunt 382.9
fall
  n false hair 3.13
  descent 194.1
  tumble 194.3
  hang 202.2
  declivity 204.5
  waterfall 238.11
  decline 252.2
  autumn 313.4
  rain 316.1
  plunge 367.1
  deterioration 393.3
  backsliding 394.2
  downfall 395.3
  collapse 410.3
  defeat 412.1
  original sin 655.3
  downthrow 913.2
  v descend 194.5
  tumble 194.8
  hang 202.6
  incline 204.10
  decrease 252.6
  die 307.19
  rain 316.10
  plunge 367.6
  decline 393.17
  relapse 394.4
  be destroyed 395.22
  fall down 410.12
  lose 412.12
  cheapen 633.6
  go wrong 654.9

occur 831.5
collide 902.13
come to grief 1011.10
fallacious false 354.25
deceptive 356.21
unorthodox 688.9
sophistical 936.10
illogical 936.11
erroneous 975.16
illusory 976.9
fallacy
falseness 354.1
deception 356.1
heresy 688.2
sophistry 936.1
specious argument 936.3
error 975.1
fall all over 138.9
fall all over oneself
jump at 101.6
be willing 324.3
make haste 401.5
make a special effort 403.11
fall apart
lose self-control 128.7
break 393.23
come apart 802.9
fall asleep
go to sleep 22.16
die 307.19
fall away
n apostatize 363.7
v incline 204.10
decrease 252.6
decline 393.17
fall short 911.2
fall back
retreat 163.6
be behind 217.8
deteriorate 393.16
relapse 394.4
pull back 903.7
fall behind
regress 163.5
lag 166.4
be behind 217.8
fall down
drift off course 182.29
descend 194.5
tumble 194.8
fall 410.12
fall through 911.3
fall short 1003.3
fallen underdone 11.9
reduced 252.10
dead 307.30
ruined 395.28
defeated 412.14
unvirtuous 654.12
carnal 663.6
prostitute 665.28
impious 694.6
unregenerate 695.18
depressed 913.12
fall flat
fall flat as a pancake 117.4
tumble 194.8
fall 410.12
fall through 911.3
fall for
fall in love 104.22
kid oneself 954.6
fall from grace
n backsliding 394.2
original sin 655.3
impiety 694.1
v relapse 394.4
fall guy dupe 358.2
loser 412.5
scapegoat 862.3
fall in
collapse 260.10
obey 326.2
break down 393.24
fall 410.12
form 807.5
fall in love 104.22
fall into place 807.5
fall in with
converge 169.2
concur 332.9
acquiesce 441.3
side with 450.4
get along 455.2
associate with 582.17
conform 867.3
follow the rule 867.4
incur 897.4
come across 941.3
fall off
n apostatize 363.7
v descend 194.5
incline 204.10
decrease 252.6
decline 393.17
come apart 802.9
fall on
light upon 194.10
attack 459.14
come across 941.3
chance 972.11
fallout
radiation 1037.1
atomic explosion 1038.16
powder 1051.5
fall out
have a falling-out 456.10
result 887.4
fallow
n farm 1069.8
v cultivate 1069.17
adj colorless 36.7
yellow 43.4
idle 331.18
untilled 406.14
unproductive 891.4
falls 238.11
fall short
be disappointing 132.3
be inferior 250.4
fall 410.12
lack 795.3
come short 911.2
be insufficient 992.8
come short 1003.3
fall to eat 8.20
undertake 404.3
set to work 725.15
begin 818.7
fall upon
be unexpected 131.6
arrive at 186.7
meet 223.11
attack 459.14
false
untrue 354.25
falsehearted 354.31
deceptive 356.21
deceitful 356.22
unfaithful 645.20
illegitimate 674.7
sanctimonious 693.5
erroneous 975.16
illusory 976.9
false alarm
cry of wolf 400.2
failure 410.8
falsehood
falseness 354.1
untruthfulness 354.8
lie 354.11
false image 350.2
falsetto
n high voice 58.6
speech defect 525.1
voice 709.5
adj high 58.13
vocal 708.50
falsify
pervert 265.6
belie 354.16
lie 354.19
be dishonest 645.11
misrepresent 350.3
falter
n demur 325.2
hesitation 362.3
trill 709.19
shake 917.3
flounder 917.8
v despair 125.10
dawdle 175.8
demur 325.4
hesitate 362.7
lose one's nerve 491.8
stammer 525.8
shake 917.11
flounder 917.15
hang in doubt 971.10
fame glory 247.2
publicity 352.4
repute 662.1
notability 997.2
familiar
n friend 588.1
familiar spirit 678.12
adj trite 117.9
insolent 142.9
customary 373.13
vernacular 523.20
informal 581.3
intimate 582.24
friendly 587.19
usual 869.9
well-known 928.27
familiarity
informality 581.1
sociability 582.1
intimacy 587.5
presumption 640.2
knowledge 928.1
familiarize
accustom 373.9
inform 551.8
familiar with
used to 373.16
versed in 928.19
family
n nomenclature 527.1
kinfolk 559.2
race 559.4
brood 559.5
lineage 560.4
offspring 561.1
community 617.2
classifications 809.5
sequel 835.2
biology 1068.1
adj racial 559.7
lineal 560.18
family tree 560.5
famine
unproductiveness 891.1
want 992.4
famine price 632.3
famished
hungry 100.25
ill-provided 992.12
famous eminent 247.9
distinguished 662.16
good 999.12
fan
n enthusiast 101.5
follower 166.2
fork 171.4
attender 221.5
ventilator 317.10
flabellum 318.19
commender 509.8
supporter 616.9
specialist 866.3
propeller 904.6
fanatic 926.18
cooler 1024.3
v excite 105.12
spread 259.6
air 317.11
incite 375.17
fail 410.10
play 745.5
shuffle 758.5
fanatic
n enthusiast 101.4
obstinate person 361.6
believer 692.4
oddity 870.4
lunatic 926.15
infatuate 926.18
bigot 980.5
adj obstinate 361.8
fiery 671.22
fanatical 926.32
fanaticism
overzealousness 101.3
obstinacy 361.1
turbulence 671.2
zeal 692.3
cause 886.9
rabidness 926.11
narrow-mindedness 980.1
fanciful
capricious 364.5
unreal 762.9
thin 764.6

fantastic 870.12
ideational 932.9
notional 986.20
fan club 509.8
fancy
n desire 100.1
inclination 100.3
love 104.1
will 323.1
caprice 364.1
impulse 365.1
preference 371.5
idea 932.1
phantasy 976.3
imagination 986.1
figment of the imagination 986.5
v desire 100.14
love 104.19
suppose 951.10
think 953.11
imagine 986.14
adj edible 8.33
skillful 413.22
ornate 498.12
ostentatious 501.18
grandiose 501.21
grand 545.11
expensive 632.11
overpriced 632.12
excessive 993.16
interj imagine! 122.22
fancy-free 565.7
fancy that! 122.22
fanfare blare 53.5
celebration 487.1
Aldine 554.15
fang teeth 2.8
sting 1001.5
fanged toothlike 285.14
prehensile 474.9
fangs 474.4
fan mail 553.4
fanny 217.5
fan out diverge 171.5
spread 259.6
disperse 771.4
fantasize
fabricate 354.18
imagine 986.14
fantastic
wonderful 122.10
remarkable 247.10
fabricated 354.29
capricious 364.5
unreal 762.9
unbelievable 870.12
absurd 923.11
illusory 976.9
fanciful 986.20
fantasy
n defense mechanism 92.23
desire 100.1
caprice 364.1
miracle 870.8
phantom 976.4
abstractedness 985.2
imagination 986.1
figment of the imagination 986.5
v muse 985.9
dream 986.17
fan the flame
excite 105.12
incite 375.17
sow dissension 456.14
ignite 1020.22
far
adj distant 261.8
adv by far 247.17
far off 261.15
far and away
by far 247.17
superlatively 249.16
farce stuffing 10.27
wit 489.1
burlesque 508.6
trifle 998.5
farcical comic 488.6
witty 489.15
burlesque 508.14
comic 704.35
fare
n food 10.1
traveler 178.1
fee 630.6
v eat 8.20
travel 177.18
journey 177.21
be in a certain state 765.5
result 887.4
farewell
n leave-taking 188.4
v take leave 188.16
adj departing 188.18
interj good-bye! 188.22
fare well succeed 409.7
prosper 1010.7
farfetched 776.8
far-flung long 267.7
extensive 864.13
far from it
adj nothing like 787.5
adv amiss 911.7
interj no 335.8
by no means 335.9
far-gone
intoxicated 88.31
worn-out 393.36
involved in 898.5
farm
n house 228.5
baseball 745.1
farmplace 1069.8
stock farm 1070.5
v ruralize 233.5
die 307.20
rent out 615.16
ranch 1069.16
raise 1070.6
adj rustic 233.6
agricultural 1069.20
farmer
peasant 606.6
tax collector 630.10
agriculturist 1069.5
farm out 615.16
farmers' market 736.2
far out
extreme 247.13
modern 841.13
unconventional 868.6
farrow
n offspring 561.2
v give birth 1.3
farsighted
clear-sighted 27.21
poor-sighted 28.11
sagacious 920.16
foreseeing 961.7
fart
n stinker 71.3
bad person 660.5
zilch 762.3
flatulence 909.10
v let a fart 909.29
farther
adj additional 253.10
thither 261.10
adv additionally 253.11
farthing
modicum 248.2
money 728.8
fourth 881.2
trifle 998.5
fasces scepter 417.9
insignia 647.1
bundle 770.8
fascinate
delight 95.10
enamor 104.23
thrill 105.15
captivate 377.7
charm 691.8
interest 983.12
engross 983.13
fascinating
delightful 97.7
wonderful 122.10
alluring 377.8
bewitching 691.11
engrossing 983.20
fascination
delightfulness 97.2
inclination 100.3
eagerness 101.1
amazement 122.1
wonderfulness 122.3
allurement 377.1
bewitchment 691.2
mania 926.12
obsession 926.13
fascism
government 612.4
despotism 612.8
discrimination 980.4
fashion
n aspect 33.3
form 262.1
structure 266.1
custom 373.1
manner 384.1
mode 532.2
style 578.1
mode 765.4
v form 262.7
produce 892.8
fashion design garment making 5.32
design specialty 717.5
fast
n lack of food 515.2
abstinence 668.2
holy day 701.12
v not eat 515.4
adj deep-dyed 35.18
swift 174.15
close 293.12
confirmed 373.18
devoted 587.21
profligate 665.25
fastened 800.14
stable 855.12
stuck 855.16
reliable 970.17
adv swiftly 174.17
securely 800.19
fasten close 293.6
bind 428.10
fix 800.7
secure 855.8
fasten upon
seize on 480.16
blame 599.8
impose 643.4
attribute to 888.4
fast food 10.1
fast-food restaurant 8.17
fast-forward
run 174.3
hastening 401.3
fastidious
clean 79.25
particular 495.9
elegant 496.9
conscientious 644.15
discriminating 944.7
fasting
n abstinence from food 515.1
penance 658.3
asceticism 667.1
adj hungry 100.25
uneating 515.5
fast lane dissipation 669.2
aspiring 100.28
fast track 174.3
fat
n glyceride 7.7
superfluity 993.4
the best 999.8
oil 1056.1
v fatten 259.8
adj corpulent 257.18
distended 259.13
stubby 268.10
thick 269.8
heavy 297.16
gainful 472.16
wealthy 618.14
stupid 922.15
plentiful 991.7
thriving 1010.13
oily 1056.9
fatal
deadly 308.23
destructive 395.26
future 839.8
destined 964.9
chance 972.15
weighty 997.20
unfortunate 1011.14
disastrous 1011.15
fatal flaw 1006.4

fatalism
composure 106.2
resignation 134.2
determinism 964.4
fatality
ominousness 133.7
inauspiciousness 133.8
fatal accident 308.8
deadliness 308.9
fate 964.2
fat cat 618.7
fat chance
n improbability 969.1
interj nope 335.10
fate
n doom 395.2
portion 477.5
end 820.1
destiny 839.2
inevitability 963.7
fatality 964.2
chance 972.1
v allot 477.9
destine 964.7
fateful
ominous 133.17
destructive 395.26
inevitable 963.15
destined 964.9
weighty 997.20
fathead 924.4
father
n senior 304.5
brother 559.3
sire 560.9
priest 699.5
author 886.4
producer 892.7
personage 997.8
v procreate 78.8
engender 818.14
cause 886.10
trace to 888.5
fatherland 232.2
fathom
sound 275.9
measure 300.10
understand 521.7
know 928.12
investigate 938.23
solve 940.2
fatigue
n weakness 16.1
weakening 16.5
tiredness 21.1
symptoms 85.9
languor 331.6
work 725.4
v tire 21.4
burn out 21.5
be tedious 118.6
fatten nourish 8.19
increase 251.4
size 257.15
fat 259.8
thicken 269.5
make better 392.9
fertilize 890.8
thrive 1010.8
raise 1070.6
fatuous
ineffective 19.15
vain 391.13
thin 764.6
foolish 923.8
thoughtless 933.4
trivial 998.19
faucet valve 239.10
stopper 293.4
fault
n crack 224.2
vice 654.2
misdeed 655.2
game 748.2
error 975.1
mistake 975.3
defect 1003.2
blemish 1004.1
v complain 115.15
deprecate 510.12
play tennis 748.3
faultfinding
n complaint 115.4
critisism 510.4
disparagement 512.1
adj discontented 108.7
plaintive 115.19
critical 510.23
faultless
innocent 657.6
accurate 973.16
perfect 1002.6
faulty
ungrammatic 531.4
guilty 656.3
illogical 936.11
erroneous 975.16
imperfect 1003.4
blemished 1004.8
fauna
animal life 311.1
biology 1068.1
Faust 690.5
faux pas 975.5
favor
n looks 33.4
inclination 100.3
act of kindness 143.7
pity 145.1
respect 155.1
face 216.4
superiority 249.1
preference 371.5
patronage 449.4
benefit 478.7
approval 509.1
letter 553.2
good terms 587.3
privilege 642.2
esteem 662.3
influence 894.1
special favor 894.2
memento 989.7
v desire 100.14
be kind 143.9
respect 155.4
choose 371.17
make better 392.9
indulge 427.6
aid 449.11
abet 449.14
be useful 449.17
oblige 449.19
approval 509.9
prefer 650.8
resemble 784.7
do good 999.10
favorable
promising 124.13
auspicious 133.18
willing 324.5
consenting 441.4
propitious 449.22
approving 509.17
friendly 587.15
timely 843.9
expedient 995.5
good 999.12
favorite
n preference 104.16
jockey 757.2
adj beloved 104.24
approved 509.19
favoritism
partiality 650.3
prejudice 980.3
fawn
n fledgling 302.10
hoofed animals 311.5
v give birth 1.3
truckle 138.7
adj brown 40.3
fawning
n obsequiousness 138.2
flattery 511.1
adj obsequious 138.14
flattering 511.8
fax
n Telephoto 347.15
print 785.5
v copy 785.8
fay
n fairy 678.8
adj fairy 678.17
faze 127.18
FBI detective 576.10
police 1008.17
FBI agent 576.10
fealty
obedience 326.1
duty 641.1
fidelity 644.7
fear
n anxiety 126.1
terror 127.1
fright 127.1
nervousness 128.1
weak will 362.4
cowardice 491.1
v be afraid 127.10
hesitate 362.7
fearful
anxious 126.7
fearing 127.23
frightening 127.28
nervous 128.11
remarkable 247.11
cowardly 491.10
fearsome
fearful 127.23
frightening 127.28
feasible
workable 889.10
practicable 966.7
expedient 995.5
practical 995.6
handy 1014.15
feast
n banquet 8.9
food 10.1
holiday 20.4
treat 95.3
holy day 701.12
festival 743.4
v banquet 8.24
gratify 95.8
feat act 328.3
masterpiece 413.10
exploit 492.7
feather
n quill 3.16
plumage 3.18
lightness 298.2
kind 809.3
trifle 998.5
v fledge 3.21
row 182.53
maneuver 184.40
fill 196.7
figure 498.9
featherbrained
superficial 922.20
scatterbrained 985.16
feather in one's cap
victory 411.1
trophy 646.3
featherweight
n runt 258.4
weight 297.3
adj lightweight 298.13
uninfluential 895.3
feature
n aspect 33.3
looks 33.4
treatise 556.1
motion pictures 706.1
commodity 735.2
component 796.2
characteristic 865.4
special 866.2
highlight 997.7
v manifest 348.5
dramatize 704.28
specify 865.11
specialize 866.4
call attention to 983.10
emphasize 997.14
headline 997.15
adj specialized 866.5
febrile feverish 85.58
fervent 93.18
overzealous 101.12
heated 105.22
fecal
excremental 12.20
malodorous 71.5
filthy 80.23
feces feculence 12.4
dregs 256.2
feckless
ineffective 19.15
useless 391.9

improvident 406.15
fecund
diffuse 538.11
productive 890.9
invention 986.18
fecundity
wordiness 538.2
productiveness 890.1
invention 986.3
federal
n policeman 1008.15
adj governmental 612.17
combining 805.7
federation
affiliation 450.2
government 612.4
association 617.1
combination 805.1
fed up weary 118.11
satiated 994.6
fee
n gratuity 478.5
stipend 624.5
charge 630.1
dues 630.6
v pay 624.10
feeble weak 16.12
impotent 19.13
inconspicuous 32.6
faint 52.16
unhealthy 85.54
stricken in years 303.18
weak-willed 362.12
feebleminded 922.21
unsound 936.12
feebleminded
weak-willed 362.12
weak-minded 922.21
feed
n meal 8.5
fodder 10.4
basketball game 747.3
game 749.3
v nourish 7.17
dine 8.18
eat 8.20
gratify 95.8
encourage 375.21
provision 385.9
foster 449.16
fertilize 890.8
ignite 1020.22
fuel 1021.8
raise 1070.6
tend 1070.7
feedback
audio distortion 50.13
reaction 903.1
closed sequence 1041.6
feeder eater 8.16
tributary 238.3
role 704.10
actor 707.2
feed the fire
excite 105.12
incite 375.17
vomit 909.26
ignite 1020.22
feel
n touch 73.1
milieu 209.3
texture 294.1
knack 413.6
discrimination 944.1
v sense 24.6
appear to be 33.10
touch 73.6
entertain a feeling 93.10
contact 223.10
caress 562.16
experience 831.8
intuit 934.4
suppose 951.10
feeler
tactile organ 73.4
offer 439.1
question 938.10
probe 942.4
feel for
pity 145.3
grope 938.32
feel good
enjoy good health 83.6
please 95.6
be pleased 95.12
feeling
n sensation 24.1
touch 73.1
handling 73.2
emotion 93.1
pity 145.1
milieu 209.3
hunch 934.3
discrimination 944.1
suggestion 951.5
opinion 953.6
attitude 978.1
mood 978.4
adj emotional 93.17
intuitive 934.5
examining 938.37
feelings emotion 93.1
mood 978.4
feel in one's bones
feel 93.10
foreshow 133.10
intuit 934.4
foreknow 961.6
feel one's way
be blind 30.8
make one's way 162.4
be careful 339.7
see what one can do 403.10
be cautious 494.5
grope 938.31
feign sham 354.21
affect 500.12
feint
n sham 354.3
trick 356.6
pretext 376.1
stratagem 415.3
thrust 459.3
game 746.3
fight 754.3
v lash out at 459.16
fight 754.4
feisty
hot-tempered 110.25
defiant 327.10
plucky 359.14
perverse 361.11
partisan 456.17
argumentative 935.19
felicitation 149.1
felicitous pleasant 97.6
decorous 496.10
appropriate 533.7
eloquent 544.8
apt 788.10
timely 843.9
expedient 995.5
felicity happiness 95.2
aptitude 413.5
decorousness 496.3
elegance 533.1
eloquence 544.1
fitness 788.5
prosperity 1010.1
good fortune 1010.2
feline
n creature 311.3
cat 311.21
adj felid 311.43
covert 345.12
cunning 415.12
fell
n fur 4.2
plain 236.1
plateau 237.3
hill 237.4
skin 295.3
v level 201.6
strike dead 308.18
raze 395.19
conquer 412.10
shoot 904.12
drop 913.5
adj terrible 127.30
cruel 144.26
fellatio 75.7
fellow
n man 76.5
doctor 90.4
beau 104.13
boy 302.5
person 312.5
image 349.5
teacher 571.1
friend 588.1
companion 588.3
associate 616.1
member 617.11
accompanier 769.4
likeness 784.3
equal 790.4
adj cooperative 450.5
accompanying 769.9
fellow feeling 104.1
fellowship
n cooperation 450.1
affiliation 450.2
accord 455.1
subsidy 478.8
instructorship 571.10
camaraderie 582.2
social life 582.4
association 582.6
companionship 587.2
sodality 617.3
scholarship 646.7
sect 675.3
company 769.2
v associate with 582.17
felon sore 85.37
evildoer 593.1
criminal 660.9
felony
misdeed 655.2
offense 674.4
felt 4.1
female
n female being 77.4
adj feminine 77.14
feminine
n gender 530.10
adj female 77.14
feminine caesura 720.7
femininity
femaleness 77.1
feminality 77.1
womankind 77.3
maturity 303.2
feminism
effeminacy 77.2
women's rights 642.4
discrimination 980.4
femme fatale
tempter 377.4
demimonde 665.15
fen 243.1
fence
n wall 212.4
fortification 460.4
receiver 732.6
barrier 1012.5
v wall 212.7
dodge 368.8
contend 457.13
fortify 460.9
illicit goods 732.7
quibble 936.9
protect 1008.18
fence in enclose 212.5
fence 212.7
confine 429.12
fencer 461.1
fence-sitting
n irresolution 362.1
neutrality 467.1
adj irresolute 362.9
repudiative 363.12
fend fend off 460.10
protect 1008.18
prevent 1012.14
fender partition 213.5
safeguard 1008.3
fireplace 1020.11
fend off
ward off 460.10
repulse 908.3
prevent 1012.14
feng shui 498.1
feral frenzied 105.25
cruel 144.26
deadly 308.23
funereal 309.22
animal 311.40
savage 671.21
ferment
n bread 10.28
agitation 105.4
dudgeon 152.7
leavening 298.4

bubbling 320.3
bustle 330.4
turbulence 671.2
transformer 852.5
agitation 917.1
v sour 67.4
leaven 298.7
bubble 320.4
incite 375.17
seethe 671.12
agitate 917.10
chemicalize 1060.8
fermentation
souring 67.3
commotion 105.4
leavening 298.4
bubbling 320.3
agitation 917.1
fern 310.4
ferocious
frenzied 105.25
cruel 144.26
warlike 458.21
savage 671.21
ferret
sharp vision 27.11
wild animal 311.23
ferret out
search out 938.34
uncover 941.4
Ferris wheel 743.15
ferrous 1058.17
ferry
n passageway 383.3
v haul 176.13
fly 184.36
fertile productive 890.9
imaginative 986.18
plentiful 991.7
fertility
wordiness 538.2
productiveness 890.1
invention 986.3
plenty 991.2
fertility rite 701.9
fertilize fructify 78.10
enrich 890.8
cultivate 1069.17
fervent fervid 93.18
zealous 101.9
heated 105.22
industrious 330.22
vehement 544.13
fervid craving 100.24
zealous 101.9
heated 105.22
fervor zeal 101.2
love 104.1
industry 330.6
vehemence 544.5
heat metaphor 1019.2
festal vacational 20.10
festive 743.28
festering
n pus 12.6
soreness 26.4
sore 85.37
corruption 393.2
adj suppurative 12.21
sore 26.11
decayed 393.40
unforgettable 989.26
festination 401.3
festival
musical occasion 708.32
festivity 743.4
festive
convivial 582.23
festal 743.28
festivity treat 95.3
rejoicing 116.1
celebration 487.1
conviviality 582.3
merrymaking 743.3
festival 743.4
assembly 770.2
festoon
n curve 279.2
bouquet 310.25
v ornament 545.7
Festschrift
compilation 554.7
collection 770.11
fetal embryonic 305.22
undeveloped 406.12
beginning 818.15
fetch
n range 158.2
trick 356.6
stratagem 415.3
specter 988.1
double 988.3
v bring 176.16
travel 177.18
sail for 182.35
arrive 186.6
attract 377.6
cost 630.13
hit 902.14
conclude 946.10
fetching delightful 97.7
alluring 377.8
fete festival 743.4
assembly 770.2
fetid
malodorous 71.5
filthy 80.23
offensive 98.18
terrible 1000.9
fetish
n charm 691.5
idol 697.3
v idolatrize 697.5
fetishism
perversion 75.11
animism 675.6
sorcery 690.1
idolatry 697.1
fetlock tuft 3.6
foot 199.5
fetter
n shackle 428.4
curb 1012.7
v bind 428.10
yoke 800.10
hamper 1012.11
fettle
n fitness 84.1
good condition 765.3
v groom 79.20
fettuccine 10.33
fetus 305.14
feud
n quarrel 456.5
possession 469.1
revenge 507.1
animosity 589.4
v quarrel 456.11
contend 457.13
feudal
imperious 417.16
subject 432.13
real 471.9
fever
n feverishness 85.7
symptom 85.9
fever of excitement 105.7
card 758.2
five 882.1
agitation 917.1
frenzy 926.7
heat 1019.1
v take sick 85.47
few insignificant 248.6
least 250.8
not many 885.4
a few plurality 883.1
a number 884.2
too few 885.2
the few 885.3
few and far between
infrequent 848.2
sparse 885.5
fey
supernatural 870.15
eccentric 927.5
fiancé 104.17
fiasco
disappointment 132.1
botch 410.6
fiat decree 420.4
authorization 443.3
fib
n lie 354.11
v lie 354.19
fiber nutrient 7.3
filament 271.1
organic matter 305.1
nature 767.4
fiberglass 295.23
fiber optics optics 29.7
light 1025.22
fibrillation
symptom 85.9
irregularity 851.1
pulsation 916.3
fibrous
threadlike 271.7
tough 1049.4
fickle irresolute 362.9
flighty 364.6
unfaithful 645.20
transient 828.7
inconstant 854.7
uncertain 971.16
fiction
fabrication 354.10
lie 354.11
writing 547.10
story 722
narrative 722.1
invention 986.3
figment of the imagination 986.5
fictional
fabricated 354.29
narrative 719.8
fictionalized 722.7
fictitious 986.21
fictitious
spurious 354.26
fabricated 354.29
make-believe 986.21
fiddle
n deception 356.9
v repair 396.14
play violin 708.41
trifle 998.15
fidelity
perseverance 360.1
observance 434.1
faithfulness 644.7
accuracy 973.5
fidget be excited 105.18
have the fidgets 128.6
twitch 917.13
fidgety jittery 128.12
bustling 330.20
agitated 917.16
jerky 917.19
fiduciary
n trustee 470.5
adj in trust 438.13
believable 953.24
fiducial 953.25
fiefdom 469.1
field space 158.1
airport 184.22
setting 209.2
enclosed place 212.3
sphere 231.2
plot 231.4
latitude 430.4
arena 463.1
battlefield 463.2
study 568.8
heraldry 647.2
occupation 724.4
playground 743.11
baseball 745.1
football 746.1
field hockey 749.4
soccer 752.1
horse race 757.3
specialty 866.1
science 928.10
tract 1069.9
the field 452.2
field goal game 746.3
basketball game 747.3
field hockey 749.4
field of vision
vision 27.1
field of view 31.3
fiend enthusiast 101.5
monster 593.6
violent person 671.9
demon 680.6
fierce frenzied 105.25
passionate 105.29
cruel 144.26
infuriated 152.32
warlike 458.21

violent 671.16
savage 671.21
fiery red 41.6
feverish 85.58
fervent 93.18
zealous 101.9
heated 105.22
passionate 105.29
hot-tempered 110.25
vehement 544.13
hotheaded 671.22
igneous 1019.26
heating 1020.26
illuminated 1025.39
fiesta treat 95.3
festival 743.4
fife 708.42
fifth
n interval 709.20
quinquesection 882.14
adj quinary 882.17
fifth column 357.11
fifth-column 645.22
fifth wheel
nonessential 768.2
superfluity 993.4
fifty-fifty
n half 875.2
even chance 972.7
adj symmetric 264.4
neutral 467.7
proportionate 477.13
equal 790.7
mixed 797.14
in half 875.8
fig clothing 5.1
trifle 998.5
fight
n quarrel 456.5
contest 457.3
battle 457.4
warlikeness 458.11
struggle 725.3
match 754.3
v clash 35.15
contend against 451.4
quarrel 456.11
contend 457.13
war 458.14
struggle 725.11
box 754.4
fighter
combatant 461.1
boxer 754.2
fighting
n contention 457.1
quarreling 457.9
war 458.1
boxing 754.1
adj contending 457.22
warlike 458.21
fight off fend off 460.10
repulse 908.3
fight the good fight
contend 457.13
be good 653.5
be pious 692.6
figment
fabrication 354.10
figment of the imagination 986.5
figurative
representational 349.13
indicative 517.23
meaningful 518.10
symbolic 519.10
tropologic 536.3
ornate 545.11
numeric 1017.23
figurative language 536.1
figure
n aspect 33.3
apparition 33.5
gestalt 92.32
outline 211.2
form 262.1
human form 262.4
figurine 349.6
diagram 381.3
motif 498.7
display 501.4
figure of speech 536.1
ornateness 545.4
price 630.1
repute 662.1
celebrity 662.9
passage 708.24
card 758.2
characteristic 865.4
syllogism 935.6
phantom 976.4
personage 997.8
body 1052.3
v form 262.7
image 349.11
plan 381.8
filigree 498.9
designate 517.18
metaphorize 536.2
be somebody 662.10
be reasonable 935.17
estimate 946.9
calculate 1017.18
figurehead prow 216.3
figure 349.6
nominal head 575.5
deputy 576.1
follower 616.8
insignia 647.1
a nobody 998.7
figure in
participate 476.5
calculate 1017.18
figure of speech
turn of expression 536
figure 536.1
ornateness 545.4
figure on plan 380.6
calculate 1017.18
figure out plan 380.6
solve 940.2
calculate 1017.18
figure skating 760.7
figurine 349.6
filament
feather part 3.17
thread 271
fiber 271.1
filch 482.13
file
n military unit 461.22
document 549.5
recording media 549.10
heraldry 647.2
series 812.2
catalog 871.3
data 1042.15
v march 177.30
sharpen 285.7
grind 287.8
store 386.10
record 549.15
classify 809.6
defile 812.7
list 871.8
abrade 1044.7
filial
loving 104.27
sonly 561.7
filibuster
n legislative procedure 613.6
hinderer 1012.8
v outtalk 540.7
legislate 613.10
procrastinate 846.11
filigree
n extra 254.4
v figure 498.9
filing
legislative procedure 613.6
classification 809.1
index 871.7
abrasion 1044.2
filing card 549.10
filing clerk 550.1
filings remainder 256.1
refuse 391.4
powder 1051.5
fill
n full measure 794.3
satiety 994.1
v load 159.15
pack 196.7
top 198.9
pervade 221.7
stop 293.7
provide 385.7
observe 434.2
possess 469.4
include 772.3
charge 794.7
iterate 849.8
superabound 993.8
satiate 994.4
filler lining 196.3
hunter 311.13
syntax 530.2
fillet strip 271.4
circle 280.3
fill in for
take one's turn 825.5
substitute for 862.5
filling
n lining 196.3
extra 254.4
warp 740.3
redundancy 849.3
superfluity 993.4
adj completing 794.13
satiating 994.7
fill out increase 251.4
enlarge 259.5
round 282.6
execute 437.9
protract 538.8
record 549.15
include 772.3
complete 794.6
fill up shoal 276.3
stop 293.7
provide 385.7
provision 385.9
fill 794.7
satiate 994.4
fuel 1021.8
filly
female animal 77.10
gal 302.7
horse 311.10
jockey 757.2
film
n blanket 295.12
lamina 296.2
fog 319.3
recording media 549.10
motion pictures 706.1
negative 714.10
v blur 32.4
cover 295.19
shoot 706.8
photograph 714.14
adj motion-picture 706.9
filmmaker 706.4
filmmaking 706.2
filmy smooth 294.8
transparent 1029.4
filo 10.41
filter
n refinery 79.13
light filter 1028.4
v refine 79.22
exude 190.15
extraction 192.16
trickle 238.18
filth muck 80.7
cursing 513.3
obscenity 666.4
terribleness 1000.2
filthy obscene 666.9
terrible 1000.9
filtration
refinement 79.4
exuding 190.6
fin money 728.7
five 882.1
finagle cheat 356.18
plot 381.9
maneuver 415.10
final
departing 188.18
completing 407.9
mandatory 420.12
terminal 820.11
eventual 831.11
resultant 887.6
evidential 957.16
unqualified 960.2
finale act 704.7
end 820.1
finalize
accomplish 407.6
complete 820.7
finally
adv in fine 820.12

eventually 831.12
consequently 887.7
interj eureka! 941.11
finance
n money matters 729
economics 729.1
v support 449.12
subsidize 478.19
pay for 624.18
back 729.16
financial district 230.6
financier
n moneyman 729.9
businessman 730.1
v invest 729.17
find
n finding 472.6
discovery 941.1
good thing 999.5
v arrive 186.6
provide 385.7
learn 570.6
discover 941.2
conclude 946.10
decide 946.11
pass judgment 946.13
finding find 472.6
solution 940.1
discovery 941.1
verdict 946.5
find oneself 941.2
find out learn 570.6
solve 940.2
discover 941.2
make sure 970.11
find time 821.6
find time for 449.13
fine
v mulct 603.5
spiritualize 764.4
adj edible 8.33
healthy 83.8
pleasant 97.6
tiny 258.11
narrow 270.16
sharp 285.8
smooth 294.8
rare 299.4
meticulous 339.12
nice 495.11
elegant 496.9
ornate 498.12
grandiose 501.21
thin 764.6
discriminating 944.7
exact 973.17
good 999.12
exquisite 1016.20
powdery 1051.11
rainless 1066.8
adv excellently 999.22
interj yeah 332.19
bravo! 509.22
fine arts 712.1
fine fettle
healthiness 83.2
orderliness 807.3
fine point 780.2
fine print 959.2
finery clothing 5.1
frippery 5.10
ornament 498.3
finesse
n skill 413.1
cunning 415.1
taste 496.1
discrimination 944.1
v plot 381.9
live by one's wits 415.9
fine-tune
improve 392.11
arrange 437.8
rearrange 808.13
change 852.7
perfect 1002.5
finger
n digit 73.5
v touch 73.6
condemn to death 308.20
designate 517.18
inform on 551.13
accuse 599.7
attribute to 888.4
finger bowl 79.12
fingerprint print 517.7
identification 517.11
finicky finical 495.10
detailed 766.9
attentive 983.15
finish
n boundary 211.3
symmetry 264.1
polish 287.2
texture 294.1
completion 407.2
accomplishment 413.8
good breeding 504.4
elegance 533.1
horse race 757.3
end 820.1
soundness 1002.2
v polish 287.7
kill 308.13
consume 388.3
perfect 392.11
put an end to 395.12
accomplish 407.6
end 820.5
complete 820.7
refute 958.5
finished
symmetric 264.4
sleek 287.11
dead 307.30
used up 388.5
spoiled 393.29
ruined 395.29
completed 407.11
skilled 413.26
elegant 533.6
no more 762.11
ended 820.8
past 837.7
perfected 1002.9
finish line track 755.1
end 820.1
finish off kill 308.13
consume 388.3
put an end to 395.12
accomplish 407.6
complete 820.7
finite limited 210.7
human 312.13
numeric 1017.23
fink
n informer 551.6
strikebreaker 727.8
v inform on 551.13
break a strike 727.11
fire
n vim 17.2
smart 26.3
fever 85.7
passion 93.2
zeal 101.2
fever of excitement 105.7
inspiration 375.9
gunfire 459.8
vehemence 544.5
blaze 1019.13
light source 1026.1
v cook 11.5
energize 17.10
excite 105.12
incite 375.17
kindle 375.18
inspire 375.20
explode 671.14
pot 742.6
play 745.5
throw 904.10
shoot 904.12
dismiss 909.20
heat 1020.17
ignite 1020.22
dry 1066.6
launch 1074.13
interj attack! 459.32
firearm 462.10
fire at
pull the trigger 459.22
hurl at 459.28
firebrand
violent person 671.9
coal 1019.16
lighter 1021.4
firecracker 53.6
fired cooked 11.7
excited 105.20
inspired 375.31
ceramic 742.7
fire department 1022.4
fire engine 1022.3
fire escape stairs 193.3
means of escape 369.3
fire extinguisher 1022.3
firefly glitter 1025.7
lightning bug 1026.5
fire hydrant
hydrant 239.12
extinguisher 1022.3
fireman
trainman 178.13
hand 183.6
baseball team 745.2
fire fighter 1022.4
fireplace home 228.2
hearth 1020.11
firepower
work force 18.9
gunfire 459.8
fireproof
v proof 15.14
flameproof 1022.6
adj resistant 15.20
flameproof 1022.10
fire-resisting
resistant 15.20
fireproof 1022.10
fire sale 734.3
fireside home 228.2
fireplace 1020.11
fire up
be excitable 105.16
flare up 152.19
heat 1020.17
firewater 88.13
firewood
stovewood 1021.3
wood 1054.3
fireworks gunfire 459.8
pyrotechnics 1019.17
firing incitement 375.4
inspiration 375.9
deposal 447.2
gunfire 459.8
throwing 904.2
dismissal 909.5
ignition 1020.4
fuel 1021.1
firing squad 604.7
firm
n company 617.9
workplace 739.1
v stabilize 855.7
harden 1046.7
adj sound 15.18
close 293.12
staunch 359.12
unyielding 361.9
rigid 425.7
faithful 644.20
orthodox 687.7
sturdy 763.7
crowded 770.22
fast 800.14
permanent 853.7
stable 855.12
immovable 855.15
reliable 970.17
unhazardous 1007.5
dense 1045.12
rigid 1046.11
firmament 1072.2
first
n baseball 745.1
first ever 818.3
adj leading 165.3
front 216.10
chief 249.14
preceding 814.4
beginning 818.15
foremost 818.17
previous 834.4
novel 841.11
adv before 216.12
preferably 371.28
firstly 818.18
first aid 91.14
first base 745.1
first-born
n senior 304.5
adj older 842.19

first-class
superlative 249.13
first-rate 999.17
first edition
autograph 337.3
rare book 554.6
firsthand original 337.5
new 841.7
evidential 957.16
first impression
print 713.5
first 818.3
first name 527.4
first of all
chiefly 249.17
beginning 818.15
first prize
supremacy 249.3
victory 411.1
award 646.2
first-rate
superlative 249.13
first-class 999.17
fiscal 728.30
fiscal year 825.4
fish
n poisson 10.24
marine animal 311.30
dupe 358.2
money 728.7
chip 759.18
v go fishing 382.10
fisherman
mariner 183.1
fisher 382.6
fishery 382.3
fish for solicit 440.14
seek 938.30
fishhook snare 356.13
card 758.2
fish out of water
misfit 789.4
nonconformist 868.3
fishpond
vivarium 228.24
lake 241.1
fish story lie 354.11
boasting 502.2
fishtail
n aquatics 182.11
v maneuver 184.40
drive 756.4
fish to fry 724.2
fishy fishlike 311.50
deceptive 356.21
inexpressive 522.20
dishonest 645.16
fission
n severance 802.2
dissociation 806.2
nuclear fission 1038.8
v shatter 802.13
disintegrate 806.3
bisect 875.4
atomize 1038.17
fissure
n crack 224.2
break 802.4
interruption 813.2
v open 292.11
break 393.23
sever 802.11
separate 802.12
fist clenched fist 462.4
pointer 517.4
handwriting 547.3
fistfight 457.4
fit
n seizure 85.6
outburst 105.9
fit of anger 152.8
bustle 330.4
fitting 405.2
upheaval 671.5
spell 825.1
spasm 917.6
frenzy 926.7
v outfit 5.41
have place 159.9
equip 385.8
condition 405.8
train 568.13
relate to 775.5
interact 777.6
make agree 788.7
suit 788.8
equalize 790.6
change 852.7
conform 867.3
expedite one's affair 995.3
adj healthy 83.8
hale 83.12
eligible 371.24
fitted 405.17
competent 413.24
appropriate 533.7
right 637.3
rightful 639.8
just 649.8
apt 788.10
timely 843.9
sufficient 991.6
expedient 995.5
fitful unordered 810.12
discontinuous 813.4
irregular 851.3
inconstant 854.7
jerky 917.19
fit in have place 159.9
implant 191.8
follow the rule 867.4
fit like a glove
interact 777.6
suit 788.8
expedite one's affair 995.3
fitness ability 18.2
health 83.1
physical conditioning 84.1
physical fitness 84.1
eligibility 371.11
preparedness 405.4
decorousness 496.3
propriety 637.2
suitability 788.5
timeliness 843.1
expedience 995.1
fit out outfit 5.41
equip 385.8
fitted eligible 371.24
provided 385.13
adapted 405.17
competent 413.24
apt 788.10
fitting
n checking the fit 405.2
change 852.1
adj useful 387.18
decorous 496.10
appropriate 533.7
right 637.3
apt 788.10
timely 843.9
expedient 995.5
fit to be tied 152.30
five
basketball team 747.2
card 758.2
V 882.1
five 617.7
five-and-dime 736.1
five-card stud 759.10
fix
n navigation 159.3
circumnavigation 182.2
state 765.1
bewilderment 971.3
expedient 995.2
v locate 159.11
establish 159.16
direct 161.5
circumscribe 210.4
quantify 244.4
castrate 255.11
form 262.7
perforate 292.15
kill 308.14
resolve 359.7
accustom 373.9
bribe 378.3
perfect 392.11
do for 395.11
repair 396.14
prepare 405.6
defeat 412.9
prescribe 420.9
arrange 437.8
get even with 506.7
punish 604.11
make agree 788.7
fasten 800.7
dispose 808.9
organize 808.10
define 855.9
specify 865.11
decide 946.11
prove 957.10
prearrange 965.5
make sure 970.11
fix and toke 87.20
fixate
psychologize 92.36
obsess 926.25
fixation
libido fixation 92.21
establishment 159.7
motionlessness 173.2
fixity 855.2
obsession 926.13
hindrance 1012.1
fixative perfumery 70.2
art equipment 712.18
fixer mender 396.10
lawyer 597.3
wire-puller 609.30
processing solution 714.13
fixings 796.2
fixing to
adj prepared 405.16
prep in preparation for 405.24
fixity motionlessness 173.2
fixedness 855.2
fixity of purpose 359.4
fix on direct 161.5
attribute to 888.4
pay attention 983.8
fixture adjunct 254.1
fixity 855.2
machinery 1040.3
fixtures equipment 385.4
hard goods 735.4
fix up equip 385.8
repair 396.14
cure 396.15
prepare 405.6
make up 405.7
reconcile 465.8
ornament 498.8
tidy 808.12
fizz
n sibilation 57.1
bubbling 320.3
v sibilate 57.2
bubble 320.4
fizzle
n sibilation 57.1
disappointment 132.1
bubbling 320.3
failure 410.2
v sibilate 57.2
be disappointing 132.3
bubble 320.4
come to nothing 410.13
burn out 1022.8
fizzle out weaken 16.9
be disappointing 132.3
come to nothing 410.13
be unproductive 891.3
fall through 911.3
burn out 1022.8
fjord 242.1
flabbergast 122.6
flabby weak 16.12
impotent 19.13
flaccid 1047.10
pulpy 1063.6
flaccid weak 16.12
flabby 1047.10
flack appearance 33.2
promotion 352.5
publicist 352.9
flag
n leaf 310.19
pavement 383.6
trophy 646.3
banner 647.7
golf 751.1
building material 1054.2
v weaken 16.9
fatigue 21.4
burn out 21.5
fail 85.48
dawdle 175.8
floor 295.22

languish 393.18
figure 498.9
signal 517.22
flag down signal 517.22
play 745.5
put a stop to 857.11
flagellate oneself
regret 113.6
do penance 658.6
deny oneself 667.3
flagellation
corporal punishment 604.4
penance 658.3
asceticism 667.1
flagging
n slowing 175.4
pavement 383.6
adj languishing 16.21
tired 21.7
slow 175.10
deteriorating 393.45
flagrant
downright 247.12
conspicuous 348.12
gaudy 501.20
wicked 654.16
base 661.12
immodest 666.6
terrible 1000.9
burning 1019.27
flagship 818.17
flagstaff 273.1
flagstone
pavement 383.6
building material 1054.2
flail whip 604.13
pound 902.16
pulverize 1051.9
flail at 459.16
flair ability 18.2
talent 413.4
aptitude 413.5
display 501.4
artistry 712.7
smartness 920.2
discernment 944.2
flak
dissension 456.3
artillery 462.11
criticism 510.4
flake
n cocaine 87.7
flock 296.3
lunatic 926.16
freak 927.4
snow 1023.8
v scale 6.11
variegate 47.7
layer 296.5
flaked-out 22.22
flake off scale 6.11
depart 188.7
flake out 22.14
flaky
n addict 87.21
adj flocculent 296.7
capricious 364.5
foolish 923.9
crazy 926.27
eccentric 927.6
powdery 1051.11
flamboyance
ornateness 498.2
showiness 501.3
brightness 1025.4
flamboyant
ornate 498.12
grandiloquent 545.8
bright 1025.32
flame
n love 104.1
beau 104.13
fire 1019.13
flash 1025.6
light source 1026.1
v redden 41.5
be hot 1019.22
catch fire 1020.23
burn 1020.24
shine 1025.23
flameproof
v fireproof 1022.6
adj resistant 15.20
fireproof 1022.10
flaming
n burning 1020.5
adj red 41.6
fervent 93.18
zealous 101.9
heated 105.22
grandiloquent 545.8
fiery 671.22
burning 1019.27
bright 1025.32
flashing 1025.34
flammable
n fuel 1021.1
adj inflammable 1020.28
flange border 211.4
bulge 283.3
flank
n side 218.1
v side 218.4
launch an attack 459.17
defend 460.8
circle 914.5
flank attack 459.1
flannels 5.22
flap
n noise 53.4
report 56.1
dither 105.6
bulge 283.3
overlayer 295.4
lamina 296.2
bustle 330.4
turbulence 671.2
slap 902.8
agitation 917.1
flutter 917.4
v crack 56.6
hang 202.6
pound 902.16
slap 902.19
wave 916.11
flutter 917.12
flare
n expansion 259.1
alarm 400.1
signal 517.15
explosion 671.7
flare-up 1019.14
flash 1025.6
torch 1026.3
television reception 1035.5
v spread 259.6
be hot 1019.22
shine 1025.23
flare-up outbreak 105.9
outburst 152.9
explosion 671.7
flare 1019.14
flash
n glance 27.4
excitement 105.3
swiftness 174.6
impulse 365.1
skillful person 413.14
bulletin 552.5
explosion 671.7
instant 830.3
flare 1019.14
blaze 1025.6
v burst forth 33.9
telegraph 347.20
flaunt 501.17
signal 517.22
shine 1025.23
flashback 989.4
flashing
n unclothing 6.1
cognizance 928.2
adj showy 501.19
brief 828.8
flashy 1025.34
flickering 1025.36
flash in the pan
n impotent 19.6
false alarm 400.2
great success 409.3
abortion 410.5
failure 410.7
thing of naught 764.2
ephemeron 828.5
v come to nothing 410.13
be unproductive 891.3
flash on think of 931.16
remember 989.10
flash point 1019.5
flashy garish 35.20
showy 501.19
grandiloquent 545.8
flashing 1025.34
flat
n floor 197.23
horizontal 201.3
apartment 228.13
plain 236.1
shoal 276.2
smoothness 287.3
scenery 704.20
note 709.14
game 746.3
cheater 759.22
adj soft-colored 35.22
colorless 36.7
muffled 52.17
dissonant 61.4
insipid 65.2
dull 117.6
spatial 158.10
inert 173.14
horizontal 201.7
recumbent 201.8
champaign 236.2
deflated 260.14
lean 270.17
low 274.7
straight 277.6
smooth 287.10
phonetic 524.30
without money 619.10
prosaic 721.5
uniform 781.5
unqualified 960.2
lackluster 1027.17
adv horizontally 201.9
flatfoot
deformity 265.3
detective 576.11
police 1008.16
flatland
horizontal 201.3
plain 236.1
flatline 307.2
flat out
at full speed 174.20
extremely 247.22
at top speed 756.5
utterly 794.16
unqualified 960.2
in excess 993.23
flatten level 201.6
straighten 277.5
smooth 287.5
raze 395.19
conquer 412.10
make uniform 781.4
flatter fawn 138.7
congratulate 149.2
importune 440.12
praise 509.12
adulate 511.5
flatterer 509.8
flattering
obsequious 138.14
congratulatory 149.3
importunate 440.18
approbatory 509.16
adulatory 511.8
flattery
congratulation 149.1
praise 509.5
laudation 511
adulation 511.1
flatulence
distension 259.2
grandiloquence 545.1
fart 909.10
vaporousness 1067.3
flatulent
distended 259.13
pompous 501.22
bombastic 545.9
ejective 909.30
flatware tableware 8.12
hard goods 735.4
flaunt
n display 501.4
waving 916.2
v manifest 348.5
vaunt 501.17
wave 916.11

flaunting
n display 501.4
waving 916.2
adj garish 35.20
showy 501.19
gaudy 501.20
grandiloquent 545.8
flautist 710.4
flavor
n taste 62.1
flavoring 63.3
odor 69.1
characteristic 865.4
v savor 63.7
imbue 797.11
flavor control 1041.8
flavorless 65.2
flavorsome
flavorful 63.9
delectable 97.10
flaw
n crack 224.2
gust 318.6
vice 654.2
error 975.1
fault 1003.2
blemish 1004.1
v blemish 1004.4
flawed
unvirtuous 654.12
illegal 674.6
illogical 936.11
erroneous 975.16
blemished 1004.8
flawless
accurate 973.16
perfect 1002.6
flaxen 43.4
flay peel 6.8
strip 480.24
criticize 510.20
tear apart 802.14
flea vermin 311.37
jumper 366.4
fleabag 228.15
flea-bitten 47.13
flea in one's ear 399.1
a flea in one's ear
rejection 372.1
repulse 442.2
reproof 510.5
flea market sale 734.3
marketplace 736.2
fleck
n tuft 3.6
spottiness 47.3
modicum 248.2
minute 258.7
mark 517.5
stain 1004.3
v variegate 47.7
mark 517.19
fledgling
n youngster 302.1
boy 302.5
birdling 302.10
bird 311.28
novice 572.9
modern 841.4
adj immature 406.11
new 841.7
flee disappear 34.2
run off 188.12
fly 368.10
escape 369.6
cease to exist 762.6
fleece
n hair 3.2
head of hair 3.4
fur 4.2
whiteness 37.2
skin 295.3
softness 1047.4
v divest 6.5
cheat 356.18
strip 480.24
plunder 482.17
overprice 632.7
fleet
n ships 180.10
navy 461.27
company 770.3
v speed 174.8
flit 828.6
adj fast 174.15
agile 413.23
brief 828.8
fleeting
vanishing 34.3
receding 168.5
unsubstantial 764.5
transient 828.7
flesh meat 10.13
sexuality 75.2
skin 295.3
organic matter 305.1
humankind 312.1
kinfolk 559.2
carnality 663.2
body 1052.3
the flesh 663.2
flesh out amplify 538.7
elaborate 861.6
perfect 1002.5
fleshpots
disapproved place 228.28
sewer 654.7
prosperity 1010.1
fleshy corpulent 257.18
pulpy 1063.6
fleur-de-lis
insignia 647.1
heraldry 647.2
flex
n bend 279.3
v curve 279.6
flexible folded 291.7
versatile 413.25
unstrict 426.5
docile 433.13
changeable 854.6
conformable 867.5
handy 1014.15
pliant 1047.9
elastic 1048.7
flibbertigibbet
scatterbrain 924.7
flightiness 985.5
flick
n thud 52.3
touch 73.1
mark 517.5
motion pictures 706.1
tap 902.7
jerk 905.3
stain 1004.3
v touch 73.6
tap 902.18
jerk 905.5
flutter 917.12
flickering
n flicker 1025.8
adj brief 828.8
irregular 851.3
inconstant 854.7
fluttering 917.18
burning 1019.27
bickering 1025.36
flier speeder 174.5
train 179.14
aviator 185.1
advertising matter 352.8
circus artist 707.3
trading 737.19
gamble 759.2
flight
defense mechanism 92.23
course 172.2
velocity 174.1
migration 177.4
aviation 184.1
trip 184.9
departure 188.1
fugitation 368.4
escape 369.1
air force 461.29
arrow 462.6
ornament 709.18
assemblage 770.6
multitude 884.3
rocket launching 1074.9
flight attendant
crew 185.4
attendant 577.5
flight of fancy
imagination 986.1
idealism 986.7
flight path
airway 184.33
route 383.1
flighty fickle 364.6
inconstant 854.7
superficial 922.20
insane 926.26
inattentive 984.6
volatile 985.17
flimflam
n lie 354.11
humbug 354.14
deception 356.1
caprice 364.1
v deceive 356.19
flimsy
n writing 547.10
adj frail 16.14
thin 270.16
rare 299.4
fragile 764.7
unsound 936.12
trivial 998.19
flaccid 1047.10
brittle 1050.4
flinch
n retreat 903.3
v shrink 127.13
be startled 131.5
retract 168.3
demur 325.4
hesitate 362.7
pull back 903.7
fling
n attempt 403.3
revel 743.6
throw 904.3
v place violently 159.13
speed 174.8
throw 904.10
fling off
flounce out 188.11
say 524.22
do away with 909.21
fling oneself at
make advances 439.7
court 562.21
flint lighter 1021.4
hardness 1046.6
flinty callous 94.12
pitiless 146.3
firm 359.12
unyielding 361.9
hard 1046.10
stone 1059.11
flip
n reverse 363.1
game 749.3
tap 902.7
throw 904.3
jerk 905.3
v get excited 105.17
lose self-control 128.8
talkative 540.9
reverse 779.5
tap 902.18
throw 904.10
jerk 905.5
flutter 917.12
adj impudent 142.10
flip-flop
n reverse 363.1
change 852.1
conversion 858.1
reversion 859.1
v change 852.7
turn back 859.5
flip of a coin
gamble 759.2
chance 972.1
flip out
get excited 105.17
get angry 152.18
go mad 926.22
flippant
impudent 142.10
careless 340.11
ridiculing 508.12
flipped 926.27
flipper aquatics 182.11
scenery 704.20
flip side 215.3
the flip side
inverse 205.4
the opposite 779.2

flirt
n lover 104.12
tempter 377.4
coquette 562.11
tap 902.7
jerk 905.3
trifler 998.10
v lure 377.5
coquet 562.20
tap 902.18
jerk 905.5
trifle 998.14
flirtation
love affair 104.6
allurement 377.1
flirtiness 562.9
trifling 998.8
flit
n homosexual 75.15
velocity 174.1
flutter 917.4
v speed 174.8
travel 177.18
migrate 177.22
wander 177.23
glide 177.35
elapse 821.5
fly 828.6
flutter 917.12
flitter
n flutter 917.4
v flutter 917.12
flitting
n wandering 177.3
adj wandering 177.37
transient 828.7
inconstant 854.7
float
n raft 180.11
v haul 176.13
ride 182.54
swim 182.56
take off 193.10
buoy 298.8
levitate 298.9
issue 738.12
inaugurate 818.11
start 904.13
wave 916.11
flood 1065.14
float a loan
lend 620.5
borrow 621.3
floater wanderer 178.2
voter 609.23
floating
n aquatics 182.11
voting 609.18
inauguration 818.5
adj wandering 177.37
afloat 182.60
buoyant 298.14
unfastened 802.22
flocculent hairy 3.24
flaky 296.7
flock tuft 3.6
flake 296.3
the laity 700.1
throng 770.4
group of animals 770.5
assemblage 770.6
multitude 884.3
flock to 450.4
flock together
associate with 582.17
accompany 769.7
come together 770.16
floe 1023.5
flog urge 375.14
whip 604.13
flood
n torrent 238.5
overflow 238.6
tide 238.13
quantity 247.3
increase 251.1
high tide 272.8
rainstorm 316.2
lights 704.18
throng 770.4
plenty 991.2
superabundance 993.2
v flow 238.16
overflow 238.17
abound 991.5
superabound 993.8
oversupply 993.14
float 1065.14
floodgate outlet 190.9
flood-hatch 239.11
floodlight
n lights 704.18
v illuminate 1025.28
flood tide tide 238.13
high tide 272.8
floor
n story 197.23
ground covering 199.3
bed 199.4
horizontal 201.3
boundary 211.3
layer 296.1
arena 463.1
price index 630.4
foundation 901.6
platform 901.13
v carpet 295.22
overcome 412.7
fell 913.5
refute 958.5
stump 971.14
floor exercise 760.5
floor it speed 174.9
be active 330.14
floorwalker
superintendent 574.2
salesman 730.3
floozy 665.14
flop
n report 56.1
tumble 194.3
failure 410.2
unsuccessful person 410.8
stage show 704.4
flutter 917.4
v go to bed 22.18
sink 194.6
hang 202.6
fail 410.10
dramatize 704.28
be changed 852.6
flutter 917.12
flophouse 228.15
floppy
n recording media 549.10
disk 1042.6
adj weak 16.12
drooping 202.10
flaccid 1047.10
floppy disk
recording media 549.10
disk 1042.6
flora 310.1
floral 310.38
florescent grown 14.3
mature 259.12
young 301.9
floral 310.38
florid
red-complexioned 41.9
floral 310.38
ornate 498.12
grandiloquent 545.11
fanciful 986.20
florilegium
compilation 554.7
excerpts 557.4
collection 770.11
florist 1069.6
floss down 3.19
softness 1047.4
flossy feathery 3.27
threadlike 271.7
ostentatious 501.18
fluffy 1047.14
flotation issue 738.6
inauguration 818.5
flotilla ships 180.10
navy 461.27
flotsam 370.4
flounce
n gait 177.12
edging 211.7
fold 291.1
jerk 905.3
flounder 917.8
v way of walking 177.28
fold 291.5
caper 366.6
figure 498.9
play 743.23
jerk 905.5
flounder 917.15
flounder
n fish 10.24
flounce 917.8
v pitch 182.55
tumble 194.8
bungle 414.11
change 854.5
wallow 915.13
flounce 917.15
be uncertain 971.9
have difficulty 1013.11
flour
n cereal 10.34
whiteness 37.2
powder 1051.5
v sprinkle 771.6
pulverize 1051.9
flourish
n extra 254.4
ornamentation 498.1
display 501.4
figure of speech 536.1
ornateness 545.4
impromptu 708.27
ornament 709.18
waving 916.2
v grow 14.2
have energy 17.11
enjoy good health 83.6
grow 259.7
mature 303.9
vegetate 310.34
manifest 348.5
ripen 407.8
flaunt 501.17
boast 502.6
ornament 545.7
be somebody 662.10
wave 916.11
thrive 1010.8
flourishing
n maturation 303.6
waving 916.2
adj maturing 14.3
increasing 251.8
grown 259.12
luxuriant 310.43
productive 890.9
thriving 1010.13
flout
n indignity 156.2
gibe 508.2
v offend 156.5
disobey 327.6
violate 435.4
disregard 454.4
scoff 508.9
flow
n excretion 12.1
course 172.2
gliding 177.16
air flow 184.29
flowing 238.4
tide 238.13
elegance 533.1
fluency 544.2
trend 896.2
plenty 991.2
liquidity 1061.1
v move 172.5
travel 177.18
glide 177.35
run out 190.13
hang 202.6
stream 238.16
elapse 821.5
abound 991.5
go easily 1014.10
flow chart
diagram 381.3
outline 801.4
flower
n posy 310.24
figure of speech 536.1
essence 767.2
the best 999.8
v mature 303.9
be in flower 310.35
figure 498.9
evolve 861.5
thrive 1010.8

flower bed 1069.10
flower child 868.3
flowering
  n florescence 310.26
  evolution 861.1
  adj maturing 14.3
  grown 259.12
  young 301.9
  floral 310.38
  thriving 1010.13
flower power
  power 18.1
  benevolence 143.4
flowery fragrant 70.9
  floral 310.38
  ornate 498.12
  figurative 536.3
  grandiloquent 545.11
flowing
  n gliding 177.16
  flow 238.4
  adj fluent 172.8
  pendent 202.9
  streaming 238.24
  elegant 533.6
  harmonious 533.8
  eloquent 544.9
  written 547.22
  fluid 1061.4
flow on march on 162.3
  coat 295.24
  elapse 821.5
  flood 1065.14
flub
  n bungle 414.5
  goof 975.6
  v bungle 414.12
fluctuate
  vacillate 362.8
  blow hot and cold 364.4
  intermit 851.2
  change 854.5
  oscillate 916.10
fluctuation
  vacillation 362.2
  irregularity 851.1
  changing 854.3
  oscillation 916.1
flue down 3.19
  chimney 239.14
  lightness 298.2
  fireplace 1020.11
  softness 1047.4
fluency flow 238.4
  elegance 533.1
  wordiness 538.2
  talkativeness 540.1
  flow 544.2
  liquidity 1061.1
fluent
  v talkative 540.9
  adj flowing 172.8
  streaming 238.24
  elegant 533.6
  harmonious 533.8
  eloquent 544.9
  fluid 1061.4
fluff
  n down 3.19
  smoothness 294.3
  lightness 298.2
  bungle 414.5
  grammatical error 975.7
  softness 1047.4
  v make a boner 975.15
  soften 1047.6
fluffy feathery 3.27
  smooth 294.8
  light 298.10
  superficial 922.20
  flossy 1047.14
fluid
  n liquid 1061.2
  vapor 1067.1
  gas 1067.2
  adj changeable 854.6
  fluidal 1061.4
fluidity
  changeableness 854.1
  liquidity 1061.1
  vaporousness 1067.3
fluid mechanics 1061.1
fluke
  n fish 10.24
  chance event 972.6
  stroke of luck 1010.3
  v triumph 411.3
flume
  n outlet 190.9
  valley 237.7
  watercourse 239.2
  gutter 239.3
  v transport 176.14
flummery 520.2
flummox
  n confusion 985.3
  v fail 410.10
  bewilder 971.12
  confuse 985.7
  thwart 1012.15
flunk
  n abortion 410.5
  v fail 410.9
  disappoint 410.17
flunky sycophant 138.3
  pursuer 166.2
  inferior 250.2
  subordinate 432.5
  retainer 577.1
  lackey 577.6
  follower 616.8
  worker 726.2
fluorescent light 1026.1
flurry
  n agitation 105.4
  velocity 174.1
  rain 316.1
  gust 318.6
  bustle 330.4
  haste 401.1
  bluster 503.1
  price 738.9
  agitation 917.1
  confusion 985.3
  snow 1023.8
  v excite 105.14
  agitate 917.10
  confuse 985.7
flush
  n warmth 35.2
  reddening 41.3
  washing 79.5
  health 83.1
  fever 85.7
  thrill 105.2
  blushing 139.5
  jet 238.9
  skiing 753.1
  glow 1019.12
  shine 1025.2
  v redden 41.5
  wash 79.19
  change color 105.19
  elate 109.8
  make proud 136.6
  blush 139.8
  show resentment 152.14
  level 201.6
  flow 238.16
  hunt 382.9
  be hot 1019.22
  soak 1065.13
  adj red-complexioned 41.9
  hale 83.12
  fresh 83.13
  horizontal 201.7
  wealthy 618.14
  full 794.11
  plentiful 991.7
  adv horizontally 201.9
flushed
  red-complexioned 41.9
  fresh 83.13
  feverish 85.58
  fervent 93.18
  overjoyed 95.17
  heated 105.22
  cheerful 109.11
  rejoicing 116.10
  puffed up 136.10
  blushing 139.13
  crowing 502.13
  hot 1019.25
fluster
  n dither 105.6
  bustle 330.4
  bluster 503.1
  agitation 917.1
  confusion 985.3
  v agitate 105.14
  confuse 985.7
flute
  n furrow 290.1
  v furrow 290.3
  fold 291.5
  speak 524.25
  blow a horn 708.42
flutist 710.4
flutter
  n audio distortion 50.13
  staccato 55.1
  trepidation 105.5
  dither 105.6
  bustle 330.4
  haste 401.1
  trill 709.19
  trading 737.19
  price 738.9
  pulsation 916.3
  flitter 917.4
  confusion 985.3
  flicker 1025.8
  v drum 55.4
  excite 105.14
  be excited 105.18
  oscillate 916.10
  wave 916.11
  agitate 917.10
  flitter 917.12
  confuse 985.7
  flicker 1025.25
fluvial 238.23
flux
  n excretion 12.1
  defecation 12.2
  symptom 85.9
  course 172.2
  flow 238.4
  tide 238.13
  ceramics 742.3
  measurement of light 1025.21
  liquidity 1061.1
  solvent 1064.4
  v treat 91.24
  combine 805.3
  melt 1020.21
  liquefy 1064.5
fly
  n overlayer 295.4
  insect 311.33
  snare 356.13
  game 745.3
  v disappear 34.2
  speed 174.8
  transport 176.12
  glide 177.35
  be airborne 184.36
  pilot 184.37
  run off 188.12
  take off 193.10
  flee 368.10
  play 745.5
  cease to exist 762.6
  elapse 821.5
  flit 828.6
  wave 916.11
fly at 459.18
flyblown filthy 80.23
  blighted 393.42
fly-by-night
  untrustworthy 645.19
  transient 828.7
flying
  n aviation 184.1
  adj vanishing 34.3
  high 87.24
  flowing 172.8
  fast 174.15
  airborne 184.50
  hasty 401.9
  transient 828.7
flying buttress 901.4
Flying Dutchman
  wanderer 178.2
  mariner 183.1
  White Lady 988.2
fly in the face of
  disobey 327.6
  deny 335.4
  oppose 451.3
  offer resistance 453.3
  flout 454.4
  go contrary to 779.4
  counteract 900.6

fly in the ointment
evil 1000.3
fault 1003.2
obstacle 1012.4
flyleaf 554.12
fly off at a tangent
fly into a rage 152.20
avoid 164.6
diverge 171.5
fly off the handle
get excited 105.17
fly into a rage 152.20
fly on the wall
viewpoint 27.7
listener 48.5
flytrap 356.12
FM signal 1034.10
foal
n fledgling 302.10
horse 311.10
jockey 757.2
v give birth 1.3
foam
n saliva 13.3
whiteness 37.2
lightness 298.2
froth 320.2
extinguisher 1022.3
softness 1047.4
sprinkle 1065.5
v bubble 320.4
froth 320.5
seethe 671.12
foam at the mouth
be angry 152.15
be insane 926.20
foamy light 298.10
foam-flecked 320.7
fob
n bag 195.2
jewel 498.6
v cheat 356.18
fob off on 643.7
focal converging 169.3
confocal 208.13
chief 249.14
vital 997.23
focus
n convergence 169.1
focal point 208.4
centralization 208.8
essence 767.2
attractor 907.2
v focalize 208.10
focus on
specify 865.11
operate on 889.6
concentrate 931.10
have regard to 937.3
pay attention 983.8
call attention to 983.10
fodder
n feed 10.4
v feed 8.18
tend 1070.7
foe
opponent 452.1
enemy 589.6
fog
n atmosphere 184.32
grass 310.5
pea soup 319.3
obscurity 522.3
confusion 985.3
v blur 32.4
cover 295.19
cloud 319.7
make uncertain 971.15
confuse 985.7
foggy
inconspicuous 32.6
soupy 319.10
obscure 522.15
muddleheaded 922.18
vague 971.19
muddled 985.13
foghorn
alarm 400.1
signal 517.15
fogy
old-timer 842.8
conservative 853.4
dotard 924.9
foible
vice 654.2
fault 1003.2
foil
n lamina 296.2
discomfiture 412.2
motif 498.7
actor 707.2
frustration 1012.3
v disappoint 132.2
outwit 415.11
thwart 1012.15
foist 776.5
foist oneself upon 214.5
fold
n enclosed place 212.3
cavity 284.2
crease 291.1
double 291.1
lamina 296.2
the laity 700.1
v collapse 260.10
fold on itself 291.5
close shop 293.8
fail 410.10
embrace 562.18
go bankrupt 625.7
seek the middle 819.3
folder
advertising matter 352.8
booklet 554.11
bookholder 554.17
folderol finery 498.3
nonsense 520.2
passage 708.24
trifle 998.5
fold in 291.5
folding
n mountain 237.6
creasing 291.4
bookbinding 554.14
adj folded 291.7
fold up
collapse 260.10
fold 291.5
close shop 293.8
fail 410.10
go bankrupt 625.7
end 820.5
foliage 310.18
foliation
stratification 296.4
foliage 310.18
numeration 1017.9
folio volume 554.4
makeup 554.12
bookholder 554.17
part of writing 793.2
folk
n population 227.1
race 559.4
family 559.5
the people 606.1
adj traditional 842.12
folk history story 719.3
tradition 842.2
folklore
mythology 678.14
tradition 842.2
superstition 954.3
folk music 708.11
folks
kinfolk 559.2
family 559.5
the people 606.1
folk singer
singer 710.13
minstrel 710.14
folk singing 708.13
folksy 581.3
folktale 842.2
follicle 310.30
follow
n pursuit 382.1
v look 27.13
attach oneself to 138.11
go after 166.3
parallelize 203.5
be behind 217.8
be inferior 250.4
practice 328.8
emulate 336.7
pursue 382.8
take advice 422.7
observe 434.2
understand 521.7
court 562.21
play 744.2
resemble 784.7
set an example 786.7
be consistent 803.7
come next 815.2
succeed 817.5
come after 835.3
specialize 866.4
conform 867.3
result 887.4
seek 938.30
trace 938.35
prove 957.10
follower
enthusiast 101.4
lover 104.12
hanger-on 138.6
successor 166.2
inferior 250.2
pursuer 382.4
apostle 572.2
retainer 577.1
disciple 616.8
believer 692.4
follow from
result from 887.5
prove 957.10
following
n going behind 166
heeling 166.1
follower 166.2
imitation 336.1
pursuit 382.1
attendance 769.6
sequence 815.1
subsequence 835.1
surveillance 938.9
adj trailing 166.5
pursuing 382.11
similar 784.10
succeeding 815.4
subsequent 835.4
resultant 887.6
deducible 935.23
prep after 835.8
follow-through
game 750.2
round 751.3
sequel 817.1
follow up
prosecute to a conclusion 360.5
pursue 382.8
be thorough 794.8
come after 835.3
trace 938.35
follow-up
case history 91.10
pursuit 382.1
news item 552.3
sequel 817.1
subsequence 835.2
folly
foolishness 923.1
foolish act 923.4
foment
n agitation 917.1
v excite 105.12
relieve 120.5
incite 375.17
heat 1020.17
fond
n foundation 901.6
adj loving 104.27
hopeful 124.11
foolish 923.8
credulous 954.8
fondle stroke 73.8
foster 449.16
hold 474.7
caress 562.16
fond of
desirous of 100.22
enamored of 104.30
font jet 238.9
source of supply 386.4
type 548.6
baptism 701.6
church vessels 703.11
fountainhead 886.6
food nutrient 7.3
sustenance 10.1
foodstuff 10.1
food additive preservative 397.4

vitaminization 7.14
food for thought 931.7
food processor 1063.4
foofaraw dither 105.6
bustle 330.4
finery 498.3
turbulence 671.2
commotion 810.4
foofooraw
noise 53.4
quarrel 456.6
fool
n dupe 358.1
laughingstock 508.7
buffoon 707.10
stupid person 924.2
damn fool 924.1
ignoramus 930.8
v befool 356.15
be foolish 923.6
trifle 998.14
adj foolish 923.8
fool around
banter 490.6
play 743.23
be foolish 923.6
trifle 998.15
fool around with
meddle 214.7
experiment 942.8
foolery
buffoonery 489.5
gibe 508.2
foolishness 923.1
foolhardy
daring 492.22
harebrained 493.9
fooling
n deception 356.1
buffoonery 489.5
banter 490.1
bantering 490.2
ridicule 508.1
trifling 998.8
adj bantering 490.7
ridiculing 508.12
foolish
mischievous 322.6
nonsensical 520.7
unintelligent 922.13
fool 923.8
absurd 923.11
trivial 998.19
foolproof
resistant 15.20
handy 1014.15
fool with meddle 214.7
trifle 998.14
foot
n member 2.7
sail 180.14
base 199.2
extremity 199.5
meter 720.7
v speed 174.8
walk 177.27
way of walking 177.28
make way 182.21
float 182.54
dance 705.5
footage length 267.1
motion-picture photography 706.5
football sport 746.1
football team 746.2
soccer 752.1
foot-dragging
n slowness 175.1
refusal 325.1
delay 846.2
hindrance 1012.1
adj slow 175.10
dilatory 846.17
foothills
the country 233.1
highlands 237.1
foothold hold 474.2
footing 901.5
purchase 906.2
footing station 159.2
base 199.2
hold 474.2
class 607.1
fee 624.5
horse racing 757.1
state 765.1
sphere of influence 894.4
foothold 901.5
foundation 901.6
purchase 906.2
outlook 978.2
calculation 1017.10
footlights
show business 701.1
illumination 701.19
footloose
wandering 177.37
free 430.21
footman 577.6
footnote
comment 341.5
memorandum 549.4
footprint 517.7
footrest step 193.5
footing 901.5
foot soldier
pedestrian 178.6
infantryman 461.9
footstep stride 177.11
step 193.5
print 517.7
foot the bill 624.18
fop dandy 500.9
person of fashion 578.7
for
prep to 380.11
in preparation for 405.24
on behalf of 449.26
in favor of 509.21
instead of 862.12
conj because 888.10
forage
n feed 10.4
search 938.15
v feed 8.18
provision 385.9
plunder 482.17
search 938.31
forage grass 310.5
forager 483.6
foray
n raid 459.4
plundering 482.6
v raid 459.20
plunder 482.17
forbear
be patient 134.4
have pity 145.4
refrain 329.3
not use 390.5
abstain 668.7
forbearance
patience 134.1
pity 145.1
forgiveness 148.1
avoidance 368.1
temperance 668.1
tolerance 979.4
forbid
v prohibit 444.3
prevent 1012.14
adj prohibited 444.7
forbidden fruit
desire 100.11
lure 377.3
prohibition 444.1
tree of knowledge 928.8
forbidding
n prohibition 444.1
adj offensive 98.18
reticent 344.10
prohibitive 444.6
preventive 1012.19
hideous 1015.11
force
n strength 15.1
energy 17.1
power 18.1
waterfall 238.11
quantity 244.1
enterprise 330.7
ultima ratio 424.2
meaning 518.1
vigor 544.3
staff 577.11
violence 671.1
impact 887.2
influence 894.1
impulse 902.1
validity 973.6
v motivate 375.12
compel 424.4
administer 643.6
seduce 665.20
thrust 902.12
cultivate 1069.17
forced labor 725.4
forced march
walk 177.10
hastening 401.3
force-feed 8.19
forceful strong 15.15
energetic 17.13
powerful 18.12
enterprising 330.23
vigorous 544.11
emphatic 997.21
force of habit 373.3
forceps 192.9
forces work force 18.9
army 461.23
force upon
urge upon 439.9
thrust upon 478.20
administer 643.6
forcible strong 15.15
energetic 17.13
powerful 18.12
coercive 424.12
vigorous 544.11
emphatic 997.21
forcible removal 160.1
forcible seizure
seizure 480.2
unruliness 671.3
forcible shift 160.1
for crying out loud! 122.21
ford
n shoal 276.2
passageway 383.3
v pass 910.8
fore
n front 216.1
adj front 216.10
previous 834.4
former 837.10
interj golf 751.5
fore and aft
aft 182.69
from beginning to end 794.18
forearm
n member 2.7
arm 906.5
v prepare for 405.11
take precautions 494.6
forebear 816.1
forebearance
discontinuance 390.2
leniency 427.1
forebears 560.7
forebode bode 133.11
forewarn 399.6
threaten 514.2
predict 962.9
foreboding
n feeling 93.1
anxiety 126.1
apprehension 127.4
boding 133.2
forewarning 399.2
threat 514.1
hunch 934.3
foreknowledge 961.3
prediction 962.1
adj anxious 126.7
ominous 133.17
forewarning 399.8
threatening 514.3
foreshadowing 962.12
forecast
n foresight 961.1
prediction 962.1
v plan 381.8
predict 962.9
adj predicted 962.14
forecasting
n meteorology 317.5
prediction 962.1
adj predictive 962.11
foreclose
dispossess 480.23
prevent 1012.14
forecourt
basketball 747.1

  tennis 748.1
forefathers 560.7
forefront
  leading 165.1
  border 211.4
  front 216.1
  vanguard 216.2
foregoing
  n leading 165.1
  adj leading 165.3
  former 814.5
  previous 834.4
  aforegoing 837.11
foregone conclusion
  sure success 409.2
  predetermination 964.1
foreground
  front 216.1
  nearness 223.1
forehand
  n front 216.1
  adj front 216.10
  early 845.7
forehead 216.5
foreign
  extraterritorial 206.9
  extrinsic 768.3
  extraneous 774.5
  unrelated 776.6
foreign affairs 609.5
foreign correspondent 555.4
foreigner
  exclusiveness 773.3
  alien 774.3
  oddity 870.4
foreign exchange 728.9
foreign policy 609.5
foreknowledge
  understanding 928.3
  foreknowing 961.3
  predetermination 964.1
foreman
  superintendent 574.2
  juror 596.7
foremost
  adj leading 165.3
  front 216.10
  chief 249.14
  preceding 814.4
  first 818.17
  paramount 997.24
  adv before 165.4
  frontal 216.12
forensic
  n speech 543.2
  adj declamatory 543.12
  jurisprudent 673.12
foreordain 964.6
foreplay 75.7
forerunner
  harbinger 133.5
  herald 353.2
  preparer 405.5
  leader 574.6
  skier 753.2
  precursor 816.1
  antecedent 834.2
foresee
  expect 130.5
  look forward to 130.6
  come 839.6
  anticipate 845.6
  see beforehand 961.5
  predict 962.9
foreseeable
  foreseen 961.8
  predictable 962.13
  probable 968.6
foreseeing 961.1
foreshadow
  n omen 133.3
  v foreshow 133.10
  image 349.11
foreshorten 268.6
foreshortening 268.3
foresight plan 381.1
  precaution 494.3
  extrasensory perception 689.8
  the future 839.1
  earliness 845.1
  sagacity 920.4
  looking ahead 961.1
  foreseeing 961.1
  prediction 962.1
forest
  n woodland 310.13
  v plant 1069.18
  adj sylvan 310.40
forestall
  look forward to 130.6
  deceive 356.14
  monopolize 469.6
  anticipate 845.6
  prevent 1012.14
forestation 1069.3
forester
  guardian 1008.6
  arboriculturist 1069.7
forest ranger
  preserver 397.5
  guardian 1008.6
  forester 1069.7
forest reserve 397.7
forestry
  woodland 310.13
  arboriculture 1069.3
foretaste
  n appetizer 10.9
  antepast 961.4
  v anticipate 845.6
  foresee 961.5
foretell come 839.6
  predict 962.9
forethought
  carefulness 339.1
  intentionality 380.3
  plan 381.1
  precaution 494.3
  premeditation 961.2
foretold 962.14
forever
  n infinity 823.1
  an eternity 829.2
  adv for keeps 474.10
  infinitely 823.4
  forevermore 829.12
  permanently 853.9
forewarned 130.11
forewarning
  n warning 133.4
  prewarning 399.2
  adj premonitory 133.16
  prewarning 399.8
  predictive 962.11
foreword
  front 216.1
  makeup 554.12
  part of writing 793.2
  curtain-raiser 816.2
for example
  incidentally 843.13
  to illustrate 957.23
for fear that 897.7
forfeit
  n collateral 438.3
  loss 473.1
  fine 603.3
  v lose 473.4
  adj lost 473.7
for fun
  for the hell of it 95.20
  in fun 489.19
  for amusement 743.31
forgathering 770.1
forge
  n foundry 739.4
  v form 262.7
  imitate 336.5
  fabricate 354.18
  coin 728.28
forge ahead
  make one's way 162.4
  be in front 216.7
  hustle 330.13
forgery
  imitation 336.1
  fabrication 354.10
  fake 354.13
  counterfeit 728.10
  coining 728.24
  copy 785.1
forget
  forgive and forget 148.5
  dismiss 984.4
  clean forget 990.5
forget about it 984.4
forgetful
  inconsiderate 144.18
  careless 340.11
  forgetting 990.9
forget it
  v compose oneself 106.7
  dismiss 984.4
  interj nope! 335.10
  cease! 857.13
  phrs no matter 998.25
forgive have pity 145.4
  pardon 148.3
  acquit 601.4
  declare a moratorium 625.9
  efface from the memory 990.6
forgo refrain 329.3
  give up 370.7
  not use 390.5
  relinquish 475.3
  abstain 668.7
forgone
  relinquished 475.5
  determined 964.8
for good
  for keeps 474.10
  forever 829.12
forgotten
  forgiven 148.7
  unthanked 151.5
  past 837.7
  clean forgotten 990.8
for instance 957.23
fork
  n prong 171.4
  tributary 238.3
  angle 278.2
  branch 310.20
  v furcate 171.7
  ladle 176.17
  angle 278.5
  bisect 875.4
  throw 904.10
for keeps
  to keep 474.10
  forever 829.12
for kicks 743.31
forklift 912.3
fork out give 478.12
  pay out 624.14
  spend 626.5
fork over
  deliver 478.13
  pay out 624.14
forks 8.12
forlorn
  disconsolate 112.28
  hopeless 125.12
  lorn 584.12
form
  n aspect 33.3
  apparition 33.5
  lair 228.26
  shape 262.1
  human form 262.4
  grammar 262.6
  structure 266.1
  standard 373.4
  manner 384.1
  rule 419.2
  formula 419.3
  motif 498.7
  document 549.5
  class 572.11
  social convention 579.1
  formality 580.1
  law 673.3
  rite 701.3
  piece 708.5
  arrangement 709.11
  statistics 757.4
  good condition 765.3
  mode 765.4
  mold 786.6
  ordering 808.1
  kind 809.3
  rule 869.4
  phantom 976.4
  specter 988.1
  body 1052.3
  immaterialism 1053.3
  v formalize 262.7
  be formed 262.8
  construct 266.5
  train 568.13
  compose 796.3
  order 807.4
  take form 807.5

produce 892.8
establish 892.10
formal
n ceremony 580.4
dance 705.2
adj solemn 111.3
formative 262.9
structural 266.6
pompous 501.22
gallant 504.15
nominal 527.15
grammatical 530.17
stiff 534.3
conventional 579.5
formulary 580.7
ritualistic 701.19
conditional 765.6
orderly 807.6
formalist
n pietist 693.3
ritualist 701.2
conformist 867.2
pedant 929.5
adj formal 580.7
formalities
amenities 504.7
etiquette 580.3
formality
solemnity 111.1
overniceness 500.5
pomp 501.6
social convention 579.1
form 580.1
ceremony 580.4
law 673.3
rite 701.3
rule 869.4
formalize form 262.7
sign 437.7
ritualize 580.5
normalize 869.6
format form 262.1
structure 266.1
formation
flight formation 184.12
form 262.1
forming 262.5
structure 266.1
word form 526.4
game 746.3
composition 796.1
order 807.1
arrangement 808.1
production 892.2
establishment 892.4
formative
n morphology 526.3
adj formal 262.9
component 796.5
beginning 818.15
causal 886.13
creative 892.16
pliant 1047.9
former foregoing 814.5
previous 834.4
past 837.10
older 842.19
formidable
terrible 127.30
remarkable 247.10
weighty 997.20
difficult 1013.17
formless
shapeless 263.4
diffuse 538.11
unordered 810.12
abnormal 870.9
formula rule 419.2
form 419.3
law 673.3
rite 701.3
rule 869.4
axiom 974.2
formulary
n formula 419.3
law 673.3
rite 701.3
norm 869.4
adj preceptive 419.4
formal 580.7
ritualistic 701.19
formulate say 524.22
phrase 532.4
write 547.21
legalize 673.9
compose 718.6
produce 892.8
fornicate
copulate 75.21
be promiscuous 665.19
for real
adj real 761.15
adv positively 247.19
forsake abandon 370.5
be unfaithful 645.12
forsaken unloved 99.10
available 222.15
abandoned 370.8
forlorn 584.12
outcast 586.10
forswear
n recant 363.8
v deny 335.4
give up 370.7
reject 372.2
relinquish 475.3
swear off 668.8
forsworn
untruthful 354.34
apostate 363.11
rejected 372.3
relinquished 475.5
deceitful 645.18
fort 460.6
forte
n talent 413.4
music 708.25
specialty 866.1
adj loud 53.11
music 708.53
adv loudly 53.14
forth
adv forward 162.8
hence 188.20
out 190.21
prep out of 190.22
forthcoming
n appearance 33.1
approach 167.1
imminence 840.1
adj approaching 167.4
emerging 190.18
future 839.8
imminent 840.3
in preparation 405.22
for the birds 98.25
for the hell of it
for fun 95.20
in fun 743.31
for the most part
chiefly 249.17
on the whole 792.14
generally 864.17
normally 869.10
for the nonce
meanwhile 826.5
temporarily 828.9
now 838.3
for the period of 821.14
for the sake of
on behalf of 380.11
in order to 449.26
because of 888.9
for the time being
temporarily 828.9
now 838.3
conditionally 959.11
forthright
adj candid 644.17
adv directly 161.23
forthwith at once 830.8
promptly 845.15
fortification
vitaminization 7.14
strengthening 15.5
work 460.4
confirmation 957.4
fortify vitaminize 7.20
refresh 9.2
strengthen 15.13
add to 253.5
embattle 460.9
adulterate 797.12
confirm 957.11
a fortiori
adj dialectic 935.22
adv chiefly 249.17
fortitude strength 15.1
patience 134.1
will power 359.4
hardihood 492.6
cardinal virtues 653.4
Fort Knox 729.13
fortnight
moment 824.2
eleven 882.7
fortress 460.6
fortuitous
circumstantial 766.7
unessential 768.4
chance 972.15
fortuity chance 972.1
chance event 972.6
fortunate
auspicious 133.18
successful 409.14
timely 843.9
chance 972.15
lucky 1010.14
fortune wealth 618.1
gamble 759.2
fate 964.2
chance 972.1
good fortune 1010.2
fortune hunter 651.3
fortuneteller 962.4
forty plot 231.4
eleven 882.7
forty-niner
traveler 178.1
miner 1058.9
forty winks 22.3
forum square 230.8
conference 423.3
arena 463.1
discussion 541.7
tribunal 595.1
assembly 770.2
forward
n team 752.2
v advance 162.5
send 176.15
be instrumental 384.7
make better 392.9
hasten 401.4
be useful 449.17
deliver 478.13
determine 886.12
impel 902.11
push 904.9
expedite one's affair 995.3
adj eager 101.8
insolent 142.9
progressive 162.6
meddlesome 214.9
front 216.10
willing 324.5
strong-willed 359.15
foolhardy 493.9
immodest 666.6
premature 845.8
adv forwards 162.8
frontward 216.13
forward-looking
progressive 162.6
modern 841.13
fosse trench 290.2
entrenchment 460.5
fossil
n remainder 256.1
antiquity 842.6
back number 842.8
adj antiquated 842.13
fossilized
stricken in years 303.18
antiquated 842.13
hardened 1046.13
foster
v nourish 8.19
advance 162.5
look after 339.9
motivate 375.12
encourage 375.21
make better 392.9
nurture 449.16
hold 474.7
train 568.13
care for 1008.19
adj related 559.6
foster-care 449.3
foster child
dependent 432.6
descendant 561.3

fostering
n accommodations 385.3
support 449.3
training 568.3
protectorship 1008.2
adj helping 449.20
protective 1008.23
foul
n unfairness 650.2
baseball game 745.3
football game 746.3
basketball game 747.3
hockey game 749.3
game 749.6
match 752.3
fight 754.3
v defile 80.17
stop 293.7
misuse 389.4
catch 480.17
play 747.4
fix 855.10
collide 902.13
adj nasty 64.7
malodorous 71.5
filthy 80.23
unhealthful 82.5
offensive 98.18
inert 173.14
stopped 293.11
stormy 318.23
decayed 393.40
cursing 513.8
unfair 650.10
wicked 654.16
base 661.12
vulgar 666.8
obscene 666.9
demoniac 680.17
terrible 1000.9
hideous 1015.11
adv afoul 182.72
foulmouthed
caustic 144.23
cursing 513.8
obscene 666.9
foul play
homicide 308.2
chicanery 356.4
treachery 645.6
unfairness 650.2
foul-smelling 71.5
foul up spoil 393.11
bungle 414.12
complicate 799.3
confuse 811.3
make a boner 975.15
hinder 1012.16
foul-up
bungler 414.9
confusion 810.2
goof 975.6
found
establish 159.16
form 262.7
sculpture 715.5
inaugurate 818.11
fix 855.9
cause 886.10
set up 892.10
burn 1020.24
foundation
settlement 159.7
base 199.2
preparation 405.1
endowment 478.9
warrant 600.6
organization 617.8
game 750.2
beginning 818.1
stability 855.6
establishment 892.4
fond 901.6
premise 935.7
makeup 1016.12
founded on
supported 901.24
evidential 957.16
founder
n producer 892.7
v go lame 85.49
capsize 182.44
descend 194.6
sink 367.8
break down 393.24
fail 410.11
come to grief 1011.10
founding member 892.7
foundling 370.4
found money 472.6
foundry 739.4
fount jet 238.9
source of supply 386.4
fountainhead 886.6
fountain
n ascent 193.1
jet 238.9
source of supply 386.4
fountainhead 886.6
v shoot up 193.9
fountain of youth 829.3
four
n card 758.2
fourness 879
tetrad 879.1
adj foursquare 879.4
four-leaf clover
charm 691.5
four 879.1
four-letter word
oath 513.4
barbarism 526.6
fourscore 882.7
foursome golfer 751.2
four 879.1
fourth
n interval 709.20
one-fourth 881.2
adj quarter 881.5
the fourth estate
news 552.1
the press 555.3
fourth-rate 1005.9
fowl
n bird 10.22
wildfowl 311.28
poultry 311.29
v hunt 382.9
fox reynard 311.20
slyboots 415.6
foxhole cave 284.5
hiding place 346.4
entrenchment 460.5
shelter 1009.3
fox hunt 382.2
foxtrot 705.5
foxy
reddish-brown 40.4
canine 311.42
cunning 415.12
shrewd 920.15
stained 1004.10
foyer vestibule 197.19
home 228.2
fracas noise 53.3
quarrel 456.5
free-for-all 457.5
commotion 810.4
fraction political party 609.24
part 793.1
ratio 1017.7
fractious
irascible 110.19
unwilling 325.5
defiant 327.10
ungovernable 361.12
oppositional 451.8
resistant 453.5
fracture
n trauma 85.38
crack 224.2
break 802.4
v cleave 224.4
injure 393.13
impair 393.23
break 802.12
fragile weak 16.14
frail 764.7
transient 828.7
brittle 1050.4
fragility frailty 16.2
unhealthiness 85.3
unsubstantiality 764.1
damageability 1050.1
brittleness 1050.1
fragment
n modicum 248.2
piece 793.3
v demolish 395.17
diversify 782.2
shatter 802.13
break 1050.3
pulverize 1051.9
fragmentary
unsound 16.15
partial 793.7
broken 802.24
discontinuous 813.4
fragmentate 1050.3
fragmentation
dispersion 771.1
disruption 802.3
disintegration 806.1
pulverization 1051.4
fragrance odor 69.1
aroma 70.1
fragrancy 70.1
fraidy-cat 491.5
frail
n gal 302.7
adj slight 16.14
unhealthy 85.54
thin 270.16
human 312.13
weak-willed 362.12
unvirtuous 654.12
fragile 764.7
transient 828.7
brittle 1050.4
frailty
slightness 16.2
unhealthiness 85.3
thinness 270.4
humanness 312.8
weak will 362.4
vice 654.2
fault 1003.2
brittleness 1050.1
frame
n body 2.1
base 199.2
border 211.4
form 262.1
human form 262.4
structure 266.1
framing 266.4
trumped-up charge 599.4
film 714.10
game 745.3
game or string 750.2
circumstances 766.2
nature 767.4
underframe 901.10
prearrangement 965.2
mood 978.4
body 1052.3
v border 211.10
form 262.7
plan 381.8
plot 381.9
phrase 532.4
trump up a charge 599.12
produce 892.8
originate 892.12
prearrange 965.5
frame of mind 978.4
frame up
plot 381.9
trump up a charge 599.12
prearrange 965.5
frame-up fake 354.13
intrigue 381.5
trumped-up charge 599.4
prearrangement 965.2
framework
the skeleton 2.2
outline 211.2
frame 266.4
outlook 978.2
franchise
n vote 371.6
exemption 430.8
grant 443.5
suffrage 609.17
privilege 642.2
merchant 730.2
v authorize 443.11
Franciscan
n ascetic 667.2
adj ascetic 667.4
frangible frail 16.14
brittle 1050.4
frank
n postage 553.5

v talkative 540.9
adj communicative 343.10
artless 416.5
free-acting 430.23
plain-speaking 535.3
candid 644.17
vulgar 666.8
Frankenstein 127.9
frankincense 70.4
frantic
overzealous 101.12
frenzied 105.25
overactive 330.24
turbulent 671.18
rabid 926.30
distracted 985.10
fraternal
kind 143.13
friendly 587.15
fraternity
affiliation 450.2
blood relationship 559.1
association 582.6
companionship 587.2
fellowship 617.3
fraternize
associate with 582.17
act the traitor 645.15
fraternizer 357.11
Frau woman 77.5
female 77.9
fraud sham 354.3
fake 354.13
fraudulence 356.8
impostor 357.6
theft 482.1
affecter 500.7
deceitfulness 645.3
fraudulent
deceitful 356.22
thievish 482.21
wrong 638.3
dishonest 645.16
illegal 674.6
fraught
weighted 297.18
freighted 794.12
fray
n trauma 85.38
fight 457.4
v injure 393.13
wear 393.20
abrade 1044.7
frazzle
n trauma 85.38
v get tired 21.6
concern 126.4
injure 393.13
wear 393.20
abrade 1044.7
freak
n addict 87.21
desirer 100.12
enthusiast 101.5
caprice 364.1
misfit 789.4
specialist 866.3
nonconformist 868.3
oddity 870.4
monstrosity 870.6
fanatic 926.18
character 927.4
chance event 972.6
adj bizarre 870.13
freakish
capricious 364.5
inconstant 854.7
freak 870.13
eccentric 927.5
freak out delight 95.11
lose self-control 128.8
go mad 926.22
go on a trip 976.8
dream 986.17
freckle
n spottiness 47.3
mark 517.5
blemish 1004.1
v variegate 47.7
mark 517.19
spot 1004.5
free
v release 120.6
unclose 292.12
rescue 398.3
liberalize 430.13
exempt 430.14
liberate 431.4
extricate 431.7
acquit 601.4
detach 802.10
loosen 804.3
disembarrass 1014.9
adj available 222.15
open 292.17
voluntary 324.7
idle 331.18
communicative 343.10
escaped 369.11
leisure 402.5
at liberty 430.21
quit 430.31
liberated 431.10
liberal 485.4
gratuitous 634.5
candid 644.17
profligate 665.25
unfastened 802.22
adv freely 430.32
as a gift 478.27
gratuitously 634.6
free and easy
nonchalant 106.15
lighthearted 109.12
careless 340.11
free 430.21
informal 581.3
convivial 582.23
unconventional 868.6
free association 92.33
freebie
n gift 478.4
costlessness 634.1
adj gratuitous 634.5
freedom
leisure 402.1
liberty 430.1
liberality 485.1
privilege 642.2
candor 644.4
facility 1014.1
free enterprise
noninterference 430.9
policy 609.4
capitalism 611.8
free-for-all noise 53.4
knock-down-and-drag-out 457.5
commotion 810.4
freehand
free-acting 430.23
pictorial 712.21
free hand
latitude 430.4
carte blanche 443.4
liberality 485.1
freeholder
householder 227.7
landowner 470.3
legislator 610.3
freeing
n release 120.2
escape 369.1
rescue 398.1
liberation 431.1
freedom 431.2
extrication 431.3
evacuation 909.6
disembarrassment 1014.6
adj benefiting 592.4
free lance
free agent 430.12
mercenary 461.17
writer 547.15
author 718.4
worker 726.2
free-lance
stand on one's own two feet 430.20
author 547.21
write 718.6
freeloader
parasite 138.5
nonworker 331.11
guest 585.6
free rider 634.3
free love
sexology 75.18
love 104.1
illicit sex 665.7
freemasonry
affiliation 450.2
fellowship 587.2
free of
adj quit 430.31
prep absent 222.19
free-range 430.26
free ride
costlessness 634.1
game 745.3
free rider 634.3
free spirit 868.3
free-standing
independent 430.22
separate 802.20
freestyle 182.11
freestyle skiing 753.1
freethinking
n liberalism 430.10
free thought 695.7
liberalness 979.2
adj nonrestrictive 430.25
latitudinarian 695.21
liberal 979.9
free thought
liberalism 430.10
freethinking 695.7
liberalness 979.2
free throw 747.3
free time 402.1
free trade
noninterference 430.9
policy 609.4
commerce 731.1
free up 1014.9
freewheeling 430.22
free will will 323.1
voluntariness 324.2
choice 371.1
free choice 430.6
free with one's money 485.4
freeze
n cold weather 1023.3
v deaden 25.4
numb 94.8
take fright 127.11
terrify 127.17
be still 173.7
preserve 397.9
speak poorly 525.7
perpetuate 829.5
stabilize 855.7
fix 855.10
stop 857.7
put a stop to 857.11
be cold 1023.9
freeze 1023.9
chill 1023.10
ice up 1023.10
ice 1024.11
interj cease! 857.13
the freeze 589.1
freeze-dry
preserve 397.9
freeze 1024.11
dry 1066.6
freeze out
exclude 773.4
drive out 909.14
freezing
n food preservation 397.2
refrigeration 1024.1
adj cold 1023.14
feeling cold 1023.16
refrigerative 1024.12
freight
n transportation 176.3
freightage 176.6
train 179.14
load 196.2
burden 297.7
haulage 630.7
charge 643.3
impediment 1012.6
v load 159.15
transport 176.12
send 176.15
burden 297.13
fill 794.7
freighter carrier 176.7
train 179.14
frenetic
overzealous 101.12

overactive 330.24
rabid 926.30
frenzied
overzealous 101.12
frantic 105.25
overactive 330.24
turbulent 671.18
rabid 926.30
frenzy
n seizure 85.6
overzealousness 101.3
fury 105.8
turbulence 671.2
agitation 917.1
furor 926.7
confusion 985.3
v excite 105.12
enrage 152.25
madden 926.24
frequency
oftenness 847.1
routineness 847.1
oscillation 916.1
wave 916.4
radio frequency 1034.12
frequent
v haunt 221.10
adj habitual 373.14
oftentime 847.4
recurrent 849.13
fresco
n painting 35.12
picture 712.11
v color 35.14
fresh
n stream 238.1
torrent 238.5
adj refreshing 9.3
clean 79.25
green 83.13
impudent 142.10
additional 253.10
windy 318.22
original 337.5
unused 390.12
inexperienced 414.17
present 838.2
new 841.7
additional 841.8
remembered 989.23
undamaged 1002.8
cool 1023.12
freshen refresh 9.2
clean 79.18
air 317.11
blow 318.20
perfect 392.11
refrigerate 1024.10
freshet stream 238.1
torrent 238.5
fresh-faced fresh 83.13
young 301.9
freshman
undergraduate 572.6
novice 572.9
beginner 818.2
fret
n ache 26.5
irritation 96.3
dither 105.6
dudgeon 152.7
network 170.3
heraldry 647.2
roulette 759.12
v pain 26.7
irritate 96.14
sulk 110.14
grieve 112.17
complain 115.15
make anxious 126.5
feel anxious 126.6
be impatient 135.4
be angry 152.15
provoke 152.24
injure 393.13
wear 393.20
agitate 917.10
abrade 1044.7
fretful
peevish 110.22
plaintive 115.19
impatient 135.6
bustling 330.20
fretting
n worry 126.2
impatience 135.1
abrasion 1044.2
adj irritating 26.13
troublesome 126.10
impatient 135.6
abrasive 1044.10
friable
brittle 1050.4
pulverable 1051.13
friar 699.16
fricassee
n stew 10.11
v cook 11.5
friction
n touching 73.2
opposition 451.2
disaccord 456.1
hostility 589.3
counteraction 900.1
rubbing 1044.1
adj frictional 1044.9
Friday abstinence 668.2
fate 964.2
Friday the thirteenth 964.2
fridge 1024.4
fried cooked 11.7
high 87.24
drunk 88.33
friend 588.1
friendless
helpless 19.18
forlorn 584.12
alone 872.8
friendly
comfortable 121.11
homelike 228.33
favorable 449.22
sociable 582.22
hospitable 585.11
friendlike 587.15
friendship
comradeship 587
friendliness 587.1
fright
n fear 127.1
eyesore 1015.4
v frighten 127.15
frighten fright 127.15
startle 131.8
alarm 400.3
frightening
n intimidation 127.6
adj frightful 127.28
frighten off
scare away 127.21
dissuade 379.3
frightful
frightening 127.28
remarkable 247.11
hideous 1015.11
frigid unsexual 75.29
unfeeling 94.9
reticent 344.10
aloof 583.6
cold 1023.14
frill
n edging 211.7
extra 254.4
fold 291.1
finery 498.3
ornateness 545.4
superfluity 993.4
v fold 291.5
frilly ornate 498.12
showy 501.19
fringe
n tuft 3.6
exterior 206.2
border 211.4
edging 211.7
golf 751.1
adj exterior 206.7
fringe benefits 624.6
frippery finery 5.10
frills 498.3
superfluity 993.4
trifle 998.5
frisk
n caper 366.2
frolic 743.5
search 938.15
v rejoice 116.5
go on horseback 177.34
caper 366.6
play 743.23
search 938.31
frisky gay 109.14
active 330.17
fritter away 486.5
frivolity
merriment 109.5
lightness 298.1
waggishness 489.4
foolishness 923.1
flightiness 985.5
triviality 998.3
frivolous
merry 109.15
litigious 598.21
unordered 810.12
superficial 922.20
scatterbrained 985.16
trivial 998.19
frizz
n lock 3.5
v cook 11.5
frizzy 281.9
fro 163.13
frock
n garment 5.3
suit 5.6
dress 5.16
robe 702.2
v cloak 5.40
ordain 698.12
frog
derogatory names 232.7
amphibian 311.27
jumper 366.4
frogman
swimmer 182.12
navy man 183.4
diver 367.4
frolic
n prank 489.10
play 743.5
v exude cheerfulness 109.6
rejoice 116.5
play 743.23
from at 159.27
away from 188.21
out of 190.22
off 255.14
from A to Z
wholly 792.13
from beginning to end 794.18
from bad to worse 119.6
from scratch
first 818.18
newly 841.15
from soup to nuts
wholly 792.13
from beginning to end 794.18
from time to time 848.5
frond leaf 310.19
branch 310.20
front
n appearance 33.2
leading 165.1
atmosphere 184.32
exteriority 206.1
facade 206.2
forepart 216.1
fore 216.1
vanguard 216.2
weather map 317.4
sham 354.3
pretext 376.1
mediator 466.3
affectation 500.1
figurehead 575.5
movement 609.33
v contrapose 215.4
be in front 216.7
confront 216.8
oppose 451.5
offer resistance 453.3
defy 454.3
brave 492.11
precede 814.2
adj frontal 216.10
phonetic 524.30
first 818.17
the front 463.2
frontage
navigation 159.3
front 216.1

frontal
n fore 216.1
altar 703.12
adj anterior 216.10
front for
be in front 216.7
represent 576.14
take the place of 862.6
frontier
n boundary 211.3
border 211.5
front 216.1
hinterland 233.2
remote region 261.4
the unknown 930.7
adj bordering 211.11
frontispiece
front 216.1
curtain-raiser 816.2
front man front 216.1
mediator 466.3
figurehead 575.5
front matter
front 216.1
added to writing 254.2
makeup 554.12
part of writing 793.2
curtain-raiser 816.2
front page 216.1
front-page 552.13
front-runner
vanguard 216.2
jockey 757.2
precursor 816.1
front yard 216.1
frost
n failure 410.2
enmity 589.1
cold weather 1023.3
Jack Frost 1023.7
v whiten 37.5
top 198.9
freeze 1023.10
hail 1023.11
frost over 1030.3
frostbite
n cold 1023.2
v freeze 1023.10
frosted
n beverage 10.49
adj white 37.7
unfeeling 94.9
frosty 1023.17
semitransparent 1030.4
frosting
sweets 10.40
whitening 37.3
topping 198.3
frosty white 37.7
unfeeling 94.9
reticent 344.10
aloof 583.6
unfriendly 589.9
frostlike 1023.17
semitransparent 1030.4
froth
n saliva 13.3
dregs 256.2
lightness 298.2
foam 320.2
trivia 998.4
sprinkle 1065.5
v bubble 320.4
foam 320.5
froth at the mouth 926.20
frothy light 298.10
foamy 320.7
showy 501.19
superficial 922.20
trivial 998.19
froward
disobedient 327.8
perverse 361.11
frown
n scowl 110.9
offense 152.2
reproving look 510.8
v look sullen 110.15
show resentment 152.14
frozen unfeeling 94.9
terrified 127.26
fast 800.14
immortal 829.9
permanent 853.7
immovable 855.15
stuck 855.16
feeling cold 1023.16
frozen solid 1024.14
fructification
productiveness 890.1
proliferation 890.2
performance 892.5
bearing 892.6
fructuous 995.5
frugal
parsimonious 484.7
cheap 633.7
economical 635.6
temperate 668.9
meager 992.10
frugality
parsimony 484.1
thrift 635.1
temperance 668.1
fruit
n produce 10.38
homosexual 75.15
seed 310.31
yield 472.5
offspring 561.1
effect 887.1
product 893.1
v bear 892.13
fruitbearing 890.10
fruitcake
homosexual 75.15
lunatic 926.16
fruitful 890.9
fruition pleasure 95.1
accomplishment 407.1
bearing 892.6
fruitless
ineffective 19.15
gainless 391.12
unsuccessful 410.18
fruits gain 472.3
receipts 627.1
fruity
flavorful 63.9
fragrant 70.9
vegetable 310.36
crazy 926.27
frump
old woman 304.3
slob 810.7
frustrate
disappoint 132.2
thwart 412.11
outwit 415.11
neutralize 900.7
hinder 1012.15
frustrated
unsexual 75.29
disappointed 132.5
frustration
psychological stress 92.17
disappointment 132.1
discomfiture 412.2
circumvention 415.5
neutralization 900.2
thwarting 1012.3
fry
n dish 10.7
marine animal 311.30
offspring 561.2
v cook 11.5
brown 40.2
execute 604.17
be hot 1019.22
fuck copulate 75.21
deceive 356.19
mistreat 389.6
a fuck 762.3
fucked-up
botched 414.22
complex 799.4
confused 810.16
fuck off depart 188.7
leave 222.10
idle 331.12
fuck-off 331.8
fuck over 389.6
fuck up spoil 393.11
bungle 414.12
complicate 799.3
confuse 811.3
make a boner 975.15
fuck-up fiasco 410.6
bungle 414.5
bungler 414.9
complex 799.2
confusion 810.2
goof 975.6
fuddle
n intoxication 88.1
confusion 985.3
v intoxicate 88.23
perplex 971.13
confuse 985.7
fuddy-duddy
n fussbudget 495.7
back number 842.8
dotard 924.9
adj old-fogyish 842.17
fudge
n nonsense 520.2
v slight 340.8
falsify 354.16
fabricate 354.18
cheat 356.18
fuel
n automobile racing 756.1
energy source 1021.1
petroleum 1056.4
rocket propulsion 1074.8
v provision 385.9
fuel up 1021.8
adj energy 1021.9
fugitive
n fleer 368.5
escapee 369.5
criminal 660.9
adj vanishing 34.3
receding 168.5
wandering 177.37
runaway 368.16
escaped 369.11
unsubstantial 764.5
transient 828.7
fugue trance 92.19
round 708.19
loss of memory 990.2
führer leader 574.6
tyrant 575.14
fulcrum
supporter 901.2
axis 906.3
axle 915.5
fulfill
carry out 328.7
accomplish 407.4
observe 434.2
execute 437.9
complete 794.6
suffice 991.4
fulfillment
adjustment 92.27
contentment 107.1
accomplishment 407.1
observance 434.1
execution 437.4
completion 794.4
fuliginous 38.11
full
n fullness 794.2
adj colored 35.17
loud 53.11
resonant 54.10
intoxicated 88.31
great 247.6
corpulent 257.18
broad 269.6
thick 269.8
stopped 293.11
unrestricted 430.27
detailed 766.9
crowded 770.22
complete 794.9
filled 794.11
plentiful 991.7
satiated 994.6
sound 1002.7
full-blooded
strong 15.15
red-complexioned 41.9
upper-class 607.10
wellborn 608.11
full bloom
maturity 303.2
flowering 310.26
full-blown
full-sized 257.22
mature 303.13

full-bodied
flavorful 63.9
thick 269.8
full circle circuit 914.2
rotation 915.1
full-fledged
developed 14.3
full-sized 257.22
grown 259.12
mature 303.13
complete 794.9
full-grown
developed 14.3
full-sized 257.22
grown 259.12
mature 303.13
ripe 407.13
complete 794.9
full measure fill 794.3
plenty 991.2
full of beans
healthy 83.9
gay 109.14
full of holes 393.32
full of hope 124.11
full of hot air 975.18
full of it 975.18
full of oneself 140.12
full of piss and vinegar
energetic 17.13
healthy 83.9
gay 109.14
vigorous 544.11
full-scale
full-sized 257.22
complete 794.9
full tilt 330.25
full time 825.3
fulminate blast 56.8
explode 671.14
fulminate against
censure 510.13
berate 510.19
curse 513.5
fulsome nasty 64.7
malodorous 71.5
offensive 98.18
suave 504.18
uncritical 509.18
flattering 511.8
grandiloquent 545.8
bombastic 545.9
base 661.12
obscene 666.9
terrible 1000.9
fumble
n bungle 414.5
game 746.3
v bungle 414.11
play 746.5
confuse 811.3
grope 938.32
fume
n odor 69.1
excitement 105.4
dudgeon 152.7
turbulence 671.2
agitation 917.1
combustion product 1020.16
vapor 1067.1
v decolor 36.5
be angry 152.15
preserve 397.9
seethe 671.12
let out 909.24
smoke 1019.23
vaporize 1067.8
fumigate
perfume 70.8
deodorize 72.4
sanitize 79.24
vaporize 1067.8
fun
n pleasure 95.1
pleasantness 97.1
merriment 109.5
joke 489.6
action 743.2
v joke 489.13
adj delightful 97.8
amusing 743.27
function
n action 328.1
intention 380.1
use 387.5
syntax 530.2
ceremony 580.4
duty 641.1
rite 701.3
occupation 724.1
office 724.3
v act 328.4
officiate 724.13
operate 889.5
be operative 889.7
functional
psychological 92.37
acting 328.10
useful 387.18
grammatical 530.17
occupational 724.16
effective 889.9
working 889.11
operational 889.12
functionary
official 575.16
agent 576.3
operator 889.4
functioning
n action 328.1
operation 889.1
adj acting 328.10
operating 889.11
fund
n supply 386.2
finances 728.14
capital 728.15
collection 770.11
v provide 385.7
support 449.12
subsidize 478.19
pay for 624.18
finance 729.16
fundamental
n tone 50.2
essence 767.2
foundation 901.6
salient point 997.6
adj basic 199.8
essential 767.9
simple 798.6
beginning 818.15
original 886.14
vital 997.23
fundamentalism
firmness 425.2
Christianity 675.7
strictness 687.5
zeal 692.3
fundamentalist
n true believer 687.4
believer 692.4
adj firm 425.7
strict 687.8
fund-raise 770.18
fundraiser 729.10
funds means 384.2
assets 471.7
finances 728.14
funebrial
gloomy 112.24
funereal 309.22
funeral
n burial 309.5
procession 812.3
adj funereal 309.22
funeral march
dirge 115.6
slow motion 175.2
march 708.12
funeral oration
dirge 115.6
last offices 309.4
speech 543.2
funeral pyre 1019.13
funereal dark 38.9
sad 112.24
pessimistic 125.16
funeral 309.22
gloomy 1027.14
fungus growth 85.39
germ 85.42
plant 310.3
mold 310.4
blight 1001.2
funicular
n train 179.14
cableway 383.8
adj threadlike 271.7
funk
n stench 71.1
fear 127.1
coward 491.5
v take fright 127.11
flinch 127.13
frighten 127.15
lose one's nerve 491.8
funky malodorous 71.5
melancholy 112.23
cowardly 491.10
funnel
n convergence 169.1
tube 239.6
chimney 239.14
cone 282.5
v converge 169.2
transport 176.14
channel 239.15
funnies 712.16
funny humorous 488.4
witty 489.15
inexplicable 522.18
ambiguous 539.4
odd 870.11
eccentric 927.5
peculiar 927.6
unbelievable 955.10
bewildering 971.27
funny farm 926.14
funny feeling
apprehension 127.4
nervousness 128.1
forewarning 399.2
hunch 934.3
fur
n hair 3.2
down 3.19
pelt 4.2
skin 295.3
heraldry 647.2
v fill 196.7
furbish polish 287.7
perfect 392.11
renovate 396.17
ornament 498.8
buff 1044.8
furcate
v fork 171.7
angle 278.5
adj forked 171.10
angular 278.6
the Furies rage 152.10
avenger 507.3
Fury 680.10
furious
overzealous 101.12
frenzied 105.25
passionate 105.29
infuriated 152.32
hasty 401.9
reckless 493.8
violent 671.16
turbulent 671.18
rabid 926.30
furlough
n vacation 20.3
absence 222.4
unemployment 331.3
v dismiss 909.19
furnace foundry 739.4
kiln 742.5
hot place 1019.11
heater 1020.10
reactor 1038.13
furnish provide 385.7
equip 385.8
supply 478.15
bear 892.13
fit 405.8
furnishings
wardrobe 5.2
furniture 229.1
equipment 385.4
merchandise 735.5
furniture
home furnishings 229
furnishings 229.1
equipment 385.4
composition 548.2
merchandise 735.5
furor passion 93.2
greed 100.8
fury 105.8
rage 152.10

turbulence 671.2
insanity 926.1
frenzy 926.7
mania 926.12
furrier clothier 5.33
tailor 5.35
furrow
n crack 224.2
indentation 284.6
groove 290.1
wrinkle 291.3
v cleave 224.4
excavate 284.15
groove 290.3
wrinkle 291.6
engrave 713.9
furry hairy 3.24
feathery 3.27
cutaneous 295.32
fluffy 1047.14
further
v advance 162.5
be useful 449.17
adj additional 253.10
thither 261.10
fresh 841.8
adv additionally 253.11
furtherance
progression 162.1
improvement 392.1
helping along 449.5
evolution 861.1
furthermore 253.11
further oneself 162.2
furthest
extreme 247.13
farthest 261.12
furtive covert 345.12
in hiding 346.14
deceitful 356.22
fury
n passion 93.2
overzealousness 101.3
furor 105.8
sorehead 110.11
bitch 110.12
rage 152.10
witch 593.7
turbulence 671.2
violent person 671.9
frenzy 926.7
adv swiftly 174.18
fuse
n detonator 462.15
safeguard 1008.3
v cooperate 450.3
come together 770.16
identify 778.5
mix 797.10
stick together 803.9
combine 805.3
melt 1020.21
liquefy 1064.5
fusillade
n detonation 56.3
volley 459.9
capital punishment 604.7
hit 902.4
shot 904.4
v pull the trigger 459.22
fusion affiliation 450.2
identification 778.2
mixture 797.1
combination 805.1
oneness 872.1
melting 1020.3
nuclear fusion 1038.9
alloy 1058.4
liquefaction 1064.1
fuss
n dither 105.6
bustle 330.4
quarrel 456.5
fussbudget 495.7
finery 498.3
bluster 503.1
turbulence 671.2
commotion 810.4
agitation 917.1
v agitate 105.14
complain 115.15
feel anxious 126.6
be impatient 135.4
bustle 330.12
be hard to please 495.8
fuss at 510.16
fussbudget 495.7
fussy restless 105.27
bustling 330.20
meticulous 339.12
finical 495.10
ornate 498.12
detailed 766.9
fustian
n nonsense 520.2
bombast 545.2
adj bombastic 545.9
fusty malodorous 71.5
trite 117.9
blighted 393.42
stale 842.14
futile ineffective 19.15
vain 125.13
useless 391.13
unsuccessful 410.18
foolish 923.8
inexpedient 996.5
trivial 998.19
futility
ineffectiveness 19.3
hopelessness 125.1
vanity 391.2
failure 410.1
meaninglessness 520.1
inexpedience 996.1
triviality 998.3
future
n fiancé 104.17
tense 530.12
the future 839.1
fate 964.2
adj later 839.8
imminent 840.3
the future 821.1
futures 738.11
fuzz
n down 3.19
smoothness 294.3
lightness 298.2
v cover 295.19
make uncertain 971.15
the fuzz 1008.16
Fuzzbuster 1036.5
gab
n speech 524.1
chatter 540.3
v speak 524.19
babble 524.20
chatter 540.5
Gabriel herald 353.2
Azrael 679.4
gad about
journey 177.21
wander 177.23
gadfly goad 375.8
prompter 375.10
gadget tool 1040.1
thing 1052.5
Gaea
agricultural deity 1069.4
Earth 1072.10
gaffe 975.5
gag
n silencer 51.4
shackle 428.4
joke 489.6
acting 704.8
v disable 19.10
silence 51.8
feel disgust 99.4
vomit 909.26
gaga 923.8
gage marijuana 87.11
pledge 438.2
challenge 454.2
gaggle
n assemblage 770.6
v bird sound 60.5
gag order 444.1
gaiety colorfulness 35.4
happiness 95.2
gayness 109.4
finery 498.3
showiness 501.3
conviviality 582.3
festivity 743.3
gain
n increase 251.1
profit 472.3
game 746.3
good 999.4
available gain 1032.17
time constants 1041.11
v arrive 186.6
grow 251.6
persuade 375.23
improve 392.7
triumph 411.3
acquire 472.8
receive 479.6
incur 897.4
gainful valuable 387.22
productive 472.16
gain ground
progress 162.2
accelerate 174.10
improve 392.7
gain on 174.13
gains winnings 251.3
profit 472.3
receipts 627.1
gainsay deny 335.4
contradict 451.6
gait velocity 172.4
pace 177.12
gal woman 77.6
dame 302.7
person 312.5
gala
n festival 743.4
adj festive 743.28
galactic spatial 158.10
large 247.7
universal 864.14
innumerable 884.10
celestial 1072.25
galaxy celebrity 662.9
throng 770.4
island universe 1072.6
the Galaxy 1072.6
gale outburst 105.9
breeze 318.5
windstorm 318.12
gall
n digestive secretion 13.2
acridness 64.2
trauma 85.38
irritation 96.3
affliction 96.8
ill humor 110.1
impudence 142.3
rancor 144.7
bitterness 152.3
bulge 283.3
rashness 493.1
v pain 26.7
irritate 96.14
injure 393.13
abrade 1044.7
gallant
n beau 104.13
brave person 492.8
dandy 500.9
cavalier 504.9
libertine 665.10
adj courageous 492.17
showy 501.19
chivalrous 504.15
profligate 665.25
gallantry
courage 492.1
gallantness 504.2
courtship 562.7
profligacy 665.3
gallbladder 2.16
gallery
observation post 27.8
audience 48.6
hall 197.4
corridor 197.18
porch 197.21
balcony 197.22
showroom 197.24
layer 296.1
passageway 383.3
museum 386.9
entrenchment 460.5
auditorium 704.15
studio 712.17
platform 901.13
galley kitchen 11.4
sailboat 180.3
proof 548.5

galley slave
  boatman 183.5
  subject 432.7
  drudge 726.3
Gallicism 523.8
gallivant
  wander 177.23
  flirt 562.20
gallop
  n run 174.3
  gait 177.12
  v speed 174.8
  go on horseback 177.34
gallows 605.5
the gallows 604.7
galore
  adj plentiful 991.7
  adv greatly 247.15
galvanize
  energize 17.10
  stimulate 105.13
  plate 295.26
  motivate 375.12
  electrify 1032.26
  electrolyze 1032.28
gambit trick 356.6
  attempt 403.2
  stratagem 415.3
  first 818.3
gamble
  n bet 759.2
  guess 971.8
  chance 972.1
  v game 759.23
  bet 759.25
  be liable 897.3
  predict 962.9
  risk 972.12
  endanger 1006.6
  take chances 1006.7
gamble on
  chance 759.24
  rely on 953.16
  be certain 970.9
gambling
  illicit business 732.1
  game 743.9
  cardplaying 758.1
  betting 759
  playing 759.1
gambling game 743.9
gambol
  n caper 366.2
  frolic 743.5
  v exude cheerfulness 109.6
  rejoice 116.5
  caper 366.6
  play 743.23
game
  n meat 10.13
  desire 100.11
  sweetheart 104.10
  animal life 311.1
  objective 380.2
  plan 381.1
  intrigue 381.5
  quarry 382.7
  stratagem 415.3
  contest 457.3
  laughingstock 508.7
  vocation 724.6
  fun 743.2
  card game 743.9
  sport 744.1
  ball game 745.3
  artifice 746.3
  basketball game 747.3
  strategy 748.2
  match 749.3
  contest 749.6
  frame 750.2
  meet 752.3
  cardplaying 758.1
  bridge 758.3
  gambling game 759.7
  v gamble 759.23
  adj willing 324.5
  plucky 359.14
  crippled 393.30
  resolute 492.18
gamekeeper
  guardian 1008.6
  hunter 382.5
game plan
  plan 381.1
  project 381.2
  game 746.3
game preserve
  preserve 397.7
  refuge 1009.1
game reserve 397.7
game room 197.12
game-show 1035.2
gamete 305.10
game warden
  preserver 397.5
  guardian 1008.6
gamin
  vagabond 178.3
  brat 302.4
gamut range 158.2
  scale 709.6
  series 812.2
gamy strong 68.8
  malodorous 71.5
  tainted 393.41
gander
  male animal 76.8
  poultry 311.29
a gander 27.3
Gandhi 921.2
gang
  n staff 577.11
  association 617.1
  company 770.3
  group of animals 770.5
  v league 805.4
gang bang
  copulation 75.7
  sexual possession 480.3
ganglord 660.10
gangly lean 270.17
  giant 272.16
gangplank 189.5
gangrene
  n filth 80.7
  mortification 85.40
  v decay 393.22
gangster bandit 483.4
  evildoer 593.1
  criminal 660.9
  the underworld 660.10
gang up on 459.14
gang up with 582.18
gangway
  n entrance 189.5
  interj open up! 292.23
the gantlet 604.2
Ganymede
  homosexual 75.14
  carrier 176.7
  attendant 577.5
gap
  n interval 224.1
  crack 224.2
  ridge 237.5
  valley 284.9
  opening 292.1
  difference 780.1
  dissimilarity 787.1
  deficiency 795.2
  break 802.4
  interruption 813.2
  v cleave 224.4
  gape 292.16
gape
  n gaze 27.5
  crack 224.2
  opening 292.1
  gaping 292.2
  v gaze 27.15
  wonder 122.5
  gap 292.16
  spectate 918.5
  be curious 981.3
gaping
  n yawning 292.2
  adj wondering 122.9
  expectant 130.11
  cleft 224.7
  spread 259.11
  abysmal 275.11
  yawning 292.18
gapless 812.8
garage carport 197.27
  repair shop 739.5
garb
  n clothing 5.1
  looks 33.4
  v clothe 5.39
garbage offal 80.9
  heroin 87.9
  refuse 391.4
  bull 520.3
  Greek 522.7
garbage dump
  receptacle of filth 80.12
  derelict 370.4
  trash pile 391.6
garble
  n Greek 522.7
  v pervert 265.6
  misinterpret 342.2
  misrepresent 350.3
  falsify 354.16
  make unintelligible 522.12
  confuse 811.3
garçon boy 302.5
  man 577.4
garden
  n compilation 554.7
  horticulture 1069.10
  v farm 1069.16
  adj floral 310.38
  simple 499.6
  ordinary 1005.8
gardener man 577.4
  horticulturist 1069.6
garden flower 310.24
gardening
  flower 310.24
  horticulture 1069.2
Garden of Eden 986.11
garden tool garden tool 1040.8
garden variety 869.3
garden-variety
  simple 499.6
  ordinary 1005.8
Gargantuan large 247.7
  huge 257.20
gargle
  n dentifrice 86.22
  drink 88.7
  v wash 79.19
  tipple 88.24
gargoyle spout 239.8
  eyesore 1015.4
garish lurid 35.20
  gaudy 501.20
  grandiloquent 545.8
  bright 1025.32
garland
  n circle 280.2
  bouquet 310.25
  compilation 554.7
  trophy 646.3
  heraldry 647.2
  book of verse 720.5
  v figure 498.9
garment
  n vestment 5.3
  v clothe 5.39
garner
  n granary 386.7
  v store up 386.11
garnish
  n ornamentation 498.1
  v attach 480.20
  ornament 498.8
garniture 498.1
garret 197.16
garrison
  n stronghold 460.6
  military unit 461.22
  guard 1008.9
  v fortify 460.9
garrote
  n suffocation 308.6
  capital punishment 604.7
  v strangle 308.19
  execute 604.17
garrulous 540.9
garter 646.5
gas
  n success 409.4
  boasting 502.2
  poppycock 520.3
  chatter 540.3
  belch 909.9
  fart 909.10
  fuel 1021.1
  illuminant 1025.20
  volatile 1067.1
  rare gas 1067.2

vaporousness 1067.3
v provision 385.9
talk nonsense 520.5
chatter 540.5
gas chamber
place of killing 308.12
execution 605.5
the gas chamber 604.7
gasconade
n boasting 502.1
v boast 502.6
bluster 503.3
gaseous rare 299.4
thin 764.6
vaporous 1067.9
gash
n trauma 85.38
crack 224.2
notch 289.1
furrow 290.1
refuse 391.4
mark 517.5
v cleave 224.4
notch 289.4
furrow 290.3
injure 393.13
mark 517.19
sever 802.11
gasket 293.5
gaslit 1025.39
gasoline 1025.20
gasp
n breathing 2.21
v burn out 21.5
speak 524.25
be hot 1019.22
gassiness
distension 259.2
talkativeness 540.1
vaporousness 1067.3
gas station 739.1
gassy
v talkative 540.9
adj distended 259.13
pompous 501.22
inflated 502.12
bombastic 545.9
vaporous 1067.9
gastric 2.31
gastronome 8.16
gastronomy
epicurism 8.15
aesthetic taste 496.5
gourmandise 672.2
gastropod 311.3
gat opening 292.1
gun 462.10
gate entrance 189.5
porch 189.6
channel 239.4
valve 239.10
floodgate 239.11
receipts 627.1
horse racing 757.1
attender 918.2
barrier 1012.5
cast 1058.5
the gate 909.5
gâteau 10.42
gate-crasher
intruder 214.3
guest 585.6
newcomer 774.4
gatehouse 228.9
gatekeeper 1008.12
gather
n fold 291.1
v grow 14.2
expand 259.7
fold 291.5
blow 318.20
collect 472.11
come together 770.16
assemble 770.18
put together 800.5
be imminent 840.2
conclude 946.10
suppose 951.10
harvest 1069.19
gathering
n sore 85.37
collection 472.2
bookbinding 554.14
social gathering 582.10
removal to heaven 681.11
assemblage 770.1
assembly 770.2
accumulation 770.9
part of writing 793.2
joining 800.1
harvest 1069.15
adj imminent 840.3
gauche
bungling 414.20
ignorant 930.12
inconvenient 996.7
gaucho rider 178.8
herder 1070.3
gaudy garish 35.20
coarse 497.11
tawdry 501.20
grandiloquent 545.8
paltry 998.21
gauge
n size 257.1
measure 300.2
v size 257.15
measure 300.10
classify 801.8
estimate 946.9
gaunt lean 270.17
unproductive 891.4
gauntlet 454.2
gauze
dressing 86.33
fog 319.3
gauzy thin 270.16
smooth 294.8
unsubstantial 764.6
transparent 1029.4
gavel 417.9
gawk
n bungler 414.8
oaf 924.5
v gaze 27.15
wonder 122.5
be curious 981.3
gawky
n oaf 924.5
adj lean 270.17
bungling 414.20
gay colorful 35.19
homosexual 75.30
intoxicated 88.31
happy 95.16
gay as a lark 109.14
showy 501.19
convivial 582.23
profligate 665.25
festive 743.28
gaze
n stare 27.5
v gloat 27.15
wonder 122.5
gazebo
observation post 27.8
summerhouse 228.12
gazelle
swiftness 174.6
hoofed animal 311.5
jumper 366.4
gazette
official document 549.8
periodical 555.1
newspaper 555.2
gear
n clothing 5.1
rigging 180.12
cordage 271.3
equipment 385.4
impedimenta 471.3
baseball 745.1
football 746.1
hockey 749.1
field hockey 749.4
golf 751.1
soccer 752.1
skiing 753.1
mechanism 1040.4
gearing 1040.9
v equip 385.8
adj excellent 999.13
geared high 87.24
apt 788.10
gee
v avoid 164.6
interj my! 122.21
geisha dancer 705.3
entertainer 707.1
Geist 920.8
gel
n lights 704.18
semiliquid 1062.5
solution 1064.3
v thicken 1045.10
gelatin
sweets 10.40
lights 704.18
semiliquid 1062.5
geld feminize 77.13
castrate 255.11
gelded
unmanned 19.19
unproductive 891.4
gelding
impotent 19.6
sexlessness 75.9
castration 255.4
horse 311.10
jockey 757.2
gelid cold 1023.14
frozen 1024.14
gem
n jewel 498.6
good person 659.1
good thing 999.5
precious stone 1059.7
v figure 498.9
geminate
v duplicate 874.3
adj double 874.4
Gemini 873.4
Gemütlichkeit
pleasantness 97.1
sociability 582.1
gendarme
officer 1008.15
police 1008.16
gender sex 75.1
masculine 530.10
gene
genetic material 305.9
heredity 560.6
genealogy
register 549.9
pedigree 560.5
general
n commissioned officer 575.18
adj public 312.16
communal 476.9
common 497.14
governing 612.18
generalized 864.11
normal 869.8
undiscriminating 945.5
theoretical 951.13
vague 971.19
general delivery 553.4
general hospital 91.21
generality mean 246.1
major part 792.6
universality 864.1
usualness 869.2
abstract idea 932.3
indiscrimination 945.1
vagueness 971.4
generalization
custom 373.1
generality 864.1
general idea 864.8
reasoning 935.3
generally
approximately 223.23
on the average 246.5
in general 864.17
normally 869.10
vaguely 971.29
general store 736.1
general strike
revolt 327.4
strike 727.5
generate procreate 78.8
cause 886.10
originate 892.12
electrify 1032.26
generation
procreation 78.2
birth 78.6
age 824.4
lifetime 827.5
production 892.1
generation gap 456.1

generator 886.4
generic 864.11
generosity
benevolence 143.4
liberality 485.1
hospitality 585.1
magnanimity 652.2
plenty 991.2
generous
benevolent 143.15
forgiving 148.6
much 247.8
voluminous 257.17
indulgent 427.8
philanthropic 478.22
liberal 485.4
hospitable 585.11
magnanimous 652.6
productive 890.9
tolerant 979.11
plentiful 991.7
genesis birth 1.1
reproduction 78.6
origin 818.4
evolution 861.3
source 886.5
production 892.1
genetic
generative 78.16
protoplasmic 305.18
related 559.6
racial 559.7
hereditary 560.19
innate 767.8
evolutionary 861.8
original 886.14
genetic engineering 560.6
genetics 560.6
genial genetic 78.16
pleasant 97.6
cheerful 109.11
good-natured 143.14
sociable 582.22
hospitable 585.11
cordial 587.16
warm 1019.24
geniality
pleasantness 97.1
cheerfulness 109.1
good nature 143.2
sociability 582.1
hospitality 585.1
cordiality 587.6
genie 680.6
genitalia
n reproductive organs 2.13
sex 75.1
adj phallic 2.29
genetic 78.16
genius ability 18.2
superior 249.4
inspiration 375.9
talent 413.4
talented person 413.12
master 413.13
intelligence 678.5
familiar spirit 678.12
demon 680.6
nature 767.4
smartness 920.2
Geist 920.8
scholar 929.3
creative thought 986.2
first-rater 999.6
genocide killing 308.1
carnage 308.4
misdeed 655.2
genre form 262.1
style 712.8
kind 809.3
gent male 76.4
man 76.5
genteel
decorous 496.10
well-bred 504.17
chic 578.13
upper-class 607.10
noble 608.10
gentile
n non-Jew 688.6
unbeliever 695.11
adj racial 559.7
infidel 688.10
gentility
decorousness 496.3
good breeding 504.4
aristocracy 607.3
nobility 608.2
gentle
v accustom 373.9
domesticate 432.11
calm 670.7
soften 1047.6
tend 1070.7
adj faint 52.16
good-natured 143.14
pitying 145.7
slow 175.10
light 298.12
lenient 427.7
meek 433.15
well-bred 504.17
upper-class 607.10
noble 608.10
moderate 670.10
soft 1047.8
gentleman male 76.4
man 577.4
aristocrat 607.4
nobleman 608.4
person of honor 644.8
good person 659.1
gentrification 392.1
gentry the people 606.1
upper class 607.2
noble rank 608
gentlefolk 608.3
genuflect bow to 155.6
bow down 433.10
bow 913.9
genuine natural 416.6
straight 644.14
candid 644.17
real 761.15
authentic 973.15
genus
nomenclature 527.1
kind 809.3
classification 809.5
biology 1068.1
geodesic 300.12
geographer 1071.2
geography
topography 159.8
earth science 1071.1
Earth 1072.10
geology
mineralogy 1058.10
petrology 1059.9
earth science 1071.1
geomancer 962.4
geometric 1017.22
geriatric
n old man 304.2
adj aged 303.16
stricken in years 303.18
germ pathogen 85.42
embryo 305.14
vital force 886.7
germane
related 559.6
relevant 775.11
germicide
antiseptic 86.21
poison 1001.3
germinal
reproductive 78.15
infinitesimal 258.14
embryonic 305.22
original 886.14
fertilizing 890.11
imaginative 986.18
germinate grow 14.2
expand 259.7
vegetate 310.34
germination
bodily development 14.1
growth 259.3
vegetation 310.32
germinational 305.22
Geronimo
n call to arms 458.8
interj attack! 459.32
gerontology 303.8
gerrymander
n election district 609.16
v maneuver 415.10
politick 609.38
gerrymandering 356.8
gest act 328.3
exploit 492.7
gestalt aspect 33.3
pattern 92.32
environment 209.1
outline 211.2
Gestapo 1008.17
gestation 78.5
gesticulate 517.21
gesture
n gesticulation 517.14
hint 551.4
v gesticulate 517.21
get
n gain 472.3
family 559.5
offspring 561.2
receipts 627.1
v hear 48.11
procreate 78.8
take sick 85.47
annoy 96.13
speed 174.9
fetch 176.16
depart 188.7
kill 308.14
acquire 472.8
receive 479.6
take 480.13
read one loud and clear 521.8
learn 570.6
become 761.12
induce 886.11
incur 897.4
solve 940.2
discover 941.2
stump 971.14
get across
be heard 48.12
communicate 343.7
come through 521.5
make clear 521.6
teach 568.10
fix in the mind 989.18
get a fix on
locate 159.11
make sure 970.11
get after annoy 96.13
follow 166.3
persecute 389.7
pay attention 983.8
get ahead
progress 162.2
lead 165.2
outdistance 249.10
grow 251.6
improve 392.7
make good 409.10
prosper 1010.7
get a kick out of 95.13
get a leg up on 411.6
get a life 328.5
get a load of see 27.12
heed 983.6
get along
v progress 162.2
depart 188.6
age 303.10
improve 392.7
manage 409.12
harmonize 455.2
be in a certain state 765.5
persist 856.5
interj go away! 909.31
get a move on
v speed 174.9
make haste 401.6
interj make haste! 401.17
get around
journey 177.21
be published 352.16
deceive 356.14
evade 368.7
know backwards and forwards 413.19
outwit 415.11
free oneself from 431.8
flatter 511.6
get at
arrive at 186.7
bribe 378.3
persecute 389.7
make sure 970.11
getaway
acceleration 174.4

departure 188.1
start 188.2
escape 369.1
get away depart 188.6
set out 188.8
escape 369.6
get away from it all
vacation 20.9
amuse oneself 743.22
get away with
devour 8.22
get off 369.7
put over 409.11
get back at
retaliate 506.4
interchange 863.4
get behind
regress 163.5
lag 166.4
be behind 217.8
back 449.13
get better 396.19
get by get off 369.7
support oneself 385.12
succeed with 409.11
manage 409.12
be in a certain state 765.5
live on 839.7
stand the test 942.10
escape notice 984.5
suffice 991.4
get cracking
v hurry 401.6
set to work 725.15
interj make haste! 401.17
get down devour 8.22
use 87.22
alight 194.7
crouch 913.8
get even with
even the score 506.7
revenge 507.4
settle with 624.12
interchange 863.4
get going
v depart 188.7
make haste 401.6
undertake 404.3
set to work 725.15
make a beginning 818.8
improve the occasion 843.8
interj make haste! 401.17
get hold of
communicate with 343.8
acquire 472.9
seize 480.14
understand 521.7
learn 570.6
get in
arrive 186.6
enter 189.7
mount 193.12
intrude 214.5
collect 472.11
assemble 770.18
get into don 5.43
penetrate 189.8
join 617.14
get it
read one loud and clear 521.8
be punished 604.20
get it over with
complete 407.6
put a stop to 857.11
get it straight 973.10
get it together
focus 208.10
make better 392.9
order 807.4
arrange 808.8
re-form 858.12
get lost
v depart 188.7
not interfere 430.17
interj go away! 909.31
get next to
ingratiate oneself 138.10
befriend 587.11
get on good terms with 587.13
get nowhere 410.13
get off climax 75.24
use 87.22
depart 188.6
set out 188.8
get down 194.7
escape 369.7
go free 431.9
make a beginning 818.8
get off it 857.13
get on don 5.43
use 87.22
annoy 96.13
depart 188.6
mount 193.12
age 303.10
make good 409.10
manage 409.12
be in a certain state 765.5
persist 856.5
prosper 1010.7
get one's back up
anger 152.17
make angry 152.23
provoke 152.24
get one's dues 639.6
get one's feet wet 818.1
get one's goat
annoy 96.13
make angry 152.23
get one's hands on
acquire 472.9
seize 480.14
get one's way 323.3
get one down
annoy 96.13
sadden 112.18
trouble 1013.13
get on one's nerves
grate on 58.11
irritate 96.14
jangle the nerves 128.9
get on the ball 401.17
get on the bandwagon
attach oneself to 138.11
concur 332.9
follow the fashion 578.10
support 609.41
follow the rule 867.4
get out
v depart 188.7
exit 190.12
extract 192.10
be revealed 351.8
issue 352.14
escape 369.6
extricate 431.7
print 548.14
interj go away! 909.31
get out from under
be relieved 120.8
disembarrass 1014.9
get out of
elicit 192.14
evade 368.7
shirk 368.9
escape 369.6
free oneself from 431.8
go free 431.9
get over move 172.5
communicate 343.7
rally 392.8
recover 396.20
come through 521.5
make clear 521.6
get rid of
murder 308.16
discard 390.7
put an end to 395.12
free oneself from 431.8
relinquish 475.3
eliminate 773.5
do away with 909.21
get rolling
depart 188.7
set to work 725.15
get the better of
win 411.5
defeat 412.6
outwit 415.11
get the drift 521.8
get the hang of
understand 521.7
master 570.9
get the lead out
v speed 174.9
be active 330.14
make haste 401.6
interj make haste! 401.17
get the picture
take action 328.5
read one loud and clear 521.8
get through
penetrate 189.8
carry out 328.7
bring about 407.5
complete 407.6
live on 839.7
get through to
be heard 48.12
communicate with 343.8
get to be heard 48.12
make anxious 126.5
arrive 186.6
extend to 261.6
communicate with 343.8
bribe 378.3
begin 818.7
get together
come to an agreement 332.10
cooperate 450.3
collect 472.11
assemble 770.18
get-together
social gathering 582.10
assembly 770.2
get tough
exert strength 15.12
remain firm 359.9
get under one's skin
affect 93.14
annoy 96.13
get under way
shove off 182.19
depart 188.6
undertake 404.3
make a beginning 818.8
getup wardrobe 5.2
costume 5.9
structure 266.1
enterprise 330.7
composition 796.1
get up dress up 5.42
awake 23.4
get out of bed 23.6
rise 200.8
make up 405.7
study up 570.14
produce 892.8
get-up-and-go
energy 17.3
enterprise 330.7
get up on
master 570.9
study up 570.14
refresh the memory 989.19
get wind of
hear 48.11
know 551.15
scent 941.6
get with it
v take action 328.5
set to work 725.15
interj make haste! 401.17
geyser jet 238.9
hot water 1019.10
ghastly
colorless 36.7
terrible 127.30
deathly 307.29
hideous 1015.11
ghetto
n the inner city 80.11
city district 230.6
adj urban 230.11
ghettoized
indigent 619.8
segregated 773.8
ghost
n frightener 127.9
writer 547.15
author 718.4
substitute 862.2
specter 988.1
television reception 1035.5
v float 182.54
author 547.21
write 718.6
substitute for 862.5
ghostlike
deathly 307.29
spectral 988.7
ghostly
deathly 307.29

spectral 988.7
immaterial 1053.7
ghost story 354.11
ghost town 230.1
ghostwriter
writer 547.15
author 718.4
substitute 862.2
ghoul
frightener 127.9
thief 483.1
monster 593.6
demon 680.6
ghoulish
terrible 127.30
demoniac 680.17
curious 981.5
execrable 1000.10
GI 461.7
giant
n strong man 15.6
amazon 257.13
longlegs 272.7
adj huge 257.20
gigantic 272.16
gibberish
nonsense 520.2
Greek 522.7
jargon 523.9
gibe
n indignity 156.2
witticism 489.7
scoff 508.2
v scoff 508.9
giblets viscera 2.16
food 10.20
fowl part 10.23
insides 207.4
Gibraltar 15.8
giddy intoxicated 88.31
inconstant 854.7
delirious 926.31
inattentive 984.6
dizzy 985.15
scatterbrained 985.16
gift
n talent 413.4
present 478.4
costlessness 634.1
smartness 920.2
v give 478.12
contribute 478.14
gifted
talented 413.29
studentlike 572.12
smart 920.14
gift of the gab
style 532.2
eloquence 544.1
gig
n position 724.5
v fish 382.10
gigantic
herculean 15.17
large 247.7
huge 257.20
giant 272.16
excessive 993.16
gigantism
greatness 247.1
oversize 257.5
hugeness 257.7
excess 993.1
giggle
n laughter 116.4
v laugh 116.8
gigolo beau 104.13
procurer 665.18
gild color 35.14
yellow 43.3
make pleasant 97.5
coat 295.24
falsify 354.16
ornament 545.7
Gilded Age 824.5
gild the lily
make pleasant 97.5
ornament 545.7
carry coals to Newcastle 993.12
gilt
n swine 311.9
sham 354.3
finery 498.3
money 728.2
adj yellow 43.4
brass 1058.17
gimmick trick 356.6
lure 377.3
stratagem 415.3
plot 722.4
gambling wheel 759.16
expedient 995.2
tool 1040.1
thing 1052.5
gimmickry
deception 356.1
machination 415.4
finery 498.3
showiness 501.3
gimmicky
deceitful 356.22
cunning 415.12
showy 501.19
gin
n trap 356.12
v trap 356.20
segregate 773.6
ginger energy 17.3
zest 68.2
gingerbread
n finery 498.3
superfluity 993.4
adj ornate 498.12
gingerbread man 349.6
gingerly
adj cautious 494.8
adv cautiously 494.12
giraffe 311.5
gird strengthen 15.13
encircle 209.7
bind 800.9
girdle
n corset 5.23
strip 271.4
circle 280.3
supporter 901.2
v encircle 209.7
surround 280.10
bind 800.9
circle 914.5
gird up one's loins
strengthen 15.13
prepare oneself 405.13
militarize 458.20
set to work 725.15
girl woman 77.5
cocaine 87.7
ladylove 104.15
girlie 302.6
old woman 304.3
maid 577.8
girl Friday 577.3
girlfriend
ladylove 104.15
companion 588.3
girlhood
childhood 301.2
young people 302.2
girlish feminine 77.14
thin 270.16
childish 301.11
immature 406.11
girt
n circle 280.3
saddle parts 901.18
v bind 800.9
adj encircled 209.11
girth
n size 257.1
circle 280.3
middle 819.1
saddle parts 901.18
v bind 800.9
gismo or **gizmo** 1052.5
gist
essential content 196.5
meaning 518.1
summary 557.2
essence 767.2
major part 792.6
topic 937.1
salient point 997.6
give
n softness 1047.1
pliancy 1047.2
elasticity 1048.1
v communicate 343.7
provide 385.7
donate 478.12
say 524.22
present 634.4
administer 643.6
attribute 888.3
soften 1047.7
yield 1048.5
transfer 629.3
give and take
compensate 338.4
contend 457.13
compromise 468.2
retaliate 506.4
be just 649.6
interchange 863.4
argue 935.16
give-and-take
n offset 338.2
compromise 468.1
banter 490.1
retaliation 506.1
conversation 541.1
justice 649.1
trade 731.2
interchange 863.1
adj interchangeable 863.5
giveaway
n divulgence 351.2
adj reduced 633.9
give away betray 351.6
discard 390.7
break 393.23
relinquish 475.3
dispose of 478.21
join in marriage 563.14
give back
restore 396.11
restitute 481.4
give birth bear 1.3
reproductive 78.13
vivify 306.11
give in bow to 250.5
yield 433.7
deliver 478.13
given
n fact 761.3
condition 959.2
a truth 973.2
adj allowed 478.24
gratuitous 634.5
real 761.15
supposed 951.14
conditional 959.8
disposed 978.8
give notice
herald 133.14
announce 352.12
warn 399.5
inform 551.8
given that 951.19
given to 896.6
give off excrete 12.12
exude 190.15
let out 909.24
vaporize 1067.8
give oneself airs
be stuck on oneself 140.6
hold one's nose in the air 141.8
avoid 157.7
put on airs 501.14
give oneself up to
lose heart 112.16
be determined 359.8
undertake 404.3
indulge 669.4
attend to 983.5
give or take 223.26
give out secrete 13.5
weaken 16.9
burn out 21.5
divulge 351.5
make public 352.11
be consumed 388.4
be impaired 393.26
parcel out 477.8
give 478.12
deliver 478.13
let out 909.24
give over despair 125.10
give up 370.7
pass 387.13
cease to use 390.4
surrender 433.8

deliver 478.13
cease 857.6
give rise to
cause 886.10
originate 892.12
give room for 443.9
give up despair 125.10
waive 370.7
break the habit 374.3
cease to use 390.4
yield 433.7
surrender 433.8
resign 448.2
relinquish 475.3
not understand 522.11
swear off 668.8
not know 930.11
give way weaken 16.9
lose heart 112.16
despair 125.10
row 182.53
sink 194.6
break 393.23
yield 433.7
compromise 468.2
cheapen 633.6
come apart 802.9
soften 1047.7
give way to
indulge 427.6
let oneself go 430.19
submit to 433.9
glabrous hairless 6.17
smooth 287.10
glacial cold 1023.14
frozen 1024.14
glacier 1023.5
glad pleased 95.15
happy 95.16
cheerful 109.11
cheering 109.16
glade
open space 158.4
marsh 243.1
gladiator 461.1
glamorous
alluring 377.8
illustrious 662.19
bewitching 691.11
gorgeous 1016.21
glamour
n delightfulness 97.2
allurement 377.1
illustriousness 662.6
sorcery 690.1
spell 691.1
gorgeousness 1016.6
v charm 691.8
glance
n glimpse 27.4
touch 73.1
contact 223.5
signal 517.15
preliminary examination 938.5
flash 1025.6
v glimpse 27.17
touch lightly 73.7
avoid 164.6
contact 223.10
polish 287.7
signal 517.22
shine 1025.23
glancing
n touch 73.1
adj side 218.6
in contact 223.17
glandular
glandulous 13.8
emotional 93.17
glare
n gaze 27.5
offense 152.2
publicity 352.4
showiness 501.3
brightness 1025.4
v glower 27.16
blind 30.7
show 31.4
show resentment 152.14
be manifest 348.7
cut a dash 501.13
shine 1025.23
glaring distinct 31.7
garish 35.20
downright 247.12
conspicuous 348.12
gaudy 501.20
bright 1025.32
glass
n lens 29.2
telescope 29.4
mirror 29.6
container 195.1
smoothness 287.3
weather instrument 317.8
jewelry 498.5
ceramic ware 742.2
basketball 747.1
thermometer 1019.20
transparent substance 1029.2
fragility 1050.2
v face 295.23
adj glassy 1029.5
glasses tableware 8.12
spectacles 29.3
glassmaking 712.3
glassy sleek 287.11
inexpressive 522.20
shiny 1025.33
glass 1029.5
glaucoma 30.1
glaze
n sweets 10.40
polish 287.2
ceramics 742.3
ice 1023.5
v color 35.14
sweeten 66.3
polish 287.7
face 295.23
pot 742.6
hail 1023.11
glazed sleek 287.11
inexpressive 522.20
ceramic 742.7
gleam
n hint 248.4
shine 1025.2
ray 1025.5
flash 1025.6
v burst forth 33.9
be somebody 662.10
shine 1025.23
glean select 371.14
collect 472.11
conclude 946.10
harvest 1069.19
glebe land 234.1
benefice 698.9
parsonage 703.7
glee happiness 95.2
merriment 109.5
glee club
part music 708.18
chorus 710.16
glen highland 237.7
valley 284.9
glib
v talkative 540.9
adj suave 504.18
eloquent 544.8
easy 1014.13
glide
n coasting 177.16
maneuvers 184.13
slide 194.4
speech sound 524.12
v coast 177.35
float 182.54
fly 184.36
slide 194.9
elapse 821.5
go easily 1014.10
adj phonetic 524.30
glider 181.12
glimmer
n hint 551.4
glitter 1025.7
v glitter 1025.24
glimmering
n hint 551.4
slight knowledge 930.6
glitter 1025.7
adj glittering 1025.35
glimpse
n glance 27.4
slight knowledge 930.6
v see 27.12
glance 27.17
glint
n shine 1025.2
flash 1025.6
v glance 27.17
shine 1025.23
glissade
n slide 194.4
v glide 177.35
slide 194.9
glisten
n glitter 1025.7
v glitter 1025.24
glitch
impairment 393.1
abortion 410.5
fault 1003.2
glitter
n showiness 501.3
glimmer 1025.7
v cut a dash 501.13
be somebody 662.10
glimmer 1025.24
glitz
appearance 33.2
garishness 35.5
finery 498.3
showiness 501.3
grandiloquence 545.1
gloat gaze 27.15
exult 502.9
glob lump 257.10
sphere 282.2
global
spherical 282.9
comprehensive 772.7
complete 794.9
universal 864.14
unqualified 960.2
global ecosystem 1073.1
globe
n sphere 282.2
lamp shade 1028.3
Earth 1072.10
v ball 282.7
globe-trotter 178.1
globule sphere 282.2
bubble 320.1
gloom
n gloominess 112.7
shadow 1027.3
somberness 1027.4
v look sullen 110.15
eclipse 1027.9
grow dark 1027.12
gloom and doom dejection 112.3
despair 125.2
gloomy dismal 112.24
pessimistic 125.16
ominous 133.17
cloudy 319.8
gloomful 1027.14
gloppy filthy 80.23
viscous 1062.12
glorified
eminent 662.18
angelic 679.6
heavenly 681.12
sanctified 685.8
glorify approve 509.12
glamorize 662.13
sanctify 685.5
praise 696.12
glorious
intoxicated 88.31
eminent 247.9
grandiose 501.21
illustrious 662.19
almighty 677.17
superb 999.15
gorgeous 1016.21
glory
n radiation 171.2
eminence 247.2
circle 280.2
grandeur 501.5
praise 509.5
honor 646.1
repute 662.1
illustriousness 662.6
glorification 696.2
notability 997.2
brightness 1025.4

halo 1025.14
v rejoice 116.5
exult 502.9
gloss
n shallowness 276.1
polish 287.2
translation 341.3
comment 341.5
misinterpretation 342.1
sham 354.3
pretext 376.1
reference book 554.9
commentary 556.2
extenuation 600.5
shine 1025.2
v color 35.14
polish 287.7
coat 295.24
comment upon 341.11
misinterpret 342.2
falsify 354.16
adj soft-colored 35.22
glossal 62.10
glossary
translation 341.3
reference book 554.9
dictionary 871.4
gloss over
neglect 340.6
conceal 346.6
falsify 354.16
hide under 376.4
extenuate 600.12
glossy
n print 714.5
adj sleek 287.11
shiny 1025.33
glove
n challenge 454.2
v play 745.5
glow
n animation 17.4
warmth 35.2
reddening 41.3
health 83.1
foredawn 314.4
vehemence 544.5
beauty 1016.1
incandescence 1019.12
shine 1025.2
v redden 41.5
enjoy good health 83.6
be excited 105.18
change color 105.19
exude cheerfulness 109.6
be somebody 662.10
look good 1016.17
be hot 1019.22
shine 1025.23
glower
n offense 152.2
v glare 27.16
look sullen 110.15
show resentment 152.14
glowing
chromatic 35.16
red 41.6
red-complexioned 41.9
fervent 93.18
happy 95.16
enthusiastic 101.10
heated 105.22
cheerful 109.11
vehement 544.13
gorgeous 1016.21
burning 1019.27
luminous 1025.30
illuminated 1025.39
glue
n adhesive 803.4
semiliquid 1062.5
v put together 800.5
stick together 803.9
glum sullen 110.24
grum 112.25
glut
n performance 892.5
overfullness 993.3
satiety 994.1
v stuff 8.25
be tedious 118.6
gluttonize 672.4
overload 993.15
satiate 994.4
glutinous
adhesive 803.12
viscous 1062.12
glutton eater 8.16
wild animal 311.23
greedy eater 672.3
gluttonous eating 8.31
piggish 100.27
intemperate 669.7
greedy 672.6
excessive 993.16
G-man detective 576.10
policeman 1008.15
gnarl
n distortion 265.1
bulge 283.3
v growl 60.4
show resentment 152.14
distort 265.5
roughen 288.4
gnarled studded 283.17
gnarly 288.8
gnarly studded 283.17
gnarled 288.8
excellent 999.13
bad 1000.8
gnash
n bite 8.2
v chew 8.27
gnash one's teeth
wring one's hands 115.11
show resentment 152.14
gnat 258.7
gnaw chew 8.27
pain 26.7
corrode 393.21
abrade 1044.7
gneiss 1059.1
gnocchi 10.33
gnome dwarf 258.5
elemental 678.6
fairy 678.8
maxim 974.1
gnu 311.5
go
n act 328.3
enterprise 330.7
attempt 403.3
contest 457.3
game 743.9
spell 825.1
turn 825.2
v disappear 34.2
extend 158.9
have place 159.9
take direction 161.7
progress 162.2
recede 168.2
move 172.5
travel 177.18
venture 177.19
depart 188.6
reach out 261.5
die 307.19
take action 328.5
perish 395.23
succeed 409.7
become 761.12
cease to exist 762.6
be operative 889.7
tend 896.3
adj operative 889.9
goad
n spur 375.8
v prod 375.15
impel 902.11
thrust 902.12
drive 1070.8
go after follow 166.3
fetch 176.16
pursue 382.8
succeed 815.2
come after 835.3
go aground 182.42
go ahead
progress 162.2
hustle 330.13
improve 392.7
begin 818.7
go-ahead
n progression 162.1
enterprise 330.7
endorsement 332.4
permission 443.1
adj progressive 162.6
enterprising 330.23
goal destination 186.5
motive 375.1
objective 380.2
score 409.5
hockey 749.1
field hockey 749.4
game 749.6
soccer 752.1
point 752.3
end 820.1
goalie
hockey team 749.2
team 752.2
guard 1008.9
goalkeeper 749.2
goal line
football 746.1
hockey 749.1
field hockey 749.4
soccer 752.1
go all out speed 174.9
hustle 330.13
persevere 360.7
do one's best 403.14
do to perfection 407.7
let oneself go 430.19
exert oneself 725.9
be thorough 794.8
go all the way
copulate 75.21
prosecute to a conclusion 360.5
go along
v progress 162.2
travel 177.18
depart 188.6
be willing 324.3
concur 332.9
consent 441.2
be in a certain state 765.5
continue 856.3
interj go away! 909.31
go along with
concur 332.9
acknowledge 332.11
take advice 422.7
submit 433.6
consent 441.2
suffer 443.10
side with 450.4
accompany 769.7
agree 788.6
coincide 836.4
go with 899.3
go around
move 172.5
surround 209.6
recur 850.5
go roundabout 914.4
circle 914.5
turn 914.6
rotate 915.9
suffice 991.4
go astray
stray 164.4
miscarry 410.15
digress 538.9
go wrong 654.9
misbelieve 688.8
miss 911.4
err 975.9
goat
he-goat 311.8
jumper 366.4
laughingstock 508.7
lecher 665.11
scapegoat 862.3
go at travel 177.19
undertake 404.3
attack 459.14
challenge 459.15
goatee 3.8
go away
v disappear 34.2
recede 168.2
diverge 171.5
depart 188.6
interj begone! 909.31
gob bite 8.2
navy man 183.4
amount 244.2
lump 257.10
sphere 282.2
mouth 292.4

accumulation 770.9
piece 793.3
go back on
abandon 370.5
repeal 445.2
be unfaithful 645.12
gobble gulp 8.23
bird sound 60.5
ingest 187.11
consume 388.3
destroy 395.10
gluttonize 672.4
gobbledygook
nonsense 520.2
Greek 522.7
jargon 523.9
bombast 545.2
political jargon 609.37
gobbler
male animal 76.8
poultry 311.29
glutton 672.3
gobble up
consume 388.3
destroy 395.10
monopolize 469.6
kid oneself 954.6
go between
interpose 213.6
be instrumental 384.7
mediate 466.6
go-between
intermediary 213.4
interpreter 341.7
messenger 353.1
instrument 384.4
mediator 466.3
middleman 576.4
goblin fairy 678.8
hobgoblin 680.8
gobs lot 247.4
wealth 618.3
go by be called 527.13
elapse 821.5
conform 867.3
pass 910.8
god hero 659.5
deus 678.2
goddesses 678.4
God 677.2
god-awful 1000.8
God bless! 696.18
God bless me! 122.21
God bless you! 188.22
goddam it! 513.11
goddess hero 659.5
deity 678.2
god 678.4
God-fearing
godly 692.9
belief 953.21
God forbid
by no means 335.9
Heaven forbid! 510.27
O Lord! 696.18
godforsaken
available 222.15
out-of-the-way 261.9
forlorn 584.12
God knows! 930.19
godless ungodly 695.17
unregenerate 695.18
godlike great 247.9
eminent 662.18
superhuman 677.16
divine 678.16
godly 692.9
godliness
virtue 653.1
deity 677.1
sanctity 685.1
godlikeness 692.2
godly virtuous 653.6
divine 677.16
godlike 692.9
godown 386.6
go down
capsize 182.44
descend 194.5
sink 194.6
plunge 367.8
decline 393.17
fail 410.11
lose 412.12
play 745.5
fight 754.4
occur 831.5
find credence 953.20
go downhill
weaken 16.9
descend 194.5
incline 204.10
decline 393.17
sink 410.11
fall on evil days 1011.11
go down the tubes regress 163.5
go to waste 473.6
godparent 438.6
godsend boon 472.7
good thing 999.5
Godspeed
n leave-taking 188.4
interj farewell! 188.22
go Dutch
pay for 624.18
bisect 875.4
God willing 966.11
go easy
v swim with the stream 1014.12
interj careful! 494.14
phrs easy does it 175.15
go easy on take pity on 145.4
indulge 427.5
gofer
subordinate 432.5
attendant 577.5
go for love 104.20
head for 161.9
fetch 176.16
pass for 349.10
intend 380.4
abet 449.14
attack 459.15
kid oneself 954.6
go for broke
n call to arms 458.8
v be determined 359.8
persevere 360.7
do one's best 403.14
do to perfection 407.7
court danger 493.6
risk 972.12
go for it
attempt 403.7
do one's best 403.14
go-getter 330.8
go-getting 330.7
goggle
n gaze 27.5
v gaze 27.15
squint 28.9
bulge 283.11
adj bulged 283.16
goggles spectacles 29.3
safeguard 1008.3
eyeshade 1028.2
go in for practice 328.8
adopt 371.15
undertake 404.3
study to be 570.15
specialize 866.4
going-over
apostasy 363.2
iteration 849.2
disapproval 510.6
going rate 630.2
goings-on
behavior 321.1
activity 330.1
affairs 831.4
going steady 104.6
go into enter 189.7
undertake 404.3
participate 476.5
discuss 541.12
write upon 556.5
join 617.14
compose 796.3
embark on 818.9
elaborate 861.6
investigate 938.23
gold
n yellowness 43.1
wealth 618.1
money 728.1
precious metals 728.20
adj yellow 43.4
brass 1058.17
goldbrick
n slowpoke 175.5
idler 331.8
neglecter 340.5
confidence game 356.10
shirker 368.3
v leave undone 340.7
shirk 368.9
golden yellow 43.4
auspicious 133.18
precious 632.10
melodious 708.48
superb 999.15
brass 1058.17
Golden Age 824.5
golden days 1010.4
golden mean
mean 246.1
middle course 467.3
temperance 668.1
moderation 670.1
golden parachute 624.4
golden rule
rule 419.2
ethical philosophy 636.2
axiom 974.2
gold mine
source of supply 386.4
rich source 618.4
mine 1058.6
gold-plated
plated 295.33
expensive 632.11
brass 1058.17
gold rush 1058.8
golf
n sports 751
the royal and ancient 751.1
v play 745.5
golf course
green 310.7
playground 743.11
golf 751.1
golly! 513.12
Gomorrah 654.7
gonads 2.13
gondolier 183.5
gone weak 16.12
tired 21.8
burnt-out 21.10
away 34.4
past hope 125.15
departed 188.19
absent 222.11
dead 307.30
used up 388.5
lost 473.7
no more 762.11
past 837.7
goner 125.8
gong
n bell 54.4
marker 517.10
v ring 54.8
goo sentimentality 93.8
semiliquid 1062.5
good
n utility 387.3
welfare 999.4
adj tasty 63.8
healthful 81.5
pleasant 97.6
auspicious 133.18
kind 143.13
skillful 413.22
praiseworthy 509.20
right 637.3
honest 644.13
just 649.8
virtuous 653.6
almighty 677.17
godly 692.9
solvent 729.18
valid 973.14
genuine 973.15
sufficient 991.6
expedient 995.5
excellent 999.12
adv kindly 143.18
interj yes! 332.18
bravo! 509.22
the good 692.5
good at 413.27
good-bye
n leave-taking 188.4

interj farewell! 188.22
good day 585.15
good enough
adj acceptable 107.12
sufficient 991.6
tolerable 999.20
interj yes! 332.18
bravo! 509.22
good faith 644.7
good for
healthful 81.5
useful 387.18
helpful 449.21
priced 630.14
solvent 729.18
good-for-nothing
n bum 331.9
wretch 660.2
adj indolent 331.19
worthless 391.11
good-looking 1016.19
good luck chance 972.1
happy fortune 1010.2
good-luck charm 691.5
goodly pleasant 97.6
large 257.16
good 999.12
comely 1016.19
good-natured 143.14
goodness
n savoriness 63.1
healthfulness 81.1
pleasantness 97.1
kindness 143.1
propriety 637.2
probity 644.1
virtue 653.1
godliness 692.2
good quality 999
excellence 999.1
interj my! 122.21
goods material 4.1
freight 176.6
property 471.1
merchandise 735.1
the goods ability 18.2
talent 413.4
information 551.1
what's what 973.4
good Samaritan 592.1
good shape
healthiness 83.2
orderliness 807.3
good looks 1016.4
good time merriment 109.5
period of pleasure 95.5
goodwill
benevolence 143.4
willingness 324.1
patronage 449.4
good terms 587.3
custom 731.6
goody-goody
n effeminate male 77.11
prude 500.11
adj hypocritical 354.33
overnice 500.18
sanctimonious 693.5
gooey
sentimental 93.21
viscous 1062.12
goof
n bungler 414.9
fool 924.3
boo-boo 975.6
v miss 410.14
bungle 414.12
make a boner 975.15
go off blast 56.8
avoid 164.6
diverge 171.5
depart 188.6
decline 393.17
succeed 409.7
explode 671.14
occur 831.5
goof off
dawdle 175.8
idle 331.12
leave undone 340.7
shirk 368.9
goof-off
slowpoke 175.5
idler 331.8
neglecter 340.5
goofy
foolish 923.9
crazy 926.27
eccentric 927.6
gook
Caucasian 312.3
semiliquid 1062.5
goon
strong man 15.7
combatant 461.1
ruffian 593.4
follower 616.8
violent person 671.10
striker 727.7
go on
be angry 152.15
progress 162.2
depart 188.6
behave 321.4
persevere 360.2
manage 409.12
chatter 540.5
rage 671.11
be in a certain state 765.5
create disorder 810.11
elapse 821.5
endure 827.6
linger on 827.7
occur 831.5
continue 856.3
persist 856.5
go on about
be enthusiastic 101.7
protract 538.8
persist 856.5
go on and on
have no limit 823.2
linger on 827.7
last forever 829.6
go one better
excel 249.6
outwit 415.11
surpass 999.11
go one-on-one with
confront 451.5
defy 454.3
brave 492.11
surpass 999.11
go on with 856.5
goose
n poultry 311.29
gambling wheel 759.16
silly 924.6
v goad 375.15
goose bumps
creeps 74.4
trepidation 127.5
roughness 288.2
cold 1023.2
goose egg 762.3
goose step
march 177.13
conformity 867.1
goose-step
v march 177.30
follow the rule 867.4
adj unpremeditated 365.11
habitual 373.14
go out extend 158.9
exit 190.12
reach out 261.5
die 307.19
obsolesce 390.9
strike 727.10
come to an end 820.6
burn out 1022.8
go out for
practice 328.8
undertake 404.3
play 744.2
go over
traverse 177.20
apostatize 363.7
succeed 409.7
study 570.12
rehearse 704.32
iterate 849.8
grill 938.22
examine 938.23
go overboard
go by the board 182.45
overdo 993.10
go over one's head
be incomprehensible 522.10
not understand 522.11
escape notice 984.5
go over the top 193.11
gore
n blood 2.25
insert 191.2
killing 308.1
v perforate 292.15
horn 459.26
gorge
n digestive system 2.18
valley 237.7
obstruction 293.3
v stuff 8.25
gluttonize 672.4
overload 993.15
satiate 994.4
gorgeous
colorful 35.19
gaudy 501.20
ravishing 1016.21
Gorgon 690.9
gorilla strong man 15.7
killer 308.11
combatant 461.1
ruffian 593.4
violent person 671.10
gormandize 672.4
gormandizer 672.3
go round move 172.5
surround 209.6
recur 850.5
circle 914.5
rotate 915.9
go-round
periodicity 850.2
circuit 914.2
gory
circulatory 2.33
sanguine 41.7
murderous 308.24
bloodstained 1004.11
gosh! 513.12
gosling
fledgling 302.10
poultry 311.29
gospel
n good news 552.2
system of belief 953.3
the truth 973.3
the real thing 973.4
adj scriptural 683.11
true 973.13
the Gospel 683.4
gossamer
n filament 271.1
lightness 298.2
adj dainty 248.7
thin 270.16
threadlike 271.7
smooth 294.8
unsubstantial 764.6
chimeric 986.22
transparent 1029.4
gossip
n chatter 540.3
talk 552.7
newsmonger 552.9
companion 588.3
inquisitive person 981.2
v chatter 540.5
chat 541.10
talk over the back fence 552.12
Gothic
unrefined 497.12
antiquated 842.13
unlearned 930.14
fanciful 986.20
go through
penetrate 189.8
carry out 328.7
squander 486.3
spend 626.5
rehearse 704.32
experience 831.8
iterate 849.8
search 938.31
freeze 1023.10
go through with
take action 328.5
carry through 360.5
endure 827.6
go together 788.6

go to hell
go to ruin 395.24
be damned 682.7
go to it 725.15
go to one's head
intoxicate 88.22
puff up 140.7
addle the wits 926.23
dizzy 985.8
go to pieces
weaken 16.9
lose self-control 128.7
decay 393.22
be destroyed 395.22
come apart 802.9
go to pot
go to ruin 395.24
go to waste 473.6
go bankrupt 625.7
fall on evil days 1011.11
go to press 548.18
go to the dogs
go to ruin 395.24
go bankrupt 625.7
fall on evil days 1011.11
go to the wall
die 307.20
go to ruin 395.24
fail 410.9
go bankrupt 625.7
gouge
n indentation 284.6
furrow 290.1
v blind 30.7
excavate 284.15
furrow 290.3
deceive 356.19
overprice 632.7
gouge out
extract 192.10
excavate 284.15
perforate 292.15
goulash 10.11
go under
go to ruin 395.24
sink 410.11
lose 412.12
go bankrupt 625.7
go up against
encounter 457.15
engage 457.16
go up in smoke
disappear 34.2
come to nothing 410.13
go to waste 473.6
flit 828.6
fall through 911.3
burn up 1020.25
gourmand eater 8.16
connoisseur 496.7
sensualist 663.3
glutton 672.3
gourmet
n eater 8.16
connoisseur 496.7
sensualist 663.3
adj edible 8.33
tasty 63.8
gout 85.22
goût taste 62.1
savor 63.2
govern
restrain 428.7
direct 573.8
regulate 612.12
exercise influence 894.8
governance
authority 417.5
direction 573.1
government 612.1
protectorship 1008.2
governess
teacher 571.2
mistress 575.2
chaperon 1008.7
government
region 231.5
authority 417.5
direction 573.1
political science 609.2
administration 612.1
governance 612.1
protectorship 1008.2
governor
jailer 429.10
father 560.9
director 574.1
ruler 575.6
administrator 575.13
safeguard 1008.3
guardian 1008.6
system component 1041.14
governor-general 575.13
governorship
mastership 417.7
directorship 573.4
go with
stay near 223.12
take action 328.5
concur 332.9
choose 371.13
undertake 404.3
accompany 769.7
agree 788.6
go along with 899.3
go without 668.7
go with the flow
be content 107.5
take it easy 331.15
follow the fashion 578.10
gown
n garment 5.3
dress 5.16
robe 702.2
v cloak 5.40
go wrong
be disappointing 132.3
get out of order 393.25
go to ruin 395.24
miscarry 410.15
stray 654.9
misbelieve 688.8
err 975.9
goy 688.6
grab
n seizure 480.2
v jump at 101.6
acquire 472.9
seize 480.14
capture 480.18
usurp 640.8
play 745.5
impress 931.19
engross 983.13
grab bag lottery 759.14
hodgepodge 797.6
grace
n delightfulness 97.2
benevolence 143.4
act of kindness 143.7
pity 145.1
pardon 148.2
thanks 150.2
skill 413.1
benefit 478.7
taste 496.1
elegance 533.1
fluency 544.2
reprieve 601.3
conscience 636.5
function of Holy Ghost 677.15
sanctification 685.3
prayer 696.4
ornament 709.18
goodness 999.1
beauty 1016.1
v ornament 498.8
honor 662.12
beautify 1016.16
graceful skillful 413.22
agile 413.23
tasteful 496.9
courteous 504.14
elegant 533.6
fluent 544.9
beautiful 1016.18
graceless
bungling 414.20
inelegant 534.2
irreclaimable 654.18
unregenerate 695.18
ungraceful 1015.9
the Graces 1016.10
grace with 478.17
gracile thin 270.16
tasteful 496.9
elegant 533.6
beautiful 1016.18
gracious
adj pleasant 97.6
kind 143.13
indulgent 427.8
liberal 485.4
elegant 496.9
courteous 504.14
informal 581.3
hospitable 585.11
interj my! 122.21
gradation
graduation 245.3
phonetics 524.13
class 607.1
continuity 807.2
grouping 808.3
series 812.2
grade
n incline 204.4
degree 245.1
student 572.11
class 607.1
category 809.2
v level 201.6
incline 204.10
graduate 245.4
size 257.15
smooth 287.5
order 807.4
group 808.11
classify 809.6
grade school 567.3
gradient rising 200.5
incline 204.4
gradual slow 175.10
gradational 245.5
graduate
n expert 413.11
alumnus 572.8
v grade 245.4
size 257.15
measure 300.10
improve 392.7
succeed 409.7
promote 446.2
adj scholastic 568.19
studentlike 572.12
graduation
gradation 245.3
promotion 446.1
ceremony 580.4
graffito inscription 546.5
drawing 712.13
graft
n insertion 191.1
inlay 191.2
fraud 356.8
bribery 378.1
theft 482.1
booty 482.11
politics 609.34
spoils of office 609.35
v engraft 191.6
fasten 800.7
grain
n feed 10.4
modicum 248.2
minute 258.7
texture 294.1
grass 310.5
seed 310.31
nature 767.4
kind 809.3
disposition 978.3
granule 1051.6
v color 35.14
coarsen 294.4
pulverize 1051.9
powder 1051.10
grain of salt 959.1
grammar
rules of language 530.1
diction 532.1
textbook 554.10
basics 818.6
grammarian 523.15
grammar school
elementary school 567.3
secondary school 567.4
grammatical
linguistic 523.19
syntactical 530.17
gramps old man 304.2
grandfather 560.14
granary 386.7

grand
n money 728.7
thousand 882.10
adj dignified 136.12
great 247.6
large 257.16
grandiose 501.21
lofty 544.14
eminent 662.18
important 997.17
good 999.12
grandeur
proud bearing 136.2
greatness 247.1
sizableness 257.6
grandness 501.5
loftiness 544.6
distinction 662.5
grandfather
n old man 304.2
grandsire 560.13
v exempt 430.14
grandfather clause 430.8
grandiloquence
exaggeration 355.1
pompousness 501.7
long word 526.10
style 532.2
grandiosity 545
magniloquence 545.1
grandiose grand 501.21
grandiloquent 545.8
grandiosity
sizableness 257.6
grandeur 501.5
grandiloquence 545.1
grand-juror 596.7
grandmother
old woman 304.3
grandam 560.15
grand slam score 409.5
victory 411.1
bridge 758.3
grandstand
n observation post 27.8
baseball 745.1
v exercise skill 413.20
show off 501.16
grange farmstead 228.6
farm 1069.8
granite
hardness 1046.6
rock 1059.1
granny
old woman 304.3
fussbudget 495.7
grandmother 560.16
back number 842.8
grant
n concession 443.5
giving 478.1
subsidy 478.8
privilege 642.2
qualification 959.1
v acknowledge 332.11
confess 351.7
consent 441.2
permit 443.9
give 478.12
suppose 951.10
allow for 959.5
granular
infinitesimal 258.14
rough 294.6
grainy 1051.12
granulated
unsmooth 288.6
rough 294.6
hardened 1046.13
granular 1051.12
granulation
unsmoothness 288.1
roughness 294.2
television reception 1035.5
hardening 1046.5
granularity 1051.2
pulverization 1051.4
granule
modicum 248.2
grain 1051.6
grapevine plant 310.4
gossip 551.5
report 552.6
news channel 552.10
graph
n diagram 381.3
letter 546.1
drawing 712.13
outline 801.4
v plot 381.10
itemize 801.7
graphic
representational 349.13
descriptive 349.14
expressive 544.10
written 547.22
pictorial 712.21
graphic arts
printing 548.1
visual arts 712.1
graphics 713.1
graphite 1056.2
grapple
n hold 474.2
v contend 457.13
hold 474.6
seize 480.14
fasten 800.7
grapple with
contest 451.4
contend 457.13
engage with 457.17
brave 492.11
grasp
n hold 474.2
control 612.2
handle 901.11
understanding 928.3
v hold 474.6
seize 480.14
understand 521.7
cohere 803.6
know 928.12
grasping
n greed 100.8
adj greedy 100.27
demanding 421.9
acquisitive 472.15
retentive 474.8
rapacious 480.26
selfish 651.5
graspy greedy 100.27
acquisitive 472.15
rapacious 480.26
selfish 651.5
grass
n marijuana 87.11
gramineous plant 310.5
grassland 310.8
tennis 748.1
v feed 8.18
grasshopper
n locust 311.36
jumper 366.4
adj improvident 406.15
grassland
the country 233.1
land 234.1
plain 236.1
grass 310.8
farm 1069.8
grass roots
bottom 199.1
the country 233.1
source 886.5
grass-roots basic 199.8
populational 606.8
simple 798.6
grassy green 44.4
verdant 310.42
grate
n network 170.3
arranger 808.5
fire iron 1020.12
v pain 26.7
rasp 58.10
sound a sour note 61.3
irritate 96.14
net 170.7
abrade 1044.7
pulverize 1051.9
grateful pleasant 97.6
thankful 150.5
welcome 585.12
grate on jar on 58.11
irritate 96.14
get on one's nerves 128.9
gratify feed 8.18
satisfy 95.8
content 107.4
make proud 136.6
indulge 427.6
gratifying
pleasant 97.6
welcome 585.12
grating
n network 170.3
arranger 808.5
fire iron 1020.12
pulverization 1051.4
adj irritating 26.13
jarring 58.16
dissonant 61.4
unnerving 128.15
disagreeing 789.6
gratis
adj gratuitous 634.5
adv as a gift 478.27
gratuitously 634.6
gratitude
thankfulness 150
gratefulness 150.1
gratuitous
impudent 142.10
voluntary 324.7
given 478.24
gratis 634.5
unordered 810.12
superfluous 993.17
gratuity bribe 378.2
largess 478.5
costlessness 634.1
surplus 993.5
grave
n death 307.1
tomb 309.16
monument 549.12
v record 549.15
engrave 713.9
sculpture 715.5
fix in the mind 989.18
adj painful 26.10
dark 38.9
deep 54.11
sedate 106.14
solemn 111.3
gloomy 112.24
dignified 136.12
great 247.6
heavy 297.16
lofty 544.14
ceremonious 580.8
base 661.12
weighty 997.20
the grave
hell 682.1
destiny 839.2
gravedigger 309.8
gravel
n pavement 383.6
grain 1051.6
shingle 1059.3
v irritate 96.14
graven
engraved 713.11
sculptured 715.7
established 855.13
graveness
darkness 38.2
gravity 997.3
graveyard 309.15
gravidity 78.5
gravitate
descend 194.5
drop 297.15
lean 896.3
gravitation
descent 194.1
weight 297.5
attraction 907.1
gravity
sedateness 106.4
solemnity 111.1
gloom 112.7
proud bearing 136.2
weight 297.5
loftiness 544.6
formality 580.1
attraction 907.1
importance 997.1
graveness 997.3
weight 297.1
gravy find 472.6

gratuity 478.5
bonus 624.6
gray
n grayness 39.1
horse 311.11
v grizzle 39.3
adj colorless 36.7
ashen 39.4
gloomy 112.24
aged 303.16
same 781.6
gray area
middle course 467.3
ambiguity 539.1
gamble 971.8
graybeard
silver-haired person 39.2
old man 304.2
gray-haired
gray-headed 39.5
aged 303.16
gray matter
intellect 919.1
brain 919.6
graze
n touch 73.1
contact 223.5
v feed 8.18
feed on 8.28
touch lightly 73.7
contact 223.10
tap 902.18
abrade 1044.7
grazing
n eating 8.1
touch 73.1
grassland 310.8
abrasion 1044.2
animal husbandry 1070.1
adj in contact 223.17
grease
n gratuity 478.5
flattery 511.1
money 728.2
oil 1056.1
v smooth 287.5
bribe 378.3
facilitate 1014.7
oil 1056.8
grease monkey
aircraftsman 185.6
mechanic 1040.12
greasepaint
theater 704.17
makeup 1016.12
greaser 232.7
grease the palm
bribe 375.23
pay off 378.3
pay 624.16
grease the wheels
facilitate 1014.7
oil 1056.8
greasy
slippery 287.12
oily 1056.9
greasy spoon 8.17
great
n skillful person 413.14
keyboard 711.17
adj pregnant 78.18
grand 247.6
chief 249.14
large 257.16
authoritative 417.15
magnanimous 652.6
eminent 662.18
important 997.17
excellent 999.13
interj bravo! 509.22
the great 997.8
great-coat 5.13
Great Divide
middle of nowhere 261.4
watershed 272.5
greathearted
benevolent 143.15
liberal 485.4
courageous 492.17
magnanimous 652.6
greed
greediness 100.8
selfishness 651.1
gluttony 672.1
greedy
avaricious 100.27
acquisitive 472.15
selfish 651.5
gluttonous 672.6
Greek gibberish 522.7
member 617.11
green
n greenness 44.1
verdigris 44.3
lawn 310.7
money 728.2
lawn bowling 750.3
golf 751.1
adj virid 44.4
sour 67.5
fresh 83.13
jealous 153.5
young 301.10
immature 406.11
inexperienced 414.17
new 841.7
ignorant 930.12
gullible 954.9
remembered 989.23
greenbacks 728.6
Green Berets 461.15
greenery 310.1
greenhorn
n dupe 358.1
incompetent 414.7
novice 572.9
newcomer 774.4
beginner 818.2
ignoramus 930.8
adj unaccustomed 374.4
greenhouse
summerhouse 228.12
nursery 1069.11
Greenland
continent 235.1
remote region 261.4
cold place 1023.4
green light
permission 443.1
signal 517.15
traffic light 1026.4
the green light
start 188.2
ratification 332.4
green plant 310.3
greenroom
anteroom 197.20
stage 704.16
greens
vegetables 10.35
salad 10.37
plants 310.1
green thumb 1069.12
green with jealousy 153.5
greet
n weeping 115.2
v weep 115.12
address 524.26
hail 585.10
greeter 585.5
greeting remark 524.3
salutation 585.4
greetings
n welcome 186.4
regards 504.8
salutations 585.3
interj salutations! 585.15
gregarious
talkative 540.9
sociable 582.22
Gregorian chant 708.20
gremlin
fairy 678.8
imp 680.7
grenadier
longlegs 272.7
infantryman 461.9
greyhound 174.6
grid
n network 170.3
stage 704.16
fire iron 1020.12
television reception 1035.5
v net 170.7
griddle
n fire iron 1020.12
v cook 11.5
griddlecake 10.45
gridiron
network 170.3
stage 704.16
playground 743.11
football 746.1
fire iron 1020.12
gridlock
obstruction 293.3
hindrance 1012.1
grief pain 96.5
wretchedness 96.6
distressfulness 98.5
sorrow 112.10
regret 113.1
misfortune 1011.2
grievance
affliction 96.8
complaint 115.4
objection 333.2
injustice 650.4
evil 1000.3
bane 1001.1
grieve
pain 96.17
distress 98.14
sorrow 112.17
aggrieve 112.19
lament 115.10
move 145.5
offend 152.21
grieving
n lamentation 115.1
adj lamenting 115.18
grievous
distressing 98.20
sorrowful 112.26
pitiful 145.8
terrible 1000.9
disastrous 1011.15
griffin 647.2
grift fraud 356.8
stratagem 415.3
cheating 759.13
grill
n restaurant 8.17
dish 10.7
inquisition 938.13
fire iron 1020.12
v cook 11.5
torture 604.16
put on the grill 938.22
grille 170.3
grilling
n cooking 11.2
the grill 938.13
adj hot 1019.25
grim
pleasureless 96.20
horrid 98.19
sullen 110.24
solemn 111.3
unhappy 112.21
gloomy 112.24
hopeless 125.12
terrible 127.30
harsh 144.24
unyielding 361.9
strict 425.6
bad 1000.8
unprepossessing 1015.7
grimace
n scowl 110.9
wry face 265.4
shake 917.3
v suffer 26.8
shudder at 99.5
look sullen 110.15
make a face 265.8
overact 704.31
grime
n dirt 80.6
v dirty 80.15
Grim Reaper 307.3
grimy dingy 38.11
dirty 80.22
grin
n smile 116.3
v smile 116.7
grin and bear it
be of good cheer 109.10
accept 134.7
submit 433.6
grinch
killjoy 112.14
spoilsport 1012.9

grind
n rasp 58.3
routine 373.5
study 570.3
swotter 572.10
work 725.4
drudge 726.3
bookworm 929.4
v chew 8.27
pain 26.7
grate 58.10
sharpen 285.7
file 287.8
study 570.12
domineer 612.16
drudge 725.14
shatter 802.13
abrade 1044.7
pulverize 1051.9
grind in
urge 375.14
inculcate 568.12
grinding
n study 570.3
abrasion 1044.2
pulverization 1051.4
adj irritating 26.13
grating 58.16
oppressive 98.24
imperious 417.16
laboring 725.17
abrasive 1044.10
grind one's teeth 152.14
gringo 774.3
grip
n acrimony 17.5
skill 413.1
governance 417.5
hold 474.2
control 612.2
game 748.2
game or string 750.2
handle 901.11
spasm 917.6
understanding 928.3
v hold 474.6
seize 480.14
obsess 926.25
engross 983.13
gripe
n ache 26.5
complaint 115.5
control 612.2
indigence 619.2
v pain 26.7
annoy 96.13
be discontented 108.6
complain 115.16
seize 480.14
gripped
obsessed 926.33
held 983.18
gripping
retentive 474.8
obsessive 926.34
engrossing 983.20
grisly
terrible 127.30
deathly 307.29
hideous 1015.11
grist 386.2
gristle 1049.2
grit
n pluck 359.3
fortitude 492.6
grain 1051.6
v irritate 96.14
grit one's teeth 359.8
grits food 10.2
powder 1051.5
gritty rough 294.6
plucky 359.14
fearless 492.19
hard 1046.10
granular 1051.12
stony 1059.12
grizzled white 37.7
gray 39.4
grizzly bear 110.11
groan
n rasp 58.3
lament 115.3
complaint 115.4
v sound harshly 58.9
wail 115.13
complain 115.15
sigh 318.21
groaning board 8.9
groceries
food 10.2
provisions 10.5
grocery 735.7
grog
n spirits 88.13
v tipple 88.24
groggy
unsteady 16.16
inert 173.14
dazed 985.14
groin fork 171.4
buttress 901.4
harbor 1009.6
barrier 1012.5
groom
n newlywed 563.5
stockman 1070.2
v dress 79.20
train 568.13
tidy 808.12
tend 1070.7
groomed 405.16
groomsman
wedding party 563.4
assistant 616.6
groove
n crack 224.2
furrow 290.1
routine 373.5
path 383.2
type 548.6
race 756.3
v cleave 224.4
excavate 284.15
furrow 290.3
engrave 713.9
groove on 95.13
groovy
adj knowledgeable 928.17
excellent 999.13
interj goody! 95.21
grope contact 223.10
feel one's way 938.32
be uncertain 971.9
gross
n gain 472.3
receipts 627.1
round 751.3
v profit 472.12
yield 627.4
adj nasty 64.7
filthy 80.23
offensive 98.18
downright 247.12
corpulent 257.18
thick 269.8
rough 294.6
luxuriant 310.43
coarse 497.11
ill-bred 505.6
inelegant 534.2
base 661.12
carnal 663.6
vulgar 666.8
whole 792.9
stupid 922.15
bad 1000.8
terrible 1000.9
gross out offend 98.11
repel 99.6
grotesque
n work of art 712.10
adj deformed 265.12
freakish 870.13
absurd 923.11
fanciful 986.20
unshapely 1015.8
grotto 284.5
grouch
n malcontent 108.4
sorehead 110.11
complainer 115.9
spoilsport 1012.9
v be discontented 108.6
sulk 110.14
complain 115.16
grouchy
discontented 108.8
irascible 110.20
complaining 115.20
ground
n color 35.8
station 159.2
ground covering 199.3
bed 199.4
horizontal 201.3
setting 209.2
enclosed place (enclosure) 212.3
region 231.1
land 234.1
ocean depths 275.4
motive 375.1
arena 463.1
warrant 600.6
art equipment 712.18
cause 886.1
foundation 901.6
premise 935.7
evidence 957.1
v establish 159.16
shipwreck 182.42
limit 210.5
restrict 428.9
confine 429.12
teach 568.10
play 745.5
fix 855.9
fell 913.5
insulate 1032.29
adj bottom 199.7
powdery 1051.11
grounder 745.3
ground floor
floor 197.23
earliness 845.1
groundhog
black clouds 133.6
excavator 284.10
wild animal 311.23
grounding
preparation 405.1
elementary education 568.5
groundless
unsubstantial 764.8
baseless 936.13
unproved 958.8
grounds nearness 223.1
dregs 256.2
green 310.7
real estate 471.6
warrant 600.6
cause 886.1
foundation 901.6
evidence 957.1
condition 959.2
group
n amount 244.2
association 617.1
clique 617.6
sect 675.3
orchestra 710.12
company 770.3
bunch 770.7
set 784.5
class 809.2
v size 257.15
assemble 770.18
analyze 801.8
arrange 808.11
classify 809.6
groupie fan 101.5
idolater 697.4
grouping
association 617.1
treatment 712.9
company 770.3
bunch 770.7
analysis 801.3
arrangement 808.3
classification 809.1
class 809.2
grouse
n complaint 115.5
v be discontented 108.6
complain 115.16
grouser
malcontent 108.4
complainer 115.9
grout 295.25
grove
valley 284.9
woodlet 310.14
bunch 770.7
grovel fawn 138.7

creep 177.26
lie 201.5
lie low 274.5
bow down 433.10
be promiscuous 665.19
bow 913.9
wallow 915.13
grow develop 14.2
increase 251.6
expand 259.7
grow up 272.12
mature 303.9
vegetate 310.34
become 761.12
evolve 861.5
process 892.9
farm 1069.16
raise 1070.6
growl
n reverberation 54.2
boom 56.4
rasp 58.3
v boom 56.9
sound harshly 58.9
snarl 60.4
complain 115.15
show resentment 152.14
sigh 318.21
speak 524.25
growling
n reverberation 54.2
adj reverberating 54.12
discontented 108.7
irascible 110.19
grown mature 14.3
full-grown 259.12
adult 303.12
produced 892.17
made 892.18
grownup 304.1
grown-up
mature 14.3
grown 259.12
adult 303.12
grow on one
enamor 104.23
become a habit 373.10
grow out of
overdevelop 14.2
expand 259.7
result from 887.5
growth
bodily development 14.1
symptom 85.9
neoplasm 85.39
gain 251.1
increase in size 259
development 259.3
maturation 303.6
stand 310.2
vegetation 310.32
business cycle 731.10
conversion 858.1
evolution 861.1
grow up mature 14.2
ascend 193.8
expand 259.7
grow 272.12
age 303.9
ripen 407.8
grub
n food 10.2
larva 302.12
drudge 726.3
v excavate 284.15
drudge 725.14
grubby dirty 80.22
slovenly 810.15
infested 910.11
grudge
n hostility 99.2
spite 589.5
v envy 154.3
refuse 325.3
deny 442.4
stint 484.5
grudging
n envy 154.1
adj envious 154.4
reluctant 325.6
niggardly 484.8
gruel
n symbol of weakness 16.7
thinness 270.7
semiliquid 1062.5
v weaken 16.10
grueling
weakening 16.20
fatiguing 21.13
punishing 604.23
laborious 725.18
troublesome 1013.18
gruesome
terrible 127.30
deathly 307.29
hideous 1015.11
gruff
raucous 58.15
irascible 110.19
brusque 505.7
grumble
n reverberation 54.2
thunder 56.4
rasp 58.3
v boom 56.9
sound harshly 58.9
growl 60.4
complain 115.15
grumbling
n reverberation 54.2
complaint 115.4
adj discontented 108.7
irascible 110.19
grump
n malcontent 108.4
sorehead 110.11
v be discontented 108.6
sulk 110.14
complain 115.16
Grundyism 579.1
grungy dirty 80.22
filthy 80.23
offensive 98.18
grunt
n animal noise 60.1
dogface 461.10
v snort 60.3
complain 115.15
speak 524.25
G-spot 75.5
G string 711.5
G-string
waistband 5.19
supporter 901.2
guacamole 10.9
guano feces 12.4
fertilizer 890.4
guarantee
n oath 334.4
promise 436.1
security 438.1
guarantor 438.6
v depose 334.6
promise 436.4
secure 438.9
protect 1008.18
guarantor
endorser 332.7
warrantor 438.6
guaranty
n security 438.1
guarantor 438.6
v secure 438.9
guard
n trainman 178.13
vigilance 339.4
jailer 429.10
defense 460.1
defender 460.7
football team 746.2
escort 769.5
protection 1008.1
safeguard 1008.3
guarder 1008.9
v preserve 397.8
restrain 428.7
defend 460.8
play 747.4
escort 769.8
protect 1008.18
guard against
defend 460.8
take precautions 494.6
guarded
vigilant 339.13
reticent 344.10
restrained 428.13
cautious 494.8
incredulous 956.4
protected 1008.21
guardian
n jailer 429.10
steward 574.4
familiar spirit 678.12
warden 1008.6
adj protective 1008.23
guardian angel
penitence 113.4
defender 460.7
conscience 636.5
familiar spirit 678.12
custodian 1008.6
gubernatorial 612.17
guerrilla
irregular 461.16
violent person 671.9
guerrilla warfare 458.1
guess
n conjecture 951.4
gamble 971.8
v solve 940.2
estimate 946.9
conjecture 951.11
think 953.11
predict 962.9
guesstimate 962.9
guesswork
supposition 951.3
guess 951.4
prediction 962.1
guest
n visitor 585.6
v entertain 585.8
guest house 228.15
guest room 197.7
guff bull 520.3
chatter 540.3
guffaw
n laughter 116.4
v laugh 116.8
guidance
navigation 159.3
advice 422.1
patronage 449.4
teaching 568.1
direction 573.1
protectorship 1008.2
guidance counselor 466.5
guide
n gutter 239.3
interpreter 341.7
adviser 422.3
pointer 517.4
teacher 571.1
guider 574.7
familiar spirit 678.12
escort 769.5
precursor 816.1
specter 988.1
v lead 165.2
pilot 182.14
advise 422.5
teach 568.10
steer 573.9
escort 769.8
go before 816.3
exercise influence 894.8
guidebook
information 551.1
handbook 554.8
directory 574.10
guide dog blind 30.6
dog 311.17
guideline plan 381.1
law 419.2
rule 869.4
guidepost pointer 517.4
guide 574.7
guild 617.3
guile deceit 356.3
cunning 415.1
guileful deceitful 356.22
cunning 415.12
shrewd 920.15
guileless
undeceptive 644.18
foolable 923.12
trusting 953.22
guillotine
n capital punishment 604.7
execution 605.5
legislative procedure 613.6
cloture 857.5

- *v* execute 604.17
- **guilt** culpability 656
  - guiltiness 656.1
- **guiltless** chaste 653.7
  - innocent 657.6
- **guilty**
  - *adj* at fault 656.3
  - *adv* shamefacedly 656.5
- **guinea pig**
  - wild animal 311.23
  - subject 942.7
- **guise** clothing 5.1
  - aspect 33.3
  - looks 33.4
  - cover 295.2
  - behavior 321.1
  - pretext 376.1
  - manner 384.1
  - mode 765.4
- **guitarist** 710.5
- **gulag** 429.8
- **gulch** valley 237.7
  - watercourse 239.2
- **gulf** crack 224.2
  - eddy 238.12
  - ocean 240.3
  - cove 242
  - inlet 242.1
  - hole 275.2
  - pit 284.4
  - opening 292.1
- **gull**
  - *n* dupe 358.1
  - *v* deceive 356.14
  - cheat 356.18
  - stultify 923.7
- **gullible** foolable 923.12
  - dupable 954.9
- **gullible person** 358.1
- **Gulliver** 178.2
- **gully**
  - *n* valley 237.7
  - watercourse 239.2
  - *v* furrow 290.3
- **gulp**
  - *n* breathing 2.21
  - drink 8.4
  - ingestion 187.4
  - *v* gobble 8.23
  - ingest 187.11
  - gluttonize 672.4
- **gum**
  - *n* elastic 1048.3
  - resin 1057.1
  - chewing gum 1062.6
  - *v* chew 8.27
  - stick together 803.9
  - hinder 1012.16
- **gumbo**
  - *n* semiliquid 1062.5
  - mud 1062.8
  - *adj* earthy 234.5
  - viscous 1062.12
- **gummy**
  - adhesive 803.12
  - resinous 1057.3
  - viscous 1062.12
- **gumption** 330.7
- **gumshoe**
  - *n* detective 576.11
  - police 1008.16
  - *v* creep 177.26
  - lurk 346.9
- **gum up** disable 19.9
  - spoil 393.11
  - bungle 414.12
  - hinder 1012.16
- **gun**
  - *n* killer 308.11
  - artilleryman 461.11
  - mercenary 461.17
  - firearm 462.10
  - ruffian 593.4
  - game 746.3
  - stop 857.2
  - shot 904.4
  - shooter 904.8
  - *v* hunt 382.9
  - shoot 904.12
- **gun down**
  - kill 308.14
  - strike dead 308.18
- **gunfire** fire 459.8
  - shot 904.4
- **gung ho**
  - *n* call to arms 458.8
  - *adj* energetic 17.13
  - enthusiastic 101.10
- **gunk** slime 80.8
  - adhesive 803.4
  - semiliquid 1062.5
- **gunky** filthy 80.23
  - viscous 1062.12
- **gunman** killer 308.11
  - mercenary 461.17
  - ruffian 593.3
  - shooter 904.8
- **gunner** hand 183.6
  - crew 185.4
  - artilleryman 461.11
  - basketball team 747.2
  - shooter 904.8
- **gunrunning** 732.2
- **gunshot**
  - detonation 56.3
  - short distance 223.2
  - shot 904.4
- **gun-shy** fearful 127.23
  - jittery 128.12
- **gunslinger** 737.11
- **gurgle** ripple 52.11
  - trickle 238.18
  - bubble 320.4
- **gurney** 901.19
- **guru** teacher 571.1
  - master 575.1
  - holy man 659.6
  - clergy 699.13
  - wise man 921.1
- **gush**
  - *n* outflow 190.4
  - ascent 193.1
  - flow 238.4
  - jet 238.9
  - increase 251.1
  - unction 511.2
  - wordiness 538.2
  - outburst 671.6
  - plenty 991.2
  - *v* emotionalize 93.13
  - be enthusiastic 101.7
  - run out 190.13
  - shoot up 193.9
  - flow 238.16
  - jet 238.20
  - chatter 540.5
  - abound 991.5
- **gushiness** 540.1
- **gushing**
  - *n* wordiness 538.2
  - *adj* sentimental 93.21
  - flowing 238.24
  - flattering 511.8
  - diffuse 538.11
- **gushy**
  - *v* talkative 540.9
  - *adj* diffuse 538.11
- **gusset** 191.2
- **gussy up** dress up 5.42
  - ornament 498.8
  - beautify 1016.16
- **gust** taste 62.1
  - liking 100.2
  - eagerness 101.1
  - outburst 105.9
  - wind gust 318.6
  - characteristic 865.4
- **gusto** vim 17.2
  - animation 17.4
  - savor 63.2
  - passion 93.2
  - pleasure 95.1
  - liking 100.2
  - eagerness 101.1
  - gaiety 109.4
- **gusty** tasty 63.8
  - windy 318.22
- **gut**
  - *n* goozle 2.19
  - heart 93.3
  - inlet 242.1
  - *v* eviscerate 192.13
  - destroy 395.10
  - plunder 482.17
  - *adj* emotional 93.17
  - interior 207.6
  - unpremeditated 365.11
  - essential 767.9
  - vital 997.23
- **gut feeling** 934.3
- **gutless** weak 16.12
  - uncourageous 491.11
- **gut reaction**
  - feeling 93.1
  - impulse 365.1
- **guts** viscera 2.16
  - goozle 2.19
  - strength 15.1
  - zest 68.2
  - heart 93.3
  - contents 196.1
  - insides 207.4
  - pluck 359.3
  - fearlessness 492.4
  - nut and bolts 767.3
  - inner nature 767.5
- **gut sensation** 93.1
- **gutsy** strong 15.15
  - plucky 359.14
  - fearless 492.19
- **gutter**
  - *n* trough 239.3
  - drain 239.5
  - trench 290.2
  - pavement 383.6
  - sewer 654.7
  - bowling 750.1
  - *v* flutter 917.12
  - flicker 1025.25
  - *adj* disgraceful 661.11
  - vulgar 666.8
- **guttersnipe**
  - vagabond 178.3
  - vulgarian 497.6
- **guttural** raucous 58.15
  - inarticulate 525.12
- **guy** man 76.5
  - supporter 901.2
- **guzzle**
  - *n* goozle 2.19
  - drink 8.4
  - drinking spree 88.6
  - swig 88.7
  - *v* drink 8.29
  - tipple 88.24
  - gluttonize 672.4
- **gym** fitness 84.1
  - arena 463.1
  - playground 743.11
- **gymnasium**
  - fitness 84.1
  - playroom 197.12
  - arena 463.1
  - playground 743.11
- **gymnastics**
  - exercise 84.2
  - physical education 568.9
  - sport 744.1
- **gyp**
  - *n* female animal 77.10
  - dog 311.17
  - deception 356.9
  - cheater 357.4
  - *v* deceive 356.19
- **gypsy** 178.4
- **gypsy cab** 179.13
- **gyrate** move 172.5
  - rotate 915.9
- **ha'penny** 728.8
- **haberdasher** 5.33
- **habit**
  - *n* clothing 5.1
  - suit 5.6
  - substance abuse 87.1
  - convention 373
  - habitude 373.3
  - mannerism 500.2
  - nature 767.4
  - *v* outfit 5.41
- **habitat**
  - environment 209.1
  - habitation 225.1
  - dwelling 228.1
  - home 228.18
- **habitation**
  - occupancy 225.1
  - inhabiting 225.1
  - abode 228.1
- **habitual** regular 373.14
  - orderly 807.6
  - frequent 847.4
  - usual 869.9
- **habitué**
  - *n* attender 221.5

guest 585.6
adj habituated 373.17
hacienda
farmstead 228.6
farm 1069.8
hack
n breathing 2.21
driver 178.9
coachman 178.10
public vehicle 179.13
notch 289.1
horse 311.12
hunter 311.13
attempt 403.3
mark 517.5
hack writer 547.16
politician 610.4
scribbler 718.5
drudge 726.3
v go on horseback 177.34
accomplish 407.4
sever 802.11
hacker
incompetent 414.7
golfer 751.2
liveware 1042.17
hack it
be able 18.11
do 328.6
achieve one's purpose 409.8
manage 409.12
stand the test 942.10
suffice 991.4
hackneyed
trite 117.9
habitual 373.14
hackneyed expression 526.9
hack writer
writing 547.16
hack 718.5
Hades hell 682.1
nether world 682.3
nether world deity 682.5
destiny 839.2
hag old woman 304.3
witch 593.7
sorceress 690.8
eyesore 1015.4
haggard
tired-looking 21.9
colorless 36.7
frenzied 105.25
dejected 112.22
poor 270.20
deathly 307.29
fanatic 926.32
haggle
n negotiation 731.3
v bargain 731.18
hagiography 719.1
ha-ha
n laughter 116.4
trench 290.2
v laugh 116.8
hail
n greeting 585.4
multitude 884.3
hailstone 1023.6
v cry 59.6
assent 332.8
applaud 509.10
signal 517.22
address 524.26
greet 585.10
sleet 1023.11
interj all hail! 509.23
greetings! 585.15
hey! 983.23
hair
pile 3.2
short distance 223.2
modicum 248.2
narrowness 270.1
filament 271.1
skin 295.3
theater man 704.23
trifle 998.5
haircut 3.15
hairdo 3.15
hairdresser 1016.13
hairdressing 1016.11
hair-drier 1066.4
hairless 6.17
hairpiece 3.14
hairpin
n deviation 164.1
zigzag 204.8
skiing 753.1
race 756.3
v deflect 164.5
adj crooked 204.20
hair-raiser 127.9
hair salon beauty parlor or salon or shop 1016.14
hair shirt
self-reproach 113.3
penance 658.3
hairsplitter 936.7
hairsplitting
n overfastidiousness 495.4
criticism 510.4
quibbling 936.5
distinction 944.3
adj overfastidious 495.12
critical 510.23
quibbling 936.14
hairstyle 3.15
hairy hirsute 3.24
threadlike 271.7
bristly 288.9
nappy 294.7
cutaneous 295.32
weird 988.9
bad 1000.8
difficult 1013.17
hajj 177.5
halcyon bright 97.11
quiescent 173.12
pacific 464.9
thriving 1010.13
hale
v pull 905.4
adj strong 15.15
hearty 83.12
half
n portion 477.5
football game 746.3
basketball game 747.3
game 749.6
mid-distance 819.2
moiety 875.2
adj proportionate 477.13
part 875.5
adv o'clock 832.16
half a mind 323.1
half-assed
slipshod 340.12
unskillful 414.15
botched 414.22
half-learned 930.15
half-baked
immature 406.11
premature 845.8
mentally deficient 922.22
half-learned 930.15
imperfect 1003.4
half-breed
n hybrid 797.8
adj hybrid 797.15
half-cocked
immature 406.11
premature 845.8
half-learned 930.15
half-heard 52.16
halfhearted
wishy-washy 16.17
indifferent 102.6
half-life 1037.6
half-mast 517.22
half-moon
crescent 279.5
heavenly body 1072.11
half nelson 474.3
half note 709.14
halftime game 746.3
shift 825.3
interim 826.1
halftone
color system 35.7
interval 709.20
half-truth 354.11
halfway
adj middle 819.4
half 875.5
adv midway 819.5
halfway house
mid-distance 819.2
asylum 1009.4
half-wit
stupid person 924.2
idiot 924.8
halitosis 71.1
hall entrance 189.5
assembly hall 197.4
corridor 197.18
house 228.5
arena 463.1
schoolhouse 567.10
theater 704.14
hallelujah
n cheer 116.2
paean 696.3
interj alleluia! 696.17
hallmark
n sign 517.1
label 517.13
characteristic 865.4
v label 517.20
hall of famer 413.15
halloo
n cry 59.1
v cry 59.6
address 524.26
interj oh! 122.20
hey! 983.23
hallow celebrate 487.2
sanctify 685.5
hallucinate 976.8
hallucination
deception 356.1
hallucinosis 976.7
figment of the imagination 986.5
hallucinogen
psychoactive drug 86.13
drug 87.3
hallway
entrance 189.5
corridor 197.18
halo radiation 171.2
circle 280.2
illustriousness 662.6
nimbus 1025.14
halt
n respite 20.2
standstill 173.3
delay 846.2
stop 857.2
prevention 1012.2
impasse 1013.6
v be weak 16.8
quiet 173.8
dawdle 175.8
way of walking 177.28
stammer 525.8
cease 857.6
stop 857.7
put a stop to 857.11
hinder 1012.13
adj crippled 393.30
interj cease! 857.13
halter
n shackle 428.4
execution 605.5
v yoke 800.10
halting
n cessation 857.1
prevention 1012.2
adj slow 175.10
crippled 393.30
stammering 525.13
stiff 534.3
irregular 851.3
halve share 476.6
sever 802.11
double 873.5
bisect 875.4
ham
n member 2.7
leg 177.14
village 230.2
acting 704.8
grimacer 707.5
radioman 1034.24
v affect 500.12
overact 704.31
adj dramatic 704.33
hamburger 10.14
hamburger joint 8.17
ham-fisted
bungling 414.20
inelegant 534.2
ham it up
emotionalize 93.13

affect 500.12
overact 704.31
hamlet village 230.2
region 231.5
Hamlet 542.2
hammer
n ear 2.10
tool 1040.1
v rage 671.11
drudge 725.14
din 849.10
pound 902.16
think hard 931.9
hammer away at
dwell on 849.9
think hard 931.9
hammer out
form 262.7
do carelessly 340.9
produce 892.8
ham operator 1034.24
hamper
n shackle 428.4
impediment 1012.6
v package 212.9
burden 297.13
bind 428.10
impede 1012.11
hamstring disable 19.9
render powerless 19.10
cripple 393.14
hamper 1012.11
hand
n member 2.7
deckhand 183.6
side 218.1
person 312.5
act 328.3
skill 413.1
governance 417.5
assist 449.2
applause 509.2
pointer 517.4
signature 527.10
handwriting 547.3
control 612.2
worker 726.2
bridge 758.3
member 793.4
v deliver 478.13
transfer 629.3
handbag bag 195.2
money holder 729.15
handball 1048.3
handbill 352.8
handbook
manual 554.8
directory 574.10
casino 759.19
handcrafted 892.18
handcuff
disable 19.10
bind 428.10
hamper 1012.11
hand down
bequeath 478.18
transfer 629.3
handful
modicum 248.2
a few 885.2
tough proposition 1013.2
handheld computer 1042.2
handicap
n disease 85.1
burden 297.7
disability 603.2
round 751.3
inequality 791.1
disadvantage 996.2
impediment 1012.6
v burden 297.13
penalize 603.4
hamper 1012.11
handicraft craft 712.3
vocation 724.6
production 892.2
hand in glove
cooperative 450.5
cooperatively 450.6
sociably 582.25
familiar 587.19
amicably 587.22
accompanying 769.9
arm in arm 769.10
in step 788.11
joined 800.13
concurrently 899.5
hand in hand
near 223.14
cooperatively 450.6
sociably 582.25
familiar 587.19
amicably 587.22
accompanying 769.9
arm in arm 769.10
joined 800.13
concurrently 899.5
hand it to bow to 250.5
compliment 509.14
handiwork act 328.3
work 725.4
production 892.2
product 893.1
handkerchief 5.25
handle
n bulge 283.3
pretext 376.1
name 527.3
title 648.1
hold 901.11
v touch 73.6
pilot 182.14
behave 321.6
perform 328.9
use 387.10
treat 387.12
discuss 541.12
write upon 556.5
direct 573.8
deal in 731.16
operate 889.5
tend 1070.7
handle with kid gloves
be careful 339.7
be easy on 427.5
handling touching 73.2
performance 328.2
usage 387.2
utilization 387.8
treatise 556.1
direction 573.1
operation 889.1
handmade 892.18
handmaiden
instrument 384.4
maid 577.8
hand-me-down
clothing 5.5
used 842.18
handout
press release 352.3
advertising matter 352.8
donation 478.6
information 551.1
hand out
parcel out 477.8
give 478.12
deliver 478.13
hand over
transfer 176.10
give up 370.7
surrender 433.8
relinquish 475.3
deliver 478.13
pay over 624.15
assign 629.3
hand over fist
swiftly 174.17
hastily 401.12
hands work force 18.9
governance 417.5
clutches 474.4
control 612.2
protectorship 1008.2
hands down 1014.16
handshake
n signing 437.3
greeting 585.4
v curry favor 138.9
hand signal 517.14
hands-off
indulgent 427.8
nonrestrictive 430.25
permissive 443.14
conservative 853.8
handsome liberal 485.4
magnanimous 652.6
beautiful 1016.18
hand-to-mouth 406.15
hand-to-mouth existence 619.2
hand tool 1040.7
handwriting 547.3
handwriting on the wall
warning 133.4
sign 399.3
fate 964.2
handy nearby 223.15
miniature 258.12
modal 384.8
convenient 387.20
skillful 413.22
wieldy 1014.15
hang
n droop 202.2
declivity 204.5
knack 413.6
v take off 193.10
dangle 202.6
suspend 202.8
frequent 221.10
inhabit 225.7
hang by the neck 604.18
procrastinate 846.11
depend 959.6
pend 971.11
hangar housing 184.24
garage 197.27
repair shop 739.5
hang around
attach oneself to 138.11
frequent 221.10
stay near 223.12
idle 331.12
wait 846.12
hang by a thread
depend 971.11
take chances 1006.7
be in danger 1006.8
hanger-on
adherent 138.6
follower 166.2
retainer 577.1
henchman 610.8
associate 616.8
hang fire
stagnate 173.9
do nothing 329.2
come to nothing 410.13
postpone 846.9
procrastinate 846.11
stop 857.7
be unproductive 891.3
hang in
be strong 15.11
endure 134.6
keep alive 306.12
remain firm 359.9
keep up one's courage 492.15
last 827.6
persist 856.5
hanging
n pendency 202.1
pendant 202.4
declivity 204.5
cover 295.2
camaraderie 582.2
capital punishment 604.7
scenery 704.20
adj downcast 194.12
pendent 202.9
loose 804.5
hang in there 134.5
hangman 604.8
hang on
keep alive 306.12
stay with it 360.4
hold 474.6
blame 599.8
cohere 803.6
result from 887.5
attribute to 888.4
depend 959.6
pend 971.11
hangout 228.27
hang out
be exposed 31.5
overhang 202.7
frequent 221.10
inhabit 225.7
be manifest 348.7
wait 846.12
turn up 941.9
hangover
intoxication 88.1

subsequence 835.1
hang over one's head 840.2
hang together 803.6
hang tough
be strong 15.11
use 87.22
endure 134.6
confront 216.8
remain firm 359.9
persevere 360.7
offer resistance 453.3
keep up one's courage 492.15
last 827.6
stand fast 855.11
persist 856.5
toughen 1049.3
hang up suspend 202.8
telephone 347.19
come to nothing 410.13
postpone 846.9
hang-up delay 846.2
obsession 926.13
obstacle 1012.4
hankering
n yearning 100.5
adj wistful 100.23
hanky-panky
love affair 104.6
juggling 356.5
haphazard
n chance-medley 972.4
adj slipshod 340.12
unprepared 406.8
unordered 810.12
purposeless 972.16
hapless 1011.14
happen occur 831.5
chance 972.11
happening
n event 831.2
chance event 972.6
adj occurring 831.9
happen on
come across 941.3
chance 972.11
happy
intoxicated 88.31
glad 95.16
content 107.7
cheerful 109.11
auspicious 133.18
decorous 496.10
appropriate 533.7
apt 788.10
timely 843.9
expedient 995.5
happy-go-lucky 406.15
happy hour 95.5
happy medium
mean 246.1
middle course 467.3
moderation 670.1
hara-kiri 308.5
harangue
n speech 543.2
lesson 568.7
v declaim 543.10
expound 568.16
harass
fatigue 21.4
annoy 96.13
vex 98.15
make anxious 126.5
intimidate 127.20
persecute 389.7
besiege 459.19
work evil 1000.6
trouble 1013.13
harassment
annoyance 96.2
vexatiousness 98.7
worry 126.2
persecution 389.3
harbinger
n forerunner 133.5
herald 353.2
precursor 816.1
v herald 133.14
harbor
n destination 186.5
inlet 242.1
refuge 1009.1
haven 1009.6
v house 225.10
hold 474.7
doubt 955.6
protect 1008.18
harbor a grudge 589.8
harbor resentment 152.12
hard
adj strong 15.15
painful 26.10
bitter 64.6
alcoholic 88.37
callous 94.12
impenitent 114.5
harsh 144.24
heartless 144.25
pitiless 146.3
industrious 330.22
unyielding 361.9
obdurate 361.10
firm 425.7
hard to understand 522.14
phonetic 524.30
hardened 654.17
lascivious 665.29
real 761.15
sturdy 763.7
true 973.13
valid 973.14
adverse 1011.13
difficult 1013.17
dense 1045.12
solid 1046.10
tough 1049.4
adv near 223.20
laboriously 725.19
hard and fast
aground 182.73
preceptive 419.4
mandatory 420.12
hard as nails
strong 15.15
pitiless 146.3
resistant 1046.10
tough 1049.4
hardball reality 761.2
gravity 997.3
danger 1006.1
hard-boiled
firm 15.18
obdurate 361.10
hard 1046.10
hard copy 547.10
hard-core
unyielding 361.9
fiery 671.22
hardcover 554.3
hard disk
recording media 549.10
disk 1042.6
hard-drinking 88.35
hard drug 87.3
hard-earned
laborious 725.18
difficult 1013.17
harden
strengthen 15.13
callous 94.6
accustom 373.9
indurate 1046.7
toughen 1049.3
petrify 1059.10
hardened callous 94.12
impenitent 114.5
heartless 144.25
accustomed 373.15
hard 654.17
toughened 1046.13
tough 1049.6
hard feelings
bad feeling 93.7
bitterness 152.3
animosity 589.4
hard hat patriot 591.3
conservative 611.9
safeguard 1008.3
hardheaded
obstinate 361.8
ungullible 956.5
realistic 987.6
hard-hearted
callous 94.12
heartless 144.25
hardened 654.17
hard 1046.10
hard knocks 1011.1
hard labor
punishment 604.2
backbreaking work 725.5
hard line
unyieldingness 361.2
strictness 425.1
warlikeness 458.11
orthodoxy 687.5
hard-line
unyielding 361.9
strict 425.6
militaristic 458.22
fiery 671.22
hard liquor 88.13
hard news 552.1
hard-nosed 361.10
hard nut to crack
enigma 522.8
tough proposition 1013.2
hard-of-hearing 49.6
hard on 223.24
hard-on 75.5
hard-pressed
straitened 1013.26
hurried 401.11
hard rock 708.10
hard sell
inducement 375.3
importunity 440.3
selling 734.2
hard up poor 619.7
straitened 1013.26
hardware
hard goods 735.4
computer hardware 1041.17
central processing unit 1042.2
the hard way
n difficulty 1013.1
adv laboriously 725.19
with difficulty 1013.28
hardwood
n basketball 747.1
wood 1054.3
adj arboreal 310.39
hardworking
industrious 330.22
laboring 725.17
hardy strong 15.15
hale 83.12
insolent 142.9
perennial 310.44
courageous 492.17
durable 827.10
tough 1049.4
hare
swiftness 174.6
leveret 311.24
harebrained
capricious 364.5
foolhardy 493.9
scatterbrained 985.16
harem 563.10
hark
v listen 48.10
hearken to 983.7
interj hark ye! 48.16
attention! 983.22
hark back
turn back 859.5
remember 989.10
harlequin
n check 47.4
variegation 47.6
buffoon 707.10
v variegate 47.7
adj variegated 47.9
harlot
n prostitute 665.16
adj prostitute 665.28
harm
n impairment 393.1
disadvantage 996.2
evil 1000.3
bane 1001.1
v impair 393.9
inconvenience 996.4
work evil 1000.6
harmful
unhealthful 82.5
malicious 144.20
disadvantageous 996.6
hurtful 1000.12
adverse 1011.13
harmless
hurtless 999.21

undamaged 1002.8
unhazardous 1007.5
harmonic
n tone 50.2
harmonic tone 709.16
adj harmonious 708.49
oscillating 916.15
harmonica 711.10
harmonious
chromatic 35.16
pleasant 97.6
symmetric 264.4
cooperative 450.5
in accord 455.3
balanced 533.8
friendly 587.15
harmonic 708.49
agreeing 788.9
orderly 807.6
conformist 867.6
concurrent 899.4
harmonize
symmetrize 264.3
cooperate 450.3
get along 455.2
reconcile 465.8
be harmonious 708.35
compose 708.46
make uniform 781.4
agree 788.6
make agree 788.7
order 807.4
organize 808.10
conform 867.3
concur 899.2
harmony
symmetry 264.1
unanimity 332.5
cooperation 450.1
accord 455.1
peace 464.1
proportion 533.2
good terms 587.3
heaven 681.5
concord 708.3
harmonics 709.1
agreement 788.1
order 807.1
conformity 867.1
harness
n wardrobe 5.2
parachute 181.13
caparison 385.5
armor 460.3
v yoke 800.10
tend 1070.7
harp
n lyre 711.3
mouth organ 711.10
v persist 856.5
harp on dwell on 118.8
belabor 849.9
emphasize 997.14
harpoon 480.17
harpsichord 711.12
harpy
extortionist 480.12
monster 593.6
harridan
strumpet 665.14
eyesore 1015.4
harried
tormented 96.24
worried 126.8
harrow
n projection 285.4
v pain 26.7
torture 96.18
smooth 287.5
cultivate 1069.17
harrowing
n cultivation 1069.13
adj painful 26.10
agonizing 98.23
harry annoy 96.13
make anxious 126.5
persecute 389.7
attack 459.14
besiege 459.19
harsh
acrimonious 17.14
painful 26.10
off-color 35.21
raucous 58.15
dissonant 61.4
clashing 61.5
bitter 64.6
pungent 68.6
distressing 98.20
oppressive 98.24
rough 144.24
pitiless 146.3
rugged 288.7
strict 425.6
gruff 505.7
inarticulate 525.12
inelegant 534.2
hart male animal 76.8
hoofed animal 311.5
harum-scarum
adj reckless 493.8
boisterous 671.20
adv in disorder 810.17
harvest
n autumn 313.4
yield 472.5
effect 887.1
production 893.2
harvesting 1069.15
v acquire 472.8
process 892.9
reap 1069.19
has-been
n back number 842.8
adj past 837.7
old-fashioned 842.16
hash
n meat 10.13
hashish 87.8
fiasco 410.6
bungle 414.5
hodgepodge 797.6
jumble 810.3
v mix 797.10
hash house 8.17
hash over 541.12
Hasidic 675.30
hasp 800.8
hassle
n quarrel 456.6
struggle 725.3
commotion 810.4
argumentation 935.4
v vex 98.15
quarrel 456.12
nag 510.16
struggle 725.11
argue 935.16
work evil 1000.6
haste
n impatience 135.1
velocity 174.1
impulsiveness 365.2
hurry 401.1
recklessness 493.2
prematurity 845.2
v speed 174.8
hasten 401.4
hasten
be impatient 135.4
advance 162.5
speed 174.8
accelerate 174.10
haste 401.4
make haste 401.5
be useful 449.17
facilitate 1014.7
hasty
hot-tempered 110.25
impatient 135.6
fast 174.15
impulsive 365.9
hurried 401.9
unprepared 406.8
reckless 493.8
sudden 830.5
premature 845.8
hat
n headdress 5.25
v cloak 5.40
top 295.21
hatch
n porch 189.6
offspring 561.2
v be born 1.2
be pregnant 78.12
fabricate 354.18
plot 381.9
mark 517.19
portray 712.19
engrave 713.9
originate 892.12
imagine 986.14
raise 1070.6
hatchet job demolition 395.5
aspersion 512.4
hatchet man
killer 308.11
combatant 461.1
disparager 512.6
ruffian 593.4
henchman 610.8
hate
n hostility 99.2
aversion 103
malice 103.1
hated thing 103.3
antagonism 589.3
v have deep feelings 93.12
dislike 99.3
detest 103.5
bear ill will 589.8
hateful
offensive 98.18
loathesome 103.8
malicious 144.20
hostile 589.10
terrible 1000.9
hatred hostility 99.2
abhorrence 103.1
antagonism 589.3
haughty vain 136.9
arrogant 141.9
contemptuous 157.8
high 272.14
haul
n distance 261.1
take 480.10
booty 482.11
strain 725.2
pull 905.2
v cart 176.13
sail against the wind 182.24
ship activity 182.48
strain 725.10
pull 905.4
haunch 218.1
haunt
n resort 228.27
specter 988.1
v oppress 98.16
make anxious 126.5
frequent 221.10
hant 988.6
haunted worried 126.8
spooked 988.10
remembering 989.24
haunting
recurrent 849.13
unforgettable 989.26
haute couture 5.32
haute cuisine 11.1
hauteur arrogance 141.1
contempt 157.1
height 272.1
have give birth 1.3
affirm 334.5
deceive 356.19
compel 424.4
suffer 443.10
possess 469.4
hold 474.7
receive 479.6
understand 521.7
experience 831.8
know 928.12
doubt 955.6
recognize 989.12
have it in for
dislike 99.3
loathe 103.6
bear ill will 589.8
have it made
make good 409.10
prosper 1010.7
have it out
contend with 457.17
argue 935.16
haven
n destination 186.5
refuge 1009.1
harbor 1009.6
v protect 1008.18

have to
  be compelled 424.9
  be necessary 963.10
havoc
  n evil 1000.3
  v destroy 395.10
haw avoid 164.6
  stammer 525.8
hawk
  n sharp vision 27.11
  bird 311.28
  militarist 461.5
  patriot 591.3
  v salivate 13.6
  hunt 382.9
  vend 734.9
the hawk 318.8
hawk-eyed
  clear-sighted 27.21
  vigilant 339.13
hay
  n feed 10.4
  marijuana 87.11
  v harvest 1069.19
the hay 901.19
haystack 770.10
haywire
  impaired 393.38
  disorderly 810.13
  crazy 926.27
  eccentric 927.6
hazard
  n golf 751.1
  gamble 759.2
  bet 759.3
  unreliability 971.6
  chance event 972.6
  danger 1006.1
  obstacle 1012.4
  v presume 640.6
  risk 759.24
  bet 759.25
  chance 972.11
  endanger 1006.6
  take chances 1006.7
haze
  n LSD 87.10
  fog 319.3
  confusion 985.3
  v cloud 319.7
  banter 490.5
hazel 40.3
hazy
  inconspicuous 32.6
  formless 263.4
  foggy 319.10
  obscure 522.15
  vague 971.19
  muddled 985.13
he male 76.4
  self 865.5
head
  n member 2.7
  head of hair 3.4
  latrine 12.10
  addict 87.21
  enthusiast 101.5
  sail 180.14
  top part 198.4
  architectural topping 198.5
  headpiece 198.6
  front 216.1
  headwaters 238.2
  superior 249.4
  point of land 283.9
  plant 310.27
  person 312.5
  foam 320.2
  makeup 554.12
  abridgment 557.1
  superintendent 574.2
  portrait 712.15
  class 809.2
  source 886.5
  thrust 902.2
  intellect 919.1
  brain 919.6
  intelligence 920.9
  topic 937.1
  caption 937.2
  water 1065.3
  v take direction 161.7
  lead 165.2
  top 198.9
  be in front 216.7
  gravitate 297.15
  direct 573.8
  govern 612.12
  play 752.4
  precede 814.2
  tend 896.3
  focus on 937.3
  adj top 198.10
  front 216.10
  directing 573.12
  governing 612.18
  first 818.17
headache ache 26.5
  annoyance 96.2
  tedious person 118.5
  trouble 1013.3
head and shoulders above
  superlative 249.13
  superior 999.14
headband 554.14
head count
  population 227.1
  roll 871.6
  summation 1017.11
headdress
  hairdo 3.15
  headgear 5.25
headfirst
  precipitately 401.15
  recklessly 493.11
headhunter
  executive search agency 615.5
  killer 308.11
heading
  n direction 161.1
  leading 165.1
  course 184.34
  top part 198.4
  front 216.1
  supervision 573.2
  class 809.2
  topic 937.1
  caption 937.2
  adj leading 165.3
  topping 198.11
headline
  n caption 937.2
  v dramatize 704.28
  focus on 937.3
  feature 997.15
headlong
  adj fast 174.15
  steep 204.18
  impulsive 365.9
  precipitate 401.10
  reckless 493.8
  sudden 830.5
  adv precipitately 401.15
  recklessly 493.11
  impulsively 365.13
headmaster 571.8
head off 164.6
head office 739.7
head-on
  adj front 216.10
  adv afoul 182.72
  in opposition 451.9
head over heels
  inversely 205.8
  precipitately 401.15
  recklessly 493.11
  round 915.16
  inverted 205.7
headphone
  loudspeaker 50.8
  radiophone 347.5
headpiece
  headdress 5.25
  top part 198.4
  head 198.6
  intellect 919.1
headquarters
  central station 208.6
  office 739.7
headroom 224.1
heads 215.3
heads or tails 759.2
head start
  advantage 249.2
  earliness 845.1
headstone 901.7
headstrong
  obstinate 361.8
  lawless 418.5
head up
  be in front 216.7
  direct 573.8
  precede 814.2
  initiate 818.10
  focus on 937.3
headway
  progression 162.1
  way 182.9
  improvement 392.1
headwear 5.25
head wind
  atmosphere 184.32
  wind 318.1
  nautical 318.11
  opposition 451.1
  counterforce 900.4
heady
  intoxicating 88.36
  exciting 105.30
  foamy 320.7
  lawless 418.5
heal treat 91.24
  cure 396.15
  heal over 396.21
health
  n well-being 83.1
  normality 869.1
  adj medical 90.15
health care
  health protection 83.5
  medical care 90.1
  medicine 90.1
health center 91.21
health club
  health care 83.5
  fitness 84.1
health food
  nutrient 7.3
  food 10.1
health insurance
  health care 83.5
  medicine 90.1
  welfarism 611.7
health spa 84.1
healthy
  wellness 81.5
  healthful 83.8
  large 257.16
  good 999.12
heap
  n car 179.10
  amount 244.2
  lot 247.4
  store 386.1
  throng 770.4
  pile 770.10
  v load 159.15
  give 478.12
  pile 770.19
heap up load 159.15
  store up 386.11
  collect 472.11
  pile 770.19
heap upon
  furnish 478.15
  give freely 485.3
hear
  v sense 24.6
  listen 48.10
  catch 48.11
  know 551.15
  try 598.18
  sit in judgment 946.12
  hearken to 983.7
  interj hark! 48.16
  bravo! 509.22
hear a different drummer
  disobey 327.6
  dissent 333.4
hearing
  n senses 24.5
  auditory sense 48.1
  audition 48.1
  aural sense 48.2
  earshot 48.4
  trial 598.5
  examination 938.2
  investigation 938.4
  tryout 942.3
  adj auditory 48.13
hearken 48.10
hearken to obey 326.2
  hark 983.7

hearsay
n report 552.6
adj evidential 957.16
hearse
n funeral car 309.10
v inter 309.19
heart
n viscera 2.16
food 10.20
passion 93.2
soul 93.3
love 104.1
essential content 196.5
interior 207.2
center 208.2
life force 306.3
fortitude 492.6
essence 767.2
inner nature 767.5
middle 819.1
psyche 919.4
mood 978.4
salient point 997.6
v confess 351.7
heartache
wretchedness 96.6
aching heart 112.9
heartbeat
life force 306.3
pulsation 916.3
heartbreak
harshness 98.4
heartache 112.9
heartbreaker 562.12
heartburn ache 26.5
jealousy 153.1
hear tell of hear 48.11
know 551.15
hearten energize 17.10
cheer 109.7
comfort 121.6
motivate 375.21
abet 449.14
encourage 492.16
heartening
n encouragement 492.9
adj cheering 109.16
comforting 121.13
heartfelt 93.24
hearth home 228.2
family 559.5
fireplace 1020.11
heartland inland 207.3
region 231.1
middle America 231.7
heartless unfeeling 94.9
apathetic 94.13
dejected 112.22
unkind 144.25
pitiless 146.3
uncourageous 491.11
hardened 654.17
heartrending
agonizing 98.23
pitiful 145.8
hearts
amphetamines 87.4
card 758.2
heartsick
wretched 96.26
disconsolate 112.28
heartstrings 93.3
heartthrob
loved one 104.11
pulsation 916.3
heart-to-heart
n chat 541.4
adj candid 644.17
heartwarming
delightful 97.7
pleasant 97.6
cheering 109.16
hearty
n mariner 183.1
boon companion 588.5
adj strong 15.15
energetic 17.13
hale 83.12
fervent 93.18
zealous 101.9
gay 109.14
convivial 582.23
hospitable 585.11
cordial 587.16
hear ye
hark! 48.16
attention! 983.22
heat
n sexual desire 75.5
fever 85.7
passion 93.2
zeal 101.2
fever of excitement 105.7
anger 152.5
race 457.12
hotness 1019.1
v cook 11.5
excite 105.12
incite 375.17
raise the temperature 1020.17
adj fuel 1021.9
heated
cooked 11.7
fervent 93.18
zealous 101.9
passionate 105.22
fiery 671.22
hot 1019.25
het 1020.29
heater gun 462.10
warmer 1020.10
heath
plain 236.1
wasteland 891.2
heathen
n pagan 688.7
unbeliever 695.11
adj pagan 688.11
unbelieving 695.19
idolatrous 697.7
unlearned 930.14
heat up
aggravate 119.2
intensify 251.5
incite 375.17
antagonize 589.7
heat wave
weather 317.3
hot weather 1019.7
heave
n wave 238.14
strain 725.2
throw 904.3
pull 905.2
lift 912.2
v feel disgust 99.4
be excited 105.18
ship activity 182.48
pitch 182.55
billow 238.22
strain 725.10
throw 904.10
pull 905.4
vomit 909.26
elevate 912.5
heaven
happiness 95.2
summit 198.2
height 272.2
utopia 986.11
good times 1010.4
the heavens 1072.2
Heaven
abode of the deity and blessed dead 681
destiny 839.2
Fates 964.3
Heaven forbid! 510.27
Heaven knows! 930.19
heavenly
blissful 97.9
divine 677.16
angelic 679.6
otherworldly 681.12
sacred 685.7
godly 692.9
ideal 986.23
superb 999.15
gorgeous 1016.21
celestial 1072.25
heavenly body 1072.4
heaven-sent
timely 843.9
expedient 995.5
heave to
sail against the wind 182.24
come to a stop 182.33
heaving
n trepidation 105.5
throwing 904.2
pulling 905.1
vomiting 909.8
adj respiratory 2.32
heavy
n heavyweight 257.12
role 704.10
actor 707.2
adj sleepy 22.21
deep 54.11
pregnant 78.18
oppressive 98.24
sad 112.20
dull 117.6
inert 173.14
great 247.6
thick 269.8
ponderous 297.16
luxuriant 310.43
cloudy 319.8
languid 331.20
phonetic 524.30
stiff 534.3
tragic 704.34
laborious 725.18
sturdy 763.7
unintelligent 922.16
weighty 997.20
excellent 999.13
troublesome 1013.18
dense 1045.12
viscous 1062.12
adv heavily 297.21
heavy-duty 1049.4
heavy hand
firm hand 425.3
despotism 612.10
heavy-handed
insensible 25.6
bungling 414.20
inelegant 534.2
heavy heart
wretchedness 96.6
sadness 112.1
heavyset
corpulent 257.18
thick 269.8
heavyweight
n pig 257.12
weight 297.3
influence 894.6
adj heavy 297.16
important 997.17
hebetude apathy 94.4
languor 331.6
stupidity 922.3
Hebrew
n Jew 675.21
adj Jewish 675.30
hecatomb
butchery 308.3
destruction 395.1
oblation 696.7
hundred 882.8
heck! 513.12
heckle comb 79.21
annoy 96.13
hectic
n reddening 41.3
glow 1019.12
adj red-complexioned 41.9
feverish 85.58
overzealous 101.12
heated 105.22
overactive 330.24
hector
n braggart 502.5
blusterer 503.2
v annoy 96.13
intimidate 127.20
bluster 503.3
hedge
n boundary 211.3
caution 494.1
qualification 959.1
v limit 210.5
fence 212.7
dodge 368.8
take precautions 494.6
quibble 936.9
qualify 959.3
hedgehog
wild animal 311.23
launcher 462.21

rocket launcher 1074.10
hedge in
circumscribe 210.4
enclose 212.5
fence 212.7
hedge one's bets 494.6
hedging
n limitation 210.2
caution 494.1
quibbling 936.5
qualification 959.1
adj demurring 325.7
quibbling 936.14
hedonism
pleasure-loving 95.4
ethical philosophy 636.2
selfishness 651.1
sensuality 663.1
hedonistic
pleasure-loving 95.18
selfish 651.5
sensual 663.5
heebie-jeebies 917.1
heed
n carefulness 339.1
observance 434.1
caution 494.1
attention 983.1
v listen 48.10
obey 326.2
care 339.6
observe 434.2
attend 983.6
heedful
considerate 143.16
careful 339.10
cautious 494.8
attentive 983.15
heedless
unconcerned 102.7
inconsiderate 144.18
careless 340.11
unthinking 365.10
improvident 406.15
incurious 982.3
inattentive 984.6
forgetful 990.9
heel
n foot 199.5
rear 217.1
stern 217.7
bad person 660.5
v turn round 163.9
deviate 164.3
follow 166.3
careen 182.43
equip 385.8
fight 754.4
heeled addicted 87.25
provided 385.13
armed 460.14
heel of Achilles 1006.4
heft
n weight 297.1
v weigh 297.10
elevate 912.5
hefty strong 15.15
corpulent 257.18
heavy 297.16
laborious 725.18
troublesome 1013.18
Hegelian
n immaterialist 1053.4
adj Aristotelian 952.12
idealist 1053.8
hegemony
superiority 249.1
supremacy 249.3
dominance 417.6
mastership 417.7
hegira
departure 188.1
flight 368.4
heifer
female animal 77.10
gal 302.7
cattle 311.6
height
degree 245.1
supremacy 249.3
size 257.1
tallness 272
heighth 272.1
rise 272.2
pitch 709.4
elevation 912.1
acme of perfection 1002.3
heighten
increase 272.13
elevate 912.5
heightening
aggravation 119.1
intensification 251.2
exaggeration 355.1
heights
highlands 237.1
altitude 272.2
heinous offensive 98.18
wicked 654.16
base 661.12
terrible 1000.9
heir survivor 256.3
heritor 479.5
successor 817.4
sequel 835.2
heirloom 479.2
heist
n theft 482.4
v rob 482.16
elevate 912.5
held reserved 386.15
possessed 469.8
stuck 855.16
supported 901.24
obsessed 926.33
believed 953.23
gripped 983.18
Helicon 720.10
helicopter 181.5
heliport airport 184.22
platform 901.13
hell blackness 38.4
torment 96.7
depths 275.3
place of confinement 429.7
abode of the damned 682
Hades 682.1
casino 759.19
pandemonium 810.5
hot place 1019.11
Hell
river of death 307.4
destiny 839.2
cold place 1023.4
hell-bent 174.17
hellcat
daredevil 493.4
ruffian 593.3
witch 593.7
violent person 671.9
hellfire 682.2
hellion ruffian 593.4
violent person 671.9
demon 680.6
hellish
frightening 127.28
cruel 144.26
diabolic 654.13
turbulent 671.18
demoniac 680.17
infernal 682.8
execrable 1000.10
hello! oh! 122.20
salutation 585.4
greetings! 585.15
hey! 983.23
helm
n authority 417.10
direction 573.1
reins 573.5
control 612.2
v pilot 182.14
helmet
heraldry 647.2
safeguard 1008.3
helmsman
steersman 183.8
guide 574.7
helot
sycophant 138.3
subject 432.7
help
n serving 8.10
remedy 86.1
aid 449.1
subsidy 478.8
servant 577.2
staff 577.11
benefactor 592.1
assistant 616.6
v do a favor 143.12
aid 449.11
subsidize 478.19
serve 577.13
do good 999.10
prevent 1012.14
helper
subordinate 432.5
assistant 449.7
benefactor 592.1
associate 616.6
helpful
considerate 143.16
modal 384.8
useful 387.18
of use 449.21
good 999.12
helping
n serving 8.10
portion 477.5
adj assisting 449.20
serving 577.14
helpless
defenseless 19.18
dead-drunk 88.32
forlorn 584.12
unprotected 1006.14
helpmeet
wife 563.8
assistant 616.6
helter-skelter
n haste 401.1
jumble 810.3
commotion 810.4
adj carelessly 340.18
hastily 401.12
recklessly 493.11
nonuniformly 782.4
separated 802.21
confused 810.16
in disorder 810.17
hem
n border 211.4
edging 211.7
v border 211.10
fence 212.7
restrict 428.9
stammer 525.8
hem and haw
prevaricate 344.7
hesitate 362.7
dodge 368.8
stammer 525.8
hem in
border 211.10
enclose 212.5
confine 429.12
hemisphere
sphere 231.2
member 793.4
half 875.2
hemlock 604.7
hemmed-in
enclosed 212.10
restricted 428.15
hemorrhage
n bleeding 12.8
symptom 85.9
v bleed 12.17
hemorrhoids 85.37
hemp
marijuana 87.11
execution 605.5
hen woman 77.6
female animal 77.10
old woman 304.3
poultry 311.29
card 758.2
hence thence 188.20
therefore 888.7
henceforth 839.10
henchman
hanger-on 138.6
follower 166.2
cohort 610.8
associate 616.8
henhouse 228.22
henna
v make red 41.4
adj reddish-brown 40.4
henpeck
nag 510.16
domineer 612.16

henpecked
tied to one's apron strings 326.5
downtrodden 432.16
hep 928.17
Hephaestus 726.8
heptagonal
pentagonal 278.10
seventh 882.19
her female 77.4
cocaine 87.7
self 865.5
herald
n foreshadower 133.5
leading 165.1
harbinger 353.2
king of arms 575.21
delegate 576.2
spokesman 576.5
precursor 816.1
v harbinger 133.14
proclaim 352.13
go before 816.3
be prior 834.3
heraldry pomp 501.6
insignia 647.1
herb
remedy 86.4
marijuana 87.11
plant 310.4
herbicide 1001.3
herbivore eater 8.16
creature 311.3
Herculean
Briarean 15.17
huge 257.20
laborious 725.18
difficult 1013.17
Hercules
strong man 15.6
support 901.3
herd
n guide 574.7
the masses 606.2
guardian 1008.6
v guide 573.9
drive 1070.8
herd together
associate with 582.17
accompany 769.7
come together 770.16
here hereat 159.23
there 221.16
now 838.3
hereabouts
here 159.23
near 223.20
hereafter
n the future 839.1
adj future 839.8
adv in future 839.10
the hereafter
the afterworld 681.2
destiny 839.2
here and now
now 838.3
material 1052.10
the here and now
reality 761.2
the present 838.1
realism 987.2
here and there
in places 159.25
discontinuously 813.5
sparsely 885.8
hereby 384.12
hereditary
protoplasmic 305.18
patrimonial 560.19
innate 767.8
heredity
genetic material 305.9
heritage 560.6
herein 207.10
heresy
false doctrine 688.2
inconsistency 789.2
unconventionality 868.2
unbelief 955.1
error 975.1
heretical
unorthodox 688.9
nonconformist 789.9
unconventional 868.6
unbelieving 955.8
erroneous 975.16
hereto 159.23
heretofore
previously 834.6
formerly 837.13
until now 838.4
herewith
therewith 384.12
hand in hand 769.10
heritage
inheritance 479.2
heredity 560.6
hermaphrodite
n intersex 75.17
adj androgynal 75.31
hermeneutics
exegetics 341.8
criticism 723.1
Hermes 353.1
hermetically sealed 293.12
hermetics 345.5
hermit recluse 584.5
ascetic 667.2
religious 699.16
oddity 870.4
hero victor 411.2
brave person 492.8
god 659.5
celebrity 662.9
godling 678.3
role 704.10
lead 707.6
ideal 786.4
heroic eminent 247.9
huge 257.20
courageous 492.17
magnanimous 652.6
vocal 708.50
poetic 720.15
traditional 842.12
heroics
rashness 493.1
boasting 502.1
heroine
brave person 492.8
hero 659.5
celebrity 662.9
godling 678.3
role 704.10
lead 707.6
heroism
glory 247.2
courage 492.1
magnanimity 652.2
hero worship
love 104.1
respect 155.1
praise 509.5
idolatry 697.1
hero-worship
respect 155.4
praise 509.12
Herr 76.7
hesitancy demur 325.2
hesitation 362.3
caution 494.1
uncertainty 971.1
hesitant
demurring 325.7
tentative 362.11
cautious 494.8
uncertain 971.16
hesitate demur 325.4
pause 362.7
stammer 525.8
procrastinate 846.11
hang in doubt 971.10
hesitation demur 325.2
hesitance 362.3
caution 494.1
stammering 525.3
procrastination 846.5
uncertainty 971.1
heterodoxy
unorthodoxy 688.1
inconsistency 789.2
unconventionality 868.2
error 975.1
heterogeneity
difference 780.1
multiformity 783.1
inconsistency 789.2
inequality 791.1
heterogeneous
different 780.7
diversified 783.4
mixed 797.14
heterosexual 75.13
het up
excited 105.22
angry 152.30
heated 1020.29
heuristic
examining 938.37
experimental 942.11
hew form 262.7
sever 802.11
hex
n curse 513.1
sorceress 690.8
spell 691.1
bad influence 1000.4
v curse 513.5
bewitch 691.9
work evil 1000.6
bring bad luck 1011.12
hexagonal
pentagonal 278.10
sixth 882.18
hey oh! 122.20
greetings! 585.15
howdy! 585.16
hail! 983.23
hi greetings! 585.15
hey! 983.23
hiatus interval 224.1
opening 292.1
deficiency 795.2
interruption 813.2
hibernate
aestivate 22.15
do nothing 329.2
lie idle 331.16
be latent 519.3
hibernation sleep 22.2
inactivity 331.1
hiccup
n breathing 2.21
belch 909.9
v belch 909.28
hick
n bungler 414.9
simple soul 416.3
peasant 606.6
oaf 924.5
adj not urbane 233.8
hickey sore 85.37
blemish 1004.1
thing 1052.5
hidden invisible 32.5
secret 345.11
concealed 346.11
latent 519.5
implied 519.7
recondite 522.16
hidden agenda 375.1
hide
n fur 4.2
lamina 296.2
v disappear 34.2
conceal 346.6
conceal oneself 346.8
store up 386.11
defeat 412.9
punish 604.15
hideaway
hiding place 346.4
sanctum 584.6
retreat 1009.5
hideous horrid 98.19
terrible 127.30
ugly 1015.11
hideout
hiding place 346.4
retreat 1009.5
hide out 346.8
hiding
n covering 295.1
concealment 346.1
hiding place 346.4
defeat 412.1
punishment 604.5
adj concealing 346.15
hiding place
hideaway 346.4
retreat 1009.5
hie speed 174.8
travel 177.18
hiemal seasonal 313.9

cold 1023.14
hierarchy
rank 245.2
mastership 417.7
the authorities 575.15
class 607.1
government 612.4
hierocracy 698.7
continuity 807.2
class structure 809.4
hieroglyphic
representation 349.1
phonetic symbol 546.2
higgledy-piggledy
n jumble 810.3
adj confused 810.16
adv nonuniformly 782.4
in disorder 810.17
high
n stupor 22.6
substance abuse 87.1
intoxication 88.1
excitement 105.1
weather map 317.4
secondary school 567.4
price 738.9
gear 1040.9
adj high-pitched 58.13
nasty 64.7
strong 68.8
malodorous 71.5
bent 87.24
drunk 88.33
overjoyed 95.17
excited 105.20
cheerful 109.11
lofty 136.11
spacious 158.11
great 247.9
high-reaching 272.14
tainted 393.41
phonetic 524.30
noble 608.10
expensive 632.11
magnanimous 652.6
eminent 662.18
raised 912.9
excessive 993.16
adv on high 272.21
intemperately 669.10
high and dry
stuck 855.16
in safety 1007.6
stranded 1013.27
dry 1066.7
high and low 158.13
high-and-mighty
lordly 141.11
eminent 662.18
highball
n drink 88.9
poker 759.10
v speed 174.9
highborn
upper-class 607.10
wellborn 608.11
highbrow
snob 141.7
intellectual 929.1
high-class 999.14
high dudgeon 152.7
higher-up
superior 249.4
politics 610.7
highest
n supremacy 249.3
adj top 198.10
superlative 249.13
higher 272.19
almighty 677.17
paramount 997.24
highfalutin
n boasting 502.2
bombast 545.2
adj lofty 136.11
arrogant 141.9
ostentatious 501.18
inflated 502.12
grandiloquent 545.8
high-flown
lofty 136.11
arrogant 141.9
exaggerated 355.4
ostentatious 501.18
inflated 502.12
grandiloquent 545.8
absurd 923.11
high-flying
aspiring 100.28
ostentatious 501.18
grandiloquent 545.8
high frequency 1034.12
high-frequency 1034.28
high-handed 417.16
High Holy Day 20.4
high hopes 124.1
high horse 141.1
high jinks 743.4
highland
n highlands 237.1
uplands 272.3
adj rustic 233.6
upland 272.17
highlands
the country 233.1
high country 237
uplands 237.1
highland 272.3
high life
society 578.6
upper class 607.2
aristocracy 608.1
highlight
n feature 997.7
light 1025.1
v manifest 348.5
signify 517.17
specify 865.11
call attention to 983.10
emphasize 997.14
illuminate 1025.28
high-living 669.8
highly 247.15
high-minded
lofty 136.11
honest 644.13
magnanimous 652.6
Highness 648.2
high on the hog
intemperately 669.10
prosperous 1010.12
high-pitched
strident 58.13
high 272.14
high point 997.6
high-powered
powerful 18.12
important 997.17
high pressure
inducement 375.3
coercion 424.3
importunity 440.3
urgency 997.4
high-pressure
v urge 375.14
coerce 424.8
adj powerful 18.12
climatal 317.13
urgent 997.22
high priest top dog 575.4
religious figure 699.9
high profile 31.2
high-profile 31.7
high-quality 999.14
high-rise 272.14
high school 567.4
high society
society 578.6
upper class 607.2
aristocracy 608.1
high-society
socially prominent 578.16
upper-class 607.10
high-spirited
excitable 105.28
mischievous 322.6
high-strung
excitable 105.28
touchy 110.21
nervous 128.11
hightail speed 174.9
run off 188.12
high tech 928.10
high-tech 928.28
high time fun 743.2
good opportunity 843.3
lateness 846.1
highway 383.5
highway interchange 170.2
highwayman 483.5
highway robbery
theft 482.3
overcharge 632.5
hijack coerce 424.7
rob 482.16
hike
n walk 177.10
increase 251.1
lift 912.2
v march 177.30
increase 251.4
enlarge 259.4
elevate 912.5
hilarious merry 109.15
humorous 488.4
festive 743.28
hilarity
merriment 109.5
laughter 116.4
humorousness 488.1
hill
n down 237.4
plateau 272.4
bulge 283.3
baseball 745.1
pile 770.10
v pile 770.19
hillbilly
n wilderness settler 227.10
peasant 606.6
adj not urbane 233.8
hill of beans
zilch 762.3
trifle 998.5
hilly
rolling 237.8
knobby 272.18
hind
n female animal 77.10
hoofed animal 311.5
peasant 606.6
adj rear 217.9
hind end 217.1
hinder
v restrain 428.7
fend off 460.10
delay 846.8
impede 1012.10
adj rear 217.9
hindquarter 217.3
hindrance
restraint 428.1
delay 846.2
impediment 1012
hindering 1012.1
hindsight 989.4
hinge
n joint 800.4
crisis 843.4
axle 915.5
v hook 800.8
depend 959.6
hint
n tinge 62.3
soupçon 248.4
remainder 256.1
warning 399.1
piece of advice 422.2
indication 517.3
clue 517.9
implication 519.2
gentle hint 551.4
admixture 797.7
suggestion 951.5
memory 989.6
v augur 133.12
promise 133.13
signify 517.17
imply 519.4
intimate 551.10
hinterland
n inland 207.3
setting 209.2
region 231.1
back country 233.2
adj inland 207.7
back 233.9
hip
n side 218.1
joint 800.4
adj fashionable 578.11
knowledgeable 928.17

hippie
n nonconformist 868.3
adj unconventional 868.6
hippo
heavyweight 257.12
behemoth 257.14
pachyderm 311.4
hippopotamus
behemoth 257.14
pachyderm 311.4
hire
n rental 615.6
pay 624.4
fee 630.6
v employ 615.14
rent 615.15
rent out 615.16
hireling
n mercenary 461.17
employee 577.3
adj employed 615.20
corruptible 645.23
hirsute hairy 3.24
feathery 3.27
bristly 288.9
nappy 294.7
his nibs 997.11
hiss
n sibilation 57.1
boo 508.3
speech defect 525.1
v sibilate 57.2
growl 60.4
bubble 320.4
boo 508.10
speak 524.25
hissing
n audio distortion 50.13
sibilation 57.1
ridicule 508.1
boo 508.3
adj sibilant 57.3
ridiculing 508.12
hist hark! 48.16
hey! 983.23
historian
annalist 550.2
cliometrician 719.4
historical
historic 719.7
fictional 722.7
real 761.15
obvious 970.15
true 973.13
historicity
reality 761.2
truth 973.1
historiography 719.1
history
n record 549.1
the investigation of the past 719
the historical discipline 719.1
the past 837.1
adj ruined 395.29
histrionic
emotionalistic 93.19
affected 500.15
theatrical 501.24
dramatic 704.33
hit
n dose 87.20
excitement 105.3
homicide 308.2
success 409.4
score 409.5
criticism 510.4
stage show 704.4
popular music 708.7
game 745.3
blackjack 759.11
blow 902.4
v impress 93.15
travel 177.19
arrive 186.6
contact 223.10
kill 308.14
beg 440.15
attack 459.14
criticize 510.14
swing 745.5
play 751.4
agree 788.6
collide 902.13
strike 902.14
shoot 904.12
impress 931.19
discover 941.2
hit and miss
n experiment 942.1
adj slipshod 340.12
carelessly 340.18
hit-and-run
v run over 910.7
adj dastardly 491.12
hit below the belt
n unfairness 650.2
v do wrong 650.6
hit bottom
base on 199.6
decline 393.17
be changed 852.6
hitch
n pang 26.2
gait 177.12
term 825.4
jerk 905.3
obstacle 1012.4
crux 1013.8
v way of walking 177.28
beat one's way 177.31
join in marriage 563.14
hook 800.8
jerk 905.5
tend 1070.7
hitchhike 177.31
hitchhiker 178.6
hitherto
previously 834.6
formerly 837.13
hit home 903.8
hit it big 1010.11
hit it off 587.9
hit list 871.1
hit man
killer 308.11
violent person 671.9
hit on
make advances 439.8
burlesque 508.11
come across 941.3
hit or miss
slipshod 340.12
carelessly 340.18
unordered 810.12
haphazardly 810.18
experimental 942.11
experimentally 942.13
vague 971.19
hitter 745.2
hit the books 570.12
hit the jackpot 409.9
hit the nail on the head
solve 940.2
be right 973.10
hit the road
wander 177.23
depart 188.7
hit the sack 22.18
hit the spot 95.7
hit up beg 440.15
borrow 621.3
hit upon arrive at 186.7
light upon 194.10
come across 941.3
HIV or human immunodeficiency virus 85.42
hive
n nest 228.25
hive of industry 739.2
assemblage 770.6
multitude 884.3
v settle 159.17
come together 770.16
hives allergy 85.34
skin eruption 85.36
hoar
n frost 1023.7
adj white 37.7
gray 39.4
gray-haired 39.5
aged 303.16
hoard
n store 386.1
gain 472.3
v store up 386.11
not use 390.5
hoarfrost 1023.7
hoarse raucous 58.15
inarticulate 525.12
hoary white 37.7
gray 39.4
gray-haired 39.5
aged 303.16
old 842.10
traditional 842.12
frosty 1023.17
hoax
n fake 354.13
deception 356.7
v deceive 356.14
hobble
n slow motion 175.2
gait 177.12
shackle 428.4
predicament 1013.5
v disable 19.10
go slow 175.6
way of walking 177.28
cripple 393.14
bind 428.10
hamper 1012.11
hobby
n avocation 724.7
adj avocational 724.17
hobbyhorse
n avocation 724.7
toy 743.16
v pitch 182.55
hobgoblin
frightener 127.9
goblin 680.8
Hobgoblin 680.7
hobnob with
associate with 582.17
be friends 587.9
hobo
n vagabond 178.3
bum 331.9
beggar 440.8
wretch 660.2
transient 828.4
oddity 870.4
v wander 177.23
Hobson's choice
dilemma 371.3
restriction 428.3
choicelessness 963.6
certainty 970.1
hock
n leg 177.14
pledge 438.2
v pledge 438.10
hockey sports 749
ice hockey 749.1
hocus-pocus
n juggling 356.5
trick 356.6
nonsense 520.2
occultism 689.1
incantation 691.4
v deceive 356.14
trick 356.19
hodgepodge
miscellany 770.13
mix 797.6
jumble 810.3
hoe 1069.17
hog
n pig 80.13
drugs 87.18
swine 311.9
self-seeker 651.3
glutton 672.3
v monopolize 469.6
appropriate 480.19
hoggish
piggish 80.24
greedy 100.27
ungulate 311.46
monopolistic 469.11
gluttonous 672.6
hogwash
humbug 354.14
refuse 391.4
bull 520.3
hog-wild 105.25
ho-hum dull 117.6
tedious 118.15
same 781.6
hoi polloi
inferior 250.2
the masses 606.2

hoist
n lift 912.2
lifter 912.3
v elevate 912.5
hoity-toity
n arrogance 141.1
adj arrogant 141.9
upper-class 607.10
interj my! 122.21
hokey 336.8
hokum
humbug 354.14
bull 520.3
acting 704.8
hold
n cellar 197.17
storehouse 386.6
custody 429.5
stronghold 460.6
possession 469.1
purchase 474.2
seizure 480.2
control 612.2
notation 709.12
influence 894.1
footing 901.5
handle 901.11
purchase 906.2
v use 87.22
extend 158.9
refrain 329.3
affirm 334.5
store up 386.11
restrain 428.7
confine 429.12
possess 469.4
grip 474.6
keep 474.7
exist 761.8
include 772.3
cohere 803.6
endure 827.6
remain 853.5
stabilize 855.7
sustain 856.4
cease 857.6
support 901.21
obsess 926.25
judge 946.8
conclude 946.10
decide 946.11
think 953.11
be true 973.8
engross 983.13
suffice 991.4
hold a candle to 943.7
hold a grudge 152.12
hold back
suppress 106.8
slow 175.9
reserve 386.12
not use 390.5
restrain 428.7
deny 442.4
withhold 484.6
restrain oneself 668.6
abstain 668.7
delay 846.8
hinder 1012.10
hold down
suppress 428.8
subjugate 432.8
holder container 195.1
possessor 470.1
recipient 479.3
hold fast
remain firm 359.9
stay with it 360.4
restrain 428.7
hold 474.6
stick close 803.8
stand fast 855.11
hold forth offer 439.4
declaim 543.10
expound 568.16
hold in restrain 428.7
retain 474.5
holding
n possession 469.1
estate 471.4
retention 474.1
share 738.3
verdict 946.5
adj addicted 87.25
possessing 469.9
retentive 474.8
supporting 901.23
obsessive 926.34
engrossing 983.20
holdings
supply 386.2
property 471.1
stock 738.2
share 738.3
collection 770.11
hold it! 857.13
hold off demur 325.4
not use 390.5
fend off 460.10
postpone 846.9
procrastinate 846.11
repulse 908.3
hold office
hold a post 609.42
fill an office 724.14
take one's turn 825.5
hold on
v direct 161.5
stay with it 360.4
hold 474.6
trade 737.23
cohere 803.6
endure 827.6
wait 846.12
continue 856.3
interj cease! 857.13
hold out
not weaken 15.10
remain firm 359.9
stay with it 360.4
balk 361.7
offer 439.4
resist 453.2
stand fast 453.4
strike 727.10
endure 827.6
stand fast 855.11
holdover
remainder 256.1
officeholder 610.11
hold together
cooperate 450.3
agree 788.6
join 800.11
cohere 803.6
be true 973.8
holdup slowing 175.4
theft 482.3
overcharge 632.5
delay 846.2
hindrance 1012.1
time constants 1041.11
hold up
not weaken 15.10
slow 175.9
buoy 298.8
stay with it 360.4
restrain 428.7
help 449.12
resist 453.2
rob 482.14
flaunt 501.17
overprice 632.7
delay 846.8
postpone 846.9
stand fast 855.11
support 901.21
elevate 912.5
stand the test 942.10
be true 973.8
hinder 1012.10
hole
n sty 80.11
atmosphere 184.32
compartment 197.2
cellar 197.17
crack 224.2
hovel 228.11
lair 228.26
disapproved place 228.28
small space 258.3
pit 275.2
cavity 284.2
cave 284.5
opening 292.1
perforation 292.3
hiding place 346.4
score 409.5
sewer 654.7
golf 751.1
deficiency 795.2
fault 1003.2
impasse 1013.6
v perforate 292.15
the hole 429.8
hole in one
score 409.5
round 751.3
hole-in-the-wall
nook 197.3
hut 228.9
small space 258.3
holiday
n vacation 20.3
day off 20.4
absence 222.4
celebration 487.1
interim 826.1
pause 857.3
v vacation 20.9
adj vacational 20.10
holier-than-thou
hypocritical 354.33
sanctimonious 693.5
holistic whole 792.9
universal 864.14
holler
n cry 59.1
complaint 115.5
valley 237.7
v cry 59.6
complain 115.16
object 333.5
hollow
n compartment 197.2
valley 237.7
pit 275.2
cavity 284.2
opening 292.1
v be concave 284.12
hollow out 284.13
adj deep 54.11
dull 117.6
vacant 222.14
concave 284.16
insincere 354.32
vain 391.13
empty-headed 922.19
sophistical 936.10
holly 44.4
holocaust
torment 96.7
slaughter 308.1
butchery 308.3
destruction 395.1
oblation 696.7
the Holocaust 308.4
holograph
n autograph 337.3
handwriting 547.3
writing 547.10
document 549.5
adj written 547.22
holy almighty 677.17
sacred 685.7
godly 692.9
holy orders
the ministry 698.1
calling 698.10
major orders 699.4
seven sacraments 701.4
holy table 703.12
holy terror
frightener 127.9
brat 302.4
ruffian 593.4
violent person 671.10
homage respect 155.1
obeisance 155.2
obedience 326.1
submission 433.1
praise 509.5
duty 641.1
fidelity 644.7
worship 696.1
home
n home sweet home 228.2
habitat 228.18
fatherland 232.2
asylum 1009.4
adj residential 228.32
in safety 1007.6
home economics
cooking 11.1

domestic management 573.6
home free 1007.6
the home front 232.2
homeland 232.2
homeless
n poor man 619.4
adj unplaced 160.10
forlorn 584.12
destitute 619.9
alone 872.8
the homeless
the underprivileged 606.4
the poor 619.3
unfortunate 1011.7
homely
comfortable 121.11
humble 137.10
homelike 228.33
common 497.14
plain 499.6
plain-speaking 535.3
informal 581.3
populational 606.8
simple 798.6
ugly 1015.6
homemade 892.18
homemaker 575.2
home office room 197.6
home workplace 739.8
homeopathic 90.15
homeopathy 90.13
homeowner 227.7
home plate 745.1
homer
n mail carrier 353.6
score 409.5
game 745.3
v play 745.5
Homeric huge 257.20
poetic 720.15
home run score 409.5
game 745.3
home schooling elementary school 567.3
teaching 568.1
elementary education 568.5
home shopping purchase 733.1
marketplace 736.2
homesick
wistful 100.23
melancholy 112.23
homespun
n plain speech 535.1
adj rough 288.6
natural 416.6
common 497.14
plain 499.6
plain-speaking 535.3
simple 798.6
made 892.18
homestead home 228.2
farm 1069.8
homesteader
settler 227.9
tenant 470.4
homestretch 820.3
homeward
adj arriving 186.9
adv clockwise 161.24
homework
lesson 568.7
task 724.2
homey
comfortable 121.11
homelike 228.33
informal 581.3
homicidal 308.24
homicide
manslaughter 308.2
killer 308.11
homily lecture 543.3
treatise 556.1
lesson 568.7
homing pigeon 353.6
hominid
n ancient 842.7
adj manlike 312.14
homoerotic 75.30
homogeneity
sameness 778.1
uniformity 781.1
simplicity 798.1
homogeneous
identical 778.7
uniform 781.5
similar 784.10
simple 798.6
homogenized 812.8
homonym word 526.1
the same 778.3
homophone word 526.1
the same 778.3
Homo sapiens 312.1
homosexual
n gay person 75.14
adj homoerotic 75.30
homosexuality
sexuality 75.2
sexual preference 75.10
honcho superior 249.4
chief 575.4
important person 997.11
hone 285.7
hone for 100.16
honest natural 499.7
upright 644.13
veracious 644.16
genuine 973.15
virtuous 653.6
honesty
probity 644.1
veracity 644.3
genuineness 973.7
honey
n sweets 10.40
sweetening 66.2
loved one 104.11
endearment term 562.6
adhesive 803.4
first-rate 999.7
beauty 1016.9
v sweeten 66.3
flatter 511.6
honeybee 311.35
honeycomb
n sweetening 66.2
indentation 284.6
porousness 292.8
v pervade 221.7
perforate 292.15
undermine 393.15
overthrow 395.20
honeydew 66.2
honeyed
sweet 66.4
pleasant 97.6
flattering 511.8
melodious 708.48
honeymoon
n wedding 563.3
v go on a honeymoon 563.16
honk
n blare 53.5
v blare 53.10
quack 60.5
honky-tonk 88.20
honor
n respect 155.1
real estate 471.6
praise 509.5
probity 644.1
token of esteem 646
great honor 646.1
title 648.1
esteem 662.3
prestige 662.4
chastity 664.1
attribution 888.1
notability 997.2
v respect 155.4
execute 437.9
celebrate 487.2
pay in full 624.13
recognize 646.8
confer honor upon 662.12
worship 696.11
honorable
venerable 155.12
honest 644.13
honorary 646.10
reputable 662.15
the Honorable 648.8
honorarium
gratuity 478.5
subsidy 478.8
recompense 624.3
honorary
honorific 646.10
titular 648.7
honored
respected 155.11
distinguished 646.9
reputable 662.15
esteemed 662.16
honorific
n name 527.3
title 648.1
adj respectful 155.8
nominal 527.15
honorary 646.10
titular 648.7
hood
n cover 295.2
mischief-maker 322.3
combatant 461.1
ruffian 593.4
bad person 660.5
violent person 671.10
v cloak 5.40
cover 295.19
top 295.21
hooded clothing 5.45
covered 295.31
hoodlum
mischief-maker 322.3
combatant 461.1
bandit 483.4
ruffian 593.4
violent person 671.10
hoodwink blind 30.7
blindfold 356.17
hooey humbug 354.14
bull 520.3
hoof
n foot 199.5
v dance 705.5
hoofed pedal 199.9
ungulate 311.46
hoofer pedestrian 178.6
dancer 705.3
entertainer 707.1
hoo-ha noise 53.4
bustle 330.4
quarrel 456.6
confusion 810.2
agitation 917.1
hook
n anchor 180.16
angle 278.2
curve 279.2
point of land 283.9
snare 356.13
lure 377.3
v angle 278.5
curve 279.6
trap 356.20
persuade 375.23
acquire 472.9
catch 480.17
rob 482.16
play 751.4
hitch 800.8
hook, line, and sinker 792.13
hookah 89.6
hooked addicted 87.25
angular 278.6
crooked 279.8
hooker ship 180.1
prostitute 665.16
hookup
affiliation 450.2
joining 800.1
combination 805.1
network 1034.8
hook up
cooperate 450.3
yoke 800.10
hook up with 805.4
hooky 222.4
hooligan
mischief-maker 322.3
combatant 461.1
vulgarian 497.6
ruffian 593.4
bad person 660.5
hoop circle 280.3
toy 743.16
basketball 747.1
hoopla
rejoicing 116.1
publicity 352.4
festivity 743.3
hooray
n cheer 116.2

v cheer 116.6
hoot
n cry 59.1
boo 508.3
v cry 59.6
coo 60.5
boo 508.10
a hoot nothing 762.3
trifle 998.5
hootenanny
musical occasion 708.32
thing 1052.5
hop
n opium 87.16
step 177.11
flight 184.9
leap 366.1
dance 705.2
v speed 174.9
way of walking 177.28
fly 184.36
leap 366.5
dance 705.5
hope
n desire 100.1
wish 100.11
aspiration 124
hopefulness 124.1
sanguine expectation 130.2
cardinal virtues 653.4
belief 953.1
possibility 966.1
recourse 1009.2
v be in hopes 124.7
expect 130.5
come 839.6
hoped-for
desired 100.29
expected 130.13
future 839.8
hopeful
n desirer 100.12
optimist 124.6
youngster 302.1
candidate 610.9
adj cheerful 109.11
hoping 124.11
expectant 130.11
probable 968.6
hopeless
apathetic 94.13
unhopeful 125.12
dying 307.33
unskillful 414.15
impossible 967.7
hopped-up
high 87.24
excited 105.20
impatient 135.6
increased 251.7
hop to it
v make haste 401.6
set to work 725.15
interj make haste! 401.17
horde
n the masses 606.2
throng 770.4
v come together 770.16
horizon vision 27.1
field of view 31.3
skyline 201.4
the distance 261.3
horizontal
n plane 201.3
adj level 201.7
straight 277.6
hormone 13.2
horn
n loudspeaker 50.8
noisemaker 53.6
mountain 237.6
projection 285.4
telephone 347.4
alarm 400.1
wind instrument 711.6
saddle parts 901.18
v gore 459.26
horned
crescent-shaped 279.11
pointed 285.9
hornet 311.35
hornet's nest
nest 228.25
danger 1006.1
trouble 1013.3
horn in 214.5
horns of a dilemma
n bewilderment 971.3
dilemma 1013.7
adv uncertainly 971.28
horny lustful 75.27
pointed 285.9
lascivious 665.29
hard 1046.10
horology 832.1
horoscope 1072.20
horrendous
horrid 98.19
terrible 127.30
horrible
horrid 98.19
terrible 127.30
remarkable 247.11
bad 1000.9
hideous 1015.11
horrid horrible 98.19
terrible 127.30
bad 1000.9
hideous 1015.11
horrific horrid 98.19
terrible 127.30
horrified 127.26
horrify offend 98.11
terrify 127.17
horrifying horrid 98.19
terrible 127.30
horripilation
trepidation 127.5
roughness 288.2
cold 1023.2
horror
torment 96.7
hostility 99.2
fear 127.1
frighteningness 127.2
frightener 127.9
abomination 638.2
eyesore 1015.4
horror-stricken 127.26
hors d'oeuvre bite 8.2
appetizer 10.9
sample 62.4
horse
n symbol of strength 15.8
heroin 87.9
beast of burden 176.8
horseflesh 311.10
exerciser 725.7
jockey 757.2
trestle 901.16
v give a lift 912.7
horse around
misbehave 322.4
play 743.23
create disorder 810.11
be foolish 923.6
trifle 998.15
horseback
n ridge 237.5
adv on horseback 177.44
astride 901.25
horseback riding 177.6
horsehair
hair 3.2
string 711.20
horseman 178.8
horsemanship
riding 177.6
skill 413.1
animal husbandry 1070.1
horse of a different color 780.3
horseplay
misbehavior 322.1
buffoonery 489.5
horsepower 18.4
horse race
contest 457.3
challenge 457.12
election 609.15
race 757.3
horse-race 457.19
horse racing
the sport of kings 757
the turf 757.1
horse sense 920.6
horseshoe 279.5
hortatory
persuasive 375.29
advisory 422.8
educational 568.18
horticultural
floral 310.38
olericultural 1069.21
horticulture
flower 310.24
gardening 1069.2
hosanna
n cheer 116.2
paean 696.3
interj hallelujah! 696.17
hose
n hosiery 5.28
tube 239.6
v deceive 356.19
moisten 1065.12
hosiery 5.28
hosing deception 356.9
wetting 1065.6
hospice inn 228.15
asylum 1009.4
hospitable
comforting 121.13
receptive 187.16
liberal 485.4
sociable 582.22
welcoming 585.11
cordial 587.16
hospital 91.21
hospitality
comfortableness 121.2
receptivity 187.9
housing 225.3
liberality 485.1
sociability 582.1
cordiality 585.1
hospitableness 585.1
congeniality 587.6
hospitalize 85.50
host
n army 461.23
receptionist 585.5
master of ceremonies 743.20
throng 770.4
group of animals 770.5
multitude 884.3
broadcaster 1034.23
v entertain 585.8
Host 701.7
hostage 438.2
hostel 228.15
hostess crew 185.4
attendant 577.5
waiter 577.7
host 585.5
hostile dark 38.9
unpleasant 98.17
oppositional 451.8
warlike 458.21
antagonistic 589.10
contrary 779.6
disagreeing 789.6
counteractive 900.8
adverse 1011.13
dislike 99.8
hostility darkness 38.2
bad feeling 93.7
unpleasantness 98.1
malice 99.2
contraposition 215.1
antagonism 451.2
contention 457.1
warlikeness 458.11
hate 589.3
contrariety 779.1
hot
v heat 1020.17
adj red 41.6
zestful 68.7
lustful 75.27
in heat 75.28
feverish 85.58
fervent 93.18
zealous 101.9
passionate 105.22
hot-tempered 110.25
angry 152.30
near 223.14
fugitive 368.16
stolen 482.23
distinguished 662.16
lascivious 665.29
fiery 671.22
syncopated 709.29
speculative 759.27

brand-new 841.10
on the right scent 941.10
excellent 999.13
torrid 1019.25
heated 1020.29
charged 1032.34
radioactive 1037.11
hot air boasting 502.2
bull 520.3
chatter 540.3
bombast 545.2
superheated air 1019.9
hotbed birthplace 886.8
productiveness 890.6
nursery 1069.11
hot-blooded
lustful 75.27
zealous 101.9
warm-blooded 1019.29
hot dog
n show-off 501.11
v grandstand 413.20
showboat 501.16
interj oh boy ! 95.21
hotel 228.15
hotheaded
passionate 105.29
hot-tempered 110.25
reckless 493.8
fiery 671.22
hothouse 1069.11
hot line
telephone call 347.13
line 347.17
hot seat
capital punishment 604.7
execution 605.5
predicament 1013.5
hot spot
entertainment 743.13
danger 1006.1
predicament 1013.5
hot spring
health resort 91.23
hot water 1019.10
hot tub bath 79.8
fitness 84.1
hot under the collar
heated 105.22
angry 152.30
hot water
predicament 1013.5
boiling water 1019.10
hound
n enthusiast 101.5
beast 660.6
v annoy 96.13
make anxious 126.5
follow 166.3
pursue 382.8
hunt 382.9
persecute 389.7
hour period 824.1
moment 824.2
time of day 832.2
the present 838.1
hourglass 260.1
hourglass figure 260.1
house
n audience 48.6
cabin 197.9
dwelling 228.5
structure 266.2
council 423.1
race 559.4
family 559.5
lineage 560.4
company 617.9
cloister 703.6
theater 704.14
market 736.1
workplace 739.1
casino 759.19
attender 918.2
astrology 1072.20
v domicile 225.10
accommodate 385.10
house arrest arrest 429.6
form of punishment 604.2
houseboat 228.5
housebound 331.18
housebreak
accustom 373.9
domesticate 432.11
train 568.13
housebreaker 483.3
housebreaking
habituation 373.7
burglary 482.5
training 568.3
housebroken
accustomed 373.15
subdued 432.15
meek 433.15
mannerly 504.16
household
n home 228.2
family 559.5
adj residential 228.32
simple 499.6
usual 869.9
well-known 928.27
household effects
furniture 229.1
property 471.1
householder
homeowner 227.7
proprietor 470.2
housekeeper
steward 574.4
major-domo 577.10
housekeeping
domesticity 228.3
domestic management 573.6
house of cards
weakness 16.1
danger 1006.1
fragility 1050.2
houseplant 310.3
housewares 735.4
housewarming 770.2
housewife 575.2
housing
n hangar 184.24
domiciliation 225.3
abode 228.1
quarters 228.4
cover 295.2
horsecloth 295.11
radio 1034.3
adj constructional 892.15
hovel sty 80.11
dump 228.11
hover fly 184.36
take off 193.10
levitate 298.9
hesitate 362.7
be imminent 840.2
Hovercraft
hovercar 179.22
flying platform 181.7
how 384.9
how come 888.8
how do you do? 585.15
how-do-you-do
greeting 585.4
predicament 1013.5
however
notwithstanding 338.8
anyhow 384.10
howl
n noise 53.3
screech 58.4
cry 59.1
animal noise 60.1
lament 115.3
complaint 115.5
objection 333.2
v screech 58.8
cry 59.6
grunt 60.2
wail 115.13
complain 115.16
sigh 318.21
object 333.5
howler joke 489.6
goof 975.6
howling
n audio distortion 50.13
animal noise 60.1
lamentation 115.1
adj shrill 58.14
yowling 60.6
frenzied 105.25
plaintive 115.19
remarkable 247.11
hoyden
n mannish female 76.9
schoolgirl 302.8
adj mannish 76.14
hub convergence 169.1
center 208.2
axle 915.5
fireplace 1020.11
hubbub noise 53.3
outcry 59.4
bustle 330.4
turbulence 671.2
commotion 810.4
agitation 917.1
argumentation 935.4
hubris
presumptuousness 141.2
insolence 142.1
rashness 493.1
presumption 640.2
confidence 970.5
hubristic lordly 141.11
insolent 142.9
rash 493.7
presumptuous 640.11
confident 970.21
excessive 993.16
huckster
n publicist 352.9
vendor 730.5
v bargain 731.18
vend 734.9
huddle
n conference 541.6
v stay near 223.12
come together 770.16
hue
n color 35.1
color quality 35.6
nature 767.4
v color 35.14
hue and cry noise 53.3
outcry 59.4
publicity 352.4
pursuit 382.1
alarm 400.1
huff
n dudgeon 152.7
v intimidate 127.20
provoke 152.24
enlarge 259.4
blow 318.20
huffing 2.32
huffy irascible 110.20
provoked 152.27
hug
n hold 474.2
embrace 562.3
welcome 585.2
greeting 585.4
v stay near 223.12
hold 474.6
harbor 474.7
seize 480.14
embrace 562.18
welcome 585.9
cohere 803.6
huge
herculean 15.17
large 247.7
immense 257.20
hula hoop 743.16
hulk ship 180.1
largeness 257.11
wreck 393.8
body 1052.3
hulking bulky 257.19
bungling 414.20
unwieldy 1013.19
hull
n ship 180.1
shell 295.16
seed vessel 310.30
v husk 6.9
hullabaloo noise 53.4
outcry 59.4
bustle 330.4
hullo! 585.15
hum
n audio distortion 50.13
humming 52.7
vocal music 708.13
series 812.2
v thrum 52.13
stammer 525.8
sing 708.38
persist 781.3

human
n person 312.5
adj kind 143.13
pitying 145.7
hominal 312.13
human behavior 321.3
human being 312.5
hum and haw
prevaricate 344.7
hesitate 362.7
stammer 525.8
humane kind 143.13
pitying 145.7
lenient 427.7
human error 975.1
humanism
naturalistic humanism 312.11
freethinking 695.7
scholarship 928.5
humanist
freethinker 695.13
scholar 929.3
humanitarian
n philanthropist 143.8
adj benevolent 143.15
humanity
kindness 143.1
pity 145.1
humankind 312.1
human nature 312.6
humanness 312.8
leniency 427.1
humankind
human race 312.1
mankind 312.1
human nature
humanity 312.6
humanness 312.8
human race 312.1
humble
v humiliate 137.4
conquer 412.10
subdue 432.9
demote 447.3
adj penitent 113.9
resigned 134.10
lowly 137.10
modest 139.9
inferior 250.6
meek 433.15
populational 606.8
unselfish 652.5
humbled
penitent 113.9
reduced 137.13
humiliated 137.14
conquered 412.17
subdued 432.15
humbug
n sham 354.3
quackery 354.7
humbuggery 354.14
hoax 356.7
impostor 357.6
nonsense 520.2
v deceive 356.14
humdinger 999.7
humdrum
n tedium 118.1
repetitiousness 849.4
adj tedious 118.9
prosaic 721.5
same 781.6
monotonous 849.15
humectant 1065.18
humid sultry 1019.28
moist 1065.15
humidifier 1065.3
humidify 1065.12
humidity
sultriness 1019.6
humidness 1065.2
humiliate
mortify 98.13
humble 137.4
offend 156.5
subdue 432.9
demote 447.3
disgrace 661.8
humiliating
mortifying 98.21
humiliative 137.15
insulting 156.8
disgraceful 661.11
humiliation
chagrin 96.4
mortification 98.6
embarrassment 137.2
indignity 156.2
snub 157.2
subdual 432.4
demotion 447.1
disgrace 661.5
humility
resignation 134.2
humbleness 137.1
selflessness 137.1
modesty 139.1
inferiority 250.1
meekness 433.5
unselfishness 652.1
hummock 237.4
hummocky 283.15
humongous
remarkable 247.10
huge 257.20
humor
n lymph 2.24
blood 2.25
personality tendency 92.11
caprice 364.1
pleasantry 489.1
wit 489.1
nature 767.4
disposition 978.3
mood 978.4
moisture 1065.1
v indulge 427.6
humorist wit 489.12
writer 547.15
author 718.4
humorless 112.21
humorous funny 488.4
witty 489.15
amusing 743.27
hump
n mountain 237.6
bulge 283.3
v speed 174.9
curve 279.6
be active 330.14
make haste 401.6
exert oneself 725.9
humpbacked
hunchbacked 265.13
bowed 279.10
hun 395.8
hunch
n feeling 93.1
premonition 133.1
bulge 283.3
forewarning 399.2
sense 934.3
guess 951.4
suggestion 951.5
v curve 279.6
crouch 913.8
hunchbacked 265.13
hunch over 913.8
hundred region 231.5
century 882.8
hung 202.9
hunger
n eating 8.1
craving 100.6
appetite 100.7
tendency 896.1
v eat 8.20
hunger for 100.19
hung jury 596.6
hungry
craving 100.24
hungering 100.25
hung up
distressed 96.22
late 846.16
obsessed 926.33
hunk strong man 15.6
hulk 15.7
real man 76.6
amount 244.2
lump 257.10
accumulation 770.9
piece 793.3
hunker down 913.8
hunky strong 15.15
virile 76.13
comely 1016.19
hunky-dory 999.13
hunt
n hunting 382.2
search 938.15
v pursue 382.8
go hunting 382.9
persecute 389.7
seek 938.30
search 938.30
hunter
stalking-horse 311.13
sporting dog 311.18
pursuer 382.4
huntsman 382.5
shooter 904.8
seeker 938.18
hunt for 938.29
hunting
n pursuit 382.1
gunning 382.2
search 938.15
adj pursuing 382.11
hurdle
n leap 366.1
obstacle 1012.4
v leap 366.5
hurdy-gurdy 711.14
hurl
n throw 904.3
v place violently 159.13
throw 904.10
hurler
baseball team 745.2
thrower 904.7
hurling
field hockey 749.4
throwing 904.2
hurly-burly
excitement 105.4
agitation 917.1
hurrah
n cry 59.1
cheer 116.2
v cheer 116.6
interj bravo! 509.22
hurricane
outburst 105.9
windstorm 318.12
storm 671.4
hurried
hasty 401.9
rushed 401.11
reckless 493.8
hurry
n agitation 105.4
velocity 174.1
haste 401.1
v move 172.5
speed 174.8
hasten 401.4
make haste 401.5
hurry up
v accelerate 174.10
hasten 401.4
make haste 401.5
interj make haste! 401.16
hurt
n pain 26.1
discomfort 96.5
impairment 393.1
disadvantage 996.2
evil 1000.3
v pain 26.7
anguish 26.8
afflict 96.17
suffer 96.19
offend 152.21
impair 393.9
injure 393.13
collide 902.13
work evil 1000.6
adj pained 26.9
in pain 96.23
impaired 393.27
hurting
n pain 26.1
impairment 393.1
adj pained 26.9
painful 26.10
hurtle
speed 174.8
thrust 902.12
collide 902.13
hurt one's feelings
pain 96.17
offend 152.21

husband
n married man 563.7
master 575.1
v reserve 386.12
economize 635.4
husband and wife 563.9
husbandry
direction 573.1
domestic management 573.6
thrift 635.1
agriculture 1069.1
hush
n silence 51.1
sibilation 57.1
v fall silent 51.7
silence 51.8
sibilate 57.2
cover up 345.8
calm 670.7
interj silence! 51.14
hushed
silent 51.10
quiescent 173.12
secret 345.11
restrained 670.11
hush-hush
v silence 51.8
cover up 345.8
adj secret 345.11
hush money
bribe 378.2
fee 624.5
husk
n hull 295.16
seed vessel 310.30
v hull 6.9
husky
n beast of burden 176.8
adj strong 15.15
raucous 58.15
hussy
impudent person 142.5
strumpet 665.14
hustle
n enterprise 330.7
haste 401.1
thrust 902.2
v drive 330.13
deceive 356.19
hasten 401.4
make haste 401.5
work hard 725.13
thrust 902.12
shake 917.11
hustler speeder 174.5
man of action 330.8
cheater 357.4
prostitute 665.16
gambler 759.22
hut 228.9
hutch
n hut 228.9
storehouse 386.6
v store 386.10
Hyades nymph 678.9
star 1072.8
hyaline
n the heavens 1072.2
adj glass 1029.5
hybrid
n hybrid word 526.11
crossbreed 797.8
adj mongrel 797.15
hydrant
fire hydrant 239.12
extinguisher 1022.3
hydrate 1060.8
hydraulic
hydrologic 1039.11
watery 1065.16
hydraulics
fluid dynamics 1039.4
liquid 1061.2
hydrodynamics
flow 238.4
hydraulics 1039.4
hydroelectric 1032.30
hydrogenate
chemicalize 1060.8
vaporize 1067.8
hydrogen bomb 1038.16
hydrologic 1039.11
hydrology 1039.4
hydrolysis 806.2
hydrolytic
chemical terms 806.6
electrolytic 1032.32
hydromechanic 1039.11
hydrometer
density 1045.8
flowmeter 1061.3
hydrometric 1039.11
hydrophobia
disease 85.41
rabies 926.6
hydroplane
n seaplane 181.8
v fly 184.36
hydrops 85.9
hydrosphere
ocean 240.1
water 1065.3
hydrostatic 1039.11
hydrous 1065.16
hyena fox 311.20
savage 593.5
beast 660.6
hygiene
sanitation 79.3
hygienics 81.2
hygienic
sanitary 79.27
healthful 81.5
hygienist 81.3
hygrology 1065.9
hygrometer
weather instrument 317.8
moisture 1065.10
hygroscopic 1065.19
hymen membrane 2.6
wedding 563.3
hymn
n thanks 150.2
paean 696.3
sacred music 708.17
v glorify 696.12
sing 708.38
hymnal
n score 708.28
adj vocal 708.50
hymnist 710.20
hype
n commendation 509.3
v urge 375.14
commend 509.11
hyper
overwrought 105.26
overactive 330.24
hyperactive 330.24
hyperbola 279.2
hyperbole
misrepresentation 350.1
exaggeration 355.1
excess 993.1
hyperborean
northern 161.14
out-of-the-way 261.9
cold 1023.14
hypercritical
overfastidious 495.12
critical 510.23
Hyperion
beauty 1016.10
sun 1072.14
hyperkinetic 330.24
hypersensitive
sensitive 24.12
touchy 110.21
overfastidious 495.12
hypersensitivity
sensitivity 24.3
touchiness 110.5
overfastidiousness 495.4
hypertension
symptom 85.9
cardiovascular disease 85.19
hypertext 1042.2
hyperthermia 85.7
hypertrophy
n oversize 257.5
excess 993.1
v grow 14.2
expand 259.7
hyphenate
grammaticize 530.16
hypnosis
mesmeric sleep 22.7
trance 691.3
hypnotherapy 92.6
hypnotic
n sleep-inducer 22.10
adj sleep-inducing 22.23
hypnoid 22.24
sedative 86.45
alluring 377.8
engrossing 983.20
hypnotism 22.8
hypnotist 22.9
hypnotize
put to sleep 22.20
fascinate 377.7
cast a spell 691.7
have influence 894.11
engross 983.13
hypnotized
wondering 122.9
enchanted 691.12
gripped 983.18
hypochondria
unhealthiness 85.3
hypochondriasis 112.4
hypochondriac
neurotic 92.39
dejected 112.22
hypocrisy
hypocriticalness 354.6
deceit 356.3
affectation 500.1
sanctimony 693.1
doubleness 873.1
hypocrite
imitator 336.4
phony 357.8
pietist 693.3
hypocritical
canting 354.33
pretexted 376.5
assumed 500.16
two 873.6
sanctimonious 693.5
hypodermic
n inoculation 91.16
needle 285.3
adj cutaneous 2.27
hypodermis 2.4
hypostasis
noun 530.5
embodiment 763.4
essence 767.2
matter 1052.2
hypostatize 763.5
hypotension 85.9
hypothecate
pledge 438.10
theorize 951.9
hypothermia
heat 1019.1
refrigeration anesthesia 1024.2
hypothesis
premise 935.7
theory 951.1
supposition 951.2
hypothesize
reason 935.15
theorize 951.9
hypothetical
dialectic 935.22
theoretical 951.13
hysteresis
magnetism 1032.7
time constants 1041.11
hysteria 105.8
hysteric neurotic 92.39
emotionalistic 93.19
overzealous 101.12
hysterical
emotionalistic 93.19
overzealous 101.12
frenzied 105.25
humorous 488.5
hysteron proteron
jumble 810.3
specious argument 936.3
I self 865.5
one 872.3
I'll drink to that 973.25
I'll say 973.25
iambic 720.16
ibid 778.9
ice
n glace 10.47

amphetamines 87.4
smoothness 287.3
jewelry 498.5
frozen water 1023.5
coolant 1024.7
fragility 1050.2
v top 198.9
kill 308.14
play 749.7
hail 1023.11
refrigerate 1024.10
freeze 1024.11
adj frozen 1024.14
iceberg 1023.5
icebox 1024.4
icebreaker 180.6
ice-cold cold 1023.14
frozen 1024.14
ice cream 10.47
ice cubes ice 1023.5
coolant 1024.7
iced prearranged 965.8
assured 970.20
cooled 1024.13
ice hockey 749.1
ice pack ice 1023.5
cooler 1024.3
ice rink 749.1
ice-skate 177.35
ice skates 179.21
ichor humor 2.24
blood 2.25
pus 12.6
icicle 1023.5
icing sweets 10.40
topping 198.3
game 749.3
the icing on the cake 407.3
icky nasty 64.7
filthy 80.23
bad 1000.8
icon aspect 33.3
image 349.5
symbol 517.2
sign 518.6
picture 712.11
copy 785.1
substitute 862.2
computer term 1042.18
iconoclasm 695.9
iconoclast
destroyer 395.8
irreligionist 695.10
iconography 349.1
iconology 517.2
icterus yellow skin 43.2
symptom 85.9
ictus seizure 85.6
accentuation 524.10
accent 709.25
meter 720.7
spasm 917.6
icy unfeeling 94.9
seasonal 313.9
reticent 344.10
aloof 583.6
unfriendly 589.9
cold 1023.14
frozen 1024.14
id psyche 92.28
instinct 934.2
ID 517.11
idea hint 248.4
intention 380.1
plan 381.1
advice 422.1
meaning 518.1
reason 886.2
thinking 931.1
notion 932.1
thought 932.1
suggestion 951.5
opinion 953.6
ideal
n motive 375.1
paragon 659.4
beau ideal 786.4
rule 869.4
philosophy 932.2
idealism 986.7
pattern of perfection 1002.4
adj model 786.8
normal 869.8
ideational 932.9
theoretical 951.13
idealized 986.23
perfect 1002.6
idealism
aspiration 100.9
magnanimity 652.2
philosophy 932.2
materialism 952.4
idealization 986.7
immaterialism 1053.3
idealist
n visionary 986.13
immaterialist 1053.4
adj idealistic 1053.8
idealization
spiritualization 689.19
illusoriness 976.2
idealism 986.7
idealize
spiritualize 689.20
overestimate 949.2
utopianize 986.16
ideate
n philosophy 932.2
v think 931.8
imagine 986.14
idée fixe 926.13
identical
identic 778.7
similar 784.10
equivalent 790.8
two 873.6
identification
sensitivity 24.3
association 92.33
sympathy 93.5
indication 517.3
identification mark 517.11
naming 527.2
likening 778.2
recognition 989.5
identify
signify 517.17
name 527.11
relate 775.6
make one 778.5
detect 941.5
recognize 989.12
receive 1036.17
identify with
respond 93.11
get along 455.2
identity accord 455.1
sameness 778.1
similarity 784.1
equality 790.1
particularity 865.1
oneness 872.1
ideogram
representation 349.1
symbol 517.2
phonetic symbol 546.2
ideographic
n letter 546.1
adj representational 349.13
indicative 517.23
literal 546.8
alphabetic 547.26
ideological
ideational 932.9
attitudinal 978.7
ideology
system of ideas 932.8
system of belief 953.3
climate 978.5
ides of March 964.2
id est 341.18
idiocy
mental deficiency 922.9
foolishness 923.1
idiolect 523.7
idiom language 523.1
dialect 523.7
phrase 529.1
diction 532.1
idiosyncrasy
mannerism 500.2
sign 517.1
characteristic 865.4
eccentricity 927.1
disposition 978.3
idiosyncratic
personal 312.15
indicative 517.23
differentiative 780.9
characteristic 865.13
eccentric 927.5
idiot cripple 85.45
imbecile 924.8
lunatic 926.15
idiot box 1035.11
idiotic
mentally deficient 922.22
foolish 923.8
idle
v stagnate 173.9
go slow 175.6
slow 175.9
do nothing 329.2
while away 486.5
trifle 998.14
adj motionless 173.13
slow 175.10
passive 329.6
inactive 331.17
fallow 331.18
vain 391.13
leisure 402.5
baseless 936.13
trivial 998.19
idle fancy 986.5
idle rich 331.11
idle talk chatter 540.3
gossip 552.7
idol
n favorite 104.16
image 349.5
hero 659.5
celebrity 662.9
god 678.2
fetish 697.3
ideal 786.4
v idolatrize 697.5
idolater
enthusiast 101.4
pagan 688.7
worshiper 696.9
idolatress 697.4
idolatrize 697.5
idolatrous
reverent 155.9
uncritical 509.18
pagan 688.11
idolatric 697.7
idolatry love 104.1
respect 155.1
praise 509.5
overpraise 511.3
paganism 688.4
worship 696.1
idol worship 697.1
idolatrousness 697.1
idolization love 104.1
respect 155.1
fetishization 697.2
idolize
cherish 104.21
respect 155.4
praise 509.12
overpraise 511.7
worship 696.11
idolatrize 697.5
idol worship 697.1
idyllic pacific 464.9
poetic 720.15
if
in the event that 831.13
supposing 951.19
if and when 959.14
iffy doubtful 971.17
chance 972.15
if only 959.14
if possible 966.11
ifs, ands, and buts 421.3
if worse comes to worse 1011.17
igloo house 228.10
arch 279.4
snow 1023.8
igneous 1019.26
ignis fatuus
illusion 976.1
fire 1019.13
luminescence 1025.13
ignite flare up 152.19
set fire to 1020.22
ignition fire 1019.13
lighting 1020.4
rocket launching 1074.9

ignoble
  offensive 98.18
  low 497.15
  disreputable 661.10
ignominious
  wrong 638.3
  disreputable 661.10
ignominy
  abomination 638.2
  infamy 661.4
ignoramus
  novice 572.9
  fool 924.1
  know-nothing 930.8
ignorance
  unaccustomedness 374.1
  inexperience 414.2
  unintelligence 922.1
  unknowingness 930
  ignorantness 930.1
ignorant
  unaccustomed 374.4
  inexperienced 414.17
  unintelligent 922.13
  nescient 930.12
ignore take 134.8
  condone 148.4
  slight 157.6
  disobey 327.6
  neglect 340.6
  reject 372.2
  extenuate 600.12
  exclude 773.4
  keep an open mind 979.7
  be inattentive 984.2
ignored
  unthanked 151.5
  neglected 340.14
  rejected 372.3
  excluded 773.7
ileum 2.18
ilk nature 767.4
  kind 809.3
ill
  n evil 1000.3
  adj ailing 85.56
  ominous 133.17
  unkind 144.16
  bad 1000.7
  adv unkindly 144.27
  disadvantageously 996.9
  badly 1000.13
ill-advised
  unpremeditated 365.11
  botched 414.21
  unwise 923.10
  inexpedient 996.5
ill at ease 96.22
ill-behaved 505.5
ill-bred
  ungenteel 505.6
  unrefined 497.12
ill-bred fellow 497.6
ill-conceived 1000.11
ill-considered
  unpremeditated 365.11
  botched 414.21
  untimely 844.6
  premature 845.8
  unwise 923.10
  inexpedient 996.5
ill-defined
  inconspicuous 32.6
  vague 971.19
illegal prohibited 444.7
  wrong 638.3
  unjust 650.9
  unlawful 674.6
illegal drug 87.3
illegality wrong 638.1
  injustice 650.1
  crime 674.3
  unlawfulness 674.1
  offense 674.4
illegible 522.19
illegible handwriting 547.6
illegitimate
  n bastard 561.5
  adj fake 354.26
  illegal 674.6
  spurious 674.7
ill-equipped
  unfitted 406.9
  ill-provided 992.12
ill-fated 133.17
ill-favored
  evil-fashioned 1000.11
  unprepossessing 1015.7
ill-founded 936.13
ill-gotten
  dishonest 645.16
  evil-fashioned 1000.11
ill health 85.3
ill humor
  discontent 108.1
  bad temper 110.1
  bad humor 110.1
  contentiousness 935.13
ill-humored
  bad-tempered 110.18
  argumentative 935.19
illiberal
  n bigot 980.5
  adj stingy 484.9
  ungenerous 651.6
  narrow-minded 980.10
illicit prohibited 444.7
  freeloving 665.27
  illegal 674.6
illicit business
  fraud 356.8
  illegality 674.1
  illegitimate business 732.1
  scam 732.1
ill-informed 930.12
illiteracy 930.5
illiterate
  n ignoramus 930.8
  adj unlearned 930.14
ill nature
  ill humor 110.1
  malevolence 144.4
ill-natured
  ill-humored 110.18
  malevolent 144.19
illness 85.1
ill off poor 619.7
  ill-provided 992.12
  unfortunate 1011.14
illogic 936.2
illogical
  unreasonable 936.11
  erroneous 975.16
ill repute 661.1
ill-suited
  inappropriate 789.7
  inexpedient 996.5
ill-timed
  inappropriate 789.7
  untimely 844.6
  inexpedient 996.5
illuminant
  n luminant 1025.20
  light source 1026.1
  adj luminous 1025.30
illuminate
  n wise man 921.1
  v color 35.14
  explain 341.10
  manifest 348.5
  figure 498.9
  illumine 1025.28
illuminated
  drunk 88.33
  luminous 1025.39
illuminating
  explanatory 341.15
  educational 568.18
  illumining 1025.40
illumination
  coloring 35.11
  explanation 341.4
  ornamentation 498.1
  teaching 568.1
  picture 712.11
  cognizance 928.2
  learning 928.4
  light 1025.1
  lighting 1025.19
ill-use
  n mistreatment 389.2
  v exploit 387.16
  mistreat 389.5
illusion
  deception 356.1
  bewitchment 691.2
  spirit 764.3
  error 975.1
  deluded belief 976.1
  delusion 976.1
  figment of the imagination 986.5
illusionary
  bewitching 691.11
  illusory 976.9
illusive
  deceptive 356.21
  bewitching 691.11
  sophistical 936.10
  illusory 976.9
illusory
  deceptive 356.21
  bewitching 691.11
  unreal 762.9
  thin 764.6
  erroneous 975.16
  illusive 976.9
  imaginary 986.19
illustrate
  explain 341.10
  image 349.11
  evidence 957.8
  cite 957.13
illustration
  explanation 341.4
  representation 349.1
  picture 712.11
  example 786.2
  citation 957.5
illustrative
  explanatory 341.15
  representational 349.13
illustrator 716.2
illustrious 662.19
ill will
  malevolence 144.4
  animosity 589.4
ill wind
  windstorm 318.12
  bad influence 1000.4
  bad luck 1011.5
image
  n appearance 33.2
  aspect 33.3
  apparition 33.5
  engram 92.29
  description 349.2
  likeness 349.5
  affectation 500.1
  sign 517.1
  figure of speech 536.1
  picture 712.11
  copy 785.1
  idea 932.1
  phantom 976.4
  visualization 986.6
  television reception 1035.5
  v mirror 349.11
  think of 931.17
  visualize 986.15
imagery
  representation 349.1
  description 349.2
  figure of speech 536.1
  figment of the imagination 986.5
  visualization 986.6
imaginable
  supposable 951.15
  possible 966.6
  fanciable 986.26
imaginary unreal 762.9
  thin 764.6
  farfetched 776.8
  illusory 976.9
  imaginational 986.19
  numeric 1017.23
imagination
  fancy 976.3
  creative thought 986.2
  imagining 986.1
  figment of the imagination 986.5
imaginative
  original 337.5
  expressive 544.10
  conceptual 986.18
imagine
  v think of 931.17
  suppose 951.10
  think 953.11
  fancy 986.14
  interj fancy! 122.22

imagined
unreal 762.9
imaginary 986.19
imaging
catharsis 92.25
representation 349.1
visualization 986.6
imagining
imagination 986.1
figment of the imagination 986.5
imbalance
distortion 265.1
inequality 791.1
imbecile
n cripple 85.45
idiot 924.8
adj weak 16.12
mentally deficient 922.22
foolish 923.8
imbecility
inability 19.2
mental deficiency 922.9
foolishness 923.1
imbibe
drink 8.29
tipple 88.24
ingest 187.11
receive 187.13
absorb 570.7
imbricate
v overlie 295.30
adj overlying 295.36
imbroglio
quarrel 456.5
predicament 1013.4
imbrue
imbue 797.11
soak 1065.13
imbue color 35.14
pervade 221.7
inspire 375.20
inculcate 568.12
imbrue 797.11
soak 1065.13
imbuement
permeation 221.3
inculcation 568.2
impregnation 797.2
soaking 1065.7
imitate
copy 336.5
adopt 621.4
resemble 784.7
repeat 849.7
imitation
n reproduction 78.1
copying 336
simulation 336.1
re-creation 336.3
impersonation 349.4
fake 354.13
burlesque 508.6
adoption 621.2
similarity 784.1
copy 785.1
repetition 849.1
substitute 862.2
duplication 874.1
adj mock 336.8
spurious 354.26
similar 784.10
substitute 862.8
immaculate
clean 79.25
honest 644.13
virtuous 653.7
spotless 657.7
chaste 664.4
perfect 1002.6
immanence
presence 221.1
intrinsicality 767.1
immanent
present 221.12
intrinsic 767.7
immaterial
unreal 762.9
unsubstantial 764.5
irrelevant 776.7
disembodied 988.8
insignificant 998.17
nonmaterial 1053.7
immateriality
invisibility 32.1
rarity 299.1
unsubstantiality 764.1
unrelatedness 776.1
illusoriness 976.2
specter 988.1
unimportance 998.1
incorporealness 1053.1
immaterialness 1053.1
incorporeal 1053.2
immaterialize
spiritualize 689.20
dematerialize 1053.6
immature
unadult 301.10
unripe 406.11
inexperienced 414.17
incomplete 795.4
new 841.7
puerile 922.24
half-learned 930.15
imperfect 1003.4
immaturity
youthfulness 301.3
undevelopment 406.4
inexperience 414.2
incompleteness 795.1
newness 841.1
puerility 922.11
unwiseness 923.2
imperfection 1003.1
immeasurable
large 247.7
infinite 823.3
innumerable 884.10
immediacy
presence 221.1
nearness 223.1
instantaneousness 830.1
promptness 845.3
urgent need 963.4
immediate
adj present 221.12
adjacent 223.16
nearest 223.19
hasty 401.9
continuous 812.8
instantaneous 830.4
the present 838.2
imminent 840.3
prompt 845.9
interj make haste! 401.16
immemorial
perpetual 829.7
former 837.10
old 842.10
traditional 842.12
immense large 247.7
huge 257.20
infinite 823.3
superb 999.15
immensity
greatness 247.1
hugeness 257.7
infinity 823.1
immerge 367.7
immerse
submerge 367.7
baptize 701.17
engross 983.13
immersed
underwater 275.13
soaked 1065.17
immersion
submergence 367.2
baptism 701.6
engrossment 983.3
wetting 1065.6
immigrant
migrant 178.5
incomer 189.4
citizen 227.4
settler 227.9
newcomer 774.4
immigrate
migrate 177.22
in-migrate 189.11
immigration
migration 177.4
in-migration 189.3
imminence
expectation 130.1
approach 167.1
threat 514.1
the future 839.1
forthcomingness 840.1
impendence 840.1
imminent
expected 130.13
approaching 167.4
threatening 514.3
future 839.8
impending 840.3
immobile
motionless 173.13
passive 329.6
permanent 853.7
immovable 855.15
immobility
motionlessness 173.2
inaction 329.1
inactivity 331.1
permanence 853.1
immovability 855.3
immoderate
unrestrained 430.24
overpriced 632.12
intemperate 669.7
violent 671.16
excessive 993.16
immodest
conceited 140.11
unmodest 666.6
immolate 308.13
immolation
killing 308.1
oblation 696.7
immoral
dishonest 645.16
vice-prone 654.11
immorality 654.1
immortal
n celebrity 662.9
god 678.2
adj peerless 249.15
eminent 662.18
almighty 677.17
everlasting 829.9
indestructible 855.18
immortality
life 306.1
posthumous fame 662.7
eternal life 829.3
indestructibility 855.5
immortalize
glorify 662.13
chronicle 719.5
perpetuate 829.5
immovable
unfeeling 94.9
firm 359.12
unyielding 361.9
unmovable 855.15
inflexible 1046.12
immune
resistant 83.14
exempt 430.30
safe 1007.4
immunity
resistance 83.4
immunization 91.15
pardon 148.2
freedom 430.8
exemption 601.2
privilege 642.2
safety 1007.1
immunization
immunity 83.4
immunization therapy 91.15
immunize 91.28
immunology 91.15
immure
enclose 212.6
confine 429.12
imprison 429.14
immured
enclosed 212.10
jailed 429.21
immutable
persevering 360.8
unyielding 361.9
almighty 677.17
uniform 781.5
durable 827.10
permanent 853.7
unchangeable 855.17
inflexible 1046.12
imp
n brat 302.4
mischief-maker 322.3

fairy 678.8
pixie 680.7
member 793.4
v graft 191.6
impact
n power 18.1
meaning 518.1
concussion 671.8
force 887.2
striking force 902
collision 902.3
rocket launching 1074.9
v thrust in 191.7
cause 886.10
operate on 889.6
collide 902.13
impacted 855.16
impair
v subtract 255.9
damage 393.9
work evil 1000.6
adj sole 872.9
numeric 1017.23
impaired
damaged 393.27
imperfect 1003.4
impaired hearing 49.1
impaired vision 28.1
impairment
reduction 255.2
damage 393.1
flaw 393.1
disintegration 806.1
disadvantage 996.2
imperfection 1003.1
impale torture 96.18
perforate 292.15
stab 459.25
punish 604.16
stigmatize 661.9
impalpable
infinitesimal 258.14
unsubstantial 764.5
powdery 1051.11
immaterial 1053.7
impanel
record 549.15
select a jury 598.16
list 871.8
impanelment
registration 549.14
jury selection 598.4
impart transfer 176.10
communicate 343.7
disclose 351.4
give 478.12
say 524.22
impartable
transferable 176.18
communicable 343.11
giveable 478.23
impartial
neutral 467.7
impersonal 649.10
unprejudiced 979.12
impartiality
neutrality 467.1
detachment 649.4
moderation 670.1
unprejudicedness 979.5
imparting 343.2
impasse
obstruction 293.3
the same 790.3
corner 1013.6
impassion
excite 105.12
incite 375.17
impassioned
fervent 93.18
zealous 101.9
amorous 104.26
excited 105.20
vehement 544.13
impassive
unfeeling 94.9
inexcitable 106.10
quiescent 173.12
reticent 344.10
inexpressive 522.20
stable 855.12
incurious 982.3
impatience
eagerness 101.1
restlessness 135.1
anxiety 135.1
impulsiveness 365.2
impatient
eager 101.8
anxious 135.6
impulsive 365.9
impeach
censure 510.13
arraign 598.15
accuse 599.7
impeachable
blameworthy 510.25
guilty 656.3
impeachment
deposal 447.2
censure 510.3
arraignment 598.3
accusation 599.1
impeccable
spotless 657.7
accurate 973.16
perfect 1002.6
impecunious 619.7
impedance 1032.13
impede
slow 175.9
delay 846.8
hinder 1012.10
hamper 1012.11
impediment
obstruction 293.3
hindrance 1012.1
embarrassment 1012.6
impedimenta
freight 176.6
equipment 385.4
luggage 471.3
impediment 1012.6
impel
set in motion 172.6
motivate 375.12
compel 424.4
give an impetus 902.11
push 904.9
obsess 926.25
impelling
moving 172.7
motivating 375.25
impellent 902.23
obsessive 926.34
impend
be as expected 130.10
overhang 202.7
be imminent 840.2
impending
overhanging 202.11
imminent 840.3
impenetrable
impregnable 15.19
impervious 293.13
luxuriant 310.43
unintelligible 522.13
inaccesible 967.9
dense 1045.12
impenitent 114.5
imperative
n rule 419.2
command 420.1
mood 530.11
duty 641.1
urgent need 963.4
adj authoritative 417.15
imperious 417.16
mandatory 420.12
commanding 420.13
compulsory 424.10
binding 424.11
vigorous 544.11
obligatory 641.15
necessary 963.12
urgent 997.22
imperceptible
invisible 32.5
infinitesimal 258.14
imperceptive
insensible 25.6
undiscerning 922.14
imperfect
n tense 530.12
adj inadequate 250.7
impaired 393.27
incomplete 795.4
insufficient 992.9
not perfect 1003.4
imperfection
inadequacy 250.3
vice 654.2
incompleteness 795.1
shortcoming 911.1
want 992.4
defectiveness 1003.1
imperfectness 1003.1
fault 1003.2
imperial
n beard 3.8
volume 554.4
adj imperious 417.16
sovereign 417.17
imperialism
sovereignty 417.8
foreign policy 609.5
government 612.8
imperialist 611.9
imperil 1006.6
imperiled 1006.13
imperious
lordly 141.11
imperial 417.16
sovereign 417.17
commanding 420.13
compulsory 424.10
obligatory 641.15
urgent 997.22
imperishable
immortal 829.9
indestructible 855.18
impermanence
transience 828.1
changeableness 854.1
impermanent
transient 828.7
changeable 854.6
impermeable
impervious 293.13
dense 1045.12
impersonal
reticent 344.10
formal 580.7
impartial 649.10
extrinsic 768.3
indistinguishable 945.6
unprejudiced 979.12
impersonate
mimic 336.6
image 349.11
personate 349.12
pose as 354.22
enact 704.30
impersonation
imitation 336.1
personation 349.4
acting 704.8
impersonator
imitator 336.4
impostor 357.6
masquerader 357.7
entertainer 707.1
impersuadable 895.4
impertinence
impudence 142.2
meddling 214.2
defiance 454.1
unrelatedness 776.1
impertinent
impudent 142.10
meddlesome 214.9
defiant 454.7
irrelevant 776.7
imperturbable
inexcitable 106.10
stable 855.12
impervious
resistant 15.20
callous 94.12
impenetrable 293.13
uninfluenceable 895.4
inaccessible 967.9
impetration
request 440.1
entreaty 440.2
prayer 696.4
impetuous
energetic 17.13
passionate 105.29
impatient 135.6
impulsive 365.9
precipitate 401.10
reckless 493.8
transient 828.7

sudden 830.5
inconstant 854.7
impetus
animation 17.4
acceleration 174.4
impulse 902.1
impiety
irreverence 694.1
impiousness 694.1
sacrilege 694.2
ungodliness 695.3
impinge
intrude 214.5
contact 223.10
collide 902.13
impingement
intrusion 214.1
contact 223.5
impact 902.3
impious
irreverent 694.6
ungodly 695.17
impish
mischievous 322.6
puckish 680.18
implacable
unyielding 361.9
revengeful 507.7
implant graft 191.6
transplant 191.8
inculcate 568.12
fix 855.9
plant 1069.18
implantation
insertion 191.1
inculcation 568.2
fixity 855.2
implanted
confirmed 373.18
intrinsic 767.7
established 855.13
implausible
unbelievable 955.10
improbable 969.3
implement
n instrument 384.4
agent 576.3
tool 1040.1
v carry out 328.7
bring about 407.5
execute 437.9
implementation
performance 328.2
accomplishment 407.1
impliable
unyielding 361.9
firm 425.7
implicate
imply 519.4
incriminate 599.10
entail 772.4
complicate 799.3
involve 898.2
implicated
participating 476.8
implied 519.7
accused 599.15
guilty 656.3
related 775.9
complex 799.4
involved 898.4
implication
meaning 518.1
connotation 519.2
hint 551.4
accusation 599.1
incrimination 599.2
guilt 656.1
entailment 772.2
involvement 898.1
implicative
indicative 517.23
suggestive 519.6
implicit
unspoken 51.11
tacit 519.8
intrinsic 767.7
evidential 957.16
unqualified 960.2
implied meant 518.11
implicated 519.7
tacit 519.8
implode 260.10
implore
admonish 422.6
entreat 440.11
pray 696.13
imploring
n entreaty 440.2
adj entreating 440.17
worshipful 696.16
implosion 260.4
imply
promise 133.13
mean 518.8
implicate 519.4
hint 551.10
accuse 599.7
entail 772.4
evidence 957.8
impolite
unrefined 497.12
discourteous 505.4
impolitic
botched 414.21
unwise 923.10
inexpedient 996.5
imponderable
infinitesimal 258.14
unweighable 298.18
unsubstantial 764.5
immaterial 1053.7
import
n transferal 176.1
bringing in 187.7
entrance 189.1
meaning 518.1
implication 519.2
importance 997.1
v transfer 176.10
bring in 187.14
mean 518.8
imply 519.4
matter 997.12
importance
prestige 417.4
distinction 662.5
influence 894.1
significance 997.1
repute 997.1
important
authoritative 417.15
prominent 662.17
influential 894.13
major 997.17
important person
chief 575.3
celebrity 662.9
personage 997.8
importation
transferal 176.1
bringing in 187.7
entrance 189.1
importunate
annoying 98.22
strong-willed 359.15
demanding 421.9
teasing 440.18
necessary 963.12
importune
v motivate 375.14
make advances 439.7
urge 440.12
adj annoying 98.22
importunity
insistence 421.4
importunateness 440.3
impose
intrude 214.5
prescribe 420.9
demand 421.5
oblige 424.5
compose 548.16
charge 630.12
impose on 643.4
minister 701.16
imposed
mandatory 420.12
inflicted 643.8
impose upon
intrude 214.5
exploit 387.16
presume on 640.7
impose 643.4
take advantage of 643.7
inconvenience 996.4
imposing
dignified 136.12
corpulent 257.18
grandiose 501.21
weighty 997.20
imposition
intrusion 214.1
fraud 356.8
demand 421.1
composition 548.2
tax 630.9
presumption 640.2
inconsiderateness 643.1
infliction 643.1
injustice 650.4
impediment 1012.6
impossibility
hopelessness 125.1
unusualness 870.2
the realm of the impossible 967.1
inconceivability 967.1
no chance 972.10
impossible
n impossibility 967.1
adj unacceptable 108.10
out of the question 125.14
fantastic 870.12
not possible 967.7
improbable 972.18
numeric 1017.23
phrs I refuse 442.7
impost
demand 421.1
tax 630.9
impostor
imitator 336.4
fake 354.13
ringer 357.6
imposture
imitation 336.1
sham 354.3
quackery 354.7
fraud 356.8
impotence
weakness 16.1
powerlessness 19.1
feebleness 19.1
sexuality 75.2
sexlessness 75.9
futility 391.2
laxness 426.1
unproductiveness 891.1
lack of influence 895.1
impotent
n weakling 19.6
adj weak 16.12
powerless 19.13
unsexual 75.29
useless 391.9
lax 426.4
unproductive 891.4
uninfluential 895.3
impound
enclose 212.5
confine 429.12
attach 480.20
impoverish
consume 388.3
strip 480.24
reduce 619.6
bankrupt 625.8
impoverished
used up 388.5
indigent 619.8
meager 992.10
ill-provided 992.12
impractical
theoretical 951.13
impracticable 967.8
visionary 986.24
inexpedient 996.5
unwieldy 1013.19
impracticality
impracticability 967.2
idealism 986.7
unwieldiness 1013.9
imprecation
entreaty 440.2
curse 513.1
imprecise lax 426.4
ungrammatic 531.4
uncertain 971.16
vague 971.19
inaccurate 975.17
imperfect 1003.4
imprecision
unmeticulousness 340.4

laxness 426.1
vagueness 971.4
inaccuracy 975.2
impregnable
impenetrable 15.19
indestructible 855.18
impregnate
reproduce 78.10
inculcate 568.12
imbue 797.11
fertilize 890.8
soak 1065.13
impregnation
reproduction 78.3
inculcation 568.2
imbuement 797.2
fertilization 890.3
soaking 1065.7
impresario
director 574.1
theater man 704.23
impress
n indentation 284.6
character 517.7
etching 548.3
print 713.5
reprint 785.5
characteristic 865.4
impact 887.2
v affect 93.15
indent 284.14
attract 377.6
avail oneself of 387.14
attach 480.20
abduct 482.20
mark 517.19
print 548.14
inculcate 568.12
enlist 615.17
be somebody 662.10
fix 855.9
make an impression 931.19
fix in the mind 989.18
impressed
affected 93.23
engraved 713.11
established 855.13
impression aspect 33.3
feeling 93.1
form 262.1
concavity 284.1
indentation 284.6
imitation 336.1
description 349.2
character 517.7
etching 548.3
edition 554.5
inculcation 568.2
print 713.5
reprint 785.5
characteristic 865.4
impact 887.2
idea 932.1
hunch 934.3
suggestion 951.5
opinion 953.6
impressionable
sensible 24.11
sensitive 93.20
teachable 570.18
influenceable 894.15
foolable 923.12
pliant 1047.9
impressive
sensible 24.11
exciting 105.30
grandiose 501.21
vigorous 544.11
convincing 953.26
impress upon 93.16
imprimatur
ratification 332.4
permit 443.6
imprint
n indentation 284.6
character 517.7
label 517.13
etching 548.3
makeup 554.12
print 713.5
impact 887.2
v indent 284.14
mark 517.19
print 548.14
fix 855.9
fix in the mind 989.18
imprinted
engraved 713.11
established 855.13
imprison enclose 212.5
incarcerate 429.14
imprisoned
enclosed 212.10
jailed 429.21
imprisonment
enclosure 212.1
jailing 429.3
punishment 604.2
improbability
inexpectation 131.1
oddity 870.5
prediction 962.1
unlikelihood 969.1
small chance 972.9
improbable
unexpected 131.10
farfetched 776.8
predictable 962.13
unlikely 969.3
impossible 972.18
improbity
falseheartedness 354.4
dishonesty 645.1
impromptu
n improvisation 365.5
extempore 708.27
adj extemporaneous 365.12
unprepared 406.8
adv extemporaneously 365.15
improper
misbehaving 322.5
vulgar 497.10
ungrammatic 531.4
inelegant 534.2
wrong 638.3
inapt 640.10
wicked 654.16
indecent 666.5
inappropriate 789.7
untimely 844.6
inexpedient 996.5
bad 1000.7
impropriety
misbehavior 322.1
vulgarity 497.1
barbarism 526.6
inelegance 534.1
wrong 638.1
undueness 640.1
injustice 650.1
misdeed 655.2
indecency 666.1
unfitness 789.3
untimeliness 844.1
improve
take advantage of 387.15
grow better 392.7
recuperate 396.19
train 568.13
be changed 852.6
change 852.7
perfect 1002.5
improved
bettered 392.13
changed 852.10
improvement
progression 162.1
betterment 392.1
restoration 396.1
training 568.3
change 852.1
new start 858.2
improvidence
thriftlessness 406.2
rashness 493.1
improvident
prodigal 406.15
rash 493.7
improvisation
extemporization 365.5
unpreparedness 406.1
impromptu 708.27
production 892.1
expedient 995.2
improvise
extemporize 365.8
be unprepared 406.6
produce 892.8
originate 892.12
improvised
extemporaneous 365.12
unprepared 406.8
makeshift 995.7
imprudence
rashness 493.1
unwiseness 923.2
foolish act 923.4
indiscrimination 945.1
imprudent rash 493.7
unwise 923.10
undiscriminating 945.5
impudence
impertinence 142.2
disrespect 156.1
defiance 454.1
rashness 493.1
impudent
impertinent 142.10
disrespectful 156.7
defiant 454.7
rash 493.7
impugn deny 335.4
censure 510.13
incriminate 599.10
impugned
accused 599.15
disproved 958.7
impulse
manpower 18.4
sudden thought 365.1
natural impulse 365.1
urge 375.6
prematurity 845.2
driving force 902
impulsion 902.1
instinct 934.2
involuntariness 963.5
impulsive fickle 364.6
impetuous 365.9
motivating 375.25
precipitate 401.10
nonuniform 782.3
transient 828.7
sudden 830.5
premature 845.8
inconstant 854.7
impelling 902.23
instinctive 934.6
involuntary 963.14
impunity 601.2
impure
unclean 80.20
inelegant 534.2
unvirtuous 654.12
unchaste 665.23
obscene 666.9
imperfect 1003.4
impurity
uncleanness 80.1
inelegance 534.1
vice 654.1
unchastity 665.1
intruder 774.2
imperfection 1003.1
imputable
blameworthy 510.25
attributable 888.6
imputation
criticism 510.4
aspersion 512.4
accusation 599.1
stigma 661.6
attribution 888.1
impute accuse 599.7
attribute 888.3
in
n entrée 187.3
entrance 189.5
adj entering 189.12
participating 476.8
on good terms 587.18
modern 841.13
in safety 1007.6
adv inward 189.13
inside 207.10
by authority of 417.20
prep at 159.27
into 189.14
interior 207.13
in a bad way ill 85.56
worn-out 393.36
in danger 1006.13
inability
incapability 19.2

unskillfulness 414.1
in a bind late 846.16
in trouble 1013.22
inaccessible
out-of-the-way 261.9
reticent 344.10
aloof 583.6
inaccordance
difference 780.1
disagreement 789.1
nonconformity 868.1
inaccordant
different 780.7
disagreeing 789.6
inaccuracy
unmeticulousness 340.4
misrepresentation 350.1
misjudgment 948.1
vagueness 971.4
inaccurateness 975.2
badness 1000.1
imperfection 1003.1
inaccurate
unmeticulous 340.13
vague 971.19
incorrect 975.17
bad 1000.7
imperfect 1003.4
in a class by itself
peerless 249.15
other 780.8
first-rate 999.17
inaction
motionlessness 173.2
passivity 329.1
passiveness 329.1
inactivity 331.1
in action acting 328.10
operating 889.11
inactivate 19.9
inactive inert 173.14
passive 329.6
unactive 331.17
leisurely 402.6
inactivity rest 20.1
motionlessness 173.2
passivity 329.1
inaction 331.1
leisureliness 402.2
in addition 253.11
inadequacy
inability 19.2
unsatisfactoriness 108.2
mediocrity 250.3
unskillfulness 414.1
inequality 791.1
incompleteness 795.1
shortcoming 911.1
insufficiency 992.1
imperfection 1003.1
fault 1003.2
inadequate
ineffective 19.15
unsatisfactory 108.9
mediocre 250.7
incompetent 414.19
unequal 791.4
incomplete 795.4
short of 911.5
insufficient 992.9
imperfect 1003.4
inadmissible
unacceptable 108.10
exclusive 773.9
irrelevant 776.7
inappropriate 789.7
in advance ahead 165.4
before 216.12
on loan 620.7
early 845.11
inadvertence
neglect 340.1
slip 975.4
inattention 984.1
inadvertent
negligent 340.10
unthinking 365.10
unpremeditated 365.11
inattentive 984.6
inadvisable
unwise 923.10
inexpedient 996.5
in a fog
concealed 346.11
muddled 985.13
in agreement
adj unanimous 332.15
cooperative 450.5
agreeing 788.9
adv jointly 800.18
prep together with 788.12
conformable to 867.9
in a jam
bewildered 971.24
unfortunate 1011.14
in trouble 1013.22
in a jiffy
in short order 174.19
hastily 401.12
quickly 830.7
inalienable
intrinsic 767.7
inseparable 800.15
in all conscience
positively 247.19
rightly 637.4
candidly 644.23
in justice 649.12
reasonably 935.24
in all fairness 649.12
in all likelihood 968.8
in all respects
wholly 792.13
throughout 794.17
exactly 973.21
in all seriousness
resolutely 359.17
candidly 644.23
inalterable
persevering 360.8
permanent 853.7
in a manner of speaking
limited 248.10
figuratively 536.4
so to speak 784.19
in a mess
adj confused 810.16
in trouble 1013.22
adv in disorder 810.17
inamorato 104.13
inane
ineffective 19.15
insipid 65.2
dull 117.6
vacant 222.14
vain 391.13
meaningless 520.6
nonexistent 762.8
thin 764.6
empty-headed 922.19
foolish 923.8
ignorant 930.12
thoughtless 933.4
trivial 998.19
inanimate
n gender 530.10
adj dead 307.30
languid 331.20
inanimated 1055.5
inanity
ineffectiveness 19.3
insipidness 65.1
dullness 117.1
void 222.3
futility 391.2
meaninglessness 520.1
nonexistence 762.1
empty-headedness 922.6
foolishness 923.1
ignorance 930.1
thoughtlessness 933.1
triviality 998.3
in anticipation
adj expectant 130.11
in readiness 405.21
adv early 845.11
in a nutshell
small 258.16
shortly 268.12
concisely 537.8
in brief 557.7
in any event
notwithstanding 338.8
anyhow 384.10
inappetence
apathy 94.4
undesirousness 102.3
inapplicable
unserviceable 391.14
irrelevant 776.7
inappropriate 789.7
inapposite
irrelevant 776.7
inappropriate 789.7
inappreciable
infinitesimal 258.14
insignificant 998.17
inapprehensible 522.13
inappropriate
vulgar 497.10
wrong 638.3
improper 640.10
indecent 666.5
irrelevant 776.7
inapt 789.7
untimely 844.6
inexpedient 996.5
inapt
unskillful 414.15
inappropriate 789.7
inexpedient 996.5
inaptitude
unskillfulness 414.1
unfitness 789.3
inexpedience 996.1
in arrears
adj due 623.10
defaulting 625.10
incomplete 795.4
adv behind 911.6
inarticulate
mute 51.12
shy 139.12
unintelligible 522.13
indistinct 525.12
inartificial
natural 406.13
artless 416.6
plain 499.7
genuine 973.15
inartistic 1015.10
in a rut
adj habituated 373.17
adv uniformly 781.7
inasmuch as 888.10
in a stew
adj in a dither 105.21
anxious 126.7
impatient 135.6
in a temper 152.31
bewildered 971.24
confused 985.12
adv excitedly 105.33
in a sweat
adj sweaty 12.22
in a dither 105.21
impatient 135.6
confused 985.12
adv excitedly 105.33
in a tizzy
adj in a dither 105.21
confused 985.12
adv excitedly 105.33
inattention
unconcern 102.2
neglect 340.1
nonobservance 435.1
unwiseness 923.2
incuriosity 982.1
inattentiveness 984.1
distraction 985.1
inattentive
unconcerned 102.7
negligent 340.10
unskillful 414.15
nonobservant 435.5
incurious 982.3
unmindful 984.6
inaudible 51.10
inaugural
n speech 543.2
ceremony 580.4
adj preceding 814.4
prior 816.4
beginning 818.15
inaugurate insert 191.4
install 615.12
institute 818.11
innovate 841.5
cause 886.10
establish 892.10
inauguration
location 159.7
admission 187.2

ceremony 580.4
installation 615.3
installment 818.5
establishment 892.4
inauspicious
ominous 133.17
untimely 844.6
bad 1000.7
unfortunate 1011.14
inauthentic
illogical 936.11
unauthoritative 975.19
in a way
to a degree 245.7
limited 248.10
so to speak 784.19
in awe
adj wondering 122.9
reverent 155.9
adv in wonder 122.18
in fear 127.33
in bad taste
vulgar 497.10
inelegant 534.2
in behalf of
adv by proxy 576.18
prep for 449.26
instead of 862.12
in black and white 547.22
inborn 767.8
inbound arriving 186.9
entering 189.12
inbred bred 78.17
innate 767.8
inbreed 78.8
in brief
in short 537.8
in summary 557.7
in cahoots
adj leagued 805.6
adv in cooperation 450.7
incalculable
infinite 823.3
innumerable 884.10
unknown 930.17
uncertain 971.16
incalescence 1019.1
incandesce
be hot 1019.22
shine 1025.23
incandescence
glow 1019.12
shine 1025.2
incandescent
burning 1019.27
luminous 1025.30
incantation
conjuration 690.4
spell 691.4
incapable
n cripple 85.45
incompetent 414.7
adj unable 19.14
unfitted 406.9
incompetent 414.19
incapacitate
disable 19.9
afflict 85.50
cripple 393.14
incapacitated
weakened 16.18
disabled 19.16
crippled 393.30
incapacity
infirmity 16.3
inability 19.2
unskillfulness 414.1
unproductiveness 891.1
unintelligence 922.1
incarcerate
enclose 212.5
imprison 429.14
incarcerated
enclosed 212.10
jailed 429.21
incarceration
enclosure 212.1
imprisonment 429.3
punishment 604.2
incarnate
v manifest 348.5
image 349.11
embody 763.5
compose 796.3
materialize 1052.9
adj divine 677.16
embodied 1052.11
incarnation
appearance 33.1
manifestation 348.1
impersonation 349.4
embodiment 763.4
essence 767.2
composition 796.1
materialization 1052.8
in case 831.13
incautious rash 493.7
unalert 984.8
incendiarism 1020.7
incendiary
n instigator 375.11
violent person 671.9
arsonist 1020.8
adj incitive 375.28
inflammatory 1020.27
incense
n fragrance 70.1
joss stick 70.4
suavity 504.5
flattery 511.1
oblation 696.7
v perfume 70.8
excite 105.12
provoke 152.24
incite 375.17
incensory 70.6
incentive
n inducement 375.7
impulse 902.1
adj incitive 375.28
inception origin 818.4
source 886.5
establishment 892.4
incertitude 971.1
incessancy
continuity 812.1
perpetuity 829.1
constancy 847.2
incessant
continuous 812.8
perpetual 829.7
constant 847.5
recurrent 849.13
continuing 856.7
incest perversion 75.11
illicit sex 665.7
inch go slow 175.6
creep 177.26
in character
to be expected 130.14
characteristic 865.13
in charge
adj under arrest 429.22
supervising 573.13
governing 612.18
adv in authority 417.21
inchmeal
by degrees 245.6
piece by piece 793.9
inchoate formless 263.4
unordered 810.12
vague 971.19
inchoative
n aspect 530.13
adj beginning 818.15
in chorus
adj harmonious 708.49
adv unanimously 332.17
cooperatively 450.6
in step 788.11
simultaneously 836.7
incidence event 831.1
frequency 847.1
incident
plot 722.4
circumstance 766.1
event 831.2
incidental
n ornament 709.18
particular 766.3
nonessential 768.2
adj circumstantial 766.7
unessential 768.4
irrelevant 776.7
happening 831.9
occasional 843.11
infrequent 848.3
chance 972.15
incinerate
strike dead 308.18
cremate 309.20
destroy 395.10
burn up 1020.25
incineration
cremation 309.2
discard 390.3
burning 1020.5
incinerator 1020.13
incipience 818.4
incipient 818.15
incise cleave 224.4
notch 289.4
furrow 290.3
open 292.11
injure 393.13
record 549.15
engrave 713.9
sever 802.11
incised notched 289.5
furrowed 290.4
engraved 713.11
incision trauma 85.38
crack 224.2
notch 289.1
furrow 290.1
engraving 713.2
incisive energetic 17.13
acrimonious 17.14
caustic 144.23
vigorous 544.11
sagacious 920.16
incisor 2.8
incite excite 105.12
instigate 375.17
admonish 422.6
impel 902.11
heat 1020.18
incitement
excitation 105.11
incitation 375.4
incentive 375.7
impulse 902.1
incivility
unrefinement 497.3
discourtesy 505.1
inclemency
harshness 144.9
pitilessness 146.1
violence 671.1
cold 1023.1
inclement harsh 144.24
pitiless 146.3
cold 1023.14
inclination
penchant 100.3
obeisance 155.2
direction 161.1
descent 194.1
leaning 204.2
incline 204.4
will 323.1
preference 371.5
aptitude 413.5
partiality 650.3
tendency 896.1
disposition 978.3
prejudice 980.3
incline
n stairs 193.3
inclination 204.4
slope 237.2
v take direction 161.7
lean 204.10
gravitate 297.15
be willing 324.3
induce 375.22
influence 894.7
tend 896.3
inclined
inclining 204.15
willing 324.5
moved 375.30
disposed 978.8
inclining
inclined 204.15
tending 896.4
in clover
adj pleased 95.15
prosperous 1010.12
adv in comfort 121.15
include
internalize 207.5
enclose 212.5
comprise 772.3

put together 800.5
combine 805.3
included
comprised 772.5
involved 898.4
including
adj inclusive 772.6
composed of 796.4
prep with 253.12
inclusion
surrounding 209.5
enclosure 212.1
affiliation 450.2
incorporation 772.1
comprisal 772.1
combination 805.1
involvement 898.1
inclusive
including 772.6
whole 792.9
joint 800.12
incognito
n privacy 345.2
cover 356.11
masquerader 357.7
anonymity 528.1
adj private 345.13
disguised 346.13
anonymous 528.3
incognizance 930.3
incoherence
dislocation 160.1
unintelligibility 522.1
inconsistency 789.2
separation 802.1
noncohesion 804.1
disintegration 806.1
disorder 810.1
discontinuity 813.1
delirium 926.8
vagueness 971.4
incoherent
unintelligible 522.13
inconsistent 789.8
separate 802.20
uncohesive 804.4
unordered 810.12
discontinuous 813.4
delirious 926.31
vague 971.19
in cold blood
unfeelingly 94.14
heartlessly 144.34
intentionally 380.10
incombustible 1022.9
income entrance 189.1
gain 472.3
pay 624.4
receipts 627.1
incoming
n entrance 189.1
adj arriving 186.9
entering 189.12
incommensurable
unrelated 776.6
uncomparable 787.6
inconsistent 789.8
unlike 943.9
incommensurate
unsatisfactory 108.9
uncomparable 787.6
inconsistent 789.8
incommodious
narrow 270.14
inconvenient 996.7
incommunicable 122.13
incommunicado 346.11
incommutable 855.17
incomparable
peerless 249.15
unrelated 776.6
uncomparable 787.6
incommensurable 943.9
incompatible
unsociable 583.5
unfriendly 589.9
different 780.7
disagreeing 789.6
inconsistent 789.8
incompetence
inability 19.2
inadequacy 250.3
unpreparedness 406.1
unskillfulness 414.1
insufficiency 992.1
incompetent
n impotent 19.6
incapable 414.7
adj unable 19.14
inadequate 250.7
unfitted 406.9
incapable 414.19
insufficient 992.9
incomplete
partial 793.7
uncompleted 795.4
insufficient 992.9
imperfect 1003.4
in compliance with
adv obediently 326.6
prep conformable to 867.9
incomprehensible
wonderful 122.10
unintelligible 522.13
infinite 823.3
fantastic 870.12
incomprehension
unperceptiveness 922.2
incognizance 930.3
incompressible
dense 1045.12
rigid 1046.11
inconceivable
wonderful 122.10
fantastic 870.12
unbelievable 955.10
impossible 967.7
in concert
adj cooperative 450.5
in accord 455.3
harmonious 708.49
adv unanimously 332.17
in step 788.11
concurrently 899.5
inconclusive
illogical 936.11
unsound 936.12
unproved 958.8
in condition
healthy 83.8
hale 83.12
out of order 765.7
in order 807.7
in conformity
adj obedient 326.3
adv in step 788.11
conformably 867.7
incongruity
humorousness 488.1
difference 780.1
inconsistency 789.2
nonconformity 868.1
illogicalness 936.2
inexpedience 996.1
incongruous
off-color 35.21
humorous 488.4
different 780.7
inconsistent 789.8
illogical 936.11
inexpedient 996.5
in conjunction with
additionally 253.12
with 769.12
inconsequence
unrelatedness 776.1
unimportance 998.1
inconsequent
irrelevant 776.7
inconsistent 789.8
illogical 936.11
inconsequential
insignificant 248.6
illogical 936.11
unimportant 998.17
inconsiderable
insignificant 248.6
unimportant 998.17
inconsiderate
unthoughtful 144.18
careless 340.11
unthinking 365.10
ill-bred 505.6
unwise 923.10
inconsistency
contrariety 779.1
difference 780.1
nonuniformity 782.1
incongruity 789.2
noncohesion 804.1
inconstancy 854.2
nonconformity 868.1
illogicalness 936.2
inconsistent
contrary 779.6
different 780.7
nonuniform 782.3
incongruous 789.8
incoherent 804.4
inconstant 854.7
illogical 936.11
inconsolable
sorrowful 112.26
disconsolate 112.28
inconsonant
different 780.7
inconsistent 789.8
inconspicuous 32.6
inconstancy
irresolution 362.1
fickleness 364.3
infidelity 645.5
nonuniformity 782.1
irregularity 851.1
instability 854.2
inconstant
fickle 364.6
nonobservant 435.5
unfaithful 645.20
nonuniform 782.3
transient 828.7
irregular 851.3
changeable 854.7
incontestable
impregnable 15.19
obvious 970.15
incontinence
greed 100.8
unrestraint 430.3
prodigality 486.1
uncontinence 665.2
intemperance 669.1
excess 993.1
incontinent
unrestrained 430.24
prodigal 486.8
uncontinent 665.24
intemperate 669.7
excessive 993.16
incontrovertible
evidential 957.16
obvious 970.15
inconvenience
n imposition 643.1
untimeliness 844.1
inexpedience 996.1
discommodity 996.3
impediment 1012.6
trouble 1013.3
unwieldiness 1013.9
v presume on 640.7
put to inconvenience 996.4
trouble 1013.13
inconvenient
untimely 844.6
incommodious 996.7
unwieldy 1013.19
inconvertible
unpayable 625.13
unchangeable 855.17
inconvincible 956.4
incorporate
include 772.3
compose 796.3
combine 805.3
materialize 1052.9
incorporated
associated 617.16
joined 800.13
combined 805.5
embodied 1052.11
incorporation
affiliation 450.2
inclusion 772.1
composition 796.1
combination 805.1
materialization 1052.8
incorporeal
n specter 988.1
incorporeity 1053.2
adj unsubstantial 764.5
spectral 988.7
immaterial 1053.7

incorrect
  ungrammatical 531.4
  inelegant 534.2
  wrong 638.3
  inaccurate 975.17
incorrigible
  past hope 125.15
  ungovernable 361.12
  confirmed 373.18
  irreclaimable 654.18
incorrupt
  unsinful 653.8
  innocent 657.6
incorruptible
  trustworthy 644.19
  immortal 829.9
  indestructible 855.18
incrassate
  v thicken 269.5
  congeal 1045.10
  emulsify 1062.10
  adj distended 259.13
  thickened 1045.14
increase
  n aggravation 119.1
  ascent 193.1
  gain 251.1
  addition 253.1
  adjunct 254.1
  expansion 259.1
  improvement 392.1
  multiplication 883.4
  elevation 912.1
  v develop 14.2
  aggravate 119.2
  quantify 244.4
  graduate 245.4
  enlarge 251.4
  increase 251.6
  add to 253.5
  expand 259.4
  develop 259.5
  grow 259.7
  multiply 883.6
increased
  aggravated 119.4
  heightened 251.7
  expanded 259.10
  multiple 883.8
incredible
  wonderful 122.10
  remarkable 247.10
  fantastic 870.12
  absurd 923.11
  unbelievable 955.10
  improbable 969.3
incredulity
  agnosticism 695.6
  unbelief 955.1
  ungullibility 956.2
  incredulousness 956.1
incredulous
  agnostic 695.20
  unbelieving 955.8
  uncredulous 956.4
increment
  increase 251.1
  adjunct 254.1
incriminate 599.10
incrimination 599.2
incrustation
  covering 295.1
  crust 295.14
incubate 78.12
incubation 78.5
incubator 886.8
incubus
  frightener 127.9
  burden 297.7
  demon 680.6
  dream 986.9
inculcate
  indoctrinate 568.12
  fix in the mind 989.18
inculcated 373.18
inculcation 568.2
inculpable 657.8
inculpate 599.10
inculpated
  accused 599.15
  guilty 656.3
incumbency
  burden 297.7
  responsibility 641.2
  benefice 698.9
  position 724.5
incumbent
  n inhabitant 227.2
  tenant 470.4
  officeholder 610.11
  benefice-holder 699.7
  adj overhanging 202.11
  overlying 295.36
  onerous 297.17
incur 897.4
incurable
  n sick person 85.43
  adj past hope 125.15
incuriosity
  unconcern 102.2
  uninquisitiveness 982.1
  incuriousness 982.1
  inattention 984.1
incurious
  unconcerned 102.7
  uninquisitive 982.3
  inattentive 984.6
incursion influx 189.2
  intrusion 214.1
  raid 459.4
  overstepping 910.3
incurve curve 279.6
  be concave 284.12
incurved
  curved 279.7
  concave 284.16
indebted grateful 150.5
  in debt 623.8
  obliged 641.16
  insolvent 729.19
  liable 897.5
indecency
  sexual desire 75.5
  vulgarity 497.1
  unchastity 665.1
  immodesty 666.2
  indelicacy 666.1
indecent vulgar 497.10
  unchaste 665.23
  indelicate 666.5
indecipherable 522.19
indecision
  irresolution 362.1
  uncertainty 971.1
indecisive
  wishy-washy 16.17
  formless 263.4
  irresolute 362.9
  inconstant 854.7
  unproved 958.8
  uncertain 971.16
  vague 971.19
indecorous
  vulgar 497.10
  inelegant 534.2
  wrong 638.3
  indecent 666.5
indecorum
  vulgarity 497.1
  wrong 638.1
  indecency 666.1
indeed
  adv positively 247.19
  chiefly 249.17
  certainly 970.23
  truly 973.18
  interj astonishment 122.19
  yes! 332.18
indefatigable
  industrious 330.22
  persevering 360.8
  continuing 856.7
indefeasible
  unchangeable 855.17
  inevitable 963.15
indefensible
  unacceptable 108.10
  unjustifiable 650.12
indefinable
  indescribable 122.13
  inexplicable 522.18
  vague 971.19
indefinite
  inconspicuous 32.6
  formless 263.4
  general 864.11
  indistinguishable 945.6
  vague 971.19
indeliberate 365.11
indelible
  deep-dyed 35.18
  deep-felt 93.24
  indestructible 855.18
  unforgettable 989.26
indelicacy
  vulgarity 497.1
  indecency 666.1
in demand
  desired 100.29
  salable 734.14
indemnification
  compensation 338.1
  reparation 481.2
  recompense 624.3
  atonement 658.1
indemnify
  compensate 338.4
  make restitution 481.5
  requite 506.5
  pay 624.10
indemnity
  pardon 148.2
  compensation 338.1
  security 438.1
  exemption 601.2
  recompense 624.3
  atonement 658.1
indemonstrable 971.16
indent
  n indentation 284.6
  summons 420.5
  demand 421.1
  request 440.1
  appropriation 480.4
  print 517.7
  v dent 284.14
  notch 289.4
  summon 420.11
  demand 421.5
  request 440.9
  appropriate 480.19
  depress 913.4
indentation
  indent 284.6
  excavation 284.11
  notch 289.1
  texture 294.1
  print 517.7
indented dented 284.17
  notched 289.5
indenture
  n indentation 284.6
  binding over 615.8
  v article 615.18
indentured servant 432.7
independence
  pride 136.1
  nationhood 232.6
  voluntariness 324.2
  self-control 359.5
  self-determination 430.5
  self-help 449.6
  rallying device 458.12
  neutrality 467.1
  nonpartisanism 609.26
  wealth 618.1
  unrelatedness 776.1
independent
  n free agent 430.12
  neutral 467.4
  nonpartisan 609.28
  moderate 611.10
  adj proud 136.8
  voluntary 324.7
  strong-willed 359.15
  self-dependent 430.22
  self-helpful 449.23
  neutral 467.7
  nonpartisan 609.45
  moderate 611.18
  wealthy 618.14
  unrelated 776.6
  separate 802.20
indescribable
  ineffable 122.13
  extraordinary 870.14
indestructible
  perpetual 829.7
  undestroyable 855.18
in detail
  meticulously 339.16
  at length 538.16
  fully 766.13

piece by piece 793.9
particularly 865.15
indeterminate
formless 263.4
obscure 522.15
unessential 768.4
relative 775.7
general 864.11
vague 971.19
chance 972.15
index
n finger 73.5
map 159.5
contents 196.1
prohibition 444.1
sign 517.1
pointer 517.4
hint 551.4
reference book 554.9
makeup 554.12
bibliography 558.4
directory 574.10
outline 801.4
table 808.4
characteristic 865.4
listing 871.7
v record 549.15
classify 809.6
list 871.8
indexed
recorded 549.17
classified 809.8
listed 871.9
Indian 312.3
Indian reservation 397.7
Indian summer
St Martin's summer 313.5
dog days 1019.7
indicate augur 133.12
manifest 348.5
signify 517.17
mean 518.8
hint 551.10
specify 865.11
evidence 957.8
indicated
augured 133.15
implied 519.7
requisite 963.13
indication omen 133.3
manifestation 348.1
signification 517.3
hint 551.4
evidence 957.1
indicative
n mood 530.11
adj premonitory 133.16
manifesting 348.9
indicatory 517.23
meaningful 518.10
suggestive 519.6
evidential 957.16
indicator 517.1
indict
censure 510.13
arraign 598.15
accuse 599.7
attribute to 888.4
indictable
blameworthy 510.25
guilty 656.3
indictment
censure 510.3
arraignment 598.3
accusation 599.1
attribution 888.1
indifference
apathy 94.4
neutrality 102.1
indifferentness 102.1
nonchalance 106.5
inertness 173.4
languor 331.6
carelessness 340.2
laxness 426.1
nonobservance 435.1
neutral 467.2
nonreligiousness 695.1
unprejudicedness 979.5
incuriosity 982.1
inattention 984.1
unimportance 998.1
mediocrity 1005.1
indifferent insipid 65.2
apathetic 94.13
halfhearted 102.6
nonchalant 106.15
reluctant 325.6
careless 340.11
lax 426.4
neutral 467.7
nonreligious 695.15
unprejudiced 979.12
incurious 982.3
inattentive 984.6
mediocre 1005.7
indigence 619.2
indigenous
native 226.5
innate 767.8
indigent
n poor man 619.4
adj poverty-stricken 619.8
indigestible 82.6
indigestion 85.9
indignant angry 152.28
disapproving 510.21
indignation
indignant displeasure 152.4
disapproval 510.1
indignity affront 156.2
disparagement 512.1
indirect deviative 164.7
oblique 204.13
deceitful 356.22
circumlocutory 538.14
dishonest 645.16
eventual 831.11
circuitous 914.7
indirection
deviation 164.1
obliquity 204.1
deceit 356.3
circumlocution 538.5
improbity 645.1
circuitousness 914.1
indiscernible
invisible 32.5
infinitesimal 258.14
indistinguishable 945.6
indiscipline
disobedience 327.1
lawlessness 418.1
unrestraint 430.3
intemperance 669.1
indiscreet rash 493.7
indecent 666.5
unwise 923.10
undiscriminating 945.5
indiscretion
divulgence 351.2
rashness 493.1
misdeed 655.2
indecency 666.1
unwiseness 923.2
foolish act 923.4
indiscrimination 945.1
blunder 975.5
indiscriminate
mixed 797.14
unordered 810.12
extensive 864.13
undiscriminating 945.5
purposeless 972.16
indiscrimination
unconcern 102.2
unparticularness 945.1
indiscriminateness 945.1
choicelessness 963.6
indispensable
n requirement 963.2
adj requisite 963.13
vital 997.23
indispose afflict 85.50
disincline 379.4
indisposed ill 85.56
unwilling 325.5
indisputable
manifest 348.8
real 761.15
evidential 957.16
unqualified 960.2
obvious 970.15
indissoluble
inseparable 800.15
indivisible 1045.13
indistinct
inconspicuous 32.6
faint 52.16
obscure 522.15
inarticulate 525.12
indistinguishable 945.6
vague 971.19
indistinguishable
inconspicuous 32.6
identical 778.7
undistinguishable 945.6
indite pen 547.21
write 718.6
produce 892.8
inditement
writer 547.2
authorship 718.2
individual
n organism 305.2
person 312.5
something 763.3
single 872.4
adj personal 312.15
indicative 517.23
particular 865.12
one 872.7
individualism
egotism 140.3
independence 430.5
capitalism 611.8
selfishness 651.1
particularity 865.1
characteristic 865.4
disposition 978.3
individualist
n egotist 140.5
free agent 430.12
self-seeker 651.3
misfit 789.4
adj particular 865.12
individualistic
independent 430.22
capitalist 611.23
selfish 651.5
nonconformist 789.9
particular 865.12
individuality
person 312.5
particularity 865.1
oneness 872.1
individual 872.4
individualize
differentiate 780.6
particularize 865.9
indivisible
simple 798.6
inseparable 800.15
indestructible 855.18
one 872.7
nondivisible 1045.13
indocile
unwilling 325.5
insubordinate 327.9
ungovernable 361.12
indocility refusal 325.1
disobedience 327.1
ungovernability 361.4
indoctrinate
inculcate 568.12
propagandize 569.4
brainwash 858.15
indoctrinated 226.6
indoctrination
inculcation 568.2
propaganda 569.2
reindoctrination 858.5
indolence
inertness 173.4
slowness 175.1
inaction 329.1
laziness 331.5
indolent
n lazybones 331.7
adj slow 175.10
lazy 331.19
indomitable
impregnable 15.19
persevering 360.8
ungovernable 361.12
indoor
adj interior 207.6
adv indoors 207.12
indraft influx 189.2
wind 318.1
in dribs and drabs
piece by piece 793.9
sparsely 885.8

indubitable
manifest 348.8
obvious 970.15
induce elicit 192.14
prompt 375.22
admonish 422.6
lead 886.11
influence 894.7
conclude 946.10
inducement reason 375.1
enlistment 375.3
incentive 375.7
allurement 377.1
gratuity 478.5
induct insert 191.4
install 615.12
enlist 615.17
inaugurate 818.11
inductee recruit 461.18
novice 572.9
inductile 1046.12
induction
admission 187.2
installation 615.3
enlistment 615.7
holy orders 698.10
inauguration 818.5
basics 818.6
reasoning 935.3
conclusion 946.4
electrostatic induction 1032.15
in due course
in time 839.11
opportunely 843.12
soon 845.16
indulge humor 427.6
suffer 443.10
indulge oneself 669.4
indulged forgiven 148.7
pampered 427.9
indulgence
patience 134.1
considerateness 143.3
forgiveness 148.1
humoring 427.3
sufferance 443.2
privilege 642.2
intemperance 669.1
tolerance 979.4
indulgent patient 134.9
considerate 143.16
compliant 427.8
nonrestrictive 430.25
permissive 443.14
intemperate 669.7
tolerant 979.11
indulge oneself
reject authority 418.4
please oneself 651.4
indulge 669.4
indurate
v callous 94.6
harden 1046.7
adj hard 1046.13
indurated callous 94.12
heartless 144.25
obdurate 654.17
hardened 1046.13
induration
callousness 94.3
impenitence 114.2
heartlessness 144.10
pitilessness 146.1
hardness 1046.1
hardening 1046.5
industrial
occupational 724.16
commercial 731.22
productional 892.14
industrial engineering 1043.1
industrialist
businessman 730.1
producer 892.7
industrialization
commercialization 731.14
industrial production 892.3
industrialize
put on a business basis 731.20
perform 892.11
industrious
assiduous 330.22
painstaking 339.11
persevering 360.8
industry
industriousness 330.6
painstakingness 339.2
perseverance 360.1
company 617.9
work 725.4
commerce 731.1
industrial production 892.3
indwell
be present 221.6
inhere 767.6
indwelling
n intrinsicality 767.1
adj present 221.12
intrinsic 767.7
inebriant
n spirits 88.13
adj intoxicating 88.36
inebriate
n drinker 88.11
v intoxicate 88.22
adj intoxicated 88.31
inebriation 88.1
inedible 64.8
ineducable 922.15
ineffable
indescribable 122.13
sacred 685.7
extraordinary 870.14
in effect
adj in use 387.25
existent 761.13
adv really 761.16
ineffective
unable 19.14
ineffectual 19.15
useless 391.9
unsuccessful 410.18
incompetent 414.19
uninfluential 895.3
ineffectual
ineffective 19.15
useless 391.9
unsuccessful 410.18
incompetent 414.19
unproductive 891.4
uninfluential 895.3
inefficacious
ineffective 19.15
unsuccessful 410.18
uninfluential 895.3
inefficacy
ineffectiveness 19.3
futility 391.2
lack of influence 895.1
inefficiency
inability 19.2
unskillfulness 414.1
inefficient unable 19.14
unskillful 414.15
inelastic
unyielding 361.9
rigid 1046.11
inflexible 1046.12
inelegance
clumsiness 414.3
vulgarity 497.1
unwieldiness 534.1
inelegancy 534.1
indecency 666.1
ugliness 1015.1
inelegant
bungling 414.20
vulgar 497.10
clumsy 534.2
indecent 666.5
ugly 1015.6
ineluctable
inevitable 963.15
certain 970.13
inenarrable
indescribable 122.13
sacred 685.7
inept unable 19.14
unskillful 414.15
inappropriate 789.7
unintelligent 922.13
foolish 923.8
inexpedient 996.5
ineptitude
inability 19.2
unintelligence 922.1
foolishness 923.1
inexpedience 996.1
inequality
roughness 288.1
class 607.1
injustice 650.1
partiality 650.3
difference 780.1
nonuniformity 782.1
disagreement 789.1
disparity 791.1
unevenness 791.1
inequity injustice 650.1
inequality 791.1
ineradicable 855.18
inerasable 855.18
inerrant
infallible 970.19
exact 973.17
inert inactive 173.14
passive 329.6
languid 331.20
unchangeable 855.17
inanimate 1055.5
inertia inertness 173.4
slowness 175.1
inaction 329.1
inactivity 331.1
indolence 331.5
immobility 855.3
inerudite 930.14
inescapable real 761.15
inevitable 963.15
inessential
n nonessential 768.2
adj circumstantial 766.7
accessory 768.4
insignificant 998.17
inestimable 632.10
inevasible 963.15
in every respect
throughout 794.17
exactly 973.21
inevitable
obligatory 424.11
unavoidable 963.15
destined 964.9
certain 970.13
inexact
unmeticulous 340.13
vague 971.19
inaccurate 975.17
imperfect 1003.4
in excess
adj superfluous 993.17
adv intemperately 669.10
to extremes 993.23
inexcitable
unfeeling 94.9
unconcerned 102.7
imperturbable 106.10
dull 117.6
unastonished 123.3
unnervous 129.2
inexcusable 650.12
inexhaustible
infinite 823.3
innumerable 884.10
plentiful 991.7
inexorable
pitiless 146.3
unyielding 361.9
firm 425.7
inevitable 963.15
inexpectation
hopelessness 125.1
unexpectedness 131.1
nonexpectation 131.1
suddenness 830.2
inexpedience
mismanagement 414.6
untimeliness 844.1
unwiseness 923.2
inadvisablity 996.1
undesirability 996.1
badness 1000.1
inexpedient
untimely 844.6
unwise 923.10
undesirable 996.5
bad 1000.7
inexpensive 633.7
inexperience
immaturity 301.3
unaccustomedness 374.1
unfamiliarity 414.2
ignorance 930.1

inexperienced
immature 301.10
unaccustomed 374.4
unpracticed 414.17
foolable 923.12
ignorant 930.12
inexpiable 650.12
inexplicable
unexplainable 522.18
purposeless 972.16
inexplicit
ambiguous 539.4
uncertain 971.16
inexpressible
indescribable 122.13
sacred 685.7
inexpressive 522.20
inexpugnable
impregnable 15.19
indestructible 855.18
inextensible 1046.12
inextinguishable 855.18
in extremis
dying 307.33
in danger 1006.13
straitened 1013.26
inextricable
inexplicable 522.18
irreducible 799.5
stuck 855.16
in fact really 761.16
truly 973.18
infallibility
certainty 970.1
perfection 1002.1
infallible
inerrable 970.19
exact 973.17
perfect 1002.6
infamous wrong 638.3
knavish 645.17
wicked 654.16
disreputable 661.10
terrible 1000.9
infamy
abomination 638.2
iniquity 654.3
infamousness 661.4
infancy inability 19.2
immaturity 301.3
babyhood 301.5
origin 818.4
infant
n youngster 302.1
baby 302.9
simple soul 416.3
schoolchild 572.3
innocent 657.4
beginner 818.2
adj infantile 301.12
incomplete 795.4
beginning 818.15
infantile
infant 301.12
beginning 818.15
puerile 922.24
infantilism
mental deficiency 922.9
puerility 922.11
infantryman
pedestrian 178.6
foot soldier 461.9
infarction 293.3
infatuate
n enthusiast 101.4
lover 104.12
fanatic 926.18
v enamor 104.23
fascinate 377.7
stultify 923.7
obsess 926.25
adj enamored 104.28
infatuated
overzealous 101.12
enamored 104.28
foolish 923.8
obsessed 926.33
credulous 954.8
infatuation liking 100.2
overzealousness 101.3
infatuatedness 104.4
stultification 923.5
mania 926.12
credulity 954.1
in favor of
adj approving 509.17
prep for 449.26
approving of 509.21
infect defile 80.17
disease 85.51
inspire 375.20
corrupt 393.12
work evil 1000.6
radioactivate 1037.10
infected unclean 80.20
diseased 85.60
radioactive 1037.11
infection
defilement 80.4
contagion 85.4
infectious disease 85.13
inspiration 375.9
corruption 393.2
evil 1000.3
infectious
poisonous 82.7
contagious 85.62
infectious disease 85.13
infecund
unproductive 891.4
unimaginative 987.5
infelicitous
ungrammatic 531.4
inelegant 534.2
inappropriate 789.7
untimely 844.6
inexpedient 996.5
infelicity
wretchedness 96.6
unhappiness 112.2
solecism 531.2
inelegance 534.1
unfitness 789.3
untimeliness 844.1
inexpedience 996.1
infer imply 519.4
reason 935.15
conclude 946.10
suppose 951.10
inference
implication 519.2
reasoning 935.3
conclusion 946.4
supposition 951.3
inferential
suggestive 519.6
dialectic 935.22
inferior
n underling 250.2
subordinate 432.5
retainer 577.1
adj unable 19.14
subordinate 250.6
lower 274.8
subject 432.13
short of 911.5
unimportant 998.16
insignificant 998.17
bad 1000.7
poor 1005.9
inferiority
inability 19.2
subordinacy 250.1
subservience 432.2
abnormality 870.1
shortcoming 911.1
unimportance 998.1
badness 1000.1
inferiorness 1005.3
inferiority complex
complex 92.22
self-effacement 139.2
infernal cruel 144.26
diabolic 654.13
hellish 682.8
execrable 1000.10
inferno hell 682.1
hot place 1019.11
inferred implied 519.7
supposed 951.14
infertile
unproductive 891.4
unimaginative 987.5
infertility
unproductiveness 891.1
unimaginativeness 987.1
infest 910.6
infestation 910.2
infidel
n gentile 688.6
unbeliever 695.11
adj infidelic 688.10
unbelieving 695.19
infidelity
love affair 104.6
unfaithfulness 645.5
infidelism 688.3
atheism 695.5
unbelief 955.1
infield playground 743.11
baseball 745.1
track 755.1
horse racing 757.1
infighting
dissension 456.3
contention 457.1
boxing 457.9
infiltrate absorb 187.13
filter in 189.10
intrude 214.5
launch an attack 459.17
imbue 797.11
soak 1065.13
infiltration
sorption 187.6
entrance 189.1
intrusion 214.1
attack 459.1
imbuement 797.2
soaking 1065.7
infiltrator 214.3
infinite
spacious 158.11
omnipresent 221.13
large 247.7
huge 257.20
almighty 677.17
boundless 823.3
perpetual 829.7
innumerable 884.10
numeric 1017.23
infinitesimal 258.14
infinity
omnipresence 221.2
greatness 247.1
distance 261.1
length 267.1
limitlessness 823
infiniteness 823.1
perpetuity 829.1
large number 1017.5
infirm
unsound 16.15
unhealthy 85.54
stricken in years 303.18
weak-willed 362.12
unvirtuous 654.12
fragile 764.7
inconstant 854.7
feebleminded 922.21
unreliable 971.20
infirmity
unsoundness 16.3
disease 85.1
unhealthiness 85.3
old age 303.5
weak will 362.4
vice 654.2
feeblemindedness 922.8
unreliability 971.6
fault 1003.2
infix
n interjection 213.2
added to writing 254.2
morphology 526.3
v implant 191.8
add 253.4
inculcate 568.12
fix 855.9
fix in the mind 989.18
infixed
confirmed 373.18
intrinsic 767.7
established 855.13
inflame energize 17.10
pain 26.7
make red 41.4
excite 105.12
provoke 152.24
incite 375.17
heat 1020.18
ignite 1020.22
inflamed sore 26.11
red 41.6

feverish 85.58
diseased 85.60
excited 105.20
fiery 671.22
burning 1019.27
inflammable
n fuel 1021.1
adj excitable 105.28
flammable 1020.28
inflammation
soreness 26.4
symptom 85.9
inflammatory disease 85.10
excitation 105.11
incitement 375.4
inflammatory
exciting 105.30
incitive 375.28
inflammative 1020.27
inflate puff up 140.7
increase 251.4
enlarge 259.4
exaggerate 355.3
talk big 545.6
heat the economy 632.9
overextend 993.13
inflated
increased 251.7
distended 259.13
exaggerated 355.4
pompous 501.22
swollen 502.12
bombastic 545.9
inflation increase 251.1
distension 259.2
exaggeration 355.1
pompousness 501.7
style 532.2
grandiloquence 545.1
price index 630.4
high price 632.3
business cycle 731.10
overextension 993.7
inflationary
expansive 259.9
overpriced 632.12
inflect curve 279.6
modulate 524.28
grammaticize 530.16
inflection angle 278.2
bend 279.3
intonation 524.6
morphology 526.3
inflexible firm 359.12
unyielding 361.9
strict 425.7
immovable 855.15
uninfluenceable 895.4
inevitable 963.15
intractable 1046.12
inflict do 328.6
wreak 643.5
infliction affliction 96.8
punishment 604.1
imposition 643.1
bane 1001.1
in flight
adj fugitive 368.16
adv on the wing 184.51
inflorescence 310.26
inflorescent 310.38
inflow influx 189.2
flow 238.4
wind 318.1
influence
n power 18.1
supremacy 249.3
motivation 375.2
machination 415.4
prestige 417.4
influentiality 894.1
good influence 894.6
v motivate 375.22
cause 886.10
induce 886.11
determine 886.12
operate on 889.6
make oneself felt 894.7
prejudice 980.9
influence peddler
Machiavellian 415.8
wire-puller 609.30
politician 610.5
influence 894.6
influential
authoritative 417.15
powerful 894.13
influx inflow 189.2
intrusion 214.1
in focus 31.7
infomercial 352.6
in force powerful 18.12
in use 387.25
existent 761.13
operating 889.11
inform
v pervade 221.7
betray 351.6
inspire 375.20
tell 551.8
report 552.11
teach 568.10
adj formless 263.4
informality
unceremoniousness 581.1
informalness 581.1
informant
informer 551.5
examinee 938.19
witness 957.6
information
communication 343.1
facts 551.1
info 551.1
news 552.1
teaching 568.1
arraignment 598.3
accusation 599.1
knowledge 928.1
data 1042.15
information retrieval 551.7
information technology 551.7
information theory
communications 343.5
electronic communications 347.1
data storage 551.7
autonetics 1041.2
informative
informing 551.18
educational 568.18
informed
prepared 405.16
clued-in 551.17
knowing 928.15
cognizant of 928.16
enlightened 928.18
up on 928.19
informer
traitor 357.10
informant 551.5
betrayer 551.6
accuser 599.5
witness 957.6
inform on
disclose 351.6
inform 551.12
accuse 599.7
betray 645.14
infra 274.10
infraction
disobedience 327.1
violation 435.2
wrong 638.1
lawbreaking 674.3
foul 746.3
basketball game 747.3
game 749.3
hockey game 749.6
overstepping 910.3
infrangible
firm 15.18
indivisible 1045.13
unbreakable 1049.5
infrared 41.6
infrastructure
inferior 250.2
understructure 266.3
directorate 574.11
support 901.1
foundation 901.6
frame 901.10
infrequency
seldomness 848
rarity 848.1
fewness 885.1
infrequent
rare 848.2
sparse 885.5
infringe
intrude 214.5
violate 435.4
adopt 621.4
usurp 640.8
break the law 674.5
overstep 910.9
infringement
intrusion 214.1
disobedience 327.1
impairment 393.1
violation 435.2
adoption 621.2
usurpation 640.3
lawbreaking 674.3
overstepping 910.3
in front
adj front 216.10
adv ahead 165.4
before 216.12
prep facing 215.7
in full at length 538.16
fully 766.13
completely 794.14
in full bloom 303.13
in full swing
adj unweakened 15.21
astir 330.19
thriving 1010.13
adv actively 330.25
in fun
mischievously 322.7
in sport 489.19
for amusement 743.31
infundibular
conical 282.12
concave 284.16
infuriate
v excite 105.12
enrage 152.25
antagonize 589.7
adj infuriated 152.32
turbulent 671.18
infuriated 152.32
infuse insert 191.3
extraction 192.16
inspire 375.20
inculcate 568.12
imbue 797.11
liquefy 1064.5
soak 1065.13
infusion
insertion 191.1
extract 192.7
distillation 192.8
inspiration 375.9
inculcation 568.2
baptism 701.6
imbuement 797.2
admixture 797.7
liquefaction 1064.1
solution 1064.3
soaking 1065.7
in general 864.17
ingenious
skillful 413.22
cunning 415.12
imaginative 986.18
ingenue
simple soul 416.3
role 704.10
script 706.3
actor 707.2
ingenuity
skill 413.1
invention 986.3
ingenuous
immature 301.10
artless 416.5
candid 644.17
ignorant 930.12
gullible 954.9
ingest devour 8.22
eat 187.11
consume 388.3
absorb 570.7
ingesta 10.1
ingestion
body function 2.17
digestion 7.8
eating 8.1
reception 187.4
consumption 388.1
absorption 570.2

ingle home 228.2
fire 1019.13
fireplace 1020.11
inglenook home 228.2
recess 284.7
fireplace 1020.11
ingleside home 228.2
fireplace 1020.11
inglorious
humble 137.10
disreputable 661.10
unrenowned 661.14
ingoing
n entrance 189.1
adj introverted 92.40
entering 189.12
in good shape
healthy 83.8
in order 807.7
ingot
precious metals 728.20
cast 1058.5
ingrain color 35.14
fix 855.9
ingrained
deep-dyed 35.18
confirmed 373.18
intrinsic 767.7
established 855.13
ingrate 151.2
ingratiate oneself
insinuate oneself 138.10
influence 894.7
gain influence 894.12
ingratiating
obsequious 138.14
suave 504.18
ingratitude
unthankfulness 151.1
ungratefulness 151.1
ingredient
particular 766.3
part 793.1
component 796.2
ingress
entrance 189.1
inlet 189.5
channel 239.1
ingroup clique 617.6
influence 894.6
ingrown 855.13
inhabit settle 159.17
occupy 225.7
people 225.9
exist in 761.11
inhabitant dweller 227
population 227.1
inhabiter 227.2
inhalant medicine 86.4
drug 87.3
inhalation
breathing 2.21
drawing in 187.5
inhale smell 69.8
smoke 89.14
draw in 187.12
in hand unused 390.12
undertaken 404.7
in preparation 405.22
possessed 469.8
under control 612.20
restrained 670.11
orderly 807.6
happening 831.9
operating 889.11
in production 892.21
inharmonious
off-color 35.21
dissonant 61.4
disaccordant 456.15
different 780.7
disagreeing 789.6
in harmony
in accord 455.3
agreeing 788.9
jointly 800.18
in heat 75.28
inherence
presence 221.1
intrinsicality 767.1
inherent present 221.12
intrinsic 767.7
instinctive 934.6
inherit be heir to 479.7
inhere 767.6
succeed 815.2
inheritable
heritable 560.20
transferable 629.5
inheritance
property 471.1
bequest 478.10
heritance 479.2
heredity 560.6
inherited
hereditary 560.19
innate 767.8
inheritor heir 479.5
successor 817.4
sequel 835.2
inhibit suppress 106.8
restrain 428.7
confine 429.12
prohibit 444.3
retain 474.5
hinder 1012.10
inhibiting
restraining 428.11
hindering 1012.17
inhibition
suppression 92.24
restraint 428.1
prohibition 444.1
retention 474.1
hindrance 1012.1
inhibitive
restraining 428.11
prohibitive 444.6
hindering 1012.17
in honor of 487.4
inhospitable
unkind 144.16
unhospitable 586.7
unfriendly 589.9
inhospitality
unkindness 144.1
uncordialness 586.1
inhospitableness 586.1
enmity 589.1
inhuman
cruel 144.26
savage 671.21
demoniac 680.17
inhumane 144.26
inhumanity
cruelty 144.11
act of cruelty 144.12
violence 671.1
inhume 309.19
inimical
oppositional 451.8
warlike 458.21
unfriendly 589.9
contrary 779.6
counteractive 900.8
adverse 1011.13
inimitable 249.15
in installments
on credit 622.10
piece by piece 793.9
incompletely 795.6
iniquitous
malicious 144.20
unjust 650.9
wicked 654.16
wrongdoing 655.5
bad 1000.7
iniquity
injustice 650.1
evil 654.3
misdeed 655.2
badness 1000.1
initial
n first 818.3
v ratify 332.12
letter 546.6
adj beginning 818.15
initials
identification 517.11
signature 527.10
initiate
n novice 572.9
member 617.11
v install 191.4
preinstruct 568.14
originate 818.10
inaugurate 818.11
adj skilled 413.26
initiation
establishment 159.7
admission 187.2
elementary education 568.5
ceremony 580.4
first 818.3
inauguration 818.5
initiative
n vim 17.2
act 328.3
enterprise 330.7
undertaking 404.1
referendum 613.8
process 889.2
adj introductory 187.18
beginning 818.15
inject use 87.22
insert 191.3
inspire 375.20
soak 1065.13
injection remedy 86.6
narcotic shot 87.20
inoculation 91.16
entrance 189.1
insertion 191.1
interjection 213.2
intrusion 214.1
soaking 1065.7
spacecraft 1075.2
injudicious
rash 493.7
unwise 923.10
injunction
precept 419.1
charge 420.2
court order 420.6
restraint 428.1
prohibition 444.1
exclusion 773.1
injure mistreat 389.5
impair 393.9
hurt 393.13
work evil 1000.6
injured pained 96.23
impaired 393.27
injurious
unhealthful 82.5
impaired 393.27
corrupting 393.44
disadvantageous 996.6
harmful 1000.12
injury pain 96.5
indignity 156.2
mistreatment 389.2
impairment 393.1
loss 473.1
injustice 650.4
misdeed 655.2
disadvantage 996.2
evil 1000.3
injustice
misrepresentation 350.1
presumption 640.2
unjustness 650.1
wrong 650.4
misdeed 655.2
inequality 791.1
ink
n blackness 38.4
v blacken 38.7
in keeping with
in agreement with 788.12
conformable to 867.9
inkling hint 551.4
admixture 797.7
suggestion 951.5
inky black 38.8
stained 1004.10
inland
n inlands 207.3
adj interior 207.7
adv inward 207.11
in-laws 564.2
inlay
n insert 191.2
lining 196.3
v inset 191.5
implant 191.8
fill 196.7
in league in cooperation 450.7
leagued 805.6
inlet entrance 189.5
cove 242.1
opening 292.1
passageway 383.3
in lieu of 862.12

in line in step 788.11
conformist 867.6
in line with
adv directly 161.23
prep in agreement with 788.12
conformable to 867.9
in love 104.29
inmate 227.2
in memoriam 989.29
in memory of
in honor of 487.4
to the memory of 989.29
in-migrate
migrate 177.22
enter 189.11
inmost interior 207.6
private 345.13
in motion
moving 172.7
under way 172.9
inn 228.15
in name only
pretexted 376.5
nominal 527.15
innards viscera 2.16
contents 196.1
insides 207.4
mechanism 1040.4
innate
hereditary 560.19
inborn 767.8
instinctive 934.6
attitudinal 978.7
inner
n interior 207.2
adj interior 207.6
intrinsic 767.7
particular 865.12
inner circle
council 423.1
clique 617.6
inner city 230.6
inner-directed
introverted 92.40
moved 375.30
independent 430.22
nonconformist 789.9
inner man
interior 207.2
self 865.5
inmost mind 919.3
psyche 919.4
innermost
interior 207.6
private 345.13
inner nature
interior 207.2
inside 767.5
inner workings 1040.4
inning game 745.3
turn 825.2
innocence
artlessness 416.1
naturalness 499.2
purity 653.3
guiltlessness 657.1
innocency 657.1
chastity 664.1
ignorance 930.1
harmlessness 999.9
innocent
n child 302.3
dupe 358.1
simple soul 416.3
baby 657.4
adj immature 301.10
artless 416.5
natural 499.7
chaste 653.7
unfallen 657.6
chaste 664.4
ignorant 930.12
trusting 953.22
harmless 999.21
innocuous
humble 137.10
justifiable 600.14
harmless 999.21
innominable 122.13
innominate 528.3
in no time
in short order 174.19
quickly 830.7
promptly 845.15
innovate
originate 337.4
invent 841.5
make innovations 852.9
innovation
nonimitation 337.1
original 337.2
curtain-raiser 816.2
novelty 841.2
introduction 852.4
innovator
precursor 816.1
transformer 852.5
innoxious 999.21
innuendo
sarcasm 508.5
aspersion 512.4
implication 519.2
hint 551.4
accusation 599.1
innumerable
infinite 823.3
numberless 884.10
inobservance
nonobservance 435.1
inattention 984.1
inobservant
nonobservant 435.5
inattentive 984.6
inoculate
immunize 91.28
insert 191.3
inspire 375.20
inculcate 568.12
inoculation
vaccination 86.28
injection 91.16
insertion 191.1
inculcation 568.2
inoffensive
odorless 72.5
justifiable 600.14
harmless 999.21
in on 476.8
in one's power
under control 612.20
possible 966.6
inoperable
past hope 125.15
unserviceable 391.14
impracticable 967.8
in operation in use 387.25
operating 889.11
inoperative
ineffective 19.15
unserviceable 391.14
in disrepair 393.37
inopportune
untimely 844.6
inexpedient 996.5
in opposition to
adv counteractively 900.10
prep opposite to 215.7
opposed to 451.10
in disagreement with 789.10
in order in trim 807.7
in turn 807.10
in order to 405.24
inordinance 993.1
inordinate
exaggerated 355.4
overpriced 632.12
intemperate 669.7
fanatic 926.32
excessive 993.16
inorganic
unorganic 1055.4
mineral 1058.15
inornate 499.9
in other words 341.18
in particular
fully 766.13
particularly 865.15
in passing
on the way 176.20
hastily 401.12
incidentally 843.13
inpatient
sick person 85.43
inhabitant 227.2
in person
presence 221.17
personally 865.16
in place located 159.18
in position 159.20
present 221.12
provided 385.13
established 855.13
in place of 862.12
in plain sight
visible 31.6
openly 348.15
inpouring 189.12
in power
powerful 18.12
in authority 417.21
in practice
in use 387.25
operating 889.11
in process 889.11
in production
in preparation 405.22
in the works 892.21
in progress
in mid-progress 162.7
undertaken 404.7
in preparation 405.22
in public openly 348.15
publicly 352.19
in pursuit of 382.12
input
n entrance 189.1
data 1042.15
v computerize 1042.21
inquest autopsy 307.18
jury 596.6
trial 598.5
inquiry 938.1
in question
at issue 938.39
doubtful 971.17
undecided 971.18
inquietude
unpleasure 96.1
excitement 105.5
anxiety 126.1
trepidation 127.5
agitation 917.1
inquire ask 938.20
be curious 981.3
inquirer student 572.1
asker 938.16
inquisitive person 981.2
inquiring
n inquiry 938.1
questioning 938.12
adj questioning 938.36
curious 981.5
inquiry trial 598.5
examination 938.2
inquiring 938.1
question 938.10
canvass 938.14
inquisition
n tribunal 595.1
trial 598.5
inquiry 938.1
grilling 938.13
v grill 938.22
Inquisition 938.4
inquisitive
meddlesome 214.9
curious 981.5
inquisitor
inquirer 938.16
inquisitive person 981.2
in rags shabby 393.32
indigent 619.8
slovenly 810.15
in reality
really 761.16
truly 973.18
in regard to 775.13
in repair
out of order 765.7
in order 807.7
in reserve back 386.17
in readiness 405.21
imminent 840.3
in return
in compensation 338.7
in retaliation 506.9
interchangeably 863.6
in answer 939.7
inroad
n intrusion 214.1
impairment 393.1
raid 459.4
overstepping 910.3

v raid 459.20
inrush influx 189.2
wind 318.1
ins 610.11
insalubrious 82.5
ins and outs
circumstances 766.2
vicissitudes 972.5
insane
turbulent 671.18
foolish 923.8
unsane 926.26
overzealous 101.12
insanity
mental disorder 92.14
disarrangement 811.1
mental deficiency 922.9
foolishness 923.1
mental sickness 926.1
insaneness 926.1
insatiable
greedy 100.27
rapacious 480.26
gluttonous 672.6
inscribe letter 546.6
write 547.19
record 549.15
engrave 713.9
fix 855.9
remember 989.18
inscribed
written 547.22
recorded 549.17
engraved 713.11
inscription
epitaph 309.18
lettering 546.5
writing 547.1
monument 549.12
registration 549.14
makeup 554.12
engraving 713.2
motto 974.4
inscrutable 522.13
in season 313.9
insect bug 311.33
invertebrate 311.33
bad person 660.6
insecticide 1001.3
insectivore 311.3
insecure
unreliable 971.20
unconfident 971.23
unsafe 1006.11
insecurity
unreliability 971.6
dangerousness 1006.2
in self-defense 460.16
inseminate
reproduce 78.10
fertilize 890.8
plant 1069.18
insemination
reproduction 78.3
fertilization 890.3
planting 1069.14
insensate
insensible 25.6
cruel 144.26
turbulent 671.18
savage 671.21
unintelligent 922.13
foolish 923.8
unwise 923.10
absurd 923.11
inanimate 1055.5
insensibility
physical unfeeling 25
insensibleness 25.1
callousness 94.2
unperceptiveness 922.2
incognizance 930.3
indiscrimination 945.1
inanimateness 1055.2
insensible
unfeeling 25.6
invisible 32.5
unconscious 94.10
undiscerning 922.14
unaware 930.13
oblivious 984.7
inanimate 1055.5
insensitive
insensible 25.6
callous 94.12
inconsiderate 144.18
heartless 144.25
ill-bred 505.6
undiscriminating 945.5
insensitivity
insensibility 25.1
callousness 94.3
unconcern 102.2
heartlessness 144.10
discourtesy 505.1
indiscrimination 945.1
intolerance 980.2
insentient
insensible 25.6
inanimate 1055.5
inseparability
familiarity 587.5
cohesion 803.1
indivisibility 1045.2
inseparable
familiar 587.19
impartible 800.15
cohesive 803.10
indivisible 1045.13
insert
n insertion 191.2
interjection 213.2
v enter 189.7
introduce 191.3
record 549.15
insertion
entrance 189.1
putting in 191
introduction 191.1
insert 191.2
interjection 213.2
registration 549.14
spacecraft 1075.2
in session
in council 423.6
assembled 770.21
inset
n map 159.5
insert 191.2
v inlay 191.5
in shape
healthy 83.8
hale 83.12
hearty 765.7
in order 807.7
in short order
in no time 174.19
in a hurry 401.14
quickly 830.7
inside
n interior 207.2
inner nature 767.5
adj interior 207.6
confidential 345.14
adv in 207.10
prep in 207.13
inside information
secret 345.5
private information 551.2
inside job 381.5
inside out
inverted 205.7
completely 794.14
insider
inside information 551.2
member 617.11
insides
viscera 2.16
contents 196.1
inner parts 207.4
inner nature 767.5
inside track
advantage 249.2
favor 894.2
insidious
deceitful 356.22
cunning 415.12
dishonest 645.16
shrewd 920.15
insight
extrasensory perception 689.8
sagacity 920.4
cognizance 928.2
good idea 932.6
intuition 934.1
discernment 944.2
insightful
knowing 928.15
discerning 944.8
insignia
sign 517.1
symbol 647.1
regalia 647.1
insignificance
triviality 248.1
inconsiderableness 248.1
meaninglessness 520.1
unimportance 998.1
insignificant
small 248.6
meaningless 520.6
inconsequential 998.17
insincere
uncandid 354.32
affected 500.15
flattering 511.8
deceitful 645.18
sanctimonious 693.5
sophistical 936.10
insincerity
uncandidness 354.5
affectation 500.1
unction 511.2
deceitfulness 645.3
sanctimony 693.1
sophistry 936.1
insinuate
insert 191.3
intrude 214.5
advise 422.5
imply 519.4
hint 551.10
accuse 599.7
insinuating
flattering 511.8
disparaging 512.13
suggestive 519.6
shrewd 920.15
insinuation
obsequiousness 138.2
entrance 189.1
insertion 191.1
interjection 213.2
intrusion 214.1
piece of advice 422.2
aspersion 512.4
hint 551.4
accusation 599.1
influence 894.1
shrewdness 920.3
insipid
wishy-washy 16.17
tasteless 65.2
dull 117.6
vacant 222.14
prosaic 721.5
mediocre 1005.7
insist
affirm 334.5
urge 375.14
demand 421.8
urge upon 439.9
dwell on 849.9
make conditional 959.4
necessitate 963.8
insistence
perseverance 360.1
urging 375.5
exigence 421.4
insistent
persevering 360.8
demanding 421.9
importunate 440.18
urgent 997.22
insobriety 88.1
insociable 583.5
insofar as 888.10
insolation
heatstroke 85.28
heating 1020.1
fuel 1021.1
drying 1066.3
insolence
impenitence 114.2
arrogance 141.2
effrontery 142.1
presumption 142.1
disrespect 156.1
defiance 454.1
rashness 493.1
impudence 505.2
insolent
impenitent 114.5
presumptuous 141.10

  impudent 142.9
  disrespectful 156.7
  insulting 156.8
  defiant 454.7
  rash 493.7
  discourteous 505.4
insoluble
  inexplicable 522.18
  indivisible 1045.13
insolvable 522.18
insolvency
  poverty 619.1
  credit 622.1
  bankruptcy 625.3
insolvent
  n insolvent debtor 625.4
  adj destitute 619.9
  bankrupt 625.11
  unsound 729.19
insomnia
  wakefulness 23.1
  symptom 85.9
insomniac
  n wakefulness 23.1
  adj wakeful 23.7
insomuch as 888.10
insouciance
  apathy 94.4
  unconcern 102.2
  carelessness 340.2
  incuriosity 982.1
insouciant
  apathetic 94.13
  unconcerned 102.7
  careless 340.11
  incurious 982.3
inspect
  scrutinize 27.14
  examine 938.24
inspection
  scrutiny 27.6
  study 570.3
  examination 938.3
  automation 1041.7
inspector
  superintendent 574.2
  examiner 938.17
  policeman 1008.15
inspiration
  breathing 2.21
  drawing in 187.5
  impulse 365.1
  motive 375.1
  infusion 375.9
  encouragement 492.9
  function of Holy Ghost 677.15
  revelation 683.10
  Muse 720.10
  genius 920.8
  good idea 932.6
  intuition 934.1
  creative thought 986.2
inspire cheer 109.7
  give hope 124.10
  draw in 187.12
  prompt 375.13
  inspirit 375.20
  encourage 492.16
  induce 886.11
inspired fired 375.31
  appropriate 533.7
  scriptural 683.11
  imaginative 986.18
inspirer
  prompter 375.10
  author 886.4
inspiring
  cheering 109.16
  promising 124.13
  inspirational 375.26
  lofty 544.14
inspirit cheer 109.7
  give hope 124.10
  vivify 306.11
  inspire 375.20
  encourage 492.16
inspissate
  v broaden 269.5
  densify 1045.9
  thicken 1045.10
  emulsify 1062.10
  adj thickened 1045.14
in spite of 338.9
instability
  infirmity 16.3
  irresolution 362.1
  nonuniformity 782.1
  transience 828.1
  inconstancy 854.2
  unreliability 971.6
  dangerousness 1006.2
install locate 159.11
  establish 159.16
  insert 191.4
  instate 615.12
  inaugurate 818.11
  produce 892.10
installation
  foundation 159.7
  admission 187.2
  installment 615.3
  holy orders 698.10
  workplace 739.1
  inauguration 818.5
  establishment 892.4
installment
  establishment 159.7
  admission 187.2
  book part 554.13
  installation 615.3
  payment 624.1
  part 793.1
  inauguration 818.5
installment plan
  borrowing 621.1
  credit 622.1
  payment 624.1
instance
  n urging 375.5
  proposal 439.2
  particular 766.3
  example 786.2
  sample 786.3
  citation 957.5
  v itemize 766.6
  cite 957.13
instant
  n period 824.1
  short time 828.3
  moment 830.3
  adj hasty 401.9
  demanding 421.9
  instantaneous 830.4
  imminent 840.3
  prompt 845.9
  urgent 997.22
instantaneous
  short 268.8
  instant 830.4
  prompt 845.9
instate insert 191.4
  install 615.12
instead 862.11
instead of 862.12
instep 199.5
in step
  in concert 788.11
  synchronous 836.6
  conformist 867.6
instigate
  incite 375.17
  induce 886.11
instigation 375.4
instigator
  inciter 375.11
  author 886.4
  producer 892.7
instill inculcate 568.12
  imbue 797.11
  fix in the mind 989.18
instilled 373.18
instillment
  inculcation 568.2
  imbuement 797.2
instinct feeling 93.1
  impulse 365.1
  talent 413.4
  intuitiveness 934.1
  innateness 934.2
  discrimination 944.1
  involuntariness 963.5
instinctive
  animal 311.40
  innate 767.8
  natural 934.6
  involuntary 963.14
instinctual
  animal 311.40
  innate 767.8
  intuitive 934.6
institute
  n school 567.1
  organization 617.8
  v inaugurate 818.11
  cause 886.10
  establish 892.10
institution
  organization 617.8
  law 673.3
  holy orders 698.10
  rite 701.3
  workplace 739.1
  beginning 818.1
  establishment 892.4
institutionalize 429.17
in store in stock 386.16
  in readiness 405.21
  possessed 469.8
  imminent 840.3
  destined 964.9
instruct
  command 420.8
  advise 422.5
  inform 551.8
  teach 568.10
instruction
  precept 419.1
  direction 420.3
  advice 422.1
  information 551.1
  teaching 568.1
  orders 568.6
  lesson 568.7
  learning 928.4
instructive
  preceptive 419.4
  commanding 420.13
  advisory 422.8
  informative 551.18
  educational 568.18
instructor
  aviator 185.1
  preparer 405.5
  adviser 422.3
  teacher 571.1
  academic rank 571.3
instrument
  n surgery 91.19
  sycophant 138.3
  measure 300.2
  manner 384.4
  document 549.5
  agent 576.3
  tool 1040.1
  v compose 708.46
  tool 1040.13
instrumental
  n case 530.9
  adj modal 384.8
  helping 449.20
  orchestral 708.51
instrumentalist 710.3
instrumentation
  measurement 300.1
  harmonization 709.2
  tooling 1040.11
  rocketry 1074.1
insubordinate
  n rebel 327.5
  adj unsubmissive 327.9
  lawless 418.5
insubordination
  disobedience 327.1
  lawlessness 418.1
insubstantial
  thin 270.16
  rare 299.4
  bodiless 764.5
  transient 828.7
  unsound 936.12
  unreliable 971.20
  immaterial 1053.7
insubstantiality
  thinness 270.4
  rarity 299.1
  immateriality 764.1
  unreliability 971.6
in succession
  in order 807.10
  continuously 812.11
insufferable 98.25
insufficiency
  inability 19.2

unsatisfactoriness 108.2
insignificance 248.1
inferiority 250.3
shallowness 276.1
inequality 791.1
shortcoming 911.1
inadequacy 992.1
insufficient
unsatisfactory 108.9
inadequate 250.7
unequal 791.4
short of 911.5
unsufficing 992.9
insular
n islander 235.4
adj local 231.9
insulated 235.7
secluded 584.8
exclusive 773.9
unrelated 776.6
separate 802.20
alone 872.8
narrow-minded 980.10
insularity island 235.2
exclusiveness 773.3
narrow-mindedness 980.1
insulate proof 15.14
isolate 235.5
segregate 773.6
nonconduct 1032.29
insulated insular 235.7
segregated 773.8
insulation
exclusiveness 773.3
safeguard 1008.3
insult
n indignity 156.2
contempt 157.1
gibe 508.2
v offend 156.5
disdain 157.3
ridicule 508.8
insulting
insolent 142.9
disrespectful 156.8
insuperable
impregnable 15.19
impracticable 967.8
insupportable 98.25
insuppressible 361.12
insurance
security 438.1
precaution 494.3
assurance 1008.4
insurance company 1008.4
insurance policy 1008.4
insure secure 438.9
make sure 970.11
protect 1008.18
insured
secured 438.11
safe 1007.4
insurer
endorser 332.7
guarantor 438.6
insurgence 327.4
insurgent
n rebel 327.5
adj rebellious 327.11
insurmountable 967.8
insurrection 327.4
insurrectionary
n rebel 327.5
adj rebellious 327.11
revolutionary 860.5
insusceptible 94.9
in suspense
on tenterhooks 130.12
inert 173.14
undecided 971.18
in a dilemma 971.25
uncertainly 971.28
in sync
harmonious 708.49
agreeing 788.9
in step 788.11
synchronous 836.6
simultaneously 836.7
concurrent 899.4
televisional 1035.16
intact
unpierced 293.10
immature 301.10
preserved 397.13
continent 664.6
untouched 792.10
complete 794.9
unmixed 798.7
new 841.7
permanent 853.7
unqualified 960.2
sound 1002.7
safe 1007.4
intaglio
engraving tool 713.8
relief 715.3
mold 786.6
intake entrance 189.1
inlet 189.5
receipts 627.1
intangibility
infinitesimalness 258.2
unsubstantiality 764.1
immateriality 1053.1
intangible
infinitesimal 258.14
unsubstantial 764.5
immaterial 1053.7
intangibles 471.7
integer whole 792.1
individual 872.4
integral whole 792.9
component 796.5
one 872.7
unitary 872.10
sound 1002.7
numeric 1017.23
integrate
symmetrize 264.3
equalize 790.6
form a whole 792.7
mix 797.10
combine 805.3
unify 872.5
integrated
whole 792.9
joined 800.13
combined 805.5
unitary 872.10
integration
symmetrization 264.2
affiliation 450.2
adjustment 788.4
equating 790.2
whole 792.1
mixture 797.1
combination 805.1
oneness 872.1
notation 1017.2
integrity
artlessness 416.1
probity 644.1
wholeness 792.1
completeness 794.1
simplicity 798.1
particularity 865.1
oneness 872.1
soundness 1002.2
integument
exterior 206.2
skin 295.3
intellect
intellectual faculty 919.1
mind 919.1
intelligence 920.1
knowledge 920.9
wise man 921.1
intellectual 929.1
intellectual
n wise man 921.1
scientist 928.11
learned person 929.3
intellect 929.1
adj mental 919.7
intelligent 920.12
knowledgeable 928.23
ideational 932.9
attitudinal 978.7
intellectuality
intelligence 920.1
scholarship 928.5
intellectualize
think 931.8
reason 935.15
intelligence
information 551.1
news 552.1
teachableness 570.5
secret service 576.12
spirit 678.5
intellect 919.1
mental grasp 920.1
understanding 920.1
mental capacity 920.9
knowledge 928.1
brains 928.3
surveillance 938.9
intelligence agent 576.9
intelligence quotient 920.1
intelligence service 576.12
intelligence testing 92.8
intelligence work 938.9
intelligent
teachable 570.18
mental 919.7
intellectual 920.12
knowing 928.15
intelligent agent computer 1042.2
software 1042.11
intelligentsia 929.2
intelligibility
meaningfulness 518.5
comprehensibility 521.1
facility 1014.1
intelligible
meaningful 518.10
comprehensible 521.10
intemperance
bibulousness 88.2
unrestraint 430.3
prodigality 486.1
incontinence 665.2
indulgence 669.1
intemperateness 669.1
gluttony 672.1
excess 993.1
intemperate
unrestrained 430.24
prodigal 486.8
incontinent 665.24
indulgent 669.7
violent 671.16
gluttonous 672.6
excessive 993.16
intend purpose 380.4
plan 381.8
have in mind 518.9
intended
n fiancé 104.17
adj intentional 380.8
promised 436.8
meant 518.11
intense
penetrating 15.22
energetic 17.13
sensitive 24.13
colorful 35.19
fervent 93.18
zealous 101.9
great 247.6
violent 671.16
attentive 983.15
intensified
aggravated 119.4
increased 251.7
intensify pain 26.7
aggravate 119.2
heighten 251.5
grow 251.6
intensity energy 17.1
colorfulness 35.4
loudness 53.1
zeal 101.2
greatness 247.1
violence 671.1
measurement of light 1025.21
intensive
laborious 725.18
thorough 794.10
intent
n intention 380.1
meaning 518.2
adj zealous 101.9
attentive 983.15
engrossed 983.17
intention will 323.1
motive 375.1
aim 380
intent 380.1
plan 381.1
meaning 518.2
inter 309.19
interact 777.6

interacting
communicational 343.9
interactive 777.9
interaction
communication 343.1
interworking 777.3
inter alia 253.11
interassociation
interrelation 777.2
interconnection 800.2
interbreed 797.13
interbreeding 797.4
intercalate
interpose 213.6
chronologize 832.14
intercede 466.6
intercept
listen 48.10
hinder 1012.10
interception
game 746.3
radar 1036.9
intercession
mediation 466.1
function of Christ 677.14
prayer 696.4
intercessional
mediatory 466.8
divine 677.16
intercessor
mediator 466.3
lawyer 597.1
interchange
n crossing 170.2
transferal 176.1
communication 343.1
passageway 383.3
retaliation 506.1
trade 731.2
interaction 777.3
mutual transfer 863
exchange 863.1
v communicate 343.6
get along 455.2
trade 731.15
interact 777.6
exchange 863.4
interchangeable
transferable 176.18
exchangeable 863.5
indistinguishable 945.6
intercollegiate 567.13
intercom
sound reproduction system 50.11
Interphone 347.6
intercommunicate
communicate 343.6
join 800.11
intercommunication
communication 343.1
social life 582.4
interaction 777.3
joining 800.1
intercommunicational 343.9
interconnect
relate 775.6
correlate 777.5
interjoin 800.6
interconnection
interrelation 777.2
interjoinder 800.2
intercosmic 1072.25
intercourse
copulation 75.7
communication 343.1
conversation 541.1
social life 582.4
commerce 731.1
relation 775.1
interaction 777.3
joining 800.1
interdenominational 675.27
interdependency 777.2
interdependent 777.8
interdict
n restraint 428.1
prohibition 444.1
v prohibit 444.3
interdigitation
interrelation 777.2
interconnection 800.2
interdisciplinary
scholastic 568.19
extensive 864.13
interest
n incentive 375.7
allurement 377.1
benefit 387.4
undertaking 404.1
patronage 449.4
estate 471.4
gain 472.3
portion 477.5
party 617.4
lending 620.1
premium 623.3
prerogative 642.1
partiality 650.3
selfishness 651.1
occupation 724.1
dividend 738.7
relevance 775.4
affair 831.3
cause 886.9
favor 894.2
side 935.14
curiosity 981.1
concern 983.2
importance 997.1
good 999.4
v attract 377.6
relate to 775.5
involve 898.2
concern 983.12
interested
partisan 617.19
partial 650.11
involved 898.4
discriminatory 980.12
curious 981.5
concerned 983.16
interest group
pressure group 609.31
party 617.4
interesting
alluring 377.8
stimulating 983.19
interest rate
lending 620.1
interest 623.3
interface
boundary 211.3
middle course 467.3
joint 800.4
interfere
intrude 214.5
hinder 1012.10
interference
intrusion 214.1
counteraction 900.1
wave 916.4
hindrance 1012.1
reception 1034.21
interfering 214.8
interfuse
intersperse 213.7
combine 805.3
interfusion
interspersion 213.3
mixture 797.1
intergalactic 1072.25
interim
n interval 224.1
interruption 813.2
intermediate period 826
meantime 826.1
delay 846.2
pause 857.3
adj temporary 826.4
interior
n inside 207.2
inland 207.3
scene 712.12
middle 819.1
adj internal 207.6
inland 207.7
private 345.13
middle 819.4
interior decorating 498.1
interiority
inwardness 207.1
internalness 207.1
depth 275.1
interjacent 213.10
interject
insert 191.3
interpose 213.6
remark 524.24
interjection
insertion 191.1
interpolation 213.2
intrusion 214.1
remark 524.3
part of speech 530.3
interjoin
correlate 777.5
interconnect 800.6
interlace weave 740.6
interact 777.6
mix 797.10
interlaced
webbed 170.12
woven 740.7
interlacing
n weaving 740.1
interaction 777.3
adj weaving 740.8
interlard
intersperse 213.7
mix 797.10
interlining 196.3
interlink
correlate 777.5
interconnect 800.6
interlinked
related 775.9
correlative 777.8
interlock
n safeguard 1008.3
v correlate 777.5
agree 788.6
interconnect 800.6
interlocked
related 775.9
correlative 777.8
interlocking
interrelation 777.2
interconnection 800.2
interlocutory
mediatory 466.8
conversational 541.13
interlope 214.5
interloper
intruder 214.3
outsider 774.2
interloping 214.1
interlude
n respite 20.2
act 704.7
passage 708.24
interim 826.1
pause 857.3
v intervene 826.3
intermarriage 563.1
intermarry 563.15
intermeddle
meddle 214.7
hinder 1012.10
intermediary
n intermedium 213.4
instrument 384.4
mediator 466.3
go-between 576.4
adj intervening 213.10
medium 246.3
modal 384.8
mediatory 466.8
middle 819.4
intermediate
n instrument 384.4
mediator 466.3
go-between 576.4
gear 1040.9
v mediate 466.6
adj intervening 213.10
medium 246.3
mediatory 466.8
middle 819.4
intermediator 466.3
interment
burial 309.1
concealment 346.1
intermesh 777.6
intermezzo
act 704.7
passage 708.24
interim 826.1
pause 857.3
interminable 829.7
intermingle 797.10
intermission
respite 20.2

release 120.2
act 704.7
game 746.3
interruption 813.2
interim 826.1
pause 857.3
intermit
release 120.6
discontinue 813.3
recur 850.5
fluctuate 851.2
interrupt 857.10
intermittence
discontinuity 813.1
periodicity 850.2
irregularity 851.1
pause 857.3
intermittent
discontinuous 813.4
periodic 850.7
irregular 851.3
intermix 797.10
intern
n doctor 90.4
interior 207.2
teaching fellow 571.4
v practice medicine 90.14
imprison 429.14
internal
n interior 207.2
adj interior 207.6
intrinsic 767.7
mental 919.7
internalize 207.5
internal medicine 90.13
Internal Revenue Service 630.10
international
public 312.16
universal 864.14
International Date Line 832.4
internationalism
nationhood 232.6
foreign policy 609.5
generality 864.1
international law 673.5
international relations 609.2
internecine
deadly 308.23
destructive 395.26
internecine struggle 457.4
Internet computer networking 347.18
network 1042.16
computer communications 1042.19
interpersonal communication 343.1
interplanetary 1072.25
interplay
n communication 343.1
interaction 777.3
interchange 863.1
v interact 777.6
Interpol 1008.17
interpolate 213.6
interpolation
insertion 191.1
interjection 213.2
added to writing 254.2
impromptu 708.27
notation 1017.2
interpose
interject 213.6
intrude 214.5
mediate 466.6
interposition
a putting between 213
interposing 213.1
intrusion 214.1
mediation 466.1
interpret
diagnose 341.9
play 708.39
criticize 723.5
solve 940.2
interpretable
construable 341.17
meaningful 518.10
intelligible 521.10
interpretation
way of understanding 341.1
construction 341.1
explanation 518.3
solution 940.1
interpreter
exegete 341.7
musician 710.1
critic 723.4
language 1042.13
interpretive
interpretative 341.14
critical 723.6
interregnum 612.4
interrelated
related 775.9
correlative 777.8
interrogate
communicate with 343.8
question 938.21
be curious 981.3
interrogation
question 938.10
questioning 938.12
interrogative
n question 938.10
adj communicational 343.9
inquiring 938.36
interrogator 938.16
interrogatory
n question 938.10
adj communicational 343.9
inquiring 938.36
interrupt put in 214.6
discontinue 813.3
talk out of turn 844.4
suspend 857.10
hinder 1012.10
interruption
intrusion 214.1
interval 224.1
suspension 813.2
interim 826.1
untimeliness 844.1
pause 857.3
hindrance 1012.1
intersect
converge 169.2
crossing 170.6
agree 788.6
intersecting
n crossing 170.1
adj converging 169.3
cross 170.8
intersection
crossing 170.1
crossroad 170.2
passageway 383.3
agreement 788.1
interseptum 213.5
intersexuality 75.12
interspace
n interval 224.1
v space 224.3
intersperse 213.7
interstellar
spatial 158.10
celestial 1072.25
interstice 224.1
intertwine
weave 740.6
interact 777.6
mix 797.10
intertwined
webbed 170.12
woven 740.7
intertwining
n weaving 740.1
interaction 777.3
adj weaving 740.8
interval
n space between 224
gap 224.1
degree 245.1
opening 292.1
harmonics 709.20
deficiency 795.2
interruption 813.2
period 824.1
interim 826.1
pause 857.3
v intervene 826.3
intervene
interpose 213.6
intrude 214.5
mediate 466.6
interlude 826.3
hinder 1012.10
intervening
intervenient 213.10
mediatory 466.8
intervention
interposition 213.1
intrusion 214.1
mediation 466.1
interview
n audition 48.2
talk 541.3
conference 541.6
appointment 582.8
press conference 938.11
v interrogate 938.21
interviewer
journalist 555.4
inquirer 938.16
interweave
weave 740.6
interact 777.6
mix 797.10
interweaving
n weaving 740.1
interaction 777.3
adj weaving 740.8
interwork 777.6
interworking
n interaction 777.3
adj interacting 777.9
interwoven
webbed 170.12
woven 740.7
intestate 478.25
intestine
n digestive system 2.18
fight 457.4
adj interior 207.6
in that case
accordingly 766.11
then 821.11
in the act 656.4
in the air
on high 272.21
reported 552.15
in the bag
prearranged 965.8
assured 970.20
in the black 472.17
in the cards
imminent 840.3
destined 964.9
probable 968.6
in the clear
free 430.21
legible 521.12
innocent 657.6
in safety 1007.6
in the clouds
on high 272.21
abstracted 985.11
visionary 986.24
in the dark
secretly 345.17
benighted 930.16
darkling 1027.19
in the doghouse 661.13
in the dough 618.15
in the driver's seat
in authority 417.21
influential 894.14
in the dumps 112.22
in the flesh
in person 221.17
living 306.13
personally 865.16
in the gutter
poorly 250.9
destitute 619.9
corrupt 654.14
in the hole 623.8
in the know
informed 551.17
cognizant of 928.16
knowledgeable 928.17
in the limelight
publicly 352.19
prominent 662.17
on the stage 704.36
in the long run
on the average 246.5
on the whole 792.14
eventually 831.12
in time 839.11
generally 864.17
in the market for
adj searching 938.38

prep after 382.12
in the midst of
adv midway 819.5
prep at 159.27
between 213.12
among 797.17
in the mood
willing 324.5
disposed 978.8
in the neighborhood of
adv near 223.20
at a price 630.17
prep about 223.26
in the nick of time
opportunely 843.12
in time 845.12
expedient 995.5
in the pink
healthy 83.9
in order 807.7
in the red
at a loss 473.9
destitute 619.9
indebted 623.8
in the same boat 790.7
in the same breath
at once 830.8
simultaneously 836.7
in the swim 578.11
in the thick of
adv midway 819.5
prep between 213.12
among 797.17
in the wind
against the wind 182.65
happening 831.9
imminent 840.3
in the works
adj planned 381.12
undertaken 404.7
in preparation 405.22
operating 889.11
adv in production 892.21
intimacy
copulation 75.7
nearness 223.1
sociability 582.1
familiarity 587.5
relation 775.1
knowledge 928.1
intimate
n friend 588.1
v advise 422.5
imply 519.4
hint 551.10
adj interior 207.6
near 223.14
homelike 228.33
private 345.13
familiar 582.24
friendly 587.19
joined 800.13
particular 865.12
intimate apparel 5.22
intimation
hint 248.4
piece of advice 422.2
sign 517.9
implication 519.2
clue 551.4
admixture 797.7
hunch 934.3
suggestion 951.5
in time
in tempo 709.30
synchronous 836.6
in due time 839.11
in good time 845.12
periodically 850.10
intimidate cow 127.20
dissuade 379.3
coerce 424.7
bluster 503.3
threaten 514.2
domineer 612.16
intimidated
terrified 127.26
cowardly 491.10
intimidating
dissuasive 379.5
threatening 514.3
intimidation
frightening 127.6
dissuasion 379.1
coercion 424.3
bluster 503.1
threat 514.1
into
adj knowledgeable 928.17
prep in 189.14
inside 207.13
intolerable
insufferable 98.25
unlikable 99.7
unacceptable 108.10
downright 247.12
intolerance
intoleration 135.2
obstinacy 361.1
narrow-mindedness 980.2
intolerant
n bigot 980.5
adj unforbearing 135.7
obstinate 361.8
untolerating 980.11
intonate
inflect 524.28
sing 708.38
intonation tone 50.2
inflection 524.6
vocal music 708.13
execution 708.30
harmonization 709.2
intone 708.38
in toto fully 766.13
wholly 792.13
intoxicate
inebriate 88.22
thrill 105.15
dizzy 985.8
intoxicated
under the influence 87.23
inebriated 88.31
fervent 93.18
frenzied 105.25
intoxicating
intoxicative 88.36
exciting 105.30
intoxication
poisoning 85.31
inebriation 88.1
happiness 95.2
fury 105.8
intractable
insubordinate 327.9
ungovernable 361.12
inflexible 1046.12
intramural
intramarginal 207.8
scholastic 567.13
intransient 827.10
intransigence 361.2
intransigent
n obstinate person 361.6
oppositionist 452.3
adj unyielding 361.9
in transit
on the way 176.20
on the move 177.42
intransitive
n verb 530.4
adj grammatical 530.17
intransmutable 855.17
intraterritorial 207.8
intravenous 91.17
intrepid 492.17
intricacy
abstruseness 522.2
complexity 799.1
difficulty 1013.1
intricate
hard to understand 522.14
mixed 797.14
complex 799.4
bewildering 971.27
difficult 1013.17
intrigue
n love affair 104.6
web of intrigue 381.5
stratagem 415.3
deceitfulness 645.3
v fascinate 377.7
plot 381.9
maneuver 415.10
intrigued 95.15
intriguing
delightful 97.7
alluring 377.8
scheming 381.13
intrinsic
interior 207.6
internal 767.7
characteristic 865.13
introduce
bring in 187.14
insert 191.3
propose 439.5
preinstruct 568.14
present 587.14
prefix 814.3
go before 816.3
inaugurate 818.11
innovate 852.9
introducer
transformer 852.5
producer 892.7
introduction
bringing in 187.7
entrance 189.1
insertion 191.1
interjection 213.2
makeup 554.12
elementary education 568.5
acquaintance 587.4
legislative procedure 613.6
act 704.7
overture 708.26
part of writing 793.2
curtain-raiser 816.2
inauguration 818.5
basics 818.6
innovation 852.4
introductory
introductive 187.18
educational 568.18
beginning 818.15
introit 708.17
Introit 696.3
intromission
admission 187.2
insertion 191.1
intromit receive 187.10
insert 191.3
introspect 931.12
introspection 931.6
introspective
cognitive 931.21
absorbed in thought 931.22
introversion
personality tendency 92.11
inversion 205.1
interiority 207.1
reticence 344.3
introvert
n personality type 92.12
v invert 205.5
adj introverted 92.40
introverted
introvert 92.40
inverted 205.7
reticent 344.10
intrude enter 189.7
interpose 213.6
obtrude 214.5
talk out of turn 844.4
overstep 910.9
intruder incomer 189.4
interloper 214.3
foreign body 774.2
newcomer 774.4
intrusion
entrance 189.1
interposition 213.1
interference 214.1
obtrusion 214.1
extraneousness 774.1
intruder 774.2
untimeliness 844.1
overstepping 910.3
intrusive
entering 189.12
obtrusive 214.8
overactive 330.24
extraneous 774.5
untimely 844.6
intuit sense 934.4
foreknow 961.6
intuition
extrasensory perception 689.8
intuitiveness 934.1
hunch 934.3
discrimination 944.1
suggestion 951.5

intuitive
  premonitory 133.16
  intuitional 934.5
  theoretical 951.13
  foreseeing 961.7
intumescence
  growth 85.39
  distension 259.2
  swelling 283.4
in tune in accord 455.3
  harmonious 708.49
in turn in order 807.10
  consecutively 812.11
  interchangeably 863.6
inundate
  aggrieve 112.19
  overflow 238.17
  submerge 367.7
  overwhelm 395.21
  raid 459.20
  run over 910.7
  oversupply 993.14
  flood 1065.14
inundated
  overcome 112.29
  flooded 238.25
  underwater 275.13
  overrun 910.10
  soaked 1065.17
inundation
  overflow 238.6
  submergence 367.2
  wordiness 538.2
  overrunning 910.1
  plenty 991.2
  superabundance 993.2
  wetting 1065.6
in unison
  unanimously 332.17
  cooperatively 450.6
  harmonious 708.49
  in step 788.11
  jointly 800.18
  simultaneously 836.7
inure callous 94.6
  accustom 373.9
inured callous 94.12
  accustomed 373.15
  hardened 654.17
invade intrude 214.5
  raid 459.20
  usurp 640.8
  infest 910.6
  overstep 910.9
invader intruder 214.3
  assailant 459.12
in vain
  unsuccessfully 410.19
  amiss 911.7
invalid
  n impotent 19.6
  sick person 85.43
  recluse 584.5
  v afflict 85.50
  adj ineffective 19.15
  unhealthy 85.54
  repealed 445.3
  illogical 936.11
  bad 1000.7
invalidate
  disqualify 19.11
  abolish 395.13
  repeal 445.2
  neutralize 900.7
  disprove 958.4
invalidated
  disabled 19.16
  disproved 958.7
invalidation
  repeal 445.1
  neutralization 900.2
  disproof 958.1
invalidity
  ineffectiveness 19.3
  unhealthiness 85.3
  illogicalness 936.2
  badness 1000.1
invaluable 632.10
invariable
  tedious 118.9
  uniform 781.5
  unchangeable 855.17
invasion
  intrusion 214.1
  raid 459.4
  usurpation 640.3
  infestation 910.2
invasive
  entering 189.12
  intrusive 214.8
  attacking 459.29
invective
  n sarcasm 508.5
  berating 510.7
  vilification 513.2
  speech 543.2
  adj condemnatory 510.22
inveigh against 510.13
inveigle trap 356.20
  lure 377.5
inveiglement 377.1
invent originate 337.4
  fabricate 354.18
  initiate 818.10
  innovate 841.5
  change 852.9
  produce 892.12
  discover 941.2
  imagine 986.14
invented
  fabricated 354.29
  originated 892.19
invention
  fabrication 354.10
  innovation 852.4
  production 892.1
  product 893.1
  discovery 941.1
  inventiveness 986.3
  figment of the imagination 986.5
inventive
  cunning 415.12
  beginning 818.15
  creative 892.16
  imaginative 986.18
inventor
  producer 892.7
  imaginer 986.12
inventory
  n contents 196.1
  store 386.1
  record 549.1
  account book 628.4
  merchandise 735.1
  assemblage 770.1
  table 808.4
  list 871.1
  summation 1017.11
  v take account of 628.9
  list 871.8
  sum up 1017.19
  check 1017.21
inverse
  n reverse 205.4
  opposite side 215.3
  v invert 205.5
  adj contrapositive 215.5
  contrary 779.6
inversion
  turning over 205
  inverting 205.1
  notation 1017.2
invert
  n homosexual 75.14
  v inverse 205.5
invertebrate
  n weakling 16.6
  creature 311.3
  coward 491.5
  adj invertebral 311.51
  weak-willed 362.12
invest clothe 5.39
  empower 18.10
  establish 159.16
  insert 191.4
  surround 209.6
  wrap 295.20
  provide 385.7
  besiege 459.19
  endow 478.17
  commission 615.10
  install 615.12
  spend 626.5
  place 729.17
invested
  clothing 5.45
  provided 385.13
  endowed 478.26
investigate
  discuss 541.12
  indagate 938.23
investigation
  discussion 541.7
  indagation 938.4
investigative journalism 552.1
investigator
  detective 576.10
  examiner 938.17
investiture clothing 5.1
  establishment 159.7
  admission 187.2
  giving 478.1
  commission 615.1
  installation 615.3
  holy orders 698.10
investment clothing 5.1
  empowerment 18.8
  provision 385.1
  siege 459.5
  endowment 478.9
  commission 615.1
  money matters 729
  venture 729.4
investor 729.9
inveteracy
  customariness 373.6
  permanence 853.1
  fixity 855.2
inveterate
  confirmed 373.18
  durable 827.10
  traditional 842.12
  established 855.13
invidious
  malicious 144.20
  jealous 153.5
  envious 154.4
in view visible 31.6
  expected 130.13
  present 221.12
  imminent 840.3
in view of 888.9
invigorate refresh 9.2
  strengthen 15.13
  energize 17.10
  stimulate 105.13
  cheer 109.7
invigorating
  refreshing 9.3
  energizing 17.15
  healthful 81.5
  tonic 86.44
  cheering 109.16
  cool 1023.12
invincible
  impregnable 15.19
  peerless 249.15
  persevering 360.8
  indestructible 855.18
  reliable 970.17
inviolable
  impregnable 15.19
  trustworthy 644.19
  sacred 685.7
inviolate honest 644.13
  sacred 685.7
  permanent 853.7
  undamaged 1002.8
invisible
  imperceptible 32.5
  infinitesimal 258.14
  unrevealed 346.12
invitation
  incentive 375.7
  allurement 377.1
  offer 439.1
  invite 440.4
invite
  n invitation 440.4
  v encourage 375.21
  attract 377.6
  ask 440.13
  incur 897.4
  interest 983.12
inviting delightful 97.7
  receptive 187.16
  provocative 375.27
  alluring 377.8
  invitational 440.19
  interesting 983.19
invocation
  summons 420.5
  entreaty 440.2

conjuration 690.4
prayer 696.4
benediction 696.5
in vogue 578.11
invoice
n statement 628.3
bill 871.5
v bill 628.11
invoke summon 420.11
entreat 440.11
address 524.26
conjure 690.11
pray 696.13
adduce 957.12
refer to 957.14
involuntary
unwilling 325.5
unpremeditated 365.11
obligatory 424.11
intuitive 934.6
instinctive 963.14
unintentional 972.17
involuted
convolutional 281.6
complex 799.4
involution
convolution 281.1
deterioration 393.3
complexity 799.1
involvement 898.1
notation 1017.2
involve surround 209.6
signify 517.17
imply 519.4
ornament 545.7
incriminate 599.10
entail 772.4
relate to 775.5
complicate 799.3
implicate 898.2
evidence 957.8
engross 983.13
hamper 1012.11
put in a hole 1013.15
involved
participating 476.8
implied 519.7
accused 599.15
indebted 623.8
partial 650.11
guilty 656.3
included 772.5
related 775.9
complex 799.4
implicated 898.4
engrossed 983.17
involvement
sympathy 93.5
surrounding 209.5
mediation 466.1
participation 476.1
incrimination 599.2
partiality 650.3
guilt 656.1
entailment 772.2
complexity 799.1
involuntary cooperation 898.1
involution 898.1
engrossment 983.3
invulnerable
impregnable 15.19
indestructible 855.18
uninfluenceable 895.4
unhazardous 1007.5
protected 1008.21
inward
n interior 207.2
adj entering 189.12
in 189.13
interior 207.6
inside 207.11
private 345.13
intrinsic 767.7
inwards
n viscera 2.16
insides 207.4
adv in 189.13
inside 207.11
in with
on good terms 587.18
leagued 805.6
in writing 547.22
ion atom 258.8
electrolysis 1032.25
atom 1038.4
element 1060.2
ionic 1032.32
Ionic 717.2
ionization
electrolysis 1032.25
fission 1038.8
ionize 1032.28
iota modicum 248.2
minute 258.7
IOU 728.11
ipse dixit
affirmation 334.1
decree 420.4
IQ 920.1
irascibility
excitability 105.10
irritability 110.2
perversity 361.3
dissension 456.3
irascible
excitable 105.28
irritable 110.19
perverse 361.11
partisan 456.17
irate 152.28
ire 152.5
irenic
unbelligerent 464.10
pacificatory 465.12
iridesce opalesce 47.8
luminesce 1025.26
iridescence
rainbow 47.2
opalescence 1025.18
iridescent
soft-colored 35.22
rainbowlike 47.10
opalescent 1025.37
iris eye 2.9
sight 27.9
variegation 47.6
Iris 353.1
irk
n tedium 118.1
v annoy 96.13
vex 98.15
be tedious 118.6
trouble 1013.13
irked annoyed 96.21
weary 118.11
troubled 1013.20
irksome
annoying 98.22
wearying 118.10
troublesome 1013.18
iron
n symbol of strength 15.8
cycle 179.8
basketball 747.1
hardness 1046.6
v press 287.6
adj unyielding 361.9
firm 425.7
brass 1058.17
Iron Age 824.5
ironbound
rugged 288.7
firm 425.7
bound 428.16
ironclad firm 425.7
armored 460.13
iron curtain
frontier 211.5
veil of secrecy 345.3
communism 611.5
barrier 1012.5
iron grip 474.2
iron hand
governance 417.5
firm hand 425.3
control 612.2
despotism 612.10
ironic witty 489.15
satiric 508.13
suggestive 519.6
ambiguous 539.4
self-contradictory 779.8
mixed 797.14
iron out reconcile 465.8
solve 940.2
irons 428.4
iron will 359.4
irony wit 489.1
sarcasm 508.5
ambiguity 539.1
self-contradiction 779.3
doubleness 873.1
irradiate
v radiumize 91.26
preserve 397.9
illuminate 1025.28
radioactivate 1037.10
adj illuminated 1025.39
irradiated
illuminated 1025.39
radioactive 1037.11
irradiation
food preservation 397.2
light 1025.1
irrational
unintelligent 922.13
unwise 923.10
insane 926.26
illogical 936.11
numeric 1017.23
irrationality
unintelligence 922.1
unwiseness 923.2
insanity 926.1
illogicalness 936.2
irreclaimable
past hope 125.15
irredeemable 654.18
irreconcilable
n oppositionist 452.3
adj unyielding 361.9
vengeful 507.7
alienated 589.11
different 780.7
inconsistent 789.8
irrecoverable
past hope 125.15
past 837.7
irredeemable
past hope 125.15
unpayable 625.13
irreclaimable 654.18
irreducible
intrinsic 767.7
simple 798.6
inextricable 799.5
one 872.7
requisite 963.13
irreformable
past hope 125.15
irreclaimable 654.18
irrefutable
evidential 957.16
obvious 970.15
irregular
n casual 461.16
second 1005.6
adj distorted 265.10
rough 288.6
informal 581.3
illegal 674.6
nonuniform 782.3
unequal 791.4
unordered 810.12
discontinuous 813.4
unregular 851.3
inconstant 854.7
abnormal 870.9
eccentric 927.5
inferior 1005.9
irregularity
distortion 265.1
roughness 288.1
unsmoothness 294.2
informality 581.1
nonuniformity 782.1
inequality 791.1
disorder 810.1
discontinuity 813.1
unmethodicalness 851.1
inconstancy 854.2
abnormality 870.1
eccentricity 927.1
irrelevance
unrelatedness 776.1
unfitness 789.3
untimeliness 844.1
unimportance 998.1
irrelevant
unrelated 776.7
inappropriate 789.7
untimely 844.6
insignificant 998.17

irreligion
  impiety 694.1
  ungodliness 695.3
irreligious
  impious 694.6
  ungodly 695.17
  unbelieving 955.8
irremediable
  past hope 125.15
  ruined 395.28
irremovable 855.15
irreparable 125.15
irreplaceable
  used up 388.5
  requisite 963.13
irreprehensible 657.8
irrepressible
  cheerful 109.11
  ungovernable 361.12
  unrestrained 430.24
irreproachable
  honest 644.13
  inculpable 657.8
  perfect 1002.6
irresistible
  impregnable 15.19
  powerful 18.12
  delightful 97.7
  great 247.6
  alluring 377.8
  overpowering 412.18
  compulsory 424.10
  evidential 957.16
  inevitable 963.15
irresolute
  wishy-washy 16.17
  irresolved 362.9
  inconstant 854.7
  uncertain 971.16
irresolution
  frailty 16.2
  indecision 362.1
  uncertainty 971.1
irrespective of 338.9
irresponsible
  lawless 418.5
  exempt 430.30
  untrustworthy 645.19
  inconstant 854.7
irretrievable
  past hope 125.15
  lost 473.7
  unchangeable 855.17
irreverence
  disrespect 156.1
  impiety 694.1
irreverent
  disrespectful 156.7
  impious 694.6
irreversible
  past hope 125.15
  directional 161.12
  confirmed 373.18
  unchangeable 855.17
irrevocable
  past hope 125.15
  mandatory 420.12
  unchangeable 855.17
  inevitable 963.15
irrigate dilute 16.11
  wash 79.19
  moisten 1065.12
irrigation washing 79.5
  wetting 1065.6
  cultivation 1069.13
irritability
  sensitivity 24.3
  excitability 105.10
  irascibility 110.2
  dissension 456.3
irritable sensitive 24.12
  excitable 105.28
  irascible 110.19
  nervous 128.11
  partisan 456.17
irritant
  n irritation 96.3
  adj irritating 26.13
irritate pain 26.7
  displease 96.14
  aggravate 119.2
  get on one's nerves 128.9
  provoke 152.24
  impair 393.9
  sow dissension 456.14
irritated sore 26.11
  annoyed 96.21
  aggravated 119.4
  provoked 152.27
  impaired 393.27
irritating painful 26.13
  pungent 68.6
  annoying 98.22
  aggravating 119.5
irritation
  soreness 26.4
  annoyance 96.3
  excitation 105.11
  aggravation 119.1
  resentment 152.1
  incitement 375.4
  adversity 1011.1
irrupt burst forth 33.9
  enter 189.7
  intrude 214.5
  originate 818.13
  overstep 910.9
irruption
  outburst 105.9
  intrusion 214.1
  raid 459.4
irruptive
  entering 189.12
  attacking 459.29
Isis 890.5
Islam 675.13
Islamic 675.31
island
  n airport 184.22
  isle 235.2
  v insulate 235.5
  adj insular 235.7
islander 235.4
island-hop 235.5
isle 235.2
ism school 617.5
  cult 675.2
  system of belief 953.3
isobar
  weather map 317.4
  isotope 1038.5
isolate
  insulate 235.5
  excise 255.10
  quarantine 429.13
  segregate 773.6
  analyze 801.6
  separate 802.8
  nonconduct 1032.29
isolated
  quiescent 173.12
  insular 235.7
  private 345.13
  quarantined 429.20
  secluded 584.8
  segregated 773.8
  unrelated 776.6
  separate 802.20
  separated 802.21
  alone 872.8
isolation
  defense mechanism 92.23
  privacy 345.2
  quarantine 429.2
  seclusion 584.1
  exclusiveness 773.3
  itemization 801.2
  separation 802.1
  aloneness 872.2
isolationism
  noninterference 430.9
  seclusion 584.1
  foreign policy 609.5
isolationist
  free agent 430.12
  recluse 584.5
isomer 1038.5
isometric
  n weather map 317.4
  adj climatal 317.13
  equisized 790.10
isometrics 84.2
isotherm 317.4
isothermal 1019.30
isothermic 1019.30
isotope 1038.5
Israelite
  n Jew 675.21
  adj Jewish 675.30
issue
  n emergence 190.1
  amount 244.2
  publication 352.1
  escape 369.1
  edition 554.5
  family 559.5
  offspring 561.1
  platform 609.7
  issuance 738.6
  event 831.1
  cause 886.9
  effect 887.1
  product 893.1
  topic 937.1
  question 938.10
  solution 940.1
  salient point 997.6
  v be born 1.2
  appear 33.8
  set out 188.8
  emerge 190.11
  flow 238.16
  quantify 244.4
  bring out 352.14
  be published 352.16
  find vent 369.10
  parcel out 477.8
  give 478.12
  print 548.14
  monetize 728.26
  float 738.12
  disperse 771.4
  originate 818.13
  come after 835.3
  result 887.4
issueless 891.4
issue price 738.9
issuing
  n appearance 33.1
  emergence 190.1
  adj emerging 190.18
isthmus
  contraction 260.1
  narrow place 270.3
it self 865.5
  what's what 973.4
italic
  n type 548.6
  adj written 547.22
italicize 997.14
italicized
  written 547.22
  emphatic 997.21
it beats me 522.27
itch
  n itching 74.3
  sexual desire 75.5
  craving 100.6
  v tingle 74.5
  twitch 917.13
itch for lust 75.20
  wish for 100.16
itching
  n itch 74.3
  symptom 85.9
  craving 100.6
  adj itchy 74.10
  lustful 75.27
  craving 100.24
  lascivious 665.29
itchy sensitive 24.12
  itching 74.10
  lascivious 665.29
  curious 981.5
item
  n memorandum 549.4
  entry 628.5
  commodity 735.2
  particular 766.3
  part 793.1
  component 796.2
  individual 872.4
  citation 957.5
  adv additionally 253.11
itemization
  description 349.2
  circumstantiation 766.5
  enumeration 801.2
  particularization 865.7
  list 871.1
  index 871.7
itemize specify 766.6
  enumerate 801.7

particularize 865.9
list 871.8
cite 957.13
sum up 1017.19
items contents 196.1
merchandise 735.1
list 871.1
knowledge 928.1
iterate
reiterate 849.8
persist 856.5
iteration
wordiness 538.2
reiteration 849.2
duplication 874.1
iterative
n aspect 530.13
adj diffuse 538.11
repetitious 849.14
itinerant
n wanderer 178.2
adj traveling 177.36
itinerary
n route 383.1
directory 574.10
adj traveling 177.36
itself 865.5
itsy-bitsy 258.11
IUD 86.23
ivied halls 567.5
ivories teeth 2.8
keyboard 711.17
dice 759.8
ivory
n whiteness 37.2
smoothness 287.3
adj whitish 37.8
ivory tower
seclusion 584.1
retreat 584.6
refuge 1009.5
ivy
n plant 310.4
adj green 44.4
Ivy League 746.1
izzard 820.1
jab
n attack 459.3
thrust 902.2
hit 902.4
v use 87.22
scoff 508.9
thrust 902.12
hit 902.14
jabber
n nonsense 520.2
mumbling 525.4
chatter 540.3
v talk nonsense 520.5
mumble 525.9
chatter 540.5
jabberer 540.4
jack
n mariner 183.1
ass 311.16
flag 647.7
money 728.2
lawn bowling 750.3
card 758.2
base 901.8
lifter 912.3
v hunt 382.9
jackal fox 311.20
follower 616.8
jackass ass 311.16
fool 924.1
jacket
n outerwear 5.13
skin 295.3
hull 295.16
wrapper 295.18
bookbinding 554.14
v cloak 5.40
jackknife 367.1
jack-of-all-trades 413.11
jackpot award 646.2
pot 759.5
jackrabbit hare 311.24
jumper 366.4
jacks 743.16
jack up increase 251.4
disapprove 510.18
jactitation
boasting 502.1
shaking 917.2
Jacuzzi bath 79.8
fitness 84.1
massage 1044.3
jade
n horse 311.12
strumpet 665.14
v fatigue 21.4
burn out 21.5
be tedious 118.6
satiate 994.4
jaded tired 21.7
weary 118.11
languid 331.20
worn-out 393.36
satiated 994.6
jag
n drinking spree 88.6
projection 285.4
notch 289.1
v notch 289.4
jagged angular 278.6
rugged 288.7
notched 289.5
nonuniform 782.3
discontinuous 813.4
jaguar variegation 47.6
wild cat 311.22
jail
n prison 429.8
v enclose 212.5
imprison 429.14
jailbird
prisoner 429.11
criminal 660.9
jailbreak 369.1
jailed
enclosed 212.10
jugged 429.21
jailer gaoler 429.10
penologist 604.9
guard 1008.9
jalopy 179.10
jam
n sweets 10.40
obstruction 293.3
state 765.1
throng 770.4
delay 846.2
multitude 884.3
bewilderment 971.3
barrier 1012.5
predicament 1013.5
semiliquid 1062.5
v drown out 53.8
stop 293.7
have a party 582.21
fill 794.7
hook 800.8
secure 855.8
fix 855.10
stop 857.7
teem with 884.5
thrust 902.12
overload 993.15
obstruct 1012.12
transmit 1036.15
densify 1045.9
jamb leg 177.14
post 273.4
jamboree 743.4
jam in enter 189.7
thrust in 191.7
jammed
stopped 293.11
fast 800.14
late 846.16
stuck 855.16
teeming 884.9
overfull 993.20
dense 1045.12
jamming
reception 1034.21
radar 1036.13
jam-packed
stopped 293.11
crowded 770.22
full 794.11
teeming 884.9
overfull 993.20
dense 1045.12
jam session 708.32
Jane Doe alias 527.8
common woman 606.5
average 864.3
jangle
n noise 53.3
ringing 54.3
rasp 58.3
clash 61.2
disaccord 456.1
v ring 54.8
sound harshly 58.9
grate on 58.11
sound a sour note 61.3
differ 456.8
disagree 789.5
jangling
grating 58.16
clashing 61.5
disagreeing 789.6
janitor
cleaner 79.14
guardian 1008.6
doorkeeper 1008.12
Janus 873.1
japanning 35.12
jape
n joke 489.6
gibe 508.2
v joke 489.13
banter 490.5
scoff 508.9
jar
n rasp 58.3
clash 61.2
start 131.3
disaccord 456.1
shake 917.3
v sound harshly 58.9
sound a sour note 61.3
agitate 105.14
startle 131.8
package 212.9
put up 397.11
differ 456.8
disagree 789.5
shake 917.11
jargon
n nonsense 520.2
Greek 522.7
lingo 523.9
argot 523.11
technical term 526.5
v speak 523.18
jarring
n disaccord 456.1
disagreement 789.1
adj grating 58.16
clashing 61.5
exciting 105.30
unnerving 128.15
surprising 131.11
disagreeing 789.6
jolting 917.20
jaundice
n yellow skin 43.2
symptom 85.9
jealousy 153.1
prejudice 980.3
v yellow 43.3
prejudice 980.9
jaundiced
yellow-faced 43.6
sour 110.23
jealous 153.5
discriminatory 980.12
jaunt
n journey 177.5
walk 177.10
v journey 177.21
wander 177.23
jaunty
lighthearted 109.12
showy 501.19
chic 578.13
javelin 462.8
jaw
n mouth 292.4
v berate 510.19
speak 524.20
chatter 540.5
jawbreaker
long word 526.10
high-sounding words 545.3
jawbreaking
sesquipedalian 545.10
difficult 1013.17
jaws 474.4
jaywalk 177.27

jaywalker 178.6
jazz
n energy 17.3
hot jazz 708.9
adj instrumental 708.51
syncopated 709.29
Jazz Age 824.5
jazz musician 710.2
jazz up energize 17.10
stimulate 105.13
intensify 251.5
jazzy showy 501.19
instrumental 708.51
syncopated 709.29
JD 302.4
jealous jaundiced 153.5
envious 154.4
jealousy
jealousness 153.1
resentment 153.1
envy 154.1
jeans 5.18
jeer
n indignity 156.2
gibe 508.2
v scoff 508.9
jeering
n indignity 156.2
ridicule 508.1
adj ridiculing 508.12
jejune insipid 65.2
dull 117.6
haggard 270.20
shallow 276.5
unproductive 891.4
empty-headed 922.19
meager 992.10
jell
n semiliquid 1062.5
v thicken 1045.10
emulsify 1062.10
jellied
thickened 1045.14
viscous 1062.12
jelling 1045.4
jelly
n sweets 10.40
semiliquid 1062.5
v thicken 1045.10
emulsify 1062.10
jellyfish weakling 16.6
vacillator 362.5
coward 491.5
jenny
female animal 77.10
spinner 271.5
ass 311.16
jeopardize 1006.6
jeopardy
n danger 1006.1
v endanger 1006.6
Jeremiah 399.4
jerk
n bad person 660.5
yank 905.3
shake 917.3
fool 924.3
v be excited 105.18
preserve 397.9
throw 904.10
yerk 905.5
twitch 917.13
jerking
n food preservation 397.2
twitching 917.5
adj jerky 917.19
jerkwater 998.18
jerky
n meat 10.13
beef 10.14
adj convulsive 671.23
nonuniform 782.3
discontinuous 813.4
irregular 851.3
herky-jerky 917.19
jerry-built 16.14
jest
n joke 489.6
gibe 508.2
laughingstock 508.7
trifle 998.5
v joke 489.13
banter 490.5
jester humorist 489.12
buffoon 707.10
jesting
n bantering 490.2
adj witty 489.15
Jesuit sophist 936.6
quibbler 936.7
jesuitic
insincere 354.32
sophistical 936.10
jet
n blackness 38.4
jet plane 181.3
ascent 193.1
spout 238.9
outburst 671.6
disgorgement 909.7
heater 1020.10
v fly 184.36
run out 190.13
shoot up 193.9
spout 238.20
disgorge 909.25
Jet Age 824.6
jet-black 38.8
jeté 366.1
jet flight 184.1
jet plane
swiftness 174.6
jet 181.3
jet power
manpower 18.4
propulsion 184.25
jet-propelled
flying 184.50
rocket-propelled 904.16
jet propulsion
propulsion 184.25
rocket propulsion 1074.8
jetsam 370.4
jet set traveler 178.1
society 578.6
jet-setter 178.1
jetstream 184.32
jettison
n abandonment 370.1
discard 390.3
ejection 909.1
v abandon 370.5
discard 390.7
eject 909.13
jetty
n buttress 901.4
harbor 1009.6
barrier 1012.5
adj black 38.8
jeu d'esprit 489.7
Jew 675.21
jewel
n favorite 104.16
bijou 498.6
good person 659.1
bearing 915.7
good thing 999.5
v figure 498.9
jewelry 498.5
Jewish 675.30
Jezebel
witch 593.7
strumpet 665.14
demimonde 665.15
jib start 127.12
avoid 164.6
hesitate 362.7
pull back 903.7
jibe
change course 182.30
agree 788.6
be changed 852.6
jiffy 830.3
jig
n snare 356.13
leap 366.1
jerk 905.3
shake 917.3
v jerk 905.5
twitch 917.13
jigger
n drink 88.7
vermin 311.37
fisher 382.6
thing 1052.5
v jerk 905.5
twitch 917.13
jiggle
n jerk 905.3
shake 917.3
v jerk 905.5
twitch 917.13
jillion
n trillion 882.13
large number 1017.5
adj numerous 884.6
jilt
n deceiver 357.1
v abandon 370.5
discard 390.7
jilted 99.10
jilter 357.1
Jim Crow
seclusion 584.1
exclusiveness 773.3
discrimination 980.4
jim-dandy 999.13
jimjams
trepidation 127.5
nervousness 128.2
jimmy
n lever 906.4
v get a purchase 906.8
jingle
n ringing 54.3
meter 720.7
assonance 784.6
repetitiousness 849.4
v ring 54.8
rhyme 720.14
jingling
n ringing 54.3
adj ringing 54.13
rhyming 720.17
assonant 784.17
jingo
n militarist 461.5
patriot 591.3
bigot 980.5
adj militaristic 458.22
jingoism
warlikeness 458.11
patriotism 591.2
jingoistic
militaristic 458.22
public-spirited 591.4
jinni 680.6
jinx
n spell 691.1
bad influence 1000.4
v bewitch 691.9
work evil 1000.6
bring bad luck 1011.12
jitney 179.13
jitters
nervousness 128.2
agitation 917.1
jittery
jumpy 128.12
agitated 917.16
jive
n bull 520.3
jazz 708.9
v banter 490.6
syncopate 708.43
job
n act 328.3
theft 482.4
occupation 724.1
task 724.2
function 724.3
position 724.5
affair 831.3
v rent 615.15
hire out 615.16
deal in 731.16
sell 734.8
Job 134.3
job action 727.5
jobber
intermediary 213.4
worker 726.2
merchant 730.2
stockbroker 737.10
jobbing
Machiavellianism 415.2
trade 731.2
selling 734.2
stockbroking 737.18
jobholder 726.2
jobless 331.18
job lot 735.1
jock real man 76.6
soldier 461.7

athlete 743.19
jockey 757.2
supporter 901.2
jockey
n speeder 174.5
rider 178.8
jock 757.2
saddle parts 901.18
v maneuver 415.10
compete 457.18
jocose 489.15
jocularity
merriment 109.5
wittiness 489.2
jog
n slow motion 175.2
gait 177.12
bulge 283.3
notch 289.1
thrust 902.2
jerk 905.3
shake 917.3
v exercise 84.4
plod 175.7
walk 177.27
trot 177.28
thrust 902.12
jerk 905.5
shake 917.11
jogger 989.6
joggle
n bulge 283.3
notch 289.1
thrust 902.2
jerk 905.3
shake 917.3
v thrust 902.12
jerk 905.5
shake 917.11
jog on march on 162.3
continue 856.3
jog the memory 989.20
jog trot run 174.3
slow motion 175.2
routine 373.5
jog-trot tedious 118.9
monotonous 849.15
john latrine 12.10
toilet 12.11
card 758.2
cheater 759.22
John Bull country 232.5
the government 612.3
John Doe alias 527.8
the people 606.1
common man 606.5
average 864.3
John Hancock
ratification 332.4
signature 527.10
johnny latrine 12.10
toilet 12.11
man 76.5
Johnny 461.7
johnnycake 10.29
Johnny-come-lately
newcomer 774.4
beginner 818.2
latecomer 846.6
Johnny-on-the-spot
n benefactor 592.1
adj prompt 845.9
attentive 983.15
John Q Public
the people 606.1
the man in the street 864.3
Johnsonian 545.8
joie de vivre
animation 17.4
pleasure 95.1
join
n joint 800.4
v adjoin 223.9
juxtapose 223.13
flow 238.16
cooperate 450.3
side with 450.4
participate 476.5
join in marriage 563.14
associate with 582.17
enlist 615.17
join up 617.14
assemble 770.18
identify 778.5
compose 796.3
put together 800.5
connect 800.11
be consistent 803.7
combine 805.3
continue 812.4
concur 899.2
join battle 457.16
joined
adjacent 223.16
accompanying 769.9
assembled 770.21
related 775.9
joint 800.12
united 800.13
consistent 803.11
combined 805.5
continuous 812.8
joiner
sociable person 582.16
member 617.11
join forces 805.4
joining
n meeting 223.4
addition 253.1
connection 800.1
junction 800.1
joint 800.4
adj connecting 800.16
joint
n meat 10.13
marijuana cigarette 87.12
crack 224.2
disapproved place 228.28
jail 429.9
sewer 654.7
brothel 665.9
casino 759.19
join 800.4
v hook 800.8
adj cooperative 450.5
communal 476.9
accompanying 769.9
assembled 770.21
mutual 777.11
connected 800.12
combined 805.5
concurrent 899.4
joint effort 450.1
joint operation 450.1
joint ownership 476.1
jointure
endowment 478.9
joining 800.1
joke
n jest 489.6
laughingstock 508.7
trifle 998.5
v jest 489.13
banter 490.5
joker man 76.5
surprise 131.2
mischief-maker 322.3
trick 356.6
deceiver 357.1
proviso 421.3
humorist 489.12
bill 613.9
card 758.2
condition 959.2
obstacle 1012.4
crux 1013.8
jokester
mischief-maker 322.3
deceiver 357.1
humorist 489.12
joking
n wittiness 489.2
bantering 490.2
adj witty 489.15
jollies
excitement 105.3
marines 461.28
jollity merriment 109.5
conviviality 582.3
festivity 743.3
jolly
n navy man 183.4
v banter 490.6
flatter 511.6
make merry 743.24
adj intoxicated 88.31
merry 109.15
convivial 582.23
festive 743.28
jollying
n bantering 490.3
adj bantering 490.7
Jolly Roger 647.7
jolt
n drink 88.7
excitement 105.3
start 131.3
thrust 902.2
shake 917.3
v agitate 105.14
startle 131.8
way of walking 177.28
thrust 902.12
shake 917.11
jolting exciting 105.30
surprising 131.11
jolty 917.20
Jonah
n bad influence 1000.4
v bring bad luck 1011.12
jongleur
minstrel 710.14
poet 720.11
josh joke 489.13
banter 490.6
joshing
n wittiness 489.2
bantering 490.3
ridicule 508.1
adj witty 489.15
ridiculing 508.12
joss 697.3
joss stick 70.4
jostle
n thrust 902.2
shake 917.3
v sound a sour note 61.3
differ 456.8
contend 457.13
rob 482.14
disagree 789.5
thrust 902.12
shake 917.11
jostling
n theft 482.3
adj clashing 61.5
jot modicum 248.2
minute 258.7
mark 517.5
jounce 917.11
journal
record book 549.11
periodical 555.1
account book 628.4
history 719.1
chronicle 832.9
axle box 915.6
journalese
n jargon 523.10
adj journalistic 555.5
journalism
authorship 547.2
news 552.1
the press 555.3
literature 718.2
journalist 555.4
journey
n trip 177.5
v travel 177.21
journeying
n travel 177.1
adj traveling 177.36
journeyman
n expert 413.11
skilled worker 726.6
producer 892.7
adj competent 413.24
joust
n contest 457.3
v contend 457.13
jovial merry 109.15
convivial 582.23
festive 743.28
joviality
merriment 109.5
conviviality 582.3
festivity 743.3
jowl 218.1
joy
n happiness 95.2
merriment 109.5
v be pleased 95.12
rejoice 116.5
exult 502.9

joyful happy 95.16
merry 109.15
cheering 109.16
festive 743.28
joyless
pleasureless 96.20
distressing 98.20
unhappy 112.21
joyous happy 95.16
merry 109.15
festive 743.28
joyride
n ride 177.7
v ride 177.33
joy stick 87.12
JP 596.1
Jr 301.15
jubilant
overjoyed 95.17
rejoicing 116.10
crowing 502.13
jubilate rejoice 116.5
celebrate 487.2
exult 502.9
jubilation treat 95.3
rejoicing 116.1
crowing 502.4
jubilee rejoicing 116.1
celebration 487.1
anniversary 850.4
Judaic 675.30
Judaism 675.12
Judas
traitor 357.10
criminal 660.9
judge
n arbitrator 466.4
connoisseur 496.7
adjudicator 596.1
magistrate 596.1
fight 754.3
judger 946.6
v mediate 466.6
administer justice 594.5
try 598.18
criticize 723.5
classify 801.8
exercise judgment 946.8
think 953.11
judgeship 594.3
judgment
judiciary 594.2
decision 598.9
condemnation 602.1
punishment 604.1
function of Christ 677.14
classification 801.3
judiciousness 920.7
solution 940.1
discernment 944.2
assessment 946.3
judging 946.1
opinion 953.6
judgmental
averse 99.8
fastidious 495.9
condemnatory 510.22
judicial 946.16
Judgment Day 839.3
judicature
judiciary 594.2
tribunal 595.1
court 595.2
judgment 946.1
judicial
jurisdictional 594.6
tribunal 595.7
legal 673.11
judicious 920.19
judiciary 946.16
judicial process
judiciary 594.2
lawsuit 598.1
judicial system 594.2
judiciary
n judicial system 594.2
tribunal 595.1
adj jurisdictional 594.6
tribunal 595.7
judicial 946.16
judicious
cautious 494.8
moderate 670.10
intelligent 920.19
discerning 944.8
judicial 946.16
jug
n jail 429.9
ceramic ware 742.2
v imprison 429.14
Juggernaut 697.3
juggle
n trick 356.6
v tamper with 354.17
deceive 356.14
juggler trickster 357.2
cheat 357.3
circus artist 707.3
juggling 356.5
jughead horse 311.12
fool 924.4
juice liquor 88.14
automobile racing 756.1
current 1032.2
fluid 1061.2
juiceless 1066.7
juicy tasty 63.8
delectable 97.10
immature 301.10
interesting 983.19
fluid 1061.4
juju animism 675.6
sorcery 690.1
charm 691.5
jukebox 50.11
juke joint 743.13
jumble
n Greek 522.7
hodgepodge 797.6
scramble 810.3
confusion 985.3
v deform 263.3
make unintelligible 522.12
mix 797.10
disorder 810.9
confuse 811.3
confound 945.3
jumbled
hard to understand 522.14
mixed 797.14
chaotic 810.16
confused 985.12
jumbo
n largeness 257.11
behemoth 257.14
adj huge 257.20
excessive 993.16
Jumbo 311.4
jumbo jet 181.3
jump
n progression 162.1
step 177.11
flight 184.9
ascent 193.1
interval 224.1
advantage 249.2
increase 251.1
leap 366.1
promotion 446.1
basketball game 747.3
v start 127.12
be startled 131.5
way of walking 177.28
parachute 184.47
leave undone 340.7
leap 366.5
flee 368.10
escape 369.6
promote 446.2
lift one's hand against 457.14
attack 459.15
seize on 480.16
drive 756.4
shake 917.11
jump down someone's throat 152.2
jumper leaper 366.4
diver 367.4
jump in enter 189.7
mount 193.12
interrupt 214.6
jumping
n leaping 366.3
skiing 753.1
adj leaping 366.7
jumping-off place
small town 230.3
remote region 261.4
extremity 820.2
jump on
suppress 428.8
disapprove 510.18
jump out of one's skin 127.11
jump ship quit 188.9
play truant 222.9
jump the gun
be impatient 135.4
anticipate 845.6
prejudge 947.2
jump to a conclusion 947.2
jump to it 725.15
jump up
shoot up 193.9
rise 200.8
increase 251.4
overestimate 949.2
jumpy fearful 127.23
jittery 128.12
bustling 330.20
agitated 917.16
jerky 917.19
junction
juxtaposition 223.3
addition 253.1
passageway 383.3
railway 383.7
assemblage 770.1
relation 775.1
composition 796.1
joining 800.1
consistency 803.2
combination 805.1
concurrence 899.1
juncture
pause 524.9
circumstance 766.1
joint 800.4
period 824.1
grammar 857.4
jungle 799.2
junior
n inferior 250.2
youngster 302.1
subordinate 432.5
undergraduate 572.6
adj inferior 250.6
Jr 301.15
subsequent 835.4
junk
n heroin 87.9
fake 354.13
derelict 370.4
rubbish 391.5
v abandon 370.5
scrap 390.8
eject 909.13
adj abandoned 370.8
worthless 391.11
junk dealer 730.10
junket
n journey 177.5
v journey 177.21
junk food 10.1
junkie addict 87.21
enthusiast 101.5
junking 390.3
junk mail 553.4
junkpile car 179.10
derelict 370.4
trash pile 391.6
junkyard 391.6
Juno 563.13
Junoesque 1016.19
junta council 423.1
clique 617.6
company 770.3
combination 805.1
Jupiter 1072.9
juridic
jurisdictional 594.6
judicial 946.16
jurisdiction
sphere 231.2
supremacy 249.3
governance 417.5
supervision 573.2
the confines of the law 594.1
legal authority 594.1
control 612.2
commission 615.1
legality 673.1
protectorship 1008.2
jurisprudence 673.7
jurist 597.2

juror 596.7
jury 596.6
jury box 595.6
juryman 596.7
jury-rig
n improvisation 365.5
expedient 995.2
v do carelessly 340.9
improvise 365.8
jury-rigged
extemporaneous 365.12
makeshift 995.7
jury selection 598.4
jus 673.3
just
adj appropriate 533.7
fair 649.8
virtuous 653.6
almighty 677.17
logical 935.20
valid 973.14
accurate 973.16
unprejudiced 979.12
adv very 247.18
simply 798.11
exactly 973.21
adj rightful 639.8
honest 644.13
legal 673.11
just about
adv nearly 223.22
prep about 223.26
just around the corner
near 223.20
handy 387.20
in the future 839.9
imminent 840.3
just deserts
reprisal 506.2
deserts 639.3
juste-milieu
mean 246.1
temperance 668.1
moderation 670.1
justice judiciary 594.2
judge 596.1
dueness 639.1
probity 644.1
justness 649.1
cardinal virtues 653.4
legality 673.1
equality 790.1
magistrate 946.6
unprejudicedness 979.5
Justice 649.5
justiceship 594.3
justifiable
permissible 443.15
vindicable 600.14
just 649.8
logical 935.20
justification
composition 548.2
vindication 600.1
justice 649.1
sanctification 685.3
justified
warranted 639.9
just 649.8
redeemed 685.9
justify
compose 548.16
vindicate 600.9
acquit 601.4
just in case 831.13
just right apt 788.10
in step 788.11
accurately 973.20
perfect 1002.6
perfectly 1002.10
just so
adv how 384.9
thus 766.10
accurately 973.20
phrs right! 973.24
interj yes 332.18
conj so 959.15
jut overhang 202.7
protrude 283.10
overlie 295.30
jutting
n overhang 202.3
adj overhanging 202.11
protruding 283.14
jutty
buttress 901.4
harbor 1009.6
juvenescent 301.9
juvenile
n youngster 302.1
book 554.1
actor 707.2
jockey 757.2
adj young 301.9
immature 406.11
juvenile delinquent 302.4
juvenility 301.1
juxtapose
appose 223.13
assemble 770.18
juxtaposition
apposition 223.3
addition 253.1
assemblage 770.1
kaleidoscope 854.4
kama 689.18
Kama 104.8
kamikaze 181.9
kangaroo 366.4
kaolin 742.3
kapok 1047.4
kaput past hope 125.15
spoiled 393.29
ruined 395.29
defeated 412.14
no more 762.11
ended 820.9
karaoke popular music 708.7
solo 708.15
musical occasion 708.32
karate 760.3
karma destiny 839.2
fate 964.2
kayo
n unconsciousness 25.2
finishing stroke 820.4
v deaden 25.4
end 820.5
kazoo
n mouth organ 711.10
v teem with 884.5
keel
n ship 180.1
base 199.2
v faint 25.5
capsize 182.44
incline 204.10
overturn 205.6
keelhaul 604.16
keen
n screech 58.4
lament 115.3
dirge 115.6
v screech 58.8
lament 115.10
speak 524.25
adj energetic 17.13
acrimonious 17.14
sensitive 24.13
shrill 58.14
pungent 68.6
fervent 93.18
deep-felt 93.24
eager 101.8
penetrating 105.31
caustic 144.23
sharp 285.8
willing 324.5
active 330.17
alert 339.14
enterprising 404.8
prepared 405.16
witty 489.15
violent 671.16
smart 920.14
excellent 999.13
cold 1023.14
keen on
desirous of 100.22
enthusiastic 101.11
interested 983.16
keep
n nutriment 10.3
accommodations 385.3
custody 429.5
prison 429.8
support 449.3
stronghold 460.6
v take a course 182.28
obey 326.2
provide 385.7
store up 386.11
reserve 386.12
preserve 397.8
restrain 428.7
observe 434.2
support 449.12
retain 474.5
hold 474.7
celebrate 487.2
practice 701.15
endure 827.6
stabilize 855.7
sustain 856.4
keep in memory 989.13
protect 1008.18
raise 1070.6
keep alive
keep body and soul together 306.12
preserve 397.8
perpetuate 829.5
sustain 856.4
keep a low profile
efface oneself 139.7
hide 346.8
beware 494.7
keep an eye on
look 27.13
keep informed 551.16
supervise 573.10
trace 938.35
care for 1008.19
keep an eye out
look 27.13
be vigilant 339.8
play safe 1007.3
keep an open mind 982.2
keep a stiff upper lip
keep cool 106.9
be of good cheer 109.10
keep up one's courage 492.15
keep a straight face 111.2
keep at it
keep going 330.15
persevere 360.2
continue 856.3
persist 856.5
keep away from
keep one's distance 261.7
avoid 368.6
keep back slow 175.9
keep secret 345.7
reserve 386.12
not use 390.5
restrain 428.7
delay 846.8
hinder 1012.10
keep books 628.8
keep busy
keep going 330.15
task 725.16
keep down
suppress 428.8
subjugate 432.8
domineer 612.16
keeper preserver 397.5
jailer 429.10
possessor 470.1
protector 1008.5
guardian 1008.6
keep faith 644.9
keep from refrain 329.3
keep secret 345.7
avoid 368.6
restrain 428.7
abstain 668.7
prevent 1012.14
keep going
keep on 330.15
persevere 360.2
continue 856.3
sustain 856.4
keep house
settle 159.17
housekeep 228.31
keep in restrain 428.7
confine 429.12
retain 474.5
keeping
n symmetry 264.1
preservation 397.1
custody 429.5

observance 434.1
retention 474.1
protectorship 1008.2
adj preservative 397.12
retentive 474.8
keep in mind
think of 931.16
take cognizance of 983.9
keep in memory 989.13
keep in sight look 27.13
be vigilant 339.8
take cognizance of 983.9
keep in touch! 188.22
keep off
fend off 460.10
repulse 908.3
prevent 1012.14
keep on
keep going 330.15
persevere 360.2
endure 827.6
continue 856.3
keep one's cool
be cool 106.6
keep calm 106.9
accept 123.2
be moderate 670.5
stand fast 855.11
keep one's distance
efface oneself 139.7
avoid 157.7
distance oneself 261.7
keep to oneself 344.6
shun 368.6
remain aloof 583.4
keep one's ears open
listen 48.10
hearken to 983.7
keep one's eyes open
keep awake 23.3
look 27.13
be vigilant 339.8
beware 494.7
be curious 981.3
pay attention 983.8
keep one's fingers crossed
be hopeful 124.8
be superstitious 954.7
keep one's head above water
support oneself 385.12
win through 409.13
endure 827.6
be safe 1007.2
keep one's nose to the grindstone
keep going 330.15
keep doggedly at 360.3
drudge 725.14
keep one's shirt on
keep cool 106.9
be patient 134.4
keep one's word 644.9
keep on ice 397.9
keep out 773.4
keep posted 551.16
keep quiet 173.7
keepsake 989.7
keep score 871.8
keep secret 345.7
keep still 51.5
keep tabs on
keep informed 551.16
care for 1008.19
keep the faith
be hopeful 124.8
observe 434.2
be pious 692.6
keep the peace
remain at peace 464.8
be moderate 670.5
calm 670.7
keep time
beat time 708.44
spend time 821.6
time 832.11
coincide 836.4
keep to oneself
be silent 51.5
remain aloof 344.6
keep secret 345.7
retain 474.5
keep oneself to oneself 583.4
keep track of
keep informed 551.16
keep account of 1017.20
keep under wraps 346.6
keep up
not weaken 15.10
persevere 360.2
preserve 397.8
follow the fashion 578.10
work 724.12
sustain 856.4
support 901.21
keister 217.5
kelp 310.4
kelpie 678.10
ken
n vision 27.1
field of view 31.3
knowledge 928.1
v see 27.12
understand 521.7
know 928.12
kennel
n doghouse 228.21
drain 239.5
trench 290.2
dog 311.17
pavement 383.6
group of animals 770.5
v enclose 212.5
keno 759.15
kept reserved 386.15
preserved 397.13
kept woman 665.17
kerchief 5.25
kernel nut 10.39
essential content 196.5
center 208.2
seed 310.31
essence 767.2
middle 819.1
salient point 997.6
kerosene 1025.20
key
n color 35.1
island 235.2
opener 292.10
translation 341.3
telegraph 347.2
clue 517.9
pitch 709.4
key signature 709.15
wind instrument 711.6
basketball 747.1
influence 894.6
v close 293.6
adj central 208.11
keyboard
n fingerboard 711.17
input device 1042.4
v autotype 548.15
computerize 1042.21
keyed up 105.20
keyhole 747.1
keynote
n sign 517.1
key 709.15
characteristic 865.4
v characterize 865.10
keynoter 610.7
keys ecclesiastical insignia 647.4
keyboard 711.17
key signature
notation 709.12
key 709.15
keystone arch 279.4
baseball 745.1
foundation stone 901.7
salient point 997.6
key up excite 105.12
intensify 251.5
khaki 40.3
khakis 5.18
khan ruler 575.9
Muslim ruler 575.10
prince 608.7
Sir 648.3
kibbutz
communion 476.2
farm 1069.8
kibitz meddle 214.7
advise 422.5
kibitzer meddler 214.4
adviser 422.3
gambler 759.21
spectator 918.1
kibosh disable 19.9
end 820.5
kick
n energy 17.3
zest 68.2
excitement 105.3
complaint 115.5
objection 333.2
signal 517.15
hint 551.4
baseball 745.3
football 746.3
soccer 752.3
poker 759.10
counteraction 900.1
boot 902.9
recoil 903.2
v use 87.22
be discontented 108.6
complain 115.16
object 333.5
break the habit 374.3
signal 517.22
swear off 668.8
football 746.5
soccer 752.4
boot 902.21
recoil 903.6
dismiss 909.20
kick around
subdue 432.9
discuss 541.12
domineer 612.16
kick 902.21
kick back relax 20.7
compose oneself 106.7
do nothing 329.2
repay 624.11
discount 631.2
recoil 903.6
kicker
malcontent 108.4
complainer 115.9
surprise 131.2
proviso 421.3
football team 746.2
condition 959.2
kick in die 307.20
provide 385.7
contribute 478.14
pay 624.16
begin 818.7
kick in the teeth 442.2
kickoff
n football 746.3
soccer 752.3
curtain-raiser 816.2
beginning 818.1
adj preceding 816.4
kick off die 307.20
propose 439.5
football 746.5
soccer 752.4
precede 814.2
begin 818.7
start 904.13
kick out kick 902.21
eject 909.13
kickshaw delicacy 10.8
trinket 498.4
toy 743.16
trifle 998.5
kick the bucket 307.20
kick the habit
use 87.22
overcome 412.7
swear off 668.8
kick up a storm
complain 115.16
fly into a rage 152.20
create disorder 810.11
kick upstairs
promote 446.2
depose 447.4
dismiss 909.19
kid
n child 302.3
fledgling 302.10
goat 311.8
v fool 356.15
joke 489.13
banter 490.6
trifle 998.15

kidder
deceiver 357.1
banterer 490.4
kidding
n deception 356.1
banter 490.1
bantering 490.3
adj bantering 490.7
ridiculing 508.12
kid gloves 427.1
kidnap seize 480.14
abduct 482.20
kidnapper 483.10
kidnapping
seizure 480.2
abduction 482.9
kidney viscera 2.16
kind 809.3
disposition 978.3
kill
n stream 238.1
killing 308.1
quarry 382.7
v make laugh 116.9
excise 255.10
delete 255.12
slay 308.13
cover up 345.8
put an end to 395.12
obliterate 395.16
suppress 428.8
veto 444.5
legislate 613.10
amuse 743.21
end 820.5
turn off 857.12
killer
n slayer 308.11
ruffian 593.3
violent person 671.9
first-rate 999.7
adj excellent 999.13
killing
n violent death 307.6
slaying 308.1
gain 472.3
unruliness 671.3
adj fatiguing 21.13
deadly 308.23
laborious 725.18
beautiful 1016.22
killjoy
spoilsport 112.14
pessimist 125.7
hinderer 1012.9
kill oneself 308.22
kill time
waste time 331.13
amuse oneself 743.22
spend time 821.6
kiln
n oven 742.5
v dry 1066.6
kilo 882.10
kilocycle 882.10
kilogram 882.10
kilometer 882.10
kilowatt-hour 17.7
kin kinfolk 559.2
class 809.2
kind 809.3
kind
n race 559.4
nature 767.4
sort 809.3
adj kindly 143.13
forgiving 148.6
indulgent 427.8
favorable 449.22
friendly 587.15
good 999.12
kindergarten 567.2
kindergartner 572.3
kindhearted 143.13
kindle energize 17.10
excite 105.12
flare up 152.19
enkindle 375.18
heat 1020.18
ignite 1020.22
kindling
n ignition 1020.4
firewood 1021.3
adj inflammatory 1020.27
kind of
to a degree 245.7
so to speak 784.19
kindred
n blood relationship 559.1
kinfolk 559.2
adj related 559.6
akin 775.10
kindred soul 784.3
kine 311.6
kinematograph
camera 714.11
projector 714.12
kinescope 714.8
kinesic 517.25
kinesis 172.1
kinetic energetic 17.13
dynamic 1039.9
kinfolk 559.2
king potentate 575.8
prince 608.7
businessman 730.1
chessman 743.17
card 758.2
chief 997.10
kingdom country 232.1
biological classification 305.3
nomenclature 527.1
hierarchy 809.4
classifications 809.5
kingfish 575.4
kingmaker
Machiavellian 415.8
politics 610.6
influence 894.6
kingpin 575.4
kingship
supremacy 249.3
sovereignty 417.8
aristocracy 608.9
king-size great 247.7
large 257.16
huge 257.20
oversize 257.23
kink
n pang 26.2
coil 281.2
caprice 364.1
quirk 927.2
fault 1003.2
blemish 1004.1
v curl 281.5
blemish 1004.4
kinked curly 281.9
blemished 1004.8
kinky curly 281.9
capricious 364.5
unconventional 868.6
eccentric 927.6
kinship
accord 455.1
blood relationship 559.1
common source 775.3
affinity 784.2
kinsmen 559.2
kiosk hut 228.9
summerhouse 228.12
booth 736.3
kipper
n fish 10.24
marine animal 311.30
v preserve 397.9
kirk 703.1
kishkes viscera 2.16
insides 207.4
inner nature 767.5
kismet destiny 839.2
fate 964.2
kiss
n touch 73.1
contact 223.5
buss 562.4
greeting 585.4
v touch lightly 73.7
contact 223.10
osculate 562.19
greet 585.10
kissable 104.25
kiss and make up 465.10
kiss and tell 351.6
kiss ass
bow down 433.10
flatter 511.5
kiss good-bye 473.4
kiss off
relinquish 475.3
repulse 908.3
dismiss 984.4
kit
fledgling 302.10
cat 311.21
equipment 385.4
impedimenta 471.3
set 770.12
kitchen
n restaurant 8.17
cookroom 11.4
storeroom 197.14
baseball 745.3
adj cooking 11.6
kitchen cabinet
council 423.1
cabinet 613.3
kitchen sink
washbasin 79.12
genuineness 973.7
kite
n aircraft 181.1
box kite 181.14
counterfeit 728.10
v take off 193.10
kith and kin 559.2
kitsch vulgarity 497.1
writing 547.12
work of art 712.10
literature 718.1
kitten
n child 302.3
fledgling 302.10
cat 311.21
v give birth 1.3
kittenish
feminine 77.14
gay 109.14
infant 301.12
feline 311.43
kitty cat 311.21
funds 728.14
lawn bowling 750.3
pot 759.5
kittycorner
adj transverse 204.19
adv diagonally 204.25
klutz bungler 414.9
fool 924.3
klutzy
inelegant 534.2
stupid 922.15
knack art 413.6
trinket 498.4
knave
mischief-maker 322.3
rascal 660.3
card 758.2
knavery
stratagem 415.3
roguery 645.2
iniquity 654.3
knavish
mischievous 322.6
roguish 645.17
wicked 654.16
knead stroke 73.8
form 262.7
mix 797.10
rub 1044.6
soften 1047.6
knee
n member 2.7
leg 177.14
angle 278.2
joint 800.4
v kick 902.21
knee-deep deep 275.10
shallow 276.5
knee-high
little 258.10
low 274.7
kneel fawn 138.7
bow 155.6
bend 913.9
kneeling
obeisance 155.2
submission 433.1
crouch 913.3
kneel to
bow down 433.10
entreat 440.11
knell
n ringing 54.3

dirge 115.6
death 307.1
passing bell 309.6
v ring 54.8
lament 115.10
knickknack
trinket 498.4
toy 743.16
trifle 998.5
knife
n sword 462.5
cutlery 1040.2
v stab 459.25
knife-edge
sharp edge 285.2
unreliability 971.6
predicament 1013.4
knight
n rider 178.8
combatant 461.1
gallant 504.9
cavalier 608.5
chessman 743.17
v promote 446.2
knight-errantry 652.2
knighthood
military science 458.6
aristocracy 608.9
knightly
adj courageous 492.17
gallant 504.15
noble 608.10
magnanimous 652.6
adv courageously 492.23
courteously 504.19
magnanimously 652.8
knit
v contract 260.7
wrinkle 291.6
heal 396.21
weave 740.6
fasten 800.7
join 800.11
adj woven 740.7
joined 800.13
knitted
contracted 260.12
wrinkled 291.8
joined 800.13
knitting
contraction 260.1
weaving 740.1
knob
n hill 237.4
sphere 282.2
bulge 283.3
v roughen 288.4
knobbed
studded 283.17
nappy 294.7
knobby
hilly 272.18
studded 283.17
knock
n report 56.1
criticism 510.4
hit 902.4
v crack 56.6
criticize 510.14
collide 902.13
hit 902.14
pound 902.16
knock about
wander 177.23
mistreat 389.5
knock around
wander 177.23
discuss 541.12
knock dead
delight 95.11
amuse 743.21
look good 1016.17
knock down
sadden 112.18
unnerve 128.10
raze 395.19
acquire 472.9
disparage 512.8
auction 734.11
fight 754.4
hit 902.14
fell 913.5
knock-down-and-drag-out
n quarrel 456.6
free-for-all 457.5
adj boisterous 671.20
knocker 512.6
knock for a loop
delight 95.11
beat 902.17
knock heads together
coerce 424.8
hold a tight hand upon 425.4
punish 604.15
knockoff 336.3
knock off
take a rest 20.8
excise 255.10
die 307.20
kill 308.14
do carelessly 340.9
improvise 365.8
accomplish 407.4
defeat 412.9
rob 482.16
write 547.21
compose 718.6
stop work 857.8
knock one's socks off
delight 95.11
astonish 122.6
fascinate 377.7
knock on wood
be hopeful 124.8
be superstitious 954.7
knockout
unconsciousness 25.2
victory 411.1
fight 754.3
finishing stroke 820.4
first-rate 999.7
beauty 1016.9
knock out
disable 19.10
get tired 21.6
deaden 25.4
delight 95.11
form 262.7
do carelessly 340.9
do for 395.11
write 547.21
compose 718.6
fight 754.4
end 820.5
hit 902.14
knock over 395.19
knoll 237.4
knot
n braid 3.7
distortion 265.1
sphere 282.2
bulge 283.3
enigma 522.8
company 770.3
bunch 770.7
complex 799.2
fastening 800.3
dilemma 1013.7
solid 1045.6
v distort 265.5
equal 790.5
complicate 799.3
put together 800.5
thicken 1045.10
knotted studded 283.17
gnarled 288.8
wrinkled 291.8
assembled 770.21
related 775.9
equal 790.7
complex 799.4
joined 800.13
difficult 1013.17
knotty studded 283.17
gnarled 288.8
hard to understand 522.14
difficult 1013.17
know understand 521.7
be informed 551.15
be friends 587.9
experience 831.8
perceive 928.12
be certain 970.9
recognize 989.12
know all the answers
know backwards and forwards 413.19
know well 928.13
know backwards and forwards
know all the answers 413.19
know well 928.13
know-how skill 413.1
knowledge 928.1
knowing
n knowledge 928.1
adj intentional 380.8
experienced 413.28
cunning 415.12
intelligent 920.12
shrewd 920.15
wise 920.17
knowledgeable 928.15
know it all 140.6
know-it-all
n egotist 140.5
adj conceited 140.11
knowledge
information 551.1
learning 570.1
intelligence 920.1
cognizance 928.2
knowing 928.1
knowledgeable
specialized 866.5
knowing 928.15
knowledge engineering 1042.2
known as 527.14
know no bounds
overstep 910.9
superabound 993.8
overdo 993.10
know nothing 930.9
know-nothing
n ignoramus 930.8
adj ignorant 930.12
discriminatory 980.12
know well know 551.15
master 570.9
know full well 928.13
know what's what
know backwards and forwards 413.19
have all one's wits about one 920.10
know well 928.13
distinguish between 944.6
knub 294.1
knuckle
n joint 800.4
v exert oneself 725.9
knuckle down to
undertake 404.3
submit 433.6
set to work 725.15
knucklehead 924.4
knuckleheaded 922.17
knuckles 462.4
knurl
n bulge 283.3
v notch 289.4
knurled
studded 283.17
gnarled 288.8
KO
n unconsciousness 25.2
victory 411.1
fight 754.3
finishing stroke 820.4
v deaden 25.4
do for 395.11
end 820.5
Kodak 714.11
kohl 1016.12
kook oddity 870.4
lunatic 926.16
freak 927.4
kooky odd 870.11
foolish 923.9
crazy 926.27
eccentric 927.6
Koran 683.6
Kore
nether world deity 682.5
agricultural deity 1069.4
kosher edible 8.33
clean 79.25
right 637.3
legal 673.11
conformist 867.6
kowtow
n obeisance 155.2
crouch 913.3
v fawn 138.7

kneel 155.6
lie 201.5
bow down 433.10
bend 913.9
Kraut vegetables 10.35
derogatory names 232.7
soldier 461.7
kudos praise 509.5
citation 646.4
repute 662.1
kvetch
n malcontent 108.4
complaint 115.5
complainer 115.9
faultfinder 510.9
v be discontented 108.6
complain 115.16
L LSD 87.10
adjunct 254.3
angle 278.2
stage 704.16
eleven 882.7
lab workplace 739.6
laboratory 942.5
label
n tag 517.13
name 527.3
heraldry 647.2
class 809.2
kind 809.3
v tag 517.20
name 527.11
generalize 864.9
labia 2.13
labial 211.13
labor
n birth 1.1
occupation 724.1
task 724.2
work 725.4
v give birth 1.3
be busy 330.10
endeavor 403.5
work 724.12
exert oneself 725.12
dwell on 849.9
flounder 917.15
laboratory
hospital room 197.25
workplace 739.6
lab 942.5
laboratory test 91.12
labor camp 429.8
labored ornate 498.12
stiff 534.3
laborious 725.18
monotonous 849.15
laborer subject 432.7
commoner 607.9
worker 726.2
laboring
n interpretation 341.1
amplification 538.6
adj working 725.17
labor in vain
n labor lost 391.3
v be useless 391.8
fail 410.9
laborious
industrious 330.22
toilsome 725.18
difficult 1013.17
labor of love
act of kindness 143.7
costlessness 634.1
labor organizer 727.4
labor-saving 635.6
labor under ail 85.46
experience 831.8
labor under a disadvantage 1013.11
labor union
association 617.1
trade unionism 727.1
trade union 727.2
labor unionist 727.4
labyrinth 799.2
labyrinthine
deviative 164.7
distorted 265.10
curved 279.7
convolutional 281.6
grandiloquent 545.8
complex 799.4
lace
n material 4.1
network 170.3
strip 271.4
v whip 604.13
weave 740.6
adulterate 797.12
bind 800.9
laced netlike 170.11
woven 740.7
lacerate
v pain 26.7
torture 96.18
injure 393.13
tear apart 802.14
adj notched 289.5
lacerated
pained 26.9
tortured 96.25
notched 289.5
impaired 393.27
laceration
trauma 85.38
torment 96.7
severance 802.2
lachrymal
circulatory 2.33
secretory 13.7
tearful 115.21
lachrymose
secretory 13.7
tearful 115.21
lacing
network 170.3
corporal punishment 604.4
weaving 740.1
adulteration 797.3
lack
n absence 222.1
indigence 619.2
deficiency 795.2
want 992.4
imperfection 1003.1
v be poor 619.5
be incomplete 795.3
fall short 911.2
want 992.7
be insufficient 992.8
lackadaisical
unconcerned 102.7
nonchalant 106.15
languid 331.20
dilatory 846.17
lackey
n retainer 577.1
flunky 577.6
follower 616.8
v serve 577.13
lacking
adj absent 222.11
bereft 473.8
nonexistent 762.8
incomplete 795.4
short of 911.5
insufficient 992.9
wanting 992.13
imperfect 1003.4
prep absent 222.19
lackluster
n colorlessness 36.1
mediocrity 1005.1
dullness 1027.5
adj colorless 36.7
mediocre 1005.7
lusterless 1027.17
lack of feeling
unfeeling 94.1
unconcern 102.2
indiscrimination 945.1
lackwitted 922.13
laconic
n man of few words 344.5
adj taciturn 344.9
concise 537.6
lacquer
n blanket 295.12
v color 35.14
coat 295.24
lacquered 287.11
lactate nourish 8.19
secrete 13.5
lactation humor 2.24
secretion 13.1
liquidity 1061.1
lacteal secretory 13.7
milky 1061.5
lactose intolerance 85.22
lacuna interval 224.1
cavity 284.2
opening 292.1
deficiency 795.2
interruption 813.2
lacustrian
n lake dweller 241.2
adj lakish 241.5
lacy netlike 170.11
thin 270.16
lad man 76.5
boy 302.5
ladder 193.4
lade load 159.15
burden 297.13
fill 794.7
laden weighted 297.18
fraught 794.12
la-di-da 500.15
ladies' man
beau 104.13
dandy 500.9
philanderer 562.12
lading placement 159.6
freight 176.6
load 196.2
burden 297.7
full measure 794.3
ladino 797.8
ladle
n container 195.1
v dip 176.17
lady woman 77.5
female 77.9
cocaine 87.7
ladylove 104.14
wife 563.8
aristocrat 607.4
noblewoman 608.6
person of honor 644.8
good person 659.1
card 758.2
Lady title 648.2
Chance 972.2
lady bountiful
humanitarian 143.8
donor 478.11
cheerful giver 485.2
lady-killer beau 104.13
dandy 500.9
philanderer 562.12
libertine 665.10
ladylike
feminine 77.14
well-bred 504.17
upper-class 607.10
noble 608.10
ladylove 104.14
Lady Luck 972.2
lag
n dawdling 175.3
slowing 175.4
delay 846.2
time constants 1041.11
v lag behind 166.4
dawdle 175.8
be behind 217.8
dally 331.14
mistime 833.2
delay 846.8
fall short 911.2
laggard
n slowpoke 175.5
idler 331.8
adj reluctant 325.6
indolent 331.19
dilatory 846.17
lagging
n dawdling 175.3
delay 846.2
adj dawdling 175.11
dilatory 846.17
lagniappe extra 254.4
gratuity 478.5
bonus 624.6
surplus 993.5
lagoon 241.1
laic
n layman 700.2
amateur 726.5
adj lay 700.3

laid-back
  nonchalant 106.15
  at ease 121.12
  quiescent 173.12
  negligent 340.10
  leisurely 402.6
  unstrict 426.5
laid low ill 85.56
  low 274.7
  worn-out 393.36
laid up invalided 85.59
  stored 386.14
lair den 228.26
  disapproved place 228.28
  cave 284.5
  hiding place 346.4
  retreat 584.6
  refuge 1009.5
laird proprietor 470.2
  nobleman 608.4
laisser aller 329.4
laissez-faire
  n inaction 329.1
  neglect 340.1
  noninterference 430.9
  policy 609.4
  capitalism 611.8
  adj passive 329.6
  negligent 340.10
  conservative 853.8
lake 241.1
lake dweller 241.2
lakefront
  n shore 234.2
  adj coastal 234.7
lam depart 188.7
  flee 368.11
lama 699.14
lamb
  n mutton 10.16
  child 302.3
  fledgling 302.10
  sheep 311.7
  simple soul 416.3
  endearment term 562.6
  innocent 657.4
  cheater 759.22
  exposure 1006.3
  v give birth 1.3
lambaste defeat 412.9
  attack 459.15
  disapprove 510.18
  punish 604.15
  pound 902.16
lambent
  lightly touching 73.12
  flickering 1025.36
  illuminated 1025.39
lame
  v disable 19.9
  cripple 393.14
  hamper 1012.11
  adj crippled 393.30
  unsuccessful 410.18
  foolish 923.9
lamebrain 924.2
lame duck
  officeholder 610.11
  insolvent 625.4
  speculator 737.11
lame excuse
  pretext 376.1
  excuse 600.4
lamellate 296.6
lament
  n plaint 115.3
  v distress 98.14
  mourn 115.10
lamentable
  distressing 98.20
  sorrowful 112.26
  terrible 1000.9
lamentation
  distressfulness 98.5
  sorrow 112.10
  mourning 115.1
  lamenting 115.1
lamenter griever 115.8
  mourner 309.7
laminate
  n plastic 1054.6
  v layer 296.5
  adj layered 296.6
lamination 296.4
lamp 1026.1
lampoon
  n wit 489.1
  burlesque 508.6
  send-up 512.5
  v burlesque 508.11
  satirize 512.12
lampooner
  humorist 489.12
  lampoonist 512.7
lanai 197.21
lance
  n cavalryman 461.12
  v perforate 292.15
  stab 459.25
  sever 802.11
  throw 904.10
Lancelot 608.5
lancinate 96.18
land
  n region 231.1
  country 232.1
  earth 234.1
  ground 234.1
  real estate 471.6
  v set her down 184.43
  come to land 186.8
  get down 194.7
  meet one's Maker 307.21
  acquire 472.9
  catch 480.17
land bridge 240.7
landed
  possessing 469.9
  propertied 471.8
landed gentry
  landowner 470.3
  gentry 608.3
landfill
  receptacle of filth 80.12
  derelict 370.4
  trash pile 391.6
landholding
  n real estate 234.1
  ownership 469.2
  adj possessing 469.9
landing
  coming in 184.18
  airport 184.22
  landfall 186.2
  stairs 193.3
  platform 901.13
  harbor 1009.6
landlady 470.2
landless 619.9
landlocked 428.15
landloper 178.3
landloping 177.37
landlord
  proprietor 470.2
  host 585.5
landlubber
  mariner 183.2
  landsman 234.3
landmark
  marker 517.10
  salient point 997.6
landmark decision 598.9
landmass
  world region 231.6
  land 234.1
  continent 235.1
land-office business
  demand 421.1
  roaring trade 1010.5
land on attack 459.15
  punish 604.11
landowner 470.3
landscape view 33.6
  scene 712.12
landscape architect
  artist 716.10
  architect 717.3
  horticulturist 1069.6
landscape gardener
  artist 716.10
  architect 717.3
  horticulturist 1069.6
land shark cheat 357.3
  thief 483.1
landslide slide 194.4
  victory 411.1
  returns 609.21
  plenty 991.2
  superabundance 993.2
landsman
  fellow citizen 227.5
  landman 234.3
  friend 588.4
landward
  clockwise 161.24
  coastward 182.67
lane airway 184.33
  passageway 383.3
  bowling 750.1
  track 755.1
lang syne 837.2
language
  n tongue 523.1
  communication 523.1
  speech 524.1
  diction 532.1
  assembler language 1042.13
  adj speech 524.29
language family 523.12
languid weak 16.12
  tired 21.7
  sleepy 22.21
  apathetic 94.13
  inert 173.14
  slow 175.10
  languorous 331.20
languish weaken 16.9
  fail 85.48
  lose heart 112.16
  decrease 252.6
  pine 393.18
languishing
  n unhealthiness 85.3
  yearning 100.5
  adj drooping 16.21
  unhealthy 85.54
  wistful 100.23
  loving 104.27
  dejected 112.22
  decreasing 252.11
  deteriorating 393.45
  protracted 827.11
languor weakness 16.1
  fatigue 21.1
  sleepiness 22.1
  apathy 94.4
  inertness 173.4
  slowness 175.1
  languidness 331.6
languorous weak 16.12
  inert 173.14
  slow 175.10
  languid 331.20
lanky
  n slim 270.8
  adj lean 270.17
  tall 272.16
lanolin 1056.3
lantern tower 272.6
  roof 295.6
  light source 1026.1
lantern jaws 270.5
lap
  n drink 8.4
  touch 73.1
  front 216.1
  swash 238.8
  overlayer 295.4
  lamina 296.2
  race 457.12
  track 755.1
  car race 756.3
  circuit 914.2
  v clothe 5.39
  lap up 8.30
  ripple 52.11
  lick 73.9
  tipple 88.24
  lead 165.2
  overtake 174.13
  surround 209.6
  border 211.10
  overflow 238.17
  plash 238.19
  fold 291.5
  wrap 295.20
  overlie 295.30
  cuddle 562.17
  circle 914.5
lap dog favorite 104.16
  sycophant 138.3
  dog 311.17

lapel 291.1
lapidary
n printmaker 716.8
adj elegant 533.6
glyptic 713.12
lapin 311.24
lap of luxury 1010.1
lappet pendant 202.4
fold 291.1
lapping
n drinking 8.3
lap 238.8
adj rippling 52.19
overlying 295.36
lapse
n regression 163.1
sinkage 194.2
decline 252.2
neglect 340.1
deterioration 393.3
relapse 394.1
misdeed 655.2
impiety 694.1
close 820.3
pause 857.3
conversion 858.1
reversion 859.1
slip 975.4
v regress 163.5
sink 194.6
invert 205.5
neglect 340.6
decline 393.17
relapse 394.4
go wrong 654.9
come to an end 820.6
elapse 821.5
pass 837.6
defect 858.13
revert 859.4
err 975.9
lapsed inverted 205.7
nonobservant 435.5
unvirtuous 654.12
carnal 663.6
impious 694.6
unregenerate 695.18
past 837.7
lapse of memory 990.1
lapse of time
passage of time 821.4
period 824.1
laptop computer 1042.2
lap up
sponge up 8.30
tipple 88.24
kid oneself 954.6
larboard
n left side 220.1
adj left 220.4
adv leftward 220.6
larcenous 482.21
larceny 482.2
lard make better 392.9
oil 1056.8
larder
provisions 10.5
store 386.1
pantry 386.8
lares and penates
household deity 228.30
property 471.1
familiar spirit 678.12
large immense 247.7
sizable 257.16
liberal 485.4
largehearted
benevolent 143.15
liberal 485.4
magnanimous 652.6
large-minded 979.8
larger than life
large 257.16
huge 257.20
full-sized 257.22
excessive 993.16
weighty 997.20
large-scale
large 257.16
extensive 864.13
largess gratuity 478.5
liberality 485.1
largo
n slow motion 175.2
music 708.25
tempo 709.24
adj music 708.54
lariat 356.13
lark
n ascent 193.7
songbird 710.23
revel 743.6
v make merry 743.24
larrup punish 604.15
beat 902.17
larva chrysalis 302.12
embryo 305.14
insect 311.33
specter 988.1
larval 305.22
larynx 524.18
lascivious
lustful 75.27
desirous 100.21
amorous 104.26
lecherous 665.29
laser surgery 91.19
lash
n goad 375.8
whip 605.1
slap 902.8
v anchor 182.15
goad 375.15
bind 428.10
criticize 510.20
whip 604.13
join 800.9
drive 1070.8
lashing
corporal punishment 604.4
fastening 800.3
lass woman 77.5
ladylove 104.14
girl 302.6
lassitude
weakness 16.1
fatigue 21.1
languor 331.6
lasso
n circle 280.2
snare 356.13
v catch 480.17
last
n mold 786.6
end 820.1
v keep alive 306.12
persevere 360.2
stay with it 360.4
live on 761.9
elapse 821.5
endure 827.6
outlast 827.8
remain 853.5
adj departing 188.18
completing 407.9
final 820.11
eventual 831.11
foregoing 837.11
state-of-the-art 841.14
adv finally 820.12
last-ditch
final 820.11
makeshift 995.7
lasting
persevering 360.8
sturdy 763.7
temporal 821.7
durable 827.10
protracted 827.11
permanent 853.7
unchangeable 855.17
remembered 989.23
tough 1049.4
last minute 846.1
last-minute hasty 401.9
later 846.18
last name 527.5
last resort
expedient 995.2
recourse 1009.2
last rites
last offices 309.4
unction 701.5
last straw 886.3
Last Supper 701.7
last word
supremacy 249.3
ultimatum 439.3
meaning 518.1
administration 573.3
the last word
the rage 578.4
novelty 841.2
influence 894.1
acme of perfection 1002.3
latch close 293.6
hook 800.8
late
adj retarded 175.12
dead 307.30
anachronous 833.3
former 837.10
recent 841.12
untimely 844.6
belated 846.16
adv behind 846.19
late bloomer 846.6
latecomer 846.6
late lamented
n corpse 307.16
adj dead 307.30
latent invisible 32.5
inert 173.14
secret 345.11
concealed 346.11
lurking 519.5
later
adj subsequent 835.4
future 839.8
recent 841.12
last-minute 846.18
adv subsequently 835.6
in the future 839.9
lateral
n speech sound 524.12
throw 904.3
v go sideways 218.5
adj side 218.6
sided 218.7
phonetic 524.30
latest present 838.2
state-of-the-art 841.14
the latest thing
the rage 578.4
novelty 841.2
latex elastic 1048.3
fluid 1061.2
lath
n thinness 270.7
strip 271.4
wood 1054.3
v cover 295.23
lathe 858.10
lather
n sweat 12.7
dither 105.6
impatience 135.1
foam 320.2
v wash 79.19
get excited 105.17
foam 320.5
defeat 412.9
punish 604.15
latitude room 158.3
map 159.5
zone 231.3
breadth 269.1
coordinates 300.5
scope 430.4
broad-mindedness 979.1
latitudinarian
n free agent 430.12
freethinker 695.13
liberal 979.6
adj nonrestrictive 430.25
freethinking 695.21
liberal 979.9
latrine
convenience 12.10
toilet 12.11
latter foregoing 837.11
recent 841.12
lattice
n network 170.3
frame 266.4
atomic cluster 1038.7
reactor 1038.13
v net 170.7
laud
n thanks 150.2
praise 509.5
glorification 696.2
paean 696.3
v praise 509.12

  glorify 696.12
laudable
  praiseworthy 509.20
  good 999.12
laudatory 509.16
lauded 247.9
laugh
  n laughter 116.4
  joke 489.6
  v be pleased 95.12
  exude cheerfulness 109.6
  burst out laughing 116.8
laughable
  humorous 488.4
  absurd 923.11
laugh at flout 454.4
  ridicule 508.8
laughing
  n laughter 116.4
  adj happy 95.16
  cheerful 109.11
laughingstock 508.7
laugh it up laugh 116.8
  amuse oneself 743.22
laughs 743.2
laughter
  merriment 109.5
  laughing 116.4
launch
  n motorboat 180.4
  beginning 818.1
  rocket launching 1074.9
  v propose 439.5
  inaugurate 818.11
  throw 904.10
  start 904.13
  project 1074.13
launcher 462.21
launching
  beginning 818.1
  inauguration 818.5
  innovation 852.4
launching pad
  beginning 818.1
  platform 901.13
  rocket launcher 1074.10
launch into
  undertake 404.3
  set to work 725.15
launder 79.19
laundress 79.15
Laundromat 79.11
laundry
  laundering 79.6
  washery 79.11
laundry list list 871.1
  schedule 965.3
laundry room 739.8
laureate
  n superior 249.4
  champion 413.15
  poet 720.11
  adj honored 646.9
laurels
  supremacy 249.3
  victory 411.1
  trophy 646.3
lava
  combustion product 1020.16
  rock 1059.1
lavatory latrine 12.10
  bathing place 79.10
  washbasin 79.12
  bathroom 197.26
lave wash 79.19
  soak 1065.13
lavender 46.3
lavish
  v give 478.12
  furnish 478.15
  spare no expense 485.3
  squander 486.3
  adj liberal 485.4
  prodigal 486.8
  ornate 545.11
  teeming 884.9
  plentiful 991.7
  superabundant 993.19
lavish with 993.14
law
  n rule 419.2
  decree 420.4
  prohibition 444.1
  lex 673.3
  legal system 673.4
  jurisprudence 673.7
  game 752.3
  norm 869.4
  axiom 974.2
  v sue 598.13
the Law 683.3
the law 1008.16
law-abiding
  obedient 326.3
  honest 644.13
law and order 464.2
lawbreaker
  evildoer 593.1
  criminal 660.9
lawbreaking
  disobedience 327.1
  wrongdoing 655.1
  violation 674.3
law enforcement agency 1008.17
law enforcement agent 1008.15
law firm 597.4
lawful
  permissible 443.15
  just 649.8
  legal 673.11
  valid 973.14
  genuine 973.15
lawgiver 610.3
lawless
  disobedient 327.8
  licentious 418.5
  illegal 674.6
lawmaker 610.3
lawmaking
  n legislation 613.5
  adj legislative 613.11
  legal 673.11
lawn 310.7
law of averages 972.1
law officer 597.1
lawsuit suit 598.1
  accusation 599.1
lawyer attorney 597.1
  professional 726.4
lax indolent 331.19
  negligent 340.10
  slack 426.4
  lenient 427.7
  unrestrained 430.24
  nonrestrictive 430.25
  permissive 443.14
  phonetic 524.30
  wanton 665.26
  loose 804.5
  dilatory 846.17
  vague 971.19
  inaccurate 975.17
  flaccid 1047.10
laxative
  n cathartic 86.17
  adj cathartic 86.48
laxity neglect 340.1
  laxness 426.1
  nonobservance 435.1
  wantonness 665.4
  looseness 804.2
  vagueness 971.4
  inaccuracy 975.2
  flaccidity 1047.3
lay
  n navigation 159.3
  direction 161.1
  air 708.4
  song 708.14
  bet 759.3
  v copulate 75.21
  reproduce 78.9
  relieve 120.5
  place 159.12
  deposit 159.14
  ship activity 182.48
  lie 201.5
  level 201.6
  smooth 287.5
  pacify 465.7
  impose 643.4
  moderate 670.6
  exorcise 690.12
  bet 759.25
  adj laic 700.3
lay an egg
  fall flat 117.4
  fail 410.10
  bungle 414.12
  bomb 459.23
lay aside
  remove 176.11
  put away 390.6
  segregate 773.6
  postpone 846.9
  dismiss 984.4
lay away store 386.10
  put away 390.6
lay back relax 20.7
  compose oneself 106.7
lay before
  confront 216.8
  propose 439.5
lay by lay to 182.17
  lie idle 331.16
  store 386.10
  reserve 386.12
  put away 390.6
  prepare for 405.11
  postpone 846.9
lay down
  deposit 159.14
  careen 182.43
  level 201.6
  layer 296.5
  affirm 334.5
  give up 370.7
  store 386.10
  prescribe 420.9
  pledge 438.10
  pay over 624.15
  bet 759.25
  postulate 951.12
lay down the law
  put one's foot down 420.10
  direct 573.8
  dominate 612.15
  dogmatize 970.10
layer
  n tier 296.1
  thickness 296.1
  v lay down 296.5
layette 5.30
lay figure figure 349.6
  figurehead 575.5
  art equipment 712.18
  thing of naught 764.2
  artist's model 786.5
lay hands on
  attack 459.14
  seize 480.14
  bless 696.14
  minister 701.16
lay in sail for 182.35
  store 386.10
  gather materials 1054.7
lay into
  lift one's hand against 457.14
  attack 459.15
  punish 604.11
lay it on
  exaggerate 355.3
  flatter 511.6
  talk big 545.6
  pile it on 993.11
lay it on thick
  coat 295.24
  exaggerate 355.3
  affect 500.12
  boast 502.7
  commend 509.11
  flatter 511.6
  talk big 545.6
  pile it on 993.11
lay low weaken 16.10
  level 201.6
  lie low 274.5
  strike dead 308.18
  hide 346.8
  fell 913.5
layman laic 700.2
  amateur 726.5
layoff
  unemployment 331.3
  dismissal 909.5
lay off
  v take a rest 20.8
  circumscribe 210.4
  measure off 300.11
  lie idle 331.16
  plot 381.10

cease to use 390.4
cease 857.6
dismiss 909.19
interj cease! 857.14
the lay of the land 765.2
lay on cover 295.19
coat 295.24
lift one's hand against 457.14
blame 599.8
whip 604.13
impose 643.4
administer 643.6
layout form 262.1
plan 381.1
composition 548.2
roulette 759.12
gambling wheel 759.16
order 807.1
lay out deaden 25.4
level 201.6
form 262.7
measure off 300.11
kill 308.14
embalm 309.21
plot 381.10
pledge 438.10
spend 626.5
order 807.4
fell 913.5
layover 225.5
lay over sojourn 225.8
cover 295.19
postpone 846.9
lay the foundation
establish 159.16
prepare the way 405.12
lay to lay by 182.17
lie idle 331.16
exert oneself 725.9
attribute to 888.4
lay to rest inter 309.19
abolish 395.13
end 820.5
disprove 958.4
lay up afflict 85.50
lay to 182.17
layer 296.5
store up 386.11
lay waste
destroy 395.10
raze 671.11
laze go slow 175.6
idle 331.12
lazy slow 175.10
indolent 331.19
careless 340.11
dilatory 846.17
lazybones 331.7
lea 310.8
leach
n solution 1064.3
v refine 79.22
exude 190.15
trickle 238.18
subtract 255.9
liquefy 1064.5
soak 1065.13
leached 891.4
lead
n instrument 200.6
weight 297.6
v weight 297.12
gravitate 297.15
adj brass 1058.17
lead
n superiority 249.1
hunter 311.13
shackle 428.4
pointer 517.4
clue 517.9
direction 573.1
role 704.10
script 706.3
leading man 707.6
notation 709.12
lawn bowling 750.3
bridge 758.3
chief 997.10
v take direction 161.7
head 165.2
be in front 216.7
rule 249.11
induce 375.22
direct 573.8
govern 612.12
conduct 708.45
escort 769.8
precede 814.2
go before 816.3
initiate 818.10
cause 886.11
influence 894.7
tend 896.3
lead by the nose
have subject 432.10
dominate 612.15
influence 894.7
have influence over 894.11
leaden colorless 36.7
gray 39.4
dull 117.6
inert 173.14
heavy 297.16
languid 331.20
stiff 534.3
brass 1058.17
leader
vanguard 216.2
superior 249.4
hunter 311.13
commentary 556.2
director 574.6
chief 575.3
conductor 710.17
commodity 735.2
lawn bowling 750.3
precursor 816.1
special 866.2
question 938.10
leadership
supremacy 249.3
mastership 417.7
directorship 573.4
influence 894.1
leading
n preceding 165.1
heading 165.1
direction 573.1
adj heading 165.3
front 216.10
chief 249.14
authoritative 417.15
directing 573.12
governing 612.18
preceding 814.4
first 818.17
paramount 997.24
leading lady
role 704.10
lead 707.6
leading to 896.5
lead item
commodity 735.2
special 866.2
lead off
precede 814.2
initiate 818.10
lead on lure 377.5
direct 573.8
exercise influence 894.9
lead one to expect
give hope 124.10
be as expected 130.10
promise 133.13
be probable 968.4
lead the way lead 165.2
set an example 786.7
go before 816.3
initiate 818.10
lead time
preparation 405.1
earliness 845.1
forethought 961.2
lead to direct to 161.6
extend to 261.6
pave the way 405.12
entail 772.4
determine 886.12
lead up the garden path
356.16
leaf
n tobacco 89.2
lamina 296.2
frond 310.19
advertising matter 352.8
makeup 554.12
paper 1054.5
v vegetate 310.34
leaflet leaf 310.19
advertising matter
352.8
booklet 554.11
leaf metal 1058.3
leaf through 938.25
leafy green 44.4
leaved 310.41
league
n treaty 437.2
affiliation 450.2
association 617.1
baseball 745.1
football 746.1
bowling 750.1
soccer 752.1
combination 805.1
v cooperate 450.3
come together 770.16
put together 800.5
ally 805.4
leagued
assembled 770.21
joined 800.13
enleagued 805.6
League of Nations
supranational government
12.7
United Nations 614.1
leak
n leakage 190.5
opening 292.1
divulgence 351.2
escape 369.1
v leak out 190.14
communicate 343.7
disclose 351.4
betray 351.6
go to waste 473.6
hint 551.10
leakage entrance 189.1
leaking 190.5
escape 369.1
waste 473.2
leak in 189.10
leak out leak 190.14
be revealed 351.8
find vent 369.10
leakproof
resistant 15.20
watertight 1066.11
leaky exudative 190.20
apertured 292.19
lean
n inclination 204.2
v incline 204.10
gravitate 297.15
be willing 324.3
tend 896.3
adj thin 270.17
plain-speaking 535.3
meager 992.10
leaning
n desire 100.3
inclination 204.2
preference 371.5
aptitude 413.5
partiality 650.3
tendency 896.1
disposition 978.3
prejudice 980.3
adj inclining 204.15
unbalanced 791.5
tending 896.4
lean on
coerce 424.8
threaten 514.2
exercise influence 894.9
rest on 901.22
rely on 953.16
lean-to 228.9
lean toward
desire 100.14
prefer 371.17
take the attitude 978.6
leap
n progression 162.1
ascent 193.1
interval 224.1
degree 245.1
increase 251.1
jump 366.1
curtain-raiser 816.2
innovation 852.4
v speed 174.8
jump 366.5

make haste 401.5
leap before one looks 401.7
leapfrog
n leap 366.1
v leap 366.5
leaping
n jumping 366.3
adj happy 95.16
ascending 193.14
jumping 366.7
leap year
moment 824.2
anniversary 850.4
learn
understand 521.7
come to know 551.14
get 570.6
master 570.9
come to one's knowledge 928.14
discover 941.2
learn by heart 989.17
learned
educated 570.16
studentlike 572.12
wise 920.17
erudite 928.21
learner
student 572.1
beginner 818.2
learning
intellectual acquirement 570.1
enlightenment 928.4
discovery 941.1
lease
n possession 469.1
rental 615.6
v inhabit 225.7
rent 615.15
rent out 615.16
leasehold
n possession 469.1
adj freehold 471.10
leaseholder 470.4
lease-lend
rent out 615.16
lend 620.5
leash
n shackle 428.4
three 876.1
v bind 428.10
join 800.9
least
n minority 885.3
adj humble 137.10
smallest 250.8
minority 885.7
leather
n fur 4.2
hide 4.3
toughness 1049.2
v punish 604.15
leatherneck 183.4
leave
n vacation 20.3
leave-taking 188.4
absence 222.4
consent 441.1
permission 443.1
game 750.2
v depart 188.6
leave over 256.6
bereave 307.28
vegetate 310.34
leave undone 340.7
abandon 370.5
permit 443.9
resign 448.2
bequeath 478.18
separate 802.8
interj go away! 909.31
leave alone
let alone 329.4
not interfere 430.16
give permission 443.12
be conservative 853.6
leave behind
overtake 174.13
outdistance 249.10
leave 256.6
bereave 307.28
abandon 370.5
leaved
green 44.4
leafy 310.41
leaven
n bread 10.28
leavening 298.4
transformer 852.5
v pervade 221.7
raise 298.7
imbue 797.11
qualify 959.3
leavening
n bread 10.28
fermentation 298.4
adj raising 298.17
leave no stone unturned
prosecute to a conclusion 360.5
make every effort 403.15
take precautions 494.6
be thorough 794.8
ransack 938.33
leave of absence
vacation 20.3
absence 222.4
leave off
v give up 370.7
break the habit 374.3
cease to use 390.4
cease 857.6
interj cease! 857.13
leave one cold
not be affected by 94.5
fall flat 117.4
bore 118.7
leave out 773.4
leave-taking 188.4
leave undone
leave 340.7
slight 340.8
neglect 408.2
leave word
communicate 343.7
inform 551.8
leaving
n departure 188.1
absence 222.4
abandonment 370.1
adj departing 188.18
leaving out off 255.14
excluding 773.10
leaving-out 773.1
leavings
remainder 256.1
refuse 391.4
extract 893.3
lecher
philanderer 562.12
reprobate 660.4
satyr 665.11
lechery
philandering 562.10
lasciviousness 665.5
lectern pulpit 703.13
table 901.15
lection 341.2
lector lecturer 571.7
holy orders 699.4
lecture
n reproof 510.5
prelection 543.3
lesson 568.7
v reprove 510.17
prelect 543.11
expound 568.16
lecturer
praelector 543.5
academic rank 571.3
lector 571.7
lecturing
n public speaking 543.1
adj educational 568.18
ledge
horizontal 201.3
border 211.4
layer 296.1
shelf 901.14
ledger
record book 549.11
account book 628.4
bill 871.5
lee
n lee side 218.2
protection 1008.1
adj side 218.6
leech
n doctor 90.4
parasite 138.5
sail 180.14
bloodsucker 311.38
extortionist 480.12
adhesive 803.4
v bleed 91.27
leeching 91.20
leer
n look 27.3
scornful laugh 508.4
signal 517.15
v scrutinize 27.14
signal 517.22
leering
n ridicule 508.1
adj ridiculing 508.12
leery wary 494.9
doubting 955.9
incredulous 956.4
lees dregs 256.2
refuse 391.4
extract 893.3
leeward
n lee side 218.2
adj side 218.6
adv clockwise 161.24
to leeward 182.68
downwind 218.9
leeway room 158.3
way 182.9
drift 184.28
interval 224.1
distance 261.1
latitude 430.4
left
n left side 220.1
liberalism 611.3
liberal 611.11
adj departed 188.19
left-hand 220.4
remaining 256.7
abandoned 370.8
adv leftward 220.6
left-handed
insulting 156.8
oblique 204.13
sinistromanual 220.5
bungling 414.20
left-hander
southpaw 220.3
baseball team 745.2
leftist
n liberal 611.11
adj liberal 611.19
left-out 773.7
leftover
n surplus 993.5
adj remaining 256.7
surplus 993.18
leftward
clockwise 161.24
to the left 220.6
left wing left side 220.1
liberalism 611.3
left-wing left 220.4
liberal 611.19
left-winger
left side 220.1
liberal 611.11
lefty
n left-hander 220.3
baseball team 745.2
adj left-handed 220.5
leg
n body part 2.7
fowl part 10.23
limb 177.14
voyage 182.6
shank 273.6
member 793.4
v walk 177.27
legacy bequest 478.10
inheritance 479.2
effect 887.1
legal
permissible 443.15
recorded 549.17
just 649.8
legitimate 673.11
valid 973.14
legal age 303.2
legal counselor 597.1
legalistic formal 580.7
jurisprudent 673.12
conformist 867.6

legality
  permissibility 443.8
  justice 649.1
  lawfulness 673.1
  legitimacy 673.1
legalization
  authorization 443.3
  legitimation 673.2
legalize
  authorize 443.11
  legitimize 673.9
legal system
  judiciary 594.2
  law 673.4
legal tender 728.1
legate delegate 576.2
  diplomat 576.6
legatee 479.4
legation
  foreign office 576.7
  commission 615.1
  office 739.7
legato
  n music 708.25
  execution 708.30
  note 709.14
  adj music 708.53
legend map 159.5
  posthumous fame 662.7
  mythology 678.14
  history 719.1
  tradition 842.2
  caption 937.2
legendary
  fabricated 354.29
  distinguished 662.16
  mythic 678.15
  historical 719.7
  fictional 722.7
  traditional 842.12
  extraordinary 870.14
  fictitious 986.21
legible 521.12
legion
  military unit 461.22
  throng 770.4
  multitude 884.3
legionary 461.6
legislate
  make laws 613.10
  legalize 673.9
legislation
  lawmaking 613.5
  legalization 673.2
  law 673.3
legislative
  legislatorial 613.11
  legal 673.11
legislator
  public official 575.17
  lawmaker 610.3
legislature
  council 423.1
  legislative body 613.1
  legislation 613.5
legit
  n show business 704.1
  adj legal 673.11
legitimacy
  authority 417.1
  permissibility 443.8
  justifiability 600.7
  legality 673.1
  genuineness 973.7
legitimate
  v authorize 443.11
  legalize 673.9
  adj permissible 443.15
  justifiable 600.14
  legal 673.11
  dramatic 704.33
  logical 935.20
  valid 973.14
  genuine 973.15
leg man 555.4
legume plant 310.4
  seed vessel 310.30
legwork 938.4
lei 310.25
leisure
  n idleness 331.2
  ease 402.1
  pause 857.3
  adj idle 331.18
  leisured 402.5
leisure class 331.11
leisured
  idle 331.18
  leisure 402.5
leitmotiv 708.24
lemon
  n sour 67.2
  failure 410.2
  adj yellow 43.4
lend loan 620.5
  discount 728.27
lend a hand 449.11
lend an ear 48.10
lender 620.3
lending loaning 620.1
  money market 728.16
lend-lease
  n rental 615.6
  lending 620.1
  v rent out 615.16
  lend 620.5
length size 257.1
  distance 261.1
  longness 267.1
  extent 300.3
lengthen increase 251.4
  prolong 267.6
  protract 827.9
  sustain 856.4
lengthened
  prolonged 267.8
  protracted 827.11
lengthening
  n prolongation 267.4
  protraction 827.2
  continuance 856.1
  adj increasing 251.8
lengthy long 267.7
  giant 272.16
  wordy 538.12
leniency patience 134.1
  considerateness 143.3
  pity 145.1
  unstrictness 426.2
  mercifulness 427
  lenientness 427.1
  modulation 670.2
  tolerance 979.4
  softness 1047.1
lenient patient 134.9
  considerate 143.16
  pitying 145.7
  unstrict 426.5
  mild 427.7
  permissive 443.14
  tolerant 979.11
lenitive
  n palliative 86.10
  moderator 670.3
  ointment 1056.3
  adj palliative 86.40
  relieving 120.9
  moderating 670.16
  qualifying 959.7
  lubricant 1056.10
lens eye 2.9
  glass 29.2
Lent fast day 515.3
  penance 658.3
Lenten
  fasting 515.5
  abstinent 668.10
  meager 992.10
lentil 310.4
lento 708.54
leonine 311.43
leopard
  variegation 47.6
  wild cat 311.22
leper 586.4
leprechaun 678.8
lesbian
  n homosexual 75.14
  mannish female 76.9
  adj homosexual 75.30
lesion sore 85.37
  trauma 85.38
  pain 96.5
less
  adj inferior 250.6
  reduced 252.10
  fewer 885.6
  adv decreasingly 252.12
  prep off 255.14
  without 992.17
lessee lodger 227.8
  tenant 470.4
lessen relieve 120.5
  decrease 252.6
  reduce 252.7
  subtract 255.9
  extenuate 600.12
  moderate 670.6
lessening
  n relief 120.1
  decrease 252.1
  deterioration 393.3
  modulation 670.2
  adj decreasing 252.11
  mitigating 670.14
lesser inferior 250.6
  reduced 252.10
lesson warning 399.1
  reproof 510.5
  teaching 568.7
lest 897.7
let
  n rental 615.6
  game 748.2
  hindrance 1012.1
  v draw off 192.12
  permit 443.9
  rent 615.15
  rent out 615.16
  suppose 951.10
  adj employed 615.20
let alone
  v leave undone 340.7
  avoid 368.6
  not use 390.5
  abstain 668.7
  adv additionally 253.11
  prep with 253.12
  excluding 773.10
let be let alone 329.4
  leave undone 340.7
  not interfere 430.16
  be conservative 853.6
  suppose 951.10
letdown
  disappointment 132.1
  humiliation 137.2
  slowing 175.4
  collapse 410.3
  modulation 670.2
let down
  v rest 20.7
  disappoint 132.2
  slow 175.9
  deceive 356.14
  deteriorate 393.16
  betray 645.14
  relax 670.9
  depress 913.4
  adj discontented 108.7
  disappointed 132.5
let drop betray 351.6
  remark 524.24
  drop 913.7
let fly throw 904.10
  shoot 904.12
let go condone 148.4
  let pass 329.5
  neglect 340.6
  leave undone 340.7
  cease to use 390.4
  exempt 430.14
  let oneself go 430.19
  release 431.5
  relinquish 475.4
  acquit 601.4
  make merry 743.24
  disband 771.8
  loosen 804.3
  throw 904.10
  dismiss 909.19
  let out 909.24
lethal deadly 308.23
  harmful 1000.12
lethality
  deadliness 308.9
  harmfulness 1000.5
lethargic sleepy 22.21
  apathetic 94.13
  languid 331.20
lethargy
  sleepiness 22.1
  stupor 22.6
  apathy 94.4

languor 331.6
stupidity 922.3
let in receive 187.10
welcome 585.7
let in on divulge 351.5
tip 551.11
disillusion 977.2
let it all hang out
lighten 120.7
confess 351.7
let oneself go 430.19
let it go
v forget 148.5
dismiss 984.4
phrs no matter 998.25
let loose
let oneself go 430.19
release 431.5
loose 431.6
make merry 743.24
throw 904.10
let off
v exempt 430.14
release 431.5
acquit 601.4
rent out 615.16
explode 671.14
shoot 904.12
adj exempt 430.30
let on confess 351.7
sham 354.21
let one's hair down
lighten 120.7
divulge 351.5
let oneself go 430.19
chat 541.10
not stand on ceremony 581.2
make merry 743.24
let one have it
attack 459.15
disapprove 510.18
punish 604.11
let out
draw off 192.12
lengthen 267.6
disclose 351.4
divulge 351.5
release 431.5
say 524.22
rent out 615.16
dismiss 909.19
give vent to 909.24
let pass accept 134.7
let go 329.5
be inattentive 984.2
let slip let go 329.5
neglect 340.6
betray 351.6
lose 473.4
dismiss 984.4
letter
n representation 349.1
symbol 546.1
written character 547.9
writing 547.10
type 548.6
message 552.4
epistle 553.2
v initial 546.6
adj epistolary 553.14
letter carrier
carrier 176.7
postman 353.5
lettered literal 546.8
learned 928.21
letterer 547.13
letterhead label 517.13
address 553.9
lettering
initialing 546.5
writing 547.1
handwriting style 547.4
letter of credit
credit instrument 622.3
negotiable instrument 728.11
letter of the law 673.1
letter-perfect 973.15
letterpress
printing 548.1
print 548.3
printed matter 548.10
letters
writing system 546.3
literary work 547.12
record 549.1
literature 718.1
scholarship 928.5
letter writer 553.8
letter writing 553.1
letting go 475.1
letup slowing 175.4
decrease 252.1
modulation 670.2
interruption 813.2
interim 826.1
pause 857.3
let-up 175.9
let up
v relax 20.7
decrease 252.6
ease up 670.9
loosen 804.3
pause 857.9
interj cease! 857.13
let well enough alone
be content 107.5
be inattentive 984.2
leukocyte 2.25
levant
flee 368.10
not pay 625.6
Levant 231.6
levanter
north wind 318.9
defaulter 625.5
levee
social gathering 582.10
assembly 770.2
barrier 1012.5
level
n floor 197.23
horizontal 201.3
plain 236.1
degree 245.1
smoothness 287.3
layer 296.1
class 607.1
classification 809.2
v flatten 201.6
smooth 287.5
raze 395.19
make uniform 781.4
equalize 790.6
fell 913.5
adj horizontal 201.7
straight 277.6
smooth 287.10
just 649.8
uniform 781.5
equal 790.7
adv horizontally 201.9
level at 459.22
level head
equanimity 106.3
sensibleness 920.6
levelheaded
composed 106.13
equable 670.13
sensible 920.18
level off
land 184.43
make uniform 781.4
equalize 790.6
lever
n instrument 384.4
leverage 906.4
lifter 912.3
v get a purchase 906.8
leverage
trading 737.19
influence 894.1
fulcrumage 906.1
mechanics 1039.1
leviathan ship 180.1
behemoth 257.14
Leviathan 311.30
levitate
ascend 193.8
rise 298.9
elevate 912.5
levitation
ascent 193.1
lightness 298.1
psychic phenomena 689.6
levity
lightheartedness 109.3
merriment 109.5
lightness 298.1
fickleness 364.3
waggishness 489.4
ridicule 508.1
inattention 984.1
triviality 998.3
levy
n demand 421.1
call to arms 458.8
recruit 461.18
attachment 480.5
enlistment 615.7
tax 630.9
v demand 421.5
call to arms 458.19
attach 480.20
enlist 615.17
charge 630.12
impose 643.4
lewd lascivious 665.29
obscene 666.9
lex 673.3
lexeme sign 518.6
word 526.1
lexicographer
interpreter 341.7
linguist 523.15
lexicography
exegetics 341.8
lexicology 526.14
lexicologist 523.15
lexicology
semantics 518.7
lexicography 526.14
lexicon
vocabulary 526.13
reference book 554.9
dictionary 871.4
lexigraphic
lexical 526.19
literal 546.8
lexis 526.13
liabilities
expenses 626.3
accounts 628.1
liability debt 623.1
responsibility 641.2
tendency 896.1
indebtedness 897.2
likelihood 897.1
susceptibility 897.2
probability 968.1
disadvantage 996.2
exposure 1006.3
liable chargeable 623.9
responsible 641.17
likely 897.5
probable 968.6
exposed 1006.15
liable to
adj subject to 897.6
prep inclined to 896.6
liaison love affair 104.6
intermediary 213.4
instrument 384.4
relation 775.1
joining 800.1
liar 357.9
libation drink 8.4
alcohol 88.7
oblation 696.7
libel
n monstrous lie 354.12
slander 512.3
declaration 598.7
v slander 512.11
liberal
n left side 220.1
free agent 430.12
left-winger 611.11
liberalist 979.6
adj left 220.4
nonrestrictive 430.25
philanthropic 478.22
free 485.4
hospitable 585.11
liberalistic 611.19
magnanimous 652.6
extensive 864.13
liberal-minded 979.9
plentiful 991.7
liberalism
noninterference 430.9
libertarianism 430.10
progressivism 611.3

  liberalness 979.2
Liberalism 609.25
liberality
  giving 478.1
  gratuity 478.5
  generosity 485.1
  liberalness 485.1
  hospitality 585.1
  magnanimity 652.2
  liberalness 979.2
  plenty 991.2
liberalize 430.13
liberate
  rescue 398.3
  liberalize 430.13
  free 431.4
  detach 802.10
  disembarrass 1014.9
liberated free 430.21
  freed 431.10
liberation escape 369.1
  rescue 398.1
  liberalism 430.10
  freeing 431.1
  theft 482.1
liberator 592.2
libertarian
  n free agent 430.12
  liberal 979.6
  adj nonrestrictive 430.25
  liberal 979.9
libertine
  n free agent 430.12
  philanderer 562.12
  swinger 665.10
  adj nonrestrictive 430.25
libertinism
  liberalism 430.10
  profligacy 665.3
liberty vacation 20.3
  freedom 430.1
  exemption 430.8
  permission 443.1
  grant 443.5
  privilege 642.2
  opportunity 843.2
libidinal
  sexual 75.25
  desirous 100.21
  instinctive 934.6
libidinous lustful 75.27
  desirous 100.21
  lascivious 665.29
libido sexuality 75.2
  psyche 92.28
  desire 100.1
  love 104.1
  amorousness 104.3
  instinct 934.2
librarian
  recorder 550.1
  professional librarian 558.3
  steward 574.4
library stacks 197.6
  storehouse 386.6
  preserve 397.7
  edition 554.5
  book depository 558.1
  collection 770.11
  retreat 1009.5
libration 916.1
librettist
  dramatist 704.22
  composer 710.20
  poet 720.11
libretto playbook 704.21
  score 708.28
license
  n lawlessness 418.1
  freedom 430.1
  exemption 430.8
  permission 443.1
  permit 443.6
  commission 615.1
  presumption 640.2
  privilege 642.2
  profligacy 665.3
  confusion 810.2
  v authorize 443.11
  commission 615.10
licensed exempt 430.30
  authorized 443.17
licentious lawless 418.5
  unrestrained 430.24
  presumptuous 640.11
  profligate 665.25
  dissipated 669.8
lichen 310.4
licit permissible 443.15
  legal 673.11
lick
  n sip 62.2
  touch 73.1
  velocity 172.4
  hint 248.4
  attempt 403.3
  impromptu 708.27
  work 725.4
  blow 902.5
  v lap up 8.30
  taste 62.7
  touch 73.9
  best 249.7
  defeat 412.9
  punish 604.15
  stump 971.14
licked defeated 412.15
  beaten 971.26
lickerish lustful 75.27
  desirous 100.21
  lascivious 665.29
lickety-split 174.17
licking eating 8.1
  defeat 412.1
  punishment 604.5
lid body part 2.9
  headdress 5.25
  eye 27.9
  stopper 293.4
  cover 295.5
lido 234.2
lie
  n navigation 159.3
  direction 161.1
  falsehood 354.11
  round 751.3
  v extend 158.9
  be located 159.10
  ride at anchor 182.16
  lie down 201.5
  be present 221.6
  tell a lie 354.19
  be dishonest 645.11
lie detector 92.8
lie down rest 20.6
  lie 201.5
  couch 913.11
lief 324.9
liege
  n subject 432.7
  master 575.1
  retainer 577.1
  adj subject 432.13
lie in give birth 1.3
  be located 159.10
  sail for 182.35
  exist in 761.11
lie in state 309.21
lie in wait 346.9
lie low squat 274.5
  do nothing 329.2
  hide 346.8
  beware 494.7
  be latent 519.3
lien mortgage 438.4
  general lien 438.5
  possession 469.1
lie on weigh on 297.11
  rest on 901.22
  depend 959.6
  go hard with 1011.8
lieu location 159.1
  place 159.4
lieutenant
  subordinate 432.5
  commissioned officer 575.18
  Navy officer 575.20
  deputy 576.1
  assistant 616.6
  policeman 1008.15
life
  n animation 17.4
  energizer 17.6
  eagerness 101.1
  gaiety 109.4
  vitality 306.1
  living 306.1
  person 312.5
  liveliness 330.2
  history 719.1
  existence 761.1
  something 763.3
  lifetime 827.5
  affairs 831.4
  v meet one's Maker 307.21
Life 677.6
life after death
  the hereafter 681.2
  destiny 839.2
life-and-death 997.23
lifeblood blood 2.25
  life force 306.3
lifeboat
  means of escape 369.3
  life preserver 397.6
  rescuer 398.2
life cycle 306.3
life expectancy 306.6
life force
  animation 17.4
  soul 306.3
  inner nature 767.5
life-giving
  reproductive 78.15
  animating 306.14
lifeguard rescuer 398.2
  guardian 1008.6
life insurance 624.6
lifeless dull 117.6
  inert 173.14
  dead 307.30
  languid 331.20
  lackluster 1027.17
  inanimate 1055.5
lifelike
  descriptive 349.14
  similar 784.16
  genuine 973.15
lifeline
  means of escape 369.3
  life preserver 397.6
  safeguard 1008.3
lifelong 827.13
the life of Riley 1010.1
life of the party
  energizer 17.6
  mischief-maker 322.3
  humorist 489.12
  sociable person 582.16
life preserver
  float 180.11
  life jacket 397.6
  safeguard 1008.3
lifer 429.11
lifesaver
  preserver 397.5
  rescuer 398.2
  guardian 1008.6
lifesaving 398.1
life savings 728.14
life science 1068.3
life size 257.3
life-size 257.16
life-style behavior 321.1
  preference 371.5
  custom 373.1
  mode 765.4
  specialty 866.1
life-threatening
  disease-causing 85.53
  deadly 308.23
  disastrous 1011.15
lifetime
  n life 306.1
  existence 827.5
  adj lifelong 827.13
lifework vocation 724.6
  cause 886.9
lift
  n excitement 105.3
  people mover 176.5
  ride 177.7
  lift ratio 184.26
  wave 238.14
  height 272.2
  atmosphere 317.2
  improvement 392.1
  assist 449.2
  skiing 753.1
  boost and hike 912.2
  lifter 912.3
  elevator 912.4
  the heavens 1072.2

v elate 109.8
transport 176.12
billow 238.22
imitate 336.5
make better 392.9
rob 482.16
pay in full 624.13
elevate 912.5
lifter thief 483.1
erector 912.3
fire iron 1020.12
lift-off 1074.9
lift up erect 200.9
inaugurate 818.11
elevate 912.5
focus on 937.3
call attention to 983.10
lift weights 84.4
ligament 271.2
ligature
cord 271.2
type 548.6
notation 709.12
fastening 800.3
light
n aspect 33.3
swiftness 174.6
window 292.7
dawn 314.3
explanation 341.4
information 551.1
wave 916.4
outlook 978.2
lighter 1021.4
illumination 1025.1
radiant energy 1025.1
measurement of light 1025.21
light source 1026.1
transparent substance 1029.2
v land 184.43
get down 194.7
ignite 1020.22
grow light 1025.27
illuminate 1025.28
strike a light 1025.29
adj frail 16.14
soft-colored 35.22
whitish 37.8
lighthearted 109.12
thin 270.16
shallow 276.5
unheavy 298.10
gentle 298.12
airy 317.12
fickle 364.6
agile 413.23
phonetic 524.30
wanton 665.26
comic 704.35
superficial 922.20
trivial 998.19
easy 1014.13
lightish 1025.31
light bulb 1026.1
lighten
disburden 120.7
make light 298.6
moderate 670.6
grow light 1025.27
illuminate 1025.28
lightened
bleached 36.8
eased 298.11
illuminated 1025.39
lightening
n decoloration 36.3
disburdening 120.3
easing 298.3
modulation 670.2
adj easing 298.16
illuminating 1025.40
lighter
n light 1021.4
v haul 176.13
lightface 548.20
light fingers 482.12
light-footed fast 174.15
agile 413.23
lightheaded weak 16.12
delirious 926.31
dizzy 985.15
light heart 109.3
light holder 1026.6
lighthouse
observation post 27.8
tower 272.6
alarm 400.1
marker 517.10
lighting
n ignition 1020.4
illumination 1025.19
adj inflammatory 1020.27
illuminating 1025.40
light into
lift one's hand against 457.14
attack 459.15
punish 604.11
set to work 725.15
lightless 1027.13
light meter
exposure 714.9
measurement of light 1025.21
lightness frailty 16.2
color quality 35.6
paleness 36.2
whiteness 37.1
lightheartedness 109.3
thinness 270.4
lack of weight 298
levity 298.1
fickleness 364.3
agility 413.2
wantonness 665.4
superficiality 922.7
triviality 998.3
luminousness 1025.3
lightning
swiftness 174.6
flash of lightning 1025.17
lightning rod 1008.3
light opera 708.34
light out 188.10
lights lungs 2.22
instruments 704.18
opinion 953.6
light show
spectacle 33.7
iridescence 47.2
flicker 1025.8
lightsome
lighthearted 109.12
light 1025.31
light source
light 1025.1
illuminant 1025.20
source of light 1026.1
light touch touch 73.1
lightness 298.1
light up excite 105.12
cheer up 109.9
ignite 1020.22
illuminate 1025.28
light upon
arrive at 186.7
alight upon 194.10
meet 223.11
come across 941.3
lightweight
n weakling 16.6
inferior 250.2
runt 258.4
weight 297.3
stupid person 924.2
a nobody 998.7
adj frail 16.14
bantamweight 298.13
uninfluential 895.3
light-year 1072.3
lignitic 1021.9
likable
tasty 63.8
pleasant 97.6
desirable 100.30
endearing 104.25
like
n love 104.1
likeness 784.3
equal 790.4
v savor 63.5
enjoy 95.13
desire 100.14
love 104.19
adj approximate 775.8
identical 778.7
similar 784.10
equal 790.7
adv how 384.9
similarly 784.18
prep in imitation of 336.12
like a bat out of hell 174.18
like a bump on a log
adj passive 329.6
adv inertly 173.20
like a fish out of water 160.11
like a thief in the night
unexpectedly 131.14
surreptitiously 345.18
deceitfully 356.24
dishonestly 645.24
like clockwork
smoothly 287.13
uniformly 781.8
methodically 807.9
regularly 850.9
easily 1014.16
likelihood
liability 897.1
possibility 966.1
probability 968.1
good chance 972.8
likely
adj apt 788.10
liable 897.5
possible 966.6
probable 968.6
disposed 978.8
expedient 995.5
comely 1016.19
adv probably 968.8
likely story 600.4
likely to
adj liable to 897.6
prep inclined to 896.6
like mad swiftly 174.18
excessively 247.23
recklessly 493.11
violently 671.25
like-minded
unanimous 332.15
in accord 455.3
agreeing 788.9
liken 943.4
likeness
aspect 33.3
image 349.5
picture 712.11
similarity 784.1
like 784.3
copy 785.1
equality 790.1
likewise
adv additionally 253.11
identically 778.9
similarly 784.18
interj yeah 332.19
liking desire 100.2
love 104.1
will 323.1
tendency 896.1
Lilliputian
n dwarf 258.5
adj dwarf 258.13
lilt
n air 708.4
song 708.14
rhythm 709.22
meter 720.7
v exude cheerfulness 109.6
rejoice 116.5
speak 524.25
sing 708.38
lily whiteness 37.2
effeminate male 77.11
lily-livered
weak 16.12
cowardly 491.10
limb member 2.7
leg 177.14
border 211.4
branch 310.20
body part 793.4
lever 906.4
limber
v soften 1047.6
adj weak 16.12
pliant 1047.9
limber up
prepare oneself 405.13
soften 1047.6
limbo
place of confinement 429.7
hell 682.1

lime
n whiteness 37.2
sour 67.2
snare 356.13
v trap 356.20
hamper 1012.11
limelight
publicity 352.4
lights 704.18
limen
sensibility 24.2
boundary 211.3
limit
n the last straw 135.3
summit 198.2
environment 209.1
limitation 210.2
bounds 211.1
boundary 211.3
capacity 257.2
end 794.5
extremity 820.2
v restrict 210.5
bound 211.8
narrow 270.11
restrain 428.9
specialize 866.4
qualify 959.3
adj bordering 211.11
limitation
limiting 210.2
boundary 211.3
narrowness 270.1
restriction 428.3
estate 471.4
qualification 959.1
condition 959.2
limited
n train 179.14
adj circumscribed 210.7
local 231.9
little 258.10
narrow 270.14
restricted 428.15
restrained 670.11
specialized 866.5
qualified 959.10
meager 992.10
limiting
n circumscription 210.1
limitation 210.2
differentiation 780.4
qualification 959.1
adj restricting 210.9
bordering 211.11
enclosing 212.11
restrictive 428.12
environmental 766.8
final 820.11
qualifying 959.7
limitless greedy 100.27
unrestricted 430.27
almighty 677.17
infinite 823.3
limn outline 211.9
represent 349.8
describe 349.9
portray 712.19
limner 716.2
limousine 179.13
limp
n slow motion 175.2
gait 177.12
v be weak 16.8
go slow 175.6
way of walking 177.28
adj weak 16.12
drooping 202.10
flaccid 1047.10
limpet 803.4
limpid clear 521.11
elegant 533.6
transparent 1029.4
limping slow 175.10
crippled 393.30
line
n direction 161.1
ships 180.10
boundary 211.3
vanguard 216.2
strip 267.3
cord 271.2
wire line 347.17
policy 381.4
route 383.1
railway 383.7
manner 384.1
battlefield 463.2
score 517.6
track 517.8
letter 553.2
race 559.4
lineage 560.4
endearment 562.5
policy 609.4
air 708.4
part 708.22
staff 708.29
treatment 712.9
engraving 713.2
poetry 720.9
plot 722.4
vocation 724.6
merchandise 735.1
baseball 745.1
sideline 746.1
linemen746.2
line of scrimmage 746.3
hockey team 749.2
kind 809.3
series 812.2
procession 812.3
sequence 815.1
sequel 835.2
specialty 866.1
trend 896.2
v fill 196.7
border 211.10
plaster 295.25
outline 381.11
mark 517.19
engrave 713.9
dispose 808.9
align 812.5
lineage race 559.4
line 560.4
offspring 561.1
series 812.2
sequence 815.1
sequel 835.2
lineal straight 277.6
racial 559.7
family 560.18
consecutive 812.9
subsequent 835.4
lineaments aspect 33.3
looks 33.4
exterior 206.2
outline 211.2
face 216.4
appearance 262.3
linear straight 277.6
consecutive 812.9
linebacker 746.2
lineman
trainman 178.13
telephone man 347.10
soccer team 752.2
electrician 1032.22
linemen 746.2
linen clothing 5.1
shirt 5.15
underclothes 5.22
blanket 295.10
liner ocean liner 180.5
lining 196.3
game 745.3
lines looks 33.4
outline 211.2
camp 228.29
manner 384.1
role 704.10
playbook 704.21
style 712.8
lineup plan 381.1
game 746.3
order 807.1
roll 871.6
schedule 965.3
line up
make parallel 203.5
order 807.4
dispose 808.9
align 812.5
get in line 812.6
schedule 965.6
linger lag 166.4
dawdle 175.8
dally 331.14
linger on 827.7
wait 846.12
continue 856.3
lingerer
slowpoke 175.5
idler 331.8
lingerie 5.22
lingering
n dawdling 175.3
idling 331.4
protraction 827.2
waiting 846.3
adj reverberating 54.12
dawdling 175.11
protracted 827.11
dilatory 846.17
lingo language 523.1
jargon 523.9
lingua franca 523.11
lingual glossal 62.10
linguistic 523.19
speech 524.29
linguist
linguistic scientist 523.15
polyglot 523.16
linguistic
communicational 343.9
lingual 523.19
speech 524.29
linguistics 518.7
liniment 86.11
lining liner 196.3
bookbinding 554.14
engraving 713.2
link
n intermediary 213.4
relation 775.1
joint 800.4
torch 1026.3
v way of walking 177.28
come together 770.16
relate 775.6
put together 800.5
join 800.11
be consistent 803.7
combine 805.3
league 805.4
continue 812.4
linkage relation 775.1
joining 800.1
combination 805.1
linked related 775.9
joined 800.13
leagued 805.6
continuous 812.8
linking
n relation 775.1
joining 800.1
fastening 800.3
combination 805.1
adj grammatical 530.17
relative 775.7
joining 800.16
linotype 548.15
lint down 3.19
dressing 86.33
powder 1051.5
lintel 189.6
lion
symbol of strength 15.8
wild cat 311.22
brave person 492.8
heraldry 647.2
celebrity 662.9
important person 997.9
lionhearted 492.17
lionize
praise 509.12
glorify 662.13
sightsee 918.6
lion's share 257.11
lip
n back talk 142.4
border 211.4
bulge 283.3
lawyer 597.3
wind instrument 711.6
golf 751.1
v sass 142.8
say 524.22
blow a horn 708.42
lipid fat 7.7
oil 1056.1

lip reader 49.2
lips genitals 2.13
  mouth 292.4
  vocal organ 524.18
lip service
  hypocrisy 354.6
  mouth honor 693.2
lipstick
  n makeup 1016.12
  v make red 41.4
liquefaction
  melting 1020.3
  liquidity 1061.1
  fluidification 1064
  liquefying 1064.1
liquefied
  molten 1020.31
  melted 1064.6
liquefy melt 1020.21
  liquidize 1064.5
liquefying
  n melting 1020.3
  liquefaction 1064.1
  adj liquefactive 1064.7
liqueur 88.15
liquid
  n beverage 10.49
  speech sound 524.12
  fluid 1061.2
  adj phonetic 524.30
  convertible 728.31
  fluid 1061.4
  watery 1065.16
liquid air 1024.7
liquid assets
  assets 471.7
  cash 728.18
liquidate excise 255.10
  kill 308.13
  murder 308.16
  exterminate 395.14
  depose 447.4
  pay in full 624.13
  cash 728.29
  sell 737.24
  annihilate 762.7
  eliminate 773.5
  do away with 909.21
liquidated paid 624.22
  excluded 773.7
liquidation
  homicide 308.2
  extinction 395.6
  deposal 447.2
  payment 624.1
  trading 737.19
  elimination 773.2
liquidator payer 624.9
  treasurer 729.12
liquid fuel 1075.9
liquid oxygen
  coolant 1024.7
  rocket propulsion 1074.8
liquor
  n beverage 10.49
  sedative 86.12
  spirits 88.13
  fluid 1061.2
  v drink 88.25
lisp
  n sibilation 57.1
  speech defect 525.1
  v sibilate 57.2
  speak poorly 525.7
lisping
  n speech defect 525.1
  adj inarticulate 525.12
lissome 1047.9
list
  n stripe 47.5
  contents 196.1
  inclination 204.2
  border 211.4
  edging 211.7
  enclosed place 212.3
  record 549.1
  itemization 871.1
  enumeration 871.1
  v careen 182.43
  tumble 194.8
  incline 204.10
  border 211.10
  record 549.15
  enlist 615.17
  classify 809.6
  enumerate 871.8
  cultivate 1069.17
  interj hark! 48.16
listen
  v hark 48.10
  hearken to 983.7
  interj hark! 48.16
  attention! 983.22
listener hearer 48.5
  recipient 479.3
listen in listen 48.10
  telephone 347.19
  tune in 1034.27
listening
  n hearing 48.1
  audition 48.2
  adj attentive 48.14
listen to listen 48.10
  obey 326.2
listing
  n registration 549.14
  list 871.1
  index 871.7
  cultivation 1069.13
  adj inclining 204.15
  unbalanced 791.5
listless weak 16.12
  apathetic 94.13
  unconcerned 102.7
  weary 118.11
  languid 331.20
  incurious 982.3
list price 630.1
lit drunk 88.33
  illuminated 1025.39
litany 696.4
literacy 928.5
literal lettered 546.8
  orthodox 687.7
  genuine 973.15
  unimaginative 987.5
literal meaning 518.1
literary
  written 547.24
  belletristic 718.7
  book-learned 928.22
literary critic
  author 547.15
  critic 718.4
  judge 946.7
literate
  n intellectual 929.1
  adj learned 928.21
literature
  advertising matter 352.8
  writing 547.10
  written word 547.12
  letters 718.1
  lore 928.9
lithe 1047.9
lithic 1059.11
lithograph
  n print 713.5
  v engrave 713.9
lithographer 716.8
lithography
  coloring 35.11
  printing 548.1
  planography 713.3
litigant
  n oppositionist 452.3
  litigator 598.11
  adj litigious 598.21
litigate sue 598.13
  legalize 673.9
litigation
  contention 457.1
  lawsuit 598.1
  argumentation 935.4
litigator 598.11
litigious
  contentious 110.26
  partisan 456.17
  litigant 598.21
  argumentative 935.19
litter
  n fledgling 302.10
  bier 309.13
  rubbish 391.5
  offspring 561.2
  jumble 810.3
  multitude 884.3
  sofa 901.19
  bedding 901.20
  v give birth 1.3
  disarrange 811.2
  tend 1070.7
littérateur
  writer 547.15
  author 718.4
  scholar 929.3
litterbug 810.7
littering 1.1
little
  n modicum 248.2
  short time 828.3
  adj insignificant 248.6
  inadequate 250.7
  small 258.10
  short 268.8
  ungenerous 651.6
  base 661.12
  narrow-minded 980.10
  insignificant 998.17
  adv scarcely 248.9
  small 258.16
a little
  n short distance 223.2
  adv by degrees 245.6
  to a degree 245.7
  scarcely 248.9
little by little
  gradually 175.14
  by degrees 245.6
  piece by piece 793.9
little fellow child 302.3
  common man 606.5
little known 661.14
little-minded 980.10
the little people 678.7
littoral
  n shore 234.2
  ocean zone 240.5
  adj aquatic 182.58
  bordering 211.11
  coastal 234.7
liturgic
  ceremonious 580.8
  ritualistic 701.19
liturgy ceremony 580.4
  divine service 696.8
  rite 701.3
the Liturgy 701.8
live
  v inhabit 225.7
  be alive 306.9
  be somebody 662.10
  exist 761.8
  endure 827.6
  adj living 306.13
  active 330.17
  burning 1019.27
  charged 1032.34
live and learn 570.10
live and let live
  let alone 329.4
  not interfere 430.16
  keep an open mind 979.7
live by one's wits
  cheat 356.18
  play a deep game 415.9
  be dishonest 645.11
lived-in 121.11
live down 658.4
live forever 829.6
live-in
  interior 207.6
  resident 225.13
live it up
  enjoy oneself 95.14
  have a party 582.21
  amuse oneself 743.22
livelihood 449.3
liveliness
  animation 17.4
  zest 68.2
  passion 93.2
  eagerness 101.1
  gaiety 109.4
  life 306.1
  lively activity 330.2
  spirit 544.4
  elasticity 1048.1
lively
  adj energetic 17.13
  zestful 68.7
  fervent 93.18

  eager 101.8
  gay 109.14
  fast 174.15
  active 330.17
  spirited 544.12
  interesting 983.19
  elastic 1048.7
  adv actively 330.25
liven energize 17.10
  cheer 109.7
live off 138.12
live on feed on 8.28
  continue to exist 761.9
  endure 827.6
  postexist 839.7
live or die
  adv without fail 970.26
  phrs come what may 359.20
liver viscera 2.16
  organ 2.17
  digestion 7.8
  food 10.20
livery wardrobe 5.2
  uniform 5.7
  insignia 647.1
livestock 311.1
live through
  win through 409.13
  endure 827.6
live up to observe 434.2
  execute 437.9
live wire
  man of action 330.8
  charge 1032.5
live with endure 134.5
  keep an open mind 979.7
livid colorless 36.7
  black and blue 38.12
  gray 39.4
  blue 45.3
  purple 46.3
  angry 152.28
  deathly 307.29
living
  n habitation 225.1
  life 306.1
  support 449.3
  benefice 698.9
  adj energetic 17.13
  resident 225.13
  organic 305.17
  alive 306.13
  existent 761.13
  lifelike 784.16
  burning 1019.27
living being
  organism 305.2
  animal 311.2
living quarters
  housing 225.3
  quarters 228.4
living room 197.5
lizard 311.25
llama 176.8
llano plain 236.1
  grassland 310.8
load
  n affliction 96.8
  freight 176.6
  lading 196.2
  quantity 247.3
  burden 297.7
  charge 462.16
  portion 477.5
  wealth 618.3
  tax 643.3
  full measure 794.3
  impediment 1012.6
  v lade 159.15
  fill 196.7
  burden 297.13
  tamper with 354.17
  prime 405.9
  fill 794.7
  shoot 904.12
  go hard with 1011.8
  computerize 1042.21
loaded drunk 88.33
  weighted 297.18
  prepared 405.16
  wealthy 618.15
  fraught 794.12
  critical 843.10
loader 183.9
loading
  placement 159.6
  burden 297.7
  imposition 643.1
loaf
  n lump 257.10
  Eucharist 701.7
  v idle 331.12
loafer vagabond 178.3
  idler 331.8
  beggar 440.8
loafing 331.4
loamy earthy 234.5
  pasty 1047.12
loan
  n the lend 620.2
  v lend 620.5
loaner 620.3
loaning 620.1
loan shark 620.3
loan-shark 620.5
loan-sharking
  lending 620.1
  illicit business 732.1
loathe dislike 99.3
  hate 103.5
loathing
  n hostility 99.2
  hate 103.1
  adj hating 103.7
loathsome
  offensive 98.18
  terrible 1000.9
  hideous 1015.11
lob
  n throw 904.3
  v play tennis 748.3
  throw 904.10
  elevate 912.5
lobar 202.12
lobby
  n vestibule 197.19
  bungler 414.8
  legislative lobby 609.32
  influence 894.6
  v urge 375.14
  exercise influence 894.9
lobbying
  inducement 375.3
  political influence 609.29
  backstairs influence 894.3
lobbyist lobby 609.32
  influence 894.6
lobe ear 2.10
  pendant 202.4
  member 793.4
lobo 311.20
lobster
  n marine animal 311.30
  cheater 759.22
  v row 182.53
local
  n bar 88.20
  train 179.14
  native 227.3
  branch 617.10
  labor union 727.2
  adj localized 231.9
  idiomatic 523.22
local color milieu 209.3
  plot 722.4
locale location 159.1
  area 209.2
  arena 463.1
  setting 704.19
  plot 722.4
localism dialect 523.7
  barbarism 526.6
  policy 609.4
locality location 159.1
  habitat 228.18
localize locate 159.11
  restrict 428.9
local yokel 227.3
locate situate 159.11
  settle 159.17
  discover 941.2
locating
  placement 159.6
  discovery 941.1
location place 159.1
  situation 159.1
  placement 159.6
  setting 704.19
  motion-picture studio 706.4
  state 765.1
  discovery 941.1
  farm 1069.8
loch lake 241.1
  inlet 242.1
Loch Ness monster 311.30
lock
  n tress 3.5
  standstill 173.3
  floodgate 239.11
  bolt 428.5
  wrestling 474.3
  poker 759.10
  sure thing 970.2
  v close 293.6
  agree 788.6
  hook 800.8
  obstruct 1012.12
locker storehouse 386.6
  treasury 729.13
  cold storage 1024.6
locket 498.6
lock horns
  quarrel 456.12
  contend with 457.17
  counteract 900.6
  argue 935.16
lock in imprison 429.14
  retain 474.5
  make sure 970.11
lockjaw 85.6
lockout exclusion 773.1
  stop 857.2
lock out close 293.6
  strike 727.10
  exclude 773.4
lockup
  confinement 429.1
  prison 429.8
lock up enclose 212.5
  close 293.6
  secrete 346.7
  imprison 429.14
loco
  n disease 85.41
  adj crazy 926.27
locomotion
  mobility 172.3
  travel 177.1
locomotive
  traveling 177.36
  vehicular 179.23
  mechanical 1039.7
  self-propelled 1041.23
locus 159.1
locust 311.36
locution
  language 523.1
  utterance 524.2
  word 526.1
  phrase 529.1
  diction 532.1
lode
  source of supply 386.4
  rich source 618.4
  deposit 1058.7
lodestar focus 208.4
  motive 375.1
  guiding star 574.8
  stars 1072.4
lodestone desire 100.11
  magnet 907.3
lodge
  n house 228.5
  cottage 228.8
  lair 228.26
  branch 617.10
  v deposit 159.14
  inhabit 225.7
  house 225.10
  accommodate 385.10
  store 386.10
  fix 855.9
  repair 855.10
lodger roomer 227.8
  tenant 470.4
lodging
  n habitation 225.1
  housing 225.3
  abode 228.1
  quarters 228.4
  adj resident 225.13
loess deposit 176.9

dregs 256.2
loft
n library 197.6
attic 197.16
workplace 739.1
v play 751.4
elevate 912.5
lofty elevated 136.11
arrogant 141.9
eminent 247.9
high 272.14
ostentatious 501.18
eloquent 544.14
grandiloquent 545.8
impartial 649.10
magnanimous 652.6
renowned 662.18
raised 912.9
log
n speedometer 174.7
record book 549.11
accounts book 628.4
chronicle 832.9
firewood 1021.3
wood 1054.3
v ship activity 182.48
record 549.15
keep accounts 628.8
logarithmic 1017.23
log cabin 228.8
loge 704.15
logger 1069.7
loggia 197.18
logging
registration 549.14
forestry 1069.3
logic
analytic reasoning 935.2
reasonableness 935.9
logical sensible 920.18
cognitive 931.21
reasonable 935.20
valid 973.14
logic-chopping
n quibbling 936.5
adj quibbling 936.14
logician 935.11
login 1042.18
logistics 385.1
logjam delay 846.2
barrier 1012.5
logo patent 210.3
symbol 517.2
label 517.13
insignia 647.1
logogram
representation 349.1
wordplay 489.8
symbol 517.2
phonetic symbol 546.2
logomachy
quarrel 456.5
contention 457.1
argumentation 935.4
logomania 540.2
logorrhea
wordiness 538.2
logomania 540.2
logotype patent 210.3
symbol 517.2
label 517.13
type 548.6
log out 1042.21
logroller
wire-puller 609.30
politics 610.6
logrolling
political influence 609.29
legislative procedure 613.6
trading 863.2
logy inert 173.14
languid 331.20
loin 217.3
loincloth 5.19
loins 886.7
loiter lag 166.4
dawdle 175.8
dally 331.14
wait 846.12
trifle 998.14
loiterer slowpoke 175.5
idler 331.8
loitering
n dawdling 175.3
idling 331.4
trifling 998.8
adj dawdling 175.11
dilatory 846.17
Loki evil 680.5
nether world deity 682.5
loll
n recumbency 201.2
v rest 20.6
lie 201.5
lollapaloosa 999.7
lolling
n idling 331.4
adj recumbent 201.8
lollygag dawdle 175.8
dally 331.14
make love 562.15
lollygagging
n love affair 104.6
dawdling 175.3
lovemaking 562.2
adj dawdling 175.11
lone solitary 584.11
one 872.7
alone 872.8
sole 872.9
loneliness
solitude 584.3
aloneness 872.2
lonely solitary 584.11
alone 872.8
lonely hearts club 563.12
loner recluse 584.5
self-seeker 651.3
oddity 870.4
lonesomeness
solitude 584.3
aloneness 872.2
lone wolf
self-seeker 651.3
oddity 870.4
long
n bull 737.13
long time 827.4
adj lengthy 267.7
giant 272.16
wordy 538.12
protracted 827.11
adv for a long time 827.14
long ago for a long time 827.14
long since 837.16
longanimity
patience 134.1
forgiveness 148.1
submission 433.1
long distance
telephone operator 347.9
telephone call 347.13
long-distance 261.8
long-established
confirmed 373.18
traditional 842.12
established 855.13
longevity haleness 83.3
old age 303.5
life 306.1
durability 827.1
longhair 842.8
longhand 547.22
long haul 261.2
longing
n yearning 100.5
adj wistful 100.23
longitude map 159.5
zone 231.3
length 267.1
coordinates 300.5
orbit 1072.16
long-lasting 827.10
long-lived living 306.13
durable 827.10
long-lost gone 34.4
absent 222.11
lost 473.7
long range 261.2
long-range 261.8
long shot
motion picture 714.8
bet 759.3
gambling odds 759.6
chance event 972.6
small chance 972.9
longsighted
poor-sighted 28.11
sagacious 920.16
foreseeing 961.7
long since
for a long time 827.14
long ago 837.16
since 837.17
long-standing
durable 827.10
traditional 842.12
long-suffering
n patience 134.1
forgiveness 148.1
submission 433.1
tolerance 979.4
adj patient 134.9
forgiving 148.6
submissive 433.12
tolerant 979.11
long suit
talent 413.4
specialty 866.1
long-term 827.10
long time length 267.1
long while 827.4
long way 261.2
long-winded
tedious 118.9
lengthened 267.8
wordy 538.12
protracted 827.11
long word
hard word 526.10
high-sounding words 545.3
loo 12.10
looby vulgarian 497.6
peasant 606.6
fool 924.3
look
n sight 27.3
aspect 33.3
looks 33.4
hint 248.4
information 551.4
v peer 27.13
gaze 27.15
appear to be 33.10
be vigilant 339.8
seek 938.30
heed 983.6
interj attention! 983.22
look after look 27.13
nurture 339.9
serve 577.13
care for 1008.19
look ahead 961.5
look-alikes set 784.5
twins 873.4
look alive
v be vigilant 339.8
pay attention 983.8
interj make haste! 401.16
look around 938.30
look at look 27.13
spectate 918.5
examine 938.24
look back 989.10
look down one's nose
look askance 27.18
shudder at 99.5
give oneself airs 141.8
be hard to please 495.8
look down upon
disdain 157.3
rise above 272.11
looked-for
expected 130.13
future 839.8
looker recipient 479.3
spectator 918.1
beauty 1016.9
look for hope 124.7
look forward to 130.6
solicit 440.14
come 839.6
seek 938.30
look for trouble
defy 454.3
pick a quarrel 456.13
look forward to
reckon on 130.6
come 839.6
foresee 961.5
look in enter 189.7
visit 582.19
looking glass 29.6

looking up
  promising 124.13
  improving 392.15
look like
  appear to be 33.10
  augur 133.12
  resemble 784.7
look on see 27.12
  look 27.13
  attend 221.8
  spectate 918.5
lookout
  observation 27.2
  observation post 27.8
  view 33.6
  vigilance 339.4
  warner 399.4
  occupation 724.1
  watchman 1008.10
look out
  v be vigilant 339.8
  beware 494.7
  pay attention 983.8
  interj careful! 494.14
look over
  scrutinize 27.14
  front on 216.9
  examine 938.24
looks 33.4
look the other way
  be blind 30.8
  let alone 329.4
  keep an open mind 979.7
  be inattentive 984.2
look through 938.30
look-through 938.3
look to
  look forward to 130.6
  avail oneself of 387.14
  prepare for 405.11
  tend 896.3
  attend to 983.5
  care for 1008.19
look up improve 392.7
  seek 938.30
look up to 155.4
loom
  n weaver 740.5
  imminence 840.1
  v appear 33.8
  ascend 193.8
  bulk 247.5
  threaten 514.2
  weave 740.6
  come 839.6
  be imminent 840.2
looming
  n mirage 976.6
  adj ominous 133.17
  imminent 840.3
loon 926.16
loony
  n lunatic 926.16
  adj foolish 923.9
  crazy 926.27
loonybin 926.14
loop
  n spiral loop 184.16
  circle 280.2
  bulge 283.3
  baseball 745.1
  circuit 914.2
  v maneuver 184.40
  encircle 209.7
  curve 279.6
  weave 740.6
loophole
  observation post 27.8
  outlet 190.9
  way out 369.4
loose
  n freedom 430.1
  v set free 431.6
  relax 670.9
  detach 802.10
  loosen 804.3
  facilitate 1014.7
  adj adrift 182.61
  drooping 202.10
  negligent 340.10
  escaped 369.11
  lax 426.4
  free 430.21
  unrestrained 430.24
  ungrammatic 531.4
  discursive 538.13
  informal 581.3
  wanton 665.26
  unfastened 802.22
  slack 804.5
  slovenly 810.15
  illogical 936.11
  vague 971.19
  inaccurate 975.17
  flaccid 1047.10
loose ends
  slipshodness 340.3
  nonaccomplishment 408.1
loosen
  loose 431.6
  relax 670.9
  detach 802.10
  slacken 804.3
  soften 1047.6
loosening
  n laxness 426.1
  modulation 670.2
  adj softening 1047.16
loosen up
  amuse 743.21
  amuse oneself 743.22
loose woman 665.14
loot
  n booty 482.11
  money 728.2
  v seize 480.14
  plunder 482.17
  raze 671.11
looter 483.6
looting
  n rapacity 480.9
  plundering 482.6
  unruliness 671.3
  adj plunderous 482.22
lop
  n wave 238.14
  roughness 288.2
  v hang 202.6
  excise 255.10
  adj drooping 202.10
lope
  n run 174.3
  v speed 174.8
  go on horseback 177.34
lopped 795.5
loppy 202.10
lopsided
  distorted 265.10
  unbalanced 791.5
loquacity 540.1
loran
  ship navigation 182.2
  airplane navigation 184.6
  long-range navigation 1036.3
lord proprietor 470.2
  master 575.1
  nobleman 608.4
Lord 648.2
lord it over 612.16
lordly dignified 136.12
  arrogant 141.11
  imperious 417.16
lordship
  supremacy 249.3
  mastership 417.7
  ownership 469.2
  aristocracy 608.9
Lordship 648.2
lore mythology 678.14
  tradition 842.2
  body of knowledge 928.9
  superstition 954.3
Lorelei 377.4
lorgnette 29.3
lorry 179.12
lose fail 410.9
  lose out 412.12
  incur loss 473.4
  waste 486.4
  forget 990.5
lose face
  bow to 250.5
  incur disgrace 661.7
lose ground
  regress 163.5
  slow 175.9
  fall short 911.2
lose heart
  despond 112.16
  despair 125.10
lose one's head 923.6
lose one's mind
  be stupid 922.12
  go mad 926.21
loser inferior 250.2
  failure 410.2
  disappointment 410.8
  defeatee 412.5
  loss 473.1
  insolvent 625.4
  unfortunate 1011.7
lose sight of
  neglect 340.6
  disregard 435.3
  forget 990.5
lose track of 340.6
lose weight 270.13
losing streak 473.1
loss
  disappearance 34.1
  decrement 252.3
  impairment 393.1
  losing hold of 473
  losing 473.1
  game 746.3
  disadvantage 996.2
loss of memory
  thoughtlessness 933.1
  amnesia 990.2
loss of speech 525.6
lost vanished 34.4
  past hope 125.15
  unwon 412.13
  gone 473.7
  wasted 486.9
  irreclaimable 654.18
  unregenerate 695.18
  bewildered 971.24
  abstracted 985.11
  forgotten 990.8
the lost 680.1
lost cause 125.8
lost in 983.17
lost in thought
  absorbed in thought 931.22
  abstracted 985.11
lost soul 660.4
lot
  n plot 231.4
  amount 244.2
  lots 247.4
  real estate 471.6
  portion 477.5
  motion-picture studio 706.4
  share 738.3
  state 765.1
  bunch 770.7
  kind 809.3
  amount made 893.4
  fate 964.2
  chance 972.1
  v allot 477.9
  gamble 759.23
the lot 792.3
Lothario beau 104.13
  libertine 665.10
lotion toilet water 70.3
  cleanser 79.17
  balm 86.11
  ointment 1056.3
lots lot 247.4
  real estate 471.6
  multitude 884.3
  plenty 991.2
lottery 759.14
lotus-eater idler 331.8
  visionary 986.13
loud
  adj intense 15.22
  garish 35.20
  loud-sounding 53.11
  demanding 421.9
  coarse 497.11
  gaudy 501.20
  adv loudly 53.14
loud and clear
  adj affirmative 334.8
  clear 521.11
  adv affirmatively 334.10
loudmouthed
  loud-voiced 53.12
  vociferous 59.10
loudness
  garishness 35.5

sound 50.1
intensity 53.1
coarseness 497.2
showiness 501.3
lounge
n anteroom 197.20
v rest 20.6
lie 201.5
idle 331.12
lounger 331.8
lounging
n recumbency 201.2
idling 331.4
adj recumbent 201.8
louring 319.8
louse vermin 311.37
bad person 660.5
louse up spoil 393.11
bungle 414.12
complicate 799.3
goof 975.6
make a boner 975.15
hinder 1012.16
lousy infested 910.11
bad 1000.8
lout bungler 414.8
simple soul 416.3
vulgarian 497.6
peasant 606.6
oaf 924.5
loutish
countrified 233.7
bungling 414.20
boorish 497.13
ill-bred 505.6
louver 239.13
lovable
desirable 100.30
endearing 104.25
love
n sexuality 75.2
liking 100.2
affection 104.1
sweetheart 104.10
benevolence 143.4
accord 455.1
regards 504.8
endearment term 562.6
friendship 587.1
cardinal virtues 653.4
game 748.2
heat metaphor 1019.2
v savor 63.5
have deep feelings 93.12
enjoy 95.13
desire 100.14
be fond of 104.19
Love Cupid 104.8
Deity 677.6
love affair 104.6
love child 561.5
loveless unloved 99.10
undesirous 102.8
love letter 562.13
love-life 75.2
lovelock 3.5
lovelorn unloved 99.10
loving 104.27
lovely delightful 97.7
endearing 104.25
beautiful 1016.18
lovemaking
sexuality 75.2
copulation 75.7
love 104.1
dalliance 562.1
love nest 582.9
love potion 75.6
lover desirer 100.12
admirer 104.12
endearment term 562.6
friend 588.1
supporter 616.9
lovesick 104.27
love story 706.2
loving lovesome 104.27
kind 143.13
careful 339.10
almighty 677.17
low
n weather map 317.4
business cycle 731.10
price 738.9
gear 1040.9
v cry 60.2
adj faint 52.16
deep 54.11
dejected 112.22
humble 137.10
insignificant 248.6
inferior 250.6
short 268.8
unelevated 274.7
dying 307.33
base 497.15
disapproving 510.21
phonetic 524.30
inelegant 534.2
populational 606.8
cheap 633.7
wicked 654.16
base 661.12
vulgar 666.8
depressed 913.12
adv faintly 52.21
near the ground 274.9
lowball 759.10
lowborn 606.8
lowbrow
n ignoramus 930.8
adj unlearned 930.14
Low Church 675.11
low class 1005.4
low-class 1005.9
low-cut 6.13
low-down 661.12
the lowdown
inside information 551.2
what's what 973.4
lower
n scowl 110.9
gloom 1027.4
v look sullen 110.15
sadden 112.18
forebode 133.11
show resentment 152.14
threaten 514.2
be imminent 840.2
grow dark 1027.12
lower
v abase 137.5
sink 194.6
reduce 252.7
debase 274.6
deepen 275.8
excavate 284.15
demote 447.3
cheapen 633.6
depress 913.4
adj inferior 250.6
reduced 252.10
debased 274.8
lower case 548.6
lower-case literal 546.8
typographic 548.20
lower class
n inferior 250.2
commoners 606.1
social status 607.7
adj the working class 607.10
lowered humbled 137.13
reduced 252.10
low 274.7
depressed 913.12
lower house 613.1
lower oneself
condescend 137.8
give oneself airs 141.8
incur disgrace 661.7
lowest humble 137.10
bottom 199.7
least 250.8
lower 274.8
reduced 633.9
lowest common denominator
clearness 521.2
average 864.3
lucky charm charm 691.5
low grade 1005.4
low-grade 1005.9
low key reserve 139.3
reticence 344.3
lowland
n the country 233.1
plain 236.1
lowlands 274.3
adj rustic 233.6
lowlife 660.2
lowness faintness 52.1
resonance 54.1
dejection 112.3
insignificance 248.1
inadequacy 250.3
stubbiness 268.2
shortness 274.1
commonness 497.5
baseness 661.3
low opinion 510.1
low-pitched 54.11
low price 633.2
low priority 998.1
low profile
distinctness 31.2
inconspicuousness 32.2
reserve 139.3
reticence 344.3
low-profile 32.6
low-spirited
dejected 112.22
dull 117.6
low-test 1005.9
low tide tide 238.13
low water 274.2
low voice 52.4
lox fish 10.24
coolant 1024.7
rocket propulsion 1074.8
loyal
zealous 101.9
obedient 326.3
firm 359.12
persevering 360.8
observant 434.4
faithful 644.20
loyalist 609.27
loyal opposition 609.24
loyalty
zeal 101.2
obedience 326.1
firmness 359.2
perseverance 360.1
duty 641.1
fidelity 644.7
lozenge pill 86.7
heraldry 647.2
luau
source of supply 386.4
rich source 618.4
plenty 991.2
lubber
mariner 183.2
idler 331.8
bungler 414.8
oaf 924.5
lubricant
n smoother 287.4
lubricator 1056.2
adj lubricating 1056.10
lubricate smooth 287.5
facilitate 1014.7
oil 1056.8
lubricated drunk 88.33
slippery 287.12
lubricating
n facilitation 1014.5
lubrication 1056.6
adj lubricant 1056.10
lubrication 1056.6
lubricious
slippery 287.12
lascivious 665.29
lubritorium 1056.7
lucid clear 521.11
elegant 533.6
sane 925.4
light 1025.31
transparent 1029.4
translucent 1030.5
lucidity
distinctness 31.2
clearness 521.2
elegance 533.1
extrasensory perception 689.8
sanity 925.1
lightness 1025.3
transparency 1029.1
translucence 1030.2
lucifer 1021.5
Lucifer 1072.4
luck gamble 759.2
uncertainty 971.1
chance 972.1

good fortune 1010.2
Luck 972.2
lucky
auspicious 133.18
speculative 759.27
timely 843.9
chance 972.15
fortunate 1010.14
lucky break 1010.3
lucky piece 691.5
lucrative
gainful 472.16
paying 624.21
lucre gain 472.3
wealth 618.1
money 728.1
lucubration
writing 547.10
treatise 556.1
study 570.3
consideration 931.2
ludicrous
humorous 488.4
absurd 923.11
lug
n body part 2.10
ear 48.7
v transport 176.12
pull 905.4
luggage
freight 176.6
container 195.1
impedimenta 471.3
lugubrious
sorrowful 112.26
pessimistic 125.16
lukewarm
unfeeling 94.9
indifferent 102.6
nonreligious 695.15
warm 1019.24
lull
n respite 20.2
silence 51.1
calm 173.5
inactivity 331.1
interruption 813.2
interim 826.1
pause 857.3
v relieve 120.5
quiet 173.8
calm 670.7
lullaby 22.10
lulling
n relief 120.1
modulation 670.2
adj tranquilizing 670.15
lulu 999.7
lumbago 85.9
lumbar region 217.3
lumber
n rubbish 391.5
gambler 759.21
impediment 1012.6
wood 1054.3
v plod 175.7
way of walking 177.28
bungle 414.11
hamper 1012.11
lumbering
n forestry 1069.3
adj slow 175.10
bulky 257.19
bungling 414.20
stiff 534.3
lumberjack 1069.7
lumberyard 386.6
lumen 1025.21
luminary
n celebrity 662.9
chief 997.10
first-rater 999.6
light source 1026.1
adj photic 1025.41
luminesce 1025.26
luminescence 1025.13
luminescent 1025.38
luminous clear 521.11
almighty 677.17
luminant 1025.30
illuminated 1025.39
lummox bungler 414.9
oaf 924.5
lump
n clump 257.10
bulge 283.3
swelling 283.4
bungler 414.9
print 517.7
accumulation 770.9
piece 793.3
solid 1045.6
v thicken 1045.10
lumpen
n the underprivileged 606.4
adj countrified 233.7
idle 331.18
base 661.12
slovenly 810.15
lumpish
countrified 233.7
bulky 257.19
formless 263.4
onerous 297.17
languid 331.20
bungling 414.20
boorish 497.13
stupid 922.15
thickened 1045.14
lump sum 728.13
lump together
assemble 770.18
put together 800.5
combine 805.3
lumpy bulky 257.19
formless 263.4
gnarled 288.8
nappy 294.7
thickened 1045.14
Luna 1072.12
lunacy
foolishness 923.1
insanity 926.1
lunar
crescent-shaped 279.11
celestial 1072.25
lunar eclipse
eclipse 1027.8
moon 1072.11
lunar module 1075.2
lunatic
n fool 924.1
madman 926.15
adj insane 926.26
lunatic fringe
radical 611.12
fanatic 926.18
lunch
n meal 8.6
v dine 8.21
adj eccentric 927.6
lunch counter 8.17
luncheon 8.6
lunchroom 8.17
lung
n viscera 2.16
adj respiratory 2.32
lunge
n thrust 459.3
v way of walking 177.28
lunkhead 924.4
lunkheaded 922.17
lupine
canine 311.42
rapacious 480.26
lurch
n gait 177.12
bias 204.3
swing 916.6
flounder 917.8
v way of walking 177.28
pitch 182.55
tumble 194.8
oscillate 916.10
flounder 917.15
lurching
irregular 851.3
swinging 916.17
lure
n snare 356.13
incentive 375.7
charm 377.3
attractor 907.2
v trap 356.20
induce 375.22
allure 377.5
attract 907.4
lurid garish 35.20
colorless 36.7
brown 40.3
red 41.6
sensational 105.32
deathly 307.29
gaudy 501.20
grandiloquent 545.8
obscene 666.9
lurk couch 346.9
be latent 519.3
lurking
in hiding 346.14
latent 519.5
imminent 840.3
luscious tasty 63.8
oversweet 66.5
delectable 97.10
lush
n drunk 88.12
v drink 88.25
adj tasty 63.8
luxuriant 310.43
ornate 545.11
productive 890.9
lust
n sexual desire 75.5
craving 100.6
greed 100.8
will 323.1
lasciviousness 665.5
v lust after 75.20
desire 100.14
crave 100.18
luster
n polish 287.2
illustriousness 662.6
moment 824.2
gorgeousness 1016.6
shine 1025.2
chandelier 1026.6
v polish 287.7
shine 1025.23
lusterless colorless 36.7
lackluster 1027.17
lustful prurient 75.27
desirous 100.21
lascivious 665.29
lustful leer 27.3
lustral cleansing 79.28
atoning 658.7
lustrous
illustrious 662.19
luminous 1025.30
shiny 1025.33
lusty strong 15.15
energetic 17.13
hale 83.12
corpulent 257.18
Lutheran 675.28
lux 1025.21
luxate dislocate 160.5
disjoint 802.16
luxuriant
flourishing 310.43
ornate 498.12
grandiloquent 545.11
productive 890.9
plentiful 991.7
luxuriate
vegetate 310.34
superabound 993.8
luxuriate in
enjoy 95.13
indulge 669.4
luxurious
delightful 97.7
comfortable 121.11
ornate 498.12
grandiose 501.21
wealthy 618.14
expensive 632.11
sensual 663.5
luxury pleasure 95.1
delightfulness 97.2
grandeur 501.5
sensuality 663.1
superfluity 993.4
prosperity 1010.1
lyceum hall 197.4
secondary school 567.4
lying
n recumbency 201.2
lowness 274.1
untruthfulness 354.8
adj recumbent 201.8

untruthful 354.34
lying-in 1.1
lymph 2.24
lymphatic
n duct 2.23
adj circulatory 2.33
secretory 13.7
languid 331.20
lynch kill 308.13
hang 604.18
lynching killing 308.1
capital punishment 604.7
lynch law 418.2
lynx
sharp vision 27.11
wild cat 311.22
lyre 711.3
lyric melodious 708.48
vocal 708.50
poetic 720.15
lyricist
composer 710.20
poet 720.11
lyric theater 708.34
lysis 395.1
ma 560.12
ma'am 77.9
Mab 678.8
macabre
terrible 127.30
deathly 307.29
weird 988.9
macadam
ground covering 199.3
pavement 383.6
macaroni
noodles 10.33
dandy 500.9
mace scepter 417.9
insignia 647.1
macerate
torture 96.18
shrink 260.9
pulp 1063.5
soak 1065.13
Mach 174.2
Machiavellian
n deceiver 357.1
schemer 381.7
Machiavel 415.8
politics 610.6
adj falsehearted 354.31
scheming 381.13
cunning 415.12
machinate plot 381.9
maneuver 415.10
machination
chicanery 356.4
intrigue 381.5
manipulation 415.4
machinator
traitor 357.10
schemer 381.7
strategist 415.7
politics 610.6
machine
n automobile 179.9
political party 609.24
association 617.1
instrument of conversion 858.10
machinery 1040.3
computer 1042.2
v process 892.9
tool 1040.13
machine gun 847.5
machine-made 892.18
machinery
instrumentality 384.3
equipment 385.4
instrument 1040.1
machine 1040.3
mechanism 1040.4
machine shop 739.3
machine tool 1040.6
machinist stage technician 704.24
mechanic 1040.12
machismo
male sex 76.2
courage 492.1
macho
virile 76.13
courageous 492.17
macro 257.20
macrobiotic 827.10
macrocosm 1072.1
macroeconomics 731.7
macronutrient 7.11
maculate
v variegate 47.7
spot 1004.5
adj spotted 47.13
unvirtuous 654.12
unchaste 665.23
spotted 1004.9
mad
n anger 152.5
v madden 926.24
adj frenzied 105.25
angry 152.30
reckless 493.8
turbulent 671.18
foolish 923.8
insane 926.26
rabid 926.30
mad about
enthusiastic 101.11
crazy about 104.31
madam woman 77.9
mistress 575.2
Mrs 648.4
procurer 665.18
madcap
n humorist 489.12
daredevil 493.4
adj foolhardy 493.9
madden excite 105.12
enrage 152.25
antagonize 589.7
dement 926.24
maddening 105.30
madder 41.4
mad dog ruffian 593.3
violent person 671.9
made formative 262.9
successful 409.14
produced 892.17
man-made 892.18
mademoiselle
woman 77.9
girl 302.6
made of 796.4
made-up
fabricated 354.29
invented 892.19
beautified 1016.23
mad for 100.22
madhouse 926.14
madman 926.15
madness fury 105.8
foolishness 923.1
insanity 926.1
Madonna 679.5
madrigal 708.18
maelstrom eddy 238.12
bustle 330.4
whirl 915.2
agitation 917.1
maestro
teacher 571.1
musician 710.1
Mae West 397.6
maffick be noisy 53.9
celebrate 487.2
create disorder 810.11
Mafia
the underworld 660.10
illicit business 732.1
Mafioso
violent person 671.9
racketeer 732.4
magazine
storehouse 386.6
armory 462.2
periodical 555.1
magenta 46.3
maggot
whiteness 37.2
larva 302.12
insect 311.33
caprice 364.1
quirk 927.2
figment of the imagination 986.5
maggoty
nasty 64.7
filthy 80.23
capricious 364.5
blighted 393.42
eccentric 927.5
fanciful 986.20
Magi 921.5
magic
n illustriousness 662.6
sorcery 690.1
illusoriness 976.2
v summon 420.11
adj illustrious 662.19
sorcerous 690.14
magical
illustrious 662.19
sorcerous 690.14
miraculous 870.16
magic carpet 691.6
magician
trickster 357.2
master 413.13
mage 690.6
entertainer 707.1
illusoriness 976.2
magic lantern 714.12
magic show 976.2
magic wand 691.6
magisterial
dignified 136.12
lordly 141.11
chief 249.14
skillful 413.22
imperious 417.16
jurisdictional 594.6
authoritative 970.18
magistracy
region 231.5
mastership 417.7
magistrature 594.3
magistrate
arbitrator 466.4
executive 574.3
public official 575.17
judge 596.1
Magna Charta 430.2
magna cum laude 646.11
magnanimity
ambition 100.10
forgiveness 148.1
glory 247.2
liberality 485.1
magnanimousness 652.2
tolerance 979.4
magnanimous
forgiving 148.6
eminent 247.9
liberal 485.4
great-souled 652.6
tolerant 979.11
magnate
nobleman 608.4
businessman 730.1
personage 997.8
magnet
n desire 100.11
focus 208.4
artificial magnet 907.3
v attract 907.4
magnetic
influential 894.13
attracting 907.5
engrossing 983.20
electromagnetic 1032.31
magnetic field
electric field 1032.3
magnetic force 1032.9
magnetic force 1032.9
magnetic pole
magnet 907.3
polarity 1032.8
magnetic storage 549.1
magnetic tape
recording media 549.10
disk 1042.6
magnetism
desirability 100.13
allurement 377.1
influence 894.1
attraction 907.1
electrical science 1032
magnetic attraction 1032.7
magnetize
put to sleep 22.20
exercise influence 894.9
attract 907.4
electromagnetize 1032.27

magnification
aggravation 119.1
intensification 251.2
expansion 259.1
exaggeration 355.1
praise 509.5
glorification 662.8
adoration 696.2
magnificence
grandeur 501.5
superexcellence 999.2
magnificent
eminent 247.9
grandiose 501.21
superb 999.15
magnified
aggravated 119.4
increased 251.7
exaggerated 355.4
eminent 662.18
magnify
aggravate 119.2
intensify 251.5
enlarge 259.4
exaggerate 355.3
praise 509.12
glorify 662.13
adore 696.12
magnitude
quantity 244.1
greatness 247.1
size 257.1
star 1072.8
magnum opus 413.1
magpie chatterer 540.4
collector 770.15
magus 690.6
maharani
sovereign queen 575.11
princess 608.8
mahatma
master 413.13
holy man 659.6
occultist 689.11
wise man 921.1
mahogany
n smoothness 287.3
adj reddish-brown 40.4
maid
n girl 302.6
single woman 565.4
maidservant 577.8
v serve 577.13
maiden
n girl 302.6
single woman 565.4
execution 605.5
jockey 757.2
adj childish 301.11
unmarried 565.7
first 818.17
new 841.7
maidenhead
membrane 2.6
childhood 301.2
celibacy 565.1
continence 664.3
maiden lady 565.4
maiden name 527.5
maiden speech 818.5
mail
n plumage 3.18
shell 295.15
armor 460.3
post 553.4
v send 176.15
post 553.12
mailbox 553.6
mail carrier 353.5
mail coach 353.6
maillot 5.29
mailman
postman 353.5
postal service 553.7
mail-order 553.14
mail-order house 736.1
maim disable 19.9
injure 393.13
cripple 393.14
tear apart 802.14
maiming
emasculation 19.5
impairment 393.1
main
n continent 235.1
water main 239.7
ocean 240.1
adj great 247.6
chief 249.14
first 818.17
paramount 997.24
main dish 10.7
main idea 932.4
mainland
n continent 235.1
adj continental 235.6
mainlander 235.3
mainline
v use 87.22
adj tending 896.4
main office
headquarters 208.6
office 739.7
main point
summary 557.2
topic 937.1
salient point 997.6
mainspring
motive 375.1
fountainhead 886.6
mainstay
n supporter 616.9
support 901.2
v support 901.21
mainstream
n trend 896.2
adj tending 896.4
main street 230.6
maintain affirm 334.5
provide 385.7
preserve 397.8
insist 421.8
aid 449.12
retain 474.5
defend 600.10
treat 624.19
endure 827.6
sustain 856.4
support 901.21
think 953.11
maintenance
reparation 396.6
preservation 397.1
aid 449.3
retention 474.1
treatment 624.8
durability 827.1
preservation 853.2
continuance 856.1
support 901.1
maintenance man 396.10
maître d'hôtel
waiter 577.7
major-domo 577.10
majestic
dignified 136.12
eminent 247.9
sovereign 417.17
grandiose 501.21
lofty 544.14
almighty 677.17
majesty
proud bearing 136.2
glory 247.2
sovereignty 417.8
grandeur 501.5
loftiness 544.6
potentate 575.8
Majesty 648.2
major
n adult 304.1
study 568.8
commissioned officer 575.18
key 709.15
adj older 842.19
important 997.17
majordomo
steward 574.4
butler 577.10
major in
study to be 570.15
specialize 866.4
majority
n maturity 303.2
race 312.2
major part 792.6
plurality 883.2
adj most 883.9
the majority
dead 307.17
the masses 606.2
majority leader 610.3
major league 745.1
make
n form 262.1
structure 266.1
yield 472.5
receipts 627.1
composition 796.1
kind 809.3
amount made 893.4
disposition 978.3
v use 87.22
travel 177.19
sail for 182.35
arrive 186.6
flow 238.16
act 328.4
do 328.6
perform 328.9
make up 405.7
accomplish 407.4
compel 424.4
execute 437.9
acquire 472.8
compose 796.3
convert 858.11
cause 886.10
produce 892.8
imagine 986.14
make a beeline
go directly 161.10
take a short cut 268.7
be straight 277.4
make a bid
offer 439.6
bid 733.9
make a clean sweep
revolutionize 860.4
evacuate 909.22
make a deal
contract 437.5
compromise 468.2
bargain 731.18
strike a bargain 731.19
make a dent in
impress 93.15
gain influence 894.12
make advances
communicate with 343.8
approach 439.7
cultivate 587.12
exercise influence 894.9
make a face
shudder at 99.5
grimace 265.8
make a Federal case 949.2
make a fool of
fool 356.15
outwit 415.11
stultify 923.7
make a go of it
succeed 409.7
succeed with 409.11
make a killing
score a success 409.9
triumph 411.3
profit 472.12
trade 737.23
make allowance for
extenuate 600.12
allow for 959.5
make amends
compensate 338.4
make restitution 481.5
requite 506.5
repay 624.11
atone 658.4
make an appearance
appear 33.8
arrive 186.6
attend 221.8
be manifest 348.7
make an example of 604.10
make an impression
be heard 48.12
affect emotionally 93.15
impress 931.19
be remembered 989.14
make a point of
resolve 359.7
contend for 457.20

  - make conditional 959.4
- **make a scene** 93.13
- **make a show of**
  - sham 354.21
  - affect 500.12
- **make believe** 354.20
- **make-believe**
  - *n* figment of the imagination 986.5
  - *adj* spurious 354.26
  - fictitious 986.21
- **make clear**
  - explain 341.10
  - manifest 348.5
  - make understandable 521.6
  - facilitate 1014.7
- **make do** 995.4
- **make ends meet**
  - support oneself 385.12
  - economize 635.4
- **make fun of**
  - joke 489.13
  - ridicule 508.8
- **make good**
  - straighten 277.5
  - compensate 338.4
  - remedy 396.13
  - come through 409.10
  - observe 434.2
  - make restitution 481.5
  - grow rich 618.10
  - repay 624.11
  - meet an obligation 641.11
  - keep faith 644.9
  - atone 658.4
  - complete 794.6
  - prove 957.10
  - be prosperous 1010.9
- **make haste**
  - *v* speed 174.8
  - hasten 401.5
  - *interj* make it quick! 401.16
- **make hay while the sun shines**
  - make the most of one's time 330.16
  - improve the occasion 843.8
- **make headway**
  - progress 162.2
  - make way 182.21
  - improve 392.7
  - make good 409.10
  - prosper 1010.7
- **make it**
  - be able 18.11
  - arrive 186.6
  - make good 409.10
  - manage 409.12
  - live on 839.7
  - stand the test 942.10
- **make known**
  - communicate 343.7
  - divulge 351.5
  - make public 352.11
- **make light of**
  - underestimate 950.2
  - be inattentive 984.2
  - attach little importance to 998.12
  - take it easy 1014.12
- **make love**
  - copulate 75.21
  - procreate 78.8
  - bill and coo 562.14
- **make merry**
  - celebrate 487.2
  - revel 743.24
- **make money**
  - profit 472.12
  - grow rich 618.10
- **make no bones about** 359.10
- **make nothing of**
  - not understand 522.11
  - underestimate 950.2
  - attach little importance to 998.12
- **make one's mark**
  - make good 409.10
  - cut a dash 501.13
  - be somebody 662.10
  - be prosperous 1010.9
- **make one's way**
  - work one's way 162.4
  - support oneself 385.12
  - make better 392.9
  - make good 409.10
- **make oneself at home** 121.8
- **make out** see 27.12
  - copulate 75.21
  - support oneself 385.12
  - manage 409.12
  - execute 437.9
  - perceive 521.9
  - write 547.19
  - record 549.15
  - make love 562.15
  - be in a certain state 765.5
  - persist 856.5
  - know 928.12
  - solve 940.2
  - detect 941.5
  - prove 957.10
  - recognize 989.12
  - make shift 995.4
- **make-out artist** 562.12
- **make over**
  - reproduce 78.7
  - transfer 176.10
  - transfer property 629.3
  - convert 858.11
- **make peace**
  - cease hostilities 465.9
  - settle 466.7
  - gain influence 894.12
- **make plain**
  - explain 341.10
  - manifest 348.5
- **make possible**
  - permit 443.9
  - enable 966.5
- **make public** 352.11
- **maker** artist 716.1
  - poet 720.11
  - doer 726.1
  - skilled worker 726.6
  - author 886.4
  - producer 892.7
- **make sense**
  - be understandable 521.4
  - be reasonable 935.17
- **makeshift**
  - *n* improvisation 365.5
  - substitute 862.2
  - expedience 995.2
  - *adj* extemporaneous 365.12
  - unprepared 406.8
  - substitute 862.8
  - expedient 995.7
  - imperfect 1003.4
- **make sure**
  - take precautions 494.6
  - secure 855.8
  - make certain 970.11
  - play safe 1007.3
- **make the best of it**
  - be optimistic 124.9
  - accept 134.7
  - submit 433.6
- **make the grade**
  - be able 18.11
  - manage 409.12
  - suffice 991.4
- **make the most of**
  - take advantage of 387.15
  - excel 999.11
- **make the scene**
  - appear 33.8
  - go to 177.25
  - arrive 186.6
  - make good 409.10
  - participate 476.5
- **make tracks**
  - speed 174.9
  - run off 188.12
  - leave 222.10
  - flee 368.11
- **makeup**
  - form 262.1
  - structure 266.1
  - design 554.12
  - theater 704.17
  - nature 767.4
  - composition 796.1
  - order 807.1
  - disposition 978.3
  - cosmetics 1016.12
- **make up**
  - fabricate 354.18
  - improvise 365.8
  - get up 405.7
  - arrange 437.8
  - shake hands 465.10
  - print 548.16
  - shuffle 758.5
  - assemble 770.18
  - complete 794.6
  - compose 796.3
  - produce 892.8
  - originate 892.12
  - beautify 1016.16
- **makeup artist** 1016.13
- **make up one's mind**
  - resolve 359.7
  - choose 371.16
  - persuade oneself 375.24
  - decide 946.11
  - convince oneself 953.19
- **make up to**
  - curry favor 138.9
  - head for 161.9
  - communicate with 343.8
  - cultivate 587.12
  - repay 624.11
  - exercise influence 894.9
- **make waves**
  - agitate 105.14
  - misbehave 322.4
  - oppose 451.3
  - offer resistance 453.3
  - not conform 868.4
- **make way**
  - *v* gather way 182.21
  - make an opening 292.13
  - *interj* open up! 292.23
- **making**
  - *n* reproduction 78.1
  - forming 262.5
  - structure 266.1
  - acquisition 472.1
  - production 892.1
  - manufacture 892.2
  - amount made 893.4
  - *adj* almighty 677.17
- **makings**
  - gain 472.3
  - component 796.2
- **maladjusted**
  - incompetent 414.19
  - wrong 638.3
  - inappropriate 789.7
- **maladjustment**
  - mental disorder 92.14
  - unskillfulness 414.1
  - wrong 638.1
  - unfitness 789.3
- **maladroit**
  - inadequate 250.7
  - bungling 414.20
- **malady** 85.1
- **malaise**
  - pain 26.1
  - disease 85.1
  - unpleasure 96.1
  - discontent 108.1
  - dejection 112.3
  - anxiety 126.1
  - nervousness 128.1
  - agitation 917.1
- **malapropism**
  - wordplay 489.8
  - solecism 531.2
  - grammatical error 975.7
- **malapropos**
  - inappropriate 789.7
  - untimely 844.6
  - inexpedient 996.5
- **malaria** miasma 1001.4
  - vapor 1067.1
- **malarial** 85.61
- **malarkey** 520.3
- **malcontent**
  - *n* maverick 108.3
  - lamenter 115.8
  - rebel 327.5
  - spoilsport 1012.9
  - *adj* discontented 108.7
- **mal de mer** 85.30
- **male**
  - *n* male being 76.4
  - *adj* masculine 76.12
- **male chauvinism**
  - misanthropy 590.1
  - discrimination 980.4
- **male chauvinist**
  - misanthrope 590.2

bigot 980.5
malediction 513.1
maledictory 513.8
malefactor
evildoer 593.1
wrongdoer 660.8
maleness sex 75.1
masculinity 76.1
maturity 303.2
male organs 2.13
male sex 76.2
malevolence
hate 103.1
inconsiderateness 144.3
ill will 144.4
hostility 589.3
badness 1000.1
malevolent
n evildoer 593.1
adj ill-disposed 144.19
hostile 589.10
harmful 1000.12
bad 1000.7
malevolent influence 1000.4
malfeasance
misbehavior 322.1
misuse 389.1
mismanagement 414.6
wrong 638.1
wrongdoing 655.1
misdeed 655.2
malformation
deformity 265.3
wrong 638.1
oddity 870.3
malformed
deformed 265.12
freakish 870.13
unshapely 1015.8
malfunction
n impairment 393.1
abortion 410.5
wrong 638.1
fault 1003.2
v get out of order 393.25
malice hate 103.1
maliciousness 144.5
hostility 589.3
malicious
maleficent 144.20
hostile 589.10
malign
v defame 512.9
adj poisonous 82.7
malicious 144.20
deadly 308.23
savage 671.21
harmful 1000.12
malignancy
poisonousness 82.3
malice 144.5
deadliness 308.9
harmfulness 1000.5
malignant
poisonous 82.7
anemic 85.61
malicious 144.20
deadly 308.23
hostile 589.10
savage 671.21
harmful 1000.12
malinger
leave undone 340.7
shirk 368.9
malingerer
neglecter 340.5
impostor 357.6
shirker 368.3
malingering
n shirking 368.2
adj evasive 368.15
mall path 383.2
marketplace 736.2
workplace 739.1
malleable docile 433.13
teachable 570.18
changeable 854.6
conformable 867.5
influenceable 894.15
foolable 923.12
handy 1014.15
pliant 1047.9
mallet 715.4
malnutrition 992.6
malocchio gaze 27.5
malevolence 144.4
curse 513.1
spell 691.1
bad influence 1000.4
malodorous nasty 64.7
bad-smelling 69.9
fetid 71.5
filthy 80.23
offensive 98.18
malpractice
misuse 389.1
mismanagement 414.6
wrong 638.1
wrongdoing 655.1
maltreat
mistreat 389.5
work evil 1000.6
maltreatment 389.2
mama 560.12
mama's boy
weakling 16.6
effeminate male 77.11
spoiled child 427.4
mammal 311.3
mammalian
pectoral 283.19
vertebrate 311.41
mammary gland 283.6
mammon wealth 618.1
money 728.1
mammoth
n behemoth 257.14
pachyderm 311.4
adj large 247.7
huge 257.20
mammy
mother 560.12
nurse 1008.8
man
n mankind 76.3
male 76.4
beau 104.13
hanger-on 138.6
adult 304.1
humankind 312.1
person 312.5
husband 563.7
manservant 577.4
follower 616.8
chessman 743.17
v equip 385.8
fortify 460.9
interj goody! 95.21
the Man 312.3
mana power 18.1
the gods 678.1
man-about-town
sophisticate 413.17
dandy 500.9
person of fashion 578.7
sociable person 582.16
manacle
n shackle 428.4
v disable 19.10
bind 428.10
manacled 428.16
manage pilot 182.14
perform 328.9
support oneself 385.12
use 387.10
treat 387.12
accomplish 407.4
contrive 409.12
direct 573.8
govern 612.12
economize 635.4
be in a certain state 765.5
persist 856.5
operate 889.5
make shift 995.4
tend 1070.7
manageability
governability 433.4
workability 889.3
handiness 1014.2
manageable
governable 433.14
cheap 633.7
workable 889.10
handy 1014.15
management
supremacy 249.3
performance 328.2
usage 387.2
utilization 387.8
supervision 573
direction 573.1
executive 574.3
directorate 574.11
the authorities 575.15
government 612.1
thrift 635.1
operation 889.1
protectorship 1008.2
manager director 574.1
governor 575.6
businessman 730.1
baseball team 745.2
boxer 754.2
operator 889.4
managerial
directing 573.12
operational 889.12
mañana
n the future 839.1
adv in the future 839.9
man and wife 563.9
manchild 302.5
mandarin
n snob 141.7
official 575.16
wise man 921.1
intellectual 929.1
adj studious 570.17
mandate
n country 232.1
authority 417.1
injunction 420.2
possession 469.1
referendum 613.8
commission 615.1
v command 420.8
mandated 420.12
mandatory
n country 232.1
adj preceptive 419.4
mandated 420.12
obligatory 424.11
required 641.15
doctrinal 953.27
necessary 963.12
mandibles mouth 292.4
clutches 474.4
mandrake 22.10
mane 3.2
man-eater eater 8.16
marine animal 311.30
savage 593.5
manège riding 177.6
animal husbandry 1070.1
maneuver
n exercise 84.2
act 328.3
stratagem 415.3
operation 458.5
race 753.3
process 889.2
expedient 995.2
v execute a maneuver 182.46
take action 328.5
plot 381.9
manipulate 415.10
direct 573.8
operate 889.5
maneuverable
workable 889.10
handy 1014.15
maneuvering
intrigue 381.5
machination 415.4
man Friday
employee 577.3
right-hand man 616.7
mange 85.41
manger 197.2
mangle press 287.6
tear apart 802.14
mangled
impaired 393.27
mutilated 795.5
manhandle
exert strength 15.12
remove 176.11
transport 176.12
mistreat 389.5
man-hater hater 103.4
misanthrope 590.2
man-hating
n misanthropy 590.1

adj misanthropic 590.3
manhood
bodily development 14.1
masculinity 76.1
mankind 76.3
maturity 303.2
courage 492.1
man-hour work 725.4
moment 824.2
mania craving 100.6
overzealousness 101.3
mental sickness 926.1
insanity 926.1
delirium tremens 926.9
craze 926.12
maniac
n lunatic 926.15
adj frenzied 105.25
rabid 926.30
maniacal
frenzied 105.25
rabid 926.30
manic excited 105.20
insane 926.26
psychotic 926.28
manic-depressive
n psychotic 926.17
adj psychotic 926.28
manic state 105.1
manicure
n beautification 1016.11
v groom 79.20
manicurist 1016.13
manifest
n statement 628.3
bill 871.5
v unclose 292.12
show 348.5
disclose 351.4
flaunt 501.17
signify 517.17
evidence 957.8
adj visible 31.6
apparent 348.8
manifestation
visibility 31.1
appearance 33.1
expression 348.1
disclosure 351.1
display 501.4
indication 517.3
evidence 957.1
manifested 348.13
manifesting 348.9
manifesto
n affirmation 334.1
announcement 352.2
statement of belief 953.4
v affirm 334.5
manifold
n transcript 785.4
v copy 785.8
adj multiform 783.3
multiple 883.8
manikin dwarf 258.5
figure 349.6
man in the street 606.5
manipulate touch 73.6
pilot 184.37
tamper with 354.17
use 387.10
exploit 387.16
maneuver 415.10
direct 573.8
operate 889.5
manipulated 354.29
manipulation
touching 73.2
masturbation 75.8
intrigue 381.5
utilization 387.8
machination 415.4
direction 573.1
rigging 737.20
operation 889.1
automation 1041.7
manipulative
scheming 381.13
using 387.19
cunning 415.12
manipulator
strategist 415.7
operator 889.4
influence 894.6
mankind man 76.3
humankind 312.1
manlike
masculine 76.12
anthropoid 312.14
manly masculine 76.12
courageous 492.17
honest 644.13
man-made
spurious 354.26
made 892.18
manna delicacy 10.8
support 449.3
godsend 472.7
benefit 478.7
manned
provided 385.13
armed 460.14
mannequin
figure 349.6
artist's model 786.5
manner aspect 33.3
exteriority 206.1
behavior 321.1
custom 373.1
mode 384
way 384.1
style 532.2
state 765.4
kind 809.3
specialty 866.1
mannered
behavioral 321.7
affected 500.15
elegant 533.9
figurative 536.3
mannerism sham 354.3
affectation 500.1
preciosity 500.2
style 532.2
elegance 533.3
characteristic 865.4
quirk 927.2
manner of speaking
way of saying 524.7
phrase 529.1
style 532.2
figure of speech 536.1
manners
behavior 321.1
custom 373.1
mannerliness 504.3
etiquette 580.3
mannish
homosexual 75.30
masculine 76.12
mannified 76.14
man of action 330.8
man of the house 575.1
man of the world
sophisticate 413.17
person of fashion 578.7
man-of-war 180.6
manor 471.6
manor house 228.5
manorial
residential 228.32
real 471.9
manpower 18.4
manqué 410.18
manse house 228.5
parsonage 703.7
mansion
estate 228.7
astrology 1072.20
manslaughter 308.2
mantel 901.14
mantilla 5.26
mantle
n cover 295.2
scepter 417.9
insignia 647.1
robe 702.2
v cloak 5.40
redden 41.5
change color 105.19
blush 139.8
show resentment 152.14
cover 295.19
foam 320.5
take command 417.14
mantled clothed 5.45
covered 295.31
man-to-man
plain-speaking 535.3
intimate 582.24
familiar 587.19
mantra 696.3
manual
handbook 554.8
textbook 554.10
keyboard 711.17
manual art 712.3
manual labor 725.4
manufacture
n structure 266.1
preparation 405.1
production 892.2
product 893.1
v fabricate 354.18
produce 892.8
manufactured
fabricated 354.29
made 892.18
manufacturer 892.7
manufacturing
n production 892.2
adj productional 892.14
manure
n feces 12.4
fertilizer 890.4
v fertilize 890.8
manure pile 80.10
manuscript
n handwriting 547.3
writing 547.10
copy 548.4
rare book 554.6
adj written 547.22
many much 247.8
different 780.7
diversified 783.4
frequent 847.4
plural 883.7
numerous 884.6
plentiful 991.7
many-sided sided 218.7
versatile 413.25
mixed 797.14
changeable 854.6
Maoism
communism 611.5
revolutionism 860.2
Maoist
n Communist 611.13
revolutionist 860.3
adj Communist 611.21
revolutionist 860.6
map
n chart 159.5
face 216.4
representation 349.1
diagram 381.3
v locate 159.11
represent 349.8
plot 381.10
receive 1036.17
mapmaker
charter 159.5
measurer 300.9
mapped 300.13
mar deform 265.7
spoil 393.10
bungle 414.11
blemish 1004.4
offend 1015.5
marathon 827.11
maraud 482.17
marauder 483.6
marauding
n plundering 482.6
adj plunderous 482.22
marble
n variegation 47.6
smoothness 287.3
sculpture 715.2
toy 743.16
hardness 1046.6
v variegate 47.7
adj white 37.7
hard 1046.10
marbled mottled 47.12
striped 47.15
marbleize 47.7
marbleized 47.15
marblelike
hard 1046.10
stone 1059.11

marcel
n hairdo 3.15
v cut the hair 3.22
march
n progression 162.1
walk 177.10
quick gait 177.13
boundary 211.3
frontier 211.5
sphere 231.2
objection 333.2
martial music 708.12
v mush 177.30
border 211.10
object 333.5
marcher 178.6
marching orders 909.5
march to a different drummer 333.4
Mardi Gras treat 95.3
festival 743.4
mare
female animal 77.10
plain 236.1
horse 311.10
jockey 757.2
margin
n room 158.3
border 211.4
interval 224.1
distance 261.1
latitude 430.4
collateral 438.3
thin margin 738.10
wide margin 780.2
surplus 993.5
v border 211.10
marginal
bordering 211.11
unimportant 998.16
marginalia
addition 254.2
memorandum 549.4
marina 1009.6
marinate 397.9
marination 797.2
marine
n navy man 183.4
navy 461.27
adj nautical 182.57
oceanic 240.9
marine animal 311.30
marine biology 240.7
marine engineering 1043.1
marine park 228.19
mariner traveler 178.1
seaman 183.1
marines
elite troops 461.15
sea soldiers 461.28
marionette figure 349.6
toy 743.16
marital 563.18
maritime
nautical 182.57
oceanic 240.9
mark
n boundary 211.3
degree 245.1
dupe 358.2
objective 380.2
sign 517.1
marking 517.5
marker 517.10
signature 527.10
distinction 662.5
notation 709.12
customer 733.4
game 750.2
cheater 759.22
kind 809.3
characteristic 865.4
impact 887.2
evidence 957.1
importance 997.1
stain 1004.3
v celebrate 487.2
signify 517.17
make a mark 517.19
grammaticize 530.16
letter 546.6
engrave 713.9
hockey 749.7
soccer 752.4
differentiate 780.6
characterize 865.10
specify 865.11
estimate 946.9
evidence 957.8
destine 964.7
heed 983.6
stain 1004.6
Mark 684.2
markdown 633.4
mark down
record 549.15
price 630.11
cheapen 633.6
marked
remarkable 247.10
superior 249.12
designated 517.24
distinguished 662.16
engraved 713.11
characteristic 865.13
destined 964.9
notable 997.19
marker mark 517.10
monument 549.12
recorder 550.1
round 751.3
market
n square 230.8
commerce 731.1
public 733.3
sale 734.1
place of trade 736
mart 736.1
marketplace 736.2
workplace 739.1
v deal in 731.16
shop 733.8
sell 734.8
adj sales 734.13
the market 737.1
marketable 734.14
market index 737.1
marketing
n commerce 731.1
purchase 733.1
selling 734.2
adj sales 734.13
marketplace
square 230.8
arena 463.1
mart 736.2
market research
selling 734.2
canvass 938.14
market value
worth 630.2
price 738.9
marking mark 517.5
insignia 647.1
engraving 713.2
game 749.6
characteristic 865.4
mark my words 983.22
mark off
circumscribe 210.4
measure off 300.11
plot 381.10
allot 477.9
mark 517.19
differentiate 780.6
characterize 865.10
marksman
expert 413.11
infantryman 461.9
shooter 904.8
marksmanship
skill 413.1
sport 744.1
mark time await 130.8
be still 173.7
time 832.11
wait 846.12
marmalade 10.40
maroon
v abandon 370.5
adj red 41.6
marooned
abandoned 370.8
stranded 1013.27
marquee poster 352.7
lights 704.18
marquis 608.4
marred
deformed 265.12
spoiled 393.28
blemished 1004.8
ugly 1015.6
marriage
sexuality 75.2
matrimony 563.1
wedding 563.3
joining 800.1
combination 805.1
marriageable
grown 14.3
adolescent 301.13
adult 303.12
nubile 563.20
marriage broker 563.12
marriage license 443.6
marriage vow 436.3
married
matrimonial 563.18
wedded 563.21
related 775.9
joined 800.13
leagued 805.6
marrow
food 10.20
essential content 196.5
center 208.2
essence 767.2
marry
join in marriage 563.14
get married 563.15
relate 775.6
put together 800.5
combine 805.3
league 805.4
Mars war-god 458.13
planet 1072.9
marsh
receptacle of filth 80.12
swamp 243.1
marshland 243.1
marshal
n commissioned officer 575.18
master of ceremonies 743.20
policeman 1008.15
v prepare 405.6
escort 769.8
put together 800.5
order 807.4
dispose 808.9
adduce 957.12
marshland 243.1
marshy swampy 243.3
moist 1065.15
mart square 230.8
market 736.1
marketplace 736.2
martial 458.21
martial arts 760.3
martial law
militarization 458.10
government 612.4
Martian oddity 870.4
astronaut 1075.8
martinet 575.14
martyr
n sufferer 96.11
angel 679.1
v pain 26.7
torture 96.18
kill 308.13
martyrdom agony 26.6
torment 96.7
killing 308.1
punishment 604.2
martyred pained 26.9
dead 307.30
angelic 679.6
marvel
n wonder 122.1
phenomenon 122.2
v wonder 122.5
marvelous
wonderful 122.10
remarkable 247.10
extraordinary 870.14
superb 999.15
Marxism
communism 611.5
socialism 611.6
materialism 1052.6
Marxist
n Communist 611.13
socialist 611.14

revolutionist 860.3
materialist 1052.7
adj Communist 611.21
revolutionist 860.6
materialist 1052.12
mascara 1016.12
mascot 691.5
masculine
n male 76.4
gender 530.10
adj male 76.12
masculinity sex 75.1
maleness 76
masculineness 76.1
maturity 303.2
mash
n meal 8.6
feed 10.4
infatuation 104.4
pulp 1063.2
v make advances 439.8
soften 1047.6
pulverize 1051.9
pulp 1063.5
masher dandy 500.9
philanderer 562.12
pulverizer 1051.7
pulper 1063.4
mask
n cover 295.2
reticence 344.3
disguise 356.11
pretext 376.1
dance 705.2
relief 715.3
safeguard 1008.3
v cover 295.19
conceal 346.6
falsify 354.16
masked
covered 295.31
disguised 346.13
masochism 75.11
masochist 75.16
mason 716.6
masonry
sculpture 715.1
building material 1054.2
masque cover 356.11
dance 705.2
masquerade
n costume 5.9
impersonation 349.4
sham 354.3
cover 356.11
dance 705.2
v hide 346.8
masquerader 357.7
mass
n amount 244.1
quantity 247.3
size 257.1
lump 257.10
thickness 269.2
weight 297.5
store 386.1
sacred music 708.17
substantiality 763.1
throng 770.4
accumulation 770.9
major part 792.6
conglomeration 803.5
majority 883.2
solid 1045.6
v load 159.15
come together 770.16
assemble 770.18
put together 800.5
cohere 803.6
adj gravitational 297.20
populational 606.8
adv heavily 297.22
Mass
divine service 696.8
Missa 701.8
massacre
n carnage 308.4
unruliness 671.3
v slaughter 308.17
defeat 412.9
massage
n massaging 1044.3
v stroke 73.8
treat 91.24
rub 1044.6
soften 1047.6
mass communications 343.5
masses lot 247.4
inferior 250.2
the masses 606.2
masseuse 1044.4
massive
large 247.7
bulky 257.19
thick 269.8
heavy 297.16
onerous 297.17
sturdy 763.7
dense 1045.12
mass market 734.1
mass murder
killing 308.1
carnage 308.4
mass-produced 892.18
mass production 892.3
mass spectrography 1038.1
mast spar 180.13
tower 272.6
supporter 901.2
master
n ship's officer 183.7
superior 249.4
boy 302.5
victor 411.2
past master 413.13
proprietor 470.2
teacher 571.1
principal 571.8
lord 575.1
chief 575.3
governor 575.6
degree 648.6
work of art 712.10
artist 716.1
skilled worker 726.6
producer 892.7
wise man 921.1
v conquer 412.10
subdue 432.9
understand 521.7
attain mastery of 570.9
dominate 612.15
adj chief 249.14
governing 612.18
paramount 997.24
Master man 76.7
Sir 648.3
mastered
conquered 412.17
subdued 432.15
masterful lordly 141.11
skillful 413.22
imperious 417.16
perfected 1002.9
mastermind
n master 413.13
wise man 921.1
scholar 929.3
v direct 573.8
master of ceremonies
steward 574.4
theater man 704.23
MC 743.20
broadcaster 1034.23
masterpiece
masterwork 413.10
work of art 712.10
product 893.1
pattern of perfection 1002.4
mastership
supremacy 249.3
skill 413.1
masterhood 417.7
directorship 573.4
control 612.2
mastery
supremacy 249.3
preparedness 405.4
victory 411.1
defeat 412.1
skill 413.1
mastership 417.7
learning 570.1
control 612.2
influence 894.1
understanding 928.3
profound knowledge 928.6
masthead
n label 517.13
v punish 604.10
masticate chew 8.27
pulp 1063.5
mastodon
behemoth 257.14
pachyderm 311.4
masturbate 75.22
masturbation
autoeroticism 75.8
vanity 140.1
mat
n head of hair 3.4
border 211.4
partition 213.5
rug 295.9
arena 463.1
lawn bowling 750.3
bedding 901.20
v weave 740.6
dull 1027.10
adj colorless 36.7
lackluster 1027.17
matador killer 308.11
bullfighter 461.4
match
n image 349.5
contest 457.3
marriage 563.1
amusement 743.9
tennis 748.1
game 749.3
hockey 749.6
round 751.3
soccer 752.3
fight 754.3
equal 790.4
two 873.2
matchstick 1021.5
light source 1026.1
v parallel 203.4
parallelize 203.5
contrapose 215.4
size 257.15
give in kind 506.6
join in marriage 563.14
assemble 770.18
be alike 778.4
resemble 784.7
agree 788.6
equal 790.5
coincide 836.4
double 873.5
compare 943.4
be comparable 943.7
matched
married 563.21
joined 800.13
two 873.6
coupled 873.8
matching
n contest 457.3
marriage 563.1
comparison 943.1
adj chromatic 35.16
analogous 784.11
matchless
peerless 249.15
best 999.16
first-rate 999.17
perfect 1002.6
matchmaker 563.12
mate
n ship's officer 183.7
image 349.5
spouse 563.6
companion 588.3
friend 588.4
partner 616.2
accompanier 769.4
likeness 784.3
equal 790.4
v copulate 75.21
get married 563.15
double 873.5
mated
married 563.21
joined 800.13
coupled 873.8
material
n fabric 4.1
material 4.1
essential content 196.5
store 386.1
substance 763.2
matter 1052.2

adj carnal 663.6
secularist 695.16
substantial 763.6
essential 767.9
relevant 775.11
evidential 957.16
important 997.17
vital 997.23
materiate 1052.10
inorganic 1055.4
materialism
carnality 663.2
secularism 695.2
idealism 952.4
physicism 1052.6
materialist
n irreligionist 695.10
physicist 1052.7
adj atomistic 1052.12
materialistic
carnal 663.6
secularist 695.16
occupied 724.15
atomistic 1052.12
materiality
existence 761.1
substantiality 763.1
relevance 775.4
importance 997.1
substance 1052
materialness 1052.1
matter 1052.2
materialize show 31.4
appear 33.8
be formed 262.8
manifest 348.5
come out 348.6
embody 763.5
happen 831.6
establish 892.10
turn up 941.9
corporalize 1052.9
matériel
equipment 385.4
store 386.1
arms 462.1
materials 1054.1
maternal loving 104.27
native 226.5
ancestral 560.17
maternity
blood relationship 559.1
motherhood 560.3
mathematical
exact 973.17
numeric 1017.22
mathematician 1017.16
mathematics
numbers 1017.1
math 1017.1
matinee 582.10
matinee idol
favorite 104.16
actor 707.2
mating copulation 75.7
fertilization 78.3
mating call
animal noise 60.1
endearment 562.5
matins morning 314.1
divine service 696.8
matriarch
mother 560.11
mistress 575.2
back number 842.8
matriarchal 612.17
matriarchy 612.5
matriculate
record 549.15
be taught 570.11
matriculation 549.14
matrilineage 559.1
matrimonial 563.18
matrimonial bureau 563.12
matrimony 563.1
matrix form 262.1
mold 786.6
vital force 886.7
deposit 1058.7
matron woman 77.5
wife 563.8
mistress 575.2
matronly
feminine 77.14
middle-aged 303.14
matte print 714.5
dullness 1027.5
matted hairy 3.24
complex 799.4
disheveled 810.14
matter
n humor 2.24
excrement 12.3
pus 12.6
essential content 196.5
quantity 244.1
motive 375.1
undertaking 404.1
writing 547.10
copy 548.4
occupation 724.1
substance 763.2
particular 766.3
affair 831.3
topic 937.1
material 1052.2
inorganic matter 1055.1
v fester 12.15
be important 997.12
matter of course 373.4
matter of fact
prosaicness 117.2
fact 761.3
event 831.2
matter-of-fact
prosaic 117.8
simple 499.6
plain-speaking 535.3
prosaic 721.5
realistic 987.6
matter of life and death
urgent need 963.4
point of interest 997.3
mattress 901.20
maturation
bodily development 14.1
growth 259.3
adolescence 301.6
development 303.6
improvement 392.2
completion 407.2
evolution 861.1
mature
v grow 14.2
expand 259.7
grow up 303.9
grow old 304.6
develop 392.10
ripen 407.8
accrue 623.7
complete 794.6
evolve 861.5
produce 892.8
originate 892.12
perfect 1002.5
adj developed 14.3
grown 259.12
adult 303.12
grown old 303.13
middle-aged 304.7
prepared 405.16
ripe 407.13
experienced 413.28
due 623.10
complete 794.9
perfected 1002.9
matured
ripe 407.13
experienced 413.28
complete 794.9
perfected 1002.9
maturing
n bodily development 14.1
growth 259.3
adj evolutionary 861.8
maturity
adulthood 303.2
preparedness 405.4
completion 407.2
debt 623.1
maudlin
intoxicated 88.31
sentimental 93.21
foolish 923.8
maul mistreat 389.5
harm 393.13
injure 393.13
rage 671.11
fight 754.4
pound 902.16
mauled 96.23
mausoleum
tomb 309.16
monument 549.12
mauve 46.3
maven
expert 413.11
adviser 422.3
connoisseur 496.7
specialist 866.3
scientist 928.11
maverick
n cattle 311.6
rebel 327.5
obstinate person 361.6
nonconformist 868.3
oddity 870.4
adj unconventional 868.6
mavis 710.23
maw
digestive system 2.18
mouth 292.4
mawkish nasty 64.7
oversweet 66.5
sentimental 93.21
the max
n supremacy 249.3
adj extreme 247.13
maxim precept 419.2
rule 869.4
a belief 953.2
aphorism 974.1
maximal top 198.10
superlative 249.13
plentiful 991.7
maximize 251.4
maximum
n summit 198.2
supremacy 249.3
limit 794.5
plenty 991.2
adj top 198.10
great 247.6
superlative 249.13
may be able 18.11
can 443.13
maybe 966.9
Mayday 400.1
mayhem 393.1
mayor 575.17
mayoralty
mastership 417.7
magistracy 594.3
Mazda 677.5
maze
n complex 799.2
confusion 985.3
v perplex 971.13
confuse 985.7
mazy deviative 164.7
flowing 238.24
curved 279.7
convolutional 281.6
complex 799.4
inconstant 854.7
MC steward 574.4
theater man 704.23
master of ceremonies 743.20
broadcaster 1034.23
McCarthyism 389.3
MD 90.4
me 865.5
mea culpa
penitence 113.4
apology 658.2
meadow marsh 243.1
grassland 310.8
meager
insignificant 248.6
dwarf 258.13
narrow 270.14
lean 270.17
sparse 885.5
slight 992.10
meal repast 8.5
feed 10.4
cereal 10.34
powder 1051.5
meal ticket
support 449.3
financer 729.10
mealy colorless 36.7
powdery 1051.11
mealymouth 138.3

mealymouthed
obsequious 138.14
flattering 511.8
sanctimonious 693.5
insincere 354.32
mean
n median 246.1
middle course 467.3
middle 819.1
v augur 133.12
manifest 348.5
intend 380.4
indicate 517.17
signify 518.8
imply 519.4
evidence 957.8
adj irascible 110.20
humble 137.10
servile 138.13
malicious 144.20
cruel 144.26
envious 154.4
intervening 213.10
medium 246.3
insignificant 248.6
inadequate 250.7
niggardly 484.8
low 497.15
populational 606.8
ungenerous 651.6
base 661.12
middle 819.4
narrow-minded 980.10
meager 992.10
paltry 998.21
excellent 999.13
inferior 1005.9
difficult 1013.17
mean business 359.8
meander
n bend 279.3
convolution 281.1
complex 799.2
v stray 164.4
wander 177.23
convolve 281.4
go roundabout 914.4
meandering
n convolution 281.1
discursiveness 538.3
circuitousness 914.1
adj deviative 164.7
wandering 177.37
flowing 238.24
curved 279.7
convolutional 281.6
complex 799.4
circuitous 914.7
meanie 660.5
meaning
n ominousness 133.7
interpretation 341.1
intention 380.1
indication 517.3
significance 518.1
implication 519.2
lexicology 526.14
adj meaningful 518.10
meaningful
premonitory 133.16
indicative 517.23
meaning 518.10
expressive 544.10
meaningless
uncommunicative 344.8
useless 391.9
unmeaning 520.6
unordered 810.12
meanness
ill humor 110.3
humility 137.1
servility 138.1
malice 144.5
envy 154.1
insignificance 248.1
inadequacy 250.3
niggardliness 484.2
vulgarity 497.1
commonness 497.5
ungenerousness 651.2
baseness 661.3
narrow-mindedness 980.1
meagerness 992.2
paltriness 998.2
inferiority 1005.3
means mode 384
manner 384.1
way 384.2
supply 386.2
assets 471.7
funds 728.14
expedient 995.2
tool 1040.1
means to an end
means 384.2
expedient 995.2
meant
intentional 380.8
signified 518.11
implied 519.7
meantime
n meanwhile 826.2
adv meanwhile 826.5
meanwhile
n meantime 826.2
adv in the meantime 821.10
meantime 826.5
measly anemic 85.61
base 661.12
insignificant 998.18
measurable
mensurable 300.14
calculable 1017.25
measure
n space 158.1
quantity 244.1
amount 244.2
degree 245.1
size 257.1
capacity 257.2
length 267.1
measurement 300.1
measuring instrument 300.2
act 328.3
portion 477.5
sign 517.1
harmony 533.2
law 673.3
air 708.4
passage 708.24
notation 709.12
rhythm 709.22
metrics 720.6
meter 720.7
poetry 720.9
process 889.2
expedient 995.2
v traverse 177.20
quantify 244.4
size 257.15
gauge 300.10
make agree 788.7
estimate 946.9
number 1017.17
calculate 1017.18
measured
quantitative 244.5
gauged 300.13
harmonious 533.8
temperate 668.9
rhythmic 709.28
metric 720.16
uniform 781.5
periodic 850.7
measure for measure
compensation 338.1
tit for tat 506.3
justice 649.1
interchange 863.1
measurement
quantity 244.1
size 257.1
quantification 300.1
measure 300.1
estimate 946.3
numeration 1017.9
measure out
measure off 300.11
parcel out 477.8
measure up to
equal 790.5
be comparable 943.7
measuring
n measurement 300.1
adj metric 300.12
meat
n meal 8.5
food 10.1
flesh 10.13
nut 10.39
sex object 75.4
copulation 75.7
essential content 196.5
support 449.3
summary 557.2
essence 767.2
major part 792.6
topic 937.1
salient point 997.6
v feed 8.18
meat-eater eater 8.16
strong man 15.7
violent person 671.10
meat-eating 8.31
meathead 924.4
meathooks 474.4
meaty
corpulent 257.18
meaningful 518.10
mechanic
aircraftsman 185.6
mender 396.10
worker 607.9
skilled worker 726.6
cheater 759.22
mechanician 1040.12
mechanical
uniform 781.5
involuntary 963.14
mechanistic 1039.7
machinelike 1040.14
mechanical engineering 1043.1
mechanics art 413.7
the physics of force and motion 1039
leverage 1039.1
mechanism
instrumentality 384.3
instrument 384.4
art 413.7
machinery 1040.3
works 1040.4
materialism 1052.6
mechanistic
mechanical 1039.7
materialist 1052.12
mechanize 1040.13
mechanized 1040.14
medal
military honor 646.6
insignia 647.1
relief 715.3
medalist 413.15
medallion
medal 646.6
relief 715.3
meddle
intermeddle 214.7
advise 422.5
pry 981.4
hinder 1012.10
meddler
intermeddler 214.4
adviser 422.3
meddlesome
meddling 214.9
prying 981.6
meddling
n intermeddling 214.2
adj meddlesome 214.9
media
communications 343.5
telecommunications 347.1
medial
intervening 213.10
medium 246.3
middle 819.4
median
n mean 246.1
middle 819.1
adj intervening 213.10
medium 246.3
middle 819.4
mediary 213.4
mediate
interpose 213.6
be instrumental 384.7
reconcile 465.8
intermediate 466.6
mediating
n mediation 466.1
adj modal 384.8
mediatory 466.8

mediation
instrumentality 384.3
pacification 465.1
intermediation 466.1
mediating 466.1
function of Christ 677.14
mediator
intermediary 213.4
instrument 384.4
intermediator 466.3
go-between 576.4
moderator 670.3
mediatory
mediatorial 466.8
divine 677.16
Medicaid
health care 83.5
welfarism 611.7
medical doctor 90.4
medical examiner
doctor 90.4
autopsy 307.18
medical practice
medicine 90.1
practice of medicine 90.13
Medicare
health care 83.5
welfarism 611.7
medicate 91.25
medication
medicine 86.4
therapy 91.1
treatment 91.14
medicinal
n medicine 86.4
adj remedial 86.39
medicine
n medicament 86.4
liquor 88.14
medical practice 90.1
v medicate 91.25
medicine man 690.7
medico 90.4
medieval 842.13
medievalist 842.5
mediocre
medium 246.3
inadequate 250.7
unskillful 414.15
middle 819.4
usual 869.9
imperfect 1003.4
middling 1005.7
mediocrity mean 246.1
inadequacy 250.3
unskillfulness 414.1
incompetent 414.7
usualness 869.2
a nobody 998.7
imperfection 1003.1
ordinariness 1005.2
mediocreness 1005.1
second-rater 1005.5
meditate
contemplate 380.5
consider 931.12
meditation
inaction 329.1
trance 691.3
prayer 696.4
consideration 931.2
engrossment 983.3
meditative
passive 329.6
cognitive 931.21
engrossed 983.17
abstracted 985.11
medium
n color 35.8
essential content 196.5
natural environment 209.4
intermediary 213.4
mean 246.1
instrument 384.4
mediator 466.3
middle course 467.3
volume 554.4
go-between 576.4
psychic 689.13
lights 704.18
art equipment 712.18
doer 726.1
substance 763.2
immaterialist 1053.4
adj done 11.8
intervening 213.10
mean 246.3
middle 819.4
mediocre 1005.7
medium of exchange 728.1
medley
n performance 708.33
miscellany 770.13
hodgepodge 797.6
adj chromatic 35.16
variegated 47.9
mixed 797.14
Medusa 690.9
meed portion 477.5
recompense 624.3
meek
resigned 134.10
humblehearted 137.11
modest 139.9
gentle 433.15
unbelligerent 464.10
meerschaum 89.6
meet
n contest 457.3
game 743.9
track meet 755.2
assembly 770.2
v converge 169.2
confront 216.8
encounter 223.11
concur 332.9
observe 434.2
oppose 451.5
compete 457.18
brave 492.11
come together 770.16
convene 770.17
join 800.11
experience 831.8
conform 867.3
collide 902.13
suffice 991.4
adj decorous 496.10
conventional 579.5
just 649.8
timely 843.9
expedient 995.5
approachable 167.5
meet halfway
make up 465.10
mediate 466.6
compromise 468.2
meet head-on
contrapose 215.4
meet 223.11
confront 451.5
offer resistance 453.3
brave 492.11
counteract 900.6
meeting
n convergence 169.1
meeting up 223.4
contest 457.3
conference 541.6
rendezvous 582.9
divine service 696.8
assembly 770.2
joining 800.1
impact 902.3
adj converging 169.3
in contact 223.17
assembled 770.21
joining 800.16
concurrent 899.4
meetinghouse
hall 197.4
church 703.1
meeting of minds
unanimity 332.5
consensus 788.3
meet the eye show 31.4
appear 33.8
meet with attention 983.11
mega 257.20
megacycles 1034.12
megaphone 48.8
melancholia
mental disorder 92.14
wretchedness 96.6
melancholy 112.5
depression 926.5
melancholic
n personality type 92.12
sourpuss 112.13
adj melancholy 112.23
weary 118.11
melancholy
n wretchedness 96.6
melancholia 112.5
weariness 118.3
thoughtfulness 931.3
adj sullen 110.24
melancholic 112.23
weary 118.11
n sullenness 110.8
mélange 797.6
melanism 38.1
meld
n compound 797.5
combination 805.1
v identify 778.5
mix 797.10
combine 805.3
melding
identification 778.2
combination 805.1
melee free-for-all 457.5
commotion 810.4
meliorate
improve 392.7
make better 392.9
be changed 852.6
change 852.7
mellifluous sweet 66.4
pleasant 97.6
melodious 708.48
mellow
v mature 303.9
ripen 407.8
evolve 861.5
soften 1047.6
adj soft-colored 35.22
resonant 54.10
intoxicated 88.31
pleasant 97.6
mature 303.13
ripe 407.13
melodious 708.48
soft 1047.8
mellowing
maturation 303.6
softening 1047.5
melodics 709.1
melodist singer 710.13
composer 710.20
melodrama 93.9
melodramatic
emotionalistic 93.19
sensational 105.32
dramatic 704.33
melodramatics
emotionalism 93.9
dramatics 704.2
melody
melodiousness 708.2
air 708.4
melon
political patronage 609.36
dividend 738.7
melt disappear 34.2
affect 93.14
have pity 145.4
move 145.5
flit 828.6
melt down 1020.21
liquefy 1064.5
meltable
molten 1020.31
liquefiable 1064.9
melt away
disappear 34.2
decrease 252.6
cease to exist 762.6
meltdown
outburst 671.6
misfortune 1011.2
melt down
extract 192.16
explode 671.14
melt 1020.21
liquefy 1064.5
melted
penitent 113.9
molten 1020.31
liquefied 1064.6
melting
n disappearance 34.1
fusion 1020.3
liquefaction 1064.1

adj vanishing 34.3
loving 104.27
pitying 145.7
liquefying 1064.7
melting point 1019.11
melting pot
mixture 797.1
mixer 797.9
instrument of conversion 858.10
the melting pot 232.3
member appendage 2.7
affiliate 617.11
organ 793.4
membership
association 582.6
members 617.12
inclusion 772.1
membrane
membrana 2.6
lamina 296.2
memento
monument 549.12
remembrance 989.7
memo 549.4
memoir
memorandum 549.4
treatise 556.1
history 719.1
remembering 989.4
memorabilia
archives 549.2
history 719.1
memento 989.7
matter of importance 997.5
memorable
rememberable 989.25
notable 997.19
memorandum
memo 549.4
reminder 989.6
memorandum book 549.11
memorial
n record 549.1
memorandum 549.4
monument 549.12
history 719.1
memento 989.7
adj celebrative 487.3
commemorative 989.27
memorialize
petition 440.10
celebrate 487.2
memorize
get by rote 570.8
commit to memory 989.17
memory
engram 92.29
celebration 487.1
recording media 549.10
posthumous fame 662.7
retrospection 837.4
recollection 989.1
remembrance 989.1
storage 1042.7
men work force 18.9
mankind 76.3
staff 577.11
menace
n threat 514.1
danger 1006.1
v forebode 133.11
threaten 514.2
be imminent 840.2
work evil 1000.6
menacing
ominous 133.17
threatening 514.3
imminent 840.3
ménage home 228.2
family 559.5
domestic management 573.6
menagerie
zoo 228.19
collection 770.11
mend
n improvement 392.1
v get well 83.7
improve 392.7
make better 392.9
repair 396.14
mendacity
untruthfulness 354.8
lie 354.11
Mendel's law 560.6
mender 396.10
mendicancy
beggary 440.6
indigence 619.2
mendicant
n nonworker 331.11
beggar 440.8
ascetic 667.2
religious 699.16
adj supplicatory 440.16
indigent 619.8
ascetic 667.4
mending
n improvement 392.1
reparation 396.6
adj improving 392.15
menfolk 76.3
menial
n servant 577.2
worker 726.2
adj servile 138.13
serving 577.14
meniscus 279.5
menopause 303.7
menses 12.9
menstrual
bleeding 12.24
regular 850.8
menstrual discharge 12.9
menstruate 12.18
menstruation 12.9
mensuration
measurement 300.1
science of measurement 300.8
menswear 5.1
mental
n psychotic 926.17
adj intellectual 919.7
crazy 926.27
cognitive 931.21
attitudinal 978.7
mental block 990.3
mental capacity 920.1
mental case 926.17
mental deficiency 926.1
mental disorder
emotional disorder 92.14
insanity 926.1
mental health
health 83.1
sanity 925.1
mental hospital 926.14
mental illness
mental disorder 92.14
insanity 926.1
mentality
intellect 919.1
intelligence 920.1
intelligent being 920.9
mentally retarded 922.22
mental picture
idea 932.1
visualization 986.6
mental states 92.1
mental telepathy 689.9
mention
n remark 524.3
information 551.1
citation 646.4
v remark 524.24
specify 865.11
call attention to 983.10
mentor preparer 405.5
adviser 422.3
teacher 571.1
wise man 921.1
Mentor 921.2
menu bill of fare 8.14
statement 871.5
schedule 965.3
meow 60.2
Mephistopheles 680.4
mercantile
business 730.12
commercial 731.22
mercantilism 731.13
mercantilistic 731.22
mercenary
n hireling 461.17
employee 577.3
adj greedy 100.27
employed 615.20
corruptible 645.23
merchandise
n provisions 385.2
goods 735.1
commodities 735.1
v deal in 731.16
sell 734.8
merchandising
n trade 731.2
selling 734.2
adj sales 734.13
merchant
n provider 385.6
businessperson 730
merchandiser 730.2
adj commercial 731.22
merchant marine
ships 180.10
branch 461.21
navy 461.27
merci! 150.6
merciful
kind 143.13
pitying 145.7
lenient 427.7
almighty 677.17
merciless
pitiless 146.3
savage 671.21
mercurial fast 174.15
active 330.17
irresolute 362.9
fickle 364.6
nonuniform 782.3
inconstant 854.7
flighty 985.17
brass 1058.17
mercury
swiftness 174.6
guide 574.7
changeableness 854.4
thermometer 1019.20
Mercury
messenger 353.1
planet 1072.9
mercy kindness 143.1
act of kindness 143.7
pity 145.1
leniency 427.1
mercy killing 308.1
mere
n lake 241.1
marsh 243.1
adj sheer 248.8
simple 798.6
mere caricature 787.1
mere child
simple soul 416.3
innocent 657.4
mere child's play 1014.3
mere existence 761.6
mere facade 500.1
mere farce 489.1
merely adequate 246.3
a mere nothing 998.6
mere show 500.1
mere skin and bones 270.17
mere subsistence 992.5
mere suggestion 551.4
mere technicality 998.6
meretricious
specious 354.27
coarse 497.11
gaudy 501.20
grandiloquent 545.8
prostitute 665.28
paltry 998.21
a mere trickle 992.9
merge
converge 169.2
submerge 367.7
cooperate 450.3
come together 770.16
identify 778.5
mix 797.10
put together 800.5
join 800.11
combine 805.3
merger
convergence 169.1
affiliation 450.2
identification 778.2
mixture 797.1
joining 800.1
combination 805.1
merging
converging 169.3

combining 805.7
meridian
n map 159.5
summit 198.2
zone 231.3
noon 314.5
orbit 1072.16
adj top 198.10
noon 314.7
meringue sweets 10.40
foam 320.2
merit
n importance 997.1
goodness 999.1
v deserve 639.5
merited
warranted 639.9
just 649.8
meritless 998.22
meritorious
praiseworthy 509.20
due 639.10
reputable 662.15
Merlin 690.6
mermaid
swimmer 182.12
spirit of the sea 240.4
water god 678.10
merriment
merriness 109.5
rejoicing 116.1
waggishness 489.4
conviviality 582.3
festivity 743.3
merriness 109.5
merry
intoxicated 88.31
mirthful 109.15
festive 743.28
merry-go-round
round of pleasure 743.7
carousel 743.15
rotator 915.4
merrymaking
n treat 95.3
conviviality 582.3
festivity 743.3
adj festive 743.28
mesa plain 236.1
tableland 237.3
plateau 272.4
mesh
n network 170.3
interaction 777.3
complex 799.2
network 1042.16
v net 170.7
trap 356.20
catch 480.17
interact 777.6
meshes
network 170.3
snare 356.13
meshing
n interaction 777.3
adj apt 788.10
mesmeric
hypnotic 22.24
alluring 377.8
engrossing 983.20
mesmerism 22.8
mesmerize
hypnotize 22.20
fascinate 377.7
cast a spell 691.7
have influence over 894.11
engross 983.13
mesmerized
wondering 122.9
enchanted 691.12
gripped 983.18
mesmerizer
hypnotist 22.9
deceiver 357.1
mesomorph 92.12
mesomorphism 92.11
meson atom 258.8
radioactive particle 1037.4
mess
n meal 8.5
rations 10.6
filth 80.7
dining room 197.11
amount 244.2
lot 247.4
formlessness 263.1
fiasco 410.6
bungle 414.5
portion 477.5
bunch 770.7
hodgepodge 797.6
complex 799.2
jumble 810.3
confusion 985.3
predicament 1013.5
eyesore 1015.4
v feed 8.18
defile 80.17
disarrange 811.2
message
communication 343.1
advertisement 352.6
information 551.1
dispatch 552.4
letter 553.2
commercial 1034.20
mess around 998.15
messed up
spoiled 393.29
botched 414.22
complex 799.4
disheveled 810.14
messenger
n harbinger 133.5
message-bearer 353.1
delegate 576.2
precursor 816.1
v send 176.15
mess hall
restaurant 8.17
dining room 197.11
messiah 574.6
messiness
uncleanness 80.1
formlessness 263.1
slipshodness 340.3
slovenliness 810.6
messmate 588.3
mess up defile 80.17
deform 263.3
spoil 393.11
bungle 414.12
complicate 799.3
disarrange 811.2
messy dirty 80.22
slipshod 340.12
slovenly 810.15
mestizo 797.8
metabolic
digestive 2.31
plasmatic 262.10
metamorphic 852.12
metabolic rate 2.2
metabolism
metabolic process 2.20
basal metabolism 7.12
transformation 852.3
metabolize digest 7.18
transform 852.8
metal
n heraldry 647.2
elementary metal 1058.3
v floor 295.22
adj metallic 1058.16
metallic
raucous 58.15
metal 1058.16
metallurgist 1058.12
metallurgy 1058.11
metalworker 726.8
metalworks 739.4
metamorphic
multiform 783.3
metabolic 852.12
changeable 854.6
metamorphosis 852.3
metaphor
similarity 784.1
substitute 862.2
comparison 943.1
metaphorical
indicative 517.23
meaningful 518.10
symbolic 519.10
figurative 536.3
metaphysician
parapsychologist 689.12
philosopher 952.8
metaphysics
hyperphysics 689.3
ontology 761.7
metastasis
transferal 176.1
grammar 205.3
transformation 852.3
mete
n boundary 211.3
v quantify 244.4
measure 300.10
parcel out 477.8
give 478.12
administer 643.6
meteor 1072.15
meteoric
increasing 251.8
brief 828.8
flashing 1025.34
celestial 1072.25
meteorological instrument 317.8
meteorologist
crew 185.4
weather scientist 317.6
earth scientist 1071.2
meteorology
weather science 317.5
earth science 1071.1
meter
n measure 300.2
measurer 300.9
rhythm 709.22
metrics 720.6
prosody 720.7
periodicity 850.2
electrical device 1032.21
v measure 300.10
method
behavior 321.1
plan 381.1
manner 384.1
means 384.2
art 413.7
orderliness 807.3
methodical
punctilious 580.10
uniform 781.5
orderly 807.6
regular 850.6
methodized
planned 381.12
arranged 808.14
methodologist 867.2
methodology
behavior 321.1
plan 381.1
manner 384.1
orderliness 807.3
Methuselah
old man 304.2
back number 842.8
meticulous
exacting 339.12
strict 425.6
observant 434.4
fastidious 495.9
punctilious 580.10
conscientious 644.15
detailed 766.9
accurate 973.16
attentive 983.15
métier talent 413.4
vocation 724.6
specialty 866.1
metric
measuring 300.12
rhythmic 709.28
metrical 720.16
metrics
accent 524.10
rhythm 709.22
prosody 720.6
metric system 300.1
métro 179.14
metronome
notation 709.12
music 711.22
oscillator 916.9
metronomic
chronologic 832.15
periodic 850.7
metropolis
capital 208.7
town 230.1
region 231.5

mettle
animation 17.4
pluck 359.3
fortitude 492.6
disposition 978.3
mettlesome
energetic 17.13
excitable 105.28
plucky 359.14
resolute 492.18
mew
n lair 228.26
retreat 1009.5
v cry 60.2
enclose 212.5
confine 429.12
mewl 60.2
mews 228.20
mezzanine 197.23
mezzo 819.4
mezzo-soprano
n high voice 58.6
voice 709.5
adj high 58.13
miasma
stench 71.1
mephitis 1001.4
vapor 1067.1
miasmic
malodorous 71.5
poisonous 82.7
offensive 98.18
vaporous 1067.9
Mick 232.7
Mickey Finn
anesthetic 25.3
chloral hydrate 87.6
drink 88.9
Mickey Mouse
n finery 498.3
trivia 998.4
adj vulgar 497.10
insignificant 998.18
inferior 1005.9
easy 1014.13
micro 258.12
microbe germ 85.42
minute 258.7
organism 305.2
microbiology 1068.3
microcosm 258.6
microdot 549.10
microeconomics 731.7
microfiche
recording media 549.10
transcript 785.4
microfilm
n recording media 549.10
film 714.10
v photograph 714.14
copy 785.8
micronutrient 7.11
microorganism
germ 85.42
minute 258.7
organism 305.2
microphone mike 50.9
radio transmitter 1034.4
microscope 29.1
microscopic
telescopic 29.10
infinitesimal 258.14
exact 973.17
microscopy optics 29.7
littleness 258.18
microtome 802.7
microwave
n radio wave 1034.11
v cook 11.5
micturition 12.5
mid
adj phonetic 524.30
middle 819.4
prep between 213.12
among 797.17
Midas 618.8
midday
n noon 314.5
adj noon 314.7
midden dunghill 80.10
derelict 370.4
trash pile 391.6
middle
n center 208.2
mean 246.1
voice 530.14
midpoint 819.1
median 819.1
v centralize 208.9
seek the middle 819.3
adj central 208.11
intervening 213.10
mediatory 466.8
medial 819.4
middle age 303.4
middle-aged
mid-life 303.14
mature 304.7
Middle Ages 824.5
Middle America
inland 207.3
US region 231.7
the people 606.1
middle class 607.5
mediocrity 1005.5
Middle American
n conformist 867.2
adj inland 207.7
middlebrow 930.8
middle class
middle order 607.5
mediocrity 1005.5
middle-class
upper-class 607.10
ordinary 1005.8
the middle class 606.1
Middle East 231.6
middle ground
mean 246.1
middle course 467.3
mid-distance 819.2
middleman
intermediary 213.4
mediator 466.3
go-between 576.4
merchant 730.2
middlemost
central 208.11
middle 819.4
middle of the road
middle course 467.3
moderatism 611.2
mid-distance 819.2
mean 246.1
middle-of-the-road
medium 246.3
moderate 611.18
middle 819.4
middle-of-the-roader
centrist 611.10
moderate 670.4
middle-of-the-roadism 611.2
middle school 567.4
middleweight 297.3
the Middle West 231.7
middling
medium 246.3
middle 819.4
mediocre 1005.7
middy 183.4
Mideast 231.6
midge dwarf 258.5
minute 258.7
midget
n dwarf 258.5
adj dwarf 258.13
midget hockey 749.1
midland
n inland 207.3
adj inland 207.7
middle 819.4
Midland 523.7
midlife crisis 303.4
midmost
n middle 819.1
adj central 208.11
middle 819.4
midnight
n dead of night 315.6
adj black 38.8
nocturnal 315.9
midriff
digestive system 2.18
partition 213.5
middle 819.1
midsection 213.5
midshipman
navy man 183.4
undergraduate 572.6
midst
n middle 819.1
prep between 213.12
among 797.17
midterm 938.2
midtown
n city district 230.6
adj urban 230.11
mid-Victorian
n prude 500.11
back number 842.8
adj prudish 500.19
antiquated 842.13
midway
n mid-distance 819.2
adj neutral 467.7
middle 819.4
adv mediumly 246.4
halfway 819.5
midwife
health care professional 90.8
instrument 384.4
mien looks 33.4
exteriority 206.1
behavior 321.1
miff
n dudgeon 152.7
v annoy 96.13
provoke 152.24
miffed annoyed 96.21
provoked 152.27
might strength 15.1
power 18.1
greatness 247.1
authoritativeness 417.2
might be 966.4
mighty
adj strong 15.15
powerful 18.12
great 247.6
huge 257.20
authoritative 417.15
eminent 662.18
adv very 247.18
migraine 26.5
migrant migrator 178.5
bird 311.28
worker 726.2
migrant worker
migrant 178.5
worker 726.2
agriculturist 1069.5
migrate 177.22
migration
transferal 176.1
transmigration 177.4
departure 188.1
mikado 575.9
mike 50.9
milady woman 77.5
title 648.2
milch 1061.5
milcher 311.6
mild insipid 65.2
bright 97.11
good-natured 143.14
lenient 427.7
meek 433.15
moderate 670.10
warm 1019.24
soft 1047.8
mildew
n fetidness 71.2
decay 393.6
blight 1001.2
v decay 393.22
mildewed
malodorous 71.5
blighted 393.42
stale 842.14
mileage
distance 261.1
length 267.1
benefit 387.4
fee 624.5
expedience 995.1
milepost post 273.4
pointer 517.4
marker 517.10
miles per hour 174.1
milestone
marker 517.10
salient point 997.6
milieu
environment 209.1

ambience 209.3
region 231.1
arena 463.1
plot 722.4
militancy
activity 330.1
warlikeness 458.11
militant
n man of action 330.8
combatant 461.1
believer 692.4
adj active 330.17
warlike 458.21
militarism
warlikeness 458.11
foreign policy 609.5
government 612.4
militarist 461.5
militarization 458.10
militarize 458.20
military 458.21
military court 595.4
military law 673.5
military officer 575.18
military operations
war 458.1
operation 458.5
military police 1008.17
military science 458.6
military tactics 458.6
militate 889.7
militate against
contend against 451.4
counteract 900.6
militia 461.24
milk
n humor 2.24
whiteness 37.2
fluid 1061.2
v draw off 192.12
exploit 387.16
take from 480.21
strip 480.24
tend 1070.7
adj milky 1061.5
milk and honey 1010.1
milk and water 16.7
milker 311.6
milking 192.3
milk run 184.11
milksop weakling 16.6
effeminate male 77.11
coward 491.5
fool 924.1
milky
wishy-washy 16.17
white 37.7
lacteal 1061.5
the Milky Way 1072.6
mill
n money 728.7
plant 739.3
machinery 1040.3
pulverizer 1051.7
v notch 289.4
come together 770.16
process 892.9
seethe 915.12
tool 1040.13
pulverize 1051.9
milled made 892.18
powdery 1051.11
millenarian
n optimist 124.6
adj optimistic 124.12
millennial
thousandth 882.30
ideal 986.23
millennium
moment 824.2
thousand 882.10
utopia 986.11
good times 1010.4
milliner 5.37
millinery
headdress 5.25
garment making 5.32
milling
production 892.2
pulverization 1051.4
million
n ten million 882.11
adj numerous 884.6
millionaire 618.7
millions 618.2
millstone burden 297.7
pulverizer 1051.7
millstone around one's neck
affliction 96.8
disadvantage 996.2
impediment 1012.6
millstream 238.1
mill town 739.2
milord 648.2
milquetoast
n manageability 433.4
coward 491.5
adj henpecked 326.5
manageable 433.14
Milquetoast
weakling 16.6
vacillator 362.5
mime
n imitator 336.4
impersonation 349.4
actor 707.2
v mimic 336.6
impersonate 349.12
gesture 517.21
act 704.29
mimeograph
n printing 548.1
v print 548.14
copy 785.8
mimer imitator 336.4
actor 707.2
mimetic
imitative 336.9
representational 349.13
mimic
n imitator 336.4
actor 707.2
v imitate 336.6
impersonate 349.12
resemble 784.7
adj imitative 336.9
mimicry
mockery 336.2
impersonation 349.4
acting 704.8
miming
impersonation 349.4
acting 704.8
minaret 272.6
minatory 514.3
mince
n meat 10.13
gait 177.12
v walk 177.28
be affected 500.14
speak poorly 525.7
extenuate 600.12
shatter 802.13
mind
n psyche 92.28
desire 100.1
will 323.1
intention 380.1
theosophy 689.18
intellect 919.1
intelligence 919.4
opinion 953.6
disposition 978.3
mood 978.4
attention 983.1
memory 989.1
v take amiss 152.13
refuse 325.3
obey 326.2
care 339.6
beware 494.7
heed 983.6
remember 989.10
care for 1008.19
Mind 677.6
mind-altering drug 87.3
mind-blowing
exciting 105.30
hallucinatory 976.10
mind-boggler 522.8
mind-boggling
deadening 25.9
astonishing 122.12
frightening 127.28
unbelievable 955.10
minded willing 324.5
moved 375.30
disposed 978.8
mind-expanding
psychochemical 86.46
hallucinatory 976.10
mindful
considerate 143.16
careful 339.10
observant 434.4
cautious 494.8
knowing 928.15
attentive 983.15
recollective 989.22
remembering 989.24
mindless
unconcerned 102.7
inconsiderate 144.18
cruel 144.26
animal 311.40
unrefined 497.12
savage 671.21
unintelligent 922.13
unwise 923.10
unaware 930.13
purposeless 972.16
incurious 982.3
mind one's own business
not interfere 430.16
take no interest in 982.2
mind one's P's and Q's
behave oneself 321.5
be careful 339.7
mind one's manners 504.11
mind reader 689.15
mind reading 689.9
mind your own business 214.10
mine
n pit 284.4
trap 356.12
source of supply 386.4
entrenchment 460.5
bomb 462.20
rich source 618.4
fountainhead 886.6
quarry 1058.6
v extract 192.10
deepen 275.8
excavate 284.15
undermine 393.15
blow up 395.18
plant a mine 459.24
fortify 460.9
take from 480.21
process 892.9
quarry 1058.14
miner excavator 284.10
mineworker 1058.9
mineral
n inorganic substance 1058.1
ore 1058.2
adj inorganic 1055.4
inanimate 1058.15
mineral kingdom
mineral 1058.1
hierarchy 809.4
inorganic matter 1055.1
mineralogy 1058.10
mineral oil 1056.4
mineral spring 91.23
mineral water 1065.3
mineworker 1058.9
mingle 797.10
mingling 797.1
mingy niggardly 484.8
ungenerous 651.6
mini
n runt 258.4
miniature 258.6
adj miniature 258.12
miniature
n mini 258.6
image 349.5
picture 712.11
portrait 712.15
adj insignificant 248.6
diminutive 258.12
miniaturization 252.1
miniaturize 258.9
miniaturized
reduced 252.10
miniature 258.12
minim
n modicum 248.2
minute 258.7
note 709.14
rest 709.21
adj least 250.8

minimal least 250.8
miniature 258.12
sufficient 991.6
minimization
reduction 252.5
underestimation 950.1
minimize
reduce 252.9
disparage 512.8
underestimate 950.2
attach little importance to 998.12
minimum
n modicum 248.2
sufficiency 991.1
adj least 250.8
sufficient 991.6
minimum wage 624.4
mining
extraction 192.1
deepening 275.7
excavation 284.11
production 892.2
coal mining 1058.8
mining engineer 1058.12
minion favorite 104.16
sycophant 138.3
instrument 384.4
retainer 577.1
follower 616.8
minister
n public official 575.17
delegate 576.2
diplomat 576.6
clergyman 699.2
v officiate 701.16
ministerial
modal 384.8
helping 449.20
administrative 573.14
diplomatic 576.17
executive 612.19
ecclesiastic 698.13
ministering
modal 384.8
helping 449.20
serving 577.14
minister of state 575.17
minister to treat 91.24
be instrumental 384.7
aid 449.18
serve 577.13
care for 1008.19
ministration aid 449.1
service 577.12
ministry aid 449.1
the authorities 575.15
service 577.12
bureau 594.4
cabinet 613.3
clergy 699.1
protectorship 1008.2
minor
n youngster 302.1
study 568.8
key 709.15
adj inferior 250.6
immature 301.10
insignificant 998.17
minority
n inability 19.2
inferiority 250.1
immaturity 301.3
race 312.2
least 885.3
adj least 885.7
minority group
party 617.4
minority 885.3
minority interests 609.31
minority leader 610.3
minority opinion 333.1
minor league 745.1
Minos
Pontius Pilate 596.5
justice 649.5
nether world deity 682.5
minstrel
n musical theater 708.34
singer 710.13
ballad singer 710.14
poet 720.11
v sing 708.38
minstrel show 708.34
mint
n lot 247.4
gain 472.3
wealth 618.3
plant 739.3
mold 786.6
v form 262.7
coin 728.28
innovate 841.5
originate 892.12
adj unused 390.12
new-made 841.9
undamaged 1002.8
mintage money 728.1
coining 728.24
production 892.1
product 893.1
mint condition
healthiness 83.2
newness 841.1
minted formative 262.9
invented 892.19
minus
n math terms 255.6
deduction 255.7
adj bereft 473.8
nonexistent 762.8
short of 911.5
positive 1032.35
prep off 255.14
without 992.17
minuscule
n type 548.6
adj miniature 258.12
literal 546.8
minute
n entry 628.5
period 824.1
moment 824.2
instant 830.3
time of day 832.2
the present 838.1
v record 549.15
keep accounts 628.8
adj tiny 258.11
meticulous 339.12
detailed 766.9
particular 865.12
insignificant 998.17
minutemen 461.24
minutes
memorandum 549.4
report 549.7
minutiae
modicum 248.2
detail 258.7
particular 766.3
trivia 998.4
minx woman 77.6
impudent person 142.5
brat 302.4
mischief-maker 322.3
miracle marvel 122.2
sign 870.8
miracle drug 86.29
miracle-worker 690.5
miraculous
wonderful 122.10
sorcerous 690.14
wondrous 870.16
mirage apparition 33.5
disappointment 132.1
deception 356.1
fata morgana 976.6
mire
n slime 80.8
receptacle of filth 80.12
marsh 243.1
mud 1062.8
v dirty 80.15
bemire 243.2
mirror
n glass 29.6
furniture 229.1
paragon 659.4
model 786.1
ideal 786.4
pattern of perfection 1002.4
v imitate 336.5
image 349.11
resemble 784.7
mirror image 779.2
mirroring
imitation 336.1
image 349.5
mirth merriment 109.5
amusement 743.1
miry dirty 80.22
marshy 243.3
slimy 1062.14
misadventure 1011.2
misalliance
marriage 563.1
misconnection 776.2
unfitness 789.3
misanthrope
hater 103.4
misanthropist 590.2
misanthropy
hate 103.1
people-hating 590
misanthropism 590.1
misapplication
misinterpretation 342.1
misuse 389.1
misconnection 776.2
sophistry 936.1
error 975.1
misapply
misinterpret 342.2
misuse 389.4
reason speciously 936.8
misdo 975.12
misapprehend
misinterpret 342.2
mistake 975.13
misapprehension
misinterpretation 342.1
mistake 975.3
misappropriate 389.4
misappropriation 389.1
misbegotten
deformed 265.12
illegitimate 674.7
freakish 870.13
unshapely 1015.8
misbehave
behave 321.4
misdemean 322.4
transgress 654.8
do wrong 655.4
misbehavior
good behavior 321.2
misconduct 322.1
wrongdoing 655.1
misbelief
heresy 688.2
unbelief 955.1
illusion 976.1
misbelieve err 688.8
disbelieve 955.5
misbeliever 688.5
miscalculate
misjudge 948.2
err 975.9
miscalculation
misjudgment 948.1
mistake 975.3
miscarriage
abortion 410.5
mistake 975.3
miscarriage of justice 650.4
miscarry
abort 410.15
miss 911.4
miscegenate
get married 563.15
hybridize 797.13
miscegenation
marriage 563.1
crossbreeding 797.4
miscellany
compilation 554.7
excerpts 557.4
assortment 770.13
hodgepodge 797.6
mischance 1011.2
mischief
mischievousness 322.2
mischief-maker 322.3
impairment 393.1
disaccord 456.1
disadvantage 996.2
evil 1000.3
mischief-maker
mischief 322.3
instigator 375.11
troublemaker 593.2

mischievous
mischief-loving 322.6
impish 680.18
harmful 1000.12
misconceive
misinterpret 342.2
mistake 975.13
misconception
misinterpretation 342.1
mistake 975.3
illusion 976.1
misconduct
n misbehavior 322.1
misuse 389.1
mismanagement 414.6
wrongdoing 655.1
v mismanage 414.13
misdo 975.12
misconstruction
perversion 265.2
misinterpretation 342.1
deliberate falsehood 354.9
solecism 531.2
misjudgment 948.1
error 975.1
misconstrue
pervert 265.6
misinterpret 342.2
misjudge 948.2
miscue
n bungle 414.5
slip 975.4
v bungle 414.11
err 975.13
misdate
n anachronism 833.1
v mistime 833.2
misdated 833.3
misdating 833.1
misdeed 655.2
misdemeanor
misbehavior 322.1
misdeed 655.2
offense 674.4
misdirect pervert 265.6
mislead 356.16
mismanage 414.13
misteach 569.3
misdirected
botched 414.21
mistaught 569.5
misdirection
perversion 265.2
misleading 356.2
mismanagement 414.6
misteaching 569.1
mise-en-scène
setting 209.2
production 704.13
stage setting 704.19
motion-picture studio 706.4
miser niggard 484.4
collector 770.15
miserable
wretched 96.26
unhappy 112.21
base 661.12
paltry 998.21
adverse 1011.13
Miserere 696.3
miserly greedy 100.27
stingy 484.9
sparse 885.5
meager 992.10
misery pain 26.1
wretchedness 96.6
unhappiness 112.2
sorrow 112.10
misfeasance
misbehavior 322.1
misuse 389.1
mismanagement 414.6
wrongdoing 655.1
misdeed 655.2
error 975.1
misfire
n abortion 410.5
v come to nothing 410.13
miss 911.4
misfit
intruder 774.2
naysayer 789.4
nonconformist 868.3
misfortune 1011.2
misgiving
n anxiety 126.1
apprehension 127.4
nervousness 128.1
foreboding 133.2
doubt 955.2
adj anxious 126.7
apprehensive 127.24
misgovern 414.13
misguide
mislead 356.16
mismanage 414.13
misteach 569.3
misguided
botched 414.21
mistaught 569.5
unwise 923.10
mishandle
misuse 389.4
mistreat 389.5
mismanage 414.13
mishandling
misuse 389.1
mismanagement 414.6
mishap 1011.2
mishmash
hodgepodge 797.6
jumble 810.3
misidentify 975.13
misinform
mislead 356.16
misteach 569.3
misinformation
misleading 356.2
misteaching 569.1
misinformed
mistaught 569.5
unlearned 930.14
misinterpret
pervert 265.6
misunderstand 342.2
misjudge 948.2
mistake 975.13
misinterpretation
perversion 265.2
misunderstanding 342.1
misjudgment 948.1
error 975.1
misjudge
misinterpret 342.2
judge amiss 948.2
misjudgment
misinterpretation 342.1
error in judgment 948.1
poor judgment 948.1
error 975.1
mistake 975.3
mislay misplace 160.7
lose 473.4
mislaying 160.3
mislead lie 354.19
misguide 356.16
misteach 569.3
betray 645.14
seduce 665.20
misleading
n misguidance 356.2
misteaching 569.1
adj deceptive 356.21
misteaching 569.6
illusory 976.9
mismanage
misuse 389.4
mishandle 414.13
misdo 975.12
mismanagement
misuse 389.1
mishandling 414.6
mismatch
n misconnection 776.2
unfitness 789.3
v disagree 789.5
mismatched
inappropriate 789.7
unequal 791.4
misname 527.12
misnomer
n wrong name 527.9
v misname 527.12
misogynist hater 103.4
celibate 565.2
misanthrope 590.2
misogyny hate 103.1
celibacy 565.1
misanthropy 590.1
misplace mislay 160.7
lose 473.4
misplaced
mislaid 160.11
inappropriate 789.7
disorderly 810.13
out of line 868.7
misplay
n mistake 975.3
v play 745.5
misdo 975.12
misprint
n mistake 975.3
v misdo 975.12
misprize disdain 157.3
underestimate 950.2
misprized disliked 99.9
underestimated 950.3
mispronounce 525.11
mispronunciation
misspeaking 525.5
grammatical error 975.7
misquote
misinterpret 342.2
misrepresent 350.3
falsify 354.16
misdo 975.12
misquoted
falsified 265.11
unauthentic 975.19
misread
v misinterpret 342.2
misjudge 948.2
misdo 975.12
adj misinterpreted 342.3
misreading
misinterpretation 342.1
misjudgment 948.1
misremember 990.5
misrender
pervert 265.6
misinterpret 342.2
misrendering 342.1
misrepresent
pervert 265.6
belie 350.3
falsify 354.16
misrepresentation
perversion 265.2
distortion 350.1
misinterpretation 350.1
deliberate falsehood 354.9
misrepresented 265.11
misrule
n mismanagement 414.6
anarchy 418.2
confusion 810.2
v mismanage 414.13
miss
n girl 302.6
near-miss 410.4
game 750.2
mistake 975.3
v leave undone 340.7
miss the mark 410.14
lose 473.4
miscarry 911.4
be inattentive 984.2
want 992.7
fall short 1003.3
Miss 77.9
Miss America 1016.8
misshape
n deformity 265.3
v deform 263.3
distort 265.7
misshapen
deformed 265.12
unordered 810.12
freakish 870.13
unshapely 1015.8
missile
n weapon 462.18
projectile 904.5
rocket 1074.3
adj projectile 904.15
missilery
arms 462.1
ballistics 462.3
missile science 1074.1
rocketry 1074.1
missing
gone 34.4
absent 222.11
nonexistent 762.8

incomplete 795.4
wanting 992.13
missing link 842.7
missing person 222.5
mission
n Air Force mission 184.11
adventure 404.2
operation 458.5
delegation 576.13
commission 615.1
duty 641.1
church 703.1
task 724.2
vocation 724.6
v commission 615.10
missionary
evangelist 699.6
converter 858.9
missive 553.2
misspeak
mispronounce 525.11
blunder 975.14
misspell 975.12
misspent 486.9
misstate
misrepresent 350.3
falsify 354.16
misstatement
misrepresentation 350.1
deliberate falsehood 354.9
mistake 975.3
misstep misdeed 655.2
slip 975.4
miss the boat
miss an opportunity 844.5
be late 846.7
miss 911.4
miss the mark
err 410.14
miss 911.4
fall short 1003.3
mist
n rain 316.1
fog 319.3
obscurity 522.3
spirit 764.3
confusion 985.3
v blur 32.4
cloud 319.7
confuse 985.7
mistake
n miss 410.4
bungle 414.5
error 975.3
v misinterpret 342.2
make a mistake 975.13
err 975.13
mistaken
misinterpreted 342.3
in error 975.18
misteach
misrepresent 350.3
misinstruct 569.3
misteaching
n misrepresentation 350.1
misinstruction 569.1
adj misinstructive 569.6
Mister man 76.7
Sir 648.3
mistime misdate 833.2
ill-time 844.3
mistimed
anachronous 833.3
untimely 844.6
mistiming 833.1
mistral 318.9
mistreat
maltreat 389.5
work evil 1000.6
mistreatment 389.2
mistress
ladylove 104.14
proprietor 470.2
teacher 571.2
governess 575.2
woman 665.17
wise woman 921.1
Mistress woman 77.9
madame 648.4
mistrial 598.5
mistrust
n suspiciousness 153.2
wariness 494.2
doubt 955.2
v suffer pangs of jealousy 153.3
doubt 955.6
mistrustful wary 494.9
doubting 955.9
misty
inconspicuous 32.6
formless 263.4
thin 270.16
rainy 316.11
foggy 319.10
obscure 522.15
vague 971.19
muddled 985.13
misunderstand
misinterpret 342.2
mistake 975.13
misunderstanding
misinterpretation 342.1
disagreement 456.2
mistake 975.3
misunderstood
disliked 99.9
misinterpreted 342.3
misusage misuse 389.1
solecism 531.2
grammatical error 975.7
misuse
n perversion 265.2
use 387.1
misemployment 389.1
misusage 389.1
corruption 393.2
mistake 975.3
v pervert 265.6
exploit 387.16
misemploy 389.4
corrupt 393.12
misdo 975.12
mite modicum 248.2
minute 258.7
child 302.3
insect 311.33
vermin 311.37
money 728.8
pittance 992.5
miter
n ecclesiastical insignia 647.4
joint 800.4
v hook 800.8
mitigate
weaken 16.10
relieve 120.5
abate 252.8
extenuate 600.12
moderate 670.6
relax 670.9
be changed 852.6
change 852.7
qualify 959.3
mitigating
relieving 120.9
assuaging 670.14
qualifying 959.7
mitigation
weakening 16.5
relief 120.1
pity 145.1
decrease 252.1
extenuation 600.5
modulation 670.2
change 852.1
mitigator 670.3
mitosis 305.16
mitzvah
act of kindness 143.7
rule 419.2
mix
n motion-picture editing 706.6
hodgepodge 797.6
predicament 1013.5
v make up 405.7
compose 796.3
admix 797.10
combine 805.3
confound 945.3
mixed
ambiguous 539.4
mingled 797.14
combined 805.5
imperfect 1003.4
mixed bag 797.6
mixed-blood 797.8
mixed drink beverage 10.49
drink 8.4
mixed marriage 563.1
mixed-up
complex 799.4
distracted 810.16
muddleheaded 922.18
confused 985.12
mixer
sociable person 582.16
dance 705.2
blender 797.9
control room 1034.7
radioman 1034.24
mixing mixture 797.1
radio broadcasting 1034.16
televising 1035.3
mixture
medicine 86.4
concoction 405.3
miscellany 770.13
difference 780.1
composition 796.1
blending 797.1
mixing 797.1
compound 797.5
combination 805.2
solution 1064.3
mix up mix 797.10
complicate 799.3
rearrange 811.3
confound 945.3
mistake 975.13
confuse 985.7
mix-up
rearrangement 810.2
confusion 985.3
mnemonic
n memory training 989.9
adj recollective 989.22
moan
n lament 115.3
v sigh 52.14
be discontented 108.6
lament 115.10
wail 115.13
complain 115.16
sough 318.21
moaning
n sigh 52.8
lamentation 115.1
adj lamenting 115.18
moat crack 224.2
trench 290.2
entrenchment 460.5
barrier 1012.5
mob association 617.1
clique 617.6
company 770.3
throng 770.4
multitude 884.3
the mob
the masses 606.2
the underworld 660.10
mobile
n work of art 712.10
sculpture 715.2
adj moving 172.7
upper-class 607.10
changeable 854.6
mobile home
trailer 179.19
abode 228.17
mobile unit 1035.7
mobility
motivity 172.3
class 607.1
changeableness 854.1
mobilization
motion 172.1
utilization 387.8
preparation 405.1
call to arms 458.8
militarization 458.10
enlistment 615.7
assemblage 770.1
mobilize
set in motion 172.6
prepare 405.6
call to arms 458.19
militarize 458.20
enlist 615.17
assemble 770.18
put together 800.5
Möbius strip 812.2
mob rule
anarchy 418.2

government 612.4
mobster bandit 483.4
evildoer 593.1
criminal 660.9
mock
n indignity 156.2
fake 354.13
gibe 508.2
v offend 156.5
impersonate 349.12
deceive 356.14
joke 489.13
scoff 508.9
adopt 621.4
adj imitation 336.8
spurious 354.26
similar 784.10
substitute 862.8
mocker 336.4
mockery
indignity 156.2
mimicry 336.2
insincerity 354.5
ridicule 508.1
burlesque 508.6
laughingstock 508.7
trifle 998.5
mock-heroic
comic 488.6
poetic 720.15
mocking
n adoption 621.2
adj ridiculing 508.12
mockingbird
imitator 336.4
songbird 710.23
mock-up
reproduction 336.3
artist's model 786.5
mod 841.13
modal
instrumental 384.8
conditional 765.6
modality
form 262.1
manner 384.1
instrumentality 384.3
state 765.1
mode form 262.1
manner 384.1
mood 530.11
style 532.2
fashion 578.1
octave species 709.10
shape 765.1
manner 765.4
syllogism 935.6
model
n form 262.1
measure 300.2
reproduction 336.3
original 337.2
image 349.5
figure 349.6
paragon 659.4
celebrity 662.9
arrangement 709.11
essence 767.2
duplicate 785.3
thing copied 786
pattern 786.1
ideal 786.4
rule 869.4
philosophy 932.2
beauty 1016.8
v form 262.7
sculpture 715.5
adj praiseworthy 509.20
exemplary 786.8
normal 869.8
perfected 1002.9
modeled
formative 262.9
sculptured 715.7
modeler 716.6
modeling
forming 262.5
imitation 336.1
sculpture 715.1
moderate
n centrist 611.10
moderatist 670.4
v slow 175.9
limit 210.5
mediate 466.6
restrain 670.6
qualify 959.3
adj sedate 106.14
slow 175.10
medium 246.3
lenient 427.7
neutral 467.7
centrist 611.18
cheap 633.7
temperate 668.9
moderating 670.10
middle 819.4
tolerable 999.20
mediocre 1005.7
moderation
sedateness 106.4
limitation 210.2
middle course 467.3
temperance 668.1
restraint 670.1
moderateness 670.1
moderato 708.55
moderator
arbitrator 466.4
judge 596.1
mitigator 670.3
modern
n modern man 841.4
adj fashionable 578.11
present 838.2
contemporary 841.13
modernist
poet 720.11
modern 841.4
modernization 841.3
modernize 841.6
modest
humble 137.10
meek 139.9
inferior 250.6
demurring 325.7
reticent 344.10
cheap 633.7
unselfish 652.5
decent 664.5
mediocre 1005.7
modesty
humility 137.1
unpretentiousness 139.1
meekness 139.1
demur 325.2
reticence 344.3
unselfishness 652.1
decency 664.2
mediocrity 1005.1
modicum minim 248.2
portion 477.5
piece 793.3
modifiable
changeable 854.6
convertible 858.18
modification
speech sound 524.12
differentiation 780.4
change 852.1
qualification 959.1
modified
changed 852.10
qualified 959.10
modifier syntax 530.2
transformer 852.5
modify
differentiate 780.6
change 852.7
qualify 959.3
modish dressed up 5.46
stylish 578.12
modern 841.13
modiste 5.36
modular partial 793.7
component 796.5
modulate inflect 524.28
moderate 670.6
be changed 852.6
change 852.7
qualify 959.3
modulation
intonation 524.6
abatement 670.2
harmonization 709.2
change 852.1
amplitude modulation 1034.14
modulator 670.3
module part 793.1
component 796.2
individual 872.4
spacecraft 1075.2
modus operandi 384.1
modus vivendi
behavior 321.1
truce 465.5
mogul skiing 753.1
personage 997.8
snow 1023.8
Mogul 575.10
moiety portion 477.5
community 617.2
piece 793.3
mid-distance 819.2
half 875.2
moil
n work 725.4
agitation 917.1
v drudge 725.14
seethe 915.12
moiré
n variegation 47.6
adj iridescent 47.10
moisten 1065.12
moistening
n wetting 1065.6
adj wetting 1065.18
moisture rain 316.1
liquidity 1061.1
dampness 1065.1
damp 1065.1
moisture-proof 1066.11
moisturizer 1065.3
molar 2.8
molasses
sweetening 66.2
adhesive 803.4
semiliquid 1062.5
mold
n germ 85.42
land 234.1
form 262.1
structure 266.1
plant 310.4
original 337.2
decay 393.6
nature 767.4
cast 785.6
die 786.6
kind 809.3
characteristic 865.4
disposition 978.3
blight 1001.2
v form 262.7
decay 393.22
sculpture 715.5
pot 742.6
conform 867.3
produce 892.8
imagine 986.14
moldable docile 433.13
teachable 570.18
pliant 1047.9
molded
formative 262.9
sculptured 715.7
made 892.18
molder
n sculptor 716.6
v quiet 173.8
decay 393.22
disintegrate 806.3
age 842.9
moldering
quiescent 173.12
blighted 393.42
disintegrative 806.5
stale 842.14
molding
forming 262.5
structure 266.1
sculpture 715.1
cast 785.6
production 892.2
moldy
malodorous 71.5
blighted 393.42
stale 842.14
mole the blind 30.4
growth 85.39
bulge 283.3

mark 517.5
buttress 901.4
blemish 1004.1
harbor 1009.6
barrier 1012.5
molecular 258.14
molecular weight
weight 297.5
chemistry 297.8
atomic weight 1060.5
molecule
modicum 248.2
atom 258.8
atomic cluster 1038.7
matter 1052.2
element 1060.2
molehill hill 237.4
pile 770.10
trifle 998.5
molest annoy 96.13
mistreat 389.5
work evil 1000.6
mollify relieve 120.5
pacify 465.7
calm 670.7
soften 1047.6
mollifying
n softening 1047.5
adj pacificatory 465.12
tranquilizing 670.15
softening 1047.16
mollycoddle
n weakling 16.6
effeminate male 77.11
spoiled child 427.4
v indulge 427.6
molt shed 6.10
waste 473.5
molten melted 1020.31
liquefied 1064.6
mom 560.12
moment prestige 417.4
period 824.1
second 824.2
short time 828.3
instant 830.3
influence 894.1
impulse 902.1
importance 997.1
momentary
transient 828.7
instantaneous 830.4
momently 850.8
moment of truth
period 824.1
crucial moment 843.5
unreliability 971.6
urgency 997.4
momentous
authoritative 417.15
eventful 831.10
influential 894.13
important 997.17
momentum
motion 172.1
course 172.2
impulse 902.1
monad atom 258.8
something 763.3
one 872.3
matter 1052.2
monarch 575.8
monarchic
sovereign 417.17
governmental 612.17
monarchism
radicalism 611.4
government 612.8
monarchist 611.9
monarchy
government 612.4
absolutism 612.9
monasterial
monastic 698.14
claustral 703.16
monastery 703.6
monastic
n celibate 565.2
religious 699.16
adj celibate 565.6
monachal 698.14
claustral 703.16
monasticism
celibacy 565.1
asceticism 667.1
monachism 698.4
monaural system 50.11
monde 578.6
monetary unit 728.1
money wealth 618.1
currency 728.1
moneybags 618.7
money changer
banker 729.11
broker 730.9
money-hungry 100.27
money in hand 728.18
money in the bank 472.6
money-laundering 673.2
moneylender
lender 620.3
banker 729.11
money-mad 100.27
moneymaking
n acquisition 472.1
adj gainful 472.16
paying 624.21
occupied 724.15
moneyman 729.9
money market 728.16
money order 728.11
money-raising 621.1
money-saving 635.6
monger 730.2
mongolism 922.9
mongoloid 922.22
Mongoloid 312.2
mongoloid idiot 924.8
mongrel
n cur 311.19
beast 660.6
hybrid 797.8
adj hybrid 797.15
mongrelization 797.4
mongrelize 797.13
moniker 527.3
monition
dissuasion 379.1
warning 399.1
advice 422.1
tip 551.3
monitor
n warner 399.4
adviser 422.3
shackle 428.4
informant 551.5
teaching fellow 571.4
superintendent 574.2
examiner 938.17
radioman 1034.24
television technician 1035.13
output device 1042.9
v be taught 570.11
examine 938.24
check 1034.26
monitoring
vigilance 339.4
televising 1035.3
monitory
n advice 422.1
adj premonitory 133.16
dissuasive 379.5
warning 399.7
advisory 422.8
informative 551.18
monk
wild animal 311.23
celibate 565.2
religious 699.16
monkey
n temper 152.6
wild animal 311.23
imitator 336.4
dupe 358.1
laughingstock 508.7
cheater 759.22
v trifle 998.15
monkey business 356.5
monkeying 998.9
monkeyshines
buffoonery 489.5
prank 489.10
monkey with 214.7
monkhood 698.4
monkish
inornate 499.9
celibate 565.6
monastic 698.14
mono 50.11
monochrome
n color system 35.7
adj chromatic 35.16
pictorial 712.21
monocle 29.3
monocratic
authoritative 417.15
imperious 417.16
governmental 612.17
monody
dirge 115.6
harmony 708.3
monophony 708.21
monogamist 563.11
monogram
identification 517.11
signature 527.10
letter 546.1
monograph 556.1
monolith
monument 549.12
rock 1059.1
monolithic
uniform 781.5
simple 798.6
stony 1059.12
monologist 542.2
monologue
soliloquy 542.1
regularity 781.2
monomania
obsession 926.13
engrossment 983.3
monomaniac
n fanatic 926.18
adj obsessed 926.33
monopolist
n restrictionist 428.6
self-seeker 651.3
adj monopolistic 469.11
monopolize hog 469.6
appropriate 480.19
purchase 733.7
corner 737.26
engross 983.13
monopoly
restraint 428.1
monopolization 469.3
manipulation 737.20
monorail 179.14
monosyllable 526.1
monotheism 675.5
monotheist 675.16
monotheistic 675.25
monotone
n tone 50.2
regularity 781.2
series 812.2
repetitiousness 849.4
adj sounding 50.15
monotonous 849.15
monotonous
tedious 118.9
same 781.6
continuous 812.8
monotone 849.15
monotony tone 50.2
tedium 118.1
regularity 781.2
continuity 812.1
repetitiousness 849.4
monsieur 76.7
Monsignor 648.5
monsoon season 313.1
wet weather 316.4
monster
n frightener 127.9
beast 144.14
largeness 257.11
behemoth 257.14
fiend 593.6
violent person 671.9
monstrosity 870.6
eyesore 1015.4
adj large 247.7
huge 257.20
monstrosity
hugeness 257.7
deformity 265.3
abnormality 870.1
oddity 870.3
monster 870.6
eyesore 1015.4

monstrous
large 247.7
huge 257.20
deformed 265.12
wicked 654.16
base 661.12
savage 671.21
freakish 870.13
absurd 923.11
excessive 993.16
terrible 1000.9
unshapely 1015.8
montage picture 712.11
photograph 714.3
month 824.2
monthlies 12.9
monthlong 827.12
monthly
n periodical 555.1
adj recurrent 849.13
momentary 850.8
monument
tower 272.6
gravestone 309.17
figure 349.6
marker 517.10
monumental record 549.12
monumental
large 247.7
huge 257.20
high 272.14
sculptural 715.6
monumentalize 829.5
moo 60.2
mooch 440.15
moocher
nonworker 331.11
beggar 440.8
guest 585.6
mooching
n beggary 440.6
adj supplicatory 440.16
mood mode 530.11
plot 722.4
syllogism 935.6
humor 978.4
mood disorder 92.14
moody sullen 110.24
glum 112.25
capricious 364.5
inconstant 854.7
moolah 728.2
moon
n moment 824.2
changeableness 854.4
light source 1026.1
satellite 1072.11
v idle 331.12
muse 985.9
moonbeam 1025.11
moonfaced 257.18
mooning
n abstractedness 985.2
adj abstracted 985.11
moonless 1027.13
moonlight
n moonshine 1025.11
v distill 88.30
work 724.12
moonlighting 724.5
moon-shaped 279.11
moonshine
n liquor 88.14
bootleg liquor 88.18
humbug 354.14
bull 520.3
specious argument 936.3
moonlight 1025.11
v distill 88.30
deal illicitly 732.7
moonshiner
liquor dealer 88.19
racketeer 732.4
moonstruck 926.26
moor
n plain 236.1
highlands 237.1
plateau 237.3
marsh 243.1
v settle 159.17
anchor 182.15
land 186.8
bind 428.10
fasten 800.7
secure 855.8
mooring
establishment 159.7
anchor 180.16
landing 186.2
moose 311.5
moot
v propose 439.5
argue 935.16
adj litigious 598.21
theoretical 951.13
doubted 955.12
unproved 958.8
doubtful 971.17
moot point 938.10
mop
n head of hair 3.4
v wash 79.19
grimace 265.8
mope
n sourpuss 112.13
idler 331.8
v sulk 110.14
grieve 112.17
mopery 331.4
mopey
sullen 110.24
glum 112.25
unsociable 583.5
moping
sullen 110.24
glum 112.25
mop up wash 79.19
complete 407.6
moral
n warning 399.1
rule 419.2
lesson 568.7
maxim 974.1
adj ethical 636.6
dutiful 641.13
honest 644.13
virtuous 653.6
moral climate
ethics 636.1
climate 978.5
moral code 636.1
morale
cooperation 450.1
morality 636.3
virtue 653.1
mood 978.4
moral fiber
will power 359.4
virtue 653.1
moralistic
preceptive 419.4
advisory 422.8
ethical 636.6
morality lesson 568.7
morals 636.3
virtue 653.1
moralize 568.16
morals ethics 636.1
morality 636.3
moral support 901.1
moral turpitude
knavery 645.2
corruption 654.5
morass
marsh 243.1
complex 799.2
confusion 810.2
predicament 1013.4
moratorium
grace period 625.2
delay 846.2
morbid
unwholesome 85.55
diseased 85.60
terrible 127.30
curious 981.5
morbidity disease 85.1
unhealthiness 85.3
morbific 82.5
morceau scrap 248.3
treatise 556.1
mordancy
acrimony 17.5
pungency 68.1
causticity 144.8
vigor 544.3
mordant
n cauterant 1020.15
adj acrimonious 17.14
pungent 68.6
caustic 144.23
witty 489.15
vigorous 544.11
more
n plurality 883.1
adj additional 253.10
plural 883.7
adv increasingly 251.9
additionally 253.11
more or less
approximately 223.23
some 244.6
moreover 253.11
mores custom 373.1
culture 373.2
etiquette 580.3
climate 978.5
more than enough
n plenty 991.2
superabundance 993.2
satiety 994.1
adv superabundantly 993.24
morgue 309.9
moribund
unhealthy 85.54
dying 307.33
languid 331.20
Mormon
Latter-day Saint 675.22
adj Koranic 683.14
morn 314.1
morning
n noonday 314.5
morn 314.1
adj matin 314.6
adv constantly 847.7
Morning 314.2
moron 924.8
moronic
mentally deficient 922.22
foolish 923.8
morose
sullen 110.24
glum 112.25
unsociable 583.5
morpheme
grammar 262.6
sign 518.6
morphology 526.3
Morpheus 22.11
morphine 22.10
morphological
grammar 262.11
structural 266.6
linguistic 523.19
morphemic 526.21
morphology
form 262.6
structure 266.1
morphemics 526.3
grammar 530.1
Morse code 523.12
morsel bite 8.2
delicacy 10.8
scrap 248.3
piece 793.3
mortal
n person 312.5
adj perishable 307.34
deadly 308.23
human 312.13
transient 828.7
mortal blow 308.10
mortality
death rate 307.13
deadliness 308.9
humankind 312.1
humanness 312.8
transience 828.1
mortar
n launcher 462.21
instrument of conversion 858.10
building material 1054.2
v plaster 295.25
pull the trigger 459.22
mortar and pestle 1051.7
mortgage
n mortgage deed 438.4
v pledge 438.10
mortgage company 620.4
mortgaged 623.8

mortgagee
warrantee 438.7
lender 620.3
creditor 622.4
mortgaging 621.1
mortgagor
guarantor 438.6
debtor 623.4
mortician 309.8
mortification
gangrene 85.40
chagrin 96.4
embarrassment 98.6
humiliation 137.2
penance 658.3
asceticism 667.1
mortified
diseased 85.60
distressed 96.22
humiliated 137.14
decayed 393.40
mortify chagrin 96.15
embarrass 98.13
humiliate 137.4
decay 393.22
mortifying
embarrassing 98.21
humiliating 137.15
mortise interact 777.6
hook 800.8
mortuary
n morgue 309.9
adj deathly 307.29
funereal 309.22
mosaic
n check 47.4
picture 712.11
adj checked 47.14
Mosaic 683.11
mosey 175.6
Moslem
n Muslim 675.23
adj Muslim 675.31
Moslemism 675.13
mosque 703.2
mosquito 311.38
moss marsh 243.1
plant 310.4
mossback
back number 842.8
conservative 853.4
mossbacked 303.18
mossy 310.42
most
n supremacy 249.3
major part 792.6
majority 883.2
adj extreme 247.13
superlative 249.13
majority 883.9
adv extremely 247.22
the most 249.16
most likely 968.8
mot witticism 489.7
maxim 974.1
mote modicum 248.2
minute 258.7
lightness 298.2
stronghold 460.6
intruder 774.2
motel 228.16
moth-eaten trite 117.9
stricken in years 303.18
blighted 393.42
stale 842.14
mother
n parent 559.3
genetrix 560.11
bad person 660.5
author 886.4
producer 892.7
v procreate 78.8
foster 449.16
engender 818.14
care for 1008.19
adj native 226.5
Mother 648.5
Mother Earth 1072.10
mother figure 92.31
motherhood
blood relationship 559.1
maternity 560.3
mothering 449.3
mother-in-law 564.2
motherland 232.2
motherless
helpless 19.18
bereaved 307.35
forlorn 584.12
mother lode 618.4
Mother Nature 677.8
mother-of-pearl
n variegation 47.6
iridescence 1025.18
adj soft-colored 35.22
iridescent 47.10
mother superior
mistress 575.2
nun 699.18
mother tongue 523.3
motif edging 211.7
ornamental motif 498.7
passage 708.24
plot 722.4
topic 937.1
motile moving 172.7
changeable 854.6
motility
mobility 172.3
changeableness 854.1
motion
n exercise 84.2
movement 172.1
travel 177.1
activity 330.1
proposal 439.2
gesture 517.14
bill 613.9
baseball team 745.2
process 889.2
trend 896.2
mechanism 1040.4
v gesture 517.21
motionless
unmoving 173.13
passive 329.6
inactive 331.17
motion picture
cinematography 706.1
pictures 714.8
motion sickness 85.30
motivate
set in motion 172.6
move 375.12
induce 886.11
impel 902.11
motivated
moved 375.30
teachable 570.18
motivating force 17.6
motivation
motion 172.1
reason 375.1
moving 375.2
teachableness 570.5
motivational
moving 172.7
motivating 375.25
motive
n reason 375.1
intention 380.1
passage 708.24
topic 937.1
adj moving 172.7
motivating 375.25
impelling 902.23
propulsive 904.14
motive power
energizer 17.6
mobility 172.3
impulse 902.1
pushing 904.1
machinery 1040.3
motivity 172.3
mot juste 533.1
motley
n costume 5.9
comedy 704.6
buffoon 707.10
v variegate 47.7
adj chromatic 35.16
variegated 47.9
mottled 47.12
different 780.7
mixed 797.14
nonuniform 782.3
motor
n automobile 179.9
instrument of conversion 858.10
machinery 1040.3
v ride 177.33
adj moving 172.7
motorboat
n powerboat 180.4
v navigate 182.13
motorcade 812.3
motorcar 179.9
motorcycle
n cycle 179.8
v ride 177.33
motorcyclist 178.11
motor-driven 1040.14
motoring 177.6
motor inn 228.16
motorist 178.10
motorize 1040.13
motor launch 180.4
motorman 178.12
motor oil 1056.4
motor vehicle 179.9
mottle
n spottiness 47.3
mark 517.5
v variegate 47.7
mark 517.19
mottled 47.12
motto heraldry 647.2
caption 937.2
maxim 974.1
slogan 974.4
moue scowl 110.9
grimace 265.4
mound
n hill 237.4
monument 549.12
baseball 745.1
pile 770.10
barrier 1012.5
v pile 770.19
mount
n ascent 193.1
mountain 237.6
horse 311.10
hunter 311.13
jockey 757.2
frame 901.10
v copulate 75.21
move 172.5
go on horseback 177.34
soar 184.39
ascend 193.8
climb 193.11
get on 193.12
rise 200.8
increase 251.6
tower 272.10
grow 272.12
dramatize 704.28
give a lift 912.7
mountain mount 237.6
quantity 247.3
plateau 272.4
bulge 283.3
mountain climber 193.6
mountain dew 88.18
mountaineer
traveler 178.1
climber 193.6
wilderness settler 227.10
mountain lion 311.22
mountain man 227.10
mountainous
hilly 237.8
large 247.7
huge 257.20
high 272.18
mountain range
mountain 237.6
plateau 272.4
mountaintop
summit 198.2
mountain 237.6
mountebank
impostor 357.6
entertainer 707.1
mountebankery 354.7
mounted policeman
rider 178.8
policeman 1008.15
Mounties 1008.17

mounting
n course 172.2
ascent 193.1
increase 251.1
production 704.13
frame 901.10
adj flowing 172.8
ascending 193.14
high 272.14
Mount Olympus 681.9
mount up to
cost 630.13
total 792.8
mourn distress 98.14
grieve 112.17
lament 115.10
mourner
lamenter 115.8
griever 309.7
mournful
distressing 98.20
sorrowful 112.26
plaintive 115.19
funereal 309.22
mourning
n lamentation 115.1
weeds 115.7
adj lamenting 115.18
mouse woman 77.6
trauma 85.38
shrinking violet 139.6
runt 258.4
coward 491.5
input device 1042.4
mouse-colored 39.4
mouser 311.21
mousetrap trap 356.12
rocket launcher 1074.10
mousse sweets 10.40
foam 320.2
mousy gray 39.4
silent 51.10
fearful 127.23
shy 139.12
rodent 311.45
cowardly 491.10
mouth
n digestive system 2.18
eater 8.16
inlet 242.1
maw 292.4
v chew 8.27
lick 73.9
grimace 265.8
be hypocritical 354.23
speak 524.19
mumble 525.9
declaim 543.10
mouthful bite 8.2
high-sounding words 545.3
full measure 794.3
mouthing
hypocrisy 354.6
mumbling 525.4
lip service 693.2
mouth organ 711.10
mouthpiece
telephone 347.4
mediator 466.3
informant 551.5
spokesman 576.5
lawyer 597.3
wind instrument 711.6
boxing 754.1
mouthwash
cleanser 79.17
dentifrice 86.22
mouth-watering
n saliva 13.3
adj appetizing 63.10
desirable 100.30
alluring 377.8
mouthy 545.9
movable
transferable 176.18
changeable 854.6
influenceable 894.15
movable feast 20.4
movables
furniture 229.1
belongings 471.2
move
n act 328.3
attempt 403.2
stratagem 415.3
cheating 759.13
process 889.2
expedient 995.2
v affect 93.14
excite 105.12
touch 145.5
settle 159.17
progress 162.2
budge 172.5
set in motion 172.6
remove 176.11
travel 177.18
behave 321.4
act 328.4
motivate 375.12
admonish 422.6
propose 439.5
sell 734.8
influence 894.7
impel 902.11
push 904.9
move away
recede 168.2
depart 188.6
move back 163.6
moved
affected 93.23
excited 105.20
motivated 375.30
move in
settle 159.17
inhabit 225.7
take possession 472.10
gain influence 894.12
move into
inhabit 225.7
undertake 404.3
movement
defecation 12.2
feces 12.4
exercise 84.2
motion 172.1
moving 176.4
travel 177.1
behavior 321.1
act 328.3
activity 330.1
operation 458.5
gesture 517.14
front 609.33
passage 708.24
rhythm 709.22
style 712.8
meter 720.7
plot 722.4
company 770.3
cause 886.9
trend 896.2
mechanism 1040.4
move out 188.6
mover wanderer 178.2
prompter 375.10
doer 726.1
cheater 759.22
author 886.4
producer 892.7
mover and shaker 375.1
movie
n motion pictures 706.1
adj motion-picture 706.9
moviegoer
playgoer 704.27
attender 221.5
movie star 707.4
moving
n motion 172.1
removal 176.4
travel 177.1
motivation 375.2
adj affecting 93.22
distressing 98.20
exciting 105.30
pitiful 145.8
progressive 162.6
stirring 172.7
traveling 177.36
motivating 375.25
lofty 544.14
impelling 902.23
moving spirit
inspiration 375.9
prompter 375.10
moving staircase 912.4
mow
n scowl 110.9
grimace 265.4
garner 386.7
pile 770.10
v grimace 265.8
shorten 268.6
smooth 287.5
harvest 1069.19
mow down raze 395.19
fell 913.5
moxie energy 17.3
power 18.1
liveliness 330.2
pluck 359.3
skill 413.1
fearlessness 492.4
MP legislator 610.3
policeman 1008.15
police 1008.17
Mr common man 606.5
man 76.7
Mr Universe 15.6
Mrs 77.9
Mrs Grundy
fussbudget 495.7
social convention 579.1
conventionalist 579.3
conformist 867.2
Ms 77.9
MS 547.10
much
n quantity 247.3
plenty 991.2
adj many 247.8
plentiful 991.7
adv greatly 247.15
much ado about nothing
overreaction 355.2
triviality 998.3
mucilage
adhesive 803.4
lubricant 1056.2
semiliquid 1062.5
muck
n filth 80.7
slime 80.8
fertilizer 890.4
mud 1062.8
v dirty 80.15
muck around 998.15
mucked up
spoiled 393.29
complex 799.4
confused 810.16
muckrake 512.10
muckraker
disparager 512.6
critic 946.7
muckraking
defamation 512.2
smear campaign 609.14
muck up dirty 80.15
spoil 393.11
complicate 799.3
confuse 811.3
make a boner 975.15
mucky filthy 80.23
slimy 1062.14
mucous 1062.13
mucous membrane 2.6
mucus
digestive secretion 13.2
filth 80.7
lubricant 1056.2
semiliquid 1062.5
mud dirt 80.6
marsh 243.1
muck 1062.8
muddle
n formlessness 263.1
fiasco 410.6
disorder 810.2
confusion 985.3
v deform 263.3
bungle 414.11
complicate 799.3
disorder 810.9
disarrange 811.3
confound 945.3
perplex 971.13
make uncertain 971.15
confuse 985.7
muddled
intoxicated 88.31

confused 810.16
muddleheaded 922.18
in a dilemma 971.25
in a muddle 985.13
muddlehead 924.4
muddleheaded
fuddlebrained 922.18
muddled 985.13
muddle through
make one's way 162.4
manage 409.12
muddy
v dirty 80.15
make uncertain 971.15
adj colorless 36.7
dingy 38.11
dirty 80.22
marshy 243.3
obscure 522.15
slimy 1062.14
mud flat 243.1
mudhole pothole 284.3
mud puddle 1062.9
mudlark 178.3
mudpack 1016.12
mud puddle 1062.9
mudslinger 512.6
mudslinging
defamation 512.2
smear campaign 609.14
muff
n bungle 414.5
bungler 414.9
goof 975.6
v bungle 414.11
muffin 10.31
muffle
n silencer 51.4
nose 283.8
v proof 15.14
silence 51.8
mute 51.9
cover 295.19
cover up 345.8
muffled muted 52.17
covered 295.31
latent 519.5
muffled tone 52.2
muffler 51.4
muffle up clothe 5.39
cover up 345.8
mufti civilian dress 5.8
disarmament 465.6
judge 596.3
clergy 699.12
mug
n face 216.4
mouth 292.4
dupe 358.2
laughingstock 508.7
ruffian 593.4
photograph 714.3
v grimace 265.8
attack 459.15
rob 482.16
rage 671.11
overact 704.31
photograph 714.14
mugger
assailant 459.12
robber 483.5
nerd 572.10
ruffian 593.4
violent person 671.9
mugging attack 459.1
theft 482.3
muggy sultry 1019.28
moist 1065.15
mug shot 714.3
mugwump
vacillator 362.5
timeserver 363.4
free agent 430.12
neutral 467.4
nonpartisan 609.28
mugwumpery
irresolution 362.1
neutrality 467.1
nonpartisanism 609.26
Muhammad 684.4
Muhammadan
n Muslim 675.23
adj Muslim 675.31
Muhammadanism 675.13
mulatto 797.8
mulch 1069.17
mulct
n fine 603.3
v cheat 356.18
fine 603.5
mule
beast of burden 176.8
spinner 271.5
ass 311.16
obstinate person 361.6
smuggler 732.5
hybrid 797.8
mulish ungulate 311.46
obstinate 361.8
mull
n point of land 283.9
v sweeten 66.3
heat 1020.17
mullion 273.4
mull over 931.13
multicolor
n variegation 47.1
adj variegated 47.9
multifaceted
sided 218.7
mixed 797.14
multifarious
different 780.7
multiform 783.3
complex 799.4
numerous 884.6
multifold
multiform 783.3
multiple 883.8
numerous 884.6
multiform 783.3
multiformity
diversity 783.1
multifariousness 783.1
multilateral
sided 218.7
multiangular 278.11
multilingual 523.16
multimedia 1042.18
multimillionaire 618.7
multinational 797.14
multiparous 78.15
multipartite 802.20
multiphase 783.3
multiple
n multiplication 883.4
adj multiform 783.3
multiplied 883.8
numerous 884.6
multiplication
procreation 78.2
multiplying 883.4
proliferation 890.2
notation 1017.2
multiplication table 883.4
multiplicity
multiformity 783.1
numerousness 884.1
multiplied
increased 251.7
multiple 883.8
multiplier 883.4
multiply procreate 78.8
grow 251.6
proliferate 883.6
teem with 884.5
produce 890.7
calculate 1017.18
multiplying
n multiplication 883.4
adj increasing 251.8
multiracial
nonuniform 782.3
mixed 797.14
multitude
quantity 247.3
assembly 770.4
throng 884.3
multitudinous
much 247.8
numerous 884.6
mum
n silence 51.1
adj mute 51.12
taciturn 344.9
interj silence! 51.14
mumble
n murmur 52.4
mumbling 525.4
v chew 8.27
murmur 52.10
speak 524.25
mutter 525.9
mumbling
n murmur 52.4
muttering 525.4
adj murmuring 52.18
mumbo jumbo
juggling 356.5
obscurity 522.3
jargon 523.9
occultism 689.1
incantation 691.4
charm 691.5
nonsense 520.2
Mumbo Jumbo 680.9
mummer
masquerader 357.7
entertainer 707.1
actor 707.2
mummery
hypocrisy 354.6
cover 356.11
ceremony 580.4
sanctimony 693.1
acting 704.8
mummification
corpse 307.16
embalmment 309.3
preserving 397.3
drying 1066.3
mummify
lay out 309.21
embalm 397.10
dry 1066.6
mummy corpse 307.16
mother 560.12
dryness 1066.2
mumps sulks 110.10
blues 112.6
munch
n bite 8.2
v chew 8.27
munching 8.1
mundane
unsacred 686.3
secularist 695.16
prosaic 721.5
unimaginative 987.5
municipal building 230.5
municipality
town 230.1
bureau 594.4
munificence 485.1
munificent 485.4
munition
n equipment 385.4
v equip 385.8
munitions
equipment 385.4
store 386.1
arms 462.1
mural
n picture 712.11
adj partitioned 213.11
murder
n homicide 308.2
v commit murder 308.16
bungle 414.11
murderer 308.11
murderous
cruel 144.26
slaughterous 308.24
savage 671.21
murderous insanity 926.7
murk
n gloom 112.7
obscurity 522.3
darkishness 1027.2
v blacken 38.7
darken 1027.9
adj darkish 1027.15
murky dingy 38.11
gloomy 112.24
obscure 522.15
vague 971.19
stained 1004.10
darkish 1027.15
murmur
n murmuring 52.4
lament 115.3
v mutter 52.10
complain 115.15
sigh 318.21

speak 524.25
mumble 525.9
murmurer 108.3
murmuring
n murmur 52.4
complaint 115.4
mumbling 525.4
adj murmurous 52.18
discontented 108.7
muscle
n the muscles 2.3
muscularity 15.2
exertion 725.1
v exert strength 15.12
thrust 902.12
adj skeleton 2.26
muscle-bound
firm 425.7
able-bodied 15.16
muscle in 214.5
muscle man
strong man 15.6
hulk 15.7
ruffian 593.4
violent person 671.10
muscular skeleton 2.26
able-bodied 15.16
muscularity 15.2
musculature
the muscles 2.3
muscularity 15.2
muse
n inspiration 375.9
abstractedness 985.2
creative thought 986.2
v remark 524.24
consider 931.12
moon 985.9
Muse
the Muses 720.10
genius 920.8
museum gallery 386.9
preserve 397.7
collection 770.11
museum piece
work of art 712.10
oddity 870.5
mush
n sentimentality 93.8
face 216.4
mouth 292.4
pulp 1063.2
v march 177.30
mushroom
n drugs 87.19
plant 310.4
v grow 14.2
expand 259.7
grow round 282.7
mushy
wishy-washy 16.17
sentimental 93.21
pulpy 1063.6
music
harmonious sound 708.1
score 708.28
harmonics 709.1
musical
n musical theater 708.34
adj musically inclined 708.47
melodious 708.48
rhyming 720.17
musical comedy 708.34
musicality
melody 708.2
musicianship 708.31
harmonics 709.1
music box 711.15
music director 710.17
music festival 708.32
music hall hall 197.4
theater 704.14
musician
entertainer 707.1
music maker 710.1
musico 710.1
musicianship 708.31
music lover 710.21
music maker 710.1
musicologist 710.20
musicology 709.1
music roll score 708.28
keyboard instrument 711.12
music school 567.7
musing
n consideration 931.2
thoughtfulness 931.3
abstractedness 985.2
dreaminess 986.8
adj cognitive 931.21
abstracted 985.11
musk 70.2
musketeer
infantryman 461.9
shooter 904.8
musketry
gunfire 459.8
arms 462.1
ballistics 462.3
throwing 904.2
Muslim
n Muhammadan 675.23
adj Islamic 675.31
Muslimism 675.13
Muslim rulers 608.7
muss 811.2
mussed up 810.14
mussy 810.15
must
n fetidness 71.2
wine 88.17
duty 641.1
requirement 963.2
blight 1001.2
v be necessary 963.10
adj in heat 75.28
mandatory 420.12
obligatory 641.15
mustache 3.11
mustang 311.10
mustard plaster 86.33
muster
n call to arms 458.8
enlistment 615.7
assemblage 770.1
roll 871.6
v avail oneself of 387.14
summon 420.11
call to arms 458.19
enlist 615.17
come together 770.16
assemble 770.18
mustering out 465.6
muster roll 871.6
muster up
prompt 375.13
summon 420.11
must have 963.9
musty malodorous 71.5
in heat 75.28
trite 117.9
blighted 393.42
stale 842.14
mutability
death rate 307.13
nonuniformity 782.1
transience 828.1
changeableness 854.1
mutable mortal 307.34
irresolute 362.9
nonuniform 782.3
transient 828.7
changeable 854.6
mutant
n violent person 671.9
transformation 852.3
adj savage 671.21
changed 852.10
mutate diversify 782.2
be changed 852.6
change 852.7
mutation
phonetics 524.13
transformation 852.3
mute
n dummy 51.3
silencer 51.4
mourner 309.7
speech sound 524.12
supporting actor 707.7
music 711.22
v muffle 51.9
adj mum 51.12
taciturn 344.9
stammering 525.13
inanimate 1055.5
muted muffled 52.17
phonetic 524.30
mutilate excise 255.10
deform 265.7
injure 393.13
tear apart 802.14
mutilated
deformed 265.12
impaired 393.27
garbled 795.5
mutilation
trauma 85.38
excision 255.3
deformity 265.3
impairment 393.1
severance 802.2
mutineer
n rebel 327.5
anarchist 418.3
v revolt 327.7
mutinous
unwilling 325.5
rebellious 327.11
lawless 418.5
mutiny
n revolt 327.4
lawlessness 418.1
v revolt 327.7
mutter
n murmur 52.4
lament 115.3
mumbling 525.4
v murmur 52.10
complain 115.15
sigh 318.21
speak 524.25
mumble 525.9
mutterer 108.3
muttering
n murmur 52.4
mumbling 525.4
adj murmuring 52.18
discontented 108.7
mutton mouton 10.16
sheep 311.7
muttonhead 924.4
muttonheaded 922.17
mutual
cooperative 450.5
communal 476.9
accompanying 769.9
correlative 777.11
interchangeable 863.5
mutual attraction
inclination 100.3
relation 775.1
attraction 907.1
mutual company 1008.4
mutual friend 588.1
mutual fund 737.16
mutuality
cooperation 450.1
accord 455.1
correlation 777.1
interchange 863.1
mutual understanding
unanimity 332.5
understanding 788.2
muzzle
n silencer 51.4
nose 283.8
mouth 292.4
shackle 428.4
v disable 19.10
silence 51.8
muzzy drunk 88.33
inarticulate 525.12
muddleheaded 922.18
muddled 985.13
myopia 28.3
myopic
poor-sighted 28.11
undiscerning 922.14
unwise 923.10
myriad
n thousand 882.10
plenty 991.2
adj numerous 884.6
myrmidon
retainer 577.1
employee 577.3
follower 616.8
myrrh 70.2
myself 865.5
mysterious
awesome 122.11
secret 345.11
concealed 346.11

inexplicable 522.18
ambiguous 539.4
occult 689.23
supernatural 870.15
unknown 930.17
bewildering 971.27
mystery
wonderfulness 122.3
secret 345.5
inexplicability 522.6
enigma 522.8
occultism 689.1
rite 701.3
vocation 724.6
supernaturalism 870.7
the unknown 930.7
bewilderment 971.3
mystic
n occultist 689.11
adj latent 519.5
inexplicable 522.18
epiphanic 683.13
occult 689.23
mystical
inexplicable 522.18
epiphanic 683.13
occult 689.23
mysticism
revelation 683.10
occultism 689.1
mystification
concealment 346.1
obscurity 522.3
misteaching 569.1
occultism 689.1
sophistry 936.1
mystified
in a dilemma 971.25
at an impasse 1013.24
mystify
make unintelligible 522.12
misteach 569.3
quibble 936.9
perplex 971.13
mystifying
misteaching 569.6
bewildering 971.27
mystique
illustriousness 662.6
cult 675.2
opinion 953.6
myth
fabrication 354.10
tradition 842.2
figment of the imagination 986.5
mythical
fabricated 354.29
distinguished 662.16
mythic 678.15
fictional 722.7
extraordinary 870.14
fictitious 986.21
mythical monsters 127.9
mythicize 722.6
mythmaker
narrator 722.5
imaginer 986.12
mythological
mythic 678.15
fictional 722.7
legendary 842.12
fictitious 986.21
mythology
mythicism 678.14
tradition 842.2
mythomania 354.8
nab arrest 429.16
acquire 472.9
capture 480.18
nabbing 480.2
nabob governor 575.13
rich man 618.7
personage 997.8
nacre variegation 47.6
iridescence 1025.18
nacré 47.10
nacreous
soft-colored 35.22
variegated 47.10
iridescent 1025.37
nada 762.2
nadir bottom 199.1
boundary 211.3
base 274.4
nag
n tormentor 96.10
horse 311.10
oatburner 311.12
jockey 757.2
v annoy 96.13
urge 375.14
importune 440.12
niggle 510.16
remind 989.20
nagging
n importunity 440.3
criticism 510.4
adj peevish 110.22
importunate 440.18
critical 510.23
unforgettable 989.26
naiad 678.10
naïf dupe 358.1
simple soul 416.3
nail acquire 472.9
seize 480.14
catch 480.17
punish 604.15
hook 800.8
recognize 989.12
nail down
stabilize 855.7
prove 957.10
make sure 970.11
naive immature 301.10
artless 416.5
natural 499.7
foolable 923.12
ignorant 930.12
trusting 953.22
gullible 954.9
naïveté
artlessness 416.1
naturalness 499.2
gullibility 954.2
naked nude 6.14
visible 31.6
open 292.17
manifest 348.10
unadorned 499.8
unmixed 798.7
exposed 1006.15
naked eye organ 2.9
eye 27.9
field of view 31.3
namby-pamby
n weakling 16.6
sentimentality 93.8
adj frail 16.14
sentimental 93.21
overnice 500.18
mediocre 1005.7
name
n appellation 527.3
repute 662.1
celebrity 662.9
personage 997.8
v nominate 371.19
designate 517.18
denominate 527.11
appoint 615.11
specify 865.11
cite 957.13
number 1017.17
adj important 997.17
name-calling 512.2
named chosen 371.26
called 527.14
former 814.5
name-dropper
snob 141.7
upstart 606.7
self-seeker 651.3
nameless
anonymous 528.3
unrenowned 661.14
name of the game 518.1
namesake 527.3
naming
n nomination 371.8
indication 517.3
calling 527.2
appointment 615.2
adj indicative 517.23
nanny
female animal 77.10
goat 311.8
nurse 1008.8
nap
n snooze 22.3
texture 294.1
v sleep 22.13
napery material 4.1
dry goods 735.3
napkin 8.13
nappies 5.19
napping sleepy 22.21
unaware 930.13
unalert 984.8
abstracted 985.11
nappy feathery 3.27
intoxicated 88.31
pily 294.7
narc detective 576.10
policeman 1008.15
narcissism
perversion 75.11
vanity 140.1
selfishness 651.1
narcissist
sexual pervert 75.16
egotist 140.5
self-seeker 651.3
narcissistic vain 140.8
egotistic 140.10
selfish 651.5
Narcissus egotist 140.5
beauty 1016.10
narcosis stupor 22.6
insensibility 25.1
deadness 94.2
apathy 94.4
narcotic
n anesthetic 25.3
drug 87.3
adj sleep-inducing 22.23
deadening 25.9
sedative 86.45
palliative 670.16
narcotics addict 87.21
narcotics agent 576.10
narcotics pusher 732.4
narcotics traffic 732.1
narcotize
put to sleep 22.20
deaden 25.4
numb 94.8
relieve 120.5
moderate 670.6
narcotized
sleepy 22.21
insensible 25.6
unconscious 25.8
intoxicated 87.23
unfeeling 94.9
nares
olfactory organ 69.5
nose 283.8
narrate tell 719.6
fabricate 722.6
narration
description 349.2
story 719.3
fiction 722.1
narrative 722.2
fabrication 722.3
narrative
n story 719.3
fiction 722.1
narration 722.2
fabrication 722.3
adj narrational 719.8
poetic 720.15
fictional 722.8
narrator 722.5
narrow
n inlet 242.1
narrow place 270.3
v limit 210.5
contract 260.7
constrict 270.11
restrict 428.9
simplify 798.4
specialize 866.4
qualify 959.3
adj limited 210.7
slender 270.14
meticulous 339.12
stingy 484.9
prudish 500.19
phonetic 524.30
poor 619.7
exclusive 773.9

narrow-minded 980.10
meager 992.10
narrow down 159.11
narrow escape 369.2
narrow-gauge 270.14
narrowing
n contraction 260.1
tapering 270.2
exclusion 773.1
simplification 798.2
adj restrictive 428.12
narrow margin 780.2
narrow-mindedness
small-mindedness 980.1
narrowness 980.1
narrows inlet 242.1
narrow place 270.3
narrow the gap
approach 167.3
converge 169.2
nasal
n speech sound 524.12
adj respiratory 2.32
phonetic 524.30
inarticulate 525.12
nasalization 525.1
nasalize 525.10
nascency birth 1.1
origin 818.4
nascent 818.15
nasty
v defile 80.17
adj unpleasant 64.7
filthy 80.23
offensive 98.18
malicious 144.20
ill-bred 505.6
obscene 666.9
terrible 1000.9
nasty crack 489.7
nasty look 510.8
natal native 226.5
beginning 818.15
nation population 227.1
country 232.1
humankind 312.1
race 559.4
the nation 606.1
national
n citizen 227.4
adj public 312.16
racial 559.7
populational 606.8
universal 864.14
national anthem 458.12
national assembly 613.1
national debt 623.1
national defense 460.2
national emergency 458.10
National Guard 461.24
nationalism
nationhood 232.6
patriotism 591.2
foreign policy 609.5
nationalist 591.3
nationality
nativeness 226.1
country 232.1
nationhood 232.6
humankind 312.1
patriotism 591.2
nationalization
naturalization 226.3
communization 476.3
attachment 480.5
socialism 611.6
nationalize
communize 476.7
attach 480.20
politicize 611.16
national park 397.7
native
n dweller 227.2
indigene 227.3
adj indigenous 226.5
undeveloped 406.13
natural 416.6
plain 499.7
innate 767.8
Native American 312.3
native environment 228.18
native land 232.2
native language 523.3
nativity birth 1.1
nativeness 226.1
origin 818.4
astrology 1072.20
NATO 437.2
natter
n chatter 540.3
v speak 524.20
chatter 540.5
natty chic 578.13
tidy 807.8
natural
n sure success 409.2
talented person 413.12
note 709.14
blackjack 759.11
oddity 870.4
idiot 924.8
adj typical 349.15
native 406.13
artless 416.6
plain 499.7
elegant 533.6
plain-speaking 535.3
related 559.6
informal 581.3
innate 767.8
lifelike 784.16
normal 869.8
instinctive 934.6
genuine 973.15
natural history 1068.3
naturalism
naturalness 416.2
normality 869.1
genuineness 973.7
materialism 1052.6
naturalist
n materialist 1052.7
biologist 1068.2
adj materialist 1052.12
naturalistic
descriptive 349.14
typical 349.15
normal 869.8
genuine 973.15
materialist 1052.12
naturalization
naturalized citizenship 226.3
habituation 373.7
conversion 858.1
naturalize
grant citizenship 226.4
accustom 373.9
convert 858.11
naturalized
adopted 226.6
accustomed 373.15
converted 858.19
naturalized citizen 227.4
natural law 869.4
natural resource 1054.1
natural right 642.1
natural science
science 928.10
physics 1018.1
natural selection 861.3
natural state 406.3
natural world 1052.2
nature
naturalness 406.3
unaffectedness 416.2
character 767.4
kind 809.3
characteristic 865.4
disposition 978.3
matter 1052.2
universe 1072.1
Nature 677.8
naturist 6.3
naturistic naked 6.14
normal 869.8
naught 762.2
naughty
misbehaving 322.5
disobedient 327.8
wicked 654.16
naughty word 526.6
nausea symptom 85.9
nauseation 85.30
unpleasure 96.1
hostility 99.2
vomiting 909.8
nauseant
n nastiness 64.3
cleanser 79.17
emetic 86.18
adj nasty 64.7
nauseate disgust 64.4
offend 98.11
nauseated
nauseous 85.57
pleasureless 96.20
nauseating nasty 64.7
filthy 80.23
offensive 98.18
nauseous nasty 64.7
nauseated 85.57
pleasureless 96.20
nautical
marine 182.57
oceanic 240.9
naval 182.57
naval academy 567.6
naval cadet 183.4
naval officer
ship's officer 183.7
fleet admiral 575.20
naval vessel 180.6
navar navigation 184.6
airborne radar 1036.2
nave center 208.2
church 703.9
axle 915.5
navel 208.2
navigate locate 159.11
journey 177.21
sail 182.13
pilot 182.14
fly 184.36
navigation
guidance 159.3
topography 159.8
direction 161.1
water travel 182.1
aviation 184.6
bearing 573.1
navigational
locational 159.19
nautical 182.57
navigator
mariner 183.1
hand 183.6
ship's officer 183.7
crew 185.4
guide 574.7
navvy
excavator 284.10
worker 726.2
navy
chewing tobacco 89.7
ships 180.10
branch 461.21
naval forces 461.27
navy man 183.4
nay
n negation 335.1
vote 371.6
refusal 442.1
side 935.14
interj no 335.8
nay-sayer
oppositionist 452.3
misfit 789.4
doubter 955.4
nay-saying
n negation 335.1
contrariety 779.1
adj negative 335.5
contrary 779.6
Nazarene 675.17
Nazism 612.8
NB 983.22
NCO 575.19
Neanderthal
n barbarian 497.7
adj unrefined 497.12
neap
n tide 238.13
low tide 274.2
adj low 274.7
near
v approach 167.3
come near 223.7
resemble 784.7
come 839.6
be imminent 840.2
adj approaching 167.4
left 220.4
close 223.14
narrow 270.14

stingy 484.9
familiar 587.19
approximate 775.8
approximating 784.14
imminent 840.3
adv nigh 223.20
nearly 223.22
prep at 159.27
nigh 223.24
nearby
adj handy 223.15
adv aside 218.10
near 223.20
near death 85.56
Near East 231.6
nearer 223.18
nearest 223.19
nearing
n approach 167.1
adj approaching 167.4
near 223.14
future 839.8
imminent 840.3
near-miss
narrow escape 369.2
crash 184.20
meeting 223.4
miss 410.4
nearsighted
poor-sighted 28.11
undiscerning 922.14
narrow-minded 980.10
neat
n cattle 311.6
adj shipshape 180.20
shapely 264.5
skillful 413.22
elegant 533.6
plain-speaking 535.3
chic 578.13
unmixed 798.7
tidy 807.8
excellent 999.13
neaten 808.12
neat-fingered 413.23
neath 274.11
neb nose 283.8
point 285.3
nebbish weakling 16.6
thing of naught 764.2
a nobody 998.7
nebula light 1025.15
nebulosity 1072.7
nebulous cloudy 319.8
obscure 522.15
general 864.11
celestial 1072.25
necessaries 963.2
necessary
n latrine 12.10
adj obligatory 424.11
mandatory 641.15
required 963.12
requisite 963.13
inevitable 963.15
certain 970.13
necessitate
require 424.5
determine 886.12
oblige 963.8
destine 964.7
necessity
compulsion 424.1
indigence 619.2
prerequisite 963.2
necessariness 963.1
requirement 963.2
inevitability 963.7
predetermination 964.1
certainty 970.1
neck
n fowl part 10.23
contraction 260.1
narrow place 270.3
joint 800.4
supporter 901.2
v hang 604.18
neck-and-neck
equal 790.7
simultaneous 836.5
necking 562.2
necklace
circle 280.3
jewel 498.6
necktie 5.31
necrological
funereal 309.22
documentary 549.18
historical 719.7
necrology
obituary 307.14
monument 549.12
history 719.1
necromancer
psychic 689.13
sorcerer 690.5
necromancy
spiritualism 689.5
sorcery 690.1
necromantic
sorcerous 690.14
miraculous 870.16
necrophilia 75.11
necrophiliac 75.16
necrosis symptom 85.9
gangrene 85.40
nectar delicacy 10.8
sweetening 66.2
nectarous tasty 63.8
sweet 66.4
née 1.4
need
n desire 100.1
indigence 619.2
deficiency 795.2
requirement 963.2
want 992.4
v be poor 619.5
require 963.9
be necessary 963.10
want 992.7
adv necessarily 963.16
needing
desirous 100.21
incomplete 795.4
wanting 992.13
needle
n energizer 17.6
sound reproduction system 50.11
mountain 237.6
point 285.3
thorn 285.5
leaf 310.19
pointer 517.4
compass 574.9
v annoy 96.13
perforate 292.15
goad 375.15
banter 490.6
sew 741.4
needless
unnecessary 391.10
superfluous 993.17
needlework 741.1
needleworker
garmentmaker 5.34
sewer 741.2
needling 375.5
need to 963.10
the needy 619.3
nefarious
wicked 654.16
base 661.12
terrible 1000.9
negate abnegate 335.3
abolish 395.13
refuse 442.3
contradict 451.6
disagree 789.5
neutralize 900.7
disbelieve 955.5
disprove 958.4
negating
n negation 335.1
adj neutralizing 900.9
negation
disaffirmation 335.2
negating 335.1
extinction 395.6
refusal 442.1
opposition 451.1
nonexistence 762.1
disagreement 789.1
disproof 958.1
negative
n math terms 255.6
negation 335.1
refusal 442.1
veto 444.2
graphic arts 713.5
film 714.10
print 785.5
mold 786.6
v negate 335.3
abolish 395.13
refuse 442.3
veto 444.5
neutralize 900.7
disprove 958.4
adj pessimistic 125.16
negatory 335.5
unconsenting 442.6
oppositional 451.8
nonexistent 762.8
contrary 779.6
disagreeing 789.6
numeric 1017.23
electric 1032.35
interj no 335.8
negativism
defense mechanism 92.23
pessimism 125.6
negation 335.1
resistance 453.1
hindrance 1012.1
negativist
pessimist 125.7
oppositionist 452.3
hinderer 1012.8
neglect
n negligence 340.1
neglectfulness 340.1
nonaccomplishment 408.1
mismanagement 414.6
nonobservance 435.1
v slight 157.6
overlook 340.6
leave undone 408.2
disregard 435.3
neglected
unthanked 151.5
unattended to 340.14
needless 391.10
unaccomplished 408.3
neglecter 340.5
negligee 5.20
negligence
unconcern 102.2
neglect 340.1
thoughtlessness 365.3
improvidence 406.2
mismanagement 414.6
laxness 426.1
nonobservance 435.1
slovenliness 810.6
inaccuracy 975.2
inattention 984.1
negligent
n neglecter 340.5
adj unconcerned 102.7
neglectful 340.10
improvident 406.15
botched 414.21
lax 426.4
nonobservant 435.5
slovenly 810.15
inaccurate 975.17
inattentive 984.6
negligible
insignificant 248.6
unimportant 998.17
negotiable
transferable 629.5
convertible 728.31
workable 889.10
practicable 966.7
negotiable instrument 728.5
negotiate leap 366.5
manage 409.12
treat with 437.6
mediate 466.6
confer 541.11
transfer 629.3
bargain 731.18
negotiation
bargaining 731.3
transaction 731.4
negotiator
mediator 466.3
go-between 576.4
unionist 727.4
Negro 312.3
neigh 60.2

neighbor
n neighborer 223.6
friend 588.1
v adjoin 223.9
juxtapose 223.13
adj adjacent 223.16
neighborhood
environment 209.1
nearness 223.1
region 231.1
neighboring
environing 209.8
nearby 223.15
adjacent 223.16
neighborly
favorable 449.22
hospitable 585.11
friendly 587.15
neither 335.7
nemesis
punishment 604.1
justice 649.1
bane 1001.1
Nemesis rage 152.10
avenger 507.3
justice 649.5
evil 680.5
star 1072.8
neolith 842.6
neolithic 842.20
neologism
neology 526.8
modern 841.4
innovation 852.4
neonatal
infant 301.12
beginning 818.15
new-made 841.9
neophyte
novice 572.9
believer 692.4
beginner 818.2
convert 858.7
ignoramus 930.8
neoplasm 85.39
nepenthe 990.1
nephew 559.3
nephology
meteorology 317.5
nephelognosy 319.5
ne plus ultra
summit 198.2
supremacy 249.3
limit 794.5
acme of perfection 1002.3
nepotism
spoils of office 609.35
partiality 650.3
Neptune
mariner 183.1
spirit of the sea 240.4
water god 678.10
planet 1072.9
nerd swotter 572.10
specialist 866.3
fool 924.3
nerval 24.10
nerve center
n ganglion 208.5
inner nature 767.5
nerveless
weak 16.12
unmanned 19.19
unnervous 129.2
nerve-racking 128.15
nerves
nervous system 2.14
nervousness 128.1
nerves of steel courage 492.1
stability 855.1
nervous neural 24.10
sensitive 24.12
excitable 105.28
anxious 126.7
fearful 127.23
nervy 128.11
agitated 917.16
nervous breakdown
collapse 85.8
mental disorder 92.14
frayed nerves 128.4
nervous system 2.14
nervous tension
anxiety 126.1
tension 128.3
nervous wreck
wreck 128.5
tension 393.8
nervy strong 15.15
nervous 128.11
impudent 142.10
fearless 492.19
agitated 917.16
nescience 930.1
nest
n abode 228.1
nidus 228.25
fledgling 302.10
multitude 884.3
birthplace 886.8
v snuggle 121.10
settle 159.17
inhabit 225.7
nest egg reserve 386.3
funds 728.14
nester 227.9
nesting
n habitation 225.1
adj birdlike 311.49
nestle put to bed 22.19
snuggle 121.10
cuddle 562.17
protect 1008.18
nestling
n fledgling 302.10
bird 311.28
lovemaking 562.1
beginner 818.2
adj new 841.7
nestor 422.3
Nestor old man 304.2
Solomon 921.2
net
n webbing 170.3
difference 255.8
porousness 292.8
weight 297.1
snare 356.13
gain 472.3
receipts 627.1
tennis 748.1
hockey 749.1
round 751.3
production 893.2
network 1034.8
v web 170.7
trap 356.20
arrest 429.15
acquire 472.8
profit 472.12
catch 480.17
yield 627.4
weave 740.6
hamper 1012.11
adj remaining 256.7
nether 274.8
nethermost 199.7
nether world
depths 275.3
hell 682.1
net income pay 624.4
receipts 627.1
netting webbing 170.3
arrest 429.6
nettle
n thorn 285.5
v annoy 96.13
provoke 152.24
incite 375.17
nettled annoyed 96.21
provoked 152.27
nettle rash 85.36
net wages 624.4
network
webwork 170.3
informant 551.5
company 770.3
networking 450.1
net worth
assets 471.7
worth 630.2
funds 728.14
neural nerve 2.30
nervous 24.10
neurological
neural 24.10
medical 90.15
neurological disease 85.25
neuron 2.14
neurosis
mental disorder 92.14
frayed nerves 128.4
psychosis 926.3
neurotic
psychoneurotic 92.39
psychotic 926.28
neuter
n neutral 467.4
gender 530.10
v castrate 255.11
adj unsexual 75.29
indifferent 102.6
passive 329.6
neutral 467.7
neutral
n free agent 430.12
neuter 467.4
nonpartisan 609.28
moderate 670.4
gear 1040.9
adj wishy-washy 16.17
colorless 36.7
unsexual 75.29
indifferent 102.6
passive 329.6
independent 430.22
neuter 467.7
nonpartisan 609.45
impartial 649.10
general 864.11
unprejudiced 979.12
neutral ground 467.3
neutrality
indifference 102.1
inaction 329.1
avoidance 368.1
noninvolvement 467.1
neutralism 467.1
impartiality 649.4
moderation 670.1
unprejudicedness 979.5
neutralization 900.2
neutralize
cushion 670.8
nullify 900.7
neutralizer
counteractant 900.3
acid 1060.3
neutron 1038.6
never
adv noway 248.11
ne'er 822.4
interj by no means 335.9
never-dying 829.9
never-ending
continuous 812.8
perpetual 829.7
never fear 969.4
never mind
who cares? 102.11
no matter 998.25
nevermore 822.4
never-never land 986.11
never say die
not weaken 15.10
be hopeful 124.8
be determined 359.8
stay with it 360.4
stand fast 453.4
persist 856.5
nevertheless
notwithstanding 338.8
anyhow 384.10
nevus growth 85.39
bulge 283.3
mark 517.5
blemish 1004.1
new
adj additional 253.10
original 337.5
unaccustomed 374.4
unused 390.12
fashionable 578.11
present 838.2
young 841.7
adv newly 841.15
again 874.7
New Age 870.7
new arrival
newcomer 774.4
beginner 818.2
new birth revival 396.3
redemption 685.4

new start 858.2
newborn born 1.4
infant 301.12
new-made 841.9
newcomer
incomer 189.4
novice 572.9
new arrival 774.4
beginner 818.2
newel 273.4
newfangled 841.10
new-fashioned
fashionable 578.11
modern 841.13
New Left 611.4
new life 685.4
new look 841.2
newlywed 563.5
newlyweds 563.9
new money 618.1
new moon 1072.11
news information 552
tidings 552.1
newspaper 555.2
newscast
n radiobroadcast 1034.18
television broadcast 1035.2
v broadcast 1034.25
newscaster 1034.23
new slant 932.5
newsletter 552.1
newsman 555.4
news media 552.1
newsmonger
informant 551.5
rumormonger 552.9
newspaper news 552.1
news medium 555.2
newspaperman
writer 547.15
newsmonger 552.9
journalist 555.4
author 718.4
news report 552.5
newsstand 736.3
newsworthy 552.13
newsy
v talkative 540.9
adj communicative 343.10
newsworthy 552.13
gossipy 552.14
New Testament 683.4
new to
unaccustomed 374.4
inexperienced 414.17
new twist 932.5
New World 231.6
next
adj adjacent 223.16
nearest 223.19
succeeding 815.4
adv subsequently 835.6
next life 835.1
next of kin 559.2
next to
v learn 551.14
prep at 159.27
the next world 839.2
nexus 812.2
Niagara 238.11
nib nose 283.8
point 285.3
extremity 820.2
nibble
n bite 8.2
v feed 8.18
pick 8.26
chew 8.26
kid oneself 954.6
trifle 998.14
nibbling 8.1
nice tasty 63.8
pleasant 97.6
kind 143.13
meticulous 339.12
dainty 495.11
elegant 496.9
right 637.3
conscientious 644.15
detailed 766.9
discriminating 944.7
exact 973.17
attentive 983.15
good 999.12
nice guy 659.2
nicety
meticulousness 339.3
niceness 495.3
taste 496.1
margin 780.2
discrimination 944.1
accuracy 973.5
niche
nook 197.3
recess 284.7
hiding place 346.4
nick
n notch 289.1
jail 429.9
mark 517.5
type 548.6
v notch 289.4
rob 482.16
mark 517.19
nickel
n money 728.7
precious metals 728.20
adj brass 1058.17
nickelodeon 50.11
nickname
n sobriquet 527.7
v name 527.11
nick of time 843.5
nicotine 89.9
nicotine addict 87.21
nicotine addiction
substance abuse 87.1
smoking 89.10
nicotinic 89.15
niece 559.3
nifty chic 578.13
excellent 999.13
niggard
n tightwad 484.4
adj niggardly 484.8
nigger 312.3
niggle
n criticism 510.4
v nag 510.16
trifle 998.14
niggling
n criticism 510.4
adj insignificant 248.6
critical 510.23
attentive 983.15
petty 998.20
nigh
v near 223.7
adj left 220.4
near 223.14
adv near 223.20
nearly 223.22
prep near 223.24
night
n blackness 38.4
close of day 315.2
nighttime 315.4
darkness 1027.1
adj nocturnal 315.9
night and day
n opposites 215.2
adv constantly 847.7
night blindness 30.2
nightcap
sleep-inducer 22.10
drink 88.9
night clothes 5.21
nightclub bar 88.20
theater 704.14
entertainment 743.13
night crawler 311.39
nightdress 5.21
nightfall 315.2
nightgown 5.21
nightie 5.21
nightingale 710.23
night letter 347.14
nightlong
adj nocturnal 315.9
continuing 827.12
adv nightly 315.11
nightmare
torment 96.7
frightener 127.9
dream 986.9
night prayer 696.8
nights 315.11
night spot
theater 704.14
entertainment 743.13
nighttime
n night 315.4
adj nocturnal 315.9
nightwalk
creep 177.26
noctambulate 177.32
lurk 346.9
nightwalking
n noctambulation 177.9
creeping 177.17
adj noctambulant 177.38
nihilism
pessimism 125.6
anarchy 418.2
radicalism 611.4
nihilist
n pessimist 125.7
destroyer 395.8
anarchist 418.3
savage 593.5
radical 611.12
adj destructive 395.26
nihilistic
pessimistic 125.16
destructive 395.26
anarchic 418.6
radical 611.20
unruly 671.19
nil 762.2
nimble fast 174.15
quick 330.18
alert 339.14
agile 413.23
smart 920.14
nimble-fingered 413.23
nimble-footed
agile 413.23
fast 174.15
nimble-witted
witty 489.15
smart 920.14
nimbus
illustriousness 662.6
halo 1025.14
Nimrod hunter 382.5
shooter 904.8
nincompoop 924.3
nine team 617.7
baseball team 745.2
card 758.2
ennead 882.5
nine days' wonder
marvel 122.2
great success 409.3
ephemeron 828.5
ninny 924.3
nip
n bite 8.2
drink 8.4
pang 26.2
zest 68.2
liquor 88.7
scrap 248.3
squeezing 260.2
hold 474.2
dose 793.5
cold 1023.1
v pain 26.7
bite 68.5
tipple 88.24
converge 169.2
speed 174.9
hasten off 188.10
excise 255.10
squeeze 260.8
shorten 268.6
put an end to 395.12
hold 474.6
seize 480.14
rob 482.16
freeze 1023.10
chill 1024.11
nip and tuck 790.7
nip in the bud
kill 308.13
put an end to 395.12
stop 1012.13
nipped
contracted 260.12
shortened 268.9
nipper 302.3
nipple tube 239.6
breast 283.6

nippy zestful 68.7
cold 1023.14
nirvana
unconsciousness 25.2
undesirousness 102.3
quiescence 173.1
heaven 681.8
thoughtlessness 933.1
forgetfulness 990.1
nirvanic
unconscious 25.8
undesirous 102.8
thoughtless 933.4
nit vermin 311.37
criticism 510.4
NIT 747.1
nitpick
find fault 510.15
quibble 936.9
nitpicker
perfectionist 495.6
faultfinder 510.9
quibbler 936.7
nit-picking
n criticism 510.4
quibbling 936.5
adj quibbling 936.14
nitrate
n fertilizer 890.4
v chemicalize 1060.8
nitrogen 890.4
the nitty-gritty
essential content 196.5
reality 761.2
fact 761.3
essence 767.3
nitwit 924.2
nitwitted 922.17
nival 1023.18
nix
n negation 335.1
refusal 442.1
water god 678.10
nothing 762.3
interj nope 335.10
no
n negation 335.1
vote 371.6
refusal 442.1
side 935.14
number 1017.3
adv none 762.12
interj nay 335.8
phrs I refuse 442.7
no-account
worthless 391.11
uninfluential 895.3
nobby chic 578.13
excellent 999.13
nobility
proud bearing 136.2
glory 247.2
the best 249.5
mastership 417.7
grandeur 501.5
loftiness 544.6
upper class 607.2
noble rank 608
aristocracy 608.1
nobleness 608.2
probity 644.1
magnanimity 652.2
distinction 662.5
noble
n nobleman 608.4
adj dignified 136.12
eminent 247.9
grandiose 501.21
lofty 544.14
of rank 608.10
honest 644.13
magnanimous 652.6
reputable 662.15
unchangeable 855.17
notable 997.19
good 999.12
noble gas 1060.1
nobleman 608.4
noble metal 1060.1
noble-minded 652.6
noblesse oblige 504.2
noblewoman 608.6
nobody
no one 222.6
thing of naught 764.2
mediocrity 1005.5
nobody's fool
smart 920.14
ungullible 956.5
no chance
gambling odds 759.6
impossibility 967.1
not a prayer 972.10
no choice
dilemma 371.3
restriction 428.3
choicelessness 963.6
noctambulation 177.9
nocturnal 315.9
nod
n stupor 22.6
obeisance 155.2
affirmative 332.2
summons 420.5
consent 441.1
permission 443.1
approval 509.1
signal 517.15
hint 551.4
greeting 585.4
crouch 913.3
v bow 155.6
hang 202.6
assent 332.8
neglect 340.6
consent 441.2
signal 517.22
nodding
n languor 331.6
adj sleepy 22.21
intoxicated 87.23
drooping 202.10
languid 331.20
unalert 984.8
abstracted 985.11
noddle head 198.6
brain 919.6
node nodule 283.5
wave 916.4
dilemma 1013.7
solid 1045.6
no-deposit 388.6
no doubt
probably 968.8
unquestionably 970.25
nodular studded 283.17
gnarled 288.8
nodule 283.5
nodus 1013.7
no end greatly 247.15
chiefly 249.17
numerously 884.12
plentifully 991.9
no end to long 267.7
infinite 823.3
innumerable 884.10
noetic mental 919.7
intelligent 920.12
cognitive 931.21
noggin member 2.7
head 198.6
brain 919.6
no go 410.1
no-go useless 391.9
impossible 125.14
no-good
n wretch 660.2
adj worthless 391.11
nohow
adv noway 248.11
anyhow 384.10
interj by no means 335.9
no ifs, ands, or buts
really 761.16
completely 794.14
no strings attached 960.3
certainly 970.23
noise
n sound 50.1
loud noise 53.3
clash 61.2
meaninglessness 520.1
Greek 522.7
information theory 551.7
pandemonium 810.5
radio reception 1034.21
television reception 1035.5
v sound 50.14
be noisy 53.9
noiseless 51.10
noisemaker 53.6
noiseproof 15.20
noisome nasty 64.7
malodorous 71.5
unhealthful 82.5
offensive 98.18
terrible 1000.9
harmful 1000.12
noisy
noiseful 53.13
vociferous 59.10
blustering 503.4
nomad
n Bedouin 178.4
adj wandering 177.37
nomadic 177.37
nomadism 177.3
no-man's-land
prohibition 444.1
battlefield 463.2
no matter 998.25
no matter what
n whatever 864.6
interj by no means 335.9
nom de plume 527.8
nomen name 527.3
term 527.6
nomenclature
naming 527.2
terminology 527.1
nominal
n noun 530.5
adj cognominal 527.15
grammatical 530.17
formal 580.7
cheap 633.7
nominal charge 633.2
nominalism 865.1
nominate
choose 371.19
name 527.11
support 609.41
appoint 615.11
nomination
designation 371.8
caucus nomination 609.11
appointment 615.2
holy orders 698.10
nominative
n case 530.9
adj nominal 527.15
denominative 527.16
nominee 615.9
no more
adj gone 34.4
dead 307.30
extinct 762.11
past 837.7
interj stop! 857.13
nonacceptance
rejection 372.1
refusal 442.1
nonaccomplishment
nonachievement 408.1
failure 410.1
nonadherent
nonobservant 435.5
incoherent 804.4
nonadmission 773.1
nonage 301.3
nonagenarian
old man 304.2
ninety 882.7
nonaggression 464.4
nonaggressive
indolent 331.19
unbelligerent 464.10
nonalcoholic 516.4
nonalcoholic beverage 10.49
nonaligned
independent 430.22
neutral 467.7
nonaligned nation
country 232.1
free agent 430.12
neutral 467.4
nonalignment
neutrality 467.1
moderatism 611.2
nonattendance 222.4
nonattendant 222.11
nonbeliever 695.11
nonbelieving 955.8
nonbelligerent 464.5

nonbreakable 1049.5
the nonce 838.1
nonce word 526.8
nonchalance
apathy 94.4
unconcern 102.2
casualness 106.5
nonchalant
apathetic 94.13
unconcerned 102.7
blasé 106.15
noncohering 802.20
noncohesion
nonadhesion 804.1
uncohesiveness 804.1
noncohesive
separate 802.20
incoherent 804.4
noncom 575.19
noncombatant
n nonbelligerent 464.5
adj unbelligerent 464.10
noncommissioned officer
enlisted man 461.8
superintendent 574.2
noncommittal 494.8
noncommitted 467.7
noncommunicable 122.13
noncompetitive 450.5
noncompletion 408.1
noncompliance
disobedience 327.1
nonobservance 435.1
refusal 442.1
nonconformity 868.1
non compos mentis 926.26
nonconducting 1032.36
nonconductive 1032.36
nonconductor 1032.14
nonconforming
disobedient 327.8
dissenting 333.6
nonobservant 435.5
unconforming 868.5
nonconformist
n rebel 327.5
dissenter 333.3
heretic 688.5
misfit 789.4
unconformist 868.3
oddity 870.4
eccentric 927.3
adj nonuniform 782.3
individualistic 789.9
counteractive 900.8
nonconformity
obliquity 204.1
disobedience 327.1
dissent 333.1
nonobservance 435.1
unorthodoxy 688.1
extraneousness 774.1
difference 780.1
nonuniformity 782.1
inconsistency 789.2
particularity 865.1
nonconformance 868.1
unconformity 868.1
counteraction 900.1
eccentricity 927.1
noncontiguous 802.20
nonconvergent 203.6
noncooperation
disobedience 327.1
opposition 451.1
hostility 451.2
resistance 453.1
disaccord 456.1
noncooperative
insubordinate 327.9
oppositional 451.8
resistant 453.5
noncreative 891.5
nondenominational
nonsectarian 675.27
universal 864.14
nondescript
formless 263.4
simple 499.6
nondutiable 630.16
none
n divine service 696.8
not any 762.4
adv no 762.12
nonelastic 1046.12
nonemotional 94.9
nonentity
weakling 16.6
nonexistence 762.1
thing of naught 764.2
a nobody 998.7
mediocrity 1005.5
none of your business 214.10
nonessential
n inessential 768.2
adj needless 391.10
circumstantial 766.7
unessential 768.4
irrelevant 776.7
superfluous 993.17
insignificant 998.17
nonesuch
marvel 122.2
the best 999.8
nonetheless
notwithstanding 338.8
anyhow 384.10
nonexistence
absence 222.1
nonbeing 762.1
nonsubsistence 762.1
nonexistent gone 34.4
absent 222.11
unexistent 762.8
imaginary 986.19
nonexpectant 131.9
nonfactual 986.21
nonfeasance
disobedience 327.1
neglect 340.1
nonaccomplishment 408.1
mismanagement 414.6
nonobservance 435.1
misdeed 655.2
nonfertile 891.4
nonfiction 547.10
nonflammability 1022.1
nonflammable 1022.9
nonformal
n substandard language 523.6
jargon 523.9
adj in dishabille 5.47
vernacular 523.20
nonuniform 782.3
slovenly 810.15
unconventional 868.6
nonfulfillment
nonaccomplishment 408.1
nonobservance 435.1
insufficiency 992.1
nonfunctional 391.14
nonhuman 870.15
nonimitation 337.1
nonintellectual 930.14
noninterference
neglect 340.1
nonintervention 430.9
policy 609.4
noninterruption 847.2
nonintervention
avoidance 368.1
noninterference 430.9
policy 609.4
noninvolvement
inaction 329.1
avoidance 368.1
neutrality 467.1
non-Jew 688.6
nonliving 1055.5
nonliving matter 1055.1
nonmalignant 999.21
nonmandatory 324.7
nonmedical therapist 90.9
nonmedical therapy 91.2
nonmetal 1058.3
nonmetallic 1058.16
nonmilitant 464.10
no-no prohibition 444.1
oath 513.4
nonobjective 980.12
nonobservance
nonadherence 435.1
inobservance 435.1
refusal 442.1
nonreligiousness 695.1
nonconformity 868.1
inattention 984.1
nonobservant
inobservant 435.5
nonreligious 695.15
nonconforming 868.5
nonoccupancy 222.2
nonoccurrence
absence 222.1
nonexistence 762.1
nonopposing 433.12
nonopposition 433.1
nonordained 700.3
nonpareil
marvel 122.2
superior 249.4
paragon 659.4
the best 999.8
nonparticipation 329.1
nonpartisan
n free agent 430.12
neutral 467.4
independent 609.28
adj autonomous 430.22
neutral 467.7
independent 609.45
nonpartisanism
neutrality 467.1
independence 609.26
nonpaying 625.10
nonpayment 625.1
nonperformance
neglect 340.1
nonaccomplishment 408.1
nonobservance 435.1
nonperishable 855.18
nonpermanent 828.7
nonphysical 1053.7
nonplus
n bewilderment 971.3
dilemma 1013.7
v refute 958.5
perplex 971.13
thwart 1012.15
nonplussed
in a dilemma 971.25
at an impasse 1013.24
nonpoetic 721.4
nonpoisonous 999.21
nonpolluted 79.25
nonporous 1045.12
nonproductive 891.4
nonprofessional
n amateur 726.5
adj avocational 724.17
nonprofit 617.16
nonrecognition
ingratitude 151.1
incognizance 930.3
nonreligious
unreligious 695.15
lay 700.3
nonrepresentationalism 350.1
nonresident 222.12
nonresistance
resignation 134.2
inaction 329.1
submission 433.1
foreign policy 609.5
nonresistive
submissive 433.12
soft 1047.8
nonrestrictive
negligent 340.10
unrestrictive 430.25
nonreturnable 855.17
nonsectarian
undenominational 675.27
universal 864.14
nonsense
stuff and nonsense 520.2
foolishness 923.1
absurdity 923.3
nonsense talk 540.3
nonsense verse 720.3
nonsensical
silly 520.7
absurd 923.11
non sequitur
discontinuity 813.1
specious argument 936.3
nonsked 184.10
nonsmoker 668.4
non-smoking 89.15
nonspecific
general 864.11
vague 971.19
nonspiritual
carnal 663.6

  material 1052.10
nonstop
  continuous 812.8
  perpetual 829.7
nonsubjective 768.3
nontaxable 630.16
nontoxic 999.21
nonuniform
  ununiform 782.3
  dissimilar 787.4
  unordered 810.12
  discontinuous 813.4
  irregular 851.3
  changeable 854.6
nonuniformity
  roughness 288.1
  unevenness 782.1
  multiformity 783.1
  dissimilarity 787.1
  inequality 791.1
  disorder 810.1
  discontinuity 813.1
  irregularity 851.1
  changeableness 854.1
nonunion 802.1
nonunion shop 727.3
nonuple 882.21
nonuse 390.1
nonviable 307.33
nonviolence
  inaction 329.1
  peaceableness 464.4
  moderation 670.1
nonviolent
  unbelligerent 464.10
  moderate 670.10
nonvirulent 999.21
noodle
  n member 2.7
  head 198.6
  brain 919.6
  v think over 931.13
nook corner 197.3
  angle 278.2
  recess 284.7
  hiding place 346.4
noon
  n summit 198.2
  noonday 314.5
  midday 314.5
  adj noonday 314.7
  adv constantly 847.7
no one 222.6
noose
  n circle 280.2
  snare 356.13
  execution 605.5
  v trap 356.20
  catch 480.17
  hang 604.18
  weave 740.6
noosphere
  organic matter 305.1
  biosphere 306.8
  atmosphere 317.2
  philosophy 932.2
nope 335.10
nor 335.7
nor'east 161.19
nor'easter 318.9
norm mean 246.1
  measure 300.2
  custom 373.4
  precept 419.2
  ethics 636.1
  paragon 659.4
  rule 869.4
normal
  n vertical 200.2
  mean 246.1
  straight line 277.2
  adj medium 246.3
  right-angled 278.7
  typical 349.15
  customary 373.13
  right 637.3
  orderly 807.6
  prevalent 864.12
  natural 869.8
  sane 925.4
  ordinary 1005.8
normality
  propriety 637.2
  prevalence 864.2
  typicality 869.1
  normalness 869.1
  sanity 925.1
  ordinariness 1005.2
normalize
  make uniform 781.4
  order 807.4
  organize 808.10
  standardize 869.6
normative
  customary 373.13
  preceptive 419.4
  right 637.3
  model 786.8
  normal 869.8
  usual 869.9
north
  n points of the compass 161.3
  adj northern 161.14
  adv N 161.15
northeast
  n points of the compass 161.3
  adj northern 161.14
  adv nor'east 161.19
Northener 227.11
norther 318.9
northern 161.14
northern lights 1025.16
North Pole
  opposites 215.2
  remote region 261.4
  cold place 1023.4
north pole 1032.8
North Star
  guiding star 574.8
  stars 1072.4
northward
  n points of the compass 161.3
  adv north 161.15
northwest
  n points of the compass 161.3
  adj northern 161.14
  adv nor'west 161.20
north wind 318.9
no say 895.1
nose
  n olfactory organ 69.5
  prow 216.3
  nozzle 239.9
  protuberance 283.8
  person 312.5
  v smell 69.8
  stroke 73.8
  meddle 214.7
  trace 938.35
  pry 981.4
nose around 938.30
nosebleed 12.8
nose count roll 871.6
  summation 1017.11
nose dive
  maneuvers 184.13
  plunge 367.1
  collapse 410.3
  cheapening 633.4
nose-dive dive 184.41
  plunge 367.6
  cheapen 633.6
nosegay fragrance 70.1
  bouquet 310.25
  bundle 770.8
nose ring circle 280.3
  jewel 498.6
nose-tickling 68.6
nosh
  n light meal 8.7
  v pick 8.26
no-show 222.5
nostalgia
  sentimentality 93.8
  wistfulness 100.4
  yearning 100.5
  melancholy 112.5
nostalgic
  sentimental 93.21
  wistful 100.23
  melancholy 112.23
nostril 239.13
no strings attached
  adj unrestricted 430.27
  adv no ifs, ands, or buts 960.3
nostrum 86.2
no sweat 1014.16
nosy
  meddlesome 214.9
  searching 938.38
  prying 981.6
not 335.8
nota bene 983.22
notability glory 247.2
  distinction 662.5
  celebrity 662.9
  noteworthiness 997.2
  personage 997.8
not a bit
  n none 762.4
  adv noway 248.11
  interj no 335.8
notable
  n celebrity 662.9
  personage 997.8
  adj remarkable 247.10
  conspicuous 348.12
  distinguished 662.16
  characteristic 865.13
  memorable 989.25
  noteworthy 997.19
not accept deny 335.4
  not permit 444.4
  refuse to believe 956.3
not admit deny 335.4
  disbelieve 955.5
not allow 444.4
not all there
  mentally deficient 922.22
  crazy 926.27
notarize 332.12
notarized 332.14
notarized statement
  deposition 334.3
  certificate 549.6
notary endorser 332.7
  recorder 550.1
not at all
  adv noway 248.11
  none 762.12
  never 822.4
  interj by no means 335.9
notate
  represent 349.8
  grammaticize 530.16
notation
  comment 341.5
  representation 349.1
  memorandum 549.4
  entry 628.5
  score 708.28
  character 709.12
  addition 1017.2
  number 1017.3
not bad
  adj tolerable 999.20
  interj bravo! 509.22
not believe 955.5
not budge
  do nothing 329.2
  balk 361.7
  stand fast 855.11
not buy refuse 442.3
  disbelieve 955.5
  refuse to believe 956.3
not care
  not mind 102.4
  take no interest in 982.2
not care for
  dislike 99.3
  neglect 340.6
not care to 325.3
notch
  n crack 224.2
  ridge 237.5
  degree 245.1
  indentation 284.6
  cleft 289.1
  nick 289.1
  mark 517.5
  v indent 284.14
  nick 289.4
  mark 517.19
notched
  indented 284.17
  nicked 289.5
notching 289.2
not comparable
  inadequate 250.7

uncomparable 787.6
not compare 250.4
not count 998.11
not counting 255.14
not cricket
wrong 638.3
unfair 650.10
unconventional 868.6
not done
underdone 11.9
wrong 638.3
unfair 650.10
unconventional 868.6
note
n observation 27.2
animal noise 60.1
milieu 209.3
added to writing 254.2
comment 341.5
sign 517.1
remark 524.3
memorandum 549.4
certificate 549.6
letter 553.2
treatise 556.1
entry 628.5
distinction 662.5
air 708.4
pitch 709.4
musical note 709.14
interval 709.20
paper money 728.5
negotiable instrument 728.11
cognizance 928.2
mood 978.4
attention 983.1
importance 997.1
v signify 517.17
remark 524.24
record 549.15
keep accounts 628.8
heed 983.6
not easy
adverse 1011.13
difficult 1013.17
notebook
record book 549.11
book 554.1
notebook computer 1042.2
not enough 992.9
noteworthy
remarkable 247.10
particular 865.12
extraordinary 870.14
notable 997.19
not have a chance
be impossible 967.4
have no chance 972.14
not hesitate 359.10
nothing void 222.3
nil 762.2
thing of naught 764.2
nothing doing
interj nope 335.10
God forbid! 510.27
phrs I refuse 442.7
nothing like 787.5
nothingness
unconsciousness 25.2
space 158.1
void 222.3
nonexistence 762.1
nothing of the kind
n a different thing 780.3
adj nothing like 787.5
interj no 335.8
nothing special
n mediocrity 1005.5
adj ordinary 1005.8
not hold up 975.8
notice
n observation 27.2
announcement 352.2
press release 352.3
publicity 352.4
advertisement 352.6
warning 399.1
demand 421.1
information 551.1
commentary 556.2
cognizance 928.2
criticism 946.2
attention 983.1
v see 27.12
detect 941.5
heed 983.6
noticeable visible 31.6
remarkable 247.10
measurable 300.14
manifest 348.8
conspicuous 348.12
notification
informing 343.2
announcement 352.2
warning 399.1
information 551.1
notify herald 133.14
warn 399.5
inform 551.8
not in keeping with 789.10
not in the habit of 374.4
not in the mood 325.5
notion caprice 364.1
impulse 365.1
intention 380.1
plan 381.1
idea 932.1
suggestion 951.5
opinion 953.6
notional
capricious 364.5
ideational 932.9
theoretical 951.13
imaginative 986.18
imaginary 986.19
fanciful 986.20
notions 735.6
not know 930.11
not kosher
dishonest 645.16
unfair 650.10
unconventional 868.6
not likely 442.7
not listen
disobey 327.6
be inattentive 984.2
not make sense
be meaningless 520.4
be incomprehensible 522.10
not matter 998.11
not mind
not care 102.4
disobey 327.6
notoriety
conspicuousness 348.4
publicity 352.4
disreputability 661.2
repute 662.1
notorious
conspicuous 348.12
knavish 645.17
disreputable 661.10
distinguished 662.16
immodest 666.6
well-known 928.27
terrible 1000.9
not permit 444.4
not remember 990.5
not right
mentally deficient 922.22
insane 926.26
crazy 926.27
erroneous 975.16
not stand for
not permit 444.4
discountenance 510.11
not surprised 130.11
not swallow
disbelieve 955.5
refuse to believe 956.3
not there 985.11
not to be believed 955.10
not to be had
inaccessible 967.9
scarce 992.11
not tolerate
not permit 444.4
discountenance 510.11
not to mention
adv additionally 253.11
prep with 253.12
not touch
avoid 368.6
not use 390.5
abstain 668.7
not true false 354.25
erroneous 975.16
not understand 522.11
not wash 975.8
not with it
unaware 930.13
oblivious 984.7
notwithstanding 338.8
not work
be impotent 19.7
fail 410.9
noumenon 932.1
noun 530.5
nourish feed 7.17
nurture 8.19
encourage 375.21
foster 449.16
nourishing
n nutrition 7.1
adj nutritious 7.21
eating 8.31
nourishment
nutrition 7.1
nutriment 10.3
support 449.3
nous world spirit 677.7
intellect 919.1
smartness 920.2
nouveau riche
n vulgarian 497.6
upstart 606.7
modern 841.4
adj populational 606.8
nouvelle cuisine food 10.1
cooking 11.1
nova 10.24
novel
n book 554.1
story 722.3
adj original 337.5
new 841.11
novelist writer 547.15
author 718.4
narrator 722.5
novelty
nonimitation 337.1
fad 578.5
merchandise 735.6
newness 841.1
innovation 841.2
alteration 852.4
novena
divine service 696.8
nine 882.5
novice novitiate 572.9
nun 699.18
beginner 818.2
ignoramus 930.8
now
n the present 838.1
adj modern 841.13
adv at once 830.8
at present 838.3
recently 841.16
interj make haste! 401.16
now and then
discontinuously 813.5
occasionally 848.5
noway
adv noways 248.11
interj by no means 335.9
no way
n despair 125.2
interj nope 335.10
God forbid! 510.27
phrs I refuse 442.7
no can do 967.11
nowhere
n remote region 261.4
adv in no place 222.17
nowise 248.11
now or never 843.12
noxious nasty 64.7
malodorous 71.5
unhealthful 82.5
poisonous 82.7
offensive 98.18
malicious 144.20
harmful 1000.12
nozzle bib nozzle 239.9
nose 283.8
sprinkler 1065.8
nth degree 794.5
nuance degree 245.1
implication 519.2
margin 780.2
distinction 944.3
nub
essential content 196.5

center 208.2
bulge 283.3
texture 294.1
essence 767.2
salient point 997.6
nubbin runt 258.4
bulge 283.3
nubby studded 283.17
nappy 294.7
nubile grown 14.3
adolescent 301.13
adult 303.12
marriageable 563.20
nuclear
nucleate 208.12
nucleal 305.21
middle 819.4
thermonuclear 1038.19
nuclear bomb 462.2
nuclear energy
energy 17.1
atomic energy 1038.15
nuclear fission 1038.8
nuclear fusion 1038.9
nuclear physicist 1038.3
nuclear physics
electronics 1033.1
atomic science 1038.1
particle physics 1038.1
nuclear power
atomic energy 1038.15
manpower 18.4
nuclear reactor 1038.13
nuclear war 458.1
nuclear weapons 462.1
nucleus center 208.2
cell nucleus 305.7
essence 767.2
middle 819.1
vital force 886.7
elementary particle 1038.6
nude
n work of art 712.10
adj naked 6.14
unadorned 499.8
nudge
n contact 223.5
signal 517.15
hint 551.4
thrust 902.2
v set in motion 172.6
contact 223.10
goad 375.15
importune 440.12
signal 517.22
thrust 902.12
remind 989.20
nudist
n nudity 6.3
adj naked 6.14
nudity nakedness 6.3
unadornment 499.3
nudzh
n tormentor 96.10
v annoy 96.13
nugatory
ineffective 19.15
insignificant 248.6
worthless 391.11
trivial 998.19
nugget lump 257.10
precious metals 728.20
nuisance
annoyance 96.2
tormentor 96.10
bore 118.4
nuisance value 1012.1
null vacant 222.14
meaningless 520.6
nonexistent 762.8
null and void
vacant 222.14
repealed 445.3
nullification
denial 335.2
extinction 395.6
repeal 445.1
policy 609.4
neutralization 900.2
nullify deny 335.4
abolish 395.13
repeal 445.2
declare a moratorium 625.9
neutralize 900.7
nullity
meaninglessness 520.1
nonexistence 762.1
thing of naught 764.2
an insignificancy 998.6
numb
v deaden 25.4
benumb 94.8
relieve 120.5
freeze 1023.10
adj insensible 25.6
apathetic 94.13
unconcerned 102.7
languid 331.20
number
n amount 244.2
deception 356.9
singular 530.8
edition 554.5
act 704.7
rhythm 709.22
vocation 724.6
part of writing 793.2
numeral 1017.3
sum 1017.6
v quantify 244.4
total 792.8
itemize 801.7
numerate 1017.17
number among 772.3
number-cruncher 1017.15
numbering
n numeration 1017.9
adj inclusive 772.6
numberless 884.10
number one
n urine 12.5
victor 411.2
self 865.5
v urinate 12.14
adj governing 612.18
paramount 997.24
numbers
quantity 244.1
rhythm 709.22
metrics 720.6
meter 720.7
statistics 746.4
multitude 884.3
mathematics 1017.1
numbers runner 759.20
numbing
n relief 120.1
adj deadening 25.9
anesthetic 86.47
relieving 120.9
cold 1023.14
numerable
measurable 300.14
calculable 1017.25
numeral
n number 1017.3
adj numeric 1017.23
numerate 1017.17
numeration 1017.9
numerative
measuring 300.12
numeric 1017.23
enumerative 1017.24
numerator ratio 1017.7
division 1017.12
numeric
mathematical 1017.22
numeral 1017.23
numerous
much 247.8
large 257.16
plural 883.7
many 884.6
plentiful 991.7
numinous
awesome 122.11
unintelligible 522.13
illustrious 662.19
almighty 677.17
sacred 685.7
sorcerous 690.14
supernatural 870.15
numismatic 728.30
numismatics 728.22
numskull 924.4
nun marker 517.10
celibate 565.2
sister 699.18
nuncio
messenger 353.1
diplomat 576.6
nunnery 703.6
nuptial
v join in marriage 563.14
adj sexual 75.25
matrimonial 563.18
nuptials 563.3
nurse
n health care professional 90.8
sister 90.10
nursemaid 1008.8
v nourish 8.19
treat 91.24
foster 449.16
hold 474.7
train 568.13
care for 1008.19
nursemaid maid 577.8
nurse 1008.8
nursery bedroom 197.7
hospital room 197.25
preschool 567.2
birthplace 886.8
conservatory 1069.11
nurseryman 1069.6
nursery school 567.2
nursing home 1009.4
nurture
n nutrition 7.1
nutriment 10.3
support 449.3
training 568.3
protectorship 1008.2
v nourish 7.17
feed 8.19
look after 339.9
encourage 375.21
make better 392.9
foster 449.16
hold 474.7
train 568.13
care for 1008.19
raise 1070.6
nut
n food 10.39
enthusiast 101.5
seed 310.31
specialist 866.3
oddity 870.4
lunatic 926.16
fanatic 926.18
freak 927.4
v harvest 1069.19
nuthouse 926.14
Nutrasweet 66.2
nutrient
n nutritive 7.3
adj nutritious 7.21
nutriment
nutrient 7.3
nourishment 10.3
nutrition
nourishment 7.1
eating 8.1
cooking 11.1
nutritionist 7.15
nutritious
nutritive 7.21
eating 8.31
nutritive value 7.1
nutriture 449.3
nuts
n genitals 2.13
bet 759.3
poker 759.10
adj crazy 926.27
nuts about
enthusiastic 101.11
crazy about 104.31
nuts and bolts 1040.4
nutshell
n modicum 248.2
adj shortened 268.9
abridged 557.6
nutty flavorful 63.9
foolish 923.9
crazy 926.27
eccentric 927.6
nuzzle stroke 73.8
cuddle 562.17
nymph larva 302.12
embryo 305.14
insect 311.33
deity 678.9

nymphet
schoolgirl 302.8
strumpet 665.14
nymph 678.9
nymphomania
sexual desire 75.5
lasciviousness 665.5
nymphomaniac
sexual pervert 75.16
strumpet 665.14
oaf bungler 414.8
simple soul 416.3
lout 924.5
oafish bungling 414.20
stupid 922.15
oak
symbol of strength 15.8
hardness 1046.6
oak leaf 647.5
oar paddle 180.15
boatman 183.5
oarsman 183.5
oath vow 334.4
promise 436.1
profane oath 513.4
oats 10.4
obdurate
insensible 25.6
impenitent 114.5
heartless 144.25
tough 361.10
firm 425.7
hardened 654.17
hard 1046.10
obedience
resignation 134.2
compliance 326.1
submission 433.1
conformity 867.1
obedient
resigned 134.10
compliant 326.3
submissive 433.12
dutiful 641.13
conformable 867.5
obeisance
obsequiousness 138.2
reverence 155.2
submission 433.1
crouch 913.3
obeisant
obsequious 138.14
prostrate 155.10
deferential 433.16
obelisk tower 272.6
monument 549.12
Oberon 678.8
obese corpulent 257.18
oversize 257.23
obesity oversize 257.5
corpulence 257.8
obey accept 134.7
mind 326.2
submit 433.6
obfuscate deform 263.3
conceal 346.6
make unintelligible 522.12
misteach 569.3
darken 1027.9
obituary
n obit 307.14
monument 549.12
history 719.1
adj funereal 309.22
documentary 549.18
object
v protest 333.5
offer resistance 453.3
disapprove 510.10
disagree 789.5
object
n objective 380.2
intent 518.2
syntax 530.2
something 763.3
article 1052.4
objectify
externalize 206.5
visualize 986.15
objecting
protesting 333.7
resistant 453.5
objection demur 325.2
protest 333.2
resistance 453.1
disapproval 510.1
defense 600.2
obstacle 1012.4
objectionable
offensive 98.18
unacceptable 108.10
unpraiseworthy 510.24
objective
n will 323.1
object 380.2
adj unfeeling 94.9
impartial 649.10
real 761.15
extrinsic 768.3
true 973.13
unprejudiced 979.12
objectivity
unfeeling 94.1
extrinsicality 768.1
unprejudicedness 979.5
object lesson
warning 399.1
lesson 568.7
example 786.2
objector
dissenter 333.3
oppositionist 452.3
objet d'art 712.10
oblation gift 478.4
offering 696.7
obligate
v commit 436.5
oblige 641.12
adj obliged 641.16
obligated
promised 436.8
chargeable 623.9
obliged 641.16
obligation
act of kindness 143.7
gratitude 150.1
undertaking 404.1
compulsion 424.1
commitment 436.2
security 438.1
debt 623.1
duty 641.1
condition 959.2
necessity 963.1
obligative 530.11
obligatory
mandatory 420.12
compulsory 424.11
binding 641.15
necessary 963.12
oblige be kind 143.9
necessitate 424.5
indulge 427.6
accommodate 449.19
obligate 641.12
require 963.8
obliged grateful 150.5
obligated 641.16
obliging
n indulgence 427.3
adj considerate 143.16
indulgent 427.8
permissive 443.14
courteous 504.14
oblique
n diagonal 204.7
v deviate 204.9
adj transverse 170.9
devious 204.13
circumlocutory 538.14
circuitous 914.7
obliterate
expunge 395.16
declare a moratorium 625.9
efface from the memory 990.6
obliteration
erasure 395.7
moratorium 625.2
forgetfulness 990.1
oblivion
unconsciousness 25.2
insensibility 94.2
carelessness 340.2
thoughtlessness 933.1
forgetfulness 990.1
oblivious asleep 22.22
unconscious 25.8
insensible 94.10
careless 340.11
thoughtless 933.4
inattentive 984.7
abstracted 985.11
forgetful 990.9
oblong
oblongated 267.9
quadrangular 278.9
obloquy criticism 510.4
vilification 513.2
infamy 661.4
obnoxious
offensive 98.18
base 661.12
terrible 1000.9
oboist 710.4
obscene offensive 98.18
cursing 513.8
lascivious 665.29
lewd 666.9
coarse 497.11
obscenity filth 80.7
offensiveness 98.2
coarseness 497.2
cursing 513.3
oath 513.4
lasciviousness 665.5
dirtiness 666.4
obscure
n darkness 1027.1
v blind 30.7
deform 263.3
cover 295.19
cloud 319.7
conceal 346.6
make unintelligible 522.12
misteach 569.3
quibble 936.9
make uncertain 971.15
darken 1027.9
opaque 1031.2
adj inconspicuous 32.6
formless 263.4
concealed 346.11
hard to understand 522.14
vague 522.15
ambiguous 539.4
unrenowned 661.14
uncertain 971.19
dark 1027.13
opaque 1031.3
obscured blinded 30.10
covered 295.31
concealed 346.11
latent 519.5
hard to understand 522.14
dark 1027.13
obscurity
inconspicuousness 32.2
formlessness 263.1
obscuration 522.3
diffuseness 538.1
vagueness 971.4
darkness 1027.1
opaqueness 1031.1
obsequies 309.4
obsequious
servile 138.14
obeisant 155.10
deferential 433.16
flattering 511.8
observable visible 31.6
manifest 348.8
observance regard 27.2
obedience 326.1
vigilance 339.4
custom 373.1
adherence 434.1
observation 434.1
execution 437.4
celebration 487.1
ceremony 580.4
piety 692.1
rite 701.3
conformity 867.1
attention 983.1
observant
vigilant 339.13
respectful 434.4
dutiful 641.13
pious 692.8
belief 953.21
attentive 983.15
observation
regard 27.2

observance 434.1
remark 524.3
idea 932.1
surveillance 938.9
opinion 953.6
attention 983.1
observatory 1072.17
observatory
observation post 27.8
astronomical observatory 1072.17
observe see 27.12
look 27.13
obey 326.2
keep 434.2
execute 437.9
celebrate 487.2
remark 524.24
formalize 580.5
perform a rite 701.15
conform 867.3
examine 938.24
heed 983.6
observer
military pilot 185.3
spectator 918.1
examiner 938.17
obsess oppress 98.16
demonize 680.16
bewitch 691.9
possess 926.25
engross 983.13
haunt 988.6
be remembered 989.14
obsessed affected 93.23
bewitched 691.13
possessed 926.33
engrossed 983.17
haunted 988.10
remembering 989.24
obsession
bewitchment 691.2
prepossession 926.13
engrossment 983.3
possession 988.5
obsessive
obsessional 926.34
engrossing 983.20
unforgettable 989.26
obsolesce
fall into disuse 390.9
age 842.9
obsolescence 390.1
obsolete
n archaism 526.12
adj out of action 19.17
disused 390.10
past 837.7
passé 842.15
obstacle
obstruction 293.3
hindrance 1012.4
obstetric 90.15
obstinacy
strength 15.1
refusal 325.1
defiance 327.2
resolution 359.1
perseverance 360.1
stubbornness 361.1
obstinateness 361.1
firmness 425.2
hostility 451.2
resistance 453.1
tenacity 803.3
uninfluenceability 895.2
obstinate strong 15.15
disobedient 327.8
resolute 359.11
persevering 360.8
stubborn 361.8
firm 425.7
oppositional 451.8
adhesive 803.12
uninfluenceable 895.4
obstreperous
noisy 53.13
vociferous 59.10
defiant 327.10
ungovernable 361.12
unruly 671.19
obstruct slow 175.9
stop 293.7
oppose 451.3
fend off 460.10
delay 846.8
get in the way 1012.12
obstructed
stopped 293.11
late 846.16
obstruction
slowing 175.4
clog 293.3
golf 751.1
delay 846.2
hindrance 1012.1
obstacle 1012.4
obstructionist
oppositionist 452.3
hinderer 1012.8
obstructive
n oppositionist 452.3
adj oppositional 451.8
resistant 453.5
dilatory 846.17
hindering 1012.17
obtain fetch 176.16
elicit 192.14
acquire 472.8
receive 479.6
exist 761.8
prevail 864.10
induce 886.11
obtainable
attainable 472.14
accessible 966.8
obtrude intrude 214.5
eject 909.13
obtrusive
conceited 140.11
insolent 142.9
intrusive 214.8
conspicuous 348.12
gaudy 501.20
obtuse insensible 25.6
unfeeling 94.9
blunt 286.3
negative 335.5
dull 922.16
obverse
n opposite side 215.3
front 216.1
likeness 784.3
adj contrapositive 215.5
contrary 779.6
obviate 1012.14
obvious distinct 31.7
manifest 348.8
patent 970.15
occasion
n pretext 376.1
circumstance 766.1
event 831.2
opportunity 843.2
cause 886.1
requirement 963.2
v be timely 843.6
cause 886.10
occasional
circumstantial 766.7
happening 831.9
incidental 843.11
casual 848.3
causal 886.13
occident 161.3
Occident 231.6
occidental 161.14
occipital 217.10
occlude close 293.6
obstruct 1012.12
occlusion seizure 85.6
closure 293.1
hindrance 1012.1
occlusive
n speech sound 524.12
adj phonetic 524.30
hindering 1012.17
occult
v cover 295.19
conceal 346.6
darken 1027.9
adj secret 345.11
concealed 346.11
latent 519.5
recondite 522.16
esoteric 689.23
supernatural 870.15
spectral 988.7
immaterial 1053.7
the occult secret 345.5
supernaturalism 870.7
immateriality 1053.1
occultation
disappearance 34.1
covering 295.1
concealment 346.1
eclipse 1027.8
occultism
supernaturalism 689.2
esoterics 689.1
immateriality 1053.1
occultist
esoteric 689.11
immaterialist 1053.4
occupancy
habitation 225.1
possession 469.1
occupant
inhabitant 227.2
tenant 470.4
occupation
habitation 225.1
action 328.1
possession 469.1
appropriation 480.4
work 724.1
vocation 724.6
operation 889.1
occupational hazard 85.32
occupational medicine 90.13
occupied
inhabited 225.12
busy 330.21
engaged 724.15
absorbed in thought 931.22
engrossed 983.17
occupy pervade 221.7
inhabit 225.7
possess 469.4
appropriate 480.19
engage 724.10
include 772.3
occupy the mind 931.20
engross 983.13
occur be present 221.6
exist 761.8
happen 831.5
occur to 931.18
occurrence
appearance 33.1
presence 221.1
existence 761.1
circumstance 766.1
event 831.2
prevalence 864.2
ocean
sea 240.1
the deep 240.3
quantity 247.3
ocean depths
ocean 240.1
the deep sea 275.4
oceanic
nautical 182.57
marine 240.9
ocean liner 180.5
oceanographer
thalassographer 240.8
measurer 300.9
earth scientist 1071.2
oceanography
thalassography 240.7
sounding 275.5
earth science 1071.1
Oceanus
spirit of the sea 240.4
water god 678.10
ocelot
variegation 47.6
wild cat 311.22
ocherous orange 42.2
yellow 43.4
Ockham's razor 484.1
octagonal
pentagonal 278.10
eighth 882.20
octave harmonics 709.9
interval 709.20
poetry 720.9
eight 882.4
octet cooperation 450.1
part music 708.18
poetry 720.9

eight 882.4
electron 1033.3
octogenarian
old man 304.2
eighty 882.7
ocular visual 27.20
optic 29.9
oculist
ophthalmologist 29.8
doctor 90.4
OD
n mariner 183.1
ship's officer 183.7
commissioned officer 575.18
v take sick 85.47
commit suicide 308.22
odalisque subject 432.7
demimonde 665.15
odd remaining 256.7
dissimilar 787.4
occasional 848.3
queer 870.11
sole 872.9
insane 926.26
eccentric 927.5
numeric 1017.23
oddball
n intruder 774.2
misfit 789.4
oddity 870.4
freak 927.4
adj odd 870.11
eccentric 927.6
oddity queerness 870.3
character 870.4
curiosity 870.5
eccentricity 927.1
odd job 724.2
odds advantage 249.2
gambling odds 759.6
difference 780.1
inequality 791.1
probability 968.1
even chance 972.7
odds and ends
remainder 256.1
notions 735.6
miscellany 770.13
hodgepodge 797.6
Odin 458.13
odious filthy 80.23
offensive 98.18
unlikable 99.7
base 661.12
terrible 1000.9
odium hate 103.1
infamy 661.4
odor smell 69.1
fragrance 70.1
characteristic 865.4
odorize scent 69.7
perfume 70.8
odorizer 70.6
odorless 72.5
odorous
odoriferous 69.9
fragrant 70.9
malodorous 71.5
odyssey 177.2
Oedipus complex 92.22
oeuvre
literature 547.12
complete works 718.1
of 775.13
of age adult 303.12
marriageable 563.20
of consequence 997.18
of course
adv consequently 887.7
certainly 970.23
interj yes 332.18
off
n horse race 757.3
v kill 308.14
put an end to 395.12
adj dissonant 61.4
right 219.4
idle 331.18
tainted 393.41
dissimilar 787.4
occasional 848.3
odd 870.11
insane 926.26
delirious 926.31
erroneous 975.16
imperfect 1003.4
below par 1005.10
adv hence 188.20
oceanward 240.12
at a distance 261.14
prep from 255.14
offal slough 80.9
refuse 391.4
off and on
adj occasional 848.3
adv infrequently 848.4
alternately 850.11
irregularly 851.4
changeably 854.8
to and fro 916.21
off-balance
eccentric 160.12
unbalanced 791.5
confused 985.12
off-base untimely 844.6
misbehaving 322.5
wrong 638.3
inaccurate 975.17
offbeat
n beat 709.26
adj dissimilar 787.4
unconventional 868.6
unusual 870.10
off-center
eccentric 160.12
distorted 265.10
off chance
possibility 966.1
small chance 972.9
off-color off-tone 35.21
ill 85.56
wrong 638.3
risqué 666.7
off-course 164.8
off duty
on vacation 20.12
idle 331.18
offend
give offense 98.11
provoke 152.21
affront 156.5
do wrong 655.4
offend the eye 1015.5
offender 660.8
offense umbrage 152.2
provocation 152.11
indignity 156.2
violation 435.2
attack 459.1
misdeed 655.2
wrong 674.4
basketball game 747.3
hockey 749.3
fight 754.3
offensive
n attack 459.1
adj nasty 64.7
malodorous 71.5
objectionable 98.18
insulting 156.8
warlike 458.21
combative 459.30
vulgar 497.10
ill-bred 505.6
obscene 666.9
terrible 1000.9
hideous 1015.11
offer
n attempt 403.2
proffer 439.1
offering 439.1
giving 478.1
v put to choice 371.21
attempt 403.6
proffer 439.4
give 478.12
bid 733.9
play 745.5
answer 939.4
adduce 957.12
offered 324.7
offering offer 439.1
gift 478.4
donation 478.6
oblation 696.7
game 745.3
offertory
donation 478.6
paean 696.3
oblation 696.7
sacred music 708.17
off-guard
negligent 340.10
unalert 984.8
offhand
adj nonchalant 106.15
careless 340.11
unpremeditated 365.11
extemporaneous 365.12
informal 581.3
adv carelessly 340.18
extemporaneously 365.15
informally 581.4
office
n act of kindness 143.7
library 197.6
function 387.5
aid 449.1
ceremony 580.4
bureau 594.4
commission 615.1
divine service 696.8
rite 701.3
duty 724.3
position 724.5
shop 739.7
v direct 573.8
office boy
errand boy 353.4
attendant 577.5
officeholder
official 575.16
office-bearer 610.11
officer
n executive 574.3
official 575.16
commissioned officer 575.18
policeman 1008.15
v govern 612.12
official
n executive 574.3
officer 575.16
agent 576.3
football 746.3
basketball 747.3
tennis 748.2
golf 751.3
soccer 752.3
boxing 754.3
adj authoritative 417.15
preceptive 419.4
recorded 549.17
governmental 612.17
executive 612.19
occupational 724.16
correct 970.18
officialdom 575.15
officialese
jargon 523.10
political jargon 609.37
officiate
administer 573.11
minister 701.16
function 724.13
baseball 745.5
football 746.5
sit in judgment 946.12
officious
meddlesome 214.9
overactive 330.24
offing
the distance 261.3
the future 839.1
offish arrogant 141.12
reticent 344.10
aloof 583.6
off-key 61.4
off-limits
restricted 210.8
prohibited 444.7
off-road racing 744.1
offscourings offal 80.9
remainder 256.1
refuse 391.4
rabble 606.3
off-season
n season 313.1
adj seasonal 313.9
offset
n setoff 338.2
printing 548.1
print 548.3
offshoot 561.4

the opposite 779.2
counteractant 900.3
v set off 338.5
cushion 670.8
go contrary to 779.4
neutralize 900.7
adj neutralizing 900.9
offsetting
n compensation 338.1
neutralization 900.2
adj compensating 338.6
neutralizing 900.9
offshoot fork 171.4
adjunct 254.1
sprig 310.20
offset 561.4
party 617.4
branch 617.10
sect 675.3
member 793.4
effect 887.1
extract 893.3
offshore 240.12
offspring child 302.3
family 559.5
posterity 561.1
descendant 561.3
sequel 835.2
effect 887.1
product 893.1
off the beaten track
secluded 584.8
unusual 870.10
off the cuff
adj extemporaneous 365.12
adv extemporaneously 365.15
off the record
adj confidential 345.14
adv confidentially 345.20
off-the-wall
unexpected 131.10
odd 870.11
crazy 926.27
off year 844.2
often frequently 847.6
repeatedly 849.16
ogle
n gaze 27.5
flirtation 562.9
v scrutinize 27.14
gaze 27.15
flirt 562.20
spectate 918.5
ogre frightener 127.9
monster 593.6
oh O! 122.20
my! 122.21
ohm 1032.13
oil
n balm 86.11
flattery 511.1
painting 712.14
fuel 1021.1
illuminant 1025.20
oleum 1056.1
v medicate 91.25
smooth 287.5
provision 385.9
flatter 511.6
facilitate 1014.7
fuel 1021.8
grease 1056.8
oiling
facilitation 1014.5
lubrication 1056.6
oily
slippery 287.12
insincere 354.32
suave 504.18
flattering 511.8
greasy 1056.9
ointment
anesthetic 25.3
balm 86.11
unction 701.5
money 728.2
lubricant 1056.3
okay
n consent 441.1
permission 443.1
v consent 441.2
permit 443.9
adj acceptable 107.12
accurate 973.16
excellent 999.13
tolerable 999.20
interj yeah 332.19
old aged 303.16
disused 390.10
experienced 413.28
former 837.10
age-old 842.10
antiquated 842.13
old age age 303.5
oldness 842.1
the old country
world region 231.6
fatherland 232.2
old days 837.2
older
n senior 304.5
adj mature 304.7
previous 834.4
senior 842.19
oldest
n senior 304.5
adj older 842.19
Old Faithful 1019.10
old-fashioned
disused 390.10
gallant 504.15
old-fangled 842.16
conservative 853.8
old fogy
back number 842.8
conservative 853.4
dotard 924.9
old hand 413.16
old hat trite 117.9
old-fashioned 842.16
old lady
ladylove 104.15
old woman 304.3
wife 563.8
old-line
conservative 611.17
unchanged 853.8
established 855.13
old maid
fussbudget 495.7
prude 500.11
spinster 565.4
old man beau 104.13
elder 304.2
father 560.9
forefather 560.10
grandfather 560.13
husband 563.7
commissioned officer 575.18
back number 842.8
the Old Man
ship's officer 183.7
commissioned officer 575.18
old master
work of art 712.10
artist 716.1
old money 618.1
old pro
veteran 413.16
professional 726.4
old salt mariner 183.3
veteran 413.16
old saw 974.3
old school 853.4
old story 974.3
Old Testament 683.3
old-timer
old man 304.2
veteran 413.16
back number 842.8
old times 837.2
old wives' tale 954.3
old woman
effeminate male 77.11
old lady 304.3
fussbudget 495.7
grandmother 560.16
wife 563.8
back number 842.8
Old World 231.6
old-world
gallant 504.15
antiquated 842.13
olfactories 69.5
olfactory 69.12
olio stew 10.11
hodgepodge 797.6
olive 44.4
olive branch 465.2
ology 928.10
Olympian
apathetic 94.13
arrogant 141.12
high 272.14
reticent 344.10
aloof 583.6
impartial 649.10
heavenly 681.12
Olympics 457.3
Olympus 681.9
ombudsman 466.3
omega 820.1
omelet 10.26
omen
n portent 133.3
warning sign 399.3
prediction 962.1
v foreshow 133.10
ominous
portentous 133.17
threatening 514.3
premonitory 962.12
harmful 1000.12
unfortunate 1011.14
omission
deletion 255.5
neglect 340.1
nonaccomplishment 408.1
mismanagement 414.6
nonobservance 435.1
misdeed 655.2
exclusion 773.1
deficiency 795.2
slip 975.4
want 992.4
omit delete 255.12
leave undone 340.7
exclude 773.4
omitting 773.10
omnibus
n public vehicle 179.13
compilation 554.7
adj comprehensive 772.7
whole 792.9
thorough 794.10
omnifarious 783.3
omnipotence 18.3
omnipotent
powerful 18.13
almighty 677.17
omnipresence
all-presence 221.2
completeness 794.1
omnipresent
all-present 221.13
almighty 677.17
thorough 794.10
omniscience 928.6
omniscient
almighty 677.17
knowing 928.15
omnivorous eating 8.31
greedy 100.27
gluttonous 672.6
on
adj addicted 87.25
happening 831.9
adv forward 162.8
on foot 177.43
under way 182.63
after which 835.7
across 901.25
prep at 159.27
toward 161.26
atop 198.16
against 223.25
upon 295.37
with relation to 775.13
on account 622.10
on account of
for 449.26
because of 888.9
on and off 854.8
on and on
increasingly 251.9
continuously 812.10
constantly 847.7
on-again off-again 813.4
on a par 790.7
on approval
at choice 371.27
on trial 942.14
on behalf of for 449.26
instead of 862.12

on board here 159.23
on shipboard 182.62
present 221.12
joined 800.13
on call handy 387.20
on demand 421.12
cash 624.25
once
adj former 837.10
adv whenever 821.12
once upon a time 837.14
one time 848.6
singly 872.13
once in a while 848.5
once upon a time 837.14
oncoming
n approach 167.1
beginning 818.1
adj progressive 162.6
approaching 167.4
on condition 959.12
on demand
at demand 421.12
cash 624.25
on duty 330.21
one
n child 302.3
person 312.5
I 872.3
adj quantitative 244.5
married 563.21
almighty 677.17
identical 778.7
whole 792.9
combined 805.5
single 872.7
one and all
n entire 792.3
all 864.4
adj every 864.15
adv unanimously 332.17
completely 794.14
one and only
n one 872.3
adj sole 872.9
one-armed bandit 759.16
one at a time 872.13
one by one
separately 802.27
each 865.19
singly 872.13
on edge nervous 128.11
in suspense 130.12
impatient 135.6
one-horse
insignificant 248.6
inferior 250.6
little 258.10
unimportant 998.18
one-horse town 230.3
one mind 332.5
on end
vertically 200.13
continuously 812.10
oneness accord 455.1
sameness 778.1
agreement 788.1
whole 792.1
simplicity 798.1
particularity 865.1
singleness 872.1
unity 872.1
one-night stand
copulation 75.7
engagement 704.11
one-on-one
n basketball game 747.3
adj contrapositive 215.5
front 216.10
personal 312.15
in opposition 451.9
plain-speaking 535.3
familiar 587.19
one-piece 872.11
onerous
oppressive 98.24
heavy 297.17
laborious 725.18
hampering 1012.18
troublesome 1013.18
oneself 865.5
one-sided sided 218.7
distorted 265.10
partial 650.11
unipartite 872.11
discriminatory 980.12
onetime 837.10
one time
adj infrequent 848.2
adv once 848.6
one-track mind 926.13
one-upmanship
cunning 415.1
competition 457.2
one-way 161.12
ongoing
n progression 162.1
course 172.2
adj progressive 162.6
improving 392.15
happening 831.9
operating 889.11
on guard
adj vigilant 339.13
cautious 494.8
adv defensively 460.16
on hand present 221.12
in store 386.16
handy 387.20
possessed 469.8
on high
high up 272.21
celestially 681.13
on hold
neglected 340.14
late 846.16
on ice
prearranged 965.8
assured 970.20
on loan 620.7
onlooker
neighbor 223.6
spectator 918.1
onlooking 918.7
only
adj sole 872.9
adv limited 248.10
simply 798.11
solely 872.14
onomatopoeic
imitative 336.9
representational 349.13
lexical 526.19
onomatopoeic word 526.16
on one's knees
humbled 137.13
obsequious 138.14
obeisant 155.10
deferential 433.16
supplicatory 440.16
worshipful 696.16
on one's last legs
burnt-out 21.10
stricken in years 303.18
dying 307.33
worn-out 393.36
on one's mind 931.24
on one's own
at will 323.5
independently 430.33
singly 872.13
on one's toes 339.14
on paper
adj written 547.22
adv theoretically 951.16
on purpose 380.10
on record 549.17
onrush course 172.2
flow 238.4
on schedule 130.14
onset attack 459.1
printing 548.1
beginning 818.1
onslaught attack 459.1
berating 510.7
unruliness 671.3
impact 902.3
onstage 704.36
on stream 405.22
on tap 387.20
on tenterhooks
anxious 126.7
in suspense 130.12
in a dilemma 971.25
on the ball alert 339.14
clear-witted 920.13
attentive 983.15
on the bare possibility 966.10
on the beam
laterally 218.8
straight 277.7
knowledgeable 928.17
on the blink
unserviceable 391.14
impaired 393.38
disorderly 810.13
on the block 734.17
on the brink 211.15
on the cuff 622.10
on the double
adj swiftly 174.17
hurried 401.11
interj make haste! 401.16
on the fence
neutral 467.7
nonpartisan 609.45
on the fritz
unserviceable 391.14
impaired 393.38
disorderly 810.13
on the go
under way 172.9
en route 177.42
busy 330.21
on the house
adj gratuitous 634.5
adv as a gift 478.27
gratuitously 634.6
on the job busy 330.21
alert 339.14
attentive 983.15
on the level 644.14
on the lookout 339.13
on the lookout for
adj expectant 130.11
searching 938.38
prep after 382.12
on the loose
escaped 369.11
free 430.21
festive 743.28
on the make
aspiring 100.28
out for 403.17
on the mend 392.15
on the move
under way 172.9
en route 177.42
busy 330.21
on the nose
directable 161.13
accurate 973.16
on the other hand
laterally 218.8
aside 218.10
notwithstanding 338.8
contrarily 779.9
otherwise 780.11
comparatively 943.10
all things considered 946.17
on the quiet 345.18
on the rocks
aground 182.73
insolvent 625.11
stranded 1013.27
on the run
adj busy 330.21
adv under way 172.9
on the move 177.42
hastily 401.12
on the shelf
neglected 340.14
disused 390.10
on the side
aside 218.10
additionally 253.11
on the spot here 159.23
hasty 401.9
now 838.3
promptly 845.15
in danger 1006.13
in trouble 1013.22
on the take 378.4
on the verge 211.15
on the wagon 668.10
on the way
along the way 176.20
in preparation 405.22
on the whole
on the average 246.5
in the long run 792.14

generally 864.17
all things considered 946.17
on time
on credit 622.10
punctually 845.14
on to
v learn 551.14
adj cognizant of 928.16
ontogeny 861.3
on top of atop 198.16
additionally 253.11
on 295.37
restraining 428.11
attentive 983.15
protective 1008.23
on trial
adv under examination 942.14
phrs in litigation 598.22
on trust
on credit 622.10
believingly 953.28
onus duty 641.1
charge 643.3
guilt 656.1
stigma 661.6
proof 957.3
impediment 1012.6
onward
v make one's way 162.4
adj progressive 162.6
adv forward 162.8
frontward 216.13
oodles 247.4
oomph pep 17.3
importance 997.1
ooze
n slime 80.8
exuding 190.6
mud 1062.8
v exude 190.15
be damp 1065.11
opacity obscurity 522.3
stupidity 922.3
opaqueness 1031.1
opalescence
rainbow effect 47.2
iridescence 1025.18
opalescent
soft-colored 35.22
rainbow-like 47.10
iridescent 1025.37
opaque
v darken 1031.2
adj obscure 522.15
stupid 922.15
intransparent 1031.3
op cit 957.24
open
v cleave 224.4
spread 259.6
ope 292.11
disclose 351.4
dramatize 704.28
open up 818.12
adj visible 31.6
approachable 167.5
receptive 187.16
exterior 206.7
available 222.15
champaign 236.2
spread 259.11
unclosed 292.17
communicative 343.10
overt 348.10
published 352.17
leisure 402.5
artless 416.5
free-acting 430.23
unrestricted 430.27
liberal 485.4
phonetic 524.30
plain-speaking 535.3
hospitable 585.11
candid 644.17
incoherent 804.4
influenceable 894.15
liable 897.5
accessible 966.8
undecided 971.18
open-minded 979.10
exposed 1006.15
adv without date 822.5
the open 206.3
open-air outdoor 206.8
airy 317.12
open and aboveboard 644.14
open-and-shut
manifest 348.8
assured 970.20
open-and-shut case
proof 957.3
sure thing 970.2
open arms
reception 187.1
entree 187.3
welcome 585.2
greeting 585.4
open door entree 187.3
hospitality 585.1
foreign policy 609.5
opener
can opener 292.10
inauguration 818.5
open-eyed
wondering 122.9
vigilant 339.13
curious 981.5
attentive 983.15
open fire
n fire 1019.13
v pull the trigger 459.22
open 818.12
interj attack! 459.32
open forum
forum 423.3
arena 463.1
discussion 541.7
openhanded
liberal 485.4
magnanimous 652.6
openhearted
artless 416.5
liberal 485.4
hospitable 585.11
candid 644.17
opening
appearance 33.1
entree 187.3
entrance 189.5
outlet 190.9
vacancy 222.2
crack 224.2
aperture 292.1
display 348.2
passageway 383.3
position 724.5
beginning 818.1
opportunity 843.2
opening move 818.3
opening night 704.12
open market
marketplace 736.2
stock market 737.1
open mind 979.3
open-minded
nonrestrictive 430.25
influenceable 894.15
open 979.10
openmouthed
vociferous 59.10
wondering 122.9
gaping 292.18
curious 981.5
attentive 983.15
surprised 131.12
openness
approachability 167.2
receptivity 187.9
exteriority 206.1
communicativeness 343.3
manifestness 348.3
artlessness 416.1
plain speech 535.1
talkativeness 540.1
candor 644.4
inclusion 772.1
influenceability 894.5
susceptibility 897.2
accessibility 966.3
open-mindedness 979.3
exposure 1006.3
open question 971.8
the open road 177.3
open season 313.1
open sesame
n opener 292.10
password 517.12
incantation 691.4
influence 894.6
interj open up! 292.23
open shop 727.3
open to liable to 897.6
accessible 966.8
open to question 971.17
open up
v spread 259.6
open 292.11
come out 348.6
disclose 351.4
confess 351.7
make public 352.11
let oneself go 430.19
propose 439.5
begin 818.12
facilitate 1014.7
interj open sesame! 292.23
open warfare 458.1
opera theater 704.14
score 708.28
musical theater 708.34
operable
usable 387.23
workable 889.10
practicable 966.7
practical 995.6
opera glasses 29.4
operagoer 710.21
opera house 704.14
operant
n doer 726.1
operator 889.4
adj operating 889.11
opera singer 710.13
operate
treat 91.24
pilot 182.14
act 328.4
plot 381.9
use 387.10
trade 737.23
function 889.5
be operative 889.7
operate on treat 91.24
act on 889.6
operatic
dramatic 704.33
vocal 708.50
operating
n motion 172.1
adj acting 328.10
operational 889.11
operating room 197.25
operation
surgery 90.2
surgical intervention 91.19
motion 172.1
action 328.1
act 328.3
function 387.5
utilization 387.8
undertaking 404.1
military operation 458.5
transaction 731.4
workings 889.1
functioning 889.1
performance 892.5
operational
acting 328.10
operative 889.9
operating 889.11
functional 889.12
operative
n secret agent 576.9
detective 576.10
doer 726.1
operator 889.4
adj powerful 18.12
acting 328.10
effectual 387.21
operational 889.9
operator surgeon 90.5
man of action 330.8
telephone operator 347.9
schemer 381.7
politics 610.6
doer 726.1
speculator 737.11
operative 889.4
liveware 1042.17
operetta 708.34
operose
painstaking 339.11
laborious 725.18

  difficult 1013.17
ophthalmic eye 2.28
  visual 27.20
  optic 29.9
ophthalmologist 29.8
opiate
  sleep-inducer 22.10
  anesthetic 25.3
  drug 87.3
opine remark 524.24
  judge 946.8
  suppose 951.10
  think 953.11
opinion advice 422.1
  idea 932.1
  estimate 946.3
  sentiment 953.6
  attitude 978.1
opinionated
  obstinate 361.8
  dogmatic 970.22
opinion poll 938.14
opium 22.10
opossum 311.23
opponent
  n adversary 452.1
  adj oppositional 451.8
opportune apt 788.10
  timely 843.9
  expedient 995.5
opportunist
  n timeserver 363.4
  schemer 381.7
  adj scheming 381.13
opportunity turn 825.2
  probability 843.2
  chance 972.1
oppose
  contrapose 215.4
  dissent 333.4
  deny 335.4
  counter 451.3
  offer resistance 453.3
  disapprove 510.10
  go contrary to 779.4
  counteract 900.6
  compare 943.4
  hinder 1012.10
oppose change 853.6
opposed
  contrapositive 215.5
  unwilling 325.5
  oppositional 451.8
  disapproving 510.21
  contrary 779.6
  adverse 1011.13
opposed to 451.10
opposed to change 853.8
opposer 452.3
opposing
  n contraposition 215.1
  opposition 451.1
  resistance 453.1
  comparison 943.1
  adj contrapositive 215.5
  dissenting 333.6
  negative 335.5
  oppositional 451.8
  disapproving 510.21
  contrary 779.6
opposing party 452.1
opposing side 452.1
opposite
  n inverse 205.4
  poles 215.2
  contrary 779.2
  adj contrapositive 215.5
  fronting 216.11
  oppositional 451.8
  contrary 779.6
  adverse 1011.13
  adv poles apart 215.6
  prep against 223.25
  over against 779.10
opposite number
  the opposite 779.2
  equal 790.4
opposition
  contraposition 215.1
  refusal 325.1
  dissent 333.1
  opposing 451.1
  resistance 453.1
  disapproval 510.1
  contrariety 779.1
  difference 780.1
  disagreement 789.1
  counteraction 900.1
  comparison 943.1
  hindrance 1012.1
oppositional
  opponent 451.8
  contrary 779.6
  counteractive 900.8
opposition party 609.24
oppress
  burden 98.16
  sadden 112.18
  aggrieve 112.19
  weight down 297.13
  persecute 389.7
  domineer 612.16
  task 725.16
  go hard with 1011.8
oppressed
  sad 112.20
  weighted 297.18
  subjugated 432.14
  downtrodden 432.16
oppression
  affliction 96.8
  dejection 112.3
  stuffiness 173.6
  burden 297.7
  persecution 389.3
  despotism 612.10
oppressive
  burdensome 98.24
  depressing 112.30
  stuffy 173.16
  onerous 297.17
  imperious 417.16
  laborious 725.18
  hampering 1012.18
  troublesome 1013.18
  sultry 1019.28
oppressor 575.14
opprobrium
  vilification 513.2
  infamy 661.4
oppugn
  contradict 451.6
  quarrel 456.11
  dispute 457.21
  go contrary to 779.4
  counteract 900.6
opt 371.13
optic
  n eye 2.9
  vision 27.9
  adj eye 2.28
  visual 27.20
  optical 29.9
optical illusion 976.5
optical instrument 29.1
optician 29.8
optics
  optical physics 29.7
  light 1025.22
optimal 999.16
optimism
  cheerfulness 109.1
  optimisticalness 124.3
  sanguine expectation 130.2
optimist 124.6
optimistic
  cheerful 109.11
  upbeat 124.12
  expectant 130.11
optimum
  n the best 999.8
  adj best 999.16
option discretion 371.2
  free will 430.6
  first option 733.2
  stock option 737.21
optional
  voluntary 324.7
  elective 371.22
optometrist
  oculist 29.8
  doctor 90.4
optometry 29.7
opulence wealth 618.1
  plenty 991.2
opulent
  wealthy 618.14
  plentiful 991.7
opus writing 547.10
  book 554.1
  piece 708.5
  product 893.1
or
  n yellowness 43.1
  heraldry 647.2
  adj yellow 43.4
  conj either . . . or 371.29
OR 197.25
oracle
  n wise man 921.1
  Delphic oracle 962.7
  maxim 974.1
  v dogmatize 970.10
oracular
  predictive 962.11
  dogmatic 970.22
oral
  n examination 938.2
  adj mouthlike 292.22
  communicational 343.9
  speech 524.29
  traditional 842.12
oral history 547.12
orange
  n orangeness 42.1
  adj orangeish 42.2
orangery 1069.11
orate 543.10
oration 543.2
orator 543.6
oratorical 543.12
oratorio 708.17
oratory
  public speaking 543.1
  eloquence 544.1
  chapel 703.3
orb
  n eye 2.9
  vision 27.9
  region 231.2
  sphere 282.2
  royal insignia 647.3
  occupation 724.4
  stars 1072.4
  adj spherical 282.9
orbit
  n domain 231.2
  rank 245.2
  circle 280.2
  sphere 282.2
  route 383.1
  occupation 724.4
  sphere of influence 894.4
  circuitousness 914.1
  circuit 914.2
  circle 1072.16
  spacecraft 1075.2
  v encircle 280.10
  circle 914.5
orbiting 914.1
orchard 310.14
orchestra
  audience 48.6
  auditorium 704.15
  stage 704.16
  band 710.12
orchestrate 708.46
orchestration
  piece 708.5
  harmonization 709.2
orchestrator 710.20
ordain install 191.4
  command 420.8
  allot 477.9
  legislate 613.10
  appoint 615.11
  legalize 673.9
  frock 698.12
  destine 964.7
ordained
  in orders 698.17
  destined 964.9
ordeal trial 96.9
  occultism 690.3
  test 942.2
order
  n rank 245.2
  manner 384.1
  precept 419.1
  command 420.1
  demand 421.1
  peacefulness 464.2
  nomenclature 527.1
  harmony 533.2

race 559.4
caste 607.1
community 617.2
fellowship 617.3
school 617.5
decoration 646.5
medal 646.6
sect 675.3
good condition 765.3
arrangement 807.1
taxonomy 807.1
arrangement 808.1
class 809.2
classifications 809.5
sequence 815.1
normality 869.1
verdict 946.5
biology 1068.1
v outfit 5.41
command 420.8
demand 421.5
request 440.9
direct 573.8
organize 807.4
arrange 808.8
classify 809.6
exercise influence 894.8
pass judgment 946.13
ordered
harmonious 533.8
uniform 781.5
orderly 807.6
arranged 808.14
regular 850.6
ordering
direction 573.1
class 607.1
arrangement 808.1
organization 808.2
orderless
formless 263.4
unordered 810.12
vague 971.19
orderly
n hospital staff 90.11
attendant 577.5
adj pacific 464.9
harmonious 533.8
punctilious 580.10
uniform 781.5
consistent 803.11
ordered 807.6
arranged 808.14
regular 850.6
normal 869.8
adv regularly 781.8
order of the day
affairs 831.4
schedule 965.3
ordinal
classificational 809.7
consecutive 812.9
numeric 1017.23
ordinance rule 419.2
decree 420.4
law 673.3
rite 701.3
ordinary
n food service 8.11
heraldry 647.2
the usual 869.3
adj medium 246.3
inferior 250.6
customary 373.13
common 497.14
simple 499.6
populational 606.8
prosaic 721.5
frequent 847.4
prevalent 864.12
usual 869.9
average 1005.8
ordinate
n coordinates 300.5
v appoint 615.11
ordination
admission 187.2
appointment 615.2
holy orders 698.10
organization 808.2
ordnance arms 462.1
artillery 462.11
ordure feces 12.4
filth 80.7
ore raw material 406.5
mineral 1058.2
or else 780.11
organ instrument 384.4
periodical 555.1
branch 617.10
keyboard wind instrument 711.13
member 793.4
organ-grinder 710.9
organic
structural 266.6
organismic 305.17
innate 767.8
organic farming 1069.1
organic matter
living matter 305.1
animate matter 305.1
organism body 2.1
structure 266.1
organization 305.2
something 763.3
organist 710.8
organization
contour 262.2
structure 266.1
organism 305.2
plan 381.1
military unit 461.22
establishment 617.8
sect 675.3
workplace 739.1
composition 796.1
order 807.1
methodization 808.2
production 892.4
organizational
associational 617.17
formational 808.15
organize form 262.7
construct 266.5
plan 381.8
unionize 727.9
compose 796.3
league 805.4
order 807.4
methodize 808.10
establish 892.10
organized drunk 88.33
organic 305.17
planned 381.12
arranged 808.14
organized crime
the underworld 660.10
illicit business 732.1
organized labor 727.2
organizer
planner 381.6
unionist 727.4
arranger 808.5
producer 892.7
organ player 710.8
organ stop 711.19
orgasm
copulation 75.7
fury 105.8
spasm 917.6
orgasmic
lustful 75.27
frenzied 105.25
turbulent 671.18
convulsive 671.23
jerky 917.19
orgiastic
frenzied 105.25
carnal 663.6
incontinent 665.24
saturnalian 669.9
orgy spree 88.5
fury 105.8
dissipation 669.2
oriel 197.3
orient
n points of the compass 161.3
v orientate 161.11
accustom 373.9
adj luminous 1025.30
Orient 231.6
oriental 161.14
Oriental 312.3
orientation
navigation 159.3
direction 161.1
bearings 161.4
habituation 373.7
orienteering 159.3
orienter 422.3
orifice 292.1
origami 291.4
origin
etymology 526.15
beginning 818.1
origination 818.4
source 886.5
original
n real thing 337.2
writing 547.10
model 786.1
nonconformist 868.3
oddity 870.4
source 886.5
adj basic 199.8
native 226.5
actual 337.5
unused 390.12
essential 767.9
preceding 816.4
beginning 818.15
new 841.7
novel 841.11
unconventional 868.6
primary 886.14
genuine 973.15
imaginative 986.18
originality
nonimitation 337.1
newness 841.1
nonconformity 868.1
unconventionality 868.2
invention 986.3
original sin 655.3
originate
invent 337.4
initiate 818.10
take origin 818.13
cause 886.10
result from 887.5
produce 892.12
imagine 986.14
origination
beginning 818.1
origin 818.4
source 886.5
production 892.1
product 893.1
originative
causal 886.13
creative 892.16
imaginative 986.18
originator
author 886.4
producer 892.7
oriole 710.23
orison 696.4
Ormazd 677.5
ornament
n extra 254.4
ornamentation 498.1
figure of speech 536.1
ornateness 545.4
honor 646.1
decoration 646.5
passage 708.24
impromptu 708.27
grace 709.18
v add 253.4
decorate 498.8
make grandiloquent 545.7
ornamental
decorative 498.10
artistic 712.20
ornamentalist 716.11
ornamentation
decoration 498.1
ornament 498.1
ornateness 545.4
architectural element 717.2
superfluity 993.4
ornamented
adorned 498.11
figurative 536.3
ornate elegant 498.12
purple 545.11
ornery irascible 110.20
malicious 144.20
defiant 327.10
negative 335.5
perverse 361.11
oppositional 451.8

contrary 779.6
disagreeing 789.6
counteractive 900.8
orography 237.6
orotund 545.8
orphan
n survivor 256.3
derelict 370.4
v bereave 307.28
adj bereaved 307.35
orphanage 1009.4
orthodontic 90.15
orthodox
n true believer 687.4
adj firm 425.7
conventional 579.5
orthodoxical 687.7
conformist 867.6
Orthodox 675.30
orthodoxy
firmness 425.2
religion 675.1
soundness of doctrine 687
orthodoxness 687.1
conformity 867.1
Orthodoxy 675.9
orthogonal
perpendicular 200.12
right-angled 278.7
quadrangular 278.9
orthography 546.4
orthopedic 90.15
orts remainder 256.1
refuse 391.4
Oscar 646.2
oscillate
vacillate 362.8
be frequent 847.3
recur 850.5
change 854.5
vibrate 916.10
oscillating
vacillating 362.10
constant 847.5
oscillatory 916.15
oscillation
vacillation 362.2
constancy 847.2
periodicity 850.2
changing 854.3
vibration 916.1
oscillator 916.9
oscillatory
vacillating 362.10
periodic 850.7
oscillating 916.15
oscilloscope
instrument 916.8
radar 1036.1
osculate contact 223.10
kiss 562.19
Osiris 682.5
osmose 187.13
osmosis
transferal 176.1
sorption 187.6
ossified skeleton 2.26
hardened 1046.13
ossify callous 94.6
harden 1046.7
ossuary
mortuary 309.9
urn 309.12
tomb 309.16
ostensible
apparent 33.11
conspicuous 348.12
specious 354.27
pretexted 376.5
illusory 976.9
ostentation
display 348.2
conspicuousness 348.4
sham 354.3
ornateness 498.2
pretension 501.1
ostentatiousness 501.1
grandiloquence 545.1
ostentatious
pretentious 501.18
grandiloquent 545.8
ornate 498.12
osteopath 90.4
osteopathy 73.2
ostracism
disapproval 510.1
ostracization 586.3
elimination 773.2
banishment 909.4
ostracize
disapprove 510.10
turn thumbs down 586.6
exclude 773.4
banish 909.17
other
n a different thing 780.3
adj additional 253.10
unrelated 776.6
another 780.8
fresh 841.8
substitute 862.8
other-directed
extroverted 92.41
moved 375.30
conformable 867.5
other self
friend 588.1
self 865.5
other side 215.3
otherwise
adj other 780.8
adv contrarily 779.9
in other ways 780.11
otherworldly
heavenly 681.12
supernatural 870.15
visionary 986.24
immaterial 1053.7
extraterrestrial 1072.26
otic ear 2.28
auditory 48.13
otiose idle 331.18
fruitless 391.12
unserviceable 391.14
trivial 998.19
otology 48.9
ought to 641.3
oui 332.18
Ouija 689.6
ounce
modicum 248.2
weight 297.8
oust depose 447.4
eject 909.13
evict 909.15
ouster
ejection 909.1
eviction 909.2
ejector 909.11
out
n outlet 190.9
excuse 600.4
game 745.3
v be revealed 351.8
fight fire 1022.7
adj asleep 22.22
unconscious 25.8
dead-drunk 88.32
dislocated 160.9
exterior 206.7
disused 390.10
dissimilar 787.4
old-fashioned 842.16
odd 870.11
erroneous 975.16
extinguished 1022.11
adv to the point of exhaustion 21.14
audibly 50.18
hence 188.20
forth 190.21
externally 206.10
at a loss 473.9
prep from 188.21
out of 190.22
outage 795.2
out-and-out
downright 247.12
thorough 794.10
unqualified 960.2
outback
n open space 158.4
hinterland 233.2
remote region 261.4
wasteland 891.2
adj hinterland 233.9
secluded 584.8
outbalance 297.14
outbrave 492.12
outbreak
emotional outburst 105.9
revolt 327.4
outburst 671.6
beginning 818.1
outbuilding 228.9
outburst
exclamation 59.2
emotional outburst 105.9
outburst of anger 152.9
ejection 190.3
outbreak 671.6
disgorgement 909.7
flare 1019.14
outcast
n recluse 584.5
social outcast 586.4
exclusiveness 773.3
alien 774.3
oddity 870.4
adj unplaced 160.10
forlorn 584.12
cast-off 586.10
outclass outdo 249.9
defeat 412.6
out cold asleep 22.22
unconscious 25.8
dead-drunk 88.32
outcome ending 190.9
event 831.1
effect 887.1
product 893.1
solution 940.1
outcrop
n visibility 31.1
v appear 33.8
outcry
n noise 53.3
vociferation 59.4
lament 115.3
auction 734.4
v vociferate 59.8
outdate 842.9
outdated
disused 390.10
old-fashioned 842.16
outdistance
distance 249.10
reach out 261.5
outdo outrival 249.9
defeat 412.6
excel 999.11
outdoor 206.8
outdoors
n outside 206.3
adv out of doors 206.11
outer 206.7
outermost 206.7
outer space
the universe 158.1
remote region 261.4
depths 275.3
space 1072.3
outface 492.12
outfield
playground 743.11
baseball 745.1
outfielder 745.2
outfit
n wardrobe 5.2
costume 5.9
equipment 385.4
military unit 461.22
impedimenta 471.3
clique 617.6
team 617.7
company 770.3
set 770.12
v costume 5.41
equip 385.8
outflank 415.11
outflow
n outflowing 190.4
flow 238.4
spendings 626.2
v run out 190.13
outflowing
n outflow 190.4
adj outgoing 190.19
out for after 382.12
out to 403.17
searching 938.38
outgoer 190.10

- **outgoing**
  - *n* egress 190.2
  - *adj* extroverted 92.41
  - outbound 190.19
  - communicative 343.10
- **out-group**
  - company 770.3
  - exclusiveness 773.3
- **outgrow** develop 14.2
  - grow 259.7
- **outgrowth**
  - bodily development 14.1
  - growth 85.39
  - expansion 259.3
  - effect 887.1
  - product 893.1
  - extract 893.3
- **outguess** 415.11
- **outhouse** latrine 12.10
  - hut 228.9
- **outing** journey 177.5
  - disclosure 351.1
- **out in the open**
  - openly 348.15
  - exposed 1006.15
- **outland**
  - *n* outdoors 206.3
  - *adj* extraneous 774.5
- **outlander** 774.3
- **outlandish**
  - wonderful 122.10
  - extraterritorial 206.9
  - unrefined 497.12
  - inelegant 534.2
  - extraneous 774.5
  - unrelated 776.6
  - odd 870.11
  - fanciful 986.20
- **outlast** outtalk 540.7
  - outstay 827.8
- **outlaw**
  - *n* outcast 586.4
  - evildoer 593.1
  - criminal 660.9
  - exclusiveness 773.3
  - alien 774.3
  - oddity 870.4
  - *v* prohibit 444.3
  - ostracize 586.6
  - eliminate 773.5
  - banish 909.17
  - *adj* illegal 674.6
- **outlawed** prohibited 444.7
  - outcast 586.10
  - illegal 674.6
- **outlawry**
  - illegality 674.1
  - elimination 773.2
  - banishment 909.4
- **outlay**
  - *n* spendings 626.2
  - *v* spend 626.5
- **outlet** catharsis 92.25
  - egress 190.9
  - opening 292.1
  - escape 369.1
  - passageway 383.3
  - sale 734.1
- **outline**
  - *n* exterior 206.2
  - boundary 211.2
  - contour 262.2
  - diagram 381.3
  - treatise 556.1
  - abridgment 557.1
  - reflection 785.7
  - structural outline 801.4
  - *v* contour 211.9
  - describe 349.9
  - line 381.11
  - abridge 557.5
  - itemize 801.7
- **outlive** 827.8
- **outlook**
  - *n* viewpoint 27.7
  - observation post 27.8
  - field of view 31.3
  - view 33.6
  - expectations 130.4
  - dueness 639.1
  - the future 839.1
  - probability 968.1
  - mental outlook 978.2
  - *v* outbrave 492.12
- **out loud** 50.18
- **outlying** exterior 206.7
  - extrinsic 768.3
- **outmaneuver**
  - outdo 249.9
  - deceive 356.14
  - defeat 412.6
  - outwit 415.11
- **outmoded**
  - disused 390.10
  - old-fashioned 842.16
- **outmost** 206.7
- **outnumber** 884.5
- **out of** from 188.21
  - ex 190.22
  - escaped 369.11
  - bereft 473.8
  - wanting 992.13
- **out of bounds**
  - *n* game 746.3
  - *adj* restricted 210.8
  - prohibited 444.7
  - overpriced 632.12
  - excessive 993.16
- **out of character** 789.7
- **out of commission**
  - out of action 19.17
  - motionless 173.13
  - impaired 393.38
  - out of condition 765.7
- **out of contact** 94.9
- **out of control** 430.24
- **out of danger** 1007.6
- **out-of-date**
  - disused 390.10
  - anachronous 833.3
  - old-fashioned 842.16
- **out-of-doors** 206.8
- **out of favor**
  - disliked 99.9
  - in disrepute 661.13
- **out of focus** 32.6
- **out of hand**
  - ungovernable 361.12
  - extemporaneously 365.15
  - unrestrained 430.24
- **out of harm's way** 1007.6
- **out of humor**
  - discontented 108.7
  - out of temper 110.17
  - unhappy 112.21
- **out of it**
  - out of action 19.17
  - sleepy 22.21
  - unconscious 25.8
  - inadequate 250.7
  - foolish 923.9
  - unaware 930.13
  - oblivious 984.7
- **out of joint**
  - dislocated 160.9
  - in disrepair 393.37
  - inappropriate 789.7
  - separated 802.21
  - disorderly 810.13
- **out of keeping**
  - inappropriate 789.7
  - out of line 868.7
- **out of kilter**
  - impaired 393.38
  - out of condition 765.7
  - disorderly 810.13
- **out of line**
  - misbehaving 322.5
  - wrong 638.3
  - inappropriate 789.7
  - untimely 844.6
  - out of keeping 868.7
  - inaccurate 975.17
- **out of luck** 1011.14
- **out of one's mind** 926.26
- **out of order**
  - misbehaving 322.5
  - unserviceable 391.14
  - in disrepair 393.37
  - out of condition 765.7
  - disorderly 810.13
  - out of line 868.7
  - inexpedient 996.5
- **out of phase**
  - *n* wave 916.4
  - *adj* untimely 844.6
- **out of place**
  - misplaced 160.11
  - inappropriate 789.7
  - disorderly 810.13
  - out of line 868.7
  - inexpedient 996.5
- **out-of-pocket**
  - bereft 473.8
  - at a loss 473.9
  - poor 619.7
  - wanting 992.13
- **out of practice** 414.18
- **out of print** 992.11
- **out of proportion**
  - inappropriate 789.7
  - inconsistent 789.8
  - unequal 791.4
- **out of reach**
  - out-of-the-way 261.9
  - beyond reach 261.18
  - inaccessible 967.9
- **out of season**
  - unseasonal 313.9
  - inappropriate 789.7
  - anachronous 833.3
  - old-fashioned 842.16
  - scarce 992.11
- **out of shape**
  - deformed 265.12
  - out of practice 414.18
- **out of sight**
  - *adj* invisible 32.5
  - gone 34.4
  - blissful 97.9
  - absent 222.11
  - far 261.15
  - out of reach 261.18
  - overpriced 632.12
  - excessive 993.16
  - excellent 999.13
  - *interj* goody! 95.21
- **out of sorts**
  - ill 85.56
  - out of humor 110.17
  - unhappy 112.21
- **out of step** 868.7
- **out of style** 842.16
- **out of the blue**
  - unexpected 131.10
  - unexpectedly 131.14
- **out of the ordinary**
  - unusual 870.10
  - notable 997.19
- **out of the question**
  - *adj* hopeless 125.14
  - rejected 372.3
  - impossible 967.7
  - *interj* by no means 335.9
  - *phrs* I refuse 442.7
- **out of the running**
  - out of action 19.17
  - disappointing 132.6
  - inadequate 250.7
- **out-of-the-way**
  - unexpected 131.10
  - deviative 164.7
  - godforsaken 261.9
  - out of reach 261.18
  - secluded 584.8
  - irrelevant 776.7
  - farfetched 776.8
  - occasional 848.3
  - unconventional 868.6
  - unusual 870.10
  - circuitous 914.7
- **out of this world**
  - blissful 97.9
  - extreme 247.13
  - unusual 870.10
  - excessive 993.16
  - excellent 999.13
  - superb 999.15
- **out of touch** 94.9
- **out of tune**
  - dissonant 61.4
  - in disrepair 393.37
  - disaccordant 456.15
  - different 780.7
  - inappropriate 789.7
  - disorderly 810.13
  - out of line 868.7
- **out of whack**
  - unserviceable 391.14
  - impaired 393.38
  - out of condition 765.7
  - disagreeing 789.6
  - disorderly 810.13

out of work 331.18
out on a limb
  exposed 1006.15
  in trouble 1013.22
outpatient 85.43
outperform 249.9
outpost
  frontier 211.5
  vanguard 216.2
  hinterland 233.2
  remote region 261.4
  guard 1008.9
outpouring
  n outflow 190.4
  plenty 991.2
  adj outgoing 190.19
output yield 472.5
  receipts 627.1
  production 893.2
outrage
  n indignity 156.2
  mistreatment 389.2
  injustice 650.4
  misdeed 655.2
  evil 1000.3
  v offend 152.21
  insult 156.5
  mistreat 389.5
  violate 435.4
  work evil 1000.6
outrageous
  insulting 156.8
  overpriced 632.12
  undue 640.9
  disgraceful 661.11
  violent 671.16
  absurd 923.11
  excessive 993.16
  terrible 1000.9
outré 923.11
outreach
  outdo 249.9
  be long 267.5
  deceive 356.14
  outwit 415.11
outright
  adj downright 247.12
  thorough 794.10
  unqualified 960.2
  adv freely 430.32
  free and clear 469.12
  completely 794.14
outrun
  n skiing 753.1
  v overtake 174.13
  outdo 249.9
  defeat 412.6
outset
  n beginning 818.1
  v set out 188.8
outshine
  outdo 249.9
  defeat 412.6
outside
  n appearance 33.2
  exterior 206.2
  outdoors 206.3
  roulette 759.12
  adj exterior 206.7
  outdoor 206.8
  extrinsic 768.3
  extraneous 774.5
  adv externally 206.10
  outdoors 206.11
outside chance
  possibility 966.1
  small chance 972.9
outside of 773.10
outsider
  exclusiveness 773.3
  alien 774.3
  oddity 870.4
outsize
  n oversize 257.5
  adj large 247.7
  oversize 257.23
outskirts
  environment 209.1
  bounds 211.1
  frontier 211.5
  town 230.1
  city district 230.6
  remote region 261.4
outsmart
  deceive 356.14
  outwit 415.11
outspoken
  communicative 343.10
  artless 416.5
  free-acting 430.23
  speaking 524.31
  candid 644.17
outstanding
  exterior 206.7
  eminent 247.9
  remarkable 247.10
  superior 249.12
  superlative 249.13
  remaining 256.7
  protruding 283.14
  conspicuous 348.12
  due 623.10
  prominent 662.17
  notable 997.19
outstare 492.12
outstretched 259.11
outstrip lead 165.2
  overtake 174.13
  loom 247.5
  outdo 249.9
outtalk persuade 375.23
  outspeak 540.7
out to 403.17
outward
  adj apparent 33.11
  exterior 206.7
  formal 580.7
  extrinsic 768.3
  adv forth 190.21
outwear 827.8
outweigh excel 249.6
  overweigh 297.14
outwit outdo 249.9
  deceive 356.14
  outfox 415.11
outworn
  disused 390.10
  obsolete 842.15
oval
  n ovule 280.6
  playground 743.11
  track 755.1
  horse racing 757.1
  adj ovate 280.12
ovarian genital 2.29
  glandular 13.8
ovary 2.13
ovation
  celebration 487.1
  applause 509.2
oven kiln 742.5
  hot place 1019.11
over
  adj superior 249.12
  remaining 256.7
  higher 272.19
  ended 820.8
  past 837.7
  surplus 993.18
  adv inversely 205.8
  additionally 253.11
  on high 272.21
  again 849.17
  excessively 993.22
  prep all over 159.28
  through 161.27
  beyond 261.21
  on 295.37
  during 821.14
  in excess of 993.26
overabundance 993.2
overabundant 993.19
overact affect 500.12
  overdramatize 704.31
  overdo 993.10
overacted
  affected 500.15
  dramatic 704.33
  overdone 993.21
overactive 330.24
overactivity 330.9
overage excess 256.4
  surplus 993.5
overall
  adj cumulative 770.23
  comprehensive 772.7
  adv throughout 794.17
  generally 864.17
overall length 267.1
overambitious 101.12
over and above
  adj surplus 993.18
  prep with 253.12
  in excess of 993.26
over and over 849.16
over-anxious
  overzealous 101.12
  anxious 126.7
overassess 949.2
overawe
  daunt 127.18
  domineer 612.16
overbearing
  n authoritativeness 417.3
  adj arrogant 141.9
  imperious 417.16
overblown
  past one's prime 303.15
  overfull 993.20
overboard 182.74
overburden
  n onerousness 297.2
  burden 297.7
  overfullness 993.3
  v burden 297.13
  overload 993.15
  go hard with 1011.8
overburdened
  careworn 126.9
  weighted 297.18
  overfull 993.20
overcareful 494.11
overcast
  n atmosphere 184.32
  cloudiness 319.4
  darkening 1027.6
  v cloud 319.7
  darken 1027.9
  adj cloudy 319.8
  gloomy 1027.14
overcautious 494.11
overcharge
  n cathexis 92.34
  surcharge 632.5
  overfullness 993.3
  v exaggerate 355.3
  ornament 545.7
  charge 630.12
  overprice 632.7
  overload 993.15
overclouded 319.8
overcoat 5.13
overcome
  v unnerve 128.10
  excel 249.6
  defeat 411.5
  surmount 412.7
  adj dead-drunk 88.32
  overwrought 105.26
  crushed 112.29
  unnerved 128.14
  defeated 412.14
overcompensation
  defense mechanism 92.23
  inequality 791.1
overconfidence
  rashness 493.1
  confidence 970.5
overconfident
  rash 493.7
  confident 970.21
overconscientious
  overfastidious 495.12
  conscientious 644.15
overcooked 11.8
overcount 949.2
overcritical
  overfastidious 495.12
  critical 510.23
overcrossing 383.9
overcrowded
  full 794.11
  teeming 884.9
  overfull 993.20
overdeveloped
  grown 14.3
  oversize 257.23
  expanded 259.12
  excessive 993.16
overdo
  exaggerate 355.3
  overindulge 669.5
  overrun 910.4
  go too far 993.10

overdone done 11.8
exaggerated 355.4
affected 500.15
grandiloquent 545.8
overwrought 993.21
overdose
n superabundance 993.2
cloyer 994.3
v take sick 85.47
commit suicide 308.22
oversupply 993.14
satiate 994.4
overdraft arrears 623.2
insolvency 625.3
overdraw
misrepresent 350.3
exaggerate 355.3
overspend 486.7
overextend 993.13
overdrawn
exaggerated 355.4
overdone 993.21
overdress 5.42
overdrive task 725.16
overdo 993.10
overdue
expected 130.13
anachronous 833.3
late 846.16
overeager
overzealous 101.12
reckless 493.8
overeat 672.5
overelaborate
v overdo 993.10
adj ornate 498.12
affected 533.9
grandiloquent 545.8
overemotional
emotionalistic 93.19
excitable 105.28
overemphasis
exaggeration 355.1
overdoing 993.6
overemphasize
overdo 993.10
emphasize 997.14
overenthusiastic
overzealous 101.12
reckless 493.8
fanatic 926.32
overestimate
n overestimation 949.1
v exaggerate 355.3
overpraise 511.7
overreckon 949.2
overestimated
exaggerated 355.4
overrated 949.3
overexcited 105.26
overexercise
n overdoing 993.6
v overdo 993.10
overexert strain 725.10
overdo 993.10
overexpand 993.13
overexpansion 993.7
overextend
strain 725.10
overdraw 993.13
overextension
overactivity 330.9
strain 725.2
overdrawing 993.7
overexuberant 993.19
overfed
oversize 257.23
overgorged 672.7
overfull 993.20
satiated 994.6
overfill fill 794.7
overload 993.15
satiate 994.4
overflow
n spillage 238.6
wordiness 538.2
plenty 991.2
overfullness 993.3
v flow over 238.17
teem with 884.5
run over 910.7
abound 991.5
superabound 993.8
overflowing
n overflow 238.6
overrunning 910.1
adj much 247.8
diffuse 538.11
teeming 884.9
plentiful 991.7
overfull 993.20
overfull full 794.11
overloaded 993.20
satiated 994.6
overgarment 5.12
overgrow grow 14.2
spread 259.6
expand 259.7
vegetate 310.34
overspread 910.5
superabound 993.8
overgrown grown 14.3
large 247.7
oversize 257.23
overdeveloped 259.12
luxuriant 310.43
overrun 910.10
excessive 993.16
overgrowth
bodily development 14.1
oversize 257.5
growth 259.3
overrunning 910.1
excess 993.1
overhang
n overhanging 202.3
v hang over 202.7
overlie 295.30
be imminent 840.2
overhanging
n overhang 202.3
adj overhung 202.11
imminent 840.3
overhaul
n reparation 396.6
examination 938.3
v overtake 174.13
repair 396.14
take account of 628.9
examine 938.24
check 1017.21
overhead
n roof 295.6
expenses 626.3
adv on high 272.21
overhear hear 48.11
know 551.15
overheated hot 1019.25
heated 1020.29
overindulge
be intemperate 669.5
overeat 672.5
overdo 993.10
overindulgence
unstrictness 426.2
indulgence 427.3
intemperance 669.1
gluttony 672.1
excess 993.1
overindulgent
unstrict 426.5
indulgent 427.8
intemperate 669.7
overjoyed 95.17
overkill
exaggeration 355.1
attack 459.1
plenty 991.2
overdoing 993.6
overland 234.8
overlap
n overlayer 295.4
agreement 788.1
superfluity 993.4
v overlie 295.30
agree 788.6
overlapping
n overlayer 295.4
adj overlying 295.36
related 775.9
overlarge
oversize 257.23
exaggerated 355.4
excessive 993.16
overlay
n overlayer 295.4
v cover 295.19
ornament 545.7
overlie 295.30
overload
n burden 297.7
overfullness 993.3
v burden 297.13
ornament 545.7
overlade 993.15
go hard with 1011.8
overloaded
weighted 297.18
ornate 545.11
overfull 993.20
overlong 827.11
overlook
n observation post 27.8
v accept 134.7
condone 148.4
slight 157.6
front on 216.9
rise above 272.11
neglect 340.6
suffer 443.10
supervise 573.10
bewitch 691.9
examine 938.24
keep an open mind 979.7
be inattentive 984.2
overlooked
forgiven 148.7
neglected 340.14
overlord
master 575.1
potentate 575.8
chief 997.10
overlying 295.36
overmaster
overcome 412.7
subdue 432.9
domineer 612.16
overmatched 412.14
overmodest 500.19
overmuch
n excess 993.1
adj excessive 993.16
superabundant 993.19
adv excessively 993.22
overnice
overfastidious 495.12
overprecise 500.18
affected 533.9
overnight 315.11
over one's head
adj hard to understand 522.14
insufficient 992.9
adv deep 275.16
overparticular 495.12
overpass
n crossing 170.2
passageway 383.3
bridge 383.9
overrunning 910.1
v traverse 177.20
excel 249.6
outdistance 249.10
overrun 910.4
exceed 993.9
overpay 632.8
overplay
outdo 249.9
overdo 993.10
overplayed
dramatic 704.33
overdone 993.21
overplus
n excess 256.4
surplus 993.5
adj surplus 993.18
overpopulation 993.2
overpower
be strong 15.9
drown out 53.8
overcome 412.7
overpowered
overwrought 105.26
defeated 412.14
overpowering
impregnable 15.19
exciting 105.30
irresistible 412.18
overprice 632.7
overpriced 632.12
overprint 548.14
overrate 949.2
overrated 949.3

overreach
exaggerate 355.3
deceive 356.14
outwit 415.11
overrun 910.4
exceed 993.9
overreact
exaggerate 355.3
overdo 993.10
overrefined
sensitive 24.12
overfastidious 495.12
overnice 500.18
affected 533.9
sophistical 936.10
overreligious
zealous 692.11
fanatic 926.32
override
outdo 249.9
overlie 295.30
conquer 412.10
repeal 445.2
domineer 612.16
run over 910.7
overriding 997.24
overripe nasty 64.7
past one's prime 303.15
overrule repeal 445.2
rule 612.14
overruling chief 249.14
imperious 417.16
paramount 997.24
overrun
n overrunning 910.1
surplus 993.5
v pervade 221.7
overflow 238.17
spread 259.6
vegetate 310.34
appropriate 480.19
compose 548.16
overgo 910.4
infest 910.6
run over 910.7
superabound 993.8
exceed 993.9
adj luxuriant 310.43
overspread 910.10
overrunning
permeation 221.3
overflow 238.6
storm 459.6
inundation 910.1
overgoing 910.1
infestation 910.2
overseas
adj nonresident 222.12
transoceanic 261.11
adv oversea 240.11
abroad 774.6
oversee 573.10
overseer 574.2
oversell
exaggerate 355.3
oversupply 993.14
oversensitive
sensitive 24.12
touchy 110.21
overfastidious 495.12
overset
n overturn 205.2
surplus 993.5
v capsize 182.44
overturn 205.6
overthrow 395.20
overcome 412.7
oversexed 75.25
overshadow
eclipse 249.8
rise above 272.11
cloud 319.7
darken 1027.9
overshoot
land 184.43
overrun 910.4
exceed 993.9
oversight
neglect 340.1
nonobservance 435.1
supervision 573.2
government 612.1
operation 889.1
slip 975.4
protectorship 1008.2
oversimplification
undevelopment 406.4
oversimplicity 798.3
oversize
n outsize 257.5
adj oversized 257.23
oversleep sleep 22.13
miss an opportunity 844.5
be late 846.7
overspend
spend more than one has 486.7
overpay 632.8
overdo 993.10
overspread
v pervade 221.7
cover 295.19
disperse 771.4
bespread 910.5
infest 910.6
superabound 993.8
adj overrun 910.10
overstate
misrepresent 350.3
falsify 354.16
exaggerate 355.3
overestimate 949.2
overstay 846.15
overstep
presume on 640.7
overrun 910.4
transgress 910.9
exceed 993.9
overstrain
n fatigue 21.1
strain 725.2
overdoing 993.6
overextension 993.7
v fatigue 21.4
strain 725.10
overdo 993.10
overextend 993.13
overstuffed
upholstered 295.34
full 794.11
overfull 993.20
satiated 994.6
oversubtle
overfastidious 495.12
sophistical 936.10
oversupply
n superabundance 993.2
surplus 993.5
v overprovide 993.14
oversweet 66.5
overt 348.10
overt act 328.3
overtake
intoxicate 88.23
outstrip 174.13
come after 835.3
overtax
burden 297.13
overprice 632.7
strain 725.10
task 725.16
overdo 993.10
over-the-counter drug 86.4
over the hill
past one's prime 303.15
out of practice 414.18
overthrow
n overturn 205.2
fall 395.3
defeat 412.1
deposal 447.2
change 852.2
revolution 860.1
downthrow 913.2
refutation 958.2
v turn over 205.6
revolt 327.7
destroy 395.20
overcome 412.7
depose 447.4
change 852.7
revolutionize 860.4
overturn 913.6
refute 958.5
overthrown
ruined 395.28
defeated 412.14
disproved 958.7
overtime
basketball game 747.3
hockey 749.3
shift 825.3
overtire 21.4
overtired 21.11
overtone tone 50.2
milieu 209.3
meaning 518.1
implication 519.2
harmonics 709.16
overture
n offer 439.1
prelude 708.26
curtain-raiser 816.2
v make advances 439.7
overturn
n upset 205.2
fall 395.3
defeat 412.1
revolution 860.1
downthrow 913.2
v capsize 182.44
turn over 205.6
destroy 395.20
overcome 412.7
revolutionize 860.4
overthrow 913.6
refute 958.5
overvalue 949.2
overview
scrutiny 27.6
abridgment 557.1
overweening
n presumptuousness 141.2
insolence 142.1
confidence 970.5
adj vain 140.8
presumptuous 141.10
insolent 142.9
rash 493.7
confident 970.21
excessive 993.16
overweight
n oversize 257.5
weight 297.1
overfullness 993.3
v burden 297.13
outweigh 297.14
overload 993.15
adj corpulent 257.18
oversize 257.23
heavy 297.16
overwhelm
be strong 15.9
drown out 53.8
aggrieve 112.19
astonish 122.6
pervade 221.7
overflow 238.17
submerge 367.7
destroy 395.21
whelm 412.8
subdue 432.9
raid 459.20
teem with 884.5
run over 910.7
refute 958.5
oversupply 993.14
overwhelmed
overwrought 105.26
overcome 112.29
wondering 122.9
flooded 238.25
defeated 412.14
overrun 910.10
overwhelming
n permeation 221.3
overflow 238.6
overrunning 910.1
adj impregnable 15.19
exciting 105.30
astonishing 122.12
irresistible 412.18
teeming 884.9
evidential 957.16
overwork
n overdoing 993.6
v work hard 725.13
task 725.16
overdo 993.10
overworked
ornate 498.12
trite 864.16

overwrought
  overexcited 105.26
  exaggerated 355.4
  ornate 498.12
  grandiloquent 545.8
  overdone 993.21
overzealous
  ultrazealous 101.12
  obstinate 361.8
  reckless 493.8
  zealous 692.11
  fanatic 926.32
ovine 311.46
oviparous 305.23
ovoid
  n oval 280.6
  adj oval 280.12
  spherical 282.9
ovule
  oval 280.6
  ovum 305.12
  egg 305.15
ovum egg 305.12
  copulation 75.7
  vital force 886.7
owe be indebted 623.5
  be liable 897.3
owed payable 623.10
  due 639.7
owing payable 623.10
  due 639.7
  attributable 888.6
owing to
  conj resulting from 887.8
  prep because of 888.9
owl bird of ill omen 133.6
  bird 311.28
owlish 570.17
own
  v acknowledge 332.11
  confess 351.7
  have title to 469.5
  adj possessed 469.8
own accord 430.7
owner proprietor 470.2
  jockey 757.2
ownership 469.2
own free will 430.7
owning
  n confession 351.3
  possession 469.1
  adj possessing 469.9
ox
  symbol of strength 15.8
  beast of burden 176.8
  cattle 311.6
  bungler 414.8
oxcart 179.3
oxidation decay 393.6
  burning 1020.5
oxidize corrode 393.21
  burn 1020.24
  chemicalize 1060.8
oxygenate air 317.11
  vaporize 1067.8
oxymoron
  ambiguity 539.1
  self-contradiction 779.3
  inconsistency 789.2
  impossibility 967.1
  dilemma 1013.7
oyez! hark! 48.16
  attention! 983.22
oyster fowl part 10.23
  marine animal 311.30
ozone 317.1
pa 560.10
PA
  sound reproduction system 50.11
  hospital staff 90.11
  practice of medicine 90.13
pabulum 10.3
pace
  n velocity 172.4
  step 177.11
  gait 177.12
  v lead 165.2
  walk 177.27
  walk back and forth 177.28
  go on horseback 177.34
  row 182.53
  measure 300.10
pacer race horse 311.14
  jockey 757.2
pacesetter leader 574.6
  jockey 757.2
pachyderm 311.4
pacific
  quiescent 173.12
  meek 433.15
  peaceful 464.9
  unbelligerent 464.10
  pacificatory 465.12
pacification
  peacemaking 465.1
  truce 465.5
  modulation 670.2
pacifier
  sedative 86.12
  peacemaker 466.5
  moderator 670.3
pacifism inaction 329.1
  peaceableness 464.4
  moderation 670.1
pacifist
  n pacificist 464.6
  adj unbelligerent 464.10
pacifistic 670.10
pacify quiet 173.8
  conciliate 465.7
  calm 670.7
  order 807.4
pacifying
  pacificatory 465.12
  tranquilizing 670.15
pack
  n freight 176.6
  parachute 181.13
  amount 244.2
  lot 247.4
  stopping 293.5
  film 714.10
  card 758.2
  company 770.3
  group of animals 770.5
  bundle 770.8
  multitude 884.3
  impediment 1012.6
  v load 159.15
  transport 176.12
  fill 196.7
  package 212.9
  stop 293.7
  wrap 295.20
  tamper with 354.17
  assemble 770.18
  bundle 770.20
  stuff 794.7
  teem with 884.5
  prearrange 965.5
  overload 993.15
  obstruct 1012.12
package
  n packaging 212.2
  bundle 770.8
  all 792.3
  combination 805.1
  v pack 212.9
  wrap 295.20
  bundle 770.20
packaged
  packed 212.12
  covered 295.31
  assembled 770.21
package deal
  transaction 731.4
  all 792.3
  combination 805.1
package tour
  vacation 20.3
  journey 177.5
packaging 212.2
pack animal 176.8
pack away load 159.15
  store 386.10
packed
  packaged 212.12
  stopped 293.11
  tampered with 354.30
  crowded 770.22
  full 794.11
  stuck 855.16
  teeming 884.9
  prearranged 965.8
  overfull 993.20
  dense 1045.12
packet dose 87.20
  ship 180.1
  wealth 618.3
  bundle 770.8
packet boat 353.6
pack in enter 189.7
  thrust in 191.7
  assemble 770.18
  densify 1045.9
packing
  placement 159.6
  transportation 176.3
  lining 196.3
  packaging 212.2
  stopping 293.5
packinghouse 739.3
pack off repulse 908.3
  dismiss 909.18
pack of troubles 96.8
pack rat 770.15
pact 437.1
pad
  n thud 52.3
  foot 199.5
  partition 213.5
  quarters 228.4
  race horse 311.14
  print 517.7
  record book 549.11
  bedding 901.20
  safeguard 1008.3
  v thud 52.15
  relieve 120.5
  creep 177.26
  walk 177.27
  fill 196.7
  protract 538.8
  complete 794.7
  iterate 849.8
padded cell 926.14
padding
  creeping 177.17
  lining 196.3
  extra 254.4
  stopping 293.5
  redundancy 849.3
  superfluity 993.4
  safeguard 1008.3
  softening 1047.5
paddle
  n gait 177.12
  oar 180.15
  rod 605.2
  agitator 917.9
  v way of walking 177.28
  row 182.53
  punish 604.15
  agitate 917.10
  moisten 1065.12
paddle wheel
  gambling wheel 759.16
  propeller 904.6
paddling 604.5
paddy 1069.9
Paddy 232.7
paddy wagon 179.11
padlock
  n lock 428.5
  v close 293.6
padre clergyman 699.2
  priest 699.5
padrone 575.1
paean cheer 116.2
  thanks 150.2
  praise 509.5
  laud 696.3
  sacred music 708.17
paella 10.11
paesano
  fellow citizen 227.5
  friend 588.4
pagan
  n heathen 688.7
  unbeliever 695.11
  adj paganish 688.11
  unbelieving 695.19
  idolatrous 697.7
  unlearned 930.14
paganism
  heathenism 688.4
  idolatry 697.1
  unenlightenment 930.4
page
  n makeup 554.12
  attendant 577.5
  part of writing 793.2
  paper 1054.5

v summon 420.11
number 1017.17
pageant spectacle 33.7
display 501.4
pageantry
spectacle 33.7
display 501.4
paginate 1017.17
pagination 1017.9
pagoda tower 272.6
temple 703.2
paid
employed 615.20
paid-up 624.22
pain
n bread 10.28
physical suffering 26
suffering 26.1
symptom 85.9
annoyance 96.2
distress 96.5
tormentor 96.10
distressfulness 98.5
v give pain 26.7
grieve 96.17
distress 98.14
pained in pain 26.9
grieved 96.23
painful hurtful 26.10
distressing 98.20
laborious 725.18
troublesome 1013.18
pain in the neck
annoyance 96.2
tormentor 96.10
tedious person 118.5
pain killer
anesthetic 25.3
sedative 86.12
painless 1014.13
pains
painstakingness 339.2
punishment 604.1
exertion 725.1
painstaking
n painstakingness 339.2
adj diligent 339.11
paint
n color 35.8
blanket 295.12
horse 311.11
art equipment 712.18
card 758.2
makeup 1016.12
v color 35.14
represent 349.8
describe 349.9
ornament 498.8
figure 498.9
portray 712.19
beautify 1016.16
paintbrush 712.18
painter wild cat 311.22
artist 716.4
painting
paint-work 35.12
coloring 712.4
canvas 712.14
graphic arts 713.1
paint the town red
go on a spree 88.28
make merry 743.24
pair
n rig 179.5
set 784.5
two 873.2
deuce 873.3
v assemble 770.18
put together 800.5
league 805.4
double 873.5
adj numeric 1017.23
paired married 563.21
accompanying 769.9
joined 800.13
leagued 805.6
coupled 873.8
pairing joining 800.1
doubleness 873.1
pair off average 246.2
get married 563.15
league 805.4
double 873.5
paisano 227.5
pajamas 5.21
pal
n friend 588.4
v associate with 582.18
palace 228.7
palace revolution 860.1
paladin defender 460.7
brave person 492.8
palaestra 463.1
palatable edible 8.33
tasty 63.8
desirable 100.30
palate taste 62.1
taste bud 62.5
vocal organ 524.18
discrimination 944.1
palatial
residential 228.32
grandiose 501.21
palaver
n flattery 511.1
nonsense 520.2
speech 524.1
chatter 540.3
talk 541.3
conference 541.6
v flatter 511.5
chatter 540.5
confer 541.11
palazzo 228.7
pale
n bounds 211.1
enclosed place 212.3
sphere 231.2
plot 231.4
leg 273.6
heraldry 647.2
v blur 32.4
decolor 36.5
lose color 36.6
change color 105.19
take fright 127.11
fence 212.7
adj inconspicuous 32.6
soft-colored 35.22
colorless 36.7
whitish 37.8
unhealthy 85.54
dull 117.6
deathly 307.29
paleface 312.3
paleography
exegetics 341.8
linguistics 523.13
writing system 546.3
handwriting 547.3
paleolith 842.6
paleolithic 842.20
paleontology 1068.3
palette 712.18
palindrome
grammar 205.3
wordplay 489.8
palinode 363.3
palisade
n precipice 200.3
fence 212.4
slope 237.2
leg 273.6
v fence 212.7
fortify 460.9
pall
n cover 295.2
graveclothes 309.14
veil of secrecy 345.3
v be tedious 118.6
satiate 994.4
palladium 1008.3
pallbearer 309.7
pallet 901.20
palliate relieve 120.5
extenuate 600.12
moderate 670.6
qualify 959.3
palliative
n alleviative 86.10
extenuation 600.5
moderator 670.3
adj lenitive 86.40
relieving 120.9
justifying 600.13
alleviative 670.16
qualifying 959.7
pallid colorless 36.7
dull 117.6
terrified 127.26
pallor color 35.1
paleness 36.2
dullness 117.1
deathliness 307.12
palm
n clutches 474.4
trophy 646.3
v touch 73.6
take 480.13
steal 482.13
palmate 171.8
palmistry 962.2
palm off on 643.7
palm oil
incentive 375.7
gratuity 478.5
palmy 1010.13
palooka fighter 461.2
boxer 754.2
jockey 757.2
palp 73.4
palpable
touchable 73.11
weighable 297.19
manifest 348.8
substantial 763.6
palpate 73.6
palpitant staccato 55.7
pulsative 916.18
palpitate drum 55.4
be excited 105.18
pulsate 916.12
flutter 917.12
palpitating 916.18
palpitation
staccato 55.1
excitement 105.5
trepidation 127.5
pulsation 916.3
flutter 917.4
palsied
anemic 85.61
stricken in years 303.18
shaking 917.17
palsy
n paralysis 85.27
shaking 917.2
v deaden 25.4
adj chummy 587.20
palsy-walsy
n friend 588.4
v befriend 587.11
adj chummy 587.20
palter
prevaricate 344.7
quibble 936.9
paltry
ungenerous 651.6
base 661.12
meager 992.10
poor 998.21
inferior 1005.9
paludal 243.3
pampas plain 236.1
grassland 310.8
pamper
indulge 427.6
foster 449.16
pampering 427.3
pamphlet 554.11
pan
n container 195.1
face 216.4
v cook 11.5
criticize 510.14
photograph 714.14
mine 1058.14
Pan
forest god 678.11
fertility 890.5
panacea 86.3
panache feather 3.16
showiness 501.3
pancake
n griddlecake 10.45
v land 184.43
panchromatic 714.17
pancreas viscera 2.16
digestive organ 2.17
digestion 7.8
pancreatic 13.8
pandect
treatise 556.1
abridgment 557.1

  code 673.5
pandemic
  n epidemic 85.5
  adj contagious 85.62
  prevalent 864.12
pandemonium
  noise 53.3
  turbulence 671.2
Pandemonium
  hell 682.1
  utopia 986.11
pander
  n procurer 665.18
  v vulgarize 497.9
  prostitute oneself 665.21
pandering 665.8
pander to
  toady to 138.8
  aid 449.18
  serve 577.13
pandit 571.1
Pandora's box
  affliction 96.8
  trouble 1013.3
pandowdy 10.41
pane
  bread 10.28
  window 292.7
  lamina 296.2
  transparent substance 1029.2
panegyric
  n praise 509.5
  adj approbatory 509.16
panel
  n partition 213.5
  lamina 296.2
  forum 423.3
  discussion 541.7
  jury 596.6
  litigant 598.11
  assembly 770.2
  v select a jury 598.16
paneling 1054.3
panelist 543.4
panel show 1035.2
pang throe 26.2
  pain 96.5
  compunction 113.2
panhandle 440.15
panhandler
  nonworker 331.11
  beggar 440.8
panhandling 440.6
panic
  n fear 127.1
  nervousness 128.1
  joke 489.6
  bear panic 737.22
  v start 127.12
  put in fear 127.16
  overwhelm 412.8
panicked
  panicky 127.27
  defeated 412.14
panicky
  panic-prone 127.27
  nervous 128.11
  cowardly 491.10
panjandrum 502.5
panning
  n ridicule 508.1
  adj ridiculing 508.12
panoply armor 460.3
  throng 770.4
panorama view 33.6
  spectacle 33.7
  picture 712.11
panoramic 772.7
pan out 887.4
pan shot 714.8
pansy weakling 16.6
  homosexual 75.15
pant
  n breathing 2.21
  v burn out 21.5
  be excited 105.18
  speak 524.25
  be hot 1019.22
Pantaloon
  old man 304.2
  buffoon 707.10
pantheism
  religion 675.5
  philosophy 952.5
pantheistic 675.25
pantheon
  the gods 678.1
  temple 703.2
panther 311.22
panting
  n breathlessness 21.3
  trepidation 105.5
  adj respiratory 2.32
  breathless 21.12
  eager 101.8
  precipitate 401.10
pantomime
  n impersonation 349.4
  gesture 517.14
  actor 707.2
  v impersonate 349.12
  gesture 517.21
  act 704.29
pantry closet 197.15
  larder 386.8
pants 5.18
pantywaist
  weakling 16.6
  effeminate male 77.11
pap diet 7.13
  nutriment 10.3
  breast 283.6
  father 560.10
  semiliquid 1062.5
papa 560.10
papacy
  mastership 417.7
  papality 698.6
papal 698.15
Papal Court 595.3
papalism 675.8
paper
  n whiteness 37.2
  thinness 270.7
  writing 547.10
  document 549.5
  newspaper 555.2
  treatise 556.1
  complimentary ticket 634.2
  negotiable instrument 728.11
  paper stock 1054.5
  v face 295.23
paperback 554.3
paper profits 472.3
papers
  naturalization 226.3
  archives 549.2
paper tiger 500.7
paperweight 297.6
papery frail 16.14
  thin 270.16
  wasted 393.35
  fragile 764.7
papilla 283.6
papillary 283.19
papilloma 283.3
papist
  n Catholic 675.19
  adj Catholic 675.29
  papal 698.15
papoose 302.9
pappose 3.25
pappy
  n father 560.10
  adj insipid 65.2
papyrus 547.11
par
  n mean 246.1
  price 738.9
  round 751.3
  equality 790.1
  v golf 751.4
  adj equal 790.7
parabola 279.2
parabolical
  parabolic 279.13
  fictional 722.7
parachute
  n chute 181.13
  life preserver 397.6
  safeguard 1008.3
  v bail out 184.47
  descend 194.5
  plunge 367.6
parachute jump
  parachute 181.13
  plunge 367.1
parachutist 185.8
parade
  n spectacle 33.7
  walk 177.10
  path 383.2
  display 501.4
  procession 812.3
  v go for a walk 177.29
  march 177.30
  manifest 348.5
  flaunt 501.17
  file 812.7
parade ground 463.1
paradiddle 55.1
paradigm
  morphology 526.3
  model 786.1
paradisal
  blissful 97.9
  heavenly 681.12
  ideal 986.23
paradise
  observation 27.8
  happiness 95.2
  preserve 397.7
  auditorium 704.15
  park 743.14
  utopia 986.11
  garden 1069.10
Paradise 839.2
paradisiac blissful 97.9
  heavenly 681.12
paradox
  self-contradiction 779.3
  inconsistency 789.2
  impossibility 967.1
  dilemma 1013.7
paradoxical
  self-contradictory 779.8
  inconsistent 789.8
  impossible 967.7
paradoxical sleep 22.5
paraffin 1025.20
paragon superior 249.4
  ideal 659.4
  model 786.4
  the best 999.8
  pattern of perfection 1002.4
  beauty 1016.8
paragraph
  n phrase 529.1
  part 554.13
  treatise 556.1
  part of writing 793.2
  v diction 532.4
parallel
  n map 159.5
  paralleler 203.2
  zone 231.3
  entrenchment 460.5
  likeness 784.3
  equal 790.4
  v be parallel 203.4
  relate 775.6
  resemble 784.7
  agree 788.6
  equal 790.5
  compare 943.4
  be comparable 943.7
  adj paralleling 203.6
  side 218.6
  accompanying 769.9
  related 775.9
  analogous 784.11
  comparative 943.8
parallel bars 725.7
paralleling
  parallel 203.6
  analogous 784.11
parallelism
  alignment 203
  coextension 203.1
  side 218.1
  symmetry 264.1
  accompaniment 769.1
  similarity 784.1
  agreement 788.1
  equality 790.1
  comparison 943.1
paralogism
  syllogism 935.6
  specious argument 936.3
paralysis
  symptom 85.9
  paralyzation 85.27
  inaction 329.1

paralytic
n cripple 85.45
adj anemic 85.61
passive 329.6
paralyze disable 19.10
deaden 25.4
numb 94.8
astonish 122.6
terrify 127.17
paralyzed
disabled 19.16
drunk 88.33
terrified 127.26
passive 329.6
paramedic
hospital staff 90.11
parachutist 185.8
diver 367.4
parameter
measure 300.2
condition 959.2
paramount
n master 575.1
potentate 575.8
chief 997.10
adj top 198.10
chief 249.14
governing 612.18
principal 997.24
best 999.16
paramountcy
supremacy 249.3
importance 997.1
superexcellence 999.2
paramour lover 104.12
mistress 665.17
paranoia
mental disorder 92.14
dissociation 92.20
schizophrenia 926.4
paranoid
n psychotic 926.17
adj psychotic 926.28
paranymph
wedding party 563.4
deputy 576.1
assistant 616.6
parapet 1012.5
paraphernalia
equipment 385.4
belongings 471.2
paraphilia 75.11
paraphrase
n reproduction 336.3
translation 341.3
v imitate 336.5
rephrase 341.13
paraplegia 85.27
paraplegic 85.45
paraprofessional
teaching fellow 571.4
assistant 616.6
parapsychology 689.4
parasite
barnacle 138.5
follower 166.2
plant 310.4
vermin 311.37
bloodsucker 311.38
nonworker 331.11
attendance 769.6
parasitic
obsequious 138.14
indolent 331.19
rapacious 480.26
concurrent 899.4
parasitism
obsequiousness 138.2
concurrence 899.1
parasol umbrella 295.7
shade 1028.1
paratrooper
parachutist 185.8
diver 367.4
paratroops
elite troops 461.15
army 461.23
parboiled 11.7
Parcae 964.3
parcel
n amount 244.2
real estate 471.6
bundle 770.8
part 793.1
a number 884.2
v package 212.9
quantify 244.4
apportion 477.6
portion out 477.8
bundle 770.20
separate 802.18
dispose 808.9
parceled packed 212.12
apportioned 477.12
parceling 477.1
parcel of land
plot 231.4
field 1069.9
parch shrink 260.9
be hot 1019.22
burn 1020.24
dry 1066.6
parched thirsty 100.26
shrunk 260.13
burned 1020.30
dried 1066.9
parchment
writing 547.10
manuscript 547.11
document 549.5
fragility 1050.2
dryness 1066.2
pardner friend 588.4
partner 616.2
pardon
n pity 145.1
excuse 148.2
acquittal 601.1
v have pity 145.4
forgive 148.3
acquit 601.4
pardonable 600.14
pare peel 6.8
reduce 252.7
excise 255.10
cheapen 633.6
sever 802.11
paregoric
n sedative 86.12
adj sedative 86.45
parent
n progenitor 560.8
author 886.4
v foster 449.16
adj ancestral 560.17
parentage 560.1
parental
loving 104.27
ancestral 560.17
protective 1008.23
parenthesis
grammar 205.3
interjection 213.2
discontinuity 813.1
parenthesize
bracket 212.8
grammaticize 530.16
parenthetical
interjectional 213.9
irrelevant 776.7
incidental 843.11
paresis 85.27
par excellence 249.16
parfait 10.47
par for the course
n rule 373.4
predetermination 964.1
adj medium 246.3
typical 349.15
prevalent 864.12
parfum 70.2
parget
color 35.14
plaster 295.25
pariah
recluse 584.5
outcast 586.4
oddity 870.4
parietal
enclosing 212.11
partitioned 213.11
parietes 213.5
pari-mutuel
statistics 757.4
betting system 759.4
pari-mutuel machine 759.17
paring flake 296.3
piece 793.3
parish region 231.5
diocese 698.8
the laity 700.1
parishioner 700.2
parity price 738.9
similarity 784.1
equality 790.1
park
n enclosed place 212.3
green 310.7
grassland 310.8
woodland 310.13
preserve 397.7
armory 462.2
public park 743.14
baseball 745.1
v place 159.12
settle 159.17
parlance
language 523.1
diction 532.1
parlay
n bet 759.3
v increase 251.4
bet 759.25
parley
n advice 422.1
peace offer 465.2
conference 541.6
v confer 541.11
parliament 613.1
parliamentarianism 612.8
parliamentary
n train 179.14
adj governmental 612.17
legislative 613.11
parlor
living room 197.5
workplace 739.1
parlor car 197.10
parlous 1006.9
parochial
local 231.9
exclusive 773.9
narrow-minded 980.10
parochialism
exclusiveness 773.3
narrow-mindedness 980.1
parochial school 567.8
parody
n imitation 336.1
reproduction 336.3
bad likeness 350.2
wit 489.1
burlesque 508.6
v imitate 336.5
misrepresent 350.3
burlesque 508.11
lampoon 512.12
parol
n utterance 524.2
adj speech 524.29
parole
n release 431.2
promise 436.1
language 523.1
utterance 524.2
v release 431.5
parolee 429.11
paroxysm pang 26.2
seizure 85.6
outburst 105.9
fit 152.8
upheaval 671.5
spasm 917.6
frenzy 926.7
parquet check 47.4
ground covering 199.3
auditorium 704.15
parrot
n tedium 118.1
imitator 336.4
conformist 867.2
v mimic 336.6
repeat 849.7
memorize 989.17
parrotlike
tedious 118.9
imitative 336.9
diffuse 538.11
repetitious 849.14
parrotry 336.2
parry prevaricate 344.7
dodge 368.8
fend off 460.10
fight 754.4

  quibble 936.9
  refute 958.5
  prevent 1012.14
parrying
  prevarication 344.4
  fight 754.3
  quibbling 936.5
parse
  grammaticize 530.16
  itemize 801.7
parsimonious
  sparing 484.7
  economical 635.6
  meager 992.10
parsimony
  frugality 484
  parsimoniousness 484.1
  thrift 635.1
  meagerness 992.2
parsing grammar 530.1
  itemization 801.2
parson 699.2
parsonage house 228.5
  pastorage 703.7
part
  n contents 196.1
  region 231.1
  amount 244.2
  a length 267.2
  function 387.5
  estate 471.4
  apportioning 477.5
  section 554.13
  role 704.10
  melody part 708.22
  passage 708.24
  score 708.28
  occupation 724.3
  mode 765.4
  particular 766.3
  portion 793.1
  component 796.2
  v interspace 224.3
  open 292.11
  die 307.19
  apportion 477.6
  divorce 566.5
  disband 771.8
  separate 802.8
  part company 802.19
  adj partial 793.7
  incomplete 795.4
  half 875.5
  partly 793.8
partake eat 8.20
  participate 476.5
  take 480.13
  be involved 898.3
partaking
  n participation 476.1
  association 582.6
  adj participating 476.8
part and parcel 796.2
parterre 704.15
parthenogenesis 78.6
parthenogenetic 78.16
Parthian shot
  leave-taking 188.4
  gibe 508.2
  remark 524.3
  sequel 817.1
partial
  n tone 50.2
  adj partisan 617.19
  interested 650.11
  part 793.7
  incomplete 795.4
  half 875.5
  discriminatory 980.12
  imperfect 1003.4
partiality
  inclination 100.3
  love 104.1
  preference 371.5
  partisanism 617.13
  one-sidedness 650.3
  prejudice 980.3
partial to
  desirous of 100.22
  fond of 104.30
partible 802.26
participant
  n participator 476.4
  adj participating 476.8
participate
  take part 476.5
  be involved 898.3
participating 476.8
participation
  partaking 476.1
  association 582.6
  inclusion 772.1
participator 476.4
participial 530.17
participle 530.3
particle
  modicum 248.2
  minute 258.7
  part of speech 530.3
  piece 793.3
  powder 1051.5
parti-color
  n variegation 47.1
  v variegate 47.7
  adj variegated 47.9
particular
  n instance 766.3
  part 793.1
  event 831.2
  citation 957.5
  adj meticulous 339.12
  selective 371.23
  proportionate 477.13
  fastidious 495.9
  detailed 766.9
  classificational 809.7
  special 865.12
particularity
  meticulousness 339.3
  fastidiousness 495.1
  circumstantiality 766.4
  uniqueness 865
  individuality 865.1
  characteristic 865.4
  oneness 872.1
particularization
  description 349.2
  circumstantiation 766.5
  differentiation 780.4
  specialization 865.7
  reasoning 935.3
particularize
  amplify 538.7
  itemize 766.6
  differentiate 780.6
  specialize 865.9
  cite 957.13
  be accurate 973.11
parting
  n departure 188.1
  leave-taking 188.4
  death 307.1
  disbandment 771.3
  separation 802.1
  adj departing 188.18
  separating 802.25
parting shot
  leave-taking 188.4
  gibe 508.2
  sequel 817.1
partisan
  n follower 166.2
  irregular 461.16
  friend 588.1
  party member 609.27
  supporter 616.9
  adj polarizing 456.17
  party 609.44
  supporting 617.19
  partial 650.11
  discriminatory 980.12
partisanism
  politics 609.1
  partisanship 609.25
  association 617.13
  partiality 650.3
  sectarianism 675.4
partisan politics 609.1
partition
  n dividing wall 213.5
  apportionment 477.1
  separation 802.1
  bisector 875.3
  v set apart 213.8
  apportion 477.6
  diversify 782.2
  separate 802.18
partitioned
  walled 213.11
  separate 802.20
part music 708.18
partner
  n participator 476.4
  spouse 563.6
  companion 588.3
  associate 616.2
  bridge 758.3
  accompanier 769.4
  v cooperate 450.3
  assemble 770.18
  league 805.4
partner in crime 616.3
partnership
  affiliation 450.2
  participation 476.1
  bar 597.4
  association 617.1
  company 769.2
part of speech 530.3
parts talent 413.4
  substance 763.2
  wits 919.2
part time 825.3
part-time 848.3
parturient
  pregnant 78.18
  beginning 818.15
parturition birth 1.1
  origin 818.4
part with discard 390.7
  relinquish 475.3
  give away 478.21
party
  n man 76.5
  endorser 332.7
  telephoner 347.11
  participator 476.4
  entertainment 582.11
  litigant 598.11
  accuser 599.5
  political party 609.24
  interest 617.4
  sect 675.3
  festival 743.4
  revel 743.6
  assembly 770.2
  company 770.3
  support 901.1
  v enjoy oneself 95.14
  have a party 582.21
  dissipate 669.6
  adj partisan 609.44
  associating 617.19
party hack
  partisan 609.27
  politician 610.4
party line
  line 347.17
  policy 609.4
party pooper 1012.9
par value worth 630.2
  price 738.9
parvenu
  n vulgarian 497.6
  upstart 606.7
  rich man 618.7
  modern 841.4
  adj populational 606.8
pashadom
  mastership 417.7
  aristocracy 608.9
pass
  n ridge 237.5
  valley 237.7
  narrow place 270.3
  ravine 284.9
  trick 356.6
  passageway 383.3
  proposal 439.2
  passport 443.7
  thrust 459.3
  complimentary ticket 634.2
  football 746.3
  basketball game 747.3
  hockey 749.3
  hockey game 749.6
  soccer 752.3
  bridge 758.3
  state 765.1
  crisis 843.4
  circuit 914.2
  danger 1006.1
  predicament 1013.4

v excrete 12.12
disappear 34.2
progress 162.2
overtake 174.13
transmit 176.10
travel 177.18
average 246.2
outdistance 249.10
die 307.19
ratify 332.12
communicate 343.7
adopt 371.15
spend 387.13
pass away 390.9
perish 395.23
succeed 409.7
promote 446.2
deliver 478.13
bequeath 478.18
not understand 522.11
legislate 613.10
transfer 629.3
change hands 629.4
football 746.5
basketball 747.4
hockey 749.7
soccer 752.4
bet 759.25
cease to exist 762.6
come to an end 820.6
elapse 821.5
flit 828.6
occur 831.5
be past 837.6
throw 904.10
go by 910.8
not know 930.11
stand the test 942.10
suffice 991.4
exceed 993.9
excel 999.11
passable
acceptable 107.12
tolerable 999.20
mediocre 1005.7
passage duct 2.23
progression 162.1
course 172.2
transferal 176.1
travel 177.1
migration 177.4
voyage 182.6
entrance 189.5
corridor 197.18
valley 237.7
channel 239.1
act 328.3
passageway 383.3
part 554.13
excerpt 557.3
legislation 613.5
phrase 708.24
ornament 709.18
part of writing 793.2
conversion 858.1
passageway
n entrance 189.5
corridor 197.18
channel 239.1
opening 292.1
pass 383.3
interj open up! 292.23
pass away 34.2
passbook 628.4
pass by slight 157.6
reject 372.2
be inattentive 984.2
passé past 837.7
obsolete 842.15
passed chosen 371.26
past 837.7
passenger 178.1
passerby traveler 178.1
transient 828.4
spectator 918.1
witness 957.6
pass for go for 349.10
impersonate 349.12
pose as 354.22
passim
here and there 159.25
scatteringly 771.12
passing
n disappearance 34.1
departure 188.1
death 307.1
promotion 446.1
legislation 613.5
basketball game 747.3
hockey 749.3
adj vanishing 34.3
flowing 172.8
traveling 177.36
medium 246.3
hasty 401.9
transient 828.7
happening 831.9
adv awesomely 122.15
passing by
n rejection 372.1
adj spectating 918.7
prep through 161.27
passing fancy
infatuation 104.4
caprice 364.1
passion
sexual desire 75.5
passionateness 93.2
pain 96.5
torment 96.7
desire 100.1
liking 100.2
zeal 101.2
love 104.1
fury 105.8
rage 152.10
will 323.1
vehemence 544.5
turbulence 671.2
sacred music 708.17
cause 886.9
mania 926.12
interest 983.2
passionate lustful 75.27
fervent 93.18
zealous 101.9
amorous 104.26
heated 105.22
fiery 105.29
hot-tempered 110.25
vehement 544.13
turbulent 671.22
interested 983.16
passionless
unfeeling 94.9
undesirous 102.8
passive
n voice 530.14
adj apathetic 94.13
resigned 134.10
inert 173.14
inactive 329.6
submissive 433.12
neutral 467.7
thoughtless 933.4
incurious 982.3
passive resistance
resignation 134.2
disobedience 327.1
inaction 329.1
resistance 453.1
passivity apathy 94.4
resignation 134.2
quiescence 173.1
inertness 173.4
inaction 329.1
languor 331.6
submission 433.1
thoughtlessness 933.1
incuriosity 982.1
passkey 292.10
pass muster
meet with approval 509.15
follow the rule 867.4
stand the test 942.10
suffice 991.4
pass out faint 25.5
disappear 34.2
be drunk 88.27
exit 190.12
die 307.20
issue 352.14
deliver 478.13
disperse 771.4
Passover 701.19
pass over
condone 148.4
consign 176.10
traverse 177.20
die 307.19
neglect 340.6
leave undone 340.7
slight 340.8
deliver 478.13
transfer 629.3
exclude 773.4
pass 910.8
examine 938.24
be inattentive 984.2
passport 443.7
pass the buck
transfer 176.10
outwit 415.11
impose on 643.7
be unfaithful 645.12
pass the hat 440.15
pass the time
waste time 331.13
occupy 724.10
vegetate 761.10
pass through
traverse 177.20
penetrate 189.8
experience 831.8
pass up slight 157.6
leave undone 340.7
reject 372.2
abstain 668.7
password 517.12
past
n tense 530.12
the past 837.1
adj gone 837.7
preterit 837.9
former 837.10
obsolete 842.15
prep beyond 261.21
unintelligible 522.26
after 835.8
in excess of 993.26
pasta 10.33
past due 833.3
paste
n noodles 10.33
fake 354.13
finery 498.3
jewelry 498.5
compound 797.5
adhesive 803.4
blow 902.5
semiliquid 1062.5
pulp 1063.2
v defeat 412.9
stick together 803.9
strike 902.15
pound 902.16
pastel
n softness 35.3
drawing 712.13
art equipment 712.18
adj soft-colored 35.22
pasteurization 79.3
pasteurize 79.24
pasteurized 79.27
pastiche
n imitation 336.1
reproduction 336.3
adoption 621.2
work of art 712.10
similarity 784.1
copy 785.1
hodgepodge 797.6
v imitate 336.5
pastille 70.4
pastime
avocation 724.7
amusement 743.1
past master
master 413.13
producer 892.7
pastor 699.2
pastoral
n scene 712.12
adj rustic 233.6
natural 416.6
pacific 464.9
ecclesiastic 698.13
poetic 720.15
pastoral staff
staff 273.2
ecclesiastical insignia 647.4
attire 702.3
pastorate
the ministry 698.1

parsonage 703.7
protectorship 1008.2
pastrami 10.14
pastry 10.41
pasturage feed 10.4
grassland 310.8
pasture
n eating 8.1
feed 10.4
grassland 310.8
farm 1069.8
v feed 8.18
pasty colorless 36.7
doughy 1047.12
viscous 1062.12
pulpy 1063.6
pat
n thud 52.3
lump 257.10
endearment 562.5
tap 902.7
v thud 52.15
caress 562.16
tap 902.18
adj apt 788.10
immovable 855.15
known 928.26
patch
n spottiness 47.3
plot 231.4
scrap 248.3
mark 517.5
military insignia 647.5
stain 1004.3
ray 1025.5
field 1069.9
v do carelessly 340.9
repair 396.14
patch test 91.15
patch up
do carelessly 340.9
remedy 396.13
repair 396.14
settle 466.7
patchwork check 47.4
hodgepodge 797.6
patchy spotted 47.13
shabby 393.32
incomplete 795.4
mixed 797.14
discontinuous 813.4
irregular 851.3
imperfect 1003.4
pate head 198.6
brain 919.6
pâté 10.21
patent
n copyright 210.3
exemption 430.8
permission 443.1
grant 443.5
privilege 642.2
church 703.10
safeguard 1008.3
v limit 210.5
preserve 397.8
authorize 443.11
protect 1008.18
adj distinct 31.7
manifest 348.8
obvious 970.15
patented limited 210.7
authorized 443.17
protected 1008.21
patent medicine
nostrum 86.2
medicine 86.4
pater father 560.9
ancestor 560.10
paterfamilias
father 560.9
master 575.1
paternal loving 104.27
ancestral 560.17
paternalism 612.9
paternity
blood relationship 559.1
fatherhood 560.2
Paternoster 696.4
path deviation 164.1
airway 184.33
way 383.1
route 383.1
trail 383.2
track 517.8
circuit 1032.4
pathetic affecting 93.22
distressing 98.20
pitiful 145.8
paltry 998.21
pathfinder
traveler 178.1
preparer 405.5
precursor 816.1
pathogen 85.42
pathogenic
unhealthful 82.5
disease-causing 85.53
pathological
unwholesome 85.55
diseased 85.60
pathology 85.1
pathos sympathy 93.5
distressfulness 98.5
sadness 112.1
pity 145.1
pathway 383.2
patience
inexcitability 106.1
forbearance 134.1
patientness 134.1
forgiveness 148.1
perseverance 360.1
leniency 427.1
tolerance 979.4
patient
n sick person 85.43
subject 942.7
adj inexcitable 106.10
armed with patience 134.9
forgiving 148.6
persevering 360.8
lenient 427.7
tolerant 979.11
patina verdigris 44.2
polish 287.2
lamina 296.2
patinate 44.3
patio 197.21
pâtisserie 10.41
pâtissier 11.3
patois dialect 523.7
jargon 523.9
pat on the back
n congratulation 149.1
encouragement 492.9
v comfort 121.6
motivate 375.21
encourage 492.16
compliment 509.14
patria 232.2
patriarch
old man 304.2
father 560.9
master 575.1
clergy 699.10
back number 842.8
patriarchal
aged 303.16
ancestral 560.17
governmental 612.17
primitive 842.11
patrician
n aristocrat 607.4
nobleman 608.4
adj upper-class 607.10
noble 608.10
patrilineage 559.1
patrilineal 559.6
patrimony 479.2
patriot 591.3
patriotic 591.4
patriotism 591.2
patrol
n protection 1008.1
watchman 1008.10
v traverse 177.20
watch 1008.20
patrol car 179.11
patrolman
watchman 1008.10
policeman 1008.15
patron
ship's officer 183.7
attender 221.5
provider 385.6
giver 478.11
master 575.1
benefactor 592.1
associate 616.9
supporter 704.26
financer 729.10
customer 733.4
protector 1008.5
patronage
fosterage 449.4
recommendation 509.4
political patronage 609.36
custom 731.6
market 733.3
protectorship 1008.2
patronize
condescend 137.8
give oneself airs 141.8
sponsor 449.15
finance 729.16
trade with 731.17
patronizing
n arrogance 141.1
adj arrogant 141.9
patroon 575.1
patsy dupe 358.2
cheater 759.22
scapegoat 862.3
trusting soul 954.4
patter
n thud 52.3
staccato 55.1
rain 316.1
jargon 523.9
acting 704.8
sales talk 734.5
v thud 52.15
drum 55.4
rain 316.10
speak 523.18
talk 524.19
chatter 540.5
act 704.29
pound 902.16
pattern gestalt 92.32
form 262.1
structure 266.1
measure 300.2
behavior 321.1
original 337.2
habit 373.3
diagram 381.3
motif 498.7
paragon 659.4
harmonics 709.11
essence 767.2
model 786.1
philosophy 932.2
paucity fewness 885.1
scarcity 992.3
Paul 684.2
paunch 2.18
paunchy 257.18
pauper 619.4
pauperism 619.2
pauperize 619.6
pauperized
indigent 619.8
ill-provided 992.12
pause
n respite 20.2
demur 325.2
juncture 524.9
hiatus 524.9
notation 709.12
rest 709.21
interruption 813.2
interim 826.1
delay 846.2
ceasing 857.3
grammar 857.4
v take a rest 20.8
demur 325.4
hesitate 362.7
intervene 826.3
cease 857.9
pave 295.22
paved 295.31
pavement
ground covering 199.3
rug 295.9
paving 383.6
foundation 901.6
building material 1054.2
pave the way
prepare the way 405.12
facilitate 1014.7
pavilion 228.9

paw
n member 2.7
foot 199.5
v touch 73.6
pawky cunning 415.12
shrewd 920.15
pawn
n inferior 250.2
instrument 384.4
pledge 438.2
chessman 743.17
v pledge 438.10
borrow 621.3
pawnbroker
lender 620.3
lending institution 620.4
broker 730.9
pawnshop 620.4
paw print 517.7
pax
n peace 464.1
interj silence! 51.14
pax vobiscum
farewell! 188.22
peace! 464.11
pay
n punishment 604.1
payment 624.4
v do 328.6
avail 387.17
be profitable 472.13
requite 506.5
punish 604.11
render 624.10
spend 626.5
yield 627.4
overpay 632.8
experience 831.8
payable owed 623.10
due 639.7
pay as you go 624.17
pay a visit 582.19
pay back
compensate 338.4
make restitution 481.5
requite 506.5
repay 624.11
interchange 863.4
pay COD 624.17
pay damages 481.5
payday 624.4
pay dearly 632.8
pay dirt 1058.7
payee 479.3
payer 624.9
pay heed 983.8
pay homage to
show respect for 155.5
worship 696.11
pay in full 624.13
pay in kind 624.11
pay lip service 693.4
payload freight 176.6
load 196.2
charge 462.16
rocket 1074.3
paymaster payer 624.9
treasurer 729.12
payment
incentive 375.7
punishment 604.1
defrayal 624
paying 624.1
pay 624.4
expenditure 626.1
pay no mind
not think 933.2
be inattentive 984.2
pay off
bring off the wind 182.23
drift off course 182.29
bribe 378.3
avail 387.17
be profitable 472.13
requite 506.5
pay in full 624.13
yield 627.4
payoff 767.3
payola 378.2
pay one's debt to society 429.18
pay one's dues
do one's duty 641.10
atone 658.4
pay one's respects 504.12
pay out
parcel out 477.8
punish 604.11
settle with 624.12
fork out 624.14
spend 626.5
pay phone 347.4
pay respect to 155.5
payroll 624.4
pay the bill
pay in full 624.13
pay for 624.18
treat 624.19
pay the penalty 658.4
pay the piper
take one's punishment 604.21
pay for 624.18
pay through the nose 632.8
pay tribute
praise 509.12
honor 646.8
pay TV 1035.1
pay up
contribute 478.14
pay in full 624.13
pay 624.16
PBX 347.8
PBX operator 347.9
PC 1042.2
PCP 87.18
PDQ
in short order 174.19
promptly 845.15
pea 310.4
peabrain 924.4
peace silence 51.1
drugs 87.18
comfortableness 121.2
quiescence 173.1
accord 455.1
peacefulness 464
pax 464.1
truce 465.5
agreement 788.1
order 807.1
peace and quiet 464.2
peace be with you!
farewell! 188.22
peace! 464.11
peaceful calm 106.12
comfortable 121.11
quiescent 173.12
homelike 228.33
in accord 455.3
pacific 464.9
moderate 670.10
peaceful coexistence
peaceableness 464.4
foreign policy 609.5
peacekeeper 466.5
peace-keeping force 465.1
peacemaker
pacifist 464.6
make-peace 466.5
moderator 670.3
peace offering
peace offer 465.2
gift 478.4
atonement 658.1
oblation 696.7
peace officer 1008.15
peace of mind
composure 106.2
contentment 107.1
peace of heart 464.3
peace pipe pipe 89.6
peace offer 465.2
peace treaty 464.7
peach
n first-rate 999.7
beauty 1016.9
v betray 351.6
inform on 551.13
adj orange 42.2
peaches-and-cream 35.22
peach fuzz beard 3.8
smoothness 294.3
peachy feathery 3.27
excellent 999.13
peacock
n variegation 47.6
male animal 76.8
bird 311.28
strutter 501.10
v pose 500.13
strut 501.15
peak
n summit 198.2
highland 237.1
mountain 237.6
wave 238.14
plateau 272.4
projection 285.4
speech sound 524.12
business cycle 731.10
limit 794.5
acme of perfection 1002.3
v fail 85.48
top 198.9
billow 238.22
peaked unhealthy 85.54
topped 198.12
thin 270.20
peal
n blare 53.5
ringing 54.3
boom 56.4
v din 53.7
blare 53.10
ring 54.8
boom 56.9
peanut 258.4
peanut gallery
observation post 27.8
auditorium 704.15
peanuts
petty cash 728.19
trivia 998.4
pearl
n whiteness 37.2
drop 282.3
good person 659.1
good thing 999.5
adj whitish 37.8
gray 39.4
pearl diver 367.4
Pearl Harbor 459.2
pearly
soft-colored 35.22
whitish 37.8
gray 39.4
variegated 47.10
iridescent 1025.37
pearly gates 87.10
pear-shaped 279.14
peasant
vulgarian 497.6
countryman 606.6
agriculturist 1069.5
peas in a pod 784.5
pea soup 319.3
peat bog 243.1
peat moss 890.4
pebble
n modicum 248.2
pebblestone 1059.4
v floor 295.22
pebbled
granular 1051.12
stony 1059.12
peccadillo 655.2
peck
n quantity 247.3
lot 247.4
tap 902.7
v pick 8.26
tap 902.18
pecking order 809.4
pectoral 283.19
peculiar
personal 312.15
indicative 517.23
other 780.8
differentiative 780.9
classificational 809.7
characteristic 865.13
odd 870.11
eccentric 927.5
peculiarity habit 373.3
mannerism 500.2
sign 517.1
characteristic 865.4
oddity 870.3
eccentricity 927.1
pecuniary 728.30
pedagogical
scholastic 568.19
pedagogic 571.11

pedagogy 568.1
pedal
  n lever 906.4
  v ride 177.33
  push 904.9
  adj plantar 199.9
peddle 734.9
peddler 730.5
peddling 734.2
pedestal 901.8
pedestrian
  n walker 178.6
  adj dull 117.6
  traveling 177.36
  unskillful 414.15
  prosaic 721.5
pediatric 90.15
pedigree register 549.9
  genealogy 560.5
pee
  n urine 12.5
  v urinate 12.14
peek
  n glance 27.4
  v look 27.13
  pry 981.4
peekaboo 1029.4
peel
  n skin 295.3
  lamina 296.2
  stronghold 460.6
  v pare 6.8
  excise 255.10
  tear apart 802.14
peel off pilot 184.37
  come apart 802.9
peel out leave 222.10
  flee 368.11
peep
  n glance 27.4
  v look 27.13
  bird sound 60.5
  reconnoiter 938.28
  pry 981.4
peeper eye 2.9
  sight organ 27.9
peepers 29.3
peephole 27.8
peer
  n nobleman 608.4
  equal 790.4
  v look 27.13
  be curious 981.3
peer group
  company 770.3
  equal 790.4
peerless
  matchless 249.15
  best 999.16
  perfect 1002.6
peeve
  n hated thing 103.3
  complaint 115.4
  grudge 589.5
  v annoy 96.13
  provoke 152.24
peewee
  n runt 258.4
  adj tiny 258.11
peg
  n tooth 2.8
  drink 8.4
  liquor 88.7
  degree 245.1
  leg 273.6
  bulge 283.3
  stopper 293.4
  throw 904.3
  v plod 175.7
  walk 177.27
  hustle 177.28
  drudge 725.14
  hook 800.8
  throw 904.10
Pegasus 311.15
pejorative 512.13
pellet
  n sphere 282.2
  shot 462.19
  v pelt 459.27
pell-mell
  agitation 105.4
  commotion 810.4
pelt
  n hair 3.2
  fur 4.2
  skin 295.3
  hit 902.4
  v rain 316.10
  stone 459.27
  pound 902.16
  throw 904.10
  shoot 904.12
pelvis 2.13
pen
  n enclosed place 212.3
  place of confinement 429.7
  prison 429.8
  writing 547.1
  writer 547.13
  author 718.3
  farm 1069.8
  v enclose 212.5
  confine 429.12
  write 547.19
  compose 718.6
penal code 673.5
penal colony 429.8
penal institution 429.8
penalize
  bring in a verdict 598.20
  condemn 602.3
  put a penalty on 603.4
  punish 604.10
penalty
  judgment 598.9
  penance 603.1
  penalization 603.1
  punishment 604.1
  football 746.3
  game 749.3
  sports event 749.6
  golf 751.3
  soccer 752.3
  impediment 1012.6
penalty box 749.1
penalty shot 749.6
penance
  regret 113.4
  penalty 603.1
  penitence 658.3
  seven sacraments 701.4
pen-and-ink
  writing 547.1
  drawing 712.13
penchant
  inclination 100.3
  preference 371.5
  tendency 896.1
pencil
  n art equipment 712.18
  ray 1025.5
  v mark 517.19
  write 547.19
  portray 712.19
pendant hanger 202.4
  adjunct 254.1
  likeness 784.3
pending
  adj pendent 202.9
  overhanging 202.11
  undecided 971.18
  prep during 821.14
pendulous
  pendent 202.9
  oscillating 916.15
pendulum series 812.2
  oscillator 916.9
penetrate bite 68.5
  affect 93.14
  interpenetrate 189.8
  insert 191.3
  pervade 221.7
  perforate 292.15
  get across 521.5
  perceive 521.9
  imbue 797.11
  see through 941.8
  be remembered 989.14
  freeze 1023.10
penetrating
  intense 15.22
  acrimonious 17.14
  shrill 58.14
  pungent 68.6
  strong 69.10
  deep-felt 93.24
  piercing 105.31
  caustic 144.23
  vigorous 544.11
  sagacious 920.16
  cold 1023.14
penile 2.29
peninsula
  continent 235.1
  point of land 283.9
penis 2.13
penitent
  n confessor 113.5
  adj repentant 113.9
penitentiary
  n prison 429.8
  priest 699.5
  adj penitent 113.9
penmanship 547.3
pen name 527.8
pennant flag 647.7
  baseball 745.1
penned enclosed 212.10
  written 547.22
penniless bereft 473.8
  destitute 619.9
Pennsylvania Dutch 523.7
penny money 728.7
  cent 728.8
penny-ante
  insignificant 248.6
  inferior 250.6
  worthless 391.11
penny pincher 484.4
penny-wise and pound-foolish
  parsimonious 484.7
  prodigal 486.8
penologist 604.9
penology 604.1
pen pal 553.8
pension
  n subsidy 478.8
  v depose 447.4
  subsidize 478.19
pensioner
  dependent 432.6
  beneficiary 479.4
  student 572.7
  employee 577.3
pension off scrap 390.8
  depose 447.4
  resign 448.2
  subsidize 478.19
  dismiss 909.19
pensive
  melancholy 112.23
  cognitive 931.21
  abstracted 985.11
pentagon 882.1
pentagram 882.1
pentameter
  meter 720.7
  five 882.1
pentathlon
  contest 755.2
  track meet 755.6
  five 882.1
penthouse house 228.5
  apartment 228.13
  roof 295.6
pent-up
  enclosed 212.10
  confined 429.19
peon sycophant 138.3
  subject 432.7
  retainer 577.1
  peasant 606.6
people
  n population 227.1
  kinfolk 559.2
  race 559.4
  family 559.5
  the laity 700.1
  v settle 159.17
  inhabit 225.9
people's republic 232.1
the people
  human race 312.1
  humankind 312.4
  the population 606.1
  the populace 606.1
pep energy 17.3
  liveliness 330.2
  spirit 544.4
pepper
  n energy 17.3
  v variegate 47.7
  flavor 63.7

pull the trigger 459.22
mark 517.19
sprinkle 771.6
throw 904.10
shoot 904.12
pepper-and-salt 47.12
peppery zestful 68.7
hot-tempered 110.25
pep pills 87.4
peppy energetic 17.13
active 330.17
spirited 544.12
pep rally 375.4
pep talk 543.2
peptic 7.22
peptide 7.6
per by means of 384.13
for each 865.20
conformable to 867.9
per annum 865.19
per capita
proportionate 477.13
each 865.19
perceive sense 24.6
see 27.12
feel 93.10
understand 521.9
know 928.12
detect 941.5
percent 1017.7
percentage
incentive 375.7
benefit 387.4
estate 471.4
gain 472.3
portion 477.5
discount 631.1
part 793.1
expedience 995.1
ratio 1017.7
perceptible visible 31.6
measurable 300.14
manifest 348.8
knowable 928.25
perception
sensation 24.1
vision 27.1
sagacity 920.4
cognizance 928.2
idea 932.1
discernment 944.2
perceptive
sensible 24.11
sagacious 920.16
knowing 928.15
discerning 944.8
perch
n birdhouse 228.23
footing 901.5
v settle 159.17
sit 173.10
get down 194.7
inhabit 225.7
rest on 901.22
percolate refine 79.22
exude 190.15
trickle 238.18
be operative 889.7
liquefy 1064.5
be damp 1065.11
soak 1065.13
percolator 79.13
percussion noise 53.3
concussion 671.8
percussion instrument 711.16
impact 902.3
percussionist 710.10
per diem 865.19
peregrine
n wanderer 178.2
adj traveling 177.36
perennial
n plant 310.3
adj ephemeral 310.44
continuous 812.8
durable 827.10
indeciduous 829.8
constant 847.5
perestroika
reproduction 78.1
reconstruction 396.5
rearrangement 808.7
change 852.1
perfect
n tense 530.12
v excel 249.6
touch up 392.11
accomplish 407.6
complete 820.7
develop 1002.5
adj downright 247.12
complete 407.12
unrestricted 430.27
thorough 794.10
unqualified 960.2
accurate 973.16
ideal 1002.6
perfect binding 554.14
perfected
improved 392.13
ended 820.8
finished 1002.9
perfection
development 392.2
accomplishment 407.2
completion 794.4
end 820.1
accuracy 973.5
flawlessness 1002.1
faultlessness 1002.1
acme of perfection 1002.3
perfectionist
n optimist 124.6
precision 495.6
conformist 867.2
adj optimistic 124.12
perforate
v pierce 292.15
adj apertured 292.19
perform
execute 328.9
manifest 348.5
impersonate 349.12
accomplish 407.4
practice 434.3
act 704.29
play 708.39
operate 889.5
be operative 889.7
do 892.11
performance
deed 328.2
act 328.3
display 348.2
impersonation 349.4
accomplishment 407.1
observance 434.1
ceremony 580.4
acting 704.8
theatrical performance 704.12
execution 708.30
musical performance 708.33
operation 889.1
production 892.5
performer
phony 500.7
entertainer 707.1
musician 710.1
doer 726.1
perform one's duty 641.10
perfume
n fragrance 70.1
perfumery 70.2
v odorize 69.7
scent 70.8
vaporize 1067.8
perfunctory
indifferent 102.6
unwilling 325.5
reluctant 325.6
careless 340.11
perfuse
bleed 91.27
transfer 176.10
filter in 189.10
insert 191.3
pervade 221.7
perhaps
n guess 951.4
adv possibly 966.9
perigee
juxtaposition 223.3
orbit 1072.16
spacecraft 1075.2
peril
n unreliability 971.6
danger 1006.1
v endanger 1006.6
perimeter
environment 209.1
bounds 211.1
period
menstruation 12.9
degree 245.1
season 313.1
phrase 529.1
passage 708.24
meter 720.7
football 746.3
game 749.3
hockey 749.6
soccer 752.3
end 820.1
time 821.1
portion of time 824
point 824.1
grammar 857.4
wave 916.4
orbit 1072.16
periodic
continuous 812.8
recurrent 849.13
seasonal 850.7
oscillating 916.15
periodical
n publication 352.1
magazine 555.1
serial 555.1
adj journalistic 555.5
seasonal 850.7
periodic table 1060.2
peripatetic
n wanderer 178.2
pedestrian 178.6
adj traveling 177.36
discursive 538.13
peripheral
n circuitry 1042.3
adj exterior 206.7
environing 209.8
outlining 211.14
peripheral vision 27.1
periscope 367.5
perish
disappear 34.2
die 307.19
expire 395.23
cease to exist 762.6
age 842.9
perishable
mortal 307.34
transient 828.7
perish the thought! 510.27
perjury
deliberate falsehood 354.9
deceitfulness 645.3
perk
n gain 472.3
v be operative 889.7
adj conceited 140.11
perk up refresh 9.2
energize 17.10
cheer up 109.9
improve 392.7
recuperate 396.19
elevate 912.5
perky
lighthearted 109.12
conceited 140.11
active 330.17
permanent
n hairdo 3.15
adj persevering 360.8
almighty 677.17
durable 827.10
perpetual 829.7
changeless 853.7
unchangeable 855.17
permeable
exudative 190.20
pervious 292.21
permeate
pervade 221.7
imbue 797.11
soak 1065.13
permission
ratification 332.4
exemption 430.8
consent 441.1
okay 443.1
leave 443.1
permissive
n mood 530.11
adj negligent 340.10

lawless 418.5
unstrict 426.5
indulgent 427.8
nonrestrictive 430.25
consenting 441.4
admissive 443.14
permit
n license 443.6
v ratify 332.12
consent 441.2
allow 443.9
make possible 966.5
permutation
transformation 852.3
interchange 863.1
peroxide 36.5
perpendicular
n vertical 200.2
straight line 277.2
adj plumb 200.12
right-angled 278.7
perpetrate 328.6
perpetrator
evildoer 593.1
criminal 645.10
bad person 660.9
doer 726.1
perpetual
almighty 677.17
infinite 823.3
durable 827.10
everlasting 829.7
constant 847.5
permanent 853.7
perpetual motion 172.2
perpetuate
preserve 829.5
sustain 856.4
perplex
n complex 799.2
v astonish 122.6
be incomprehensible 522.10
complicate 799.3
be unbelievable 955.7
baffle 971.13
confuse 985.7
thwart 1012.15
trouble 1013.13
perquisite gain 472.3
gratuity 478.5
booty 482.11
bonus 624.6
per se
essentially 767.11
singly 872.13
persecute annoy 96.13
make anxious 126.5
oppress 389.7
work evil 1000.6
persecution complex 92.22
persevere endure 134.5
persist 360.2
balk 361.7
win through 409.13
carry on 781.3
continue 856.5
persist
keep alive 306.12
persevere 360.2
insist 421.8
live on 761.9
prevail 781.3
cohere 803.6
endure 827.6
remain 853.5
continue 856.5
persistent
reverberating 54.12
resolute 359.11
persevering 360.8
habitual 373.14
demanding 421.9
uniform 781.5
adhesive 803.12
durable 827.10
permanent 853.7
continuing 856.7
unforgettable 989.26
person
human form 262.4
human 312.5
first person 530.7
role 704.10
someone 763.3
individual 872.4
body 1052.3
personable
influential 894.13
comely 1016.19
personal
n aspersion 512.4
adj individual 312.15
private 345.13
marked 517.24
particular 865.12
personal appearance 704.12
personal computer 1042.2
personal effects
equipment 385.4
belongings 471.2
personal initiative 430.7
personality
psyche 92.28
person 312.5
aspersion 512.4
something 763.3
particularity 865.1
influence 894.1
personage 997.8
personal matter 345.5
personal property 471.2
personal responsibility 430.7
persona non grata
outcast 586.4
bad person 660.1
exclusiveness 773.3
personify image 349.11
metaphorize 536.2
materialize 1052.9
personnel
work force 18.9
staff 577.11
baseball team 745.2
football team 746.2
basketball team 747.2
persons 606.1
person-to-person call 347.13
perspective
field of view 31.3
view 33.6
station 159.2
distance 261.1
treatment 712.9
outlook 978.2
perspiration
humor 2.24
sweat 12.7
perspire 12.16
persuade
prevail on 375.23
admonish 422.6
convert 858.16
influence 894.7
convince 953.18
seem true 973.9
persuasion
inducement 375.3
school 617.5
sect 675.3
company 770.3
kind 809.3
conversion 858.6
influence 894.1
conviction 953.5
persuasive
n incentive 375.7
adj suasive 375.29
influential 894.13
convincing 953.26
pert cheerful 109.13
conceited 140.11
impudent 142.10
active 330.17
defiant 454.7
immodest 666.6
pertain 775.5
pertinent relative 775.7
relevant 775.11
perturb distress 96.16
excite 105.14
disorder 810.9
discompose 811.4
agitate 917.10
bewilder 971.12
confuse 985.7
trouble 1013.13
peruke 3.14
peruse scrutinize 27.14
study 570.12
examine 938.24
pervade
permeate 221.7
imbue 797.11
pervasive
deep-felt 93.24
pervading 221.14
thorough 794.10
perverse
irascible 110.19
negative 335.5
obstinant 361.11
oppositional 451.8
contrary 779.6
nonconformist 789.9
counteractive 900.8
erroneous 975.16
unwieldy 1013.19
pervert
n sexual pervert 75.16
reprobate 660.4
v distort 265.6
misinterpret 342.2
misrepresent 350.3
falsify 354.16
misuse 389.4
corrupt 393.12
misteach 569.3
reason speciously 936.8
pervious
exudative 190.20
permeable 292.21
influenceable 894.15
accessible 966.8
pesky
annoying 98.22
importunate 440.18
pessimism
dejection 112.3
cynicism 125.6
suspense 130.3
pessimist
n killjoy 112.14
cynic 125.7
adj pessimistic 125.16
pest epidemic 85.5
annoyance 96.2
tormentor 96.10
bore 118.4
bane 1001.1
blight 1001.2
pester annoy 96.13
importune 440.12
nag 510.16
pesthole sty 80.11
epidemic 85.5
pesticide killer 308.11
poison 1001.3
pestilence
epidemic 85.5
bane 1001.1
pestle
n pulverizer 1051.7
v pulverize 1051.9
pet
n ladylove 104.15
favorite 104.16
dudgeon 152.7
endearment term 562.6
v stroke 73.8
indulge 427.6
caress 562.16
rub 1044.6
adj beloved 104.24
petal leaf 310.19
flower 310.28
peter out weaken 16.9
get tired 21.6
be disappointing 132.3
be consumed 388.4
come to nothing 410.13
cease to exist 762.6
be unproductive 891.3
fall through 911.3
pet food 10.4
petit 998.17
petite 258.10
petition
n request 440.1
prayer 696.4
v present a petition 440.10
pray 696.13
pet name 527.7
pet peeve
hated thing 103.3

R S

  complaint 115.4
  grudge 589.5
petrified
  terrified 127.26
  antiquated 842.13
  hardened 1046.13
  mineral 1058.15
  stone 1059.11
petroleum
  illuminant 1025.20
  rock oil 1056.4
petroleum jelly 1056.2
pet subject 866.1
petticoat 77.14
petting touching 73.2
  indulgence 427.3
  lovemaking 562.2
petty
  insignificant 248.6
  inadequate 250.7
  ungenerous 651.6
  base 661.12
  quibbling 936.14
  narrow-minded 980.10
  puny 998.20
petty cash 728.19
petty larceny 482.2
petty officer first class 575.20
petulant
  discontented 108.7
  peevish 110.22
  plaintive 115.19
  capricious 364.5
pew
  compartment 197.2
  church 703.14
pewter 1058.17
pfc 461.8
PG 706.1
PGA 751.1
pH 1060.3
phalanx
  military unit 461.22
  company 770.3
phallic 2.29
phallic symbol 92.30
phantasm
  deception 356.1
  phantom 976.4
  figment of the imagination 986.5
  specter 988.1
phantasmagoric 976.8
phantom
  n apparition 33.5
  whiteness 37.2
  frightener 127.9
  spirit 764.3
  phantasm 976.4
  figment of the imagination 986.5
  specter 988.1
  adj illusory 976.9
  spectral 988.7
  immaterial 1053.7
pharaoh ruler 575.9
  tyrant 575.14
pharmaceutical 86.50
pharmacist 86.35
pharmacy
  pharmacology 86.34
  drugstore 86.36
  hospital room 197.25
pharynx
  digestive system 2.18
  vocal organ 524.18
phase 33.3
phase in 245.4
phase out
  graduate 245.4
  reduce 252.7
  cease to use 390.4
  end 820.5
  turn off 857.12
phases of the moon 854.4
phenom
  marvel 122.2
  success 409.4
  successful person 409.6
  talented person 413.12
phenomenal
  wonderful 122.10
  eventful 831.10
  extraordinary 870.14
phenomenology 978.2
phenomenon
  apparition 33.5
  marvel 122.2
  event 831.2
phew! eeyuck! 98.31
  oh! 122.20
philanderer
  beau 104.13
  lover 562.12
  libertine 665.10
philanthropic
  benevolent 143.15
  eleemosynary 478.22
philanthropist
  altruist 143.8
  giver 478.11
philharmonic
  n performance 708.33
  adj musical 708.47
Philistine
  n vulgarian 497.6
  conformist 867.2
  adj callous 94.12
  common 497.14
  secularist 695.16
  unlearned 930.14
philosopher
  wise man 921.1
  scholar 929.3
  reasoner 935.11
  philosophizer 952.8
philosophical
  calm 106.12
  patient 134.9
  sensible 920.18
  philosophic 952.10
philosophize
  reason 935.15
  be philosophic 952.9
philosophy
  composure 106.2
  ideology 932.8
  reasoning 935.1
  school of thought 952.1
  physics 1018.1
phlebotomy
  bloodletting 91.20
  drawing 192.3
phlegm
  humor 2.24
  apathy 94.4
  languor 331.6
phlegmatic
  n personality type 92.12
  adj apathetic 94.13
  inert 173.14
  languid 331.20
  incurious 982.3
phobia
  hated thing 103.3
  fear 127.1
phobic neurotic 92.39
  afraid 127.22
phoenix 659.5
phone
  n sound 50.1
  telephone 347.4
  speech sound 524.12
  v telephone 347.19
phone book
  telephone number 347.12
  reference book 554.9
  directory 574.10
phoneme 524.12
phone number 347.12
phonetic
  n phonetic symbol 546.2
  adj linguistic 523.19
  phonic 524.30
phonetic alphabet 546.3
phonetics hearing 48.9
  articulatory phonetics 524.13
  spelling 546.4
phonetic spelling 546.4
phonic auditory 48.13
  acoustic 50.17
  phonetic 524.30
phonograph 50.11
phonograph record
  record 50.12
  recording media 549.10
phony
  n imitator 336.4
  fake 354.13
  impostor 357.6
  hypocrite 357.8
  affecter 500.7
  copy 785.1
  substitute 862.2
  adj imitation 336.8
  spurious 354.26
  assumed 500.16
  similar 784.10
  substitute 862.8
phosphate 890.4
phosphoresce 1025.26
photic 1025.41
photochemical 1060.9
photochemical process 548.1
photocomposition 548.2
photocopy 714.5
photoelectric
  electric 1032.30
  electronic 1033.15
photoengraving
  printing 548.1
  engraving 713.2
photo finish
  horse race 757.3
  the same 790.3
photogenic
  photographic 714.17
  luminescent 1025.38
photograph
  n description 349.2
  picture 712.11
  photo 714.3
  print 785.5
  v shoot 714.14
  n image 349.5
photograph album 554.7
photographer
  journalist 555.4
  shutter-bug 714.2
  artist 716.5
photographic
  pictorial 712.21
  photo 714.17
photographic memory 989.3
photographic reproduction 548.1
photography
  optics 29.7
  printing 548.1
  motion-picture photography 706.5
  visual arts 712.1
  graphic arts 713.1
  picture-taking 714.1
photometry 1025.22
photon
  energy unit 17.7
  ray 1025.5
  measurement of light 1025.21
photo-offset 548.1
photo opportunity
  conference 541.6
  event 831.2
  interview 938.11
photoprint 714.5
photosensitive
  photographic 714.17
  photophobic 1025.42
photosphere 1072.13
photostatic copy
  print 714.5
  copy 785.5
phrase
  n sign 518.6
  remark 524.3
  expression 529.1
  part 554.13
  passage 708.24
  part of writing 793.2
  maxim 974.1
  v say 524.22
  express 532.4
  adj phrasal 529.4
phraseology
  language 523.1
  jargon 523.9
  vocabulary 526.13
phrasing diction 529.2
  harmonics 709.2
phylogenesis 861.3
phylum
  nomenclature 527.1

lineage 560.4
kind 809.3
classifications 809.5
biology 1068.1
physic
n medicine 86.4
laxative 86.17
health care 90.1
physics 1018.1
v treat 91.24
physical
n checkup 938.6
adj carnal 663.6
innate 767.8
aerophysical 1018.3
material 1052.10
physical addiction 87.1
physical condition 83.1
physical development 14.1
physical education
physical culture 568.9
exercise 725.6
physical examination
diagnosis 91.12
checkup 938.6
physical fitness
health 83.1
fitness 84.1
physical force 424.2
physical presence 221.1
physical therapist 90.11
physical therapy therapy 91.1
treatment 91.14
physician doctor 90.4
health care professional 90.8
physicist
aerophysicist 1018.2
materialist 1052.7
physics
physical science 1018.1
physiological 305.17
physiotherapist 90.11
physique body 2.1
the muscles 2.3
muscularity 15.2
human form 262.4
structure 266.1
nature 767.4
material body 1052.3
pi
n type 548.6
v compose 548.16
confuse 811.3
PI 576.10
pianissimo
n music 708.25
adj faint 52.16
music 708.53
adv faintly 52.21
pianist 710.7
piano
n music 708.25
keyboard instrument 711.12
adj faint 52.16
music 708.53
adv faintly 52.21
piazza
porch 197.21
square 230.8
pica 548.6
picayune
n unimportance 998.1
trifle 998.5
adj insignificant 248.6
detailed 766.9
quibbling 936.14
petty 998.20
pick
n choice 371.1
plectrum 711.21
warp 740.3
basketball game 747.3
tap 902.7
the best 999.8
v peck 8.26
choose 371.13
select 371.14
collect 472.11
strum 708.40
play 747.4
tap 902.18
harvest 1069.19
pick a bone with 456.13
pick and choose
choose 371.13
be hard to please 495.8
be discriminating 944.5
pick at pick 8.26
annoy 96.13
goad 375.15
deprecate 510.12
nag 510.16
pick clean 480.24
picked chosen 371.26
best 999.16
picker
string musician 710.5
agriculturist 1069.5
picket
n leg 273.6
striker 727.7
guard 1008.9
watchman 1008.10
picketer 1008.13
v fence 212.7
object 333.5
bind 428.10
torture 604.16
strike 727.10
picket line 1008.13
Pick Four 759.14
pickings gain 472.3
booty 482.11
pickle
n appetizer 10.9
sour 67.2
state 765.1
bewilderment 971.3
predicament 1013.5
v intoxicate 88.23
preserve 397.9
pickled sour 67.5
salty 68.9
drunk 88.33
picklepuss
malcontent 108.4
moaning Minnie 112.13
complainer 115.9
pick-me-up
refreshment 9.1
tonic 86.8
bracer 88.8
pickoff 745.3
pick off kill 308.14
shoot 904.12
pick on annoy 96.13
goad 375.15
deprecate 510.12
nag 510.16
pick one's brains 482.19
pick one's way 938.31
pick out see 27.12
extract 192.10
excise 255.10
select 371.14
designate 517.18
eliminate 773.5
segregate 773.6
specify 865.11
discriminate 944.4
call attention to 983.10
pickpocket 483.2
pick pockets 482.14
pickup
sound reproduction system 50.11
bracer 88.8
acceleration 174.4
ride 177.7
intensification 251.2
improvement 392.1
friend 588.1
strumpet 665.14
outside pickup 1034.17
television camera 1035.10
pick up refresh 9.2
stimulate 105.13
cheer 109.7
fetch 176.16
improve 392.7
recuperate 396.19
arrest 429.15
acquire 472.9
collect 472.11
capture 480.18
take up 912.8
detect 941.5
receive 1036.17
pick up speed 174.10
pick-up sticks 743.16
pick up the check
support 449.12
subsidize 478.19
pay for 624.18
treat 624.19
picky fastidious 495.9
critical 510.23
detailed 766.9
picnic
n meal 8.6
victory 411.1
fun 743.2
festival 743.4
easy 1014.4
v dine 8.21
picnicker 8.16
pictograph 546.2
pictorial
n periodical 555.1
adj representational 349.13
pictural 712.21
picture
n description 349.2
representation 349.5
sign 517.1
motion pictures 706.1
image 712.11
photograph 714.3
copy 785.1
thought 932.1
visualization 986.6
thing of beauty 1016.7
television reception 1035.5
signal 1036.11
v represent 349.8
describe 349.9
portray 712.19
visualize 986.15
the picture plan 381.1
the facts 761.4
circumstances 766.2
picture frame 266.4
the picture of
the same 778.3
likeness 784.3
picture of health 83.2
picture postcard 553.3
picture show 706.1
picturesque
ornate 498.12
pictorial 712.21
picture-taking 714.1
picture tube 1035.11
piddling
n trifling 998.8
adj little 258.10
sparse 885.5
petty 998.20
pidgin English 523.11
pie pastry 10.41
easy 1014.4
piebald
n horse 311.11
adj mottled 47.12
piece
sex object 75.4
lump 257.10
distance 261.1
a length 267.2
schoolgirl 302.8
gun 462.10
gain 472.3
portion 477.5
writing 547.10
news item 552.3
treatise 556.1
stage show 704.4
role 704.10
opus 708.5
work of art 712.10
specie 728.4
money 728.8
chessman 743.17
sample 786.3
part 793.1
particle 793.3
piece by piece 793.9
pièce de résistance
dish 10.7
feature 997.7
the best 999.8

piecemeal
  piece by piece 793.9
  separately 802.27
piece of cake 1014.4
piece of one's mind 510.6
piece of the action
  portion 477.5
  part 793.1
piece out 794.6
piece together
  compose 796.3
  put together 800.5
  produce 892.8
piecework 892.3
pie chart 381.3
piecrust crust 295.14
  fragility 1050.2
pied
  n foot 199.5
  adj mottled 47.12
pied-à-terre 228.8
piedmont 237.1
Pied Piper of Hamelin 377.4
pie-eyed 88.33
pie in the sky 986.23
pier pillar 273.5
  buttress 901.4
  base 901.8
  harbor 1009.6
pierce pain 26.7
  affect 93.14
  hurt 96.17
  penetrate 189.8
  perforate 292.15
  injure 393.13
  stab 459.25
  perceive 521.9
  freeze 1023.10
pierce the ears
  din 53.7
  grate on 58.11
piercing
  n hole 292.3
  stabbing 459.10
  adj intense 15.22
  acrimonious 17.14
  painful 26.10
  loud 53.11
  shrill 58.14
  pungent 68.6
  deep-felt 93.24
  penetrating 105.31
  caustic 144.23
  vigorous 544.11
  violent 671.16
  sagacious 920.16
  cold 1023.14
piety religiousness 692.1
  piousness 692.1
  sanctimony 693.1
piffle
  n bull 520.3
  v talk nonsense 520.5
pig eater 8.16
  pork 10.17
  filthy person 80.13
  cycle 179.8
  heavyweight 257.12
  swine 311.9
  beast 660.6
  glutton 672.3
  jockey 757.2
  slob 810.7
  bigot 980.5
  police 1008.16
  cast 1058.5
pig's eye 758.2
pigeon
  n bird 311.28
  dupe 358.2
  v deceive 356.14
  cheat 356.18
pigeonhole
  n small space 258.3
  hiding place 346.4
  class 809.2
  v put away 390.6
  legislate 613.10
  classify 809.6
  postpone 846.9
  list 871.8
pigeonholed
  neglected 340.14
  classified 809.8
pigeonholes 871.3
pigeon loft 228.23
pigeon-toed 265.12
pig farm 1070.5
piggish hoggish 80.24
  greedy 100.27
  ungulate 311.46
  gluttonous 672.6
piggy 311.9
piggyback 901.25
piggy bank 729.13
pighead 361.6
pig in a poke
  bargain 731.5
  gamble 759.2
piglet
  fledgling 302.10
  swine 311.9
pigment
  n color 35.8
  paint 712.18
  v color 35.14
pigmentation 35.11
pig out stuff 8.25
  overeat 672.5
pigpen sty 80.11
  hovel 228.11
pigskin 746.2
pigsty sty 80.11
  hovel 228.11
pigtail braid 3.7
  chewing tobacco 89.7
  tail 217.6
  coil 281.2
piker vagabond 178.3
  gambler 759.21
pile
  n hair 3.2
  plant beard 3.9
  down 3.19
  lot 247.4
  structure 266.2
  leg 273.6
  texture 294.1
  leaf 310.19
  store 386.1
  gain 472.3
  wealth 618.3
  heap 770.10
  base 901.8
  reactor 1038.13
  v load 159.15
  pile on 770.19
piled on 643.8
piledriver
  strong man 15.6
  influence 894.6
pile in 193.12
pile into 459.15
pile it on
  exaggerate 355.3
  talk big 545.6
  lay it on 993.11
piles 85.37
pile up
  shipwreck 182.42
  store up 386.11
  pile 770.19
pilfer misuse 389.4
  steal 482.13
pilgrim
  n traveler 178.1
  religious 699.16
  v journey 177.21
pilgrimage
  n wandering 177.3
  journey 177.5
  adventure 404.2
  v journey 177.21
piling buttress 901.4
  base 901.8
piling on
  cruelty 144.11
  persecution 389.3
  overdoing 993.6
pill bolus 86.7
  tedious person 118.5
  sphere 282.2
  bad person 660.5
the pill 86.23
pillage
  n plundering 482.6
  v seize 480.14
  plunder 482.17
  rage 671.11
pillar tower 272.6
  column 273.5
  cylinder 282.4
  monument 549.12
  base 901.8
  protector 1008.5
pillar of society
  bourgeois 607.6
  good citizen 659.3
  personage 997.8
pillar of strength 855.6
pillbox 460.6
pillory
  n shackle 428.4
  punishment 605.3
  v ridicule 508.8
  punish 604.10
  disgrace 661.8
  stigmatize 661.9
pillow
  n bedding 901.20
  softness 1047.4
  v support 901.21
pillowcase 295.10
pill popper 87.21
pilot
  n steersman 183.8
  aviator 185.1
  guide 574.7
  baseball team 745.2
  jockey 757.2
  safeguard 1008.3
  v steer 182.14
  control 184.37
  guide 573.9
  adj experimental 942.11
piloting 161.1
pilot light 1020.10
pilot program 942.3
pimp
  n reprobate 660.4
  procurer 665.18
  v prostitute oneself 665.21
pimple
  n sore 85.37
  swelling 283.4
  print 517.7
  blemish 1004.1
  v roughen 288.4
pin
  n member 2.7
  stopper 293.4
  jewel 498.6
  insignia 647.1
  bowling 750.1
  golf 751.1
  axle 915.5
  trifle 998.5
  v hook 800.8
  fell 913.5
PIN 517.11
pin a medal on 646.8
pinball machine 759.16
pince-nez 29.3
pincer movement 459.5
pincers
  extractor 192.9
  clutches 474.4
pinch
  n pang 26.2
  modicum 248.2
  small space 258.3
  squeezing 260.2
  urge 375.6
  arrest 429.6
  indigence 619.2
  crisis 843.4
  urgency 997.4
  danger 1006.1
  predicament 1013.4
  crux 1013.8
  v pain 26.7
  converge 169.2
  sail near the wind 182.25
  squeeze 260.8
  arrest 429.16
  rob 482.16
  stint 484.5
  adj substitute 862.8
pinched limited 210.7
  contracted 260.12
  haggard 270.20
  poor 619.7
  straitened 1013.26

pinch-hit
  represent 576.14
  substitute for 862.5
pinch of snuff
  snuff 89.8
  trifle 998.5
pinch pennies 484.5
pin down locate 159.11
  bind 428.10
  stabilize 855.7
  specify 865.11
  fell 913.5
pine
  n basketball 747.1
  v weaken 16.9
  fail 85.48
  wish for 100.16
  grieve 112.17
  languish 393.18
pine barrens 310.13
pine cone cone 282.5
  plant 310.27
pine needle thorn 285.5
  leaf 310.19
ping 54.3
pinhead top part 198.4
  minute 258.7
  fool 924.4
pinion
  n feather 3.16
  member 793.4
  v bind 428.10
pink
  n pinkness 41.2
  radical 611.12
  acme of perfection 1002.3
  v notch 289.4
  perforate 292.15
  adj pinkish 41.8
  fresh 83.13
  radical 611.20
pink elephants 926.10
pink ladies 87.5
pinko 611.12
pink slip 909.5
pin money 728.19
pinnacle summit 198.2
  mountain 237.6
  tower 272.6
  limit 794.5
  acme of perfection 1002.3
pin on blame 599.8
  attribute to 888.4
pin one's ears back 510.18
pinpoint
  n location 159.1
  minute 258.7
  v locate 159.11
  attribute to 888.4
  receive 1036.17
  adj exact 973.17
pinprick
  shallowness 276.1
  trifle 998.5
pins 177.15
pins and needles
  insensibility 25.1
  tingle 74.1
  anxiety 126.1
pinstripe
  n stripe 47.5
  adj striped 47.15
pinstriper 574.3
pinto
  n horse 311.11
  adj mottled 47.12
pint-size
  insignificant 248.6
  dwarf 258.13
pinup
  photograph 714.3
  beauty 1016.9
pinwheel 743.16
pioneer
  n traveler 178.1
  vanguard 216.2
  settler 227.9
  engineer 461.14
  precursor 816.1
  v be in front 216.7
  go before 816.3
  initiate 818.10
  innovate 852.9
  adj original 337.5
pioneering
  front 216.10
  preceding 816.4
pious
  pietistic 692.8
  sanctimonious 693.5
  believing 953.21
pip disease 85.41
  seed 310.31
  military insignia 647.5
  first-rate 999.7
pipe
  n screech 58.4
  tobacco pipe 89.6
  tube 239.6
  cylinder 282.4
  wind instrument 711.6
  v blare 53.10
  screech 58.8
  bird sound 60.5
  transport 176.14
  channel 239.15
  sigh 318.21
  speak 524.25
  sing 708.38
  blow a horn 708.42
pipe cleaner 89.6
pipe down
  v fall silent 51.7
  interj silence! 51.14
pipe dream
  airy hope 124.5
  illusion 976.1
  abstractedness 985.2
  dream 986.9
pipe-dream muse 985.9
  dream 986.17
pipeline
  n tube 239.6
  inside information 551.2
  news channel 552.10
  v transport 176.14
piper 710.4
pipes
  ship's officer 183.7
  bagpipe 711.9
pipette
  n drawing off 192.9
  tube 239.6
  v draw off 192.12
pipe up
  vociferate 59.8
  blow 318.20
  speak up 524.21
  strike up 708.37
piping hot 1019.25
pippin 999.7
pips 1036.11
pip-squeak runt 258.4
  a nobody 998.7
piquant
  appetizing 63.10
  pungent 68.6
  exciting 105.30
  provocative 375.27
  alluring 377.8
  spirited 544.12
  interesting 983.19
pique
  n offense 152.2
  dudgeon 152.7
  v annoy 96.13
  stimulate 105.13
  provoke 152.24
  incite 375.17
  rouse 375.19
  interest 983.12
piracy
  buccaneering 482.7
  plagiarism 482.8
pirate
  n mariner 183.1
  corsair 483.7
  plagiarist 483.9
  v buccaneer 482.18
  plagiarize 482.19
  adopt 621.4
pirouette
  n whirl 915.2
  v rotate 915.9
piss
  n humor 2.24
  urine 12.5
  v urinate 12.14
  be discontented 108.6
  complain 115.16
  make angry 152.23
piss and vinegar
  energy 17.3
  gaiety 109.4
  liveliness 330.2
piss away 486.5
pissed-off 152.30
piss-poor 1000.8
pistol
  n skillful person 413.14
  first-rate 999.7
  v strike dead 308.18
  shoot 904.12
pistol-whip 604.13
piston 904.6
pit
  n audience 48.6
  deep 275.2
  cavity 284.2
  well 284.4
  indentation 284.6
  texture 294.1
  tomb 309.16
  seed 310.31
  arena 463.1
  sewer 654.7
  auditorium 704.15
  stage 704.16
  stock exchange 737.7
  race 756.3
  blemish 1004.1
  mine 1058.6
  v indent 284.14
the pit 682.1
pit against 456.14
pit bull
  sorehead 110.11
  boxer 461.2
pitch
  n blackness 38.4
  tone 50.2
  summit 198.2
  inclination 204.2
  incline 204.4
  degree 245.1
  plunge 367.1
  intonation 524.6
  speech 543.2
  tuning 709.4
  sales talk 734.5
  baseball 745.3
  field hockey 749.4
  soccer 752.1
  throw 904.3
  flounder 917.8
  v establish 159.16
  toss 182.55
  descend 194.5
  tumble 194.8
  erect 200.9
  incline 204.10
  camp 225.11
  plunge 367.6
  make advances 439.8
  play 745.5
  shuffle 758.5
  throw 904.10
  oscillate 916.10
  flounder 917.15
  adj phonetic 524.30
pitch-black black 38.8
  dark 1027.13
pitched battle 457.4
pitcher
  baseball team 745.2
  thrower 904.7
pitcher's mound 745.1
pitchfork 904.10
pitch in eat 8.20
  set to work 725.15
  begin 818.7
pitchman
  publicist 352.9
  cheat 357.3
pitch pipe 711.22
piteous
  distressing 98.20
  pitiful 145.8
pitfall trap 356.12
  hidden danger 1006.5
pith
  essential content 196.5
  center 208.2
  pluck 359.3

fortitude 492.6
meaning 518.1
summary 557.2
essence 767.2
salient point 997.6
pulp 1063.2
pithy
meaningful 518.10
concise 537.6
aphoristic 974.6
spongy 1047.11
pulpy 1063.6
pitiless unpitying 146.3
savage 671.21
bright 1025.32
pit man 737.10
pit of one's stomach 93.3
the pits bottom 199.1
sewer 654.7
terribleness 1000.2
pittance
modicum 248.2
donation 478.6
dole 992.5
pitted
indented 284.17
rough 288.6
nappy 294.7
pitter-patter
n thud 52.3
staccato 55.1
trepidation 105.5
rain 316.1
repetitiousness 849.4
pulsation 916.3
flutter 917.4
v drum 55.4
rain 316.10
flutter 917.12
pit viper 311.26
pity
n kindness 143.1
sympathy 145.1
leniency 427.1
abomination 638.2
v be sorry for 145.3
condole with 147.2
pivot
n center 208.2
basketball game 747.3
round 751.3
joint 800.4
fulcrum 906.3
axle 915.5
salient point 997.6
v turn round 163.9
rotate 915.9
pivotal
central 208.11
critical 843.10
causal 886.13
urgent 997.22
pivotal point 997.6
pixie
mischief-maker 322.3
fairy 678.8
imp 680.7
pixilated 926.29
pizzazz energy 17.3
power 18.1
liveliness 330.2
vigor 544.3
pizzeria 8.17
PJ's 5.21
placard
n poster 352.7
v publicize 352.15
placate 465.7
place
n serving 8.10
location 159.1
stead 159.4
abode 228.1
square 230.8
region 231.1
rank 245.2
arena 463.1
class 607.1
duty 641.1
function 724.3
position 724.5
state 765.1
continuity 807.2
turn 825.2
opportunity 843.2
outlook 978.2
v locate 159.11
put 159.12
install 615.12
impose 643.4
invest 729.17
race 757.5
dispose 808.9
classify 809.6
attribute 888.3
recognize 989.12
place against 943.4
place an order 421.5
place at one's disposal 439.4
place a value on
price 630.11
estimate 946.9
place before 216.8
placebo 86.4
place confidence in
believe in 953.15
trust 953.17
placed
located 159.18
arranged 808.14
classified 809.8
place emphasis on 997.14
place horse 757.2
place in office
establish 159.16
elect 371.20
install 615.12
a place in the sun 662.1
place itself 807.5
placekick 746.3
place kick 902.9
placement
location 159.1
positioning 159.6
installation 615.3
arrangement 808.1
grouping 808.3
classification 809.1
attribution 888.1
place name 527.3
placenta 817.3
place of residence 228.1
place of worship 703.1
place side by side 223.13
place the blame on
blame 599.8
attribute to 888.4
place trust in 953.17
place under arrest 480.18
place under oath 334.7
place upon 888.4
placid
calm 106.12
quiescent 173.12
placing 159.6
plafond 295.6
plagiarize
imitate 336.5
pirate 482.19
adopt 621.4
repeat 849.7
plague
n epidemic 85.5
assemblage 770.6
infestation 910.2
bane 1001.1
v annoy 96.13
vex 98.15
make anxious 126.5
importune 440.12
infest 910.6
trouble 1013.13
plagued
tormented 96.24
worried 126.8
remembering 989.24
troubled 1013.20
plaid
n check 47.4
adj checked 47.14
plain
n open space 158.4
horizontal 201.3
flat country 236.1
prairie 236.1
adj distinct 31.7
audible 50.16
dull 117.8
humble 137.10
horizontal 201.7
homelike 228.33
champaign 236.2
mere 248.8
manifest 348.8
artless 416.5
uncomplicated 499.6
clear 521.11
elegant 533.6
plain-speaking 535.3
informal 581.3
populational 606.8
candid 644.17
prosaic 721.5
thorough 794.10
simple 798.6
easy 1014.13
ugly 1015.6
adv absolutely 794.15
plain as day
distinct 31.7
manifest 348.8
plain as the nose on one's face
distinct 31.7
manifest 348.8
plainclothesman 576.10
plain English
clearness 521.2
plain speech 535.1
plain folks 606.1
plains
n the country 233.1
plain 236.1
adj rustic 233.6
plain sense 920.6
plaint
lament 115.3
accusation 599.1
plaintiff
oppositionist 452.3
litigant 598.11
accuser 599.5
plaintive
sorrowful 112.26
plangent 115.19
the plain truth 973.3
plait
n braid 3.7
pleat 291.2
lamina 296.2
weave 740.2
v fold 291.5
weave 740.6
plan
n structure 266.1
representation 349.1
intention 380.1
scheme 381.1
undertaking 404.1
intent 518.2
plot 722.4
outline 801.4
v intend 380.4
plan on 380.6
premeditate 380.7
devise 381.8
prepare 405.6
organize 808.10
come 839.6
originate 892.12
prearrange 965.4
plane
n aircraft 181.1
horizontal 201.3
degree 245.1
smoothness 287.3
cutlery 1040.2
v take off 193.10
smooth 287.5
adj horizontal 201.7
smooth 287.10
plane crash 1011.2
planet 1072.9
planetarium 1072.17
planetary
deviative 164.7
circular 280.11
universal 864.14
celestial 1072.25
plangent
loud 53.11
resonant 54.10
sorrowful 112.26
plaintive 115.19

plank
n strip 271.4
lamina 296.2
platform 609.7
wood 1054.3
v place violently 159.13
face 295.23
plankton 311.30
planned
intentional 380.8
devised 381.12
prepared 405.16
future 839.8
prearranged 965.7
planned obsolescence 390.1
planned parenthood 891.1
plant
n vegetable 310.3
shill 357.5
equipment 385.4
factory 739.3
v establish 159.16
people 225.9
secrete 346.7
tamper with 354.17
fix 855.9
implant 1069.18
adj biological 1068.4
plant and animal life 305.1
plantation
establishment 159.7
peopling 225.2
growth 310.2
farm 1069.8
plant biology 1068.1
plant-eating 8.31
plant growth 14.1
plant oneself 159.17
plaque 549.12
plasma 2.25
plaster
n dressing 86.33
sculpture tool 715.4
adhesive 803.4
pulp 1063.2
v intoxicate 88.23
treat 91.24
smooth 287.5
coat 295.24
cover 295.25
adj on 295.43
plastic
n credit instrument 622.3
thermoplastic 1054.6
resin 1057.1
adj formative 262.9
plasmatic 262.10
docile 433.13
teachable 570.18
changeable 854.6
conformable 867.5
conformist 867.6
influenceable 894.15
ordinary 1005.8
pliant 1047.9
plastic surgery surgery 90.2
surgery 91.19
plastic wrap 295.18
plate
n serving 8.10
continent 235.1
plating 295.13
shell 295.15
lamina 296.2
label 517.13
printing surface 548.8
steel plate 713.6
film 714.10
v chromium-plate 295.26
the plate 745.1
plateau
plain 236.1
highlands 237.1
tableland 237.3
degree 245.1
mesa 272.4
interim 826.1
plated
chromium-plated 295.33
layered 296.6
platform
n horizontal 201.3
policy 381.4
arena 463.1
marker 517.10
party platform 609.7
stage 901.13
v make a speech 543.9
platinum 37.7
platinum blond
n hair color 35.9
adj blond 37.9
platitude
generalization 864.8
cliché 974.3
Plato 921.2
Platonic
continent 664.6
Aristotelian 952.12
idealist 1053.8
platoon
military unit 461.22
team 617.7
company 770.3
platter
recording media 549.10
baseball 745.1
plaudit 509.2
plausible
specious 354.27
logical 935.20
sophistical 936.10
believable 953.24
possible 966.6
colorable 968.7
play
n room 158.3
action 328.1
latitude 430.4
joke 489.6
writing 547.10
repute 662.1
stage show 704.4
fun 743.2
frolic 743.5
contest 743.9
sport 744.1
baseball 745.3
football 746.3
basketball game 747.3
tennis 748.2
game 749.3
hockey 749.6
round 751.3
soccer 752.3
bridge 758.3
gambling 759.1
bet 759.3
flicker 1025.8
v jet 238.20
act 328.4
impersonate 349.12
sham 354.21
use 387.10
affect 500.12
stage 704.29
perform 708.39
sport 743.23
compete 744.2
play baseball 745.5
kick 746.5
play basketball 747.4
play tennis 748.3
skate 749.7
play golf 751.4
play soccer 752.4
gamble 759.23
trifle 998.14
flicker 1025.25
playa shore 234.2
plain 236.1
playacting
sham 354.3
acting 704.8
play a joke on 489.14
play along
be willing 324.3
concur 332.9
consent 441.2
play around flirt 562.20
trifle 998.15
play around with
consider 931.12
experiment 942.8
play at cross-purposes
oppose 451.3
go contrary to 779.4
play a waiting game
be patient 134.4
do nothing 329.2
play back 50.14
play ball
cooperate 450.3
play baseball 745.5
play basketball 747.4
playbill 965.3
playbook book 554.1
script 704.21
play both ends against the middle
play a double game 354.24
exploit 387.16
playboy
sociable person 582.16
dissipater 669.3
player 743.18
play by ear
improvise 365.8
be unprepared 406.6
play 708.39
play-by-play description
account 349.3
circumstances 766.2
play by the rules 644.9
play cat and mouse with 389.7
play down
minimize 252.9
moderate 670.6
attach little importance to 998.12
play dumb
be silent 51.6
keep secret 345.7
played out
weakened 16.18
tired 21.8
worn-out 393.36
player
competitor 452.2
participator 476.4
motion-picture studio 706.4
actor 707.2
instrumentalist 710.3
frolicker 743.18
athlete 743.19
golfer 751.2
gambler 759.21
component 796.2
influence 894.6
player piano 711.12
play fair 649.7
play fast and loose with 156.4
play favorites 650.8
play for a sucker
deceive 356.19
exploit 387.16
stultify 923.7
play for time 846.11
playful gay 109.14
mischievous 322.6
waggish 489.17
sportive 743.29
play God 640.8
playground 743.11
play hard to get 562.20
play havoc with
spoil 393.10
bungle 414.11
work evil 1000.6
play hide and seek 346.8
play hooky 222.9
playhouse
small space 258.3
theater 704.14
playing card 758.2
playing field arena 463.1
playground 743.11
playmaker
basketball team 747.2
hockey team 749.2
playmate companion 588.3
mistress 665.17
play musical chairs 854.5
playoff baseball 745.1
football 746.1
play off
symmetrize 264.3
offset 338.5
play one's cards close to one's vest 345.7
play one's cards right 321.5
play one's trump card 415.11
play on words
n wordplay 489.8

v joke 489.13
play opposite 704.30
play out 21.5
play politics 468.2
play possum 354.20
playroom
  recreation room 197.12
  playground 743.11
play Russian roulette 493.6
play safe
  take precautions 494.6
  keep on the safe side 1007.3
playschool 567.2
play second fiddle
  efface oneself 139.7
  retreat 163.6
  retract 168.3
  be inferior 250.4
  depend on 432.12
play the field 562.20
play the fool
  misbehave 322.4
  be foolish 923.6
play the game
  behave oneself 321.5
  conform 579.4
  play fair 649.7
  follow the rule 867.4
play the lead 704.29
play the market 737.23
play the ponies
  gamble 759.23
  bet 759.25
play the same old tune 118.8
plaything dupe 358.1
  instrument 384.4
  toy 743.16
playtime 857.3
play tricks 489.14
play up 997.16
play upon 387.16
play up to
  curry favor 138.9
  flatter 511.6
  cultivate 587.12
play with fire
  not know what one is about 414.14
  court danger 493.6
  take chances 1006.7
playwright 704.22
plaza square 230.8
  marketplace 736.2
plea entreaty 440.2
  pleadings 598.6
  defense 600.2
  argument 935.5
plea-bargain sign 437.7
  compromise 468.2
plea bargaining 598.12
plead entreat 440.11
  enter a plea 598.19
  argue 935.16
  adduce 957.12
plead guilty
  repent 113.7
  confess 351.7
plead ignorance 600.11
plead with 375.14
pleasant pleasing 97.6
  cheerful 109.11
  friendly 587.15
  melodious 708.48
  good 999.12
  rainless 1066.8
pleasantry
  pleasantness 97.1
  wit 489.1
  wittiness 489.2
  witticism 489.7
  banter 490.1
please
  v pleasure 95.6
  prefer 371.17
  indulge 427.6
  interj prithee 440.20
pleasing to the eye 1016.19
pleasure
  n enjoyment 95.1
  pleasantness 97.1
  desire 100.1
  will 323.1
  option 371.2
  command 420.1
  amusement 743.1
  v please 95.6
pleasure boat 180.3
pleasure principle
  psyche 92.28
  pleasure-loving 95.4
  desire 100.1
  sensuality 663.1
pleat
  n trench 290.2
  pleating 291.2
  v furrow 290.3
  fold 291.5
pleated furrowed 290.4
  folded 291.7
plebe 572.6
plebeian
  n common man 606.5
  adj common 497.14
  populational 606.8
plebiscite vote 371.6
  referendum 613.8
pledge
  n toast 88.10
  oath 334.4
  promise 436.1
  gage 438.2
  member 617.11
  debt 623.1
  v drink to 88.29
  promise 436.4
  give security 438.10
  contribute 478.14
  obligate 641.12
the pledge 668.2
Pleiades nymph 678.9
  star 1072.8
plenary great 247.6
  unrestricted 430.27
  full 794.11
plenary session 423.1
plenipotentiary
  omnipotent 18.13
  diplomatic 576.17
plenipotentiary power 615.1
plenty
  n quantity 247.3
  store 386.1
  numerousness 884.1
  plenitude 991.2
  superabundance 993.2
  adj sufficient 991.6
  plentiful 991.7
  adv greatly 247.15
plenum
  omnipresence 221.2
  council 423.1
  assembly 770.2
  completeness 794.1
  series 812.2
  matter 1052.2
  universe 1072.1
plethora fullness 794.2
  superabundance 993.2
  overfullness 993.3
plexus
  nervous system 2.14
  network 170.3
pliable folded 291.7
  weak-willed 362.12
  usable 387.23
  docile 433.13
  teachable 570.18
  influenceable 894.15
  handy 1014.15
  pliant 1047.9
pliers 192.9
plight
  n promise 436.1
  state 765.1
  bewilderment 971.3
  danger 1006.1
  adversity 1011.1
  predicament 1013.4
  v promise 436.4
plod
  n slow motion 175.2
  v plug 175.7
  way of walking 177.28
  keep doggedly at 360.3
  drudge 725.14
plodder
  slowpoke 175.5
  drudge 726.3
plop
  v place violently 159.13
  sink 194.6
  bubble 320.4
  plunge 367.6
  adv suddenly 830.9
plot
  n plot of ground 231.4
  diagram 381.3
  intrigue 381.5
  stratagem 415.3
  real estate 471.6
  fable 722.4
  field 1069.9
  v premeditate 380.7
  scheme 381.9
  map 381.10
  maneuver 415.10
  come 839.6
  prearrange 965.4
plot a course 182.27
plow maneuver 184.40
  furrow 290.3
  cultivate 1069.17
plow back into 729.17
plow into
  attack 459.15
  criticize 510.14
ploy trick 356.6
  stratagem 415.3
  revel 743.6
pluck
  n spunk 359.3
  courage 492.1
  jerk 905.3
  v divest 6.5
  flunk 410.17
  collect 472.11
  strip 480.24
  strum 708.40
  cheat 759.26
  jerk 905.5
  harvest 1069.19
plucky
  spunky 359.14
  enterprising 404.8
  courageous 492.17
plug
  n hydrant 239.12
  stopper 293.4
  horse 311.12
  publicity 352.4
  snare 356.13
  commendation 509.3
  commercial 1034.20
  v plod 175.7
  stop 293.7
  top 295.21
  publicize 352.15
  keep doggedly at 360.3
  commend 509.11
  drudge 725.14
  shoot 904.12
plug in 1032.26
plum
  desire 100.11
  political patronage 609.36
  money 728.8
  dividend 738.7
  good thing 999.5
plumage 3.18
plumb
  n vertical 200.2
  instrument 200.6
  weight 297.6
  v plumb-line 200.10
  sound 275.9
  measure 300.10
  perceive 521.9
  investigate 938.23
  solve 940.2
  adj perpendicular 200.12
  thorough 794.10
  adv perpendicularly 200.14
  absolutely 794.15
  exactly 973.21
plumbing 385.4
plumb the depths
  lose heart 112.16
  sound 275.9
plume
  n feather 3.16
  v groom 79.20
  adorn 498.9
plume of smoke 1067.1

plump
n thud 52.3
v place violently 159.13
sink 194.6
fatten 259.8
plunge 367.6
vote 371.18
soften 1047.6
adj corpulent 257.18
adv suddenly 830.9
plunder
n plundering 482.6
booty 482.11
v pillage 482.17
plunge
n run 174.3
tumble 194.3
decline 252.2
dive 367.1
deterioration 393.3
cheapening 633.4
investment 729.4
trading 737.19
swimming pool 743.12
gamble 759.2
flounder 917.8
v move 172.5
pitch 182.55
descend 194.5
decrease 252.6
gravitate 297.15
dive 367.6
make haste 401.5
rush into 401.7
cheapen 633.6
invest 729.17
trade 737.23
bet 759.25
flounder 917.15
plunger
diver 367.4
speculator 737.11
gambler 759.21
plunk
n thud 52.3
v thud 52.15
place violently 159.13
sink 194.6
plunge 367.6
strike 902.15
adv suddenly 830.9
plural
n number 530.8
adj pluralized 883.7
pluralism
government 612.8
nonuniformity 782.1
mixture 797.1
plurality 883.1
dualism 952.6
plurality
major part 792.6
more than one 883
pluralness 883.1
majority 883.2
plus
n math terms 253.2
surplus 993.5
v add 253.4
adj additional 253.10
positive 1032.35
adv additionally 253.11
prep with 253.12
plush
n softness 1047.4
adj grandiose 501.21
velvety 1047.15
Pluto
nether world deity 682.5
planet 1072.9
plutocracy 618.6
ply
n fold 291.1
lamina 296.2
v touch 73.6
traverse 177.20
navigate 182.13
sail near the wind 182.25
change course 182.30
fold 291.5
use 387.10
urge upon 439.9
importune 440.12
exert 725.8
ply one's trade
work 724.12
trade 731.15
plywood lamina 296.2
wood 1054.3
PM afternoon 315.1
modulation 1034.14
PMS 92.14
pneumatic
bulging 283.15
airy 317.12
comely 1016.19
pneumatological 1039.10
vaporous 1067.9
poach cook 11.5
steal 482.13
poached eggs 10.26
pock
n sore 85.37
swelling 283.4
indentation 284.6
texture 294.1
blemish 1004.1
v indent 284.14
pocket
n atmosphere 184.32
bag 195.2
cavity 284.2
funds 728.14
purse 729.15
game 746.3
string 750.2
v patience 134.8
load 159.15
enclose 212.5
retain 474.5
take 480.13
legislate 613.10
receive 627.3
adj miniature 258.12
pocketbook
record book 549.11
purse 729.15
pocket veto
prohibition 444.2
veto 613.7
pockmarked
spotted 47.13
indented 284.17
pod
n marijuana 87.11
hull 295.16
seed vessel 310.30
group of animals 770.5
v husk 6.9
podiatrist 90.4
podium 901.13
poem writing 547.10
verse 720.4
thing of beauty 1016.7
poet composer 547.15
author 718.4
poetess 720.11
imaginer 986.12
poetic poetical 720.15
visionary 986.24
poetic justice
justice 649.1
poetics 720.2
poetic license 720.2
poetic prose 721.1
poet laureate 720.11
poetry fluency 544.2
verse 720.1
poesy 720.1
pogrom 308.4
poignant
acrimonious 17.14
sensitive 24.13
painful 26.10
pungent 68.6
deep-felt 93.24
distressing 98.20
vigorous 544.11
spirited 544.12
point
n acrimony 17.5
location 159.1
direction 161.1
leading 165.1
summit 198.2
vanguard 216.2
mountain 237.6
degree 245.1
modicum 248.2
minute 258.7
angle 278.2
point of land 283.9
tip 285.3
intention 380.1
benefit 387.4
joke 489.6
mark 517.5
meaning 518.1
punctuation 530.15
type 548.6
sculpture tool 715.4
tennis 748.2
hockey team 749.2
game 749.3
score 749.6
soccer 752.3
particular 766.3
precursor 816.1
extremity 820.2
period 824.1
grammar 857.4
individual 872.4
topic 937.1
watchman 1008.10
cutlery 1040.2
v direct 161.5
take direction 161.7
sharpen 285.7
gravitate 297.15
mark 517.19
grammaticize 530.16
tend 896.3
point-blank
plainly 535.4
exactly 973.21
pointer index 517.4
clue 551.3
guide 574.7
point guard 747.2
pointillism 47.3
point in question
topic 937.1
question 938.10
pointless dull 117.6
blunt 286.3
useless 391.9
point man
vanguard 216.2
hockey team 749.2
precursor 816.1
point of departure 188.5
point of interest 997.5
point of reference 159.2
point of view
viewpoint 27.7
narrator 722.5
opinion 953.6
outlook 978.2
point out
designate 517.18
specify 865.11
call attention to 983.10
points lending 620.1
interest 623.3
esteem 662.3
point the finger at 599.7
poise
n looks 33.4
equanimity 106.3
behavior 321.1
gesture 517.14
equality 790.1
confidence 970.5
v take off 193.10
equalize 790.6
poison
n poisonousness 82.3
liquor 88.14
killer 308.11
evil 1000.3
venom 1001.3
v empoison 85.52
kill 308.13
corrupt 393.12
work evil 1000.6
radioactivate 1037.10
poisonous nasty 64.7
toxic 82.7
harmful 1000.12
poison pen 512.5
poke
n bag 195.2
signal 517.15
purse 729.15

bundle 770.8
thrust 902.2
hit 902.4
v go slow 175.6
dally 331.14
goad 375.15
signal 517.22
thrust 902.12
hit 902.14
search 938.31
poke at 459.16
poke full of holes 958.4
poke fun at joke 489.13
ridicule 508.8
poke one's nose in
meddle 214.7
pry 981.4
poker
draw poker 759.10
fire iron 1020.12
poker face
unfeeling 94.1
unastonishment 123.1
reticence 344.3
unexpressiveness 522.5
pokey 429.9
poky dull 117.6
slow 175.10
little 258.10
base 661.12
slovenly 810.15
insignificant 998.18
polar
contrapositive 215.5
final 820.11
magnetic 1032.31
polar coordinates 300.5
Polaris
guiding star 574.8
stars 1072.4
Polaroid glasses 29.3
the polar opposite 779.2
pole
n spar 180.13
oar 180.15
summit 198.2
remote region 261.4
tower 272.6
shaft 273.1
beam 273.3
race 756.3
extremity 820.2
base 901.8
axle 915.5
polarity 1032.8
wood 1054.3
v push 904.9
poleax
strike dead 308.18
do for 395.11
polecat
stinker 71.3
wild animal 311.23
beast 660.6
polemic
n quarrel 456.5
contention 457.1
argumentation 935.4
arguer 935.12
adj contentious 110.26
partisan 456.17
argumentative 935.19
pole position
advantage 249.2
race 756.3
precedence 814.1
poles apart
opposite 215.6
different 780.7
pole vault 366.1
police
n policeman 1008.15
police force 1008.17
v tidy 808.12
protect 1008.18
watch 1008.20
police car 179.11
police state 612.4
police station 230.5
policy plan 381.4
polity 609.4
judiciousness 920.7
insurance 1008.4
policyholder 438.7
policy maker 610.7
polio 85.27
polish
n gloss 287.2
smoother 287.4
cultivation 392.3
taste 496.1
good breeding 504.4
elegance 533.1
v shine 287.7
perfect 392.11
buff 1044.8
polish off kill 308.14
accomplish 407.4
end 820.5
polite 504.14
polite society 578.6
political
politic 609.43
governmental 612.17
political action committee
pressure group 609.31
influence 894.6
political activist 330.8
political asylum 1009.1
political convention 609.8
political election 371.9
political influence
machination 415.4
wire-pulling 609.29
political machine
political party 609.24
association 617.1
political party
party 609.24
association 617.4
political philosopher 610.12
political prisoner 429.11
political science 609.2
politician
expert 413.11
Machiavellian 415.8
statesman 610.2
politico 610.1
politicize
politick 609.38
democratize 611.16
politics
Machiavellianism 415.2
statesmanship 609.3
polity 609.1
political science 609.2
polka dot
spottiness 47.3
mark 517.5
poll
n head 198.6
vote 371.6
balloting place 609.20
returns 609.21
roll 871.6
canvass 938.14
v shorten 268.6
vote 371.18
record 549.15
canvass 938.29
number 1017.17
pollen
n sperm 305.11
v fertilize 78.10
pollinate 78.10
polling booth 609.20
pollute defile 80.17
intoxicate 88.23
misuse 389.4
corrupt 393.12
blaspheme 694.5
adulterate 797.12
work evil 1000.6
pollution
defilement 80.4
unhealthfulness 82.1
misuse 389.1
corruption 393.2
sacrilege 694.2
adulteration 797.3
evil 1000.3
environmental destruction 1073.2
Pollyanna 124.6
poltergeist imp 680.7
psychic phenomena 689.6
specter 988.1
polychrome
n variegation 47.1
v variegate 47.7
adj variegated 47.9
pictorial 712.21
polygraph 92.8
polyhedral sided 218.7
multilateral 278.11
polymath 413.12
polymer 1054.6
polymorphous 783.3
Polynesian race 312.2
polynomial 883.8
polyp 85.37
polysaccharide 7.5
polysyllabic 545.10
polyunsaturated fat
fat 7.7
oil 1056.1
pomade
n ointment 1056.3
v oil 1056.8
pommel
n saddle parts 901.18
v whip 604.13
pound 902.16
pomp spectacle 33.7
circumstance 501.6
formality 580.1
procession 812.3
pompadour 3.22
pomp and circumstance 501.6
pom-pom 462.12
pompous stuffy 501.22
stiff 534.3
grandiloquent 545.8
ceremonious 580.8
confident 970.21
pond 241.1
ponder hesitate 362.7
consider 931.12
ponderous dull 117.6
bulky 257.19
heavy 297.16
bungling 414.20
stiff 534.3
unwieldy 1013.19
pone 10.29
pontificate
n mastership 417.7
papacy 698.6
v give oneself airs 501.14
talk big 545.6
criticize 946.14
dogmatize 970.10
Pontius Pilate 596.5
pontoon 180.11
pony
n runt 258.4
horse 311.10
translation 341.3
money 728.8
jockey 757.2
adj miniature 258.12
adv on foot 177.43
ponytail 3.5
pooch
n dog 311.17
v bulge 283.11
pooh-pooh
slight 157.6
scoff 508.9
disbelieve 955.5
pool
landlocked water 241.1
lake 241.1
company 617.9
funds 728.14
bear pool 737.17
swimming pool 743.12
pot 759.5
pool hall 743.11
poop
n energy 17.3
power 18.1
stern 217.7
v get tired 21.6
pooped weak 16.12
tired 21.8
languid 331.20
worn-out 393.36
poor weak 16.15
humble 137.10
haggard 270.20
unskillful 414.15
disapproving 510.21

ill off 619.7
base 661.12
sparse 885.5
unsound 936.12
meager 992.10
ill-provided 992.12
paltry 998.21
inferior 1005.9
poor judgment 948.1
poor man's roulette 759.8
Poor Richard's Almanac 832.7
poor taste 497.1
poor timing 844.2
pop
n beverage 10.49
thud 52.3
detonation 56.3
vulgarity 497.1
father 560.10
grandfather 560.14
automobile racing 756.1
back number 842.8
v thud 52.15
blast 56.8
use 87.22
bulge 283.11
play 745.5
adj common 497.14
adv suddenly 830.9
pop in enter 189.7
insert 191.3
pop literature
writing 547.12
literature 718.1
pop music 708.7
pop pills 87.22
pop psychology 92.1
poppy 22.10
poppycock
bull 520.3
foolishness 923.1
pop quiz 938.2
pop the question
solicit 440.14
propose 562.22
populace 227.1
popular
desired 100.29
beloved 104.24
customary 373.13
communal 476.9
common 497.14
approved 509.19
fashionable 578.11
populational 606.8
distinguished 662.16
lay 700.3
prevalent 864.12
usual 869.9
popular belief
opinion 953.6
superstition 954.3
populate settle 159.17
people 225.9
population
n establishment 159.7
peopling 225.2
inhabitants 227.1
adj populational 606.8
population explosion 251.2
populous
inhabited 225.12
crowded 770.22
teeming 884.9
pop up burst forth 33.9
be unexpected 131.6
arrive 186.6
shoot up 193.9
play 745.5
turn up 831.6
chance 972.11
porcelain
n ceramic ware 742.2
adj ceramic 742.7
porch
propylaeum 189.6
stoop 197.21
church 703.9
porcine
corpulent 257.18
ungulate 311.46
porcupine 311.23
pore
n duct 2.23
outlet 190.9
opening 292.1
v scrutinize 27.14
pork food 10.17
political patronage 609.36
pork barrel
booty 482.11
political patronage 609.36
treasury 729.13
trading 863.2
pork chop 10.19
porker
heavyweight 257.12
swine 311.9
porno film 666.4
pornography
writing 547.12
obscenity 666.4
literature 718.1
porous
exudative 190.20
porose 292.20
porpoise
n marine animal 311.30
v maneuver 184.40
porridge
semiliquid 1062.5
pulp 1063.2
port
n looks 33.4
airport 184.22
destination 186.5
outlet 190.9
left side 220.1
behavior 321.1
refuge 1009.1
harbor 1009.6
circuitry 1042.3
adj left 220.4
adv leftward 220.6
portable 176.18
portage
transportation 176.3
fee 630.6
portal entrance 189.5
porch 189.6
vestibule 197.19
portcullis 1012.5
portent omen 133.3
ominousness 133.7
forewarning 399.2
porter carrier 176.7
trainman 178.13
doorkeeper 1008.12
portfolio
scepter 417.9
bookholder 554.17
stock 738.2
portico
vestibule 197.19
pillar 273.5
passageway 383.3
port in a storm 1009.1
portion
n serving 8.10
remedy 86.6
fix 87.20
amount 244.2
a length 267.2
share 477.5
endowment 478.9
part 793.1
dose 793.5
fate 964.2
v apportion 477.6
divide 802.18
portly 257.18
port of call 1009.6
portrait
description 349.2
image 349.5
portraiture 712.15
photograph 714.3
copy 785.1
portrait painter 716.4
portray represent 349.8
describe 349.9
enact 704.30
picture 712.19
pose
n behavior 321.1
sham 354.3
posing 500.3
gesture 517.14
v place 159.12
propose 439.5
posture 500.13
postulate 951.12
pose a question 938.19
Poseidon
mariner 183.1
spirit of the sea 240.4
water god 678.10
posh
grandiose 501.21
chic 578.13
upper-class 607.10
expensive 632.11
posing against
contraposition 215.1
symmetrization 264.2
position
n location 159.1
navigation 159.3
rank 245.2
affirmation 334.1
remark 524.3
class 607.1
policy 609.4
prestige 662.4
function 724.3
job 724.5
skiing 753.3
race 756.3
state 765.1
classification 809.2
premise 935.7
opinion 953.6
attitude 978.1
outlook 978.2
v locate 159.11
position paper
affirmation 334.1
announcement 352.2
policy 381.4
platform 609.7
classification 801.3
statement of belief 953.4
positive
n photocopy 714.5
print 785.5
adj downright 247.12
affirmative 334.8
unpersuadable 361.13
helpful 449.21
real 761.15
agreeing 788.9
belief 953.21
unqualified 960.2
certain 970.13
confident 970.21
dogmatic 970.22
emphatic 997.21
numeric 1017.23
plus 1032.35
positive reinforcement 92.26
posse
military unit 461.22
company 770.3
search 938.15
police 1008.17
possess
have 469.4
take 480.13
demonize 680.16
bewitch 691.9
obsess 926.25
know 928.12
haunt 988.6
possessed
overjoyed 95.17
frenzied 105.25
owned 469.8
bewitched 691.13
possessed with a demon 926.29
obsessed 926.33
haunted 988.10
possessive
possessory 469.10
selfish 651.5
possible
latent 519.5
within the bounds of possibility 966.6
numeric 1017.23
possum 311.23
post
n station 159.2

standard 273.4
pillar 273.5
messenger 353.1
stronghold 460.6
mail 553.4
branch 617.10
position 724.5
market 736.1
basketball game 747.3
base 901.8
wood 1054.3
v place 159.12
speed 174.8
send 176.15
publicize 352.15
make haste 401.5
pledge 438.10
record 549.15
wise up 551.9
mail 553.12
commission 615.10
pay 624.16
keep accounts 628.8
list 871.8
adj epistolary 553.14
adv swiftly 174.17
posthaste 401.13
postage 553.5
postage stamp 553.5
postal code 553.9
postal service 553.7
postcard 553.3
postdated 833.3
posted located 159.18
pledged 438.12
recorded 549.17
informed 928.18
poster bill 352.7
mail carrier 353.6
posterior
n rear 217.1
buttocks 217.4
adj rear 217.9
succeeding 815.4
subsequent 835.4
posterity
kinfolk 559.2
progeny 561.1
offspring 561.1
successor 817.4
sequel 835.2
postgraduate
n graduate 572.8
adj scholastic 568.19
studentlike 572.12
posthaste
swiftly 174.17
in posthaste 401.13
posthumous
postmortem 307.36
after death 835.5
post-industrial 835.5
postman
mailman 353.5
postal service 553.7
postmark 553.5
postmaster 353.5
postmortem
n autopsy 307.18
v examine 938.24
adj postmortal 307.36
post office
messenger 353.1
postal service 553.7
postpartum depression 926.5
postpone
put away 390.6
delay 846.9
post position 757.3
postprandial 11.6
postscript
added to writing 254.2
sequel 817.1
post-traumatic stress disorder 92.17
postulate
n fact 761.3
essence 767.2
curtain-raiser 816.2
premise 935.7
supposition 951.3
axiom 974.2
v propose 439.5
predicate 951.12
posture
n looks 33.4
behavior 321.1
sham 354.3
gesture 517.14
opinion 953.6
attitude 978.1
v pose 500.13
posy
n flower 310.24
bouquet 310.25
compliment 509.6
bundle 770.8
adj affected 500.15
ostentatious 501.18
affected 533.9
pot
n abdomen 2.19
marijuana 87.11
container 195.1
lot 247.4
wealth 618.3
trophy 646.3
ceramic ware 742.2
jackpot 759.5
v package 212.9
put up 397.11
shape 742.6
shoot 904.12
plant 1069.18
potable
n beverage 10.49
spirits 88.13
adj drinkable 8.34
potash 890.4
potato 10.35
potato chip 10.30
potbellied
corpulent 257.18
bulging 283.15
potent
strong 15.15
powerful 18.12
sexual 75.25
virile 76.13
authoritative 417.15
influential 894.13
potentate 575.8
potential
n talent 413.4
mood 530.11
possibility 966.1
voltage 1032.12
adj latent 519.5
possible 966.6
potential energy 17.1
pothead 87.21
pothole 284.3
potion drink 8.4
dose 86.6
alcohol 88.7
potluck gamble 759.2
haphazard 972.4
potpourri perfume 70.6
performance 708.33
hodgepodge 797.6
pot roast 10.13
pots and pans 11.4
potshot
n gamble 759.2
shot 904.4
v shoot 904.12
potter
n ceramist 716.7
v waste time 331.13
trifle 998.14
potter's field 309.15
potter's wheel
wheel 742.4
instrument of conversion 858.10
pottery plant 739.3
ceramics 742.1
ceramic ware 742.2
pouch 283.11
poultice
n dressing 86.33
pulp 1063.2
v treat 91.24
relieve 120.5
poultry 311.29
pounce
n descent 194.1
leap 366.1
plunge 367.1
v descend 194.5
leap 366.5
plunge 367.6
pound
n staccato 55.1
kennel 228.21
weight 297.8
place of confinement 429.7
money 728.8
hit 902.4
v suffer 26.8
drum 55.4
pitch 182.55
injure 393.13
confine 429.12
attack 459.14
beat time 708.44
din 849.10
beat 902.16
pulverize 1051.9
pound-foolish 486.8
pound for pound 943.10
pound out
do carelessly 340.9
write 547.21
play 708.39
compose 718.6
produce 892.8
pound the pavement 177.23
pour
n torrent 238.5
rainstorm 316.2
v ladle 176.17
run out 190.13
flow 238.16
rain 316.10
give 478.12
disgorge 909.25
abound 991.5
pour it on speed 174.9
be active 330.14
work hard 725.13
pour oil on the fire
excite 105.12
aggravate 119.2
incite 375.17
pour one's heart out
lighten 120.7
speak up 524.21
pout
n scowl 110.9
grimace 265.4
v look sullen 110.15
grimace 265.8
bulge 283.11
poverty poorness 619.1
scarcity 992.3
POW 429.11
powder
n medicine 86.4
makeup 1016.12
dust 1051.5
v depart 188.7
sprinkle 771.6
pulverize 1051.9
come to dust 1051.10
adj powdery 1051.11
powder keg
threat 514.1
danger 1006.1
powder puff 1016.12
powder room 12.10
power
n strength 15.1
energy 17.1
effective force 18
potency 18.1
country 232.1
greatness 247.1
supremacy 249.3
will power 359.4
means 384.2
talent 413.4
authority 417.1
authoritativeness 417.2
governance 417.5
vigor 544.3
control 612.2
wealth 618.3
prerogative 642.1
influence 894.1
impulse 902.1
personage 997.8
v impel 902.11
adj mechanical 1040.14

power broker 609.30
the power elite 575.15
power failure 1032.20
powerful
adj strong 15.15
potent 18.12
great 247.6
authoritative 417.15
vigorous 544.11
influential 894.13
adv very 247.18
powerhouse
strong man 15.7
man of action 330.8
power station 1032.19
power-hungry 100.28
powerless weak 16.12
impotent 19.13
uninfluential 895.3
power of attorney
commission 615.1
substitution 862.1
power plant
propulsion 184.25
plant 739.3
powerhouse 1032.19
machinery 1040.3
powers talent 413.4
celestial hierarchy 679.3
the powers that be
the authorities 575.15
officeholder 610.11
the government 612.3
power tool 1040.1
powwow
n forum 423.3
conference 541.6
political convention 609.8
v confer 541.11
PR appearance 33.2
publicity 352.4
voting 609.18
practical useful 387.18
usable 387.23
occupied 724.15
operative 889.9
workable 889.10
sensible 920.18
ungullible 956.5
expedient 966.7
realistic 987.6
practicable 995.6
handy 1014.15
practical joke 489.10
practical wisdom 920.6
practice
n behavior 321.1
action 328.1
custom 373.1
habit 373.3
manner 384.1
experience 413.9
observance 434.1
training 568.3
study 570.3
bar 597.4
rite 701.3
vocation 724.6
exercise 725.6
operation 889.1
tryout 942.3
notation 1017.2
v act 328.4
put into practice 328.8
use 384.5
employ 387.10
perform 434.3
train 568.13
study 570.12
rehearse 704.32
busy oneself with 724.11
exert 725.8
play 744.2
iterate 849.8
practiced
skilled 413.26
experienced 413.28
practice law 597.5
practice medicine 90.14
practice what one preaches
observe 434.2
keep faith 644.9
practicing
n iteration 849.2
adj acting 328.10
observant 434.4
pious 692.8
Prado 386.9
pragmatic
sensible 920.18
realistic 987.6
practical 995.6
prairie
n open space 158.4
horizontal 201.3
plain 236.1
grassland 310.8
adj rustic 233.6
prairie dog 311.23
praise
n congratulation 149.1
thanks 150.2
approval 509.5
flattery 511.1
citation 646.4
glorification 696.2
v congratulate 149.2
give approval 509.12
flatter 511.5
honor 646.8
glorify 696.12
praiseworthy 509.20
pram 179.6
prance
n gait 177.12
caper 366.2
v way of walking 177.28
go on horseback 177.34
caper 366.6
strut 501.15
dance 705.5
prancer horse 311.10
race horse 311.14
prank
n trick 489.10
v dress up 5.42
ornament 498.8
pratfall tumble 194.3
collapse 410.3
goof 975.6
prattle
n nonsense 520.2
speech 524.1
chatter 540.3
v talk nonsense 520.5
chatter 540.5
chat 541.10
pray
v petition 440.10
entreat 440.11
supplicate 696.13
interj please 440.20
prayer entreaty 440.2
supplication 696.4
divine service 696.8
worshiper 696.9
prayer book 554.1
preach admonish 422.6
lecture 543.11
expound 568.16
preacher lecturer 543.5
informer 551.6
teacher 571.7
sermoner 699.3
preamble
n curtain-raiser 816.2
v prefix 814.3
prearrange plan 381.8
prepare 405.6
contract 437.5
precontrive 965.4
precarious
unreliable 971.20
ticklish 1006.12
precaution
n precautiousness 494.3
v forewarn 399.6
precede lead 165.2
rule 249.11
antecede 814.2
go before 816.3
initiate 818.10
be prior 834.3
precedent
n model 786.1
precursor 816.1
antecedent 834.2
verdict 946.5
adj leading 165.3
preceding 814.4
precept
rule 419
prescript 419.1
direction 420.3
a belief 953.2
maxim 974.1
precinct
enclosed place 212.3
nearness 223.1
sphere 231.2
region 231.5
arena 463.1
election district 609.16
precious
n endearment term 562.6
adj beloved 104.24
downright 247.12
overnice 500.18
affected 533.9
punctilious 580.10
dear 632.10
precious few 885.4
precious metals
gold 728.20
metal 1058.3
precious stone
jewel 498.6
gem 1059.7
precipice cliff 200.3
slope 237.2
precipitant
precipitate 401.10
reckless 493.8
sudden 830.5
precipitate
n dregs 256.2
effect 887.1
precipitation 1045.5
v descend 194.5
gravitate 297.15
rain 316.10
hasten 401.4
fell 913.5
deposit 1045.11
adj fast 174.15
impulsive 365.9
precipitant 401.10
unprepared 406.8
reckless 493.8
sudden 830.5
premature 845.8
precipitous
perpendicular 200.12
steep 204.18
precipitate 401.10
reckless 493.8
sudden 830.5
précis
n shortening 268.3
abridgment 557.1
iteration 849.2
v iterate 849.8
precise
v be accurate 973.11
adj meticulous 339.12
fastidious 495.9
punctilious 580.10
detailed 766.9
particular 865.12
discriminating 944.7
exact 973.17
precision
meticulousness 339.3
fastidiousness 495.1
elegance 533.1
accuracy 973.5
preclude
prohibit 444.3
exclude 773.4
prevent 1012.14
precocious 845.8
precognition
understanding 928.3
intuition 934.1
foreknowledge 961.3
preconceive 947.2
preconclusion 947.1
preconscious
n psyche 92.28
adj subconscious 92.42
preconsider 380.7

- **precursor**
  - harbinger 133.5
  - leading 165.1
  - vanguard 216.2
  - settler 227.9
  - warning sign 399.3
  - precedence 814.1
  - forerunner 816.1
  - antecedent 834.2
  - early bird 845.4
  - transformer 852.5
  - producer 892.7
- **predate**
  - date 832.13
  - be prior 834.3
- **predator** 480.12
- **predecessor** 816.1
- **predestine**
  - predetermine 964.6
  - destine 964.7
- **predetermine**
  - premeditate 380.7
  - prejudge 947.2
  - predecide 964.6
- **predicament**
  - state 765.1
  - urgent need 963.4
  - bewilderment 971.3
  - danger 1006.1
  - adversity 1011.1
  - plight 1013.4
- **predicate**
  - *n* affirmation 334.1
  - syntax 530.2
  - *v* affirm 334.5
  - postulate 951.12
- **predict**
  - look forward to 130.6
  - foreshow 133.10
  - come 839.6
  - foresee 961.5
  - make a prediction 962.9
  - risk 972.12
- **predictable**
  - stable 855.12
  - divinable 962.13
  - probable 968.6
  - reliable 970.17
- **predilection**
  - inclination 100.3
  - love 104.1
  - preference 371.5
  - tendency 896.1
  - prejudgment 947.1
  - disposition 978.3
  - prejudice 980.3
- **predispose** 894.7
- **predominant**
  - chief 249.14
  - governing 612.18
  - prevalent 864.12
  - influential 894.14
  - paramount 997.24
- **preeminent** top 198.10
  - chief 249.14
  - authoritative 417.15
  - paramount 997.24
- **preempt** 480.19
- **preemptive strike** 459.1
- **preen** groom 79.20
  - ornament 498.8
- **preexist** 834.3
- **prefabricated**
  - ready-made 405.19
  - made 892.18
- **preface**
  - *n* front 216.1
  - makeup 554.12
  - part of writing 793.2
  - curtain-raiser 816.2
  - *v* prefix 814.3
- **prefect**
  - teaching fellow 571.4
  - executive 574.3
- **prefecture** 417.7
- **prefer** desire 100.14
  - have preference 371.17
  - offer 439.4
  - propose 439.5
  - promote 446.2
  - favor 650.8
  - take the attitude 978.6
- **preferable** 371.25
- **prefer charges**
  - arraign 598.15
  - accuse 599.7
- **preferential treatment**
  - furtherance 449.5
  - partiality 650.3
- **prefix**
  - *n* front 216.1
  - added to writing 254.2
  - morphology 526.3
  - curtain-raiser 816.2
  - *v* add 253.4
  - preface 814.3
- **preformed** 405.19
- **pregnable**
  - helpless 19.18
  - vulnerable 1006.16
- **pregnant**
  - enceinte 78.18
  - meaningful 518.10
  - beginning 818.15
  - critical 843.10
  - original 886.14
  - productive 890.9
  - imaginative 986.18
- **preheat** 1020.17
- **prehensile**
  - raptorial 474.9
  - knowing 928.15
- **prehistoric**
  - prewar 834.5
  - former 837.10
  - primitive 842.11
- **preindicate** 133.12
- **prejudge**
  - be prejudiced 947.2
  - forejudge 980.7
- **prejudice**
  - *n* preference 371.5
  - tendency 896.1
  - prejudgment 947.1
  - forejudging 980.3
  - disadvantage 996.2
  - *v* prejudice against 980.9
  - work evil 1000.6
- **preliminary**
  - *n* preparation 405.1
  - curtain-raiser 816.2
  - inauguration 818.5
  - *adj* prior 814.4
  - preceding 816.4
  - prefatory 818.16
- **prelude**
  - *n* overture 708.26
  - precedence 814.1
  - curtain-raiser 816.2
  - *v* prefix 814.3
- **premarital** 665.27
- **premature**
  - untimely 844.6
  - too early 845.8
- **premeditate**
  - calculate 380.7
  - prearrange 965.4
- **premier**
  - *n* head of state 575.7
  - *adj* first 818.17
  - paramount 997.24
- **premiere**
  - *n* theatrical performance 704.12
  - *v* dramatize 704.28
- **premise**
  - *n* fact 761.3
  - curtain-raiser 816.2
  - antecedent 834.2
  - foundation 901.6
  - proposition 935.7
  - supposition 951.3
  - *v* prefix 814.3
- **premises** region 231.1
  - evidence 957.1
- **premium**
  - *n* extra 254.4
  - gratuity 478.5
  - interest 623.3
  - bonus 624.6
  - discount 631.1
  - bridge 758.3
  - *adj* expensive 632.11
- **premonition**
  - presentiment 133.1
  - forewarning 399.2
  - extrasensory perception 689.8
  - hunch 934.3
- **prenatal** 818.15
- **prenuptial agreement** 436.3
- **preoccupy**
  - appropriate 480.19
  - obsess 926.25
  - occupy the mind 931.20
  - engross 983.13
- **preordained** 964.8
- **prepacked** 212.12
- **prepaid** 624.22
- **preparation**
  - medicine 86.4
  - provision 385.1
  - preparing 405.1
  - training 568.3
  - harmonization 709.2
  - earliness 845.1
  - foresight 961.1
- **preparatory school** 567.4
- **prepare** cook 11.5
  - provide 385.7
  - equip 385.8
  - make ready 405.6
  - take steps 494.6
  - write 547.21
  - train 568.13
  - formulate 718.6
  - produce 892.8
- **preponderance**
  - superiority 249.1
  - dominance 417.6
  - majority 883.2
  - influence 894.1
- **preposition** 530.3
- **prepossessing**
  - delightful 97.7
  - alluring 377.8
- **preposterous**
  - overpriced 632.12
  - undue 640.9
  - absurd 923.11
  - unbelievable 955.10
  - impossible 967.7
  - fanciful 986.20
- **prepped** 405.16
- **preppie** 572.3
- **prerecord** 50.14
- **prerequisite**
  - *n* preparation 405.1
  - condition 959.2
  - requirement 963.2
  - *adj* preparatory 405.20
  - requisite 963.13
- **prerogative**
  - superiority 249.1
  - authority 417.1
  - right 642
- **presage**
  - *n* premonition 133.1
  - foreknowledge 961.3
  - prediction 962.1
  - *v* foreshow 133.10
  - predict 962.9
- **preschool**
  - *n* infant school 567.2
  - *adj* scholastic 567.13
- **prescient** 961.7
- **prescribe**
  - remedy 86.38
  - require 420.9
  - advise 422.5
  - direct 573.8
  - administer 643.6
  - legalize 673.9
- **prescription**
  - remedy 86.1
  - limitation 210.2
  - custom 373.1
  - precept 419.1
  - formula 419.3
  - direction 420.3
  - possession 469.1
  - prerogative 642.1
  - law 673.3
  - rule 869.4
- **presence** looks 33.4
  - apparition 33.5
  - being here 221.1
  - behavior 321.1
  - existence 761.1
  - influence 894.6
  - phantom 976.4
  - specter 988.1
- **presence of mind** 106.3

present
n gift 478.4
tense 530.12
v manifest 348.5
put to choice 371.21
provide 385.7
offer 439.4
donate 478.12
say 524.22
phrase 532.4
introduce 587.14
give 634.4
dramatize 704.28
adduce 957.12
adj attendant 221.12
existent 761.13
immediate 838.2
the present time 821.1
now 838.1
present tense 838.1
presentable
giveable 478.23
tolerable 999.20
comely 1016.19
presentiment
feeling 93.1
premonition 133.1
forewarning 399.2
hunch 934.3
foreknowledge 961.3
prediction 962.1
present one's case 598.19
preserve
n sweets 10.40
reserve 397.7
refuge 1009.1
v reserve 386.12
conserve 397.8
cure 397.9
retain 474.5
perpetuate 829.5
be conservative 853.6
sustain 856.4
care for 1008.19
preserve one's honor 136.7
preset 437.5
preside
administer 573.11
entertain 585.8
administer justice 594.5
president principal 571.8
executive 574.3
head of state 575.7
presidential election 609.15
press
n extractor 192.9
squeezing 260.2
urge 375.6
presswork 548.9
printing office 548.11
publisher 554.2
enlistment 615.7
throng 770.4
thrust 902.2
urgency 997.4
v squeeze 260.8
hot-press 287.6
weigh on 297.11
urge 375.14
hasten 401.4
insist 421.8
bring pressure to bear upon 424.6
urge upon 439.9
importune 440.12
attach 480.20
embrace 562.18
enlist 615.17
strain 725.10
thrust 902.12
densify 1045.9
the press
informant 551.5
news 552.1
journalism 555.3
press charges 599.7
press conference
conference 541.6
interview 938.11
press corps 555.4
press into service 387.14
pressman
printer 548.12
journalist 555.4
press one's luck
risk 972.12
take chances 1006.7
press release
release 352.3
message 552.4
pressroom 548.11
press the panic button 127.11
pressure
n touching 73.2
tension 128.3
squeezing 260.2
burden 297.7
urging 375.5
urge 375.6
prestige 417.4
insistence 421.4
coercion 424.3
importunity 440.3
influence 894.1
thrust 902.2
urgent need 963.4
urgency 997.4
adversity 1011.1
v urge 375.14
coerce 424.8
importune 440.12
pressure group
interest group 609.31
party 617.4
influence 894.6
pressure suit
blackout 184.21
space suit 1075.11
pressurize 260.8
presswork 548.9
prestidigitation
juggling 356.5
illusoriness 976.2
prestige
respect 155.1
superiority 249.1
authority 417.4
class 607.1
honor 662.4
influence 894.1
notability 997.2
presto
n music 708.25
tempo 709.24
adj music 708.55
instantaneous 830.4
presto chango 852.13
interj attention! 983.22
presume
hope 124.7
expect 130.5
have the audacity 142.7
imply 519.4
assume 640.6
entail 772.4
judge 946.8
prejudge 947.2
suppose 951.10
think 953.11
think likely 968.5
presume upon
exploit 387.16
impose on 640.7
inflict on 643.7
presumption
hope 124.1
presumptuousness 141.2
insolence 142.1
meddling 214.2
foolhardiness 493.3
implication 519.2
assumption 640.2
entailment 772.2
prejudgment 947.1
supposition 951.3
opinion 953.6
probability 968.1
presumptuous
arrogant 141.10
insolent 142.9
meddlesome 214.9
foolhardy 493.9
presuming 640.11
presuppose
imply 519.4
entail 772.4
prejudge 947.2
suppose 951.10
pre-teens 301.2
pretend sham 354.21
pretext 376.3
affect 500.12
presume 640.6
pretender
impostor 357.6
phony 500.7
usurper 640.4
pretentious
artificial 500.15
ostentatious 501.18
inflated 502.12
affected 533.9
grandiloquent 545.8
pretext
n sham 354.3
loophole 369.4
pretense 376.1
reason 886.2
v make a pretext of 376.3
pretreat 405.6
pretty
adj beautiful 1016.18
adv to a degree 245.7
very 247.18
tolerably 999.24
a pretty penny 632.3
pretzel 10.30
prevail excel 249.6
succeed 409.7
triumph 411.3
dominate 612.15
exist 761.8
persist 781.3
endure 827.6
predominate 864.10
prevailing sentiment 953.6
prevailing taste 578.1
prevailing wind 318.10
prevail upon 375.23
prevalent
customary 373.13
fashionable 578.11
governing 612.18
existent 761.13
happening 831.9
frequent 847.4
prevailing 864.12
plentiful 991.7
prevaricate
equivocate 344.7
lie 354.19
quibble 936.9
prevent prohibit 444.3
anticipate 845.6
hinder 1012.14
preventative
n prophylactic 86.20
counteractant 900.3
adj preventive 1012.19
preventive measure 1008.3
preventive medicine 90.13
prevention
avoidance 368.1
prohibition 444.1
stop 1012.2
preview
n look 27.3
motion pictures 706.1
foresight 961.1
v dramatize 704.28
previous prior 834.4
former 837.10
premature 845.8
earlier 845.10
prewar 834.5
prewarn 399.6
prey sufferer 96.11
desire 100.11
sweetheart 104.10
objective 380.2
quarry 382.7
price
n penalty 603.1
interest 623.3
recompense 624.3
charge 630.1
cost 630.1
quotation 738.9
gambling odds 759.6
v set a price 630.11
price-fixing 630.5
priceless
humorous 488.5

  precious 632.10
price supports
  policy 609.4
  price controls 630.5
prick
  n pang 26.2
  point 285.3
  goad 375.8
  mark 517.5
  bad person 660.5
  v hurt 26.7
  tingle 74.5
  pain 96.17
  come to a point 285.6
  perforate 292.15
  goad 375.15
  mark 517.19
  drive 1070.8
prickle
  n tingle 74.1
  point 285.3
  thorn 285.5
  adhesive 803.4
  v tingle 74.5
prickly
  sensitive 24.12
  tingly 74.8
  excitable 105.28
  touchy 110.21
  pricky 285.10
prick up the ears
  listen 48.10
  hearken to 983.7
pride self-esteem 136.1
  proudness 136.1
  vanity 140.2
  arrogance 141.1
  pomp 501.6
  group of animals 770.5
  confidence 970.5
  good thing 999.5
priest celibate 565.2
  holy orders 699.4
  parish priest 699.5
  teacher 699.10
  clergy 699.11
priesthood
  the ministry 698.1
  clericalism 698.3
  clergy 699.1
prig snob 141.7
  prude 500.11
prim prudish 500.19
  stiff 580.9
prima ballerina 707.6
primacy
  supremacy 249.3
  dominance 417.6
  importance 997.1
  superexcellence 999.2
prima donna
  lead 707.6
  singer 710.13
  chief 997.10
prima facie
  at sight 27.22
  apparently 33.12
primal
  n first 818.3
  adj basic 199.8
  chief 249.14
  unimitated 337.6
  natural 416.6
  innate 767.8
  essential 767.9
  simple 798.6
  beginning 818.15
  original 886.14
primary
  n color system 35.7
  election 609.15
  first 818.3
  adj basic 199.8
  front 216.10
  chief 249.14
  unimitated 337.6
  essential 767.9
  simple 798.6
  beginning 818.15
  original 886.14
  paramount 997.24
primary election 609.15
primary school 567.3
primate
  wild animal 311.23
  ancient 842.7
prime
  n maturity 303.2
  spring 313.2
  dawn 314.3
  divine service 696.8
  first 818.3
  the best 999.8
  v color 35.14
  coat 295.24
  load 405.9
  tutor 568.11
  shoot 904.12
  adj front 216.10
  chief 249.14
  unimitated 337.6
  simple 798.6
  beginning 818.15
  previous 834.4
  primitive 842.11
  paramount 997.24
  best 999.16
  numeric 1017.23
prime interest rate 623.3
prime meridian 231.3
prime minister 575.7
prime of life 303.4
primer color 35.8
  fuse 462.15
  textbook 554.10
  elementary education 568.5
  basics 818.6
prime time 1035.2
primeval
  beginning 818.15
  former 837.10
  primitive 842.11
  original 886.14
primitive
  n native 227.3
  simple soul 416.3
  root 526.2
  ancient 842.7
  adj basic 199.8
  native 226.5
  unimitated 337.6
  natural 416.6
  unrefined 497.12
  essential 767.9
  simple 798.6
  beginning 818.15
  former 837.10
  primordial 842.11
  original 886.14
primordial 842.11
primp dress up 5.42
  ornament 498.8
primrose pink 41.8
  yellow 43.4
prince potentate 575.8
  nobleman 608.7
  good person 659.1
Prince Charming 104.13
princess
  sovereign queen 575.11
  noblewoman 608.8
principal
  n superior 249.4
  headmaster 571.8
  chief 575.3
  lead 707.6
  capital 728.15
  most important person 997.10
  adj chief 249.14
  first 818.17
  paramount 997.24
principality
  region 231.5
  country 232.1
  dominance 417.6
  mastership 417.7
  angel 679.1
principle motive 375.1
  rule 419.2
  essence 767.2
  law 869.4
  cause 886.1
  commitment 886.9
  foundation 901.6
  a belief 953.2
  axiom 974.2
print
  n indentation 284.6
  mark 517.7
  imprint 548.3
  type 548.6
  picture 712.11
  numbered print 713.5
  photoprint 714.5
  offprint 785.5
  copy 785.5
  impact 887.2
  v represent 349.8
  mark 517.19
  imprint 548.14
  engrave 713.9
  process 714.15
  fix 855.9
printed written 547.22
  in print 548.19
  engraved 713.11
printer typist 547.18
  printworker 548.12
  publisher 554.2
  output device 1042.9
printing press 548.9
printmaking
  printing 548.1
  graphic arts 713.1
the print media 555.3
print run 554.5
print shop 548.11
prior
  n religious 699.16
  adj leading 165.3
  preceding 814.4
  previous 834.4
  former 837.10
priority leading 165.1
  front 216.1
  superiority 249.1
  prestige 417.4
  precedence 814.1
  sequence 815.1
  previousness 834.1
  importance 997.1
prism 29.2
prismatic
  chromatic 35.16
  variegated 47.9
  multilateral 278.11
prison 429.8
prisoner captive 429.11
  accused 599.6
prisoner of war 429.11
prissy effeminate 77.15
  meticulous 339.12
  fastidious 495.9
  prudish 500.19
  stiff 580.9
pristine
  unimitated 337.6
  unused 390.12
  natural 406.13
  unadorned 416.6
  innocent 657.6
  intact 792.10
  simple 798.6
  new 841.7
  primitive 842.11
  original 886.14
  undamaged 1002.8
privacy
  retirement 345.2
  seclusion 584.1
  aloneness 872.2
  retreat 1009.5
private
  n enlisted man 461.8
  adj interior 207.6
  closed 293.9
  personal 312.15
  privy 345.13
  taking 480.25
  privatistic 584.9
  intrinsic 767.7
  particular 865.12
  alone 872.8
private detective 576.10
private enterprise 611.8
private practice 90.13
private sector
  capitalism 611.8
  economy 731.7
privation loss 473.1
  deprivation 480.6
  indigence 619.2
privatization 584.1
privatize 611.16

privilege
n superiority 249.1
exemption 430.8
license 642.2
v authorize 443.11
privileged information
secret 345.5
inside information 551.2
privy
n latrine 12.10
hut 228.9
adj covert 345.12
private 345.13
privy council
council 423.1
cabinet 613.3
prix fixe 630.5
prize
n desire 100.11
booty 482.11
monument 549.12
award 646.2
leverage 906.1
lever 906.4
good thing 999.5
the best 999.8
v cherish 104.21
respect 155.4
measure 300.10
price 630.11
get a purchase 906.8
estimate 946.9
value 997.13
adj best 999.16
prized 104.24
prizefight 457.9
prizewinner 413.15
PR man 352.9
pro
n expert 413.11
professional 726.4
gambler 759.21
affirmative 935.14
adj approving 509.17
occupational 724.16
prep in favor of 509.21
proactive
energetic 17.13
enterprising 330.23
pro and con 935.19
probability
expectation 130.1
the future 839.1
tendency 896.1
liability 897.1
prediction 962.1
possibility 966.1
likelihood 968.1
chance 972.1
good chance 972.8
probable error
mathematical probability 968.2
inaccuracy 975.2
probate
n bequest 478.10
v confirm 957.11
probation 942.2
probe
n nurse 90.10
investigation 938.4
search 938.15
feeler 942.4
test rocket 1074.6
artificial satellite 1075.6
v measure 300.10
investigate 938.23
sound out 942.9
philosophize 952.9
probity honesty 644.1
virtue 653.1
problem
annoyance 96.2
enigma 522.8
topic 937.1
question 938.10
bewilderment 971.3
fault 1003.2
trouble 1013.3
problematic
unbelievable 955.10
doubtful 971.17
bewildering 971.27
proboscis 283.8
procedure
behavior 321.1
rule 373.4
plan 381.1
policy 381.4
manner 384.1
process 889.2
proceed
progress 162.2
behave 321.4
act 328.4
take action 328.5
use 384.5
elapse 821.5
proceed from 887.5
proceedings
activity 330.1
report 549.7
lawsuit 598.1
affairs 831.4
proceeds gain 472.3
yield 472.5
receipts 627.1
production 893.2
process
n manner 384.1
procedure 889.2
v cut or dress the hair 3.22
prepare 405.6
develop 714.15
convert 892.9
gather materials 1054.7
processed
prepared 405.16
made 892.18
procession train 812.3
sequence 815.1
processor 1042.2
proclaim
herald 133.14
affirm 334.5
cry 352.13
command 420.8
state 524.23
be prior 834.3
dogmatize 970.10
proclamation
affirmation 334.1
announcement 352.2
decree 420.4
proclivity
inclination 100.3
preference 371.5
tendency 896.1
disposition 978.3
proconsul 575.13
procrastinate
let go 329.5
leave undone 340.7
not face up to 368.13
protract 827.9
be dilatory 846.11
procrastinator
slowpoke 175.5
neglecter 340.5
procreate grow 14.2
generate 78.8
develop 259.7
engender 818.14
originate 892.12
proctor
teaching fellow 571.4
superintendent 574.2
steward 574.4
lawyer 597.1
procure fetch 176.16
elicit 192.14
induce 375.22
acquire 472.8
prostitute oneself 665.21
purchase 733.7
cause 886.11
procurement
provision 385.1
acquisition 472.1
prod
n goad 375.8
thrust 902.2
v touch 73.6
goad 375.15
importune 440.12
thrust 902.12
prodigal
n wastrel 486.2
adj exaggerated 355.4
improvident 406.15
extravagant 486.8
diffuse 538.11
unvirtuous 654.12
intemperate 669.7
teeming 884.9
plentiful 991.7
superabundant 993.19
prodigal son
penitent 113.5
prodigal 486.2
returnee 859.3
prodigious
wonderful 122.10
large 247.7
huge 257.20
extraordinary 870.14
miraculous 870.16
produce
n vegetables 10.35
fruit 10.38
yield 472.5
receipts 627.1
groceries 735.7
production 893.2
v secrete 13.5
lengthen 267.6
do 328.6
manifest 348.5
accomplish 407.4
write 547.21
dramatize 704.28
pen 718.6
cause 886.10
be productive 890.7
create 892.8
bear 892.13
adduce 957.12
imagine 986.14
product yield 472.5
commodity 735.2
effect 887.1
end product 893.1
sum 1017.6
productivity
power 18.1
wordiness 538.2
productiveness 890.1
invention 986.3
product liability 641.2
profane
v misuse 389.4
desecrate 694.4
adj cursing 513.8
unsacred 686.3
impious 694.6
secularist 695.16
profanity cursing 513.3
unsanctity 686.1
sacrilege 694.2
profess affirm 334.5
sham 354.21
pretext 376.3
state 953.12
profession
acknowledgment 332.3
affirmation 334.1
claim 376.2
occupation 724.4
vocation 724.6
confession 953.7
testimony 957.2
professional
n expert 413.11
member of a learned profession 726.4
adj skillful 413.22
skilled 413.26
scholastic 568.19
occupational 724.16
professional ethics 636.1
professor expert 413.11
teacher 571.1
academic rank 571.3
gambler 759.21
proffer
n offer 439.1
v offer 439.4
give 478.12
answer 939.4
adduce 957.12
proficient
n expert 413.11
adj fitted 405.17
skillful 413.22

RS
TZ

  - perfected 1002.9
  - able 18.14
- **profile**
  - *n* outline 211.2
  - side 218.1
  - contour 262.2
  - description 349.2
  - diagram 381.3
  - portrait 712.15
  - history 719.1
  - *v* outline 211.9
- **profit**
  - *n* incentive 375.7
  - benefit 387.4
  - gain 472.3
  - expedience 995.1
  - good 999.4
  - *v* avail 387.17
  - make profit 472.12
  - expedite one's affair 995.3
  - do good 999.10
- **profitable** useful 387.18
  - valuable 387.22
  - helpful 449.21
  - gainful 472.16
  - paying 624.21
  - expedient 995.5
  - good 999.12
- **profit sharing** 476.2
- **profit-sharing** 476.9
- **profligate**
  - *n* reprobate 660.4
  - libertine 665.10
  - *adj* prodigal 486.8
  - corrupt 654.14
  - licentious 665.25
- **pro forma** 580.11
- **profound**
  - deep-felt 93.24
  - downright 247.12
  - huge 257.20
  - deep 275.10
  - recondite 522.16
  - wise 920.17
  - learned 928.21
- **profound thought**
  - thoughtfulness 931.3
  - engrossment 983.3
- **profuse**
  - exaggerated 355.4
  - liberal 485.4
  - prodigal 486.8
  - diffuse 538.11
  - teeming 884.9
  - plentiful 991.7
- **progenitor** 560.8
- **progeny** family 559.5
  - offspring 561.1
- **prognosis**
  - prognostication 91.13
  - verdict 946.5
  - prediction 962.1
- **prognosticate**
  - hope 124.7
  - predict 962.9
  - risk 972.12
- **program**
  - *n* exercise 84.2
  - announcement 352.2
  - plan 381.1
  - undertaking 404.1
  - government plan 609.6
  - platform 609.7
  - performance 708.33
  - track meet 755.2
  - roll 871.6
  - schedule 965.3
  - software 1042.11
  - rocketry 1074.1
  - *v* plan 381.8
  - inculcate 568.12
  - list 871.8
  - schedule 965.6
  - automate 1041.20
  - computerize 1042.21
- **programming language** 1042.13
- **progress**
  - *n* progression 162.1
  - course 172.2
  - travel 177.1
  - journey 177.5
  - way 182.9
  - improvement 392.1
  - continuance 856.1
  - conversion 858.1
  - evolution 861.1
  - *v* advance 162.2
  - move 172.5
  - travel 177.18
  - improve 392.7
  - make good 409.10
  - evolve 861.5
  - prosper 1010.7
- **progressive**
  - *n* left side 220.1
  - reformer 392.6
  - liberal 611.11
  - *adj* progressing 162.6
  - flowing 172.8
  - left 220.4
  - gradual 245.5
  - improving 392.15
  - emendatory 392.16
  - liberal 611.19
  - consecutive 812.9
  - modern 841.13
- **prohibit**
  - restrain 428.7
  - forbid 444.3
  - exclude 773.4
  - make impossible 967.6
  - prevent 1012.14
- **prohibition**
  - restraint 428.1
  - ban 444.1
  - forbidding 444.1
  - prohibitionism 668.3
  - exclusion 773.1
  - prevention 1012.2
- **prohibitive**
  - prohibitory 444.6
  - overpriced 632.12
  - exclusive 773.9
  - preventive 1012.19
- **project**
  - *n* intention 380.1
  - projection 381.2
  - undertaking 404.1
  - task 724.2
  - the future 839.1
  - *v* overhang 202.7
  - externalize 206.5
  - protrude 283.10
  - be manifest 348.7
  - image 349.11
  - intend 380.4
  - plan 381.8
  - show on screen 714.16
  - lie ahead 839.6
  - jaculate 904.11
  - launch 1074.13
- **projectile**
  - *n* missile 462.18
  - ejecta 904.5
  - *adj* trajectile 904.15
- **projector** planner 381.6
  - launcher 462.21
  - motion-picture projector 714.12
  - rocket launcher 1074.10
- **proletarian**
  - *n* common man 606.5
  - blue-collar worker 607.9
  - worker 726.2
  - *adj* working-class 607.10
- **proliferate**
  - procreate 78.8
  - grow 251.6
  - multiply 883.6
  - produce 890.7
  - abound 991.5
- **prolific** diffuse 538.11
  - teeming 884.9
  - productive 890.9
  - imaginative 986.18
- **prolix** tedious 118.9
  - lengthened 267.8
  - wordy 538.12
  - talkative 540.9
  - protracted 827.11
  - superfluous 993.17
- **prologue** act 704.7
  - part of writing 793.2
  - curtain-raiser 816.2
- **prolong** lengthen 267.6
  - protract 827.9
  - postpone 846.9
  - sustain 856.4
- **prom** dance 705.2
  - performance 708.33
  - assembly 770.2
- **PROM** 1042.7
- **promenade**
  - *n* walk 177.10
  - path 383.2
  - dance 705.2
  - procession 812.3
  - *v* go for a walk 177.29
  - file 812.7
- **prominence**
  - distinctness 31.2
  - glory 247.2
  - height 272.1
  - protuberance 283.2
  - conspicuousness 348.4
  - prestige 417.4
  - distinction 662.5
  - notability 997.2
- **prominent**
  - distinct 31.7
  - eminent 247.9
  - high 272.14
  - protruding 283.14
  - conspicuous 348.12
  - authoritative 417.15
  - outstanding 662.17
  - notable 997.19
- **promiscuous**
  - slipshod 340.12
  - wanton 665.26
  - mixed 797.14
  - unordered 810.12
  - undiscriminating 945.5
  - purposeless 972.16
- **promise**
  - *n* hope 124.1
  - omen 133.3
  - commitment 436.2
  - pledge 436.1
  - compact 437.1
  - prediction 962.1
  - *v* give hope 124.10
  - suggest 133.13
  - observe 434.2
  - make a promise 436.4
  - contract 437.5
  - be probable 968.4
- **the Promised Land** 986.11
- **promising**
  - of promise 124.13
  - auspicious 133.18
  - probable 968.6
- **promissory note** 728.11
- **promo**
  - promotion 352.5
  - commendation 509.3
- **promontory** 283.9
- **promote**
  - advance 162.5
  - publicize 352.15
  - motivate 375.12
  - be instrumental 384.7
  - improve 392.9
  - upgrade 446.2
  - be useful 449.17
  - commend 509.11
  - expedite one's affair 995.3
- **promoter**
  - publicist 352.9
  - planner 381.6
  - commender 509.8
  - supporter 616.9
- **prompt**
  - *n* hint 551.4
  - reminder 989.6
  - *v* provoke 375.13
  - induce 375.22
  - admonish 422.6
  - hint 551.10
  - influence 894.7
  - remind 989.20
  - *adj* eager 101.8
  - fast 174.15
  - willing 324.5
  - quick 330.18
  - alert 339.14
  - hasty 401.9
  - consenting 441.4
  - punctual 845.9
- **promulgate**
  - publish 352.10
  - proclaim 352.13
  - command 420.8

execute 437.9
pronate 205.5
prone
v lie down 913.11
adj recumbent 201.8
low 274.7
willing 324.5
deferential 433.16
liable 897.5
disposed 978.8
prong fork 171.4
tributary 238.3
pronoun 530.5
pronounce affirm 334.5
announce 352.12
command 420.8
say 524.22
pass judgment 946.13
pronounced
distinct 31.7
downright 247.12
affirmed 334.9
conspicuous 348.12
speech 524.29
pronounce sentence
bring in a verdict 598.20
condemn 602.3
pronto
in short order 174.19
at once 830.8
promptly 845.15
pronunciation 524.5
proof
n manifestation 348.1
proof sheet 548.5
information 551.1
artist's proof 713.7
print 785.5
reasoning 935.1
test 942.2
grounds for belief 957.1
evidence 957.1
demonstration 957.3
confirmation 957.4
v insulate 15.14
print 548.14
adj resistant 15.20
proofread 548.17
proofreader
reader 548.13
examiner 938.17
prop
n theater 704.17
motion-picture studio 706.4
supporter 901.2
propeller 904.6
v strengthen 15.13
aid 449.12
support 901.21
propaganda 569.2
propagate
procreate 78.8
publish 352.10
disperse 771.4
propel
set in motion 172.6
motivate 375.12
impel 902.11
push 904.9
propellant
n propeller 904.6
fuel 1021.1
rocket propulsion 1074.8
adj moving 172.7
propulsive 904.14
propeller 904.6
propensity
inclination 100.3
aptitude 413.5
tendency 896.1
disposition 978.3
proper
downright 247.12
useful 387.18
fastidious 495.9
decorous 496.10
appropriate 533.7
conventional 579.5
right 637.3
rightful 639.8
just 649.8
decent 664.5
orthodox 687.7
characteristic 865.13
accurate 973.16
expedient 995.5
proper fraction 1017.7
proper noun
name 527.3
noun 530.5
property supply 386.2
legal claim 469.1
possessions 471.1
real estate 471.6
sign 517.1
wealth 618.1
theater 704.17
nature 767.4
characteristic 865.4
property rights
possession 469.1
ownership 469.2
prophecy
revelation 683.10
the future 839.1
prediction 962.1
prophesy come 839.6
predict 962.9
prophet
religious founder 684.1
predictor 962.4
visionary 986.13
prophet of doom
pessimist 125.7
warner 399.4
predictor 962.4
prophylactic
n preventive 86.20
contraceptive 86.23
counteractant 900.3
safeguard 1008.3
adj sanitary 79.27
preventive 86.42
precautionary 494.10
protective 1008.23
deterrent 1012.19
propitiate pacify 465.7
atone 658.4
appease the gods 696.15
propitious
promising 124.13
auspicious 133.18
favorable 449.22
timely 843.9
proponent 600.8
proportion
n space 158.1
degree 245.1
size 257.1
symmetry 264.1
portion 477.5
harmony 533.2
equality 790.1
order 807.1
comparison 943.1
comparability 943.3
notation 1017.2
ratio 1017.7
v size 257.15
symmetrize 264.3
proportionate 477.7
make agree 788.7
equalize 790.6
proportional
spatial 158.10
proportionate 477.13
approximate 775.8
proposal
nomination 371.8
intention 380.1
project 381.2
advice 422.1
proposition 439.2
marriage proposal 562.8
theory 951.2
proposition
n affirmation 334.1
project 381.2
undertaking 404.1
proposal 439.2
premise 935.7
theory 951.2
supposition 951.3
axiom 974.2
v make advances 439.8
proprietary
n medicine 86.4
ownership 469.2
proprietor 470.2
adj possessive 469.10
propertied 471.8
proprietor
householder 227.7
proprietary 470.2
propriety
fastidiousness 495.1
decorousness 496.3
elegance 533.1
social convention 579.1
decorum 637.2
justice 649.1
decency 664.2
fitness 788.5
timeliness 843.1
normality 869.1
expedience 995.1
propter hoc 888.7
propulsion
manpower 18.4
impulse 902.1
pushing 904.1
pro rata
proportionate 477.13
proportionately 477.14
priced 630.14
prorate
proportion 477.7
charge 630.12
prosaic prose 117.8
simple 499.6
plain-speaking 535.3
prosy 721.5
occupied 724.15
unimaginative 987.5
proscenium front 216.1
stage 704.16
proscribe
restrain 428.7
prohibit 444.3
ostracize 586.6
condemn 602.3
exclude 773.4
banish 909.17
prose
n prosaicness 117.2
prose style 721.1
platitude 974.3
v platitudinize 117.5
write prose 721.3
adj prosaic 117.8
in prose 721.4
prosecute
practice 328.8
pursue 382.8
execute 437.9
sue 598.13
prosecutor 599.5
proselytize 858.16
prospect
n look 27.3
field of view 31.3
view 33.6
hope 124.1
expectation 130.1
dueness 639.1
customer 733.4
the future 839.1
foresight 961.1
possibility 966.1
probability 968.1
v mine 1058.14
prospective
expected 130.13
future 839.8
prospector 1058.9
prospectus
intention 380.1
project 381.2
prediction 962.1
schedule 965.3
prosper succeed 409.7
enjoy prosperity 1010.7
prosperity
success 409.1
wealth 618.1
business cycle 731.10
prosperousness 1010.1
good times 1010.4
Prospero 976.2
prosperous
auspicious 133.18
successful 409.14
wealthy 618.14

in good case 1010.12
prosperous issue 409.1
prostitute
n harlot 665.16
v misuse 389.4
corrupt 393.12
adj prostituted 665.28
prostrate
v disable 19.10
fatigue 21.4
aggrieve 112.19
unnerve 128.10
raze 395.19
conquer 412.10
fell 913.5
lie down 913.11
adj disabled 19.16
burnt-out 21.10
laid up 85.59
disconsolate 112.28
overcome 112.29
unnerved 128.14
obsequious 138.14
obeisant 155.10
recumbent 201.8
low 274.7
conquered 412.17
deferential 433.16
depressed 913.12
protagonist
supporter 616.9
role 704.10
lead 707.6
protean
multiform 783.3
changeable 854.6
protect preserve 397.8
aid 449.11
defend 460.8
play safe 1007.3
guard 1008.18
protection
bribe 378.2
preservation 397.1
restraint 428.1
custody 429.5
pass 443.7
aid 449.1
defense 460.1
precaution 494.3
policy 609.4
safety 1007.1
safeguarding 1008.1
guard 1008.1
protectionist 428.6
protector
defender 460.7
regent 575.12
keeper 1008.5
protégé 432.6
protein 7.6
pro tem 828.9
proteolytic 806.6
protest
n complaint 115.4
demur 325.2
objection 333.2
affirmation 334.1
resistance 453.1
disapproval 510.1
nonpayment 625.1
nonconformity 868.1
v object 333.5
affirm 334.5
oppose 451.3
offer resistance 453.3
disapprove 510.10
not pay 625.6
not conform 868.4
Protestant
n non-Catholic 675.20
adj religious 675.28
protocol
treatment 91.14
rule 419.2
compact 437.1
etiquette 580.3
fact 761.3
knowledge 928.1
schedule 965.3
proton atom 258.8
elementary particle 1038.6
protoplasm 305.4
prototype form 262.1
original 337.2
model 786.1
philosophy 932.2
standard of perfection 1002.4
protozoan
microbic 258.15
invertebrate 311.51
protract lengthen 267.6
extend 538.8
prolong 827.9
postpone 846.9
sustain 856.4
protractor 278.4
protrude
emerge 190.11
protuberate 283.10
proud prideful 136.8
vain 140.9
arrogant 141.9
grandiose 501.21
confident 970.21
provable real 761.15
demonstrable 957.19
obvious 970.15
prove print 548.14
result 887.4
experiment 942.8
demonstrate 957.10
confirm 957.11
verify 970.12
check 1017.21
proven
trustworthy 644.19
proved 957.20
true 973.13
provender
n food 10.1
feed 10.4
provisions 10.5
supplies 385.2
v provision 385.9
proverb
n maxim 974.1
v aphorize 974.5
provide supply 385.7
prepare 405.6
furnish 478.15
provide against
prepare for 405.11
take precautions 494.6
provided
adj supplied 385.13
prepared 405.16
adv circumstantially 766.12
conj in the event that 831.13
provided that 959.12
provide for
provide 385.7
prepare for 405.11
furnish 478.15
take precautions 494.6
finance 729.16
allow for 959.5
care for 1008.19
providence
precaution 494.3
thrift 635.1
divine function 677.13
sagacity 920.4
judiciousness 920.7
foresight 961.1
Providence 964.3
provider 385.6
province sphere 231.2
region 231.5
country 232.1
the country 233.1
duty 641.1
diocese 698.8
function 724.3
occupation 724.4
science 928.10
provincial
n governor 575.13
peasant 606.6
adj local 231.9
rustic 233.6
idiomatic 523.22
narrow-minded 980.10
proving ground
laboratory 942.5
testing ground 1074.7
provision
n food 10.1
groceries 10.5
providing 385.1
supplies 385.2
store 386.1
preparation 405.1
stipulation 421.2
support 449.3
giving 478.1
precaution 494.3
substitution 862.1
condition 959.2
foresight 961.1
expedient 995.2
v feed 8.18
provender 385.9
provisional government 612.4
proviso
stipulation 421.2
bill 613.9
condition 959.2
provocateur 375.11
provocative
appetizing 63.10
desirable 100.30
exciting 105.30
aggravating 119.5
provoking 375.27
alluring 377.8
hostile 589.10
interesting 983.19
provoke annoy 96.13
irritate 96.14
vex 98.15
stimulate 105.13
aggravate 119.2
be insolent 142.8
incense 152.24
prompt 375.13
incite 375.17
sow dissension 456.14
antagonize 589.7
induce 886.11
interest 983.12
provost principal 571.8
executive 574.3
prow 216.3
prowess skill 413.1
courage 492.1
prowl
n stealth 345.4
v wander 177.23
creep 177.26
lurk 346.9
prowler 483.1
proximate
n person 530.7
v approach 167.3
adj approaching 167.4
near 223.14
approximate 775.8
succeeding 815.4
proximity
nearness 223.1
relation 775.1
proxy
n vote 371.6
deputy 576.1
ballot 609.19
voter 609.23
commission 615.1
substitute 862.2
adj substitute 862.8
prude 500.11
prudent
vigilant 339.13
cautious 494.8
economical 635.6
moderate 670.10
judicious 920.19
foreseeing 961.7
prune excise 255.10
shorten 268.6
sever 802.11
cultivate 1069.17
prune-faced
sour 110.23
aged 303.16
prurient lustful 75.27
craving 100.24
lascivious 665.29
curious 981.5
pruritus itch 74.3
symptom 85.9
twitching 917.5

pry
n meddler 214.4
leverage 906.1
lever 906.4
inquisitive person 981.2
v look 27.13
meddle 214.7
get a purchase 906.8
search 938.31
snoop 981.4
pry loose from 480.22
pry open 292.14
pry out extract 192.10
elicit 192.14
get a purchase 906.8
grill 938.22
search out 938.34
uncover 941.4
PS 817.1
psalm
n paean 696.3
sacred music 708.17
v sing 708.38
the Psalms 701.11
pseudo
imitation 336.8
spurious 354.26
pseudonym 527.8
psyche
psychic apparatus 92.28
spirit 919.4
psychedelic
n psychoactive drug 86.13
drug of abuse 87.3
adj psychochemical 86.46
hallucinatory 976.10
psyched up 405.16
psychiatric
psychological 92.37
psychotherapeutic 92.38
psychiatric hospital 926.14
psychiatrist
psychologist 92.10
psychiatry 926.19
psychic
n spiritualist 689.13
predictor 962.4
adj occult 689.24
supernatural 870.15
mental 919.7
spectral 988.7
immaterial 1053.7
psychic energy 92.28
psychic phenomena 689.6
psychic research 1053.1
psycho
n lunatic 926.16
psychotic 926.17
adj crazy 926.27
psychoactive drug
hallucinogen 86.13
drug of abuse 87.3
psychoanalysis 92.6
psychoanalyst 92.10
psychoanalyze 92.36
psychobabble
psychology 92.1
jargon 523.10
psychochemical
n drug 87.3
adj psychoactive 86.46
psychogenic 92.37
psychokinesis 689.6
psychological
psychiatric 92.37
mental 919.7
psychological dependence 87.1
psychological warfare 127.6
psychologist 92.10
psychology
science of the mind 92.1
anthropology 312.10
attitude 978.1
psychopathic
psychological 92.37
psychotic 926.28
psychopathological 92.37
psychophysical 92.37
psychosexual 92.37
psychosis
mental disorder 92.14
psychopathy 926.3
psychosocial 92.37
psychosomatic 92.37
psychotherapeutic 92.38
psychotherapy
therapy 91.1
science of the mind 92.1
psychotherapeutics 92.5
psychotic
n insane 926.17
adj psychological 92.37
psychopathic 926.28
psych out
unnerve 128.10
solve 940.2
ptomaine poisoning 85.31
pub
restaurant 8.17
bar 88.20
puberty
bodily development 14.1
adolescence 301.6
pubescence hair 3.2
bodily development 14.1
smoothness 294.3
adolescence 301.6
pubic hair genitals 2.13
hair 3.2
public
n bar 88.20
follower 166.2
population 227.1
market 733.3
adj exterior 206.7
general 312.16
published 352.17
communal 476.9
common 497.14
populational 606.8
well-known 928.27
public acclaim 662.1
public address 543.2
public assistance
subsidy 478.8
welfarism 611.7
publication
informing 343.2
manifestation 348.1
dissemination 352.1
publishing 352.1
printing 548.1
information 551.1
book 554.1
dispersion 771.1
public baths 79.10
public domain 469.2
public enemy
enemy 589.6
evildoer 593.1
criminal 660.9
public figure 662.9
publicist
publicizer 352.9
journalist 555.4
commentator 556.4
publicity
publicness 352.4
information 551.1
repute 662.1
public library 558.1
public nuisance
annoyance 96.2
tormentor 96.10
public official
official 575.16
officeholder 610.11
public opinion
political influence 609.29
opinion 953.6
public-opinion poll 938.14
public ownership
communion 476.2
socialism 611.6
public policy 609.4
public radio 1034.16
public records 549.2
public relations 352.4
public safety 1008.1
public school 567.4
public sector 731.7
public servant
official 575.16
officeholder 610.11
public telephone 347.4
public welfare
welfare 143.5
subsidy 478.8
publish divulge 351.5
promulgate 352.10
print 548.14
codify 673.10
disperse 771.4
publisher
informant 551.5
book publisher 554.2
publishing house
press 548.11
publisher 554.2
puce 41.6
pucker
n dither 105.6
anxiety 126.1
wrinkle 291.3
confusion 985.3
v contract 260.7
wrinkle 291.6
pudding food 10.46
softness 1047.4
semiliquid 1062.5
pulp 1063.2
puddle lake 241.1
mud puddle 1062.9
pudgy corpulent 257.18
stubby 268.10
puerile childish 301.11
immature 406.11
simple-minded 922.24
puff
n breathing 2.21
pastry 10.41
smoking 89.10
distension 259.2
puff of air 318.4
foam 320.2
publicity 352.4
commendation 509.3
makeup 1016.12
softness 1047.4
v burn out 21.5
use 87.22
smoke 89.14
enlarge 259.4
blow 318.20
publicize 352.15
exaggerate 355.3
boast 502.6
commend 509.11
praise 509.12
let out 909.24
puffy corpulent 257.18
distended 259.13
windy 318.22
pug
n foot 199.5
fighter 461.2
print 517.7
boxer 754.2
adj stubby 268.10
pugilist fighter 461.2
boxer 754.2
pugnacious
partisan 456.17
warlike 458.21
puissant strong 15.15
powerful 18.12
authoritative 417.15
puke
n vomiting 909.8
v feel disgust 99.4
vomit 909.27
pulchritude 1016.1
pule cry 60.2
whine 115.14
Pulitzer Prize 646.2
pull
n drink 8.4
power 18.1
swig 88.7
proof 548.5
strain 725.2
favor 894.2
pulling 905.1
draw 905.2
attraction 907.1
v drink 8.29
smoke 89.14
deflect 164.5
row 182.53
extract 192.10
lengthen 267.6
restrain 428.7

print 548.14
strain 725.10
play 751.4
draw 905.4
attract 907.4
pull a boner
bungle 414.12
make a boner 975.15
pull a fast one 415.11
pull ahead 249.10
pull a stunt
deceive 356.19
trick 489.14
pull away recede 168.2
dodge 368.8
separate 802.8
pull back regress 163.5
withdraw 163.6
retract 168.3
demur 325.4
hesitate 362.7
dodge 368.8
separate 802.8
retreat 903.7
pull down raze 395.19
acquire 472.9
receive 479.6
be paid 624.20
depress 913.4
fell 913.5
pullet fledgling 302.10
poultry 311.29
pull for 403.9
pull in
retract 168.3
arrive 186.6
restrain 428.7
arrest 429.16
stop 857.7
reel in 906.9
pull it together
order 807.4
arrange 808.8
Pullman car 197.10
pull off do 328.6
bring about 407.5
achieve one's purpose 409.8
succeed with 409.11
pull one's leg
fool 356.15
trick 489.14
ridicule 508.8
flatter 511.6
pull one's punches
limit 210.5
allow for 959.5
pull one's weight 476.6
pull out retreat 163.6
retract 168.3
maneuver 184.40
depart 188.6
extract 192.10
abandon 370.5
defect 370.6
separate 802.8
pull out all the stops 430.19
pull rank 424.8
pull strings
maneuver 415.10
exercise influence 894.9
pull the plug on 395.11
pull the trigger 459.22
pull the wool over one's eyes 356.17
pull through
cure 396.15
recover 396.20
pull together
plan 381.8
cooperate 450.3
pull up
maneuver 184.40
extract 192.10
arraign 598.15
stop 857.7
put a stop to 857.11
pull up short 131.7
pull up stakes
disappear 34.2
depart 188.7
decamp 188.14
leave 222.10
flee 368.10
pulmonary 2.32
pulp
n semiliquid 1062.5
paste 1063.2
v soften 1047.6
pulpify 1063.5
pulp fiction 722.1
pulpit rostrum 703.13
platform 901.13
pulpy insipid 65.2
spongy 1047.11
semiliquid 1062.11
pulpous 1063.6
pulsar 1072.8
pulsate drum 55.4
recur 850.5
pulse 916.12
pulse
n plant 310.4
beat 709.26
round 850.3
pulsation 916.3
radio-frequency pulse 1036.10
v resonate 54.6
recur 850.5
pulsate 916.12
flutter 917.12
pulverize
demolish 395.17
come apart 802.9
shatter 802.13
pound 902.16
powder 1051.9
puma 311.22
pumice 287.8
pumice stone 79.17
pummel whip 604.13
pound 902.16
pump
n viscera 2.16
extractor 192.9
poker 759.10
machinery 1040.3
v draw off 192.12
enlarge 259.4
process 892.9
alternate 916.14
interrogate 938.21
pumped up
energetic 17.13
prepared 405.16
overestimated 949.3
pumping iron 84.2
pumpkin 42.2
pun
n wordplay 489.8
ambiguity 539.2
assonance 784.6
v joke 489.13
assonate 784.9
punch
n energy 17.3
power 18.1
zest 68.2
drink 88.9
vigor 544.3
engraving tool 713.8
fight 754.3
mold 786.6
thrust 902.2
hit 902.4
boxing punch 902.6
v indent 284.14
perforate 292.15
mark 517.19
fight 754.4
thrust 902.12
hit 902.14
Punch and Judy 707.10
punch bowl
spirits 88.13
cavity 284.2
punching bag 725.7
punch line 489.6
punch out
check out 188.13
ring in 832.12
beat 902.17
punch the clock 832.12
punctual
meticulous 339.12
observant 434.4
conscientious 644.15
prompt 845.9
punctuate mark 517.19
grammaticize 530.16
emphasize 997.14
punctuation
punctuation marks 530.15
written character 547.9
puncture
n trauma 85.38
hole 292.3
mark 517.5
v collapse 260.10
perforate 292.15
injure 393.13
mark 517.19
disprove 958.4
puncture proof
resistant 15.20
impervious 293.13
pundit expert 413.11
teacher 571.1
clergy 699.13
specialist 866.3
intellectual 929.1
scholar 929.3
pungent intense 15.22
painful 26.10
bitter 64.6
sour 67.5
piquant 68.6
strong 69.10
witty 489.15
spirited 544.12
aphoristic 974.6
punish
torture 96.18
penalize 603.4
chastise 604.10
get even with 506.7
punishment
reprisal 506.2
penalty 603.1
disciplinary measure 604.1
punk
n homosexual 75.14
brat 302.4
a nobody 998.7
tinder 1021.6
adj insignificant 998.18
bad 1000.8
inferior 1005.9
punk rock music 708.1
type of music 708.11
punt
n game 746.3
kick 902.9
v row 182.53
compromise 468.2
play 746.5
bet 759.25
puny frail 16.14
little 258.10
haggard 270.20
meager 992.10
petty 998.20
pupa 302.12
pupil eye 2.9
sight organ 27.9
student 572.1
puppet
sycophant 138.3
miniature 258.6
figure 349.6
instrument 384.4
figurehead 575.5
deputy 576.1
agent 576.3
follower 616.8
toy 743.16
thing of naught 764.2
puppet government
country 232.1
dependent 432.6
puppy member 2.7
impudent person 142.5
boy 302.5
fledgling 302.10
dog 311.17
dandy 500.9
puppy love 104.4
purchase
n grasp 474.2
buying 733.1
influence 894.1
footing 901.5
hold 906.2
tackle 906.6

v bribe 378.3
buy 733.7
purchasing agent 733.5
purchasing power
pay 624.4
purchase 733.1
pure clean 79.25
essential 192.18
tasteful 496.8
elegant 533.6
plain-speaking 535.3
honest 644.13
virtuous 653.7
spotless 657.7
chaste 664.4
godly 692.9
thorough 794.10
simple 798.6
genuine 973.15
perfect 1002.6
purebred
upper-class 607.10
wellborn 608.11
purée 1062.5
pure white 37.7
purgatory
torment 96.7
place of confinement 429.7
penance 658.3
hell 682.1
purge
n defecation 12.2
cleansing 79.2
cleanser 79.17
laxative 86.17
release 120.2
homicide 308.2
extinction 395.6
deposal 447.2
elimination 773.2
v clean 79.18
treat 91.24
release 120.6
kill 308.13
murder 308.16
exterminate 395.14
depose 447.4
justify 600.9
acquit 601.4
eliminate 773.5
do away with 909.21
evacuate 909.22
purify clean 79.18
refine 79.22
subtract 255.9
make plain 499.5
sanctify 685.5
simplify 798.4
purist
n obstinate person 361.6
classicist 533.4
pedant 929.5
adj firm 425.7
strict 687.8
puritan
n prude 500.11
ascetic 667.2
adj firm 425.7
Puritan 860.3
purity
color quality 35.6
cleanness 79.1
plainness 499.1
elegance 533.1
probity 644.1
immaculacy 653.3
innocence 657.1
chastity 664.1
godliness 692.2
simplicity 798.1
oneness 872.1
perfection 1002.1
purl ripple 52.11
border 211.10
eddy 238.21
purlieu resort 228.27
arena 463.1
purloin 482.13
purple
n purpleness 46.1
royal insignia 647.3
v empurple 46.2
adj purpure 46.3
sovereign 417.17
ornate 545.11
purport
n meaning 518.1
v pretext 376.3
intend 380.4
purpose
n resolution 359.1
intention 380.1
function 387.5
intent 518.2
v resolve 359.7
intend 380.4
purr hum 52.13
be pleased 95.12
purse
n funds 728.14
wallet 729.15
v contract 260.7
wrinkle 291.6
purser hand 183.6
attendant 577.5
payer 624.9
treasurer 729.12
purse snatcher 483.2
purse strings 729.15
pursue follow 166.3
practice 328.8
prosecute 382.8
persecute 389.7
court 562.21
elaborate 861.6
specialize 866.4
seek 938.30
pursuer
enthusiast 101.4
lover 104.12
follower 166.2
pursuant 382.4
pursuit
following 166.1
intention 380.1
seeking 382.1
pursuing 382.1
vocation 724.6
specialty 866.1
purulent
puss-filled 2.33
festering 12.21
purvey 385.9
purview vision 27.1
commission 615.1
pus humor 2.24
matter 12.6
filth 80.7
push
n energy 17.3
power 18.1
enterprise 330.7
urge 375.6
attack 459.1
poker 759.10
crisis 843.4
thrust 902.2
pushing 904.1
v use 87.22
make one's way 162.4
set in motion 172.6
hustle 330.13
urge 375.14
hasten 401.4
try hard 403.12
importune 440.12
launch an attack 459.17
deal illicitly 732.7
play 751.4
thrust 902.12
propel 904.9
dismiss 984.4
push around
torture 96.18
domineer 612.16
push aside reject 372.2
put away 390.6
postpone 846.9
push-button control 1041.4
push-button telephone 347.4
pushcart 736.6
pusher addict 87.21
propeller plane 181.2
writer 718.3
racketeer 732.4
push off
v get under way 182.19
depart 188.7
leave 222.10
repulse 908.3
interj go away! 909.32
push on hasten 401.4
make haste 401.5
push one's luck
risk 972.12
take chances 1006.7
pushover weakling 16.6
dupe 358.2
victory 411.1
trusting soul 954.4
easy thing 1014.4
push the envelope be in front 216.7
prepare the way 405.12
push the panic button 127.11
push up daisies 307.20
pushy insolent 142.9
meddlesome 214.9
enterprising 330.23
strong-willed 359.15
pusillanimous 491.12
puss face 216.4
cat 311.21
pussy
n cat 311.21
adj oozing 2.33
festering 12.21
pussycat cat 311.21
good person 659.2
beauty 1016.9
pussyfoot
n quibbler 936.7
v creep 177.26
lurk 346.9
dodge 368.8
be cautious 494.5
quibble 936.9
adj in hiding 346.14
pustule sore 85.37
swelling 283.4
blemish 1004.1
put
n option 737.21
throw 904.3
v place 159.12
affirm 334.5
phrase 532.4
impose 643.4
invest 729.17
attribute 888.3
throw 904.10
adj phrased 532.5
put a bee in one's bonnet
propose 439.5
hint 551.10
put about
turn round 163.9
change course 182.30
publish 352.10
put a crimp in 1012.16
put across do 328.6
deceive 356.14
make clear 521.6
impose on 643.7
put a curse on
curse 513.5
put a hex on 691.10
put a move on 439.8
put and call 737.21
put an end to
kill 308.13
make an end of 395.12
annihilate 762.7
end 820.5
put a stop to 857.11
halt 1012.13
put a question to 938.19
put aside
v remove 176.11
reserve 386.12
put away 390.6
save 635.4
segregate 773.6
postpone 846.9
dismiss 984.4
adj neglected 340.14
unused 390.12
put a spin on 350.3
put a stop to
call a halt to 857.11
stop 1012.13
put at
measure off 300.11
calculate 1017.18

putative
attributable 888.6
supposed 951.14
put away devour 8.22
ingest 187.11
kill 308.13
secrete 346.7
store 386.10
lay away 390.6
accomplish 407.4
divorce 566.5
put back
turn back 163.8
change course 182.30
impair 393.9
restore 396.11
fend off 460.10
return 481.4
repulse 908.3
put before
confront 216.8
propose 439.5
put by
v store 386.10
reserve 386.12
put away 390.6
adj reserved 386.15
unused 390.12
put-down 137.2
put down
v abase 137.5
be disrespectful 156.6
disdain 157.3
deposit 159.14
overshadow 249.8
kill 308.13
extinguish 395.15
conquer 412.10
suppress 428.8
deprecate 510.12
disparage 512.8
record 549.15
pay over 624.15
impose 643.4
underestimate 950.2
adj conquered 412.17
suppressed 428.14
put down roots 159.17
put faith in 953.10
put forth
set out 188.8
vegetate 310.34
issue 352.14
propose 439.5
flaunt 501.17
say 524.22
exert 725.8
put in establish 159.16
sail for 182.35
land 186.8
enter 189.7
insert 191.3
internalize 207.5
interrupt 214.6
spend 387.13
install 615.12
plant 1069.18
put in a call 347.19
put in a good word 375.14
put in a hole 1013.15
put in an appearance
appear 33.8
arrive 186.6
attend 221.8
put in a new light 551.8
put in for 440.9
put in motion
impel 902.11
start 904.13
put in one's place 137.5
put in one's two cents' worth
interrupt 214.6
affirm 334.5
speak up 524.21
judge 946.8
put in order
repair 396.14
arrange 808.8
classify 809.6
put in place 159.11
put in storage 159.15
put into effect 328.7
put into words
say 524.22
phrase 532.4
put in writing
write 547.19
record 549.15
put it all behind one 465.10
put it away 8.24
put it on the line
confront 216.8
insist 421.8
put it to
confront 216.8
propose 439.5
put money in 729.17
put new life into
refresh 9.2
vivify 306.11
revive 396.16
put off
v take off 6.6
offend 98.11
get under way 182.19
sail away from 182.36
dodge 368.8
not face up to 368.13
disincline 379.4
postpone 846.9
adj averse 99.8
late 846.16
put-off 376.1
put off mortality 307.19
put on don 5.43
accelerate 174.10
put on sail 182.20
put on
intrude 214.5
cover 295.19
sham 354.21
deceive 356.14
fool 356.15
trick 489.14
banter 490.6
affect 500.12
give oneself airs 501.14
ridicule 508.8
impose 643.4
administer 643.6
dramatize 704.28
give a lift 912.7
stultify 923.7
call attention to 983.10
put-on
n fake 354.13
affectation 500.1
gibe 508.2
adj spurious 354.26
assumed 500.16
put on airs
affect 500.12
give oneself airs 501.14
put on alert 399.5
put on an act 354.20
put on an even keel 182.49
put on a pedestal
respect 155.4
praise 509.12
overpraise 511.7
exalt 912.6
overestimate 949.2
put on a show
cut a dash 501.13
dramatize 704.28
put on blinders 980.6
put one's cards on the table
confess 351.7
shoot straight 644.10
put one's feet up
rest 20.6
be at ease 121.8
be still 173.7
do nothing 329.2
put one's finger on
locate 159.11
designate 517.18
specify 865.11
attention 983.1
call attention to 983.10
put one's foot down
remain firm 359.9
lay down the law 420.10
insist 421.8
refuse 442.3
stand fast 855.11
put one's foot in one's mouth
bungle 414.12
talk out of turn 844.4
make a boner 975.15
get into trouble 1013.12
put one's hands on
seize 480.14
discover 941.2
put one's house in order
prepare oneself 405.13
order 807.4
organize 808.10
put one's life on the line 492.11
put one's money where one's mouth is
take action 328.5
risk 972.12
put one's nose out of joint
disappoint 132.2
humiliate 137.6
make angry 152.23
make jealous 153.4
overshadow 249.8
thwart 1012.15
put one's shoulder to the wheel
be determined 359.8
undertake 404.3
set to work 725.15
put one's tail between one's legs
flinch 127.13
lose one's nerve 491.8
put one's trust in 124.7
put oneself down for
commit 436.5
contribute 478.14
put oneself in another's shoes 336.7
put one through the wringer 604.11
put one wise
disclose 351.4
disillusion 977.2
call attention to 983.10
put on hold
v put away 390.6
postpone 846.9
dismiss 984.4
adj late 846.16
put on ice 846.9
put on notice 399.5
put on paper 549.15
put on parole 431.5
put on report 599.7
put on tape 549.15
put on the agenda
v schedule 965.6
adj listed 871.9
put on the air 1034.25
put on the alert 400.3
put on the back burner
v put away 390.6
postpone 846.9
dismiss 984.4
adj late 846.16
put on the block 734.11
put on the brakes
slow 175.9
put a stop to 857.11
stop 1012.13
put on the feed bag 8.20
put on the finishing touches 392.11
put on the map
locate 159.11
publicize 352.15
put on the market 738.12
put on the right track 161.6
put on the scales 297.10
put on the shelf
put away 390.6
postpone 846.9
put on the spot 1006.6
put on the stand 598.17
put on to 551.11
put on weight 259.8
put out
chagrin 96.15
dissatisfy 108.5
dismay 127.19
humiliate 137.4
make public 352.11
issue 352.14
extinguish 395.15

print 548.14
spend 626.5
exert 725.8
eject 909.13
evict 909.15
bewilder 971.12
confuse 985.7
inconvenience 996.4
trouble 1013.13
fight fire 1022.7
put-out
n game 745.3
adj distressed 96.22
provoked 152.27
bewildered 971.24
confused 985.12
put out feelers 942.9
put out of action 19.9
put out of business 625.8
put out of commission 19.9
put out of joint 160.5
put out of one's misery 145.4
put out of reach 967.6
put out of sight
conceal 346.6
secrete 346.7
put out the welcome mat 585.7
put out to pasture
feed 8.18
scrap 390.8
depose 447.4
dismiss 909.19
put over
bring about 407.5
succeed with 409.11
manage 409.12
make clear 521.6
impose on 643.7
put pressure on 424.6
putrid
nasty 64.7
malodorous 71.5
filthy 80.23
decayed 393.40
bad 1000.8
put right
direct to 161.6
remedy 396.13
put sanctions on 603.4
putsch 327.4
put six feet under 309.19
put straight
v straighten 277.5
make better 392.9
remedy 396.13
arrange 437.8
disillusion 977.2
adj disillusioned 977.5
putt 751.4
putter waste time 331.13
trifle 998.14
put the arm on 621.3
put the best face on 600.12
put the blame on
blame 599.8
attribute to 888.4
put the cart before the horse
invert 205.5
misinterpret 342.2
not know what one is about 414.14
put the fear of God into 127.16
put the final touches on 820.7
put the finger on
inform on 551.13
accuse 599.7
attribute to 888.4
put the hammer down 756.4
put the heat on
coerce 424.8
threaten 514.2
put the icing on the cake 407.6
put the kibosh on
disable 19.9
silence 51.8
do for 395.11
end 820.5
put the lid on
silence 51.8
close 293.6
top 295.21
cover up 345.8
complete 407.6
suppress 428.8
end 820.5
put the pedal to the metal 174.9
put the pressure on 938.21
put the screws to
coerce 424.8
overprice 632.7
grill 938.22
put the shot 904.10
put the skids under
do for 395.11
end 820.5
put through
channel 239.15
do 328.6
carry out 328.7
bring about 407.5
succeed with 409.11
manage 409.12
execute 437.9
legislate 613.10
put through the third degree 938.21
putting 159.6
putting green
green 310.7
playground 743.11
golf 751.1
put to 800.7
put to bed 548.14
put to death
kill 308.13
execute 604.17
put together
v make up 405.7
assemble 770.18
compose 796.3
join 800.5
combine 805.3
produce 892.8
adj made 892.18
put to good use
apply 387.11
avail oneself of 387.14
put to music 708.46
put to one side 176.11
put to rest
abolish 395.13
end 820.5
disprove 958.4
put to rights
remedy 396.13
arrange 808.8
put to sea
get under way 182.19
embark 188.15
put to shame
humiliate 137.4
overshadow 249.8
disgrace 661.8
put to sleep
lull to sleep 22.20
deaden 25.4
kill 308.13
put to the test 942.8
put to use apply 387.11
avail oneself of 387.14
put two and two together
reason 935.15
conclude 946.10
putty softness 1047.4
semiliquid 1062.5
putty in one's hands 894.5
put under 22.20
put under arrest
arrest 429.15
capture 480.18
put under a spell 377.7
put under lock and key 429.14
put under oath 334.7
put under surveillance 938.27
put up
v establish 159.16
suspend 202.8
house 225.10
increase 251.4
sham 354.21
nominate 371.19
accommodate 385.10
store up 386.11
do up 397.11
pledge 438.10
offer 439.4
pay over 624.15
put up for sale 734.10
bet 759.25
produce 892.8
adj fabricated 354.29
pledged 438.12
prearranged 965.8
put up a fight
object 333.5
offer resistance 453.3
contend 457.13
put up a front
sham 354.21
pretext 376.3
affect 500.12
give oneself airs 501.14
defend 600.10
put up an argument 935.16
put up a roadblock 1012.12
put up as collateral
v pledge 438.10
adj pledged 438.12
put upon 214.5
put-upon 96.22
put up or shut up 328.5
put up to 375.17
put up with
endure 134.5
suffer 443.10
substitute 862.4
put words in one's mouth 888.4
putz
stupid person 924.2
fool 924.4
puzzle
n enigma 522.8
the unknown 930.7
bewilderment 971.3
dilemma 1013.7
v think hard 931.9
perplex 971.13
trouble 1013.13
pygmy
n dwarf 258.5
human group 312.3
adj dwarf 258.13
pylon
flying and landing guides marker 184.19
tower 272.6
pyramid
n structure 266.2
tower 272.6
tomb 309.16
monument 549.12
pile 770.10
hierarchy 809.4
v increase 251.4
trade 737.23
pile 770.19
pyre
mortuary 309.9
fire 1019.13
pyromaniac 1020.8
pyrotechnics
public speaking 543.1
fireworks 1019.17
heat 1019.21
pyrrhic 720.16
Pyrrhic victory 411.1
QED 957.25
quack
n impostor 357.6
v bird sound 60.5
adj quackish 354.28
quackery 354.7
quad
enclosed place 212.3
plot 231.4
space 548.7
four 879.1
quadrant
instrument 278.4
semicircle 280.8
part 793.1
quadratic 879.4
quadrennial 850.4
quadrilateral
n four 879.1
adj sided 218.7
quadrangular 278.9
four 879.4
quadriplegic 85.45

quadruped
n creature 311.3
adj four 879.4
quadruple
v quadruplicate 880.2
adj quadruplicate 880.3
quadruplet 879.1
quaff
n drink 8.4
v drink 8.29
tipple 88.24
quagmire
receptacle of filth 80.12
marsh 243.1
complex 799.2
predicament 1013.4
quail flinch 127.13
demur 325.4
cower 491.9
pull back 903.7
quaint
humorous 488.4
odd 870.11
quake
n upheaval 671.5
shake 917.3
v be excited 105.18
tremble 127.14
shake 917.11
freeze 1023.9
qualification
ability 18.2
circumscription 210.2
minimization 252.5
eligibility 371.11
fitting 405.2
preparedness 405.4
talent 413.4
stipulation 421.2
restriction 428.3
extenuation 600.5
fitness 788.5
change 852.1
provision 959.2
limitation 959.1
qualifier 530.2
qualify
circumscribe 210.5
fit 405.8
measure up 405.15
succeed 409.7
stipulate 421.7
restrict 428.9
suit 788.8
change 852.7
limit 959.3
suffice 991.4
qualitative analysis 801.1
quality milieu 209.3
taste 496.1
aristocracy 607.3
nobility 608.2
nature 767.4
characteristic 865.4
goodness 999.1
quality control
examination 938.3
process control 1041.8
quality of life
contentment 107.1
courtesy 504.1
prosperity 1010.1
qualm nausea 85.30
compunction 113.2
apprehension 127.4
nervousness 128.1
demur 325.2
objection 333.2
conscientiousness 644.2
quandary
bewilderment 971.3
dilemma 1013.7
quantifier 300.9
quantify
quantize 244.4
measure 300.10
number 1017.17
quantity
quantum 244.1
amount 244.2
numerousness 247.3
capacity 257.2
lump 257.10
measure 300.2
extent 300.3
vowel quantity 524.11
meter 720.7
sum 1017.6
quantum
energy unit 17.7
quantity 244.1
portion 477.5
measurement of light 1025.21
quantum leap
progression 162.1
improvement 392.1
innovation 852.4
revolution 860.1
quantum mechanics
mathematical probability 968.2
nuclear physics 1038.1
quarantine
n enclosure 212.1
isolation 429.2
seclusion 584.1
exclusiveness 773.3
v enclose 212.5
isolate 429.13
segregate 773.6
quark 258.8
quarrel
n open quarrel 456.5
contention 457.1
fight 457.4
arrow 462.6
v dispute 456.11
contend 457.13
quarry
n desire 100.11
sweetheart 104.10
pit 284.4
objective 380.2
game 382.7
source of supply 386.4
fountainhead 886.6
mine 1058.6
v extract 192.10
excavate 284.15
mine 1058.14
quart 881.2
quarter
n pity 145.1
direction 161.1
side 218.1
region 231.1
heraldry 647.2
money 728.7
game 746.3
basketball game 747.3
soccer 752.3
part 793.1
moment 824.2
fourth 881.2
v house 225.10
divide by four 881.3
adj fourth 881.5
quarterback
n football team 746.2
v direct 573.8
quarter horse 757.2
quarterly
n periodical 555.1
adj momentary 850.8
quartermaster
ship's officer 183.7
steersman 183.8
provider 385.6
quarter note 709.14
quarter rest 709.21
quarters 228.4
quartet
cooperation 450.1
part music 708.18
four 879.1
quasar 1072.8
quash cover up 345.8
extinguish 395.15
suppress 428.8
quasi
adj imitation 336.8
spurious 354.26
nominal 527.15
approximating 784.14
adv imitatively 336.11
supposedly 951.17
quaternary
n four 879.1
adj four 879.4
quaver
n trepidation 105.5
speech defect 525.1
note 709.14
trill 709.19
shake 917.3
v be weak 16.8
be excited 105.18
tremble 127.14
speak poorly 525.7
sing 708.38
shake 917.11
queasy nauseated 85.57
overfastidious 495.12
queen
homosexual 75.15
ant 311.34
bee 311.35
sovereign queen 575.11
princess 608.8
chessman 743.17
card 758.2
the best 999.8
queen bee bee 311.35
chief 575.4
important person 997.9
Queensbury rules 754.1
queen size
n large size 257.4
adj large 257.16
queer
n homosexual 75.15
counterfeit 728.10
v disable 19.9
spoil 393.11
hinder 1012.16
adj homosexual 75.30
spurious 354.26
odd 870.11
insane 926.26
eccentric 927.5
quell extinguish 395.15
conquer 412.10
suppress 428.8
subdue 432.9
calm 670.7
quench gratify 95.8
disincline 379.4
extinguish 395.15
suppress 428.8
fight fire 1022.7
query
n question 938.10
v inquire 938.20
interrogate 938.21
doubt 955.6
be curious 981.3
que será será 964.11
quest
n intention 380.1
pursuit 382.1
adventure 404.2
search 938.15
v pursue 382.8
seek 938.30
question
n enigma 522.8
remark 524.3
bill 613.9
topic 937.1
query 938.10
doubt 955.2
gamble 971.8
v communicate with 343.8
inquire 938.20
interrogate 938.21
doubt 955.6
be uncertain 971.9
be curious 981.3
questionable
deceptive 356.21
dishonest 645.16
unbelievable 955.10
improbable 969.3
doubtful 971.17
questioning
n interrogation 938.12
adj communicational 343.9
inquiring 938.36
doubting 955.9
question mark
enigma 522.8
question 938.10

questionnaire
n roll 871.6
canvass 938.14
v canvass 938.29
queue
n braid 3.7
tail 217.6
series 812.2
afterpart 817.2
v line up 812.6
quibble
n criticism 510.4
quiddity 936.4
v find fault 510.15
argue 935.16
cavil 936.9
quiche 10.41
quick
adj eager 101.8
hot-tempered 110.25
fast 174.15
living 306.13
willing 324.5
swift 330.18
alert 339.14
impulsive 365.9
hasty 401.9
skillful 413.22
teachable 570.18
brief 828.8
sudden 830.5
prompt 845.9
smart 920.14
adv swiftly 174.17
the quick
sore spot 24.4
provocation 152.11
the living 306.4
inner nature 767.5
quick and dirty
extemporaneous 365.12
handy 387.20
makeshift 995.7
quicken refresh 9.2
energize 17.10
sensitize 24.7
stimulate 105.13
accelerate 174.10
come to life 306.10
vivify 306.11
hasten 401.4
be useful 449.17
facilitate 1014.7
quick fix 995.2
quick-freeze
preserve 397.9
freeze 1024.11
quick on the draw
sensitive 24.12
quick 330.18
alert 339.14
impulsive 365.9
reactive 903.9
quicksand marsh 243.1
danger 1006.1
predicament 1013.4
quicksilver
n swiftness 174.6
changeableness 854.4
adj active 330.17
fickle 364.6
brass 1058.17
quickstep march
march 177.13
military march 708.12
quid bite 8.2
chewing tobacco 89.7
money 728.8
quid pro quo
offset 338.2
tit for tat 506.3
interaction 777.3
substitution 862.1
interchange 863.1
quiescent silent 51.10
quiet 173.12
passive 329.6
inactive 331.17
permanent 853.7
quiet
n rest 20.1
silence 51.1
composure 106.2
quiescence 173.1
peacefulness 464.2
order 807.1
v fall silent 51.7
silence 51.8
quieten 173.8
calm 670.7
order 807.4
adj vacational 20.10
soft-colored 35.22
silent 51.10
calm 106.12
reserved 139.11
quiescent 173.12
taciturn 344.9
covert 345.12
meek 433.15
pacific 464.9
tasteful 496.8
interj silence! 51.14
quill
n feather 3.16
feather part 3.17
thorn 285.5
v fold 291.5
quilt 295.10
quintessential
essential 192.18
typical 349.15
characteristic 865.13
best 999.16
perfected 1002.9
quintet
cooperation 450.1
part music 708.18
five 882.1
quintuplets 882.1
quip
n witticism 489.7
gibe 508.2
quirk 927.2
quibble 936.4
v joke 489.13
quirk distortion 265.1
caprice 364.1
mannerism 500.2
characteristic 865.4
twist 927.2
quibble 936.4
quirky capricious 364.5
eccentric 927.5
quit
v vacate 188.9
abandon 370.5
cease to use 390.4
resign 448.2
requite 506.5
repay 624.11
cease 857.6
adj clear 430.31
quite
adv to a degree 245.7
very 247.18
positively 247.19
absolutely 794.15
interj yes 332.18
right on! 973.25
quite the contrary
adv contrarily 779.9
interj no 335.8
by no means 335.9
quitter 362.5
quiver
n thrill 105.2
trepidation 105.5
trill 709.19
bundle 770.8
shake 917.3
flutter 917.4
flicker 1025.8
v be weak 16.8
be excited 105.18
tremble 127.14
shake 917.11
freeze 1023.9
flicker 1025.25
quixotic 986.24
quixotic ideal 124.5
quiz
n examination 938.2
questioning 938.12
v interrogate 938.21
be curious 981.3
quiz show 1035.2
quizzical
humorous 488.4
bantering 490.7
ridiculing 508.12
inquiring 938.36
curious 981.5
Quonset hut 228.9
quorum 770.2
quota portion 477.5
part 793.1
ratio 1017.7
quotation price 630.1
stock price 738.9
repetition 849.1
citation 957.5
quote state 524.23
repeat 849.7
cite 957.13
quote out of context
misinterpret 342.2
distort 350.3
rabbi teacher 571.1
master 575.1
supporter 616.9
clergy 699.11
wise man 921.1
Rabbi 648.5
rabbinical 698.13
rabbit hare 311.24
productiveness 890.6
rabbit's-foot 691.5
rabble
rabblement 606.3
throng 770.4
rabble-rouser
instigator 375.11
speaker 543.4
rabid
frenzied 105.25
infuriated 152.32
maniac 926.30
fanatic 926.32
rabies disease 85.41
hydrophobia 926.6
raccoon 311.23
race
n run 174.3
stream 238.1
flow 238.4
watercourse 239.2
humankind 312.1
haste 401.1
contest of speed 457.12
people 559.4
lineage 560.4
game 743.9
skiing 753.1
downhill race 753.3
automobile racing 756.1
driving 756.3
horse race 757.3
class 809.2
kind 809.3
v speed 174.8
accelerate 174.10
make haste 401.5
race with 457.19
drive 756.4
run 757.5
race against the clock 1006.8
race against time
n crisis 843.4
v spend time 821.6
be in danger 1006.8
race course 753.1
race hatred hate 103.1
exclusiveness 773.3
discrimination 980.4
race horse 311.14
racer speeder 174.5
skier 753.2
automobile racing 756.1
racetrack 757.1
race walk 177.27
racial 559.7
racial segregation 773.3
racing
n track 457.11
adj flowing 238.24
racing car 756.1
racing form 757.4
racism hate 103.1
discrimination 980.4
racist
n hater 103.4
bigot 980.5
adj discriminatory 980.12

rack
n agony 26.6
torment 96.7
slow motion 175.2
gait 177.12
storehouse 386.6
destruction 395.1
punishment 604.2
torture 605.4
strain 725.2
gear 1040.9
v pain 26.7
torment 96.18
way of walking 177.28
torture 604.16
strain 725.10
racked pained 26.9
affected 93.23
tortured 96.25
racket
n noise 53.3
rattle 55.3
fraud 356.8
stratagem 415.3
turbulence 671.2
vocation 724.6
illicit business 732.1
tennis 748.1
cheating 759.13
commotion 810.4
pandemonium 810.5
elastic 1048.3
v be noisy 53.9
racketeer
extortionist 480.12
bandit 483.4
evildoer 593.1
criminal 660.9
Mafioso 732.4
rack one's brains
think hard 931.9
try to recall 989.21
rack up 395.17
racy zestful 68.7
spirited 544.12
risqué 666.7
interesting 983.19
radar
radio navigation 182.2
electronic navigation 184.6
electronics 1033.1
radio detection 1036.1
radar defenses 460.2
radar tracking station
proving ground 1074.7
space station 1075.5
radial
n divergence 171.1
adj radiating 171.9
radiant
n axle 915.5
meteor 1072.15
adj happy 95.16
cheerful 109.11
illustrious 662.19
almighty 677.17
gorgeous 1016.21
luminous 1025.30
radiant energy
light 1025.1
radiation 1037.1
radiant heat 1019.1
radiate
v exude cheerfulness 109.6
radiate out 171.6
disperse 771.4
shine 1025.23
broadcast 1034.25
transmit 1036.15
adj radiating 171.9
radiation radius 171.2
dispersion 771.1
light 1025.1
beam 1025.5
radioactive emanation 1037.1
radiant energy 1037.1
ray 1037.3
space hazard 1075.10
radiator 1037.5
radical
n left side 220.1
reformer 392.6
morphology 526.3
phonetic symbol 546.2
extremist 611.12
source 886.5
foundation 901.6
atomic cluster 1038.7
adj basic 199.8
left 220.4
utmost 247.13
emendatory 392.16
extreme 611.20
innate 767.8
thorough 794.10
revolutionary 860.5
original 886.14
numeric 1017.23
radical change
upheaval 852.2
revolution 860.1
radical group 1060.2
radical right 611.9
radicle 310.22
radio
n radiotelephony 347.3
informant 551.5
news 552.1
electronics 1033.1
radio communications 1034.1
wireless 1034.1
radio receiver 1034.3
v telegraph 347.20
broadcast 1034.25
adj communicational 347.21
wireless 1034.28
radioactive 1037.11
radioactive element 1037.5
radioactive isotope 1038.5
radioactive particle 1037.4
radio broadcasting 1034.16
radiocarbon dating 1037.1
radio frequency 1034.12
radio-frequency 1034.28
radioisotope
radiotherapy 91.8
radioactive 1037.5
isotope 1038.5
radiology
radiography 91.7
radiation physics 1037.8
nuclear physics 1038.1
radioluminescence 1025.13
radioman 1034.24
radio signal 1034.10
radio station
transmitting station 1034.6
space station 1075.5
radiotelephone 347.5
radio telescope
radio 1034.3
observatory 1072.17
radiotherapy
radiation therapy 91.6
radiation physics 1037.8
radio transmitter 1034.4
radium
radiotherapy 91.8
cauterant 1020.15
radius
convergence 169.1
radiation 171.2
size 257.1
diameter 269.3
straight line 277.2
circle 280.2
raffle 759.14
raft
n float 180.11
lot 247.4
wealth 618.3
v haul 176.13
rag
n material 4.1
garment 5.3
sail 180.14
newspaper 555.2
rabble 606.3
scenery 704.20
dance music 708.8
tempo 709.24
v berate 510.19
syncopate 708.43
play 749.7
ragamuffin 178.3
rag doll 743.16
rage
n fury 105.8
fit 152.8
passion 152.10
fad 578.5
violence 671.1
turbulence 671.2
frenzy 926.7
mania 926.12
v be excitable 105.16
be angry 152.15
blow 318.20
bluster 503.3
storm 671.11
be insane 926.20
ragged
raucous 58.15
tormented 96.24
rugged 288.7
shabby 393.32
nonuniform 782.3
slovenly 810.15
ragging
n bantering 490.3
ridicule 508.1
game 749.3
adj ridiculing 508.12
raging
n violence 671.1
adj frenzied 105.25
infuriated 152.32
stormy 318.23
blustering 503.4
turbulent 671.18
rabid 926.30
rags material 4.1
clothing 5.1
tatters 5.5
remainder 256.1
refuse 391.4
poker 759.10
rags-to-riches 1010.12
ragtag 606.3
ragtime
n dance music 708.8
tempo 709.24
adj syncopated 709.29
rah 116.2
raid
n foray 459.4
plundering 482.6
manipulation 737.20
v foray 459.20
plunder 482.17
raider assailant 459.12
plunderer 483.6
rail
n fence 212.4
thinness 270.7
railway 383.7
horse racing 757.1
v fence 212.7
rail at scoff 508.9
berate 510.19
railroad
n railway 383.7
game 750.2
v thrust 902.12
railroad through
hasten 401.4
legislate 613.10
raiment
n clothing 5.1
v clothe 5.39
rain
n precipitation 316.1
rainfall 316.1
television reception 1035.5
water 1065.3
v descend 194.5
precipitate 316.10
give 478.12
abound 991.5
flood 1065.14
rainbow
n variegation 47.6
omen 133.6
halo 1025.14
iridescence 1025.18
adj chromatic 35.16
raincoat 5.13
rainfall rain 316.1
moisture 1065.1
rain on one's parade 393.11
rainy
showery 316.11
stormy 318.23
moist 1065.15

raise
  n increase 251.1
  height 272.2
  promotion 446.1
  poker 759.10
  v erect 200.9
  increase 251.4
  enlarge 259.4
  emboss 283.12
  leaven 298.7
  communicate with 343.8
  rouse 375.19
  make better 392.9
  promote 446.2
  say 524.22
  train 568.13
  enlist 615.17
  glorify 662.13
  conjure 690.11
  assemble 770.18
  inaugurate 818.11
  produce 892.8
  process 892.9
  elevate 912.5
  farm 1069.16
  breed 1070.6
raise a hand 453.3
raise an alarm 400.3
raise an objection
  dissent 333.4
  disapprove 510.10
raise a question 955.6
raise a ruckus 810.11
raise a stink 115.16
raise Cain
  be noisy 53.9
  be angry 152.15
  create disorder 810.11
raised increased 251.7
  expanded 259.10
  in relief 283.18
  produced 892.17
  made 892.18
  lifted 912.9
raise expectations 124.10
raise eyebrows 661.7
raise money 621.3
raise objections 333.5
raise one's pay 446.2
raise the curtain 351.4
raise the roof
  be noisy 53.9
  be angry 152.15
  create disorder 810.11
raise the spirits 109.7
raison d'étre
  objective 380.2
  cause 886.9
rake
  n inclination 204.2
  thinness 270.7
  projection 285.4
  libertine 665.10
  v comb 79.21
  incline 204.10
  pull the trigger 459.22
  be promiscuous 665.19
  ransack 938.33
  cultivate 1069.17
rake it in profit 472.12
  grow rich 618.10
rake over the coals 510.18
rakish showy 501.19
  profligate 665.25
rally
  n objection 333.2
  recovery 396.8
  contest 457.3
  call to arms 458.8
  electioneering 609.12
  price 738.9
  tournament 743.10
  game 748.2
  assembly 770.2
  v object 333.5
  incite 375.17
  come about 392.8
  recuperate 396.19
  recover 396.20
  aid 449.11
  call to arms 458.19
  banter 490.5
  scoff 508.9
  come together 770.16
  assemble 770.18
  dispose 808.9
  adduce 957.12
rallying cry
  cry 59.1
  call to arms 458.8
  call 517.16
rally round
  side with 450.4
  form 807.5
ram
  n male animal 76.8
  sheep 311.7
  v sail into 182.41
  thrust 902.12
RAM 1042.7
Ramadan
  fast day 515.3
  holy day 701.14
ramble
  n wandering 177.3
  walk 177.10
  v stray 164.4
  wander 177.23
  be incomprehensible 522.10
  digress 538.9
  be insane 926.20
  daydream 984.3
  muse 985.9
rambunctious 671.20
ramification
  forking 171.3
  fork 171.4
  branch 310.20
  nonuniformity 782.1
  member 793.4
  complexity 799.1
  bisection 875.1
ramjet 181.3
ramp
  n stairs 193.3
  incline 204.4
  deception 356.9
  skiing 753.1
  v be excitable 105.16
  climb 193.11
  rise 200.8
  deceive 356.19
  caper 366.6
  rage 671.11
rampage
  n commotion 810.4
  v rage 671.11
rampant
  ascending 193.14
  vertical 200.11
  lawless 418.5
  unrestrained 430.24
  unruly 671.19
  prevalent 864.12
  raised 912.9
  plentiful 991.7
rampart
  fortification 460.4
  buttress 901.4
  barrier 1012.5
ramrod straight 200.11
ramshackle
  unsteady 16.16
  dilapidated 393.33
ranch
  n farmstead 228.6
  farm 1070.5
  v farm 1069.16
  raise 1070.6
rancher 1070.2
rancid nasty 64.7
  malodorous 71.5
  tainted 393.41
rancor virulence 144.7
  bitterness 152.3
  revengefulness 507.2
  animosity 589.4
R and D 942.1
random
  n haphazard 972.4
  adj unordered 810.12
  vague 971.19
  purposeless 972.16
random testing 938.6
R and R 20.2
range
  n vision 27.1
  field of view 31.3
  earshot 48.4
  scope 158.2
  direction 161.1
  habitat 228.18
  highlands 237.1
  mountain 237.6
  degree 245.1
  size 257.1
  distance 261.1
  grassland 310.8
  latitude 430.4
  arena 463.1
  scale 709.6
  series 812.2
  v extend 158.9
  traverse 177.20
  wander 177.23
  size 257.15
  dispose 808.9
  classify 809.6
  align 812.5
ranger preserver 397.5
  guardian 1008.6
  forester 1069.7
rani
  amphibian 311.27
  sovereign queen 575.11
  princess 608.8
rank
  n standing 245.2
  authority 417.4
  military unit 461.22
  class 607.1
  nobility 608.2
  prestige 662.4
  state 765.1
  continuity 807.2
  category 809.2
  series 812.2
  v rule 249.11
  size 257.15
  order 807.4
  classify 808.11
  categorize 809.6
  align 812.5
  precede 814.2
  estimate 946.9
  rate 946.15
  adj nasty 64.7
  strong 68.8
  malodorous 71.5
  filthy 80.23
  downright 247.12
  rough 288.6
  luxuriant 310.43
  tainted 393.41
  wicked 654.16
  base 661.12
  vulgar 666.8
  terrible 1000.9
rank and file
  army 461.23
  the people 606.1
rankle fester 12.15
  pain 26.7
  provoke 152.24
  decay 393.22
  be remembered 989.14
rank-order 946.9
ransack plunder 482.17
  rummage 938.33
ransom
  n rescue 398.1
  recovery 481.3
  v redeem 396.12
  rescue 398.3
  recover 481.6
rant
  n bluster 503.1
  nonsense 520.2
  bombast 545.2
  v be excitable 105.16
  be angry 152.15
  bluster 503.3
  declaim 543.10
  rage 671.11
  overact 704.31
  be insane 926.20
rap
  n thud 52.3
  report 56.1
  criticism 510.4
  discussion 541.7
  condemnation 602.1
  hit 902.4

  tap 902.7
  trifle 998.5
  v thud 52.15
  crack 56.6
  criticize 510.14
  discuss 541.12
  pound 902.16
  tap 902.18
rapacious
  greedy 100.27
  ravenous 480.26
  gluttonous 672.6
rape
  n sexual possession 480.3
  plundering 482.6
  seduction 665.6
  unruliness 671.3
  v possess sexually 480.15
  seduce 665.20
  rage 671.11
rapid
  n rapids 238.10
  adj fast 174.15
  steep 204.18
  constant 847.5
rapid deployment force 461.15
rapid-eye-movement sleep 22.1
rapid fire 847.2
rapids rapid 238.10
  outburst 671.6
rapist
  sexual pervert 75.16
  seducer 665.12
  violent person 671.9
rap on the knuckles
  n reproof 510.5
  slap 604.3
  v reprove 510.17
rapping
  n speech 524.1
  conversation 541.1
  adj banging 56.11
rapport
  pleasantness 97.1
  accord 455.1
  good terms 587.3
  relation 775.1
rapprochement 587.3
rapt overjoyed 95.17
  persevering 360.8
  absorbed in thought 931.22
  gripped 983.18
  abstracted 985.11
rapture happiness 95.2
  amorousness 104.3
  fury 105.8
  trance 691.3
rara avis 870.4
rare underdone 11.9
  wonderful 122.10
  superior 249.12
  thin 270.16
  rarefied 299.4
  raw 406.10
  other 780.8
  infrequent 848.2
  unusual 870.10
  sparse 885.5
  scarce 992.11
  notable 997.19
rare-earth metals 1058.3
rarefaction 299.2
rarefied diluted 16.19
  dainty 248.7
  thin 270.16
  rare 299.4
  tenuous 764.6
rarin' to go 135.6
rascal
  mischief-maker 322.3
  precious rascal 660.3
rash
  n symptom 85.9
  skin eruption 85.36
  adj impulsive 365.9
  precipitate 401.10
  brash 493.7
rasp
  n scratch 58.3
  v pain 26.7
  grate 58.10
  irritate 96.14
  abrade 1044.7
raspberry 508.3
rassle 457.13
rat
  n false hair 3.13
  traitor 357.10
  informer 551.6
  bad person 660.5
  strikebreaker 727.8
  v betray 351.6
  inform on 551.13
  break a strike 727.11
rat's nest
  hodgepodge 797.6
  complex 799.2
  jumble 810.3
rat-a-tat staccato 55.1
  pulsation 916.3
ratchet 285.4
rate
  n velocity 172.4
  rank 245.2
  interest 623.3
  price 630.1
  worth 630.2
  ratio 1017.7
  v quantify 244.4
  measure 300.10
  reprove 510.17
  berate 510.19
  price 630.11
  deserve 639.5
  classify 809.6
  precede 814.2
  estimate 946.9
  rank 946.15
rate of exchange 728.9
rate of interest 623.3
rate of pay 624.4
rather
  v prefer 371.17
  adv to a degree 245.7
  notwithstanding 338.8
  preferably 371.28
  contrarily 779.9
  instead 862.11
  tolerably 999.24
  interj yes 332.18
  right on! 973.25
rathole sty 80.11
  hovel 228.11
rathskeller 88.20
ratify endorse 332.12
  adopt 371.15
  consent 441.2
  authorize 443.11
  secure 855.8
  confirm 957.11
rating rank 245.2
  measurement 300.1
  reproof 510.5
  berating 510.7
  credit 622.1
  valuation 630.3
  motion pictures 706.1
  classification 809.1
  class 809.2
  estimate 946.3
ratings 1035.2
ratio degree 245.1
  intellect 919.1
  comparability 943.3
  rate 1017.7
ratiocinate think about 931.11
  reason 935.15
ration
  n amount 244.2
  portion 477.5
  v budget 477.10
rational mental 919.7
  intelligent 920.12
  sensible 920.18
  sane 925.4
  cognitive 931.21
  reasoning 935.18
  logical 935.20
  open-minded 979.10
  realistic 987.6
  numeric 1017.23
rationale
  explanation 341.4
  announcement 352.2
  reason 886.2
rationalize
  explain 341.10
  plan 381.8
  justify 600.9
  organize 808.10
  classify 809.6
  reason 935.15
  reason speciously 936.8
rations board 10.6
  store 386.1
rat race
  futility 391.2
  work 725.4
  whirl 915.2
rattan rod 605.2
  cane 1054.4
rattle
  n noise 53.3
  noisemaker 53.6
  rattling 55.3
  chatterer 540.4
  throw 759.9
  v weaken 16.10
  ruckle 55.6
  agitate 105.14
  talk nonsense 520.5
  chatter 540.5
  thrust 902.12
  confuse 985.7
rattle off repeat 849.7
  memorize 989.17
ratty rodent 311.45
  shabby 393.32
  infested 910.11
raucous raucid 58.15
  dissonant 61.4
raunchy coarse 497.11
  obscene 666.9
  bad 1000.8
ravage
  n destruction 395.1
  plundering 482.6
  seduction 665.6
  infestation 910.2
  v corrupt 393.12
  destroy 395.10
  plunder 482.17
  seduce 665.20
  infest 910.6
ravages of time
  wear 393.5
  disintegration 806.1
  tract of time 821.3
rave
  n party 582.12
  v be enthusiastic 101.7
  be excitable 105.16
  be angry 152.15
  bluster 503.3
  rage 671.11
  be insane 926.20
raven
  n blackness 38.4
  bird of ill omen 133.6
  v hunger 100.19
  plunder 482.17
  gluttonize 672.4
  adj black 38.8
ravenous
  hungry 100.25
  greedy 100.27
  rapacious 480.26
  gluttonous 672.6
ravine valley 237.7
  gulch 284.9
ravioli 10.33
ravish delight 95.10
  corrupt 393.12
  possess sexually 480.15
  plunder 482.17
  seduce 665.20
raw
  n sore spot 24.4
  adj naked 6.14
  sore 26.11
  garish 35.20
  callow 301.10
  windblown 318.24
  crude 406.10
  immature 406.11
  inexperienced 414.17
  coarse 497.11
  cursing 513.8
  vulgar 666.8
  new 841.7
  ignorant 930.12
  cold 1023.14
the raw 6.3

raw data 770.11
raw deal
  injustice 650.4
  bad luck 1011.5
rawhide
  n fur 4.2
  whip 605.1
  v whip 604.13
raw material
  unlicked cub 263.2
  crude 406.5
  materials 1054.1
raw nerve
  sore spot 24.4
  provocation 152.11
ray
  n divergence 171.2
  wave 916.4
  light 1025.5
  radiation 1037.3
  v radiate 171.6
ray of sunshine
  optimist 124.6
  daylight 1025.10
raze level 201.6
  obliterate 395.16
  rase 395.19
  fell 913.5
  abrade 1044.7
razorback 311.9
razor-edged 285.8
razor-sharp 415.12
razz
  n boo 508.3
  v banter 490.6
razzledazzle 501.3
RBI 745.4
re 775.13
reach
  n earshot 48.4
  range 158.2
  inlet 242.1
  degree 245.1
  size 257.1
  distance 261.1
  length 267.1
  knowledge 928.1
  v be heard 48.12
  move 145.5
  extend 158.9
  travel 177.19
  sail for 182.35
  arrive 186.6
  arrive at 186.7
  extend to 261.6
  communicate with 343.8
  bribe 378.3
  deliver 478.13
  equal 790.5
  suffice 991.4
reachable 966.8
reach a compromise 468.2
reach an agreement 332.10
reach for the sky 100.20
reach maturity 407.8
reach one's goal 409.8
reach orgasm 75.24
reach out
  extend 158.9
  stretch out 261.5
  be long 267.5
reach the breaking point
  993.13
react
  be affected 93.11
  respond 903.5
  answer 939.4
reaction
  mental disorder 92.14
  feeling 93.1
  regression 163.1
  propulsion 184.25
  resistance 453.1
  conservatism 611.1
  impact 887.2
  counteraction 900.1
  response 903.1
  answer 939.1
  opinion 953.6
reactionary
  n malcontent 108.3
  right side 219.1
  conservative 611.9
  back number 842.8
  reactionist 903.4
  adj regressive 163.11
  right 219.4
  conservative 611.17
  reversionary 859.7
  counteractive 900.8
  reactive 903.9
reactivate
  activate 17.12
  restore 396.11
  militarize 458.20
reactive 903.9
reactor 1038.13
read
  interpret 341.9
  understand 521.8
  declaim 543.10
  copyedit 548.17
  study 570.12
  sound out 942.9
read between the lines
  interpret 341.9
  explain 341.10
  see through 941.8
reader
  advertisement 352.6
  lecturer 543.5
  elocutionist 543.7
  proofreader 548.13
  textbook 554.10
  journalist 555.4
  academic rank 571.3
  teacher 571.7
  student 572.1
  holy orders 699.4
  input device 1042.4
reading
  measure 300.2
  interpretation 341.1
  rendering 341.2
  speech 543.2
  elementary education 568.5
  study 570.3
  scholarship 928.5
  signal 1036.11
reading glasses 29.3
read into
  interpret 341.9
  explain 341.10
readjust 858.14
readmit 187.15
read my lips 535.5
read one loud and clear 521.8
read one's mind 689.22
read someone like a book
  perceive 521.9
  see through 941.8
read tea leaves 962.9
read the riot act
  lay down the law 420.10
  reprove 510.17
read up on
  study 570.12
  study up 570.14
  search 938.31
ready
  v repair 396.14
  prepare 405.6
  train 568.13
  adj eager 101.8
  expectant 130.11
  willing 324.5
  quick 330.18
  alert 339.14
  handy 387.20
  prepared 405.16
  skillful 413.22
  cunning 415.12
  consenting 441.4
  teachable 570.18
  prompt 845.9
  foreseeing 961.7
ready-made
  tailored 5.48
  ready-formed 405.19
  made 892.18
ready oneself 570.11
ready-to-wear
  n ready-mades 5.4
  adj tailored 5.48
  ready-made 405.19
  made 892.18
ready wit wit 489.1
  smartness 920.2
reaffirm 849.8
real
  adj land 471.9
  actual 761.15
  substantial 763.6
  obvious 970.15
  true 973.13
  genuine 973.15
  numeric 1017.23
  adv very 247.18
real estate plot 231.4
  land 234.1
  realty 471.6
realign
  parallelize 203.5
  rearrange 808.13
  change 852.7
realism
  normality 869.1
  genuineness 973.7
  realisticness 987.2
  materialism 1052.6
realistic
  descriptive 349.14
  typical 349.15
  occupied 724.15
  lifelike 784.16
  normal 869.8
  ungullible 956.5
  genuine 973.15
  realist 987.6
  materialistic 1052.12
reality actuality 761.2
  event 831.2
  unquestionability 970.3
  truth 973.1
realize
  externalize 206.5
  do 328.6
  image 349.11
  accomplish 407.4
  profit 472.12
  understand 521.7
  be sold 734.12
  cause 886.10
  establish 892.10
  perform 892.11
  know 928.12
  visualize 986.15
  recognize 989.12
reallocate 808.13
really
  astonishment 122.19
  yes 332.18
realm sphere 231.2
  country 232.1
  occupation 724.4
  hierarchy 809.4
the real McCoy 973.4
real time 1042.18
realtor 730.9
realty 471.6
the real world 973.1
ream
  n paper 1054.5
  v masturbate 75.22
  perforate 292.15
  disapprove 510.18
reap shorten 268.6
  acquire 472.8
  harvest 1069.19
Reaper 307.3
reappear
  repeat 849.11
  recur 850.5
reappraise
  reconsider 931.15
  re-examine 938.27
reap the benefit of
  take advantage of 387.15
  get one's deserts 639.6
rear
  n setting 209.2
  hind part 217.1
  rear end 217.1
  rear guard 217.2
  buttocks 217.5
  afterpart 817.2
  v pitch 182.55
  ascend 193.8
  rise 200.8
  erect 200.9
  loom 247.5
  tower 272.10
  foster 449.16
  train 568.13

produce 892.8
process 892.9
elevate 912.5
farm 1069.16
raise 1070.6
adj rearward 217.9
rear admiral 575.20
rear its head 33.8
rearrange
reorganize 808.13
re-form 858.12
rear up ascend 193.8
rise 200.8
elevate 912.5
reason
n explanation 341.4
motive 375.1
warrant 600.6
cause 886.2
intellect 919.1
sensibleness 920.6
sanity 925.1
reasoning 935.1
argument 935.5
reasonableness 935.9
solution 940.1
v discuss 541.12
think 931.8
logicalize 935.15
conclude 946.10
philosophize 952.9
reasonable
justifiable 600.14
cheap 633.7
unexcessive 670.12
intelligent 920.12
sensible 920.18
sane 925.4
logical 935.20
plausible 968.7
realistic 987.6
reasoned 935.21
reasoning
n intellect 919.1
thought 931.1
logical thought 935.1
reason 935.1
adj mental 919.7
rational 935.18
reason to believe 957.1
reassemble 396.18
reassert 849.8
reassess 630.11
reassure comfort 121.6
give hope 124.10
encourage 492.16
make sure 970.11
rebate
n discount 631.1
v discount 631.2
rebel
n malcontent 108.3
revolter 327.5
anarchist 418.3
revolutionist 860.3
v revolt 327.7
object 333.5
adj rebellious 327.11
rebellion
revolt 327.4
objection 333.2
anarchy 418.2
rebel yell
challenge 454.2
call to arms 458.8
call 517.16
rebirth
reproduction 78.1
revival 396.3
redemption 685.4
repetition 849.1
new start 858.2
reborn
renascent 396.24
redeemed 685.9
regenerate 692.10
converted 858.19
rebound
n reverberation 54.2
recoil 903.2
elasticity 1048.1
v reverberate 54.7
play 747.4
recoil 903.6
rebuff
n snub 157.2
rejection 372.1
discomfiture 412.2
refusal 442.2
resistance 453.1
recoil 903.2
repulse 908.2
v snub 157.5
reject 372.2
refuse 442.5
resist 453.2
fend off 460.10
repulse 908.3
rebuild reproduce 78.7
remake 396.18
change 852.7
rebuke
n reproof 510.5
v reprove 510.17
rebuttal
opposition 451.1
pleadings 598.6
defense 600.2
counterstatement 939.2
refutation 958.2
recalcitrant
n reactionary 903.4
adj unwilling 325.5
defiant 327.10
ungovernable 361.12
oppositional 451.8
resistant 453.5
nonconforming 868.5
counteractive 900.8
recoiling 903.10
recall
n repeal 445.1
referendum 613.8
remembering 989.4
v summon 420.11
repeal 445.2
remember 989.10
remind 989.20
recant
n retract 363.8
v deny 335.4
reject 372.2
repeal 445.2
relinquish 475.3
recap
n shortening 268.3
summary 557.2
iteration 849.2
summation 1017.11
v shorten 268.6
re-cover 295.29
repair 396.14
sum up 1017.19
recapture
n recovery 481.3
v recover 481.6
remember 989.10
recast reproduce 78.7
change 852.7
re-form 858.12
recede regress 163.5
retrocede 168.2
receipt
n remedy 86.1
reception 187.1
formula 419.3
receiving 479.1
receipts 627.1
acknowledgment 627.2
answer 939.1
v receive 627.3
receivable
receptive 187.16
due 623.10
receive take in 187.10
assent 332.8
get 479.6
take 480.13
admit 585.7
pocket 627.3
include 772.3
believe 953.10
tune in 1036.17
receive absolution
do penance 658.6
confess 701.18
receiver
container 195.1
telegraph 347.2
telephone 347.4
recipient 479.3
believer 692.4
treasurer 729.12
fence 732.6
baseball team 745.2
football team 746.2
radio 1034.3
receivership 625.3
receive with open arms 585.9
the receiving end 479.3
recent former 837.10
late 841.12
recent past 837.1
receptacle
container 195.1
flower 310.28
reception taking in 187.1
entrance 189.1
receiving 479.1
taking 480.1
social gathering 582.10
welcome 585.2
assembly 770.2
inclusion 772.1
belief 953.1
fading 1034.21
receptionist host 585.5
doorkeeper 1008.12
receptive sensory 24.9
sensible 24.11
sensitive 93.20
recipient 187.16
willing 324.5
receiving 479.9
teachable 570.18
hospitable 585.11
influenceable 894.15
open-minded 979.10
pliant 1047.9
receptor 24.5
recess
n respite 20.2
nook 197.3
interior 207.2
recession 284.7
hiding place 346.4
seclusion 584.1
interim 826.1
pause 857.3
retreat 1009.5
v take a rest 20.8
indent 284.14
intervene 826.3
postpone 846.9
pause 857.9
recessed 284.16
recession
regression 163.1
recedence 168.1
recess 284.7
surrender 433.2
business cycle 731.10
hard times 1011.6
recharge activate 17.12
revive 396.16
recheck
n re-examination 938.7
v re-examine 938.27
verify 970.12
recidivism
regression 163.1
inversion 205.1
ungovernability 361.4
apostasy 363.2
backsliding 394.2
vice 654.1
impiety 694.1
reversion 859.1
recipe remedy 86.1
formula 419.3
recipient
n receiver 479.3
adj receptive 187.16
receiving 479.9
reciprocal
n likeness 784.3
adj cooperative 450.5
communal 476.9
retaliatory 506.8
reciprocative 777.10
periodic 850.7
interchangeable 863.5
alternate 916.19

numeric 1017.23
reciprocate
cooperate 450.3
get along 455.2
retaliate 506.4
correspond 777.7
interchange 863.4
alternate 916.13
recital speech 543.2
lesson 568.7
performance 708.33
fiction 722.1
narration 722.2
iteration 849.2
recite state 524.23
declaim 543.10
narrate 719.6
tell a story 722.6
iterate 849.8
memorize 989.17
sum up 1017.19
reckless
unconcerned 102.7
fast 174.15
careless 340.11
impulsive 365.9
devil-may-care 493.8
unwise 923.10
reckon plan 380.6
estimate 946.9
suppose 951.10
think 953.11
calculate 1017.18
reckoning
amount 244.2
fee 624.5
account 628.2
statement 628.3
estimate 946.3
sum 1017.6
calculation 1017.10
summation 1017.11
reclaim
redeem 396.12
aid 449.11
recover 481.6
re-form 858.12
rehabilitate 858.14
recline rest 20.6
lie 201.5
lie down 913.11
recluse
n loner 584.5
eccentric 927.3
adj reclusive 584.10
recognition
thanks 150.2
acknowledgment 332.3
commendation 509.3
due 639.2
repute 662.1
plot 722.4
cognizance 928.2
discovery 941.1
identification 989.5
recognizance
obligation 436.2
pledge 438.2
recognize see 27.12
thank 150.4
acknowledge 332.11
honor 646.8
perceive 928.12
detect 941.5
know 989.12
recoil
n demur 325.2
retaliation 506.1
impact 887.2
counteraction 900.1
rebound 903.2
retreat 903.3
v shudder at 99.5
flinch 127.13
demur 325.4
dodge 368.8
rebound 903.6
pull back 903.7
recollect 989.10
recommend
n recommendation 509.4
v urge 375.14
advise 422.5
propose 439.5
commend 509.11
recommit
commit 429.17
restore 481.4
recompense
n compensation 338.1
reparation 396.6
restitution 481.2
reprisal 506.2
remuneration 624.3
atonement 658.1
v compensate 338.4
remedy 396.13
make restitution 481.5
requite 506.5
pay 624.10
atone 658.4
recompose
restore 396.11
remake 396.18
reconcile
bring to terms 465.8
make agree 788.7
conform 867.3
reconciliation
contentment 107.1
reconcilement 465.3
adjustment 788.4
conformity 867.1
recondition
repair 396.14
renovate 396.17
rehabilitate 858.14
reconnaissance
Air Force mission 184.11
reconnoitering 938.8
reconnoiter
n reconnaissance 938.8
v look 27.13
traverse 177.20
make a reconnaissance 938.28
reconsider
rethink 931.15
re-examine 938.27
reconstitute
reproduce 78.7
restore 396.11
remake 396.18
rearrange 808.13
reconstruct
reproduce 78.7
remake 396.18
change 852.7
Reconstruction Era 824.5
record
n phonograph record 50.12
supremacy 249.3
preparedness 405.4
documentation 549.1
recording 549.1
report 549.7
history 719.1
chronicle 832.9
data 1042.15
v sound 50.14
write 547.19
put upon record 549.15
chronicle 719.5
televiews 1035.15
record-breaker 249.4
recording
n tape 50.12
record 549.1
registration 549.14
history 719.1
transcript 785.4
adj recordative 549.16
record keeping
registration 549.14
automation 1041.7
record player 50.11
records 757.4
recount
n returns 609.21
summation 1017.11
v narrate 719.6
tell a story 722.6
iterate 849.8
sum up 1017.19
recoup
n recovery 481.3
reimbursement 624.2
v redeem 396.12
recover 481.6
repay 624.11
recourse
instrumentality 384.3
resource 1009.2
recover
get well 83.7
recuperate 392.8
redeem 396.12
rally 396.20
rescue 398.3
regain 481.6
rehabilitate 858.14
re-cover 295.29
recovery
improvement 392.1
reclamation 396.2
rally 396.8
rescue 398.1
regaining 481.3
business cycle 731.10
rehabilitation 858.4
recovery room 197.25
re-create
reproduce 78.7
remake 396.18
change 852.7
recreation
refreshment 9.1
amusement 743.1
recreational drug 87.3
rec room 197.12
recruit
n rookie 461.18
novice 572.9
newcomer 774.4
beginner 818.2
v add to 253.5
provide 385.7
avail oneself of 387.14
restore 396.11
revive 396.16
recuperate 396.19
call to arms 458.19
employ 615.14
enlist 615.17
rectangular
oblong 267.9
right-angled 278.7
quadrangular 278.9
rectify refine 79.22
straighten 277.5
compensate 338.4
revise 392.12
remedy 396.13
make agree 788.7
conform 867.3
recto right side 219.1
makeup 554.12
rector principal 571.8
director 574.1
clergyman 699.2
rectory house 228.5
benefice 698.9
parsonage 703.7
rectum 2.18
recumbency
reclining 201.2
lowness 274.1
recuperate
get well 83.7
rally 392.8
recruit 396.19
recover 481.6
recur be frequent 847.3
repeat 849.11
reoccur 850.5
recur to the mind 989.15
recycle 396.12
red
n redness 41.1
radical 611.12
revolutionist 860.3
adj sore 26.11
reddish 41.6
blushing 139.13
raw 406.10
radical 611.20
Red
n Communist 611.13
revolutionist 860.3
adj Communist 611.21
red, white, and blue 647.7
red alert
warning sign 399.3
crisis 843.4
red-baiting 389.3

red-blooded
strong 15.15
resolute 492.18
redcap carrier 176.7
trainman 178.13
red carpet 580.1
red cent money 728.7
trifle 998.5
red corpuscle 2.25
redden make red 41.4
turn red 41.5
change color 105.19
blush 139.8
show resentment 152.14
reddish 41.6
redecorate 498.8
redeem reclaim 396.12
rescue 398.3
aid 449.11
recover 481.6
pay in full 624.13
pay for 624.18
atone 658.4
regenerate 685.6
re-form 858.12
substitute 862.4
redeeming feature 865.4
redemption
pardon 148.2
reclamation 396.2
rescue 398.1
recovery 481.3
atonement 658.1
function of Christ 677.14
redeemedness 685.4
new start 858.2
reversion 859.1
redesign
n reproduction 78.1
change 852.1
v reproduce 78.7
change 852.7
redevelop
reproduce 78.7
restore 396.11
red flag
warning sign 399.3
signal 517.15
red-handed
adj guilty 656.3
adv in the act 656.4
redhead 35.9
red herring fish 10.24
stratagem 415.3
red-hot fervent 93.18
zealous 101.9
heated 105.22
fiery 671.22
hot 1019.25
red ink 473.3
rediscover 941.2
redistribute 808.13
red-letter day
holiday 20.4
celebration 487.1
red light
warning sign 399.3
alarm 400.1
signal 517.15
traffic light 1026.4
red-light district
city district 230.6
brothel 665.9
redneck
n hater 103.4
wilderness settler 227.10
vulgarian 497.6
adj not urbane 233.8
boorish 497.13
redo reproduce 78.7
ornament 498.8
repeat 849.7
redolent odorous 69.9
fragrant 70.9
recollective 989.22
redouble
intensify 251.5
repeat 849.7
duplicate 874.3
redress
n compensation 338.1
reparation 396.6
restitution 481.2
recompense 624.3
atonement 658.1
v remedy 396.13
make restitution 481.5
requite 506.5
repay 624.11
atone 658.4
red tape routine 373.5
officialism 612.11
delay 846.2
reduce
n make small 258.9
v weaken 16.10
dilute 16.11
afflict 85.50
relieve 120.5
abase 137.5
quantify 244.4
decrease 252.7
subtract 255.9
contract 260.7
shorten 268.6
slenderize 270.13
conquer 412.10
subdue 432.9
demote 447.3
impoverish 619.6
discount 631.2
cheapen 633.6
moderate 670.6
simplify 798.4
analyze 801.6
depress 913.4
qualify 959.3
chemicalize 1060.8
reduce to 858.11
reduction in forces
deposal 447.2
economizing 635.2
redundancy 993.4
redundant
diffuse 538.11
repetitious 849.14
superfluous 993.17
reduplicate
reproduce 778.6
copy 785.8
repeat 849.7
duplicate 874.3
redux 396.24
red wine 88.17
reebok 311.5
reed tube 239.6
grass 310.5
stem 310.21
arrow 462.6
wind instrument 711.6
woodwind 711.8
reeducate teach 568.10
rehabilitate 858.14
reedy 58.14
reef
n island 235.2
shoal 276.2
point of land 283.9
v slow 175.9
reduce sail 182.50
reefer marijuana
cigarette 87.12
refrigerator truck 1024.4
reek
n stench 71.1
combustion product 1020.16
vapor 1067.1
v have an odor 69.6
stink 71.4
exude 190.15
let out 909.24
smoke 1019.23
vaporize 1067.8
reel
n windlass 906.7
whirl 915.2
swing 916.6
flounder 917.8
v be drunk 88.27
pitch 182.55
eddy 238.21
reel in 906.9
whirl 915.11
oscillate 916.10
flounder 917.15
reel in fish 382.10
wind in 906.9
reeling
n rotation 915.1
adj intoxicated 88.31
rotating 915.14
swinging 916.17
reel off chatter 540.5
repeat 849.7
memorize 989.17
reenactment 396.1
reenlist 825.5
reentry
regression 163.1
return 186.3
repetition 849.1
periodicity 850.2
spacecraft 1075.2
reestablish
reproduce 78.7
restore 396.11
resume 856.6
re-examine
reconsider 931.15
recheck 938.27
refashion
reproduce 78.7
remake 396.18
re-form 858.12
refer 888.3
referee
n arbitrator 466.4
judge 596.1
basketball game 747.3
hockey game 749.3
round 751.3
soccer game 752.3
fight 754.3
umpire 946.6
v mediate 466.6
sit in judgment 946.12
reference
n aspect 33.3
recommendation 509.4
meaning 518.1
punctuation 530.15
relevance 775.4
acknowledgment 888.2
citation 957.5
v refer to 957.14
reference book
book 554.1
work of reference 554.9
directory 574.10
referendum vote 371.6
election 609.15
constitutional referendum 613.8
refer to
avail oneself of 387.14
designate 517.18
mean 518.8
remark 524.24
confer 541.11
relate to 775.5
attribute to 888.4
direct attention to 957.14
call attention to 983.10
refill restore 396.11
complete 794.6
refinance 729.16
refine sensitize 24.7
clarify 79.22
extract 192.16
subtract 255.9
spiritualize 764.4
simplify 798.4
process 892.9
melt 1020.21
refinery refiner 79.13
plant 739.3
refit renovate 396.17
change 852.7
reflect curve 279.6
imitate 336.5
image 349.11
remark 524.24
consider 931.12
remember 989.10
return 1036.16
reflectance 1025.9
reflection bend 279.3
image 349.5
criticism 510.4
aspersion 512.4
remark 524.3
stigma 661.6
reflex 785.7

reaction 903.1
judiciousness 920.7
consideration 931.2
idea 932.1
remembering 989.4
reflected light 1025.9
signal 1036.11
reflector mirror 29.6
observatory 1072.17
reflect upon 510.13
reflex
n conditioning 92.26
impulse 365.1
reflection 785.7
impact 887.2
reaction 903.1
instinct 934.2
v curve 279.6
adj backward 163.12
unpremeditated 365.11
reactive 903.9
involuntary 963.14
reflexive
n voice 530.14
adj unpremeditated 365.11
reactive 903.9
involuntary 963.14
refluence
regression 163.1
course 172.2
eddy 238.12
tide 238.13
reaction 903.1
reflux regression 163.1
course 172.2
eddy 238.12
tide 238.13
reaction 903.1
reforestation
woodland 310.13
forestry 1069.3
planting 1069.14
reform
n reformation 392.5
change 852.1
new start 858.2
v repent 113.7
make better 392.9
restore 396.11
redeem 685.6
change 852.7
re-form 858.12
Reform
n Protestantism 675.10
adj Jewish 675.30
Reformationist
n Protestant 675.20
adj Protestant 675.28
reformatory
n prison 429.8
reform school 567.9
adj emendatory 392.16
refracted 164.8
refractory
n ceramic ware 742.2
adj unwilling 325.5
defiant 327.10
ungovernable 361.12
oppositional 451.8
resistant 453.5
ceramic 742.7
nonconforming 868.5
refrain
n air 708.4
passage 708.24
poetry 720.9
sequel 817.1
repeat 849.5
v not do 329.3
not use 390.5
abstain 668.7
cease 857.6
refreeze 1024.11
refresh freshen 9.2
strengthen 15.13
air 317.11
revive 396.16
renovate 396.17
amuse 743.21
refrigerate 1024.10
refresher course 568.8
refreshment
meal 8.5
invigoration 9.1
refection 9.1
nutriment 10.3
strengthening 15.5
ventilation 317.9
revival 396.3
renovation 396.4
refrigerant
n coolant 1024.7
adj refrigerative 1024.12
refrigerate
preserve 397.9
freeze 1023.10
cool 1024.10
refrigerator 1024.4
refuel 1021.8
refuge reception 187.1
hiding place 346.4
pretext 376.1
preserve 397.7
protection 1008.1
sanctuary 1009.1
refugee goer 190.10
fugitive 368.5
alien 774.3
refund
n reparation 481.2
reimbursement 624.2
discount 631.1
v make restitution 481.5
repay 624.11
discount 631.2
refurbish
renovate 396.17
ornament 498.8
refusal
unwillingness 325.1
dissent 333.1
rejection 372.1
denial 442.1
prohibition 444.1
opposition 451.1
option 733.2
repulse 908.2
refuse
n offal 80.9
remainder 256.1
derelict 370.4
discard 390.3
waste 391.4
v be unwilling 325.3
reject 372.2
decline 442.3
prohibit 444.3
repulse 908.3
refuse comment 344.6
refusenik 327.5
refuse to admit
deny 335.4
disbelieve 955.5
refuse to believe 956.3
refuse to pay 625.6
refute deny 335.4
defend 600.10
rebut 939.5
confute 958.5
regain 481.6
regal dignified 136.12
sovereign 417.17
noble 608.10
good 999.12
regale
n refreshment 9.1
treat 95.3
v feed 8.18
feast 8.24
refresh 9.2
gratify 95.8
amuse 743.21
regalia
formal dress 5.11
insignia 647.1
royal insignia 647.3
regard
n observation 27.2
look 27.3
aspect 33.3
love 104.1
considerateness 143.3
respect 155.1
carefulness 339.1
good terms 587.3
esteem 662.3
particular 766.3
relevance 775.4
outlook 978.2
attention 983.1
v look 27.13
cherish 104.21
be considerate 143.10
respect 155.4
care 339.6
observe 434.2
relate to 775.5
think of 931.17
judge 946.8
consider 953.11
heed 983.6
regardless
adj unconcerned 102.7
careless 340.11
incurious 982.3
inattentive 984.6
adv anyhow 384.10
in spite of 338.9
regards
respects 155.3
compliments 504.8
greetings 585.3
regatta
race 457.12
tournament 743.10
regency
mastership 417.7
government 612.4
commission 615.1
regenerate
v reproduce 78.7
revive 396.16
redeem 685.6
re-form 858.12
adj redeemed 685.9
converted 692.10
regent 575.12
regimen diet 7.13
treatment 91.14
government 612.1
regiment
n military unit 461.22
company 770.3
v hold a tight hand upon 425.4
dispose 808.9
regimentation
strictness 425.1
arrangement 808.1
region
location 159.1
area 231.1
territory 231.5
land 234.1
plot 722.4
regional
locational 159.19
territorial 231.8
idiomatic 523.22
register
n range 158.2
record 549.1
memorandum 549.4
record book 549.11
registration 549.14
clerk 550.1
account book 628.4
pitch 709.4
scale 709.6
organ stop 711.19
chronicle 832.9
list 871.1
v be heard 48.12
limit 210.5
represent 349.8
preserve 397.8
get across 521.5
record 549.15
be taught 570.11
act 704.29
agree 788.6
list 871.8
protect 1008.18
register a complaint 115.15
registered trademark
patent 210.3
label 517.13
registered voter 609.23
registrar
recorder 549.13
clerk 550.1
accountant 628.7

registration
  register 549.14
  index 871.7
registry record 549.1
  registry office 549.3
  memorandum 549.4
  registration 549.14
  account book 628.4
  chronicle 832.9
  list 871.1
  index 871.7
regress
  n regression 163.1
  reversion 859.1
  v go backwards 163.5
  move 172.5
  be behind 217.8
  deteriorate 393.16
  relapse 394.4
  revert 859.4
regret
  n remorse 113.1
  regrets 113.1
  apology 658.2
  v deplore 113.6
regrettable
  distressing 98.20
  much to be regretted 113.10
  terrible 1000.9
regroup 858.12
regular
  n partisan 609.27
  customer 733.4
  baseball team 745.2
  adj gradual 245.5
  downright 247.12
  symmetric 264.4
  smooth 287.10
  typical 349.15
  customary 373.13
  habitual 373.14
  uniform 781.5
  thorough 794.10
  orderly 807.6
  constant 847.5
  systematic 850.6
  usual 869.9
  ordinary 1005.8
regularity
  symmetry 264.1
  smoothness 287.1
  constancy 781.2
  order 807.1
  continualness 847.2
  regularness 850.1
  normality 869.1
regulate direct 573.8
  govern 612.12
  legalize 673.9
  make uniform 781.4
  make agree 788.7
  order 807.4
  organize 808.10
  exercise influence 894.8
regulation
  n rule 419.2
  directive 420.3
  direction 573.1
  government 612.1
  law 673.3
  adjustment 788.4
  organization 808.2
  principle 869.4
  adj customary 373.13
  preceptive 419.4
  usual 869.9
regulatory
  directing 573.12
  governing 612.18
regurgitate flow 238.16
  repeat 849.7
  vomit 909.26
  pulp 1063.5
rehabilitate
  restore 396.11
  justify 600.9
  re-form 858.12
  recondition 858.14
rehash
  n iteration 849.2
  summation 1017.11
  v paraphrase 341.13
  iterate 849.8
  sum up 1017.19
rehearse
  report 552.11
  train 568.13
  practice 704.32
  narrate 719.6
  tell a story 722.6
  iterate 849.8
  sum up 1017.19
reheat 1020.17
reheated 1020.29
reign
  n governance 417.5
  government 612.1
  influence 894.1
  v rule 612.14
  prevail 864.10
reigning
  governing 612.18
  prevalent 864.12
reign of terror
  terrorization 127.7
  despotism 612.10
reimburse
  make restitution 481.5
  repay 624.11
rein
  n restraint 428.1
  shackle 428.4
  v restrain 428.7
reincarnate
  repeat 849.7
  materialize 1052.9
reindeer
  beast of burden 176.8
  hoofed animal 311.5
reinforce
  n supporter 901.2
  v strengthen 15.13
  intensify 251.5
  add to 253.5
  bolster 449.12
  support 901.21
  confirm 957.11
  stiffen 1046.9
reinforcements 449.8
rein in slow 175.9
  restrain 428.7
reins 573.5
reinstate
  restore 396.11
  justify 600.9
reinstitute
  reproduce 78.7
  restore 396.11
reinvest restore 396.11
  invest 729.17
reissue
  n reproduction 78.1
  print 548.3
  iteration 849.2
  v reproduce 78.7
  print 548.14
  monetize 728.26
  iterate 849.8
reiterate
  v iterate 849.8
  persist 856.5
  adj repeated 849.12
reject
  n derelict 370.4
  discard 390.3
  v repudiate 372.2
  discard 390.7
  refuse 442.3
  prohibit 444.3
  contradict 451.6
  disapprove 510.10
  ostracize 586.6
  exclude 773.4
  eject 909.13
  vomit 909.26
  disbelieve 955.5
  refuse to believe 956.3
rejoice cheer 109.7
  jubilate 116.5
rejoice in 95.13
rejoinder answer 939.1
  rebuttal 939.2
rejuvenate
  make young 301.8
  revive 396.16
rekindle revive 396.16
  ignite 1020.22
relapse
  n regression 163.1
  apostasy 363.2
  lapse 394.1
  conversion 858.1
  reversion 859.1
  v regress 163.5
  invert 205.5
  deteriorate 393.16
  lapse 394.4
  go wrong 654.9
  defect 858.13
  revert 859.4
relate state 524.23
  report 552.11
  narrate 719.6
  tell a story 722.6
  associate 775.6
  compare 943.4
  sum up 1017.19
related kindred 559.6
  connected 775.9
  akin 775.10
relate to
  communicate with 343.8
  refer to 775.5
relation meaning 518.1
  blood relationship 559.1
  fiction 722.1
  narration 722.2
  story 722.3
  connection 775.1
  relationship 775.1
  involvement 898.1
  comparison 943.1
relations
  copulation 75.7
  kinfolk 559.2
  relationship 775.1
  affairs 831.4
relationship
  blood relationship 559.1
  relation 775.1
relative
  relational 775.7
  comparative 943.8
relative humidity 1065.2
relatives 559.2
relativity
  fourth dimension 158.6
  dependence 775.2
  correlation 777.1
  uncertainty 971.1
relativity theory 1018.1
relax
  v unlax 20.7
  compose oneself 106.7
  relieve 120.5
  release 120.6
  be at ease 121.8
  have pity 145.4
  slow 175.9
  not stand on ceremony 581.2
  unbend 670.9
  entertain 743.21
  amuse oneself 743.22
  loosen 804.3
  pause 857.9
  allow for 959.5
  soften 1047.6
  yield 1047.7
  interj cease! 857.13
relay
  n shift 825.3
  v transfer 176.10
relay station 1034.6
release
  n deliverance 120.2
  death 307.1
  press release 352.3
  escape 369.1
  rescue 398.1
  exemption 430.8
  freeing 431.2
  permission 443.1
  relinquishment 475.1
  information 551.1
  message 552.4
  acquittal 601.1
  acknowledgment 627.2
  game 750.2
  disbandment 771.3
  v free 120.6
  rescue 398.3
  exempt 430.14
  unhand 431.5
  extricate 431.7

permit 443.9
let go 475.4
acquit 601.4
disband 771.8
detach 802.10
dismiss 909.19
relegate commit 478.16
exclude 773.4
banish 909.17
relent have pity 145.4
submit 433.6
be moderate 670.5
yield 1047.7
relentless pitiless 146.3
industrious 330.22
resolute 359.11
persevering 360.8
unyielding 361.9
firm 425.7
constant 847.5
inevitable 963.15
relevant
pertinent 775.11
apt 788.10
reliability
trustworthiness 644.6
stability 855.1
believability 953.8
dependability 970.4
reliable
trustworthy 644.19
stable 855.12
believable 953.24
evidential 957.16
dependable 970.17
unhazardous 1007.5
relic remainder 256.1
corpse 307.16
record 549.1
antiquity 842.6
back number 842.8
memento 989.7
relief remedy 86.1
easement 120.1
consolation 121.4
welfare 143.5
pity 145.1
outline 211.2
protuberance 283.2
lightening 298.3
aid 449.1
reinforcements 449.8
subsidy 478.8
welfarism 611.7
relievo 715.3
turn 825.2
interim 826.1
substitute 862.2
relief pitcher 745.2
relieve give relief 120.5
comfort 121.6
lighten 298.6
aid 449.11
play 745.5
take one's turn 825.5
substitute for 862.5
disembarrass 1014.9
relieve of 480.21
relieve oneself
excrete 12.12
lighten 120.7
speak up 524.21
relight revive 396.16
ignite 1020.22
religion
religious belief 675.1
theology 676.1
piety 692.1
system of belief 953.3
religious
n clergy 699.16
adj meticulous 339.12
conscientious 644.15
theistic 675.25
theological 676.4
sacred 685.7
pious 692.8
exact 973.17
religious ceremony 580.4
religious discourse 543.3
religious faith 675.1
religious holiday 850.4
religious order 675.3
religious rites
celebration 487.1
ritualism 701.1
relinquish
give up 370.7
cease to use 390.4
surrender 433.8
resign 448.2
yield 475.3
discontinue 857.6
reliquary tomb 309.16
monument 549.12
shrine 703.4
church vessels 703.11
relish
n taste 62.1
savor 63.2
flavoring 63.3
zest 68.2
passion 93.2
pleasure 95.1
liking 100.2
appetite 100.7
v eat 8.20
savor 63.5
enjoy 95.13
relocate settle 159.17
remove 176.11
reluctant slow 175.10
renitent 325.6
resistant 453.5
rely on hope 124.7
rest on 901.22
depend on 953.16
trust 953.17
remain be still 173.7
be present 221.6
inhabit 225.7
be left 256.5
endure 827.6
persist 853.5
continue 856.3
remainder
difference 255.8
remains 256.1
part 793.1
subsequence 835.1
surplus 993.5
remains
remainder 256.1
corpse 307.16
record 549.1
antiquity 842.6
remake reproduce 78.7
reconstruct 396.18
change 852.7
remand
n commitment 429.4
restitution 481.1
v imprison 429.17
commit 478.16
restore 481.4
remark
n interjection 213.2
aspersion 512.4
statement 524.3
commentary 556.2
attention 983.1
v comment 524.24
heed 983.6
remarkable
wonderful 122.10
outstanding 247.10
extraordinary 870.14
notable 997.19
remarry 563.15
remedial
curative 86.39
relieving 120.9
tonic 396.22
helpful 449.21
remedy
n cure 86.1
relief 120.1
reparation 396.6
therapy 396.7
aid 449.1
counteractant 900.3
v cure 86.38
treat 91.24
rectify 396.13
heal 396.15
aid 449.11
remember
recall 989.10
remind 989.20
remembrance
celebration 487.1
monument 549.12
posthumous fame 662.7
memory 837.4
recollection 989.1
remembering 989.4
reminder 989.6
memento 989.7
remind 989.20
reminder
memorandum 549.4
remembrance 989.6
reminisce 989.11
reminiscence
memory 837.4
remembering 989.4
remiss indolent 331.19
negligent 340.10
lax 426.4
dilatory 846.17
remission relief 120.1
pardon 148.2
decline 252.2
reduction 255.2
restitution 481.1
acquittal 601.1
modulation 670.2
pause 857.3
remit relieve 120.5
have pity 145.4
forgive 148.3
send 176.15
abate 252.8
imprison 429.17
exempt 430.14
commit 478.16
restore 481.4
acquit 601.4
pay 624.10
be moderate 670.5
relax 670.9
remittance
subsidy 478.8
payment 624.1
remnant
n remainder 256.1
adj remaining 256.7
remodel remake 396.18
re-form 858.12
remonstrate
object 333.5
dissuade 379.3
admonish 422.6
offer resistance 453.3
remora adhesive 803.4
curb 1012.7
remorse regret 113.1
guilt 656.1
remorseless
unregretful 114.4
pitiless 146.3
remote aloof 141.12
distant 261.8
reticent 344.10
standoffish 583.6
secluded 584.8
selfish 651.5
farfetched 776.8
remote control 1041.4
remote past 837.3
remote possibility
possibility 966.1
small chance 972.9
remove
n degree 245.1
v divest 6.5
take off 6.6
release 120.6
move 176.11
quit 188.9
extract 192.10
subtract 255.9
murder 308.16
discard 390.7
exterminate 395.14
depose 447.4
eliminate 773.5
detach 802.10
eject 909.13
dismiss 909.19
evacuate 909.22
removed distant 261.8
reticent 344.10

aloof 583.6
secluded 584.8
unrelated 776.6
separated 802.21
alone 872.8
remove from office 447.4
REM sleep
sleepiness 22.1
deep sleep 22.5
remunerate
remedy 396.13
make restitution 481.5
pay 624.10
renaissance 396.3
Renaissance man 413.3
renascent
reproductive 78.14
redivivus 396.24
rend pain 26.7
injure 393.13
demolish 395.17
wrest 480.22
sever 802.11
render
extraction 192.16
do 328.6
translate 341.12
communicate 343.7
represent 349.8
describe 349.9
execute 437.9
give 478.12
deliver 478.13
pay 624.10
play 708.39
convert 858.11
melt 1020.21
render a service 143.12
render assistance 449.11
rendering extract 192.7
rendition 341.2
representation 349.1
description 349.2
execution 708.30
rendezvous
n tryst 582.9
assembly 770.2
v come together 770.16
rendition extract 192.7
rendering 341.2
representation 349.1
description 349.2
restitution 481.1
execution 708.30
renegade
n apostate 363.5
sacrilegist 694.3
defector 858.8
adj apostate 363.11
impious 694.6
traitorous 858.20
nonobservant 435.5
renege
n recant 363.8
v abandon 370.5
disregard 435.3
repeal 445.2
be unfaithful 645.12
defect 858.13
renew refresh 9.2
stimulate 105.13
revive 396.16
renovate 396.17
innovate 841.5
repeat 849.7
change 852.7
resume 856.6
re-form 858.12
renewable
remediable 396.25
convertible 858.18
renewable energy 1021.7
renitent
reluctant 325.6
resistant 453.5
counteractive 900.8
rigid 1046.11
renounce
n recant 363.8
v deny 335.4
give up 370.7
reject 372.2
cease to use 390.4
surrender 433.8
relinquish 475.3
swear off 668.8
cease 857.6
renovate
reproduce 78.7
renew 396.17
recover 481.6
innovate 841.5
perfect 392.1
renown glory 247.2
repute 662.1
notability 997.2
rent
n trauma 85.38
crack 224.2
rental 615.6
hire 630.8
break 802.4
v cleave 224.4
inhabit 225.7
open 292.11
lease 615.15
rent out 615.16
adj cleft 224.7
impaired 393.27
severed 802.23
rental car 179.13
rent control 630.5
renter lodger 227.8
tenant 470.4
reoccupy 481.6
reoccur repeat 849.11
recur 850.5
reopen 856.6
reorder 808.13
reorganize
reproduce 78.7
rearrange 808.13
repair
n reparation 396.6
good condition
765.3
v perfect 392.11
mend 396.14
atone 658.4
repairman 396.10
repair shop 739.5
repair to 177.25
reparation
compensation 338.1
repair 396.6
restitution 481.2
recompense 624.3
atonement 658.1
repartee
witticism 489.7
conversation 541.1
answer 939.1
repast 8.5
repatriate restore 481.4
rehabilitate 858.14
repave 295.22
repay
compensate 338.4
be profitable 472.13
make restitution 481.5
requite 506.5
pay back 624.11
repeal
n revocation 445.1
v abolish 395.13
revoke 445.2
repeat
n repetend 849.5
encore 849.6
duplication 874.2
v reproduce 78.7
imitate 336.5
publish 352.10
redo 849.7
recur 849.11
become cyclic 850.5
duplicate 874.3
memorize 989.17
repeatedly 847.6
repeat performance
encore 849.6
repeat 874.2
repeat word for word 849.7
repel disgust 64.4
offend 98.11
cause dislike 99.6
reject 372.2
disincline 379.4
rebuff 442.5
resist 453.2
fend off 460.10
repulse 908.3
prevent 1012.14
repellent
offensive 98.18
resistant 453.5
repulsive 908.4
hideous 1015.11
repent
v think better of 113.7
adj creeping 177.39
reptile 311.48
repentant
penitent 113.9
atoning 658.7
repercussion
concussion 671.8
execution 708.30
impact 887.2
counteraction 900.1
recoil 903.2
repertoire store 386.1
repertory 704.9
repertory company 707.11
repetition
reproduction 78.1
triteness 117.3
tediousness 118.2
imitation 336.1
duplicate 785.3
constancy 847.2
redundancy 849.1
regularity 850.1
continuance 856.1
replication 874.1
repetitive
habitual 373.14
diffuse 538.11
same 781.6
continuous 812.8
repetitious 849.14
ceaseless 856.7
rephrase 341.13
replace
restore 396.11
depose 447.4
come after 835.3
substitute for 862.5
dismiss 909.19
replacement
restoration 396.1
deposal 447.2
successor 817.4
sequel 835.2
exchange 862.1
substitute 862.2
replant 91.24
replay 849.6
replenish provide 385.7
restore 396.11
complete 794.6
replete full 794.11
plentiful 991.7
overfull 993.20
satiated 994.6
replica
reproduction 336.3
the same 778.3
duplicate 785.3
replicate copy 785.8
double 873.5
duplicate 874.3
reply
n communication 343.1
retaliation 506.1
letter 553.2
defense 600.2
reaction 903.1
answer 939.1
v acknowledge 553.11
defend 600.10
react 903.5
answer 939.4
répondez s'il vous plaît 553.15
report
n crash 56.1
account 349.3
announcement 352.2
publicity 352.4
bulletin 549.7
information 551.1
rumor 552.6
commentary 556.2
repute 662.1

explosion 671.7
paean 696.3
note 709.14
criticism 946.2
v present oneself 221.11
communicate 343.7
announce 352.12
inform 551.8
give a report 552.11
accuse 599.7
narrate 719.6
tell a tale 722.6
pass judgment 946.13
reportage 552.1
report card 549.7
reporter
informant 551.5
newsmonger 552.9
journalist 555.4
spokesman 576.5
repose
n rest 20.1
respite 20.2
sleep 22.2
quiescence 173.1
recumbency 201.2
leisure 402.1
moderation 670.1
v rest 20.6
be located 159.10
deposit 159.14
be still 173.7
lie 201.5
trust 953.17
repository
storehouse 386.6
friend 588.1
treasury 729.13
repossess 481.6
reprehensible
blameworthy 510.25
wicked 654.16
guilty 656.3
terrible 1000.9
represent
be in front 216.7
manifest 348.5
delineate 349.8
describe 349.9
mediate 466.6
act for 576.14
enact 704.30
substitute for 862.5
visualize 986.15
representation
spectacle 33.7
reproduction 336.3
display 348.2
portrayal 349.1
delineation 349.1
description 349.2
representative 349.7
sham 354.3
vote 371.6
sign 517.1
bar 597.4
acting 704.8
picture 712.11
copy 785.1
duplicate 785.3
substitution 862.1
idea 932.1
representative
n representation 349.7
sign 517.1
deputy 576.1
legislator 610.3
example 786.2
substitute 862.2
adj representational 349.13
descriptive 349.14
indicative 517.23
deputy 576.16
model 786.8
repress inhibit 106.8
blunt 286.2
cover up 345.8
suppress 428.8
prohibit 444.3
retain 474.5
domineer 612.16
hinder 1012.10
reprieve
n release 120.2
pity 145.1
pardon 148.2
respite 601.3
delay 846.2
v release 120.6
have pity 145.4
respite 601.5
reprimand
n reproof 510.5
stigma 661.6
v reprove 510.17
stigmatize 661.9
reprint
n print 548.3
copy 785.5
iteration 849.2
v reproduce 78.7
print 548.14
iterate 849.8
reprisal requital 506.2
revenge 507.1
penalty 603.1
reprise 849.6
repro duplicate 785.3
print 785.5
duplication 874.1
reproach
n reproof 510.5
accusation 599.1
disgrace 661.5
stigma 661.6
v censure 510.13
accuse 599.7
disgrace 661.8
reprobate
n recreant 660.4
v censure 510.13
adj knavish 645.17
corrupt 654.14
wicked 654.16
unsacred 686.3
unregenerate 695.18
reproduce grow 14.2
remake 78.7
grow 259.7
copy 778.6
replicate 785.8
repeat 849.7
duplicate 874.3
produce 890.7
reproduction
bodily development 14.1
remaking 78.1
making 78.1
procreation 78.2
growth 259.3
replication 336.3
picture 712.11
duplication 785.2
double 785.3
repetition 849.1
imitation 874.1
proliferation 890.2
reproductive organs 2.13
reprove 510.17
reptile
n creature 311.3
reptilian 311.25
beast 660.6
adj creeping 177.39
reptilian 311.48
republic country 232.1
government 612.4
republican 612.17
repudiate
n recant 363.8
v deny 335.4
reject 372.2
refuse 442.3
not pay 625.6
exclude 773.4
repugnant
offensive 98.18
negative 335.5
oppositional 451.8
hostile 589.10
contrary 779.6
disagreeing 789.6
counteractive 900.8
hideous 1015.11
repulse
n snub 157.2
rejection 372.1
discomfiture 412.2
refuse 442.2
resistance 453.1
recoil 903.2
rebuff 908.2
v snub 157.5
reject 372.2
rebuff 442.5
resist 453.2
fend off 460.10
repel 908.3
repulsive
malodorous 71.5
filthy 80.23
offensive 98.18
repellent 908.4
terrible 1000.9
hideous 1015.11
reputable
honest 644.13
highly reputed 662.15
influential 894.13
notable 997.19
reputation 997.2
repute
n reputation 662.1
custom 731.6
influence 894.1
notability 997.2
v suppose 951.10
request
n proposal 439.2
expressed desire 440.1
asking 440.1
v ask 440.9
requiem dirge 115.6
last offices 309.4
sacred music 708.17
requiescat in pace 309.24
require
prescribe 420.9
demand 421.5
oblige 424.5
charge 630.12
obligate 641.12
entail 772.4
determine 886.12
need 963.9
want 992.7
requirement
demand 421.1
study 568.8
requisite 963.2
requisite
n condition 959.2
requirement 963.2
adj needful 963.13
requisition
n summons 420.5
demand 421.1
request 440.1
appropriation 480.4
requirement 963.2
v summon 420.11
demand 421.5
request 440.9
appropriate 480.19
requite remedy 396.13
make restitution 481.5
quit 506.5
repay 624.11
interchange 863.4
rerun 1034.18
rescind delete 255.12
repeal 445.2
rescue
n escape 369.1
saving 398.1
deliverance 398.1
liberation 431.1
aid 449.1
v redeem 396.12
come to the rescue 398.3
liberate 431.4
aid 449.11
research
n investigation 938.4
v search 938.31
experiment 942.8
research and development 942.1
researcher
seeker 938.18
experimenter 942.6
research paper 556.1
resection 802.2
resell 734.8

resemble be like 784.7
be comparable 943.7
resent
be resentful 152.12
envy 154.3
reservation
demur 325.2
objection 333.2
preserve 397.7
stipulation 421.2
engagement 615.4
doubt 955.2
qualification 959.1
prearrangement 965.1
reserve
n restraint 139.3
communicativeness 343.3
reticence 344.3
reserves 386.3
preserve 397.7
conciseness 537.1
v save 386.12
not use 390.5
allot 477.9
employ 615.14
postpone 846.9
prearrange 965.4
adj unused 390.12
substitute 862.8
reserve forces 449.8
reservoir
n lake 241.1
reserve 386.3
storehouse 386.6
v store 386.10
reset sharpen 285.7
plant 1069.18
reshape reproduce 78.7
change 852.7
re-form 858.12
reshuffle arrange 437.8
rearrange 808.13
reside settle 159.17
inhabit 225.7
residence
habitation 225.1
abode 228.1
resident
n doctor 90.4
inhabitant 227.2
tenant 470.4
diplomat 576.6
benefice-holder 699.7
adj residentiary 225.13
intrinsic 767.7
residential 228.32
residual 256.8
residue
remainder 256.1
extract 893.3
resign give up 370.7
cease to use 390.4
submit 433.6
demit 448.2
relinquish 475.3
deliver 478.13
resign oneself to 134.7
resiliency
lightheartedness 109.3
pliancy 1047.2
elasticity 1048.1
resilient
lighthearted 109.12
recuperative 396.23
changeable 854.6
recoiling 903.10
pliant 1047.9
elastic 1048.7
resin
n gum 1057.1
v resinize 1057.2
resist oppose 451.3
contend against 451.4
withstand 453.2
counteract 900.6
hinder 1012.10
resistance
immunity 83.4
defense mechanism 92.23
suppression 92.24
drag 184.27
refusal 325.1
ungovernability 361.4
opposition 451.1
defiance 453.1
withstanding 453.1
defense 460.1
irregular 461.16
counteraction 900.1
hindrance 1012.1
ohm 1032.13
conductance 1033.9
friction 1044.1
hardness 1046.1
toughness 1049.1
resistance movement revolt 327.4
resistance 453.1
resolute
zealous 101.9
resolved 359.11
persevering 360.8
trial 403.16
tough 492.18
resolution
distinctness 31.2
zeal 101.2
will 323.1
determination 359.1
resolve 359.1
perseverance 360.1
intention 380.1
decay 393.6
endeavor 403.1
proposal 439.2
adjustment 465.4
fortitude 492.6
legislation 613.5
passage 708.24
harmonization 709.2
analysis 801.1
itemization 801.2
dissection 802.5
disintegration 806.1
end 820.1
conversion 858.1
solution 940.1
judgment 946.1
verdict 946.5
resolve
n resolution 359.1
intention 380.1
v will 323.2
determine 359.7
intend 380.4
endeavor 403.5
reconcile 465.8
analyze 801.6
itemize 801.7
end 820.5
solve 940.2
decide 946.11
resolvent
n solvent 1064.4
adj disintegrative 806.5
solvent 1064.8
resonance
resoundingness 54.1
reaction 903.1
oscillation 916.1
wave 916.4
resonate vibrate 54.6
oscillate 916.10
resort haunt 228.27
instrumentality 384.3
entertainment 743.13
expedient 995.2
recourse 1009.2
resound
n reverberation 54.2
v sound 50.14
din 53.7
reverberate 54.7
repeat 849.11
resounding triumph 409.3
resource supply 386.2
reserve 386.3
source of supply 386.4
skill 413.1
expedient 995.2
recourse 1009.2
resourceful
skillful 413.22
versatile 413.25
cunning 415.12
respect
n observation 27.2
aspect 33.3
esteem 155.1
regard 155.1
observance 434.1
courtesy 504.1
approval 509.1
good terms 587.3
duty 641.1
honor 662.3
particular 766.3
relevance 775.4
outlook 978.2
attention 983.1
v be considerate 143.10
entertain respect for 155.4
observe 434.2
approve 509.9
relate to 775.5
respectable
honest 644.13
reputable 662.15
tolerable 999.20
mediocre 1005.7
respectful
regardful 155.8
observant 434.4
courteous 504.14
approbatory 509.16
dutiful 641.13
respective
proportionate 477.13
mutual 777.11
particular 865.12
respects regards 155.3
compliments 504.8
respiration 2.21
respirator 91.19
respiratory 2.32
respite
n recess 20.2
release 120.2
reprieve 601.3
interim 826.1
delay 846.2
pause 857.3
v reprieve 601.5
resplendent
illustrious 662.19
gorgeous 1016.21
bright 1025.32
respond sense 24.6
be affected 93.11
defend 600.10
interchange 863.4
react 903.5
answer 939.4
respondent
n accused 599.6
answerer 939.3
adj reactive 903.9
answering 939.6
response sensation 24.1
feeling 93.1
sympathy 93.5
communication 343.1
meaning 518.1
defense 600.2
paean 696.3
responsory report 708.23
passage 708.24
impact 887.2
reaction 903.1
answer 939.1
responsibility
supervision 573.2
commission 615.1
incumbency 641.2
trustworthiness 644.6
attribution 888.1
operation 889.1
liability 897.1
responsible
chargeable 623.9
answerable 641.17
trustworthy 644.19
liable 897.5
responsive
sensitive 24.12
sympathetic 93.20
willing 324.5
communicational 343.9
influenceable 894.15
reactive 903.9
answering 939.6
pliant 1047.9
elastic 1048.7

rest
  n respite 20.1
  repose 20.1
  silence 51.1
  quiescence 173.1
  step 193.5
  remainder 256.1
  death 307.1
  leisure 402.1
  musical pause 709.21
  pause 857.3
  supporter 901.2
  fulcrum 906.3
  v repose 20.6
  be situated 159.10
  deposit 159.14
  be still 173.7
  ride at anchor 182.16
  remain 256.5
  do nothing 329.2
  plead 598.19
  calm 670.7
  pause 857.9
  depend 959.6
rest assured
  hope 124.7
  be confident 953.14
  be certain 970.9
restate
  paraphrase 341.13
  iterate 849.8
restaurant
  eating place 8.17
  dining room 197.11
  workplace 739.1
rest easy
  be content 107.5
  persuade oneself 375.24
restful vacational 20.10
  comfortable 121.11
  quiescent 173.12
  pacific 464.9
  tranquilizing 670.15
restimulate 396.16
resting place
  tomb 309.16
  end 820.1
  supporter 901.2
rest in peace 309.24
restitution
  compensation 338.1
  restoration 396.1
  reparation 481.2
  reimbursement 624.2
  recompense 624.3
  atonement 658.1
  reversion 859.1
restive restless 105.27
  discontented 108.7
  impatient 135.6
  reluctant 325.6
  defiant 327.10
  obstinate 361.8
  ungovernable 361.12
restless wakeful 23.7
  restive 105.27
  discontented 108.7
  impatient 135.6
  bustling 330.20
  inconstant 854.7
  agitated 917.16
rest one's case 598.19
rest on one's laurels
  be content 107.5
  take it easy 331.15
restore vitaminize 7.20
  reproduce 78.7
  put back 396.11
  return 481.4
  justify 600.9
  rehabilitate 858.14
  aid 449.11
  recover 481.6
restrain limit 210.5
  compel 424.4
  constrain 428.7
  bind 428.10
  confine 429.12
  simplify 499.5
  moderate 670.6
  qualify 959.3
  hinder 1012.10
restraint
  suppression 92.24
  equanimity 106.3
  reserve 139.3
  limitation 210.2
  reticence 344.3
  self-control 359.5
  compulsion 424.1
  constraint 428.1
  shackle 428.4
  confinement 429.1
  subjection 432.1
  restrainedness 496.4
  elegance 533.1
  temperance 668.1
  moderation 670.1
  hindrance 1012.1
restraint of trade
  restraint 428.1
  commerce 731.1
restrict bound 210.5
  narrow 270.11
  limit 428.9
  confine 429.12
  allot 477.9
  specialize 866.4
  qualify 959.3
restricted
  bounded 210.7
  out of bounds 210.8
  narrow 270.14
  secret 345.11
  limited 428.15
  confined 429.19
  specialized 866.5
  qualified 959.10
Restricted 706.1
rest room latrine 12.10
  bathing place 79.10
  bathroom 197.26
restructure
  reproduce 78.7
  rearrange 808.13
  change 852.7
rest stop 857.2
result
  n event 831.1
  effect 887.1
  product 893.1
  solution 940.1
  v turn out 831.7
  follow after 835.3
  ensue 887.4
resultant
  n effect 887.1
  adj happening 831.9
  resulting 887.6
resume recover 481.6
  iterate 849.8
  repeat 849.11
  recommence 856.6
résumé
  summary 557.2
  history 719.1
  iteration 849.2
resupply 385.1
resurface floor 295.22
  repeat 849.11
  recur 850.5
  recur to the mind 989.15
resurgent
  reproductive 78.14
  renascent 396.24
resurrect
  reproduce 78.7
  revive 396.16
resurrection
  reproduction 78.1
  revival 396.3
  removal to heaven 681.11
resuscitate
  stimulate 105.13
  come to life 306.10
  revive 396.16
  aid 449.11
  resume 856.6
retail
  n sale 734.1
  v publish 352.10
  deal in 731.16
  sell 734.8
  disperse 771.4
  iterate 849.8
  adj commercial 731.22
  sales 734.13
retailer provider 385.6
  merchant 730.2
retail store 736.1
retain reserve 386.12
  keep 474.5
  employ 615.14
  stabilize 855.7
  sustain 856.4
  keep in memory 989.13
retainer
  hanger-on 138.6
  dependent 577.1
  fee 624.5
retaining wall 901.4
retake
  n recovery 481.3
  screen test 706.5
  motion picture 714.8
  v recover 481.6
retaliate
  compensate 338.4
  retort 506.4
  revenge 507.4
  interchange 863.4
retard slow 175.9
  restrain 428.7
  delay 846.8
  hinder 1012.10
retardant 453.5
retardation
  slowing 175.4
  restraint 428.1
  delay 846.2
  mental deficiency 922.9
  hindrance 1012.1
retch feel disgust 99.4
  vomit 909.26
retell narrate 722.6
  iterate 849.8
retention refusal 442.1
  retainment 474.1
  tenacity 803.3
  retentiveness 989.3
rethink
  reconsider 931.15
  re-examine 938.27
reticence 344.3
reticulum
  network 170.3
  cell 305.4
retina 2.9
retinue staff 577.11
  attendance 769.6
retire go to bed 22.17
  efface oneself 139.7
  retreat 163.6
  recede 168.2
  quit 188.9
  be concave 284.12
  be uncommunicative 344.6
  scrap 390.8
  depose 447.4
  resign 448.2
  keep to oneself 583.4
  seclude oneself 584.7
  pay in full 624.13
  dismiss 909.19
retired private 345.13
  disused 390.10
  leisure 402.5
  in retirement 448.3
  secluded 584.8
retirement home 1009.4
retiring
  reserved 139.11
  receding 168.5
  concave 284.16
  reticent 344.10
retold 849.12
retool 1040.13
retort
  n witticism 489.7
  retaliation 506.1
  recrimination 599.3
  instrument of conversion 858.10
  countermeasure 900.5
  answer 939.1
  vaporizer 1067.6
  v retaliate 506.4
  answer 939.4
retouch
  tamper with 354.17
  perfect 392.11
retrace one's steps
  turn back 163.8
  re-examine 938.26

retract
n recant 363.8
v withdraw 168.3
deny 335.4
repeal 445.2
relinquish 475.3
retraction
recession 168.1
reduction 255.2
denial 335.2
recantation 363.3
repeal 445.1
relinquishment 475.1
retread
n renovation 396.4
v repair 396.14
militarize 458.20
retreat
n reculade 163.2
recession 168.1
departure 188.1
sanctum 197.8
summerhouse 228.12
decline 252.2
evening 315.2
hiding place 346.4
surrender 433.2
seclusion 584.1
hideaway 584.6
recoil 903.3
asylum 1009.4
recess 1009.5
v sound a retreat 163.6
recede 168.2
quit 188.9
incline 204.10
be concave 284.12
hesitate 362.7
pull back 903.7
retrenchment
curtailment 252.4
reduction 255.2
shortening 268.3
restraint 428.1
economizing 635.2
retrial 598.5
retribution
reparation 481.2
reprisal 506.2
punishment 604.1
recompense 624.3
retrieval
reclamation 396.2
rescue 398.1
recovery 481.3
access 1042.8
retrieve
n recovery 481.3
v fetch 176.16
redeem 396.12
rescue 398.3
recover 481.6
retroactive
regressive 163.11
back 837.12
reactive 903.9
retrocede regress 163.5
recede 168.2
revert 859.4
retroflection motion backwards 163.1
inversion 205.1
retrograde
v regress 163.5
deteriorate 393.16
revert 859.4
adj regressive 163.11
rear 217.9
deteriorating 393.45
reversionary 859.7
retrogress 393.18
retrorocket
rocket 1074.2
spacecraft 1075.2
retrospect
n remembering 989.4
v remember 989.10
retrospective 837.4
return
n regression 163.1
homecoming 186.3
relapse 394.1
recovery 396.8
gain 472.3
restitution 481.1
retaliation 506.1
reimbursement 624.2
recompense 624.3
dividend 738.7
game 748.2
repetition 849.1
periodicity 850.2
reversion 859.1
production 893.2
reaction 903.1
answer 939.1
signal 1036.11
v reverberate 54.7
regress 163.5
turn back 163.8
restore 396.11
give back 481.4
yield 627.4
play tennis 748.3
repeat 849.11
recur 850.5
revert 859.4
interchange 863.4
answer 939.4
reflect 1036.16
return a verdict 946.13
returnee 859.3
return match 849.6
returns gain 472.3
report 549.7
election returns 609.21
receipts 627.1
roll 871.6
return the favor 863.4
return to the fold
n reversion 859.1
v revert 859.4
reunion
reconciliation 465.3
social gathering 582.10
reunite 465.8
reusable 387.23
Reuters 555.3
rev accelerate 174.10
drive 756.4
revamp revise 392.12
renovate 396.17
change 852.7
reveal unclose 292.12
manifest 348.5
disclose 351.4
divulge 351.5
signify 517.17
unfold 861.7
uncover 941.4
revealing
n disclosure 351.1
adj disclosive 351.10
transparent 1029.4
reveille awakening 23.2
morning 314.1
call 517.16
revel
n treat 95.3
celebration 487.1
lark 743.6
v go on a spree 88.28
rejoice 116.5
make merry 743.24
revelation
visibility 31.1
appearance 33.1
surprise 131.2
manifestation 348.1
disclosure 351.1
divine revelation 683.10
unfolding 861.2
intuition 934.1
discovery 941.1
Revelation 683.4
reveler drinker 88.11
player 743.18
revenge
n compensation 338.1
reprisal 506.2
vengeance 507.1
v avenge 507.4
revenue 627.1
reverberate
resound 54.7
repeat 849.11
answer 939.4
reverence
n respect 155.1
obeisance 155.2
piety 692.1
worship 696.1
crouch 913.3
v respect 155.4
worship 696.11
Reverend title 648.5
clergyman 699.2
reverend
venerable 155.12
reputable 662.15
reverie trance 92.19
thoughtfulness 931.3
abstractedness 985.2
dream 986.9
reverse
n reversal 163.3
inverse 205.4
opposite side 215.3
rear 217.1
about-face 363.1
relapse 394.1
discomfiture 412.2
reversion 859.1
reversal of fortune 1011.3
gear 1040.9
v go into reverse 163.7
backwater 182.34
invert 205.5
misinterpret 342.2
repeal 445.2
transpose 779.5
convert 858.11
revert 859.4
adj contrapositive 215.5
contrary 779.6
reversion reverse 163.3
inversion 205.1
relapse 394.1
restoration 396.1
inheritance 479.2
devolution 629.2
change to a former state 859
reverting 859.1
revert regress 163.5
invert 205.5
be behind 217.8
relapse 394.4
repeat 849.11
retrovert 859.4
revetment 295.12
review
n discussion 541.7
periodical 555.1
commentary 556.2
abridgment 557.1
study 570.3
fiction 722.1
narration 722.2
critical notice 723.2
procession 812.3
iteration 849.2
mature thought 931.5
examination 938.3
re-examination 938.7
criticism 946.2
remembering 989.4
v discuss 541.12
write upon 556.5
study 570.12
brush up 570.14
iterate 849.8
reconsider 931.15
examine 938.24
re-examine 938.27
criticize 946.14
remember 989.10
refresh the memory 989.19
reviewer author 547.15
commentator 556.4
analyzer 718.4
critic 723.4
examiner 938.17
judge 946.7
revile scoff 508.9
berate 510.19
vilify 512.10
revise
n revision 392.4
proof 548.5
v reproduce 78.7
redact 392.12
write 547.19
re-examine 938.27

revisionist
n reformer 392.6
Communist 611.13
adj emendatory 392.16
Communist 611.21
revisit 221.9
revitalize 396.16
revival meeting 696.8
revive refresh 9.2
strengthen 15.13
reproduce 78.7
stimulate 105.13
cheer up 109.9
come to life 306.10
perfect 392.11
revivify 396.16
recover 396.20
aid 449.11
restore 481.6
repeat 849.7
be changed 852.6
change 852.7
resume 856.6
remember 989.10
revoke
n repeal 445.1
v deny 335.4
abolish 395.13
repeal 445.2
revolt
n rebellion 327.4
resistance 453.1
strike 727.5
revolution 860.1
counteraction 900.1
v offend 98.11
rebel 327.7
offer resistance 453.3
strike 727.10
revolutionize 860.4
revolting
offensive 98.18
hideous 1015.11
revolution
n overturn 205.2
revolt 327.4
reform 392.5
anarchy 418.2
disruption 802.3
round 850.3
break 852.2
radical change 860.1
circuit 914.2
rotation 915.1
v revolt 327.7
revolutionary
n rebel 327.5
reformer 392.6
radical 611.12
violent person 671.9
revolutionist 860.3
adj rebellious 327.11
original 337.5
emendatory 392.16
radical 611.20
unruly 671.19
changed 852.10
revulsive 860.5
revolutionist 860.6
counteractive 900.8
revolve
invert 205.5
recur 850.5
circle 914.5
rotate 915.9
think over 931.13
reward
n death 307.1
incentive 375.7
reprisal 506.2
recompense 624.3
award 646.2
v requite 506.5
pay 624.10
reword
paraphrase 341.13
iterate 849.8
rework reproduce 78.7
revise 392.12
rewrite
n revision 392.4
v revise 392.12
write 547.19
RF 1034.12
rhapsodic
overjoyed 95.17
poetic 720.15
rhapsodize
be enthusiastic 101.7
idealize 986.16
rhetoric diction 532.1
style 532.2
public speaking 543.1
eloquence 544.1
grandiloquence 545.1
rhetorical
declamatory 543.12
grandiloquent 545.8
rhetorical question 938.10
rheumatic
n sick person 85.43
adj arthritic 85.61
rheumy
circulatory 2.33
secretory 13.7
Rh factor blood 2.25
antitoxin 86.27
rhinal 2.32
rhinestone 498.6
rhinoceros 311.4
rhinoceros hide 94.3
rhinovirus 85.42
rhombal 278.9
rhubarb
vegetables 10.35
noise 53.4
quarrel 456.6
argumentation 935.4
rhyme
n poetry 720.1
poem 720.4
clink 720.8
assonance 784.6
repetitiousness 849.4
v assonate 720.14
sound similar 784.9
rhymer 720.12
rhythm accent 524.10
harmony 533.2
beat 709.22
meter 720.7
periodicity 850.2
pulsation 916.3
rib bulge 283.3
wife 563.8
ribbed 290.4
ribbing 490.3
ribbon
n strip 271.4
monument 549.12
decoration 646.5
ray 1025.5
v figure 498.9
rib cage 2.2
ribonucleic acid 305.9
ribosome 305.5
rib tickler 489.6
rice paddy 1069.9
rich colorful 35.19
resonant 54.10
flavorful 63.9
oversweet 66.5
humorous 488.5
ornate 498.12
wealthy 618.14
precious 632.10
melodious 708.48
productive 890.9
interesting 983.19
plentiful 991.7
oily 1056.9
richly deserve 639.5
rich man
capitalist 611.15
wealthy man 618.7
richness of meaning 539.1
rich ore 406.5
rich soil 890.6
rich uncle 618.4
ricketiness
infirmity 16.3
old age 303.5
rickety unsteady 16.16
diseased 85.61
deformed 265.12
stricken in years 303.18
loose 804.5
ricksha 179.3
ricochet 903.2
rid 430.31
riddance
escape 369.1
relinquishment 475.1
elimination 773.2
riddle
n refinery 79.13
network 170.3
porousness 292.8
conundrum 522.9
arranger 808.5
the unknown 930.7
bewilderment 971.3
v perforate 292.15
strike dead 308.18
mark 517.19
be incomprehensible 522.10
segregate 773.6
classify 808.11
shoot 904.12
solve 940.2
ride
n drive 177.7
merry-go-round 743.15
v annoy 96.13
be disrespectful 156.6
go for a ride 177.33
go on horseback 177.34
ride at anchor 182.16
weather the storm 182.40
float 182.54
banter 490.6
ridicule 508.8
rest on 901.22
ride a broomstick 690.10
ride and tie
n race 457.12
v alternate 916.13
adv to and fro 916.21
ride down
conquer 412.10
run over 910.7
ride for a fall 493.6
ride full tilt against 459.18
ride herd on
wield authority 417.13
hold a tight hand upon 425.4
supervise 573.10
dominate 612.15
care for 1008.19
drive 1070.8
ride high 298.8
ride it out 855.11
ride off in all directions at once 105.16
ride on a rail
torture 604.16
drive out 909.14
ride out
race 757.5
be safe 1007.2
rider
equestrian 178.8
added to writing 254.2
hunter 311.13
bill 613.9
jockey 757.2
ride roughshod over
conquer 412.10
intimidate 424.7
domineer 612.16
run over 910.7
ride shotgun 1008.18
ride the gravy train
take one's leisure 402.4
live well 1010.10
ride the high horse 141.8
ride the pine 747.4
ride the sea 182.54
ridge
n summit 198.2
head 198.6
back 217.3
ridgeline 237.5
plateau 272.4
bulge 283.3
wrinkle 291.3
v emboss 283.12
wrinkle 291.6
ridicule
n impudence 142.2
disrespect 156.1
contempt 157.1
banter 490.1

derision 508.1
deprecation 510.2
v have the audacity 142.7
disrespect 156.4
disdain 157.3
joke 489.13
deride 508.8
deprecate 510.12
ridiculous
humorous 488.4
absurd 923.11
unbelievable 955.10
impossible 967.7
riding 231.5
riding horse 311.13
rid oneself of
break the habit 374.3
discard 390.7
relinquish 475.3
eliminate 773.5
rife reported 552.15
prevalent 864.12
teeming 884.9
plentiful 991.7
riffraff offal 80.9
rubbish 391.5
rabble 606.3
rifle
n military man 461.6
infantryman 461.9
gun 462.10
v furrow 290.3
plunder 482.17
ransack 938.33
rift
n crack 224.2
valley 237.7
falling-out 456.4
break 802.4
fault 1003.2
blemish 1004.1
v open 292.11
adj cleft 224.7
rig
n wardrobe 5.2
suit 5.6
costume 5.9
equipage 179.5
truck 179.12
rigging 180.12
equipment 385.4
ruler 575.9
v outfit 5.41
tamper with 354.17
plot 381.9
equip 385.8
prearrange 965.5
rigamarole 520.2
rigger
aircraftsman 185.6
electrician 1032.22
rigging rig 180.12
cordage 271.3
intrigue 381.5
equipment 385.4
manipulation 737.20
supporter 901.2
right
n right side 219.1
authority 417.1
rights 430.2
estate 471.4
warrant 600.6
conservative 611.9
rightfulness 637.1
due 639.2
prerogative 642.1
justice 649.1
option 737.21
accuracy 973.5
v remedy 396.13
make agree 788.7
arrange 808.8
adj right-hand 219.4
straight 277.6
decorous 496.10
conventional 579.5
rightful 637.3
honest 644.13
just 649.8
orthodox 687.7
apt 788.10
sane 925.4
accurate 973.16
expedient 995.5
adv directly 161.23
rightward 219.7
very 247.18
rightly 637.4
absolutely 794.15
exactly 973.21
right on! 973.24
excellently 999.22
interj yes 332.18
right-about-face
n reverse 163.3
change of mind 363.1
turnabout 859.1
v do an about-face 163.10
right and left
extensively 158.12
all round 209.13
laterally 218.8
right-angle upright 200.2
perpendicular 200.12
right-angled 278.7
right as rain
adj straight 644.14
adv right! 973.24
right away at once 830.8
promptly 845.15
righteous
right 637.3
honest 644.13
virtuous 653.6
godly 692.9
righteous indignation 152.4
rightful right 637.3
condign 639.8
just 649.8
legal 673.11
genuine 973.15
right hand 616.7
right-hand
starboard 219.4
dexterous 219.5
right-handed 219.5
right-hand man
subordinate 432.5
employee 577.3
right hand 616.7
right of eminent domain 480.5
right off the bat 830.6
right-of-way
superiority 249.1
road 383.5
right on
interj congratulations 149.5
yeah 332.19
phrs that's it 788.13
you better believe it! 973.25
the Right Reverend
n clergyman 699.2
adj the Noble 648.8
right side 219.1
the right stuff 413.4
the right thing right 637.1
fairness 649.3
virtue 653.1
right to vote vote 371.6
suffrage 609.17
rightward clockwise 161.24
to the right 219.7
right wing
right side 219.1
conservative 611.9
right with 788.12
rigid firm 15.18
meticulous 339.12
unyielding 361.9
strict 425.7
formal 580.9
permanent 853.7
immovable 855.15
exact 973.17
stiff 1046.11
rigor acrimony 17.5
meticulousness 339.3
firmness 425.2
asceticism 667.1
violence 671.1
accuracy 973.5
adversity 1011.1
difficulty 1013.1
cold 1023.1
rigidity 1046.2
rigor mortis 307.1
rile annoy 96.13
provoke 152.24
agitate 917.10
rill 238.1
rim
n border 211.4
slope 237.2
felly 280.4
v border 211.10
rime 1023.7
rind exterior 206.2
shallowness 276.1
skin 295.3
lamina 296.2
ring
n ringing 54.3
circle 280.2
encircling thing 280.3
bulge 283.3
telephone call 347.13
fighting 457.9
arena 463.1
jewel 498.6
association 617.1
clique 617.6
insignia 647.1
ecclesiastical insignia 647.4
boxing 754.1
halo 1025.14
atomic cluster 1038.7
v din 53.7
tintinnabulate 54.8
check out 188.13
encircle 209.7
telephone 347.19
ring a bell 903.8
ringer impostor 357.6
substitute 862.2
ring in arrive 186.6
inaugurate 818.11
punch the clock 832.12
substitute 862.4
ringing in the ear 54.3
ringleader
instigator 375.11
leader 574.6
politics 610.7
ringlet lock 3.5
circlet 280.5
coil 281.2
ringmaster
theater man 704.23
circus artist 707.3
rings 725.7
ringside seat 27.8
ring true 973.9
rink playground 743.11
hockey 749.1
lawn bowling 750.3
rinse
n washing 79.5
cleanser 79.17
v wash 79.19
soak 1065.13
riot
n revolt 327.4
free-for-all 457.5
joke 489.6
unruliness 671.3
commotion 810.4
plenty 991.2
v vegetate 310.34
revolt 327.7
contend 457.13
rage 671.11
roister 810.10
riot police 1008.17
rip
n trauma 85.38
drinking spree 88.6
disrespect 156.3
tide 238.13
attempt 403.3
libertine 665.10
break 802.4
v torture 96.18
be disrespectful 156.6
speed 174.9
open 292.11
injure 393.13
wrest 480.22
RIP 309.24
rip cord 181.13
ripe
v ripen 407.8
adj mature 303.13

prepared 405.16
seasoned 407.13
experienced 413.28
marriageable 563.20
complete 794.9
timely 843.9
perfected 1002.9
ripen fester 12.15
grow 14.2
enlarge 259.7
mature 303.9
develop 392.10
bloom 407.8
evolve 861.5
perfect 1002.5
ripe old age 303.5
rip into
lift one's hand against 457.14
attack 459.15
criticize 510.14
rip off 482.16
rip-off fake 354.13
hoax 356.7
theft 482.4
ripped high 87.24
drunk 88.33
tortured 96.25
ripping
n extortion 192.6
severance 802.2
adj excellent 999.13
ripple
n splash 52.5
rapids 238.10
wave 238.14
roughness 288.2
wrinkle 291.3
attempt 403.3
v babble 52.11
wrinkle 291.6
agitate 917.10
ripple effect
divergence 171.1
transferal 176.1
permeation 221.3
expansion 259.1
dispersion 771.1
immediate cause 886.3
rip-roaring noisy 53.13
turbulent 671.18
riptide 238.13
rise
n appearance 33.1
ascent 193.1
rising 200.5
acclivity 204.6
slope 237.2
hill 237.4
wave 238.14
increase 251.1
height 272.2
improvement 392.1
promotion 446.1
evolution 861.1
source 886.5
reaction 903.1
v wake up 23.6
appear 33.8
din 53.7
move 172.5
ascend 193.8
arise 200.8
incline 204.10
billow 238.22
grow 251.6
tower 272.10
levitate 298.9
revolt 327.7
make good 409.10
originate 818.13
rise above accept 134.7
loom 247.5
tower above 272.11
defeat 411.5
rise again 306.10
rise and fall 238.22
rise from 887.5
rise in the world
make good 409.10
be prosperous 1010.9
riser 193.5
rise to mind 931.18
rise to the occasion
carry out 328.7
win through 409.13
rise to the surface 190.11
rise up ascend 193.8
rise 200.8
grow 272.12
revolt 327.7
rising
n appearance 33.1
sore 85.37
course 172.2
ascent 193.1
uprising 200.5
acclivity 204.6
swelling 283.4
revolt 327.4
adj flowing 172.8
ascending 193.14
sloping upward 204.17
increasing 251.8
risk
n investment 729.4
gamble 759.2
unreliability 971.6
chance 972.1
v invest 729.17
gamble 759.24
take a chance 972.12
endanger 1006.6
defy danger 1006.7
riskless 1007.5
risk-taking
defiance 454.1
daring 492.5
chance 972.1
risqué cursing 513.8
risky 666.7
rite celebration 487.1
amenity 504.7
ceremony 580.4
ritual 701.3
rite of confession 351.3
rite of passage 580.4
ritual
n custom 373.1
amenity 504.7
formality 580.1
ceremony 580.4
rite 701.3
adj ceremonious 580.8
ritualistic 701.19
ritual murder 308.1
ritual observance
celebration 487.1
rite 701.3
ritzy grandiose 501.21
chic 578.13
rival
n competitor 452.2
combatant 461.1
v contend against 451.4
compete 457.18
equal 790.5
be comparable 943.7
excel 999.11
adj oppositional 451.8
competitive 457.23
rivalry envy 154.1
hostility 451.2
competition 457.2
river stream 238.1
torrent 238.5
river bed 239.2
river gambler 759.21
riverside
n shore 234.2
adj coastal 234.7
rivet 800.8
riveted fixed 855.14
gripped 983.18
riveting alluring 377.8
engrossing 983.20
riviera 234.2
rivulet 238.1
RNA
genetic material 305.9
heredity 560.6
roach
marijuana cigarette 87.12
remainder 256.1
vermin 311.37
road seaway 182.10
inlet 242.1
route 383.1
highway 383.5
harbor 1009.6
ROAD 461.22
roadbed 383.7
roadblock 1012.5
road hog driver 178.10
self-seeker 651.3
roadhouse inn 228.15
entertainment 743.13
road map 574.10
road racing 744.1
road-test 942.8
the road to ruin 395.1
road warrior 730.4
roadwork 84.2
roadworthy 1007.7
roam
n wandering 177.3
v wander 177.23
roan
n horse 311.11
adj reddish-brown 40.4
roar
n noise 53.3
boom 56.4
cry 59.1
v be noisy 53.9
boom 56.9
cry 59.6
animal sound 60.2
laugh 116.8
sigh 318.21
speak 524.25
rage 671.11
overact 704.31
roaring
thundering 56.12
frenzied 105.25
roaring drunk 88.33
roaring fire 1019.13
roaring forties
zone 231.3
prevailing wind 318.10
Roaring Twenties 824.5
roast
n dish 10.7
meat 10.13
celebration 487.1
v cook 11.5
be disrespectful 156.6
banter 490.6
ridicule 508.8
criticize 510.20
grill 938.22
be hot 1019.22
adj cooked 11.7
roast beef 10.14
roaster poultry 311.29
hot day 1019.8
rob
n semiliquid 1062.5
v commit robbery 482.14
robbed of 473.8
robber thief 483.1
holdup man 483.5
robber baron 730.1
robbery loss 473.1
theft 482.3
robe
n garment 5.3
blanket 295.10
frock 702.2
v clothe 5.39
Robin Hood
philanthropist 143.8
thief 483.11
robot 1041.12
robot factory
plant 739.3
control system 1041.5
robotics 1042.2
robotization
automation 1041.1
automatic control 1041.3
robotlike 781.5
rob Peter to pay Paul 862.4
robust strong 15.15
energetic 17.13
hale 83.12
rock
n symbol of strength 15.8
dose 87.20
missile 462.18
rock-and-roll 708.10
stability 855.6
swing 916.6
flounder 917.8

protector 1008.5
hardness 1046.6
stone 1059.1
v impress 93.15
agitate 105.14
pitch 182.55
calm 670.7
oscillate 916.10
flounder 917.15
adj instrumental 708.51
stone 1059.11
rock bottom
bottom 199.1
foundation 901.6
rockbound
rugged 288.7
firm 425.7
rockbound coast
shore 234.2
hidden danger 1006.5
rock climber 193.6
rocker refinery 79.13
marvel 122.2
engraving tool 713.8
oscillator 916.9
rocket
n swiftness 174.6
rocket plane 181.4
ascent 193.7
projectile 462.18
signal 517.15
rocketry 1074.1
rocket engine 1074.2
missile 1074.3
spacecraft 1075.2
v shoot up 193.9
skyrocket 1074.12
rocket engine
rocket 1074.2
atomic power plant 1075.4
rocket fuel 87.18
rocket launcher
launcher 462.21
projector 1074.10
rocket propulsion
propulsion 184.25
reaction propulsion 1074.8
rocketry
ballistics 462.3
missile science 1074.1
space travel 1075.1
rocket scientist
talented person 413.12
intellectual 929.1
rocketeer 1074.11
rock-fill dam 1012.5
rock-hard
unyielding 361.9
hard 1046.10
the Rockies 231.7
rockiness 85.1
rocking
tranquilizing 670.15
swinging 916.17
rocking chair 916.9
rocking horse 743.16
rocklike
unyielding 361.9
stable 855.12
hard 1046.10
stony 1059.12
rock music 708.10
rock'n'roll 708.10
Rock of Gibraltar 855.6
rock pile 604.2
rocks genitals 2.13
money 728.2
hidden danger 1006.5
rock-steady 129.2
rock the boat 868.4
rock to sleep
put to sleep 22.20
calm 670.7
rocky
unsteady 16.16
tired 21.7
ill 85.56
rugged 288.7
unsafe 1006.11
hard 1046.10
stony 1059.12
rococo
n ornateness 498.2
adj ornate 498.12
freakish 870.13
fanciful 986.20
rod shaft 273.1
scepter 417.9
gun 462.10
stick 605.2
royal insignia 647.3
nuclear reactor 1038.13
rodent
n creature 311.3
adj rodential 311.45
rodeo 770.1
rodlike 1046.11
roe fish 10.24
female animal 77.10
egg 305.15
hoofed animal 311.5
Roger 332.19
Roget's
vocabulary 526.13
reference book 554.9
dictionary 871.4
rogue horse 311.12
mischief-maker 322.3
rascal 660.3
jockey 757.2
rogues' gallery 714.3
roil
n agitation 917.1
opaqueness 1031.1
v annoy 96.13
provoke 152.24
riot 810.10
seethe 915.12
agitate 917.10
role function 387.5
part 704.10
script 706.3
occupation 724.3
mode 765.4
role model
paragon 659.4
ideal 786.4
standard of perfection 1002.4
role-player 357.1
role-playing 704.8
roll
n bun 10.31
staccato 55.1
boom 56.4
gait 177.12
barrel roll 184.14
wave 238.14
a length 267.2
coil 281.2
cylinder 282.4
record 549.1
document 549.5
film 714.10
bankroll 728.17
throw 759.9
bundle 770.8
roster 871.6
rotation 915.1
swing 916.6
flounder 917.8
v reverberate 54.7
drum 55.4
boom 56.9
bird sound 60.5
progress 162.2
travel 177.18
way of walking 177.28
pitch 182.55
maneuver 184.40
level 201.6
billow 238.22
ball 282.7
smooth 287.5
press 287.6
rob 482.16
push 904.9
trundle 915.10
wallow 915.13
oscillate 916.10
flounder 917.15
go easily 1014.10
roll around 850.5
rollback
regression 163.1
curtailment 252.4
discount 631.1
economizing 635.2
roll back reduce 252.7
retrench 635.5
roll bar 756.1
roll call
legislative procedure 613.6
roll 871.6
rolled into one 872.10
roller dressing 86.33
billow 238.14
cylinder 282.4
smoother 287.4
game 745.3
rotator 915.4
wave 916.4
pulverizer 1051.7
rollerblade 177.35
roller coaster 743.15
roller-skate 177.35
roller skates 179.21
rollick
n frolic 743.5
v rejoice 116.5
bluster 503.3
play 743.23
roll in arrive 186.6
indulge 669.4
roll-in 749.6
rolling
n progression 162.1
maneuvers 184.13
throwing 904.2
rotation 915.1
television reception 1035.5
adj resonant 54.10
thundering 56.12
hilly 237.8
knobby 272.18
wavy 281.10
rotating 915.14
swinging 916.17
rolling pin 282.4
rolling stone
wanderer 178.2
changeableness 854.4
rotator 915.4
roll in the aisles 116.8
roll into one
put together 800.5
combine 805.3
roll it 818.7
roll of the dice 759.2
roll on march on 162.3
travel 177.18
elapse 821.5
roll out get up 23.6
manifest 348.5
roll out the red carpet
pay homage to 155.5
receive 187.10
welcome 585.9
honor 646.8
roll over 729.17
roll over and play dead 354.20
Rolls-Royce 249.4
roll up one's sleeves
prepare oneself 405.13
set to work 725.15
roll with the punches
keep cool 106.9
accept 134.7
Rolodex 871.7
roly-poly
n heavyweight 257.12
adj corpulent 257.18
roman 548.6
Roman calendar 832.8
Roman candle 517.15
Roman Catholic
n Catholic 675.19
adj Catholic 675.29
romance
n love affair 104.6
fabrication 354.10
figment of the imagination 986.5
idealism 986.7
v narrate 722.6
idealize 986.16
Roman Christianity 675.7
Romanism 675.8
romanization 546.5
Roman numerals 1017.4
romantic
n visionary 986.13
adj sentimental 93.21
loving 104.27
fictional 722.7

visionary 986.24
Romeo 104.13
Romeo and Juliet 104.18
Rome wasn't built in a day 134.13
romp
n mannish female 76.9
schoolgirl 302.8
victory 411.1
frolic 743.5
horse race 757.3
v exude cheerfulness 109.6
rejoice 116.5
caper 366.6
play 743.23
rompers 5.30
roof
n top 198.1
abode 228.1
home 228.2
house 228.5
roofing 295.6
v top 295.21
rook
n chessman 743.17
cheater 759.22
v deceive 356.19
cheat 759.26
rookery sty 80.11
birdhouse 228.23
birthplace 886.8
rookie recruit 461.18
novice 572.9
newcomer 774.4
beginner 818.2
room
n latitude 158.3
compartment 197
chamber 197.1
interval 224.1
quarters 228.4
capacity 257.2
latitude 430.4
opportunity 843.2
v inhabit 225.7
house 225.10
room and board 385.3
roomer lodger 227.8
tenant 470.4
rooming house 228.15
roommate 588.3
room temperature 1019.3
roomy
comfortable 121.11
spacious 158.11
broad 269.6
airy 317.12
roorback 552.6
roost
n birdhouse 228.23
v settle 159.17
sit 173.10
inhabit 225.7
rooster
male animal 76.8
poultry 311.29
root
n plant root 310.22
etymon 526.2
morphology 526.3
source 886.5
foundation 901.6
v vegetate 310.34
encourage 492.16
applaud 509.10
fix 855.9
lodge 855.10
search 938.31
root around 938.22
rooted
confirmed 373.18
innate 767.8
traditional 842.12
established 855.13
rooter enthusiast 101.5
commender 509.8
rooting out 395.6
root of all evil 728.1
root out dislodge 160.6
excise 255.10
exterminate 395.14
eliminate 773.5
search out 938.34
rope
n cigar 89.4
cord 271.2
latitude 430.4
hanging 604.7
execution 605.5
game 745.3
v restrain 428.10
catch 480.17
bind 800.9
roped off 429.20
rope enough to hang oneself 430.4
rope in deceive 356.19
lure 377.5
rope ladder 193.4
rope off
circumscribe 210.4
quarantine 429.13
ropes 894.3
rosary 696.4
rose
n pinkness 41.2
nozzle 239.9
insignia 647.1
heraldry 647.2
adj pink 41.8
Rose Bowl 746.1
rose-colored glasses
optimism 124.3
idealism 986.7
rosé wine 88.17
rosin
n gum 1057.1
v resin 1057.2
roster record 549.1
baseball team 745.2
football team 746.2
basketball team 747.2
roll 871.6
schedule 965.3
rostrum prow 216.3
nose 283.8
pulpit 703.13
platform 901.13
rosy pink 41.8
red-complexioned 41.9
fresh 83.13
cheerful 109.11
optimistic 124.12
thriving 1010.13
rot
n filth 80.7
disease 85.41
rottenness 393.7
bull 520.3
blight 1001.2
v decay 393.22
rota 549.1
rotary flowing 172.8
periodic 850.7
circuitous 914.7
rotational 915.15
rotate move 172.5
take off 184.38
invert 205.5
recur 850.5
revolve 915.9
rote 989.4
rotgut 88.14
rotor propeller 904.6
rotator 915.4
rotten unsound 16.15
nasty 64.7
malodorous 71.5
filthy 80.23
horrid 98.19
decayed 393.40
dishonest 645.16
corrupt 654.14
rotten egg 71.3
rotten luck
chance 972.1
ill fortune 1011.5
rotund
corpulent 257.18
round 282.8
convex 283.13
rouge
n makeup 1016.12
v make red 41.4
rough
n roughness 288.2
diagram 381.3
combatant 461.1
vulgarian 497.6
ruffian 593.3
golf 751.1
v roughen 288.4
mistreat 389.5
adj acrimonious 17.14
raucous 58.15
bitter 64.6
pungent 68.6
harsh 144.24
flowing 238.24
unsmooth 288.6
coarse 294.6
undeveloped 406.12
vulgar 497.11
gruff 505.7
violent 671.16
boisterous 671.20
nonuniform 782.3
irregular 851.3
jolting 917.20
difficult 1013.17
adv roughly 288.11
roughage 7.3
rough-and-ready
unprepared 406.8
unrefined 497.12
rough-and-tumble
n commotion 810.4
adj boisterous 671.20
rough-hew 288.4
roughhouse
n misbehavior 322.1
commotion 810.4
v misbehave 322.4
create disorder 810.11
rough idea 784.3
rough it 225.11
roughly speaking
approximately 223.23
generally 864.17
roughneck
n vulgarian 497.6
ruffian 593.4
adj boorish 497.13
rough sketch 942.2
rough up
roughen 288.4
mistreat 389.5
injure 393.13
punish 604.15
beat 902.17
roulette 759.12
round
n drink 88.7
step 193.5
sphere 231.2
degree 245.1
circle 280.2
music 280.9
routine 373.5
route 383.1
rondo 708.19
occupation 724.4
18 holes 751.3
fight 754.3
series 812.2
turn 825.2
revolution 850.3
circuit 914.2
whirl 915.2
v turn round 163.9
curve 279.6
encircle 280.10
round out 282.6
circle 914.5
turn 914.6
rotate 915.9
number 1017.17
adj circular 280.11
rotund 282.8
elegant 533.6
candid 644.17
full 794.11
circuitous 914.7
adv about 209.12
around 915.16
roundhouse
garage 197.27
repair shop 739.5
rounding out 407.2
round of applause 509.2
round off
complete 407.6
number 1017.17

round robin 914.2
round table 423.3
round the clock
  adj uninterrupted 812.8
  adv continuously 812.10
round trip
  journey 177.5
  game 745.3
  circuit 914.2
roundup 770.1
rouse energize 17.10
  awake 23.4
  wake someone up 23.5
  excite 105.12
  elicit 192.14
  arouse 375.19
roustabout hand 183.6
  longshoreman 183.9
rout
  n retreat 163.2
  discomfiture 412.2
  rabble 606.3
  attendance 769.6
  throng 770.4
  multitude 884.3
  agitation 917.1
  v overwhelm 412.8
route way 383.1
  path 383.1
routine
  n exercise 84.2
  run 373.5
  manner 384.1
  act 704.7
  order 807.1
  series 812.2
  software 1042.11
  adj medium 246.3
  habitual 373.14
  orderly 807.6
  frequent 847.4
  prevalent 864.12
rove
  n wandering 177.3
  v stray 164.4
  wander 177.23
row
  n series 812.2
  v navigate 182.13
  paddle 182.53
row
  n noise 53.4
  quarrel 456.6
  turbulence 671.2
  commotion 810.4
  agitation 917.1
  v be noisy 53.9
  quarrel 456.12
  push 904.9
  cause trouble 1013.14
rowdy
  n mischief-maker 322.3
  combatant 461.1
  vulgarian 497.6
  ruffian 593.3
  adj noisy 53.13
  misbehaving 322.5
  boorish 497.13
  boisterous 671.20
royal
  n volume 554.4
  potentate 575.8
  adj dignified 136.12
  sovereign 417.17
  good 999.12
Royal Canadian Mounted Police 1008.17
Royal Highness 648.2
royalist 611.9
royalty
  sovereignty 417.8
  potentate 575.8
  aristocracy 608.1
  nobility 608.2
  dividend 624.7
rpm velocity 174.1
  revolutions 915.3
RSVP 553.15
rub
  n touch 73.1
  contact 223.5
  disaccord 456.1
  bone of contention 456.7
  crisis 843.4
  crux 1013.8
  friction 1044.1
  v pain 26.7
  stroke 73.8
  treat 91.24
  contact 223.10
  polish 287.7
  represent 349.8
  banter 490.6
  frictionize 1044.6
  dry 1066.6
rubber
  n contraceptive 86.23
  eradicator 395.9
  bridge 758.3
  softness 1047.4
  elastic 1048.3
  v be curious 981.3
  elasticize 1048.6
  adj rubbery 1048.8
rubber band 1048.3
rubber check
  arrears 623.2
  counterfeit 728.10
rubberneck
  n traveler 178.1
  sightseer 918.3
  inquisitive person 981.2
  v journey 177.21
  be long 267.5
  sight-see 918.6
  be curious 981.3
  adj spectating 918.7
rubber stamp
  n ratification 332.4
  v ratify 332.12
rubbish
  n remainder 256.1
  derelict 370.4
  rubble 391.5
  nonsense 520.2
  rabble 606.3
  trivia 998.4
  v be disrespectful 156.6
  censure 510.13
rubble rubbish 391.5
  rock 1059.1
rubdown 1044.3
rub down rub 1044.6
  tend 1070.7
rube
  n bungler 414.9
  simple soul 416.3
  peasant 606.6
  oaf 924.5
  adj not urbane 233.8
rub elbows with 582.17
rub it in 96.13
rub off wear 393.20
  abrade 1044.7
rub out delete 255.12
  kill 308.14
  obliterate 395.16
  abrade 1044.7
rub salt in the wound
  irritate 96.14
  aggravate 119.2
  impair 393.9
rub the wrong way 288.5
ruby 41.6
ruckus noise 53.4
  quarrel 456.6
  turbulence 671.2
  commotion 810.4
rudder 573.5
ruddy red 41.6
  red-complexioned 41.9
  fresh 83.13
  blushing 139.13
  curse 513.10
rude raucous 58.15
  hale 83.12
  impudent 142.10
  undeveloped 406.12
  coarse 497.11
  discourteous 505.4
  inelegant 534.2
  populational 606.8
  unlearned 930.14
rude awakening
  awakening 23.2
  disillusionment 977.1
rudiment
  embryo 305.14
  foundation 901.6
rudimentary
  basic 199.8
  dwarf 258.13
  undeveloped 406.12
  beginning 818.15
  original 886.14
rue
  n pity 145.1
  v regret 113.6
ruffian
  mischief-maker 322.3
  combatant 461.1
  vulgarian 497.6
  rough 593.3
ruffle
  n staccato 55.1
  agitation 105.4
  edging 211.7
  fold 291.1
  confusion 985.3
  v drum 55.4
  annoy 96.13
  perturb 105.14
  provoke 152.24
  wrinkle 288.5
  fold 291.5
  beat time 708.44
  disarrange 811.2
  agitate 917.10
  confuse 985.7
ruffles and flourishes 708.27
rug wig 3.14
  carpet 295.9
  blanket 295.10
  bedding 901.20
rugged strong 15.15
  hale 83.12
  harsh 144.24
  ragged 288.7
  wrinkled 291.8
  strict 425.6
  sturdy 763.7
  difficult 1013.17
ruggedly 15.23
ruin
  n wreck 393.8
  destruction 395.1
  defeat 412.1
  loss 473.1
  antiquity 842.6
  v spoil 393.10
  destroy 395.10
  defeat 412.6
  bankrupt 625.8
  seduce 665.20
  rage 671.11
  thwart 1012.15
ruins remainder 256.1
  wreck 393.8
  antiquity 842.6
rule
  n mean 246.1
  supremacy 249.3
  straightedge 277.3
  measure 300.2
  norm 373.4
  governance 417.5
  law 419.2
  direction 420.3
  decree 420.4
  government 612.1
  ordinance 673.3
  game 752.3
  model 786.1
  the book 869.4
  influence 894.1
  syllogism 935.6
  axiom 974.2
  v oversee 249.11
  wield authority 417.13
  command 420.8
  sway 612.14
  prevail 864.10
  exercise influence 894.8
  pass judgment 946.13
rule against 444.3
rulebook 869.4
rulebook slowdown 727.5
rule off 300.11
rule of law 612.8
rule of thumb 942.1
rule out
  excise 255.10
  close 293.6
  obliterate 395.16

prohibit 444.3
make impossible 967.6
prevent 1012.14
ruler superior 249.4
straightedge 277.3
governor 575.6
potentate 575.8
rod 605.2
rule the roost 612.15
rule with an iron fist 612.16
ruling
n decree 420.4
law 673.3
verdict 946.5
adj powerful 18.12
chief 249.14
authoritative 417.15
governing 612.18
prevalent 864.12
influential 894.14
ruling class
the best 249.5
mastership 417.7
the authorities 575.15
upper class 607.2
rum
n spirits 88.13
adj odd 870.11
excellent 999.13
rumble
n audio distortion 50.13
noise 53.4
reverberation 54.2
boom 56.4
fight 457.4
report 552.6
v reverberate 54.7
boom 56.9
speak 524.25
rumble seat 217.1
ruminant 931.21
ruminate chew 8.27
consider 931.12
rummage
n search 938.15
v ransack 938.33
rummage sale 734.3
rumor
n report 552.6
v publish 352.10
report 552.11
rump buttocks 217.4
remainder 256.1
rumple
n wrinkle 291.3
v ruffle 288.5
wrinkle 291.6
disarrange 811.2
agitate 917.10
rumpus
n noise 53.4
quarrel 456.6
turbulence 671.2
commotion 810.4
v be noisy 53.9
rumpus room 197.12
rumrunner 732.5
run
n trauma 85.38
direction 161.1
course 172.2
sprint 174.3
migration 177.4
journey 177.5
voyage 182.6
flight 184.9
lair 228.26
stream 238.1
flow 238.4
average 246.1
a length 267.2
routine 373.5
route 383.1
path 383.2
freedom 430.1
race 457.12
engagement 704.11
impromptu 708.27
ornament 709.18
home run 745.3
round 751.3
series 812.2
continuance 856.1
generality 864.3
amount made 893.4
trend 896.2
v fester 12.15
exercise 84.4
extend 158.9
move 172.5
speed 174.8
travel 177.18
migrate 177.22
navigate 182.13
pilot 182.14
sail before the wind 182.22
float 182.54
meet 223.11
flow 238.16
flee 368.10
nominate 371.19
hunt 382.9
injure 393.13
make haste 401.5
print 548.14
direct 573.8
guide 573.9
run for office 609.39
go into politics 610.13
smuggle 732.8
play 746.5
ski 753.4
race 757.5
elapse 821.5
endure 827.6
operate 889.5
be operative 889.7
incur 897.4
thrust 902.12
corner 1013.16
melt 1020.21
computerize 1042.21
liquefy 1064.5
raise 1070.6
runabout 178.2
run across
meet 223.11
come across 941.3
run afoul of 457.15
run aground
shipwreck 182.42
come to grief 1011.10
run amok
go berserk 671.15
riot 810.10
be insane 926.20
the runaround
avoidance 368.1
circumvention 415.5
run around like a chicken with its head cut off
be excitable 105.16
bustle 330.12
run a temperature
take sick 85.47
get excited 105.17
run a tight ship 425.4
runaway
n fugitive 368.5
adj fugitive 368.16
escaped 369.11
run away
run along 188.12
flee 368.10
run circles around
outdo 249.9
defeat 412.9
run counter to
deny 335.4
oppose 451.3
go contrary to 779.4
counteract 900.6
run down
burn out 21.5
fail 85.48
quiet 173.8
sail into 182.41
decline 393.17
arrest 429.15
capture 480.18
disparage 512.8
run over 910.7
trace 938.35
discover 941.2
underestimate 950.2
run-down tired 21.7
unhealthy 85.54
dilapidated 393.33
worn-out 393.36
run dry 388.4
run for it 368.10
run for one's life
run off 188.12
flee 368.10
run for one's money 457.2
run from 182.36
rung step 193.5
degree 245.1
run in sail into 182.41
thrust in 191.7
interpose 213.6
arrest 429.16
capture 480.18
visit 582.19
run-in
n quarrel 456.6
adj accustomed 373.15
run in circles
be impotent 19.7
be useless 391.8
run in opposition to 779.4
run in pursuit of 382.8
run interference for
back 449.13
facilitate 1014.7
run in the family 767.6
run into total 792.8
sail into 182.41
meet 223.11
cost 630.13
be converted into 858.17
collide 902.13
come across 941.3
run into a brick wall 857.7
run into debt
borrow 621.3
go in debt 623.6
run into the ground 993.10
run it by again 849.7
run its course
come to an end 820.6
elapse 821.5
run it up the flagpole and see who salutes 942.8
run neck and neck 174.14
runner speeder 174.5
sled 179.20
channel 239.4
branch 310.20
messenger 353.1
smuggler 732.5
jockey 757.2
member 793.4
runner-up 411.2
running
n pus 12.6
exercise 84.2
motion 172.1
direction 573.1
supervision 573.2
candidacy 609.10
operation 889.1
melting 1020.3
liquefaction 1064.1
adj flowing 172.8
fast 174.15
pouring 238.24
cursive 547.22
continuous 812.8
present 838.2
prevalent 864.12
operating 889.11
adv consecutively 812.11
running away
absence 222.4
flight 368.4
running back 746.2
running commentary 556.2
running head
label 517.13
caption 937.2
running mate 610.9
running sore 1001.1
running start
advantage 249.2
beginning 818.1
earliness 845.1
running wild 926.30
runny exudative 190.20
fluid 1061.4
runoff outflow 190.4
election 609.15

- **run off**
  - run along 188.12
  - flee 368.10
  - print 548.14
  - drive out 909.14
- **run off at the mouth**
  - talk nonsense 520.5
  - chatter 540.5
  - persist 856.5
- **run off with**
  - steal 482.13
  - abduct 482.20
- **run of luck**
  - chance 972.1
  - stroke of luck 1010.3
- **run of the mill**
  - average 864.3
  - mediocre 1005.8
- **run on** march on 162.3
  - chatter 540.5
  - continue 812.4
  - elapse 821.5
  - endure 827.6
  - continue 856.3
- **run out**
  - *v* burn out 21.5
  - exit 190.12
  - empty 190.13
  - find vent 369.10
  - be consumed 388.4
  - perish 395.23
  - protract 538.8
  - come to an end 820.6
  - elapse 821.5
  - eject 909.13
  - drive out 909.14
  - *adj* past 837.7
  - obsolete 842.15
- **run out of gas**
  - weaken 16.9
  - stall 410.16
  - flop 704.28
  - fall short 911.2
- **run out on** 370.5
- **run over**
  - overflow 238.17
  - browse 570.13
  - iterate 849.8
  - overrun 910.7
  - think over 931.13
  - examine 938.24
  - abound 991.5
  - number 1017.17
- **run parallel to** 899.3
- **run ragged** 21.8
- **run rings around**
  - outdo 249.9
  - defeat 412.9
- **run riot** revolt 327.7
  - dissipate 669.6
  - run amok 671.15
  - riot 810.10
  - overspread 910.5
  - superabound 993.8
- **run roughshod over** 412.10
- **runs** 12.2
- **run scared** 491.8
- **run short of** 992.7
- **run smoothly** 1014.10
- **runt** shrimp 258.4
  - a nobody 998.7
- **run the gauntlet** 492.11
- **run the risk**
  - chance 759.24
  - be liable 897.3
  - take chances 1006.7
- **run through**
  - pervade 221.7
  - perforate 292.15
  - stab 459.25
  - squander 486.3
  - browse 570.13
  - spend 626.5
  - rehearse 704.32
- **run-through**
  - summary 557.2
  - production 704.13
  - examination 938.3
- **run to** extend to 261.6
  - entreat 440.11
  - cost 630.13
  - equal 790.5
  - total 792.8
- **run together** 169.2
- **run to seed**
  - *v* waste 393.19
  - go to ruin 395.24
  - go to waste 473.6
  - fall on evil days 1011.11
  - *adj* stricken in years 303.18
  - out of practice 414.18
  - wasted 486.9
- **run true to form** 781.3
- **run up** grow 251.6
  - improvise 365.8
  - go before 816.3
  - produce 892.8
- **run-up**
  - preparation 405.1
  - precedence 814.1
  - curtain-raiser 816.2
  - forethought 961.2
- **run up against**
  - meet 223.11
  - experience 831.8
  - come across 941.3
- **run up a tab** 623.6
- **runway** taxiway 184.23
  - path 383.2
- **runway lights** 184.19
- **run with the pack** 332.9
- **rupture**
  - *n* trauma 85.38
  - crack 224.2
  - falling-out 456.4
  - break 802.4
  - *v* cleave 224.4
  - breach 292.14
  - injure 393.13
  - be damaged 393.23
  - break 802.12
- **rural** rustic 233.6
  - natural 416.6
  - agricultural 1069.20
- **ruralist** 227.1
- **ruse** trick 356.6
  - stratagem 415.3
- **rush**
  - *n* substance abuse 87.1
  - thrill 105.2
  - excitement 105.3
  - course 172.2
  - velocity 174.1
  - run 174.3
  - flow 238.4
  - jet 238.9
  - grass 310.5
  - haste 401.1
  - demand 421.1
  - attack 459.1
  - outburst 671.6
  - prematurity 845.2
  - trifle 998.5
  - *v* speed 174.8
  - flow 238.16
  - hasten 401.4
  - make haste 401.5
  - charge 459.18
- **rush hour** 293.3
- **rush to the assistance of** 449.11
- **russet** 40.4
- **Russian Orthodox Church** 675.9
- **rust**
  - *n* fungus 310.4
  - decay 393.6
  - blight 1001.2
  - *v* brown 40.2
  - make red 41.4
  - corrode 393.21
  - age 842.9
  - *adj* reddish-brown 40.4
  - red 41.6
- **the Rust Belt** 231.7
- **rustbucket** 180.1
- **rustic**
  - *n* agriculturist 1069.5
  - *adj* rural 233.6
  - plain-speaking 535.3
- **rustle**
  - *n* rustling 52.6
  - *v* crinkle 52.12
  - steal 482.13
- **rustler** 483.8
- **rustle up** cook 11.5
  - improvise 365.8
  - provide 385.7
  - make up 405.7
  - produce 892.8
- **rustproof** 15.20
- **rusty**
  - reddish-brown 40.4
  - red 41.6
  - stricken in years 303.18
  - unaccustomed 374.4
  - corroded 393.43
  - out of practice 414.18
  - stale 842.14
- **rut**
  - *n* sexual desire 75.5
  - fever of excitement 105.7
  - pothole 284.3
  - furrow 290.1
  - routine 373.5
  - path 383.2
  - *v* lust 75.20
  - furrow 290.3
- **ruthless** cruel 144.26
  - pitiless 146.3
  - savage 671.21
- **rutted** rough 288.6
  - furrowed 290.4
- **RV** 179.19
- **S**
  - *adj* crescent-shaped 279.11
  - *adv* south 161.16
- **s'il vous plaît** 440.20
- **Sabbath**
  - day of rest 20.5
  - occultism 690.3
  - holy day 701.12
- **sabbatical**
  - *n* vacation 20.3
  - *adj* vacational 20.10
- **saber** 459.25
- **saber rattling** 458.11
- **sable**
  - *n* blackness 38.1
  - heraldry 647.2
  - *adj* black 38.8
- **sabotage**
  - *n* impairment 393.1
  - fall 395.3
  - *v* disable 19.9
  - undermine 393.15
  - oppose 451.3
  - thwart 1012.15
- **saboteur** 357.11
- **sac** 195.2
- **saccharin** 66.2
- **sack**
  - *n* bag 195.2
  - plundering 482.6
  - baseball 745.1
  - tackling 746.3
  - bundle 770.8
  - *v* load 159.15
  - package 212.9
  - catch 480.17
  - plunder 482.17
  - rage 671.11
  - tackle 746.5
  - bundle 770.20
  - dismiss 909.20
- **the sack** sofa 901.19
  - dismissal 909.5
- **sackcloth** 115.7
- **sack out** sleep 22.14
  - go to bed 22.18
- **sacrament** 701.3
- **the Sacrament** 701.7
- **sacred** almighty 677.17
  - holy 685.7
  - vocal 708.50
- **sacred cow** idol 697.3
  - important person 997.9
- **sacred object** 701.10
- **sacred text** 682.7
- **sacrifice**
  - *n* killing 308.1
  - loss 473.1
  - relinquishment 475.1
  - unselfishness 652.1
  - oblation 696.7
  - *v* kill 308.13
  - lose 473.4
  - relinquish 475.3
  - give away 478.21
  - be unselfish 652.3
  - propitiate 696.15
  - sell 734.8
  - play 745.5
- **sacrificial** 633.9

sacrilege
abomination 638.2
blasphemy 694.2
sacristy 703.9
sacrosanct 685.7
sad soft-colored 35.22
dark 38.9
gray 39.4
pleasureless 96.20
distressing 98.20
saddened 112.20
disgraceful 661.11
paltry 998.21
terrible 1000.9
unfortunate 1011.14
sadden darken 112.18
move 145.5
saddle
n ridge 237.5
authority 417.10
seat 901.17
v burden 297.13
yoke 800.10
tend 1070.7
saddler 311.13
saddle stitching 554.14
saddle upon 888.4
saddle with add 253.4
accuse of 599.9
obligate 641.12
impose 643.4
attribute to 888.4
hamper 1012.11
sadism
perversion 75.11
cruelty 144.11
sadist
sexual pervert 75.16
tormentor 96.10
beast 144.14
punisher 604.8
sadomasochism 75.11
sadomasochist 75.16
sad sack weakling 16.6
wretch 660.2
unfortunate 1011.7
safari 177.5
safari park 743.14
safe
n treasury 729.13
adj cautious 494.8
secure 1007.4
protected 1008.21
safe-conduct 443.7
safecracker 483.3
safe-deposit box 729.13
safeguard
n pass 443.7
precaution 494.3
safety 1007.1
palladium 1008.3
bodyguard 1008.14
v defend 460.8
protect 1008.18
safe house
hiding place 346.4
retreat 1009.5
safekeeping
storage 386.5
preservation 397.1
custody 429.5
protection 1008.1
safe sex 75.7
safety
football team 746.2
game 746.3
security 1007.1
safeness 1007.1
protection 1008.1
safeguard 1008.3
safety belt
life preserver 397.6
safeguard 1008.3
safety catch 428.5
safety net
precaution 494.3
safeguard 1008.3
safety valve
outlet 190.9
precaution 494.3
safeguard 1008.3
saffron 43.4
sag
n sinkage 194.2
hang 202.2
cheapening 633.4
declining market 737.5
v drift off course 182.29
sink 194.6
hang 202.6
decrease 252.6
curve 279.6
cheapen 633.6
saga 719.3
sage
n master 413.13
wise man 921.1
adj wise 920.17
Sahara 891.2
sahib man 76.7
master 575.1
Sir 648.3
said speech 524.29
former 814.5
sail
n sailboat 180.3
canvas 180.14
voyage 182.6
v glide 177.35
navigate 182.13
get under way 182.19
float 182.54
fly 184.36
go easily 1014.10
sailboat 760.2
sailing ship 180.3
sailor traveler 178.1
mariner 183.1
sailplane
n glider 181.12
v fly 184.36
sail through 1014.8
saint
n holy man 659.6
celestial being 679.1
angel 679.1
religious prophet 684.2
believer 692.4
v glorify 662.13
sanctify 685.5
ordain 698.12
sainthood
sanctification 685.3
godliness 692.2
Saint Nicholas 678.13
sake motive 375.1
intention 380.1
salaam
n obeisance 155.2
crouch 913.3
v make obeisance 155.6
bow 913.9
salad food 10.37
hodgepodge 797.6
salad bar 8.17
salad days 301.1
salamander
amphibian 311.27
spirit 678.6
fire iron 1020.12
salaried worker
bourgeois 607.6
worker 726.2
salary
n pay 624.4
v pay 624.10
sale transfer 629.1
selling 734.2
wholesale 734.1
closing-out sale 734.3
sales 734.13
salesmanship
promotion 352.5
inducement 375.3
selling 734.2
salesperson 730.3
sales pitch 734.5
salient
n region 231.1
protuberance 283.2
adj protruding 283.14
conspicuous 348.12
notable 997.19
saline 68.9
saliva
digestive juice 2.17
humor 2.24
digestion 7.8
spittle 13.3
salivary glands
digestion 2.17
digestive system 2.18
ingestion 7.8
salivate 13.6
sallow
v yellow 43.3
adj colorless 36.7
yellow 43.4
yellow-faced 43.6
sally
n journey 177.5
attack 459.1
witticism 489.7
v set out 188.8
emerge 190.11
sally forth set out 188.8
emerge 190.11
salmon
n marine animal 311.30
jumper 366.4
adj pink 41.8
salon parlor 197.5
museum 386.9
society 578.6
social gathering 582.10
market 736.1
company 770.3
saloon bar 88.20
parlor 197.5
cabin 197.9
salsa 10.9
salt
n saltiness 68.4
mariner 183.1
preservative 397.4
veteran 413.16
wit 489.1
v flavor 63.7
tamper with 354.17
preserve 397.9
falsify accounts 628.10
adj flavored 62.9
salty 68.9
witty 489.15
salt-and-pepper 39.4
salt away 386.10
salt flat plain 236.1
wasteland 891.2
salt-free diet 7.13
saltine 10.30
salt in the wound 96.3
salt of the earth
person of honor 644.8
good citizen 659.3
the best 999.8
salt water ocean 240.1
water 1065.3
salud! 88.38
salute
n obeisance 155.2
celebration 487.1
greeting 585.4
v pay homage to 155.5
greet another ship 182.52
praise 509.12
signal 517.22
address 524.26
greet 585.10
interj toast 88.38
salvage
n reclamation 396.2
preservation 397.1
rescue 398.1
recovery 481.3
recompense 624.3
fee 630.6
v redeem 396.12
rescue 398.3
salvageable
remediable 396.25
rescuable 398.4
salvager
mender 396.10
rescuer 398.2
salvation
reclamation 396.2
preservation 397.1
rescue 398.1
function of Christ 677.14
redemption 685.4
salve
n balm 86.11
gratuity 478.5

  moderator 670.3
  ointment 1056.3
  v medicate 91.25
  relieve 120.5
  redeem 396.12
  oil 1056.8
salvo detonation 56.3
  volley 459.9
  celebration 487.1
  shot 904.4
  qualification 959.1
Samaritan 592.1
same identical 778.7
  uniform 781.6
  former 814.5
same old story 837.2
same old thing
  tedium 118.1
  regularity 781.2
sample
  n taste 62.4
  specimen 786.3
  part 793.1
  feeler 942.4
  subject 942.7
  v taste 62.7
  canvass 938.29
  experiment 942.8
  adj typical 349.15
sampler 938.16
Samson 15.6
samurai 608.3
sanctify
  glorify 662.13
  hallow 685.5
sanctimonious
  hypocritical 354.33
  prudish 500.19
  zealous 692.11
  self-righteous 693.5
sanction
  n ratification 332.4
  consent 441.1
  authorization 443.3
  approval 509.1
  legalization 673.2
  v ratify 332.12
  consent 441.2
  authorize 443.11
  approve 509.9
  legalize 673.9
sanctioned
  authorized 443.17
  legal 673.11
sanctity sacredness 685.1
  sanctitude 685.1
  godliness 692.2
sanctuary
  hiding place 346.4
  preserve 397.7
  holy of holies 703.5
  refuge 1009.1
sanctum
  sanctum sanctorum 197.8
  retreat 584.6
  sanctuary 703.5
  refuge 1009.5
sand
  n grain 1051.6
  grain of sand 1059.2
  v grind 287.8
  buff 1044.8
sandalwood 70.4
sandbag
  n weight 297.6
  v weight 297.12
  defeat 412.9
  attack 459.15
  bet 759.25
  beat 902.17
  club 902.20
sandbagger 483.5
sandbar island 235.2
  shoal 276.2
  hidden danger 1006.5
  sand 1059.2
sandblast grind 287.8
  buff 1044.8
a sand castle 16.7
sand dune hill 237.4
  sand 1059.2
sandhog 284.10
sanding 1044.2
sandman 22.11
sandpaper
  n roughness 288.2
  v grind 287.8
  buff 1044.8
sands shore 234.2
  hidden danger 1006.5
sands of time 821.3
sandstone 1059.1
sandstorm 318.13
sand trap 751.1
sandwich
  n food 10.32
  v interpose 213.6
sandwich board 352.7
sandy yellow 43.4
  granular 1051.12
  stony 1059.12
  dry 1066.7
sane intelligent 920.12
  sensible 920.18
  sane-minded 925.4
  logical 935.20
  realistic 987.6
sanguine
  n personality type 92.12
  adj sanguineous 41.7
  red-complexioned 41.9
  cheerful 109.11
  hopeful 124.11
  expectant 130.11
sanitary hygienic 79.27
  healthful 81.5
sanitary landfill
  receptacle of filth 80.12
  derelict 370.4
  trash pile 391.6
sanitation
  cleansing 79.3
  hygiene 81.2
sanity
  intelligence 920.1
  sensibleness 920.6
  saneness 925.1
sans absent 222.19
  without 992.17
sans serif 548.6
sans souci 107.7
Santa Claus
  giver 478.11
  cheerful giver 485.2
  Santa 678.13
sap
  n essential content 196.5
  dupe 358.2
  entrenchment 460.5
  essence 767.2
  fool 924.3
  fluid 1061.2
  v weaken 16.10
  excavate 284.15
  undermine 393.15
  overthrow 395.20
  spiritualize 764.4
sapient 920.19
sapling
  youngster 302.1
  sprout 302.11
  tree 310.10
sapphire 45.3
sappy
  sentimental 93.21
  immature 301.10
  foolish 923.9
  fluid 1061.4
sarcasm wit 489.1
  irony 508.5
sarcoma 85.39
sarcophagus 309.11
sardonic 508.13
sardonic grin
  smile 116.3
  scornful laugh 508.4
sartorial
  clothing 5.45
  tailored 5.48
sash waistband 5.19
  frame 266.4
sashay travel 177.18
  way of walking 177.28
sass
  n back talk 142.4
  v talk back 142.8
sassy 142.10
Satan demon 680.6
  liar 357.9
  the Devil 680.3
  nether world deity 682.5
satanic cruel 144.26
  diabolic 654.13
  demoniac 680.17
  execrable 1000.10
Satanist 680.15
sate gratify 95.8
  satiate 994.4
sated languid 331.20
  satiated 994.6
satellite
  hanger-on 138.6
  follower 166.2
  country 232.1
  dependent 432.6
  disciple 616.8
  escort 769.5
  moon 1072.11
  artificial satellite 1075.6
satellite communication 347.1
satellite television 1035.1
satiety 107.1
satin
  n smooth surface 287.3
  fine texture 294.3
  softness 1047.4
  adj smooth 294.8
satire wit 489.1
  sarcasm 508.5
  burlesque 508.6
  lampoon 512.5
satirist
  humorist 489.12
  lampooner 512.7
  poet 720.11
satirize
  burlesque 508.11
  lampoon 512.12
satisfaction
  pleasure 95.1
  contentment 107.1
  compensation 338.1
  reparation 396.6
  observance 434.1
  duel 457.7
  restitution 481.2
  payment 624.1
  recompense 624.3
  atonement 658.1
  sufficiency 991.1
  satiety 994.1
satisfactory
  satisfying 107.11
  convincing 953.26
  sufficient 991.6
  tolerable 999.20
satisfy feed 8.18
  gratify 95.8
  content 107.4
  indulge 427.6
  observe 434.2
  pay 624.10
  pay in full 624.13
  atone 658.4
  convince 953.18
  suffice 991.4
  satiate 994.4
satisfying 97.6
saturate fill 794.7
  imbue 797.11
  overload 993.15
  satiate 994.4
  soak 1065.13
saturated fat 1056.1
saturation
  colorfulness 35.4
  color quality 35.6
  fullness 794.2
  imbuement 797.2
  overfullness 993.3
  satiety 994.1
  soaking 1065.7
saturation point
  fullness 794.2
  satiety 994.1
  radiation 1037.1
saturation raid 459.4
Saturn 1072.9
satyr
  sexual pervert 75.16
  lecher 665.11
  forest god 678.11

sauce
n cooking 11.1
liquor 88.14
back talk 142.4
hodgepodge 797.6
admixture 797.7
pulp 1063.2
v flavor 63.7
talk back 142.8
saucer tableware 8.12
circle 280.2
saucer eyes
optic part 2.9
eye 27.9
defect 28.6
saucer-shaped
parabolic 279.13
concave 284.16
saucy impudent 142.10
defiant 454.7
sauna bath 79.8
bathing place 79.10
saunter
n slow motion 175.2
walk 177.10
gait 177.12
v go slowly 175.6
wander 177.23
way of walking 177.28
sausage 10.21
sausage meat 10.13
sauté brown 40.2
cook 11.5
savable 398.4
savage
n barbarian 497.7
brute 593.5
violent person 671.9
v torture 96.18
mistreat 389.5
injure 393.13
rage 671.11
work evil 1000.6
adj cruel 144.26
pitiless 146.3
infuriated 152.32
deadly 308.23
warlike 458.21
unrefined 497.12
fierce 671.21
savagery cruelty 144.11
unrefinement 497.3
violence 671.1
unenlightenment 930.4
savanna
horizontal 201.3
the country 233.1
plain 236.1
grassland 310.8
savant expert 413.11
specialist 866.3
wise man 921.1
scientist 928.11
scholar 929.3
save
n soccer action 752.3
v store up 386.11
reserve 386.12
not use 390.5
preserve 397.8
rescue 398.3
aid 449.11
retain 474.5
economize 635.4
redeem 685.6
stop from scoring 752.4
be conservative 853.6
play safe 1007.3
prevent 1012.14
prep off 255.14
excluding 773.10
conj unless 959.16
save-all
n niggard 484.4
adj stingy 484.9
the saved 692.5
saved soul 679.1
save face 136.7
save for a rainy day
reserve 386.12
economize 635.4
save one's neck
rescue 398.3
benefit 592.3
be safe 1007.2
save the day 592.3
save your breath! 51.14
saving grace
extenuation 600.5
characteristic 865.4
savings reserve 386.3
funds 728.14
savings account
account 622.2
funds 728.14
savings institution
lending institution 620.4
bank 729.14
savior preserver 397.5
rescuer 398.2
redeemer 592.2
savoir-faire skill 413.1
mannerliness 504.3
savor
n taste 62.1
relish 63.2
odor 69.1
passion 93.2
characteristic 865.4
v eat 8.20
taste 62.7
relish 63.5
flavor 63.7
enjoy 95.13
savory
n food 10.8
adj edible 8.33
flavored 62.9
tasty 63.8
fragrant 70.9
delectable 97.10
savvy
n skill 413.1
smartness 920.2
understanding 928.3
discrimination 944.1
v understand 521.7
know 928.12
saw
n notching 289.2
maxim 974.1
platitude 974.3
cutlery 1040.2
v fiddle 708.41
sever 802.11
sawbones doctor 90.4
surgeon 90.5
sawbuck money 728.7
trestle 901.16
sawdust
remainder 256.1
powder 1051.5
sawed-off 258.13
sawhorse 901.16
sawmill 739.3
sawtooth
n projection 285.4
adj angular 278.6
rugged 288.7
saw wood 22.13
saxophonist 710.4
say
n supremacy 249.3
affirmation 334.1
vote 371.6
authority 417.1
free will 430.6
remark 524.3
speech 543.2
turn 825.2
influence 894.1
v take leave 188.16
affirm 334.5
announce 352.12
utter 524.22
state 524.23
answer 939.4
suppose 951.10
adv approximately 223.23
say again 849.7
say a good word for 509.11
say amen to 332.12
say a mouthful 973.10
say a word to the wise 399.5
say aye 441.2
say goodbye to 370.5
say hello 585.10
say in a roundabout way
prevaricate 344.7
circumlocute 538.10
go roundabout 914.4
say in defense 600.10
saying
affirmation 334.1
remark 524.3
maxim 974.1
say in reply 939.4
say it all 1017.19
say loud and clear
affirm 334.5
speak up 524.21
say no refuse 442.3
restrain oneself 668.6
say nothing 51.6
sayonara! 188.22
say one's prayers 696.13
say out loud
affirm 334.5
speak up 524.21
say over and over 849.10
say right to one's face 454.3
say-so
affirmation 334.1
command 420.1
free will 430.6
administration 573.3
influence 894.1
say the word
command 420.8
permit 443.9
say to oneself 542.3
say uncle flinch 127.13
lose 412.12
surrender 433.8
say under one's breath 345.9
say what one thinks 644.12
say yes 441.2
scab
n sore 85.37
crust 295.14
strikebreaker 727.8
blemish 1004.1
v crust 295.27
break a strike 727.11
blemish 1004.4
scabies 85.41
scads lot 247.4
plenty 991.2
scaffold
execution 605.5
scaffolding 901.12
scalawag horse 311.12
rascal 660.3
scald
n trauma 85.38
burn 1020.6
v injure 393.13
be hot 1019.22
scalding 1019.25
scale
n range 158.2
map 159.5
ladder 193.4
step 193.5
degree 245.1
size 257.1
blanket 295.12
crust 295.14
flake 296.3
weighing 297.9
measure 300.2
gamut 709.6
break 802.4
series 812.2
v flake 6.11
climb 193.11
layer 296.5
raid 459.20
break 802.12
scale down
n make small 258.9
v reduce 252.7
scales of justice 649.1
scale up 259.4
scaling raid 459.4
disruption 802.3
scallop
n notching 289.2
v cook 11.5
convolve 281.4
notch 289.4
scalloped cooked 11.7
notched 289.5
scalp peel 6.8

trade 737.23
scalper salesman 730.3
speculator 737.11
scaly flaky 296.7
powdery 1051.11
scam
n deception 356.9
cheating 759.13
v deceive 356.14
swindle 356.19
scamp
n mischief-maker 322.3
rascal 660.3
v slight 340.8
stint 484.5
scamper
n run 174.3
haste 401.1
v speed 174.8
hasten off 188.10
make haste 401.5
scan
n field of view 31.3
examination 938.3
v browse 570.13
rhyme 720.14
itemize 801.7
examine 938.24
examine cursorily 938.26
receive 1036.17
scandal slander 512.3
gossip 552.8
abomination 638.2
iniquity 654.3
disgrace 661.5
immodesty 666.2
scandalize 661.7
scandalmonger 552.9
scandal sheet 555.2
scanner 1042.4
scanning
n metrics 720.6
televising 1035.3
radar 1036.8
adj metric 720.16
scant
v limit 210.5
stint 484.5
adj narrow 270.14
incomplete 795.4
sparse 885.5
meager 992.10
scantily clad 6.13
scanty narrow 270.14
incomplete 795.4
sparse 885.5
meager 992.10
scarce 992.11
scapegoat
sacrifice 696.7
whipping boy 862.3
oddity 870.4
scar
n precipice 200.3
slope 237.2
mark 517.5
blemish 1004.1
v mark 517.19
blemish 1004.4
scarab 691.5
scarce infrequent 848.2
in short supply 885.5
sparse 992.11
scarcely any 885.4
scarcely to be expected 969.3
scarcity
infrequency 848.1
fewness 885.1
underproduction 892.5
scarceness 992.3
scare
n fear 127.1
v frighten 127.15
scarecrow figure 349.6
eyesore 1015.4
scared to death
afraid 127.22
terrified 127.26
scare off 379.3
scare tactics
terrorization 127.7
coercion 424.3
threat 514.1
scare up 472.9
scarf
n food 10.2
joint 800.4
v hook 800.8
scarlet red 41.6
prostitute 665.28
scarp precipice 200.3
incline 204.4
slope 237.2
scary fearful 127.23
frightening 127.28
scat! 909.31
scathe
n impairment 393.1
v criticize 510.20
work evil 1000.6
scathing
acrimonious 17.14
caustic 144.23
scatter
n deflection 164.2
rarity 299.1
dispersion 771.1
v deflect 164.5
radiate 171.6
interspace 224.3
rarefy 299.3
overwhelm 412.8
squander 486.3
disperse 771.4
disband 771.8
shatter 802.13
part company 802.19
loosen 804.3
disarrange 811.2
scatterbrain
frivolous person 924.7
flightiness 985.5
scatter to the winds
squander 486.3
disperse 771.4
scavenge 79.18
scavenger
sweeper 79.16
creature 311.3
scenario project 381.2
playbook 704.21
script 706.3
effect 887.1
solution 940.1
scene look 27.3
view 33.6
outburst 152.9
setting 209.2
arena 463.1
act 704.7
scenery 704.20
landscape 712.12
scenery view 33.6
arena 463.1
decor 704.20
scent
n odor 69.1
sense of smell 69.4
fragrance 70.1
perfumery 70.2
track 517.8
clue 517.9
hint 551.4
v odorize 69.7
smell 69.8
perfume 70.8
catch the scent of 941.6
scepter rod 417.9
royal insignia 647.3
schedule
n plan 381.1
chronicle 832.9
list 871.1
program 965.3
v plan 381.8
allot 477.9
spend 626.5
list 871.8
line up 965.6
scheduled
planned 381.12
listed 871.9
slated 965.9
schematic
diagrammatic 381.14
analytical 801.9
scheme
n trick 356.6
plan 381.1
project 381.2
intrigue 381.5
stratagem 415.3
plot 722.4
outline 801.4
v premeditate 380.7
plot 381.9
maneuver 415.10
plot 839.6
prearrange 965.4
schism desertion 370.2
falling-out 456.4
sect 675.3
schizoid
n personality type 92.12
psychotic 926.17
adj crazy 926.27
psychotic 926.28
schizophrenia
mental disorder 92.14
dissociation 92.20
dementia praecox 926.4
schizophrenic
n psychotic 926.17
adj psychotic 926.28
schlep 175.12
schlock 1005.6
schmaltz 93.8
schnapps 88.13
schnoz 283.8
scholar
student 572.1
specialist 866.3
wise man 921.1
scientist 928.11
scholastic 929.3
scholarship
subsidy 478.8
studiousness 570.4
fellowship 646.7
erudition 928.5
scholastic
n theologian 676.3
scholar 929.3
adj institutional 567.13
academic 568.19
studious 570.17
learned 928.21
book-learned 928.22
school
n educational institution 567.1
teaching 568.1
order 617.5
sect 675.3
style 712.8
group of animals 770.5
system of belief 953.3
v teach 568.10
adj scholastic 567.13
schoolbook book 554.1
textbook 554.10
schoolboy boy 302.5
schoolchild 572.3
schoolbus 179.13
schooled 928.18
schoolgirl
schoolmaid 302.8
schoolchild 572.3
schoolhouse 567.10
schooling
teaching 568.1
learning 928.4
school library 558.1
school of thought 952.1
schoolroom 567.11
schoolteacher 571.1
sciatic 217.10
science art 413.7
-ology 928.10
science fiction 1075.1
scientific
technical 928.28
exact 973.17
realistic 987.6
scientist 928.11
scintilla hint 248.4
spark 1019.15
glitter 1025.7
scintillate joke 489.13
be brilliant 920.11
glitter 1025.24
scintillating
witty 489.15
smart 920.14

  burning 1019.27
  glittering 1025.35
scion insert 191.2
  sprout 302.11
  branch 310.20
  descendant 561.3
  member 793.4
scissor 802.11
sclerosis symptom 85.9
  hardening 1046.5
scoff
  n food 10.2
  indignity 156.2
  gibe 508.2
  v jeer 508.9
  disbelieve 695.14
scofflaw 660.9
scold
  n bitch 110.12
  faultfinder 510.9
  v bird sound 60.5
  reprove 510.17
scoop
  n cavity 284.2
  information 551.1
  news item 552.3
  the facts 761.4
  piece 793.3
  v ladle 176.17
  excavate 284.15
scoot 174.9
scope
  n vision 27.1
  telescope 29.4
  field of view 31.3
  range 158.2
  degree 245.1
  size 257.1
  latitude 430.4
  meaning 518.1
  legality 673.1
  opportunity 843.2
  v look 27.13
scope out
  look 27.13
  examine 938.24
scorch
  n trauma 85.38
  burn 1020.6
  v brown 40.2
  speed 174.9
  injure 393.13
  criticize 510.20
  stain 1004.6
  be hot 1019.22
  burn 1020.24
  dry 1066.6
scorched earth 671.3
scorcher
  speeder 174.5
  game 745.3
  hot day 1019.8
score
  n crack 224.2
  notch 289.1
  furrow 290.1
  representation 349.1
  motive 375.1
  hit 409.5
  mark 517.5
  line 517.6
  debt 623.1
  account 628.2
  statement 628.3
  price 630.1
  playbook 704.21
  piece 708.5
  musical score 708.28
  engraving 713.2
  basketball game 747.3
  tennis game 748.2
  hockey game 749.3
  string 750.2
  round 751.3
  soccer game 752.3
  bridge 758.3
  twenty 882.7
  sum 1017.6
  v use 87.22
  notch 289.4
  furrow 290.3
  score a success 409.9
  acquire 472.8
  mark 517.19
  compose 708.46
  engrave 713.9
  play football 746.5
  play basketball 747.4
  play tennis 748.3
  play hockey 749.7
  list 871.8
  calculate 1017.18
the score
  the facts 761.4
  essence 767.3
score a bull's-eye 973.10
scorecard 549.10
scorekeeper 550.1
scoreless 412.16
scorer
  recorder 550.1
  composer 710.20
  game 749.3
scorn
  n hate 103.1
  contempt 157.1
  rejection 372.1
  v hate 103.5
  disdain 157.3
  reject 372.2
  flout 454.4
  be hard to please 495.8
scorpion 311.33
scotch
  n notch 289.1
  mark 517.5
  curb 1012.7
  v notch 289.4
  injure 393.13
  mark 517.19
  hinder 1012.10
  thwart 1012.15
Scotch 635.6
scot-free
  escaped 369.11
  free 430.21
Scotland Yard 1008.17
scoundrel
  criminal 645.10
  rascal 660.3
scour
  n abrasion 1044.2
  v wash 79.19
  speed 174.8
  traverse 177.20
  polish 287.7
  ransack 938.33
  abrade 1044.7
scourge
  n epidemic 85.5
  punishment 604.1
  whip 605.1
  bane 1001.1
  v whip 604.13
scouring powder 79.17
scourings
  remainder 256.1
  refuse 391.4
scout
  n vanguard 216.2
  secret agent 576.9
  baseball team 745.2
  precursor 816.1
  watchman 1008.10
  v look 27.13
  spurn 157.4
  traverse 177.20
  reject 372.2
  flout 454.4
  scoff 508.9
  reconnoiter 938.28
scowl
  n frown 110.9
  offense 152.2
  reproving look 510.8
  v look sullen 110.15
  show resentment 152.14
scrabble
  n creeping 177.17
  scribbling 547.7
  v creep 177.26
  excavate 284.15
  scribble 547.20
  grope 938.32
scram
  v depart 188.7
  leave 222.10
  flee 368.11
  interj go away 909.32
scramble
  n creeping 177.17
  Air Force mission 184.11
  bustle 330.4
  haste 401.1
  fight 457.4
  gibberish 522.7
  hodgepodge 797.6
  jumble 810.3
  commotion 810.4
  v speed 174.8
  creep 177.26
  hustle 330.13
  make haste 401.5
  contend 457.13
  make unintelligible 522.12
  play football 746.5
  mix 797.10
  confuse 811.3
scrambled
  meaningless 520.6
  hard to understand 522.14
  mixed 797.14
scrambled eggs 10.26
scramble for 480.16
scrambler 347.4
scrap
  n tatter 248.3
  minute 258.7
  rubbish 391.5
  quarrel 456.6
  piece 793.3
  v junk 390.8
  quarrel 456.12
  end 820.5
scrapbook
  record book 549.11
  compilation 554.7
scrape
  n rasp 58.3
  trauma 85.38
  obeisance 155.2
  bewilderment 971.3
  predicament 1013.5
  abrasion 1044.2
  v grate 58.10
  touch lightly 73.7
  bow 155.6
  contact 223.10
  excavate 284.15
  grind 287.8
  injure 393.13
  economize 635.4
  fiddle 708.41
  engrave 713.9
  abrade 1044.7
scrape by 991.4
scrape the bottom of the barrel 995.4
scrape together
  collect 472.11
  assemble 770.18
scrap heap
  trash pile 391.6
  derelict 370.4
scrap iron 391.4
scrapper
  oppositionist 452.3
  combatant 461.1
  boxer 461.2
scrapple 10.13
scrappy
  irascible 110.20
  contentious 110.26
  warlike 458.21
  incomplete 795.4
  discontinuous 813.4
  irregular 851.3
scraps
  remainder 256.1
  refuse 391.4
scrap the plan 365.8
scratch
  n feed 10.4
  rasp 58.3
  trauma 85.38
  shallowness 276.1
  furrow 290.1
  bad likeness 350.2
  mark 517.5
  scribbling 547.7
  engraving 713.2
  money 728.2
  blemish 1004.1
  abrasion 1044.2

v grate 58.10
tingle 74.5
excavate 284.15
furrow 290.3
misdraw 350.4
injure 393.13
obliterate 395.16
mark 517.19
scribble 547.20
portray 712.19
engrave 713.9
work hard 725.13
end 820.5
cease 857.6
scratchboard 712.18
scratch each other's back 863.4
scratchiness 58.2
scratch pad 549.11
scratch player 751.2
scratch the surface
give a lick and a promise 206.6
touch upon 276.4
not know 930.11
scrawl
n illegibility 522.4
scribbling 547.7
v scribble 547.20
scrawny lean 270.17
meager 992.10
scream
n screech 58.4
cry 59.1
lament 115.3
joke 489.6
v screech 58.8
cry 59.6
animal cry 60.2
wail 115.13
wind sound 318.21
speak 524.25
scream bloody murder
cry 59.6
complain 115.16
screamer caption 937.2
goof 975.6
screaming garish 35.20
vociferous 59.10
gaudy 501.20
screaming halt 857.2
screech
n shriek 58.4
cry 59.1
v shriek 58.8
cry 59.6
animal sound 60.2
wind sound 318.21
speak 524.25
screen
n refinery 79.13
network 170.3
furniture 229.1
porousness 292.8
cover 295.2
veil 346.2
pretext 376.1
scenery 704.20
motion-picture theater 706.7
arranger 808.5
safeguard 1008.3
shade 1028.1
television picture tube 1035.11
v refine 79.22
cover 295.19
conceal 346.6
defend 460.8
project 714.16
shield 747.4
play 752.4
segregate 773.6
classify 808.11
discriminate 944.4
protect 1008.18
shade 1028.5
screening
n refinement 79.4
network 170.3
covering 295.1
concealment 346.1
basketball game 747.3
grouping 808.3
adj covering 295.35
defensive 460.11
protective 1008.23
shading 1028.6
screen pass 746.3
screenplay 706.2
screen test 706.5
screenwriter
dramatist 704.22
scriptwriter 706.4
screw
n distortion 265.1
coil 281.2
jailer 429.10
torture 605.4
propeller 904.6
v copulate 75.21
distort 265.5
convolve 281.4
deceive 356.19
mistreat 389.6
demand 421.5
wrest 480.22
stint 484.5
overprice 632.7
hook 800.8
rotate 915.9
screw around 998.15
screwball
n oddity 870.4
lunatic 926.16
freak 927.4
adj crazy 926.27
eccentric 927.6
screwed up spoiled 393.29
botched 414.22
complex 799.4
confused 810.16
a screw loose 926.2
screwy foolish 923.9
crazy 926.27
eccentric 927.6
scribble
n bad likeness 350.2
illegibility 522.4
scribbling 547.7
v misdraw 350.4
scrabble 547.20
scribbler
hack writer 547.16
writer 718.3
literary hack 718.5
scribe
n writer 547.13
author 547.15
recorder 550.1
clergy 699.11
creative writer 718.4
v write 547.19
scrimmage fight 457.4
free-for-all 457.5
scrimmage line 746.3
scrimp stint 484.5
economize 635.4
scrip writing 547.10
document 549.5
money 728.1
paper money 728.5
token 728.12
script
representation 349.1
writing system 546.3
handwriting 547.3
writing 547.10
type 548.6
document 549.5
playbook 704.21
screenplay 706.3
scripture
sacred texts 683.1
scriptures 683.1
Scripture 683.2
scriptwriter
author 547.15
dramatist 704.22
screenwriter 706.4
creative writer 718.4
scroll
n coil 281.2
writing 547.10
manuscript 547.11
record 549.1
document 549.5
rare book 554.6
violin part 711.5
roll 871.6
v write 547.19
scrooge 484.4
scrotum 2.13
scrounge 440.15
scrounging
n beggary 440.6
theft 482.1
adj indolent 331.19
supplicatory 440.16
scrub
n washing 79.5
shrubbery 310.9
woodland 310.13
brush 310.16
a nobody 998.7
abrasion 1044.2
v wash 79.19
cease 857.6
abrade 1044.7
scrubby
dwarf 258.13
arboreal 310.39
sylvan 310.40
vulgar 497.15
base 661.12
paltry 998.21
scrubland 310.13
scruffy dirty 80.22
shabby 393.32
base 661.12
paltry 998.21
scrumptious
tasty 63.8
excellent 999.13
scrunch
n rasp 58.3
v grate 58.10
pulverize 1051.9
scruple
n compunction 113.2
modicum 248.2
demur 325.2
objection 333.2
conscientiousness 644.2
doubt 955.2
v demur 325.4
object 333.5
hesitate 362.7
doubt 955.6
scrupulous
demurring 325.7
meticulous 339.12
observant 434.4
fastidious 495.9
punctilious 580.10
dutiful 641.13
conscientious 644.15
doubting 955.9
scrutinize survey 27.14
examine 938.24
make a close study of 938.24
pay attention 983.8
scrutiny overview 27.6
examination 938.3
close attention 983.4
scuba 367.5
scuba diver 367.4
scud
n run 174.3
rainstorm 316.2
gust 318.6
foam 320.2
v speed 174.8
float 182.54
scuff
n trauma 85.38
abrasion 1044.2
v way of walking 177.28
injure 393.13
abrade 1044.7
scuffle
n fight 457.4
struggle 725.3
v way of walking 177.28
contend 457.13
struggle 725.11
scull
n oar 180.15
v navigate 182.13
row 182.53
sculler 183.5
scullery 11.4
scullery maid
washer 79.15
maid 577.8
sculpt form 262.7

  sculpture 715.5
sculptor
  sculpture 715.1
  artist 716.6
sculpture
  n forming 262.5
  figure 349.6
  visual arts 712.1
  statuary 715
  sculpturing 715.1
  carving 715.2
  v form 262.7
  engrave 713.9
  sculpt 715.5
scum
  n slime 80.8
  offal 80.9
  dregs 256.2
  blanket 295.12
  lamina 296.2
  sperm 305.11
  foam 320.2
  refuse 391.4
  rabble 606.3
  v cover 295.19
  foam 320.5
scum of the earth
  offal 80.9
  rabble 606.3
  the wicked 660.11
scupper 239.5
scurrilous
  caustic 144.23
  insulting 156.8
  disparaging 512.13
  cursing 513.8
  obscene 666.9
S-curve 279.3
scurvy vulgar 497.15
  base 661.12
  paltry 998.21
  terrible 1000.9
scurvy trick 356.6
scuttle
  n run 174.3
  gait 177.12
  porch 189.6
  haste 401.1
  v speed 174.8
  way of walking 177.28
  capsize 182.44
  sink 367.8
  do for 395.11
  make haste 401.5
  lose one's nerve 491.8
  bankrupt 625.8
scuttlebutt 552.6
scuzzy filthy 80.23
  offensive 98.18
  slovenly 810.15
  paltry 998.21
scythe 279.5
sea wave 238.14
  ocean 240.1
  open water 240.3
  quantity 247.3
sea anchor
  safeguard 1008.3
  curb 1012.7
seabed bed 199.4
  ocean depths 275.4
Seabees 461.27
sea bird 311.28
Seabiscuit 311.15
seaboard 234.2
seaborne 182.57
sea breeze 318.5
sea change 392.1
seacoast 234.2
seafarer 183.1
seafood 10.24
seagoing 182.57
sea ice 1023.5
seal
  n ratification 332.4
  sign 517.1
  print 517.7
  label 517.13
  signature 527.10
  royal insignia 647.3
  engraving tool 713.8
  cast 785.6
  mold 786.6
  characteristic 865.4
  v close 293.6
  ratify 332.12
  resolve 359.7
  sign 437.7
  mark 517.19
  label 517.20
  adj brown 40.3
sea lane seaway 182.10
  route 383.1
sealed close 293.12
  accepted 332.14
  confidential 345.14
  contracted 437.11
  unknown 930.17
sea legs 182.3
sea level 201.3
seal of approval 509.1
seal off close 293.6
  quarantine 429.13
seal one's lips 51.5
seam
  n crack 224.2
  layer 296.1
  joint 800.4
  deposit 1058.7
  v mark 517.19
seamanship
  shipmanship 182.3
  skill 413.1
seamless uniform 781.5
  continuous 812.8
  one 872.7
sea monster 311.30
seamstress
  dressmaker 5.36
  sewer 741.2
seamy 661.10
séance
  conference 541.6
  spiritualism 689.5
  assembly 770.2
sea of grass
  horizontal 201.3
  plain 236.1
seaplane
  n waterplane 181.8
  v fly 184.36
seaport 1009.6
sear
  n burn 1020.6
  v cook 11.5
  shrink 260.9
  languish 393.18
  stain 1004.6
  burn 1020.24
  dry 1066.6
  adj shrunk 260.13
search
  n searching 938.15
  v pursue 382.8
  hunt 938.31
search engine 1042.19
searcher 938.18
search me! 930.19
search warrant 938.15
seascape view 33.6
  scene 712.12
sea serpent 311.30
seashell 295.15
seashore
  n shore 234.2
  adj aquatic 182.58
seasickness 85.30
seaside
  n shore 234.2
  adj coastal 234.7
season
  n time of year 313.1
  period 824.1
  v flavor 63.7
  mature 303.9
  accustom 373.9
  develop 392.10
  preserve 397.9
  imbue 797.11
  be timely 843.6
  qualify 959.3
  harden 1046.7
  toughen 1049.3
seasonable apt 788.10
  timely 843.9
  expedient 995.5
seasonal
  in season 313.9
  periodic 850.7
seasonal affective disorder 92.14
seasoned zestful 68.7
  mature 303.13
  accustomed 373.15
  ripe 407.13
  experienced 413.28
  wise 920.17
  qualified 959.10
  tempered 1046.15
  toughened 1049.6
seasoning
  flavoring 63.3
  maturation 303.6
  habituation 373.7
  development 392.2
  food preservation 397.2
  preparedness 405.4
  experience 413.9
  admixture 797.7
  hardening 1046.5
seat
  n station 159.2
  headquarters 208.6
  abode 228.1
  capital 230.4
  authority 417.10
  foundation 901.6
  chair 901.17
  v place 159.12
  establish 159.16
  fix 855.9
seat belt 1008.3
SEATO 437.2
seat of government 230.4
seat of justice 595.5
Seattle Slew 311.15
seawall
  buttress 901.4
  harbor 1009.6
  barrier 1012.5
seaward
  clockwise 161.24
  oceanward 240.12
seawater 1065.3
seaway 182.10
seaweed 310.4
seaworthy
  sea-kindly 180.18
  snug 1007.7
sebaceous secretory 13.7
  oily 1056.9
secant
  n straight line 277.2
  adj cross 170.8
secede
  n apostatize 363.7
  v revolt 327.7
  dissent 333.4
  defect 370.6
seceder 363.5
secession dissent 333.1
  apostasy 363.2
  desertion 370.2
secluded
  quiescent 173.12
  private 345.13
  concealed 346.11
  seclusive 584.8
  segregated 773.8
seclusion privacy 345.2
  quarantine 429.2
  seclusiveness 583.3
  isolation 584.1
  reclusion 584.1
  exclusiveness 773.3
  aloneness 872.2
second
  n assistant 616.6
  supporter 616.9
  interval 709.20
  second base 745.1
  boxer 754.2
  moment 824.2
  instant 830.3
  irregular 1005.6
  v ratify 332.12
  back 449.13
  adv secondly 874.6
secondary
  n color system 35.7
  inferior 250.2
  subordinate 432.5
  deputy 576.1

nonessential 768.2
substitute 862.2
adj inferior 250.6
unessential 768.4
eventual 831.11
substitute 862.8
unimportant 998.16
secondary disease 85.1
secondary meaning 518.1
secondary product 893.3
secondary school 567.4
secondary smoke 89.1
second banana 704.10
second best 1005.4
second chance 396.3
second childhood
old age 303.5
senility 922.10
second-class 1005.9
second-class citizenship 791.1
second cousin 559.3
second-degree burn
trauma 85.38
burn 1020.6
second down 746.3
second edition 785.5
second estate 607.2
second fiddle
inferiority 250.1
inferior 250.2
subservience 432.2
secondhand
used 387.24
old 842.18
second helping 8.10
second home 228.8
second lieutenant 575.18
second look
repetition 849.1
re-examination 938.7
second mate 183.7
second mortgage 438.4
second nature 373.3
second opinion 946.3
second person 530.7
second prize 646.2
second rank 250.6
second-rate 1005.9
seconds tobacco 89.2
commodity 735.2
second-story thief 483.3
second string
n inferiority 250.1
team 617.7
substitute 862.2
adj inferior 250.6
second thoughts
irresolution 362.1
reverse 363.1
mature thought 931.5
second to none
peerless 249.15
peerlessly 249.18
second wind 396.3
secrecy invisibility 32.1
concealment 345.1
secretness 345.1
hiding 346.1
seclusion 584.1
secret
n confidence 345.5
adj invisible 32.5
close 345.11
secretive 345.15
concealed 346.11
recondite 522.16
intrinsic 767.7
secret agent
operative 576.9
inquirer 938.16
secretariat 594.4
Secretariat
horse 311.15
United Nations 614.2
secretary writer 547.13
recorder 550.1
executive 574.3
public official 575.17
delegate 576.2
agent 576.3
table 901.15
Secretary of the Treasury 729.12
secret ballot 371.6
secrete excrete 12.12
produce 13.5
keep secret 345.7
hide away 346.7
store up 386.11
be damp 1065.11
secretion
excretion 12.1
secreta 13.1
concealment 346.1
moisture 1065.1
secret police
surveillance 938.9
police 1008.17
Secret Service 576.10
secret service
intelligence service 576.12
surveillance 938.9
secret weapon arms 462.1
salient point 997.6
sect party 617.4
school 617.5
system of beliefs 675.1
sectarism 675.3
sectarian
n dissenter 333.3
sectary 675.18
nonconformist 868.3
adj dissenting 333.6
partisan 617.19
sectary 675.26
sectarianism 617.13
section
n region 231.1
plot 231.4
military unit 461.22
part of book 554.13
passage 708.24
part 793.1
part of writing 793.2
severance 802.2
class 809.2
classifications 809.5
v apportion 802.18
sectional
regional 231.8
partisan 617.19
partial 793.7
sector semicircle 280.8
part 793.1
secular
n layman 700.2
adj unsacred 686.3
secularist 695.16
lay 700.3
momentary 850.8
hundredth 882.29
realistic 987.6
material 1052.10
secular humanist 695.13
secure
v fetch 176.16
elicit 192.14
close 293.6
bind 428.10
guarantee 438.9
defend 460.8
acquire 472.8
receive 479.6
fasten 800.7
make sure 855.8
stop work 857.8
protect 1008.18
adj fast 800.14
stable 855.12
belief 953.21
reliable 970.17
assured 970.20
confident 970.21
safe 1007.4
securities 738
security hope 124.1
veil of secrecy 345.3
guaranty 438.1
surety 438.1
stability 855.1
reliability 970.4
confidence 970.5
safety 1007.1
protection 1008.1
prosperity 1010.1
security blanket 901.1
security camera 714.11
Security Council 614.2
security risk 357.11
sedate
v put to sleep 22.20
relieve 120.5
moderate 670.6
adj staid 106.14
solemn 111.3
dignified 136.12
sedative
n sleep-inducer 22.10
anesthetic 25.3
sedative hypnotic 86.12
drug 87.3
moderator 670.3
adj sleep-inducing 22.23
calmative 86.45
palliative 670.16
sedentary inert 173.14
inactive 331.17
sedge 310.5
sediment
n deposit 176.9
dregs 256.2
v precipitate 1045.11
sedimentary rock 1059.1
sedition
rebelliousness 327.3
treason 645.7
seduce enamor 104.23
lure 377.5
betray 665.20
seductive
desirable 100.30
alluring 377.8
see
n diocese 698.8
v sense 24.6
behold 27.12
attend 221.8
perceive 521.9
visit 582.19
bet 759.25
spectate 918.5
know 928.12
think of 931.17
detect 941.5
heed 983.6
visualize 986.15
interj attention! 983.22
see about 931.14
see both sides 979.7
seed
n sperm 305.11
stone 310.31
lineage 560.4
offspring 561.1
card 758.2
vital force 886.7
v plant 1069.18
seedbed 1069.11
seed clouds 316.10
seedling sprout 302.11
plant 310.3
tree 310.10
see double
see badly 28.8
be drunk 88.27
seed pod 310.30
seedy tired 21.7
ill 85.56
shabby 393.32
slovenly 810.15
inferior 1005.9
see eye to eye
concur 332.9
agree 788.6
see fit 371.17
see how the wind blows 494.6
seeing
n vision 27.1
distinctness 31.2
observatory 1072.17
adj visual 27.20
Seeing Eye dog
aid to the blind 30.6
dog 311.17
see in perspective 925.2
see in retrospect 989.10
see into perceive 521.9
investigate 938.23
see it through
prosecute to a conclusion 360.5
be thorough 794.8
continue 856.3
persist 856.5

seek pursue 382.8
endeavor 403.5
solicit 440.14
hunt 938.30
be curious 981.3
seek refuge 1009.7
seem 33.10
seeming
n aspect 33.3
exteriority 206.1
sham 354.3
illusoriness 976.2
adj apparent 33.11
exterior 206.7
specious 354.27
illusory 976.9
seemly decorous 496.10
appropriate 533.7
conventional 579.5
right 637.3
decent 664.5
expedient 995.5
see off 188.16
see one's way clear to 441.3
seep
n exuding 190.6
v exude 190.15
trickle 238.18
be damp 1065.11
seepage
sorption 187.6
entrance 189.1
exuding 190.6
trickle 238.7
see red 152.18
seesaw
n playground equipment 743.15
interaction 777.3
alternation 916.5
oscillator 916.9
v change 854.5
alternate 916.13
adj reciprocal 777.10
alternate 916.19
adv reciprocally 777.12
to and fro 916.21
seethe
n agitation 917.1
v be excitable 105.16
be angry 152.15
bubble 320.4
fume 671.12
come together 770.16
mill 915.12
flounder 917.15
be hot 1019.22
boil 1020.20
soak 1065.13
see the cloven hoof 941.8
see the difference 944.6
see the future 962.9
see the handwriting on the wall
anticipate 845.6
foreknow 961.6
see the inside of 941.8
see the last of
not use 390.5
relinquish 475.3
eject 909.13
see the light
appear 33.8
come to life 306.10
be published 352.16
perceive 521.9
be converted 692.7
see the light at the end of the tunnel 124.9
see the light of day
be born 1.2
appear 33.8
be published 352.16
originate 818.13
see to
prepare for 405.11
operate 889.5
seek 938.30
attend to 983.5
care for 1008.19
see what one can do
see what can be done 403.10
experiment 942.8
see which way the wind blows 942.9
see you later! 188.22
segment
n straight line 277.2
portion 477.5
sect 675.3
part 793.1
part of writing 793.2
v analyze 801.6
apportion 802.18
segregate
quarantine 429.13
exclude 773.6
differentiate 780.6
separate 802.8
discriminate 944.4
seismic 671.23
seismic wave 916.4
seismograph 916.8
seismology 916.7
seize
take command 417.14
arrest 429.15
hold 474.6
take hold of 480.14
understand 521.7
usurp 640.8
secure 855.8
fix 855.10
stop 857.7
infest 910.6
know 928.12
seize on select 371.14
fasten upon 480.16
think of 931.16
pay attention 983.8
seize the day
make no provision 406.7
squander 486.3
seize the opportunity
use the occasion 843.7
improve the occasion 843.8
seize up be still 173.7
fix 855.10
stop 857.7
seizure pang 26.2
attack 85.6
symptom 85.9
outburst 105.9
authority 417.12
arrest 429.6
hold 474.2
seizing 480.2
take 480.10
usurpation 640.3
overrunning 910.1
spasm 917.6
frenzy 926.7
seldom
infrequently 848.4
unusually 870.17
select
n the best 999.8
v make a selection 371.14
designate 517.18
appoint 615.11
specify 865.11
discriminate 944.4
adj chosen 371.26
particular 495.13
exclusive 773.9
best 999.16
select a jury 598.16
select committee 423.2
selected works 554.7
selection
choice 371.1
indication 517.3
excerpt 557.3
appointment 615.2
grouping 808.3
specification 865.6
selective service
service 458.9
enlistment 615.7
selectman 575.17
self psyche 92.28
ego 865.5
soul 919.4
self-abasement
humiliation 137.2
unselfishness 652.1
crouch 913.3
self-absorbed
unfeeling 94.9
selfish 651.5
self-abuse 75.8
self-accusing 113.8
self-acting
voluntary 324.7
automated 1041.22
self-address 542.1
self-adhesive 803.12
self-adjusting 1041.22
self-admiring vain 140.8
selfish 651.5
self-admission 351.3
self-adulation 502.3
self-advancement 651.1
self-advertisement
self-approbation 502.3
selfishness 651.1
self-analysis 113.3
self-appointed
presumptuous 141.10
meddlesome 214.9
self-approbation
complacency 107.2
vanity 140.1
self-praise 502.3
self-assertive 359.15
self-assured
composed 106.13
confident 970.21
self-avowal 351.3
self-centered
unfeeling 94.9
egotistic 140.10
selfish 651.5
self-complacent
complacent 107.10
vain 140.8
self-conceit 140.4
self-confessed
accepted 332.14
disclosive 351.10
self-confidence
equanimity 106.3
pride 136.1
confidence 970.5
self-congratulating 140.8
self-conscious 139.12
self-contained
independent 430.22
unsociable 583.5
selfish 651.5
separate 802.20
self-contained underwater breathing apparatus 367.5
self-content
n complacency 107.2
vanity 140.1
adj complacent 107.10
vain 140.8
self-contradiction
inconsistency 789.2
impossibility 967.1
error 975.1
self-control
n equanimity 106.3
patience 134.1
self-command 359.5
restraint 428.1
temperance 668.1
moderation 670.1
v self-govern 1041.21
self-deception
deception 356.1
illusion 976.1
self-defeating 923.10
self-defense
defense 460.1
justification 600.2
self-deluding 976.8
self-denial
self-control 359.5
unselfishness 652.1
asceticism 667.1
temperance 668.1
moderation 670.1
self-dependent 430.22
self-deprecating
self-abasing 137.12
self-effacing 139.10
self-destruct
blow up 395.18
be destroyed 395.22
self-destruction 308.5

self-destructive
  murderous 308.24
  destructive 395.26
self-determination
  nationhood 232.6
  voluntariness 324.2
  independence 430.5
  rallying device 458.12
  automation 1041.1
self-discipline
  self-control 359.5
  temperance 668.1
self-discovery 941.1
self-doubt
  self-effacement 139.2
  doubt 955.2
self-dramatizing
  n self-approbation 502.3
  adj self-approving 502.11
self-driven 1041.23
self-educated 928.24
self-effacing
  self-modest 139.10
  unselfish 652.5
self-elected 141.10
self-employed person 726.2
self-esteem pride 136.1
  vanity 140.1
  selfishness 651.1
self-evident
  manifest 348.8
  real 761.15
  obvious 970.15
self-examination 938.6
self-explanatory 348.8
self-expression 359.6
self-flagellation 113.3
self-fulfillment 92.27
self-glorification 502.3
self-governing 612.17
self-gratification 95.1
self-hatred 113.3
self-help 449.6
self-help group 449.2
self-humiliating 113.8
self-hypnosis 22.7
self-identity 865.1
self-immolation
  suicide 308.5
  unselfishness 652.1
  oblation 696.7
  burning 1020.5
self-importance
  vanity 140.1
  pompousness 501.7
  confidence 970.5
  importance 997.1
self-improvement 449.6
self-inflicted 643.8
self-interest
  egotism 140.3
  selfishness 651.1
selfish egotistic 140.10
  self-seeking 651.5
self-isolation 651.1
selfless
  impartial 649.10
  unselfish 652.5
self-love vanity 140.1
  selfishness 651.1
self-made 892.18
self-neglect 652.1
self-operating 1041.22
self-opinionated
  conceited 140.11
  dogmatic 970.22
self-pitiful 145.9
self-pity 145.1
self-possessed
  composed 106.13
  strong-willed 359.15
self-praise 502.3
self-preservation 460.1
self-priming 1041.22
self-proclaimed 141.10
self-promoting
  n self-approbation 502.3
  adj self-approving 502.11
  selfish 651.5
self-propelled
  jet-propelled 904.16
  self-moved 1041.23
self-propulsion 1041.1
self-protection 460.1
self-punishment 113.3
self-regulating 1041.22
self-reliance
  pride 136.1
  independence 430.5
  confidence 970.5
self-reproach 113.3
self-respect pride 136.1
  vanity 140.1
self-restraint
  equanimity 106.3
  self-control 359.5
  temperance 668.1
  moderation 670.1
self-righteous 693.5
self-rule
  communion 476.2
  government 612.4
self-sacrifice
  suicide 308.5
  unselfishness 652.1
  oblation 696.7
selfsame
  n the same 778.3
  adj identical 778.7
self-satisfied complacent 107.10
  vain 140.8
self-serving
  n selfishness 651.1
  adj selfish 651.5
self-starter 330.8
self-styled
  spurious 354.26
  nominal 527.15
self-sufficient
  proud 136.8
  vain 140.8
  independent 430.22
  unsociable 583.5
  selfish 651.5
self-support 449.6
self-sustaining 449.23
self-taught
  educated 570.16
  self-educated 928.24
self-winding 1041.22
self-worship 140.1
self-worshiping 140.8
sell publicize 352.15
  urge 375.14
  persuade 375.23
  provision 385.9
  transfer 629.3
  deal in 731.16
  merchandise 734.8
  be sold 734.12
  convert 737.24
  convince 953.18
sell at a loss
  discount 631.2
  sell 734.8
sell at auction 734.11
sell down the river
  defect 370.6
  betray 645.14
seller 730.3
seller's market
  demand 421.1
  insufficiency 992.1
  roaring trade 1010.5
sell for cost 630.13
  be sold 734.12
sell in futures 737.23
selling
  n inducement 375.3
  provision 385.1
  merchandising 734.2
  adj sales 734.13
sell off discard 390.7
  relinquish 475.3
  transfer 629.3
  sell 734.8
sell on credit 622.6
sell one a bill of goods 356.15
sell one on
  persuade 375.23
  convince 953.18
sell oneself
  act the traitor 645.15
  convince oneself 953.19
sell out defect 370.6
  discard 390.7
  inform on 551.13
  betray 645.14
  act the traitor 645.15
  sell 734.8
  sell stocks 737.24
sell short sell 734.8
  sell stocks 737.24
  underestimate 950.2
sell-through 734.2
sell to the highest bidder
  734.11
sell under the counter 732.7
semantic
  indicative 517.23
  meaning 518.12
  linguistic 523.19
semantics
  meaning 518.7
  lexicology 526.14
semaphore 517.15
semblance aspect 33.3
  image 349.5
  sham 354.3
  pretext 376.1
  similarity 784.1
  copy 785.1
  illusoriness 976.2
semen body fluid 13.2
  sperm 305.11
semester 824.2
semi 179.12
semiannual 850.8
semi-automatic 1041.12
semicircle
  crescent 279.5
  half circle 280.8
  half 875.2
semicolon 857.4
semiconductor 1032.14
semiconductor chip 1042.3
semiconductor circuit 1033.8
semiconscious 25.8
semifinalist 452.2
semigloss 35.22
seminal genital 2.29
  secretory 13.7
  reproductive 78.15
  gametic 305.20
  original 886.14
  productive 890.9
  fertilizing 890.11
  imaginative 986.18
seminar
  discussion 541.7
  study 568.8
seminary school 567.1
  secondary school 567.4
semiology symbol 517.2
  semantics 518.7
semiprecious stone 1059.7
semiretired 402.5
semiweekly 850.8
semiyearly 850.8
senary 882.18
senate 423.1
Senate committee 613.2
senator 610.3
send
  n wave 238.14
  v delight 95.11
  remove 176.11
  send off 176.15
  billow 238.22
  communicate 343.7
  mail 553.12
  start 904.13
  broadcast 1034.25
  transmit 1036.15
send abroad 190.17
send after 420.11
send a letter to 553.10
send a message
  communicate 343.7
  announce 352.12
  state 524.23
send a statement 628.11
send away send 176.15
  repulse 908.3
  banish 909.17
send a wire 347.20
send back
  reverberate 54.7
  restore 481.4
send down 909.17
sender 347.2
send flying 412.7
send for 420.11
send forth send 176.15

  issue 352.14
  start 904.13
  disgorge 909.25
send headlong 913.5
sending 343.2
send in one's papers 448.2
send off send 176.15
  begin 818.7
  start 904.13
  repulse 908.3
  dismiss 909.18
send-off
  leave-taking 188.4
  beginning 818.1
send one's condolences 147.2
send one's regards 504.13
send out
  commission 615.10
  disgorge 909.25
  vaporize 1067.8
send packing
  reject 372.2
  repulse 908.3
  drive out 909.14
  dismiss 909.18
send the wrong message
  pervert 265.6
  misrepresent 350.3
send to Davy Jones's locker 367.8
send to hell 682.6
send to jail 429.17
send to kingdom come 308.13
send to the gas chamber 604.17
send up commit 429.17
  lampoon 512.12
send-up 512.5
send up a trial balloon 942.9
send up the river
  imprison 429.14
  commit 429.17
send word
  communicate 343.7
  inform 551.8
senescence 303.6
senile
  n dotard 924.9
  adj stricken in years 303.18
  old-fogyish 842.17
  decrepit 922.23
senior
  n superior 249.4
  elder 304.5
  undergraduate 572.6
  chief 575.3
  bridge 758.3
  adj authoritative 417.15
  previous 834.4
  older 842.19
senior citizen 304.2
senior high school 567.4
seniority
  superiority 249.1
  eldership 303.3
  prestige 417.4
  oldness 842.1
señor 76.7
señora 77.9
señorita 77.9
sensation
  physical sensibility 24
  sense 24.1
  feeling 93.1
  thrill 105.2
  marvel 122.2
  success 409.4
  brain 919.6
sensational
  emotionalistic 93.19
  lurid 105.32
  wonderful 122.10
  gaudy 501.20
  vigorous 544.11
  grandiloquent 545.8
  superb 999.15
sense
  n sensation 24.1
  feeling 93.1
  milieu 209.3
  meaning 518.1
  consensus 788.3
  intelligence 920.1
  sensibleness 920.6
  cognizance 928.2
  idea 932.1
  hunch 934.3
  logic 935.9
  discrimination 944.1
  suggestion 951.5
  opinion 953.6
  v perceive 24.6
  feel 93.10
  understand 521.7
  intuit 934.4
  detect 941.5
senseless
  unconscious 25.8
  cruel 144.26
  meaningless 520.6
  unordered 810.12
  unintelligent 922.13
  foolish 923.8
  unwise 923.10
  insane 926.26
  illogical 936.11
  inanimate 1055.5
sense of duty 641.2
sense of hearing 48.1
sense of humor 489.11
sense of relief 120.4
sense of rhythm 708.31
sense of right and wrong 636.5
sense of touch 73.1
sense of wonder 122.1
sense organ 24.5
senses five senses 24.5
  wits 919.2
  sanity 925.1
sensible sentient 24.11
  sensitive 93.20
  grateful 150.5
  weighable 297.19
  cheap 633.7
  substantial 763.6
  intelligent 920.12
  reasonable 920.18
  sane 925.4
  knowing 928.15
  logical 935.20
  realistic 987.6
sensitive sensory 24.9
  responsive 24.12
  sore 26.11
  sensible 93.20
  excitable 105.28
  touchy 110.21
  confidential 345.14
  fastidious 495.9
  discriminating 944.7
  tolerant 979.11
  pliant 1047.9
sensitize 24.7
sensory
  n brain 919.6
  adj sensorial 24.9
  sensual 663.5
sensual sexual 75.25
  sensualist 663.5
  lascivious 665.29
sensuous sensory 24.9
  delightful 97.7
  sensual 663.5
sentence
  n remark 524.3
  phrase 529.1
  judgment 598.9
  condemnation 602.1
  part of writing 793.2
  verdict 946.5
  maxim 974.1
  v condemn 602.3
  pass judgment 946.13
sentence of death 307.1
sentient 24.11
sentiment feeling 93.1
  sentimentality 93.8
  love 104.1
  idea 932.1
  opinion 953.6
  attitude 978.1
sentimental
  maudlin 93.21
  loving 104.27
  foolish 923.8
sentry warner 399.4
  watchman 1008.10
separable
  different 780.7
  severable 802.26
  discriminable 944.9
separate
  v refine 79.22
  diverge 171.5
  bound 211.8
  partition 213.8
  interspace 224.3
  open 292.11
  quarantine 429.13
  fall out 456.10
  sow dissension 456.14
  divorce 566.5
  disband 771.8
  segregate 773.6
  differentiate 780.6
  apportion 793.6
  analyze 801.6
  divide 802.8
  part company 802.19
  classify 808.11
  discriminate 944.4
  adj secluded 584.8
  different 780.7
  distinct 802.20
  alone 872.8
separate oneself
  keep one's distance 261.7
  dissent 333.4
separate returns 630.9
separate the wheat from the chaff
  select 371.14
  discriminate 944.4
separatist
  n dissenter 333.3
  apostate 363.5
  adj repudiative 363.12
separator
  extractor 192.9
  sieve 802.7
sepia 40.3
seppuku 308.5
septet
  cooperation 450.1
  part music 708.18
  poetry 720.9
  seven 882.3
septic unhealthful 82.5
  diseased 85.60
  putrefactive 393.39
septicemia 85.31
septic tank 80.12
septuagenarian
  old man 304.2
  seventy 882.7
septum 213.5
sepulcher 309.16
sequel following 166.1
  continuation 817.1
  consequence 817.1
  follow-up 835.2
  effect 887.1
sequence
  following 166.1
  consistency 803.2
  continuity 807.2
  series 812.2
  progression 815.1
  subsequence 835.1
  effect 887.1
  thoughts 931.4
sequester
  reserve 386.12
  attach 480.20
  separate 802.8
sequester oneself
  seclude oneself 584.7
  stand alone 872.6
  find refuge 1009.8
sequitur 817.1
seraglio 563.10
seraph 679.1
sere worn 393.31
  wasted 393.35
  unproductive 891.4
  dried 1066.9
serenade
  n courtship 562.7
  v court 562.21
  sing 708.38
serendipity
  discovery 941.1
  chance 972.1
serene calm 106.12

pacific 464.9
equable 670.13
light 1025.31
serf sycophant 138.3
subject 432.7
retainer 577.1
sergeant
Army noncommissioned officer 575.19
Navy officer 575.20
policeman 1008.15
sergeant-at-arms
ship's officer 183.7
policeman 1008.15
serial
n part 554.13
periodical 555.1
radiobroadcast 1034.18
television broadcast 1035.2
adj journalistic 555.5
consistent 803.11
consecutive 812.9
periodic 850.7
serial killer 308.11
serial number 517.11
series following 166.1
edition 554.5
hockey 749.1
set 770.12
classifications 809.5
succession 812.2
sequence 815.1
round 850.3
mathematical progression 1017.8
serif 548.6
serious zealous 101.9
sedate 106.14
solemn 111.3
great 247.6
resolute 359.11
lofty 544.14
cognitive 931.21
weighty 997.20
dangerous 1006.9
sermon
reproof 510.5
lecture 543.3
lesson 568.7
sermonize
lecture 543.11
expound 568.16
serpent snake 311.26
traitor 357.10
beast 660.6
serpentine
n variegation 47.6
v convolve 281.4
adj deviative 164.7
flowing 238.24
curved 279.7
convolutional 281.6
coiled 281.7
reptile 311.48
cunning 415.12
serrate
v notch 289.4
adj angular 278.6
rugged 288.7
notched 289.5
serum humor 2.24
blood 2.25
antitoxin 86.27
transfusion 91.18
servant
hanger-on 138.6
instrument 384.4
underling 432.5
subject 432.7
employee 577.3
servitor 577.2
assistant 616.6
believer 692.4
worker 726.2
serve
n game 748.2
v copulate 75.21
be inferior 250.4
act 328.4
be instrumental 384.7
avail 387.17
summon 420.11
lend oneself 449.18
do duty 458.18
give 478.12
work for 577.13
officiate 724.13
play tennis 748.3
shuffle 758.5
suit 788.8
tend 896.3
throw 904.10
suffice 991.4
expedite one's affair 995.3
do good 999.10
serve an apprenticeship 570.11
serve-and-volley 748.2
serve as 349.10
serve notice 551.8
serve one right
requite 506.5
punish 604.10
get one's deserts 639.6
be just 649.6
serve out 477.8
serve time
be imprisoned 429.18
take one's turn 825.5
service
n serving 8.10
food service 8.11
act of kindness 143.7
rigging 180.12
obedience 326.1
instrumentality 384.3
benefit 387.4
subservience 432.2
aid 449.1
military service 458.9
military branch 461.21
servanthood 577.12
ceremony 580.4
divine service 696.8
rite 701.3
task 724.2
game 748.2
throw 904.3
v copulate 75.21
repair 396.14
serviceable
modal 384.8
useful 387.18
helpful 449.21
serviceable life 827.1
service academy 567.6
serviceman
mender 396.10
military man 461.6
service medal 646.6
servile slavish 138.13
inferior 250.6
subject 432.13
downtrodden 432.16
submissive 433.12
deferential 433.16
serving 577.14
serving
n service 8.10
rigging 180.12
adj acting 328.10
helping 449.20
servitorial 577.14
servitude
subjection 432.1
service 577.12
sesquicentennial 850.4
sesquipedality 545.3
session
ecclesiastical council 423.4
conference 541.6
assembly 770.2
moment 824.2
set
n navigation 159.3
direction 161.1
course 172.2
flow 238.4
form 262.1
sprout 302.11
edition 554.5
clique 617.6
setting 704.19
motion-picture studio 706.4
game 745.3
bridge 758.3
company 770.3
collection 770.12
group 784.5
all 792.3
cohesion 803.1
class 809.2
trend 896.2
disposition 978.3
radio 1034.3
v be pregnant 78.12
place 159.12
establish 159.16
direct 161.5
take direction 161.7
sit 173.10
sink 194.6
flow 238.16
form 262.7
sharpen 285.7
heal 396.21
prime 405.9
prescribe 420.9
allot 477.9
typeset 548.16
impose 643.4
put to music 708.46
make agree 788.7
fasten 800.7
cohere 803.6
fix 855.9
specify 865.11
tend 896.3
thicken 1045.10
solidify 1046.8
plant 1069.18
adj trite 117.9
located 159.18
circumscribed 210.6
sharp 285.8
firm 359.12
obstinate 361.8
customary 373.13
confirmed 373.18
planned 381.12
prepared 405.16
fast 800.14
cohesive 803.10
established 855.13
fixed 855.14
assured 970.20
hardened 1046.13
set about
undertake 404.3
begin 818.7
set above 371.17
set a course 818.8
set afire 375.18
set afloat cause 886.10
start 904.13
set against
v offset 338.5
sow dissension 456.14
antagonize 589.7
compare 943.4
adj oppositional 451.8
hostile 589.10
set against one another 215.4
set a limit 944.4
set an example 786.7
set apart
v partition 213.8
interspace 224.3
excise 255.10
reserve 386.12
allot 477.9
dedicate 477.11
sanctify 685.5
segregate 773.6
differentiate 780.6
separate 802.8
characterize 865.10
discriminate 944.4
adj sanctified 685.8
segregated 773.8
set a precedent 834.3
set a price 630.11
set aside
remove 176.11
excise 255.10
reserve 386.12
put away 390.6
repeal 445.2
segregate 773.6
separate 802.8
postpone 846.9
allow for 959.5
dismiss 984.4
set astir excite 105.12
rouse 375.19

set at undertake 404.3
set to work 725.15
set at each other's throat 589.7
set at ease
content 107.4
lighten 120.7
comfort 121.6
set at intervals 224.3
set at large 431.4
set at odds
sow dissension 456.14
antagonize 589.7
set a trap for
ambush 346.10
trap 356.20
set at rest
v prove 957.10
make sure 970.11
adj accomplished 407.10
ended 820.8
set at variance 456.14
set a value on 946.9
setback
disappointment 132.1
regression 163.1
slowing 175.4
relapse 394.1
discomfiture 412.2
bridge 758.3
reverse 1011.3
hindrance 1012.1
set back
v daunt 127.18
slow 175.9
indent 284.14
impair 393.9
restrain 428.7
hinder 1012.10
adj retarded 175.12
set before
confront 216.8
prefer 371.17
put to choice 371.21
propose 439.5
set conditions
stipulate 421.7
qualify 959.3
set designer 704.23
set down
v abase 137.5
deposit 159.14
affirm 334.5
reprove 510.17
record 549.15
maintain 953.11
adj humbled 137.13
set down for hearing 598.13
set down to 888.4
set eyes on 27.12
set fire to excite 105.12
ignite 1020.22
set foot in go to 177.25
enter 189.7
attend 221.8
set foot on dry land 186.8
set for
prepared for 405.18
in preparation for 405.24
set forth set out 188.8
manifest 348.5
describe 349.9
propose 439.5
say 524.22
make a beginning 818.8
focus on 937.3
postulate 951.12
evidence 957.8
set free rescue 398.3
liberate 431.4
acquit 601.4
set in insert 191.3
indent 284.14
blow 318.20
begin 818.7
fix 855.9
set in concrete
v prescribe 420.9
adj mandatory 420.12
set in motion
move 172.6
motivate 375.12
execute 437.9
impel 902.11
start 904.13
set in one's ways
obstinate 361.8
confirmed 373.18
set in opposition 943.4
set in order 808.8
set in print 548.16
set limits
differentiate 780.6
qualify 959.3
set mind 361.1
set of conditions 766.2
set off border 211.10
measure off 300.11
offset 338.5
kindle 375.18
allot 477.9
ornament 498.8
explode 671.14
go contrary to 779.4
differentiate 780.6
cause 886.10
discriminate 944.4
beautify 1016.16
set off against 943.4
set on
v base on 199.6
incite 375.17
sow dissension 456.14
attack 459.14
adj desirous of 100.22
determined upon 359.16
set one's cap for
desire 100.14
court 562.21
set one's course for 161.9
set one's heart on 100.17
set one's house in order
prepare for 405.11
atone 658.4
set one's jaw 359.8
set one's mind at ease
be composed 106.6
content 107.4
lighten 120.7
set one's sights on 380.4
set one's teeth on edge
grate on 58.11
sour 67.4
irritate 96.14
get on one's nerves 128.9
set one back 630.13
set one back on his heels
857.11
set on edge
irritate 96.14
ruffle 288.5
set oneself against
refuse 442.3
oppose 451.3
disapprove 510.10
set on fire excite 105.12
kindle 375.18
ignite 1020.22
set on the straight and narrow
858.12
set out
go forth 188.8
plot 381.10
ornament 498.8
phrase 532.4
dispose 808.9
begin 818.7
make a beginning 818.8
set out for 161.9
set phrase 529.1
set point
tennis score 748.2
values 1041.10
set purpose 380.1
set right direct to 161.6
compensate 338.4
remedy 396.13
teach 568.10
atone 658.4
make agree 788.7
disillusion 977.2
set sail
hoist sail 182.20
set out 188.8
begin 818.7
set side by side 223.13
set straight
direct to 161.6
straighten 277.5
make better 392.9
remedy 396.13
arrange 437.8
reprove 510.17
re-form 858.12
set the ball rolling 818.7
set the date 832.13
set the limit 210.4
set the mind to 983.5
set the pace lead 165.2
set an example 786.7
characterize 865.10
set the record straight 420.10
set the stage 704.28
set the tone
be fashionable 578.9
characterize 865.10
setting
n background 209.2
nearness 223.1
arena 463.1
motif 498.7
composition 548.2
stage setting 704.19
musical piece 708.5
harmonization 709.2
plot 722.4
circumstances 766.2
frame 901.10
thickening 1045.4
hardening 1046.5
planting 1069.14
adj descending 194.11
setting sun 315.2
settle
settle down 159.17
dive 184.41
arrive 186.6
sink 194.6
get down 194.7
people 225.9
gravitate 297.15
kill 308.14
resolve 359.7
do for 395.11
defeat 412.9
arrange 437.8
pacify 465.7
reconcile 465.8
negotiate 466.7
compromise 468.2
punish 604.11
pay in full 624.13
transfer 629.3
organize 808.10
fix 855.9
interchange 863.4
conform 867.3
decide 946.11
prove 957.10
refute 958.5
make sure 970.11
settle accounts
get even with 506.7
punish 604.10
pay in full 624.13
settle down
settle 159.17
land 184.43
sink 194.6
mature 303.9
be moderate 670.5
settle for
be content 107.5
interchange 863.4
settle in arrive 186.6
people 225.9
settlement
establishment 159.7
peopling 225.2
country 232.1
compact 437.1
adjustment 465.4
compromise 468.1
estate 471.4
endowment 478.9
community 617.2
payment 624.1
transfer 629.1
proof 957.3
settle one's differences 465.10
settler incomer 189.4
habitant 227.9
giver 478.11
newcomer 774.4
finishing stroke 820.4

conclusive argument 958.3
settle the score
get even with 506.7
punish 604.11
settlings 256.2
set to undertake 404.3
quarrel 456.11
set to work 725.15
fasten 800.7
begin 818.7
set-to 456.6
set to one side 176.11
set to rights
remedy 396.13
repair 396.14
arrange 808.8
set toward 896.3
set to work 725.15
setup structure 266.1
plan 381.1
composition 796.1
order 807.1
prearrangement 965.2
easy 1014.4
set up refresh 9.2
provoke 152.24
establish 159.16
erect 200.9
plan 381.8
remedy 396.13
aid 449.11
trump up a charge 599.12
treat 624.19
glorify 662.13
finance 729.16
order 807.4
inaugurate 818.11
cause 886.10
produce 892.8
found 892.10
elevate 912.5
prearrange 965.5
set up barriers 429.13
set up for 354.21
set up in business
settle 159.17
work 724.12
finance 729.16
set upon 459.14
set up shop
settle 159.17
practice 328.8
work 724.12
set to work 725.15
make a beginning 818.8
seven
playing card 758.2
heptad 882.3
seven-card stud 759.10
sevenfold 882.19
the seven seas 240.1
Seven Sisters 1072.8
seventh
n interval 709.20
adj septimal 882.19
seventh heaven
happiness 95.2
summit 198.2
heaven of heavens 681.4
seventy 882.7
sever
differentiate 780.6
separate 802.11
discriminate 944.4
several
n plurality 883.1
a number 884.2
adj proportionate 477.13
different 780.7
diversified 783.4
particular 865.12
plural 883.7
divers 884.7
severance
elimination 773.2
differentiation 780.4
disseverment 802.2
severance pay 624.4
severe
acrimonious 17.14
painful 26.10
pungent 68.6
harsh 144.24
imperious 417.16
strict 425.6
inornate 499.9
gruff 505.7
plain-speaking 535.3
violent 671.16
simple 798.6
exact 973.17
difficult 1013.17
cold 1023.14
severity acrimony 17.5
pungency 68.1
harshness 144.9
strictness 425.1
inornateness 499.4
gruffness 505.3
plain speech 535.1
violence 671.1
simplicity 798.1
accuracy 973.5
cold 1023.1
sew stitch 741.4
hook 800.8
sewage feces 12.4
offal 80.9
refuse 391.4
sewed up
completed 407.11
prearranged 965.8
assured 970.20
sewer
needleworker 741.2
sewing machine 741.3
sewer
n receptacle of filth 80.12
drain 239.5
cave 284.5
gutter 654.7
adj cursing 513.8
sewing
bookbinding 554.14
needlework 741.1
sewing machine 741.3
sex
n gender 75.1
copulation 75.7
love 104.1
v sexualize 75.19
adj sexual 75.25
sexagenarian
old man 304.2
sixty 882.7
sex appeal
sexual attraction 75.3
attractiveness 377.2
sex chromosome
chromosome 305.8
heredity 560.6
sex discrimination
misanthropy 590.1
discrimination 980.4
sex drive 75.2
sex fiend 75.16
sex goddess
sex object 75.4
beauty 1016.8
sexism
sexual preference 75.10
misanthropy 590.1
discrimination 980.4
sexist
n misanthrope 590.2
bigot 980.5
adj misanthropic 590.3
discriminatory 980.12
sex kitten 1016.9
sexless 75.29
sex life 75.2
sex object
hot number 75.4
sweetheart 104.10
sexology 75.18
sex organs 2.13
sex shop 75.7
sex-starved 75.27
sextant
navigation 182.2
instrument 278.4
semicircle 280.8
sextet
cooperation 450.1
part music 708.18
poetry 720.9
six 882.2
sextuple
v sixfold 882.16
adj sixth 882.18
sextuplets 882.2
sexual
sex 75.25
gametic 305.20
lascivious 665.29
amorous 104.26
amatory 562.23
sexual abnormality 75.11
sexual abstinence
celibacy 565.1
abstinence 668.2
sexual abuse 75.11
sexual advance 439.2
sexual assault
sexual possession 480.3
seduction 665.6
sexual climax
copulation 75.7
spasm 917.6
sexual counselor 75.18
sexual customs 75.18
sexual desire
biological urge 75.5
desire 100.1
craving 100.6
will 323.1
heat metaphor 1019.2
sexual deviation 75.11
sexual excitement 105.7
sexual fantasy
masturbation 75.8
defense mechanism 92.23
sexual freedom 75.18
sexual harassment 75.11
sexual intercourse
copulation 75.7
lovemaking 562.1
sexuality
sexual nature 75.2
lasciviousness 665.5
sexual love 104.1
sexually-transmitted disease 85.18
sexual magnetism 75.3
sexual maturity 14.1
sexual morality 75.18
sexual mores 75.18
sexual orientation 75.10
sexual pathology
perversion 75.11
personality disorder 92.15
psychosis 926.3
sexual pleasure 95.1
sexual power 76.2
sexual practices 75.18
sexual preference 75.10
sexual relations 75.7
sexual revolution 75.18
sexual stereotyping 590.1
sexual surrogate 75.18
sexual union 75.7
sexy
sexual 75.25
lustful 75.27
delightful 97.7
amorous 97.8
desirable 100.30
alluring 377.8
lascivious 665.29
excellent 999.13
sh! 51.14
shabby
squalid 80.25
inadequate 250.7
worthless 391.11
shoddy 393.32
niggardly 484.8
cheap 633.7
base 661.12
slovenly 810.15
paltry 998.21
terrible 1000.9
inferior 1005.9
shack 228.9
shackle
n restraint 428.4
curb 1012.7
v bind 428.10
confine 429.12
hamper 1012.11
shack up 75.21

shade
n color 35.1
degree 245.1
hint 248.4
admixture 797.7
psyche 919.4
phantom 976.4
specter 988.1
protection 1008.1
shadow 1027.3
screen 1028.1
v color 35.14
blacken 38.7
cloud 319.7
conceal 346.6
portray 712.19
darken 1027.9
screen 1028.5
shade of difference
margin 780.2
distinction 944.3
shades spectacles 29.3
eyeshade 1028.2
shade tree 310.10
shading
n blackening 38.5
gradation 245.3
treatment 712.9
darkening 1027.6
televising 1035.3
television reception 1035.5
adj screening 1028.6
shadow
n omen 133.3
hanger-on 138.6
follower 166.2
degree 245.1
hint 248.4
remainder 256.1
thinness 270.7
slim 270.8
image 349.5
treatment 712.9
spirit 764.3
reflection 785.7
psyche 919.4
phantom 976.4
specter 988.1
protection 1008.1
darkness 1027.3
shade 1028.1
v look 27.13
color 35.14
blacken 38.7
foreshow 133.10
follow 166.3
cloud 319.7
lurk 346.9
image 349.11
make unintelligible 522.12
trace 938.35
darken 1027.9
shade 1028.5
shadow-box 754.4
shadowing
n following 166.1
ambush 346.3
pursuit 382.1
surveillance 938.9
darkening 1027.6
adj shading 1028.6
shadow of death 307.1
shadow of doubt 955.2
shady dishonest 645.16
disreputable 661.10
shadowy 1027.16
shaded 1028.7
shady character 415.6
shady past 661.6
the shady side 303.5
shaft
n feather part 3.17
air passage 239.13
tower 272.6
pole 273.1
hole 275.2
pit 284.4
arrow 462.6
monument 549.12
base 901.8
mine 1058.6
v mistreat 389.6
shag
n hair 3.2
head of hair 3.4
tobacco 89.2
texture 294.1
v fetch 176.16
shaggy hairy 3.24
rough 288.6
nappy 294.7
disheveled 810.14
shah 575.9
shake
n beverage 10.49
speech defect 525.1
trill 709.19
instant 830.3
quake 917.3
flutter 917.4
search 938.15
wood 1054.3
v be weak 16.8
weaken 16.10
disturb 105.14
be excited 105.18
tremble 127.14
frighten 127.15
daunt 127.18
unnerve 128.10
startle 131.8
face 295.23
age 303.10
evade 368.7
break the habit 374.3
sign 437.7
speak poorly 525.7
greet 585.10
dance 705.5
sing 708.38
thrust 902.12
oscillate 916.10
wave 916.11
alternate 916.14
agitate 917.10
quake 917.11
ransack 938.33
freeze 1023.9
shake a leg
v be active 330.14
interj make haste 401.17
shakedown
extortion 480.8
search 938.15
tryout 942.3
shakedown artist 480.12
shakedown cruise
voyage 182.6
tryout 942.3
shake hands near 223.7
sign 437.7
make up 465.10
greet 585.10
strike a bargain 731.19
shaken
disturbed 105.23
unnerved 128.14
startled 131.13
agitated 917.16
confused 985.12
shake off evade 368.7
free oneself from 431.8
do away with 909.21
shake one's fist at
defy 454.3
threaten 514.2
shake on it
come to an agreement 332.10
strike a bargain 731.19
shakeout
elimination 773.2
classification 801.3
grouping 808.3
distinction 944.3
shaker
gambling wheel 759.16
agitator 917.9
Shaker
n abstainer 668.4
adj abstinent 668.10
the shakes
shaking 917.2
delirium tremens 926.10
shake up weaken 16.10
wake someone up 23.5
disturb 105.14
censure 510.13
rearrange 808.13
agitate 917.10
soften 1047.6
shake-up
rearrangement 808.7
expedient 995.2
shaky unsteady 16.16
fearful 127.23
jittery 128.12
stricken in years 303.18
unaccustomed 374.4
inarticulate 525.12
fragile 764.7
loose 804.5
shaking 917.17
unreliable 971.20
unsafe 1006.11
feeling cold 1023.16
shaky ground 1006.2
shallow
n shoal 276.2
v become less deep 276.3
adj insignificant 248.6
depthless 276.5
superficial 922.20
half-learned 930.15
trivial 998.19
shallowness
exteriority 206.1
depthlessness 276.1
superficiality 922.7
slight knowledge 930.6
inattention 984.1
triviality 998.3
shallows
shoal 276.2
hidden danger 1006.5
shalom!
farewell! 188.22
peace! 464.11
sham
n fakery 354.3
fake 354.13
hoax 356.7
impostor 357.6
pretext 376.1
affectation 500.1
display 501.4
v fake 354.21
affect 500.12
adj imitation 336.8
spurious 354.26
assumed 500.16
shaman
n witch doctor 690.7
adj sorcerous 690.14
shamble
n slow motion 175.2
gait 177.12
v plod 175.7
way of walking 177.28
shambles
butchery 308.3
place of killing 308.12
destruction 395.1
battlefield 463.2
shame
n chagrin 96.4
regret 113.1
humiliation 137.2
abomination 638.2
iniquity 654.3
disgrace 661.5
decency 664.2
v humiliate 137.4
disgrace 661.8
interj God forbid! 510.27
shamed
humiliated 137.14
in disrepute 661.13
shamefaced
regretful 113.8
humiliated 137.14
shy 139.12
shameful
regretful 113.8
wrong 638.3
wicked 654.16
disgraceful 661.11
terrible 1000.9
shameless
unregretful 114.4
brazen 142.11
gaudy 501.20
wrong 638.3
dishonest 645.16

hardened 654.17
immodest 666.6
shampoo
n washing 79.5
cleanser 79.17
v wash 79.19
shamrock
insignia 647.1
three 876.1
shamus 1008.16
shanghai coerce 424.7
seize 480.14
abduct 482.20
Shangri-la 986.11
shank member 2.7
leg 177.14
shaft 273.6
type 548.6
shanty 228.9
shanty-town 230.6
shape
n aspect 33.3
appearance 33.5
fitness 84.1
form 262.1
human form 262.4
structure 266.1
good condition 765.3
mode 765.4
kind 809.3
characteristic 865.4
illusion 976.4
specter 988.1
v form 262.7
be formed 262.8
plan 381.8
pot 742.6
compose 796.3
conform 867.3
produce 892.8
imagine 986.14
shape a course
pilot 182.14
chart a course 182.27
plan 381.8
shaped
formative 262.9
structural 266.6
planned 381.12
made 892.18
shapeless
formless 263.4
obscure 522.15
unordered 810.12
inconstant 854.7
abnormal 870.9
vague 971.19
unshapely 1015.8
shapely
well-shaped 264.5
comely 1016.19
the shape of things 765.2
shape up
v be formed 262.8
improve 392.7
be in a certain state 765.5
compose 796.3
form 807.5
phrs shape up or ship out 867.10
shard
n refuse 391.4
piece 793.3
v break 1050.3
pulverize 1051.9
share
n amount 244.2
portion 477.5
stockholding 738.3
part 793.1
v respond 93.11
communicate 343.7
share in 476.6
apportion 477.6
separate 793.6
share and share alike
v share 476.6
apportion 477.6
bisect 875.4
adj communal 476.9
proportionately 477.14
sharebroker 737.10
share certificate 622.3
sharecrop 1069.16
sharecropper 1069.5
shared 777.11
shareholder
participator 476.4
stockholder 737.14
share in 476.6
share one's sorrow 147.2
share out
apportion 477.6
separate 793.6
shares 738.2
sharing
n sympathy 93.5
informing 343.2
accord 455.1
participation 476.1
apportionment 477.1
association 582.6
adj participating 476.8
mutual 777.11
shark
marine animal 311.30
cheater 357.4
expert 413.11
extortionist 480.12
savage 593.5
gambler 759.21
sharp
n cheat 357.3
expert 413.11
note 709.14
gambler 759.21
adj acrimonious 17.14
sensitive 24.13
painful 26.10
shrill 58.14
dissonant 61.4
bitter 64.6
pungent 68.6
strong 69.10
deep-felt 93.24
distressing 98.20
penetrating 105.31
caustic 144.23
steep 204.18
angular 278.6
keen 285.8
quick 330.18
alert 339.14
deceitful 356.22
cunning 415.12
witty 489.15
gruff 505.7
chic 578.13
violent 671.16
smart 920.14
cold 1023.14
adv suddenly 830.9
punctually 845.14
sharpen
sensitize 24.7
stimulate 105.13
aggravate 119.2
intensify 251.5
edge 285.7
tool 1040.13
sharpener 1040.2
sharpen the wits 568.10
sharper cheat 357.3
gambler 759.21
sharp eye
keen eye 27.10
vigilance 339.4
sharp pain 26.2
sharps and flats 709.15
sharpshooter
infantryman 461.9
shooter 904.8
sharp-witted 920.14
sharp words 456.5
sharpy
expert 413.11
person of fashion 578.7
shatter
demolish 395.17
splinter 802.13
madden 926.24
break 1050.3
pulverize 1051.9
shattered nerves 128.4
shatterproof
resistant 15.20
unbreakable 1049.5
shave
contact 223.10
excise 255.10
shorten 268.6
smooth 287.5
deceive 356.19
cheapen 633.6
discount 728.27
shaven 6.17
shaver 302.3
shaving
hairlessness 6.4
remainder 256.1
thinness 270.7
flake 296.3
refuse 391.4
piece 793.3
she female 77.4
self 865.5
sheaf 770.8
shear divest 6.5
excise 255.10
shorten 268.6
strip 480.24
sheath 295.17
sheathe clothe 5.39
wrap 295.20
face 295.23
shed
n hangar 184.24
hut 228.9
v cast 6.10
waste 473.5
shed blood bleed 12.17
spill blood 308.15
war 458.14
shed crocodile tears 354.22
she-devil bitch 110.12
witch 593.7
demon 680.6
shed light upon
explain 341.10
illuminate 1025.28
shed tears 115.12
sheen 1025.2
sheep whiteness 37.2
animal 311.7
imitator 336.4
the laity 700.1
conformist 867.2
sheepdip dip 79.9
liquor 88.14
poison 1001.3
sheep dog dog 311.17
watchdog 1008.11
sheep farm 1070.5
sheepherder 1070.3
sheepish penitent 113.9
blushing 139.13
ungulate 311.46
sheepskin 549.6
sheer
n deviation 164.1
bias 204.3
v deviate 164.3
change course 182.30
oblique 204.9
adj perpendicular 200.12
steep 204.18
mere 248.8
thorough 794.10
unmixed 798.7
transparent 1029.4
adv perpendicularly 200.14
absolutely 794.15
sheer drop 200.3
sheer off
avoid 164.6
dodge 368.8
pull back 903.7
sheet whiteness 37.2
blanket 295.10
lamina 296.2
newspaper 555.2
part of writing 793.2
paper 1054.5
sheet ice 1023.5
sheet lightning 1025.17
sheet metal 1058.5
sheet music 708.28
sheet of fire 1019.13
sheet of rain 316.1
sheik 104.13
sheikh ruler 575.9
prince 608.7
clergy 699.12

sheikhdom 417.7
shekels 728.2
shelf shoal 276.2
  layer 296.1
  storehouse 386.6
  ledge 901.14
shelf ice 1023.5
shelf life 827.1
shell
  n ear 2.10
  exterior 206.2
  frame 266.4
  cavity 284.2
  crust 295.14
  seashell 295.15
  hull 295.16
  armor 460.3
  cartridge 462.17
  shot 462.19
  stage 704.16
  electron 1033.3
  atom 1038.4
  v husk 6.9
  pull the trigger 459.22
shellac
  n liquor 88.14
  v color 35.14
  defeat 412.9
shellacked drunk 88.33
  sleek 287.11
  defeated 412.15
shellacking
  painting 35.12
  victory 411.1
  utter defeat 412.3
shellfish 10.25
shell game 356.10
shell out give 478.12
  pay out 624.14
  spend 626.5
shelter
  n quarters 228.4
  cover 295.2
  protection 1008.1
  refuge 1009.3
  v house 225.10
  protect 1008.18
sheltered
  quiescent 173.12
  protected 1008.21
shelve incline 204.10
  put away 390.6
  postpone 846.9
shenanigans
  buffoonery 489.5
  prank 489.10
shepherd
  n guide 574.7
  clergyman 699.2
  escort 769.5
  guardian 1008.6
  herder 1070.3
  v guide 573.9
  escort 769.8
  care for 1008.19
  drive 1070.8
sherbet 10.47
sheriff 1008.15
Sherlock Holmes 576.10
Shetland pony 311.10
she-wolf bitch 110.12
  witch 593.7
  violent person 671.9
shibboleth
  password 517.12
  catchword 526.9
shield
  n cover 295.2
  shell 295.15
  heraldry 647.2
  safeguard 1008.3
  v cover 295.19
  defend 460.8
  protect 1008.18
shield-bearer 176.7
shielded
  covered 295.31
  protected 1008.21
shift
  n shirt 5.15
  dislocation 160.1
  deviation 164.1
  moving 176.4
  trick 356.6
  stratagem 415.3
  work shift 825.3
  change 852.1
  conversion 858.1
  expedient 995.2
  v deviate 164.3
  move 172.5
  remove 176.11
  change course 182.30
  vacillate 362.8
  dodge 368.8
  live by one's wits 415.9
  be dishonest 645.11
  be changed 852.6
  change 854.5
  convert 858.11
  quibble 936.9
shift about 645.11
shifting
  n deviation 164.1
  changing 854.3
  quibbling 936.5
  adj deviative 164.7
  wandering 177.37
  inconstant 854.7
  unreliable 971.20
shifting sands 854.4
shiftless
  indolent 331.19
  improvident 406.15
shift the blame
  impose on 643.7
  be unfaithful 645.12
shifty
  covert 345.12
  secretive 345.15
  deceitful 356.22
  evasive 368.15
  cunning 415.12
  dishonest 645.16
  treacherous 645.21
  inconstant 854.7
  unreliable 971.20
Shiite
  n Muslim 675.23
  adj Muslim 675.31
shill
  n decoy 357.5
  by-bidder 733.6
  v bid 733.9
shillelagh 273.2
shilling 728.8
shimmer
  n glitter 1025.7
  v glitter 1025.24
shimmy 705.5
shin
  n part the body 2.7
  leg 177.14
  v climb 193.11
shindig party 582.12
  dance 705.2
  assembly 770.2
shine
  n bootleg liquor 88.18
  love 104.1
  polish 287.2
  glow 1025.2
  daylight 1025.10
  v polish 287.7
  perfect 392.11
  cut a dash 501.13
  be eloquent 544.7
  be somebody 662.10
  look good 1016.17
  give light 1025.23
  buff 1044.8
shiner 85.38
shine through 31.4
shingle
  n grain 1051.6
  wood 1054.3
  gravel 1059.3
  v cut the hair 3.22
  cover 295.23
  overlap 295.30
shin guard
  soccer equipment 752.1
  safeguard 1008.3
shining
  n abrasion 1044.2
  adj illustrious 662.19
  gorgeous 1016.21
  luminous 1025.30
  shiny 1025.33
shining example
  paragon 659.4
  ideal 786.4
shiny clean 79.25
  sleek 287.11
  luminous 1025.30
  shining 1025.33
ship
  n boat 180.1
  part of fleet 180.10
  aircraft 181.1
  dirigible 181.11
  v haul 176.13
  send 176.15
shipmaster 183.7
shipmate 588.3
shipment
  transportation 176.3
  freight 176.6
ship of war 180.6
shipshape trim 180.20
  tidy 807.8
ship's log 549.11
shipwreck
  n debacle 395.4
  misfortune 1011.2
  v wreck 182.42
  destroy 395.10
shipyard plant 739.3
  harbor 1009.6
shirk
  n shirker 368.3
  v idle 331.12
  leave undone 340.7
  slack 368.9
shirt
  n clothing 5.15
  soccer 752.1
  v cloak 5.40
shit
  n defecation 12.2
  feces 12.4
  bullshit 520.3
  bad person 660.5
  nothing 762.3
  v defecate 12.13
shitcan 391.7
shitfaced 88.33
shithead 660.5
shithouse 12.10
shit in one's pants 127.11
shit-kicker 606.6
shitkickers 5.27
shit list 871.1
shitload 884.3
shit or get off the pot 328.5
shitty
  excremental 12.20
  filthy 80.23
  bad 1000.8
shiv 1040.2
shiver
  n thrill 105.2
  trepidation 105.5
  scrap 248.3
  piece 793.3
  shake 917.3
  v be excited 105.18
  tremble 127.14
  shatter 802.13
  shake 917.11
  freeze 1023.9
shiver my timbers! 122.19
shoal
  n shallow 276.2
  group of animals 770.5
  multitude 884.3
  v become shallow 276.3
  adj shallow 276.5
shock
  n head of hair 3.4
  stupor 22.6
  symptom 85.9
  trauma 85.26
  pain 96.5
  start 131.3
  concussion 671.8
  bunch 770.7
  impact 902.3
  shake 917.3
  misfortune 1011.2
  electric discharge 1032.6
  v offend 98.11
  agitate 105.14

terrify 127.17
startle 131.8
shake 917.11
electrify 1032.26
shock absorber 670.3
shocking horrid 98.19
frightening 127.30
surprising 131.11
downright 247.12
disgraceful 661.11
sudden 830.5
terrible 1000.9
shock-resistant 1049.4
shock tactics 459.1
shock therapy 92.35
shock troops 461.15
shock wave
air speed 184.31
wave 916.4
shod 5.45
shoddy
n fake 354.13
rubbish 391.5
adj spurious 354.26
worthless 391.11
shabby 393.32
cheap 633.7
base 661.12
slovenly 810.15
paltry 998.21
terrible 1000.9
shoe
n footwear 5.27
bowling 750.1
automobile racing 756.1
v cloak 5.40
the shoe is on the other foot
what goes around comes around 506.10
permanence 852.14
shoemaker 5.38
shogun 575.9
shoo
v do away with 909.21
interj go away! 909.31
begone 909.32
shoo-in
sure success 409.2
victor 411.2
horse race 757.3
sure thing 970.2
shook startled 131.13
confused 985.12
shook up 128.12
shoot
n pang 26.2
journey 177.5
rapids 238.10
gutter 239.3
sprout 302.11
branch 310.20
offshoot 561.4
warp 740.3
deposit 1058.7
rocket launching 1074.9
v suffer 26.8
inject 87.22
immunize 91.28
speed 174.8
row 182.53
float 182.54
strike dead 308.18
vegetate 310.34
hunt 382.9
pull the trigger 459.22
execute 604.17
explode 671.14
film 706.8
photograph 714.14
play basketball 747.4
play hockey 749.7
play golf 751.4
fire off 904.12
shine 1025.23
launch 1074.13
shoot ahead
spurt 174.12
outdistance 249.10
hustle 330.13
shoot back 939.4
shoot craps 759.23
shoot down
strike dead 308.18
do for 395.11
end 820.5
shoot 904.12
shooter 904.8
shoot from the hip
be impatient 135.4
act on the spur of the moment 365.7
prejudge 947.2
shoot full of holes 958.4
shooting
n pang 26.2
killing 308.1
hunting 382.2
gunfire 459.8
capital punishment 604.7
hockey game 749.3
throwing 904.2
adj painful 26.10
shooting gallery 87.20
shooting script
playbook 704.21
script 706.3
shooting star
omen 133.6
meteor 1072.15
shoot it out with 457.17
shoot off one's mouth
bluster 503.3
talk nonsense 520.5
speak 524.20
chatter 540.5
shootout 752.3
shoot out 283.10
shoot straight with 649.6
shoot the breeze
speak 524.20
converse 541.9
shoot the works
be determined 359.8
persevere 360.7
do one's best 403.14
do to perfection 407.7
court danger 493.6
risk 972.12
shoot up grow 14.2
inject 87.22
spring up 193.9
increase 251.6
expand 259.7
grow higher 272.12
protrude 283.10
vegetate 310.34
shop
n occupation 724.4
market 736.1
workplace 739.1
office 739.7
casino 759.19
v inform on 551.13
market 733.8
shop around
choose 371.13
shop 733.8
be discriminating 944.5
shop at 731.17
shopkeeper 730.2
shoplift 482.13
shoplifter 483.1
shopper 733.5
shopping-bag lady
homeless person 331.10
poor person 619.4
shopping center
metropolis 208.7
city district 230.6
marketplace 736.2
shopping list 871.1
shopping mall 739.1
shopping spree 733.1
shop steward 727.4
shoptalk 523.10
shopworn 393.31
shore
n border 211.4
side 218.1
coast 234.2
v buttress 449.12
support 901.21
adj aquatic 182.58
coastal 234.7
shore bird 311.28
shore leave 20.3
shoreline
n shore 234.2
adj coastal 234.7
shore patrol 1008.17
shore up
strengthen 15.13
buttress 449.12
support 901.21
stiffen 1046.9
shorn 252.10
shorn of 473.8
short
n car 179.10
motion pictures 706.1
bear account 737.12
v electrify 1032.26
adj insignificant 248.6
little 258.10
brief 268.8
low 274.7
taciturn 344.9
gruff 505.7
concise 537.6
poor 619.7
incomplete 795.4
fleeting 828.8
falling short of 911.5
wanting 992.13
imperfect 1003.4
adv abruptly 268.13
shortage
deficiency 795.2
shortcoming 911.1
want 992.4
imperfection 1003.1
shortchange 356.18
short-circuit 1032.26
shortcoming
inequality 791.1
falling short 911.1
want 992.4
imperfection 1003.1
fault 1003.2
shortcut cut 268.5
straight line 277.2
route 383.1
shorten
n make small 258.9
v reduce 252.7
subtract 255.9
contract 260.7
abbreviate 268.6
be brief 537.5
abridge 557.5
shorten sail
reduce sail 182.50
take precautions 494.6
shorter 252.10
shortfall
deficiency 795.2
shortcoming 911.1
want 992.4
short fuse
irascibility 110.2
hot temper 110.4
shorthand
n phonetic symbol 546.2
stenography 547.8
adj written 547.22
stenographic 547.27
shorthanded 992.12
short list 871.1
short-lived 828.7
short memory 990.1
short odds 759.6
short of breath 21.12
short-order cook 11.3
short range 223.2
short rations 515.2
shorts
bear account 737.12
soccer 752.1
short shrift
pitilessness 146.1
repulse 442.2
shortsighted
poor-sighted 28.11
undiscerning 922.14
unwise 923.10
narrow-minded 980.10
shortstop 745.2
short story 722.3
short story writer
author 547.15
scribe 718.4
short subject 706.1
short supply 992.1

short temper
  irascibility 110.2
  hot temper 110.4
short-term 828.8
short-term memory 989.1
short time
  shortness 268.1
  little while 828.3
shortwave
  n radio wave 1034.11
  v broadcast 1034.25
  adj radio 1034.28
shorty 258.4
shot
  n detonation 56.3
  dose 86.6
  fix 87.20
  drink 88.7
  inoculation 91.16
  disrespect 156.3
  swiftness 174.6
  attempt 403.3
  ball 462.19
  fee 630.6
  cinematography 706.5
  photograph 714.3
  motion picture segment 714.8
  baseball game 745.3
  basketball game 747.3
  tennis game 748.2
  hockey game 749.3
  golf stroke 751.3
  soccer game 752.3
  bet 759.3
  throw 759.9
  portion 793.5
  discharge 904.4
  shooter 904.8
  guess 951.4
  rocket launching 1074.9
  adj variegated 47.9
  unnerved 128.14
  spoiled 393.29
  ruined 395.29
  ended 820.9
shotgun 308.18
shotgun wedding 563.3
shot in the arm 86.8
shot in the dark
  gamble 759.2
  guess 951.4
shot-put 904.3
shot through
  variegated 47.9
  permeated 221.15
  apertured 292.19
should
  ought to 641.3
  be necessary 963.10
shoulder
  n bulge 283.3
  type 548.6
  joint 800.4
  supporter 901.2
  buttress 901.4
  shelf 901.14
  v support 901.21
  thrust 902.12
shoulder patch 647.5
shoulder to shoulder
  adv cooperatively 450.6
  hand in hand 769.10
  concurrently 899.5
  phrs side by side 218.12
shout
  n cry 59.1
  cheer 116.2
  laughter 116.4
  v din 53.7
  cry 59.6
  cheer 116.6
  laugh 116.8
  be manifest 348.7
  proclaim 352.13
shout at the top of one's voice 59.9
shout down
  drown out 53.8
  run over 910.7
shout hallelujah 116.6
shout out 59.8
shove
  n thrust 902.2
  pushing 904.1
  v set in motion 172.6
  illicit goods 732.7
  thrust 902.12
  push 904.9
shove aside 164.6
shovel
  n cutlery 1040.2
  v ladle 176.17
  excavate 284.15
shove off
  v get under way 182.19
  sail away from 182.36
  depart 188.7
  leave 222.10
  die 307.20
  interj go away 909.32
shoving match 457.4
show
  n appearance 33.2
  spectacle 33.7
  externalization 206.4
  exhibition 348.2
  sham 354.3
  pretext 376.1
  affectation 500.1
  display 501.4
  indication 517.3
  stage show 704.4
  theatrical performance 704.12
  marketplace 736.2
  illusoriness 976.2
  v show up 31.4
  appear 33.8
  direct to 161.6
  externalize 206.5
  explain 341.10
  manifest 348.5
  disclose 351.4
  signify 517.17
  teach 568.10
  project 714.16
  finish third 757.5
  evidence 957.8
  prove 957.10
show a deficit 623.6
show a lack of respect for 156.4
show a percentage 472.13
show aptitude for 413.18
show a tendency
  tend 896.3
  be probable 968.4
showboat
  n show-off 501.11
  theater 704.14
  v exercise skill 413.20
  show off 501.16
show business
  the entertainment industry 704
  theater 743.13
showcase
  n display 348.2
  theatrical performance 704.12
  counter 736.6
  transparent substance 1029.2
  v manifest 348.5
show consideration 670.8
show dog 311.17
showdown poker 759.10
  contrariety 779.1
shower
  n bath 79.8
  showering apparatus 79.12
  rain 316.1
  plenty 991.2
  sprinkle 1065.5
  sprinkler 1065.8
  v wash 79.19
  rain 316.10
  give 478.12
  abound 991.5
shower head
  showering apparatus 79.12
  nozzle 239.9
  sprinkler 1065.8
show girl 707.1
show good faith 644.9
show horse 757.2
show how
  explain 341.10
  teach 568.10
showing
  n appearance 33.1
  externalization 206.4
  display 348.2
  indication 517.3
  adj divested 6.12
  visible 31.6
  manifesting 348.9
  disclosive 351.10
show its colors 351.8
show its face 351.8
show kindness 143.9
showman 704.23
showmanship 704.3
show no mercy 146.2
show off
  manifest 348.5
  grandstand 501.16
show-off 501.11
show of hands 371.6
show one's hand 351.7
show one's true colors
  come out 348.6
  confess 351.7
showpiece model 786.1
  standard of perfection 1002.4
show pity 670.8
showplace 786.1
show preference 650.8
show promise 133.13
show respect for 155.5
showroom display room 197.24
  salesroom 736.5
show signs of
  appear to be 33.10
  augur 133.12
  evidence 957.8
showstopper 409.4
show the door 909.18
show the ropes 568.10
show the way
  direct to 161.6
  lead 165.2
  explain 341.10
  go before 816.3
show through
  show 31.4
  be transparent 1029.3
show up show 31.4
  appear 33.8
  arrive 186.6
  attend 221.8
  overshadow 249.8
  disclose 351.4
  turn up 831.6
  be discovered 941.9
  disprove 958.4
  disillusion 977.2
showy
  flaunting 501.19
  grandiloquent 545.8
shrapnel 462.19
shred
  n scrap 248.3
  piece 793.3
  v tear apart 802.14
  pulverize 1051.9
shredded
  severed 802.23
  powdery 1051.11
shredder 1051.7
shrew 110.12
shrewd cunning 415.12
  artful 920.15
  knowing 928.15
shrewish
  peevish 110.22
  ungovernable 361.12
  partisan 456.17
shriek
  n blare 53.5
  screech 58.4
  cry 59.1
  laughter 116.4
  v blare 53.10
  screech 58.8
  cry 59.6
  wail 115.13
  laugh 116.8
  sigh 318.21
  speak 524.25
shrift pardon 148.2
  confession 351.3
shrill
  n screech 58.4

v squawk 58.8
adj strident 58.14
dissonant 61.4
shrimp
n runt 258.4
a nobody 998.7
v fish 382.10
shrine
n tomb 309.16
monument 549.12
holy place 703.4
v enclose 212.5
shrink
n psychologist 92.10
v suffer 26.8
flinch 127.13
efface oneself 139.7
recede 168.2
retract 168.3
decrease 252.6
reduce 252.7
shrivel 260.9
demur 325.4
dodge 368.8
languish 393.18
waste 473.5
draw back 903.7
shrink from 99.5
shrinking violet 139.6
shrink-wrap
package 212.9
bind 800.9
shrivel shrink 260.9
age 303.10
languish 393.18
dry 1066.6
shroud
n cover 295.2
graveclothes 309.14
supporter 901.2
v clothe 5.39
wrap 295.20
conceal 346.6
protect 1008.18
shrouded in darkness 1027.13
shrouded in mystery 522.18
shrubbery 310.9
shrug
n gesture 517.14
v accept 134.7
submit 433.6
shrug off
not care 102.4
discard 390.7
submit 433.6
underestimate 950.2
dismiss 984.4
shrug the shoulders 517.21
shrunk
reduced 252.10
dwarf 258.13
shrunken 260.13
shtick 704.7
shuck
n hull 295.16
v husk 6.9
shudder
n thrill 105.2
trepidation 105.5
shake 917.3
v be frequent 847.3
shake 917.11
freeze 1023.9
shuddering halt 857.2
shuffle
n slow motion 175.2
gait 177.12
prevarication 344.4
quibble 936.4
confusion 985.3
v way of walking 177.28
dance 705.5
rearrange playing cards 758.5
mix 797.10
confuse 811.3
change 854.5
quibble 936.9
shuffle off 368.12
shun snub 157.7
avoid 368.6
abstain 668.7
shunt
n pushing 904.1
v avoid 164.6
remove 176.11
push 904.9
shush
n sibilation 57.1
v silence 51.8
sibilate 57.2
cover up 345.8
interj silence 51.14
shut
v close 293.6
turn off 857.12
adj closed 293.9
shut away 429.12
shutdown closure 293.1
cessation 857.1
shut down
close shop 293.8
suppress 428.8
go bankrupt 625.7
stop work 857.8
turn off 857.12
shut down on 51.8
shut-eye 22.2
shut in enclose 212.5
confine 429.12
shut-in
n sick person 85.43
recluse 584.5
adj unhealthy 85.54
enclosed 212.10
restricted 428.15
confined 429.19
recluse 584.10
shut off
v separate 802.8
turn off 857.12
obstruct 1012.12
adj secluded 584.8
separated 802.21
shut one's mouth 51.5
shutout 412.3
shut out
v close 293.6
defeat 412.9
prohibit 444.3
exclude 773.4
obstruct 1012.12
adj defeated 412.16
shutter 1028.5
shutterbug 716.5
shut the door in one's face
442.5
shut tight 1012.12
shuttle
n train 179.14
aircraft 181.1
air travel 184.10
loom 740.5
oscillator 916.9
spacecraft 1075.2
v alternate 916.13
shuttlecock
n oscillator 916.9
v alternate 916.13
shuttle diplomacy 609.5
shut up
v be silent 51.6
enclose 212.5
close 293.6
close shop 293.8
confine 429.12
refute 958.5
adj recluse 584.10
interj silence 51.14
shy
n avoidance 368.1
retreat 903.3
throw 904.3
v be frightened 127.12
flinch 127.13
be startled 131.5
turn aside 164.6
retract 168.3
demur 325.4
hesitate 362.7
avoid 368.8
pull back 903.7
throw 904.10
quibble 936.9
adj fearful 127.23
timid 139.12
receding 168.5
demurring 325.7
wary 494.9
incomplete 795.4
alone 872.8
doubting 955.9
wanting 992.13
shy away recede 168.2
dodge 368.8
pull back 903.7
shylock 620.3
shyster cheat 357.3
trickster 415.6
lawyer 597.3
rascal 660.3
s' 332.18
siamese connection 239.6
Siamese twins 873.4
Siberia
remote region 261.4
cold place 1023.4
Siberian husky 176.8
Siberian tiger 311.22
sibilant 57.3
sibling
n kinfolk 559.2
adj related 559.6
sic 973.20
sick ill 85.56
disconsolate 112.28
weary 118.11
insane 926.26
sick and tired of
weary 118.11
satiated 994.6
sicken
disagree with 82.4
take sick 85.47
afflict 85.50
offend 98.11
deteriorate 393.16
sick joke 489.6
sickle 279.5
sick leave 222.4
sickly colorless 36.7
unhealthy 85.54
sickness disease 85.1
insanity 926.1
sic on incite 375.17
sow dissension 456.14
side
n aspect 33.3
conceit 140.4
incline 204.4
border 211.4
flank 218.1
straight line 277.2
pretensions 501.2
boasting 502.1
bluster 503.1
lineage 560.4
faction 617.4
role 704.10
playbook 704.21
lawn bowling 750.3
team 752.2
interest 935.14
outlook 978.2
v remove 176.11
border 211.10
flank 218.4
adj oblique 204.13
lateral 218.6
occasional 848.3
side against
refuse 442.3
oppose 451.3
disapprove 510.10
go contrary to 779.4
side arms 462.1
sidebar adjunct 254.1
news item 552.3
sideboard 1054.3
sideburns 3.8
side by side
adv cooperatively 450.6
hand in hand 769.10
phrs cheek to cheek 218.12
side dish 10.7
side door
secret passage 346.5
byway 383.4
side effect
adjunct 254.1
aftermath 817.3
side-glance glance 27.4
flirtation 562.9
side horse 725.7
side issue 254.1

sidekick friend 588.4
  henchman 610.8
  partner 616.2
  escort 769.5
sidelight
  information 551.1
  light 1025.1
sideline
  n border 211.4
  avocation 724.7
  merchandise 735.1
  football 746.1
  basketball 747.1
  tennis 748.1
  field hockey 749.4
  v put away 390.6
sidelined 340.14
sidelong
  adj oblique 204.13
  inclining 204.15
  side 218.6
  adv obliquely 204.21
  laterally 218.8
  aside 218.10
side remark 213.2
sidestep avoid 164.6
  go sideways 218.5
  prevaricate 344.7
  dodge 368.8
  compromise 468.2
  pull back 903.7
  quibble 936.9
side street 383.4
sideswipe
  n impact 902.3
  v contact 223.10
  collide 902.13
side-to-side 218.8
sidetrack
  n digression 538.4
  v avoid 164.6
sidewalk 383.2
sideways
  adj flowing 172.8
  lateral 218.6
  adv crosswise 170.13
  obliquely 204.21
  laterally 218.8
sidewheeler 311.14
side with concur 332.9
  back 449.13
  take sides with 450.4
siding side 218.1
  building material 1054.2
  wood 1054.3
sidle
  n gait 177.12
  v avoid 164.6
  creep 177.26
  way of walking 177.28
  incline 204.10
  go sideways 218.5
sidle up to 167.3
siege enclosure 212.1
  besiegement 459.5
sierra 237.6
Sierra Club 397.5
siesta 22.3
sieve
  n refinery 79.13
  network 170.3
  porousness 292.8
  separator 802.7
  arranger 808.5
  v refine 79.22
  segregate 773.6
  classify 808.11
  discriminate 944.4
sift refine 79.22
  select 371.14
  discuss 541.12
  segregate 773.6
  analyze 801.8
  classify 808.11
  investigate 938.23
  discriminate 944.4
sigh
  n breathing 2.21
  murmur 52.4
  sighing 52.8
  v murmur 52.10
  moan 52.14
  lament 115.10
  wind sound 318.21
  speak 524.25
sigh of relief 120.4
sight
  n sensation of seeing 24.5
  vision 27.1
  look 27.3
  optical device 29.5
  field of view 31.3
  view 33.6
  spectacle 33.7
  marvel 122.2
  lot 247.4
  opinion 953.6
  outlook 978.2
  eyesore 1015.4
  v see 27.12
sight for sore eyes 1016.7
sighthole
  observation post 27.8
  optical device 29.5
sighting 941.1
sightly 1016.19
sight-see
  journey 177.21
  see the sights 918.6
sight-seeing tour
  journey 177.5
  sight-seeing 918.4
sight-unseen transaction 971.8
sigmoid
  crescent-shaped 279.11
  convolutional 281.6
sign
  n prognosis 91.13
  omen 133.3
  poster 352.7
  telltale sign 517.1
  signal 517.15
  symbol 518.6
  letter 546.1
  hint 551.4
  musical notation 709.12
  substitute 862.2
  miracle 870.8
  evidence 957.1
  number 1017.3
  v ratify 332.12
  shake hands 437.7
  secure 438.9
  signal 517.22
  inscribe 546.6
signal
  n sign 517.1
  beacon 517.15
  hint 551.4
  information theory 551.7
  race 756.3
  radar signal 1036.11
  v make a signal 182.52
  communicate 343.7
  flash 517.22
  adj remarkable 247.10
  communicational 347.21
  notable 997.19
signal flag
  signal 517.15
  flag 647.7
signalman 399.4
signal of distress 400.1
sign a petition 440.10
signatory 332.7
signature
  ratification 332.4
  signing 437.3
  sign 517.1
  identification 517.11
  autograph 527.10
  book part 554.12
  bookbinding 554.14
  musical notation 709.12
  part of writing 793.2
  acknowledgment 888.2
  station identification 1034.19
sign away 629.3
signed, sealed, and delivered 407.11
signed agreement 437.1
signer 332.7
signet
  ratification 332.4
  print 517.7
  label 517.13
  signature 527.10
  royal insignia 647.3
signet ring 498.6
significant
  n sign 518.6
  adj premonitory 133.16
  indicative 517.23
  meaningful 518.10
  prominent 662.17
  evidential 957.16
  important 997.17
significant other
  lover 104.12
  friend 588.1
signify augur 133.12
  betoken 517.17
  mean 518.8
  specify 865.11
  evidence 957.8
  matter 997.12
sign in 186.6
sign language
  deaf-and-dumb alphabet 49.3
  gesture 517.14
  language family 523.12
sign off
  telegraph 347.20
  broadcast 1034.25
sign of the cross 696.5
sign of the times 133.3
sign on install 191.4
  telegraph 347.20
  participate 476.5
  employ 615.14
  broadcast 1034.25
sign one's death warrant
  condemn to death 308.20
  condemn 602.3
signor 76.7
signora 77.9
sign out 188.13
sign over 629.3
signpost post 273.4
  pointer 517.4
sign up install 191.4
  employ 615.14
  enlist 615.17
  join 617.14
  take one's turn 825.5
Silas Marner 484.4
silence
  n noiselessness 51
  quiescence 173.1
  taciturnity 344.2
  v disable 19.10
  put to silence 51.8
  strike dead 308.18
  extinguish 395.15
  overcome 412.7
  suppress 428.8
  refute 958.5
  interj hush 51.14
silent
  n motion pictures 706.1
  adj still 51.10
  taciturn 344.9
  unexpressed 519.9
silent majority
  middle class 607.5
  party 617.4
  mediocrity 1005.5
silent partner 616.2
silent treatment 909.4
silhouette
  n outline 211.2
  contour 262.2
  drawing 712.13
  portrait 712.15
  reflection 785.7
  shadow 1027.3
  v outline 211.9
silicon chip
  electronic circuit 1033.8
  circuitry 1042.3
silicone 1056.2
silk material 4.1
  smoothness 287.3
  fine texture 294.3
  softness 1047.4
silk-screen printing
  printing 548.1
  stencil printing 713.4
silk-stocking
  n nobleman 608.4
  adj socially prominent 578.16
silk-stocking district 609.16
silkworm 271.5
silky threadlike 271.7

smooth 287.10
sleek 287.11
fine-textured 294.8
velvety 1047.15
silly
n fool 924.6
adj nonsensical 520.7
foolish 923.8
dazed 985.14
trivial 998.19
silo granary 386.7
rocket launcher 1074.10
silt deposit 176.9
dregs 256.2
silver
n tableware 8.12
whiteness 37.1
alabaster 37.2
money 728.1
precious metals 728.20
v whiten 37.5
gray 39.3
adj white 37.7
gray 39.4
eloquent 544.8
brass 1058.17
Silver 311.15
silver dollar 728.7
silver lining 124.3
silver mine 1058.6
the silver screen 706.1
silver-tongued
eloquent 544.8
melodious 708.48
silverware
tableware 8.12
hard goods 735.4
silver wedding anniversary 850.4
simian 311.23
similar
approximate 775.8
like 784.10
comparative 943.8
simile similarity 784.1
comparible 943.1
simmer
n boiling 1020.2
v cook 11.5
be angry 152.15
bubble 320.4
seethe 671.12
be hot 1019.22
boil 1020.20
simmer down 106.7
Simon Legree 575.14
simp 924.8
simpatico 587.15
simper
n smile 116.3
v smile 116.7
mince 500.14
simple
soft-colored 35.22
humble 137.10
homelike 228.33
mere 248.8
artless 416.5
tasteful 496.8
ordinary 499.6
elegant 533.6
plain-speaking 535.3
informal 581.3
real 761.15
essential 767.9
plain 798.6
one 872.7
mentally deficient 922.22
ignorant 930.12
gullible 954.9
genuine 973.15
easy 1014.13
simple existence 761.6
simple fact 761.3
simple machine 1040.5
simple matter 1014.3
simpleminded
artless 416.5
mentally deficient 922.22
simpleton 924.8
simplicity
prosaicness 117.2
rusticity 233.3
decrease 252.1
artlessness 416.1
restraint 496.4
ordinariness 499.1
clearness 521.2
elegance 533.1
plain speech 535.1
informality 581.1
simpleness 798.1
purity 798.1
oneness 872.1
mental deficiency 922.9
ignorance 930.1
gullibility 954.2
facility 1014.1
simulate imitate 336.5
fake 354.21
affect 500.12
adopt 621.4
resemble 784.7
simulation
imitation 336.1
sham 354.3
adoption 621.2
similarity 784.1
simultaneous 836.5
sin
n blackness 38.4
iniquity 654.3
wrongdoing 655.1
misdeed 655.2
error 975.1
v do wrong 654.8
transgress 655.4
since
adv subsequently 835.6
ago 837.15
ever since 837.17
conj because 888.10
sincere zealous 101.9
resolute 359.11
artless 416.5
candid 644.17
genuine 973.15
the sincerest form of flattery 336.1
since time began
for a long time 827.14
since 837.17
sine qua non 196.5
sinew muscularity 15.2
power 18.1
vigor 544.3
sinewy
able-bodied 15.16
vigorous 544.11
tough 1049.4
sinful wrong 638.3
immoral 654.16
wicked 655.5
ungodly 695.17
bad 1000.7
sing
n musical occasion 708.32
v bird sound 60.5
be pleased 95.12
exude cheerfulness 109.6
rejoice 116.5
wind sound 318.21
betray 351.6
speak 524.25
inform on 551.13
vocalize 708.38
poetize 720.13
sing a different tune
n change one's mind 363.6
v be changed 852.6
change 852.7
convert 858.11
singe
n burn 1020.6
v stain 1004.6
burn 1020.24
singer
entertainer 707.1
lead 707.6
vocalist 710.13
Singer 741.3
single
n celibate 565.2
baseball hit 745.3
individual 872.4
v hit a baseball 745.5
adj unmarried 565.7
simple 798.6
characteristic 865.13
one 872.7
single file 812.2
single-handed 872.8
single-minded
resolute 359.11
persevering 360.8
artless 416.5
engrossed 983.17
singleness of purpose 360.1
single out
select 371.14
specify 865.11
call attention to 983.10
single vote 371.6
sing out 59.8
singsong
n regularity 781.2
repetitiousness 849.4
adj tedious 118.9
monotonous 849.15
sing the blues
hang one's head 112.15
lament 115.10
sing the praises of
praise 509.12
glorify 696.12
sing 708.38
sing the same old song
harp on 118.8
dwell on 849.9
singular
n number 530.8
adj wonderful 122.10
particular 865.12
characteristic 865.13
odd 870.11
one 872.7
sole 872.9
eccentric 927.5
sinister
adj ominous 133.17
oblique 204.13
left 220.4
dishonest 645.16
bad 1000.7
adverse 1011.13
adv leftward 220.6
sink
n washbasin 79.12
receptacle of filth 80.12
drain 239.5
cavity 284.2
den of iniquity 654.7
v weaken 16.9
burn out 21.5
disappear 34.2
languish 85.48
lose heart 112.16
sadden 112.18
recede 168.2
move 172.5
capsize 182.44
go down 194.6
decrease 252.6
deepen 275.8
be concave 284.12
excavate 284.15
gravitate 297.15
age 303.10
submerge 367.7
scuttle 367.8
spoil 393.11
decline 393.17
ruin 395.11
founder 410.11
bankrupt 625.8
invest 729.17
make a golf shot 751.4
flit 828.6
depress 913.4
come to grief 1011.10
fall on evil days 1011.11
sinkhole pothole 284.3
sewer 654.7
water 1065.3
sink in
impress 93.15
mire 243.2
get across 521.5
impress 931.19
be remembered 989.14
sinking fast 307.33
sinking heart 112.3

sink into despair
lose heart 112.16
despair 125.10
sink one's teeth into it 330.11
sink or swim
adv without fail 970.26
phrs come what may 359.20
sinner evildoer 593.1
wrongdoer 660.8
sinuous curved 279.7
convolutional 281.6
sinus 279.2
sip
n drink 8.4
taste 62.2
nip 88.7
hint 248.4
v drink 8.29
taste 62.7
tipple 88.24
siphon
n extractor 192.9
tube 239.6
v transport 176.14
channel 239.15
sir 76.7
Sir 648.3
sire
n senior 304.5
father 560.9
Sir 648.3
jockey 757.2
author 886.4
producer 892.7
v procreate 78.8
engender 818.14
cause 886.10
siren
n noisemaker 53.6
spirit of the sea 240.4
tempter 377.4
warning sign 399.3
alarm 400.1
witch 593.7
water god 678.10
bewitcher 690.9
adj alluring 377.8
Sir Galahad 608.5
sirocco
hot wind 318.7
dust storm 318.13
sissy
n weakling 16.6
effeminate male 77.11
spoiled child 427.4
coward 491.5
sister 559.3
adj effeminate 77.15
cowardly 491.10
sister woman 77.6
nurse 90.10
female sibling 559.3
member 617.11
nun 699.18
layman 700.2
likeness 784.3
Sister 648.5
sister-in-law 564.2
sit be pregnant 78.12
be seated 173.10
convene 770.17
sit around 331.12
sit at 221.8
sit at the feet of 570.11
sit back 329.2
sitcom 1035.2
sit-down meal 8.5
conference 541.6
strike 727.5
assembly 770.2
site
n location 159.1
arena 463.1
v locate 159.11
place 159.12
establish 159.16
sit idly by 329.3
sit-in
objection 333.2
assembly 770.2
sit in 333.5
sit in for 862.5
sit in judgment
administer justice 594.5
try 598.18
hold the scales 946.12
sit in on 48.10
sit it out 329.2
sit on cover up 345.8
suppress 428.8
participate 476.5
appropriate 480.19
disapprove 510.18
try 598.18
rest on 901.22
sit on a barrel of gunpowder
court danger 493.6
take chances 1006.7
sit on the fence
n be a timeserver 363.9
v hesitate 362.7
dodge 368.8
remain neutral 467.5
sit on the sidelines
do nothing 329.2
remain neutral 467.5
sitter 1008.8
sit through 134.7
sit tight hide 346.8
stay with it 360.4
wait 846.12
sitting duck dupe 358.2
exposure 1006.3
easy thing 1014.3
sitting pretty
cheerful 109.11
successful 409.14
victorious 411.7
sitting room 197.5
situate
v locate 159.11
adj located 159.18
situation location 159.1
placement 159.6
environment 209.1
occupation 724.5
state 765.1
mental outlook 978.2
predicament 1013.4
sit up rise 200.8
wait 846.12
sit up and take notice 983.8
sitz bath 79.8
six playing card 758.2
number 882.2
six feet under
adj dead 307.30
adv buried 309.23
sixfold
v multiply by six 882.16
adj six times as much 882.18
six of one and half a dozen of the other
n ambiguity 539.1
the same 790.3
choicelessness 963.6
adj coinciding 778.8
indistinguishable 945.6
sixteen 882.7
sixteenth note 709.14
sixteenth rest 709.21
sixth
n interval 709.20
adj ordinal number 882.18
n fraction 882.14
sixth sense senses 24.5
extrasensory perception 689.8
intuition 934.1
sixtieth 882.27
sixty 882.7
sixty-four dollar question 522.8
sixty-fourth note 709.14
sixty-fourth rest 709.21
sizable large 247.7
considerable 257.16
size
n dimension 257.1
largeness 257.1
extent 300.3
semiliquid 1062.5
v adjust 257.15
measure 300.10
classify 808.11
examine 938.24
size up scrutinize 27.14
measure 300.10
examine 938.24
estimate 946.9
sizzle
n energy 17.3
hissing 57.1
v hiss 57.2
drug use 87.22
be angry 152.15
speed 174.9
sizzler
speeder 174.5
hot day 1019.8
skate glide 177.35
play hockey 749.7
skateboard
n skates 179.21
v glide 177.35
skate on thin ice 1006.7
skating rink 743.11
skedaddle
n flight 368.4
v be frightened 127.12
speed 174.9
depart 188.7
leave 222.10
flee 368.11
lose one's nerve 491.8
interj go away! 909.32
skeet shooting
sport 744.1
trapshooting 904.2
skein cord 271.2
flock 770.6
skeleton
n base 199.2
outline 211.2
frame 266.4
thinness 270.7
thin person 270.8
corpse 307.16
diagram 381.3
wreck 393.8
abridgment 557.1
support 901.10
adj skeletal 2.26
skeleton crew 992.2
skeleton in the closet
secret 345.5
evil 1000.3
skeleton key 292.10
skeptic
n agnostic 695.12
doubter 955.4
adj agnostic 695.20
sketch
n description 349.2
diagram 381.3
treatise 556.1
abridgment 557.1
act 704.7
drawing 712.13
likeness 784.3
v describe 349.9
plot 381.10
outline 381.11
abridge 557.5
act 704.29
portray 712.19
sketchbook
book 554.1
art equipment 712.18
sketchy
incomplete 795.4
imperfect 1003.4
skew
n deviation 164.1
bias 204.3
v squint 28.9
deflect 164.5
diverge 204.9
go sideways 218.5
unbalance 791.3
adj deflective 164.8
askew 204.14
unequal 791.4
skewer
perforate 292.15
stigmatize 661.9
hook 800.8
ski
n skate 179.21
v glide 177.35
sport 753.4
skid
n slide 194.4
v glide 177.35
maneuver 184.40

slide 194.9
go sideways 218.5
skid row 230.6
skier 753.2
skiing gliding 177.16
sports 753.1
ski jump
n leap 366.1
v leap 366.5
ski lift
cableway 383.8
transport 753.1
skill superiority 249.1
expertise 413.1
skillfulness 413.1
art 413.7
production 892.2
memory 989.1
skilled laborer 726.6
skillful expert 413.22
good 999.12
skim
n gliding 177.16
v touch lightly 73.7
speed 174.8
glide 177.35
float 182.54
slide 194.9
contact 223.10
scratch the surface 276.4
slight 340.8
cheat 356.18
acquire 472.9
take 480.13
browse 570.13
examine cursorily 938.26
skimp
v slight 340.8
stint 484.5
economize 635.4
adj meager 992.10
skimpy sparse 885.5
meager 992.10
skin
n body covering 2.4
fur 4.2
contraceptive 86.23
exterior 206.2
shallowness 276.1
skin 295.3
blanket 295.12
lamina 296.2
money 728.6
cash 728.7
v peel 6.8
best 249.7
injure 393.13
strip 480.24
overprice 632.7
cheat 759.26
tear apart 802.14
abrade 1044.7
skin alive best 249.7
defeat 412.9
criticize 510.20
skin and bones
n shrinking 260.3
leanness 270.5
adj wasted 393.35
skin color 35.1
skin-deep
cutaneous 2.27
insignificant 248.6
shallow 276.5
epidermal 295.32
skin diver 367.4
skin flick 666.4
skinflint 484.4
skin game 356.10
skinny cutaneous 2.27
lean 270.17
skinlike 295.32
the skinny
information 551.1
the facts 761.4
the truth 973.4
skinny-dip 182.56
skip
n step 177.11
leap 366.1
wastepaper basket 391.7
lawn bowling 750.3
v exude cheerfulness 109.6
rejoice 116.5
way of walking 177.28
depart 188.7
leave undone 340.7
leap 366.5
caper 366.6
flee 368.11
escape 369.6
dance 705.5
play 743.23
skip it 998.25
skip over slight 340.8
examine cursorily 938.26
skipper
n ship's officer 183.7
v direct 573.8
skirl
n screech 58.4
v screech 58.8
skirmish
n fight 457.4
v contend 457.13
skirt
n dress 5.16
woman 77.6
border 211.4
girl 302.7
v border 211.10
flank 218.4
contact 223.10
evade 368.7
circle 914.5
skirting
n edging 211.7
adj bordering 211.11
flanking 218.6
ski slope 753.1
skit 704.7
skittish
sensitive 24.12
excitable 105.28
frisky 109.14
fearful 127.23
jittery 128.12
shy 139.12
fickle 364.6
skoal! 88.38
skulduggery 356.4
skulk
n shirker 368.3
group of animals 770.5
v lurk 346.9
shirk 368.9
cower 491.9
skull cranium 198.7
death 307.3
skull and crossbones
death 307.3
warning sign 399.3
insignia 647.1
skunk
n stinker 71.3
wild animal 311.23
bad person 660.6
v defeat 412.9
sky
n summit 198.2
height 272.2
the heavens 1072.2
v hit golf ball 751.4
elevate 912.5
skycap 176.7
sky dive
parachute 181.13
plunge 367.1
sky-high 272.15
skyjack 482.20
skyjacker 483.7
skylark
n ascent 193.7
v make merry 743.24
skylight roof 295.6
shine 1025.2
skyline 201.4
skyrocket
n ascent 193.7
v shoot up 193.9
improve 392.7
rocket 1074.12
skyscraper
structure 266.2
tower 272.6
skyward up 193.16
on high 272.21
skywriting 184.1
slab lamina 296.2
wood 1054.3
slack
n refuse 391.4
coal dust 1021.2
v relax 20.7
leave undone 340.7
shirk 368.9
ease up 670.9
loosen 804.3
fight fire 1022.7
adj weak 16.12
apathetic 94.13
inert 173.14
slow 175.10
indolent 331.19
negligent 340.10
lax 426.4
wanton 665.26
loose 804.5
slovenly 810.15
dilatory 846.17
slacker neglecter 340.5
shirker 368.3
slack-jawed 292.18
slacks 5.18
slag dregs 256.2
refuse 391.4
combustion product 1020.16
slake gratify 95.8
relieve 120.5
relax 670.9
satiate 994.4
slalom 753.3
slam
n explosive noise 56.1
disrespect 156.3
score 409.5
jail 429.9
criticism 510.4
hit 902.4
blow 902.5
v make explosive noise 56.6
be disrespectful 156.6
close 293.6
criticize 510.14
strike 902.15
slammer 429.9
slam the door in one's face
snub 157.5
avoid 368.6
repulse 442.5
slander
n monstrous lie 354.12
libel 512.3
scandal 552.8
v libel 512.11
slang
n gibberish 522.7
nonformal language 523.5
jargon 523.9
barbarism 526.6
v bluster 503.3
adj jargonish 523.21
slant
n glance 27.4
aspect 33.3
deviation 164.1
inclination 204.2
diagonal 204.7
partiality 650.3
plot 722.4
tendency 896.1
mental outlook 978.2
disposition 978.3
v incline 204.10
go sideways 218.5
pervert 265.6
misrepresent 350.3
falsify 354.16
favor 650.8
influence 894.7
adj inclining 204.15
transverse 204.19
slap
n explosive sound 56.1
punishment 604.3
smack 902.8
v make explosive sound 56.6
place violently 159.13
punish 604.12
smack 902.19
adv suddenly 830.9
slapdash
n slipshodness 340.3

adj hasty 401.9
reckless 493.8
adv carelessly 340.18
hastily 401.12
recklessly 493.11
slaphappy 926.27
slap in the face
n provocation 152.11
indignity 156.2
repulse 442.2
slap 604.3
v offend 156.5
slap on the wrist 604.3
slap shot 749.3
slapstick
n wit 489.1
comedy 704.6
acting 704.8
adj comical 488.6
burlesque 508.14
theatrical 704.35
slash
n trauma 85.38
diagonal 204.7
line 517.6
discount 631.1
cheapening 633.4
engraving 713.2
break 802.4
v cut 204.11
notch 289.4
injure 393.13
criticize 510.20
cheapen 633.6
sever 802.11
slash and burn 1069.17
slat
n explosive sound 56.1
thinness 270.7
strip 271.4
lamina 296.2
wood 1054.3
v make explosive sound 56.6
flutter 917.12
slate
n ballot 609.19
schedule 965.3
v cover 295.23
schedule 965.6
slattern pig 80.13
slob 810.7
slaughter
n killing 308.1
butchery 308.3
destruction 395.1
unruliness 671.3
v butcher 308.17
put an end to 395.12
rage 671.11
slaughterhouse 308.12
slave
n sycophant 138.3
instrument 384.4
subject 432.7
retainer 577.1
drudge 726.3
v work hard 725.13
slave driver
superintendent 574.2
tyrant 575.14
slavery servility 138.1
subjection 432.1
service 577.12
work 725.4
slay delight 95.11
make laugh 116.9
kill 308.13
amuse 743.21
sleaze 660.5
sled
n sleigh 179.20
v glide 177.35
sledgehammer
v pound 902.16
adj coercive 424.12
sleek
v polish 287.7
adj slick 287.11
chic 578.13
tidy 807.8
thriving 1010.13
oily 1056.9
sleep
n rest 20.1
slumber 22.2
unconsciousness 25.2
quiescence 173.1
death 307.1
v slumber 22.13
stagnate 173.9
neglect 340.6
sleep around 665.19
sleep disorder 92.14
sleep in take a rest 20.8
sleep 22.13
sleeping bag 901.20
sleeping beauty 22.12
sleeping pill
anesthetic 25.3
sedative 86.12
sleeping sickness 22.6
sleepless wakeful 23.7
industrious 330.22
vigilant 339.13
alert 339.14
persevering 360.8
sleepwalking
n sleep 22.2
trance 92.19
nightwalking 177.9
adj nightwalking 177.38
sleep with 75.21
sleepy drowsy 22.21
languid 331.20
sleet
n ice 1023.5
v hail 1023.11
sleigh 177.35
sleight chicanery 356.4
trick 356.6
stratagem 415.3
sleight of hand
juggling 356.5
trick 356.6
illusoriness 976.2
slender
narrow 270.14
thin 270.16
meager 992.10
trivial 998.19
comely 1016.19
sleuth 576.10
slew
n lot 247.4
bunch 770.7
multitude 884.3
v change course 182.30
slice
n lamina 296.2
gain 472.3
portion 477.5
part 793.1
piece 793.3
break 802.4
v apportion 477.6
hit a golf ball 751.4
separate 793.6
sever 802.11
slice of life
description 349.2
genuineness 973.7
slick
n blanket 295.12
lamina 296.2
v polish 287.7
oil 1056.8
adj sleek 287.11
slippery 287.12
skillful 413.22
cunning 415.12
eloquent 544.8
tidy 807.8
shrewd 920.15
oily 1056.9
adv cunningly 415.13
slicker
n outerwear 5.13
smoother 287.4
cheater 357.4
sophisticate 413.17
v deceive 356.19
slide
n gliding 177.16
slip 194.4
smoothness 287.3
means of escape 369.3
wind instrument 711.6
photograph 714.3
print 714.5
playground equipment 743.15
v glide 177.35
slip 194.9
decline 393.17
elapse 821.5
go easily 1014.10
slide back 394.4
slide into 858.17
slide off 368.12
slide projector 714.12
sliding scale 624.4
slight
n snub 157.2
nonobservance 435.1
v ignore 157.6
turn one's back on 340.8
flout 454.4
disparage 512.8
be inattentive 984.2
dismiss 984.4
adj frail 16.14
little 258.10
thin 270.16
shallow 276.5
rare 299.4
meager 992.10
trivial 998.19
slightest 250.8
slim
n thin person 270.8
v slenderize 270.13
adj thin 270.16
sparse 885.5
meager 992.10
slim chance 972.9
slime
n filth 80.7
slop 80.8
mud 1062.8
v dirty 80.15
slim pickings 992.2
slimy filthy 80.23
flattering 511.8
viscous 1062.12
muddy 1062.14
sling
n medical dressing 86.33
slingshot 462.9
throw 904.3
v suspend 202.8
throw 904.10
slingshot
sling 462.9
toy 743.16
slink
n gait 177.12
v creep 177.26
convolve 281.4
lurk 346.9
cower 491.9
slink off 368.12
slinky thin 270.16
covert 345.12
cowering 491.13
slip
n anchor 180.16
slide 194.4
runt 258.4
thinness 270.7
pillowcase 295.10
youngster 302.1
girl 302.6
sprout 302.11
branch 310.20
avoidance 368.1
miss 410.4
bungle 414.5
proof 548.5
recording media 549.10
misdeed 655.2
ceramics 742.3
error 975.4
harbor 1009.6
mud 1062.8
v glide 177.35
float 182.54
slide 194.9
decline 393.17
sink 410.11
miss 410.14
bungle 414.11
give 478.12
go wrong 654.9
elapse 821.5

err 975.9
fall on evil days 1011.11
slip by 837.6
slipcover 554.14
slip in enter 189.7
insert 191.3
interpose 213.6
intrude 214.5
slip off take off 6.6
absent oneself 222.8
slip of the tongue 975.4
slip on 5.43
slip one's mind 990.7
slip one a Mickey 25.4
slippery slick 287.12
deceitful 356.22
evasive 368.15
cunning 415.12
dishonest 645.16
treacherous 645.21
unreliable 971.20
precarious 1006.12
oily 1056.9
slipshod
careless 340.12
lax 426.4
ungrammatic 531.4
slovenly 810.15
slipstream 184.30
slip through one's fingers 369.9
slit
n crack 224.2
furrow 290.1
break 802.4
v cleave 224.4
furrow 290.3
open 292.11
injure 393.13
sever 802.11
adj cleft 224.7
furrowed 290.4
impaired 393.27
severed 802.23
slither
n gait 177.12
gliding 177.16
slide 194.4
v way of walking 177.28
glide 177.35
slide 194.9
slit trench 460.5
sliver scrap 248.3
intruder 774.2
piece 793.3
slob bungler 414.9
slattern 810.7
ice 1023.5
mud 1062.8
slobber
n saliva 13.3
unction 511.2
v salivate 13.6
be stupid 922.12
be insane 926.20
moisten 1065.12
sloe
n blackness 38.4
adj black 38.8
slog
n walk 177.10
hit 902.4
v way of walking 177.28
keep doggedly at 360.3
drudge 725.14
strike 902.15
slogan
call to arms 458.8
catchword 526.9
motto 974.4
slop
n slime 80.8
offal 80.9
sentimentality 93.8
refuse 391.4
mud 1062.8
mud puddle 1062.9
v overflow 238.17
moisten 1065.12
slope
n inclination 204.2
incline 204.4
declivity 237.2
skiing 753.1
v incline 204.10
sloppy filthy 80.23
sentimental 93.21
slipshod 340.12
bungling 414.20
lax 426.4
loose 804.5
slovenly 810.15
slimy 1062.14
watery 1065.16
slosh
n lap 238.8
snow 1023.8
mud 1062.8
sprinkle 1065.5
v ripple 52.11
overflow 238.17
lap 238.19
moisten 1065.12
sloshed 88.33
slot
n crack 224.2
opening 292.1
syntax 530.2
gambling wheel 759.16
v cleave 224.4
sloth
apathy 94.4
wretchedness 96.6
unconcern 102.2
dejection 112.3
despair 125.2
slowness 175.1
inaction 329.1
indolence 331.5
languor 331.6
group of animals 770.5
slot machine
vending machine 736.4
gambling wheel 759.16
slouch
n slow motion 175.2
gait 177.12
idler 331.8
bungler 414.8
v way of walking 177.28
sink 194.6
idle 331.12
slough
n shed skin 2.5
offal 80.9
gangrene 85.40
marsh 243.1
predicament 1013.4
mud puddle 1062.9
v shed 6.10
discard 390.7
slovenly dirty 80.22
slipshod 340.12
ungrammatic 531.4
slipshod 810.15
slow
v slow down 175.9
adj dull 117.6
not fast 175.10
reluctant 325.6
indolent 331.19
languid 331.20
leisurely 402.6
late 846.16
dilatory 846.17
infrequent 848.2
dull 922.16
adv slowly 175.13
late 846.19
tardily 846.20
slow burn 152.3
slowdown
slowing 175.4
decline 252.2
economizing 635.2
strike 727.5
delay 846.2
slow motion 175.2
slow on the draw 846.16
slowpoke 175.5
slow starter 846.6
slow time
march 177.13
time 832.3
slow-up 846.2
slow-witted 922.16
sludge slime 80.8
refuse 391.4
ice 1023.5
mud 1062.8
slug
n drink 8.4
slowpoke 175.5
idler 331.8
shot 462.19
line of type 548.2
type spacing 548.7
token 728.12
dose 793.5
blow 902.5
v fight 754.4
strike 902.15
slugger
baseball player 745.2
boxer 754.2
sluggish apathetic 94.13
unconcerned 102.7
inert 173.14
slow 175.10
meandering 238.24
languid 331.20
dilatory 846.17
dull 922.16
sluice
n outlet 190.9
watercourse 239.2
drain 239.5
floodgate 239.11
v wash 79.19
flood 1065.14
slum sty 80.11
city district 230.6
slumber
n sleep 22.2
quiescence 173.1
v sleep 22.13
stagnate 173.9
slumlord 470.3
slump
n sinkage 194.2
decline 252.2
deterioration 393.3
cheapening 633.4
business cycle 731.10
declining market 737.5
shortcoming 911.1
hard times 1011.6
v sink 194.6
decline 393.17
cheapen 633.6
fall short 911.2
slur
n aspersion 512.4
stigma 661.6
musical execution 708.30
musical notation 709.12
v slight 340.8
defame 512.9
stigmatize 661.9
examine cursorily 938.26
stain 1004.6
slurp
n drink 8.4
ingestion 187.4
v lap up 8.30
draw in 187.12
slurry 797.6
slush slime 80.8
sentimentality 93.8
talkativeness 540.1
snow 1023.8
mud 1062.8
slush fund 609.35
slut female animal 77.10
unclean person 80.13
dog 311.17
neglecter 340.5
strumpet 665.14
slob 810.7
sly covert 345.12
cunning 415.12
cautious 494.8
shrewd 920.15
smack
n explosive sound 56.1
taste 62.1
heroin 87.9
hint 248.4
attempt 403.3
kiss 562.4
punishment 604.3
admixture 797.7
characteristic 865.4
hit 902.4

slap 902.8
v make explosive sound 56.6
taste 62.7
kiss 562.19
punish 604.12
hit 902.14
slap 902.19
adv suddenly 830.9
smacker 728.7
smack in the middle 819.5
smack of savor of 63.6
resemble 784.7
smack the lips
savor 63.5
enjoy 95.13
small
adj humble 137.10
insignificant 248.6
inadequate 250.7
little 258.10
thin 270.16
ungenerous 651.6
base 661.12
narrow-minded 980.10
meager 992.10
unimportant 998.17
adv little 258.16
small business 731.1
small change
petty cash 728.19
trivia 998.4
small fry runt 258.4
young people 302.2
a nobody 998.7
small-minded 980.10
small potatoes
a nobody 998.7
mediocrity 1005.5
small print 959.2
small talk
chitchat 541.5
gossip 552.7
small-time 250.7
smarmy
obsequious 138.14
insincere 354.32
suave 504.18
flattering 511.8
sanctimonious 693.5
smart
n smarting 26.3
v suffer 26.8
affect emotionally 93.14
resent 152.12
adj impudent 142.10
quick 330.18
alert 339.14
witty 489.15
ridiculing 508.12
fashionable 578.11
chic 578.13
tidy 807.8
brainy 920.14
smart aleck
egotist 140.5
impudent person 142.6
smart money 624.3
smart operator 737.11
smarts intellect 919.1
smartness 920.2
smash
n debacle 395.4
success 409.4
collapse 410.3
defeat 412.1
concussion 671.8
declining market 737.5
impact 902.3
hit 902.4
misfortune 1011.2
pulp 1063.2
v billow 238.22
demolish 395.17
raze 395.19
conquer 412.10
suppress 428.8
play tennis 748.3
shatter 802.13
collide 902.13
soften 1047.6
pulverize 1051.9
pulp 1063.5
smashed high 87.24
drunk 88.33
impaired 393.27
conquered 412.17
suppressed 428.14
smash hit 409.4
smashing defeat 412.3
smattering
n hint 248.4
slight knowledge 930.6
trifling 998.8
adj half-learned 930.15
smear
n soil 80.5
defamation 512.2
stigma 661.6
stain 1004.3
v color 35.14
soil 80.16
coat 295.24
defeat 412.9
vilify 512.10
stigmatize 661.9
stain 1004.6
oil 1056.8
smell
n senses 24.5
odor 69.1
smelling 69.4
hint 248.4
v sense 24.6
have an odor 69.6
scent 69.8
stink 71.4
detect 941.6
smell a rat 955.6
smell out trace 938.35
detect 941.6
smelly odorous 69.9
malodorous 71.5
smelt extract 192.10
process 892.9
melt 1020.21
smelter extractor 192.9
foundry 739.4
smidgen 248.2
smile
n grin 116.3
greeting 585.4
v be pleased 95.12
exude cheerfulness 109.6
grin 116.7
smile at 508.8
smirk
n smile 116.3
scornful smile 508.4
v smile 116.7
mince 500.14
smithereen scrap 248.3
piece 793.3
smitten 104.28
smock 5.17
smog
n fog 319.3
miasma 1001.4
v cloud 319.7
smoke
n blackness 38.4
marijuana 87.11
tobacco 89.1
smoking tobacco 89.3
puff 89.10
spirit 764.3
ephemeron 828.5
combustion product 1020.16
vapor 1067.1
v blacken 38.7
dirty 80.15
use marijuana 87.22
inhale 89.14
be angry 152.15
best 249.7
cloud 319.7
preserve 397.9
let out 909.24
stain 1004.6
fume 1019.23
dry 1066.6
vaporize 1067.8
smoke out 909.14
smoke signal 517.15
smoker addict 87.21
tobacco user 89.11
smoking room 89.13
smoke screen
cover 356.11
pretext 376.1
smoking gun clue 517.9
proof 957.3
smoking room
smoking car 89.13
kitchen 197.14
Smoky the Bear 397.5
smolder
be excitable 105.16
be angry 152.15
stagnate 173.9
be latent 519.3
be hot 1019.22
smooch
n kiss 562.4
stigma 661.6
v make love 562.15
kiss 562.19
smooth
n smoothness 287.3
note 709.14
v level 201.6
straighten 277.5
flatten 287.5
change the texture 294.4
pacify 465.7
talkative 540.9
calm 670.7
make uniform 781.4
facilitate 1014.7
buff 1044.8
adj hairless 6.17
quiescent 173.12
horizontal 201.7
straight 277.6
smooth-textured 287.10
fine 294.8
cunning 415.12
suave 504.18
flattering 511.8
harmonious 533.8
eloquent 544.8
fluent 544.9
uniform 781.5
continuous 812.8
easy 1014.13
oily 1056.9
smooth customer 415.6
smoothie cheater 357.4
slyboots 415.6
smooth over
pacify 465.7
extenuate 600.12
calm 670.7
smooth-running 1014.14
smooth sailing 1014.1
smooth talker 415.6
smooth the way
facilitate 1014.7
oil 1056.8
smorgasbord
restaurant 8.17
appetizer 10.9
smother
control one's feelings 106.8
wrap 295.20
die 307.24
strangle 308.19
cover up 345.8
extinguish 395.15
suppress 428.8
moderate 670.6
be hot 1019.22
fight fire 1022.7
smothering
violent death 307.6
suffocation 308.6
veil of secrecy 345.3
suppression 428.2
extinguishing 1022.2
smudge
n blackening 38.5
soil 80.5
stigma 661.6
stain 1004.3
combustion product 1020.16
vapor 1067.1
v blacken 38.7
soil 80.16
smoke 1019.23
smug
complacent 107.10
vain 140.8
prudish 500.19
suave 504.18

chic 578.13
smuggle 732.8
smuggler 732.5
smut
n blackness 38.4
blackening 38.5
soil 80.5
dirt 80.6
filth 80.7
dregs 256.2
fungus 310.4
obscenity 666.4
blight 1001.2
stain 1004.3
combustion product 1020.16
powder 1051.5
v blacken 38.7
soil 80.16
snack
n light meal 8.7
piece 793.3
v feed 8.18
pick 8.26
snafu
n complex 799.2
mix-up 810.2
goof 975.6
confusion 985.3
v spoil 393.11
complicate 799.3
confuse 811.3
hinder 1012.16
adj confused 810.16
snag
n teeth 2.8
projection 285.4
proviso 421.3
fault 1003.2
hitch 1013.8
v acquire 472.9
catch 480.17
snaggle-toothed 285.14
snail shellfish 10.25
slowpoke 175.5
marine animal 311.30
snail's pace 175.2
snake
n serpent 311.26
traitor 357.10
bad person 660.6
v stray 164.4
creep 177.26
convolve 281.4
pull 905.4
jerk 905.5
snakebite 1001.5
snake charmer 707.3
snake eyes 873.3
snake in the grass
traitor 357.10
evil 1000.3
hidden danger 1006.5
snake oil 86.2
snap
n bite 8.2
energy 17.3
crack 56.2
zest 68.2
photograph 714.3
football play 746.3
blackjack 759.11
tap 902.7
trifle 998.5
easy 1014.4
cold weather 1023.3
elasticity 1048.1
v crack 56.7
growl 60.4
show resentment 152.14
close 293.6
be damaged 393.23
speak 524.25
photograph 714.14
hook 800.8
break 802.12
hit 902.14
tap 902.18
throw 904.10
adj unpremeditated 365.11
hasty 401.9
unprepared 406.8
snap back react 903.5
recoil 903.6
snap decision 365.4
snap one's fingers at
disdain 157.3
disobey 327.6
flout 454.4
attach little importance to 998.12
snap out of it
cheer up 109.9
recover 396.20
snappy energetic 17.13
zestful 68.7
fast 174.15
active 330.17
quick 330.18
cold 1023.14
snapshot
n photograph 714.3
v photograph 714.14
snap to it! 401.17
snap up energize 17.10
seize 480.14
snare
n springe 356.13
lure 377.3
hidden danger 1006.5
v trap 356.20
catch 480.17
rob 482.16
snarl
n rasp 58.3
grimace 265.4
quarrel 456.5
complex 799.2
v sound harshly 58.9
growl 60.4
show resentment 152.14
wind sound 318.21
trap 356.20
speak 524.25
complicate 799.3
confuse 811.3
hamper 1012.11
snatch
n seizure 480.2
piece 793.3
jerk 905.3
v jump at 101.6
seize 480.14
steal 482.13
abduct 482.20
jerk 905.5
sneak
n dastard 491.6
rascal 660.3
v creep 177.26
lurk 346.9
cower 491.9
smuggle 732.8
sneak attack
deceit 356.3
surprise attack 459.2
sneak in intrude 214.5
join 617.14
sneaking suspicion 951.5
sneak out of
shirk 368.9
slip away 369.9
sneak preview 706.1
sneaky covert 345.12
deceitful 356.22
cunning 415.12
cowering 491.13
sneer
n snub 157.2
scornful smile 508.4
v scoff 508.9
sneeze
n breathing 2.21
sibilation 57.1
v sibilate 57.2
sneeze at disdain 157.3
dismiss 984.4
snicker
n laughter 116.4
scornful laugh 508.4
v laugh 116.8
snide spiteful 144.21
disparaging 512.13
hostile 589.10
sniff
n breathing 2.21
sibilation 57.1
snub 157.2
drawing in 187.5
hint 551.4
v sibilate 57.2
smell 69.8
inhale illicit substance 87.22
draw in 187.12
scent 941.6
sniff at 157.3
sniff out trace 938.35
scent 941.6
snifter 88.7
snip
n deckhand 183.6
scrap 248.3
runt 258.4
minute thing 258.7
piece 793.3
v sever 802.11
snipe
n cigarette 89.5
v pull the trigger 459.22
shoot 904.12
sniper
infantryman 461.9
shooter 904.8
sniping 115.4
snippet scrap 248.3
runt 258.4
minute 258.7
excerpt 557.3
piece 793.3
snippy snobbish 141.14
gruff 505.7
snit dither 105.6
fit 152.8
frenzy 926.7
snitch
n informer 551.6
v rob 482.16
inform on 551.13
sniveling
n weeping 115.2
adj tearful 115.21
obsequious 138.14
sanctimonious 693.5
snob 141.7
snobbish
snobby 141.14
contemptuous 157.8
selective 495.13
exclusive 773.9
snooker 760.1
snoop
n listener 48.5
meddler 214.4
inquisitive person 981.2
v meddle 214.7
pry 981.4
snoot 283.8
snootful 794.3
snooty snobbish 141.14
contemptuous 157.8
snooze
n nap 22.3
v sleep 22.14
snore
n breathing 2.21
resonance 54.1
sibilation 57.1
rasp 58.3
v sleep 22.13
resonate 54.6
sibilate 57.2
sound harshly 58.9
snorkel tube 239.6
diving equipment 367.5
extinguisher 1022.3
snort
n drink 8.4
sibilation 57.1
drink 88.7
laughter 116.4
snub 157.2
scornful laugh 508.4
dose 793.5
v sibilate 57.2
grunt 60.3
inhale a drug 87.22
laugh 116.8
speak 524.25
snot body fluid 2.24
filth 80.7
snotty
snobbish 141.14
contemptuous 157.8
mucous 1062.13
snout nozzle 239.9

nose 283.8
snow
n whiteness 37.2
cocaine 87.7
ice 1023.8
television reception 1035.5
v deceive 356.14
give 478.12
hail 1023.11
snowball
n accumulation 770.9
snow 1023.8
v grow 251.6
enlarge 259.5
ball 282.7
a snowball's chance in hell 967.1
snow-blind
v blind 30.7
adj dim-sighted 28.13
blinded 30.10
snowboarding 753.1
snowdrift pile 770.10
snow 1023.8
snowfall 1023.8
snowflake 1023.8
snow job
deception 356.9
inducement 375.3
snowman figure 349.6
snow 1023.8
snowmobile 179.20
snowshoes 179.21
snowstorm storm 671.4
snow 1023.8
television reception 1035.5
snub
n rebuff 157.2
repulse 908.2
v rebuff 157.5
shorten 268.6
restrain 428.7
refuse 442.5
repulse 908.3
banish 909.17
hinder 1012.10
adj shortened 268.9
snub-nosed
deformed 265.12
stubby 268.10
snuff
n breathing 2.21
sibilation 57.1
tobacco 89.8
drawing in 187.5
v sibilate 57.2
smell 69.8
draw in 187.12
kill 308.14
fight fire 1022.7
snuffbox 89.8
snuff out
extinguish 395.15
fight fire 1022.7
snug
v make comfortable 121.9
adj comfortable 121.11
seaworthy 180.18
homelike 228.33
close 293.12
taciturn 344.9
unsociable 583.5
tidy 807.8
cozy 1007.7
snuggery nook 197.3
cottage 228.8
snuggle nestle 121.10
cuddle 562.17
snug harbor 1009.1
so
adj suchlike 784.12
adv greatly 247.15
very 247.18
how 384.9
thus 766.10
similarly 784.18
equally 790.11
accurately 973.20
conj for 380.11
just so 959.15
soak
n drunk 88.12
soaking 1065.7
v tipple 88.24
extraction 192.16
overprice 632.7
strike 902.15
overload 993.15
liquefy 1064.5
drench 1065.13
so-and-so 528.2
soap
n cleanser 79.17
television broadcast 1035.2
v wash 79.19
flatter 511.6
soapbox
n platform 901.13
v make a speech 543.9
soapbox racing 744.1
soap opera
sentimentality 93.8
radiobroadcast 1034.18
television broadcast 1035.2
soapy foamy 320.7
suave 504.18
flattering 511.8
oily 1056.9
soar move 172.5
fly 184.36
take off 193.10
loom 247.5
tower 272.10
soaring costs 632.3
sob
n sexual pervert 75.16
lament 115.3
v sigh 52.14
weep 115.12
wind sound 318.21
speak 524.25
mumble 525.9
SOB 660.5
sober
v moderate 670.6
adj soft-colored 35.22
dark 38.9
gray 39.4
sedate 106.14
solemn 111.3
dignified 136.12
not intoxicated 516.3
plain-speaking 535.3
temperate 668.9
moderate 670.10
real 761.15
sensible 920.18
cognitive 931.21
weighty 997.20
sobering 997.20
sobriety
darkness 38.2
sedateness 106.4
solemnity 111.1
proud bearing 136.2
unintoxicatedness 516.1
temperance 668.1
moderation 670.1
sensibleness 920.6
sanity 925.1
sobriquet 527.7
sob story 93.8
so-called
spurious 354.26
pretexted 376.5
nominal 527.15
soccer 752.1
sociable
n social gathering 582.10
v talkative 540.9
adj communicative 343.10
informal 581.3
social 582.22
friendly 587.15
associational 617.17
social
n social gathering 582.10
adj public 312.16
communal 476.9
sociable 582.22
associational 617.17
social behavior
good behavior 321.2
behaviorism 321.3
social class
social circle 582.5
class 607.1
community 617.2
social climbing 100.10
social consciousness 591.1
social convention 580.3
social democracy 612.4
social director 743.20
social disease 85.18
social drinker 88.11
social evolution 861.4
social gathering 582.10
social graces 580.3
social intercourse
communication 343.1
social life 582.4
socialism
communion 476.2
collective ownership 611.6
government 612.8
socialite
n person of fashion 578.7
aristocrat 607.4
adj upper-class 607.10
socialize
make better 392.9
communize 476.7
attach 480.20
politicize 611.16
social mobility
class 607.1
change 852.1
the social order 606.1
social outcast 586.4
social register 578.6
Social Register
directory 549.9
Bluebook 607.2
social security
welfare 143.5
subsidy 478.8
welfarism 611.7
insurance 1008.4
social services 449.3
social system 617.2
social worker
philanthropist 143.8
professional 726.4
society
n population 227.1
humankind 312.1
culture 373.2
fashionable people 578.6
association 582.6
the people 606.1
alliance 617.1
community 617.2
fellowship 617.3
sect 675.3
the laity 700.1
company 769.2
adj associational 617.17
sociology 312.10
sociopathy 92.15
sock
n costume 5.9
comedy 704.6
fight 754.3
blow 902.5
punch 902.6
v clothe 5.40
strike 902.15
sock away store 386.10
not use 390.5
socket 284.2
Socrates 921.2
sod land 234.1
turf 310.6
soda beverage 10.49
extinguisher 1022.3
soda fountain 8.17
soda jerk 577.7
sodden
v soak 1065.13
adj underdone 11.9
intoxicated 88.31
soaked 1065.17
sodomy 75.7
sofa furniture 229.1
bed 901.19
so far
thus far 211.16
limited 248.10
until now 838.4
soft weak 16.12
impotent 19.13
soft-colored 35.22
faint 52.16
effeminate 77.15

  sensitive 93.20
  sentimental 93.21
  loving 104.27
  comfortable 121.11
  pitying 145.7
  light 298.12
  out of practice 414.18
  unstrict 426.5
  lenient 427.7
  pacific 464.9
  cowardly 491.10
  unintoxicating 516.4
  phonetic 524.30
  moderate 670.10
  feebleminded 922.21
  gullible 954.9
  easy 1014.13
  nonresistive 1047.8
  slimy 1062.14
  pulpy 1063.6
soft drink 10.49
soften blur 32.4
  muffle 51.9
  feminize 77.13
  affect 93.14
  relieve 120.5
  have pity 145.4
  move 145.5
  extenuate 600.12
  moderate 670.6
  cushion 670.8
  qualify 959.3
  soften up 1047.6
softhearted
  sensitive 93.20
  kind 143.13
  pitying 145.7
soft in the head
  feebleminded 922.21
  insane 926.26
soft landing 1075.2
soft lenses 29.3
soft-pedal
  silence 51.8
  muffle 51.9
  extenuate 600.12
soft pornography 666.4
soft sell
  inducement 375.3
  selling 734.2
soft-shell crab 311.30
soft-soap
  be hypocritical 354.23
  urge 375.14
  importune 440.12
  flatter 511.6
soft-spoken
  suave 504.18
  speaking 524.31
soft spot
  sore spot 24.4
  tendency 896.1
  vulnerability 1006.4
soft touch 358.2
software 1042.11
softy 16.6
soggy 1065.17
soil
  n dirtiness 80.5
  region 231.1
  land 234.1
  v besoil 80.16
  vilify 512.10
  corrupt 654.10
  stigmatize 661.9
  seduce 665.20
  stain 1004.6
soil one's hands
  soil 80.16
  condescend 137.8
  deign 141.8
  incur disgrace 661.7
soiree
  social gathering 582.10
  assembly 770.2
sojourn
  n stay 225.5
  v stop 225.8
Sol 1072.14
solace
  n consolation 121.4
  amusement 743.1
  v comfort 121.6
  amuse 743.21
solar 1072.25
solar battery 1075.4
solar eclipse
  eclipse 1027.8
  sun 1072.13
solar energy
  energy 17.1
  fuel 1021.1
solarium 197.5
solar plexus 2.14
solar power 18.4
solar prominence
  flash 1025.6
  sun 1072.13
solar system 1072.9
solar wind 1072.13
solder
  n sculpture material 715.4
  v sculpture 715.5
  put together 800.5
  stick together 803.9
  burn 1020.24
soldier
  n ant 311.34
  shirker 368.3
  military man 461.6
  the underworld 660.10
  v shirk 368.9
  serve 458.18
soldier of fortune 461.17
sold on pleased 95.15
  belief 953.21
sole
  n fish 10.24
  base 199.2
  foot 199.5
  adj unmarried 565.7
  one 872.7
  unique 872.9
solecism
  ungrammaticism 531.2
  specious argument 936.3
  blunder 975.5
  grammatical error 975.7
solemn
  sedate 106.14
  dignified 111.3
  gloomy 112.24
  dull 117.6
  reverent 155.9
  heavy 297.16
  celebrative 487.3
  pompous 501.22
  lofty 544.14
  ceremonious 580.8
  pious 692.8
  worshipful 696.16
  weighty 997.20
solemn oath 334.4
solemn observance
  celebration 487.1
  ritualism 701.1
solemn promise 436.1
solenoid 907.3
solicit
  make advances 439.7
  canvass 440.14
solicit advice 422.7
solicitor
  petitioner 440.7
  lawyer 597.1
  canvasser 730.6
solicitous
  sensitive 24.12
  anxious 126.7
  considerate 143.16
  careful 339.10
  courteous 504.14
solicit votes 609.40
solid
  n solid body 1045.6
  adj firm 15.18
  unanimous 332.15
  faithful 644.20
  solvent 729.18
  substantial 763.6
  sturdy 763.7
  crowded 770.22
  complete 794.9
  permanent 853.7
  stable 855.12
  one 872.7
  reliable 970.17
  valid 973.14
  excellent 999.13
  dense 1045.12
  hard 1046.10
solidarity
  cooperation 450.1
  accord 455.1
  completeness 794.1
  oneness 872.1
solid citizen 607.6
solid fuel 1074.8
solidify contract 260.7
  cohere 803.6
  combine 805.3
  densify 1045.9
  set 1046.8
solid-state device 1033.12
solidus 204.7
solid waste
  derelict 370.4
  refuse 391.4
  extract 893.3
soliloquy
  self-address 542.1
  monology 542.1
solitary
  n recluse 584.5
  oddity 870.4
  adj alone 584.11
  unique 872.7
  isolated 872.8
  eccentric 927.5
solitary confinement 429.8
solo
  n flight 184.9
  soliloquy 542.1
  song 708.4
  aria 708.15
  keyboard 711.17
  v pilot 184.37
  adj alone 872.8
  adv singly 872.13
soloist 710.1
Solomon judge 596.5
  wise person 921.2
so long! 188.22
so long as 959.15
solstice 313.7
soluble solvable 940.3
  liquefiable 1064.9
solution
  explanation 341.4
  harmonization 709.2
  answer to a problem 940
  resolution 940.1
  expedient 995.2
  liquefaction 1064.1
  decoction 1064.3
solve explain 341.10
  resolve 940.2
  liquefy 1064.5
solvent
  n cleanser 79.17
  thinner 270.10
  dissolvent 1064.4
  adj unindebted 624.23
  sound 729.18
  disintegrative 806.5
  dissolvent 1064.8
soma body 2.1
  physical entity 1052.3
somber
  n gloom 1027.4
  v darken 1027.9
  adj soft-colored 35.22
  dark 38.9
  gray 39.4
  solemn 111.3
  grim 112.24
  ominous 133.17
  gloomy 1027.14
  lackluster 1027.17
some
  n quantity 244.3
  plurality 883.1
  adj quantitative 244.5
  skillful 413.22
  plural 883.7
  adv approximately 244.6
somebody person 312.5
  celebrity 662.9
  personage 997.8
someday 839.12
somehow
  in some way 384.11
  by chance 972.19

someplace 159.26
somersault
n overturn 205.2
v capsize 182.44
something
n some 244.3
thing 763.3
important person 997.9
object 1052.4
prep about 223.26
something else
n marvel 122.2
a different thing 780.3
first-rate 999.7
adj nothing like 787.5
excellent 999.13
something extra
advantage 249.2
extra 254.4
gratuity 478.5
surplus 993.5
something like 784.10
something out of nothing 355.3
something special 997.5
something terrible
distressingly 247.21
terribly 1000.14
something to fall back on 386.3
something to spare 993.5
something to write home about
marvel 122.2
matter of consequence 997.5
sometime
adj former 837.10
occasional 848.3
adv someday 839.12
some time ago 837.16
somewhat
n some 244.3
adv to a degree 245.7
limited 248.10
somewhere 159.26
somewhere else
adj abstracted 985.11
adv away 222.18
somnambulism
sleep 22.2
trance 92.19
nightwalking 177.9
somnolent sleepy 22.21
languid 331.20
so much for that
interj that's that! 407.15
phrs that's all for 820.14
son male child 559.3
offspring 561.1
descendant 561.3
sonar 182.2
song melody 708.4
vocal music 708.13
types 708.14
poetry 720.1
song and dance
deception 356.9
act 704.7
songbird bird 311.28
singer 710.13
singing bird 710.23
sonic 50.17
sonic boom sonics 50.6
noise 53.3
air speed 184.31
son-in-law 564.2
son of a bitch 660.5
sonogram 91.9
sonorous
sounding 50.15
loud 53.11
resonant 54.10
grandiloquent 545.8
melodious 708.48
soon in the future 839.9
presently 845.16
sooner than
preferably 371.28
instead of 862.12
soon to be 840.3
soot
n blackness 38.4
blacking 38.6
dirt 80.6
dregs 256.2
combustion product 1020.16
powder 1051.5
v blacken 38.7
dirty 80.15
soothe
relieve 120.5
quiet 173.8
pacify 465.7
calm 670.7
soothing
n palliative 86.10
relief 120.1
pacification 465.1
modulation 670.2
adj palliative 86.40
sedative 86.45
relieving 120.9
pacificatory 465.12
tranquilizing 670.15
lubricant 1056.10
soothsayer 962.4
sooty dingy 38.11
dirty 80.22
sop
n weakling 16.6
bribe 378.2
fool 924.1
v soak 1065.13
sophisticated
experienced 413.28
elegant 496.9
chic 578.13
ungullible 956.5
disillusioned 977.5
sophistry
insincerity 354.5
cunning 415.1
misteaching 569.1
reasoning 935.1
illogicalness 936.1
specious argument 936.3
philosophy 952.1
sophomore
undergraduate 572.6
jockey 757.2
soporific
n sleep-inducer 22.10
adj sleepy 22.21
sleep-inducing 22.23
sedative 86.45
apathetic 94.13
sopping wet 1065.17
soprano
n high voice 58.6
part 708.22
voice 709.5
adj high 58.13
vocal 708.50
sorcerer
Satanist 680.15
necromancer 690.5
illusoriness 976.2
diviner 689.16
sorceress 690.8
sordid squalid 80.25
greedy 100.27
niggardly 484.8
disreputable 661.10
slovenly 810.15
terrible 1000.9
sore
n soreness 26.4
symptom 85.9
lesion 85.37
pain 96.5
adj raw 26.11
distressing 98.20
resentful 152.26
angry 152.30
hostile 589.10
disastrous 1011.15
straitened 1013.26
sorehead
malcontent 108.4
grouch 110.11
complainer 115.9
sore point
sore spot 24.4
provocation 152.11
bone of contention 456.7
sore throat 85.9
sorghum 66.2
sorority
affiliation 450.2
sisterhood 587.2
club 617.3
sorrel
n horse 311.11
adj brown 40.3
sorrow
n affliction 96.8
grief 112.10
regret 113.1
lamentation 115.1
v distress 98.14
grieve 112.17
aggrieve 112.19
lament 115.10
sorry unhappy 112.21
regretful 113.8
low 497.15
disgraceful 661.11
paltry 998.21
sort
n nature 767.4
kind 809.3
v size 257.15
analyze 801.8
arrange 808.11
classify 809.6
discriminate 944.4
sortie
Air Force mission 184.11
attack 459.1
sort of
to a degree 245.7
so to speak 784.19
SOS 400.1
so-so
adj medium 246.3
mediocre 1005.7
adv mediocrely 1005.11
so thick you can cut it with a knife 319.10
so to speak
figuratively 536.4
in a manner of speaking 784.19
sotto voce
adv in an undertone 52.22
secretly 345.17
adj music 708.53
sou'wester 318.9
soufflé
n foam 320.2
adj light 298.10
bubbly 320.6
sought-after
desirable 100.30
fashionable 578.11
distinguished 662.16
soul passion 93.2
heart 93.3
content 196.5
interior 207.2
life force 306.3
person 312.5
theosophy 689.18
entity 763.3
essence 767.2
inner nature 767.5
particularity 865.1
individual 872.4
psyche 919.4
genius 920.8
soul food 10.1
soulful 93.17
soul-searching 113.3
sound
n noise 50.1
sonance 50.1
inlet 242.1
feeler 942.4
v appear to be 33.10
make a noise 50.14
blare 53.10
reverberate 54.7
ring 54.8
fathom 275.9
measure 300.10
plunge 367.6
say 524.22
play music 708.42
investigate 938.23
sound out 942.9
adj firm 15.18
whole 83.11
orthodox 687.7
solvent 729.18

sturdy 763.7
stable 855.12
sensible 920.18
sane 925.4
logical 935.20
reliable 970.17
valid 973.14
realistic 987.6
good 999.12
intact 1002.7
unhazardous 1007.5
sound an alarm 517.22
sound asleep 22.22
sound barrier
sonics 50.6
speed of sound 174.2
air speed 184.31
sound bite
information 551.3
news item 552.3
excerpt 557.3
piece 793.3
sound economy 731.7
sound effects 1034.18
sounding
n sonation 50.4
fathoming 275.5
adj sonorous 50.15
reverberating 54.12
ringing 54.13
sound judgment 920.7
sound like
appear to be 33.10
resemble 784.7
sound mind 925.1
sound off
vociferate 59.8
affirm 334.5
boast 502.7
bluster 503.3
speak 524.20
speak up 524.21
sound out 942.9
soundproof
v proof 15.14
adj resistant 15.20
sound sleep 22.5
sound the alarm
warn 399.5
alarm 400.3
sound track 714.10
soup potage 10.10
atmosphere 184.32
thinness 270.7
processing solution 714.13
semiliquid 1062.5
soup's on! 8.35
soup up 251.5
soupy foggy 319.10
viscous 1062.12
sour
n tartness 67.1
sour foods 67.2
v turn sour 67.4
acerbate 110.16
aggravate 119.2
adj dissonant 61.4
flavored 62.9
bitter 64.6
tart 67.5
pungent 68.6
unpleasant 98.17
discontented 108.7
sour-tempered 110.23
tainted 393.41
source
headwaters 238.2
motive 375.1
source of supply 386.4
informant 551.5
origin 886.5
sour cream 67.2
sourdough food 67.2
miner 1058.9
sour grapes 512.1
sour note 61.1
sourpuss
malcontent 108.4
melancholic 112.13
complainer 115.9
spoilsport 1012.9
souse
n drunk 88.12
submergence 367.2
soaking 1065.7
v intoxicate 88.23
drink 88.25
submerge 367.7
soak 1065.13
south
n points of the compass 161.3
adj southern 161.14
adv southward 161.16
down 194.13
South America
world region 231.6
continent 235.1
Southeast Asia Treaty Organization 437.2
Southern Hemisphere 231.6
southern lights 1025.16
southpaw
n left-hander 220.3
baseball player 745.2
adj left-handed 220.5
South Pole
opposites 215.2
remote region 261.4
cold place 1023.4
southwestwardly 161.22
souvenir memory 989.1
memento 989.7
sovereign
n potentate 575.8
coin 728.4
adj omnipotent 18.13
chief 249.14
regal 417.17
independent 430.22
governing 612.18
almighty 677.17
sovereign state 232.1
so very much 247.15
sow
disperse 771.4
plant 1069.18
sow
female animal 77.10
swine 311.9
cast 1058.5
sow dissension 456.14
so what? who cares? 102.11
what does it matter? 998.26
so what else is new? 118.15
sow one's wild oats
misbehave 322.4
let oneself go 430.19
be promiscuous 665.19
dissipate 669.6
make merry 743.24
spa bathing place 79.10
fitness 84.1
health resort 91.23
resort 228.27
space
n expanse 158.1
extent 158.1
atmosphere 184.32
compartment 197.2
interval 224.1
region 231.1
degree 245.1
capacity 257.2
distance 261.1
opening 292.1
latitude 430.4
spacing 548.7
musical staff 708.29
time 821.1
period 824.1
opportunity 843.2
outer space 1072.3
v interspace 224.3
dispose 808.9
adj spatial 158.10
extraterrestrial 1072.26
Space Age 824.6
space cadet 87.21
spacecraft 1075.2
spaced out
unconscious 25.8
interspaced 224.6
space observatory 1075.6
space rocket 1075.2
space satellite 1075.6
spaceship
rocket plane 181.4
spacecraft 1075.2
space shuttle
aircraft 181.1
spacecraft 1075.2
space station 1075.5
space suit 1075.11
space-time continuum 158.6
space travel
space flight 1075.1
astronautics 1075.1
spacious roomy 158.11
large 247.7
voluminous 257.17
broad 269.6
spade
n race 312.3
v ladle 176.17
excavate 284.15
cultivate 1069.17
spaghetti 10.33
spaghetti junction 170.2
spam 1042.19
span
n rig 179.5
short distance 223.2
distance 261.1
length 267.1
breadth 269.1
arch 279.4
bridge 383.9
period 824.1
short time 828.3
two 873.2
v extend 158.9
overlie 295.30
measure 300.10
put together 800.5
double 873.5
spandex 1048.3
spangled spotted 47.13
ornamented 498.11
illuminated 1025.39
spaniel 138.3
Spanish fly 75.6
spank
n slap 902.8
v reprove 510.17
punish 604.13
pound 902.16
slap 902.19
spanking new 841.10
spar
n mast 180.13
beam 273.3
boxing 457.9
lever 906.4
v quarrel 456.11
contend 457.13
fight 754.4
argue 935.16
spare
n bowling 750.2
surplus 993.5
v have pity 145.4
forgive 148.3
refrain 329.3
not use 390.5
preserve 397.8
exempt 430.14
relinquish 475.3
give away 478.21
afford 626.7
abstain 668.7
adj additional 253.10
remaining 256.7
lean 270.17
reserved 386.15
unused 390.12
leisure 402.5
plain-speaking 535.3
economical 635.6
simple 798.6
occasional 848.3
substitute 862.8
meager 992.10
superfluous 993.17
surplus 993.18
spare no expense 485.3
spare part 386.3
spare room 158.3
spare the rod
be easy on 427.5
indulge 427.6
spare time 402.1
spare tire 2.19
spark
n hint 248.4

  inspiration 375.9
  prompter 375.10
  dandy 500.9
  immediate cause 886.3
  fire 1019.15
  glitter 1025.7
  v motivate 375.12
  kindle 375.18
  court 562.21
  cause 886.10
  be hot 1019.22
  glitter 1025.24
sparkle
  n bubbling 320.3
  spirit 544.4
  spark 1019.15
  glitter 1025.7
  v exude cheerfulness 109.6
  bubble 320.4
  joke 489.13
  be brilliant 920.11
  glitter 1025.24
sparkling water 10.49
spark plug
  energizer 17.6
  prompter 375.10
sparring partner 754.2
sparse dispersed 771.9
  infrequent 848.2
  scant 885.5
  scarce 992.11
Spartan
  n stoic 134.3
  man of few words 344.5
  adj patient 134.9
  strict 425.6
  inornate 499.9
  plain-speaking 535.3
  concise 537.6
  abstinent 668.10
  meager 992.10
spasm pang 26.2
  seizure 85.6
  symptom 85.9
  pain 96.5
  outburst 105.9
  bustle 330.4
  upheaval 671.5
  revolution 860.1
  convulsion 917.6
  frenzy 926.7
spastic
  n sick person 85.43
  idiot 924.8
  adj convulsive 671.23
  irregular 851.3
  jerky 917.19
  unintelligent 922.17
  mentally deficient 922.22
  foolish 923.8
spat
  n quarrel 456.5
  offspring 561.2
  v quarrel 456.11
spate flow 238.4
  torrent 238.5
  quantity 247.3
  lot 247.4
  rainstorm 316.2
  outburst 671.6
  throng 770.4
  plenty 991.2
  superabundance 993.2
spatter
  n staccato 55.1
  stain 1004.3
  sprinkle 1065.5
  v splatter 80.18
  rain 316.10
  sprinkle 771.6
  spot 1004.5
  moisten 1065.12
spatula
  art equipment 712.18
  sculpture tool 715.4
spawn
  n egg 305.15
  offspring 561.2
  v reproduce 78.9
  originate 892.12
spay 255.11
spaying 255.4
speak sound 50.14
  hail a ship 182.52
  affirm 334.5
  communicate 343.6
  command 420.8
  signal 517.22
  use language 523.18
  talk 524.19
  remark 524.24
  address 524.26
  make a speech 543.9
speakeasy 88.20
speaker
  loudspeaker 50.8
  talker 524.17
  speechmaker 543.4
  chairman 574.5
  spokesman 576.5
Speaker of the House 610.3
speak for
  be in front 216.7
  represent 576.14
  defend 600.10
speak in tongues
  talk nonsense 520.5
  be incomprehensible 522.10
speak too soon 844.4
speak up affirm 334.5
  come out 348.6
  brave 492.11
  speak out 524.21
spear
  n leaf 310.19
  branch 310.20
  stem 310.21
  weapon 462.8
  v perforate 292.15
  stab 459.25
  catch 480.17
spearhead
  n vanguard 216.2
  v lead 165.2
special
  n train 179.14
  commodity 735.2
  feature 866.2
  adj student 572.12
  detailed 766.9
  other 780.8
  classificational 809.7
  particular 865.12
  notable 997.19
special delivery 553.4
special edition 555.2
special education student
  572.4
special effects 706.5
Special Forces 461.15
special interest
  pressure group 609.31
  interest 983.2
specialist
  n doctor 90.4
  dentist 90.6
  stockbroker 737.10
  specializer 866.3
  adj specialized 866.5
specialize in
  practice 328.8
  study to be 570.15
  go in for 866.4
special police 1008.17
special privilege 430.8
specialty study 568.8
  occupation 724.4
  vocation 724.6
  component 796.2
  particularity 865.2
  characteristic 865.4
  object of special attention
  866
  speciality 866.1
  science 928.10
specie money 728.1
  hard money 728.4
species
  nomenclature 527.1
  race 559.4
  kind 809.3
  classifications 809.5
  biology 1068.1
specific
  n remedy 86.1
  adj circumscribed 210.6
  detailed 766.9
  classificational 809.7
  particular 865.12
specification
  circumscription 210.1
  description 349.2
  indication 517.3
  accusation 599.1
  circumstantiation 766.5
  differentiation 780.4
  designation 865.6
  qualification 959.1
  condition 959.2
specific gravity
  weight 297.5
  density 1045.1
specify
  circumscribe 210.4
  designate 517.18
  name 527.11
  itemize 766.6
  differentiate 780.6
  specialize 865.11
  focus on 937.3
  call attention to 983.10
specimen sample 62.4
  representative 349.7
  model 786.3
specious
  meretricious 354.27
  pretexted 376.5
  sophistical 936.10
  illusory 976.9
speck
  n spottiness 47.3
  modicum 248.2
  minute thing 258.7
  mark 517.5
  intruder 774.2
  stain 1004.3
  v variegate 47.7
  mark 517.19
  sprinkle 771.6
  spot 1004.5
speckle
  n spottiness 47.3
  mark 517.5
  stain 1004.3
  v variegate 47.7
  mark 517.19
  sprinkle 771.6
  spot 1004.5
spectacle sight 33.7
  marvel 122.2
  display 501.4
spectacles 29.3
spectacular
  astonishing 122.12
  gaudy 501.20
  theatrical 501.24
  dramatic 704.33
Spectacular Bid 311.15
spectator audience 48.6
  attender 221.5
  recipient 479.3
  playgoer 704.27
  gambler 759.21
  observer 918.1
  witness 957.6
specter apparition 33.5
  frightener 127.9
  spirit 678.5
  phantom 976.4
  ghost 988.1
spectrometer 29.1
spectroscope
  optical instrument 29.1
  astronomical instrument
  1072.17
spectrum
  color system 35.7
  variegation 47.6
  range 158.2
  series 812.2
  optical illusion 976.5
  frequency 1034.12
spectrum analysis 35.10
speculate invest 729.17
  trade 737.23
  gamble 759.23
  consider 931.12
  theorize 951.9
  predict 962.9
speculator
  stock investor 737.11
  gambler 759.21
  theorist 951.7
  philosopher 952.8

speech
  n communication 343.1
  language 523.1
  utterance 524
  talk 524.1
  diction 532.1
  conversation 541.3
  public speaking 543.2
  story teller 722.4
  adj communicational 343.9
  language 524.29
speech impediment 525.1
speechless mute 51.12
  taciturn 344.9
speechmaker 543.4
speech therapist 90.8
speech-writer 543.8
speed
  n amphetamines 87.4
  velocity 174.1
  hastiness 401.2
  v move 172.5
  go fast 174.8
  hasten 401.4
  be useful 449.17
  facilitate 1014.7
speedboat 180.4
speed bump
  bulge 283.3
  hindrance 1012.1
speed demon 174.5
speeder racer 174.5
  driver 178.10
speed of light 174.2
speed of sound
  sonics 50.6
  sonic speed 174.2
  air speed 184.31
speedometer 174.7
speed skating 760.7
speed up
  accelerate 174.10
  hasten 401.4
speedway 756.1
speedwriting 547.8
speedy fast 174.15
  quick 330.18
  hasty 401.9
  brief 828.8
  sudden 830.5
  prompt 845.9
spell
  n sorcery 690.1
  magic spell 691.1
  period 824.1
  term 824.3
  period of duty 825
  turn 825.2
  round 850.3
  superstition 954.3
  bad influence 1000.4
  v augur 133.12
  fascinate 377.7
  mean 518.8
  orthographize 546.7
  cast a spell 691.7
  take one's turn 825.5
  substitute for 862.5
spellbound
  wondering 122.9
  enchanted 691.12
  gripped 983.18
  dreamy 986.25
speller 554.10
spelling bee 546.4
spell out
  explain 341.10
  simplify 499.5
  make clear 521.6
  spell 546.7
  itemize 766.6
  elaborate 861.6
  particularize 865.9
spend
  use up 387.13
  consume 388.3
  waste 486.4
  expend 626.5
  occupy 724.10
  experience 831.8
spending money 728.19
spendthrift
  n prodigal 486.2
  adj prodigal 486.8
spend time 821.6
spent weakened 16.18
  burnt-out 21.10
  used up 388.5
  worn-out 393.36
  wasted 486.9
  paid 624.22
sperm body fluid 13.2
  copulation 75.7
  spermatozoa 305.11
spermatozoa 305.11
spermicide 86.23
spew
  n jet 238.9
  outburst 671.6
  vomiting 909.8
  v salivate 13.6
  run out 190.13
  jet 238.20
  erupt 671.13
  disgorge 909.25
  vomit 909.26
sphere
  n space 158.1
  domain 231.2
  rank 245.2
  ball 282.2
  arena 463.1
  occupation 724.4
  science 928.10
  stars 1072.4
  v ball 282.7
spheres of influence 609.5
sphincter 280.2
spice
  n flavoring 63.3
  zest 68.2
  fragrance 70.1
  admixture 797.7
  v flavor 63.7
spick and span 79.26
spicy zestful 68.7
  fragrant 70.9
  risqué 666.7
  interesting 983.19
spider spinner 271.5
  insect 311.33
spider's web 271.1
spiel
  n sales talk 734.5
  v publicize 352.15
  speak 524.20
  declaim 543.10
spiff up 5.42
spiffy chic 578.13
  excellent 999.13
spigot valve 239.10
  stopper 293.4
spike
  n rig 179.5
  thorn 285.5
  stopper 293.4
  plant part 310.27
  ear of corn 310.29
  card 758.2
  v disable 19.9
  perforate 292.15
  stab 459.25
  adulterate 797.12
  thwart 1012.15
spill
  n tumble 194.3
  overturn 205.2
  overflow 238.6
  stopper 293.4
  lighter 1021.4
  v overflow 238.17
  betray 351.6
  confess 351.7
  waste 486.4
spill over
  overflow 238.17
  superabound 993.8
spill the beans
  disclose 351.4
  betray 351.6
  inform on 551.13
spillway 239.2
spin
  n aspect 33.3
  ride 177.7
  air maneuver 184.15
  perversion 265.2
  misrepresentation 350.1
  partiality 650.3
  tennis play 748.2
  tendency 896.1
  rotation 915.1
  whirl 915.2
  v turn round 163.9
  move 172.5
  maneuver aircraft 184.40
  eddy 238.21
  make threads 271.6
  rotate 915.9
  whirl 915.11
  adv at top speed 756.5
spin a long yarn 538.8
spindle 915.5
spindly
  unsteady 16.16
  lean 270.17
spin doctor publicist 352.9
  motive 375.1
  mediator 466.3
  informant 551.5
  spokesman 576.5
spine ridge 237.5
  bulge 283.3
  thorn 285.5
  supporter 901.2
spineless weak 16.12
  weak-willed 362.12
  inconstant 854.7
spinning wheel 271.5
spin-off
  adjunct 254.1
  aftermath 817.3
  effect 887.1
  extract 893.3
spin one's wheels
  be impotent 19.7
  be useless 391.8
  miss 410.14
spin out
  v lengthen 267.6
  protract 538.8
  prolong 827.9
  postpone 846.9
  sustain 856.4
  adv at top speed 756.5
spinster woman 77.5
  spinner 271.5
  unmarried woman 565.4
spiny pointed 285.9
  difficult 1013.17
spiracle outlet 190.9
  air passage 239.13
spiral
  n air maneuvers 184.13
  coil 281.2
  circuitousness 914.1
  whirl 915.2
  galaxy 1072.6
  v maneuver aircraft 184.40
  ascend 193.8
  circle 914.5
  rotate 915.9
  adj curled 281.8
  circuitous 914.7
  rotary 915.15
spiraling up 193.1
spiral notebook 549.11
spiral staircase 193.3
spire
  n summit 198.2
  tower 272.6
  projection 285.4
  leaf 310.19
  stem 310.21
  v ascend 193.8
  take off 193.10
  tower 272.10
spirit
  n animation 17.4
  passion 93.2
  heart 93.3
  eagerness 101.1
  zeal 101.2
  gaiety 109.4
  extract 192.8
  content 196.5
  milieu 209.3
  life force 306.3
  liveliness 330.2
  enterprise 330.7
  pluck 359.3
  fortitude 492.6
  meaning 518.1
  eloquence 544.4

pagan diety 678.5
supernatural being 678.12
spiritualism 689.5
theosophy 689.18
intangible thing 764.3
essence 767.2
nature 767.4
inner nature 767.5
psyche 919.4
genius 920.8
mood 978.4
specter 988.1
v inspire 375.20
Spirit 677.6
spirit away 482.20
spirited energetic 17.13
eager 101.8
zealous 101.9
cheerful 109.14
active 330.17
resolute 492.18
eloquent 544.12
the Spirit of God 677.12
spirits liquor 88.13
gaiety 109.4
the gods 678.1
mood 978.4
spiritual sacred 685.7
psychic 689.24
godly 692.9
supernatural 870.15
mental 919.7
attitudinal 978.7
spectral 988.7
immaterial 1053.7
spiritual father 699.5
spiritual healer 90.9
spirituality 692.1
spirochete 85.42
spit
n body fluid 2.24
saliva 13.3
sibilation 57.1
jet 238.9
point of land 283.9
fire iron 1020.12
v salivate 13.6
snapping noise 56.7
sibilate 57.2
growl 60.4
show resentment 152.14
jet 238.20
perforate 292.15
rain 316.10
stab 459.25
spit and polish
meticulousness 339.3
pretext 376.1
strictness 425.1
fastidiousness 495.1
spite hate 103.1
spitefulness 144.6
hostility 589.3
grudge 589.5
spit it out 351.7
spitting 56.2
spitting image
image 349.5
the same 778.3
splash
n spottiness 47.3
ripple 52.5
lap 238.8
display 501.4
mark 517.5
stain 1004.3
sprinkle 1065.5
v ripple 52.11
spatter 80.18
lap 238.19
cut a dash 501.13
sprinkle 771.6
dramatize 997.16
spot 1004.5
moisten 1065.12
splashdown 1075.2
splashy showy 501.19
slimy 1062.14
watery 1065.16
splat
n explosive sound 56.1
wood 1054.3
v make explosive sound 56.6
splatter
n rain 316.1
stain 1004.3
sprinkle 1065.5
v drum 55.4
spatter 80.18
sprinkle 771.6
spot 1004.5
moisten 1065.12
splay
n expansion 259.1
dispersion 771.1
v diverge 171.5
lie 201.5
spread 259.6
open 292.11
disperse 771.4
adj sprawled 201.8
spread 259.11
spleen viscera 2.16
unpleasure 96.1
ill humor 110.1
melancholy 112.5
weariness 118.3
bitterness 152.3
splendid
grandiose 501.21
illustrious 662.19
good 999.12
superb 999.15
gorgeous 1016.21
bright 1025.32
splendor
grandeur 501.5
illustriousness 662.6
gorgeousness 1016.6
brightness 1025.4
splice
n joining 800.1
fastening 800.3
v join in marriage 563.14
weave 740.6
put together 800.5
bind 800.9
spline 271.4
splint
n medical dressing 86.33
v treat 91.24
splinter
n scrap 248.3
thinness 270.7
party 617.4
intruder 774.2
piece 793.3
break 802.4
v shatter 802.13
splinter group 617.4
split
n crack 224.2
opening 292.1
falling-out 456.4
stock 738.2
bowling 750.2
break 802.4
blemish 1004.1
v laugh 116.8
depart 188.7
leave 222.10
cleave 224.4
open 292.11
flee 368.11
be damaged 393.23
demolish 395.17
fall out 456.10
apportion 477.6
separate 802.8
sever 802.11
break off 802.12
divide up 802.18
disintegrate 806.3
blemish 1004.4
adj cleft 224.7
impaired 393.27
severed 802.23
halved 875.6
blemished 1004.8
split decision 754.3
split fifty fifty
v double 873.5
adj two 873.6
split hairs
differentiate 780.6
quibble 936.9
discriminate 944.4
split-level 228.5
split off
diverge 171.5
interspace 224.3
dissent 333.4
separate 802.8
split personality 92.20
split second 830.3
split the atom 1038.17
split the difference
average 246.2
compromise 468.2
share 476.6
split ticket 609.19
splotch
n spottiness 47.3
mark 517.5
stain 1004.3
v variegate 47.7
spatter 80.18
mark 517.19
spot 1004.5
splurge
n display 501.4
v cut a dash 501.13
spend 626.5
spoil
n gain 472.3
booty 482.11
v mar 393.10
decay 393.22
bungle 414.11
indulge 427.6
plunder 482.17
thwart 1012.15
offend 1015.5
spoilage decay 393.6
rot 393.7
spoiled brat 302.4
spoiler plunderer 483.6
automobile racing 756.1
spoil for 100.16
spoke radius 171.2
step 193.5
curb 1012.7
spoken
vernacular 523.20
speech 524.29
spoken for 421.10
spokesperson
mediator 466.3
informant 551.5
deputy 576.5
sponge
n washing 79.5
bath 79.8
drunk 88.12
parasite 138.5
absorption 187.6
porousness 292.8
lightness 298.2
marine animal 311.30
eradicator 395.9
pulp 1063.2
v wash 79.19
feed on 138.12
absorb 187.13
obliterate 395.16
freeload 634.4
moisten 1065.12
dry 1066.6
sponge medical 86.33
spongy
absorbent 187.17
porous 292.20
soft 1047.11
pulpy 1063.6
sponsor
n guarantor 438.6
supporter 616.9
financer 729.10
v secure 438.9
patronize 449.15
accept the responsibility 641.9
finance 729.16
spontaneous
voluntary 324.7
unpremeditated 365.11
instinctive 934.6
automated 1041.22
spontaneous combustion 1020.5
spontaneous generation 78.6
spoof
n hoax 356.7

v fool 356.15
spook
n specter 988.1
v frighten 127.15
discompose 811.4
haunt 988.6
spoon ladle 176.17
make love 562.15
spoonerism
wordplay 489.8
word form 526.4
grammatical error 975.7
spoon-feed 449.16
spoor odor 69.1
track 517.8
clue 517.9
hint 551.4
sporadic
not highly contagious 85.62
dispersed 771.9
nonuniform 782.3
unordered 810.12
intermittent 851.3
spore germ 85.42
microspore 305.13
sport
n hunting 382.2
loser 412.5
joke 489.6
banter 490.1
dandy 500.9
fun 743.2
toy 743.16
athletics 744.1
gambler 759.21
misfit 789.4
transformation 852.3
v wear 5.44
hunt 382.9
flaunt 501.17
play 743.23
gamble 759.23
sporting
n hunting 382.2
gambling 759.1
adj fair-minded 649.9
sports 743.30
sporting goods
dry goods 735.3
hard goods 735.4
the sport of kings
racing 457.11
horse racing 757.1
sportscaster 1034.23
sportsman
hunter 382.5
athlete 743.19
gambler 759.21
sportsmanship
competition 457.2
fairness 649.3
sportswear clothing 5.1
dry goods 735.3
sporty
casually dressed 5.47
showy 501.19
spot
n spottiness 47.3
soil 80.5
drink 88.7
location 159.1
modicum 248.2
advertisement 352.6
mark 517.5
stigma 661.6
lights 704.18
bowling 750.1
state 765.1
intruder 774.2
crisis 843.4
stain 1004.3
predicament 1013.5
commercial 1034.20
radar signal 1036.11
v see 27.12
variegate 47.7
soil 80.16
spatter 80.18
locate 159.11
mark 517.19
sprinkle 771.6
detect 941.5
recognize 989.12
bespot 1004.5
use radar 1036.17
spot check 938.6
spotless clean 79.25
honest 644.13
virtuous 653.7
innocent 657.7
chaste 664.4
perfect 1002.6
spotlight
n publicity 352.4
lights 704.18
v manifest 348.5
emphasize 997.14
illuminate 1025.28
spotter
secret agent 576.9
detective 576.11
watchman 1008.10
spotty spotted 47.13
discontinuous 813.4
irregular 851.3
sparse 885.5
spotted 1004.9
spouse 563.6
spout
n outlet 190.9
ascent 193.1
jet 238.9
channel 239.8
rainstorm 316.2
disgorgement 909.7
v run out 190.13
jet 238.20
pledge 438.10
chatter 540.5
declaim 543.10
erupt 671.13
overact 704.31
disgorge 909.25
sprain 393.13
sprawl
n tumble 194.3
recumbency 201.2
oversize 257.5
v rest 20.6
tumble 194.8
lie 201.5
spread 259.6
be long 267.5
spray
n perfume 70.6
jet 238.9
branch 310.20
bouquet 310.25
foam 320.2
volley 459.9
member 793.4
shot 904.4
sprinkle 1065.5
sprinkler 1065.8
vaporizer 1067.6
v jet 238.20
moisten 1065.12
vaporize 1067.8
spray can 1065.8
spread
n meal 8.5
food 10.1
space 158.1
divergence 171.1
transferal 176.1
increase 251.1
size 257.1
expansion 259.1
breadth 269.1
blanket 295.10
publication 352.1
advertisement 352.6
stock option 737.21
dispersion 771.1
caption 937.2
v extend 158.9
diverge 171.5
radiate 171.6
transfer 176.10
grow 251.6
expand 259.6
broaden 269.4
open 292.11
publish 352.10
be published 352.16
report 552.11
disperse 771.4
generalize 864.9
adj recumbent 201.8
increased 251.7
spreading 259.11
published 352.17
dispersed 771.9
spread-eagle
tumble 194.8
fell 913.5
spread far and wide 352.10
spread it on thick
exaggerate 355.3
commend 509.11
spread like wildfire
spread 259.6
be published 352.16
spread oneself too thin
overindulge 669.5
strain 725.10
overdo 993.10
spreadsheet
arranger 808.5
list 871.1
systems program 1042.12
spree
n drinking bout 88.5
revel 743.6
v go on a spree 88.28
make merry 743.24
sprig youngster 302.1
sprout 302.11
branch 310.20
member 793.4
sprightly
cheerful 109.14
active 330.17
agile 413.23
witty 489.15
spring
n progression 162.1
ascent 193.1
resort 228.27
lake 241.1
springtime 313.2
leap 366.1
motive 375.1
source of supply 386.4
group of teal 770.6
fountainhead 886.6
bedding 901.20
recoil 903.2
resilience 1048.1
elastic object 1048.3
v speed 174.8
distort 265.5
leap 366.5
blow up 395.18
exempt 430.14
release 431.5
recoil 903.6
have resilience 1048.5
adj seasonal 313.9
spring a leak 393.23
springboard 1048.3
springbok 311.5
spring fever 331.5
spring for
subsidize 478.19
pay for 624.18
spring from 887.5
spring up grow 14.2
burst forth 33.9
shoot up 193.9
mature 259.7
originate 818.13
turn up 831.6
springy quick 330.18
recoiling 903.10
pliant 1047.9
elastic 1048.7
sprinkle
n rain 316.1
spray 1065.5
v variegate 47.7
rain 316.10
baptize 701.17
spatter 771.6
moisten 1065.12
sprinkler
extinguisher 1022.3
shower 1065.8
sprint
n run 174.3
v speed 174.8
sprinter 174.5
sprite fairy 678.8
imp 680.7

specter 988.1
spritz
n jet 238.9
v jet 238.20
rain 316.10
moisten 1065.12
sprocket 285.4
sprout
n seedling 302.11
branch 310.20
offshoot 561.4
upstart 606.7
v grow 14.2
enlarge 259.7
vegetate 310.34
spruce
v clean 79.18
perfect 392.11
tidy 808.12
adj dressed up 5.46
cleaned 79.26
shapely 264.5
chic 578.13
tidy 807.8
spry active 330.17
quick 330.18
agile 413.23
spud 10.35
spume
n lightness 298.2
foam 320.2
sprinkle 1065.5
v foam 320.5
spunk vim 17.2
sperm 305.11
enterprise 330.7
pluck 359.3
fearlessness 492.4
tinder 1021.6
spur
n mountain 237.6
point of land 283.9
projection 285.4
goad 375.8
offshoot 793.4
v sharpen 285.7
goad 375.15
hasten 401.4
drive 1070.8
spurious
ungenuine 354.26
assumed 500.16
illegitimate 674.7
unauthentic 975.19
spurn
n snub 157.2
v scorn 157.4
reject 372.2
be hard to please 495.8
have nothing to do with 586.5
repulse 908.3
banish 909.17
spur-of-the-moment
extemporaneous 365.12
hasty 401.9
spurt
n run 174.3
ascent 193.1
jet 238.9
bustle 330.4
outburst 671.6
short time 828.3
disgorgement 909.7
v make a dash 174.12
run out 190.13
shoot up 193.9
jet 238.20
make haste 401.5
disgorge 909.25
sputnik 1075.6
sputter
n staccato 55.1
sibilation 57.1
bluster 503.1
flutter 917.4
v drum 55.4
sibilate 57.2
bluster 503.3
mumble 525.9
flutter 917.12
spy
n informer 551.6
secret agent 576.9
v see 27.12
reconnoiter 938.28
detect 941.5
pry 981.4
spy glass 29.4
spy satellite 1075.6
squab 311.28
squabble
n quarrel 456.5
v quarrel 456.11
squad
military unit 461.22
team 617.7
baseball team 745.2
football team 746.2
basketball team 747.2
hockey team 749.2
soccer team 752.2
company 770.3
squad car 179.11
squadron
military unit 461.22
navy 461.27
air force 461.29
squalid sordid 80.25
base 661.12
slovenly 810.15
terrible 1000.9
squall
n cry 59.1
windstorm 318.12
storm 671.4
v cry 59.6
animal sound 60.2
wail 115.13
blow 318.20
speak 524.25
squamous 296.7
squander
consume 388.3
waste 473.5
lavish 486.3
spend 626.5
square
n instrument 200.6
enclosed place 212.3
block 230.7
plaza 230.8
plot 231.4
straightedge 277.3
old-fashioned person 842.8
conformist 867.2
four 879.1
v plumb 200.10
offset 338.5
make restitution 481.5
pay in full 624.13
agree 788.6
equalize 790.6
quadrate 879.3
adj trite 117.9
corpulent 257.18
symmetric 264.4
quadrangular 278.9
straight 644.14
just 649.8
equal 790.7
old-fogyish 842.17
conformist 867.6
exact 973.17
adv perpendicularly 200.14
exactly 973.21
square circle 754.1
square dance
dance 705.2
four 879.1
Square Deal 609.6
square deal 649.3
squared off 779.6
square meal 8.8
square off
offer resistance 453.3
raise one's hand against 457.14
disagree 789.5
square one
beginning 818.1
new start 858.2
revolution 860.1
square peg in a round hole 868.3
square-rigged 180.17
square root 883.4
squash
n sibilation 57.1
mud 1062.8
pulp 1063.2
v silence 51.8
sibilate 57.2
cover up 345.8
extinguish 395.15
suppress 428.8
shatter 802.13
refute 958.5
soften 1047.6
pulverize 1051.9
pulp 1063.5
squat
n nothing 762.3
crouch 913.3
v settle 159.17
inhabit 225.7
lie low 274.5
possess 469.4
crouch 913.8
adj corpulent 257.18
dwarf 258.13
stubby 268.10
low 274.7
squatter settler 227.9
tenant 470.4
newcomer 774.4
squatty
corpulent 257.18
stubby 268.10
low 274.7
squaw woman 77.5
female 77.6
wife 563.8
squawk
n screech 58.4
complaint 115.5
objection 333.2
v screech 58.8
cry 59.6
bird sound 60.5
be discontented 108.6
complain 115.16
object 333.5
speak 524.25
inform on 551.13
squeak
n screech 58.4
v screech 58.8
animal sound 60.2
speak 524.25
squeak by
contact 223.10
scrape through 369.8
squeaky-clean
honest 644.13
chaste 653.7
innocent 657.7
squeal
n blare 53.5
screech 58.4
cry 59.1
v blare 53.10
screech 58.8
cry 59.6
animal sound 60.2
betray 351.6
speak 524.25
inform on 551.13
squealer 551.6
squeamish
nauseated 85.57
demurring 325.7
finicky 495.10
squeeze
n small space 258.3
squeezing 260.2
booty 482.11
embrace 562.3
hindrance 1012.1
predicament 1013.5
v extort 192.15
compress 260.8
close 293.6
misinterpret 342.2
demand 421.5
coerce 424.8
wrest 480.22
embrace 562.18
obstruct 1012.12
densify 1045.9
squeeze box 711.11
squeeze play 745.3
squelch
n sibilation 57.1

refutation 958.2
v silence 51.8
sibilate 57.2
cover up 345.8
extinguish 395.15
suppress 428.8
refute 958.5
squib wit 489.1
burlesque 508.6
lampoon 512.5
squib kick 746.3
squid fish 10.24
snare 356.13
squint
n defective vision 28.5
obliquity 204.1
v look askance 27.18
squinch 28.9
squire
n beau 104.13
proprietor 470.2
attendant 577.5
nobleman 608.4
escort 769.5
v court 562.21
escort 769.8
squirm
n wiggle 917.7
v be excited 105.18
be impatient 135.4
wiggle 917.14
squirrel away
store 386.10
save up 386.11
not use 390.5
squirt
n jet 238.9
disgorgement 909.7
a nobody 998.7
v jet 238.20
disgorge 909.25
squish
n sibilation 57.1
v sibilate 57.2
shatter 802.13
Sr
n mister 76.7
senior 304.5
adj older 842.19
stab
n pang 26.2
trauma 85.38
attempt 403.3
thrust 459.3
guess 951.4
v pain 26.7
aggrieve 96.17
perforate 292.15
injure 393.13
attack 459.25
stability
strength 15.3
staunchness 359.2
perseverance 360.1
moderation 670.1
substantiality 763.1
uniformity 781.1
continuity 812.1
durability 827.1
perpetuity 829.1
permanence 853.1
firmness 855.1
reliability 970.4
stabilize calm 670.7
make uniform 781.4
make firm 855.7
stab in the back
n surprise attack 459.2
betrayal 645.8
v slander 512.11
stable
n sty 80.11
barn 228.20
company 770.3
farm 1070.5
v enclose 212.5
house 225.10
adj firm 15.18
persevering 360.8
faithful 644.20
restrained 670.11
sturdy 763.7
uniform 781.5
continuous 812.8
durable 827.10
permanent 853.7
substantial 855.12
reliable 970.17
unhazardous 1007.5
stableboy 1070.2
staccato
n repeated sounds 55.1
music 708.25
musical execution 708.30
note 709.14
constancy 847.2
pulsation 916.3
adj drumming 55.7
music 708.53
constant 847.5
pulsative 916.18
stack
n chimney 239.14
lot 247.4
store 386.1
storehouse 386.6
bookholder 554.17
pile 770.10
v load 159.15
tamper with 354.17
pile 770.19
stacked deck 965.2
stacks 197.6
stadium hall 197.4
arena 463.1
football 746.1
track 755.1
staff
n stave 273.2
scepter 417.9
council 423.1
faculty 571.9
personnel 577.11
insignia 647.1
pastoral staff 702.3
music 708.29
supporter 901.2
base 901.8
v equip 385.8
stag
n male animal 76.8
hoofed animal 311.5
jumper 366.4
speculator 737.11
v trade 737.23
stage
n setting 209.2
layer 296.1
arena 463.1
theater 704.16
period 824.1
scaffold 901.12
platform 901.13
v dramatize 704.28
staged 245.5
stage fright
fearfulness 127.3
nervousness 128.1
aphasia 525.6
stagehand 704.24
stage lighting 704.18
stage name 527.8
stagger
n gait 177.12
irregularity 851.1
flounder 917.8
v be drunk 88.27
agitate 105.14
astonish 122.6
frighten 127.15
startle 131.8
way of walking 177.28
tumble 194.8
zigzag 204.12
not know one's own mind 362.6
alternate 854.5
flounder 917.15
be unbelievable 955.7
staggering
astonishing 122.12
surprising 131.11
slow 175.10
irregular 851.3
stagnant inert 173.14
passive 329.6
languid 331.20
stagy affected 500.15
theatrical 501.24
dramatic 704.33
staid sedate 106.14
solemn 111.3
unimaginative 987.5
stain
n color 35.8
soil 80.5
mark 517.5
stigma 661.6
taint 1004.3
v color 35.14
soil 80.16
mark 517.19
stigmatize 661.9
bestain 1004.6
stained glass
picture 712.11
light filter 1028.4
stainless
clean 79.25
honest 644.13
innocent 657.7
chaste 664.4
perfect 1002.6
stair step 193.5
degree 245.1
staircase 193.3
stake
n region 231.5
shaft 273.6
collateral 438.3
estate 471.4
portion 477.5
execution 605.5
financing 729.2
bet 759.3
v pledge 438.10
finance 729.16
bet 759.25
stake a claim 421.6
stake out look 27.13
circumscribe 210.4
reconnoiter 938.28
stalactite 295.14
stalagmite 295.14
stale
n urine 12.5
v urinate 12.14
adj insipid 65.2
trite 117.9
tainted 393.41
fusty 842.14
stalemate
n the same 790.3
stop 857.2
impasse 1013.6
v put a stop to 857.11
Stalinist
n Communist 611.13
adj Communist 611.21
stalk
n journey 177.5
gait 177.12
shaft 273.1
stem 310.21
base 901.8
search 938.15
v way of walking 177.28
lurk 346.9
ambush 346.10
hunt 382.9
strut 501.15
trace 938.35
stall
n air 184.13
compartment 197.2
hut 228.9
barn 228.20
church seat 703.14
auditorium 704.15
booth 736.3
procrastination 846.5
v lose power 184.45
fail 410.16
procrastinate 846.11
come to a halt 857.7
hinder 1012.10
stop 1012.13
stallion
male animal 76.8
horse 311.10
jockey 757.2
stalwart
n strong man 15.6
brave person 492.8

partisan 609.27
supporter 616.9
adj strong 15.15
hale 83.12
corpulent 257.18
courageous 492.17
stamen 310.28
stamina strength 15.1
pluck 359.3
perseverance 360.1
fortitude 492.6
continuance 856.1
toughness 1049.1
stammer
n stammering 525.3
v blush 139.8
stutter 525.8
be guilty 656.2
stamp
n form 262.1
ratification 332.4
sign 517.1
imprint 517.7
label 517.13
print 548.3
type 548.6
postage 553.5
engraving tool 713.8
nature 767.4
cast 785.6
mold 786.6
kind 809.3
characteristic 865.4
stomp 902.10
disposition 978.3
v impress upon 93.16
way of walking 177.28
form 262.7
indent 284.14
mark 517.19
label 517.20
print 548.14
fix 855.9
stomp 902.22
fix in the mind 989.18
stamped
formative 262.9
accepted 332.14
engraved 713.11
stampede
n fear 127.1
v be frightened 127.12
put in fear 127.16
hasten 401.4
overwhelm 412.8
stamping ground 231.1
stamp of approval
ratification 332.4
approval 509.1
stamp out
excise 255.10
extinguish 395.15
annihilate 762.7
fight fire 1022.7
stance looks 33.4
affirmation 334.1
gesture 517.14
baseball 745.2
round 751.3
fight 754.3
footing 901.5
opinion 953.6
attitude 978.1
stanch stop 293.7
suppress 428.8
stanchion
post 273.4
base 901.8
stand
n station 159.2
standstill 173.3
growth 310.2
affirmation 334.1
resistance 453.1
engagement 704.11
booth 736.3
stop 857.2
footing 901.5
base 901.8
table 901.15
outlook 978.2
impasse 1013.6
v tolerate 134.5
be located 159.10
settle 159.17
be still 173.7
stand erect 200.7
be present 221.6
resist 453.2
offer resistance 453.3
run for office 609.39
afford 626.7
exist 761.8
endure 827.6
remain 853.5
suffice 991.4
stand a chance
be liable 897.3
be possible 966.4
have a chance 972.13
stand alone 872.6
standard
n degree 245.1
post 273.4
measure 300.2
rule 419.2
flag 647.7
paragon 659.4
model 786.1
norm 869.4
base 901.8
test 942.2
adj medium 246.3
customary 373.13
preceptive 419.4
orthodox 687.7
model 786.8
interchangeable 863.5
prevalent 864.12
usual 869.9
indistinguishable 945.6
authoritative 970.18
standard-bearer
leader 574.6
politics 610.7
standard deviation
mathematical probability 968.2
inaccuracy 975.2
standardize
make uniform 781.4
order 807.4
organize 808.10
normalize 869.6
standard of living 731.8
standard operating procedure
custom 373.4
order 807.1
rule 869.4
stand at attention
pay homage to 155.5
stand 200.7
come to attention 983.14
stand behind
secure 438.9
back 449.13
standby
supporter 616.9
supporting actor 707.7
stand by adjoin 223.9
stay near 223.12
be prepared 405.14
back 449.13
stand down
abandon 370.5
resign 448.2
make peace 465.9
stop 857.7
stop work 857.8
stand fast be still 173.7
confront 216.8
be resolved 359.9
hold one's ground 453.4
stand firm 855.11
stand for tolerate 134.5
sail for 182.35
affirm 334.5
permit 443.10
signify 517.17
designate 517.18
mean 518.8
stand-in deputy 576.1
supporting actor 707.7
successor 817.4
substitute 862.2
standing
n station 159.2
rank 245.2
class 607.1
candidacy 609.10
credit 622.1
prestige 662.4
state 765.1
durability 827.1
permanence 853.1
footing 901.5
adj inert 173.14
standing army 461.23
standing order
law 673.3
rule 869.4
standing ovation 509.2
standing room only
adj full 794.11
phrs all present and accounted for 221.19
stand in the way 1012.12
standoff
n contrariety 779.1
the same 790.3
stop 857.2
even chance 972.7
impasse 1013.6
adj aloof 141.12
reticent 344.10
unsociable 583.6
stand on ceremony 580.6
stand one's ground
hold out 359.9
offer resistance 453.3
resist 453.4
stand fast 855.11
stand one in good stead 387.17
stand opposed 215.4
standout
n superior 249.4
paragon 659.4
celebrity 662.9
adj eminent 247.9
notable 997.19
stand over
supervise 573.10
govern 612.12
postpone 846.9
stand pat
balk 361.7
bet 759.25
be conservative 853.6
stand fast 855.11
standpipe 272.6
standpoint
viewpoint 27.7
station 159.2
outlook 978.2
stand ready 405.14
stand shoulder to shoulder 450.3
standstill
quiescence 173.3
stop 857.2
impasse 1013.6
stand together
cooperate 450.3
agree 788.6
league 805.4
stand to reason 935.17
stand trial 598.19
stand up
not weaken 15.10
ascend 193.8
stand 200.7
rise 200.8
stay with it 360.4
resist 453.2
stand the test 942.10
be true 973.8
suffice 991.4
stand-up comedian
humorist 489.12
comedian 707.9
stand up for
secure 438.9
defend 600.10
stand up to
confront 216.8
offer resistance 453.3
brave 492.11
meet an obligation 641.11
Stanley Cup 749.1
stanza
musical passage 708.24
poetry 720.9
fight 754.3
staphylococcus 85.42

staple
n source of supply 386.4
commodity 735.2
marketplace 736.2
materials 1054.1
v fasten 800.8
adj fixed 855.14
star
n superior 249.4
successful person 409.6
skillful person 413.14
decoration 646.5
military insignia 647.5
celebrity 662.9
movie star 706.4
lead 707.6
chief 997.10
first-rater 999.6
heavenly body 1072.8
v rule 249.11
dramatize 704.28
act 704.29
matter 997.12
emphasize 997.14
feature 997.15
adj chief 249.14
starboard
n right side 219.1
adj right 219.4
adv rightward 219.7
starch
n carbohydrate 7.5
energy 17.3
semiliquid 1062.5
v stiffen 1046.9
adj prim 580.9
stardom
great success 409.3
distinction 662.5
notability 997.2
stare
n gaze 27.5
v gaze 27.15
wonder 122.5
be curious 981.3
stare down gaze 27.15
defy 454.3
outbrave 492.12
stargaze 985.9
stark
adj downright 247.12
mere 248.8
inornate 499.9
plain-speaking 535.3
simple 798.6
adv absolutely 794.15
stark-naked 6.14
stark-raving mad 926.30
starlet
movie actress 706.4
entertainer 707.4
starlight 1025.12
star of David 882.2
starring 704.10
starry-eyed
happy 95.16
visionary 986.24
Stars and Stripes 647.7
Star-Spangled Banner 647.7
start
n shock 131.3
starting 188.2
point of departure 188.5
boundary 211.3
advantage 249.2
auto race 756.3
horse race 757.3
beginning 818.1
jerk 905.3
v startle 127.12
be startled 131.5
set out 188.8
leap 366.5
hunt 382.9
break 393.23
propose 439.5
drive 756.4
race 757.5
come apart 802.9
begin 818.7
set in motion 904.13
start all over 856.6
starter
baseball team 745.2
light source 1026.1
the starting gun 188.2
starting line
point of departure 188.5
boundary 211.3
startle
astonish 122.6
start 127.12
frighten 127.15
be startled 131.5
shock 131.8
alarm 400.3
start the ball rolling
begin 818.7
inaugurate 818.11
set in motion 904.13
start up
burst forth 33.9
shoot up 193.9
protrude 283.10
leap 366.5
begin 818.7
make a beginning 818.8
inaugurate 818.11
set in motion 904.13
starvation diet 515.2
starvation wages 992.5
starve hunger 100.19
die 307.24
kill 308.13
stint 484.5
be poor 619.5
Star Wars 460.2
starwatching 1072.19
star worship 697.1
stash
n hiding place 346.4
v secrete 346.7
store 386.10
stasis inertness 173.4
inaction 329.1
permanence 853.1
stat
n print 785.5
v copy 785.8
state
n region 231.5
country 232.1
grandeur 501.5
pomp 501.6
mode 765.1
v affirm 334.5
announce 352.12
declare 524.23
phrase 532.4
specify 865.11
assert 953.12
adj public 312.16
state assembly 613.1
stated
circumscribed 210.6
affirmed 334.9
published 352.17
fixed 855.14
conditional 959.8
assured 970.20
stately
dignified 136.12
grandiose 501.21
lofty 544.14
ceremonious 580.8
statement
affirmation 334.1
account 349.3
announcement 352.2
remark 524.3
report 549.7
information 551.1
declaration 598.7
bill 628.3
passage 708.24
list 871.5
premise 935.7
testimony 957.2
summation 1017.11
state of affairs 831.4
state of emergency 843.4
state of grace 685.3
state of mind 978.4
state-of-the-art 841.14
state one's case 957.9
state park 397.7
state police 1008.17
state prison 429.8
stateroom cabin 197.9
room on train 197.10
state secret 345.5
state's evidence 351.2
states' rights 609.4
stateside 232.3
statesman
expert 413.11
politician 610.2
state-wide 864.14
static
n audio distortion 50.13
meaninglessness 520.1
pandemonium 810.5
reception 1034.21
adj motionless 173.13
inert 173.14
passive 329.6
inactive 331.17
permanent 853.7
electric 1032.30
biostatic 1039.8
station
n status 159.2
rank 245.2
class 607.1
prestige 662.4
position 724.5
state 765.1
category 809.2
farm 1070.5
v place 159.12
stationary
motionless 173.13
passive 329.6
inactive 331.17
permanent 853.7
immovable 855.15
stationed 159.18
stationery
handwriting style 547.4
paper 1054.5
statistical
probable 968.6
numerative 1017.24
statistician
calculator 1017.15
mathematician 1017.16
statistics
baseball 745.4
football 746.4
horse racing records 757.4
mathematical probability 968.2
figures 1017.14
statuary
n sculptor 716.6
adj sculptural 715.6
statue figure 349.6
work of art 712.10
sculpture 715.2
statuesque
dignified 136.12
giant 272.16
sculptural 715.6
comely 1016.19
stature height 272.1
authority 417.4
prestige 662.4
status station 159.2
rank 245.2
class 607.1
prestige 662.4
state 765.1
category 809.2
status quo state 765.1
circumstances 766.2
statute
prohibition 444.1
law 673.3
statutory
preceptive 419.4
legal 673.11
staunch solid 15.18
close 293.12
firm 359.12
devoted 587.21
faithful 644.20
strict 687.8
reliable 970.17
stave step 193.5
staff 273.2
musical staff 708.29
poetry 720.9
supporter 901.2
wood 1054.3

stave in 292.14
stave off
fend off 460.10
prevent 1012.14
stay
n corset 5.23
respite 20.2
sojourn 225.5
exemption 601.2
delay 846.2
stop 857.2
pause 857.3
supporter 901.2
prevention 1012.2
curb 1012.7
v be still 173.7
slow 175.9
inhabit 225.7
sojourn 225.8
stop 293.7
cohere 803.6
endure 827.6
delay 846.8
postpone 846.9
wait 846.12
remain 853.5
continue 856.3
cease 857.6
put a stop to 857.11
support 901.21
prevent 1012.13
stay-at-home
n recluse 584.5
adj untraveled 173.15
recluse 584.10
staying
n habitation 225.1
prevention 1012.2
adj resident 225.13
durable 827.10
permanent 853.7
continuing 856.7
staying power
strength 15.1
perseverance 360.1
continuance 856.1
stay of execution 846.2
stay on endure 827.6
continue 856.3
stay over 225.8
stay put be still 173.7
cohere 803.6
stand fast 855.11
stay the course
stay with it 360.4
endure 827.6
stand fast 855.11
stay with it
hold on 360.4
continue 856.3
stead location 159.1
place 159.4
steadfast firm 359.12
persevering 360.8
devoted 587.21
faithful 644.20
uniform 781.5
durable 827.10
permanent 853.7
stable 855.12
reliable 970.17
steady
n lover 104.12
v calm 670.7
stabilize 855.7
adj inexcitable 106.10
unnervous 129.2
firm 359.12
persevering 360.8
faithful 644.20
sturdy 763.7
uniform 781.5
orderly 807.6
continuous 812.8
perpetual 829.7
constant 847.5
periodic 850.7
stable 855.12
continuing 856.7
reliable 970.17
unhazardous 1007.5
steady state
continuity 812.1
stability 855.1
automation 1041.9
steak 10.18
steakhouse 8.17
steal
n bargain 633.3
basketball game 747.3
v creep 177.26
lurk 346.9
thieve 482.13
adopt 621.4
play 747.4
take 480.13
steal away 368.12
steal one's thunder 1012.15
stealth secrecy 345.4
cunning 415.1
steal the show 704.29
stealthy covert 345.12
in hiding 346.14
cunning 415.12
steam
n energy 17.3
power 18.1
hot water 1019.10
water 1065.3
vapor 1067.1
v cook 11.5
be angry 152.15
make angry 152.23
navigate 182.13
let out 909.24
be hot 1019.22
heat 1020.17
vaporize 1067.8
steamboat
n steamer 180.2
v navigate 182.13
steam-clean 79.18
steamed up 105.20
steamer
steamboat 180.2
marine animal 311.30
steamroller
n force 424.2
pulverizer 1051.7
v level 201.6
raze 395.19
defeat 412.9
coerce 424.8
thrust 902.12
adj coercive 424.12
steamy
lustful 75.27
fervent 93.18
heated 105.22
vaporous 1067.9
steed 311.10
steel
n symbol of strength 15.8
sword 462.5
cutlery 1040.2
hardness 1046.6
v strengthen 15.13
make unfeeling 94.6
harden 1046.7
adj firm 425.7
metal 1058.17
steel mill 739.4
steel oneself
harden one's heart 114.3
be determined 359.8
get up nerve 492.13
steely strong 15.15
gray 39.4
callous 94.12
pitiless 146.3
firm 359.12
unyielding 361.9
strict 425.7
sturdy 763.7
hard 1046.10
like steel 1058.17
steep
n precipice 200.3
slope 237.2
v extract 192.16
imbue 797.11
liquefy 1064.5
soak 1065.13
adj perpendicular 200.12
precipitous 204.18
expensive 632.11
excessive 993.16
difficult 1013.17
steeple tower 272.6
projection 285.4
steeplechase
n leap 366.1
leaping 366.3
v leap 366.5
steer
n sexlessness 75.9
male animal 76.8
cattle 311.6
tip 551.3
v direct to 161.6
take direction 161.7
pilot 182.14
guide 573.9
steerage 182.4
steer clear of
snub 157.7
turn aside 164.6
keep one's distance 261.7
avoid 368.6
have nothing to do with 586.5
steering wheel 573.5
stellar chief 249.14
theatrical 704.33
celestial 1072.25
St Elmo's fire
fire 1019.13
luminescence 1025.13
stem
n fork 171.4
prow 216.3
tube 239.6
shaft 273.1
stalk 310.21
morphology 526.3
type 548.6
lineage 560.4
source 886.5
base 901.8
v progress 162.2
fork 171.7
confront 216.8
contend against 451.4
put a stop to 857.11
stemware 1029.2
stench
n odor 69.1
stink 71.1
v stop 293.7
stencil
n printing 548.1
picture 712.11
graphic art 713.4
v portray 712.19
stenographer
shorthand writer 547.17
recorder 550.1
stentorian
loud-voiced 53.12
vociferous 59.10
step
n velocity 172.4
pace 177.11
gait 177.12
stair 193.5
short distance 223.2
degree 245.1
layer 296.1
act 328.3
attempt 403.2
footprint 517.7
interval 709.20
process 889.2
expedient 995.2
v speed 174.9
walk 177.27
measure 300.10
step aside
turn aside 164.6
dodge 368.8
resign 448.2
separate 802.8
stepbrother
extended family 559.3
stepparent's son 564.3
step by step
by degrees 245.6
in order 807.10
consecutively 812.11
step down
reduce 252.7
reduce electric current 1032.26
step forward
progress 162.2

volunteer 439.10
step in enter 189.7
mediate 466.6
step into the breach
be willing 324.3
volunteer 439.10
mediate 466.6
stepladder 193.4
step lively speed 174.9
hustle 330.13
step off
measure off 300.11
die 307.20
step on it! 401.17
step on one's toes
cause resentment 152.21
offend 156.5
step out 743.24
step out of line
disobey 327.6
go wrong 654.9
misbelieve 688.8
steppe open space 158.4
horizontal 201.3
plain 236.1
grassland 310.8
stepped-up
aggravated 119.4
increased 251.7
step up
n promotion 446.1
v aggravate 119.2
approach 167.3
accelerate 174.10
intensify 251.5
make good 409.10
electrify 1032.26
stereophonic system 50.11
stereoscopic
optical 29.10
spatial 158.10
stereotype
n habit 373.3
printing surface 548.8
v autotype 548.15
make uniform 781.4
fix 855.9
generalize 864.9
sterile ineffective 19.15
sanitary 79.27
dull 117.6
fruitless 391.12
unproductive 891.4
sterling
n money 728.1
adj honest 644.13
monetary 728.30
genuine 973.15
superb 999.15
stern
n rear 217.1
buttocks 217.5
heel 217.7
adj harsh 144.24
unyielding 361.9
strict 425.6
steroid 7.7
stet 855.19
stethoscope 48.8
stevedore carrier 176.7
longshoreman 183.9
stew
n food 10.11
drunk 88.12
dither 105.6
anxiety 126.1
impatience 135.1
dudgeon 152.7
flight attendant 185.4
bustle 330.4
hostess 577.5
brothel 665.9
prostitute 665.16
hodgepodge 797.6
bewilderment 971.3
confusion 985.3
predicament 1013.5
v cook 11.5
intoxicate 88.23
feel anxious 126.6
be impatient 135.4
show resentment 152.14
be angry 152.15
seethe 671.12
be hot 1019.22
boil 1020.20
steward
n ship's crew 183.6
flight attendant 185.4
provider 385.6
bailiff 574.4
agent 576.3
attendant 577.5
major-domo 577.10
treasurer 729.12
jockey 757.2
guardian 1008.6
v treat 387.12
stewardess
ship's crew 183.6
flight attendant 185.4
attendant 577.5
stew over 931.9
stick
n marijuana cigarette 87.12
spar 180.13
slim 270.8
pole 273.1
staff 273.2
punishment 605.2
baton 711.22
field hockey 749.4
supporter 901.2
wood 1054.3
dryness 1066.2
v endure 134.6
place 159.12
be still 173.7
come to a point 285.6
perforate 292.15
deceive 356.19
remain firm 359.9
persevere 360.7
injure 393.13
stall 410.16
resist 453.4
stab 459.25
overprice 632.7
fasten 800.8
cohere 803.6
stabilize 855.7
fix 855.10
stop 857.7
stump 971.14
stick around 846.12
stick by 449.13
sticker thorn 285.5
label 517.13
enigma 522.8
price 630.1
adhesive 803.4
stick in
insert 191.3
interpose 213.6
stick in one's throat 98.11
stick-in-the-mud
n slowpoke 175.5
idler 331.8
conservative 853.4
adj untraveled 173.15
stick it out
endure 134.6
persevere 360.7
resist 453.4
keep up one's courage 492.15
stand fast 855.11
persist 856.5
stickler
obstinate person 361.6
perfectionist 495.6
tyrant 575.14
stick like glue 803.8
stick one's foot in it
bungle 414.12
make a boner 975.15
stick one's head in the sand
984.2
stick out like a sore thumb
show 31.4
be manifest 348.7
the sticks
the country 233.1
remote region 261.4
stick together
put together 800.5
cohere 803.6
cement 803.9
be true 973.8
stick to it
persevere 360.7
persist 856.5
stick to one's guns
remain firm 359.9
stay with it 360.4
balk 361.7
resist 453.4
keep up one's courage 492.15
stand fast 855.11
stick up rise 200.8
protrude 283.10
rob 482.16
elevate 912.5
stick up for
back 449.13
defend 600.10
stick with it
remain firm 359.9
persevere 360.7
be conservative 853.6
persist 856.5
sticky sweaty 12.22
sentimental 93.21
adhesive 803.12
difficult 1013.17
sultry 1019.28
viscous 1062.12
moist 1065.15
stiff
n vagabond 178.3
corpse 307.16
horse 311.12
bum 331.9
proletarian 607.9
wretch 660.2
laborer 726.2
blackjack 759.11
v mistreat 389.6
adj dull 117.6
seaworthy 180.18
stone-dead 307.31
unyielding 361.9
out of practice 414.18
bungling 414.20
strict 425.7
stilted 534.3
formal 580.9
expensive 632.11
excessive 993.16
rigid 1046.11
tough 1049.4
adv firmly 425.9
stifle silence 51.8
control feelings 106.8
strangle 308.19
cover up 345.8
extinguish 395.15
suppress 428.8
moderate 670.6
obstruct 1012.12
be hot 1019.22
fight fire 1022.7
stigma sore 85.37
flower 310.28
mark 517.5
disrepute 661.6
stain 1004.3
stigmatize
variegate 47.7
vilify 512.10
designate 517.18
mark 517.19
brand 661.9
stain 1004.6
stile stairs 193.3
post 273.4
stiletto 459.25
still
n silence 51.1
distillery 88.21
photograph 714.3
vaporizer 1067.6
v silence 51.8
calm 670.7
adj silent 51.10
quiescent 173.12
motionless 173.13
dead 307.30
adv quiescently 173.18
notwithstanding
338.8
until now 838.4
stillborn born 1.4
dead 307.30
unsuccessful 410.18

still life
  work of art 712.10
  picture 712.11
still photograph 714.3
stilt 270.8
stimulant
  n energizer 17.6
  tonic 86.9
  drug 87.3
  adj provocative 375.27
stimulate refresh 9.2
  energize 17.10
  sensitize 24.7
  whet 105.13
  elicit 192.14
  motivate 375.12
  interest 983.12
stimulus energizer 17.6
  excitation 105.11
  incentive 375.7
  cause 886.1
sting
  n acrimony 17.5
  pain 26.3
  tingle 74.1
  point 285.3
  deception 356.9
  goad 375.8
  cheating 759.13
  stinger 1001.5
  v pain 26.7
  bite 68.5
  tingle 74.5
  affect 93.14
  aggressive 96.17
  offend 152.21
  be sharp 285.6
  deceive 356.19
  goad 375.15
  overprice 632.7
stingy illiberal 484.9
  ungenerous 651.6
  sparse 885.5
  meager 992.10
stink
  n odor 69.1
  stench 71.1
  v have an odor 69.6
  smell 71.4
stinker stinkard 71.3
  cigar 89.4
  bad person 660.5
stint
  n degree 245.1
  restriction 428.3
  task 724.2
  shift 825.3
  v limit 210.5
  restrict 428.9
  scrimp 484.5
stipend subsidy 478.8
  fee 624.5
stipple
  n spottiness 47.3
  engraving 713.2
  v color 35.14
  variegate 47.7
  engrave 713.9
stipulate fight for 421.7
  contract 437.5
  specify 865.11
  suppose 951.10
  make conditional 959.4
stir
  n excitement 105.4
  motion 172.1
  activity 330.1
  bustle 330.4
  jail 429.9
  commotion 810.4
  agitation 917.1
  v awake 23.4
  sensitize 24.7
  affect 93.14
  excite 105.12
  perturb 105.14
  move 172.5
  be active 330.11
  bustle 330.12
  rouse 375.19
  seethe 671.12
  be turbulent 915.12
  agitate 917.10
stir-fry 11.5
stirrup ear 2.10
  saddle parts 901.18
stir up excite 105.12
  provoke 152.24
  incite 375.17
  rouse 375.19
  mix 797.10
  agitate 917.10
stir up a hornet's nest
    1013.14
stitch
  n pang 26.2
  scrap 248.3
  piece 793.3
  joint 800.4
  v sew 741.4
  fasten 800.8
a stitch in time 845.1
stock
  n stem 310.21
  animal life 311.1
  humankind 312.1
  means 384.2
  store 386.1
  assets 471.7
  portion 477.5
  laughingstock 508.7
  race 559.4
  lineage 560.4
  show business 704.1
  repertoire 704.9
  merchandise 735.1
  shares 738.2
  source 886.5
  belief 953.1
  materials 1054.1
  paper 1054.5
  mineral deposit 1058.7
  v provide 385.7
  gather materials 1054.7
  adj trite 117.9
  customary 373.13
  usual 869.9
stockade 429.8
stockbroker
  broker 730.9
  sharebroker 737.10
stock dividend 738.7
stock exchange
  exchange 737.7
  workplace 739.1
stockholder 737.14
stockings 5.28
stock in trade
  means 384.2
  supply 386.2
stock market
  the market 737.1
  stock exchange 737.7
stockpile
  n store 386.1
  reserve 386.3
  accumulation 770.9
  v store up 386.11
stocks and bonds
  securities 738.1
  guarantee 438.1
stock up
  store up 386.11
  gather materials 1054.7
stocky
  corpulent 257.18
  stubby 268.10
stodgy dull 117.6
  old-fogyish 842.17
  viscous 1062.12
stogie 89.4
stoic
  n Spartan 134.3
  adj apathetic 94.13
  inexcitable 106.10
  patient 134.9
  quiescent 173.12
  stable 855.12
stoke ignite 1020.22
  fuel 1021.8
stolen 482.23
stolid
  inexcitable 106.10
  quiescent 173.12
  stable 855.12
  incurious 982.3
  unimaginative 987.5
stoma 292.1
stomach
  n digestive system 2.18
  taste 62.1
  appetite 100.7
  v endure 134.8
  permit 443.10
stomachache 26.5
stomp
  n stamp 902.10
  v way of walking 177.28
  stamp 902.22
stone
  n fruit seed 310.31
  pavement 383.6
  missile 462.18
  jewel 498.6
  monument 549.12
  lithographic plate 713.6
  hardness 1046.6
  building material 1054.2
  rock 1059.1
  v intoxicate 88.23
  cover face 295.23
  strike dead 308.18
  pelt 459.27
  execute 604.17
  adj rock 1059.11
stone-cold
  stone-dead 307.31
  cold 1023.14
stoned
  unconscious 25.8
  high 87.24
  drunk 88.33
stone's throw 223.2
stonewall be silent 51.6
  outwit 415.11
  delay 846.8
  hinder 1012.10
stony callous 94.12
  rugged 288.7
  without money 619.10
  hard 1046.10
  rocky 1059.12
stooge
  n flatterer 138.4
  follower 166.2
  dupe 358.1
  instrument 384.4
  loser 412.5
  figurehead 575.5
  retainer 577.1
  flunky 616.8
  actor 707.2
  v act 704.29
stool
  n defecation 12.2
  feces 12.4
  toilet 12.11
  v defecate 12.13
  betray 351.6
  inform on 551.13
stool pigeon shill 357.5
  informer 551.6
stoop
  n descent 194.1
  porch 197.21
  plunge 367.1
  crouch 913.3
  v humble oneself 137.8
  fawn 138.7
  condescend 141.8
  descend 194.5
  plunge 367.6
  bow down 433.10
  incur disgrace 661.7
  crouch 913.8
stop
  n standstill 173.3
  destination 186.5
  sojourn 225.5
  obstruction 293.3
  stopper 293.4
  speech sound 524.12
  punctuation 530.15
  delay 846.2
  stoppage 857.2
  prevention 1012.2
  curb 1012.7
  impasse 1013.6
  v muffle 51.9
  daunt 127.18
  quiet 173.8
  sojourn 225.8
  stop up 293.7
  be vigilant 339.8

disaccustom 374.2
break the habit 374.3
cease to use 390.4
fend off 460.10
swear off 668.8
end 820.5
delay 846.8
cease 857.6
come to a halt 857.7
put a stop to 857.11
stay 1012.13
stop at nothing 359.10
stopgap
n stopper 293.4
improvisation 365.5
expedient 995.2
adj extemporaneous 365.12
substitute 862.8
makeshift 995.7
stop in one's tracks
daunt 127.18
strike dead 308.18
stop 857.7
shoot 904.12
stop it! 857.13
stop light signal 517.15
traffic light 1026.4
stopoff 225.5
stop over sojourn 225.8
visit 582.19
stoppage seizure 85.6
obstruction 293.3
end 820.1
delay 846.2
cessation 857.2
prevention 1012.2
stopped
stopped up 293.11
phonetic 524.30
late 846.16
stopper
n plug 293.4
cover 295.5
baseball team 745.2
finishing stroke 820.4
v stop up 293.7
top 295.21
stop the clock 853.6
storage
placement 159.6
stowage 386.5
storehouse 386.6
fee 630.6
computer memory 1042.7
store
n provisions 10.5
supply 386.2
hoard 386.1
storehouse 386.6
preserve 397.7
gain 472.3
market 736.1
workplace 739.1
casino 759.19
belief 953.1
materials 1054.1
v load 159.15
provide 385.7
stow 386.10
put away 390.6
gather materials 1054.7
store-bought
tailored 5.48
bought 733.11
storekeeper
provider 385.6
merchant 730.2
the stork 1.1
storm
n frenzy 105.9
fit of anger 152.9
windstorm 318.12
attack 459.6
tempest 671.4
v be excitable 105.16
be angry 152.15
blow 318.20
raid 459.20
bluster 503.3
rage 671.11
cause trouble 1013.14
storm cellar
cellar 197.17
shelter 1009.3
storm clouds
omen 133.6
danger 1006.1
storm troops
elite troops 461.15
army 461.23
storm watch or warning 317.7
stormy
passionate 105.29
tempestuous 318.23
cloudy 319.8
turbulent 671.18
gloomy 1027.14
story
n floor 197.23
layer 296.1
lie 354.11
joke 489.6
record 549.1
news item 552.3
gossip 552.7
history 719.1
tale 719.3
work of fiction 722.3
plot 722.4
v lie 354.19
storybook
n book 554.1
adj visionary 986.24
storyteller
liar 357.9
author 547.15
narrator 718.4
yarn spinner 722.5
stout strong 15.15
firm 15.18
hale 83.12
corpulent 257.18
courageous 492.17
sturdy 763.7
stouthearted 492.17
stove kiln 742.5
heater 1020.10
stove in 292.14
stovepipe 239.14
stow load 159.15
store 386.10
put away 390.6
stowaway 774.4
stow away
secrete 346.7
store 386.10
straddle
n stock option 737.21
v extend 158.9
way of walking 177.28
rest on 901.22
pass 910.8
adv on 901.25
straddle the fence
n be a timeserver 363.9
v hesitate 362.7
remain neutral 467.5
Stradivarius 711.5
strafe 459.22
straggle stray 164.4
lag 166.4
wander 177.23
way of walking 177.28
be behind 217.8
be long 267.5
straggler 178.2
straight
n heterosexual 75.13
straight line 277.2
adj directional 161.12
straight-lined 277.6
sober 516.3
aboveboard 644.14
candid 644.17
trustworthy 644.19
virtuous 653.6
thorough 794.10
unmixed 798.7
continuous 812.8
conformist 867.6
unconditional 960.2
accurate 973.16
adv directly 161.23
straightly 277.7
accurately 973.20
exactly 973.21
the straight and narrow 653.1
straight arrow 644.8
straightaway
n straight line 277.2
racetrack 756.3
adj directional 161.12
adv at once 830.8
promptly 845.15
straightedge 277.3
straight face
unfeeling 94.1
solemnity 111.1
unastonishment 123.1
reticence 344.3
unexpressiveness 522.5
straightforward
adj directional 161.12
natural 499.7
clear 521.11
elegant 533.6
plain-speaking 535.3
candid 644.17
uncomplicated 798.8
easy 1014.13
adv directly 161.23
straight man 707.2
strain
n fatigue 21.1
anxiety 126.1
tension 128.3
humankind 312.1
endeavor 403.1
style 532.2
race 559.4
lineage 560.4
enmity 589.1
melody 708.4
musical passage 708.24
poetry 720.9
exertion 725.2
class 809.2
kind 809.3
pull 905.2
disposition 978.3
overdoing 993.6
overextension 993.7
stretching 1048.2
v refine 79.22
exude 190.15
pervert 265.6
demur 325.4
falsify 354.16
injure 393.13
endeavor 403.5
tax oneself 725.10
overextend 993.13
strained anxious 126.7
tense 128.13
falsified 265.11
unfriendly 589.9
laborious 725.18
farfetched 776.8
strainer refinery 79.13
porousness 292.8
strain one's credulity
be unbelievable 955.7
be improbable 969.2
strait
n inlet 242.1
narrow place 270.3
crisis 843.4
danger 1006.1
predicament 1013.4
adj limited 210.7
narrow 270.14
straitlaced 425.7
strand
n shore 234.2
filament 271.1
v shipwreck 182.42
stranded stuck 855.16
grounded 1013.27
strange
wonderful 122.10
extraneous 774.5
unrelated 776.6
novel 841.11
odd 870.11
insane 926.26
eccentric 927.5
unknown 930.17
stranger outsider 773.3
alien 774.3
strangle disable 19.10
contract 260.7
close 293.6
die 307.24

  garrote 308.19
  extinguish 395.15
  suppress 428.8
  execute 604.17
  obstruct 1012.12
stranglehold
  shackle 428.4
  wrestling 474.3
  hindrance 1012.1
strangler killer 308.11
  executioner 604.8
strap
  n strip 271.4
  whip 605.1
  stock option 737.21
  v bandage 91.24
  sharpen 285.7
  restrain 428.10
  whip 604.13
  bind 800.9
straphanger 178.1
strapless 6.13
strapped limited 210.7
  bound 428.16
  poor 619.7
  without money 619.10
strapping
  n corporal punishment 604.4
  adj strong 15.15
  corpulent 257.18
stratagem trick 356.6
  pretext 376.1
  intrigue 381.5
  artifice 415.3
  expedient 995.2
strategic
  planned 381.12
  cunning 415.12
strategist
  planner 381.6
  tactician 415.7
  politics 610.6
strategy plan 381.1
  stratagem 415.3
  war tactics 458.5
  baseball game 745.3
  football game 746.3
  basketball game 747.3
  tennis game 748.2
  boxing 754.3
stratified
  layered 296.6
  classified 809.8
stratosphere 272.2
stratum layer 296.1
  social status 607.1
  class 809.2
straw
  n feed 10.4
  tube 239.6
  remainder 256.1
  lightness 298.2
  stem 310.21
  trifle 998.5
  adj yellow 43.4
strawberry blond 35.9
strawberry fields 87.10
straw hat 704.1
straw man 500.7
straw poll 371.6
straw that broke the camel's back 886.3
straw vote vote 371.6
  feeler 942.4
stray
  n vagabond 178.3
  v go astray 164.4
  wander 177.23
  digress 538.9
  go wrong 654.9
  misbelieve 688.8
  err 975.9
  be inattentive 984.3
  muse 985.9
  adj deviative 164.7
  abnormal 870.9
  purposeless 972.16
streak
  n stripe 47.5
  swiftness 174.6
  thinness 270.7
  furrow 290.1
  line 517.6
  nature 767.4
  disposition 978.3
  ray 1025.5
  v variegate 47.7
  furrow 290.3
  mark 517.19
streak of luck 1010.3
streaky 47.15
stream
  n course 172.2
  vapor trail 184.30
  waterway 238.1
  flow 238.4
  channel 239.1
  wind 318.1
  procession 812.3
  trend 896.2
  plenty 991.2
  ray 1025.5
  v move 172.5
  travel 177.18
  flow 238.16
  rain 316.10
  come together 770.16
  abound 991.5
stream bed
  stream 238.1
  watercourse 239.2
streamer
  flag 647.7
  caption 937.2
  ray 1025.5
streamline
  n straight line 277.2
  v simplify 798.4
  modernize 841.6
stream of consciousness
  association 92.33
  thoughts 931.4
street 383.5
streetcar 179.17
street fight 457.4
street person
  homeless person 331.10
  poor man 619.4
street-smart 928.16
street urchin 178.3
streetwalker 665.16
streetwise 928.16
strength
  might 15.1
  energy 17.1
  power 18.1
  pungency 68.3
  haleness 83.3
  quantity 244.1
  greatness 247.1
  will power 359.4
  authoritativeness 417.2
  vigor 544.3
  substantiality 763.1
  hardness 1046.1
  toughness 1049.1
strengthen
  nourish 7.17
  invigorate 15.13
  intensify 251.5
  grow 251.6
  add to 253.5
  confirm 957.11
  stiffen 1046.9
  toughen 1049.3
strength of character 359.5
strenuous
  energetic 17.13
  industrious 330.22
  laborious 725.18
  difficult 1013.17
streptococcus 85.42
stress
  n psychological stress 92.17
  distress 96.5
  anxiety 126.1
  tension 128.3
  urge 375.6
  accent 524.10
  meter 720.7
  exertion 725.2
  thrust 902.2
  urgency 997.4
  adversity 1011.1
  v strain 725.10
  thrust 902.12
  emphasize 997.14
stress and strain
  tension 128.3
  strain 725.2
stressed out weakened 16.18
  pained 26.9
stress pattern 524.10
stress test 91.12
stretch
  n range 158.2
  walk 177.10
  distance 261.1
  length 267.1
  strain 725.2
  exercise 725.6
  racetrack 743.11
  period 824.1
  spell 825.1
  term 825.4
  overextension 993.7
  elasticity 1048.1
  extension 1048.2
  v exercise 84.4
  reach 158.9
  expand 259.4
  become larger 259.5
  be long 267.5
  lengthen 267.6
  exaggerate 355.3
  hang 604.18
  strain 725.10
  suffice 991.4
  overextend 993.13
  extend 1048.4
  adj elastic 1048.7
stretcher 901.19
stretcher-bearer 176.7
stretch limo 179.13
stretch of the imagination 986.5
stretch one's luck 493.6
stretch the legs 177.29
stretch the truth
  lie 354.19
  exaggerate 355.3
stretchy sleepy 22.21
  elastic 1048.7
strewn 771.9
striation stripe 47.5
  furrow 290.1
  line 517.6
stricken affected 93.23
  wretched 96.26
  overcome 112.29
  unnerved 128.14
strict
  meticulous 339.12
  imperious 417.16
  exacting 425.6
  fastidious 495.9
  conscientious 644.15
  orthodox 687.8
  precise 973.17
strict interpretation 687.5
strictly on the up-and-up 973.13
strictly speaking
  truly 973.18
  to be exact 973.22
stricture
  contraction 260.1
  narrowing 270.2
  censure 510.3
  criticism 510.4
  hindrance 1012.1
stride
  n velocity 172.4
  step 177.11
  gait 177.12
  distance 261.1
  jazz 708.9
  v walk 177.27
  way of walking 177.28
  straddle 901.22
strident
  acrimonious 17.14
  stridulant 58.12
  dissonant 61.4
strife quarrel 456.5
  contention 457.1
strike
  n revolt 327.4
  objection 333.2
  score 409.5
  attack 459.1
  walkout 727.5
  baseball 745.3

bowling 750.2
stop 857.2
discovery 941.1
v impress 93.15
delete 255.12
revolt 327.7
object 333.5
attack 459.14
advance against 459.17
print 548.14
slap 604.12
go on strike 727.10
stop work 857.8
collide 902.13
hit 902.14
shoot 904.12
occur to 931.18
impress 931.19
discover 941.2
strike a balance
average 246.2
weigh 297.10
be neutral 467.6
compromise 468.2
pay in full 624.13
keep accounts 628.8
be moderate 670.5
equalize 790.6
strike a bargain
sign 437.7
compromise 468.2
make a deal 731.19
strike a blow 328.5
strike a pose 500.13
strike a sour note 61.3
strike back 506.4
strikebreaker
apostate 363.5
scab 727.8
strike dead
astonish 122.6
fell 308.18
strike down
put an end to 395.12
repeal 445.2
strike it rich
grow rich 618.10
be fortunate 1010.11
strike oil 1010.11
strike one as 33.10
strike one's colors 433.8
strike one's fancy
please 95.6
enamor 104.23
strikeout 745.3
strike out set out 188.8
delete 255.12
obliterate 395.16
fail 410.10
baseball 745.5
eliminate 773.5
originate 892.12
strike out at
lash out at 459.16
criticize 510.14
strike out for 161.9
strike terror into 127.17
strike the first blow 457.14
strike up 708.37
strike up a conversation 541.9
strike up a tune 708.37
strike up the band 708.37
strike while the iron is hot 843.8
striking
n deletion 255.5
coining 728.24
adj powerful 18.12
exciting 105.30
wonderful 122.10
remarkable 247.10
conspicuous 348.12
eloquent 544.11
notable 997.19
striking resemblance 784.4
string
n swimwear 5.29
step 193.5
line 267.3
cord 271.2
utterance 524.2
team 617.7
violin family 711.5
chord 711.20
bowling 750.2
company 770.3
part of writing 793.2
series 812.2
procession 812.3
condition 959.2
v tune 708.36
continue 812.4
string along
follow 166.3
deceive 356.14
flatter 511.6
stringent
acrimonious 17.14
harsh 144.24
strict 425.6
stringer 555.4
string musician 710.5
string out
lengthen 267.6
protract 538.8
align 812.5
postpone 846.9
sustain 856.4
strings
proviso 421.3
orchestra 710.12
stringed instrument 711.2
backstairs influence 894.3
string up 604.18
stringy
threadlike 271.7
tough 1049.4
viscous 1062.12
strip
n runway 184.23
a length 267.2
line 267.3
strap 271.4
stripe 517.6
stock option 737.21
horse racing 757.1
v divest 6.5
undress 6.7
peel 6.8
excise 255.10
strip clean 480.24
simplify 798.4
tear apart 802.14
dismiss 909.19
stripe
n streak 47.5
line 267.3
slash 517.6
corporal punishment 604.4
military insignia 647.5
nature 767.4
kind 809.3
slap 902.8
disposition 978.3
v variegate 47.7
mark 517.19
whip 604.13
striped streaked 47.15
netlike 170.11
strip mining 1058.8
stripper nudity 6.3
dancer 705.3
entertainer 707.1
separator 802.7
strip-search 6.5
strive endeavor 403.5
contend 457.13
struggle 725.11
strobe light 1025.7
stroke
n touch 73.1
seizure 85.6
paralysis 85.27
pain 96.5
act 328.3
attempt 403.2
stratagem 415.3
compliment 509.6
line 517.6
upheaval 671.5
work 725.4
tennis 748.2
hockey 749.6
golf swing 751.3
instant 830.3
hit 902.4
spasm 917.6
expedient 995.2
v pet 73.8
delight 95.11
encourage 375.21
exploit 387.16
flatter 511.6
rub 1044.6
stroke of luck 1010.3
stroll
n slow motion 175.2
walk 177.10
gait 177.12
v go slowly 175.6
wander 177.23
way of walking 177.28
stroller wanderer 178.2
baby carriage 179.6
actor 707.2
strong forceful 15.15
energetic 17.13
powerful 18.12
pungent 68.8
strong-smelling 69.10
malodorous 71.5
hale 83.12
alcoholic 88.37
great 247.6
tainted 393.41
accented 524.30
eloquent 544.11
sturdy 763.7
influential 894.13
tough 1049.4
strong-arm
v exert strength 15.12
coerce 424.8
adj coercive 424.12
strongbox
storehouse 386.6
treasury 729.13
stronghold
fortification 460.6
refuge 1009.1
strong language
cursing 513.3
vigor 544.3
strong-minded
strong-willed 359.15
intelligent 920.12
strong point
talent 413.4
stronghold 460.6
specialty 866.1
good reasoning 935.10
strop
n strip 271.4
v sharpen 285.7
struck down 445.3
structural
formal 266.6
semantic 518.12
linguistic 523.19
grammatical 530.17
organizational 808.15
constructional 892.15
structure
n house 228.5
form 262.1
arrangement 266.1
construction 266.1
building 266.2
texture 294.1
clearness 521.2
syntax 530.2
plot 722.4
composition 796.1
order 807.1
v construct 266.5
compose 796.3
order 807.4
structural engineering 1043.1
strudel 10.41
struggle
n endeavor 403.1
contention 457.1
fight 457.4
exertion 725.3
v endeavor 403.5
contend 457.13
strive 725.11
flounder 917.15
have difficulty 1013.11
strum 708.40
strut
n gait 177.12
swagger 501.8
v way of walking 177.28

  show defiance 454.5
  swagger 501.15
stub cigarette 89.5
  tail 217.6
  label 517.13
  extremity 820.2
stubble beard 3.8
  remainder 256.1
  bristle 288.3
  refuse 391.4
stubborn
  persevering 360.8
  obstinate 361.8
  strict 425.7
  tenacious 803.12
  inflexible 1046.12
  tough 1049.4
stubborn as a mule 361.8
stubby 268.10
stub one's toe 414.12
stucco 295.25
stuck fastened 800.14
  cohesive 803.10
  caught 855.16
  baffled 971.26
  at an impasse 1013.24
  stranded 1013.27
stuck-up
  conceited 140.11
  arrogant 141.9
  contemptuous 157.8
stuck with 643.8
stud
  n sex object 75.4
  man 76.5
  male animal 76.8
  beam 273.6
  knob 283.3
  horse 311.10
  print 517.7
  jockey 757.2
  poker 759.10
  v variegate 47.7
  roughen 288.4
  sprinkle 771.6
studded spotted 47.13
  knobbed 283.17
  gnarled 288.8
  bristly 288.9
  nappy 294.7
  ornamented 498.11
  sprinkled 771.10
  teeming 884.9
  illuminated 1025.39
student pupil 572.1
  scholar 929.3
stud farm 1070.5
studied
  intentional 380.8
  affected 533.9
  reasoned 935.21
studio library 197.6
  atelier 712.17
  workplace 739.1
  radio station 1034.6
study
  n diagnosis 91.12
  library 197.6
  intention 380.1
  discussion 541.7
  treatise 556.1
  branch of learning 568.8
  studying 570.3
  work of art 712.10
  drawing 712.13
  office 739.7
  science 928.10
  consideration 931.2
  thoughtfulness 931.3
  examination 938.3
  engrossment 983.3
  abstractedness 985.2
  retreat 1009.5
  v endeavor 403.5
  discuss 541.12
  learn 570.12
  consider 931.12
  examine 938.24
  pay attention 983.8
  memorize 989.17
stuff
  n fabric 4.1
  essential content 196.5
  equipment 385.4
  game 745.3
  substance 763.2
  essence 767.2
  matter 1052.2
  materials 1054.1
  v nourish 8.19
  gorge 8.25
  cram 196.7
  clog 293.7
  embalm 397.10
  gluttonize 672.4
  fill 794.7
  overload 993.15
  satiate 994.4
stuffed clogged 293.11
  full 794.11
  overfull 993.20
  satiated 994.6
stuffed animal 743.16
stuffed shirt 501.9
stuffing
  n food 10.27
  padding 196.3
  extra 254.4
  blockage 293.5
  embalming 397.3
  adj gluttonous 672.6
stuffy malodorous 71.5
  dull 117.6
  airless 173.16
  unyielding 361.9
  perverse 361.11
  prudish 500.19
  pompous 501.22
  old-fogyish 842.17
  conformist 867.6
  narrow-minded 980.10
  unimaginative 987.5
  sultry 1019.28
stultify suppress 428.8
  neutralize 900.7
  make a fool of 923.7
stumble
  n tumble 194.3
  collapse 410.3
  bungle 414.5
  flounder 917.8
  slip 975.4
  v tumble 194.8
  not know one's own mind 362.6
  bungle 414.11
  stammer 525.8
  flounder 917.15
  err 975.9
stumblebum 414.9
stumble on
  arrive at 186.7
  come across 941.3
stumbling block 1012.4
stump
  n remainder 256.1
  public speaking 543.1
  art equipment 712.18
  piece 793.3
  extremity 820.2
  platform 901.13
  v plod 175.7
  way of walking 177.28
  make a speech 543.9
  electioneer 609.40
  go into politics 610.13
  boggle 971.14
  thwart 1012.15
stumper enigma 522.8
  campaigner 610.10
stumpy
  deformed 265.12
  stubby 268.10
  low 274.7
stun deaden 25.4
  deafen 49.5
  din 53.7
  numb 94.8
  astonish 122.6
  terrify 127.17
  startle 131.8
stung 96.23
stun gun 462.10
stunning
  deadening 25.9
  astonishing 122.12
  frightening 127.28
  terrifying 127.29
  surprising 131.11
  excellent 999.13
  beautiful 1016.22
stunt
  n act 328.3
  acting 704.8
  v air maneuver 184.40
  shorten 268.6
stunted dwarf 258.13
  undeveloped 406.12
  incomplete 795.4
  meager 992.10
stunt man 185.1
stupefy deaden 25.4
  numb 94.8
  astonish 122.6
  terrify 127.17
stupendous
  wonderful 122.10
  large 247.7
  huge 257.20
  extraordinary 870.14
stupid dumb 922.15
  foolish 923.8
stupidity
  stupidness 922.3
  foolishness 923.1
  folly 923.4
  blunder 975.5
stupor sleep 22.6
  unconsciousness 25.2
  trance 92.19
  apathy 94.4
  languor 331.6
sturdy strong 15.15
  firm 15.18
  hale 83.12
  stable 763.7
stutter
  n stammering 525.3
  v stammer 525.8
sty pigsty 80.11
  eye disease 85.37
  hovel 228.11
  blemish 1004.1
style
  n clothing 5.1
  aspect 33.3
  form 262.1
  flower part 310.28
  behavior 321.1
  preference 371.5
  manner 384.1
  skill 413.1
  motif 498.7
  name 527.3
  way of speaking 532.2
  fashion 578.1
  lines 712.8
  engraving tool 713.8
  race 753.3
  fight 754.3
  mode 765.4
  kind 809.3
  specialty 866.1
  v name 527.11
  phrase 532.4
stylish dressed up 5.46
  skillful 413.22
  modish 578.12
stylus 50.11
stymie
  n golf 751.3
  v stop 1012.13
styptic pencil 260.6
Styx
  river of death 307.4
  Hades 682.4
suave smooth 287.10
  glib 504.18
sub
  n submarine 180.9
  baseball 745.2
  football 746.2
  substitute 862.2
  adj inferior 250.6
subatomic particle
  minute particle 258.8
  elementary particle 1038.6
subclass 809.5
subcommittee
  committee 423.2
  delegation 576.13
subconscious
  n psyche 92.28

inmost mind 919.3
adj unconscious 92.42
subconscious urge 934.2
subcutaneous
n injection 91.17
adj cutaneous 2.27
subdivide
analyze 801.6
apportion 802.18
classify 809.6
bisect 875.4
discriminate 944.4
subdue muffle 51.9
relieve 120.5
conquer 412.10
suppress 428.8
master 432.9
moderate 670.6
calm 670.7
soften 1047.6
subhead
n caption 937.2
v focus on 937.3
subhuman
cruel 144.26
animal 311.40
subject
n citizen 227.4
vassal 432.7
syntax 530.2
discipline 568.8
field of study 570.3
passage 708.24
plot 722.4
doer 726.1
topic 937.1
examinee 938.19
experimental subject 942.7
v subjugate 432.8
adj inferior 250.6
dependent 432.13
subjection
inferiority 250.1
subjugation 432.1
submission 433.1
subjective
introverted 92.40
intrinsic 767.7
mental 919.7
subjectivism 1053.3
subject oneself 652.3
subject to
v impose 643.4
adj liable to 897.6
contingent 959.9
conj provided 959.12
subjugate
conquer 412.10
subject 432.8
appropriate 480.19
domineer 612.16
sublet
v rent 615.15
rent out 615.16
adj employed 615.20
sublimate
n dregs 256.2
v refine 79.22
suppress 106.8
vaporize 1067.8
sublime
v refine 79.22
vaporize 1067.8
adj blissful 97.9
distinguished 247.9
lofty 272.14
eloquent 544.14
magnanimous 652.6
eminent 662.18
raised 912.9
gorgeous 1016.21
subliminal
n psyche 92.28
adj subconscious 92.42
instinctive 934.6
submarine
n sub 180.9
diving equipment 367.5
adj underwater 275.13
submerge
submarines 182.47
sink 194.6
overflow 238.17
submerse 367.7
flood 1065.14
submersible
n submarine 180.9
adj submergible 367.9
submission
resignation 134.2
obeisance 155.2
obedience 326.1
submittal 433.1
offer 439.1
consent 441.1
submissive
resigned 134.10
servile 138.13
assenting 332.13
compliant 433.12
conformable 867.5
pliant 1047.9
obedient 326.3
humblehearted 137.11
obeisant 155.10
downtrodden 432.16
consenting 441.4
submit affirm 334.5
nominate 371.19
advise 422.5
comply 433.6
offer 439.4
propose 439.5
obey 326.2
acquiesce 441.3
yield 1047.7
subordinate
n inferior 250.2
junior 432.5
retainer 577.1
nonessential 768.2
v subjugate 432.8
arrange 808.11
adj inferior 250.6
subject 432.13
unessential 768.4
suborn bribe 378.3
induce 886.11
subpar 1000.9
subplot 722.4
subpoena
n summons 598.2
v summon 420.11
summons 598.14
sub rosa 345.17
subscribe abet 449.14
contribute 478.14
belong 617.15
subscript 254.2
subscription
ratification 332.4
giving 478.1
donation 478.6
signature 527.10
subsequent
succeeding 815.4
after 835.4
subservient
servile 138.13
inferior 250.6
instrumental 384.8
subject 432.13
submissive 433.12
deferential 433.16
helping 449.20
subset 793.1
subside quiet 173.8
sink 194.6
decrease 252.6
descend 297.15
decline 393.17
subsidiary
n nonessential 768.2
adj helping 449.20
endowed 478.26
unessential 768.4
subsidize provide 385.7
support 449.12
finance 478.19
treat 624.19
sponsor 729.16
maintain 901.21
subsidy provision 385.1
support 449.3
grant 478.8
treat 624.8
financing 729.2
upkeep 901.1
subsist remain 256.5
live 306.9
support oneself 385.12
exist 761.8
endure 827.6
persist 853.5
subsistence
n accommodations 385.3
support 449.3
existence 761.1
adj meager 992.10
subsistence farming 1069.1
subsisting 761.13
subspecies
humankind 312.1
part 793.1
classifications 809.5
substance
content 196.5
quantity 244.1
meaning 518.1
summary 557.2
warrant 600.6
wealth 618.1
funds 728.14
substantiality 763.1
stuff 763.2
essence 767.2
major part 792.6
topic 937.1
salient point 997.6
matter 1052.2
substance abuse 87.1
substandard
vernacular 523.20
below par 1005.10
substantiate
itemize 766.6
test 942.8
confirm 957.11
materialize 1052.9
substantive
n noun 530.5
adj grammatical 530.17
substantial 763.6
essential 767.9
vital 997.23
substitute
n surrogate 92.31
deputy 576.1
supporting actor 707.7
baseball team 745.2
football team 746.2
successor 817.4
replacement 862.2
v exchange 862.4
adj alternate 862.8
substitution
defense mechanism 92.23
compensation 338.1
switch 862.1
substitute 862.2
subterfuge
secrecy 345.1
concealment 346.1
deception 356.1
trick 356.6
pretext 376.1
stratagem 415.3
quibbling 936.5
subterranean 275.12
subtext 519.2
subtile dainty 248.7
tenuous 764.6
shrewd 920.15
discriminating 944.7
subtitle
n book 554.12
caption 937.2
v focus on 937.3
subtle
soft-colored 35.22
dainty 248.7
thin 270.16
rare 299.4
meticulous 339.12
cunning 415.12
nice 495.11
elegant 496.9
tenuous 764.6
complex 799.4
shrewd 920.15
discriminating 944.7
exact 973.17

subtle distinction
  margin 780.2
  distinction 944.3
subtotal 253.2
subtract deduct 255.9
  separate 802.8
  calculate 1017.18
subtropics zone 231.3
  hot place 1019.11
suburb 230.1
suburban
  surrounding 209.8
  urban 230.11
  upper-class 607.10
  ordinary 1005.8
subversion
  overturn 205.2
  fall 395.3
  indoctrination 858.5
  revolution 860.1
  refutation 958.2
subversionary 395.26
subversive
  n rebel 327.5
  saboteur 357.11
  radical 611.12
  revolutionist 860.3
  adj rebellious 327.11
  destructive 395.26
  radical 611.20
  changed 852.10
subway train 179.14
  underground area 284.5
subzero 1023.14
succeed
  accomplish 407.4
  prevail 409.7
  triumph 411.3
  change hands 629.4
  be a hit 704.28
  be next 815.2
  follow 817.5
  come after 835.3
  substitute for 862.5
  prosper 1010.7
succession
  authority 417.12
  inheritance 479.2
  lineage 560.4
  offspring 561.1
  devolution 629.2
  series 812.2
  sequence 815.1
  subsequence 835.1
  constancy 847.2
  thoughts 931.4
successive
  consecutive 812.9
  succeeding 815.4
  subsequent 835.4
successor
  follower 166.2
  survivor 256.3
  heir 479.5
  replacement 817.4
  sequel 835.2
  substitute 862.2
succession 862.1
success story 409.3
succinct short 268.8
  concise 537.6
  aphoristic 974.6
succor
  n remedy 86.1
  aid 449.1
  v aid 449.11
  benefit 592.3
succulent
  n plant 310.4
  adj edible 8.33
  tasty 63.8
  delectable 97.10
  interesting 983.19
  fluid 1061.4
  pulpy 1063.6
succumb burn out 21.5
  faint 25.5
  die 307.19
  perish 395.23
  lose 412.12
  submit 433.6
such 784.3
such as 784.12
suck
  n sip 8.4
  drink 88.7
  drawing in 187.5
  v sip 8.29
  perform oral sex 75.22
  draw in 187.12
  draw off 192.12
suck dry exploit 387.16
  consume 388.3
  strip 480.24
sucked into 898.5
sucker
  n sprout 302.11
  branch 310.20
  dupe 358.2
  customer 733.4
  cheater 759.22
  trusting soul 954.4
  v exploit 387.16
suck in drink 8.29
  draw in 187.12
  lure 377.5
suckle
  breast-feed 8.19
  drink 8.29
  draw in 187.12
  foster 449.16
suckling 302.9
suck up to
  curry favor 138.9
  cultivate 587.12
suction
  drawing in 187.5
  extraction 192.3
  favor 894.2
sudatory secretory 13.7
  cleanness 79.1
sudden
  adj unexpected 131.10
  impulsive 365.9
  precipitate 401.10
  abrupt 830.5
  adv suddenly 830.9
sudden death
  fatal disease 85.2
  early death 307.5
sudden death overtime 749.3
sudden infant death syndrome 85.2
suddenly
  unexpectedly 131.14
  abruptly 268.13
suds
  n beer 88.16
  foam 320.2
  v foam 320.5
sue petition 440.10
  solicit 440.14
  court 562.21
  litigate 598.13
suet 10.14
suffer
  feel pain 26.8
  ail 85.46
  hurt 96.19
  endure 134.5
  submit 433.6
  countenance 443.10
  be punished 604.20
  experience 831.8
sufferer
  sick person 85.43
  victim 96.11
suffer the consequences 604.20
sufficient
  satisfactory 107.11
  valid 973.14
  sufficing 991.6
  tolerable 999.20
suffix
  n addition 254.2
  morphology 526.3
  sequel 817.1
  v add 253.4
  place after 815.3
suffocate die 307.24
  strangle 308.19
  extinguish 395.15
  suppress 428.8
  obstruct 1012.12
  be hot 1019.22
suffrage vote 371.6
  participation 476.1
  franchise 609.17
suffragette
  suffrage 609.17
  women's rightist 642.5
suffuse
  pervade 221.7
  imbue 797.11
suffused with light 1025.39
sugar
  n carbohydrate 7.5
  sweetening 66.2
  LSD 87.10
  loved one 104.11
  endearment term 562.6
  money 728.2
  v sweeten 66.3
sugar daddy
  beau 104.13
  giver 478.11
suggest promise 133.13
  advise 422.5
  propose 439.5
  signify 517.17
  mean 518.8
  imply 519.4
  hint 551.10
  resemble 784.7
  evidence 957.8
  remind 989.20
suggestion hint 248.4
  advice 422.1
  proposal 439.2
  aspersion 512.4
  indication 517.3
  clue 517.9
  implication 519.2
  veiled reference 551.4
  admixture 797.7
  influence 894.1
  supposition 951.5
suicidal
  wretched 96.26
  dejected 112.22
  murderous 308.24
  destructive 395.26
  unwise 923.10
suicide 308.5
suit
  n clothing 5.6
  entreaty 440.2
  solicitation 440.5
  courtship 562.7
  lawsuit 598.1
  accusation 599.1
  prayer 696.4
  soccer 752.1
  playing cards 758.2
  bridge 758.3
  set 770.12
  important person 997.9
  v outfit 5.41
  please 95.6
  be satisfactory 107.6
  fit 405.8
  agree 788.8
  be timely 843.6
  conform 867.3
  suffice 991.4
suitable eligible 371.24
  decorous 496.10
  right 637.3
  apt 788.10
  timely 843.9
  sufficient 991.6
  expedient 995.5
suite apartment 228.13
  furniture 229.1
  attendance 769.6
  set 770.12
suit oneself 430.20
suitor desirer 100.12
  lover 104.12
  petitioner 440.7
  litigant 598.11
  accuser 599.5
suit the occasion 995.3
suit up 5.43
sulfa drug 86.29
sulfate 1060.8
sulfuric 1058.15
sulk
  n refusal 325.1
  v mope 110.14
sulky
  discontented 108.7

sullen 110.24
glum 112.25
unwilling 325.5
obstinate 361.8
perverse 361.11
sullen dark 38.9
sulky 110.24
glum 112.25
unwilling 325.5
obstinate 361.8
perverse 361.11
unsociable 583.5
sully soil 80.16
defile 80.17
vilify 512.10
corrupt 654.10
stigmatize 661.9
seduce 665.20
sultan 575.10
sultry
obscene 666.9
stifling 1019.28
sum
n quantity 244.1
amount 244.2
math terms 253.2
meaning 518.1
summary 557.2
amount of money 728.13
total 792.2
summation 1017.6
v compute 253.6
sum up 1017.19
summa cum laude 646.11
summarize
shorten 268.6
abridge 557.5
iterate 849.8
sum up 1017.19
summary
n shortening 268.3
résumé 557.2
iteration 849.2
summation 1017.11
adj short 268.8
concise 537.6
prompt 845.9
summary execution 604.7
summation
math terms 253.2
shortening 268.3
résumé 557.2
testimony 598.8
sum 1017.6
summary 1017.11
summer
n summertide 313.3
hot weather 1019.7
v vacation 313.8
spend time 821.6
adj seasonal 313.9
summer solstice 313.7
summery green 44.4
seasonal 313.9
warm 1019.24
summit top 198.2
mountain 237.6
supremacy 249.3
limit 794.5
acme of perfection 1002.3
summit conference 541.6
summon attract 377.6
call 420.11
invite 440.13
enlist 615.17
conjure 690.11
convene 770.17
summons
n bidding 420.5
invitation 440.4
call 517.16
subpoena 598.2
enlistment 615.7
v summon 420.11
issue a summons 598.14
sumo 457.10
sump
receptacle of filth 80.12
drain 239.5
lake 241.1
marsh 243.1
pit 284.4
sumptuous
grandiose 501.21
expensive 632.11
sum total 792.2
sum up
shorten 268.6
iterate 849.8
sum 1017.19
sun
n moment 824.2
light source 1026.1
orb of day 1072.13
v sunbathe 1020.19
dry 1066.6
sunbaked 1019.24
the Sunbelt 231.7
sunblind 1028.1
sun-block 1056.3
sunburn
n burn 1020.6
v brown 40.2
sundae 10.47
Sunday
n day of rest 20.5
holy day 701.12
v vacation 20.9
Sunday paper 555.2
Sunday school 567.8
sundown 315.2
sundry
diversified 783.4
several 884.7
sunglasses
spectacles 29.3
eyeshade 1028.2
sunk
concave 284.16
spoiled 393.29
depressed 913.12
sunless 1027.13
Sunni
n Muslim 675.23
adj Muslim 675.31
sunny
bright 97.11
cheerful 109.11
optimistic 124.12
warm 1019.24
luminous 1025.30
sunrise east 161.3
dawn 314.3
sunset
west 161.3
evening 315.2
sunshine 1072.13
sun worshiper 697.4
sup
n drink 8.4
sip 62.2
nip 88.7
hint 248.4
v dine 8.21
drink 8.29
taste 62.7
tipple 88.24
super
n volume 554.4
supporting actor or actress 707.7
adj superior 249.12
excellent 999.13
magnificent 999.15
superb
eminent 247.9
grandiose 501.21
super 999.15
superannuated 837.1
Super Bowl 746.1
supercharged 993.20
supercomputer 1042.2
superconductor 1032.14
supercooled 1023.14
superego psyche 92.28
conscience 636.5
self 865.5
supererogatory253.1
superficial
apparent 33.11
dull 117.6
spatial 158.10
exterior 206.7
insignificant 248.6
shallow 276.5
hasty 401.9
formal 580.7
frivolous 922.20
half-learned 930.15
insufficient 992.9
trivial 998.19
superfluous
remaining 256.7
useless 391.9
unessential 768.4
redundant 993.17
superheated 1020.29
superhero
celebrity 662.9
ideal 786.4
superhuman
divine 677.16
supernatural 870.15
superimpose 295.19
superintendent
n supervisor 574.2
policeman 1008.15
adj supervising 573.13
superior
n boss 249.4
chief 575.3
adj arrogant 141.9
remarkable 247.10
greater 249.12
higher 272.19
authoritative 417.15
important 997.17
above par 999.14
superiority power 18.1
greatness 247.1
preeminence 249.1
dominance 417.6
precedence 814.1
abnormality 870.1
overrunning 910.1
importance 997.1
goodness 999.1
superiority complex 92.22
superlative
n exaggeration 355.1
the best 999.8
adj downright 247.12
supreme 249.13
high 272.14
exaggerated 355.4
superman 249.4
Superman 15.6
supermarket 736.1
supernatural
divine 677.16
occult 689.23
preternatural 870.15
spectral 988.7
immaterial 1053.7
supernova 1072.8
superpose add 253.4
cover 295.19
superpower 232.1
superscript 254.2
supersede 862.5
supersensitive 24.12
supersonic
acoustic 50.17
transsonic 174.16
superstar
n superior 249.4
successful person 409.6
skillful person 413.14
celebrity 662.9
lead 707.6
chief 997.10
first-rater 999.6
adj chief 249.14
superstitious 954.8
superstore 736.1
superstructure 266.2
supervise
wield authority 417.13
superintend 573.10
govern 612.12
supervisor
superintendent 574.2
public official 575.17
supine apathetic 94.13
recumbent 201.8
low 274.7
languid 331.20
submissive 433.12
supper 8.6
suppertime 315.2
supplant depose 447.4
substitute for 862.5
supple
v soften 1047.6

adj timeserving 363.10
versatile 413.25
cunning 415.12
changeable 854.6
pliant 1047.9
supplement
n adjunct 254.1
nonessential 768.2
sequel 817.1
v add to 253.5
supplementary
additional 253.10
unessential 768.4
supplicate
entreat 440.11
pray 696.13
supplier 385.6
supplies
provisions 10.5
merchandise 385.2
store 386.1
supply
n means 384.2
provision 385.1
hoard 386.1
fund 386.2
materials 1054.1
v provide 385.7
furnish 478.15
supply depot 386.6
supply line 385.1
supply side economics 731.11
support
n nutriment 10.3
consolation 121.4
assent 332.1
means 384.2
preservation 397.1
aid 449.1
maintenance 449.3
reinforcements 449.8
subsidy 478.8
supporter 616.9
treat 624.8
supporting actor 707.7
financing 729.2
backing 901.1
bearer 901.2
confirmation 957.4
v strengthen 15.13
comfort 121.6
give hope 124.10
endure 134.5
ratify 332.12
provide 385.7
preserve 397.8
help 449.12
subsidize 478.19
encourage 492.16
commend 509.11
benefit 592.3
defend 600.10
back politically 609.41
treat 624.19
afford 626.7
enact 704.30
finance 729.16
bear 901.21
confirm 957.11
care for 1008.19
supporter
follower 166.2
suspender 202.5
attender 221.5
defender 460.7
giver 478.11
friend 588.1
upholder 616.9
financer 729.10
support 901.2
support group 449.2
supporting actor
assistant 616.6
motion-picture studio 706.4
support 707.7
supporting evidence 957.4
suppose imply 519.4
judge 946.8
assume 951.10
think 953.11
presume 968.5
imagine 986.14
supposed implied 519.7
assumed 951.14
suppress repress 106.8
cover up 345.8
extinguish 395.15
conquer 412.10
restrain 428.8
subdue 432.9
prohibit 444.3
retain 474.5
domineer 612.16
moderate 670.6
cushion 670.8
hinder 1012.10
suppurate fester 12.15
decay 393.22
supranational 312.16
supranational government 612.7
supremacy primacy 249.3
dominance 417.6
influence 894.1
importance 997.1
superexcellence 999.2
supreme
omnipotent 18.13
top 198.10
superlative 249.13
authoritative 417.15
governing 612.18
almighty 677.17
paramount 997.24
best 999.16
surcease
n respite 20.2
release 120.2
cessation 857.1
v release 120.6
surcharge
n burden 297.7
overcharge 632.5
overfullness 993.3
v falsify accounts 628.10
overprice 632.7
overload 993.15
sure
adj expectant 130.11
secured 438.11
trustworthy 644.19
belief 953.21
evidential 957.16
inevitable 963.15
certain 970.13
reliable 970.17
confident 970.21
adv surely 970.24
interj yeah 332.19
sure as death and taxes
inevitable 963.15
dead sure 970.14
sure bet
sure success 409.2
lock 970.2
good chance 972.8
surefire
successful 409.14
reliable 970.17
Sûreté 1008.17
sure thing
n sure success 409.2
bet 759.3
dead certainty 970.2
good chance 972.8
adv surely 970.24
interj yeah 332.19
surety security 438.1
pledge 438.2
guarantor 438.6
belief 953.1
certainty 970.1
confidence 970.5
safety 1007.1
surf
n breaker 238.14
foam 320.2
wave 916.4
v navigate 182.13
surface
n space 158.1
top 198.1
exterior 206.2
shallowness 276.1
texture 294.1
tennis 748.1
v show 31.4
submarines 182.47
arrive 186.6
emerge 190.11
shoot up 193.9
cover 295.22
come out 348.6
be manifest 348.7
be revealed 351.8
adj apparent 33.11
spatial 158.10
exterior 206.7
shallow 276.5
formal 580.7
insufficient 992.9
surfboard 180.11
surfeit
n overfullness 993.3
satiety 994.1
v fill 794.7
overload 993.15
satiate 994.4
surfing 760.2
surge
n loudness 53.1
ascent 193.1
flow 238.4
billow 238.14
increase 251.1
whirl 915.2
wave 916.4
v din 53.7
run out 190.13
ascend 193.8
flow 238.16
jet 238.20
billow 238.22
come together 770.16
whirl 915.11
surgeon 90.5
surgery operation 90.2
surgical treatment 91.19
hospital room 197.25
severance 802.2
surgical strike 459.1
surly sullen 110.24
gruff 505.7
surmise
n supposition 951.3
guess 951.4
v suppose 951.10
think 953.11
surmount climb 193.11
top 198.9
rise above 272.11
defeat 411.5
overcome 412.7
surname 527.5
surpass excel 249.6
outdistance 249.10
exceed 993.9
do better 999.11
surplus
n difference 255.8
remainder 256.4
overrunning 910.1
excess 993.5
v dismiss 909.19
adj additional 253.10
remaining 256.7
excess 993.18
surprise
n wonder 122.1
astonishment 131.2
surprise attack 459.2
v astonish 122.6
take by surprise 131.7
attack 459.14
surreal odd 870.11
illusory 976.9
surrender
n abandonment 370.3
capitulation 433.2
compromise 468.1
relinquishment 475.1
giving 478.1
transfer 629.1
v weaken 16.9
yield 370.7
give up 433.8
compromise 468.2
relinquish 475.3
deliver 478.13
transfer 629.3
surreptitious
covert 345.12
in hiding 346.14

deceitful 356.22
surrogate
psychological substitute 92.31
deputy 576.1
replacement 862.2
surround
n environment 209.1
setting 209.2
nearness 223.1
circumstances 766.2
frame 901.10
v devour 8.22
extend 158.9
internalize 207.5
envelop 209.6
circumscribe 210.4
bound 211.8
enclose 212.5
circle 280.10
wrap 295.20
besiege 459.19
go around 914.5
surveillance
vigilance 339.4
ambush 346.3
supervision 573.2
shadowing 938.9
survey
n scrutiny 27.6
field of view 31.3
measurement 300.1
treatise 556.1
abridgment 557.1
assemblage 770.1
examination 938.3
canvass 938.14
v scrutinize 27.14
measure 300.10
write upon 556.5
examine 938.24
canvass 938.29
surveyor
measurer 300.9
superintendent 574.2
survival of the fittest 861.4
survive remain 256.5
keep alive 306.12
support oneself 385.12
recover 396.20
endure 827.6
outlast 827.8
live on 839.7
sustain 856.4
persist 856.5
survivor 256.3
susceptible
sensible 24.11
sensitive 93.20
teachable 570.18
influenceable 894.15
liable 897.5
exposed 1006.15
pliant 1047.9
sushi 10.24
suspect
n accused 599.6
v be jealous 153.3
suppose 951.10
think 953.11
doubt 955.6
adj unbelievable 955.10
doubted 955.12
questionable 971.17
suspend release 120.6
hang 202.8
repeal 445.2
depose 447.4
postpone 846.9
interrupt 857.10
dismiss 909.19
suspenders 202.5
suspense anxiety 126.1
expectancy 130.3
inertness 173.4
pendency 202.1
uncertainty 971.1
suspension respite 20.2
release 120.2
pendency 202.1
inactivity 331.1
discontinuance 390.2
repeal 445.1
deposal 447.2
harmonization 709.2
elimination 773.2
interruption 813.2
delay 846.2
pause 857.3
dismissal 909.5
solution 1064.3
suspicion
suspiciousness 153.2
hint 248.4
small amount 258.7
wariness 494.2
leeriness 551.4
admixture 797.7
hunch 934.3
suggestion 951.5
doubt 955.2
incredulity 956.1
suspicious
jealous 153.5
wary 494.9
dishonest 645.16
doubting 955.9
unbelievable 955.10
incredulous 956.4
doubtful 971.17
sustain nourish 7.17
feed 8.18
strengthen 15.13
tolerate 134.5
buoy 298.8
preserve 397.8
maintain 449.12
foster 449.16
defend 600.10
endure 827.6
experience 831.8
protract 856.4
support 901.21
confirm 957.11
sustenance food 10.1
nutriment 10.3
maintenance 449.3
continuance 856.1
support 901.1
suttee suicide 308.5
oblation 696.7
burning 1020.5
suture filament 271.1
sewing 741.1
joint 800.4
svelte 270.16
Svengali hypnotist 22.9
influence 894.6
swab wash 79.19
dry 1066.6
swaddle
n children's wear 5.30
v clothe 5.39
wrap 295.20
bind 800.9
swag
n sinkage 194.2
hang 202.2
inclination 204.2
curve 279.2
booty 482.11
swing 916.6
v sink 194.6
hang 202.6
incline 204.10
curve 279.6
oscillate 916.10
adj drooping 202.10
swagger
n gait 177.12
strut 501.8
boasting 502.1
bluster 503.1
v way of walking 177.28
strut 501.15
boast 502.6
bluster 503.3
swagger stick 273.2
swain
n desirer 100.12
beau 104.13
escort 769.5
v court 562.21
swale marsh 243.1
lowland 274.3
grassland 310.8
swallow
n bite 8.2
swiftness 174.6
ingestion 187.4
recant 363.8
v devour 8.22
endure 134.6
disregard 134.8
condone 148.4
ingest 187.11
consume 388.3
believe 953.10
kid oneself 954.6
swallow one's pride 137.7
swamp
n receptacle of filth 80.12
marsh 243.1
predicament 1013.4
v overflow 238.17
overwhelm 395.21
oversupply 993.14
flood 1065.14
swan whiteness 37.2
bird 311.28
swan dive 367.1
swanky
grandiose 501.21
chic 578.13
swan song
leave-taking 188.4
death song 307.10
theatrical performance 704.12
musical performance 708.33
sequel 817.1
end 820.1
swap
n explosive sound 56.1
bargain 731.5
trading 863.2
v make explosive sound 56.6
trade 731.15
interchange 863.4
swarm
n migration 177.4
assemblage 770.6
multitude 884.3
infestation 910.2
v migrate 177.22
come together 770.16
infest 910.6
superabound 993.8
swarthy 38.9
swashbuckler
combatant 461.1
strutter 501.10
blusterer 503.2
swastika cross 170.4
insignia 647.1
charm 691.5
swat
n blow 902.5
v strike 902.15
SWAT 1008.17
swatch 786.3
swath 812.2
sway
n inclination 204.2
supremacy 249.3
authority 417.5
dominance 417.6
government 612.1
influence 894.1
swing 916.6
flounder 917.8
v pitch 182.55
oblique 204.9
incline 204.10
induce 375.22
persuade 375.23
break down 393.24
rule 612.14
change 854.5
influence 894.7
oscillate 916.10
flounder 917.15
prejudice 980.9
sway-backed 265.12
swear affirm 334.6
administer an oath 334.7
promise 436.4
curse 513.6
blaspheme 694.5
state 953.12
testify 957.9
swear by 953.16

swear in
administer an oath 334.7
call to witness 598.17
swear off
break the habit 374.3
relinquish 475.3
renounce 668.8
sweat
n body fluid 2.24
perspiration 12.7
trepidation 127.5
nervousness 128.2
impatience 135.1
bustle 330.4
work 725.4
confusion 985.3
v perspire 12.16
fear 127.10
await 130.8
be impatient 135.4
trickle 238.18
endeavor 403.5
work hard 725.13
overwork 725.16
be hot 1019.22
be damp 1065.11
sweater shirt 5.15
gambler 759.21
sweat it out
be strong 15.11
await 130.8
be impatient 135.4
wait impatiently 846.13
Swedish bath 79.8
sweep
n vision 27.1
view 33.6
sweeper 79.16
range 158.2
deviation 164.1
gliding 177.16
oar 180.15
bend 279.3
lottery 759.14
v touch lightly 73.7
clean 79.23
extend 158.9
speed 174.9
traverse 177.20
glide 177.35
overflow 238.17
curve 279.6
plunder 482.17
push 904.9
go easily 1014.10
receive 1036.17
sweeper 79.16
sweeping change 860.1
sweepings
remainder 256.1
refuse 391.4
sweep off one's feet
enamor 104.23
take one's breath away 122.7
fascinate 377.7
convince 858.16
sweepstakes
award 646.2
lottery 759.14
sweet
n food 10.40
sweetness 66.1
endearment term 562.6
adj soft-colored 35.22
flavored 62.9
sweetish 66.4
fragrant 70.9
clean 79.25
pleasant 97.6
endearing 104.25
good-natured 143.14
harmonious 533.8
melodious 708.48
sweetbread veal 10.15
organ meat 10.20
sweetener 478.5
sweetheart
n loved one 104.10
endearment term 562.6
good person 659.2
first-rate 999.7
v court 562.21
sweet nothings
flattery 511.1
endearment 562.5
sweets
confectionery 10.40
sweetening 66.2
loved one 104.11
endearment term 562.6
the sweet science 754.1
sweet sixteen 301.14
sweet tooth 66.1
swell
n loudness 53.1
hill 237.4
wave 238.14
distension 259.2
dandy 500.9
aristocrat 607.4
nobleman 608.4
notation 709.12
keyboard 711.17
v din 53.7
be excited 105.18
be vain 140.7
billow 238.22
grow 251.6
enlarge 259.4
increase 259.5
bulge 283.11
give oneself airs 501.14
overextend 993.13
adj grandiose 501.21
chic 578.13
excellent 999.13
swelled head 140.4
swelter
n sweat 12.7
sultriness 1019.6
v sweat 12.16
be hot 1019.22
swept 238.25
swept-back 217.12
swept up 983.17
swerve
n deviation 164.1
bias 204.3
angle 278.2
v deviate 164.3
change course 182.30
oblique 204.9
angle 278.5
dodge 368.8
be changed 852.6
pull back 903.7
swift
fast 174.15
quick 330.18
hasty 401.9
brief 828.8
sudden 830.5
prompt 845.9
swig
n drink 8.4
snort 88.7
v drink 8.29
booze 88.25
swill
n drink 8.4
feed 10.4
offal 80.9
snort 88.7
refuse 391.4
mud 1062.8
v drink 8.29
booze 88.25
ingest 187.11
swim
n aquatics 182.11
v bathe 182.56
conform 867.4
swim against the tide
dissent 333.4
not conform 868.4
counteract 900.6
swimming pool 743.12
swim suit 5.29
swindle
n fake 354.13
fraud 356.8
theft 482.1
v cheat 356.18
steal 482.13
overprice 632.7
swine
filthy person 80.13
pig 311.9
beast 660.6
sensualist 663.3
slob 810.7
swing
n room 158.3
gait 177.12
hang 202.2
latitude 430.4
thrust 459.3
supporting actor 707.7
jazz 708.9
rhythm 709.22
meter 720.7
playground apparatus 743.15
golf 751.3
trend 896.2
hit 902.4
swinging 916.6
oscillator 916.9
flounder 917.8
v turn round 163.9
way of walking 177.28
toss at sea 182.55
hang 202.6
do 328.6
accomplish 407.4
manage 409.12
be hanged 604.19
afford 626.7
be promiscuous 665.19
syncopate 708.43
change 854.5
rotate 915.9
oscillate 916.10
wave 916.11
alternate 916.13
flounder 917.15
adj music 708.51
swinger
person of fashion 578.7
libertine 665.10
swing into action
behave 321.4
take action 328.5
undertake 404.3
begin 818.7
swing shift 825.3
swing vote 609.28
swipe
n criticism 510.4
hit 902.4
v rob 482.16
hit 902.14
swirl
n excitement 105.4
eddy 238.12
coil 281.2
bustle 330.4
whirl 915.2
agitation 917.1
v eddy 238.21
convolve 281.4
whirl 915.11
agitate 917.10
swish
n sibilation 57.1
v ripple 52.11
rustle 52.12
sibilate 57.2
basketball 747.4
Swiss cheese 284.6
switch
n false hair 3.13
surprise 131.2
branch 310.20
apostatize 363.7
whip 605.2
plot 722.4
member 793.4
change 852.1
conversion 858.1
substitution 862.1
trading 863.2
v avoid 164.6
transfer 176.10
whip 604.13
trade 731.15
convert 858.11
substitute 862.4
interchange 863.4
switchback
zigzag 204.8
race 756.3
switchboard
telephone 347.8
stage 704.16

switch hitter 745.2
switch over
n apostatize 363.7
v convert 858.11
swivel
n axle 915.5
v turn round 163.9
rotate 915.9
swivet dither 105.6
confusion 985.3
swollen
diseased 85.60
puffed up 136.10
increased 251.7
corpulent 257.18
distended 259.13
bulged 283.16
pompous 501.22
boastful 502.12
bombastic 545.9
full 794.11
overfull 993.20
swoon
n stupor 22.6
unconsciousness 25.2
v faint 25.5
swoop
n descent 194.1
plunge 367.1
v descend 194.5
plunge 367.6
sword
n combatant 461.1
blade 462.5
cutlery 1040.2
v stab 459.25
sword of Damocles
threat 514.1
dangerousness 1006.2
sworn affirmed 334.9
promised 436.8
sworn enemy 589.6
sworn statement
deposition 334.3
certificate 549.6
statement of principles 953.4
testimony 957.2
sycophant toady 138.3
flatterer 511.4
follower 616.8
syllabic
n letter 546.1
adj phonetic 524.30
syllable
n speech sound 524.12
word 526.1
poetry 720.9
v syllabify 546.7
syllabus 557.1
syllogism reasoning 935.3
prosyllogism 935.6
sylvan hinterland 233.9
woodland 310.40
symbiotic
cooperative 450.5
agreeing 788.9
concurrent 899.4
symbol
n psychological symbol 92.30
representation 349.1
emblem 517.2
sign 518.6
letter 546.1
insignia 647.1
musical notation 709.12
example 786.2
substitute 862.2
number 1017.3
v designate 517.18
symbolic indicative 517.23
meaningful 518.10
semantic 518.12
figurative 519.10
symmetrical
balanced 264.4
harmonious 533.8
orderly 807.6
symmetry
balance 264.1
harmony 533.2
correlation 777.1
agreement 788.1
equality 790.1
order 807.1
sympathetic
sensitive 24.12
responsive 93.20
comforting 121.13
kind 143.13
pitying 145.7
condoling 147.3
in accord 455.3
related 775.9
attracting 907.5
tolerant 979.11
sympathy
sensitivity 24.3
fellow feeling 93.5
inclination 100.3
consolation 121.4
kindness 143.1
pity 145.1
condolence 147.1
patronage 449.4
accord 455.1
good terms 587.3
relation 775.1
attraction 907.1
tolerance 979.4
symphony accord 455.1
harmony 708.3
symposium
drinking 8.3
spree 88.5
forum 423.3
discussion 541.7
compilation 554.7
assembly 770.2
symptom
medical sign 91.13
warning sign 399.3
sign 517.1
hint 551.4
evidence 957.1
synagogue 703.2
synapse 2.14
sync
n agreement 788.1
v make agree 788.7
synchronicity 689.6
synchronized
harmonious 708.49
accompanying 769.9
agreeing 788.9
arranged 808.14
simultaneous 836.6
syncopation
dance music 708.8
tempo 709.24
syncope
unconsciousness 25.2
shortening 268.3
abbreviation 537.4
tempo 709.24
syndicate
n council 423.1
company 617.9
v combine 805.3
the syndicate
the underworld 660.10
illicit business 732.1
syndication 805.1
syndrome 85.1
synergy
cooperation 450.1
concurrence 899.1
synod council 423.1
ecclesiastical council 423.4
diocese 698.8
assembly 770.2
synonym word 526.1
the same 778.3
synopsis
shortening 268.3
abridgment 557.1
syntax
grammatical structure 530.2
arrangement 808.1
synthesis
identification 778.2
composition 796.1
combination 805.1
reasoning 935.3
synthesize
identify 778.5
compose 796.3
combine 805.3
reason 935.15
synthesizer
musical instrument 711.1
reasoner 935.11
theorist 951.7
synthetic
n plastic 1054.6
adj imitation 336.8
spurious 354.26
similar 784.10
dialectic 935.22
synthetic fuels 1021.1
syringe
n sprinkler 1065.8
v wash 79.19
moisten 1065.12
syrup
sweetening 66.2
medicine 86.4
adhesive 803.4
semiliquid 1062.5
system plan 381.1
manner 384.1
nature 767.4
order 807.1
orderliness 807.3
outlook 978.2
universe 1072.1
systematic
uniform 781.5
orderly 807.6
regular 850.6
systemic 1001.3
system of government 612.1
system of values 373.2
systems analysis 1041.2
syzygy
juxtaposition 223.3
meter 720.7
T 170.4
tab
n bulge 283.3
statement 628.3
price 630.1
scenery 704.20
afterpart 817.2
v label 517.20
appoint 615.11
tabby
n iridescence 47.2
cat 311.21
newsmonger 552.9
v variegate 47.7
adj striped 47.15
tabernacle 703.2
table
n meal 8.5
food 10.1
horizontal 201.3
furniture 229.1
plain 236.1
plateau 237.3
steppe 272.4
lamina 296.2
diagram 381.3
register 549.1
record book 549.11
outline 801.4
code 808.4
contents 871.2
board 901.15
summation 1017.11
v put away 390.6
legislate 613.10
postpone 846.9
tableau spectacle 33.7
picture 712.11
table manners 580.3
table of contents
book 554.12
outline 801.4
table 871.2
table setting 498.1
tablespoon 8.12
tablet pill 86.7
lamina 296.2
record book 549.11
monument 549.12
tabloid 555.2
taboo
n prohibition 444.1
exclusion 773.1
v prohibit 444.3
exclude 773.4
adj prohibited 444.7
jargonish 523.21

tabular
  horizontal 201.7
  classified 809.8
tabula rasa void 222.3
  revolution 860.1
  ignorance 930.1
  thoughtlessness 933.1
tabulate record 549.15
  classify 809.6
  list 871.8
tachometer 174.7
tachycardia
  symptom 85.9
  pulsation 916.3
tacit
  wordless 51.11
  implicit 519.8
taciturn
  untalkative 344.9
  concise 537.6
tack
  n direction 161.2
  deviation 164.1
  cordage 271.3
  manner 384.1
  harness 385.5
  horse racing 757.1
  inferiority 1005.3
  v deviate 164.3
  change course 182.30
  fasten 800.8
  be changed 852.6
tackle
  n rigging 180.12
  cordage 271.3
  equipment 385.4
  harness 385.5
  impedimenta 471.3
  linemen 746.2
  football game 746.3
  hockey game 749.6
  soccer game 752.3
  purchase 906.6
  lifter 912.3
  v practice 328.8
  treat 387.12
  attempt 403.7
  undertake 404.3
  set to work 725.15
  football 746.5
  hockey 749.7
  soccer 752.4
  reel in 906.9
tack on 253.4
tacky frail 16.14
  unpleasant 98.17
  shabby 393.32
  vulgar 497.10
  gaudy 501.20
  base 661.12
  adhesive 803.12
  slovenly 810.15
  inferior 1005.9
  viscous 1062.12
  moist 1065.15
tact sensitivity 24.3
  considerateness 143.3
  skill 413.1
  courtesy 504.1
  intuition 934.1
  discrimination 944.1
tactic stratagem 415.3
  expedient 995.2
tactical planned 381.12
  cunning 415.12
tactician planner 381.6
  strategist 415.7
tactile tactual 73.10
  touchable 73.11
tad 302.3
tadpole
  fledgling 302.10
  amphibian 311.27
tag
  n scrap 248.3
  label 517.13
  name 527.3
  rabble 606.3
  token 728.12
  sequel 817.1
  afterpart 817.2
  extremity 820.2
  v follow 166.3
  add 253.4
  allot 477.9
  label 517.20
  name 527.11
tag along 166.3
tag sale 734.3
taiga 243.1
tail
  n braid 3.7
  follower 166.2
  rear 217.1
  buttocks 217.5
  cauda 217.6
  added to writing 254.2
  book 554.12
  appendage 793.4
  afterpart 817.2
  extremity 820.2
  v look 27.13
  follow 166.3
  trace 938.35
  adj rear 217.9
  caudal 217.11
  final 820.11
tailback 746.2
tailgate 815.2
tail gunner 185.4
tail off weaken 16.9
  recede 168.2
  decrease 252.6
  cease to exist 762.6
tailor
  n garmentmaker 5.35
  sewer 741.2
  v outfit 5.41
  form 262.7
  sew 741.4
  make agree 788.7
tailored
  custom-made 5.48
  formative 262.9
  apt 788.10
tailpiece rear 217.1
  tail 217.6
  adjunct 254.1
  coda 708.24
  afterpart 817.2
tails
  formal dress 5.11
  opposite side 215.3
tailspin
  air maneuver 184.15
  collapse 410.3
tail wind
  atmosphere 184.32
  wind 318.1
  nautical 318.11
taint
  n infection 85.4
  stigma 661.6
  admixture 797.7
  characteristic 865.4
  fault 1003.2
  stain 1004.3
  v defile 80.17
  infect 85.51
  corrupt 393.12
  stigmatize 661.9
  blaspheme 694.5
  work evil 1000.6
  stain 1004.6
take
  n winnings 251.3
  explanation 341.4
  profit 472.3
  catch 480.10
  booty 482.11
  receipts 627.1
  shot 706.5
  motion picture 714.8
  change 852.1
  production 893.2
  answer 939.1
  v eat 8.20
  take sick 85.47
  pocket 134.8
  condone 148.4
  transport 176.12
  interpret 341.9
  succeed 409.7
  submit 433.6
  acquire 472.8
  receive 479.6
  possess 480.13
  possess sexually 480.15
  catch 480.17
  steal 482.13
  understand 521.7
  adopt 621.4
  entail 772.4
  combine 805.3
  suppose 951.10
  think 953.11
take aback
  dismay 127.19
  surprise 131.7
  startle 131.8
take a back seat
  efface oneself 139.7
  retreat 163.6
  retract 168.3
  be inferior 250.4
  depend on 432.12
take a break
  take a rest 20.8
  intervene 826.3
  pause 857.9
  interrupt 857.10
take a chance
  venture 759.24
  risk 972.12
  take chances 1006.7
take action 328.5
take a cut 328.5
take a dim view of
  shudder at 99.5
  disapprove 510.10
take a dive 356.18
take advantage of
  avail oneself of 387.15
  exploit 387.16
  impose on 643.7
  improve the occasion 843.8
take a flier
  trade 737.23
  chance 759.24
take after
  emulate 336.7
  resemble 784.7
take a hard line 425.5
take a header
  tumble 194.8
  plunge 367.6
take a hike! 909.32
take aim at
  intend 380.4
  pull the trigger 459.22
take a liking to 104.22
take a load off 121.8
take a look at 27.13
take a nap
  take a rest 20.8
  sleep 22.13
take an interest in
  love 104.19
  be curious 981.3
  attend to 983.5
take a nose dive
  decrease 252.6
  plunge 367.6
  decline 393.17
take apart
  demolish 395.17
  tear apart 802.14
  disassemble 802.15
take a peek 27.13
take a percentage 631.2
take a picture 714.14
take a powder
  depart 188.7
  flee 368.11
take a raincheck 329.2
take a reading 300.10
take a second look
  repeat 849.7
  re-examine 938.27
take a short cut 268.7
take a stab at 403.7
take a stand 348.6
take at one's word
  believe 953.10
  trust 953.17
take a turn for the better
  rally 392.8
  recuperate 396.19
take a turn for the worse
  worsen 119.3
  decline 393.17
take a walk
  go for a walk 177.29
  not interfere 430.17

take away
remove 176.11
subtract 255.9
take a whack at
attempt 403.7
enter 818.9
take back deny 335.4
recant 363.8
restore 481.4
recover 481.6
apologize 658.5
take by surprise 131.7
take by the hand 449.11
take care
be careful 339.7
beware 494.7
pay attention 983.8
take care of
kill 308.14
perform 328.9
look after 339.9
bribe 378.3
accomplish 407.4
supervise 573.10
serve 577.13
punish 604.11
operate 889.5
care for 1008.19
take care of number one 651.4
take center stage 501.12
take charge
be able 18.11
take command 417.14
take comfort 121.7
take cover hide 346.8
take refuge 1009.7
take credit 622.7
take down devour 8.22
abase 137.5
raze 395.19
reprove 510.17
record 549.15
disassemble 802.15
depress 913.4
fell 913.5
take effect 889.7
take evasive action 368.8
take exception
dissent 333.4
find fault 510.15
take for suppose 951.10
think 953.11
take for a ride
kill 308.14
deceive 356.19
take for granted
accept 123.2
expect 130.5
neglect 340.6
imply 519.4
suppose 951.10
believe 953.10
take heart
cheer up 109.9
be comforted 121.7
be hopeful 124.8
take courage 492.14
take heed
be careful 339.7
beware 494.7
pay attention 983.8
take hold of
seize 480.14
cohere 803.6
attend to 983.5
take-home pay
pay 624.4
standard of living 731.8
take in devour 8.22
see 27.12
hear 48.11
extend 158.9
let in 187.10
absorb 187.13
enter 189.7
attend 221.8
shorten 268.6
deceive 356.14
receive 479.6
capture 480.18
understand 521.7
learn 570.7
host 585.7
include 772.3
entail 772.4
put together 800.5
watch 918.5
take in stride
accept 123.2
patience 134.7
take in the sights 918.6
take into consideration
include 772.3
allow for 959.5
take cognizance of 983.9
take into custody
arrest 429.15
capture 480.18
take issue with
deny 335.4
oppose 451.3
dispute 457.21
take it be strong 15.11
endure 134.6
submit 433.6
suppose 951.10
think 953.11
suffice 991.4
take it easy rest 20.6
compose oneself 106.7
take things as they come 331.15
be cautious 494.5
pause 857.9
swim with the stream 1014.12
take it lying down
take 134.8
submit 433.6
take it on the chin
be strong 15.11
endure 134.6
fail 410.10
take it or leave it
be indifferent 102.5
have no choice 963.11
take it out on 152.16
take it slow relax 20.7
go slowly 175.6
be cautious 494.5
take kindly to
assent 332.8
concur 332.9
consent 441.2
approve 509.9
take leave
vacation 20.9
depart 188.6
bid farewell 188.16
absent oneself 222.8
take leave of one's senses
be foolish 923.6
go mad 926.21
take legal action 673.9
take liberties
have the audacity 142.7
presume on 640.7
take notice 983.6
taken up with 983.17
taken with
adj pleased 95.15
fond of 104.30
prep compared to 943.11
take odds 759.25
takeoff flight 184.8
start 188.2
embarkation 188.2
point of departure 188.5
ascent 193.1
imitation 336.1
burlesque 508.6
similarity 784.1
take off remove 6.6
become airborne 184.38
depart 188.7
leave the ground 193.10
excise 255.10
kill 308.13
mimic 336.6
impersonate 349.12
improve 392.7
put an end to 395.12
gesture 517.21
discount 631.2
resemble 784.7
detach 802.10
begin 818.7
take offense 152.13
take off for 161.9
take office 615.13
take on
grieve 112.17
complain 115.16
feel anxious 126.6
be angry 152.15
practice 328.8
treat 387.12
attempt 403.7
undertake 404.3
contend against 451.4
engage 457.16
receive 479.6
employ 615.14
adopt 621.4
set to work 725.15
take one's leave
depart 188.6
separate 802.8
take one's life in one's hands
brave 492.11
risk one's neck 1006.7
take one's medicine
submit 433.6
take one's punishment 604.21
take one's own life 308.22
take one step at a time 494.5
take one's time
dawdle 175.8
idle 331.12
dally 331.14
take one's leisure 402.4
wait 846.12
take one's word for
believe 953.10
rely on 953.16
take one up on
assent 332.8
acquiesce 441.3
take a dare 454.6
suppose 951.10
take orders obey 326.2
be ordained 698.11
takeout 8.6
take out extract 192.10
excise 255.10
kill 308.14
annihilate 762.7
escort 769.8
end 820.5
take out after
follow 166.3
pursue 382.8
censure 510.13
takeover
appropriation 480.4
stock trading 737.19
combination 805.1
take over
take command 417.14
take possession 472.10
receive 479.6
appropriate 480.19
adopt 621.4
usurp 640.8
combine 805.3
succeed 815.2
take pains
be careful 339.7
make a special effort 403.11
take part 476.5
take pity on 145.4
take place 831.5
take pleasure in 95.13
take possession
appropriate 472.10
take 480.13
take precautions
take steps 494.6
play safe 1007.3
take precedence
rule 249.11
precede 814.2
take pride 136.5
take prisoner
arrest 429.15
capture 480.18
take refuge 1009.7
take refuge in 376.4
take revenge
get even with 506.7
avenge 507.4
take risks 492.10
take shape
be formed 262.8

form 807.5
take shelter 1009.7
take sides with
back 449.13
side with 450.4
take steps
take action 328.5
take precautions 494.6
take stock
take account of 628.9
check 1017.21
take the bait
react 903.5
kid oneself 954.6
take the bull by the horns
be determined 359.8
attempt 403.6
undertake 404.3
brave 492.11
seize the opportunity 843.7
take the cake
best 249.7
triumph 411.3
take the edge off
weaken 16.10
blunt 286.2
moderate 670.6
take the first step 818.10
take the floor
speak up 524.21
make a speech 543.9
legislate 613.10
take the heat for
be responsible for 641.6
accept the responsibility 641.9
take the law into one's own hands
have one's will 323.3
violate 435.4
break the law 674.5
take the lead
lead 165.2
be in front 216.7
take command 417.14
direct 573.8
dominate 612.15
initiate 818.10
take the next step 817.5
take the offensive 459.14
take the opportunity 843.7
take the place of
follow after 835.3
substitute for 862.5
take the rap 604.21
take the stand
depose 334.6
call to witness 598.17
take the trouble 324.3
take the wind out of one's sails
disable 19.10
sadden 112.18
humiliate 137.6
becalm 173.11
disincline 379.4
refute 958.5
thwart 1012.15
take the words out of one's mouth 845.6
take the wraps off 351.4
take the wrong way 342.2
take things as they come
keep cool 106.9
accept 134.7
take it easy 331.15
take time
spend time 821.6
wait 846.12
take to desire 100.14
fall in love 104.22
practice 328.8
become used to 373.11
avail oneself of 387.14
take to heart
respond 93.11
take amiss 152.13
internalize 207.5
believe 953.10
take to mean 341.9
take to task
reprove 510.17
accuse 599.7
punish 604.10
take to the cleaners
best 249.7
lose 473.4
strip 480.24
take turns 825.5
take under consideration 931.14
take under one's wing
back 449.13
benefit 592.3
care for 1008.19
take up
absorb 187.13
practice 328.8
adopt 371.15
undertake 404.3
patronize 449.15
take possession 472.10
collect 472.11
appropriate 480.19
espouse 509.13
discuss 541.12
write upon 556.5
pay in full 624.13
busy oneself with 724.11
assemble 770.18
include 772.3
enter 818.9
pick up 912.8
engross 983.13
take up a collection 770.18
take up arms
contend 457.13
go to war 458.16
take upon oneself
undertake 404.3
presume 640.6
accept the responsibility 641.9
take up residence 159.17
take up the cause of 449.13
take up with
confer 541.11
associate with 582.18
befriend 587.10
take with a grain of salt
doubt 955.6
allow for 959.5
talcum powder 1016.12
tale lie 354.11
gossip 552.7
story 719.3
yarn 722.3
tally 1017.6
talent ability 18.2
flair 413.4
talented person 413.12
artistry 712.7
smartness 920.2
genius 920.8
talented gifted 413.29
smart 920.14
talent scout 704.27
talisman 691.5
talk
n language 523.1
speech 524.1
diction 532.1
conversation 541.3
oration 543.2
report 552.6
gossip 552.7
lesson 568.7
v communicate 343.6
betray 351.6
signify 517.17
speak 523.18
converse 524.19
discuss 541.12
make a speech 543.9
gossip 552.12
talkative
v loquacious 540.9
adj communicative 343.10
disclosive 351.10
speaking 524.31
wordy 538.12
talk back
be insolent 142.8
answer 939.4
talk dirty 513.6
talk down to
condescend 137.8
give oneself airs 141.8
talking-to 510.6
talk into 375.23
talk of the town
report 552.6
repute 662.1
talk on 540.5
talk out of 379.3
talk out of turn
betray 351.6
speak inopportunely 844.4
talk over
persuade 375.23
confer 541.11
discuss 541.12
convince 953.18
talk show 1034.18
talk-show host 1034.23
talk someone's ear off 524.20
talk to oneself 542.3
talk turkey 535.2
talk with 541.9
tall large 257.16
long 267.7
giant 272.16
inflated 502.12
grandiloquent 545.8
unbelievable 955.10
tall order 1013.2
tallow whiteness 37.2
oil 1056.1
tall tale 354.11
tally
n label 517.13
report 549.7
account 628.2
likeness 784.3
agreement 788.1
list 871.1
sum 1017.6
v compute 253.6
coincide 778.4
agree 788.6
list 871.8
number 1017.17
calculate 1017.18
tallyho! 382.13
Talmud scripture 683.5
tradition 842.2
talons
governance 417.5
clutches 474.4
control 612.2
tame
v accustom 373.9
domesticate 432.11
moderate 670.6
tend 1070.7
adj inert 173.14
domesticated 228.34
meek 433.15
moderate 670.10
tamp indent 284.14
thrust 902.12
tamper with
meddle 214.7
manipulate 354.17
bribe 378.3
adulterate 797.12
tampon
medical dressing 86.33
wadding 293.5
tan
v brown 40.2
embalm 397.10
prepare 405.6
punish 604.15
adj brown 40.3
tandem
n rig 179.5
adv behind 217.13
tang taste 62.1
zest 68.2
characteristic 865.4
sting 1001.5
tangent
n convergence 169.1
neighbor 223.6
straight line 277.2
adj converging 169.3
in contact 223.17
tangerine 42.2
tangible
touchable 73.11
manifest 348.8
substantial 763.6

tangle
  n complex 799.2
  v trap 356.20
  catch 480.17
  complicate 799.3
  involve 898.2
  hamper 1012.11
tangle with 457.17
tangy 68.7
tank
  n reservoir 241.1
  storehouse 386.6
  prison 429.8
  jail 429.9
  v package 212.9
  prearrange 965.5
tanker ship 1075.2
tank top 5.29
tanned brown 40.3
  prepared 405.16
tannery 739.3
tantalizing
  appetizing 63.10
  delightful 97.7
  desirable 100.30
  exciting 105.30
  disappointing 132.6
  alluring 377.8
  interesting 983.19
tantamount
  reciprocal 777.10
  equivalent 790.8
tantrum 152.8
Taoist 675.32
tap
  n thud 52.3
  explosive sound 56.1
  touch 73.1
  outlet 190.9
  tube 239.6
  valve 239.10
  stopper 293.4
  root 310.22
  rap 902.7
  v listen 48.10
  thud 52.15
  make explosive sound 56.6
  touch 73.6
  transport 176.14
  draw off 192.12
  open 292.11
  perforate 292.15
  take from 480.21
  beat time 708.44
  rap 902.18
tap-dance
  dance 705.5
  procrastinate 846.11
  quibble 936.9
tape
  n record 50.12
  medical dressing 86.33
  strip 271.4
  recording media 549.10
  boxing 754.1
  end 820.1
  v sound 50.14
  record 549.15
  put together 800.5
  teleview 1035.15
tape cassette 50.12
tape measure 271.4
taper
  n narrowing 270.2
  lighter 1021.4
  light source 1026.1
  candle 1026.2
  wick 1026.7
  v converge 169.2
  narrow 270.11
  sharpen 285.7
  adj tapered 270.15
tape recorder 50.11
tape recording 50.12
tapestry 712.11
tapeworm
  appetite 100.7
  worm 311.39
tap out fail 410.9
  lose 473.4
  go bankrupt 625.7
taps blare 53.5
  funeral 309.5
  night 315.4
  call 517.16
  end 820.1
tap water 10.49
tar
  n blackness 38.4
  opium 87.16
  mariner 183.1
  v cover 295.22
  coat 295.24
tar and feather 604.16
tarantula 311.33
tardy retarded 175.12
  anachronistic 833.3
  late 846.16
tares 391.4
target
  objective 380.2
  laughingstock 508.7
  fission 1038.8
target shooting 744.1
tariff 773.4
tarmac 383.6
tarnish
  n stigma 661.6
  stain 1004.3
  v decolor 36.5
  defile 80.17
  vilify 512.10
  stigmatize 661.9
  stain 1004.6
tarot reading 962.2
tarry
  v be still 173.7
  dawdle 175.8
  endure 827.6
  linger on 827.7
  wait 846.12
  continue 856.3
  adj black 38.8
tart
  n pastry 10.41
  strumpet 665.14
  adj acrimonious 17.14
  bitter 64.6
  sour 67.5
  caustic 144.23
tartan check 47.4
  insignia 647.1
Tartar 110.11
Tarzan 15.6
task
  n undertaking 404.1
  lesson 568.7
  commission 615.1
  charge 643.3
  job 724.2
  work 725.4
  v accuse 599.7
  impose 643.4
  work 725.16
task force
  military unit 461.22
  navy 461.27
taskmaster 574.2
taste
  n bite 8.2
  senses 24.5
  gust 62.1
  sample 62.4
  liking 100.2
  appetite 100.7
  hint 248.4
  preference 371.5
  fastidiousness 495.1
  tastefulness 496.1
  elegance 533.1
  specimen 786.3
  characteristic 865.4
  discrimination 944.1
  v eat 8.20
  sense 24.6
  taste of 62.7
  savor 63.5
  experience 831.8
  experiment 942.8
taste bud 62.5
tasteful
  in good taste 496.8
  elegant 533.6
  artistic 712.20
tasteless
  wishy-washy 16.17
  insipid 65.2
  dull 117.6
  vulgar 497.10
  inelegant 534.2
  base 661.12
taste test 62.4
tasty good 63.8
  delectable 97.10
tata 188.22
tater
  vegetables 10.35
  baseball 745.3
tatter
  n scrap 248.3
  piece 793.3
  v wear 393.20
tattle
  n gossip 552.7
  v betray 351.6
  inform on 551.12
  gossip 552.12
tattletale
  n informer 551.6
  newsmonger 552.9
  adj telltale 551.19
tattoo
  n fanfare 53.5
  staccato 55.1
  mark 517.5
  constancy 847.2
  hit 902.4
  shot 904.4
  v variegate 47.7
  rain 316.10
  mark 517.19
taught 928.18
taunt
  n indignity 156.2
  gibe 508.2
  v be insolent 142.7
  offend 156.5
  scoff 508.9
taupe gray 39.4
  brown 40.3
taut tense 128.13
  in suspense 130.12
  shipshape 180.20
  rigid 1046.11
tautology
  wordiness 538.2
  redundancy 849.3
  superfluity 993.4
tavern
  restaurant 8.17
  bar 88.20
  inn 228.15
  entertainment 743.13
tawdry gaudy 501.20
  paltry 998.21
tawny 40.3
tax
  n demand 421.1
  taxation 630.9
  charge 643.3
  overdoing 993.6
  v burden 297.13
  accuse 599.7
  charge 630.12
  impose 643.4
  strain 725.10
  task 725.16
taxable income
  pay 624.4
  tax 630.9
tax collector
  taxer 630.10
  collector 770.15
tax-deductible 630.16
tax evasion
  shirking 368.2
  tax 630.9
taxi
  n public vehicle 179.13
  v ride 177.33
  take off 184.38
taxidermy 397.3
taxing
  n burden 297.7
  demand 421.1
  accusation 599.1
  imposition 643.1
  strain 725.2
  adj demanding 421.9
taxonomy
  biological classification 305.3
  nomenclature 527.1
  classification 801.3
  grouping 808.3

arrangement 809.1
taxpayer payer 624.9
good or respectable citizen 659.3
tax return 630.9
tea meal 8.6
marijuana 87.11
afternoon tea 582.13
teach 568.10
teacher preparer 405.5
adviser 422.3
tutor 568.1
instructor 571.1
master 575.1
clergy 699.10
professional 726.4
teacher's pet
weakling 16.6
favorite 104.16
teach one a lesson 604.10
team
n rig 179.5
outfit 617.7
baseball team 745.2
football team 746.2
basketball team 747.2
hockey team 749.2
attack 749.5
lawn bowling 750.3
golfer 751.2
squad 752.2
company 770.3
two 873.2
v double 873.5
teamed 805.6
teammate
companion 588.3
co-worker 616.5
teamster
coachman 178.9
driver 178.10
team up
cooperate 450.3
befriend 587.11
double 873.5
tear
n humor 2.24
weeping 115.2
v secrete 13.5
tear
n trauma 85.38
drinking spree 88.6
break 802.4
v pain 26.7
speed 174.8
hurry 174.9
open 292.11
injure 393.13
make haste 401.5
rage 671.11
sever 802.11
tear apart
demolish 395.17
find fault 510.15
pull apart 802.14
tear down blacken 38.7
raze 395.19
find fault 510.15
defame 512.9
disassemble 802.15
teardrop tear 2.24
weeping 115.2
drop 282.3
tearful
sorrowful 112.26
teary 115.21
tearing
n severance 802.2
adj welling 2.33
tearjerker 93.8
tear limb from limb
torture 604.16
rip apart 802.14
tearoom 8.17
tear open open 292.11
breach 292.14
tears
secretion 13.2
weeping 115.2
tease
n tormentor 96.10
disappointment 132.1
deceiver 357.1
v annoy 96.13
disappoint 132.2
attract 377.6
importune 440.12
banter 490.5
teaspoon 8.12
teatime 8.6
teats 283.6
technical
skilled 413.26
occupational 724.16
specialized 866.5
scientific 928.28
insignificant 998.17
technicality
technical term 526.5
complexity 799.1
specialty 866.1
an insignificancy 998.6
technical knockout 754.3
technician
expert 413.11
skilled worker 726.6
engineer 726.7
specialist 866.3
computer whiz 1042.17
technicolored 35.16
technique
manner 384.1
skill 413.1
art 413.7
artistic treatment 712.9
skiing 753.3
knowledge 928.1
technology art 413.7
engineer 726.7
science 928.10
technospeak 523.9
tectonics 266.1
teddy bear figure 349.6
toy 743.16
tedious dull 117.6
monotonous 118.9
same 781.6
repetitive 849.15
mediocre 1005.7
tee 751.1
teed off 152.30
teed up 405.16
teeming
n proliferation 890.2
infestation 910.2
adj pregnant 78.18
permeated 221.15
diffuse 538.11
crowded 770.22
swarming 884.9
productive 890.9
infested 910.11
imaginative 986.18
plentiful 991.7
superabundant 993.19
teen-aged 301.14
teenager 302.1
tee off on
attack 459.15
criticize 510.14
teeter
n alternation 916.5
oscillator 916.9
v be weak 16.8
vacillate 362.8
change 854.5
alternate 916.13
teeth dentition 2.8
acrimony 17.5
clutches 474.4
speech organ 524.18
sail in the teeth of the wind 182.24
teetotaler 668.4
Teflon-coated 1008.23
telecast
n television broadcast 1035.2
v publish 352.10
televise 1035.14
adj published 352.17
telecommunication
communications 343.5
signaling 347.1
radio 1034.1
telecommute 724.1
teleconference
telephone call 347.13
conference 541.6
telegram
n telegraph 347.14
message 552.4
v telegraph 347.20
telegraph
n telegraph recorder 347.2
telegram 347.14
v send a message 347.20
telekinesis 689.6
telemarketing 347.13
telemetry
measurement 300.1
semiautomatic control 1041.4
rocketry 1074.1
telepathic
communicational 343.9
psychic 689.24
telepathy
communication 343.1
mental telepathy 689.9
telephone
n communication device 347.4
v phone 347.19
telephone book
reference book 554.9
directory 574.10
telephone number 347.12
telephone operator 347.9
telephoto 714.17
telescope
n optical instrument 29.4
observatory 1072.17
v shorten 268.6
televise publish 352.10
telecast 1035.14
television
communications medium 347.3
informant 551.5
news 552.1
electronics 1033.1
TV 1035.1
television personality 1035.2
television repairman 1035.13
television studio 1035.6
telex
n telegraph 347.2
telegram 347.14
v telegraph 347.20
tell impress 93.15
communicate 343.7
divulge 351.5
say 524.22
inform 551.8
report 552.11
narrate 719.6
spin a yarn 722.6
have influence 894.10
evidence 957.8
recognize 989.12
matter 997.12
number 1017.17
teller
informant 551.5
banker 729.11
telling
n informing 343.2
fiction 722.1
narration 722.2
numeration 1017.9
adj powerful 18.12
exciting 105.30
vigorous 544.11
influential 894.13
evidential 957.16
notable 997.19
tell it like it is 644.12
tell off 510.18
tell on betray 351.6
inform on 551.13
telltale
n divulgence 351.2
clue 517.9
hint 551.4
informer 551.6
newsmonger 552.9
adj tattletale 551.19
tell the truth
confess 351.7
speak true 644.11
disillusion 977.2
temerity 493.1
temp worker 726.2
temperature 1019.3

temper
n firmness 15.3
hot temper 110.4
anger 152.6
nature 767.4
disposition 978.3
mood 978.4
tempering 1046.4
v strengthen 15.13
mature 303.9
moderate 670.6
imbue 797.11
qualify 959.3
harden 1046.7
toughen 1049.3
temperament
pitch 709.4
nature 767.4
disposition 978.3
temperance
sedateness 106.4
sobriety 516.1
cardinal virtues 653.4
temperateness 668.1
restraint 670.1
temperate
sedate 106.14
sober 516.3
moderate 668.9
mild 670.10
warm 1019.24
cool 1023.12
temperature 1019.3
temper tantrum 152.8
tempest outburst 105.9
windstorm 318.12
storm 671.4
tempest in a teacup 998.3
tempest in a teapot 355.2
template 786.6
temple side 218.1
religious building 703.2
tempo time 709.24
pulsation 916.3
temporal
unsacred 686.3
secularist 695.16
lay 700.3
chronological 821.7
transient 828.7
timekeeping 832.15
material 1052.10
temporary
n worker 726.2
adj interim 826.4
transient 828.7
substitute 862.8
conditional 959.8
unreliable 971.20
makeshift 995.7
temporize
n be a timeserver 363.9
v not face up to 368.13
protract 827.9
procrastinate 846.11
tempt seduce 104.23
induce 375.22
attract 377.6
tempt fate endeavor 403.1
be foolish 923.6
temptress
tempter 377.4
seductress 665.15
tempus fugit 821.17
ten
n card 758.2
number 882.6
beauty 1016.9
v intervene 826.3
tenable
acceptable 107.12
defensible 460.15
believable 953.24
tenacious
resolute 359.11
persevering 360.8
obstinate 361.8
retentive 474.8
courageous 492.18
adhesive 803.12
tough 1049.4
viscous 1062.12
tenant
n inhabitant 227.2
lodger 227.8
occupant 470.4
v inhabit 225.7
Ten Commandments
ethics 636.1
ten 882.6
tend
take direction 161.7
gravitate 297.15
look after 339.9
serve 577.13
have a tendency 896.3
heed 983.6
care for 1008.19
groom 1070.7
tendency
direction 161.1
preference 371.5
aptitude 413.5
nature 767.4
inclination 896.1
probability 968.1
disposition 978.3
tender
n attendant 577.5
v offer 439.4
give 478.12
pay 624.10
adj sensitive 24.12
sore 26.11
soft-colored 35.22
sympathetic 93.20
loving 104.27
kind 143.13
pitying 145.7
seaworthy 180.18
light 298.12
immature 301.10
careful 339.10
lenient 427.7
unbalanced 791.5
soft 1047.8
tenderfoot
recruit 461.18
novice 572.9
jockey 757.2
newcomer 774.4
beginner 818.2
ignoramus 930.8
tenderize 1047.6
tenderloin
city district 230.6
brothel 665.9
tender loving care 449.2
tendon 271.2
tendril filament 271.1
coil 281.2
branch 310.20
part 793.4
tenement sty 80.11
apartment 228.13
high rise 228.14
tenet rule 419.2
a belief 953.2
tennis 748
tennis ball
tennis 748.1
elastic 1048.3
tennis court
smoothness 287.3
playing area 743.11
tennis 748.1
tennis shoes 5.27
tenor
n high voice 58.6
direction 161.1
meaning 518.1
music part 708.22
voice 709.5
mode 765.4
nature 767.4
transcript 785.4
trend 896.2
adj high 58.13
vocal 708.50
tenpins 750.1
tense
n grammar 530.12
time 821.1
v strain 725.10
stiffen 1046.9
adj restless 105.27
anxious 126.7
nervous 128.13
in suspense 130.12
phonetic 524.30
unfriendly 589.9
rigid 1046.11
tension
n anxiety 126.1
tenseness 128.3
disaccord 456.1
enmity 589.1
strain 725.2
overextension 993.7
urgency 997.4
voltage 1032.12
rigidity 1046.2
stretching 1048.2
v stiffen 1046.9
tent
n medical apparatus 86.33
canvas 295.8
v camp 225.11
tentacles 474.4
tentative
n attempt 403.2
adj slow 175.10
hesitant 362.11
trial 403.16
cautious 494.8
interim 826.4
substitute 862.8
ignorant 930.12
examining 938.37
experimental 942.11
unreliable 971.20
makeshift 995.7
tenterhooks 126.1
tenth
n fraction 882.14
adj ordinal number 882.22
ten to one 968.8
tenuous dainty 248.7
infinitesimal 258.14
thin 270.16
rare 299.4
ethereal 764.6
incoherent 804.4
tenure possession 469.1
position 724.5
term 824.3
period of duty 825.4
tepee 228.10
tepid indifferent 102.6
warm 1019.24
tergiversate 854.5
term
n boundary 211.3
sign 518.6
word 526.1
phrase 529.1
end 820.1
time 821.1
moment 824.2
duration 824.3
tenure 825.4
v name 527.11
terminal
n destination 186.5
railway 383.7
speech component 524.9
end 820.1
stop 857.2
output device 1042.9
adj unhealthy 85.54
past hope 125.15
limital 210.10
bordering 211.11
dying 307.33
deadly 308.23
completing 407.9
final 820.11
disastrous 1011.15
terminal illness 85.2
terminate
complete 407.6
end 820.5
cease 857.6
result 887.4
terminology
nomenclature 527.1
dictionary 871.4
termite 311.34
term paper 556.1
terra land 234.1
Earth 1072.10
terrace
balcony 197.22

  horizontal 201.3
  platform 901.13
terra cotta 715.2
terra-cotta 40.4
terra firma
  ground 199.3
  land 234.1
  foundation 901.6
terrain
  open space 158.4
  region 231.1
  land 234.1
  arena 463.1
terrapin 311.25
terrarium 228.24
terrestrial
  terrene 234.4
  secularist 695.16
  celestial 1072.25
terrible
  horrid 98.19
  frightening 127.30
  remarkable 247.11
  wrong 638.3
  dreadful 1000.9
  hideous 1015.11
terrific
  frightening 127.30
  remarkable 247.11
  superb 999.15
terrified 127.26
territorial 231.8
territory
  open space 158.4
  region 231.1
  area 231.5
  country 232.1
  land 234.1
  sphere of influence 894.4
terror
  n fear 127.1
  frightener 127.9
  ruffian 593.4
  violent person 671.10
  adj terrifying 127.29
terrorism
  terrorization 127.7
  despotism 612.10
  violence 671.1
  revolutionism 860.2
terrorist
  n alarmist 127.8
  destroyer 395.8
  violent person 671.9
  revolutionist 860.3
  adj revolutionist 860.6
terrorize
  intimidate 127.20
  threaten 514.2
  domineer 612.16
  rage 671.11
terror-stricken
  terrified 127.26
  panicky 127.27
terse taciturn 344.9
  elegant 533.6
  concise 537.6
  aphoristic 974.6
tertiary
  n color system 35.7
  adj third 877.4
tessellation
  mosaic 47.4
  insertion 191.1
test
  n diagnosis 91.12
  shell 295.15
  measure 300.2
  contest 457.3
  examination 938.2
  trial 942.2
  v interrogate 938.21
  experiment 942.8
  verify 970.12
  adj experimental 942.11
testament 478.10
Testament 683.2
test case 942.2
testes 2.13
test flight flight 184.9
  tryout 942.3
testicles 2.13
testify depose 334.6
  signify 517.17
  call to witness 598.17
  attest 957.9
testify against 551.12
testimonial
  n advertisement 352.6
  celebration 487.1
  recommendation 509.4
  certificate 549.6
  monument 549.12
  testimony 957.2
  adj documentary 549.18
testimony
  deposition 334.3
  evidence 598.8
  attestation 957.2
test pilot aviator 185.1
  experimenter 942.6
test run 942.3
test the waters
  try one's hand 403.10
  sound out 942.9
test tube 858.10
testy
  irascible 110.19
  argumentative 935.19
tetanus 85.6
téte-à-téte
  n chat 541.4
  adj intimate 582.24
  both 873.7
  adv conversationally 541.14
tether
  n shackle 428.4
  v bind 428.10
  yoke 800.10
  secure 855.8
tetrad
  n four 879.1
  adj four 879.4
tetrahedral 278.9
Texas Leaguer 745.3
Texas tea 87.11
text
  rendering 341.2
  representation 349.1
  sign 518.6
  writing 547.10
  literature 547.12
  printed matter 548.10
  textbook 554.10
  book contents 554.12
  playbook 704.21
  musical score 708.28
  book 718.1
  part of writing 793.2
  topic 937.1
  maxim 974.1
textbook book 554.1
  text 554.10
textile
  n material 4.1
  adj woven 740.7
texture material 4.1
  network 170.3
  structure 266.1
  surface texture 294.1
  weaving 740.1
than
  adv otherwise 780.11
  prep compared to 943.11
thank 150.4
thankful 150.5
thankless
  unpleasant 98.17
  disliked 99.9
  ungrateful 151.4
thanksgiving
  thanks 150.2
  prayer 696.4
thank-you 150.2
that
  adj this 865.14
  conj lest 897.7
that's the ticket
  interj bravo! 509.22
  phrs that's it 788.13
thatch
  n head of hair 3.4
  v cover 295.23
thaw
  n melting 1020.3
  v have pity 145.4
  melt 1020.21
  liquefy 1064.5
theater hall 197.4
  setting 209.2
  enclosed place 212.3
  arena 463.1
  battlefield 463.2
  schoolroom 567.11
  the entertainment industry 704.1
  playhouse 704.14
theater of operations
  war 458.1
  battlefield 463.2
theater of the absurd 704.1
theatrical
  n actor 707.2
  adj emotionalistic 93.19
  affected 500.15
  stagy 501.24
  dramatic 704.33
theatrics
  emotionalism 93.9
  display 501.4
  dramatics 704.2
theft
  taking 480.1
  thievery 482.1
  robbery 482.3
theism
  monotheism 675.5
  piety 692.1
them
  the authorities 575.15
  the others 865.5
thematic
  recurrent 849.13
  topical 937.4
theme
  motif 498.7
  identification 517.11
  morphology 526.3
  treatise 556.1
  musical passage 708.24
  plot 722.4
  topic 937.1
theme park 743.14
theme song
  identification 517.11
  radio signature 1034.19
themselves 865.5
then
  adj former 837.10
  adv additionally 253.11
  at that time 821.9
  thereat 821.11
  subsequently 835.6
  formerly 837.13
  hence 888.7
then and there 830.8
theocracy
  government 612.4
  hierarchy 698.7
theological
  n theologian 676.3
  adj religious 676.4
theologist 676.3
theology
  religious doctrine 675.1
  religion 676.1
theorem premise 935.7
  axiom 974.2
theoretical
  ideational 932.9
  hypothetical 951.13
theorist 951.7
theory
  harmonics 709.1
  idea 932.1
  hypothesis 951.1
  theorization 951.1
  explanation 951.2
  opinion 953.6
theory of evolution 861.4
theory of relativity 158.6
therapeutic
  remedial 86.39
  helpful 449.21
therapist
  health care professional 90.8
  psychologist 92.10
therapy medicine 90.1
  therapeutics 91.1
  cure 396.7
  aid 449.1
there
  at that location 159.24
  present 221.16

thereabouts
there 159.24
near 223.20
thereafter
subsequently 835.6
in future 839.10
thereby 384.12
therefore
accordingly 766.11
consequently 887.7
hence 888.7
all things considered 946.17
therein 207.10
thereof 188.20
thermal
n hot air 1019.9
adj warm 1019.24
thermal unit 1019.19
thermochemical
pyrological 1019.32
chemical 1060.9
thermodynamic 1019.32
thermometer 1019.20
thermonuclear 1038.19
thermonuclear power
nuclear energy 18.4
atomic energy 1038.15
thermonuclear reaction fission 1038.8
fusion 1038.9
thermonuclear weapons 462.1
thermostat 1019.20
thesaurus
vocabulary 526.13
reference book 554.9
dictionary 871.4
these 865.14
thesis treatise 556.1
accent 709.25
meter 720.7
beat 850.3
premise 935.7
supposition 951.3
thespian
n actor 707.2
adj dramatic 704.33
thew 15.2
they
the authorities 575.15
exclusiveness 773.3
them 865.5
thick
n middle 819.1
v thicken 269.5
density 1045.10
adj raucous 58.15
three-dimensional 269.8
luxuriant 310.43
inarticulate 525.12
familiar 587.19
teeming 884.9
stupid 922.15
unbelievable 955.10
dense 1045.12
viscous 1062.12
adv densely 1045.15
thicken increase 251.4
grow thick 269.5
densify 1045.10
solidify 1046.8
emulsify 1062.10
thicket
dense plant growth 310.15
bunch 770.7
thick skin
insensibility 25.1
callousness 94.3
shell 295.15
armor 460.3
thief robber 483.1
evildoer 593.1
criminal 660.9
thigh body part 2.7
fowl part 10.23
leg 177.14
thimbleful 248.2
thin
v dilute 16.11
subtract 255.9
shrink 260.9
thin down 270.12
rarefy 299.3
dissipate 771.5
liquefy 1064.5
prune 1069.17
adj shrill 58.14
insipid 65.2
dainty 248.7
infinitesimal 258.14
shrunk 260.13
slender 270.16
shallow 276.5
rare 299.4
tenuous 764.6
sparse 885.5
unbelievable 955.10
meager 992.10
transparent 1029.4
adv thinly 270.23
thin air air 317.1
spirit 764.3
thing love affair 104.6
act 328.3
preference 371.5
occupation 724.1
something 763.3
mode 765.4
particular 766.3
affair 831.3
specialty 866.1
object 1052.4
things wardrobe 5.2
equipment 385.4
belongings 471.2
thingumajig 1052.5
thin ice 1006.1
think expect 130.5
care 339.6
intend 380.4
cogitate 931.8
suppose 951.10
opine 953.11
think ahead
anticipate 839.6
foresee 961.5
think back 989.10
think better of
repent 113.7
reconsider 931.15
thinker wise man 921.1
intellectual 929.1
reasoner 935.11
philosopher 952.8
think highly of
respect 155.4
value 997.13
think little of
disdain 157.3
not hesitate 359.10
disapprove 510.10
underestimate 950.2
be inattentive 984.2
attach little importance to 998.12
think nothing of
disdain 157.3
not hesitate 359.10
underestimate 950.2
be inattentive 984.2
attach little importance to 998.12
take it easy 1014.12
think out loud 542.3
think over 931.13
think tank 942.5
think the world of 104.21
think the worst of 125.9
think twice
be cautious 494.5
be unsure 971.10
thinner
paint 35.8
solvent 270.10
diluting agent 1064.4
thinning
n weakening 16.5
shrinking 260.3
rarefaction 299.2
dispersion 771.1
cultivation 1069.13
adj solvent 1064.8
thin-skinned
sensitive 24.12
touchy 110.21
third
n harmonic interval 709.20
baseball 745.1
fraction 878.2
mediocre 1005.6
v trisect 878.3
adj tertiary 877.4
the third-degree 938.13
third-degree burn
trauma 85.38
burn 1020.6
the third dimension 269.2
the third estate 606.1
third person 530.7
third-rate 1005.9
third string
n inferiority 250.1
team 617.7
substitute 862.2
adj inferior 250.6
third world
independents 430.12
neutral 467.4
the poor 619.3
thirst
n craving 100.6
appetite 100.7
tendency 896.1
dryness 1066.1
v hunger 100.19
drink up 1066.5
thirsty
craving 100.24
needing water 100.26
absorbent 187.17
dry 1066.7
thirteen 882.7
thirty-second note 709.14
thirty-two 882.7
this 865.14
this day
n the present 838.1
adv now 838.3
this instant 838.1
thistle thorn 285.5
insignia 647.1
thistledown down 3.19
lightness 298.2
softness 1047.4
this way 766.10
thong
swimwear 5.29
strip 271.4
whip 605.1
Thor thunder 56.5
rain 316.6
lightning 1025.17
thorax 283.6
thorn
affliction 96.8
bramble 285.5
adhering thing 803.4
bane 1001.1
thorny
prickly 285.10
difficult 1013.17
thorough
downright 247.12
painstaking 339 11
meticulous 339.12
confirmed 373.18
complete 407.12
cautious 494.8
thoroughgoing 794.10
thoroughbred
n aristocrat 607.4
nobleman 608.4
horse 757.2
adj upper-class 607.10
wellborn 608.11
those 865.14
though 338.8
thought
n expectation 130.1
considerateness 143.3
swift thing 174.6
hint 248.4
advice 422.1
remark 524.3
admixture 797.7
intellect 919.1
act of thought 931
idea 932.1
opinion 953.6
attention 983.1
adj cognitive 931.21
thoughtful
solemn 111.3
considerate 143.16
careful 339.10

courteous 504.14
judicious 920.19
cognitive 931.21
thoughtless
inconsiderate 144.18
careless 340.11
unthinking 365.10
improvident 406.15
unskillful 414.15
foolish 923.8
unwise 923.10
vacuous 933.4
inattentive 984.6
scatterbrained 985.16
thought-out 935.21
thought-provoking 983.19
thousand
n number 882.10
a myriad 884.4
adj numerous 884.6
thrash defeat 412.9
whip 604.13
separate 773.6
pound 902.16
thread
n symbol of weakness 16.7
filament 271.1
series 812.2
v continue 812.4
threadbare trite 117.9
worn 393.31
threads 5.1
threat warning 399.1
menace 514.1
danger 1006.1
threaten
intimidate 127.20
forebode 133.11
warn 399.5
menace 514.2
be in the future 839.6
be imminent 840.2
work evil 1000.6
three
n playing card 758.2
trio 876.1
adj triple 876.3
three-alarm fire 1019.13
three cheers! 509.22
3-D
n photography 714.1
adj optical 29.10
spatial 158.10
photographic 714.17
three-dimensional
optical 29.10
spatial 158.10
thick 269.8
photographic 714.17
tripartite 878.4
threefold
v triplicate 877.2
adj triple 877.3
adv triply 877.5
three-in-one
almighty 677.17
three 876.3
three-legged race 457.12
The Three Musketeers 588.6
three-part harmony 708.3
three sheets to the wind 88.33
three-sided sided 218.7
tripartite 878.4
threesome golfer 751.2
three 876.1
Three Wise Men 921.5
thresh separate 773.6
pound 902.16
threshold
n porch 189.6
vestibule 197.19
boundary 211.3
sill 901.9
adj bordering 211.11
thresh out 541.12
thrift
lending institution 620.4
economy 635.1
thrift institution 620.4
thrifty 635.6
thrill
n pang 26.2
tingle 74.1
excitement 105.2
v suffer 26.8
tingle 74.5
delight 95.10
tickle 105.15
be excited 105.18
thrive grow 14.2
have energy 17.11
enlarge 259.7
flourish 1010.8
throat
body passage 2.18
narrow place 270.3
throaty raucous 58.15
inarticulate 525.12
throb
n staccato 55.1
trepidation 105.5
beat 709.26
pulsation 916.3
flutter 917.4
v suffer 26.8
resonate 54.6
drum 55.4
be excited 105.18
pulsate 916.12
flutter 917.12
throes pang 26.2
seizure 85.6
distress 96.5
compunction 113.2
spasm 917.6
thrombosis 85.6
throne
n toilet 12.11
royal seat 417.11
v install 615.12
glorify 662.13
throng
n multitude 770.4
crowd 884.3
v come together 770.16
throttle disable 19.10
silence 51.8
strangle 308.19
suppress 428.8
seize 480.14
through
adj completed 407.11
ended 820.8
adv breadthwise 269.9
prep over 159.28
via 161.27
by means of 384.13
during 821.14
through and through 794.17
throughout
adv scatteringly 771.12
all over 794.17
prep over 159.28
during 821.14
through thick and thin
through fire and water 360.10
throughout 794.17
through with 820.8
throw
n cast 759.9
toss 904.3
v give birth 1.3
place violently 159.13
make pottery 742.6
play baseball 745.5
discompose 811.4
fling 904.10
fell 913.5
prearrange 965.5
stump 971.14
throw a fit 152.15
throw a scare into 127.16
throw away
reject 372.2
consume 388.3
discard 390.7
squander 486.3
underact 704.31
eject 909.13
do away with 909.21
attach little importance to 998.12
throwback
regression 163.1
relapse 394.1
atavism 859.2
reverse 1011.3
throw caution to the wind
brave 492.11
take chances 1006.7
throw down
raze 395.19
overthrow 395.20
fell 913.5
throw down the gauntlet
confront 216.8
resist 453.2
defy 454.3
make war on 458.15
throw-in
basketball game 747.3
soccer game 752.3
throw in the towel
give up 370.7
lose 412.12
surrender 433.8
throw into chaos 985.7
throw into the street 909.15
throw in with
side with 450.4
league 805.4
throw light upon
explain 341.10
illuminate 1025.28
thrown for a loss 412.15
throw off take off 6.6
shed 6.10
dislodge 160.6
do carelessly 340.9
improvise 365.8
break the habit 374.3
free oneself from 431.8
say 524.22
separate 802.8
do away with 909.21
let out 909.24
throw off balance 791.3
throw off the scent
mislead 356.16
evade 368.7
distract 985.6
throw one's hat in the ring 609.39
throw one's money away 486.3
throw one's weight around
urge 375.14
wield authority 417.13
exercise influence 894.9
throw one a curve 356.16
throw oneself at the feet of
fawn 138.7
beg for mercy 145.6
bow down 433.10
entreat 440.11
throw oneself on the mercy of the court
repent 113.7
confess 351.7
plead 598.19
throw open 292.11
throw out
reject 372.2
discard 390.7
separate 802.8
eject 909.13
disgorge 909.25
throw out of joint
dislocate 160.5
disjoint 802.16
throw out the baby with the bath water 486.4
throw overboard
discard 390.7
eliminate 773.5
eject 909.13
throw the book at 604.11
throw together
do carelessly 340.9
improvise 365.8
acquire 472.9
mix 797.10
throw to the wolves
abandon 370.5
discard 390.7
punish 604.11
throw up give up 370.7
relinquish 475.3
vomit 909.26
elevate 912.5
thrush 710.23
thrust
n vim 17.2
power 18.4
acceleration 174.4

pass 459.3
major part 792.6
push 902.2
propulsion 904.1
rocketry 1074.8
v place violently 159.13
launch an attack 459.17
impel 902.11
push 902.12
propel 904.9
thrust and parry 457.13
thrust aside 984.4
thruster rocket 1074.2
spacecraft 1075.2
thrust upon
urge upon 439.9
force upon 478.20
thud
n dull sound 52.3
v make a dull sound 52.15
thug killer 308.11
combatant 461.1
bandit 483.4
ruffian 593.3
criminal 660.9
henchman 616.8
thumb
n finger 73.5
v touch 73.6
hitchhike 177.31
fight 754.4
thumbnail review 946.2
thumb one's nose at
disdain 157.3
flout 454.4
thumbprint 517.7
thumbscrew
contractor 260.6
torture 605.4
thumbs-down
refusal 442.1
veto 444.2
disapproval 510.1
banishment 909.4
thumbs-up
affirmative 332.2
permission 443.1
thumb through
browse 570.13
examine cursorily 938.26
thump
n dull sound 52.3
hit 902.4
v make a dull sound 52.15
drum 55.4
whip 604.13
beat time 708.44
hit 902.14
pound 902.16
thunder
n noise 53.3
reverberation 54.2
rumbling sound 56.5
v din 53.7
boom 56.9
proclaim 352.13
speak 524.25
thunderbolt
surprise 131.2
swiftness 174.6
lightning 1025.17
thunderclap noise 53.3
thunder 56.5
surprise 131.2
thunderhead
omen 133.6
warning sign 399.3
thunderstorm
thunder 56.5
rain 316.3
storm 671.4
thunderstruck 122.9
thus how 384.9
thusly 766.10
similarly 784.18
hence 888.7
to illustrate 957.23
thus far so far 211.16
limited 248.10
until now 838.4
thwack
n explosive sound 56.1
hit 902.4
v make explosive sound 56.6
hit 902.14
thwart
v disappoint 132.2
frustrate 412.11
neutralize 900.7
hinder 1012.15
adj across 170.9
transverse 204.19
adv crosswise 170.13
tiara jewel 498.6
royal insignia 647.3
ecclesiastical insignia 647.4
tic
nervousness 128.1
shake 917.3
obsession 926.13
tick
n faint sound 52.3
clicking 55.2
degree 245.1
insect 311.33
bloodsucker 311.38
mark 517.5
credit 622.1
instant 830.3
v make faint sound 52.15
click repeatedly 55.5
mark 517.19
be operative 889.7
pulsate 916.12
ticked off 152.30
ticker the heart 2.16
telegraph 347.2
stock exchange 737.7
timepiece 832.6
ticker tape
recording media 549.10
stock exchange 737.7
ticket
n permission 443.1
label 517.13
certificate 549.6
ballot 609.19
price 630.1
token 728.12
v label 517.20
tickle
n sensation 74.2
v titillate 74.6
delight 95.10
thrill 105.15
incite 375.17
attract 377.6
amuse 743.21
tap 902.18
interest 983.12
tickled pleased 95.15
amused 743.26
interested 983.16
tickler fisher 382.6
reminder 989.6
ticklish sensitive 24.12
tickling 74.9
touchy 110.21
unreliable 971.20
precarious 1006.12
difficult 1013.17
tick off
make angry 152.23
mark 517.19
tidal aquatic 182.58
coastal 234.7
flowing 238.24
tidal pool 238.13
tidal wave wave 238.14
election returns 609.21
upheaval 671.5
oscillation 916.4
tidbit delicacy 10.8
scandal 552.8
tide
n flow 238.4
tidal current 238.13
ocean 240.1
time 821.1
v conform 867.4
tide over 1007.2
tidewater
n shore 234.2
tide 238.13
adj gulfy 242.2
tidy
v clean 79.18
arrange 808.12
adj cleaned 79.26
large 257.16
trim 807.8
tolerable 999.20
tidy sum lot 247.4
large sum 618.2
multitude 884.3
tie
n intermediary 213.4
security 438.1
fidelity 644.7
insignia 647.1
musical notation 709.12
relation 775.1
the same 790.3
joining 800.1
dead heat 836.3
stop 857.2
v compel 424.4
bind 428.10
obligate 641.12
relate 775.6
equal 790.5
put together 800.5
fasten 800.9
secure 855.8
tiebreaker 748.2
tie clasp 498.6
tied up busy 330.21
bound 428.16
indebted 623.8
tie-dyed 35.17
tie hand and foot
disable 19.10
bind 428.10
tie-in affiliation 450.2
sale 734.1
relation 775.1
joining 800.1
tie into attack 459.15
criticize 510.14
tie in with
relate to 775.5
league 805.4
tie off 855.8
tie one on 88.26
tier layer 296.1
series 812.2
tie rod 800.4
Tierra del Fuego
remote region 261.4
cold place 1023.4
tie the knot
join in marriage 563.14
get married 563.15
put together 800.5
tie up anchor 182.15
land 186.8
bind 428.10
cooperate 450.3
monopolize 469.6
bundle 770.20
fasten 800.9
secure 855.8
tiff
n dudgeon 152.7
quarrel 456.5
v quarrel 456.11
tiger
wild cat 311.22
brave person 492.8
savage 593.5
violent person 671.9
tight
adj resistant 15.20
drunk 88.33
shipshape 180.20
narrow 270.14
close 293.12
stingy 484.9
concise 537.6
fastened 800.14
consistent 803.11
tidy 807.8
sparse 885.5
rigid 1046.11
adv securely 800.19
tight end 746.2
tighten one's belt
retrench 635.5
deny oneself 667.3
tighten the screws 119.2
tightfisted 484.9
tight grip 474.2
tight-knit joined 800.13
dense 1045.12

tight-lipped 344.9
tightrope walking
  defiance 454.1
  daring 492.5
  foolhardiness 493.3
  unreliability 971.6
tights 5.9
tight squeeze
  narrowness 270.1
  narrow escape 369.2
  poverty 619.1
  predicament 1013.5
tightwad 484.4
tigress
  female animal 77.10
  bitch 110.12
  witch 593.7
  violent person 671.9
tile
  n pavement 383.6
  ceramic ware 742.2
  building material 1054.2
  v cover 295.23
till
  n booty 482.11
  treasury 729.13
  v cultivate 1069.17
  prep until 821.15
till death do us part 829.13
tiller helm 573.5
  agriculturist 1069.5
till hell freezes over
  to the end 820.13
  for a long time 827.14
  forever 829.12
till one is blue in the face
    105.35
till the cows come home
  for a long time 827.14
  forever 829.12
till the end of time 827.14
till then 826.5
till the soil 1069.17
tilt
  n penchant 100.3
  inclination 204.2
  preference 371.5
  contest 457.3
  tendency 896.1
  v tumble 194.8
  incline 204.10
  contend 457.13
  tend 896.3
  throw 904.10
tilt at windmills
  be impotent 19.7
  be useless 391.8
  be foolish 923.6
timber spar 180.13
  beam 273.3
  tree 310.10
  woodland 310.13
  wood 1054.3
timber wolf 311.20
timbre tonality 50.3
  manner of speaking 524.7
Timbuktu 261.4
time
  n leisure 402.1
  tempo 709.24
  duration 821.1
  period 824.1
  term 824.3
  age 824.4
  turn 825.2
  shift 825.3
  tenure 825.4
  time of day 832.2
  date 832.4
  opportunity 843.2
  v fix the time 832.11
  synchronize 836.4
time bomb 1006.1
time book 832.9
time frame
  boundary 211.3
  plan 381.1
  time 821.1
  period 824.1
time-honored
  venerable 155.12
  customary 373.13
  traditional 842.12
time immemorial 827.4
timekeeper
  recorder 550.1
  hockey 749.6
  boxing 754.3
  timepiece 832.6
  chronologist 832.10
timeless
  almighty 677.17
  dateless 822.3
  perpetual 829.7
  old 842.10
time limit 211.3
timely
  well-timed 843.9
  expedient 995.5
time off
  n vacation 20.3
  interim 826.1
  pause 857.3
  v take one's turn 825.5
time out
  n respite 20.2
  v punch the clock 832.12
timepiece 832.6
the times affairs 831.4
  the present 838.1
time scale 832.9
timetable plan 381.1
  chronicle 832.9
time to spare
  leisure 402.1
  earliness 845.1
time warp
  fourth dimension 158.6
  time 821.1
timeworn trite 117.9
  stricken in years 303.18
  worn 393.31
  stale 842.14
time zone 832.3
timid fearful 127.23
  shy 139.12
  hesitant 362.11
  cowardly 491.10
timing skill 413.1
  tempo 709.24
  agreement 788.1
  chronology 832.1
timorous
  fearful 127.23
  shy 139.12
  cowardly 491.10
tin
  n money 728.2
  v package 212.9
  put up 397.11
  adj spurious 354.26
  metal 1058.17
tincture
  n color 35.1
  pigment 35.8
  hint 248.4
  heraldry 647.2
  admixture 797.7
  v color 35.14
  imbue 797.11
tinder 1021.6
tin foil 295.18
tinge
  n color 35.1
  trace 62.3
  hint 248.4
  implication 519.2
  admixture 797.7
  v color 35.14
  imbue 797.11
  influence 894.7
tingle
  n smart 26.3
  ringing 54.3
  tingling sensation 74.1
  thrill 105.2
  v have energy 17.11
  suffer 26.8
  ring 54.8
  thrill 74.5
  be excited 105.18
tinhorn
  n gambler 759.21
  mediocrity 1005.5
  adj insignificant 998.18
tinker
  n mender 396.10
  v repair 396.14
  rearrange 808.13
  trifle 998.14
tinkle
  n clinking sound 52.3
  ringing 54.3
  v clink 52.15
  ring 54.8
tinny
  lacking resonance 58.15
  inferior 1005.9
  metallic 1058.17
Tin Pan Alley 708.7
tinsel
  n appearance 33.2
  fake 354.13
  finery 498.3
  glitter 1025.7
  v decorate 498.9
  glitter 1025.24
  adj spurious 354.26
  specious 354.27
tint
  n color 35.1
  hue 35.6
  engraving 713.2
  admixture 797.7
  v color 35.14
  portray 712.19
tintinnabulation 54.3
tiny insignificant 248.6
  little 258.11
tip
  n summit 198.2
  inclination 204.2
  point 285.3
  piece of advice 422.2
  gratuity 478.5
  part of tongue 524.18
  clue 551.3
  bonus 624.6
  extremity 820.2
  tap 902.7
  surplus 993.5
  v careen 182.43
  crown 198.9
  incline 204.10
  top 295.21
  warn 399.5
  alert 551.11
  tap 902.18
tip-off
  warning 399.1
  sign 517.1
  clue 517.9
  suggest 551.3
  hint 551.4
tip of the iceberg
  modicum 248.2
  hint 248.4
  sign 517.1
tipple drink 8.29
  booze 88.24
tippytoe
  n creeping 177.17
  v creep 177.26
  adj creeping 177.39
tip sheet 757.4
tipster informant 551.5
  dopester 962.5
tipsy intoxicated 88.31
  inclining 204.15
tip the scales 297.10
tiptoe
  n creeping 177.17
  v creep 177.26
  lurk 346.9
  be cautious 494.5
  adj creeping 177.39
  adv on tiptoe 272.21
tip-top
  n summit 198.2
  adj top 198.10
  superlative 249.13
  first-rate 999.18
tirade
  n lament 115.3
  berating 510.7
  wordiness 538.2
  speech 543.2
  v wail 115.13
tire
  n rim 280.4
  v clothe 5.39
  fatigue 21.4
  weary 21.5
  oppress 98.16

be tedious 118.6
tired clothing 5.45
fatigued 21.7
weary 118.11
worn-out 393.36
aphoristic 974.6
tireless
industrious 330.22
persevering 360.8
tires 756.1
tiresome
fatiguing 21.13
annoying 98.22
boring 118.10
prosaic 721.5
tissue
n material 4.1
network 170.3
structure 266.1
organic matter 305.1
weaving 740.1
v weave 740.6
titan 257.13
titanic large 247.7
huge 257.20
tit for tat offset 338.2
retaliation 506.3
reciprocity 777.3
substitution 862.1
interchange 863.1
tit-for-tat 777.10
tithe
n donation 478.6
tax 630.9
tenth part 882.14
v charge 630.12
adj tenth 882.22
titillate tickle 74.6
delight 95.10
thrill 105.15
attract 377.6
amuse 743.21
interest 983.12
title
n possession 469.1
ownership 469.2
estate 471.4
name 527.3
book 554.1
book part 554.12
prerogative 642.1
honorific 648.1
golf 751.1
class 809.2
caption 937.2
v name 527.11
focus on 937.3
titled named 527.14
noble 608.10
titleholder 470.2
title of respect or address 527.3
title page label 517.13
book part 554.12
caption 937.2
titrate 801.6
tits
n bosom 283.7
adj excellent 999.13
tizzy dither 105.6
confusion 985.3
TKO 754.3
TLC carefulness 339.1
support 449.3
to at 159.27
toward 161.26
into 189.14
as far as 261.20
for the purpose of 380.11
until 821.15
toad sycophant 138.3
amphibian 311.27
to a degree
to some extent 245.7
limited 248.10
relatively 775.12
toad-stool 310.4
to advantage
usefully 387.26
helpfully 449.24
profitably 472.17
expediently 995.8
toady
n sycophant 138.3
assenter 332.6
v fawn 138.7
to a fault 993.23
to a great extent 247.15
to all appearances
apparently 33.12
externally 206.10
to a man 332.17
to and fro
reciprocally 777.12
alternately 850.11
changeably 854.8
back and forth 916.21
toast
n pledge 88.10
celebration 487.1
fine lady 500.10
v drink 8.29
cook 11.5
drink to 88.29
be hot 1019.22
adj brown 40.3
delightful 97.8
to a T
to completion 407.14
exactly 973.21
to a nicety 973.23
to perfection 1002.11
to a turn
carefully 339.15
to completion 407.14
to a nicety 973.23
to perfection 1002.11
tobacco
n tabac 89.1
adj tobaccoey 89.15
to beat the band
swiftly 174.18
utterly 794.16
to perfection 1002.11
to be brief 537.8
to be desired
desirable 100.30
expedient 995.5
to be exact 973.22
to be expected
adj as expected 130.14
adv imminently 840.4
normally 869.10
to be fair 649.12
to be reckoned with 894.13
to be seen
visible 31.6
manifest 348.8
to be specific 865.15
to be sure
adv surely 970.24
interj yes 332.18
toboggan 177.35
to boot 253.11
to come
approaching 167.4
future 839.8
imminent 840.3
scheduled 965.9
to completion 407.14
tocsin
warning sign 399.3
alarm 400.1
to date 838.4
today
n the present 838.1
adv now 838.3
toddler 302.9
to die for 100.3
to-do
excitement 105.4
bustle 330.4
commotion 810.4
agitation 917.1
toe base 199.2
foot 199.5
toehold hold 474.2
wrestling 474.3
footing 901.5
purchase 906.2
toe the mark
obey 326.2
follow the rule 867.4
toe-to-toe 779.6
to extremes
intemperately 669.10
in or to excess 993.23
tofu 10.48
together
v assemble 770.18
adj composed 106.13
in accord 455.3
sane 925.4
adv unanimously 332.17
cooperatively 450.6
collectively 769.11
jointly 800.18
continuously 812.10
simultaneously 836.7
concurrently 899.5
togetherness
accord 455.1
accompaniment 769.1
toggle 800.8
to good use 387.26
togs clothing 5.1
garment 5.3
toil
n work 725.4
v work 724.12
drudge 725.14
hamper 1012.11
toilet
n latrine 12.10
stool 12.11
bathroom 197.26
casino 759.19
adj cursing 513.8
toiletries 735.6
to infinity 823.4
token
n omen 133.3
symbol 517.2
password 517.12
label 517.13
sign 518.6
record 549.1
counter 728.12
substitute 862.2
characteristic 865.4
evidence 957.1
memento 989.7
v augur 133.12
manifest 348.5
adj cheap 633.7
substitute 862.8
token gesture 354.6
to leeward
leeward 182.68
windward 218.9
tolerable
bearable 107.13
satisfactory 999.20
mediocre 1005.7
tolerance
resistance 87.1
patience 134.1
forgiveness 148.1
leniency 427.1
latitude 430.4
liberalism 430.10
sufferance 443.2
inclusion 772.1
inaccuracy 975.2
broad-mindedness 979.4
tolerate endure 134.5
be easy on 427.5
suffer 443.10
keep an open mind 979.7
toll
n ringing 54.3
fee 630.6
tax 630.9
v ring 54.8
tollbooth 228.9
tomahawk 745.5
to make a long story short 537.8
tomato
vegetables 10.35
woman 77.6
girl 302.7
tomb
n sepulcher 309.16
monument 549.12
v inter 309.19
tomboy mannish female 76.9
schoolgirl 302.8
tomcat
male animal 76.8
cat 311.21
tome book 554.1
volume 554.4

tomorrow
n the future 839.1
adv in the future 839.9
tom-tom 55.1
ton quantity 247.3
fashion 578.1
popularity 578.2
tonal sounding 50.15
phonetic 524.30
harmonics 709.27
tone
n muscularity 15.2
color 35.1
hue 35.6
audio frequency 50.2
fitness 84.1
feeling 93.1
milieu 209.3
behavior 321.1
manner 384.1
intonation 524.6
voice 524.7
melody 708.2
tonality 709.3
pitch 709.4
note 709.14
interval 709.20
artistic treatment 712.9
plot 722.4
nature 767.4
trend 896.2
mood 978.4
elasticity 1048.1
v color 35.14
influence 894.7
tone-deaf 49.6
tone down decolor 36.5
muffle 51.9
moderate 670.6
tune 708.36
dull 1027.10
soften 1047.6
toneless colorless 36.7
monotone 50.15
tongs 1020.12
tongue
n food 10.20
bell 54.4
taste 62.1
taste bud 62.5
shaft 273.1
point of land 283.9
language 523.1
utterance 524.2
speech organ 524.18
v lick 73.9
blow a horn 708.42
tongue-in-cheek 489.15
tongue-lashing 510.7
tongue-tied mute 51.12
taciturn 344.9
tonic
n refreshment 9.1
beverage 10.49
energizer 17.6
medicine 86.8
bracer 88.8
harmonics 709.15
adj refreshing 9.3
energizing 17.15
healthful 81.5
stimulating 86.44
restorative 396.22
phonetic 524.30
tonal 709.27
tonight 838.3
tonnage ships 180.10
capacity 257.2
weight 297.1
fee 630.7
too additionally 253.11
excessively 993.22
too bad
disgraceful 661.11
terrible 1000.9
too big 257.23
too big for one's britches
conceited 140.11
strutting 501.23
too close for comfort 1006.9
too close to call 790.7
too far 993.23
too few
n a few 885.2
adj insufficient 992.9
tool
n sycophant 138.3
means 384.4
agent 576.3
gambling device 759.16
instrument 1040.1
v speed 174.9
engrave 713.9
tool up 1040.13
too late 844.6
tooled 713.11
too little too late 992.1
tools of the trade 384.2
tool up
prepare oneself 405.13
equip with tools 1040.13
too many 993.2
too many cooks spoil the broth
advice 422.9
intrusion 214.10
too many irons in the fire 993.6
too much
n intemperance 669.1
excess 993.1
superabundance 993.2
adj insufferable 98.25
extreme 247.13
intemperate 669.7
excessive 993.16
adv inordinately 993.22
to one's credit 622.9
to one's face 348.15
to one side
obliquely 204.21
aside 218.10
dismiss 984.4
to one's knowledge 928.30
to one's liking 97.6
to one's satisfaction 107.16
too quick on the draw 845.8
to order 420.15
too soon
adj untimely 844.6
premature 845.8
adv too early 845.13
toot
n blare 53.5
cocaine 87.7
drinking spree 88.6
v blare 53.10
snort cocaine 87.22
blow a horn 708.42
tooth
n mouth part 2.8
taste 62.1
point 285.3
roughness 288.1
v notch 289.4
coarsen 294.4
toothache 26.5
tooth and nail
resolutely 359.17
savagely 671.27
laboriously 725.19
utterly 794.16
toothbrush 3.11
a tooth for a tooth 506.3
toothless 286.4
toothpaste
cleanser 79.17
dentifrice 86.22
toot one's own horn
be vain 140.6
boast 502.6
brag 502.7
top
n top side 198.1
summit 198.2
exterior 206.2
cover 295.5
roof 295.6
tent 295.8
toy 743.16
limit 794.5
rotator 915.4
acme of perfection 1002.3
v cap 198.9
excel 249.6
overshadow 249.8
rise above 272.11
cover 295.21
golf 751.4
exceed 993.9
adj topmost 198.10
superlative 249.13
expensive 632.11
top billing 704.1
topcoat 5.13
top dog superior 249.4
victor 411.2
chief 575.4
important person 997.11
top-drawer top 198.10
first-rate 999.18
to perfection 1002.11
top-flight 198.10
top-heavy
corpulent 257.18
unbalanced 791.5
topic plot 722.4
subject 937.1
question 938.10
topical local 231.9
current 838.2
thematic 937.4
topless unclad 6.13
bare-breasted 6.16
headless 198.13
high 272.14
top-notch
superlative 249.13
first-rate 999.18
top off crown 198.9
provision 385.9
perfect 407.6
complete 794.6
fill 794.7
fuel 1021.8
top of the line
the best 249.5
the ultimate 999.8
top of the world 198.2
topography map 159.5
geography 159.8
toponym 527.3
topping
n icing 198.3
adj crowning 198.11
superior 249.12
high 272.14
first-rate 999.18
prep atop 198.16
topple tumble 194.8
break down 393.24
be destroyed 395.22
fell 913.5
top priority 814.1
the tops 999.8
top secret 345.11
topside
n top 198.1
adv on board 182.62
atop 198.15
topsoil land 234.1
layer 296.1
top-spin 748.2
topsy-turvy
v overturn 205.6
adj inverted 205.7
confused 810.16
adv inversely 205.8
contrarily 779.9
Torah 683.3
torch
n blowtorch 1020.14
lighter 1021.4
light source 1026.1
flame 1026.3
v ignite 1020.22
torched 1020.30
toreador 461.4
torment
n agony 26.6
torture 96.7
tormentor 96.10
harshness 98.4
worry 126.2
punishment 604.2
bane 1001.1
v pain 26.7
annoy 96.13
torture 96.18
desolate 98.12
aggrieve 112.19
make anxious 126.5
bear malice 144.15
persecute 389.7

work evil 1000.6
trouble 1013.13
torn affected 93.23
impaired 393.27
shabby 393.32
alienated 589.11
severed 802.23
tornado outburst 105.9
whirlwind 318.14
storm 671.4
torpedo
n killer 308.11
missile 462.18
ruffian 593.4
rocket 1074.3
v destroy 395.11
attack 459.22
shoot 904.12
torpor apathy 94.4
inertness 173.4
inaction 329.1
languor 331.6
permanence 853.1
torque circle 280.3
necklace 498.6
Torquemada 144.14
torrential flowing 238.24
rainy 316.11
torrid 1019.25
torsion deflection 164.2
distortion 265.1
convolution 281.1
torso 1052.3
tort misdeed 655.2
offense 674.4
tortilla 10.29
tortoise slowpoke 175.5
reptile 311.25
tortoise shell 47.6
tortoni 10.47
tortuous
distorted 265.10
curved 279.7
convolutional 281.6
grandiloquent 545.8
torture
n agony 26.6
torment 96.7
harshness 98.4
deflection 164.2
punishment 604.2
v pain 26.7
torment 96.18
agonize 98.12
bear malice 144.15
deflect 164.5
pervert 265.6
deform 265.7
misinterpret 342.2
put to the question 604.16
work evil 1000.6
Tory 611.9
to spare
remaining 256.7
unused 390.12
superfluous 993.17
toss
n gamble 759.2
throw 904.3
flounder 917.8
search 938.15
even chance 972.7
v be excited 105.18
place violently 159.13
pitch 182.55
billow 238.22
gamble 759.23
throw 904.10
oscillate 916.10
flounder 917.15
ransack 938.33
toss and turn
keep awake 23.3
be excited 105.18
flounder 917.15
toss-up election 609.15
uncertainty 759.2
stop 857.2
gamble 971.8
even chance 972.7
total
n amount 244.2
math terms 253.2
whole 792.2
sum 1017.6
v compute 253.6
spoil 393.11
demolish 395.17
amount to 792.8
sum up 1017.19
adj great 247.6
downright 247.12
unmitigated 671.17
cumulative 770.23
comprehensive 772.7
whole 792.9
complete 794.9
thorough 794.10
universal 864.14
unqualified 960.2
sound 1002.7
total assets assets 471.7
funds 728.14
total darkness 1027.1
total eclipse
darkness 1027.8
sun 1072.13
totaled high 87.24
spoiled 393.29
disintegrative 806.5
ended 820.9
totalitarian
authoritative 417.15
governmental 612.17
totality whole 792.1
wholeness 792.5
completeness 794.1
all 864.4
universe 1072.1
total lack 222.1
total loss
wreck 393.8
debacle 395.4
failure 410.2
loss 473.1
total recall 989.3
total victory 411.1
total war
death struggle 457.6
war 458.1
tote board 759.17
to tell the truth
truthfully 644.22
truly 973.18
totem symbol 517.2
race 559.4
familiar spirit 678.12
idol 697.3
totem pole
shaft 273.1
symbol 517.2
tote up compute 253.6
sum up 1017.19
to the contrary
adv contrarily 779.9
interj no 335.8
by no means 335.9
to the death
deathly 307.37
throughout 794.17
to the end to completion 407.14
throughout 794.17
to the bitter end 820.13
to the extreme 993.23
to the four winds
from everywhere 158.14
in every direction 161.25
to the good
helpfully 449.24
profitably 472.17
to one's account 622.9
to the heart of 207.13
to the hilt
completely 794.14
throughout 794.17
to the letter 973.21
to the limit
to completion 407.14
utterly 794.16
to the max
utterly 794.16
in excess 993.23
to the nth degree 794.16
to the point
adj concise 537.6
relevant 775.11
apt 788.10
adv plainly 535.4
to the second 845.14
to the side
adj side 218.6
adv aside 218.10
to the tune of
adv at a price 630.17
prep to the amount of 244.7
tots 302.2
totter
n gait 177.12
flounder 917.8
v be weak 16.8
way of walking 177.28
tumble 194.8
age 303.10
vacillate 362.8
break down 393.24
change 854.5
flounder 917.15
touch
n senses 24.5
sense of touch 73.1
contact 223.5
hint 248.4
communication 343.1
skill 413.1
knack 413.6
motif 498.7
signal 517.15
implication 519.2
execution 708.30
admixture 797.7
tap 902.7
v sense 24.6
feel 73.6
affect 93.14
move 145.5
contact 223.10
beg 440.15
signal 517.22
borrow 621.3
relate to 775.5
equal 790.5
tap 902.18
touch and go
gamble 759.2
uncertainty 971.8
even chance 972.7
touch a nerve 24.8
touchdown
landing 184.18
score 409.5
game 746.3
touché
adv right! 973.24
phrs that's it 788.13
touched affected 93.23
penitent 113.9
insane 926.26
touch off kindle 375.18
explode 671.14
ignite 1020.22
touch on
remark 524.24
evidence 957.8
call attention to 983.10
touch up 392.11
touchy sensitive 24.12
excitable 105.28
tetchy 110.21
partisan 456.17
precarious 1006.12
tough
n strong man 15.7
combatant 461.1
ruffian 593.4
violent person 671.10
adj firm 15.18
obdurate 361.10
strict 425.6
resolute 492.18
hard to understand 522.14
violent 671.16
laborious 725.18
sturdy 763.7
adhesive 803.12
durable 827.10
excellent 999.13
difficult 1013.17
hard 1046.10
resistant 1049.4
viscous 1062.12
tough act to follow
expert 413.11

first-rater 999.6
tough as nails 1049.4
tough break 1011.5
tough guy
strong man 15.7
violent person 671.10
tough it out
be strong 15.11
endure 134.6
confront 216.8
persevere 360.7
offer resistance 453.3
stand fast 855.11
tough love 449.2
tough luck
chance 972.1
bad luck 1011.5
toupee 3.14
tour
n journey 177.5
tower 272.6
route 383.1
engagement 704.11
bowling 750.1
golf 751.1
shift 825.3
term 825.4
circuit 914.2
sight-seeing 918.4
v journey 177.21
tour de force
act 328.3
masterpiece 413.10
tourist traveler 178.1
sightseer 918.3
tournament
contest 457.3
tourney 743.10
basketball 747.1
tennis 748.1
bowling 750.1
golf 751.1
soccer 752.1
tourniquet 86.33
tout
n commender 509.8
informant 551.5
solicitor 730.7
bookmaker 759.20
v exaggerate 355.3
commend 509.11
tow 905.4
toward at 159.27
towards 161.26
opposite to 215.7
towel 1066.6
tower
n observation post 27.8
estate 228.7
structure 266.2
turret 272.6
stronghold 460.6
marker 517.10
protector 1008.5
v increase 14.2
ascend 193.8
loom 247.5
grow 259.7
soar 272.10
tower of strength
strong man 15.6
stronghold 460.6
stability 855.6
protector 1008.5
towhead 35.9
to wit
by interpretation 341.18
namely 865.18
town
n township 230.1
village 230.1
region 231.5
adj urban 230.11
town hall
city hall 230.5
courthouse 595.6
town house
house 228.5
courthouse 595.6
town meeting
forum 423.3
communion 476.2
discussion 541.7
legislature 613.1
township
town 230.1
region 231.5
toxemia 85.2
toxic
n poison 1001.3
adj poisonous 82.7
harmful 1000.12
toxicology 1001.3
toxic waste
refuse 391.4
poison 1001.3
toxin
evil 1000.3
poison 1001.3
toy
n dupe 358.1
caprice 364.1
instrument 384.4
trinket 498.4
laughingstock 508.7
plaything 743.16
trifle 998.5
v make love 562.14
trifle 998.14
adj miniature 258.12
trace
n odor 69.1
hint 248.4
remainder 256.1
minute 258.7
image 349.5
clue 517.9
record 549.1
admixture 797.7
signal 1036.11
v represent 349.8
outline 381.11
mark 517.19
write 547.19
portray 712.19
copy 785.8
stalk 938.35
discover 941.2
traces 517.8
trachea 2.22
tracing image 349.5
drawing 712.13
reproduction 785.2
transcript 785.4
track
n direction 161.1
wake 182.7
routine 373.5
route 383.1
path 383.2
railway 383.7
accomplishment 407.1
racing 457.11
trail 517.8
hint 551.4
class 572.11
playground 743.11
track and field 755.1
automobile racing 756.1
race 756.3
horse racing 757.1
aftereffect 887.3
blemish 1004.1
v traverse 177.20
hunt 382.9
come after 835.3
trace 938.35
track and field
sport 744.1
track 755.1
track down
trace 938.35
discover 941.2
track meet 755.2
track record act 328.3
preparedness 405.4
accomplishment 407.1
statistics 757.4
tract housing 225.3
plot 231.4
booklet 554.11
treatise 556.1
field 1069.9
tractable willing 324.5
docile 433.13
conformable 867.5
handy 1014.15
pliant 1047.9
traction pulling 905.1
purchase 906.2
attraction 907.1
tractor
traction engine 179.18
propeller plane 181.2
tractor trailer 179.12
trade
n vocation 724.6
commerce 731.1
trading 731.2
bargain 731.5
custom 731.6
market 733.3
interchange 863.2
v transfer 629.3
deal 731.15
speculate 737.23
change 854.5
interchange 863.4
adj commercial 731.22
trade-in 731.5
trademark
patent 210.3
mannerism 500.2
label 517.13
acknowledgment 888.2
trade name 527.3
trade off
compensate 338.4
trade 731.15
interchange 863.4
trader 730.2
trade union 727.2
trade up 733.7
trade wind 318.10
trade with 731.17
trading post 736.1
trading stamp 631.1
tradition custom 373.1
rule 419.2
religion 675.1
usage 842.2
superstition 954.3
traditional
customary 373.13
preceptive 419.4
conventional 579.5
orthodox 687.7
historical 719.7
mythological 842.12
traffic
n communication 343.1
commerce 731.1
v trade 731.15
traffic jam
obstruction 293.3
hindrance 1012.1
traffic light
signal 517.15
stop-and-go light 1026.4
tragedy
tragic drama 704.5
misfortune 1011.2
tragic horrid 98.19
heavy 704.34
disastrous 1011.15
trail
n odor 69.1
path 383.2
track 517.8
skiing 753.1
afterpart 817.2
aftereffect 887.3
v follow 166.3
lag 166.4
dawdle 175.8
hang 202.6
be behind 217.8
hunt 382.9
come after 835.3
pull 905.4
trace 938.35
trailblazer
traveler 178.1
preparer 405.5
precursor 816.1
trailer
trail car 179.19
house trailer 228.17
basketball team 747.2
afterpart 817.2
train
n railroad train 179.14
military unit 461.22
attendance 769.6

series 812.2
procession 812.3
afterpart 817.2
v direct 161.5
accustom 373.9
drill 568.13
be taught 570.11
play 744.2
pull 905.4
tend 1070.7
trained
accustomed 373.15
skilled 413.26
informed 928.18
trainee recruit 461.18
student 572.1
beginner 818.2
traipse
n walk 177.10
v go slow 175.6
wander 177.23
walk 177.27
way of walking 177.28
trait culture 373.2
sign 517.1
characteristic 865.4
traitor rebel 327.5
treasonist 357.10
apostate 363.5
criminal 645.10
turncoat 660.9
convert 858.8
trajectory course 172.2
route 383.1
orbit 1072.16
rocket launching 1074.9
tram 179.17
tramp
n walk 177.10
vagabond 178.3
bum 331.9
beggar 440.8
wretch 660.2
transient 828.4
oddity 870.4
v plod 175.7
wander 177.23
march 177.30
trample stamp 902.22
run over 910.7
trampoline
exerciser 725.7
elastic 1048.3
trance
n stupor 22.6
hypnosis 22.7
daze 92.19
ecstasy 691.3
abstractedness 985.2
v put to sleep 22.20
cast a spell 691.7
tranquil calm 106.12
quiescent 173.12
pacific 464.9
equable 670.13
thoughtless 933.4
tranquilizer
anesthetic 25.3
sedative 86.12
moderator 670.3
transact perform 328.9
execute 437.9
transaction
performance 328.2
act 328.3
compact 437.1
execution 437.4
business transaction 731.4
affair 831.3
transatlantic 261.11
transcend
loom 247.5
excel 249.6
exceed 993.9
transcendental
n immaterialism 1053.3
adj superior 249.12
recondite 522.16
heavenly 681.12
supernatural 870.15
visionary 986.24
numeric 1017.23
extraterrestrial 1072.26
transcontinental 261.11
transcribe
translate 341.12
letter 546.6
write 547.19
compose 708.46
copy 785.8
transducer 858.10
transect 875.4
transept
crosspiece 170.5
church 703.9
transfer
n transferal 176.1
informing 343.2
transference 629.1
transcript 785.4
v transmit 176.10
communicate 343.7
deliver 478.13
commission 615.10
convey 629.3
transfigure
make better 392.9
transform 852.8
transfix
perforate 292.15
stab 459.25
stabilize 855.7
transform
make better 392.9
transfigure 852.8
convert 858.11
transfusion
blood transfusion 91.18
transferal 176.1
permeation 221.3
transgress
disobey 327.6
violate 435.4
do wrong 655.4
break the law 674.5
overstep 910.9
transgression 655.1
transiency 828.1
transient
n traveler 178.1
lodger 227.8
guest 828.4
adj vanishing 34.3
wandering 177.37
emerging 190.18
short 268.8
mortal 307.34
transitory 828.7
changeable 854.6
transistor 1033.12
transit
n crossing 170.1
transferal 176.1
travel 177.1
instrument 278.4
conversion 858.1
v traverse 177.20
transition
transferal 176.1
motion-picture editing 706.6
change 852.1
conversion 858.1
transitive
n verb 530.4
adj grammatical 530.17
transient 828.7
translate
transfer 176.10
render 341.12
transform 852.8
translation
transferal 176.1
transcription 341.3
removal to heaven 681.11
transformation 852.3
translucent
clear 521.11
light 1025.31
lucent 1030.5
transmigration
transferal 176.1
migration 177.4
transformation 852.3
materialization 1052.8
transmission
transferal 176.1
informing 343.2
information 551.1
conveyance 629.1
radio broadcasting 1034.16
gear 1040.9
transmit
change over 176.10
send 176.15
communicate 343.7
bequeath 478.18
transfer 629.3
broadcast 1034.25
send 1036.15
transmitter
telegraph 347.2
telephone 347.4
radio transmitter 1034.4
televisor 1035.8
transmogrification 852.3
transoceanic 261.11
transom
crosspiece 170.5
stern 217.7
air passage 239.13
transparency
clearness 521.2
photograph 714.3
print 714.5
nonopacity 1029
transparence 1029.1
transparent
clear 521.11
candid 644.17
light 1025.31
transpicuous 1029.4
transpire
exude 190.15
be revealed 351.8
occur 831.5
transplant
n insertion 191.1
plant 739.3
v treat 91.24
transfer 176.10
implant 191.8
set 1069.18
transport
n happiness 95.2
fury 105.8
transportation 176.3
trance 691.3
v delight 95.10
convey 176.12
fascinate 377.7
banish 909.17
transportation
transplacement 176.1
conveyance 176.3
banishment 909.4
transpose
transfer 176.10
invert 205.5
compose 708.46
reverse 779.5
interchange 863.4
transsexual 75.17
transverse
n crosspiece 170.5
diagonal 204.7
v cross 170.6
adj transversal 170.9
crosswise 204.19
adv crossways 170.13
transvestite
n sexual pervert 75.16
adj homosexual 75.30
trap
n mouth 292.4
ambush 346.3
gin 356.12
lure 377.3
basketball game 747.3
soccer 752.3
hidden danger 1006.5
v entrap 356.20
catch 480.17
play 752.4
trapeze 725.7
trapezoid 278.9
trapper 382.5
trappings
wardrobe 5.2
harness 385.5
belongings 471.2
finery 498.3
Trappist
n religious person 667.2
adj ascetic 667.4

trap shooting 744.1
trash
  n derelict 370.4
  rubbish 391.5
  nonsense 520.2
  rabble 606.3
  poker 759.10
  trivia 998.4
  v be disrespectful 156.6
  censure 510.13
trashy worthless 391.11
  nonsensical 520.7
  paltry 998.21
trauma shock 85.26
  wound 85.38
  psychological stress 92.17
traumatic 393.27
travail
  n birth 1.1
  work 725.4
  v give birth 1.3
  drudge 725.14
travel
  n progression 162.1
  course 172.2
  transportation 176.3
  journeying 177.1
  traveling 177.1
  v progress 162.2
  move 172.5
  go 177.18
  journey 177.21
travel agency 177.5
travels 177.2
traverse
  n crosspiece 170.5
  v cross 170.6
  travel 177.20
  navigate 182.13
  oppose 451.3
  contradict 451.6
  ski 753.4
  adj transverse 170.9
  adv crosswise 170.13
travesty
  n reproduction 336.3
  bad likeness 350.2
  exaggeration 355.1
  wit 489.1
  burlesque 508.6
  v misrepresent 350.3
  exaggerate 355.3
  burlesque 508.11
trawler 382.6
treacherous
  falsehearted 354.31
  deceitful 356.22
  perfidious 645.21
  unreliable 971.20
  unsafe 1006.11
treachery
  falseheartedness 354.4
  treacherousness 645.6
  unreliability 971.6
treacle sweetening 66.2
  semiliquid 1062.5
tread
  n velocity 172.4
  travel 177.11
  gait 177.12
  step 193.5
  degree 245.1
  v walk 177.27
  stamp 902.22
treading water 182.11
treadmill
  n routine 373.5
  punishment 605.3
  work 725.4
  adj tedious 118.9
tread underfoot
  conquer 412.10
  subdue 432.9
  domineer 612.16
treason apostasy 363.2
  petty crime 645.7
  conversion 858.3
treasure
  n store 386.1
  wealth 618.1
  funds 728.14
  collection 770.11
  good thing 999.5
  v cherish 104.21
  store up 386.11
  hold 474.7
  keep in memory 989.13
  value 997.13
treasurer
  executive 574.3
  payer 624.9
  financial officer 729.12
treasury store 386.1
  bank 386.6
  funds 728.14
  cash 728.18
  treasure-house 729.13
  collection 770.11
treasury bill 728.11
treat
  n meal 8.5
  delicacy 10.8
  regalement 95.3
  payment 624.8
  v remedy 86.38
  practice medicine 90.14
  doctor 91.24
  use 321.6
  handle 387.12
  prepare 405.6
  discuss 541.12
  write upon 556.5
  pay for 624.19
  operate on 889.6
treatise tract 556
  piece 556.1
treatment
  medicine 90.1
  therapy 91.1
  medical attention 91.14
  usage 387.2
  preparation 405.1
  discussion 541.7
  treatise 556.1
  script 706.3
  technique 712.9
treaty 437.2
treble
  n stridency 58.6
  air 708.4
  part 708.22
  voice 709.5
  v triplicate 877.2
  adj high 58.13
  vocal 708.50
  triple 877.3
tree
  n cross 170.4
  spar 180.13
  timber 310.10
  genealogy 560.5
  execution 605.5
  v corner 1013.16
tree line 237.2
trek
  n migration 177.4
  journey 177.5
  v journey 177.21
  migrate 177.22
trellis
  n network 170.3
  v net 170.7
tremble
  n trepidation 105.5
  trill 709.19
  agitate 917.3
  v be weak 16.8
  be excited 105.18
  shake 127.14
  fidget 128.6
  quiver 917.11
  freeze 1023.9
tremendous
  terrible 127.30
  large 247.7
  huge 257.20
  superb 999.15
tremor thrill 105.2
  trepidation 105.5
  speech defect 525.1
  trill 709.19
  shake 917.3
tremulous
  fearful 127.23
  jittery 128.12
  inarticulate 525.12
  shaking 917.17
trench
  n crack 224.2
  channel 239.1
  ocean depths 275.4
  valley 284.9
  trough 290.2
  entrenchment 460.5
  shelter 1009.3
  v intrude 214.5
  cleave 224.4
  channel 239.15
  excavate 284.15
  furrow 290.3
trenchant
  energetic 17.13
  acrimonious 17.14
  pungent 68.6
  caustic 144.23
  vigorous 544.11
  sagacious 920.16
trencherman eater 8.16
  glutton 672.3
trench warfare 458.1
trend
  n direction 161.1
  course 172.2
  flow 238.4
  fashion 578.1
  drift 896.2
  v take direction 161.7
  deviate 164.3
  flow 238.16
  tend 896.3
trendsetter 578.7
trendy
  fashionable 578.11
  faddish 578.15
  knowledgeable 928.17
trepidation
  trepidity 105.5
  fear 127.5
  nervousness 128.1
  agitation 917.1
trés bien 332.18
trés bon 999.12
trespass
  n intrusion 214.1
  violation 435.2
  usurpation 640.3
  misdeed 655.2
  lawbreaking 674.3
  overstepping 910.3
  v intrude 214.5
  violate 435.4
  usurp 640.8
  do wrong 655.4
  break the law 674.5
  overstep 910.9
tresses 3.4
trestle
  railway 383.7
  horse 901.16
trey card 758.2
  three 876.1
trial
  n annoyance 96.2
  tribulation 96.9
  attempt 403.2
  preparation 405.1
  contest 457.3
  number 530.8
  legal action 598.5
  experiment 942.1
  test 942.2
  adversity 1011.1
  adj tentative 403.16
  three 876.3
  experimental 942.11
trial and error
  attempt 403.2
  experiment 942.1
trial balloon
  question 938.10
  feeler 942.4
trial by jury 598.5
trials and tribulations 96.9
triangle bell 54.4
  love affair 104.6
  straightedge 277.3
  punishment 605.3
  three 876.1
triangulate
  v locate 159.11
  measure 300.10
  adj tripartite 878.4
triathlon sport 744.1
  track meet 755.2

tribe race 559.4
company 770.3
kind 809.3
classifications 809.5
tribunal
n council 423.1
court 595.1
forum 595.1
platform 901.13
adj judicial 595.7
tributary
n feeder 238.3
adj subject 432.13
tribute demand 421.1
gift 478.4
celebration 487.1
praise 509.5
fee 624.5
tax 630.9
citation 646.4
acknowledgment 888.2
trick
n act 328.3
artifice 356.6
habit 373.3
pretext 376.1
intrigue 381.5
knack 413.6
stratagem 415.3
prank 489.10
mannerism 500.2
style 532.2
bridge 758.3
shift 825.3
characteristic 865.4
quirk 927.2
goof 975.6
illusion 976.1
expedient 995.2
v deceive 356.14
fool 356.15
live by one's wits 415.9
play a practical joke 489.14
trickle
n leakage 190.5
tricklet 238.7
a few 885.2
v leak 190.14
dribble 238.18
tricks of the trade 356.6
tricky deceptive 356.21
deceitful 356.22
cunning 415.12
waggish 489.17
dishonest 645.16
improper 645.18
treacherous 645.21
difficult 1013.17
tricycle 179.8
trident
n fork 171.4
three 876.1
adj tripartite 878.4
tried and true
experienced 413.28
devoted 587.21
trustworthy 644.19
traditional 842.12
proven 942.12
trifle
n hardly anything 248.5
thing of naught 764.2
particular 766.3
triviality 998.5
v waste time 331.13
leave undone 340.7
make love 562.14
be foolish 923.6
dally 998.14
trifle with
disrespect 156.4
do carelessly 340.9
trifurcation 878.1
trigger
n immediate cause 886.3
v kindle 375.18
explode 671.14
cause 886.10
receive 1036.17
trigger-happy
jittery 128.12
warlike 458.21
trigger man
killer 308.11
ruffian 593.4
triglyceride 7.7
trigonal
triangular 278.8
tripartite 878.4
trigonometry 278.3
trihedral sided 218.7
tripartite 878.4
trilateral sided 218.7
triangular 278.8
tripartite 878.4
trill
n trillo 709.19
v ripple 52.11
bird sound 60.5
leak 190.14
sing 708.38
trilogy 876.1
trim
n ornamentation 498.1
good condition 765.3
v cut the hair 3.22
trim ship 182.49
border 211.10
shorten 268.6
prepare 405.6
defeat 412.9
remain neutral 467.5
ornament 498.8
disapprove 510.18
punish 604.15
cheapen 633.6
fasten 800.7
sever 802.11
tidy 808.12
reel in 906.9
adj in trim 180.19
shipshape 180.20
shapely 264.5
elegant 533.6
chic 578.13
tidy 807.8
trimester
moment 824.2
three 876.1
trim sail 182.20
trim size volume 554.4
makeup 554.12
trinity three 876.1
threeness 876.2
Godhead 677.9
trinket gewgaw 498.4
toy 743.16
trifle 998.5
Trinkgeld 478.5
trinomial
n three 876.1
adj terminological 527.17
trio cooperation 450.1
part music 708.18
three 876.1
trip
n journey 177.5
flight 184.9
tumble 194.3
bungle 414.5
misdeed 655.2
group of animals 770.5
slip 975.4
illusion 976.1
figment of the imagination 986.5
v use 87.22
speed 174.8
way of walking 177.28
tumble 194.8
trap 356.20
caper 366.6
overcome 412.7
bungle 414.11
go wrong 654.9
explode 671.14
dance 705.5
play 743.23
fell 913.5
err 975.9
dream 986.17
tripartite 878.4
tripe food 10.20
bull 520.3
triple
n game 745.3
v intensify 251.5
play 745.5
triplicate 877.2
adj three 876.3
triplicate 877.3
triple crown
ecclesiastical insignia 647.4
horse racing 757.1
three 876.1
triple play 745.3
triplet note 709.14
tempo 709.24
poetry 720.9
three 876.1
triplicate
n reproduce 785.3
triplication 877.1
v copy 785.8
triple 877.2
adj triple 877.3
tripod three 876.1
fire iron 1020.12
tripping
n hallucination 976.7
adj high 87.24
harmonious 533.8
fluent 544.9
trip up
abase 137.5
trap 356.20
overcome 412.7
discompose 811.4
fell 913.5
make a boner 975.15
distract 985.6
tripwire 1006.5
trisect 878.3
trite corny 117.9
habitual 373.14
commonplace 864.16
well-known 928.27
aphoristic 974.6
trivial 998.19
tritium 1038.5
Triton
spirit of the sea 240.4
water god 678.10
triumph
n rejoicing 116.1
great success 409.3
victory 411.1
celebration 487.1
crowing 502.4
v best 249.7
win through 409.13
prevail 411.3
exult 502.9
triumphant
successful 409.14
victorious 411.7
crowing 502.13
triumvirate
cooperation 450.1
government 612.4
three 876.1
trivet
three 876.1
fire iron 1020.12
trivia 551.1
trivial
insignificant 248.6
inadequate 250.7
shallow 276.5
worthless 391.11
quibbling 936.14
trifling 998.19
troglodyte
barbarian 497.7
ancient 842.7
troika
cooperation 450.1
three 876.1
Trojan horse
subversive 357.11
language 1042.13
troll
n round 708.19
v fish 382.10
sing 708.38
push 904.9
pull 905.4
roll 915.10
trolley handcar 179.16
streetcar 179.17
trollop reprobate 660.4
strumpet 665.14
slob 810.7
trombonist 710.4

- **troop**
  - military unit 461.22
  - company 770.3
  - group of animals 770.5
- **trooper**
  - cavalryman 461.12
  - war-horse 461.30
  - policeman 1008.15
- **trophy**
  - desire 100.11
  - victory 411.1
  - monument 549.12
  - laurel 646.3
  - tennis 748.1
  - memento 989.7
  - good thing 999.5
- **tropical** 1019.24
- **tropical fish** 311.31
- **Tropic of Cancer** 231.3
- **Tropic of Capricorn** 231.3
- **tropics** zone 231.3
  - hot place 1019.11
- **trot**
  - *n* run 174.3
  - gait 177.12
  - old woman 304.3
  - translation 341.3
  - repetitiousness 849.4
  - *v* speed 174.8
  - go on horseback 177.34
  - depart 188.7
- **trot out** 348.5
- **trotter** foot 199.5
  - race horse 311.14
  - jockey 757.2
- **troubadour**
  - wanderer 178.2
  - minstrel 710.14
  - poet 720.11
- **trouble**
  - *n* annoyance 96.2
  - affliction 96.8
  - anxiety 126.1
  - imposition 643.1
  - exertion 725.1
  - commotion 810.4
  - inconvenience 996.3
  - adversity 1011.1
  - impediment 1012.6
  - the matter 1013.3
  - *v* distress 96.16
  - vex 98.15
  - excite 105.14
  - concern 126.4
  - presume upon 640.7
  - discompose 811.4
  - agitate 917.10
  - inconvenience 996.4
  - beset 1013.13
- **trouble-free**
  - perfect 1002.6
  - unhazardous 1007.5
- **troublemaker**
  - rebel 327.5
  - instigator 375.11
  - mischief-maker 593.2
- **troubleshooter** 396.10
- **troubleshooting** 466.1
- **trouble spot** 458.1
- **trough**
  - *n* atmosphere 184.32
  - wave 238.14
  - channel 239.1
  - gutter 239.3
  - cavity 284.2
  - valley 284.9
  - trench 290.2
  - oscillation 916.4
  - *v* excavate 284.15
  - furrow 290.3
- **trounce** best 249.7
  - defeat 412.9
  - criticize 510.20
  - whip 604.13
- **troupe**
  - *n* cast 707.11
  - company 770.3
  - *v* act 704.29
- **trousers** 5.18
- **trousseau** 5.2
- **trove** find 472.6
  - discovery 941.1
- **trowel** 1040.2
- **truant**
  - *n* absentee 222.5
  - shirker 368.3
  - wretch 660.2
  - *adj* absent without leave 222.13
- **truce** armistice 465.5
  - pause 857.3
- **truck**
  - *n* lorry 179.12
  - communication 343.1
  - rubbish 391.5
  - impedimenta 471.3
  - commerce 731.1
  - groceries 735.7
  - relation 775.1
  - *v* haul 176.13
  - trade 731.15
- **truculent**
  - cruel 144.26
  - warlike 458.21
  - gruff 505.7
- **trudge**
  - *n* slow motion 175.2
  - walk 177.10
  - *v* plod 175.7
  - way of walking 177.28
- **true**
  - *v* make agree 788.7
  - *adj* straight 277.6
  - firm 359.12
  - observant 434.4
  - devoted 587.21
  - honest 644.16
  - trustworthy 644.19
  - faithful 644.20
  - orthodox 687.7
  - real 761.15
  - certain 970.13
  - truthful 973.13
- **true believer**
  - orthodox Christian 687.4
  - believer 953.9
- **true blue** fidelity 644.7
  - person of honor 644.8
- **true course**
  - direction 161.2
  - course 184.34
- **true meaning** 518.1
- **true to form**
  - typical 349.15
  - characteristic 865.13
- **true to life**
  - descriptive 349.14
  - lifelike 784.16
  - genuine 973.15
- **truism**
  - generalization 864.8
  - axiom 974.2
- **truly**
  - *adv* really 761.16
  - certainly 970.23
  - *interj* yes 332.18
- **trump**
  - *n* good person 659.2
  - bridge 758.3
  - expedient 995.2
  - *v* excel 249.6
- **trump card**
  - opportunity 843.2
  - influence 894.1
- **trumped-up** 354.28
- **trumpet**
  - *n* blare 53.5
  - *v* blare 53.10
  - proclaim 352.13
  - flaunt 501.17
  - praise 509.12
  - speak 524.25
  - blow a horn 708.42
- **truncate** excise 255.10
  - deform 265.7
  - shorten 268.6
- **truncheon**
  - *n* scepter 417.9
  - *v* whip 604.13
- **trundle** push 904.9
  - roll 915.10
- **trunk**
  - cylinder 282.4
  - nose 283.8
  - stem 310.21
  - line 347.17
  - base 901.8
  - body 1052.3
- **trunk line** 347.17
- **trunks** 5.29
- **truss**
  - *n* bundle 770.8
  - *v* bundle 770.20
  - bind 800.9
- **trust**
  - *n* hope 124.1
  - estate 471.4
  - commission 615.1
  - association 617.9
  - credit 622.1
  - investment company 737.16
  - belief 953.1
  - confidence 970.5
  - *v* hope 124.7
  - commit 478.16
  - give credit 622.6
  - believe 953.10
  - confide in 953.17
- **trustee** fiduciary 470.5
  - recipient 479.3
  - treasurer 729.12
- **trust fund** 737.16
- **trustworthy**
  - trusty 644.19
  - believable 953.24
  - reliable 970.17
  - unhazardous 1007.5
- **trusty**
  - *n* prisoner 429.11
  - person of honor 644.8
  - *adj* trustworthy 644.19
  - dependable 953.22
  - believable 953.24
  - reliable 970.17
- **truth**
  - honesty 644.3
  - reality 761.2
  - certainty 970.1
  - trueness 973.1
  - axiom 974.2
- **the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth** 973.3
- **the truth of the matter**
  - fact 761.3
  - existence 761.4
  - the real story 973.3
- **try**
  - *n* attempt 403.3
  - test 942.2
  - *v* refine 79.22
  - attempt 403.6
  - try a case 598.18
  - experiment 942.8
  - sit in judgment 946.12
- **trying**
  - *n* experiment 942.1
  - *adj* weakening 16.20
  - fatiguing 21.13
  - oppressive 98.24
  - examining 938.37
  - experimental 942.11
  - adverse 1011.13
  - troublesome 1013.18
- **tryout**
  - audition 48.2
  - preparation 405.1
  - theatrical performance 704.12
  - workout 942.3
- **tryst** 582.9
- **T-shirt** 5.15
- **T square**
  - instrument 200.6
  - straightedge 277.3
- **tsunami** wave 238.14
  - upheaval 671.5
  - wave 916.4
- **tub**
  - *n* bath 79.8
  - washbasin 79.12
  - car 179.10
  - ship 180.1
  - heavyweight 257.12
  - *v* wash 79.19
- **tubby** corpulent 257.18
  - stubby 268.10
- **tube**
  - *n* train 179.14
  - pipe 239.6
  - cylinder 282.4
  - wave 916.4
  - electronics 1033.10

  v transport 176.14
tuber 310.22
tuberculosis
  epidemic 85.5
  white plague 85.17
tubing 239.6
tub-thumper 543.4
tubular tubate 239.16
  cylindric 282.11
tuck
  n food 10.2
  fold 291.1
  game 746.3
  race 753.3
  v fold 291.5
tuckered out 21.8
tuff 1059.1
tuft flock 3.6
  beard 3.8
  feather 3.16
  growth 310.2
  bunch 770.7
tug
  n strain 725.2
  pull 905.2
  attraction 907.1
  v strain 725.10
  pull 905.4
  attract 907.4
tug-of-war fight 457.4
  pulling 905.1
tuition 568.1
tumble
  n fall 194.3
  collapse 410.3
  jumble 810.3
  flounder 917.8
  v be excited 105.18
  pitch 182.55
  fall 194.8
  be destroyed 395.22
  lose 412.12
  confuse 811.3
  fell 913.5
  wallow 915.13
  flounder 917.15
  confound 945.3
tummy goozle 2.19
  middle 819.1
tummyache 26.5
tumor symptom 85.9
  growth 85.39
  swelling 283.4
tumult noise 53.3
  excitement 105.4
  bustle 330.4
  turbulence 671.2
  commotion 810.4
  agitation 917.1
tundra plain 236.1
  cold place 1023.4
tune
  n melody 708.2
  harmony 708.3
  air 708.4
  pitch 709.4
  v fit 405.8
  harmonize 708.35
  tune up 708.36
  make agree 788.7
  organize 808.10
  rearrange 808.13
tune in
  listen in 1034.27
  receive 1036.17
tune out exclude 773.4
  be inattentive 984.2
  listen in 1034.27
tune up tune 708.36
  organize 808.10
  rearrange 808.13
  listen in 1034.27
tuning fork 711.22
tunnel
  n lair 228.26
  channel 239.1
  cave 284.5
  passageway 383.3
  entrenchment 460.5
  v deepen 275.8
  excavate 284.15
tunnel vision
  faulty eyesight 28.1
  narrow-mindedness 980.1
turbid
  disorderly 810.13
  opaque 1031.3
  fluid 1061.4
  slimy 1062.14
turbine 904.6
turbocharger 756.1
turbojet 181.3
turbulent
  noisy 53.13
  tumultuous 105.24
  stormy 318.23
  rebellious 327.11
  bustling 330.20
  violent 671.18
  disorderly 810.13
  agitated 917.16
turd feces 12.4
  bad person 660.5
turf abode 228.1
  sod 310.6
  arena 463.1
  occupation 724.4
  horse racing 757.1
  sphere of influence 894.4
turgid
  distended 259.13
  bulged 283.16
  pompous 501.22
  stiff 534.3
  bombastic 545.9
turkey
  poultry 311.29
  failure 410.2
  loser 410.8
  stage show 704.4
  game 750.2
Turkish bath 79.8
turmoil
  excitement 105.4
  anarchy 418.2
  turbulence 671.2
  jumble 810.3
  commotion 810.4
  agitation 917.1
turn
  n looks 33.4
  inclination 100.3
  start 131.3
  act of kindness 143.7
  deviation 164.1
  journey 177.5
  walk 177.10
  bias 204.3
  form 262.1
  distortion 265.1
  bend 279.3
  act 328.3
  aptitude 413.5
  show business 704.7
  ornament 709.18
  transaction 731.4
  trading 737.19
  ski move 753.3
  race 756.3
  bout 825.2
  shift 825.3
  crisis 843.4
  round 850.3
  change 852.1
  reversion 859.1
  tendency 896.1
  circuitousness 914.1
  circuit 914.2
  whirl 915.2
  disposition 978.3
  v direct 161.5
  take direction 161.7
  turn round 163.9
  deviate 164.3
  change course 182.30
  oblique 204.9
  distort 265.5
  curve 279.6
  convolve 281.4
  blunt 286.2
  ski 753.4
  recur 850.5
  be changed 852.6
  change 854.5
  turn back 859.5
  tend 896.3
  go around 914.6
  rotate 915.9
turn a blind eye
  take 134.8
  exclude 773.4
  be inattentive 984.2
turnabout
  n regression 163.3
  reverse 363.1
  apostate 363.5
  change 852.1
  reversion 859.1
  v turn 163.9
turn a deaf ear
  be deaf 49.4
  show no mercy 146.2
  exclude 773.4
turn against
  act the traitor 645.15
  defect 858.13
turnaround
  n regression 163.3
  reverse 363.1
  v turn 163.9
turn aside
  deviate 164.3
  avoid 164.6
  disincline 379.4
  fend off 460.10
  digress 538.9
  be changed 852.6
  pull back 903.7
  prevent 1012.14
turn away avoid 164.6
  reject 372.2
  disincline 379.4
turn back
  put back 163.8
  avoid 164.6
  change course 182.30
  repeat 849.11
  convert 858.11
  change back 859.5
  repulse 908.3
turn back the clock
  make young 301.8
  be conservative 853.6
turncoat
  n traitor 357.10
  apostate 363.5
  convert 858.8
  adj traitorous 645.22
turn down invert 205.5
  refuse 442.3
turn down the volume 670.6
turned 393.41
turn in go to bed 22.18
  invert 205.5
  betray 645.14
turn informer 551.12
turning point
  crisis 843.4
  crucial moment 843.5
  urgency 997.4
  salient point 997.6
turn in one's badge 448.2
turn inside out
  invert 205.5
  ransack 938.33
turn into
  translate 341.12
  become 761.12
  be changed 852.6
  convert 858.11
  be converted into 858.17
turnip 832.6
turn loose 431.5
turn of events 831.2
turn off offend 98.11
  disincline 379.4
  shut off 857.12
  dismiss 909.18
  stop 909.19
  electrify 1032.26
turn of phrase 529.1
turn of the screw 251.2
turn on excite 105.12
  rouse 375.19
  inaugurate 818.11
  result from 887.5
  depend 959.6
  electrify 1032.26
turn on a dime 163.9
turn one's back on
  quit 188.9
  slight 340.8
  defect 370.6
  reject 372.2

refuse 442.3
turn one's stomach 64.4
turnout wardrobe 5.2
rig 179.5
attendance 221.4
assembly 770.2
turn out outfit 5.41
get up 23.6
invert 205.5
reject 372.2
equip 385.8
be in a certain state 765.5
happen 831.7
result 887.4
eject 909.13
evict 909.15
dismiss 909.19
come true 973.12
turnover pastry 10.41
overturn 205.2
sale 734.1
game 746.3
error 747.3
turn over
transfer 176.10
capsize 182.44
invert 205.5
overturn 205.6
fold 291.5
relinquish 475.3
deliver 478.13
submit 629.3
sell 734.8
think over 931.13
turn over a new leaf
make better 392.9
change 852.7
re-form 858.12
turn state's evidence
betray 351.6
inform on 551.12
turn swords into plowshares 465.11
turntable 50.11
turn the corner
recuperate 396.19
be changed 852.6
turn the other cheek
take 134.8
condone 148.4
turn the tables
invert 205.5
change 852.7
gain influence 894.12
turn the tide 852.7
turn the trick
accomplish 407.4
succeed with 409.11
turn thumbs down 586.6
turn to
be converted into 858.17
practice 328.8
avail oneself of 387.14
undertake 404.3
set to work 725.15
begin 818.7
attend to 983.5
turn up appear 33.8
be unexpected 131.6
arrive 186.6
upturn 193.13
attend 221.8
show up 831.6
uncover 941.4
discover 941.9
chance 972.11
turn up one's nose at
spurn 157.4
reject 372.2
disapprove 510.10
dismiss 984.4
turn upside down
invert 205.5
overturn 205.6
ransack 938.33
turpentine 35.8
turquoise 45.3
turret 272.6
turtle 311.25
tush teeth 2.8
buttocks 217.5
tusk
n teeth 2.8
v gore 459.26
tussle
n quarrel 456.5
fight 457.4
struggle 725.3
v contend 457.13
struggle 725.11
tutelage
dependence 432.3
patronage 449.4
teaching 568.1
instructorship 571.10
disciple 572.2
protectorship 1008.2
tutor
n academic rank 571.3
teacher 571.5
v coach 568.11
tutti-frutti 10.40
tutu 5.9
tuxedo 5.11
TV sexual pervert 75.16
television 1035.1
receiver 1035.11
twain
n two 873.2
adj two 873.6
twang
n rasp 58.3
accent 524.8
speech defect 525.1
v sound harshly 58.9
speak 524.25
nasalize 525.10
strum 708.40
tweak
n pang 26.2
squeezing 260.2
jerk 905.3
v pain 26.7
squeeze 260.8
jerk 905.5
tweedy studious 570.17
pedagogic 571.11
tweezers 192.9
twelfth 882.24
twelve 882.7
twentieth 882.26
twentieth-century 841.13
twenty 882.7
twenty-five 882.7
twenty-four carat 973.15
twenty-four-hour 812.8
twenty-twenty 27.21
twerp
bad person 660.5
fool 924.3
twice 874.5
twiddle one's thumbs
do nothing 329.2
idle 331.12
twig
n sprout 302.11
branch 310.20
member 793.4
v see 27.12
twilight
n foredawn 314.4
dusk 315.3
daylight 1025.10
darkishness 1027.2
adj evening 315.8
twilled 291.7
twin
n image 349.5
the same 778.3
likeness 784.3
equal 790.4
v coincide 778.4
double 873.5
duplicate 874.3
adj accompanying 769.9
identical 778.7
analogous 784.11
two 873.6
twine
n cord 271.2
v convolve 281.4
weave 740.6
twinge
n pang 26.2
v suffer 26.8
twinkle
n instant 830.3
glitter 1025.7
v glitter 1025.24
twins set 784.5
pair of twins 873.4
twirl
n eddy 238.12
coil 281.2
whirl 915.2
v convolve 281.4
whirl 915.11
twist
n braid 3.7
aspect 33.3
marijuana cigarette 87.12
chewing tobacco 89.7
deviation 164.1
bias 204.3
extra 254.4
distortion 265.1
coil 281.2
plot 722.4
tendency 896.1
quirk 927.2
disposition 978.3
prejudice 980.3
blemish 1004.1
v pain 26.7
stray 164.4
deflect 164.5
oblique 204.9
distort 265.5
pervert 265.6
deform 265.7
spin 271.6
convolve 281.4
misrepresent 350.3
falsify 354.16
corrupt 393.12
weave 740.6
rotate 915.9
prejudice 980.9
blemish 1004.4
twist and turn
be excited 105.18
stray 164.4
convolve 281.4
live by one's wits 415.9
go roundabout 914.4
wiggle 917.14
twisted pained 26.9
distorted 265.10
falsified 265.11
spurious 354.26
complex 799.4
eccentric 927.5
discriminatory 980.12
blemished 1004.8
twist one's arm
urge 375.14
persuade 375.23
coerce 424.8
threaten 514.2
influence 894.7
twit
n gibe 508.2
v bird sound 60.5
banter 490.5
scoff 508.9
accuse 599.7
sing 708.38
twitch
n pang 26.2
instant 830.3
jerk 905.3
shake 917.3
v suffer 26.8
be excited 105.18
jerk 905.5
agitate 917.13
two
n card 758.2
twain 873.2
adj twain 873.6
two bits money 728.7
fourth 881.2
two-by-four
n wood 1054.3
adj little 258.10
insignificant 998.18
two cents 998.5
two-dimensional
spatial 158.10
unimportant 998.16
two-dollar bill 728.7
two dozen 882.7
two-edged sharp 285.8
ambiguous 539.4

two-faced
  falsehearted 354.31
  deceitful 356.22
  treacherous 645.21
  two 873.6
twofold 874.5
two of a kind 784.5
two-party system 609.24
two-sided sided 218.7
  ambiguous 539.4
  two 873.6
two-timer cheat 357.3
  criminal 660.9
two-way 777.11
tycoon ruler 575.9
  businessman 730.1
  personage 997.8
type
  n omen 133.3
  form 262.1
  measure 300.2
  representative 349.7
  preference 371.5
  symbol 517.2
  sign 518.6
  print 548.6
  nature 767.4
  model 786.1
  example 786.2
  kind 809.3
  specialty 866.1
  oddity 870.4
  disposition 978.3
  v write 547.19
  classify 809.6
type A 2.25
type AB 2.25
Type A behavior 321.1
type B 2.25
Type B behavior 321.1
typeface 548.6
type O 2.25
typeset 548.19
typesetter 548.12
type size 548.6
typewritten 547.22
typhoon
  windstorm 318.12
  whirlwind 318.14
  storm 671.4
typical typic 349.15
  indicative 517.23
  model 786.8
  classificational 809.7
  normal 869.8
typify augur 133.12
  designate 517.18
typographer 548.12
typographical error 975.3
tyranny force 424.2
  subjection 432.1
  government 612.4
  absolutism 612.9
  despotism 612.10
tyrant 575.14
ubiquitous
  omnipresent 221.13
  almighty 677.17
  thorough 794.10
  recurrent 849.13
U-boat 180.9
udder 283.6
UFO 1075.3
ugly
  unpleasant 98.17
  irascible 110.20
  dangerous 1006.9
  unsightly 1015.6
ugly duckling
  nonconformist 868.3
  eyesore 1015.4
UHF 1034.12
UK 232.4
ulcer 85.37
ulterior
  additional 253.10
  thither 261.10
  secret 345.11
  extraneous 774.5
ultimate
  n acme of perfection 1002.3
  adj top 198.10
  farthest 261.12
  completing 407.9
  mandatory 420.12
  ending 820.10
  final 820.11
  eventual 831.11
  future 839.8
ultimatum
  warning 399.1
  demand 421.1
  last word 439.3
  condition 959.2
ultra
  n radical 611.12
  adj extreme 247.13
ultraconservative
  n political principles 611.9
  conservative 853.4
  adj conservative 611.17
  radical 611.20
  political 853.8
ultrahigh frequency 1034.12
ultramodern 841.13
ultrasonic
  acoustic 50.17
  supersonic 174.16
ultrasound sound 50.1
  diagnosis 91.9
ultraviolet light 1025.1
ultra-violet radiation 1037.1
Ulysses 178.2
umber 40.3
umbilical 208.11
umbrage offense 152.2
  foliage 310.18
  shadow 1027.3
umbrella
  parachute 181.13
  Air Force mission 184.11
  gamp 295.7
  safeguard 1008.3
  shade 1028.1
umlaut 524.13
umpire
  n arbitrator 466.4
  judge 596.1
  game 745.3
  referee 747.3
  mediator 748.2
  linesman 749.6
  ruler 946.6
  v mediate 466.6
  play 745.5
  sit in judgment 946.12
UN 614.1
unabashed
  brazen 142.11
  undaunted 492.21
  immodest 666.6
unabated
  unweakened 15.21
  undiminished 247.14
  unmitigated 671.17
unable incapable 19.14
  incompetent 414.19
unabridged 792.12
unacceptable
  inadmissible 108.10
  unpraiseworthy 510.24
  unwelcome 586.9
unaccompanied
  separate 802.20
  alone 872.8
unaccountable
  lawless 418.5
  exempt 430.30
  inexplicable 522.18
  inconstant 854.7
  fantastic 870.12
  uncertain 971.16
  purposeless 972.16
unaccustomed 374.4
unadorned mere 248.8
  natural 416.6
  undecorated 499.8
  elegant 533.6
  plain-speaking 535.3
  simple 798.6
unadulterated
  clean 79.25
  unadorned 499.8
  unmixed 798.7
  unqualified 960.2
  genuine 973.15
  perfect 1002.6
unaffected
  unmoved 94.11
  unyielding 361.9
  natural 416.6
  tasteful 496.8
  plain 499.7
  elegant 533.6
  plain-speaking 535.3
  informal 581.3
  undeceptive 644.18
  uninfluenced 895.5
  genuine 973.15
unaffectionate
  unfeeling 94.9
  unkind 144.16
unafraid
  unfearing 492.20
  confident 970.21
unaided
  adj alone 872.8
  adv singly 872.13
unalterable
  unyielding 361.9
  unchangeable 855.17
  inflexible 1046.12
unamazed 123.3
unambiguous
  clear 521.11
  certain 970.13
unambitious
  undesirous 102.8
  modest 139.9
unanimous
  solid 332.15
  agreeing 788.9
unannounced 131.10
unanswerable
  exempt 430.30
  obvious 970.15
unanticipated
  unexpected 131.10
  sudden 830.5
unappealing 98.17
unappeased 100.27
unappetizing
  unsavory 64.5
  unpleasant 98.17
unappreciated 99.9
unapprehended 930.17
unapproachable
  peerless 249.15
  out-of-the-way 261.9
  reticent 344.10
  aloof 583.6
  inaccessible 967.9
unarguable 970.15
unarmed unfitted 406.9
  unprotected 1006.14
unaroused 173.14
unashamed
  unregretful 114.4
  immodest 666.6
unaspiring
  undesirous 102.8
  modest 139.9
  unimaginative 987.5
unassailable 15.19
unassisted 872.8
unassuming
  modest 139.9
  natural 416.6
  plain 499.7
  informal 581.3
  undeceptive 644.18
  genuine 973.15
unattached
  free 430.21
  separate 802.20
unattainable
  impracticable 967.8
  inaccessible 967.9
unattended
  separate 802.20
  alone 872.8
  unprotected 1006.14
unattracted 102.8
unauthorized
  prohibited 444.7
  illegal 674.6
unavailable 967.9
unavailing
  ineffective 19.15
  useless 391.9
unavoidable 963.15
unaware
  insensible 94.10
  inexpectant 131.9

unconscious 930.13
unawed
unastonished 123.3
undaunted 492.21
unbalanced
eccentric 160.12
unjust 650.9
ill-balanced 791.5
insane 926.26
unbathed 80.20
unbearable
insufferable 98.25
downright 247.12
unbeatable
impregnable 15.19
peerless 249.15
unbeaten
unused 390.12
undefeated 411.8
new 841.7
unbecoming
vulgar 497.10
disgraceful 661.11
indecent 666.5
inappropriate 789.7
unbefitting
inappropriate 789.7
untimely 844.6
inexpedient 996.5
unbelievable
fantastic 870.12
incredible 955.10
unbend relax 20.7
straighten 277.5
moderate 670.9
yield 1047.7
unbiased
impartial 649.10
unprejudiced 979.12
unbidden
unwanted 99.11
voluntary 324.7
unwelcome 586.9
unblemished
clean 79.25
honest 644.13
spotless 657.7
chaste 664.4
perfect 1002.6
unblinking
unnervous 129.2
alert 339.14
undaunted 492.21
unblock unclose 292.12
facilitate 1014.7
unborn 762.10
unbound
unrestricted 430.27
untied 430.28
liberated 431.10
unfastened 802.22
unbowed
unweakened 15.21
straight 277.6
undefeated 411.8
unbreakable firm 15.18
nonbreakable 1049.5
unbreatheable 345.11
unbridled
lawless 418.5
unrestrained 430.24
profligate 665.25
intemperate 669.7
unruly 671.19
excessive 993.16
unbroken
directional 161.12
straight 277.6
smooth 287.10
unsubject 430.29
uniform 781.5
continuous 812.8
constant 847.5
undamaged 1002.8
unbuckle
loose 431.6
detach 802.10
unburden
relieve 120.7
lighten 298.6
unload 909.23
unbutton 802.10
uncage 431.6
uncalled-for
unwanted 99.11
impudent 142.10
voluntary 324.7
needless 391.10
superfluous 993.17
uncanny
awesome 122.11
creepy 127.31
deathly 307.29
weird 988.9
uncap 292.12
uncaring
n carelessness 340.2
incuriosity 982.1
adj apathetic 94.13
careless 340.11
unceasing
continuous 812.8
perpetual 829.7
constant 847.5
continuing 856.7
uncensored 430.28
unceremonious 581.3
uncertain
inconspicuous 32.6
irresolute 362.9
ambiguous 539.4
speculative 759.27
relative 775.7
irregular 851.3
inconstant 854.7
doubting 955.9
unsure 971.16
unsafe 1006.11
uncertified
unproved 958.8
unauthoritative 971.21
unchained
unbound 430.28
unfastened 802.22
unchallenged
unanimous 332.15
undoubted 970.16
unchangeable
unyielding 361.9
uniform 781.5
permanent 853.7
not to be changed 855.17
unchanging
almighty 677.17
uniform 781.5
constant 847.5
permanent 853.7
unchangeable 855.17
unchaperoned 340.14
uncharitable
unbenevolent 144.17
narrow-minded 980.10
uncharted 930.17
unchaste
unvirtuous 654.12
sensual 663.5
lascivious 665.23
obscene 666.9
unchecked
lawless 418.5
unrestrained 430.24
permitted 443.16
candid 644.17
permanent 853.7
unauthoritative 971.21
uncirculated 841.9
uncircumcised 688.10
uncivilized
cruel 144.26
unrefined 497.12
savage 671.21
unclad 6.13
unclasp release 475.4
detach 802.10
unclassified
open 348.10
unordered 810.12
unknown 930.17
uncle 559.3
unclean
unwashed 80.20
unvirtuous 654.12
unchaste 665.23
obscene 666.9
demoniac 680.17
terrible 1000.9
unclear
inconspicuous 32.6
faint 52.16
formless 263.4
obscure 522.15
illegible 522.19
vague 971.19
unclench 292.12
Uncle Sam
country 232.5
the government 612.3
unclog unclose 292.12
evacuate 909.22
facilitate 1014.7
unclothe 6.7
unclouded visible 31.6
unhidden 348.11
light 1025.31
transparent 1029.4
uncluttered 798.6
uncoded 521.12
uncoil disinvolve 798.5
unfold 861.7
uncollected accounts 628.1
uncolored
colorless 36.7
genuine 973.15
uncombed
unrefined 497.12
disheveled 810.14
uncomfortable
distressed 96.22
unpleasant 98.20
uncommitted
free 430.21
neutral 467.7
cautious 494.8
uncommon
remarkable 247.10
novel 841.11
infrequent 848.2
unusual 870.10
scarce 992.11
uncommunicative
silent 343.10
indisposed to communicate 344.8
secretive 345.15
cautious 494.8
inexpressive 522.20
unsociable 583.5
uncomplaining
content 107.7
resigned 134.10
submissive 433.12
uncompleted
unaccomplished 408.3
incomplete 795.4
uncomplexity
unadornment 499.3
facility 1014.1
uncomplicated
unadorned 499.8
uninvolved 798.8
easy 1014.13
uncomplimentary 510.21
uncomprehending
undiscerning 922.14
ignorant 930.12
uncompromising
unyielding 361.9
firm 425.7
unconcealed
visible 31.6
unhidden 348.11
unconcerned
insensible 25.6
apathetic 94.13
uninterested 102.7
nonchalant 106.15
incurious 982.3
uncondemned 148.7
unconditional
unrestricted 430.27
thorough 794.10
unqualified 960.2
unconducive 391.14
unconfined 430.27
unconfirmed
unproved 958.8
unauthoritative 971.21
unconnected
unintelligible 522.13
unrelated 776.6
separate 802.20
incoherent 804.4
discontinuous 813.4
illogical 936.11

unconquered
undefeated 411.8
unsubject 430.29
unconscionable
downright 247.12
overpriced 632.12
dishonest 645.16
unjustifiable 650.12
violent 671.16
excessive 993.16
unconscious
n psyche 92.28
adj asleep 22.22
senseless 25.8
subconscious 92.42
insensible 94.10
unpremeditated 365.11
unaware 930.13
instinctive 934.6
involuntary 963.14
unintentional 972.17
oblivious 984.7
abstracted 985.11
inanimate 1055.5
unconsidered
neglected 340.14
unheeded 340.15
unexamined 340.16
unpremeditated 365.11
unwise 923.10
unthought-of 933.5
unconstitutional 674.6
unconstrained
communicative 343.10
unrestrained 430.24
informal 581.3
candid 644.17
intemperate 669.7
unconsumed
remaining 256.7
unused 390.12
uncontaminated
natural 416.6
perfect 1002.6
uncontested
unanimous 332.15
believed 953.23
undoubted 970.16
uncontrollable
frenzied 105.25
ungovernable 361.12
rabid 926.30
inevitable 963.15
unconventional
informal 581.3
unorthodox 868.6
eccentric 927.5
unconvinced
unbelieving 955.8
uncertain 971.16
uncooked 406.10
uncooperative
inconsiderate 144.18
insubordinate 327.9
obstinate 361.8
unconsenting 442.6
oppositional 451.8
resistant 453.5
uncoordinated 414.20
uncork 292.12
uncorroborated
unproved 958.8
unauthoritative 971.21
uncounted
innumerable 884.10
undecided 971.18
uncouple 802.8
uncouth
countrified 233.7
bungling 414.20
unrefined 497.12
inelegant 534.2
vulgar 666.8
uncover divest 6.5
disinter 192.11
unclose 292.12
disclose 351.4
greet 585.10
unearth 941.4
uncritical
obedient 326.3
unmeticulous 340.13
uncriticizing 509.18
undiscriminating 945.5
credulous 954.8
unction balm 86.11
flattery 511.2
function of Holy Ghost 677.15
sanctimony 693.1
sacred unction 701.5
ointment 1056.3
lubrication 1056.6
uncultivated
countrified 233.7
undeveloped 406.12
fallow 406.14
unrefined 497.12
unproductive 891.4
unlearned 930.14
uncultured
countrified 233.7
undeveloped 406.12
unrefined 497.12
unlearned 930.14
uncurl 277.5
uncut unformed 263.5
undeveloped 406.12
undivided 792.11
complete 794.9
undamaged
preserved 397.13
intact 792.10
unharmed 1002.8
safe 1007.4
undaunted
persevering 360.8
undismayed 492.21
undecided
irresolute 362.9
undetermined 971.18
undecided issue 971.8
undeclared 519.9
undefeated 411.8
undefended 1006.14
undefined
inconspicuous 32.6
formless 263.4
anonymous 528.3
almighty 677.17
vague 971.19
undeflected 277.6
undeformed 1002.8
undemanding
unstrict 426.5
undiscriminating 945.5
undeniable
downright 247.12
real 761.15
obvious 970.15
undependable
fickle 364.6
untrustworthy 645.19
inconstant 854.7
unreliable 971.20
unsafe 1006.11
under
adj lower 274.8
adv below 274.10
prep below 274.11
beneath 432.17
underachiever 572.4
under a cloud
accused 599.15
in disrepute 661.13
unreliable 955.11
doubted 955.12
under advisement 938.38
underage
n deficiency 795.2
shortcoming 911.1
adj immature 301.10
under arrest 429.22
under a spell 691.12
under attack
adj accused 599.15
adv under fire 459.31
underbelly
digestive system 2.18
bottom 199.1
underbrush 310.17
undercarriage 901.6
the underclass
the underprivileged 607.8
the poor 619.3
unfortunate 1011.7
underclothes 5.22
undercoating
color 35.8
painting 35.12
under consideration 938.38
under construction
in preparation 405.22
in production 892.21
under control
adj restrained 428.13
adv in hand 612.20
undercooked
underdone 11.9
raw 406.10
under cost 631.3
undercover
adj covert 345.12
adv secretly 345.17
undercurrent
feeling 93.1
flow 238.4
wind 318.1
opposition 451.1
implication 519.2
counterforce 900.4
hidden danger 1006.5
undercut
sell 734.8
disprove 958.4
underdeveloped
undeveloped 406.12
incomplete 795.4
underdog 412.5
underdone
undercooked 11.9
raw 406.10
under duress 514.4
underestimate
n underestimation 950.1
v misestimate 950.2
under fire
adj accused 599.15
adv under attack 459.31
underfoot 274.10
under full steam 174.20
undergarments 5.22
undergo afford 626.7
experience 831.8
undergraduate
n undergrad 572.6
adj studentlike 572.12
underground
n train 179.14
dissent 333.1
secret passage 346.5
subversive 357.11
irregular 461.16
adj subterranean 275.12
dissenting 333.6
covert 345.12
concealed 346.11
adv beneath the sod 309.23
secretly 345.17
undergrowth 310.17
underhanded
covert 345.12
deceitful 356.22
dishonest 645.16
under handicap 1012.21
under house arrest
concealed 346.11
under arrest 429.22
under investigation 938.38
underlayer
bottom 199.1
layer 296.1
underlie base on 199.6
lie low 274.5
be latent 519.3
support 901.21
underline
n line 517.6
v mark 517.19
emphasize 997.14
underling
inferior 250.2
subordinate 432.5
retainer 577.1
under lock and key
jailed 429.21
in safety 1007.6
underlying
basic 199.8
latent 519.5
essential 767.9
undermine
weaken 16.10

sap 393.15
overthrow 395.20
refute 958.5
underneath
n bottom 199.1
prep below 274.11
under 432.17
under no circumstances
adv no way 248.11
interj by no means 335.9
undernourish 270.12
under oath
adj promissory 436.7
adv affirmatively 334.10
under one's nose
before 216.12
near 223.20
openly 348.15
under one's thumb
subjugated 432.14
influenceable 894.15
underpaid 625.12
underpass 383.3
underpinning 901.6
under power 182.63
under pressure 325.8
underprice 633.6
underprivileged
inferior 250.6
indigent 619.8
unfortunate 1011.14
under protest
adj protesting 333.7
adv reluctantly 325.9
underrated 950.3
under restraint
restrained 428.13
confined 429.19
under sail
under way 172.9
traveling 182.63
underscore
n line 517.6
v mark 517.19
emphasize 997.14
undersecretary 575.17
undersell 734.8
underside 199.1
under siege 459.31
the undersigned 332.7
undersized
dwarf 258.13
lean 270.17
understaffed 992.9
understand
interpret 341.9
comprehend 521.7
know 928.12
suppose 951.10
understanding
n unanimity 332.5
obligation 436.2
compact 437.1
accord 455.1
compromise 468.1
entente 788.2
intellect 919.1
intelligence 920.1
comprehension 928.3
adj patient 134.9
pitying 145.7
in accord 455.3
intelligent 920.12
sagacious 920.16
knowing 928.15
understated 496.8
understructure
understruction 266.3
foundation 901.6
understudy
n deputy 576.1
supporting actor 707.7
substitute 862.2
v represent 576.14
under surveillance 938.38
under suspicion
adj doubted 955.12
adv on trial 942.14
undertake
practice 328.8
attempt 403.6
assume 404.3
commit 436.5
contract 437.5
set to work 725.15
undertaker 309.8
under the circumstances 766.11
under-the-counter
covert 345.12
illegal 674.6
under the gun
obligatorily 424.15
under duress 514.4
under the impression 953.21
under the influence
intoxicated 87.23
inebriated 88.31
under the sun
adj existent 761.13
adv everywhere 158.13
on earth 234.9
under the surface
adj latent 519.5
adv internally 207.9
under the table
adj dead-drunk 88.32
adv surreptitiously 345.18
under the weather 85.56
under the wire 846.19
undertone
murmur 52.4
milieu 209.3
meaning 518.1
implication 519.2
undertow flow 238.4
opposition 451.1
hidden danger 1006.5
undervalue 950.2
underwater 275.13
underwater explorer 240.8
under way
adj undertaken 404.7
in preparation 405.22
happening 831.9
adv under sail 172.9
making way 182.63
underwear 5.22
underweight
n leanness 270.5
weight 297.1
adj lean 270.17
lightweight 298.13
underworld 275.3
under wraps
secret 345.11
concealed 346.11
underwrite
ratify 332.12
promise 436.4
secure 438.9
protect 1008.18
underwriter
endorser 332.7
guarantor 438.6
insurance 1008.4
undeserved
undue 640.9
unjust 650.9
undesirable
n outcast 586.4
bad person 660.1
adj unpleasant 98.17
unacceptable 108.10
unwelcome 586.9
inexpedient 996.5
undetached
partial 650.11
discriminatory 980.12
undetectable 32.5
undetermined
irresolute 362.9
unproved 958.8
undecided 971.18
vague 971.19
chance 972.15
undeveloped
immature 301.10
unfinished 406.12
inexperienced 414.17
incomplete 795.4
new 841.7
imperfect 1003.4
undeviating
directional 161.12
straight 277.6
uniform 781.5
unchangeable 855.17
exact 973.17
undifferentiated
identical 778.7
uniform 781.5
simple 798.6
continuous 812.8
general 864.11
indistinguishable 945.6
undigested 406.11
undignified
vulgar 497.10
inelegant 534.2
undiluted 798.7
undiminished
unweakened 15.21
unabated 247.14
undivided 792.11
complete 794.9
undiscernible 32.5
undisciplined
disobedient 327.8
lawless 418.5
intemperate 669.7
inconstant 854.7
undisclosed
invisible 32.5
secret 345.11
unrevealed 346.12
unknown 930.17
undiscovered
unrevealed 346.12
unknown 930.17
undisguised
visible 31.6
unhidden 348.11
undeceptive 644.18
genuine 973.15
undismayed 492.21
undisputed
believed 953.23
undoubted 970.16
undistorted
straight 277.6
genuine 973.15
undisturbed
unexcited 106.11
untroubled 107.8
quiescent 173.12
undivided uncut 792.11
joined 800.13
one 872.7
undo take off 6.6
unnerve 128.10
unclose 292.12
do for 395.11
abolish 395.13
demolish 395.17
defeat 412.6
detach 802.10
neutralize 900.7
solve 940.2
undoing
destruction 395.1
defeat 412.1
disassembly 802.6
neutralization 900.2
undoubted
believed 953.23
not to be doubted 970.16
true 973.13
undress
n dishabille 5.20
unadornment 499.3
v unclothe 6.7
undue
overpriced 632.12
wrong 638.3
unowed 640.9
unjust 650.9
excessive 993.16
undulate
v maneuver 184.40
billow 238.22
recur 850.5
wave 916.11
adj wavy 281.10
unduplicated 337.6
undying
immortal 829.9
indestructible 855.18
continuing 856.7
uneager 102.8
unearned 640.9
unearth extract 192.10
uncover 941.4

unearthly
deathly 307.29
heavenly 681.12
godly 692.9
extraneous 774.5
odd 870.11
supernatural 870.15
unbelievable 955.10
weird 988.9
immaterial 1053.7
unease
unpleasure 96.1
discontent 108.1
anxiety 126.1
agitation 917.1
uneasy
pleasureless 96.20
distressed 96.22
restless 105.27
discontented 108.7
anxious 126.7
nervous 128.11
impatient 135.6
agitated 917.16
uneconomical 406.15
uneducated
vernacular 523.20
unlearned 930.14
unembellished
natural 416.6
unadorned 499.8
prosaic 721.5
unemotional 94.9
unemployed
motionless 173.13
idle 331.18
unused 390.12
unencumbered
lightened 298.11
unhampered 430.26
unending
continuous 812.8
perpetual 829.7
continuing 856.7
unendurable 98.25
unenjoyable
unpleasant 98.17
uninteresting 117.7
unenlightened
blind 30.9
ignorant 930.12
unenvied 156.9
unequaled 249.15
unequipped
unfitted 406.9
incompetent 414.19
unequivocal
downright 247.12
unrestricted 430.27
clear 521.11
candid 644.17
unqualified 960.2
certain 970.13
unerring
uncorrupt 653.8
infallible 970.19
exact 973.17
unescorted 872.8
unessential
n nonessential 768.2
adj needless 391.10
circumstantial 766.7
extrinsic 768.4
irrelevant 776.7
superfluous 993.17
insignificant 998.17
unestablished
unplaced 160.10
unproved 958.8
undecided 971.18
unethical
dishonest 645.16
vice-prone 654.11
uneven
rough 288.6
unjust 650.9
nonuniform 782.3
unequal 791.4
irregular 851.3
imperfect 1003.4
uneventful
uninteresting 117.7
tedious 118.9
unexamined 340.16
unexceptional
normal 869.8
ordinary 1005.8
unexhausted
unwearied 9.5
unweakened 15.21
unexpected
unanticipated 131.10
sudden 830.5
unusual 870.10
fantastic 870.12
improbable 969.3
chance 972.15
unexplained
unrevealed 346.12
unknown 930.17
unexplored
unexamined 340.16
unrevealed 346.12
unknown 930.17
unexposed
unrevealed 346.12
unknown 930.17
unfabricated 973.15
unfaded
unweakened 15.21
undamaged 1002.8
unfailing
persevering 360.8
faithful 644.20
permanent 853.7
reliable 970.17
unfair 650.10
unfaithful
nonobservant 435.5
faithless 645.20
unfamiliar
novel 841.11
unusual 870.10
ignorant 930.12
unknown 930.17
unfashionable
old-fashioned 842.16
unconventional 868.6
unfastened 802.22
unfathomable
abysmal 275.11
unintelligible 522.13
infinite 823.3
unfavorable
ominous 133.17
oppositional 451.8
disapproving 510.21
untimely 844.6
disadvantageous 996.6
bad 1000.7
adverse 1011.13
unfed fasting 515.5
ill-provided 992.12
unfeeling
n insensibility 25.1
unfeelingness 94.1
heartlessness 144.10
adj insensible 25.6
unemotional 94.9
heartless 144.25
pitiless 146.3
inanimate 1055.5
unfelt 25.6
unfertile 891.4
unfettered
unbound 430.28
unfastened 802.22
unfilled hungry 100.25
available 222.15
unfinished
undeveloped 406.12
unaccomplished 408.3
unskilled 414.16
incomplete 795.4
imperfect 1003.4
unfit
v disable 19.9
adj unable 19.14
unserviceable 391.14
unfitted 406.9
incompetent 414.19
wrong 638.3
inappropriate 789.7
untimely 844.6
inexpedient 996.5
unflagging
unweakened 15.21
industrious 330.22
persevering 360.8
unflappable
inexcitable 106.10
firm 359.12
stable 855.12
unflattering
undeceptive 644.18
genuine 973.15
unflavored 65.2
unflinching
unnervous 129.2
unhesitating 359.13
persevering 360.8
undaunted 492.21
stable 855.12
unfold spread 259.6
unclose 292.12
explain 341.10
manifest 348.5
disclose 351.4
amplify 538.7
unroll 861.7
result 887.4
unforced
adj voluntary 324.7
unrestrained 430.24
adv at will 323.5
unforeseen
unexpected 131.10
sudden 830.5
chance 972.15
unforgettable
never to be forgotten 989.26
notable 997.19
unforgivable
unjustifiable 650.12
wicked 654.16
unforgotten 989.23
unfortified
unmixed 798.7
unprotected 1006.14
unfortunate
n unlucky person 1011.7
adj ominous 133.17
unsuccessful 410.18
untimely 844.6
inexpedient 996.5
unlucky 1011.14
unfounded false 354.25
unsubstantial 764.8
baseless 936.13
unproved 958.8
unauthentic 975.19
illusory 976.9
unfreeze 1020.21
unfriendly
unpleasant 98.17
averse 99.8
oppositional 451.8
warlike 458.21
unsociable 583.5
inhospitable 586.7
inimical 589.9
unfrozen 1019.24
unfulfilled
pleasureless 96.20
discontented 108.7
unaccomplished 408.3
unfurl disclose 351.4
unfold 861.7
ungainly
bungling 414.20
ungraceful 1015.9
unglued
unnerved 128.14
unfastened 802.22
ungodly
unvirtuous 654.12
godless 695.17
unbelievable 955.10
execrable 1000.10
ungracious
unkind 144.16
discourteous 505.4
inhospitable 586.7
ungrammatical 531.4
ungrateful 151.4
ungrounded
unsubstantial 764.8
baseless 936.13
unguarded
negligent 340.10
unthinking 365.10
artless 416.5
candid 644.17
unintentional 972.17

unalert 984.8
unprotected 1006.14
unguided
unlearned 930.14
unintentional 972.17
unhampered
communicative 343.10
untrammeled 430.26
unqualified 960.2
unhand liberate 431.5
release 475.4
unhappy
pleasureless 96.20
discontented 108.7
uncheerful 112.21
disapproving 510.21
untimely 844.6
inexpedient 996.5
unfortunate 1011.14
unharmed
undamaged 1002.8
safe 1007.4
unharness 431.6
unhealthy
unhealthful 82.5
healthless 85.54
unwholesome 85.55
bad 1000.7
unsafe 1006.11
unheard-of
wonderful 122.10
unrenowned 661.14
novel 841.11
unusual 870.10
unknown 930.17
unheated 1023.13
unheeded 340.15
unheralded 131.10
unhesitant 359.13
unhidden visible 31.6
open 292.17
unconcealed 348.11
unhinged
dislocated 160.9
insane 926.26
unhitch 802.10
unholy unsacred 686.3
ungodly 695.17
execrable 1000.10
unhook 802.10
unhurried slow 175.10
leisurely 402.6
unhurt
undamaged 1002.8
safe 1007.4
unicellular
cellular 305.19
unipartite 872.11
unicorn rig 179.5
heraldry 647.2
unidentified
anonymous 528.3
unknown 930.17
unidentified flying object 1075.3
unidirectional
directional 161.12
unipartite 872.11
uniform
n livery 5.7
insignia 647.1
soccer 752.1
v outfit 5.41
adj symmetric 264.4
smooth 287.10
equable 781.5
agreeing 788.9
simple 798.6
orderly 807.6
continuous 812.8
regular 850.6
one 872.7
indistinguishable 945.6
unify identify 778.5
put together 800.5
combine 805.3
reduce to unity 872.5
unilateral
sided 218.7
unipartite 872.11
unimaginable
wonderful 122.10
fantastic 870.12
unbelievable 955.10
impossible 967.7
unimaginative
dull 117.8
plain-speaking 535.3
prosaic 721.5
unfanciful 987.5
unimpaired
sound 83.11
intact 792.10
undamaged 1002.8
unimpeachable
honest 644.13
inculpable 657.8
believable 953.24
obvious 970.15
accurate 973.16
unimpeded 430.26
unimportant
insignificant 248.6
of no importance 998.16
humble 137.10
unimpressed
unaffected 94.11
unastonished 123.3
unimpressive 998.17
uninfected 79.27
uninfluenced
voluntary 324.7
impartial 649.10
unmoved 895.5
unprejudiced 979.12
uninformed
inexpectant 131.9
ignorant 930.12
uninhabitable 586.8
uninhibited
unrestrained 430.24
profligate 665.25
intemperate 669.7
uninitiated
unskilled 414.16
ignorant 930.12
uninjured 1002.8
uninspired
unaffected 94.11
unimaginative 987.5
unintelligent
unskillful 414.15
unintellectual 922.13
ignorant 930.12
unintelligible 522.13
unintended
unpremeditated 365.11
unintentional 972.17
uninterrupted
directional 161.12
omnipresent 221.13
straight 277.6
persevering 360.8
consistent 803.11
continuous 812.8
perpetual 829.7
constant 847.5
uninvited
unwanted 99.11
voluntary 324.7
unwelcome 586.9
uninvolved
free 430.21
neutral 467.7
uncomplicated 798.8
incurious 982.3
union
convergence 169.1
juxtaposition 223.3
affiliation 450.2
accord 455.1
marriage 563.1
association 617.1
relation 775.1
identification 778.2
agreement 788.1
joining 800.1
binding 800.4
combination 805.1
concurrence 899.1
unique
wonderful 122.10
peerless 249.15
original 337.5
other 780.8
novel 841.11
infrequent 848.2
characteristic 865.13
unusual 870.10
one 872.7
sole 872.9
unisex 872.11
unison
n unanimity 332.5
accord 455.1
harmony 708.3
agreement 788.1
simultaneity 836.1
adj simultaneous 836.5
unit
military unit 461.22
something 763.3
one 872.3
individual 872.4
unite converge 169.2
cooperate 450.3
wed 563.14
come together 770.16
identify 778.5
form a whole 792.7
put together 800.5
join 800.11
combine 805.3
unify 872.5
concur 899.2
United Kingdom 232.4
United Nations
supranational government 612.7
United Nations 614.1
League of Nations 614.1
United Press International 555.3
United States Government 613.2
United States of America 232.3
unit of measurement 1032.1
unity accord 455.1
sameness 778.1
uniformity 781.1
whole 792.1
totality 792.5
completeness 794.1
simplicity 798.1
oneness 872.1
indivisibility 1045.2
universal
n philosophy 932.2
immaterialism 1053.3
adj comprehensive 772.7
whole 792.9
thorough 794.10
infinite 823.3
general 864.14
usual 869.9
cosmic 1072.24
universal law 869.4
universe
completeness 794.1
outlook 978.2
world 1072.1
university
n college 567.5
adj scholastic 567.13
UNIX 1042.12
unjust 650.9
unkempt rough 288.6
unrefined 497.12
slovenly 810.15
unkind
nasty 144.16
bad 1000.7
unknowing
n ignorance 930.1
adj ignorant 930.12
unaware 930.13
unknown
concealed 346.11
anonymous 528.3
unrenowned 661.14
unbeknown 930.17
unlaced 802.22
unlatch unclose 292.12
loose 431.6
unlawful
prohibited 444.7
wrong 638.3
unjust 650.9
illegal 674.6
unleash liberate 431.6
detach 802.10
loosen 804.3
unleavened 798.7

- **unless** 959.16
- **unlicensed** 444.7
- **unlighted** 1027.13
- **unlike** different 780.7
  - dissimilar 787.4
  - incomparable 943.9
- **unlikely** 969.3
- **unlimber** 1046.12
- **unlimited**
  - omnipotent 18.13
  - unrestricted 430.27
  - intemperate 669.7
  - almighty 677.17
  - infinite 823.3
  - unqualified 960.2
- **unlisted number** 347.12
- **unlit** 1027.13
- **unlivable** 586.8
- **unload** relieve 120.7
  - lighten 298.6
  - deal 734.8
  - sell 737.24
  - off-load 909.23
  - disembarrass 1014.9
- **unlock**
  - unclose 292.12
  - explain 341.10
  - loose 431.6
  - solve 940.2
- **unloved** 99.10
- **unlucky**
  - ominous 133.17
  - speculative 759.27
  - untimely 844.6
  - unfortunate 1011.14
- **unmade**
  - unprepared 406.8
  - uncreated 762.10
- **unmanageable**
  - ungovernable 361.12
  - unwieldy 1013.19
- **unmaneuverable** 1013.19
- **unmanned**
  - impotent 19.19
  - terrified 127.26
  - unnerved 128.14
  - available 222.15
  - downtrodden 432.16
  - cowardly 491.10
- **unmarked**
  - unheeded 340.15
  - undamaged 1002.8
- **unmarried**
  - *n* celibate 565.2
  - *adj* unwedded 565.7
- **unmask** 351.4
- **unmatched**
  - peerless 249.15
  - dissimilar 787.4
  - best 999.16
  - first-rate 999.17
- **unmentionable**
  - indescribable 122.13
  - base 661.12
- **unmerciful**
  - heartless 144.25
  - pitiless 146.3
- **unmet** 256.7
- **unmindful**
  - unconcerned 102.7
  - inconsiderate 144.18
  - ungrateful 151.4
  - careless 340.11
  - unaware 930.13
  - incurious 982.3
  - inattentive 984.6
  - forgetful 990.9
- **unmistakable**
  - distinct 31.7
  - manifest 348.8
  - clear 521.11
  - unqualified 960.2
  - certain 970.13
- **unmitigated**
  - downright 247.12
  - undiminished 247.14
  - unsoftened 671.17
  - thorough 794.10
  - changed 852.10
  - unqualified 960.2
- **unmixed**
  - unmitigated 671.17
  - unmingled 798.7
  - perfect 1002.6
- **unmolested** 1007.4
- **unmotivated** 972.16
- **unmoved**
  - unaffected 94.11
  - unastonished 123.3
  - quiescent 173.12
  - motionless 173.13
  - unyielding 361.9
  - uninfluenced 895.5
- **unnamed** 528.3
- **unnatural**
  - heartless 144.25
  - spurious 354.26
  - affected 500.15
  - elegant 533.9
  - abnormal 870.9
  - eccentric 927.5
- **unnavigable** 276.6
- **unnecessary**
  - needless 391.10
  - unessential 768.4
  - superfluous 993.17
- **unneighborly** 586.7
- **unnerving**
  - weakening 16.20
  - frightening 127.28
  - nerve-racking 128.15
- **unnoticed**
  - invisible 32.5
  - unheeded 340.15
  - unrenowned 661.14
- **unnumbered**
  - infinite 823.3
  - innumerable 884.10
- **unobjectionable**
  - desirable 100.30
  - acceptable 107.12
  - justifiable 600.14
  - inculpable 657.8
  - tolerable 999.20
- **unobliging** 144.18
- **unobscured**
  - unhidden 348.11
  - light 1025.31
- **unobserved**
  - invisible 32.5
  - unheeded 340.15
- **unobstructed**
  - open 292.17
  - unhampered 430.26
- **unobtainable** 967.9
- **unobtrusive**
  - modest 139.9
  - covert 345.12
  - tasteful 496.8
- **unoccupied**
  - available 222.15
  - idle 331.18
  - leisure 402.5
  - thoughtless 933.4
- **unofficial**
  - informal 581.3
  - illegal 674.6
  - unauthoritative 971.21
- **unopen** 293.9
- **unopposed** 332.15
- **unordered**
  - formless 263.4
  - orderless 810.12
- **unordinary** 870.10
- **unorganized**
  - formless 263.4
  - unprepared 406.8
  - unordered 810.12
  - inorganic 1055.4
- **unorthodox**
  - nonorthodox 688.9
  - nonuniform 782.3
  - nonconformist 789.9
  - unconventional 868.6
  - erroneous 975.16
- **unpack** disclose 351.4
  - unload 909.23
- **unpaid** due 623.10
  - unremunerated 625.12
- **unpalatable**
  - unsavory 64.5
  - unpleasant 98.17
- **unparalleled**
  - peerless 249.15
  - extraordinary 870.14
  - best 999.16
- **unpardonable**
  - unjustifiable 650.12
  - wicked 654.16
- **unpayable**
  - irredeemable 625.13
  - expensive 632.11
- **unperceptive**
  - insensible 25.6
  - undiscerning 922.14
- **unperformed** 408.3
- **unperturbed**
  - unexcited 106.11
  - untroubled 107.8
  - quiescent 173.12
- **unplanned**
  - unprepared 406.8
  - unintentional 972.17
- **unpleasant**
  - unsavory 64.5
  - unpleasing 98.17
  - unlikable 99.7
  - bad 1000.7
- **unplug** 292.12
- **unpolished**
  - countrified 233.7
  - rough 288.6
  - undeveloped 406.12
  - unskilled 414.16
  - unrefined 497.12
  - inelegant 534.2
- **unpolluted** 79.25
- **unpopular**
  - disliked 99.9
  - unrenowned 661.14
- **unpopulated** 222.15
- **unpracticed**
  - unaccustomed 374.4
  - inexperienced 414.17
- **unprecedented**
  - wonderful 122.10
  - original 337.5
  - unimitated 337.6
  - extraordinary 870.14
- **unprecise**
  - unmeticulous 340.13
  - inaccurate 975.17
- **unpredictable**
  - unexpected 131.10
  - fickle 364.6
  - unessential 768.4
  - inconstant 854.7
  - improbable 969.3
  - uncertain 971.16
  - chance 972.15
  - unsafe 1006.11
- **unprejudiced** 979.12
- **unpremeditated**
  - unmeditated 365.11
  - unprepared 406.8
  - premature 845.8
  - unintentional 972.17
- **unprepared**
  - inexpectant 131.9
  - careless 340.11
  - unready 406.8
  - unskilled 414.16
  - premature 845.8
  - unalert 984.8
- **unprepossessing** 1015.7
- **unpretentious**
  - humble 137.10
  - modest 139.9
  - natural 416.6
  - plain 499.7
  - unselfish 652.5
- **unprincipled** 645.16
- **unprintable** 666.9
- **unprocessed** 406.12
- **unproductive**
  - fruitless 391.12
  - nonproductive 891.4
- **unprofessional** 414.16
- **unprofitable**
  - fruitless 391.12
  - inexpedient 996.5
  - disadvantageous 996.6
- **unpronounced**
  - silent 51.10
  - unexpressed 519.9
- **unprotected**
  - helpless 19.18
  - unshielded 1006.14
- **unprovable**
  - controvertible 958.9
  - uncertain 971.16
- **unproved**
  - unsound 936.12

not proved 958.8
unauthoritative 971.21
erroneous 975.16
unprovoked 640.9
unpublished 519.9
unqualified
unable 19.14
downright 247.12
unfitted 406.9
incompetent 414.19
unrestricted 430.27
inappropriate 789.7
thorough 794.10
unconditional 960.2
genuine 973.15
insufficient 992.9
sound 1002.7
unquenchable
greedy 100.27
indestructible 855.18
unquestionable
downright 247.12
intrinsic 767.7
believable 953.24
obvious 970.15
true 973.13
unravel extract 192.10
explain 341.10
extricate 431.7
disinvolve 798.5
come apart 802.9
loosen 804.3
solve 940.2
unreachable 967.9
unread 930.14
unreadable 522.19
unready
inexpectant 131.9
careless 340.11
unprepared 406.8
untimely 844.6
late 846.16
unalert 984.8
unreal
spurious 354.26
unrealistic 762.9
thin 764.6
illusory 976.9
imaginary 986.19
unrealistic
unreal 762.9
imaginary 986.19
visionary 986.24
unrealized
invisible 32.5
unaccomplished 408.3
unreasonable
capricious 364.5
overpriced 632.12
unjustifiable 650.12
unwise 923.10
fanatic 926.32
illogical 936.11
excessive 993.16
unreceptive
inhospitable 586.7
uninfluenceable 895.4
unrecognizable 32.6
unreconstructed
impenitent 114.5
ungovernable 361.12
unsubject 430.29
conservative 611.17
permanent 853.8
unrecorded 519.9
unredeemable 654.18
unreduced
undiminished 247.14
undivided 792.11
unrefined
countrified 233.7
rough 288.6
coarse 294.6
undeveloped 406.12
unpolished 497.12
ill-bred 505.6
inelegant 534.2
unlearned 930.14
unregenerate
obstinate 361.8
irreclaimable 654.18
unsacred 686.3
unredeemed 695.18
unregretful 114.4
unregulated
permitted 443.16
illegal 674.6
unrehearsed 365.12
unrelated 776.6
unrelaxed tense 128.13
rigid 1046.11
unrelenting
persevering 360.8
unyielding 361.9
firm 425.7
wordy 538.12
constant 847.5
unreliable fickle 364.6
untrustworthy 645.19
inconstant 854.7
under a cloud 955.11
undependable 971.20
inauthentic 975.19
unsafe 1006.11
unrelieved
vacant 222.14
downright 247.12
same 781.6
continuous 812.8
unreligious 695.15
unremarkable 1005.8
unremitting
industrious 330.22
persevering 360.8
continuous 812.8
perpetual 829.7
constant 847.5
unchangeable 855.17
continuing 856.7
unremorseful
unregretful 114.4
pitiless 146.3
unrepentant 114.5
unrequited
unthanked 151.5
unpaid 625.12
unreserved
communicative 343.10
artless 416.5
unrestrained 430.24
candid 644.17
thorough 794.10
unqualified 960.2
unresisting
resigned 134.10
submissive 433.12
unresolved
remaining 256.7
irresolute 362.9
unresponsive
unfeeling 94.9
heartless 144.25
uninfluenceable 895.4
unrest
trepidation 105.5
motion 172.1
agitation 917.1
unrestored 21.7
unrestrained
fervent 93.18
communicative 343.10
capricious 364.5
lawless 418.5
lax 426.4
unconstrained 430.24
candid 644.17
incontinent 665.24
intemperate 669.7
inconstant 854.7
excessive 993.16
unrestricted
undiminished 247.14
open 292.17
communicative 343.10
unconfined 430.27
thorough 794.10
unqualified 960.2
unrevealing 346.15
unrewarded
unthanked 151.5
unpaid 625.12
unripe sour 67.5
immature 301.10
unprepared 406.11
inexperienced 414.17
untimely 844.6
premature 845.8
ignorant 930.12
unrivaled 249.15
unrobed 6.13
unroll unclose 292.12
disclose 351.4
unfold 861.7
unruffled
unaffected 94.11
unexcited 106.11
quiescent 173.12
smooth 287.10
uniform 781.5
unruly
defiant 327.10
ungovernable 361.12
anarchic 418.6
unrestrained 430.24
disorderly 671.19
unsafe 1006.11
unsaid tacit 51.11
unexpressed 519.9
unsalvageable 125.15
unsanctioned 444.7
unsanitary 82.5
unsatisfactory
dissatisfactory 108.9
disappointing 132.6
insufficient 992.9
unsaturated fat 1056.1
unsavory
unpalatable 64.5
insipid 65.2
unpleasant 98.17
dishonest 645.16
disreputable 661.10
unscathed
undamaged 1002.8
safe 1007.4
unscented 72.5
unschooled
unskilled 414.16
unlearned 930.14
unscientific 936.11
unscramble
disinvolve 798.5
solve 940.2
disembarrass 1014.9
unscratched 1002.8
unscrew 802.10
unscrubbed 80.20
unscrupulous
unmeticulous 340.13
dishonest 645.16
unseal 292.12
unsearched 340.16
unseasonable
inappropriate 789.7
anachronous 833.3
untimely 844.6
inexpedient 996.5
unseat
dislodge 160.6
depose 447.4
disjoint 802.16
unseeing blind 30.9
unwise 923.10
unaware 930.13
unseemly
vulgar 497.10
inelegant 534.2
wrong 638.3
indecent 666.5
inappropriate 789.7
inexpedient 996.5
unseen invisible 32.5
unheeded 340.15
unrevealed 346.12
unselfish
liberal 485.4
impartial 649.10
selfless 652.5
unserviceable 391.14
unsettle excite 105.14
disorder 810.9
discompose 811.4
agitate 917.10
confuse 985.7
unshaded 348.11
unshakeable 326.3
unshaken
unweakened 15.21
unnervous 129.2
firm 359.12
unshaven 3.25
unsheathed 6.12
unshielded 1006.14

unsightly
slovenly 810.15
ugly 1015.6
unsimulated 973.15
unskilled 414.16
unskilled laborer 726.2
unsmiling
solemn 111.3
unhappy 112.21
unsnap 802.10
unsnarl
straighten 277.5
extricate 431.7
disinvolve 798.5
arrange 808.8
disembarrass 1014.9
unsociable
uncommunicative 344.8
insociable 583.5
unfriendly 589.9
misanthropic 590.3
unsoiled clean 79.25
spotless 657.7
chaste 664.4
unsold 734.15
unsolicited
voluntary 324.7
neglected 340.14
unsolid unsound 16.15
unsubstantial 764.5
unreliable 971.20
unsolved 346.12
unsophisticated
artless 416.5
unadorned 499.8
unmixed 798.7
gullible 954.9
unsound infirm 16.15
unhealthy 85.54
unwholesome 85.55
unorthodox 688.9
insolvent 729.19
fragile 764.7
unwise 923.10
insane 926.26
unsubstantial 936.12
unreliable 971.20
imperfect 1003.4
unsafe 1006.11
unsparing harsh 144.24
industrious 330.22
strict 425.6
liberal 485.4
unspeakable
horrid 98.19
indescribable 122.13
insulting 156.8
wicked 654.16
base 661.12
sacred 685.7
extraordinary 870.14
unspecified
anonymous 528.3
general 864.11
vague 971.19
unspectacular 1005.8
unspoiled
downright 247.12
preserved 397.13
natural 416.6
intact 792.10
unmixed 798.7
undamaged 1002.8
unspoken tacit 51.11
secret 345.11
unexpressed 519.9
unsportsmanlike 650.10
unspotted clean 79.25
honest 644.13
spotless 657.7
chaste 664.4
perfect 1002.6
unstable
unsound 16.15
nonuniform 782.3
unbalanced 791.5
transient 828.7
inconstant 854.7
unreliable 971.20
unsafe 1006.11
unstained clean 79.25
honest 644.13
chaste 664.4
unsteady shaky 16.16
nonuniform 782.3
unbalanced 791.5
irregular 851.3
inconstant 854.7
fluttering 917.18
unreliable 971.20
unsafe 1006.11
unstick detach 802.10
loosen 804.3
unstoppable 963.15
unstrap loose 431.6
detach 802.10
unstructured
unformed 263.5
diffuse 538.11
unstuck 802.22
unsturdy 16.15
unsubstantial
frail 16.14
weak 16.15
rare 299.4
unreal 762.9
insubstantial 764.5
unsound 936.12
unreliable 971.20
illusory 976.9
immaterial 1053.7
unsubstantiated 958.8
unsuccessful 410.18
unsuitable
unacceptable 108.10
unserviceable 391.14
vulgar 497.10
wrong 638.3
inappropriate 789.7
untimely 844.6
inexpedient 996.5
unsuited
unfitted 406.9
inappropriate 789.7
unsullied clean 79.25
natural 406.13
honest 644.13
spotless 657.7
chaste 664.4
unsung disliked 99.9
unexpressed 519.9
unrenowned 661.14
unsupportable
baseless 936.13
unprovable 958.9
unsuppressed
communicative 343.10
unrestrained 430.24
unsure
untrustworthy 645.19
ignorant 930.12
uncertain 971.16
unreliable 971.20
unconfident 971.23
unsafe 1006.11
unsurpassed
peerless 249.15
best 999.16
unsuspecting
inexpectant 131.9
unaware 930.13
trusting 953.22
credulous 954.8
unprotected 1006.14
unsustained
unsound 936.12
baseless 936.13
unproved 958.8
unswayed
impartial 649.10
uninfluenced 895.5
unprejudiced 979.12
unsweetened 67.5
unswept 80.20
unswerving
directional 161.12
straight 277.6
firm 359.12
persevering 360.8
faithful 644.20
unsymmetrical
distorted 265.10
unordered 810.12
unsympathetic
insensible 25.6
unfeeling 94.9
unkind 144.16
pitiless 146.3
unsynchronized 456.15
untactful
careless 340.11
undiscriminating 945.5
untainted clean 79.25
preserved 397.13
natural 416.6
spotless 657.7
chaste 664.4
perfect 1002.6
untalented
unable 19.14
unskilled 414.16
unintelligent 922.13
untamed defiant 327.10
unsubject 430.29
unrefined 497.12
savage 671.21
untangle
extricate 431.7
disinvolve 798.5
solve 940.2
untapped 390.12
untarnished
clean 79.25
honest 644.13
chaste 664.4
untaxed 634.5
unteachable 922.15
untenable
helpless 19.18
unacceptable 108.10
baseless 936.13
untended
available 222.15
neglected 340.14
untested 958.8
unthawed 1023.13
unthinkable
unbelievable 955.10
impossible 967.7
unthinking
inconsiderate 144.18
careless 340.11
unreasoning 365.10
unintelligent 922.13
unwise 923.10
thoughtless 933.4
credulous 954.8
involuntary 963.14
unintentional 972.17
unthoughtful
inconsiderate 144.18
unthinking 365.10
unwise 923.10
untidy dirty 80.22
slipshod 340.12
slovenly 810.15
untied adrift 182.61
unbound 430.28
liberated 431.10
unfastened 802.22
until 821.15
until we meet again!
188.22
untimely
inappropriate 789.7
unseasonable 844.6
premature 845.8
late 846.16
inexpedient 996.5
unto 821.15
untogether 810.12
untold secret 345.11
unexpressed 519.9
infinite 823.3
innumerable 884.10
undecided 971.18
untouchable
n outcast 586.4
adj unfeeling 94.9
disliked 99.9
out-of-the-way 261.9
prohibited 444.7
sacred 685.7
untouched
unaffected 94.11
impenitent 114.5
unused 390.12
natural 406.13
intact 792.10
unmixed 798.7
new 841.7
unknown 930.17
undamaged 1002.8
safe 1007.4

- **untoward**
  - ominous 133.17
  - untimely 844.6
  - bad 1000.7
  - adverse 1011.13
- **untracked** 346.12
- **untrained**
  - unaccustomed 374.4
  - unskilled 414.16
- **untrammeled**
  - lawless 418.5
  - lax 426.4
  - unhampered 430.26
  - profligate 665.25
- **untreated** 406.12
- **untried**
  - inexperienced 414.17
  - new 841.7
  - unproved 958.8
- **untrimmed**
  - unadorned 499.8
  - undeceptive 644.18
- **untroubled**
  - unexcited 106.11
  - unbothered 107.8
  - quiescent 173.12
  - pacific 464.9
- **untrue**
  - *adj* false 354.25
  - nonobservant 435.5
  - unfaithful 645.20
  - erroneous 975.16
  - *adv* erroneously 975.20
- **untruthfulness** 354.8
- **untwist**
  - disinvolve 798.5
  - solve 940.2
- **untying** 431.2
- **unusable** 391.14
- **unused**
  - remaining 256.7
  - unaccustomed 374.4
  - unutilized 390.12
  - new 841.7
  - surplus 993.18
- **unusual** novel 841.11
  - infrequent 848.2
  - nonconforming 868.5
  - unordinary 870.10
- **unutterable**
  - indescribable 122.13
  - secret 345.11
  - sacred 685.7
- **unvarnished**
  - natural 416.6
  - unadorned 499.8
  - plain-speaking 535.3
  - undeceptive 644.18
  - genuine 973.15
- **unvarying**
  - tedious 118.9
  - uniform 781.5
  - constant 847.5
  - permanent 853.7
  - unchangeable 855.17
- **unveil** divest 6.5
  - unclose 292.12
  - disclose 351.4
- **unventilated**
  - stuffy 173.16
  - closed 293.9
- **unverified**
  - unproved 958.8
  - unauthoritative 971.21
- **unwanted**
  - unwished 99.11
  - unwelcome 586.9
- **unwarranted**
  - overpriced 632.12
  - undue 640.9
  - illegal 674.6
  - baseless 936.13
  - unauthoritative 971.21
- **unwary**
  - negligent 340.10
  - artless 416.5
  - rash 493.7
  - unalert 984.8
- **unwashed** 80.20
- **unwatched**
  - neglected 340.14
  - unprotected 1006.14
- **unwavering**
  - unnervous 129.2
  - persevering 360.8
  - stable 855.12
  - confident 970.21
- **unwed** 565.7
- **unwelcome**
  - unpleasant 98.17
  - unwanted 99.11
  - inhospitable 586.9
- **unwieldy** bulky 257.19
  - onerous 297.17
  - bungling 414.20
  - stiff 534.3
  - inconvenient 996.7
  - unmanageable 1013.19
- **unwilling**
  - disinclined 325.5
  - unconsenting 442.6
  - involuntary 963.14
- **unwind** relax 20.7
  - compose oneself 106.7
  - disinvolve 798.5
  - unfold 861.7
- **unwise**
  - unintelligent 922.13
  - injudicious 923.10
  - inexpedient 996.5
- **unwitting**
  - unaware 930.13
  - involuntary 963.14
  - unintentional 972.17
- **unworkable**
  - unserviceable 391.14
  - impracticable 967.8
  - inexpedient 996.5
- **unworldly**
  - heavenly 681.12
  - godly 692.9
  - supernatural 870.15
  - immaterial 1053.7
- **unworn**
  - unweakened 15.21
  - undamaged 1002.8
- **unworthy**
  - *n* bad person 660.1
  - *adj* undue 640.9
  - wicked 654.16
  - worthless 998.22
- **unwrap**
  - take off 6.6
  - unclose 292.12
  - disclose 351.4
- **unwritten**
  - unexpressed 519.9
  - speech 524.29
  - traditional 842.12
- **unyielding**
  - impregnable 15.19
  - pitiless 146.3
  - resolute 359.12
  - unbending 361.9
  - firm 425.7
  - resistant 453.5
  - sturdy 763.7
  - immovable 855.15
  - uninfluenceable 895.4
  - inevitable 963.15
  - inflexible 1046.12
- **unzipped** 802.22
- **up**
  - *n* increase 251.1
  - *v* ascend 193.8
  - increase 251.4
  - enlarge 259.4
  - promote 446.2
  - elevate 912.5
  - *adj* awake 23.8
  - *adv* upward 193.16
  - vertically 200.13
  - on high 272.21
  - *prep* toward 161.26
- **up against**
  - *adj* contrapositive 215.5
  - resistant 453.5
  - *prep* near 223.25
- **up and about** 83.10
- **up and at 'em!** 459.32
- **up and down**
  - perpendicularly 200.14
  - alternately 850.11
  - to and fro 916.21
- **up-and-up** 644.14
- **up a tree**
  - unfortunate 1011.14
  - in trouble 1013.22
  - cornered 1013.25
- **upbeat**
  - *n* improvement 392.1
  - beat 709.26
  - round 850.3
  - *adj* optimistic 124.12
- **upbraid** 510.17
- **upcoming**
  - *n* ascent 193.1
  - *adj* approaching 167.4
  - ascending 193.14
  - imminent 840.3
- **update** date 832.13
  - modernize 841.6
- **updraft**
  - ascent 193.1
  - wind 318.1
- **upended** 200.11
- **up for grabs** 971.18
- **up for sale** 734.16
- **up front** 818.18
- **upgrade**
  - *n* ascent 193.1
  - acclivity 204.6
  - improvement 392.1
  - *v* make better 392.9
  - promote 446.2
  - *adj* ascending 193.14
  - sloping upward 204.17
  - *adv* slantingly 204.23
- **upheaval**
  - outburst 105.9
  - fall 395.3
  - convulsion 671.5
  - revolution 852.2
  - elevation 912.1
- **upheld** 901.24
- **uphill**
  - *n* ascent 193.1
  - acclivity 204.6
  - *adj* ascending 193.14
  - sloping upward 204.17
  - laborious 725.18
  - difficult 1013.17
  - *adv* up 193.16
  - slantingly 204.23
- **uphold** buoy 298.8
  - preserve 397.8
  - aid 449.12
  - approve 509.9
  - defend 600.10
  - support 901.21
  - elevate 912.5
  - confirm 957.11
- **upholstered** 295.34
- **UPI** 555.3
- **up in arms**
  - *adj* prepared 405.16
  - resistant 453.5
  - at odds 456.16
  - *adv* in opposition 451.9
  - at war 458.24
- **up in the air** 971.18
- **upkeep**
  - *n* preservation 397.1
  - aid 449.3
  - support 901.1
  - *v* aid 449.12
  - support 901.21
- **upland** area 237.1
- **uplift**
  - *n* ascent 193.1
  - acclivity 204.6
  - improvement 392.1
  - elevation 912.1
  - *v* elate 109.8
  - erect 200.9
  - buoy 298.8
  - make better 392.9
  - glorify 662.13
  - elevate 912.5
- **upon**
  - *adv* after which 835.7
  - *prep* toward 161.26
  - atop 198.16
  - against 223.25
  - on 295.37
  - relation to 775.13
- **up on** skilled in 413.27
  - informed 928.18
  - versed in 928.19
- **up one's sleeve** 345.17
- **upper**
  - *n* excitement 105.3
  - *adj* superior 249.12

higher 272.19
upper case 548.6
upper class
the best 249.5
social status 607.2
aristocracy 608.1
upperclassman 572.6
upper crust
the best 249.5
society 578.6
upper class 607.2
aristocracy 608.1
upper hand
advantage 249.2
dominance 417.6
influence 894.1
upper middle class 607.5
uppermost top 198.10
superlative 249.13
higher 272.19
paramount 997.24
uppers 87.4
uppity arrogant 141.9
insolent 142.9
upraised
vertical 200.11
raised 912.9
upright
n vertical 200.2
post 273.4
base 901.8
v erect 200.9
adj vertical 200.11
straight 277.6
honest 644.13
virtuous 653.6
raised 912.9
adv vertically 200.13
uprising
n ascent 193.1
rising 200.5
acclivity 204.6
revolt 327.4
adj ascending 193.14
sloping upward 204.17
uproar
noise 53.3
outcry 59.4
agitation 105.4
turbulence 671.2
commotion 810.4
uproot
dislodge 160.6
extract 192.10
exterminate 395.14
upscale
upper-class 607.10
wealthy 618.15
expensive 632.11
prosperous 1010.12
upset
n anxiety 126.1
dislodgment 160.2
overturn 205.2
fall 395.3
turbulence 671.2
disorder 810.1
revolution 860.1
agitation 917.1
refutation 958.2
bewilderment 971.3
confusion 985.3
frustration 1012.3
v chagrin 96.15
distress 96.16
excite 105.14
concern 126.4
make anxious 126.5
unnerve 128.10
capsize 182.44
overturn 205.6
overthrow 395.20
overcome 412.7
unbalance 791.3
disorder 810.9
discompose 811.4
revolutionize 860.4
agitate 917.10
refute 958.5
bewilder 971.12
confuse 985.7
thwart 1012.15
adj distressed 96.22
excited 105.23
overwrought 105.26
unnerved 128.14
defeated 412.14
disorderly 810.13
agitated 917.16
disproved 958.7
bewildered 971.24
confused 985.12
upshoot
n ascent 193.1
v grow 14.2
shoot up 193.9
expand 259.7
upside-down
inverted 205.7
confused 810.16
upstage
n stage 704.16
v snub 157.5
act 704.29
adj arrogant 141.9
adv on the stage 704.36
upstairs up 193.16
on high 272.21
upstanding
vertical 200.11
honest 644.13
upstart
n impudent person 142.5
vulgarian 497.6
parvenu 606.7
modern 841.4
v shoot up 193.9
adj populational 606.8
upstream
v ascend 193.8
adv up 193.16
upsurge
n ascent 193.1
increase 251.1
v ascend 193.8
upswing ascent 193.1
increase 251.1
improvement 392.1
uptake 939.1
up the creek
unfortunate 1011.14
in trouble 1013.22
uptight
tense 128.13
conformist 867.6
up to
v be able 18.11
adj able 18.14
prepared for 405.18
competent 413.24
sufficient 991.6
prep until 821.15
up-to-date
fashionable 578.11
present 838.2
modern 841.13
informed 928.18
up to no good
dishonest 645.16
wicked 654.16
up to snuff
competent 413.24
in order 807.7
up to par 999.19
up-to-the-minute
fashionable 578.11
present 838.2
modern 841.13
state-of-the-art 841.14
uptown
n city district 230.6
adj urban 230.11
adv up 193.16
upturn
n uptrend 193.2
overturn 205.2
increase 251.1
business cycle 731.10
v turn up 193.13
overturn 205.6
upward mobility
improvement 392.1
class 607.1
change 852.1
prosperity 1010.1
upwind
land 184.43
ascend 193.8
upwind
leeward 182.68
windward 218.9
uranium 1038.5
Uranus 1072.9
urban 230.11
urbane decorous 496.10
courteous 504.14
sociable 582.22
urban legend 678.14
urban renewal 396.4
urban sprawl 771.3
urchin vagabond 178.3
brat 302.4
urea 12.5
urethra 2.23
urge
n desire 100.1
impulse 365.1
urgency 375.6
v press 375.14
insist 421.8
admonish 422.6
importune 440.12
hasten 401.4
urgent
motivating 375.25
hasty 401.9
demanding 421.9
importunate 440.18
vehement 544.13
necessary 963.12
imperative 997.22
urinal latrine 12.10
toilet 12.11
urinate 12.14
urine humor 2.24
water 12.5
urn
cinerary urn 309.12
ceramic ware 742.2
USA 232.3
usable 387.23
USAF 461.29
usage custom 373.1
habit 373.3
use 387.1
treatment 387.2
acceptation 518.4
language 523.1
word 526.1
phrase 529.1
diction 532.1
US Air Force 461.29
US Cabinet 423.1
use
n custom 373.1
habit 373.3
employment 387.1
utility 387.3
benefit 387.4
function 387.5
wear 393.5
estate 471.4
expenditure 626.1
v be on 87.22
treat 321.6
practice 328.8
handle 384.5
utilize 387.10
treat 387.12
exploit 387.16
spend 626.5
exert 725.8
used
employed 387.24
lost 473.7
wasted 486.9
secondhand 842.18
used to
accustomed 373.15
familiar with 373.16
habituated 373.17
use force 15.12
useful modal 384.8
employable 387.18
helpful 449.21
expedient 995.5
good 999.12
useless
ineffective 19.15
of no use 391.9
unsuccessful 410.18
disadvantageous 996.6

use one's head
  have all one's wits about one 920.10
  think 931.8
user addict 87.21
  use 387.7
  employer 387.9
user-friendly 1014.15
use some elbow grease
  endeavor 403.5
  exert oneself 725.9
use up fatigue 21.4
  spend 387.13
  consume 388.3
  waste 486.4
usher
  n wedding party 563.4
  attendant 577.5
  theater man 704.23
  escort 769.5
  doorkeeper 1008.12
  v escort 769.8
usual medium 246.3
  typical 349.15
  customary 373.13
  same 781.6
  orderly 807.6
  frequent 847.4
  prevalent 864.12
  regular 869.9
  ordinary 1005.8
usurp
  take command 417.14
  appropriate 480.19
  arrogate 640.8
  overstep 910.9
usury lending 620.1
  interest 623.3
  illicit business 732.1
utensil container 195.1
  tool 1040.1
uterus genitals 2.13
  vital force 886.7
utilitarian
  useful 387.18
  occupied 724.15
utility
  n usefulness 387.3
  helpfulness 449.10
  machinery 1040.3
  adj substitute 862.8
utility man
  deputy 576.1
  actor 707.2
utility player
  baseball team 745.2
  substitute 862.2
utility pole 273.1
utilize manage 384.5
  use 387.10
  gather materials 1054.7
utmost
  n limit 794.5
  adj extreme 247.13
  superlative 249.13
  trial 403.16
Utopia 986.11
utopian
  n optimist 124.6
  reformer 392.6
  visionary 986.13
  adj optimistic 124.12
  emendatory 392.16
  ideal 986.23
utter
  v divulge 351.5
  say 524.22
  monetize 728.26
  coin 728.28
  disperse 771.4
  adj downright 247.12
  thorough 794.10
  unqualified 960.2
  sound 1002.7
U-turn reverse 163.3
  bend 279.3
  change of mind 363.1
V fork 171.4
  five 882.1
vacancy vacuity 222.2
  absence 222.2
  position 724.5
  nonexistence 762.1
  empty-headedness 922.6
  thoughtlessness 933.1
vacate quit 188.9
  abandon 370.5
  repeal 445.2
  resign 448.2
  relinquish 475.3
vacation
  n holiday 20.3
  absence 222.4
  repeal 445.1
  interim 826.1
  pause 857.3
  v get away from it all 20.9
  absent oneself 222.8
vacational 20.10
vaccine
  vaccination 86.28
  inoculation 91.16
vacillate waver 362.8
  blow hot and cold 364.4
  change 854.5
  oscillate 916.10
  hang in doubt 971.10
vacuous vacant 222.14
  nonexistent 762.8
  empty-headed 922.19
  ignorant 930.12
  thoughtless 933.4
  trivial 998.19
vacuum
  n void 222.3
  nonexistence 762.1
  deficiency 795.2
  empty-headedness 922.6
  v sweep 79.23
vacuum-packed 212.12
vacuum tube 1033.10
vagabond
  n displaced person 160.4
  vagrant 178.3
  wretch 660.2
  transient 828.4
  v wander 177.23
  adj wandering 177.37
vagary obliquity 204.1
  caprice 364.1
vagina genitals 2.13
  duct 2.23
vagrancy
  wandering 177.3
  indolence 331.5
vagrant
  n vagabond 178.3
  bum 331.9
  wretch 660.2
  adj deviative 164.7
  wandering 177.37
  capricious 364.5
  inconstant 854.7
vague
  inconspicuous 32.6
  formless 263.4
  thin 270.16
  obscure 522.15
  unordered 810.12
  general 864.11
  indefinite 971.19
  inaccurate 975.17
vain ineffective 19.15
  conceited 136.9
  vainglorious 140.8
  futile 391.13
  boastful 502.10
  baseless 936.13
  trivial 998.19
valedictorian 543.4
valedictory
  n leave-taking 188.4
  speech 543.2
  adj departing 188.18
valence electrons 1033.3
valentine 562.13
valet
  n man 577.4
  v serve 577.13
valetudinarianism 82.1
valiant
  n brave person 492.8
  adj courageous 492.17
valid powerful 18.12
  legal 673.11
  evidential 957.16
  sound 973.14
  good 999.12
validate ratify 332.12
  authorize 443.11
  legalize 673.9
  experiment 942.8
  confirm 957.11
  verify 970.12
valley crack 224.2
  vale 237.7
  pit 275.2
  concavity 284.9
valor 492.1
valuable
  of value 387.22
  precious 632.10
value
  n color quality 35.6
  measure 300.2
  benefit 387.4
  meaning 518.1
  worth 630.2
  preciousness 632.2
  importance 997.1
  goodness 999.1
  v respect 155.4
  measure 300.10
  price 630.11
  estimate 946.9
  esteem 997.13
value judgment 946.3
value system 952.2
valve gate 239.10
  stopper 293.4
  wind instrument 711.6
  electron tube 1033.10
  cutlery 1040.2
vamp
  n lover 104.12
  tempter 377.4
  flirt 562.11
  demimonde 665.15
  overture 708.26
  impromptu 708.27
  fire fighter 1022.4
  v enamor 104.23
  improvise 365.8
  fascinate 377.7
  perfect 392.11
vampire lover 104.12
  frightener 127.9
  tempter 377.4
  extortionist 480.12
  monster 593.6
  demimonde 665.15
  demon 680.6
  bewitcher 690.9
van leading 165.1
  wagon 179.2
  vanguard 216.2
  guard 1008.9
vandal destroyer 395.8
  savage 593.5
vandalism
  cruelty 144.11
  misbehavior 322.1
  destruction 395.1
  violence 671.1
vane 318.17
vanguard leading 165.1
  border 211.4
  van 216.2
  precursor 816.1
  novelty 841.2
  guard 1008.9
vanilla
  unadorned 499.8
  elegant 533.6
  simple 798.6
vanish disappear 34.2
  quit 188.9
  perish 395.23
  cease to exist 762.6
  flit 828.6
vanishing cream 1016.12
vanishing point
  disappearance 34.1
  convergence 169.1
  minute 258.7
  the distance 261.3
vanity pride 136.1
  self-admiration 140.1
  vainness 140.1
  futility 391.2
  boasting 502.1
  triviality 998.3
vanity press 554.2
vanquish 412.10

vantage viewpoint 27.7
  advantage 249.2
vantage point 272.2
vapid
  wishy-washy 16.17
  insipid 65.2
  dull 117.6
  prosaic 721.5
  empty-headed 922.19
  trivial 998.19
  mediocre 1005.7
vapor
  n fog 319.3
  spirit 764.3
  illusion 976.1
  figment of the imagination 986.5
  hot water 1019.10
  volatile 1067.1
  steam 1067.1
  v boast 502.6
  bluster 503.3
  talk nonsense 520.5
  talk big 545.6
  let out 909.24
vaporize
  strike dead 308.18
  destroy 395.10
  evaporate 1067.8
vaquero rider 178.8
  herder 1070.3
variable
  n process variable 1041.9
  adj relative 775.7
  nonuniform 782.3
  multiform 783.3
  irregular 851.3
  changeable 854.6
  inconstant 854.7
  uncertain 971.16
variable-rate mortgage 438.4
variance dissent 333.1
  permission 443.1
  disaccord 456.2
  relativity 775.2
  difference 780.1
  disagreement 789.1
variation
  deviation 164.1
  passage 708.24
  difference 780.1
  differentiation 780.4
  nonuniformity 782.1
  multiformity 783.1
  change 852.1
  inconstancy 854.2
  changing 854.3
varicose vein 2.23
varied different 780.7
  diversified 783.4
  mixed 797.14
variegated
  chromatic 35.16
  many-colored 47.9
  different 780.7
  nonuniform 782.3
variety sect 675.3
  show business 704.1
  miscellany 770.13
  difference 780.1
  nonuniformity 782.1
  multiformity 783.1
  kind 809.3
  classifications 809.5
  change 852.1
  inconstancy 854.2
  plurality 883.1
variety show 1035.2
various different 780.7
  nonuniform 782.3
  diversified 783.4
  plural 883.7
  several 884.7
varnish
  n blanket 295.12
  sham 354.3
  pretext 376.1
  extenuation 600.5
  art equipment 712.18
  v color 35.14
  pervert 265.6
  polish 287.7
  conceal 346.6
  falsify 354.16
  ornament 545.7
  extenuate 600.12
varsity 617.7
vary deviate 164.3
  vacillate 362.8
  differ 780.5
  differentiate 780.6
  diversify 782.2
  multiform 783.2
  disguise 787.3
  disagree 789.5
  intermit 851.2
  shift 852.6
  alternate 852.7
  change 854.5
vas 2.23
vascular 2.33
vase 742.2
Vaseline 1056.2
vassal
  n subject 432.7
  retainer 577.1
  adj subject 432.13
vast spacious 158.11
  large 247.7
  huge 257.20
vat 386.6
the Vatican 698.6
Vatican Library 558.1
vaudeville 704.1
vault
  n ascent 193.1
  compartment 197.2
  arch 279.4
  tomb 309.16
  leap 366.1
  storehouse 386.6
  treasury 729.13
  the heavens 1072.2
  v curve 279.6
  leap 366.5
vaulter 366.4
vaunt
  n display 501.4
  boasting 502.1
  v flaunt 501.17
  boast 502.6
VCR record 50.12
  television receiver 1035.11
VD 85.18
veal 10.15
vector infection 85.4
  carrier 85.44
  direction 161.2
  course 184.34
  straight line 277.2
the Vedas 683.8
veep 574.3
veer
  n deviation 164.1
  bias 204.3
  angle 278.2
  v turn round 163.9
  deviate 164.3
  change course 182.30
  oblique 204.9
  go sideways 218.5
  angle 278.5
  be changed 852.6
vegan vegetarian 8.16
  diet 8.31
  temperance 668.1
vegetable
  n plant 310.3
  adj vegetal 310.36
  passive 329.6
  languid 331.20
  permanent 853.7
vegetarian
  n eater 8.16
  abstainer 668.4
  adj eating 8.31
  vegetable 310.36
  abstinent 668.10
vegetate develop 14.2
  stagnate 173.9
  grow 259.7
  sprout 310.34
  do nothing 329.2
  merely exist 761.10
vegetation
  physical development 14.1
  inertness 173.4
  growth 259.3
  plants 310.1
  life 310.32
  inaction 329.1
  mere existence 761.6
vehement
  acrimonious 17.14
  zealous 101.9
  passionate 105.29
  industrious 330.22
  emphatic 544.13
  violent 671.16
vehicle color 35.8
  means of transport 179
  conveyance 179.1
  instrument 384.4
  stage show 704.4
  film 714.10
veil
  n clothing 5.26
  cover 295.2
  veil of secrecy 345.3
  curtain 346.2
  pretext 376.1
  shade 1028.1
  v cover 295.19
  keep secret 345.7
  conceal 346.6
  shade 1028.5
veiled covered 295.31
  latent 519.5
  vague 971.19
  shaded 1028.7
vein
  n duct 2.23
  thinness 270.7
  source of supply 386.4
  style 532.2
  mode 765.4
  nature 767.4
  disposition 978.3
  mood 978.4
  deposit 1058.7
  v variegate 47.7
veld the country 233.1
  plain 236.1
  grassland 310.8
velocity rate 172.4
  speed 174.1
  gait 177.12
velvet comfort 121.1
  smoothness 287.3
  texture 294.3
  prosperity 1010.1
  easy 1014.4
  softness 1047.4
vena cava 2.23
venal greedy 100.27
  bribable 378.4
  corruptible 645.23
vendetta quarrel 456.5
  revenge 507.1
  animosity 589.4
vending machine 736.4
vendor peddler 730.5
  vending machine 736.4
veneer
  n shallowness 276.1
  blanket 295.12
  lamina 296.2
  v face 295.23
venerable
  dignified 136.12
  reverend 155.12
  aged 303.16
  reputable 662.15
  sacred 685.7
  old 842.10
  traditional 842.12
venerate
  respect 155.4
  worship 696.11
venereal disease 85.18
vengeance
  revenge 507.1
  deserts 639.3
venial 600.14
venison 10.13
venom
  poisonousness 82.3
  rancor 144.7
  animosity 589.4
  violence 671.1
  evil 1000.3
  bane 1001.3
vent
  n parachute 181.13

emergence 190.1
outlet 190.9
air passage 239.13
escape 369.1
v divulge 351.5
evacuate 909.22
ventilate
deodorize 72.4
air 317.11
disclose 351.4
divulge 351.5
make public 352.11
discuss 541.12
refrigerate 1024.10
ventral 2.31
ventricular 2.31
ventriloquist 524.15
venture
n undertaking 404.1
investment 729.4
trading 737.19
gamble 759.2
v attempt 403.6
dare 492.10
presume 640.6
invest 729.17
trade 737.23
chance 759.24
venture capital
supply 386.2
capital 728.15
trading 737.19
venue 159.2
Venus Love 104.8
beauty 1016.10
stars 1072.4
planet 1072.9
Venus's flytrap 356.12
Venus de Milo 1016.10
veracity honesty 644.3
truth 973.1
veranda 197.21
verb 530.4
verbal
n verb 530.4
adj communicational 343.9
semantic 518.12
speech 524.29
vocabular 526.18
grammatical 530.17
genuine 973.15
verbalize 524.22
verbatim
adj genuine 973.15
adv exactly 973.21
verbiage diction 532.1
wordiness 538.2
verboten 444.7
verdant green 44.4
verdurous 310.42
verdict judgment 598.9
solution 940.1
decision 946.5
verge
n border 211.4
insignia 647.1
v take direction 161.7
border 211.10
tend 896.3
verify
experiment 942.8
collate 943.5
confirm 957.11
certify 970.12
check 1017.21
verisimilitude
probability 968.1
genuineness 973.7
veritable
straight 644.14
real 761.15
thorough 794.10
true 973.13
vérité 706.1
vermicelli 10.33
vermicide
vermifuge 86.24
poison 1001.3
vermiform coiled 281.7
wormlike 311.53
vermilion
v make red 41.4
adj red 41.6
vermin
creature 311.3
parasite 311.37
rabble 606.3
beast 660.6
vernacular
n dead language 523.2
mother tongue 523.3
nonformal speech 523.5
substandard language 523.6
jargon 523.9
plain speech 535.1
adj local 231.9
common 497.14
colloquial 523.20
usual 869.9
vernal green 44.4
immature 301.10
seasonal 313.9
new 841.7
vernal equinox
season 313.7
orbit 1072.16
versatile fickle 364.6
handy 387.20
ambidextrous 413.25
multiform 783.3
verse
n part 554.13
passage 708.24
poetry 720.1
poem 720.4
part of writing 793.2
curtain-raiser 816.2
maxim 974.1
v inform 551.8
poetize 720.13
versed in
skilled in 413.27
informed in 928.19
version
reproduction 336.3
rendering 341.2
writing 547.10
sect 675.3
score 708.28
story 722.3
verso left side 220.1
makeup 554.12
versus toward 161.26
against 215.7
opposed to 451.10
vertebrate
n creature 311.3
adj chordate 311.41
vertex summit 198.2
angle 278.2
vertical
n upright 200.2
adj top 198.10
upright 200.11
steep 204.18
straight 277.6
vertigo symptom 85.9
ear disease 85.15
dizziness 985.4
verve vim 17.2
passion 93.2
eagerness 101.1
gaiety 109.4
liveliness 330.2
spirit 544.4
lively imagination 986.4
very to a degree 245.7
exceedingly 247.18
vesicle bulge 283.3
bubble 320.1
blemish 1004.1
vespers 696.8
vessel duct 2.23
ship 180.1
container 195.1
vest
n waistcoat 5.14
v establish 159.16
endow 478.17
commission 615.10
vestal virgin 565.4
vested clothing 5.45
established 855.13
vested interest
estate 471.4
pressure group 609.31
prerogative 642.1
vestibule ear 2.10
entrance 189.5
portal 197.19
vestige
remainder 256.1
print 517.7
clue 517.9
record 549.1
admixture 797.7
antiquity 842.6
vestment
clothing 5.1
garment 5.3
cover 295.2
vest-pocket
insignificant 248.6
miniature 258.12
shortened 268.9
concise 537.6
vestry
ecclesiastical council 423.4
church 703.9
veteran
n old man 304.2
vet 413.16
combat participant 461.19
adj experienced 413.28
veterinarian 90.7
veto
n negative 444.2
executive privilege 613.7
v put one's veto upon 444.5
oppose 451.3
disapprove 510.10
legislate 613.10
vex annoy 96.13
irk 98.15
make anxious 126.5
provoke 152.24
trouble 1013.13
V formation 184.12
VHF 1034.12
via 161.27
viable energizing 17.15
acceptable 107.12
living 306.13
workable 889.10
practicable 966.7
of importance 997.18
viaduct crossing 170.2
bridge 383.9
vibrant energetic 17.13
resonant 54.10
vibrate resonate 54.6
be frequent 847.3
oscillate 916.10
shake 917.11
vibrato
n screech 58.4
trill 709.19
adj shrill 58.14
vicar deputy 576.1
substitute 862.2
vicarious 862.8
vice
n misbehavior 322.1
deputy 576.1
moral badness 654
viciousness 654.1
weakness 654.2
wrongdoing 655.1
substitute 862.2
prep instead of 862.12
vice-president
executive 574.3
vice-chairman 576.8
substitute 862.2
viceroy
governor 575.13
vice-president 576.8
vice versa
inversely 205.8
reciprocally 777.12
contrarily 779.9
vicinity
environment 209.1
nearness 223.1
region 231.1
vicious cruel 144.26
vice-prone 654.11
wicked 654.16
savage 671.21
bad 1000.7
harmful 1000.12
vicious circle
circle 280.2
futility 391.2

sophistry 936.1
vicissitudes 972.5
vicious cycle 391.2
vicissitude
changing 854.3
adversity 1011.1
victim
sick person 85.43
sufferer 96.11
dupe 358.1
quarry 382.7
loser 412.5
laughingstock 508.7
cheater 759.22
unfortunate 1011.7
victimize cheat 356.18
persecute 389.7
outwit 415.11
overprice 632.7
victor
successful person 409.6
winner 411.2
Victorian
n prude 500.11
adj prudish 500.19
antiquated 842.13
victorious 411.7
victory success 409.1
triumph 411
win 411.1
victuals food 10.2
groceries 735.7
video
n television 1035.1
adj televisional 1035.16
video camera camera 714.11
television 1035.1
video-cassette recorder
record 50.12
television receiver 1035.11
video game 743.9
videotape
n recording media 549.10
v record 549.15
vie compete 457.18
be comparable 943.7
excel 999.11
Vietcong
n irregular 461.16
revolutionist 860.3
adj revolutionist 860.6
view
n look 27.3
field of view 31.3
aspect 33.3
appearance 33.6
intention 380.1
scene 712.12
estimate 946.3
opinion 953.6
outlook 978.2
v see 27.12
look 27.13
think of 931.17
take the attitude 978.6
heed 983.6
viewer
optical instrument 29.1
recipient 479.3
spectator 918.1
televiewer 1035.12
viewpoint
standpoint 27.7
field of view 31.3
aspect 33.3
station 159.2
outlook 978.2
vigil wakefulness 23.1
vigilance 339.4
vigilant wakeful 23.7
wary 339.13
prepared 405.16
protective 1008.23
vignette
description 349.2
drawing 712.13
print 713.5
vigor strength 15.1
energy 17.1
power 18.1
haleness 83.3
gaiety 109.4
force 544.3
vigorish 793.1
viking mariner 183.1
pirate 483.7
vile nasty 64.7
malodorous 71.5
filthy 80.23
offensive 98.18
low 497.15
cursing 513.8
knavish 645.17
wicked 654.16
base 661.12
obscene 666.9
paltry 998.21
terrible 1000.9
vilify berate 510.19
revile 512.10
abuse 513.7
stigmatize 661.9
blaspheme 694.5
villa 228.7
village
n hamlet 230.2
region 231.5
adj urban 230.11
villain evildoer 593.1
rascal 660.3
role 704.10
actor 707.2
vim verve 17.2
power 18.1
gaiety 109.4
liveliness 330.2
vinaigrette 70.6
vindicate justify 600.9
acquit 601.4
vindictive 507.7
vine 310.4
vinegar sour 67.2
preservative 397.4
vineyard 1069.10
vintage 472.5
violate disobey 327.6
misuse 389.4
corrupt 393.12
break 435.4
possess sexually 480.15
seduce 665.20
rage 671.11
break the law 674.5
work evil 1000.6
violence acrimony 17.5
excitability 105.10
cruelty 144.11
rage 152.10
mistreatment 389.2
coercion 424.3
vehement action 671
agitation 671.1
violet
n purpleness 46.1
adj purple 46.3
violinist 710.5
VIP celebrity 662.9
influence 894.6
important person 997.9
viper serpent 311.26
beast 660.6
virgin
n schoolgirl 302.8
single woman 565.4
adj hinterland 233.9
natural 406.13
unmarried 565.7
continent 664.6
intact 792.10
unmixed 798.7
new 841.7
unproductive 891.4
unknown 930.17
undamaged 1002.8
virgule diagonal 204.7
line 517.6
virile potent 76.13
courageous 492.17
virtual 519.5
virtue power 18.1
courage 492.1
morality 636.3
probity 644.1
moral goodness 653
virtuousness 653.1
chastity 664.1
goodness 999.1
virtuoso
n superior 249.4
master 413.13
connoisseur 496.7
musician 710.1
first-rater 999.6
adj skillful 413.22
musical 708.47
virtuous honest 644.13
good 653.6
chaste 664.4
pure 999.12
virulent
acrimonious 17.14
poisonous 82.7
rancorous 144.22
resentful 152.26
deadly 308.23
hostile 589.10
violent 671.16
harmful 1000.12
virus infection 85.4
germ 85.42
organism 305.2
poison 1001.3
visa
n ratification 332.4
pass 443.7
signature 527.10
certificate 549.6
v ratify 332.12
visage looks 33.4
face 216.4
vis à vis 790.4
viscera vitals 2.16
heart 93.3
insides 207.4
viscount 608.4
viscous thick 269.8
dense 1045.12
viscid 1062.12
vise 260.6
visible visual 27.20
clear 31.6
apparent 33.11
manifest 348.8
vision
n sight 27.1
optics 27.1
apparition 33.5
deception 356.1
phantom 976.4
figment of the imagination 986.5
visualization 986.6
dream 986.9
specter 988.1
thing of beauty 1016.7
v visualize 986.15
visit
n chat 541.4
social call 582.7
v go to 177.25
enter 189.7
attend 221.8
chat 541.10
pay a visit 582.19
visitor traveler 178.1
incomer 189.4
attender 221.5
superintendent 574.2
guest 585.6
examiner 938.17
visor cover 356.11
eyeshade 1028.2
vista field of view 31.3
view 33.6
visual eye 2.28
ocular 27.20
visible 31.6
visualize
think of 931.17
vision 986.15
vital
powerful 18.12
hale 83.12
eager 101.8
gay 109.14
organic 305.17
living 306.13
vigorous 544.11
durable 827.10
requisite 963.13
all-important 997.23
vitality
strength 15.1

energy 17.1
power 18.1
haleness 83.3
eagerness 101.1
gaiety 109.4
life 306.1
vigor 544.3
toughness 1049.1
vital statistics 1017.14
vitamin 7.4
vitamin complex 7.4
vitamin deficiency 992.6
vitiate impair 393.12
corrupt 654.10
neutralize 900.7
vitreous 1029.5
vitriolic
acrimonious 17.14
pungent 68.6
rancorous 144.22
hostile 589.10
vituperate
berate 510.19
vilify 513.7
viva! 509.23
vivacious
energetic 17.13
eager 101.8
gay 109.14
active 330.17
spirited 544.12
vive! 509.23
vivid energetic 17.13
sensitive 24.13
colorful 35.19
eager 101.8
representational 349.13
descriptive 349.14
expressive 544.10
remembered 989.23
bright 1025.32
vivifying 17.15
vivisection 802.5
vixen
female animal 77.10
bitch 110.12
witch 593.7
violent person 671.9
viz
by interpretation 341.18
namely 865.18
vocabulary
n jargon 523.9
lexis 526.13
reference book 554.9
dictionary 871.4
adj verbal 526.18
vocal speech 524.29
singing 708.50
vocal cords 524.18
vocalist 710.13
vocalize say 524.22
sing 708.38
vocation motive 375.1
the ministry 698.1
occupation 724.6
specialty 866.1
vociferous noisy 53.13
vociferant 59.10
vogue
n fashion 578.1
repute 662.1
adj stylish 578.12
voice
n vote 371.6
approval 509.1
utterance 524.2
manner of speaking 524.7
speech sound 524.12
active voice 530.14
spokesman 576.5
part 708.22
voce 709.5
singer 710.13
v publish 352.10
say 524.22
tune 708.36
voiceless mute 51.12
phonetic 524.30
voicemail 347.13
void
n space 158.1
vacuum 222.3
crack 224.2
nonexistence 762.1
v defecate 12.13
delete 255.12
abolish 395.13
repeal 445.2
neutralize 900.7
evacuate 909.22
adj vacant 222.14
repealed 445.3
nonexistent 762.8
voilà
so much for that! 407.15
attention! 983.22
volatile
n vapor 1067.1
adj light 298.10
fickle 364.6
transient 828.7
inconstant 854.7
superficial 922.20
flighty 985.17
vaporable 1067.10
volcanic fervent 93.18
excitable 105.28
passionate 105.29
hot-tempered 110.25
explosive 671.24
volcano
mountain 237.6
outburst 671.6
volition will 323.1
choice 371.1
volley
n detonation 56.3
salvo 459.9
arrow 462.6
shot 904.4
v play tennis 748.3
volt 1032.12
voltage 1032.12
voluble 540.9
volume loudness 53.1
space 158.1
quantity 247.3
size 257.1
capacity 257.2
book 554.1
tome 554.4
edition 554.5
part 554.13
volumetric 158.1
voluminous
spacious 158.11
large 247.7
capacious 257.17
voluntary
n overture 708.26
curtain-raiser 816.2
adj volitional 323.4
volunteer 324.7
elective 371.22
intentional 380.8
volunteer
n voluntariness 324.2
v do voluntarily 324.4
step forward 439.10
adj voluntary 324.7
voluptuous
sexual 75.25
delightful 97.7
sensual 663.5
vomit
n emetic 86.18
vomiting 909.8
v feel disgust 99.4
jet 238.20
erupt 671.13
spew 909.26
voodoo
n animism 675.6
sorcery 690.1
shaman 690.7
charm 691.5
bad influence 1000.4
v bewitch 691.9
adj sorcerous 690.14
voracious
hungry 100.25
greedy 100.27
gluttonous 672.6
vortex agitation 105.4
wash 184.30
eddy 238.12
coil 281.2
bustle 330.4
whirl 915.2
vote
n choice 371.6
approval 509.1
voting 609.18
legislative procedure 613.6
v cast one's vote 371.18
participate 476.5
voter selector 371.7
elector 609.23
vouch
n affirmation 334.1
v depose 334.6
promise 436.4
testify 957.9
voucher
recommendation 509.4
certificate 549.6
acknowledgment 627.2
negotiable paper 728.11
witness 957.6
vouchsafe
condescend 137.8
give oneself airs 141.8
permit 443.9
give 478.12
vow
n oath 334.4
promise 436.1
v depose 334.6
promise 436.4
state 953.12
vowel
n speech sound 524.12
adj phonetic 524.30
vox populi
unanimity 332.5
opinion 953.6
voyage
n journey 177.5
ocean trip 182.6
v traverse 177.20
journey 177.21
navigate 182.13
voyager 178.1
voyeur
sexual pervert 75.16
inquisitive person 981.2
vs 451.10
V-shaped forked 171.10
angular 278.6
Vulcan 726.8
vulcanize burn 1020.24
elasticize 1048.6
vulgar inferior 250.6
disreputable 497.10
gaudy 501.20
ill-bred 505.6
vernacular 523.20
inelegant 534.2
populational 606.8
base 661.12
uncouth 666.8
vulgarity
inadequacy 250.3
commonness 497.5
vulgarness 497.1
discourtesy 505.1
inelegance 534.1
baseness 661.3
uncouthness 666.3
vulnerable
helpless 19.18
influenceable 894.15
liable 897.5
pregnable 1006.16
brittle 1050.4
vulture 480.12
vulva 2.13
vying
n hostility 451.2
contention 457.1
competition 457.2
adj competitive 457.23
wacky foolish 923.9
crazy 926.27
eccentric 927.6
wad
n lot 247.4
lump 257.10
wealth 618.3
bankroll 728.17
accumulation 770.9
v fill 196.7
stuff 794.7

wadding lining 196.3
stopping 293.5
waddle
n slow motion 175.2
gait 177.12
v go slow 175.6
way of walking 177.28
wade 182.56
wade into
confront 216.8
attack 459.15
set to work 725.15
wading bird 311.28
wafer biscuit 10.30
thinness 270.7
lamina 296.2
Eucharist 701.7
waffle
n pancake 10.45
bull 520.3
v slight 340.8
prevaricate 344.7
vacillate 362.8
remain neutral 467.5
talk nonsense 520.5
change 854.5
waft
n transportation 176.3
puff 318.4
v transport 176.12
buoy 298.8
blow 318.20
wag
n mischief-maker 322.3
humorist 489.12
swing 916.6
wiggle 917.7
v oscillate 916.10
wave 916.11
wiggle 917.14
wage
n pay 624.4
v practice 328.8
wager
n bet 759.3
gamble 971.8
v chance 759.24
bet 759.25
wagon vehicle 179.2
police car 179.11
waif vagabond 178.3
derelict 370.4
wail
n screech 58.4
lament 115.3
v screech 58.8
cry 60.2
ululate 115.13
sigh 318.21
speak 524.25
wainscot
n lining 196.3
base 199.2
v fill 196.7
waist shirt 5.15
middle 819.1
waistband 5.19
waistcoat 5.14
waistline 819.1
wait
n minstrel 710.14
delay 846.2
v await 130.8
be patient 134.4
serve 577.13
delay 846.12
waiter 577.7
waiting list 871.1
wait on await 130.8
toady to 138.8
extend courtesy 504.12
serve 577.13
accompany 769.7
escort 769.8
waitress 577.7
wait up 846.12
waive give up 370.7
reject 372.2
cease to use 390.4
not use 390.5
permit 443.9
repeal 445.2
relinquish 475.3
postpone 846.9
allow for 959.5
waiver
relinquishment 370.3
discontinuance 390.2
permission 443.1
repeal 445.1
quitclaim 475.2
qualification 959.1
wake
n wakefulness 23.1
track 182.7
wash 184.30
last offices 309.4
sign 517.8
social gathering 582.10
afterpart 817.2
aftereffect 887.3
v awake 23.4
get up 23.5
excite 105.12
wale
sore 85.37
bulge 283.3
texture 294.1
blemish 1004.1
walk
n slow motion 175.2
ramble 177.10
gait 177.12
sphere 231.2
route 383.1
path 383.2
race 457.12
arena 463.1
occupation 724.4
vocation 724.6
game 745.3
circuit 914.2
v exercise 84.4
go slow 175.6
ambulate 177.27
get off 369.7
win hands down 411.4
be free 430.18
liberate 431.9
strike 727.10
play 745.5
walk all over 612.16
walk a tightrope 1013.11
walk away quit 188.9
outdistance 249.10
abandon 370.5
dismiss 984.4
walker
pedestrian 178.6
baby carriage 179.6
walking papers 909.5
walk of life 765.1
walk-on role 704.10
supporting actor 707.7
walk out exit 190.12
strike 727.10
stop work 857.8
walkover 411.1
walk-through 704.13
walkup 228.13
walkway 383.2
wall
n precipice 200.3
fence 212.4
partition 213.5
slope 237.2
barrier 1012.5
v fence 212.7
fortify 460.9
walled-in
enclosed 212.10
covered 295.31
wallet 729.15
wall off partition 213.8
quarantine 429.13
wallop
n blow 902.5
v punish 604.15
strike 902.15
beat 902.17
flounder 917.15
wallow
n marsh 243.1
flounder 917.8
v pitch 182.55
be promiscuous 665.19
bow 913.9
welter 915.13
flounder 917.15
wallpaper 295.23
Wall Street
stock market 737.1
stock exchange 737.7
financial district 737.8
wall-to-wall
adj comprehensive 772.7
same 781.6
thorough 794.10
continuous 812.8
adv continuously 812.10
wall-to-wall carpet 295.9
walnut 40.3
waltz
n easy 1014.4
v win hands down 411.4
dance 705.5
wampum jewel 498.6
money 728.2
names for 728.3
wan
v lose color 36.6
adj tired-looking 21.9
colorless 36.7
deathly 307.29
languid 331.20
lackluster 1027.17
wand fitness 84.1
scepter 417.9
insignia 647.1
wish-bringer 691.6
dowsing 962.3
wander deviate 164.4
roam 177.23
digress 538.9
misbelieve 688.8
be insane 926.20
err 975.9
stray 984.3
muse 985.9
wanderer rover 178.2
alien 774.3
transient 828.4
planet 1072.9
Wandering Jew
displaced person 160.4
wanderer 178.2
wanderlust 177.3
wane
n standstill 173.3
decline 252.2
deterioration 393.3
v disappear 34.2
recede 168.2
move 172.5
quiet 173.8
decrease 252.6
age 303.10
decline 393.17
wangle elicit 192.14
persuade 375.23
plot 381.9
maneuver 415.10
wannabee
desirer 100.12
petitioner 440.7
candidate 610.9
want
n desire 100.1
absence 222.1
indigence 619.2
deficiency 795.2
requirement 963.2
lack 992.4
imperfection 1003.1
v desire 100.14
be inferior 250.4
be poor 619.5
necessitate 795.3
fall short 911.2
require 963.9
lack 992.7
be insufficient 992.8
wanted
desired 100.29
welcome 585.12
requisite 963.13
want for lack 795.3
fall short 911.2
be insufficient 992.8
wanton
n libertine 665.10
strumpet 665.14
v make love 562.14
be promiscuous 665.19

dissipate 669.6
make merry 743.24
adj capricious 364.5
unrestrained 430.24
reckless 493.8
unvirtuous 654.12
wayward 665.26
inconstant 854.7
wapiti 311.5
war
n disaccord 456.1
contention 457.1
warfare 458.1
campaign 458.4
military science 458.6
v contend 457.13
do battle 458.14
warble bird sound 60.5
speak 524.25
sing 708.38
war cry cry 59.1
challenge 454.2
call to arms 458.8
signal 517.16
ward
hospital room 197.25
region 231.5
custody 429.5
dependent 432.6
defense 460.1
stronghold 460.6
election district 609.16
protectorship 1008.2
warden jailer 429.10
executive 574.3
public official 575.17
guardian 1008.6
doorkeeper 1008.12
ward heeler
follower 166.2
partisan 609.27
henchman 610.8
ward off dodge 368.8
fend off 460.10
repulse 908.3
prevent 1012.14
wardrobe
furnishings 5.2
closet 197.15
warehouse
n storehouse 386.6
market 736.1
v load 159.15
store 386.10
warehouse store 736.1
wares 735.1
warfare
contention 457.1
war 458.1
battle 458.1
warhead charge 462.16
rocket 1074.3
warlock 690.5
warlord 575.13
warm
n man 76.5
v energize 17.10
make red 41.4
excite 105.12
heat 1020.17
adj chromatic 35.16
red 41.6
fervent 93.18
zealous 101.9
heated 105.22
comfortable 121.11
kind 143.13
near 223.14
vehement 544.13
hospitable 585.11
cordial 587.16
wealthy 618.15
on the right scent 941.10
calid 1019.24
warm-blooded 1019.29
warmonger 461.5
warm over prose 117.5
revive 396.16
heat 1020.17
warn forebode 133.11
dissuade 379.3
caution 399.5
alarm 400.3
demand 421.5
admonish 422.6
threaten 514.2
warning
n forewarning 133.4
dissuasion 379.1
caution 399.1
preparation 405.1
demand 421.1
advice 422.1
threat 514.1
tip-off 551.3
adj premonitory 133.16
cautioning 399.7
advisory 422.8
war of words quarrel 456.5
contention 457.1
argumentation 935.4
warp
n deviation 164.1
bias 204.3
distortion 265.1
woof 740.3
tendency 896.1
disposition 978.3
blemish 1004.1
v deflect 164.5
ship activity 182.48
distort 265.5
misrepresent 350.3
falsify 354.16
corrupt 393.12
be changed 852.6
tend 896.3
prejudice 980.9
blemish 1004.4
adj supersonic 174.16
war paint 1016.12
warpath 458.11
warrant
n ratification 332.4
oath 334.4
security 438.1
authorization 443.3
permit 443.6
certificate 549.6
summons 598.2
reason 600.6
commission 615.1
acknowledgment 627.2
privilege 642.2
negotiable instrument 728.11
v acknowledge 332.11
ratify 332.12
depose 334.6
promise 436.4
secure 438.9
authorize 443.11
justify 600.9
commission 615.10
state 953.12
testify 957.9
confirm 957.11
warrantee 438.7
warrant officer
commissioned officer 575.18
naval officer 575.20
warrantor 438.6
warranty
promise 436.1
security 438.1
authorization 443.3
certificate 549.6
warren sty 80.11
cave 284.5
productiveness 890.6
warrior 461.6
wart growth 85.39
runt 258.4
bulge 283.3
blemish 1004.1
warts and all 973.19
war whoop cry 59.1
challenge 454.2
call to arms 458.8
call 517.16
wary
vigilant 339.13
cunning 415.12
chary 494.9
doubting 955.9
incredulous 956.4
war zone 458.1
wash
n color 35.8
washing 79.5
laundering 79.6
trail 182.7
wake 184.30
lap 238.8
marsh 243.1
painting 712.14
the same 790.3
tie 836.3
stop 857.2
v color 35.14
ripple 52.11
bathe 79.19
lap 238.19
shuffle 758.5
be true 973.8
soak 1065.13
wash away wash 79.19
recede 168.2
subtract 255.9
exterminate 395.14
obliterate 395.16
washbasin 79.12
washboard
roughness 288.2
pavement 383.6
washed-out
ineffective 19.15
colorless 36.7
weatherworn 393.34
washed up
ruined 395.29
completed 407.11
ended 820.8
finished 820.9
washer
washbasin 79.12
launderer 79.15
washing machine 79.12
wash one's hands of
give up 370.7
refuse 442.3
relinquish 475.3
disapprove 510.10
washout washing 79.5
airmanship 184.3
overflow 238.6
debacle 395.4
scrub 410.2
abortion 410.5
failure 410.8
wash over 238.17
wasp
sorehead 110.11
bee 311.35
waste
n excrement 12.3
offal 80.9
decrement 252.3
remainder 256.1
derelict 370.4
consumption 388.1
refuse 391.4
wastage 393.4
destruction 395.1
loss 473.2
prodigality 486.1
disintegration 806.1
wasteland 891.2
extract 893.3
v disappear 34.2
fail 85.48
decrease 252.6
shrink 260.9
kill 308.14
be consumed 388.4
impair 393.19
destroy 395.10
put an end to 395.12
deplete 473.5
consume 486.4
annihilate 762.7
end 820.5
adj hinterland 233.9
unproductive 891.4
wastebasket 391.7
waste disposal 390.3
wasteful
destructive 395.26
prodigal 486.8
wasteland
hinterland 233.2
waste 891.2

wastrel
vagabond 178.3
bum 331.9
derelict 370.4
prodigal 486.2
wretch 660.2
watch
n observation 27.2
hand 183.6
vigilance 339.4
assemblage 770.6
shift 825.3
timepiece 832.6
watchman 1008.10
v look 27.13
await 130.8
attend 221.8
be vigilant 339.8
spectate 918.5
reconnoiter 938.28
be curious 981.3
heed 983.6
care for 1008.19
protect 1008.20
watchdog dog 311.17
guard dog 1008.11
watchful
wakeful 23.7
vigilant 339.13
attentive 983.15
protective 1008.23
watch the clock 832.11
watchtower
observation post 27.8
marker 517.10
watchword
call to arms 458.8
password 517.12
motto 974.4
watch your step! 494.14
water
n urine 12.5
sweat 12.7
symbol of weakness 16.7
sounding 275.5
painting 712.14
changeableness 854.4
extinguisher 1022.3
fluid 1061.2
aqua 1065.3
v secrete 13.5
dilute 16.11
abate 252.8
thin 270.12
rarefy 299.3
corrupt 393.12
dissipate 771.5
adulterate 797.12
moisten 1065.12
tend 1070.7
watercolor 712.14
waterfall
descent 194.1
cataract 238.11
waterfowl 311.28
waterfront 234.2
watering
n weakening 16.5
rarefaction 299.2
dispersion 771.1
adulteration 797.3
wetting 1065.6
adj secretory 13.7
wetting 1065.18
watering hole
bar 88.20
lake 241.1
waterlogged 1065.17
Waterloo 412.1
watermark
waterline 300.6
mark 517.5
water pollution
unhealthfulness 82.1
environmental destruction 1073.2
waterproof
v proof 15.14
adj seaworthy 180.18
close 293.12
watertight 1066.11
water sport 744.1
waterspout spout 239.8
rainstorm 316.2
whirlwind 318.14
watertight
resistant 15.20
seaworthy 180.18
close 293.12
waterproof 1066.11
water under the bridge 837.1
waterway
seaway 182.10
stream 238.1
watercourse 239.2
waterworks
channel 239.2
water 1065.3
watery secretory 13.7
wishy-washy 16.17
insipid 65.2
thin 270.16
meager 992.10
fluid 1061.4
moist 1065.16
WATS line 347.17
watts 1032.18
wave
n hairdo 3.15
billow 238.14
convolution 281.1
greeting 585.4
waving 916.2
oscillation 916.4
swing 916.6
v cut the hair 3.22
billow 238.22
manifest 348.5
flaunt 501.17
signal 517.22
oscillate 916.10
undulate 916.11
flutter 917.12
wavelength
oscillation 916.4
radio wave 1034.11
wavelet 238.14
wave off 773.4
waver
n swing 916.6
flutter 917.4
v demur 325.4
vacillate 362.8
diversify 782.2
change 854.5
oscillate 916.10
flutter 917.12
flicker 1025.25
wave the white flag
surrender 433.8
make peace 465.9
wavy curved 279.7
undulant 281.10
inconstant 854.7
wax
n whiteness 37.2
record 50.12
fit 152.8
softness 1047.4
lubricant 1056.2
v grow 14.2
increase 251.6
expand 259.7
polish 287.7
evolve 861.5
oil 1056.8
wax and wane
change 854.5
alternate 916.13
waxen 36.7
way room 158.3
direction 161.1
progression 162.1
progress 182.9
entrance 189.5
channel 239.1
behavior 321.1
custom 373.1
habit 373.3
plan 381.1
route 383.1
manner 384.1
knack 413.6
latitude 430.4
style 532.2
mode 765.4
nature 767.4
continuance 856.1
specialty 866.1
wayfarer 178.1
waylay 346.10
way of life
behavior 321.1
preference 371.5
custom 373.1
mode 765.4
specialty 866.1
the way of the world 765.2
way out
n outlet 190.9
loophole 369.4
excuse 600.4
adj extreme 247.13
nothing like 787.5
modern 841.13
unconventional 868.6
ways and means 384.2
the way the ball bounces 972.1
wayward
disobedient 327.8
perverse 361.11
capricious 364.5
unvirtuous 654.12
wanton 665.26
inconstant 854.7
weak weakly 16.12
impotent 19.13
tired 21.7
inconspicuous 32.6
colorless 36.7
faint 52.16
insipid 65.2
thin 270.16
stricken in years 303.18
human 312.13
weak-willed 362.12
lax 426.4
cowardly 491.10
phonetic 524.30
unvirtuous 654.12
fragile 764.7
influenceable 894.15
uninfluential 895.3
feebleminded 922.21
unsound 936.12
vulnerable 1006.16
weaken
grow weak 16.9
enfeeble 16.10
disable 19.9
fatigue 21.4
fail 85.48
afflict 85.50
abate 252.8
thin 270.12
blunt 286.2
impair 393.9
overthrow 395.20
moderate 670.6
spiritualize 764.4
dissipate 771.5
weak-kneed
weak-willed 362.12
cowardly 491.10
weakling
meek soul 16.6
impotent 19.6
vacillator 362.5
coward 491.5
wealth assets 471.7
gain 472.3
riches 618.1
plenty 991.2
prosperity 1010.1
wealthy
rich 618.14
plentiful 991.7
prosperous 1010.12
wean
disaccustom 374.2
convince 858.16
weapon 285.2
wear
n clothing 5.1
use 393.5
disintegration 806.1
abrasion 1044.2
v have on 5.44
fatigue 21.4
be tedious 118.6
change course 182.30
decrease 252.6
erode 393.20
waste 473.5

affect 500.12
endure 827.6
abrade 1044.7
wear and tear
decrement 252.3
impairment 393.5
disintegration 806.1
wear away
weaken 16.9
disappear 34.2
decrease 252.6
subtract 255.9
consume 388.3
wear 393.20
waste 473.5
disintegrate 806.3
come to an end 820.6
abrade 1044.7
wear down fatigue 21.4
persuade 375.23
wear 393.20
influence 894.7
wear off wear 393.20
come to an end 820.6
wear out
fatigue 21.4
oppress 98.16
wear 393.20
wear thin
weaken 16.9
fall flat 117.4
wear well
enjoy good health 83.6
endure 827.6
weary
v fatigue 21.4
burn out 21.5
oppress 98.16
be tedious 118.6
adj tired 21.7
gloomy 112.24
weariful 118.11
languid 331.20
weary-worn 21.7
weasel
n sharp vision 27.11
sled sleigh 179.20
wild animal 311.23
man of few words 344.5
recant 363.8
v prevaricate 344.7
equivocate 539.3
inform on 551.13
pull back 903.7
weather
n atmosphere 184.32
windward side 218.3
climate 317.3
air 317.3
v sail against the wind 182.24
ride out the storm 182.40
wear 393.20
stand fast 855.11
be safe 1007.2
adj side 218.6
weather balloon 317.8
weather-beaten 393.34
weathered 393.34
weather eye
sharp eye 27.10
seamanship 182.3
vigilance 339.4
weather forecast 317.6
weather the storm
weather 182.40
recover 396.20
win through 409.13
stand fast 855.11
be safe 1007.2
weather vane
instrument 317.8
weathercock 318.17
changeableness 854.4
feeler 942.4
weave
n material 4.1
network 170.3
structure 266.1
texture 294.1
weaving 740.1
v loom 740.6
web
n material 4.1
network 170.3
structure 266.1
filament 271.1
presswork 548.9
weaving 740.1
v net 170.7
weave 740.6
web-footed 170.12
weblike 170.12
web of intrigue 381.5
web press 548.9
website 1042.19
Webster's 554.9
wed
v join in marriage 563.14
unite 563.15
relate 775.6
put together 800.5
combine 805.3
league 805.4
adj related 775.9
leagued 805.6
wedding
marriage 563.3
joining 800.1
combination 805.1
wedding anniversary 850.4
wedge
n phonetic symbol 546.2
v hook 800.8
secure 855.8
get a purchase 906.8
wedlock 563.1
wee 258.11
wee bit 248.2
weed
n marijuana 87.11
plant 310.3
intruder 774.2
v subtract 255.9
cultivate 1069.17
weed out use 87.22
extract 192.10
eliminate 773.5
cultivate 1069.17
week moment 824.2
seven 882.3
weekend
n vacation 20.3
v vacation 20.9
spend time 821.6
weep
n exuding 190.6
v excrete 12.12
fester 12.15
secrete 13.5
grieve 112.17
sob 115.12
exude 190.15
hang 202.6
trickle 238.18
rain 316.10
be damp 1065.11
weepy tearful 115.21
exudative 190.20
weevil 311.37
weigh
weight 297.10
measure 300.10
classify 801.8
have influence 894.10
consider 931.12
compare 943.4
estimate 946.9
matter 997.12
weigh anchor
up-anchor 182.18
embark 188.15
detach 802.10
weigh heavy on
burden 297.13
domineer 612.16
go hard with 1011.8
weigh in
appear 33.8
enter 189.7
weigh 297.10
judge 946.8
weigh in the balance 297.10
weight
n power 18.1
fitness 84.1
affliction 96.8
heaviness 297.1
paperweight 297.6
extent 300.3
prestige 417.4
formality 580.1
charge 643.3
exerciser 725.7
boxer 754.2
influence 894.1
validity 973.6
importance 997.1
impediment 1012.6
v weigh 297.10
pull down 297.12
fill 794.7
weightless 764.5
weight training
exercise 84.2
sport 744.1
weight-watching 270.9
weird
n spell 691.1
fate 964.2
adj awesome 122.11
creepy 127.31
deathly 307.29
sorcerous 690.14
odd 870.11
absurd 923.11
eccentric 927.6
eerie 988.9
weirdo
oddity 870.4
lunatic 926.16
freak 927.4
welcome
n greetings 186.4
reception 187.1
receptivity 187.9
assent 332.1
liberality 485.1
hospitality 585.2
v receive 187.10
assent 332.8
be hospitable 585.9
incur 897.4
adj pleasant 97.6
hospitable 585.12
weld
n joint 800.4
v sculpture 715.5
relate 775.6
put together 800.5
stick together 803.9
burn 1020.24
welder
blowtorch 1020.14
machinery 1040.3
welfare
n kindness 143.5
subsidy 478.8
welfarism 611.7
good 999.4
prosperity 1010.1
adj benevolent 143.15
welfare state
welfare 143.5
relief 611.7
government 612.4
welfare worker 143.8
well
n lake 241.1
depth 275.2
pit 284.4
source of supply 386.4
fountainhead 886.6
v run out 190.13
jet 238.20
adj unailing 83.10
adv ably 18.16
kindly 143.18
successfully 409.15
skillfully 413.31
excellently 999.22
well-advised 920.19
well-balanced
composed 106.13
symmetric 264.4
stable 855.12
sensible 920.18
well-being health 83.1
pleasure 95.1
contentment 107.1
comfort 121.1
good 999.4
prosperity 1010.1

well-bred
highbred 504.17
upper-class 607.10
wellborn 608.11
well-built
able-bodied 15.16
sturdy 763.7
made 892.18
comely 1016.19
well-defined
distinct 31.7
clear 521.11
well-deserving 509.20
well-developed
grown 14.3
expanded 259.12
mature 303.13
well-disposed
well-meaning 143.17
willing 324.5
favorable 449.22
approving 509.17
friendly 587.15
well-educated 928.20
well-established
sturdy 763.7
established 855.13
obvious 970.15
well-fed 257.18
well-known trite 117.9
distinguished 662.16
real 761.15
well-kenned 928.27
well-made
shapely 264.5
sturdy 763.7
made 892.18
comely 1016.19
well-mannered
mannerly 504.16
ceremonious 580.8
well-meaning
well-meant 143.17
favorable 449.22
friendly 587.15
harmless 999.21
well-nigh 223.22
well-off 618.14
well-oiled 88.33
well-prepared 405.16
well-preserved
young 301.9
preserved 397.13
well-proportioned
shapely 264.5
comely 1016.19
well-put 533.7
well-rounded 413.25
well-suited
fitted 405.17
competent 413.24
well-thought-of
respected 155.11
approved 509.19
reputable 662.15
well-to-do 618.14
well-traveled 177.40
well-versed
skilled in 413.27
knowledgeable 928.18
well-informed 928.20
welsh
n recant 363.8
v shirk 368.9
repeal 445.2
not pay 625.6
welt
n sore 85.37
edging 211.7
bulge 283.3
blemish 1004.1
v punish 604.15
welterweight 297.3
wench woman 77.6
girl 302.6
maid 577.8
strumpet 665.14
werewolf
frightener 127.9
monster 593.6
evil spirit 680.12
west
n points of the compass 161.3
adj directional 161.14
adv W 161.18
Western Hemisphere 231.6
wet
n drink 88.7
rain 316.1
weather 316.4
liberal 611.11
moisture 1065.1
v urinate 12.14
moisten 1065.12
adj left 220.4
liberal 611.19
foolish 923.8
fluid 1061.4
moist 1065.15
wetback migrant 178.5
derogatory names 232.7
fugitive 368.5
wet behind the ears
untried 301.10
immature 406.11
inexperienced 414.17
wet blanket
killjoy 112.14
bore 118.4
deterrent 379.2
spoilsport 1012.9
extinguisher 1022.3
wetlands shore 234.2
shoal 276.2
wet-nurse nourish 8.19
foster 449.16
whack
n report 56.1
attempt 403.3
slap 604.3
turn 825.2
hit 902.4
v crack 56.6
slap 604.12
hit 902.14
whale
n largeness 257.11
heavyweight 257.12
behemoth 257.14
marine animal 311.30
v fish 382.10
whip 604.13
punish 604.15
wham
n report 56.1
v crack 56.6
strike 902.15
whammy
n gaze 27.5
malevolence 144.4
curse 513.1
spell 691.1
charm 691.5
bad influence 1000.4
v bring bad luck 1011.12
wharf 1009.6
what 864.6
whatever
n no matter what 864.6
adv any kind 809.9
what goes around comes around 887.9
what goes up must come down 887.9
what's what 761.4
wheat 10.4
wheedle urge 375.14
importune 440.12
flatter 511.5
wheel
n cycle 179.8
circle 280.2
change one's mind 363.6
helm 573.5
torture 605.4
potter's wheel 742.4
automobile racing 756.1
roulette 759.12
round 850.3
propeller 904.6
whirl 915.2
rotator 915.4
important person 997.9
v turn about 163.9
ride 177.33
recur 850.5
circle 914.5
rotate 915.9
whirl 915.11
wheel chair 179.7
wheeler-dealer
man of action 330.8
politics 610.6
influence 894.6
wheel of fortune
gambling wheel 759.16
changeableness 854.4
fate 964.2
Chance 972.2
wheeze
n breathing 2.21
sibilation 57.1
joke 489.6
v burn out 21.5
sibilate 57.2
whelp
n boy 302.5
fledgling 302.10
dog 311.17
beast 660.6
v give birth 1.3
whenever when 821.8
time 821.12
when hell freezes over 822.2
when least expected
unexpectedly 131.14
suddenly 830.9
where 159.21
whereabouts
n location 159.1
adv where 159.21
whereas
n condition 959.2
prep when 821.16
conj because 888.10
whereby 384.12
wherein 207.10
where it's at fact 761.3
state of affairs 765.2
essence 767.3
novelty 841.2
what's what 973.4
salient point 997.6
wherever 159.22
wherewithal
n means 384.2
funds 728.14
adv herewith 384.12
whet
n appetizer 10.9
incentive 375.7
v sensitize 24.7
stimulate 105.13
intensify 251.5
sharpen 285.7
incite 375.17
whew! 122.20
whey 1061.2
whichever
n whatever 864.6
adj every 864.15
while
n time 821.1
period 824.1
meantime 826.2
v spend 387.13
prep when 821.16
while away
spend 387.13
fritter away 486.5
whim caprice 364.1
quirk 927.2
figment of the imagination 986.5
whimper
n lament 115.3
v sigh 52.14
weep 115.12
whine 115.14
whimsical
capricious 364.5
humorous 488.4
witty 489.15
inconstant 854.7
eccentric 927.5
uncertain 971.16
fanciful 986.20
whine
n screech 58.4
lament 115.3
v sigh 52.14
screech 58.8
cry 60.2

whimper 115.14
speak 524.25
nasalize 525.10
whinny 60.2
whiny
discontented 108.7
plaintive 115.19
whip
n driver 178.9
goad 375.8
lash 605.1
legislator 610.3
merry-go-round 743.15
slap 902.8
v best 249.7
foam 320.5
goad 375.15
hasten 401.4
defeat 412.9
give a beating 604.13
pound 902.16
slap 902.19
agitate 917.10
emulsify 1062.10
drive 1070.8
whip into shape
complete 407.6
arrange 808.8
perfect 1002.5
whiplash trauma 85.38
goad 375.8
whip 605.1
whipped cream 10.40
whippersnapper
impudent person 142.5
brat 302.4
a nobody 998.7
whipping boy 862.3
whip up excite 105.12
improvise 365.8
incite 375.17
seize 480.14
agitate 917.10
whir
n rotation 915.1
v hum 52.13
whirl
n agitation 105.4
ride 177.7
eddy 238.12
coil 281.2
bustle 330.4
round of pleasure 743.7
wheel 915.2
v turn around 163.9
move 172.5
eddy 238.21
convolve 281.4
whirligig 915.11
Whirlaway 311.15
whirlpool
n eddy 238.12
whirl 915.2
v rotation 915.11
whirlwind
outburst 105.9
wind 318.14
whirl 915.2
whirlybird 181.5
whisk
n tap 902.7
agitator 917.9
v sweep 79.23
speed 174.9
transport 176.12
foam 320.5
tap 902.18
agitate 917.10
whisker
n bristle 288.3
v grow hair 3.20
whiskey 88.13
whisper
n murmur 52.4
touch 73.1
mumbling 525.4
tip-off 551.3
hint 551.4
report 552.6
v murmur 52.10
sigh 318.21
tell confidentially 345.9
publish 352.10
say 524.22
speak 524.25
mumble 525.9
tip 551.11
adj murmuring 52.18
whistle
n blare 53.5
noisemaker 53.6
sibilation 57.1
screech 58.4
alarm 400.1
call 517.16
v blare 53.10
sibilate 57.2
screech 58.8
bird sound 60.5
exude cheerfulness 109.6
rejoice 116.5
sigh 318.21
sing 708.38
blow a horn 708.42
whistle-stop campaign 609.13
whit 248.2
white
n whiteness 37.1
cocaine 87.7
egg 305.15
v whiten 37.5
whitewash 37.6
adj pure 37.7
clean 79.25
vacant 222.14
aged 303.16
spotless 657.7
chaste 664.4
white-bearded 303.16
whitecap
body of water 238.14
wave 916.4
white-collar crime 655.2
white-collar worker
bourgeois 607.6
worker 726.2
white corpuscle 2.25
white elephant 1012.6
white flag
peace offer 465.2
signal 517.15
race 756.3
white-hot zealous 101.9
fiery 671.22
hot 1019.25
White House 228.5
white knight 460.7
white lie 354.11
white lightning
liquor 88.14
bootleg 88.18
white meat 10.23
white out 35.14
white supremacist 103.4
whitewash
n appearance 33.2
whitening agent 37.4
cleanser 79.17
pretext 376.1
utter defeat 412.3
extenuation 600.5
v color 35.14
whiten 37.5
hide 37.6
scratch the surface 206.6
conceal 346.6
falsify 354.16
acquit 601.4
white water
rapids 238.10
foam 320.2
whittle
n cutlery 1040.2
v form 262.7
sever 802.11
whiz
n sibilation 57.1
skillful person 413.14
first-rate 999.7
v hum 52.13
sibilate 57.2
speed 174.9
whiz kid 413.12
Who's Who 549.9
whoa! 857.13
whoever 864.7
who knows? 930.19
whole
n contents 196.1
quantity 244.1
inclusion 772.1
totality 792.1
all 864.4
sum 1017.6
adj healthy 83.11
comprehensive 772.7
total 792.9
complete 794.9
one 872.7
unqualified 960.2
sound 1002.7
wholehearted 359.11
whole kit and caboodle 792.4
whole nine yards 792.4
whole note 709.14
whole rest 709.21
wholesale
n sale 734.1
v deal in 731.16
sell 734.8
adj commercial 731.22
sales 734.13
thorough 794.10
extensive 864.13
undiscriminating 945.5
plentiful 991.7
adv cheaply 633.10
wholesome
healthful 81.5
sound 83.11
sane 925.4
whomever 864.7
whomp
n report 56.1
slap 604.3
impact 902.3
v crack 56.6
defeat 412.9
slap 604.12
collide 902.13
whoop
n cry 59.1
v cry 59.6
whoop it up
be noisy 53.9
have a party 582.21
make merry 743.24
create disorder 810.11
whoops! 975.22
whoosh
n sibilation 57.1
v sibilate 57.2
whopper
largeness 257.11
monstrous lie 354.12
whore
n flirt 562.11
reprobate 660.4
strumpet 665.14
prostitute 665.16
card 758.2
v be promiscuous 665.19
whorehouse
disapproved place 228.28
brothel 665.9
whorl
n coil 281.2
v convolve 281.4
why
n enigma 522.8
adv whyever 888.8
wick
village 230.2
taper 1026.7
wicked
malicious 144.20
wrong 638.3
evil 654.16
wrongdoing 655.5
ungodly 695.17
bad 1000.7
difficult 1013.17
wicker 170.3
wide
adj spacious 158.11
voluminous 257.17
broad 269.6
phonetic 524.30
extensive 864.13
erroneous 975.16
broad-minded 979.8
adv far and wide 261.16
clear 261.19
wide-angle 269.7

wide-awake
  awake 23.8
  alert 339.14
  clear-witted 920.13
wide berth 430.4
widen grow 251.6
  enlarge 259.4
  expand 259.5
  spread 259.6
  broaden 269.4
  generalize 864.9
wide of the mark
  adj irrelevant 776.7
  erroneous 975.16
  adv wide 261.19
wide open 174.20
wide-ranging
  spacious 158.11
  broad 269.6
  extensive 864.13
  broad-minded 979.8
wide receiver 746.2
widespread
  spacious 158.11
  spread 259.11
  broad 269.6
  customary 373.13
  dispersed 771.9
  extensive 864.13
widget 1052.5
widow
  n survivor 256.3
  widow woman 566.4
  v bereave 307.28
  leave behind 566.6
widow's peak 3.6
widower survivor 256.3
  widow 566.4
width size 257.1
  breadth 269.1
wield touch 73.6
  use 387.10
  wave 916.11
wieldy 1014.15
wiener roast 8.6
Wiener Schnitzel 10.19
wife woman 77.5
  married woman 563.8
wig 3.14
wiggle
  n wriggle 917.7
  v be excited 105.18
  way of walking 177.28
  wriggle 917.14
wig out use 87.22
  get excited 105.17
  lose self-control 128.8
  fly into a rage 152.20
  go mad 926.22
wigwam 228.10
wild
  n wasteland 891.2
  adj overzealous 101.12
  frenzied 105.25
  passionate 105.29
  infuriated 152.32
  hinterland 233.9
  animal 311.40
  defiant 327.10
  ungovernable 361.12
  unrestrained 430.24
  reckless 493.8
  foolhardy 493.9
  unrefined 497.12
  profligate 665.25
  turbulent 671.18
  unruly 671.19
  boisterous 671.20
  savage 671.21
  absurd 923.11
  rabid 926.30
  distracted 985.10
  fanciful 986.20
wild about 101.11
wild animals 311.1
wildcat strike 727.5
wildebeest 311.5
wilderness
  n open space 158.4
  hinterland 233.2
  complex 799.2
  wasteland 891.2
  adj hinterland 233.9
wild-eyed
  frenzied 105.25
  turbulent 671.18
  fanatic 926.32
wildfire 1019.13
wildflower 310.24
wild-goose chase
  lost cause 125.8
  labor in vain 391.3
  abortion 410.5
wild guess 951.4
wildlife 311.1
wildlife preserve 397.7
wild man
  daredevil 493.4
  savage 593.5
wild West 233.2
wiles 415.1
will
  n desire 100.1
  volition 323.1
  resolution 359.1
  will power 359.4
  choice 371.1
  intention 380.1
  command 420.1
  bequest 478.10
  v see fit 323.2
  resolve 359.7
  bequeath 478.18
willful
  disobedient 327.8
  obstinate 361.8
  intentional 380.8
  lawless 418.5
willies 128.2
willing volitional 323.4
  willinghearted 324.5
  obedient 326.3
  trial 403.16
  consenting 441.4
  teachable 570.18
will-o'-the-wisp
  deception 356.1
  illusion 976.1
  mirage 976.6
  fire 1019.13
  luminescence 1025.13
willowy thin 270.16
  folded 291.7
  pliant 1047.9
will power will 323.1
  resolution 359.4
wilt sweat 12.16
  weaken 16.9
  fatigue 21.4
  burn out 21.5
  fail 85.48
  languish 393.18
wily deceitful 356.22
  cunning 415.12
  shrewd 920.15
wimp weakling 16.6
  impotent 19.6
  vacillator 362.5
  coward 491.5
wimpy weak 16.12
  impotent 19.13
  irresolute 362.12
  cowardly 491.10
  uninfluential 895.3
win
  n victory 411.1
  fight 754.3
  v best 249.7
  persuade 375.23
  triumph 411.3
  acquire 472.8
  race 757.5
win back 396.12
win by a nose 411.3
wince
  n retreat 903.3
  v suffer 26.8
  flinch 127.13
  retract 168.3
  demur 325.4
  pull back 903.7
winch
  n windlass 906.7
  v reel in 906.9
wind
  stray 164.4
  change course 182.30
  curve 279.6
  convolve 281.4
  trap 356.20
  prime 405.9
  rotate 915.9
wind
  n breathing 2.21
  swiftness 174.6
  current 318.1
  bull 520.3
  wind instrument 711.6
  belch 909.9
  fart 909.10
  v fatigue 21.4
  blare 53.10
  air 317.11
  blow a horn 708.42
windbag
  braggart 502.5
  chatterer 540.4
windblown 318.24
wind chill 318.8
wind down
  decrease 252.6
  cease to exist 762.6
  turn off 857.12
windfall find 472.6
  good thing 999.5
winding
  deviative 164.7
  convolutional 281.6
wind instrument 711.6
windjammer
  sailboat 180.3
  mariner 183.1
  braggart 502.5
  chatterer 540.4
windmill
  rotor plane 181.5
  automobile racing 756.1
window
  casement 292.7
  radar 1036.13
window dressing
  appearance 33.2
  front 216.1
  sham 354.3
  ornamentation 498.1
window frame
  structure 266.4
  opening 292.7
window of opportunity 843.2
windowpane
  window 292.7
  transparent substance 1029.2
window-shop 733.8
windpipe 2.22
wind power 1021.7
windshield 1008.3
wind sock
  flying and landing guides marker 184.19
  weather vane 318.17
windstorm
  high wind 318.12
  storm 671.4
windsurfing 182.11
wind tunnel 239.13
windup
  completion 407.2
  game 745.3
  end 820.1
wind up prime 405.9
  complete 407.6
  end 820.5
  turn off 857.12
  result 887.4
windward
  n windward side 218.3
  adj side 218.6
  adv clockwise 161.24
  leeward 182.68
  side 218.9
windy
  n braggart 502.5
  v talkative 540.9
  adj distended 259.13
  rare 299.4
  blowy 318.22
  inflated 502.12
  wordy 538.12
  bombastic 545.9
  thin 764.6
  trivial 998.19
wine
  n kinds of 88.17
  adj red 41.6

wine cellar
room 197.17
storehouse 386.6
wine cooler 1024.3
win friends and influence people 894.7
wing
n fowl part 10.23
adjunct 254.3
air force 461.29
party 617.4
branch 617.10
scenery 704.20
company 770.3
member 793.4
protectorship 1008.2
v disable 19.9
transport 176.12
fly 184.36
cripple 393.14
make good 409.10
wing it improvise 365.8
do easily 1014.8
wingspan 257.1
win hands down 1014.11
wink
n nap 22.3
glance 27.4
signal 517.15
hint 551.4
instant 830.3
v blink 28.10
signal 517.22
the wink of an eye 828.3
wink of sleep 22.3
winner superior 249.4
man of action 330.8
sure success 409.2
successful person 409.6
victor 411.2
jockey 757.2
good thing 999.5
winning
n victory 411.1
acquisition 472.1
adj delightful 97.7
desirable 100.30
endearing 104.25
alluring 377.8
victorious 411.7
in the money 757.6
speculative 759.27
influential 894.13
winnings
increase 251.3
gain 472.3
winnow
n refinery 79.13
v refine 79.22
air 317.11
select 371.14
segregate 773.6
classify 801.8
discriminate 944.4
wino 88.12
win one's wings
succeed 409.7
triumph 411.3
win over
persuade 375.23
convert 858.16
convince 953.18
seem true 973.9
winsome
delightful 97.7
endearing 104.25
cheerful 109.11
alluring 377.8
Winston Churchill 543.6
winter
n wintertide 313.6
cold weather 1023.3
v summer 313.8
spend time 821.6
adj seasonal 313.9
winter solstice 313.7
wintry seasonal 313.9
cold 1023.14
wipe
n disappearance 34.1
v clean 79.18
dry 1066.6
wipe off the map 395.16
wipeout 34.1
wipe out clean 79.18
excise 255.10
kill 308.14
exterminate 395.14
obliterate 395.16
bankrupt 625.8
declare a moratorium 625.9
annihilate 762.7
end 820.5
wipe up the floor with 604.11
wire
n cord 271.2
telegram 347.14
automobile racing 756.1
end 820.1
electrical device 1032.21
v telegraph 347.20
bind 800.9
electrify 1032.26
wired high 87.24
assured 970.20
wireless
n communications 347.3
radiophone 347.5
radio 1034.1
radio receiver 1034.3
v broadcast 1034.25
adj communicational 347.21
radio 1034.28
wire-puller
schemer 381.7
strategist 415.7
politician 609.30
politics 610.6
influence 894.6
wire service
telegraph 347.2
news 552.1
the press 555.3
wiretap
n surveillance 938.9
v listen 48.10
wiry able-bodied 15.16
threadlike 271.7
tough 1049.4
wisdom
mental grasp 920.1
ripe wisdom 920.5
understanding 928.3
maxim 974.1
expedience 995.1
wisdom tooth 2.8
wise
n aspect 33.3
manner 384.1
adj sage 920.17
learned 928.21
ungullible 956.5
wisecrack
n witticism 489.7
v joke 489.13
wise guy
impudent person 142.6
wiseacre 921.6
wise man
intelligence 920.9
wise woman 921.1
intellectual 929.1
wise to 928.16
wise up 551.9
wish
n desire 100.1
will 323.1
request 440.1
v desire 100.14
request 440.9
wishbone
fowl part 10.23
fork 171.4
wish-bringer 691.6
wishful 100.23
wishful thinking
defense mechanism 92.23
wistfulness 100.4
deception 356.1
credulity 954.1
idealism 986.7
wishing well 691.6
wishy-washy
tasteless 16.17
insipid 65.2
inconstant 854.7
mediocre 1005.7
wisp runt 258.4
bunch 770.7
luminescence 1025.13
wispy frail 16.14
thin 270.16
wistful
wishful 100.23
melancholy 112.23
regretful 113.8
cognitive 931.21
wit
skill 413.1
cunning 415.1
pleasantry 489.1
humor 489.1
humorist 489.12
intelligence 920.1
witch
n bitch 110.12
frightener 127.9
old woman 304.3
hag 593.7
violent person 671.9
sorceress 690.8
eyesore 1015.4
v fascinate 377.7
bewitch 691.9
adj sorcerous 690.14
witchcraft 690.1
witch-hunt
persecution 389.3
investigation 938.4
the witching hour 315.6
with
adv in spite of 338.9
prep at 159.27
plus 253.12
by means of 384.13
in cooperation with 450.8
in company with 769.12
in agreement with 788.12
among 797.17
with abandon 430.32
with a grain of salt
unbelievingly 955.13
conditionally 959.11
with all haste
swiftly 174.17
hastily 401.12
with a straight face
unfeelingly 94.14
solemnly 111.4
with authority 417.18
with a vengeance
powerfully 18.15
extremely 247.22
violently 671.25
utterly 794.16
with bated breath
adj in suspense 130.12
adv in an undertone 52.22
fearfully 127.32
expectantly 130.15
humbly 137.16
secretly 345.17
with care
carefully 339.15
cautiously 494.12
with child 78.18
with difficulty
disadvantageously 996.9
difficultly 1013.28
with dignity
solemnly 111.4
dignifiedly 136.14
with dispatch
quickly 330.26
hastily 401.12
withdraw
n recant 363.8
v use 87.22
retreat 163.6
recede 168.2
retract 168.3
quit 188.9
extract 192.10
subtract 255.9
dissent 333.4
hesitate 362.7
abandon 370.5
repeal 445.2
separate 802.8
stand alone 872.6
withdrawal
substance abuse 87.1
defense mechanism 92.23
unfeeling 94.1

retreat 163.2
recession 168.1
departure 188.1
extraction 192.1
dissent 333.1
reticence 344.3
recantation 363.3
abandonment 370.1
repeal 445.1
resignation 448.1
seclusion 584.1
elimination 773.2
separation 802.1
aloneness 872.2
incuriosity 982.1
with ease 121.14
wither
fail 85.48
decrease 252.6
shrink 260.9
age 303.10
languish 393.18
dry 1066.6
with feeling 93.25
with finesse
skillfully 413.31
discriminatingly 944.9
with flying colors 501.25
with gusto
eagerly 101.13
gaily 109.18
actively 330.25
with haste 401.12
withhold
keep secret 345.7
reserve 386.12
restrain 428.7
deny 442.4
hold back 484.6
abstain 668.7
withholding 442.1
within
adv in 207.10
prep in 207.13
within easy reach 633.7
within range 223.20
within reach
adj present 221.12
cheap 633.7
accessible 966.8
adv near 223.20
within reason
moderately 670.17
reasonably 935.24
with intent 380.10
with interest 983.21
within the realm of possibility 966.6
with it
adj knowledgeable 928.17
adv in step 788.11
with love 104.32
with malice aforethought
malevolently 144.30
intentionally 380.10
with might and main
powerfully 18.15
by force 18.17
laboriously 725.19
with no strings attached
extremely 247.22
completely 794.14
with no time to spare 845.12
with one foot in the grave
stricken in years 303.18
dying 307.33
with one hand tied behind one's back 1014.16
with one voice
adj unanimous 332.15
adv unanimously 332.17
cooperatively 450.6
in step 788.11
simultaneously 836.7
concurrently 899.5
with open arms
eagerly 101.13
willingly 324.8
hospitably 585.13
amicably 587.22
without
adv externally 206.10
prep absent 222.19
off 255.14
excluding 773.10
minus 992.17
conj unless 959.16
without a break 812.10
without a clue 971.24
without a stitch 6.14
without charge
adj costless 634.5
adv gratuitously 634.6
without contradiction 332.17
without delay
at once 830.8
promptly 845.15
without difficulty 1014.16
without distinction
adj identical 778.7
indistinguishable 945.6
adv justly 649.11
equally 790.11
without doubt
positively 247.19
believingly 953.28
unquestionably 970.25
without end
adj long 267.7
infinite 823.3
perpetual 829.7
innumerable 884.10
adv infinitely 823.4
perpetually 829.10
without equal 249.15
without exception
adj comprehensive 772.7
unqualified 960.2
adv regularly 781.8
always 829.11
universally 864.18
without fail 970.26
without foundation
unsubstantiated 764.8
baseless 936.13
without further ado
suddenly 830.9
promptly 845.15
without hesitation 324.9
without mercy 146.3
without merit 598.21
without question
willingly 324.8
believingly 953.28
unquestionably 970.25
truly 973.18
without rhyme or reason
adj meaningless 520.6
illogical 936.11
adv capriciously 364.7
without shame 645.16
without warning
adj unexpected 131.10
adv unexpectedly 131.14
suddenly 830.9
with permission 443.19
with pleasure 95.19
with pride 136.13
with purpose 380.10
with regard to 775.13
with relish
eagerly 101.13
willingly 324.8
with respect 443.20
with respect to 775.13
withstand oppose 451.3
resist 453.2
defend 453.3
with taste 496.11
with the exception of
prep off 255.14
excluding 773.10
with the understanding 959.12
with tongue in cheek 489.19
witless
unintelligent 922.13
foolish 923.8
unwise 923.10
insane 926.26
unaware 930.13
scatterbrained 985.16
witness
n certificate 549.6
informant 551.5
litigant 598.11
function of Holy Ghost 677.15
spectator 918.1
examinee 938.19
testimony 957.2
eyewitness 957.6
v see 27.12
attend 221.8
depose 334.6
be pious 692.6
spectate 918.5
testify 957.9
witness stand 595.6
wits 919.2
witticism
pleasantry 489.7
maxim 974.1
witty humorous 488.4
amusing 489.15
wizard
n master 413.13
sorcerer 690.5
adj excellent 999.13
wizened dwarf 258.13
shrunk 260.13
haggard 270.20
stricken in years 303.18
wasted 393.35
dried 1066.9
wobble
n irregularity 851.1
shake 917.3
v way of walking 177.28
vacillate 362.8
change 854.5
oscillate 916.10
shake 917.11
woe wretchedness 96.6
affliction 96.8
distressfulness 98.5
sorrow 112.10
evil 1000.3
bane 1001.1
wolf
n discord 61.1
fox 311.20
philanderer 562.12
libertine 665.10
violent person 671.9
v gobble 8.23
gluttonize 672.4
wolf at the door 619.2
wolverine 311.23
woman
womankind 77.3
Eve 77.5
adult 304.1
person 312.5
wife 563.8
mistress 665.17
womanizer 665.10
woman of means 618.7
woman of substance 618.7
woman of the world 578.7
womb genitals 2.13
vital force 886.7
women's liberation
liberation 431.1
women's rights 642.4
wonder
n awe 122.1
wonderment 122.1
marvel 122.2
miracle 870.8
first-rater 999.6
v marvel 122.5
not know 930.11
be uncertain 971.9
wonder drug 86.4
wonderful
wondrous 122.10
remarkable 247.10
extraordinary 870.14
superb 999.15
wondrous
adj wonderful 122.10
miraculous 870.16
adv intensely 247.20
wont
n custom 373.1
habit 373.3
v accustom 373.9
be used to 373.11
adj accustomed 373.15
won ton 10.33
woo lure 377.5
solicit 440.14
court 562.21

wood
woodland 310.13
gambler 759.21
firewood 1021.3
lumber 1054.3
wood carving 349.6
woodchuck 311.23
woodcut
scenery 704.20
print 713.5
wooded 310.40
wooden dumb 117.6
inexpressive 522.20
dull 922.16
woodenheaded 922.17
woodland
n the country 233.1
land 234.1
wood 310.13
adj hinterland 233.9
sylvan 310.40
woods hinterland 233.2
woodland 310.13
woodwind 711.8
woodwind
orchestra 710.12
wood instrument 711.8
woodwork 712.3
wool hair 3.2
whiteness 37.2
softness 1047.4
woolens 5.22
woolly hairy 3.24
fluffy 1047.14
woozy 985.14
word
n affirmation 334.1
oath 334.4
account 349.3
command 420.1
promise 436.1
sign 518.6
utterance 524.2
remark 524.3
term 526.1
free form 526.1
information 551.1
news 552.1
message 552.4
testimony 957.2
maxim 974.1
v say 524.22
phrase 532.4
worded 532.5
word for word 973.21
word game 743.9
wordless tacit 51.11
mute 51.12
taciturn 344.9
unexpressed 519.9
word of advice 422.2
the Word of God 683.2
word of honor 436.1
word of mouth 524.2
word origin 526.15
word processor 1042.12
words quarrel 456.5
contention 457.1
speech 524.1
vocabulary 526.13
diction 532.1
wordsmith
writer 547.15
author 718.4
word to the wise
warning 399.1
piece of advice 422.2
tip-off 551.3
wordy 538.12
work
n action 328.1
act 328.3
function 387.5
undertaking 404.1
fortification 460.4
writing 547.10
literature 547.12
book 554.1
stage show 704.4
piece 708.5
work of art 712.10
literature 718.1
occupation 724.1
task 724.2
vocation 724.6
labor 725.4
operation 889.1
product 893.1
barrier 1012.5
v bubble 320.4
act 328.4
be busy 330.10
use 387.10
accomplish 407.4
toil 724.12
labor 725.12
task 725.16
mix 797.10
cause 886.10
operate 889.5
be operative 889.7
perform 892.11
influence 894.7
solve 940.2
suffice 991.4
expedite one's affair 995.3
chemicalize 1060.8
cultivate 1069.17
workable operable 889.10
solvable 940.3
possible 966.7
practical 995.6
workaday
habitual 373.14
simple 499.6
occupied 724.15
work against 900.6
workaholic 330.8
workbench
workplace 739.1
table 901.15
workbook
record book 549.11
textbook 554.10
work both sides of the street 354.23
worked up
affected 93.23
excited 105.20
angry 152.28
worker ant 311.34
bee 311.35
employee 577.3
workman 607.9
agent 726.1
doer 726.1
laborer 726.2
cheater 759.22
work for assist 449.18
serve 577.13
aid 724.12
workhorse
hunter 311.13
drudge 726.3
working class
n lower class 607.7
adj upper-class 607.10
working girl
worker 607.9
employee 726.2
working plan 381.1
workings pit 284.4
action 328.1
operation 889.1
mechanism 1040.4
mine 1058.6
workings of the mind 931.1
working stiff
worker 607.9
laborer 726.2
working together 450.1
working toward 896.5
work like a dog 725.13
workload 725.4
workmanlike
skillful 413.22
tolerable 999.20
workmanship
skill 413.1
production 892.2
workmen's compensation
welfarism 611.7
recompense 624.3
work of art 712.10
work on urge 375.14
exploit 387.16
importune 440.12
impose on 643.7
operate on 889.6
exert influence 894.9
workout
exercise 725.6
tryout 942.3
work over
revise 392.12
punish 604.15
beat 902.17
workplace
library 197.6
worksite 739.1
workroom
library 197.6
workplace 739.1
works viscera 2.16
benevolences 143.6
insides 207.4
act 328.3
writing 547.12
literature 718.1
plant 739.3
mechanism 1040.4
the works 792.4
workshop 739.1
work stoppage
strike 727.5
stop 857.2
work up excite 105.12
provoke 152.24
incite 375.17
plan 381.8
agitate 917.10
work well
succeed 409.7
go easily 1014.10
world
n quantity 247.3
plot 722.4
outlook 978.2
universe 1072.1
v meet one's Maker 307.21
the world
affairs 831.4
Earth 1072.10
World Almanac 832.7
World Bank 729.14
world champion 413.15
world-class
chief 249.14
distinguished 662.16
paramount 997.24
superior 999.14
worldly
experienced 413.28
unsacred 686.3
secularist 695.16
realistic 987.6
material 1052.10
world politics 609.5
world power
country 232.1
supremacy 249.3
World Series 745.1
world-traveler 178.1
worm
n earthworm 311.39
beast 660.6
blight 1001.2
v go slow 175.6
creep 177.26
convolve 281.4
worm's-eye view
viewpoint 27.7
appearance 33.6
worn weakened 16.18
tired 21.7
fatigued 21.9
trite 117.9
reduced 252.10
impaired 393.31
disintegrative 806.5
stale 842.14
secondhand 842.18
worn away
used up 388.5
lost 473.7
worry
n annoyance 96.2
worriment 126.2
trouble 1013.3
v annoy 96.13
distress 96.16
vex 98.15
make anxious 126.5

feel anxious 126.6
trouble 1013.13
worrywart
pessimist 125.7
worrier 126.3
worse aggravated 119.4
impaired 393.27
changed 852.10
the worse for wear
stricken in years 303.18
worn 393.31
dilapidated 393.33
worsen irritate 96.14
aggravate 119.2
get worse 119.3
impair 393.9
deteriorate 393.16
be changed 852.6
change 852.7
worship
n love 104.1
respect 155.1
piety 692.1
reverence 696.1
worshiping 696.1
v cherish 104.21
respect 155.4
adore 696.11
Worship 648.2
worst
v best 249.7
defeat 412.6
adj terrible 1000.9
worst-case
depressing 112.30
hopeless 125.12
worth
n benefit 387.4
assets 471.7
value 630.2
preciousness 632.2
funds 728.14
importance 997.1
goodness 999.1
adj possessing 469.9
priced 630.14
worthless
valueless 391.11
disadvantageous 996.6
paltry 998.21
unworthy 998.22
terrible 1000.9
worthwhile
valuable 387.22
gainful 472.16
expedient 995.5
worthy
n good person 659.1
celebrity 662.9
personage 997.8
adj dignified 136.12
eligible 371.24
competent 413.24
praiseworthy 509.20
precious 632.10
warranted 639.9
honest 644.13
reputable 662.15
would-be
presumptuous 141.10
nominal 527.15
wound
n trauma 85.38
displease 96.5
v pain 26.7
hurt 96.17
offend 152.21
injure 393.13
work evil 1000.6
wound up
completed 407.11
ended 820.8
past 837.7
woven webbed 170.12
loomed 740.7
wow
n audio distortion 50.13
success 409.4
joke 489.6
first-rate 999.7
v delight 95.11
amuse 743.21
wracked 93.23
wraith phantom 976.4
specter 988.1
double 988.3
wrangle
n quarrel 456.5
v quarrel 456.11
argue 935.16
drive 1070.8
wrangler
oppositionist 452.3
combatant 461.1
student 572.7
arguer 935.12
herder 1070.3
wrap
n dishabille 5.20
wrapper 295.18
v clothe 5.39
surround 209.6
enclose 212.5
package 212.9
fold 291.5
enwrap 295.20
bundle 770.20
bind 800.9
end 820.5
wrapped up
completed 407.11
assembled 770.21
wrapped up in
fond of 104.30
involved in 898.5
engrossed 983.17
wrapper
dishabille 5.20
wrapping 295.18
bookbinding 554.14
wrath anger 152.5
revenge 507.1
wrath of God
revenge 507.1
deserts 639.3
wreak havoc
destroy 395.10
rage 671.11
wreath circle 280.2
bouquet 310.25
trophy 646.3
heraldry 647.2
braid 740.2
wreck
n nervousness 128.5
car 179.10
ruins 393.8
destruction 395.1
debacle 395.4
misfortune 1011.2
v disable 19.9
shipwreck 182.42
spoil 393.10
destroy 395.10
demolish 395.17
rage 671.11
wreckage 395.5
wrench
n pang 26.2
trauma 85.38
pain 96.5
extortion 192.6
distortion 265.1
jerk 905.3
tool 1040.1
v pain 26.7
distort 265.5
misinterpret 342.2
misrepresent 350.3
injure 393.13
wrest 480.22
jerk 905.5
wrest
n extortion 192.6
distortion 265.1
v extort 192.15
distort 265.5
wring 480.22
wrestle
n struggle 725.3
v contend 457.13
struggle 725.11
wrestler 461.3
wrestling match 457.10
wretch sufferer 96.11
miserable person 660.2
wretched squalid 80.25
miserable 96.26
distressing 98.20
unhappy 112.21
base 661.12
paltry 998.21
terrible 1000.9
adverse 1011.13
the wretched of the earth
the underprivileged 606.4
unfortunate 1011.7
wriggle
n wiggle 917.7
v be excited 105.18
wiggle 917.14
wring
n extortion 192.6
distortion 265.1
v pain 26.7
torture 96.18
extraction 192.16
distort 265.5
convolve 281.4
wrest 480.22
wringer 192.9
wring one's hands 115.11
wrinkle
n extra 254.4
furrow 290.1
corrugation 291.3
fad 578.5
v contract 260.7
ruffle 288.5
furrow 290.3
corrugate 291.6
age 303.10
languish 393.18
wrist member 2.7
joint 800.4
arm 906.5
wristband circle 280.3
jewel 498.6
writ document 549.5
summons 598.2
write represent 349.8
describe 349.9
pen 547.19
author 547.21
record 549.15
correspond 553.10
compose 708.46
create 718.6
produce 892.8
write-in vote 371.6
write off forget 148.5
excise 255.10
give up 370.7
discard 390.7
repeal 445.2
declare a moratorium 625.9
keep accounts 628.8
discount 631.2
write-off excision 255.3
repeal 445.1
moratorium 625.2
tax 630.9
discount 631.1
writer penman 547.13
recorder 547.15
correspondent 553.8
discourser 556.3
scribbler 718.3
author 718.4
narrator 722.5
writer's cramp 547.2
writhe
n wiggle 917.7
v pain 26.8
suffer 96.19
be excited 105.18
distort 265.5
wiggle 917.14
writing
representation 349.1
letter 546.1
composition 547.2
scrivening 547.1
authorship 547.2
document 549.5
book 554.1
elementary education 568.5
literature 718.2
the written word 547.10
wrong
impropriety 638.1
injustice 650.1

crime 650.4
iniquity 654.3
misdeed 655.2
offense 674.4
error 975.1
evil 1000.3
v do one an injustice 650.7
work evil 1000.6
adj wrongful 638.3
unjust 650.9
wicked 654.16
wrongdoing 655.5
untimely 844.6
erroneous 975.16
mistaken 975.18
inexpedient 996.5
bad 1000.7
adv wrongly 638.4
erroneously 975.20
badly 1000.13
wrongheaded
perverse 361.11
stupid 922.15
wrong number 660.4
wrought 407.10
wrung pained 26.9
tortured 96.25
wry 204.14
wunderkind 413.12
X cross 170.4
signature 527.10
motion pictures 706.1
ten 882.6
X chromosome
chromosome 305.8
heredity 560.6
xenophobia
exclusiveness 773.3
discrimination 980.4
Xerox
n print 714.5
copy 785.5
v copy 785.8
x marks the spot 159.29
X-rated 665.29
X ray diagnosis 91.9
shadowgraph 714.6
ray 1025.5
yacht
n sailboat 180.3
v navigate 182.13
yachtsman 183.1
yahoo vulgarian 497.6
stupid person 924.2
yak
n cattle 311.6
chatter 540.3
v speak 524.20
chatter 540.5
yakkety-yak
n speech 524.1
chatter 540.3
v speak 524.20
chatter 540.5
yank
n pulling 905.3
v jerk 905.5
Yank 461.7
Yankee
regional 227.11
dialect 523.7
revolutionist 860.3
yard
n enclosed place 212.3
money 728.7
plant 739.3
thousand 882.10
supporter 901.2
v enclose 212.5
yardage
length 267.1
game 746.3
yardarm 901.2
yardstick 300.2
yarn cord 271.2
lie 354.11
joke 489.6
tale 719.3
story 722.3
yaw
n deviation 164.1
v drift off course 182.29
change course 182.30
pitch 182.55
maneuver 184.40
yawn
n opening 292.1
gaping 292.2
v gape 292.16
Y chromosome
chromosome 305.8
heredity 560.6
yea
n affirmative 332.2
vote 371.6
consent 441.1
approval 509.1
side 935.14
adv chiefly 249.17
thus 766.10
interj yes 332.18
year class 572.11
moment 824.2
yearbook report 549.7
record book 549.11
periodical 555.1
year in year out
regularly 781.8
continuously 812.10
for a long time 827.14
constantly 847.7
repeatedly 849.16
yearling infant 302.9
cattle 311.6
jockey 757.2
yeast 852.5
yell
n cry 59.1
cheer 116.2
v cry 59.6
wail 115.13
cheer 116.6
speak 524.25
yellow
n color 43.1
LSD 87.10
egg 305.15
v turn yellow 43.3
adj jaundiced 43.4
sensational 105.32
jealous 153.5
cowardly 491.10
yellow-belly 491.5
yellow jacket 311.35
yellow journalism 93.9
Yellow Pages 574.10
yelp
n cry 59.1
v cry 59.6
wail 60.2
complain 115.15
speak 524.25
yen yearning 100.5
tendency 896.1
yeoman hand 183.6
retainer 577.1
attendant 577.5
bodyguard 1008.14
agriculturist 1069.5
yes
n affirmative 332.2
vote 371.6
side 935.14
v assent 332.8
adv consentingly 441.5
interj yea 332.18
yes-man flatterer 138.4
inferior 250.2
assenter 332.6
follower 616.8
conformist 867.2
yesterday
n the past 837.1
adv formerly 837.13
yet
additionally 253.11
notwithstanding 338.8
previously 834.6
until now 838.4
yield
n output 472.5
receipts 627.1
dividend 738.7
production 893.2
v weaken 16.9
acknowledge 332.11
hesitate 362.7
give up 370.7
provide 385.7
cede 433.7
compromise 468.2
relinquish 475.3
allow 478.12
bring in 627.4
conform 867.3
bear 892.13
soften 1047.7
stretch 1048.5
yield the floor 613.10
yo! hark! 48.16
greeting 585.16
hey! 983.23
yodel
n vocal music 708.13
v sing 708.38
yodeler 710.13
yoga occultism 689.1
exercise 725.6
yogi ascetic 667.2
occultist 689.11
clergy 699.13
yogurt 67.2
yoke
n shackle 428.4
two 873.2
v put together 800.5
hitch up 800.10
combine 805.3
league 805.4
double 873.5
tend 1070.7
yokel
n bungler 414.8
simple soul 416.3
vulgarian 497.6
peasant 606.6
oaf 924.5
adj not urbane 233.8
yolk 305.15
Yom Kippur
fast day 515.3
penance 658.3
yonder
adj thither 261.10
adv yon 261.13
yore 837.2
you 865.5
young
n young people 302.2
adj youngling 301.9
new 841.7
youngster
young person 302.1
adolescent 302.1
yourself 865.5
yours truly 865.5
youth early years 301.1
youthhead 301.1
youngster 302.1
young people 302.2
boy 302.5
origin 818.4
memory 837.4
yowl
n cry 59.1
lament 115.3
v cry 59.6
yelp 60.2
wail 115.13
yo-yo 924.3
Y-shaped forked 171.10
angular 278.6
yucca 285.5
yuck 116.4
yucky 99.7
the Yukon 1023.4
yummy tasty 63.8
delightful 97.8
yuppie 867.2
zany humorist 489.12
buffoon 707.10
fool 924.1
zap kill 308.14
do for 395.11
annihilate 762.7
end 820.5
zeal vim 17.2
passion 93.2
ardor 101.2
anxiety 126.1
willingness 324.1
turbulence 671.2
zealousness 692.3

cause 886.9
interest 983.2
zealot
enthusiast 101.4
believer 692.4
oddity 870.4
fanatic 926.18
zebra variegation 47.6
crossing 170.2
game 746.3
Zen Buddhism 675.14
zenith summit 198.2
supremacy 249.3
height 272.2
zephyr breeze 318.5
softness 1047.4
zeppelin 181.11
zero
roulette 759.12
nothing 762.2
thing of naught 764.2
temperature 1019.3
zero hour
time of attack 459.13
crucial moment 843.5
zero in 798.4
zero option
dilemma 371.3
restriction 428.3
choicelessness 963.6
zero-sum
compensating 338.6
equal 790.7
neutralizing 900.9
zest
animation 17.4
savor 63.2
zestfulness 68.2
pleasure 95.1
eagerness 101.1
gaiety 109.4
Zeus 316.6
zigzag
n deviation 164.1
zig 204.8
angle 278.2
avoidance 368.1
v deflect 164.5
zig 204.12
angle 278.5
alternate 916.13
adj deviative 164.7
crooked 204.20
angular 278.6
zilch 762.3
zip
n energy 17.3
sibilation 57.1
zest 68.2
gaiety 109.4
address 553.9
nothing 762.3
v sibilate 57.2
speed 174.9
zip code 553.9
zipper
close 293.6
hook 800.8
ziti 10.33
zodiac
circle 280.3
orbit 1072.16
astrology 1072.20
zombie 988.1
zone
n region 231.1
climate 231.3
circle 280.3
layer 296.1
address 553.9
middle 819.1
orbit 1072.16
v encircle 209.7
apportion 802.18
zoning law 444.1
zoo menagerie 228.19
collection 770.11
zoological
animal 311.40
biological 1068.4
zoologist 1068.2
zoom
n maneuvers 184.13
v speed 174.8
ascend 184.39
take off 193.10

[illegible]
[illegible]
zealot
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
Zen Buddhism 675.14
zenith [illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
zephyr [illegible]
[illegible]
zeppelin [illegible]
zero
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
zero hour
time of attack [illegible]

[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]

[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]

[illegible] 1022.20
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
zoom
[illegible]
speed [illegible]
ascend [illegible]
take off [illegible]

(continued from front flap)

⁂ A pinpoint reference system that directs the user quickly from a comprehensive index to the numbered category of the right word. Thousands of cross-references throughout lead to other helpful categories.

⁂ Hundreds of supplemental word lists that supply the names of things which have no synonyms (measurements, wines, weapons, animals, state mottoes, and more) as well as hundreds of quotations that amplify the meanings of selected words.

Generations of students, writers, editors, and speakers have made Roget's the most popular word reference book next to the dictionary. Continuing a legacy that dates back more than 150 years, *Roget's International Thesaurus*® is an indispensable work for everyone who wants to use the English language with clarity and precision.

BARBARA ANN KIPFER, PH.D., is a lexicographer who has authored or compiled more than twenty books, including the *Dictionary of American Slang* (with Robert L. Chapman), *The Order of Things, Writer's Digest Flip Dictionary*, and the bestselling *14,000 Things to Be Happy About*. She received her doctorate in linguistics from England's University of Exeter.

ROBERT L. CHAPMAN, PH.D., is the editor of the fourth and fifth editions of *Roget's International Thesaurus*. He is the co-editor of the *Dictionary of American Slang* and supervising editor of *Funk & Wagnalls Standard College Dictionary*.

Jacket design © 2001 by Roberto de Vicq de Cumptich

HarperResource
An Imprint of HarperCollins*Publishers*
www.harpercollins.com

An essential for every reference shelf

Roget's
INTERNATIONAL
THESAURUS®

6

REVISED & UPDATED

SIXTH EDITION

Alphabetical thesauruses give too much space to definition, repetition, and cross-referencing. Compare the superior coverage of *Roget's International Thesaurus*® to other thesauruses available:

ROGET'S INTERNATIONAL THESAURUS®

ADJS 14 **wealthy, rich, affluent, affluential, moneyed** *or* **monied**, in funds *or* cash, **well-to-do**, well-to-do in the world, **well-off, well-situated, prosperous,** comfortable, provided for, well provided for, fat, **flush,** flush with *or* of money, abounding in riches, worth a great deal, in clover, frightfully rich, rich as Croesus; independent, independently rich, independently wealthy; **luxurious** 501.21; **opulent** 990.7; privileged, born with a silver spoon in one's mouth; high-income, upper-income, well-paid

MERRIAM WEBSTER'S COLLEGIATE® THESAURUS

wealthy adj *syn* RICH 1, affluent, moneyed‖oofy, opulent *con* impoverished, penniless, poor. *ant* indigent

RANDOM HOUSE WEBSTER'S COLLEGE THESAURUS

wealthy adj. *The debutante comes from a very wealthy family:* rich, prosperous, affluent, moneyed, well-to-do, well-off, well-heeled, well-fixed, flush, loaded.

ROGET'S II THE NEW THESAURUS, THIRD EDITION

wealthy *adjective* Possessing a large amount of money, land, or other material possessions: affluent, flush, moneyed, rich. *Slang:* loaded. *Idioms:* having money to burn, in the money, made of money, rolling in money. *See* RICH.

ISBN 0-06-018575-9
52195
9 780060 185756

CAMBRIDGE

New Edition

Advanced Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book
for advanced learners of English

Third Edition

with answers and CD-ROM

CD-ROM

Martin Hewings

Advanced Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book
for advanced learners of English

Third Edition

with answers and CD-ROM

Martin Hewings

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town,
Singapore, São Paulo, Delhi, Mexico City

Cambridge University Press
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9781107699892

Third edition © Cambridge University Press, 1999, 2013

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1999
Second edition 2005
Third edition first published 2013

Printed in Italy by L.E.G.O. S.p.A.

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-1-107-69989-2 Paperback with answers and CD-ROM for Windows XP, Vista or 7
and Mac OSX 10.6, 10.7
ISBN 978-1-107-69738-6 Paperback with answers
ISBN 978-1-107-61378-2 Paperback without answers

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

Thanks vii
To the student viii
To the teacher ix

Tenses
1 Present continuous and present simple 1
2 Present continuous and present simple 2
3 Past simple and present perfect
4 Past continuous and past simple
5 Past perfect and past simple
6 Present perfect continuous and present perfect
7 Past perfect continuous, past perfect and past continuous
8 Present and past time: review

The future
9 **Will** and **be going to**
10 Present simple and present continuous for the future
11 Future continuous and future perfect (continuous)
12 **Be to** + infinitive; **be about to** + infinitive
13 Other ways of talking about the future
14 The future seen from the past

Modals and semi-modals
15 **Can**, **could**, **be able to** and **be allowed to**
16 **Will**, **would** and **used to**
17 **May** and **might**
18 **Must** and **have (got) to**
19 **Need(n't)**, **don't need to** and **don't have to**
20 **Should**, **ought to** and **had better**

Linking verbs, passives, questions
21 Linking verbs: **be**, **appear**, **seem**; **become**, **get**, etc.
22 Forming passive sentences 1
23 Forming passive sentences 2: verb + **-ing** or **to-infinitive**
24 Using passives
25 Reporting with passives; **It is said that ...**
26 **Wh-questions** with **who**, **whom**, **which**, **how** and **whose**
27 Negative questions; echo questions; questions with **that-clauses**

Verb complementation: what follows verbs
28 Verbs, objects and complements
29 Verb + two objects
30 Verb + **-ing** forms and infinitives 1
31 Verb + **-ing** forms and infinitives 2

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the **Study planner** on page 210.

Reporting

32 Reporting people's words and thoughts
33 Reporting statements: **that-clauses**
34 Verb + **wh-clause**
35 Tense choice in reporting
36 Reporting offers, suggestions, orders, intentions, etc.
37 Modal verbs in reporting
38 Reporting what people say using nouns and adjectives
39 **Should** in **that-clauses**; the present subjunctive

Nouns

40 Agreement between subject and verb 1
41 Agreement between subject and verb 2
42 Agreement between subject and verb 3
43 Compound nouns and noun phrases

Articles, determiners and quantifiers

44 **A / an** and **one**
45 **A / an**, **the** and **zero article** 1
46 **A / an**, **the** and **zero article** 2
47 **A / an**, **the** and **zero article** 3
48 **Some** and **any**
49 **No**, **none (of)** and **not any**
50 **Much (of)**, **many (of)**, **a lot of**, **lots (of)**, etc.
51 **All (of)**, **whole**, **every**, **each**
52 **Few**, **little**, **less**, **fewer**

Relative clauses and other types of clause

53 Relative pronouns
54 Other relative words: **whose**, **when**, **whereby**, etc.
55 Prepositions in relative clauses
56 Other ways of adding information to noun phrases 1: additional noun phrases, etc.
57 Other ways of adding information to noun phrases 2: prepositional phrases, etc.
58 Participle clauses with adverbial meaning 1
59 Participle clauses with adverbial meaning 2

Pronouns, substitution and leaving out words

60 Reflexive pronouns: **herself**, **himself**, **themselves**, etc.
61 **One** and **ones**
62 **So** and **not** as substitutes for clauses, etc.
63 **Do so**; **such**
64 More on leaving out words after auxiliary verbs
65 Leaving out **to-infinitives**

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the **Study planner** on page 210.

Adjectives and adverbs

66 Position of adjectives
67 Gradable and non-gradable adjectives 1
68 Gradable and non-gradable adjectives 2
69 Participle adjectives and compound adjectives
70 Adjectives + **to-infinitive**, **-ing**, **that-clause**, **wh-clause**
71 Adjectives and adverbs
72 Adjectives and adverbs: comparative and superlative forms
73 Comparative phrases and clauses
74 Position of adverbs 1
75 Position of adverbs 2
76 Adverbs of place, direction, indefinite frequency, and time
77 Degree adverbs and focus adverbs
78 Comment adverbs and viewpoint adverbs

Adverbial clauses and conjunctions

79 Adverbial clauses of time
80 Giving reasons: **as**, **because**, etc.; **for** and **with**
81 Purposes and results: **in order to**, **so as to**, etc.
82 Contrasts: **although** and **though**; **even though / if**; **while**, **whilst** and **whereas**
83 **If** 1
84 **If** 2
85 **If I were you ...**; **imagine he were to win**
86 **If ... not** and **unless**; **if** and **whether**; etc.
87 Connecting ideas in a sentence and between sentences

Prepositions

88 Prepositions of position and movement
89 **Between** and **among**
90 Prepositions of time
91 Talking about exceptions
92 Prepositions after verbs
93 Prepositions after nouns
94 Two- and three-word verbs: word order

Organising information

95 **There is**, **there was**, etc.
96 **It** 1
97 **It** 2
98 Focusing: **it-clauses** and **what-clauses**
99 Inversion 1
100 Inversion 2

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the **Study planner** on page 210.

Appendix 1 Irregular verbs 202
Appendix 2 Passive verb forms 204

Glossary 205

Study planner 210

Grammar reminder 222

Additional exercises 240

Key to Exercises 251
Key to Study planner 277
Key to Additional exercises 278

Index of grammatical items 281
Index of lexical items 287

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the **Study planner** on page 210.

Thanks

I would like to thank all those who worked with me on the first two editions of *Advanced Grammar in Use*, in particular Jeanne McCarten and Alison Sharpe for their encouragement. Thanks also to my former colleagues and students in the English for International Students Unit at the University of Birmingham for their help and interest.

For this third edition I am grateful to Colin McIntosh, Nora McDonald, Annabel Marriott, Sabina Sahni, Kevin Doherty, Andy George, Claire Cole and Janet Weller. Claire and Janet in particular have given me tremendous support in preparing the book and the accompanying CDROM.

Thanks to Sophie Joyce, Sandy Nichols, Katie Mac, Ian Mitchell and David Whamond for the illustrations and to Kamae Design for their work on the finished product. I would also like to thank Cambridge University Press for allowing me access to the Cambridge International Corpus.

Many students and teachers sent me comments on the 2nd edition, and these have been very helpful in writing this new edition. Thank you all for taking the trouble to contact me.

Finally, my thanks, as ever, to Suzanne, David and Ann.

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of photographs and are grateful for the permissions granted.

p. 6: WithGod/Shutterstock; p. 11: Comstock Images/Thinkstock; p. 17: Thinkstock; p. 33: Image Source/Glowimages; p. 39: Thinkstock; p. 109: Thinkstock; p. 114: Bildagentur RM/Glowimages.

To the student

Who the book is for

Advanced Grammar in Use is for advanced students of English. It was written mainly as a self-study book, but might also be used in class with a teacher.

How the book is organised

There are 100 units in the book, each looking at a particular area of grammar. Some sections within each unit focus on the particular use of a grammatical pattern, such as *will be* + *-ing* (as in *will be travelling*); others explore grammatical contrasts, such as whether to use *would* or *used to* in reporting past events, or when we use *except* or *except for*. The 100 units are grouped under a number of headings such as *Tenses* and *The future*, and you can find details of this in the *Contents*. Each unit consists of two pages. On the left-hand page are explanations and examples; on the right-hand page are practice exercises. The letters next to each exercise show you which section(s) of the left-hand page you need to understand to do that exercise.

At the back of the book you will find a number of further sections.

- *Appendices* (pages 202 and 204) Two appendices provide further information about irregular verbs and passive verb forms.
- *Glossary* (page 205) Although terms to describe grammar have been kept to a minimum, some have been included, and you can find explanations of these terms in the *Glossary*.
- *Study planner* (page 210) You can use the *Study planner* to help you decide which units you should study, or which parts of the *Grammar reminder* you should read first.
- *Grammar reminder* (page 222) This presents examples and explanations of areas of grammar that you are likely to have studied already at earlier stages of learning English. References on the left-hand page of each unit point you to the sections of the *Grammar reminder* relevant to that unit. Read these sections to refresh your understanding before you start work on the more advanced grammar points in the unit.
- *Additional exercises* (page 240) If you want further practice of grammar points, follow the references at the bottom of the right-hand page of a unit. These will tell you which of the *Additional exercises* to do next.
- *Keys* (pages 251, 277 and 278) You can check your answers to the practice exercises, *Study planner* and *Additional exercises* in the keys. You will also find comments on some of the answers.
- *Indexes* (pages 281 and 287) Use the *Indexes* to help you find the grammar or vocabulary you need.

How to use the book

It is not necessary to work through the units in order. If you know which grammar points you have difficulty with, go straight to the units that deal with them, using the *Contents* or *Indexes* to help you find the relevant unit. When you have found a unit to study, read through any related material in the *Grammar reminder* before you begin.

You can use the units in a number of ways. You might study the explanations and examples first, do the exercises on the opposite page, check your answers in the *Key to Exercises*, and then look again at the explanations if you made any mistakes. If you just want to practise an area of grammar you think you already know, you could do the exercises first and then study the explanations for any you got wrong. You might of course simply use the book as a reference book without doing the exercises.

Corpus information

A corpus is a large collection of texts stored on a computer. In writing *Advanced Grammar in Use* we have worked with the Cambridge International Corpus (CIC), a multi-million word collection of real speech and writing, and the Cambridge Learner Corpus, a collection of exam answers written by students. From these corpora we can learn more about language in use, and about the common errors made by learners. Using this information, we can be sure that the grammar explanations and examples in the book reflect real language, and we can focus on problem areas for learners. We have also used the CIC to produce word boxes, listing the most common words found in particular grammar patterns.

To the teacher

Advanced Grammar in Use was written as a self-study grammar book but teachers might also find it useful for supplementing or supporting their classroom teaching. The book will probably be most useful for advanced level students for reference and practice.

No attempt has been made to order the units according to level of difficulty. Instead, you should select units as they are relevant to the syllabus that you are following with your students, or as particular difficulties arise, rather than working through from beginning to end. Alternatively, you could ask students to do the multiple-choice test in the *Study planner* (page 210) and focus on units that deal with areas of grammar where students are least successful.

Don't forget to point students to the *Grammar reminder* (page 222). This is a reference-only section which presents basic knowledge on a number of areas of grammar. It will be useful for students to read through a section before moving on to the more advanced material in the units. At the beginning of each section of the *Grammar reminder* you will find information about the unit(s) it relates to.

There are many ways in which you can use the book with a class. You might, for example, present the explanations on the left-hand page of a unit, and use the exercises for classroom practice. Alternatively, you might want to begin with the exercises and refer to the left-hand page only when students are having problems. You could also set particular units or groups of units (such as those on *Articles* or *Nouns*) for self-study if individual students are having difficulties. Another possibility might be to develop your own classroom-based activities around the explanations on the left-hand page of a unit, and then set the exercises as consolidation material for self-study. When students need further practice of grammar points from a number of different units, refer them to the *Additional exercises* (page 240). References at the bottom of the right-hand pages show where the relevant *Additional exercises* can be found.

An edition of *Advanced Grammar in Use* without the answers is also available, and some teachers might prefer to use it with their students.

The third edition of *Advanced Grammar in Use* has the same comprehensive grammar coverage as previous editions, but many of its exercises have been revised and its layout made more user-friendly.

Advanced Grammar in Use

Unit
1

Present continuous and present simple 1

A

State verbs

Reminder ➜ A1–A5

We can use the present continuous with some state verbs (e.g. **attract**, **like**, **look**, **love**, **sound**) to emphasise that a situation is temporary or for a period of time around the present. Compare:

☐ Ella stays with us quite often. The children **love** having her here. *and*
☐ Ella's with us at the moment. The children **are loving** having her here.

State verbs which we rarely use with the present continuous include **believe**, **consist of**, **doubt**, **own**.

B

Some verbs have different meanings when they are used to talk about states and when they describe actions. With their 'state' meanings, they usually take simple rather than continuous forms. With their 'action' meanings, they may take simple or continuous forms, depending on context. Compare:

☐ The app **doesn't appear** to work on my phone. (appear: *state* = seem) *and*
☐ Carley Robb **is** currently **appearing** in a musical on Broadway. / She often **appears** in musicals. (appear: *action* = take part)

Also: **cost, expect, feel, fit, have, imagine, measure, think, weigh**

C

Mental state verbs

With some verbs describing *mental* states (e.g. **find**, **realise**, **regret**, **think**, **understand**) we can use the present continuous to emphasise that we have recently started to think about something or that we are not sure about something. Compare:

☐ I **regret** that the company will have to be sold. (= I've made the decision and I'm sorry about it) *and*
☐ **I'm regretting** my decision to give her the job. (= I'm increasingly aware that it was the wrong decision)

When it means 'think carefully about', **consider** is only used with the present continuous:

☐ He**'s considering** taking early retirement. (*not* He considers taking early retirement.)

Some other verbs describing preferences and mental states (e.g. **agree**, **believe**, **conclude**, **know**, **prefer**) are rarely used with the present continuous:

☐ I **believe** you now. (*not* I'm believing you now.)

D

Performatives

We use the present simple with verbs which perform the action they describe (= performatives):

☐ I **suggest** you park outside the city and get the bus to the centre.
☐ We **request** that you read the terms and conditions carefully before signing.

Also: **acknowledge, admit, advise, apologise, beg**, **confess**, **congratulate**, **declare**, **deny**, **forbid**, **guarantee**, **name**, **order**, **permit**, **predict**, **promise**, **refuse**, **remind**, **request**, **thank**, **warn**

Some verbs used as performatives with the present simple in affirmative (= positive) sentences (**apologise**, **deny**, **guarantee**, **promise**, **suggest**) have a similar meaning with either the present simple or the present continuous in negative sentences:

☐ I **don't deny** / **I'm not denying** taking the books, but Miguel said it would be okay.

Modals are often used with performatives to make what we say more tentative or polite:

☐ We **would advise** you to arrive two hours before the flight leaves.
☐ I **must beg** you to keep this a secret.

Exercises

1.1 Complete each pair of sentences using the same verb (in a question form or negative if necessary) from the box. Use the present continuous; if this is not possible, use the present simple. Use ⋀ to add any words outside the gap and use contracted forms where appropriate. **A & B**

attract **consist of** **doubt** **feel** **fit**
have **like** **~~look~~** **measure** **sound**

1 a I hear you're having your house repainted. How ⋀'s it ......looking...... ? (or How ⋀does it ......look...... ?)
b I bought this new dress today. How ⋀does it ......look...... ?
2 a A: What are you doing with that ruler? B: I .... the area of the kitchen.
b The garden .... 12 by 20 metres.
3 a I .... whether I'll get another chance to retake the exam.
b I suppose she might be at home tonight, but I .... it.
4 a The new science museum currently .... 10,000 visitors a month.
b Flowers .... bees with their brightly-coloured petals.
5 a Carlos won't work at the top of the 20-storey building because he .... heights.
b A: How's the new job? B: Well, at the moment, I .... it at all.
6 a My car's in the garage today. They .... new brakes.
b I bought this jumper for Anna, but it .... her so I'll have to take it back.
7 a What's your shirt made from? It .... like silk.
b I won't be coming to work today. I .... very well.
8 a The roof of the house .... only plastic sheets nailed down in a few places.
b Their school uniform .... black trousers and a dark green jumper.
9 a Simon's new song .... quite good, but he doesn't think he's ready yet to perform it in public.
b A: What's that noise? B: It .... like a bird stuck in the chimney.
10 a Poulson .... treatment for a knee injury, but should be fit to play on Saturday.
b My sister .... long blonde hair. You're bound to recognise her.

1.2 Cross out any improbable answers. **C & D**

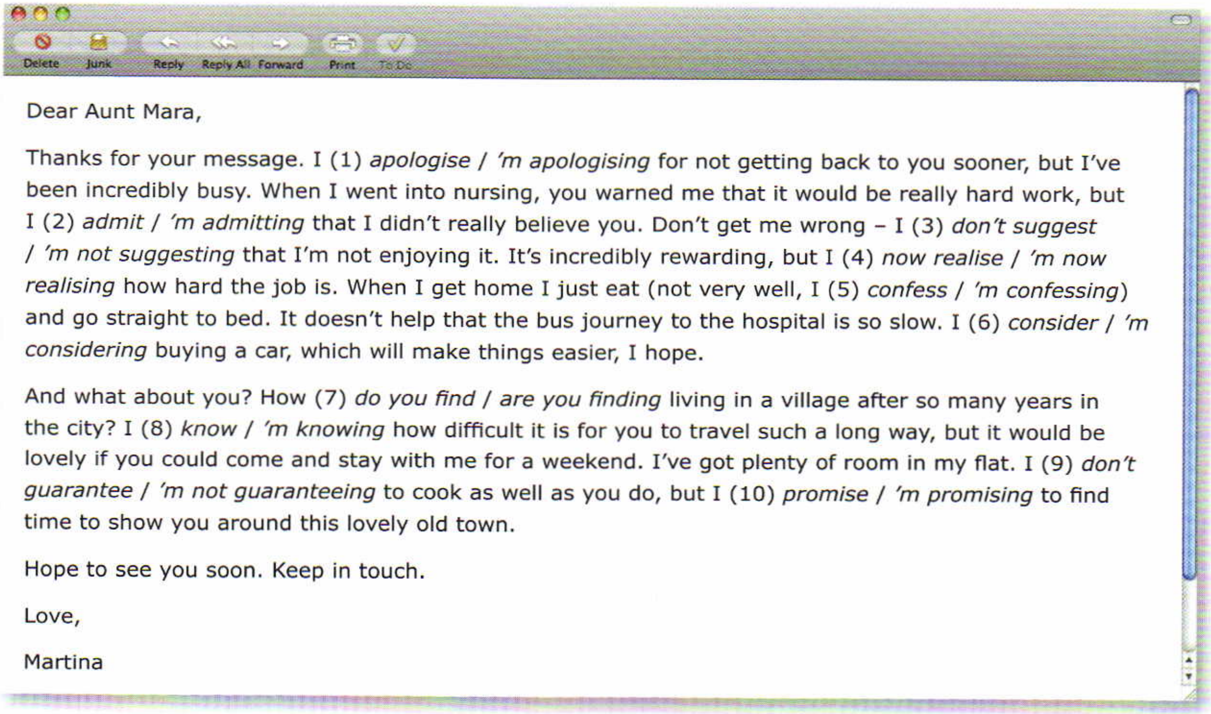

Dear Aunt Mara,

Thanks for your message. I (1) *apologise / 'm apologising* for not getting back to you sooner, but I've been incredibly busy. When I went into nursing, you warned me that it would be really hard work, but I (2) *admit / 'm admitting* that I didn't really believe you. Don't get me wrong – I (3) *don't suggest / 'm not suggesting* that I'm not enjoying it. It's incredibly rewarding, but I (4) *now realise / 'm now realising* how hard the job is. When I get home I just eat (not very well, I (5) *confess / 'm confessing*) and go straight to bed. It doesn't help that the bus journey to the hospital is so slow. I (6) *consider / 'm considering* buying a car, which will make things easier, I hope.

And what about you? How (7) *do you find / are you finding* living in a village after so many years in the city? I (8) *know / 'm knowing* how difficult it is for you to travel such a long way, but it would be lovely if you could come and stay with me for a weekend. I've got plenty of room in my flat. I (9) *don't guarantee / 'm not guaranteeing* to cook as well as you do, but I (10) *promise / 'm promising* to find time to show you around this lovely old town.

Hope to see you soon. Keep in touch.

Love,

Martina

→ **Additional exercise 1** (page 240)

Unit
2

Present continuous and present simple 2

A

We often use the present simple and present continuous in stories and jokes in informal spoken English to create the impression that events are happening now. This can make them more direct and exciting and hold people's attention:

Reminder ➔ A1–A5

- ☐ She **goes** up to this man and **looks** straight into his eyes. He**'s** not **wearing** his glasses, and he **doesn't recognise** her ...
- ☐ This man**'s playing** golf when a kangaroo **bounds** up to him, **grabs** his club and **hits** his ball about half a mile ...

The main events are usually described in sequence using the present simple and longer background events are described using the present continuous.

In narratives and anecdotes the present simple can be used to highlight an event. Often it is used after past tenses and with a phrase such as **suddenly** or **all of a sudden**:

- ☐ I was sitting in the park, reading a newspaper, when *all of a sudden* this dog **jumps** at me.

B

We also use the present simple and present continuous in live commentaries (for example, on sports events) when the report takes place at the same time as the action:

- ☐ King **serves** to the left-hand court and Adams **makes** a wonderful return. She**'s playing** magnificent tennis in this match ...

C

We can use the present simple in phrases such as **It says here**, **I hear**, **I gather**, **I see**, **I understand** and **They say**, **(Someone) says**, **(Someone) tells me** to introduce news that we have heard, read, seen (e.g. on television), or been told. We can also use past tenses (e.g. **It said here**, **I heard**):

- ☐ **I gather** you're worried about Pedro.
- ☐ Sophia **tells me** you're thinking of emigrating.
- ☐ Professor Hendriks is at the conference and **I hear** she's an excellent speaker.

D

The present simple is often used in news headlines to talk about events that have recently happened:

SECOND QUAKE *HITS* JAPAN

FIRE *BREAKS OUT* IN HOTEL ROOM

SCIENTISTS *FIND* ICE ON THE MOON

FOREIGN MINISTER *RESIGNS*

We can use the present simple to refer to the contents of books, films, newspapers, etc:

- ☐ Thompson **gives** a list of the largest European companies in Chapter 6.
- ☐ At the beginning of the book, three men **find** $4 million in a crashed plane.
- ☐ In the film, Loni Baranski **takes** the role of a private detective.

E

We can use the present continuous with adverbs such as **always**, **constantly**, **continually** or **forever** to emphasise that something is done so often that it is characteristic of a person, group or thing:

- ☐ A: I think I'll stay here after all. B: You**'re** *constantly* **changing** your mind.
- ☐ Jacob is a really kind person. He**'s** *always* **offering** to help me with my work.

We often use this pattern to indicate disapproval. The past continuous is used in a similar way with these adverbs (e.g. **Was** Olivia *always* **asking** you for money, too?).

We can use the present continuous to describe something we regularly do at a certain time:

- ☐ At eight o'clock **I'm** usually **driving** to work, so phone me on my mobile.
- ☐ Seven o'clock is a bit early. We**'re** generally **eating** then.

Exercises

2.1 **Complete these sentences using the verbs in brackets. Use the present simple or present continuous.** A & B

1 Rodriguez ....passes.... to Messi who .... just over the bar. Barcelona .... much more in this half … (~~*pass*~~ – *shoot* – *attack*)
2 A man .... home late one night after the office Christmas party. His wife .... for him, and she .... to him … (*arrive* – *wait* – *say*)
3 I went to a concert yesterday in the Town Hall. In the middle of it, while the orchestra .... this man suddenly .... on his seat and .... to conduct them. (*play* – *stand* – *start*)

2.2 **Complete what each person says about the news they have read or heard using the present tense phrases in C.** C

1 **Government gives health service billions**

....I see.... the government's giving ....the health service a lot more money.....

2 **Vegecorp to sack 1,000 workers.**

.... Vegecorp are going to ....

3 President Cartman announced a new public holiday on his birthday, August 6th. He made the announcement …

.... we're going to have ....

4 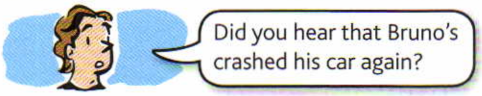
Did you hear that Bruno's crashed his car again?

Ed

.... Bruno's ....

5 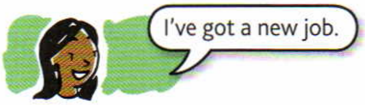
I've got a new job.

Julia

.... she's ....

6 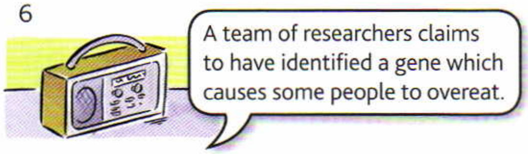
A team of researchers claims to have identified a gene which causes some people to overeat.

.... they've identified ....

2.3 **Expand one of the sets of notes below to complete each dialogue.** E

continually / change / mind **forever / moan / work** **forever / ask me / money**
constantly / criticise / driving ~~**always / complain / handwriting**~~

1 A: I can't read this. B: You're ....always complaining about my handwriting.....
2 A: Can I borrow €10? B: You're ....
3 A: That was a dangerous thing to do. B: You're ....
4 A: I think I'll stay here after all. B: You're ....
5 A: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're ....

2.4 **Complete each pair of sentences using the same verb (in negative form if necessary). Use the present continuous or the present simple. Use ⁁ to add any words outside the gap.** D & E

1 a A: Shall I phone at six? B: No, we usually .... dinner at that time.
  b I .... lamb, thanks. I'm a vegetarian.
2 a Gielman .... Henry V in the latest production at the Royal Theatre.
  b They constantly .... loud music until the early hours of the morning.
3 a I normally .... the children to school at 8:30. Perhaps we could meet at 9:00.
  b In his 2007 book, Wall .... a controversial view of Britain's role in the war.

→ Additional exercise 1 (page 240)

Unit
3

Past simple and present perfect

A

Time expressions that refer to the present, such as **this morning** / **week** / **month** and **today**, can be used with either past simple or present perfect verbs.

Reminder ➔ A6–A12

If we think of **this morning** (etc.) as a past, completed time period, then we use the past simple; if we think of **this morning** (etc.) as a time period which includes the present moment, then we use the present perfect. Compare:

- ☐ I **didn't shave** *this morning*. (= the morning is over and I didn't shave) *and*
- ☐ I **haven't shaved** *this morning*. (= it is still the morning and I might shave later)

B

In a sentence which includes a time clause with **since**, we generally prefer a past simple verb in the time clause and a present perfect verb in the main clause. The time clause refers to a particular point in the past:

- ☐ *Since* Mr Dodson **became** president unemployment **has increased**. (*rather than* … has become …)
- ☐ She **hasn't been able** to play tennis *since* she **broke** her arm. (*rather than* … has broken …)

Note, however, that we use the present perfect in the time clause if the two situations described in the main clause and time clause extend until the present:

- ☐ **Have** you **met** any of your neighbours *since* you'**ve lived** here? (*not* … you lived …)

C

With time clauses introduced by **after**, **when**, **until**, **as soon as**, **once**, **by the time** and the time expressions **the minute** / **second** / **moment** the past simple refers to past, completed events and the present perfect refers to future events. Compare these examples:

- ☐ *After* she **left** hospital (past), she had a long holiday. *and*
- ☐ *After* Lucas **has left** school (future), he will be spending six months in India.
- ☐ *The minute* I **got** the news about Anna (past) I telephoned my parents. *and*
- ☐ I'll contact you *the minute* I'**ve got** my exam results. (future)

In the time clause in sentences like this it is possible to use the past perfect instead of the past simple (e.g. After she **had left** …) and the present simple instead of the present perfect (e.g. After Lucas **leaves** …) with the same meaning (see also Unit 5).

D

In news reports, you will often read about or hear recent events introduced with the present perfect, and then the past simple or other past tenses are used to give details:

☐ A Russian spacecraft **has returned** safely to Earth with its two passengers. US astronaut Scott Keane and Russian cosmonaut Olga Kaleri **landed** in the early hours of Wednesday.

☐ An American woman **has become** the first person to make 2 million contributions to Wikipedia. Esther Miller **began** editing the site eight years ago.

E

After the pattern **It** / **This** / **That** *is* / *will be* **the first time** … we generally use the present perfect in the next clause:

- ☐ *That's the first time* I'**ve seen** Jan look embarrassed. (reporting a past event)
- ☐ *It won't be the first time* she **has voted** against the government. (talking about a future event)

Note that after **It** / **This** / **That** *was* **the first time** … we generally use the *past* perfect (see Unit 5):

- ☐ *It was the first time* I'**d talked** to Dimitra outside the office.

Exercises

3.1 **Complete each sentence with a verb from the box. Use the present perfect or past simple, with a negative form where necessary.** **A**

have go oversleep read spend wear

1 A: Shall I make us some dinner? It's already eight o'clock.
B: No, thanks. I .... to the dentist this afternoon and my mouth hurts too much to eat anything.
2 I .... three lectures today and I still have two more later this afternoon.
3 It was so hot today that I .... shorts and a T-shirt at work.
4 We .... £200 on food this month and there's another week to go before I get paid.
5 A: Do you want a lift home?
B: No, I .... this morning because my alarm clock didn't go off, so I need to work late.
6 I .... much of the report yet, but I have to finish it by the weekend.

3.2 **Complete the sentences with the pairs of verbs from the box. Choose the most appropriate tense — present perfect or past simple.** **B**

be able – feel happen – speak improve – be
not want – fall rescue – be work – not have

1 Maria .... to go swimming since she .... in the river.
2 Since she .... at the company she .... a day off through illness.
3 Since he .... the girl from a house fire, he .... on TV almost every day.
4 A lot .... since I last .... to you.
5 Since I .... to drive I .... much more independent
6 Stefan's reading .... enormously since he .... at school.

3.3 **One sentence in each pair is wrong. Correct it by replacing the past simple with the present perfect of the italicised verb.** **C**

1 a Remember that after you *signed* the contract you won't be able to change your mind.
b Carlo's injury only became apparent after he *signed* to play for Real Madrid.
2 a As soon as I *finished* college I want to travel around Australia.
b I didn't have time to check the essay. I handed it in as soon as I *finished* it.
3 a By the time Sarah *got* to work the meeting had finished.
b I'll probably have finished breakfast by the time the children *got* up.
4 a I recognised her the moment I *heard* her laugh.
b I'll tell you what time we're coming the moment I *heard* from Emil.

3.4 **Here are some extracts from a television news report. Choose the more appropriate tense – present perfect or past simple – for the verbs in brackets.** **D & E**

1 When President Nelson ...arrives... (*arrive*) in Paris this evening, it will be the first time she .... (*visit*) Europe since her election victory in May.
2 The Victoria Hospital in Milltown .... (*close*) to new patients after more cases of food poisoning. Three elderly patients .... (*die*) last week in the outbreak.
3 The rate of inflation .... (*drop*) to 4.8%. It's the first time in nearly two years that the rate .... (*fall*) below 5%.
4 Nearly 600 laptops .... (*steal*) from Ministry of Defence staff over the past five years. However, a spokesperson .... (*insist*) that there had been no security problems as none of the computers .... (*hold*) secret information.

→ Additional exercise 2 (page 241)

Unit
4

Past continuous and past simple

A

Reminder ➔ A6–A8, A13

When we talk about two events or activities that went on over the same period of past time, we can often use the past continuous or the past simple for both:

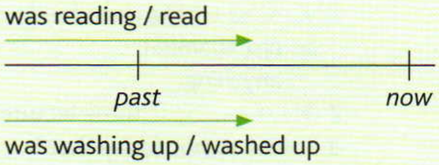

- ☐ Mia **was reading** to the children while Ben **was washing up**. (*or* … **read** … **washed up**.)

Using the past continuous emphasises that the event or activity ('was reading') was in progress during the past period of time ('while Ben was washing up'). Compare:

- ☐ When I **was learning / learned** to drive I was living with my parents.

Was learning emphasises that the activity was in progress ('I had lessons during this time') and **learned** emphasises completion ('I passed my test during this time').

When we talk about two or more past completed events that followed one another, we use the past simple, not the past continuous, for both (see also Unit 5C):

- ☐ She **got** up when the alarm clock **went** off.

B

We usually use the past simple rather than the past continuous to talk about repeated past actions:

- ☐ We **went** to Spain three times last year.
- ☐ **Did** you **drive** past her house every day?

However, we can use the past continuous, particularly in spoken English, when we want to emphasise that repeated actions went on for a limited and temporary period of past time:

- ☐ When Kata was in hospital, we **were visiting** her twice a day. (*or* … we **visited** …)
- ☐ To lose weight before the race, I **wasn't eating** any biscuits for weeks. (*or* … I **didn't eat** …)

or to talk about something that happened surprisingly often:

- ☐ Last week I **was having to** bring work home every night to get it all done. (*or* … **had** …)
- ☐ When the builders were here I **was making** them cups of tea all the time. (*or* … **made** …)

C

We often use the past simple in a narrative (e.g. a report or a story) to talk about a single complete past event and the past continuous to describe the situation that existed at the time. The event might have interrupted the situation, or happened while the situation was in progress:

- ☐ Erika **dropped** her bag while she **was getting** into her car.
- ☐ She **was shaking** with anger as she **left** the hotel.

D

We can use either the past continuous or past simple (or past perfect; see Unit 5E) with some verbs to talk about things we intended to do but didn't:

- ☐ We **were meaning** to call in and see you, but Marc wasn't feeling well. (*or* We **meant** …)

Also: **consider + -ing, expect to, hope to, intend to, plan to / on + -ing, think about / of + -ing, want to**

These verbs (with the exception of **mean** and **expect**) and **wonder about** can also be used with the present and past continuous to report what we might do in the future. The past continuous is less definite than the present continuous:

- ☐ I **was thinking of** going to China next year, but it depends how much money I've got. (*less definite than* I'**m thinking of** going …)
- ☐ We **were wondering about** inviting Eva over tomorrow. (*less definite than* We'**re wondering** about …)

Exercises

4.1 **Complete the sentences using these pairs of verbs. Use the past simple in one gap and the past continuous in the other.** A–D

come – show **~~get – go~~** **hope – give** **live – spend**
look – see **play – break** **start – check in**

1 Just as I was getting into the bath all the lights went off.
2 I .... to go away this weekend, but my boss .... me some work that I have to finish by Monday.
3 When I .... in Paris, I .... three hours a day travelling to and from work.
4 A friendly American couple .... chatting to him as he .... at the hotel reception.
5 I bumped into Lena last week. She .... a lot better than when I last .... her.
6 My boss .... into the office just as I .... everyone my holiday photos.
7 I .... badminton four times a week before I .... my ankle.

This time, use the *same* tense, either past simple or past continuous, in both spaces.

add – taste **go off – light** **not listen – explain** **push – run** **not watch – dream**

8 The smoke alarm .... when he .... a candle underneath it.
9 I can't remember how to answer this question. I must confess that I .... while the teacher .... it to us.
10 She .... more salt to the soup, and then it .... much better.
11 Although the television was on, I .... it. Instead I .... about my holidays.
12 She .... open the door and .... into the room.

4.2 **Look again at numbers 1, 4, 7 and 11 in 4.1. Which of these sentences could have both verbs in the past simple? What difference in meaning, if any, would there be?**

4.3 **Complete this email with either the past simple or the past continuous form of the verbs in brackets. Where alternatives are possible, think about any difference in meaning.** A–C

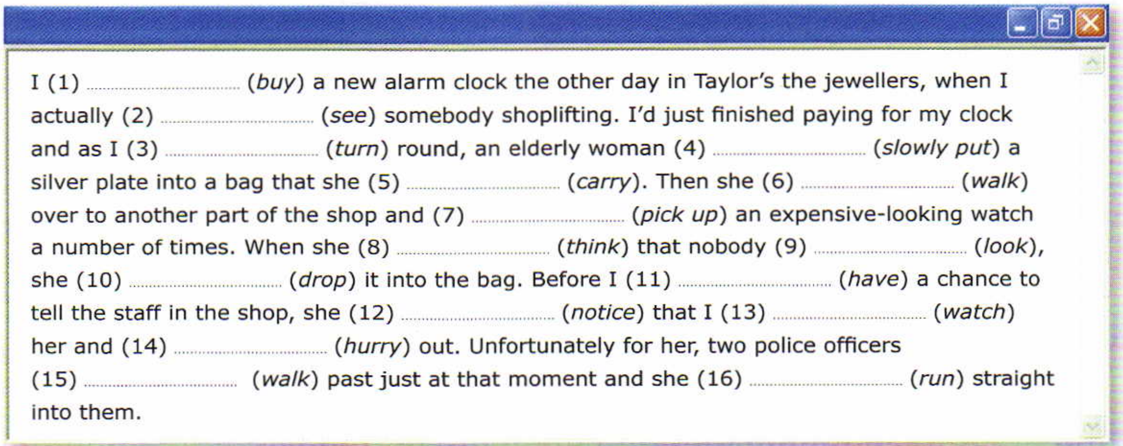

I (1) .... (*buy*) a new alarm clock the other day in Taylor's the jewellers, when I actually (2) .... (*see*) somebody shoplifting. I'd just finished paying for my clock and as I (3) .... (*turn*) round, an elderly woman (4) .... (*slowly put*) a silver plate into a bag that she (5) .... (*carry*). Then she (6) .... (*walk*) over to another part of the shop and (7) .... (*pick up*) an expensive-looking watch a number of times. When she (8) .... (*think*) that nobody (9) .... (*look*), she (10) .... (*drop*) it into the bag. Before I (11) .... (*have*) a chance to tell the staff in the shop, she (12) .... (*notice*) that I (13) .... (*watch*) her and (14) .... (*hurry*) out. Unfortunately for her, two police officers (15) .... (*walk*) past just at that moment and she (16) .... (*run*) straight into them.

→ Additional exercise 1 (page 240)

Unit
5

Past perfect and past simple

A

Reminder → A6–A8, A14–A15

When we give an account of a sequence of past events we usually put these events in chronological order using the past simple. If we want to refer to an event out of order – that is, an event which happened *before* the last event in the sequence we have written or spoken about – we can use the past perfect. Study the use of the past perfect and past simple in the text on the right:

Order of events:	1 gave present 2 wrote email 3 made mistake 4 realised mistake
Order events are mentioned:	1 wrote email 2 **had given** present (*out of order*) 3 realised mistake 4 **had made** mistake (*out of order*)

I **wrote** Clara an email to thank her for the present she **had given** me for my birthday last week. But as soon as I pressed the 'send' button, I **realised** that I **had made** a mistake and sent it to her sister instead.

B

When we understand that we are talking about events before another past event, we don't have to continue using the past perfect:

○ We **bought** a new car last month. We**'d driven** my parents' old car for ages, but it **started** (*or* **had started**) to fall apart. We **put** (*or* **had put**) a new engine in it, but that **didn't solve** (*or* **hadn't solved**) the problems we were having.

C

If the order of past events is clear from the context (for example, if time expressions make the order clear) we can often use either the past perfect or the past simple:

○ *After* Ivan **had finished** reading, he put out the light. (*or* … Ivan **finished** …)

○ The two leaders agreed to meet, even though *earlier* talks **had failed** to reach an agreement. (*or* … talks **failed** …)

D

The past perfect is often used in reporting what was originally said or thought in the present perfect or past simple (see also Unit 35):

Talking about a past event	**Reporting this past event**
○ 'I **have met** him before.'	○ I was sure that I **had met** him before. (*not* … I met him …)
○ 'The village **hasn't changed** much.'	○ I found that the village **hadn't changed** much. (*not* … the village didn't change …)
○ '225 people **drowned** in the recent floods.'	○ Police said that 225 people **had drowned** in the recent floods. (*or* … **drowned** …)
○ 'I **stole** the watch.'	○ She admitted that she **had stolen** the watch. (*or* … **stole** …)

E

We can use either the past perfect or past simple (and often past continuous and past perfect continuous; see Units 4 and 7) when we talk about things that we intended to do, but didn't or won't now do in the future:

○ I **had hoped** to visit the gallery before I left Florence, but it's closed on Mondays. (*or* I **hoped** …, I **was hoping** …, I **had been hoping** …)

○ Aron **planned** to retire at 60, but we have persuaded him to stay for a few more years. (*or* Aron **had planned** …, Aron **was planning** …, Aron **had been planning** …)

Exercises

5.1 The events mentioned in the magazine article are listed below. Write the order in which the events are mentioned and then the order in which they occurred (or were thought to occur). Compare the two lists and consider why the past perfect (in italics) was used. **A & B**

How I bought my dream house

When I first saw the old house I *had* just *moved* to the area. It *had been* empty for about a year and was beginning to need some repairs, but the house was exactly what I wanted. But by the time I *had put together* enough money I learnt that a property developer *had bought* it and planned to turn it into a hotel. Six months later I *had* nearly *given up* hope of finding anywhere to live in the village when I heard that the house was for sale again. The property developer *had decided* to invest his money in a new housing development on the edge of the village. I bought the house immediately and I've lived there happily ever since.

Carla Bridges

events	order events are mentioned in text	order of events
I moved …	2	2
I learnt …		
The property developer decided …		
I heard …		
I first saw the old house		1
A property developer bought it	1	
I nearly gave up…		
I put together enough money…		
It was empty		

5.2 Underline the correct options. In some cases only one is correct, and in others both are correct. **C & D**

1 As Jonas was introduced to Mrs Lopez, he realised that he *had met / met* her before.
2 During the previous week, I *had been / went* to the gym every evening.
3 He denied that he *had taken / took* the money from the office.
4 I thought it was the best film I *had seen / saw* in my life.
5 The boy told me that he *had lost / lost* his train ticket and didn't know how he would get home.
6 At the conference, scientists reported that they *had found / found* a cure for malaria.
7 The teacher guessed that some of the children *had cheated / cheated* in the exam.
8 She said that she *had made up / made up* her mind who to vote for, and that I couldn't persuade her to change.
9 Thomas explained that he *had gone / went* home early because he felt ill.
10 When I asked Maria about Jakub, she admitted that she *hadn't heard / didn't hear* from him for ages.
11 The waiter took my plate away before I *had finished / finished* eating.
12 Julia said she didn't want any dinner. Apparently, she *had eaten / ate* already.

5.3 Expand these sets of notes using the past perfect to begin each sentence. **E**

I / expect / operation / painful ~~**I / hope / leave / by nine**~~
He / not mean / insult / her **Lara / not intend / become / dentist**
I / not think of / cook rabbit

1 I had hoped to leave by nine, but I overslept and missed the train.
2 ……………………………; she always wanted to be a vet.
3 ……………………………, but I didn't feel a thing.
4 ……………………………, until Andrei told me how tasty it was.
5 ……………………………, but Daria was very offended.

→ Additional exercise 3 (page 241)

Unit
6

Present perfect continuous and present perfect

A

Reminder ➜ A9–A12, A16–A17

We use the present perfect continuous to express the idea of an activity (a task, piece of work, etc.) in progress until recently or until the time of speaking:

☐ **Have** you **been working** in the garden *all day*? You look exhausted.
☐ She**'s been writing** the book *since she was in her twenties* and at last it's finished.

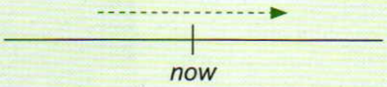

Note that we often use time expressions to say how long the activity has been in progress.

We don't use the present perfect continuous with verbs such as **belong**, **know**, **(dis)like**, and **understand** that describe unchanging states:

☐ **Have** you **known** each other long? (*not* Have you been knowing ...)
☐ I **haven't liked** ice cream since I ate too much and was sick. (*not* I haven't been liking ...)

When we talk about situations (general characteristics or circumstances) that exist until the present we can often use either the present perfect or present perfect continuous:

☐ We**'ve been looking forward to** this holiday for ages. (*or* We**'ve looked forward to** ...)

B

We often use the present perfect or the present perfect continuous to talk about something that has recently finished if we can still see its results. However, we generally use the present perfect continuous with verbs that suggest extended or repeated activity. Compare:

☐ He**'s broken** his finger and is in a lot of pain. (*not* He's been breaking ...) *and*
☐ **I've been playing** squash and need a shower! (*more likely than* I've played ...)

We use the present perfect continuous rather than the present perfect when we draw a conclusion from what we can see, hear, etc. We often use this form to complain or criticise:

☐ Who**'s been messing** around with my papers? They're all over the place.
☐ You**'ve been eating** chocolate, haven't you? There's some on your shirt.

When we talk about the *result* of circumstances or an activity, we use the present perfect, rather than the present perfect continuous. When we focus on the *process* we often use either the present perfect or the present perfect continuous. Compare:

☐ Prices **have decreased** by 7%. (*not* Prices have been decreasing by 7%.) *and*
☐ Prices **have been decreasing** recently. (*or* Prices **have decreased** ...)
☐ **I've used** three tins of paint on the kitchen walls. (*not* I've been using three tins of paint on the kitchen walls.) *and*
☐ **I've been using** a new kind of paint on the kitchen walls. (*or* I**'ve used** ...)

C

The present perfect continuous emphasises that an activity is ongoing and repeated, while the present perfect suggests the activity happened only once or on a specified number of occasions:

☐ Miguel **has been kicking** a football against the wall all day. (*more likely than* ... **has kicked** ...)
☐ He **has played** for the national team in 65 matches so far. (*not* He has been playing for the national team in 65 matches so far.)

Compare:

☐ The workers **have been calling** for the chairman's resignation. (= emphasises a number of times, probably over an extended period) *and*
☐ Workers **have called** for management to begin negotiations on pay. (= maybe a number of times or only once.)

Exercises

6.1 **Complete each pair of sentences using the same verb. Use the present perfect in one sentence and the present perfect continuous in the other. Use negative forms where appropriate.** A–C

disappear give put read stay stop swim

1 a Martina Gonzalez .... in a rented flat since returning to Buenos Aires.
b We .... at this hotel a couple of times before.
2 a All day, the police .... motorists to question them about the accident.
b Good, the noise .... I can start concentrating on my work again.
3 a I .... any of Dickens' novels.
b I .... this book on astrophysics for hours and I'm still only on page six.
4 a Dr Fletcher .... the same lecture to students for the last ten years.
b Mr Sato .... nearly a million pounds to the charity this year.
5 a I did 20 lengths of the pool today. I .... that far since I was at school.
b I .... and I feel exhausted.
6 a In recent years, companies .... increasing resources into internet marketing.
b The South African coal company .... the Calverton Mine up for sale.
7 a An important file .... from my office.
b Plants and vegetables .... from my garden since we had new neighbours.

6.2 **Here are two views on the government's announcement that it is to cut the money it gives to the Influenza Research Centre. If necessary, correct the present perfect continuous verbs using either the present perfect or past simple.** A–C and Unit 3

a *Dr Petra Adams, the Director of the Centre*

It's remarkable to think that since 1950 influenza (1) *has been claiming* more than 50,000 lives in this country, and in 1957 alone around 6,000 people (2) *have been dying*. But over the last 20 years we at the Centre (3) *have been making* considerable progress on understanding the illness. We (4) *have been producing* over a hundred books and articles reporting the results of our research and in 2012 they (5) *have been awarding* the Nobel Prize for medicine to one of my colleagues. In our more recent work we (6) *have been looking* into the effects of influenza on heart disease and we (7) *have also been exploring* a possible link between climate change and the recent increase in the number of cases of influenza. It is a tragedy that the government (8) *has been making* this decision now.

b *Sabir Khan, the Opposition spokesperson for science*

The previous government (1) *has been investing* huge amounts of money into the Centre and I think it's terrible that the present government (2) *has been announcing* this cut when the number of cases of influenza (3) *has been increasing*. The Centre (4) *has been running* successfully for many years. But this decision is just typical of this government. It (5) *has been neglecting* health research ever since it was elected, and (6) *has been cutting* back on spending on science generally. Although the government says that the cut is necessary because of the recent world economic problems, I (7) *have been finding* evidence that they (8) *have been planning* this for some time. I (9) *have been speaking* to the Minister about this yesterday and (10) *have also been writing* to the Prime Minister demanding that the decision should be reversed.

➔ Additional exercise 2 (page 241)

Unit 7

Past perfect continuous, past perfect and past continuous

A

Reminder → A14–A15, A18

We use the past perfect continuous to talk about something that was in progress recently before or up to a past point in time, and the past perfect when we talk about a finished activity before a past time:

☐ I**'d been finishing** some work in the garden when Lea arrived, so I didn't hear her come in. (*not* I'd finished some work in the garden when Lea arrived, so I didn't hear her come in.) *and*

☐ I**'d finished** all the ironing so I started cleaning the windows. (*not* I'd been finishing all the ironing so I started cleaning the windows.)

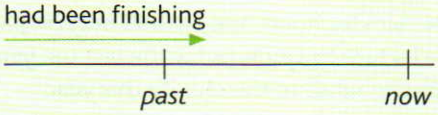

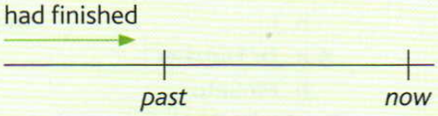

We can often use either the past perfect continuous or the past perfect with a similar meaning:

☐ I**'d been working** / I**'d worked** hard all year, so I felt that I deserved a holiday.

B

If we talk about *how many* times something happened in a period up to a particular past time, we use the past perfect, not the past perfect continuous:

☐ How many times **had** you **met** him before yesterday? (*not* How many times had you been meeting …)

☐ I **had stayed** in the hotel twice in the 1990s. (*not* I had been staying in the hotel twice …)

C

The past perfect continuous can be used to talk about a situation or activity that went on before a particular past time and (i) finished at that time, (ii) continued beyond it, or (iii) finished shortly before it:

☐ (i) We**'d been driving** for about an hour when the engine suddenly stopped.

☐ (ii) She felt terrible during the interview because she **had been suffering** from flu since the previous day.

☐ (iii) When I last saw Omar, he**'d been running** and was out of breath.

If we are not interested in how long the activity went on, we can use the past continuous instead of the past perfect continuous. Compare:

☐ When the merger was announced it became apparent that the two companies **had been discussing** the possibility *since last year*. *and*

☐ A friend told me about a conversation she'd recently overheard. Two women **were discussing** their holiday plans …

☐ I first met Mateo and Lucia when they **had been going out** together *for five years*, and they didn't get married for another three years after that. *and*

☐ Karin met Lars when she **was going out** with his best friend.

D

Remember that we don't describe states with continuous tenses (see Unit 1), and we use the past perfect, not the past perfect continuous, even when we focus on the length of a situation up to a particular past time:

☐ We **had** only **owned** the car for six weeks when the clutch broke. (*not* We had been owning the car for six weeks …)

E

The past perfect continuous is mainly used in written texts and is less common in speech. Here is an example in a newspaper article:

☐ The body of a climber who went missing in the Alps was finally found yesterday. Carl Sims **had been climbing** alone near the Harz Waterfall, which has claimed many lives in the past.

Exercises

7.1 **Complete each pair of sentences using one verb from the box. Use the past perfect continuous if possible; if not, use the past perfect.** A

apply carry fly work

1 a She .... only .... for the company for a couple of months, so I was surprised to hear that she'd left.
b She .... finally .... her way up from trainee to a management position, and she celebrated her promotion with a big party.
2 a The avalanche .... them 500 metres down the mountain but no one was hurt.
b She took a bottle from the bag she .... all the way from home.
3 a We .... for visas early, but still hadn't got them by the week before the holiday.
b She .... for jobs, without success, since leaving university.
4 a He .... all the way from New York to be at yesterday's meeting.
b When the plane was diverted, shortly after take-off, it .... from London to Frankfurt.

7.2 **Use the past perfect continuous form of the verb in brackets if appropriate; if not, use the past perfect.** B–D

1 Mrs Bishop .... to have children for years, and only became pregnant at the age of 45. (*try*)
2 This was the first time we had been to the castle, even though we .... Prague a few times before. (*visit*)
3 She bought her first watch at the age of eight. It .... two pounds. (*cost*)
4 Emma Willems .... novels for ten years before she published her first book. (*write*)
5 For some time Daniel .... about passing the exams and eventually decided to change the course he was taking. (*worry*)
6 My teacher was really annoyed with me. It was the third time I .... late for school that week. (*arrive*)
7 I .... always .... it would be easy to get a job, and was disappointed to be rejected. (*believe*)
8 We .... about Sarah when, to our amazement, she walked through the door. (*talk*)

In which one of the sentences where you have used the past perfect continuous do you think the past continuous is more likely? C

7.3 **Study this conversation extract. If the italicised verbs are correct, write ✓. If they are wrong, correct them using either the past perfect (active or passive) or past perfect continuous.** A–E

A: How was your weekend?
B: Not great, actually. I (1)*'d really been looking* forward to a relaxing couple of days. But early on Saturday morning Mum phoned to say that Dad (2) *had been taking* ill.
A: Oh, no! What (3) *had happened*?
B: She (4) *had just been hearing* that he (5) *had been flown* by helicopter to hospital in Edinburgh from a village called Contin where he (6) *had fished* with my Uncle Mark.
A: And is he okay? What's wrong with him?
B: Well, Uncle Mark said that Dad (7) *had been complaining* of a bad headache most of yesterday, but he (8) *hadn't been wanting* to go back to the hotel and spoil the day. But then in the evening, just as they (9) *had stopped* fishing for the day, he (10) *had been collapsing*…

→ Additional exercise 3 (page 241)

Unit
8

Present and past time: review

A

Continuous and simple

Reminder → Section A

When we focus on an activity itself, starting before and continuing up to (and possibly beyond) a particular point of time, rather than focusing on actions as completed events, we use *continuous* forms:

- ☐ Ingrid can't come to the phone. She**'s washing** her hair.
- ☐ As you**'re not using** your car at the moment, can I borrow it?
- ☐ This time yesterday I **was flying** over the Pacific.
- ☐ **Was** she **wearing** that red dress when you saw her?

We use *simple* forms to talk about general situations, habits, and things that are or were always true:

- ☐ When I **worked** as a postman I **got up** at three o'clock every morning.
- ☐ Miguel **doesn't play** golf very well.
- ☐ These birds **build** their nests on the ground.
- ☐ The earthquake **struck** the area at midday yesterday. (past simple for completed events)

We use simple forms with verbs that describe unchanging states (that stay the same):

- ☐ She **intends** to work hard at school and go on to university.
- ☐ **Did** you **understand** the instructions we were given?

However, we can use continuous forms with these verbs when they describe something happening or changing:

- ☐ She **was intending** to talk to Tony about the idea, but she didn't get the opportunity.
- ☐ I**'m understanding** physics much better now that Mr Davies is teaching us.

B

Perfect

We use *perfect* verb forms to describe one event or state from the point of view of a later time. The present perfect suggests a connection between something that happened in the past and the present time. Note, however, that the situation or event does not have to continue until the time of speaking, only to have some connection or relevance to the present time:

- ☐ I**'ve finished** that book you wanted, so you can borrow it now.
- ☐ **Have** you **turned** the heating off? I don't like it to be on when I'm not at home.
- ☐ Your nose is bleeding. **Has** somebody **hit** you?

The past perfect is used to locate a past event before another past event:

- ☐ I invited him out to dinner, but he said he **had** already **eaten**.
- ☐ By the time I picked up the phone, they **had rung off**.

C

Combinations of perfect and continuous

We combine the perfect and continuous forms in the present perfect continuous to describe an activity in progress either at or recently before the time of speaking, and possibly beyond it:

- ☐ I **have been following** the discussions on the forum with great interest.

We can also use the present perfect continuous to talk about activities that have recently finished with some result that can be seen, heard, etc.:

- ☐ Look at the dirt on your clothes! **Have** you **been digging** in the garden again?

The past perfect continuous has a similar meaning. However, the point of reference is not 'now' (as it is with the present perfect continuous) but a point in the past:

- ☐ When we met Lena and Marko, they **had been riding**.
- ☐ It **had been snowing** heavily for hours and when I went to the door I couldn't open it.

Exercises

8.1 Amy is writing a blog for her friends and family as she travels around Australia. Use the present simple, present continuous, past simple or past continuous of the verbs in the box to complete the extract. A

In 1–10 use:

arrive **feel** (×2) **get** **go** **know** **spend** **text** **wait** ~~**write**~~

In 11–20 use:

ask **complain** **enjoy** **get** **(not) get on** **hear** **look** (×2) **seem** **start**

I (1) ....am writing........ this blog in a hotel room in Perth. I (2) .... here a couple of hours ago after a long coach journey from Adelaide. I (3) .... pretty tired so this will only be a short post before I (4) .... to sleep. As you (5) .... , I (6) .... last week in Adelaide with Ruby. I (7) .... her a month or so ago to tell her when I would be arriving, and she (8) .... at the airport for me when I (9) .... there. For the first few days I (10) .... quite jet-lagged, but I soon (11) .... over that after a few days of lazing around on the beach. Ruby (12) .... living in Adelaide a lot, although she (13) .... for a new job just now. It (14) .... that she (15) .... very well with her colleagues. Apparently they constantly (16) .... about the working conditions and it (17) .... to annoy Ruby. She (18) .... me to pass on her best wishes to all her old friends. So now I (19) .... forward to exploring Perth. I (20) .... it's a wonderful place. I'll post again soon. Amy

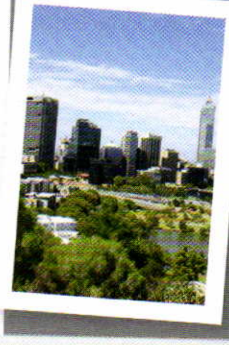

8.2 Complete this extract from a newspaper article using the past simple, present perfect or past perfect of the verbs in brackets. B

RONSON SACKED IN UNITED CUTS

Aston United (1) ....have sacked........ (*sack*) their manager, Neil Ronson. The former England football international (2) .... (*say*) that he (3) .... (*hear*) the news when he (4) .... (*return*) from a three-week holiday in Spain and that it (5) .... (*come*) as a complete shock. 'There (6) .... (*be*) no hint of any problem when I (7) .... (*leave*) for the holiday.' Aston United (8) .... (*appoint*) Ronson as manager two years ago and last season they (9) .... (*finish*) second in the First Division. However, they (10) .... (*win*) only five matches so far this season. The chairman of the club, Peter White, last night (11) .... (*accuse*) Ronson of lack of commitment to the club. 'Neil's attitude (12) .... (*disappoint*) us recently. Over the last few months he (13) .... (*spend*) more time on Spanish beaches than working with the players in Aston.'

8.3 Here is the rest of the conversation in Exercise 7.3. If the italicised verb is correct, write ✓. If it is wrong, correct it using the past simple, present perfect, past perfect, present perfect continuous or past perfect continuous. A–C

A: (1) *Did he have* any health problems recently?

B: Well, he (2) *'s been suffering* from stress for some time, but we (3) *have thought* a holiday in Scotland would be relaxing for him. He (4) *worked* too hard for months, and we (5) *'ve been trying* to persuade him to have a break for ages before he agreed.

A: So (6) *have you gone* up to Scotland when you (7) *have heard*?

B: No, Mum (8) *has gone* up to be with him, but the doctors (9) *have checked* him over and (10) *had been saying* that it's not too serious. They (11) *gave* him some medicine to bring down his blood pressure and (12) *had told* him that he needs complete rest for a couple of months. So Mum's driving him back in the car tomorrow.

A: Well, send him my best wishes when you speak to him.

B: Thanks, I will do.

Unit 9

Will and be going to

A

Reminder → B1–B5

We can use either **will** or **be going to** to talk about something that is planned, or something that we think is likely to happen in the future:

☐ We **will** study climate change in a later part of the course. (*or* We **are going to** study ...)

☐ Where **will** you stay in Berlin? (*or* Where **are you going to** stay ...?)

☐ The south of the city **won't** be affected by the power cuts. (*or* ... **isn't going to be** affected ...)

We often prefer **be going to** in informal contexts (see also **D**).

B

We use **will** rather than **be going to** to make a prediction based on our opinion or experience:

☐ Why not come over at the weekend? The children **will** enjoy seeing you again.

☐ 'Shall I ask Lamar?' 'No, she **won't** want to be disturbed.'

We use **be going to** rather than **will** when we make a prediction based on some present evidence:

☐ The sky's gone really dark. There**'s going to** be a storm.

☐ 'What's the matter with her?' 'It looks like she**'s going to** faint.'

C

To predict the future we often use **will** with **I bet** (informal), **I expect**, **I hope**, **I imagine**, **I reckon** (informal), **I think**, **I wonder** and **I'm sure**, and in questions with **think** and **reckon**:

☐ *I imagine* the stadium **will** be full for the match on Saturday.

☐ That cheese smells awful. *I bet* nobody **will** eat it.

☐ When *do* you *think* you**'ll** finish work?

☐ *Do* you *reckon* he**'ll** say yes?

Be going to can also be used with these phrases, particularly in informal contexts.

D

We use **will** when we make a decision at the moment of speaking and **be going to** for decisions about the future that have already been made. Compare:

☐ **I'll** pick him up at eight. (an offer; making an arrangement now) *and*

☐ **I'm going to** collect the children at eight. (this was previously arranged)

☐ 'Pineapples are on special offer this week.' 'In that case, I**'ll** buy two.' *and*

☐ When I've saved up enough money, I**'m going to** buy a smartphone.

However, in a formal style, we use **will** rather than **be going to** to talk about future events that have been previously arranged in some detail. Compare:

☐ **Are** you **going to** talk at the meeting tonight? *and*

☐ The meeting **will** begin at 9 am. Refreshments **will** be available from 8:30 onwards.

E

We can use **will** or **be going to** with little difference in meaning in the main clause of an **if-sentence** when we say that something (often something negative) is conditional on something else:

☐ You**'ll** / You**'re going to** knock that glass over if you're not careful.

When the future event does not depend on the action described in the **if-clause**, we use **be going to**, not **will**. This kind of sentence is mainly found in spoken English. Compare:

☐ **I'm going to** open a bottle of lemonade, if you want some. (= I'm going to open a bottle of lemonade. Do you want some?) *and*

☐ I**'ll** open a bottle of lemonade if you want some. (= If you say you want some, I'll open it.)

However, we use **will**, not **be going to**, when the main clause refers to offers, requests, promises, etc. and ability:

☐ If Erik phones, I**'ll** let you know. (= an offer; '..., I'm going to let you know' suggests 'I intend to let you know when Erik phones')

☐ If you look to your left, you**'ll** see the lake. (= you'll be able to see; '... you're going to see ...' suggests 'I know this is what you can see when you look to your left')

and when one thing is the logical consequence of another:

☐ If you don't switch on the monitor first, the computer **won't** come on.

Exercises

9.1 **Correct or improve the sentences where necessary by changing the italicised will ('ll) forms to be going to forms.** A–D

1 Have you seen Nadia recently? She'~~*ll have*~~ another baby. 's going to have
2 The method is quite simple, and I'm sure it *will be* familiar to most of you already.
3 A: I can't come over during the day.
B: *I'll see* you tomorrow evening, then.
4 Are these new skis yours? *Will you take up* skiing?
5 Wherever you go in Brazil, you*'ll find* the people very friendly.
6 Jamie says he*'ll be* a politician when he grows up – and he's only five years old!
7 It's getting very humid – we*'ll have* a thunderstorm.
8 I hear you*'ll sell* your car. How much do you want for it?
9 You can't play football in the garden. I*'ll cut* the grass.
10 A: What's the matter with Paula?
B: She says she*'ll be sick*.
A: She*'ll feel* better with some fresh air.
11 A: I've been offered a new job in Munich, so I*'ll leave* Camco.
B: When *will you tell* your boss?
A: I'm not sure. Perhaps I*'ll try* to see him later today.
12 A: Did I tell you I*'ll have* dinner with Karl on Thursday?
B: But we*'ll see* a film with Hamid on Thursday. You've known about it for weeks.
A: Sorry. In that case, I*'ll sort out* a different day with Karl.
13 A: Did you get the theatre tickets?
B: No. I forgot all about them. I*'ll book* them tomorrow.
14 A: We've got small, medium and large. What size do you want?
B: I*'m going to have* a large one, please.
15 A: Shall I give Ian another ring?
B: Yes, I expect he*'ll be* home by now.
16 A: What are those bricks for?
B: I*'ll build* a wall at the side of the garden.

9.2 **Complete the sentences with will ('ll) or be going to and an appropriate verb. If both will and be going to are possible, write them both.** E

1 If you want me to, I ……'ll explain…… how the equipment works.
2 If you want to help us, we …………………… these trees at the bottom of the garden.
3 You …………………… your back if you try to lift that box.
4 If I give you the money …………………… you …………………… me some oranges when you're out?
5 If you press the red button, the machine …………………… .
6 I …………………… Laura this weekend, if you'd like to come too.
7 He's been told that if he's late once more he …………………… .
8 If you listen carefully, you …………………… an owl in the trees over there.

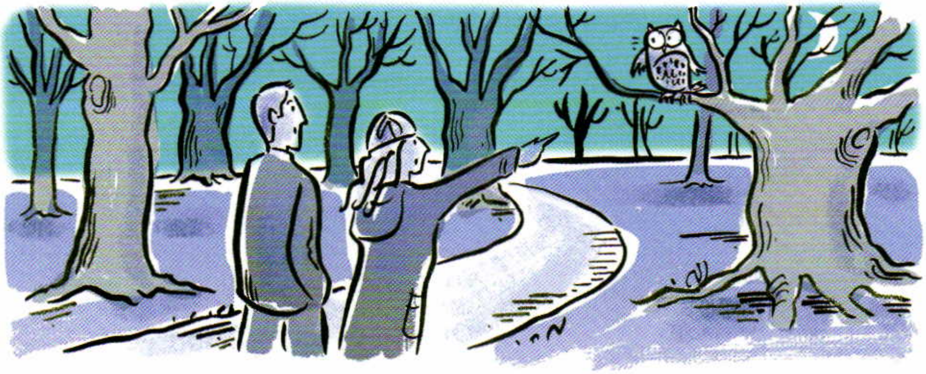

→ Additional exercise 4 (page 242)

Unit
10

Present simple and present continuous for the future

A

Present simple

Reminder ➔ B6 & B7

We can often use either the present simple or **will** to talk about future events that are part of some timetabled or programmed arrangement or routine. However, we prefer the present simple for fixed, unchangeable events. Compare:

☐ **Does** the sale **finish** on Thursday or Friday? (*or* **Will** the sale **finish** …?) *and*
☐ The sun **rises** at 5:16 tomorrow. (*more likely than* The sun will rise …)

We avoid the present simple when we talk about less formal or less routine arrangements, or predictions. Instead we use **will**, **be going to**, or the present continuous:

☐ **Are** you **staying** in to watch TV tonight, or **are** you **coming** dancing? (*not* Do you stay to watch TV tonight, or do you come…)
☐ It's only a problem in Britain now, but it **will affect** the rest of Europe soon. (*not* … but it affects the rest of Europe soon.)

B

We use the present simple, not **will**, to refer to the future –

☆ in time clauses with conjunctions such as **after**, **as soon as**, **before**, **by the time**, **when**, **while**, **until**:
☐ *When* you **see** Ben, tell him he still owes me some money. (*not* When you will see Ben …)
☐ I should be finished *by the time* you **get** back. (*not* … by the time you will get back.)

☆ in conditional clauses with **if**, **in case**, **provided**, and **unless**:
☐ *Provided* the right software **is** available, I should be able to solve the problem.
☐ I'll bring some sandwiches *in case* we **don't find** anywhere decent to eat.

☆ when we talk about possible future events with **suppose**, **supposing**, and **what if** at the beginning of a sentence. Note that the past simple can be used with a similar meaning:
☐ *Suppose* we **miss** the bus – how will we get home? (*or Suppose* we **missed** …)
☐ *What if* the train**'s** late? Where shall I meet you then? (*or What if* the train **was** late?)

C

Present continuous

We can often use either the present continuous or **be going to** with a similar meaning to talk about planned future events. The present continuous indicates that we have a firm intention or have made a definite decision to do something, although this may not already be arranged:

☐ **Are** you **seeing** the doctor again next week? (*or* **Are** you **going to see** …?)
☐ **I'm not asking** Tom to the party. (*or* **I'm not going to ask** …)

However, we don't use the present continuous for the future –

☆ when we make or report predictions about activities or events over which we have no control (we can't arrange these):
☐ I think it**'s going to rain** soon.
☐ Scientists say that the satellite **won't cause** any damage when it falls to Earth.

☆ when we talk about permanent future situations:
☐ People **are going to live** / **will live** longer in the future.
☐ Her new house **is going to have** / **will have** three floors.

D

Many people avoid **be going to** + **go** / **come** and use the present continuous forms of **go** and **come** instead:

☐ **I'm going** to town on Saturday. (*rather than* I'm going to go to town …)
☐ **Are** you **coming** home for lunch? (*rather than* Are you going to come …?)

Exercises

10.1 **If possible, use the present simple of a verb from the box to complete each sentence. If not, use will + infinitive.** A–C

accept **change** **get** **give out** **go** **lend** **look after**
miss **play** **rain** **read** **start** **stop** **want**

1 We .... our exam results on the 20th August.
2 Alex .... our cats while we're away next week.
3 I think I'll take an umbrella in case it ....
4 There is a reading list to accompany my lecture, which I .... at the end.
5 The new drug .... on sale in the USA next year.
6 The concert .... at 7:30, not 7:15 as it says in the programme.
7 Provided it .... raining, we'll go for a walk this afternoon.
8 What if I .... my plans and decide to stay longer? Will I need to renew my visa?
9 We .... Mariam when she leaves, but she says she'll keep in touch.
10 Unless my parents .... me some money, I won't be able to go on holiday this year.
11 Tonight France .... Germany in a match important for both teams.
12 It is unlikely that the government .... the court's decision.
13 Supposing I .... to upload a video to YouTube? How do I do that?
14 By the time you .... this letter, I should be in New Zealand.

10.2 **Cross out any answers that are wrong or very unlikely. If two answers are possible, consider the difference in meaning, if any, between them.** C, D & Unit 9

1 It's not a deep cut, but it .... a scar.
a will leave b is going to leave c is leaving
2 Did you know I .... a new car next week?
a will buy b am going to buy c am buying
3 A: I'm not sure how I'll get to the concert. B: We can take you. We .... you up at eight.
a will pick b are going to pick c are picking
4 I'm sorry I can't come for dinner. I .... to York tonight.
a will drive b am going to drive c am driving
5 The high-speed rail link .... the journey time between the cities significantly.
a will cut b is going to cut c is cutting
6 I have to go now. I .... you back later today.
a will call b am going to call c am calling
7 Don't go out now. I .... lunch and it'll be cold by the time you get back.
a will serve b am going to serve c am serving
8 Unless help arrives within the next few days, thousands ....
a will starve b are going to starve c are starving

10.3 **Complete these dialogues with either present simple for the future or present continuous for the future using the verbs in brackets. If neither of these is correct, use will or be going to.** Units 9 & 10

1 A: Simon Bianchi (1) .... (*join*) us for dinner. You know, the novelist.
B: Yes, I've read some of his books.
A: I'm sure you (2) .... (*like*) him. His latest book (3) .... (*come*) out at the end of this week. If you want, I'm sure he (4) .... (*give*) you a signed copy.
2 A: Have you heard that BWM (1) .... (*sack*) 300 workers?
B: That's bad news. Supposing they (2) .... (*close*) completely – that would be awful.
A: But I've heard that they (3) .... (*build*) a new factory in Ireland. If you look on their website, you (4) .... (*see*) a lot of information about it.

→ **Additional exercise 4** (page 242)

Unit
11

Future continuous and future perfect (continuous)

A

Future continuous: I will be doing

Reminder ➜ B8

We can use the future continuous to talk about:
(i) something that is predicted to start before a particular point of future time, and that may continue after this point (often the result of a previous decision or arrangement):

○ When it goes into orbit, the spacecraft **will be carrying** 30 kilos of plutonium.
○ Anna **will be helping** us to organise the party.

(ii) a future activity that is part of the normal course of events or that is one of a repeated or regular series of events:

○ Dr Lin **will be giving** the same talk in room 103 at ten next Thursday.
○ **Will you be driving** to work, as usual?

We can often use either the future continuous or the present continuous when we talk about arranged activities or events in the future (see also Unit 10). Compare:

○ We **will be leaving** for Istanbul at 7:00 in the evening. (timetabled; *or* … **are leaving** …) *and*
○ When the race starts later this afternoon the drivers **will be hoping** for drier weather than last year. (*not* … are hoping …; not reporting the details of a programme or timetable)

B

When we don't want to indicate willingness, intention, invitation, etc., we prefer to use the future continuous instead of **will**. For example, if guests have stayed longer than you wanted, and you don't know when they are leaving, you might ask:

○ **Will** you **be staying** with us again tonight? (asking about their plans) *rather than*
○ **Will** you **stay** with us again tonight? (they might think this is an invitation)

C

Future perfect and future perfect continuous: I will have done and I will have been doing

We use the future perfect to say that something will be ended, completed, or achieved by a particular point in the future:

○ *By the time you get home* I **will have cleaned** the house from top to bottom.
○ I'm sure his awful behaviour **will** *soon* **have been forgotten**. (= passive form)

We use the future perfect continuous to emphasise the duration of an activity in progress at a particular point in the future:

○ *Next year* I **will have been working** in the company for 30 years.

With both the future perfect and future perfect continuous we usually mention the future time (e.g. *By the time you get home …*, *Next year …*).

D

The future continuous, future perfect and future perfect continuous can also be used to say what we believe or imagine is happening around now:

○ We could ask to borrow Joe's car. He **won't be using** it today – he went to work by bike.
○ Most people **will have forgotten** the fire by now.
○ Tennis fans **will have been queuing** at Wimbledon all day to buy tickets.

We can use the future perfect continuous to say what we think was happening at a point in the past:

○ Motorist Vicky Hesketh **will have been asking** herself whether speed cameras are a good idea after she was fined £100 last week for driving at 33 mph in a 30 mph zone.

Exercises

11.1 **Complete both sentences in each pair with one verb from the box. Use the future continuous (will / won't be + -ing) in one sentence and will / won't + infinitive in the other.** A & B

give leave move use work

1 a We .... in an hour or so, so make sure your suitcase is packed.
b Without more cheap housing, families .... the village and find homes in town.
2 a .... you .... late at the office again? I want to know when to cook.
b A: We need to get this order sent out before Monday.
B: Well, I .... over the weekend if that will help.
3 a I .... my car until next week, so you can borrow it if you like.
b My grandad .... a computer. He says he's very happy with his old typewriter.
4 a Is your suitcase very heavy? I .... you a hand with it if you like.
b Dr Sankey .... evidence at the trial of James Morgan next week.
5 a He's parked his car across our drive and says he .... it. Shall I call the police?
b The two schools .... to a single campus at the beginning of September.

11.2 **Make sentences with a beginning from (i), a verb from (ii) (either in the future perfect or future perfect continuous), and an ending from (iii).** C & D

(i)	(ii)	(iii)
1 The weather forecast says that the rain ... 2 If the company is making a profit by the end of the year then we ... 3 In two years' time Morneau ... 4 I am confident that I ... 5 This book on Proust is really difficult. On Saturday I ... 6 As delegates who arrived early ...	act achieve ~~clear~~ finish discover read	... the objective we set ourselves when we took over. ~~... by the morning and tomorrow will be dry.~~ ... for 50 years, and shows no sign of retiring from the theatre. ... the report before the end of the week. ... it for a month, and I'm still only half way. ... there have been some late changes to the conference programme.

1 The weather forecast says that the rain will have cleared by the morning and tomorrow will be dry.

11.3 **Here is part of an email from Emily, an English teacher in Japan, to her friend Rosa. Underline the correct option.** A & D

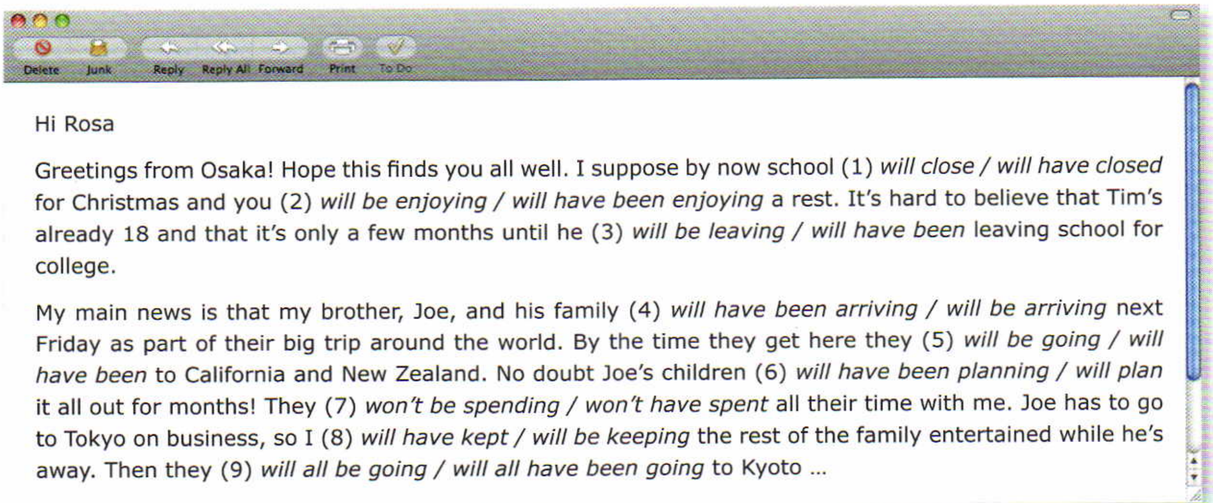

Hi Rosa

Greetings from Osaka! Hope this finds you all well. I suppose by now school (1) *will close / will have closed* for Christmas and you (2) *will be enjoying / will have been enjoying* a rest. It's hard to believe that Tim's already 18 and that it's only a few months until he (3) *will be leaving / will have been* leaving school for college.

My main news is that my brother, Joe, and his family (4) *will have been arriving / will be arriving* next Friday as part of their big trip around the world. By the time they get here they (5) *will be going / will have been* to California and New Zealand. No doubt Joe's children (6) *will have been planning / will plan* it all out for months! They (7) *won't be spending / won't have spent* all their time with me. Joe has to go to Tokyo on business, so I (8) *will have kept / will be keeping* the rest of the family entertained while he's away. Then they (9) *will all be going / will all have been going* to Kyoto ...

Unit 12

Be to + infinitive; **be about to** + infinitive

A

Be to + infinitive is commonly used in news reports to talk about events that are likely to happen in the near future:

- ☐ Police officers **are to visit** every home in the area.
- ☐ The main Rome-to-Naples railway line **is to be reopened** today. (passive form)

It is also used to talk about formal or official arrangements, formal instructions, and to give orders:

- ☐ You **are not to leave** the school without my permission.
- ☐ The European Parliament **is to introduce** a new law on safety at work.
- ☐ Children **are not to be left** unsupervised in the museum. (passive form)

Passive forms are often used to make orders and instructions more impersonal.

Note that we only use **be to + infinitive** to talk about future events that can be controlled by people. Compare:

- ☐ In the next few years, thousands of speed cameras **are to appear** on major roads. (*or* … **will appear** …) *and*
- ☐ Scientists say they can't predict when or where the disease **will appear** again. (*not* … the disease is to appear again; the appearance of the disease can't be controlled)
- ☐ The President **is to return** to Brazil later today. (*or* … **will return** …) *and*
- ☐ The comet **will return** to our solar system in around 500 years. (*not* The comet is to return …; the movement of the comet can't be controlled)

However, when **be to + infinitive** refers to the future from the past (see Unit 14B), we often use it to describe what happened to someone, whether they were able to influence events or not:

- ☐ Matthew Flinders sailed past Tasmania in 1770, but it **was to be** a further 30 years before he landed there.
- ☐ Clare Atkins **was to write** two more books about her experiences in Africa before her death in 1997.

B

We often use **be to + infinitive** in **if-clauses** to say that something must happen first (in the main clause) before something else can happen (in the **if-clause**):

- ☐ *If* the human race **is to survive**, we must look at environmental problems now.
- ☐ The law needs to be revised *if* justice **is to be done**. (passive form)

Compare the use of **be to + infinitive** and the present simple for the future in **if-clauses**:

- ☐ If Lopez **is to win** gold at the next Olympics, he needs to work on his fitness. *and*
- ☐ If Lopez **wins** gold at the next Olympics, he has said that he will retire from athletics.

Note how the order of cause and effects in **if-sentences** is reversed with these two tenses:

- ☐ If Lopez **is to win** gold … (= effect), he needs to work … (= cause) *and*
- ☐ If Lopez **wins** gold … (= cause), he has said that he will retire … (= effect)

C

We use **be about to + infinitive** mainly in conversation to say that something will (not) happen in the very near future:

- ☐ We'**re about to eat**. Do you want to join us?
- ☐ Appearing on TV might make her famous, but it'**s not about to make** her rich.
- ☐ A: Why don't you switch it off and turn it back on again?
  B: Yes, I **was about to try** that when you came in. (*not* Yes, I was to try …) (referring to the future from the past)

Exercises

12.1 Complete these news extracts using the verbs in brackets. Use **be to + infinitive** if possible and **will + infinitive** if not. Use active or passive forms as necessary. A

1 Jon Stobbard has written his first new play for 15 years. Its first performance .... (*stage*) at the New Victoria Theatre.

2 The new safety system .... (*stop*) trains automatically if they pass a danger signal.

3 Stafford Boys' School .... (*merge*) with the nearby Bicton Girls' School to form a new co-educational establishment.

4 There are fears that sea levels .... (*rise*) catastrophically in the next 50 years.

5 The old design and technology programme .... (*replace*) with a new computer science course.

Now use the verbs in the box to do the same in 6 to 10.

become **create** **increase** **receive** **retire** **succeed**

6 Managing Director Lars Lindberg, 59, ... this summer a year early. He .... by Christina Fontana, who joined the company last year.

7 As the temperatures fall with the onset of winter, the refugee crisis .... more severe.

8 Production line staff at the Heathcote garden furniture factory in Northam .... a pay rise following a big new order from Italy.

9 Seventy new posts .... at the factory following a major investment by the parent company in the United States.

10 The recent rapid rise in house prices in the south-east .... the demand for higher salaries among lower-paid workers.

12.2 Underline the correct answers. In some cases both alternatives are possible. B & C

1 You need to work much harder if you *have* / *are to have* any chance of passing the exam.

2 My sister *is to start* / *is about to start* a PhD in Physics.

3 Mrs Patel is likely to become the Foreign Minister if the party *wins* / *is to win* power at the next election.

4 If you *enjoy* / *are to enjoy* romantic comedies, then this is a film you must see.

5 A: Can you type this letter for me?
B: Sorry, I*'m just to go* / *'m just about to go* home. It'll have to wait until tomorrow.

6 If Beckman *recovers* / *is to recover* from a foot injury, it seems certain that he will play in Saturday's match against Spain.

7 If the university *keeps* / *is to keep* its international reputation, it must first invest in better facilities for students.

8 Jonas Fischer has denied that he *is to resign* / *is about to resign* as marketing manager.

9 It started snowing an hour ago, and from the look of those clouds things *are to get* / *are about to get* a lot worse.

10 If the railway system *is improved* / *is to be improved*, the government should invest substantial amounts of money now.

Unit 13

Other ways of talking about the future

A

Some phrases are commonly used to refer to actions or events in the future with a meaning similar to **be about to** + **infinitive** (see Unit 12C). We can use **be on the verge of** … / **brink of** … / **point of** … (+ **-ing** or **noun**) to say that something will happen soon:

○ People **are on the verge of** starvation as the drought continues.
○ Scientists **are on the brink of** making major advances in the fight against AIDS.
○ Exhausted, mentally and physically, she **was on the point of** collapse.

Be on the brink of usually refers to something important, exciting, or very bad.

We use **be due to** (+ **infinitive**) to say that something is expected to happen at a particular time, **be sure** / **bound to** (+ **infinitive**) to say that something is likely or certain to happen, and **be set to** (+ **infinitive**) to say that something is ready to happen:

○ The company's chief executive **is due to** retire next year, but following today's announcement of further losses she **is sure to** be asked to leave sooner.
○ 'Will there be somewhere to get a coffee at the station?' 'Oh, yes, there**'s bound to** be.'
○ Her new film **is set to** be a great success.

Note that we use **due to** + **noun** to give the reason for something, not to talk about the future (e.g. **Due to fog**, all flights from the airport have been cancelled).

B

We use some verbs with a **to-infinitive** to talk about intentions:

○ We **guarantee** *to refund* your money if you are dissatisfied with the computer.

The **present simple** + **to-infinitive** or **present continuous** + **to-infinitive** can be used with the verbs marked * to talk about intentions:

○ I **aim** *to get* to Bangkok by the end of June. (*or* I**'m aiming** *to get* …; I **was aiming** *to get* … is also possible, but more tentative)

Also: **aim*, agree, expect*, hope*, intend*, mean, plan*, promise, propose*, resolve, undertake, want***

Some people, particularly in speech and in journalism, use **be looking** + **to-infinitive** to mean planning a course of action:

○ We**'re looking** *to create* 3,000 jobs in the city over the next year.

C

When the phrases and verbs in **A** and **B** are used with past tense forms, they are usually concerned with future events seen from the past (see also Unit 14):

○ It was his 64th birthday in 2006 and he **was due** *to retire* the following year.
○ Nathan **had resolved** *to become* fluent in Spanish before he left university.
○ The new management **had been looking** *to create* 20 new jobs.

D

Some people use **shall** (and **shan't**) instead of **will** (and **won't**) in statements about the future with **I** and **we**. However, it is more common to use **will** (particularly its contracted form **'ll**) and **won't**:

○ He was a good friend and we **shall** miss him greatly. (*more commonly* … we**'ll** miss …)
○ I'm just going to buy a newspaper. I **shan't** be long. (*more commonly* I **won't** …)

In current English we don't usually use **shall** / **shan't** with other subjects to talk about the future, although this is found in formal rules and in older literary styles:

○ The match referee **shall** be the sole judge of fair play.
○ All people of the world **shall** live together as brothers.

Exercises

13.1 Expand the notes to complete the news extracts, using the phrases in A.

verge – become
set – make
point – sign
sure – face
sure – provide
~~point – move~~
brink – go
~~bound – raise~~
verge – quit
set – launch
due – return
due – undergo

1/2 The decision of Cornico to relocate its international headquarters to Switzerland is bound to raise questions about the government's new profits tax. It seems that other major financial firms are also on the point of moving their headquarters out of London.

3/4 NASA's latest Mars probe is .... to Earth later today. A spokesperson for NASA said that the probe would be bringing back rock samples that are .... exciting new information about the planet.

5/6 The Countryside Conservation Society is .... a new million-Euro scheme for the protection of endangered plant species. It is estimated that over 200 species are .... extinct in the country.

7/8 Sources at the United Nations have said that the governments of North and South Alicia are .... an agreement to end their long-running border dispute. However, any agreement is .... resistance from rebel forces in South Alicia, who have said they will fight on.

9/10 Tennis star Sancho Gomez is .... a second operation on his injured shoulder. He was .... tennis earlier this year after a first operation was unsuccessful.

11/12 EU agriculture ministers are .... an important announcement on increasing support to farmers when they meet in Brussels on Monday. 'Many farmers are .... out of business,' said the Italian representative, 'and the matter must be decided very soon.'

13.2 Complete the sentences with the verb pairs from the box. Use either the present simple or present continuous for the first verb. If both tenses are possible, write them both. B & C

aim – to study
propose – to deal
expect – to finish
resolve – to give up
~~look – to replace~~
guarantee – to find
intend – to move

1 My computer is now five years old, and I 'm looking to replace it with a faster one.
2 In the first half of the course we'll study microbiology, and in the second half I .... with genetic engineering.
3 We haven't completed the work yet, but we .... it later this week.
4 I haven't done much work at college so far, but I .... harder from now on.
5 Every New Year he .... eating biscuits, but by February he has started again.
6 We can't provide the spare parts ourselves, but we .... a supplier who can.
7 At the moment I commute for over three hours a day, but I .... closer to my work in the next few months.

13.3 Underline the possible options. D

1 I have passed your letter on to the manager who *shall* / *will* reply shortly.
2 Sorry, but I *shan't* / *won't* be able to give you a lift after all.
3 I think your parents *shall* / *will* be very happy with your decision.
4 Only people over the age of 18 *shall* / *will* be eligible to vote in the referendum.
5 You *shan't* / *won't* want to eat your dinner tonight after all that chocolate.

Unit
14

The future seen from the past

A

There are a number of ways of talking about an activity or event that was in the future at a particular point in the past. In order to express this idea, we can use the past tenses of the verb forms we would normally use to talk about the future. These forms are often used in reporting (see Units 32–36). Compare the following sentences:

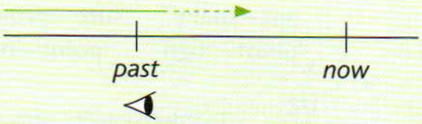

The future from now …	*The future from the past …*
○ I haven't got much money, so I think I**'ll stay** at home this summer.	○ Eleni decided that she **would stay** at home for the summer.
○ I**'m not going to say** anything about the exams today, because I don't have time.	○ I **wasn't going to say** anything about the exams, but the students asked me to.
○ I**'m having** a meeting with my tutor tomorrow to discuss my work.	○ I couldn't go to the match because I **was having** a meeting with my tutor.
○ **Will** you **be going** alone, or is Louise going with you?	○ At the time, I thought I **would be going** alone, but then Jan said he wanted to come.
○ The exam **will have finished** by three o'clock, so I'll see you then.	○ The exam was so easy that most people **would have finished** after 30 minutes.
○ There **is to be** a meeting of ministers this evening.	○ It was announced that there **was to be** a meeting of ministers that evening.
○ When the school closes, all the children **are to be moved** to one nearby.	○ Mrs Novak heard that she **was to be moved** to a post in a nearby school.
○ As the bell **is about to go** for the end of the lesson, pack your books away.	○ The bell **was about to go** when all the children started to pack their books away.

If the future seen from the past is still in the future for the speaker, then either form is possible:

○ It was announced this morning that there **is / was to be** a statement this evening.

In some cases we don't know whether the activity or event happened or not. Compare:

○ I didn't phone to give him the news because we **were seeing** each other later. He was very upset when I told him. (= we saw each other) *and*

○ We **were seeing** each other later that day, but I had to phone and cancel. (= we didn't see each other)

B

To talk about an activity or event that was in the future at a particular point in the past, we can use **was / were to + infinitive** (for things that actually happened) and **was / were to have + past participle** (for things that were expected, but didn't happen):

○ At the time she was probably the best actor in the theatre company, but in fact some of her colleagues **were to become** much better known.

○ The boat, which **was to have taken** them to the island, failed to arrive.

○ He **was to find out** years later that the car he had bought was stolen.

Note, however, that in less formal contexts it is more natural to use **be supposed to**:

○ I **was supposed to help**, but I was ill. (*more natural than* I was to have helped …)

Exercises

14.1 **Write ✓ if the italicised parts are correct. If they are wrong, correct them.** A

1 I'*m going to do* the washing, but we'd run out of washing powder.
2 The concert tonight *would be* over by about 9:30. We could eat after that.
3 When we *were passing* Ivan's house, we thought we'd drop in and see him.
4 A: Where shall I hang my coat? B: Sorry, I thought Ella *will have shown* you. Over there.
5 The manager of Newtown United said that the team *is to be announced* at nine tomorrow.
6 The second half *was about to start*, so shall we go back to our seats now?
7 I knew that by the morning I *would be feeling* exhausted, but I just wanted to go dancing.
8 A: Where's Oliver? He *is supposed* to be here yesterday, and there's still no sign of him.
B: I'*m about to ask* the same question.
9 I didn't phone Ben this morning because I *was going to see* him when I've finished work.
10 DNA testing *was to be used* by police in the search for the missing Dublin schoolboy. His parents have welcomed the news.
11 We *are meeting* at seven in the Globe coffee bar. Can you be there, too?
12 We didn't expect that having a rabbit as a pet *will cause* so many problems.

In which *three* cases can we use either a past or present tense form in the italicised parts?

14.2 **Choose the more appropriate option, (a) or (b), to complete these sentences.** B

1 The meeting was to have taken place in the hall, ...
a but had to be cancelled at the last minute.
b and was well attended.
2 She was to have appeared with Heath Ledger in his last film...
a and was a tremendous success.
b but the part went to her sister.
3 Later, in Rome, I was to meet Professor Pearce ...
a and was very impressed by his knowledge of Italian culture.
b but he left before I got there.
4 The twenty police officers who were to have gone off duty at eight ...
a went to the Christmas party.
b had to remain in the police station.
5 It was to take 48 hours to get to Japan ...
a and we were exhausted when we arrived.
b but we managed to do it in only a day.
6 After the war he was to teach at London University ...
a but no money was available to employ him.
b for ten years.
7 The bridge was to have been completed this year ...
a but a number of accidents have led to delays.
b and is to be opened by the president next month.
8 The new road was to have a major impact on traffic in the busy town centre, ...
a making life much easier for commuters.
b but the crowded roads continued.
9 The construction of the cathedral was to have begun in 1650 ...
a and go on for over 80 years.
b but a shortage of labour delayed the start for a further 20 years.
10 We were to stay with Rodrigo in Lisbon ...
a many times before he moved to Madrid.
b but he moved to Madrid.

Unit
15

Can, could, be able to and be allowed to

A

Can, could and be able to: ability

Reminder ➔ C1 – C7

We sometimes use **be able to** instead of **can** and **could** to talk about ability. We avoid **be able to** –

☆ when we talk about something that is happening as we speak:

☐ Watch me, Mum; I **can** stand on one leg.
(*not* … I'm able to stand on one leg.)

☆ before passives:

☐ Films **can** now easily *be streamed* online. (*rather than* Films are now easily able to be streamed …)

☆ when the meaning is 'know how to':

☐ **Can** you cook? (*rather than* Are you able to cook?)

B

If we talk about a single achievement, rather than a general ability in the past, we usually use **be able to** rather than **could**. Compare:

☐ Sophie **could** play the flute quite well. (*or* … **was able to** …; a general ability) *and*

☐ She swam strongly and **was able to** cross the river easily, even though it was swollen by the heavy rain. (*not* She swam strongly and could cross …; a specific achievement)

However, **could** is usually more natural than **be able to** –

☆ in negative sentences:

☐ I tried to get up but I **couldn't** move.

☆ with verbs of the senses, e.g. **feel**, **hear**, **see**, **smell**, **taste**, and with verbs of 'thinking', e.g. **believe**, **decide**, **remember**, **understand**:

☐ I **could** *remember* the crash, but nothing after that.

☆ after the phrases **the only thing** / **place** / **time,** and after **all** when it means 'the only thing':

☐ *All* we **could** see were his feet.

☆ to suggest that something almost didn't happen, particularly with **almost**, **hardly**, **just**, **nearly**:

☐ I **could** *nearly* touch the ceiling.

C

Can and could: possibility

To talk about the theoretical possibility of something happening we use **could**, not **can**. However, we use **can**, not **could**, to say that something is possible and actually happens. Compare:

☐ It **could** be expensive to keep a cat. (= if we had one, it could or it may not be expensive) *and*

☐ It **can** be expensive to keep a cat. (= it can be, and it sometimes is)

We use **can't**, not **couldn't**, to say that something is theoretically or actually impossible:

☐ There **can't** be many people in the world who haven't watched television.

☐ The doctor **can't** see you this morning; he's busy at the hospital.

D

We use **can** to indicate that there is a very real possibility of a future event happening. Using **could** suggests that something is less likely or that there is some doubt about it. Compare:

☐ We **can** stay with Jake in Oslo. (= we will be able to stay) *and*

☐ We **could** stay with Jake in Oslo. (= it's possible; if he's there)

E

Could and be allowed to: permission

To say that in the past someone had *general* permission to do something – that is, to do it at any time – we can use either **could** or **was / were allowed to**. However, to talk about permission for one *particular* past action, we use **was / were allowed to**, but not **could**. Compare:

☐ Anyone **was allowed to** fish in the lake when the council owned it. (*or* … **could** fish …) *and*

☐ Although he didn't have a ticket, Ned **was allowed to** come in. (*not* … could come in.)

In negative sentences, we can use either **couldn't** or **wasn't / weren't allowed to** to say that permission was not given in general *or* particular situations:

☐ I **couldn't / wasn't allowed to** open the present until my birthday.

Exercises

15.1 **Underline the correct or more natural option (or both if possible).** A & B

1 Valuables *can / are able to* be left in the hotel safe. Please ask at the reception desk.
2 We *could / were able to* finish the hockey match before it started snowing too heavily.
3 The rebels *could / were able to* draw on the support of over 20,000 soldiers.
4 *Could you / Were you able to* understand Professor Larsen's lecture? I found it really difficult.
5 A: Do you want a game? B: Sorry, I *can't / 'm not able to* play chess.
6 Look at me, I *can / 'm able to* ride my bike without any help.
7 When the firefighters arrived they *could / were able to* put out the flames in a couple of minutes.
8 The air was so polluted in the city centre, I *could hardly / was hardly able to* breathe.
9 I knew Petra had been decorating. I *could / was able to* smell the paint when I came in.
10 *Can you / Are you able to* drive without your glasses?
11 No changes *can / are able to* be made to this rail ticket after purchase.
12 He *could / was able to* untie the ropes without the guards noticing.
13 She looked all over the house, but *couldn't / wasn't able to* find her keys anywhere.
14 I was very busy at work, but I *could / was able to* have a couple of days off last week.

15.2 **Complete these blog posts with can, could and be allowed to (or two forms if possible). Use negative forms where necessary.** A–E

a

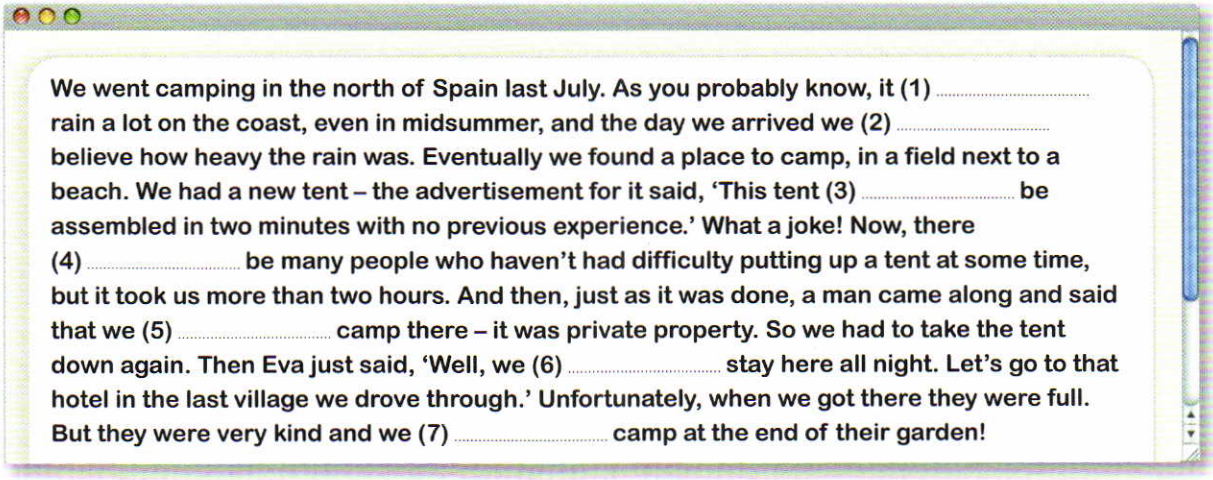

We went camping in the north of Spain last July. As you probably know, it (1) …………………… rain a lot on the coast, even in midsummer, and the day we arrived we (2) …………………… believe how heavy the rain was. Eventually we found a place to camp, in a field next to a beach. We had a new tent – the advertisement for it said, 'This tent (3) …………………… be assembled in two minutes with no previous experience.' What a joke! Now, there (4) …………………… be many people who haven't had difficulty putting up a tent at some time, but it took us more than two hours. And then, just as it was done, a man came along and said that we (5) …………………… camp there – it was private property. So we had to take the tent down again. Then Eva just said, 'Well, we (6) …………………… stay here all night. Let's go to that hotel in the last village we drove through.' Unfortunately, when we got there they were full. But they were very kind and we (7) …………………… camp at the end of their garden!

b

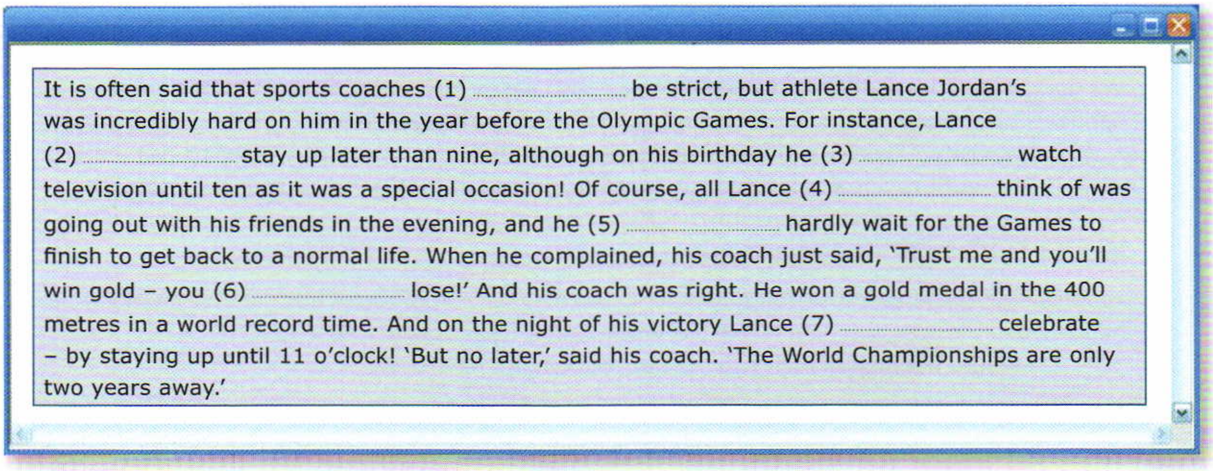

It is often said that sports coaches (1) …………………… be strict, but athlete Lance Jordan's was incredibly hard on him in the year before the Olympic Games. For instance, Lance (2) …………………… stay up later than nine, although on his birthday he (3) …………………… watch television until ten as it was a special occasion! Of course, all Lance (4) …………………… think of was going out with his friends in the evening, and he (5) …………………… hardly wait for the Games to finish to get back to a normal life. When he complained, his coach just said, 'Trust me and you'll win gold – you (6) …………………… lose!' And his coach was right. He won a gold medal in the 400 metres in a world record time. And on the night of his victory Lance (7) …………………… celebrate – by staying up until 11 o'clock! 'But no later,' said his coach. 'The World Championships are only two years away.'

→ Additional exercise 5 (page 242)

Unit
16

Will, would and used to

A

Will and would

Reminder ➔ C8 – C14

We can use **will** (for the present) and **would** (for the past) to talk about –

☆ characteristic behaviour or habits:

- ○ Every day Dan **will** come home from work and turn on the TV.
- ○ At school she **would** always sit quietly and pay attention.

☆ things that are or were always true:

- ○ Cold weather **will** kill certain plants.
- ○ During the war, people **would** eat all kinds of things that we don't eat now.

(For the use of **will** to talk about the future, see Unit 9.)

We don't use **will** or **would** in this way to talk about a *particular* occasion. Compare:

- ○ Each time I gave him a problem he **would solve** it for me. *and*
- ○ Last night I gave him a problem and he **solved** it for me. (*not* … he would solve it …)

However, we can use **will not** (**won't**) and **would not** (**wouldn't**) in either case. Compare:

- ○ He **would / wouldn't** walk the five miles to his place of work. (characteristic behaviour) *and*
- ○ She **wouldn't** say what was wrong when I asked her.

B

In speech, we can stress **will** or **would** to criticise people's characteristic behaviour or habits:

- ○ She just **won't** do the washing up when I ask her.
- ○ I was happy when Ryan left. He **would** talk about people behind their backs.

We can also express disapproval of something they have done using **will**:

- ○ 'I feel sick.' 'Well, if you **will** eat so much, I'm not surprised.'

C

We can use use **will** to draw conclusions or state assumptions about things that are the case now (see also Unit 9B):

- ○ Martina **will** be at home by now. Let's go and see her.
- ○ You **will** know that Ewan and Lucy are engaged. (= I assume you already know)

D

Would and used to

When we talk about repeated events in the past that don't happen now we can use either **would** or **used to + infinitive**. However, we can use **would** only if the time reference is clear. Compare:

- ○ We **used to play** in the garden. (*not* We would play …; time reference not given) *and*
- ○ Whenever we went to my uncle's house, we **would / used to play** in the garden.

We can use **used to** but not **would** when we talk about past states that have changed:

- ○ The factory **used to** be over there.
- ○ Didn't you **use to** have red hair?

We don't use either **used to** or **would** when we say exactly how many times in total something happened, how long something took, or that a single event happened at a given past time:

- ○ We **visited** Switzerland four times during the 1990s. (*not* We would / used to visit …)
- ○ She **went** to Jamaica last month. (*not* She would / used to go to Jamaica last month.)

E

Would / will have + past participle

To talk about an *unreal past* situation – that is, an imaginary situation or a situation that might have happened in the past, but didn't – we use **would have** + **past participle**:

- ○ I **would have been** happy to see him, but I didn't have time.

However, to say that we think a past situation actually happened, we use **will have + past participle**:

- ○ As it was cloudy, few people **will have seen** last night's lunar eclipse. (*rather than* … would have seen …)

Exercises

16.1 Complete the doctor and patient speech bubbles using **will** or **would** followed by one of these verbs. If **will** or **would** are not possible, use a verb in the past simple. A & C

be **cause** **exercise** **find** **have** **know** **sit** **spend**

1 Most days I .... eight hours or more in front of my computer.

2 Yesterday I .... a sharp pain in my lower back.

3 No, I'm not that fit now. When I was at college, I .... in the gym most days.

4 When I tried to stand I .... that I couldn't straighten up.

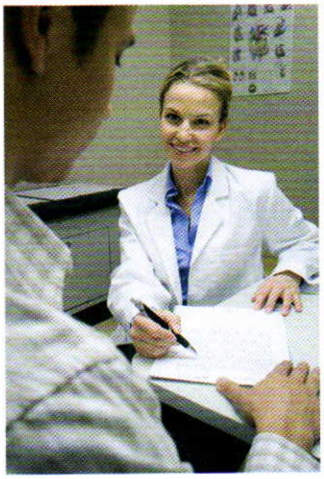

5 5 Over time poor posture .... back pain.

6 Before computers came along, people .... rarely .... still for so long.

7 I'm sure you .... about the need to take regular breaks.

8 That .... probably .... the result of sitting badly.

16.2 If necessary, correct these sentences using **would** or **used to**. If neither **would** nor **used to** is correct, use a past simple verb form. D

1 I would enjoy studying Latin when I was at school.
2 Orwell would spend winters in Spain and summers in England.
3 We would live in a bungalow on the south coast, and then we moved to a flat in town.
4 You used to teach at Halston University, didn't you?
5 On Saturdays and Sundays the ferry used to take tourists across to the island.
6 The committee would meet four times last week, but still no decision has been reached.

16.3 Complete these sentences with **will have** or **would have** and the past participle of one of these verbs. E

approve **buy** **hear** **hurt** **notice** **prefer** **watch**

1 According to official figures, over half the population .... the final of the song contest on TV last night.
2 I enjoyed the exhibition – but I don't think my grandmother .... of it.
3 I don't think the dog .... anyone, but I was still glad when the owner took it away.
4 I'm sure by now you .... about yesterday's robbery at the supermarket.
5 The train journey was quite comfortable, although I .... to fly.
6 Regular readers .... the return of a popular feature to our website.
7 A: Did you like the present Justin gave you for your birthday? B: Well, an umbrella stand isn't something I .... myself, but I suppose it might be useful.

16.4 Complete B's responses below to show criticism or disapproval. B

1 A: I think I'm putting on weight. B: Well, if you ....
2 A: I've got a headache. B: Well, if you ....
3 A: I'm really hot. B: Well, if you ....

➜ **Additional exercise 5** (page 242)

Unit
17

May and might

A

May and **might** often have a similar meaning when we talk about possibility. Reminder → C15 – C19
However, we prefer **may** in academic or formal language to talk about characteristics or behaviour:

☐ The seeds from the plant **may** grow up to 20 centimetres in length.

and in speech we prefer **might** to say what we will possibly do in the future:

☐ I **might** paint the kitchen purple.

B

We don't use **may** to ask questions about the possibility of something happening. Instead we use, for example, **could(n't)** or the phrase **be likely**:

☐ **Could** it be that you don't want to leave? (*not* May it be that you …?)
☐ **Are** you **likely** to be in Spain again this summer? (*not* May you be in Spain …?)

It is possible to use **might** in this type of question, but it is rather formal:

☐ **Might** they be persuaded to change their minds?

Note that we can use **may** in formally asking for permission and offering help:

☐ **May** I leave now? ☐ **May** I help you?

C

Might (not 'may') + **bare infinitive** is sometimes used to talk about what was *typically* the case in the past. This is a formal or literary use:

☐ During the war, the police **might** *arrest* you for criticising the government.
☐ Years ago children **might** *be sent* down mines at the age of six. (passive form)

We can also use **could** + **bare infinitive** in examples like this to talk about past ability (see Unit 15). For example, 'During the war, the police could arrest you …' means that the police were legally able to arrest you.

D

When we say that a person or thing compensates to some extent for a limitation or weakness by having another characteristic, we can use a pattern with **may / might not** + **bare infinitive** … **but** … or **may / might not have** + **past participle** … **but** …:

☐ The painting **may not** *be* a masterpiece, **but** the colours are remarkable.
☐ She **might not** *have danced* very gracefully, **but** she had a lot of energy and enthusiasm.

E

We use **may / might** (not 'can') + **have** + **past participle** and **may / might** (not 'can') + **be** + **-ing** to talk about possible events in the past, present and future:

☐ Do you think Laura **may / might have completed** the report by now? (past)
☐ His maths **may / might have improved** by the time the exam comes round. (future)
☐ Marco isn't in his office. He **may / might be working** at home today. (present)
☐ When I go to Vienna I **may / might be staying** with Max, but I'm not sure yet. (future)

Note that **could** can be used in these sentences instead of **may** or **might**:

☐ Do you think Laura **could have completed** the report by now?

We can use **may / might have been** + **-ing** to talk about possible situations or activities that went on over a period of past time:

☐ Callum didn't know where the ball was, but he thought his sister **might have been playing** with it before she left for school.

Exercises

17.1 **Complete the sentences with either may or might, whichever is more likely. If neither is possible, use an alternative.** A & B

1 We .... go to Majorca for our holiday this summer.
2 The planet Venus .... be seen clearly in the night sky this month.
3 .... you see Yasemin this weekend?
4 I feel really sore after playing tennis. I think I .... have a bath.
5 A: Someone's left their coat. B: .... it be Nadia's?
6 Exceeding the stated dose .... cause drowsiness.

17.2 **Underline the correct answer.** C & E

1 You should have come dancing. You *might have enjoyed / might enjoy* it.
2 She *might have tried / might have been trying* to get a book off the top shelf when she fell.
3 Dr Carter *might have come / might be coming* over this evening, so can you tidy the house up a bit?
4 As recently as the 1950s, employers *might be requiring / might require* a woman to leave her job when she got married.
5 I've been offered a new job, so I *may be moving / may have moved* to Dubai.
6 Why not come and see us in March? The weather *may have been improving / may have improved* by then.
7 During the riots of the 1960s, people *might be imprisoned / may be imprisoned* simply for being on the streets.
8 He said he was in a lot of pain, but he *may have been exaggerating / may exaggerate*.
9 In the past, left-handed children *might be punishing / might be punished* for not holding a pen in their right hand.
10 I *may have told / may tell* you this before. I can't remember.

17.3 **Complete these sentences in any appropriate way.** D

1 He may not be the best singer in the world, but ....
....
2 Hugh's old car might not be terribly comfortable, but ....
....
3 Her English grammar may not be very accurate, but ....
....

Now expand these notes to complete the sentences below.

sound / exciting **agree / him** **express / feelings openly** ~~**work / quickly**~~

4 He may / might not work very quickly but at least he's very reliable.
5 ...., but his opinions on music make you think.
6 ...., but she is really very fond of you.
7 ...., but the new museum of fishing is actually very good.

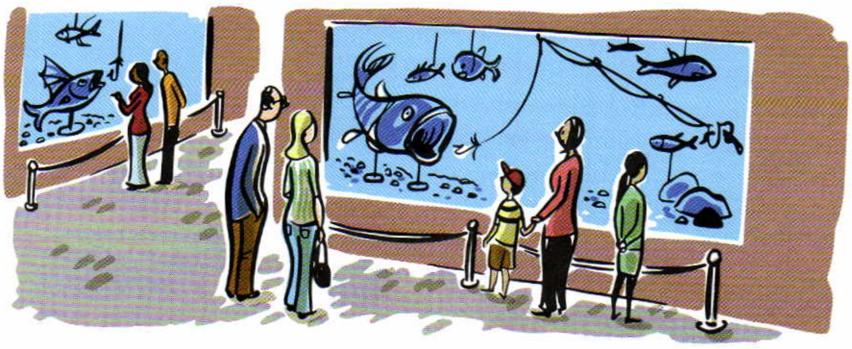

→ Additional exercise 5 (page 242)

Unit
18

Must and have (got) to

A

We use **must** and **must not** in formal rules and regulations and in warnings: Reminder ➜ C20–C24

○ Bookings **must** be made at least seven days before departure.
○ The government **must not** be allowed to appoint judges.

In spoken English we often use **must** and **mustn't** (= must not) to propose a future arrangement, such as a meeting or social event, without making detailed plans:

○ We **must** get together more often. ○ We **mustn't** leave it so long next time.

We can also use **I must** ... to remind ourselves to do something:

○ **I must** charge my phone. I meant to do it yesterday, but I forgot.

B

To draw a conclusion about –

☆ something that happened in the past we use **must** + **have** + **past participle**:
○ That's not Clara's car. She **must have borrowed** it from her parents.

☆ something happening at or around the time of speaking we use **must be** + **-ing**:
○ I can't hear a noise. You **must be imagining** things.

☆ something that is likely to happen in the future we use **must be going to** or **must be** + **-ing**:
○ 'What are all those workmen doing?' 'I think they **must be going to** dig up the road.'
○ I was wrong about the meeting being today. It **must be happening** next Friday.

☆ a present situation we use **must be**, or **have (got) to be** in informal speech:
○ Their goalkeeper **has got to be** at least two metres tall! (*or* ... **must be** ...)

We can use **must have to** to say that we conclude something based on what we know about a present situation and **must have had to** to conclude something about a past situation:

○ I can't access the database. You **must have to put in** a password. (= a password is necessary)
○ Matt wasn't at home when I went round. He **must have had to go** out unexpectedly.

Note that we can't say 'must've (got) to' but we can say **must've had to**.

C

In questions that hope for or expect a negative answer we prefer **have (got) to**, although in formal contexts **must** is sometimes used:

○ **Do** we **have to** answer all the questions? (*or* **Have** we **got to** ...?; *formally* **Must we** ...?)

We use **have to** in questions that imply a criticism. **Must** can also be used, although some people think this is rather old-fashioned. We usually stress **have** and **must** in sentences like this:

○ **Do** you **have to** play your trumpet here? It's deafening! (*formally* **Must** you play ...?)

D

Sometimes we can use either **have to** or **have got to**. However –

☆ we use **have to** with frequency adverbs:
○ I *often* **have to** work at the weekend to get everything done.

Also: **always**, **never**, **normally**, **rarely**, **sometimes**, etc.

☆ with the past simple we use **had to** especially in questions and negative sentences:
○ When **did** you **have to** give it back? (*not* When had you got to give it back?)
○ We **didn't have to** wait too long for an answer. (*not* We hadn't got to wait too long ...)

☆ if **have** is contracted (e.g. I've, He's, It'd) then we must include **got**:
○ I need a new pair of shoes, and they**'ve got to** be blue. (*not* ... they've to be ...)

☆ we don't use **have got to** with other modal verbs:
○ Motorists *will* **have to** wait until next year to use the bridge. (*not* Motorists will have got to wait ...)

Note also that **have got to** is often preferred in informal speech.

Exercises

18.1 Complete the sentences with one of these forms: **must have + past participle; must + bare infinitive; must be + -ing;** or **must have (had) to.** Use the verbs given. B

1 When I left my laptop on the train I thought I'd never see it again. But someone .... it and handed it in to the lost property office. (*find*)

2 Luisa owns a big car and a yacht. She .... incredibly rich. (*be*)

3 A: Everyone's going into the hall. B: The meeting .... soon. Let's go. (*start*)

4 Without things like washing machines and dishwashers our grandparents .... much harder in the kitchen than we do today. (*work*)

5 I didn't think Rob was coming to the meeting. He .... his mind. (*change*)

6 A: I wonder how you get past security.
B: I suppose you .... some form of ID. (*show*)

7 A: I thought Paul would be home.
B: He .... Lotta to work. He said he would. (*take*)

8 Look at all those birds. There .... at least a thousand of them. (*be*)

18.2 Write new sentences with a similar meaning. Use **have / has got to** where possible or preferable; if not, use **have / has to.** D

1 It is necessary to do all of this photocopying before lunchtime.
All of this photocopying has got to be done / has to be done before lunchtime

2 It is rarely necessary to ask Hannah to tidy her room. *Hannah …*

3 Is it necessary for us to hand in the homework tomorrow? *Have …*

4 It wasn't necessary for me to go to the hospital after all. *I …*

5 Was it necessary for Ben to go alone? *Did …*

6 It is sometimes necessary for Adam to start work at 6:30. *Adam …*

7 It is necessary to extend the college to accommodate the new students. *The college …*

8 It may be necessary to cancel our holiday because my mother is ill. *We …*

18.3 If necessary, correct the italicised parts of this email message. A–D

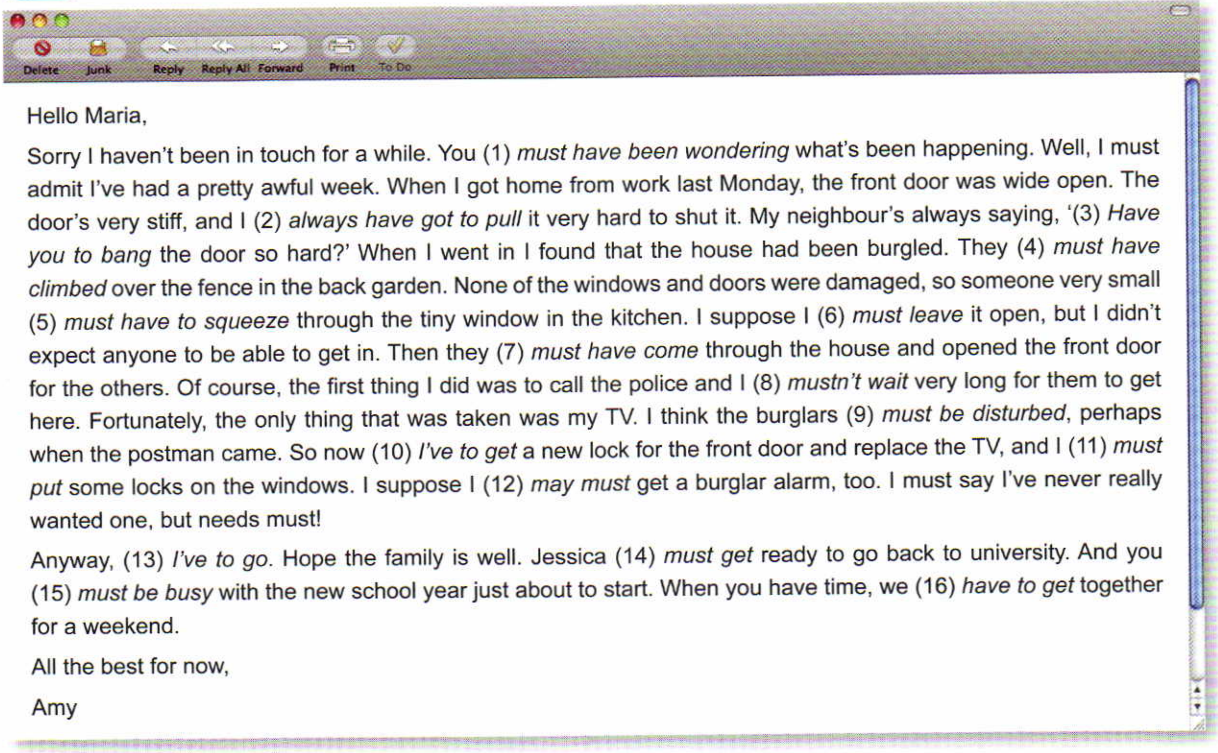

Hello Maria,

Sorry I haven't been in touch for a while. You (1) *must have been wondering* what's been happening. Well, I must admit I've had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The door's very stiff, and I (2) *always have got to pull* it very hard to shut it. My neighbour's always saying, '(3) *Have you to bang* the door so hard?' When I went in I found that the house had been burgled. They (4) *must have climbed* over the fence in the back garden. None of the windows and doors were damaged, so someone very small (5) *must have to squeeze* through the tiny window in the kitchen. I suppose I (6) *must leave* it open, but I didn't expect anyone to be able to get in. Then they (7) *must have come* through the house and opened the front door for the others. Of course, the first thing I did was to call the police and I (8) *mustn't wait* very long for them to get here. Fortunately, the only thing that was taken was my TV. I think the burglars (9) *must be disturbed*, perhaps when the postman came. So now (10) *I've to get* a new lock for the front door and replace the TV, and I (11) *must put* some locks on the windows. I suppose I (12) *may must* get a burglar alarm, too. I must say I've never really wanted one, but needs must!

Anyway, (13) *I've to go*. Hope the family is well. Jessica (14) *must get* ready to go back to university. And you (15) *must be busy* with the new school year just about to start. When you have time, we (16) *have to get* together for a weekend.

All the best for now,

Amy

Can you find three other common expressions with **must?**

→ Additional exercise 5 (page 242)

Unit 19

Need(n't), don't need to and don't have to

A

Reminder ➔ C25–C28

We can use **need** as an ordinary or a modal verb (followed by a bare infinitive). As a modal verb it doesn't change its tense and doesn't add '-s' for the third person singular. Compare:

☐ I **needed** to leave early. *or* ☐ She's thirsty. She **needs** a drink. (= ordinary verb) *and*
☐ You **needn't** *speak* so loudly. (= modal verb)

When it is a modal verb **need** is most commonly used in negative sentences:

☐ I've already cleaned the car so you **needn't** *bother* to do it.
☐ I was very nervous before the interview, but I **needn't** *have worried* – I got the job!

Other verbs often used with **need not (needn't): apply, concern, fear, involve, mean, panic**

It is sometimes used in questions, but we prefer to use **need** as an ordinary verb or **have to**:

☐ **Need** you **go** so soon? (= modal verb; less common and rather formal)
☐ **Do** you **need to go** so soon? (= ordinary verb) *or* ☐ **Do** you **have to go** so soon?

It is rarely used in affirmative sentences (that is, not questions or negatives), but is sometimes found in written English, particularly in fiction:

☐ We **need** *have* no fear for Nicole, she can take care of herself.

In other styles of formal written English it is used in this way with negative words such as **hardly**, **never**, **nobody / no one**, and **only**:

☐ The changes **need** *only* be small to make the proposals acceptable. (*less formally* The changes only need to be ...)
☐ *Nobody* ever **need** know about the money. (*less formally* Nobody ever needs to know ...)
☐ 'I don't want my parents to know.' 'They **need** *never* find out.' (*less formally* They never need to find out.)

B

To give permission not to do something we can use either **needn't** or **don't need to**:

☐ You **needn't cut** the grass, I'll do it later. (*or* You **don't need to cut** the grass ...)

To talk about a general necessity, we prefer **don't need to**:

☐ You **don't need to be** over 18 to get into a nightclub. (*rather than* You needn't be ...)

C

We can often use either **needn't** or **don't have to** with little difference in meaning to say that it is unnecessary to do something:

☐ You **needn't** whisper. Nobody can hear us. (*or* You **don't have to** ...)

However, some people prefer **needn't** when it is the speaker who decides the lack of necessity, and **don't have to** when somebody else or external rules make something unnecessary. Compare:

☐ As you worked late yesterday you **needn't** come in until ten tomorrow morning. (the speaker's decision) *and*
☐ We've been told that we **don't have to** be at work until ten tomorrow. (reporting someone else's decision.)

D

We can use **needn't** (or **don't have to**) to say that something is not necessarily true. We don't use **mustn't** in this way (see also Unit 18C):

☐ Volcanoes **needn't** erupt constantly to be classified as 'active'. (*or* Volcanoes **don't have to** erupt ...; *not* Volcanoes mustn't erupt ...)
☐ Nowadays it **needn't** cost a fortune to own an e-book reader. (*or* Nowadays it **doesn't have to** cost ...; *not* Nowadays it mustn't cost ...)

Exercises

19.1 **Match the sentence beginnings and ends. Join them with needn't and the bare infinitive of one of the verbs from the box.** A

bother **change** **concern** **panic** **worry**

1 I'll give you a lift to the station so you …
2 The questions are in the book so you …
3 All the windows have screens so you …
4 Our software provides full computer security so you …
5 The new tax laws don't come into force until next year so you …

… the details on the form.
… yourself with viruses.
… to copy them down.
… about booking a taxi.
… about being bitten by mosquitoes.

19.2 **Rewrite the following in a formal style using need.** A

1 It is hardly necessary for us to remind you that the money is now due.
We need hardly remind you that the money is now due.
2 It is only necessary for us to look at the rainfall figures to see the seriousness of the problem.
3 With such a lead in the opinion polls it is hardly necessary for the Democrats to bother campaigning before the election.
4 It is not necessary for anyone to know who paid the ransom to the kidnappers.
5 After such a huge lottery win, it is not necessary for him to work again.

19.3 **Underline the more likely option. If the options are equally likely, underline them both.** B

1 In most developed countries, people *needn't / don't need to* boil water before they drink it.
2 You *needn't / don't need to* walk. I'll give you a lift.
3 I'll email a summary of the lecture so you *needn't / don't need to* take notes.
4 You *needn't / don't need to* have a university degree to become a police officer.
5 You *needn't / don't need to* buy me a birthday present.
6 In most cities you *needn't / don't need to* pay to get into the galleries and museums.

19.4 **Correct any mistakes in the extracts from a speech made by the managing director of a company to her employees.** A–D

1 You needn't to worry about losing your jobs.
2 Need we make any changes in company policy?
3 Changes in technology mustn't be a problem, but in fact provide opportunities.
4 I don't have to remind you that we are competing with two other companies.
5 I need hardly to tell you how important it is that we get this order.
6 You don't have to cancel your holiday plans.
7 We mustn't allow our rate of production to drop.
8 The present financial difficulties mustn't mean that people will lose their jobs.

→ **Additional exercise 5** (page 242)

Unit
20

Should, **ought to** and **had better**

A

Reminder → C29– C32

We can often use either **should** or **ought to** to talk about obligations and recommendations (e.g. You **should / ought to** finish your homework before you go out) and probability (e.g. It **should / ought to** be ready by now) although in general **should** is used more frequently. **Ought to** is used particularly in speech and most often to talk about obligation rather than probability.

When we conclude, on the basis of some evidence we have, that something is certain or very likely we can use **must** (see Unit 18) but not **should / ought to**:

☐ It's the third time she's been skating this week. She **must** really enjoy it.

Note also the following details –

☆ we prefer **should** when we say what an outside authority recommends:

☐ The manual says that the computer **should** be disconnected from the power supply before the cover is removed. (*rather than* … ought to be disconnected …)

☆ we use **should** (or **would**), not **ought to**, when we give advice with **I** …:

☐ I **should** leave early tomorrow, if I were you. (*or* **I would** leave …; *or* I**'d** leave …)

☆ we prefer **should** in questions, particularly **wh-questions**:

☐ What **should** I do if I have any problems? ☐ **Should** I ring you at home?

B

We use **should / ought to** + **have** + **past participle** to talk about something that didn't happen in the past and we are sorry that it didn't:

☐ We **should / ought to have waited** for the rain to stop. (I'm sorry we didn't)

We often use this pattern to indicate some regret or criticism and the negative forms **shouldn't / oughtn't to have** are almost always used in this way.

We also use **should / ought to** + **have** + **past participle** to talk about an expectation that something happened, has happened, or will happen:

☐ If the flight was on time, he **should / ought to have arrived** in Jakarta early this morning.

C

We can use **should** in questions that are offers or that request confirmation or advice:

☐ **Should** I phone for a taxi for you?

☐ Who **should** I pass the message to?

Note that in sentences like these we can also use **shall** with a very similar meaning.

Compare the use of **shall** and **should** in sentences such as the following, where 'I shall' means 'I intend to' and 'I should' means 'I ought to':

☐ I **shall** read the script on the train tomorrow. (*or* I**'ll** read …) *and*

☐ I **should** read the script on the train tomorrow but I know that I'll be too tired.

D

We can use **had better** instead of **should / ought to**, especially in spoken English, to say that we think it is a good idea to do something:

☐ If you're not well, you**'d better** ask Clare to go instead. (*or* … you **should / ought to** …)

although we don't use it to talk about the past or to make general comments:

☐ You **should / ought to** have caught a later train. (*not* You had better have caught …)

☐ I don't think parents **should / ought to** give children sweets. (*not* … parents had better give …)

We prefer **had better** if we want to express particular urgency or in demands and threats:

☐ There's someone moving about downstairs. We**'d better** call the police, quickly.

Note that the negative form is **had better not**, and in questions the subject comes after **had**:

☐ He**'d better not** be late again or he'll be in trouble.

☐ **Had** we **better** get a taxi? (*or* **Should** we get …?)

Exercises

20.1 Complete these sentences with **should / ought to + infinitive** (active), **should / ought to be + past participle** (passive), or **should / ought to have + past participle** using each of the verbs from the box once only. A & B

answer arrive be go put remove resign send wear win

1 Thomas is running so well at the moment that he .... the 800 metres easily.
2 Where .... the cheese? In the fridge?
3 The tickets .... a couple of weeks before we go on holiday.
4 Payment for the full amount .... with this application form.
5 All packaging .... before switching on the printer for the first time.
6 It's important to look smart at the interview. You .... a suit.
7 There are many people who think the President .... years ago.
8 .... we .... the questions in English or in French?
9 If you want my advice, I .... by train rather than car.
10 I can't imagine what's happened to Nadia. She .... here by now.

20.2 In which sentences can you use **should** or **must** and in which can you only use **must**? Where both are possible, consider the difference between **should** and **must**. A

1 A timetable .... be set for withdrawing the army.
2 Lev isn't home yet. He .... have been held up at work.
3 A: I wonder how old Louis is?
B: Well, he went to school with my mother, so he .... be well over 50.
4 If you smell gas, you .... phone the emergency number.
5 You .... try to visit Nepal – it's a beautiful country.
6 A: I know I'm always complaining that my house is small, but it's very convenient for work.
B: Yes, it .... be handy living so close to your office.

20.3 If necessary correct these conversations using **should / ought to**, **must**, **shall**, or **had better**, or write ✓. A, C & D

1 A: There's something wrong with David's computer yet again.
B: He should wish he'd never bought it.
2 A: The next meeting's on 3rd April.
B: I'd better make a note of that, or I'll forget.
3 A: Have you put on weight recently?
B: Yes. I shall do more exercise, but I never seem to have time.
4 A: The children from next door have been throwing stones at our windows.
B: Well, they shouldn't do it again, otherwise I'll call the police.
5 A: I'm freezing.
B: You'd better have worn a thicker coat.
6 A: Businesses had better not be allowed to give money to political parties.
B: I totally agree.
7 A: When have we got to be in Bristol?
B: By four. I think we'd better get started.
8 A: Do you want to go out for lunch?
B: Well, I should be revising for my maths exam … but okay.
9 A: I've looked all over the house and can't find the keys.
B: Well, if they're not here, they must still be in the car.
10 A: It's so expensive to park here.
B: Yes, I don't think people had better pay to park at work at all.

→ Additional exercise 5 (page 242)

Unit 21

Linking verbs: **be**, **appear**, **seem**; **become**, **get**, etc.

A

When an adjective or noun phrase is used after a verb to describe the subject or say what or who the subject is, the adjective or noun phrase is a *complement* and the verb is a *linking verb*:

☐ Clara **is** *a doctor*. ☐ She **seemed** *unable to concentrate*.

Other linking verbs:
'being' linking verbs: e.g. **be, keep, prove, remain, stay**
'becoming' linking verbs: e.g. **become, come, end up, grow, turn out**
'seeming' linking verbs: e.g. **appear, look, seem, sound**

Most of these verbs can be followed by either an adjective or noun phrase (e.g. It **sounds nice / a nice place**).

When they are used as linking verbs, **come** and **grow** (e.g. **come to know**, **grow thoughtful**) can't be followed by a noun phrase.

Keep is only followed by a noun if an adjective follows it (e.g. It **kept him awake**).

B

After the verbs **appear** (= seems true), **look** (= seem), **prove**, **seem**, and **turn out** we can often either include or omit **to be**:

☐ The room **appears** (**to be**) *brighter* than when I last saw it.

However, following these verbs **to be** is usually included before the adjectives **alive**, **alone**, **asleep**, and **awake**, and before the **-ing** forms of verbs:

☐ I didn't go in because **she appeared to be** *asleep*. (*not* … she appeared asleep.)

Before a noun we include **to be** when the noun tells us what the subject is, but often leave it out when we give our opinion of the person or thing in the subject. We leave out **to be** in formal English. Compare:

☐ He walked into what **seemed to be** *a cave*. (*not* … what seemed a cave.) *and*

☐ She **seems** (**to be**) *a very efficient salesperson*.

C

We use the linking verb **become** to describe a process of change. A number of other linking verbs can be used instead of **become**, including **come**, **get**, **go**, **grow**, **turn** (**into**).

We use **get** rather than **become**: in informal speech and writing before **difficult**, **ill**, **interested**, **pregnant**, **suspicious**, **unhappy**, and **worried**; in imperatives; and in phrases such as **get changed** (clothes), **get dressed**, **get married / divorced**:

☐ I first **got** *suspicious* when he looked into all the cars. (*more formally* … **became** *suspicious* …)

☐ *Don't* **get** *upset* about it! ☐ Where did you live before you **got** *married*?

We prefer **become** to talk about a more abstract or technical process of change:

☐ He **became** *recognised* as an expert.

☐ Their bodies **have become** *adapted* to high altitudes.

Also with: **apparent, aware, convinced, infected, irrelevant, obvious**

We use **become**, not **get**, if there is a noun phrase after the linking verb:

☐ Dr Morales **became** *an adviser* to the government.

D

We use **go** or **turn**, not usually **get** or **become**, when we talk about colours changing:

☐ The traffic lights **turned** / **went** *green* and I pulled away.

We often use **go** to talk about changes, particularly for unwanted situations. For example:

go deaf / blind / bald; **go mad / crazy / wild**;
go bad / off / mouldy / rotten; **go bust**; **go dead**;
go missing; **go wrong**.
But note: **get ill**, **get old**, **get tired**.

☐ The company **went bust** and had to close.

☐ My computer's **gone wrong** again.

☐ Some people **get ill** very easily.

After the verbs **come**, **get**, and **grow** (but not after **become)** we can use a **to-infinitive**. **Come** and **grow** are often used to talk about gradual change:

☐ I eventually **came** / **grew** *to appreciate* his work. (*not* … became to appreciate his work.)

Exercises

21.1 Put brackets around **to be** in these sentences if it can be left out. B

1 The job turned out to be far easier than I'd expected.
2 When I looked through the window, Ella appeared to be alone.
3 What he called his 'little cottage in the country' proved to be a castle.
4 Hassan proved to be an excellent source of information about the town.
5 She appeared to be satisfied with the work I'd done.
6 I've adjusted the aerial and the television seems to be working okay now.
7 When I picked the crab up I thought it was dead, but it turned out to be alive and pinched me.
8 With only five minutes of the match left, Spain look to be heading to victory.
9 A: We've decided to buy a Ford. B: That seems to be a very good choice.
10 He only looked to be about ten years old, but I knew he must be a lot older.

21.2 Complete the sentences with an appropriate form of **become** or **get**. C

1 Give me a few minutes to .... changed, and then I'll be ready to go.
2 The state of the railways .... a major political issue during the last election campaign.
3 Research has shown that women who .... pregnant while dieting increase their child's risk of obesity.
4 The reasons for my decision will .... clear at the next meeting.
5 Don't .... annoyed with me, but I've lost the car keys.
6 I didn't finish the book. I just couldn't .... interested in it.
7 After the strange events in the house she .... convinced that it was haunted.
8 I had just .... divorced when I met Marianne.

21.3 Complete each sentence with an appropriate form of one of the verbs in brackets and a word or phrase from the box. D

~~berserk~~ blind bust dead to know to like red tired

1 I was at a zoo once when an elephant ...went berserk... and attacked its keeper. (*go / turn*)
2 A few seconds later the line .... and Marc put down the handset. (*go / turn*)
3 After the spider bit Rachel her ankle .... and started to swell up. (*go / get*)
4 He's actually quite friendly when you .... him. (*become / get*)
5 I'll take over driving when you .... (*get / go*)
6 We soon .... each other and have been great friends ever since. (*become / come*)
7 The doctor told me that without immediate treatment I might .... (*go / turn*)
8 The company .... when the bank wouldn't lend it any more money. (*go / get*)

21.4 If necessary, correct the italicised parts of this blog. A–D

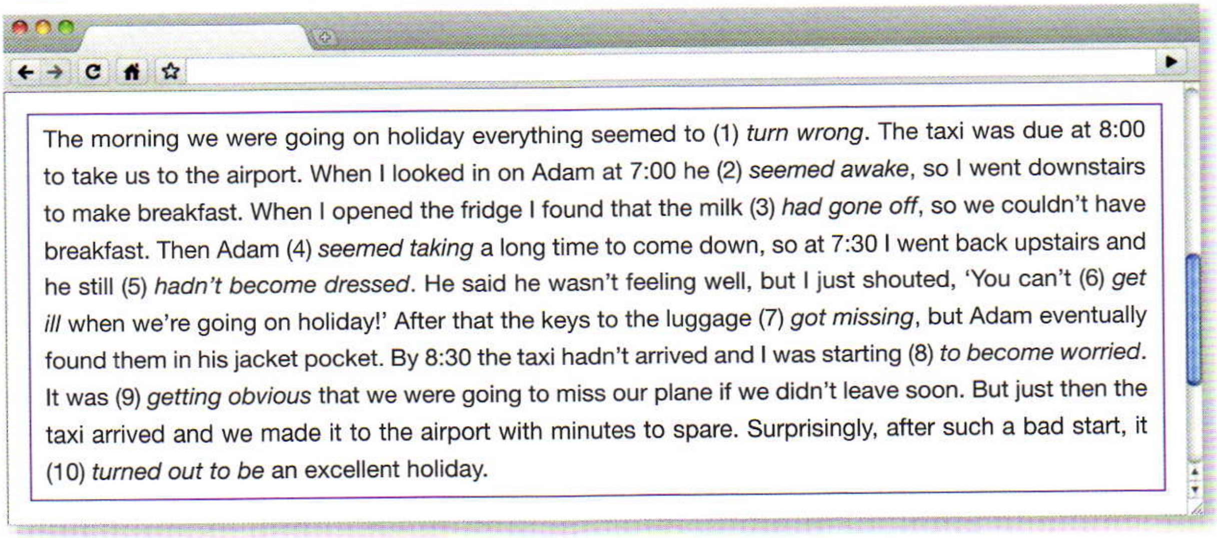

The morning we were going on holiday everything seemed to (1) *turn wrong*. The taxi was due at 8:00 to take us to the airport. When I looked in on Adam at 7:00 he (2) *seemed awake*, so I went downstairs to make breakfast. When I opened the fridge I found that the milk (3) *had gone off*, so we couldn't have breakfast. Then Adam (4) *seemed taking* a long time to come down, so at 7:30 I went back upstairs and he still (5) *hadn't become dressed*. He said he wasn't feeling well, but I just shouted, 'You can't (6) *get ill* when we're going on holiday!' After that the keys to the luggage (7) *got missing*, but Adam eventually found them in his jacket pocket. By 8:30 the taxi hadn't arrived and I was starting (8) *to become worried*. It was (9) *getting obvious* that we were going to miss our plane if we didn't leave soon. But just then the taxi arrived and we made it to the airport with minutes to spare. Surprisingly, after such a bad start, it (10) *turned out to be* an excellent holiday.

Unit
22
Forming passive sentences 1

A

Verbs such as **give** take both a direct object (DO) and an indirect object (IO) in two patterns: **V + IO + DO** or **V + DO + preposition + IO**. These verbs have two corresponding passives:

Reminder ➜ Section D & Appendix 2

active **V + IO + DO** **V + DO + prep + IO**	passive
Alice gave us that vase. ✓	We were given that vase (by Alice). ✓
Alice gave that vase to us. ✓	That vase was given (to) us (by Alice). ✓

Also: **award, hand, lend, offer, send, throw** (= 'giving' verbs)**; ask, read, teach** (= 'telling' verbs)

The passive form you choose depends on which is more appropriate in a particular context. If we specify an agent (see Appendix 2), this follows **by** at the end of the clause. Note that in informal contexts 'to' can be left out in the second passive pattern.

Verbs that can't be followed by **IO + DO** in the active have only one of these passive forms:

active **V + DO + prep + IO**	passive
~~He explained me the problem.~~ ✗ He explained the problem to me. ✓	~~I was explained the problem.~~ ✗ The problem was explained to me. ✓

Also: **announce, demonstrate, describe, introduce, mention, propose, report, suggest** (= 'reporting' verbs)

B

Verbs followed by **object + complement** in the active have one passive form:

active **V + object + complement**	passive
They elected her president.	She was elected president.

Also: **appoint, declare, make, nominate, vote** (to do with giving a particular position); **call, name, title** (= 'naming' verbs)

C

Some verbs that are followed by **object + bare infinitive** (= an infinitive without 'to') in the active are followed by a **to-infinitive** in the passive:

active **V + object + bare infinitive**	passive
They have made him return the money.	He has been made to return the money.

Also: **feel, hear, help** (*also* + object + **to-infinitive**), **observe, see** (see also Unit 23A)

D

Transitive two- and three-word verbs (see also Unit 94)

Some have passive forms:

active	passive
Ella **looked after** him.	He was looked after (by Ella).

Also: **carry out** (= put into practice), **disapprove of, hold over** (= delay), **talk down to** (= patronise)

Some are not used in the passive:

active	no passive
We **came up against** a problem.	~~A problem was come up against.~~ ✗

Also: **brush up on** (= revise), **cast (your mind) back** (= try to remember), **get (something) down** (= write), **take after** (= resemble)

Some can be only used in the passive with certain senses:

active	passive
They **put out** the fire. I **put out** a hand to steady myself.	The fire was put out. ~~A hand was put out to steady myself.~~ ✗

Also: (passive possible meaning / no passive meaning): **call (someone) up** (order to join the army / telephone); **call (someone) back** (ask to return / telephone); **let in** (allow into a place / allow rain, etc. in); **let out** (allow to leave / let out a sound)

Exercises

22.1 **Rewrite the sentences using one or, if possible, two passive forms. Look carefully at the tense.** **A**

1 Someone handed me a note. I was handed a note. / A note was handed to me .
2 Someone offered her a second-hand bicycle.
3 Someone has proposed improvements to the developers.
4 Someone suggested some interesting changes to me.
5 Someone awarded him a prize.
6 Someone will announce the President's arrival to the waiting journalists.
7 Someone had mentioned the password to the thieves.
8 Someone has lent me some skis.
9 Someone is sending me a lot of spam emails.
10 Someone is going to explain the changes to the students.

22.2 **Complete each first sentence with a suitable form of a verb from the box. Then complete the second sentence using the same verb and the passive.** **A, B & C**

appoint **declare** **demonstrate** **~~help~~** **introduce** **see**

1 People helped Rob to his feet after the accident.
Rob was helped to his feet after the accident .
2 Tony .... me to Mrs Rossi at his birthday party. I ....
....
3 Has anyone .... Chris this morning? Has Chris ....
.... ?
4 They .... Sven Larsen Regional Sales Director for Scandinavia.
Sven Larsen ....
5 I am certain that Sarah .... her suitability as company director to those who still have any doubt. I am certain that Sarah's suitability as company director ....
....
6 They .... Alan Watson winner of the election after a recount.
Alan Watson ....

22.3 **If possible, rewrite each sentence using a passive form of the italicised two- or three-word verb. If not, write 'No passive'.** **D**

1 Children often *look up to* strict teachers.
Strict teachers are often looked up to by children.
2 The company *phased out* the product over a period of three years.
....
3 The students *got* the information *down* as fast as they could.
....
4 The decision has *deprived* many people *of* the right to vote.
....
5 People often *brush up on* a foreign language just before a holiday.
....
6 Ben *called* Mrs Patel *back* as soon as he got home.
....
7 The chairperson *held over* the last two items until the next committee meeting.
....
8 The farmer *prevented* walkers *from* crossing the field after he *fenced* it *off*.
....

→ **Additional exercise 6** (page 243)

Unit
23

Forming passive sentences 2: verb + -ing or to-infinitive

A

Active patterns with verb + -ing

Verbs followed by **object** + **-ing** in the active are made passive with '**be**' + **past participle** + **-ing**:

☐ They **saw** *the monkey* **climbing** over the fence. (= active)
☐ *The monkey* **was seen climbing** over the fence. (= passive)

Also: **bring**, **catch**, **hear**, **find**, **keep**, **notice**, **observe**, **send**, **show**

B

Some verbs that can be followed by an **-ing** form can be used with a passive form **being** + **past participle**:

☐ I really **love being given** presents.
☐ The children **enjoyed being taken** to the zoo.

Also: **avoid, deny, describe, dislike, face, hate, (not) imagine, like, remember**, **report**, **resent**

C

Verbs which in the active are followed by an object consisting of a noun phrase and **-ing clause** usually have no passive:

☐ I dread **him** (*or* **his**) **finding out**. (*but not* He is dreaded finding out)

Also: **anticipate, appreciate, dislike, forget, hate, imagine, like, (not) mind**, **recall**, **remember**

D

Active patterns with verb + to-infinitive

The active pattern **verb** + **object** + **to-infinitive** is made passive with '**be**' + **past participle** + **to-infinitive**. Compare:

☐ Mr Wang **has taught** *Peter* **to sing** for years. *and*
☐ Peter **has been taught to sing** (by Mr Wang) for years.

Also: **advise**, **allow**, **ask**, **believe**, **consider**, **expect**, **feel**, **instruct**, **mean**, **order**, **require**, **tell**, **understand**

Note that in some contexts it is possible to make both verbs passive:

☐ Changes to the taxation system **are expected to be proposed**. (*compare the active* We **expect** the government **to propose** changes to the taxation system.)

Some verbs followed by an **object + to-infinitive** in the active have no passive:

☐ Susan **liked Karl to be** there. (*but not* Karl was liked to be there.)

Also: (**can't**) **bear**, **hate**, **love**, **need**, **prefer**, **want**, **wish** (= 'liking' and 'wanting' verbs)

E

The active pattern **verb** + **to-infinitive** + **object** is made passive with **verb** + **to be** + **past participle**. Compare:

☐ Supermarkets **started to sell** *fresh pasta* only in the 1990s. *and*
☐ *Fresh pasta* **started to be sold** by supermarkets only in the 1990s.

Also: (i) **appear**, **begin**, **come**, **continue**, **seem**, **tend**;
(ii) **agree**, **aim**, **arrange**, **attempt**, **hope**, **refuse**, **want**

The verbs in group (i) (and **start**) have corresponding meanings in active and passive sentences, but the verbs in group (ii) do not. Compare:

☐ People have come to see organic food as something only the wealthy eat. (active) *corresponds to*
☐ Organic food has come to be seen as something only the wealthy eat. (passive)
☐ Petra wanted to help me. (active) *does not correspond to*
☐ I wanted to be helped by Petra. (passive)

Exercises

23.1 Complete each sentence using one pair of verbs from the box. Use either **was / were + past participle + -ing** or **past simple + being + past participle.** A & B

avoid – take **deny – involve** **face – expel** **find – wander** ~~**keep – wait**~~
leave – hold **observe – hide** **remember – bite** **resent – give** **send – tumble**

1 Inger ....was kept waiting.... for over three hours when she went for her dental appointment.
2 When the police first questioned him, Wayne .... in the robbery.
3 I .... the baby while Karen went to answer the door.
4 When I woke up in hospital, I .... by the snake but nothing after that.
5 They .... prisoner by pretending to be dead.
6 The man .... a suspicious package under a seat in the train.
7 When the bike hit her, Ana .... to the ground.
8 Two teenagers yesterday .... from school after they were found with over a hundred stolen mobile phones.
9 The man was taken to hospital when he .... lost and alone in the forest.
10 Tarik had worked in the company for 30 years and he rather .... orders by people who had been there only weeks.

23.2 Rewrite the sentences using one pair of words from the box. Use passive forms with **past participle + -ing, past participle + to-infinitive,** or **past simple + being + past participle.** A–D

~~**ask – show**~~ **catch – shoplifting** **expect – attract** **hear – argue**
hate – tease **mind – criticise** **observe – enter** **require – complete**

1 They wanted us to show our passports at the border.
We were asked to show our passports at the border.
2 They could hear Emil and Laura shouting at each other next door.
Emil and Laura ....
3 The other children made Ollie unhappy when they teased him.
Ollie ....
4 They saw the burglar getting into the museum through a window.
The burglar ....
5 They think that over 20,000 people will go to the pop concert.
The pop concert ....
6 They criticised her but she wasn't unhappy about it.
She ....
7 They said I had to fill in two copies of the customs declaration.
I ....
8 They caught Mrs Dee taking things from the shop.
Mrs Dee ....

23.3 Make passive sentences beginning with the italicised word(s). E

1 Kay's questions began to irritate *Marco*.
Marco began to be irritated by Kay's questions. (corresponding meaning)
2 The team captain hopes to select *Omar*.
3 Alastair arranged to take *Kathy* to the station.
4 Critics have come to recognise *Galdos* as one of Spain's greatest novelists.
5 The south coast continues to attract *holidaymakers*.
6 Harris has agreed to interview *the Finance Minister*.

Do the sentences you have written have a corresponding meaning to the original, or a different meaning? Look carefully at the tense in the sentences given.

→ Additional exercise 6 (page 243)

Unit 24

Using passives

A

We typically use a passive rather than an active in the following situations.

Reminder ➔ Section D & Appendix 2

☆ Using a passive allows us to omit the agent (= the subject of the corresponding active sentence) by leaving out the prepositional phrase with **by**. We prefer passives when the agent:

– is not known: ☐ My office **was broken into** when I was on holiday.
– is 'people in general': ☐ An order form **can be found** on page 2.
– is unimportant: ☐ He **is thought** to be somewhere in Russia.
– is obvious: ☐ She **is being treated** in hospital. (the agent is clearly 'medical staff')

☆ In factual writing (e.g. describing procedures or processes) we often omit the agent, and use passives:

☐ Nuclear waste will still be radioactive even after 20,000 years, so it **must be disposed of** very carefully. It **can be stored** as a liquid in stainless-steel containers which **are encased** in concrete. The most dangerous nuclear waste **can be turned** into glass which **will be stored** in deep underground mines.

☆ In informal contexts, particularly in conversation, we often use active sentences with a subject such as **people**, **somebody / someone**, **something**, **they**, **we**, or **you** even when we do not know who the agent is. In more formal contexts, we often prefer to use a passive so that we can avoid any mention of an agent. Compare:

☐ **They're installing** the new computer system next month. *and*
☐ The new computer system **is being installed** next month. (*more formal*)

B

Note also that some verbs have related nouns which express the same meaning. These nouns can be used as the subject of passive sentences, with a new passive verb introduced. Compare the example above and:

☐ The **installation** of the new computer system **will be completed** by next month.

C

In English we usually prefer to put the topic (what is already being talked about) at the beginning of a sentence (or clause) and a comment on that topic at the end. Choosing the passive often allows us to do this. Compare these two texts and note where the topic (in *italics*) is placed in the second sentence of each. The second text uses a passive where the emphasis is on the (safety) valves:

☐ The three machines tested for the report contained different types of safety valve. The Boron Group in Germany manufactured *all the valves*.
☐ The three machines tested for the report contained different types of safety valve. *All the valves* were manufactured by the Boron Group in Germany.

Using the passive allows us to put long subjects at the end of a sentence. So, for example:

☐ **I was surprised** by Dev's decision to give up his job and move to Sydney.

is more natural than '*Dev's decision to give up his job and move to Sydney* surprised me', although the choice can depend on considerations of style and context.

D

Instead of making a **that-clause** the subject of a passive sentence, it is normal to use an **it-clause** (see also Unit 25):

☐ Everybody **believed** (that) the plan would fail. (*active*)
☐ **It was believed** that the plan would fail. (*passive*) *is more natural than*
☐ *That the plan would fail* **was believed** by everybody.

Exercises

24.1 **Write passive sentences about the development of an Olympic Games site starting with the italicised words.** **A & Appendix 2**

1 They built *the main stadium* in under three years.
The main stadium was built in under three years.

2 They have designed *the main stadium* to accommodate many different sports.

3 They will take down *the temporary stands* after the Games.

4 They will have completed *the basketball arena* by the end of May.

5 They are holding *the rowing competition* on the River Nene.

6 They had completed *the athletics track* only a year after the city got the Olympics.

7 They were using *the handball venue* as a warehouse until a year ago.

8 They should have finished *the badminton arena* by now.

24.2 **Rewrite these sentences beginning with a noun formed from the italicised verb (with the if necessary). Use a passive form of the verb in brackets, and make any other necessary changes.** **B**

1 They will *consider* the issue at next week's meeting. (*give*)
Consideration will be given to the issue at next week's meeting.
2 They will *appoint* a new managing director next week. (*make*)
3 People have *accused* the local council of corruption. (*make*)
4 They *demolished* the building in only two days. (*complete*)
5 They will *present* the trophy after the speeches. (*make*)
6 Local residents will certainly *resist* the proposed new industrial area. (*expect*)

24.3 **Complete the text with appropriate forms (active or passive) of the verbs in brackets.** **A–D**

Slowly but surely the coastline of Britain (1) is being worn away (*wear away*) by an advancing sea. The country which once 'ruled the waves' now (2) .... (*rule*) by them, with huge forces threatening to destroy vast areas of human and wildlife habitat. Already some of Britain's last wild, natural areas (3) .... (*disappear*), and experts (4) .... (*fear*) that this is just the beginning. It (5) .... (*estimate*) that there will be a 38–55 cm rise in average sea levels by the year 2100. According to the Department of the Environment, during the next 50 years at least 10,000 hectares of farmland (6) .... (*turn into*) mud flats and salt marshes by the increases in sea levels. Rather than trying to prevent the erosion, the present government (7) .... (*use*) a method of 'managed retreat' by creating new defences further inland and allowing low-lying coastal farmland (8) .... (*abandon*) to the sea. However, many of the country's major cities could also (9) .... (*affect*). London, Bristol and Cardiff all (10) .... (*expect*) severe flooding as our sea defences (11) .... (*destroy*) by the rising tides.

→ Additional exercise 6 (page 243)

Unit 25

Reporting with passives; **It is said that** …

A

We often use a passive to report what people say, think, etc., particularly if it is not important to mention who is being reported:

○ People in the area **have been told** that they should stay indoors.
○ Everyone **was asked** to bring some food to the party.

B

Another common way of reporting what is said by an unspecified group of people is to use **it** + **passive verb** + **that-clause** (see Unit 33 for more on **that-clauses**). Using this pattern allows us to put important information at the end of the sentence (see Unit 24C):

○ **It is reported** *that* the damage is extensive. (*compare* The damage is extensive, according to government sources.)
○ **It was decided** *that* the meeting should be cancelled. (*or* It was decided to cancel the meeting.)

Also: **allege, announce, assume, believe, calculate, claim, consider, demonstrate, discover, establish, estimate, expect, feel, find, know, mention, recommend, reveal, say, show, suggest, suppose, think, understand; agree, decide, hope, intend, plan, propose** (can also be followed by a **to-infinitive clause**)

Note that many other verbs connected with reporting are *not* used with **it + passive verb + that-clause**, but can be used as in **A:**

○ We **have been informed** that we have to leave. (*but not* It has informed us …)

Also: **encourage, persuade, reassure, remind, tell, warn**

These verbs need a personal object before the **that-clause** in an active form (e.g. They have informed **us** that …)

C

An alternative to **it** + **passive verb** + **that-clause** is to use **subject** + **passive verb** + **to-infinitive** if we want the subject to be the topic of the sentence (see Unit 24C). Compare:

○ **It is reported** *that* the damage is extensive. *and*
○ **The damage is reported** *to be* extensive.

Most of the verbs listed in the first white box in **B** can also be used in this pattern except for **announce**, **decide**, **mention**, **propose**, **recommend**, **suggest**.

We can only use **tell** in this pattern when it means 'order'. So we can say:

○ **I was told** (= ordered) **to go** with them to the railway station.

but not 'The accident was told (= said) to have happened just after midnight'.

D

With some verbs we can also use **it** + **passive verb** + **wh-clause** to report information given or found out:

○ **It has now been revealed** *who* was responsible for the accident.
○ The decision to build the bridge was taken before **it was established** *whether* it was actually needed.

Also: **discover**, **explain**, **find**, **know**, **reveal**, **show**, **understand**

E

When a **that-clause** begins **that** + **there** …, we can make a corresponding passive form **there** + **passive verb** + **to be** / **to have been**. Compare:

○ **It is thought** (**that**) **there are** too many obstacles to peace. *and*
○ **There are thought to be** too many obstacles to peace.

We can use the same verbs in this pattern as with **subject** + **passive verb** + **to-infinitive** (see **C**).

Exercises

25.1 **Which of the verbs in brackets can complete the sentence? Underline one or both.** B & D

1 It was .... to hold new negotiations next month. (*agreed / announced*)
2 It has been .... that the crash was the result of pilot error. (*proposed / shown*)
3 It was .... that Mrs Ho would chair the meeting. (*hoped / explained*)
4 It has been .... to appoint Dr Ahmadi as head teacher. (*decided / suggested*)
5 It has not yet been .... who was responsible for the error. (*claimed / explained*)
6 It has now been .... that half of cancer cases are lifestyle-related. (*established / revealed*)
7 It is .... to employ 500 people in the factory. (*expected / intended*)
8 It is .... to close the library permanently from next April. (*planned / recommended*)
9 It is .... that another moon landing will take place next year. (*assumed / thought*)
10 It has been .... how spiders are able to travel across the sea. (*discovered / said*)

25.2 **If possible, rewrite these newspaper headlines as passive sentences with it. If not, write ✗.** A & B

1 **AGREEMENT THAT UN WILL SEND IN TROOPS**
It has been agreed that the UN will send in troops.

2 **PATIENTS REASSURED ABOUT HOSPITAL SAFETY**

3 **WATER DISCOVERED ON MARS**

4 ***TERRORISTS BELIEVED TO BE OPERATING IN BERLIN***

5 **MOON ASTRONAUTS EXPECTED TO RETURN TODAY**

6 **EX-PRESIDENT JULIUS REVEALED AS SPY**

7 **WARNING GIVEN ABOUT COMPUTER VIRUS**

8 **KING SAID TO BE MAKING GOOD RECOVERY**

9 **RESTAURANT ESTABLISHED AS SOURCE OF FOOD POISONING OUTBREAK**

10 **POLICE TOLD TO WORK LONGER HOURS**

25.3 Write two new sentences for each numbered sentence below, using **it + passive verb + that-clause** in one sentence and **subject + passive verb + to-infinitive** in the other. (The second pattern may not always be possible.) C

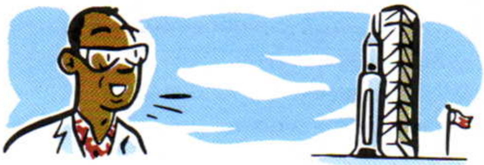

(1) We have discovered that a mechanical fault caused the problem. (2) We don't think that the fault is serious. (3) We expect that it will take several weeks to correct the fault. (4) We have decided to postpone the next rocket launch, and (5) we suggest that the next launch should take place in May.

1 *It has been discovered that a mechanical fault caused the problem. / A mechanical fault was discovered to have caused the problem.*

→ Additional exercise 6 (page 243)

Unit 26 Wh-questions with who, whom, which, how and whose

A

Reminder ➜ Section E

Who refers to people, and can be used as subject, object or complement:

☐ **Who** owns that car? ☐ **Who** did you meet? ☐ **Who** was her father?

Whom is used as a formal alternative to **who** as object, and also directly after prepositions:

☐ **Whom** did you meet? ☐ **To whom** were you talking?

Which is used to refer to people when we want to identify somebody in a group:

☐ '**Which** is your brother?' 'The one next to Luka.' (talking about a photograph)

and we can use **which** instead of **who** to talk about particular classes of people:

☐ **Which** do you think earns more, a teacher or a police officer? (*or* **Who** do you think ...?)

B

We usually use **which**, rather than **who** or **what**, in questions before **one(s)** and **of**, as **which** is commonly used to ask or talk about a choice between one or more things:

☐ I've decided to buy one of these jumpers. **Which** *one* do you think I should choose?

☐ **Which** *of* you would like to go first? (*rather than* Who of ...?)

C

When we use **who** or **what** as *subjects*, the verb that follows is usually singular, even if a plural answer is expected:

☐ **What** *is* there to see in the town? (expects an answer giving a number of things to see; *not* What are there to see in the town?)

However, the verb can be plural in echo questions (see Unit 27E) after a plural subject or a subject consisting of two or more noun phrases joined by **and**:

☐ 'Mr Almeida and his family are here to see you.' '**Who** *are* here?' (*or* **Who***'s* here?)

and when **who** and **what** function as *complements*:

☐ **Who** *are* those people over there? ☐ **What** *are* the consequences of the decision?

D

How or what?

<table>
<tr><th>How</th><th>What</th></tr>
<tr><td>☐ How was the journey?
(asking a general opinion)</td><td>☐ What was the journey like?
(asking a general opinion)</td></tr>
<tr><td>☐ How is your brother?
(asking about general health)</td><td>☐ What do you like about the job?
(asking for details)</td></tr>
<tr><td>☐ How do you like your coffee?
(asking about food and drink preferences)</td><td>☐ What if your plan doesn't work?
(asking about consequences)</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>☐ What's it called? (asking about a name)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">How / What (about)
☐ How / What about a swim? (making a suggestion)
☐ 'He's a bit scary sometimes.' 'How / What do you mean?' (asking for more information)</td></tr>
</table>

E

We can use **whose** to ask about the person that owns or is responsible for something. **Whose** can be used either before a verb (as a pronoun):

☐ **Whose** *are* these boots?

or before a noun or noun phrase (as a determiner) introducing direct or indirect questions:

☐ **Whose** *boots* are these? ☐ She asked me **whose** *coat* I was wearing.

In formal contexts we can use a preposition before **whose** (see also Unit 55B):

☐ *In* **whose** desk was it found? (*less formally* **Whose** desk was it found *in*?)

However, in questions without a verb a preposition comes before **whose**:

☐ 'We're meeting at nine.' '*In* **whose** house?' (*not* Whose house in?)

Exercises

26.1 **Underline the correct option (or both if possible).** A & B

1 To *whom* / *who* should the documents be sent?
2 *Which* / *Who* of you is Dr Hansen? I have a message for you.
3 A: Here's a photo of our children at the fancy dress party. B: *Who* / *Which* is Isabella?
4 A: Is your sister at home? B: *What* / *Which* one do you want to speak to?
5 *Whom* / *Who* do you hold responsible for the damage?
6 *Who* / *Which* will captain the team if Zeinab isn't available?
7 *Which* / *Who* would you rather be – a doctor or a vet?
8 *Who* / *Whom* translated the book?

26.2 **Complete the sentences with an appropriate present simple form of the verbs in brackets.** C

1 What .... those cakes made from? (*be*)
2 Who .... you for Maths and English? (*teach*)
3 What .... there to see on the island? (*be*)
4 Who .... the major decisions in the company? (*make*)
5 A: The Turners are in France. B: Who .... in France? (*be*)
6 Who .... their textbook with them? Put your hands up. (*have*)

26.3 **First, complete the sentences with how, what, or how / what if both are possible. Then choose an appropriate answer for each question.** D

1 '....What.... do you like about your new job?' ☐ g
2 '........................ if Omar calls while you're out?' ☐
3 '........................ about a coffee?' ☐
4 '........................ are your parents these days?' ☐
5 '........................'s your boss like?' ☐
6 '........................ do you like your new job?' ☐
7 '........................ was the camping trip?' ☐
8 '........................'s your boss called?' ☐
9 '........................ do you mean, "Smart clothes"?' ☐
10 '........................ was the camping trip like?' ☐

a 'It's really boring.'
b 'I'd love one.'
c 'I mean you've got to wear a suit.'
d 'Tell him I'll call back.'
e 'It was great.'
f 'Lucia Garcia.'
g 'It's never boring.'
h 'Quite well, thanks.'
i 'We had an excellent time.'
j 'She works us really hard.'

26.4 **Correct any mistakes in the italicised words or, if necessary, suggest ways of making the sentence more natural. If the sentence is already correct, write ✓.** B, C & E

1 *Who's* caravan were you staying in? ....
2 *Whose are* all these books? ....
3 He asked us *who's* car was parked in front of his house. ....
4 A: *Who live* in the flat upstairs? B: The Thompson family. ....
5 *Whose* going with you to Canada? ....
6 *About whose* travels in Nepal did Liam Wilson write a book? ....
7 *What* one of the following statements is true? ....
8 *Who* of us has not told a lie at some time in our lives? ....
9 A: Can you post the books to us? B: *Whose address to?* ....
10 A: Ants have got into the fridge! B: *What has* got into the fridge? ....

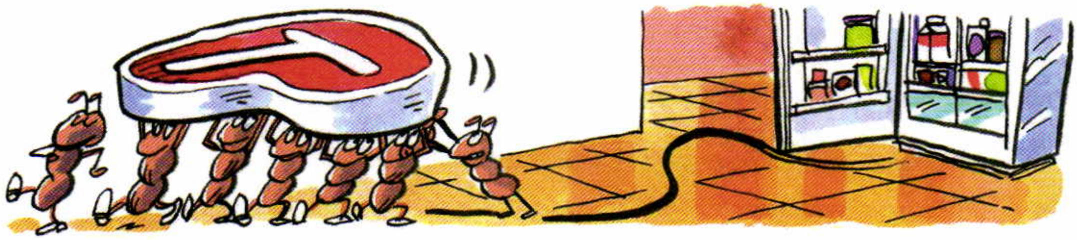

Unit 27 Negative questions; echo questions; questions with that-clauses

A

Negative questions

Reminder → E5– E7

We usually make a negative **yes / no** or **wh-question** with an auxiliary verb (*have*, *did*, *would*, etc.) + **-n't** to suggest, persuade, criticise, etc.

○ **Wouldn't** it be better to go tomorrow? ○ Why **don't** we go out for a meal?

In formal contexts, or when we want to give some special emphasis to the negative (perhaps to show that we are angry, very surprised, or to strongly persuade someone), we can use **not** after the subject in negative questions. This happens particularly in **yes / no** rather than **wh-questions**:

○ **Did** *she* **not** realise that she'd broken it? (*less emphatically* **Didn't** *she* realise that …?)
○ **Can** *you* **not** get there a bit earlier? (*less emphatically* **Can't** *you* …?)

B

We sometimes use negative words other than **-n't** such as **never**, **no**, **nobody**, **nothing**, **nowhere**:

○ Why do you **never** help?
○ Have you **nowhere** to go? (*or* Do you have **nowhere** to go?)

or less emphatically or more informally:

○ Why do**n't** you ever help?
○ Have**n't** you got anywhere to go? (*or* Do**n't** you have anywhere …?)

C

We can make a suggestion with **Why not** + **verb** or **Why don't / doesn't …** (*but not* Why do not / does not …):

○ **Why not** *decorate* the house yourself? (*or* **Why don't** you decorate …?)

Why didn't … isn't used to make a suggestion, but can show that we think an action was wrong. For example, depending on intonation and context, it can be used to criticise someone:

○ **Why didn't** you tell me that in the first place? (I'm annoyed that you didn't)

D

Negative question forms, usually with a falling intonation, are used in exclamations giving opinions:

○ Have**n't** you grown! ○ Does**n't** she look lovely! ○ Did**n't** it snow a lot!

E

Echo questions

Echo questions are used when we haven't understood what has been said or to check that we heard correctly, perhaps because we found it very surprising. We might repeat, usually with a rising intonation, the whole of what was said:

○ 'Tala's lost her job.' 'Tala's lost her job?'

or focus on part of what was said using a stressed **wh-word** or a phrase with **how**:

○ 'Leon's arriving at 6:30.' '**When's** Leon arriving? / Leon's arriving **when**?'
○ 'We paid £3,000 for the painting.' '**How much** did you pay? / You paid **how much**?'

We can use **what** or '**do**' **what** to focus on the verb or part of the sentence beginning with the verb:

○ 'We paid £3,000 for the painting.' 'You **what**?' (*or* 'You **did what**?')
○ 'I think she's having a sleep.' 'She's **what**?' (*or* 'She's **doing what**?')

F

Questions with that-clauses

A **wh-question** can refer to a following **that-clause**, particularly after verbs such as **expect**, **hope**, **reckon**, **say**, **suggest**, **suppose**, and **think**. We can leave out **that** in these questions:

○ **When** do you *reckon* (that) you'll finish the job?

However, when the **wh-word** is the subject, object or complement of the verb in the subordinate clause, we do not use **that**:

○ **What** did you *think* was in the box? (*not* What did you think that was in the box?)

Exercises

27.1 **Write negative questions for B in these dialogues, using -n't with the words in brackets.** A

1 A: Can you lend me €10?
B: Again? Haven't you got any money left? (*... money left?*)
2 A: I'm annoyed that you didn't come to the meeting.
B: Why? .... (*... my email / on holiday?*)
3 A: I've had to bring the children with me.
B: Why? .... (*... babysitter?*)
4 A: I'll just finish my homework before I go to school.
B: But .... (*... be supposed to / last night?*)
5 A: I've put my bike in the sitting room.
B: The sitting room! .... (*... outside?*)
6 A: I'm taking the coach to Vienna.
B: But that will take ages. .... (*... rather / plane?*)

27.2 **Use the notes to complete these dialogues with two negative questions. In the first use -n't; in the second use never, no, nobody, nothing or nowhere.** B

1 (*ever / considered you might / wrong*)
A: Haven't you ever considered you might be wrong? / Have you never considered you might be wrong?
B: No, I'm sure I'm right.
2 (*you / any interest / maths at all*) A: ....?
B: No, I've always hated it.
3 A: I spent the night in the railway station. (*could / find anywhere else / sleep*)
B: ....?
4 (*can / remember anything about / accident*) A: ....
....?
B: Not after getting into the car, no.
5 (*why / ever do well / exams*) A: ....?
B: Perhaps you don't revise enough.
6 (*there anybody / you can ask / help*) A: ....?
B: I can't think of anyone.'

27.3 **Complete the echo questions using appropriate question words or phrases.** E

1 A: Jake's going to Chile. B: He's going where? / He's doing what? / He's what?
2 A: He's leaving at the end of next week.
B: He's leaving ....?/ He's doing ....?/ He's ....?
3 A: He'll be away for three months. B: He'll be away for ....?/ He'll ....?
4 A: It will cost about £15,000. B: It'll cost ....? / It'll ....?
5 A: He's sold his house to pay for the trip.
B: He's sold ....?/ He's done ....?/ He's ....?
6 A: He's going climbing in the Andes.
B: He's going climbing ....?/ He's doing ....?/ He's ....?

27.4 **If necessary, correct any mistakes in these sentences. Put a tick if they are already correct.** C, D & F

1 A: Mariam isn't answering her phone. B: Why do you not email her?
2 Who do you expect that will read your blog?
3 Why did they suggest that we should avoid using the motorway?
4 Was not it a brilliant film!
5 If she really wants to go rock climbing, why not let her?
6 What did you say that is in these biscuits?
7 How do you think that Twitter will have changed our lives in ten years' time?
8 Why did not you tell me you'd changed your number?

Unit 28 Verbs, objects and complements

A

Some verbs can be either transitive or intransitive, allowing us to focus on either the person or thing performing the action, or the person or thing affected by the action. Compare:

Reminder → F1–F3

- ○ She **closed** *the door*. (transitive) *and* The door **closed**. (intransitive)
- ○ I'**ve ripped** *my shirt*. (transitive) *and* My shirt **has ripped**. (intransitive)

Also: **begin**, **bend**, **break**, **burn**, **change**, **decrease**, **drop**, **finish**, **increase**, **move**, **open**, **shut**, **start**, **vary**, **wake** (most are 'change' verbs)

B

Some transitive verbs don't need an object when the meaning is clear from the context:

- ○ I often **sing** (*songs*) in the shower.
- ○ She **plays** (*the saxophone*) beautifully.

Also: **answer**, **ask**, **change**, **cook**, **dance**, **drink**, **drive**, **eat**, **fail**, **park**, **phone**, **read**, **smoke**, **study**, **wash**, **wash up**, **wave**, **win**, **write**

C

After some verbs we usually add a *complement* – a phrase which completes the meaning of a verb, noun or adjective – which is an adverb or prepositional phrase:

- ○ The disease **originated** *in Britain*. (*not* The disease originated. We need to add something about where or how it originated.)

Other verbs usually have a complement but may not. Compare:

- ○ He **paused** *for a few moments*. *and* He **paused**. (no complement needed)

D

Some verbs are commonly followed by a particular preposition or prepositions and then an object (see also Unit 94):

- ○ We had to **deal with** *hundreds of complaints*. (*not* We had to deal.)
- ○ I'm sure that blue car **belongs to** *Murad*. (*not* I'm sure that blue car belongs.)

Also: **adhere to**, **aspire to**, **culminate in / with**, **detract from**, **differentiate between**, **incline to / towards**, **specialise in**

E

Some verbs are usually followed by an **object** + **prepositional phrase** complement:

- ○ I always **associate** *pizza with Italy*. (*not* I always associate pizza.)
- ○ She **put** *the report on the floor*. (*not* She put the report.)

Also: **attribute ... to**, **base ... on / upon**, **equate ... with**, **inflict ... on**, **mistake ... for**, **regard ... as / with**, **remind ... of**

F

Some verbs are often followed by an **object** + **adjective** (or **adjective phrase**) complement:

- ○ The people of this country will **hold** *the government responsible*.
- ○ Conti **pronounced** *herself fit for the match*.

Also: **assume**, **believe**, **consider**, **declare**, **find**, **judge**, **prove**, **report**, **think**.
(The object after **declare**, **find**, **pronounce** and **prove** is usually a reflexive pronoun.)

Sentences with an **object** + **adjective** complement after these verbs are usually rather formal. Adding **to be** after the object or using a **that-clause** can make sentences less formal:

- ○ Dr Adams argues that house prices will fall, but other economists **believe** *the opposite true*. (*or less formally* … believe the opposite to be true. *or* … believe that the opposite is true.)

Exercises

28.1 **If it is possible to omit the object (*in italics*) after the underlined verbs, put brackets around it.** B

Aya was (1) reading (*a book*) when the telephone rang. It was Val. She said, 'I called you earlier, but nobody (2) answered *the phone*. Would you like to come over to (3) eat *dinner* tonight with me and Tom? Is eight/seven okay?' Aya (4) thanked *Val* and said that she'd love to come. At about seven Aya started to get ready. She (5) washed *herself* and (6) brushed *her hair*. Then she (7) changed *her clothes* and (8) put on *some makeup*. After that, she (9) drove *her car* to Malstowe, the village where Val and Tom lived. Val was gardening when Aya (10) reached *their house* and she (11) waved *her hand* when saw Aya. Aya (12) parked *her car* on the drive and walked over to Val. Val said, 'Tom's still (13) cooking *dinner*, so I thought I had time (14) to pick *some flowers*. By the way, my sister Kate is staying with us. She's (15) studying *French* at university, but is on holiday at the moment. I forgot to (16) mention *her* when I spoke to you earlier. I'll (17) introduce *you* when we go inside.' Aya (18) enjoyed *the evening* very much. The food was excellent and they talked a lot about their holiday plans. Aya hoped to go to Canada, but wasn't sure yet that she could (19) afford *it*. Before she left, Aya helped (20) wash up *the dishes*. As she drove home, she decided that she must (21) invite *Val and Tom* for a meal at her house very soon.

28.2 **Complete sentences 1–4 with a correct verb + preposition + noun phrase. Complete 5–8 with a correct verb + noun phrase + preposition.** D & E

Verbs (*Use an appropriate form.*)	Prepositions	Noun phrases
~~aspire~~ **attribute** **base** **culminate** **differentiate** **inflict** **mistake** **specialise**	**between** **for** **in** **in** **on** **on** **~~to~~** **to**	**the black car** **~~national leadership~~** **his success** **the discovery of penicillin** **a surprise defeat** **fantasy and reality** **her new novel** **seafood**

1 Electors deserve more from a political party that aspires to national leadership .
2 Years of research by Fleming ....
3 Her mental condition makes it difficult for her to ....
4 There's a great restaurant by the harbour which ....
5 The team of amateur footballers .... the first division leaders.
6 After Lewis's victory, he .... the advice of his new trainer.
7 It was dark and raining and she .... a taxi.
8 Emma Janse has .... events that took place in 16th-century Denmark.

28.3 **Complete these sentences with any appropriate adjective.** F

1 The scientific evidence proved him guilty .
2 She declared herself .... with the result.
3 They considered the food ....
4 I'm surprised the plumber hasn't turned up. I've always found him ....
5 We believed her .... at school.

Now write less formal versions using either to be after the object or a that-clause.

1 The scientific evidence proved him *to be guilty*. / The scientific evidence *proved that he was guilty*.

Unit 29

Verb + two objects

A

Some verbs can be followed by two objects. Usually the first object (= the *indirect object* (IO)) is a person or group of people and the second object (= the *direct object* (DO)) is a thing:

- Can you **bring** *me* (= IO) *some milk* (= DO) from the shops?
- He **made** *himself* (= IO) *a cup of coffee*. (= DO).

Many verbs that can have two objects may also be used with a DO only (e.g. I read a story). With many verbs that can have two objects, it is possible to reverse the order of the objects if we put **for** or **to** before the IO (this is then called a *prepositional object*). Compare:

- I **built** my daughter a doll's house. *and*
  I **built** a doll's house **for** my daughter.
- Can you **pass** me that bandage? *and*
  Can you **pass** that bandage **to** me?

Other verbs with ***for + object***: **book, buy, catch, choose, cook, fetch, find, get, make, order, pour, save**

Other verbs with ***to + object***: **award, give, hand, lend, offer, owe, show, teach, tell, throw**

We often use this pattern if we want to focus particular attention on the object after **for** / **to**. We also use it if the IO is a lot longer than the DO:

- Jasmin taught music **to** a large number of children at the school. (*not* Jasmin taught a large number of children at the school music.)

If the DO is a pronoun, a pattern with **DO** + **preposition** + **IO** is usual. Patterns without a preposition are avoided because they are considered to be bad style:

- I gave them **to** Isa. (*rather than* I gave Isa them. / I gave them Isa.)
- We bought it **for** them. (*rather than* We bought them it. / We bought it them.)

B

Some verbs can be used with either **for** or **to**. Often there is a difference in meaning: **to** suggests that there is a transfer of something to someone, and **for** suggests that someone benefits from something. Compare:

- I hadn't got time to visit Mira, so I **wrote** a letter **to** her. *and*
- Mira had broken her wrist, so I **wrote** a letter **for** her.

Also: **bring**, **leave**, **pay**, **play**, **post**, **read**, **sell**, **send**, **sing**, **take**

Sometimes, however, the meaning is very similar:

- He **played** the piece **to** (*or* **for**) me.
- Can you **sing** that song again **to** (*or* **for**) us?

Note that when **object** + **object** is used after these verbs it usually has a similar meaning to the verb with **object** + **to** + **object**. For example:

- I sold him the car. (*means* I sold the car **to** him, *not* I sold the car **for** him.)

C

Some verbs that are followed by two objects cannot have their objects reversed with **for** / **to**:

- We all **envied** him his lifestyle. (*but not* We all envied his lifestyle for / to him.)

Also: **allow**, **ask**, **cost**, **deny**, **forgive**, **guarantee**, **permit**, **refuse**

D

Some verbs, such as **describe** and **fix**, can *only* have a second object if this is a prepositional object –

☆ with **to** (see also Unit 22A). Compare:

- She **described** the situation (**to** me). (*but not* She described me the situation.) *and*
- She **told** this joke (**to** me). *or* She **told** me this joke.

Also: **admit, announce, demonstrate, explain, introduce, mention, point out, prove, report, say, suggest**

☆ with **for.** Compare:

- He **fixed** the tap (**for** me). (*but not* He fixed me the tap.) *and*
- I **booked** a room (**for** her). *or* I **booked** her a room.

Also: **collect, mend, repair**

Exercises

29.1 Complete each sentence with a suitable form of a verb from the box and insert **to** or **for** in an appropriate place. Write **to / for** if either can be used. A & B

choose offer pass ~~pay~~ post read save sell take teach

1 Elias hasn't got any money so I'll have to ......pay...... the bill ⁁for him.
2 Kaspar hates going shopping. I have to .... his clothes him.
3 You're staying with Dimitra at the weekend, aren't you? Can you .... this present her?
4 I can't reach the salt. Could you .... it me, please?
5 When Mr Durand bought the house, we .... all the carpets him as well.
6 He's got a very rewarding job. He .... sports disabled children.
7 I haven't got my glasses. Can you .... these instructions me, please?
8 Jane .... the letter me on her way to work because I had flu and couldn't go out.
9 I .... my old bike him, but he said he wanted something more modern.
10 I'll be in late tonight. Can you .... some dinner me, please?

29.2 If necessary, correct these sentences. If the sentence is already correct, write ✓. C & D

1 He kindly collected me some library books.
2 He admitted his error for his colleagues.
3 I have to prepare a report for the meeting.
4 Can I ask a favour to you?
5 A special ticket allows entry for people to all the museums in the city.
6 I'd like to introduce you to my sister.

29.3 Complete these texts with objects chosen from the box. Give all possible word orders and add prepositions where necessary. A–D

the problem / our teacher
another half an hour / us
~~an email / him~~
a drink / Ben
a fortune / you
her photograph / me
his sister / me
his broken car / him
a paper aeroplane / him
the glass / him
three bedtime stories / him
the money / me
~~the problem / him~~

1 A: Samuel phoned. He wants to come and stay with us at the beginning of September.
B: But that's when my parents will be with us. I'll have to send
...him an email / an email to him... to explain ...the problem to him....

2 When he described .... I didn't think I knew her, but when he showed
.... I realised that I had seen her at work.

3 The clock on the wall was wrong. When we pointed out .... ,
she allowed .... to finish the exam.

4 My three-year-old nephew, Luis, always keeps me busy when I babysit. Last night I first had to
make .... , then I had to
mend .... and after that he
insisted that I read ....

5 A: Your new motorbike must have cost ....
B: Well, actually, my parents lent ....

6 I poured ....
and gave ....

Unit
30

Verb + **-ing** forms and infinitives 1

A

Reminder → F4– F13

Some verbs can be followed either by an **object** + **-ing** or a **possessive** + **-ing** with a similar meaning, although the **possessive** + **-ing** form is usually considered to be rather formal:

☐ I resented **Tom** winning the prize.
(*more formally* I resented **Tom's** winning the prize.)
☐ Mia recalled **him** buying the book.
(*more formally* Mia recalled **his** buying the book.)

Also: **detest, (dis)approve of, (dis)like, hate, love, object to** (= '(dis)liking' verbs); **forget, imagine, remember, think of** (= 'thinking' verbs)

Note that we only use a possessive form (Tom's, his) here to talk about a person or group of people:

☐ I remember **the horse** winning the race. (*but not* … the horse's winning …)

B

Some verbs can be followed by **to** + **-ing** where **to** is a preposition:

☐ She **confessed to** *stealing* the money.
☐ You **don't object to** *working* late tonight, do you?

Also: **adapt, adjust, admit, look forward, own up, resort**

Note that these verbs can also be followed by **to** + **noun phrase**:

☐ She **confessed to** *the crime*.
☐ You **don't object to** *the work*, do you?

C

Other verbs can be followed by different prepositions + **-ing**. For example:

☆ **by** + **-ing** (**begin**, **close**, **end**, **finish** (**off** / **up**), **open**, **start** (**off** / **out**))
☐ Can you **begin by** *cleaning* the floors, and then do the windows?

☆ **on** + **-ing** or **on** + **object** + **-ing** (**concentrate**, **count**, **depend**, **focus**, **insist**, **rely**)
☐ Clare **insisted on** (*Jack*) *wearing* a suit to the party.

☆ **of** + **-ing** or **of** + **object** + **-ing** (**approve**, **hear**, **know**, **speak**, **talk**, **tell**)
☐ Have you ever **heard of** *(anyone) getting* arrested for gossiping before?

☆ **object** + **from** + **-ing** (**deter**, **discourage**, **keep**, **prevent**, **prohibit**, **stop**)
☐ The noise from next door **prevented me from** *sleeping*.

D

Some verbs (**feel**, **hear**, **notice**, **observe**, **overhear**, **see**, **watch**) can be followed by an object and then either by an **-ing** form or **bare infinitive**, but the meanings may be slightly different. Compare:

☐ I **saw** *them playing* football from my window. (**-ing** indicates an action in progress) *and*
☐ I **saw** *him smash* the bottle. (**bare infinitive** indicates a completed action)
☐ I was able to **watch** *them building* the new car park from my office window. (**-ing** suggests that I watched, but not from start to finish) *and*
☐ I **watched** *him climb* through the window, and then I called the police. (**bare infinitive** suggests I watched the whole action from start to finish)

E

After the verbs **dare** and **help** we can use either a **bare infinitive** or **to-infinitive**:

☐ I was angry with him, but I **didn't dare** (*to*) *say* anything.
☐ We hope the Twitter campaign will **help** (*to*) *raise* awareness of the problem.

When **dare** has an object, we can only use a **to-infinitive**. Compare:

☐ I **dared** *him to cross* the river. (*not* I dared him cross …) *and*
☐ I **helped** *them* (*to*) *pack*.

After **have**, **let** and **make** we can use an **object** + **bare infinitive** but not **to-infinitive**:

☐ His exam results might **make** *him work* harder. (*not* … might make him to work …)
☐ I **had** *Irena clean* up her bedroom before I **let** *her go* out to play.

Exercises

30.1 If possible, rewrite these sentences using the possessive form of the object. If not, write ✗. A

1 I really hate you having to be away from home so much.
I really hate your having to be away from home so much.
2 We don't approve of the developer locating the factory so close to houses.
3 I have always detested the dog jumping up at me when I visit them.
4 No one heard the man shouting for help.
5 It is difficult to imagine him accepting the decision without any objection.
6 No one in the crowd that day will forget Ashe fighting so hard to win the match.
7 I remember them arguing a great deal when they were children.
8 The police investigated him stealing cars from the city centre.

30.2 Rewrite the italicised part of each sentence so that it has a similar meaning. Use one of the verbs from the box and an -ing form. B & C

adapt **approve** **discourage** **end** **~~own up~~** **rely**

1 In a survey, 65% of dentists *said that they had made* mistakes in treating patients.
owned up to making
2 I don't *think children should wear* jewellery in school. ....
3 I would like to *finish with a summary of* the main points of my talk. ....
4 My parents *said they thought I shouldn't go* to university. ....
5 You can't *trust Sophie to turn up* on time. ....
6 I grew up in the countryside, and I found it difficult to *get used to life* in a big city.
....

30.3 Underline the most likely verb form. Consider why it is the most likely. A

1 I heard the tyre *burst / bursting* and then the lorry skidded across the road.
2 Carl noticed someone *watch / watching* him from an upstairs window.
3 She felt the wasp *sting / stinging* her just before she brushed it off her arm.
4 With a good telescope you can see the eagles *feed / feeding* their chicks in the nest.

30.4 Match the sentence beginnings and endings, adding an appropriate object where necessary and write (to) where this might be included. E

1 When Lana thought of going on the roller-coaster it made …
2 The new course is intended to help …
3 Scientists hope the new drug will help …
4 We didn't agree with the decision, but we didn't dare …
5 When Ethan arrives, have …
6 The dial on the left lets …

a prevent hay fever.
b ~~feel quite ill.~~
c control the speed of the fan.
d wait outside my office.
e understand modern art.
f protest against it.

1 + b When Lana thought of going on the roller-coaster it made her feel quite ill.

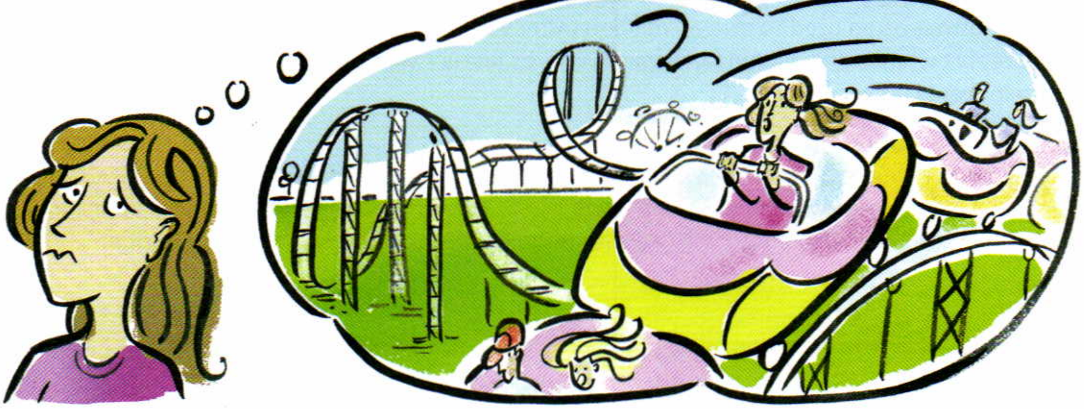

→ Additional exercise 7 (page 244)

Unit
31

Verb + -ing forms and infinitives 2

A

After some verbs we need to include an object before a **to-infinitive** in active sentences:

Reminder → F4– F13

☐ The police **warned** *everyone* **to stay** inside with their windows closed. (*not* The police warned to stay …)

Also: **advise, allow, believe, cause, command, enable, encourage, entitle, force, invite, order, persuade, remind, show, teach, tell**

After other verbs, however, we can't include an object before a **to-infinitive***:*

☐ We**'ve decided to leave** early. (*not* We've decided us to leave early.)

Also: **agree, consent, fail, hope, manage, offer, pretend, refuse, start, threaten, volunteer**

B

After some verbs we have to put a preposition, usually **for**, immediately after the verb before an **object + to-infinitive** (see also Unit 29):

☐ They *arranged* **for** *Rania to stay* in London. (*not* They arranged Rania to stay …)

☐ They *applied* **for** *the court appearance to be postponed.*

Also: **advertise**, **campaign**, **long**, **plan**, **wait** (After **apply** and **campaign**, the **to-infinitive** is usually passive.)

Other verbs can be followed by different prepositions + **object** + **to-infinitive**. For example:

☆ **at** + **object** + **to-infinitive** (**go on** [= to criticise continually], **keep on** [= to talk about something many times], **scream**, **shout**, **yell**)

☐ I *shouted* **at** *the man to open* the door.

☆ **on** + **object** + **to-infinitive** (**call** [= to officially ask someone to do something], **count**, **depend**, **prevail**, **rely**)

☐ We*'re depending* **on** *you to find* a solution soon.

☆ **to** + **object** + **to-infinitive** (**appeal**, **gesture**, **motion**, **signal**)

☐ He closed the door and *signalled* **to** *the pilot to take off*.

C

A number of other **to-infinitive** and **-ing** forms can also follow verbs –

☆ **verb** + negative **to-infinitive** and negative **-ing** forms

☐ We **decided not to go** to Paris after all. (*compare* The people **didn't decide to go** to war, it was their political leaders.)

☐ Some of my friends **have considered not going** to college because of the cost. (*compare* I **haven't considered going** to college – I don't want to go on studying after school.)

☆ **verb** + **to have** + **past participle**

☐ The accident **seems to have happened** at around 1 pm yesterday.

☐ Simmons **is alleged to have assaulted** a police officer.

This form is often used to give an opinion (after verbs like **seem** and **appear**) about a past event, or to report what is or was said (after passive verbs like **is / was alleged**, **believed**, **said**, **thought**) about past events.

☆ **verb** + **having** + **past participle**

The **verb** + **-ing** and **verb** + **having** + **past participle** forms have a similar meaning with these verbs:

☐ I now **regret buying** the car. *and* ☐ I now **regret having bought** the car.

This form is most often used with **admit**, **deny**, **forget**, **recall**, **regret** and **remember**.

Exercises

31.1 **Complete each sentence with one of the verbs in brackets.** A

1 a My mother .... me to throw away my old toys. (*threatened / told*)
b My mother .... to throw away my old toys.
2 a They .... to visit Riko in hospital. (*allowed / offered*)
b They .... us to visit Riko in hospital.
3 a I .... to carry the heavy boxes up the stairs. (*managed / persuaded*)
b I .... Hamza to carry the heavy boxes up the stairs.
4 a She .... Lars to help in the garden. (*agreed / encouraged*)
b She .... to help in the garden.
5 a I .... her to tidy up the house. (*pretended / reminded*)
b I .... to tidy up the house.
6 a Jonas .... to study economics at university. (*advised / hoped*)
b Jonas .... me to study economics at university.

31.2 **Write one word that is missing from each line in these texts. Put a ⁁ where the word should be.** B

a		
1	When I advertised ⁁ a website designer for the business, Greta got	..........for..........
2	the job. But I've now learnt that you can't rely Greta to do anything.	....
3	I waited ages her to come up with some initial ideas for the site, and	....
4	then I had to keep on her to do any more work on it. Finally, she said	....
	she couldn't do it after all.	
b		
1	Managers of the National Electricity Company have appealed workers	....
2	to end their strike, and have called the government to intervene in the	....
3	dispute. The Energy Minister said that he has arranged employers and	....
4	employees to meet next week, and he prevailed strikers to return to	....
	work in the meantime.	

31.3 **Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets using one of the patterns in section C opposite. Give alternatives where possible.** C

1 I .... anyone Marta's new address. (*agree – not tell*)
2 The prisoners .... through a broken window last night. (*think – escape*)
3 I .... him at the conference. (*not recall – see*)
4 He .... any stolen property. (*deny – receive*)
5 He .... as the person who donated the money. (*ask – not name*)
6 She .... all the way back home. (*not feel like – walk*)
7 I am sure my purse was on the table a few minutes ago, but now it .... (*seem – disappear*)
8 The Etruscans .... in Italy in the 8th or 9th century BC. (*believe – arrive*)

→ Additional exercise 7 (page 244)

Unit
32

Reporting people's words and thoughts

A

Quoting and reporting in our own words

Reminder → G1–G11

When we report what people think or what they have said, we often give the information using our own words. We do this with sentences that have a *reporting clause* and a *reported clause* (see also Units 33–39):

reporting clause	reported clause
She explained	(that) she couldn't take the job until January.
He didn't tell me	where to put the boxes.

B

If the exact words are important, we might report the actual words someone said. In writing this is done in a *quotation*:

- 'I suppose you've heard the latest news,' she said to me.
- 'Of course,' Carter replied, 'you'll have to pay him to do the job.'

The *reporting clause* can come before, within, or at the end of the quotation.

In the English used in stories and novels, the *reporting verb* (e.g. **ask, continue**) is often placed before the subject when the *reporting clause* comes after the quotation except when the subject is a pronoun:

- 'When will you be back?' asked Jimin. (*or* … Jimin asked.)
- 'And after that I moved to Italy,' she continued. (*not* … continued she.)

C

Negatives in reporting

To report what somebody **didn't** say or think, we make the reporting verb negative:

- He **didn't tell me** how he would get to London.

If we want to report a negative sentence, then we usually report this in the *reported clause*:

- 'You're right, it isn't a good idea.' → He **agreed** that it **wasn't** a good idea.

although it may be reported in the *reporting clause*, depending on meaning:

- 'I disagree. It's not a good idea at all.' → He **didn't agree** that it was a good idea.

However, with some verbs, to report a negative sentence we usually make the verb in the *reporting clause* negative:

- 'I expect he won't come.'/ 'I don't expect he will come.' → She **didn't expect** him to come.

Also: **believe**, **feel**, **intend**, **plan**, **propose**, **suppose**, **think**, **want**

D

Reporting questions

To report a **wh-question** we use a *reporting clause* and a clause with a **wh-word**:

- She asked me **what** the problem was.
- I asked him **where** to go next.

When we report a **yes / no question** we use a *reporting clause* followed by a clause beginning with either **if** or **whether** (but note that we can't use **if** + **to-infinitive**; see Unit 34):

- Liz wanted to know **if** / **whether** we had any photos of our holiday.

The usual word order in a **wh-**, **if-**, or **whether-clause** is the one we would use in a statement:

- 'Have you seen Paul recently?' → She wanted to know if *I had seen* Paul recently.

However, if the original question begins **what**, **which**, or **who** followed by **be** + **complement**, we can put the complement before or after **be** in the report:

- 'Who was the winner?' → I asked who *the winner was*. (*or* … who *was the winner*.)

Note that we don't use a form of **do** in the **wh-**, **if-**, or **whether-clause**:

- She asked me where I found it. (*not* … where did I find it. /… where I did find it.)

However, if we are reporting a negative question, we can use a negative form of **do**:

- He asked (me) why I **didn't** want anything to eat.

Exercises

32.1 **Report what was said, quoting the speaker's exact words using one of the reporting verbs from the box. Put the reporting clause after the quotation and give alternative word orders where possible.** B & G8–G11

boast **chorus** **~~command~~** **confess** **explain** **grumble** **suggest** **wonder**

1 Come in out of the rain now. (*her mother*)
'Come in out of the rain now,' commanded her mother / her mother commanded.
2 Why don't we stop for a coffee? (*she*)
3 All right, Georgia, it was me. (*he*)
4 My novel is more exciting than a Dan Brown thriller. (*she*)
5 I always carry two umbrellas with me because I'm always losing them. (*Lena*)
6 Oh, no, it's raining again. (*Matt*)
7 Good morning, Miss Novak. (*the children*)
8 Have I done the right thing? (*I*)

32.2 **Complete each sentence using a pair of verbs from the box. Make one of the verbs negative.** C

announce – go **expect – be** **feel – could** **~~intend – hurt~~**
insist – be **promise – would** **think – would** **threaten – repay**

1 'I didn't mean to upset Astrid.' → He didn't intend to hurt her feelings.
2 'I won't give you the money back if you keep on at me.' → He .... the money if she kept on at him.
3 'I can't ask my parents to help me again.' → He .... that he .... ask his parents to help him again.
4 'I wasn't anywhere near the school at the time of the break-in.' → He .... that he .... anywhere near the school at the time of the break-in.
5 'I'm not going back to college.' → She .... that she .... back to college.
6 'I was surprised that Mum was angry.' → He .... his mother .... angry.
7 'Adam won't mind waiting.' → She .... Adam .... mind waiting.
8 'I won't be late again.' → She .... that she .... be late again.

32.3 **Complete the email by reporting these questions using a wh-, if- or whether-clause.** D

1 ~~'How did you hear about the job?'~~
2 'What are your long-term career plans?'
3 'How many languages do you speak?'
4 'Where did you learn Chinese?'
5 'Can you use a spreadsheet?'
6 'Have you organised international conferences before?'
7 'Would you be willing to live overseas for periods of time?'
8 'When can you start work?'

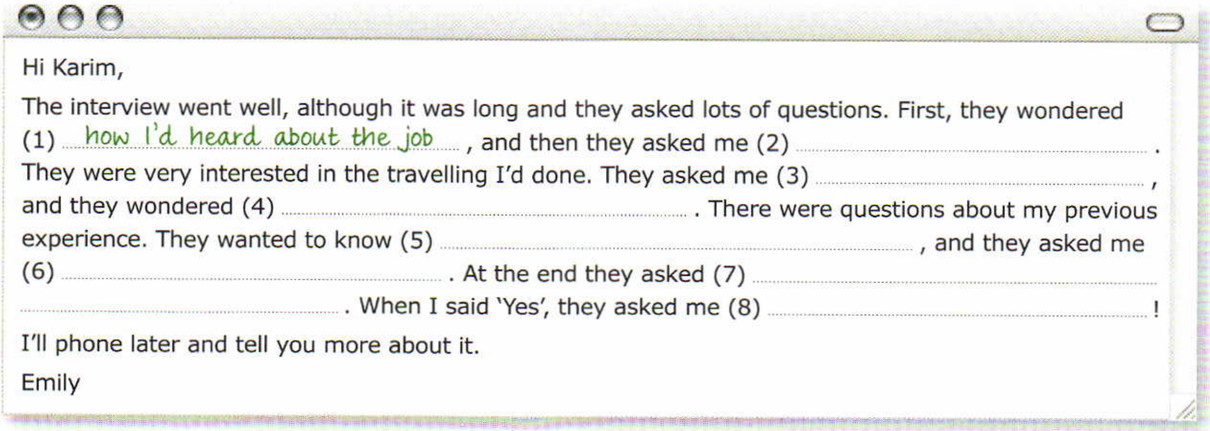

Hi Karim,

The interview went well, although it was long and they asked lots of questions. First, they wondered (1) how I'd heard about the job, and then they asked me (2) .... They were very interested in the travelling I'd done. They asked me (3) .... , and they wondered (4) .... There were questions about my previous experience. They wanted to know (5) .... , and they asked me (6) .... At the end they asked (7) .... When I said 'Yes', they asked me (8) .... !

I'll phone later and tell you more about it.

Emily

Unit
33

Reporting statements: **that-clauses**

A

When we report statements, we often use a **that-clause** in the *reported clause* (see Unit 32):

Reminder → G1– G7

☐ He **said** (**that**) he was enjoying his work.
☐ The members of the Security Council **warned that** further action may be taken.

After the more common reporting verbs such as **agree**, **mention**, **notice**, **promise**, **say**, and **think**, we often leave out **that**, particularly in informal speech. However, it is not usually left out –

☆ after less common reporting verbs such as **complain**, **confide**, **deny**, **grumble**, **speculate**, **warn** (and after the common reporting verbs **answer**, **argue**, and **reply**)

☆ in formal writing

☆ if the **that-clause** doesn't immediately follow the verb:
☐ She **agreed** *with her parents and brothers* **that** it would be safer to buy a car than a motorbike. (*rather than* … and brothers it would be safer …)

B

Some reporting verbs which are followed by a **that-clause** have an alternative with an **object** + **to-infinitive** (often **to be**), although the alternatives are often rather formal. Compare:

☐ I **felt that the results** were satisfactory. *and*
I **felt the results to be** satisfactory.

Also: **acknowledge, assume, believe, consider, declare, expect, find, presume, report, think, understand**

C

If we use a **that-clause** after an active form of some verbs, we must include an object between the verb and the **that-clause**. This object can't be a prepositional object (see **D** below):

☐ I **notified the bank that** I had changed my address. (*but not* I notified that I … / I notified to the bank that I …)

Also: **assure, convince, inform, persuade, reassure, remind, tell**

However, after some other verbs an object before a **that-clause** is not always necessary:

☐ They **promised (me) that** they would come to the party.

Also: **advise, show, teach, warn**

D

After some verbs we can use a **that-clause** with or without a personal object before the **that-clause**. However, if we *do* include an object, we put a preposition before it.

☆ After some verbs we use **to**:
☐ She **admitted** (**to me**) **that** she was seriously ill.
☐ I **pointed out** (**to the driver**) that he had parked across the entrance.

Also: **announce**, **complain**, **confess**, **explain**, **indicate**, **mention**, **propose**, **recommend**, **report**, **say**, **suggest**

☆ After some verbs we use **with**:
☐ We **agreed** (**with Ella**) **that** the information should go no further.

Also: **argue**, **check**, **disagree**, **joke**

☆ After the verbs **ask**, **demand** and **require** we use **of**:
☐ The club **asks** (**of its members**) **that** they pay their fees by 31st December.
☐ The company **demands** (**of its staff**) **that** they should be at work by 8:30.

This pattern is usually used in formal contexts. Less formally we can use a **to-infinitive clause** after **ask** and **require** (e.g. The club asks its members to pay their fees by 31st December). However, we can't use a **to-infinitive clause** after **demand** (*not* The company demands its staff to …).

Exercises

33.1 **Underline the correct verb. If both are possible, underline them both.** C

1 The doctors *advised* / *persuaded* that I should rest for three months.
2 The police *assured* / *promised* residents that everything possible was being done to catch the thieves.
3 A spokesperson for the company *reminded* / *warned* that there may be delays on the railways this summer due to major engineering work.
4 We should *inform* / *teach* children that diet is of vital importance to health.
5 Russian scientists *have shown* / *have convinced* that honey can prevent the growth of bacteria.
6 The company *has reassured* / *has advised* customers that cars ordered before 1st August would be delivered by the end of the month.
7 Katarina *told* / *promised* that she would be home before midnight.

33.2 **If possible, rewrite these sentences in a more formal way with a to-infinitive clause. If not, write ✗ .** B

1 Two days after the launch Houston reported that the satellite was missing.
Two days after the launch Houston reported the satellite to be missing.
2 The employees argued that the reduction in wages was unlawful.
3 The judge thought that his explanation was unconvincing.
4 I expected that her plans would fail.
5 She stressed that her stories were aimed primarily at children.
6 Lucas acknowledged that his chances of winning the race were slim.
7 We found that the rugby supporters were very well behaved.
8 The president's spokesman commented that the election result was a victory for democracy.

33.3 **Complete each sentence with an appropriate form of a verb from the box + to, with, or of. More than one verb may be possible, but use each verb at least once.** D

announce **complain** **disagree** **joke** **mention** **require**

1 Martina .... the shop assistant that the laptop she'd bought there was faulty.
2 She .... her neighbours that their dog was keeping her awake at night.
3 He .... his friends that he'd won the lottery and was going to Barbados.
4 The minister .... shocked journalists that she was to resign immediately.
5 The college .... its students that they attend all classes.
6 I .... Mr Jacobs that the students were lazy. I thought they were very enthusiastic.
7 I forgot to .... Chris that I'd be home late.

33.4 **Suggest corrections to the italicised words in this news article.** A, C & D

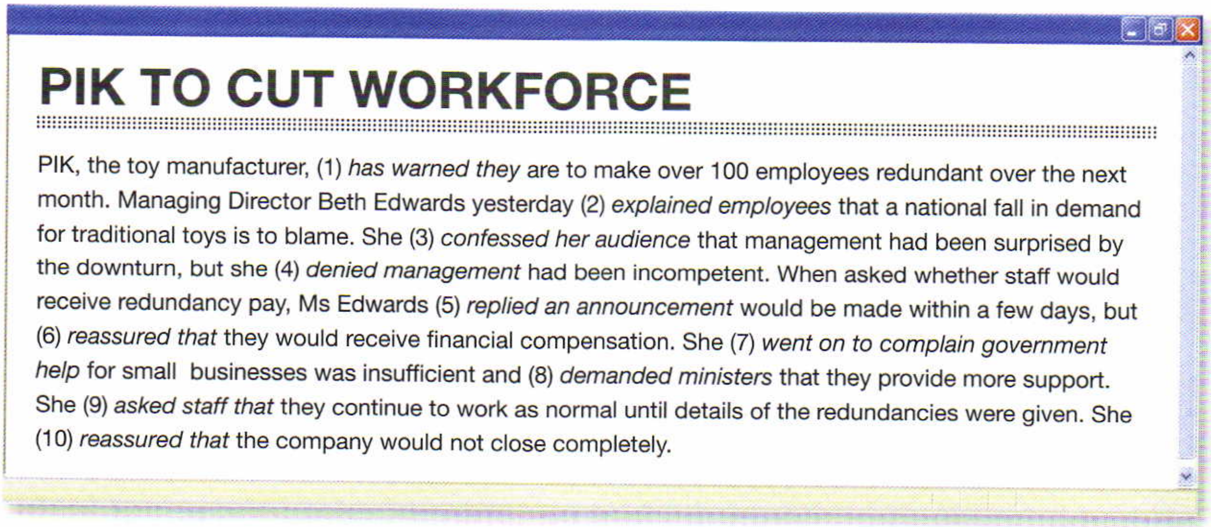

PIK TO CUT WORKFORCE

PIK, the toy manufacturer, (1) *has warned they* are to make over 100 employees redundant over the next month. Managing Director Beth Edwards yesterday (2) *explained employees* that a national fall in demand for traditional toys is to blame. She (3) *confessed her audience* that management had been surprised by the downturn, but she (4) *denied management* had been incompetent. When asked whether staff would receive redundancy pay, Ms Edwards (5) *replied an announcement* would be made within a few days, but (6) *reassured that* they would receive financial compensation. She (7) *went on to complain government help* for small businesses was insufficient and (8) *demanded ministers* that they provide more support. She (9) *asked staff that* they continue to work as normal until details of the redundancies were given. She (10) *reassured that* the company would not close completely.

→ Additional exercise 8 (page 245)

Unit 34

Verb + wh-clause

A

Some verbs can be followed by a clause beginning with a **wh-word** (**how**, **what**, **when**, **where**, **which**, **who**, or **why**):

☐ That might **explain** *why* he's unhappy.
☐ I couldn't **decide** *which* train to catch.
☐ Let's **consider** *how* we can solve the problem.

Also: **arrange**, **calculate**, **check**, **choose**, **debate**, **determine**, **discover**, **discuss**, **establish**, **find out**, **forget**, **guess**, **imagine**, **know**, **learn**, **notice**, **plan**, **realise**, **remember**, **say**, **see**, **talk about**, **think** (**about**), **understand**, **wonder**

Many of these verbs can also be followed by –

☆ a **that-clause** (see Unit 33):

☐ I **decided** *that* I ought to leave.

☆ a **wh-clause** (except 'why') + **to-infinitive**:

☐ **Did** you **find out** *where to go?*

Note that if we add a subject in the **wh-clause** we don't use a **to-infinitive**:

☐ I can't imagine what **he** likes about jazz.

B

Some verbs must have an object before the **wh-clause**:

☐ She *reminded* **me** *what* (I had) to do.
☐ I *told* **Linda** *how* to get to my house.

Also: **advise**, **inform**, **instruct**, **teach**, **warn**

The verbs **ask** and **show** often have an object before a **wh-clause**, but not always:

☐ I *asked* (**him**) *how* I could get to the station, and he told me.

These verbs can also be followed by **object** + **wh-word** + **to-infinitive**:

☐ She **taught me** *how to play* chess.
☐ I **showed her** *where to put* her coat.

C

We can often use **the way** instead of **how** referring to either the route or the means:

☐ Go back **the way** (that / by which) you came. (*or informally* Go back **how** you came.)
☐ Have you noticed **the way** (that / in which) he spins the ball? (*or* … noticed **how** he spins …?)

Note that we don't use 'the way how'. (e.g. *not* Go back the way how you came.)

D

Whether

We can use **whether** as the **wh-word** in a **wh-clause** when we want to show possible choices. **Whether** has a similar meaning to 'if' (see Unit 86):

☐ He couldn't remember **whether** / **if** he had turned the computer off.

Some verbs can be followed by **whether + to-infinitive** to talk about the choice between two or more possibilities. Note that 'if' is never used before a **to-infinitive**:

☐ You have 14 days to **decide whether to keep** it or not. (*not* … to decide if to keep it or not.)

Also: **choose, consider, debate, determine, discuss, know** (in questions and negatives), **think about, wonder** (= 'talking' or 'thinking about choices' verbs)

Some other 'talking' and 'thinking about choices' verbs are *not* used with **whether + to-infinitive**, including **ask, conclude, explain, imagine, realise, speculate, think**.

E

Note the difference between these sentences. The first has a **wh-clause** with **whether** and the second has a **that-clause** (see Unit 33):

☐ I didn't know **whether** the shop was shut. (= if the shop was shut or not)
☐ I didn't know **that** the shop was shut. (suggests that the shop was shut)

F

In rather formal contexts, particularly in writing, we can use **as to** with a meaning similar to 'about' or 'concerning' before a **wh-clause**. This is most common before **whether**:

☐ Opinion was divided **as to whether** the findings from the study were representative of the population as a whole. (*or less formally* … divided whether …)

Exercises

34.1 **Match sentence beginnings 1–10 to endings a–j and choose an appropriate wh-word to connect them. If necessary, add an appropriate object.** A & B

1 Before the meeting finished they arranged …
2 He took my hands and showed …
3 I explained carefully so that the students understood …
4 Anna was new in the office and I had to keep reminding …
5 I saw Sarah leave the building, but I didn't notice …
6 When I saw Hugo alone at the party I wondered …
7 As we walked over the hills the guide warned …
8 After I'd dismantled the motor I couldn't remember …
9 To win a prize you had to guess …
10 As the guests came in Diego told …

a … to fit the parts back together.
b … she went after that.
c … to put their coats.
d ~~… to meet next.~~
e … Helen wasn't with him.
f … many sweets were in the jar.
g … they had to do in the test.
h … the path was dangerous.
i … everyone was.
j … to hold the golf club properly.

1 + d Before the meeting finished they arranged when / where to meet next.

34.2 **Underline the correct or more appropriate verb.** D

1 She was *thinking* / *debating* whether to invite Jeremy over for dinner.
2 The council is meeting this morning to *discuss* / *ask* whether to increase local taxes.
3 Apparently Louis and Eva are *considering* / *speculating* whether to emigrate to Australia.
4 I have to *imagine* / *choose* whether to get a job or apply to go to college.
5 Scientists will have to *decide* / *conclude* soon whether to start testing the new drugs on people.

34.3 **Zak Miles has written a book about mountain climbing in the Andes. Correct any mistakes in these extracts.** A–F

The villagers warned me what the conditions were like at higher altitudes, and advised to take enough food for a week. There was some discussion through the day as whether the snow would arrive before my descent from the mountain, but I never imagined how hard the conditions would be. In the morning they showed me the way how to get to the track up the mountain.

When the snow started falling it was very light, and I couldn't decide if to carry on or go back down. Soon, however, I couldn't see where to go.

I wondered if to retrace my steps and try to find the track again, but by the time I decided whether I should go back, the track had disappeared.

As the snow got heavier I began to realise whether my life was in danger. Fortunately, my years in the Andes had taught what to do in extreme conditions. I knew that there was a shepherd's hut somewhere on this side of the mountain that I could shelter in, but I didn't know that it was nearby or miles away.

Unit 35

Tense choice in reporting

A Verb tense in the *reported* clause

Reminder → G1–G7

When the situation described in the *reported* clause (see Unit 32) is in the *past* when we are reporting it, we use a past tense (past simple, past continuous, etc.):

☐ 'I don't want anything to eat.' → Yusuf **said** that he **didn't want** anything to eat.
☐ 'I'm leaving!' → Lamar **announced** that she **was leaving**.

When the situation described in the *reported* clause was *already* in the past when it was spoken about originally, we often use the past perfect to report it:

☐ 'We have found the missing girl.' → Police **said** that they **had found** the missing girl.

However, if it is clear that one event took place before another, then it may not be necessary to indicate this by using the past perfect and we use the past simple instead:

☐ 'I've sent out the invitations. I did it well before the wedding.' → She **reassured** me that she **sent** out the invitations well before the wedding. (*or*… **had sent** …)

B

When the situation described in the *reported* clause is a *permanent / habitual situation*, or still exists or is relevant at the time we are reporting it, then we use a present tense (or present perfect) if we also use a present tense for the verb in the *reporting* clause:

☐ Dr Weir **thinks** that he **spends** about five minutes on a typical appointment with a patient.
☐ US scientists **claim** that they **have developed** a new vaccine against malaria.

Note that the present perfect focuses attention on the *result* of the action, not the action itself.

However, when we use a past tense in the *reporting* clause we can use either a present or past tense (or present perfect or past perfect) in the *reported* clause:

☐ She **argued** that Carl **is / was** the best person for the job.
☐ They **noted** that the rate of inflation **has / had slowed** down.

Choosing a present tense (or present perfect) in the *reported* clause emphasises that the situation being reported still exists or is still relevant when we report it.

If we are not sure that what we are reporting is necessarily true, or a situation may not still exist now, we prefer a *past* rather than a present tense. Compare:

☐ Yasemin told me that she **has** two houses. (= might suggest that this is true) *and*
☐ Yasemin told me that she **had** two houses. (= might suggest either that this is perhaps not true, or that she once had two houses but doesn't have two houses now)

C Verb tense in the *reporting* clause

To report something said or thought in the past, the verb in the *reporting* clause is often in a *past* tense:

☐ Just before her wedding, she **revealed** that she had been married before.

When we report current news, opinions, etc. we can use a present tense for the verb in the *reporting* clause. In some cases, either a present or past tense is possible, although we prefer a present tense to emphasise that what was said is true or still relevant when we report it:

☐ She **says** that she'll have to close the shop unless business improves. (*or* … **said** …)

We often prefer a present rather than a past tense –

☆ to report information that we have been told or heard, but don't know whether it is true:
☐ I **hear** you're unhappy with your job.

☆ to report what is said by some authority:
☐ The law **says** that no one under the age of 16 can buy a lottery ticket.

☆ to report what many people say:
☐ Every teacher I've spoken to **tells** me that standards of spelling are in decline.

Exercises

35.1 **Report these sentences using the verbs from the box in the reporting clauses and either the past simple or past perfect (or both if possible) in the that-clause.** A

alleged **conceded** **~~denied~~** **estimated** **recalled** **repeated**

1 'I have never been in love with Oliver.' →
She denied that she had ever been / was ever in love with Oliver.
2 'Markus has stolen jewellery from my house.' → She …………………………………………
3 'I think the vase is around 250 years old.' → She …………………………………………
4 'I've told you once. I've already seen the film.' → She …………………………………………
5 'Well, perhaps you're right. Maybe I did treat Lara unkindly.' → She …………………………………………
6 'I seem to remember that Wilma's great-grandmother was from Spain.' → She …………………………………………

35.2 **Complete the sentences with a verb chosen from a suitable pair. If both verbs in the pair are possible, write both.** B

has / had **is / was** **looks / looked** **solved / have solved**
states / stated **understand / understood**

1 Engineers hope that they ………………… the problems with the bridge now that new supports have been built, and they plan to reopen it next week.
2 The current law ………………… that an employee has the right to appeal against dismissal.
3 Simon is already a good tennis player, but he accepts that he still ………………… a lot to learn.
4 I ………………… that you want to buy a second-hand car. Your brother just told me.
5 Health officials warn that anyone who ………………… directly at the sun during an eclipse may put their sight at risk.
6 They reassured us that the path ………………… perfectly safe.

35.3 **Jamie Barnes and Daniel Nokes have been interviewed by the police in connection with a robbery last week. If necessary, correct the tenses in the that-clauses in these extracts from the interview reports. If not, write ✓. Suggest possible alternatives.** A–C

1

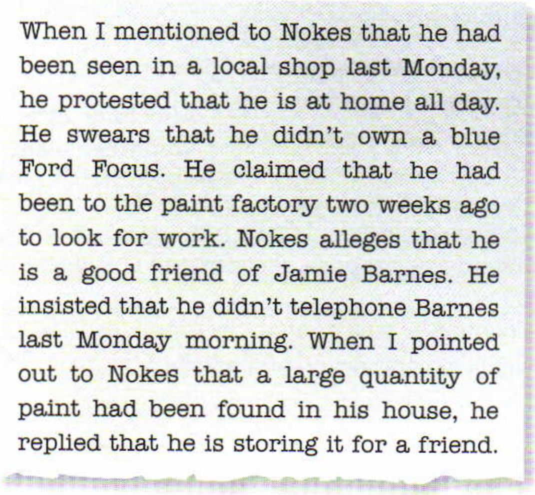

When I mentioned to Nokes that he had been seen in a local shop last Monday, he protested that he is at home all day. He swears that he didn't own a blue Ford Focus. He claimed that he had been to the paint factory two weeks ago to look for work. Nokes alleges that he is a good friend of Jamie Barnes. He insisted that he didn't telephone Barnes last Monday morning. When I pointed out to Nokes that a large quantity of paint had been found in his house, he replied that he is storing it for a friend.

2

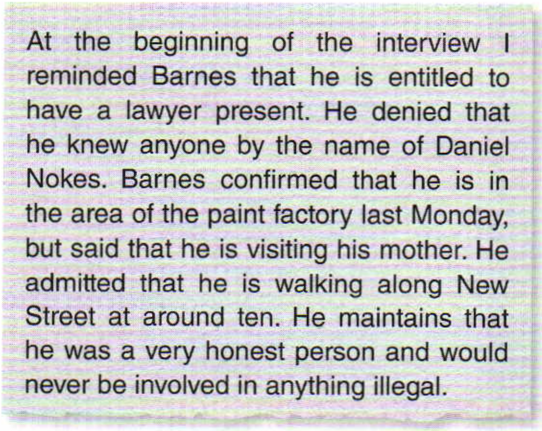

At the beginning of the interview I reminded Barnes that he is entitled to have a lawyer present. He denied that he knew anyone by the name of Daniel Nokes. Barnes confirmed that he is in the area of the paint factory last Monday, but said that he is visiting his mother. He admitted that he is walking along New Street at around ten. He maintains that he was a very honest person and would never be involved in anything illegal.

→ Additional exercise 8 (page 245)

Unit
36

Reporting offers, suggestions, orders, intentions, etc.

A

Verb + (object) + to-infinitive clause

When we report offers, suggestions, orders, intentions, promises, requests, etc. we can follow some verbs in the *reporting clause* (see Unit 33) with –

☆ a **to-infinitive clause**

- 'The theatre will be built next to the town hall.'→ They **propose to build** the theatre next to the town hall. (*not* They propose them to build ...)

Also: **agree, demand, guarantee, offer, promise, swear, threaten, volunteer**

☆ an **object + to-infinitive clause**

- 'You should take the job, Fran.' → She **encouraged Fran to take** the job.

Also: **advise, ask, call on, command, instruct, invite, order, persuade, recommend, remind, request, urge, warn, tell**

The object usually refers to the person who the offer, suggestion, etc. is made to; that is, the person who performs the action in the reported clause.

Compare the use of **ask** with and without an object before a **to-infinitive clause**:

- We **asked** *to leave* our bags outside the exam room. (= this is something we wanted) *and*
- They **asked** *us to leave* our bags outside the exam room. (= this is something they wanted)

B

Verb + that-clause *or* verb + to-infinitive clause

After some verbs we can use a **that-clause** instead of a **to-infinitive clause**:

- He **promised** *to arrive* on time. *or*
- He **promised** *that* he would arrive on time.

Also: **agree, demand, expect, guarantee, hope, propose, request, vow**

With a **that-clause** the person promising, etc. and the person referred to in the *reported* clause may be different:

- He **promised** *that* he wouldn't be late. ('He ...' and '... he ...' may refer to different people)

C

After the verbs **insist, order, say** and **suggest** we use a **that-clause** but not a **to-infinitive clause**:

- There were cheers when he **suggested** *that* we went home early. (*not* ... suggested to go ...)

Advise and **order** can be used with an **object + to-infinitive clause** (see **A**) or a **that-clause**:

- I **advised** *that* she should accept. (*or* I **advised** *her to accept*.; *but not* I advised to accept ...)

D

Verb + to-infinitive clause (*not* verb + that-clause)

After some verbs we use a **to-infinitive clause** but not a **that-clause**:

- Carolyn **intends** *to return* to Dublin after a year in Canada. (*not* Carolyn intends that she should return ...)

Also: **long, offer, refuse, volunteer, want**

E

When we report a suggestion, either what the person reported might do themselves, or what someone else might do, we can use a *reporting clause* with **advise**, **propose**, **recommend** or **suggest** followed by an **-ing clause** rather than a **that-clause**:

- The lecturer **recommended** *reading* a number of books before the exam. (*or* ... **recommended** *that* the students should read a number of books before the exam.)

Exercises

36.1 Report each sentence using a verb from the box and a **to-infinitive clause**. Use each verb once only. If necessary, add an appropriate object after the verb. A

~~advise~~ agree ask call on expect hope order urge vow

1 'If I were you, I'd read the exam questions very carefully.' →
He advised us to read the exam questions very carefully.
2 'Okay, I'll collect Declan from school.' → He …
3 'Be quiet!' → He …
4 'Please stay for a few more days.' → He …
5 'I will fight the ban on smoking in public places.' → He …
6 'I imagine I'll see Olivia at the party.' → He …
7 'Can you lend me ten pounds?' → He …
8 'The government should do more to help the homeless.' → He …
9 'If I leave early, I'll avoid the heavy traffic.' → He …

36.2 Replace any incorrect verbs with ones from the boxes. (It may not be necessary to use all the boxed verbs.) B, C & D

expected promised refused said

In a major speech today, the Health Minister (1) *suggested* to improve the country's health care. She (2) *guaranteed* to reduce waiting times for operations, and (3) *intended* that this could be done without raising taxes. She said that she (4) *insisted* to see significant improvements within a year.

hoped ordered proposed volunteered

The President of Guwandi has (5) *demanded* Narian troops to withdraw from the border area between the two countries, and said that he (6) *wanted* that the Narian president would act now to prevent war. In a separate development, the UN Secretary General has (7) *agreed* to meet the leaders of both countries and has (8) *offered* that a peace conference should be held in New York early next week.

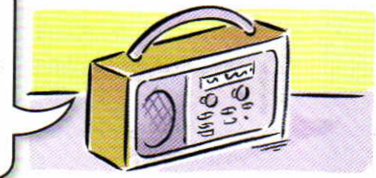

36.3 Complete the sentences in any appropriate way using a clause beginning with the **-ing** form of a verb. E

1 To avoid the road works, police have advised leaving the motorway at Junction 3.
2 To encourage people to use public transport the council proposed
3 Ricardo said the play was very entertaining and he recommended
4 To find my way around London, Reza suggested
5 I'd been feeling unwell for a few days and my mother advised
6 The capital urgently needs a new airport, and the government proposes
7 I've been putting on weight and my doctor has recommended
8 It was a lovely morning and Nina suggested

Can any of these sentences be rewritten with a **to-infinitive clause** without an object?

→ Additional exercise 8 (page 245)

Unit 37

Modal verbs in reporting

A When there is a modal verb in the original statement, suggestion, etc., it sometimes changes when we report what was said or thought. The changes are summarised here:

	modal verb in original	*modal verb in report*
B	**could, would, should, might, needn't, ought to, used to, could have, should have, etc.**	**could, would, should, might, needn't, ought to, used to,** (*i.e. no change*) ①–③ **could have, should have, etc.**
C	**will, can, may**	☐ **would, could, might** ④ & ⑤ ☐ **will, can, may** (existing or future situations and *present* tense verb in reporting clause) ⑥ ☐ **will** or **would**, **can** or **could**, **may** or **might** (existing or future situations and *past* tense verb in reporting clause) ⑦
D	**shall**	☐ **would** (talking about the future) ⑧ ☐ **should** (offers, requests for advice, etc.) ⑨
E	**must** (= necessity) **must** (= conclude; see Unit 18B) **mustn't**	**must** or **had to** ⑩ **must** ⑪ **mustn't** ⑫

B

☐ 'I **could** meet you at the airport.' → He said that he **could** meet us at the airport. ①
☐ 'We **might** drop in if we have time.' → They said they **might** drop in if they have time. ②
☐ 'You **should have** contacted me earlier.' → She said I **should have** contacted her earlier. ③

C

☐ 'She **may** have already left.' → He thought she **might** have already left. ④

If the situation we are reporting still exists or is still in the future and the verb in the *reporting clause* has a *present tense*, we use **will**, **can**, and **may** in the *reported clause* (see Unit 32). Compare:

☐ 'Careful! You'**ll** fall through the ice!' → I **warned** him he **would** fall through the ice. ⑤ *and*
☐ '**I'll** be in Paris at Christmas.' → She **tells** me she'**ll** be in Paris at Christmas. ⑥

If the situation we are reporting still exists or is still in the future and the verb in the *reporting clause* has a *past* tense, we can use either **would** or **will**, **can** or **could**, or **may** or **might** in the *reported clause*:

☐ 'The problem can be solved.' → They **said** the problem **can** / **could** be solved. ⑦

D

☐ 'I **shall** (**I'll**) call you on Monday.' → She told me she **would** call me on Monday. ⑧
☐ 'Where **shall** I put this box?' → He asked where he **should** put the box. ⑨

E

☐ 'You **must** be home by 9 o'clock.' → She said I **must** / **had to** be home by 9 o'clock. ⑩ (*had to* is more natural in speech)
☐ 'I didn't hear the phone. I **must** be going deaf.' → Alex thought he **must** be going deaf. ⑪
☐ 'You **mustn't** tell my brother.' → He warned me that I **mustn't** tell his brother. ⑫

F Note that we sometimes use a modal verb in a reported sentence when there is no modal verb in the original:

☐ 'You're not allowed to smoke here.' → She told me that I **mustn't** smoke there.
☐ 'My advice is to look for a new job now.' → She said that I **should** look for a new job now.

Exercises

37.1 Underline the more appropriate verb. If both are possible, underline them both. C

1 The doctor says that he *will* / *would* see you in 20 minutes.
2 In her letter, Elizabeth revealed that she *may* / *might* be getting married soon.
3 Maxim tells me that he *can* / *could* come for dinner with us tonight after all.
4 Inge promised that she *will* / *would* be at home by nine, so I phoned her shortly after that.
5 The mechanic admitted that he *can't* / *couldn't* repair the radiator and had to replace it instead.
6 Olivia reckons that she *can* / *could* save enough money to go on holiday to Canada.
7 Mario explained that he *will* / *would* be living in Austria for the next six months.

37.2 Complete the reported sentences using a that-clause with a modal verb. A & C

1 'If all goes to plan, I'll study medicine.' → He hoped that he would study medicine but instead he became a vet.
2 'I won't be late.' → She promised .... and she kept her word.
3 'Perhaps we can go to Paris for the weekend.' → He suggested .... but I was busy.
4 'I can get you there in good time.' → She guaranteed .... but I didn't believe her.
5 'I'll pay for the meal.' → He insisted .... and I accepted, of course.

37.3 Complete this message left on an answering machine by reporting what Chloe said, using modal verbs in the reports. D & E

'You mustn't forget to bring your student discount card.'

'Where shall we meet?'

~~'I must be getting old.'~~

'I must be in the city centre by one.'

'I shall be there this time.'

'I can't come to the phone at the moment. Please leave a message after the tone.'

'Hi, Mia. I've just spoken to Chloe and she's keen to come to the pool with us tomorrow. She apologised for not turning up last week – she said she was always forgetting things and that she (1) must be getting old! But she promised (2) .... She's meeting Jack for lunch, and she said she (3) ...., so I suggested meeting at 10:30. She (4) .... and I said just by the pool entrance. Hope that's okay for you. Oh, and she said I (5) .... Remember yours, too. See you there. Bye.'

37.4 Complete the reported sentences using appropriate modal verbs. Give alternative modal verbs where possible. F

1 'It's vital that you attend the meeting.' → She said that I had to / must attend the meeting.
2 'If you want to travel with us, that's fine.' → She said that ....
3 'I'm not prepared to answer his questions.' → She said that ....
4 'Karl's likely to be back soon.' → She said that ....
5 'There's a possibility that I'll have to move to Milan.' → She said that ....
6 'I refuse to accept that Jason is dishonest.' → She said that ....
7 'Maria is sure to be disappointed if you leave without seeing her.' → She said that … ....

Unit 38 Reporting what people say using nouns and adjectives

A Reporting using nouns

We sometimes report people's words and thoughts using a **noun** in the reporting clause followed by a reported clause beginning with **that**, a **to-infinitive**-, or **wh-word**. Most of these nouns are related to reporting verbs (acknowledgement – acknowledge, statement – state, etc.). Note that when we report using **nouns** and **adjectives** (see **C**) the exact original words are not necessarily reported. Instead we might use our own words, or report that something was said without reporting *what* was said.

☆ Noun + **that-clause**

- ○ The **claim** is often made *that* smoking causes heart disease.
- ○ The jury came to the **conclusion** *that* the woman was guilty.

Also: **acknowledgement, advice, allegation, announcement, answer, argument, comment, decision, explanation, forecast, guarantee, indication, observation, promise, recommendation, reply, speculation, statement, suggestion, threat, warning**

Note that we don't usually leave out **that** in sentences like this (see Unit 33).

☆ Noun + **to-infinitive clause**

- ○ I accepted Luisa's **invitation** *to visit* her in Rome.
- ○ He gave me every **encouragement** *to take up* painting again.

Also: **decision, instruction, order, promise, recommendation, refusal, threat, warning**

Note that some of these nouns can be followed by a **that-clause**:

- ○ They carried out their **threat** *to dismiss* workers on strike. (*or* … their **threat** *that* they would dismiss workers on strike.)

☆ Noun + **wh-clause**

- ○ Juan raised the **question** *of when* the money would be collected.
- ○ Our previous meeting looked at the **issue** *of how* to increase income.

Also: **explanation, discussion, problem**

We usually use **of** after these nouns in reporting.

B

After many of the nouns listed in **A** we can use **as to** + **wh-clause** or **as to** + **wh-word** + **to-infinitive** to introduce the subject of a question or topic discussed or thought about (see also Unit 34F). Note that an alternative preposition can usually be used instead of **as to**:

- ○ She asked my *advice* **as to** *what* subject she should study at university. (*or* … advice **on** …)
- ○ There was some *discussion* **as to** *whether* the price included tax or not. (*or* … discussion **of** …)
- ○ Before we left we gave them strict *instructions* **as to** *how to cook* it. (*or* … **about** how to …)

C Reporting using adjectives

Some adjectives used to report a speaker's feelings or opinion are followed by a **that-clause**:

- ○ The builders are **certain** *that* they'll be finished by the end of next week.

Also: **adamant, agreed, angry, annoyed, grateful, insistent, sure**

Adjectives expressing uncertainty are usually followed by a **wh-clause**:

- ○ Scientists are**n't sure** *where* the remains of the satellite will land.

Also: **doubtful** (*usually* + whether), **uncertain, not certain, unsure**

Some adjectives are usually followed by a preposition + noun phrase:

- ○ Today's newspapers are very **critical** *of* the President's decision to appoint Mr Walters.

Also: **apologetic, complimentary, insulting, tactful** (+ about); **dismissive, scornful** (+ of); **abusive, sympathetic** (+ to / towards)

Exercises

38.1 Complete the sentences with the nouns from the box and the notes in brackets. Use a **that-**, **to-infinitive** or **wh-clause**. Suggest alternatives where possible. A

announcement **~~decision~~** **encouragement** **explanation**
invitation **issue** **observation** **promise** **question** **warning**

1 The turning point in his life came when he took the
decision to become an actor. / … that he would become an actor (*become – actor*)
2 He failed to address the … (*who – pay – repairs – building*)
3 I was delighted to get an … (*spend the holidays – them – Scotland*)
4 I think it was Aristotle who made the … (*no such thing – bad publicity*)
5 Amazingly the police accepted Rudi's … (*taken – wallet – mistake*)
6 On the webinar they debated the … (*assisted suicide – criminal offence*)
7 The letter from the company gave a final … (*pay – bill by – end of – week*)
8 The government has broken its … (*reduce – rate – income tax*)
9 The positive reaction to my work gave me considerable … (*take up photography – career*)
10 Waiting passengers were angry when they heard the … (*flight – cancelled*)

38.2 Complete the rewritten sentences using a noun formed from the italicised verb + **as to** and then a **wh-word**. B

1 At the end the writers *suggest* when it is appropriate to correct students' grammar mistakes.
The writers end with
suggestions as to when it is appropriate to correct students' grammar mistakes.
2 People have *argued* a great deal about how to define poverty.
There has been …
3 For months people have *speculated* about whether President Malik would stand again.
There have been months …
4 Scientists might *conclude* something about what their results imply.
Scientists might …
5 We have still not *explained* definitely why the dinosaurs disappeared.
There is still …

38.3 Complete each sentence using an adjective from the box with **that, a wh-word**, or a preposition. C

abusive **adamant** **agreed** **angry** **apologetic**
not certain **complimentary** **dismissive** **~~doubtful~~** **unsure**

1 The climbers were doubtful whether the clothes would be warm enough at high altitudes.
2 My boss is very unsympathetic and was .... my complaints about the new software.
3 The company is .... the child car seats are safe.
4 Mona tried to pick up the rabbit, but was .... to hold it.
5 She was very .... the window had been broken.
6 Rachel is normally very reliable and was extremely .... turning up late.
7 Karim left for New York in September but he was .... he would return.
8 The court heard that Hughes became .... a police officer and was arrested.
9 Judi doesn't normally like spicy food, but was quite .... my fish curry.
10 All the players are .... the game should go on despite the weather.

→ Additional exercise 8 (page 245)

Unit
39

Should in **that-clauses**; the present subjunctive

A

We can sometimes report advice, orders, requests, suggestions, etc. about things that need to be done or are desirable using a **that-clause** with **should** + **bare infinitive**:

- ☐ They have proposed that Felix **should** *move* to their Munich office.
- ☐ We advised **that** the company **should not** *raise* its prices.

After **should** we often use **be** + **past participle** (passive) or **be** + **adjective**:

- ☐ They directed **that** the building **should** *be pulled down*.
- ☐ We insist **that** the money **should** *be available* to all students in financial difficulties.

B

In formal contexts, particularly in written English, we can often leave out **should** and use only the base form of the verb (that is, the form you would look up in a dictionary). This form is the *present subjunctive* (see Unit 85A for the *past subjunctive*) and is used to describe bringing about the situation expressed in the **that-clause**:

- ☐ They have proposed that Felix **move** to their Munich office.
- ☐ They directed that the building **be pulled down**.

Other verbs used with the present subjunctive: **advise, ask, beg, command, demand, insist, instruct, intend, order, prefer, recommend, request, require, stipulate, suggest, urge, warn**

To make a negative form, we use **not** (*not* 'do not') before the verb:

- ☐ We advised that the company **not raise** its prices.

In less formal contexts we can use ordinary forms of the verb instead of the *subjunctive*. Compare:

- ☐ I suggested that he **should give up** golf. (*negative*: ... that he **shouldn't** give up ...)
- ☐ I suggested that he **give** up golf. (more formal) (*negative*: ... that he **not** give up ...)
- ☐ I suggested that he **gives** up golf. (less formal) (*negative*: ... that he **doesn't** give up ...)

C

We can also use **that-clauses** with **should** or the subjunctive after *reporting clauses* with nouns related to the verbs in **B** (e.g. **advice, order, proposal, warning**):

- ☐ The police issued an **order** that all weapons (should) be handed in immediately.
- ☐ The weather forecast gave a **warning** that people (should) prepare for heavy snow.

D

We can also use **should** or sometimes the subjunctive in a **that-clause** after **it + be + adjective**:

- ☐ **It is inappropriate** that he *(should) receive* the award again. (*or* ... that he *receives* ...)

Also: **advisable, appalling, appropriate, (in)conceivable, crucial, essential, imperative, important, obligatory, (un)necessary, urgent, vital**

E

We can use **should** in a **that-clause** when we talk about our own reaction to something we are reporting, particularly after **be** + **adjective**. Compare:

- ☐ *I am concerned* that she **should think** I stole the money (*or* … that she **thinks** …)

Also: **amazed**, **amused**, **anxious**, **astounded**, **disappointed**, **shocked**, **surprised**, **upset**

Note that when we leave out **should** in sentences like this (= less formal) we use an ordinary tense, not a subjunctive.

F

We can use **should** in a **that-clause** to talk about a situation that exists now:

- ☐ It's not surprising that they **should** *be seen* together – they're brothers.

or one that may exist in the future:

- ☐ We believe it is important that she **should** *take* the exam next year.

If we are talking about an intention or plan, we can often use a *subjunctive* rather than **should**:

- ☐ I've arranged that she **come** to the first part of the meeting. (*or* … that she **should come** … / … that she **comes** … / … for her **to come** …)

Exercises

39.1 **Report these statements from a Spanit Engineering Company board meeting. Use a that-clause with should (should + bare infinitive or should + be + past participle).** A–C

1 Lee said: 'I think it's important to expand business in South America.'
Lee felt that business in South America should be expanded.

2 Lee said: 'Mara Bianchi would make an excellent export manager. Let's promote her.'
Lee urged .

3 Alice said: 'It would be valuable for us to send a sales representative to South Africa.'
Alice recommended .

4 Alice said: 'The Delaware Bridge project ought to be completed by August next year.'
Alice reported .

5 Simon said: 'It is vital to keep to our work schedules.'
Simon insisted .

6 Simon said: 'I'd like all monthly reports sent to me directly.'
Simon instructed .

7 Alina said: 'Perhaps we could use web conferencing for meetings to save money on air fares.'
Alina suggested .

8 Alina said: 'Our head office must remain in London.'
Alina declared .

9 Nathan said: 'It's okay for us to sponsor the European chess league for the next three years.'
Nathan agreed .

10 Nathan said: 'In future, all claims for travel expenses are to be made in US dollars.'
Nathan announced .

39.2 **Look again at your answers for 39.1. Can any of the sentences be written without should and still be correct? Write 'yes' if it is possible and 'no' if not.** A–C

1 ~~Lee felt that business in South America be expanded~~. No

39.3 **Expand the notes using a that-clause with should and an adjective from the box to make reporting sentences. More than one adjective may be possible, but use each once only.** D & E

amused **appalling** **astounded** **imperative**
~~**inconceivable**~~ **shocked** **upset** **urgent**

1 It is … / she / marry Ben.
It is inconceivable that she should marry Ben.

2 I am … / Kristina / behave so badly.

3 I am … / anyone / vote for him.

4 It is … / he / return home immediately.

5 I am … / he / take his appearance so seriously.

6 I am … / they / think I had cheated them.

7 It is … / they / allowed to go free.

8 It is … / we / act now to avoid war.

Unit 40

Agreement between subject and verb 1

A

If a sentence has a singular subject, it is followed by a singular verb, and if it has a plural subject, it is followed by a plural verb; that is, the verb *agrees with* the subject. Compare:

Reminder → H1– H3

○ **She** *lives* in China. *and* ○ **More people** *live* in Asia than in any other continent.

When the subject of the sentence is complex the following verb must agree with the main noun in the subject. In the examples below the subject is underlined and the main noun is circled. Note how the verb, in italics, agrees with the main noun:

○ Many leading members of the opposition party *have* criticised the delay.

○ The only excuse that he gave for his actions *was* that he was tired.

The verb must agree with the subject when the subject follows the verb (see Units 99 & 100):

○ Displayed on the board *were* **the exam results**. (*compare* The exam results *were* displayed …)

B

If the subject is a clause, we usually use a singular verb:

○ To keep these young people in prison *is* inhuman.

○ Having overall responsibility for the course *means* that I have a lot of meetings.

○ Whoever took them *remains* a mystery.

However, if we use a **what-clause** as subject (see Unit 98B), we use a singular verb if the following main noun is singular, and either a singular or a plural verb if the following main noun is plural (although a plural verb is preferred in more formal contexts):

○ What worries us *is* the poor selection **process**.

○ What is needed *are* additional **resources**. (*or more colloquially* … needed *is* …)

C

Some nouns with a singular form, referring to groups of some kind, can be used with either a singular or plural form of the verb. These nouns are sometimes called *collective nouns*:

○ **The council** *has* (or *have*) postponed a decision on the new road.

We use a singular verb if the focus is on the institution or organisation as a whole unit, and a plural verb if the focus is on a collection of individuals. Often you can use either with very little difference in meaning, although in formal contexts (such as academic writing) it is common to use a singular verb.

Also: **army, association, audience, class, club, college, commission, committee, community, company, crew, crowd, department, electorate, enemy, family, federation, generation, government, group, institute, jury, opposition, orchestra, population, press, public, school, team, university; the Bank of England, the BBC, IBM, Sony, the United Nations** (specific organisations)

In some contexts we have to use a singular or a plural form of the verb.

○ The committee usually **raise** their hands to vote 'Yes'. (*not* The committee usually raises its hands ...)	This is something the individuals do, not the committee as a whole.
○ The school **is** to close next year. (*not* The school are to close ...)	This is something that will happen to the school as a building or institution, not to the individuals in the school.

D

When names and titles ending in **-s** refer to a single unit we use a singular verb. Examples include countries; newspapers; titles of books, films, etc.; and quoted plural words or phrases:

○ At this time of the year *the Netherlands* **is** one hour ahead of the UK.

○ *The Machine Gunners* **was** one of Robert Westall's most successful books.

○ '*Daps*' **is** the word used in the south-west of the country for sports shoes.

Exercises

40.1 **Correct ten mistakes in the italicised verbs in this museum review.** **A & B**

Museums and historic sites
The Rivers Museum
Open: 9 am – 5 pm, Mon – Sat
Entrance: Free

The Rivers Museum on the corner of Corn Street and New Road ^{1} ~~*house*~~ houses a fascinating collection of art and other objects which begins as soon as you step through the door. Among the most eye-catching pieces in the whole collection ^{2}*is* the marble animal sculptures under two arches on the left of the entrance hall. Whoever created these figures apparently ^{3}*remain* a mystery, but the skill of the craftspeople who worked on them ^{4}*is* obvious. Hanging on the wall directly opposite the carvings ^{5}*is* over a hundred swords from the 17th century. The narrow doorway between the arches ^{6}*let* you into a series of smaller rooms where paintings from the 18th and 19th centuries ^{7}*are* on display. If paintings aren't your thing, the museum's incredible collection of seashells and fossils in the final room ^{8}*are* sure to be of interest. Perhaps what is most surprising about the building itself ^{9}*are* the bell tower in the small courtyard. Only since the restoration work was completed in 2011 ^{10}*have* the tower been open, and climbing the 150 steps to the top to take in the view over the city ^{11}*is* well worth the effort. Over 50 full-time staff and volunteers ^{12}*is* employed and having so many of them available to answer questions about the collection ^{13}*add* to the pleasure of this must-see museum.

40.2 **Complete each sentence with a noun from the box and an appropriate form of the verb in brackets (singular, plural or both).** **C**

audience **class** **jury** **orchestra** **press**
~~team~~ **the United Nations** **university**

1 The volleyball ...team... ...play / plays... twice a week in the summer. (*play*)
2 If the .... to host the conference, I just don't know where we will be able to hold it. (*refuse*)
3 The worldwide television .... for tomorrow's cup final .... expected to be 200 million. (*be*)
4 The .... classical concerts throughout the year. (*perform*)
5 The Waterman's Junior Book Prize .... three adults and three children. (*include*)
6 The .... all passed the end-of-year exam. (*have*)
7 The .... a picture of chaos in our schools, but it's just not like that at all. (*present*)
8 .... ordered an investigation into the capture of members of its peace-keeping force in eastern Africa. (*have*)

40.3 **If necessary, correct the mistakes in these sentences or write ✓ if they are already correct.** **A–D**

1 The United States come top of the list of countries ranked by economic performance.
2 The people I know who have seen the film say that it's really good.
3 The *New Straits Times* report that tourism is booming in Malaysia.
4 *Northern Lights* are one of Suzanne's favourite books.
5 The stairs leading to the first floor were steep and poorly lit.
6 Chequers is the country house of the British Prime Minister.
7 Whoever made all the mess in the kitchen have to clear it up.
8 The phrase 'men in white coats' are used to talk about psychiatrists.
9 The public needs to be kept informed about progress in the peace talks.
10 Musical chairs are a party game where everyone dashes for a seat when the music stops.

➜ **Additional exercise 9** (page 245)

Unit 41

Agreement between subject and verb 2

A

With **any of**, **each of**, **either of**, **neither of**, or **none of** and a **plural noun / pronoun** we can use a *singular* or *plural* verb. (We use a singular verb for careful written English.)	○ I don't think **any of** them *knows* (or *know*) where the money is hidden. ○ **Neither of** the French athletes *has* (or *have*) won this year.
With **a / the majority of, a number of, a lot of**, **plenty of**, **all** (**of**), or **some** (**of**) and a **plural noun / pronoun** we use a *plural* verb. (We use a singular verb with **the number of**.)	○ **A number of** refugees *have* been turned back at the border. ○ **The number of** books in the library *has* risen to over five million.
After **one of** and a **plural noun / pronoun** we use a *singular* verb. However, after **one of** + **plural noun / pronoun** + **who** we can often use either a singular or plural verb. (A plural verb is more grammatical.)	○ **One of** the reasons I took the job *was* that I could work from home. ○ He's **one of** those teachers who *insist* / *insists* on pupils sitting silently in class.
With **any of**, **none of**, **the majority of**, **a lot of**, **plenty of**, **all** (**of**), **some** (**of**) and an **uncountable noun** we use a *singular* verb.	○ **All** the furniture *was* destroyed in the fire. ○ **None of** the equipment *appears* to be damaged.
With **every** or **each** and a **singular noun** or **coordinated noun** (x *and* y) we use a *singular* verb. (For **each of**, see above.)	○ **Every** room *looks* over the harbour. ○ **Every** boy and girl *takes* part in the activity. ○ **Each** child *has* drawn a picture. *but* ○ The children *have* **each** drawn a picture.
With **everyone**, **everybody**, **everything** (and similar words beginning **any-**, **some-** and **no-**) we use a *singular* verb.	○ Practically **everyone** *thinks* that Phil should be given the job.

B

When a subject has two or more items joined by **and**, we usually use a plural verb:

○ **Ingrid and Tobias** *are* moving back to Australia.

However, phrases connected by **and** can also be followed by singular verbs if we think of them as making up a single item:

○ **The lorry**, **its cargo and passengers** *weighs* around 35 tonnes. (*or* … *weigh* …)

C

When a subject is made up of two or more items joined by **(either) … or …** or **(neither) … nor …** we use a singular verb if the last item is singular (although a plural verb is sometimes used in informal English), and a plural verb if the last item is plural:

○ **Either the station or the cinema** *is* a good place to meet. (*or* … *are* … in informal English)
○ **The President or his representatives** *are* to attend the meeting.

If the last item is singular and previous item plural, we can use a singular or plural verb:

○ **Either the teachers or the principal** *is* to blame for the accident. (*or* … *are* to blame …)

D

In **there** + **be** / **have** (see Unit 95) we use a singular verb form with singular and uncountable nouns and a plural form with plural nouns. However, in informal speech we often use a shortened singular form of **be** or **have** (= **There's**) with plural nouns:

○ Over the last few years **there** *have* been many **improvements** in car safety.
○ **There**'*s* been lots of good films on lately. (*or* **There**'*ve* been …)

Exercises

41.1 **Complete each set of sentences using nouns or phrases from (i) and appropriate present simple verb forms (active or passive) from (ii). If singular and plural verb forms are possible, write both.** A

(i) **his early paintings** **~~my children~~** **Dr Jones's acquaintances** **the food**

(ii) **remain** **~~remember~~** **taste** **know**

1 a I'd be surprised if any of my children remember / remembers my birthday.
b It's unlikely that any of .... It seems that he destroyed most of the work he produced during the 1930s.
c I don't think any of .... particularly good. In fact, the restaurant is rather disappointing.
d An investigation is underway to discover whether any of .... where he is.

(i) **vegetarians** **victims** **other museums** **medicines**

(ii) **exceed** **charge** **expect** **relieve**

2 a Mainly because of recent health scares involving beef and chicken, the number of .... to rise dramatically in the next five years.
b A number of .... the symptoms of influenza, but none can cure it.
c It is estimated that the number of .... of the flooding .... 100,000.
d You can still go into the National Museum for free, although a number of .... in the capital .... people for entry.

(i) **player** **these factors** **the cars** **the pieces**

(ii) **last** **test** **influence** **try**

3 a The whole concert includes twenty short items from young musicians. Each of .... about five minutes.
b The aim of the game is quite simple. Each .... to buy as many properties on the board as possible.
c Each of .... for safety, fuel economy and reliability.
d There are four major influences on exchange rates: price levels, tariffs, preference for imported goods, and productivity. Here we investigate how each of .... the exchange rate.

41.2 **Complete the sentences with present simple forms of the verb in brackets. If both singular and plural verb forms are possible, write both.** A–D

1 Plenty of jobs .... available, but no one .... them because they're so poorly paid. (*be / want*)
2 The majority of those questioned .... that the government's economic policies have failed, although neither the Prime Minister nor the Education Minister .... indicated that these policies will change. (*think / have*)
3 It's the first time that either of us .... been to China, but everyone we've met here .... been very welcoming and helpful. (*have / have*)
4 Professor Smith and Dr Peters .... that the wreck of the ship and its cargo .... a danger to local people fishing near the island. (*claim / constitute*)
5 A: Oh, good, sausages and chips .... my favourite.
B: Sorry, all the sausages .... gone, but there .... plenty of chips left if you want some. (*be / have / be*)

→ **Additional exercise 9** (page 245)

Unit 42

Agreement between subject and verb 3

A Plural nouns

Some nouns are usually plural and take a plural verb:

○ The company's **earnings** *have increased* for the last five years.

Also: **belongings, clothes, congratulations, goods, outskirts, overheads, particulars** (= information), **premises** (= building), **riches, savings, stairs, surroundings, thanks**

Note that **whereabouts** can be used with either a singular or plural verb, **police** and **people** always take a plural verb, and **staff** usually does:

○ **Police** *believe* that Thomas is in Brazil, although his exact **whereabouts** *are / is* unknown.
○ **Staff** *say* that the new computer system has led to greater levels of stress in their work.

B Plural nouns used with singular verbs

Although the words **data** and **media** (= newspaper, television, etc.) are plural (singular **datum** and **medium**), they are commonly used with a singular verb. However, in formal contexts such as academic writing a plural verb is preferred. Note that other similar plurals such as **criteria** and **phenomena** (singular **criterion** and **phenomenon**) are always used with plural verbs. Compare:

○ All the **data** *is* available for public inspection. (*or* … *are* available …) *and*
○ I agree that the **criteria** *are* not of equal importance. (*not* … the criteria is not …)

C Uncountable nouns ending in -s

Some uncountable nouns always end in **-s** and look as if they are plural, but when we use them as the subject they have a singular verb:

○ The **news** from the Middle East *seems* very encouraging.

Also: **means** (= 'method' or 'money'); **economics, linguistics, mathematics, phonetics, physics; politics, statistics; athletics, gymnastics; diabetes, measles, rabies**

However, compare:

academic subject	*general use*
○ **Politics** *is* popular at this university.	○ Her **politics** *are* bordering on the fascist. (= political belief)
○ **Statistics** *was* always my worst subject.	○ **Statistics** *are* able to prove anything you want them to. (= numerical information)
○ **Economics** *has* only recently been recognised as a scientific study.	○ The **economics** behind their policies *are* unreasonable. (= the financial system)

D Agrement with measurements, percentages, etc.

With a phrase referring to a measurement, amount or quantity we usually prefer a singular verb:

○ Only **three metres** *separates* the runners in first and second places. (*rather than* … separate …)

and a singular verb must be used when the complement is a singular noun phrase (e.g. a long time):

○ **Three hours** *seems* a long time to take on the homework. (*not* Three hours seem …)

When the first noun in a complex subject is a percentage or a fraction the verb agrees with the noun closest to the verb. Compare:

○ **An inflation rate** of only 2% *makes* a difference to exports. (verb agrees with main noun) *and*
○ About 50% / half of **the houses** *need* major repairs. (verb agrees with closest noun)

Where we use a singular noun that can be thought of as either a whole unit or a collection of individuals, we can use either a singular or plural verb:

○ Some 80% of **the electorate** *is* expected to vote. (*or* … *are* expected …)

Exercises

42.1 **If necessary, correct the italicised verbs.** A & B

1 Dr Darsee's present whereabouts *is* unknown.
2 Phenomena such as sun spots *have* puzzled scientists for centuries.
3 Over the last decade the company's overheads *has* increased dramatically.
4 The research data *was* collected during the period 12th–29th July 2012.
5 Congratulations *goes* to Ricky Branch for his excellent exam results.
6 The coastal surroundings of the village *is* particularly attractive.
7 He feels that the media *have* criticised him unfairly.
8 Further particulars about the house *is* available from the owner.
9 People *says* the house is haunted.

42.2 **Complete the sentences using suitable present simple verbs.** C

1 Modern linguistics .... often said to have begun at the start of the 20th century.
2 I think the Senator's politics .... extremely right-wing.
3 If athletics .... neglected in schools, this will have a big impact on future national teams.
4 Measles .... killed a large number of children in the Nagola region.
5 Contact us by whatever means .... most convenient for you: phone, email or fax.
6 Recent statistics .... evidence of a rapid increase in living standards in Asia.

42.3 **Complete these extracts from news articles with a singular or plural form of the verbs in brackets. If both singular and plural forms are possible, write both.** A–D; also Unit 40

1

The outskirts of our cities .... (*have*) benefited from the new out-of-town shopping centres that .... (*have*) recently been built. Around a third of the population regularly .... (*shop*) out of town.

2

On average, 25 litres of water .... (*be*) used each day per household and as the population .... (*expect*) higher living standards, this figure will rise.

3

Some 30% of the office space in London .... (*be*) presently empty and the Department for Employment .... (*blame*) high property prices.

4

Three centimetres .... (*be*) all that separated the first two runners in last night's 10,000 metres and the sports club .... (*have*) declared the race a dead-heat.

5

The research group now .... (*admit*) that the criteria they used .... (*be*) not totally reliable, and that the figure of 85% .... (*be*) exaggerated.

6

Following last week's major art theft from the Arcon Art Gallery, the premises .... (*be*) searched by police last night and the owner's belongings .... (*have*) been taken away for further inspection.

7

A survey of the opinions of students .... (*show*) that economics .... (*be*) the least popular university subject. However, 90% of the economics students surveyed .... (*believe*) that their courses are well taught.

8

Sufferers from diabetes .... (*have*) welcomed the launch by Federex of a new drug to combat the disease. The company .... (*say*) that earnings from the drug .... (*be*) to be put back into further research.

→ **Additional exercise 9** (page 245)

Unit
43

Compound nouns and noun phrases

A

Reminder → H4– H12

In a compound consisting of **noun** + **noun**, often the second noun gives the general class of things to which the compound belongs and the first noun indicates the type within this class. The first noun usually has a singular form:

☐ **an address book** (= a book for addresses; *not* an addresses book)

However, there are a number of exceptions. These include –

☆ when the first noun only has a plural form:

☐ **a savings account** **a customs officer** **a clothes shop** (compare **a shoe shop**) **the arms trade** (arms = weapons) **a glasses case** (glasses = spectacles. Compare 'a glass case' = a case made of glass) **an arts festival** (arts = music, drama, film, dance, painting, etc. Compare 'an art festival'; art = painting, drawing and sculpture)

☆ when we refer to an institution (an industry, department, etc.), such as

☐ **the building materials industry** **the publications department**

which deals with more than one kind of item or activity (different types of building material, different forms of publication).

Note that to make a compound noun plural we usually make the second noun plural:

☐ **coal mine(s)** **office-worker(s)** **tea leaf / leaves**

B

Sometimes a **noun** + **noun** is not appropriate and instead we use **noun** + **-'s** + **noun** (possessive form) or **noun** + **preposition** + **noun**. In general, we prefer **noun** + **-'s** + **noun** –

☆ when the first noun is the user (a person or animal) of the item in the second noun:

☐ **a baby's bedroom** **a lion's den** **a women's clinic** **a girls' school** **birds' nests**

☆ when the item in the second noun is produced by the thing (often an animal) in the first:

goat's cheese **duck's eggs** **cow's milk** (but note **lamb chops** and **chicken drumsticks**)

☆ when we talk about parts of people or animals; but we usually use **noun** + **noun** to talk about parts of things. Compare:

☐ **a woman's face** **a boy's arm** *but* **a pen top** **a computer keyboard**

We prefer **noun** + **preposition** + **noun** –

☆ when we talk about some kind of container together with its contents. Compare:

☐ **a cup of tea** (= a cup with tea in it) *and* **a tea cup** (= a cup for drinking tea from)

☆ when the combination of nouns does not refer to a well-known class of items. Compare:

☐ **income tax** (a recognised class of tax) *and* **a tax on children's clothes** (*rather than* 'a children's clothes tax')

C

Some compound nouns are made up of verbs and prepositions or adverbs, and may be related to a two- or three-word verb (see Unit 94). Compare:

☐ Mansen **broke out** of the prison by dressing as a woman. (= escaped) *and*

☐ There was a major **break-out** from the prison last night. (= prisoners escaped)

Countable compound nouns like this have a plural form ending in **-s**:

☐ **read-out(s)** **push-up(s)** **intake(s)** **outcome(s)**

However, there are exceptions. For example:

☐ **looker(s)-on** (*or* **onlooker[s]**) **runner(s)-up** **passer(s)-by** **hanger(s)-on**

D

We can form other kinds of hyphenated phrases that are placed before nouns to say more precisely what the noun refers to:

☐ a **state-of-the-art** (= very modern) tablet PC **up-to-date** information

Exercises

43.1 **If necessary, correct the italicised words.** A & B

1. Ali worked for a long time in (a) *the parks department*, but a few years ago he retrained, and now he's (b) *a computers programmer*. Of course, what he really wants to be is (c) *a films star!*
2. I was waiting at (a) *the bus stop* this morning when a cyclist on her way to the (b) *girl school* up the road got knocked off her bike. Someone got out of a car without looking and (c) *the car's door* hit her. She was very lucky not to be badly hurt, although she did have (d) *a head cut*.
3. I shouldn't be long at (a) *the corner shop*. I've just got three things on my (b) *shopping list* – (c) *a milk bottle*, (d) *a biscuit packet*, and (e) *some teethpaste*. I'll also look for (f) *some goat's cheese*, but I don't think they'll have any.
4. The tracks on his latest CD range from (a) *love songs* to (b) *pollution songs*.
5. Marta hated going into her grandfather's old (a) *tools shed*. It was full of (b) *spider webs*.
6. When Jake was cleaning his (a) *armschair*, he found a lot of things that had slipped down the back. There was an old (b) *pen top*, a piece from (c) *the 500-pieces jigsaw puzzle* that his daughter had been doing, and his (d) *glass case* with his sunglasses inside.

43.2 **Underline the two-word verbs in sentences 1–4, then complete sentences 5–8 with the corresponding compound nouns.** C

1. Nathan tried to cover up the fact that he had gambled and lost most of his money.
2. It is reported that cholera has broken out in the refugee camp.
3. I'm flying to Sydney, but I'm stopping over in Singapore for a few days on the way.
4. On the first Friday of each month, a few of us get together and go ten-pin bowling.
5. The minister was taken ill in Iceland during a short .... on his way back to Canada.
6. We didn't have a big party for Jo's 50th birthday, just a family ....
7. Allegations of a .... of a major leak of radioactive waste from the nuclear power plant have been strongly denied by the Energy Ministry.
8. Only two years ago there was a serious .... of malaria in the town.

43.3 **Match the halves of these phrases, then use them to complete the sentences below. The meaning of the correct phrase is given in brackets.** D

~~day-to-~~ **down-to-** **larger-than-** **man / woman-in-the-**
once-in-a- **step-by-** **middle-of-the-** **round-the**

clock **~~day~~** **earth** **life** **lifetime** **road** **step** **street**

1. Although the Managing Director of Transcom was involved in major decisions, she left the day-to-day running of the company to her staff. (*routine*)
2. The party will never regain power unless it can persuade .... voters that it has rid itself of corruption. (*not politically extreme*)
3. Since the attempt to assassinate him last year, the Defence Minister has been given .... protection by the police. (*all day and all night*)
4. The bookcase came with simple, ... instructions on how to assemble it. (*progressing from one stage to the next*)
5. When the comet passes close to Earth next week, scientists will have a .... opportunity to study its effects on our atmosphere. (*very rare*)
6. Eleni has a refreshing, ... approach to management. She's much less concerned with theory than with getting things done in the most efficient way possible. (*practical*)
7. The .... isn't interested in the finer points of the government's tax policy. They just want to know if they are going to take home more or less pay. (*ordinary person*)
8. Her father was a .... character who was well known throughout the village for his eccentric way of dressing and outspoken views. (*more exaggerated than usual*)

→ **Additional exercise 9** (page 245)

Unit
44
A / an and one

A

We use **a** before nouns and noun phrases that begin with a consonant sound. Reminder → 16–7

If the noun or noun phrase starts with a vowel *letter* but begins with a consonant *sound*, we also use **a**:

a university (/ə ju:n …/) **a Eu**ropean (/ə jʊər …/) a one-parent family (/ə wʌn …/)

We use **an** before words that begin with a vowel sound, including a silent letter 'h':

☐ **an o**range **an I**talian **an u**mbrella **an h**our **an h**onour

and abbreviations said as individual letters that begin with A, E, F, H, I, L, M, N, O, R, S or X:

☐ **an M**P (/ən em piː/) **an F**BI agent (/ən ef biː aɪ …/) **an I**OU (/ən aɪ əʊ juː /)

But compare abbreviations said as words:

☐ **a NATO** general (/ə neɪtəʊ … /) **a FIFA** official (/ə fiːfə … /) *but* **an OPEC** meeting (/ən əʊpek … /)

Note that we say:

☐ **a history** (book) *but* **an** (*or* **a**) **historical** (novel)

B

We use **a / an** (not **one**) to talk about a particular but unspecified person, thing or event:

☐ I really need **a** cup of coffee.

☐ You never see **a** police officer in this part of town, do you?

We also use **a / an**, not **one**, in number and quantity expressions such as:

☐ three times **a** year half **an** hour **a** quarter of **an** hour **a** day or so (= 'about a day')
50 cents **a** (= each) litre (note we can also say '50 cents for one litre')
a week or two (= between one and two weeks; note we can also say 'one or two weeks')
a few **a** little **a** huge number of …

We use **a** rather than **one** in the pattern **a** … **of** … with possessives, as in:

☐ She's **a** colleague **of** mine.

☐ That'**s a** friend **of** Gabriel's.

C

Before a singular countable noun **one** and **a / an** both refer to one thing:

☐ We'll be in Australia for **one** year. (*or* … **a** year.)

☐ Wait here for **one** minute, and I'll be with you. (*or* … **a** minute …)

Using **one** gives a little more emphasis to the length of time, quantity, amount, etc.:

☐ He weighs **one** hundred and twenty kilos! Would you believe it! (using **one** emphasises the weight more than using **a**)

However, we use **one** rather than **a / an** if we want to emphasise that we are talking about *only* one thing or person rather than two or more:

☐ Do you want **one** sandwich or two?

☐ Are you staying only **one** night?

☐ I just took **one** look at her and she started crying.

We use **one**, not **a / an**, in the pattern **one** … **other / another**:

☐ Close **one** eye, and then the **other**.

☐ Bees carry pollen from **one** plant to **another**.

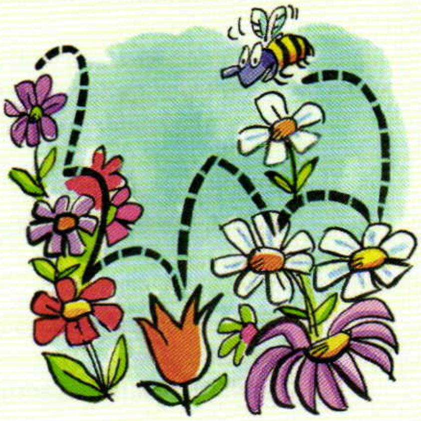

We also use **one** in phrases such as **one day**, **one evening**, **one spring**, etc. to mean a particular, but unspecified, day, evening, spring, etc.:

☐ Hope to see you again **one day**.

☐ **One evening**, while he was working late at the office …

Exercises

44.1 **Write a or an in the spaces.** A

1 .... unpaid bill
2 .... DIY shop
3 .... MP3 player
4 .... Euro
5 .... MiG fighter plane
6 .... Olympic medal
7 .... AGM
8 .... U-turn
9 .... heirloom
10 .... NASA space launch
11 .... UN decision
12 .... SOS message
13 .... F grade
14 .... hero

44.2 **If necessary, correct a / an or one in these sentences, or write ✓. In which sentences are a / an and one both possible?** B & C

1 I usually go to the gym four times one week.
2 There's more than one way to solve the problem.
3 I phoned the council to complain, but just got passed on from a person to another.
4 The rate of pay is really good here. You can earn over £20 one hour.
5 Maybe we could go skiing one winter.
6 The apples are 90 cents one kilo.
7 Are you hungry? Would you like one piece of cake?
8 The rules say that there is only one vote per member.
9 You can get seven hours of recording on one disc.
10 A: What would Moritz like for his birthday?
B: Why don't you ask Leah? She's one good friend of his and will have some ideas.
11 There's one pen on the floor. Is it yours?
12 The library books are due back in one month.
13 Do you want some of my chips? There are too many here for a person.
14 I'm going to London for one day or two.
15 Either I'll work late tonight or I'll come in early tomorrow, but the report's got to be finished by lunchtime a way or another.
16 It will take more than one morning to finish the decorating.

44.3 **Which is more appropriate, a / an or one? If both a / an and one are possible, write them both.** B & C

1 If you wait .... second I'll get my coat and come too.
2 I want to see the river .... last time before I leave.
3 The President is visiting the city .... day in November.
4 It was announced that the plane would be approximately .... hour late.
5 I could hear the sound of .... helicopter in the distance.
6 I'd just like to say .... thing before I go.
7 Misaki's baby is .... year old already.
8 Dinner should be ready in .... hour or so.
9 Hugo came over .... evening last week.
10 I've painted .... wall already and I'll do the other tomorrow.
11 I'd like to make .... point here, Carlos, if I may.
12 .... large number of people had gathered in the square.

→ Additional exercise 10 (page 246)

Unit
45

A / an, the and zero article 1

A

We usually use **the** when we talk about –

Reminder → I1– I9

☆ things which are unique; that is, there is only one of them (or one set of them):

☐ **the world** **the sky** **the atmosphere** **the sun** **the ground**
the climate **the horizon** **the human race** **the environment**
the travel industry **the Internet**

☆ general geographical areas with **the** as in:

☐ **the beach** **the town** **the sea(side)** **the land** **the country(side)**
(where 'the country' or 'the countryside' means 'the area where there are no towns')

☆ ☐ **the past** **the present** **the future**

Note, however, that some nouns like this can be used with **zero article** (i.e. no article) to refer to a concept in general:

☐ **Climate** is one of the many factors involved in changing farming methods. (*or* **The climate** ...)
☐ These flowers grow best in sandy soil and **sun**. (= sunshine)
☐ In autumn the temperature difference between **land** and **sea** decreases. (*or* ... **the land** and **the sea** ...)

If we want to describe a particular instance of these we can use **a** / **an**. Compare:

☐ I could see the plane high up in **the sky**. *and*
☐ When I woke up there was **a bright blue sky**.
☐ What are your plans for **the future**? *and*
☐ She dreamt of **a future where she could spend more time painting**.

B

We can use **the** when we make generalisations about classes of things using singular countable nouns. (See also Unit 47A.) Compare the use of **the** and **a** / **an** in these sentences:

☐ **The computer** has revolutionised publishing. (this refers to computers in general) *but not*
A computer has revolutionised publishing. (computers *in general* have done this, not an individual computer)
☐ **The computer** is an important research tool. *and*
☐ **A computer** is an important research tool. (this statement is true of both the general class and the individual item)

As an alternative to **the** + **singular countable noun** we can use a plural countable noun to talk about a class of things:

☐ **Computers** are an important research tool.

Note that if **the** is used with plural and uncountable nouns we refer to a specific thing or group:

☐ **The computers** have arrived. Where shall I put them?
☐ **The music** was wonderful. I could have listened to the orchestra all night.

When we define something or say what is typical of a particular class of people or things, we generally use **a** / **an** rather than **the**:

☐ **A corkscrew** is a gadget for getting corks out of bottles.
☐ **A garden** is there to give you pleasure, not to be a constant worry.

C

Some nouns can be used uncountably when we talk about the whole substance or idea, but countably when we talk about an instance or more than one instance of it. When these nouns are used countably we can use **a** / **an** (and plurals). Compare:

☐ I don't drink **coffee**. *and* ☐ Would you like **a coffee**? (= a cup of coffee)
☐ He shook with **fear**. *and* ☐ He has **a fear** of heights.

There are many other nouns like this, including **conversation**, **grammar**, **importance**, **iron**, **pleasure**, **shampoo**, **sound**. Some of these nouns (e.g. **grammar**, **iron**) have different meanings when they are used countably and uncountably.

Exercises

45.1 Complete both sentences in each pair using one word from the box. Add **the** or **a / an** in an appropriate place. A

beach   future   past   world

1 a I think the best Australian wine is as good as any in ....
b As a child, Dariya would often daydream about travelling forward in time to .... very different from the one she lived in.
2 a If we are elected, we will build our policies on the simple belief that our purpose is to create bright .... for our children rather than achieving short-term goals for ourselves.
b Although our current financial position is worrying, we have many new orders for our products and .... is looking very positive.
3 a As I get older, I remember .... better than things that happened recently.
b Many tourists come to the village looking for .... that never really existed.
4 a If you want to get away from it all, you can take a small boat to deserted .... on one of the islands.
b Dear Mum and Dad, We're having a great holiday. The weather's wonderful and we're spending most of our time on ....

45.2 Underline the correct or more likely answer. If both answers are possible, underline them both. B

1 We get some strange requests in our shop. We had *the customer / a customer* in the other day who wanted to buy chocolate-covered ants.
2 It often seems that *the individual / an individual* can have little impact on government policy.
3 The invention of *a car / the car* is normally attributed to the German engineer Gottlieb Daimler.
4 *The television / A television* has changed the way we think more than any other modern invention.
5 The campaign against smoking in public places argues that its harmful effects are not confined to *the smoker / a smoker*.

45.3 Complete the sentences using the nouns from the box. Use each noun twice. If necessary, insert **a / an** in the correct place. C

conversation   grammar   iron   pleasure   sound

1 My sisters were clearly having a serious ...conversation... so I didn't like to disturb them.
2 It now gives me great .... to introduce that marvellous ventriloquist, Marco Lutman.
3 As we walked through the rainforest we heard .... we weren't expecting – the ring of a mobile phone.
4 The failure to teach .... in schools has affected people's ability to write well.
5 Most red meat is relatively high in ....
6 .... travels at different speeds, depending on the temperature of the air.
7 It's real .... to travel by rail in Sweden. The trains are clean and punctual.
8 I have .... of English printed in 1890 on very thin paper.
9 Although he's got .... he never seems to use it. His shirts are always creased.
10 As she walked into the party, ... ceased and everyone in the crowded room stared at her.

→ Additional exercise 10 (page 246)

Unit
46

A / an, the and zero article 2

A

Reminder ➔ I1– I9

We use **a / an** to say what a person's job is, was, or will be:

☐ She was **a company director** when she retired.

☐ Against her parents' wishes, she wants to be **a journalist**.

However, when we give a person's job title, or their unique position, we use **the** or **zero article** (i.e. no article), not **a / an**. Compare:

☐ She's been appointed **(the) head of the company.** *and*

☐ I'm **a production manager** at Fino. (= there may be more than one production manager)

After **the position of**, **the post of**, or **the role of** we use **zero article** before a job title:

☐ Dr Simons has taken on **the position of** Head of Department.

B

We usually use **zero article** (i.e. no article) before the name of an individual person or place. However, we use **the** –

☆ when there are two people with the same name to specify which one we mean:

☐ That's not **the Stephen Fraser** I went to school with.

but compare 'There was **a** Stephen Fraser in my class.' (= a person named Stephen Fraser)

☆ when we want to emphasise that the person we are referring to is the most famous person with that name. Used this way, **the** is stressed and pronounced /ðiː/:

☐ Do they mean ***the*** **Neil Armstrong**, or someone else?

☆ with an adjective to describe a person, or another noun which tells us their job:

☐ **the late Michael Jackson**

☐ **(the) artist Joseph Turner** ('the' is sometimes left out, particularly in journalism)

☆ when we talk about a family as a whole:

☐ **The Robinsons** are away this weekend.

C

Note that **a / an**, or sometimes **zero article**, is used with a name when referring to the particular excellent qualities of the person named:

☐ Majid plays tennis well, but he'll never be **(a) Roger Federer**.

We also use **a / an** when we refer to an individual example of a product made by a particular manufacturer (e.g I've just bought **a** Mercedes) or a work by a particular artist (e.g. Do you think it could be **a** Van Gogh / **a** Rembrandt?).

You can use **a / an** before a person's name if you don't know the person yourself. Compare:

☐ Dr Lee is here for you. (= I know Dr Lee) *and*

☐ There's **a** Dr Amy Lee on the phone. (= I haven't heard of her before) Do you want to talk to her?

D

In stories and jokes in conversation, **this** is commonly used instead of **a / an** to introduce a new person or thing. Using **this** highlights the person or thing as the topic of what is to come next:

☐ As I was walking along, **this** spider (= a spider) landed on my head, and …

☐ **This** man (= a man) goes into a chemist and he says …

E

We use **the** before a *superlative adjective* (**the biggest, the most expensive**, etc.) when the superlative adjective is followed by a noun or defining phrase:

☐ He is **the finest** *young player* around at the moment.

However, we can often leave out **the**, particularly in an informal style, when there is no noun or defining phrase after the superlative adjective. Compare:

☐ A: Why did you decide to stay in this hotel?
B: It was **(the) cheapest**. *and* It was **the cheapest** I could find.

Exercises

46.1 **If necessary, correct any mistakes in these sentences. If they are already correct, write ✓.** A–C

1 She was determined to be author one day.
2 She recently became the minister in the new government.
3 A: What make is your computer? B: It's Mac.
4 I found myself talking to George Clooney! Not George Clooney, of course, but someone with the same name.
5 I didn't even know Clara was interested in art until I heard that she owns Van Gogh.
6 I've been offered the position of Director of Personnel.
7 We're going on holiday with Nielsens.
8 He's really keen on athletics. He likes to think of himself as the Usain Bolt.

46.2 **Put a / an, the or zero article (–) in the spaces. Give all possible answers.** A–C

1 I'm .... marketing adviser at Unifleet.
2 Leon's .... manager of his local football team.
3 She has been appointed .... Minister for Industry.
4 A special award was given to .... novelist Ian McMurphy.
5 Let me introduce you to .... Georgia Rossi.
6 We met our good friend .... Eliza Borg when we were in .... Malta.
7 When Lucia was young she knew .... Picasso.
8 .... Linda Green is outside. Do you want to see her?

46.3 **If the italicised the can be left out of these sentences, put brackets around it.** E

1. It's *the* best ice-cream I've ever tasted.
2 Rodrigo's boat wasn't the most elegant in the harbour, but it was certainly *the* biggest.
3 I thought the second competitor was *the* best, even though he didn't win a prize.
4 This is by far *the* most valuable painting in the collection.
5 A: Why did you ask Martina to go first? B: Because she's *the* oldest.
6 Sapphires occur in a variety of colours, but blue ones are *the* most valuable.
7 The Pacific is *the* biggest ocean in the world.
8 It's supposed to be *the* oldest post office in the country.

46.4 **Complete the email with a / an, the, zero article or this. Give alternatives where possible.** Units 45 & 46

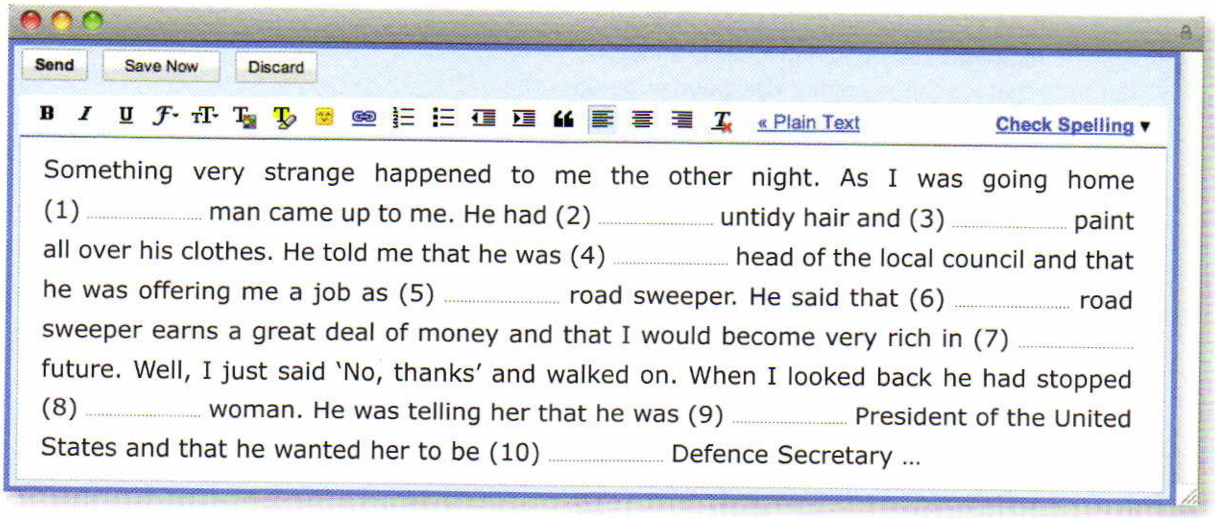

Something very strange happened to me the other night. As I was going home (1) .... man came up to me. He had (2) .... untidy hair and (3) .... paint all over his clothes. He told me that he was (4) .... head of the local council and that he was offering me a job as (5) .... road sweeper. He said that (6) .... road sweeper earns a great deal of money and that I would become very rich in (7) .... future. Well, I just said 'No, thanks' and walked on. When I looked back he had stopped (8) .... woman. He was telling her that he was (9) .... President of the United States and that he wanted her to be (10) .... Defence Secretary ...

→ Additional exercise 10 (page 246)

Unit
47

A / an, the and zero article 3

A

Reminder ➔ I1– I9

With plural and uncountable nouns, **zero article** (i.e. no article) is used to talk generally, without definite people or things in mind. **The** is used when we assume the listener or reader will understand who or what we are referring to, or when other words in the noun phrase make the reference specific. Compare:

☐ The government has promised not to tax **books**. (= books generally) *and*
☐ **The books** have arrived. (= the books you ordered)
☐ **Music** played an important part in his life. (= music generally) *and*
☐ I thought **the music** used in the film was the best part. (= that particular music)

B

We often use **zero article** with the names of holidays, special times of the year, months, and days of the week including **Easter**, **Ramadan**, **New Year's Day**. But compare:

☐ I'll see you on **Saturday**. (= next Saturday)
☐ We met on **Saturday**. (= last Saturday)
☐ They came on **a Saturday** as far as I can remember. (we are only interested in the day of the week, not which particular Saturday)
☐ They came on **the Saturday** after our party. (a particular Saturday, specifying which one)

With **winter**, **summer**, **spring**, **autumn**, and **New Year** (meaning the holiday period), we can use either **zero article** or **the**:

☐ In (**the**) **summer** I try to spend as much time as I can in the garden.

We use **the** when it is understood or we go on to specify which summer, spring, etc. we mean:

☐ I'd like to go skiing in **the autumn**. (= this year)
☐ I first went skiing in **the spring** of 2002.

We say 'in the New Year' to mean near the beginning of next year:

☐ I'll see you again in **the New Year**.

When we want to describe the features of a particular holiday, season, or other period of time and say that it was somehow special when compared with others, we can use **It / That was ... + a / an + noun + modifying phrase**. Compare:

☐ That was **a** winter I'll never forget. (= compared to other winters it was unforgettable) *and*
☐ That was **the** winter we went to Norway. (= a statement about a particular winter)

C

We use **zero article** with times of the day and night such as **midnight**, **midday**, and **noon**:

☐ If possible, I'd like it finished by **midday**.
☐ **Midnight** couldn't come quickly enough.

But note that we can say either **the dawn** or **dawn**:

☐ He got back into bed and waited for (**the**) **dawn**.

We use **the** + **morning** / **afternoon** / **evening** for a day which is understood or already specified:

☐ I enjoyed **the morning**, but in **the afternoon** the course was boring.

But compare:

☐ **Morning** is the time I work best. (= mornings in general; **The morning** ... is also possible)
☐ I'll be there **by** (**the**) **morning** / **evening**. (*but* ... **by the afternoon**, *not* ... by afternoon)
☐ I waited **all morning**. (*more usual than* all the morning / afternoon, etc.)
☐ 'You look upset.' 'Yes, I've had **a** terrible **morning**.' (= compared to other mornings)

D

We often use **by** + **zero article** to talk about means of transport and communication. Compare:

☐ I generally go **by bus** to work. *and* ☐ I generally take **the bus** to work.

Also: **go / travel *by* car / taxi / bus / plane / train / air / sea; contact / communicate *by* post / email / phone**

Exercises

47.1 **Complete both sentences in each pair using one word from the box. Add the where necessary.** A

agriculture children fire holidays islands money parents rain

1 a .... as young as ten are working in the clothing industry.
b While you're painting the sitting room, I'll take .... over to the park.
2 a As the soil quality deteriorated, so too did .... on which the region depended.
b Around 60% of the labour force in the county is supported by ....
3 a Around the world .... are being threatened by rising sea levels.
b .... off the east coast of Malaysia are beautiful.
4 a I've been really busy at work, so I'm really looking forward to ....
b .... in the Brazilian rainforests are now becoming popular with travellers.
5 a Farmers will be hoping for .... in the next few weeks.
b Last night .... was torrential.
6 a I've left .... I owe you on your desk.
b It is said that .... is the root of all evil.
7 a .... will be able to use this software to check their child's use of the Internet.
b .... of Paul Thomas claimed that he was at home at the time of the robbery.
8 a It isn't known how .... started.
b Animals fear .... more than anything else.

47.2 **Complete the dialogues with a / an, the or zero article (–), whichever is more likely. Where more than one answer is possible, consider any difference in meaning.** B & C

1 A: What's the matter?
B: I've been working in the garden all .... afternoon and my back aches.
2 A: Can you remember when we last saw Alex?
B: It was .... Sunday in June, I think.
3 A: When did you get your laptop?
B: July 15th last year. I remember because it was also .... day I passed my driving test.
4 A: I haven't seen Subin for months. B: He's been away in South Africa for .... winter.
5 A: I've spent .... afternoon on the phone to my mother. B: Why? Is there a problem?
6 A: Shall we go out walking on .... Sunday? B: No, I'm busy this weekend.
7 A: Do you remember when Mateo did all the cooking?
B: Of course. It was .... Christmas the rest of us had flu.
8 A: I'll see you again after .... Christmas. B: Okay. Have a good holiday.
9 A: That old coat of yours won't be warm enough for .... winter.
B: You're right. I need a new one.
10 A: Remember when Lars and Ella had that terrible row?
B: How could I forget? That was .... day I wouldn't want to go through again.

47.3 **Complete the sentences using the words from the box (more than once). Add any other necessary words.** D

air car email post

1 A: I got .... from Carla yesterday. B: How is she now?
2 The train was cancelled so I had to come ....
3 Research has found that living plants are efficient at absorbing pollutants in ....
4 The application forms came in .... this morning.
5 The exam results will be sent .... on 24th August.
6 It's raining so I think I'll take ....
7 A: Shall I send Goran a letter? B: No, the quickest way to get in touch with him is ....
8 Thailand – Getting there ....: The main international airport in Thailand is Suvarnabhumi Airport …

→ Additional exercise 10 (page 246)

Unit
48

Some and any

A

Some

Reminder → I10–I21

Before plural and uncountable nouns we sometimes use **some** or **zero article** (i.e. no article) with very little difference in meaning:

☐ 'Where were you last week?' 'I was visiting (**some**) friends.'
☐ Before serving, pour (**some**) yoghurt over the top.

With both **some** and **zero article** we are referring to particular people or things but in an indefinite way. When it is used in this way, **some** is usually pronounced /səm/.

We don't use **some** to make general statements about whole classes of things or people:

☐ **Machinery** can be dangerous unless used properly.
☐ **Babies** need a lot of attention.

B

Some is used before a number to mean 'approximately':

☐ **Some** eighty per cent of all residents took part in the vote. (= approximately eighty per cent; beginning 'Eighty per cent …' suggests a more precise figure)

When it is used in this way, **some** is usually pronounced /sʌm/.

C

When we can't say exactly which person or thing we are talking about because we don't know, can't remember, or want to emphasise that it is not important, we can use **some** instead of **a** / **an** with a singular noun. When it is used in this way, **some** is usually pronounced /sʌm/.

☐ He was interrupted twice by **some** troublemaker in the audience.

We use the phrase **some** (**thing**) **or other** in a similar way:

☐ I bought them from **some** shop **or other** in New Street. (*not* … from a shop or other …)

D

Any

We usually use **any** not **some** (and **anyone**, **anything**, etc. not **someone**, **something**, etc.) –

☆ in non-affirmative contexts; that is, lacking positive, affirmative meaning.

☆ to refer to non-specific, unspecified things.

For example, we generally use **any** in sentences with a negative meaning:

☐ There's *hardly* **any** sugar left.
☐ I closed the windows to *prevent* **any** flies getting in.
☐ It was *impossible* to see **anything** in the dark.
☐ We got to the airport *without* **any** difficulty.

> *Also when sentences include:* **barely, never, rarely, scarcely, seldom** (= negative adverbs); **deny, fail, forbid, prohibit, refuse** (= negative verbs); **reluctant, unable, unlikely** (= negative adjectives)

However, we use **some** with these negative words–

☆ when **some** (pronounced /sʌm/) has the implication 'not all':

☐ I talk to colleagues *before* I make **some** decisions, but I had to make this one on my own.

☆ when the basic meaning is positive:

☐ **Somebody** isn't telling the truth. (= There is some person [who isn't telling the truth])

☆ when we are talking about a particular but unspecified person or thing:

☐ I was *reluctant* to repeat **something** so critical of Paul. (= a specific criticism)

E

We often use **any** in clauses that begin with **before**, and with comparisons:

☐ I cleared up the mess *before* **anyone** saw it. ('… before someone saw it' suggests that I have a particular person in mind who might see it)
☐ The material felt *softer than* **anything** she had ever touched before.

Exercises

48.1 **If necessary, correct these sentences by writing some in an appropriate place or crossing it out. If the sentence is already correct, write ✓.** A & Reminder I10–I14

1 If you're going to the library, could you take back books that I've finished reading?
2 The price of some coffee is at an all-time low.
3 Tony knows more about some jazz than anyone I've ever met.
4 The door kept flying open in the wind so I tied it up with string.
5 Sports are dangerous.
6 I need to get some bread from the supermarket.
7 Money can't buy you some happiness.
8 Children are taller than expected at a given age.

48.2 **Rewrite these news headlines as full sentences using some to mean 'approximately'.** B

1 **250 people charged with assault following Molton riots**
Some 250 people have been charged with assault following the Molton riots.

2 **30% OF ALL CITY BUSES FOUND TO BE UNSAFE**

3 Unexploded bomb found 5 miles from Newham centre

4 25% OF ELECTRICITY FROM WIND BY 2025

5 **200 jobs to be lost at Encon steelworks**

48.3 **Complete the sentences in any appropriate way using some + singular noun or some + singular noun + or other.** C

1 I don't know where I got the information from. I must have heard it
on some radio programme (or other).
2 I don't know where Jakub is. He's probably ....
3 I don't know where the book is. Maybe I lent it ....
4 I don't know where Zuzanna works. I think it's in ....
5 I don't know why Nika is still at work. Perhaps she's got to ....

48.4 **Complete these sentences with some, someone, something, any, anyone or anything. Where both some(one / thing) or any(one / thing) are possible, write both and consider any difference in meaning.** D & E

1 Elias worked hard at learning Japanese but failed to make .... real progress.
2 I was unable to eat .... of the food.
3 I always offer to help organise school concerts, but there is seldom .... for me to do.
4 Fiona Jones is .... I rarely see these days.
5 He denied that he had done .... wrong.
6 I always get to work before .... else.
7 The theatre is unlikely to have .... tickets left for tonight's performance.
8 Despite rowing as hard as we could, we had gone barely .... distance from the shore.
9 .... parents never seem to have time to sit down and talk to their children.
10 When I last lent my laptop out it got damaged, so I'm reluctant to lend it to .... else.

→ Additional exercise 10 (page 246)

Unit 49

No, none (of) and not any

A

We can use **no** and **none** (**of**) instead of **not a** or **not any** for particular emphasis. Compare:

Reminder → I29–I34

☐ There is**n't a** train until tomorrow. *and* There's **no** train until tomorrow. (more emphatic)
☐ Sorry, there is**n't any** left. *and* Sorry, there's **none** left.
☐ He did**n't** have **any** of the usual symptoms. *and* He had **none of** the usual symptoms.

We use other pairs of negative words and phrases in a similar way:

☐ There is**n't anyone** / **anybody** here. *and* There's **no one** / **nobody** here. (more emphatic)
☐ She was**n't anywhere** to be seen. *and* She was **nowhere** to be seen.
☐ Why do**n't** you **ever** call me? *and* Why do you **never** call me?

B

We don't usually use **not a** / **any**, **not anyone**, etc. in initial position in a sentence or clause, or straight after **and**, **but** or **that** at the beginning of a clause. Instead we use **no**, **none of**, **no one**, etc.:

☐ **No** force was needed to make them move. (*not* Not any force was needed …)
☐ Most players are under 16 *and* **none of** them is over 20. (*not* … and not any of them …)
☐ I'm sure *that* **nothing** can go wrong. (*not* … that not anything can …)

C

In a formal or literary style we can use **not a** in initial position or after **and**, **but** or **that** (see also Unit 100):

☐ **Not a** sound came from the room. (*less formally* There wasn't a sound from the room.)
☐ She kept so quiet *that* **not a** soul in the house knew she was there.

D

After **no**, we can often use either a singular or a plural noun with little difference in meaning, although a singular noun is usually more formal:

☐ **No answers** could be found. (*or more formally* **No answer** …)
☐ We want to go to the island but there are **no boats** to take us. (*or more formally* … there is **no boat**.)

However, we use a *singular* noun in situations where we would expect one of something, and a *plural* noun where we would expect more than one. Compare:

☐ I phoned Sarah at home, but there *was* **no answer**. (*not* … but there were no answers.) *and*
☐ He seems very lonely at school, and *has* **no friends**. (*not* … no friend.)

E

We can give special emphasis to **no** or **none of** using phrases like **no amount of** with uncountable nouns, **not one …** / **not a single …** with singular countable nouns, and **not one of …** with plural nouns:

☐ The company is so badly managed that **no amount of** *investment* will make it successful.
☐ **Not one** *person* remembered my birthday. (*or* **Not a single** *person* …)
☐ **Not one of** *the families* affected by the noise wants to move.

F

Some phrases with **no** are commonly used in informal spoken English: **No wonder** (= it's not surprising); **No idea** (= I don't know); **No comment** (= I have nothing to say); **No way**, **No chance** (= emphatic ways of saying 'no', particularly to express refusal to do or believe something); **No problem**, **No bother** (= it isn't / wasn't difficult to do something):

☐ 'The computer's not working again.'
'**No wonder**. It's not plugged in!'
☐ 'Thanks for the lift.' '**No problem**.
I had to go past the station anyway.'

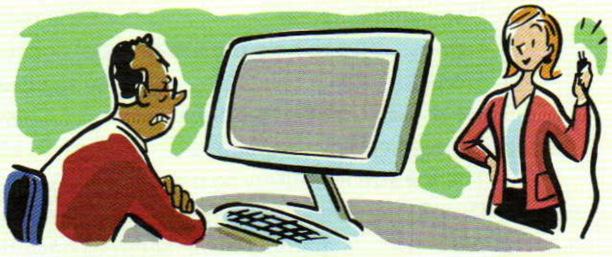

Exercises

49.1 Complete the sentences with a word or phrase from (i) followed by a word or phrase from (ii). Use each word or phrase once only. A–C

(i)

no ~~none~~ none of no one nothing nowhere never not

(ii)

a drop else going to get heard the hotels ~~in the cupboard~~ point wrong

1 Where are the biscuits? There are none in the cupboard.
2 We left the house as quietly as possible and .... us.
3 .... was spilt as she poured the liquid into the flask.
4 She was determined to leave and I knew there was .... in protesting.
5 The door was locked and he had .... to go.
6 I found that .... in the city centre had any rooms left.
7 Liam's so lazy. Is he .... a job?
8 The doctors reassured Emily that they could find .... with her.

49.2 Look again at the sentences in 49.1. Which of them can you rewrite to make less emphatic using **not (n't) any / anyone**, etc.? A & B

49.3 If necessary, correct the italicised parts of this email. D

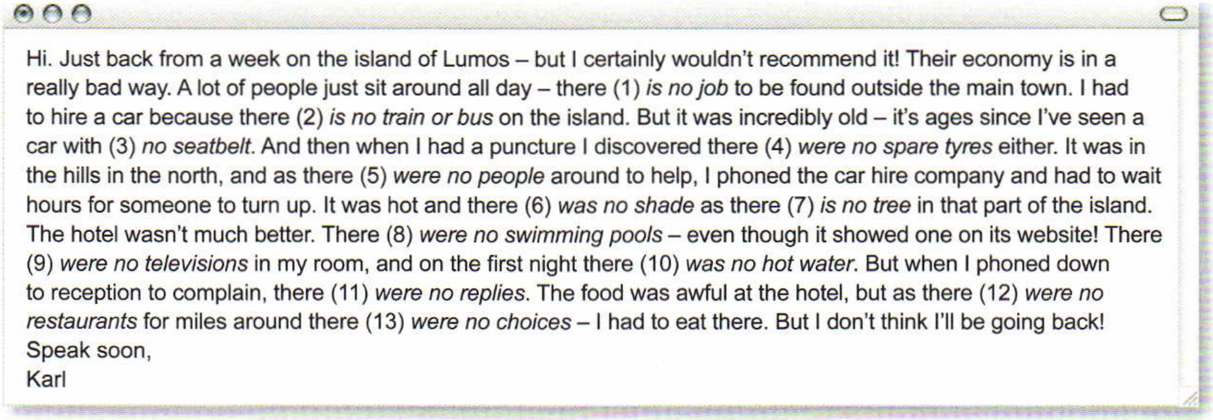

Hi. Just back from a week on the island of Lumos – but I certainly wouldn't recommend it! Their economy is in a really bad way. A lot of people just sit around all day – there (1) *is no job* to be found outside the main town. I had to hire a car because there (2) *is no train or bus* on the island. But it was incredibly old – it's ages since I've seen a car with (3) *no seatbelt*. And then when I had a puncture I discovered there (4) *were no spare tyres* either. It was in the hills in the north, and as there (5) *were no people* around to help, I phoned the car hire company and had to wait hours for someone to turn up. It was hot and there (6) *was no shade* as there (7) *is no tree* in that part of the island. The hotel wasn't much better. There (8) *were no swimming pools* – even though it showed one on its website! There (9) *were no televisions* in my room, and on the first night there (10) *was no hot water*. But when I phoned down to reception to complain, there (11) *were no replies*. The food was awful at the hotel, but as there (12) *were no restaurants* for miles around there (13) *were no choices* – I had to eat there. But I don't think I'll be going back!
Speak soon,
Karl

49.4 Complete these sentences in any appropriate way beginning **not one (of)** or **no amount of**. E

1 I made lots of cakes for the party but not one of the children liked them.
2 Mr Carlson didn't want to sell the painting, and …
3 I sent job applications to over a hundred companies, but …
4 Smallpox used to be common all over the world but since 1978 …
5 The floor had dirty black marks all over it, and …

49.5 Choose one of the **No** … phrases from section F opposite to complete these dialogues. F

1 A: Can you give me a lift to the station? B: .... I'll pick you up at eight.
2 A: I've got a headache.
B: .... You've been in front of that computer screen for hours.
3 A: Do you think Kim will pass her maths?
B: .... She just doesn't work hard enough.
4 A: Where's Stefan?
B: .... Last time I saw him he was in the kitchen.
5 A: I'm from News World, Dr James. Do you have anything to say about the accusation that you stole from your patients? B: .... Goodbye.

Unit
50

Much (of), many (of), a lot of, lots (of), etc.

A

Reminder → 138–142

In affirmative sentences we generally use **a lot of** and **lots (of)** rather than **much (of)** and **many (of)**, particularly in informal contexts. However, there are a number of exceptions –

☆ In formal contexts, such as academic writing, **much (of)** and **many (of)** are often preferred. We can also use phrases such as **a large / considerable / substantial amount of** (with uncountable nouns), or **a large / considerable / great / substantial number of** (with plural nouns):

☐ **Much** debate has been heard about Thornton's new book.
☐ There could be **many** explanations for this.
☐ **Much of** her fiction describes women in unhappy marriages.
☐ **A large amount of** the food was inedible. (*or* **Much of** …)
☐ The book contains **a large number of** pictures, many in colour. (*or* … **many** …)

☆ In formal contexts we can use **much** and **many** as pronouns:

☐ There is no guarantee she will recover. **Much** depends on how well she responds to treatment.
☐ **Many** (= many people) have argued that she is the finest poet of our generation.
☐ Not once did I see a tiger in the jungle, although I heard **many**. (referring back to 'tiger(s)')

☆ We usually use **many** rather than **a lot of** or **lots of** with time expressions (**days**, **minutes**, **months**, **weeks**, **years**) and **number + of** (e.g. **thousands of voters**, **millions of pounds**):

☐ We used to spend **many** *hours* driving to Melbourne and back.
☐ He was the founder of a company now worth **many** *millions of pounds*.

B

We can use **many** following **the**, **my**, **its**, **his**, **her**, etc. and plural countable nouns:

☐ Among *the* **many** *unknowns* after the earthquake is the extent of damage to the foundations of buildings.
☐ The gallery is exhibiting some of *his* **many** *famous paintings of ships*.

We can use the phrase **many a** with a singular noun to talk about a repeated event or a large number of people or things:

☐ **Many a** *pupil* at the school will be pleased that Latin is no longer compulsory.

C

To emphasise that we are talking about a large number we can use **a good / great many** with a plural noun:

☐ She has **a good / great many** *friends* in New Zealand.

To emphasise that we are talking about a large amount we can use **a good / great deal of** with a singular or uncountable noun:

☐ **A good / great deal of** *the exhibition* was devoted to her recent work.

D

We use **far** (not 'much' or 'many') before **too many + a plural countable noun** or **too much + an uncountable noun**:

☐ **Far too many** *students* failed the end-of-year maths exam. (*not* Much / Many too many …)
☐ **Far too much** *time* is wasted filling in forms. (*not* Much / Many too much time …)

E

We often use **plenty of** instead of **a lot of** or **lots of** with uncountable and plural countable nouns. However, **plenty of** means 'enough, or more than enough' and is therefore not likely in certain contexts. Compare:

☐ We took **lots of / plenty of** food and drink on our walk through the hills. *and*
☐ Nina doesn't look well. She's lost **a lot of** weight. ('plenty of' is unlikely here)

Exercises

50.1 Make corrections or improvements to these extracts from conversations (1–3) and from academic writing (4–6). A, C, D & E

1 Lola's had many problems with her back for a lot of years. She's having an operation next week and she won't be back at work for a good deal of weeks afterwards.

2 A: There's bound to be much traffic on the way to the station. Perhaps we should leave now.

B: No, there's plenty time left, and at this time of day many people will already be at work.

3 Many think that hedgehogs are very rare nowadays, but when I was in Wales I saw many.

4 A lot have claimed that Professor Dowman's study on current attitudes to politics is flawed. One criticism is that much too many people questioned in the survey were under 18.

5 A lot of research has been conducted on the effects of diet on health, with a lot of studies focusing on the link between fat intake and heart disease. However, a lot remains to be done.

6 While it is true that a lot of thousands of jobs were lost with the decline of the northern coal and steel industries, a lot of advantages have also followed. Much too many cases of lung disease were recorded in the region, but with lower levels of pollution the number has declined. In addition, a great deal of hi-tech companies have moved in to take advantage of the newly available workforce.

50.2 Complete the sentences with either **the / my / its / his / her many** or **many a / an** and one item from the box. B

coffee shops **expeditions** ~~**German relatives**~~ **golf courses**
emails **ship** **sunny afternoon** **teacher**

1 She went to stay in Munich with one of her many German relatives.
2 I spent .... sitting on the terrace looking out over the hills.
3 .... has been lost in the dangerous waters off the south coast of the island.
4 The area is most famous for .... that attract players from all over the world.
5 Since the end of last year he has refused to speak to me on the phone or answer ....
6 Oliver Svensson accompanied Colonel Colombo on .... to the Himalayas and the Andes.
7 .... will be looking forward to the start of the school holidays.
8 I went into the first of .... along New Street and ordered an espresso.

50.3 If possible, complete these sentences using **plenty of**. If not, use **a lot of**. E

1 It will be very hot on the journey, so make sure you bring .... drinking water.
2 .... staff at the hospital have come down with a mysterious illness.
3 He didn't have .... money, so he decided to catch the bus rather than take a taxi.
4 We were surprised when .... students failed to attend the lecture.
5 I'm looking forward to a relaxing holiday, and I'm taking .... books to read.

Unit
51 All (of), whole, every, each

A All (of)

Reminder → 143–146

We sometimes use **all** after the noun it refers to:

☐ *His songs* **all** sound much the same to me. (*or* **All** [**of**] *his songs* sound ...)
☐ *We* **all** think Kushi's working too hard. (*or* **All of** *us* think ...)

Note that we usually put **all** after the verb **be** and after the first auxiliary verb if there is one:

☐ They *are* **all** going to Athens during the vacation. (*not* They all are going ...)
☐ You *should* **all** have three question papers. (*not* You all should have ...; however, note that we can say 'You all should have ...' for particular emphasis in spoken English)

B

To make negative sentences with **all** (**of**) we usually use **not all** (**of**) rather than **all** ... **not** (although **all** ... **not** is sometimes used in informal spoken English):

☐ **Not all** (**of**) the seats were taken. *or* The seats were **not all** taken.

Note that **not all** (**of**) and **none of** have a different meaning. Compare:

☐ **Not all** (**of**) my cousins were at the wedding. (= some of them were there) *and*
☐ **None of** my cousins were at the wedding. (= not one of them was there)

C All and whole

Before singular countable nouns we usually use **the whole** rather than **all the**:

☐ They weren't able to stay for **the whole** concert. (*rather than* ... for all the concert.)

However, we can say **all** + **day** / **week** / **night** / **month** / **winter**, etc. (*but not usually* all October / 2001 / 21st May, etc.; **all Monday** / **Tuesday**, etc. are only usually used in informal contexts); **all the time**, **all the way**; and in informal speech we can use **all the** with things that we see as being made up of parts (**all the world** / **house** / **city** / **country** / **department**, etc.):

☐ After the fire **the whole** *city* was covered in dust. (*or* ... **all** *the city* ... in informal speech)

Note that we can use **entire** instead of **whole** immediately before a noun:

☐ The **whole** / **entire** building has recently been renovated.

Before plural nouns we can use **all** (**of**) or **whole**, but they have different meanings. Compare:

☐ **All** (**of**) **the towns** had their electricity cut off. (= every town in an area) *and*
☐ After the storm, **whole towns** were left without electricity. (= some towns were completely affected; note that we don't say '... whole the towns ...')

D Every and each

Often we can use **every** or **each** with little difference in meaning. However, we use **every** –

☆ with **almost**, **virtually**, etc. + noun to emphasise we are talking about a group as a whole:
☐ *Almost* **every** visitor stopped and stared. (*not* Almost each visitor ...)

☆ with a plural noun when **every** is followed by a number:
☐ I go to the dentist **every** six months. (*rather than* ... each six months.)

☆ with abstract uncountable nouns such as **chance**, **confidence**, **hope**, **reason**, and **sympathy** to show a positive attitude to what we are saying. Here **every** means 'complete' or 'total':
☐ She has **every** *chance* of success in her application for the job.

☆ in phrases referring to regular or repeated events such as: **every other** (**kilometre**), **every single** (**day**), **every so often**, **every few** (**months**), and **every now and again** (= occasionally).

We use **each** –

☆ before a noun or **one** to talk about both people or things in a pair:
☐ I only had two suitcases, but **each** one weighed over 20 kilos.

☆ as a pronoun:
☐ I asked many people and **each** gave the same answer. (*or* ... **each** / **every** one gave ...)

Exercises

51.1 **Put all in the more appropriate space in each sentence.** A

1 They .... were .... sitting around the table waiting for me.
2 You .... can .... stay for dinner if you want.
3 It .... had .... happened so quickly, I couldn't remember much about it.
4 We .... are .... going to be late if we don't hurry.
5 .... the children .... started to speak at once.
6 We have .... been .... involved in the decision.

51.2 **Underline the more appropriate answer. If both are possible, underline them both.** C

1 *All the process* / *The whole process* takes only a few minutes.
2 *All areas of the country* / *Whole areas of the country* have been devastated by the floods, although others haven't had rain for months.
3 *All the trip* / *The whole trip* cost me less than $1,000.
4 The new rail network links *all of the towns* / *whole towns* in the region.
5 When I picked up the book I found that *all of the pages* / *whole pages* had been ripped out. There wasn't a single one left.
6 The new heating system makes *all the building* / *the whole building* warmer.
7 *All the room* / *The whole room* was full of books.

51.3 **Complete these sentences with every or each, whichever is more appropriate. If you can use either every or each, write them both.** D

1 I had .... reason to believe that she would keep my secret.
2 The ten lucky winners will .... receive £1,000.
3 We've discussed the problem in virtually .... meeting for the last year.
4 Hugh sends us a postcard from .... place he visits.
5 In a rugby league game .... side has 13 players.
6 They had to take out .... single part of the engine and clean it.
7 Antibiotics were given to .... child in the school as a precaution.
8 The two girls walked in, ... one carrying a bouquet of flowers.
9 .... household in the country is to be sent a booklet giving advice on first aid.
10 You should take two tablets .... four hours.

51.4 **Find any mistakes in the italicised parts of this blog post and suggest corrections.** A–D

(1) *Each so often* I like to invite (2) *my entire family* – my parents, six brothers and their families – over for dinner on Saturday evening. My parents are quite old now, so I like to see them (3) *each few weeks*. It's quite a lot of work and I usually spend (4) *all Friday* shopping and cooking. Some of my family are fussy about what they eat, so I generally have to cook different things for (5) *every of them*. Fortunately, (6) *all the food doesn't usually get eaten*, so I have plenty left for the rest of the week. (7) *None of my brothers always come*, but the ones who live locally usually do. Last Saturday (8) *Neil and his family all were on holiday* so they couldn't make it. Anyway, (9) *the rest of us had all a great time* and we spent (10) *the whole evening* talking about when we were children.

Unit 52

Few, little, less, fewer

A

Reminder → 147–152

We often use (**a**) **few** and (**a**) **little** with nouns. However, we can also use them as pronouns:

☐ It is a part of the world visited by **few**. (= few people)
☐ Do you want a chocolate? There's still **a few** left. (= a few chocolates)
☐ **Little** is known about the painter's early life.
☐ 'Do you know anything about car engines?' '**A little**.' (= I know a little about car engines)

Note that **quite a few** means 'quite a large number':

☐ She's been away from work for **quite a few** weeks.

B

We can use **the few** and **the little** followed by a noun to suggest 'not enough' when we talk about a group of things or people (with **few**) or part of a group or amount (with **little**):

☐ It's one of **the few** shops in the city centre where you can buy food.
☐ We should use **the little** time we have available to discuss Jon's proposal.

Instead of **the few** / **little** we can use **what few** / **little** to mean 'the small (number / amount)':

☐ She gave **what little** money she had in her purse to the man. (*or* … **the little** money …)
☐ **What few** visitors we have are always made welcome. (*or* **The few** visitors …)

Note that we can also say 'She gave **what** / **the little** she had …' and '**What** / **The few** we have …' when it is clear from the context what is being referred to.

We can use **few** (but rarely **little**) after personal pronouns (**my**, **her**, etc.) and **these** and **those**:

☐ I learned to play golf during **my few** days off during the summer.
☐ **These few** miles of motorway have taken over ten years to build.

C

In speech and informal writing, we use **not many** / **much** or **only** / **just** … **a few** / **little** to talk about a small amount or number, and we often use **a bit** (**of**) instead of **a little**:

☐ Sorry I haven't finished, I **haven't** had **much** time today. (*rather than* … I had little time …)
☐ I won't be long. I've **only** got **a few** things to get. (*rather than* … I've got few things …)
☐ Want **a bit** of chocolate? (*rather than* … a little chocolate?)

In more formal contexts, such as academic writing, we generally prefer **few** and **little**:

☐ The results take **little** account of personal preference. (*rather than* … don't take much …)

D

Less (than) and fewer (than)

We use **less** with uncountable nouns and **fewer** with plural countable nouns:

☐ You should eat **less pasta**.
☐ There are **fewer cars** on the road today.

Less is sometimes used with a plural countable noun (e.g. … **less cars** …), particularly in conversation. However, this is grammatically incorrect.

We use **less than** with a noun phrase indicating an amount and **fewer than** with a noun phrase referring to a group of things or people:

☐ I used to earn **less than** *a pound a week* when I first started work.
☐ There were **fewer than** *20 students* at the lecture. (*or informally* … **less than** …; but note that some people think this use of 'less than' is incorrect)

When we talk about a distance or a sum of money we use **less than**, not **fewer than**:

☐ The beach is **less than** a mile away.

To emphasise that a number is surprisingly large we can use **no less than** or **no fewer than**:

☐ The team has had **no fewer than** ten managers in just five years. (*or* … **no less than** …)

Note that we prefer **no less than** with percentages, periods of time and quantities:

☐ Profits have increased by **no less than** 95% in the last year. (*rather than* … no fewer than …)

Exercises

52.1 **Complete the sentences with (a) few, (a) little, the few, the little, what few or what little, giving alternatives where possible.** A & B

1 Thomas was named sportsperson of the year, and .... would disagree.
2 .... remains of the old castle walls except the Black Gate.
3 She called her .... remaining relatives together and told them she was leaving.
4 Simpson is among .... foreign journalists allowed into the country.
5 A: Has my explanation helped? B: .... , yes.
6 .... belongings she had were packed into a small suitcase.
7 Maya hasn't been looking well recently, and I'm .... worried about her.
8 A: Have there been many applications for the job? B: Yes, quite ....
9 The children weren't well so I had to take .... days off.
10 I don't have much money, but I'm happy to lend you .... I have.

52.2 **Suggest changes to the italicised text in these examples from conversations (1–4) and from academic writing (5–8).** C

1 A: Did you do anything last night? B: I just watched *a little TV* and then went to bed.
2 Take some sweets if you want, although *there are few left*.
3 I've tried to help her, but *there's little more* I can do.
4 See that old car over there? There's *few like that* left now.
5 The country *hasn't had many* female politicians since independence.
6 It is thought that the two leaders *didn't exchange many words* on their first meeting.
7 Teachers were found to be *a bit more confident* after the extra training.
8 *There doesn't seem to be much prospect* of ever recovering the missing manuscript.

52.3 **A survey of British university students was conducted in 2000 and recently repeated. Some of the results are given below. Comment on them in sentences using fewer (than) or less (than).** D

Proportion with part-time jobs (%)

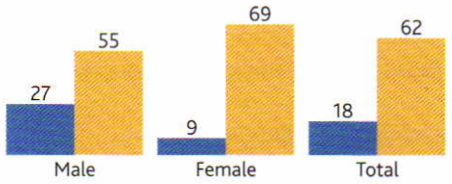

Proportion who walk to lectures (%)

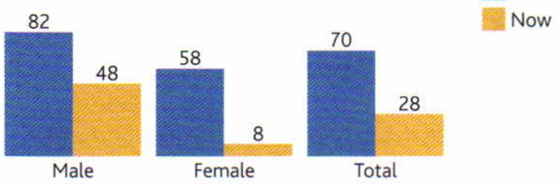

Proportion of money spent on books (%)

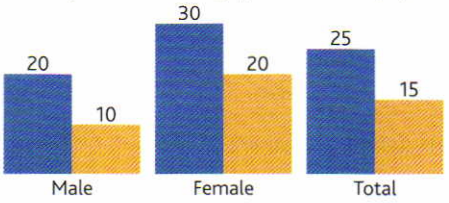

Time spent online per week (hours)

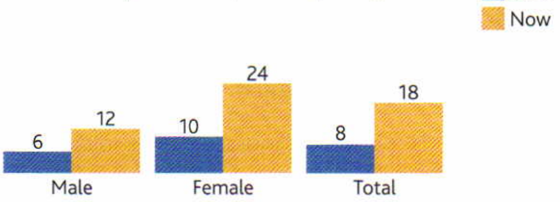

1 Proportion with part-time jobs (%)
Fewer students had a part-time job in 2000 than now.
2 Proportion of money spent on books (%)
3 Proportion who walk to lectures (%)
4 Time spent online per week (hours)

Are there any results that surprise you? Comment on them using no less than or no fewer than.

Unit
53

Relative pronouns

A

Reminder ➜ J1–J5

Defining and *non-defining relative clauses* begin with a *relative pronoun*, which can sometimes be omitted:

○ We went to a beach (**which** / **that**) Ali had recommended to us.

Here the relative pronoun refers to 'a beach', and the subject of the relative clause is 'Ali'. Compare:

○ I know a man **who** / **that** ran in the New York Marathon last year.

where the relative pronoun refers to 'a man', and the subject of the relative clause is also 'a man'. In this case, the relative pronoun can't be omitted.

B

Relative pronouns are used to add information in *defining relative clauses* as follows:

adding information about things

subject	**which**	**that**	
object	**which**	**that**	no relative pronoun

adding information about people

subject	**who**	**that**		
object	**who**	**that**	no relative pronoun	**whom**

☆ When we add information about things, we can use **that** (or **no relative pronoun**) as object in conversation and **which** in more formal contexts:

○ Decorating's a job (**that**) I hate. (*rather than* '… which …' in this informal context)

☆ When we add information about people, we generally prefer **that** (or **no relative pronoun**) as object in informal contexts rather than **who** or **whom**:

○ He's the man (**that**) I met at Aisha's party (*rather than* … who / whom I met …)

☆ **whom** is very formal and rarely used in spoken English:

○ The boy **whom** Elena had shouted at smiled. (*less formally* **that**, **no relative pronoun** *or* **who**)

☆ We use **that** as subject after: **something** and **anything**; words such as **all**, **little**, **much**, and **none** used as pronouns; and noun phrases that include superlatives. **Which** is also used as subject after **something** and **anything**, but less commonly:

○ These walls are *all* **that** *remain* of the city. (*not* … which remain of the city.)

☆ Note that we can use **that** (or **no relative pronoun**) as object after **something** / **anything**; **all**, etc.; and noun phrases with superlatives. For example:

○ She's one of *the kindest* people (**that**) I know. (*not* … one of the kindest people who I know.)

C

Relative pronouns are used to add information in *non-defining relative clauses* as follows:

adding information about things

subject	**which**	**that**
object	**which**	**that**

adding information about people

subject	**who**	
object	**who**	**whom**

☆ Note that we must include a relative pronoun in a non-defining relative clause.

☆ We can use **who** or **whom** as object, although **whom** is very formal:

○ Professor Johnson, **who(m)** I have long admired, is to visit the university next week.

☆ When we add information about things, we can use **which** as subject or object. **That** is sometimes used instead of **which**, but some people think this is incorrect:

○ The Master's course, **which** I took in 2001, is no longer taught. (*or* … **that** I took …)

Exercises

53.1 **Put brackets around the italicised relative pronoun if it can be omitted.** A

1 We talked about the party *which* Natalia wants to organise for my birthday.
2 To get to Maxim's house, take the main road *that* bypasses the village.
3 The paintings *which* Mr Flowers has in his house are worth around £100,000.
4 Let's go through the main points *that* he made in his lecture.
5 He received a low mark for his essay, *which* was only one page long.
6 Mrs Yang, *who* is 42, has three children.
7 Dev is a friend *who* we stayed with in Australia.
8 In the shop window there's a sign *that* says '10% off'.
9 The couple *who* live next to us have 16 grandchildren.
10 There was little *that* we could do to help her.

53.2 **Rewrite these sentences including the information in brackets as relative clauses (defining or non-defining). Give alternative relative pronouns if possible. (Use (–) to indicate 'no relative pronoun'.)** B & C

1 Oliver said something. (I couldn't hear it clearly) Oliver said something that / which / – I couldn't hear clearly.
2 Eva's father has just come back from a skiing holiday. (he is over 80)
……………………………………………………………………………….
3 The problems faced by the company are being resolved. (I'll look at these in detail in a moment)
……………………………………………………………………………….
4 She was greatly influenced by her father. (she adored him)
……………………………………………………………………………….
5 He pointed to the stairs. (they led down to the cellar)
……………………………………………………………………………….
6 These drugs have been withdrawn from sale. (they are used to treat stomach ulcers)
……………………………………………………………………………….
7 The singer had to cancel her concert. (she was recovering from flu)
……………………………………………………………………………….
8 The minister talked about the plans for tax reform. (he will reveal them next month)
……………………………………………………………………………….
9 I have two older sisters. (I love them very much)
……………………………………………………………………………….

53.3 **If necessary, correct or make improvements to these sentences. If they are already correct, write ✓.** A–C

1 There's something which I should tell you.
2 The doctor whom Ingrid went to see was very thorough.
3 Yesterday was the hottest day I can remember.
4 There isn't much can go wrong with the machine.
5 Thieves whom stole paintings from Notford art gallery have been arrested in Paris.
6 It may be the most important decision which you will ever take.
7 The boy took the photograph was paid £100.
8 I heard many different accents in the room, but none which I could identify as Polish.
9 He just said anything which came into his head.
10 There's this dream which I have every night about falling downstairs.

→ Additional exercise 11 (page 247)

Unit
54

Other relative words: **whose**, **when**, **whereby**, etc.

A

Clauses with whose

Reminder ➜ J1–J5

We use a relative clause beginning with the relative pronoun **whose** + **noun**, particularly in written English, when we talk about something belonging to or associated with a person, animal or plant:

☐ Stevenson is an architect **whose designs** have won international praise.
☐ Suzy was taking care of a dog **whose ears** were badly damaged in a fight with a cat.

We can use **whose** in both *defining* and *non-defining relative clauses*.

We generally avoid using **whose** to talk about something belonging to or associated with a *thing*:

☐ I received a letter, and its poor spelling made me think it was written by a child. (*more natural than* I received a letter, **whose** poor spelling made me think …)

However, we sometimes use **whose** when we talk about towns, countries, or organisations:

☐ The film was made in *Botswana*, **whose wildlife parks** are larger than those in Kenya.
☐ We need to learn from *companies* **whose trading** is healthier than our own.

In academic writing **whose** is used to talk about a wide variety of 'belonging to' relationships:

☐ Students have to solve *problems* **whose** solutions require a knowledge of calculus.

B

Clauses with when, whereby, where and why

We can begin relative and other clauses with **when** (referring to time), **whereby** (method or means; used mainly in formal contexts), and **where** (location). In formal English in particular, a phrase with **preposition** + **which** can often be used instead of these:

☐ The camera records the time **when** the photo is taken. (*or* … the time **at which** …)
☐ Do you know the date **when** we have to hand in the essay? (*or* … the date **on / by which** …)
☐ We need to develop a system **whereby** workers and management can communicate more effectively. (*or* … the system **in / by which** workers …)
☐ This was the place **where** we first met. (*or* … the place **at / in which** we …)

In academic English, we can also use **where** to refer to features other than location, particularly after words such as **case**, **condition**, **example**, **situation**, **system**:

☐ Later in this chapter we will introduce *cases* **where** consumer complaints have resulted in changes in the law. (*or more formally* … cases **in which** …)

We can also use **a / the reason why** or **a / the reason that** or just **a / the reason**:

☐ I didn't get a pay rise, but this wasn't **the reason why** I left. (*or* … **the reason** (**that**) I left.)

C

Clauses with who and what; whatever, whoever and whichever

Some clauses beginning with a **wh-word** are used like a noun phrase in a sentence. These are sometimes called *nominal relative clauses*:

☐ Can you give me a list of **who's** been invited? (= the people who have been invited)
☐ I didn't know **what** I should do next. (= the thing that I should do next)

Note that we can't use **what** in this way after a noun:

☐ I managed to get all the *books* **that** you asked for. (*not* … all the books what you asked for.)

We use clauses beginning with **whatever** (= anything *or* it doesn't matter what), **whoever** (= the person / group who *or* any person / group who), or **whichever** (= one thing or person from a limited number), to talk about things or people that are indefinite or unknown:

☐ I'm sure I'll enjoy eating **whatever** you cook.
☐ **Whoever** wins will go on to play Barcelona in the final.
☐ **Whichever** one of you broke the window will have to pay for it.

Exercises

54.1 Combine a sentence from (i) with a sentence from (ii) to make new sentences with **whose**. A

(i)

1 Dr Rowan has had to do all her own typing.
2 The newspaper is owned by the Mears group.
3 Parents are being asked to take part in the survey.
4 Children do better in examinations.
5 My aunt is now CEO of a department store.
6 I enjoy growing plants.

(ii)

a Its chairperson is Miss Jiu Kim.
b Their diets contain high levels of protein.
c Their flowers are attractive to bees.
d ~~Her secretary resigned two weeks ago.~~
e Her first job was filling shelves in a supermarket.
f Their children are between four and six.

1 + d ...Dr Rowan, whose secretary resigned two weeks ago, has had to do all her own typing.

54.2 Define the words using **whose** (1–3) and **in which** (4–6). You may need to use a dictionary. A & B

1 A lexicographer is a person ...whose job is to write dictionaries.
2 A widow is a woman ....
3 An actuary is a person ....
....
4 A furnace is a container ....
5 A gazebo is a small garden building ....
6 Polo is ....
....

54.3 Complete these sentences using phrases from the box and **when, whereby, where** or **why**. B

the area **an agreement** **a condition** **a method** **the moment** **the reason**

1 Sunset is defined in astronomy as .... the whole of the sun's disc disappears below the horizon.
2 In 1951, China and the Soviet Union signed .... China provided uranium ore in exchange for technical assistance.
3 The coastline is .... the land meets the sea or ocean.
4 The river is prone to sudden flooding which is .... there are no major towns along its banks.
5 Freeze-drying is .... water is rapidly evaporated from frozen food in order to preserve it.
6 Hypoglycaemia is .... the level of sugar in the blood drops suddenly.

54.4 If the italicised word is correct, write ✓. If not, suggest another word. C

1 I think *whatever* was responsible for damaging the trees should be fined or sent to prison.
2 Do they really understand *that* they are doing?
3 I don't envy *whoever* buys that house. It's in a terrible condition.
4 Now that I no longer have to wear a school uniform, I'll be able to wear *which* I want.
5 I think the government should improve the health service, *whichever* the cost.
6 It's a question *that* I've been asking for many years.
7 The clock makes a noise *what* keeps me awake at night.
8 I'm sure that Rashid will do well at university, *which* one he goes to.

→ Additional exercise 11 (page 247)

Unit
55

Prepositions in relative clauses

A

Reminder → J1–J5

In formal styles **noun** + **of which** is often preferred to –

☆ **whose** + **noun**:

- ○ A huge amount of oil was spilled, *the effects* **of which** are still being felt. (*or* … **whose** *effects* are still being felt.)

☆ **that** / **which … of** in relative clauses:

- ○ The school **of which** she is head is closing. (*less formally* The school **(that / which)** she is head **of** is closing.)

After **both** we can use **of which** and **of whose**, but not usually **which** or **whose**:

- ○ Lotta was able to switch between German and Russian, **both of which** she spoke fluently. (*not* … both which she spoke fluently.)

Also after: **all**, **each**, **many**, **most**, **neither**, **none**, **part**, **some**, **a number** (one, two, etc.; the first, the second, etc.; half, a third, etc.), and **superlatives** (the best, the biggest, etc.)

B

In formal, mainly written, English **whose** can come after a preposition in a relative clause. Putting the preposition at the end of the clause is more natural in informal and spoken English:

- ○ I now turn to Freud, **from whose** work the following quotation is taken. (*less formally* … Freud, **whose** work the following quotation is taken **from**.)

C

When a preposition is needed with the relative pronouns **which** and **whom** we usually put it before the relative pronoun in formal styles:

- ○ The rate **at which** a material heats up depends on its chemical composition.
- ○ There are 80 teachers in the Physics Department, **among whom** are 24 professors.

After a preposition we usually use **whom** rather than **who** in formal styles:

- ○ Is it right that politicians should make important decisions without consulting the public **to whom** they are accountable? (*rather than* … the public to who they are accountable.)

and we don't use **that** or **no relative pronoun**:

- ○ The valley **in which** the town lies is heavily polluted. (*not* The valley in that the town lies is heavily polluted.; *not* The valley in the town lies is heavily polluted.)

In less formal English we usually put the preposition later in the relative clause:

- ○ The office **that** Juan took us **to** was filled with books. (*rather than* The office **to which** Juan took us …)

and we prefer **who** (or **that**) rather than **whom** (see also Unit 26A):

- ○ The playground wasn't used by the children **who** it was built **for**.

D

If the verb in the relative clause is a two-word verb (e.g. **come across**, **fill in**, **look after**, **take on**) we don't usually put the preposition before the relative pronoun:

- ○ The Roman coins, **which** a local farmer **came across** in a field, are now on display in the National Museum. (*not* … coins, across which the local farmer came, are …)

With three-word verbs, we only put the preposition before the relative pronoun in a very formal or literary style, and many people avoid this pattern:

- ○ She is one of the few people **to whom** I **look up**. (*or less formally* … **who** I **look up to**.)

Exercises

55.1 **Rewrite these sentences so that they are more appropriate for formal written English. Use preposition + which or preposition + whose, as appropriate.** A & B

1 Fleming's discovery of penicillin, which he was awarded the Nobel Prize for, had a major influence on the lives of people in the 20th century. Fleming's discovery of penicillin, for which he was awarded the Nobel Prize, had a major influence on the lives of people in the 20th century.
2 He was the uncle of Anne Boleyn, whose execution in 1536 he lost power after.
3 It is her unmarried name which she is better known by.
4 Mr Wang, whose land the road will be built across, is unhappy about the plans.
5 The election result, which there can be no doubt about, is a great disappointment.
6 The building which Marcus emerged from was little more than a ruin.
7 It is a medieval palace, whose tower the king hid in during the civil war.
8 I am grateful to Aarav Basu, whose book on the history of the bicycle this information comes from.

55.2 **Complete the sentences using the endings from the box and which or whom after an appropriate preposition.** C

the furniture is to be delivered. **she was divorced in 2005.** **he had shown his novel.**
~~I had great respect.~~ **it was named.** **the printer was supplied.**
most world trade was conducted. **you should be aware.**

1 My Maths teacher, Mr Kato, was someone for whom I had great respect.
2 Until 1914 the pound sterling was the currency ....
3 They have changed the date ....
4 Pasteurisation was discovered by the French chemist Louis Pasteur, ...
5 He was persuaded to stay in England by Charles Dickens, ...
6 There are a number of safety procedures ....
7 Details are in the instruction manual ....
8 Ms Park was left the money by her former husband, ...

55.3 **Rewrite the sentences from 55.2 in a less formal way, putting the preposition at the end of the relative clause.** A

1 My Maths teacher, Mr Kato, was someone who / that / – I had great respect for.

55.4 **If necessary, suggest corrections or improvements to these sentences or write ✓ if they are already correct.** A, C & D

1 The house into which the thieves broke is owned by Caleb Cruz.
2 The school has been given 20 laptops, half of which are brand new.
3 JKL Motorbikes sells six different models, the first which they started making in 1985.
4 The party, to which I've been looking forward all week, is at Maxine's house.
5 The water that she fell into was freezing cold.
6 I have heard her on the violin and clarinet, both which she plays extremely well.
7 The film was made at Tulloch Castle, part which dates back to 1466.
8 The college is home to 30 students from Nepal, almost all of who are studying economics.

→ Additional exercise 11 (page 247)

Unit 56

Other ways of adding information to noun phrases 1: additional noun phrases, etc.

A

We sometimes add information about a person or thing referred to in one noun phrase by talking about the same person or thing in a different way in a following noun phrase:

☐ *A hooded cobra, one of the world's most dangerous snakes*, has escaped from Dudley Zoo.
☐ *Dr Alex Parr, director of the State Museum*, is to become the government's arts adviser.

In writing, the items are usually separated by a comma, and in speech they are often separated by a pause or other intonation break. However, when the second item acts like a defining relative clause, when it is usually a name, there is usually no punctuation in writing or intonation break in speech:

☐ *My friend Mia* has moved to Sweden. (*rather than* My friend, Mia, ...)
☐ The current champion is expected to survive her first-round match with *the Italian Silvia Farina*. (*rather than* ... the Italian, Silvia Farina.)

B

We can add information to a noun phrase with a conjunction such as **and** or **or**:

☐ Kurt Svensson, her teacher **and** *well-known concert pianist*, thinks that she has great talent. (= her teacher is also a well-known concert pianist)
☐ Phonetics **or** *the study of speech sounds* is a common component on courses in teaching English as a foreign language.

C

The adverb **namely** and the phrase **that is** are used to add details about a noun phrase:

☐ This side effect of the treatment, **namely** *weight gain*, is counteracted with other drugs.
☐ The main cause of global warming, **that is** *the burning of fossil fuels*, is to be the focus of negotiations at the international conference.

D

We can also add information to a noun phrase using a participle clause beginning with an **-ing**, **-ed** or **being** + **-ed** verb form. These are often similar to *defining relative clauses*:

☐ The people ***living*** *next door* come from Italy. (*or* The people who are living next door ...)
☐ The weapon ***used*** *in the murder* has now been found. (*or* The weapon that was used ...)
☐ The prisoners ***being released*** are all women. (*or* The prisoners who are being released ...)

Note that -**ing** participle clauses correspond to defining relative clauses with an active verb, while **-ed** and **being** + **-ed** clauses correspond to defining relative clauses with a passive verb.

We can also use a **to-infinitive clause**, as in:

☐ Have you brought a book **to read**?
☐ My decision **to resign** *from the company* was made after a great deal of thought.
☐ I thought that the management's offer, **to increase** *staff holidays*, was a good one.

E

In written English, particularly in newspapers, **-ing** and **-ed clauses** are also used instead of *non-defining relative clauses*. These are usually written between commas or dashes (–):

☐ The men, *wearing anoraks and hats*, made off in a stolen Volvo estate.

☐ The proposals – *expected to be agreed by ministers* – are less radical than many employers had feared.

Exercises

56.1 **Add the information in brackets to the sentences and rewrite them in an appropriate way, using the examples in A and B as models.** A & B

1 Gofast Technology has launched its new generation of high-speed trains. *(Gofast Technology is part of the Maddison Enterprises Group)*
Gofast Technology, part of the Maddison Enterprises Group, has launched its new generation of high-speed trains.
2 I went on an IT training course with my colleague. *(My colleague is Mateo)*
3 Rubella is still a common childhood disease in many countries. *(Another name for rubella is German measles)*
4 Four kilos of Beluga caviar has been ordered for the reception. *(Beluga caviar is among the most expensive foods in the world)*
5 One of the most popular modern writers for children is John Marsden. *(John Marsden is Australian)*
6 Tonya's father was in the crowd to watch her victory. *(Tonya's father has also been her trainer for the last ten years)*
7 Dr Sofia Lopez has criticised government plans to cut health funding. *(Sofia Lopez is head of Downlands Hospital)*
8 Klaus Schmidt is running in the Stockholm Marathon. *(Klaus Schmidt is the current European champion) (The German 10,000 metres record holder is also the current European champion)*

56.2 **Make sentences by matching the beginnings (in i) to the endings (in ii) and adding appropriate information (from iii) after namely or that is.** C

(i)

1 Leo Tolstoy's most celebrated novel,
2 The two countries having land borders with the USA,
3 The three most popular pets in Britain,
4 The capital of Estonia,
5 The largest island in the world,
6 The 'consumers' of education,

(ii)

a are found in 25% of households.
b covers over 2 million square kilometres.
c should have ways of complaining about poor teaching.
d have complained to the President about the new customs regulations.
e ~~was published in 1869.~~
f is situated on the Gulf of Finland.

(iii)

Tallinn
students
cats, dogs and rabbits
~~***War and Peace***~~
Mexico and Canada
Greenland

1 + e Leo Tolstoy's most celebrated novel, namely War and Peace, was published in 1869.

56.3 **Complete the sentences with an -ing, -ed or being + -ed form of the verbs from the box. Then rewrite each sentence using a relative clause instead of the participle clause.** D

~~drive~~ educate flow introduce need print say tell off

1 The man driving the bus is my brother. The man who is driving the bus is my brother.
2 I went to a reunion for students .... in the physics department during the 1990s.
3 As my aunt told me what she thought, I felt like a schoolboy .... by his headteacher.
4 There is a sign on the gate .... 'Entry forbidden'.
5 Across the river were some of the deer .... into the park in the 19th century.
6 Rivers .... into the Baltic Sea are much cleaner now than ten years ago.
7 The booklets .... as we speak will be on sale later this afternoon.
8 Anyone .... further information can see me in my office.

Unit
57

Other ways of adding information to noun phrases 2: prepositional phrases, etc.

A

We commonly add information about a thing or person using a prepositional phrase. Often these have a meaning similar to a relative clause:

☐ What's the name of the *man* **by** the window? (*or* … the man **who's** by the window?)

☐ It's in the *cupboard* **under** the stairs. (*or* … the cupboard **that's** under the stairs.)

☐ She lives in the *house* **with** the red door. (*or* … the house **which has** the red door.)

In some cases, however, these prepositional phrases do not have a corresponding relative clause:

☐ You need to keep a careful *record* **of** what you spend.

☐ There is likely to be an *increase* **in** temperature tomorrow.

We often prefer a relative clause rather than a prepositional phrase in non-defining relative clauses with **be + preposition** or with **have** as a main verb:

☐ *Mr Chen*, **who was in** the store at the time of the robbery, was able to identify two of the men. (*rather than* … Mr Chen, in the store …)

☐ *Davide Gallo*, **who has** a farm near Pisa, has decided to grow only organic vegetables. (*rather than* Davide Gallo, with a farm near Pisa, has …)

B

In written English, particularly in academic writing, a series of prepositional phrases and relative clauses is often used to add information about a previous noun phrase. Note that prepositional phrases can also be used with an adverbial function (e.g. '… taken the drug *in the last six months*' in the sentence below):

☐ Doctors are contacting patients with diabetes who have taken the drug in the last six months.

☐ Scientists in Spain who have developed the technique are optimistic that it will be widely used in laboratories within the next decade.

We can also use participle clauses and noun phrases (see Unit 56) in a series of clauses / phrases which add information to the preceding noun phrase:

☐ The waxwing is the only bird found in Britain with yellow and red tail feathers.

☐ Mr Bob Timms, leader of the Democratic Party, MP for Threeoaks, has announced his resignation.

C

Note that adding a series of prepositional phrases can often lead to ambiguity. For example:

☐ The protesters were demonstrating against the mistreatment of animals on farms.

could mean either that the place the protesters were demonstrating was 'on farms' or that the animals were 'on farms'. We could make the sentence unambiguous with, for example:

☐ The protesters were demonstrating on farms against the mistreatment of animals. *or*

☐ The protesters were demonstrating against the mistreatment of animals kept on farms.

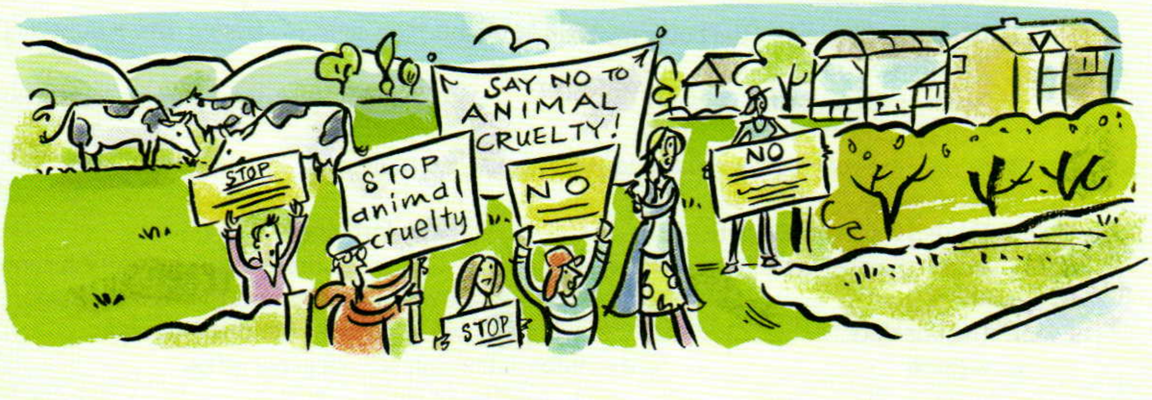

Exercises

57.1 **Match the sentence halves (there may be more than one possible answer), adding an appropriate preposition.** A

1 Maja's the girl …
2 She's in the photograph …
3 I plan to cut down the tree …
4 There's a team of people …
5 We took the footpath …
6 The children can't get over the fence …
7 Go along the lane …
8 Nico's a boy…
9 Follow the main road…
10 She's a teacher…

a … green shirts.
b … the back garden.
c ~~… blonde hair.~~
d … the canal.
e … the piano.
f … Paris to Lyons.
g … the houses.
h … New Zealand.
i … the pool.
j … a quick temper.

1 + c Maja's the girl with blonde hair.

57.2 **Rewrite the sentences in 57.1 using defining relative clauses.** A

1 Maja's the girl who has blonde hair.

57.3 **Complete the sentences by adding the information in brackets. Use relative clauses (Unit 53), additional noun phrases and participle clauses (Unit 56) and prepositional phrases (Unit 57).**

1 Police are questioning men … between 25 and 30 living in the village, who are known to have a criminal record.
(The men are between 25 and 30. They live in the village. They are known to have a criminal record.)

2 Teachers
(The teachers work at Queen's College. Queen's College is in the city centre. The teachers went on strike last week. They have appointed Kristina Borg as their spokesperson. She is the head of English.)

3 Marge Scott
(Marge Scott has died. She was aged 95. She was educated at Marston College. She was the first woman to be educated there. Marston College is in south Wales.)

4 The conference
(The conference was held in Singapore. It approved the world trade agreement. The agreement was drawn up by European and Asian states. The conference has now ended.)

5 A book
(The book is on gardening. It is called All about Plants. *Anna wanted to borrow it. It wasn't available in the library.)*

6 A painting
(The painting was found in a second-hand shop. It was found by Lara Gruber. She is an antique dealer. She is from Austria. The painting is thought to be by J.M.W. Turner. Turner was a British landscape artist.)

57.4 **Why are these sentences ambiguous? Can you rewrite them to remove the ambiguity?** C

1 A man was talking with a grey suit.
2 A lorry was stopped by a police officer carrying thousands of stolen cigarettes.
3 I discussed my plan to decorate the room with my parents.

Unit
58

Participle clauses with adverbial meaning 1

A

Reminder ➔ J6–J10

We can use **present participle** (**-ing**) and **past participle** (**-ed**) **clauses** with an adverbial meaning. (See also Unit 59.) They often give information about the timing, causes, and results of the events described:

- ☐ *Opening her eyes*, the baby began to cry. (= When she opened her eyes …)
- ☐ *Faced with a bill for £10,000*, Ivan has taken an extra job. (= Because he is faced …)
- ☐ *Looked after carefully*, the plant can live through the winter. (= If it is looked after …)
- ☐ *Having finished the book*, I had a holiday. (perfect; = When / Because I had finished …)
- ☐ The fruit was expensive, *being imported*. (simple passive; = … because it was imported)
- ☐ *Having been hunted close to extinction*, the rhino is once again common in this area. (perfect passive; = Although it had been hunted close to extinction …)

B

The implied subject of a participle clause (that is, a subject known but not directly mentioned) is usually the same as the subject of the main clause:

- ☐ *Arriving* at the party, we saw Ruth standing alone. (= When **we** arrived … **we** saw …)

However, sometimes the implied subject is not referred to in the main clause:

- ☐ *Having wanted* to drive a train all his life, this was an opportunity not to be missed.

In careful speech and writing we avoid different subjects for the participle and main clause:

- ☐ Turning round quickly, the door hit me in the face. (first implied subject = 'I'; second subject = 'the door')

would be better as:

- ☐ When I turned round quickly, the door hit me in the face.

C

In formal English, the participle clause sometimes has its own subject, which is often a pronoun or includes one:

- ☐ The collection of vases is priceless, **some** *being over 2000 years old*.
- ☐ **Her voice** *breaking with emotion*, Vasiliki spoke about her father's illness.

We use the present participle (-**ing**) clause to talk about something happening at the same time as an event in the main clause, or to give information about the facts given in the main clause.

D

When we use **not** in a participle clause it usually comes before the participle. However, it can follow the participle, depending on meaning:

- ☐ **Not** *understanding* the rules, I found the cricket match boring. (= because I didn't understand the rules)
- ☐ *Hoping* **not** to be recognised, I chose a seat in a dark corner. (= I hoped that I wouldn't be recognised)

E

We use a clause beginning with **having + past participle** rather than a present participle if the action in the main clause is the consequence of the event in the participle clause:

- ☐ **Having broken** her leg the last time she went, Giorgia decided not to go on the school skiing trip this year. (*or* **After breaking** her leg …; *not* Breaking her leg …)

We can use either a **present participle** (**-ing**) clause or a **having** + **past participle** clause with a similar meaning when the action in the participle clause is complete before the action in the main clause begins. Compare:

- ☐ **Taking off** his shoes, Ram walked into the house. (*Having taken off* … has a similar meaning)

  and
- ☐ **Running** across the field, I fell and hurt my ankle. (= While I was running …; 'Having run …' would suggest that I fell *after* I had run across the field)

Exercises

58.1 **Rewrite the sentences beginning with one of the clause forms from sections A and D opposite.** A & D

1 When she saw the dog coming towards her, she quickly crossed the road. *Seeing the dog coming towards her, she quickly crossed the road.*
2 As she was dressed all in black, she was almost invisible in the starless night.
3 As I don't have a credit card, I found it difficult to book an airline ticket online.
4 Antonio spent a lot of time filling in job application forms because he was unemployed.
5 Because I was walking quickly, I soon caught up with her.
6 The house was built of wood, so it was clearly a fire risk.
7 I was eager to catch the bus in good time because I had been told off the day before for arriving late.
8 She didn't know where the theatre was, so she asked for directions at the hotel reception.
9 As she was a nurse, she knew what to do after the accident.
10 He had spent his childhood in Oslo, so he knew the city well.

58.2 **If the implied subject of the two clauses is the same write S and if it is different write D. Rewrite the D sentences to make them more acceptable.** B

1 Waiting for the bus, a car went through a puddle and splashed water all over me.
2 Known mainly as a writer of novels, Rashid has now written a successful biography.
3 Keeping a careful eye on the spider, Suzanne hurried out of the bathroom.
4 Looking down from the hill, the town spread out before us towards the coast.
5 Feeling rather sick, the boat ploughed through the huge waves.
6 Found only in the Andes, the plant is used by local people to treat skin diseases.

58.3 **Write not in the more appropriate place in each sentence.** D

1 .... wishing .... to boast, she said nothing about her success.
2 .... pretending .... to notice that people were staring at me, I carried on looking on the floor for my lost contact lens.
3 .... determined .... to be beaten, she put all her energy into the serve.
4 .... feeling .... well, she went home early.
5 .... bothering .... to put on his coat, he left the house.
6 .... trying .... to cry, she waved to Harun as the train pulled out.

58.4 **Join these sentences using having + past participle or the -ing form of the first verb. Which sentences can have either form?** E

1 I moved house recently.
2 I looked over my shoulder.
3 I walked through the tunnel.
4 I waited six weeks for the washing machine to be delivered.
5 I suffered from depression myself as a teenager.
6 I parked the car about a kilometre from the stadium.
7 I reached my mid-thirties.
8 I learned some Swahili as a child.

a I decided to cancel the order.
b I felt I needed to change my life.
c I could see Ida running after me.
d ~~I don't yet have internet access.~~
e I was able to understand most of what she said.
f I banged my head on the low roof.
g I could understand how Nathan was feeling.
h I walked the rest of the way.

1 + d *Having moved house recently, I don't yet have internet access.*

Unit 59

Participle clauses with adverbial meaning 2

A

Reminder ➔ J6–J10

We can use prepositions such as **after**, **before**, **besides**, **by**, **in**, **on**, **since**, **through**, **while**, **with**, and **without** in a present participle (**-ing**) clause with an adverbial meaning (see also Unit 58):

○ **While understanding** her problem, I don't know how I can help. (= Although I understand …)
○ **After spending** so much money on the car, I can't afford a holiday.
○ **Before being changed** last year, the speed limit was 70 kph. (passive form)

An alternative is a clause with a verb that can change according to tense and subject. Compare:

○ **Since moving** to London, we haven't had time to go to the theatre. *and*
○ **Since we moved** to London, we haven't had time to go to the theatre. (less formal)

B

by, in, on + -ing

○ **By working** hard, she passed her maths exam. ○ They only survived **by eating** roots and berries in the forest.	= the **-ing clause** indicates 'the method or means used'
○ **On returning** from Beijing, he wrote to the Chinese embassy. ○ Josh was the first person I saw **on leaving** hospital.	= the **-ing clause** indicates 'when'
○ **In criticising** the painting, I knew I would offend her. ○ **In choosing** Marco, the People's Party has moved to the left.	= the **-ing clause** indicates 'cause'

We can often use **by** + **-ing** or **in** + **-ing** with a similar meaning, although **by** + **-ing** is preferred in informal contexts:

○ **In / By writing** about Spanish culture, I came to understand the country better. ('In writing …' = the consequence of writing was to understand …; 'By writing …' = the method I used to understand the country better was to write…)

But compare:

○ **By telephoning** every hour, she managed to speak to the doctor. (*not* In telephoning …; the method is the focus here, not the consequence)

C

with -ing; without -ing

With + **-ing** often introduces a reason for something in the main clause. This use is fairly informal. Note that a subject has to come between **with** and **-ing**:

○ **With** Louise **living** in Spain, we don't see her often. (= Because Louise lives in Spain …)

With and **what with** can also be used with a noun phrase to introduce a reason:

○ **With** *my bad back* I won't be able to lift a heavy suitcase.
○ **What with** *the traffic* and *the heavy rain*, it's no wonder you were late.

We can use **without** + **-ing** to say that a second action doesn't happen:

○ I went to work **without eating** breakfast.
○ They left **without paying**.

Often, however, it has a similar meaning to 'although … not' or 'unless':

○ **Without meaning** to, I seem to have offended her. (= Although I didn't mean to …)
○ **Without using** the app, I can't judge how good it is. (= Unless I use the app …)

D

Adverbial meanings can also be added by a clause beginning with a conjunction or adjective but with no verb. This kind of clause has the same meaning as a clause beginning with a **conjunction** + **subject** + **be** and is used in fairly formal English (more informal alternatives are given in brackets):

○ **While in Poland**, they will play two concerts in Warsaw. (*or* **While** they are in Poland …)
○ **Although just two feet apart**, they didn't speak. (*or* **Although** they were just …)
○ I try to use public transport **whenever possible**. (*or* … **whenever** it is possible.)
○ **Unhappy with the decision**, Johnson swore at the referee. (*or* **Because** he was unhappy …)

Exercises

59.1 Complete these sentences using a preposition from (i) and the **-ing** form or **being + past participle** form of a verb from (ii). You may use the words from (i) more than once. A

(i)

after **before** **since**
through **while**

(ii)

~~**come**~~ **interview** **leave** **overthrow**
sell **take** **welcome** **work**

1 Since coming out of hospital, I have been to the gym every day.
2 .... on TV last night, the minister mentioned that she would be retiring soon.
3 .... the back off the computer, make sure it is unplugged.
4 .... the government's new policy, I think it should have been introduced months ago.
5 .... in a military takeover, the king has been under house arrest.
6 .... with young children for the last 40 years, she has come to understand their behaviour better than most.
7 .... to the public, most milk is pasteurised.
8 .... Oxford University in 1983, Painter spent three years teaching at a local school.

59.2 Join the sentences, beginning them with **by + -ing**, **on + -ing**, or **in + -ing**. B

1 She returned home.
2 She gave up sugar.
3 She turned down the job.
4 She moved to a smaller flat.
5 She entered the classroom.
6 She criticised her father.

a She soon began to lose weight.
b She saved over a hundred pounds a month.
c She knew that she might offend him.
d ~~She found Dave waiting outside her front door.~~
e She gave up the possibility of a huge salary.
f She was surprised when all the children stood up.

1 + d On returning home, she found Dave waiting outside her front door.

59.3 Rewrite these sentences beginning **With ... -ing** or **Without ... -ing**. C

1 We couldn't go on holiday because Maryam had flu.

....

2 I won't be able to advise you unless I have more information.

....

3 He had solved the problem, although he didn't realise it.

....

4 I couldn't wait for Andrei any longer as time was running out before the train left. .

....

59.4 Revise this biography by replacing six more full clauses with reduced clauses (as in the examples in section D opposite), and making any other necessary changes. D

Although from a poor background

~~Although she was from a poor background~~, Paula Regis gained a place at Southam University. She was always fascinated by the stars and she took a first degree in astrophysics. Once she was at university she also became interested in student politics and, because she was popular with her fellow students, was elected University President in her second year. This didn't distract her from her studies, however, and while she was in the final year of her degree, she won the International Young Scientist of the Year award for her work on star classification. When she was asked what was the secret of her success she said, 'Just hard work and a little luck.' She is determined to continue her research and she has recently begun work on her PhD.

Unit
60

Reflexive pronouns: **herself**, **himself**, **themselves**, etc.

A

Reminder ➜ K1–K4

In addition to the usual reflexive pronouns (**myself**, **yourself**, etc.) some people use **themselves** to refer to the person who is the subject of the sentence, to avoid saying whether the subject is male or female:

☐ *The author of the letter* describes **themselves** as 'a senior government official'.
☐ *Who* wants to go through life by **themselves**, without friends?

Oneself (or less formally **yourself**) is used to refer to people in general:

☐ I think *one* has to have the courage to be **oneself** and say whatever comes naturally. (*less formally* I think *you* have to have the courage to be **yourself** …)

B

We can use reflexive pronouns for emphasis in various ways. We also use reflexive pronouns to emphasise that the subject caused a certain action. Compare

☐ Salma worked hard and *got promoted*.
☐ Salma worked hard and *got* **herself** *promoted*. (emphasises that it was through her own efforts)
☐ Salma encouraged me to apply for the senior manager position, but she *got promoted* **herself**. (emphasises that Salma got promoted, not me)

C

If the object of a transitive verb refers to the same person or thing as the subject, then that object must be a reflexive pronoun. Compare:

☐ **He** walked around the golf course to **familiarise** *himself* **with** it. *and*
☐ **We** walked around to **familiarise** *the children* **with** their new surroundings.

Also: **absent … from, avail … of, busy … with, concern … with, occupy … by / with, pride … on, tear … away from, trouble … about / with**

With some verbs we can use a reflexive pronoun or leave it out with little difference in meaning:

☐ We are confident that both sets of fans will **behave (themselves)** at the match.

Also: **acclimatise, adapt, (un)dress, hide, move, prepare, shave, wash**

We include the reflexive pronoun if we want to emphasise that the person or thing referred to in the subject is affected by the action:

☐ Although she helped other athletes in their preparations for competing at high altitudes, she found it difficult to **acclimatise herself**.

D

When the subject and object after a preposition refer to the same person or thing we use a reflexive pronoun after the preposition:

☐ **He** was pleased *with* **himself**. (*not* … pleased with him.)

If the verb has a direct object we use a personal pronoun, not a reflexive pronoun:

☐ **I** remember closing *the door behind* **me**. (*not* … closing the door behind myself.)

However, if we need to make it clear that the subject and prepositional phrase refer to the same person or thing, we use a reflexive pronoun after the preposition:

☐ **She** bought *the bracelet for* **herself**. ('… for her' suggests it was bought for someone else)

E

Myself is sometimes used after **and** and **or** rather than 'I' or 'me', although some people consider this use incorrect and avoid it:

☐ I believe that Lizi **and myself** have done a pretty good job.
☐ When you've finished the job can you send the bill either to Mrs Petrov **or myself**?

Using **myself** reduces focus on the speaker or writer and so sounds less forceful or more polite.

Exercises

60.1 **Complete each sentence with a suitable form of a verb from the box followed by a reflexive pronoun and, if necessary, a preposition. If the reflexive pronoun can be omitted, put brackets around it.** C

absent **adapt** **~~concern~~** **dress** **occupy** **prepare** **pride** **trouble**

1 She works for a charity which ....concerns itself with.... the welfare of children.
2 She .... for the interview by reading the job description again.
3 It is a town that .... being welcoming to visitors.
4 While I was working, the children .... playing computer games.
5 It will take you some time to .... to the pace of life in Tokyo.
6 Jack just expects to be given a job without making any effort. He won't even .... filling in any application forms.
7 When Jade broke her arm she couldn't .... properly, so I had to go round each morning to help.
8 Peter arranged to .... the company for the first time in his life so that he could spend time with his father in hospital.

60.2 **Underline the correct option. If both options are possible, note the difference in meaning.** D

1 Can you post this letter for *myself / me*, please?
2 All my friends were away, I was bored, and I just didn't know what to do with *myself / me*.
3 We put the voice recorder on the table between *ourselves / us*.
4 They dragged the tree behind *themselves / them* all the way to the trailer.
5 Now that you're a famous actor, you must hear a lot about *yourself / you* in the media.
6 He ought to be ashamed of *himself / him*, being rude to his parents like that.
7 She should take care of *herself / her* better. She's looking really ill.
8 I opened the window in front of *myself / me* and took a deep breath of fresh air.

60.3 **If necessary, correct the italicised parts of this email or write ✓. Give alternatives where possible.** A–E

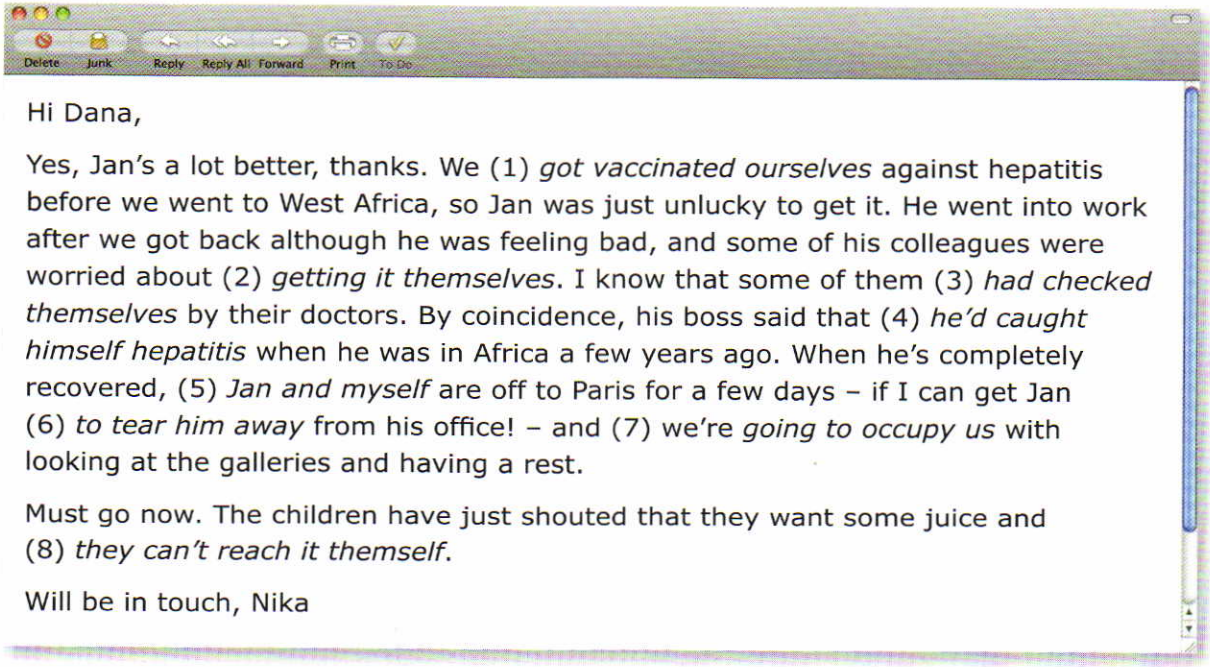

Hi Dana,

Yes, Jan's a lot better, thanks. We (1) *got vaccinated ourselves* against hepatitis before we went to West Africa, so Jan was just unlucky to get it. He went into work after we got back although he was feeling bad, and some of his colleagues were worried about (2) *getting it themselves*. I know that some of them (3) *had checked themselves* by their doctors. By coincidence, his boss said that (4) *he'd caught himself hepatitis* when he was in Africa a few years ago. When he's completely recovered, (5) *Jan and myself* are off to Paris for a few days – if I can get Jan (6) *to tear him away* from his office! – and (7) we're *going to occupy us* with looking at the galleries and having a rest.

Must go now. The children have just shouted that they want some juice and (8) *they can't reach it themself*.

Will be in touch, Nika

Unit
61

One and ones

A

We can use **one** instead of repeating a singular countable noun and **ones** instead of repeating a plural noun when it is clear from the context what we are talking about:

☐ 'Can I get you a drink?' 'It's okay, I've already got **one**.' (= a drink)
☐ I think his best poems are his early **ones**. (= poems)

We don't use **one** / **ones** instead of an uncountable noun:

☐ If you need any more paper, I'll bring you some. (*not* ... I'll bring you one / ones.)
☐ I asked him to get apple juice, but he got orange. (*not* ... but he got orange one / ones.)

We can't use **ones** without defining precisely which group of things we are talking about. Instead, we use **some**. Compare:

☐ 'We need new curtains.' 'Okay, let's buy *green* **ones** this time. / ... **ones** *with flowers on* / ... *those* **ones**.' *and*
☐ 'We need new curtains.' 'Okay, let's buy **some**.' (*not* Okay, let's buy ones.)

B

We don't use **one** / **ones** after nouns used as adjectives:

☐ I thought my memory stick was in my trouser pocket, but it was in my **coat** pocket. (*not* ... my coat one.)

Instead of using **one** / **ones** after possessive determiners (**my**, **your**, **her**, etc.) we prefer **mine**, **yours**, **hers**, etc. However, a possessive determiner + **one** / **ones** is often heard in informal speech:

☐ I'd really like a smartphone like **yours**. (*or* '... like your one' in informal speech)

We usually use **ones** to refer to things rather than people:

☐ We need two people to help. We could ask those men over there. (*not* ... ask those ones ...)

However, **ones** is more likely to be used in comparative sentences to refer to groups of people:

☐ Older students seem to work harder than younger **ones**. (*or* ... than younger students.)

Note also that we use **ones** to refer to people in **the little ones** (= small children), **(your) loved ones** (= usually close family), **(one of) the lucky ones**.

C

We can leave out **one** / **ones** –

☆ after **which**:
☐ When we buy medicines, we have no way of knowing *which* (**ones**) contain sugar.

☆ after superlatives:
☐ Look at that pumpkin! It's the *biggest* (**one**) I've seen this year.

☆ after **this**, **that**, **these**, and **those**:
☐ The last test I did was quite easy, but some parts of *this* (**one**) are really difficult.
☐ Help yourself to grapes. *These* (**ones**) are the sweetest, but *those* (**ones**) taste best.
(Note that some people think 'those / these ones' is incorrect, particularly in formal English.)

☆ after **either**, **neither**, **another**, **each**, **the first** / **second** / **last**, (etc.):
☐ Karl pointed to the paintings and said I could take *either* (**one**). (*or* ... either of them.)
☐ She cleared away the cups, washed *each* (**one**) thoroughly, and put them on the shelf.

D

We don't leave out **one** / **ones** –

☆ after **the**, **the only**, **the main**, and **every**:
☐ When you cook clams you shouldn't eat *the* **ones** that have broken shells.
☐ After I got the glasses home, I found that *every* **one** was broken.

☆ after adjectives:
☐ My shoes were so uncomfortable that I had to go out today and buy some *new* **ones**.

However, after colour adjectives we can often leave out **one** / **ones** in answers:

☐ 'Have you decided which jumper to buy?' 'Yes, I think I'll take the *blue* (**one**).'

Exercises

61.1 **If necessary, correct these sentences. If they are already correct, write ✓.** A

1. Bilal brought in the wood and put ones on the fire.
2 Normally I don't like wearing a scarf, but it was so cold I put one on.
3 A: We've run out of potatoes. B: I'll get ones when I go to the shops.
4 We haven't got lemon tea, but you could have mint one instead.
5 Those aren't your gloves. You must have picked up the wrong ones.
6 A: What kind of cakes do you like best? B: Ones with cream inside.
7 I couldn't fit all the boxes in the car, so I had to leave ones behind and pick it up later.
8 Most of the trees in our garden are less than ten years old but ones are much older than that.

61.2 **If appropriate, replace the italicised words or phrases with one or ones. If it is not possible or unlikely, write 'No' after the sentence.** A & B

1 I answered most of the questions, but had to miss out some very difficult *questions*.
2 The female violinists in the orchestra outnumber the male *violinists* by about three to one.
3 He used to work for a finance company, but he's moved to an insurance *company*.
4 The issue discussed at the meeting was an extremely complicated *issue*.
5 Many people are happy about the new road being built, but there are some angry *people*, too.
6 A: Was it these earrings you wanted? B: No, the *earrings* on the left of those, please.
7 Diana is really good at taking photos of old buildings. There's an excellent *photo* of a local church in her office.
8 A: Are you picking Jo up at the train station? B: No, she's arriving at the bus *station*.
9 On one channel was a war film and on the other was a horror *film*, so I turned the TV off.
10 There are lots of gloves here. Are these your *gloves*?

61.3 **If the italicised one or ones can be omitted in these sentences, put brackets around it. If not, write ✓.** C & D

1 The children had eaten all the pizza and were still hungry so I had to make them another (*one*).
2 I drove around the houses, looking for the *ones* with 'For Sale' notices outside. ✓
3 I'm not keen on those *ones* with the cherry on top. I think I'll have a chocolate biscuit instead.
4 I like both of these jackets. I don't know which *one* to choose.
5 The vases are all handmade and every *one* looks different.
6 Each winter seemed to be colder than the last *one*.
7 There are many excellent food markets in town but the main *one* is near the port.
8 She tried on lots of pairs of shoes and finally chose the purple *ones*.
9 The books were so disorganised that I soon lost track of which *ones* I had already counted.
10 Can you remember where you bought this *one*? I'd like to get one myself.

61.4 **Complete these sentences with one or ones followed by an ending of your own.** C & D

1 Carmen drove to the restaurant because she was the only …

....

2 To help keep fit, go to shops you can walk or cycle to rather than …

....

3 A number of causes of climate change have been suggested, but the main …

....

4 Camera tripods come in a variety of sizes and materials, but the most convenient …

....

Unit
62

So and **not** as substitutes for clauses, etc.

A

We can use **so** instead of repeating an adjective, adverb, or a whole clause:

Reminder ➜ K10–K12

- ☐ The workers were angry and they had every right to be **so**. (= angry)
- ☐ Joe took the work seriously and Petra perhaps even more **so**. (= took the work seriously)
- ☐ Usman's giving us a lift. At least I presume **so**. (= that he's giving us a lift)

B

We often use **so** instead of a clause after verbs concerned with thinking and speaking:

- ☐ 'Is Lewis going back to Scotland to see his parents this summer?' 'I've no idea, but I'd **imagine so**. He goes most years.'
- ☐ I found it ridiculous, and **said so**. / ... and **told them so**. (= that I found it ridiculous)

Also: **be afraid** (expressing regret), **appear / seem** (after 'it'), **assume, believe, expect, guess, hope, presume, suppose, suspect, think**

Note that after 'tell' we include an indirect object.

We don't use **so** after certain other verbs:

- ☐ 'Will Stefan know how to mend it?' 'I **doubt** it. / I **doubt** (that) he will.' (*not* I doubt so.)

Also: **accept, admit, agree, be certain, hear, know, promise, suggest, be sure**

Note that in informal English, particularly in an argument, we can use 'I **know so**'.

C

In negative sentences, we use **not** or **not ... so**:

- ☐ Is the Socialist Party offering anything new in its statement? It would *appear* **not**.
- ☐ They want to buy the house, although they did**n't** *say* **so** directly.

We can use *either* **not** or **not ... so** with **appear**, **seem**, **suppose**:

- ☐ 'I don't suppose there'll be any seats left.' 'No, I do**n't** *suppose* **so**.' (*or* ... I *suppose* **not**.)

We prefer **not ... so** with **believe**, **expect**, **imagine**, **think**. With these verbs, **not** is rather formal:

- ☐ 'Will we need to show our passports?' 'I do**n't** *think* **so**.' (*rather than* I think not.)

We use **not** with **be afraid** (expressing regret), **assume**, **guess** (in the phrase 'I guess ...', = 'I think ...'), **hope**, **presume**, **suspect**:

- ☐ 'You'd better do it yourself. Eva won't help.' 'No, I **guess not**.' (*not* No, I don't guess so.)

Compare the use of **not** (**to**) and **not ... so** with **say**:

- ☐ 'Do we have to do all ten questions?' 'The teacher *said* **not**.' (= the teacher said that we didn't have to) *or* 'The teacher *said* **not to**.' (= the teacher said that we shouldn't)
- ☐ 'Do we have to do all ten questions?' 'The teacher did**n't** *say* **so**.' (= the teacher didn't say that we should do all ten, but perhaps we should)

D

We can use **so** in a short answer, instead of a short answer with 'Yes, ...', when we want to say that we can see that something is true now that we have been told, particularly if we are surprised. In answers like this we use **so** + **pronoun** + **auxiliary verb** (*be*, *can*, etc.):

- ☐ 'Lisa and Sara are here.' '**So they are.**' (*or* **Yes, they are.**) (= I can now see that, too)

However, if we already know something we use 'Yes, ...', not 'So ...'. Compare:

- ☐ 'Your bike's been moved.' '**So it has. / Yes, it has.** I wonder who did it.' (= I didn't know before you told me) *and*
- ☐ 'Your bike's been moved.' '**Yes, it has.** Philip borrowed it this morning.' (= I knew before you told me; *not* So it has.)

E

We can use **so** in a similar way in short answers with verbs such as **appear** (after 'it'), **believe**, **gather**, **hear**, **say**, **seem**, **tell** (e.g. So she tells me.), **understand**. However, with these verbs, the pattern implies 'I knew before you told me':

- ☐ 'I found that lecture really boring.' '**So I gather** (= I knew that). I saw you sleeping.'

Exercises

62.1 **If possible, complete the dialogues with so. If not, use an appropriate that-clause.** B

1 A: Is Zak ill again? B: Well, he hasn't come to work, so I assume so.
2 A: Will we need to pay to get in? B: I doubt that we will.
3 A: Will you be able to come over this weekend? B: I hope ....
4 A: Can you give me a lift to work? B: I suppose ....
5 A: Is this one by Van Gogh, too? B: I think ....
6 A: Apparently Carol's getting married again. B: Yes, I hear ....
7 A: The weather's awful, so we'll need to take a taxi. B: I guess ....
8 A: Will the decorator be finished this week? B: He says ....
9 A: You will remember to pick me up at one, won't you? B: I promise ....
10 A: I hope I'll be able to get a ticket. B: I'm sure ....

62.2 **Underline all the correct B responses.** B & C

1 A: With the children being ill I haven't had time to do much housework.
B: No, I *suppose not / don't suppose / don't suppose so*.
2 A: Did I leave my handbag in your car yesterday?
B: I *don't think / don't think so / think not*.
3 A: I'm sure the bank has charged me too much. Will they refund the money?
B: I *don't suspect / suspect not / don't suspect so*.
4 A: Didn't Alice hear you? B: It *doesn't appear so / appears not / doesn't appear*.
5 A: What did you think of Sadia's work?
B: Well, I thought it was pretty awful, although I *didn't say so / said not / said so*.

62.3 **Complete B's responses with short answers beginning Yes, ... If possible, give an alternative response with So ....** D

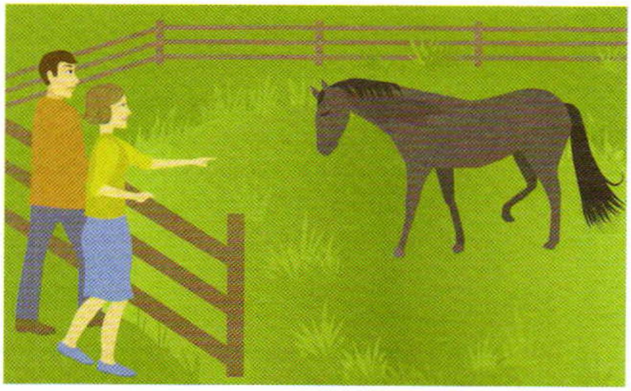

1 A: That horse is walking with a limp.
B: Yes, it is. / So it is. Perhaps we should tell the owner.
2 A: The children from next door are taking the apples from our trees.
B: .... I said they could come round and get them.
3 A: The DVD player's gone again. B: .... Dr Adams has probably borrowed it.
4 A: I told you I'd be late for work today.
B: .... I agree. But you didn't say *how* late – it's nearly two.

62.4 **Choose any appropriate short answer beginning So ... to respond to A's comments below, to say that B already knew what is being said. Use the verbs in E opposite.** E

1 A: My car won't start again. B: So I hear.
2 A: Maria's not very well. B: ....
3 A: The class has been cancelled again. B: ....
4 A: I see income tax is going up. B: ....
5 A: Fred's moving to Berlin. B: ....

→ Additional exercise 12 (page 248)

Unit
63

Do so; such

A Do so

We use **do so** (or **does so**, **did so**, **doing so**, etc.) instead of repeating a verb phrase (a verb and what follows it to complete its meaning) when the context makes clear what we are talking about:

- ○ She won in 2012 and seems likely to **do so** (= win) again this year.
- ○ Dr Lawson said, 'Sit down.' Katia **did so** (= sat down), and explained her problem.
- ○ The climbers will try again today to reach the summit of the mountain. Their chances of **doing so** (= reaching the summit of the mountain) are better than they were last week. (In very formal English we can also use **so doing**.)
- ○ When he was asked to check the figures, he claimed that he **had** already **done so**. (= checked the figures)

Do so is most often used in formal spoken and written English. In informal English we can use **do it** or **do that** instead:

- ○ Mrs Chen waved as she walked past. She **does so / it / that** every morning.
- ○ Ricardo told me to put in a new battery. I **did so / it / that**, but the radio still doesn't work.

We can also use **do** alone rather than **do so** in less formal English, especially after modals or perfect tenses (see also **B**):

- ○ 'Will this program work on your computer?' 'It *should* **do**.'
- ○ I told you that I'd finish the work by today, and I *have* **done**. ('have' is stressed here)

B

We can use **do so** instead of verbs that describe *actions*, but we avoid **do so** with verbs that describe *states* and *habitual actions*. Compare:

- ○ 65% of the members voted for Katie Brown this time, whereas 84% **did so** last year.
- ○ Kenyon confessed to the murder, although he only **did so** after a number of witnesses had identified him as the killer.
- ○ I gave her the medicine, and I take full responsibility for **doing so**. *and*
- ○ Lars doesn't like Facebook but Emma **does**.
- ○ He earned a lot more than I **did**.
- ○ I don't have time to go swimming every day, but I *usually* **do**.

C Such

We can use **such** + (**a / an**) + **noun** to refer back to something mentioned before, with the meaning 'of this / that kind'. We use **such** + **noun** when the noun is uncountable or plural, and **such** + **a / an** + **noun** when the noun is countable and singular. **Such** is used in this way mainly in formal speech and writing:

- ○ The students refer to teachers by their first names and will often criticise them for badly prepared lessons. **Such behaviour** is unacceptable in most schools. (*more informally* Behaviour like this ...)
- ○ When asked about rumours that the company is preparing to lose more than 200 jobs, a spokeswoman said: 'I know of no **such plans**.' (*more informally* ... no plans of this kind.)
- ○ They needed someone who was both an excellent administrator and manager. **Such a person** was not easy to find. (*more informally* A person like this ...)
- ○ We allow both men and women to have time off work to look after children. We were the first department to introduce **such a scheme**. (*more informally* ... a scheme like this.)

Exercises

63.1 **Join each pair of sentences with either and or but, replacing the repeated verb + object / complement with a form of do followed by so.** A

1 Johnson never won an Olympic medal. He twice came close to winning an Olympic medal.
Johnson never won an Olympic medal, but twice came close to doing so.

2 She was asked to teach more classes. She was happy to teach more classes.
....

3 My French hosts gave me snails to eat. I ate them very reluctantly.
....

4 The company wanted to build a new dam on the site. They were prevented from building the dam by local opposition.
....

5 All EU countries agreed to implement the new regulations on recycling plastic. So far only Finland and Austria have implemented the new regulations.
....

6 The water freezes in the cracks in rocks. As it freezes, it expands.
....

63.2 **Complete these sentences with a form of do (+ so if possible).** B

1 If you have not already handed in the form, then please .... without delay.
2 Olav drives much faster than you ....
3 He jumped down from the window, but in .... twisted his ankle.
4 I know that many people don't enjoy Felipe's blog, but I ....
5 Anyone crossing the railway .... at their own risk.
6 I thought Julie was joking when she said these apples smell like oranges. But they .... !
7 When we play tennis Leyla usually wins, and she gets upset if I ....
8 She pointed to the old box, her hand shaking as she ....

63.3 **Complete the sentences with such or such a / an followed by a word from the box in the singular or plural.** C

claim **destruction** ~~**device**~~ **project** **research** **tactic**

1 Manufacturers often claim that their washing machines have built-in computers, but is there really a computer in such a device ?
2 After Professor Sharma spoke about her work on climate change, she called on the government to put more money into ....
3 Television is sometimes said to harm children's social development, yet the evidence for .... is often lacking.
4 Building a new power station would undoubtedly create new jobs, but has the environmental impact of .... been considered fully?
5 The earthquake demolished thousands of buildings. The country has rarely seen .... before.
6 United played very defensively in the second half, but .... were criticised by the team's supporters.

63.4 **Rewrite the sentences in 63.3 to make them less formal.** C

1 ...but is there really a computer in a device like this? / ... like that?

→ Additional exercise 12 (page 248)

Unit
64
More on leaving out words after auxiliary verbs

A

To avoid repeating words from a previous clause or sentence we use an auxiliary verb (**be**, **have**, **can**, **will**, **would**, etc.) instead of a whole verb group or instead of a verb and what follows it:

○ She says she's finished, but I don't think she **has**. (*instead of* … has finished.)
○ 'Would any of you like to go to Paris?' 'I **would**.' (*instead of* I would like to go to Paris.)

If there is more than one auxiliary verb in the previous clause or sentence, we leave out all the auxiliary verbs except the first instead of repeating the main verb. Alternatively, we can use two (or more) auxiliary verbs:

○ 'They **could have been** delayed by the snow.' 'Yes, they **could**.' (*or* … **could have** (**been**).)

B

If there is no auxiliary verb in the previous clause or sentence, or if the auxiliary is a form of **do**, we can use a form of **do** instead of repeating the main verb. We use **do** when the main verb is a present simple form and **did** when it is a past simple form:

○ Mona **plays** golf on Saturdays, and I **do** too. (*instead of* … and I play golf on Saturdays too.; '… and so do I' is also possible)
○ 'I **didn't steal** the money.' 'No one thinks that you **did**.' (*instead of* … thinks that you stole it.; 'No one thinks so' is also possible.)

If **be** is the main verb in the previous clause or sentence, we repeat a form of the verb **be**:

○ 'The children **are** noisy again.' 'They always **are**.'

If **have** or **have got** is the main verb in the previous clause or sentence, we can usually use a form of either **do** or **have**:

○ 'Do you think I **have** a chance of winning?' 'Yes, I think you **have**.' (*or* … you **do**.; 'Yes, I think so' is also possible.)
○ Even if he **hasn't got** a map himself, he may know someone who **has**. (*or* … who **does**.)

However, if we use **have** + **noun** in the previous clause or sentence to talk about actions (**have a shower**, **have a shave**, **have a good time**, etc.) we prefer **do**:

○ I wasn't expecting to *have a good time* at the party, but I **did**.

Note that sometimes we can use either **do**, **be** or **have** with a similar meaning (see also **C**):

○ I asked Clara to tidy her room, and she **has / did**. ('has' replaces 'has tidied her room'; 'did' replaces 'tidied her room'.)

C

If we use **have** as an auxiliary verb, we can often follow it with **done** instead of repeating the main verb. This happens particularly in spoken English:

○ 'She's never made a mistake before.' 'Well, she **has** (**done**) this time.'

However, this is usually not possible when the verb being substituted is intransitive:

○ 'They've already gone.' 'I don't think Daniel **has**.' (*not* … Daniel has done.)

Similarly, after a *modal* auxiliary verb (**can**, **could**, **may**, **might**, **must**, **ought to**, **shall**, **should**, **will**, **would**) we can use **do**, particularly in spoken English:

○ 'Will you be seeing David today?' 'I **might** (**do**).'

Sometimes we can use **be** instead of **do** with a similar meaning (see also **D**):

○ 'Will you be seeing Felix today?' 'I **might** (**do / be**).' ('do' replaces 'see Felix today'; 'be' replaces 'be seeing Felix today'.)

D

If we use **be** as an *auxiliary* verb in the previous clause or sentence, we can use **be** after a modal:

○ 'Is Ella staying for lunch?' 'Yes, I think she **will** (**be**).' (*or* … she will **do**.)

However, if **be** is used as a *main* verb in the previous clause or sentence, or as an auxiliary verb within a passive, we can usually leave out **be** after a modal in informal contexts only. Compare:

○ 'Lina'**s** late again.' 'I thought she **might** (**be**).' *and*
○ It has been found that the comet is made entirely of gas, as it was predicted it **would be**.

Exercises

64.1 **Make B's replies shorter by crossing out some of the words in italics. Give alternatives if possible.** A

1 A: Have you ever played squash before? B: Yes, I *have ~~played squash before.~~*
2 A: I suppose we should have booked tickets. B: Yes, we *should have booked tickets*.
3 A: Will you be staying in Brazil permanently? B: Yes, *we will be staying in Brazil permanently*.
4 A: All the parking places will probably have been taken by now.
B: Yes, I'm sure they *will have been taken by now*.
5 A: Have you had dinner yet? B: No, I *haven't had dinner yet*.
6 A: Are you going to Katalin's party? B: Yes, I *am going to Katalin's party*.
7 A: If Diane hadn't given you a lift, you would have missed the train.
B: Yes, I *would have missed the train*.
8 A: Can you see Joe anywhere? B: No, I *can't see him anywhere*.
9 A: Did you see that cyclist go through the red light? He couldn't have been looking.
B: No, he *couldn't have been looking*.

64.2 **Complete the sentences with an appropriate form of do, be or have (plus any alternatives). Put brackets around the word if it can be omitted, and write (done) after forms of have where this might be added.** B & C

1 I haven't finished doing the translation yet, but I will have (done) by tomorrow morning.
2 As a child I always enjoyed watching cartoons on TV, and I still ....
3 A: Has the post arrived yet? B: No, I don't think it ....
4 Have a shower if you want, but take a towel from the cupboard when you ....
5 A: It costs a fortune to rent a flat in the city centre. B: I'm sure it must ....
6 I was hoping Ryan had an electric drill that I could borrow, but he ....
7 I'm not a member of the tennis club myself, but I know someone who ....
8 I told the class that they had to hand in their books by nine and they all ....
9 A: Have you got a copy of *Great Expectations*? B: Yes, I think I ....
10 A: I've got £100 with me. Will that be enough? B: It should ....

64.3 **Complete the sentences with might, should, will or would, (plus any alternatives). If necessary, write be after the modal, or (be) if it is possible to omit it.** D

1 It's not snowing at the moment, but they say it will / might (be) .
2 Chris was cleaning the house when I got home, as I hoped he ....
3 A: Are they staying for lunch? B: They .... I'll ask them.
4 A: Are you revising a lot for the exams? B: Not as much as I ....
5 The company has not been as successful as it was claimed it ....
6 Natalie says she's very sorry – as she ....
7 The book is a bestseller, as we hoped it ....
8 A: My photograph was awarded first prize. B: I thought it ....

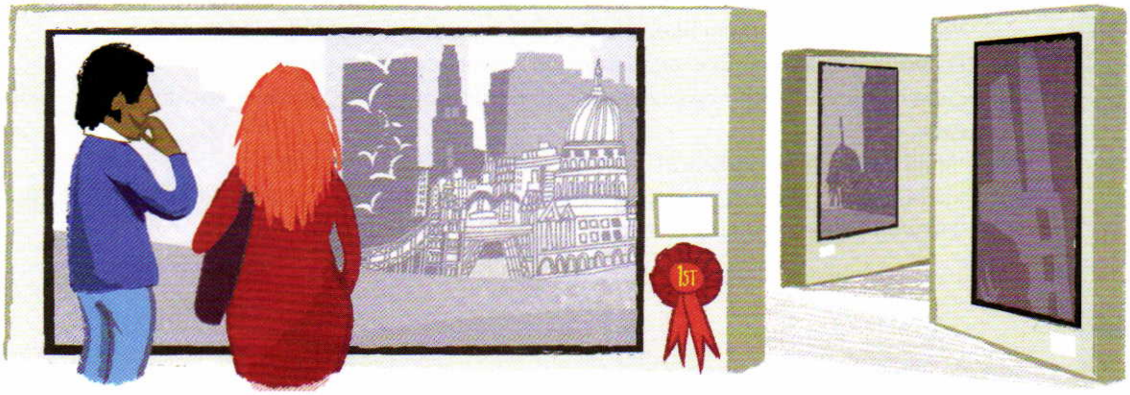

→ Additional exercise 12 (page 248)

Unit
65

Leaving out **to-infinitives**

A

We can sometimes use **to** instead of a clause beginning with a **to-infinitive** when it is clear from the context what we are talking about:

☐ I wanted to come with you, but I won't be able **to**. (*instead of* … to come with you.)

☐ It might have been better if Rosa had asked for my help, but she chose **not to**. (*instead of* … chose not to ask for my help.)

However, when we use the verb **be** in the previous sentence or clause the **to-infinitive** form of **be** is repeated in the next clause or sentence:

☐ Leon **was** frightened – or maybe he just pretended **to be**. (*not* … just pretended to.)

B

After most nouns and adjectives that can be followed by a **to-infinitive clause**, we can leave out the **to-infinitive clause** or use **to**:

☐ I'm not going to write another book – at least I don't have any **plans (to)**. (*or* … plans to write another book.)

☐ 'Could you and Tom help me move house?' 'Well, I'm **willing (to)**, and I'll ask Tom.'

Also: **chance, idea, opportunity, promise, suggestion; afraid, delighted, determined**

We can also leave out a **to-infinitive** or use **to** with some verbs:

☐ Alex will collect us by 10 o'clock. He **promised (to)**.

☐ 'You were supposed to buy some sugar.' 'Sorry, I **forgot (to)**.'

Also: **agree, ask, begin, refuse, start, try**

After verbs which must have a complement (i.e. a phrase which completes the meaning of the verb) we can't leave out **to**:

☐ I admit that I took her watch, but I didn't **mean to**.

☐ Have you thought about getting vaccinated against cholera before going there? I'd certainly **advise** you **to**.

Also: **afford, be able, choose, deserve, expect, fail, hate, hope, intend, love, need, prefer**

C

After **want** and **would like** in **if-clauses** and **wh-clauses** we can often leave out a **to-infinitive** or use **to**:

☐ You're welcome to dance *if* you'**d like** (**to**).

☐ You can do *whatever* you **would like** (**to**).

☐ Call me Ben *if* you **want** (**to**).

☐ Come and see us *when* you **want** (**to**).

In other clauses (not **if-** and **wh-clauses)** we include **to**:

☐ I was planning to see you tomorrow, and I **would** still **like to**.

☐ I offered to clean your car because I really **want to**, not because I hope to be paid.

In **if-clauses** and **wh-clauses** we usually leave out **to** after **like**. Compare:

☐ You can have one if you **like**. *and* You can have one if you**'d like** (**to**).

☐ Leave whenever you **like**. *and* Leave whenever you**'d like** (**to**).

However, we include **to** with negative forms of **want**, **would like**, and **like**, including in **if-clauses** and **wh-clauses**:

☐ 'Shall we go and visit Laura?' 'I **don't** really **want to**.'

☐ I should have phoned Jo last night, but it was so late when I got home I **didn't like to**.

☐ 'He won't mind you asking him for a loan.' 'Oh, no, I **wouldn't like to**.'

Exercises

65.1 **Rewrite the italicised part of each sentence so that it has a similar meaning. Use a verb from the box (use each verb twice) followed by to or to be.** A

claimed **expected** **pretended** **used**

1 Was she really as good at tennis as she *said she was?* claimed to be
2 She occupies a much less important role in the company than she *did before*.
....
3 Lucia was frightened – or maybe she just *acted as if she was*.
....
4 Dan has lost a lot of weight. He's much thinner than he *was before*.
....
5 The last government didn't represent the majority of people, although it *said that it did*.
....
6 My family enjoyed my singing, or at least they *made believe that they did*.
....
7 The Pantheon in Rome wasn't anything like I *imagined it*.
....
8 I didn't get an interview for the job although I *thought that I would*.
....

65.2 **Complete the sentences. Write to if it is necessary; write (to) if it can be included or omitted.** B

1 I've always wanted to go white-water rafting, but I've never had the opportunity .... before.
2 Luka had to admit that he'd failed, even though he obviously hated ....
3 When the police officer told the crowd to leave the square they refused ....
4 I don't have to walk to work. I do it because I choose ....
5 We didn't want Alina to leave college, but she was determined ....
6 Spain won 3–0, and deserved ...., after a fine performance.
7 A: Shall we ask Dad before we borrow the car? B: Yes, it might be a good idea ....
8 A: Would you present the prizes for the competition? B: I'd be delighted ....
9 A: Would you like to travel first class? B: Well, yes, I'd certainly prefer ....
10 I was hoping to go to Russia this year, but I can't afford ....

65.3 **If necessary, correct B's responses. If they are already correct, write ✓.** C

1 A: Can I have a biscuit? B: Take more than one if you like to.
2 A: When shall we start playing the music? B: Whenever you'd like.
3 A: Will Sara be able to play? B: I asked her, but she says she doesn't want.
4 A: I can't come out tonight, I'm seeing Emma. B: She can join us, if she'd like to.
5 A: Where are you going to in Norway? B: I haven't decided yet. I'll just go where I want.
6 A: I don't think I'll go after all. B: That's okay. You don't have to if you don't want.
7 A: Can the children come too? B: Yes, of course, if they want.
8 A: Shall we go out walking tomorrow? B: Yes, I'd like very much.
9 A: Could I ask you a personal question? B: Of course. Ask anything you like to.
10 A: Did you ask Dr Mori to help you? B: No, he was very busy, so I didn't like.

→ Additional exercise 12 (page 248)

Unit 66

Position of adjectives

A

Many adjectives can be used either before the noun they describe, or following linking verbs such as **appear**, **be**, **become**, **feel**, **get**, and **seem** (see Unit 21). Compare:

☐ The **high** *price* surprised him. *and* ☐ The price **seemed** *high*.

B

Some adjectives are seldom or never used before the noun they describe. These include –

☆ some **'a-'** adjectives:

☐ The horse *was* **alone** in the field.
(*but not* The alone horse ...)

Also: **afraid, alike, alive, ashamed, asleep, awake, aware**

Some have related adjectives that can be used before a noun or after a linking verb. Compare:

☐ The animal was **alive**. *and* A **living** animal.
(*or* A **live** animal. / The animal was **living**.)

Also: **afraid – frightened, alike – similar, alone – lone, asleep – sleeping**

☆ some adjectives used to describe health and feelings:

☐ My son *felt* **unwell**. (*but not* My unwell son ...)

These are sometimes used between an adverb and noun e.g. 'a terminally **ill** patient'.

Also: **content, fine, glad, ill** (but 'ill health'), **sorry, (un)sure, upset** (but 'an upset stomach'), **well** (but 'He's really not a well man')

C

Emphasising adjectives are used to emphasise your feelings about something. Compare:

☐ I felt a fool. *and* ☐ I felt a **complete** fool. (for emphasis)

Some emphasising adjectives (such as **complete**, and also **absolute, entire, mere, sheer, total, utter**) are seldom or never used after a linking verb:

☐ It was a **total** failure. (*but not usually* The failure was total.)

Classifying adjectives are used to say that something is of a particular type. Like emphasising adjectives, classifying adjectives are seldom or never used after a linking verb:

☐ a **nuclear** explosion (*but not usually* 'The explosion was nuclear', unless we particularly want to emphasise a contrast with other kinds of explosion)

Also: **atomic, chemical, digital, domestic, environmental, medical; general, occasional, northern** (etc.), **maximum, minimum, underlying**

Qualitative adjectives are used to give the quality that a thing or person has. We use them either directly before a noun or after a linking verb. Compare:

☐ a **beautiful** sunset ☐ The sunset was **beautiful**.

Note that some classifying adjectives can also be used with different meanings as qualitative adjectives and placed after a linking verb. Compare:

☐ The country's **economic** *reforms*. *and*
☐ The process isn't **economic**. (= not profitable)

Also: **academic, conscious, educational, (il)legal, scientific**

D

Many adjectives can be used immediately after a noun, at the beginning of a reduced relative clause (see Unit 69B). For example –

☆ adjectives before a **to-infinitive**, or a prepositional phrase as part of the adjective phrase:

☐ It was a *speech* **calculated** *to appeal* to the unions.
☐ He is a *manager* **capable** *of making* difficult decisions.

☆ some **-ible** and **-able** adjectives such as **available**, **imaginable**, **possible**, **suitable**. However, we use these adjectives immediately after a noun *only* when the noun follows **the** or when the noun is made definite by what follows in a relative clause:

☐ This was *the* most difficult *decision* **imaginable**.
☐ It is a *treatment* **suitable** *for all children with asthma*.

☆ the adjectives **concerned**, **involved**, **opposite**, **present**, **proper**, **responsible**. These words have different meanings when they are used *before* a noun and immediately after it. Compare:

☐ All the *people* **present** (= who were there) approved of the decision. *and*
☐ I was asked for my **present** *address*. (= my address now)

Exercises

66.1 **If necessary, correct these sentences, or write ✓ if they are already correct.** **B**

1 After the accident I tried to comfort the upset driver of the car.
After the accident I tried to comfort the driver of the car, who was upset.
2 In the distance I could see an alone figure walking towards me.
3 It wasn't a great surprise when Rahim died as he hadn't been a well man for years.
4 I remember her as a glad person who was always smiling.
5 He stood at the bedroom door, looking at his asleep daughter.
6 The fire on the ship is under control, but there are still many afraid passengers on board.
7 She spent most of her life nursing seriously ill children in the hospital.
8 The two children were of an alike age.
9 We were unsure which way to go.
10 The sorry girls apologised to their teacher for their behaviour.

66.2 **Complete each pair of sentences using one pair of adjectives from the box. If an adjective can be used in both sentences, write it in both; if not, write it only in one. (Use a dictionary if necessary.)** **C**

domestic – unsafe **educational – entertaining**
inevitable – utter **legal – stupid** **serious – underlying**

1 a The experiment was a / an .... failure.
b After Dr Owen left the project, its failure was ....
2 a None of the equipment in the warehouse is ....
b The shop doesn't sell .... equipment.
3 a The trip to the wildlife park was a / an .... experience.
b The toys were .... and the children played with them for hours.
4 a The computer fault was .... enough to disrupt all the work in the office.
b The .... problem has not yet been solved.
5 a He was involved in a .... argument with his neighbour over a tree in the garden.
b It's completely .... to charge a fee for entry into the museum.

66.3 **Write the word in brackets in one of the spaces in each sentence, either before or after the noun (or both if possible). (Use a dictionary if necessary.)** **D**

1 The party was excellent, and I'd like to thank all the .... people .... (*concerned*)
2 As the .... minister .... for the health service, I think he should resign. (*responsible*)
3 The new machinery was intended to increase output, but it seems to have had the .... effect .... (*opposite*)
4 Children are only admitted when accompanied by a / an .... adult .... (*responsible*)
5 It's the only .... room .... in the hotel that night. (*available*)
6 The pond on the village green was filled in with the .... approval .... of local residents. (*apparent*)
7 Cars drive too fast past the school and .... parents .... have complained to the police. (*concerned*)
8 For those who need it, there is .... financial advice .... (*available*)

➜ **Additional exercise 13** (page 248)

Unit
67

Gradable and non-gradable adjectives 1

A

Gradable adjectives can be used with *grading adverbs* such as **very** or **extremely** to say that a thing or person has more or less of a particular quality. Here are some examples of adjectives used as gradable in their most common meanings:

Grading adverbs	**a bit**, **dreadfully**, **extremely**, **hugely**, **immensely**, **intensely**, **rather**, **reasonably**, **slightly**, **very**	+	**angry**, **big**, **busy**, **clever**, **common**, **different**, **fast**, **friendly**, **happy**, **important**, **low**, **popular**, **quiet**, **rich**, **strong**, **weak**, **young**	*Gradable adjectives*

- She was *extremely* **rich**.
- It's *hugely* **popular**.
- The people there are *reasonably* **friendly**.
- They're *slightly* **different**.

Non-gradable adjectives are not used with adverbs such as **very** or **extremely** because these adjectives do not refer to qualities which have different degrees. With non-gradable adjectives we can use *non-grading adverbs* which emphasise their extreme or absolute nature, such as **absolutely**, **completely**, etc. Many classifying adjectives (see Unit 66) are usually non-gradable. Adverbs such as **almost**, **exclusively**, etc., which indicate the extent of the quality, are commonly used with classifying adjectives. Here are some examples of non-gradable adjectives in their most common meanings:

Non-grading adverbs	**absolutely**, **completely**, **entirely**, **perfectly**, **practically**, **simply**, **totally**, **utterly**, **virtually**; **almost**, **exclusively**, **fully**, **largely**, **mainly**, **nearly**, **primarily**	+	**awful**, **excellent**, **huge**, **impossible**, **superb**, **terrible**, **unique**, **unknown**, **wrong**; **domestic**, **environmental**, **agricultural** (see Unit 66C)	*Non-gradable adjectives*

- She's *completely* **wrong**.
- He was *practically* **unknown** to the public.
- It was *absolutely* **superb**.
- The region is *largely* **agricultural.**

Gradable adjectives are sometimes used with non-grading adverbs, and non-gradable adjectives with grading adverbs to give special emphasis or to be humorous:

- What you're asking isn't just difficult – it's *extremely* **impossible**! (*grading adverb + non-gradable adjective*)
- You've won a hundred pounds? Wow, you're *virtually* **rich**! (*non-grading adverb + gradable adjective*)

Note that not all the adverbs can go with all the adjectives given in each of the tables above. For example, we can say 'absolutely huge', but we wouldn't usually say 'completely huge' unless it was for particular emphasis or for humour.

B

The adverbs **fairly** (= to quite a large degree, but usually less than 'very'), **really** (= 'very [much]') and **pretty** (= similar to 'fairly'; used in informal contexts) are commonly used with both gradable and non-gradable adjectives:

- She's *fairly* **popular** at school.
- I'm *really* **busy** at the moment.
- It's a *pretty* **important** exam.
- It was a *fairly* **awful** film.
- The flooding was *really* **terrible**.
- The bill was *pretty* **huge**.

However, note that we don't generally use **fairly** (or **very**) with gradable adjectives which indicate that something is very good or necessary:

- Experience is *really / pretty* **essential** for the job. (*not* ... fairly essential ...)
- The weather was *really / pretty* **perfect**. (*not* ... fairly perfect.)

Also: **invaluable, superb, tremendous, wonderful**

Exercises

67.1 **Complete the four sentences which contain gradable adjectives using very. Complete the remaining sentences with the adverbs from the box. Try to use a different one each time.** A

absolutely almost completely exclusively mainly practically

1 The bridge is now .... complete.
2 The material is .... cotton.
3 The food was .... excellent.
4 Her explanation was .... clear.
5 Their actions were .... illegal.
6 The new restaurant is .... popular.
7 I was in a / an .... permanent state of suspense.
8 I thought she was .... attractive.
9 Until last year the club was .... male.
10 Small black cars are not .... visible.

67.2 **Answer the questions using an adverb + adjective.** A **How would you feel if ...**

1 ... a friend said s/he had just won a million pounds? I'd be absolutely delighted.
2 ... your best friend told you s/he was emigrating to Australia?
3 ... someone broke a window in your house or flat?
4 ... a complete stranger told you that you were very beautiful / handsome?
5 ... you lost some airline tickets you had just bought?

67.3 **If necessary, correct the italicised parts of this email. If they are already correct, write ✓.** A

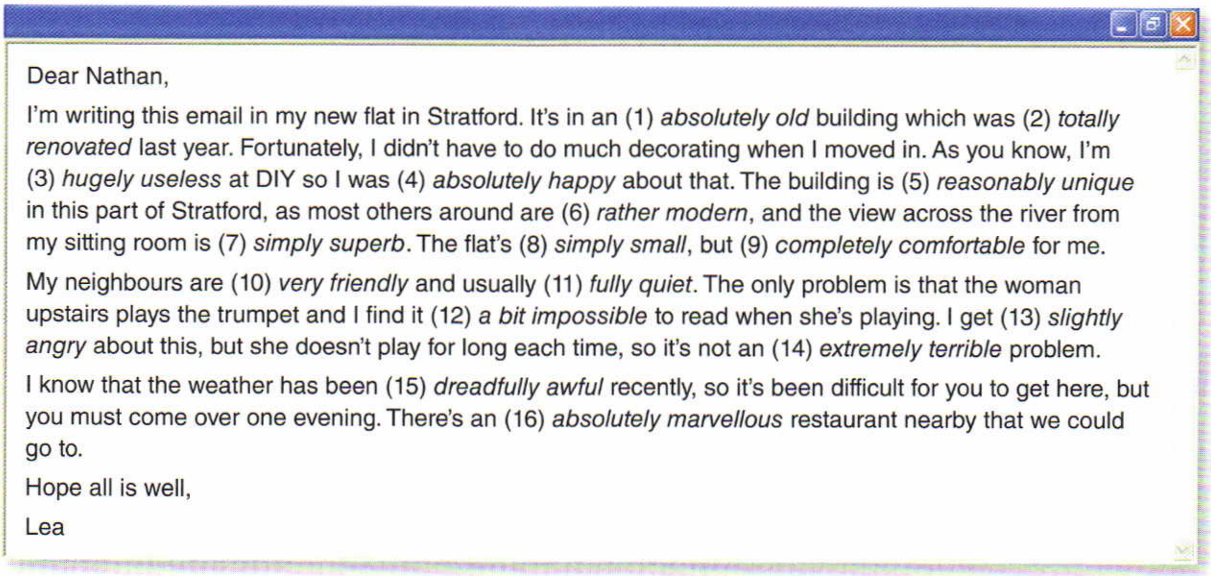

Dear Nathan,

I'm writing this email in my new flat in Stratford. It's in an (1) *absolutely old* building which was (2) *totally renovated* last year. Fortunately, I didn't have to do much decorating when I moved in. As you know, I'm (3) *hugely useless* at DIY so I was (4) *absolutely happy* about that. The building is (5) *reasonably unique* in this part of Stratford, as most others around are (6) *rather modern*, and the view across the river from my sitting room is (7) *simply superb*. The flat's (8) *simply small*, but (9) *completely comfortable* for me.

My neighbours are (10) *very friendly* and usually (11) *fully quiet*. The only problem is that the woman upstairs plays the trumpet and I find it (12) *a bit impossible* to read when she's playing. I get (13) *slightly angry* about this, but she doesn't play for long each time, so it's not an (14) *extremely terrible* problem.

I know that the weather has been (15) *dreadfully awful* recently, so it's been difficult for you to get here, but you must come over one evening. There's an (16) *absolutely marvellous* restaurant nearby that we could go to.

Hope all is well,

Lea

67.4 **Cross out any incorrect or unlikely alternatives.** B

1 Her advice was *fairly / really* invaluable.
2 Our neighbours are *really / fairly* friendly.
3 I thought his performance as Hamlet was *fairly / really* tremendous.
4 The children kept *pretty / very* quiet during the concert.
5 The view from the window was *very / pretty* wonderful.
6 Their cooperation is *pretty / very* essential if we want the project to go ahead.
7 The weather was *really / fairly* perfect for a long walk.
8 In this photograph she looked *really / very* young.
9 The workmanship in the furniture was *pretty / very* superb.
10 The disease is *fairly / pretty* common in this part of the country.

Unit
68

Gradable and non-gradable adjectives 2

A

Some adjectives have both gradable and non-gradable senses.

(i) Some adjectives have different senses when they are gradable and non-gradable. Compare:

- Smith is a *very* **common** name. (= frequently found; gradable) *and*
- We have a lot of **common** interests. (= shared; non-gradable; not *very*)
- The house is *very* **old**. (= existed many years; gradable) *and*
- I met my **old** politics professor the other day. (= former; non-gradable; not *very*)

Also: **civil, clean, critical, electric** (= 'exciting' when gradable), **empty, false, late, odd, original, particular, straight**

(ii) Some adjectives have similar meanings when they are gradable and non-gradable. However, when they are gradable we talk about the quality that a person or thing has (i.e. they are *qualitative* adjectives and therefore can be used with an adverb), and when they are non-gradable we talk about the category or type they belong to (i.e. they are *classifying* adjectives). Compare:

- I don't know where he came from, but he sounded *slightly* **foreign**. (= not from this country; gradable) *and*
- She is now advising on the government's **foreign** policy. (= concerning other countries; non-gradable)
- They had a *very* **public** argument. (= seen / heard by a lot of people; gradable) *and*
- He was forced to resign by **public** pressure. (= from many people in the community; non-gradable)

Also: **academic, adult, average, diplomatic, genuine, guilty, human, individual, innocent, mobile, private, professional, scientific, technical, true, wild**

B

In spoken English in particular, we can use **good and ...**, **lovely and ...**, and **nice and ...** followed by another gradable adjective in order to emphasise the second adjective. Possible patterns include –

☆ **good and ready** and more colloquially **good and proper / relaxed / strong** (*but not usually* good and beautiful / rich / tall):

- If you're all feeling **good and relaxed** after the break, let's get on with the meeting.

☆ **lovely and dry / soft / sunny / warm** (*but not usually* lovely and decent / empty / short):

- It's **lovely and warm** in here. Freezing outside, though.

☆ **nice and bright / clean / cold / comfortable / early / fresh / quiet / simple / soft / tidy / warm** (*but not usually* nice and interesting / handsome / exciting):

- 'Shall we get some strawberries?' 'Yes, they look **nice and fresh**.'

We can also link comparative adjectives (see Unit 72) with **and** to talk about an increasing degree of the quality described in the adjective. We use **more and more + adjective** in a similar way:

- As she got **more and more excited**, her voice got **higher and higher** and **louder and louder**.
- The taxi driver just drove **faster and faster and faster** until I told him to stop, and I got out.

Exercises

68.1 **Complete the sentences using each of the adjectives from the box twice, once with a gradable sense (adding very) and once with a non-gradable sense. (Use a dictionary if necessary.)** Ai

critical **false** **late** **original** **straight**

1 The novel was praised by the judges for its very original use of language.
2 The train is .... again. I wonder if the bad weather has delayed it.
3 The report was .... of the police officers involved in the investigation.
4 I had a / an .... choice between working for my father and having no job at all.
5 She was accused of giving .... information during the trial.
6 The driver of the overturned lorry was in a / an .... condition in hospital last night.
7 I was given the oil painting by my .... uncle Simon.
8 The .... fireplaces had been removed and replaced by more modern ones.
9 The path to the summit of the hill was .... and steep.
10 Many of the people I met were quite sincere, but some seemed ...., so that I could never be sure if they meant what they said.

68.2 **Complete each pair of sentences using the adverb + adjective pairs from the box. Use the adjective in both sentences, but include the adverb in only one.** Aii

(largely) academic ~~**(fairly) average**~~ **(extremely) diplomatic**
(very) human **(intensely) private** **(highly) technical**

1 a The average temperature on the island is a pleasant 23.4 °C.
  b Brecston is a / ~~an~~ fairly average town in the south of England.
2 a The instructions were .... and clearly meant for an expert.
  b Fiona got a job providing .... support for people having computer problems.
3 a Being frightened in this situation is a .... response and nothing to be ashamed of.
  b Near the top of the mountain there were signs of .... habitation, perhaps centuries old.
4 a I found it difficult to understand the .... talk that Professor Downs gave.
  b The .... standards at the school are very high.
5 a He worked hard to afford a .... education for his three children.
  b She was a / an .... person and had few close friends.
6 a After Mara left university she worked in the .... service for a number of years.
  b When he was asked to comment on the French President's decision he gave a / an .... answer, not wanting to appear critical.

68.3 **Complete the sentences with phrases beginning with good / lovely / nice + and + an appropriate adjective.** B

1 Now that the room is painted yellow, it looks lovely and bright.
2 I've put you in the spare room at the back of the house, so it'll be ....
3 A: Have you felt the material my new coat's made of? B: Oh, it's ....
4 The oranges looked quite old, but when I cut into them they were ....
5 There's no point in trying to persuade Gustavo. He won't make up his mind until he's ....

Unit
69

Participle adjectives and compound adjectives

A

Participle adjectives

Some **-ing forms** (present participles) and **-ed forms** (past participles) of verbs can be used as adjectives. Most of these *participle adjectives* can be used before the noun they describe or following linking verbs (see Unit 21):

○ The hotel had a **welcoming** *atmosphere*.
○ I found this **broken** *plate* in the kitchen cupboard.
○ The students' tests results *were* **pleasing**.
○ My mother *seemed* **delighted** with the present.

B

We can use many participle adjectives *immediately* after nouns when they identify or define the noun. This use is similar to *defining relative clauses* and they are often called 'reduced relatives':

○ We had to pay for the *rooms* **used**. (*or* ... the *rooms* **that were used**.)

Some of these are rarely used before the noun:

○ My watch was among the *things* **taken**.
(*but not* ... the taken things.)

Also: **applying, caused, found, included, provided**

Others can be used before *or* immediately after nouns:

○ The *crowd* **watching** grew restless. *or*
○ The **watching** *crowd* grew restless.

Also: **affected, alleged, allocated, broken, chosen, identified, infected, interested, remaining, resulting, stolen**

C

In formal English, **that** and **those** can be used as pronouns before a participle adjective:

○ The flour is of a higher quality than **that produced** by other varieties of wheat. (= the flour which is produced)
○ The touchscreens perform less well than **those manufactured** elsewhere. (= the touchscreens which are manufactured elsewhere)
○ Here is some advice for **those** (= people) **preparing** to go on holiday.

D

Compound adjectives

Many *compound adjectives* include a participle adjective. Common patterns are:

*adverb + **-ed** participle*	○ They are **well-behaved** children.
*adverb + **-ing** participle*	○ Social networking is a **fast-growing** activity.
*adjective + **-ed** participle*	○ She seems to live on **ready-made** meals.
*adjective + **-ing** participle*	○ He's the **longest-serving** employee in the company.
*noun + **-ed** participle*	○ The public square was **tree-lined**.
*noun + **-ing** participle*	○ I hope it will be a **money-making** enterprise.
***-ed** participle + particle*	○ Did it really happen, or was it a **made-up** story? (from two-word verbs)

We can use some participle adjectives **only** in adjective compounds. For example, we can't say '... behaved children' or '... a making enterprise' as the sense is incomplete without the adverb or noun.

Also: **New York-based, Paris-born, brick-built, easy-going, peace-keeping, long-lasting, good-looking, home-made, hair-raising, far-reaching, well-resourced, sweet-smelling, strange-sounding, soft-spoken, sour-tasting, nerve-wracking**

Note that many other compound adjectives do not include participle adjectives:

○ The problem is **short-term**.
○ It was just a **small-scale** project.

Exercises

69.1 **Replace the italicised parts of these sentences with present or past participle adjectives formed from the verbs in the box. Give alternative positions for the adjective if possible.** B

~~cause~~ identify include interest provide remain result

1 I offered to pay for any damage *that was the result*. caused (*not* … any caused damage.)
2 Steps are being taken by telephone engineers to solve the problems *which have been noticed*.
3 Visitors *who want to find out more* can buy a booklet with further information.
4 Please answer the questions on the sheet *that has been given to you*.
5 The holiday cost £1,200, with flights *which were part of the total*.
6 I didn't want to be on TV but the publicity *that was the consequence* was good for business.
7 Just before serving the pasta, sprinkle over any cheese *that is left over*.

69.2 **Write a sentence to describe each set of information using either that or those followed by one of the participle adjectives from the box.** C

earned found grown manufactured ~~recorded~~

1
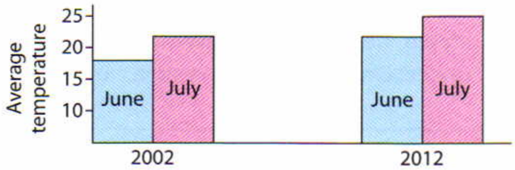

Average temperatures in June and July 2012 were higher than those recorded in June and July 2002. (*or* … in the corresponding months in 2002.).

2
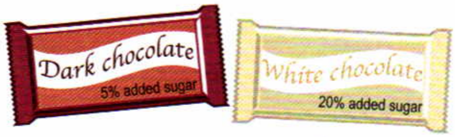

3
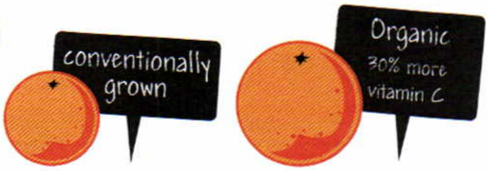

4
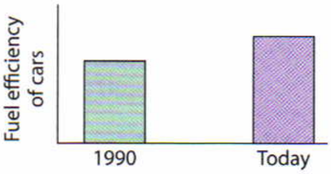

5
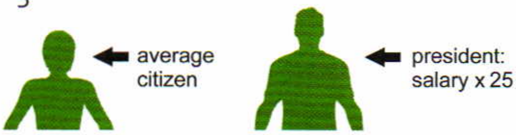

69.3 **Complete each second sentence using a compound adjective from D to replace the italicised information in each first sentence.** D

1 The company *is organised from New York*. It is a New York-based company.
2 The school *has all the things it needs*, with sufficient books and computers. The school is ……………, with sufficient books and computers.
3 I found that the whole experience *made me tense and worried*. I found the whole experience …………… .
4 The proposed changes will *have a major influence on a large number of people*. The proposed changes will be …………… .

69.4 **Match the words to form compound adjectives and use them to rewrite the italicised parts of these sentences.** D

clean eye ~~ill~~ wide

catching ~~equipped~~ ranging shaven

1 At the age of 16 children *do not have the ability or experience* to take on the role of parents. are ill-equipped .
2 The discussions *dealt with a great variety of topics*. ……………
3 When I last saw him he had a beard, but now he *has no beard*. ……………
4 The advertisements for the new car are *very noticeable*. ……………

→ Additional exercise 13 (page 248)

Unit
70

Adjective + **to-infinitive, -ing, that-clause, wh-clause**

A

When an adjective comes after a linking verb (e.g. **appear**, **be**, **become**, **seem**; see Unit 21) we can use a number of patterns after the adjective including a **to-infinitive**, **-ing**, **that-clause**, and **wh-clause**. (For **It** + **linking verb** + **adjective**, see **B**.)

	adjective +	*example adjectives used in this pattern*
i	**to-infinitive** ○ You're **free** *to leave* at any time you want.	**(un)able**, **careful**, **crazy**, **curious**, **difficult**, **easy**, **foolish**, **free**, **good**, **hard**, **impossible**, **inclined**, **mad**, **nice**, **prepared**, **ready**, **stupid**, **welcome**, **willing**
ii	**-ing** ○ He was **busy** *doing* his homework.	**busy**, **crazy**, **foolish**, **mad**, **stupid**; (after the verb **feel**) **awful**, **awkward**, **bad**, **good**, **guilty**, **terrible**
iii	**that-clause** ○ He became **worried** (*that*) she might fall down.	**afraid**, **alarmed**, **amazed**, **angry**, **annoyed**, **ashamed**, **astonished**, **aware**, **concerned**, **disappointed**, **glad**, **(un)happy**, **pleased**, **shocked**, **sorry**, **upset**, **worried**; **certain**, **confident**, **positive**, **sure**
iv	**wh-clause** ○ I'm not **certain** (of / about) *why* he wants to borrow the money	**afraid**, **not aware / unaware**, **not certain / uncertain**, **doubtful**, **not sure / unsure**, **worried**
v	**to-infinitive** *or* **that-clause** ○ She was **afraid** *to say* anything. ○ I was **afraid** *that* I would be late.	the adjectives in (iii) above, except **aware**, **confident** and **positive**
vi	**to-infinitive** *or* **-ing** ○ He'd be **stupid** *to leave* now. ○ He'd be **stupid** *giving up* the job.	**crazy**, **foolish**, **mad**, **stupid**
vii	**-ing** *or* **that-clause** ○ She felt **awful** *leaving* him with all the clearing up. ○ She felt **awful** *that* she was late.	(after the verb **feel**) **awful**, **awkward**, **bad**, **good**, **guilty**, **terrible**

B

It + linking verb + adjective

We can sometimes use **it + linking verb + adjective + to-infinitive** as an alternative to **subject + linking verb + adjective + to-infinitive** (see also Units 96 and 97):

○ The fireworks were **amazing** *to watch*. *or*
○ **It was amazing** *to watch* the fireworks.

Also: **annoying**, **awkward**, **easy**, **good**, **interesting**, **lovely**, **simple**, **terrific**, **wonderful**

In informal speech we can use an **-ing** form instead of a **to-infinitive**:

○ **It is easy** *understanding* her.
○ **It was amazing** *watching* the fireworks.

We can use a similar pattern with **adjective + wh-** or **that-clause** (see Unit 96A):

○ It is not **clear** *why* he did it.
○ It was **odd** *that* she left so suddenly.

After certain adjectives we often include **of + subject** between the adjective and a **to-infinitive**:

○ It was rude **(of them)** to criticise her. *or*
○ They were rude to criticise her.

Also: **brave**, **generous**, **kind**, **mean**, **thoughtful**, **unprofessional**, **unreasonable**

When we talk about how somebody reacts to a situation we can use **it + make** with an adjective and **to-infinitive**, **-ing** or **that-clause**:

○ **It made me angry** (*to discover*) *that* so much money was wasted. (*or* **It made me angry** *discovering* that ... *or* I was angry to discover that ...)

Also: **ashamed**, **furious**, **glad**, **happy**, **miserable**, **nervous**, **sad**, **tired**, **uncomfortable**

Exercises

70.1 Complete the sentences with a **to-infinitive** or an **-ing** form of the verbs in the box. Give alternatives where possible. A

cheat know leave open panic reduce
resign talk turn underestimate

1 I'm afraid I can't afford that much. Would you be prepared .... the price if I pay cash?
2 Kenzo was stupid .... in the exam. He was bound to get caught.
3 He felt good .... that he had helped solve the problem.
4 Don't feel that you need to stay to the very end. You're free .... at any time.
5 Anyone trying to climb the mountain would be foolish .... the challenge facing them.
6 People said I was crazy .... a shop in the village, but it's been a success so far.
7 She was too busy .... on the phone to notice that Roya had come into the room.
8 It's so difficult to get a job at the moment you'd be mad ....
9 Some people would be inclined .... if they smelt smoke in the house.
10 I felt awful .... people away from the concert, but there just wasn't any more room.

70.2 Correct any mistakes in the italicised parts of this email about a holiday in Thailand. A

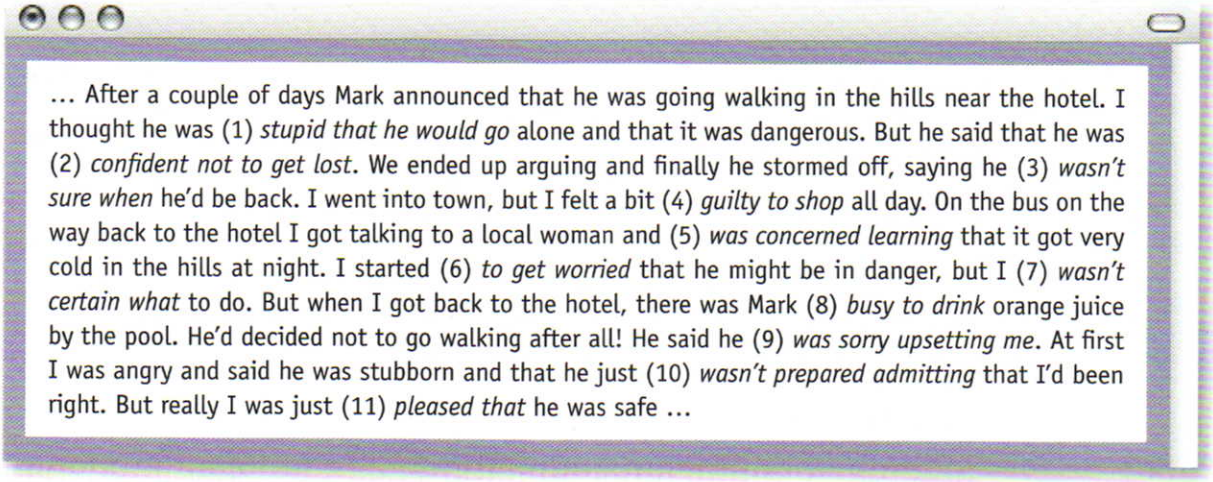

… After a couple of days Mark announced that he was going walking in the hills near the hotel. I thought he was (1) *stupid that he would go* alone and that it was dangerous. But he said that he was (2) *confident not to get lost*. We ended up arguing and finally he stormed off, saying he (3) *wasn't sure when* he'd be back. I went into town, but I felt a bit (4) *guilty to shop* all day. On the bus on the way back to the hotel I got talking to a local woman and (5) *was concerned learning* that it got very cold in the hills at night. I started (6) *to get worried* that he might be in danger, but I (7) *wasn't certain what* to do. But when I got back to the hotel, there was Mark (8) *busy to drink* orange juice by the pool. He'd decided not to go walking after all! He said he (9) *was sorry upsetting me*. At first I was angry and said he was stubborn and that he just (10) *wasn't prepared admitting* that I'd been right. But really I was just (11) *pleased that* he was safe …

70.3 Rewrite these sentences using **It + be + adjective**. If possible, use **of + a personal pronoun** after the adjective. B

1 She was brave to spend the night in the old house alone. It was brave of her to spend the night in the old house alone.
2 Such a magnificent performance was wonderful to hear.
3 You were mean to eat all the cake and not leave any for me.
4 They were unreasonable to complain about the exam results.
5 The top of the jar was awkward to get off.
6 The shelves were simple to put up.
7 He was unprofessional to criticise the headteacher in front of the staff.
8 You were kind to give birthday presents to the children.

70.4 Complete these sentences with **It made me** + any appropriate adjective. B

1 It made me angry to hear how she had been insulted.
2 .... listening to his lies.
3 .... that we wouldn't be working together again.
4 .... to learn how badly we treated immigrants in the 1950s.
5 .... hearing the dentist's drill as I sat in the waiting room.

Unit 71

Adjectives and adverbs

A

Reminder ➜ L5–L6

Some adverbs of manner (saying how something is done) are formed from an **adjective** + **-ly**: **sudden** → **suddenly**, **happy** → **happily**, etc. When an adjective already ends in **-ly** (e.g. **cowardly**, **elderly**, **friendly**, **kindly**, **lively**, **lonely**, **lovely**) we don't add **-ly** to it to make an adverb. Instead we can use a prepositional phrase with **fashion**, **manner**, or **way**:

☐ He smiled at me in a **friendly way**.
☐ She waved her hands around in **a lively fashion**.

Most participle adjectives ending in **-ed** (see Unit 69) don't have an adverb form and so we use a prepositional phrase instead:

☐ They rose to greet me in **a subdued manner**. (*not* … subduedly.)

or we use a preposition and a related noun if there is one:

☐ She looked at me **in amazement**. (*not* … amazedly.)

However, some do have an adverb form with **-ly**. Compare:

☐ The storm was **unexpected**. *and*
☐ The weather turned **unexpectedly** stormy.

Also: **agitatedly, allegedly, deservedly, determinedly, disappointedly, excitedly, hurriedly, pointedly, repeatedly, reportedly, reputedly, supposedly, worriedly**

B

Some adverbs have two forms, one ending in **-ly** and the other not. We can sometimes use either form without changing the meaning, although the form ending in **-ly** is grammatically correct and more formal:

☐ She ran **quick** / **quickly** towards the door.

and must be used if the adverb comes immediately before the verb:

☐ She **quickly** *ran* towards the door. (*not* She quick ran …)

Also: **cheap(ly), clean(ly), clear(ly), fine(ly), loud(ly), thin(ly), slow(ly)**

C

Some adverbs have different meanings with and without **-ly**. Compare:

☐ She gave her time **free**. (= for no money) *and* She gave her time **freely.** (= willingly)
☐ I arrived **late** for the concert. (= not on time) *and* I haven't seen Amy **lately**. (= recently)

Compare also:

☐ He wandered **deep** into the forest and got lost. (= a long way)	☐ He felt **deeply** hurt by her criticisms. (= very) ☐ They loved each other **deeply**. (= very much)
☐ You don't have to change trains. You can go **direct**. (= without stopping)	☐ I'll be with you **directly**. (= very soon) ☐ He saw Hassan **directly** ahead. (= straight)
☐ It sounded awful – one of the choir members was singing **flat**.	☐ This time I **flatly** refused to lend him any money. (= definitely; completely)
☐ He kicked the ball **high** over the goal.	☐ Everyone thinks **highly** of her teaching. (= they think her teaching is very good)
☐ 'Is Emil here yet?' 'He's **just** arrived.' ☐ She looks **just** like her mother.	☐ You can be **justly** proud of your musical achievements. (= rightly; justifiably)
☐ Which of these cheeses do you like **most**?	☐ Her novels are now **mostly** out of print. (= most of them) ☐ We **mostly** go on holiday to France. (= usually)
☐ They cut **short** their holiday when Lina fell ill. (= went home early)	☐ The speaker will be arriving **shortly** (= soon). Please take your seats.
☐ The door was **wide** open so I just went straight in. (= completely)	☐ You won't have any problems getting the book. It's **widely** available. (= in many places)

Exercises

71.1 **Rewrite the italicised words using a -ly form of the participles in the box. If a -ly form isn't possible, use a prepositional phrase or a preposition + related noun.** A

agitated	**anticipated**	**despaired**	**determined**	**disappointed**
organised	**relaxed**	**repeated**	**reputed**	**satisfied**

1 I warned him *again and again* of the dangers on the mountain, but he insisted on going on.
2 The class was out of control and he put his head in his hands *feeling that he could do nothing*.
3 As his mother took the roast chicken out of the oven, Rod licked his lips *because he was looking forward to eating it*.
4 It is *said to be, although no one knows for certain*, the smallest post office in the country.
5 'Still no news from Paul,' she said *in a sad way*.
6 He ran the company *in a calm way* and rarely let anything annoy him.
7 She shook her head *as if she had made a firm decision*.
8 When he had finished the painting, he looked at it *in a way that showed he was happy*.
9 Vicky runs the office *carefully and tidily*, so I don't think we should change things now.
10 Sofia paced about *in an anxious way* as she waited to go into the interview.

71.2 **Complete the sentences with suitable pairs of adverbs from C. Use the form with -ly in one sentence and the form without -ly in the other.** C

1 a What she hated .... was having to get up at 5:30 every morning.
b We don't go out much in the evening. We .... watch television.
2 a The firm paid compensation, but stopped .... of admitting they were to blame.
b The book is due to be published ....
3 a I'm not in my office at the moment, but if you leave your name and number I'll get back to you .... *[Message on a telephone answering machine]*
b I used to have to change in Amsterdam to get to Moscow, but now I can fly ....
4 a I got very little sleep on the flight, but I felt .... awake when I arrived in Tokyo.
b French is .... spoken in North Africa.
5 a She is one of the most .... regarded researchers in the university.
b We could just see the plane flying .... overhead.

71.3 **Correct any mistakes in these sentences. If there are no mistakes, write ✓.** A–C

1 The rise in car crime in the area is deeply worrying.

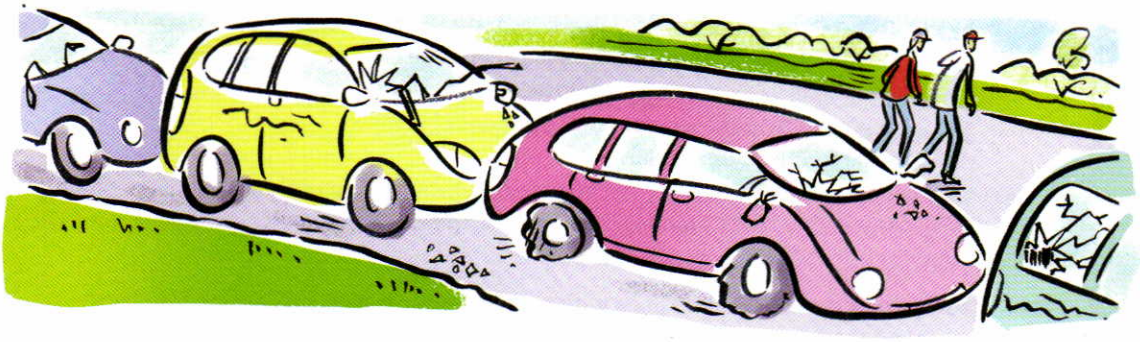

2 She waved friendlily to me.
3 Cut the onions up finely and fry them with garlic.
4 I asked the boys to move their bicycles off the football pitch but they flat refused.
5 I couldn't understand what he was saying. He didn't speak very clearly.
6 He was accused of behaving cowardlily in the battle.
7 Pierre Evene manufactured the glass for which the town became just renowned.
8 I called Elena and she slow turned to face me.
9 Spread some butter on the bread as thin as possible.
10 The prime minister was loud applauded by her audience.

Unit 72 Adjectives and adverbs: comparative and superlative forms

A

Comparatives: -er vs more / less … than

Reminder ➔ L7–L8

We usually add **-er** to one-syllable adjectives and adverbs to make their comparative form. However, we use **more** + **adjective** –

☆ with one-syllable past participle adjectives (see Unit 69) such as **bored**, **creased**, **pleased**, **worn**:

☐ After I'd ironed my shirt it looked **more creased** than before. (*not* … creaseder …)

☆ with **fun**, **real**, **right** and **wrong**:

☐ I expected the film to be rather dull, but I couldn't have been **more wrong**. (*not* … wronger.)

☆ when we are comparing two qualities:

☐ 'Wasn't he brave to swim across?' 'I think he was **more mad** than **brave**.'

☐ Although the paint was called 'Sky Blue', I thought it was **more green** than **blue**.

We can also use '… he was**n't so much** *brave* **as mad**' and '… it was *blue* **rather than** *green*'.

We can sometimes use **more** as an alternative to the **-er** form to emphasise the comparison:

☐ You might think it's dark here but it's **more dark** in the cellar. (*or* … **darker** …)

Also: **clear**, **cold**, **deep**, **fair**, **rough**, **soft**, **true**.

B

Some adjectives with two syllables are most commonly used with **more / less**, particularly:

☐ **participle adjectives** (e.g. **worried**, **boring**)

☐ **adjectives ending in -ful** and **-less** (e.g. **careful**, **careless**)

☐ **afraid**, **alert**, **alike**, **alone**, **ashamed**, **aware**

☐ some other adjectives, including **active**, **cautious**, **certain**, **complex**, **direct**, **eager**, **exact**, **formal**, **frequent**, **modern**, **special**, **recent**

Most two-syllable adjectives ending **-y**, **-ow**, **-er** and **-ure** can take either an **-er** or the **more** + **adjective** form, although the **-er** form is more frequently used.

Some adjectives (e.g. **complete**, **equal**, **favourite**, **ideal**, **perfect**, **unique**) have a comparative or superlative meaning so are not often used with **-er** / **more** / **less** or **–est** / **most** / **least**. However, we can use comparative or superlative forms for special emphasis:

☐ The weather today was good, but **less perfect** than yesterday.

C

Superlatives

We usually use **the**, a possessive form (with **-'s**), or a possessive pronoun before a superlative adjective or adverb. In informal contexts we sometimes leave out **the** before an **-est** or **most** + **adjective** superlative after a linking verb, particularly at the end of a sentence:

☐ 'Why did you go by bus?' 'It was (**the**) **cheapest**.'

☐ Which was (**the**) **most expensive**?

However, we can't leave out **the** when we go on to say what group of things is being compared:

☐ 'Why did you buy these oranges?' 'They were **the cheapest** *ones I could find*.' (*not* They were cheapest ones …)

When **most** + **adjective** / **adverb** is used without **the**, **most** means something like 'very':

☐ I checked the form **most carefully** (= very carefully) but didn't notice the mistake.

D

After a superlative we use **of** + **a plural noun phrase** to name the objects being compared:

☐ Adam's *the oldest* **of my three brothers**.

Note that we can put the **of-phrase** at the beginning to emphasise it:

☐ **Of my three brothers**, Adam's *the oldest*.

When we give the location or context within which the comparison is made we usually use **in** + **a singular noun phrase**:

☐ It was *the tallest tree* **in the forest**. (*not* … the tallest tree of the forest.)

Exercises

72.1 **Complete the sentences with a comparative adjective from the box, using an -er or more + adjective form. Use both if possible.** A

deep **hard** **long** **naughty** **pretty** **scared** **strong** **true**

1 It was almost as if the wolf was .... of us than we were of it.
2 The river was .... than I expected so I decided to turn back.
3 I think I'd describe her as .... than beautiful.
4 I bought this tennis racket because it's ....
5 Sam isn't a bad boy really. He's .... than dishonest.
6 The exam was .... than I thought it would be.
7 We need to take responsibility for elderly neighbours, and in a cold winter like this it is .... than ever.
8 We took the .... path up the hill as the other one was very steep.

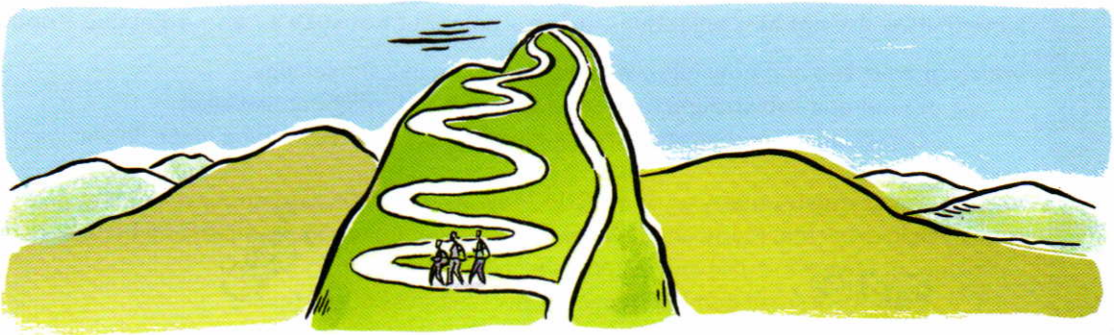

72.2 **If necessary, correct or improve the comparative adjectives.** B

1 I may not be much of a cook, but Nina is even ~~uselesser~~ in the kitchen than I am.
more useless
2 When I took the washing out of the machine it looked *dirtier* than when it went in.
3 A: The painting is from the 17th century.
B: Really? It looks *recenter* than that.
4 The film starts slowly, but gets *excitinger* after the first half hour.
5 Louis is already rich, but his aim in life seems to be to become even *more wealthy*.
6 All of us are unique, but some of us are *more unique* than others.
7 Most research in this area uses simple interviews, but we used a *complexer* methodology.
8 I didn't do well at school, and my fellow students all seemed *cleverer* than me.
9 For an extra $500 you could buy a much *powerfuler* motorbike.
10 Curiously, many people say they feel mentally *alerter* if they eat very little for a day.

72.3 **Put brackets around the if it can be omitted in these sentences.** C

1 It was the sweetest orange I'd eaten for ages.
2 Anna, Beth and Clara were all excellent musicians, but Clara was the most creative.
3 He's the fastest runner in his class.
4 We get lots of birds in our garden, but blackbirds are the most common.
5 A: Shall we go by train, bus or car?
B: Well, going by bus is actually the easiest.

72.4 **Complete the sentences with in or of.** D

1 The building is said to be the highest .... Europe.
2 The Democrats are the smallest .... the four main political parties.
3 Parmesan is perhaps the most famous .... all Italian cheeses.
4 For many people, it is the most important day .... the whole year.
5 She's without doubt the best swimmer .... my school.

Unit
73

Comparative phrases and clauses

A

We use **as + adjective / adverb + as** to say that something or someone is like something or someone else, or that one situation is like another:

☐ Was the film **as funny as** his last one?   ☐ I came round **as quickly as** I could.

Negative forms of sentences like this can use either **not as** or **not so**. In formal speech and writing it is more common to use **less + adjective + than**:

☐ The gap between the sides is **not as / so wide as** it was. (*or* ... is **less wide than** it was.)

B

If we put a singular countable noun between an adjective and the second **as**, we use **a / an** in front of the noun:

☐ Despite his disability, he tried to lead **as normal a life as** possible. (*not* ... as normal life as ...)

The negative form of sentences like this can use either **not as** or sometimes **not such**:

☐ It's **not as quiet a place** (*or* ... **not such a quiet place** ...) **as** it used to be.

Note that we use **not as + adjective + a / an + noun** but **not such a / an + adjective + noun**.

We can use **so**, **too** and **how** followed by an adjective in a similar way:

☐ It's not quite **so straightforward a problem as** it might at first seem.

☐ 'Conspiracy' is perhaps **too strong a word**.   ☐ **How big a piece** do you want?

C

We also use **as much / many as** or **as little / few as** to say that a quantity or amount is larger or smaller than expected. **Many** and **few** are preferred before numbers; **much** and **little** are preferred with amounts (e.g. $5, 20%) and distances (e.g. 3 metres):

☐ There are a small number of people involved, possibly **as few as** twenty.

☐ Prices have increased by **as much as** 300%.

D

We can use **not + adjective / adverb + enough + to-infinitive** to mean that there isn't as much as is necessary to do something:

☐ I'm not **tall enough** *to reach*.   ☐ He didn't speak **loudly enough** *to be heard*.

We can use **sufficiently** before adjectives to express a similar meaning to **enough**. **Sufficiently** is often preferred in more formal contexts:

☐ She didn't play **sufficiently well** to qualify. (*or* ... **well enough** to qualify.)

E

We can use **too + adjective / adverb + to-infinitive** to mean 'more than necessary, possible, etc.' to do something:

☐ They arrived **too late** *to get* seats.   ☐ It moved **too fast** *to see* it clearly.

☐ The suitcase was **too small (for him)** *to get* all his clothes in.

In rather formal English we can use **too + adjective + a / an + noun**:

☐ I hope you haven't had **too tiring a day**. (*not* ... a too tiring day.)

(In a less formal style we might say 'I hope your day hasn't been too tiring.')

F

We can use **so + adjective / adverb + that-clause** to say that something existed or happened to such a degree that a specified result occurred (see also Unit 81):

☐ It's **so simple** *that* even I can do it.   ☐ He came in **so quietly** *that* I didn't hear him.

Less often we use **so + adjective / adverb + as + to-infinitive** with a similar meaning. Compare:

☐ The difference was **so small** *that* it wasn't worth arguing about. *and*

☐ The difference was **so small as** *to not be* worth arguing about. (= Because the difference was so small, it wasn't worth arguing about)

We can use **go so / as far as + to-infinitive** to talk about actions that are surprising or extreme:

☐ One furious woman **went so / as far as** *to throw* tomatoes at the minister.

Exercises

73.1 **Complete these sentences with as … as or not as / such … as (or both if possible). Use the words in brackets and add any other necessary words.** B

1 It's not such a polluted city now as / not as polluted a city now as it was ten years ago. (*not / polluted / city now*)

2 The Downtown Hotel is ………… Strand Hotel. (*not / pleasant / place to stay*)

3 The President's address to the nation is ………… he is ever likely to make in his career. (*important / speech*)

4 It was ………… I first thought. (*not / big / problem*)

5 Theresa's dog is ………… I've ever seen. (*ferocious / animal*)

6 She's ………… she claims to be. (*not / fluent / Greek speaker*)

73.2 **Complete these sentences with as much as, as many as, as little as, or as few as.** C

1 When it was really hot I was having ………… four showers a day.

2 The elephant population may soon fall to ………… 1,000 from 5,000 ten years ago.

3 At the end of the 200-metre race there was ………… 50 metres between the first and second runners.

4 ………… 5,000 people phoned in to complain about last night's TV programme.

5 Lit continuously, the life of a light bulb varies from ………… two weeks to three months.

6 Some days there were ………… three or four students at his lectures.

7 We don't use much electricity. Sometimes our bill is ………… £40 a month.

8 The country spends ………… 25% of its income on defence.

73.3 **Join the sentences using so + adjective + as + to-infinitive.** F

1 The noise from the factory was loud.
2 Her handwriting was untidy.
3 The bookcase was heavy.
4 The CD was badly scratched.
5 The plot of the novel was complicated.
6 The difference between the results was small.

a It was nearly illegible.
b It was insignificant.
c It was unplayable.
d ~~It prevented me sleeping.~~
e It was almost impossible to move it.
f It was completely incomprehensible.

1 + d The noise from the factory was so loud as to prevent me sleeping.

73.4 **Correct any mistakes in the italicised parts of this interview with a football manager.** A–F

INTERVIEWER: (1) *How serious injury* is it? Is it (2) *so serious as* has been claimed in the newspapers? Some people are saying Franz Kahn will never play international football again.

MANAGER: Well, it's certainly (3) *enough bad to* keep him out of football for at least six months. He's obviously (4) *not so fit as* he used to be and even he would admit that he's (5) *not such good player as* he was in his twenties. But I wouldn't (6) *go so far to say* that he'll never play for the national team again. I know him (7) *sufficiently well enough* to say that he will consider his future carefully before making any major decisions.

INTERVIEWER: Well, we all wish him (8) *as speedy recovery as* possible …

Unit
74

Position of adverbs 1

A

There are three main positions for adverbs which modify a verb: *end*, *front* and *mid* position –

☆ In *end position*, the adverb comes after the verb – either immediately after it or later in the clause.	○ They *played* **quietly** all day. ○ He *tried to leave* **quietly**. ○ He *sat* in the corner **quietly**.
☆ In *front position* the adverb comes before the subject.	○ **Finally** *he* could stand the noise no longer. ○ **Sometimes** *I* feel like leaving.
☆ In *mid position* the adverb comes between the subject and verb, immediately after **be** as a main verb, or after the first auxiliary verb.	○ *He* **usually** *plays* better than this. ○ She *is* **usually** here by ten. ○ They *would* **usually** *come* by car.

Many adverbs can go in any of these positions, depending on context or style. For example:

○ He turned round **slowly**. (*end*) ○ **Slowly** he turned round. (*front*)
○ He **slowly** turned round. (*mid*)

B

End position

In end position, we usually put an adverb *after* an object rather than immediately after the verb:

○ We considered *the problem* **briefly**. (*not* We considered briefly the problem.)

However, if an object is very long other positions are possible:

○ We considered **briefly** *the long-term solution to the problem*. (*or* We **briefly** considered …)

C

We avoid putting an adverb between a main verb and a following **-ing** form or **to-infinitive**:

○ He began running **quickly**. *or* He **quickly** began running. (*not* He began quickly running.)
○ She tried to leave **quietly**. *or* She **quietly** tried to leave. (*not* She tried quietly to leave.)

The position of the adverb can change the meaning of the sentence (see Unit 75A). Compare:

○ I recall telling him **clearly** that he had won. (= I told him clearly; 'clearly' modifies 'telling him') *and*
○ I **clearly** recall telling him that he had won. (= I clearly recall it; 'clearly' modifies 'recall'.)

'I recall **clearly** telling him that he had won' is also possible, but is ambiguous; it can have either of the two meanings given above. In speech, the meaning intended is usually signalled by intonation.

D

When there is more than one adverbial in end position, the usual order in written English is **adverbial of manner** (= saying *how* something is done), **place**, and then **time**:

○ In the accident she was thrown **violently forwards**. (= manner + place)
○ We arrived **here on Saturday**. (= place + time)

For special emphasis we can move an adverbial to the end:

○ In the accident she was thrown **forwards**, **violently**.

If one adverbial is much longer than another then it is usually placed last:

○ They left **at three with a great deal of noise**. (= time + manner)

An adverb usually comes before a prepositional phrase when these have the same function (i.e. when they both describe manner, or place, or time):

○ She went **downstairs to the cellar**. (= place + place)

E

End position is usual for many adverbials of **place**, **definite frequency**, and **definite time**:

○ They live **upstairs**. (*not* They upstairs live.)
○ She goes **weekly**. (*not* She weekly goes.)
○ Have you heard the good news? Eva had a baby **in May**. (*not* Eva in May had a baby.)

However, adverbs of indefinite time usually go in mid position (see Unit 75).

Note that in journalism, other adverbs of time are often used in mid position, where we would normally place them in end (or front) position:

○ The government **yesterday** announced an increase in education spending.

Exercises

74.1 **Put the adverb in brackets in an appropriate position in each sentence. In some cases both positions are possible.** **C**

1 I .... expect Catalina to win the race .... (*easily*)
2 He .... regretted missing the concert .... (*greatly*)
3 I .... hated playing the piano .... , although my parents thought I loved it. (*secretly*)
4 He .... started to walk .... across the bridge over the gorge. (*calmly*)
5 She .... offered to do the work .... (*kindly*)
6 Bruno .... finished speaking .... and sat down. (*hurriedly*)
7 I .... don't remember putting it down .... (*simply*)
8 We .... look forward to hearing from you .... (*soon*)
9 They .... tried to ignore me .... (*deliberately*)
10 I don't .... pretend to understand the instructions .... (completely)

74.2 **Complete this email using the words and phrases from the box below in the correct order.** **B & D**

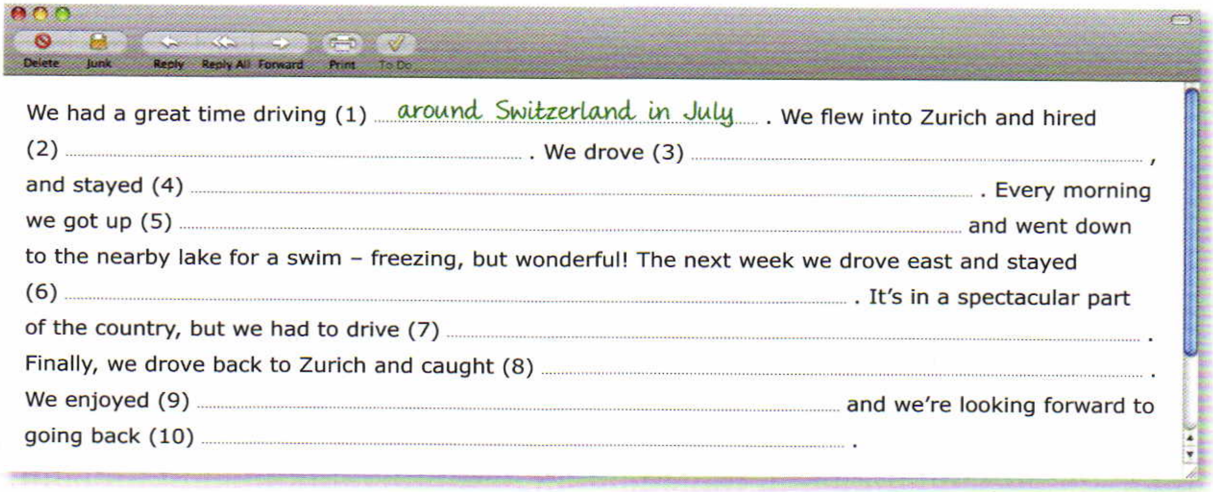

We had a great time driving (1) around Switzerland in July . We flew into Zurich and hired (2) .... We drove (3) .... , and stayed (4) .... Every morning we got up (5) .... and went down to the nearby lake for a swim – freezing, but wonderful! The next week we drove east and stayed (6) .... It's in a spectacular part of the country, but we had to drive (7) .... Finally, we drove back to Zurich and caught (8) .... We enjoyed (9) .... and we're looking forward to going back (10) ....

1 ~~in July / around Switzerland~~ **2 a car / at the airport**
3 towards the lakes / south
4 in a beautiful cottage belonging to some friends of Kim's mother / for a week
5 early / at about six o'clock
6 in the village where Kim had spent some time when she was a student / briefly
7 carefully / on the narrow winding roads **8 home / the train**
9 in Switzerland / enormously / ourselves **10 before too long / there**

74.3 **If necessary, rewrite these sentences putting the italicised word or phrase in a more appropriate position. If the sentence is already correct, write ✓.** **B–E**

1 I try to visit *every week* my parents. I try to visit my parents every week. / Every week I try to visit my parents.
2 Next, beat the eggs *vigorously* in a small bowl.
3 I thought I'd locked *securely* the luggage.
4 I stopped *regularly* playing tennis after I broke my wrist.
5 Lee was *easily* beaten in the final.
6 Matias never eats in the canteen at work. He always brings *from home* sandwiches.
7 A: Do the Patel family still live next door? B: No, they moved last year *away*.
8 The local residents welcomed the decision to introduce a new bus service from their village into the nearby town *warmly*.
9 We have to hand the homework in *on Tuesday*.

→ Additional exercise 13 (page 248)

Unit 75

Position of adverbs 2

A Front position

Most types of adverb commonly go in front position in a clause (see Unit 74A). In particular –

☆ *connecting adverbs*, which make immediately clear the logical relation to the previous sentence.	○ The value of the yen has fallen. **As a result**, Japan faces a crisis.
☆ *time* and *place adverbs*, which give more information about a previous reference to a time or place.	○ The last few days have been hot. **Tomorrow** the weather will be much cooler.
☆ *comment* and *viewpoint adverbs*, which highlight the speaker's attitude to what they are about to say (see Unit 78).	○ She has just heard that her sister is ill. **Presumably**, she will want to go home.

Note, however, that other positions are possible for these adverbs.

Some words can be used both as comment adverbs or adverbs of manner. As comment adverbs they usually go in front position (but can go in other positions) and relate to the whole of the clause; as adverbs of manner they usually go in end position and modify the verb. Compare:

○ **Naturally**, I'll do all I can to help. *and*
○ The radioactive gas *occurs* **naturally** in many areas.

Also: **clearly, curiously, frankly, honestly, oddly, plainly, seriously**

Note that for special emphasis or focus, adverbs that usually go in mid position (see **B**) and end position (see also Units 74 and 76) can sometimes be put in front position:

○ **In May**, Maxine had a baby. ○ **Regularly**, Helena works on several paintings at once.

B Mid position

The following types of adverb usually go in mid position (see Unit 74A) –

☆ *degree adverbs* (e.g. **almost**, **hardly**, **nearly**, **quite**, **rather**, **scarcely**):

○ The street lighting was so bad that *we* **almost** *missed* the turning.

although some (e.g. **completely**, **enormously**, **entirely**, **greatly**, **slightly**) can go in end position:

○ I *admire* your work **greatly**. (*or* I **greatly** *admire* your work.)

Note that some degree adverbs are not usually used in mid position with some verbs. For example, **enormously** is not usually used in mid position with **develop**, **differ**, **go up** or **vary**; **greatly** is not normally used in mid position with **care** or **suffer**.

☆ *adverbs which indicate the order of events*, such as **first**, **last** and **next**. These can also go in end position, but if there is a phrase giving the time of an event they usually go before this:

○ I **first** *met* her in 1997. (*or* I met her **first** in 1997.)

We don't usually put these in front position, except to list actions (see also Unit 76B):

○ **Next**, add three teaspoons of sugar.

☆ *adverbs of frequency* which say in an indefinite way how often something happens, including **hardly ever**, **often**, **rarely**, **regularly**, **seldom** (see also Unit 76B); and also the frequency adverbs **always** and **never**:

○ We **hardly ever** *see* Kaspar nowadays, he's so busy at the office.

Note, however, that adverbial phrases of indefinite frequency (e.g. **as a rule**, **on many occasions**, **from time to time**, **every so often**) usually go in front or end position:

○ **As a rule**, I go every six months. (*or* … every six months, **as a rule**; *not* I as a rule go …)

C

We rarely put long adverbials (including clauses; see Units 58 and 59), and prepositional and noun phrases in mid position. Usually they go in end position or front position for emphasis:

○ She phoned home, **anxious for news**. (*or* **Anxious for news**, she phoned home.)
○ He picked up the vase **with great care**. (*or* **With great care** he picked up the vase.)
○ I'd seen Tarik **the day before**. (*or* **The day before**, I'd seen Tarik.)

Exercises

75.1 **Complete each pair of sentences using one adverb from the box. Put the adverb in front position (as a comment adverb) in one sentence, and in end position (as an adverb of manner) in the other.** A

clearly **~~curiously~~** **frankly** **honestly** **plainly** **seriously**

1 a Curiously......, the house has two chimneys ...., although there's only one fireplace.
b ...., Esther looked at him ....curiously...., trying to work out whether he was being serious or not.
2 a ...., I was brought up to earn money ...., not to steal it from others.
b ...., I'm perfectly capable of putting up the shelf myself ....
3 a ...., she admitted .... that she felt she wasn't doing a good job.
b ...., I went to sleep during his lecture ...., it was so boring.
4 a A: Thanks for looking after the children for me.
B: That's okay.
A: ...., I don't know what I'd have done if you hadn't been around to help.
b ...., I tried to speak .... to him about his bad behaviour, but he kept making me laugh.
5 a The chief executive of Eclom has phoned me every day this week to ask whether I've made my mind up. ...., he wants me to take the job ....
b ...., I'd had very little sleep and was having difficulty thinking ....
6 a Lucas fidgeted in his seat and kept looking nervously at the door. ...., he was feeling ill at ease ....
b .... she always dressed .... at work in a white blouse and grey skirt.

75.2 **Cross out any adverbs or adverbials that are incorrect / unlikely in these sentences.** B & Unit 74E

1 Asthma rates in cities do not *enormously / significantly* differ from those in rural areas.
2 Now that Lorna has moved to Kuala Lumpur, I *from time to time / rarely* see her.
3 I could see them *easily / scarcely* in the bright sunshine.
4 It was snowing and I was *almost / by an hour* late for the interview.
5 Carmen had *often / on many occasions* spoken at meetings before, so it was no surprise when she stood up.
6 I play chess with Lorenzo *hardly ever / every week*.
7 Although he had to lift heavy boxes in the factory, he *greatly / rarely* suffered from backache.
8 I forgot about the meeting *nearly / entirely* and my boss was really angry with me.

75.3 **Which of the positions [1], [2] or [3] can the adverb or adverbial in brackets go in?** A–C

1 [1] He [2] moved to New Zealand [3]. (*the following year*)
2 [1] The children [2] walked along the road [3]. (*in single file*)
3 [1] We [2] see Alex [3] any more. (*seldom*)
4 [1] He [2] complained to his physics teacher [3] . (*unhappy with the result*)
5 [1] I [2] agree with you [3]. (*entirely*)
6 [1] I [2] meet [3] Emma at school. (*often*)

→ Additional exercise 13 (page 248)

Unit 76

Adverbs of place, direction, indefinite frequency, and time

A

Adverbs of **place** and **direction** (or adverbials, particularly prepositional phrases) usually go in end position, but we can put them in front position to emphasise the location. The effect may also be to highlight what comes at the end (e.g. 'a body' in the example below). This order is found mainly in formal descriptive writing and reports. Compare:

☐ The money was eventually found **under the floorboards**. (= end) *and*
☐ The police searched the house. **Under the floorboards** they found a body. (= front)

If we put an adverb of place in front position we put the subject *after* the verb **be** (see also Unit 99A):

☐ **Next to the bookshelf** *was* a fireplace. (*or less formally* **Next to the bookshelf** there *was* a fireplace; *not* Next to the bookshelf a fireplace was.)

We can also put the subject after the verb with intransitive verbs (except with a pronoun subject) used to indicate being in a position or movement to a position:

☐ Beyond the houses **lay** *open fields*. *but*
☐ Beyond the houses *they* **lay**. (*not* … lay they)

Note that '... open fields lay' might be used in a literary style.

Also: **hang, live, sit, stand; come, fly, go, march, roll, run, swim, walk**

However, we don't usually put the subject after the verb when we talk about actions: if one of these intransitive verbs is followed by an adverb of manner; with other intransitive verbs; or with transitive verbs:

☐ Through the waves the boy **swam** *powerfully*. (*rather than* … swam the boy powerfully.)
☐ Outside the church the choir **sang**. (*rather than* … sang the choir.)
☐ In the garden Nik **built** *a play house* for the children. (*not* In the garden built Nik …)

B

When we put certain adverbs of time in front position the subject must come *after* an auxiliary verb or a main verb **be** (see also Unit 100):

☐ **At no time** would *he* admit that his team played badly. (*not* At no time he would admit …)
☐ **Not once** was *she* at home when I phoned. (*not* Not once she was …)

If the main verb is not **be** and there is no auxiliary, we use **do**, although inversion is not necessary in this case:

☐ **Only later did** *she* realise how much damage had been caused. (*or* Only later she realised …)

Adverbs like this include negative time adverbials such as **at no time**, **hardly ever**, **not once**, **only later**, **rarely**, and **seldom**. Note also that we can put **first**, **next**, **now** and **then** in front position with the verb **come** to introduce a new event, when the subject follows the verb. But if a comma (or an intonation break in speech) is used after **first** (etc.) the verb follows the subject. Compare:

☐ At first there was silence. **Then** *came* a voice that I knew. (*not* Then a voice came …) *and*
☐ At first there was silence. **Then**, a voice *came* that I knew.

C

Adverbs of **time** which indicate a definite point or period in time or a definite frequency usually go in end position, or front position for emphasis, but not in mid position. Note that when these adverbs are in front position there is no inversion of subject and verb:

☐ I went to Paris **yesterday**. (*or* **Yesterday** I went to Paris.)
☐ We meet for lunch **once a week**. (*or* **Once a week** we meet for lunch.)

The adverbs **daily**, **hourly**, **monthly**, **weekly**, **annually**, **quarterly** (= four times a year), etc. only go in end position:

☐ I pay my subscription **annually**. (*not* Annually I pay …; *not* I annually pay …)

Exercises

76.1 **Rewrite the sentences putting the italicised adverbs of place or direction at the front of the clause. If possible, invert the order of subject and verb.** A

1 A dark wood was *at the bottom of the garden.*
At the bottom of the garden was a dark wood.
2 The car stopped suddenly and Daniel jumped *out*.
3 Two small children stood *outside the door*.
4 The boys were playing cricket *in the park*, despite the muddy conditions.
5 A jade necklace hung *around her neck*.
6 The man released the monkey and it climbed *up the tree*.
7 The door burst open and a delegation from the striking workers marched *in*.
8 While Marko was looking around for his net the fish swam *away*.
9 Most of the furniture was modern, but a very old grandfather clock was *in the corner*.
10 Lea found it difficult to concentrate *in the office*, but she worked more efficiently *at home*.

76.2 **If possible, rewrite the italicised parts of these sentences putting the time adverbial in front position. Where you can, invert subject and verb, and make any other necessary changes.** B & C

1 I trusted Dan completely, and *I realised only later that he had tricked me.*
I trusted Dan completely, and only later did I realise that he had tricked me.
2 After working so hard all summer, *I had a holiday last week*.
3 Professor Coulson was to give the initial paper at the conference, but *a welcoming address came first by the head of the organising team*.
4 The area was cleared before the explosion, and *members of the public were in danger at no time*.
5 I've got high blood pressure and *I have to take tablets daily* for it.
6 When it became clear that he was in danger of losing the election, *a politician can seldom have changed his views so quickly as Beckett*.
7 After a few days of relative calm, *a blizzard came next, preventing us from leaving the hut*.
8 It's hard to imagine that *we'll be in Japan by next Friday*.
9 You won't have long to wait as *trains for Rome leave hourly*.
10 My grandfather was a gentle man, and *I hardly ever heard him raise his voice in anger*.

76.3 **If necessary, correct the word order in these sentences.** A–C

1 I walk to work for the exercise, and I twice a week play squash.
2 If you take the job, monthly your salary will be paid into your bank account.
3 Down the hill the horse ran quickly.
4 Through the window Megan watched sadly.
5 Around the town drove she for hours looking for the gallery, until she spotted in a side street the place.
6 I tripped over the cat, dropped the tray, and across the room flew it.

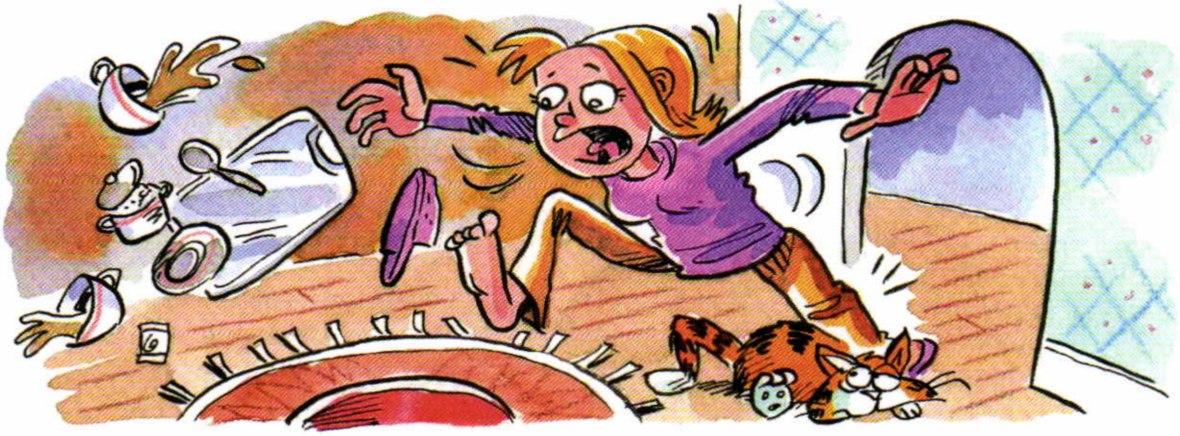

Unit
77

Degree adverbs and focus adverbs

A

Degree adverbs can be used before adjectives, verbs, or other adverbs to give information about the extent or level of something:

○ They're **extremely** *happy*. ○ I **really** *hate* coffee. ○ He **almost** *always* arrived late.

Some degree adverbs, such as **almost**, **largely**, **really** and **virtually**, are usually used before the main verb, and others, such as **altogether**, **enormously**, **somewhat**, and **tremendously**, are usually used after the main verb. Degree adverbs are rarely used in front position (see Unit 75B).

Focus adverbs draw attention to the most important part of what we are talking about. Some (e.g. **especially**, **even**, **mainly**, **mostly**, **particularly**, **specifically**) make what we say more specific:

○ There is likely to be snow today, **particularly** in the north.

and others (e.g. **alone**, **just**, **only**, **simply**, **solely**) limit what we say to one thing or person:

○ Many people offered to help me invest the money, but I **only** trusted Rick.

B

Much and very much

In affirmative sentences in formal contexts, **much** can be used as a degree adverb before the verbs **admire**, **appreciate**, **enjoy**, **prefer** and **regret** to emphasise how we feel about things:

○ I **much** *enjoyed* having you stay with us. ○ Their music *is* **much** *admired*.

Much is used in this way particularly after **I** and **we**. Note that we don't usually use this pattern in questions (e.g. *not* Did you much enjoy …?).

We can use **very much** in a similar way before the verbs above and also before **agree**, **doubt**, **fear**, **hope**, **like** and **want**. Note, however, that we don't use **much** before this last group of verbs. Compare:

○ I **much** *prefer* seeing films at the cinema than on DVD. (*or* I **very much** prefer …) *and*
○ We **very much** *agree* with the decision. (*or* We agree very much …; *but not* … much agree …)

We can also use **much** or **very much** before a past participle which is part of a passive:

○ The new by-pass *was* (**very**) **much** *needed*.

We don't use **much** but can use **very much** before past participle adjectives (see Unit 69A):

○ I was **very much** *surprised* by her news. (*or* I was *surprised* …; *but not* I was much surprised …)

and we don't use either **much** or **very much** before present participle adjectives:

○ The hotel was (very) *welcoming*. (*but not* The hotel was (very) much welcoming.)

In negative sentences in informal contexts we can use (**very**) **much** before verbs such as **appreciate**, **enjoy**, **like**, and **look forward to** to emphasise a negative feeling about something:

○ I didn't (**very**) **much** *enjoy* the film.

C

Very and too

Before an adjective or another adverb we use **very** when we mean 'to a high degree', and **too** when we mean 'more than enough' or 'more than is wanted or needed'. Compare:

○ The weather was **very** hot in Majorca – perfect for swimming. (*not* … too hot …) *and*
○ It's **too** hot to stay in this room – let's find somewhere cooler. (*not* … very hot …)

In negative sentences in informal spoken English we can use **not too** to mean 'not very':

○ I'm **not too** bothered about who wins. (*or* I'm **not very** bothered …)

D

Even and only

Even and **only** usually go in mid position (see Unit 75), but if they refer to the subject they usually come before it. Compare:

○ My mother has **only** brought some food. (= She hasn't brought anything else) *and*
○ **Only** my mother has brought some food. (= My mother and nobody else)
○ Aya can **even** speak French. (= in addition to everything else she can do) *and*
○ **Even** Aya can speak French. (= you might not expect her to) (*rather than* Aya even …)

Exercises

77.1 Cross out any incorrect answers. B

1 We *very / much / very much* hope that the striking workers will now resume negotiations.
2 Thanks for organising the quiz night. Your help was *very / much / very much* appreciated.
3 I felt *very / much / very much* intimidated by some of the questions in the interview.
4 I had always *very / much / very much* admired her work, and it was great to meet her.
5 As a child, I *very / much / very much* wanted to be an artist.
6 I would *very / much / very much* prefer to be remembered as kind rather than wealthy.
7 It was *very / much / very much* thrilling to get Marie's news.
8 When I was travelling in India I became *very / much / very much* interested in regional foods.
9 Kristof says that he wants to go into politics, but I *very / much / very much* doubt that he's serious.
10 I *very / much / very much* regret not being able to hear Dr Greco when she gave her lecture.

77.2 Write **very**, **too**, or **very / too** if either is possible. C

1 Leo was in a wheelchair as he was still .... weak to walk far.
2 Ellie has agreed to start work earlier, but she's not .... enthusiastic about it.
3 The instructions are .... easy. You'll have no trouble understanding them.
4 It was .... alarming to learn that one of the plane's engines had stopped.
5 We'll be at the cinema well before the film starts. It won't take .... long to get there.
6 It was snowing .... heavily for us to climb further up the mountain.
7 He revised .... hard and did well in his exams.
8 The old bridge in town was .... narrow for the coach to drive across, so we had to go an extra 50 miles to the new one.

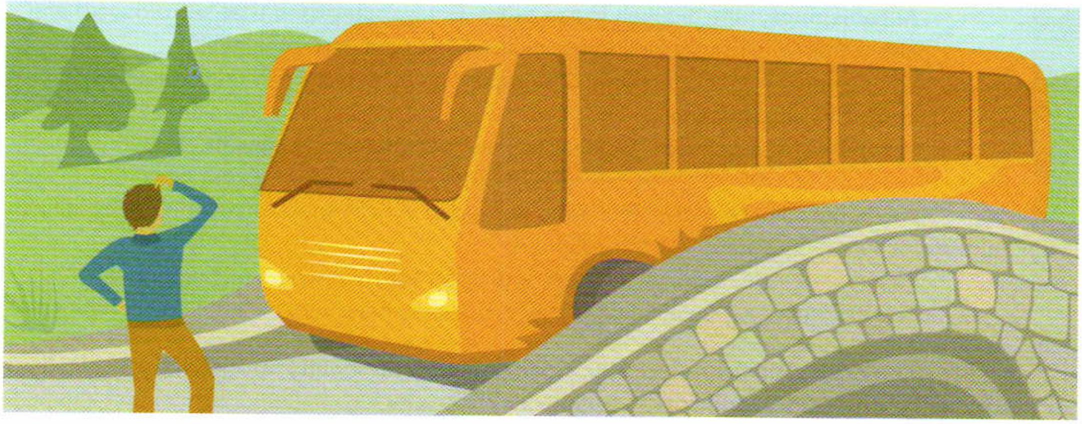

77.3 Put **even** or **only** in the most appropriate place in each sentence. D

1 Ben offered to let me stay with him while I was in Glasgow, and .... he .... offered to pick me up from the station.
2 .... I will .... be in my office on Monday next week as I'm going to Poland for a business meeting on Tuesday.
3 Every penny the charity raises helps the homeless, and .... the smallest donation .... can make a vital difference.
4 Jan seems to have invited everyone to the party. .... he has .... asked Ann, and they haven't spoken to each other for years.
5 .... Louis .... knew where the keys were kept, and nobody else.
6 I don't get home from work until late, so .... I .... cook at the weekend.

Unit
78

Comment adverbs and viewpoint adverbs

A

We use some adverbs to make a *comment* on what we are saying.

some comment adverbs:	*examples*
☆ indicate how likely we think something is	**apparently**, **certainly**, **clearly**, **definitely**, **obviously**, **presumably**, **probably**, **undoubtedly**
☆ indicate our attitude to or opinion of what is said	**astonishingly**, **frankly**, **generally**, **honestly**, **interestingly**, **luckily**, **naturally**, **sadly**, **seriously**, **surprisingly**, **unbelievably**
☆ show our judgement of someone's actions	**bravely**, **carelessly**, **foolishly**, **generously**, **kindly**, **rightly**, **stupidly**, **wisely**, **wrongly**

Comment adverbs often apply to the whole sentence and are most frequently used in front position (see Unit 75A), although they can also be used at the end of the sentence and in other positions. At the beginning and end of sentences we usually separate them from the rest of the sentence by a comma in writing or by intonation in speech:

☐ **Presumably**, he didn't hear me when I called.
☐ The book was based on his experience in China, **apparently**.
☐ If you practise continuously, you will **undoubtedly** get better.

Comment adverbs which show judgement usually follow the subject, although they can be put in front position for emphasis:

☐ He **kindly** offered to give me a lift. (*or* **Kindly**, he offered ... *to emphasise* 'Kindly')

If comment adverbs apply to only part of the sentence they can be used in other positions. Compare:

☐ **Astonishingly**, she did well in the exam. (= I was surprised that she did well) *and*
☐ She did **astonishingly** well in the exam. (= she did extremely well)
☐ You've had a major operation. **Obviously**, it will be very painful for a while. (= I expect you to know this already) *and*
☐ When he stood up it was **obviously** very painful. (= the pain was clear to see)

B

Some adverbs are used to make clear what *viewpoint* we are speaking from; that is, identifying what features of something are being talked about:

☐ **Financially**, the accident has been a disaster for the owners of the tunnel.
☐ The brothers may be alike **physically**, but they have very different personalities.

Also: **biologically**, **environmentally**, **financially**, **ideologically**, **industrially**, **logically**, **medically**, **morally**, **outwardly**, **politically**, **technically**, **visually**

A number of phrases are used in a similar way:

☐ **Politically / In political terms**, this summer is a crucial time for the government.

Also: politically **speaking**, **in terms of** politics, **from a** political **point of view**, **as far as** politics **is / are concerned**

Some adverbs or phrases are used to say *whose* viewpoint we are expressing:

☐ The head of National Bank is to receive, **according to reports**, a £1 million bonus.
☐ **In my view**, the foreign minister should resign immediately.

Also: **to my / his / her** (etc.) **knowledge**, **from my / his / her** (etc.) **perspective**, **personally**, **in my / his / her** (etc.) **opinion**

Exercises

78.1 **Rewrite the italicised words using an adverb from the box. Choose the most likely position for the adverb.** **A**

~~astonishingly~~ **bravely** **carelessly** **generously**
interestingly **obviously** **presumably** **rightly**

1 *It was very surprising indeed that* no paintings were destroyed by the fire in the gallery.
Astonishingly, no paintings were destroyed by the fire in the gallery.
2 As you drive off the ferry, there are lots of different flags flying by the side of the road. *It seems likely that* the idea is to welcome visitors from other countries.
3 *Acting more kindly than they needed to*, the builders agreed to plant new trees to replace the ones they had dug up.
4 Most people believe *in a correct way* that the prisoners should be released.
5 *It was easy to see that* she knew more about the robbery than she told the police.
6 He broke the window when he was painting *because he wasn't paying attention to what he was doing*.
7 She picked up the spider and put it outside, *showing no fear*.
8 *I found it strange that* the road didn't appear on the SATNAV.

78.2 **Complete the sentences with an appropriate viewpoint adverb from (i) and an ending from (ii).** **B**

(i)

environmentally **financially**
industrially **~~medically~~**
outwardly **politically**
technically **visually**

(ii)

... we'd be much better off if we moved there.
... the performance was stunning.
... it is relatively undeveloped.
... she looked remarkably calm.
... she could be sent to prison.
~~... the doctors can't find anything wrong.~~
... it is no longer the problem it once was.
... he claims to be a socialist.

1 Thomas says that he is still getting severe headaches, although ...
medically the doctors can't find anything wrong.
2 As she stepped onto the stage she felt terrified, but ...
3 Now that lead is no longer added to most petrol, ...
4 The country earns most of its income from agriculture and ...
5 The band didn't play terribly well, and the singing was awful, but ...
6 The cost of living is much lower in the north, so ...
7 Hansen is one of the richest men in the country, although ...
8 Julie is likely to be fined for failing to pay her gas bill, although ...

78.3 **Complete the sentences using the phrases from B either with the words from the box (or adjectives or adverbs formed from them) or your own words.** **B**

architecture **democracy** **geology** **grammar** **~~history~~**

1 Historically speaking, in what ways has disease affected the development of Western civilisation?
2 .... limestone is a relatively new rock.
3 The building is similar to the opera house in Milan ....
4 .... the essay was well written, but its style was inappropriate.
5 The election was clearly rigged and the result is a severe blow to the country ....

Unit 79

Adverbial clauses of time

A As, when and while

Reminder ➜ M1 & M8

We can often use **as**, **when** or **while** to mean 'during the time that', to talk about something that happens when something else takes place:

☐ **As / When / While** Miguel was eating, the doorbell rang.

We use **when** (*not* **as** or **while**) to introduce a clause which talks about –

☆ an event that takes place at the same time as some longer event (in the main clause):

☐ They were playing in the garden **when** they heard a scream.

☆ the circumstances in which the event in the main clause happens:

☐ **When** they are fully grown these snakes can be over two metres long.

We also use **when** to mean 'every time', and we prefer **when** to talk about past periods of our lives:

☐ I still feel tired **when** I wake up in the morning. (= 'every time')
☐ His mother called him Robbie **when** he was a baby. (= a past period)

We prefer **when** if one event happens immediately after another, particularly if one causes the other:

☐ You'll see my house on the right **when** you cross the bridge.
☐ **When** the lights went out, I lit some candles.

In the first sentence, 'as' or 'while' would suggest 'during the time that' and the continuous would be more likely ('… as / while you are crossing …'). In the second sentence 'as' or 'while' would be very unlikely because lights usually go out instantaneously.

We prefer **as** to say that when one thing changes, another thing changes at the same time:

☐ **As** the cheese matures, its flavour improves. (*rather than* When the cheese …)

We can also use 'While …', particularly with a continuous tense: 'While the cheese is maturing …'.

We prefer **while** or **as** (rather than **when**) to talk about two longer actions that go on at the same time, although **while** is more common than **as** in informal speech:

☐ I went shopping **while** Liam cleaned the house. (*or* … **as** Liam cleaned …)

We use **while** or **when** (rather than **as**) to avoid ambiguity where 'as' could mean 'because':

☐ **While** you were playing golf, I went to the cinema. (As you were playing … = Because …)

B Before, after and until

We use **before** or **after** to talk about an event happening earlier or later than another event:

☐ I put on my coat **before** I went out.
☐ The message arrived **after** I'd left.

We can often use either **until** or **before** when a situation continues to happen up to a time indicated in the adverbial clause:

☐ I had to wait six weeks **until** / **before** the parcel arrived.

However, we use **until** to talk about an action that continues to a particular time and then stops:

☐ They sat on the beach **until** the sun sank below the horizon, and then they went home.

and when the adverbial clause describes the *result* of an action in the main clause:

☐ He cleaned his shoes **until** they shone. ('shining' is the result of 'cleaning'.)

C Hardly, no sooner, scarcely

When we say that one event happened immediately after another we can use sentences with **hardly**, **no sooner**, and **scarcely** (see also Unit 100). After **hardly** and **scarcely** the second clause begins with **when** or **before**; after **no sooner** it begins with **than** or **when**:

☐ The concert had **hardly** begun *before* all the lights went out.
☐ I had **no sooner** lit the barbecue *than* / *when* it started to rain.

We often use a past perfect in the clause with **hardly** (etc.), **no sooner** or **scarcely** and a past simple in the other.

Exercises

79.1 **Complete these sentences with as, when or while. If possible, give alternative answers and notice any differences in meaning.** A

1 She fell over .... she kicked the ball.
2 .... we were younger our parents had to pay for our music lessons.
3 .... I speak Spanish, I talk slowly to help people understand me.
4 .... I packed all the books away, Lana made a note of their titles on her laptop.
5 She stayed at home watching television .... her brother was at school.
6 Where did you live .... you got married?
7 .... the results started to come in, it became clear that President Como had lost the election.
8 The humidity started to increase .... the day wore on.
9 The snow was getting deeper and deeper .... we waited for the train to arrive.
10 .... the paint dries it changes colour from a light to a deep red.

79.2 **If necessary, correct or improve these sentences.** A

1 As I'm older I'd love to be a dancer.
2 When the boy watched in fascination, the ants picked up the dead beetle and carried it off to their nest.
3 The disk drive makes a buzzing sound while I switch my PlayStation on.
4 As the car went by, someone waved to me from the back seat.
5 While Kasem had finished, he tidied up the room and left.
6 I was in the shower as the phone rang.

79.3 **Complete this talk about the life and work of a professor with before or until or both if possible.** B

1 He continued to work at London University .... he retired in 2007.
2 .... he left his native country, he learned English by listening to the radio.
3 It wasn't long .... he was appointed Professor of Chemistry.
4 He married Martha .... he moved to England in 1960.
5 .... he came to England he worked in his father's grocery shop.
6 He applied for research positions .... he was appointed to a post at London University.
7 He was almost unknown outside his field .... he was awarded the Nobel Prize.
8 He would work in his lab for days at a time .... he had completed an experiment.

79.4 **Complete the sentences in any appropriate way.** C

1 The paint on the sitting room wall had scarcely dried …
before my daughter put her dirty hands all over it.

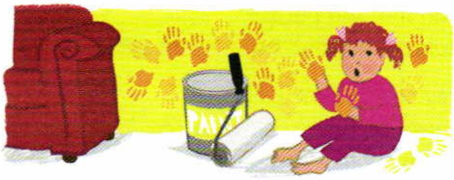

2 Martin had no sooner recovered from a broken ankle …
....

3 He had hardly put down the phone …
....

4 We had no sooner eaten …
....

5 Lisa had hardly finished speaking …
....

6 I had scarcely driven to the end of the street …
....

→ Additional exercise 14 (page 249)

Unit
80

Giving reasons: **as**, **because**, etc.; **for** and **with**

A

We can begin a clause with **as**, **because**, **seeing that**, **seeing as**, or **since** to give a *reason* for a particular situation:

☐ **As** *it was getting late*, I decided I should go home.
☐ We must be near the beach, **because** *I can hear the waves*.
☐ **Since** *he was going to be away on his birthday*, we celebrated before he left.
☐ We could go and visit Natalia, **seeing that** *we have to drive past her house anyway*.

Note that –

☆ it is common and acceptable for **because** to begin a sentence, as in:
☐ **Because** *everything looked different*, I had no idea where to go.

☆ to give reasons in spoken English, we most often use **because**. **So** is also commonly used to express a similar meaning (see also Unit 81). Compare:
☐ **Because** *my mother's ill*, I won't be able to come. ('because' introduces the reason) *and*
☐ *My mother's ill*, **so** I won't be able to come. ('so' introduces the result.)

☆ when it means 'because', **since** is rather formal. It is uncommon in conversation, but is frequently used in this way in academic writing:
☐ I had to go outside **because** I was feeling awful. ('since' is unlikely in an informal context)
☐ The results of this analysis can be easily compared to future observations **since** satellite coverage will remain continuous. (more likely than 'because' in this formal context.)

☆ **seeing that** is used in informal English. Some people also use **seeing as** in informal speech:
☐ Joel just had to apologise, **seeing that / as** he knew he'd made a mistake.

B

In formal or literary written English we can also introduce a reason in a clause beginning **for**, **in that**, or, less commonly, **inasmuch as**. **For** is a formal alternative to 'because'; **in that** and **inasmuch as** introduce clauses which clarify what has been said by adding detail:

☐ We must begin planning now, **for** *the future may bring unexpected changes*. (*not* For the future ..., we must ...)
☐ The film is unusual **in that** *it features only four actors*. (*or* **In that** ..., the film is ...)
☐ Clara and I have quite an easy life, **inasmuch as** *neither of us has to work too hard but we earn quite a lot of money*. (*or* **Inasmuch as** ..., Clara and I ...)

C

The prepositions **because of**, **due to**, and **owing to** can also be used before a noun or noun phrase to give a reason for something:

☐ We were delayed **because of** an accident.
☐ She was unable to run **owing to / due to** a leg injury. (= because of a leg injury.)
☐ We have less money to spend **owing to / due to** budget cuts. (= because of budget cuts.)

Note that we don't use **because** alone before a noun or noun phrase:
☐ We were delayed **because** there was an accident. (*not* ... because an accident.)

In current English we usually avoid **owing to** directly after a form of **be**:
☐ The company's success *is* **due to** the new director. (*not* ... is owing to ...)

However, **owing to** is used after **be + a degree adverb** such as **entirely**, **largely**, **mainly**, **partly**:
☐ The low election turnout *was partly* **due to / owing to** the bad weather.

We can often use either **it was due to ... that** or **it was owing to ... that**:
☐ *It was* **owing to** his encouragement *that* she applied for the job. (*or It was* **due to** ... *that*)

D

We can use **for** and **with** followed by a noun phrase to give a reason (compare **B** above):

☐ She was looking all the better **for** her stay in hospital. (= 'as a result of')
☐ **With** so many people ill, the meeting was cancelled. (= 'as a result of there being')

Exercises

80.1 **Complete the sentences by putting an item from (i) and one from (ii), in the correct order.** A

(i)

1 ~~passengers were given a full refund~~
2 Andrea agreed to book tickets for us all
3 I'll buy you lunch
4 I've given up dairy products
5 we were recommended to buy the textbook second-hand
6 the guest lecturer was late
7 we get on so well
8 you should never walk under a ladder

(ii)

a it's your birthday
b it was her idea to go to the theatre
c Dr Gomez spoke about his research instead
d a new copy would be very expensive
e I suggested we all go on holiday together
f ~~the train was delayed for more than an hour~~
g it's supposed to be unlucky
h I'm trying to lose weight

1 + f **Since** the train was delayed for more than an hour, passengers were given a full refund.
2 …… **as** …… .
3 **Seeing as** …… .
4 **Because** …… .
5 …… **since** …… .
6 **As** …… .
7 …… **seeing that** …… .
8 …… **because** …… .

80.2 **Complete the sentences using due to or owing to with one of the phrases from the box. If both due to and owing to are possible, write both.** C

lack of interest **~~stress at work~~** **heavy cloud** **its central location** **human error**

1 She claims her illness is entirely due to / owing to stress at work.
2 The cancellation of the competition is …… .
3 The popularity of the restaurant is largely …… .
4 It's likely that the mistake was …… .
5 We couldn't see last night's eclipse of the moon …… .

Now complete these sentences using because or because of + a phrase from the box. C

his age **his mobile was switched off** **local opposition**
the bright sunlight **there was a fly in it**

6 I had to drive in dark glasses …… .
7 I couldn't speak to Jacob …… .
8 The council had to withdraw its plan to close the swimming pool …… .
9 My grandfather couldn't do a sponsored parachute jump …… .
10 He sent the soup back …… .

80.3 **Rewrite these sentences using for or with instead of because (of). Give alternatives where possible.** D

1 I got a job as a street sweeper because my money was running out.
With my money running out, I got a job as a street sweeper. / I got a job as a street sweeper, with my money running out.
2 I couldn't hear what Isabella was saying because of the noise.
3 Olivia went to stay with her aunt because her father was in hospital.
4 I felt a lot fitter because of all the exercise I was doing.
5 Because the train drivers are on strike tomorrow, I don't think I'll go to town after all.

→ Additional exercise 14 (page 249)

Unit
81

Purposes and results: **in order to, so as to**, etc.

A In order / so as + to-infinitive

To talk about the purpose of an action we can use **in order / so as + to-infinitive**:

☐ He took the course **in order to get** a better job.

☐ Trees are being planted by the roadside **so as to reduce** traffic noise.

In spoken English in particular it is much more common simply to use a **to-infinitive** without 'in order' or 'so as' to express the same meaning:

☐ He took the course **to get** a better job.

We rarely use just **not + to-infinitive**, but instead use **so as not to** or **in order not to**:

☐ He kept the speech vague i**n order not** *to commit* himself to one side or the other. (*not* … vague not to commit himself …)

☐ I wrote down her name **so as not to** *forget* it. (*not* … name not to forget …)

However, in contrastive sentences we can use **not + to-infinitive, but + to-infinitive** as in:

☐ I came to see you **not** (*in order / so as*) **to complain, but** (*in order / so as*) **to apologise.**

Note that we can put **in order / so as** before the **to-infinitives** in sentences like this.

B In order that and so that

We also use **in order that** and **so that** to talk about a purpose. Compare:

☐ She stayed at work late **in order / so as** to complete the report. *and*

☐ She stayed at work late **in order that / so that** she could complete the report. (*not … in order that / so that* to complete the report.)

So that is more common than **in order that**, and is used in less formal situations. Note that informally we can leave out **that** after **so**, but we always include it after **in order**.

A present tense verb in the main clause is usually followed by a present tense verb (or a modal with present or future reference – **can, will**, etc.) in the clause beginning **in order that / so that**. A past tense verb in the main clause is usually followed by a past tense verb (or a modal with past reference – **could, would**, etc.) in the clause beginning **in order that / so that**. Modal verbs are very often used after **in order that / so that**:

☐ Regular checks *are made* **in order that** safety standards *are maintained*.

☐ Advice *is given* **in order that** students *can* choose the best course.

☐ *Did* you give up your job **so that** you *could* take care of your mother?

☐ I *hid* the presents **so that** Marianna *wouldn't* find them.

C Such that and in such a way that / as to; such … that

In formal contexts, such as academic writing, we can use **such that** to introduce a result:

☐ The model was designed **such that** the value of *x* could be calculated. (= 'in a way that has the result that …'; *or* … **in order that** …; *or* … **so that** …)

Less formally we can also use **in such a way that** or **in such a way as + to-infinitive** with a similar meaning:

☐ The advertisement is printed **in such a way that** two very different pictures can be seen depending on how you look at it.

☐ Our business is managed **in such a way as to minimise** its environmental impact.

We can also use **such + noun phrase + that** to introduce a result:

☐ It is **such** *a popular play* **that** all the performances were sold out after the first day. (For **so + adjective / adverb + that**, see Unit 73.)

Exercises

81.1 Combine the two sentences in the most appropriate way using **in order (not) + to-infinitive** or **so as (not) + to-infinitive.** A

1 I had to borrow money from the bank.
2 He packed his suitcase with the books at the bottom.
3 Bus fares in the city were being cut.
4 We crept quietly towards the deer.
5 I walked around the outside of the field.
6 We put up a fence.
7 She looked down at the book in front of her.
8 The roadworks were carried out at night.

a This was done to encourage people to use public transport.
b We wanted to prevent people walking across the grass.
c I didn't want to damage the growing crops.
d ~~I did this to set up the business.~~
e They didn't want to disrupt traffic too much.
f We didn't want to frighten them away.
g She wanted to avoid his gaze.
h He didn't want to crush his clothes.

1 + d I had to borrow money from the bank in order to set up the business.
(*or* ... so as to set up ...)

81.2 Look again at the sentences you wrote in 81.1. Is it also possible to use only a **to-infinitive**, without **in order** or **so as**? Write ✓ or ✗. A

1 I had to borrow money from the bank to set up the business. ✓

81.3 Complete the sentences with the correct versions of the phrases from the box. B

it *will / would* receive the new channels
it *won't / wouldn't* take up a lot of computer memory
mosquitoes *can't / couldn't* get in **nobody *will / would* know it was there**
~~**people *can / could* walk around the gardens**~~ **we *can / could* see the view over the city**

1 They have an open day at their house each year so that people can walk around the gardens.
2 I put a rug over the stain on the carpet so that .
3 There were screens on all the windows so that .
4 The software is designed so that .
5 We went up to the top floor so that .
6 The TV needs to be retuned so that .

81.4 Rewrite each sentence less formally in two ways; once using **in such a way that** and once using **in such a way as to.** C

1 The factory demolition was planned such that any risk to the public was avoided.
The factory demolition was planned in such a way that any risk to the public was avoided. / The factory demolition was planned in such a way as to avoid any risk to the public.

2 The meeting room is designed such that everyone's voice can be heard without the use of microphones.
3 The website is organised such that it is easy to navigate.
4 If the dial is rotated such that the number 1 is at the top, the valve opens.

→ Additional exercise 14 (page 249)

Unit
82

Contrasts: **although** and **though**; **even though / if**; **while**, **whilst** and **whereas**

A

Although and though

We use **although** or (less formally) **though** to say that there is a surprising contrast between what happened in the *main clause* and what happened in the *adverbial clause*:

○ **Although / Though** Reid failed to score himself, he helped Jones to score two goals.

With a similar meaning, we can use **despite the fact that / in spite of the fact that** (e.g. **Despite the fact that / In spite of the fact that** Reid failed to score ...), **despite / in spite of** + **-ing** (e.g. **Despite / In spite of** Reid **failing** to score ...), or **despite / in spite of his / her + noun** (e.g. **Despite / In spite of his failure** to score ...).

Note that we can use **though**, but not **although**, at the end of a clause:

○ I eat most dairy products. I'm not keen on yogurt, **though**.

We can give special emphasis to an adjective by putting it before **though** in the pattern **adjective + though + noun / pronoun + verb** (usually a linking verb such as **appear**, **be**, **become**, **feel**, **look**, **seem**, **sound**, **prove**, etc.). **As** (but not **although**) can be used instead of **though**. Compare:

○ **Hot though** (*or* **as**) **the night air was**, they slept soundly. *and*

○ **Although / Though** the night air **was** hot, they slept soundly.

B

Even though and even if

We can use **even though** (*but not* 'even although') to mean 'despite the fact that' and **even if** to mean 'whether or not'. Compare:

○ **Even though** Matt doesn't speak Spanish, I think he should still visit Madrid.	= Despite the fact that he doesn't speak Spanish	i.e. the speaker knows that Matt doesn't speak Spanish
○ **Even if** Matt doesn't speak Spanish, I think he should still visit Madrid.	= Whether or not he speaks Spanish	i.e. the speaker doesn't know definitely whether Matt speaks Spanish or not

C

While, whilst and whereas

In formal contexts we can use **while** or **whilst** with a meaning similar to 'although' to introduce something that qualifies what is said in the main clause or something that may seem to conflict with it. In this case, the **while / whilst** clause comes before or within the main clause, but not after it:

○ **While / Whilst** there is no evidence that Rob cheated, we were all astonished that he passed the exam. (*not* We were all astonished that he passed the exam, while ...)

○ The diesel model of the car, **while / whilst** more expensive, is better value for money.

Note that **whilst** is a rather literary word and some people avoid using it.

We can use **while** or **whereas** (or less often **whilst**) to say that something contrasts with something in the main clause. The **while / whereas** clause may come before or after the main clause:

○ Juan gets lots of homework from school, **while / whereas** Mia gets very little.

○ **While / Whereas** I always felt I would pass the exam, I never thought I would get an A grade.

We don't use **whereas** if what is said in the subordinate clause makes what is said in the main clause unexpected:

○ **Although / While** Sophie's father is from Spain, she doesn't speak Spanish. (*not* Whereas ...)

We can use **-ing** and **past participle** (**-ed**) clauses after **although**, **though**, **while** and **whilst**, and also clauses with the subject and verb left out (see Unit 59D).

Exercises

82.1 **Join the sentence halves and give special emphasis to the adjective by moving it to the front of the sentence. Use either though or as.** Ⓐ

1 it may seem amazing
2 she was frightened
3 food became scarce
4 the climbers were experienced
5 the instructions first appeared confusing
6 it looked disgusting
7 she felt confident
8 their new products have proved successful

a they were very useful when I looked at them in detail
b she forced herself to pick up the snake
c they had never faced such severe conditions before
d the company is still in financial difficulties
e they always found enough to share with me
f she knew the examination would not be easy
g ~~my brother Johan has just won the lottery~~
h it was actually quite tasty

1 + g Amazing though it may seem, my brother Johan has just won the lottery.
(*or* Amazing as it may seem ...)

82.2 **Expand the notes in brackets and rewrite the sentences using In spite of + -ing in 1–3 and In spite of his / her + noun in 4–6.** Ⓐ

1 Although she has to cope with three small children, … (*taking – part-time MBA course*)
In spite of having to cope with three small children, she is taking a part-time MBA course.
2 Although he was much younger than the others, … (*was – most outstanding rider – team*)
3 Although he ate a big lunch, … (*had – three-course meal – evening*)
4 Although he was frightened, … (*allowed – huge spider – placed in his hands*)
5 Although she is obviously intelligent, … (*finds – it difficult – express – ideas in writing*)
6 Although she was ill, … (*went – walking holiday – Nepal*)

Now rewrite the sentences you have written beginning Despite the fact that …

1 Despite the fact that she has to cope with three small children, she is taking a part-time MBA course.

82.3 **Underline the correct phrase.** Ⓑ

1 The driver stopped to let on more passengers *even though / even if* the bus was already full.
2 I wouldn't tell you where Mariam lives *even though / even if* I knew.
3 *Even though / Even if* I only play one match for my country, I'll be happy.
4 *Even though / Even if* he had just had lunch, Thomas bought a hamburger.
5 He plays for France *even though / even if* he was born in Algeria.
6 You won't see all the animals in the zoo *even though / even if* you stay for the whole day.
7 *Even though / Even if* I'm quite old, I still miss my parents.
8 I still couldn't afford to go to Taipei, *even though / even if* I took the cheapest route.

82.4 **Rewrite these sentences with a similar meaning. Begin the sentence with Whereas if possible and While if not.** Ⓒ

1 Horse riding is an expensive pastime, but more and more people are taking it up.
While horse riding is an expensive pastime, more and more people are taking it up.
(*Whereas* ... is not possible)
2 A decade ago only 5% of students dropped out of college, but the figure today is 25%.
3 The temperature is below freezing, but it actually feels quite warm when the sun is out.
4 The cost of rail travel has increased, but the number of train passengers has grown.
5 I've always wanted to visit Australia, but I've never had any wish to go to Canada.

→ **Additional exercise 14** (page 249)

Unit 83

If 1

A

Real conditionals

Reminder → M9–M17

In real conditionals we usually use a present tense verb in the **if-clause** to talk about the future:

- ☐ If you **leave** now, you'll be able to catch the 5 o'clock train. (*or* If you**'re leaving** now …)

However, in conversation we can use **be going to** instead of a present tense verb:

- ☐ If **I'm going to** catch the train, I'll have to leave now.
- ☐ We'll need more chairs if we**'re going to** invite so many people to the performance.

When we make offers, and give instructions or advice we can use an imperative in the main clause:

- ☐ **Take** another sandwich if you're hungry.
- ☐ If you have a mobile phone, **check** that it is turned off.

B

We can use **if-clauses** with a present tense verb to introduce certain conditions under which something is true. In this case, 'if' has a meaning similar to 'when':

- ☐ The video pauses **if** you *click* on this button.
- ☐ **If** age-related changes *are taken* into account, the conclusion remains the same.

C

We can talk about possible future events with a present perfect verb in the **if-clause** and a future form (**will**, present continuous, or **be going to**) in the main clause. Sometimes present perfect or present simple can be used with a similar meaning:

- ☐ I*'ll* lend you *War and Peace* if I**'ve finished** it before you go on holiday. (*or* … if I **finish** …)
- ☐ If you **haven't paid** the bill by Friday, we*'re taking* the carpets back. (*or* If you **don't pay** …)

However, to focus on the future consequences of a past event, we use the present perfect. Compare:

- ☐ If **I've failed** my exam again, I'm giving up the course. (suggests I have already taken the exam; I don't know the result) *and*
- ☐ If I **fail** my exam again, I'm giving up the course. (I may or may not have taken the exam)

D

Unreal conditionals

In unreal conditionals we can use **if …were + to-infinitive** rather than **if + past simple** to talk about imaginary future situations, particularly when it is unlikely that the situation in the **if-clause** will happen (see also Unit 14):

- ☐ **If** the technology **were to become** available, we would be able to expand the business.

However, note that we don't usually use this pattern with verbs such as **belong**, **doubt**, **enjoy**, **know**, **like**, **remember,** and **understand** when they describe a state:

- ☐ **If** I **knew** they were honest, I'd gladly lend them the money. (*not* If I were to know …)

We sometimes use this pattern to make a suggestion sound more polite:

- ☐ Would it be too early for you **if we were to** meet at 5:30?

E

We use **if it was not for + noun phrase** (or more formally **if it were not for + noun phrase**) to say that one situation is dependent on another situation or on a person (see also Unit 85A). When we talk about the past we can also use **if it had not been for + noun phrase**:

- ☐ **If it wasn't / weren't for** *Nina*, the conference wouldn't be going ahead.
- ☐ **If it hadn't been for** *Dad*, I wouldn't have gone to college. (*or* **If it wasn't / weren't for** …)

In formal language we can also use **Were it not for …** and **Had it not been for …** (see Unit 84A):

- ☐ **Were it not for** Nina …
- ☐ **Had it not been for** Dad…

We can use **but for + noun** with a similar meaning, particularly in formal contexts:

- ☐ The village school would have been closed years ago **but for** *the determination* of teachers and parents to keep it open. (= … if it hadn't been for the determination …)

Exercises

83.1 Complete these sentences with an imperative (1–3) or an **if-clause** (4–6). A

1 There have been a lot of thefts from cars in the city centre. If you leave your car there, make sure it's locked. / don't leave any valuables in it.

2 If you have any more problems with the computer, …………………… .

3 If you see Ned today, …………………… .

4 ……………………
keep well away from them.

5 ……………………
don't hesitate to get in touch with me again.

6 ……………………
get off at the stop near the library.

83.2 Complete the sentences using the verb pairs from the box. Use the present simple or present perfect in the **if-clause**, and give alternatives. Notice any differences in meaning. C

not fill in – need **not help – go** **leave – meet**
not arrive – give ~~**study – know**~~ **break – have to**

1 If you have studied / study *Macbeth*, you'll know the scene with the witches.
2 If you …………… home before I get there, I'll …………… you at the airport.
3 If you …………… the window, you'll …………… pay for it.
4 If the taxi …………… by 10 o'clock, I'll …………… you a lift to the station.
5 If you …………… an application form, you will …………… to do so before you can be considered for the job.
6 If the antibiotics …………… by the end of the week, I'll …………… back to the doctor.

83.3 If necessary, correct the italicised part of the sentence using a past simple form of the same verb. D

1 I'd sell the house immediately if it *were to belong* to me.
2 If they *were to hold* an election now, the Democrats would undoubtedly win.
3 I'd go back to the restaurant if I *were to like* sushi more.
4 If I *were to doubt* his honesty, I wouldn't employ him.
5 There would be no cinema in the town if the Odeon *were to close*.
6 If I *were to understand* Chinese, I'd do the translation myself.

83.4 Complete these rewritten sentences with similar meanings. E

1 The weather was terrible. Otherwise, we would have gone walking this weekend. *If it had …*
not been for the terrible weather, we would have gone walking this weekend.

2 His happiness would have been complete except for his anxiety over Carla. *If it were* ……………………

3 The strike would probably still be going on if the government hadn't intervened. *Were it* ……………………

4 The fight could have got out of hand if the police hadn't arrived. *Had it* ……………………

5 Everything was quiet except for the sound of birds singing. *But for* ……………………

6 There would have been far more wars in the last 50 years without the United Nations. *If it was* ……………………

7 We would have been here two hours ago except for the roadworks. *If it had* ……………………

Unit 84

If 2

A

Reminder → M9–M17

When the first verb in a conditional **if-clause** is **should**, **were**, or **had** we can leave out **if** and put the verb at the start of the clause (see Units 99 and 100 for more on inversion). We do this particularly in formal or literary English, and only in hypothetical conditionals (a type of unreal conditional which answers the question 'What would happen if ...?'):

☐ **Should** any of this **cost** you anything, send me the bill. (= If any of this should **cost** ...)

☐ It would be embarrassing, **were** she **to find out** the truth. (= ... if she were to **find** out ...)

☐ **Had** they **not rushed** Jo to hospital, she would have died. (= If they **hadn't rushed** Jo ...)

B

We don't usually use **if ... will** in conditional clauses. However, we can use **if ... will** –

☆ when we talk about a *result* of something in the main clause. Compare:

☐ Open a window **if** it **will help** you to sleep. (*or* ... **if** it **helps** you to sleep; 'Helping you to sleep' is the result of opening the window) *and*

☐ I will be angry **if** it **turns out** that you are wrong. (*not* ... if it will turn out ...; 'Turning out that you are wrong' is **not** the result of being angry)

☆ in requests or with the meaning 'if you are willing to' (*or* **if ... would** to be more polite):

☐ **If** you **will / would** take your seats, ladies and gentlemen, we can begin the meeting.

☆ in real conditionals when we want to show that we disapprove of something. In this case, **will** is stressed in speech (see also Unit 16B):

☐ A: I'm tired. B: Well, **if** you **will** go to bed so late, I'm not surprised.

Note that we can use **if ... won't** when we talk about a refusal to do something:

☐ There's no point in trying to teach the class **if** they **won't** pay attention.

C

In a *real* conditional sentence, we use **if ... happen to**, **if ... should**, or **if ... should happen to** to talk about something which may be possible, but is not very likely. **If ... happen to** is most common in spoken English:

☐ **If** you **happen to** be in our area, drop in and see us. (*or* **If** you **should** [**happen to**] be ...)

Note that we don't usually use this pattern in *unreal* conditionals talking about states or events in the **if-clause** which the speaker perceives as highly unlikely or impossible:

☐ **If** the North Sea **froze** in winter, you could walk from London to Oslo. (*but probably not* If the North Sea happened to freeze / should (happen to) freeze in winter ...)

D

In *comparison clauses* we can use **as if** followed by a **noun phrase**, **-ing** clause, **past participle** (**-ed**) clause, or **to-infinitive** to introduce a comparison with a situation described in the main clause. We do this to give an explanation or to say that something appears to be the case but is not:

☐ Magnus walked in **as if** *nothing* had happened.

☐ His hands made a circular motion, **as if** *steering* a bus through a sharp bend.

☐ When he caught the ball, Lee fell to the floor **as if** *hit* by a bullet.

☐ **As if** *to convince* herself that Luis was really there, she gently touched his cheek.

Note that we can use **as though** instead of **as if**, and in informal speech some people use **like** with the same meaning:

☐ The crowd reacted **as though** they were watching a boxing match. (*or* ... **as if** ...)

☐ He walked into the room **like** nothing had happened. (*or* ... **as if** ...)

Exercises

84.1 **Rewrite these sentences with similar meanings. Begin with the word given.** A

1 Consult your doctor again if the symptoms remain 72 hours after starting the course of medicine. *Should …* the symptoms remain 72 hours after starting the course of medicine, consult your doctor again.

2 You would know what you have to do for homework, if you had not been absent from school on Friday. *Had …* ……………………
…………………… .

3 Clare would have been able to stay with her friends if they were still living in Brussels. *Were …*
…………………… .

4 The factory would not have had to shut down if the workers were prepared to accept a wage cut. *Were …* …………………… .

5 We shall have to reduce the number of employees if the financial performance of the company doesn't improve in the near future. *Should …* ……………………
…………………… .

6 I might have considered taking the job if the salary had been higher. *Had …* ……………………
…………………… .

84.2 **If necessary, correct the italicised parts of these sentences.** B

1 *If I will press this button*, will it start to record?
2 You're welcome to borrow my old bike, *if you think it will be of any use to you.*
3 *If he won't resign*, the Prime Minister should sack him.
4 *If the disease will be untreated*, it can lead to brain damage.
5 *If you'll tell me where the vacuum cleaner is*, I'll do some cleaning.
6 *If you'll complain about me*, I'll get into trouble with my teacher.
7 *If it'll save money*, I'm willing to go by public transport.

84.3 **If possible, rewrite the italicised parts of these sentences with happen to. If it is unlikely, write ✗ after the sentence.** C

1 *If I see Georgia when I'm in Rome*, I'll send her your regards.
……………………

2 *If a UFO landed in the centre of New York*, there would be mass panic.
……………………

3 The plan for a new airport to be built outside London is bad news *if you live nearby.*
……………………

4 *If I was the President*, I would order our nuclear weapons to be destroyed.
……………………

5 *If you are in the south of Spain next week*, there is a good chance of seeing a total eclipse of the sun.
……………………

84.4 **Complete the sentences using your own words or the notes if you prefer.** D

(agree – everything Julia said) **~~(I – say – shocking)~~** **(it – reverse – wall)**
(try – imagine – contained) **(overcome – great weariness)**

1 My father raised his eyebrows as if I had said something shocking.
2 He folded his arms on the table and laid his head on them, as if …
3 She stared hard at the parcel as if …
4 He nodded his head slowly as if …
5 The back of the car looked as if …

Unit
85

If I were you ...; imagine he were to win

A

Reminder → M13–M17

In *unreal* conditional sentences we can use **were** after any subject in the **if-clause**, including singular first and third person subjects (e.g. **I / she / he / it**). This use of **were** is sometimes called the *past subjunctive*, and is generally preferred only in formal contexts. Note that although the verb has a past form, reference is to the imagined present or future:

○ **If your mother were** here, I'm sure she wouldn't let you eat all those chocolates.
○ My job would not exist **if it were not for** government funding.

Was can be used instead of **were** with the same meaning ('If your mother was here ...', etc.). However, we prefer **were** rather than **was** when we give advice with **If I were you ...**:

○ **If I were you**, I'd take it back to the shop. It's got a hole in it. (*rather than* If I was you ...)

B

Were is used in this way in other patterns when we talk about *imaginary situations* –

(i) when we use **were** + **subject** + **to-infinitive** or **were** + **subject** as a more formal alternative to **if** + **subject** + **was** / **were** (see also Unit 84A):

○ **Were the election to be** held today, the Liberals would win easily. (*or* **If the election was** / **were** held today ...)
○ **Were I not** in my seventies and rather unfit, I might consider taking up squash. (*or* **If I wasn't** / **weren't** in my seventies and rather unfit ...)

(ii) after **wish**:

○ I enjoy my job enormously, but I *wish* **it were** closer to home. (*or* ... I *wish it* **was** ...)
○ Of course I'm pleased that Jan has been given the award. I only *wish* **he weren't** so boastful about it. (*or* ... I only *wish* **he wasn't** ...)

(iii) after **if only** when we express our regret that a situation isn't different:

○ 'If your job is so bad, why don't you leave?' '*If only* **it were** that simple.' (*or If only* **it was** ...)
○ I'd really like to do accounting. *If only* **I weren't** so poor at maths. (*or If only* **I wasn't ...**)

(iv) after **would ('d) rather** and **would ('d) sooner** when we talk about preferences:

○ I feel embarrassed about what happened and *would rather* **the event were** forgotten. (*or* ... **was** forgotten.)
○ 'I've arranged a meeting for the end of July.' 'I'*d sooner* **it were** earlier, if possible. (*or* ... **it was** earlier.)

(v) in sentences or clauses beginning with **suppose**, **supposing** and **imagine**:

○ *Suppose* **I were** to lower the price by £100. Would you consider buying the car then? (*or Suppose* I **was** to lower ...)
○ I know it looks rather dirty now, but *imagine* **the house were** (to be) repainted. It would look a lot more attractive. (*or* ... *imagine* **the house was** (to be) repainted.)

And in *comparisons* we can use **were** –
(vi) after **as if** and **as though** (see Unit 84D) and **even if**:

○ I remember stepping off the boat in New York *as if* **it were** yesterday.
○ Despite losing the election, she continues to act *as though* **she were** prime minister.
○ It's too late to start the work this year *even if* **it were** possible to find the money for it.

Exercises

85.1 Match an item from (i) with an ending from (ii) to form a sentence. Begin **Were … (not)**. Bi

(i)

1 … found guilty of libel …
2 … government to increase university fees …
3 … anyone to lean against the window …
4 … not already busy in August …
5 … to see the conditions in which the refugees are living …

(i)

a the glass would certainly break
b you would be horrified
c I would gladly accept your invitation
d there would be an outcry from students
e ~~the newspaper would face huge legal costs~~

1 + e ……Were it to be found guilty of libel, the newspaper would face huge legal costs.……

85.2 Expand the notes to write a sentence to go before each question below. Use **Suppose, Supposing**, or **Imagine**, followed by a pronoun, noun or noun phrase and then **were**. Bv

1 (miss / last train) ……Supposing we were to miss the last train.…… How would we get home?
2 (inherit / million dollars) ……………………
How would it change your life?
3 (parents / tell you / emigrating to Canada) ……………………
How do you think you would react?
4 (Spain / win / World Cup) ……………………
How would you celebrate?
5 (population of Britain / all Buddhist) ……………………
How would its society be different?

85.3 Complete the sentences with either **as if** or **even if** followed by an appropriate pronoun and then **were**. Bvi

1 Muller spoke slowly ……as if it were…… a great physical effort.
2 Every day Mrs Demir would walk around the park …………………… snowing.
3 She knew she wouldn't be able to eat rabbit meat …………………… starving.
4 Theo completely ignored me …………………… not standing next to him.
5 He picked Natasha up …………………… no heavier than a two-year-old.
6 I don't think I would have got the job …………………… better qualified.
7 When Martina saw that I was stuck she laughed out loud …………………… a joke.
8 I wouldn't accept the job …………………… to offer it to me.

85.4 Complete the sentences using one of the phrases in (i) with expanded notes from (ii). A & B

(i)

~~if it were not for~~
wish he were
'd rather it were
if I were you
if only it were
'd sooner she were

(ii)

forgotten … classmates
not so critical … employees
~~long nights … winter~~
breakfast before … leave
going … friends
as easy … that

1 I would be happy to live in the north of Sweden ……if it were not for the long nights in winter…… .
2 I'm not happy about Jess going to Thailand alone. I …………………… .
3 A: If you're unhappy with your new car, why don't you ask for your money back?
B: Well, …………………… .
4 I know you haven't got much time, but …………………… .
5 Wearing odd shoes to school was embarrassing and I …………………… .
6 I'm very fond of Paul, but I …………………… .

Unit
86

If … not and unless; if and whether; etc.

A

If … not and unless

Unless is used in conditional sentences with the meaning 'except if':

- You can't travel on this train **unless you have** a reservation.

With **unless** we use present tenses when we talk about the future:

- **Unless it rains**, I'll pick you up at six. (*not* Unless it will rain …)

B

In *real* conditional sentences, we can often use either **unless** or **if … not** with a similar meaning:

- **Unless** the theatre is able to raise £100,000, it will have to close. (*or* **If** the theatre is**n't** able to …; implies 'it will have to close *only if* it can't raise the money')

However, we use **if … not** but not **unless** –

☆ when we say in the main clause that an event or action in the **if**-clause is unexpected:

- I'll be amazed **if** Christie does**n't** win.

☆ usually in questions:

- **If** you do**n't** pass the test, what will you do?

☆ when the 'only if' implication does not apply:

- **If** it was**n't** the best performance of *Hamlet* I've seen, it was certainly the strangest.

We usually use **if … not** rather than **unless** in *unreal* conditional sentences:

- **If** I were**n't** so tired, I'd give you a hand.

However, **unless** can be used in *unreal* conditional sentences when the main clause is negative:

- She wouldn't have gone to university **unless** her parents had insisted.

C

If and whether

We can use **if** or **whether** to say that two possibilities have been talked or thought about, or to say that people are not sure about something:

- They couldn't decide **if / whether** it was worth resitting the exam.
- Do you know **if / whether** Ben's at home?

Whether can usually be followed immediately by **or not**. Compare:

- I didn't know **if** Aya was coming **or not**. (*not* … if or not Aya was coming.) *and*
- I didn't know **whether or not** Aya was coming. (*or* … **whether** Tom was coming **or not** …)

D

We use **whether** rather than **if** –

☆ after a **preposition** (although **if** is sometimes used informally) and before a **to-infinitive**:

- We argued *about* **whether** butter or margarine was better for you. (*informally* … **if** …)
- I couldn't decide **whether** *to buy* apples or bananas.

☆ in the pattern **noun / adjective + as to whether** to mean 'about' or 'concerning':

- There was some *disagreement* **as to whether** he was eligible to play for France.

Also: **conflict**, **confusion**, **debate**, **discussion**, **doubt**, **question**, **speculation**, **uncertainty**; **concerned**, **indifferent**, **uncertain**, **undecided**, **unsure**

and we prefer **whether** rather than **if** –

☆ after the verbs **advise**, **choose**, **consider**, **depend on**, **discuss**, **talk about**, and **think about**:

- You should *consider* **whether** the car you are interested in is good value.

☆ in a clause acting as a subject or complement:

- **Whether the minister will quit over the issue** remains to be seen.
- The first issue is **whether he knew he was committing a crime**.

Exercises

86.1 **Match the sentence halves and write a new sentence with the same meaning, beginning each one with Unless ... .** A

1 We'll never get to the meeting ...
2 Alternative sources of funding must be found ...
3 If the roads haven't changed in that part of town ...
4 The weather must start improving soon ...
5 If it isn't ridiculously expensive ...
6 You are only entitled to state benefit ...

a ... or the farmers will lose their crops.
b ~~... if the train doesn't leave within five minutes.~~
c ... I'm sure I'll be able to find my way there.
d ... or the research will not be able to continue.
e ... I think I'll buy that painting.
f ... if you have been unemployed for six months.

1 + b Unless the train leaves within five minutes, we'll never get to the meeting.

86.2 **If necessary, correct the italicised phrase using if ... not.** B

1 *Unless she had gone* to university, she would have gone into the army. If she hadn't gone
2 *Unless the infection is treated* urgently, there is a real danger that she will die.
3 *Unless he was* so clumsy, he'd be the best person to do the work.
4 You won't be allowed into the country *unless you have* a visa.
5 It'll be surprising *unless Anya passes* her piano exam.
6 *Unless you get* a loan from the bank, how will you pay for the house?
7 They'll go on strike *unless they get* a pay rise.
8 Where will you stay *unless Louise is at home*?
9 The police can't prosecute me *unless they can prove* I intended to steal the ring.
10 She'd be a really good teacher *unless she was* so disorganised.

86.3 **Write whether or if / whether (if both are possible) in these sentences.** C & D

1 I was wondering .... you'd had your exam results yet.
2 She was undecided as to .... to fly or go by train.
3 Police have refused to confirm .... or not they have arrested anyone for the theft.
4 It is unclear .... the new regulations will affect all buildings or just new ones.
5 A: How much will the laptop cost?
B: That depends on .... I get one with a 15 or 17-inch screen.
6 Danny said that he was leaving home, but I didn't know .... to believe him.
7 Have you any idea .... Steve will be at the meeting?
8 Can you remember .... the door was open or closed when you got to the house?
9 There was considerable debate as to .... chess was a game or a sport.
10 I don't know .... Andrea's going to wait for us or not.
11 The government is considering .... to hold an enquiry into the accident.
12 Everyone in the village was very friendly. It didn't matter .... you'd lived there for a short or a long time.

WELCOME TO OUR VILLAGE

Unit 87

Connecting ideas in a sentence and between sentences

A

Some words and phrases (*sentence connectors*) are used to connect one sentence with a previous sentence or sentences. Often (but not always) these go at the beginning of the sentence:

☐ There was no heating in the building. **As a result**, the workers had to be sent home.

Other words and phrases (*conjunctions*) are used to connect clauses *within* a single sentence:

☐ **While** I was waiting, I read a magazine.
☐ I stood up **so that** I could see better.

type of connection	*sentence connectors*	*conjunctions*
comparing, contrasting, and indicating that a situation (in the main clause) is unexpected	after all, all the same, alternatively, anyway, by contrast, even so, however (*but see* **C**), in any case, in contrast, instead, nevertheless, on the contrary, on the other hand	although, even though, though, whereas, while, yet
reasons and results	as a consequence, as a result, consequently, for one thing, so; hence, in consequence, therefore, thus (*the last four are rather formal*)	as, because, for, in that, since, insofar as, so, so that
adding information	above all, after all, also, besides, furthermore, in addition, likewise, moreover, similarly, what's more; as well, too (*the last two are not used at the beginning of a sentence*)	
condition	if not, if so, otherwise	as long as, assuming (that), if, on condition that, provided (that), so long as, supposing (that), unless
time: one event at the same time as another	at that time, at the same time, meanwhile	as, when, whenever, while
time: one event before or after another	after, after that, afterwards, before, before that, earlier, later, previously, soon, subsequently, then	after, as soon as, before, since, until

Note that **after**, **before** and **so** can be both connectors and conjunctions.

We can't use a sentence connector on its own with a comma to connect clauses *within* one sentence (e.g. *not* I expect to be promoted, if not I'll leave).

However, a sentence connector can be used to connect two clauses in one sentence if the clauses are joined with **and**, **but**, **or**, **so**, or a **semi-colon** (;), **colon** (:), or **dash** (–):

☐ The building was extremely well constructed **and, as a result**, difficult to demolish.
☐ You could fly via Singapore; **however**, this isn't the only way.

B

Even though is a conjunction used to say that a fact doesn't make the rest of the sentence untrue (see also Unit 82B). It connects ideas *within* a sentence:

☐ **Even though** it was midday, I put on the light.

Even so is a sentence connector used to introduce a fact that is surprising in the context of what was just said. It connects ideas *between* sentences:

☐ It was midday. **Even so**, I put on the light.

C

However is often used as a sentence connector, but it can also be used –

☆ as an adverb when it is followed by an **adjective**, **adverb**, or **much / many**:

☐ We just don't have the money to do the work, **however necessary** you think it is.

☆ as a conjunction when it means 'in whatever way':

☐ **However** she held the mirror, she couldn't see the back of her neck.

Exercises

87.1 **Choose items from (i) and from (ii) to complete these texts in an appropriate way. Note the punctuation at the ends of the sentences and phrases already given.** A & B

(i)

- **alternatively**
- **as long as**
- **for one thing**
- **meanwhile**
- **otherwise**
- ~~**so that**~~
- **while**
- **yet**

(ii)

- ~~**everybody had their fair share**~~
- **you could poison them**
- **his face seemed familiar**
- **it's too expensive**
- **the rent was paid on time**
- **the street was deserted**
- **the volcano continues to erupt**
- **we were on holiday**

1 Mara cut the cake carefully into slices so that everybody had their fair share.
2 A small boy was kicking a ball against a wall; ....
3 I couldn't remember meeting him before, ...
4 A mass evacuation of islanders is taking place. ....
....
5 A: Why don't you like that new French restaurant?
B: ....
6 Ingrid came down with flu ....
7 My landlady didn't mind me having parties in my room ....
....
8 One way of getting rid of weeds is to dig them out. ....
....

87.2 **Underline the correct option.** A–C

1 Your essay is badly organised and full of spelling mistakes. *Though / Nevertheless*, it contains some very interesting ideas.
2 To the east the trees were left standing, *while / in contrast* to the west they were cut down.
3 I felt guilty about leaving the company *even so / even though* I knew it was the right decision.
4 The course taught me a lot about astronomy. *Even though / Even so*, there is still a lot to learn.
5 I expected my mother to be happy with the news. *Instead / Although* she started to cry.
6 Herbs are usually grown in temperate climates, *whereas / on the other hand* spices are mainly from tropical areas.
7 We were very short of money *so / as a consequence* we had to spend the night on a park bench.
8 I turned the ignition, but the car wouldn't start. *As / Meanwhile* the lions were getting ever closer.
9 She wrote the questions on the whiteboard *while / at the same time* the students copied them into their books.
10 *Previously / Before* I went to Australia, I'd never seen a koala.
11 I'll have to buy some ladders *unless / if not* I can borrow a pair from Harry.
12 I first met Connor in the 1970s. *At that time / When* he had long hair and a beard.

87.3 **Use your own ideas to complete the sentences. Begin however + adjective / adverb / many / much.** C

1 She is determined to be a successful artist, however difficult it might be to achieve.
2 .... , it is difficult to lose weight without cutting down on the amount you eat.
3 .... , it is important to spend some time apart.
4 Professor Malcolm is always happy to spend time with his students, ...
....
5 .... , it never fails to impress me.
6 Some people never seem content, ...

➜ Additional exercise 14 (page 249)

Unit
88

Prepositions of position and movement

A Across, over

We can use **across** or **over** to talk about a *position* on the other side of, or *moving* to the other side of a road, bridge, border, river, etc.:

- Antonio lives in the house **across** / **over** *the road* from ours.
- Once she was **across** / **over** *the border*, she knew she would be safe.

We use **over** rather than **across** when we talk about reaching the other side of something that is high, or higher than it is wide. Compare:

- He jumped **over** *the fence* into the garden. *and*
- He jumped **across** *the stream*.

When we are talking about something we think of as a flat surface, or an area such as a country or sea, we prefer **across** rather than **over**:

- He suddenly saw Eva **across** *the room*.
- The programme was broadcast **across** *Canada*.

We prefer **all over** rather than **all across** to mean 'to or in many different parts of an area'. However, we commonly use **across**, or **right across** for emphasis:

- The disease has now spread **all over** the world. (*or* … (**right**) **across** the world.)

B Along, through

When we talk about following a line of some kind (a road, a river, etc.), we use **along**:

- They walked **along** the footpath until they came to a small bridge.

We use **through** to emphasise that we are talking about movement in a three dimensional space, with things all around, rather than a two dimensional space, a flat surface or area:

- He pushed his way **through** the crowd of people to get to her.

Through often suggests movement from one side or end of the space to the other. Compare:

- She walked **through** the forest to get to her grandmother's house. *and*
- She spent a lot of her free time walking **in** the forest.

C Above, over; below, under; beneath, underneath

We can use either **above** or **over** when we say that one thing is at a higher level than another:

- **Above** / **Over** the door was a sign saying, 'Mind your head'.

However, we prefer **above**, when one thing is not directly over the other. Compare:

- They lived in a village in the mountains **above** the lake. (not directly over) *and*
- The bird hovered just a few metres **above** / **over** the lake. (directly over)

We use **over**, not **above**, when something covers something else and touches it:

- She put a quilt **over** the bed.

and usually when we are talking about horizontal movement at a higher level than something:

- I saw the helicopter fly out **over** the water, near the fishing boat.

Below is the opposite of **above**; **under** is the opposite of **over**. The differences in the uses of **below** and **under** are similar to those between **above** and **over** (see above):

- It's hard to believe that there is a railway line **below** / **under** the building. (at a lower level)
- Her head was **below** the level of the table so nobody noticed her. (not directly under)
- She hid the presents **under** a blanket. (the blanket covers and touches the presents)
- Zara ran **under** the bridge. (horizontal movement at a lower level)

We can use **underneath** as an alternative to **under** as a preposition of place. **Beneath** is sometimes used as a more formal alternative to **under** or **below**.

Exercises

88.1 **Complete the sentences with across or over, whichever is correct or more likely. If both are possible, write across / over.** A

1 After I'd finished work I walked .... the car park to where Mona was waiting.
2 They own a house .... the river in the old town.
3 The gate was locked so we had to climb .... the wall.
4 You're not allowed to walk .... the railway line. You have to use the bridge.
5 Julie Wafaei was the first woman to row alone .... the Atlantic.
6 Nuclear waste is transported .... the country, despite objections from campaigners.
7 The traffic was busy on the main road so we walked .... the pedestrian crossing.
8 She leaned out .... the balcony rail and looked for Omar in the square below.

88.2 **Underline the correct or most appropriate option(s) in each sentence.** A & B

1 It took several minutes to walk *across / over / along / through* the corridor to the exit.
2 *Across / Over / Along / Through* the table I could see Oliver looking at his watch.
3 He fell *across / over / along / through* the floor into the cellar below.
4 I could see Lisa *across / over / along / through* the other side of the river.
5 He cycles thousands of miles each year all *across / over / along / through* the country.
6 Hotels have been built *across / over / along / through* the beach for about 25 kilometres.

88.3 **Correct the prepositions (above, over, below, under) if necessary, or write ✓.** C

1 He slept with his wallet below his pillow.
2 He broke his leg just below his knee.
3 The town stood at the top of the hill, and stretching into the distance under it were green fields.
4 She threw a coat above her shoulders and stepped out into the cold.
5 He lived in a first-floor flat above a greengrocer's in Leyton.
6 When the police got to the car they found the driver slumped above the steering wheel.
7 He always wore a vest below his shirt, even in summer.
8 I could hear the plane flying high over the clouds.

88.4 **A number of common idioms include the prepositions in this unit. Match the idioms in italics to their meanings below.**

1 A: What's wrong?
B: I'm just feeling rather *under the weather*.
2 A: You never arrive on time. You'd be late for your own funeral, you would!
B: That's a bit *below the belt*, isn't it?'
3 She already has 18 books on gardening *under her belt* and she is now working on number 19.
4 He had never played well for the club and left *under a cloud*.
5 She lost her temper and went completely *over the top*, accusing him of cheating.
6 They received a bonus in December *over and above* their monthly salary.

a in addition to
b successfully completed
c ill
d cruel or unfair
e with some people's disapproval
f extreme behaviour; indicating disapproval

Unit
89

Between and among

A

As prepositions of *place* we use **between** with two or more people or things that we see as individual or separate, and we use **among** when we see the people or things as part of a group or mass. **Among** is only used with three or more people or things:

- ☐ She held the diamond **between** her thumb and forefinger.
- ☐ Zimbabwe is situated **between** Zambia to the north, Mozambique to the east, Botswana to the west, and South Africa to the south.
- ☐ He stood **among** all his friends at the party and felt very happy.
- ☐ She eventually found her passport **among** the clothes in the drawer.

Note that **amongst** is sometimes used instead of **among**, but in more literary contexts.

B

Between and **among** are not only used as prepositions of place. For example, we can use either to talk about something divided or shared between people:

- ☐ The money is to be divided **between / among** the towns in the area.
- ☐ The prize will be shared **between / among** the first six finishers in the race.

We also use **between** –

☆ to talk about comparisons and relationships:

- ☐ There should be a better *balance* on the committee **between** the various ethnic groups.
- ☐ They are wrong to claim that there is a *link* **between** unemployment and crime.

Also: **association**, **comparison**, **connection**, **contrast**, **correlation**, **difference**, **distinction**, **relationship**

☆ to talk about choices:

- ☐ I have to choose **between** the universities of Leeds, York and Manchester.
- ☐ He felt torn **between** his family and his friends.

☆ to talk about discussions or the results of discussions when we specify the two or more people or groups involved:

- ☐ There was a disagreement **between** Emma, Jade and Zoe.
- ☐ The treaty was signed **between** Great Britain and France.

☆ to say that people or things share an amount of something:

- ☐ **Between** them, Will and Alice must earn about €100,000 a year.
- ☐ Last year the three companies built 30,000 houses **between** them.

We also use **among** –

☆ when we mean 'existing or happening in a particular group':

- ☐ The disease has now broken out **among** the hill tribes.
- ☐ Their music is still very popular **among** teenagers.

☆ when we mean 'included in a particular group':

- ☐ They are **among** the best hockey players in the world.
- ☐ **Among** the capital cities of South America, Quito is the second highest.

C

There are a number of common expressions using **between** and **among**:

- ☐ The concert features, **among others**, Karl Frisk and the Johnsons. (= other singers / groups are featured, too)
- ☐ I later found out that he had been a carpenter and a plumber, **among other things**. (= he had had other jobs, too)
- ☐ **Between ourselves / Between you and me** (= keep this a secret), I don't think Jack is as honest as he should be.

Exercises

89.1 **Underline the correct option.** A

1 For a couple of days I've had a pain *between / among* my shoulder blades.
2 He couldn't find a microphone *between / among* all the recording equipment he had with him.
3 It would be easier to read if you put a line space *between / among* the paragraphs.
4 In the photograph Anna is standing *between / among* her parents.
5 The lost manuscript was discovered *between / among* the thousands of books in the cellar.
6 The buffet is towards the middle of the train *between / among* the first and second class sections.
7 She carried trays of drinks and food *between / among* the crowd of guests in the room.
8 I couldn't see Robbie *between / among* the audience, although he said he would be there.
9 Rebecca commutes *between / among* her flat in Paris and her office in Brussels.

89.2 **Complete the sentences with between or among and the most likely words or phrases from the box. If you can use either, write between / among.** B

amateur **its clients** **my closest friends** **cooking**
intake of refined sugar **the pupils** **his remaining relatives**
the striking dockers **teenagers** ~~**us**~~

1 I wasn't feeling very hungry, so Daniel and I shared a bowl of noodles between us.
2 I bought four bars of chocolate and divided them .... in the class.
3 The distinction .... and professional athletes is becoming less clear.
4 It has become fashionable .... to dye their hair in various colours.
5 When Malik died, his daughter inherited the house and the rest of his money was split ....
6 The advertising company is very successful, numbering most of the big banks ....
7 Researchers have found a striking correlation .... and arthritis.
8 Given a choice .... and washing up, I know which I'd prefer to do.
9 Luka and Ivan are .... , so I'll invite them to the wedding, of course.
10 Late last night the talks .... and their employers broke down.

89.3 **Complete this email with between or among.** A & B

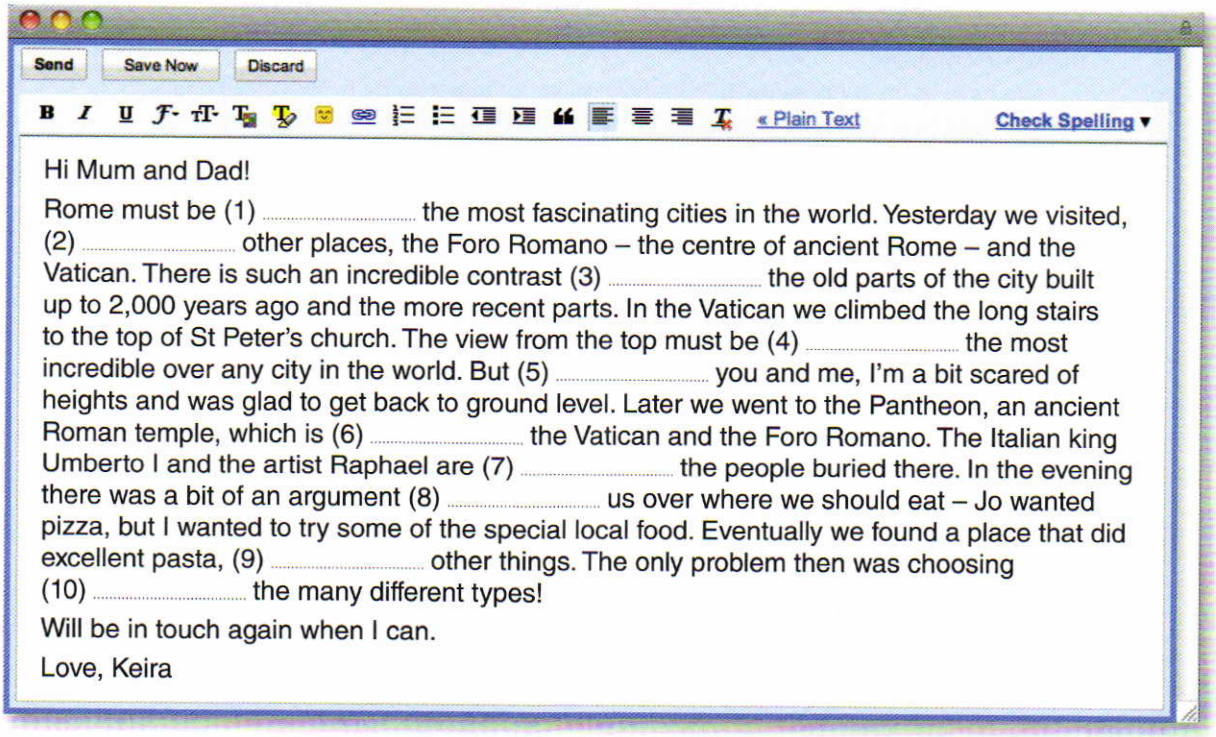

Hi Mum and Dad!

Rome must be (1) .... the most fascinating cities in the world. Yesterday we visited, (2) .... other places, the Foro Romano – the centre of ancient Rome – and the Vatican. There is such an incredible contrast (3) .... the old parts of the city built up to 2,000 years ago and the more recent parts. In the Vatican we climbed the long stairs to the top of St Peter's church. The view from the top must be (4) .... the most incredible over any city in the world. But (5) .... you and me, I'm a bit scared of heights and was glad to get back to ground level. Later we went to the Pantheon, an ancient Roman temple, which is (6) .... the Vatican and the Foro Romano. The Italian king Umberto I and the artist Raphael are (7) .... the people buried there. In the evening there was a bit of an argument (8) .... us over where we should eat – Jo wanted pizza, but I wanted to try some of the special local food. Eventually we found a place that did excellent pasta, (9) .... other things. The only problem then was choosing (10) .... the many different types!

Will be in touch again when I can.

Love, Keira

Unit 90

Prepositions of time

A

During, in, over, throughout

We use **during** or **in** to talk about a period of time within which an event or activity occurs. The activity may continue for the whole of the period of time:

☐ I stayed at home **during** the summer. (*or* … **in** the summer.)
☐ The population of the city has actually fallen **during** the last decade. (*or* … **in** the last …)

or the event may happen at some time, or be repeated a number of times, in the period of time:

☐ We went to Turkey **during** the summer. (*or* … **in** the summer.)
☐ He suffered a number of injuries **during** his career as a jockey. (*or* … **in** his career …)

We use **during**, rather than **in**, to mean 'at some time in the period of' before nouns such as **illness**, **holiday**, **meal**, **stay**, **treatment**, and **visit**, when we refer to an event which lasts some time:

☐ The President made the speech **during** *a visit* to Madrid.

and also with the phrase **the whole** (**of**), emphasising duration of an entire period:

☐ No one was allowed to leave the ship **during** *the whole of* its time in port.

We can use **throughout** to emphasise that something happens over the whole of a period of time:

☐ We had enough firewood to keep us warm **throughout** the winter. (*or* … warm **during** / **through** the winter.)

B

We can use **over** or **during** when we talk about something that goes on for a length of time within a *period of time*, either for some of that period or for the whole of it:

☐ Weather conditions have been improving **over** / **during** *the past few days*.
☐ I hit my head and can't remember anything that happened **over** / **during** *the next hour or so*.

However, if we talk about a short event that happens within a period of time, we prefer **during**:

☐ *She sneezed* **during** the performance. (= once or a few times; *not* … over the performance.)
☐ **During** a pause in the conversation, *she left the room*. (*not* Over a pause …)

C

Until, by, up to

There are a number of ways of saying when something that has continued for some time stops –

☆ We use **until** (or informally **till**) to say that something continued or will continue to a particular time, and **by** to say that something happened or will happen either before a particular time or at that time at the latest. Compare:

☐ We have to be at home **until** 2:30. (We must not leave home before 2:30) *and*
☐ We have to be at home **by** 2:30. (We must arrive home either before or at 2:30)

☆ In informal contexts we can use **up to** or **up till** instead of **until**. We commonly use **up to** / **till** with **now** and with **then**:

☐ I've just bought a tablet computer. I've always used a laptop **up to** *now*. (*or* … **up till** now …)

☆ We can use **until now** to talk about a situation that will not continue beyond now:

☐ Supermarkets say that **until now** there has been little consumer interest in buying organic produce. (The situation has changed or is going to change)

Note, however, that we don't use **until now** for a situation that will or may continue into the future. Instead we can use **so far** or, in formal contexts, **to date**:

☐ It was certainly the best match of the football season **so far**.
☐ When the contract is signed it will be the building company's biggest order **to date**.

Exercises

90.1 **In which of the sentences can the word in brackets replace during? Write ✓ if it can replace it and ✗ if it can't.** A & B

1 I'm going to get a cup of coffee *during* the break. (*in*)
2 She lost more than 15 kilos *during* her illness and she was off work for two months. (*in*)
3 He twisted his ankle *during* the match and had to retire injured. (*over*)
4 The weather was terrible here *during* December. (*in*)
5 The meeting will be some time *during* January. (*over*)
6 People no longer expect to be employed in the same place *during* the whole of their working lives. (*in*)
7 Do you think standards of numeracy have fallen *during* the last 20 years? (*over*)
8 She sang in a choir *during* her childhood. (*throughout*)
9 The town was rebuilt *during* the early 16th century. (*over*)
10 It was impossible to buy bananas *during* the war. (*in*)
11 Karl had a phone call *during* the meal and had to leave early. (*in*)
12 My stomach ache got steadily worse *during* the evening. (*over*)

90.2 **Complete the pairs of sentences with by and until. Use by in one sentence and until in the other.** C

1 a I was feeling really hungry .... the time dinner was served.
  b We sat around the fire talking .... the time dinner was served.
2 a Sorry I'm late. I've been in a meeting .... now.
  b I thought Lars would have been here .... now.
3 a I've got to pay the money back .... the end of the month.
  b I've got .... the end of the month to pay the money back.
4 a I put on an extra pair of socks. .... then my feet were freezing cold.
  b I stood outside the cinema for an hour. .... then my feet were freezing cold.
5 a She was already a leading economist .... her early twenties.
  b She studied economics .... her early twenties and then moved into law.
6 a I hope to finish the decorating .... the weekend.
  b It will take me .... the weekend to finish the decorating.

90.3 **Underline the correct or more likely option (or both if possible) in this email.** A–C

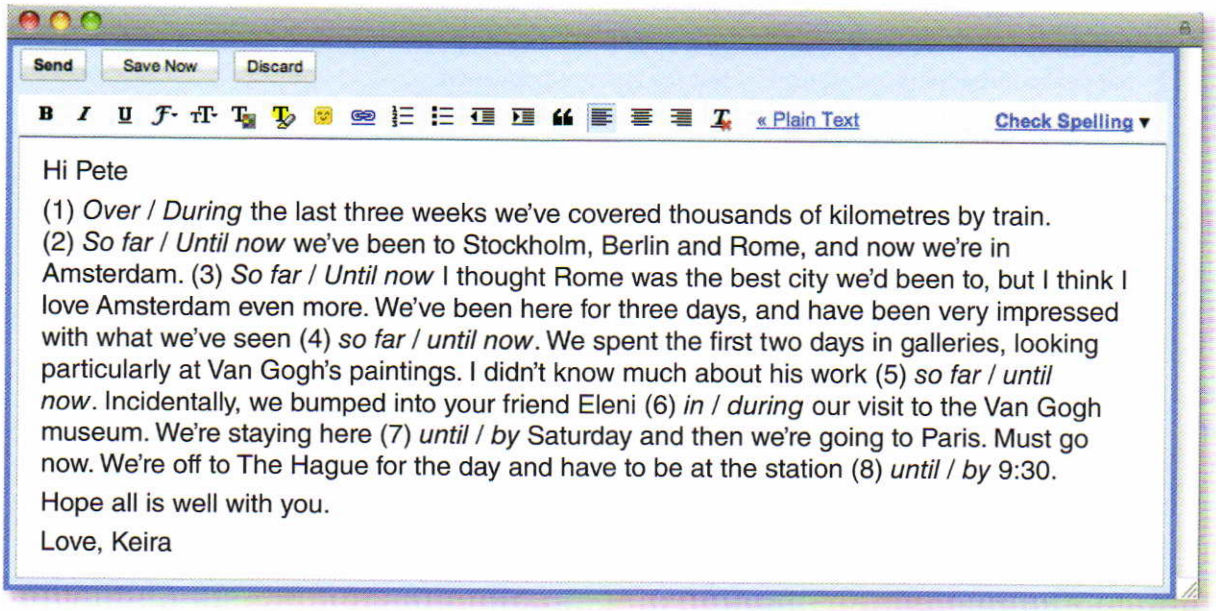

Hi Pete

(1) *Over / During* the last three weeks we've covered thousands of kilometres by train. (2) *So far / Until now* we've been to Stockholm, Berlin and Rome, and now we're in Amsterdam. (3) *So far / Until now* I thought Rome was the best city we'd been to, but I think I love Amsterdam even more. We've been here for three days, and have been very impressed with what we've seen (4) *so far / until now*. We spent the first two days in galleries, looking particularly at Van Gogh's paintings. I didn't know much about his work (5) *so far / until now*. Incidentally, we bumped into your friend Eleni (6) *in / during* our visit to the Van Gogh museum. We're staying here (7) *until / by* Saturday and then we're going to Paris. Must go now. We're off to The Hague for the day and have to be at the station (8) *until / by* 9:30.

Hope all is well with you.

Love, Keira

Unit 91

Talking about exceptions

A

We use **except (for)** to introduce the only thing(s) or person / people that a statement does not include:

- The price of the holiday includes all meals **except** (**for**) lunch.
- Everyone seemed to have been invited **except** (**for**) Mrs Woodford and me.
- I had no money to give him **except** (**for**) the few coins in my pocket.

We use **except**, not **except for**, with **to-infinitives**, and **that-clauses**:

- I rarely need to go into the city centre **except** *to do* some shopping.
- They look just like the real thing, **except** *that* they're made of plastic.

We usually use **except** before **prepositions**, **bare infinitives**, and **that-clauses** including those where the word *that* is left out (see Unit 53). However, informally **except for** is sometimes also used, although this is grammatically incorrect:

- There is likely to be rain everywhere today **except** *in* Wales.
- There is nothing more the doctor can do **except** *keep* an eye on him.
- They look just like the real thing, **except** (*that*) they're made of plastic.

We can use **except for**, but not **except**, with the meaning 'but for' (see **C** below).

B

We use **except** (**for**) to mean that something is not included in a particular statement, but we use **besides** to mean 'as well as' or 'in addition to'. Compare:

- I don't enjoy watching any sports **except** (**for**) cricket. (= I enjoy only cricket) *and*
- **Besides** cricket, I enjoy watching football and basketball. (= I enjoy three sports)
- I haven't read anything by her, **except** (**for**) one of her short stories. *and*
- **Besides** her novels and poems, she published a number of short stories.

Apart from can be used with the same meanings as both **except** (**for**) and **besides**:

- I don't enjoy watching any sports **apart from** cricket. (= except for)
- **Apart from** cricket, I enjoy watching football and basketball. (= besides; as well as)

C

We can use **but** with a similar meaning to **except** (**for**), particularly after negative words such as **no**, **nobody**, and **nothing**:

- After the operation he could see *nothing* **but** / **except** (**for**) / **apart from** vague shadows.
- There was *no* way out **but** / **except** / **apart from** upwards, towards the light.

But for has a different meaning from **except for**. We use it to say what would or might have happened if the thing introduced by **but for** had not happened:

- The country would now be self-sufficient in food **but for** the drought last year. (= if there hadn't been the drought ...)
- **But for** the leg injury he suffered last year, he would probably have been picked for the national team by now. (= if he hadn't injured his leg ...)

However, some people use **except for** in the same way as **but for**, particularly in informal spoken English:

- I'd have got there on time **except for** the taxi being late. (*or* ... **but for** the taxi being late.)
- **Except for** the problems with my computer, I would have got the book finished weeks ago. (*or* **But for** the problems with my computer ...)

Note that we can use **excepted**, **apart** or **aside** after mentioning a person or thing to say that they are not included in the statement we make:

- It has been, *1984* **excepted** / **apart** / **aside**, the hottest July for the last 100 years.

Exercises

91.1 Complete the sentences with **except** or **except for**. Indicate where both are possible. A & C

1 He was dressed very smartly .... that his shoes were dirty.
2 I liked everything in the meal .... the cabbage.
3 I had nothing to do .... sit by the pool and relax.
4 We would have gone walking last week .... the terrible weather.
5 She had no choice .... to wait for the next train.
6 There are very few wolves left in the country .... in the northern forests.
7 All the puddings on the menu cost €6 .... the ice cream, which was €4.
8 I'm in the office all the time .... at lunchtimes.
9 She might have won the race .... hitting the last fence.
10 The plant is found on every continent .... Africa.
11 He gave no excuse for turning up late .... that he was tired.
12 I drove all the way without stopping .... to buy petrol.

91.2 If necessary, correct these sentences with **besides** or **except (for)**. If the sentence is already correct, write ✓. B

1 She had never been out of the country besides a week in Ireland as a child.
2 Besides being small, Denmark is very flat, with villages linked by country roads.
3 The new road will increase traffic in the area except for damaging an area of woodland.
4 Except for his novels, Campbell wrote a number of biographies.
5 There was nothing in the fridge besides a rather mouldy piece of cheese.
6 He was unhurt in the crash except for a bruise on his forehead.

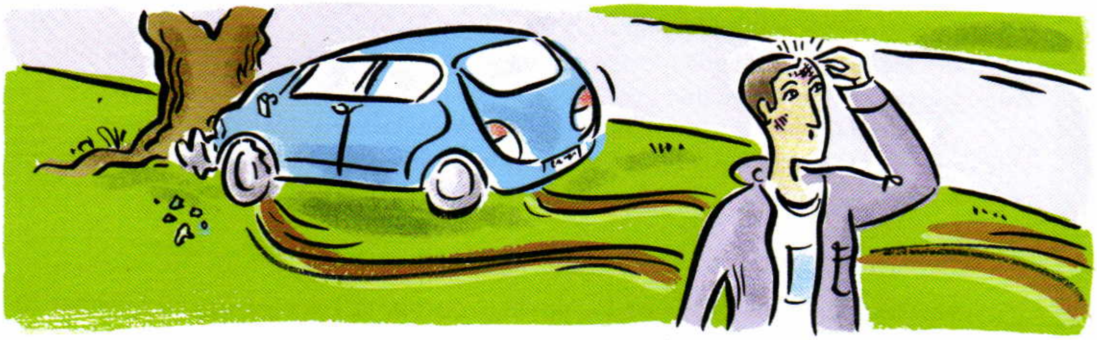

91.3 Match pairs of sentences and rewrite them as single sentences beginning **But for the ...** . C

1 Katerina gave me excellent directions.
2 The bad weather caused interruptions.
3 The charity supplied food and medicines.
4 The trees provided shelter.
5 The EU threatened sanctions.
6 The bank gave me a loan.

a If it hadn't, the building would have been completed by now.
b Without this, human rights would not have improved in the country.
c Otherwise, many more people would have died in the famine.
d If it hadn't, I would not have been able to set up my business.
e ~~Without these, I would have got totally lost.~~
f Otherwise, the wind would have caused even more damage to the house.

1 + e But for the excellent directions Katerina gave me, I would have got totally lost.

Unit
92

Prepositions after verbs

A

Some verbs are frequently followed by particular prepositions:

	about	*for*	*of*	*on*	*with*
agree	✓			✓	✓
argue	✓	✓			✓
ask	✓	✓	✓		
care	✓	✓			
know	✓		✓		
learn	✓		✓		
talk	✓		✓	✓	✓

B

about usually means 'concerning a particular thing':

☐ They began to **learn about** nutrition when they were at primary school.

We use **care about** to talk about something we are (not) concerned about:

☐ He doesn't seem to **care about** the effect a poor diet has on him.

for is used with **ask** to talk about what people want:

☐ He finished the drink quickly and **asked for** another.

with **argue** when we talk about giving reasons why something is true or right:

☐ Many people **are arguing for** a big tax cut.

and with **care** to talk about doing the necessary things for someone or something in order to keep them in good health or condition:

☐ Jo **cared for** her disabled mother until her death last year. (*or* Jo **took care of** …)

or to mean 'like', particularly in negative sentences, and to mean 'want' in offers. Both of these uses of **care for** are rather formal:

☐ I don't **care for** the theatre much.

☐ Would you **care for** a cup of coffee?

of is used with **talk**, **know**, and **learn** to talk about discussing, having or getting information:

☐ Mira went recently to Laos and can **talk of** nothing else. (*or less formally* … **talk about** …)

☐ The whole country **knew of** Churchill's love of cigars. (*or less formally* … **knew about** …)

☐ I have just **learnt of** the death of Dr Ramirez. (*or less formally* … **learnt about** …)

We use **ask of** when we make or talk about requests:

☐ I have a favour to **ask of** you and your sister.

on is used with **talk** and **agree** to mean 'concerned with a particular topic':

☐ I was asked to **talk on** my research. (*or* … to **talk about** …)

☐ We **agreed on** a time to meet. (usually there has been previous discussion or disagreement.)

Note that we use **agree to** to say that someone allows something to happen:

☐ Once the government **agreed to** the scheme it went ahead without delay.

with is used with **argue** and **talk** when we go on to mention the person involved:

☐ I used to **argue / talk with** Pedro for hours.

We use **agree with** to say that two people have the same opinion:

☐ Adam thinks we should accept the offer, and I **agree with** him.

and to say that we approve of a particular idea or action:

☐ I **agree with** letting children choose the clothes they wear. (*or* I **agree about / on** …)

or to say that two descriptions are the same:

☐ Stefan's story **agreed with** that of his son.

Exercises

92.1 **Cross out any incorrect prepositions.** A

1 I only advertised the car for sale on Wednesday, but by the end of the week ten people had phoned to ask *of / for / about* it.
2 We can learn a great deal *after / about / for* the oceans by studying even a small piece of coral.
3 I didn't agree *about / for / with* a word of what she said.
4 Professor Owen is giving a talk *of / with / on* the Romans in Lecture Hall 1.
5 I had to care *for / after / about* my elderly parents when they both became ill.
6 For many years we have been arguing *for / on / with* changes in the way the college is managed.
7 She didn't know *of / about / on* her stepbrother's existence until her mother died.

92.2 **Complete the sentences using the correct or most appropriate preposition from section A. Sometimes two answers are possible.** A & B

1 On the website they ask .... your email address.
2 I first learnt .... his decision to resign on the radio last night.
3 We're going to talk .... the council about planting some new trees in the park.
4 I don't care .... pop music at all. I much prefer classical music.
5 The teacher says we've got to do the test, so there's no point in arguing .... it.
6 Scientists do not agree .... the origin of the universe.
7 If you know .... any reasons why you should not be given medical insurance, you must declare them here.
8 A: Josh can be really stupid sometimes.
B: You shouldn't talk .... your brother like that.
9 She's always arguing .... her parents about what to watch on television.
10 I know it's a lot to ask .... you, but would you look after the children while I'm in Japan on business?
11 The course was brilliant. We learnt .... using the Internet in teaching writing.
12 A: Dan said he'll try to fix my car.
B: What does he know .... cars?
13 I don't think the government cares enough .... nursery education to fund it properly.
14 After days of discussion, the committee agreed .... the amount of money to donate.

92.3 **These pairs of sentences include more verbs that are commonly followed by the prepositions in A. Can you explain the difference in meaning? Use a dictionary if necessary.**

1 a The police *acted on* the information very quickly.
b I couldn't be at the meeting, so my solicitor *acted for* me.
2 a I've been *thinking* a lot *about* your idea, and I've decided I'd like to support you.
b What do you *think of* the colour in the bedroom?
3 a Doctors have *called on* the Health Minister to resign.
b Campaigners have *called for* a referendum on the issue.
4 a They say he *worked for* the CIA in the 1980s.
b She *works with* computers.
5 a We're *counting on* Julia to supply the food for the party.
b Playing exciting basketball *counts for* little if the team isn't winning.

➜ **Additional exercise 15** (page 249)

Unit
93

Prepositions after nouns

A

Many nouns are followed by the same prepositions as their related adjective or verb. Compare:

○ Are you **satisfied** *with* the way that the business is being run? *and*

○ The shareholders have expressed **satisfaction** *with* the way the business is being run.

A few nouns are followed by different prepositions. Compare:

○ They became **fond** *of* each other at school. *and*

○ Their **fondness** *for* each other grew and many years later they married.

Also: **proud of / pride in, ashamed of / shame about / at**

Some nouns take a preposition where their related verb does not. Compare:

○ I **respect** Louis enormously. *and*

○ I have enormous **respect for** Louis.

Also: **admiration for, ban on, discussion about / on, improvement in, influence on, interview with, lack of, respect for**

Note that many other nouns are commonly followed by *of* phrases which indicate possession, a property, or classify the noun by describing what it relates to. Compare:

○ He **described** the conductor as moving his arms like a windmill. *and*

○ His **description** *of* the conductor was very funny.

B

Some nouns can be followed by **of + -ing** but not usually **to-infinitive**:

○ He's got into the **habit** *of biting* his nails when he's nervous.

Also: **cost, effect, fear, likelihood, possibility, probability, problem, prospect, risk, sign**

Some nouns can be followed by a **to-infinitive** but not usually **of + -ing**:

○ His unhappy childhood explains his **reluctance** *to talk* about his parents.

Note that many of these nouns can also be used with other prepositions **+ -ing** (e.g. **attempt at -ing, reason for -ing,** etc.).

Also: **ability, attempt, concern, decision, desire, determination, failure, inability, permission, proposal, reason, refusal, (un)willingness**

C

Some nouns can sometimes be followed either by **of + -ing** or a **to-infinitive** with a similar meaning, usually after **the**:

○ Do staff have *the* **opportunity** *of taking* unpaid leave? (*or … the* **opportunity** *to take* …)

○ *The* **aim** *of providing* clean drinking water has been achieved. (*or The* **aim** *to provide* …)

Also: **ambition, idea, option, plan**.

However, some nouns, such as **chance**, **sense** and **way**, have more than one meaning and are followed either by **of + -ing** or a **to-infinitive** depending on which meaning is used. Compare:

○ What's the **chance** *of getting* five heads when you toss a coin five times? (= likelihood; *not* … chance to get …) *and*

○ Will you get the **chance** *to visit* Miki in Japan? (= opportunity; *not* … of visiting …)

○ He didn't have the **sense** *to move* away from the puddle of water as the bus went past. (= good judgement; *not* … sense of moving …) *and*

○ Everyone was very friendly and she had a **sense** *of belonging* within a few days of moving to her new school. (= feeling; *not* … sense to belong …)

○ I've got a new **way** *to cook* rice. (= method; *or* … **way** *of cooking* …) *and*

○ She has a really funny **way** *of speaking*. (= manner; *not* … way to speak)

Note also that **of + -ing** usually follows **no / every / the sole / the slightest / (not) any / with the + intention**, but that we can use either **of + -ing** or a **to-infinitive** in most other cases. Compare:

○ I have **no intention** *of lending* Dan any more money. (*not* … no intention to lend …) *and*

○ He announced his **intention** *to stand* in the election. (*or* … **intention** *of standing* …)

Exercises

93.1 **Rewrite the italicised words with a similar meaning using a noun related to the underlined verb. Add an appropriate preposition after the noun.** **A**

1 I *greatly admire* people who work full time and also study for a university degree.
have great admiration for
2 Yasemin is still in hospital but over the last couple of days *her condition has improved*.
3 Rashid *is very proud of* his cooking, and is always eager to talk about his recipes.
4 The website *advises on* how to lose weight.
5 I hate *it when people are cruel to* animals, and would support a ban on hunting.
6 We *discussed* the relative merits of CDs and records *for a long time*.
7 I had to *be vaccinated against typhoid* before entering the country.
8 Benny Carter *significantly influenced* the development of British jazz.
9 *The city lacks affordable housing* and many people are homeless.
10 There is widespread support for *fireworks to be banned*.

93.2 **Complete the sentences with a noun from (i) and either of + -ing or the to-infinitive form of a verb from (ii).** **B**

(i)

ability **cost** **decision**
failure **~~fear~~** **possibility**
reason **risk** **sign**
unwillingness

(ii)

acknowledge **allow** **buy**
~~fly~~ **get** **protect**
remember **stop** **transmit**
worry

1 My mother recently overcame her ....fear of flying.... and had a holiday in South Africa.
2 The snow has been falling now for two days and shows no ....
3 The government has defended its .... coal mining in the national park.
4 Your blood pressure is a little high, but there is no .... about it.
5 She was kept in isolation to reduce the .... the virus to other people in the hospital.
6 The exercise tests children's .... a random sequence of numbers.
7 The government has been criticised for its .... the region from flooding.
8 The .... a new car in Europe is expected to fall in the next year.
9 I knew that there was little .... the job with so many applicants.
10 It's hard to work with Nik because of his .... that he ever makes mistakes.

93.3 **Complete the sentences with an appropriate verb using either of + -ing or a to-infinitive. Give both forms if both are possible.** **C**

1 Although Mia said she would think about it, she never had the slightest intention ....of accepting.... my suggestion.
2 It's going to be cloudy tonight so there is only a fifty-fifty chance .... the eclipse of the moon.
3 It's pouring with rain. I hope David had the sense .... an umbrella with him.
4 The head of the company repeated his intention .... on his 65th birthday.
5 When the History Department closed she was given the option .... another job.
6 Katrin had a very unusual way ...., keeping her feet firmly on the floor and waving her arms around her head.

→ Additional exercise 15 (page 249)

Unit 94
Two- and three-word verbs: word order

A

The meaning of some verbs commonly used with a particular *preposition* or *adverb* (or *particle*) is often different from the meaning of their separate parts. We can call these *two-word verbs*:

☐ I'll quickly **go over** the main points of the report again. (= summarise)

☐ She had to **let** her dress **out** because she'd put on weight. (= make it larger)

Other *three-word verbs* are commonly used with an *adverb* + *preposition*.

☐ Do you think he's really likely to **go through with** his threat? (= do it)

☐ The team has failed to **live up to** earlier expectations. (= achieve what was expected)

These two- and three-word verbs are sometimes also called *phrasal verbs*.

B

Many two-word verbs are usually *intransitive*:

☐ He **grew up** on a farm.

☐ When she **came to** she found herself in hospital.

Also: **crop up, fall through, get up, move off, shop around, splash out**

However, some two-word verbs can be used transitively or intransitively with the same meaning:

☐ I'll **call back** later.

☐ I'll **call** *you* **back** when I get home.

Also: **answer back, clear away, cover up, help out, take over, tidy up, wash up**

and other two-word verbs can be used transitively or intransitively with a different meaning:

☐ The engine **cut out** and the car came to a stop.

☐ I **cut** *the picture* **out** and kept it.

Also: **break in, hold out, look out, look up, pick up, split up, turn in, wind up**

C

With many *transitive* two-word verbs, the object can come before or after the adverb:

☐ I want to **try out** *the local food. or*

☐ I want to **try** *the local food* **out**.

Also: **bring about, clean up, count out, drink up, gather up, get down, leave out, make up, mess up, shoot down, sort out, throw away, use up**

However, if the object is a pronoun it must come between the verb and the adverb:

☐ I won't be able to go to the party. You'll have to **count** *me* **out**. (*not* … count out me.)

and we prefer to put the object after the adverb when the object is long. Compare:

☐ She had to **clean** *the kitchen* **up**. (*or* … **clean up** *the kitchen.*) *and*

☐ She had to **clean up** *the mess in the kitchen*. (*rather than* … clean the mess in the kitchen up.)

D

With some transitive two-word verbs, the object comes between the verb and the adverb:

☐ I just couldn't **tell** *the twins* **apart**. (*not* … tell apart the twins)

Also: **catch out, hear out, order about, pull to, push to, shut up** (= to silence), **stand up**

E

With some transitive two-word verbs, the object follows the preposition:

☐ She **takes after** *her mother*.

☐ I **flicked through** *a magazine* while I was waiting.

Also: **account for, act on, approve of, call on, check into, look after, provide for, result from, run into, take against**

F

With most three-word verbs, the object goes after the preposition:

☐ He really **looks up to** *his older brother*.

Also: **come in for, come up against, cut back on, look down on, put up with**

However, a few three-word verbs usually have the object immediately after the verb. A second noun or noun phrase goes after the preposition:

☐ She tried to **talk** *me* **out of** *the plan*.

Also: **do out of, help on with, let in on, put down as, put up to, take up on**

Exercises

94.1 **If possible or necessary, add an appropriate noun or pronoun in the space.** B

1 The same problem kept cropping .... up, even though I thought I'd fixed it.
2 I'm not sure how you spell it. I'll look .... up in the dictionary.
3 I'm busy at the moment, but I can help .... out this evening.
4 If you tidy .... up, I'll do the cleaning.
5 The deal fell .... through because we couldn't agree a price.

94.2 **Show where the word or phrase in brackets should go in each sentence with a ∧. If it is possible to put it in more than one place, mark these two possibilities.** C

1 The house is untidy, but I haven't got time to sort ∧ out now. (*it*)
2 We've introduced a training scheme to bring about. (*some improvement*)
3 The strike by airline pilots messed up. (*the holiday I'd spent months planning*)
4 I decided to try out for a couple of months. (*the diet*)
5 I used up to buy the car. (*all my savings*)
6 A: I must get my shoes repaired again.
B: But they're so old – why don't you just throw away ? (*them*)

94.3 **Complete each sentence using a two-word verb from (i) and a noun phrase from (ii). If two word orders are possible, give both.** C & D

(i)

get down
~~push to~~
leave out
hear out
make up
shut up

(ii)

the general ideas
her name
me
the thing
my mind
~~the window~~

1 It's freezing in here. Can you push the window to?
2 When she filled the form in she ...., so they sent it back to her.
3 The alarm started when I opened the car door, and now I can't ....
4 There were so many desserts on the menu, I couldn't ....
5 I ...., but the lecturer spoke so quickly I couldn't follow the details.
6 I know you suspect me of cheating, but you've got to give me a chance to explain myself. At least .... before making up your mind.

94.4 **If necessary, correct the word order or give a more likely word order in these sentences. If they are already correct, write ✓.** D, E & F

1 He was always ordering about everyone, getting them to do his work for him.
2 It is assumed that parents will provide their children for until they are 18.
3 She wouldn't let in me on the secret, however hard I tried to persuade her.
4 The snow was so heavy that the police called motorists on to avoid unnecessary journeys.
5 I checked into the hotel at about four.
6 I took up Emre on his offer and stayed in his flat while I was in Ankara.
7 The government has come in for a lot of criticism over its decision to increase spending on defence.
8 My parents didn't approve of our engagement.
9 I had always looked Mr Gao up to, so I was shocked to discover what he had done.

→ Additional exercise 15 (page 249)

Unit
95

There is, there was, etc.

A

When we introduce a new person or thing – to say that this person or thing exists, happens, or is found in a particular place – we can use a sentence beginning **There** + **be**:

- **There was** a loud bang from upstairs. (*not* A loud bang was from upstairs.)
- **There's** nothing to eat. (*not* Nothing is to eat.)

We invert this pattern in questions to ask about the existence etc. of people and things:

- **Is there** anybody in here?

We can also use **there** with auxiliary and modal verbs with **be** (e.g. **has been**, **can be**):

- **There** *must be* some way of contacting her.

with **verb + to be** (e.g. **used to be**, **is supposed to be**, **tends to be**, **appears to be**, **seems to be**):

- **There** *appears to be* a major disagreement between the two presidents.

and some other verbs that indicate existence (e.g. **arise**, **emerge**, **exist**, **remain**):

- During the 1990s **there** *arose* a demand for organic food.

Because we use **there** in this way to *introduce* topics, the noun after **there** + **be** often has an indefinite or non-specific meaning. So we often use **a / an**, **zero article**, **any**(**one**) (+ noun), or **some**(**thing**), **no**(**body**), etc. rather than **the**, **this**, **my**, **your** (+ noun), or a **name**, which give the noun a more definite or specific meaning. Compare:

- **There's** *nobody* here.
- **There was** *something* strange about her. *and*
- *The cat* was in the kitchen. (*more usual than* There was the cat in the kitchen.; *but compare* **There was** *a cat* in the kitchen.)
- *Jan* is waiting for me outside. (*more usual than* There is Jan waiting for me outside.)

When we use **there** + **be** + **the**, this is often done to show a change of topic. Choosing **the**, **that**, etc. + **noun** indicates that we think the topic is already known to the listener or reader:

- … And then **there is the** question of who is going to pay.

B

The verb **be** should agree with the noun that comes after it:

- **There is** a very good *reason* for my decision.
- **There were** too many *people* trying to get into the football stadium.

However, in informal speech we sometimes use **there's** before a plural noun:

- 'Anything to eat?' 'Well, **there's** *some apples* on the table.'

If the noun phrase consists of two or more nouns in a list, we use a singular verb if the first noun is singular or uncountable, and a plural verb if the first noun is plural:

- When I opened the fridge **there was** only *a bottle of milk*, some eggs, and butter.
- When I opened the fridge **there were** only *some eggs*, a bottle of milk, and butter.

C

There + **be** is also used with nouns followed by a **that-**, **wh-**, **to-infinitive** or **-ing** clause:

- **Is there** *a chance* (*that*) Kim could arrive this afternoon?
- **There is** *no reason* (*why*) I can't see you tomorrow.
- **There is** *a small stream which / that* runs at the bottom of the garden.
- **There was** *an attempt to resolve* the dispute at the factory.
- **There was** *a taxi waiting* outside the hotel.

We don't usually leave out a relative pronoun when it is the *subject* of the following finite verb, but can leave it out when it is the *object* (see Unit 53).

D

In formal English we can use a clause with **there being** to introduce a reason for something:

- **There being** no evidence against him, he was released. (= Because there was no evidence).
- **There being** no reports of adverse reactions, the drug is to be sold more widely.

Exercises

95.1 **Rewrite these sentences using there *only* if the answer is likely. Consider why some answers are not likely.** A

1 Coffee was spilt on the table. *There was coffee spilt on the table.*
2 Your dinner is in the oven. *(A sentence with 'There ... ' is unlikely.)*
3 Is something bothering you?
4 A barrier was across the road.
5 The doctor is free to see you now.
6 The problem of what to do with nuclear waste remains.
7 My son is at university.
8 A video is supposed to be on the website, but it doesn't work.
9 No petrol was available anywhere in the city.
10 Can anyone help me?
11 You can follow some general rules.
12 An art gallery used to be around here.

95.2 **The sentences below are all taken from written English. Which is correct or more likely in the space – is or are?** A

1 There …… two pubs and a church on the village green.
2 There …… other possible locations for the car park, but the central one is preferred.
3 There …… no direct rail link between the cities.
4 There …… further rain and strong winds forecast for the next three days.
5 There …… chocolate bars, crisps, and a bottle of cola in the bag if you get hungry.
6 There …… substantial evidence to suggest that the Robinsons lied to the police.
7 There …… no easy answers to the problem of climate change.
8 There …… a shower, television, and two single beds in each room.

95.3 **Join the matching sentence halves using an appropriate relative pronoun (that, which, or who). Write the relative pronoun in brackets if it can be left out.** C & Unit 53

1 There were a lot of people at the party
2 There's a cake in the kitchen
3 There was never any doubt
4 There have been suggestions
5 There aren't many people alive today
6 There are still some old houses in the village
7 There was absolutely nothing
8 There are few people in the company

a an election will be held next month.
b are harder-working than Kristin.
c I've made especially for your birthday.
d I could do to prevent him falling.
e ~~hadn't been invited.~~
f haven't watched TV.
g don't have electricity.
h Bruno would get the job.

1 + e *There were a lot of people at the party who / that hadn't been invited.*

95.4 **Write new sentences with similar meanings beginning There being … .** D

1 As there was no food in the house, they went to a local restaurant.
There being no food in the house, they went to a local restaurant.
2 There was no further business, so the meeting closed at 12:30.

3 The patients were sent home because there was no doctor available.

4 Because the facilities were inadequate at the hotel, the conference was relocated to a nearby university.

Unit
96

It ... 1

A

We can use an introductory **it** at the beginning of a sentence –

☆ to place long or grammatically complex sentence elements at the end (the usual place for them in English). Compare:

○ *To drive without a licence* is illegal. *and*
○ **It is illegal** to drive without a licence.

☆ to focus attention on something by putting it at the end (the usual place for new or important information in English). Compare:

○ *That she wasn't hurt* is a miracle. *and*
○ **It's a miracle** *that she wasn't hurt*.

Introductory **it** is commonly used when the subject is a **to-infinitive** or **that-clause** (as in the examples above), and also when the subject is a **wh-** or **-ing clause** (see also Unit 25):

○ **It is clear** *why* Diego decided to leave Spain.
○ **It is useless** *asking* Sophie to help.

B

We often use introductory **it** with **be + adjective / noun** (as in the examples above), but other patterns with an introductory **it** are possible. Here are some common examples–

☆ **it + verb + to-infinitive**

○ 'I've got a terrible headache.' '**It helps** *to lie down*.'
○ If you want someone to help you, **it doesn't do** *to annoy* them just before you ask. ('[not] do' = (not) advisable, acceptable or enough)

Also: **hurt, pay** (= give an advantage or benefit)

☆ **it + verb + object + to-infinitive**

○ **It shocked** *him to see* her looking so ill.
○ It **means** *a lot to get* a place at university.

After these verbs the object usually refers to a person.

Also: **amaze**, **annoy**, **astonish**, **concern**, **cost**, **frighten**, **hurt**, **scare**, **surprise**, **upset**, **worry** (most are to do with feelings)

We can also use **it + take + object + to-infinitive** when we say what is or was needed in a particular activity; for example, time, resources or characteristics needed. Compare:

○ **It takes** *a lot of effort to play* the flute. *and* ○ To play the flute takes a lot of effort.

☆ **it + verb + that-clause**

○ **It seems** *that* she has lost her memory.
○ **It emerged** *that* he already had a criminal record.

Also: **appear, come about, follow, happen, transpire**

☆ **it + verb + object + that-clause**

○ It suddenly **hit** *me that* Sara wanted to borrow money. (*less likely is* That Sara wanted to borrow money suddenly hit me.)

The object in this pattern usually refers to a person.

Also: **dawn on, not bother, strike** (= occur to), **turn out**, and the highlighted verbs above

C

We don't usually use an **it ...** pattern as an alternative to a **noun** as subject:

○ **Their success** was unexpected. (*not* It was unexpected their success.)

However, in informal contexts, particularly in speech, this is quite common in order to give special emphasis to the information immediately following **it ...**:

○ **It tastes really good**, this new ice cream.

and also to place a longer noun phrase at the end in order to focus attention on it:

○ **It's ridiculous**, all the bureaucracy involved in running a school these days.

Exercises

96.1 Rewrite these sentences beginning **It** ... but only if they would be correct written English; otherwise write ✓ and consider why an **It** ... sentence would be inappropriate. A & C

1 That we continue to monitor the situation is important.
It is important that we continue to monitor the situation.
2 How he stared straight at me was unsettling.
3 Francesco's excellent exam result was surprising.
4 To be a qualified driver is an advantage in the job.
5 Her proposal is quite radical.
6 To put carpet on walls is highly unusual.
7 Robin's new car is a Ferrari.
8 Finding a good plumber is hard these days.

96.2 Complete the sentences using **it** ... followed by a verb from (i) and an expanded form of the notes in (ii). Include an appropriate object where necessary. B

(i)

~~appear~~
not bother
hurt
pay
upset
astonish
concern
not do
strike
scare

(ii)

pedal / bicycle
see / carrying knives
criticise / too much
everyone / see in
he / jealous
~~seriously injured / back~~
plan your journey ahead
hadn't even told / when / going away
discover / also / successful novelist
hear / offended

1 When Laura fell heavily and lay completely still,
it appeared that she had seriously injured her back
2 I knew that Lotta was a journalist for the local paper, but ...
3 Since I broke my ankle last year, ...
4 I told Peter that I had invited Hugo, too. When he became angry ...
5 My comment about Ben's baldness was only meant as a joke and ...
6 There were no curtains in his house, but ...
7 I didn't mind Amy not asking me to go on holiday with her, but ...
8 Children need a lot of praise and ...
9 The boys walked towards me in a threatening way, and ...
10 You can save money by booking tickets in advance, so ...

96.3 What personal or physical characteristics are needed to ...? Use **It takes** ... in your answers. B

1 play a musical instrument well
It takes a lot of determination to play a musical instrument well.
2 build your own house
3 make a speech in front of a group of strangers
4 explain the rules of cricket to someone who doesn't know the game

Now suggest completions for these sentences.

5 It takes bravery ...
6 It takes a lot of organisation to ...
7 It takes a great deal of time ...

Unit
97

It ... 2

A

We can use a pattern with **it** as the object of a verb where **it** refers forward to a clause. **It** can sometimes be followed directly by a **that**-, **if**- or **when-clause** after **can't bear, hate, like, love, resent** and **can't stand**, and by an **if**- or **when-clause** after **dislike, enjoy, prefer** and **understand**:

○ I *hate* **it** *that* you can swim so well and I can't. (*not* I hate that you can swim ...)
○ We always *enjoy* **it** *when* they stay with us. (*not* We always enjoy when they ...)

Some verbs can be followed by **it** and a **that-clause**, particularly in spoken English, or directly by a **that-clause** without **it**:

○ You've just got to **accept (it)** *that* Emil's gone and won't be coming back.

Also: **admit, deny, guarantee, mention**

Many other verbs that can be followed by a **that-clause** or **wh-clause** are not used with **it** in this way:

○ I can't **remember** *when* I last saw her. (*not* ... remember it when ...)

Also: **argue, discover, emphasise, notice, predict**

B

With other verbs used to indicate how we see a particular event or situation, **it** is followed first by an adjective or noun phrase and then a **that-clause**, **to-infinitive clause**, or clause beginning **when**:

○ Officials said they **believe it unlikely** *that* any lasting damage to the environment has been done. (*or* ... they **believe it is unlikely** *that* ...; *not* ... they believe unlikely that ...)

Also: **consider, feel, find** (= discover something from experience), **think**

When we use **leave** and **owe** (= have a responsibility to) with **it** we can use **to somebody + to-infinitive** after **it:**

○ Don't bother to arrange anything. Just **leave it to me to sort out**.
○ She **owed it to her parents to do** well at college.

C

With the verbs **accept**, **regard**, **see**, **take** (= interpret something in a particular way), or **view** we use **it** + **as** + **noun** (or **adjective**) + **clause**:

○ We **see it as an insult** *to have received no reply to our letter.*
○ **I take it as encouraging** *when students attend all my lectures.*

D

It is / was no ... vs There is / was no ...

Here are some common expressions including **It is / was no ...** and **There is / was no ...**:

○ **It's no secret** that he wants a new job.
○ **It's no surprise** that his latest film has been so successful.
○ **It's no use** telling me now. I needed to know a week ago.
○ **It's no good** getting angry. That won't help solve the problem.
○ **It's no coincidence** (*or* **accident**) that they left the party at the same time.
○ **It's no longer** necessary to have a visa to visit the country.

○ **There's no denying** that he's intelligent.
○ I'm afraid **there's no alternative** (*or* **choice**) but to ask her to leave.
○ **There's no hope** of getting more money.
○ **There's no need** to explain how it works; I'll read the manual.
○ **There's no point** in buying an ice-cream maker unless you plan to use it a lot.
○ **There's no question** of agreeing to his demands.
○ **There's no reason** to be pessimistic.
○ **There's no chance** of finding a cure if we don't fund more research.

The sentences with **It is / was no ...** have alternatives in which the **that-**, **-ing** or **to-infinitive** clause is placed at the front, but the sentences with **There is / was no ...** do not. Compare:

○ **It's no secret** that he wants a new job. (*or* That he wants a new job is no secret.) *and*
○ **There's no denying** that he's intelligent. (*but not* That he's intelligent is no denying.)

Exercises

97.1 **Complete each sentence with an appropriate form of a verb from the box. If necessary, add it.** A & B

~~can't bear~~ consider discover enjoy find
leave owe predict prefer remember

1 She ...can't bear it... when people criticise her work, and she gets very upset.
2 I .... hard to understand why the film was made in black and white and not colour.
3 If you .... that you can't get to the meeting on the 16th I'll try to rearrange it.
4 We .... to our supporters to play to the best of our ability in the match.
5 I .... that the camera was on the table when I left the house.
6 I really .... when the weather's hot like this. I'd hate to live in a cold climate.
7 I can't stop you dismantling your motorbike in the kitchen, but I'd .... if you didn't.
8 I think we should .... to the children to do the washing up.
9 I .... that Randa will withdraw from the course within a month.
10 I .... a privilege to have known Mark Jennings.

97.2 **Here are some notes a managing director made for his first speech to the board of directors. In the speech he expanded the notes beginning I + (verb) + it as ..., using the verbs in brackets. Write what he said.** C

1 great honour – asked to become – managing director – Rexco (*take*)

...I take it as a great honour to be asked to become managing director of Rexco....

2 part of my role – significantly reduce Rexco's carbon footprint – next 5 years (*see*)

3 necessary evil – some people – may redundant – in next year (*accept*)

4 important for relations with workforce – make available information – managers' salaries (*view*)

5 unacceptable – modern company – exclude workforce – major decision-making (*regard*)

6 fundamental principle of company – suppliers of raw materials – given fair price for products (*take*)

97.3 **Complete the sentences with an appropriate it ... or there ... phrase from section D opposite. Suggest alternatives where possible.** D

1 ...It's no coincidence... that Karlsbad has won the ice hockey tournament for the last three years. It is a very rich club and its training facilities are excellent.
2 My contact lens must have fallen out in the snow, so .... of finding it.
3 .... that Julia and Jakub have split up. Everyone in the office knows.
4 I know your exam result wasn't good, but .... getting depressed about it.
5 Your broken arm will take some time to mend, but .... why you shouldn't be playing tennis again by the summer.
6 As the car ferry isn't running because of the high winds, ... but to drive 100 kilometres around the lake.
7 .... possible to buy tickets at the theatre. You have to buy them online.
8 Bungee jumping might be dangerous, but .... that it's very exciting.

Unit
98

Focusing: **it-clauses** and **what-clauses**

A

Focusing with it-clauses

We can use an **it-clause** with **be** to focus attention on the information that immediately follows **it + (be)**. A sentence like this is sometimes called a *cleft sentence*. The clause after the **it-clause** (usually a **that-clause**) contains information that is already known or considered to be less important:

- ○ 'Lea bought the car from Olav.' 'No, **it was Olav** *that* bought the car from Lea.'
- ○ I don't mind her criticising me, but **it's how she does it** *that* I object to.
- ○ **It was to show how much I cared for her** *that* I bought her the necklace.

We sometimes use **which** or **who** instead of **that**; **when** and **where** can also be used, but usually only in informal English; and note that **how** or **why** can't replace **that**:

- ○ Karl was always there to help her, and **it was to him** *that / who* she now turned for support.
- ○ 'Ida's seriously ill in hospital.' 'But **it was only last Sunday** *when / that* I was playing tennis with her.'
- ○ **It was in Warsaw** *where / that* the film was made.
- ○ 'Was it by cutting staff that he managed to save the firm?' 'No, **it was by improving distribution** *that* he made it profitable.' (*not* ... how he made it profitable.)

B

Focusing with what-clauses

We can also use a **what-clause** followed by **be** to focus attention on certain information in a sentence (= another form of *cleft sentence)*. This pattern is particularly common in conversation. The information we want to focus attention on is outside the **what-clause**. Compare:

- ○ We gave them some home-made cake. *and*
- ○ **What we gave them** *was* some home-made cake.

We often do this if we want to introduce a new topic; to give a reason, instruction or explanation; or to correct something that has been said or done. In the following examples, the information in focus is in italics:

- ○ **What I'd like you to work on is** *the revision exercise on the website*.
- ○ Isa arrived two hours late: **what had happened was** that *his bicycle chain had broken*.
- ○ 'We've only got this small bookcase – will that do?' 'No, **what I was looking for was** *something much bigger and stronger*.'

We can often put the **what-clause** either at the beginning or the end of the sentence:

- ○ **What upset me most was** *his rudeness. or*
- ○ *His rudeness was* **what upset me most**.

To focus attention on an *action* performed by someone, we use a sentence with **what + subject + do + be + to-infinitive** clause. We can't use an **it-clause** to do this (see **A**):

- ○ Luis lost his job and was short of money, so **what he did was (to) sell** his flat and move in with his brother. (*not* ... so it was (to) sell his flat that he did.)

C

The pattern in **B** is only usually used with **what-clauses**. Instead of placing other **wh-clauses** (beginning **how**, **when**, **where**, **who**, **why**) at the beginning of the sentence we prefer to use a noun which has a meaning related to the **wh-word** (e.g. **reason** rather than **why**; **place** rather than **where**) followed by a **that-** or **wh-clause.** Here are some examples:

- ○ **The** only **reason** (**why / that**) I left the party early was that I was feeling unwell. (*rather than* Why I left the party early was ...)
- ○ **The place** (**where / that**) you should play football is the playground, not the classroom.
- ○ **Somebody** (**who / that**) I enjoy reading is Peter Carey.
- ○ **The time** (**when / that**) I work best is early morning.

Exercises

98.1 **Complete the rewritten sentences to focus attention on the underlined information. Start with it + be and use an appropriate wh-word or that.** Ⓐ

1 Mark's known for ages that his parents are coming to stay with us this weekend, but he only told me yesterday. *Mark's known for ages that his parents are coming to stay with us this weekend, but …* it was only yesterday that / when he told me.

2 Helena has been feeling a bit depressed for some time, so I booked a holiday in Amsterdam to cheer her up. *Helena has been feeling a bit depressed for some time, so …*

3 It's not that I don't want to have dinner with you tonight; I can't come because I've got so much work to do. *It's not that I don't want to have dinner with you tonight; …*

4 I had my wallet when I went into the sports hall, so I lost it somewhere in there. *I had my wallet when I went into the sports hall, so …*

5 She doesn't find learning languages very easy, and she improved her Spanish only by studying very hard. *She doesn't find learning languages very easy, and …*

6 I have had a great deal of help from my parents and two brothers in my research, and I dedicate this thesis to my family. *I have had a great deal of help from my parents and two brothers in doing my research, and …*

98.2 **Write B's responses beginning No, what …, correcting what was said in A's question. Use the notes in brackets.** Ⓑ

1 A: Did you say that Rudi was going to live in Austria? (*holiday / Austria*)
B: No, what I said was that he was going on holiday to Austria.

2 A: Do you hope to sell your Picasso paintings? (*be put into / public art gallery*)
B: .

3 A: Did it annoy you that Carla came so late? (*not apologise*)
B: .

4 A: Did you mean to give Ella your bike? (*could borrow it / until needed again*)
B: .

Now give similar responses which focus on the action.

5 A: Did you watch the football on TV last night? (*get brother / record it / watch tonight*)
B: No, what I did was (to) get my brother to record it and I'll watch it tonight.

6 A: This steak tastes delicious. Did you fry it? (*put oil and soy sauce on / grill*)
B: .

7 A: Did you buy Megan the coat she wanted? (*give / money towards it*)
B: .

8 A: Did you fly from Sydney to Brisbane. (*hire a car / drive all the way*)
B: .

98.3 **Complete B's responses using one of the phrases from section C opposite and the information in brackets. Put the information in the right order and add an appropriate form of be.** Ⓒ

1 A: I suppose Paul got the job because of his qualifications. (*uncle owns company*)
B: *Well, actually, I think …* the reason why / that Paul got the job was that his uncle owns the company.

2 A: Do you know anyone who could mend my computer? (*might be able / help / Petra*)
B: *I don't know if she's free, but* .

3 A: You grew up in this village, didn't you? (*between this village and next*)
B: *In fact* .

4 A: In what period of your life do you think you were happiest? (*lived Australia*)
B: *I suppose* .

Unit
99

Inversion 1

A

In statements it is usual for the verb to follow the subject, but sometimes this word order is reversed. We can refer to this as *inversion*. There are two main types of inversion: when the verb comes before the subject (inversion is often optional), and when the auxiliary comes before the subject and the rest of the verb phrase follows the subject (inversion is usually necessary):

- *Alex* **stood** in the doorway. → In the doorway **stood** *Alex*. (*or* … Alex stood.)
- *I* **had** rarely **seen** such a view. → Rarely **had** *I* **seen** such a view. (*not* Rarely I had seen …)

Inversion brings about *fronting*, the re-ordering of information in a sentence to give emphasis in a particular place. Often this causes an element to be postponed until later in the sentence, focusing attention on it.

B

In conversation we use **Here comes + noun** and **There goes + noun**, with inversion of verb and subject, to talk about things and people moving towards or away from the speaker:

- **Here comes** the bus.
- **There goes** Per Alvin, the conductor.

Here comes … is also used to say that something is going to happen soon, and **There goes …** is used to talk about things (particularly money) being lost and to say that something (such as a phone or door bell) is ringing:

- **Here comes** lunch.
- My bike's been stolen! **There goes** £100!
- **There goes** the phone. Can you answer it?

We also put the verb before the subject when we use adverbs expressing direction of movement, such as **along**, **away**, **back**, **down**, **in**, **off**, **out**, **up** with verbs such as **come**, **fly**, **go**. This pattern is found particularly in narrative, to mark a change in events:

- The door opened and **in came** the doctor. (*less formally* … and the doctor came in.)
- As soon as I let go of the string, **up went the balloon**, high into the sky. (*less formally* … the balloon went up …)

For more on inversion after adverbs of place and direction, see Unit 76A.

C

We can use clauses with inversion instead of certain kinds of **if-clause** (see Unit 83). Compare:

It would be a serious setback, **if** *the talks* **were to fail**.	It would be a serious setback, **were** *the talks* **to fail**.
If *you should* **need** more information, please telephone our main office.	**Should** *you* **need** more information, please telephone our main office.
If *Andy* **had asked**, I would have been able to help.	**Had** *Andy* **asked**, I would have been able to help.

The sentences with inversion are rather more formal than those with 'if'. Note that in negative clauses with inversion, we don't use contracted forms:

- **Had** *the plane* **not been diverted**, they would have arrived early. (*not* Hadn't the plane …)

D

In formal written language we commonly use inversion after **as** and **than** in comparisons:

- Paper was invented in China, **as** *was* **the process of printing**.
- Most young people did not vote in the election, **as** *was* **the case in 2010**.
- I believed, **as** *did* **my colleagues**, that the plan would work.
- Research shows that parents watch more television **than** *do* **their children**.

Note that we don't invert subject and verb after **as** or **than** when the subject is a pronoun:

- We now know a lot more about the universe **than** *we* **did** ten years ago. (*not* … than did we ten years ago.)

Exercises

99.1 **Complete the sentences with an appropriate adverb and a form of either come or go.** B

1 We'd just got to the top of the hill when ……down came…… the rain and we got soaked.
2 Just when you've bought a computer that you think will last a lifetime, …………………… some new software that needs an even bigger hard drive.
3 Whenever I ask the class a question, …………………… their hands and they sit patiently until I choose one of them to answer.
4 I asked Ryan to get three kilos of potatoes from the supermarket and he only bought one kilo, so …………………… he …………………… to get some more.
5 After I'd been waiting for an hour, the door opened and …………………… the nurse, who said the dentist would be able to see me now.
6 I'd lost hope of getting the cat out of the tree, when …………………… a man with a ladder.
7 As soon as I'd given Daisy some pocket money, …………………… she to buy sweets.

99.2 **Match the sentence halves and write new sentences beginning Were …, Should …, or Had … .** C

1 If Kahn had not resigned as party leader, …
2 If you do not wish to receive further information about our products, …
3 If the plane were ever to be built, …
4 If the ice hockey team wins again today, …
5 If I were offered the job, …
6 If a car had been coming the other way, …
7 If there had been a referendum on the issue, …
8 If you are not able to afford the SXL3, …
9 If Charles Dickens were alive today,…

a it would cut the journey time from New York to Tokyo by four hours.
b there are less expensive models in the range.
c ~~he would have been sacked.~~
d I would have no hesitation in accepting.
e he would be writing novels about the homeless in London.
f it is unlikely that the electorate would have supported the government.
g it will be their tenth consecutive victory.
h click on the box below.
i I might have been seriously injured.

1 + c ……Had Kahn not resigned as party leader, he would have been sacked.……

99.3 **Report the information in the table. Write three sentences using sentence frame (i) and three using sentence frame (ii).**

Household expenditure (% of total income)

	Housing	Food and drink	Clothing	Transport	Recreation
Europe 1970	22	12	3	8	10
America 1970	15	14	2	6	12
Europe Today	17	8	5	12	9
America Today	16	15	3	7	13

(i) *Europeans / Americans* *spend / spent* *more / less* of their income on … *today / in 1970* than *do / did* *Europeans / Americans*

1 ……Americans spend more of their income on food and drink today than do Europeans.……

(ii) *Europeans / Americans* *spend / spent* *more / less* of their income on … than on … *today / in 1970*, as *is / was* the case *today / in 1970*.

99.4 **Rewrite these sentences with a similar meaning using as or than + be or do.** D

1 I was opposed to the new road. Everyone else in the village was opposed to it, too.
……I was opposed to the new road, as was everyone else in the village.……
2 Kamal went to Oxford University. His sister went there, too. *Kamal went …*
3 Compared with people in developed nations, people in poorer countries consume a far smaller proportion of the earth's resources. *People in poorer countries …*
4 Compared to five years ago, he is a much better teacher. *He is …*
5 Dan is a keen golfer. His wife is a keen golfer, too. *Dan is …*

→ **Additional exercise 16** (page 250)

Unit
100 Inversion 2

A

Inversion after negative adverbials

In formal and literary language in particular, we use negative adverbials at the beginning of a clause. The subject and first auxiliary are inverted, and **do** is used with a simple tense verb after –

☆ the time adverbials **never** (**before**), **rarely**, **seldom**; **barely** / **hardly** / **scarcely** ... **when** / **before**; **no sooner** ... **than**:

☐ **Seldom do** *we* **have** goods returned to us because they are faulty.
☐ **Hardly had** *everybody* **taken** their seats when Dr Lee began her lecture.

☆ **only** + **a time expression**, as in **only after**, **only later**, **only if**, **only once**, **only then**, **only when**:

☐ She bought a newspaper and some milk at the shop on the corner. **Only later did** *she* **realise** that she'd been given the wrong change.
☐ **Only when she apologises will** *I* **speak** to her again.

☆ **only** + other prepositional phrases beginning **only by** ..., **only in** ..., **only with** ..., etc.:

☐ **Only by chance had** *Carl* **discovered** where the birds were nesting.
☐ Maria had to work in the evenings. **Only in this way was** *she* **able to complete** the report.

☆ expressions such as **at no time**, **in no way**, **on no account**, **under** / **in no circumstances**:

☐ **At no time did** *they* actually **break** the rules of the game.
☐ **Under no circumstances are** *passengers* **permitted** to open the doors themselves.

☆ expressions with **not** ..., such as **not only**, **not until**, **not since**, **not for one moment** and also **not a** + **noun**:

☐ **Not until August did** *the government* **order** an inquiry into the accident.
☐ **Not a word had** *she* **written** since the exam had started.

☆ **little** with a negative meaning:

☐ **Little do** *they* **know** how lucky they are to live in such a wonderful house. (= 'they don't know' or 'they don't know sufficiently')

Note that inversion can occur after a clause beginning **only after** / **if** / **when** or **not until**:

☐ **Only when the famine gets worse will** *world governments* **begin** to act.
☐ **Not until the train pulled into the station did** *Miguel* **find** that his coat had gone.

B

Inversion after so + adjective ... that; such + be ... that; neither ... / nor ...

We can use **so** + **adjective** at the beginning of a clause to emphasise the adjective. When we do this, the subject and first auxiliary are inverted, and **do** is used with a simple tense verb:

☐ **So successful** *was* **her business**, that Lana was able to retire at the age of 50.
☐ **So dangerous** *did* **weather conditions** *become*, that all mountain roads were closed.

We can use **such** + **be** at the beginning of a clause to emphasise the extent or degree of something:

☐ **Such** *is* **the popularity** of the play that the theatre is likely to be full every night.

We use inversion after **neither** and **nor** when these words begin a clause to introduce a negative addition to a previous negative clause or sentence:

☐ For some time after the explosion Jack couldn't hear, and **neither** *could* **he** *see*.
☐ The council never wanted the new supermarket to be built, **nor** *did* **local residents**.

Note that we also use inversion in **Neither** / **Nor do I**, **Neither** / **Nor does Diane** (etc.) and in **So do I**, **So does Maya** (etc.).

Exercises

100.1 **Rewrite the sentences with a similar meaning beginning with a word / phrase from the box.** A

only if **barely** **only with** ~~**rarely**~~ **at no time** **little**

1 A new film has not often before produced such positive reviews.
Rarely has a new film produced such positive reviews.
2 The public was never in any danger.
3 He only felt entirely relaxed with close friends and family.
4 The match won't be cancelled unless the pitch is frozen.
5 I didn't know then that Carmen and I would be married one day.
6 He had only just entered the water when it became clear he couldn't swim.

Now do the same using these words and phrases. A

only once **only in** **on no account** **hardly** **not only** **not for one moment**

7 You must not light the fire if you are alone in the house.
8 There was never any rivalry between the three brothers.
9 I wasn't only wet through, I was freezing cold.
10 I had only ever climbed this high once before.
11 The audience had only just taken their seats when the conductor stepped onto the stage.
12 He has only been acknowledged to be a great author in the last few years.

100.2 **Complete these sentences in any appropriate way using the words from the box.** B

alike **boring** **complicated** **dominance** ~~**interest**~~ **strength**

1 Such is the interest in Dr Lowe's talk that it will be held in a bigger lecture theatre.
2 Such .... that few buildings were left standing.
3 Such .... that she hasn't lost a match for over three years.
4 So .... that even their parents couldn't tell them apart.
5 So .... that it even took a computer three days to solve it.
6 So .... that most of the students went to sleep.

100.3 **Correct any mistakes in this news article.** Units 99 & 100

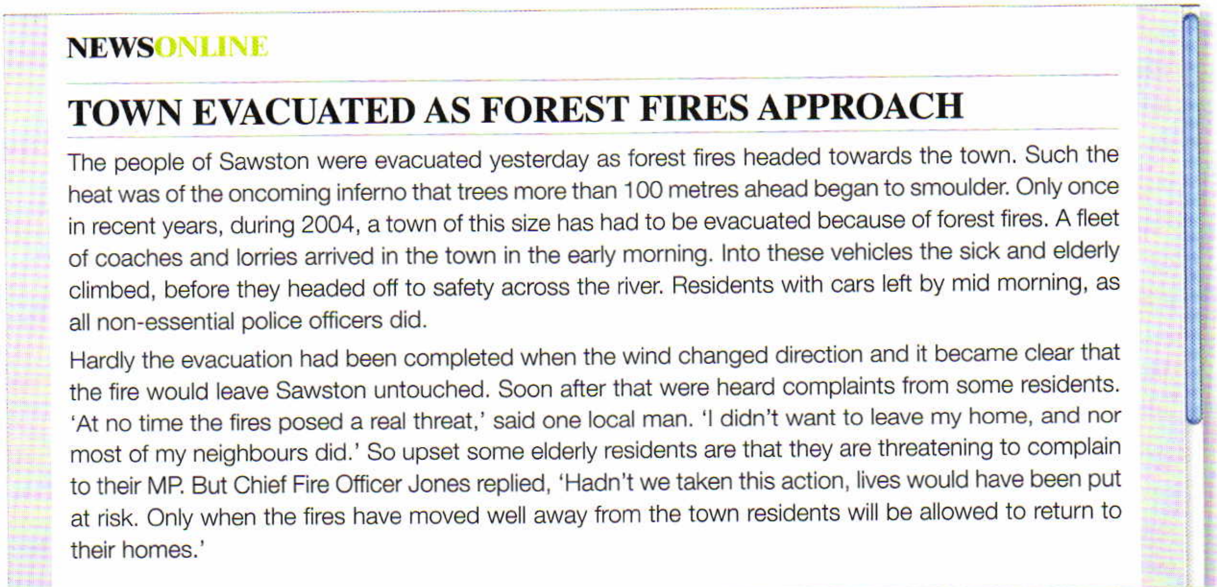

NEWSONLINE

TOWN EVACUATED AS FOREST FIRES APPROACH

The people of Sawston were evacuated yesterday as forest fires headed towards the town. Such the heat was of the oncoming inferno that trees more than 100 metres ahead began to smoulder. Only once in recent years, during 2004, a town of this size has had to be evacuated because of forest fires. A fleet of coaches and lorries arrived in the town in the early morning. Into these vehicles the sick and elderly climbed, before they headed off to safety across the river. Residents with cars left by mid morning, as all non-essential police officers did.

Hardly the evacuation had been completed when the wind changed direction and it became clear that the fire would leave Sawston untouched. Soon after that were heard complaints from some residents. 'At no time the fires posed a real threat,' said one local man. 'I didn't want to leave my home, and nor most of my neighbours did.' So upset some elderly residents are that they are threatening to complain to their MP. But Chief Fire Officer Jones replied, 'Hadn't we taken this action, lives would have been put at risk. Only when the fires have moved well away from the town residents will be allowed to return to their homes.'

→ Additional exercise 16 (page 250)

Appendix 1
Irregular verbs

bare infinitive	*past simple*	*past participle (-ed form)*
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke	awoken
be	was / were	been
bear	bore	borne
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
bet	bet	bet
bind	bound	bound
bite	bit	bitten
bleed	bled	bled
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast
build	built	built
burn[1]	burnt	burnt
burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought
cast	cast	cast
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
cling	clung	clung
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept
cut	cut	cut
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug	dug
dive	dived	dived
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream[1]	dreamt	dreamt
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
dwell[1]	dwelt	dwelt
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought

bare infinitive	*past simple*	*past participle (-ed form)*
find	found	found
fit[1]	fit	fit
flee	fled	fled
fling	flung	flung
fly	flew	flown
forbid	forbade[2]	forbidden
forecast[1]	forecast	forecast
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang[1]	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
kneel[1]	knelt	knelt
knit[1]	knit	knit
know	knew	known
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
lean[1]	leant	leant
leap[1]	leapt	leapt
learn[1]	learnt	learnt
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie[4]	lay	lain
light[1]	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
mow[3]	mowed	mown
pay	paid	paid
prove	proved	proven

bare infinitive	*past simple*	*past participle (-ed form)*
put	put	put
quit	quit	quit
read	read[5]	read[5]
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
saw[3]	sawed	sawn
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
seek	sought	sought
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
sew[3]	sewed	sewn
shake	shook	shaken
shear[3]	sheared	shorn
shed	shed	shed
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shrink	shrank	shrunk
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
slide	slid	slid
sling	slung	slung
smell[1]	smelt	smelt
sow[3]	sowed	sown
speak	spoke	spoken
speed[1]	sped	sped
spell[1]	spelt	spelt
spend	spent	spent
spill[1]	spilt	spilt

bare infinitive	*past simple*	*past participle (-ed form)*
spin	spun	spun / span
spit	spat	spat
split	split	split
spoil[1]	spoilt	spoilt
spread	spread	spread
spring	sprang	sprung
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
stink	stank	stunk
strike	struck	struck
strive	strove	striven
swear	swore	sworn
sweep	swept	swept
swell[3]	swelled	swollen
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
thrust	thrust	thrust
tread	trod	trodden
understand	understood	understood
wake[1]	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
weave[1]	wove	woven
weep	wept	wept
wet[1]	wet	wet
win	won	won
wind	wound	wound
wring	wrung	wrung
write	wrote	written

[1] These verbs have two past simple and two past participle forms, both the ones given and regular forms (e.g. burn; burnt / burned; burnt / burned).

[2] 'forbad' is also sometimes used, but is old fashioned.

[3] These verbs have two past participle forms, the one given and a regular form (e.g. mow; mowed; mown / mowed).

[4] When *lie* means 'deliberately to say something untrue' it is regular ('lie / lied / lied').

[5] Pronounced /red/ .

Appendix 2

Passive verb forms

If an agent is mentioned, it goes in a prepositional phrase with **by** after the verb (see also Unit 24).

Present simple		
Active:	**tell(s)**	John **tells** me that you're thinking of leaving.
Passive:	**am / is / are told**	**I'm told** (by John) that you're thinking of leaving.
Past simple		
Active:	**told**	John **told** me that you were leaving.
Passive:	**was / were told**	I **was told** (by John) that you were leaving.
Present perfect		
Active:	**have / has told**	John **has told** me that you are leaving.
Passive:	**have / has been told**	I **have been told** (by John) that you are leaving.
Past perfect		
Active:	**had told**	John **had** already **told** me that you were leaving.
Passive:	**had been told**	I **had** already **been told** (by John) that you were leaving.
Present continuous		
Active:	**am / is / are telling**	John **is** always **telling** me that you are leaving.
Passive:	**am / is / are being told**	I **am** always **being told** (by John) that you are leaving.
Past continuous		
Active:	**was / were telling**	John **was** always **telling** me that you were leaving.
Passive:	**was / were being told**	I **was** always **being told** (by John) that you were leaving.
Future simple		
Active:	**will tell**	I **will tell** John that you are leaving.
Passive:	**will be told**	John **will be told** (by me) that you are leaving.
Future perfect		
Active:	**will have told**	By tomorrow I **will have told** John that you are leaving.
Passive:	**will have been told**	By tomorrow John **will have been told** (by me) that you are leaving.
Present perfect continuous (rare in the passive)		
Active:	**has / have been telling**	John **has been telling** me for ages that you are leaving.
Passive:	**has / have been being told**	I **have been being told** (by John) for ages that you are leaving.

Modal verbs with passives

Active:	**should / could / might / ought to** (etc.) **tell**	You **should tell** John.
Passive:	**should / could / might / ought to** (etc.) **be told**	John **should be told**.
Active:	**should / could / might / ought to** (etc.) **have told**	You **should have told** John.
Passive:	**should / could / might / ought to** (etc.) **have been told**	John **should have been told**.
Active:	**should / could / might / ought to** (etc.) **have been telling**	You **should have been telling** John while I was outside.
Passive:	**should / could / might / ought to** (etc.) **have been being told**	John **should have been being told** while I was outside.

Other passive verb forms are very rare.

Glossary

active
In an active clause or active sentence, the grammatical subject is the person or thing that performs the action given in the verb (e.g. Dan wrote the book). Compare PASSIVE.

adjective
A word that describes a noun (e.g. an *interesting* book) or a pronoun (e.g. a *red* one). **Gradable adjectives** can be used to say that a person or thing has more or less of this quality (e.g. She's very *happy*), while **non-gradable adjectives** can't (e.g. It's *impossible*. We can't say 'It's very impossible'). **Classifying adjectives** say that something is of a particular type (e.g. *atomic*, *initial*). **Emphasising adjectives** stress how strongly we feel about something (e.g. *complete* nonsense). **Qualitative adjectives** say what qualities a person or thing has (e.g. *big*, *rich*). See also **grading** ADVERBS and **non-grading** ADVERBS.

adjective phrase
A group of words where the main word is an adjective (e.g. it's *extremely important*; it wasn't *strong enough*).

adverb
A word that describes or gives more information (when, how, where, etc.) about a verb (e.g. He ran *quickly*), adjective (e.g. an *extremely* expensive car), another adverb (e.g. She did it *very* easily), or phrase (e.g. They live *just* across the road.). Types of adverb include: **adverbs of manner** (e.g. *slowly*, *violently*) which we use to say how something is done; **connecting adverbs** (e.g. *consequently*, *similarly*); **time adverbs** (e.g. *tomorrow*, *already*); **place adverbs** (e.g. *upstairs*, *outside*); **direction adverbs** (e.g. *backwards*, *through*); **comment adverbs** (e.g. *apparently*, *personally*) which we use to make a comment on what we are saying; **viewpoint adverbs** (e.g. *financially*, *politically*) which we use to make clear from what point of view we are speaking; **adverbs of indefinite frequency** (e.g. *always*, *never*); **degree adverbs** (e.g. *completely*, *quite*) which give information about the extent or degree of something; **focus adverbs** (e.g. *just*, *even*) which we use to focus on a particular word or phrase. **Grading adverbs** (e.g. *extremely*, *very*) are used with **gradable** ADJECTIVES. **Non-grading adverbs** (e.g. *completely*, *mainly*) are used with **non-gradable** ADJECTIVES.

adverbial
A word or group of words that says when, how, where, etc. something happens. They may consist of an ADVERB (e.g. *quietly*), a PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE (e.g. *through the door*), a NOUN PHRASE (e.g. *next week*), or an ADVERBIAL CLAUSE (e.g. *after she left*).

adverbial clause
A type of **subordinate** CLAUSE that says when, how, where, etc. something happens (e.g. *Before I went to school this morning*, I did my homework).

affirmative sentence
A statement (i.e. not a question) that is positive, not negative.

agent
The person or thing that performs the action described in a verb. Usually it is the subject in an active clause and comes after 'by ...' in a passive clause.

article
The word *the* is the **definite article** and the word *a* (*an* before vowels) is the **indefinite article**. When there is no article before a noun we refer to this as the **zero article**.

auxiliary verbs
The verbs *be*, *have* and *do* when they are used with a main verb to form questions, negatives, tenses, passive forms, etc. MODAL VERBS are also auxiliary verbs.

Glossary

clause
A group of words that contains a verb. A clause may be a complete sentence or a part of a sentence. A **main clause** can exist as a separate sentence, while a **subordinate clause** cannot (e.g. *If I see Matt at work* [= subordinate clause], *I'll invite him over this evening* [= main clause]). Types of clause include: **to-infinitive clause** (e.g. *To become a doctor* takes years of study); **present participle(-ing) clause** (e.g. *Feeling hungry*, I went into the kitchen); **past participle (-ed) clause** (e.g. *Built during the 1970s*, the building is now in need of repair); **being + past participle (-ed) clause** (e.g. *Being unemployed*, Tom had a lot of time on his hands); **having + past participle (-ed) clause** (e.g. *Having seen the doctor*, I went straight home). See also CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, RELATIVE CLAUSE.

cleft sentence
A sentence in which focus is given to either the subject or object using a pattern beginning 'It ...' (e.g. It was my brother who lent me the money) or 'What ...' (e.g. What you need is a holiday).

complement
A word or phrase that follows a LINKING VERB and describes the SUBJECT (e.g. Linda is a *lawyer*) or OBJECT (e.g. I found the food *inedible*). A complement may also be an ADVERBIAL or PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE which completes the meaning of a verb. Some verbs need a complement (e.g. The disease originated *in Britain*; 'The disease originated' would be incomplete).

compound
A **compound noun** consists of two or more words together used as a noun (e.g. a *language school*). A **compound adjective** consists of two or more words together used as an adjective (e.g. They were *well-behaved*).

conditional
A **conditional clause** usually starts with 'if', but other patterns are possible (e.g. *Had it not rained*, Spain would have won). A **conditional sentence** contains a conditional clause. A distinction can be made between **real conditionals**, which suggest that the situation is or was true, or may have been or may become true (e.g. If she makes a promise, she keeps it) and **unreal conditionals**, which suggest that the situation is imaginary or untrue (e.g. If you had asked me, I would have helped).

conjunction
A word such as *and*, *but*, *if*, *while*, *after*, *because* which connects words, phrases, or clauses in a sentence. Compare SENTENCE CONNECTOR.

countable
A **countable noun** can be both singular and plural (e.g. *cup / cups*). An **uncountable noun** doesn't have a plural form (e.g. *electricity*, but not 'electricities').

determiner
A word that goes in front of a noun to identify what the noun refers to (e.g. *this*, *some*, *the*, *a / an*, *each*, *all*, *my*). **Possessive determiners** (also called **possessive adjectives**) are words such as *my*, *your* and *their*.

direct speech
Speech that is written using the exact words of the speaker, without any changes. Compare REPORTED SPEECH.

imperative
An **imperative clause** uses the **bare** INFINITIVE form of a verb for such things as giving orders and making suggestions (e.g. *Go to bed!*).

infinitive
The form of a verb that usually goes after 'to'. The form can be either the **to-infinitive** (e.g. *to sing*, *to eat*) or the **bare infinitive** (e.g. *sing*, *eat*).

intransitive verb
A verb that doesn't take an object (e.g. She *smiled*). Compare TRANSITIVE VERB.

inversion
Changing the usual word order so that the verb comes before the subject (e.g. Up *went the balloon*).

linking verb
A verb (e.g. *be*, *become*, *appear*) that connects a SUBJECT with its COMPLEMENT.

modal verbs
A group of verbs (*can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *must*, *ought to*, *shall*, *should*, *will*, *would*) that give information about such things as possibility, necessity, and obligation. **Semi-modal verbs** (*used to*, *need*, *dare*, *had better*, *have* (*got*) *to*, *be able to*) have similar meanings to modal verbs.

non-affirmative
Referring to a lack of positive, affirmative meaning; for example, in most questions and negatives. However, questions which expect a positive reply are affirmative. The terms 'non-assertive' and 'assertive' are sometimes used for 'non-affirmative' and 'affirmative'.

noun
A word that refers to a person, place, thing, quality, etc. A **collective noun** refers to a group of people or things (e.g. *audience*, *crowd*, *herd*). See also COUNTABLE NOUN.

noun phrase
A group of words where the main word is a noun (e.g. I've been talking to *the woman across the road*; We spoke to *several small children*).

object
The **direct object** is the person or thing affected by the action of the verb (e.g. I put *the book* [= direct object] back on the shelf). The **indirect object** is the person or thing who benefits from the action or who receives something (e.g. I gave *my mother* [= indirect object] some flowers [= direct object]). Compare SUBJECT.

participle
The **present participle** is the **-ing form** of a verb (e.g. *walking*, *singing*, *eating*) used, for example, in continuous tenses. The **past participle** is the **-ed** form of a verb (e.g. *walked*, *sang*, *eaten*) used, for example, in perfect tenses. A **participle adjective** is one formed from the present or past participle of a verb (e.g. the candidates *applying*, a *broken* plate). A **participle clause** has a present participle or past participle verb form (e.g. *Feeling unwell*, he went to bed; The person *appointed to the post* will have a difficult job to do).

particle
An adverb or preposition that follows a verb in TWO-WORD VERBS and THREE-WORD VERBS (e.g. What time did you *get in*? [in = adverb]; I *flicked through* the magazine [through = preposition]; She *looks up to* her mother [up = adverb, to = preposition]).

passive
In a passive clause or passive sentence, the grammatical subject is the person or thing that experiences the effect of the action given in the verb (e.g. The book was written by Dan). Compare ACTIVE.

performative
A performative is a verb which states the action that is performed when a speaker uses the verb (e.g. I *promise* I'll do it tomorrow; I *apologise*).

phrasal verb
A verb together with a following adverb and / or a preposition that has a single meaning (e.g. *set off*, *look up to*). Compare 'I *ran across* Tanya at the concert' (= met unexpectedly; a phrasal verb) and 'She *ran across* the road' (= a PREPOSITIONAL VERB).

possessive
The possessive form of a noun ends in either *-'s* (e.g. *Marta's* car) or *-s'* (e.g. the *girls'* changing room).

preposition
A word such as *in*, *on*, or *by* that comes before a noun, pronoun, noun phrase or **-ing** form (e.g. *in* March, *above* my uncle's head, *by* investing).

prepositional phrase
A group of words that consists of a PREPOSITION and its **prepositional object** (a noun, pronoun, noun phrase or **-ing** form) (e.g. *behind our house*, *across it*).

prepositional verb
A verb and a following preposition (e.g. *believe in*, *consist of*, *look after*). Compare PHRASAL VERB.

pronoun
A word that is used instead of a noun or noun phrase. Pronouns include **personal pronouns** (e.g. *I*, *she*, *me*), **reflexive pronouns** (e.g. *myself*, *herself*), **possessive pronouns** (e.g. *mine*, *yours*), and RELATIVE PRONOUNS (e.g. *who*, *which*).

quantifier
A word or phrase that goes before a noun or noun phrase to talk about the quantity of something (e.g. *a little* water, *many of* the women in the room).

question
A **wh-question** begins with a WH-WORD (e.g. *Where are you going?*). A **yes / no question** is one that can be answered with 'yes' or 'no' (e.g. *Do you like coffee?*). An **echo question** repeats part of a previous utterance and asks for a repetition of all or part of it (e.g. 'I'm moving to Alaska.' '*You're moving where?*'). We can ask an **indirect question** by putting it into a **subordinate** CLAUSE beginning with a WH-WORD or with *if* or *whether* (e.g. Can you tell me *where you live*?).

relative clause
A kind of **subordinate** CLAUSE that describes a noun that comes before it in a **main** CLAUSE. A **defining relative clause** says which person or thing is being talked about (e.g. A friend *who lives in London* is getting married). A **non-defining relative clause** gives more information about the noun (e.g. My bicycle, *which I've left outside your house*, is over 20 years old). A **nominal relative clause** begins with a WH-WORD or *whatever*, *whenever*, etc. and functions as a NOUN PHRASE in a sentence (e.g. *What I need now* is a long, hot bath). A **reduced relative clause** usually begins with an **-ing** (present participle) or **-ed** (past participle) form and has a similar meaning to a relative clause (e.g. I met the people *living in our old house* [= ... who live in our old house], The new rules only affect people *born before 1960* [= ... who were born before 1960]).

relative pronoun
A pronoun such as *who*, *which*, or *that* which is used at the beginning of a relative clause.

relative word
Words including RELATIVE PRONOUNS and others (e.g. *whereby*, *why*) that can begin a RELATIVE CLAUSE.

reported speech
Speech that is reported without using the exact words of the speaker. Sometimes called 'indirect speech'.

reporting clause & reported clause
A statement that reports what people think or say is often divided into a **reporting clause** and a **reported clause** (e.g. *She said* [= reporting clause] *that the building was unsafe* [= reported clause]).

reporting verb
A verb used in a REPORTING CLAUSE that describes what people say or think (e.g. *ask*, *claim*, *say*).

sentence connector
A word or phrase that shows a connection between two separate sentences (e.g. My car isn't very comfortable. *However*, it's very cheap to run.; The house is large and has a beautiful garden. *What's more*, it's very close to the station.). Compare CONJUNCTION.

state verb
A verb that is used to describe a state (e.g. *believe*, *think*) rather than an action.

subject
The person or thing that does the action of the verb (e.g. *Luca* went home). Compare OBJECT.

subjunctive
The subjunctive is a set of verb forms used mainly in rather formal English to talk about possibilities rather than facts. The **present subjunctive** uses the base form of the verb (e.g. We suggest that she *leave* immediately) and the **past subjunctive** uses *were* (e.g. If I *were* you, I'd go home now).

transitive verb
A verb that takes an object (e.g. She *was holding* a bunch of flowers). Compare INTRANSITIVE VERB.

two-word verbs & three-word verbs
Verbs that are commonly used with a particular PARTICLE (adverb or preposition) are referred to here as **two-word verbs** (e.g. She *looked after* her elderly parents). Verbs that are commonly used with two particular particles (adverb + preposition) are referred to here as **three-word verbs** (e.g. He *looked up to* his older brothers). See also PREPOSITIONAL VERB and PHRASAL VERB.

verb
A **finite verb** has a tense (e.g. She *waited*; She *is waiting* for you). **Non-finite** verb forms are INFINITIVE (e.g. He came *to see* me) and PARTICIPLE forms (e.g. *Shouting* loudly, I was able to make myself heard; *Built* in 2011, the tower is still the tallest construction in Europe).

verb phrase
A group of words consisting of one or more verbs (e.g. *gives*, *is giving*, *has been giving*).

wh-words
A group of words (*who*, *whom*, *whose*, *where*, *when*, *why*, *how*) that are used in **wh**-QUESTIONS.

Study planner

Use this study planner if you need help in deciding which units you should study, or which part of the *Grammar reminder* you should read first.

Which of the four multiple-choice options, A, B, C or D, completes the sentences in the correct or most likely way? Sometimes more than one option is possible. If you are not sure which options are correct, you may need to study any related sections of the *Grammar reminder* first and then the corresponding unit(s) listed on the right in the table below. You will find the full correct version of each sentence either in the section of the *Grammar reminder* or in the unit highlighted.

Tenses		Grammar reminder	Unit
1.1	'Who ....?' '.................. to get through to Misaki.' **A** do you phone ... I'm trying **B** are you phoning ... I'm trying **C** are you phoning ... I try **D** do you phone ... I try	A1	1, 2
1.2	.... to Turkey every year for your holidays? **A** Are you going **B** Were you going **C** Have you gone **D** Do you go	A5	1, 2
1.3	I .... you park outside the city and get the bus to the centre. **A** am suggesting **B** suggests **C** suggest **D** was suggesting		1, 2
1.4	Sophia .... me that you're thinking of emigrating. **A** told **B** tells **C** is telling **D** tell		2, 1
1.5	Aisha .... a few minutes ago. **A** has left **B** leaves **C** left **D** had left	A6	3, 4, 5
1.6	We .... to the tennis club since we moved here. **A** have belonged **B** belong **C** belonged **D** are belonging	A11	3, 6
1.7	After she .... hospital, she had a long holiday. **A** leaves **B** is leaving **C** has left **D** left		3, 4, 5
1.8	When he realised I .... at him, he .... away. **A** looked … was turning **B** was looking … turned **C** was looking … was turning **D** looked … turned	A13	4, 7
1.9	When the builders were here I .... them cups of tea all the time. **A** was making **B** am making **C** made **D** make		4, 7
1.10	When I went into the bathroom, I found that the bath...................... .... **A** overflows **B** overflowed **C** had overflowed **D** is overflowing	A14	5, 7
1.11	I was sure that I .... him before. **A** had met **B** am meeting **C** meet **D** met		5, 7
1.12	Your eyes are red – ....? **A** did you cry **B** have you been crying **C** have you cried **D** do you cry	A17	6

		Grammar reminder	Unit
1.13	.... this holiday for ages. **A** We're looking forward to **B** We've been looking forward to **C** We look forward to **D** We've looked forward to		6, 3
1.14	When I saw the vase on the website, I knew it was exactly what I .... **A** looked for **B** look for **C** had been looking for **D** have looked for	A18	7
1.15	.... hard all year, so I felt that I deserved a holiday. **A** I work **B** I'd been working **C** I'd worked **D** I'm working		7, 4, 5

The future

		Grammar reminder	Unit
2.1	I .... one of my special desserts for dinner, if you like. **A** make **B** 'm going to make **C** 'll make **D** 'm making	B3	9
2.2	If Erik phones I .... you know. **A** 'm going to let **B** let **C** 'm letting **D** 'll let		9
2.3	'Has anybody offered to look after the children?' 'Sophia .... it.' **A** is to do **B** 's going to do **C** does **D** will do	B5	9
2.4	The next train to Dublin .... at 3:45. (*station announcement*) **A** will leave **B** is leaving **C** is going to leave **D** leaves	B6	10
2.5	When you .... Ben, tell him he still owes me some money. **A** are going to see **B** are seeing **C** see **D** will see		10
2.6	We .... a party next Saturday. Can you come? **A** 're to have **B** 're having **C** have **D** 'll have	B7	10
2.7	After the operation you .... any sport for a while. **A** won't be doing **B** aren't doing **C** don't do **D** won't to do	B8	11
2.8	When the race starts later this afternoon the drivers .... for drier weather than last year. **A** were hoping **B** are hoping **C** hope **D** will be hoping		11
2.9	In the next few years, thousands of speed cameras .... on major roads. **A** are appear **B** will appear **C** are to appear **D** are appearing		12
2.10	.... to Bangkok by the end of June. **A** I aim getting **B** I'm aiming getting **C** I aim to get **D** I'm aiming to get		13
2.11	We .... each other later that day, but I had to phone and cancel. **A** see **B** are seeing **C** were seeing **D** saw		14

Modals and semi-modals

		Grammar reminder	Unit
3.1	Despite yesterday's snowfalls, we .... home in less than An hour. **A** could drive **B** can drive **C** were able to drive **D** are able to drive	C5	15
3.2	She swam strongly and .... cross the river easily, even though it was swollen by the heavy rain. **A** can **B** was able to **C** could **D** is able to		15
3.3	.... me to get you some water? **A** Would you like **B** Should you like **C** Shall you like **D** Will you like	C12	16
3.4	We .... Switzerland four times during the 1990s. **A** would visit **B** used to visit **C** visit **D** visited		16
3.5	'While we're in Moscow shall we go and see Dariya?' 'But it's been nearly 20 years since we last saw her. She .... remember us.' **A** can't **B** couldn't **C** may not **D** might not	C17	17
3.6	During the war, the police .... arrest you for criticising the government. **A** may **B** might **C** should **D** could		17
3.7	'I'm seeing Dr Evans next week.' 'That .... be right. He's on holiday then.' **A** mustn't **B** can't **C** hasn't to **D** hasn't got to	C23	18
3.8	I can't access the database. You .... a password. **A** must have got to put in **B** must've to put in **C** must have to put in **D** must put in		18
3.9	I .... an interview because I'd worked there before. **A** didn't have to have **B** needn't have had **C** didn't need to have **D** needn't have	C27	19
3.10	Nowadays it .... cost a fortune to own an e-book reader. **A** hasn't to **B** needn't **C** doesn't have to **D** mustn't		19
3.11	Walking under a ladder..................................be unlucky. **A** is suppose to **B** should **C** ought to **D** is supposed to	C32	20
3.12	It's the third time she's been skating this week. She .... really enjoy it. **A** must **B** should **C** ought to **D** had better		20

Linking verbs, passives, questions

4.1	The traffic lights .... green and I pulled away. **A** got **B** became **C** turned **D** went		21
4.2	The building .... the earthquake but then .... by a fire. **A** was survived ... destroyed **B** survived ... was destroyed **C** survived ... destroyed **D** was survived ... was destroyed	D1	22, 23, 24

		Grammar reminder	Unit
4.3	I'm really disappointed. I .... for the team again. **A** wasn't picked **B** didn't pick **C** didn't get picked **D** wasn't got picked	D2	22, 23, 24
4.4	When I asked what was wrong, ... **A** I was explained the problem **B** he explained the problem to me **C** the problem was explained to me **D** he explained me the problem		22
4.5	The children .... to the zoo. **A** were enjoyed taken **B** enjoyed being taken **C** were enjoyed taking **D** enjoyed taking		23 App.2
4.6	The new computer system .... next month. **A** is being installed by people **B** is be installed **C** is being installed **D** is been installed		24 App.2
4.7	.... that we have to leave. **A** They have informed us **B** It has been informed **C** It has been informed us **D** We have been informed		25
4.8	He just turned away when I asked him. .... he meant? **A** Which do you think **B** How do you think **C** What you think **D** What do you think	E4, E1	26
4.9	.... to see in the town? **A** What there are **B** What is there **C** What are there **D** What there is		26
4.10	.... was in the box? **A** What did you think that **B** What you thought **C** What did you think **D** What you did think		27

Verb complementation: what follows verbs

		Grammar reminder	Unit
5.1	I always associate .... **A** pizza **B** pizza by Italy **C** Italian pizza **D** pizza with Italy		28
5.2	She described .... **A** the situation **B** the situation to me **C** me the situation **D** the situation me		29
5.3	Stevens .... the wallet. **A** admitted to steal **B** admitted steal **C** admitted stealing **D** admitted him stealing	F5	30, 31
5.4	My parents wouldn't .... to the party. **A** allow me go **B** allow me to go **C** allow me going **D** allow to go	F9	30, 31
5.5	She felt the mosquito .... her. **A** bites **B** to bite **C** bite **D** biting	F13	30, 31

		Grammar reminder	Unit
5.6	You don't object .... late tonight, do you? **A** to working **B** to work **C** work **D** working		30
5.7	They arranged .... in London. **A** for Rania to stay **B** Rania to stay **C** by Rania to stay **D** for Rania staying		31

Reporting

6.1	Georgia .... she would be late for the meeting. She .... she was feeling ill. **A** told that ... said that **B** told that ... said me that **C** told me that ... said that **D** told me that ... said me that	G4/5	32
6.2	She .... her holiday in Finland. **A** told me about **B** said about **C** said me about **D** told about	G7	32
6.3	'I suppose you've heard the latest .... to me. **A** news,' said she **B** news.' she said **C** news', she said **D** news,' she said		32
6.4	I notified .... I had changed my address. **A** with the bank that **B** the bank that **C** that **D** to the bank that		33
6.5	She reminded .... **A** what to do **B** me what I had to do **C** what I had to do **D** me what to do		34
6.6	Police said that they .... the missing girl. **A** had found **B** have found **C** find **D** were finding		35
6.7	She encouraged .... the job. **A** to take the job **B** that Fran should take **C** Fran to take **D** to Fran to take		36
6.8	He asked where he .... put the box. **A** shall **B** ought to **C** will **D** should		37
6.9	She asked my advice .... subject she should study at university. **A** on to what **B** as to what **C** on what **D** to what		38
6.10	They directed that the building .... **A** be pulled down **B** to be pulled down **C** should be pulled down **D** should pull down		39

Nouns

7.1	The .... faulty. **A** equipments are **B** equipment was **C** equipments were **D** equipment were	H1	

		Grammar reminder	Unit
7.2	The company .... doing a lot of .... in South America. **A** is ... businesses **B** are ... business **C** are ... businesses **D** is ... business	H2	40
7.3	The .... shoes were covered in mud, so I asked them to take them off before they got into .... car. **A** girl's ... Leon's **B** girls'... Leons' **C** girls'... Leon's **D** girl's ... Leons'	H7	43
7.4	The council .... postponed a decision on the new road, and many leading members of the opposition party .... criticised the delay. **A** has ... have **B** has ... has **C** have ... has **D** have ... have		40
7.5	.... thinks that Phil should be given the job. **A** Neither of us **B** The majority of my colleagues **C** Practically everyone **D** A number of people		41
7.6	Police .... that Thomas is in Brazil, although his exact whereabouts ....unknown. **A** believes ... are **B** believe ... are **C** believes ... is **D** believe ... is		42
7.7	A new .... is being built outside the town. **A** golf course **B** golfcourse **C** golf's course **D** golf-course	H5	
7.8	The government has introduced .... **A** a children's clothes tax **B** a tax on children clothes **C** a children clothes tax **D** a tax on children's clothes		43
7.9	.... has improved enormously. **A** David's guitar playing **B** David guitar playing **C** Davids' guitar playing **D** The guitar playing of David	H11	40

Articles, determiners and quantifiers

		Grammar reminder	Unit
8.1	I'll be with you in .... **A** one quarter of an hour **B** a quarter of an hour **C** a quarter of one hour **D** a quarter of hour		44
8.2	Look at .... It's very bright tonight. **A** the moons **B** moon **C** the moon **D** a moon	I5	45–47
8.3	Sydney is .... **A** a beautiful city **B** beautiful city **C** the beautiful city **D** the beautiful cities	I7	45–47
8.4	.... of the present continuous tense on page 32. **A** There are example **B** There are examples **C** There are the examples **D** There is example	I9	45–47

		Grammar reminder	Unit
8.5	.... is one of the many factors involved in changing farming methods. **A** Climate **B** A climate **C** Climates **D** The climate		45
8.6	Against her parents' wishes, she wants to be .... **A** the journalist **B** journalist **C** a journalist **D** journalists		46
8.7	'You look upset.' 'Yes, I've had ....' **A** the terrible morning **B** terrible morning **C** some terrible morning **D** a terrible morning		47
8.8	I haven't been here for .... **A** some years **B** any years **C** years **D** the years	I14	48
8.9	We haven't got .... left. **A** a butter **B** any butter **C** the butter **D** some butter	I15	48
8.10	'Where were you last week?' 'I was visiting ....' **A** any friends **B** friends **C** the friends **D** some friends		48 49–51
8.11	.... my jewellery is missing. **A** Some of **B** Any of **C** Some **D** Any	I23	49
8.12	.... the furniture .... arrived yet. **A** None ... has **B** None ... have **C** None of ... has **D** None of ... have	I34, I22–28	49
8.13	I phoned Sarah at home, but .... **A** there were no answers **B** there were no answer **C** there was no answers **D** there was no answer		49
8.14	There isn't .... traffic along the street where I live. **A** many **B** much **C** much of **D** many of	I38, I22–28	50
8.15	.... the food was inedible. **A** A large amount of **B** Many of **C** Much of **D** A large number of		50
8.16	.... waiting to hear the results. **A** Everyone was **B** All was **C** Everyone were **D** All were	I44	51
8.17	Following the flood, ... in the area .... major repair work. **A** each of building ... need **B** every building ... needs **C** every building ... need **D** each buildings ... need	I46, I22–28	51
8.18	.... to Athens during the vacation. **A** All they are going **B** They are all going **C** They all are going **D** They are going all		51
8.19	There is .... evidence to support his claim. **A** little of **B** few **C** a few **D** little	I48, I22–28	52
8.20	We should use .... time we have available to discuss Jon's proposal. **A** the little of **B** the little **C** the few **D** little		52

Relative clauses and other types of clause

		Grammar reminder	Unit
9.1	My mother …………………… enjoys hill walking. **A** who is in her seventies **B** , that is in her seventies, **C** , which is in her seventies, **D** , who is in her seventies,	J2	53
9.2	She's one of the kindest people …………………… . **A** that I know **B** I know **C** who I know **D** which I know		53
9.3	Do you know the date …………………… we have to hand in the essay? **A** which **B** on which **C** by which **D** when		54
9.4	The valley …………………… the town lies is heavily polluted. **A** in that **B** in which **C** in **D** which		55
9.5	The prisoners …………………… are all women. **A** who being released **B** are being released **C** being released **D** who are being released		56
9.6	She lives in the house …………………… . **A** which has the red door **B** has the red door **C** with the red door **D** which with the red door		57
9.7	'Wait a minute,' said Amy, …………………… . **A** running through the door **B** run through the door **C** ran through the door **D** runs through the door	J8	58, 59
9.8	…………………… by the boys' behaviour, she complained to the head teacher. **A** She annoyed **B** Annoyed **C** She was annoyed **D** Annoying	J10	58, 59
9.9	…………………… at the party, we saw Ruth standing alone. **A** Arrived **B** We arrived **C** Arriving **D** We were arriving		58
9.10	Josh was the first person I saw …………………… hospital. **A** by leaving **B** on leaving **C** in leaving **D** on to leave		59

Pronouns, substitution and leaving out words

10.1	'What did you do to your hand?' 'I …………………… when I was chopping vegetables.' **A** cut me **B** cut **C** myself cut **D** cut myself	K1	60
10.2	The scheme allows students from many countries to communicate …………………… . **A** each other **B** with each other **C** themselves **D** with one another	K7	
10.3	We are confident that both sets of fans will …………………… at the match. **A** behave itself **B** behave them **C** behave themselves **D** behave		60
10.4	'We need new curtains.' 'Okay, let's buy …………………… .' **A** ones with flowers on **B** some **C** ones **D** one		61

		Grammar reminder	Unit
10.5	The two children .... for breaking the window. **A** each blamed other **B** blamed other **C** blamed each other **D** each blamed the other	K9	
10.6	I had a racing bike when I was young, and .... **A** my brother did so **B** so did my brother **C** so my brother **D** did my brother	K10	62
10.7	'I don't suppose there'll be any seats left.' 'No, I ....' **A** don't suppose **B** suppose **C** don't suppose so **D** suppose not		62
10.8	They needed someone who was both an excellent administrator and manager. .... was not easy to find. **A** Such person **B** A such person **C** Such **D** Such a person		63
10.9	'They could have been delayed by the snow.' 'Yes, they ....' **A** could have **B** could **C** could been **D** could have been		64
10.10	Leon was frightened – or maybe he just .... **A** pretended to be **B** pretended to **C** pretended **D** pretend to be		65

Adjectives and adverbs

		Grammar reminder	Unit
11.1	He is a .... **A** capable of making difficult decisions manager **B** manager capable of making difficult decisions **C** capable manager of making difficult decisions **D** manager capable to make difficult decisions		66
11.2	Our teacher gave us .... problem to solve. **A** a very impossible **B** a completely impossible **C** an absolutely impossible **D** an extremely impossible	L2	67, 68
11.3	Experience is .... for the job. **A** really essential **B** fairly essential **C** pretty essential **D** very essential		67
11.4	I met my .... professor the other day. She is now advising on the government's .... **A** old politics ... very foreign policy **B** very old politics ... foreign policy **C** very old politics ... very foreign policy **D** old politics ... foreign policy		68
11.5	I drank some .... coffee. **A** good very Brazilian **B** Brazilian very good **C** very good Brazilian **D** very Brazilian good	L3	
11.6	I was .... to find that the film was quite .... **A** surprised ... frightening **B** surprised ... frightened **C** surprising ... frightening **D** surprising ... frightened	L4	

		Grammar reminder	Unit
11.7	My watch was among the .... **A** things taken **B** taken things **C** things stolen **D** stolen things		69
11.8	He was busy .... his homework. **A** to do **B** doing **C** that he was doing **D** he was doing		70
11.9	It was .... as we went into the room. **A** strange quiet **B** strange quietly **C** strangely quiet **D** strangely quietly	L6	71
11.10	She .... towards the door. **A** quick ran **B** ran quick **C** ran quickly **D** quickly ran		71
11.11	It was the .... thing to say. **A** most ridiculous **B** ridiculous **C** ridiculousest **D** most ridiculousest	L8	72
11.12	'Why did you buy these oranges?' 'They were ....' **A** cheapest **B** the cheapest **C** the cheapest ones I could find **D** cheapest ones I could find		72
11.13	Despite his disability he tried to lead .... as possible. **A** as normal life **B** a normal a life **C** as normal as life **D** as normal a life		73
11.14	Have you heard the good news? .... **A** In May, Eva had a baby. **B** Eva had a baby in May. **C** Eva in May had a baby. **D** Eva had in May a baby.		74, 75
11.15	.... Kaspar nowadays, he's so busy at the office. **A** We see hardly ever **B** We hardly see ever **C** We hardly ever see **D** Hardly we ever see		75
11.16	Only later .... how much damage had been caused. **A** she realised **B** she did realised **C** did she realise **D** realised she		76, 99, 100
11.17	We .... with the decision. **A** agree very much **B** much agree **C** agree much **D** very much agree		77
11.18	.........., this summer is a crucial time for the government. **A** Politics speaking **B** Politically **C** In political terms **D** In a political point of view		78

Adverbial clauses and conjunctions

		Grammar reminder	Unit
12.1	I .... unwell when I .... this morning. **A** felt ... get up **B** felt ... got up **C** feel ... get up **D** feel ... got	M2	
12.2	Have something to eat before you .... **A** leave **B** left **C** will leave **D** had left	M3	

		Grammar reminder	Unit
12.3	I still feel tired .... in the morning. **A** when I wake up **B** as I wake up **C** when I will wake up **D** while I wake up		79
12.4	We were delayed .... an accident. **A** because **B** because of there was **C** because there was **D** because of		80
12.5	I wrote down her name .... forget it. **A** so as not to **B** so not to **C** not to **D** in order not to		81
12.6	..................................they slept soundly. **A** Hot though was the night air **B** Hot though the night air was **C** Hot as the night air was **D** Hot although the night air was		82
12.7	I'll give you a lift if it .... **A** is raining **B** will rain **C** rained **D** rains	M9	83, 84
12.8	If I had known how difficult the job was, I .... it. **A** won't have taken **B** wouldn't have taken **C** won't take it **D** mightn't have taken	M14	83, 84
12.9	If I .... a more reliable car, I .... to Spain rather than fly. **A** would have ... would drive **B** had ... had driven **C** had ... would drive **D** would have had ... would drive	M17	83, 84
12.10	If the technology .... available, we would be able to expand the business. **A** would become **B** were become **C** were to become **D** became		83
12.11	If the North Sea .... in winter, you could walk from London to Oslo. **A** happened to freeze **B** froze **C** should freeze **D** should happen to freeze		84
12.12	.... in my seventies and rather unfit, I might consider taking up squash. **A** Were I not **B** Was I not **C** Weren't I **D** If I wasn't		85
12.13	They couldn't decide .... it was worth re-sitting the exam. **A** if **B** whether or not **C** whether **D** if or not		86
12.14	It was midday. .... , I put on the light. **A** Even so **B** Although **C** Even **D** Even though		87

Prepositions

		Grammar reminder	Unit
13.1	He suddenly saw Eva .... the room. He pushed his way .... the crowd of people to get to her. **A** across ... through **B** over ... through **C** across ... across **D** over ... along		88

		Grammar reminder	Unit
13.2	The concert features, ... others, Karl Frisk and the Johnsons. Their music is still very popular .... teenagers. **A** between ... among **B** between ... between **C** among ... between **D** among ... among		89
13.3	.... a pause in the conversation, she left the room. **A** In **B** During **C** Over **D** By		90
13.4	.... cricket, I enjoy watching football and basketball. **A** Apart from **B** Except **C** Except for **D** Besides		91
13.5	Jo .... her disabled mother until her death last year. **A** cared after **B** cared for **C** took care of **D** cared about		92
13.6	What's the chance .... five heads when you toss a coin five times? **A** of getting **B** to get **C** of get **D** get		93
13.7	She tried to .... **A** talk me the plan out of **B** talk out of me the plan **C** talk me out of the plan **D** talk out me of the plan		94
	Organising information		
14.1	.... people trying to get into the football stadium. **A** There were too much **B** There were too many **C** It was too many **D** There was too many		95, 96
14.2	.... Sara wanted to borrow money. **A** Suddenly hit me that **B** It suddenly hit **C** It suddenly hit me that **D** Suddenly hit me		96
14.3	I .... you can swim so well and I can't. **A** hate **B** hate it that **C** hate that **D** hate it		97
14.4	Luis lost his job and was short of money, so .... his flat and move in with his brother. **A** that he did was to sell **B** what he did was to sell **C** what he did sold **D** what he did was sell		98
14.5	.... been diverted, they would have arrived early. **A** Had the plane not **B** Hadn't the plane **C** The plane had not **D** The plane not had		99
14.6	.... that Lana was able to retire at the age of 50. **A** So successful her business was, **B** So successful was her business, **C** Her business was so successful **D** So was her successful business		100

Grammar reminder

The *Grammar reminder* summarises basic information about some important areas of grammar. References within the main units point you to the sections of the *Grammar reminder* that are relevant to those units. Read these sections to refresh your understanding before you start work on the advanced grammar points in the unit.

A Tenses

→ Units 1–8

Present continuous (→ Units 1, 2 & 8)

A1 ○ 'Who *are you phoning*?' 'I*'m trying* to get through to Misaki.'
We use the present continuous to talk about particular events or activities that have begun but have not ended at the time of speaking. The event or activity is in progress at the present time, but not necessarily at the moment of speaking.

A2 ○ She*'s doing* voluntary work with young children until she starts her university course.
We use the present continuous to suggest that an event or activity is or may be temporary. (For the present continuous for the future, see B7 & Unit 10.)

Present simple (→ Units 1, 2 & 8)

A3 ○ Trees *grow* more quickly in summer than in winter.
We use the present simple with verbs describing states or situations that are always true or continue indefinitely.

A4 ○ This cake *tastes* wonderful. Where did you buy it?
We use the present simple with states or situations (thoughts, feelings) that exist at the present moment.

> Verbs describing states include ***agree**, **appreciate**, **attract**, ***desire**, ***doubt**, **expect**, **hate**, **hope**, **like**, **love**, ***prefer**, ***regret** (*to do with emotions, attitudes, and preferences*); **anticipate**, **assume**, ***believe**, **consider**, **expect**, **feel**, **find**, **imagine**, ***know**, **realise**, **think**, **understand** (*mental states*); **ache**, **hear**, ***notice**, **see**, ***smell**, **sound**, ***taste** (*senses and perception*); ***belong to**, ***consist of**, ***constitute**, ***contain**, **cost**, ***differ from**, **have**, **look**, ***mean**, **measure**, ***own**, ***possess**, ***resemble**, ***seem**, **weigh** (*to do with 'being', 'having'*, etc.).

The verbs marked * are rarely used with continuous tenses (but can be if we mean actions rather than states).

A5 ○ *Do* you *go* to Turkey every year for your holidays?
We use the present simple to talk about habits or regular events or actions. (For the present simple for the future, see B6 & Unit 10.)

Past simple (→ Units 3, 4, 5 & 8)

A6 ○ Aisha *left* a few minutes ago.

A7 ○ Mikhail *continued* the course even though it was proving very difficult.
We use the past simple to refer to a completed action or event in the past or to talk about situations that existed over a period of time in the past, but not now. We can either say when something happened, using a time adverbial (e.g. *a few minutes ago*: A6), or assume that the listener or reader already knows when it happened or can understand this from the context (A7).

A8 ○ I *saw* my grandparents every week as a child.
We use the past simple to talk about repeated past actions.
(For the past simple in conditionals, see M12 & M13 and Unit 83.)

Present perfect (→ Units 3, 6 & 8)

A9 ○ We can't have a meeting, because so few people *have shown* any interest.

A10 ○ My ceiling *has fallen* in and the kitchen is flooded. Come quickly!

A11 ○ We *have belonged* to the tennis club since we moved here.

A12 ☐ Lee *has represented* his country on many occasions, and hopes to go on to compete in the next Olympics.

We use the present perfect to talk about a past action, event or state, when there is some kind of connection between what happened in the past, and the present time. Often we are interested in the way something that happened in the past affects or is relevant to the situation that exists now (A9). However, the connection with the present may also be that the action happened recently with a consequence for the present (A10), that it continues until the present time (A11), or that a repeated event in the past may (or may not) happen again (A12).

Past continuous (→ Units 4, 7 & 8)

A13 ☐ When he realised I *was looking* at him, he turned away.

We use the past continuous to talk about a situation (… I *was looking at him* …) that started before a particular point in the past (… *he turned away*) and was still in progress at that point.

Past perfect (→ Units 5, 7 & 8)

A14 ☐ When I went into the bathroom, I found that the bath *had overflowed*.

A15 ☐ By 10 o'clock most people *had gone* home.

We use the past perfect to talk about a past event that took place before another past event (A14), or before or up to a particular time in the past (A15).

(For the past perfect in conditionals, see M14 & Unit 83.)

Present perfect continuous (→ Units 6 & 8)

A16 ☐ Since the operation two months ago, Samuel *has been learning* to walk again. He can already take one or two steps unaided.

A17 ☐ Your eyes are red – *have* you *been crying*?

We use the present perfect continuous to talk about an activity in progress in the past for a period until now, which is still in progress (A16) or has recently finished (A17).

Past perfect continuous (→ Units 7 & 8)

A18 ☐ When I saw the vase on the website, I knew it was exactly what I *had been looking* for.

We use the past perfect continuous to talk about a situation or activity that was in progress over a period up to a particular past point in time.

B The future

→ Units 9–14

Will + infinitive (→ Unit 9)

B1 ☐ It's late. I think I*'ll* go to bed now.

B2 ☐ I think you*'ll* enjoy the film.

We use **will** when we state a decision made at the moment of speaking (B1) and when we say that we think something is likely to happen in the future (B2).

B3 ☐ I*'ll* make one of my special desserts for dinner, if you like.

B4 ☐ I've asked her to join us this evening, but she *won't*.

We use **will** (or **'ll**) when we talk about *willingness* to do something in the future (e.g. in offers (B3), invitations, requests, and orders) and **will not** (or **won't**) when we talk about *unwillingness* to do something in the future (e.g. reluctance, refusal (B4)).

Be going to + infinitive (→ Unit 9)

B5 ☐ 'Has anybody offered to look after the children?' 'Sophia*'s going to* do it.'

We use **be going to** when we state a decision made some time before we report it. **Going to** is often preferred in informal spoken English (where it is often pronounced /gənə/) and **will** is preferred in more formal contexts.

Present simple for the future (→ Unit 10)

B6 ☐ The next train to Dublin *leaves* at 3.45. (*station announcement*)

We use the present simple to talk about future events that are part of some official arrangement such as a timetable or programme. A time expression is usually used with the present simple for the future (... *at 3.45*) unless the time referred to is already clear from the context.

Present continuous for the future (→ Unit 10)

B7 ☐ We*'re having* a party next Saturday. Can you come?

We use the present continuous to talk about future activities and events that are intended or have already been arranged. Usually a personal pronoun is used (*We* ...) and a future time is mentioned (... *next Saturday*) or already understood.

Future continuous (→ Unit 11)

B8 ☐ After the operation you *won't be doing* any sport for a while.

We use the future continuous to talk about an activity or event happening at a particular time or over a particular period in the future. We usually mention the future time (*After the operation* ...).

C Modals and semi-modals

→ Units 15–20

The modal verbs are: **will**, **would**, **can**, **could**, **may**, **might**, **shall**, **should**, **must**

Modal verbs have meanings relating to ideas such as possibility, likelihood, prediction, necessity, permission and obligation. They do not have **to-infinitive**, **-s**, **-ing** or past participle forms. They are often followed by the **bare infinitive** of another verb (e.g. *She might go*) but can also be used on their own (e.g. *Yes, I can*). They cannot be followed directly by a **to-infinitive**, an **-ing** form, a **past participle**, or another **modal verb**. In questions they come before the subject (e.g. *Could you help?*) and before *not* in negatives (e.g. *He won't* [= will not] *help*).

The semi-modals are: **ought to**, **used to**, **need**, **dare**, **had better**, **have** (**got**) **to**, **be able to**

These have meanings like modal verbs but not the same formal features: for example, some can be marked for tense (e.g. *have / had* [*got*] *to)*; some have non-modal uses (e.g. *She needs a rest*).

Can, could and be able to (→ Unit 15)

C1 ☐ A polyglot is someone who *can* speak several different languages.
C2 ☐ Anita *could* speak three languages before she was six.
C3 ☐ Olivia *couldn't* swim until she was ten.

When we say that someone or something has or doesn't have the ability to do something, we use **can('t)** (for the present; C1) or **could(n't)** (for the past; C2, C3).

C4 ☐ 'Why isn't Ben here yet?' 'It *could* be because his mother's ill again.'

We use **could**, not **can**, to say there is a possibility of something happening or being true.

C5 ☐ Despite yesterday's snowfalls, we *were able to* drive home in less than an hour.

We can use **be able to** instead of **can** or **could** to talk about ability. We prefer **be able to** when we talk about a specific achievement (particularly if it is difficult, requiring some effort; C5) rather than a general ability. Where there is a choice, in speech we generally prefer **can** or **could** rather than **be able to**.

C6 ☐ After the trees have been cut back, we *will be able to* see more of the garden from the sitting room.

We use **will be able to**, not **can**, to say that something is possible in the future on condition that something is done first.

C7 ☐ We *can / are allowed to* stay up late on Fridays and Saturdays because we don't have to go to school the next day.

We use **can** for the present or the future and **could** for the past to report permission. We can also use **be allowed to**.

Will, would and used to (→ Unit 16)

C8 ☐ *Will / Won't* you have another biscuit? ('Won't you ...?' is a very polite and rather formal offer)

C9 ☐ 'Luka wants to borrow the car.' 'He *will not*.' (a firm refusal)

C10 ☐ You *will* now put your pens down and pay attention. (a firm instruction)

We use **will** and **will not** (**won't**) to talk about (un)willingness (see B3–4) and also to make offers (C8), requests, refusals (C9), and to give instructions (C10).

C11 ☐ You should apply for the job. You *would* have a good chance of getting it.

We can use **would** to make a prediction about an imaginary situation; that is, about something that may or may not happen (see also M13).

C12 ☐ *Would* you like me to get you some water?

We can use **Would you like ...** when we make an offer, but not 'Will you like ...'. In requests, too, we can say **I would like ...**, but not 'I will like ...'. We can use **should** (with **I** or **we**) instead of **would** in requests like this, but this is formal.

C13 ☐ We *would / used to* lend him money when he was unemployed.

C14 ☐ I *used to* live in a flat in Paris.

To talk about things that happened repeatedly in the past, but don't happen now, we can use **would** or **used to** + **infinitive** (C13). **Used to** is more common in informal English. We can use **used to** but not **would** to talk about permanent past states (C14). Note how we normally make questions and negatives with **use to** in spoken English: '*Did* your children *use to* sleep well when they were babies?'; 'I *didn't use to* like visiting the dentist when I was young.' Many people avoid using **used to** in questions and negatives without **do** ('Used you to ...?', 'I usedn't to ...') and in question tags (..., usedn't you?) because it sounds very formal and old-fashioned.

May, might, can and could (→ Units 15 & 17)

C15 ☐ If the drought goes on much longer, there *may / might / could* be a hosepipe ban before the end of the month.

C16 ☐ Her parents *may / might / could have influenced* her decision to resign.

In affirmative sentences (that is, sentences which are not questions or negatives) we use **may**, **might**, or **could** with a similar meaning to say that there is a possibility of something happening or being true (C15). **Can** is not used in this way. We sometimes prefer **could** to show that we are giving an opinion about which we are unsure. We use **may / might / could** + **have** + **past participle** to say that it is possible that something happened in the past (C16).

C17 ☐ 'While we're in Moscow shall we go and see Dariya?' 'But it's been nearly 20 years since we last saw her. She *may not / might not* remember us.'

C18 ☐ I definitely saw her go out, so she *can't / couldn't* be at home.

In negative sentences, including sentences with words like **only**, **hardly**, or **never**, we use **may not** or **might not** to say it is possible that something is not true (C17), and **can't** or **couldn't** to say that it is not possible that something is true (C18).

C19 ☐ Coats *may* be left in the cloakroom.

May (not 'might') is used in formal contexts to say that something is allowed. **May not** is used to say that things are not allowed (e.g. Calculators *may not* be used in the examination.).

Must and have (got) to (→ Unit 18)

C20 ☐ That's really good news. I *must* tell Marco straight away.

C21 ☐ 'Can we meet on Thursday morning?' 'Sorry, no. I *have to* go to the dentist at eleven.'

When we say that it is necessary to do something, we use **must** or **have** (**got**) **to**. Sometimes it doesn't matter which we use, although **have got to** is less formal than either **must** or **have to** and is particularly common in spoken English. However, we use **must** when we want to indicate that the *speaker* decides that something is necessary (C20) and we use **have** (**got**) **to** to suggest that *someone else* or some outside circumstances or authority makes something necessary (C21).

C22 ○ She was bruised quite badly in the accident. It *must* hurt a lot.
We normally use **must**, not **have (got) to**, when we conclude that something (has) happened or that something is true .

C23 ○ 'I'm seeing Dr Evans next week.' 'That *can't* be right. He's on holiday then.'
When we give a negative conclusion we rarely use **must not** or **have (got) to**. Instead, we use **can't (cannot)** or **couldn't**.

C24 ○ When my father went to school he *had to* learn Latin.
To say that something was necessary in the past we use **had to**, not **must**.

Need(n't), don't have to and mustn't (→ Units 18 & 19)

C25 ○ He didn't cook the meal himself so you *needn't / don't have to* eat it all. He won't be offended.

C26 ○ You *mustn't* put anything on the shelves until the glue has set hard.
We use **needn't** (or **don't need to**) or **don't have to** to say that something is not necessary (C25) and **mustn't** to say that something is not allowed (C26).

C27 ○ I *didn't need to / didn't have to* have an interview because I'd worked there before.

C28 ○ I *needn't have* cooked dinner. Just as it was ready, Pablo and Daniela phoned to say that they couldn't come to eat.
When we say that it was not necessary to do something in the past, and it wasn't done, we use **didn't need to** or **didn't have to** (C27). To show that we think something that *was* done was not in fact necessary we use **need not (needn't) have** (C28).

Should, ought to and be supposed to (→ Unit 20)

C29 ○ You'll catch cold if you go out like that. I think you *should / ought to* take a hat.

C30 ○ I enjoyed her first novel, so the new one *should / ought to* be good.
We can often use **should** or **ought to** with little difference in meaning when we talk about obligation (e.g. in giving advice, making recommendations, or talking about a responsibility, (C29) and the probability of something happening or being true (C30).

C31 ○ The work was *supposed to start / should have started / ought to have started* last week.

C32 ○ Walking under a ladder *is supposed to* be unlucky.
(Be) supposed to can be used instead of **should / ought to** to express a less strong obligation than **should** (C31). It is also used to report what many people think is true, but **should / ought to** are not used in this way (C32).

D Passives

→ Units 22–25

Passive verb forms have one of the tenses of the verb **to be** and a **past participle**. Passive verb forms are summarised in Appendix 2. The choice between an active and passive sentence allows us to present the same information in two different orders. Compare:

active ○ The storm damaged the roof.	*passive* ○ The roof was damaged. ○ The roof was damaged by the storm.
This sentence is about *the storm*, and says what it did. The subject (*The storm*) is the 'agent' and the object (*the roof*) is the 'done to'.	These sentences are about *the roof* and say what happened to it (in the first sentence) and what did it (in the second). The subject (*The roof*) is the 'done to'. If it is mentioned, the agent (*the storm*) goes in a prepositional phrase with *by* after the verb.

D1 ○ The building *survived* the earthquake but then *was destroyed by* a fire.
Verbs which take an object (*transitive verbs*) can have a passive form (... *was destroyed*). Verbs which *do not* take an object (*intransitive verbs*) do not have passive forms (The child *vanished* ..., but not 'The child was vanished ...').

However, many verbs can be used at different times with and without objects – that is, they can be both transitive and intransitive. Compare: '**Are they meeting him** at the airport?' (*transitive*) and '**Is he being met** at the airport?' (*passive*); 'When shall we **meet**?' (*intransitive*; no passive possible)

D2 ☐ I'm really disappointed. I *didn't get picked / wasn't picked* for the team again.
D3 ☐ The house *was owned* by an elderly couple before I bought it.

In spoken language we often use **get** + **past participle** (... *didn't get picked* ...) instead of a passive form (... *wasn't picked* ...) to talk about actions or events that we see as negative (D2). Note, however, that we can also use it to talk about positive actions and events (e.g. Great news – I **got picked** for the team again!). We don't normally use **get** + **past participle** to describe states (D3).

E Questions

→ Units 26–27

E1 *Basic question forms*

If a verb phrase includes an auxiliary verb, the auxiliary verb comes before the subject.	☐ **Are they** leaving soon? ☐ Where **will you** stay?
If a verb phrase includes more than one auxiliary verb, only the first comes before the subject.	☐ **Has she** *been* doing her homework? ☐ What **should we** *have* told Nina?
In present and past simple tenses of verbs (apart from **be**), we use **do** or **did**.	☐ **Does he** *enjoy* school? ☐ Where **did you** *go* on holiday?
If **be** is used in a verb phrase without another verb, the form of **be** comes before the subject.	☐ **Are you** happy at work? ☐ Where **was Lars** today?
If we use **what**, **which**, **who** or **whose** as the subject, we use the same word order as in a statement; i.e. the subject goes before the verb phrase.	☐ **What made** that noise? ☐ **Who can tell** me the answer to question 5?

E2 ☐ *What happened* to your eye?

If we use **what**, **which**, **who** or **whose** as the subject, we don't use **do** in the question (E2). However, note that we can sometimes use **do** when **what**, **which**, **who** or **whose** is the subject if we want to add emphasis, or to contrast with what has been said or implied. **Do** is stressed in spoken English: 'Come on, be honest – who *did* tell you?' Don't confuse **whose** with **who's** (short for either **who is** or **who has**), which are pronounced the same.

E3 ☐ I've got orange juice or apple juice. *Which* would you prefer?
E4 ☐ He just turned away when I asked him. *What* do you think he meant?

In these questions the **wh-word** is the object. We prefer **which** when we are asking about an identified group or range of things or people (E3), and we use **what** when the possible range of reference is open (E4). Sometimes, however, we can use either **which** or **what** with little difference in meaning (e.g. *What / Which* towns do we go through on the way?).

E5 ☐ *Haven't you finished* your homework yet?
E6 ☐ *Why didn't* she pay for the meal?
E7 ☐ *Who wouldn't like* to own an expensive sports car?

We can use negative **yes / no** or **wh-questions** to make a suggestion, to persuade someone, to criticise, or to show that we are surprised, etc. We make a negative **yes / no** or **wh-question** with an auxiliary verb (*have*, *did*, *would*, etc.) + **-n't** (E5, E6, E7). We can also ask a negative question using a negative statement and a positive 'tag' at the end (e.g. We do*n't* have to leave just yet, *do we*?). Negative questions can be used to sound polite when giving an opinion (e.g. Should*n't* we offer her a lift?).

F

Verb complementation: what follows verbs

→ Units 28–31

F1 ☐ She described the attacker to the police.
F2 ☐ They arrived at the restaurant an hour late.
F3 ☐ He gave me a biscuit.

Some verbs (e.g. *describe* in F1) are followed by an object ... *the attacker* ...). These are called *transitive verbs*.

Also: **arrest**, **avoid**, **do**, **enjoy**, **find**, **force**, **get**, **grab**, **hit**, **like**, **pull**, **report**, **shock**, **take**, **touch**, **want**, **warn**

Some verbs (e.g. *arrive* in F2) are not usually followed by an object. These are called *intransitive verbs*. If a verb can't be followed by an object, it can't be made passive.

Also: **appear**, **come**, **fall**, **go**, **happen**, **matter**, **sleep**, **swim**, **wait**

Some verbs (e.g. *give* in F3) are commonly followed by two objects (*me* and *a biscuit* in F3).

Also: **lend**, **offer**, **pay**, **sell**, **tell**, **throw**

A good dictionary will list the meanings of verbs and tell you whether each meaning is intransitive, transitive and, if transitive, whether it is followed by one or by two objects.

F4–13 Many verbs can be followed by another verb in the form of a **to-infinitive** (e.g. refuse *to eat*), **-ing** (e.g. avoid *working*), **bare infinitive** (e.g. help *carry*). Note that when **to** comes after a verb it can be part of a **to-infinitive** (= *to* + the base form of a verb; e.g. He wants *to go*, She hopes *to win*) or it can be a **preposition** followed by a noun phrase (e.g. He went *to the theatre*) or by an **-ing** form (e.g. He admitted *to having* a gun). An **-ing** form often behaves like an object (e.g. I regret *leaving*).
Here is a summary of common patterns together with examples of verbs that are used in this pattern. Note that many verbs can be used in several different patterns, and that some of the verbs given can be used just with an object, and may also be used intransitively (e.g. He failed to stop, He failed the test, He failed).

Verb + to-infinitive	**F4** ☐ They won't *agree to pay* for the damage. *Also*: **aim, ask, decline, demand, fail, hesitate, hope, hurry, manage, offer, plan, prepare, refuse, want, wish**
Verb + -ing	**F5** ☐ Stevens *admitted stealing* the wallet. *Also*: **avoid, consider, delay, deny, detest, dread, envisage, feel like, finish, imagine, miss, recall, resent, risk, suggest**
Verb + to-infinitive *or* **-ing** (little difference in meaning)	**F6** ☐ Before we *began eating / to eat* my father thanked everyone for coming. *Also*: **cease, continue, start**
Verb + to-infinitive *or* **-ing** (difference in meaning)	**F7** ☐ She *came hurrying* up the path to bring us the news. **F8** ☐ How did you *come to buy* the car? *Also:* **go on, mean, regret, remember, stop, try**
Verb + object + to-infinitive (= there must be an object)	**F9** ☐ My parents wouldn't *allow me to go* to the party. *Also*: **believe, cause, command, consider, enable, encourage, entitle, force, invite, order, persuade, show, teach, tell, warn**

Verb + (**object**) + **to-infinitive** (= there may be an object)	**F10** ☐ I would *hate* (*her*) *to give* the job up. *Also*: **help, like, love, need, prefer, want, wish**
Verb + **object** + **-ing** (= there must be an object)	**F11** ☐ The police *caught him driving* without a licence. *Also*: **discover, feel, find, hear, leave, notice, observe, overhear, see, spot**
Verb + (**object**) + **-ing** (= there may be an object)	**F12** ☐ I *can't stand* (*him*) *wearing* a suit. *Also*: **detest, dislike, dread, envisage, hate, imagine, like, love, mind** (in questions and negatives), **miss, recall, regret, remember, resent, risk, start, stop**
Verb + **object** + **bare infinitive** *or* **-ing** (sometimes a difference in meaning)	**F13** ☐ She *felt the mosquito bite / biting* her. *Also*: **hear, notice, observe, overhear, see, watch**

G Reporting

→ Units 32–39

When we report speech in a different context from the one in which it was originally produced, we sometimes need to make changes to the original words. Of course, differences between the original speech context and the one in which it is reported will influence whether changes are needed and what they should be. Here are some possible changes:

G1 ☐ 'Dan*'s arriving* later *today*.' ☐ She said that Dan *was arriving* later *that day*.
G2 ☐ 'I was sure *I'd* left it *here*.' ☐ He said that he was sure *he'd* left it *there / on the table*.
G3 ☐ 'I *grew these* carrots *myself*.' ☐ He told me that he *had grown those* carrots *himself*.

The tense we choose for a report is one that is appropriate *at the time that we are reporting* what was said or thought. This means that we sometimes use a different tense in the report from the one that was used in the original statement (G1 & G3) and change pronouns, references to time and place, and words such as **this**, **that**, and **these** (G1–G3).

G4 ☐ Georgia *told me* (that) she would be late for the meeting.
G5 ☐ She *said* (that) she was feeling ill.
G6 ☐ I *said to Ivan* (that) he had to work harder.
G7 ☐ She *told me about* her holiday in Finland.

Say and **tell** are the verbs most commonly used to report statements. We use an **object** after **tell** (… *me* …, G4), but not after **say** (G5). Note, however, that we can use **to** + **object** after **say** (… *to Ivan* …, G6), but not after **tell,** and that we can report what topic was talked about using **tell** + **object** + **about** (G7).

G8 ☐ 'It's a pity you can't come this weekend.'
G9 ☐ "I'm really hungry. I fancy a cheese sandwich."

When we quote what people think or what they have said, we put single ('…') (G8) or double ("…") (G9) quotation marks at the beginning and end of a report of their exact spoken or written words. This is often referred to as *direct speech*

G10 Here are more examples of direct speech. Note the punctuation used:

☐ 'I think we should go to India while we have the opportunity,' argued Oliver.
☐ 'Can I make an appointment to see the doctor?' asked Maxim.
☐ 'You must be mad!' yelled her brother.
☐ 'It tastes horrible,' said Anna, 'but it's supposed to be very good for you.'
☐ 'You should go home,' Maria advised. 'You're looking really ill.'
☐ Daniel said, 'Put them all on the top shelf.'
☐ She stood up and shouted to the children: 'It's time to go home!'

G11 ☐ 'Why did she look at me like that?' wondered Julia.
☐ Perhaps the door is open, thought Omar.
☐ Suddenly she thought: Could they be trying to trick me?

To quote what a person *thinks*, we use the conventions shown in the examples above, or separate the quotation from the reporting clause with a comma (or colon) and leave out quotation marks.

H Nouns

→ Units 40–43

Countable and uncountable nouns

H1 ☐ The *equipment* was faulty.

Nouns can be either **countable** or **uncountable**. Countable nouns are those which can have the word **a / an** before them or be used in the plural. Uncountable nouns are not used with **a / an** or in the plural. Some nouns in English are normally uncountable (like *equipment* in H1), while in many other languages they are countable, e.g. accommodation, advice.

Also: **applause**, **assistance**, **baggage**, **camping**, **cash**, **chaos**, **chess**, **clothing**, **conduct**, **courage**, **cutlery**, **dancing**, **dirt**, **employment**, **evidence**, **fun**, **furniture**, **harm**, **health**, **homework**, **housing**, **housework**, **information**, **jewellery**, **leisure**, **litter**, **luck**, **luggage**, **machinery**, **money**, **mud**, **music**, **news**, **nonsense**, **parking**, **pay**, **permission**, **photography**, **poetry**, **pollution**, **produce**, **progress**, **publicity**, **research**, **rubbish**, **safety**, **scenery**, **shopping**, **sightseeing**, **sunshine**, **transport**, **underwear**, **violence**, **weather**, **work**

H2 ☐ The company is / are doing a lot of *business* in South America.

Sometimes a noun is used uncountably when we are talking about the whole substance or idea (e.g. *business*), but countably when we are talking about units or different kinds (e.g. *businesses*).

Also: **beer**, **coffee**, **water**; **fruit**, **toothpaste**, **washing powder**; **cake**, **chicken**, **land**, **paint**, **space**, **stone**; **abuse**, **(dis)agreement**, **difficulty**, **fear**, **improvement**, **language**, **life**, **pain**, **protest**, **responsibility**, **success**, **thought**, **war**

Compare:

☐ Three coffees and a lemonade, please. – Brazil is a major producer of coffee.

☐ Most toothpastes contain colourings. – Don't forget to buy some toothpaste.

☐ The chickens have escaped. – I don't eat chicken.

☐ I have a fear of spiders. – He was trembling with fear.

H3 ☐ The use of recycled *paper* is saving thousands of trees from being cut down each year.

Some nouns (e.g. *paper*) usually have different meanings when they are used countably and uncountably.

Also: **competition**, **glass**, **grammar**, **iron**, **jam**, **lace**, **property**, **room**, **sight**, **speech**, **time**, **tin**, **work**

Compare:

☐ I just don't understand grammar. – I looked the answer up in a grammar (= a reference book)

☐ I got held up in a jam (= traffic jam). – This jam is really sweet. (Note that 'jams' can also be used to mean types of jam)

☐ She made a wonderful speech at the wedding. – His speech has been affected by the illness.

Compound nouns (→ Unit 43)

H4 ☐ How much *pocket money* do you give to your children?

H5 ☐ A new *golf course / golf-course* is being built outside the town.

A *compound noun* (e.g. *pocket money*) is an expression made up of more than one word, which functions as a noun in a sentence. For example, we can use a **noun + noun** combination to say what something is made of, where something is, when something happens, or what someone does.

Examples: **rice pudding**, **a glasshouse**, **the kitchen cupboard**, **hill fog**, **a night flight**, **a morning call**, **a language teacher**, **a window-cleaner**

We sometimes make compounds from nouns, which consist of more than two nouns.

Examples: **a milk chocolate bar**, **an air-traffic controller**, **a dinner-party conversation**

Some compound nouns are usually written as one word (e.g. **a tablecloth**), some as separate words (e.g. **waste paper**), and others with a hyphen (e.g. **a house-sitter**). Some compound nouns can be written in more than one of these ways (e.g. **a golf course** *or* **a golf-course**; H5). A good dictionary will tell you how a particular compound noun is usually written.

H6 ○ She got some *chewing gum* stuck on her shoe.

-ing + **noun** compound nouns (the *-ing* form usually says what purpose the following noun has)	*Examples*: **chewing gum**, **a living room**, **drinking water**, (**a pack of**) **playing cards**, **a dressing gown**, **a turning-point**, **a working party**
noun + -ing compound nouns (usually refer to actions or processes)	*Examples:* **fly-fishing**, **film-making**, **sunbathing**, **risk-taking**, **life-saving**

The possessive form of nouns

H7 ○ The *girls'* shoes were covered in mud, so I asked them to take them off before they got into *Leon's* car.

To make the possessive form of nouns in writing – referring to people or groups of people (e.g. *companies*), other living things, places, times, etc. – we add **'s** ('apostrophe s') to singular nouns and to irregular plurals that don't end in *-s* (e.g. **Leon's** car; the **college's** administrators; **women's** issues) and add **'** (an apostrophe) to regular plurals (e.g. the **girls'** shoes; the **companies'** difficulties). To make the possessive form of names ending in -s pronounced /z/ we can add either **'** or **'s** (e.g. It's Leon **Jones'** [*or* Leon **Jones's**] new sports car).

H8 ○ That *old car of Zara's* is falling apart.

H9 ○ It belongs to a *friend of his*.

We can use the pattern **noun** + **of** + **'s** (H8) or a *possessive pronoun* (H9) to talk about something that someone owns, or about a relationship. Note that when we are talking about relationships between people we can also use a noun without **'s** (e.g. an uncle **of** Emil**'s** (*or* an uncle of Emil)).

H10 ○ We're going to *Mona's* (house) for the evening.

The noun following a possessive form can be left out when we talk about someone's house. We don't use 'shop' when we talk about, for example, **the newsagent's / the chemist's** or **the newsagent / the chemist** (but not 'the newsagent's shop' / 'the chemist's shop') where the name of the shop includes the profession of the person who works there (compare 'the sweet shop', but not 'the sweet's shop').

H11 ○ *David's guitar playing* has improved enormously.

H12 ○ *The construction of the office block* was opposed by protestors.

Often we can use the possessive **'s** or ... **of** + **noun ...** with very little difference in meaning. However, in general, we are more likely to use the **possessive** form of a noun when the noun refers to a particular person or group of people (H11); and when we are talking about time (e.g. **next year's** holiday prices, *rather than* the holiday prices of next year).
We are more likely to use the **... of** + **noun ...** form with an inanimate noun (H12); when we are talking about a process, or a change over time (e.g. *the establishment* **of the committee**, *rather than* the committee's establishment); and when the noun is a long noun phrase (e.g. She is *the sister* **of someone I used to go to school with**. *rather than* She is someone I used to go to school with's sister.).

Articles, determiners and quantifiers

→ Units 44–52

Determiners are words such as **this**, **her**, and **your** which determine or specify what a noun or noun phrase refers to. They come before the noun and at the front of the noun phrase. *Quantifiers* are words such as **some**, **much**, and **few** which identify the quantity of something. Some words can be both determiners and quantifiers (e.g. 'I sent out invitations to a *few* friends' [few = determiner] and 'A *few* of my friends came to the party' [few = quantifier]) while some are determiners only (e.g. 'This is *my* friend Andrew' [my = determiner]). Many determiners and quantifiers can be *pronouns*, taking the place of a noun phrase (e.g. I've invited all my friends and *most* are coming [most = pronoun]). *Articles* (**a / an** and **the**) are determiners. They also specify what the noun refers to and come at the beginning of the noun phrase. However, they cannot be quantifiers or pronouns.

The (→ Units 45–47)

I1 ☐ Lisa took a cake and some biscuits to the party, but only *the* biscuits were eaten.
I2 ☐ Can you shut *the* door after you, please?
I3 ☐ We had a good time on holiday. *The* beaches were all beautifully clean.
I4 ☐ Give it to *the* man wearing the red coat.
I5 ☐ Look at *the* moon. It's very bright tonight.

We use **the** with singular, plural or uncountable nouns when we expect the listener or reader to be able to identify the thing or person we are referring to in the following noun. It may be that the thing has already been mentioned (I1); that it is clear from the situation which person or thing we mean (I2); that it is in some other way understandable from the context which thing or person we mean (I3; 'the beaches' = 'the beaches we went to'); that the thing or person is identified in what is said after the noun (I4; 'wearing the red coat'); or that there is only one of a particular thing (I5 and also, for example, the Great Wall of China, the North Pole, the USA, the world).

A / an (→ Units 44–47)

I6 ☐ Helen's just bought *a* house on Wilson Street.
I7 ☐ Sydney is *a* beautiful city.

We use **a / an** with singular nouns when we don't expect the listener or reader to be able to identify the thing or person we are referring to in the following noun. We often use **a / an** to introduce a new specific person or thing (I6); or when the noun refers to a class of people or things generally – for example, when we describe someone or something or say what type of thing someone or something is (I7).

Zero article (→ Units 45–47)

I8 ☐ *[–]* Water has got into my camera and damaged it.
I9 ☐ There are *[–]* examples of the present continuous tense on page 32.

We use **zero article** *[–]* with uncountable and plural nouns when we talk generally about people or things rather than about specific people or things. We might talk about a whole class of things in a general way (I8) or about an indefinite number or amount (I9).

Some (→ Unit 48)

Some and **any** are used with plural and uncountable nouns, usually when we are talking about limited, but indefinite or unknown, numbers or quantities of things.

I10 ☐ Peter gave me *some* advice.
I11 ☐ Hasn't *some* information about the proposal been sent out already? I thought I read about it last week.
I12 ☐ Shall I send you *some* details?

We generally use **some**: in affirmative sentences (sentences which are not negatives or questions) (I10); in questions where we expect agreement or the answer 'Yes' (I11); in offers and requests in order to sound positive, expecting the answer 'Yes' (I12). If it is used in this way **some** is pronounced with its weak form /səm/.

I13 ☐ *Some* teachers never seem to get bored with being in the classroom.
We use **some** to talk about particular, but unspecified, people or things with the implication 'some, but not all'. If it is used in this way **some** is pronounced with its strong form /sʌm/.

I14 ☐ I haven't been here for *some* years.
We use **some** (pronounced /sʌm/) when we mean quite a large amount of, or a large number of something. Note that we can say '*some* years, months, weeks, etc.' or just 'years, months, weeks, etc.' with a similar meaning.

Any (→ Unit 48)

I15 ☐ We haven't got *any* butter left.
I16 ☐ Do you have *any* better ideas?
I17 ☐ *Any* student could have answered the question.
We generally use **any**: in sentences with a negative meaning (I15); in questions where we don't necessarily expect agreement or the answer 'Yes' (I16); when we mean 'all (of them), and it's not important which' (I17).

I18 ☐ If you see *any* cherries in the shop, can you buy them?
I19 ☐ *Any* questions should be sent to the manager.
We commonly use **any**: in 'if' clauses (I18; note that 'some' is possible, but would seem to expect that you will see cherries); when **any** means 'if there is / are' (I19; = If there are questions ...).

Anyone, someone, etc.

I20 ☐ Isabella lives *somewhere* in Denmark.
I21 ☐ I've never seen *anybody* that tall before.
The rules for the use of the following words are generally the same as those given in I10–I19 for **some** and **any**: the pronouns **someone / anyone**, **somebody / anybody**, **something / anything**, (note that **somebody** = **someone**, and **anybody** = **anyone**), and the adverbs **somewhere / anywhere**. For example, **some-** words are generally used in affirmative sentences (I20), and **any-** words are generally used in sentences with a negative meaning (I21).

Quantifiers with and without 'of': any (of), some (of), much (of), many (of), both (of), all (of) each (of), none (of), few (of), little (of) (→ Units 48–52)

I22 ☐ *Many of* Liam's closest friends are women.
I23 ☐ *Some of* my jewellery is missing.
I24 ☐ Have you seen *any of* these new light bulbs in the shops yet?
I25 ☐ Are you going to eat *all* (*of*) that cake, or can I finish it?
I26 ☐ *Both of* us were exhausted after flying to Japan.
I27 ☐ I polished *each* trophy with a soft cloth.
I28 ☐ Is there *much* orange juice left?
We usually need to put **of** after quantifiers when there is a **possessive form** (I22), **pronoun** (I23) or **determiner** (I24) before a noun. Note, however, that in informal contexts after **both** and **all** we can leave out **of** before **the**, **these**, **those** (and **this** or **that** with **all**; I25); **my**, **your**, **her**, **his**, etc.; and **mine**, **yours**, etc., but not before **them**, **you**, or **us** (I26) (or **it** with **all**). We don't use **of** after a quantifier immediately before a noun (I27 & 28).

No, none (of), neither (of), either (→ Unit 49)

I29 ☐ There's *no* train until tomorrow.
I30 ☐ *No* information was given about how the study was conducted.
I31 ☐ She had *no* shoes on.
I32 ☐ *None of* my clothes fit any more.

I33 ☐ 'How many children have you got?' '*None*.'
We use the determiner **no** to mean 'not a' or 'not any' before a singular (I29), uncountable (I30), or plural noun (I31). Before **the**, **my**, **this**, etc. we use the quantifier **none** (**of**) to mean 'not any' (I32). If it is clear from the context what we mean, we can use the pronoun **none** (I33).

I34 ☐ *None of* the furniture has arrived yet.
When we use **none of** with an uncountable noun the verb must be singular. However, when we use **none of** with a plural noun the verb can be either singular or plural (e.g. **None of** *the parcels* **have / has** arrived yet), although the singular form is more grammatical.

I35 ☐ *Neither of* his parents could drive.
We use **neither of** instead of **none of** when we are talking about two people or things.

I36 ☐ You could catch the 10:05 or the 10:32. *Either* train gets you there in good time.

I37 ☐ Has *either of* them passed their driving test yet?
When we use **either** as a determiner (I36), it is followed by a singular countable noun. If this is the subject of the sentence, it is followed by a singular verb. We use **either of** with plural nouns and pronouns (I37). Note that **either** can also be used as an adverbial as in 'We can **either** take the train or go by bus' and 'I had no wish to go, and Lev didn't want to go **either**'.

Much (of), many (of), a lot of, lots (of) (→ Unit 50)

I38 ☐ There isn't *much* traffic along the street where I live.

I39 ☐ Will you be taking *many* suitcases on the trip?
Much and **many** are used to talk about quantities and amounts. **Much** is used with uncountable nouns (I38) and **many** with plural nouns (I39). Before **the**, **my**, **this**, etc. we use **much of** / **many of**. **Much of** can also be used with a singular countable noun to mean 'a large part of' (e.g. *Much of* the national park was destroyed in the fire.). We can use **much** and **many** without a noun if the meaning is clear (e.g. Can you get some sugar when you go shopping? There isn't *much* left.). **Much** and **many** are often used after **as**, **how**, **so**, and **too** (e.g. I'd say there were twice *as many* women at the meeting as men.).

I40 ☐ She didn't show *much* interest in what I said.

I41 ☐ Mariam offered me *a lot of* money for the car.

I42 ☐ *Many of* my relatives live around Auckland.
Much (**of**) and **many** (**of**) are used in *negative sentences* to emphasise that we are talking about small (or smaller than expected) quantities or amounts (I40) and in *questions* to ask about quantities or amounts (e.g. Have you got *much* homework to do?). In *affirmative sentences* we often use **a lot of**, **lots of** or **plenty of** rather than **much** (**of**) and **many** to talk about large amounts and quantities, particularly in conversation and informal writing (I41). However, **many of** is common in affirmative sentences in both formal and informal contexts (I42).

All (of) (→ Unit 51)

I43 ☐ There is heating in *all* (*of*) the holiday cottages.
We use **all** or **all of** when we are talking about the total number of things or people in a group, or the total amount of something. In informal contexts we can leave out **of**.

I44 ☐ *Everyone* was waiting to hear the results.
In modern English we don't use **all** without a noun to mean 'everyone' or 'everything'. However, **all** can mean 'everything' when it is followed by a *relative clause* (e.g. I don't agree with *all* that he said. (= everything that he said)). We can also use **all** without a noun to mean 'the only thing' (e.g. *All* she wants to do is help.).

Each / every (→ Unit 51)

I45 ☐ *Every* newspaper had the same front page story.

I46 ☐ Following the flood, *every* building in the area needs major repair work.
We can use **each** and **every** with singular countable nouns (I45), and **each of** with plural nouns, to mean all things or people in a group of two or more (**each** (**of**)) or three or more

(**every**). We use a singular verb (... *needs* ...) after **each** (**of**) and **every** (I46). However, when **each** follows the noun or pronoun it refers to, the noun / pronoun and verb are plural (e.g. *Every* student *is* tested twice a year. They *are each* given a hundred questions to do.).

(A) few (of), less (of), (a) little (of) (→ Unit 52)

I47 ☐ *A few of* the boys were very good computer gamers.
I48 ☐ There is *little* evidence to support his claim.

We use (**a**) **few** (**of**) with plural countable nouns (I47) and (**a**) **little** (**of**) with uncountable nouns (I48).

I49 ☐ There's a lot *less* water in the lake than last year.
I50 ☐ The holiday cost *less* than I thought it would.

We use **less** (**of**) with uncountable nouns (I49) or in a general sense (I50).

I51 ☐ I've got *a few* close friends that I meet regularly.
I52 ☐ He has *few* close friends and often feels lonely.

We often use **a few** and **a little** in a 'positive' way (I51); for example, to suggest that a small amount or quantity is enough, or to suggest that it is more than we would expect. We often use **few** and **little** in a 'negative' way (I52); for example, to suggest that the amount or quantity is not enough, or is surprisingly low. Compare '*A few of* her songs were popular and she was very well known' (= 'positive') and '*Few of* her songs were very popular and eventually she gave up her musical career' (= 'negative'). This use of **few** and **little** is often rather formal.

J Relative clauses and other types of clause

→ Units 53–59

Relative clauses have a similar function to adjectives in that they give more information about someone or something referred to in a main clause. Participle clauses (**-ing** and **-ed** clauses) can be used like relative clauses, but can also have an adverbial function, giving information about time, cause, etc.

Relative clauses (→ Units 53–55)

J1 ☐ Magnus stopped the police car *that was driving past*.
J2 ☐ My mother, *who is in her seventies*, enjoys hill walking.

Defining relative clauses (e.g. ... *that was driving past*; J1) are used to specify *which* person or thing we mean, or which *type* of person or thing we mean. Note that we don't put a comma between the noun and a defining relative clause.

Non-defining relative clauses (e.g. ..., *who is in her seventies*, ...; J2) are used to add extra information about a noun, but this information is not necessary to explain which person or thing we mean. We don't use them often in everyday speech, but we do use them frequently in written English. Note that we often put a comma before and after a non-defining relative clause.

J3 ☐ The house, *which is to the north of the road*, is owned by a rock star.

After a relative clause, we don't repeat the subject with a pronoun; so, for example, we wouldn't say 'The house which is to the north of the road it is owned by a rock star'. However, this is sometimes found in informal speech; for example, 'A friend of mine who is a solicitor – she helped me.'

J4 ☐ I have *a friend* **who** / **that** *plays guitar*. (a friend = subject, plays = verb, guitar = object)
J5 ☐ He showed me *the rocks* (**which** / **that**) *he had collected*. (the rocks = object, he = subject, had collected = verb)

When we use *a defining relative clause*, the relative pronoun can be either the subject or the object of the relative clause. When it is the *subject* the word order is subject + verb + object (J4). When the relative pronoun is the *object* the word order is object + subject + verb (J5).

-ing clauses (= present participle clauses) (→ Units 58 & 59)

J6 ☐ *Glancing over his shoulder*, he could see the dog chasing him.
J7 ☐ *Pushing her way through the crowds*, she just managed to get on the bus as it pulled away.

J8 ☐ *'Wait a minute,' said Amy, running through the door.*
We can use an **-ing** clause to talk about something that takes place at the same time as (J6) or just before (J7) an action in the main clause. We often use an **-ing** clause in written narrative after quoted speech, when we want to say what someone was doing while they were talking (J8).
Note that the understood subject of **-ing** and **-ed** (see J10) clauses should be the same as the subject of the main clause. For example, in J6, 'he' is the unstated subject of 'Glancing over his shoulder ...'.

J9 ☐ *Knowing exactly what I wanted*, I didn't spend much time shopping.
-ing clauses can be used to talk about reasons and results. This sentence has a similar meaning to 'Because I knew exactly what I wanted, I didn't spend much time shopping'.

-ed clauses (= past participle clauses) (→ Units 58 & 59)

J10 ☐ *Annoyed by the boys' behaviour*, she complained to the headteacher.
We can use an **-ed** clause to talk about something that happened before an action in the main clause. Often the event in the **-ed** clause causes the event in the main clause.

K Pronouns, substitution and leaving out words

→ Units 60–65

Reflexive pronouns (→ Unit 60)

K1 ☐ 'What did you do to your hand?' 'I cut *myself* when I was chopping vegetables.'
When the subject and object of a sentence refer to the same person or thing, we use a **reflexive pronoun** as the object of a sentence rather than a personal pronoun. The singular forms of reflexive pronouns are **myself**, **yourself**, **herself**, **himself**, **itself**; the plural forms are **ourselves**, **yourselves**, **themselves**.

K2 ☐ We phoned the plumber and he came *himself*.
K3 ☐ My sister drew the picture *herself*.
K4 ☐ I was given this book by the author *herself*.
We can use reflexive pronouns for emphasis: for example, after an intransitive verb (K2) to emphasise the subject; after a transitive verb (K3) to emphasise that something is done without help; or after a noun to emphasise that noun (K4).

Each other / one another

K5 ☐ They tried to avoid *each other / one another* at the party.
K6 ☐ John and Carmen first met (*each other / one another*) when they were working in Spain.
Some verbs, such as **avoid** (K5), can be used to describe actions in which two or more people or things do the same thing to the other(s). We use **each other** or **one another** with these.

Also: **attract**, **complement**, **face**, **help**, **repel**

After other verbs such as **meet** (K6), we can use **each other** or **one another**, but this may be omitted when the subject is plural or has the form '... and ...' .

Also: **embrace**, **fight**, **kiss**, **marry**

K7 ☐ The scheme allows students from many countries to communicate *with each other / with one another*.
K8 ☐ We *looked at each other / one another* and started to laugh.
With some verbs (e.g. *communicate*) we have to use a preposition, often **with**, before **each other / one another** (K7 & K8).

Also: **agree**, **coincide**, **collaborate**, **compete (against)**, **contrast**, **co-operate**, **disagree**, **joke**, **look at**, **quarrel**, **talk to / with**

K9 ☐ The two children *each* blamed the *other* for breaking the window.
For emphasis we can separate **each** and **other**. This sentence is more emphatic than 'The two children blamed each other ...'.

Substitution (→ Units 61–63)

K10 ☐ I had a racing bike when I was young, and *so did my brother*.

K11 ☐ 'Emma loves ice cream.' '*So do I*.'

K12 ☐ 'I didn't think much of the restaurant.' '*Neither did I*.'

We can use **so** + **auxiliary verb** + **subject** to say that a second person does the same things as the person already mentioned (K10 & K11). The corresponding negative form uses **neither** (K12), **nor** ('Nor did I'), or **not ... either** ('I didn't either'). We often use this to avoid repetition (e.g. in K12 we use 'Neither did I' rather than 'I didn't think much of the restaurant either').

L Adjectives and adverbs

→ Units 66–78

Gradable and non-gradable adjectives (→ Units 67–68)

L1 ☐ They live in a very *large* house.

L2 ☐ Our teacher gave us an absolutely *impossible* problem to solve.

Most adjectives describe qualities that can be measured or graded, and so can be used in comparative and superlative forms and with words such as 'very' or 'extremely'. These are referred to as **gradable** adjectives (for example, 'large' in L1). Some adjectives are not gradable because they refer to qualities that are completely present or completely absent. These **non-gradable** adjectives (e.g. 'impossible' in L2) are not usually used in comparative and superlative forms or with words such as 'very' or 'extremely'. They can often, however, be used with words such as 'absolutely' or 'completely'.

Order of adjectives

L3 ☐ I drank some *very good Brazilian* coffee.

When we use more than one adjective before a noun, there is often a *preferred* (although not fixed) order for these adjectives depending on what type of adjective they are:

opinion + **size / physical quality / shape / age** + **colour** + **participle adjectives** + **origin** + **material** + **type** + **purpose** + **NOUN**	
Examples:	
an old plastic container	= age + material + noun
a hard red ball	= quality + colour + noun
a frightening Korean mask	= opinion + origin + noun
a round biscuit tin	= shape + purpose (for holding biscuits) + noun
a small broken plate	= size + participle adjective + noun
a useful digital alarm clock	= opinion + type + purpose + noun

To help you to learn this order, it can be useful to remember that *gradable* adjectives (describing *opinion*, *size*, *quality*, *shape*, and *age*) usually precede *ungradable* adjectives (*participle adjective* and adjectives describing *origin*, *material*, *type* and *purpose*).

Easily confused adjectives

L4 ☐ I was *surprised* to find that the film was quite *frightening*.

Some adjectives that are used to describe feelings about something or someone else have both an **-ed** and **-ing** form. Generally, the **-ed** form describes how the person feels (e.g. I was *surprised* ...), and the **-ing** form gives an evaluation of the thing or other person (e.g. ... the film was quite *frightening*.)

Also: **alarmed – alarming**, **amazed – amazing**, **bored – boring**, **excited – exciting**, **interested – interesting**, **pleased – pleasing**, **tired – tiring**, **worried – worrying**

Adjectives and adverbs: use (→ Unit 71)

L5 ☐ The staff in the shop always speak *politely* to customers.

L6 ☐ It was *strangely* quiet as we went into the room.

We use an *adverb*, not an *adjective*, to say how something happened or was done (L5), or to modify adjectives (L6).

Adjectives and adverbs: comparative and superlative forms (→ Unit 72)

L7 ☐ The building was *bigger* than I'd expected.
L8 ☐ It was the *most ridiculous* thing to say.

We usually add the ending **-er** to one-syllable adjectives and adverbs to make their comparative forms (L7) and **-est** to make their superlative forms. With three or more syllables we usually add **more / less** and **most / least** (L8). With two syllables we can usually use either.

Quite

L9 ☐ I was *quite* satisfied with the result.
L10 ☐ No, you're *quite* wrong!
L11 ☐ The food here is *quite* superb.

Quite has two meanings: to a particular degree, but not 'very' (= 'fairly') (L9); and to a large degree, or 'very much' (= 'completely') (L10). When **quite** is used with non-gradable adjectives it means 'completely' (L11).

M

Adverbial clauses and conjunctions

→ Units 79–87

An adverbial clause is a type of subordinate clause, linked to a main clause. An adverbial clause adds extra information to the main clause about such things as time and conditions. Most adverbial clauses begin with a conjunction that indicates their link with the main clause. Example conjunctions are **after**, **before**, **when** and **until** (time conjunctions); and **if** and **unless** (conditional conjunctions).

Tenses in adverbial and main clauses: general

M1 ☐ Because I'*m* overweight, my doctor *has put* me on a diet.
M2 ☐ I *felt* unwell when I *got* up this morning.

The verb in the adverbial clause is usually the same tense as the verb in the main clause. In M1 they are both present (present simple + present perfect), and in M2 they are both past (past simple + past simple).

Time clauses: tenses (→ Unit 79)

M3 ☐ Have something to eat before you *leave*.

To refer to the future after a time conjunction (... *before* ...) we use present tenses.

M4 ☐ As soon as you *see / have seen* her, come and tell me.
M5 ☐ She wrote to me after she *spoke / had spoken* to Carlos.

To talk about an action in the adverbial clause that is completed before another action described in the main clause, we can use either simple or perfect tenses (present as in M4 or past as in M5), but not **will** or **will have** + **-ed** (the future perfect).

M6 ☐ When I *saw* Kim, I asked her over for dinner.

If the actions in the main clause and the adverbial clause take place at the same time, we use simple, not perfect tenses.

M7 ☐ While the children *were swimming*, their mother kept a watchful eye on them.
M8 ☐ I read a book while I *waited*.

While is mainly used with continuous tenses (M7) and also with simple tenses (M8).

Conditional clauses (→ Units 83–86)

Real and unreal conditionals (→ Units 83 & 84)

Some conditional clauses beginning with **if** suggest that a situation is *real* – that is, the situation is or was true, or may have been or may become true (e.g. *If anyone phones*, tell them I'll be back at eleven; *If you really want to learn Italian*, you need to spend some time in Italy). Others suggest that a situation is *unreal* – that is, the situation is imaginary or untrue. (e.g. What would you do *if you won the lottery*?; *If you had started out earlier*, you wouldn't have been so late).

Compare: *If I go to Berlin*, I'll travel by train. (= *real* conditional) and *If I went to Berlin*, I'd travel by train. (= *unreal* conditional). In the first, the speaker is thinking of going to Berlin (it is a real future possibility), but in the second, the speaker is not thinking of doing so. The second might be giving someone advice.

Real conditionals: tenses (➜ Units 83 & 84)

M9 ☐ I'll give you a lift if it *rains*.

M10 ☐ If you *leave* now, you'll be home in two hours.

M11 ☐ If water *freezes*, it expands.

M12 ☐ If I *made* the wrong decision then I apologise.

In real conditionals we use a present tense to talk about the future (M9), the present (M10) or unchanging relationships (M11), and past tenses to talk about the past (M12).

Unreal conditionals: tenses (➜ Units 83 & 84)

M13 ☐ *If* my grandfather *was* / *were* still alive, he *would* be a hundred today.

To talk about *present* or *future* situations in unreal conditionals, we use a past tense (either simple or continuous) in the **if-clause** and **would** + **bare infinitive** in the main clause. In *unreal* conditionals we don't use the past simple or past perfect in the main clause. In *unreal* conditionals, we can also use **could** / **might** (**have**) instead of **would** (**have**) (e.g. If my grandfather *was* / *were* still alive, he *might have* enjoyed looking after our garden; If I *lived* out of town, I *could* take up horse riding.). Note that we sometimes use **if ... were** instead of **if ... was** (see Unit 85).

M14 ☐ *If* I *had known* how difficult the job was, I *wouldn't have taken* it.

When we talk about something that might have happened in the *past*, but didn't, then we use **if** + **past perfect** and **would have** + **past participle** in the main clause. We can also use **might** / **could have** instead of **would have** in the main clause (e.g. They *might have found* a better hotel *if* they *had driven* a few more kilometres.).

M15 ☐ *If* Bruno *wasn't* so lazy, he *would have passed* the exam easily.

M16 ☐ *If* the doctor *had been called* earlier, Paula *would* still *be* alive today.

In some *unreal* conditionals we use mixed tenses. That is, a past tense in the **if-clause** and **would have + past participle** in the main clause (M15), or a past perfect in the **if- clause** and **would** + **infinitive** in the main clause (M16). We can use these patterns to talk about possible consequences if situations were or had been different. We can also use **might / could** (**have**) in the main clause instead of **would** (**have**) (e.g. ... he *could have* passed the exam easily.; ... Paula *might* still *be* alive today.).

M17 ☐ If I *had* a more reliable car, I'd drive to Spain rather than fly.

In *unreal* conditional sentences we don't normally use **would** in an **if-clause** (but see Unit 84).

Other adverbial clauses

Other types of *adverbial clause* give information about *place* (M18), *contrast* (M19 and Unit 82), *cause* or *reason* (M20 and Unit 80), *purpose* (M21 and Unit 81), and *result* (M22 and Unit 81):

M18 ☐ Can you put it back *where you found it*, please?

M19 ☐ My sister is blonde, *whereas my brother has dark hair*.

M20 ☐ He wasn't allowed in *because he was too young*.

M21 ☐ We got up early *so that we could watch the sunrise*.

M22 ☐ He played so badly *that he was easily beaten*.

Additional exercises

These additional exercises provide further practice of important areas from the book; each exercise covers grammar from two or more units. References to the relevant exercises are given at the bottom of the main unit exercise pages. The key can be found on p.278.

List of exercises:

Exercise 1	Present and past; simple and continuous tenses	Units 1, 2 & 4
Exercise 2	Present perfect, past simple, and present perfect continuous	Units 3 & 6
Exercise 3	Past perfect, past perfect continuous, and past simple	Units 5 & 7
Exercise 4	The future	Units 9 & 10
Exercise 5	Modals and semi-modals	Units 15–20
Exercise 6	Passives	Units 22–25
Exercise 7	Verb complementation: what follows verbs	Units 30 & 31
Exercise 8	Reporting	Units 33, 35, 36 & 38
Exercise 9	Nouns	Units 40–43
Exercise 10	Articles, etc.	Units 44–48
Exercise 11	Relative clauses	Units 53–55
Exercise 12	Substitution and leaving out words	Units 62–65
Exercise 13	Position of adjectives, adverbs and adverbial phrases	Units 66, 69, 74 & 75
Exercise 14	Adverbial clauses and conjunctions	Units 79–82 & 87
Exercise 15	Prepositions	Units 92–94
Exercise 16	Inversion	Units 99 & 100

Present and past; simple and continuous tenses

Units 1, 2 & 4

1 **Complete each pair of sentences with a positive or negative form of the same verb from the box. Use the present simple, present continuous, past simple or past continuous. Give all possible answers. Use ∧ to add any words outside the gap.**

consider **expect** **own** **phone** **prefer**
~~promise~~ **put** **read** **tell** **weigh**

1 a If I'm not too busy, I ....promise.... to help you in the garden later today.
b I'll try to get over on Saturday, but I .... to be there.
2 a I made a cup of coffee while she .... the letter.
b As soon as the teacher told us to start, I .... through all the questions quickly.
3 a They .... to reach the mountain summit by evening, but the weather was too bad.
b We .... Luisa to visit us in June if she can get a cheap flight.
4 a Over 90% of the population now .... a mobile phone.
b I grew up in Beijing, where my father .... a bookshop.
5 a I .... selling my house and buying a flat.
b Many people .... her to be the finest violinist in the country at the moment.
6 a Leo .... me that you're getting married. Congratulations!
b Apparently Angela is very ill. They .... me that she never leaves her house now.
7 a I .... the theatre four times this morning, but there was no answer.
b I .... my mother twice a day when my father was in hospital.
8 a He always .... his feet up on the chairs. It's really unhygienic.
b I find it annoying that she constantly .... empty milk cartons back in the fridge.
9 a A survey has found that, surprisingly, most children .... to walk to school than be taken by car.
b I swam across the river, but my friends .... to walk to the nearest bridge.
10 a Nathan .... over 100 kilos and really needs to take more exercise.
b He held the fish in his hands as if he .... it and then said, 'It's about 3.5 kilos.'

Present perfect, past simple, and present perfect continuous

Units 3 & 6

2 **Match the beginnings and endings. Sometimes there is more than one possibility.**

1 a I haven't had time to phone Hugo today, b I didn't have time to phone Hugo today,	(i) but I'll certainly contact him before I leave work. (ii) but I'll certainly contact him some time tomorrow.
2 a When she was prime minister, Mrs Perez b Since she became prime minister, Mrs Perez	(i) has often been accused of ignoring the advice of her colleagues. (ii) was often accused of ignoring the advice of her colleagues.
3 a I've watched *Mamma Mia* b I've been watching *Mamma Mia*	(i) and now I keep humming the songs to myself. (ii) at least ten times already.
4 a I'd always wanted to own a Porsche b I won't know if I can afford a Porsche	(i) until I've found out how much they cost. (ii) until I found out how much they cost.
5 a Unemployment has risen b Unemployment has been rising	(i) by 58% since the present government came to power. (ii) ever since the present government came to power.
6 a As soon as I've finished the book b As soon as I finished the book	(i) I'm going to have a holiday. (ii) I started writing another one.
7 a I've been playing squash b I've played squash	(i) since my doctor advised me to lose weight. (ii) a couple of times before, but I can't get the hang of it.
8 a I haven't been back to London b I haven't eaten really good pasta	(i) since I lived in Italy. (ii) since I've lived in Italy.

Past perfect, past perfect continuous, and past simple

Units 5 & 7

3 **Complete each sentence (b) so that it has a similar meaning to sentence (a). Use a verb related to the italicised word in an appropriate tense (active or passive): past perfect, past perfect continuous or past simple. Give alternatives where possible.**

1 a The proposed new library had been under *discussion* for almost three years at the time an appropriate site became available.

b At the time an appropriate site became available, they had been discussing the proposed new library for almost three years.

2 a There had been a considerable *improvement* in his condition when I saw him in hospital last night.

b His condition ……

3 a It was announced that there was a ten-minute *delay* to the Toulouse train.

b It was announced that the Toulouse train ……

4 a Thomas had been on a *diet* for a month when he came to stay with us, and we noticed immediately that he had already lost a lot of weight.

b Thomas ……

5 a There was an *expectation* that Victoria would win comfortably, but she finished third.
b Victoria ....
6 a When I reversed the car out of the garage, I did some *damage* to the rear number plate.
b When I reversed the car out of the garage, I ....
7 a Andrei received a *promotion* last week.
b Andrei ....
8 a Rentpool had been under *investigation* by the tax authorities for a number of months when they arrested the chairman.
b The tax authorities ....
9 a The Minister made her colleagues *angry* when she criticised them during her speech yesterday.
b The Minister ....
10 a There had already been a *suggestion* from Emilia that the money should be spent on new tablet computers for the school.
b Emilia ....

The future

Units 9 & 10

4 **If necessary, correct or improve the italicised verbs in these dialogues, using will, shall, going to, present continuous for the future, or present simple for the future.**

A A: Careful, (1) you*'re going to* spill your coffee.
B: Oh, no! Too late. Now (2) I*'m going to* have to change my trousers.
B A: What have you got all that wood for?
B: (1) I*'ll* build a bird table in the garden.
A: If you need any help, let me know and (2) I*'m going to* give you a hand.
C A: (1) *Shall* you be able to come over on the 3rd? We (2) *have* a barbecue.
B: Just a minute, (3) I*'m going to* have a look in my diary. No, I'm sorry. (4) I*'m meeting* some friends in town that day.
D A: Did you know that David (1) *is going to go* to New Zealand this summer?
B: Yes, I heard. I'm really sorry he (2) *doesn't come* to see us.
A: I wonder when we (3) *see* him again?
B: Well, he certainly (4) *won't* be back before Christmas.
E A: I (1) *take* Aunt Lucy to the station later. Do you want a lift into town, too?
B: What time (2) *does* her train *go*?
A: It (3) *will be* at 4:15. It (4) *takes* us about half an hour to get there if there isn't too much traffic.
B: Well you should start out early. Apparently, (5) we*'ll* have heavy snow this afternoon. In fact, thanks for your offer, but I think (6) I*'m going to* stay at home in the warm.

Modals and semi-modals

Units 15–20

5 **Underline the best answers from each group in italics.**

1 A: I've spent most of the morning trying to fix my washing machine, but I seem to have made it worse.
B: You *ought to ask / may ask / ought to have asked* me to come over and take a look at it. I *would have been / should be / would be* happy to help. But I suppose it's too late now!
2 The taxi *needs to / should / would* be here in a couple of minutes. We*'d better / 've better / 'd better to* get ready to go.
3 My daughter *wouldn't / won't / may not* eat carrots. She hates the taste of them. I *don't have to / 'm not able to / can't* think of any way of getting her to eat them. But to tell the truth, I *could / would / used to* hate them when I was young, too.

4 A: We're completely lost! I*'m not able to / can't / mustn't* find any of the street names around here on the map.
B: We *must have / have got to have / can have* taken the wrong turning at the traffic lights about a kilometre back.

5 You *haven't got to / needn't / mustn't* go on the beach when the tide's coming in. It's very dangerous. You *can / might / would* play in the playground instead.

6 I was beginning to be concerned that I *won't / mustn't / wouldn't* get to the station for my train. But I *didn't need worry / needn't have worried / needn't worry*; Aisha turned up in good time to give me a lift.

7 Most headteachers today feel that parents *need / should / had better* play a more active part in the running of schools. There was a time when parents *would / will / should* put a lot of effort into fundraising for schools, but those days seem to have gone.

8 A: These trousers shrank the first time I washed them.
B: If I were you, I *ought to / should / can* take them back.
A: Yes, I suppose they *can / need / may* give me my money back.

9 Preliminary research suggests that the bones *must / have got to / used to* be at least 100,000 years old, but they *would / could / can* be considerably older than that.

10 Apparently, in the future, we *will be able to / can / could* to get holograms of the people we're talking to on our mobile phones. Of course, by the time this is common, we *can / must / might* have started using other ways of communicating.

11 Both candidates for the job were very strong and it was hard to choose between them. I certainly *couldn't / mustn't / had got to* have decided which one to appoint. But fortunately, we *hadn't got to / didn't have to / mustn't* make a final decision; the management found enough money to allow us to appoint both of them.

12 You *needn't / don't need to / mustn't* be very fit to play badminton well. It *can / is able to / could* be played by anyone who is reasonably fit and who has a good sense of timing.

Passives

Units 22–25

6 **Some extracts from radio news reports are given below. Rewrite them using passive forms in which the italicised word is the subject of each clause. If that is italicised, use a passive construction with it or there.**

Examples:
Picasso encouraged *her* to paint. → **She was encouraged** to paint by Picasso.
People believe *that* the Prime Minister will resign tomorrow. → **It is believed** that the Prime Minister will resign tomorrow.

A People are encouraging *the Prime Minister* to sack the Environment Minister, Maria Long, after someone revealed *that* she had received payments from a major oil company. However, in a statement today, the Prime Minister said: 'My advisors tell *me* that the company paid *Mrs Long* the money before she joined the government. I have no intention of dismissing her.'

B A tropical storm has caused severe flooding in the city of Chittagong in southern Bangladesh. Although we understand *that* there are no casualties, the floods have made *many thousands of people* homeless, and people estimate the *damage to property* as running into millions of dollars.

C Protesters have continued to block the construction of the new ring road by tying themselves to trees along the proposed route. Police say that they have given *the protesters* two days to leave the area or they will arrest *them*.

D Conservation groups have demanded that the government should close down *the nuclear power station* after a report which said that investigators have found *unacceptable levels of radiation* in the local area.

E The Commissioner of the Dublin police force has revealed that they have received *a death threat* against the life of President Nabon, who is visiting the capital this weekend. He says that they are taking *the threat* very seriously. People expect *that* security levels will be increased during the President's visit.

F Someone found *a man* injured on a Scottish hillside this morning. People think *that* he fell while coming down a hillside in bad weather. Medical staff are treating *him* in hospital for leg and head injuries. Someone reported *him* missing last night when he failed to return home after a day's walking.

G And now football. People expect *that* there will be a record crowd at tonight's match between Barcelona and Real Madrid. People report *that* the club will give *the Barcelona players* a huge financial bonus if they win and people have even suggested *that* the club might pay *them* as much as €50,000 each.

Verb complementation: what follows verbs

Units 30 & 31

7 Underline the correct option. Sometimes both are possible.

1 He insisted *to pay / on paying* for the meal.
2 The interviewer started off *to ask / by asking* me why I wanted the job.
3 I can clearly recall *his saying / him saying* that he was meeting Sarah at eight o'clock.
4 The university has *arranged / appointed* Dr Lopez to be head of the new Medical Institute.
5 I knew I could *ask / count* on Hannah if I needed any help.
6 My parents are always going on *at me to tidy / for to tidy* up my bedroom.
7 The ticket enables you *visiting / to visit* both the museum and the art gallery.
8 Fatima is so small that she often has to resort to *wearing children's clothes / children's clothes* to get the right size.
9 We objected to *their cat / their cat's* digging up our garden.
10 The government plans to bring in new laws *forcing / making* parents to take more responsibility for the education of their children.
11 I don't approve of *her wearing / wearing* outdoor shoes in the house.
12 Ramos was arrested when he failed *him to appear / to appear* in court.
13 If you have any problems with the computer, contact Simon. It's best if you *allow / let* him deal with them.
14 I've heard a lot about Dr Lau, and I'm looking forward *to hearing / to hear* his talk tomorrow.
15 Although Carmen is a doctor herself, it doesn't *entitle her to / entitle for her to* special treatment, and she will have to join the waiting list like everyone else.
16 We *waited / waited for* the storm to pass before we continued.
17 When I was in the supermarket I *noticed a man to take / noticed a man take* a packet off the shelf and hide it inside his coat.
18 We *invited / refused* Lisa to come to the party.
19 I overheard her *tell / telling* Aleksi that she was seriously ill.
20 She gave up work so that she could focus on *looking / look* after her children.
21 We were unhappy in England, and even *discussed / talked* of emigrating to New Zealand.
22 The lizard is amazingly well adapted *to live / to living* in very dry and windy conditions.
23 Another increase in the price of petrol would discourage *me from using / from using* my car.

Reporting

Units 33, 35, 36 & 38

8 Complete each report using a noun from the box followed by a **that-clause** or **to-infinitive clause**. Give both alternatives if possible.

advice complaint conclusion confession decision prediction promise refusal reply ~~statement~~ threat warning

1 'The government has decreased taxation every year since we came to power,' stated the President.
Opposition leaders have challenged *the President's statement that the government have / had decreased taxation every year since they came to power.*

2 Karen said, 'I've decided not to go to university next year.' We were disappointed with *Karen's decision* ……… .

3 'The Earth will pass through the tail of a comet within the next five years,' predicted Professor Adams.
Considerable media attention has been focused on ……… .

4 'We said that we would dismiss the strikers if they didn't return to work, and we have now done that.'
The company has carried out ……… .

5 'You should delegate more of your work to your secretary,' Nicky was advised by her boss.
Nicky decided to follow ……… .

6 'I'll pick you up at ten,' Jason promised.
Jason didn't turn up until eleven, despite ……… .

7 'Professor Jones doesn't know what he's talking about,' Rob concluded.
I wasn't surprised by ……… .

8 'My dinner is cold!'
We decided to ignore Dan's ……… .

9 'We will not negotiate over the ownership of the land!'
I was astonished by ……… .

10 'Small children should be kept indoors until pollution levels have decreased,' the Health Minister has warned.
The Health Minister has issued ……… .

11 'I've never used a computer before,' she confessed.
I was surprised by ……… .

12 'Where's Bethany?' I asked Zeb. 'I don't know,' he replied.
When I asked Zeb where Bethany was ……… .

Nouns

Units 40–43

9 Complete each sentence with an appropriate present simple form (singular or plural) of the verb in brackets. If both singular and plural forms are possible, give both.

1 I've been trying to sell my car for ages, but nobody ……… to buy it. (*want*)
2 A lettuce and a carrot ……… all I need to make the salad. (*be*)
3 A lot of students ……… in the old houses near the university. (*live*)
4 All of the scientific evidence ……… to the conclusion that increasing use of pesticides in farming is damaging our health. (*point*)
5 The university ……… to appoint lecturers who already have a PhD. (*prefer*)
6 She's one of those people who ……… just sitting in the sun on holiday. (*love*)
7 The office staff ……… that they have been treated badly by management. (*claim*)
8 All of my children ……… to the same school. (*go*)

9 A lot of cheaper furniture nowadays .... in pieces inside a flat box for you to build yourself. (*come*)
10 In France, the media .... more respectful of the privacy of celebrities than in Britain. (*be*)
11 Currently, 16% of the workforce .... jobless. (*be*)
12 It's a really quiet town at night. Everything .... at around 10 o'clock. (*shut*)
13 The police .... that the fire was caused deliberately. (*suspect*)
14 The majority of the children in the class .... under five years old. (*be*)
15 Although the bracelet might be worth something, none of the other jewellery .... to be of great value. (*appear*)
16 The stairs .... quite steep, so be careful how you go down. (*be*)
17 What worries me about the car .... the problems we've been having with the brakes. (*be*)
18 The United Nations .... to send a team of doctors to investigate the outbreak of TB. (*plan*)
19 One of the arguments in favour of the new airport .... that it will bring jobs to the area. (*be*)
20 Many people have speculated on the reasons for the southern population movements in the Indian subcontinent during the 15th century, but none of the historical records identified so far .... an answer. (*provide*)
21 It's a charity performance, so none of the actors .... a fee for taking part. (*get*)
22 Every letter and parcel .... carefully checked before posting to make sure it has the correct address. (*be*)
23 My parents want to move to Spain, but neither of them .... Spanish. (*speak*)
24 A: Where are the scissors? B: I think either Leyla or Miguel .... borrowed them. (*have*)
25 Most people would agree that the criteria .... not of equal importance. (*be*)
26 The economics of nuclear power .... become more and more difficult in the last decade. (*have*)
27 Whoever had contact with the patient .... to be found and vaccinated against polio. (*have*)
28 A: I've got to walk all the way to my uncle's house, and he lives about two miles away.
B: But two miles .... far. (*be / not*)
29 A recent survey shows that around 10% of all cars .... dangerous to drive. (*be*)
30 Phonetics .... one of the options you can take in the second year of the course. (*be*)

Articles, etc.

Units 44–48

10 **Complete the sentences using the words from the box. Which *one* option can complete *all* three sentences a, b and c?**

a / an   one   some   the   'zero article' (–)

1 a Could you look after my cat while I'm away on holiday? It's only for .... week.
b Jules lives less than .... mile from school, so he can get up at eight o'clock and still be at school by nine.
c When I arrived, Alice was sitting in .... corner of the room and Jake was sitting in the other. I could tell that they had been arguing.
2 a .... vulture feeds primarily on dead animals.
b Eleni has arthritis, and her doctor has suggested that she should spend as much time as possible in .... warm climate.
c Fiona has decided she wants to be .... accountant.
3 a A: How should I get to the town centre from here?
B: Well, you could walk, but catching a bus is probably .... quickest.
b The World Wide Fund for Nature organised a major campaign to save .... tiger.
c .... washing machine has had a huge impact on people's lives since it was invented.

4 a A: Rafael Nadal is visiting our school next week to talk about tennis.
B: You mean .... Rafael Nadal – the famous tennis player? Can you get his autograph for me?
b It was hot in the house, so she opened all the windows to let in .... fresh air.
c Large areas of Canada are still covered by .... forest.

5 a She was made .... Chief Executive Officer in 2002.
b Do you want .... sugar in your coffee?
c You can buy .... mobile phones for as little as £10.

6 a .... 500 people were at the meeting.
b Despite years of research, we still don't understand the significance of .... dreams.
c It is a sad fact that .... money buys political power in many societies.

7 a .... earthquake in the south of the country has left thousands homeless.
b I love having holidays at .... seaside.
c Do you remember .... Wilmotts? They used to live opposite us.

8 a .... bicycle is an important means of transport for many people with no access to public transport.
b We only stayed in Oslo for .... night, but we really liked the place.
c Juan owns a painting that he claims is .... Picasso.

9 a I felt fine when I woke up, but by .... evening I had a fever.
b The temperature at .... midday reached over 40 °C.
c It's probably easiest to contact me by .... email.

10 a My history teacher at school – .... Mrs Bullenski – was always giving us advice on how to improve our examination skills.
b I'll just spend .... day or two in Singapore and then go on to Australia for three weeks.
c It was .... day that would remain in my memory forever.

Relative clauses

Units 53–55

11 **Rewrite each sentence including the information in brackets in a relative clause. Give all possible relative pronouns, but if you can leave them out, put them in brackets. Use commas where necessary.**

1 Later in the programme we have an interview with Laura Dekker. (in 2012 she became the youngest solo round-the-world sailor) Later in the programme we have an interview with Laura Dekker, who in 2012 became the youngest solo round-the-world sailor.
2 Carla's restaurant is very good value. (it serves a range of Mediterranean dishes)
3 The New Zealand rugby team are clear favourites to win the match. (all of its members weigh over 100 kilos)
4 Chloe brought home a kitten. (she'd found it in the park)
5 The story is about a teenage boy. (his ambition is to become an astronaut)
6 Paul has got a job with Empirico. (its main product is electric light bulbs)
7 Politicians should give more consideration to the working people. (they represent them)
8 Among the group of people was Professor Fischer. (I had last seen him in Munich 20 years earlier)
9 I live on a small road. (it leads down to the river)
10 Monet's earlier paintings are in a new exhibition in New York. (many have never been seen in the USA before)
11 Ian McIver has become managing director of Europe's largest food retailer. (his first job was selling vegetables in a market)
12 Kaspar has a new girlfriend. (she works in the library)
13 My Volkswagen Golf is a very reliable car. (I bought it in 2006)
14 Bronwen Brookes will be present at its official opening. (the Brookes art gallery is named after her)

Substitution and leaving out words

Units 62–65

12 **Underline the appropriate alternatives. Sometimes both are possible.**

1 He has a shave every morning, but you wouldn't think he *did / had*.
2 The developers pulled down the clock tower to make way for the new road. In *doing so / so doing*, they destroyed one of the finest examples of 17th century architecture in the country.
3 A: Ben won't be coming this weekend. B: But he *promised so / promised he would*.
4 A: It looks like Vettel is going to win again. B: It *appears / appears so*.
5 A: I didn't know you cycled to work. B: Yes, I always *do / do so*.
6 I don't like eating shellfish, and never *have / have done*.
7 They asked me to go fishing with them, but I *didn't want / didn't want to*.
8 A: Will it take you long to fix it? B: Well, it might *do / do so*. I'm not sure yet.
9 A: Do you think Fred will be up by now? B: I *doubt that he will / doubt so*.
10 A: Dad won't mind us borrowing the car, will he? B: No, *I don't suppose so / suppose not*.
11 Just park the car wherever you *want to / want*.
12 A: Has Rachel arrived yet? B: No, I don't think she *has done / has*.
13 Karl had to choose between working much longer hours and moving to another part of the country. He had never faced *such a dilemma / a such dilemma* before.
14 He owns much more land than I *do so / do*.
15 We'd like to go to Canada to see Ellie, but we can't *afford to / afford*.
16 A: I imagine the information is kept on computer somewhere. B: I would *expect so / expect*.
17 I don't know whether my parents want me to go to Norway, but I *suspect not / don't suspect*.
18 A: Will she expect us to get the job finished by the weekend?
B: I certainly *don't hope so / hope not*.
19 A: There's no answer. I suppose she might have left home by now.
B: Yes, I suppose she *might have / might*.
20 The car's in good condition. They *told so / told me so* at the garage.
21 I didn't want Luca to climb the mountain, but he was *determined to / determined*.
22 A: My mother was really angry. B: But didn't you expect her *to / to be*?
23 A: It doesn't look like the rain's going to stop soon. B: I *don't guess / guess not*.
24 A: Are you going to the library today? B: I *might do / might be*.

Position of adjectives, adverbs and adverbial phrases

Units 66, 69, 74 & 75

13 **Are the italicised words and phrases in the correct position? If not, suggest a change of position or rewrite the text if necessary.**

a I *every so often* leave work *early* and go to a performance in the local concert hall. It's very close to my office, in the *opposite* building. *Usually* they *rather* are good, but yesterday's, given by a singer and pianist, was a *total* disaster. The singer *with wonderful control* began to sing. But when the pianist started to play, it sounded awful. At first I thought he was *badly* playing, but then it became obvious that the piano *completely* was out of tune. They stopped and discussed *briefly* the problem. They couldn't continue *clearly*, and they left the stage *unhappily*. *Naturally*, all the *present* people felt sorry for them. I'm sure the *responsible* person for tuning the piano will be severely reprimanded.

b I *just* was going out to work this morning when the postman pushed *through my letterbox* a letter. It was from Mara, who writes *from time to time*. The letter said that she has to come to Bristol to visit her *unwell* uncle. She is one of his few *remaining* relatives. She wants us to meet and asked if I could suggest a time *possible*. Well, I *for a couple of years* haven't seen her, so I was really pleased. We *first* met at university. We have *alike* interests, so *always* we find a lot to talk about. The *included* photos in the letter showed that she hadn't changed since I *last* saw her. I spent so long reading the letter that I *nearly* was late for work.

Adverbial clauses and conjunctions

Units 79–82 & 87

14 **Match the ideas in (i) and (ii) and use the word in brackets to write either a single sentence (as in 1) or two sentences (as in 2), as appropriate. Note that you can put the idea in (ii) first in the sentence.**

(i)

1 I knew there was something wrong
2 prepare the remaining vegetables
3 his wife is really small
4 only about 100 people attended
5 I can't afford a coat like that
6 I'm determined to finish the report
7 you'll have to walk all the way from the station
8 I stayed until the end
9 her husband would never find it
10 I've been running about 200 kilometres a week

(ii)

a I found the film boring
b Johan must weigh over 120 kilos
c to prepare for the marathon
d ~~she said she was feeling fine~~
e I don't like the style
f ~~leave the carrots to cool for a few minutes~~
g make sure you catch the last bus at 11:00
h I have to stay at work until midnight
i she hid the letter between the pages of a book
j there had been a lot of publicity about the meeting

1 (even though) (+ d) I knew there was something wrong, even though she said she was feeling fine. or Even though she said she was feeling fine I knew there was something wrong.
2 (meanwhile) (+ f) Leave the carrots to cool for a few minutes. Meanwhile, prepare the remaining vegetables.
3 (whereas)
4 (even so)
5 (besides)
6 (even if)
7 (otherwise)
8 (although)
9 (so that)
10 (in order to)

Prepositions

Units 92–94

15 **Add the missing prepositions in the correct places after the italicised words.**

1 Personally, I don't *agree* with fox hunting, although I know that you *approve* it.
2 There seems to be little *likelihood* Williamson winning Wimbledon because of her *inability* play well on grass tennis courts.
3 Our plan is to *split* the organisation into a number of small units. This will improve our *prospects* competing with more specialised companies.
4 I *ran* Danny in town the other day. He *asked* your email address, so he'll probably be in touch with you.
5 Jack takes great *pride* never *throwing* anything. He always says that one day he'll find a use for things.
6 Although Professor Martinez *knows* a great deal meteorology, even he can't *account* the unusual weather we have been having over the last few weeks.
7 There has been a great *improvement* the behaviour of children in the school. This has *resulted* the headteacher's idea involving them in decision-making.
8 Even though Charlotte didn't *act* my advice and follow a career in medicine, I'm full of *admiration* her *determination* train to be a vet.

Inversion

Units 99 & 100

16 Rewrite each sentence with a similar meaning starting with a word / phrase from the box followed by inversion of the verb and the subject.

Had **Hardly** **~~Little~~** **Not for one moment** **Only if** **Only in**
Seldom **Should** **So** **Under no circumstances** **Such** **Were**

1 I didn't imagine that the boss had called me into her office to fire me. Little did I imagine that the boss had called me into her office to fire me.

2 The police will only investigate the matter further if an official complaint is made.

3 The instructions were so complicated, that it was impossible to assemble the machine.

4 If we had known how ill Rob was, we would have taken him straight to the hospital.

5 The wind was so strong that all the trees in the park were blown down.

6 She didn't often regret her lack of formal education, although she was sometimes aware of gaps in her knowledge.

7 You should only phone for an ambulance in an emergency.

8 There was never any disagreement between us.

9 If it were not for financial assistance from the government, the museum would have closed long ago.

10 They had only just finished eating before a waiter started to clear away the plates.

11 Children should never be allowed into the room without adult supervision.

12 If the bridge is ever built, it will be welcomed by the local community.

Key to Exercises

UNIT 1

1.1

2 a 'm (am) measuring
  b measures
3 a doubt
  b doubt
4 a is currently attracting ('attracts' is also possible)
  b attract
5 a doesn't like
  b 'm (am) not liking ('don't like' is also possible)
6 a 're (are) fitting
  b doesn't fit
7 a feels
  b 'm (am) not feeling ('don't feel' is also possible)
8 a consists of ('consists only of' would also be possible)
  b consists of
9 a 's (is) sounding ('sounds' is also possible)
  b sounds
10 a 's (is) having
  b has

1.2

1 apologise / ~~'m apologising~~
2 admit / ~~'m admitting~~
3 don't suggest / 'm not suggesting (both possible)
4 now realise / 'm now realising (both possible)
5 confess / ~~'m confessing~~
6 ~~consider~~ / 'm considering
7 do you find / are you finding (both possible)
8 know / ~~'m knowing~~
9 don't guarantee / 'm not guaranteeing (both possible)
10 promise / ~~'m promising~~

UNIT 2

2.1

1 shoots, are attacking
2 arrives, is waiting, says
3 is playing, stands, starts

2.2

Possible answers

2 I gather Vegecorp are going to sack a thousand workers.
3 I understand we're going to have a new public holiday for the President's birthday.
4 Ed tells me Bruno's crashed his car again.
5 Julia says she's got a new job.
6 They say they've identified a gene which causes some people to overeat.

2.3

2 You're forever asking me for money.
3 You're constantly criticising my driving.
4 You're continually changing your mind.
5 You're forever moaning about (your) work.

2.4

The most likely verbs are given:

1 a we're (are) usually eating ('we usually eat' is also possible)
  b don't eat
2 a plays ('is playing' is also possible)
  b 're (are) constantly playing ('constantly play' is also possible)
3 a I'm normally taking ('I normally take' is also possible. It would suggest, however, that this is the time they leave home. Present continuous suggests that they are on the way to school at 8:30.)
  b takes

UNIT 3

3.1

1 went
2 've (have) had
3 wore
4 've (have) spent
5 overslept
6 haven't read

3.2

1 hasn't wanted – fell
2 has worked – hasn't had
3 rescued – has been
4 has happened – spoke
5 have been able – have felt
6 has improved – has been

3.3

1 a ~~signed~~ 've (have) signed
  b signed ✓
2 a ~~finished~~ 've (have) finished
  b finished ✓
3 a got ✓
  b ~~got~~ have got
4 a heard ✓
  b ~~heard~~ 've (have) heard

3.4

The most appropriate tenses are given

1 has visited
2 has closed (*or* has been closed; present perfect passive) – died
3 has dropped – has fallen
4 have been stolen (present perfect passive) – insisted – held

UNIT 4

4.1

2 was hoping – gave
3 lived – was spending / was living – spent
4 started – was checking in
5 was looking – saw
6 came – was showing
7 was playing – broke
8 went off – lit
9 wasn't listening ('didn't listen' is also possible) – was explaining ('explained' is also possible)
10 added – tasted
11 wasn't watching ('didn't watch' is also possible) – was dreaming ('dreamt' is also possible)
12 pushed – ran

4.2

1 'was getting' and 'got' are both possible. The past simple suggests that one event followed the other: I got in and then the lights went off. The past continuous suggests that the lights went off as I was in the process of getting ready to get into the bath.
4 'was checking in' or 'checked in' are both possible with a similar meaning. Using the past continuous presents 'checking in' as the background event which was going on as the couple started to chat to him.
7 'was playing' and 'played' are both possible. The past continuous suggests that this was a temporary rather than a regular arrangement.
11 'didn't watch' and 'dreamt' are also possible. However, the past continuous emphasises that 'not watching' and 'dreaming' went on at the same time and seems more likely here.

4.3

1 was buying
2 saw
3 turned
4 was slowly putting (Past simple in 3 and past continuous in 4 seem most likely here as 'turned round' describes a completed action and 'was slowly putting' describes the action that was going on at that time. However, past continuous is also possible in 3 and past simple is also possible in 4.)
5 was carrying
6 walked
7 picked up
8 thought
9 was looking

10 dropped
11 had
12 noticed
13 was watching
14 hurried
15 were walking / walked (similar meaning)
16 ran

UNIT 5

5.1

events	order events are mentioned in text	order of events
I moved...	2	2
I learnt...	5	6
The property developer decided...	9	8
I heard...	8	9
I first saw the old house	1	3
A property developer bought it	6	4
I nearly gave up...	7	7
I put together enough money...	4	5
It was empty	3	1

The first past 'point of reference' is 'When I first saw the old house'. Events before this are in the past perfect: 'I had just moved'... 'It had been empty'.
The second past 'point of reference' is when 'I learnt...'. Events before this are in the past perfect: 'I had put together' ... 'had bought'. Notice that we could use 'I put together' here as the order of events is made clear by 'By the time...'.
The third past 'point of reference' is '... when I heard that the house was for sale again'. Events before this are in the past perfect: 'I had nearly given up'... 'The property developer had decided...'.

5.2

1 had met
2 had been / went
3 had taken / took
4 had seen
5 had lost
6 had found
7 had cheated / cheated
8 had made up
9 had gone / went
10 hadn't heard
11 had finished / finished
12 had eaten (Note: In North American English 'ate' would also be possible.)

5.3

2 Lara hadn't intended to become a dentist ...
3 I had expected the operation to be painful ...
4 I hadn't thought of cooking rabbit ...
5 He hadn't meant to insult her ... (*or* He hadn't meant it to be an insult to her ...)

UNIT 6

6.1

1 a 's (has) been staying ('has stayed' is also possible)
  b 've (have) stayed
2 a have been stopping ('have stopped' is also possible)
  b has stopped
3 a haven't read
  b 've (have) been reading ('have read' is also possible)
4 a has been giving ('has given' is also possible)
  b has given
5 a haven't swum
  b 've (have) been swimming
6 a have been putting ('have put' is also possible)
  b has (or 'have') put
8 a has disappeared
  b have been disappearing ('have disappeared' is also possible)

6.2

a
1 ~~has been claiming~~ has claimed
2 ~~have been dying~~ died
3 have been making ✓ ('have made' is also possible)
4 ~~have been producing~~ 've (have) produced
5 ~~have been awarding~~ awarded
6 have been looking ✓ ('have looked' and 'looked' are also possible)
7 have also been exploring ✓ ('have also explored' and 'also explored' are also possible)
8 ~~has been making~~ has / have made / made

b
1 ~~has been investing~~ invested
2 ~~has been announcing~~ has announced
3 has been increasing ✓ ('has increased' is also possible)
4 has been running ✓ ('has run' is also possible)
5 has been neglecting ✓ ('has neglected' is also possible)
6 has been cutting ✓ ('has cut' is also possible)
7 ~~have been finding~~ have found
8 have been planning ✓ ('have planned' is also possible)
9 ~~have been speaking~~ spoke
10 ~~have also been writing~~ have also written / also wrote

UNIT 7

7.1

1 a had only been working ('had only worked' is also possible)
  b had finally worked
2 a had carried
  b had been carrying ('had carried' is also possible)
3 a had applied
  b had been applying ('had applied' is also possible)
4 a had flown
  b had been flying

7.2

1 had been trying ('had tried' is also possible)
2 had visited
3 had cost
4 had been writing ('had written'is also possible)
5 had been worrying ('had worried' is also possible)
6 had arrived
7 had always believed
8 had been talking

The past continuous is more likely in 8 (We were talking ...).

7.3

1 ✓
2 had been taken
3 ✓ (Note that 'What happened?' is also possible)
4 had just heard
5 ✓
6 had been fishing
7 ✓
8 hadn't wanted
9 ✓
10 had collapsed

UNIT 8

8.1

The most likely verbs and tenses are given.

2 got / arrived
3 feel / am feeling (Present simple and present continuous have a similar meaning here.)
4 go
5 know
6 spent
7 texted
8 was waiting
9 got
10 felt / was feeling (Past simple and past continuous have a similar meaning here.)

11 got
12 enjoy / is enjoying (Present simple and present continuous have a similar meaning here, although the present continuous may suggest that she is not living in Adelaide permanently.)
13 is looking
14 seems
15 doesn't get on / isn't getting on (Present simple and present continuous have a similar meaning here, although the present continuous suggests that this is a temporary problem.)
16 complain / are constantly complaining (Note the word order.)
17 is starting
18 asked
19 am looking
20 hear / heard (Present simple and past simple have a similar meaning here.)

8.2

The most likely tenses are given.

2 said ('has said' is also possible, but less likely here)
3 heard / had heard
4 returned / had returned
5 came / had come
6 was / had been
7 left
8 appointed
9 finished
10 have won
11 accused
12 has disappointed
13 has spent

8.3

1 'Has he had' or 'Has he been having' are more likely
2 ✓
3 thought / had thought
4 has worked / has been working
5 had been trying
6 did you go
7 heard
8 ✓ ('went' is also possible)
9 ✓ ('checked' is also possible)
10 have said / said
11 ✓ ('have given' is also possible)
12 have told ('told' is also possible)

UNIT 9

9.1

2 ✓ (prediction based on opinion / past experience)
3 ✓ (decision made at moment of speaking)
4 ~~Will you take up~~ Are you going to take up (prediction based on present evidence)
5 ✓ (prediction based on opinion / past experience)
6 ~~'ll be~~ 's going to be (decision already made)
7 ~~'ll have~~ 're going to have (prediction based on present evidence)
8 ~~'ll sell~~ 're going to sell (prediction based on present evidence)
9 ~~'ll cut~~ 'm going to cut (decision already made)
10 ~~'ll be sick~~ 's going to be sick (prediction based on present evidence); 'll feel ✓ (prediction based on opinion / past experience)
11 ~~'ll leave~~ 'm going to leave (decision already made); will you tell ✓ (*or* 'are you going to tell'; asking about something planned); 'll try ✓ (decision made at moment of speaking)
12 ~~'ll have~~ 'm going to have (decision already made); ~~'ll see~~ 're going to see (decision already made); 'll sort out ✓ (decision made at moment of speaking)
13 ✓ (decision made at moment of speaking)
14 ~~'m going to have~~ 'll have (decision made at moment of speaking)
15 ✓ (prediciton based on opinion / past experience)
16 ~~'ll build~~ 'm going to build (decision already made)

9.2

Example verbs are given

2 're going to plant (main clause action does not depend on action in the *if*-clause)
3 'll hurt / 're going to hurt (conditional – negative)
4 will … buy (request)
5 will start / stop (logical consequence)
6 'm going to see (main clause action does not depend on action in the *if*-clause)
7 'll be sacked / 's going to be sacked (conditional – negative)
8 'll hear (ability)

UNIT 10

10.1

1 get (fixed event; 'will get' is also possible)
2 will look after (less routine arrangement)
3 rains (with 'in case')
4 will give out (less routine arrangement)
5 goes (fixed event; 'will go' is also possible)
6 starts (fixed event; 'will start' is also possible)
7 stops (with 'provided')
8 change (with 'what if')
9 will miss (prediction)
10 lend (with 'unless')
11 play (or 'plays') (fixed event;'will play' is also possible)
12 will accept (prediction)
13 want (with 'supposing')
14 read (with 'by the time')

10.2

1 (c) ~~is leaving~~ (prediction perhaps based on opinion, experience or present evidence). 'Will leave' and 'is going to leave' have a similar meaning here.
2 (a) ~~will buy~~ (planned future event). 'I'm going to buy' suggests an intention without a definite arrangement; 'I'm buying' suggests a definite arrangement – perhaps the speaker has bought the car and is simply picking it up next week.
3 (b) ~~are going to pick~~; (c) ~~are picking~~ (offer; decision made at moment of speaking)
4 (a) ~~will drive~~ (planned future event). 'I'm going to drive' suggests a personal intention; 'I'm driving' suggests a more definite arrangement – perhaps the speaker has been told to go there by their employer.
5 (c) ~~is cutting~~ (permanent future situation). 'Will cut' and 'is going to cut' have a similar meaning here.
6 (b) ~~am going to call~~; (c) ~~am calling~~ (promise; decision made at time of speaking)
7 (a) ~~will serve~~ (planned future event). As the present continuous for the future suggests a definite arrangement, using 'I am serving lunch' in this context suggests '… and I am not changing what I plan to do', perhaps showing some irritation or annoyance.
8 (c) ~~are starving~~ (no control over predicted event). 'Will starve' and 'are going to starve' have a similar meaning here. However, as 'will' is often used to talk about future facts, it may express more certainty in this context.

10.3

1

1 is joining ✓ joins ✗ (will join ✓ is going to join ✓)
2 are liking ✗ like ✗ (will like ✓ are going to like ✓)
3 is coming ✓ comes ✓ (will come ✓ [but present continuous, present simple or' be going to' are more natural here] is going to come ✓)
4 is giving ✗ gives ✗ (will give ✓ is going to give ✗)

2

1 is / are sacking ✓ sack ✗ (will sack ✓ [but present continuous or 'be going to' are more natural here] is / are going to sack ✓)

2 are closing ✗ close ✓ (will close ✗ are going to close ✗)
3 are building ✓ build ✗ (will build ✓ [but present continuous or 'be going to' are more natural here] are going to build ✓)
4 are seeing ✗ see ✗ (will see ✓ are going to see ✗)

UNIT 11

11.1

1 a will be leaving ('will leave' is also possible)
  b will leave
2 a Will you be working ('Will you work' is also possible)
  b 'll work
3 a won't be using ('won't use' is also possible)
  b won't use
4 a 'll (will) give
  b will be giving ('will give' is also possible)
5 a won't move
  b will be moving ('will move' is also possible)

11.2

2 If the company is making a profit by the end of the year then we will have achieved the objective we set ourselves when we took over.
3 In two years' time Morneau will have been acting for 50 years, and shows no sign of retiring from the theatre. ('will have acted' is also possible)
4 I am confident that I will have finished the report before the end of the week.
5 This book on Proust is really difficult. On Saturday I will have been reading it for a month, and I'm still only half way.
6 As delegates who arrived early will have been discovering, there have been some late changes to the conference programme. ('will have discovered' is also possible)

11.3

1 will have closed
2 will be enjoying
3 will be leaving
4 will be arriving
5 will have been
6 will have been planning
7 won't be spending
8 will be keeping
9 will all be going

UNIT 12

12.1

1 is to be staged ('will be staged' is also possible)
2 will stop
3 is to merge / is to be merged ('will merge' or 'will be merged' are also possible)
4 will rise
5 is to be replaced ('will be replaced' is also possible)
6 is to retire; is to be succeeded ('will retire' and 'will be succeeded' are also possible)
7 will become
8 are to receive ('will receive' is also possible)
9 are to be created ('will be created' is also possible)
10 will increase

12.2

1 are to have (see section B)
2 is to start / is about to start (A/C)
3 wins (B)
4 enjoy (B)
5 'm just about to go (C)
6 recovers (B)
7 is to keep (B)
8 is to resign / is about to resign (C) ('is about to resign' emphasises that he will resign very soon)
9 are about to get (C)
10 is to be improved (B)

UNIT 13

13.1

3 due to return
4 sure to provide
5 set to launch
6 on the verge of becoming
7 on the point of signing
8 sure to face
9 due to undergo
10 on the verge of quitting
11 set to make
12 on the brink of going

13.2

2 propose / 'm proposing to deal
3 expect / 're expecting to finish
4 aim / 'm aiming to study
5 resolves to give up
6 guarantee to find
7 intend / 'm intending to move

13.3

1 will
2 shan't / won't ('won't' is more natural)
3 will
4 shall / will
5 won't

UNIT 14

14.1

1 was going to do
2 will be
3 ✓
4 would have shown
5 ✓ ('was to be announced' is also possible)
6 is about to start
7 ✓
8 was supposed; was about to ask
9 ✓ ('am going to see' is also possible)
10 is to be used
11 ✓ ('were meeting' is also possible)
12 would cause

Past or present tense forms are possible in 5, 9 and 11.

14.2

1 a
2 b
3 a
4 b
5 a
6 b
7 a
8 a
9 b
10 a

UNIT 15

15.1

1 can (A: before passive)
2 were able to (B: single past achievement)
3 could / were able to (A)
4 Could you (B: with 'understand' 'could' is more natural)
5 can't (A: 'know how to')
6 can (A: happening as speaking)
7 were able to (B: single past achievement)
8 could hardly (B: with 'hardly 'could' is more natural)
9 could (B: with 'smell' 'could' is more natural)
10 Can you / Are you able to (A)
11 can (A: before passive)
12 was able to (B: single past achievement)
13 couldn't (B: negative sentence; 'couldn't' is more natural)
14 was able to (B: single past achievement)

15.2

a

1 can
2 couldn't
3 can
4 can't
5 couldn't / weren't allowed to
6 can't
7 were allowed to

b

1 can
2 wasn't allowed to / couldn't
3 was allowed to
4 could
5 could
6 can't
7 was allowed to

UNIT 16

16.1

1 will spend
2 had
3 would exercise
4 found
5 will cause
6 would rarely sit
7 will know
8 will probably be / would probably be

16.2

1 ✗ used to ✓ (changed past state)
2 ✓ ('used to' is also possible)
3 ✗ used to ✓ (changed past state)
4 ✓ ('would' is not possible) (changed past state)
5 ✓ ('would' is also possible)
6 ✗ met ✓ (number of times specified)

16.3

1 will have watched
2 would have approved
3 would have hurt
4 will have heard
5 would have preferred
6 will / would have noticed
7 would have bought

16.3

Example answers

1 B: Well, if you ***will*** drive everywhere instead of walking, I'm not surprised.
2 B: Well, if you ***will*** spend so much time online, I'm not surprised.
3 B: Well, if you ***will*** wear a thick jumper when it's 30 degrees, it's not surprising.

UNIT 17

17.1

1 might (more likely than 'may')
2 may
3 Are you likely to … (possible answer; 'Might you …' would be rather formal)
4 might (more likely than 'may')
5 Could (possible answer; 'Might' would be rather formal)
6 may

17.2

1 might have enjoyed (E: possible event in the past)
2 might have been trying (E: possible activity that went on over a period of time)
3 might be coming (E: possible event in the future)
4 might require (C: typically the case in the past)
5 may be moving (E: possible event in the future)
6 may have improved (E: possible event in the future)
7 might be imprisoned (C: typically the case in the past)
8 may have been exaggerating (E: possible activity that went on over a period of time)
9 might be punished (C: typically the case in the past; passive)
10 may have told (E: possible event in the past)

17.3

Possible answers

1 … at least he's in tune.
2 … it's never broken down.
3 … she has a very wide vocabulary.
5 You may / might not agree with him, …
6 She may / might not express her feelings openly, …
7 It may / might not sound very exciting, …

UNIT 18

18.1

1 must have found
2 must be
3 must be starting ('must be going to start' and 'must start' are also possible)
4 must have had to work ('must have worked' is also possible)
5 must have changed
6 must have to show
7 must be taking ('must have taken' is also possible)
8 must be

18.2

2 Hannah rarely has to be asked to tidy her room.
3 Have we got to hand in the homework tomorrow? ('Do we have to …' is also possible)
4 I didn't have to go to the hospital after all.
5 Did Ben have to go alone?
6 Adam sometimes has to start work at 6:30. ('Adam has sometimes got to start work …' is also possible)
7 The college has to be extended to accommodate the growing number of students. ('has got to be extended' is also possible, but less likely in a formal context)
8 We may / might have to cancel our holiday because my mother is ill.

18.3

1 ✓
2 ~~always have got to pull~~ always have to pull
3 ~~Have you to bang~~ Do you have to bang ('Must you bang …' is also possible but less likely)
4 ✓
5 ~~must have to squeeze~~ must have had to squeeze / must have squeezed
6 ~~must leave~~ must have left
7 ✓
8 ~~mustn't wait~~ didn't have to wait
9 ~~must be disturbed~~ must have been disturbed
10 ~~I've to get~~ I've got to get / I have to get (Note that some people use 'I've to get' in informal language, but others think this is incorrect.)
11 ✓
12 ~~may must get~~ may have to get
13 ~~I've to go~~ I must go / I have to go / I've got to go
14 ~~must get~~ must be getting
15 ✓
16 ~~have to get~~ must get (more likely)

The three common expressions with 'must' are 'I must say …', 'I must admit …' (both used to emphasise the following point), and 'needs must' (meaning if something is necessary I will do it, even though I may not want to).

UNIT 19

19.1

1 I'll give you a lift to the station so you needn't worry / bother about booking a taxi.
2 The questions are in the book so you needn't bother to copy them down.
3 All the windows have screens so you needn't panic / worry about being bitten by mosquitoes.
4 Our software provides full computer security so you needn't concern yourself with viruses.
5 The new tax laws don't come into force until next year so you needn't change the details on the form.

19.2

2 We need only (*or* We only need …) look at the rainfall figures to see the seriousness of the problem. (*less formally* We only need to look at …)
3 With such a lead in the opinion polls the Democrats need hardly bother (*or* … the Democrats hardly need bother) campaigning before the election. (*less formally* … the Democrats hardly need to bother campaigning …)
4 No one need know who paid the ransom to the kidnappers. (*less formally* No one needs to know who paid …)
5 After such a huge lottery win, he need never work again. (*less formally* … he never needs to work again.)

19.3

1 don't need to
2 needn't / don't need to

3 needn't / don't need to
4 don't need to
5 needn't / don't need to
6 don't need to

19.4

1 You needn't worry …
2 Do we need to make … *is more likely*
3 … needn't be a problem …
4 ✓
5 I need hardly tell you …, *or less formally* I hardly need (to) tell you …
6 some people would prefer 'needn't' in this context (see C)
7 ✓
8 … needn't mean …

UNIT 20

20.1

1 should / ought to win (should / ought to have won *is also possible*)
2 should I put (*more likely than* … ought I to put …; should I have put *is also possible*)
3 should / ought to have arrived (should / ought to arrive *is also possible*)
4 should be sent (*more likely than* ought to be sent)
5 should be removed (*more likely than* ought to be removed)
6 should / ought to wear
7 should / ought to have resigned
8 Should we answer (*more likely than* Ought we to answer …; Should we have answered *is also possible*)
9 should go (ought to *is not possible*)
10 should / ought to be (should / ought to have been *is also possible*)

20.2

1 should *or* must; 'must' gives a stronger recommendation
2 must
3 must
4 should *or* must; 'must' gives stronger advice and is perhaps more likely than 'should' in this context
5 should *or* must; 'must' gives a stronger recommendation
6 must

(2, 3 and 6 include logical conclusions, so we use 'must' not 'should')

20.3

1 ~~should~~ must
2 ✓
3 ~~shall~~ should / ought to
4 ~~shouldn't~~ 'd better not
5 ~~'d better~~ should / ought to
6 ~~had better not~~ shouldn't / ought not to be
7 ✓
8 ✓
9 ✓
10 ~~had better~~ should / ought to

UNIT 21

21.1

1 (to be)
2 to be
3 to be
4 (to be)
5 (to be)
6 to be
7 to be
8 to be
9 (to be)
10 (to be)

21.2

1 get
2 became / has become
3 become (more likely than 'get' in a formal context)
4 become
5 get
6 get (more likely than 'become' in an informal context)
7 became
8 got

21.3

2 went dead
3 went red
4 get to know
5 get tired
6 came to like
7 go blind
8 went bust

21.4

1 go wrong
2 seemed to be awake
3 ✓
4 seemed to be taking
5 hadn't got dressed
6 ✓ ('be ill' would also be possible)
7 went missing
8 to get worried
9 becoming obvious
10 ✓

UNIT 22

22.1

2 She was offered a second-hand bicycle. / A second-hand bicycle was offered (to) her.
3 Improvements have been proposed to the developers.
4 Some interesting changes were suggested to me.
5 He was awarded a prize. / A prize was awarded to him.
6 The President's arrival will be announced to the waiting journalists.
7 The password had been mentioned to the thieves.
8 I have been lent some skis. / Some skis have been lent to me.
9 I am being sent a lot of spam emails. / A lot of spam emails are being sent to me.
10 The changes are going to be explained to the students.

22.2

2 introduced; I was introduced to Mrs Rossi by Tony at his birthday party. (*or* … Mrs Rossi at Tony's birthday party.)
3 seen; Has Chris been seen (by anyone) this morning?
4 (have) appointed; Sven Larsen has been appointed (*or* was appointed) Regional Sales Director for Scandinavia.
5 will demonstrate; I am certain that Sarah's suitability as company director will be demonstrated to those who still have any doubt.
6 declared (*or* have declared); Alan Watson was declared (*or* has been declared) winner of the election after a recount.

22.3

2 The product was phased out (by the company) over a period of three years.
3 No passive
4 Many people have been deprived of the right to vote (by the decision).
5 No passive
6 No passive
7 The last two items were held over (by the chairperson) until the next committee meeting.
8 Walkers were prevented from crossing the field after it was fenced off (by the farmer).

UNIT 23

23.1

2 denied being involved
3 was left holding
4 remembered being bitten
5 avoided being taken
6 was observed hiding
7 was sent tumbling
8 faced being expelled
9 was found wandering
10 resented being given

23.2

2 Emil and Laura could be heard arguing next door.
3 Ollie hated being teased by the other children.
4 The burglar was observed entering the museum through a window.
5 The pop concert is expected to attract over 20,000 people.
6 She didn't mind being criticised.
7 I was required to complete two copies of the customs declaration.
8 Mrs Dee was caught shoplifting.

23.3

2 Omar hopes to be selected by the team captain. (different meaning)
3 Kathy arranged to be taken to the station by Alastair. (different meaning)
4 Galdos has come to be recognised as one of Spain's greatest novelists by critics. (corresponding meaning)
5 Holidaymakers continue to be attracted to the south coast. (corresponding meaning)

6 The Finance Minister has agreed to be interviewed by Harris. (different meaning)

UNIT 24

24.1

2 The main stadium has been designed to accommodate many different sports.
3 The temporary stands will be taken down after the Games.
4 The basketball arena will have been completed by the end of May.
5 The rowing competition is being held on the River Nene.
6 The athletics track had been completed (or was completed) only a year after the city got the Olympics.
7 The handball venue was being used as a warehouse until a year ago.
8 The badminton arena should have been finished by now.

24.2

2 The appointment of a new managing director will be made next week.
3 Accusations of corruption in the local council have been made. / Accusations of corruption have been made against the local council.
4 The demolition of the building was completed in only two days.
5 The presentation of the trophy will be made after the speeches.
6 Resistance from local residents to the proposed new industrial area will certainly be expected.

24.3

2 is (being) ruled (or more naturally 'is now (being) ruled')
3 are disappearing / have disappeared
4 fear
5 is estimated / has been estimated
6 will be turned into
7 is using / has used / has been using
8 to be abandoned
9 be affected
10 expect / are expecting
11 are (being) destroyed

UNIT 25

25.1

1 agreed
2 proposed / shown
3 hoped / explained
4 decided
5 explained
6 established / revealed
7 intended
8 planned
9 assumed / thought
10 discovered

25.2

2 ✗
3 It has been discovered that there is water on Mars.
4 It is believed that terrorists are operating in Berlin.
5 It is expected that the moon astronauts will return (to Earth) today.
6 It has been revealed that ex-President Julius is / was a spy.
7 ✗
8 It is said that the King is making a good recovery.
9 It has been established that a restaurant is / was the source of a food poisoning outbreak.
10 ✗

25.3

2 It is not thought that the fault is serious. (*or* It is thought that the fault is not serious.) / The fault is not thought to be serious.
3 It is expected that it will take several weeks to correct the fault. (*or* It is expected that the fault will take several weeks to correct.) / The fault is expected to take several weeks to correct.
4 It has been decided to postpone the next rocket launch.
5 It is suggested that the next launch should take place in May.

UNIT 26

26.1

1 whom
2 Which
3 Which
4 Which
5 Whom / Who ('Whom' is very formal)
6 Who
7 Which / Who
8 Who

26.2

1 are
2 teaches (whether or not the expected answer is one person or two)
3 is
4 makes
5 are / is
6 has

26.3

2 What + d
3 What / How + b
4 How + h
5 What + j
6 How + a *or* g
7 How + e *or* i
8 What + f
9 What / How + c
10 What + e *or* i

26.4

1 Whose
2 ✓
3 whose
4 Who lives *is more likely*
5 Who's
6 ✓ (*or less formally* Whose travels in Nepal did Liam Wilson write a book about?)
7 Which *is more likely*
8 Which *is more likely*
9 To whose address?
10 ✓ (What have *is also possible*)

UNIT 27

27.1

Possible answers are given

2 Didn't you get my email saying I'd be on holiday?
3 Couldn't you get a babysitter?
4 But weren't you supposed to do that last night?
5 Can't you leave it outside?
6 Wouldn't you rather go by plane?

27.2

2 Haven't you any interest in maths at all? (*or* Don't you have any interest in maths at all?) Have you no interest in maths at all? (*or* Do you have no interest in maths at all?)
3 Couldn't you find anywhere else to sleep? Could you find nowhere else to sleep?
4 Can't you remember anything about the accident? Can you remember nothing about the accident?
5 Why don't I ever do well in exams? Why do I never do well in exams?
6 Isn't there anybody you can ask for help? Is there nobody you can ask for help?

27.3

2 He's leaving when? / He's doing what? / He's what?
3 He'll be away for how long? / He'll what?
4 It'll cost how much? / It'll what?
5 He's sold (his) what? / He's done what? / He's what?
6 He's going climbing where? / He's doing what? / He's what?

27.4

1 ~~do you not~~ Why don't you (C)
2 Who do you expect ~~that~~ will read your blog? (F)
3 ✓ (F)
4 ~~Was not~~ Wasn't (D)
5 ✓ (C)
6 What did you say ~~that~~ is in these biscuits? (F)
7 ✓ (F)
8 ~~did not~~ didn't (C)

UNIT 28

28.1

2 answered (the phone)
3 eat (dinner)
4 thanked Val
5 washed (herself)
6 brushed her hair
7 changed (her clothes)
8 put on some makeup
9 drove (her car)
10 reached their house
11 waved (her hand)
12 parked (her car)
13 cooking (dinner)
14 to pick some flowers
15 studying (French)
16 mention her
17 introduce you
18 enjoyed the evening
19 afford it
20 wash up (the dishes)
21 invite Val and Tom

28.2

2 … culminated in the discovery of penicillin.
3 … differentiate between fantasy and reality.
4 … specialises in seafood.
5 … inflicted a surprise defeat on …
6 … attributed his success to …
7 … mistook the black car for …
8 … based her new novel on …

28.3

Example adjectives are given

2 satisfied; She declared herself to be satisfied with the result. / She declared that she was / is satisfied with the result.
3 inedible; They considered the food to be inedible. / They considered that the food was / is inedible.
4 reliable; I have always found him to be reliable. / I have always found that he was / is reliable.
5 happy; We believed her to be happy at school. / We believed that she was / is happy at school.

UNIT 29

29.1

In some cases other tenses are possible

2 I have to choose his clothes for him.
3 Can you take this present for / to her?
4 … pass it to me …
5 … we sold all the carpets to him as well. ('… we offered all the carpets to him …' is also possible)
6 He teaches sports to disabled children.
7 Can you read these instructions to / for me, please?
8 Jane posted the letter for me … ('Jane took the letter for me …'is also possible)
9 I offered my old bike to him …
10 Can you save some dinner for me, please?

29.2

1 He kindly collected some library books for me.
2 He admitted his error to his colleagues.
3 ✓
4 Can I ask you a favour?
5 A special ticket allows (people) entry to all the museums in the city.
6 ✓

29.3

2 his sister to me; me her photograph / her photograph to me
3 the problem to our teacher; us another half hour
4 him a paper aeroplane / a paper aeroplane for him; his broken car for him; him three bedtime stories / three bedtime stories to (*or* for) him
5 you a fortune; me the money / the money to me
6 Ben a drink / a drink for Ben; the glass to him / him the glass

UNIT 30

30.1

2 We don't approve of the developer's locating the factory so close to houses.
3 ✗
4 ✗ (not a verb of [dis]liking or thinking)
5 It is difficult to imagine his accepting the decision without any objection.
6 No one in the crowd that day will forget Ashe's fighting so hard to win the match.
7 I remember their arguing a great deal when they were children.
8 ✗ (not a verb of [dis]liking or thinking)

30.2

2 approve of children wearing
3 end by summarising
4 discouraged me from going
5 rely on Sophie turning up
6 adapt to living / adapt to dealing with life

30.3

1 burst (a single, short event)
2 watching (the context suggests that Carl was being watched before he saw the watcher; in other words, he didn't see the whole of the event)
3 sting ('stinging' is also possible, but this would suggest that the wasp stung several times)
4 feeding (this refers to a repeated event)

30.4

2 + e The new course is intended to help **people (to)** understand modern art.
3 + a Scientists hope the new drug will help **(them) (to)** prevent hay fever.
4 + f We didn't agree with the decision, but we didn't dare **(to)** protest against it.
5 + d When Ethan arrives, have **him** wait outside my office.
6 + c The dial on the left lets **you** control the speed of the fan.

UNIT 31

31.1

1 a told b threatened
2 a offered b allowed
3 a managed b persuaded
4 a encouraged b agreed
5 a reminded b pretended
6 a hoped b advised

31.2

a

When I advertised **for** a website designer for the business, Greta got the job. But I've now learnt that you can't rely **on** Greta to do anything. I waited ages **for** her to come up with some initial ideas for the site, and then I had to keep on **at** her to do any more work on it. Finally, she said she couldn't do it after all.

b

Managers of the National Electricity Company have appealed **to** workers to end their strike, and have called **on** the government to intervene in the dispute. The Energy Minister said that he has arranged **for** employers and employees to meet next week, and he prevailed **on** strikers to return to work in the meantime.

31.3

1 agreed not to tell
2 are / were thought to have escaped
3 don't recall seeing / don't recall having seen (similar meanings)
4 denies / denied having received *or* denies / denied receiving (similar meanings)
5 asked not to be named
6 didn't feel like walking
7 seems to have disappeared
8 are / were believed to have arrived

UNIT 32

32.1

The most likely reporting verbs are given in the answers, but others are possible.

2 'Why don't we stop for a coffee?' she suggested.
3 'All right, Georgia, it was me,' he confessed.

4 'My novel is more exciting than a Dan Brown thriller,' she boasted.
5 'I always carry two umbrellas with me because I'm always losing them,' explained Lena. / … Lena explained.
6 'Oh, no, it's raining again,' grumbled Matt. / … Matt grumbled.
7 'Good morning, Miss Novak,' chorused the children. / … the children chorused.
8 'Have I done the right thing?' I wondered.

32.2

2 threatened not to repay
3 didn't feel – could (*more likely than* He felt that he couldn't ask his parents to help him again.)
4 insisted – wasn't (*or* hadn't been)
5 announced – wasn't going
6 didn't expect – to be (*more likely than* He expected his mother not to be angry.)
7 didn't think – would (*more likely than* She thought Adam wouldn't mind waiting.)
8 promised – wouldn't

32.3

1 'how I heard about the job' is also possible
2 what my long-term career plans were / what were my long-term career plans
3 how many languages I spoke / speak
4 where I (had) learnt / learned Chinese
5 if / whether I could use a spreadsheet
6 if / whether I had organised international conferences before.
7 if / whether I would be willing to live overseas for periods of time
8 when I can / could start work

UNIT 33

33.1

1 advised
2 assured / promised
3 warned
4 inform / teach
5 have shown
6 has reassured / has advised
7 promised

33.2

2 ✗
3 The judge thought his explanation to be unconvincing.
4 I expected her plans to fail.
5 ✗
6 Lucas acknowledged his chances of winning the race to be slim.
7 We found the rugby supporters to be very well behaved.
8 ✗

33.3

Likely answers are given

1 complained to
2 complained to; mentioned to; announced to
3 joked with; announced to; mentioned to
4 announced to
5 requires of
6 disagreed with
7 mention to

33.4

Possible necessary objects are given in bold

1 has warned that they
2 explained to employees that
3 confessed to her audience that
4 denied that management
5 replied that an announcement
6 reassured **employees / them** that
7 went on to complain that government help
8 demanded of ministers that ('demanded that ministers provide' would also be possible and less formal)
9 asked of staff that ('asked staff to continue' would also be possible and less formal)
10 reassured **staff / them** that

Note that alternatives without' that' (1 has warned they, 2 explained to employees, etc.) are grammatical, but less likely in a formal written context.

UNIT 34

34.1

Added objects are in bold

2 + j He took my hands and showed **me** *how / where* to hold the golf club properly.
3 + g I explained carefully so that the students understood *what* they had to do in the test.
4 + i Anna was new in the office and I had to keep reminding **her** *who* everyone was.
5 + b I saw Sarah leave the building, but I didn't notice *where* she went after that.
6 + e When I saw Hugo alone at the party I wondered *why* Helen wasn't with him.
7 + h As we walked over the hills the guide warned **us** *where / when* the path was dangerous.
8 + a After I'd dismantled the motor I couldn't remember *how* to fit the parts back together.
9 + f To win a prize you had to guess *how* many sweets were in the jar.
10 + c As the guests came in Diego told **them** *where* to put their coats.

34.2

1 debating
2 discuss
3 considering
4 choose
5 decide

34.3

The villagers warned **me** what the conditions were like at higher altitudes, and advised **me** to take enough food for a week. There was some discussion through the day as **to** whether the snow would arrive before my descent from the mountain, but I never imagined how hard the conditions would be. In the morning they showed me (**the way / how**: *one of these must be deleted*) to get to the track up the mountain.

When the snow started falling it was very light, and I couldn't decide ~~if~~ **whether** to carry on or go back down. Soon, however, I couldn't see where to go.

I wondered ~~if~~ **whether** to retrace my steps and try to find the track again, but by the time I decided ~~whether~~ **that** I should go back, the track had disappeared. As the snow got heavier I began to realise ~~whether~~ **that** my life was in danger. Fortunately, my years in the Andes had taught **me** what to do in extreme conditions. I knew that there was a shepherd's hut somewhere on this side of the mountain that I could shelter in, but I didn't know ~~that~~ **whether** it was nearby or miles away.

UNIT 35

35.1

2 She alleged that Markus had stolen / stole jewellery from her house.
3 She estimated that the vase was ('is' is also possible) around 250 years old.
4 She repeated that she had already seen the film.
5 She conceded that perhaps she treated / had treated Lara unkindly.
6 She recalled that Wilma's great-grandmother was / had been from Spain.

35.2

1 have solved
2 states
3 has
4 understand
5 looks
6 is / was

35.3

1 When I mentioned to Nokes that he **had been seen** ✓ (*or* **was seen**) in a local shop last Monday, he protested that he ~~is~~ **was** at home all day. He swears that he ~~didn't own~~ **doesn't own** a blue Ford Focus. He claimed that he **had been** ✓ (*or* **went**) to the paint factory two weeks ago to look for work. Nokes alleges that he **is** ✓ a good friend of Jamie Barnes. He

insisted that he **didn't telephone** ✓ (*or* **hadn't telephoned**) Barnes last Monday morning. When I pointed out to Nokes that a large quantity of paint **had been found** ✓ (*or* **was found**) in his house, he replied that he ~~is storing~~ **had been storing** (*or* **was storing**) it for a friend.

2 At the beginning of the interview I reminded Barnes that he **is** ✓ (*or* **was**) entitled to have a lawyer present. He denied that he **knew** ✓ (*or* **knows**) anyone by the name of Daniel Nokes. Barnes confirmed that he ~~is~~ **had been** (*or* **was**) in the area of the paint factory last Monday, but said that he ~~is visiting~~ **was visiting** (*or* **had been visiting**) his mother. He admitted that he ~~is walking~~ **was walking** (*or* **had been walking**) along New Street at around ten. He maintains that he ~~was~~ **is** a very honest person and would never be involved in anything illegal.

UNIT 36

36.1

The most likely answers are given. Possible objects are given in bold.

2 He agreed to collect Declan from school.
3 He ordered **us** to be quiet.
4 He urged **me** to stay for a few more days.
5 He vowed to fight the ban on smoking in public places.
6 He expected / hoped to see Olivia at the party.
7 He asked **me** to lend him ten pounds. (*or* He asked to borrow ten pounds.)
8 He called on **the government** to do more to help the homeless.
9 He hoped / expected to avoid the heavy traffic (by leaving early).

36.2

1 ~~suggested~~ promised
2 ✓
3 ~~intended~~ said / promised
4 ~~insisted~~ expected
5 ~~demanded~~ ordered
6 ~~wanted~~ hoped
7 ✓
8 ~~offered~~ proposed / ordered

36.3

Example answers

2 … reducing bus and train fares.
3 … seeing it.
4 … buying a guide book.
5 … going to the doctor.
6 … building it to the east of the city.
7 … doing more exercise.
8 … going for a long walk.

The verb 'propose' can be followed by a **to-infinitive** without an object (see A). For example:

2 To encourage people to use public transport the council proposed to reduce bus and train fares.
6 The city urgently needs a new airport, and the government proposes to build it to the east of the city.

UNIT 37

37.1

1 will
2 may / might
3 can
4 would
5 couldn't
6 can / could
7 will / would

37.2

2 She promised that she wouldn't be late …
3 He suggested that we could go to Paris for the weekend …
4 She guaranteed that she could get me there in good time …
5 He insisted that he would pay for the meal …

Sentences 2 and 4 have alternatives with a *to*-infinitive clause:

2 She promised not to be late…
4 She guaranteed to get us there in good time…

37.3

2 (that) she would be there this time.
3 had to be in the city centre by one ('must be' is also possible, but less natural)
4 asked where we should meet
5 mustn't forget to bring my student discount card

37.4

2 She said that I could / can travel with them.
3 She said that she wouldn't answer his questions.
4 She said that Karl would / should / ought to be back soon.
5 She said that she may / might / could have to move to Milan.
6 She said that she couldn't / wouldn't accept that Jason is / was dishonest.
7 She said that Maria would / will be disappointed if we leave / left without seeing her.

UNIT 38

38.1

2 He failed to address the question / issue of who would / should pay for the repairs to the building.
3 I was delighted to get an invitation to spend the holidays with them in Scotland.
4 I think it was Aristotle who made the observation that there's no such thing as bad publicity.
5 Amazingly the police accepted Rudi's explanation that he had taken the wallet by mistake.
6 On the webinar they debated the issue / question of whether assisted suicide should be a criminal offence.
7 The letter from the company gave a final warning that I should pay the bill by the end of the week. / … to pay the bill by the end of the week.
8 The government has broken its promise to reduce the rate of income tax. / … that it would reduce the rate of income tax.
9 The positive reaction to my work gave me considerable encouragement to take up photography as a career.
10 Waiting passengers were angry when they heard the announcement that the flight was cancelled. (*or* … had been cancelled).

38.2

2 There has been a great deal of argument as to how to define poverty.
3 There have been months of speculation as to whether President Malik would stand again.
4 Scientists might come to a / some conclusion as to what their results imply.
5 There is still no definite explanation as to why the dinosaurs disappeared.

38.3

1 unsure whether *or* not certain whether *are also possible*
2 dismissive of
3 adamant that
4 unsure how / not certain how
5 angry that / apologetic that
6 apologetic about
7 not certain when / unsure when
8 abusive to / towards
9 complimentary about
10 agreed that / adamant that

UNIT 39

39.1

The most likely answers are given

2 Lee urged that Mara Bianchi should be promoted to export manager.
3 Alice recommended that a sales representative should be sent to South Africa.
4 Alice reported that the Delaware Bridge project should be completed by August next year.
5 Simon insisted that work schedules should be kept to.
6 Simon instructed that all monthly reports should be sent to him directly.

7 Alina suggested that web conferencing should be used for meetings to save money on air fares.
8 Alina declared that the company's head office should remain in London.
9 Nathan agreed that the company should sponsor the European chess league for the next three years.
10 Nathan announced that in future all claims for travel expenses should be made in US dollars.

39.2

2 Yes
3 Yes
4 No
5 Yes
6 Yes
7 Yes
8 No
9 No
10 No

39.3

Possible adjectives are given in these answers

2 I am shocked that Kristina should behave so badly.
3 I am astounded that anyone should vote for him.
4 It is urgent that he should return home immediately.
5 I am amused that he should take his appearance so seriously.
6 I am upset that they should think I had cheated them.
7 It is appalling that they should be allowed to go free.
8 It is imperative that we should act now to avoid war.

UNIT 40

40.1

2 ~~is~~ are
3 ~~remain~~ remains
4 ✓
5 ~~is~~ are
6 ~~let~~ lets
7 ✓
8 ~~are~~ is
9 ~~are~~ is
10 ~~have~~ has
11 ✓
12 ~~is~~ are
13 ~~add~~ adds

40.2

2 university refuse / refuses
3 audience … is (A singular verb form is more likely here as the focus is on the audience as a whole rather than individual members.)
4 orchestra perform / performs
5 jury includes (A singular verb form is used here as 'include' focuses on the group as a whole rather than individual members.)
6 class have (A plural verb form is used as this is something the individuals did, emphasised by the use of 'all'.)
7 press presents / present
8 The United Nations has / have

40.3

1 ~~come~~ comes
2 ✓
3 ~~report~~ reports
4 ~~are~~ is
5 ✓
6 ✓
7 ~~have~~ has
8 ~~are~~ is
9 ✓ ('… need to be kept …' is also possible)
10 ~~are~~ is

UNIT 41

41.1

1
b his early paintings remains / remain
c the food tastes
d Dr Jones's acquaintances knows

2
a vegetarians is expected
b medicines relieve
c victims … exceeds
d museums in the capital charge

3
a the pieces lasts / last
b player tries
c the cars are / is tested
d these factors influence/influences

41.2

1 are; wants
2 think – has (more likely than 'have' in this formal context)
3 has / have; has
4 claim; constitutes (more likely than 'constitute' as 'the wreck of the ship and its cargo' constitute together, as a single item, a danger)
5 is / are (we use 'is' if we think of 'sausages and chips' as a single item); have; are / 's

UNIT 42

42.1

1 ✓ ('are' is also possible)
2 ✓
3 have
4 ✓ ('were' is also possible)
5 go
6 are
7 ✓ ('has' is also possible)
8 are
9 say

42.2

1 (singular) is
2 (plural) are
3 (singular) is
4 (singular) has
5 (singular) is
6 (plural) provide / offer

42.3

1 have; have; shop / shops
2 is ('are' is also possible, but less likely); expect / expects
3 is; blames / blame
4 was ('were' is also possible, but less likely); has / have
5 admit / admits; were; was
6 were; have
7 shows; is; believe
8 have; says / say; are

UNIT 43

43.1

1 a ✓
  b a computer programmer
  c a film star
2 a ✓
  b girls' school
  c the car door
  d a cut on the / her head
3 a ✓
  b ✓
  c a bottle of milk
  d a packet of biscuits
  e some toothpaste
  f ✓
4 a ✓
  b songs about pollution ('pollution songs' is not a well-known class of songs)
5 a tool shed
  b spiders' webs
6 a armchair
  b ✓
  c the 500-piece jigsaw puzzle
  d glasses case

43.2

1 cover up
2 broken out
3 stopping over
4 get together
5 stopover (related to 3)
6 get-together (4)
7 cover-up (1)
8 outbreak (2)

43.3

2 middle-of-the-road
3 round-the-clock
4 step-by-step
5 once-in-a-lifetime
6 down-to-earth
7 man / woman-in-the-street (*an alternative is* 'man or woman in the street', usually without hyphens)
8 larger-than-life

UNIT 44

44.1

1 an
2 a
3 an
4 a
5 a ('MiG' is said /mɪg/)
6 an
7 an
8 a
9 an
10 a
11 a
12 an
13 an
14 a

44.2

1 ~~one~~ a
2 ✓
3 ~~a~~ one
4 ~~one~~ an
5 ✓
6 ~~one~~ a
7 ~~one~~ a ('one' would imply 'one and no more'; 'a' is more likely if this is a more general invitation to 'have some cake')
8 ✓ ('one' implies 'one and only one')
9 ✓ (both 'one' and 'a' are possible)
10 ~~one~~ a
11 ~~one~~ a ('one' would emphasise the number and seems less likely than 'a' in this context)
12 ✓ (both 'one' and 'a' are possible)
13 ~~a~~ one
14 ~~one~~ a
15 ~~a~~ one
16 ✓ (both 'one' and 'a' are possible)

44.3

1 one / a
2 one
3 one
4 one / an
5 a
6 one
7 one / a
8 an
9 one
10 one
11 one / a
12 A

UNIT 45

45.1

1 a the world b a world
2 a a bright future b the future
3 a the past b a past
4 a a deserted beach
b the beach ('a beach' is also possible here, meaning a particular but unspecified beach)

45.2

1 a customer
2 the individual / an individual (similar meaning)
3 the car
4 The television
5 the smoker

45.3

2 pleasure
3 a sound
4 grammar
5 iron
6 Sound
7 a real pleasure
8 a grammar
9 an iron
10 conversation

UNIT 46

46.1

1 an author
2 ~~the~~ a / – minister
3 a Mac
4 Not the George Clooney
5 a Van Gogh
6 ✓
7 the Nielsens
8 ~~the~~ a / – Usain Bolt

46.2

1 a / the / – ('a' suggests that there are a number of marketing advisers; 'the' or '–' indicate that there is only one)
2 the / –
3 the / –
4 the / – (in journalism)
5 –
6 – ; –
7 –
8 A / –

46.3

1 the
2 (the)
3 (the)
4 the
5 (the)
6 (the)
7 the
8 the

46.4

1 this / a
2 –
3 – ('this' would be unlikely here as the paint is not the topic of what comes next)
4 the / –
5 a / –
6 a
7 the
8 a / this ('this' introduces the woman as the focus of the next part of the story)
9 the / –
10 the / –

UNIT 47

47.1

1 a Children (a general reference; specific children are not referred to)
b the children (a specific reference, probably to my/our children)
2 a the agriculture (a reference to the agriculture in a specific area)
b agriculture (a general reference)
3 a islands (reference to islands generally)
b The islands (reference to a specific group of islands)
4 a the holidays (specific reference; the holidays that are coming soon)
b Holidays (a general reference to holidays in this part of the world)
5 a rain (a general reference)
b the rain (reference to a specific, understood period of rain)
6 a the money (reference to a specific, understood sum of money)
b money (an observation on the effect of money generally)
7 a Parents (= a general reference)
b The parents (a specific reference to particular parents)
8 a the fire (reference to a specific fire)
b fire (a general reference)

47.2

1 – ('all afternoon' is more likely than 'all the afternoon')
2 a
3 the
4 the
5 the
6 –
7 the
8 –
9 the / – ('the winter' might imply 'the coming winter'. However, both 'winter' and 'the winter' might be a generalisation meaning 'any winter')
10 a

47.3

1 an email
2 by car / by air
3 the air
4 the post / an email
5 by post / by email
6 the car
7 by email
8 by air

UNIT 48

48.1

1 some books
2 ~~some~~
3 ~~some~~
4 ✓
5 Some sports
6 ✓
7 ~~some~~
8 Some children

48.2

Suggested answers are given

2 Some 30% of all city buses have been found to be unsafe.
3 An unexploded bomb has been found some five miles from the centre of Newham.
4 Some 25% of electricity will come from wind energy by 2025.
5 Some 200 jobs are to be lost at the Encon steelworks.

48.3

Suggested answers are given

2 He's probably out with some girlfriend or other.
3 Maybe I lent it to some student in my geography class.
4 I think it's in some travel agent's in the High Street.
5 Perhaps she's got to finish some report or other.

48.4

1 any
2 any / some ('any' suggests that I could eat none of the food; 'some' implies that I was able to eat some but not all of it)
3 anything
4 someone ('positive' meaning)
5 anything / something ('anything' suggests that he said that he did nothing at all wrong; 'something' suggests that he has been accused of a particular wrongdoing but denied this)
6 anyone
7 any
8 any
9 Some (= not all)
10 anyone / someone ('anyone' suggests that I don't want to lend it to any person; 'someone' suggests that I may have a particular person in mind (perhaps they have asked me to lend it to them))

UNIT 49

49.1

2 … no one heard …
3 Not a drop …
4 … no point …
5 … nowhere else …
6 … none of the hotels …
7 … never going to get …
8 … nothing wrong …

49.2

1 There aren't any in the cupboard.
4 … there wasn't any point in protesting.
5 … he didn't have anywhere else to go.
7 Isn't he ever going to get a job? (*or* Is he ever going to get a job?)
8 … they couldn't find anything wrong with her.

49.3

1 are no jobs
2 are no trains or buses
3 no seatbelts
4 was no spare tyre
5 ✓
6 ✓
7 are no trees
8 was no swimming pool
9 was no television
10 ✓
11 was no reply
12 ✓
13 was no choice

49.4

Possible answers

2 Mr Carlson didn't want to sell the painting, and no amount of money / persuading could make him change his mind.
3 I sent job applications to over a hundred companies, but not one of them invited me for an interview.
4 Smallpox used to be common all over the world but since 1978 not one case of the disease has been recorded.
5 The floor had dirty black marks all over it, and no amount of polishing could get it clean.

49.5

1 No problem. / No bother.
2 No wonder.
3 No chance. / No way.
4 No idea.
5 No comment.

UNIT 50

50.1

Suggested corrections/improvements are given

1 Lola's had ~~many~~ **a lot of** (more usual than 'many' in conversation) problems with her back for ~~a lot of~~ **many** years. She's having an operation next week and she won't be back at work for ~~a good deal of~~ a **good many** weeks afterwards.
2 A: There's bound to be ~~much~~ **a lot of / lots of** traffic on the way to the station. Perhaps we should leave now. B: No, there's plenty **of** time left, and at this time of day ~~many~~ **a lot of / lots of** people will already be at work.
3 ~~Many~~ **A lot of / Lots of** (more usual than 'many' in conversation) **people** think that hedgehogs are very rare nowadays, but when I was in Wales I saw ~~many~~ **a lot / lots** (more usual than 'many' in conversation).
4 ~~A lot~~ **Many** have claimed that Professor Dowman's study on current attitudes to politics is flawed. One criticism is that ~~much~~ **far** too many people questioned in the survey were under 18.
5 ~~A lot of~~ **Much** research has been conducted on the effects of diet on health, with ~~a lot of~~ **many** studies focusing on the link between fat intake and heart disease. However, ~~a lot~~ **much** remains to be done. ('much' and 'many' are preferred in a written academic context).
6 While it is true that ~~a lot of~~ **many** thousands of jobs were lost with the decline of the northern coal and steel industries, ~~a lot of~~ **many** advantages have also followed. ~~Much~~ **Far** too many cases of lung disease were recorded in the region, but with lower levels of pollution the number has declined. In addition, a ~~great deal of~~ **a great many** hi-tech companies have moved in to take advantage of the newly available workforce.

50.2

2 many a sunny afternoon
3 Many a ship
4 its / the many golf courses
5 my many emails
6 his many expeditions ('many an expedition' is also possible)
7 Many a teacher
8 the many coffee shops

50.3

1 plenty of ('a lot of' is also possible)
2 A lot of (not 'plenty of')
3 a lot of (not 'plenty of')
4 a lot of (not 'plenty of')
5 plenty of ('a lot of' is also possible)

UNIT 51

51.1

1 were all
2 can all
3 had all
4 are all
5 All the children *or* The children all (both are possible)
6 all been

51.2

1 The whole process
2 Whole areas of the country
3 The whole trip
4 all of the towns
5 all of the pages
6 all the building / the whole building ('all the building' suggests that we see the building as being made up of parts (a number of rooms, for example); 'the whole building' would be more likely in a formal context)
7 The whole room

51.3

1 every
2 each
3 every
4 each / every
5 each
6 every
7 each / every
8 each
9 Every / Each
10 every

(In 4, 7, and 9 'each' emphasises that we are thinking of the places / children / households separately; 'every' suggests something like 'all of'.)

51.4

1 Every so often
2 ✓
3 every few weeks
4 ✓ ('all Friday' is possible in an informal context; 'the whole of Friday' would also be possible here)
5 each of them
6 not all the food usually gets eaten
7 Not all of my brothers always come
8 Neil and his family were all on holiday
9 the rest of us all had a great time
10 ✓ ('all evening' would also be possible)

UNIT 52

52.1

1 few ('a few' would mean that a small number of people would disagree. It would be more likely after 'but …' than 'and …')
2 Little
3 few
4 the few / a few
5 A little
6 The few / What few
7 a little
8 a few
9 a few
10 the little / what little

52.2

Most likely changes are given

1 '… a bit of TV …' (more likely in this informal context)
2 … there are only a few left *or*… there aren't many left.
3 … there isn't much more … *or*… there's not much more …
4 … not many like that … *or* … only a few like that …
5 … has had few female politicians …
6 … exchanged few words …
7 … a little more confident …
8 There seems to be little prospect …

52.3

Possible answers

1 Fewer students had a part-time job in 2000 than now. ('Less students …' would also be acceptable for some people) Less (*or* Fewer) than 10% of female students had a part-time job in 2000.
2 Male students spend less money than female students on books. Students spend less on books now than they did in 2000.
3 Less (or Fewer) than 10% of female students walk to lectures now. Fewer students walk to lectures now than in 1980. ('Less students …' would also be acceptable for some people)
4 Male students spend less time online now than female students.

Surprising results might be:

Female students now spend no less than 20% of their income on books.
Female students spend no less than 24 hours a week online.

UNIT 53

53.1

The relative pronoun can be omitted in 1, 3, 4, 7 and 10.

53.2

1 ('that' or '–' are more likely in an informal context)
2 Eva's father, who is over 80, has just come back from a skiing holiday.
3 The problems faced by the company, which I'll look at in detail in a moment, are being resolved. (some people would use 'that' as an alternative)
4 She was greatly influenced by her father, who / whom she adored. ('whom' is formal)
5 He pointed to the stairs which / that led down to the cellar.
6 These drugs, which are used to treat stomach ulcers, have been withdrawn from sale. (some people would use 'that' as an alternative)
7 The singer, who was recovering from flu, had to cancel her concert.
8 The minister talked about the plans for tax reform that / which / – he will reveal next month. ('which' is more likely in a formal context)
9 I have two older sisters whom / who / that / – I love very much. ('whom' is very formal)

53.3

1 'which' is possible, but less likely than 'that' or '–'
2 'whom' seems rather formal here and less likely than 'who', 'that', or '–'
3 ✓ 'that I can' is also possible
4 … much that can …
5 ~~whom~~ who
6 ~~which~~ 'that' or '–'
7 The boy who took …
8 'which' is possible, but less likely than 'that' or '–'
9 'which' is possible, but less likely than 'that'
10 'which' is possible, but less likely than 'that' or '–'

UNIT 54

54.1

2 + a The newspaper is owned by the Mears group, whose chairperson is Miss Jiu Kim.
3 + f Parents whose children are between four and six are being asked to take part in the survey.
4 + b Children whose diets contain high levels of protein do better in examinations.
5 + e My aunt, whose first job was filling shelves in a supermarket, is now CEO of a department store.
6 + c I enjoy growing plants whose flowers are attractive to bees.

54.2

Example answers

2 A widow is a woman whose husband has died and who has not remarried.
3 An actuary is a person whose job is to decide how much insurance companies should charge their customers.
4 A furnace is a container in which things are melted or burnt.
5 A gazebo is a small garden building in which people can sit to enjoy the view.
6 Polo is a sport in which horse riders hit a ball using hammers with long handles.

54.3

1 the moment when
2 an agreement whereby
3 the area where
4 the reason why
5 a method whereby
6 a condition where

54.4

1 ~~whatever~~ whoever
2 ~~that~~ what
3 ✓
4 ~~which~~ whatever (or 'what')
5 ~~whichever~~ whatever
6 ✓ (or 'no relative pronoun' or 'which')
7 ~~what~~ that
8 ~~which~~ whichever / whatever

UNIT 55

55.1

2 He was the uncle of Anne Boleyn, after whose execution in 1536 he lost power.
3 It is her unmarried name by which she is better known.
4 Mr Wang, across whose land the road will be built, is very unhappy about the plans.
5 The election result, about which there can be no doubt, is a great disappointment.
6 The building from which Marcus emerged was little more than a ruin.
7 It is a medieval palace, in whose tower the king hid during the civil war.
8 I am grateful to Aarav Basu, from whose book on the history of the bicycle this information comes.

55.2

2 Until 1914 the pound sterling was the currency in / with which most world trade was conducted.

3 They have changed the date on / by which the furniture is to be delivered.

4 Pasteurisation was discovered by the French chemist Louis Pasteur, after whom it was named.

5 He was persuaded to stay in England by Charles Dickens, to whom he had shown his novel.

6 There are a number of safety procedures of which you should be aware.

7 Details are in the instruction manual with which the printer was supplied.

8 Ms Park was left the money by her former husband, from whom she was divorced in 2005.

55.3

2 Until 1914 the pound sterling was the currency which / that most world trade was conducted in.

3 They have changed the date which / that / – the furniture is to be delivered on / by.

4 Pasteurisation was discovered by the French chemist Louis Pasteur, who it was named after.

5 He was persuaded to stay in England by Charles Dickens, who he had shown his novel to.

6 There are number of safety procedures which / that / – you should be aware of.

7 Details are in the instruction manual which / that / – the printer was supplied with.

8 Ms Park was left the money by her former husband, who she was divorced from in 2005.

55.4

1 The house which the thieves broke into …

2 ✓

3 … first of which …

4 The party, which I've been looking forward to all week …

5 ✓

6 … both of which …

7 … part of which …

8 … all of whom …

UNIT 56

56.1

The most likely answers are given

2 I went on an IT training course with my colleague Mateo.

3 Rubella, or German measles, is still a common childhood disease in many countries.

4 Four kilos of Beluga caviar, among the most expensive foods in the world, has been ordered for the reception.

5 One of the most popular modern writers for children is the Australian John Marsden.

6 Tonya's father, and (her) trainer for the last ten years, was in the crowd to watch her victory.

7 Dr Sofia Lopez, head of Downlands Hospital, has criticised government plans to cut health funding.

8 Klaus Schmidt, the German 10,000 metres record holder and current European champion, is running in the Stockholm Marathon. (*or* Klaus Schmidt, the current European champion and (the) German 10,000 metres record holder, …)

56.2

2 + d The two countries having land borders with the USA, namely / that is Mexico and Canada, have complained to the President about the new customs regulations.

3 + a The three most popular pets in Britain, namely / that is cats, dogs and rabbits, are found in 25% of households.

4 + f The capital of Estonia, namely / that is Tallinn, is situated on the Gulf of Finland.

5 + b The largest island in the world, namely / that is Greenland, covers over 2 million square kilometres.

6 + c The 'consumers' of education, namely / that is students, should have ways of complaining about poor teaching.

56.3

2 educated; I went to a reunion for students who were educated in the physics department during the 1990s.

3 being told off; As my aunt told me what she thought, I felt like a schoolboy who was being told off by his headteacher.

4 saying; There is a sign on the gate which says 'Entry forbidden'.

5 introduced; Across the river were some of the deer which were introduced into the park in the 19th century.

6 flowing; Rivers which flow into the Baltic Sea are much cleaner now than ten years ago.

7 being printed; The booklets which are being printed as we speak will be on sale later this afternoon.

8 needing; Anyone who needs further information can see me in my office.

UNIT 57

57.1

The most likely answers are given

2 + e She's in the photograph on the piano.

3 + b I plan to cut down the tree in the back garden

4 + a There's a team of people in green shirts.

5 + d We took the footpath by / along the canal.

6 + i The children can't get over the fence around the pool.

7 + g Go along the lane between the houses.

8 + j Nico's a boy with a quick temper.

9 + f Follow the main road from Paris to Lyons.

10 + h She's a teacher from New Zealand.

57.2

2 She's in the photograph which is on the piano.

3 I plan to cut down the tree which is in the back garden.

4 There's a team of people who have / are wearing green shirts.

5 We took the footpath which runs / goes by / along the canal.

6 The children can't get over the fence which is around the pool.

7 Go along the lane which runs between the houses.

8 Nico's a boy who has a quick temper.

9 Follow the main road which runs / goes from Paris to Lyons.

10 She's a teacher who is / comes from New Zealand.

57.3

Possible answers are given with some alternatives

2 Teachers (who work / working) at Queen's College in the city centre, who went on strike last week, have appointed Kristina Borg, the head of English, as their spokesperson.

3 Marge Scott, who has died aged 95, was the first woman (to be) educated at Marston College in south Wales. / Marge Scott, the first woman (to be) educated at Marston College in south Wales, has died aged 95.

4 The conference (held) in Singapore, which approved the world trade agreement drawn up by European and Asian states, has now ended.

5 A book on gardening, *All about Plants*, that / which Anna wanted to borrow, wasn't available in the library. / A book on gardening called *All about Plants* that / which Anna wanted to borrow wasn't available in the library.

6 A painting found in a second-hand shop by Lara Gruber, an antique dealer from Austria, is thought to be by J.M.W. Turner, the British landscape artist. (*or*… by the British landscape artist J.M.W. Turner.)

57.4

1 The sentence could mean: (i) that a man was wearing a grey suit – he was talking; (ii) (the ridiculous) that a man was talking with a grey suit. To remove the ambiguity the sentence should be: A man (who was) wearing a grey suit was talking. / A man in a grey suit was talking.

2 The sentence could mean: (i) that the lorry was carrying thousands of stolen cigarettes – it was stopped by a police officer; (ii) (the ridiculous) that the police officer was carrying thousands of stolen cigarettes at the time s/he stopped the lorry. To remove the ambiguity the sentence should be: A lorry (which was) carrying thousands of stolen cigarettes was stopped by a police officer.

3 The sentence could mean: (i) that I am going to discuss the matter with my parents; (ii) that I am going to decorate the room and my parents will help decorate it with me; (iii) (the ridiculous) that I am going to use my parents as decoration in the room! To remove the ambiguity the sentence should be: I discussed with my parents my plan to decorate the room. (to mean [i]) *or* I discussed my plan to decorate the room with the help of my parents (to mean [ii]).

UNIT 58

58.1

2 Dressed (*or* Being dressed) all in black, she was almost invisible in the starless night.

3 Not having a credit card, I found it difficult to book an airline ticket online.

4 Being unemployed, Antonio spent a lot of time filling in job application forms.

5 Walking quickly, I soon caught up with her.

6 Built of wood (*or* Being built of wood …), the house was clearly a fire risk.

7 Having been told off the day before for arriving late, I was eager to catch the bus in good time.

8 Not knowing where the theatre was, she asked for directions at the hotel reception.

9 Being a nurse, she knew what to do after the accident.

10 Having spent his childhood in Oslo, he knew the city well.

58.2

1 D (first implied subject = 'I'; second subject = 'a car') Waiting for the bus, I was splashed all over by a car that went through a puddle. / While I was waiting for the bus, a car went through a puddle and splashed water all over me.

2 S (subject in both clauses = 'Rashid')

3 S (subject in both clauses = 'Suzanne')

4 D (first implied subject 'we'; second subject = 'the town') Looking down from the hill, we could see the town spread out before us towards the coast. / As we looked down from the hill, we could see the town spread out before us towards the coast.

5 D (first implied subject = 'I'; second subject = 'the boat') I was feeling rather sick as the boat ploughed through the huge waves.

6 S (subject in both clauses = 'the plant')

58.3

1 Not wishing to boast …

2 Pretending not to notice …

3 Determined not to be beaten …

4 Not feeling well …

5 Not bothering to put on his coat …

6 Trying not to cry …

58.4

2 + c Looking over my shoulder, I could see Ida running after me.

3 + f Walking through the tunnel, I banged my head on the low roof.

4 + a Having waited six weeks for the washing machine to be delivered, I decided to cancel the order.

5 + g Having suffered from depression myself as a teenager, I could understand how Nathan was feeling.

6 + h Having parked / Parking the car about a kilometre from the stadium, I walked the rest of the way.

7 + b Having reached / Reaching my mid-thirties, I felt I needed to change my life.

8 + e Having learnt some Swahili as a child, I was able to understand most of what she said.

UNIT 59

59.1

2 While being interviewed …

3 Before taking …

4 While welcoming …

5 Since being overthrown … (*or* After being overthrown …)

6 Through working … (*or* After working …)

7 Before being sold …

8 After leaving …

59.2

2 + a By giving up sugar, she soon began to lose weight.

3 + e In turning down the job, she gave up the possibility of a huge salary. ('By turning down' is also possible. However, 'In turning down' focuses on the consequence of the action and so is perhaps more likely here.)

4 + b By moving to a smaller flat, she saved over a hundred pounds a month. ('In moving …' is also possible. However, 'By moving …'focuses on the method used to save money.)

5 + f On entering the classroom, she was surprised when all the children stood up.

6 + c In criticising her father, she knew that she might offend him. ('By criticising' is also possible. However, 'In criticising' focuses on the consequence of the action and so is perhaps more likely here.)

59.3

1 With Maryam having flu, we couldn't go on holiday.

2 Without having more information, I won't be able to advise you.

3 Without realising it, he had solved the problem.

4 With time running out before the train left, I couldn't wait for Andrei any longer.

59.4

(1) Although from a poor background, Paula Regis gained a place at Southam University. (2) Always fascinated by the stars, she took a first degree in astrophysics. (3) Once at university she also became interested in student politics and, (4) popular with her fellow students, was elected University President in her second year. This didn't distract her from her studies, however, and (5) while in the final year of her degree, she won the International Young Scientist of the Year award for her work on star classification. (6) When asked what was (*or* When asked about …) the secret of her success (*or* When asked what the secret of her success was …) she said, 'Just hard work and a little luck.' (7) Determined to continue her research, she has recently begun work on her PhD.

UNIT 60

60.1

2 prepared (herself)

3 prides itself on

4 occupied themselves with / by ('with' and 'by' could be omitted: 'occupied themselves playing computer games')

5 adapt (yourself)
6 trouble himself about / with
7 dress (herself)
8 absent himself from

60.2

1 me
2 myself
3 us
4 them
5 yourself
6 himself ('him' is also possible if ' he' and 'him' refer to different people)
7 herself ('her' is also possible if ' she' and 'her' refer to different people)
8 me

60.3

1 got ourselves vaccinated / got vaccinated
2 ✓
3 had themselves checked
4 he'd caught hepatitis himself
5 ✓ (however, some people think this is incorrect and would use 'Jan and I')
6 to tear himself away
7 we're going to occupy ourselves
8 they can't reach it themselves

UNIT 61

61.1

1 ~~ones~~ some
2 ✓
3 ~~ones~~ some
4 … mint ~~one~~ … / … some mint …
5 ✓
6 ✓
7 ~~ones~~ one
8 ~~ones~~ some

61.2

1 ones
2 ones (Some people would avoid this use of 'ones' to refer to people.)
3 No
4 one
5 No ('ones' would be unlikely here, referring to a group of people)
6 ones
7 one
8 No
9 No
10 No ('your ones' is possible, but some people avoid it. 'Are these yours?' is much more likely)

61.3

3 (ones) Note that some people think that 'those ones' is incorrect.
4 (one)
5 ✓
6 (one)
7 ✓
8 (ones)
9 (ones)
10 (one)

61.4

Possible answers

1 … one who knew the way.
2 … ones you have to drive to.
3 … one is the burning of fossil fuels.
4 … ones are small and lightweight

UNIT 62

62.1

2 'I doubt it' is also possible.
3 I hope so.
4 I suppose so.
5 I think so.
6 Yes, I hear (that) she is. ('So I hear' is also possible; see E)
7 I guess so.
8 He says so.
9 I promise (that) I will.
10 I'm sure (that) you will.

62.2

1 suppose not / don't suppose so
2 don't think so / think not ('think not' would be rather formal)
3 suspect not / don't suspect so
4 doesn't appear so / appears not
5 didn't say so

62.3

2 Yes, they are.
3 Yes, it has. / So it has.
4 Yes, you did.

62.4

Possible answers

2 So I understand.
3 So I gather.
4 So it appears.
5 So he tells me.

UNIT 63

63.1

2 She was asked to teach more classes, and was happy to do so.
3 My French hosts gave me snails to eat, but I did so very reluctantly.
4 The company wanted to build a dam on the site, but they were prevented from doing so by local opposition.
5 All EU countries agreed to implement the new regulations on recycling plastic, but so far only Finland and Austria have done so.
6 The water freezes in the cracks in rocks, and as it does so it expands.

63.2

1 do so
2 do (not 'do so'; habitual action)
3 doing so
4 do (not 'do so'; 'enjoy' refers to a state)
5 does so
6 do (not 'do so'; 'smell' refers to a state)
7 do (not 'do so'; habitual action)
8 did so

63.3

2 such research
3 such claims / such a claim
4 such a project
5 such destruction
6 such tactics / such a tactic

63.4

Example answers

2 … into research of this kind
3 … claims like this (*or* these) / a claim like this.
4 … this kind of project …
5 … this sort of destruction …
6 … these tactics / this tactic …

UNIT 64

64.1

2 Yes, we should ~~have booked tickets in advance.~~ / Yes, we should have ~~booked tickets in advance.~~
3 Yes, we will ~~be staying in Brazil permanently.~~ / Yes, we will be ~~staying in Brazil permanently.~~
4 Yes, I'm sure they will ~~have been taken by now.~~ / Yes, I'm sure they will have ~~been taken by now.~~ / Yes, I'm sure they will have been ~~taken by now.~~
5 No, I haven't ~~had dinner yet.~~
6 Yes, I am ~~going to Katalin's party.~~
7 Yes, I would ~~have missed the train.~~ / Yes, I would have ~~missed the train.~~
8 No, I can't ~~see him anywhere.~~
9 No, he couldn't ~~have been looking.~~ *or* No, he couldn't have ~~been looking~~. / No, he couldn't have been ~~looking.~~

64.2

2 do
3 has
4 do
5 (do)
6 hasn't / doesn't
7 is
8 have (done) / did
9 have / do
10 (be)

64.3

2 might / would (be)
3 might / should (be)
4 should (be)
5 might / would be
6 should (be) / would
7 would / might be
8 would / might be

UNIT 65

65.1

2 used to
3 pretended to be
4 used to be
5 claimed to

6 pretended to / claimed to
7 expected it to be
8 expected to

65.2

1 opportunity (to)
2 hated to
3 refused (to)
4 choose to
5 determined (to)
6 deserved to
7 idea (to)
8 delighted (to)
9 prefer to
10 afford to

65.3

1 ... if you'd like to (*or* ... if you like)
2 ✓ (*or* ... you'd like to.)
3 ... she doesn't want to.
4 ✓ (*or* ... if she'd like.)
5 ✓ (*or* ... where I want to.)
6 ... if you don't want to. (However, 'if you don't want' is sometimes used in colloquial speech)
7 ✓ (*or* ... if they want to.)
8 ... I'd like to very much.
9 ... you like. (*or* you'd like to)
10 ... so I didn't like to.

UNIT 66

66.1

Suggested corrections are given

2 a **lone** figure / a figure walking **alone**
3 ✓
4 a **happy / cheerful** person / a person who was always **glad** and smiling
5 his **sleeping** daughter / his daughter, who was **asleep**
6 **frightened** passengers / passengers on board who are **afraid**
7 ✓
8 a **similar** age
9 ✓
10 The girls, who were sorry for their behaviour, apologised to their teacher. / The girls apologised to their teacher because they were sorry for their behaviour.

66.2

1 a an utter / inevitable
  b inevitable.
2 a unsafe ('domestic' would only be possible here if we wanted to emphasise that the equipment was for use in the home (i.e. domestic) rather than another kind of equipment)
  b domestic / unsafe
3 a educational / entertaining
  b educational / entertaining
4 a serious
  b serious / underlying
5 a legal / stupid
  b legal / stupid

66.3

1 all the people concerned
2 As the minister responsible
3 the opposite effect.
4 a responsible adult.
5 the only available room / the only room available
6 the apparent approval
7 and concerned parents
8 financial advice available

UNIT 67

67.1

The most likely answers are given

1 almost / practically complete
2 mainly cotton
3 absolutely excellent
4 very clear
5 completely illegal
6 very popular
7 an almost permanent
8 very attractive
9 exclusively / mainly male
10 very visible

67.2

Suggested answers:

2 I'd be incredibly upset.
3 I'd be rather angry.
4 I'd be a bit embarrassed.
5 I'd be extremely annoyed.

67.3

Suggested corrections are given, but others are possible

1 extremely old
2 ✓
3 absolutely useless
4 very happy
5 'reasonably unique' is unlikely; more likely is, for example, 'almost unique'
6 ✓
7 ✓
8 quite small
9 perfectly comfortable
10 ✓
11 reasonably quiet
12 virtually impossible
13 ✓
14 a really terrible
15 simply awful
16 ✓

67.4

1 ~~fairly~~ / really
2 really / fairly (both correct)
3 ~~fairly~~ / really
4 pretty / very (both correct)
5 ~~very~~ / pretty
6 pretty / ~~very~~
7 really / ~~fairly~~
8 really / very (both correct)
9 pretty / ~~very~~
10 fairly / pretty (both correct)

UNIT 68

68.1

The most likely answers are given

2 very late
3 very critical
4 a straight
5 false
6 a critical
7 late
8 original
9 very straight
10 very false

68.2

2 a highly technical
  b technical
3 a very human
  b human
4 a largely academic
  b academic
5 a private
  b an intensely private
6 a diplomatic
  b an extremely diplomatic

68.3

Possible answers are given

2 ... nice and quiet
3 ... lovely and soft
4 ... nice and juicy
5 ... good and ready

UNIT 69

69.1

2 ... the problems identified. / the identified problems.
3 Interested visitors ...
4 ... the sheet provided.
5 ... with flights included.
6 ... the resulting publicity / the publicity resulting ...
7 ... any remaining cheese. / any cheese remaining.

69.2

Example answers

2 The amount of added sugar in dark chocolate is less than that found in white chocolate.
3 Organic oranges contain 30% more vitamin C than those grown conventionally.
4 Cars today are much more fuel-efficient than those manufactured in 1990.
5 The President's salary is 25 times higher than that earned by the average citizen.

69.3

2 well-resourced
3 nerve-wracking
4 far-reaching

69.4

2 were wide-ranging
3 is clean-shaven
4 eye-catching

UNIT 70

70.1

1 to reduce
2 to cheat / cheating
3 knowing
4 to leave
5 to underestimate / underestimating
6 to open / opening
7 talking
8 to resign / resigning
9 to panic
10 turning

70.2

1 stupid going / stupid to go
2 confident that he wouldn't get lost
3 ✓
4 guilty shopping
5 was concerned to learn
6 ✓
7 ✓
8 busy drinking
9 was sorry to (have) upset me / was sorry that he'd upset me ('was sorry for upsetting me' is also possible)
10 wasn't prepared to admit
11 ✓

70.3

2 It was wonderful to hear such a magnificent performance.
3 It was mean of you to eat all the cake and not leave any for me.
4 It was unreasonable of them to complain about the exam results.
5 It was awkward to get the top off the jar. (*or* ... to get the top of the jar off.; *informally* ... getting the top off the jar.)
6 It was simple to put up the shelves.
7 It was unprofessional of him to criticise the headteacher in front of the staff.
8 It was kind of you to give birthday presents to the children.

70.4

Possible answers are given

2 It made me furious listening to his lies.
3 It made me sad that we wouldn't be working together again.
4 It made me ashamed to learn how badly we treated immigrants in the 1950s.
5 It made me nervous hearing the dentist's drill as I sat in the waiting room.

UNIT 71

71.1

1 repeatedly
2 in / with despair ('despairingly' is also possible)
3 in / with anticipation
4 reputedly
5 disappointedly
6 in a relaxed way / manner / fashion
7 determinedly
8 in / with satisfaction ('in a satisfied way / manner / fashion' are also possible)
9 in an organised way / manner / fashion
10 agitatedly

71.2

1 a most
  b mostly
2 a short
  b shortly
3 a directly
  b direct
4 a wide
  b widely
5 a highly
  b high

71.3

1 ✓
2 ... to me in a friendly way / manner / fashion.
3 ✓ (*or* ... fine ...)
4 ... flatly refused.
5 ✓ ('... very clear' is also possible in informal contexts)
6 ... in a cowardly way / manner / fashion ...
7 ... justly renowned.
8 ... slowly turned ...
9 'thinly' is grammatically correct, but some people would use 'thin' in informal contexts
10 ... loudly applauded ...

UNIT 72

72.1

1 more scared
2 deeper *or* more deep (for emphasis)
3 more pretty
4 stronger
5 more naughty
6 harder
7 truer *or* more true (for emphasis)
8 longer

72.2

2 ✓ ('more dirty' would also be possible)
3 ~~recenter~~ more recent
4 ~~excitinger~~ more exciting
5 ✓ ('wealthier' would also be possible)
6 ✓ ('more unique' is used to suggest that some people have particularly individual characteristics)
7 ~~complexer~~ more complex
8 ✓ ('more clever' would also be possible)
9 ~~powerfuler~~ more powerful
10 ~~alerter~~ more alert

72.3

'the' can be left out in 2, 4 and 5.

72.4

1 in
2 of
3 of
4 in *or* of (both are possible)
5 in

UNIT 73

73.1

2 The Downtown Hotel is not such a pleasant place to stay as the Strand Hotel. / The Downtown Hotel is not as pleasant a place to stay as the Strand Hotel.
3 The President's address to the nation is as important a speech as he is ever likely to make in his career.
4 It wasn't such a big problem as I first thought. / It wasn't as big a problem as I first thought.
5 Theresa's dog is as ferocious an animal as I've ever seen.
6 She's not such a fluent Greek speaker as she claims to be. / She's not as fluent a Greek speaker as she claims to be.

73.2

1 as many as
2 as few as
3 as much as
4 As many as
5 as little as
6 as few as
7 as little as
8 as much as

73.3

2 + a Her handwriting was so untidy as to be nearly illegible.
3 + e The bookcase was so heavy as to be almost impossible to move.
4 + c The CD was so badly scratched as to be unplayable.
5 + f The plot of the novel was so complicated as to be completely incomprehensible.
6 + b The difference between the results was so small as to be insignificant.

73.4

1 How serious an injury
2 *or* as serious as
3 bad enough to
4 not as fit as
5 not such a good player as / not as good a player as
6 go so far as to say
7 sufficiently well / well enough
8 as speedy a recovery as possible

UNIT 74

74.1

1 I expect Catalina to win the race **easily**.
2 He regretted missing the concert **greatly**. / He **greatly** regretted missing the concert.
3 I **secretly** hated playing the piano … (more likely than 'I hated playing the piano secretly, although my parents thought I loved it.' This would mean that my parents thought I loved playing the piano secretly.)
4 He **calmly** started to walk across … / He started to walk **calmly** across …
5 She **kindly** offered to do the work.
6 Bruno **hurriedly** finished speaking and sat down. / Bruno finished speaking **hurriedly** and sat down.
7 I **simply** don't remember putting it down.
8 We look forward to hearing from you **soon**.
9 They **deliberately** tried to ignore me. / They tried to ignore me **deliberately**.
10 I don't pretend to understand the instructions **completely**.

74.2

1 around Switzerland / in July (place + time)
2 a car / at the airport (object + adverbial)
3 south / towards the lakes (place [adverb] + place [prepositional phrase])
4 for a week / in a beautiful cottage belonging to some friends of Kim's mother (time + place [long adverbial])
5 early / at about six o'clock (time [adverb] + time [prepositional phrase])
6 briefly / in the village where Kim had spent some time when she was a student (time + place [long adverbial])
7 carefully on the narrow winding roads (manner + place)
8 the train / home (object + adverb)
9 ourselves / enormously / in Switzerland (object + manner + place)
10 there / before too long (place + time)

74.3

2 ✓ *or* Next, vigorously beat the eggs in a small bowl. (Both of these are more likely than 'Next, beat the eggs in a small bowl vigorously').
3 I thought I'd securely locked the luggage. / I thought I'd locked the luggage securely.
4 I stopped playing tennis regularly … (more likely)
5 ✓ *or* Lee was beaten easily in the final. / Lee was beaten in the final easily.
6 He always brings sandwiches from home.
7 No, they moved away last year.
8 The local residents welcomed warmly the decision … *or* The local residents warmly welcomed the decision …
9 ✓

UNIT 75

75.1

2 a I was brought up to earn money **honestly** …
  b **Honestly**, I'm perfectly capable of putting up the shelf myself.
3 a she admitted **frankly** …
  b **Frankly**, I went to sleep during his lecture …
4 a **Seriously**, I don't know what I'd have done …
  b I tried to speak **seriously** to him …
5 a **Clearly**, he wants me to take the job.
  b I'd had very little sleep and was having difficulty thinking **clearly**.
6 a **Plainly**, he was feeling ill at ease.
  b She always dressed **plainly** …

75.2

1 ~~enormously~~ / significantly
2 ~~from time to time~~ / rarely
3 easily / ~~scarcely~~
4 almost / ~~by an hour~~
5 often / ~~on many occasions~~
6 ~~hardly ever~~ / every week
7 ~~greatly~~ / rarely
8 ~~nearly~~ / entirely

75.3

1 [1] & [3]
2 [1] & [3]
3 [2]
4 [1] & [3]
5 [2] & [3]
6 [1] & [2]

UNIT 76

76.1

2 … and out jumped Daniel.
3 Outside the door stood two small children.
4 In the park the boys were playing cricket, despite the muddy conditions. (no inversion)
5 Around her neck hung a jade necklace.
6 … and up the tree it climbed. (no inversion)
7 … and in marched a delegation from the striking workers.
8 … away swam the fish.
9 … in the corner was a very old grandfather clock.
10 In the office Lea found (no inversion) it difficult to concentrate, but at home she worked (no inversion) more efficiently.

76.2

2 … last week I had a holiday. (subject–verb inversion is not possible: 'last week' is an adverb of time indicating a period; does not take inversion [see **C**])
3 … first came a welcoming address by the head of the organising team.
4 … at no time were members of the public in danger.
5 No change; the adverb 'daily' can't go in front position.
6 … seldom can a politician have changed his views so quickly as Beckett.
7 … next came a blizzard, preventing us from leaving the hut.
8 … by next Friday we'll be in Japan. (subject–verb inversion is not possible: 'by next Friday' is an adverb of time indicating a definite point; does not take inversion [see **C**])
9 No change; the adverb 'hourly' can't go in front position.
10 … hardly ever did I hear him raise his voice in anger.

76.3

1 I play squash twice a week / twice a week I play squash
2 your salary will be paid monthly
3 ✓
4 ✓
5 Around the town she drove / She drove around the town; in a side street she spotted the place / she spotted the place in a side street
6 across the room it flew / it flew across the room

UNIT 77

77.1

1 ~~very~~ / ~~much~~ / very much
2 ~~very~~ / much / very much
3 very / ~~much~~ / very much
4 ~~very~~ / much / very much
5 ~~very~~ / ~~much~~ / very much
6 ~~very~~ / much / very much
7 very / ~~much~~ / ~~very much~~
8 very / ~~much~~ / very much
9 ~~very~~ / ~~much~~ / very much
10 ~~very~~ / much / very much

77.2

1 too
2 very / too
3 very
4 very
5 very / too
6 too
7 very
8 too

77.3

1 … and he **even** offered …
2 I will **only** be …
3 … and **even** the smallest donation can make …
4 … he has **even** asked Ann …
5 **Only** Louis knew …
6 … I **only** cook …

UNIT 78

78.1

A number of positions for these adverbs are possible, depending on the wider context and the particular emphasis that the speaker / writer wants to give. The first answer below gives perhaps the most likely position in many contexts, and then alternatives.

2 … **Presumably**, the idea is to welcome visitors from other countries. / The idea, **presumably**, is to welcome … / The idea is, **presumably**, to welcome … / … other countries, **presumably**.

3 The builders **generously** agreed to plant new trees to replace the ones they had dug up. / **Generously**, the builders agreed … / The builders agreed **generously** to plant…

4 Most people **rightly** believe that the prisoners should be released. / **Rightly**, most people … / Most people believe, **rightly**, that …

5 **Obviously**, she knew more about the robbery than she told the police. / She **obviously** knew … / … told the police, **obviously**.

6 He **carelessly** broke the window when he was painting. / **Carelessly**, he broke …

7 She **bravely** picked up the spider and put it outside. / **Bravely**, she picked up… / She picked up the spider **bravely** …

8 **Interestingly**, the road didn't appear on the satnav.

78.2

2 … outwardly she looked remarkably calm.

3 … environmentally it is no longer the problem it once was.

4 … industrially it is relatively undeveloped.

5 … visually the performance was stunning.

6 … financially we'd be much better off if we moved there.

7 … politically he claims to be a socialist.

8 … technically she could be sent to prison.

78.3

Suggested answers are given

2 **In geological terms**, limestone is a relatively new rock.

3 The building is similar to the opera house in Milan **in terms of architecture**.

4 **From a grammatical point of view** the essay was well written, but its style was inappropriate.

5 The election was clearly rigged and the result is a severe blow to the country **as far as democracy is concerned**.

UNIT 79

79.1

1 as / when ('when' emphasises a direct connection between kicking the ball and falling over – it suggests that kicking the ball caused her to then fall over; 'as' suggests 'at the same time as' – kicking and falling happened simultaneously)

2 When (more likely than 'While …'; talking about a period of our lives)

3 When

4 While / As

5 while / when ('as' could mean 'because' here)

6 when

7 As / When

8 as

9 while / as

10 As / When ('When' suggests 'By the time the paint is dry'; 'As' emphasises a continuous change during the period it is drying)

79.2

1 ~~As~~ When

2 ~~When~~ While / As

3 ~~while~~ when

4 ✓

5 ~~While~~ When / As (= 'because')

6 ~~as~~ when

79.3

1 until

2 Before / Until

3 before / until

4 before

5 Before / Until

6 until

7 before / until

8 until

79.4

Possible answers are given

2 … than he broke his arm.

3 … when it rang again.

4 … than / when it was time to start work again.

5 … before members of the audience started to criticise her.

6 … when the engine cut out.

UNIT 80

80.1

2 + b Andrea agreed to book tickets for us all **as** it was her idea to go to the theatre.

3 + a **Seeing as** it's your birthday, I'll buy you lunch.

4 + h **Because** I'm trying to lose weight I've given up dairy products.

5 + d We were recommended to buy the textbook second-hand **since** a new copy would be very expensive.

6 + c **As** the guest lecturer was late, Dr Gomez spoke about his research instead.

7 + e I suggested we all go on holiday together **seeing that** we get on so well.

8 + g You should never walk under a ladder **because** it's supposed to be unlucky.

80.2

2 … due to lack of interest.

3 … due to / owing to its central location.

4 … due to human error.

5 … due to / owing to heavy cloud.

6 … because of the bright sunlight.

7 … because his mobile was switched off.

8 … because of local opposition.

9 … because of his age.

10 … because there was a fly in it.

80.3

2 I couldn't hear what Isabella was saying with the noise. / With the noise, I couldn't hear what Isabella was saying. / I couldn't hear what Isabella was saying for the noise.

3 With her father (being) in hospital, Olivia went to stay with her aunt. / Olivia went to stay with her aunt, with her father (being) in hospital.

4 With all the exercise I was doing I felt a lot fitter. / I felt a lot fitter with all the exercise I was doing. / I felt a lot fitter for all the exercise I was doing.

5 With the train drivers on strike tomorrow, I don't think I'll go to town after all. / I don't think I'll go to town after all, with the train drivers on strike tomorrow.

UNIT 81

81.1

2 + h He packed his suitcase with the books at the bottom **so as not to / in order not to** crush his clothes.

3 + a Bus fares in the city were being cut **so as to / in order to** encourage people to use public transport.

4 + f We crept quietly towards the deer **so as not to / in order not to** frighten them away.

5 + c I walked around the outside of the field **so as not to / in order not to** damage the growing crops.

6 + b We put up a fence **so as to / in order to** prevent people walking across the grass.

7 + g She looked down at the book in front of her **so as to / in order to** avoid his gaze.

8 + e The roadworks were carried out at night **so as not to / in order not to** disrupt traffic too much.

81.2

2 ✗
3 ✓
4 ✗
5 ✗
6 ✓
7 ✓
8 ✗

81.3

2 … nobody would know it was there.
3 … mosquitoes couldn't get in.
4 … it won't take up a lot of computer memory.
5 … we could see the view over the city.
6 … it will receive the new channels.

81.4

Suggested answers are given

2 The meeting room is designed in such a way that everyone's voice can be heard without the use of microphones. / … in such a way as to allow everyone's voice to be heard without the use of microphones.
3 The website is organised in such a way that it is easy to navigate. / … in such a way as to be easy to navigate.
4 If the dial is rotated in such a way that the number 1 is at the top, the valve opens. / … in such a way as to locate the number 1 at the top, the valve opens.

UNIT 82

82.1

2 + b Frightened though / as she was, she forced herself to pick up the snake.
3 + e Scarce though / as food became, they always found enough to share with me.
4 + c Experienced though / as the climbers were, they had never faced such severe conditions before.
5 + a Confusing though / as the instructions first appeared, they were very useful when I looked at them in detail.
6 + h Disgusting though / as it looked, it was actually quite tasty.
7 + f Confident though / as she felt, she knew the examination would not be easy.
8 + d Successful though / as their new products have proved, the company is still in financial difficulties.

82.2

2 In spite of being much younger than the others, he was the most outstanding rider in the team.
3 In spite of eating a big lunch, he had a three-course meal in the evening.
4 In spite of his fear, he allowed the huge spider to be placed in his hands.
5 In spite of her obvious intelligence, she finds it difficult to express her ideas in writing.
6 In spite of her illness, she went on a walking holiday in Nepal.

2 Despite the fact that he was much younger than the others, he was the most outstanding rider in the team.
3 Despite the fact that he ate / had eaten a big lunch, he had a three-course meal in the evening.
4 Despite the fact that he was frightened, he allowed the huge spider to be placed in his hands.
5 Despite the fact that she is obviously intelligent, she finds it difficult to express her ideas in writing.
6 Despite the fact that she was ill, she went on a walking holiday in Nepal.

82.3

1 even though
2 even if
3 Even if
4 Even though
5 even though
6 even if
7 Even though
8 even if

82.4

2 Whereas a decade ago only 5% of students dropped out of college, the figure today is 25%.
3 While the temperature is below freezing, it actually feels quite warm when the sun is out.
4 While the cost of rail travel has increased, the number of train passengers has grown.
5 Whereas I've always wanted to visit Australia, I've never had any wish to go to Canada.

UNIT 83

83.1

Suggested answers are given

2 … give me a call. / … take it back to the shop.
3 … tell him I want to see him. / … ask him to come and see me.
4 If you see any large, hairy spiders in the grass … / If you come across any snakes on your walk …
5 If you're ever in Birmingham … / If you ever need any more advice …
6 If you're coming by bus … / If you don't want to walk far to the shops …

83.2

1 The present perfect suggests 'if you previously studied *Macbeth* …'; the present simple suggests 'if you study *Macbeth* in the future, then you will (get to) know …'.
2 leave / have left; meet. The present perfect and the present simple have a similar meaning.
3 break / have broken; have to. The present perfect suggests that you may have broken it (perhaps I think you have); the present simple may be a warning or threat about a possible future event.
4 doesn't arrive / hasn't arrived; give. The present perfect and the present simple have a similar meaning.
5 haven't filled in / don't fill in; need. The present perfect suggests 'if you previously filled in an application form'; the present simple may imply 'If you don't fill in an application form now, you will need to do so …'.
6 don't help / haven't helped; go. The present perfect and the present simple have a similar meaning.

83.3

1 belonged
2 ✓
3 liked
4 doubted
5 ✓
6 understood

83.4

2 If it were not for his anxiety over Carla, his happiness would have been complete.
3 Were it not for the intervention of the government (*or* … for (the) government intervention / intervening …), the strike would probably still be going on.
4 Had it not been for the arrival of the police (*or* … for the police arriving …), the fight could have got out of hand.
5 But for the sound of birds singing, everything was quiet.
6 If it was not / were not for the United Nations, there would have been far more wars in the last 50 years.
7 If it had not been for the roadworks we would have been here two hours ago.

UNIT 84

84.1

2 Had you not been absent from school on Friday, you would know what you have to do for homework.
3 Were Clare's friends still living in Brussels, she would have been able to stay with them. (*or* Were her friends still living in Brussels, Clare would …)
4 Were the workers prepared to accept a wage cut, the factory would not have had to shut down.
5 Should the financial performance of the company not improve in the near future, we shall have to reduce the number of employees.
6 Had the salary been higher, I might have considered taking the job.

84.2

1 ✗ If I press this button …
2 ✓
3 ✓
4 ✗ If the disease is untreated … (*or* … goes untreated …)

5 ✓
6 ✗ If you complain about me …
7 ✓

84.3
1 If I happen to see Georgia when I'm in Rome …
2 ✗
3 … if you happen to live nearby.
4 ✗
5 If you happen to be in the south of Spain next week, …

84.4
Possible answers are given using the notes
2 … overcome with a great weariness.
3 … trying to imagine what it contained.
4 … to agree with everything Julia said. (*or* … agreeing with …)
5 … it had been reversed into a wall.

UNIT 85

85.1
2 + d Were the government to increase university fees, there would be an outcry from students.
3 + a Were anyone to lean against the window, the glass would certainly break.
4 + c Were I not already busy in August, I would gladly accept your invitation.
5 + b Were you to see the conditions in which the refugees are living, you would be horrified.

85.2
Possible sentences are given
2 Imagine you were to inherit a million dollars.
3 Suppose your parents were to tell you they were emigrating to Canada.
4 Supposing Spain were to win the World Cup.
5 Imagine the population of Britain were all Buddhist.

85.3
2 even if it were
3 even if she were
4 as if I were
5 as if she were
6 even if I were
7 as if it were
8 even if they were

85.4
Possible answers
2 I'd sooner she were going with friends.
3 B: Well, if only it were as easy as that.
4 I know you haven't got much time, but if I were you I'd have breakfast before you leave.
5 Wearing odd shoes to school was embarrassing and I'd rather it were forgotten by my classmates.
6 I'm very fond of Paul, but I wish he were not so critical of his employees.

UNIT 86

86.1
2 + d Unless alternative sources of funding are found, the research will not be able to continue.
3 + c Unless the roads have changed in that part of town, I'm sure I'll be able to find my way there.
4 + a Unless the weather starts improving soon, the farmers will lose their crops.
5 + e Unless it's ridiculously expensive, I think I'll buy that painting.
6 + f Unless you have been unemployed for six months, you are not entitled to state benefit.

86.2
2 ✓ 'If the infection isn't treated' is also possible.
3 If he wasn't
4 ✓ 'if you don't have' is also possible.
5 if Anya doesn't pass
6 If you don't get
7 ✓ 'if they don't get' is also possible.
8 if Louise isn't at home
9 ✓ 'if they can't prove' is also possible.
10 if she wasn't

86.3
1 if / whether
2 whether
3 whether
4 if / whether
5 whether (*or informally* 'if')
6 whether
7 if / whether
8 if / whether
9 whether
10 if / whether
11 whether
12 if / whether

UNIT 87

87.1
2 A small boy was kicking a ball against a wall; otherwise, the street was deserted.
3 I couldn't remember meeting him before, yet his face seemed familiar.
4 A mass evacuation of islanders is taking place. Meanwhile, the volcano continues to erupt.
5 A: Why don't you like that new French restaurant? B: For one thing, it's too expensive.
6 Ingrid came down with flu while we were on holiday.
7 My landlady didn't mind me having parties in my room as long as the rent was paid on time.
8 One way of getting rid of weeds is to dig them out. Alternatively, you could poison them.

87.2
1 Nevertheless
2 while
3 even though
4 Even so
5 Instead
6 whereas
7 so
8 Meanwhile
9 while
10 Before
11 unless
12 At that time

87.3
Example answers are given
2 However hard you might exercise, it is difficult to lose weight without cutting down on the amount you eat.
3 However much we enjoy being together, it is important to spend some time apart.
4 Professor Malcolm is always happy to spend time with his students, however busy he might be.
5 However many times I see the Eiffel Tower, it never fails to impress me.
6 Some people never seem content, however much money they have / however rich they are.

UNIT 88

88.1
1 across
2 across / over
3 over
4 across / over
5 across
6 across
7 across
8 over

88.2
1 along / through
2 Across
3 through
4 across / over
5 over ('all over' is more likely than 'all across' or 'all through')
6 along

88.3
1 under
2 ✓ ('under' is also possible)
3 below
4 over
5 ✓ ('over' is also possible)
6 over
7 under
8 ✓ ('above' is also possible)

88.4
1 c under the weather = ill
2 d below the belt = cruel or unfair
3 b under her belt = successfully completed

4 e under a cloud = with some people's disapproval
5 f over the top = extreme behaviour; indicating disapproval
6 a over and above = in addition to

UNIT 89

89.1

1 between
2 among
3 between
4 between
5 among
6 between
7 among
8 among
9 between

89.2

2 between / among the pupils
3 between amateur
4 among teenagers
5 between / among his remaining relatives
6 among its clients
7 between intake of refined sugar
8 between cooking
9 among my closest friends
10 between the striking dockers

89.3

1 among
2 among
3 between
4 among
5 between
6 between
7 among
8 between
9 among
10 between

UNIT 90

90.1

1 ✓
2 ✗
3 ✗
4 ✓
5 ✗
6 ✗
7 ✓
8 ✓
9 ✗
10 ✓
11 ✗
12 ✓

90.2

1 a by
b until ('until' would also be possible in (a). It would mean, however, that up to the time dinner was served I was hungry, and then when it was served (but before I ate it) I was not. Perhaps the food was so unappetising that I couldn't face eating it; 'by' in (a) simply means that I was hungry when dinner was served)
2 a until
b by
3 a by
b until
4 a Until
b By ('By' would also be possible in [a])
5 a by
b until
6 a by
b until

90.3

1 Over / During
2 So far
3 Until now
4 so far
5 until now
6 during
7 until
8 by

UNIT 91

91.1

1 except
2 except / except for
3 except
4 except for (in informal contexts); more formally, 'but for' is possible
5 except
6 except / except for (in informal contexts)
7 except / except for
8 except / except for (in informal contexts)
9 except for (in informal contexts); more formally, 'but for' is also possible
10 except / except for
11 except
12 except

91.2

1 ~~besides~~ except for
2 Besides ✓
3 ~~except for~~ besides
4 ~~Except for~~ Besides
5 ~~besides~~ except (for)
6 except for ✓

91.3

2 + a But for the interruptions caused by the bad weather, the building would have been completed by now.
3 + c But for the supply of food and medicines by the charity (*or* But for the food and medicines supplied by the charity ...), many more people would have died in the famine.
4 + f But for the shelter provided by the trees, the wind would have caused even more damage to the house.
5 + b But for the threat of sanctions by the EU (*or* But for the sanctions threatened by the EU ...), human rights would not have improved in the country.
6 + d But for the loan from the bank (*or* But for the loan the bank gave me ... / ... given to me by the bank ...), I would not have been able to set up my business.

UNIT 92

92.1

1 ~~of~~ / ~~for~~ / about
2 ~~after~~ / about / ~~for~~
3 ~~about~~ / ~~for~~ / with
4 ~~of~~ / ~~with~~ / on
5 for / ~~after~~ / ~~about~~
6 for / ~~on~~ / ~~with~~
7 of / about / ~~on~~

92.2

1 for
2 of / about
3 with (note that 'to' would also be possible)
4 for
5 about
6 on / about
7 of ('about' is unlikely in this formal context)
8 about
9 with
10 of
11 about
12 about
13 about
14 on ('about' is also possible but less natural here)

92.3

1 acted on = did what someone else advised or suggested; acted for = represented (usually a professional person such as a lawyer or accountant)
2 thinking ... about = concentrating on; think of = asking about an opinion
3 have called on = have formally asked him to do it; called for = demanded
4 worked for = was employed by; works with computers = uses computers a lot in her work
5 counting on = depending on; counts for little = is of little value

UNIT 93

93.1

2 there has been an improvement in her condition
3 takes (great / a lot of) pride in
4 give / offers / provides advice on
5 cruelty to
6 had a long / lengthy discussion about / on
7 have a vaccination against typhoid / have a typhoid vaccination
8 had a significant influence on
9 There is a lack of affordable housing in the city. / The city has a lack of affordable housing.
10 a ban on fireworks

93.2

2 sign of stopping
3 decision to allow
4 reason to worry
5 risk of transmitting
6 ability to remember
7 failure to protect
8 cost of buying

9 possibility of getting
10 unwillingness to acknowledge

93.3

Likely verbs are given

2 of seeing
3 to take
4 to retire / of retiring
5 of taking / to take
6 of dancing

UNIT 94

94.1

1 intransitive; no noun / pronoun needed
2 … look it up … (a noun or pronoun is necessary)
3 … help (you) out … (a noun or pronoun is possible)
4 … tidy (things) up … (a noun or pronoun is possible)
5 intransitive; no noun / pronoun needed

94.2

1 ⋏ out
2 ⋏ about ⋏
3 up ⋏
4 ⋏ out ⋏
5 ⋏ up ⋏
6 ⋏ away

94.3

2 left her name out / left out her name
3 shut the thing up
4 make my mind up / make up my mind
5 got down the general ideas / got the general ideas down
6 hear me out

94.4

1 ~~ordering about everyone~~ ordering everyone about
2 ~~provide their children for~~ provide for their children
3 ~~let in me on the secret~~ let me in on the secret
4 ~~called motorists on~~ called on motorists
5 ✓
6 ~~took up Emre on~~ took Emre up on
7 ✓
8 ✓
9 ~~looked Mr Gao up to~~ looked up to Mr Gao

UNIT 95

95.1

3 Is there something bothering you?
4 There was a barrier across the road.
6 There remains the problem of what to do with nuclear waste.
8 There is supposed to be a video on the website, but it doesn't work.
9 There was no petrol available anywhere in the city.
10 Is there anyone who / that can help me?
11 There are some general rules (which / that) you can follow.
12 There used to be an art gallery around here.

(Sentences with 'There …' are unlikely in 2, 5, and 7 because the subjects have a definite or specific meaning, indicated by 'Your', 'The', and 'My'.)

95.2

1 are
2 are
3 is
4 is
5 are
6 is
7 are
8 is

95.3

The most likely sentences are given.

2 + c There's a cake in the kitchen (that / which) I've made especially for your birthday.
3 + h There was never any doubt (that) Bruno would get the job.
4 + a There have been suggestions (that) an election will be held next month.
5 + f There aren't many people alive today who / that haven't watched TV.
6 + g There are still some old houses in the village that / which don't have electricity.
7 + d There was absolutely nothing (that) I could do to prevent him falling.
8 + b There are few people in the company who / that are harder-working than Kristin.

95.4

2 There being no further business, the meeting closed at 12:30.
3 There being no doctor available, the patients were sent home.
4 There being inadequate facilities at the hotel, the conference was relocated to a nearby university.

UNIT 96

96.1

2 It was unsettling how he stared straight at me.
3 ✗ (However, in spoken English we might say 'It was surprising, Francesco's excellent exam result'.)
4 It is an advantage in the job to be a qualified driver.
5 ✗ (However, in spoken English we might say 'It's quite radical, her proposal'.)
6 It is highly unusual to put carpet on walls.
7 ✗ (However, in spoken English we might say 'It's a Ferrari, Robin's new car'.)
8 It is hard finding a good plumber these days. (*or* It is hard to find …)

96.2

The most likely answers are given

2 … it astonished me to discover (that) she was also a successful novelist.
3 … it hurts (me) to pedal my bicycle. / … it has hurt (me) to pedal my bicycle.
4 … it struck me (that) he was jealous.
5 … it concerned me to hear (that) he was offended. (*or* … it upset me …)
6 … it didn't bother him (that) everyone could see in.
7 … it upset me (that) she hadn't even told me when she was going away. (*or* … it concerned me …)
8 … it doesn't do to criticise them too much.
9 … it scared me to see (that) they were carrying knives.
10 … it pays to plan your journey ahead.

96.3

Example answers are given

2 It takes a lot of hard work to build your own house.
3 It takes a considerable amount of courage to make a speech in front of a group of strangers.
4 It takes patience and a lot of time to explain the rules of cricket to someone who doesn't know the game.
5 It takes bravery to stand up to a bully.
6 It takes a lot of organisation to be a good administrator.
7 It takes a great deal of time to learn to speak a foreign language well.

UNIT 97

97.1

2 find it
3 discover ('find' would also be possible)
4 owe it
5 remember
6 enjoy it
7 prefer it
8 leave it
9 predict
10 consider it

97.2

2 I see it as part of my role to significantly reduce Rexco's carbon footprint in / over the next five years.
3 I accept it as a necessary evil that some people may be made redundant in the next year.
4 I view it as important for relations with the workforce to make available information about / on managers' salaries.
5 I regard it as unacceptable for a modern company to exclude the workforce from major decision making.

6 I take it as a fundamental principle of the company that suppliers of raw materials should be given a fair price for their products.

97.3

2 there's no hope / chance
3 It's no secret
4 It's no good / use *or* There's no point
5 there's no reason
6 there's no alternative / choice
7 It's no longer
8 there's no denying / question

UNIT 98

98.1

2 … it was to cheer her up that I booked a holiday in Amsterdam.
3 … it's because I've got so much work to do that I can't come.
4 … it was somewhere in there that / where I lost it.
5 … it was only by studying very hard that she improved her Spanish.
6 … it is to my family that I dedicate this thesis.

98.2

2 No, what I hope is that they will be put into a public art gallery.
3 No, what annoyed me was that she didn't apologise.
4 No, what I meant was that she could borrow it until I needed it again.
6 No, what I did was (to) put some oil and soy sauce on it and grill it.
7 No, what I did was (to) give her some money towards it.
8 No, what I did was (to) hire a car and drive all the way.

98.3

Suggested answers

2 I don't know if she's free, but somebody who / that might be able to help is Petra. (*or* … but Petra is somebody who / that might be able to help.)
3 In fact the place where / that I grew up is between this village and the next. (*or* … the place that I grew up in …)
4 I suppose the time when I lived in Australia was when I was happiest.

UNIT 99

99.1

1 (in a narrative 'down comes' is also possible; see Unit 2)
2 along comes
3 up go
4 back / away / off he went
5 out / in came (*or* comes)
6 along / up came (*or* comes)
7 off / away she went (*or* goes)

99.2

2 + h Should you not wish to receive further information about our products, click on the box below.
3 + a Were the plane ever (to be) built, it would cut the journey time from New York to Tokyo by four hours.
4 + g Should the ice hockey team win again today, it will be their tenth consecutive victory.
5 + d Were I (to be) offered the job, I would have no hesitation in accepting.
6 + i Had a car been coming the other way, I might have been seriously injured.
7 + f Had there been a referendum on the issue, it is unlikely that the electorate would have supported the government.
8 + b Should you not be able to afford the SXL3, there are less expensive models in the range.
9 + e Were Charles Dickens (to be) alive today, he would be writing novels about the homeless in London.

99.3

Example sentences

(i)

Europeans spend less of their income on recreation today than do Americans.

Americans spent less of their income on housing in 1970 than did Europeans.

(ii)

Europeans spent less of their income on recreation than on housing in 1970, as is the case today.

Americans spend more of their income on food and drink than on recreation today, as was the case in 1970.

99.4

2 Kamal went to Oxford University, as did his sister.
3 People in poorer countries consume a far smaller proportion of the earth's resources than do those in developed nations.
4 He is a much better teacher now than he was five years ago. (no inversion with a pronoun as subject)
5 Dan is a keen golfer, as is his wife.

UNIT 100

100.1

2 At no time was the public (ever) in any danger.
3 Only with close friends and family did he feel entirely relaxed.
4 Only if the pitch is frozen will the match be cancelled.
5 Little did I know then that Carmen and I would be married one day.
6 Barely had he entered the water when it became clear he couldn't swim.
7 On no account are you to light the fire if you are alone in the house. / On no account should / must you …
8 Not for one moment was there any rivalry between the three brothers.
9 Not only was I wet through, I was freezing cold.
10 Only once had I ever climbed this high before. / Only once before had I ever climbed this high.
11 Hardly had the audience taken their seats when the conductor stepped onto the stage.
12 Only in the last few years has he been acknowledged to be a great author.

100.2

Possible answers

2 … was the strength of the earthquake …
3 … is her dominance in the sport …
4 … alike were the twins …
5 … complicated was the equation …
6 … boring was the lesson …

100.3

Corrections are given in the underlined sections

The people of Sawston were evacuated yesterday as forest fires headed towards the town. Such was the heat of the oncoming inferno that trees more than 100 metres ahead began to smoulder. Only once in recent years, during 2004, has a town of this size (*inversion is likely in this written context*) had to be evacuated because of forest fires. A fleet of coaches and lorries arrived in the town in the early morning. Into these vehicles climbed the sick and elderly (*inversion is likely in this written context*), before they headed off to safety across the river. Residents with cars left by mid morning, as did all non-essential police officers.

Hardly had the evacuation been completed when the wind changed direction and it became clear that the fire would leave Sawston untouched. Soon after that complaints were heard from some residents. 'At no time did the fires pose a real threat,' said one local man. 'I didn't want to leave my home, and nor did most of my neighbours.' So upset are some elderly residents that they are threatening to complain to their MP. But Chief Fire Officer Jones replied, 'Had we not taken this action, lives would have been put at risk. Only when the fires have moved well away from the town will residents be allowed to return to their homes.'

Key to Study planner

Tenses

1.1	B
1.2	D
1.3	C
1.4	A, B
1.5	C
1.6	A
1.7	D
1.8	B
1.9	A, C
1.10	C
1.11	A
1.12	B
1.13	B, D
1.14	C
1.15	B, C

The future

2.1	C
2.2	D
2.3	B, D
2.4	A, D
2.5	C
2.6	B
2.7	A
2.8	D
2.9	B, C
2.10	C, D
2.11	C

Modals and semi-modals

3.1	C
3.2	B
3.3	A
3.4	D
3.5	C, D
3.6	B, D
3.7	B
3.8	C
3.9	A, C
3.10	B, C
3.11	D
3.12	A

Linking verbs, passives, questions

4.1	C, D
4.2	B
4.3	A, C
4.4	B, C
4.5	B
4.6	C
4.7	A, D
4.8	D
4.9	B
4.10	C

Verb complementation: what follows verbs

5.1	D
5.2	A, B
5.3	C
5.4	B
5.5	C, D
5.6	A
5.7	A

Reporting

6.1	C
6.2	A
6.3	D
6.4	B
6.5	B, D
6.6	A
6.7	C
6.8	B, D
6.9	B, C
6.10	A, C

Nouns

7.1	B
7.2	B, D
7.3	C
7.4	A, D
7.5	A, C
7.6	B, D
7.7	A, D
7.8	D
7.9	A

Articles, determiners and quantifiers

8.1	B
8.2	C
8.3	A
8.4	B
8.5	A, D
8.6	C
8.7	D
8.8	A, C
8.9	B
8.10	B, D
8.11	A
8.12	C
8.13	D
8.14	B
8.15	A, C
8.16	A
8.17	B
8.18	B
8.19	D
8.20	B

Relative clauses and other types of clause

9.1	D
9.2	A, B
9.3	B, C, D
9.4	B
9.5	C, D
9.6	A, C
9.7	A
9.8	B
9.9	C
9.10	B

Pronouns, substitution and leaving out words

10.1	D
10.2	B, D
10.3	C, D
10.4	A, B
10.5	C, D
10.6	B
10.7	C, D
10.8	D
10.9	A, B, D
10.10	A

Adjectives and adverbs

11.1	B
11.2	B, C
11.3	A, C
11.4	D
11.5	C
11.6	A
11.7	A, C, D
11.8	B
11.9	C
11.10	B (in informal speech only), C, D
11.11	A
11.12	A (in informal speech only), B, C
11.13	D
11.14	A, B
11.15	C
11.16	A, C
11.17	A, D
11.18	B, C

Adverbial clauses and conjunctions

12.1	B
12.2	A
12.3	A
12.4	C, D
12.5	A, D
12.6	B, C
12.7	A, D
12.8	B, D
12.9	C
12.10	C, D
12.11	B
12.12	A, D
12.13	A, B, C
12.14	A

Prepositions

13.1	A
13.2	D
13.3	A, B
13.4	A, D
13.5	B, C
13.6	A
13.7	C

Organising information

14.1	B
14.2	C
14.3	B
14.4	B, D
14.5	A
14.6	B, C

Key to Additional exercises

1

1 b 'm not promising / don't promise / didn't promise
2 a was reading / read
  b read
3 a were expecting / expected
  b are expecting / expect
4 a owns (or 'own')
  b owned / owns
5 a 'm considering / was considering / considered
  b consider
6 a tells / told
  b tell / told
7 a phoned
  b was phoning / phoned
8 a 's always putting / puts
  b 's constantly putting / puts
9 a prefer
  b preferred
10 a weighs
  b was weighing

2

1 a + (i) *or* (ii) b + (ii)
2 a + (ii) b + (i)
3 a + (i) *or* (ii) b + (i)
4 a + (ii) b + (i)
5 a + (i) *or* (ii) b + (ii)
6 a + (i) b + (ii)
7 a + (i) b + (ii)
8 a + (ii)
  b + (i) (b + (ii) is also correct grammatically, but it is unlikely to be used; it suggests that it is difficult to get good pasta in Italy, which is, of course, not the case!)

3

1 'had discussed' is also possible, but less likely as the duration of the discussions is emphasised
2 His condition **had improved** considerably when I saw him in hospital last night. ('improved' would be unlikely as it would suggest that his condition improved *because* I saw him last night)
3 It was announced that the Toulouse train **had been delayed** by ten minutes. ('was delayed' is also possible with a similar meaning)
4 Thomas **had been dieting** for a month when he came to stay with us, and we noticed immediately that he had already lost a lot of weight.
5 Victoria **had been expected to win** comfortably, but she finished third. ('was expected' is also possible with a similar meaning)
6 When I reversed the car out of the garage, I **damaged** the rear number plate.
7 Andrei **was promoted** last week.
8 The tax authorities **had been investigating** Rentpool for a number of months when they arrested the chairman. ('had investigated' is also possible, but less likely as the duration of the investigation is emphasised)
9 The Minister **angered** her colleagues when she criticised them during her speech yesterday.
10 Emilia **had already suggested** that the money should be spent on new tablet computers for the school.

4

A
1 ✓ ('you'll' is also possible)
2 I'll (= 'I will' or 'I shall')
B
1 I'm going to build / I'm building
2 I'll give
C
1 Will / Are you going to be able to /Are you able to
2 we're going to have / we're having
3 I'll
4 ✓
D
1 is going (more likely than 'is going to go')
2 isn't (is not) coming / isn't (is not) going to come / won't come
3 we'll see / we're going to see
4 ✓
E
1 I'm taking / I'm going to take / I'll take
2 ✓
3 more likely is 'It's at 4:15' as this is part of a timetable
4 It'll take
5 'we're going to have' is more likely
6 'I'll stay' is more likely if the decision is made at the moment of speaking

5

1 ought to have asked; would have been
2 should; 'd better
3 won't; can't; used to
4 can't; must have
5 mustn't; can
6 wouldn't; needn't have worried
7 should; would
8 should; may
9 must; could
10 will be able to; might
11 couldn't; didn't have to
12 don't need to; can

6

The agent (after 'by …') is given only where it is likely to be included. Where it might either be included or left out, it is written in brackets.

A **The Prime Minister is being encouraged** to sack the Environment Minister, Maria Long, after **it was reveale**d that she had received payments from a major oil company. However, in a statement today, the Prime Minister said: '**I am told** (by my advisors) / **I am advised** that Mrs Long **was paid** the money (by the company) [*Note the word order*: not '… *by the company the money …*'] before she joined the government. I have no intention of dismissing her.'

B A tropical storm has caused severe flooding in the city of Chittagong in southern Bangladesh. Although **there are understood to be** (*or* **it is understood that there are / have been**) no casualties, **many thousands of people have been made homeless** (by the floods), and **the damage to property is estimated** as running into millions of dollars.

C Protesters have continued to block the construction of the new ring road by tying themselves to trees along the proposed route. (Police say that) **The protesters have been given** two days to leave the area or **they will be arrested** (by the police).

D Conservation groups have demanded that the nuclear power station should **be closed down** (by the government) after a report which said that unacceptable levels of radiation **have been found** (by investigators) in the local area.

E The Commissioner of the Dublin police force has revealed that a death threat **has been received** (by the police) against the life of President Nabon, who is visiting the capital this weekend. He says that **the threat is being taken** very seriously. **It is expected** that security levels will be increased during the President's visit.

F A man **was found** injured on a Scottish hillside this morning. **It is thought** that he fell while coming down a hillside in bad weather. **He is being treated** in hospital for leg and head injuries. [*We can assume that medical staff would treat him in hospital, so there is no need to mention the agent here.*] **He was reported** missing last night when he failed to return home after a day's walking.

G And now football. **There are expected to be** (*or* **It is expected that there will be**) a record crowd at tonight's match between Barcelona and Real Madrid. **It is reported** that **the Barcelona players will be given** a huge financial bonus (by the club) if they win and **it has even been suggested** that **they might be paid** as much as €50,000 each (by the club).

7

1 on paying
2 by asking
3 his saying / him saying
4 appointed
5 count
6 at me to tidy
7 to visit
8 wearing children's clothes / children's clothes
9 their cat
10 forcing
11 her wearing / wearing
12 to appear
13 let
14 to hearing
15 entitle her to
16 waited for
17 noticed a man take
18 invited
19 tell / telling
20 looking
21 talked
22 to living
23 me from using

8

2 We were disappointed with Karen's decision not to go to university next year. / … Karen's decision that she wouldn't go / wasn't going / isn't going to university next year.
3 Considerable media attention has been focused on Professor Adams's prediction that the Earth will / would pass through the tail of a comet within the next five years.
4 The company has carried out its threat to dismiss the strikers / … that it would dismiss the strikers (if they didn't return to work).
5 Nicky decided to follow her boss's advice that she should delegate more of her work to her secretary. / … her boss's advice to delegate more of her work to her secretary.
6 Jason didn't turn up until eleven, despite his promise to pick me up at ten. / … his promise that he would pick me up at ten.
7 I wasn't surprised by Rob's conclusion that Professor Jones doesn't know what he is talking about. / … Rob's conclusion that Professor Jones didn't know what he was talking about.
8 We decided to ignore Dan's complaint that his dinner was cold.
9 I was astonished by their refusal to negotiate over the ownership of the land.
10 The Health Minister has issued a warning to keep small children indoors until pollution levels have decreased. / … a warning that small children should be kept indoors until pollution levels have decreased.
11 I was surprised by her confession that she has / had never used a computer before.
12 When I asked Zeb where Bethany was, his reply was that he didn't know.

9

1 wants
2 are
3 live
4 points
5 prefer / prefers
6 love / loves (although a plural verb is more grammatical)
7 claim
8 go
9 comes
10 is / are
11 is / are
12 shuts
13 suspect
14 are
15 appears
16 are
17 is / are (although a plural is preferred in formal contexts)
18 plan / plans
19 is
20 provides (more likely than 'provide' in this formal context)
21 get / gets
22 is
23 speak / speaks
24 has / have
25 are
26 have
27 has
28 isn't
29 are
30 is

10

1 a a /one (informally, we could also say '… for the week');
  b a / one;
  c one ('one' can complete all three sentences)
2 a A / The; b a; c an (a / an)
3 a the / –; b the; c The (the)
4 a the / –; b some / –; c – (–)
5 a the / –; b some / –;
  c some / – (–)
6 a – / Some; b –; c – (–)
7 a The / An; b the; c the (the)
8 a The / A;
  b a / one (informally, we could also say '… for the night …');
  c a (a)
9 a the / –; b –; c – (–)
10 a a / –; b a; c a (a)

11

2 Carla's restaurant, which serves a range of Mediterranean dishes, is very good value. (some people would use 'that' as an alternative to 'which')
3 The New Zealand rugby team, all of whose members weigh over 100 kilos, are clear favourites to win the match.
4 Chloe brought home a kitten (which / that) she'd found in the park.
5 The story is about a teenage boy whose ambition is to become an astronaut.
6 Paul has got a job with Empirico, whose main product is electric light bulbs.
7 Politicians should give more consideration to the working people (who / that / whom) they represent.
8 Among the group of people was Professor Fischer, who / whom I had last seen in Munich 20 years earlier.
9 I live on a small road which / that leads down to the river.
10 Monet's earlier paintings, many of which have never been seen in the USA before, are in a new exhibition in New York.
11 Ian McIver, whose first job was selling vegetables in a market, has become managing director of Europe's largest food retailer.
12 Kaspar has a new girlfriend who / that works in the library.
13 My Volkswagen Golf, which I bought in 2006, is a very reliable car. (some people would use 'that' as an alternative to 'which')
14 Bronwen Brookes, after whom the Brookes art gallery is named, will be present at its official opening. / Bronwen Brookes, who(m) the Brookes gallery is named after, will …

12

1 did
2 doing so / so doing
3 promised he would
4 appears so
5 do

6 have / have done
7 didn't want to
8 do ('do so' is unlikely in this informal context)
9 doubt that he will
10 don't suppose so / suppose not
11 want to / want
12 has
13 such a dilemma
14 do
15 afford to
16 expect so
17 suspect not
18 hope not
19 might have / might
20 told me so
21 determined to / determined
22 to be
23 guess not
24 might do / might be

13

Suggested improvements are given

a *Every so often* I leave work *early* (✓) (or I leave work *early every so often*) and go to a performance in the local concert hall. It's very close to my office in the building *opposite*. *Usually* (✓) they are *rather* good, but yesterday's, given by a singer and pianist, was a *total* (✓) disaster. The singer began to sing *with wonderful control*. But when the pianist started to play, it sounded awful. At first I thought he was playing *badly*, but then it became obvious that the piano was *completely* out of tune. They stopped and discussed the problem *briefly* (*or* … and *briefly* discussed the problem). *Clearly*, they couldn't continue (*or* They *clearly* couldn't continue), and they left the stage *unhappily* (✓). *Naturally* (✓), all the people *present* felt sorry for them. I'm sure the person *responsible* for tuning the piano will be severely reprimanded.

b I was *just* going out to work this morning when the postman pushed a letter *through my letterbox*. It was from Mara, who writes *from time to time* (✓). The letter said that she has to come to Bristol to visit her uncle, *who is unwell*. She is one of his few *remaining* (✓) relatives. She wants us to meet and asked if I could suggest a *possible* time. Well, I haven't seen her *for a couple of years*, so I was really pleased. We *first* (✓) met at university. We have *similar* interests (*or Our* interests *are alike*), so we *always* find a lot to talk about. The photos *included* in the letter showed that she hadn't changed since I *last* (✓) saw her. I spent so long reading the letter that I was *nearly* late for work.

14

3 + b Johan must weigh over 120 kilos, whereas his wife is really small. / Whereas Johan must weigh over 120 kilos, his wife is really small. / His wife is really small, whereas Johan must weigh over 120 kilos. / Whereas his wife is really small, Johan must weigh over 120 kilos.

4 + j There had been a lot of publicity about the meeting. Even so, only about 100 people attended.

5 + e I can't afford a coat like that. Besides, I don't like the style.

6 + h I'm determined to finish the report tonight, even if I have to stay at work until midnight. / Even if I have to stay at work until midnight I'm determined to finish the report.

7 + g Make sure you catch the last bus at 11:00. Otherwise, you'll have to walk all the way from the station.

8 + a Although I found the film boring, I stayed until the end. / I found the film boring, although I stayed until the end.

9 + i She hid the letter between the pages of a book so that her husband would never find it. / So that her husband would never find it, she hid the letter between the pages of a book.

10 + c In order to prepare for the marathon, I've been running about 200 kilometres a week. / I've been running about 200 kilometres a week in order to prepare for the marathon.

15

1 … although I know that you *approve* **of** it.

2 There seems to be little *likelihood* **of** Williamson winning Wimbledon because of her *inability* **to** play well on grass tennis courts.

3 Our plan is to *split* the organisation **up** into a number of small units. (*or* '*split* **up** the organisation into'. Note that 'split the organisation into' [without 'up'] is also possible.) This will improve our *prospects* **of** competing with more specialised companies.

4 I *ran* **into / across** Danny in town the other day. He *asked* **for** your email address, so he'll probably by in touch with you.

5 Jack takes great *pride* **in** never *throwing* anything **away** ('throwing away anything' is also possible, but less likely).

6 Although Professor Martinez *knows* a great deal **about** meteorology, even he can't *account* **for** the unusual weather we have been having over the last few weeks.

7 There has been a great *improvement* **in** the behaviour of children in the school. This has *resulted* **from** the headteacher's *idea* **of** involving them in decision-making.

8 Even though Charlotte didn't *act* **on** my advice and follow a career in medicine, I'm full of *admiration* **for** her *determination* **to** train to be a vet.

16

2 Only if an official complaint is made will the police investigate the matter further.

3 So complicated were the instructions, …

4 Had we known how ill Rob was, …

5 Such was the strength of the wind that … (*or* So strong was the wind that …)

6 Seldom did she regret her lack of formal education, …

7 Only in an emergency should you phone for an ambulance. (*or* Only if there is an emergency should you phone for an ambulance.)

8 Not for one moment was there any / a disagreement between us.

9 Were it not for financial assistance from the government, …

10 Hardly had they finished eating before a waiter started to clear away the plates.

11 Under no circumstances should children be allowed into the room without adult supervision.

12 Should the bridge ever be built, …

Index of grammatical items

A
a / an, **the**, and **zero article**
  generalisations about classes of things 90
  geographical areas 90
  holidays, seasons, days of the week, and festivals 94
  jobs / job titles 92
  means of transport and communication 94
  names of people 92
  nouns both countable and uncountable 90
  specific *versus* general 94
  with superlative adjectives 92
  with **there + be** 190
  things that are unique 90
  this, in stories and jokes 92
  times of day and night 94
a / an and **one**
    abbreviations 88
  in number / quantity expressions 88
  one ...other / another pattern 88
  particular, but unspecified person / thing / event 88
  with possessives 88
  before singular countable nouns 88
  before vowels / consonants 88
abbreviations 88
ability
  be able to 30
  can / could 30, 34, 224, 225
academic writing
  few and **little** 104
  may 34
  much (of), **many (of)** 100
  prepositional phrases 114
  such that, to introduce a result 162
  active (*versus* passive) forms 44, 46, 48, 204, 205
adding information conjunctions 174
  noun phrases 112, 114
  prepositional phrases 114
  sentence connectors 174
adjectives
  and adverbs, use of 142, 237
  definition of 205
  easily confused 237
  gradable and non-gradable 134
  both senses 136
  classifying adjectives 136
  different senses 136
  good and / lovely and / nice and ... + gradable adjective 136
  grammar review 237
  more and more + adjective 136
  qualitative adjectives 136
  patterns after linking verbs
  adjective + -ing / that-clause / to-infinitive / wh-clause 140
  it + linking verb + adjective (+ to-infinitive) 140
  it + make + adjective (+ to-infinitive / -ing / that-clause) 140
  position of
    additional exercise 248
    before / after noun 132
    classifying adjectives 132
    emphasising adjectives 132
    grammar review 237
    with linking verbs 132
    qualitative adjectives 132
    reduced relative clauses 132
    study planner 218–19
    types of 205
  see also comparative forms; compound adjectives; participle adjectives; superlative forms
adverbial clauses
  additional exercise 249
  contrasts 164
  definition of 205
  study planner 219–220
  tenses in 238
  of time 158
adverbial phrases, as complement 206
adverbials
  adverb as 205
  adverbial clause as 205
  definition of 205
  inversion after negative 200
  noun phrase as 205
  participle clauses 116, 118
  prepositional phrase as 205
adverbs
  and adjectives, use of 237
  definition of 205
  formation of 142
  participle adjectives in **-ed**, adverbial form of 142
  particles 207
  phrasal verbs 207
  position of
    additional exercise 248
    after object 148
    comment adverbs 150, 156
    connecting adverbs 150
    degree adverbs 150, 154
    focus adverbs 154
    frequency adverbs 148, 150, 152
    long adverbials 148, 150
    and meaning 148
    more than one adverbial 148
    order of events 150
    place and direction adverbs 150, 152
    time adverbs 150, 152
    viewpoint adverbs 150, 156
  prepositional phrases, adverbial use of 142
  study planner 218–19
  types of 205
  with and without **-ly** 142
  see also comparative forms; superlative forms
advice 40, 78
affirmative sentences 205, 207
agent 205
  see also passive forms
agreement, subject and verb
  clause, as subject 80
  co-ordinated nouns / phrases, as subject 82
  collective nouns 80
  complex subject 80
  determiners 82
  how / here / there + be / have 82
  items joined by **(either) ... or** or**(neither) ... nor** 82
  measurement / amount / quantity, with singular verb 84
  names / titles ending in -s 80
  nouns ending in -s 84
  subject, position of 80
  there + be / have 82
  what-clause, as subject 80
all (of), whole, every, each
  time expressions 102
  whole / entire, before nouns 102
among and **between** 178
amounts 104
any *see* **some** and **any**
apostrophe, for possessives 231
articles
  additional exercise 246–47
  definition of 205
  grammar reminder 232
  study planner 210
  see also **a / an**, **the**, and **zero article**
  auxiliary verbs 205
  in inversion 198
  leaving words out after 128
    be as main verb in previous clause / sentence 128
    have as auxiliary + **done** 128
    modal auxiliary + **do / be** 128
    more than one auxiliary 128
    no auxiliary 128
    substitute **do** 128
  negative questions 54, 227
  substitute **so** and **not** 124
  see also modal verbs

B
bare infinitive 206
being + past participle clause 206
between and **among** 178

C
can *see* ability; permission; possibility
change, process of 42
'choosing' verbs 68
classifying adjectives 132, 134, 136, 205
clauses
  definition of 206
  study planner 217
  types of 206
cleft sentences 196, 206

Index of grammatical items

collective nouns 80, 207
colon 174, 230
colour adjectives 122
comma 230
comment adverbs 150, 156, 205
comparative forms 238
  adjectives with comparative / superlative meaning 144
  comparative adjectives, linking with **and** 136
  more + one-syllable adjective 144
  more / less + two-syllable adjectives 144
  one-syllable adjectives and adverbs + **-er** 144
  phrases and clauses
    as + adjective + a / an + noun 146
    as + adjective / adverb as 146
    go so / as far as + to-infinitive 146
    less + adjective + than 146
    as little / few as 146
    as much / many as 146
    not + adjective / adverb + enough + to-infinitive 146
    so + adjective / adverb + as + to-infinitive 146
    so + adjective / adverb + that-clause 146
    sufficiently + adjective 146
    too + adjective + a / an + noun 146
    too + adjective / adverb + to-infinitive 146
  see also **few**, **little**, **less**, and **fewer**
complaining 12
complement
  adverbial phrases as 206
  definition of 206
  and linking verbs 42, 206, 207
  and object 206
  prepositional phrase as 206
  and subject 206
  transitive / intransitive verbs 56
  see also verb complementation
compound adjectives 138, 206
compound nouns
  countable compound nouns 86
  definition of 206
  grammar reminder 230
  hyphenated phrases, before nouns 86
  noun + noun 86
  noun + preposition + noun 86
  one word, separate words, hyphenated 230
  plural forms 86
  possessive forms 86
  two- and three-word verbs, nouns related to 86
conclusions, drawing
  grammar reminder 225–226
  must 36, 74
  present perfect continuous / present perfect 12
  will / would 32
conditional clauses
  definition of 206
  real and unreal conditions 206, 238–39
  real conditionals, tenses in 20, 166, 168, 172, 239
  unreal conditionals, tenses in 166, 170, 172, 239
conditional sentences 206
  conjunctions 174
  sentence connectors 174
conjunctions
  additional exercise 249
  conditions 174
  definition of 206
  noun phrases, adding information to 112
  reasons and results 174
  study planner 219
  time 174, 238
connecting adverbs 150, 205
contrasting
  although, **though**, **while** and **whilst**, with participle clauses 164
  although and **though** 164
  conjunctions 174
  even though and **even if** 164
  sentence connectors 174
  in spite of the fact that 164
  while / whereas 164
  while / whilst 164
could *see* ability; permission; possibility; reporting; unreal past
countable / uncountable nouns
  definition of 206
  generalisations about classes of things 90
  grammar reminder 230
  with **there + be** 190
  see also **a / an**, **the**, and **zero article**; **a / an** and **one**; agreement, subject and verb; **all (of)**, **whole**, **every**, **each**; **few**, **little**, **less**, and **fewer**; **much (of)**, **many (of)**, **a lot of**, **lots (of)**; **one** and **ones**; **some**and **any**
criticising 12
  might / could + have + past participle 34
  negative questions 54, 227
  will / would, use of 32

D
dash (–) 174
days of the week 94
defining relative clauses 208
  see also relative clauses
definite article 205
  see also **a / an**, **the**, and **zero article**
degree adverbs 205
  much, **very much** 154
  with **owing to** 160
  position of 150, 154
  very, **too** 154
determiners 206
  grammar reminder 232–33
  study planner 215–16
direct object 58, 207
  see also complement; object; transitive / intransitive verbs; verb complementation
direct speech 206
direction adverbs 150, 152, 198, 205
disapproval 168
'disliking' verbs 60
distance 104
do, after negative adverbials 200
  see also auxiliary verbs; substitution
-ed clauses *see* past participle

E
each *see* **all (of)**, **whole**, **every**, **each**
echo questions 54, 208
emphasising adjectives 132, 205
every *see* **all (of)**, **whole**, **every**, **each**
exceptions 182
expectations 40
festivals 94

F
few, **little**, **less**, and **fewer**
  (a) few, **(a) little**, as pronouns 104
  the few, **the little + noun**, as 'not enough' 104
  few + personal pronouns 104
  few and **little**, as informal alternatives 104
  less (than) and **fewer (than)** 104
  a little, as informal alternative 104
  what few / what little, as 'the small (number / amount)' 104
fewer *see* **few**, **little**, **less**, and **fewer**
finite verbs 209
focus adverbs 154, 205
focusing
  fronting, for emphasis 198
  it-clauses 196
  wh-clauses 196
  what-clauses 196
frequency adverbs
  with **have to** 36
  indefinite frequency 205
  past continuous with 4
  position of 148, 150, 152
  present continuous with 4
future continuous
  arranged events / activities 22
  grammar reminder 224
  imagining what is happening around now 22
  particular point in future, relating start of event to 22
  repeated / regular events 22
  willingness, avoiding 22
future events
  additional exercise 242
  be about to + infinitive 24, 26
  be going to + infinitive 20, 166, 223
  be to + infinitive 24
  common phrases for talking about 26

  grammar reminder 223–24
  past and present continuous for intention 8
  possibility, **can / could** 30
  present continuous for 20
    grammar reminder 224
    informal arrangements 22
  present simple for
    conditional clauses 20
    fixed events 20
    grammar reminder 223
    if-clauses 24
    suppose / supposing / what if ... 20
    time clauses 20
  real conditionals 166
  seen from the past
    be supposed to 28
    intentions 26
    reporting 28
    was / were to + infinitive 28
    was / were to have + past participle 28
  shall / shan't *versus* **will / won't** 26
    study planner 211
  verbs + **to-infinitive**, for intentions 26
  will + infinitive 223
  will and **be going to** 18, 20
future perfect and future perfect continuous 22
  passive form 204
future simple 204

G
generalisations 90
geographical areas 90
glossary 205–09
going to *see* **will** and **be going to**
gradable adjectives 134, 136, 205, 237
grading adverbs 134, 205

H
have (got) to 36, 225–26
having + past participle (-ed) clause 62, 116, 206
holidays 94
however 174

I
-ing (present participle) form
  grammar reminder 235–36
  prepositional object 208
  reduced relative clauses 208
  see also participle adjectives; verb complementation
if, in comparison clauses 168
if and **whether**
  after certain verbs 172
  after **preposition** 172
  in clause acting as subject or complement 172
  noun + adjective + as to whether 172
  possibilities, talking about 172
  reporting **yes / no questions** 64
  before **to-infinitive** 172
  whether ... or not 172
if-clauses
  after **would / would like** 130
  future events 24
  inversion instead of 198
  should, **were**, **had**, and omission of **if** 168
  without main clauses 168
  see also conditional clauses imaginary situations 32, 239
imperative clauses 42, 166, 206
indefinite article 205
  see also **a / an**, **the**, and **zero article**
indirect object 58, 207
  see also object; verb complementation
indirect questions 208
  see also reporting
indirect speech 208
  see also reporting
infinitive forms 206
instructions 24, 166, 196
  grammar reminder 225
  if-clauses, without main clauses 168
intentions 26, 78
interrupted past actions / events 8
  intransitive verbs *see* transitive / intransitive verbs
introducing new topic 196
inversion
  additional exercise 250
  adverbs of direction of movement 198
  after negative adverbials 200
  after **neither** and **nor** 200
  after time adverbs 152
  fronting, for emphasis 198
  with **here comes**, **there goes** 198
  instead of **if-clauses** 198
  with **so + adjective** 200
  with **such + be**, for emphasis of extent / degree 200
  with **as** and **than**, in comparisons 198
  of verb and subject 207
irregular verbs 202–3
it
  it is / was no *versus* **there is / was no** 194
  as object of verb 194
  reporting with passive forms 50
  with viewpoint verbs 194
it, introductory
  to focus attention on sentence element 192
  it + be + adjective / noun 192
  it + verb + object + that-clause 192
  it + verb + object + to-infinitive clause 192
  it + verb + that-clause 192
  it + verb + to-infinitive clause 192
  not as alternative to **noun** as subject 192
  where subject is **to-infinitive**, **that-clause**, **wh-clause** or **-ing clause** 192
it-clauses 48, 196

J
jobs / job titles 92

L
less *see* **few**, **little**, **less**, and **fewer**
linking verbs
  adjective patterns with 138, 140, 164
  become and **get** 42
  'becoming' verbs 42
  'being' verbs 42
  and complement 42, 206, 207
  go and **turn** 42
  'seeming' verbs 42
  study planner 212–13
  superlatives 144
little *see* **few**, **little**, **less**, and **fewer**

M
main clauses
  definition of 206
  and relative clause 208
manner, adverbs of 148, 205
may *see* possibility
might *see* possibility; unreal past
modal and semi-modal verbs
  additional exercise 242–43
  auxiliary verbs 205
  definition of 207
    grammar reminder 224–26
  with performatives 2
  reporting to reported clause, summary of changes 74
  study planner 212
much (of), **many (of)**, **a lot of**, **lots (of)** 100
must
  drawing conclusions 36
  formal rules, regulations and warnings 36
  and **have (got) to** 36, 225–26
  must / mustn't, in reporting 74
  need(n't), **don't have to**, **mustn't** 226
  proposing future arrangements 36

N
names, of people 80, 92
narrative 64
necessity 225–26
need
  in formal written English 38
  need(n't), **don't have to**, **mustn't**, **don't need to** 38, 226
  as ordinary *versus* modal verb 38
    in questions 38
negative questions 54, 227
newspaper writing
  be to + infinitive, for events likely to happen 24
  participle clauses, use of 112
  past perfect continuous, use of 14
no, **none(of)**, and **not any** 98
nominal relative clauses 108, 208
  see also relative clauses
non-affirmative meaning 207

Index of grammatical items

- non-defining relative clauses
  - for adding information 106
  - definition of 208
  - participle clauses, use of instead of 112
  - prepositional phrases 114
  - **whose**, clauses with 108
  - *see also* relative clauses
- non-finite verbs 209
- non-gradable adjectives 134, 136, 205, 237
- non-grading adverbs 134, 205
- noun phrases
  - adding information to 112
    - conjunctions 112
    - **namely**, use of 112
    - participle clauses 112
    - prepositional phrases 114
    - **that is**, use of 112
    - **to-infinitive** clauses 112
  - complements 42
  - definition of 206
  - nominal relative clauses 208
- nouns
  - additional exercise 245–46
  - definition of 207
  - study planner 214
  - *see also* compound nouns; countable / uncountable nouns
    - number expressions 88

O

- object
  - and complement 206
  - definition of 207
  - position of in two- and three-word verbs 188
  - transitive verbs 209
  - *see also* transitive / intransitive verbs; verb complementation
- obligations 40, 226
- offers 18, 72, 166, 225
- **one** and **ones**
  - with countable nouns 122
  - inclusion of 122
  - not used after nouns used as adjectives 122
  - omission of 122
  - with possessive determiners 122
  - referring to people 122
  - *see also* **a / an** and **one**
- opinions 62
- orders 24, 72, 78
- organisations, names of 80
- **ought to** *see* **should** and **ought to**

P

- participle adjectives 207
  - **-ing** and **-ed** forms, as adjectives 138
  - after nouns, reduced relatives 138
  - in compound adjectives 138
  - with **much**, **very much** 154
  - position of 138
  - **that / those** before 138
- participle clauses
  - active and passive in noun phrases 112
  - with adverbial meaning 116
  - contrasting 164
  - definition of 206
  - **having + participle**, and timing of action 116
  - implied subject, and subject of main clause 116
  - **not**, position of 116
  - with own subject 116
  - use of prepositions with 118
- participles 207
- particles 188, 207
- passive forms 204
  - active patterns 44, 46
  - additional exercise 243–44
  - agent, omission of 48
  - 'appointing' verbs 44
  - 'giving' verbs 44
  - grammar reminder 226–27
  - **it-clause** as subject of 48
  - 'liking / wanting' verbs 46
  - modal verbs 204
  - 'naming' verbs 44
  - reporting with 50
  - study planner 212–13
  - 'telling' verbs 44
  - tenses 204
  - topic emphasis 48
  - transitive two- and three-word verbs 44
  - verbs with related nouns 48
- past continuous
  - with adverbs of frequency 4
  - **as / when / while** 158
  - grammar reminder 223
  - passive form 204
  - past perfect continuous, and past perfect 14
  - and past simple 8, 16
    - intentions not carried out 8, 10
    - in narratives 8
    - past events in succession 8
    - past events over same period 8
    - repeated past actions 8
- past participle (**-ed**) 207
  - grammar reminder 236
  - reduced relative clause 208
  - *see also* participle adjectives; participle clauses
- past perfect
  - grammar reminder 223
  - passive form 204
  - past perfect continuous, and past continuous 14
  - and past simple
    - additional exercise 241–42
    - intentions not carried out 10
    - ordering past events 10
    - reporting past events 10
    - review of use of 16
  - time clauses 6
- past perfect continuous
  - additional exercise 241–242
  - grammar reminder 223
  - intentions not carried out 10
  - past perfect and past continuous
    - activity in progress recently *versus* finished 14
    - number of times something happened 14
    - particular past time, relating events to 14
    - review of use of 16
    - state verbs 14
- past simple
  - grammar reminder 222
  - passive form 204
  - and past continuous 4, 8, 10, 16
  - and past perfect 10, 16, 241–242
  - and present perfect 6, 241
- past subjunctive 209
  - **as it were** 170
  - unreal conditionals, **were** in **if-clause** 170
  - **were**, for imaginary situations 170
  - **were**, in comparisons 170
- perfect forms 16
- performative verbs
  - definition of 207
  - present simple 2
- permission 34, 38, 224
  - **could, be allowed to** 30
- personal pronouns 208
- persuading 54
- phrasal verbs
  - definition of 207
  - word order 188
  - *see also* two- and three-word verbs
- place adverbs 205
- possessive determiners 206
- possessive nouns 207, 231
- possessive pronouns 207, 231
- possibility
  - **can** and **could** 30, 34
  - grammar reminder 224
  - **may** and **might** 34, 225
- predictions 18
- preferences 170
- prepositional objects 58, 208
- prepositional phrases
  - as complement 206
  - definition of 208
- prepositional verbs 208
  - *see also* phrasal verbs; two- and three-word verbs
- prepositions
  - additional exercise 249
  - after nouns 186
  - after verbs 184
  - definition of 207
  - particles 207
  - phrasal verbs 207
  - of place 178
  - of position and movement 176
  - reasons, giving 160
  - in relative clauses 110
  - study planner 220–221
  - of time 180

- present and past time, review 16, 240
- present continuous
  - with adverbs of frequency 4
  - for future events 20, 22, 224
  - grammar reminder 222
  - intentions 26
  - passive form 204
  - and present simple 2, 4, 16
- present participle (**-ing**) 207
  - *see also* participle adjectives; participle clauses
- present perfect
  - grammar reminder 222–23
  - passive form 204
  - and past simple 6, 241
  - and present perfect continuous 12, 16, 241
  - real conditionals 166
- present perfect continuous
  - grammar reminder 223
  - passive form 204
  - and present perfect
    - activities in progress until recently 12
    - additional exercise 241
    - conclusions from what can be seen / heard etc. 12
    - recently completed events 12
    - repeated *versus* one-off activities 12
    - results of circumstances / activities 12
    - review of uses of 16
    - situations existing until present 12
- present simple
  - contents of books / films etc. 4
  - for future events 20, 24, 166, 172, 224
  - grammar reminder 222
  - intentions 26
  - newspaper headlines 4
  - passive form 204
  - phrases introducing news 4
  - and present continuous 16
    - immediacy 4
    - life commentaries 4
    - mental states 2
    - performative verbs 2
    - state verbs 2
  - real conditionals 166
  - time clauses 6
- present subjunctive 78, 209
- present tenses, in reporting and reported clauses 70
- product names 92
- promises 18
- pronouns
  - definition of 208
  - study planner 217–18
  - types of 208
- purposes and results
  - **in order / so as + to-infinitive** 162
  - **in order that** and **so that** 162
  - **so + adjective / adverb + that-clause** 146
  - **such that**, **in such a way that**, **such … that** 162

Q

- qualitative adjectives 132, 136, 205
- quantifiers
  - definition of 208
  - grammar reminder 232–35
  - study planner 215–16
  - with and without 'of' 233–35
- quantity expressions 84, 88
  - *see also* **some** and **any**
- question forms
  - grammar reminder 227
  - indirect questions 208
  - negative questions 54
  - study planner 212–13
  - with **that-clauses** 54
  - types of 208
  - *see also* **wh-questions**; **yes / no questions**
- question tags 227
- quotation marks 229

R

- real conditionals
  - **if-clauses** 166, 168
  - real and unreal conditions 206, 238–39
  - tenses in 20, 166, 168, 172, 239
  - **unless** and **if not** 172
- reasons
  - cleft sentences 196
  - conjunctions 174
  - prepositions 118, 160
  - sentence connectors 174
- reduced relative clauses 132, 138, 208
  - *see also* relative clauses
- reflexive pronouns
  - definition of 208
  - for emphasis 120
  - formality 120
  - grammar reminder 236
  - inclusion / omission of, with some verbs 120
  - in **verb + object + adjective complement** structure 56
- regret 170
- relative clauses
  - additional exercise 248
  - defining 106, 108, 112, 208
  - definition of 208
  - grammar reminder 235
  - nominal 108, 208
  - non-defining 106, 108, 112, 114, 208
  - prepositions in 110
  - reduced 132, 138, 208
  - study planner 217
- relative pronouns
  - definition of 208
  - omission / inclusion of 106, 110, 190
  - as subject / object of relative clause 106
- relative words 208
  - **a / the reason why / that** 108
  - nominal relative clauses, with **who / what** 108
  - **whatever**, **whoever**, **whichever** 108
  - **when**, **whereby**, **where**, **why** 108
  - **whose**, clauses with 108
- reported speech 208
- reporting 64
  - additional exercise 245
  - grammar reminder 229
  - modal auxiliaries 74
  - negative forms 64
  - offers / suggestions / orders / intentions / requests 72
  - passive forms 44
  - punctuation for 229
  - questions 64
  - quotations 64
  - study planner 214
  - tense choice in 70
  - **that-clauses** 66, 72, 76
  - using adjectives 76
  - using nouns 76
- reporting / reported clauses 64, 72
  - definition of 208
  - past tenses 70
  - present subjunctive 78
- reporting verbs 64, 208
- requests
  - grammar reminder 225
  - **if-clauses** 168
  - reporting 72, 78
  - **will** and **be going to** 18

S

- seasons 88, 94
- semi-colon 174
- semi-modal verbs 207
  - grammar reminder 224–26
  - *see also* modal verbs
- sense verbs 30
- sentence connectors 174, 208
- short answers 124
- **should** and **ought to**
  - **be supposed to** 226
  - expectations 40
  - **had better**, in spoken English 40
  - obligations / recommendations 40
  - questions / requests for confirmation or advice 40
  - regret / criticism 40
  - **should** and **shall** 40
- simple *versus* continuous forms, summary of uses of 16
- **since** and **for** 12, 14
- **some** and **any**
  - with **before** 96
  - 'approximately' 96
  - with comparisons 96
  - general statements about whole classes of things 96
  - grammar reminder 232–33
  - with negative words 96
  - non-affirmative contexts 96
  - non-specific, unspecified things 96
  - before plural and uncountable nouns 96
  - strong and weak forms 96

Index of grammatical items

  unknown / unimportant person or thing 96
state verbs 2, 12, 14, 166, 208
subject and complement 206
  definition of 208
  it-clause as 48
  passive, uses of 48
placement of long 48
  relative pronouns as 106
  who or **what** as 52
  see also agreement; inversion
subjunctive 209
  past 170
  present 78
subordinate clauses 206, 208
  see also adverbial clauses; relative clauses
substitution
  to, for **to-infinitive** clause 130
  additional exercise 248
  do 128, 200, 227, 237
  do so and **such** 126
  so and **not** 124
  study planner 217–18
suggestions 54, 72, 78, 227
superlative forms
  the + adjective with **-est** 144
  the + most + adjective 144
  of + plural noun phrase, after superlative 144
  in + singular noun phrase, after superlative 144
  adjectives with **a / an**, **the**, and **zero article** 92
  most + adjective / adverb 144
  noun + of which 110

T
tenses
  grammar reminder 222–24
  study planner 210–11
that-clauses
  passive sentences 48
  reporting 66, 72, 76
  should in 78
  wh-questions with 54
the *see* **a / an**, **the**, and **zero article**
  there + be
  change of topic, topic known to listener / reader 190
  introducing topics 190
  noun following, agreement of **be** with 190
  noun following, indefinite / nonspecific meaning of 190
  with nouns followed by **that**, **wh**, **to-infinitive** or **-ing** clause 190
'thinking' verbs 30, 60
three-word verbs *see* two- and three-word verbs
time adverbs 205
time clauses
  conjunctions 174
  tenses in 238
times, of day and night 94
titles, of newspapers, books, films 80
to-infinitive
  with **come** and **grow** 42
  definition of 206
  leaving out 130
  with linking verbs 140
  noun phrases, adding information to 112
  see also verb complementation
transitive / intransitive verbs 56
  grammar reminder 228
  implied object 56
  intransitive verbs 56, 206
  passives, grammar reminder 226–27
  transitive or intransitive verbs 56
  transitive verbs 56, 209
  two- and three-word verbs, word order 188
  see also verb complementation
two- and three-word verbs
  definition of 209
  particle in 207
  position of prepositions in 110
  word order 188

U
uncertainty 76
unchanging states 12
uncountable nouns *see*
countable / uncountable nouns
  unless and **if not** 172
unreal conditionals
  but for 166
  if + past simple 166
  real and unreal conditions 206, 238–39
  unless and **if not** 172
  were in **if-clause** 166, 170
unreal past
  might / could have + past participle 239
  would have + past participle 32, 239
used to
  grammar reminder 225
  repeated events in past 32
  in reporting 74

V
verb complementation
  additional exercise 244
  direct and indirect objects 58
  negative forms 62
  prepositional object, with **for / to** 58
  verb + -ing or **bare infinitive** 60
  verb + object + bare infinitive 60
  verb + object + to-infinitive 62
  verb + object / possessive + -ing 60
  verb + preposition + object + to-infinitive 62
  verb + to have + past participle 62
  verb + to (preposition) + -ing 60
  see also transitive / intransitive verbs
   verb phrases 209
verbs 208, 209
viewpoint adverbs 156, 205

W
wh-clauses
  focusing 196
  with linking verbs 140
  verbs with 68
wh-questions 52, 208, 209
  auxiliary verb 54
  how and **what** 52
  reporting 64
  with **that-clauses** 54
  what 52
  which 52
  who 52
  whom 52
  whose 52
  see also negative questions
wh-words 208, 209
what-clauses 80, 196
whether *see* **if** and **whether**
whole *see* **all (of)**, **whole**, **every**, **each**
will, **would** and **used to**
  characteristic behaviour / habits 32
  conclusions / assumptions 32
  criticism 32
  grammar reminder 225
  repeated events in past 32
  unreal past situations 32
will and **be going to**
  be going to + go / come 20
  conditional sentences 18
  decisions 18
  formality / informality 18, 20
  offers / requests / promises 18
  planned / likely events 18, 20
  predictions 18
willingness 22
works of art 92
would *see* **if-clauses**; **will**, **would** and **used to**
Y
yes / no questions 64, 208
  see also question forms
Z
zero article 205
  see also **a / an**, **the**, and **zero article**

Index of lexical items

a / an 88, 90, 92, 94, 146, 190, 205, 206
a bit 134
a bit of 104
a few (of) 235
a little (of) 235
a lot (of) 82, 100, 234
a number of 82, 110
a / the majority of 82
ability 186
able 140
about 184
above 176
above all 174
absent from 120
absolute 132
absolutely 134
abusive 76
academic 136
accept 124, 194
accident 194
acclimatise 120
according to 156
account for 188
ache 222
acknowledge 2, 66
acknowledgement 76
across 176
act on 188
active 144
adamant 76
adapt 60, 120
adapted 42
address book 86
adhere to 56
adjust 60
admiration 186
admire 154
admit 2, 58, 60, 62, 66, 124, 194, 228
adult 136
advertise 62
advice 76
advisable 78
advise 2, 46, 62, 66, 68 72, 78, 130, 172
affected 138
afford 130
afraid 130, 132, 140 144
after 6, 20, 118, 158 174, 206
after all 174
after that 174
afternoon 94
afterwards 174
agitatedly 142
agree 2, 26, 46, 50, 62 66, 72, 124, 130, 222, 228
agree about / on / with 184
agreed 76
aim 26, 46, 186, 228
alarmed 140
alarmed / alarming 237
alert 144
alike 132, 144
alive 132
all 110, 206
all (of) 82, 102, 233, 234
all of a sudden 4
all over 176
all the same 174
allegation 76
allege 50, 62
alleged 138
allegedly 142
allocated 138
allow 46, 58, 62, 228
almost 102, 134, 150, 154
alone 132, 144, 154
along 176, 198
also 174
alternative 194
alternatively 174
although 118, 164, 174
altogether 154
always 4, 36, 150
amaze 192
amazed 78, 140
amazed / amazing 237
amazing 140
ambition 186
among 178
among other things 178
among others 178
amongst 178
amount of 100
amused 78
and 112, 174, 206
angry 76, 134, 140
announce 44, 50, 58, 66
announcement 76
annoy 192
annoyed 76, 140
annoying 140
annually 152
another 122
answer 56, 66, 76
answer back 188
anticipate 46, 222
anxious 78
any 96, 186, 232–33
any 82
any (of) 82, 233
anybody 98, 233
anyone 96, 98, 190, 233
anything 96, 98, 233
anyway 174
anywhere 98
apart 182
apart from 182
apologetic 76
apologise 2
appalling 78
apparent 42
apparently 156
appeal 62
appear 2, 42, 46, 62, 124, 132, 140, 164, 190, 192, 228
apply 62
applying 138
appoint 44
appreciate 46, 154, 222
approve 60
approve of 60, 188
argue 66, 194
argue about / for / with 184
argument 76
arise 202
arms trade 86, 90
army 80
arrange 46, 62, 68
arrest 228
arts festival 86
as 144, 146, 158, 174, 198
as a consequence 174
as a result 174
as a rule 150
as if 170
as it were 170
as long as 174
as many 146
as much 146
as soon as 6, 20, 174
as though 170
as to 68, 76, 172
as well 174
ashamed 132, 140, 144, 186
aside 182
ask 44, 46, 56, 58, 62, 66, 68, 72, 78, 130, 228
ask about / for / of 184
ask of 184
asleep 132
aspire to 56
associate with 56
association 80
assume 50, 56, 66, 124, 222
assuming (that) 174
assure 66
astonish 192
astonished 140
astonishingly 156
astounded 78
at no time 152
at that time 174
at the same time 174
athletics 84
atmosphere 90
atomic 132
attempt 46, 186
attract 2, 222
attribute to 56
audience 80
autumn 94
avail of 120
available 132
average 136
avoid 46, 228
awake 132, 202
award 44, 58
aware 42, 132, 140, 144
away 198
awful 134, 140
awkward 140

baby's bedroom 86
back 198
bad 140
bald 42
ban 186
barely 96, 200
base on 56
be 42, 128, 130, 132 140, 164, 202, 205
be able to 30, 130, 207, 224
be about to 24, 26
be afraid 124
be allowed to 30, 207
be bound to 26
be certain 124
be due to 26
be going to 18, 20, 166, 223
be likely 34
be on the brink of 26
be on the point of 26
be on the verge of 26
be supposed to 28, 190, 226
be sure to 26, 124
be to 24
beach 90
bear 202
beat 202
beautiful 132
because 118, 160, 174, 206
because of 160
become 42, 132, 140, 164, 202
before 20, 96, 118, 158 174, 200
before that 174
beg 2, 78
begin 46, 56, 60, 130, 228, 202
behave 120
believe 2, 30, 46, 50, 56 62, 64, 66, 124, 194, 222, 228
belong 12, 166
belong to 222
belongings 84
below 176
bend 56, 202
beneath 176
besides 118, 174, 182
bet 202
between 178

Index of lexical items

big 134
bind 202
biologically 156
birds' nests 86
bite 202
bleed 202
blind 42
blow 202
book 58
bored 144
bored / boring 237
boring 144
both 110
both (of) 233
bother 38
boy's arm 86
brave 140
bravely 156
break 56, 202
break in 188
break-out 86
brick-built 138
briefly 148
bring 46, 58, 202
bring about 188
broadcast 202
broken 138
brother-in-law 86
brush up on 44
build 58, 202
building materials industry 86
burn 56, 202
burst 202
busy 134, 140
busy with 120
but 174, 182, 206
but for 166, 182
buy 58, 202
by 94, 118, 180
by air 94
by bus 94
by car 94
by contrast 174
by email 94
by phone 94
by plane 94
by post 94
by sea 94
by taxi 94
by the time 6, 20
by train 94

calculate 50, 68
calculated 132
call 44
call back 44, 188
call on 72, 188
call up 44
campaign 62
can 30, 74, 128, 207, 224, 225
can't bear 46, 194
can't stand 194, 229
capable 132
care 150
care about / for 184
careful 140, 144
careless 144
carelessly 156
carry out 44
cast 202
cast back 44
catch 46, 58, 202, 229
catch out 188
cause 62, 228
caused 138
cautious 144
cease 228
certain 76, 140, 144
certainly 156
chance 102, 130, 186 194
change 56
cheap 144
cheap(ly) 142
check 66, 68
check into 188
chemical 132
chicken drumsticks 86
choice 194
choose 58, 68, 130, 172, 202
chosen 138
civil 136
claim 50, 76
class 80
clean 136
clean up 188
clear 140, 144
clear away 188
clearly 148, 150, 156
clear(ly) 142
clever 134
climate 90
climb 46
cling 227
close 56, 60
clothes 84
clothes shop 86
club 80
coal mine 86
coffee 90
coincidence 194
cold 144
collect 58
college 80
come 42, 46, 152, 198, 202, 208, 228
come about 192
come across 110
come in for 188
come to 188
come up against 44, 188
command 62, 72, 78, 228
comment 76
commission 80
committee 80
common 134, 136
community 80
company 80
company director 92
complain 66
complete 132, 144
completely 134, 150
complex 144
complimentary 76
computer 90
computer keyboard 86
concentrate 60
concern 38, 186, 192
concern with 120
concerned 78, 132, 140, 172
conclude 2, 68
conclusion 76
confess 2, 60, 66
confide 66
confidence 102
confident 140
conflict 172
confusion 172
congratulate 2
congratulations 84
consent 62
consequently 174
consider 2, 8, 46, 50, 56, 62, 66, 68, 172, 194, 222, 228
consist of 2, 222
constantly 4
constitute 222
contain 222
content 132
continually 4
continue 46, 228
conversation 90
convince 66
convinced 42
cook 56, 58
cost 2, 58, 186, 192, 202, 222
could 30, 34, 74, 128, 204, 207, 224, 225, 239
council 80
count 60, 62
count out 188
country(side) 90
cover up 188
cowardly 142
cow's milk 86
crazy 140
creased 144
creep 202
crew 80
criteria 84
critical 76, 136
crop up 188
crowd 80
crucial 78
culminate in / with 56
cup of tea 86
curious 140
curiously 150
customs officer 86
cut 202
cut back on 188
cut out 188
daily 152
dance 56
dare 60, 204, 207
dark 144
data 84
dawn 94
dawn on 192
day 102
deaf 42
deal 202
debate 68, 172
decide 30, 50, 62, 68
decision 76, 186
declare 2, 44, 56, 66
decline 228
decrease 56
deep 134
deep(ly) 142
definitely 156
delay 228
delighted 130
demand 66, 72, 78, 228
democratic 132
demonstrate 44, 50, 58
deny 2, 46, 58, 62, 66 96, 194, 228
department 80
depend 60, 62
depend on 172
describe 44, 46, 58
description 186
deserve 130
deservedly 142
desire 186, 222
despite 164
deter 60
determination 186
determine 68
determined 130
determinedly 142
detest 60, 228
detract from 56
develop 150
diabetes 84
differ 150
differ from 222
differentiate between 56
difficult 42, 140
dig 202
digital 132
dignified 142
diplomatic 136
direct 78, 144
direct(ly) 142
disagree 66
disagreement 172
disappointed 78, 140
disappointedly 142
disapprove of 44, 60
discourage 60
discover 50, 68, 228
discuss 68, 172
discussion 76, 172, 186
dislike 12, 46, 60, 194, 228

dismissive 76
dive 202
do 126, 128, 192, 200, 202, 205, 227, 237
do out of 188
do so 126
domestic 134
don't have to 38, 226
doubt 2, 124, 166, 172, 222
doubtful 76, 140
down 198
downstairs 148
draw 202
dread 228
dreadfully 134
dream 202
dress 120
drink 56, 202
drink up 188
drive 56, 202
drop 56
duck's eggs 86
due to 160
during 180
dwell 202

each 82, 102, 110, 122, 205, 234
each of 82
each (of) 233
each other 236
eager 144
earlier 174
earnings 84
easy 140
easy-going 138
eat 56, 202
economic 132
economics 84
effect 186
either 122, 233
either ... or 82
either of 82
elderly 142
electorate 80
electric 136
emerge 192
emphasise 194
empty 136
enable 62, 228
encourage 50, 62, 72, 228
encouragement 76
end 60
end up 42
enemy 80
enjoy 46, 154, 166, 194, 228
enormously 150, 154
enough 146
entire 102, 132
entirely 134, 150, 160
entitle 62, 228
environment 90
environmental 132, 134
environmentally 156
envisage 228
envy 58
equal 144
equate with 56
especially 154
essential 78, 134
establish 50, 68
estimate 50
even 154
even if 164, 170
even so 174
even though 164, 174
evening 94
every 82, 102, 186, 234
every few (months) 102
every now and again 102
every other (kilometre) 102
every single (day) 102
every so often 102, 150
everybody 82
everyone 82
everything 82
exact 144
excellent 134
except 182
except for 182
excepted 182
excited / exciting 237
excitedly 142
exclusively 134
expect 2, 8, 26, 46 50, 54, 64, 66, 72 124, 130, 222
explain 44, 50, 66, 68
explanation 76
extremely 134, 154

face 46
fail 56, 62, 96, 130, 228
failure 186
fair 144
fairly 134
fall 202, 228
fall through 188
false 136
familiarise with 120
family 80
far-reaching 138
fashion 142
fast 134
fast-growing 138
favourite 144
fear 38, 90, 186
federation 80
feed 202
feel 2, 30, 44, 46, 50, 60 64, 66, 132, 140, 164 194, 202, 222, 228
feel like 228
fetch 58
few 104, 146
few (of) 235
fewer 104
fight 202
fill in 110
finally 148
financially 150, 156
find 2, 46, 50, 56, 58, 66, 194, 202, 222 228
find out 46, 68
fine 132
fine(ly) 142
finish 56, 60, 228
first 122, 150, 152
fit 2, 202
fix 58
flat(ly) 142
flee 202
flick through 188
fling 202
fly 152, 198, 202
focus 60
follow 192
fond 186
fondness 186
foolish 140
foolishly 156
for 12, 14, 174, 184
for one thing 174
for (reasons) 160
forbid 2, 96, 202
force 62, 227, 228
forecast 76, 202
foreign 136
forever 4
forget 46, 60, 62, 68, 130, 202
forgive 58, 202
formal 144
forwards 148
found 138
frankly 150, 156
free 140
free(ly) 142
freeze 202
frequent 144
friendly 134, 142
frighten 192
frightened 132
frightened / frightening 237
from my / his / her perspective 156
from time to time 150
fully 134
fun 144
furious 140
furniture 96
furthermore 174
future 90

gather 124
gather up 188
general 132
generally 156
generation 80
generously 156
genuine 136
get 42, 58, 132, 202, 227
get down 44, 188
get up 188
girls' school 86
give 44, 58, 202
glad 132, 140
glasses case 86
go 42, 146, 152, 198, 202, 228
go bad 42
go bust 42
go dead 42
go missing 42
go mouldy 42
go off 42
go on 62
go over 188
go rotten 42
go through with 188
go up 150
go wrong 42
goat's cheese 86
good 140, 194
good and 136
good-looking 138
goods 84
government 80
grab 228
grammar 90
grateful 76
greatly 150
ground 90
group 80
grow 42, 202
grow up 188
grumble 66
guarantee 2, 26, 58, 72 76, 194
guess 68, 124
guess so / not 124
guilty 136, 140
gymnastics 84

habit 186
had better 40, 207, 224
hair 90
hair-raising 138
hand 44, 58
hang 152, 202
hanger-on 86
happen 168, 192, 228
happily 142
happy 134, 140
hard 140
hardly 38, 96, 150, 158, 200, 225
hardly ever 150, 152
hate 46, 60, 130, 194 222, 228
have 2, 60, 62, 114, 128, 202, 205, 222
have got 128
have got to 36, 207, 224, 225–26
have to 36, 38, 74, 225–26

hear 30, 44, 46, 60, 124 202, 222, 228
hear out 188
help 44, 60, 192, 228
help on with 188
help out 188
hence 174
her 122
here 82
here comes 198
herself 120, 236
hesitate 228
hide 120, 202
high(ly) 142
himself 120, 236
hit 192, 202, 228
hold 56, 202
hold out 188
hold over 44
holiday 180
home-made 138
honestly 150, 156
hope 8, 10, 26, 46, 50 54, 62, 72, 102, 124 130, 194, 222, 228
horizon 90
hourly 152
how 52, 68, 82, 146 196, 209
however 174, 208
huge 134
hugely 134
human 136
human race 90
hurriedly 142
hurt 192, 202

I bet 18
I expect 18
I gather 4
I hear 4
I hope 18
I imagine 18
I reckon 18
I see 4
I think 18
I understand 4
I wonder 18
idea 130, 186
ideal 144
identified 138
ideologically 156
if 20, 64, 166, 172, 174, 200, 206
if not 172
if only 170
if so 174
ill 42, 132
illness 180
I'm sure 18
imaginable 132
imagine 2, 46, 60, 68 124, 170, 222, 228
immensely 134
imperative 78
importance 90
important 78, 134
impossible 96, 134, 140
improvement 186
in 118, 180, 198
in addition 174
in amazement 142
in any case 174
in case 20
in consequence 174
in contrast 174
in my / his / her opinion 156
in order that 162
in order to 162
in spite of 164
in such a way that 162
in that 160, 174
inability 186
inappropriate 78
inasmuch as 160
incline to / towards 56
inclined 140
included 138
income tax 86
inconceivable 78
increase 56
indicate 66
indication 76
indifferent 172
individual 136
industrially 156
infected 42
inflict on 56
influence 186
inform 50, 66, 68
innocent 136
insist 60, 78
insistent 76
insofar as 174
instead 174
institute 80
instruct 46, 68, 72, 78
instruction 76
insulting 76
intake 86
intend 8, 26, 50, 64 72, 78, 130
intensely 134
intention 186
interested 42, 138
interested / interesting 237
interesting 140
interestingly 156
Internet 90
interview 186
introduce 44, 58
invaluable 134
invitation 76
invite 62, 72, 228
involved 132
iron 90
irrelevant 42
issue 76
it 50, 140, 192, 194
it says here 4
itself 236

joke 66
journalist 92
judge 56
jury 80
just 154
just(ly) 142

keep 42, 46, 60, 202
keep on 62
kind 140
kindly 142, 156
kneel 202
knit 202
know 2, 12, 50, 60, 68 124, 166, 202, 222
know about / of 184

lack 186
lamb chops 86
largely 134, 154, 160
last 150
late 136
late(ly) 142
later 174
lay 202
lead 202
lean 202
leap 202
learn 68, 202
learn about / of 184
least 144
leave 58, 194, 208, 202
leave out 188
lend 44, 58, 207, 202
less 104, 144, 146
less (of) 235
let 60, 202
let go 60
let in 44
let in on 188
let out 44
lie 152, 202
light 202
like 2, 46, 60, 130, 154 166, 194, 202, 228
likelihood 186
likewise 174
linguistics 84
lion's den 86
little 104, 146, 200
little (of) 235
little ones 122
live 152
live up to 188
lively 142
logically 156
London-based 138
lone 132
lonely 142
long 62, 72
long-lasting 138
longest-serving 138
look 2, 42, 164, 222
look after 110, 188
look down on 188
look forward 60
look forward to 154
look out 188
look to 26
look up 188
look up to 188
looker-on 86
lose 202
lots of 100, 234
loud(ly) 142
love 2, 46, 60, 130, 194, 228
loved ones 122
lovely 140, 142
lovely and 136
low 134
luckily 156
lucky ones 122

mad 140
made-up 138
mainly 134, 154, 160
majority of 82
make 44, 58, 60, 140, 202
make up 188
manage 62, 228
manner 142
many 100, 110, 146
many (of) 233, 234
march 152
mathematics 84
matter 228
maximum 132
may 34, 74, 128, 207, 225
me 208
meal 180
mean 8, 26, 46, 130 140, 192, 202, 222, 228
means 84
meanwhile 174
measles 84
measure 2, 222
media 84
medical 132
medically 156
meet 202
mend 58
mention 44, 50, 58, 66 194
mere 132
mess up 188
midday 94
midnight 94
might 34, 128, 204, 207, 225, 239
mind 46, 228
mine 208
minimum 132
miserable 140
miss 228
mistake for 56
mobile 136

modern 144
money-making 138
month 102
monthly 152
morally 156
more 144
more and more 136
more wrong 144
moreover 174
morning 94
most 110, 144
mostly 154
most(ly) 142
move 56, 120
move off 188
mow 202
much 100, 146, 154
much (of) 233, 234
must 36, 40, 74, 128, 207
mustn't 36, 38, 74, 226
my 122, 206
myself 120, 236

name 2, 44
namely 112
naturally 150, 156
nearby 150
nearly 102, 134, 150
need 38, 46, 130, 194, 207, 224, 228
needn't 38, 226
neither 122, 200
neither do I 200, 237
neither / nor 82
neither of 82, 110
neither (of) 233
nerve-wracking 138
nervous 140
never 36, 38, 54, 96, 98, 150, 200, 225
nevertheless 174
news 84
next 150, 152
nice 140
nice and 136
night 102
no 54, 98, 182, 186, 200, 233
no amount of 98
no bother 98
no chance 98
no comment 98
no idea 98
no longer 194
no one 38, 98
no problem 98
no sooner 158
no sooner than 200
no way 98
no wonder 98
nobody 38, 54, 98, 182
no(body) 190
nominate 44
none (of) 82, 98, 110, 233
noon 94
nor 200
nor do I 200
normally 36
northern 132
not 200
not a single 98
not any 98, 186
not certain 76
not many 104
not much 104
not once 152
not one 98
nothing 54, 182
notice 46, 60, 66, 68 194, 222, 228
notify 66
now 152
nowhere 54, 98
number of 82, 100

object 60
obligatory 78
observation 76
observe 44, 46, 60, 228
obvious 42
obviously 156
occasional 132
occupy ... with 120
odd 136, 140
oddly 150
of 144, 184
off 198
offer 44, 58, 62, 72, 228
office-worker 86
often 150
old 136
on 118, 184
on condition that 174
on many occasions 150
on the contrary 174
on the other hand 174
once 6
once a week 152
one 88, 122
one another 88, 236
one of 82
ones 122
oneself 120
only 38, 154, 200, 225
only later 152
open 56, 60
opportunity 130, 186
opposite 132
opposition 80
option 186
or 112, 174
orchestra 80
order 2, 46, 58, 62, 72, 76, 78, 228
order about 188
original 136
otherwise 174
ought to 40, 128, 204, 207, 224, 226
ourselves 236
out 198
outcome 86
outskirts 84
outwardly 156
over 176, 180
overheads 84
overhear 60, 228
owe 58, 194
owing to 160
own 2, 222
own up 60

panic 38
park 56
part 110
particular 136
particularly 154
particulars 84
partly 160
pass 58
passer-by 86
past 90
pause 56
pay 58, 192, 202, 228
peace-keeping 138
peculiar 144
pen top 86
people 48, 84
per cent 84
perfect 134, 144
perfectly 134
permission 186
permit 2, 58
personally 156
persuade 50, 62, 66, 72, 228
phenomena 84
phone 56
phonetics 84
physically 156
physics 84
pick up 188
plainly 150
plan 8, 10, 26, 50, 62 64, 68, 186, 228
plans 130
play 56, 58
pleased 140, 144
pleased / pleasing 237
pleasure 90
plenty of 82, 100
point 194
point out 58, 66
pointedly 142
police 84
politically 156
politics 84
popular 134
population 80
positive 140
possess 222
possibility 186
possible 132
post 58
pour 58
practically 134
predict 2, 194
prefer 2, 46, 78, 130 154, 194, 222, 228
pregnant 42
premises 84
prepare 120, 228
prepared 140
present 90
press 80
presumably 150, 156
presume 66, 124
pretend 62
pretty 134
prevail 62
prevent 60, 96
previously 174
pride 186
pride on 120
primarily 134
private 136
probability 186
probably 156
problem 76, 186
professional 136
prohibit 60, 96
promise 2, 26, 66, 72 76, 124, 130
pronounce 56
proper 132
property 90
proposal 186
propose 26, 44, 50, 64 66, 72, 78
prospect 186
proud 186
prove 42, 56, 58, 164, 202
provide for 188
provided 20, 138
provided that 174
public 80, 136
publications department 86
pull 228
pull to 188
push to 188
push-up 86
put 203
put down as 188
put out 44
put up to 188
put up with 188

quarterly 152
question 76, 172, 194
quickly 142, 148
quick(ly) 142
quiet 134
quietly 148
quit 203
quite 150, 238

rabies 84
rarely 36, 96, 150, 152, 200

Index of lexical items

rather 134, 150, 170
read 44, 56, 58, 203
read-out 86
ready 140
ready-made 138
real 144
realise 2, 68, 222
really 134, 154
reason 102, 108, 186, 194
reasonably 134
reassure 50, 66
recall 46, 60, 62, 228
recent 144
reckon 54
recognised 42
recommend 50, 66, 72, 78
recommendation 76
refusal 76, 186
refuse 2, 46, 58, 62, 72 96, 130, 228
regard 194
regard as / with 56
region to region 94
regret 2, 62, 154, 222, 228
regularly 150
reluctance 186
reluctant 96
rely 60, 62
remain 42
remaining 138
remember 30, 46, 60, 62 68, 166, 194, 228
remind 2, 50, 62, 66, 68, 72
remind of 56
repair 58
repeatedly 142
reply 66, 76
report 44, 46, 50, 56, 58 66, 228
reportedly 142
reputedly 142
request 2, 72, 78
require 46, 66, 78
resemble 222
resent 46, 60, 194, 228
resolve 26
resort 60
responsible 132
result from 188
resulting 138
reveal 50
rich 134
riches 84
ride 203
right 144
right across 176
rightly 156
ring 203
rip 56
rise 203
risk 186, 228
roll 152
rough 144
run 152, 203
run into 188
runner-up 86

sad 140
sadly 156
satisfaction 186
satisfied 186
save 58
savings 84
savings account 86
saw 203
say 50, 54, 58, 62, 66 68, 72, 124, 203, 229
scarcely 96, 150, 158 200
scare 192
school 80
scientific 136
scornful 76
sea 90
seaside 90
secret 194
see 30, 44, 50, 60, 68 194, 203, 222, 228
seeing as 160
seeing that 160
seek 203
seem 42, 46, 62, 124 132, 164, 190, 192, 222
seen 140
seldom 96, 150, 152, 200
self 120
sell 58, 203, 228
selves 120
send 44, 46, 58, 203
sense 186
seriously 150, 156
set 203
sew 203
shake 203
shall 40, 74, 128, 207
shall / shan't 26
shame 186
shampoo 90
shave 120
she 208
shear 203
shed 203
sheer 132
shine 203
shock 192, 228
shocked 78, 140
shoot 203
shoot down 188
shop around 188
short-term 138
short(ly) 142
should 40, 74, 128, 198, 207, 224, 226
show 46, 50, 58, 62, 66 68, 228
shrink 203
shut 56, 203
shut up 188
sign 186
similar 132
similarly 174
simple 140
simply 134, 154
since 6, 12, 14, 118, 174
since (because) 160, 174
sing 56, 58, 203
sink 203
sit 152, 203
sky 90
sleep 207, 203
sleeping 132
slide 203
slightly 134, 150
sling 203
slowly 148
slow(ly) 142
small-scale 138
smell 30, 203, 222
smoke 56
so 146, 174, 200
so as to 162
so do I 200, 237
so far 180
so long as 174
so that 162, 174
soft 144
soft-spoken 138
solely 154
some 96, 110, 122, 206, 232
some 82
some (of) 82, 233
somebody 48, 96, 233
someone 48, 96, 233
something 48, 96, 190, 233
sometimes 36, 148
somewhat 154
soon 174
sooner 158, 170, 200
sorry 132, 140
sort out 188
sound 2, 42, 90, 164, 222
sour-tasting 138
sow 203
speak 60, 203
special 144
specialise in 56
specifically 154
speculate 66, 68
speculation 76, 172
speed 203
spell 203
spend 203
spill 203
spin 203
spit 203
splash out 188
split 203
split up 188
spoil 203
spot 229
spread 203
spring 94, 203
staff 84
stairs 84
stand 152, 203
stand up 188
start 46, 56, 60, 62, 130, 228–29
state-of-the-art 86
statement 76
statistics 84
stay 42, 180
steal 203
stick 203
sting 203
stink 203
stipulate 78
stolen 138
stop 60, 228–29
straight 136
strange-sounding 138
strike 192, 203
strive 203
strong 134
study 56
stupid 140
stupidly 156
subdued 142
subsequently 174
such 200
such that 162
suddenly 4, 142
suffer 150
sufficiently 146
suggest 2, 44, 50, 54, 58, 66, 72, 78, 124, 228
suggestion 76, 130
suitable 132
summer 94
sun 90
superb 134
suppose 20, 50, 54, 64, 124, 170
supposed to 28, 190, 226
supposedly 142
supposing 20, 170, 174
sure 76, 132, 140
surprise 192, 194
surprised 78
surprised / surprising 237
surprisingly 156
surroundings 84
suspect 124
suspicious 42
swear 72, 203
sweep 203
sweet-smelling 138
swell 203
swim 152, 207, 203
swing 203
sympathetic 76
sympathy 102

tactful 76
take 58, 192, 194, 203, 207
take after 44, 188

take against 188
take on 110
take over 188
take up on 188
taken 138
talk 60
talk about / of / on / with 68, 172, 184
talk down to 44
talk out of 188
taste 30, 192, 222
tea cup 86
tea leaf 86
teach 44, 46, 58, 62, 66, 68, 203, 228
team 80
tear 203
tear away from 120
technical 136
technically 156
tell 44, 46, 50, 58, 60, 62, 66, 68, 72, 124, 203, 228–29
tell apart 188
tend 46, 190
terrible 134, 140
terrific 140
than 198
thank 2
thanks 84
that 106, 110, 122, 138, 196, 208, 229
that is 112
the 92, 94, 122, 144, 205, 206
the affluent 122
the disadvantaged 122
the elderly 122
the homeless 122
the low-paid 122
the main 122
the majority of 82
the minute / second / moment 6
the number of 82
the only 122
the poor 122
the position of 92
the post of 92
the privileged 122
the rich 122
the role of 92
the slightest 186
the sole 186
the way 68
the wealthy 122
the whole of 180
the young 122
their 206
themselves 120, 236
then 152, 174
there 50, 82, 190
there goes 198
there is 190
therefore 174
these 122, 229
they 48
they say 4
think 2, 8, 10, 50, 54, 56, 62, 64, 66, 68, 124, 194, 203, 222
think about 8, 68, 172
think of 8, 10, 60
thin(ly) 142
this 92, 122, 206, 229
this morning / week / month 6
those 122, 138
though 164, 174
thoughtful 140
threat 76
threaten 62, 72
through 118, 176, 180
throughout 176, 180
throw 44, 58, 203, 228
throw away 188
thrust 203
thus 174
tidy up 188
till 180
tired 140
tired / tiring 237
title 44
to 130
to date 180
to my / his / her knowledge 156
today 6
tomorrow 150
too 146, 154, 174
total 132
totally 134
touch 228
town 90
transpire 192
travel industry 90
tread 203
treatment 180
tree-lined 138
tremendous 134
tremendously 154
trouble about / with 120
true 136, 144
try 130, 228
try out 188
turn 42
turn in 188
turn out 42, 192

unable 96, 140
unaware 140
unbelievably 156
uncertain 76, 140, 172
uncertainty 172
uncomfortable 140
undecided 172
under 176
underlying 132
underneath 176
understand 2, 12, 30, 46 50, 66, 68, 124, 166 194, 203, 222
undertake 26
undoubtedly 156
undress 120
unexpectedly 142
unhappy 42, 140
unique 134, 144
university 80
unknown 134
unless 20, 172, 174
unlikely 96
unnecessary 78
unprofessional 140
unreasonable 140
unsure 132, 140, 172
unsure, not sure 76
until 6, 20, 158, 174, 180, 200
until now 180
unwell 132
unwillingness 186
up 198
up till 180
up to 180
up-to-date 86
upset 78, 140, 192
upstairs 148
urge 72, 78
urgent 78
use 194
use up 188
used to 32, 74, 190, 207, 224, 225
usually 148
utter 132
utterly 134

vary 56, 150
very 134, 154
very much 154
view 194
violently 148
virtually 102, 134, 154
visit 180
visually 156
vital 78
volunteer 62, 72
vote 44
vow 72

wait 62, 228
wake 56, 203
walk 152
want 8, 10, 26, 46, 64 72, 130, 228, 229
warn 2, 50, 62, 66, 68 72, 78, 228, 229
warning 76, 78
wash 56, 120
wash up 56, 188
watch 60, 229
wave 56
way 142, 186
we 48
weak 134
wear 203
weave 203
week 102
weekly 152
weep 203
weigh 2, 222
welcome 140
well 132
well-behaved 138
well-resourced 138
were 170
wet 203
what 52, 64, 68, 76 108, 227
what if 20
what with 118
whatever 108
what's more 174, 208
when 6, 20, 54, 68, 108, 158, 174, 196, 200, 208
whenever 118, 174
where 64, 68, 82, 108, 196, 208
whereabouts 84
whereas 164, 174
whereby 108
whether 64, 68, 76, 172
which 52, 64, 68, 106, 110, 122, 196, 208, 209, 227
whichever 108
while 20, 118, 158, 164, 174, 206
whilst 164
who 52, 64, 68, 106, 108, 196, 208, 209, 227
whoever 108
whole 102, 134
whom 52, 106, 110, 209
whose 52, 108, 209, 227
why 68, 108, 196, 209
wide(ly) 142
wild 136
will 18, 20, 26, 32, 128, 207, 225
willing 140
willingness 186
win 56, 203
wind 203
wind up 188
winter 94, 102
wisely 156
wish 170, 228
with 118, 184
with confusion 142
without 96, 118
woman's face 86
women's clinic 86
wonder 4, 8, 68
wonderful 134, 140
world 90

worn 144
worried 42, 140, 144
worried / worrying 237
worriedly 142
worry 38, 192
would 32, 74, 128, 207, 224, 225, 239
would like 130
would rather 170
would sooner 170
wring 203
write 56, 58, 203
wrong 144
wrongly 156

yesterday 152
yet 174
you 48
young 134
your 122, 206
yours 208
yourself 120, 236
yourselves 236

What's on the CD-ROM

This CD-ROM provides over 200 extra exercises to help you practise the grammar presented in *Advanced Grammar in Use Third Edition*.

System Requirements

Windows® XP, Vista, 7 or 8
Mac OSX 10.5, 10.6, 10.7 or 10.8
1024 x 768 screen resolution
Speakers or headphones

Installation instructions

Insert the disc into your CD-ROM drive.

***Windows XP, Vista and 7* users**

You need to have administrator rights on your computer to complete the installation. On most computers, the installation will start automatically when you place the disc into the CD-ROM drive. If it does not:

1. Open the Start menu and click on **My Computer**, or double-click on the **My Computer** icon on the desktop.
2. Double-click on the **CD-ROM** icon.
3. Double-click on the **AGUThirdEdition.exe** file and follow the onscreen instructions.

***Windows 8* users**

You need to have administrator rights on your computer to complete the installation. On most computers, the installation will start automatically when you place the disc into the CD-ROM drive, however if you have not changed the compatibility mode of the AGU software beforehand, the installation will not complete successfully. To change the compatibility mode:

1. Open the Desktop app, then open the **Start** menu and click on **My Computer**.
2. Right-click on the CD-ROM icon (AGU) and choose **'Open'**.
3. Right-click on the **'AGUThirdEdition'** icon and select **'Properties'**.
4. Go to the second tab **'Compatibility'**, and tick the check-box underneath **'Compatibility Mode'**.
5. Select **'Windows 7'** from the drop-down box underneath the check-box
6. Select **'OK'** to save these settings, and then launch the software using the **'AGUThirdEdition'** icon.

***Mac* users**

1. Double-click the **AGU Third Edition** icon on your desktop to open it.
2. Double-click the **AGU Third Edition** icon and follow the onscreen instructions.

Technical support

For support and updates, go to
www.cambridge.org/elt/multimedia/help

Terms and conditions of use

This is a legal agreement between 'You' (which means the individual customer) and Cambridge University Press ('the Licensor') for Advanced Grammar in Use CD-ROM. By placing this CD-ROM in the CD/DVD-ROM drive of your computer You agree to the terms of this licence.

1. Licence

(a) You are purchasing only the right to use the CD-ROM and are acquiring no rights, express or implied to it or the software other than those rights granted in this limited licence for not-for-profit educational use only.

(b) Cambridge University Press grants the customer the licence to use one copy of this CD-ROM (i) on a single computer for use by one or more people at different times, or (ii) by a single person on one or more computers (provided the CD-ROM is only used on one computer at one time and is only used by the customer), but not both.

(c) The customer shall not: (i) copy or authorise copying of the CD-ROM, (ii) translate the CD-ROM, (iii) reverse-engineer, disassemble or decompile the CD-ROM, (iv) transfer, sell, assign or otherwise convey any portion of the CD-ROM, or (v) operate the CD-ROM from a network or mainframe system.

2. Copyright

(a) All original content is provided as part of the CD-ROM (including text, images and ancillary material) ('Original Material') and is the copyright of the Licensor, protected by copyright and all other applicable intellectual property laws and international treaties.

(b) You may not copy the CD-ROM except for making one copy of the CD-ROM solely for backup or archival purposes. You may not alter, remove or destroy any copyright notice or other material placed on or with this CD-ROM.

3. Liability

(a) The CD-ROM is supplied 'as-is' with no express guarantee as to its suitability. To the extent permitted by applicable law, the Licensor is not liable for costs of procurement of substitute products, damages or losses of any kind whatsoever resulting from the use of this product, or errors or faults in the CD-ROM, and in every case the Licensor's liability shall be limited to the suggested list price or the amount actually paid by You for the product, whichever is lower.

(b) You accept that the Licensor is not responsible for the persistency, accuracy or availability of any URLs of external or third party internet websites referred to on the CD-ROM and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate, appropriate or available. The Licensor shall not be liable for any content made available from any websites and urls outside the Software.

(c) Where, through use of the Original Material you infringe the copyright of the Licensor you undertake to indemnify and keep indemnified the Licensor from and against any loss, cost, damage or expense (including without limitation damages paid to a third party and any reasonable legal costs) incurred by the Licensor as a result of such infringement.

4. Termination

Without prejudice to any other rights, the Licensor may terminate this licence if You fail to comply with the terms and conditions of the licence. In such event, You must destroy all copies of the CD-ROM.

5. Governing law

This agreement is governed by the laws of England, without regard to its conflict of laws provision, and each party irrevocably submits to the exclusive jurisdiction of the English courts. The parties disclaim the application of the United Nations Convention on the International Sale of Goods.

CAMBRIDGE

THE WORLD'S BEST-SELLING GRAMMAR BOOK

ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE

A self-study reference and practice book for intermediate learners of English

with answers

Fifth Edition

Raymond Murphy

Experience
Better
Learning

www.derakhtejavidan.com

ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE

A self-study reference and
practice book for intermediate
learners of English

with answers

Fifth Edition

Raymond Murphy

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom

One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA

477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia

314–321, 3rd Floor, Plot 3, Splendor Forum, Jasola District Centre, New Delhi – 110025, India

79 Anson Road, #06-04/06, Singapore 079906

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9781108457651

© Cambridge University Press 1985, 1994, 2004, 2012, 2019

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1985
Second edition 1994
Third edition 2004
Fourth edition 2012
Fifth edition 2019

20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

Printed in Malaysia by Vivar Printing

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-1-108-45765-1 Student's Book with answers
ISBN 978-1-108-58662-7 Student's Book with answers and ebook
ISBN 978-1-108-45768-2 Student's Book without answers
ISBN 978-1-108-45771-2 Interactive ebook
ISBN 978-1-108-45773-6 Supplementary Exercises

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

Thanks vii
To the student viii
To the teacher x

Present and past

1 Present continuous (**I am doing**)
2 Present simple (**I do**)
3 Present continuous and present simple 1 (**I am doing** and **I do**)
4 Present continuous and present simple 2 (**I am doing** and **I do**)
5 Past simple (**I did**)
6 Past continuous (**I was doing**)

Present perfect and past

7 Present perfect 1 (**I have done**)
8 Present perfect 2 (**I have done**)
9 Present perfect continuous (**I have been doing**)
10 Present perfect continuous and simple (**I have been doing** and **I have done**)
11 **how long have you** (**been**) **… ?**
12 **for** and **since** **when … ?** and **how long … ?**
13 Present perfect and past 1 (**I have done** and **I did**)
14 Present perfect and past 2 (**I have done** and **I did**)
15 Past perfect (**I had done**)
16 Past perfect continuous (**I had been doing**)
17 **have** and **have got**
18 **used to** (**do**)

Future

19 Present tenses (**I am doing** / **I do**) for the future
20 **I'm going to** (**do**)
21 **will** and **shall** 1
22 **will** and **shall** 2
23 **I will** and **I'm going to**
24 **will be doing** and **will have done**
25 **when I do** and **when I've done** **if** and **when**

Modals

26 **can**, **could** and (**be**) **able to**
27 **could** (**do**) and **could have** (**done**)
28 **must** and **can't**
29 **may** and **might** 1
30 **may** and **might** 2
31 **have to** and **must**
32 **must** **mustn't** **needn't**
33 **should** 1
34 **should** 2
35 **I'd better …** **it's time …**
36 **would**
37 **can**/**could**/**would you … ?** etc. (Requests, offers, permission and invitations)

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY, USE THE **STUDY GUIDE** ON PAGE 326.

if** and **wish

38 **if I do …** and **if I did …**

39 **if I knew …** **I wish I knew …**

40 **if I had known …** **I wish I had known …**

41 **wish**

Passive

42 Passive 1 (**is done** / **was done**)

43 Passive 2 (**be done** / **been done** / **being done**)

44 Passive 3

45 **it is said that …** **he is said to …** **he is supposed to …**

46 **have** something **done**

Reported speech

47 Reported speech 1 (**he said that …**)

48 Reported speech 2

Questions and auxiliary verbs

49 Questions 1

50 Questions 2 (**do you know where … ?** / **he asked me where …**)

51 Auxiliary verbs (**have**/**do**/**can** etc.) **I think so** / **I hope so** etc.

52 Question tags (**do you**? **isn't it**? etc.)

-ing** and **to …

53 Verb + **-ing** (**enjoy doing** / **stop doing** etc.)

54 Verb + **to …** (**decide to …** / **forget to …** etc.)

55 Verb (+ object) + **to …** (**I want you to …**)

56 Verb + **-ing** or **to …** 1 (**remember**, **regret** etc.)

57 Verb + **-ing** or **to …** 2 (**try**, **need**, **help**)

58 Verb + **-ing** or **to …** 3 (**like** / **would like** etc.)

59 **prefer** and **would rather**

60 Preposition (**in**/**for**/**about** etc.) + **-ing**

61 **be**/**get used to …** (**I'm used to …**)

62 Verb + preposition + **-ing** (**succeed in -ing** / **insist on -ing** etc.)

63 **there's no point in -ing**, **it's worth -ing** etc.

64 **to …** , **for …** and **so that …**

65 Adjective + **to …**

66 **to …** (afraid **to do**) and preposition + **-ing** (afraid **of -ing**)

67 **see somebody do** and **see somebody doing**

68 **-ing** clauses (He hurt his knee **playing football**.)

Articles and nouns

69 Countable and uncountable 1

70 Countable and uncountable 2

71 Countable nouns with **a**/**an** and **some**

72 **a**/**an** and **the**

73 **the** 1

74 **the** 2 (**school** / **the school** etc.)

75 **the** 3 (**children** / **the children**)

76 **the** 4 (**the giraffe** / **the telephone** / **the old** etc.)

77 Names with and without **the** 1

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY, USE THE **STUDY GUIDE** ON PAGE 326.

78 Names with and without **the** 2
79 Singular and plural
80 Noun + noun (a **bus driver** / a **headache**)
81 **-'s** (**your sister's** name) and **of …** (the name **of the book**)

Pronouns and determiners

82 **myself**/**yourself**/**themselves** etc.
83 a friend **of mine**   **my own** house   **on my own** / **by myself**
84 **there …** and **it …**
85 **some** and **any**
86 **no**/**none**/**any**   **nothing**/**nobody** etc.
87 **much**, **many**, **little**, **few**, **a lot**, **plenty**
88 **all** / **all of**   **most** / **most of**   **no** / **none of** etc.
89 **both** / **both of**   **neither** / **neither of**   **either** / **either of**
90 **all**   **every**   **whole**
91 **each** and **every**

Relative clauses

92 Relative clauses 1: clauses with **who**/**that**/**which**
93 Relative clauses 2: clauses with and without **who**/**that**/**which**
94 Relative clauses 3: **whose**/**whom**/**where**
95 Relative clauses 4: extra information clauses (1)
96 Relative clauses 5: extra information clauses (2)
97 **-ing** and **-ed** clauses (the woman **talking to Tom**, the boy **injured in the accident**)

Adjectives and adverbs

98 Adjectives ending in **-ing** and **-ed** (**boring**/**bored** etc.)
99 Adjectives: a **nice new** house, you look **tired**
100 Adjectives and adverbs 1 (**quick**/**quickly**)
101 Adjectives and adverbs 2 (**well**, **fast**, **late**, **hard**/**hardly**)
102 **so** and **such**
103 **enough** and **too**
104 **quite**, **pretty**, **rather** and **fairly**
105 Comparative 1 (**cheaper**, **more expensive** etc.)
106 Comparative 2 (**much better** / **any better** etc.)
107 Comparative 3 (**as … as** / **than**)
108 Superlative (**the longest**, **the most enjoyable** etc.)
109 Word order 1: verb + object; place and time
110 Word order 2: adverbs with the verb
111 **still**   **any more**   **yet**   **already**
112 **even**

Conjunctions and prepositions

113 **although**   **though**   **even though**   **in spite of**   **despite**
114 **in case**
115 **unless**   **as long as**   **provided**
116 **as** (**as** I walked … / **as** I was … etc.)
117 **like** and **as**
118 **like**   **as if**
119 **during**   **for**   **while**
120 **by** and **until**   **by the time …**

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY, USE THE **STUDY GUIDE** ON PAGE 326.

Prepositions

121 **at**/**on**/**in** (time)
122 **on time** and **in time** **at the end** and **in the end**
123 **in**/**at**/**on** (position) 1
124 **in**/**at**/**on** (position) 2
125 **in**/**at**/**on** (position) 3
126 **to**, **at**, **in** and **into**
127 **in**/**on**/**at** (other uses)
128 **by**
129 Noun + preposition (**reason for**, **cause of** etc.)
130 Adjective + preposition 1
131 Adjective + preposition 2
132 Verb + preposition 1 **to** and **at**
133 Verb + preposition 2 **about**/**for**/**of**/**after**
134 Verb + preposition 3 **about** and **of**
135 Verb + preposition 4 **of**/**for**/**from**/**on**
136 Verb + preposition 5 **in**/**into**/**with**/**to**/**on**

Phrasal verbs

137 Phrasal verbs 1 Introduction
138 Phrasal verbs 2 **in**/**out**
139 Phrasal verbs 3 **out**
140 Phrasal verbs 4 **on**/**off** (1)
141 Phrasal verbs 5 **on**/**off** (2)
142 Phrasal verbs 6 **up**/**down**
143 Phrasal verbs 7 **up** (1)
144 Phrasal verbs 8 **up** (2)
145 Phrasal verbs 9 **away**/**back**

Appendix 1 Regular and irregular verbs 292
Appendix 2 Present and past tenses 294
Appendix 3 The future 295
Appendix 4 Modal verbs (**can**/**could**/**will**/**would** etc.) 296
Appendix 5 Short forms (**I'm** / **you've** / **didn't** etc.) 297
Appendix 6 Spelling 298
Appendix 7 American English 300

Additional exercises 302

Study guide 326

Key to Exercises 336
Key to Additional exercises 368
Key to Study guide 372

Index 373

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY, USE THE **STUDY GUIDE** ON PAGE 326.

Thanks

This is the fifth edition of *English Grammar in Use*. I wrote the original edition when I was a teacher at the Swan School of English, Oxford. I would like to repeat my thanks to my former colleagues and students at the school for their help, encouragement and interest at that time.

Regarding the production of this fifth edition, I would like to thank Rebecca Winthrop and Chris Capper.

Design & Illustrations
Q2A Media Services Pvt. Ltd.

To the student

This book is for students who want help with English grammar. It is written for you to use without a teacher.

The book will be useful for you if you are not sure of the answers to questions like these:

- What is the difference between *I did* and *I have done*?
- When do we use *will* for the future?
- What is the structure after *I wish*?
- When do we say *used to do* and when do we say *used to doing*?
- When do we use *the*?
- What is the difference between *like* and *as*?

These and many other points of English grammar are explained in the book, and there are exercises on each point.

Level

The book is intended mainly for *intermediate* students (students who have already studied the basic grammar of English). It concentrates on those structures that intermediate students want to use, but that often cause difficulty. Some advanced students who have problems with grammar will also find the book useful.

The book is *not* suitable for elementary learners.

How the book is organised

There are 145 units in the book. Each unit concentrates on a particular point of grammar. Some problems (for example, the present perfect or the use of *the*) are covered in more than one unit. For a list of units, see the *Contents* at the beginning of the book.

Each unit consists of two facing pages. On the left there are explanations and examples; on the right there are exercises. At the back of the book there is an Answer Key for you to check your answers to the exercises (page 336).

There are also seven *Appendices* at the back of the book (pages 292–301). These include irregular verbs, summaries of verb forms, spelling, and American English.

Finally, there is a detailed *Index* at the back of the book (page 373).

How to use the book

The units are not in order of difficulty, so it is not intended that you work through the book from beginning to end. Every learner has different problems, and you should use this book to help you with the grammar that *you* find difficult.

It is suggested that you work in this way:

- Use the *Contents* and/or *Index* to find which unit deals with the point you are interested in.
- If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the *Study guide* on page 326.
- Study the explanations and examples on the left-hand page of the unit you have chosen.
- Do the exercises on the right-hand page.
- Check your answers with the *Key*.
- If your answers are not correct, study the left-hand page again to see what went wrong.

You can, of course, use the book simply as a reference book without doing the exercises.

Additional exercises

At the back of the book there are *Additional exercises* (pages 302–325). These exercises bring together some of the grammar points from a number of different units. For example, Exercise 16 brings together grammar points from Units 26–36. You can use these exercises for extra practice after you have studied and practised the grammar in the units concerned.

ebook

An ebook version of *English Grammar in Use* is also available to buy.

To the teacher

English Grammar in Use was written as a self-study grammar book, but teachers may also find it useful as additional course material in cases where further work on grammar is necessary.

The book will probably be most useful at middle- and upper-intermediate levels (where all or nearly all of the material will be relevant), and can serve both as a basis for revision and as a means for practising new structures. It will also be useful for some more advanced students who have problems with grammar and need a book for reference and practice. The book is not intended to be used by elementary learners.

The units are organised in grammatical categories (*Present and past*, *Articles and nouns*, *Prepositions* etc.). They are not ordered according to level of difficulty, so the book should not be worked through from beginning to end. It should be used selectively and flexibly in accordance with the grammar syllabus being used and the difficulties students are having.

The book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help. The left-hand pages (explanations and examples) are written for the student to use individually, but they may of course be used by the teacher as a source of ideas and information on which to base a lesson. The student then has the left-hand page as a record of what has been taught and can refer to it in the future. The exercises can be done individually, in class or as homework. Alternatively (and additionally), individual students can be directed to study certain units of the book by themselves if they have particular difficulties not shared by other students in their class. Don't forget the *Additional exercises* at the back of the book (see **To the student**).

English Grammar in Use Fifth Edition

This is a new edition of English Grammar in Use. The differences between this edition and the fourth edition are:

- Much of the material has been revised or reorganised, and in most units there are changes in the examples, explanations and exercises.
- The book has been redesigned with new, updated illustrations.
- There is a new ebook available with all the contents of the book as well as audio, access to a dictionary and more.

An edition of English Grammar in Use without the Key is also available. Some teachers may prefer to use this with their students.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Unit
1

Present continuous (**I am doing**)

A

Study this example situation:

Sarah is in her car. She is on her way to work.
She**'s driving** to work. (= She **is driving** . . .)

This means: she is driving *now*, at the time of speaking.
The action is not finished.

am/**is**/**are** + **-ing** is the *present continuous*:

I	**am**	(= I**'m**)	**driving**
he/she/it	**is**	(= he**'s** etc.)	**working**
we/you/they	**are**	(= we**'re** etc.)	**doing** etc.

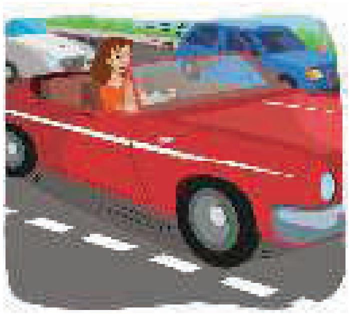

B

I am doing something = I started doing it and I haven't finished; I'm in the middle of doing it.

- Please don't make so much noise. I**'m trying** to work. (*not* I try)
- 'Where's Mark?' 'He**'s having** a shower.' (*not* He has a shower)
- Let's go out now. It **isn't raining** any more. (*not* It doesn't rain)
- How's your new job? **Are** you **enjoying** it?
- What's all that noise? What**'s going** on? *or* What**'s happening**?

Sometimes the action is not happening at the time of speaking. For example:

Steve is talking to a friend on the phone. He says:

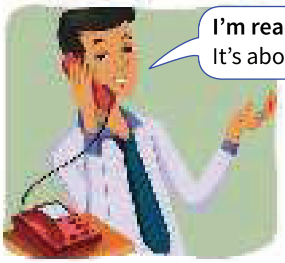

I'm reading a really good book at the moment.
It's about a man who . . .

Steve says '**I'm reading** . . .' but he is *not* reading the book at the time of speaking.
He means that he has started reading the book, but has not finished it yet. He is in the middle of reading it.

Some more examples:

- Kate wants to work in Italy, so she**'s learning** Italian.
  (but perhaps she isn't learning Italian at the time of speaking)
- Some friends of mine **are building** their own house. They hope to finish it next summer.

C

You can use the present continuous with **today** / **this week** / **this year** etc. (periods around now):

- A: You**'re working** hard **today**. (*not* You work hard today)
  B: Yes, I have a lot to do.
- The company I work for **isn't doing** so well **this year**.

D

We use the present continuous when we talk about a change that has started to happen. We often use these verbs in this way:

getting, **becoming**	**changing**, **improving**
starting, **beginning**	**increasing**, **rising**, **falling**, **growing**

- Is your English **getting** better? (*not* Does your English get better)
- The population of the world **is increasing** very fast. (*not* increases)
- At first I didn't like my job, but I**'m starting** to enjoy it now. (*not* I start)

Present continuous and present simple ➜ **Units 3–4** Present tenses for the future ➜ **Unit 19**

Exercises

1.1 **What's happening in the pictures? Choose from these verbs:**

cross **hide** **scratch** ~~**take**~~ **tie** **wave**

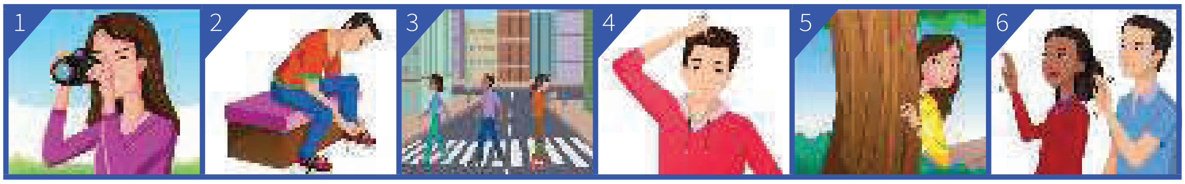

1 ....She's taking.... a picture.
2 He .... a shoelace.
3 .... the road.
4 .... his head.
5 .... behind a tree.
6 .... to somebody.

1.2 **The sentences on the right follow those on the left. Which sentence goes with which?**

1 Please don't make so much noise.
2 We need to leave soon.
3 I don't have anywhere to live right now.
4 I need to eat something soon.
5 They don't need their car any more.
6 Things are not so good at work.
7 It isn't true what they say.
8 We're going to get wet.

a I'm getting hungry.
b They're lying.
c It's starting to rain.
d They're trying to sell it.
e It's getting late.
f ~~I'm trying to work.~~
g I'm staying with friends.
h The company is losing money.

1 ....f....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

1.3 **Write questions. Use the present continuous.**

1 What's all that noise? ....What's happening?.................... (what / happen?)
2 What's the matter? .... (why / you / cry?)
3 Where's your mother? .... (she / work / today?)
4 I haven't seen you for ages. .... (what / you / do / these days?)
5 Amy is a student. .... (what / she / study?)
6 Who are those people? .... (what / they / do?)
7 I heard you started a new job. .... (you / enjoy / it?)
8 We're not in a hurry. .... (why / you / walk / so fast?)

1.4 **Put the verb into the correct form, positive (I'm doing etc.) or negative (I'm not doing etc.).**

1 Please don't make so much noise. ....I'm trying.... (I / try) to work.
2 Let's go out now. ....It isn't raining.... (it / rain) any more.
3 You can turn off the radio. .... (I / listen) to it.
4 Kate phoned last night. She's on holiday with friends. .... (She / have) a great time and doesn't want to come back.
5 Andrew started evening classes recently. .... (He / learn) Japanese.
6 Paul and Sarah have had an argument and now .... (they / speak) to one another.
7 The situation is already very bad and now .... (it / get) worse.
8 Tim .... (work) today. He's taken the day off.
9 .... (I / look) for Sophie. Do you know where she is?
10 The washing machine has been repaired. .... (It / work) now.
11 .... (They / build) a new hospital. It will be finished next year.
12 Ben is a student, but he's not very happy. .... (He / enjoy) his course.
13 .... (The weather / change). Look at those clouds. I think it's going to rain.
14 Dan has been in the same job for a long time. .... (He / start) to get bored with it.

Unit
2

Present simple (**I do**)

A

Study this example situation:

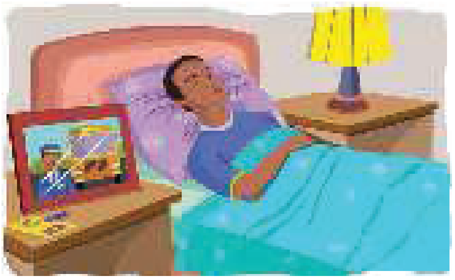

Alex is a bus driver, but now he is in bed asleep.
He is not driving a bus. (He is asleep.)

but He **drives** a bus. He is a bus driver.

drive(**s**), **work**(**s**), **do**(**es**) etc. is the *present simple*:

I/we/you/they	**drive**/**work**/**do** etc.
he/she/it	**drives**/**works**/**does** etc.

B

We use the present simple to talk about things in general. We use it to say that something happens all the time or repeatedly, or that something is true in general:

☐ Nurses **look** after patients in hospitals.
☐ I usually **go** away at weekends.
☐ The earth **goes** round the sun.
☐ The cafe **opens** at 7.30 in the morning.

We say:

I **work**	*but*	he **works**	you **go**	*but*	it **goes**
they **teach**	*but*	my sister **teaches**	I **have**	*but*	he **has**

For spelling (-**s** or -**es**), see Appendix 6.

C

We use **do**/**does** to make questions and negative sentences:

do **does**	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**work**? **drive**? **do**?

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**don't** **doesn't**	**work** **drive** **do**

☐ I come from Canada. Where **do** you **come** from?
☐ I **don't go** away very often.
☐ What **does** this word **mean**? (*not* What means this word?)
☐ Rice **doesn't grow** in cold climates.

In the following examples, **do** is also the main verb (do you **do** / doesn't **do** etc.):

☐ 'What **do** you **do**?' 'I work in a shop.'
☐ He's always so lazy. He **doesn't do** anything to help.

D

We use the present simple to say how often we do things:

☐ **I get** up at 8 o'clock **every morning**.
☐ **How often do** you **go** to the dentist?
☐ Julie **doesn't drink** tea **very often**.
☐ Robert usually **goes** away **two or three times a year**.

E

I promise / **I apologise** etc.

Sometimes we do things by saying something. For example, when you promise to do something, you can say '**I promise** . . .'; when you suggest something, you can say '**I suggest** . . .':

☐ **I promise** I won't be late. (*not* I'm promising)
☐ 'What do **you suggest** I do?' '**I suggest** that you . . .'

In the same way we say: **I apologise** . . . / **I advise** . . . / **I insist** . . . / **I agree** . . . / **I refuse** . . . etc.

Present simple and present continuous ➜ **Units 3–4** Present tenses for the future ➜ **Unit 19**

Exercises

2.1 **Complete the sentences using the following verbs:**

cause(s) close(s) connect(s) go(es) live(s) ~~speak(s)~~ take(s)

1 Tanya ....speaks.... German very well.
2 Ben and Jack .... to the same school.
3 Bad driving .... many accidents.
4 The museum .... at 4 o'clock on Sundays.
5 My parents .... in a very small flat.
6 The Olympic Games .... place every four years.
7 The Panama Canal .... the Atlantic and Pacific oceans.

2.2 **Put the verb into the correct form.**

1 Julia ....doesn't drink.... (not / drink) tea very often.
2 What time .... (the banks / close) here?
3 I have a car, but I .... (not / use) it much.
4 Where .... (Maria / come) from? Is she Spanish?
5 'What .... (you / do)?' 'I'm an electrician.'
6 Look at this sentence. What .... (this word / mean)?
7 David isn't very fit. He .... (not / do) any sport.
8 It .... (take) me an hour to get to work in the morning. How long .... (it / take) you?

2.3 **Complete the sentences using these verbs. Sometimes you need the negative.**

believe eat flow ~~go~~ ~~grow~~ make rise tell translate

1 The earth ....goes.... round the sun.
2 Rice ....doesn't grow.... in cold climates.
3 The sun .... in the east.
4 Bees .... honey.
5 Vegetarians .... meat.
6 An atheist .... in God.
7 An interpreter .... from one language into another.
8 Liars are people who .... the truth.
9 The River Amazon .... into the Atlantic Ocean.

2.4 **You ask Lisa questions about herself and her family. Write the questions.**

1 You know that Lisa plays tennis. You want to know how often. Ask her.
How often ....do you play tennis.... ?
2 Perhaps Lisa's sister plays tennis too. You want to know. Ask Lisa.
.... your sister .... ?
3 You know that Lisa goes to the cinema a lot. You want to know how often. Ask her.
.... ?
4 You know that Lisa's brother works. You want to know what he does. Ask Lisa.
.... ?
5 You're not sure whether Lisa speaks Spanish. You want to know. Ask her.
.... ?
6 You don't know where Lisa's grandparents live. You want to know. Ask Lisa.
.... ?

2.5 **Complete using the following:**

I agree I apologise I insist I promise I recommend ~~I suggest~~

1 Mr Evans is not in the office today. ....I suggest.... you try calling him tomorrow.
2 I won't tell anybody what you said. ....
3 *(in a restaurant)* You must let me pay for the meal. ....
4 .... for what I said. I shouldn't have said it.
5 The new restaurant in Baker Street is very good. .... it.
6 I think you're absolutely right. .... with you.

Unit 3

Present continuous and present simple 1 (**I am doing** and **I do**)

A

Compare:

present continuous (**I am doing**)	*present simple* (**I do**)
We use the continuous for things happening at or around the time of speaking. The action is not complete.	We use the simple for things in general or things that happen repeatedly.

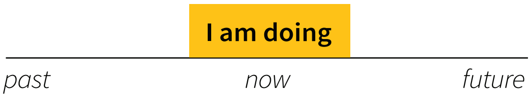

○ The water **is boiling**. Be careful.
○ Listen to those people. What language **are** they **speaking**?
○ Let's go out. It **isn't raining** now.
○ 'I'm busy.' 'What **are** you **doing**?'
○ I'**m getting** hungry. Let's go and eat.
○ Kate wants to work in Italy, so she'**s learning** Italian.
○ The population of the world **is increasing** very fast.

We use the continuous for *temporary* situations (things that continue for a short time):

○ I'**m living** with some friends until I find a place of my own.
○ A: You'**re working** hard today.
B: Yes, I have a lot to do.

See Unit 1 for more information.

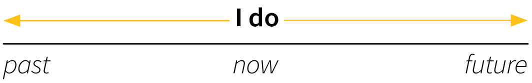

○ Water **boils** at 100 degrees Celsius.
○ Excuse me, **do** you **speak** English?

○ It **doesn't rain** very much in summer.
○ What **do** you usually **do** at weekends?
○ I always **get** hungry in the afternoon.
○ Most people **learn** to swim when they are children.
○ Every day the population of the world **increases** by about 200,000 people.

We use the simple for *permanent* situations (things that continue for a long time):

○ My parents **live** in London. They have lived there all their lives.
○ Joe isn't lazy. He **works** hard most of the time.

See Unit 2 for more information.

B

I always do and **I'm always doing**

I **always do** something = I do it every time:

○ I **always go** to work by car. (*not* I'm always going)

I'**m always doing** something = I do it too often or more often than normal.
For example:

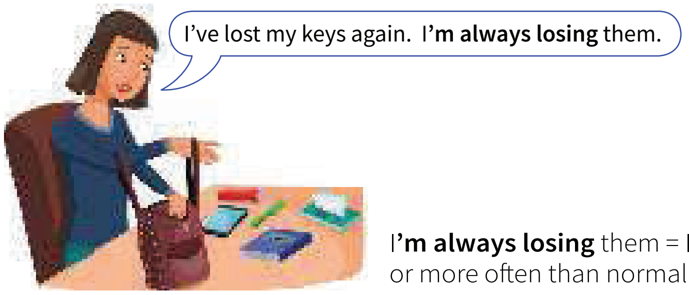
I've lost my keys again. I'**m always losing** them.

I'**m always losing** them = I lose them too often, or more often than normal.

○ Paul is never satisfied. He'**s always complaining**. (= he complains too much)
○ You'**re always looking** at your phone. Don't you have anything else to do?

Present continuous and simple 2 ➜ **Unit 4** Present tenses for the future ➜ **Unit 19**

Exercises

3.1 Are the underlined verbs OK? Correct them where necessary.

1 Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius. OK
2 How often are you going to the cinema? do you go
3 Ben tries to find a job, but he hasn't had any luck yet. ....
4 Martina is phoning her mother every day. ....
5 The moon goes round the earth in about 27 days. ....
6 Can you hear those people? What do they talk about? ....
7 What do you do in your spare time? ....
8 Sarah is a vegetarian. She doesn't eat meat. ....
9 I must go now. It gets late. ....
10 'Come on! It's time to leave.' 'OK, I come.' ....
11 Paul is never late. He's always starting work on time. ....
12 They don't get on well. They're always arguing. ....

3.2 Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or present simple.

1 a I usually get (I / usually / get) hungry in the afternoon.
b I'm getting (I / get) hungry. Let's go and eat something.
2 a '........ (you / listen) to the radio?' 'No, you can turn it off.'
b '........ (you / listen) to the radio a lot?' 'No, not very often.'
3 a The River Nile .... (flow) into the Mediterranean.
b The river .... (flow) very fast today – much faster than usual.
4 a I'm not very active. .... (I / not / do) any sport.
b What .... (you / usually / do) at weekends?
5 a Rachel is in New York right now. .... (She / stay) at the Park Hotel.
b .... (She / always / stay) there when she's in New York.

3.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or present simple.

1 Why are all these people here? What's happening (What / happen)?
2 Julia is good at languages. .... (She / speak) four languages very well.
3 Are you ready yet? .... (Everybody / wait) for you.
4 I've never heard this word. How .... (you / pronounce) it?
5 Kate .... (not / work) this week. She's on holiday.
6 I think my English .... (improve) slowly. It's better than it was.
7 Nicola .... (live) in Manchester. She has never lived anywhere else.
8 Can we stop walking soon? .... (I / start) to get tired.
9 Sam and Tina are in Madrid right now. .... (They / visit) a friend of theirs.
10 'What .... (your father / do)?' 'He's an architect.'
11 It took me an hour to get to work this morning. Most days .... (it / not / take) so long.
12 I .... (I / learn) to drive. My driving test is next month. My father .... (teach) me.

3.4 Finish B's sentences. Use always -ing.

1 A: I've lost my keys again.
B: Not again! You're always losing your keys.
2 A: The car has broken down again.
B: That car is useless. It ....
3 A: Look! You've made the same mistake again.
B: Oh no, not again! I ....
4 A: Oh, I've left my phone at home again.
B: Typical! ....

Unit 4

Present continuous and present simple 2 (**I am doing** and **I do**)

A

We use continuous forms (I**'m waiting**, it**'s raining** etc.) for actions and happenings that have started but not finished.
Some verbs (for example, **know** and **like**) are not normally used in this way. We don't say 'I am knowing', 'they are liking'. We say 'I **know**', 'they **like**'.

The following verbs are not normally used in the present continuous:

like	**want**	**need**	**prefer**	
know	**realise**	**understand**	**recognise**	
believe	**suppose**	**remember**	**mean**	
belong	**fit**	**contain**	**consist**	**seem**

☐ I'm hungry. I **want** something to eat. (*not* I'm wanting)
☐ **Do** you **understand** what I **mean**?
☐ Anna **doesn't seem** very happy right now.

B

think

When **think** means 'believe' or 'have an opinion', we do not use the continuous:
☐ I **think** Mary is Canadian, but I'm not sure. (*not* I'm thinking)
☐ What **do** you **think** of my idea? (= what is your opinion?)

When **think** means 'consider', the continuous is possible:
☐ I**'m thinking** about what happened. I often **think** about it.
☐ Nicky **is thinking** of giving up her job. (= she is considering it)

C

see **hear** **smell** **taste** **look** **feel**

We normally use the present simple (not continuous) with **see**/**hear**/**smell**/**taste**:
☐ **Do** you **see** that man over there? (*not* are you seeing)
☐ The room **smells**. Let's open a window.
☐ This soup **doesn't taste** very good.

You can use the present simple or continuous to say how somebody **looks** or **feels** now:
☐ You **look** well today. *or* You**'re looking** well today.
☐ How **do** you **feel** now? *or* How **are** you **feeling** now?

but

☐ I usually **feel** tired in the morning. (*not* I'm usually feeling)

D

am/**is**/**are being**

You can say **he's being** . . . , **you're being** . . . etc. to say how somebody is behaving *now*:
☐ I can't understand why he**'s being** so selfish. He isn't usually like that.
(**being** selfish = behaving selfishly now)
☐ 'The path is icy. Don't slip.' 'Don't worry. I**'m being** very careful.'

Compare:
☐ He never thinks about other people. He**'s** very selfish.
(= he is selfish generally, not only now)
☐ I don't like to take risks. I**'m** a very careful person.

We use **am**/**is**/**are being** to say how a person is *behaving* (= doing something they can control) now.
It is not usually possible in other situations:
☐ Sam **is** ill. (*not* is being ill)
☐ **Are** you tired? (*not* are you being tired)

Present continuous and simple 1 ➜ **Unit 3** **have** ➜ **Unit 17** Present tenses for the future ➜ **Unit 19**

Exercises

4.1 Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or present simple.

1 Are you hungry? Do you want (you / want) something to eat?
2 Alan says he's 90 years old, but nobody .... (believe) him.
3 She told me her name, but .... (I / not / remember) it now.
4 Don't put the dictionary away. .... (I / use) it.
5 Don't put the dictionary away. .... (I / need) it.
6 Air .... (consist) mainly of nitrogen and oxygen.
7 Who is that man? What .... (he / want)?
8 Who is that man? Why .... (he / look) at us?
9 Who is that man? .... (you / recognise) him?
10 .... (I / think) of selling my car. Would you be interested in buying it?
11 I can't make up my mind. What .... (you / think) I should do?
12 Gary wasn't well earlier, but .... (he / seem) OK now.

4.2 Use the words in brackets to make sentences.

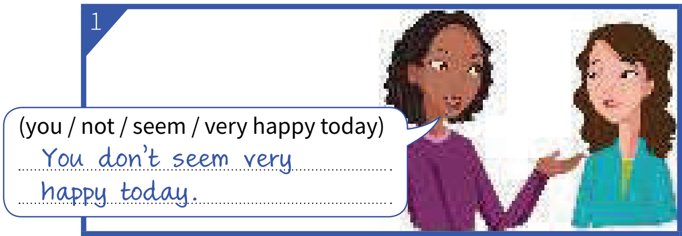
1
(you / not / seem / very happy today)
You don't seem very happy today.

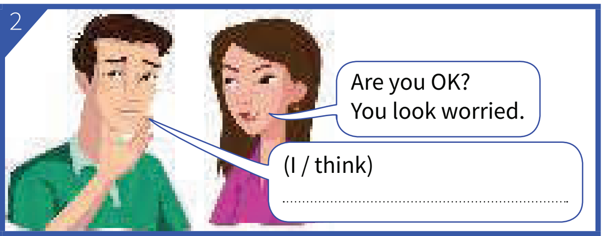
2
Are you OK? You look worried.
(I / think)
....

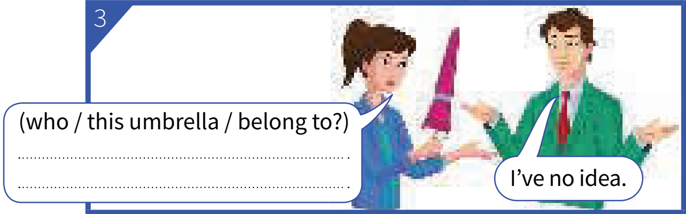
3
(who / this umbrella / belong to?)
....
....
I've no idea.

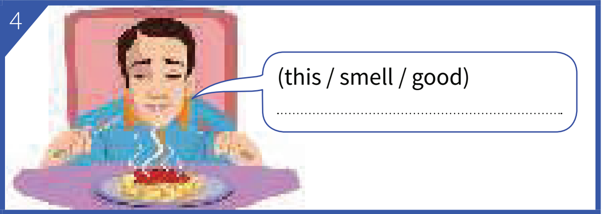
4
(this / smell / good)
....

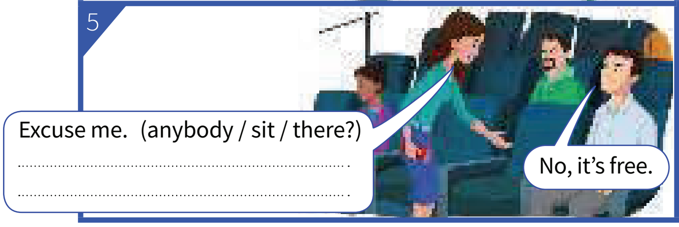
5
Excuse me. (anybody / sit / there?)
....
....
No, it's free.

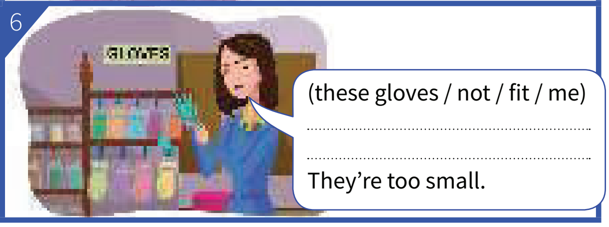
6
GLOVES
(these gloves / not / fit / me)
....
....
They're too small.

4.3 Are the underlined verbs OK? Correct them where necessary.

1 Nicky is thinking of giving up her job. OK
2 It's not true. I'm not believing it. I don't believe it.
3 I'm feeling hungry. Is there anything to eat? ....
4 I've never eaten that fruit. What is it tasting like? ....
5 I'm not sure what she does. I think she works in a shop. ....
6 Look over there. What are you seeing? ....
7 You're very quiet. What are you thinking about? ....

4.4 Complete the sentences. Use is/are being (continuous) or is/are (simple).

1 I can't understand why he's being so selfish. He isn't usually like that.
2 You'll like Sophie when you meet her. She .... very nice.
3 Sarah .... very nice to me at the moment. I wonder why.
4 They .... very happy. They've just got married.
5 You're normally very patient, so why .... so unreasonable about waiting ten more minutes?
6 Would you like something to eat? .... hungry?

Unit
5

Past simple (**I did**)

A

Study this example:

Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart **was** an Austrian musician and composer. He **lived** from 1756 to 1791. He **started** composing at the age of five and **wrote** more than 600 pieces of music. He **was** only 35 years old when he **died**.

lived/**started**/**wrote**/**was**/**died** are all *past simple*

W.A. Mozart
1756-1791

B

Very often the past simple ends in **-ed** (*regular* verbs):

○ I work in a travel agency now. Before that I **worked** in a department store.
○ They **invited** us to their party, but we **decided** not to go.
○ The police **stopped** me on my way home last night.
○ Laura **passed** her exam because she **studied** very hard.

For spelling (sto**pp**ed, stud**ied** etc.), see Appendix 6.

But many verbs are *irregular*. The past simple does *not* end in **-ed**. For example:

write	→	**wrote**	○ Mozart **wrote** more than 600 pieces of music.
see	→	**saw**	○ We **saw** Alice in town a few days ago.
go	→	**went**	○ I **went** to the cinema three times last week.
shut	→	**shut**	○ It was cold, so I **shut** the window.

For a list of irregular verbs, see Appendix 1.

C

In questions and negative sentences we use **did**/**didn't** + infinitive (**enjoy**/**see**/**go** etc.):

I she they	enjoy**ed** **saw** **went**

did	you she they	**enjoy**? **see**? **go**?

I she they	**didn't**	**enjoy** **see** **go**

○ I enjoyed the party a lot. **Did** you **enjoy** it?
○ How many people **did** they **invite** to the wedding?
○ I **didn't buy** anything because I **didn't have** any money.
○ '**Did** you **go** out?' 'No, I **didn't**.'

Sometimes **do** is the main verb in the sentence (did you **do**?, I didn't **do**):

○ What **did** you **do** at the weekend? (*not* What did you at the weekend?)
○ I **didn't do** anything. (*not* I didn't anything)

D

The past of **be** (**am**/**is**/**are**) is **was**/**were**:

I/he/she/it	**was**/**wasn't**
we/you/they	**were**/**weren't**

was	I/he/she/it?
were	we/you/they?

○ **I was** annoyed because **they were** late.
○ **Was the weather** good when **you were** on holiday?
○ **They weren't** able to come because **they were** so busy.
○ **I wasn't** hungry, so I didn't eat anything.
○ Did you go out last night or **were you** too tired?

Past simple and past continuous ➜ **Unit 6** Past simple and present perfect ➜ **Units 12–14**

Exercises

5.1 **Read what Laura says about a typical working day:**

I usually get up at 7 o'clock and have a big breakfast. I walk to work, which takes me about half an hour. I start work at 8.45. I never have lunch. I finish work at 5 o'clock. I'm always tired when I get home. I usually cook a meal in the evening. I don't usually go out. I go to bed at about 11 o'clock, and I always sleep well.

Yesterday was a typical working day for Laura. Write what she did or didn't do yesterday.

1 ......She got up...... at 7 o'clock.
2 She .... a big breakfast.
3 She ....
4 It .... to get to work.
5 .... at 8.45.
6 .... lunch.
7 .... at 5 o'clock.
8 .... tired when .... home.
9 .... a meal yesterday evening.
10 .... out yesterday evening.
11 .... at 11 o'clock.
12 .... well last night.

5.2 **Complete the sentences using the following verbs in the correct form:**

buy catch cost fall hurt sell spend teach throw ~~write~~

1 Mozart ......wrote...... more than 600 pieces of music.
2 'How did you learn to drive?' 'My father .... me.'
3 We couldn't afford to keep our car, so we .... it.
4 Dave .... down the stairs this morning and .... his leg.
5 Joe .... the ball to Sue, who .... it.
6 Kate .... a lot of money yesterday. She .... a dress which
.... £100.

5.3 **You ask James about his holiday in the US. Write your questions.**

1 YOU: Where ......did you go...... ?
JAMES: To the US. We went on a trip from San Francisco to Denver.
2 YOU: How .... ? By car?
JAMES: Yes, we hired a car in San Francisco.
3 YOU: It's a long way to drive. How long .... ?
JAMES: Two weeks. We stopped at a lot of places along the way.
4 YOU: Where .... ? In hotels?
JAMES: Yes, small hotels or motels.
5 YOU: .... good?
JAMES: Yes, but it was very hot – sometimes too hot.
6 YOU: .... the Grand Canyon?
JAMES: Of course. It was wonderful.

5.4 **Complete the sentences. Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.**

1 It was warm, so I ......took...... off my coat. (take)
2 The film wasn't very good. I ......didn't enjoy...... it much. (enjoy)
3 I knew Sarah was busy, so I .... her. (disturb)
4 We were very tired, so we .... the party early. (leave)
5 It was hard carrying the bags. They .... really heavy. (be)
6 The bed was very uncomfortable. I .... well. (sleep)
7 This watch wasn't expensive. It .... much. (cost)
8 The window was open and a bird .... into the room. (fly)
9 I was in a hurry, so I .... time to call you. (have)
10 I didn't like the hotel. The room .... very clean. (be)

Unit 6

Past continuous (**I was doing**)

A

Study this example situation:

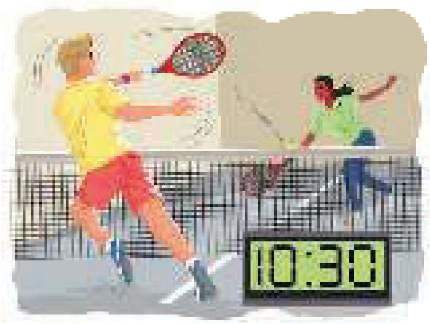

Yesterday Karen and Joe played tennis. They started at 10 o'clock and finished at 11.30.
So, at 10.30 they **were playing** tennis.

they **were playing** =
they were in the middle of playing, they had not finished

was/were + -ing is the past continuous:

he/she/it	**was**	**playing** **doing** **working** etc.
we/you/they	**were**	

B

I **was doing** something = I was in the middle of doing it at a certain time. The action or situation started before this time, but had not finished:

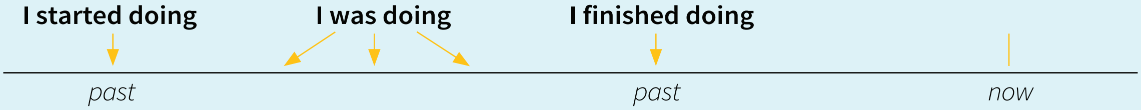

- This time last year I **was living** in Hong Kong.
- What **were** you **doing** at 10 o'clock last night?
- I waved to Helen, but she **wasn't looking**.

C

Compare I **was doing** (*past continuous*) and I **did** (*past simple*):

I **was doing** (= in the middle of an action)	I **did** (= complete action)
We were **walking** home when I met Dan. (in the middle of walking home)	We **walked** home after the party last night. (= all the way, completely)
Kate **was watching** TV when we arrived.	Kate **watched** TV a lot when she was ill last year.

D

You can say that something **happened** (past simple) in the middle of something else (past continuous):

- Matt **phoned** while we **were having** dinner.
- It **was raining** when I **got** up.
- I **saw** you in the park yesterday. You **were sitting** on the grass and **reading** a book.
- I **hurt** my back while I **was working** in the garden.

But we use the past simple to say that one thing happened *after* another:

- I **was walking** along the road when I **saw** Dan. So I **stopped**, and we **talked** for a while.

Compare:

When Karen arrived, we **were having** dinner. (= we had already started before she arrived)	When Karen arrived, we **had** dinner. (= Karen arrived, and then we had dinner)

E

Some verbs (for example, **know** and **want**) are not normally used in continuous forms (**is** + **-ing**, **was** + **-ing** etc.). See Unit 4A for a list of these verbs.

- We were good friends. We **knew** each other well. (*not* we were knowing)
- I was enjoying the party, but Chris **wanted** to go home. (*not* was wanting)

Past simple (**I did**) ➜ **Unit 5**

Exercises

6.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

was looking
was snowing
~~was wearing~~
was working
wasn't listening
were sitting
weren't looking
were you going

1 Today Helen is wearing a skirt. Yesterday she ....was wearing.... trousers.
2 'What did he say?' 'I don't know. I ....'
3 We .... at the back of the theatre. We couldn't hear very well.
4 This time last year Steve .... on a farm.
5 They didn't see me. They .... in my direction.
6 The weather was bad. It was very cold and it ....
7 I saw you in your car. Where .... ?
8 I saw Kate a few minutes ago. She .... for you.

6.2 Which goes with which?

1 When I got to the cafe
2 We fell asleep
3 Amy learnt Italian
4 Tom didn't come out with us
5 The car began to make a strange noise
6 The TV was on
7 When I first met Jessica

a when she was living in Rome.
b she was working in a clothes shop.
c when I was driving home.
d but nobody was watching it.
e while we were watching a film.
f ~~my friends were waiting for me.~~
g because he wasn't feeling well.

1 ....f....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....

6.3 Put the verb into the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1

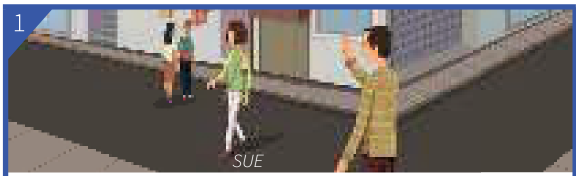

I ....saw.... (see) Sue in town yesterday, but
she .... (not/see) me.
She .... (look) the other way.

2

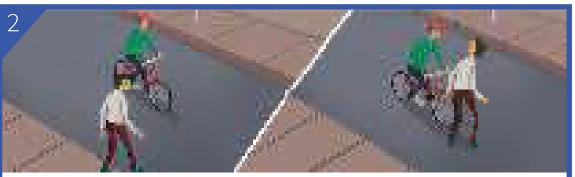

I .... (cycle) home yesterday
when a man .... (step) out into the road in front of me.
I .... (go) quite fast, but luckily
I .... (manage) to stop in time,
and I .... (not/hit) him.

6.4 Put the verb into the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1 Jenny ....was waiting.... (wait) for me when I ....arrived.... (arrive).
2 'What .... (you / do) at this time yesterday?' 'I was asleep.'
3 '....................................... (you / go) out last night?' 'No, I was too tired.'
4 How fast .... (you / drive) when the accident .... (happen)?
5 Sam .... (take) a picture of me while I .... (not / look).
6 We were in a very difficult position. We .... (not / know) what to do, so we .... (do) nothing.
7 I haven't seen Alan for ages. When I last .... (see) him, he .... (try) to find a job.
8 I .... (walk) along the street when suddenly I .... (hear) something behind me. Somebody .... (follow) me. I was scared and I .... (start) to run.
9 When I was young, I .... (want) to be a pilot. Later I .... (change) my mind.
10 Last night I .... (drop) a plate when I .... (do) the washing up. Fortunately it .... (not / break).

➜ Additional exercise 1 (page 302)

Unit
7

Present perfect 1 (**I have done**)

A

Study this example situation:

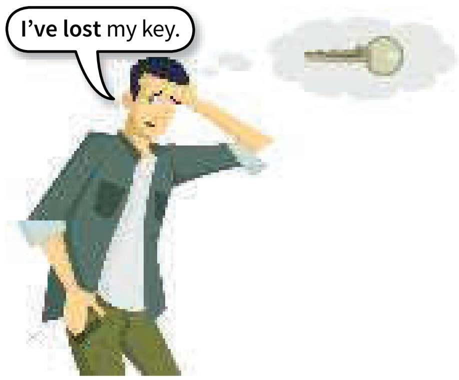
I've lost my key.

Tom can't find his key.
He**'s lost** his key. (= He **has lost** . . .)

he **has lost** his key =
he lost it and he doesn't have it now

have lost / **has lost** is the *present perfect simple*:

I/we/they/you **have** (= I**'ve** etc.)	**finished** **lost** **done** **been** etc.
he/she/it **has** (= he**'s** etc.)	

The present perfect simple is **have**/**has** + *past participle*. The past participle often ends in -**ed** (finish**ed**/decid**ed** etc.), but many verbs are *irregular* (**lost**/**done**/**written** etc.).

For a list of irregular verbs, see Appendix 1.

B

When we say 'something **has happened**', this is usually new information:

- Ow! I**'ve cut** my finger.
- The road is closed. There**'s been** an accident. (= There **has been** . . .)
- Police **have arrested** two men in connection with the robbery.

When we use the present perfect, there is a connection with *now*. The action in the past has a result *now*:

- Tom **has lost** his key. (= he doesn't have it *now*)
- He told me his name, but I**'ve forgotten** it. (= I can't remember it *now*)
- Sally is still here. She **hasn't gone** out. (= she is here *now*)
- I can't find my bag. **Have** you **seen** it? (= do you know where it is *now*?)

Compare **gone** (**to**) and **been** (**to**):

- James is on holiday. He **has gone to** Italy. (= he is there now or on his way there)
- Amy is back home now. She **has been** to Italy. (= she has now come back)

C

You can use the present perfect with **just**, **already** and **yet**.

Just = a short time ago:

- 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I**'ve just had** lunch.'
- Hello. **Have** you **just arrived**?

Already = sooner than expected:

- 'Don't forget to pay the bill.' 'I**'ve already paid** it.'
- 'What time is Mark leaving?' 'He**'s already left**.'

Yet = until now. We use **yet** to show that we are expecting something to happen.
We use **yet** in questions and negative sentences:

- **Has** it **stopped** raining **yet**?
- I've written the email, but I **haven't sent** it **yet**.

D

You can also use the past simple (**did**, **went**, **had** etc.) in the examples on this page. So you can say:

- Ben isn't here. He**'s gone** out. *or* He **went** out.
- 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I**'ve** just **had** lunch.' *or* 'No, I just **had** lunch.'

Present perfect ➜ **Units 8, 11** **been to** ➜ **Units 8A, 126A** Present perfect continuous ➜ **Units 9–10**
Present perfect and past ➜ **Units 12–14** **yet** and **already** ➜ **Unit 111** American English ➜ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

7.1 Read the situations and complete the sentences using the present perfect. Choose from these verbs:

break disappear go up grow improve ~~lose~~ shrink stop

1 Tom is looking for his key. He can't find it. Tom has lost his key.
2 Maria's English wasn't very good. Now it is better. Her English ....
3 My bag was here, but it isn't here any more. My bag ....
4 Lisa can't walk and her leg is in plaster. Lisa ....
5 Last week the bus fare was £1.80. Now it is £2. The bus fare ....
6 Dan didn't have a beard before. Now he has a beard. Dan ....
7 It was raining ten minutes ago. It isn't raining now. It ....
8 I washed my sweater, and now it's too small for me. My sweater ....

7.2 Put in been or gone.

1 My parents are on holiday. They've gone to Italy.
2 Hello! I've just .... to the shops. I've bought lots of things.
3 Tom has just .... out. He'll be back in about an hour.
4 Alice isn't here at the moment. I don't know where she's ....
5 You're very late. Where have you ....?

7.3 Complete the sentences using the present perfect.

1 Sally is still here. She hasn't gone (she / not / go) out.
2 I can't find my bag. .... (you / see / it) anywhere?
3 I can't log on to the website. .... (I / forget) my password.
4 I sent Joe an email this morning, but .... (he / not / reply).
5 Is the meeting still going on, or .... (it / finish)?
6 .... (the weather / change). It's colder now.
7 .... (you / not / sign) the form. Could you sign it now, please?
8 Are your friends still here, or .... (they / go) home?
9 Paul doesn't know what he's going to do. ....
(he / not / decide / yet).
10 'Do you know where Julia is?' 'Yes, ... (I / just / see / her).'
11 'When is David going away?' '........ (he / already / go).'
12 A: .... (your course / start / yet)?
B: Not yet. It starts next week.

7.4 Read the situations and write sentences with just, already or yet.

1 After lunch you go to see a friend at her house. She says, 'Would you like something to eat?'
You say: No thank you. I've just had lunch . (have lunch)
2 Joe goes out. Five minutes later, the phone rings and the caller says, 'Can I speak to Joe?'
You say: I'm afraid .... (go out)
3 You are eating in a restaurant. The waiter thinks you have finished and starts to take your plate away.
You say: Wait a minute! .... (not / finish)
4 You plan to eat at a restaurant tonight. You phone to reserve a table. Later your friend says,
'Shall I phone to reserve a table?' You say: No, ... (do it)
5 You know that Lisa is looking for a place to live. Perhaps she has been successful.
You ask her: .... ? (find)
6 You are still thinking about where to go for your holiday. A friend asks, 'Where are you going
for your holiday?' You say: .... (not / decide)
7 Laura went out, but a few minutes ago she returned. Somebody asks, 'Is Laura still out?'
You say: No, ... (come back)

Unit 8

Present perfect 2 (**I have done**)

A

Study this example conversation:

DAVE: **Have** you **travelled** a lot, Jane?
JANE: Yes, **I've been** to lots of places.
DAVE: Really? **Have** you ever **been** to China?
JANE: Yes, **I've been** to China twice.
DAVE: What about India?
JANE: No, I **haven't been** to India.

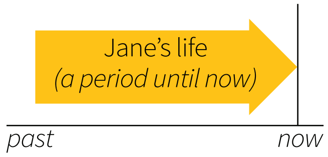

When we talk about a period of time that continues from the past until now, we use the *present perfect* (**have been** / **have travelled** etc.). Here, Dave and Jane are talking about the places Jane **has visited** in her life, which is a period that continues until now.

In the same way we say:

- ☐ **Have** you **ever eaten** caviar?
- ☐ We**'ve** never **had** a car.
- ☐ I don't know what the film is about. I **haven't seen** it.
- ☐ Susan really loves that book. She**'s read** it three times. (She**'s** = She **has**)
- ☐ It's a really boring movie. It's the most boring movie **I've ever seen**.

been (**to**) = visited:

- ☐ I**'ve** never **been to** Canada. Have you **been** there?

B

In the following examples too, the speakers are talking about a period that continues until now (**recently**, **in the last few days**, **so far**, **since I arrived** etc.):

- ☐ **Have** you **heard** anything from Ben **recently**?
- ☐ I**'ve met** a lot of people **in the last few days**.
- ☐ Everything is going well. There **haven't been** any problems **so far**.
- ☐ The weather is bad here. It**'s** (= It **has**) **rained** every day **since I arrived**. (= from when I arrived until now)
- ☐ It's good to see you again. We **haven't seen** each other **for a long time**.

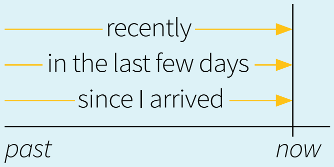

In the same way we use the present perfect with **today**, **this evening**, **this year** etc. when these periods are not finished at the time of speaking:

- ☐ **I've drunk** four cups of coffee **today**.
- ☐ **Have** you **had** a holiday **this year**?
- ☐ I **haven't seen** Tom **this morning**. **Have** you?

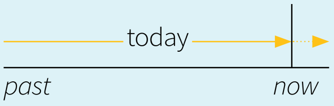

C

We say 'It's the (first) time something **has happened**'. For example:

Don is having a driving lesson. It's his first lesson.
We can say:

- ☐ It's the first time he **has driven** a car. (*not* drives)

or He **hasn't driven** a car **before**.
or He **has never driven** a car **before**.

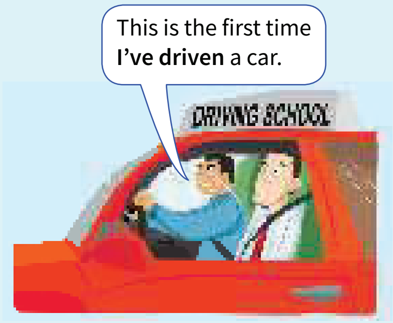
This is the first time **I've driven** a car.
DRIVING SCHOOL

In the same way we say:

- ☐ Sarah has lost her passport again. This is the second time this **has happened**. (*not* happens)
- ☐ Andy is phoning his girlfriend again. It's the third time he**'s phoned** her **this evening**.

Present perfect 1 ➜ **Unit 7** Present perfect + **for/since** ➜ **Units 11–12** Present perfect and past ➜ **Units 12–14**

Exercises

8.1 **You ask people about things they have done. Write questions with ever.**

1 (ride / horse?) Have you ever ridden a horse?
2 (be / California?) Have ....
3 (run / marathon?) ....
4 (speak / famous person?) ....
5 (most beautiful place / visit?) What's ....

8.2 **Complete B's answers. Some sentences are positive and some negative. Use these verbs:**

be be eat happen ~~have~~ have ~~meet~~ play read see try

	A	B
1	What's Mark's sister like?	I've no idea. I've never met her.
2	Is everything going well?	Yes, we haven't had any problems so far.
3	Are you hungry?	Yes. I .... much today.
4	Can you play chess?	Yes, but .... for ages.
5	Are you enjoying your holiday?	Yes, it's the best holiday .... for a long time.
6	What's that book about?	I don't know. .... it.
7	Is Brussels an interesting place?	I've no idea. .... there.
8	I hear your car broke down again yesterday.	Yes, it's the second time .... this month.
9	Do you like caviar?	I don't know. .... it.
10	Mike was late for work again today.	Again? He .... late every day this week.
11	Who's that woman by the door?	I don't know. .... her before.

8.3 **Write four sentences about yourself. Use I haven't and choose from the boxes.**

used a computer
been to the cinema
travelled by bus
read a book
eaten any fruit
lost anything

today
this week
recently
for ages
since ...
this year

1 I haven't used a computer today.
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....

8.4 **Read the situations and complete the sentences.**

1 Jack is driving a car for the first time. He's very nervous and not sure what to do.
It's the first time he's driven a car.
2 Some children at the zoo are looking at a giraffe. They've never seen one before.
It's the first time .... a giraffe.
3 Sue is riding a horse. She doesn't look very confident or comfortable.
She .... before.
4 Joe and Lisa are on holiday in Japan. They've been to Japan once before.
This is the second time ....
5 Emily is staying at the Prince Hotel. She stayed there a few years ago.
It's not the first .... this hotel.
6 Ben is playing tennis for the first time. He's a complete beginner.
.... before.

Unit
9

Present perfect continuous (**I have been doing**)

A **It's been raining.**

Study this example situation:

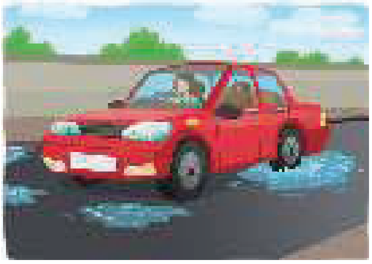

Is it raining?
No, but the ground is wet.
It's been raining. (= It **has** been . . .)

have/**has been** + **-ing** is the *present perfect continuous*:

I/we/they/you	**have**	(= I**'ve** etc.)	**been**	**doing** **working** **learning** etc.
he/she/it	**has**	(= he**'s** etc.)		

We use the present perfect continuous for an activity that has recently stopped or just stopped:

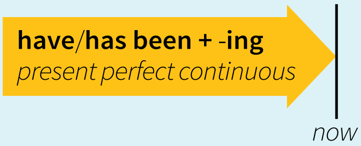

☐ Why are you out of breath? **Have** you **been running**?
☐ Paul is very tired. He**'s been working** hard.
☐ Why are you so tired? What **have** you **been doing**?
☐ I**'ve been talking** to Amanda and she agrees with me.
☐ Where have you been? I**'ve been looking** for you.

B **It's been raining for two hours.**

Study this example situation:

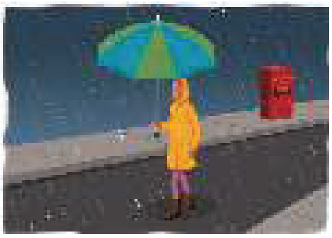

It began raining two hours ago and it is still raining.

How long **has** it **been raining**?
It**'s been raining** for two hours. (= It **has** been . . .)

We use the present perfect continuous in this way, especially with **how long**, **for** . . . and **since** . . . . The activity is still happening (as in this example) or has just stopped.

☐ **How long have** you **been learning** English? (= you're still learning English)
☐ Ben is watching TV. He**'s been watching** TV **all day**.
☐ Where have you been? I**'ve been looking** for you **for the last half hour**.
☐ Chris **hasn't been feeling** well **recently**.

You can use the present perfect continuous for repeated actions:
☐ Silvia is a very good tennis player. She**'s been playing since she was eight**.
☐ Every morning they meet in the same cafe. They**'ve been going** there **for years**.

C Compare **I am doing** and **I have been doing**:

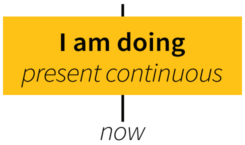

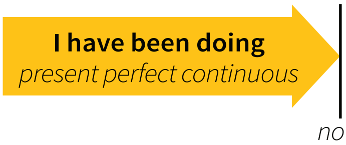

☐ Don't disturb me now. I**'m working.**	☐ I**'ve been working** hard. Now I'm going to have a break.
☐ We need an umbrella. It**'s raining.**	☐ The ground is wet. It**'s been raining**.
☐ Hurry up! We**'re waiting.**	☐ We**'ve been waiting** for an hour.

Present perfect continuous and simple ➜ **Units 10–11** Present perfect + **for**/**since** ➜ **Units 11–12**

Exercises

9.1 What have these people been doing or what has been happening?

1
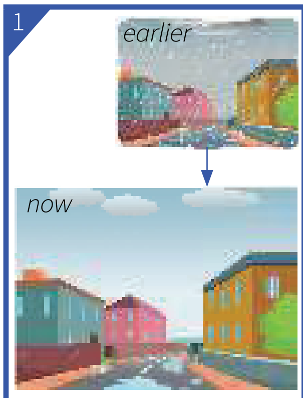

It's been raining.

2
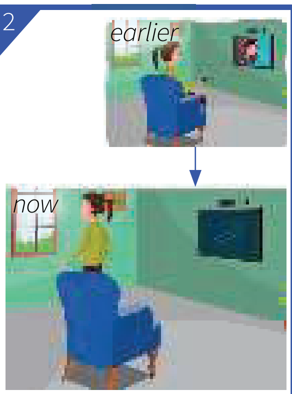

She ....

3
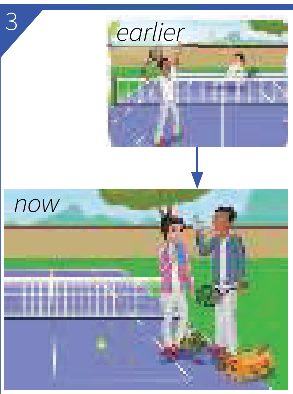

They ....

4
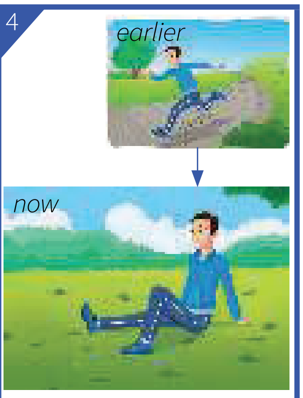

He ....

9.2 Write a question for each situation.

1 You meet Kate as she is leaving the swimming pool. You say:
Hi, Kate. (you / swim?) Have you been swimming?
2 You have arrived a little late to meet Ben who is waiting for you. You say:
I'm sorry I'm late, Ben. (you / wait / long?) ....
3 Jane's little boy comes into the house with a very dirty face and dirty hands. His mother says:
Why are you so dirty? (what / you / do?) ....
4 You are in a shop and see Anna. You didn't know she worked there. You say:
Hi, Anna. (how long / you / work / here?) ....
5 A friend tells you about his job – he sells phones. You say:
You sell phones? (how long / you / do / that?) ....

9.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1 It's raining. The rain started two hours ago.
It 's been raining for two hours.
2 We are waiting for the bus. We started waiting 20 minutes ago.
We .... for 20 minutes.
3 I'm learning Japanese. I started classes in December.
I .... since December.
4 Jessica is working in a hotel. She started working there on 18 January.
.... since 18 January.
5 Our friends always go to Italy for their holidays. The first time was years ago.
.... for years.

9.4 Put the verb into the present continuous (am/is/are + -ing) or present perfect continuous (have/has been + -ing).

1 Maria has been learning (Maria / learn) English for two years.
2 Hi, Tom. .... (I / look) for you. I need to ask you something.
3 Why .... (you / look) at me like that? Stop it!
4 Rachel is a teacher. .... (she / teach) for ten years.
5 .... (I / think) about what you said and I've decided to take your advice.
6 'Is Paul on holiday this week?' 'No, ... (he / work).'
7 Sarah is very tired. .... (she / work) very hard recently.
8 It's dangerous to use your phone when .... (you / drive).
9 Laura .... (travel) in South America for the last three months.

Unit 10

Present perfect continuous and simple (**I have been doing** and **I have done**)

A

Compare these two situations:

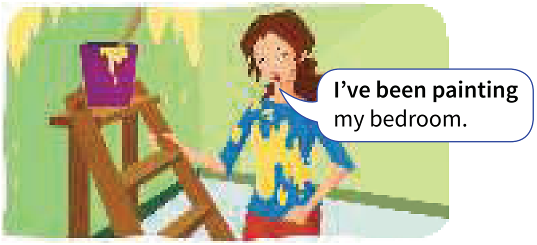
I've been painting my bedroom.

There is paint on Kate's clothes.
She **has been painting** her bedroom.

has been painting is the *present perfect continuous.*

We are thinking of the activity. It does not matter whether it has been finished or not. In this example, the activity (painting the bedroom) has not been finished.

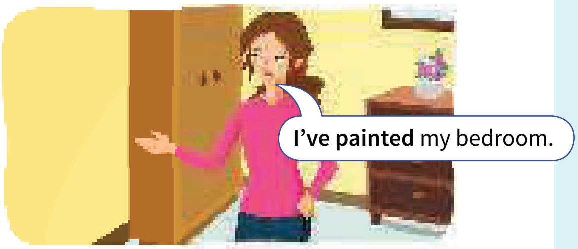
I've painted my bedroom.

The bedroom was green. Now it is yellow.
She **has painted** her bedroom.

has painted is the *present perfect simple*.

Here, the important thing is that something has been finished. 'She **has painted**' is a completed action. We are thinking about the *result* of the activity (the painted bedroom), not the activity itself.

B

Compare these examples:

- My hands are very dirty. **I've been repairing** my bike.
- Joe **has been eating** too much recently. He should eat less.
- It's nice to see you again. What **have** you **been doing** since we last met?
- Where have you been? **Have** you **been playing** tennis?

- My bike is OK again now. **I've repaired it**. (= I've finished repairing it)
- Somebody **has eaten** all the chocolates. The box is empty.
- Where's the book I gave you? What **have** you **done** with it?
- **Have** you ever **played** tennis?

C

We use the continuous to say *how long* (for something that is still happening):

- How long **have** you **been reading** that book?
- Amy is writing emails. She**'s been writing** emails all morning.
- They**'ve been playing** tennis since 2 o'clock.
- I'm learning Arabic, but I **haven't been learning** it very long.

We use the simple to say *how much, how many* or *how many times* (for completed actions):

- How many pages of that book **have** you **read**?
- Amy **has sent** lots of emails this morning.
- They**'ve played** tennis three times this week.
- I'm learning Arabic, but I **haven't learnt** very much yet.

D

Some verbs (for example, **know**) are not normally used in continuous forms (**be** + **-ing**):

- **I've known** about the problem for a long time. (*not* I've been knowing)
- How long **have** you **had** that camera? (*not* have you been having)

For a list of these verbs, see Unit 4A. For **have**, see Unit 17.
But note that you *can* use **want** and **mean** in the present perfect continuous (**have**/**has been** + -**ing**):

- **I've been meaning** to phone Anna, but I keep forgetting.

Present perfect simple ➜ **Units 7–8** Present perfect continuous ➜ **Unit 9**
Present perfect + **for**/**since** ➜ **Units 11–12**

Exercises

10.1 Read the situation and complete the sentences. Use the verbs in brackets.

1 Tom started reading a book two hours ago. He is still reading it and now he is on page 53.
He has been reading for two hours. (read)
He has read 53 pages so far. (read)

2 Rachel is from Australia. She is travelling round Europe. She began her trip three months ago.
She .... for three months. (travel)
.... six countries so far. (visit)

3 Patrick is a tennis player. He began playing tennis when he was 10 years old. This year he won the national championship again – for the fourth time.
.... the national championship four times. (win)
.... since he was ten. (play)

4 When they left college, Lisa and Sue started making films together. They still make films.
They .... films since they left college. (make)
.... five films since they left college. (make)

10.2 Ask questions using the words in brackets. Use the present perfect simple (**have**/**has done**) or continuous (**have**/**has been doing**).

1 You have a friend who is learning Arabic. You ask:
(how long / learn / Arabic?) How long have you been learning Arabic?

2 You have just arrived to meet a friend. She is waiting for you. You ask:
(wait / long?) Have ....

3 You see somebody fishing by the river. You ask:
(catch / any fish?) ....

4 Some friends of yours are having a party next week. You ask:
(how many people / invite?) ....

5 A friend of yours is a teacher. You ask:
(how long / teach?) ....

6 You meet somebody who is a writer. You ask:
(how many books / write?) ....
(how long / write / books?) ....

7 A friend of yours is saving money to go on a world trip. You ask:
(how long / save?) ....
(how much money / save?) ....

10.3 Put the verb into the present perfect simple or continuous.

1 Where have you been? Have you been playing (you / play) tennis?
2 Look! .... (somebody / break) that window.
3 You look tired. .... (you / work) hard?
4 '............ (you / ever / work) in a factory?' 'No, never.'
5 Where's Lisa? Where .... (she / go)?
6 This is a very old book. .... (I / have) it since I was a child.
7 'Have you been busy?' 'No, ... (I / watch) TV.'
8 My brother is an actor. .... (he / appear) in several films.
9 'Sorry I'm late.' 'That's all right. .... (I / not / wait) long.'
10 Are you OK? You look as if .... (you / cry).
11 'Is it still raining?' 'No, ... (it / stop).'
12 The children are tired now. .... (they / play) in the garden.
13 .... (I / lose) my phone. .... (you / see) it?
14 .... (I / read) the book you lent me, but ....
.... (I / not / finish) it yet. It's really interesting.
15 .... (I / read) the book you lent me, so you can have it back now.

Unit
11

how long have you (been) ... ?

A Study this example situation:

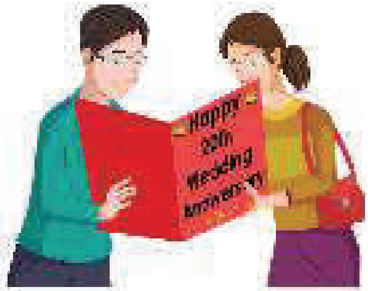

Dan and Kate are married. They got married exactly 20 years ago, so today is their 20th wedding anniversary.

They **have been** married **for 20 years**.

We say: They **are** married. *(present)*

but How long have they **been** married?
(*not* How long are they married?)
They **have been** married **for 20 years**.
(*not* They are married for 20 years)
(present perfect)

We use the *present perfect* to talk about something that began in the past and still continues now.
Compare the *present* and *present perfect*:

- Paul is in hospital.

but He**'s been** in hospital **since Monday**. (= He **has** been ...)
(*not* Paul is in hospital since Monday)

- We **know** each other very well.

but We**'ve known** each other **for a long time**.
(*not* We know)

- **Do** they **have** a car?

but **How long have** they **had** their car?

- She**'s waiting** for somebody.

but She **hasn't been waiting very long**.

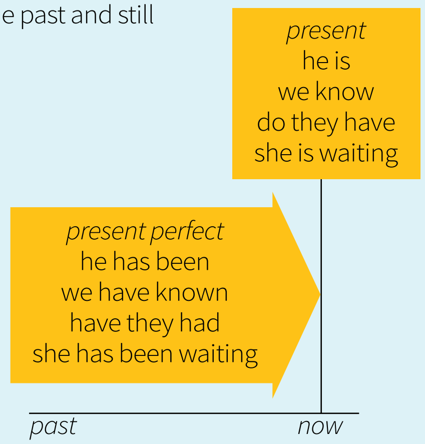
present
he is
we know
do they have
she is waiting

present perfect
he has been
we have known
have they had
she has been waiting

past *now*

B **I've known** / **I've had** / **I've lived** etc. is the *present perfect simple*.
I've been learning / **I've been waiting** etc. is the *present perfect continuous*.

When we ask or say 'how long', the continuous is more usual (see Unit 10):

- I**'ve been learning** English **since January**.
- It**'s been raining all morning**.
- Richard **has been doing** the same job **for 20 years**.
- '**How long have** you **been driving**?' 'Since I was 17.'

Some verbs (for example, **know** and **like**) are not normally used in the continuous:

- How long **have** you **known** Jane? (*not* have you been knowing)
- I**'ve had** these shoes for ages. (*not* I've been having)

See also Units 4A and 10C. For **have**, see Unit 17.

C You can use either the continuous or simple with **live** and **work**:

- Julia **has been living** in this house for a long time. *or* Julia **has lived** ...
- How long **have** you **been working** here? *or* How long **have** you **worked** here?

But we use the simple (**have lived** etc.) with **always**:

- I**'ve always lived** in the country. (*not* always been living)

D We say '**I haven't** (done something) **since**/**for** ...' *(present perfect simple)*:

- I **haven't seen** Tom since Monday. (= Monday was the last time I saw him)
- Sarah **hasn't phoned** for ages. (= the last time she phoned was ages ago)

I haven't ... since/for ➜ **Unit 8B** Present perfect continuous ➜ **Units 9–10** **for** and **since** ➜ **Unit 12A**

Exercises

11.1 Which is right?

1 Ben is a friend of mine. I know / ~~I've known~~ him very well. (I know *is correct*)
2 I like your house. How long do you live / have you lived here?
3 You'll need an umbrella if you go out now. It's raining / It's been raining.
4 The weather is / has been awful since I arrived here.
5 I'm sorry I'm late. Are you waiting / Have you been waiting long?
6 We've moved. We're living / We've been living in New Street now.
7 I met Maria only recently. I don't know / I haven't known her very long.
8 Lisa is in Germany. She's / She's been there on a business trip.
9 That's a very old bike. How long do you have / have you had it?
10 I'm not feeling good. I'm feeling / I've been feeling ill all day.

11.2 Read the situations and write questions using the words in brackets.

1 A friend tells you that Paul is in hospital. You ask him:
(how long / Paul / hospital?) ....How long has Paul been in hospital?........
2 You know that Jane is a good friend of Katherine's. You ask Jane:
(how long / you / know / Katherine?) ....
3 Your friend's sister went to Australia some time ago and she's still there. You ask your friend:
(how long / sister / in Australia?) ....
4 You meet a woman who tells you that she teaches English. You ask her:
(how long / you / teach / English?)
....
5 Tom always wears the same jacket. It's very old. You ask him:
(how long / you / have / that jacket?) ....
6 You are talking to a friend about Joe, who now works at the airport. You ask your friend:
(how long / Joe / work / airport?)
....
7 You meet somebody on a plane. She says that she lives in Chicago. You ask her:
(you / always / live / in Chicago?) ....

11.3 Complete B's answers to A's questions.

	A	B
1	Paul is in hospital, isn't he?	Yes, he ....has been.... in hospital since Monday.
2	Do you see Lisa very often?	No, I ....haven't seen.... her for three months.
3	Is Paul married?	Yes, he .... married for ten years.
4	Is Amy married?	Yes, she .... married to a German guy.
5	Do you still play tennis?	No, I .... tennis for years.
6	Are you waiting for the bus?	Yes, I .... for about 20 minutes.
7	You know Mel, don't you?	Yes, we .... each other a long time.
8	Jack is never ill, is he?	No, he .... ill since I've known him.
9	Martin lives in Italy, doesn't he?	Yes, he .... in Milan.
10	Sue lives in Berlin, doesn't she?	Yes, she .... in Berlin for many years.
11	Is Joe watching TV?	Yes, he .... TV all evening.
12	Do you watch TV a lot?	No, I .... TV since last weekend.
13	Do you have a headache?	Yes, I .... a headache all morning.
14	Do you go to the cinema a lot?	No, I .... to the cinema for ages.
15	Would you like to go to New York one day?	Yes, I .... to go to New York. (*use* **always** / **want**)

Unit 12

for and **since** **when** ... ? and **how long** ... ?

A

We use **for** and **since** to say how long something has been happening.

We use **for** + a period of time:

☐ We've been waiting **for two hours**.

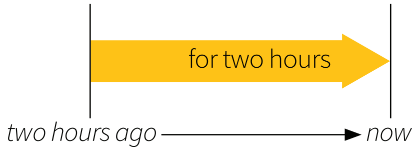

for

two hours
20 minutes
five days

a long time
six months
50 years

a week
ages
years

☐ Sally has been working here **for six months**. (*not* since six months)

☐ I haven't seen Tom **for three days**.

We use **since** + the start of a period:

☐ We've been waiting **since 8 o'clock**.

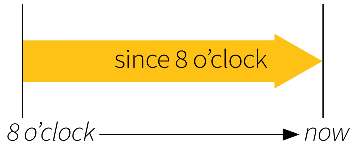

since

8 o'clock
Monday
12 May

April
2001
Christmas

lunchtime
we arrived
I got up

☐ Sally has been working here **since April**. (= from April until now)

☐ I haven't seen Tom **since Monday**.

B

We often leave out **for** (but not usually in negative sentences):

☐ They've been married **for ten years**. *or* They've been married **ten years**.

☐ They **haven't had** a holiday **for** ten years. (you need **for**)

You can use **in** instead of **for** in negative sentences (**I haven't** ... etc.):

☐ They **haven't had** a holiday **in ten years**. (= **for** ten years)

We do *not* use **for** + **all** ... (**all day** / **all my life** etc.):

☐ I've lived here **all my life**. (*not* for all my life)

C

Compare **when** ... ? (+ *past simple*) and **how long** ... ? (+ *present perfect*):

A: **When** did it start raining?
B: It started raining **an hour ago** / **at 1 o'clock**.

A: **How long** has it been raining?
B: It's been raining **for an hour** / **since 1 o'clock**.

A: **When** did Joe and Kate first meet?
B: They first met { **a long time ago**. / **when they were at school**.
A: **How long** have they known each other?
B: They've known each other { **for a long time**. / **since they were at school**.

D

We say:

it's (= it **is**) *or* **it's been** (= it **has been**)	a long time six months (*etc.*)	since something happened

☐ **It's two years since** I last saw Joe. *or* **It's been two years since** ...
(= I **haven't seen** Joe for two years)

☐ **It's ages since** we went to the cinema. *or* **It's been ages since** ...
(= We **haven't been** to the cinema for ages)

☐ **How long is it since** Mrs Hill died? *or* **How long has it been since** ...
(= when did she die?)

How long have you (been) ... ? → Unit 11

Exercises

12.1 Write **for** or **since**.

1 It's been raining ....since.... lunchtime.
2 Paul has lived in Brazil .... ten years.
3 I'm tired of waiting. We've been sitting here .... an hour.
4 Kevin has been looking for a job .... he left school.
5 I haven't been to a party .... ages.
6 I wonder where Joe is. I haven't seen him .... last week.
7 Jane is away on holiday. She's been away .... Friday.
8 The weather is dry. It hasn't rained .... a few weeks.

12.2 Look at each answer and choose the right question.

1	~~How long have they been married~~? When did they get married?	Ten years ago.
	(When did they get married? *is correct*)	
2	How long have you had this car? When did you buy this car?	About five years.
3	How long have you been waiting? When did you get here?	Only a few minutes.
4	How long have you been doing your course? When did your course start?	September.
5	How long has Anna been in London? When did Anna arrive in London?	Last week.
6	How long have you known each other? When did you first meet each other?	A long time.

12.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1 It's raining. It's been raining since lunchtime. It ....started raining.... at lunchtime.
2 Ann and Jess are friends. They first met years ago. They've ....known each other for.... years.
3 Mark is unwell. He became ill on Sunday. He has .... Sunday.
4 Sarah is married. She's been married for a year. She got ....
5 You have a headache. It started when you woke up.
I've .... I woke up.
6 Sue is in a meeting at work. It's been going on since 9 o'clock.
The meeting .... at 9 o'clock.
7 You're working in a hotel. You started working there six months ago.
I've been ....
8 Kate is learning Japanese. She's been doing this for a long time.
Kate started ....

12.4 Complete B's sentences.

	A	B
1	Do you often go on holiday?	No, I ....haven't had a holiday for.... five years.
2	Have you seen Lisa recently?	No, I .... about a month.
3	Do you still go swimming regularly?	No, I .... a long time.
4	Do you still ride a bike these days?	No, I .... ages.

Now write B's answers again. This time use It's . . . since . . . .

5 (1) No, ...it's five years since I last had a holiday....
6 (2) No, it's ....
7 (3) No, ...
8 (4) ....

Unit
13

Present perfect and past 1 (**I have done** and **I did**)

A

Study this example situation:

Tom is looking for his key. He can't find it.

He **has lost** his key. *(present perfect)*

This means that he doesn't have his key *now*.

Ten minutes later:

Now Tom **has found** his key. He has it now.

Has he **lost** his key? No, he **has found** it.
Did he **lose** his key? Yes, he **did**.

He **lost** his key *(past simple)*
but now he **has found** it. *(present perfect)*

The *present perfect* (something **has happened**) is a *present* tense. It tells us about the situation *now*.
'Tom **has lost** his key' = he doesn't have his key *now* (see Unit 7).

The *past simple* (something **happened**) tells us only about the *past*. If somebody says 'Tom **lost** his key', we don't know whether he has the key now or not. We know only that he lost it at some time in the past.

Compare *present perfect* and *past simple*:

- They**'ve gone** away. They'll be back on Friday. (they are away *now*)
- They **went** away, but I think they're back at home now. (*not* They've gone away)
- It **has stopped** raining now, so we don't need the umbrella. (it isn't raining *now*)
- It **stopped** raining for a while, but now it's raining again. (*not* It has stopped)

B

You can use the present perfect for new or recent happenings:

- I**'ve repaired** the washing machine. It's working OK now.
- 'Hannah **has had** a baby! It's a boy.' 'That's great news.'

Usually, you can also use the past simple:

- I **repaired** the washing machine. It's working OK now.

Use the past simple (*not* the present perfect) for things that are not recent or new:

- Mozart **was** a composer. He **wrote** more than 600 pieces of music.
  (*not* has been … has written)
- My mother **grew** up in Italy. (*not* has grown)

Compare:

Somebody **has invented** a new type of washing machine.
Who **invented** the telephone? (*not* has invented)

C

We use the present perfect to give new information (see Unit 7). But if we continue to talk about it, we normally use the past simple:

- A: Ow! I**'ve burnt** myself.
  B: How **did** you **do** that? (*not* have you done)
  A: I **picked** up a hot dish. (*not* have picked)
- A: Look! Somebody **has spilt** something on the sofa.
  B: Well, it **wasn't** me. I **didn't do** it. (*not* hasn't been … haven't done)

Past simple ➜ **Unit 5**   Present perfect ➜ **Units 7–8**   Present perfect and past 2 ➜ **Unit 14**
American English ➜ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

13.1 Complete the sentences. Use the present perfect where possible. Otherwise use the past simple.

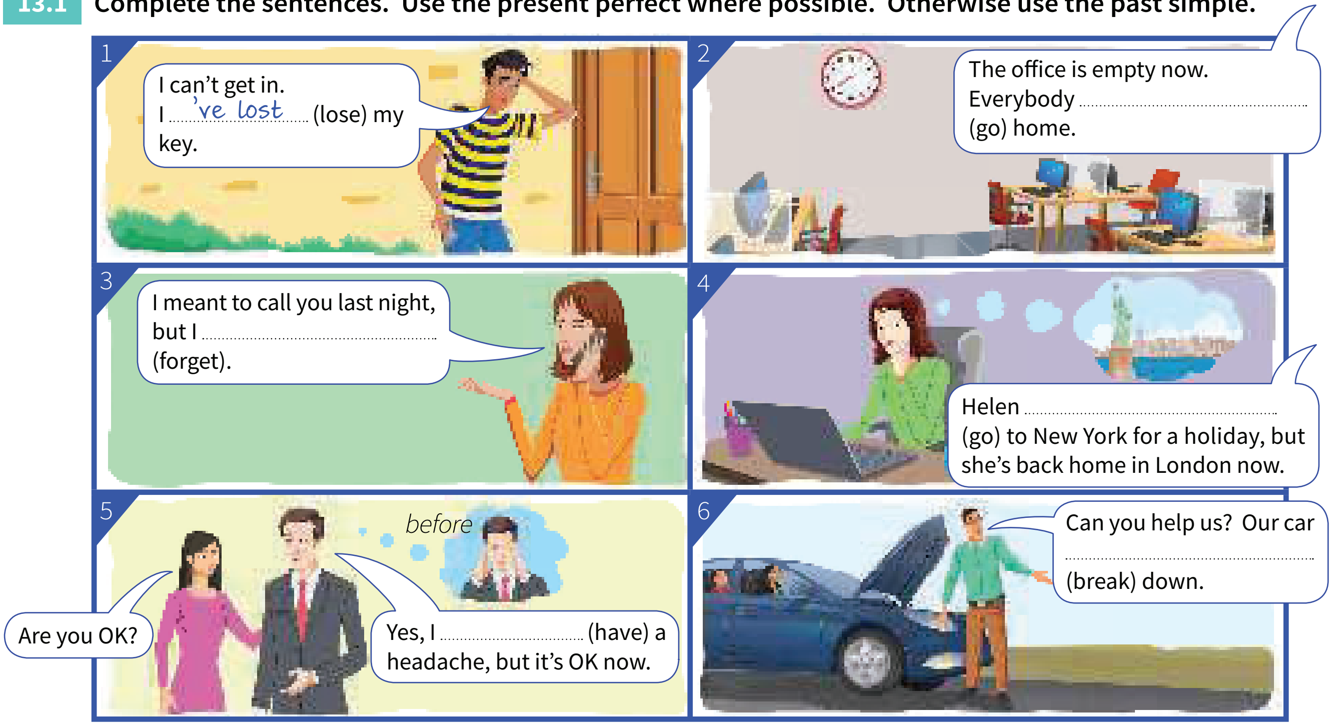
1
I can't get in.
I 've lost (lose) my key.
2
The office is empty now. Everybody ...... (go) home.
3
I meant to call you last night, but I ...... (forget).
4
Helen ...... (go) to New York for a holiday, but she's back home in London now.
5
before
Are you OK?
Yes, I ...... (have) a headache, but it's OK now.
6
Can you help us? Our car ...... (break) down.

13.2 Are the underlined parts of these sentences OK? Correct them where necessary.

1 Did you hear about Sophie? She's given up her job. ...... OK
2 My mother has grown up in Italy. ...... My mother grew up
3 How many plays has William Shakespeare written? ......
4 I've forgotten his name. Is it Joe or Jack? ......
5 Who has invented paper? ......
6 Drugs have become a big problem everywhere. ......
7 We've washed the car, but now it's dirty again. ......
8 Where have you been born? ......
9 Ellie has gone shopping. She'll be back in about an hour. ......
10 Albert Einstein has been the scientist who has developed the theory of relativity. ......

13.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present perfect or past simple.

1 It stopped raining for a while, but now it's raining again. (it / stop)
2 The town where I live is very different now. It has changed a lot. (it / change)
3 I studied German at school, but ...... most of it now. (I / forget)
4 The police ...... three people, but later they let them go. (arrest)
5 What do you think of my English? Do you think ......? (it / improve)
6 Are you ready to go? ...... your coffee? (you / finish)
7 ...... for a job as a tour guide, but I wasn't successful. (I / apply)
8 Where's my bike? ...... outside the house, but it's not there now. (it / be)
9 Quick! We need to call an ambulance. ...... an accident. (there / be)
10 A: I've found my phone.
B: Oh, good. Where ...... it? (you / find)
A: ...... at the bottom of my bag. (It / be)
11 A: Ben won't be able to play tennis for a while. ...... his arm. (He / break)
B: Oh. How ......? (that / happen)
A: ...... off a ladder. (He / fall)

Unit
14

Present perfect and past 2 (**I have done** and **I did**)

A

We do not use the present perfect (**I have done**) when we talk about a *finished* time (for example, **yesterday** / **last year** / **ten minutes ago** etc.). We use a past tense:

- It **was** very cold **yesterday**. (*not* has been)
- Paul and Lucy **arrived ten minutes ago**. (*not* have arrived)
- **Did** you **eat** a lot of sweets **when you were a child**? (*not* have you eaten)
- I **got** home late **last night**. I **was** very tired and **went** straight to bed.

Use the past to ask **When** . . . ? *or* **What time** . . . ? :

- **When did** your friends **arrive**? (*not* have . . . arrived)
- **What time did** you **finish** work?

Compare:

Present perfect	*Past simple*
Tom **has lost** his key. He can't get into the house.	Tom **lost** his key **yesterday**. He couldn't get into the house.
Is Carla here or **has** she **left**?	**When did** Carla **leave**?

B

Compare:

Present perfect (**have done**)	*Past simple* (**did**)
I've done a lot of work **today**.	I **did** a lot of work **yesterday**.
We use the present perfect for a period of time that continues *until now*. For example: **today** / **this week** / **since 2010**.	We use the past simple for a *finished* time in the past. For example: **yesterday** / **last week** / **from 2010 to 2014**.
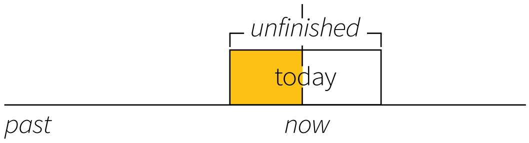	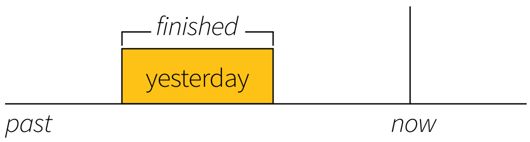
It **hasn't rained this week**.	It **didn't rain last week**.
Have you **seen** Anna **this morning**? (it is still morning now)	**Did** you **see** Anna **this morning**? (it is now afternoon or evening)
Have you **seen** Ben **recently**? (in the last few days or weeks)	**Did** you **see** Ben **on Sunday**?
I**'ve been working** here **since 2010**. (I still work here now)	I **worked** here **from 2010 to 2014**. (I don't work here now)
I don't know where Lisa is. I **haven't seen** her. (= I haven't seen her recently)	A: **Was** Lisa at the party **on Sunday**? B: I don't think so. I **didn't see** her.
We**'ve been waiting** for an hour. (we are still waiting now)	We **waited** (*or* **were waiting**) for an hour. (we are no longer waiting)
Jack lives in Los Angeles. He **has lived** there for seven years.	Jack **lived** in New York for ten years. Now he lives in Los Angeles.
I**'ve never ridden** a horse. (in my life)	I **never rode** a bike **when I was a child**.
It's the last day of your holiday. You say: It**'s been** a really good holiday. I**'ve** really **enjoyed** it.	*After you come back from holiday you say*: It **was** a really good holiday. I really **enjoyed** it.

Past simple ➜ **Unit 5** Present perfect ➜ **Units 7–8** Present perfect and past 1 ➜ **Unit 13**

Exercises

14.1 Are the underlined parts of these sentences OK? Correct them where necessary.

1 I've lost my key. I can't find it anywhere. …… OK
2 Have you eaten a lot of sweets when you were a child? …… Did you eat
3 I've bought a new car. You must come and see it. ……
4 I've bought a new car last week. ……
5 Where have you been yesterday evening? ……
6 Maria has left school in 1999. ……
7 I'm looking for Mike. Have you seen him? ……
8 'Have you been to Paris?' 'Yes, many times.' ……
9 I'm very hungry. I haven't eaten much today. ……
10 When has this bridge been built? ……

14.2 Make sentences from the words in brackets. Use the present perfect or past simple.

1 (it / not / rain / this week) It hasn't rained this week.
2 (the weather / be / cold / recently) The weather ……
3 (it / cold / last week) It ……
4 (I / not / eat / any fruit yesterday) I ……
5 (I / not / eat / any fruit today) ……
6 (Emily / earn / a lot of money / this year) ……
7 (she / not / earn / so much / last year) ……
8 (you / have / a holiday recently?) ……

14.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present perfect or past simple.

1 I haven't been (I / not / be) to Canada, but I'd like to go there.
2 Paul and Lucy arrived (arrive) about ten minutes ago.
3 I'm tired. …… (I / not / sleep) well last night.
4 …… (There / be) a bus drivers' strike last week, so
…… (there / be) no buses.
5 Edward …… (work) in a bank for 15 years. Then ……
(he / give) it up. Now he works as a gardener.
6 Mary lives in Dublin. …… (She / live) there all her life.
7 My grandfather …… (die) before I was born. ……
(I / never / meet) him.
8 I don't know Karen's husband. …… (I / never / meet) him.
9 It's nearly lunchtime, and …… (I / not / see) Martin all morning. I wonder where he is.
10 A: …… (you / go) to the cinema last night?
B: Yes, but the movie …… (be) awful.
11 A: …… (It / be) very warm here since we arrived.
B: Yes, …… (it / be) 35 degrees yesterday.
12 A: Where do you live? B: In Boston.
A: How long …… (you / live) there? B: Five years.
A: Where …… (you / live) before that? B: In Chicago.
A: And how long …… (you / live) in Chicago? B: Two years.

14.4 Write sentences about yourself using the ideas in brackets.

1 (something you haven't done today) I haven't eaten any fruit today.
2 (something you haven't done today) ……
3 (something you didn't do yesterday) ……
4 (something you did yesterday evening) ……
5 (something you haven't done recently) ……
6 (something you've done a lot recently) ……

➜ **Additional exercises 2–4** (pages 303–04), **14–15** (pages 310–11)

Unit 15 Past perfect (**I had done**)

A

Study this example situation:

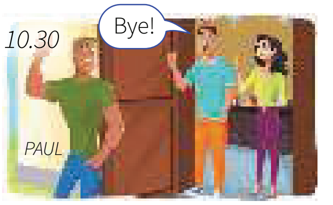

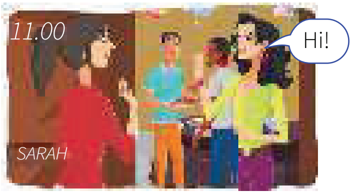

Sarah and Paul went to the same party last week, but they didn't see each other. Paul left the party at 10.30 and Sarah arrived at 11 o'clock.

So when Sarah arrived at the party, Paul wasn't there.

He **had gone** home.

had gone is the *past perfect*:

I/we/they/you he/she/it	**had**	(= I**'d** etc.) (= he**'d** etc.)	**gone** **seen** **finished** etc.

The past perfect (simple) is **had** + *past participle* (**gone**/**seen**/**finished** etc.).

Sometimes we talk about something that happened in the past:

- Sarah **arrived** at the party.

This is the starting point of the story. Then, if we want to talk about things that happened *before* this time, we use the past perfect (**had** . . .):

- **When Sarah arrived** at the party, Paul **had** already **gone** home.

Some more examples:

- When we got home last night, we found that somebody **had broken** into the flat.
- Karen didn't come to the cinema with us. She**'d** already **seen** the movie.
- At first I thought I**'d done** the right thing, but I soon realised that I**'d made** a big mistake.
- The people sitting next to me on the plane were nervous. They **hadn't flown** before.
  or They**'d** never **flown** before.

B

Compare *present perfect* (**have seen** etc.) and *past perfect* (**had seen** etc.):

Present perfect	*Past perfect*
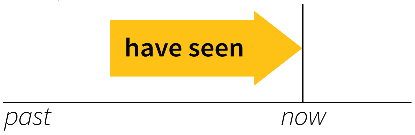	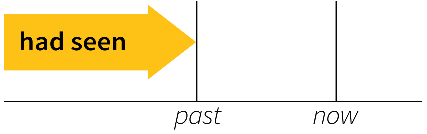
Who is that woman? **I've seen** her before, but I can't remember where.	I wasn't sure who she was. **I'd seen** her before, but I couldn't remember where.
We aren't hungry. We**'ve** just **had** lunch.	We weren't hungry. We**'d** just **had** lunch.
The house is dirty. They **haven't cleaned** it for weeks.	The house was dirty. They **hadn't cleaned** it for weeks.

C

Compare *past simple* (**left**, **was** etc.) and *past perfect* (**had left**, **had been** etc.):

Past simple	*Past perfect*
A: Was Tom there when you arrived? B: Yes, but he **left** soon afterwards.	A: Was Tom there when you arrived? B: No, he**'d** already **left**.
Kate **wasn't** at home when I phoned. She **was** at her mother's house.	Kate **had** just **got** home when I phoned. She**'d been** at her mother's house.

Past perfect continuous ➜ **Unit 16** Irregular verbs (**gone**/**seen** etc.) ➜ **Appendix 1**

Exercises

15.1 Read the situations and write sentences using the words in brackets.

1 There was a picture lying on the floor.
(It / fall / off the wall) It had fallen off the wall.
2 The people sitting next to you on the plane were nervous. It was their first flight.
(They / not / fly / before) They hadn't flown before.
3 You went back to your home town recently after many years. It wasn't the same as before.
(It / change / a lot) It ....
4 Somebody sang a song. You didn't know it.
(I / not / hear / it / before) I ....
5 I invited Rachel to the party, but she couldn't come.
(She / arrange / to do something else) ....
6 You went to the cinema last night. You got to the cinema late.
(The film / already / start) ....
7 Last year we went to Mexico. It was our first time there.
(We / not / be / there / before) We ....
8 I met Daniel last week. It was good to see him again after such a long time.
(I / not / see / him for five years) ....
9 I offered my friends something to eat, but they weren't hungry.
(They / just / have / lunch) ....
10 Sam played tennis yesterday. He wasn't very good at it because it was his first game ever.
(He / never / play / before) ....

15.2 Use the sentences on the left to complete the paragraphs on the right. These sentences are in the order in which they happened – so (a) happened before (b), (b) before (c) etc. But your paragraph begins with the underlined sentence, so sometimes you need the past perfect.

1	(a) Somebody broke into the office during the night. (b) We arrived at work in the morning. (c) We called the police.	We arrived at work in the morning and found that somebody had broken into the office during the night. So we called the police.
2	(a) Laura went out this morning. (b) I rang her doorbell. (c) There was no answer.	I went to Laura's house this morning and rang her doorbell, but .... no answer. .... out.
3	(a) Joe came back from holiday a few days ago. (b) I met him the same day. (c) He looked very well.	I met Joe a few days ago. .... just .... holiday. .... very well.
4	(a) James sent Amy lots of emails. (b) She never replied to them. (c) Yesterday he got a phone call from her. (d) He was surprised.	Yesterday James .... from Amy. .... surprised. .... lots of emails, but ....

15.3 Put the verb into the correct form, past perfect (I had done) or past simple (I did).

1 Paul wasn't at the party when I arrived. He'd gone (He / go) home.
2 I felt very tired when I got home, so .... (I / go) straight to bed.
3 The house was very quiet when I got home. Everybody .... (go) to bed.
4 Mark travels a lot. When I first met him, ... (he / already / travel) round the world.
5 Sorry I'm late. The car .... (break) down on my way here.
6 We were driving along the road when .... (we / see) a car which .... (break) down, so .... (we / stop) to help.

➜ **Additional exercises 5–8** (pages 304–07)

Unit 16

Past perfect continuous (**I had been doing**)

A

Study this example situation:

yesterday morning

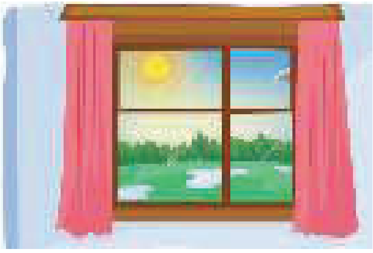

Yesterday morning I got up and looked out of the window.
The sun was shining, but the ground was very wet.

It **had been raining**.

It was *not* raining when I looked out of the window.
The sun was shining. But it **had been raining** before.

had been -ing is the *past perfect continuous*:

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**had**	(= I**'d** etc.) (= he**'d** etc.)	**been**	do**ing** work**ing** play**ing** etc.

Some more examples:

- My hands were dirty because I**'d been repairing** my bike.
- Tom was tired when he got home. He**'d been working** hard all day.
- I went to Madrid a few years ago and stayed with a friend of mine. **She hadn't been living** there very long, but she knew the city very well.

You can say that something **had been happening** before something else happened:

- We**'d been playing** tennis for about half an hour when it **started** to rain heavily.

B

Compare **have been -ing** (*present perfect continuous*) and **had been -ing** (*past perfect continuous*):

Present perfect continuous

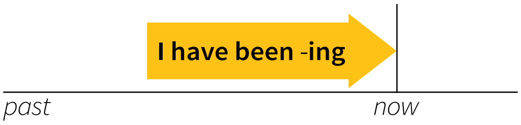

- I hope the bus comes soon. **I've been waiting** for 20 minutes. (*before now*)
- James **is** out of breath. He**'s been running**. (= he **has** been . . .)

Past perfect continuous

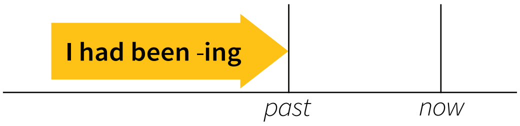

- At last the bus came. I**'d been waiting** for 20 minutes. (*before the bus came*)
- James **was** out of breath. He**'d been running**. (= he **had** been . . .)

C

Compare **was -ing** (*past continuous*) and **had been -ing**:

- It **wasn't raining** when we went out. The sun **was shining**. But it **had been raining**, so the ground was wet.
- Katherine **was lying** on the sofa. She was tired because she**'d been working** hard.

D

Some verbs (for example, **know**) are not normally used in *continuous* forms (**be** + **-ing**):

- We were good friends. We **had known** each other for years. (*not* had been knowing)
- A few years ago Lisa cut her hair really short. I was surprised because she**'d** always **had** long hair. (*not* she'd been having)

For a list of these verbs, see **Unit 4A**. For **have**, see **Unit 17**

Present perfect continuous ➜ **Units 9–10** Past perfect simple ➜ **Unit 15**

Exercises

16.1 Read the situations and make sentences using the words in brackets.

1 Tom was very tired when he got home.
(He / work / hard all day) He'd been working hard all day.
2 The children came into the house. They had a football and they were both very tired.
(They / play / football) ....
3 I was disappointed when I had to cancel my holiday.
(I / look / forward to it) ....
4 Anna woke up in the middle of the night. She was frightened and didn't know where she was.
(She / have / a bad dream) ....
5 When I got home, Mark was sitting in front of the TV. He had just turned it off.
(He / watch / a film) ....
6 The people waiting at the bus stop were getting impatient. The bus was very late.
(They / wait / a long time) ....

16.2 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1 We played tennis yesterday. We didn't finish our game.
We'd been playing (We / play) for half an hour when it started (it / start) to rain.
2 I had arranged to meet Tom in a restaurant. I arrived and waited for him to come.
.... (I / wait) for 20 minutes when ....
(I / realise) that .... (I / be) in the wrong restaurant.
3 Sarah worked in a company for a long time. The company no longer exists.
At the time the company .... (go) out of business, Sarah
.... (work) there for twelve years.
4 I went to a concert. Soon after the orchestra began playing, something strange happened.
The orchestra .... (play) for about ten minutes when a man in the audience suddenly .... (start) shouting.

Now make your own sentence:

5 I began walking along the road. I ....
when ....

16.3 Which is right?

1 It was noisy next door last night. Our neighbours were having / ~~had been having~~ a party.
(were having *is correct*)
2 At the end of our journey we were extremely tired. We were travelling / We'd been travelling for more than 24 hours.
3 James was on his hands and knees on the floor. He was looking / He'd been looking for his contact lens.
4 Sue was sitting on the ground. She was out of breath. She was running / She'd been running.
5 John and I went for a walk. He was walking / He'd been walking very fast and I had difficulty keeping up with him.
6 I was sad when I sold my car. I've had it / I'd had it for a very long time.
7 I was sad when my local cafe closed. I was going / I'd been going there for many years.
8 I'm running a marathon next month. I've been training / I'd been training for it every day.
9 I had arranged to meet Kate, but I was late. When I finally arrived, she was waiting / she'd been waiting for me. She was annoyed because she was waiting / she'd been waiting such a long time.
10a Joe and I work for the same company. He joined the company before me. When I started a few years ago, he was already working / he'd already been working there.
10b I started working at the company a few years ago. At the time I started, Joe was already working / had already been working there for two years.
10c Joe still works for the company. He's been working / He'd been working there a long time now.

→ Additional exercises 5–8 (pages 304–07)

Unit
17

have and **have got**

A

have and **have got** (= for possession, relationships, illnesses, appointments etc.)

You can use **have** or **have got**. There is no difference in meaning. You can say:

- They **have** a new car. *or* They**'ve got** a new car.
- Lisa **has** two brothers. *or* Lisa **has got** two brothers.
- I **have** a headache. *or* I**'ve got** a headache.
- Our house **has** a small garden. *or* Our house **has got** a small garden.
- He **has** a few problems. *or* He**'s got** a few problems.
- I **have** a driving lesson tomorrow. *or* I**'ve got** a driving lesson tomorrow.

With these meanings (possession etc.), we do not use continuous forms (**I'm having** etc.):

- We're enjoying our holiday. We **have** / We**'ve got** a nice room in the hotel.
  (*not* We're having a nice room)

For the past we use **had** (usually without **got**):

- Lisa **had** long hair when she was a child. (*not* Lisa had got)

B

In questions and negative sentences there are three possible forms:

Do you have any questions?	I **don't have** any questions.
or **Have you got** any questions?	*or* I **haven't got** any questions.
or **Have you** any questions? *(less usual)*	*or* I **haven't** any questions. *(less usual)*
Does she have a car?	She **doesn't have** a car.
or **Has she got** a car?	*or* She **hasn't got** a car.
or **Has she** a car? *(less usual)*	*or* She **hasn't** a car. *(less usual)*

In past questions and negative sentences, we use **did**/**didn't**:

- **Did** you **have** a car when you were living in Paris?
- I **didn't have** my phone, so I couldn't call you.
- Lisa **had** long hair, **didn't** she?

C

have breakfast / **have a shower** / **have a good time** etc.

We also use **have** (*but not* have got) for things we do or experience. For example:

have	**breakfast** / **dinner** / **a cup of coffee** / **something to eat** etc.
	a bath / **a shower** / **a swim** / **a break** / **a rest** / **a party** / **a holiday**
	an accident / **an experience** / **a dream**
	a look (at something)
	a chat / **a discussion** / **a conversation** (with somebody)
	trouble / **difficulty** / **fun** / **a good time** etc.
	a baby (= give birth to a baby)

Have got is *not* possible in these expressions. Compare:

- Sometimes I **have** (= eat) a sandwich for my lunch. (*not* I've got)

but I**'ve got** / I **have** some sandwiches. Would you like one?

You can use continuous forms (I**'m having** etc.) with these expressions:

- We're enjoying our holiday. We**'re having** a great time.
- 'Where's Mark?' 'He**'s having** a shower.'

In questions and negative sentences we use **do**/**does**/**did**:

- I **don't** usually **have** a big breakfast. (*not* I usually haven't)
- Where **does** Chris usually **have** lunch?
- **Did** you **have** trouble finding somewhere to stay? (*not* Had you)

have (got) to ... ➔ **Unit 31** American English ➔ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

17.1 Which goes with which?

1 I'm not free tomorrow morning.
2 Rachel is an only child.
3 We've got plenty of time.
4 You've got a really good voice.
5 I don't feel very well this morning.
6 Laura studied at university.
7 I've got a question.
8 James has got a lot of experience.

a She's got a degree in physics.
b I've got a sore throat.
c There's no need to hurry.
d ~~I've got a driving lesson.~~
e Maybe you can answer it.
f I think he should get the job.
g I wish I could sing as well as you.
h She's got no brothers or sisters.

1 …d…
2 ……
3 ……
4 ……
5 ……
6 ……
7 ……
8 ……

17.2 Complete the sentences using have.

1 She couldn't get into the house. …She didn't have… a key.
2 Is there anything you'd like to ask? …Do you have… any questions?
3 They can't pay their bills. They …… any money.
4 We got wet in the rain yesterday. We …… an umbrella.
5 Jack …… a car. He can't afford one and he can't drive anyway.
6 'Excuse me, …… a pen I could borrow?' 'Yes, sure. Here you are.'
7 I was very busy yesterday. I …… time to go shopping.
8 'Tell me about Jack. …… a job?' 'Yes, he works at the hospital.'
9 When you worked in your last job, …… your own office?
10 'Where's the remote control?' 'I don't know. I …… it.'
11 'Tom …… a motorbike, …… he?' 'Yes, that's right. A long time ago.'

17.3 Are the underlined words OK? Change them where necessary.

1 I'm not free tomorrow morning. I've got a driving lesson. …OK…
2 Lisa had got long hair when she was a child. …Lisa had long hair…
3 I couldn't contact you because I hadn't my phone. ……
4 'Are you feeling OK?' 'No, I'm having a cold.' ……
5 I'm not working right now. I'm having a break. ……
6 I felt really tired. I hadn't any energy. ……
7 It's a small town. It doesn't have many shops. ……
8 Was your trip OK? Had you any problems? ……
9 My friend called me when I was having breakfast. ……
10 The last time I saw Steve, he was having a beard. ……
11 We don't need to hurry. We have plenty of time. ……
12 How often have you a shower? ……

17.4 Complete the sentences. Use an expression with have in the correct form. Choose from:

have a baby **have a break** **have a chat** **have trouble** **have a shower**
have a look ~~**have lunch**~~ **have a party** **have a nice time** **have a holiday**

1 I don't eat much during the day. I never …have lunch… .
2 David starts work at 8 o'clock and …… at 10.30.
3 We …… last week. We invited lots of people.
4 There's something wrong with my bike. Can you …… at it for me?
5 Joe is away on holiday at the moment. I hope he …… .
6 I met some friends in the supermarket yesterday. We stopped and …… .
7 '…… finding the book you wanted?' 'No, I found it OK.'
8 Suzanne …… a few weeks ago. It's her second child.
9 I …… when the light went out suddenly.
10 I'd like to go away somewhere. I …… for a long time.

Unit 18

used to (do)

A Study this example situation:

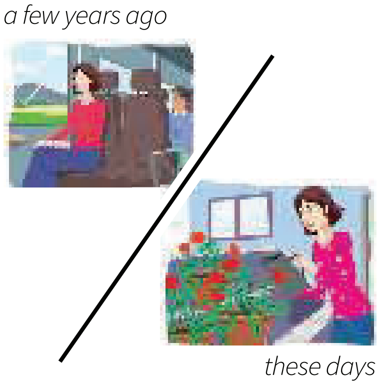

Nicola doesn't travel much these days.
She prefers to stay at home.

But she **used to travel** a lot.
She **used to go** away two or three times a year.

She **used to travel** a lot = she travelled often in the past, but she doesn't do this any more.

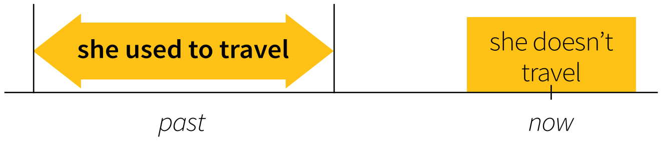

B I **used to** do something = I did it often in the past, but not any more:

- I **used to play** tennis a lot, but I don't play very much now.
- David **used to spend** a lot of money on clothes. These days he can't afford it.
- 'Do you go to the cinema much?' 'Not now, but I **used to**.' (= I used to go)

We also use **used to** ... for things that were true, but are not true any more:

- This building is now a furniture shop. It **used to be** a cinema.
- I **used to think** Mark was unfriendly, but now I realise he's a very nice person.
- I've started drinking coffee recently. I never **used to like** it before.
- Lisa **used to have** very long hair when she was a child.

C '**I used to** do something' is past. There is no present. You cannot say 'I use to do'.
To talk about the present, we use the present simple (**I do**).

Compare:

past	he **used to play**	we **used to live**	there **used to be**
present	he **plays**	we **live**	there **is**

- We **used to live** in a small village, but now we **live** in a city.
- There **used to be** four cinemas in the town. Now there **is** only one.

D The normal question form is **did** (you) **use to** ... ? :

- **Did** you **use to eat** a lot of sweets when you were a child? (= did you do this often?)

The negative form is **didn't use to** ... (**used not to** ... is also possible):

- I **didn't use to like** him. (*or* I **used not to like** him.)

E Compare **I used to do** and **I was doing**:

- I **used to watch** TV a lot. (= I watched TV often in the past, but I don't do this any more)
- I **was watching** TV when Rob called. (= I was in the middle of watching TV)

F Do not confuse **I used to do** and **I am used to doing** (see Unit 61). The structures and meanings are different:

- I **used to live** alone. (= I lived alone in the past, but I no longer live alone.)
- I **am used to living** alone. (= I live alone, and it's not a problem for me because I've lived alone for some time.)

Past continuous (**I was doing**) ➜ **Unit 6** **would** (= **used to**) ➜ **Unit 36**
be/get used to (**doing** something) ➜ **Unit 61**

Exercises

18.1 Complete the sentences with used to + a suitable verb.

1 Nicola ...used to travel... a lot, but she doesn't go away much these days.
2 Sophie .... a motorbike, but last year she sold it and bought a car.
3 Our friends moved to Spain a few years ago. They .... in Paris.
4 Jackie .... my best friend, but we aren't friends any more.
5 I rarely eat ice cream now, but I .... it when I was a child.
6 It only takes me about 40 minutes to get to work now that the new road is open.
It .... more than an hour.
7 There .... a hotel near the airport, but it closed a long time ago.
8 I .... in a factory. It wasn't my favourite job.

18.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

1 Lisa ...used to have... very long hair when she was a child.
2 We .... to watch TV a lot, but we don't have a TV any more.
3 Lisa works in a shop now. She .... a receptionist in a hotel.
4 What games .... you use to play when you were a child?
5 I .... like big cities, but now I prefer the countryside.
6 In your last job, how many hours a day did you .... to work?
7 I don't travel very much these days, but I used ....
8 I used to .... to run ten kilometres, but I can't run that far now.
9 These days I eat more than before. I .... use to eat as much.

did
didn't
to
use
used
used to
used to be
~~**used to have**~~
be able

18.3 Compare what Karen said ten years ago and what she says today:

TEN YEARS AGO

~~I travel a lot.~~

I'm very lazy.

I don't like cheese.

I play the piano.

I never drink tea.

I have a dog.

TODAY

I eat lots of cheese now.

My dog died two years ago.

I work very hard these days.

I haven't played the piano for a long time.

~~I don't go away much these days.~~

Tea's great! I like it now.

Now write about how Karen has changed. Use used to / didn't use to / never used to in the first part of your sentence.

1 ...She used to travel a lot,... but ...she doesn't go away much these days.
2 She used .... but ....
3 .... but ....
4 .... but ....
5 .... but ....
6 .... but ....

18.4 Write sentences about yourself. Begin I used to ... (I used to be/work/like/play etc.)

1 ...I used to live in a small village, but now I live in a city.
2 ...I used to play tennis a lot, but I don't play any more.
3 I used ...., but ....
4 I ....
5 ....

Now begin with I didn't use to ... .

6 ...I didn't use to read a lot, but I do now.
7 I didn't ....
8 ....

➜ Additional exercise 9 (page 307)

Unit
19

Present tenses (**I am doing** / **I do**) for the future

A

Present continuous (**I am doing**) with a future meaning

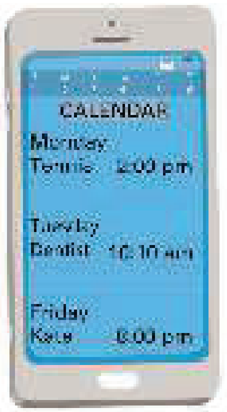

This is Ben's diary for next week.

He **is playing** tennis on Monday afternoon.
He **is going** to the dentist on Tuesday morning.
He **is meeting** Kate on Friday.

In all these examples, Ben has already decided and arranged to do these things.

I'm doing something (tomorrow etc.) = I have already decided and arranged to do it:

- A: What **are** you **doing** on Saturday evening? (*not* What do you do)
  B: **I'm going** to the cinema. (*not* I go)
- A: What time **is** Katherine **arriving** tomorrow?
  B: Half past ten. We**'re meeting** her at the station.
- I**'m not working** tomorrow, so we can go out somewhere.
- Steve **isn't playing** football next Saturday. He's hurt his leg.

We do not normally use **will** to talk about what we have arranged to do:

- What **are** you **doing** tonight? (*not* What will you do)
- Alex **is getting** married next month. (*not* will get)

We also use the present continuous for an action *just before you start to do it*. This happens especially with verbs of movement (**go**/**come**/**leave** etc.):

- I'm tired. **I'm going** to bed now. Goodnight. (*not* I go to bed now)
- 'Tina, are you ready yet?' 'Yes, **I'm coming**.' (*not* I come)

B

Present simple (**I do**) with a future meaning

We use the present simple when we talk about timetables and programmes (for example, transport or cinema times):

- I have to go. My train **leaves** at 11.30.
- What time **does** the film **start** tonight?
- The meeting **is** at nine o'clock tomorrow.

You can use the present simple to talk about people if their plans are fixed like a timetable:

- I **start** my new job on Monday.
- What time **do** you **finish** work tomorrow?

But the continuous is more usual for other personal arrangements:

- What time **are** you **meeting** Kate tomorrow? (*not* do you meet)

Compare:

Present continuous	*Present simple*
What time **are** you **arriving**?	What time **does** the train **arrive**?
I**'m going** to the cinema this evening.	The film **starts** at 8.15.

When you talk about appointments, lessons, exams etc., you can use **I have** or **I've got**:

- **I have** an exam next week. *or* **I've got** an exam next week.

I'm going to ➜ Units 20, 23 will ➜ Units 21–22 Present simple after **when** and **if** ➜ Unit 25

Exercises

19.1 Ask Anna about her holiday plans.

ANNA

1	(where / go?) .... Where are you going?	Scotland.
2	(how long / go for?)	Ten days.
3	(when / leave?)	Next Friday.
4	(go / alone?)	No, with a friend.
5	(travel / by car?)	No, by train.
6	(where / stay?)	In a hotel.

19.2 Complete the sentences.

1 Steve .... isn't playing .... (not / play) football on Saturday. He's hurt his leg.
2 .... (We / have) a party next week. We've invited all our friends.
3 .... (I / not / work) tomorrow. It's a public holiday.
4 .... (I / leave) now. I've come to say goodbye.
5 'What time .... (you / go) out this evening?' 'Seven o'clock.'
6 .... (Laura / not / come) to the party tomorrow. She isn't well.
7 I love New York. .... (I / go) there soon.
8 Ben can't meet us on Monday. .... (He / work) late.

19.3 Have you arranged to do anything at these times? Write sentences about yourself.

1	(this evening)	.... I'm not doing anything this evening. ....
2	(tomorrow morning)	I ....
3	(tomorrow evening)	I ....
4	(next Sunday)	I ....
5	(*another day or time*)	....

19.4 Complete the sentences. Use the present continuous or present simple.

1 A: Tina, are you ready yet?
B: Yes, ... I'm coming .... (I / come).
2 A: .... (you / go) to Sam's party on Saturday?
B: No, I haven't been invited.
3 A: Has Jack moved into his new apartment yet?
B: Not yet, but .... (he / move) soon – probably at the end of the month.
4 A: .... (I / go) to a concert tonight.
B: That's nice. What time .... (it / start)?
5 A: Have you seen Chris recently?
B: No, but .... (we / meet) for lunch next week.
6 A: .... (you / do) anything tomorrow morning?
B: No, I'm free. Why?
7 A: When .... (this term / end)?
B: Next Friday. And next term .... (start) four weeks after that.
8 A: .... (We / go) to a wedding at the weekend.
B: Really? .... (Who / get) married?
9 A: There's football on TV later tonight. .... (you / watch) it?
B: No, I'm not interested.
10 A: What time is your train tomorrow?
B: It .... (leave) at 9.35 and .... (arrive) at 12.47.
11 A: I'd like to go and see the exhibition at the museum. How long is it on for?
B: .... (It / finish) next week.
12 A: Do you need the car this evening?
B: No, you can have it. .... (I / not / use) it.

→ **Additional exercises 10–13** (pages 308–10)

Unit 20

I'm going to (do)

A

I **am going to do** something = I have already decided to do it, I intend to do it:

☐ '**Are** you **going to eat** anything?' 'No, I'm not hungry.'

☐ A: I hear Sarah won the lottery. What **is** she **going to do** with the money?
B: She**'s going to buy** a new car.

☐ I**'m** just **going to make** a quick phone call. Can you wait for me?

☐ This cheese smells horrible. I**'m not going to eat** it.

B

I am doing and **I am going to do**

I am doing = it is *already fixed or arranged*. For example, you have arranged to go somewhere or meet somebody:

☐ I**'m leaving** next week. I've booked my flight.

☐ What time **are** you **meeting** Emily this evening?

I **am going to do** something = I've decided to do it. Maybe I've arranged to do it, maybe not.

☐ A: Your shoes are dirty.
B: Yes, I know. I**'m going to clean** them.
(= I've *decided* to clean them, but I haven't arranged this with anybody)

☐ I don't want to stay here. Tomorrow I**'m going to look** for somewhere else to stay.

Compare:

☐ I don't know what I**'m doing** tomorrow. (= I don't know my schedule or plans)

☐ I don't know what I**'m going to do** about the problem. (= I haven't decided what to do)

Often the difference is small and either form is possible.

C

You can also say that 'something **is going to happen**' in the future. For example:

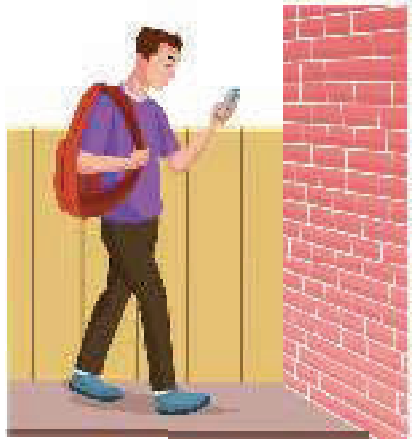

The man isn't looking where he is going.

He **is going to walk** into the wall.

When we say that 'something **is going to happen**', the situation *now* makes this clear.
The man is walking towards the wall now, so we can see that he **is going to walk** into it.

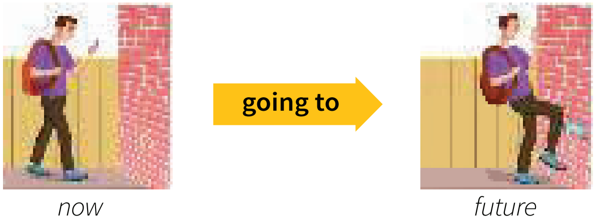

Some more examples:

☐ Look at those black clouds! It**'s going to rain**. (we can see the clouds *now*)

☐ I feel terrible. I think I**'m going to be** sick. (I feel terrible *now*)

☐ The economic situation is bad now and things **are going to get** worse.

D

I **was going to** do something = I intended to do it, but didn't do it:

☐ We **were going to travel** by train, but then we decided to drive instead.

☐ I **was** just **going to cross** the road when somebody shouted 'Stop!'

You can say that 'something **was going to happen**' (but didn't happen):

☐ I thought it **was going to rain**, but it didn't.

I am doing (future) ➜ **Unit 19A** **I will** and **I'm going to** ➜ **Unit 23**

Exercises

20.1 Write questions with going to.

1 Your friend has won some money. You ask:
(what / do?) What are you going to do with it?
2 Your friend is going to a wedding next week. You ask:
(what / wear?) ....
3 Your friend has just bought a new table. You ask:
(where / put?) ....
4 Your friend has decided to have a party. You ask:
(who / invite?) ....
5 Your friend has bought some fish for dinner. You ask:
(how / cook?) ....

20.2 Complete the sentences using I'm going to … / I'm not going to … . Choose from:

complain learn run say try wash not/accept ~~not/eat~~ not/tell

1 This cheese smells horrible. I'm not going to eat it.
2 I haven't been trying hard enough. From now on .... harder.
3 I have to make a speech tomorrow, but I don't know what ....
4 'The car is very dirty.' 'I know. .... it.'
5 I've been offered a job, but .... it. The pay is too low.
6 .... a language, but I haven't decided yet which one.
7 One day .... in a marathon. It's my ambition.
8 The food in this restaurant is awful. ....
9 Ben doesn't need to know what happened, so .... him.

20.3 What is going to happen in these situations? Use the words in brackets.

1 There are a lot of black clouds in the sky.
(rain) It's going to rain.
2 It is 8.30. Tom is leaving home. He has to be at work at 8.45, but the journey takes 30 minutes.
(late) He ....
3 There is a hole in the bottom of the boat. A lot of water is coming in through the hole.
(sink) The boat ....
4 Amy and Ben are driving. The tank is nearly empty. It's a long way to the nearest petrol station.
(run out) They ....
5 Sarah's car was badly damaged in an accident. Now it has to be repaired.
(cost a lot) It .... to repair the car.

20.4 Complete the sentences with was/were going to. Choose from:

be buy give up phone play say ~~travel~~

1 We were going to travel by train, but then we decided to go by car instead.
2 I .... some new clothes yesterday, but I didn't have time to go to the shops.
3 Tom and I .... tennis last week, but he'd hurt his knee and had to cancel.
4 I .... Jane, but I sent her an email instead.
5 I thought the exam .... hard, but it was easier than I expected.
6 Peter .... his job, but in the end he decided to stay where he was.
7 I'm sorry I interrupted you. What .... you .... ?

Unit
21

will and **shall** 1

A

We use **I'll** . . . (= **I will**) when we've just decided to do something. When we say '**I'll** do something', we announce our decision:

☐ Oh, I left the door open. **I'll go** and shut it.
☐ 'What would you like to drink?' '**I'll have** orange juice, please.'
☐ 'Did you call Max?' 'Oh no, I forgot. **I'll call** him now.'

We do not use the *present simple* (**I do** / **I go** etc.) in these sentences:

☐ **I'll phone** him now. (*not* I phone him now)

We often use **I think I'll** . . . / **I don't think I'll** . . . :

☐ I'm a little hungry. **I think I'll have** something to eat.
☐ **I don't think I'll go** out tonight. I'm too tired.

In spoken English **will not** is usually **won't**:

☐ I can see you're busy, so **I won't stay** long. (= I will not stay long)

B

We often use **I'll** in these situations:

Offering to do something

☐ That bag looks heavy. **I'll help** you with it. (*not* I help)

Agreeing to do something

☐ A: Can you give Tom this book?
B: Sure, **I'll give** it to him when I see him this afternoon.

Promising to do something

☐ Thanks for lending me the money. **I'll pay** you back on Friday.
☐ I **won't tell** anyone what happened. I promise.

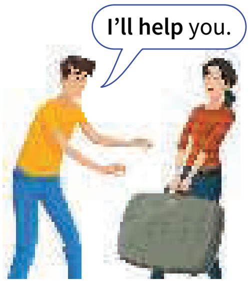
I'll **help** you.

We use **won't** to say that somebody refuses to do something:

☐ I've tried to give her advice, but she **won't listen**.
☐ The car **won't start**. (= the car 'refuses' to start)

Will you (do something)? = please do it:

☐ **Will you** please turn the music down? It's too loud.

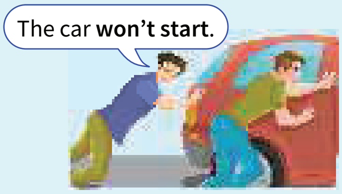

C

We do *not* use **will** to talk about what has been decided or arranged before:

☐ **I'm going** on holiday next Saturday. (*not* I'll go)

Compare:

☐ **I'm meeting** Kate tomorrow morning. (decided before)
☐ A: **I'll meet** you at half past ten, OK?
B: Fine. See you then. (decided now)

D

We use **shall** mostly in the questions **shall I** . . . ? / **shall we** . . . ?

We use **shall I** . . . ? / **shall we** . . . ? to ask if it's OK to do something or to ask for a suggestion:

☐ **Shall I** open the window? (= do you want me to open it?)
☐ I've got no money. What **shall I** do? (= what do you suggest?)
☐ '**Shall we** go?' 'Just a minute. I'm not ready yet.'
☐ 'Where **shall we** have lunch?' 'Let's go to Marino's.'

Compare **shall I** . . . ? and **will you** . . . ? :

☐ **Shall I** shut the door? (= do you want me to shut it?)
☐ **Will you** shut the door? (= I want you to shut it)

» **I am doing** (future) ➜ **Unit 19** **will** and **shall** 2 ➜ **Unit 22** **I will** and **I'm going to** ➜ **Unit 23**
American English ➜ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

21.1 Complete the sentences with I'll + a suitable verb.

1 'How are you going to get home?' 'I think I'll take a taxi.'
2 'It's cold in this room.' 'Is it? .... on the heating then.'
3 'Are you free next Friday?' 'Let me see. .... my diary.'
4 'Shall I do the washing-up?' 'No, it's all right. .... it later.'
5 'I don't know how to use this phone.' 'OK, ... you.'
6 'Would you like tea or coffee?' '.......................... coffee, please.'
7 'Are you coming with us?' 'No, I think .... here.'
8 'Can you finish this report today?' 'Well, ..., but I can't promise.'

21.2 Read the situations and write sentences with I think I'll … or I don't think I'll … .

1 It's a bit cold. The window is open and you decide to close it. You say:
It's cold with the window open. I think I'll close it.
2 You are feeling tired and it's getting late. You decide to go to bed. You say:
I'm tired, so .... Goodnight!
3 The weather is nice and you need some exercise. You decide to go for a walk. You say:
It's a lovely morning. .... Do you want to come too?
4 You were going to have lunch. Now you decide you don't want to eat anything. You say:
I don't feel hungry any more. .... lunch.
5 You planned to go swimming today. Now you decide not to go. You say:
I've got a lot to do, so .... today.

21.3 Which is correct?

1 'Did you call Max?' 'Oh no, I forgot. ~~I call~~ / I'll call him now.' (I'll call *is correct*)
2 I can't meet you tomorrow morning. I'm playing / ~~I'll play~~ tennis. (I'm playing *is correct*)
3 'I meet / I'll meet you outside the hotel at 10.30, OK?' 'Yes, that's fine.'
4 'Please don't go yet.' 'OK, I'm staying / I'll stay a little longer, but I have to go soon.'
5 I'm having / I'll have a party next Saturday. I hope you can come.
6 'Remember to lock the door when you go out.' 'OK. I don't forget / I won't forget.'
7 'Do you have any plans for the weekend?' 'Yes, we're going / we'll go to a wedding.'
8 'Are you doing / Will you do anything tomorrow evening?' 'No, I'm free. Why?'
9 'Do you do / Will you do something for me?' 'It depends. What do you want me to do?'
10 'Do you go / Will you go to work by car?' 'Not usually. I prefer to walk.'
11 I asked Sue what happened, but she doesn't tell / won't tell me.
12 I don't know if I can win the race tomorrow, but I'm doing / I'll do my best.

21.4 What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with shall I … ? or shall we … ?

1 You and a friend want to do something this evening, but you don't know what.
You say: What shall we do this evening? Do you want to go somewhere?
2 You and a friend are going on holiday together, but you have to decide where.
You ask your friend: ....?
3 You try on a jacket in a shop. You are not sure whether to buy it or not.
You ask a friend for advice: ....? What do you think?
4 You and a friend are going out. You have to decide whether to get a taxi or to walk.
You ask your friend: .... or ....?
5 It's Helen's birthday soon. You want to give her a present, but what?
You ask a friend: What ....? Any ideas?
6 You're meeting a friend tomorrow, but you have to decide what time.
You say: ....? Is 10.30 OK for you?

→ Additional exercises 10–13 (pages 308–10)

Unit
22

will and **shall** 2

A

We do *not* use **will** to say what somebody has *already arranged* or *decided* to do:

- Lisa **is working** next week. (*not* Lisa will work)
- **Are** you **going to watch** TV this evening? (*not* will you watch)

See Units 19–20.

We use **will** to say what we know or believe about the future (not what someone has already decided). For example:

Kate has her driving test next week.
Chris and Joe are talking about it.

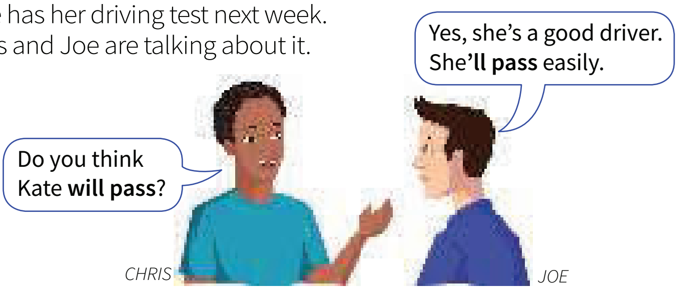
Do you think Kate will pass?
Yes, she's a good driver. She'll pass easily.
CHRIS
JOE

Joe believes that Kate **will pass** the driving test.
He is *predicting* the future.

When we predict a future happening or situation, we use **will**/**won't**.

Some more examples:

- They've been away a long time. When they return, they**'ll find** a lot of changes here.
- 'Where **will** you **be** this time next year?' 'I**'ll be** in Japan.'
- That plate is hot. If you touch it, you**'ll burn** yourself.
- Anna looks completely different now. You **won't recognise** her.
- When **will** you **get** your exam results?

Compare:

- I think James **is going** to the party on Friday. (= I think he has already decided to go)
- I think James **will go** to the party on Friday. (= I think he will decide to go)

B

We often use **will** (**'ll**) with:

probably	I**'ll probably** be home late tonight.
I'm sure	Don't worry about the exam. **I'm sure** you**'ll** pass.
I think	Do you **think** Sarah **will** like the present we bought her?
I don't think	I **don't think** the exam **will** be very difficult.
I wonder	I **wonder** what **will** happen.

After **I hope**, we generally use the present:

- I hope Kate **passes** the driving test.
- I hope it **doesn't rain** tomorrow.

C

Generally we use **will** to talk about *the future*, but sometimes we use **will** to talk about *now*:

- Don't phone Amy now. She**'ll be** busy. (= she'll be busy *now*)

D

Normally we use **shall** only with **I** and **we**. You can say:
I shall *or* **I will** (**I'll**)   **we shall** *or* **we will** (**we'll**)

- **I shall** be late this evening. (*or* **I will** be)
- **We shall** probably go to France in June. (*or* **We will** probably go)

In spoken English we normally use **I'll** and **we'll**:

- **We'll** probably go to France.

The negative of **shall** is **shall not** or **shan't**:

- I **shan't** be here tomorrow. (*or* I **won't** be)

We do not normally use **shall** with **he**/**she**/**it**/**you**/**they**:

- She **will** be very angry. (*not* She shall be)

will and **shall** 1 ➜ **Unit 21** **I will** and **I'm going to** ➜ **Unit 23** **will be doing** and **will have done** ➜ **Unit 24**
will have to ➜ **Unit 31A** The future ➜ **Appendix 3** American English ➜ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

22.1 Put in will ('ll) or won't.

1 Can you wait for me? I ....won't.... be long.
2 There's no point in asking Amanda for advice. She .... know what to do.
3 I'm glad I'm meeting Emma tomorrow. It .... be good to see her again.
4 I'm sorry about what happened yesterday. It .... happen again.
5 You don't need to take an umbrella with you. I don't think it .... rain.
6 I've got some incredible news! You .... believe it.

22.2 Complete the sentences using will ('ll). Choose from the following:

it/be **she/come** **you/get** **you/like** **you/enjoy**
people/live **it/look** **we/meet** ~~**you/pass**~~ **she/mind**

1 Don't worry about your exam. I'm sure ....you'll pass.... .
2 Why don't you try on this jacket? .... nice on you.
3 You must meet Max sometime. I think .... him.
4 It's a very nice hotel. .... your stay there.
5 It's raining hard. Don't go out. .... very wet.
6 Do you think .... longer in the future?
7 Goodbye! I'm sure .... again before long.
8 I've invited Anna to the party, but I don't think ....
9 You can borrow Amy's umbrella. I don't think ....
10 It takes me an hour to get to work at the moment. When the new road is finished,
.... much quicker.

22.3 Write questions using do you think … will … ? + the following:

be back **cost** **end** **get married** **happen** ~~**like**~~ **rain**

1 I've bought this picture for Karen. ....Do you think she'll like it.... ?
2 The weather doesn't look very good. Do you .... ?
3 The meeting is still going on. When do you .... ?
4 My car needs to be repaired. How much .... ?
5 Sally and David are in love. Do .... ?
6 'I'm going out now.' 'OK. What time .... ?'
7 The future situation is uncertain. What .... ?

22.4 Where do you think you will be at these times? Write sentences about yourself. Use:

I'll be … *or* **I'll probably be …** *or* **I don't know where …**

1 (next Monday evening at 7.45) ....I'll probably be at home.....
2 (at 3 am tomorrow) ....
3 (at 10.30 tomorrow morning) ....
4 (next Friday afternoon at 4.15) ....
5 (this time next year) ....

22.5 Which is better in these sentences?

1 Lisa isn't free on Saturday. ~~She'll work~~ / She's working. (She's working *is correct*)
2 It was an amazing experience. I never forget it. / I'll never forget it.
3 Something very funny happened. You're laughing / You'll laugh when I tell you about it.
4 I'll go / I'm going to a party tomorrow night. Would you like to come too?
5 Who do you think will win / is winning the game tomorrow?
6 I can't meet you this evening. A friend of mine will come / is coming to see me.
7 Don't be afraid of the dog. It won't hurt / It isn't hurting you.
8 What's happening / What will happen if I press this button?
9 A: Have you decided where to go for your holidays?
B: Yes, we'll go / we're going to Italy.

➜ **Additional exercises 10–13** (pages 308–10)

Unit 23

I will and **I'm going to**

A Future actions

Compare **will** and (**be**) **going to**:

Sarah is talking to Helen:

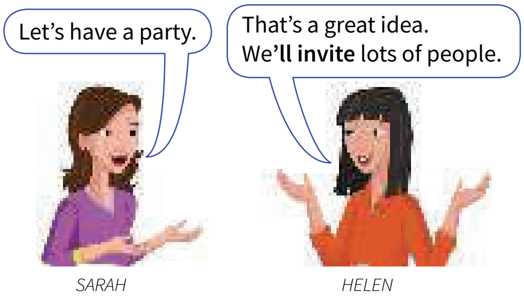
Let's have a party.
That's a great idea. We'll **invite** lots of people.
SARAH
HELEN

will (We'**ll invite** . . .)

We use **will** (We'**ll** invite . . .) to announce a new decision. The party is a new idea.

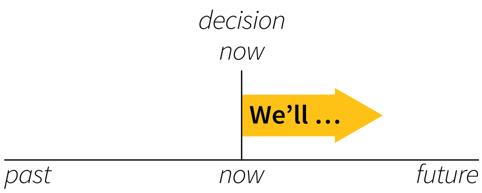
decision now
We'll …
past
now
future

Later that day, Helen meets Max:

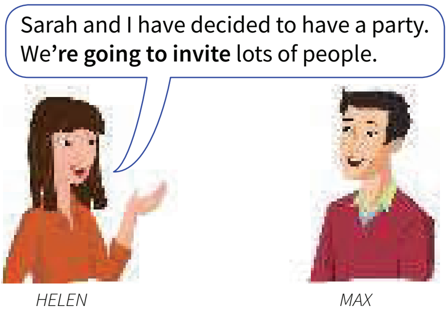
Sarah and I have decided to have a party. We're **going to invite** lots of people.
HELEN
MAX

(**be**) **going to** (We'**re going to** invite . . .)

We use (**be**) **going to** when we have *already decided* to do something. Helen had already decided to invite lots of people *before* she spoke to Max.

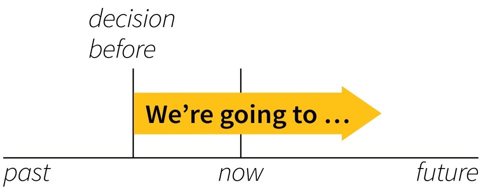
decision before
We're going to …
past
now
future

Compare:

- 'Gary has been trying to contact you.' 'Has he? OK, I'**ll call** him.'
  'Gary has been trying to contact you.' 'Yes, I know. I'**m going to call** him.'
- 'Anna is in hospital.' 'Really? I didn't know. I'**ll go** and visit her.'
  'Anna is in hospital.' 'Yes, I know. I'**m going to visit** her this evening.'

B Future happenings and situations (predicting the future)

We use both **will** and **going to** for future happenings and situations. So you can say:

- I think the weather **will be** nice later. *or*
  I think the weather **is going to be** nice later.
- Those shoes are well-made. They'**ll last** a long time. *or*
  Those shoes are well-made. They'**re going to last** a long time.

When we say something **is going to** happen, we believe this because of the situation *now*. What is happening *now* shows that something **is going to** happen in the future. For example:

- Look at those black clouds. It'**s going to rain**. (*not* it will rain)
  (we can see that it **is going to rain** – the black clouds are in the sky *now*)

Compare:

- We'**re going to be** late. The meeting starts in five minutes and it takes 15 minutes to get there.
  (it is clear *now* that we don't have enough time to get there)
- Jane **will be** late for the meeting. She's always late.
  (I believe this because I know what Jane is like)

I'm going to ➜ Unit 20 **will ➜ Units 21–22** The future ➜ **Appendix 3**

Exercises

23.1 Complete the sentences using will ('ll) or (be) going to.

1 A: Why are you turning on the TV?
B: I'm going to watch the news. (I / watch)
2 A: I forgot my wallet. I don't have any money.
B: Not to worry. …… you some. (I / lend)
3 A: Why are you filling that bucket with water?
B: …… the car. (I / wash)
4 A: I don't know how to use the washing machine.
B: It's easy. …… you. (I / show)
5 A: I've decided to paint this room.
B: That's nice. What colour …… it? (you / paint)
6 A: Where are you going? Are you going shopping?
B: Yes, …… some things for dinner tonight. (I / buy)
7 A: What would you like to eat?
B: …… a pizza, please. (I / have)
8 A: This food doesn't taste very good, does it?
B: No, it's horrible. …… it. (I / not / finish)
9 A: Tom is starting an evening class next month.
B: Is he? What …… ? (he / study)
10 A: Did you call Lisa?
B: Oh, no. I completely forgot. …… her now. (I / call)
11 A: Has Dan decided what to do when he leaves school?
B: Yes. Everything is planned.
First …… a holiday for a few weeks. (he / have)
Then …… a management training course. (he / do)

23.2 Read the situations and complete the sentences using will ('ll) or (be) going to.

1 You want some coffee. You go to the kitchen to make some.
You say (to your friend): I'm going to make some coffee. Would you like some?
2 You're speaking to a friend and arranging to meet. You suggest a time and place.
You say: …… you at 10.30 in the hotel lobby, OK? (I/see)
3 You have decided to sell your car. You tell a friend of yours.
You say: I don't need my car any more. …… it. (I/sell)
4 Your friend is worried because she has lost her driving licence.
You say: Don't worry. I'm sure …… it. (you/find)
5a You have an old camera that is broken. You have decided to throw it away. You tell your friend.
You say: This camera is broken. …… it away. (I/throw)
5b Your friend loves and collects old cameras. He doesn't want you to throw it away.
He says: Don't throw it away! …… it. (I/have)
6a Joe has to go to the airport tomorrow. He doesn't know how to get there. Amy offers to take him.
Amy says: Don't worry about getting to the airport, Joe. …… you. (I/take)
6b Later that day, Paul offers to take Joe to the airport. Joe tells him that it's not necessary.
Joe says: Thanks, Paul, but …… me. (Amy/take)

23.3 Which goes with which?

1 Why don't you come to the party with us?
2 That ceiling looks dangerous.
3 He's looking very tired.
4 This table is too big.
5 The weather forecast is good.
6 Jack is very determined.
7 They are building a new skyscraper here.
8 I haven't seen Ben for ages.

a He'll get what he wants.
b He probably won't remember me.
c It's going to be a nice day.
d It looks as if it's going to fall down.
e It's going to be 200 metres high.
f ~~You'll enjoy it.~~
g I don't think it will fit in the room.
h I think he's going to fall asleep.

1 f
2 ……
3 ……
4 ……
5 ……
6 ……
7 ……
8 ……

➜ **Additional exercises 10–13** (pages 308–10)

Unit
24
# will be doing and will have done

A

Study this example situation:

These people are standing in a queue to get into the cinema.

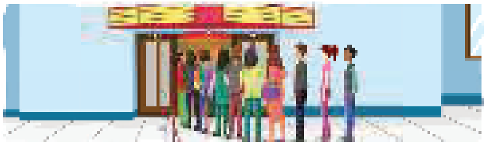

now

Half an hour from now, the cinema will be full.
Everyone **will be watching** the film.

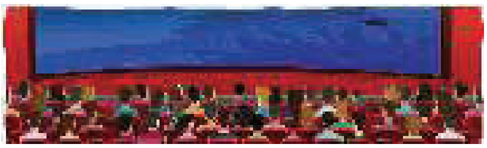

half an hour from now

Three hours from now, the cinema will be empty.
The film **will have finished**.
Everyone **will have gone** home.

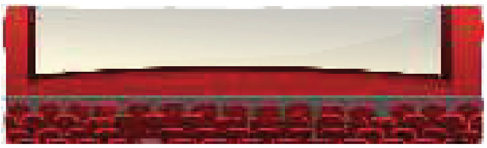

three hours from now

B

I **will be doing** something (*future continuous*) = I will be in the middle of doing it:

☐ This time next week I'll be on holiday. I**'ll be lying** on the beach or **swimming** in the sea.
☐ You have no chance of getting the job. You**'ll be wasting** your time if you apply.

Compare **will be** (do)**ing** and **will** (do):

☐ Don't phone between 7 and 8. We**'ll be eating**.
☐ Let's wait for Liz to arrive and then we**'ll eat**.

Compare:

☐ At 10 o'clock yesterday, Tina **was** in her office. She **was working**. *(past continuous)*
It's 10 o'clock now. She **is** in her office. She **is working**. *(present continuous)*
At 10 o'clock tomorrow, she **will be** in her office. She **will be working**. *(future continuous)*

C

We also use **will be -ing** to talk about complete actions in the future. For example:

☐ The government **will be making** a statement about the crisis later today.
☐ Later in the programme, I**'ll be talking** to the Minister of Education.
☐ The team's star player is injured and **won't be playing** in the game on Saturday.

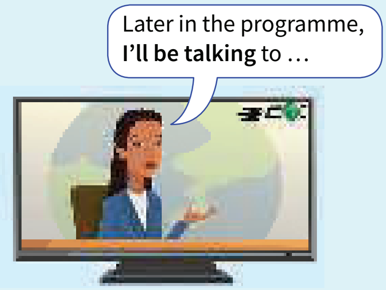
Later in the programme, I'll be talking to …

When we use it in this way, **will be** (**doing**) is similar to **will** (**do**) and **going to** (**do**).

D

I **will have done** something (*future perfect*) = it will be complete before a time in the future. For example:

☐ Sally always leaves for work at 8.30 in the morning. She won't be at home at 9 o'clock – she**'ll have gone** to work.
☐ We're late. The film **will** already **have started** by the time we get to the cinema.

Compare:

☐ Ted and Amy **have been** married for 24 years. *(present perfect)*
Next year they **will have been** married for 25 years. *(future perfect)*
When their son was born, they **had been** married for three years. *(past perfect)*

will ➜ Units 21–22 **by then / by the time ➜ Unit 120** The future **➜ Appendix 3**

Exercises

24.1 **Read about Andy. Then tick (✓) the sentences which are true. In each group of sentences at least one is true.**

Andy goes to work every day. He leaves home at 8 o'clock and arrives at work at about 8.45. He starts work immediately and continues until 12.30 when he has lunch (which takes about half an hour). He starts work again at 1.15 and goes home at exactly 4.30. Every day he follows the same routine and tomorrow will be no exception.

1
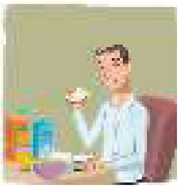
At 7.45
a he'll be leaving the house
b he'll have left the house
c he'll be at home ✓
d he'll be having breakfast ✓

2
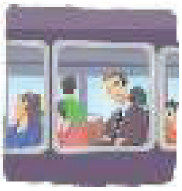
At 8.15
a he'll be leaving the house
b he'll have left the house
c he'll have arrived at work
d he'll be arriving at work

3
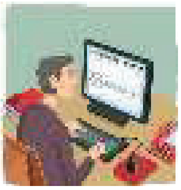
At 9.15
a he'll be working
b he'll start work
c he'll have started work
d he'll be arriving at work

4
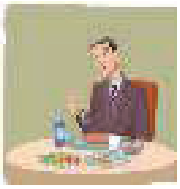
At 12.45
a he'll have lunch
b he'll be having lunch
c he'll have finished his lunch
d he'll have started his lunch

5
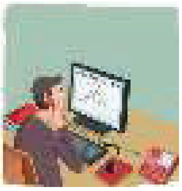
At 4 o'clock
a he'll have finished work
b he'll finish work
c he'll be working
d he won't have finished work

6
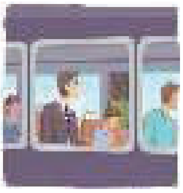
At 4.45
a he'll leave work
b he'll be leaving work
c he'll have left work
d he'll have arrived home

24.2 **Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.**

1 There's an election next week. Who ……will you be voting…… for?
2 I'll …………………… shopping later. Can I get you anything?
3 Emily is not well, so she …………………… volleyball tomorrow.
4 Little Emma …………………… school soon. She's growing up fast.
5 The match is on TV tonight. Will you …………………… it?
6 What …………………… in your new job? The same as before?
7 I …………………… to the wedding. I'll be away on holiday.
8 Please fasten your seat belts. The plane …………………… in ten minutes.

be watching
will be landing
won't be playing
will be starting
~~**will you be voting**~~
won't be going
be going
will you be doing

24.3 **Put the verb into the correct form, will be (do)ing or will have (done).**

1 Don't phone between 7 and 8. ……We'll be eating…… then. (we / eat)
2 Tomorrow afternoon we're going to play tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 4 o'clock, …………………… tennis. (we / play)
3 Sarah will meet you at the station. …………………… for you when you arrive. (she / wait)
4 The meeting starts at 9.30 and won't last longer than an hour. You can be sure that …………………… by 11 o'clock. (it / finish)
5 Do you think …………………… in the same place in ten years' time? (you / still / live)
6 Lisa is travelling in Europe and so far she has travelled about 1,000 miles. By the end of the trip, …………………… more than 3,000 miles. (she / travel)
7 If you need to contact me, …………………… at the Lion Hotel until Friday. (I / stay)
8 Ben is on holiday and is spending his money very quickly. If he continues like this, …………………… all his money before the end of his holiday. (he / spend)
9 I'm fed up with my job. I hope …………………… it much longer. (I / not / do)

→ **Additional exercises 12–13** (pages 309–10)

Unit
25

when I do and **when I've done**   **if** and **when**

A

Study this example:

Amy is on a train. She's calling a friend.

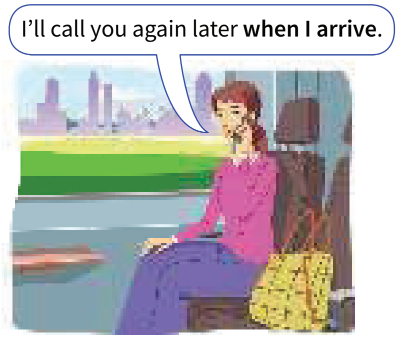
I'll call you again later **when I arrive.**

'I'll call you again later when I arrive' is a sentence with two parts:

the main part:	I'll call you again later
and **when** . . .:	when I arrive

The time is *future* ('later'), but Amy says:
. . . **when I arrive** (*not* when I will arrive)
We say
when I **do** something (*not* will do)
when something **happens** (*not* will happen)

Some more examples:

- We'll go out **when** it **stops** raining. (*not* when it will stop)
- **When** you **are** here again, you must come and see us. (*not* When you will be)
- Don't forget to lock the door **when** you **go** out. (*not* will go)

The same thing happens after **while** / **before** / **after** / **as soon as** / **until**:

- What are you going to do **while I'm** away? (*not* while I will be)
- **Before** you **go**, there's something I want to ask you.
- Wait here **until** I **come** back. *or* . . . **till** I **come** back.

B

You can also use the *present perfect* (**have done**) after **when** / **after** / **until** / **as soon as**:

- Can I have the newspaper **when** you**'ve finished** with it?
- Don't say anything while Ian is here. Wait **until** he **has gone**.

We use the present perfect to show that one thing is complete *before* the other. The two things do *not* happen together:

- **When** I**'ve phoned** Kate, we can go out.
  (= first I'll phone Kate and *after that* we can go out)

Do not use the present perfect if the two things happen together:

- **When** I **phone** Kate, I'll ask her about the party. (*not* when I've phoned)

It is often possible to use either the present simple or the present perfect:

I'll come **as soon as I finish**.	*or*	I'll come **as soon as I've finished**.
You'll feel better **after** you **have** something to eat.	*or*	You'll feel better **after** you**'ve had** something to eat.

C

if and **when**

After **if**, we normally use the present (**if** I **do** / **if** I **see** etc.) for the future:

- I'll be angry **if** it **happens** again. (*not* if it will happen)
- Hurry up! **If** we **don't** hurry, we'll be late.

We use **if** (*not* when) for things that will *possibly* happen (or not happen):

- **If** it is raining this evening, I won't go out. (*not* when it is raining)
- Don't worry **if** I'm late tonight. (*not* when I'm late)
- **If** they don't come soon, I'm not going to wait for them.

We use **when** for things which are *sure* to happen. Compare:

- I might go out later. *(it's possible)* **If** I go out, I'll get some bread.
- I'm going out later. *(for sure)* **When** I go out, I'll get some bread.

if ➜ Units 38–40   even if / even when ➜ Unit 112D   unless → Unit 115

Exercises

25.1 Which is correct?

1 Don't forget to lock the door when you go out ~~/ you'll go out~~. (you go out *is correct*)

2 As soon as we get any more information, we let / we'll let you know.

3 I want to get to the cinema before the film starts / will start.

4 Don't drive through a red light. Wait until it changes / it will change to green.

5 Sarah will be here soon. I make / I'll make some coffee when she comes.

6 I'm 20 now. I wonder where I'll be when I'm 40 / I'll be 40.

7 I wait / I'll wait for you until you're ready, but don't be long.

8 Oliver is five years old. He wants to be a TV presenter when he grows up / he'll grow up.

9 We could meet for coffee tomorrow morning if you're / you will be free.

10 If the weather is / will be nice tomorrow, we're going to the beach.

11 Vicky is / will be very disappointed if she doesn't get a place at university.

12 You'll feel better after you've had / you'll have something to eat.

25.2 Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets. Use **will**/**won't** or the present (**see**/**plays**/**are** etc.).

1 When ....you are.... (you / be) here again, you must come and see us.

2 I want to see Sophie before .... (she / go) away next week.

3 Call me when .... (you / know) what time you're going to get here.

4 There's no need to hurry. .... (I / wait) for you until .... (you / be) ready.

5 I'm going out for about an hour. .... (you / still / be) here when .... (I / get) back?

6 I think everything will be fine, but if .... (there / be) any problems, ... (I / let) you know, OK?

7 Kate looks completely different now. .... (you / not / recognise) her when .... (you / see) her again.

8 I'm going to be away for a few days. If .... (you / need) to contact me while .... (I / be) away, you can call me.

25.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1 You and a friend want to go out, but it's raining hard. You don't want to get wet.
You say: Let's wait until ....it stops raining.......................... .

2 You're visiting a friend. It's going to get dark soon, and you want to leave before that.
You ask: I'd better go now before ....

3 You want to sell your car. Mark is interested in buying it, but he hasn't decided yet.
You ask: Let me know as soon as ....

4 Your friends are going to Hong Kong soon. You want to know where they're going to stay.
You ask: Where are you going to stay when .... ?

5 The traffic is bad in your town, but they are going to build a new road.
You say: I think things will be better when they ....

6 Someone you know has been very rude to you. You want her to apologise.
You say (to someone else): I won't speak to her until ....

25.4 Put in **when** or **if**.

1 Don't worry ....if.... I'm late tonight.

2 Be careful. You'll hurt yourself .... you fall.

3 I'm going shopping. .... you want anything, I can get it for you.

4 I'm going away for a few days. I'll call you .... I get back.

5 .... I don't see you tomorrow, when will I see you again?

6 I'm watching a programme on TV right now. .... it finishes, I'm going to bed.

7 We can eat at home or, ... you prefer, we can go to a restaurant.

8 I hope Sarah can come to the party. It will be a shame .... she can't come.

➜ **Additional exercises 12–15** (pages 309–11), **32** (page 321)

Unit
26

can, could and (be) able to

A

We use **can** to say that something is possible or allowed, or that somebody has the ability to do something. We use **can** + *infinitive* (**can do** / **can see** etc.):

☐ We **can see** the lake from our hotel.
☐ 'I don't have a pen.' 'You **can use** mine.'
☐ **Can** you **speak** any foreign languages?
☐ I **can come** and see you tomorrow if you like.
☐ The word 'dream' **can be** a noun or a verb.

The negative is **can't** (= **cannot**):

☐ I'm afraid I **can't come** to the party on Friday.

B

You can say that somebody **is able to** do something, but **can** is more usual:

☐ We **are able to see** the lake from our hotel.

But **can** has only two forms: **can** *(present)* and **could** *(past)*. So sometimes it is necessary to use (**be**) **able to**. Compare:

☐ I **can't** sleep.	☐ I **haven't been able to** sleep recently.
☐ Tom **can** come tomorrow.	☐ Tom **might be able to** come tomorrow.
☐ Maria **can** speak French, Spanish and English.	☐ Applicants for the job **must be able to** speak two foreign languages.

C

Sometimes **could** is the past of **can**. We use **could** especially with:

see **hear** **smell** **taste** **feel** **remember** **understand**

☐ We had a lovely room in the hotel. We **could see** the lake.
☐ As soon as I walked into the room, I **could smell** gas.
☐ I was sitting at the back of the theatre and **couldn't hear** very well.

We also use **could** to say that somebody had the ability to do something, or was allowed to do something:

☐ My grandfather **could speak** five languages.
☐ We were totally free. We **could do** what we wanted. (= we were allowed to do)

D

could and **was able to**

We use **could** for *general* ability and with **see**, **hear** etc. :

☐ My grandfather **could speak** five languages.
☐ I **could see** them, but not very clearly.

But to say that somebody succeeded in doing something in a specific situation, we normally use **was**/**were able to** or **managed to** (*not* **could**):

☐ The fire spread quickly, but everybody **was able to escape**. (*not* could escape)
☐ I didn't know where Max was, but I **managed to find** him in the end. (*not* could find)

Compare:

☐ Jack was an excellent tennis player when he was younger. He **could beat** anybody.
(= he was good enough to beat anybody, he had the ability)
but Jack and Andy played a match yesterday. Andy played well, but Jack **managed to beat** him.
(= he succeeded in beating him this time)

The negative **couldn't** (**could not**) is possible in all situations:

☐ My grandfather **couldn't swim**.
☐ I looked for Max everywhere, but I **couldn't find** him.
☐ Andy played well, but he **couldn't beat** Jack.

could (**do**) and **could have** (**done**) ➜ **Unit 27** **must** and **can't** ➜ **Unit 28** **can**/**could you** ... ? ➜ **Unit 37**

Exercises

26.1 Complete the sentences using **can** or (**be**) **able to**. If **can** is not possible, use (**be**) **able to**.

1 Gary has travelled a lot. He ....can.... speak five languages.
2 I haven't ....been able to.... sleep very well recently.
3 Nicole .... drive, but she doesn't have a car.
4 I used to .... stand on my head, but I can't do it any more.
5 I can't understand Mark. I've never .... understand him.
6 I can't see you on Friday, but I .... meet you on Saturday morning.
7 Ask Katherine about your problem. She might .... help you.
8 You have to be careful in this part of the city. It .... be dangerous.
9 Michael has lived in Italy a long time, so he should .... speak Italian.

26.2 Write sentences about yourself using the ideas in brackets.

1 (something you used to be able to do)
....I used to be able to sing well...
2 (something you used to be able to do)
I used ....
3 (something you would like to be able to do)
I'd ....
4 (something you have never been able to do)
I've ....

26.3 Complete the sentences with **can**/**can't**/**could**/**couldn't** + the following:

believe ~~**come**~~ **hear** **run** **sleep** **wait**

1 I'm afraid I ....can't come.... to your party next week.
2 When Dan was 16, he .... 100 metres in 11 seconds.
3 'Are you in a hurry?' 'No, I've got plenty of time. I ....'
4 I don't feel good this morning. I .... last night.
5 Can you speak a little louder? I .... you very well.
6 I was amazed when I heard the news. I .... it.

26.4 Complete the answers to the questions with **was**/**were able to …** .

1 A: Did everybody escape from the fire?
B: Yes. The fire spread quickly, but everybody ....was able to escape.................... .
2 A: Did you finish your work this afternoon?
B: Yes, there was nobody to disturb me, so I ....
3 A: Did you solve the problem?
B: Yes, we did. It wasn't easy, but we ....
4 A: Did the thief get away?
B: Yes. No-one realised what was happening and the thief ....

26.5 Complete the sentences using **could**, **couldn't** or **managed to**.

1 My grandfather travelled a lot. He ....could.... speak five languages.
2 I looked everywhere for the book, but I ....couldn't.... find it.
3 They didn't want to come with us at first, but we ....managed to.... persuade them.
4 Jessica had hurt her foot and .... walk very well.
5 There was a small fire in the kitchen, but fortunately I .... put it out.
6 The walls were thin and I .... hear people talking in the next room.
7 I ran my first marathon recently. It was very hard, but I .... finish.
8 My grandmother loved music. She .... play the piano very well.
9 We wanted to go to the concert, but we .... get tickets.
10 A girl fell into the river, but some people .... pull her out. She's all right now.

Unit
27 could (do) and could have (done)

A

Sometimes **could** is the past of **can** (see Unit 26):

- Listen. I **can hear** something. *(now)*
- I listened. I **could hear** something. *(past)*

But **could** is not always past. We also use **could** for possible actions now or in the future, especially to make suggestions. For example:

- A: What shall we do tonight?
  B: We **could go** to the cinema.
- A: When you go to Paris next month, you **could stay** with Sarah.
  B: Yes, I suppose I **could**.

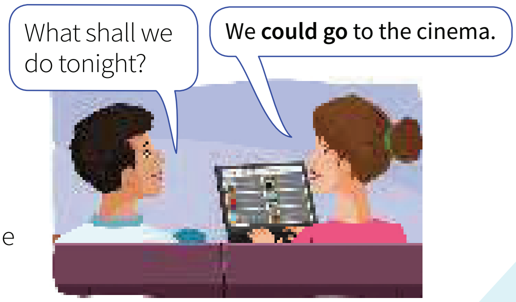
What shall we do tonight?
We could go to the cinema.

Can is also possible in these sentences ('We can go to the cinema.' etc.). **Could** is less sure than **can**.

B

We also use **could** (*not* **can**) for actions that are not realistic. For example:

- I'm so tired, I **could sleep** for a week. (*not* I can sleep for a week)

Compare **can** and **could**:

- I **can stay** with Sarah when I go to Paris. (realistic)
- Maybe I **could stay** with Sarah when I go to Paris. (possible, but less sure)
- This is a wonderful place. I **could stay** here for ever. (unrealistic)

C

We also use **could** (*not* **can**) to say that something is possible now or in the future:

- The story **could be** true, but I don't think it is. (*not* can be true)
- I don't know what time Lisa is coming. She **could get** here at any time.

Compare **can** and **could**:

- The weather **can** change very quickly in the mountains. (in general)
- The weather is nice now, but it **could** change later. (the weather now, not in general)

D

We use **could have** (done) to talk about the past. Compare:

- I'm so tired, I **could sleep** for a week. *(now)*
  I was so tired, I **could have slept** for a week. *(past)*
- The situation is bad, but it **could be** worse. *(now)*
  The situation was bad, but it **could have been** worse. *(past)*

Something **could have** happened = it was possible, but did *not* happen:

- Why did you stay at a hotel? You **could have stayed** with me.
- David was lucky. He **could have hurt** himself when he fell, but he's all right.

E

I couldn't do something = it would not be possible:

- I **couldn't live** in a big city. I'd hate it. (= it wouldn't be possible for me)
- Everything is fine right now. Things **couldn't be** better.

For the past we use **couldn't have** . . . (= would not have been possible):

- We had a really good holiday. It **couldn't have been** better.

Note that 'I **couldn't do** something' has two meanings:

(1) I **couldn't** = it would not be possible now, I would not be able:

- I **couldn't run** ten kilometres now. I'm not fit enough. (= I would not be able)

(2) I **couldn't** = I was not able (past)

- I **couldn't run** yesterday because I'd hurt my leg. (= I was not able)

can and **could** ➜ **Unit 26** **couldn't have** (**done**) ➜ **Unit 28B** **could** and **might** ➜ **Unit 29C**
could I/you . . . ? ➜ **Unit 37** **could** with **if** ➜ **Units 38C, 39E, 40D** Modal verbs (**can**/**will** etc.) ➜ **Appendix 4**

Exercises

27.1 Which goes with which?

1 What shall we eat tonight?
2 I need to phone Vicky sometime.
3 What shall I get Ann for her birthday?
4 Where shall we put this picture?
5 What would you like to do at the weekend?
6 I don't know what to wear to the wedding.

a We could go away somewhere.
b You could give her a book.
c ~~We could have fish.~~
d You could wear your brown suit.
e You could do it now.
f We could hang it in the kitchen.

1 ....c....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

27.2 Put in **can** or **could**.

1 This is a wonderful place. I ....could.... stay here forever.
2 I'm so angry with him. I .... kill him!
3 I .... hear a strange noise. What is it?
4 It's so nice here. I .... sit here all day but unfortunately I have to go.
5 I .... understand your point of view, but I don't agree with you.
6 Peter is a keen musician. He plays the flute and he .... also play the piano.
7 The company Amy works for isn't doing well. She .... lose her job.
8 Some people are unlucky. Life .... be very unfair.
9 I've been really stupid. I .... kick myself.
10 Be careful climbing that tree. You .... fall.

27.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

gone **could be** **could come** ~~**could sleep**~~
have moved **could have** **could have come** **could have been**

1 A: Are you tired?
B: Yes, very tired. I feel as if I ....could sleep.... for a week.
2 A: I spent a very boring evening at home yesterday.
B: Why did you stay at home? You .... out with us.
3 A: Shall I open this letter?
B: Yes. It .... important.
4 A: How was your exam? Was it difficult?
B: It wasn't so bad. It .... worse.
5 A: I got very wet walking home in the rain.
B: Why did you walk? You .... taken a taxi.
6 A: Where shall we meet tomorrow?
B: Well, I .... to your office if you like.
7 A: Does Tom still live in the same place?
B: I'm not sure. He could ....
8 A: Did you go to university?
B: No. I could have .... , but I didn't want to.

27.4 Complete the sentences. Use **couldn't** or **couldn't have** + these verbs (in the correct form):

afford **be** ~~**be**~~ ~~**live**~~ **manage** **stand** **study** **wear**

1 I ....couldn't live.... in a big city. I'd hate it.
2 We had a really good holiday. It ....couldn't have been.... better.
3 I .... that hat. People would laugh at me.
4 You helped me a lot. I .... without you.
5 The staff at the hotel were really good. They .... more helpful.
6 There's no way we could buy a car now. We .... it.
7 Jack prepared for the exam as well as he could. He .... harder.
8 I wouldn't like to live near the motorway. I .... the noise of the traffic.

➜ Additional exercises 16–18 (pages 311–13)

Unit 28

must and can’t

A

Study this example:

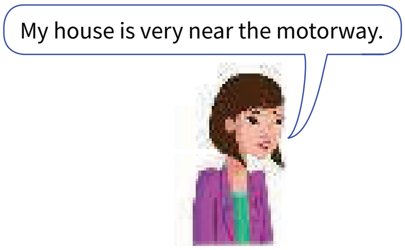
My house is very near the motorway.

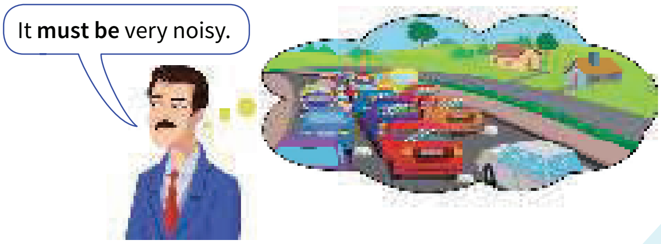
It **must be** very noisy.

We use **must** to say that we believe something is certain:

- You’ve been travelling all day. You **must be** tired.
  (travelling is tiring and you’ve been travelling all day, so you **must** be tired)
- ‘Joe is a hard worker.’ ‘Joe? You **must be joking**. He doesn’t do anything.’
- Louise **must get** very bored in her job. She does the same thing every day.

We use **can’t** to say that we believe something is not possible:

- You’ve just had lunch. You **can’t be** hungry already.
  (we don’t expect people to be hungry immediately after a meal)
- They haven’t lived here for very long. They **can’t know** many people.

The structure is:

you/she/they (etc.)	**must** **can’t**	**be** (tired / hungry / at work etc.) **be -ing** (doing / going / joking etc.) **get** / **know** / **have** etc.

B

Study this example:

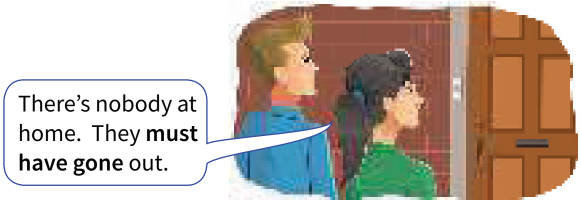
There’s nobody at home. They **must have gone** out.

Martin and Lucy expected their friends to be at home.
They rang the doorbell twice, but nobody has answered. Lucy says:

They **must have gone** out.
(= there is no other possibility)

For the past we use **must have** … and **can’t have** … :

- I lost one of my gloves. I **must have dropped** it somewhere.
  (that’s the only explanation I can think of)
- ‘We used to live very near the motorway.’ ‘Did you? It **must have been** noisy.’
- Sarah hasn’t contacted me. She **can’t have got** my message.
- Max walked into a wall. He **can’t have been looking** where he was going.

The structure is:

I/you/he (etc.)	**must** **can’t**	**have**	**been** (asleep / at work etc.) **been -ing** (doing / looking etc.) **gone** / **got** / **known** etc.

You can use **couldn’t have** instead of **can’t have**:

- Sarah **couldn’t have got** my message.
- Max **couldn’t have been looking** where he was going.

can’t (‘I can’t swim’ etc.) ➔ **Unit 26**   **must** (‘I must go’ etc.) ➔ **Units 31–32**
Modal verbs (**can**/**will** etc.) ➔ **Appendix 4**   American English ➔ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

28.1 Put in must or can't.

1 You've been travelling all day. You ……must…… be tired.
2 That restaurant …………………… be very good. It's always full of people.
3 That restaurant …………………… be very good. It's always empty.
4 I'm sure Kate gave me her address. I …………………… have it somewhere.
5 I often see that man in this street. He …………………… live near here.
6 It rained every day during their holiday. It …………………… have been very nice for them.
7 Congratulations on passing your exam. You …………………… be very pleased.
8 This bill …………………… be correct. It's much too high.
9 You got here very quickly. You …………………… have driven very fast.
10 Bill and Sue always stay at five-star hotels. They …………………… be short of money.
11 Karen hasn't left the office yet. She …………………… be working late tonight.

28.2 Complete each sentence with a verb (one or two words).

1 I've lost one of my gloves. I must ……have dropped…… it somewhere.
2 Their house is very near the motorway. It must ……be…… very noisy.
3 You've lived in this village a long time. You must …………………… everybody who lives here.
4 I don't seem to have my wallet with me. I must …………………… it at home.
5 'How old is Ed?' 'He's older than me. He must …………………… at least 40.'
6 I didn't hear my phone. I must …………………… asleep.
7 'You're going on holiday soon. You must …………………… forward to it.' 'Yes, I am.'
8 I'm sure you know this song. You must …………………… it before.
9 The road is closed, so we have to go another way. There must …………………… an accident.
10 'Do you have a car?' 'You must ……………………! How could I afford to have a car?'
11 David is the managing director of a large company, so he must …………………… quite a high salary.

28.3 Use the words in brackets to write sentences with must have and can't have.

1 We went to our friends' house and rang the doorbell, but nobody answered. (they / go out)
They must have gone out.
2 Sarah hasn't contacted me. (she / get / my message)
She can't have got my message.
3 The jacket you bought is very good quality. (it / be / very expensive)
……………………………………………
4 I haven't seen our neighbours for the last few days. (they / go away)
……………………………………………
5 I can't find my umbrella. (I / leave / it in the restaurant last night)
……………………………………………
6 Amy was in a very difficult situation when she lost her job. (it / be / easy for her)
……………………………………………
7 There was a man standing outside the cafe. He was there a long time. (he / wait / for somebody)
……………………………………………
8 Rachel did the opposite of what I asked her to do. (she / understand / what I said)
……………………………………………
9 When I got back to my car, it was unlocked. (I / forget / to lock it)
……………………………………………
10 My neighbours were making a lot of noise in the night. It woke me up. (they / have / a party)
……………………………………………
11 The light was red, but the car didn't stop. (the driver / see / the red light)
……………………………………………
12 Paul has had these shoes for years, but they still look new. (he / wear / them much)
……………………………………………

→ Additional exercises 16–18 (pages 311–13)

Unit 29

may and **might** 1

A

Study this example situation:

You are looking for Ben. Nobody is sure where he is, but you get some suggestions.

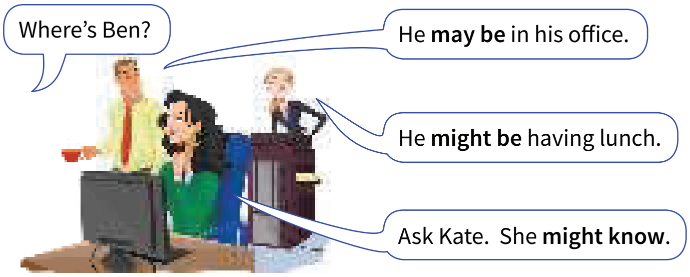
Where's Ben?
He **may** be in his office.
He **might** be having lunch.
Ask Kate. She **might** know.

(= perhaps he is in his office)

(= perhaps he is having lunch)

(= perhaps she knows)

We use **may** or **might** to say that something is possible. You can use **may** or **might**:

- It **may** be true. *or* It **might** be true. (= perhaps it is true)
- She **might** know. *or* She **may** know.

The negative forms are **may not** and **might not**:

- It **may not** be true. (= perhaps it isn't true)
- She **might not** know. (= perhaps she doesn't know)

I/you/he (etc.)	**may** **might**	(**not**)	**be** (true / in his office etc.) **be -ing** (doing / working / having etc.) **know** / **work** / **want** etc.

Note the difference between **may be** (2 words) and **maybe** (1 word):

- It **may be** true. (**may** + verb)
- 'Is it true?' '**Maybe**. I'm not sure.' (**maybe** = it's possible, perhaps)

B

For the past we use **may have** . . . or **might have** . . . :

- A: I wonder why Kate didn't answer her phone.
  B: She **may have been** asleep. (= perhaps she was asleep)
- A: I can't find my phone anywhere.
  B: You **might have left** it at work. (= perhaps you left it at work)
- A: Why wasn't Amy at the meeting yesterday?
  B: She **might not have known** about it. (= perhaps she didn't know)
- A: I wonder why David was in such a bad mood yesterday.
  B: He **may not have been feeling** well. (= perhaps he wasn't feeling well)

I/you/he (etc.)	**may** **might**	(**not**) **have**	**been** (asleep / at home etc.) **been -ing** (doing / working / feeling etc.) **known** / **had** / **wanted** / **left** etc.

C

could is similar to **may** and **might**:

- It's a strange story, but it **could be** true. (= it is possible that it's true)
- You **could have left** your phone at work. (= it's possible that you left it there)

But **couldn't** (*negative*) is different from **may not** and **might not**. Compare:

- Sarah **couldn't have received** my message. Otherwise she would have replied.
  (= it is not possible that she got my message)
- Why hasn't Sarah replied to my message? I suppose she **might not have received** it.
  (= it's possible that she didn't receive it – perhaps she did, perhaps she didn't)

could ➔ **Unit 27** **may/might** 2 ➔ **Unit 30** **may I . . . ?** ➔ **Unit 37C**
might with **if** ➔ **Units 30B, 38C, 40D** Modal verbs (**can**/**will** etc.) ➔ **Appendix 4**

Exercises

29.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

may be Tom's
may not be feeling well
may not be possible
~~might be in her room~~
might be Brazilian
might be driving
might have one
might know

1 A: Do you know where Helen is?
B: I'm not sure. She might be in her room.
2 A: Is there a bookshop near here?
B: I'm not sure, but ask Anna. She ....
3 A: Where are those people from?
B: I don't know. They ....
4 A: I hope you can help me.
B: I'll try, but it ....
5 A: Whose phone is this?
B: It's not mine. It ....
6 A: Why doesn't George answer his phone?
B: He ....
7 A: Do you know anyone who has a key to this cupboard?
B: Rachel ...., but I'm not sure.
8 A: Gary is in a strange mood today.
B: Yes, he is. He ....

29.2 Complete each sentence using the verb in brackets.

1 A: Where's Ben?
B: I'm not sure. He might be having lunch. (have)
2 A: Who was the guy we saw with Anna yesterday?
B: I'm not sure. It may .... her brother. (be)
3 A: Is Ellie here?
B: I can't see her. She may not .... yet. (arrive)
4 A: Gary said he would meet us in the cafe, but he isn't here.
B: He might .... outside. I'll go and look. (wait)
5 A: How did John know that I'd lost my job?
B: I don't know. I suppose Sam may .... him. (tell)
6 A: Do you know where Jeff is? Is he still in the office?
B: He was here earlier, but he might .... home. (go)
7 A: Where's Emma? What's she doing?
B: I'm not sure. She might .... TV. (watch)
8 A: Does Max have any brothers or sisters?
B: I'm not sure. I think he may .... a younger sister. (have)
9 A: I can't find my umbrella. Have you seen it?
B: You may .... it in the restaurant last night. (leave)
10 A: I rang Dan's doorbell, but he didn't answer. I'm sure he was there.
B: He might not .... the doorbell. (hear)
11 A: Hannah is supposed to meet us here, and she's already 20 minutes late.
B: She may .... She's always forgetting things. (forget)

29.3 Complete the sentences using might not have ... or couldn't have ... .

1 A: I was surprised Amy wasn't at the meeting. Perhaps she didn't know about it.
B: Maybe. She might not have known about it.
2 A: I wonder why Tom didn't come to the party. Perhaps he didn't want to come.
B: It's possible. He .... to come.
3 A: I wonder how the fire started. Was it an accident?
B: No, the police say it .... an accident. It was deliberate.
4 A: Mike says he needs to see you. He tried to find you yesterday.
B: Well, he .... very hard. I was in my office all day.
5 A: The man you spoke to – are you sure he was American?
B: No, I'm not sure. He ....

→ **Additional exercises 16–18** (pages 311–13)

Unit
30

may and **might** 2

A

We use **may** and **might** to talk about possible actions or happenings in the future:

- I haven't decided where to go on holiday. I **may go** to Ireland. (= perhaps I will go there)
- Take an umbrella with you. It **might rain** later. (= perhaps it will rain)
- The bus isn't always on time. We **might have** to wait a few minutes.
  (= perhaps we will have to wait)

The negative forms are **may not** and **might not** (**mightn't**):

- Amy **may not go** out tonight. She isn't feeling well. (= perhaps she will not go out)
- There **might not be** enough time to discuss everything at the meeting.
  (= perhaps there will not be enough time)

Compare:

- I'**m going** to buy a car. (for sure)
- I **may buy** a car. *or* I **might buy** a car. (possible)

B

Usually you can use **may** or **might**. So you can say:

- I **may go** to Ireland. *or* I **might go** to Ireland.
- Jane **might be** able to help you. *or* Jane **may be** able to help you.

But we use **might** (*not* **may**) when the situation is *not real*:

- If they paid me better, I **might** work harder. (*not* I may work)

This situation (**If they paid** me better) is not real. They do *not* pay me well, so I'm not going to work harder.

C

Compare **may**/**might be -ing** and **will be -ing**:

- Don't phone at 8.30. I'**ll be watching** the football on TV.
- Don't phone at 8.30. I **might be watching** the football on TV. (= perhaps I'll be watching it)

We also use **may**/**might be -ing** for possible plans. Compare:

- I'**m going** to Ireland soon. (for sure)
- I **might be going** (*or* I **may be going**) to Ireland soon. (possible)

D

might as well

Helen and Clare have just missed the bus.
The buses run every hour.

What shall we do? Shall we walk?

We **might as well**. It's a nice day and I don't want to wait here for an hour.

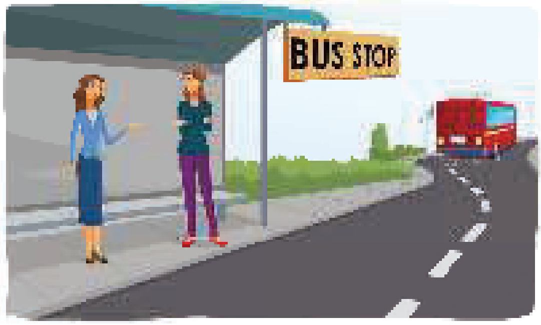

We **might as well** do something = we should do it because there is no better alternative. There is no reason not to do it.

You can also use **may as well**.

- A: What time are you going out?
  B: Well, I'm ready, so I **might as well go** now. *or* . . . I **may as well go** now.
- Buses are so expensive these days, you **might as well get** a taxi.
  (= taxis are as good, no more expensive than buses)

will be -ing ➜ **Unit 24** **may**/**might** 1 ➜ **Unit 29** **may I . . . ?** ➜ **Unit 37**
might with **if** ➜ **Units 38C, 40D**

Exercises

30.1 Which alternative makes sense?

1 A: Where are you going for your holidays?
B: I haven't decided yet. I might go / ~~I'm going~~ to Ireland. (I might go *makes sense*)
2 A: Have you decided what sort of car you want to buy?
B: Yes, I might get / I'm going to get a sports car.
3 A: When is Tom coming to see us?
B: He hasn't said yet. He might come / He's coming on Sunday.
4 A: Where are you going to put that picture?
B: I don't know yet. I might hang / I'm going to hang it in the bedroom.
5 A: What's Tanya going to do when she leaves school? Does she know yet?
B: Yes, she's decided. She might go / She's going to university.
6 A: Do you have plans for the weekend?
B: Nothing fixed. I might go away / I'm going away.

30.2 Complete the sentences using **might** + a verb from the box:

1 Take an umbrella with you when you go out. It ……might rain…… later.
2 Don't make too much noise. You …………………… the baby.
3 Be careful with your coffee. You …………………… it.
4 Don't forget your phone. You …………………… it.
5 It's better if we don't talk so loud. Somebody …………………… us.
6 Be careful. This footpath is icy. You …………………… .

hear
need
~~rain~~
slip
spill
wake

30.3 Complete the sentences. Use **might be able to** or **might have to** + one of these verbs:

fix **~~help~~** **leave** **meet** **pay** **wait**

1 Tell me about your problem. I ……might be able to help…… you.
2 I can come to the meeting, but I …………………… before the end.
3 I'm not free this evening, but I …………………… you tomorrow evening.
4 I'm not sure whether this car park is free or not. We …………………… .
5 There's a long queue. We …………………… a long time.
6 'I've got a problem with my bike.' 'Let me have a look. I …………………… it.'

30.4 Write sentences with **might not**.

1 Lisa's not feeling very well. I'm not sure that she will go to the party.
……Lisa might not come to the party.……
2 I haven't seen him for a long time. I don't know if I will recognise him or not.
I might …………………… him.
3 We want to go to the game, but I don't know whether we'll be able to get tickets.
We …………………… for the game.
4 I said I'd do the shopping, but it's possible I won't have time.
I …………………… to do the shopping.
5 I've been invited to the wedding, but I'm not sure that I'll be able to go.
I …………………… .

30.5 Read the situations and write sentences with **might as well**.

1 You and a friend have just missed the bus. The buses run every hour.
You say: We'll have to wait an hour for the next bus. ……We might as well walk…… .
2 Your computer doesn't work any more. It will cost a lot to repair.
You say: It's not worth repairing. I …………………… a new one.
3 You've painted the kitchen. You still have a lot of paint, so why not paint the bathroom too?
You say: I …………………… too. There's plenty of paint left.
4 You and a friend are at home. You're bored. There's a film on TV starting in a few minutes.
You say: We …………………… it. There's nothing else to do.

➜ **Additional exercises 16–18** (pages 311–13)

Unit
31

have to and **must**

A

I **have to** do something = it is necessary to do it, I am obliged to do it:

- You can't turn right here. You **have to turn** left.
- I **have to wear** glasses for reading.
- Robert can't come out with us this evening.
  He **has to work** late.
- Last week Tina broke her arm and **had to go** to hospital.
- I haven't **had to go** to the doctor for ages.

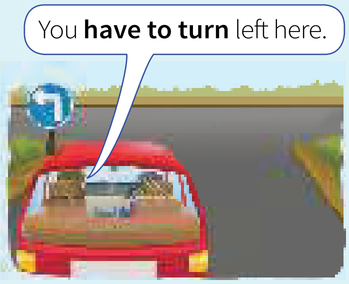
You **have to turn** left here.

We use **do**/**does**/**did** in questions and negative sentences (for the present and past simple):

- What **do** I **have to do** to get a new driving licence? (*not* What have I to do?)
- Karen **doesn't have to work** Saturdays. (*not* Karen hasn't to)
- '**Did** you **have to wait** a long time for a bus?' 'No, only ten minutes.'

You can say **I'll have to** …, **I'm going to have to** …, **I might have to** …, **I may have to** …:

- They can't repair my computer, so **I'll have to buy** a new one. *or*
  … **I'm going to have to buy** a new one.
- We **might have to change** our plans. *or* We **may have to change** …
  (= it's possible that we will have to change them)

B

Must is similar to **have to**. You can say:

- It's later than I thought. I **must go**. *or* I **have to go**.

You can use **must** or **have to** when you give your own opinion (for example, to say what *you* think is necessary, or to recommend someone to do something):

- I haven't spoken to Sue for ages. I **must phone** her. / I **have to phone** her.
  (= I say this is necessary)
- Mark is a really nice person. You **must meet** him. / You **have to meet** him.
  (= I recommend this)

We use **have to** (*not usually* **must**) to say what someone is *obliged* to do. This is a *fact*, not the speaker's own opinion:

- I **have to work** from 8.30 to 5.30 every day. (a fact, not an opinion)
- Jane **has to travel** a lot for her work.

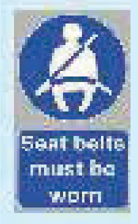
Seat belts must be worn

But we use **must** in written rules and instructions:

- Applications for the job **must be received** by 18 May.
- Seat belts **must be worn**.

We use **had to** (*not* **must**) to talk about the past:

- I went to the meeting yesterday, but I **had** to leave early. (*not* I must)

C

Mustn't and **don't have to** are completely different:

You **mustn't** do something = *don't* do it:

- You **must keep** this a secret. You **mustn't tell** anyone. (= don't tell anyone)
- I promised I would be on time. I **mustn't be** late. (= I must be on time)

You **don't have to** do something = you don't need to do it (but you can if you want):

- You **don't have to come** with me. I can go alone.
- I **don't have to be** at the meeting, but I'm going anyway.

D

You can use **have got to** instead of **have to**. You can say:

- **I've got to** work tomorrow. *or* I **have to** work tomorrow.
- When **has** Helen **got to** go? *or* When **does** Helen **have to** go?

must ('You must be tired') ➜ **Unit 28** **must**/**mustn't**/**needn't** ➜ **Unit 32**

Exercises

31.1 Complete the sentences using **have**/**has**/**had to …** . Use the verbs in brackets.

1 Robert can't come out with us this evening. ....He has to work.... late. (he / work)
2 'The bus was late this morning.' 'How long ....did you have to wait.... ?' (you / wait)
3 I don't have much time. .... in ten minutes. (I / go)
4 'I'm afraid I can't stay long.' 'What time .... ?' (you / go)
5 Joe starts work at 5 am every day, which means .... at four. (he / get up)
6 We nearly missed the bus this morning. .... to catch it. (we / run)
7 Is Lisa usually free on Saturdays or .... ? (she / work)
8 There was nobody to help me. .... everything by myself. (I / do)
9 How old .... to have a driving licence? (you / be)
10 There was a lot of noise from the street. .... the window. (we / close)
11 Was the exhibition free, or .... to go in? (you / pay)

31.2 Complete the sentences using **have**/**has**/**had to** + the verbs in the list. Some sentences are negative (**I don't have to …** etc.):

ask decide drive ~~get up~~ go make make pay ~~show~~ stand

1 I'm not working tomorrow, so ....I don't have to get up.... early.
2 Steve didn't know how to change the settings on his phone. I ....had to show.... him.
3 Excuse me a moment – I .... a phone call. I won't be long.
4 You can let me know later what you want to do. You .... now.
5 I couldn't find the street I wanted. I .... somebody for directions.
6 This car park is free. You ....
7 A man was slightly injured in the accident, but he .... to hospital.
8 Jane has a senior position in the company. She .... important decisions.
9 The train was very full and there were no seats free. We .... all the way.
10 When Patrick starts his new job next month, he .... 50 miles to work every day.

31.3 In some of these sentences, **must** is wrong or unnatural. Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 It's later than I thought. I must go. ....OK (I have to go *is also correct*)....
2 I must start work every day at 8.30. ....I have to start work....
3 I must remember to call Sarah tomorrow. ....
4 I couldn't get a taxi last night. I must walk home. ....
5 You must come and see us again soon. ....
6 Tom isn't going out this evening. He must study for his exam. ....
7 We can't go the usual way because the road is closed. We must go another way. ....
8 Julia wears glasses. She must wear glasses since she was very young. ....

31.4 Complete the sentences with **mustn't**, **don't have to** or **doesn't have to**.

1 I don't want anyone to know about our plan. You ....mustn't.... tell anyone.
2 Richard ....doesn't have to.... wear a suit to work, but he usually does.
3 There's a lift in the building, so we .... climb the stairs.
4 I promised Kate I'd call her tomorrow. I .... forget.
5 I'm not very busy. I have a few things to do, but I .... do them now.
6 Sophie likes weekends because she .... get up early.
7 You .... be a good player to enjoy a game of tennis.
8 You should keep trying to find a job. You .... give up.
9 I .... eat too much. I'm supposed to be on a diet.
10 We have plenty of time before our flight. We .... check in yet.

➜ **Additional exercise 16** (page 311)

Unit
32

must mustn't needn't

A **must** and **mustn't**

You **must** do something = it is necessary that you do it:

- Don't tell anybody what I said. You **must keep** it a secret.
- We don't have much time. We **must hurry**.

You **mustn't** do something = don't do it:

- You **must** keep it a secret. You **mustn't** tell anyone. (= don't tell anyone)
- We **must** be very quiet. We **mustn't** make any noise.

B **needn't** and **don't need to**

You **needn't** do something = it's not necessary to do it (but you can if you want):

- We have plenty of time. We **needn't hurry**. (= it is not necessary to hurry)
- Joe can stay here. He **needn't come** with us. (= it is not necessary for him to come)

You can also use **don't**/**doesn't need to**:

- We **don't need to** hurry.

Note that we say '**don't need to** do', but '**needn't do**' (*without* **to**).

Compare **needn't** and **mustn't**:

- You **needn't** tell Steve. I can tell him myself. (= it is not necessary)
- You **mustn't** tell Steve. I don't want him to know. (= don't tell him)

C **needn't have** (done)

Study this example situation:

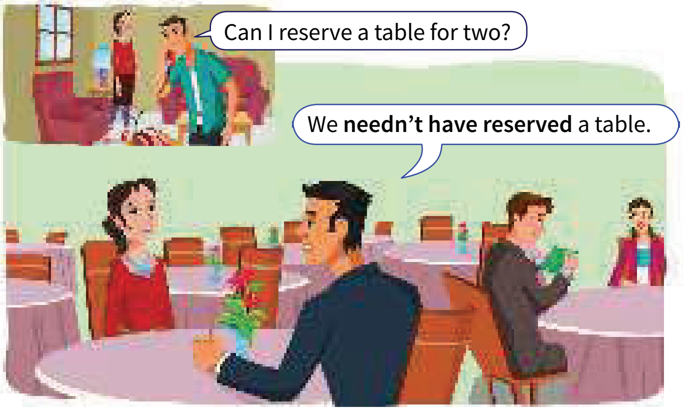
Can I reserve a table for two?
We needn't have reserved a table.

Paul and Sarah reserved a table at a restaurant.

But when they went to the restaurant, it was almost empty.

They **needn't have reserved** a table.

This means: they reserved a table, but now they know this was not necessary.

Compare **needn't** (do) and **needn't have** (done):

- Everything will be OK. You **needn't worry**. (it is not necessary)
- Everything was OK. You **needn't have worried**. (you worried, but it was not necessary)

D **needn't have** (done) and **didn't need to** (do)

He **needn't have done** something = he did it, but now we know that it was not necessary:

- Why did he get up at 5 o'clock? He **needn't have got** up so early. He could have stayed in bed longer.

He **didn't need to do** something = it was not necessary to do it. It doesn't matter whether he did it or not:

- He **didn't need to get** up early, so he didn't.
- He **didn't need to get** up early, but it was a beautiful morning, so he did.

You can also say 'He **didn't have to** get up' in these examples.

must ('You must be tired') ➔ **Unit 28** **have to** and **must** ➔ **Unit 31**
Modal verbs (**can**/**could**/**will**/**would** etc.) ➔ **Appendix 4** American English ➔ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

32.1 Which goes with which? Find the sentences with a similar meaning.

1 You must be very quiet.
2 You must remember your password.
3 You must be brave.
4 You must be on time.
5 You must leave the furniture as it is.
6 You must go away.
7 You must forget what happened.

a You mustn't stay here.
b You mustn't be afraid.
c You mustn't think about it.
d You mustn't forget it.
e You mustn't be late.
f ~~You mustn't make any noise.~~
g You mustn't move anything.

1 f
2 ……
3 ……
4 ……
5 ……
6 ……
7 ……

32.2 Which is correct?

1 We have plenty of time. We ~~mustn't~~ / needn't hurry. (needn't *is correct*)
2 I have to talk to Gary. I must / mustn't remember to call him.
3 I have to talk to Gary. I mustn't / needn't forget to call him.
4 There's plenty of time for you to decide. You mustn't / don't need to decide now.
5 These are important documents. We mustn't / needn't lose them.
6 You mustn't / needn't wait for me. You go on and I'll join you later.
7 This is a dangerous situation and we need to be careful. We mustn't / needn't do anything stupid.
8 I understand the situation perfectly. You mustn't / don't need to explain further.
9 A: What sort of house do you want to buy? Something big?
B: It mustn't / needn't be big – that's not so important. But it must / mustn't have a nice garden.

32.3 Complete the sentences. Use needn't + verb. Choose from:

come keep ~~leave~~ walk worry

1 We have plenty of time. We needn't leave yet.
2 I can manage the shopping alone. You …… with me.
3 We …… all the way home. We can get a taxi.
4 You can delete these emails. You …… them.
5 I'll be all right. You …… about me.

32.4 Write two sentences for each situation. Use needn't have in the first sentence and could have in the second (as in the example). For could have, see Unit 27.

1 Why did you rush? Why didn't you take your time?
You needn't have rushed. You could have taken your time.
2 Why did you walk home? Why didn't you take a taxi?
……
3 Why did they stay at a hotel? Why didn't they stay with us?
……
4 Why did she phone me at 3 am? Why didn't she wait until the morning?
……
5 Why did you shout at me? Why weren't you more patient?
……

32.5 Are these sentences OK? Change them where necessary.

1 We have plenty of time. We don't need hurry. We don't need to hurry
2 Keep it a secret. You mustn't tell anybody. OK
3 You needn't to shout. I can hear you perfectly. ……
4 I needn't have gone out, so I stayed at home. ……
5 This train is direct. You don't need to change. ……
6 You mustn't lock the door. It's OK to leave it unlocked. ……
7 I needn't have said anything, so I kept quiet. ……
8 I needn't have said anything. I should have kept quiet. ……

➜ Additional exercises 16–17 (pages 311–12)

Unit
33

should 1

A

You **should do** something = it is a good thing to do or the right thing to do.
You can use **should** to give advice or to give an opinion:

- You look tired. You **should go** to bed.
- The government **should do** more to improve schools.
- A: **Should** we **invite** Stephanie to the party?
  B: Yes, I think we **should**.
- The man on the motorbike **should be wearing** a helmet.

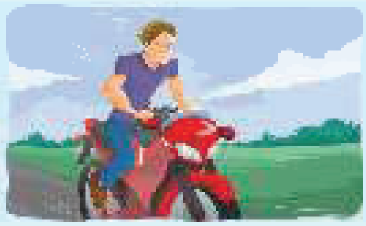

You **shouldn't** do something = it isn't a good thing to do:

- You **shouldn't believe** everything you read in newspapers.

We often use **should** with **I think** / **I don't think** / **Do you think** . . . ? :

- **I think** the government **should do** more to improve schools.
- **I don't think** you **should work** so hard.
- A: **Do you think** I **should apply** for this job?
  B: Yes, **I think** you **should**.

Should is not as strong as **must** or **have to**:

- You **should** apologise. (= it would be a good thing to do)
- You **must** apologise. / You **have to** apologise. (= you have no alternative)

B

We use **should** when something is not right or what we expect:

- Where's Tina? She **should be** here by now.
  (= she isn't here yet, and this is not normal)
- The price on this packet is wrong. It **should be** £2.50, not £3.50.

We also use **should** to say that we expect something to happen:

- Helen has been studying hard for the exam, so she **should pass**.
  (= I expect her to pass)
- There are plenty of hotels in the town. It **shouldn't be** hard to find a place to stay.
  (= I don't expect it to be hard)

C

You **should have done** something = you didn't do it, but it would have been a good thing to do:

- You missed a great party last night. You **should have come**. Why didn't you?
  (= you didn't come, but it would have been good to come)
- I wonder why they're so late. They **should have been** here long ago.

You **shouldn't have done** something = you did it, but it wasn't a good thing to do:

- I'm feeling sick. I **shouldn't have eaten** so much. (= I ate too much)
- She **shouldn't have been listening** to our conversation. It was private.
  (= she was listening)

Compare **should** (do) and **should have** (done):

- You look tired. You **should go** to bed now.
- You went to bed very late last night. You **should have gone** to bed earlier.

D

ought to . . .

You can use **ought to** instead of **should** in the sentences on this page.
We say 'ought **to** do' (with **to**):

- Do you think I **ought to apply** for this job? (= Do you think I **should apply** . . . ?)
- Jack **ought not to go** to bed so late. (= Jack **shouldn't go** . . .)
- It was a great party last night. You **ought to have come**. (= You **should have come**)

should 2 ➜ **Unit 34** **should** and **had better** ➜ **Unit 35B**
Modal verbs (**can**/**could**/**will**/**would** etc.) ➜ **Appendix 4**

Exercises

33.1 For each situation, write a sentence with should or shouldn't + one of the following:

~~go away for a few days~~
put some pictures on the walls
stay up so late
take a picture
look for another job
worry so much

1. Anna needs a change. ……She should go away for a few days.……
2. Your salary is very low. You ……………………
3. Jack always finds it hard to get up. He ……………………
4. What a beautiful view! You ……………………
5. Laura is always anxious. She ……………………
6. Dan's room isn't very nice. ……………………

33.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

should solve
should receive
should be working OK
~~should pass the exam~~
shouldn't cost more
should be much warmer
shouldn't take long
should be here soon

1. Helen has been studying hard, so she ……should pass the exam…… .
2. Joe hasn't arrived yet, but he …………………… .
3. The TV has been repaired. It …………………… now.
4. It …………………… to get to the hotel. About 20 minutes.
5. I sent the documents to you today, so you …………………… them tomorrow.
6. The weather is unusually cold. It …………………… at this time of year.
7. The best way to get to the airport is by taxi. It …………………… than ten pounds.
8. If you have a problem with the computer, try restarting it. That …………………… the problem.

33.3 Complete the sentences. Use should … or should have … + the verb in brackets.

1. You look tired. You ……should go…… to bed. (go)
2. You missed a great party last night. ……You should have come…… . (come)
3. I'm in a difficult position. What do you think I …………………… now? (do)
4. I'm sorry that I didn't take your advice. I …………………… what you said. (do)
5. We lost the game, but we were the better team. We …………………… . (win)
6. We don't see you enough. You …………………… and see us more often. (come)
7. We went the wrong way and got lost. We …………………… right, not left. (turn)
8. My exam results weren't good. I …………………… better. (do)

33.4 Read the situations and write sentences with should / should have / shouldn't / shouldn't have.

1. I'm feeling sick. I ate too much.
   ……I shouldn't have eaten so much.……
2. When we got to the restaurant, there were no free tables. We hadn't reserved one.
   We ……………………
3. Laura told me her address, but I didn't write it down. Now I can't remember the house number.
   I ……………………
4. The shop is open every day from 8.30. It is 9 o'clock now, but the shop isn't open yet.
   ……………………
5. I was looking at my phone. I wasn't looking where I was going. I walked into a wall.
   ……………………
6. Kate is driving. The speed limit is 30 miles an hour, but Kate is doing 50.
   She ……………………
7. I wasn't feeling well yesterday, but I went to work. That was a mistake. Now I feel worse.
   ……………………
8. Tomorrow there is a football match between Team A and Team B. Team A are much better.
   ……………………
9. I was driving. The car in front stopped suddenly and I drove into it. It wasn't my fault.
   The driver in front ……………………

➜ Additional exercises 16–18 (pages 311–13)

Unit 34

should 2

A

You can use **should** after:

insist **demand** **recommend** **suggest** **propose**

☐ I **insisted** that he **should apologise**.
☐ Doctors **recommend** that everyone **should eat** plenty of fruit.
☐ What do you **suggest** we **should do**?
☐ Many people are **demanding** that something **should be done** about the problem.

also
It's important/vital/necessary/essential that … **should** … :
☐ **It's essential** that everyone **should be** here on time.

B

You can also leave out **should** in the sentences in section A. So you can say:
☐ **It's essential** that everyone **be** here on time. (= … that everyone **should be** here …)
☐ I **insisted** that he **apologise**. (= … that he **should apologise**)
☐ What do you **suggest** we **do**?
☐ Many people are **demanding** that something **be done** about the problem.

This form (**be**/**do**/**apologise** etc.) is called the *subjunctive*. It is the same as the *infinitive* (without **to**).
You can also use normal present and past forms:
☐ It's **essential** that everyone **is** here on time.
☐ I **insisted** that he **apologised**.

C

We do not use **to** … with **suggest**. You can say:
☐ What do you **suggest we should do**?
or What do you **suggest we do**? (*but not* What do you suggest us to do?)

☐ Jane won the lottery.
I **suggested** that she **should buy** a car with the money she won.
or I **suggested** that she **buy** a car.
or I **suggested** that she **bought** a car. (*but not* I suggested her to buy)

You can also use **-ing** after **suggest** (What do you **suggest doing**?). See Unit 53.

D

You can use **should** after some adjectives, especially:

strange **odd** **funny** **typical** **natural** **interesting** **surprised** **surprising**

☐ It's **strange** that he **should be** late. He's usually on time.
☐ I was **surprised** that he **should say** such a thing.

E

You can say '**if** something **should** happen …'. For example:
☐ We have no jobs at present, but **if** the situation **should change**, we will contact you.

You can also begin with **should** (**Should** something happen …):
☐ **Should** the situation **change**, we will contact you.

This means the same as '**If** the situation **changes**, …'. With **should**, the speaker feels that the possibility is smaller.

F

You can use **I should** … / **I shouldn't** … to give advice. For example:
☐ 'Shall I leave now?' 'No, **I should wait** a bit.' (= I advise you to wait)

Here, **I should** … = 'I would … if I were you', 'I advise you to …'. Two more examples:
☐ 'I'm going out now. Is it cold outside?' 'Yes, **I should wear** a coat.'
☐ **I shouldn't stay** up too late. You have to be up early tomorrow.

should 1 ➜ **Unit 33** American English ➜ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

34.1 **Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.**

1 'It would be a good idea to eat more fruit,' the doctor said to me.
The doctor recommended that ……I should eat more fruit…… .
2 'You really must stay a little longer,' she said to me.
She insisted that I …………………… .
3 'Why don't you visit the museum after lunch?' I said to them.
I suggested that …………………… .
4 'You must pay the rent by Friday,' the landlord said to us.
The landlord demanded that …………………… .
5 'Let's go to the cinema,' Chris said to me.
Chris suggested that …………………… .

34.2 **Two of these sentences are not correct. Change the two that are not correct.**

1 Tom suggested that I look for another job. ……OK……
2 I called Tina and suggested that we meet for coffee. ……………
3 What do you suggest me to do? ……………
4 What sort of car do you suggest I should buy? ……………
5 I suggest you to read this book. ……………
6 I suggested that Anna learn to drive. ……………

34.3 **Complete the sentences using should + verb. Choose from:**

ask ~~be~~ be done leave say vote worry

1 It's strange that he ……should be…… late. He's usually on time.
2 It's funny that you …………… that. I was thinking the same thing.
3 It's only natural that parents …………… about their children.
4 Isn't it typical of Joe that he …………… without saying goodbye to anybody?
5 I was surprised that they …………… me for advice. What advice could I give them?
6 This is a democratic election, and it's important that you …………… .
7 The bridge needs to be repaired. It's essential that the work …………… as soon as possible.

34.4 **Complete the sentences using If … should … . Choose from:**

anyone / ask ~~the situation / change~~ it / rain there / any problems

1 We have no jobs at present. ……If the situation should change……, we'll let you know.
2 I've hung out the washing to dry on the balcony. If ……………, can you bring it inside?
3 I think everything will be OK. ……………, I'm sure we'll be able to solve them.
4 I don't want anyone to know where I'm going. ……………, say you don't know.

Now complete the same sentences beginning with Should … .

5 ……Should the situation change……, we'll let you know.
6 ……………, can you bring the washing inside?
7 ……………, I'm sure we'll be able to solve them.
8 …………… where I'm going, say you don't know.

34.5 **Complete the sentences using I should. Choose from:**

call get keep ~~wait~~

1 'Shall I leave now?' 'No, ……I should wait…… a bit.'
2 'Shall I throw these things away?' 'No, …………… them. You may need them.'
3 'Shall I go and see Paul?' 'Yes, but …………… him first.'
4 'Is it worth getting this computer repaired?' 'No, …………… a new one.'

Unit
35

I'd better … it's time …

A had better (I'd better / you'd better etc.)

I'd better do something = it is advisable to do it. If I don't do it, there will be a problem or a danger:

☐ I have to meet Amy in ten minutes. **I'd better go** now or I'll be late.
☐ 'Shall I take an umbrella?' 'Yes, **you'd better**. It might rain.'
☐ **We'd better stop** for petrol soon. The tank is almost empty.

The negative is **I'd better not** (= I **had** better not):

☐ A: That jacket looks good on you. Are you going to buy it?
B: **I'd better not**. It's very expensive.
☐ You don't look very well. **You'd better not go** out tonight.

Remember that:

I'd better = **I had** better, **you'd** better = you **had** better etc.

☐ **I'd better** phone Chris, **hadn't** I?
☐ We **had better** go now.

Had is normally past, but we use **had better** for the present or future, *not* past.

☐ I'd better go **now** / **tomorrow**.

We say 'I'd better **do**' (*not* to do).

☐ It might rain. We'd better **take** an umbrella. (*not* We'd better to take)

B had better and should

Had better is similar to **should** but not exactly the same. We use **had better** only for a specific situation, not for things in general. You can use **should** in all types of situations to give an opinion or give advice:

☐ It's late. You**'d better go**. *or* You **should go**. (a specific situation)
☐ You're always at home. You **should go** out more often. (in general – *not* 'had better go')

Also, with **had better**, there is always a danger or a problem if you don't follow the advice.
Should means only 'it is a good thing to do'. Compare:

☐ It's a great film. You **should** go and see it. (but no problem if you don't)
☐ The film starts at 8.30. You**'d better** go now or you'll miss the beginning.

C it's time …

You can say **It's time** (for somebody) **to** … :

☐ It's time **to go** home. / It's time for us **to go** home.

But you can also say:

☐ It's late. It's time **we went** home.

When we use **it's time** + past ('it's time we **went**' etc.), the meaning is present, *not* past:

☐ **It's time** they **were** here. Why are they so late? (*not* It's time they are here)

It's time somebody **did** something = they should have already done it or started it.
We often use this structure to criticise or to complain:

☐ This situation can't continue. **It's time** you **did** something about it.
☐ He's very selfish. **It's time he realised** that he isn't the most important person in the world.

You can also say **It's about time** … :

☐ Jack is a great talker, but **it's about time** he **did** something instead of just talking.

» **should** 1 ➜ **Unit 33**

Exercises

35.1 Read the situations and write sentences with **'d better** or **'d better not**. Choose a verb from:

check **disturb** **go** **put** **reserve** ~~**take**~~

1 You're going out for a walk with a friend. It looks as if it might rain.
You say: We'd better take …… an umbrella.
2 You and Kate plan to go to a restaurant tonight. It will be busy.
You say to Kate: We …………………………………… a table.
3 Oliver has just cut himself. It's bleeding and he'll need a plaster on it.
You say to him: You …………………………………… on it.
4 Rebecca doesn't look well this morning – not well enough to go to work.
You say to her: …………………………………… this morning.
5 You're going to the cinema, but you're not sure what time the film starts.
You say: …………………………………… the film starts.
6 You need to talk to your boss, but she's very busy right now.
You say to a colleague: …………………………………… right now.

35.2 Is **had better** OK in these sentences? Change to **should** where necessary.

1 I have an appointment in ten minutes. I'd better go now or I'll be late. OK
2 You'd better set your alarm. You have to get up early tomorrow. ……………………
3 I'm glad you came to see us. You'd better come more often. ……………………
4 She'll be sad if we don't invite her to the party, so we'd better invite her. ……………………
5 It's nearly time to go out. I'd better get ready. ……………………
6 I think everybody had better learn a foreign language. ……………………
7 We've just missed the last bus. We'd better get a taxi. ……………………

35.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

1 It might rain. We'd better take an umbrella.
2 Ben needs to know what happened. Somebody …………………… better tell him.
3 We'd better …………………… park the car here. The road is too narrow.
4 You …………………… brush your teeth at least twice a day.
5 What are we going to do? It's time …………………… decide.
6 …………………… better not be late. It's an important meeting.
7 It's time they …………………… here. They promised they wouldn't be late.
8 The window is open. You'd …………………… close it before you go out.
9 We'd better leave as soon as possible, …………………… we?
10 The government should …………………… something about the problem.
11 It's time the government …………………… something about the problem.
12 It's time something …………………… done about the problem.

better
do
did
had
hadn't
I'd
not
to
~~**take**~~
should
was
were

35.4 Read the situations and write sentences with **It's time** (somebody **did** something).

1 You're at a friend's house. You planned to go home at 11 o'clock. It's already 11 o'clock now.
(I / go) It's time I went home.
2 You haven't had a holiday for a very long time. You need one now.
(I / holiday) It's time ……………………………………
3 It's 10 o'clock. It's after the children's bedtime. You think they should be in bed.
(children / bed) ……………………………………
4 You didn't realise it was so late. You need to start cooking dinner.
(start / cook) …………………………………… dinner.
5 Kate is always complaining about everything. You think she complains too much.
(stop / complaining) …………………………………… about everything.
6 The company you work for has been badly managed for a long time. You think some changes should be made.
(changes / make) …………………………………… in the way the company is run.

➜ **Additional exercise 16** (page 311)

Unit 36 would

A

We use **would** (**'d**) / **wouldn't** when we *imagine* a situation or action (= we think of something that is not real):

- It **would be** nice to buy a new car, but we can't afford it.
- I**'d love** to live by the sea.
- A: Shall I tell Chris what happened?
  B: No, I **wouldn't say** anything.
  (= I wouldn't say anything in your situation)

We use **would have** (**done**) when we imagine something that didn't happen in the past:

- They helped us a lot. I don't know what we**'d have done** without their help.
  (we**'d** have done = we **would** have done)
- It's a shame you didn't see the film. You **would have liked** it.
- I didn't tell Sam what happened. He **wouldn't have been** pleased.

Compare **would** (**do**) and **would have** (**done**):

- I **would call** Lisa, but I don't have her number. *(now)*
  I **would have called** Lisa, but I didn't have her number. *(past)*
- I'm not going to invite them to the party. They **wouldn't come** anyway.
  I didn't invite them to the party. They **wouldn't have come** anyway.

We often use **would** in sentences with **if** (see Units 38–40):

- I **would call** Lisa **if** I had her number.
- I **would have called** Lisa **if** I'd had her number.

B

Compare **will** (**'ll**) and **would** (**'d**):

- I**'ll stay** a little longer. I've got plenty of time.
  I**'d stay** a little longer, but I really have to go now. (so I can't stay longer)
- I**'ll call** Lisa. I have her number.
  I**'d call** Lisa, but I don't have her number. (so I can't call her)

Sometimes **would**/**wouldn't** is the past of **will**/**won't**.
Compare:

present		*past*
TOM: I**'ll call** you on Sunday.	→	Tom said he**'d** call me on Sunday.
AMY: I promise I **won't be** late.	→	Amy promised that she **wouldn't be** late.
LISA: Oh, no! The car **won't start**.	→	Lisa was annoyed because her car **wouldn't start**.

Somebody **wouldn't do** something = he/she refused to do it:

- I tried to warn him, but he **wouldn't listen** to me. (= he refused to listen)
- The car **wouldn't start**. (= it 'refused' to start)

C

You can also use **would** to talk about things that happened regularly in the past:

- When we were children, we lived by the sea. In summer, if the weather was fine, we **would** all get up early and go for a swim. (= we did this regularly)
- Whenever Richard was angry, he **would** walk out of the room.

With this meaning, **would** is similar to **used to** (see Unit 18):

- Whenever Richard was angry, he **used to walk** out of the room.

will ➜ Units 21–22 **would … if ➜ Units 38–40** **wish … would ➜ Unit 41** **would like ➜ Units 37D, 58**
would prefer / would rather ➜ Unit 59 Modal verbs **➜ Appendix 4**

Exercises

36.1 Write sentences about yourself. Imagine things you would like or wouldn't like.

1 (a place you'd love to live) I'd love to live by the sea.
2 (a job you wouldn't like to do) ....
3 (something you would love to do) ....
4 (something that would be nice to have) ....
5 (a place you'd like to go to) ....

36.2 Complete the sentences using **would** + the following verbs (in the correct form):

be be ~~do~~ do enjoy enjoy have stop

1 They helped us a lot. I don't know what we would have done without their help.
2 You should go and see the film. I think you .... it.
3 It's a pity you couldn't come to the party last night. You .... it.
4 Shall I apply for the job or not? What .... you .... in my position?
5 I was in a hurry when I saw you. Otherwise I .... to talk.
6 We took a taxi home last night, but got stuck in the traffic. It .... quicker to walk.
7 Why don't you go and see Clare? She .... very pleased to see you.
8 In an ideal world, everybody .... enough to eat.

36.3 Each sentence on the right follows a sentence on the left. Which follows which?

1 I'd like to go to Australia one day.
2 I wouldn't like to live on a busy road.
3 I'm sorry your trip was cancelled.
4 I'm looking forward to going out tonight.
5 I'm glad we didn't go out in the rain.
6 I'm not looking forward to the trip.

a It wouldn't have been very nice.
b It would have been fun.
c ~~It would be nice.~~
d It won't be much fun.
e It wouldn't be very nice.
f It will be fun.

1 c
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

36.4 Write sentences using **promised** + **would**/**wouldn't**.

1 I wonder why Laura is late. She promised she wouldn't be late.
2 I wonder why Steve hasn't called me. He promised ....
3 Why did you tell Amy what I said? You ....
4 I'm surprised they didn't wait for us. They ....

36.5 Complete the sentences. Use **wouldn't** + a suitable verb.

1 I tried to warn him, but he wouldn't listen to me.
2 I asked Amanda what had happened, but she .... me.
3 Paul was angry about what I'd said and he .... to me for two weeks.
4 Martina insisted on carrying all her luggage. She .... me help her.

36.6 Complete the sentences using **would** (section C). Choose from these verbs:

forget shake share smile stay ~~walk~~

1 Whenever Richard was angry, he would walk out of the room.
2 We used to live next to a railway line. Every time a train went past, the house ....
3 Katherine was always very generous. She didn't have much, but she .... what she had with everyone else.
4 You could never rely on Joe. It didn't matter how many times you reminded him to do something, he .... always ....
5 When we were children, we used to go to the beach a lot. We .... there all day playing in the sand and swimming in the sea.
6 Lucy was always friendly. Whenever I saw her, she .... always .... and say hello.

→ **Additional exercises 16–18** (pages 311–13)

Unit
37

can/could/would you . . . ? etc. (Requests, offers, permission and invitations)

A Asking people to do things (requests)

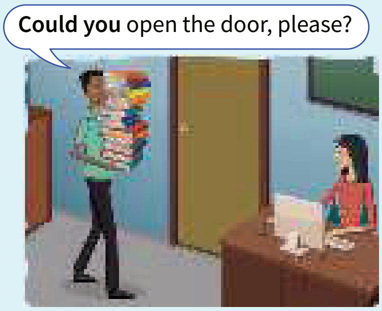
Could you open the door, please?

We use **can** or **could** to ask people to do things:

☐ **Can you** wait a moment, please?
or **Could you** wait a moment, please?
☐ Helen, **can you** do me a favour?
☐ Excuse me, **could you** tell me how to get to the bus station?

You can say **Do you think** you **could** . . . ? :

☐ **Do you think you could** take me to the airport?
(*not* Do you think you can)

B Asking for things

To ask for something, we use **Can** (I) **have** . . . ? / **Could** (I) **have** . . . ? or **Can** (I) **get** . . .?:

☐ *(in a shop)*
Can I **have** these postcards, please? *or* **Can** I **get** these postcards, please?
☐ *(in a restaurant)*
Could we **have** the menu, please? *or* **Can** we **have** the menu, please?

May I **have** . . . ? is also possible:

☐ **May** I **have** these postcards, please?

C Asking to do things

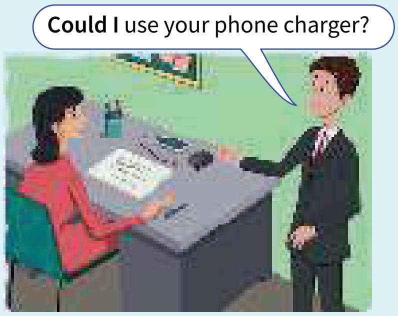
Could I use your phone charger?

We use **can I** or **could I** to ask to do something:

☐ *(on the phone)* Hello, **can I** speak to Steve, please?
☐ '**Could I** use your phone charger?' 'Sure.'
☐ **Do you think I could** borrow your bike?

May is also possible:

☐ **May** I **ask you a question**?

May is more formal than **can** or **could**.

You can also say:

Do you mind if I . . . ?
Is it all right if I . . .? / **Is it OK if I** . . . ?
☐ **Do you mind if I** use your phone charger?
☐ '**Is it all right if I** sit here?' 'Yes, of course.'

D Offering and inviting

You can use **Can I** . . . ? to offer to do something:

☐ '**Can I** help you?' 'No, it's OK. I can manage, thanks.'
☐ '**Can I** get you some coffee?' 'That would be nice.'

To offer or to invite, we use **Would you like** . . . ? (*not* Do you like):

☐ '**Would you like** some coffee?' 'No, thanks.'
☐ '**Would you like** to eat with us tonight?' 'That would be great.'

I'd like . . . (= I **would** like) is a polite way to say what you want:

☐ *(at a tourist information office)* **I'd like** some information about hotels, please.
☐ *(in a shop)* **I'd like** to try on this jacket, please.

can and **could** ➔ **Units 26–27** **mind -ing** ➔ **Unit 53** **would like** ➔ **Units 55A, 58B**
Modal verbs (**can**/**could**/**will**/**would** etc.) ➔ **Appendix 4**

Exercises

37.1 Which goes with which?

1 Could you pass the sugar?
2 Would you like to go to the cinema?
3 Can I use your toilet?
4 Do you mind if I leave work early?
5 Can you do me a favour?
6 Would you like something to eat?
7 Can I give you a hand?
8 I'd like some fresh air.

a It depends what you want me to do.
b No, that's fine.
c Me too. Let's go out for a walk.
d Sure. It's the door on the left.
e ~~Yes, here you are.~~
f No, it's all right. I can manage, thanks.
g Maybe. What's on?
h No, thanks. I'm not hungry.

1 ....e....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

37.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

I'd like
~~Can I give~~
Would you like to try
Would you like to come
Do you mind
Would you like
Can I take
I'd like to

1 You're driving and you see a friend walking along the road. You stop and say:
Hi Joe. ....Can I give.... you a lift?
2 You're making a cold drink for your friend. Perhaps he wants ice. You ask:
.... ice in your drink?
3 You're ordering something to eat in a cafe. You say:
.... a chicken salad, please.
4 You have an extra ticket for a concert. Maybe your friend will come. You ask:
.... to a concert tomorrow night?
5 You answer the phone. The caller wants to speak to Lisa. You say:
Lisa's not here. .... a message?
6 You need to see a dentist. You phone for an appointment. You say:
Hello. .... make an appointment, please.
7 You work in a shoe shop. A customer asks you about some shoes. You ask:
.... them on?
8 You go into a cafe and see some people you know. You ask:
.... if I join you?

37.3 What would you say in these situations?

1 You're carrying a lot of things. You can't open the door yourself. There's a man near the door.
You say to him: ....Could you open the door, please?....
2 You've finished your meal in a restaurant and now you want the bill.
You ask the waiter: ....
3 You've filled in some forms in English. You want your friend to check them for you.
You ask your friend: ....
4 The woman in the next room is playing music. It's very loud. You want her to turn it down.
You say to her: ....
5 You're on a train. The window is open and you're cold. You'd like to close it.
You ask the man next to you: ....
6 You're on a bus. You have a seat, but an elderly man is standing. You offer him your seat.
You say to him: ....
7 You're a tourist. You want to go to the station, but you don't know how to get there.
You ask at your hotel: ....
8 You are in a clothes shop. You see some trousers you like and you want to try them on.
You say to the shop assistant: ....
9 You meet a very famous person. You want to get his/her autograph.
You ask: ....

Unit 38

if I do … and if I did …

A

Compare these examples:

(1) LISA: Shall we take the bus or the train?
JESS: **If we take** the bus, it **will** be cheaper.

For Jess, it is possible that they will take the bus, so she says:

If we **take** the bus, it **will** be …

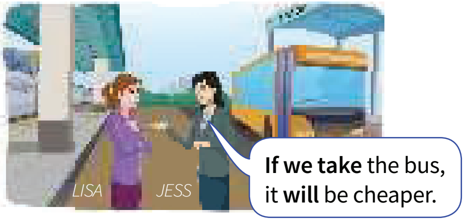
LISA
JESS
If we take the bus, it **will** be cheaper.

(2) Lisa and Jess decide to take the train.
Later, Jess talks to Joe.

JOE: How are you going to travel?
JESS: We're going to take the train. **If we took** the bus, it **would** be cheaper, but the train is quicker.

Now Jess knows they are *not* going to take the bus, so she says:

If we **took** the bus, it **would** be …

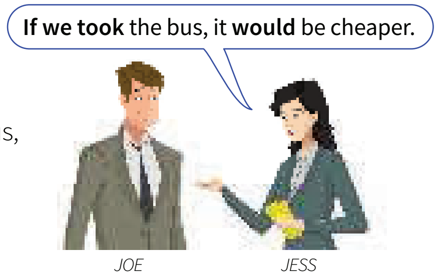
If we took the bus, it **would** be cheaper.
JOE
JESS

B

When we talk about something that will not happen, or we don't expect that it will happen, we use **if** + *past* (**if** we **went** / **if** there **was** etc.).
But the meaning is *not* past:

- What would you do **if** you **won** a lot of money?
  (I don't really expect this to happen)
- **If** there **was** an election tomorrow, who would you vote for?
  (there will not be an election tomorrow)
- I'd be surprised **if** they **didn't come** to the party.
  (I expect them to come)

If I won a lot of money …

Compare **if I find** and **if I found**:

- I think I left my watch at your house. **If you find** it, can you call me?

but

- **If you found** a wallet in the street, what would you do with it?

C

We do not normally use **would** in the **if**-part of the sentence:

- I'd be very scared **if** somebody **pointed** a gun at me. (*not* if somebody would point)
- **If** we **went** by bus, it would be cheaper. (*not* If we would go)

In the other part of the sentence (not the **if**-part) we use **would** (**'d**) / **wouldn't**:

- **I'd be** (= I **would** be) scared if somebody pointed a gun at me.
- I'm not going to bed yet. I'm not tired. If I went to bed now, I **wouldn't sleep**.
- What **would** you **do** if you were bitten by a snake?

Could and **might** are also possible:

- If I won a lot of money, I **might** buy a house.
  (= it is possible that I would buy a house)
- If it stopped raining, we **could go** out.
  (= we would be able to go out)

»
will ➜ Units 21–22 **if and when ➜ Unit 25D** **would ➜ Unit 36** **if I knew ➜ Unit 39**
if … was/were ➜ Unit 39C **if I had known ➜ Unit 40**

Exercises

38.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

did **dropped** ~~**found**~~ **happened** **lost** **was** **went**

1 If you ......found...... a wallet in the street, what would you do with it?
2 Be careful with that vase. If you .... it, it would break into small pieces.
3 This notebook is very important to me. I'd be very upset if I .... it.
4 I don't expect to lose my job but if that .... , I'd have to find another one.
5 We're thinking about our holiday for next year. If we .... to Italy, would you come with us?
6 I don't think he'll fail the exam. I'd be very surprised if he ....
7 If there .... a fire in the building, would you know how to put the fire out?

38.2 What do you say in these situations?

1 Of course you don't expect to win the lottery. Which do you say?
  a If I win the lottery, I'll buy a big house. ☐
  b If I won the lottery, I'd buy a big house. ☑ (b *is correct*)
2 You're not going to sell your car because it's old and not worth much. Which do you say?
  a If I sell my car, I won't get much money for it. ☐
  b If I sold my car, I wouldn't get much money for it. ☐
3 You often see Sarah. A friend of yours wants to contact her. Which do you say?
  a If I see Sarah, I'll tell her to call you. ☐
  b If I saw Sarah, I'd tell her to call you. ☐
4 You don't expect that there will be a fire in the building. Which do you say?
  a What will you do if there is a fire in the building? ☐
  b What would you do if there was a fire in the building? ☐
5 You've never lost your passport. You can only imagine it.
  a I don't know what I'll do if I lose my passport. ☐
  b I don't know what I'd do if I lost my passport. ☐
6 Somebody stops you and asks the way to a bank. Which do you say?
  a If you go right at the end of this street, you'll see a bank on your left. ☐
  b If you went right at the end of this street, you'd see a bank on your left. ☐
7 You're in a lift. There is an emergency button. Nobody is going to press it. Which do you say?
  a What will happen if somebody presses that button? ☐
  b What would happen if somebody pressed that button? ☐

38.3 Complete the sentences.

1 I'd be very scared if ....somebody pointed.... (somebody / point) a gun at me.
2 I can't afford to buy a car. If .... (I / buy) a car, I'd have to borrow the money.
3 If you had a party, who .... (you / invite)?
4 Don't lend James your car. If .... (he / ask) me, I wouldn't lend him mine.
5 I don't think Gary and Emma will get married. .... (I / be) amazed if they did.
6 If .... (somebody / give) me $20,000, ... (I / have) a long holiday.
7 .... (you / be) nervous if .... (you / meet) a famous person?
8 What .... (you / do) if .... (you / be) in a lift and .... (it / stop) between floors?

38.4 Write sentences beginning If ... .

1 We're not going to take the 10.30 train. (we / arrive too early)
  If we took the 10.30 train, we'd arrive too early.
2 We're not going to stay at a hotel. (it / cost too much)
  If we .... , it ....
3 There's no point in telling you what happened. (you / not / believe)
  If I ....
4 Sally has no plans to leave her job. (it / hard to find another one)
  If she ....
5 Kevin is not going to apply for the job. (he / not / get it).
  ....

Unit
39

if I knew … I wish I knew …

A

Study this example situation:

Sarah wants to phone Paul, but she can't do this because she doesn't know his number. She says:

I'd phone him **if** I **knew** his number.
(I'd phone = I **would** phone)

Sarah *doesn't* know Paul's number, so she says 'if I **knew**'.
She *imagines* what she **would** do **if** she **knew** his number.

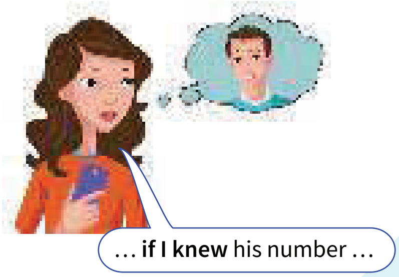
… **if** I **knew** his number …

When we imagine a situation like this, we use **if** + *past* (**if** I **knew** / **if** you **were** / **if** we **didn't** etc.).
But the meaning is present, *not* past:

- There are many things I'd like to do **if** I **had** more time. (but I don't have time)
- **If** I **didn't** want to go to the party, I wouldn't go. (but I want to go)
- **If** you **were** in my position, what would you do?
- It's a pity he can't drive. It would be useful **if** he **could**.

B

We use the past in the same way after **wish** (I **wish** I **knew** / I **wish** you **were** etc.).
We use **wish** to say that we regret something, that something is not as we would like it to be:

- I **wish** I **knew** Paul's phone number.
  (= I don't know it and I regret this)
- Do you ever **wish** you **could** fly?
  (you can't fly)
- It's very crowded here. I **wish** there **weren't** so many people. (there are a lot of people)
- I **wish** I **didn't** have to work tomorrow, but unfortunately I do.

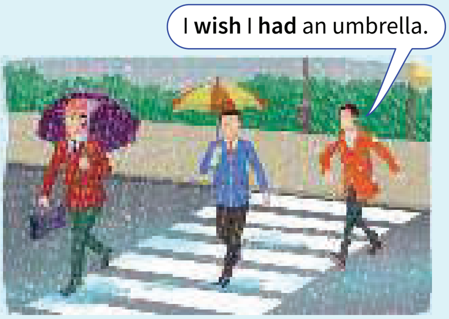
I **wish** I **had** an umbrella.

Compare:

- **I'm glad** I **live** here. (I live here and that's good)
- I **wish** I **lived** here. (I don't live here unfortunately)

C

After **if** and **wish**, you can use **were** instead of **was** (**if I were** / I **wish it were** etc.).
You can also use **was**. So you can say:

If I were you, I wouldn't buy that coat.	*or*	**If I was** you, …
I'd go for a walk **if it weren't** so cold.	*or*	… **if it wasn't** so cold.
I **wish Anna were** here.	*or*	I **wish Anna was** here.

D

We do not usually say 'if … would'. We use **would** (**'d**) in the other part of the sentence:

- **If** I **were** rich, I **would** travel a lot. (*not* If I would be rich)
- Who **would** you ask **if** you **needed** help? (*not* if you would need)

In the same way we say:

- I **wish** I **had** something to read. (*not* I wish I would have)
- I **wish** she **were** here now. (*not* I wish she would be)

For '**I wish** … **would** …' see Unit 41.

E

Could sometimes means 'would be able to' and sometimes 'was/were able to':

She **could get** a better job	(she **could get** = she **would be able** to get)
if she **could speak** another language.	(if she **could speak** = if she **was able** to speak)
I wish I **could** help you.	(I wish I **could** = I wish I **was able**)

could ➜ Units 26–27 **if I do / if I did ➜ Unit 38**
if I had known / I wish I had known ➜ Unit 40 **wish ➜ Unit 41**

Exercises

39.1 **Put the verb into the correct form.**

1 If ...I knew... (I / know) his number, I would phone him.
2 ...I wouldn't buy... (I / not / buy) that coat if I were you.
3 .... (I / help) you if I could, but I'm afraid I can't.
4 This soup isn't very nice. .... (it / taste) better if it wasn't so salty.
5 We live in a city and don't need a car, but we would need one if .... (we / live) in the country.
6 If we had the choice, ... (we / live) in the country.
7 I'd make a lot of changes if .... (I / be) the manager of the company.
8 I wouldn't call someone in the middle of the night if .... (it / not / be) important.
9 If I were you, ... (I / not / wait). .... (I / go) now.
10 You're always tired because you go to bed so late. If .... (you / not / go) to bed so late every night, ... (you / not / be) tired all the time.
11 I think there are too many cars. If .... (there / not / be) so many cars, ... (there / not / be) so much pollution.
12 We all need jobs and money, but what .... (you / do) if .... (you / not / have) to work?

39.2 **Write a sentence with if ... for each situation.**

1 We don't see you very often because you live so far away.
...If you didn't live so far away, we'd see you more often....
2 I like these shoes but they're too expensive, so I'm not going to buy them.
I .... them if .... so ....
3 We'd like to go on holiday, but we can't afford it.
We .... if ....
4 It would be nice to have lunch outside but it's raining, so we can't.
We ....
5 I don't want his advice, and that's why I'm not going to ask for it.
If ....

39.3 **Write sentences beginning I wish ... .**

1 I don't know many people (and I'm lonely). ...I wish I knew more people....
2 I don't have much free time (and I need more). I wish ....
3 Helen isn't here (and I need to see her). ....
4 It's cold (and I hate cold weather). ....
5 I live in a big city (and I don't like it). ....
6 I can't find my phone (which is a problem). ....
7 I'm not feeling well (which isn't good). ....
8 I have to get up early tomorrow (but I'd prefer to sleep late).
....
9 I don't know much about science (and I should know more).
....

39.4 **Write your own sentences beginning I wish ... .**

1 (somewhere you'd like to be now – on the beach, in New York, in bed etc.)
I wish I ....
2 (something you'd like to have – a motorbike, more friends, lots of money etc.)
....
3 (something you'd like to be able to do – sing, travel more, cook etc.)
....
4 (something you'd like to be – famous, more intelligent, good at sport etc.)
....

➜ **Additional exercises 19–21** (pages 313–14)

Unit
40

if I had known ... I wish I had known ...

A

Study this example situation:

Last month Gary was in hospital for a few days. Rachel didn't know this.
A few days ago they met by chance. Rachel said:

If I'd known you were in hospital, **I would have gone** to visit you.
(= I didn't know, so I didn't go to visit you)

If I'd known = If I **had** known. This tells us that she *didn't* know before.

We use **if** + **had** (**'d**) ... to talk about the past (**if I'd known** / **if you'd done** etc.):

- I didn't see you when you passed me in the street. **If** I**'d seen** you, I would have said hello.
- They didn't go out last night. They would have gone out **if** they **hadn't been** so tired. (but they were tired)
- **If** you**'d been looking** where you were going, you wouldn't have walked into the wall. (but you weren't looking)
- The view was wonderful. I would have taken some pictures **if** I**'d had** (= if I **had had**) a camera with me. (but I didn't have a camera)

Compare:

- I'm not hungry. **If** I **was** hungry, I would eat something. *(now)*
- I wasn't hungry. **If** I **had been** hungry, I would have eaten something. *(past)*

B

We do *not* say 'if something would have happened'. We use **would** in the other part of the sentence:

- **If** I **had seen** you, I **would have said** hello. (*not* If I would have seen you)

The short form **'d** can be **would** or **had**:

- If I**'d seen** you, (I**'d** seen = I **had** seen)
  I**'d have said** hello. (I**'d** have said = I **would** have said)

C

We use **had done**/**known**/**been** etc. in the same way after **wish**.

I **wish** something **had happened** = I am sorry that it didn't happen
I **wish** something **hadn't happened** = I am sorry that it happened

- I **wish** I**'d known** that Gary was ill. I would have gone to see him. (but I didn't know)
- I feel sick. I **wish** I **hadn't eaten** so much. (I ate too much)
- Do you **wish** you**'d studied** science instead of languages? (you didn't study science)

Compare:

- **I'm glad I saw** him. (= I **saw** him)
- **I wish I'd seen** him. (= I **didn't see** him)

We do *not* say 'wish ... would have ...'.

- The weather was cold. I wish it **had been** warmer. (*not* I wish it would have been)

D

Compare **would** (**do**) and **would have** (**done**):

- If I'd gone to the party last night, I **would be** tired now. (I am not tired now – *present*)
- If I'd gone to the party last night, I **would have met** lots of people. (I didn't meet lots of people – *past*)

Compare **would have**, **could have** and **might have**:

- If the weather hadn't been so bad,
  we **would have gone** out.
  we **could have gone** out.
  (= we would have been able to go out)
  we **might have gone** out.
  (= maybe we would have gone out)

had done ➜ Unit 15   if I do / if I did ➜ Unit 38   if I knew / I wish I knew ➜ Unit 39   wish ➜ Unit 41

Exercises

40.1 **Put the verb into the correct form.**

1 I didn't see you. If I'd seen (I / see) you, I would have said (I / say) hello.
2 Sarah got to the station just in time to catch her train to the airport. If .... (she / miss) the train, ... (she / miss) her flight too.
3 Thanks for reminding me about Lisa's birthday. .... (I / forget) if .... (you / not / remind) me.
4 I didn't have your email address, so I couldn't contact you. If .... (I / have) your email address, ... (I / send) you an email.
5 Their trip was OK, but .... (they / enjoy) it more if the weather .... (be) better.
6 Sorry we're late. Our taxi got stuck in the traffic. .... (it / be) quicker if .... (we / walk).
7 Why didn't you tell me about your problem? If .... (you / tell) me, ... (I / try) to help you.
8 I'm not tired. If .... (I / be) tired, I'd go home now.
9 I wasn't tired last night. If .... (I / be) tired, I would have gone home earlier.

40.2 **For each situation, write a sentence beginning with If.**

1 I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat anything.
If I'd been hungry, I would have eaten something.
2 The accident happened because the road was icy.
If the road ....
3 I didn't know that you had to get up early, so I didn't wake you up.
If I ....
4 Unfortunately I lost my phone, so I couldn't call you.
....
5 Karen wasn't injured in the crash, because fortunately she was wearing a seat belt.
....
6 You didn't have any breakfast – that's why you're hungry now.
....
7 I didn't get a taxi because I didn't have enough money.
....
8 Dan didn't do well at school, so he couldn't go to university.
....

40.3 **Imagine that you are in these situations. For each situation, write a sentence with I wish.**

1 You've eaten too much and now you feel sick.
You say: I wish I hadn't eaten so much.
2 When you were younger, you never learned to play a musical instrument. Now you regret this.
You say: ....
3 You've painted the gate red. Now you think it doesn't look good. Red was the wrong colour.
You say: ....
4 You decided to travel by car, but the journey was long and tiring. Going by train would have been better.
You say: I wish we ....
5 Last year you went to New York with a friend. You didn't have time to do all the things you wanted to do.
You say: ....
6 You moved to a new flat a few months ago. Now you don't like your new flat. You think that moving was a bad idea.
You say: ....

➜ **Additional exercises 19–21** (pages 313–14)

Unit
41

wish

A

We say '**wish** somebody **luck** / **all the best** / **success**' etc. :

- **I wish you all the best** in the future.
- I saw Mark before the exam and **he wished me luck**.

We say 'wish somebody *something*' (**luck**, **happiness** etc.), but we do not say 'I wish something *happens*'.
We use **hope** in this situation:

- I'm sorry you're not well. I **hope** you **feel** better soon. (*not* I wish you feel)

Compare **I wish** and **I hope**:

- **I wish** you **a pleasant stay** at this hotel.
- **I hope** you **enjoy** your stay at this hotel. (*not* I wish you enjoy)

B

We also use **wish** to say that we regret something, that something is not as we would like it.
When we use **wish** in this way, we use the *past* (**knew**/**lived** etc.), but the meaning is *present*:

- I **wish** I **knew** what to do about the problem. (but I don't know)
- I **wish** you **didn't** have to go so soon. (but you have to go)
- Do you **wish** you **lived** near the sea? (you don't live near the sea)
- Jack's going on a trip to Mexico soon. I **wish** I **was** going too. (but I'm not going)

To say that we regret something that happened before, we use **wish** + **had** known / **had** said etc. :

- I **wish** I'**d known** about the party. I'd have gone if I'd known. (but I didn't know)
- It was a stupid thing to say. I **wish** I **hadn't said** it. (but I said it)

See also Units 39 and 40.

C

I wish I could (**do** something) = I regret that I cannot do it:

- I'm sorry you have to go. I **wish** you **could stay** longer. (but you can't)
- I've met that man before. I **wish** I **could remember** his name. (but I can't)

I wish I could have (**done** something) = I regret that I could not do it:

- I hear the party was great. I **wish** I **could have gone**. (but I couldn't go)

D

You can say '**I wish** something **would** happen'. For example:

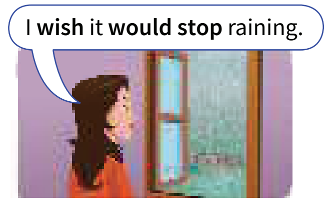
I wish it would stop raining.

It's been raining all day. Tanya doesn't like it. She says:
I wish it **would stop** raining.

Tanya would like the rain to stop, but this will probably not happen.

We use **I wish** … **would** when we would like something to happen or change.

We often use **I wish** … **would** to complain about a situation:

- The phone has been ringing for five minutes. **I wish** somebody **would answer** it.
- **I wish** you**'d do** (= you **would** do) something instead of just sitting and doing nothing.

You can use **I wish** … **wouldn't** … to complain about things that people do repeatedly:

- **I wish** you **wouldn't keep** interrupting me. (= please stop interrupting me)

E

We use **I wish** … **would** … to say that we want something *to happen*. We do not use **I wish** … **would** … to say how we would like things *to be*. Compare:

- I **wish** Sarah **would** come. (= I want her to come)

but I **wish** Sarah **was** (*or* **were**) here now. (*not* I wish Sarah would be)

- I **wish** somebody **would buy** me a car.

but I **wish** I **had** a car. (*not* I wish I would have)

would ➜ Unit 36 **I wish I knew ➜ Unit 39** **I wish I was / I wish I were ➜ Unit 39C**
I wish I had known ➜ Unit 40

Exercises

41.1 Put in wish(ed) or hope(d).

1 I wish you a pleasant stay at this hotel.
2 Enjoy your holiday. I .... you have a great time.
3 Goodbye. I .... you all the best for the future.
4 We said goodbye to each other and .... each other luck.
5 We're going to have a picnic tomorrow, so I .... the weather is nice.
6 Congratulations on your new job. I .... you every success.
7 Good luck in your new job. I .... it works out well for you.

41.2 Complete the sentences.

1 Jack is going on a trip to Mexico soon. I wish I was going too.
2 I'm very tired and I have so much to do. I wish I .... so tired.
3 You didn't tell me you were ill. Why not? I wish you .... me.
4 I don't have enough free time. I wish I .... more free time.
5 I can't make up my mind what to do. I wish I .... decide.
6 I bought these shoes, but now I don't like them. I wish I .... them.
7 We have to go out now and I don't want to go. I wish we .... to go out now.
8 Unfortunately I couldn't go to the wedding last month. I wish I could ....

41.3 What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with I wish … would … .

1 It's raining. You want to go out, but not in the rain.
You say: I wish it would stop raining.
2 You're waiting for Jane. She's late and you're getting impatient.
You say to yourself: I wish she ....
3 You're looking for a job – so far without success. Nobody will give you a job.
You say: I wish somebody ....
4 You can hear a dog barking. It's been barking a long time and you're trying to study.
You say: ....

For the following situations, write sentences with I wish … wouldn't … .

5 Your friend is driving very fast. She always drives fast and you don't like this.
You say to her: I wish you ....
6 Joe leaves the door open all the time. This annoys you.
You say to Joe: ....
7 A lot of people drop litter in the street. You don't like this.
You say: I wish people ....

41.4 Put the verb into the correct form.

1 It was a stupid thing to say. I wish I hadn't said it. (I / not / say)
2 I'm fed up with this rain. I wish it would stop . (it / stop)
3 It's a difficult question. I wish .... the answer. (I / know)
4 I really didn't enjoy the party. I wish .... (we / not / go)
5 I wish .... We've been waiting for 20 minutes. (the bus / come)
6 You're lucky to be going away. I wish .... with you. (I / can / come)
7 Our flat is rather small. I wish .... a bit bigger. (it / be)
8 I should have listened to you. I wish .... your advice. (I / take)
9 You keep interrupting me! I wish .... (you / listen)
10 You're always complaining. I wish .... all the time.
(you / not / complain)
11 It's freezing today. I wish .... so cold. I hate cold weather. (it / not / be)
12 I wish .... It's horrible! (the weather / change)
13 I wish .... a piano. I'd love to have one. (I / have)
14 When we were in London last year, we didn't have time to see all the things we wanted to see.
I wish .... there longer. (we / can / stay)

Unit
42
Passive 1 (**is done / was done**)

A

Study this example:

This house **was built** in 1981.

'This house **was built**' is *passive*.

Compare active and passive:

Somebody **built** this house in 1981. *(active)*
subject *object*

This house **was built** in 1981. (*passive*)
subject

When we use an *active* verb, we say *what the subject does*:

☐ My grandfather was a builder. **He built** this house in 1981.
☐ It's a big company. **It employs** two hundred people.

When we use a *passive* verb, we say *what happens to the subject*:

☐ 'How old is this house?' '**It was built** in 1981.'
☐ **Two hundred people are employed** by the company.

B

When we use the passive, who or what causes the action is often unknown or unimportant:

☐ A lot of money **was stolen** in the robbery. (somebody stole it, but we don't know who)
☐ **Is** this room **cleaned** every day? (does somebody clean it? – it's not important who)

If we want to say who does or what causes the action, we use **by**:

☐ This house was built **by my grandfather**.
☐ Two hundred people are employed **by the company**.

C

The passive is **be** (**is**/**was** etc.) + *past participle* (**done**/**cleaned**/**seen** etc.):

(**be**) **done** (**be**) **cleaned** (**be**) **damaged** (**be**) **built** (**be**) **seen** etc.

The *past participle* often ends in -**ed** (clean**ed**/damag**ed** etc.), but many important verbs are *irregular* (**built**/**done**/**stolen** etc.). See Appendix 1.

Compare active and passive, *present simple* and *past simple*:

Present simple

active: **clean**(**s**) / **see**(**s**) etc.

passive: **am**/**is**/**are** + **cleaned**/**seen** etc.

Somebody **cleans** this room every day.

This room **is cleaned** every day.

☐ Many accidents **are caused** by careless driving.
☐ **I'm not invited** to parties very often.
☐ How **is** this word **pronounced**?

Past simple

active: **cleaned**/**saw** etc.

passive: **was**/**were** + **cleaned**/**seen** etc.

Somebody **cleaned** this room yesterday.

This room **was cleaned** yesterday.

☐ We **were woken** up by a loud noise during the night.
☐ 'Did you go to the party?' 'No, I **wasn't invited**.'
☐ How much money **was stolen** in the robbery?

Passive 2–3 ➜ **Units 43–44** **by ➜ Unit 128**

Exercises

42.1 **Complete the sentences. Use these verbs in the correct form, present or past:**

~~cause~~ damage find hold injure invite
make overtake own send show surround

1 Many accidents ...are caused... by careless driving.
2 Cheese .... from milk.
3 The roof of the building .... in a storm a few days ago.
4 A cinema is a place where films ....
5 You .... to the party. Why didn't you go?
6 This plant is very rare. It .... in very few places.
7 Although we were driving fast, we .... by a lot of other cars.
8 In the US, elections for president .... every four years.
9 There was an accident last night, but fortunately nobody ....
10 You can't see the house from the road. It .... by trees.
11 I never received the letter. It .... to the wrong address.
12 The company I work for .... by a much larger company.

42.2 **Write questions using the passive. Some are present and some are past.**

1 Ask about glass. (how / make?) ...How is glass made?...
2 Ask about television. (when / invent?) When ....
3 Ask about mountains. (how / form?) ....
4 Ask about DNA. (when / discover?) ....
5 Ask about silver. (what / use for?) ....

42.3 **Put the verb into the correct form, present or past, active or passive.**

1 a Two hundred people ...are employed... (employ) by the company.
b The company ...employs... (employ) 200 people.
2 a Water .... (cover) most of the earth's surface.
b How much of the earth's surface .... (cover) by water?
3 a While I was on holiday, my camera .... (steal) from my hotel room.
b While I was on holiday, my camera .... (disappear) from my hotel room.
4 a Robert's parents .... (die) when he was very young.
b Robert and his sister .... (bring up) by their grandparents.
5 a The boat hit a rock and .... (sink) quickly.
b Fortunately everybody .... (rescue).
6 a Bill .... (fire) from his job. He wasn't very good at it.
b Sue .... (resign) from her job because she didn't enjoy it any more.
7 a It can be noisy living here, but it .... (not / bother) me.
b It can be noisy living here, but I .... (not / bother) by it.
8 a Maria had an accident. She .... (knock) off her bike.
b Maria had an accident. She .... (fall) off her bike.
9 a I haven't seen these flowers before. What .... (they / call)?
b I haven't seen these flowers before. What .... (you / call) them?

42.4 **Instead of using somebody, they, people etc., write a passive sentence.**

1 Somebody cleans the room every day. ...The room is cleaned every day... .
2 They cancelled all flights because of fog. All ....
3 Somebody accused me of stealing money. .... money.
4 How do you use this word? How .... used?
5 The price includes all taxes. All .... in the price.
6 People warned us not to go out alone. We ....
7 We don't use this office any more. This ....
8 They invited five hundred people to the wedding. Five hundred ....

Unit 43

Passive 2 (**be done / been done / being done**)

A

Infinitive

active: (to) **do**/**clean**/**see** etc. — Somebody **will clean** this room later.

passive: (to) **be** + **done**/**cleaned**/**seen** etc. — This room **will be cleaned** later.

- ☐ The situation is serious. Something must **be done** before it's too late.
- ☐ A mystery is something that can't **be explained**.
- ☐ The music was very loud and could **be heard** from a long way away.
- ☐ A new supermarket is going **to be built** next year.
- ☐ Please go away. I want **to be left** alone.

B

Perfect infinitive

active: (to) **have** + **done**/**cleaned**/**seen** etc. — Somebody **should have cleaned** the room.

passive: (to) **have been** + **done**/**cleaned**/**seen** etc. — The room **should have been cleaned**.

- ☐ I haven't received the letter yet. It might **have been sent** to the wrong address.
- ☐ If you had locked the car, it wouldn't **have been stolen**.
- ☐ There were some problems at first, but they seem **to have been solved**.

C

Present perfect

active: **have**/**has** + **done** etc. — The room looks nice. Somebody **has cleaned** it.

passive: **have**/**has been** + **done** etc. — The room looks nice. It **has been cleaned**.

- ☐ Have you heard? The trip **has been cancelled**.
- ☐ **Have** you ever **been bitten** by a dog?
- ☐ 'Are you going to the party?' 'No, I **haven't been invited**.'

Past perfect

active: **had** + **done** etc. — The room looked nice. Somebody **had cleaned** it.

passive: **had been** + **done** etc. — The room looked nice. It **had been cleaned**.

- ☐ The vegetables didn't taste good. They **had been cooked** too long.
- ☐ The car was three years old, but **hadn't been used** very much.

D

Present continuous

active: **am**/**is**/**are** + (**do**)**ing** — Somebody **is cleaning** the room at the moment.

passive: **am**/**is**/**are** + **being** (**done**) — The room **is being cleaned** at the moment.

- ☐ There's somebody walking behind us. I think we **are being followed**.
- ☐ A new bridge **is being built** across the river. It will be finished next year.

Past continuous

active: **was**/**were** + (**do**)**ing** — Somebody **was cleaning** the room when I arrived.

passive: **was**/**were** + **being** (**done**) — The room **was being cleaned** when I arrived.

- ☐ There was somebody walking behind us. I think we **were being followed**.

Passive 1, 3 ➜ **Units 42, 44**

Exercises

43.1 Complete these sentences. Use the following verbs in the passive:

arrest carry cause delay ~~do~~ forget keep knock know make repair ~~send~~

Sometimes you need have (might have, would have etc.).

1 The situation is serious. Something must ...be done... before it's too late.
2 I haven't received the letter yet. It might ...have been sent... to the wrong address.
3 A decision will not .... until the next meeting.
4 These documents are important. They should always .... in a safe place.
5 This road is in bad condition. It should .... a long time ago.
6 The injured man couldn't walk and had to ....
7 If you hadn't shouted at the policeman, you wouldn't ....
8 I'm not sure what time I'll arrive tomorrow. I may ....
9 It's not certain how the fire started. It might .... by an electrical fault.
10 A new school is being built. The old one is going to .... down.
11 The election is next Sunday. The full results will .... on Tuesday.
12 Last week they weren't speaking to one another. Now they're happy again. The problem seems to ....

43.2 Make sentences from the words in brackets. Sometimes the verb is active, sometimes passive.

1 There's somebody behind us. (We / follow) ...We're being followed....
2 This door is a different colour, isn't it? (you / paint?) ...Have you painted it?...
3 My bike has disappeared. (It / steal!) It ....
4 My umbrella has disappeared. (Somebody / take) Somebody ....
5 A neighbour of mine disappeared six months ago.
(He / not / see / since then) He ....
6 I wonder how Jessica is these days.
(I / not / see / for ages) I ....
7 A friend of mine was stung by a bee recently.
(you / ever / sting / bee?) .... you ....
8 The bridge was damaged recently.
(It / repair / at the moment) It ....
9 Tom's car was stolen recently.
(It / not / find / yet) ....
10 I went into the room and saw that the table and chairs were not in the same place.
(The furniture / move) The ....

43.3 Instead of using 'somebody', 'they' etc., write a passive sentence.

1 Somebody has cleaned the room. The ...room has been cleaned... .
2 They are building a new road around the city.
A .... around the city.
3 They have built two new hotels near the airport.
Two .... near the airport.
4 When I last visited, they were building some new houses here.
When I last visited, some ....
5 The meeting is now on 15 April. They have changed the date.
The date of ....
6 I didn't know that somebody was recording our conversation.
I didn't know that our ....
7 Is anyone doing anything about the problem?
.... anything .... the problem?
8 The windows were very dirty. Nobody had cleaned them for ages.
The windows were very dirty. They ....

→ **Additional exercises 22–24** (pages 314–15)

Unit
44

Passive 3

A

I was offered . . . / **we were given** . . . etc.

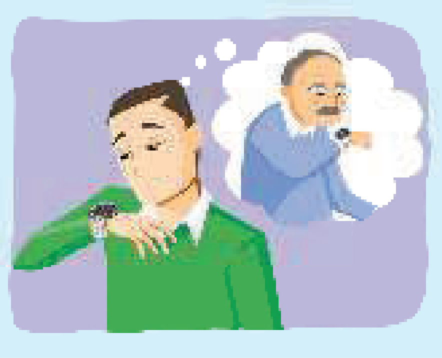

Some verbs can have two objects. For example, **give**:

- My grandfather gave $\underbrace{\textbf{me}}_{\textit{object 1}}$ $\underbrace{\textbf{this watch}}_{\textit{object 2}}$.

It is possible to make two passive sentences:

- **I was given** this watch (by my grandfather). *or*
  This watch was given to me (by my grandfather).

Other verbs which can have two objects are:

ask **offer** **pay** **show** **tell**

When we use these verbs in the passive, most often we begin with the *person*:

- **I've been offered** the job, but I don't think I want it. (= somebody has offered me the job)
- **You will be given** plenty of time to decide. (= we will give you plenty of time)
- I didn't see the original document, but **I was shown** a copy. (= somebody showed me a copy)
- Tim has an easy job – **he's paid a lot of money** to do very little. (= somebody pays him a lot)

B

I don't like being . . .

The passive of **doing**/**seeing** etc. is **being done** / **being seen** etc. Compare:

active: I don't like **people telling me** what to do.
passive: I don't like **being told** what to do.

- I remember **being taken** to the zoo when I was a child.
  (= I remember **somebody taking** me to the zoo)
- Steve hates **being kept** waiting. (= he hates **people keeping** him waiting)
- We climbed over the wall without **being seen**. (= without **anybody seeing** us)

C

I was born . . .

We say '**I was** born . . .' (*not* I am born):

- I was born in Chicago.
- Where **were** you **born**? (*not* Where are you born?) } *past*

but

- How many babies **are born** every day? *present*

D

get

You can use **get** for the passive:

- There was a fight, but nobody **got hurt**. (= nobody **was** hurt)
- I don't **get invited** to many parties. (= **I'm** not invited)
- I'm surprised Liz **didn't get offered** the job. (= Liz **wasn't offered** the job)

We use **get** only when things *happen*. For example, you cannot use **get** in these sentences:

- Jessica **is liked** by everybody. (*not* gets liked – this is not a 'happening')
- Peter was a mystery man. Very little **was known** about him. (*not* got known)

We use **get** mainly in informal spoken English. You can use **be** in all situations.

We also use **get** in the following expressions (which are not passive in meaning):

get married, **get divorced**
get lost (= not know where you are)
get dressed (= put on your clothes)
get changed (= change your clothes)

Passive 1–2 ➜ **Units 42–43**

Exercises

44.1 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verb.

1 I tried to contact Tom.
I called his office but I ......was told...... (tell) that he was in a meeting.
2 Amy retired from her job recently.
She .... (give) a present by her colleagues.
3 I didn't know there was a meeting yesterday.
I .... (not / tell) about it.
4 Sarah's salary is very low.
I don't understand why she .... (pay) so little.
5 You will need to use this machine.
Have you .... (show) how it works?
6 I had an interview for a job recently. It wasn't easy.
I .... (ask) some questions that were very hard for me to answer.
7 They didn't tell us much about the project.
We .... (not / give) enough information.
8 I was surprised to get the job I applied for.
I didn't expect .... (offer) it.

44.2 Complete the sentences using being + the following verbs (in the correct form):

bite give invite ~~keep~~ knock down stick treat

1 Steve hates ......being kept...... waiting.
2 We went to the wedding without ....
3 I like giving presents and I also like .... them.
4 It's a busy road and I don't like crossing it. I'm afraid of ....
5 How do you avoid .... by mosquitoes?
6 I'm an adult. I don't like .... like a child.
7 You can't do anything about .... in a traffic jam.

44.3 Complete the sentences using get or got + the following verbs (in the correct form):

ask break ~~hurt~~ pay steal sting stop use

1 There was a fight, but nobody ......got hurt...... .
2 Alex .... by a bee while he was sitting in the garden.
3 These tennis courts don't .... very often. Not many people want to play here.
4 I used to have a bike, but it .... a few months ago.
5 Rachel works hard, but she doesn't .... very much.
6 Please pack these things very carefully. I don't want anything to ....
7 People often want to know what my job is. I .... that question a lot.
8 Last night I .... by the police as I was driving home. One of the lights on my car wasn't working.

44.4 Complete the sentences.

1 I've been ......offered...... the job, but I don't think I'll accept it.
2 I ......don't...... get invited to many parties.
3 Which year .... you born in?
4 I haven't been .... any information yet.
5 I didn't know the way, so I got ....
6 He doesn't like .... interrupted when he's speaking.
7 How did the window .... broken? What happened?
8 She's a voluntary worker. She .... get paid.
9 I .... born in a small town in the north of the country.
10 We had to do what we did. We .... given any choice.

→ **Additional exercises 22–24** (pages 314–15)

Unit 45 it is said that … he is said to … he is supposed to …

A

Study this example situation:

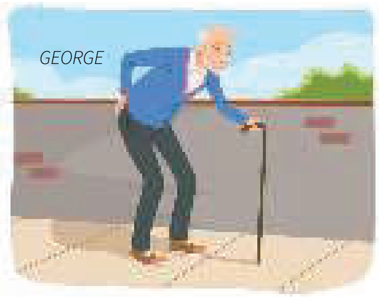

George is very old. Nobody knows exactly how old he is, but:

It is said that he is 108 years old.

or He **is said to be** 108 years old.

Both these sentences mean: 'People say that he is 108 years old.'

You can use these structures with a number of other verbs, especially:

alleged believed considered expected known reported thought understood

○ Cathy loves running. **It is said that** she runs 10 miles a day.	*or*	**She is said to** run 10 miles a day.
○ The police are looking for a missing boy. **It is believed that** the boy is wearing a white sweater and blue jeans.	*or*	**The boy is believed to** be wearing a white sweater and blue jeans.
○ The strike started three weeks ago. **It is expected that** it will end soon.	*or*	**The strike is expected to** end soon.
○ A friend of mine has been arrested. **It is alleged that** he stole a car.	*or*	**He is alleged to** have stolen a car.
○ The two houses belong to the same family. **It is said that** there is a secret tunnel between them.	*or*	**There is said to** be a secret tunnel between them.

These structures are often used in news reports. For example, in a report about an accident:

○ **It is reported that** two people were injured in the explosion.	*or*	**Two people are reported to** have been injured in the explosion.

B

supposed to …

You can use **supposed to** … in the same way as **said to** … :

○ I want to see that film. It**'s supposed to be** good. (= people say it's good)
○ There are many stories about Joe. He**'s supposed to have robbed** a bank many years ago.
○ Fireworks **are supposed to have been invented** in China. Is it true?

Sometimes **supposed to** … has a different meaning. We use **supposed to** to say what is intended, arranged or expected. Often this is different from the real situation:

○ The plan **is supposed to be** a secret, but everybody seems to know about it.
(= the plan is intended to be a secret)
○ What are you doing at work? You**'re supposed to be** on holiday.
(= you arranged to be on holiday)
○ Our guests **were supposed to come** at 7.30, but they were late.
○ Jane **was supposed to phone** me last night, but she didn't.
○ I'd better hurry. I**'m supposed to be meeting** Chris in ten minutes.

You're not supposed to do something = it is not allowed or advised:

○ **You're not supposed to park** your car here. It's private parking only.
○ Joe is much better after his illness, but **he's not supposed to exercise** too hard.

Exercises

45.1 Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown. Use the underlined word each time.

1 It is expected that the strike will end soon.
The strike ……is expected to end soon.……

2 It is reported that many people are homeless after the floods.
Many people ……

3 It is thought that the thieves got in through a window in the roof.
The thieves ……

4 It is alleged that the driver of the car was driving at 110 miles an hour.
The driver ……

5 It is reported that the building has been badly damaged by the fire.
The building ……

6 It is said that the company is losing a lot of money.
The company ……

7 It is believed that the company lost a lot of money last year.
The company ……

8 It is expected that the company will make a loss this year.
The company ……

45.2 Complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets and any other necessary words.

1 A: What's the City Hotel like? Can you recommend it?
B: I've never stayed there, but ……it's supposed to be…… (it / supposed) very good.

2 A: How much are these paintings worth?
B: I'm not sure, but …… (they / supposed) very valuable.

3 A: This looks an interesting building.
B: Yes, …… (it / supposed) a prison a long time ago.

4 A: Is it true that your neighbours were lucky in the lottery?
B: Yes, …… (they / supposed / win) a lot of money.

5 A: Is it possible to climb to the top of the tower?
B: Yes, …… (the view / supposed) very nice.

6 A: I heard that Laura has gone away.
B: Yes, …… (she / supposed / living) in London now.

45.3 Write sentences using supposed to be + the following:

on a diet **a flower** **my friend** **a joke** **open every day** ~~**a secret**~~ **working**

1 How is it that everybody knows about the plan? ……It's supposed to be a secret.……
2 You shouldn't criticise me all the time. You ……
3 I shouldn't be eating this cake really. I ……
4 I'm sorry for what I said. I was trying to be funny. It ……
5 What's this drawing? Is it a tree? Or maybe it ……
6 You shouldn't be playing a game now. ……
7 That's strange. The museum seems to be closed. ……

45.4 Write sentences with supposed to … or not supposed to … . Choose from the following verbs:

depart **lift** ~~**park**~~ **phone** **put** **start**

1 You ……'re not supposed to park…… your car here. It's private parking only.
2 We …… work at 8.15, but we rarely do anything before 8.30.
3 I …… Helen last night, but I completely forgot.
4 This door is a fire exit. We …… anything in front of it.
5 My flight …… at 10.15, but it didn't leave until 11.30.
6 Jonathan has a problem with his back. He …… anything heavy.

Unit
46 have something done

A

Study this example situation:

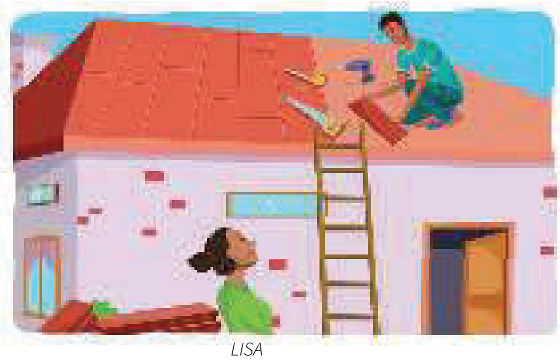

The roof of Lisa's house was damaged. So she called a builder, and yesterday he came and repaired it.

Lisa **had** the roof **repaired** yesterday.

This means: Lisa arranged for somebody else to repair the roof. She didn't repair it herself.

If you **have something done**, you arrange for somebody to do it for you.
Compare:

- Lisa **repaired** the roof. (= she repaired it herself)
  Lisa **had** the roof **repaired**. (= she arranged for somebody else to repair it)
- A: Did you **make** those curtains yourself?
  B: Yes, I like making things.
  A: Did you **have** those curtains **made**?
  B: No, I made them myself.

B

Study the word order:

have	*object*	*past participle*
Lisa **had**	the roof	**repaired**.
Where did you **have**	your hair	**cut**?
We are **having**	the house	**painted**.
I think you should **have**	that coat	**cleaned**.
I don't like **having**	my picture	**taken**.

We say:

- How often do you **have your car serviced**? (*not* have serviced your car)
- Our neighbour is **having a garage built**. (*not* having built a garage)
- Your hair looks nice. Did you **have it cut**?

C

get something done

You can say '**get** something done' instead of '**have** something done':

- When are you going to **get the roof repaired**? (= have the roof repaired)
- I think you should **get your hair cut** really short.

D

We also use **have something done** with a different meaning. For example:

- Paul and Karen **had their bags stolen** while they were travelling.

This does not mean that they arranged for somebody to steal their bags. 'They **had their bags stolen**' means only: 'Their bags were stolen'.

With this meaning, we use **have something done** to say that something happens to somebody or their belongings:

- Gary **had** his nose **broken** in a fight. (= his nose was broken)
- Have you ever **had** your bike **stolen**?

Exercises

46.1 Tick (✓) the correct sentence, (a) or (b), for each picture.

1

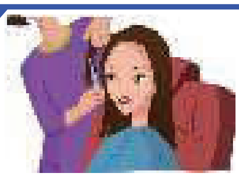

(a) Sarah is cutting her hair.
(b) Sarah is having her hair cut.

2

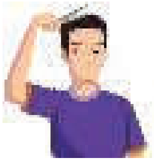

(a) Dan is cutting his hair.
(b) Dan is having his hair cut.

3

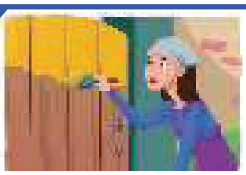

(a) Kate is painting the gate.
(b) Kate is having the gate painted.

4

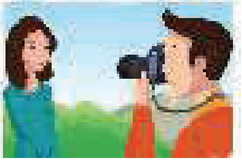

(a) Sue is taking a picture.
(b) Sue is having her picture taken.

46.2 Put the words in the correct order.

1 (painted / had / a few weeks ago / the house)
We had the house painted a few weeks ago.
2 (serviced / car / once a year / her / has)
Sarah ……
3 (had / your / recently / tested / eyes / you?)
Have ……
4 (like / cut / my / having / don't / hair)
I ……
5 (fifteen pounds / have / cleaned / my suit / cost / to)
It ……
6 (as soon as possible / need / translated / to get / this document)
You ……

46.3 Write sentences in the way shown.

1 Lisa didn't repair the roof herself. She had it repaired.
2 I didn't cut my hair myself. I ……
3 We didn't clean the carpets ourselves. We ……
4 Ben didn't build that wall himself. He ……
5 I didn't deliver the flowers myself. I ……
6 Sarah didn't repair her shoes herself. She ……

46.4 Which goes with which?

1 My hair is getting long.
2 I really like this picture.
3 The washing machine is broken.
4 I want to wear earrings.
5 Can you recommend a dentist?
6 I've lost my key.

a I need to get it fixed.
b I'll have to get a new one made.
c I need to get my teeth checked.
d ~~I should get it cut.~~
e I'm going to get my ears pierced.
f I'm going to get it framed.

1 d
2 ……
3 ……
4 ……
5 ……
6 ……

46.5 Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences.

1 Did I tell you about Paul and Karen?
(They / their bags / steal) They had their bags stolen.
2 Security at the airport was strict.
(We / our bags / search) ……
3 I've had some good news!
(I / my salary / increase) I ……
4 Joe can't get a visa.
(He / his application / refuse) ……

Unit
47

Reported speech 1 (**he said that ...**)

A Study this example situation:

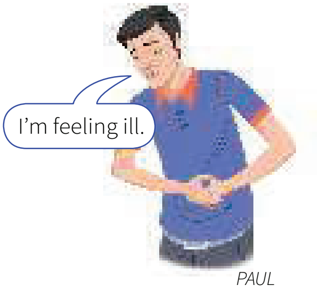

You saw Paul yesterday and you want to tell somebody what he said.
There are two ways of doing this:

You can repeat Paul's words (direct speech):
Paul said, '**I'm feeling ill**.'

Or you can use reported speech:
Paul said **that he was feeling ill**.

Compare:

direct Paul said, '**I** **am** feeling ill.'
reported Paul said that **he** **was** feeling ill.

In writing we use these quotation marks to show direct speech.

B When we use reported speech, the main verb of the sentence is usually past (Paul **said** that ... / I **told** her that ... etc.). The rest of the sentence is usually past too:

○ Paul **said** that he **was feeling** ill.
○ I **told** Lisa that I **didn't have** any money.

You can leave out **that**. So you can say:

○ Paul **said that** he was feeling ill. *or* Paul **said** he was feeling ill.

In general, the *present* in direct speech changes to the *past* in reported speech:

am/is → **was** do/does → **did** will → **would**
are → **were** have/has → **had** can → **could**
want/like/know/go etc. → **wanted**/**liked**/**knew**/**went** etc.

See also Unit 48A.

Compare direct and reported speech:

You met Anna. Here are some of the things she said in *direct* speech:

I'**ve** lost my phone.
I **want** to buy a car.
I **can't** come to the party on Friday.
I **don't** have much free time.
My parents **are** fine.
I'**m** going away for a few days.
I'**ll** phone you when I **get** back.

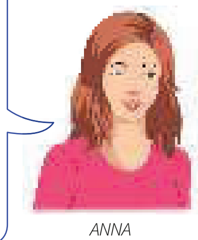

Later you tell somebody what Anna said. You use *reported* speech:

○ Anna said that she **had** lost her phone.
○ She said that she **wanted** to buy a car.
○ She said that she **couldn't** come to the party on Friday.
○ She said that she **didn't** have much free time.
○ She said that her parents **were** fine.
○ She said that she **was** going away for a few days and **would** phone me when she **got** back.

C The *past simple* (**did**/**saw**/**knew** etc.) can stay the same in reported speech, or you can change it to the *past perfect* (**had done** / **had seen** / **had known** etc.):

○ *direct* Paul said: 'I **woke** up feeling ill, so I **didn't go** to work.'
reported Paul said (that) he **woke** up feeling ill, so he **didn't go** to work. *or*
Paul said (that) he **had woken** up feeling ill, so he **hadn't gone** to work.

Reported speech 2 → **Unit 48** Reported questions → **Unit 50B**

Exercises

47.1 **You talked to some friends of yours (Paul, Tom, Anna etc.). Read what they said on the left (direct speech). Later (the same day) you tell another friend what they said (reported speech). Complete the sentences.**

		direct speech	*reported speech*
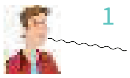	1 YOU: PAUL:	Are you going to work today, Paul? No, I'm feeling ill.	Paul didn't go to work today. He said he was feeling ill.
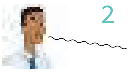	2 YOU: TOM:	Shall we walk to the station? No, it's too far. Let's get a taxi.	I wanted to walk to the station, but Tom said .... far.
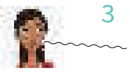	3 YOU: ANNA:	Have you been invited to the party? Yes, but I don't want to go.	Anna has been invited to the party but she told me .... to go.
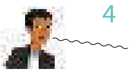	4 YOU: DAN:	When are you going away, Dan? I'll let you know next week.	I asked Dan about his travel plans. He said .... next week.
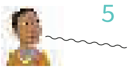	5 YOU: BEN:	Do you ever see Rachel these days? I haven't seen her for a while.	I asked Ben about Rachel, but he told me .... for a while.
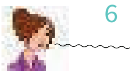	6 YOU: KATE:	Where can I borrow a guitar? You can borrow mine.	I needed to borrow a guitar and Kate said ....
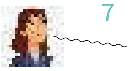	7 YOU: SUE:	How's your job, Sue? I'm not enjoying it very much.	I asked Sue about her job. She said .... very much.
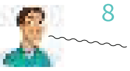	8 YOU: JAMES:	Do you still have your car? No, I sold it a few months ago.	I asked James about his car. He told me .... a few months ago.
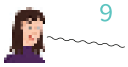	9 YOU: SARAH:	What's the name of the cafe we went to? I don't know.	I asked Sarah the name of the cafe we went to but she said ....
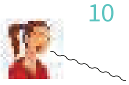	10 YOU: AMY:	How many students are there in your class, Amy? Twenty.	I asked Amy about her school and she told me .... class.

47.2 **Somebody says something to you which is not what you expected. Use your own ideas to complete your answers.**

1 A: It's quite a long way from the hotel to the city centre.
B: Is it? The man on the reception desk said it was only five minutes' walk.
2 A: Sue is coming to the party tonight.
B: Is she? I saw her a few days ago and she said she ....
3 A: Sarah gets on fine with Paul.
B: Does she? Last week you said .... each other.
4 A: Joe knows lots of people.
B: That's not what he told me. He said .... anyone.
5 A: Jane will be here next week.
B: Oh, really? When I spoke to her, she said .... away.
6 A: I'm going out tonight.
B: Are you? I thought you said .... at home.
7 A: I speak French quite well.
B: Do you? But earlier you said .... any other languages.
8 A: I haven't seen Ben recently.
B: That's strange. He told me .... last weekend.

➜ **Additional exercise 25** (page 316)

Unit 48

Reported speech 2

A

We do not always change the verb in reported speech. If the situation *is still the same*, it is not necessary to change the verb to the past. For example:

○ *direct* Paul said, '**My** new job **is** boring.'
reported Paul said that **his** new job **is** boring.
(The situation is still the same. His job is still boring now.)

○ *direct* Helen said, '**I want** to go to Canada next year.'
reported Helen told me that **she wants** to go to Canada next year.
(Helen still wants to go to Canada next year.)

You can also change the verb to the past:

○ Paul said that his new job **was** boring.
○ Helen told me that she **wanted** to go to Canada next year.

But if the situation has *changed* or *finished*, you need to use a past verb. Compare:

○ Paul left the room suddenly. He said '**I have to go**.' *(direct speech)*
Paul left the room suddenly. He said (that) **he had to go**. (*not* has to go)

B

You need to use the past in reported speech when what was said is different from what is really true. For example:

You met Rachel a few days ago. She said:

○ Have you heard? **Joe is in hospital**.

Later that day you meet Joe in the street. You say:

○ Joe, this is a surprise. Rachel said you **were** in hospital.
(*not* 'you are in hospital' – it's clear that he isn't)

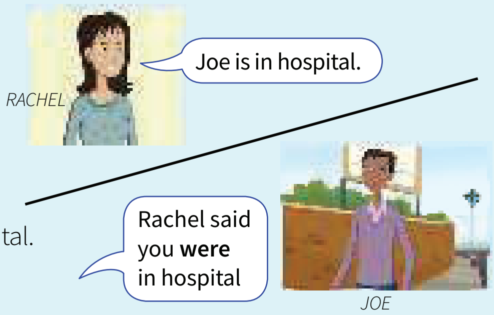
RACHEL
Joe is in hospital.
Rachel said you were in hospital
JOE

C

say and **tell**

If you say *who* somebody is talking to, use **tell**:

○ Rachel **told me** that you were in hospital. (*not* Rachel said me)
○ What did you **tell the police**? (*not* say the police)

Otherwise use **say**:

○ Rachel **said** that you were in hospital.
(*not* Rachel told that …)
○ What did you **say**?

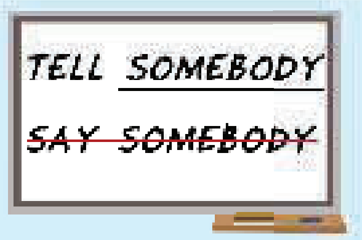

You can '**say** something **to** somebody':

○ Anna **said** goodbye **to** me and left. (*not* Anna said me goodbye)
○ What did you **say to** the police?

D

We say '**tell** somebody **to** …' and '**ask** somebody **to** …'.

Compare direct and reported speech:

○ *direct* '**Drink** plenty of water,' the doctor said to me.
reported The doctor **told me to drink** plenty of water.

○ *direct* '**Don't work** too hard,' I said to Joe.
reported I **told Joe not to work** too hard.

○ *direct* 'Can you help me, please,' Jackie said to me.
reported Jackie **asked me to help** her.

You can also say 'Somebody **said** (**not**) **to** do something':

○ Paul **said not to worry** about him. (*but not* Paul said me)

Reported speech 1 ➜ **Unit 47** Reported questions ➜ **Unit 50B**

Exercises

48.1 Here are some things that Sarah said to you earlier:

I've never been to the United States.

I don't have any brothers or sisters.

I can't drive.

I don't like fish.

Jane has a very well-paid job.

I'm working tomorrow evening.

Jane is a friend of mine.

~~Dave is lazy.~~

But later Sarah says something different to you. What do you say?

	Sarah	You
1	Dave works very hard.	But you said he was lazy.
2	Let's have fish for dinner.	But ……………………
3	I'm going to buy a car.	……………………
4	Jane is always short of money.	……………………
5	My sister lives in Paris.	……………………
6	I think New York is a great place.	……………………
7	Let's go out tomorrow evening.	……………………
8	I've never spoken to Jane.	……………………

48.2 Complete the sentences with say or tell (in the correct form). Use only one word each time.

1 Anna said goodbye to me and left.
2 …………………… us about your holiday. Did you have a nice time?
3 Don't just stand there! …………………… something!
4 I wonder where Sue is. She …………………… she would be here at 8 o'clock.
5 Dan …………………… me that he was bored with his job.
6 The doctor …………………… that I should rest for at least a week.
7 Gary couldn't help me. He …………………… me to ask Chris.
8 Gary couldn't help me. He …………………… to ask Chris.
9 Don't …………………… anybody what I ……………………. It's a secret just between us.
10 'Did Kate …………………… you what happened?' 'No, she didn't …………………… anything to me.'

48.3 The following sentences are direct speech:

Don't wait for me if I'm late.

Mind your own business.

Please slow down!

Can you open your bag, please?

Don't worry, Sue.

~~Hurry up!~~

Will you marry me?

Do you think you could give me a hand, Tom?

Now choose one of these to complete each of the sentences below. Use reported speech.

1 Will was taking a long time to get ready, so I told him to hurry up.
2 Sarah was driving too fast, so I asked …………………… .
3 Sue was nervous about the situation. I told …………………… .
4 I couldn't move the piano alone, so I …………………… .
5 The security guard looked at me suspiciously and …………………… .
6 The man started asking me personal questions, so I …………………… .
7 Carl was in love with Maria, so he …………………… .
8 I didn't want to delay Helen, so I …………………… .

➜ Additional exercise 25 (page 316)

Unit
49

Questions 1

A

In questions the subject is usually after the first verb:

subject	+ *verb*		*verb*	+ *subject*
Tom	will	→	will	Tom?
you	have	→	have	you?
the house	was	→	was	the house?

☐ **Will Tom** be here tomorrow?
☐ **Have you** been working hard?
☐ When **was the house** built?

The subject is after the *first* verb:

☐ **Is Katherine** working today? (*not* Is working Katherine)

B

In *present simple* questions, we use **do**/**does**:

you	live	→	**do**	you **live**?
the film	starts	→	**does**	the film **start**?

☐ **Do** you **live** near here?
☐ What time **does** the film **start**?

In *past simple* questions, we use **did**:

you	sold	→	**did**	you **sell**?
the train	stopped	→	**did**	the train **stop**?

☐ **Did** you **sell** your car?
☐ Why **did** the train **stop**?

But do not use **do**/**does**/**did** if **who**/**what** etc. is the subject of the sentence. Compare:

who *object*

Emma phoned somebody.

object

Who **did** Emma **phone**?

who *subject*

Somebody phoned Emma.

subject

Who **phoned** Emma?

In these examples, **who**/**what** etc. is the *subject*:

☐ **Who wants** something to eat? (*not* Who does want)
☐ **What happened** to you last night? (*not* What did happen)
☐ **How many people came** to the party? (*not* did come)
☐ **Which bus goes** to the centre? (*not* does go)

C

In questions beginning **who**/**what**/**which**/**where**, prepositions (**in**, **for** etc.) usually go at the end:

☐ **Where** are you **from**?
☐ **Who** do you want to speak **to**?
☐ **What** was the weather **like**?
☐ **Which** job has Tina applied **for**?

You can use *preposition* + **whom** in formal style:

☐ **To whom** do you wish to speak?

D

isn't it . . . ? / **didn't you** . . . ? etc. (negative questions)

We use negative questions especially to show surprise:

☐ **Didn't you** hear the doorbell? I rang it three times.

or when we expect the listener to agree with us:

☐ '**Haven't we** met before?' 'Yes, I think we have.'

Note the meaning of **yes** and **no** in answers to negative questions:

☐ '**Don't you** want to go?' { '**Yes**.' (= Yes, I want to go)
'**No**.' (= No, I don't want to go)

We often use negative questions with **Why** . . . ? :

☐ **Why don't we** eat out tonight? (*not* Why we don't eat)
☐ **Why wasn't Emma** at work yesterday? (*not* Why Emma wasn't)

Questions 2 ➜ **Unit 50** Question tags (**do you**? **isn't it**? etc.) ➜ **Unit 52**

Exercises

49.1 Ask Joe questions.

JOE

1	(where / live) Where do you live?	In Manchester.
2	(born there?)	No, I was born in London.
3	(married?)	Yes.
4	(how long?)	17 years.
5	(what / do?)	I'm a journalist.
6	(what wife / do?)	She's a doctor.
7	(children?)	Yes, two boys.
8	(how old?)	12 and 15.

49.2 Make questions with **who** or **what**.

1	Somebody hit me.	Who hit you?
2	I hit somebody.	Who did you hit?
3	Somebody paid the bill.	Who ....
4	I'm worried about something.	What ....
5	Something happened.	....
6	Diane said something.	....
7	This book belongs to somebody.	....
8	Somebody lives in that house.	....
9	I fell over something.	....
10	Something fell off the shelf.	....
11	This word means something.	....
12	Sarah was with somebody.	....
13	I'm looking for something.	....
14	Emma reminds me of somebody.	....

49.3 Put the words in brackets in the correct order.

1 (when / was / built / this house?) When was this house built?
2 (how / cheese / is / made?) ....
3 (why / Sue / working / isn't / today?) ....
4 (what time / arriving / your friends / are?) ....
5 (why / was / cancelled / the meeting?) ....
6 (when / invented / paper / was?) ....
7 (where / your parents / were / born?) ....
8 (why / you / to the party / didn't / come?) ....
9 (how / the accident / did / happen?) ....
10 (why / happy / you / aren't?) ....
11 (how many / speak / can / languages / you?) ....

49.4 Write negative questions from the words in brackets. In each situation you are surprised.

1 A: We won't see Lisa this evening.
B: Why not? (she / not / come / out with us?) Isn't she coming out with us?
2 A: I hope we don't meet Luke tonight.
B: Why? (you / not / like / him?) ....
3 A: Don't go and see that film.
B: Why not? (it / not / good?) ....
4 A: I'll have to borrow some money.
B: Why? (you / not / have / any?) ....

Unit 50

Questions 2 (**do you know where . . . ?** / **he asked me where . . .**)

A

Do you **know where** . . . ? / **I don't know why** . . . / **Could you tell me what** . . . ? etc.

We say: Where **has Tom** gone?

but **Do you know** where **Tom has** gone? (*not* has Tom gone)

When the question (**Where has Tom gone?**) is part of a longer sentence (**Do you know** . . . ? / **I don't know** . . . / **Can you tell me** . . . ? etc.), the word order changes. We say:

What time **is it**?	*but*	**Do you know** what time **it is**?
Who **are those people**?		**I don't know** who **those people are**.
Where **can I** find Louise?		**Can you tell me** where **I can** find Louise?
How much **will it** cost?		**Do you have any idea** how much **it will** cost?

Be careful with **do**/**does**/**did** questions. We say:

What time **does the film start**?	*but*	**Do you know** what time **the film starts**? (*not* does the film start)
What **do you mean**?		**Please explain** what **you mean**.
Why **did she leave** early?		I **wonder** why **she left** early.

Use **if** or **whether** where there is no other question word (**what**, **why** etc.):

Did anybody see you?	*but*	I don't know **if** anybody saw me. *or* . . . **whether** anybody saw me.

B

He asked me where . . .

The same changes in word order happen in questions in reported speech. Compare:

direct	The police officer said to us 'Where **are you going**?'
reported	The police officer asked us where **we were going**.
direct	Clare asked 'What time **do the shops close**?'
reported	Clare wanted to know what time **the shops closed**.

In reported speech the verb usually changes to the past (**were**, **closed** etc.). See Unit 47.

Study these examples. You had a job interview and the interviewer asked you these questions:

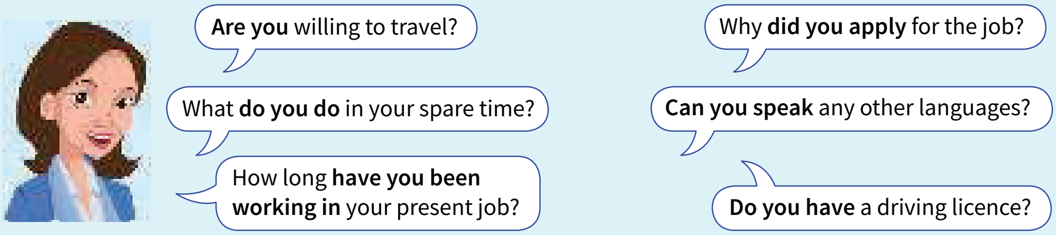
Are you willing to travel?
What **do you do** in your spare time?
How long **have you been working** in your present job?
Why **did you apply** for the job?
Can you speak any other languages?
Do you have a driving licence?

Later you tell a friend what the interviewer asked you. You use *reported* speech:

- She asked if (*or* whether) **I was** willing to travel.
- She wanted to know what **I did** in my spare time.
- She asked how long **I had been working** in my present job.
- She asked why **I had applied** for the job. *or* . . . why I **applied** . . .
- She wanted to know if (*or* whether) **I could** speak any other languages.
- She asked if (*or* whether) **I had** a driving licence.

Reported speech ➜ **Units 47–48**

Exercises

50.1 Which is right? Tick (✓) the correct alternative.

1 a Do you know what time the film starts? ✓
b Do you know what time does the film start?
c Do you know what time starts the film?

2 a Why Amy does get up so early every day?
b Why Amy gets up so early every day?
c Why does Amy get up so early every day?

3 a I want to know what this word means.
b I want to know what does this word mean.
c I want to know what means this word.

4 a I can't remember where did I park the car.
b I can't remember where I parked the car.
c I can't remember where I did park the car.

5 a Why you didn't phone me yesterday?
b Why didn't you phone me yesterday?
c Why you not phoned me yesterday?

6 a Do you know where does Helen work?
b Do you know where Helen does work?
c Do you know where Helen works?

7 a How much it costs to park here?
b How much does it cost to park here?
c How much it does cost to park here?

8 a Tell me what you want.
b Tell me what you do want.
c Tell me what do you want.

50.2 Put the words in the correct order.

1 (it / you / what time / know / is) Do ……you know what time it is……?
2 (is / to the airport / far / it) How ……?
3 (wonder / is / how / old / Tom) I …….
4 (they / married / been / have) How long ……?
5 (they / married / how long / been / have / know)
Do you ……?
6 (tell / the station / you / me / is / where)
Could ……?
7 (in the accident / injured / anyone / don't / whether / know / was)
I …….
8 (what / tomorrow / know / time / will / arrive / you / you)
Do ……?

50.3 You were visiting London. You met a lot of people who asked you a lot of questions:

1
Where are you from?

2
How long have you been in London?

3 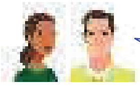
Have you been to London before?

4
Do you like London?

5
Where are you staying?

6
How long are you going to stay?

7
Do you think London is expensive?

8 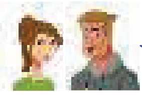
Why did you come to London?

Now you tell a friend what people asked you. Use reported speech.

1 ……He asked me where I was from.……
2 She asked me …….
3 They …….
4 …….
5 …….
6 …….
7 …….
8 …….

➜ Additional exercise 25 (page 316)

Unit
51

Auxiliary verbs (**have**/**do**/**can** etc.) **I think so** / **I hope so** etc.

A

In these sentences there is an *auxiliary* verb and a *main* verb:

	auxiliary	*main*	
I	**have**	**lost**	my keys.
She	**can't**	**come**	to the party.
The hotel	**was**	**built**	ten years ago.
Why	**do** you	**want**	to go home?

In these examples **have**/**can't**/**was**/**do** are *auxiliary* (= helping) verbs.

You can use an auxiliary verb when you don't want to repeat something:
- 'Have you locked the door?' 'Yes, I **have**.' (= I have *locked the door*)
- Gary wasn't working, but Laura **was**. (= Laura was *working*)
- Jessica could lend me the money, but she **won't**. (= she won't *lend me the money*)

We use **do**/**does**/**did** for the present and past simple:
- 'Do you like onions?' 'Yes, I **do**.' (= I *like onions*)
- 'Does Simon live in London?' 'He **did**, but he **doesn't** any more.'

You can use auxiliary verbs to deny what somebody says (= say it is not true):
- 'You're sitting in my place.' 'No, I'**m not**.' (= I'm not *sitting in your place*)
- 'You didn't lock the door before you left.' 'Yes, I **did**.' (= I *locked the door*)

B

We use **have you**? / **isn't she**? / **are they**? etc. to show that we are interested in what somebody has said, or to show surprise:
- 'I've just seen Steven.' 'Oh, **have you**? How is he?'
- 'Lisa isn't very well today.' '**Isn't she**? What's wrong with her?'
- 'It rained every day during our holiday.' '**Did it**? What a shame!'
- 'James and Tanya are getting married.' '**Are they**? Really?'

C

We use auxiliary verbs with **so** and **neither**:
- 'I'm tired.' '**So am I**.' (= I'm tired too)
- 'I never read newspapers.' '**Neither do I**.' (= I never read newspapers either)
- Sarah can't drive and **neither can Mark**.

Note the word order after **so** and **neither** (verb before subject):
- I passed the exam and **so did Paul**. (*not* so Paul did)

Instead of **neither**, you can use **nor**. You can also use **not** . . . **either**:
- 'I don't know.' '**Neither** do I.' *or* '**Nor** do I.' *or* 'I do**n't either**.'

D

I think so / **I suppose so** etc.

You can say **I think so** / **I suppose so** etc. when we don't want to repeat something:
- 'Are those people Korean?' '**I think so**.' (= I think *they are Korean*)
- 'Is Kate working tomorrow?' '**I suppose so**.' (= I suppose *she is working tomorrow*)
- 'Will you be at home this evening?' '**I expect so**.' (= I expect *I'll be at home* . . .)

In the same way we say: **I hope so**, **I guess so** and **I'm afraid so**.

The usual negative forms are:

I think so / I expect so → I **don't think so** / I **don't expect so**
I hope so / I'm afraid so → I **hope not** / **I'm afraid not**
I guess so / I suppose so → I **guess not** / I **suppose not**

- 'Is that woman American?' '**I think so**. / **I don't think so**.'
- 'Do you think it will rain?' '**I hope so**. / **I hope not**.' (*not* I don't hope so)

American English → **Appendix 7**

Exercises

51.1 **Complete each sentence with an auxiliary verb (do/was/could/might etc.). Sometimes the verb must be negative (don't/wasn't etc.).**

1 I wasn't tired, but my friends ....were.... .
2 I like hot weather, but Ann ....
3 'Is Andy here?' 'He .... five minutes ago, but I think he's gone home now.'
4 I haven't travelled much, but Gary ....
5 Lisa said she might come and see us tomorrow, but I don't think she ....
6 I don't know whether to apply for the job or not. Do you think I ....?
7 'Please don't tell anybody what happened.' 'Don't worry. I ....'
8 'You never listen to me.' 'Yes, I .... !'
9 I usually work on Saturdays, but last Saturday I ....
10 'Do you think it's going to rain?' 'It .... Take an umbrella in case.'
11 'Are you and Chris going to the party?' 'I .... , but Chris ....'
12 'Please help me.' 'I'm sorry. I .... if I .... , but I ....'

51.2 **You never agree with Amy. Answer in the way shown.**

AMY

	AMY	YOU
1	I'm hungry.	Are you? I'm not.
2	I don't like driving.	Don't you? I do.
3	I like football.	....
4	I didn't enjoy the film.	....
5	I'm not tired.	....
6	I thought the exam was easy.	....

51.3 **Tina tells you something. If the same is true for you, answer with So ... or Neither ... (as in the first example). Otherwise, ask Tina questions (as in the second example).**

TINA

	TINA	YOU
1	I'm not tired.	Neither am I.
2	I work hard.	Do you? What do you do?
3	I watched TV last night.	....
4	I won't be at home tomorrow.	....
5	I like reading.	....
6	I'd like to live somewhere else.	....
7	I can't go out tonight.	....
8	I'm looking forward to the weekend.	....

51.4 **What do you say to Sam? Use I think so, I hope not etc.**

1 (You don't like rain.)
SAM: Is it going to rain?
YOU: ....I hope not.... (hope)

2 (You need more money.)
SAM: Do you think you'll get a pay rise?
YOU: .... (hope)

3 (You're going to a party. You can't stand John.)
SAM: Will John be at the party?
YOU: .... (hope)

4 (You're not sure whether Amy is married, but she probably isn't.)
SAM: Is Amy married?
YOU: .... (think)

5 (Jane has lived in Italy for many years.)
SAM: Does Jane speak Italian?
YOU: .... (suppose)

6 (You have to leave Sam's party early.)
SAM: Do you have to leave already?
YOU: .... (afraid)

7 (You're not sure what time the film begins, but it's probably 7.30.)
SAM: What time is the film? 7.30?
YOU: .... (think)

8 (You are the receptionist at a hotel. The hotel is full.)
SAM: Do you have a room for tonight?
YOU: .... (afraid)

Unit
52

Question tags (**do you**? **isn't it**? etc.)

A

Study these examples:

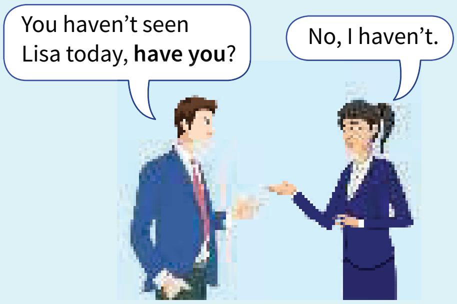
You haven't seen Lisa today, have you?
No, I haven't.

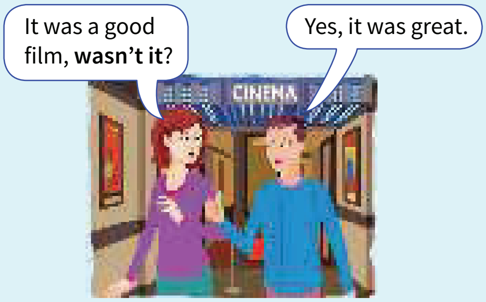
It was a good film, wasn't it?
CINEMA
Yes, it was great.

Have you? and **wasn't it**? are *question tags*. These are mini-questions that you can put on the end of a sentence.
In question tags, we use an auxiliary verb (**have**/**was**/**will** etc.).

We use **do**/**does**/**did** for the present and past simple (see Unit 51):

☐ 'Karen plays the piano, **does**n't she?' 'Well, yes, but not very well.'
☐ 'You didn't lock the door, **did** you?' 'No, I forgot.'

B

Normally we use a *negative* question tag after a *positive* sentence:

positive sentence +	*negative tag*
Kate **will** be here soon,	**won't she**?
There **was** a lot of traffic,	**wasn't there**?
Joe **should** pass the exam,	**shouldn't he**?

. . . and a *positive* question tag after a *negative* sentence:

negative sentence +	*positive tag*
Kate **won't** be late,	**will she**?
They **don't** like us,	**do they**?
You **haven't** eaten yet,	**have you**?

Notice the meaning of **yes** and **no** in answer to a negative sentence:

☐ 'You're **not** going out this morning, **are you**?' { '**Yes.**' (= Yes, I am going out)
'**No.**' (= No, I am not going out)

C

The meaning of a question tag depends on how you say it. If your voice goes *down*, you are not really asking a question. You expect the listener to agree with you:

☐ 'It's a nice day, **isn't it**?' 'Yes, beautiful.'
☐ 'Paul doesn't look well today, **does he**?' 'No, he looks very tired.'
☐ 'Lisa's very funny. She's got a great sense of humour, **hasn't she**?' 'Yes, she has.'

But if the voice goes *up*, it is a real question:

☐ 'You haven't seen Kate today, **have you**?' 'No, I haven't.'
(= Have you seen Kate today?)

You can use a *negative sentence* + *positive tag* to ask for things or information, or to ask somebody to do something. The voice goes *up* at the end of the tag:

☐ 'You couldn't do me a favour, **could you**?' 'It depends what it is.'
☐ 'You don't know where Karen is, **do you**?' 'Sorry, I have no idea.'

D

After **Let's** . . . (= **Let us**) the question tag is **shall we**:

☐ **Let's** go for a walk, **shall we**? (the voice goes *up*)

After **Don't** . . . , the question tag is **will you**:

☐ **Don't** be late, **will you**? (the voice goes *down*)

After **I'm** . . . , the negative question tag is **aren't I**? (= am I not?):

☐ 'I'm right, **aren't I**?' 'Yes, you are.'

Auxiliary verbs (**have**/**do**/**can** etc.) ➜ **Unit 51**

Exercises

52.1 Complete these sentences with a question tag.

1	Kate won't be late,	will she?	No, she's never late.
2	You're tired,	aren't you?	Yes, a little.
3	You travel a lot,	……………?	Yes, I love travelling.
4	You weren't listening,	……………?	Yes, I was!
5	Sarah doesn't know Ann,	……………?	No, they've never met.
6	Jack's on holiday,	……………?	Yes, he's in Australia.
7	It didn't take long to get here,	……………?	No, just ten minutes.
8	You can speak German,	……………?	Yes, but not fluently.
9	They won't mind if I take a picture,	……………?	No, of course they won't.
10	There are a lot of people here,	……………?	Yes, more than I expected.
11	Let's go and have coffee,	……………?	Yes, let's do that.
12	This isn't very interesting	……………?	No, not really.
13	I'm too impatient	……………?	Yes, you are sometimes.
14	You wouldn't tell anyone,	……………?	No, of course not.
15	Helen has lived here a long time,	……………?	Yes, 20 years.
16	I shouldn't have lost my temper,	……………?	No, but that's all right.
17	He'd never met her before,	……………?	No, that was the first time.
18	Don't forget to call me,	……………?	No, I won't forget.

52.2 In these situations you expect your friend to agree with you. Use a question tag in your sentences.

1 You look out of the window. The sky is blue and the sun is shining. You say to your friend:
(beautiful day) It's a beautiful day, isn't it?

2 You're with a friend outside a restaurant. You're looking at the prices, which are very high.
You say: (expensive) It ……………

3 You and a colleague have just finished a training course. You really enjoyed it. You say to your colleague: (great) The course ……………

4 Your friend's hair is much shorter than when you last met. You say to her/him:
(have / your hair / cut) You ……………

5 You're listening to a woman singing. You like her voice very much. You say to your friend:
(a good voice) She ……………

6 You're trying on a jacket in a shop. You look in the mirror and you don't like what you see.
You say to your friend:
(not / look / right) It ……………

7 You and a friend are walking over a small wooden bridge. The bridge is old and some parts are broken. You say:
(not / very safe) This bridge ……………

52.3 In these situations you are asking for information, asking people to do things etc.

1 You need a pen. Perhaps Jane has one. Ask her.
Jane, you don't have a pen I could borrow, do you?

2 You have to move a heavy table. You want Joe to help you with it. Ask him.
Joe, you ……………

3 You're looking for Sarah. Perhaps Lisa knows where she is. Ask her.
Lisa, you ……………

4 You want to borrow a tennis racket. Perhaps Helen has one. Ask her.
Helen, ……………

5 Anna has a car and you need a lift to the station. Perhaps she'll take you. Ask her.
Anna, ……………

6 You're looking for your keys. Perhaps Robert has seen them. Ask him.
Robert, ……………

Unit 53

Verb + -**ing** (**enjoy doing** / **stop doing** etc.)

A

We say:

☐ I **enjoy reading**. (*not* I enjoy to read)
☐ Would you **mind closing** the door?
(*not* mind to close)
☐ Chris **suggested going** to the cinema.
(*not* suggested to go)

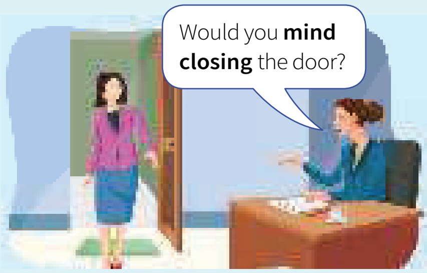
Would you **mind closing** the door?

After **enjoy**, **mind** and **suggest**, we use -**ing** (*not* **to** …).

Some more verbs that are followed by -**ing**:

stop
finish
recommend
consider
admit
deny
avoid
risk
imagine
fancy

☐ Suddenly everybody **stopped talking**. There was silence.
☐ I'll do the shopping when I've **finished cleaning** the flat.
☐ He tried to **avoid answering** my question.
☐ I don't **fancy going** out this evening. (= I'm not enthusiastic about it)
☐ Have you ever **considered going** to live in another country?
☐ They said they were innocent. They **denied doing** anything wrong.

The negative form is **not -ing**:

☐ When I'm on holiday, I enjoy **not having** to get up early.

B

We also use -**ing** after:

give up (= stop)
put off (= delay until later)
go on *or* **carry on** (= continue)
keep *or* **keep on** (= do something continuously or repeatedly)

☐ I've **given up buying** newspapers. I don't read them any more.
☐ You shouldn't **put off telling** him what happened. You need to tell him now.
☐ Katherine doesn't want to retire. She wants to **go on working**. *or* … to **carry on working**.
☐ You **keep interrupting** when I'm talking. *or* You **keep on interrupting** …

C

With some verbs you can use the structure *verb* + somebody + -**ing**:

☐ You can't **stop people doing** what they want.
☐ I can't **imagine George riding** a motorbike.
☐ Did she really say that? I don't **remember her saying** that.
☐ Sorry to **keep you waiting** so long.

D

When you talk about finished actions, you can say **having done**/**stolen**/**said** etc. :

☐ They admitted **having stolen** the money.

But it is not necessary to use **having** (done). You can say:

☐ They admitted **stealing** the money.
☐ I now regret **saying** that. *or* I now regret **having said** that.

E

Other structures are possible with **admit**, **deny**, **suggest** and **recommend**. For example, you can say:

☐ They **denied** (that) **they had done** anything wrong. (= They **denied doing** …)
☐ Chris **suggested** (that) **we go** to the cinema. (= Chris **suggested going** …)
☐ I **recommend** (that) **you travel** by train. (= I **recommend travelling** …)

suggest ➜ **Unit 34** **being done** (passive) ➜ **Unit 44B** Verb + **to** … ➜ **Unit 54**
Verb + **to** … and -**ing** ➜ **Units 55C, 56–58** **remember** / **regret** / **go on** ➜ **Unit 56B**
go on / **carry on** / **keep on** ➜ **Unit 141A**

Exercises

53.1 Complete the sentences for each situation. Use -ing.

1
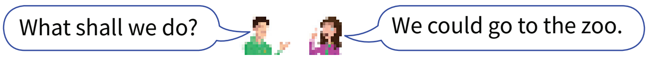
What shall we do?
We could go to the zoo.

She suggested ……going to the zoo…… .

2
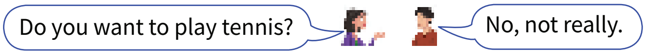
Do you want to play tennis?
No, not really.

He didn't fancy …… .

3
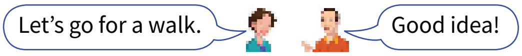
Let's go for a walk.
Good idea!

She suggested …… .

4
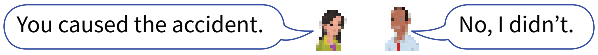
You caused the accident.
No, I didn't.

He denied …… .

5
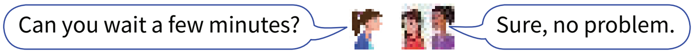
Can you wait a few minutes?
Sure, no problem.

They didn't mind …… .

6
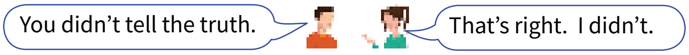
You didn't tell the truth.
That's right. I didn't.

She admitted …… .

53.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from these verbs (in the correct form):

~~answer~~ apply forget interrupt listen live
lose make pay read travel try

1 He tried to avoid ……answering…… my question.
2 I'm trying to concentrate. Please stop …… so much noise!
3 I enjoy …… to music.
4 I considered …… for the job, but in the end I decided against it.
5 Have you finished …… the newspaper yet?
6 We need to change our routine. We can't go on …… like this.
7 It's better to avoid …… during the rush hour.
8 My memory is getting worse. I keep …… things.
9 I've put off …… this bill so many times. I really must do it today.
10 I've given up …… to learn Japanese. I was making no progress.
11 If you gamble, you risk …… your money.
12 Would you mind not …… me all the time? Let me speak!

53.3 Put the words in the right order.

1 Did she really say that? I (that / remember / her / saying / don't).
I ……don't remember her saying that.……
2 It's OK if you want to drive my car. I (driving / don't / it / you / mind).
I ……
3 What a stupid thing to do! Can (imagine / so stupid / being / you / anybody)?
Can ……
4 We can't control the weather. We (raining / stop / it / can't).
We ……
5 I'll be as quick as I can. I (waiting / want / keep / you / don't / to).
I ……

53.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use -ing.

1 She's a very interesting person. I always enjoy ……talking to her…… .
2 I'm not feeling very well. I don't fancy …… .
3 I'm afraid there aren't any chairs. I hope you don't mind …… .
4 It was a beautiful day, so I suggested …… .
5 The movie was very funny. I couldn't stop …… .
6 My car is unreliable. It keeps …… .

Unit 54

Verb + **to** … (**decide to** … / **forget to** … etc.)

A

After these verbs you can use **to** … *(infinitive)*:

offer
agree
refuse
decide
plan
arrange
hope
forget
manage
fail
promise
threaten
deserve
afford
learn
tend

- It was a long way to walk, so we **decided to take** a taxi home.
- Simon was in a difficult situation, so I **agreed to help** him.
- I waved to Karen, but **failed to attract** her attention.
- I like Dan, but I think he **tends to talk** too much.
- How old were you when you **learnt to drive**?
  or … learnt **how** to drive?

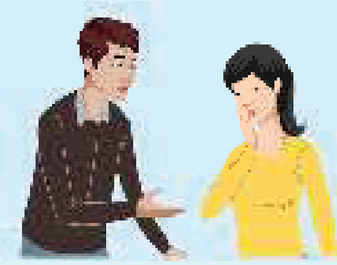

Dan **tends to talk** too much.

The negative is **not to** … :

- We **decided not to go** out because of the weather.
- I **promised not to be** late.

After some verbs, we use **-ing** (*not* **to** …). For example, **enjoy**/**think**/**suggest**:

- I **enjoy reading**. (*not* enjoy to read)
- Andy **suggested meeting** for coffee. (*not* suggested to meet)
- Are you **thinking of buying** a car? (*not* thinking to buy)

For verb + **-ing**, see Units 53 and 62.

B

After **dare** you can use the infinitive with or without **to**:

- I didn't **dare to tell** him. *or* I didn't **dare tell** him.

But after **dare not** (*or* **daren't**), we do not use **to**:

- I **daren't tell** him what happened. (*not* I daren't to tell him)

C

We also use **to** … after **seem**, **appear**, **pretend** and **claim**. For example:

- They **seem to have** plenty of money.
- Ann **pretended not to see** me when she passed me in the street.

You can also use **to be -ing** (*continuous* infinitive) and **to have** (**done**) (*perfect* infinitive):

- I **pretended to be reading** the newspaper. (= I pretended that I **was reading**)
- Have you seen my keys? I **seem to have lost** them. (= it seems that I **have lost** them)
- She **claimed not to have seen** me. (= she claimed that she **hadn't seen** me)

D

After these verbs you can use a question word (**what**/**how** etc.) + **to** … .

ask **know** **decide** **remember** **forget** **learn** **explain** **understand** **wonder**

For example:

We **asked**	**how**	**to get**	to the station.
Have you **decided**	**where**	**to go**	on holiday?
I don't **know**	**whether**	**to apply**	for the job or not.
Do you **understand**	**what**	**to do?**	

also

show/**tell**/**ask**/**advise**/**teach** somebody **what**/**how**/**where** to do something:

- Can somebody **show me how to use** this camera?
- Ask Jack. He'll **tell you what to do**.

Verb + **-ing** ➜ **Unit 53** Verb + object + **to** … (**want** etc.) ➜ **Unit 55**
Verb + **to** … and **-ing** ➜ **Units 55C, 56–58**

Exercises

54.1 Complete the sentences for these situations.

1 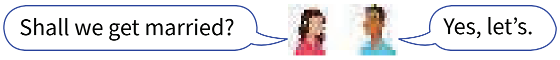
Shall we get married?
Yes, let's.
They decided .....to get married.........................

2 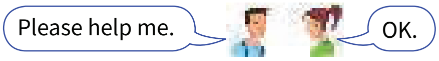

She agreed ....

3 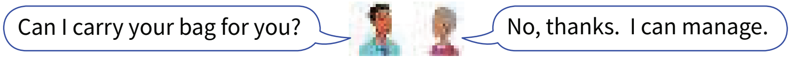
Can I carry your bag for you?
No, thanks. I can manage.
He offered ....

4 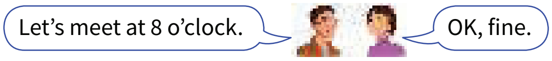
Let's meet at 8 o'clock.
OK, fine.
They arranged ....

5 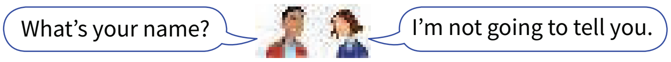
What's your name?
I'm not going to tell you.
She refused ....

6 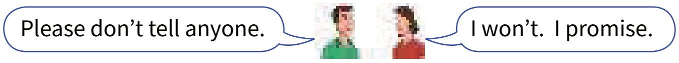
Please don't tell anyone.
I won't. I promise.
She promised ....

54.2 Complete the sentences. Use a suitable verb.

1 Don't forget ....to lock.... the door when you go out.
2 There was a lot of traffic, but we managed .... to the airport in time.
3 We couldn't afford .... in London. It's too expensive.
4 I can't play a musical instrument, but I'd like to learn .... the guitar.
5 I don't want Mark to know what happened. I decided not .... him.
6 We were all afraid to speak. Nobody dared .... anything.

54.3 Put the verb into the correct form, to … or -ing. (See Unit 53 for verbs + -ing.)

1 When I'm tired, I enjoy ....watching.... TV. It's relaxing. (watch)
2 I've decided .... for another job. I need a change. (look)
3 I'm not going anywhere! I refuse .... (move)
4 I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind .... (wait)
5 Tina ran in a marathon last week, but she failed .... (finish)
6 I wish that dog would stop .... It's driving me crazy. (bark)
7 They didn't know I was listening to them. I pretended .... asleep. (be)
8 We were hungry, so I suggested .... dinner early. (have)
9 Hurry up! I don't want to risk .... the train. (miss)
10 David is very quiet. He tends not .... much. (say)

54.4 Make a new sentence using the verb in brackets.

1 I've lost my keys. (seem) I seem to have lost my keys.
2 Tom is worried about something. (appear) Tom appears ....
3 You know a lot of people. (seem) You ....
4 My English is getting better. (seem) ....
5 That car has broken down. (appear) ....
6 Rachel is enjoying her job. (seem) ....
7 They have solved the problem. (claim) ....

54.5 Complete each sentence using what/how/where/whether + these verbs:

do ~~get~~ go put ride use

1 Do you know ....how to get to.... the airport from here?
2 Would you know .... if there was a fire in the building?
3 You'll never forget .... a bike once you've learnt.
4 I've been invited to the party, but I haven't decided .... or not.
5 My room is very untidy. I've got so many things and I don't know .... them.
6 I have some clothes to wash. Can you show me .... the washing machine?

→ Additional exercises 26–28 (pages 317–19)

Unit 55

Verb (+ object) + **to** … (**I want you to** …)

A

We say:

verb	+ **to** …
want **expect** **ask** **help** **would like** **would prefer**	**to go** **to be** **to work** etc.

and

verb	+ *object*	+ **to** …
want **expect** **ask** **help** **would like** **would prefer**	somebody something	**to go** **to be** **to work** etc.

- ☐ We **expected to be** late.
- ☐ Would you **like to go** now?
- ☐ He doesn't **want to know**.

- ☐ We expected **Dan to be** late.
- ☐ Would you like **me to go** now?
- ☐ He doesn't want **anybody to know**.

We do not usually say 'want that':

- ☐ Do you **want me to come** with you? (*not* want that I come)

You can use **help** with or without **to**. You can say:

- ☐ Can you help me **to move** this table? *or* Can you help me **move** this table?

B

These verbs have the structure *verb* + *object* + **to** …:

verb	+ *object*	+ **to** …
tell **advise** **remind** **warn** **invite** **encourage** **persuade** **get** **force** **teach** **allow** **enable**	somebody	**to do** **to be** **to work** etc.

- ☐ It's not a nice hotel. I wouldn't **advise you to stay** there.
- ☐ Can you **remind me to call** Sam tomorrow?
- ☐ Joe said the switch was dangerous and **warned me not to touch** it.
- ☐ I didn't move the piano by myself. I **got somebody to help** me.
- ☐ Who **taught you to drive**?
- ☐ They don't **allow people to park** in front of the building.

In these examples, the verb is *passive* (**I was warned** / **we are allowed** etc.):

- ☐ **I was warned not to touch** the switch.
- ☐ **Are we allowed to park** here?

We do not use **suggest** with **to** …:

- ☐ Jane **suggested that I ask** you for advice. (*not* Jane suggested me to ask)

C

We say '**make** somebody **do** something', '**let** somebody **do** something' (without **to**):

- ☐ I **made him promise** that he wouldn't tell anybody what happened. (*not* made him to promise)
- ☐ Hot weather **makes me feel** tired. (= causes me to feel tired)
- ☐ Her parents wouldn't **let her go** out alone. (= wouldn't allow her to go out)
- ☐ **Let me carry** your bag for you.

We say '**make** somebody **do**', but in the *passive* we say '(be) **made to** do' (with **to**):

- ☐ **We were made to wait** for two hours. (= They **made us wait** …)

>> **suggest** ➔ **Units 34, 53** **tell**/**ask** somebody **to** … ➔ **Unit 48D** Verb + **-ing** ➔ **Unit 53**
Verb + **to** … ➔ **Unit 54** Verb + **to** … and **-ing** ➔ **Units 56–58** **help** ➔ **Unit 57C**

Exercises

55.1 **Complete the questions. Use do you want me to … ? or would you like me to … ? with these verbs (and any other necessary words):**

~~come~~ lend repeat show shut wait

1 Do you want to go alone, or do you want me to come with you ?
2 Do you have enough money, or do you want .... ?
3 Shall I leave the window open, or would you .... ?
4 Do you know how to use the printer, or would .... ?
5 Did you hear what I said, or do .... ?
6 Can I go now, or do .... ?

55.2 **Complete the sentences for these situations.**

1 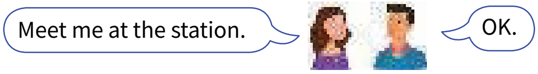
Meet me at the station.
OK.

She told him to meet her at the station .

2 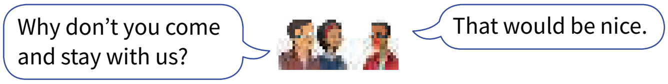
Why don't you come and stay with us?
That would be nice.

They invited him ....

3 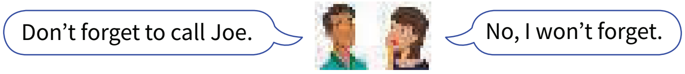
Don't forget to call Joe.
No, I won't forget.

He reminded her ....

4 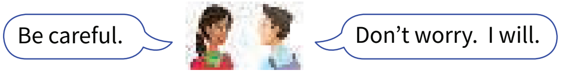
Be careful.
Don't worry. I will.

She warned ....

5 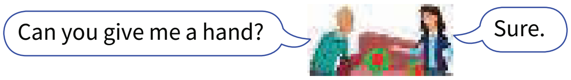
Can you give me a hand?
Sure.

He asked ....

55.3 **Complete the second sentence so that the meaning is similar to the first sentence.**

1 My father said I could use his car.	My father allowed me to use his car.
2 I was surprised that it rained.	I didn't expect ....
3 Don't stop him doing what he wants.	Let ....
4 Tom looks older when he wears glasses.	Tom's glasses make ....
5 I think you should know the truth.	I want ....
6 At first I didn't want to apply for the job, but Sarah persuaded me.	Sarah persuaded ....
7 My lawyer said I shouldn't say anything to the police.	My lawyer advised ....
8 I was told that I shouldn't believe everything he says.	I was warned ....
9 If you've got a car, you are able to get around more easily.	Having a car enables ....

55.4 **Which is right?**

1 You aren't allowed ~~take~~ / to take pictures here. (to take *is correct*)
2 I'm in a difficult position. What do you advise me do / to do?
3 The film was very sad. It made me cry / to cry.
4 Lisa's parents always encouraged her study / to study hard at school.
5 Please don't interrupt me. Let me finish / to finish.
6 You can't make people do / to do things they don't want to do.
7 You can't force people do / to do things they don't want to do.
8 Sarah won't let me drive / to drive her car. She doesn't trust me.
9 Why did you change your decision? What made you change / to change your mind?
10 If you enter a country with a tourist visa, you are not allowed work / to work there.

➜ **Additional exercises 26–28** (pages 317–19)

Unit 56

Verb + -**ing** or **to** . . . 1 (**remember**, **regret** etc.)

A

Some verbs are followed by -**ing** and some are followed by **to** . . . .

Verbs that you can use with -**ing** (*not* **to** . . .):

admit
avoid
consider
deny
enjoy
fancy
finish
imagine
keep (**on**)
mind
postpone
risk
stop
suggest

For examples, see Unit 53.

Verbs that you can use with **to** . . . :

afford
agree
arrange
decide
deserve
fail
forget
hope
learn
manage
offer
plan
promise
refuse
tend

For examples, see Unit 54.

B

Some verbs can be followed by -**ing** or **to** . . . with a difference of meaning:

remember

I **remember doing** something = I did it and now I remember this.
You **remember doing** something *after* you have done it.

- I know I locked the door. I clearly **remember locking** it.
  (= I locked it, and now I remember this)
- He could **remember driving** along the road just before the accident, but he couldn't remember the accident itself.

I **remembered to do** something =
I remembered that I had to do it, so I did it.
You **remember to do** something *before* you do it.

- I **remembered to lock** the door, but I forgot to shut the windows.
  (= I remembered that I had to lock it, and so I locked it)
- **Remember to buy** some bananas.
  (= Don't forget to buy them)

regret

I **regret doing** something = I did it and now I am sorry about it:

- I now **regret saying** what I said. I shouldn't have said it.
- Do you **regret not** going to college?

I **regret to say** / **to tell** you / **to inform** you =
I am sorry that I have to say:

- *(from a formal letter)* I **regret to say** that we are unable to accept your offer.

go on

go on doing something = continue doing the same thing:

- The president paused for a moment and then **went on talking**.
- We need to change. We can't **go on living** like this.

go on to do something = do or say something new:

- After discussing the economy, the president **went on to talk** about foreign policy.

C

We use the following verbs with -**ing** or **to** . . . with no difference of meaning:

begin **start** **continue** **intend** **bother**

So you can say:

- It **started raining**. *or* It **started to rain**.
- Andy **intends buying** a house. *or* Andy **intends to buy** . . .
- Don't **bother locking** the door. *or* Don't **bother to lock** . . .

Normally we do not use -**ing** after -**ing**:

- It's **starting to rain**. (*not usually* It's starting raining)

Verb + -**ing** ➜ **Unit 53** Verb + **to** . . . ➜ **Units 54–55** Other verbs + -**ing** or **to** . . . ➜ **Units 57–58**

Exercises

56.1 **Put the verb into the correct form, -ing or to … .**

1 They denied stealing the money. (steal)
2 I don't enjoy .... very much. (drive)
3 I can't afford .... away. I don't have enough money. (go)
4 Have you ever considered .... to live in another country? (go)
5 We were unlucky to lose the game. We played well and deserved .... (win)
6 Why do you keep .... me questions? Leave me alone! (ask)
7 Please stop .... me questions! (ask)
8 I refuse .... any more questions. (answer)
9 The driver of one of the cars admitted .... the accident. (cause)
10 Mark needed our help, and we promised .... what we could. (do)
11 I don't mind .... alone, but I'd rather be with other people. (be)
12 The wall was quite high, but I managed .... over it. (climb)
13 Sarah doesn't know about the meeting. I forgot .... her. (tell)
14 I've enjoyed .... to you. I hope .... you again soon. (talk, see)

56.2 **Tom can remember some things about his childhood, but he can't remember others. Write sentences with He remembers … or He doesn't remember … .**

1 He was in hospital when he was a small child. He can still remember this.
He remembers being in hospital when he was a small child.
2 He cried on his first day at school. He doesn't remember this.
He doesn't .... on his first day at school.
3 Once he fell into the river. He remembers this.
He ....
4 He said he wanted to be a doctor. He doesn't remember this.
.... to be a doctor.
5 Once he was bitten by a dog. He doesn't remember this.
.... a dog.
6 His sister was born when he was four. He remembers this.
....

56.3 **Complete the sentences with a suitable verb in the correct form, -ing or to … .**

1 a Please remember to lock the door when you go out.
b He says we've met before, but I don't remember .... him.
c Someone must have taken my bag. I clearly remember .... it by the window and now it isn't there.
d When you see Steve, remember .... hello to him from me.
e A: You lent me some money a few months ago.
B: Did I? Are you sure? I don't remember .... you any money.
f A: Did you remember .... your sister?
B: No, I forgot. I'll phone her tomorrow.
2 a The course I did wasn't very good, but I don't regret .... it.
b I knew they were in trouble, but I regret .... I did nothing to help them.
c It started to get cold, and he regretted not .... his coat.
d I now regret .... my job. It was a big mistake.
3 a Ben joined the company nine years ago. He became assistant manager after two years, and a few years later he went on .... manager of the company.
b I can't go on .... here any more. I want a different job.
c When I came into the room, Lisa was reading a book. She looked up and said hello, and then went on .... her book.
d Food prices have gone up again. How are we going to manage if prices go on .... ?

→ Additional exercises 26–28 (pages 317–19)

Unit 57

Verb + -**ing** or **to** … 2 (**try, need, help**)

A **try to** … and **try -ing**

try to do = attempt to do, make an effort to do:

- ☐ I was very tired. I **tried to keep** my eyes open, but I couldn't.
- ☐ Please **try to be** quiet when you come home. Everyone will be asleep.

try something or **try doing something** = do it as an experiment or test:

- ☐ These cakes are delicious. You should **try one**. (= have one to see if you like it)
- ☐ We couldn't find anywhere to stay. We **tried every hotel** in the town, but they were all full.
  (= we went to every hotel to see if they had a room)
- ☐ A: The photocopier doesn't seem to be working.
  B: **Try pressing** the green button.
  (= press the green button – perhaps this will help to solve the problem)

Compare:

- ☐ I **tried to move** the table, but it was too heavy. (so I couldn't move it)
- ☐ I didn't like the way the furniture was arranged, so I **tried moving** the table to the other side of the room. But it didn't look right, so I moved it back again.
  (I **tried moving** it = I moved it to see if it looked better)

B **need to** … and **need -ing**

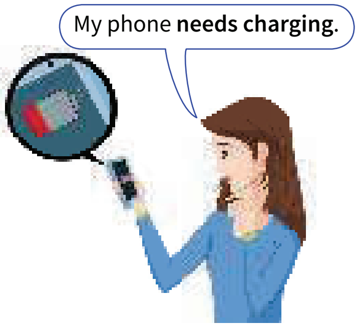

I need to do something = it is necessary for me to do it:

- ☐ He **needs to work** harder if he wants to make progress.
- ☐ I don't **need to come** to the meeting, do I?

You can say that something **needs -ing**:

- ☐ My phone **needs charging**. (= it **needs to be charged**)
- ☐ Does your suit **need cleaning**? (= … **need to be cleaned**)
- ☐ It's a difficult problem. It **needs thinking about** carefully.
  (= it **needs to be thought about** carefully)

Compare:

- ☐ **I** need **to charge** my phone.

but **My phone** needs **charging**.

C **help** and **can't help**

You can say **help to do** or **help do** (with or without **to**):

- ☐ Everybody **helped to clean** up after the party. *or*
  Everybody **helped clean** up …
- ☐ Can you **help** me **move** this table? *or*
  Can you **help** me **to move** …

I can't help doing something = I can't stop myself doing it:

- ☐ I don't like him, but he has a lot of problems.
  I **can't help feeling** sorry for him.
- ☐ She tried to be serious, but she **couldn't help laughing**.
  (= she couldn't stop herself laughing)
- ☐ I'm sorry I'm so nervous. I **can't help it**.
  (= I can't help **being** nervous)

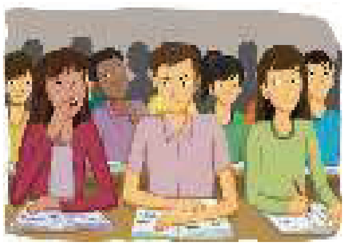

She **couldn't help laughing**.

Verb + -**ing** ➜ **Unit 53** Verb + **to** … ➜ **Units 54–55** Other verbs + -**ing** or **to** … ➜ **Units 56, 58**

Exercises

57.1 Put the verb into the correct form.

1 I was very tired. I tried ...to keep... my eyes open, but I couldn't. (keep)
2 I tried .... the shelf, but I wasn't tall enough. (reach)
3 I rang the doorbell, but there was no answer. Then I tried .... on the window, but there was still no answer. (knock)
4 We tried .... the fire out, but without success. We had to call the fire brigade. (put)
5 Please leave me alone. I'm trying .... (concentrate)
6 Sue needed to borrow some money. She tried .... Carl, but he didn't have any. (ask)
7 Mr Bennett isn't here right now. Please try .... later. (call)
8 The woman's face was familiar. I tried .... where I'd seen her before. (remember)
9 If you have a problem with the computer, try .... it. (restart)

57.2 For each picture, write a sentence with need(s) + one of the following verbs:

clean **cut** **empty** **~~paint~~** **tighten**

1
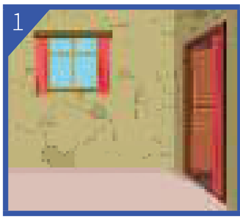
2
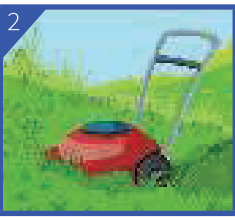
3
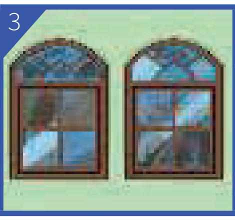
4
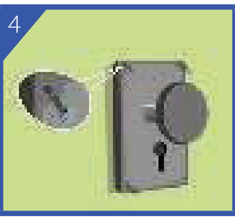
5
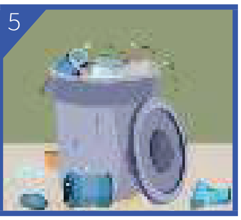

1 This room isn't very nice. ...It needs painting... .
2 The grass is very long. It ....
3 The windows are dirty. They ....
4 The screws are loose. ....
5 The bin is full. ....

57.3 Which is right?

1 We spend too much time sitting down. We need ~~getting~~ / to get more exercise. (to get *is correct*)
2 These clothes are dirty. They all need washing / to wash.
3 My grandmother isn't able to look after herself any more. She needs looking / to look after.
4 I can't make a decision right now. I need thinking / to think about it.
5 Your hair is getting very long. It will need cutting / to cut soon.
6 I need a change. I need going / to go away for a while.
7 That shirt looks fine. You don't need ironing / to iron it.
8 That shirt looks fine. It doesn't need ironing / to iron.

57.4 Put the verb into the correct form.

1 I don't like him, but I can't help ...feeling... sorry for him. (feel)
2 I've lost my phone. Can you help me .... for it? (look)
3 They were talking very loudly. We couldn't help .... what they said. (overhear)
4 He looks so funny. Whenever I see him, I can't help .... (smile)
5 The fine weather helped .... it a really nice holiday. (make)
6 Did you help .... the meeting? (organise)
7 I think about what happened all the time. I can't help .... about it. (think)
8 I can't help you .... a job. You have to find one yourself. (get)

Unit
58

Verb + -**ing** or **to** . . . 3 (**like** / **would like** etc.)

A **like** / **love** / **hate**

When you talk about repeated actions, you can use -**ing** or **to** . . . after these verbs.
So you can say:

- Do you **like getting** up early? *or* Do you **like to get** up early?
- Stephanie **hates flying**. *or* Stephanie **hates to fly**.
- I **love meeting** people. *or* I **love to meet** people.
- I don't **like being** kept waiting. *or* . . . **like to be** kept waiting.
- I don't **like** friends **calling** me at work. *or* . . . friends **to call** me at work.

but
(1) We use -**ing** (*not* **to** . . .) when we talk about a situation that already exists (or existed).
For example:

- Paul lives in Berlin now. He **likes living** there.
  (he lives there now and he likes it)
- Do you **like being** a student? (you are a student – do you like it?)
- The office I worked in was horrible. I **hated working** there. (I worked there and I hated it)

(2) There is sometimes a difference between **I like to do** and **I like doing**:

I like doing something = I do it and I enjoy it:

- I **like cleaning** the kitchen. (= I enjoy it.)

I **like to do** something = I choose to do it (but maybe I don't enjoy it):

- It's not my favourite job, but I **like to clean** the kitchen as often as possible.

Note that we use -**ing** (*not* **to** . . .) with **enjoy** and **mind**:

- I **enjoy cleaning** the kitchen. (*not* I enjoy to clean)
- I **don't mind cleaning** the kitchen. (*not* I don't mind to clean)

B **would like** / **would love** / **would hate** / **would prefer**

Would like / **would love** etc. are usually followed by **to** . . . :

- **I'd like** (= I **would** like) to go away for a few days.
- What **would** you **like to do** this evening?
- I **wouldn't like to go** on holiday alone.
- **I'd love to meet** your family.
- **Would** you **prefer to eat** now or later?

Compare **I like** and **I would like** (**I'd** like):

- I **like playing** tennis. / I **like to play** tennis. (= I like it in general)
- **I'd like to play** tennis today. (= I want to play today)

Would mind is followed by -**ing**:

- **Would** you **mind closing** the door, please? (*not* mind to close)

C **I would like to have** (**done** something)

I would like **to have done** something = I regret now that I didn't or couldn't do it:

- It's a shame we didn't see Anna. I **would like to have seen** her again.
- We**'d like to have gone** away, but we were too busy at home.

We use the same structure after **would love** / **would hate** / **would prefer**:

- Poor David! I **would hate to have been** in his position.
- **I'd love to have gone** to the party, but it was impossible.

enjoy/mind ➜ Unit 53 would like ➜ Units 37E, 55A prefer ➜ Unit 59

Exercises

58.1 **Write sentences about yourself. Do you like these activities? Choose from these verbs:**

like / don't like **love** **hate** **enjoy** **don't mind**

1 (flying) I don't like flying. or I don't like to fly.
2 (playing cards) ……
3 (being alone) ……
4 (going to museums) ……
5 (cooking) ……
6 (getting up early) ……

58.2 **Make sentences using -ing or to … . Sometimes either form is possible.**

1 Paul lives in Berlin now. It's nice. He likes it.
(He / like / live / there) He likes living there.
2 Jane is a biology teacher. She likes her job
(She / like / teach / biology) She ……
3 Joe always has his camera with him and takes a lot of pictures.
(He / like / take / pictures) ……
4 I used to work in a supermarket. I didn't like it much.
(I / not / like / work / there) ……
5 Rachel is studying medicine. She likes it.
(She / like / study / medicine) ……
6 Dan is famous, but he doesn't like it.
(He / not / like / be / famous) ……
7 Jennifer is a very careful person. She doesn't take many risks.
(She / not / like / take / risks) ……
8 I don't like surprises.
(I / like / know / things / in advance) ……

58.3 **Complete the sentences with a verb in the correct form, -ing or to … . In two sentences either form is possible.**

1 It's fun to go to new places – I enjoy travelling .
2 'Would you like …… down?' 'No, thanks. I'll stand.'
3 The music is very loud. Would you mind …… it down?
4 How do you relax? What do you like …… in your spare time?
5 When I have to take a train, I'm always worried that I'll miss it. So I like …… to the station in plenty of time.
6 I enjoy …… busy. I don't like it when there's nothing to do.
7 I would love …… to your wedding, but I'm afraid I'll be away.
8 I don't like …… in this part of town. I want to move somewhere else.
9 Do you have a minute? I'd like …… to you about something.
10 If there's bad news and good news, I like …… the bad news first.
11 Shall we leave now, or would you prefer …… a little?
12 Steve wants to win every time. He hates …… .

58.4 **Write sentences using would … to have (done). Use the verbs in brackets.**

1 It's a shame I couldn't go to the party. (like) I would like to have gone to the party.
2 It's a shame I didn't see the programme. (like) ……
3 I'm glad I didn't lose my watch. (hate) ……
4 It's too bad I didn't meet your parents. (love) ……
5 I'm glad I wasn't alone. (not / like) ……
6 We should have travelled by train. (prefer) ……

➜ **Additional exercises 26–28** (pages 317–19)

Unit
59

prefer and **would rather**

A **prefer to** . . . and **prefer -ing**

When you say what you prefer in general, you can use **prefer to** . . . or **prefer -ing**:

☐ I don't like cities. I **prefer to live** in the country. *or* I **prefer living** in the country.

You can say:

prefer something	**to** something else
prefer doing something	**to doing** something else **rather than** (**doing**) something else
prefer to do something	**rather than** (**do**) something else

☐ I **prefer** this coat **to** the other one.
☐ I **prefer driving to travelling** by train. *or*
I **prefer driving rather than travelling** by train.
☐ I **prefer to drive rather than travel** by train.
☐ Sarah **prefers to live** in the country **rather than** in a city.

B **would prefer** (**I'd prefer** . . .)

We use **would prefer** to say what somebody wants in a specific situation (not in general):

☐ '**Would** you **prefer** tea or coffee?' 'Coffee, please.'

We say 'would prefer **to do** something' (*not usually* would prefer doing):

☐ 'Shall we go by train?' 'I'**d prefer to drive**.' (= I **would** prefer . . .)
☐ I'**d prefer to stay** at home tonight **rather than go** to the cinema.

C **would rather** (**I'd rather** . . .)

I'd rather = I **would** rather. **I'd rather do** something = **I'd prefer to do** it.
We say **I'd rather** do (*not* to do). Compare:

☐ 'Shall we go by train?' { 'I'**d rather drive**.' (*not* to drive)
'I'**d prefer to drive**.'

☐ Which **would** you **rather do**,
Which **would** you **prefer to do**, } go to the cinema or go shopping?

The negative is 'I'**d rather not** . . .':

☐ I'm tired. I'**d rather not go** out this evening, if you don't mind.
☐ 'Do you want to go out this evening?' 'I'**d rather not**.'

We say '**I'd rather do** one thing **than do** another':

☐ I'**d rather stay** at home tonight **than go** to the cinema.

D **I'd rather** somebody **did** something

We say '**I'd rather** you **did** something' (*not* I'd rather you do):

☐ 'Who's going to drive, you or me?' 'I'**d rather** you **drove**.' (= I would prefer this)
☐ 'Jack says he'll repair your bike tomorrow, OK?' 'I'**d rather** he **did** it today.'
☐ Are you going to tell Anna what happened, or **would** you **rather** I **told** her?

We use the *past* (**drove**, **did** etc.) here, but the meaning is present *not* past. Compare:

☐ I'd rather **make** dinner now.
I'd rather **you made** dinner now. (*not* I'd rather you make)

I'd rather **you didn't** (do something) = I'd prefer you not to do it:

☐ I'**d rather you didn't tell** anyone what I said.
☐ 'Shall I tell Anna what happened?' 'I'**d rather you didn't**.'
☐ 'Are you going to tell Anna what happened?' 'No. I'**d rather** she **didn't** know.'

>> **would prefer ➜ Unit 58B** **prefer** (one thing) **to** (another) **➜ Unit 136D**

Exercises

59.1 Which do you prefer? Write sentences using '**I prefer** (something) **to** (something else)'.

1 (driving / travelling by train)
I prefer driving to travelling by train.
2 (basketball / football)
I prefer ....
3 (going to the cinema / watching movies at home)
I .... to ....
4 (being very busy / having nothing to do)
I ....

Now rewrite sentences 3 and 4 using rather than:

5 (1) I prefer to drive rather than travel by train.
or I prefer driving rather than travelling by train.
6 (3) I prefer ....
7 (4) ....

59.2 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need one word, sometimes more.

	A	B
1	Shall we walk home?	I'd rather get a taxi.
2	Do you want to eat now?	I'd prefer to wait till later.
3	Would you like to watch TV?	I'd .... to listen to some music.
4	Do you want to go to a restaurant?	I'd rather .... at home.
5	Let's go now.	.... wait a few minutes.
6	What about a game of tennis?	I'd prefer .... for a swim.
7	I think we should decide now.	I'd .... think about it for a while.
8	Would you like to sit down?	.... to stand.
9	Do you want me to come with you?	I'd rather .... alone.

Now use the same ideas to complete these sentences using than and rather than.

10 (1) I'd rather get a taxi than wait for a bus.
11 (3) I'd rather .... some music ....
12 (4) I'd prefer .... at home ....
13 (6) I'd rather .... for a swim ....
14 (7) I'd prefer .... about it for a while ....

59.3 Complete the sentences using would you rather I ... .

1 Are you going to make dinner or would you rather I made it?
2 Are you going to pay the bill or would you rather ....?
3 Are you going to do the shopping or ....?
4 Are you going to phone Tina or ....?

59.4 Use your own ideas (one or two words) to complete these sentences.

1 'Shall I tell Anna what happened?' 'No, I'd rather she didn't know.'
2 You can stay here if you want to, but I'd rather you .... with us.
3 I don't like this programme. I'd rather not .... it.
4 I'd rather work outdoors .... work in an office.
5 This is a private matter. I'd rather you .... tell anybody else.
6 The weather here isn't bad, but I'd rather it .... a little warmer.
7 I don't want to go to the match. I'd prefer .... it on TV.
8 'Do you mind if I open the window?' 'I'd rather you .... I'm feeling cold.'
9 I hate doing the shopping. I'd rather somebody else .... it.
10 I'd prefer to go to the beach .... go shopping.

➜ **Additional exercises 27–28** (pages 318–19)

Unit
60

Preposition (**in**/**for**/**about** etc.) + -**ing**

A

If a preposition (**in**/**for**/**about** etc.) is followed by a verb, the verb ends in -**ing**:

	preposition	*verb* (-**ing**)	
Are you interested	**in**	**working**	for us?
I'm not good	**at**	**learning**	languages.
Kate must be fed up	**with**	**studying**.	
What are the advantages	**of**	**having**	a car?
Thanks very much	**for**	**inviting**	me to your party.
How	**about**	**meeting**	for lunch tomorrow?
Why don't you go out	**instead of**	**sitting**	at home all the time?
Amy went to work	**in spite of**	**feeling**	ill.

You can also say 'instead of **somebody** doing something', 'fed up with **people** doing something' etc. :

- I'm fed up with **people** telling me what to do.

B

We say:

before -**ing**, **after** -**ing**:

- **Before going** out, I phoned Sarah. (*not* Before to go out)
- What did you do **after leaving** school?

You can also say '**Before I went** out ...' and '... **after you left** school'.

by -**ing** (to say *how* something happens):

- You can improve your English **by reading** more.
- She made herself ill **by** not **eating** properly.
- Many accidents are caused **by** people **driving** too fast.
- The burglars got into the house **by breaking** a window and **climbing** in.

without -**ing**:

- We ran ten kilometres **without stopping**.
- It was a stupid thing to say. I said it **without thinking**.
- She needs to work **without** people **disturbing** her. *or* ... **without being** disturbed.
- I have enough problems of my own **without having** to worry about yours.

C

to + -**ing** (look forward **to doing** something etc.)

We often use **to** + *infinitive* (**to do** / **to see** etc.):

- We decided **to travel** by train.
- Would you like **to meet** for lunch tomorrow?

But **to** is also a *preposition* (like **in**/**for**/**about**/**with** etc.). For example:

- We went from Paris **to Geneva**.
- I prefer tea **to coffee**.
- Are you looking forward **to the weekend**?

If we use a *preposition* + *verb*, the verb ends in -**ing**:

- I'm fed up **with travelling** by train.
- How **about going** away this weekend?

So, when **to** is a preposition and it is followed by a verb, we use **to** -**ing**:

- I prefer driving **to travelling** by train. (*not* to travel)
- Are you looking forward **to going** on holiday? (*not* looking forward to go)

be/get used to -ing ➜ Unit 61 Verb + preposition + -ing ➜ **Unit 62** **while/when -ing ➜ Unit 68B**
in spite of ➜ Unit 113 Prepositions ➜ **Units 121–136**

Exercises

60.1 **Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.**

1 Why is it useful to have a car?
What are the advantages of having a car ?

2 I don't intend to apply for the job.
I have no intention of ....

3 Helen has a good memory for names.
Helen is good at ....

4 You probably won't win the lottery. You have little chance.
You have little chance of ....

5 Did you get into trouble because you were late?
Did you get into trouble for .... ?

6 We didn't eat at home. We went to a restaurant instead.
We went to a restaurant instead of ....

7 We got into the exhibition. We didn't have to queue.
We got into the exhibition without ....

8 Amy is 90 years old, but she's fit and healthy.
Amy is fit and healthy despite ....

60.2 **Complete the sentences using by -ing. Choose from these verbs:**

borrow ~~**break**~~ **drive** **press** **put** **stand**

1 The burglars got into the house by breaking a window.
2 I was able to reach the top shelf .... on a chair.
3 You turn on the computer .... the button at the back.
4 Kevin got himself into financial trouble .... too much money.
5 You can put people's lives in danger .... too fast.
6 We made the room look nicer .... some pictures on the walls.

60.3 **Complete the sentences with a suitable word. Use only one word each time.**

1 We ran ten kilometres without stopping .
2 Dan left the hotel without .... his bill.
3 It's a nice morning. How about .... for a walk?
4 You need to think carefully before .... an important decision.
5 It was a long trip. We were tired after .... on a train for 36 hours.
6 I'm not looking forward to .... away. I'd prefer to stay here.
7 I was annoyed because the decision was made without anybody .... me.
8 After .... the same job for ten years, Ellie felt she needed a change.
9 We got lost because we went straight on instead of .... left.
10 I like these pictures you took. You're good at .... pictures.
11 Can you touch your toes without .... your knees?
12 We've decided to sell our car. Are you interested in .... it?

60.4 **For each situation, write a sentence with I'm (not) looking forward to.**

1 You are going on holiday next week. How do you feel?
I'm looking forward to going on holiday.

2 A good friend of yours is coming to visit you soon. It will be good to see her again. How do you feel?
I'm ....

3 You're going to the dentist tomorrow. You don't enjoy visits to the dentist. How do you feel?
I'm not ....

4 Rachel doesn't like school, but she's leaving next summer. How does she feel?
....

5 Joe and Helen are moving to a new apartment soon. It's much nicer than where they live now.
How do they feel? ....

→ **Additional exercises 26–28** (pages 317–19)

Unit
61

be/get used to … (I'm used to …)

A

Study this example situation:

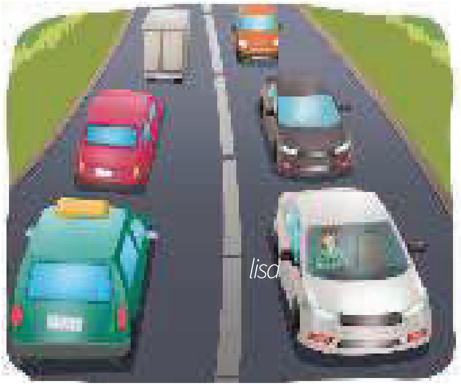

Lisa is American, but she lives in Britain.
When she first drove a car in Britain, driving on the left was a problem for her because:

She **wasn't used to it**.
She **wasn't used to driving** on the left.
(because Americans drive on the right)

But after some time, driving on the left became easier.
She **got used to driving** on the left.

Now it's no problem for Lisa:
She **is used to driving** on the left.

B

I**'m used to** something = it is not new or strange for me

You can say:

be **get**	**used to**	something *or* **doing** something

- Paul lives alone. He has lived alone for a long time, so it is not strange for him. He**'s used to it**. He **is used to living** alone.
- I bought some new shoes. They felt a little strange at first because I **wasn't used to them**.
- Our new apartment is on a busy street. I expect we**'ll get used to the noise**, but at the moment it's very disturbing.
- Helen has a new job. She has to get up much earlier now than before – at 6.30. She finds this difficult because she **isn't used to getting** up so early.
- Katherine's husband is often away from home. She doesn't mind this. She**'s used to him being** away.

C

We say 'be/get used **to doing** something' (*not* I'm used to do).

- Lisa is used **to driving** on the left. (*not* is used to drive)
- I'm used **to living** alone. (*not* I'm used to live)

When we say '**I am used to** …', **to** is a *preposition*:

- We're not used **to** { **the noise**.
  it.
  living here. (*not* live here)

Compare **to** + *infinitive* (**to do**, **to live** etc.):

- We don't want **to live** here.

D

Compare **I am used to doing** and **I used to do**:

I **am** used **to** (**doing**) something = it isn't strange or new for me:

- I**'m** used **to the weather** here.
- I**'m** used **to driving** on the left because I've lived in Britain a long time.

I **used to do** something = I did it regularly in the past but no longer do it. We use this only for the past (I **used** …), not for the present. See Unit 18.

- I **used to drive** to work every day, but these days I usually go by bike.
- We **used to live** just outside the town, but now we live near the centre.

used to (do) ➜ Unit 18 to + -ing ➜ Unit 60C

Exercises

61.1 Complete the sentences using **used to** + a suitable verb.

1 I'm not lonely. I don't need other people. I'm ..used to being.. on my own.
2 I don't feel good. I stayed up until 3 am. I'm not .... to bed so late.
3 Tomorrow I start a new job. I'll have to get .... with new people.
4 My feet hurt. I can't go any further. I'm not .... so far.
5 I like this part of town. I've been here a long time, so I'm .... here.

61.2 Read about Sarah and Jack. Complete the sentences using **used to**.

1 Sarah is a nurse. A year ago she started working nights. At first it was hard for her.
Sarah ..wasn't used to working.. nights. It took her a few months to .... it.
Now, after a year, it's normal for her. She .... nights.

2 Jack has to drive two hours to work every morning. Many years ago, when he first had to do this, it was hard for him and he didn't like it.
When Jack started working in this job, he .... driving two hours to work every morning, but after some time he .... it. Now it's no problem for him. He .... two hours every morning.

61.3 What do you say in these situations? Use **I'm** (**not**) **used to …** .

1 You live alone. You don't mind this. You have always lived alone.
FRIEND: Do you get lonely sometimes?
YOU: No, ..I'm used to living alone.....................
2 You sleep on the floor. It's OK for you. You have always slept on the floor.
FRIEND: Wouldn't you prefer to sleep in a bed?
YOU: No, I ....
3 You have to work long hours in your job. This is not a problem. You have always done this.
FRIEND: You have to work long hours in your job, don't you?
YOU: Yes, but I don't mind that. I ....
4 You've just moved from a village to a big city. It's busy and you don't like the crowds of people.
FRIEND: How do you like living here now?
YOU: It's different from living in a village. I ....

61.4 Read the situations and complete the sentences using **get**/**got used to**.

1 Some friends of yours have just moved into an apartment on a busy street. It is very noisy.
They'll have to ..get used to the noise................................ .
2 The children got a new teacher. She was different from the teacher before her, but this wasn't a problem for the children. They soon ....
3 Kate moved from a big house to a much smaller one. She found it strange at first. She had to
.... in a much smaller house.
4 Anna has lived in Britain for ten years. She didn't like the weather when she first came, and she still doesn't like it. She can't ....
5 Lee got a new job, but his new salary was much less. So he had less money.
He had to ....

61.5 Complete the sentences using only one word each time.

1 Lisa had to get used to ..driving.. on the left.
2 Daniel used to .... a lot of coffee. Now he prefers tea.
3 I feel very full after that meal. I'm not used to .... so much.
4 I wouldn't like to share a room. I'm used to .... my own room.
5 I used to .... a car, but I sold it a few months ago.
6 When we were children, we used to .... swimming very often.
7 There used to .... a school here, but it was knocked down a few years ago.
8 I'm the boss here! I'm not used to .... told what to do.

→ **Additional exercises 26–28** (pages 317–19)

Unit 62

Verb + preposition + **-ing** (**succeed in -ing** / **insist on -ing** etc.)

A

We use some verbs + *preposition* + *object*. For example:

verb	+ *preposition*	+ *object*
We **talked**	**about**	the problem.
I **apologised**	**for**	what I said.

If the *object* is another verb, we use -**ing**:

verb	+ *preposition*	+ -**ing**
We **talked**	**about**	**going** to South America.
You should **apologise**	**for**	not **telling** the truth.

You can use these verbs in the same way:

approve of	He doesn't **approve**	**of**	**swearing**.
decide against	We have **decided**	**against**	**moving** to London.
dream of	I wouldn't **dream**	**of**	**asking** them for money.
feel like	I don't **feel**	**like**	**going** out tonight.
insist on	They **insisted**	**on**	**paying** for the meal.
look forward to	Are you **looking forward**	**to**	**going** away?
succeed in	Has Paul **succeeded**	**in**	**finding** a job yet?
think of/about	I'm **thinking**	**of/about**	**buying** a house.

You can also say 'approve of **somebody** doing something', 'look forward to **somebody** doing something' etc. :

- I don't approve **of people killing** animals as a sport.
- We are all looking forward **to Andy coming** home next week.

B

Some verbs can have the structure *verb* + *object* + *preposition* + -**ing**.
For example:

	verb	+ *object*	+ *preposition*	+ -**ing**
accuse . . . **of**	He **accused**	me	**of**	**telling** lies.
congratulate . . . **on**	We **congratulated**	Lisa	**on**	**winning** the first prize.
prevent . . . **from**	What **prevented**	you	**from**	**coming** to see us?
stop . . . **from**	The rain didn't **stop**	us	**from**	**enjoying** our holiday.
suspect . . . **of**	Nobody **suspected**	the general	**of**	**being** a spy.
thank . . . **for**	I **thanked**	everyone	**for**	**helping** me.

You can say '**stop** somebody **doing**' or '**stop** somebody **from doing**':

- You can't **stop** me **doing** what I want. *or* You can't **stop** me **from doing** . . .

Note this example with **not -ing**:

- He accused me of **not telling** the truth.

Some of these verbs are often used in the *passive*. For example:

- We **were accused of telling** lies. (*or* . . . **accused of lying**.)
- The general **was suspected of being** a spy.

Note that we say 'apologise **to somebody** for . . .' :

- I apologised **to them** for keeping them waiting. (*not* I apologised them)

decide to . . . ➜ **Unit 54A** Preposition + -**ing** ➜ **Unit 60** Verb + preposition ➜ **Units 132–136**

Exercises

62.1 **Complete the sentences. Use only one word each time.**

1 Our neighbours apologised for ....making.... so much noise.
2 I feel lazy. I don't feel like .... any work.
3 I wanted to go out alone, but Joe insisted on .... with me.
4 I'm fed up with my job. I'm thinking of .... something else.
5 We can't afford a car right now, so we've decided against .... one.
6 It took us a long time, but we finally succeeded in .... the problem.
7 I've always dreamed of .... a small house by the sea.
8 It's great that Amy and Sam are coming to visit us. I'm looking forward to .... them again.

62.2 **Complete the sentences. Use a preposition + one of these verbs (in the correct form):**

be **eat** **get** **~~go out~~** **invite** **steal**
take off **tell** **try** **use** **walk**

1 I don't feel ....like going out.... this evening. I'm too tired.
2 The police stopped the car because they suspected the driver .... it.
3 Our flight was delayed. Bad weather prevented the plane ....
4 My phone is very old. I'm thinking .... a new one.
5 I didn't want to hear the story but Dan insisted .... me anyway.
6 I'm getting hungry. I'm really looking forward .... something.
7 I think you should apologise to Sarah .... so rude.
8 There's a fence around the lawn to stop people .... on the grass.
9 I'm sorry I can't come to your party, but thank you very much .... me.
10 The man who has been arrested is suspected .... a false passport.
11 I did my best. Nobody can accuse me .... not ....

62.3 **Complete the sentences on the right.**

1
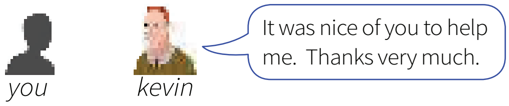
you
kevin
It was nice of you to help me. Thanks very much.

Kevin thanked ....me for helping him.... .

2
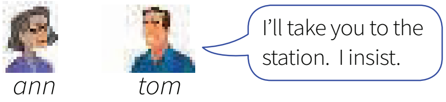
ann
tom
I'll take you to the station. I insist.

Tom insisted .... Ann
....

3
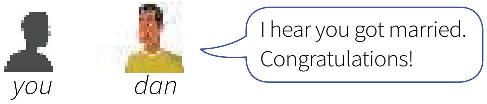
you
dan
I hear you got married. Congratulations!

Dan congratulated me ....
....

4
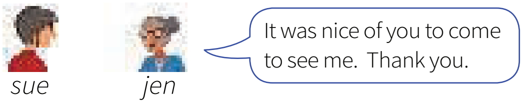
sue
jen
It was nice of you to come to see me. Thank you.

Jen thanked ....
....

5
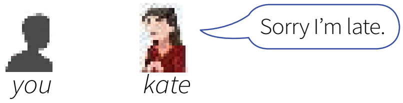
you
kate
Sorry I'm late.

Kate apologised ....
....

6
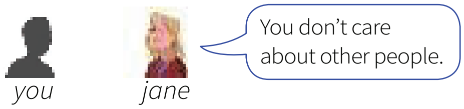
you
jane
You don't care about other people.

Jane accused ....
....

➜ **Additional exercises 27–28** (pages 318–19)

Unit
63

there's no point in -ing, it's worth -ing etc.

A

We say:

there's no point in **it's no use** **it's no good**	**doing** something

☐ **There's no point in having** a car if you never use it.
☐ **There was no point in waiting** any longer, so we left.
☐ **It's no use worrying** about what happened. There's nothing you can do about it.
☐ **It's no good trying** to persuade me. You won't succeed.

We say '**no point in** . . .' but '**the point of** . . .':
☐ There's **no point in** having a car.
☐ What's **the point of** having a car if you never use it?

B

We say:

it's worth **it's not worth**	**doing** something

☐ It's a nice town. **It's worth spending** a few days there.
☐ Our flight was very early in the morning, so **it wasn't worth going** to bed.

You can say that something is **worth it** or **not worth it**:
☐ You should spend a couple of days here. **It's worth it**.
☐ We didn't go to bed. **It wasn't worth it**.

You can also say that something is **worth doing**, a movie is **worth seeing** etc. :
☐ It's a great movie. It's **worth seeing**.
☐ Thieves broke into the house, but didn't take anything. There was nothing **worth stealing**.
☐ It's an interesting idea. It's **worth thinking** about.

C

We say:

have	**trouble** **difficulty** **a problem**	**doing** something

☐ I had no **trouble finding** a place to stay. (*not* trouble to find)
☐ Did you have **a problem getting** a visa?
☐ People sometimes have **difficulty reading** my writing.

D

We say:

spend **waste**	(time)	**doing** something

☐ He **spent** hours **trying** to repair the clock.
☐ I **waste** a lot of time **doing** nothing.

We also say '(be) **busy doing** something':
☐ She said she couldn't meet me. She was too **busy doing** other things.

E

We use **go -ing** for sports and other activities. For example:

go sailing
go surfing
go swimming
go scuba diving
go fishing
go skiing
go riding
go jogging
go hiking
go camping

☐ How often do you **go swimming**?
☐ We **went skiing** last year.
☐ Tom isn't here. He's **gone shopping**.
☐ I've never **been sailing**.

gone and **been** . . . ➜ **Unit 7B**

Exercises

63.1 Which goes with which?

1 It's a nice town.
2 It's an interesting idea.
3 It's no use standing here talking.
4 It's not important.
5 There's no point in looking for him.
6 It's no good apologising to me.
7 It's not worth arguing with him.
8 The hotel is a short walk from here.

a I don't believe you're sorry.
b We'll never find him.
c It's not worth getting a taxi.
d We have to do something.
e He won't change his opinion.
f ~~It's worth spending a few days here.~~
g It's not worth worrying about.
h It's worth considering.

1 ....f....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

63.2 Write sentences beginning **There's no point ...** .

1 Why have a car if you never use it?
There's no point in having a car if you never use it.
2 Why work if you don't need money?
....
3 Don't try to study if you feel tired.
....
4 Why hurry if you have plenty of time?
....

63.3 Complete the sentences.

1 I managed to get a visa, but it was difficult.
I had a problem ....getting a visa.......... .
2 I find it hard to remember people's names.
I have a problem ....
3 Lucy found a job easily. It wasn't a problem.
She had no trouble ....
4 It will be easy to get a ticket for the game.
You won't have any problems ....
5 It was easy for us to understand one another.
We had no difficulty ....

63.4 Complete the sentences. Use only one word each time.

1 I waste a lot of time ....doing.... nothing.
2 How much time do you spend .... to and from work every day?
3 Karen is going on holiday tomorrow, so she's busy .... her things ready.
4 I waste too much time .... TV.
5 There was a beautiful view from the hill. It was worth .... to the top.
6 We need to stay calm. There's no point in .... angry.
7 Amy is learning to play the guitar. She spends a lot of time ....
8 Gary is enjoying his new job. He's busy .... on a new project.
9 I decided it wasn't worth .... for the job. I had no chance of getting it.
10 It's no good .... to escape. You won't be able to get out of here.

63.5 Complete these sentences. Choose from the following and put the verb in the correct form.

go riding ~~**go sailing**~~ **go shopping** **go skiing** **go swimming**

1 Ben lives by the sea and he's got a boat, so he often ....goes sailing.... .
2 It was a very hot day, so we .... in the lake.
3 There's plenty of snow in the mountains, so we'll be able to ....
4 Helen has two horses. She .... regularly.
5 Dan isn't here. He .... There were a few things he needed to buy.

➜ **Additional exercises 27–28** (pages 318–19)

Unit
64

to . . . , **for** . . . and **so that** . . .

A

We say:

- I called the restaurant **to reserve** a table.
- What do you need **to make** bread?
- We shouted **to warn** everybody of the danger.
- This letter is **to confirm** the decisions we made at our meeting last week.
- The president has a team of bodyguards **to protect** him.

In these examples **to** . . . (**to reserve** . . . / **to make** . . . etc.) tells us the *purpose* of something: why somebody does something, has something, needs something etc., or why something exists.

B

We say 'a place **to park**', 'something **to eat**', 'work **to do**' etc. :

- It's hard to find **a place to park** in the city centre. (= a place where you can park)
- Would you like **something to eat**? (= something that you can eat)
- Do you have **much work to do**? (= work that you must do)

Sometimes there is a preposition (**on**, **with** etc.) after the verb:

- Is there **a chair to sit on**? (= a chair that I can sit on)
- I get lonely if there's **nobody to talk to**.
- I need **something to open** this bottle **with**.

We also say **money**/**time**/**chance**/**opportunity**/**energy**/**courage** (etc.) **to** do something:

- They gave us **money to buy** food.
- Do you have **much opportunity to practise** your English?
- I need **a few days to think** about your proposal.

C

Compare **for** . . . and **to** . . .

for + *noun*	**to** + verb
We stopped **for petrol**.	We stopped **to get** petrol.
I had to run **for the bus**.	I had to run **to catch the bus**.

You can say '**for** somebody **to do** something':

- There weren't any chairs **for us to sit on**, so we sat on the floor.

We use **for** (do)**ing** to say what something is used for:

- This brush is **for washing** the dishes.

But we do not use **for** -**ing** to say why somebody does something:

- I went into the kitchen **to wash** the dishes. (*not* for washing)

You can use **What** . . . **for**? to ask about purpose:

- **What** is this switch **for**? (= what is it used for?)
- **What** did you do that **for**? (= why did you do that?)

D

so that

We use **so that** (*not* **to** . . .) especially with **can**/**could** and **will**/**would**:

- She's learning English **so that** she **can** study in Canada.
- We moved to London **so that** we **could** see our friends more often.
- I hurried **so that** I **wouldn't** be late.
  (= because I didn't want to be late)

You can leave out **that**. So you can say:

- I hurried **so that** I wouldn't be late. *or* I hurried **so** I wouldn't be late.

Exercises

64.1 Choose from Box A and Box B to make sentences with to ... .

A

1 I shouted
2 I opened the box
3 I moved to a new apartment
4 I couldn't find a knife
5 I called the police
6 I called the hotel
7 I employed an assistant

B

I wanted to be nearer my friends
I wanted someone to help me with my work
I wanted to report the accident
~~I wanted to warn people of the danger~~
I wanted to see what was in it
I wanted to chop the onions
I wanted to find out if they had any rooms free

1 I shouted to warn people of the danger.
2 I opened the box ....
3 I ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....

64.2 Complete these sentences using to + a suitable verb.

1 The president has a team of bodyguards to protect him.
2 I don't have enough time .... all the things I have to do.
3 I came home by taxi. I didn't have the energy ....
4 Would you like something ....? Coffee? Tea?
5 Can you give me a bag .... these things in?
6 There will be a meeting next week .... the problem.
7 Do you need a visa .... to the United States?
8 I saw Helen at the party, but I didn't have a chance .... to her.
9 I need some new clothes. I don't have anything nice ....
10 They've passed their exams. They're going to have a party ....
11 I can't do all this work alone. I need somebody .... me.
12 Why are you so scared? There's nothing .... afraid of.

64.3 Put in to or for.

1 We stopped for petrol.
2 We'll need time .... make a decision.
3 I went to the dentist .... a check-up.
4 He's very old. He needs somebody .... take care of him.
5 Can you lend me money .... a taxi?
6 Do you wear glasses .... reading?
7 I put on my glasses .... read the letter.
8 I wish we had a garden .... the children .... play in.

64.4 Make one sentence from two, using so that.

1 I hurried. I didn't want to be late.
I hurried so that I wouldn't be late.
2 I wore warm clothes. I didn't want to get cold.
I wore warm clothes ....
3 I gave Mark my phone number. I wanted him to be able to contact me.
I gave Mark my phone number ....
4 We spoke very quietly. We didn't want anybody else to hear us.
We spoke very quietly .... nobody else ....
5 Please arrive early. We want to be able to start the meeting on time.
Please arrive early ....
6 We made a list of things to do. We didn't want to forget anything.
We made a list of things to do ....
7 I slowed down. I wanted the car behind me to be able to overtake.
I slowed down ....

Unit 65

Adjective + **to** . . .

A **hard to understand**, **interesting to talk to** etc.

Compare sentences (a) and (b):

- James doesn't speak clearly. (a) **It** is hard to **understand** **him**.
  (b) **He** is hard to **understand**.

Sentences (a) and (b) have the same meaning. Note that we say:

- He is hard **to understand**. (*not* He is hard to understand him)

We use other adjectives in the same way. For example:

easy **nice** **safe** **cheap** **exciting** **impossible**
difficult **good** **dangerous** **expensive** **interesting**

- Do you think it is **safe to drink this water**?
  Do you think this water is **safe to drink**? (*not* to drink it)
- The exam questions were very hard. It was **impossible to answer them**.
  The exam questions were very hard. They were **impossible to answer**.
  (*not* to answer them)
- Nicola has lots of interesting ideas. It's **interesting to talk** to her.
  Nicola is **interesting to talk to**. (*not* to talk to her)

We also use this structure with *adjective* + *noun*:

- This is a **difficult question to answer**. (*not* to answer it)

B **nice of** (**you**) **to** . . .

We say 'It's **nice of** somebody **to** . . .' :

- It was **nice of** you **to take** me to the airport. Thank you very much.

We use other adjectives in the same way. For example:

kind **generous** **careless** **silly** **stupid** **inconsiderate** **unfair** **typical**

- It's **silly of Ruth to give** up her job when she needs the money.
- I think it was **unfair of him to criticise** me.

C **sorry to** . . . / **surprised to** . . . etc.

You can use *adjective* + **to** . . . to say how somebody reacts to something:

- I'm **sorry to hear** that your mother isn't well.

We use other adjectives in the same way. For example:

glad **pleased** **relieved** **surprised** **amazed** **sad** **disappointed**

- Was Julia **surprised to see** you?
- It was a long and tiring journey. We were **glad to get** home.

D

You can use **to** . . . after **the next** / **the last** / **the only** / **the first** / **the second** (etc.):

- **The next** train **to arrive** at platform 4 will be the 10.50 to Liverpool.
- Everybody was late except me. I was **the only** one **to arrive** on time.
- If I have any more news, you will be **the first to know**. (= the first person to know.)

E

You can say that something is **sure**/**likely**/**bound to** happen:

- Carla is a very good student. She's **bound to pass** the exam. (= she is sure to pass)
- It's possible I'll win the lottery one day, but it's not **likely to happen**. (= it's not probable)

» **afraid**/**interested**/**sorry** ➜ **Unit 66** **it** . . . ➜ **Unit 84C** **enough** and **too** + adjective ➜ **Unit 103**

Exercises

65.1 Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown.

1 It's hard to understand some things. Some things are hard to understand.
2 It was difficult to open the window. The window ....
3 It's impossible to translate some words. Some words ....
4 It's expensive to maintain a car. A ....
5 It's not safe to eat this meat. This ....
6 It's easy to get to my house from here. My ....

65.2 Make sentences from the words in brackets.

1 I couldn't answer the question.
(difficult question / answer) It was a difficult question to answer .
2 It's a very common mistake.
(easy mistake / make) It's ....
3 I like living in this town.
(great place / live) ....
4 I wonder why she said that.
(strange thing / say) ....

65.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

1 It's nice of Dan and Kate to invite me to their party.
2 I've been travelling a long time. Now I'm .... to be back home.
3 I heard about Tom's accident. I was relieved .... that he's OK.
4 It was nice .... to remember my birthday.
5 Let me know if you need any assistance. I'd be very pleased .... you.
6 I thought James was about 25. I was .... to discover he was 40.
7 It was inconsiderate of our neighbours .... so much noise.
8 My interview went well. I was disappointed .... to be offered the job.
9 It's .... of me to worry so much about things that are not important.

to hear
to help
~~to invite~~
to make
not
of you
silly
amazed
glad

65.4 Complete the sentences. Use: the first the second the last the only

1 Nobody spoke before me. I was the first person to speak.
2 Everybody else arrived before Paul.
Paul was ....
3 Emily passed the exam. All the other students failed.
Emily ....
4 I complained to the manager. Another customer had already complained.
I ....
5 Neil Armstrong walked on the moon in 1969. Nobody had done this before him.
Neil Armstrong ....

65.5 Complete the sentences using the words in brackets and a suitable verb.

1 Carla is a very good student.
(she / bound / pass) She's bound to pass the exam.
2 I'm not surprised you're tired after your trip.
(you / bound / tired) .... after such a long journey.
3 Andy has a very bad memory.
(he / sure / forget) .... anything you tell him.
4 I don't think you'll need an umbrella.
(it / not / likely / rain) ....
5 The holidays begin this weekend.
(there / sure / be) .... a lot of traffic on the roads.

Unit
66

to . . . (afraid **to do**) and preposition + **-ing** (afraid **of -ing**)

A **afraid to** (do) and **afraid of** (do)**ing**

I am **afraid to do** something =
I don't want to do it because it is dangerous or the result could be bad.

☐ This part of town is dangerous. People are **afraid to walk** here at night.
(= they don't walk here at night because it is dangerous)

☐ James was **afraid to tell** his parents what had happened.
(= he didn't tell them because he thought they would be angry)

I am **afraid of** something **happening** =
I am afraid that something bad will happen.

☐ The path was icy, so we walked very carefully. We were **afraid of falling**.
(= we were afraid that we would fall – *not* afraid to fall)

☐ I don't like dogs. I'm always **afraid of being** bitten.
(= I'm afraid that I will be bitten – *not* afraid to be bitten)

So, you are **afraid to do something** because you are **afraid of something happening** as a result:

☐ I was **afraid to go** near the dog because I was **afraid of being** bitten.

B **interested in** (do)**ing** and **interested to** (do)

I'm **interested in doing** something = I'm thinking of doing it, I would like to do it:

☐ Let me know if you're **interested in joining** the club. (*not* to join)

☐ I tried to sell my car, but nobody was **interested in buying** it. (*not* to buy)

I was **interested to hear**/**see**/**know** something = it was interesting for me. For example:

☐ I was **interested to hear** that Tanya left her job.
(= I heard this and it was interesting for me)

☐ I'll ask Mike for his opinion. I would be **interested to know** what he thinks.
(= it would be interesting for me to know what he thinks)

This structure is the same as **surprised to** . . . / **glad to** . . . etc. (see Unit 65C):

☐ I was **surprised to hear** that Tanya left her job.

C **sorry for** . . . and **sorry to** . . .

We use **sorry for** (doing) to apologise for something:

☐ I'm **sorry for shouting** at you yesterday. (*not* sorry to shout)

You can also say:

☐ I'm **sorry I shouted** at you yesterday.

We use **sorry to** . . . to say that we regret something that happens:

☐ I'm **sorry to hear** that Nicky lost her job. (*not* sorry for)

☐ I've enjoyed my stay here. I'll be **sorry to leave**.

We also say '**I'm sorry to** . . .' to apologise at the time we do something:

☐ I'm **sorry to bother** you, but I need to ask you a question.

D

We say:

I **want to** (do), I**'d like to** (do)	*but*	I'm **thinking of** (do)**ing**
I **hope to** (do)		I **dream of** (do)**ing**
I **failed to** (do)		I **succeeded in** (do)**ing**
I **allowed** them **to** (do)		I **prevented** them **from** (do)**ing**
I **plan to** (do)		I'm **looking forward to** (do)**ing**
I **promised to** (do)		I **insisted on** (do)**ing**

Verb + **to** . . . ➜ **Units 54–55** Verb + preposition + -**ing** ➜ **Unit 62** **sorry to** . . . ➜ **Unit 65C**
Adjective + preposition ➜ **Units 130–131** **sorry about/for** ➜ **Unit 130**

Exercises

66.1 Write sentences using afraid to … or afraid of -ing.

1 The streets here are not safe at night.
(a lot of people / afraid / go / out) A lot of people are afraid to go out.
2 We walked very carefully along the icy path.
(we / afraid / fall) We were afraid of falling.
3 I don't usually carry my passport with me.
(I / afraid / lose / it) ....
4 I thought she would be angry if I told her what had happened.
(I / afraid / tell / her) ....
5 We ran to the station.
(we / afraid / miss / our train) ....
6 In the middle of the film there was a very horrifying scene.
(we / afraid / look) ....
7 The vase was very valuable, so I held it carefully.
(I / afraid / drop / it) ....
8 If there's anything you want to know, you can ask me.
(don't / afraid / ask) ....
9 I was worried because we didn't have much petrol.
(I / afraid / run out of petrol) ....

66.2 Complete the sentences using interested in … or interested to … . Choose from these verbs:

~~buy~~ hear know look start study

1 I'm trying to sell my car, but nobody is interested in buying it.
2 Nicola is .... her own business.
3 I saw Joe recently. You'll be .... that he's getting married soon.
4 I didn't enjoy school. I wasn't ....
5 I went to a public meeting to discuss the plans for a new road. I was ....
how people felt about the project.
6 Paul doesn't enjoy sightseeing. He's not .... at old buildings.

66.3 Complete the sentences using sorry for … or sorry to … . Use the verb in brackets.

1 I'm sorry to bother you, but I need to ask you something. (bother)
2 We were .... that you can't come to the wedding. (hear)
3 I'm .... bad things about you. I didn't mean what I said. (say)
4 It's a shame Alan is leaving the company. I'll be .... him go. (see)
5 I'm .... so much noise last night. (make)

66.4 Complete the sentences in each group using the verb in brackets.

1 a We wanted to leave the building.
b We weren't allowed .... the building. (leave)
c We were prevented .... the building.
2 a Sam and Chris hoped .... the problem.
b Sam failed .... the problem. (solve)
c Chris succeeded .... the problem.
3 a I'm thinking .... away next week.
b I'm planning .... away next week.
c I'd like .... away next week. (go)
d I'm looking forward .... away next week.
4 a Helen wanted .... me lunch.
b Helen insisted .... me lunch.
c Helen promised .... me lunch. (buy)
d Helen wouldn't dream .... me lunch.

➜ Additional exercise 27 (page 318)

Unit 67

see somebody do and see somebody doing

A

Study this example situation:

Tom got into his car and drove off. You saw this.
You can say:

- I saw Tom **get** into his car and **drive** off.

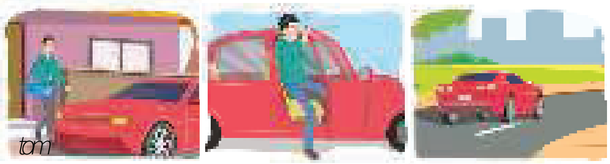

We say 'I saw him **do** something' (= he did it and I saw this). In the same way, you can say:

hear **listen to** **watch** **feel**	somebody **do** something something **happen**

- I didn't **hear** you **come** in. (you came in – I didn't hear this)
- Lisa suddenly **felt** somebody **touch** her on the shoulder.

B

Study this example situation:

Yesterday you saw Kate. She was waiting for a bus.
You can say:

- I saw Kate **waiting** for a bus.

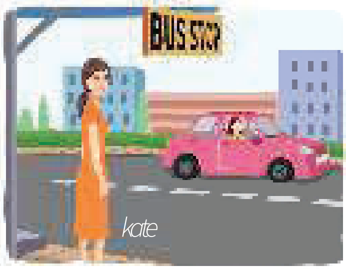

We say 'I saw her **doing** something' (= she was doing it and I saw this). In the same way, you can say:

hear **listen to** **watch** **feel** **smell** **find**	somebody **doing** something something **happening**

- I could **hear** it **raining**. (it was raining – I could hear it)
- **Listen to** the birds **singing**!
- Can you **smell** something **burning**?
- We looked for Paul and finally we **found** him **sitting** under a tree **eating** an apple.

C

Study the difference in meaning:

I **saw him do** something = he **did** something and I saw this.
I saw the complete action from start to finish:

- He **jumped** over the wall and **ran** away. I saw this.
  → I **saw** him **jump** over the wall and **run** away.
- They **went** out. I heard this. → I **heard** them **go** out.

I **saw him doing** something = he **was doing** something and I saw this.
I saw him *in the middle* of doing something (not from start to finish):

- I saw Tom as I drove past in my car. He **was walking** along the street.
  → I **saw** Tom **walking** along the street.
- I heard them. They **were talking**. → I **heard** them **talking**.

Sometimes the difference is not important and you can use either form:

- I've never seen her **dance**. *or* I've never seen her **dancing**.

Past simple (**I did**) ➜ **Unit 5** Past continuous (**I was doing**) ➜ **Unit 6**

Exercises

67.1 Complete the sentences with the verb in the correct form:

1 a Tom doesn't have the keys. He ....gave.... them to Lisa. (give)
b Tom doesn't have the keys. I saw him .... them to Lisa. (give)
2 a A car .... outside our house, and then it drove off again. (stop)
b We heard a car .... outside our house, and then it drove off again. (stop)
3 a Ben gave me the envelope and watched me .... it. (open)
b Ben gave me the envelope and I .... it. (open)
4 a Sarah is Canadian. I heard her .... she's from Toronto. (say)
b Sarah is Canadian. She .... she's from Toronto. (say)
5 a A man .... over in the street, so we went to help him. (fall)
b We saw a man .... over in the street, so we went to help him. (fall)

67.2 You and a friend saw, heard or smelt something. Complete the sentences.

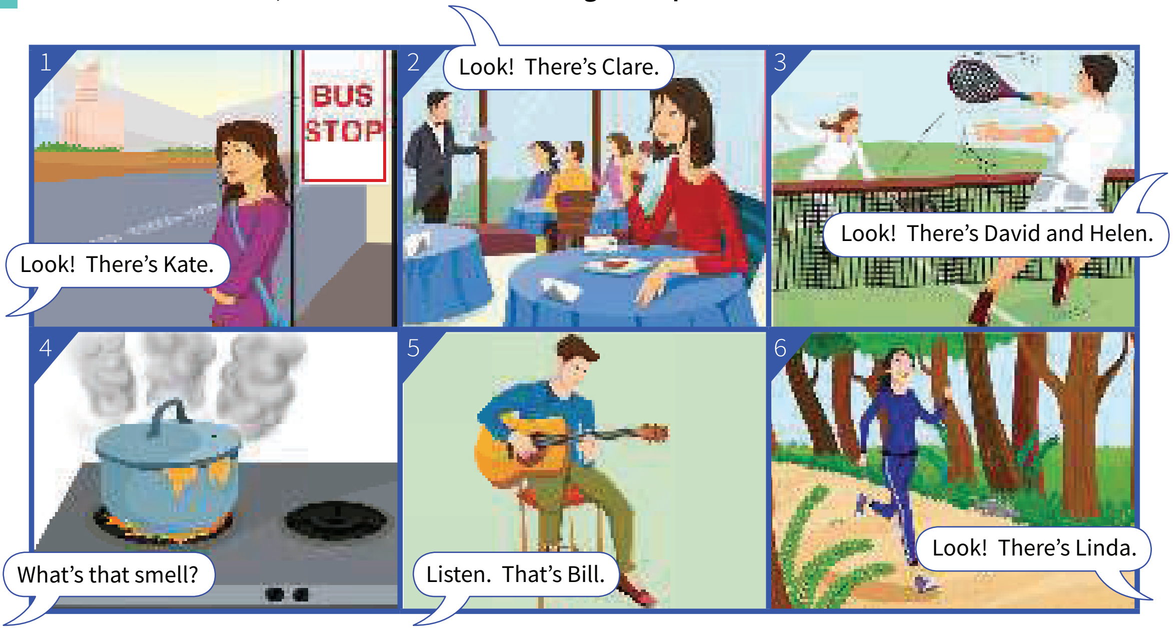

1 ....We saw Kate waiting for a bus.. .
2 We saw Clare .... in a restaurant.
3 We saw David and Helen ....
4 We could smell something ....
5 We could hear.. .
6 ....

67.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs (in the correct form):

crawl cry explode ~~get~~ happen lie put ride say slam ~~stand~~ tell

1 The bus stopped at the bus stop but I didn't see anybody ....get.... off.
2 I saw two people ....standing.... outside your house. I don't know who they were.
3 I thought I heard somebody .... 'Hi', so I turned round.
4 There was an accident outside my house, but I didn't see it ....
5 Listen. Can you hear a baby .... ?
6 I know you took the key. I saw you .... it in your pocket.
7 We listened to the old man .... his story from beginning to end.
8 Everybody heard the bomb .... It was a tremendous noise.
9 Oh! I can feel something .... up my leg. It must be an insect.
10 I looked out of the window and saw Dan .... his bike along the road.
11 I heard somebody .... a door in the middle of the night. It woke me up.
12 When I got home, I found a cat .... on the kitchen table.

Unit
68

-**ing** clauses (He hurt his knee **playing football**.)

A

Study this example:

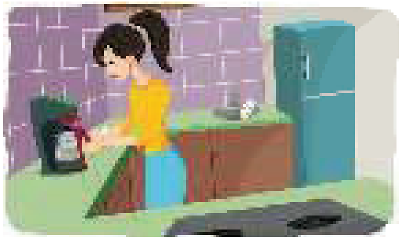

Kate is in the kitchen. She's making coffee.
You can say:

- Kate is in the kitchen **making coffee**.

-ing *clause*

You can use -**ing** in this way when two things happen at the same time:

- A man ran out of the house **shouting**.
  (= he ran out of the house *and* he was shouting)
- Do something! Don't just stand there **doing nothing**!
- Be careful **crossing the road**.

We also use -**ing** when one action happens during another action:

- Joe hurt his knee **playing football**. (= while he was playing)
- Did you cut yourself **shaving**? (= while you were shaving)

You can also say '**while doing** something' and '**when doing** something':

- Joe hurt his knee **while playing** football.
- Be careful **when crossing** the road. (= when you are crossing)

B

When one action happens before something else, we use **having** (**done**) for the first action:

- **Having found** a hotel, we looked for somewhere to eat.
- **Having finished** her work, she went home.

You can also say **after** -**ing**:

- **After finishing** her work, she went home.

These structures are used more in written English than in spoken English.
When we begin a sentence with '**Having** (done something)' or '**After** (doing something)', we write a comma (**,**) after this part of the sentence:

- **Having finished her work,** she went home.

comma

C

You can also use -**ing** to explain something, or to say why somebody does something.
The sentence usually begins with -**ing**:

- **Feeling tired**, I went to bed early. (= because I felt tired)

  -ing *clause*

- **Being** unemployed, he doesn't have much money. (= because he is unemployed)
- **Not having** a car, she finds it difficult to get around.
  (= because she doesn't have a car)

We use **having** (**done**) for something that is complete before something else:

- **Having seen** the film twice, I didn't want to see it again.
  (= because I had seen it twice)

These structures are used more in written English than in spoken English.
When we begin a sentence with -**ing** (**Feeling tired** … / **Not knowing** … / **Having seen** … etc.), we write a comma (**,**) after this part of the sentence.

- **Not knowing what to do,** I called my friend to ask her advice.

Exercises

68.1 Choose from Box A and Box B to make sentences. Use -ing.

A

1 ~~Kate was in the kitchen.~~
2 Amy was sitting in an armchair.
3 Nicola opened the door carefully.
4 Sarah went out.
5 Lisa worked in Rome for two years.
6 Anna walked around the town.

B

She was trying not to make a noise.
She looked at the sights and took pictures.
She said she would be back in an hour.
She was reading a book.
~~She was making coffee.~~
She was teaching English.

1 Kate was in the kitchen making coffee.
2 Amy was sitting in an armchair ....
3 Nicola ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

68.2 Put the words in the right order.

1 Joe (knee / football / his / hurt / playing) Joe hurt his knee playing football.
2 I (in the rain / wet / got / very / walking)
I ....
3 Laura (to work / had / driving / an accident)
Laura ....
4 My friend (off / slipped / a bus / getting / and fell)
My friend ....
5 Emily (trying / her back / a heavy box / to lift / hurt)
Emily ....
6 Two people were (to put out / by smoke / the fire / overcome / trying)
Two people were ....

68.3 Complete the sentences. Use Having + a suitable verb.

1 Having finished her work, Katherine left the office and went home.
2 .... our tickets, we went into the theatre and took our seats.
3 .... the problem, I think we'll be able to find a solution.
4 .... he was hungry, Joe now says he doesn't want to eat anything.
5 .... his job recently, James is now unemployed.
6 .... most of his life in London, Sam has now gone to live in a small village in the country.

68.4 Make one sentence from two. Begin with -ing or Not -ing. Sometimes you need to begin with Having … . Don't forget the comma (,).

1 I felt tired. So I went to bed early.
Feeling tired, I went to bed early.
2 I thought they might be hungry. So I offered them something to eat.
.... I offered them something to eat.
3 Robert is a vegetarian. So he doesn't eat any kind of meat.
.... Robert doesn't eat any kind of meat.
4 I didn't have a phone. So I had no way of contacting anyone.
.... I had no way of contacting anyone.
5 Sarah has travelled a lot. So she knows a lot about other countries.
.... Sarah knows a lot about other countries.
6 I wasn't able to speak the local language. So I had trouble communicating.
.... I had trouble communicating.
7 We had spent nearly all our money. So we couldn't afford to stay at a hotel.
.... we couldn't afford to stay at a hotel.

Unit
69

Countable and uncountable 1

A

A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*:

Countable

- I eat **a banana** every day.
- I like **bananas**.

Banana is a *countable* noun.

A countable noun can be singular (**banana**) or plural (**bananas**).

We can use numbers with countable nouns. So we can say **one banana**, **two bananas** etc.

Examples of nouns usually countable:

- Kate was singing **a song**.
- There's **a** nice **beach** near here.
- Do you have **a** ten-pound **note**?
- It wasn't your fault. It was **an accident**.
- There are no **batteries** in the radio.
- We don't have enough **cups**.

Uncountable

- I eat **rice** every day.
- I like **rice**.

Rice is an *uncountable* noun.

An uncountable noun has only one form (**rice**). There is no plural.

We cannot use numbers with uncountable nouns. We cannot say 'one rice', 'two rices' etc.

Examples of nouns usually uncountable:

- Kate was listening to **music**.
- There's **sand** in my shoes.
- Do you have any **money**?
- It wasn't your fault. It was bad **luck**.
- There is no **electricity** in this house.
- We don't have enough **water**.

B

You can use **a**/**an** with singular countable nouns:

a beach **a student** **an umbrella**

You cannot use singular countable nouns alone (without **a**/**the**/**my** etc.):

- Do you want **a banana**?
  (*not* want banana)
- There's been **an accident**.
  (*not* There's been accident)

You can use *plural* countable nouns alone:

- I like **bananas**. (= bananas in general)
- **Accidents** can be prevented.

We do not use **a**/**an** with uncountable nouns. We do not say 'a sand', 'a music', 'a rice'.

But you can often use **a** ... **of**. For example:

a bowl / **a packet** / **a grain** of rice

You can use uncountable nouns alone (without **the**/**my**/**some** etc.):

- I eat **rice** every day.
- There's **blood** on your shirt.
- Can you hear **music**?

C

You can use **some** and **any** with plural countable nouns:

- We sang **some songs**.
- Did you buy **any apples**?

We use **many** and **few** with plural countable nouns:

- We didn't take **many pictures**.
- I have a **few things** to do.

You can use **some** and **any** with uncountable nouns:

- We listened to **some music**.
- Did you buy **any** apple **juice**?

We use **much** and **little** with uncountable nouns:

- We didn't do **much shopping**.
- I have a **little work** to do.

Countable and uncountable 2 ➜ **Unit 70** **children** / **the children** ➜ **Unit 75** **some** and **any** ➜ **Unit 85**
many/**much**/**few**/**little** ➜ **Unit 87**

Exercises

69.1 **Some of these sentences need a/an. Correct the sentences where necessary.**

1 Joe goes everywhere by bike. He doesn't have car. ...He doesn't have a car....
2 Helen was listening to music when I arrived. ...OK...
3 We went to very nice restaurant last weekend. ....
4 I brush my teeth with toothpaste. ....
5 I use toothbrush to brush my teeth. ....
6 Can you tell me if there's bank near here? ....
7 My brother works for insurance company. ....
8 I don't like violence. ....
9 When we were in Rome, we stayed in big hotel. ....
10 If you have problem, I'll try and help you. ....
11 I like your suggestion. It's interesting idea. ....
12 Can you smell paint? ....
13 I like volleyball. It's good game. ....
14 Lisa doesn't usually wear jewellery. ....
15 Jane was wearing beautiful necklace. ....
16 Does this city have airport? ....

69.2 **Complete the sentences using the following words. Use a/an where necessary.**

~~accident~~ biscuit blood coat decision electricity
ice interview key moment ~~music~~ question

1 The road is closed. There's been ...an accident... .
2 Listen! Can you hear ...music... ?
3 I couldn't get into the house. I didn't have ....
4 It's very warm today. Why are you wearing .... ?
5 Would you like .... in your drink?
6 Are you hungry? Have .... !
7 Our lives would be very difficult without ....
8 Excuse me, can I ask you .... ?
9 I'm not ready yet. Can you wait .... , please?
10 The heart pumps .... through the body.
11 We can't delay much longer. We have to make .... soon.
12 I had .... for a job yesterday. It went quite well.

69.3 **Complete the sentences using the following words:**

air day friend joke language meat
patience people ~~picture~~ queue space umbrella

Sometimes the word needs to be plural (-s), and sometimes you need to use a/an.

1 I had a camera with me, but I didn't take any ...pictures... .
2 There are seven .... in a week.
3 A vegetarian is a person who doesn't eat ....
4 Outside the cinema there was .... of people waiting to see the film.
5 I'm not good at telling ....
6 Last night I went out with some .... of mine.
7 There were very few .... in town today. The streets were almost empty.
8 I'm going out for a walk. I need some fresh ....
9 Paul always wants things quickly. He doesn't have much ....
10 I think it's going to rain. Do you have .... I could borrow?
11 How many .... can you speak?
12 Our flat is very small. We don't have much ....

Unit
70

Countable and uncountable 2

A

Many nouns are sometimes countable, and sometimes uncountable. Usually there is a difference in meaning. Compare:

Countable	*Uncountable*
☐ Did you hear **a noise** just now? (= a specific noise)	☐ I can't work here. There's too much **noise**. (= noise in general)
☐ I bought **a paper** to read. (= a newspaper)	☐ I need **some paper** to write on. (= material for writing on)
☐ There's **a hair** in my soup! (= one single hair)	☐ You've got very long **hair**. (*not* hairs) (= all the hair on your head)
☐ This is **a** nice **room**. (= a room in a house)	☐ You can't sit here. There isn't **room**. (= space)
☐ I had some interesting **experiences** while I was travelling. (= things that happened to me)	☐ I was offered the job because I had a lot of **experience**. (*not* experiences) (= experience of that type of job)
☐ Enjoy your trip. Have **a** great **time**!	☐ I can't wait. I don't have **time**.

Coffee/**tea**/**juice**/**beer** etc. (drinks) are normally uncountable:

☐ I don't like **coffee** very much.

But you can say **a coffee** (= a cup of coffee), **two coffees** (= two cups) etc. :

☐ **Two coffees** and **an orange juice**, please.

B

These nouns are usually uncountable:

accommodation
advice
baggage
behaviour
bread
chaos
damage
furniture
information
luck
luggage
news
permission
progress
scenery
traffic
weather
work

We do not normally use **a**/**an** with these nouns:

☐ I'm going to buy **some bread**. *or* . . . **a loaf of bread**. (*not* a bread)
☐ Enjoy your holiday! I hope you have good **weather**. (*not* a good weather)

These nouns are not usually plural (so we do not say 'breads', 'furnitures' etc.):

☐ Where are you going to put all your **furniture**? (*not* furnitures)
☐ Let me know if you need more **information**. (*not* informations)

News is uncountable, not plural:

☐ The **news was** unexpected. (*not* The news were)

Travel (*noun*) means 'travelling in general' (uncountable). We do not say 'a travel' to mean **a trip** or **a journey**:

☐ They spend a lot of money on **travel**.
☐ We had a very good **trip**/**journey**. (*not* a good travel)

Compare these countable and uncountable nouns:

Countable	*Uncountable*
☐ I'm looking for **a job**.	☐ I'm looking for **work**. (*not* a work)
☐ What **a** beautiful **view**!	☐ What beautiful **scenery**!
☐ It's **a** nice **day** today.	☐ It's nice **weather** today.
☐ We had a lot of **bags**.	☐ We had a lot of **baggage**/**luggage**.
☐ **These chairs** are mine.	☐ **This furniture** is mine.
☐ That's **a** good **suggestion**.	☐ That's good **advice**.
☐ There were a lot of **cars**.	☐ There **was** a lot of **traffic**.

Countable and uncountable 1 ➔ **Unit 69** American English ➔ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

70.1 Which is correct?

1 a The engine is making ~~strange noise~~ / a strange noise. What is it? (a strange noise *is correct*)
b We live near a busy road so there's a lot of noise / there are a lot of noises.
2 a Light / A light comes from the sun.
b I thought there was somebody in the house because there was light / a light on inside.
3 a I was in a hurry this morning. I didn't have time / a time for breakfast.
b We really enjoyed our holiday. We had great time / a great time.
4 a Can I have glass of water / a glass of water, please?
b Be careful. The window has been broken and there's broken glass / a broken glass on the floor.
5 a We stayed at a hotel. We had very nice room / a very nice room.
b We have a big garage. There's room / a room for two cars.

70.2 Which is correct?

1 Did you have nice weather / ~~a nice weather~~ when you were away? (nice weather *is correct*)
2 We were very unfortunate. We had bad luck / a bad luck.
3 Our travel / journey from Paris to Moscow by train was very tiring.
4 When the fire alarm rang, there was complete chaos / a complete chaos.
5 Bad news don't / doesn't make people happy.
6 There's some lovely scenery / a lovely scenery in this part of the country.
7 I like my job, but it's very hard work / a very hard work.
8 I want to print some documents, but the printer is out of paper / papers.
9 The trip took a long time. There was heavy traffic / a heavy traffic.
10 Your hair is / Your hairs are too long. You should have it / them cut.

70.3 Complete the sentences using the following words. Use the plural (-s) where necessary.

advice chair damage experience experience
furniture hair ~~luggage~~ permission progress

1 We didn't have much .....luggage..... – just two small bags.
2 We have no .... , not even a bed or a table.
3 There is room for everybody to sit down. There are plenty of ....
4 Who is that woman with short .... ? Do you know her?
5 Carla's English is better than it was. She's made good ....
6 If you want to take pictures here, you need to ask for ....
7 I didn't know what I should do, so I asked Chris for ....
8 I don't think Dan should get the job. He doesn't have enough ....
9 Kate has done many interesting things. She could write a book about her ....
10 The .... caused by the storm will cost a lot to repair.

70.4 What do you say in these situations? Use the word in brackets in your sentence.

1 Your friends have just arrived at the station. You can't see any cases or bags. You ask:
(luggage) Do .....you have any luggage..?
2 You go to a tourist office. You want to know about places to visit in the town.
(information) I'd like ....
3 You are a student. You want your teacher to advise you about which courses to do. You say:
(advice) Can you give ....?
4 You applied for a job and you've just heard that you were successful. You call Tom and say:
(good news) Hi, Tom. I .... I got the job!
5 You are at the top of a mountain. You can see a very long way. It's beautiful. You say:
(view) It .... , isn't it?
6 You look out of the window. The weather is horrible: cold, wet and windy. You say:
(weather) What ....!

Unit
71

Countable nouns with **a/an** and **some**

A

Countable nouns can be *singular* or *plural*:

a **dog**	a **child**	the **evening**	this **party**	an **umbrella**
dogs	some **children**	the **evenings**	these **parties**	two **umbrellas**

Before singular countable nouns you can use **a**/**an**:

- ☐ Bye! Have **a** nice **evening**.
- ☐ Do you need **an umbrella**?

You cannot use singular countable nouns alone (without **a**/**the**/**my** etc.):

- ☐ She never wears **a hat**. (*not* wears hat)
- ☐ Be careful of **the dog**.
- ☐ What **a** beautiful **day**!
- ☐ Did you hurt **your leg**?

B

We use **a**/**an** . . . to say what kind of thing something is, or what kind of person somebody is:

- ☐ That's a **nice table**.

In the plural we use the noun alone (*not* some . . .):

- ☐ Those are **nice chairs**. (*not* some nice chairs)

Compare singular and plural:

☐ A dog is **an animal**.	☐ Dogs are **animals**.
☐ I'm **an optimist**.	☐ We're **optimists**.
☐ My father is **a doctor**.	☐ My parents are both **doctors**.
☐ Jane is **a really nice person**.	☐ Jane and Ben are **really nice people**.
☐ What **a lovely dress**!	☐ What **awful shoes**!

We say that somebody has **a long nose** / **a nice face** / **blue eyes** / **long fingers** etc. :

☐ Jack has a long **nose**. (*not* the long nose)	☐ Jack has **blue eyes**. (*not* the blue eyes)

We use **a**/**an** when we say what somebody's job is:

- ☐ Sandra is **a nurse**. (*not* Sandra is nurse)
- ☐ Would you like to be **an English teacher**?

C

You can use **some** with plural countable nouns. We use **some** in two ways.

(1) **some** = a number (of) / a few (of) / a pair (of):

- ☐ I've seen **some** good **movies** recently. (*not* I've seen good movies)
- ☐ **Some friends** of mine are coming to stay at the weekend.
- ☐ I need **some** new **sunglasses**. (= a new pair of sunglasses)

Often you can say the same thing with or without **some**. For example:

- ☐ I need (**some**) **new clothes**.
- ☐ The room was empty apart from a table and (**some**) **chairs**.

Do not use **some** when you are talking about things in general (see Unit 75):

- ☐ I love **bananas**. (*not* some bananas)
- ☐ My aunt is a writer. She writes **books**. (*not* some books)

(2) **some** = some but not all:

- ☐ **Some children** learn very quickly. (but not all children)
- ☐ Tomorrow there will be rain in **some places**, but most of the country will be dry.

Countable and uncountable ➜ **Units 69–70** **a**/**an** and **the** ➜ **Unit 72** **some** and **any** ➜ **Unit 85**

Exercises

71.1 **What are these things? Choose from the box and write a sentence.**

1 an eagle .....It's a bird.....
2 a pigeon, a duck and a penguin .....They're birds.....
3 carrots and onions ....
4 a tulip ....
5 Earth, Mars and Jupiter ....
6 chess ....
7 a hammer, a saw and a screwdriver ....
8 the Nile, the Rhine and the Mekong ....
9 a mosquito ....
10 Hindi, Arabic and Swahili ....

~~bird(s)~~
flower(s)
game(s)
insect(s)
language(s)
planet(s)
river(s)
tool(s)
vegetable(s)

71.2 **Read about what these people do. What are their jobs? Choose from:**

chef **interpreter** **journalist** **~~nurse~~** **plumber** **surgeon** **tour guide** **waiter**

1 Sarah looks after patients in hospital. .....She's a nurse.....
2 Gary works in a restaurant. He brings the food to the tables. He ....
3 Jane writes articles for a newspaper. ....
4 Kevin works in a hospital. He operates on people. ....
5 Jonathan cooks in a restaurant. ....
6 Dave installs and repairs water pipes. ....
7 Anna shows visitors round her city and tells them about it. ....
8 Lisa translates what people are saying from one language into another, so that they can understand each other. ....

71.3 **Which is right?**

1 Most of my friends are students / ~~some students~~. (students *is correct*)
2 Are you careful driver / a careful driver?
3 I went to the library and borrowed books / some books.
4 Mark works in a bookshop. He sells books / some books.
5 I've been walking for hours. I've got sore feet / some sore feet.
6 I don't feel very well. I've got sore throat / a sore throat.
7 What lovely present / a lovely present! Thank you very much.
8 I met students / some students in a cafe yesterday. They were from China.
9 It might rain. Don't go out without umbrella / without an umbrella.
10 People / Some people learn languages more easily than others.

71.4 **Put in a/an or some where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.**

1 I've seen .....some..... good movies recently.
2 Are you feeling all right? Do you have .....a..... headache?
3 I know lots of people. Most of them are .....–..... students.
4 When I was .... child, I used to be very shy.
5 .... birds, for example the penguin, cannot fly.
6 Would you like to be .... actor?
7 Questions, questions, questions! You're always asking .... questions!
8 I didn't expect to see you. What .... surprise!
9 Do you like staying in .... hotels?
10 Tomorrow is a holiday. .... shops will be open, but most of them will be closed.
11 Those are .... nice shoes. Where did you get them?
12 You need .... visa to visit .... countries, but not all of them.
13 Kate is .... teacher. Her parents were .... teachers too.
14 I don't believe him. He's .... liar. He's always telling .... lies.

Unit
72

a/an and the

A

Study this example:

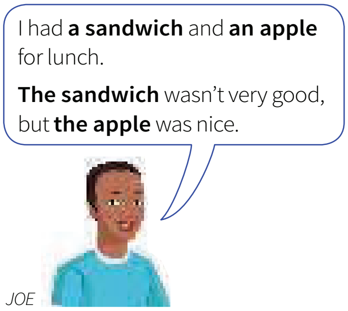
I had **a sandwich** and **an apple** for lunch.
The sandwich wasn't very good, but **the apple** was nice.
JOE

Joe says '**a** sandwich', '**an** apple' because this is the first time he talks about them.

Joe now says '**the** sandwich', '**the** apple' because we know which sandwich and which apple he means – **the** sandwich and **the** apple he had for lunch.

Compare **a** and **the** in these examples:

- **A man** and **a woman** were sitting opposite me. **The man** was American, but I think **the woman** was British.
- When we were on holiday, we stayed at **a hotel**. Sometimes we ate at **the hotel** and sometimes we went to **a restaurant**.

B

We use **the** when we are thinking of a specific thing. Compare **a**/**an** and **the**:

- Tim sat down on **a chair**. (maybe one of many chairs in the room)
  Tim sat down on **the chair nearest the door**. (a specific chair)
- Do you have **a car**? (not a specific car)
  I cleaned **the car** yesterday. (= my car)

We use **a**/**an** when we say what kind of thing or person we mean. Compare:

- We stayed at **a very cheap hotel**. (a type of hotel)
  The hotel where we stayed was very cheap. (a specific hotel)

C

We use **the** when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example, in a room we talk about **the light** / **the floor** / **the ceiling** / **the door** / **the carpet** etc. :

- Can you turn off **the light**, please? (= the light in this room)
- I took a taxi to **the station**. (= the station in that town)
- *(in a shop)* I'd like to speak to **the manager**, please. (= the manager of this shop)

We also say '(go to) **the bank** / **the post office**':

- I have to go to **the bank** and then I'm going to **the post office**.
  (The speaker is usually thinking of a specific bank or post office.)

and '(go to) **the doctor** / **the dentist**':

- Clare isn't well. She's gone to **the doctor**.
- I don't like going to **the dentist**.

Compare **the** and **a**:

- I have to go to **the bank** today.
  Is there **a bank** near here?
- I don't like going to **the dentist**.
  My sister is **a dentist**.

D

We say 'once **a week** / three times **a day** / £1.50 **a kilo**' etc. :

- I go to the cinema about once **a month**.
- 'How much are those potatoes?' '£1.50 **a kilo**.'
- Helen works eight hours **a day**, six days **a week**.

a/an ➜ Unit 71 the ➜ Units 73–78

Exercises

72.1 Put in a/an or the.

1 This morning I bought ……a…… book and …………… magazine. …………… book is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put …………… magazine.
2 I saw …………… accident this morning. …………… car crashed into …………… tree. …………… driver of …………… car wasn't hurt, but …………… car was badly damaged.
3 There are two cars parked outside: …………… blue one and …………… grey one. …………… blue one belongs to my neighbours. I don't know who …………… owner of …………… grey one is.
4 My friends live in …………… old house in …………… small village. There is …………… beautiful garden behind …………… house. I would like to have …………… garden like that.

72.2 Put in a/an or the.

1 a This house is very nice. Does it have …………… garden?
  b It's a beautiful day. Let's sit in …………… garden.
  c I like living in this house, but it's a shame that …………… garden is so small.
2 a Can you recommend …………… good restaurant?
  b We had dinner in …………… very nice restaurant.
  c We had dinner in …………… best restaurant in town.
3 a What's …………… name of that man we met yesterday?
  b We stayed at a very nice hotel – I can't remember …………… name now.
  c My neighbour has …………… French name, but in fact she's English, not French.
4 a Did Paula get …………… job she applied for?
  b It's not easy to get …………… job at the moment.
  c Do you enjoy your work? Is it …………… interesting job?
5 a 'Are you going away next week?' 'No, …………… week after next.'
  b I'm going away for …………… week in September.
  c Gary has a part-time job. He works three mornings …………… week.

72.3 Put in a/an or the where necessary.

1 Would you like apple? …… Would you like an apple?
2 How often do you go to dentist? ……………………
3 Can you close door, please? ……………………
4 I have problem. I need your help. ……………………
5 How far is it from here to station? ……………………
6 I'm going to post office. I won't be long. ……………………
7 Paul plays tennis. He's very good player. ……………………
8 There isn't airport near where I live. ……………………
9 Nearest airport is 70 miles away. ……………………
10 There were no chairs, so we sat on floor. ……………………
11 Have you finished with book I lent you? ……………………
12 Chris has just got job in bank in Zurich. ……………………
13 We live in small apartment in city centre. ……………………
14 There's shop at end of street I live in. ……………………

72.4 Answer these questions. Where possible, use once a week / three times a day etc.

1 How often do you go to the cinema? …… Three or four times a year.
2 How often do you go to the dentist? ……………………
3 How often do you go away on holiday? ……………………
4 How long do you usually sleep? ……………………
5 How often do you go out in the evening? ……………………
6 How many hours of TV do you watch (on average)? ……………………
7 What's the usual speed limit in towns in your country? ……………………

→ Additional exercise 29 (page 319)

Unit 73 the 1

A

We use **the** when there is only one of something:
☐ Have you ever crossed **the equator**?
(there is only one equator)
☐ Our apartment is on **the tenth floor**.
☐ Buenos Aires is **the capital of Argentina**.
☐ I'm going away at **the end of this month**.

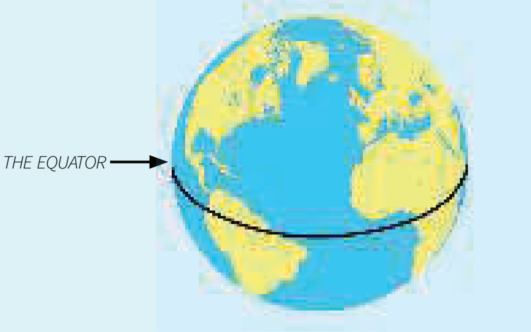

We use **the** + *superlative* (**best**, **oldest** etc.):
☐ What's **the longest river in Europe**?

Compare **the** and **a**/**an** (see also Units 71–72):
☐ **The sun** is **a star**. (= one of many stars)
☐ **The hotel** where we stayed was **a very old hotel**.
☐ We live in **an apartment** on **the tenth floor**.
☐ What's **the best way** to learn **a language**?

B

We say '**the same**':
☐ Your sweater is **the same** colour as mine. (*not* is same colour)
☐ 'Are these keys **the same**?' 'No, they're different.'

C

We say: **the world** **the universe** **the sun** **the moon** **the earth**
the sky **the sea** **the ground** **the country** (= not a town)

☐ I love to look at the stars in **the sky**. (*not* in sky)
☐ Do you live in a town or in **the country**?
☐ **The earth** goes round **the sun**, and **the moon** goes round **the earth**.

We also use **Earth** (without **the**) when we think of it as a planet in space (like **Mars**, **Jupiter** etc.).
☐ Which is the planet nearest **Earth**?

We say **space** (without **the**) when we mean 'space in the universe'. Compare:
☐ There are millions of stars **in space**. (*not* in the space)
☐ I tried to park my car, but **the space** was too small.

D

We say:
(go to) **the cinema**, **the theatre**
☐ I go to **the cinema** a lot, but I haven't been to **the theatre** for ages.

TV / **television** (without **the**), but **the radio**
☐ I watch **TV** a lot, but I don't listen to **the radio** much.
but Can you turn off **the television**, please? (**the** television = the TV set)

the internet
☐ **The internet** has changed the way we live.

E

We usually say **breakfast**/**lunch**/**dinner** (without **the**):
☐ What did you have for **breakfast**?
☐ We had **lunch** in a very nice restaurant.

But we say '**a big** lunch', '**a wonderful** dinner', '**an early** breakfast' etc.
☐ We had **a** very **nice lunch**. (*not* We had very nice lunch)

F

We say: **size 43**, **platform 5** etc. (without **the**)
☐ Our train leaves from **platform 5**. (*not* the platform 5)
☐ Do you have these shoes in **size 43**? (*not* the size 43)

In the same way, we say: **room 126**, **page 29**, **vitamin A**, **section B** etc.

a/**an** ➜ **Unit 71** **a**/**an** and **the** ➜ **Unit 72** **the** 2–4 ➜ **Units 74–76**
Names with and without **the** ➜ **Units 77–78**

Exercises

73.1 Put in **the** or **a** where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 A: Our apartment is on ....the.... tenth floor.
B: Is it? I hope there's .... lift.
2 A: Did you have .... nice holiday?
B: Yes, it was .... best holiday I've ever had.
3 A: Where's .... nearest shop?
B: There's one at .... end of this street.
4 A: It's .... lovely day, isn't it?
B: Yes, there isn't .... cloud in .... sky.
5 A: We spent all our money because we stayed at .... most expensive hotel in town.
B: Why didn't you stay at .... cheaper hotel?
6 A: Would you like to travel in .... space?
B: Yes, I'd love to go to .... moon.
7 A: What did you think of .... movie last night?
B: It was OK, but I thought .... ending was a bit strange.
8 A: What's Jupiter? Is it .... star?
B: No, it's .... planet. It's .... largest planet in .... solar system.

73.2 Which is right? (For **the**, see also Unit 72.)

1 I haven't been to ~~cinema~~ / the cinema for ages. (the cinema *is correct*)
2 Sarah spends most of her free time watching TV / the TV.
3 Do you ever listen to radio / the radio?
4 Television / The television was on, but nobody was watching it.
5 Have you had dinner / the dinner yet?
6 It's confusing when two people have same name / the same name.
7 What do you want for breakfast / for the breakfast?
8 Fruit is an important source of vitamin C / the vitamin C.
9 This computer is not connected to internet / the internet.
10 I lay down on ground / the ground and looked up at sky / the sky.
11 Next train / The next train to London leaves from platform 3 / the platform 3.

73.3 Put in **the** or **a** where necessary. (For **a** and **the** see also Units 71–72.)

1 Sun is star. ....The sun is a star...
2 I'm fed up with doing same thing every day. ....
3 Room 25 is on second floor. ....
4 It was very hot day. It was hottest day of year. ....
5 We had lunch in nice restaurant by sea. ....
6 What's on at cinema this week? ....
7 I had big breakfast this morning. ....
8 You'll find information you need at top of page 15. ....

73.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and use **the** where necessary.

breakfast **cinema** **gate** **Gate 24** ~~**lunch**~~ **question** **question 3** **sea**

1 I'm hungry. It's time for ....lunch........ .
2 There was no wind, so .... was very calm.
3 Most of the questions in the test were OK, but I couldn't answer ....
4 'I'm going to .... tonight.' 'Are you? What are you going to see?'
5 I'm sorry, but could you repeat .... , please?
6 I didn't have .... this morning because I was in a hurry.
7 *(airport announcement)* Flight AB123 to Rome is now boarding at ....
8 I forgot to shut .... Can you shut it for me?

➜ **Additional exercise 29** (page 319)

Unit
74

the 2 (school / the school etc.)

A

Compare **school** and **the school**:

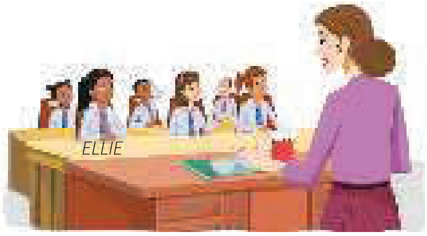

Ellie is ten years old. Every day she goes **to school**. She's **at school** now. **School** starts at 9 and finishes at 3.

We say a child goes **to school** or is **at school** (as a student). We are not thinking of a specific school. We are thinking of **school** as a *general* idea – children learning in a classroom.

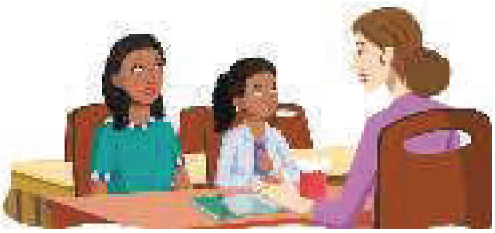

Today Ellie's mother wants to speak to her daughter's teacher. So she has gone to **the school** to see her. She's at **the school** now.

Ellie's mother is not a student. She is not 'at school', she doesn't 'go to school'. If she wants to see Ellie's teacher, she goes to **the school** (= Ellie's school, a specific building).

B

We use **prison** (or **jail**), **hospital**, **university**, **college** and **church** in a similar way. We do not use **the** when we are thinking of the general idea of these places and what they are used for.
Compare:

○ When I leave school, I plan to go **to university** / go **to college**. (as a student)	○ I went to **the university** to meet Professor Thomas. (as a visitor, not as a student)
○ Joe had an accident last week. He was taken **to hospital**. He's still **in hospital** now. (as a patient)	○ Jane has gone to **the hospital** to visit Joe. She's at **the hospital** now. (as a visitor, not as a patient)
○ Ken's brother is **in prison** for robbery. (He is a prisoner. We are not thinking of a specific prison.)	○ Ken went to **the prison** to visit his brother. (He went as a visitor, not as a prisoner.)
○ Sarah's father goes **to church** every Sunday. (for a religious service)	○ Some workmen went to **the church** to repair the roof. (a specific building)

With most other places, you need **the**. For example, **the station**, **the cinema** (see Units 72C and 73D).

C

We say **go to bed** / **be in bed** etc. (*not* the bed):
○ I'm going **to bed** now. Goodnight.
○ Do you ever have breakfast **in bed**?

but

○ I sat down on **the bed**. (a specific piece of furniture)

go to work / **be at work** / **start work** / **finish work** etc. (*not* the work):
○ Chris didn't go to **work** yesterday.
○ What time do you usually finish **work**?

go home / **come home** / **arrive home** / **get home** / **be** (**at**) **home** / do something **at home** etc. :
○ It's late. Let's **go home**.
○ I don't go out to work. I work **at home**.

the ➜ Units 72–73, 75–78 Prepositions (**at school** / **in hospital** etc.) **➜ Units 123–125**
home ➜ Unit 126C American English **➜ Appendix 7**

Exercises

74.1 Complete the sentences with school or the school.

1 Why aren't your children at ....school.... today? Are they ill?
2 When he was younger, Ben hated .... , but he enjoys it now.
3 There were some parents waiting outside .... to meet their children.
4 What time does .... start in the morning?
5 How do your children get to and from .... ? Do you take them?
6 What was the name of .... you attended?
7 What does Emily want to do when she leaves .... ?
8 My children walk to .... isn't very far.

74.2 Which is right?

1 a Where is ~~university~~ / the university? Is it near here? (the university *is correct*)
b Neil left school and got a job. He didn't want to go to university / the university.
c In your country, what proportion of the population study at university / the university?
d This is a small town, but university / the university is the biggest in the country.

2 a My brother has always been healthy. He's never been in hospital / the hospital.
b When my friend was ill, I went to hospital / the hospital to see her.
c When I was visiting my friend, I met Lisa, who is a nurse at hospital / the hospital.
d I saw an accident. A woman was injured and was taken to hospital / the hospital.

3 a Why is she in prison / the prison? What crime did she commit?
b There was a fire at prison / the prison. Firefighters were called to put it out.
c Do you think too many people are sent to prison / the prison?

4 a John's mother is a regular churchgoer. She goes to church / the church every Sunday.
b John himself doesn't go to church / the church.
c The village is very nice. You should visit church / the church. It's interesting.

74.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

1 How did you get ....home.... after the party?
2 How do you usually go .... in the morning? By bus?
3 Sam likes to go to .... early and get up early.
4 I don't have my phone. I left it ....
5 'Have you seen my keys?' 'Yes, they're on ....'
6 Shall we meet .... tomorrow evening?
7 I like to read .... before going to sleep.
8 It was a long tiring journey. We arrived .... very late.
9 Tom usually finishes .... at five o'clock.
10 It's nice to travel around, but there's no place ....

bed
the bed
in bed
~~home~~
home
at home
like home
work
to work
after work

74.4 Complete the sentences. Choose at/in/to + hospital, school etc.

bed **home** **~~hospital~~** **hospital** **prison** **school** **university** **work**

1 Kate's mother has to have an operation. She'll be ....in hospital.... for a few days.
2 In your country, from what age do children have to go .... ?
3 Mark didn't go out last night. He stayed ....
4 There is a lot of traffic in the morning when people are going ....
5 When Sophie leaves school, she wants to study psychology ....
6 Ben never gets up before 9 o'clock. It's 8.30 now, so he is still ....
7 The accident wasn't serious. Nobody had to go ....
8 If people commit crimes, they may end up ....

➜ Additional exercise 29 (page 319)

Unit
75

the 3 (children / the children)

A

When we are talking about things or people in general, we do *not* use **the**:

☐ I'm afraid of **dogs**. (*not* the dogs)
(**dogs** = dogs in general, not a specific group of dogs)
☐ **Doctors** are usually paid more than **teachers**.
☐ Do you know anybody who collects **stamps**?
☐ **Life** has changed a lot in the last thirty years.
☐ Do you like **classical music** / **Chinese food** / **fast cars**?
☐ My favourite sport is **football**/**skiing**/**athletics**.
☐ My favourite subject at school was **history**/**physics**/**English**.

We say '**most** people / **most** shops / **most** big cities' etc. (*not* the most . . .):
☐ **Most shops** accept credit cards. (*not* The most shops)

B

We use **the** when we mean specific things or people.
Compare:

In general (without **the**)	*Specific people or things* (with **the**)
☐ **Children** learn from playing. (= children in general)	☐ We took **the children** to the zoo. (= a specific group, perhaps the speaker's children)
☐ I couldn't live without **music**.	☐ The film wasn't very good, but I liked **the music**. (= the music in the film)
☐ All **cars** have wheels.	☐ All **the cars in this car park** belong to people who work here.
☐ **Sugar** isn't very good for you.	☐ Can you pass **the sugar**, please? (= the sugar on the table)
☐ **English people** drink a lot of tea. (= English people in general)	☐ **The English people I know** drink a lot of tea. (= only the English people I know, not English people in general)

C

The difference between 'something in general' and 'something specific' is not always very clear.
Compare:

In general (without **the**)	*Specific people or things* (with **the**)
☐ I like working with **people**. (= people in general)	
☐ I like working with **people who say what they think**. (not all people, but 'people who say what they think' is still a general idea)	☐ I like **the people I work with**. (= a specific group of people)
☐ Do you like **coffee**? (= coffee in general)	
☐ Do you like **strong black coffee**? (not all coffee, but 'strong black coffee' is still a general idea)	☐ **The coffee we had after dinner** wasn't very good. (= specific coffee)

the 1–2 ➔ **Units 73–74** **the** + adjective (**the young** / **the English** etc.) ➔ **Unit 76**

Exercises

75.1 Choose four of these things and write what you think about them:

bananas
~~hot weather~~
boxing
maths
cats
opera
crowds
snow
fast food
supermarkets
horror movies
zoos

Use: **I like … / I don't like …** **I think … is/are …** **I don't mind …**
I love … / I hate … **I'm (not) interested in …**

1 I don't like hot weather very much.
2 ……
3 ……
4 ……
5 ……

75.2 Which is right?

1 a Apples / ~~The apples~~ are good for you. (Apples *is correct*)
b Look at apples / the apples on that tree. They're very big.
2 a Who are people / the people in this picture?
b It annoys me when people / the people throw rubbish on the ground.
3 a My memory isn't good. I'm not good at remembering names / the names.
b What were names / the names of those people we met last night?
4 a First World War / The First World War began in 1914 and ended in 1918.
b A pacifist is somebody who is against war / the war.
5 a He's lazy. He doesn't like hard work / the hard work.
b Did you finish work / the work you were doing yesterday?

75.3 Complete the sentences using the following. Use **the** where necessary.

~~(the) **basketball**~~
(the) **questions**
(the) **biology**
(the) **grass**
(the) **meat**
(the) **water**
(the) **patience**
~~(the) **information**~~
(the) **spiders**
(the) **people**
(the) **hotels**
(the) **lies**

1 My favourite sport is basketball .
2 The information we were given wasn't correct.
3 Some people are afraid of …… .
4 A vegetarian is somebody who doesn't eat …… .
5 The test wasn't hard. I answered …… without difficulty.
6 Do you know …… who live in the flat next to yours?
7 …… is the study of plants and animals.
8 It's better to tell the truth. Telling …… often causes problems.
9 We couldn't find anywhere to stay in the town. …… were all full.
10 Don't swim in this pool. …… doesn't look very clean.
11 Don't sit on …… . It's wet after the rain.
12 You need …… to teach young children.

75.4 Which is right?

1 Steve is very good at telling stories / the stories.
2 I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
3 Don't stay in that hotel. It's noisy and rooms / the rooms are very small.
4 I don't have a car, so I use public transport / the public transport most of the time.
5 All books / All the books on the top shelf belong to me.
6 Life / The life is strange sometimes. Some very strange things happen.
7 We enjoyed our holiday. Weather / The weather was good.
8 Everybody needs water / the water to live.
9 I don't like films / the films with unhappy endings.

➜ **Additional exercise 29** (page 319)

Unit 76

the 4 (**the giraffe** / **the telephone** / **the old** etc.)

A

Study these sentences:

- **The giraffe** is the tallest of all animals.
- **The bicycle** is an excellent means of transport.
- When was **the camera** invented?
- **The dollar** is the currency of the United States.

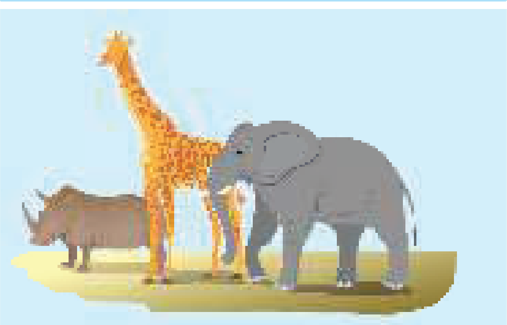

In these examples, **the** . . . does not mean one specific thing.
The giraffe = a specific type of animal, not a specific giraffe.
We use **the** . . . in this way to talk about a type of animal, machine etc.

In the same way we use **the** for musical instruments:

- Can you play **the** guitar?
- **The** piano is my favourite instrument.

Compare **a** and **the**:

- I'd like to have **a piano**. *but* I can't play **the piano**.
- We saw **a giraffe** at the zoo. *but* **The giraffe** is my favourite animal.

Note that **man** (without **the**) = human beings in general, the human race:

- What do you know about the origins of **man**? (*not* the man)

B

the old, **the rich** etc.

We use **the** + *adjective* (without a noun) to talk about groups of people. For example:

the old	**the rich**	**the homeless**	**the sick**
the elderly	**the poor**	**the unemployed**	**the injured**

the old = old people, **the rich** = rich people etc. :

- Do you think **the rich** should pay higher taxes?
- We need to do more to help **the homeless**.

Note that we say: the **old** (*not* the olds), the **poor** (*not* the poors) etc.

The rich, **the homeless** etc. are *plural*. For one person, we say:
a rich **man** (*not* a rich) **a** homeless **person** (*not* a homeless)

C

the French, **the Chinese** etc.

We use **the** + a few nationality adjectives that end in -**ch** or -**sh**. For example:
the French **the Dutch** **the British** **the English** **the Spanish**

The meaning is *plural* – the people of that country.

- **The French** are famous for their food. (*not* French are . . .)

We do not say 'a French' or 'an English' (*singular*). For example, we say:

- I met **a** French **woman** / **an** English **guy**.

We also use **the** + nationality words ending in -**ese** or -**ss**. For example:
the Chinese **the Portuguese** **the Swiss**
These words can also be singular (**a Chinese**, **a Swiss** etc.).

With other nationality words, the plural ends in -**s** (usually without **the**). For example:
an Italian → **Italians** a Mexican → **Mexicans** a Thai → **Thais**

- **Italians** / **Mexicans** / **Thais** are very friendly.

In all cases you can use *adjective* + **people**. For example, you can say:

- **French** / **Chinese** / **Mexican** people are very friendly.

a/an and **the** ➜ **Unit 72** **the** ➜ **Units 73–75** Names with and without **the** ➜ **Units 77–78**

Exercises

76.1 Answer the questions. Choose the right answer from the box. Don't forget **the**.

1		2		3		4	
animals		*birds*		*inventions*		*currencies*	
tiger	elephant	eagle	penguin	telephone	wheel	dollar	peso
rabbit	cheetah	swan	owl	telescope	laser	euro	rupee
giraffe	kangaroo	parrot	pigeon	helicopter	typewriter	rouble	yen

1 a Which of the animals is the tallest? ....the giraffe..........
b Which animal can run the fastest? ....
c Which of these animals is found in Australia? ....
2 a Which of these birds has a long neck? ....
b Which of these birds cannot fly? ....
c Which bird flies at night? ....
3 a Which of these inventions is the oldest? ....
b Which one is the most recent? ....
c Which one was especially important for astronomy? ....
4 a What is the currency of India? ....
b What is the currency of Canada? ....
c And the currency of your country? ....

76.2 Put in **the** or **a**.

1 When was .....the..... telephone invented?
2 Can you play .... musical instrument?
3 Jessica plays .... violin in an orchestra.
4 There was .... piano in the corner of the room.
5 I wish I could play .... piano.
6 Our society is based on .... family.
7 Martin comes from .... large family.
8 .... computer has changed the way we live.
9 When was .... bicycle invented?
10 Do you have .... car?

76.3 Complete these sentences. Use **the** + adjective. Choose from:

elderly **injured** **rich** **sick** **unemployed** ~~**young**~~

1 .....The young..... have the future in their hands.
2 Helen is a nurse. She's spent her life caring for ....
3 Life is all right if you have a job, but things are hard for ....
4 Ambulances arrived at the scene of the accident and took ....
to hospital.
5 More and more people are living longer. How are we going to care for .... ?
6 It's nice to have lots of money, but .... have their problems too.

76.4 What do you call the people of these countries?

	one person (**a**/**an** . . .)	*the people in general*
1 Canada	a Canadian	Canadians
2 Germany	....	....
3 France	....	....
4 Russia	....	....
5 Japan	....	....
6 Brazil	....	....
7 England	....	....
8 and your country	....	....

Names with and without **the** 1

A

We do *not* use **the** with names of people ('Helen', 'Helen Taylor' etc.). In the same way, we do *not* use **the** with most names of places. For example:

continents	**Africa** (*not* the Africa), **South America**
countries, states etc.	**France** (*not* the France), **Japan**, **Texas**
islands	**Sicily**, **Tasmania**
cities, towns etc.	**Cairo**, **Bangkok**
mountains	**Everest**, **Kilimanjaro**

But we normally use **the** in names with **Republic**, **Kingdom**, **States** etc. :

the Czech **Republic**
the Dominican **Republic**
the United **Kingdom** (**the** UK)
the United **States** of America (**the** USA)

Compare:

- Have you been to **Canada** or **the United States**?

B

When we use **Mr**/**Ms**/**Captain**/**Doctor** etc. + a name, we do not use **the**. So we say:

Mr Johnson / **Doctor** Johnson / **Captain** Johnson / **President** Johnson etc. (*not* the ...)
Uncle Robert / **Saint** Catherine / **Queen** Catherine etc. (*not* the ...)

Compare:

- We called **the doctor**.
  We called **Doctor** Johnson. (*not* the Doctor Johnson)

We use **Mount** (= mountain) and **Lake** before a name in the same way (without **the**):

Mount Everest (*not* the ...) **Mount** Etna **Lake** Superior **Lake** Victoria

- They live near **the lake**.
  They live near **Lake Superior**. (*not* the Lake Superior)

C

We use **the** with the names of oceans, seas, rivers and canals:

the Atlantic (Ocean)
the Indian Ocean
the Mediterranean (Sea)
the Red Sea
the Channel (between France and Britain)
the Amazon
the Nile
the Suez Canal

We use **the** with the names of deserts:

the Sahara (Desert) **the** Gobi Desert

D

We use **the** with *plural* names of people and places:

people	**the** Taylor**s** (= the Taylor family), **the** Johnson**s**
countries	**the** Netherland**s**, **the** Philippine**s**, **the** United State**s**
groups of islands	**the** Canarie**s** (*or* **the** Canary Island**s**), **the** Bahama**s**
mountain ranges	**the** Ande**s**, **the** Alp**s**, **the** Ural**s**

- The highest mountain in **the Andes** is (**Mount**) **Aconcagua**.

E

We say:

the north (of Brazil) *but* **northern** Brazil (*without* the)
the southeast (of Spain) *but* **southeastern** Spain

Compare:

- Sweden is in **northern Europe**; Spain is in **the south**.

We also use **north**/**south** etc. (*without* **the**) in the names of some regions and countries:

North America **South Africa** **southeast Asia**

Note that on maps, **the** is not usually included in the name.

Names with and without **the** 2 ➜ **Unit 78**

Exercises

77.1 Which is right?

1 Who is Doctor Johnson / ~~the Doctor Johnson~~? (Doctor Johnson *is correct*)
2 I was ill. Doctor / The doctor told me to rest for a few days.
3 Doctor Thomas / The Doctor Thomas is an expert on heart disease.
4 I'm looking for Professor Brown / the Professor Brown. Do you know where she is?
5 In the United States, President / the President is elected for four years.
6 President Kennedy / The President Kennedy was assassinated in 1963.
7 The officer I spoke to at the police station was Inspector Roberts / the Inspector Roberts.
8 Do you know Wilsons / the Wilsons? They're a very nice couple.
9 Julia spent three years as a student in United States / the United States.
10 France / The France has a population of about 66 million.

77.2 Some of these sentences are OK, but some need the (sometimes more than once). Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Everest was first climbed in 1953. .... OK
2 Milan and Turin are cities in north of Italy. .... in the north of Italy
3 Africa is much larger than Europe. ....
4 Last year I visited Mexico and United States. ....
5 Southern England is warmer than north. ....
6 Thailand and Cambodia are in southeast Asia. ....
7 Chicago is on Lake Michigan. ....
8 Next year we're going skiing in Swiss Alps. ....
9 UK consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. ....
10 Seychelles are a group of islands in Indian Ocean. ....
11 I've never been to South Africa. ....
12 River Volga flows into Caspian Sea. ....

77.3 Here are some geography questions. Choose the right answer from one of the boxes and use the if necessary. You do not need all the names in the boxes.

continents	*countries*	*oceans and seas*	*mountains*	*rivers and canals*	
Africa	Canada	~~Atlantic~~	Alps	Amazon	Rhine
Asia	Denmark	Indian Ocean	Andes	Danube	Thames
Australia	Indonesia	Pacific	Himalayas	Nile	Volga
Europe	Sweden	Black Sea	Rockies	Suez Canal	
North America	Thailand	Mediterranean	Urals	Panama Canal	
South America	United States	Red Sea			

1 What do you have to cross to travel from Europe to America? .... the Atlantic
2 Where is Argentina? ....
3 Which is the longest river in Africa? ....
4 Of which country is Stockholm the capital? ....
5 Of which country is Washington the capital? ....
6 What is the name of the mountain range in the west of North America? ....
7 What is the name of the sea between Africa and Europe? ....
8 Which is the smallest continent in the world? ....
9 What is the name of the ocean between North America and Asia? ....
10 What is the name of the ocean between Africa and Australia? ....
11 Which river flows through London? ....
12 Which river flows through Vienna, Budapest and Belgrade? ....
13 Of which country is Bangkok the capital? ....
14 What joins the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans? ....
15 Which is the longest river in South America? ....

Unit 78

Names with and without **the** 2

A

Names without **the**

We do not use **the** with names of most city streets/roads/squares/parks etc. :

Union Street (*not* the . . .)
Abbey Road
Fifth Avenue
Broadway
Hyde Park
Times Square

Names of many public buildings and institutions (airports, stations, universities etc.), and also some geographical names, are two words:

Manchester Airport
Harvard University

The first word is the name of a place ('Manchester') or a person ('Harvard'). These names are usually without **the**. In the same way, we say:

Victoria Station (*not* the . . .)
Buckingham Palace
Canterbury Cathedral
Cambridge University
Edinburgh Castle
Sydney Harbour

Compare:

Buckingham Palace (*not* the . . .) *but* **the Royal Palace**
('Royal' is an adjective – it is not a name like 'Buckingham'.)

B

Most other buildings have names with **the**. For example:

hotels	**the** Sheraton Hotel, **the** Holiday Inn
theatres/cinemas	**the** Palace Theatre, **the** Odeon (cinema)
museums	**the** Guggenheim Museum, **the** National Gallery
other buildings	**the** Empire State (Building), **the** White House, **the** Eiffel Tower

We often leave out the noun:

the Sheraton (Hotel)
the Palace (Theatre)
the Guggenheim (Museum)

Some names are only **the** + *noun*, for example:

the Acropolis
the Kremlin
the Pentagon

C

Names with **of** usually have **the**. For example:

the Bank **of** England
the Great Wall **of** China
the Museum **of** Modern Art
the Tower **of** London

Note that we say:

the University **of** Cambridge *but* **Cambridge University** (*without* **the**)

D

Many shops, restaurants, hotels etc. are named after people. These names end in **-'s** or **-s**. We do not use **the** with these names:

McDonald's (*not* the . . .)
Joe's Diner (restaurant)
Barclays (bank)
Macy's (department store)

Churches are often named after saints (St = Saint):

St John's Church (*not* the . . .)
St Patrick's Cathedral

E

Most newspapers and many organisations have names with **the**:

the Washington Post
the European Union
the Financial Times
the BBC
the Sun (newspaper)
the Red Cross

Names of companies, airlines etc. are usually without **the**:

Fiat (*not* the Fiat)
Kodak
Sony
IBM
Singapore Airlines
Yale University Press

Names with and without **the** 1 ➜ **Unit 77**

Exercises

78.1 **Use the map to answer the questions. Write the name of the place and the street it is in. Use the if necessary. (Remember that on maps we do not normally use the.)**

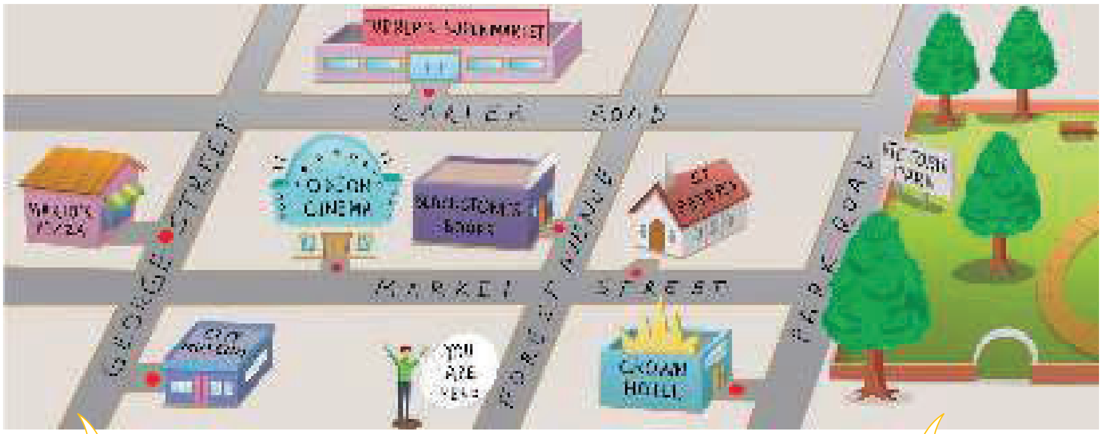

1	Is there a cinema near here?	Yes, the Odeon in Market Street .
2	Is there a supermarket near here?	Yes, …… in …… .
3	Is there a hotel near here?	Yes, …… in …… .
4	Is there a church near here?	Yes, …… .
5	Is there a museum near here?	Yes, …… .
6	Is there a bookshop near here?	Yes, …… .
7	Is there a restaurant near here?	Yes, …… .
8	Is there a park near here?	Yes, …… at the end of …… .

78.2 **Where are the following? Use the where necessary.**

Acropolis **Broadway** **Buckingham Palace** **Eiffel Tower**
Kremlin **White House** **Gatwick Airport** **~~Times Square~~**

1 Times Square is in New York.
2 …… is in Paris.
3 …… is in London.
4 …… is in Washington.
5 …… is in Moscow.
6 …… is in New York.
7 …… is in Athens.
8 …… is near London.

78.3 **Which is right?**

1 Have you ever been to ~~Science Museum~~ / the Science Museum? (the Science Museum *is correct*)
2 Many tourists in London visit St Paul's Cathedral / the St Paul's Cathedral.
3 The biggest park in New York is Central Park / The Central Park.
4 I'd like to go to China and see Great Wall / the Great Wall.
5 Dublin Airport / The Dublin Airport is situated about 12 kilometres from the city centre.
6 'Which cinema are we going to this evening?' 'Classic / The Classic.'
7 Jack is a student at Liverpool University / the Liverpool University.
8 You should go to National Museum / the National Museum. It's very interesting.
9 If you're looking for a department store, I would recommend Harrison's / the Harrison's.
10 Andy is a flight attendant. He works for Cathay Pacific / the Cathay Pacific.
11 'Which newspaper do you want?' 'Morning News / The Morning News.'
12 We went to Italy and saw Leaning Tower / the Leaning Tower of Pisa.
13 This book is published by Cambridge University Press / the Cambridge University Press.
14 The building across the street is College of Art / the College of Art.
15 Imperial Hotel / The Imperial Hotel is in Baker Street / the Baker Street.
16 Statue of Liberty / The Statue of Liberty is at the entrance to New York Harbor / the New York Harbor.

➜ **Additional exercise 29** (page 319)

Unit
79

Singular and plural

A

Sometimes we use a *plural* noun for one thing that has two parts. For example:

trousers *(two legs)*
also **jeans**/**tights**/**shorts**/**pants**

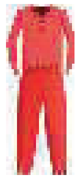

pyjamas
(top and bottom)

glasses

binoculars

scissors

These words are plural, so they take a plural verb:

○ My trousers **are** too long. (*not* My trousers is)

You can also use **a pair of** + these words:

○ **Those are** nice **jeans**. *or* That**'s a** nice **pair of** jeans. (*not* a nice jeans)
○ I need **some** new **glasses**. *or* I need **a** new **pair of** glasses.

B

Some nouns end in **-ics**, but are not usually plural. For example:

athletics **gymnastics** **economics** **politics**
physics **electronics** **maths** (= mathematics)

○ **Gymnastics is** my favourite sport. (*not* Gymnastics are)

News is not plural (see Unit 70B):

○ I have **some news** for you. **It's** good news!

Some words that end in **-s** can be singular or plural. For example:

means	**a means** of transport	**many means** of transport
series	**a** TV **series**	**two** TV **series**
species	**a species** of fish	**200 species** of fish

C

Some singular nouns are often used with a plural verb. For example:

audience **committee** **company** **family** **firm** **government** **staff** **team**

These nouns are all groups of people. We often think of them as a number of people (= they), not as one thing (= it). So we often use a plural verb:

○ **The government** (= they) **have decided** to increase taxes.
○ **The staff** at the company (= they) **are** not happy with **their** working conditions.

In the same way, we often use a plural verb after the name of a company or a sports team:

○ **Shell have** increased the price of petrol.
○ **Italy are** playing Brazil next Sunday (in a football match).

You can also use a singular verb (The government **wants** ... / Shell **has** ... etc.).

We use a plural verb with **police**:

○ **The police are** investigating the crime, but **haven't** arrested anyone yet.
(*not* The police is ... hasn't)

Note that we say **a police officer** / **a policeman** / **a policewoman** (*not* a police).

D

We do not often use the plural of **person** ('persons'). We normally use **people** (a *plural* word):

○ He's **a** nice **person**. *but* They are nice **people**. (*not* nice persons)
○ **Many people don't** have enough to eat. (*not* Many people doesn't)

E

We think of a sum of money, a period of time, a distance etc. as *one* thing. So we use a singular verb:

○ **Fifty thousand pounds** (= it) **was** stolen in the robbery. (*not* were stolen)
○ **Three years** (= it) **is** a long time to be without a job. (*not* Three years are)
○ **Two miles isn't** very far to walk.

American English → **Appendix 7**

Exercises

79.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

1 My eyesight is getting worse. I need ......glasses........ .
2 The trousers you bought for me .... fit me.
3 The jacket you bought for me .... fit me.
4 I need .... scissors to cut this piece of material.
5 I can't find my binoculars. Have you seen ....?
6 I went shopping and bought a .... of jeans.
7 Where .... my sunglasses?
8 I went shopping and bought .... pair of pyjamas.
9 I don't know much about politics. I'm not interested in ....

a
are
them
doesn't
pair
it
~~**glasses**~~
some
don't

79.2 Complete the sentences. Use a word from section B (news, series etc.).

1 'Have you heard the ......news......?' 'No. What's happened?'
2 The bicycle is a .... of transport.
3 A lot of American TV .... are shown in other countries.
4 The tiger is an endangered ....
5 There will be a .... of meetings to discuss the problem.
6 Fortunately the .... wasn't as bad as we expected.
7 How many .... of bird are there in the world?
8 I didn't have my phone, so I had no .... of contacting you.

79.3 Choose the correct form of the verb, singular or plural. In three sentences either the singular or plural verb is possible.

1 Gymnastics is / ~~are~~ my favourite sport. (is *is correct*)
2 My new glasses doesn't / don't fit very well.
3 The police want / wants to interview two men about the robbery.
4 Physics was / were my favourite subject at school.
5 It's a nice place to visit. The people is / are very friendly.
6 Germany is / are playing Spain tomorrow night. Are you going to watch it?
7 Does / Do the police know how the accident happened?
8 Where do / does your family live?
9 Most people enjoy / enjoys music.
10 I like this cafe. The staff here is / are really friendly and efficient.

79.4 Complete the sentences. Use is or isn't, and choose from the box.

1 Three years ....is a long time.... to be without a job.
2 Thirty degrees .... for Tom. He doesn't like hot weather.
3 Ten dollars .... We need more than that.
4 Four days .... for a holiday. You need at least a week.
5 Twenty kilos .... Are you sure you can manage?

a lot to carry
enough money
too hot
long enough
~~**a long time**~~

79.5 Are these sentences OK? Correct them where necessary.

1 Three years are a long time to be without a job. ......Three years is a long time......
2 The committee want to change the rules of the club. ......OK (wants *is also correct*)......
3 Susan was wearing a black jeans. ....
4 I like Martin and Jane. They're very nice persons. ....
5 I'm going to buy some new pyjamas. ....
6 There was a police directing traffic in the street. ....
7 This scissors isn't very sharp. ....
8 The company have decided to open a new factory. ....
9 This plant is very rare species. ....
10 Twelve hours are a long time to be on a plane. ....

Unit 80

Noun + noun (a **bus driver** / a **headache**)

A

You can use two nouns together (*noun* + *noun*) to mean *one* thing/person/idea etc. :

a **bus driver** **income tax** the **city centre** an **apple tree**

The first noun is like an adjective. It tells us what kind of thing/person/idea etc. :

a **bus driver** = the driver of a bus
income tax = tax that you pay on your income
the **city centre** = the centre of the city
an **apple tree** = a tree that has apples
a **Paris hotel** = a hotel in Paris
my **life story** = the story of my life

So you can say:

a **television** camera a **television** programme a **television** studio a **television** producer
(things or people to do with television)
language **problems** marriage **problems** health **problems** work **problems**
(different kinds of problems)

Sometimes the first word ends in **-ing**:

a **frying** pan (= a pan for frying)
a **washing** machine
a **swimming** pool

B

Sometimes there are more than two nouns together:

☐ I waited at the **hotel reception desk**.
☐ We watched the **World Swimming Championships** on TV.
☐ If you want to play table tennis (= a game), you need **a table tennis table** (= a table).

C

When two nouns are together like this, sometimes we write them as one word and sometimes as two separate words. For example:

a **headache** **toothpaste** a **weekend** a **car park** a **road sign**

There are no clear rules for this. If you are not sure, write two words.

D

Note the difference between:

a **coffee cup** (maybe empty) and a **cup of coffee** (= a cup with coffee in it)
a **shopping bag** (maybe empty) and a **bag of shopping** (= a bag full of shopping)

E

When we use *noun* + *noun*, the first noun is like an *adjective*. It is normally singular, but the meaning is often plural.
For example: a **car park** is a place to park **cars**, an **apple tree** is a tree that has **apples**.

In the same way we say:

a **three-hour** journey (= a journey that takes three **hours**)
a **ten-pound** note (= a note with the value of ten **pounds**)
a **four-week** course
a **six-mile** walk
two **14-year-**old girls

Compare:

☐ It was **a** four-**week** course. (*not* a four weeks course)
but The course lasted four **weeks**.

-'s and of … ➜ Unit 81 a week's holiday / three weeks' holiday etc. ➜ Unit 81E

Exercises

80.1 What do we call these things and people?

1 Someone who drives a bus is a bus driver.
2 Problems concerning health are health problems.
3 A ticket to travel by train is a ……………………………….
4 A machine you use to get a ticket is a ……………………………….
5 The staff at a hotel are the ……………………………….
6 The results of your exams are your ……………………………….
7 A horse that runs in races is a ……………………………….
8 A race for horses is a ……………………………….
9 Shoes for running are ……………………………….
10 A shop that sells shoes is a ……………………………….
11 The window of a shop is a ……………………………….
12 A person who cleans windows is a ……………………………….
13 A scandal involving a construction company is ……………………………….
14 Workers at a car factory are ……………………………….
15 A scheme for the improvement of a road is a ……………………………….
16 A department store in New York is a ……………………………….

80.2 Answer the questions using two of the following words each time:

~~accident~~ belt birthday card credit driver
forecast machine number party ring ~~road~~
room seat truck washing weather wedding

1 This could be caused by bad driving. a road accident
2 You should wear this when you're driving. a ……………………………….
3 You can use this to pay for things. a ……………………………….
4 This will tell you if it's going to rain or not. the ……………………………….
5 This is useful if you have a lot of dirty clothes. a ……………………………….
6 This is something you might wear if you're married. a ……………………………….
7 If you're staying at a hotel, you need to remember this. your ……………………………….
8 This is a way to celebrate getting older. a ……………………………….
9 This person transports things by road. a ……………………………….

80.3 Put the words in the right order.

1 I spilt coffee on the living room carpet. (room / carpet / living)
2 Jack likes sport. He plays for his ………………………………. (team / school / football)
3 Anna works for a ………………………………. (company / production / film)
4 Many people invest in a ………………………………. (life / policy / insurance)
5 You can get a map at the ………………………………. (information / office / tourist)

80.4 Which is correct?

1 It's quite a big book. There are more than ~~500 page~~ / 500 pages. (500 pages *is correct*)
2 It's only a two-hour / two hours flight from London to Madrid.
3 It took only two hour / two hours to fly to Madrid.
4 I don't have any change. I only have a twenty-pound / twenty pounds note.
5 I looked down and there were two ten-pound / ten pounds notes on the ground.
6 At work in the morning we usually have a 15-minute / 15 minutes break for coffee.
7 There are 60-minute / 60 minutes in an hour.
8 My office is on the tenth floor of a twelve-storey / twelve storeys building.
9 I work five-day / five days a week. Saturday and Sunday are free.
10 Five-star / Five stars hotels are the most expensive.
11 Sam's daughter is six-year-old / six years old.
12 Sam has a six-year-old / six-years-old daughter.

Unit
81

-’s (**your sister’s** name) and **of** … (the name **of the book**)

A

We use -**’s** (*apostrophe* + **s**) mostly for people or animals:

☐ **Tom’s** computer isn’t working. (*not* the computer of Tom)
☐ How old are **Chris’s** children? (*not* the children of Chris)
☐ What’s (= What is) **your sister’s** name?
☐ What’s **Tom’s sister’s** name?
☐ Be careful. Don’t step on **the cat’s** tail.

You can use -**’s** without a noun after it:

☐ This isn’t my book. It’s **my sister’s**. (= my sister’s book)

We do not use -**’s** after a long group of words. So we say:

my friend’s mother
but the mother **of the man we met yesterday** (*not* the man we met yesterday’s mother)

Note that we say **a woman’s hat** (= a hat for a woman), **a boy’s name** (= a name for a boy), **a bird’s egg** (= an egg laid by a bird) etc.

B

With a *singular* noun we use -**’s**:

my **sister’s** room (= **her** room – *one sister*)
Mr Carter’s house (= **his** house)

With a *plural* noun (sister**s**, friend**s** etc.) we put an apostrophe (**’**) after **s**:

my sisters’ room (= **their** room – *two or more* sisters)
the Carters’ house (= **their** house – *Mr and Mrs Carter*)

If a plural noun does not end in -**s** (for example **men**/**women**/**children**/**people**) we use -**’s**:

the **men’s** changing room   a **children’s** book (= a book for children)

You can use -**’s** after more than one noun:

Jack and Karen’s children   **Mr and Mrs Carter’s** house

C

For things, ideas etc., we normally use **of**:

the temperature **of the water** (*not* the water’s temperature)
the name **of the book**   the owner **of the restaurant**

We say **the beginning**/**end**/**middle of** … / **the top**/**bottom of** … / **the front**/**back**/**side of** … :

the beginning of the month (*not* the month’s beginning)
the top of the hill   **the back of** the car

D

You can usually use -**’s** or **of** … for an organisation (= a group of people). So you can say:

the government’s decision *or* the decision **of the government**
the company’s success *or* the success **of the company**

We also use -**’s** for places. So you can say:

the city’s streets   **the world’s** population   **Italy’s** prime minister

E

We use -**’s** with time words (**yesterday** / **next week** etc.):

☐ Do you still have **yesterday’s** newspaper?
☐ **Next week’s** meeting has been cancelled.

In the same way, you can say **today’s** / **tomorrow’s** / **this evening’s** / **Monday’s** etc.

We also use -**’s** (or -**s’** with plural words) with periods of time:

☐ I’ve got **a week’s holiday** starting on Monday.
☐ Julia has got **three weeks’ holiday**.
☐ I live near the station – it’s only **ten minutes’ walk**.

Noun + noun (a **bus driver**) ➜ **Unit 80**   a **three-hour** journey, a **ten-pound** note ➜ **Unit 80E**
-**’s** (= **is** or **has**) in short forms ➜ **Appendix 5.2**

Exercises

81.1 **In some of these sentences, it is more natural to use -'s or -'. Change the underlined parts where necessary.**

1 Who is the owner of this restaurant? ..... OK .....
2 How old are the children of Chris? ..... Chris's children .....
3 Is this the umbrella of your friend? ....
4 Write your name at the top of the page. ....
5 I've never met the daughter of James. ....
6 How old is the son of Helen and Andy? ....
7 We don't know the cause of the problem. ....
8 I don't know the words of this song. ....
9 The friends of your children are here. ....
10 What is the cost of a new washing machine? ....
11 The garden of our neighbours is very small. ....
12 The hair of David is very long. ....
13 I work on the ground floor of the building. ....
14 I couldn't go to the party of my best friend. ....
15 George is the brother of somebody I knew at college. ....
16 Have you seen the car of the parents of Ben? ....
17 What is the meaning of this expression? ....
18 Do you agree with the policy of the government? ....

81.2 **Which is right?**

1 Don't step on the ..... cat's ..... tail. (cat / cat's / cats')
2 It's my .... birthday tomorrow. (father / father's / fathers')
3 Those .... look nice. Shall we buy some? (apples / apple's / apples')
4 .... clothes are expensive. (Children / Children's / Childrens')
5 Zurich is .... largest city. (Switzerland / Switzerland's / Switzerlands')
6 Your .... parents are your grandparents. (parents / parent's / parents')
7 I took a lot of .... when I was on holiday. (photos / photo's / photos')
8 This isn't my coat. It's .... (someone else / someone else's / someone elses')
9 Have you read any of .... poems? (Shakespeare / Shakespeare's / Shakespeares')

81.3 **Read each sentence and write a new sentence beginning with the underlined words.**

1 The meeting tomorrow has been cancelled.
..... Tomorrow's meeting has been cancelled. .....
2 The storm last week caused a lot of damage.
Last ....
3 The only cinema in the town has closed down.
The ....
4 The weather in Britain is very changeable.
....
5 Tourism is the main industry in the region.
....

81.4 **Use the information given to complete the sentences.**

1 If I leave my house at 9 o'clock and drive to the airport, I arrive at about 11.
So it's about ..... two hours' drive ..... from my house to the airport. (drive)
2 If I leave my house at 8.40 and walk to the centre, I get there at 9 o'clock.
So it's .... from my house to the centre. (walk)
3 I'm going on holiday on the 12th. I have to be back at work on the 26th.
So I've got .... (holiday)
4 I went to sleep at 3 o'clock this morning and woke up an hour later. After that I couldn't sleep.
So last night I only had .... (sleep)

Unit 82

myself/yourself/themselves etc.

A

Study this example:

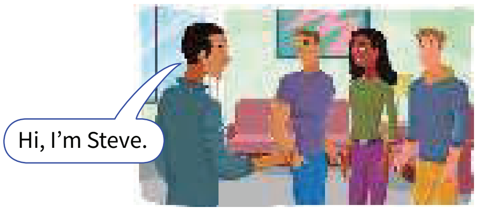

Steve **introduced himself** to the other guests.

We use **myself/yourself/himself** etc. (*reflexive pronouns*) when the *subject* and *object* are the same:

Steve introduced himself
subject *object*

The reflexive pronouns are:

singular (-**self**)	my**self**	your**self** *(one person)*	him**self**/her**self**/it**self**
plural (-**selves**)	our**selves**	your**selves** *(more than one)*	them**selves**

- I don't want you to pay for me. **I**'ll pay for **myself**. (*not* I'll pay for me)
- Amy had a great holiday. **She** really enjoyed **herself**.
- Do **you** talk to **yourself** sometimes? *(said to one person)*
- If you want more to eat, help **yourselves**. *(said to more than one person)*

Compare:

- **Lisa** introduced **me** to the other guests.
- **I** introduced **myself** to the other guests.

B

We do not use **myself** etc. after **feel**/**relax**/**concentrate**/**meet**:

- I **feel** nervous. I can't **relax**.
- You need to **concentrate**. (*not* concentrate yourself)
- What time shall we **meet** tomorrow?

Normally we do not use **myself** etc. after **wash**/**shave**/**dress**:

- He got up, **washed**, **shaved** and **dressed**. (*not* washed himself etc.)

You can also say **get dressed** (He **got dressed**).

C

Compare -**selves** and **each other**:

- Kate and Joe stood in front of the mirror and looked at **themselves**.
  (= *Kate and Joe together* looked at *Kate and Joe*)
- Kate looked at Joe, and Joe looked at Kate. They looked at **each other**.

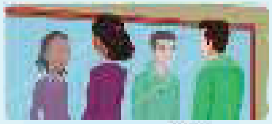

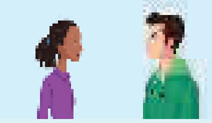

You can use **one another** instead of **each other**:

- How long have you and Ben known **each other**? *or* ... known **one another**?
- Sue and Alice don't like **each other**. *or* ... don't like **one another**.
- Do they live near **each other**? *or* ... near **one another**?

D

We also use **myself/yourself** etc. in another way. For example:

- 'Who repaired your bike?' '**I** repaired it **myself**.'

I repaired it myself = I repaired it, not another person. Here, **myself** is used to emphasise 'I' (= it makes it stronger). Some more examples:

- I'm not going to do your work for you. **You** can do it **yourself**. (= you, not me)
- **Let's** paint the house **ourselves**. It will be much cheaper.
- **The film itself** wasn't very good, but I loved the music.
- I don't think Lisa will get the job she applied for. **Lisa** doesn't think so **herself**. *or* **Lisa herself** doesn't think so.

get dressed / get married etc. ➜ Unit 44D by myself / by yourself etc. ➜ Unit 83D

Exercises

82.1 Complete the sentences using myself/yourself etc. + these verbs (in the correct form):

blame   burn   enjoy   express   hurt   ~~introduce~~   put

1 Steve introduced himself to the other guests at the party.
2 Ben fell down some steps, but fortunately he didn't ....
3 It isn't Sue's fault. She really shouldn't ....
4 Please try and understand how I feel. You have to .... in my position.
5 The children had a great time at the beach. They really ....
6 Be careful! That pan is hot. Don't ....
7 Sometimes I can't say exactly what I mean. I wish I could .... better.

82.2 Put in myself/yourself/ourselves etc. or me/you/us etc.

1 Amy had a great holiday. She enjoyed herself .
2 It's not my fault. You can't blame ....
3 What I did was really bad. I'm ashamed of ....
4 We have a problem. I hope you can help ....
5 'Can I take another biscuit?' 'Of course. Help ....!'
6 I want you to meet Sarah. I'll introduce .... to her.
7 Don't worry about us. We can take care of ....
8 Don't worry about the children. I'll take care of ....
9 I gave them a key to our house so that they could let .... in.

82.3 Complete these sentences. Use myself/yourself etc. where necessary. Choose from:

concentrate   defend   dry   ~~enjoy~~   feel   meet   relax   ~~shave~~

1 Neil grew a beard because he was fed up with shaving .
2 Amy had a great holiday. She enjoyed herself .
3 I wasn't very well yesterday, but I .... much better today.
4 I climbed out of the swimming pool and .... with a towel.
5 I tried to study, but I couldn't ....
6 If somebody attacks you, you have the right to ....
7 I'm going out with Chris this evening. We're .... at 7.30.
8 You're always rushing. Why don't you sit down and .... ?

82.4 Complete the sentences with ourselves/themselves or each other.

1 How long have you and Ben known each other ?
2 If people work too hard, they can make .... ill.
3 I need you and you need me. We need ....
4 In Britain friends often give .... presents at Christmas.
5 Some people are selfish. They only think of ....
6 Tracy and I don't see .... very often these days.
7 We couldn't get back into the house. We had locked .... out.
8 They've had an argument. Now they're not speaking to ....
9 We'd never met before, so we introduced .... to ....

82.5 Complete the sentences using myself/yourself etc. Use the verb in brackets.

1 'Who repaired the bike for you?' 'Nobody. I repaired it myself .' (repair)
2 I didn't buy this cake from a shop. I .... (make)
3 'Who told you Laura was going away?' 'Laura ....' (tell)
4 I don't know what they're going to do. I don't think they .... (know)
5 'Who cuts Paul's hair for him?' 'Nobody. He ....' (cut)
6 'Can you phone Sam for me?' 'Why can't you .... ?' (do)

➜ **Additional exercise 30** (page 320)

Unit
83

a friend **of mine** **my own** house **on my own / by myself**

A **a friend of mine** / **a friend of yours** etc.

We say '(a friend) **of mine/yours/his/hers/ours/theirs**'.
A friend of mine = one of my friends:

☐ I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. **A friend of mine** is getting married. (*not* a friend of me)
☐ We went on holiday with **some friends of ours**. (*not* some friends of us)
☐ Harry had an argument with **a neighbour of his**.
☐ It was **a good idea of yours** to go to the cinema.

In the same way we say '(a friend) **of my sister's** / (a friend) **of Tom's**' etc. :

☐ That woman over there is **a friend of my sister's**. (= one of my sister's friends)
☐ It was **a good idea of Tom's** to go to the cinema.

B **my own** . . . / **your own** . . . etc.

We say **my own** / **your own** / **her own** . . . etc. :

my own house **your own** car **her own** room
(*not* an own house, an own car etc.)

my own . . . / **your own** . . . etc. = something that is only mine/yours, not shared or borrowed:

☐ I don't want to share a room with anybody. I want **my own room**.
☐ Vicky and Gary would like to have **their own house**.
☐ It's a shame that the apartment hasn't got **its own parking space**.
☐ It's **my own fault** that I have no money. I buy too many things I don't need.
☐ Why do you want to borrow my car? Why don't you use **your own**? (= your own car)

You can also say 'a room **of my own**', 'a house **of your own**', 'problems **of his own**' etc. :

☐ I'd like to have a room **of my own**.
☐ He won't be able to help you with your problems. He has too many problems **of his own**.

C He cuts **his own** hair

We also use **own** to say that we do something ourselves instead of somebody else doing it for us. For example:

☐ Paul usually cuts **his own hair**.
(= he cuts it himself)
☐ I'd like to have a garden so that
I could grow **my own vegetables**.
(= grow them myself instead of
buying them from shops)

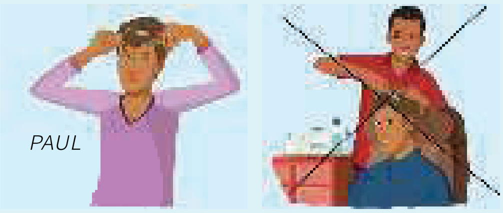

D **on my own** / **by myself**

On my own and **by myself** both mean 'alone'. So you can say:

on { my / your
his / her / its
our / their } **own**

or

by { myself / yourself *(singular)*
himself / herself / itself
ourselves / yourselves *(plural)* / themselves

☐ I like living **on my own**. *or* I like living **by myself**.
☐ Some people prefer to live **on their own**. *or* . . . live **by themselves**.
☐ Jack was sitting **on his own** in a corner of the cafe. *or* Jack was sitting **by himself** . . .
☐ Did you go on holiday **on your own**? *or* Did you go on holiday **by yourself**?

myself/yourself/themselves etc. ➜ **Unit 82**

Exercises

83.1 Change the underlined words and use the structure ... of mine/yours etc.

1	I'm meeting one of my friends tonight.	I'm meeting a friend of mine tonight.
2	We met one of your relatives.	We met a ....
3	Jason borrowed one of my books.	Jason borrowed ....
4	I met Lisa and some of her friends.	I met Lisa and ....
5	We had dinner with one of our neighbours.	We had dinner with ....
6	I went on holiday with two of my friends.	I went on holiday with ....
7	I met one of Amy's friends at the party.	I met .... at the party.
8	It's always been one of my ambitions to travel round the world.	It's always been .... to travel round the world.

83.2 Complete the sentences using my own / our own etc. + the following:

~~bathroom~~ business opinions private beach words

1 I share a kitchen, but I have my own bathroom.
2 Gary doesn't think like me. He has ....
3 Julia doesn't want to work for other people. She wants to start ....
4 In the test we had to read a story, and then write it in ....
5 We stayed at a luxury hotel by the sea. The hotel had ....

83.3 Complete the sentences using my own / your own etc.

1 Why do you need to borrow my car? Why don't you use your own car?
2 How can you blame me? It's not my fault. It's ....
3 She's always using my ideas. Why can't she use .... ?
4 Please don't worry about my problems. I'm sure you have ....
5 I can't make his decisions for him. He has to make ....

83.4 Complete the sentences using my own / your own etc. Use the verbs in brackets.

1 Paul never goes to a barber. He cuts his own hair. (cut)
2 Helen doesn't often buy clothes. She likes to .... (make)
3 I'm not going to clean your shoes. You can .... (clean)
4 We don't often buy bread. We usually .... (bake)
5 Jack and Joe are singers. They sing songs written by other people, but they also .... (write)

83.5 Complete the sentences using my own / your own etc. or myself/yourself etc.

1 Did you go on holiday on your own?
2 The box was too heavy for me to lift by ....
3 We had no help decorating the apartment. We did it completely on ....
4 Very young children should not go swimming by ....
5 'Who was Tom with when you saw him?' 'Nobody. He was by ....'
6 I don't like strawberries with cream. I like them on ....
7 Do you like working with other people or do you prefer working by .... ?
8 I went out with Sally because she didn't want to go out on ....

83.6 Are these sentences OK? Correct them where necessary.

1	Katherine would like to have the own house.	... to have her own house.
2	Sam and Chris are colleagues of me.	....
3	I was scared. I didn't want to go out by my own.	....
4	In my last job I had own office.	....
5	He must be lonely. He's always with himself.	....
6	My parents have gone away with some friends of them.	....
7	Are there any countries that produce all own food?	....

Unit
84
there . . . and **it** . . .

A

Study this example:

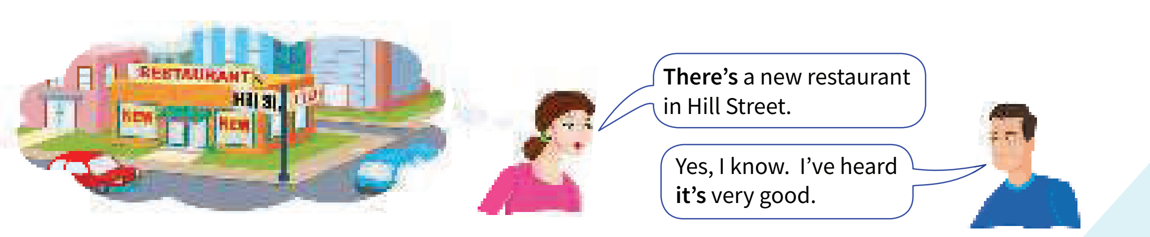
RESTAURANT
NEW
NEW
Hill St.
There's a new restaurant in Hill Street.
Yes, I know. I've heard it's very good.

We use **there** . . . when we talk about something for the first time, to say that it exists:

- **There's** a new restaurant in Hill Street.
- I'm sorry I'm late. **There was** a lot of traffic. (*not* It was a lot of traffic)
- Things are very expensive now. **There has been** a big rise in the cost of living.

It = a specific thing, place, fact, situation etc. :

- We went to the new restaurant. **It's** very good. (**It** = the restaurant)
- I wasn't expecting her to call me. **It** was a complete surprise. (**It** = that she called)

Compare **there** and **it**:

- I like this town. **There**'s a lot to do here. **It**'s an interesting place.

There also means 'to/at/in that place':

- The house is unoccupied. There's nobody living **there**. (= in the house)

B

You can say:

there will be	**there must have been**	**there is sure to be**	**there is likely to be**
there must be	**there should have been**	**there is bound to be**	**there is supposed to be**
there might be etc.	**there would have been** etc.	**there is going to be**	**there used to be**

- '**Is there** a flight to Rome tonight?' '**There might be**. I'll check online.'
- If people drove more carefully, **there wouldn't be** so many accidents.
- I could hear music coming from the house. **There must have been** somebody at home.
- **There's bound to be** a cafe somewhere near here. (= There's **sure** to be . . .)

Compare **there** and **it**:

- They live on a busy road. **There must be** a lot of noise from the traffic.
  They live on a busy road. **It must be** very noisy. (**It** = living on a busy road)
- **There used to be** a cinema here, but it closed a few years ago.
  That building is now a supermarket. **It used to be** a cinema. (**It** = that building)
- **There's sure to be** a flight to Rome tonight.
  There's a flight to Rome tonight, but **it's sure to be** full. (**it** = the flight)

C

We say:

- **It**'s dangerous **to walk in the road**. (*not* To walk in the road is dangerous)

Normally we use **It** . . . at the beginning of sentences like this. Some more examples:

- **It** didn't take us long **to get** here.
- **It**'s a shame (**that**) **you can't come to the party**.
- **It**'s not worth **waiting any longer**. Let's go.

We also use **it** to talk about distance, time and weather:

- **How far is it** from here to the airport?
- **It's a long time** since we last saw you.

Compare **it** and **there**:

- **It** was **windy**. *but* **There** was **a cold wind**.

supposed to . . . ➜ **Unit 45B** **it's worth** / **it's no use** / **there's no point** ➜ **Unit 63A**
sure to / **bound to** . . . etc. ➜ **Unit 65E** **there is** + **-ing**/**-ed** ➜ **Unit 97**

Exercises

84.1 Put in **there is**/**was** or **it is**/**was**. Some sentences are questions (**is there … ?** / **was it … ?** etc.) and some are negative (**there isn't** / **it wasn't** etc.).

1 The journey took a long time. There was a lot of traffic.
2 What's the new restaurant like? Is it good?
3 …………………… something wrong with the washing machine. It's not working properly.
4 I wanted to visit the museum yesterday, but …………………… enough time.
5 What's that new building over there? …………………… a hotel?
6 How can we get across the river? …………………… a bridge?
7 A few days ago …………………… a big storm, which caused a lot of damage.
8 I can't find my phone. …………………… in my bag – I just looked.
9 …………………… anything interesting on TV, so I turned it off.
10 …………………… often very cold here, but …………………… much snow.
11 I couldn't see anything. …………………… completely dark.
12 '…………………… a bookshop near here?' 'Yes, …………………… one in Hudson Street.'
13 …………………… difficult to get a job right now. …………………… a lot of unemployment.
14 When we got to the cinema, …………………… a queue outside. …………………… a very long queue, so we decided not to wait.

84.2 Read the first sentence and then write a sentence beginning **There …** .

1 The roads were busy yesterday. There was a lot of traffic.
2 This soup is very salty. There …………………… in the soup.
3 The box was empty. …………………… in the box.
4 About 50 people came to the meeting. …………………… at the meeting.
5 The film is very violent. ……………………
6 I like this town – it's lively. ……………………

84.3 Complete the sentences. Use **there would be**, **there used to be** etc. Choose from:

won't **may** ~~**would**~~ **wouldn't** **should** **used to** **is going to**

1 If people drove more carefully, there would be fewer accidents.
2 'Do we have any eggs?' 'I'm not sure. …………………… some in the fridge.'
3 I think everything will be OK. …………………… any problems.
4 Look at those clouds. …………………… a storm. I'm sure of it.
5 There isn't a school in the village. …………………… one, but it closed a few years ago.
6 People drive too fast on this road. I think …………………… a speed limit.
7 If people weren't so aggressive, …………………… any wars.

84.4 Are these sentences OK? Change **it** to **there** where necessary.

1 They live on a busy road. It must be a lot of noise. There must be a lot of noise.
2 It's a long way from my house to the nearest shop. OK
3 After the lecture it will be an opportunity to ask questions. ……………………
4 Why was she so unfriendly? It must have been a reason. ……………………
5 I like where I live, but it would be nicer to live by the sea. ……………………
6 How long is it since you last went to the theatre? ……………………
7 It used to be a lot of tourists here, but not many come now. ……………………
8 My phone won't work here. It's no signal. ……………………
9 It was Ken's birthday yesterday. We had a party. ……………………
10 We won't have any problem parking the car. It's sure to be a car park somewhere. ……………………
11 I'm sorry about what happened. It was my fault. ……………………
12 I was told that it would be somebody to meet me at the station, but it wasn't anybody. ……………………

Unit
85

some and **any**

A

In general we use **some** (*also* **somebody**/**someone**/**something**) in positive sentences and **any** (*also* **anybody** etc.) in negative sentences:

some	any
We **bought some** flowers.	We **didn't** buy **any** flowers.
He's busy. He **has some** work to do.	He's lazy. He **never** does **any** work.
There**'s somebody** at the door.	There **isn't anybody** at the door.
I **want something** to eat.	I **don't** want **anything** to eat.

We use **any** in the following sentences because the meaning is negative:

- She went out **without any** money. (she **didn't** take **any** money with her)
- He **refused** to eat **anything**. (he **didn't** eat **anything**)
- It's a very easy exam. **Hardly anybody** fails. (= almost **nobody** fails)

B

We use both **some** and **any** in questions. We use **some**/**somebody**/**something** to talk about a person or thing that we know exists, or we think exists:

- Are you waiting for **somebody**? (I think you are waiting for somebody)

We use **some** in questions when we ask for or offer things:

- Can I have **some** sugar, please? (there is probably some sugar that I can have)
- Would you like **something** to eat? (there is something to eat)

But in most questions, we use **any**. We do not know if the thing or person exists:

- Do you have **any** luggage? (maybe you do, maybe not)
- Is there **anybody** in the house? (maybe there is, maybe not)

C

You can use **if** + **any**:

- Let me know **if** you need **anything**.
- **If anyone** has **any** questions, I'll be pleased to answer them.

The following sentences have the idea of **if**:

- I'm sorry for **any** trouble I've caused. (= **if** I have caused **any** trouble)
- The police want to speak to **anyone** who saw the accident. (= **if** there is **anyone**)

D

We also use **any** with the meaning 'it doesn't matter which':

- You can take **any** bus. They all go to the centre. (= it doesn't matter which bus you take)
- Come and see me **any** time you want.

We use **anybody**/**anyone**/**anything**/**anywhere** in the same way:

- We forgot to lock the door. **Anybody** could have come in.

Compare **some**- and **any**-:

- A: I'm hungry. I want **something** to eat.
  B: What would you like?
  A: I don't mind. **Anything**. (= it doesn't matter what)
- B: Let's go out **somewhere**.
  A: Where shall we go?
  B: **Anywhere**. I just want to go out.

E

Somebody/**someone**/**anybody**/**anyone** are singular words:

- **Someone** is here to see you.

But we use **they**/**them**/**their** after these words:

- **Someone** has forgotten **their** umbrella. (= his or her umbrella)
- If **anybody** wants to leave early, **they** can. (= he or she can)

not ... any ➜ Unit 86 some of / any of ... ➜ Unit 88 hardly any ➜ Unit 101C

Exercises

85.1 Put in some or any.

1 We didn't buy ......any...... flowers.
2 Tonight I'm going out with .... friends of mine.
3 Have you seen .... good movies recently?
4 I'd like .... information about what there is to see in this town.
5 I didn't have .... money. I had to borrow ....
6 You can use your card to withdraw money at .... cash machine.
7 Those apples look nice. Shall we get .... ?
8 With the special tourist train ticket, you can travel on .... train you like.
9 'Can I have .... more coffee, please?' 'Sure. Help yourself.'
10 If there are .... words you don't understand, look them up in a dictionary.
11 We wanted to buy .... grapes, but they didn't have .... in the shop.

85.2 Complete the sentences with some- or any- + -body/-thing/-where.

1 I was too surprised to say ......anything...... .
2 There's .... at the door. Can you go and see who it is?
3 Does .... mind if I open the window?
4 I can't drive and I don't know .... about cars.
5 You must be hungry. Why don't I get you .... to eat?
6 Emma is very tolerant. She never complains about ....
7 There was hardly .... on the beach. It was almost deserted.
8 Let's go away. Let's go .... warm and sunny.
9 I'm going out now. If .... asks where I am, tell them you don't know.
10 Why are you looking under the bed? Have you lost .... ?
11 This is a no-parking area. .... who parks their car here will have to pay a fine.
12 Quick, let's go! There's .... coming and I don't want .... to see us.
13 They stay at home all the time. They never seem to go ....
14 Jonathan stood up and left the room without saying ....
15 'Can I ask you .... ?' 'Sure. What do you want to ask?'
16 Sarah was upset about .... and refused to talk to ....
17 I need .... to translate. Is there .... here who speaks English?
18 Sue is very secretive. She never tells .... (*2 words*)

85.3 Complete the sentences. Use any (+ noun) or anybody/anything/anywhere.

1	Which bus do I have to take?	......Any bus...... . They all go to the centre.
2	When shall we meet? Monday?	I don't mind. .... next week will be OK for me.
3	What do you want to eat?	.... I don't mind. Whatever you have.
4	Who shall I invite to the party?	It's your party. You can invite .... you want.
5	What sort of job are you looking for?	.... It doesn't matter what it is.
6	Where shall I sit?	It's up to you. You can sit .... you like.
7	Is this machine difficult to use?	No, it's easy. .... can learn to use it very quickly.

Unit 86

no/none/any **nothing/nobody** etc.

A

no and **none**

We use **no** + *noun* (**no bus**, **no shops** etc.).
no = **not a** or **not any**:

- We had to walk home. There was **no bus**. (= There **wasn't a** bus.)
- Sarah will have **no trouble** finding a job. (= Sarah **won't** have **any** trouble . . .)
- There were **no shops** open. (= There **weren't any** shops open.)

You can use **no** + *noun* at the beginning of a sentence:

- **No reason** was given for the change of plan.

We use **none** *without* a noun:

- 'How much money do you have?' '**None**.' (= no money)
- All the tickets have been sold. There are **none** left. (= no tickets left)

Or we use **none of** . . . :

- This money is all yours. **None of it** is mine.

Compare **no**, **none** and **any**:

- I have **no luggage**.
- 'How much luggage do you have?' '**None**.' *or* 'I **don't** have **any**.'

After **none of** + *plural* (none of **the students**, none of **them** etc.) the verb can be singular or plural:

- None of the students **were** happy. *or* None of the students **was** happy.

B

nothing **nobody/no-one** **nowhere**

You can use these words at the beginning of a sentence or alone (as answers to questions):

- 'What's going to happen?' '**Nobody** knows. / **No-one** knows.'
- 'What happened?' '**Nothing**.'
- 'Where are you going?' '**Nowhere**. I'm staying here.'

You can also use these words after a verb, especially after **be** and **have**:

- The house is empty. There**'s nobody** living there.
- We **had nothing** to eat.

nothing/**nobody** etc. = **not** + **anything**/**anybody** etc. :

- I said **nothing**. = I **didn't** say **anything**.
- Jane told **nobody** about her plans. = Jane **didn't** tell **anybody** about her plans.
- They have **nowhere** to live. = They **don't** have **anywhere** to live.

With **nothing**/**nobody** etc., we do *not* use a negative verb (**isn't**, **didn't** etc.):

- I **said** nothing. (*not* I didn't say nothing)

C

After **nobody**/**no-one** you can use **they**/**them**/**their** (see also Unit 85E):

- **Nobody** is perfect, are **they**? (= is he or she perfect?)
- **No-one** did what I asked **them** to do. (= him or her)
- **Nobody** in the class did **their** homework. (= his or her homework)

D

Sometimes **any**/**anything**/**anybody** etc. means 'it doesn't matter which/what/who' (see Unit 85D).
Compare **no**- and **any**-:

- There was **no** bus, so we walked home.
  You can take **any** bus. They all go to the centre. (= it doesn't matter which bus)
- 'What do you want to eat?' '**Nothing**. I'm not hungry.'
  I'm so hungry. I could eat **anything**. (= it doesn't matter what)
- It's a difficult job. **Nobody** wants to do it.
  It's a very easy job. **Anybody** can do it. (= it doesn't matter who)

>> **some** and **any** ➜ **Unit 85** **none of** . . . ➜ **Unit 88** **any bigger** / **no better** etc. ➜ **Unit 106B**

Exercises

86.1 Complete these sentences with no, none or any.

1 It was a public holiday, so there were ……no…… shops open.
2 I don't have ……any…… money. Can you lend me some?
3 We had to walk home. There were …………………… taxis.
4 We had to walk home. There weren't …………………… taxis.
5 'How many eggs do we have?' '…………………… . Shall I get some?'
6 There's nowhere to cross the river. There's …………………… bridge.
7 We took a few pictures, but …………………… of them were very good.
8 'Did you take lots of pictures?' 'No, I didn't take …………………… .'
9 I had to do what I did. I had …………………… alternative.
10 I don't like …………………… of this furniture. It's horrible.
11 We cancelled the party because …………………… of the people we invited were able to come.
12 Everyone knows they are getting married. It's …………………… secret.
13 The two books are exactly the same. There isn't …………………… difference.
14 'Do you know where Chris is?' 'I'm sorry. I have …………………… idea.'

86.2 Answer these questions using none/nobody/nothing/nowhere.

1	What did you do at the weekend?	……Nothing……. It was very boring.
2	Who are you waiting for?	…………………… . I'm just standing here.
3	How much bread did you buy?	…………………… . We already have enough.
4	Where are you going?	…………………… . I'm staying here.
5	How many books have you read this year?	…………………… . I don't read books.
6	How much does it cost to get into the museum?	…………………… . It's free.

Now answer the same questions using any/anybody/anything/anywhere.

7 (1) ……I didn't do anything.……
8 (2) I'm ……………………………………
9 (3) I ……………………………………
10 (4) ……………………………………
11 (5) ……………………………………
12 (6) ……………………………………

86.3 Complete these sentences with no- or any- + -body/-thing/-where.

1 I don't want ……anything…… to drink. I'm not thirsty.
2 The bus was completely empty. There was …………………… on it.
3 'Where did you go for your holidays?' '…………………… . I didn't go away.'
4 'Can you smell gas?' 'No, I can't smell …………………… .'
5 Everybody seemed satisfied. …………………… complained.
6 Let's go away. We can go …………………… you like.
7 The town is still the same as it was years ago. …………………… has changed.
8 'What did you buy?' '…………………… . I couldn't find …………………… I wanted.'
9 There was complete silence in the room. …………………… said …………………… .

86.4 Which is right?

1 She didn't tell ~~nobody~~ / anybody about her plans. (anybody *is correct*)
2 The accident looked bad, but fortunately nobody / anybody was seriously injured.
3 I looked out of the window, but I couldn't see no-one / anyone.
4 The exam is very easy. Nobody / Anybody can pass it.
5 'What's in that box?' 'Nothing / Anything. It's empty.'
6 The future is uncertain. Nothing / Anything is possible.
7 I don't know nothing / anything about economics.
8 I'll try and answer no / any questions you ask me.
9 'Who were you talking to just now?' 'No-one / Anyone. I wasn't talking to no-one / anyone.'

➜ Additional exercise 30 (page 320)

Unit
87

much, many, little, few, a lot, plenty

A

We use **much** and **little** with *uncountable* nouns:

much luck **much time** **little energy** **little money**

We use **many** and **few** with *plural* nouns:

many friends **many people** **few cars** **few children**

We use **a lot of** / **lots of** / **plenty of** with both *uncountable* and *plural* nouns:

a lot of luck **lots of time** **plenty of money**
a lot of friends **lots of people** **plenty of ideas**

plenty = more than enough:

- There's no need to hurry. We've got **plenty of time**.
- There's **plenty to do** in this town.

B

Much is unusual in positive sentences (especially in spoken English). Compare:

- We **didn't** spend **much** money. *but* We **spent a lot of** money.
- **Do** you **see** David **much**? *but* I **see** David **a lot**.

But we use **too much** / **so much** / **as much** in positive sentences:

- We **spent too much** money.

We use **many** and **a lot of** in all kinds of sentences:

- **Many** people drive too fast. *or* **A lot of** people drive too fast.
- Do you know **many** people? *or* Do you know **a lot of** people?
- There aren't **many** tourists here. *or* There aren't **a lot of** tourists here.

Note that we say **many years** / **many weeks** / **many days**:

- We've lived here for **many years**. (*not usually* a lot of years)

C

little = not much, **few** = not many:

- Gary is very busy with his job. He has **little time** for other things.
  (= not much time, less time than he would like)
- Vicky doesn't like living in London. She has **few friends** there.
  (= not many friends, not as many as she would like)

We often use **very little** and **very few**:

- Gary has **very little time** for other things.
- Vicky has **very few friends** in London.

D

a little = some, a small amount:

- Let's go and have coffee. We have **a little** time before the train leaves.
  (**a little time** = some time, enough time to have a coffee)
- 'Do you speak English?' '**A little**.' (so we can talk a bit)

a few = some, a small number:

- I enjoy my life here. I have **a few friends** and we meet quite often.
  (**a few friends** = not many, but enough to have a good time)
- 'When was the last time you saw Clare?' '**A few days** ago.' (= 3 or 4 days ago)

E

Compare **little** and **a little**, **few** and **a few**:

- He spoke **little English**, so it was difficult to communicate with him.
  He spoke **a little English**, so we were able to communicate with him.
- She's lucky. She has **few problems**. (= not many problems)
  Things are not going so well for her. She has **a few problems**. (= some problems)

We say **only a little** (*not* only little) and **only a few** (*not* only few):

- Hurry! We **only** have **a little** time. (= some, but not much time)
- The village was small. There were **only a few** houses. (= some but not many houses)

Countable and uncountable ➜ **Units 69–70**

Exercises

87.1 **In some of these sentences much is incorrect or unnatural. Change much to many or a lot (of) where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is correct.**

1 We didn't eat much. ....OK........
2 My mother drinks much tea. ....My mother drinks a lot of tea.........
3 Be quick. We don't have much time. ....
4 It cost much to repair the car. ....
5 Did it cost much to repair the car? ....
6 You have much luggage. Let me help you. ....
7 There wasn't much traffic this morning. ....
8 I don't know much people in this town. ....
9 Do you eat much fruit? ....
10 Mike likes travelling. He travels much. ....

87.2 **Complete the sentences using plenty of ... or plenty to ... . Choose from:**

hotels learn money room see ~~time~~

1 There's no need to hurry. There's ....plenty of time.........
2 He has no financial problems. He has ....
3 Come and sit with us. There's ....
4 She knows a lot, but she still has ....
5 It's an interesting town to visit. There ....
6 I'm sure we'll find somewhere to stay. ....

87.3 **Put in much/many/little/few (one word only).**

1 She isn't popular. She has ....few.... friends.
2 Anna is very busy these days. She has .... free time.
3 Did you take .... pictures at the wedding?
4 This is a modern city. There are .... old buildings.
5 The weather has been very dry recently. We've had .... rain.
6 I don't know London well. I haven't been there for .... years.
7 The two cars are similar. There is .... difference between them.
8 I'm not very busy today. I don't have .... to do.
9 It's a wonderful place to live. There are .... better places to be.

87.4 **Which is right?**

1 She's lucky. She has few problems / ~~a few problems~~. (few problems *is correct*)
2 Can you lend me few dollars / a few dollars?
3 It was the middle of the night, so there was little traffic / a little traffic.
4 They got married few years ago / a few years ago.
5 I can't give you a decision yet. I need little time / a little time to think.
6 I don't know much Russian – only few words / only a few words.
7 It was a surprise that he won the game. Few people / A few people expected him to win.

87.5 **Put in little / a little / few / a few.**

1 Gary is very busy with his job. He has ....little.... time for other things.
2 Listen carefully. I'm going to give you .... advice.
3 Do you mind if I ask you .... questions?
4 It's not a very interesting place, so .... tourists visit.
5 I don't think Amy would be a good teacher. She has .... patience.
6 'Would you like milk in your coffee?' 'Yes, ..., please.'
7 This is a boring place to live. There's .... to do.
8 I know Hong Kong quite well. I've been there .... times.
9 There were only .... people at the meeting.
10 'Did you do all this work on your own?' 'No, I had .... help from my friends.'

Unit
88

all / all of most / most of no / none of etc.

A

all some any most much many (a) little (a) few no

You can use these words with a noun (**some food** / **few books** etc.):

☐ **All cars** have wheels.
☐ **Some cars** can go faster than others.
☐ **Many people** drive too fast.
☐ I go away **most weekends**.
☐ I feel really tired. I've got **no energy**.

We do not say 'all of cars', 'some of people' etc. (see Section B):

☐ **Some people** learn more easily than others. (*not* Some of people)

B

all half some any most much many (a) little (a) few none

You can use these words with **of** (**some of** / **most of** etc.):

some of	+	**the** . . .	**my** . . .
most of		**this** . . .	**these** . . .
none of etc.		**that** . . .	**those** . . . etc.

So you can say:

some **of the people**, some **of those people** (*but not* some of people)
most **of my time**, most **of the time** (*but not* most of time)

☐ **Some of the people I work with** are very strange.
☐ **None of this money** is mine.
☐ Have you read **any of these books**?
☐ I was ill yesterday. I spent **most of the day** in bed.

You don't need **of** after **all** or **half**. So you can say:

☐ **All my friends** live near here. *or* All **of** my friends . . .
☐ **Half this money** is mine. *or* Half **of** this money . . .

Compare:

☐ **All flowers** are beautiful. (= all flowers in general)
All (**of**) **these flowers** are beautiful. (= a specific group of flowers)
☐ **Most problems** have a solution. (= most problems in general)
We were able to solve **most of the problems we had**. (= a specific group of problems)

C

You can use **all of** / **some of** / **none of** etc. + **it**/**us**/**you**/**them**:

all of **some of** **any of** **most of** **none of** etc.	+	**it** **us** **you** **them**

☐ A: Do you like this music?
B: **Some of it**. Not **all of it**.
☐ A: How many of these people do you know?
B: **None of them**. / **A few of them**.
☐ Do **any of you** want to come to a party tonight?
(said to more than 2 people)

We say: **all of us** / **all of you** / **half of it** / **half of them** etc. You need **of** before **it**/**us**/**you**/**them**:

☐ **All of us** were late. (*not* all us)
☐ I haven't finished the book yet. I've only read **half of it**. (*not* half it)

D

We also use **some**/**most** etc. alone, *without* a noun:

☐ Some cars have four doors and **some** have two.
☐ A few of the shops were open, but **most** (of them) were closed.
☐ Half this money is mine, and **half** (of it) is yours. (*not* the half)

all ➜ **Unit 75B, 90, 110D** **some** and **any** ➜ **Unit 85** **no** and **none** ➜ **Unit 86**
much/many/little/few ➜ **Unit 87** **all of whom** / **most of which** etc. ➜ **Unit 96B**

Exercises

88.1 Put in of where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.

1 All ......–...... cars have wheels. *(the sentence is already complete)*
2 None ......of...... this money is mine.
3 There were problems at the airport and some .... flights were cancelled.
4 Some .... the films I've seen recently have been very violent.
5 Joe never goes to museums. He says that all .... museums are boring.
6 I think some .... people watch too much TV.
7 Do you want any .... these magazines or can I throw them away?
8 Kate has lived in London most .... her life.
9 Joe has lived in Chicago all .... his life.
10 Most .... days I get up before 7 o'clock.
11 I usually have a little .... sugar in my coffee.
12 They won the lottery a few years ago, but they've spent most .... the money.

88.2 Choose from the list and complete the sentences. Use of (some of / most of etc.) where necessary.

accidents
birds
~~cars~~
European countries
her friends
her opinions
my dinner
my spare time
the buildings
the players
the population
~~these books~~

1 I haven't read many ......of these books...... .
2 All ......cars...... have wheels.
3 I spend much .... gardening.
4 Many .... are caused by bad driving.
5 It's a historic town. Many .... are over 400 years old.
6 When Emily got married, she kept it a secret. She didn't tell any ....
7 Not many people live in the north of the country. Most .... live in the south.
8 Not all .... can fly. For example, the penguin can't fly.
9 Our team played badly and lost the game. None .... played well.
10 Emma and I have different ideas. I don't agree with many ....
11 Sarah travels a lot in Europe. She has been to most ....
12 I had no appetite. I could only eat half ....

88.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 The building was damaged in the explosion. All ......the windows...... were broken.
2 We argue sometimes, but get on well most of ....
3 I went to the cinema by myself. None of .... wanted to come.
4 The test was hard. I could only answer half ....
5 Some of .... you took at the wedding were really good.
6 'Did you spend all .... I gave you?' 'No, there's some left.'

88.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

all of / some of / none of + it/them/us (all of it / some of them etc.)

1 These books are all Sarah's. ......None of them...... belong to me.
2 'How many of these books have you read?' '.. . Every one.'
3 We all got wet in the rain because .... had an umbrella.
4 Some of this money is yours and .... is mine.
5 Many of my friends have travelled a lot, but .... has ever been to Africa.
6 Not all the tourists in the group were Spanish. .... were French.
7 I watched most of the film, but not ....
8 He told us his life story, but .... was true. It was all invented.

Unit 89

both / both of neither / neither of either / either of

A

We use **both**/**neither**/**either** for *two* things.
You can use these words with a *noun* (**both books**, **neither book** etc.).

For example, you are going out to eat. There are two possible restaurants. You say:

- **Both restaurants** are good. (*not* the both restaurants)
- **Neither restaurant** is expensive.
- We can go to **either restaurant**. I don't mind. (= one or the other, it doesn't matter which)
- I haven't been to **either restaurant** before. (= not one or the other)

You can also use **both**/**neither**/**either** without a noun:

- 'Which do you prefer, basketball or tennis?' 'It's hard to say. I like **both**.'
- 'Is your friend British or American?' '**Neither**. She's Australian.'
- 'Do you want tea or coffee?' '**Either**. I don't mind.'

B

both of . . . / **neither of** . . . / **either of** . . .

We use **both of** / **neither of** / **either of** + **the**/**these**/**my**/**Tom's** . . . etc. So we say 'both of **the** restaurants', 'both of **those** restaurants' etc. (*but not* both of restaurants):

- **Both of these** restaurants are good.
- **Neither of the** restaurants we went to was expensive.
- I haven't been to **either of those** restaurants.

You don't need **of** after **both**. So you can say:

- **Both of these** restaurants are good. *or* **Both these** restaurants are good.

We also use **both of** / **neither of** / **either of** + **us**/**you**/**them**:

- *(talking to two people)* Can **either of you** speak Russian?
- I asked two people how to get to the station, but **neither of them** knew.

We say 'both **of**' before **us**/**you**/**them** (you need to use **of**):

- **Both of us** were tired. (*not* Both us were . . .)

After **neither of** . . . a verb can be singular or plural:

- Neither of them **is** at home. *or* Neither of them **are** at home.

C

You can say:

both . . . **and** . . .	**Both** Chris **and** Paul were late. I was **both** tired **and** hungry when I arrived home.
neither . . . **nor** . . .	**Neither** Chris **nor** Paul came to the party. There was an accident outside our house, but we **neither** saw **nor** heard anything.
either . . . **or** . . .	I'm not sure where Maria's from. She's **either** Spanish **or** Italian. **Either** you apologise, **or** I'll never speak to you again.

D

Compare **either**/**neither**/**both** (two things) and **any**/**none**/**all** (more than two):

There are **two** good hotels here. You could stay at **either** of them.	There are **many** good hotels here. You could stay at **any** of them.
We tried **two** hotels. **Neither** of them had a room. **Both** of them were full.	We tried **a lot of** hotels. **None** of them had a room. **All** of them were full.

neither do I / I don't either ➜ Unit 51C any ➜ Units 85–86 none ➜ Units 86A, 88 all ➜ Unit 88
both of whom / neither of which ➜ Unit 96B both ➜ Unit 110D

Exercises

89.1 Complete the sentences with both/neither/either.

1 'Do you want tea or coffee?' '..Either.... I really don't mind.'
2 'What day is it today – the 18th or the 19th?' '.......................... It's the 20th.'
3 A: Where did you go on your trip – Korea or Japan?
B: We went to .... A week in Korea and a week in Japan.
4 'Shall we sit in the corner or by the window?' '.......................... I don't mind.'
5 'Where's Lisa? Is she at work or at home?' '.......................... She's away on holiday.'
6 'Is it true that Kate speaks Spanish and Arabic?' 'Yes, she speaks .... fluently.'

89.2 Complete the sentences with both/neither/either. Use of where necessary.

1 ..Both.... my parents are from Egypt.
2 To get to the town centre, you can walk along the river or you can go along the road. You can go .... way.
3 I went to Carl's house twice, but .... times he wasn't at home.
4 .... Tom's parents is English. His father is Polish and his mother is Italian.
5 I saw an accident this morning. One car drove into the back of another. Fortunately .... driver was injured, but .... cars were badly damaged.
6 I have two sisters and a brother. My brother is working, but .... my sisters are still at school.

89.3 Complete the sentences with both/neither/either + of us / of them.

1 I asked two people how to get to the station, but ..neither of them.... knew.
2 I was invited to two parties last week, but I couldn't go to ....
3 There were two windows in the room. It was very warm, so I opened ....
4 Sam and I often play tennis, but we're not very good. .... can play well.
5 I tried two bookshops for the book I wanted to buy, but .... had it.

89.4 Write sentences with both … and … / neither … nor … / either … or … .

1 Chris was late. So was Pat. ..Both Chris and Pat were late.....
2 He didn't say hello, and he didn't smile. ..He neither said hello nor smiled.....
3 It was a boring movie. It was long too.
The movie ....
4 Joe doesn't have a car. Sam doesn't have one either.
....
5 Emily speaks German and she speaks Russian too.
....
6 Ben doesn't watch TV and he doesn't read newspapers.
Ben ....
7 Is that man's name Richard? Or is it Robert? It's one of the two.
That man's name ....
8 I don't have time to go on holiday. And I don't have the money.
I have ....
9 We can leave today or we can leave tomorrow – whichever you prefer.
We ....

89.5 Complete the sentences with neither/either/none/any.

1 We tried a lot of hotels, but ..none.... of them had a room.
2 Sam has two sisters, but I haven't met .... of them.
3 Emily has four brothers, but I haven't met .... of them.
4 There were a few shops in the street, but .... of them was open.
5 Spain, Italy, Greece, Turkey – have you been to .... of these countries?
6 I could meet you next Monday or Thursday. Would .... of those days suit you?
7 Mark and I couldn't get into the house because .... of us had a key.

Unit 90

all every whole

A

everybody/**everyone**/**everything** and **all**

We say:

- **Everybody** was happy. *or* **Everyone** was happy. (*not* all were happy)
- He thinks he knows **everything**. (*not* knows all)
- Our holiday was a disaster. **Everything** went wrong. (*not* all went wrong)

We do not often use **all** *alone* in this way. We do not say 'all were happy', 'he knows all' etc.

We use **all** in the following ways:

all + noun (**all cars**, **all my money** etc.)	**All my friends** were happy.
all of + **us**/**you**/**them**	**All of us** were happy.
we/**you**/**they** … **all** … (see also Unit 110D)	**We** were **all** happy.
all about …	He knows **all about computers**.
all … = the only thing(s)	**All I've eaten today** is a banana. (= the only thing I've eaten today)

B

whole and **all**

Whole = complete, entire. We use **whole** mostly with *singular* nouns:

- Did you read **the whole book**? (= all the book, not just a part of it)
- Emily has lived **her whole life** in the same town.
- I was so hungry, I ate **a whole packet** of biscuits. (= a complete packet)

We do not normally use **whole** with *uncountable* nouns (**water**, **food**, **money** etc.).
We say:

- Did you spend **all the money** I gave you? (*not* the whole money)
- I read **all the information** carefully. (*not* the whole information)

We use **the**/**my**/**a** etc. before **whole**. Compare **whole** and **all**:

- I read **the whole** book. *but* I read **all the** information.

C

every day / **all day** / **the whole day**

We use **every** to say how often something happens (**every day** / **every ten minutes** etc.):

- When we were on holiday, we went to the beach **every day**. (*not* all days)
- The bus service is excellent. There's a bus **every ten minutes**.
- We don't see each other very often – about **every six months**.

All day *or* **the whole day** = the complete day from beginning to end:

- We spent **all day** on the beach. *or* We spent **the whole day** …
- Dan was very quiet. He didn't say a word **all evening**. *or* … **the whole evening**.

Note that we say **all day** (*not* all the day), **all week** (*not* all the week) etc.

Compare **all the time** and **every time**:

- They never go out. They are at home **all the time**. (= always, continuously)
- **Every time** I see you, you look different. (= each time, on every occasion)

D

Every/**everybody**/**everyone**/**everything** are *singular* words, so we use a *singular* verb:

- **Every seat** in the theatre **was** taken.
- **Everybody has** arrived. (*not* have arrived)

But we use **they**/**them**/**their** after **everybody**/**everyone**:

- **Everybody** said **they** enjoyed **themselves**. (= everybody enjoyed himself or herself)

Countable and uncountable ➜ **Units 69–70** **all** / **all of** ➜ **Unit 88** **each** and **every** ➜ **Unit 91**
every one ➜ **Unit 91D** **all** ➜ **Unit 110C**

Exercises

90.1 Complete these sentences with all, everything or everybody/everyone.

1 It was a good party. ....Everybody.... had a great time.
2 ....All.... I've eaten today is a banana.
3 .... has their faults. Nobody is perfect.
4 Nothing has changed. .... is the same as it was.
5 Kate told me .... about her new job. It sounds interesting.
6 Can .... write their names on a piece of paper, please?
7 Why are you always thinking about money? Money isn't ....
8 I'm really exhausted. .... I want to do is sleep.
9 When the fire alarm rang, ... left the building immediately.
10 Amy didn't say where she was going. .... she said was that she was going away.
11 We have completely different opinions. I disagree with .... she says.
12 We all did well in the exam. .... in our class passed.
13 We all did well in the exam. .... of us passed.
14 Why are you so lazy? Why do you expect me to do .... for you?

90.2 Write sentences with whole.

1 I read the book from beginning to end. ....I read the whole book.....
2 Everyone in the team played well.
The ....
3 Paul opened a box of chocolates. He started eating. When he finished, there were no chocolates left in the box. He ate ....
4 The police came to the house. They were looking for something. They searched everywhere, every room. They ....
5 Everyone in Ed and Jane's family plays tennis. Ed and Jane play, and so do all their children.
The ....
6 Sarah worked from early in the morning until late in the evening.
....
7 Jack and Lisa had a week's holiday by the sea. It rained from the beginning of the week to the end of the week. It ....

Now write sentences 6 and 7 again using all instead of whole.

8 (6) Sarah ....
9 (7) ....

90.3 Complete these sentences using every with the following:

five minutes ~~**ten minutes**~~ **four hours** **six months** **four years**

1 The bus service is very good. There's a bus ....every ten minutes.... .
2 Tom is ill. He has some medicine. He has to take it ....
3 The Olympic Games take place ....
4 We live near a busy airport. A plane flies over our house ....
5 Martin goes to the dentist for a check-up ....

90.4 Which is right?

1 Did you spend ~~the whole money~~ / all the money I gave you? (all the money *is correct*)
2 Eve works every day / all days except Sunday.
3 I'm tired. I've been working hard all the day / all day.
4 It was a terrible fire. Whole building / The whole building was destroyed.
5 It's a very sad song. Every time / All the time I hear it, it makes me cry.
6 I don't like the weather here. It rains every time / all the time.
7 When I was on holiday, all my luggage / my whole luggage was stolen.

→ Additional exercise 30 (page 320)

Unit
91

each and every

A

Each and **every** are similar. Often it is possible to use **each** or **every**:

☐ **Each** time I see you, you look different. *or* **Every** time I see you …

But **each** and **every** are not exactly the same.

We use **each** when we think of things separately, one by one.

☐ Study **each sentence** carefully.
(= study the sentences one by one)

each = X + X + X + X

Each is more usual for a small number:

☐ There were four books on the table.
Each book was a different colour.

☐ *(in a card game)* At the beginning of the game, **each player** has three cards.

We use **every** when we think of things as a group. The meaning is similar to **all**.

☐ **Every window** in the house was open.
(= all the windows in the house)

every =

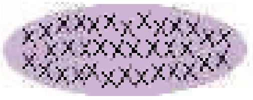

Every is more usual for a large number:

☐ Kate loves reading. She has read **every book** in the library. (= all the books)

☐ I'd like to visit **every country** in the world. (= all the countries)

Each (but not **every**) can be used for two things:

☐ In football, **each team** has eleven players. (*not* every team)

We use **every** (not **each**) to say how often something happens:

☐ 'How often do you use your car?' '**Every day**.' (*not* Each day)

☐ There's a bus **every ten minutes**. (*not* each ten minutes)

B

Compare the structures we use with **each** and **every**.

We use **each** with or without a noun:

☐ None of the rooms are the same.
Each room is different. *or*
Each is different.

Or you can use **each one**:

☐ **Each one** is different.

We say **each of** (**the**/**these**/**them** … etc.):

☐ **Each of the** books was a different colour. (*not* each of books)

☐ **Each of them** was a different colour.

☐ Read **each of these** sentences carefully.

We use **every** with a noun:

☐ She's read **every book** in the library.

We don't use **every** alone, but you can say **every one**:

☐ A: Have you read all these books?
B: Yes, **every one**.

We say **every one of** … (*but not* every of):

☐ I've read **every one of those** books.
(*not* every of those books)

☐ I've read **every one of them**.

C

We also use **each** in the middle of a sentence. For example:

☐ The students were **each** given a book. (= Each student was given a book.)

We say **a dollar each**, **ten pounds each** etc. :

☐ These oranges are **40 pence each**. (**each** = for one orange)

D

everyone and **every one**

Everyone (one word) is only for people (= everybody).

☐ **Everyone** enjoyed the party. (= **Everybody** …)

Every one (two words) is for things or people:

☐ Sarah is invited to lots of parties and she goes to **every one**. (= to **every party**)

each other ➜ **Unit 82C** **all** and **every** ➜ **Unit 90**

Exercises

91.1 **Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with each or every.**

1
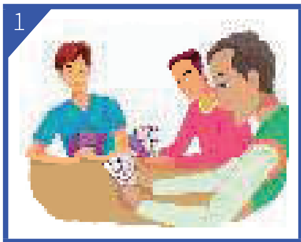

2
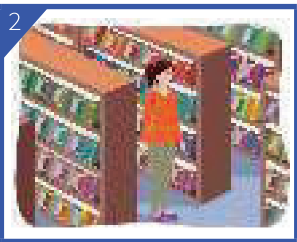

3
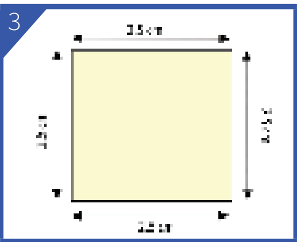

4
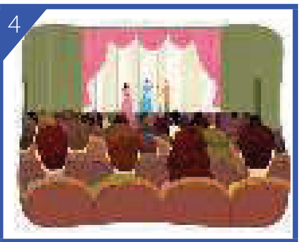

5
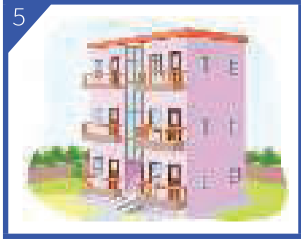

6
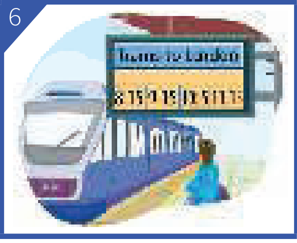

7
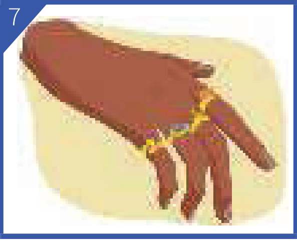

8
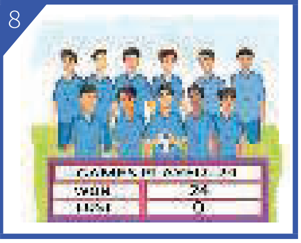

1 ……Each…… player has three cards.
2 Kate has read ……every…… book in the library.
3 …………………… side of a square is the same length.
4 …………………… seat in the theatre was taken.
5 There are six apartments in the building. …………………… one has a balcony.
6 There's a train to London …………………… hour.
7 She was wearing four rings – one on …………………… finger.
8 Our football team is playing well. We've won …………………… game this season.

91.2 **Put in each, each of or every.**

1 There were four books on the table. ……Each…… book was a different colour.
2 The Olympic Games are held ……every…… four years.
3 …………………… parent worries about their children.
4 In a game of tennis there are two or four players. …………………… player has a racket.
5 Nicola plays volleyball …………………… Thursday evening.
6 I understood most of what they said but not …………………… word.
7 The book is divided into five parts and …………………… these has three sections.
8 I get paid …………………… four weeks.
9 I called the office two or three times, but …………………… time it was closed.
10 Car seat belts save lives. …………………… driver should wear one.
11 A friend of mine has three children. I always give …………………… them a present at Christmas.
12 *(from an exam)* Answer all five questions. Write your answer to …………………… question on a separate sheet of paper.

91.3 **Complete the sentences using each.**

1 The price of one of those oranges is 40 pence. ……Those oranges are 40 pence each…… .
2 I had ten pounds and so did Sonia. Sonia and I …………………………………………… .
3 One of those postcards costs a pound. Those …………………………………………… .
4 The hotel was expensive. I paid 200 dollars and so did you. We …………………………………………… .

91.4 **Put in everyone (1 word) or every one (2 words).**

1 Sarah is invited to a lot of parties and she goes to ……every one…… .
2 I remember school very clearly. I remember …………………… in my class.
3 I asked her lots of questions and she answered …………………… correctly.
4 Amy is very popular. …………………… likes her.
5 I dropped a tray of glasses. Unfortunately …………………… broke.

Unit
92

Relative clauses 1: clauses with **who/that/which**

A

Study this example situation:

Last week we had a party and a lot of people came. Everybody enjoyed it.

Everybody **who came to the party** enjoyed it.
relative clause

A *clause* is a part of a sentence. A *relative clause* tells us which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:

the woman **who lives next door to me**
('who lives next door to me' tells us which woman)
people **who complain all the time**
('who complain all the time' tells us what kind of people)

We use **who** in a relative clause for people (not things):

☐ **The woman who** lives next door to me is a doctor.
☐ I don't like **people who** complain all the time.
☐ An architect is **someone who** designs buildings.
☐ What was the name of **the person who** called?
☐ Do you know **anyone who** wants to buy a car?

We also use **that** for people, but not **which**:

☐ The woman **that lives next door to me** is a doctor. (*not* the woman which)

Sometimes you must use **who** (*not* that) for people – see Unit 95.

B

When we are talking about things, we use **that** or **which** (*not* who) in a relative clause:

☐ I don't like **stories that** have unhappy endings.
or . . . **stories which** have unhappy endings.
☐ Grace works for **a company that** makes furniture.
or . . . **a company which** makes furniture.
☐ **The machine that** broke down is working again now.
or **The machine which** broke down . . .

In these examples **that** is more usual than **which**, but sometimes you must use **which**. See Unit 95.

C

In relative clauses we use **who**/**that**/**which**, not **he**/**she**/**they**/**it**.
Compare:

☐ I met a Canadian woman at the party. **She** is an English teacher. *(2 sentences)*
I met **a Canadian woman who** is an English teacher. *(1 sentence)*
☐ I can't find the keys. **They** were on the table.
Where are **the keys that** were on the table? (*not* the keys they were)

D

What = the thing(s) that

Compare **what** and **that**:

☐ **What happened** was my fault. (= the thing that happened)

but

☐ Everything **that happened** was my fault.
(*not* Everything what happened)
☐ The machine **that broke down** is now working again.
(*not* The machine what broke down)

Relative clauses 2–5 ➜ **Units 93–96**

Exercises

92.1 What do these words mean? Choose from the box and write sentences with **who**.

steals from a shop	buys something from a shop
~~designs buildings~~	pays rent to live somewhere
doesn't tell the truth	breaks into a house to steal things
is not brave	expects the worst to happen

1 (an architect) An architect is someone who designs buildings.
2 (a customer) ……
3 (a burglar) ……
4 (a coward) ……
5 (a tenant) ……
6 (a shoplifter) ……
7 (a liar) ……
8 (a pessimist) ……

92.2 Make one sentence from two. Use **who**/**that**/**which**.

1 A girl was injured in the accident. She is now in hospital.
The girl who was injured in the accident is now in hospital.
2 A waiter served us. He was impolite and impatient.
The ……
3 A building was destroyed in the fire. It has now been rebuilt.
The ……
4 Some people were arrested. They have now been released.
The ……
5 A bus goes to the airport. It runs every half hour.
The ……

92.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and use **who**/**that**/**which**.

happened in the past	~~makes furniture~~
runs away from home	can support life
cannot be explained	has stayed there
developed the theory of relativity	were hanging on the wall

1 Helen works for a company that makes furniture.
2 The movie is about a girl …… .
3 What happened to the pictures …… ?
4 A mystery is something …… .
5 I've heard it's a good hotel, but I don't know anyone …… .
6 History is the study of things …… .
7 Albert Einstein was the scientist …… .
8 It seems that Earth is the only planet …… .

92.4 Are these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1 I don't like stories who have unhappy endings. stories that have
2 What was the name of the person who phoned? OK
3 Where's the nearest shop who sells bread? ……
4 Dan said some things about me they were not true. ……
5 The driver which caused the accident was fined £500. ……
6 Do you know the person that took these pictures? ……
7 We live in a world what is changing all the time. ……
8 Gary apologised for what he said. ……
9 What was the name of the horse what won the race? ……

Unit
93

Relative clauses 2: clauses with and without **who/that/which**

A

Look at these example sentences from Unit 92:

- **The woman who lives** next door to me is a doctor. (*or* The woman **that** lives . . .)

  The woman lives next door to me — **who** (= the woman) is the *subject*

- Where are **the keys that were** on the table? (*or* . . . the keys **which** were . . .)

  The keys were on the table — **that** (= the keys) is the *subject*

You must use **who**/**that**/**which** when it is the *subject* of the relative clause. You cannot leave out **who**/**that**/**which** in these examples.

B

Sometimes **who**/**that**/**which** is the *object* of the verb. For example:

- **The woman who I wanted to see** was away on holiday.

  I wanted to see the woman — **who** (= the woman) is the *object*
  I is the *subject*

- Did you find **the keys that you lost**?

  you lost the keys — **that** (= the keys) is the *object*
  you is the *subject*

When **who**/**that**/**which** is the object, you can leave it out. So you can say:

- **The woman I wanted to see** was away. *or* The woman **who** I wanted to see . . .
- Did you find **the keys you lost**? *or* . . . the keys **that** you lost?
- **The dress Lisa bought** doesn't fit her very well. *or* The dress **that** Lisa bought . . .
- Is there **anything I can do**? *or* . . . anything **that** I can do?

Note that we say:

the keys you lost (*not* the keys you lost them)
the dress Lisa bought (*not* the dress Lisa bought it)

C

Note the position of prepositions (**to**/**in**/**for** etc.) in relative clauses:

Tom is talking to a woman. Do you know her? (*2 sentences*)

→ Do you know the woman Tom is **talking to**? (*or* . . . the woman **who**/**that** Tom is talking to)

I slept in a bed. It wasn't comfortable. (*2 sentences*)

→ The bed I **slept in** wasn't comfortable. (*or* The bed **that**/**which** I slept in . . .)

- Are these **the books you were looking for**? *or*
  Are these the books **that**/**which** you were . . .
- **The man I was sitting next to on the plane** talked all the time. *or*
  The man **who**/**that** I was sitting next to . . .

Note that we say:

the books **you were looking for** (*not* the books you were looking for them)
the man **I was sitting next to** (*not* the man I was sitting next to him)

D

We say:

- **Everything** (that) **they said** was true. (*not* Everything what they said)
- I gave her **all the money** (that) **I had**. (*not* all the money what I had)

What = the thing(s) that:

- **What they said** was true. (= The things that they said)

Relative clauses 1 ➜ **Unit 92** Relative clauses 3–5 ➜ **Units 94–96** **whom** ➜ **Unit 94B**

Exercises

93.1 In some of these sentences you need who or that. Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 The woman lives next door is a doctor. .... The woman who lives next door
2 Did you find the keys you lost? .... OK
3 The people we met last night were very friendly. ....
4 The people work in the office are very friendly. ....
5 I like the people I work with. ....
6 What have you done with the money I gave you? ....
7 What happened to the money was on the table? ....
8 What's the worst film you've ever seen? ....
9 What's the best thing it has ever happened to you? ....

93.2 What do you say in these situations? Complete each sentence with a relative clause.

1 Your friend lost some keys. You want to know if he found them. You say:
Did you find the keys you lost ....?
2 A friend is wearing a dress. You like it. You tell her:
I like the dress ....
3 A friend is going to the cinema. You want to know the name of the film. You say:
What's the name of the film ....?
4 You wanted to visit a museum, but it was shut. You tell a friend:
The museum .... was shut.
5 You invited people to your party. Some of them couldn't come. You tell someone:
Some of the people .... couldn't come.
6 Your friend had to do some work. You want to know if she has finished. You say:
Have you finished the work ....?
7 You rented a car. It broke down after a few miles. You tell a friend:
Unfortunately the car .... broke down after a few miles.

93.3 These sentences all have a relative clause with a preposition. Put the words in the correct order.

1 Did you find (looking / for / you / the books / were)?
Did you find the books you were looking for ....?
2 We couldn't go to (we / invited / to / were / the wedding).
We couldn't go to ....
3 What's the name of (the hotel / about / me / told / you)?
What's the name of ....?
4 Unfortunately I didn't get (applied / I / the job / for).
Unfortunately I didn't get ....
5 Did you enjoy (you / the concert / to / went)?
Did you enjoy ....?
6 Gary is a good person to know. He's (on / rely / can / somebody / you).
Gary is a good person to know. He's ....
7 Who were (the people / with / were / you) in the restaurant yesterday?
Who were .... in the restaurant yesterday?

93.4 Put in that or what where necessary. If the sentence is already complete, leave the space empty.

1 I gave her all the money ... – ... I had. (all the money **that** I had *is also correct*)
2 Did you hear ... what ... they said?
3 She gives her children everything .... they want.
4 Tell me .... you want and I'll try to get it for you.
5 Why do you blame me for everything .... goes wrong?
6 I won't be able to do much, but I'll do .... I can.
7 I won't be able to do much, but I'll do the best .... I can.
8 I don't agree with .... you said.
9 I don't trust him. I don't believe anything .... he says.

Unit
94

Relative clauses 3: **whose/whom/where**

A whose

Study this example situation:

When we were driving home, we saw some people standing by the road. Their car had broken down, so we stopped to help them.

We helped some people **whose** car had broken down.
(= **their** car had broken down)

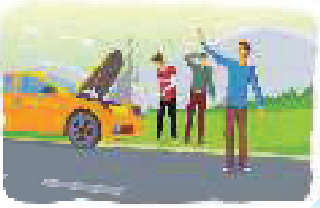

We use **whose** mostly for people:
- A widow is a woman **whose husband is dead**.
  (**her** husband is dead)
- I met someone **whose brother I went to school with**.
  (I went to school with **his**/**her** brother)

Compare **who** and **whose**:
- I met a man **who** knows you. (**he** knows you)
- I met a man **whose sister** knows you. (**his sister** knows you)

Do not confuse **whose** and **who's**. The pronunciation is the same, but **who's** = who **is** or who **has**:
- I have a friend **who's learning** Arabic. (**who's** = who **is**)
- I have a friend **who's** just **started** learning Arabic. (**who's** = who **has**)
- I have a friend **whose** sister is learning Arabic.

B whom

Whom is possible instead of **who** when it is the *object* of the verb (see Unit 93B):
- George is a person **whom I admire** very much. (I admire **him**)

You can also use a preposition + **whom** (**to whom** / **from whom** / **with whom** etc.):
- It's important to have friends **with whom** you can relax. (you can relax **with them**)

Whom is a formal word and we do not often use it in spoken English. We usually prefer to say:
- **a person I admire** a lot *or* a person **who**/**that** I admire a lot
- **friends you can relax with** *or* friends **who**/**that** you can relax with

C where

We use **where** in a relative clause to talk about a place:
- I recently went back to **the town where** I grew up. (I grew up **there**)
- **The restaurant where** we had lunch was near the airport.
- I would like to live in **a place where** there is plenty of sunshine.

D the day, the time, the reason …

We say '**the day** we got married', '**the year** I was born', '**the last** time they met' etc. :
- I can't meet you on Friday. That's **the day I'm going away**.
- **The last time I saw her**, she looked great.

You can also use **that**:
- The last time **that** I saw her, she looked great.

We say '**the reason** I'm calling you', '**the reason** she didn't get the job' etc.
- **The reason I'm calling you** is to ask your advice.

You can also use **that**:
- The reason **that** I'm calling you … *or* The reason **why** I'm calling you …

Relative clauses 1–2 ➜ **Units 92–93** Relative clauses 4–5 ➜ **Units 95–96** **whom** ➜ **Unit 96**

Exercises

94.1 **You met these people at a party:**

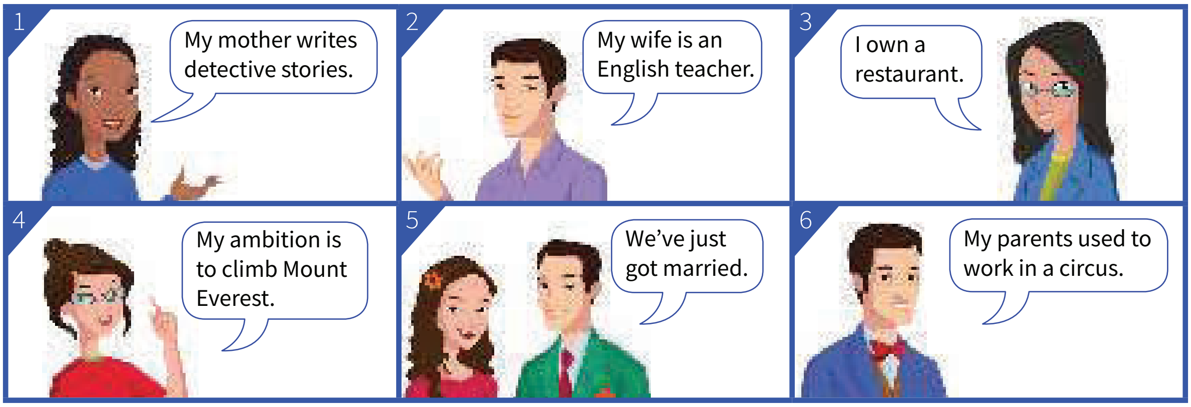
1
My mother writes detective stories.
2
My wife is an English teacher.
3
I own a restaurant.
4
My ambition is to climb Mount Everest.
5
We've just got married.
6
My parents used to work in a circus.

The next day you tell a friend about these people. Complete the sentences using who or whose.

1 I met somebody ……whose mother writes detective stories…… .
2 I met a man …… .
3 I met a woman …… .
4 I met somebody …… .
5 I met a couple …… .
6 I met somebody …… .

94.2 **For each situation write a sentence with whom (more formal) and without whom (less formal).**

1 You met a friend. You hadn't seen him for years.
more formal I met a friend ……whom I hadn't seen for years…… .
less formal I met a friend ……I hadn't seen for years…… .

2 You needed a lawyer. A friend of yours recommended one.
more formal I went to see a lawyer …… .
less formal I went to see a lawyer …… .

3 You called your bank with a problem. You spoke to somebody, but he wasn't very helpful.
more formal The person …… wasn't very helpful.
less formal The person …… .

4 Tom was in love with a woman, but she wasn't in love with Tom.
more formal The woman …… wasn't in love with him.
less formal The woman …… wasn't in love with him.

94.3 **Complete the sentences using who/whom/whose/where.**

1 We helped some people ……whose…… car had broken down.
2 A cemetery is a place …… people are buried.
3 A pacifist is a person …… believes that all wars are wrong.
4 An orphan is a child …… parents are dead.
5 What's the name of the hotel …… your parents are staying?
6 This school is only for children …… first language is not English.
7 The person from …… I bought my car is a friend of my father's.
8 I live in a friendly village …… everybody knows everybody else.

94.4 **Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.**

1 I can't meet you on Friday. That's the day ……I'm going away…… .
2 The reason …… was that the salary was too low.
3 I'll never forget the time …… .
4 …… was the year …… .
5 The reason …… is that neither of them can drive.
6 The last time I …… was …… .
7 Do you remember the day ……?

Unit 95

Relative clauses 4: extra information clauses (1)

A

There are two types of relative clause. In these examples, the relative clauses are underlined. Compare:

Type 1

☐ The woman who lives next door to me is a doctor.

☐ Grace works for a company that makes furniture.

☐ We stayed at the hotel (that) you recommended.

In these examples, the relative clauses tell you which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:

'The woman **who lives next door to me**' tells us *which* woman.
'A company **that makes furniture**' tells us *what kind* of company.
'The hotel (**that**) **you recommended**' tells us *which* hotel.

We do not use commas (,) with these clauses:

☐ We know a lot of people who live in London.

Type 2

☐ My brother Ben, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.

☐ Anna told me about her new job, which she's enjoying a lot.

☐ We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.

In these examples, the relative clauses do not tell you which person or thing the speaker means. We already know which thing or person is meant: 'My brother Ben', 'Anna's new job' and 'the Park Hotel'.

The relative clauses in these sentences give us *extra information* about the person or thing.

We use commas (,) with these clauses:

☐ My brother Ben, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.

B

In both types of relative clause we use **who** for people and **which** for things. But:

Type 1

You can use **that**:

☐ Do you know anyone **who**/**that** speaks French and Italian?

☐ Grace works for a company **which**/**that** makes furniture.

You can leave out **who**/**which**/**that** when it is the object (see Unit 93):

☐ We stayed at **the hotel** (that/which) **you recommended**.

☐ This morning I met **somebody** (who/that) **I hadn't seen for ages**.

We do not often use **whom** in this type of clause (see Unit 94B).

Type 2

You cannot use **that**:

☐ John, **who** speaks French and Italian, works as a tour guide. (*not* that speaks)

☐ Anna told me about her new job, **which** she's enjoying a lot.

You cannot leave out **who** or **which**:

☐ We stayed at the Park Hotel, **which** a friend of ours recommended.

☐ This morning I met Chris, **who** I hadn't seen for ages.

You can use **whom** for people (when it is the object):

☐ This morning I met Chris, **whom** I hadn't seen for ages.

C

In both types of relative clause you can use **whose** and **where**:

☐ We helped some people **whose** car had broken down.

☐ What's the name of the place **where** you went on holiday?

☐ Lisa, **whose** car had broken down, was in a very bad mood.

☐ Kate has just been to Sweden, **where** her daughter lives.

Relative clauses (Type 1) ➔ **Units 92–94** Relative clauses (Type 2) ➔ **Unit 96**

Exercises

95.1 Make one sentence from two. Use the information in brackets to make a relative clause (Type 2). You will need to use who/whom/whose/which/where.

1 Catherine is very friendly. (She lives next door to us.)
Catherine, who lives next door to us, is very friendly.

2 We stayed at the Park Hotel. (A friend of ours recommended this hotel.)
We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.

3 We drove to the airport. (The airport was not far from the city.)
We drove to the airport, ……

4 Kate's husband is an airline pilot. (I have never met Kate's husband.)
Kate's …… pilot.

5 Lisa is away from home a lot. (Lisa's job involves a lot of travelling.)
Lisa ……

6 Paul and Emily have a daughter, Alice. (Alice has just started school.)
Paul and Emily have ……

7 The new stadium will hold 90,000 spectators. (The stadium will be finished next month.)
……

8 My brother lives in Alaska. (Alaska is the largest state in the US.)
……

9 Our teacher was very kind. (I have forgotten her name.)
……

10 We enjoyed our visit to the museum. (We saw a lot of interesting things in the museum.)
……

95.2 Read the information and complete the sentences. Use a relative clause of Type 1 or Type 2. Use commas where necessary.

1 My brother is an architect. (He lives in Hong Kong.)
My brother, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.

2 The strike at the factory has now ended. (The strike began ten days ago.)
The strike at the factory ……

3 I was looking for a book this morning. (I've found it now.)
I've found ……

4 I've had my car for 15 years. (This car has never broken down.)
My car ……

5 A lot of people applied for the job. (Few of them had the necessary qualifications.)
Few of ……

6 Amy showed me a picture of her son. (Her son is a police officer.)
Amy showed me ……

95.3 Are these sentences OK? Correct them (and put in commas) where necessary. If the sentence is correct, write 'OK'.

1 Anna told me about her new job that she's enjoying very much.
Anna told me about her new job, which she's enjoying very much.

2 My office that is on the second floor is very small.
……

3 The office that I'm using at the moment is very small.
……

4 Sarah's father that used to be in the army now works for a TV company.
……

5 The doctor that examined me couldn't find anything wrong.
……

6 The sun that is one of millions of stars in the universe provides us with heat and light.
……

Unit
96

Relative clauses 5: extra information clauses (2)

A

preposition + **whom/which**

You can use a *preposition* + **whom** (for people) and **which** (for things).
So you can say:

to whom	**with whom**	**about whom**	*etc.*
of which	**without which**	**from which**	*etc.*

- Mr Lee, **to whom I spoke** at the meeting, is interested in our proposal.
- Fortunately we had a good map, **without which** we would have got lost.

In spoken English we often keep the preposition after the verb in the relative clause:

- Katherine told me she works for a company called 'Latoma', **which** I'd never **heard of** before.

We do not use **whom** when the preposition is in this position:

- Mr Lee, **who I spoke to** at the meeting, is interested in our proposal.
  (*not* Mr Lee, whom I spoke to . . .)

For prepositions in relative clauses, see also Unit 93C.

B

all of / **most of** etc. + **whom/which**

You can say:

- Helen has three brothers, **all of whom** are married.
- They asked me a lot of questions, **most of which** I couldn't answer.

In the same way you can say:

many of whom	**some of whom**	**neither of whom**	*etc.*	(for people)
none of which	**both of which**	**one of which**	*etc.*	(for things)

- Martin tried on three jackets, **none of which** fitted him.
- Two men, **neither of whom** I had seen before, came into the office.
- They have three cars, **two of which** they rarely use.
- Sue has a lot of friends, **many of whom** she was at school with.

You can also say:

the cause of which **the name of which** *etc.*

- The house was damaged in a fire, **the cause of which** was never established.
- We stayed at a beautiful hotel, **the name of which** I don't remember now.

C

which (*not* what)

Study this example:

Joe got the job. This surprised everybody. *(2 sentences)*

Joe got the job, which surprised everybody. *(1 sentence)*
relative clause

In this example, **which** = 'the fact that Joe got the job'. We use **which** (*not* what) in sentences like these:

- Sarah couldn't meet us, **which** was a shame. (*not* what was a shame)
- The weather was good, **which** we hadn't expected. (*not* what we hadn't expected)

For **what** and **that**, see Units 92D and 93D.

all of / **most of** etc. ➜ **Unit 88** **both of** etc. ➜ **Unit 89** Relative clauses 1–4 ➜ **Units 92–95**

Exercises

96.1 **Complete the sentences. Use a preposition + whom or which. Choose a preposition from:**

after for in of of to with ~~without~~

1 Fortunately we had a good map, without which we would have got lost.
2 The accident, ... two people were injured, happened late last night.
3 I share an office with my boss, ... I get on really well.
4 The wedding, ... only family members were invited, was a lovely occasion.
5 Ben showed me his new car, ... he's very proud.
6 Sarah showed us a picture of her son, ... she's very proud.
7 Laura bought a very nice leather bag, ... she paid twenty pounds.
8 We had lunch, ... we went for a long walk.

96.2 **Use the information in the first sentence to complete the second one. Use all of / most of etc.**

1 All of Helen's brothers are married.
Helen has three brothers, all of whom are married .
2 Most of the information we were given was useless.
We were given a lot of information, ...
3 None of the ten people who applied for the job was suitable.
Ten people applied for the job, ...
4 My neighbours have two cars. They never use one of them.
My neighbours have two cars, ...
5 James won a lot of money. He gave half of it to his parents.
James won £100,000, ...
6 Both of Julia's sisters are lawyers.
Julia has two sisters, ...
7 Jane replied to neither of the emails I sent her.
I sent Jane two emails, ...
8 I went to a party – I knew only a few of the people there.
There were a lot of people at the party, ...

Now use the … of which … .

9 You stayed in a hotel when you were on holiday but you don't remember the name.
We stayed at a very nice hotel, the name of which I don't remember .
10 We drove along the road. The sides of the road were lined with trees.
We drove along the road, the ....
11 The aim of the company's new business plan is to save money.
The company has a new business plan, ...

96.3 **Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and use which.**

This is good news.
~~This was a shame.~~
She apologised for this
This was very kind of her.
This makes it hard to contact her.
This means we can't go away tomorrow.
This makes it difficult to sleep sometimes.
This meant I had to wait two hours at the airport.

1 Laura couldn't come to the party, which was a shame.
2 The street I live in is noisy at night, ...
3 Kate let me stay at her house, ...
4 Jane doesn't have a phone, ...
5 Alex passed his exams, ...
6 My flight was delayed, ...
7 Our car has broken down, ...
8 Amy was twenty minutes late, ...

Unit
97

-**ing** and -**ed** clauses (the woman **talking to Tom**, the boy **injured in the accident**)

A

A *clause* is a part of a sentence. Some clauses begin with -**ing**. For example:

Who is the woman **talking to Tom**?
-**ing** *clause*

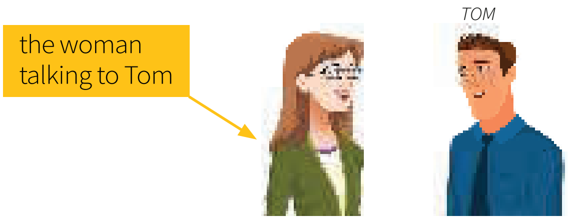
TOM
the woman talking to Tom

We use -**ing** clauses to say what somebody (or something) is (or was) doing at a particular time:

- ☐ Who is the woman **talking to Tom**? (the woman **is talking** to Tom)
- ☐ Police **investigating the crime** are looking for three men. (police **are investigating** the crime)
- ☐ Who were those people **waiting outside**? (they **were waiting**)
- ☐ I was woken up by a bell **ringing**. (a bell **was ringing**)

You can also use an -**ing** clause to say what happens all the time, not just at a particular time:

- ☐ The road **connecting the two villages** is very narrow. (the road **connects** the two villages)
- ☐ I have a large room **overlooking the garden**. (the room **overlooks** the garden)
- ☐ Can you think of the name of a flower **beginning with T**? (the name **begins** with T)

B

Some clauses begin with -**ed** (**injured**, **painted** etc.). For example:

The boy **injured in the accident** was taken to hospital.
-**ed** *clause*

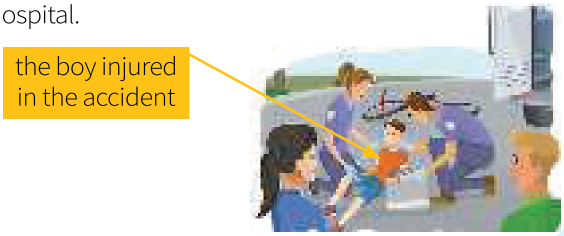
the boy injured in the accident

-**ed** clauses have a *passive* meaning:

- ☐ The boy **injured in the accident** was taken to hospital.
(he **was injured** in the accident)
- ☐ George showed me some pictures **painted by his father**.
(they **were painted** by his father)
- ☐ The gun **used in the robbery** has been found.
(the gun **was used** in the robbery)

Injured/**painted**/**used** are *past participles*. Most past participles end in -**ed**, but many are irregular (**stolen**/**made**/**built** etc.):

- ☐ The police never found the money **stolen in the robbery**.
- ☐ Most of the goods **made in this factory** are exported.

C

You can use **there is** / **there was** (etc.) + -**ing** and -**ed** clauses:

- ☐ **There were** some children **swimming** in the river.
- ☐ **Is there** anybody **waiting**?
- ☐ **There was** a big red car **parked** outside the house.

We use **left** in this way, with the meaning 'not used, still there':

- ☐ We've eaten nearly all the chocolates. **There are** only a few **left**.

see/**hear** somebody **doing** something ➜ **Unit 67** -**ing** clauses ➜ **Unit 68** **there** (**is**) ➜ **Unit 84**
Irregular past participles (**made**/**stolen** etc.) ➜ **Appendix 1**

Exercises

97.1 Make one sentence from two. Complete the sentence using an -ing clause.

1 A bell was ringing. I was woken up by it.
I was woken up by ...a bell ringing... .
2 A taxi was taking us to the airport. It broke down.
The .... broke down.
3 There's a path at the end of this street. The path leads to the river.
At the end of the street there's ....
4 A factory has just opened in the town. It employs 500 people.
.... has just opened in the town.
5 A man was sitting next to me on the plane. He was asleep most of the time.
The .... was asleep most of the time.
6 The company sent me a brochure. It contained the information I needed.
The company sent me a ....

97.2 Complete the sentence with an -ed clause. Choose from:

damaged in the storm **made at the meeting** **~~injured in the accident~~**
involved in the project **stolen from the museum** **surrounded by trees**

1 The boy ...injured in the accident... was taken to hospital.
2 The paintings .... haven't been found yet.
3 We've repaired the gate ....
4 Most of the suggestions .... were not practical.
5 Our friends live in a beautiful house ....
6 Everybody .... worked very well.

97.3 Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs in the correct form:

blow call cause invite live offer ~~paint~~ read ~~ring~~ sit study work

1 I was woken up by a bell ...ringing... .
2 George showed me some pictures ...painted... by his father.
3 Some of the people .... to the party can't come.
4 Somebody .... Jack phoned while you were out.
5 Life must be very unpleasant for people .... near busy airports.
6 A few days after the interview, I received an email .... me the job.
7 The building was badly damaged in a fire .... by an electrical fault.
8 Did you see the picture of the trees .... down in the storm?
9 The waiting room was empty except for an old man .... in the corner
.... a magazine.
10 Ian has a brother .... in a bank in London and a sister ....
economics at university in Manchester.

97.4 Use the words in brackets to make sentences with There is / There was etc.

1 That house is empty. (nobody / live / in it) ...There's nobody living in it....
2 The accident wasn't serious. (nobody / injure) ...There was nobody injured....
3 I can hear footsteps. (somebody / come) There ....
4 I've spent all the money I had. (nothing / leave) There ....
5 The train was full. (a lot of people / travel)
....
6 We were the only guests at the hotel. (nobody else / stay there)
....
7 The piece of paper was blank. (nothing / write / on it)
....
8 The college offers English courses in the evening. (a course / begin / next Monday)
....

Unit
98

Adjectives ending in -**ing** and -**ed** (**boring**/**bored** etc.)

A

Many adjectives end in -**ing** and -**ed**, for example: **boring** and **bored**.
Study this example situation:

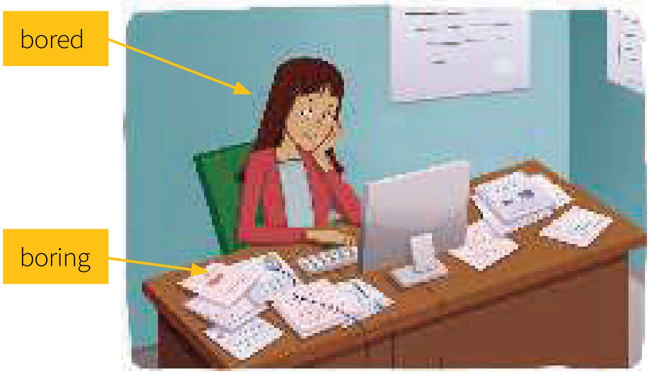

Jane has been doing the same job for a very long time. Every day she does exactly the same thing again and again. She doesn't enjoy her job any more and would like to do something different.

Jane's job is **boring**.

Jane is **bored** with her job.

Somebody is **bored** or gets **bored** if something (or somebody else) is **boring**.
If something is **boring**, you get **bored** with it.
So:

- Jane is **bored** because her job is **boring**.
- Jane's job is **boring**, so Jane is **bored**. (*not* Jane is boring)

If a person is **boring**, this means that they make other people **bored**:

- Paul always talks about the same things. He's really **boring**.

B

Compare adjectives ending in -**ing** and -**ed**:

- My job is
  - **boring**
  - **interesting**
  - **tiring**
  - **satisfying**
  - **depressing** (etc.)

In these examples, the -**ing** adjective tells you about the job

- I'm **bored** with my job.
- I'm not **interested** in my job any more.
- I get very **tired** doing my job.
- I'm not **satisfied** with my job.
- My job makes me **depressed**. (etc.)

In these examples, the -**ed** adjective tells you how somebody feels (about the job).

Compare these examples:

interesting
- Julia thinks politics is **interesting**.
- Did you meet anyone **interesting** at the party?

surprising
- It was **surprising** that he passed the exam.

disappointing
- The movie was **disappointing**. We expected it to be better.

shocking
- The news was **shocking**.

interested
- Julia is **interested** in politics. (*not* interesting in politics)
- Are you **interested** in buying a car? I'm trying to sell mine.

surprised
- Everybody was **surprised** that he passed the exam.

disappointed
- We were **disappointed** with the movie. We expected it to be better.

shocked
- I was **shocked** when I heard the news.

Exercises

98.1 **Complete the sentences for each situation. Use the word in brackets + -ing or -ed.**

1 The movie wasn't as good as we had expected. (**disappoint**...)
a The movie was disappointing .
b We were disappointed with the movie.
2 Donna teaches young children. It's a very hard job, but she enjoys it. (**exhaust**...)
a She enjoys her job, but it's often ....
b At the end of a day's work, she is often ....
3 It's been raining all day. I hate this weather. (**depress**...)
a This weather is ....
b This weather makes me ....
c It's silly to get .... because of the weather.
4 Clare is going to Mexico next month. She's never been there before. (**excit**...)
a It will be an .... experience for her.
b Going to new places is always ....
c She is really .... about going to Mexico.

98.2 **Choose the correct word.**

1 I was ~~disappointing~~ / disappointed with the movie. I had expected it to be better.
(disappointed *is correct*)
2 I'm not particularly interesting / interested in football.
3 The new project sounds exciting / excited. I'm looking forward to working on it.
4 It can be embarrassing / embarrassed when you have to ask people for money.
5 Do you easily get embarrassing / embarrassed?
6 I'd never expected to get the job. I was amazing / amazed when I was offered it.
7 She's learnt very fast. She's made amazing / amazed progress.
8 I didn't find the situation funny. I was not amusing / amused.
9 I'm interesting / interested in joining the club. How much does it cost?
10 It was a really terrifying / terrified experience. Everybody was very shocking / shocked.
11 Why do you always look so boring / bored? Is your life really so boring / bored?
12 He's one of the most boring / bored people I've ever met. He never stops talking and he never says anything interesting / interested.

98.3 **Complete each sentence using a word from the box.**

amusing/amused
confusing/confused
exhausting/exhausted
annoying/annoyed
disgusting/disgusted
interesting/interested
boring/bored
exciting/excited
~~surprising~~/surprised

1 You work very hard. It's not surprising that you're always tired.
2 Some people get .... very easily. They always need something new.
3 The teacher's explanation was .... Nobody understood it.
4 The kitchen hadn't been cleaned for ages. It was really ....
5 I don't go to art galleries very often. I'm not very .... in art.
6 There's no need to get .... just because I'm a few minutes late.
7 The lecture was .... I fell asleep.
8 I've been working very hard all day and now I'm ....
9 I'm starting a new job next week. I'm very .... about it.
10 Steve is good at telling funny stories. He can be very ....
11 Helen is a very .... person. She knows a lot, she's travelled a lot and she's done lots of different things.

Unit
99

Adjectives: a **nice new** house, you look **tired**

A

Sometimes we use two or more adjectives together:

- ☐ My brother lives in a **nice new** house.
- ☐ In the kitchen there was a **beautiful large round wooden** table.

Adjectives like **new**/**large**/**round**/**wooden** are *fact* adjectives. They give us information about age, size, colour etc.

Adjectives like **nice**/**beautiful** are *opinion* adjectives. They tell us what the speaker thinks of something or somebody.
Opinion adjectives usually go before fact adjectives.

	opinion	*fact*	
a	**nice**	**long**	summer holiday
an	**interesting**	**young**	man
	delicious	**hot**	vegetable soup
a	**beautiful**	**large round wooden**	table

B

Sometimes we use two or more fact adjectives together. Usually (not always) we put fact adjectives in this order:

1 how big? → 2 how old? → 3 what colour? → 4 where from? → 5 what is it made of? → NOUN

a **tall young** man (1 → 2)
big blue eyes (1 → 3)
a **small black plastic** bag (1 → 3 → 5)

a **large wooden** table (1 → 5)
an **old Russian** song (2 → 4)
an **old white cotton** shirt (2 → 3 → 5)

Adjectives of size and length (**big**/**small**/**tall**/**short**/**long** etc.) usually go before adjectives of shape and width (**round**/**fat**/**thin**/**slim**/**wide** etc.):

a **large round** table   a **tall thin** girl   a **long narrow** street

When there are two or more colour adjectives, we use **and**:

a **black and white** dress   a **red**, **white and green** flag

This does not usually happen with other adjectives before a noun:

a **long black** dress (*not* a long and black dress)

C

We use adjectives after **be**/**get**/**become**/**seem**:

- ☐ **Be careful**!
- ☐ I'**m tired** and I'**m getting hungry**.
- ☐ As the film went on, it **became** more and more **boring**.
- ☐ Your friend **seems** very **nice**.

We also use adjectives to say how somebody/something looks, feels, sounds, tastes or smells:

- ☐ You **look tired**. / I **feel tired**. / She **sounds tired**.
- ☐ The dinner **smells good**.
- ☐ This tea **tastes** a bit **strange**.

But to say *how* somebody *does something* you must use an *adverb* (see Units 100–101):

- ☐ Drive **carefully**! (*not* Drive careful)
- ☐ Suzanne plays the piano very **well**. (*not* plays … very good)

D

We say 'the **first two** days', 'the **next few** weeks', 'the **last ten** minutes' etc. :

- ☐ I didn't enjoy the **first two** days of the course. (*not* the two first days)
- ☐ They'll be away for the **next few** weeks. (*not* the few next weeks)

Adverbs ➜ **Units 100–101**   Comparative (**cheaper** etc.) ➜ **Units 105–107**
Superlative (**cheapest** etc.) ➜ **Unit 108**

Exercises

99.1 Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct position.

1 a beautiful table (wooden / round) …… a beautiful round wooden table
2 an unusual ring (gold) ……
3 an old house (beautiful) ……
4 red gloves (leather) ……
5 an American film (old) ……
6 pink flowers (tiny) ……
7 a long face (thin) ……
8 big clouds (black) ……
9 a sunny day (lovely) ……
10 an ugly dress (yellow) ……
11 a wide avenue (long) ……
12 important ideas (new) ……
13 a new sweater (green / nice) ……
14 a metal box (black / small) ……
15 long hair (black / beautiful) ……
16 an old painting (interesting / French) ……
17 a large umbrella (red / yellow) ……
18 a big cat (black / white / fat) ……

99.2 Complete each sentence with a verb (in the correct form) and an adjective from the boxes.

feel **look** **~~seem~~**
smell **sound** **taste**

awful **nervous** **interesting**
nice **~~upset~~** **wet**

1 Helen …seemed upset… this morning. Do you know what was wrong?
2 I can't eat this. I've just tried it and it …… .
3 It's normal to …… before an exam or an interview.
4 What beautiful flowers! They …… too.
5 You …… . Have you been out in the rain?
6 James told me about his new job. It …… – much better than his old job.

99.3 Put in the correct word.

1 This tea tastes a bit …strange… . (strange / strangely)
2 I usually feel …… when the sun is shining. (happy / happily)
3 The children were playing …… in the garden. (happy / happily)
4 You look …… ! Are you all right? (terrible / terribly)
5 There's no point in doing a job if you don't do it …… . (proper / properly)
6 The soup tastes …… . Can you give me the recipe? (good / well)
7 Please hurry up! You're always so …… . (slow / slowly)
8 A customer in the restaurant was behaving …… . (bad / badly)
9 The customer became …… when the manager asked him to leave. (violent / violently)

99.4 Write the following in another way using the first … / the next … / the last … .

1 the first day and the second day of the course …… the first two days of the course
2 next week and the week after …… the next two weeks
3 yesterday and the day before yesterday ……
4 the first week and the second week of May ……
5 tomorrow and a few days after that ……
6 questions 1, 2 and 3 in the exam ……
7 next year and the year after ……
8 the last day of our holiday and the two days before that ……

➜ **Additional exercise 31** (page 320)

Unit
100

Adjectives and adverbs 1 (**quick**/**quickly**)

A

You can say:

- Our holiday was too short – the time passed very **quickly**.
- Two people were **seriously** injured in the accident.

Quickly and **seriously** are *adverbs*. Many adverbs are *adjective* + **-ly**:

adjective	quick	serious	careful	bad	heavy	terrible
adverb	**quickly**	**seriously**	**carefully**	**badly**	**heavily**	**terribly**

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

Not all words ending in **-ly** are adverbs. Some *adjectives* end in **-ly** too, for example:

friendly **lively** **elderly** **lonely** **lovely**

- It was a **lovely** day.

B

Adjective or adverb?

Adjectives (**quick**/**careful** etc.) tell us about a *noun* (somebody or something). We use adjectives before nouns:

- Sam is a **careful driver**. (*not* a carefully driver)
- We didn't go out because of the **heavy rain**.

Adverbs (**quickly**/**carefully** etc.) tell us about a *verb* (*how* somebody does something or *how* something happens):

- Sam **drove carefully** along the narrow road. (*not* drove careful)
- We didn't go out because it was **raining heavily**. (*not* raining heavy)

Compare:

- She speaks **perfect English**.
  adjective + *noun*

- She **speaks** English **perfectly**.
  verb + *noun* + *adverb*

C

We use adjectives after some verbs, especially **be**, and also **look**/**feel**/**sound** etc.
Compare:

- Please **be quiet**.
- My exam results **were** really **bad**.
- Why do you always **look** so **serious**?
- I **feel happy**.

- Please **speak quietly**.
- I **did** really **badly** in the exam.
- Why do you never **take** me **seriously**?
- The children were **playing happily**.

D

You can also use adverbs before *adjectives* and *other adverbs*. For example:

reasonably cheap	(*adverb* + *adjective*)
terribly sorry	(*adverb* + *adjective*)
incredibly quickly	(*adverb* + *adverb*)

- It's a **reasonably cheap** restaurant and the food is **extremely good**.
- I'm **terribly sorry**. I didn't mean to push you.
- Maria learns languages **incredibly quickly**.
- The exam was **surprisingly easy**.

You can also use an adverb before a *past participle* (**injured**/**organised**/**written** etc.):

- Two people were **seriously injured** in the accident. (*not* serious injured)
- The conference was **badly organised**.

Adjectives after **be**/**look**/**feel** etc. ➜ **Unit 99C** Adjectives and adverbs 2 ➜ **Unit 101**

Exercises

100.1 Complete each sentence with an adverb. The first letters of the adverb are given.

1 We didn't go out because it was raining heavily……… .
2 I had no problem finding a place to live. I found a flat quite ea……………………… .
3 We had to wait a long time, but we didn't complain. We waited pat……………………… .
4 Nobody knew that Simon was coming to see us. He arrived unex……………………… .
5 Mike keeps fit by playing tennis reg……………………… .
6 I don't speak French very well, but I can understand per……………………… if people speak sl……………………… and cl……………………… .

100.2 Put in the correct word.

1 Sam drove ……carefully…… along the narrow road. (careful / carefully)
2 I think you behaved very ……………………… . (selfish / selfishly)
3 The weather changed ……………………… . (sudden / suddenly)
4 There was a ……………………… change in the weather. (sudden / suddenly)
5 Liz fell and hurt herself really ……………………… . (bad / badly)
6 I think I have flu. I feel ……………………… . (awful / awfully)
7 Tanya is ……………………… upset about losing her job. (terrible / terribly)
8 I could sit in this chair all day. It's very ……………………… . (comfortable / comfortably)
9 I explained everything as ……………………… as I could. (clear / clearly)
10 Be careful on that ladder. It doesn't look very ……………………… . (safe / safely)
11 Have a good trip and I hope you have a ……………………… journey. (safe / safely)
12 I'm glad you had a good trip and got home ……………………… . (safe / safely)

100.3 Complete each sentence using a word from the box. Sometimes you need the adjective (careful etc.) and sometimes the adverb (carefully etc.).

~~careful(ly)~~ complete(ly) dangerous(ly) financial(ly) fluent(ly)
frequent(ly) nervous(ly) perfect(ly) permanent(ly) special(ly)

1 Sam doesn't take risks when he's driving. He's always ……careful…… .
2 He's late sometimes, but it doesn't happen ……………………… .
3 Maria's English is very ……………………… although she makes quite a lot of mistakes.
4 I cooked this meal ……………………… for you, so I hope you like it.
5 Everything was very quiet. There was ……………………… silence.
6 I tried on the shoes and they fitted me ……………………… .
7 I'd like to buy a car, but it's ……………………… impossible for me at the moment.
8 I'm staying here only a few weeks. I won't be living here ……………………… .
9 Do you usually feel ……………………… before exams?
10 Dan likes to take risks. He lives ……………………… .

100.4 Choose two words (one from each box) to complete each sentence.

absolutely badly completely
happily ~~reasonably~~ seriously
slightly unnecessarily unusually

changed ~~cheap~~ damaged
enormous ill long
married planned quiet

1 I thought the restaurant would be expensive, but it was ……reasonably cheap…… .
2 Will's mother is ……………………………………… in hospital.
3 This house is so big! It's ……………………………………… .
4 It wasn't a serious accident. The car was only ……………………………………… .
5 Our children are normally very lively, but they're ……………………………………… today.
6 When I returned home after 20 years, everything had ……………………………………… .
7 The movie was ……………………………………… . It could have been much shorter.
8 I'm surprised Amy and Joe have separated. I thought they were ……………………………………… .
9 A lot went wrong during our holiday because it was ……………………………………… .

➜ Additional exercise 31 (page 320)

Unit
101

Adjectives and adverbs 2
(well, fast, late, hard/hardly)

A

good and **well**

Good is an *adjective*. The *adverb* is **well**:

☐ Your English is **good**. *but* You **speak** English **well**.
☐ Sophie is a **good** pianist. *but* Sophie **plays** the piano **well**.

We use **well** (*not* good) with *past participles* (**known**/**educated** etc.). For example:

well-known **well-educated** **well-paid** **well-behaved**

☐ Sophie's father is a **well-known** writer.

Well is also an adjective meaning 'in good health':

☐ 'How are you today?' 'I'm very **well**, thanks.'

B

fast, **hard** and **late**

These words are both adjectives and adverbs:

adjective	*adverb*
☐ Darren **is** a **fast runner**.	Darren can **run fast**.
☐ It**'s hard** to find a job right now.	Kate **works hard**. (*not* works hardly)
☐ Sorry I**'m late**.	I **got up late**.

lately = recently:

☐ Have you seen Kate **lately**?

C

hardly

hardly = very little, almost not:

☐ Sarah wasn't very friendly at the party. She **hardly** spoke to me.
(= she spoke to me very little)
☐ We've only met once or twice. We **hardly** know each other.

Compare **hard** and **hardly**:

☐ He tried **hard** to find a job, but he had no luck. (= he tried a lot, with a lot of effort)
☐ I'm not surprised he didn't find a job. He **hardly** tried. (= he tried very little)

Hardly goes before the verb:

☐ We **hardly know** each other. (*not* We know each other hardly)

I **can hardly** do something = it's very difficult for me, almost impossible:

☐ Your writing is terrible. I **can hardly** read it. (= it is almost impossible to read it)
☐ My leg was hurting. I **could hardly** walk.

D

You can use **hardly** + **any**/**anybody**/**anyone**/**anything**/**anywhere**:

☐ A: How much money do we have?
B: **Hardly any**. (= very little, almost none)
☐ These two cameras are very similar. There's **hardly any** difference between them.
☐ The exam results were bad. **Hardly anybody** in our class passed. (= very few students passed)
☐ She was very quiet. She said **hardly anything**. *or*
She **hardly** said **anything**.

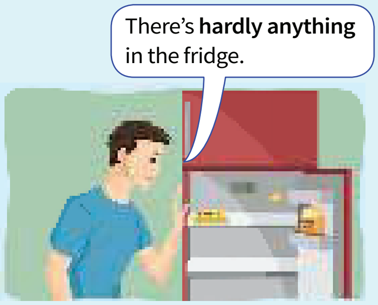
There's **hardly anything** in the fridge.

hardly ever = almost never:

☐ I'm nearly always at home in the evenings. I **hardly ever** go out.

Hardly also means 'certainly not'. For example:

☐ It's **hardly surprising** that you're tired. You haven't slept for three days.
(= it's certainly not surprising)
☐ The situation is serious, but it's **hardly a crisis**. (= it's certainly not a crisis)

Adjectives after verbs ('**You look tired**' etc.) ➜ **Unit 99C** Adjectives and adverbs 1 ➜ **Unit 100**

Exercises

101.1 Put in good or well.

1 I play tennis but I'm not very ......good...... .
2 Joe's exam results were very ....
3 Joe did .... in his exams.
4 I didn't sleep .... last night.
5 I like your hat. It looks .... on you.
6 Can you speak up? I can't hear you very ....
7 I've met her a few times, but I don't know her ....
8 Lucy speaks German .... She's .... at languages.

101.2 Complete these sentences using well + the following words:

~~behaved~~ informed kept known paid written

1 The children were very good. They were ......well-behaved...... .
2 I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She is quite ....
3 Our neighbours' garden is neat and tidy. It is very ....
4 I enjoyed the book. It's a great story and it's very ....
5 Tanya knows about everything. She is very ....
6 Jane works very hard in her job, but she isn't very ....

101.3 Which is right?

1 I'm tired because I've been working hard / ~~hardly~~. (hard *is correct*)
2 I wasn't in a hurry, so I was walking slow / slowly.
3 I haven't been to the cinema late / lately.
4 Slow down! You're walking too fast / quick for me.
5 I tried hard / hardly to remember her name, but I couldn't.
6 This coat is practically unused. I've hard / hardly worn it.
7 Laura is a good tennis player. She hits the ball very hard / hardly.
8 It's really dark in here. I can hardly see / see hardly.
9 Ben is going to run a marathon. He's been training hard / hardly.

101.4 Complete the sentences. Use hardly + the following verbs (in the correct form):

change hear ~~know~~ recognise say sleep speak

1 Scott and Tracy have only met once before. They ......hardly know...... each other.
2 You're speaking very quietly. I can .... you.
3 I don't feel good this morning. I .... last night.
4 We were so shocked when we heard the news, we could ....
5 Kate was very quiet this evening. She .... anything.
6 Gary looks just like he looked 15 years ago. He has ....
7 David looked different without his beard. I .... him.

101.5 Complete these sentences with hardly + any/anybody/anything/anywhere/ever.

1 I'll have to go shopping. There's ......hardly anything...... to eat.
2 It was a very warm day and there was .... wind.
3 'Do you know much about computers?' 'No, ...'
4 The hotel was almost empty. There was .... staying there.
5 I listen to the radio a lot, but I .... watch TV.
6 It was very crowded in the room. There was .... to sit.
7 We used to be good friends, but we .... see each other now.
8 We invited lots of people to the party, but .... came.
9 It didn't take us long to drive there. There was .... traffic.
10 There isn't much to do in this town. There's .... to go.

➜ **Additional exercise 31** (page 320)

Unit
102

so and **such**

A

Compare **so** and **such**:

We use **so** + *adjective/adverb*:

so stupid **so quick**
so nice **so quickly**

☐ I didn't like the book. The story was **so stupid**.
☐ Everything happened **so quickly**.

We use **such** + *noun*:

such a **story** **such people**

We also use **such** + *adjective* + *noun*:

such a stupid **story** **such** nice **people**

☐ I didn't like the book. It was **such** a stupid **story**. (*not* a so stupid story)
☐ I like Liz and Joe. They are **such nice people**. (*not* so nice people)

We say **such a** . . . (*not* a such):

such a big **dog**

B

So and **such** make the meaning stronger:

☐ I've had a busy day. I'm **so tired**. (= really tired)
☐ It's difficult to understand him. He talks **so quietly**.

You can use **so** . . . **that**:

☐ I was **so tired that** I fell asleep in the armchair.

We usually leave out **that**:

☐ I was **so tired** I fell asleep.

☐ We had a great trip. We had **such a good time**. (= a really good time)
☐ You always think good things are going to happen. You're **such an optimist**.

You can use **such** . . . **that**:

☐ It was **such nice weather that** we spent the whole day on the beach.

We usually leave out **that**:

☐ It was **such nice weather** we spent . . .

C

So and **such** also mean 'like this':

☐ Somebody told me the house was built 100 years ago. I didn't realise it was **so old**. (= as old as it is)
☐ I'm tired because I got up at six. I don't usually get up **so early**.
☐ I expected the weather to be cooler. I'm surprised it is **so warm**.

☐ I didn't realise it was **such an old house**.
☐ You know it's not true. How can you say **such a thing**? (= a thing like this)

Note the expression **no such** . . . :

☐ You won't find the word 'blid' in the dictionary. There's **no such word**. (= this word does not exist)

D

Compare:

so long

☐ I haven't seen her for **so long** I've forgotten what she looks like.

such a long time

☐ I haven't seen her for **such a long time**. (*not* so long time)

so far

☐ I didn't know it was **so far**.

such a long way

☐ I didn't know it was **such a long way**.

so much, **so many**

☐ I'm sorry I'm late – there was **so much** traffic.

such a lot (**of**)

☐ I'm sorry I'm late – there was **such a lot** of traffic.

not so . . . as ➜ Unit 107A such as ➜ Unit 117A

Exercises

102.1 Put in so, such or such a.

1 It was a great holiday. We had such a good time.
2 Everything is .... expensive these days, isn't it?
3 He always looks good. He wears .... nice clothes.
4 I couldn't believe the news. It was .... shock.
5 What a nice garden! These are .... lovely flowers.
6 The party was great. It was .... shame you couldn't come.
7 I was glad to see that he looked .... well after his recent illness.
8 I have to go. I didn't realise it was .... late.
9 Why does it always take you .... long time to get ready?
10 Everything went wrong. We had .... bad luck.

102.2 Make one sentence from two. Choose from the box, and then complete the sentences using so or such.

The music was loud.	**It was horrible weather.**	**I've got a lot to do.**
I had a big breakfast.	**~~It was a beautiful day.~~**	**Her English is good.**
The bag was heavy.	**I was surprised.**	**The hotel was a long way.**

1 It was such a beautiful day, we decided to go to the beach.
2 ...., she couldn't lift it.
3 ...., I don't know where to begin.
4 ...., I didn't know what to say.
5 ...., it could be heard from miles away.
6 ...., we spent the whole day indoors.
7 ...., you would think it was her native language.
8 ...., it took us ages to get there.
9 ...., I didn't eat anything for the rest of the day.

102.3 Put the words in the right order.

1 I got up at six this morning. I don't usually get up so early.
(get up / early / usually / so / don't)
2 Why ....? There's plenty of time.
(a / such / hurry / you / in / are)
3 It took us an hour to get here. I'm ....
(long / it / surprised / so / took)
4 He said he worked for a company called Elcron, but ....
(such / there's / company / no)
5 I regret what I did. I don't know why ....
(such / thing / I / did / a / stupid)
6 Why ....? Can't you drive faster?
(driving / so / you / slowly / are)
7 Two months? How did you ....?
(English / time / learn / short / a / such / in)
8 Why ....? You could have got a cheaper one.
(expensive / you / an / phone / did / such / buy)

102.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 We enjoyed our holiday. We had such a good time.
2 I like Kate. She's so ....
3 I like Kate. She's such ....
4 It's good to see you again! I haven't seen you for so ....
5 I thought the airport was near the city. I didn't realise it was such ....
6 The streets were crowded. There were so ....

Unit
103 **enough** and **too**

A **enough**

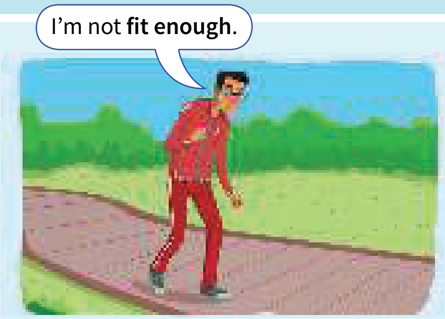

Enough goes *after* adjectives and adverbs:

☐ I can't run very far. I'm not **fit enough**. (*not* enough fit)
☐ Let's go. We've waited **long enough**.

Enough normally goes *before* nouns:

☐ We have **enough money**. We don't need any more.
☐ There weren't **enough chairs**. Some of us had to sit on the floor.

We also use **enough** alone (without a noun or adjective):

☐ We don't need more money. We have **enough**.

B **too** and **enough**

Compare **too** … and **not** … **enough**:

☐ You never stop working. You work **too hard**.
(= more than is necessary)
☐ You're lazy. You **don't** work **hard enough**.
(= less than is necessary)

Compare **too much**/**many** and **enough**:

☐ There's **too much furniture** in this room. There's not **enough space**.
☐ There were **too many people** and not **enough chairs**.

C **enough**/**too** + **for** … and **to** …

We say **enough**/**too** … **for** somebody/something:

☐ Does Joe have enough experience **for the job**?
☐ This bag isn't big enough **for all my clothes**.
☐ That shirt is too small **for you**. You need a larger size.

We say **enough**/**too** … **to** do something. For example:

☐ Does Joe have enough experience **to do** the job?
☐ Let's get a taxi. It's too far **to walk** home from here.
☐ She's not old enough **to have** a driving licence.

The next example has both **for** … and **to** … :

☐ The bridge is just wide enough **for two cars to pass** one another.

D **too hot to eat** etc.

We say:

> The food was very hot. We couldn't eat **it**.
> *and*
> The food was so hot that we couldn't eat **it**.
> *but*
> The food was **too hot to eat**. (*not* to eat it)

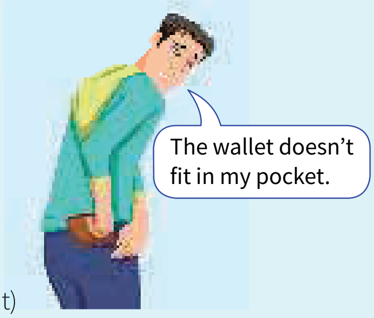
The wallet doesn't fit in my pocket.

In the same way we say:

☐ These boxes are **too heavy to carry**. (*not* to carry them)
☐ The wallet was **too big to put in my pocket**. (*not* to put it)
☐ This chair isn't **strong enough to stand on**. (*not* to stand on it)

to … and **for** … (purpose) ➜ **Unit 64** Adjective + **to** … (**difficult to understand** etc.) ➜ **Unit 65**

Exercises

103.1 Complete the sentences using enough + the following words:

buses ~~chairs~~ cups ~~hard~~ room tall time vegetables warm wide

1 You're lazy. You don't work ..hard enough.. .
2 Some of us had to sit on the floor. There weren't ..enough chairs.. .
3 Public transport isn't good here. There aren't ....
4 I can't park the car here. The space isn't ....
5 I always have to rush. There's never ....
6 You need to change your diet. You don't eat ....
7 I'm not good at basketball. I'm not ....
8 The car is quite small. Do you think there's .... for five of us?
9 Are you .... ? Or shall I switch on the heating?
10 We can't all have coffee at the same time. We don't have ....

103.2 Complete the answers to the questions. Use too or enough + the word(s) in brackets.

1	Does Sophie have a driving licence?	(old)	No, she's not old enough to have a driving licence.
2	I need to talk to you about something.	(busy)	Well, I'm afraid I'm .... to you now.
3	Let's go to the cinema.	(late)	No, it's .... to the cinema.
4	Why don't we sit outside?	(warm)	It's not .... outside.
5	Would you like to be a politician?	(shy)	No, I'm .... a politician.
6	Would you like to be a teacher?	(patience)	No, I don't have .... a teacher.
7	Did you hear what he was saying?	(far away)	No, we were .... what he was saying.
8	Can he read a newspaper in English?	(English)	No, he doesn't know .... a newspaper.

103.3 Make one sentence from two. Complete the new sentence using too or enough + to ... .

1 We couldn't carry the boxes. They were too heavy.
The boxes were too heavy to carry.
2 I can't drink this coffee. It's too hot.
This coffee is ....
3 Nobody could move the piano. It was too heavy.
The piano ....
4 Don't eat these apples. They're not ripe enough.
These apples ....
5 I can't explain the situation. It is too complicated.
The situation ....
6 We couldn't climb over the wall. It was too high.
The wall ....
7 Three people can't sit on this sofa. It isn't big enough.
This sofa ....
8 You can't see some things without a microscope. They are too small.
Some ....

Unit
104

quite, **pretty**, **rather** and **fairly**

A

Quite and **pretty** are similar in meaning (= less than 'very', but more than 'a little'):

☐ I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She's **quite famous**. *or* She's **pretty famous**.
(= less than 'very famous', but more than 'a little famous')

☐ Anna lives **quite near** me, so we see each other **pretty often**.

Pretty is an informal word and is used mainly in spoken English.

Quite goes before **a**/**an**:

☐ We live in **quite an old house**. (*not* a quite old house)

Compare:

☐ Sarah has **quite a** good job.
Sarah has **a pretty** good job.

You can also use **quite** (but not **pretty**) in the following ways:

quite a/**an** + *noun* (without an adjective):

☐ I didn't expect to see them. It was **quite a surprise**. (= quite a big surprise)

quite a lot (**of** . . .):

☐ There were **quite a lot of** guests at the wedding.

quite + verb, especially **like** and **enjoy**:

☐ I **quite like** tennis, but it's not my favourite sport.

B

Rather is similar to **quite** and **pretty**. We often use **rather** for negative ideas (things we think are not good):

☐ The weather isn't so good. It's **rather cloudy**.

☐ Paul is **rather shy**. He doesn't talk very much.

Quite is also possible in these examples.

When we use **rather** for positive ideas (**good**/**nice** etc.), it means 'unusually' or 'surprisingly':

☐ These oranges are **rather good**. Where did you get them?

C

Fairly is weaker than **quite**/**rather**/**pretty**. For example, if something is **fairly good**, it is not very good and it could be better:

☐ My room is **fairly big**, but I'd prefer a bigger one.

☐ We see each other **fairly often**, but not as often as we used to.

D

Quite also means 'completely'. For example:

☐ 'Are you sure?' 'Yes, **quite sure**.' (= completely sure)

Quite means 'completely' with a number of adjectives, especially:

sure	**right**	**true**	**clear**	**different**	**incredible**	**amazing**
certain	**wrong**	**safe**	**obvious**	**unnecessary**	**extraordinary**	**impossible**

☐ She was **quite different** from what I expected. (= completely different)

☐ Everything they said was **quite true**. (= completely true)

We also use **quite** (= completely) with some verbs. For example:

☐ I **quite agree** with you. (= I completely agree)

not quite = not completely:

☐ **I don't quite understand** what you mean.

☐ 'Are you ready yet?' '**Not quite**.' (= not completely)

Compare the two meanings of **quite**:

☐ The story is **quite interesting**. (= less than 'very interesting')

☐ The story is **quite true**. (= completely true)

Exercises

104.1 Complete the sentences using quite … . Choose from:

~~famous~~ hungry late noisy often old surprised

1 I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She's quite famous .
2 I'm …… . Is there anything to eat?
3 We go to the cinema …… – maybe once a month.
4 We live near a very busy road, so it's often …… .
5 I didn't expect Lisa to contact me. I was …… when she phoned.
6 I went to bed …… last night, so I'm a bit tired this morning.
7 I don't know exactly when this house was built, but it's …… .

104.2 Put the words in the right order to complete the sentences.

1 The weather was better than we had expected.
It was quite a nice day (a / nice / quite / day).
2 Tom likes to sing.
He has …… (voice / quite / good / a).
3 The bus stop wasn't near the hotel.
We had to walk …… (quite / way / a / long).
4 It's not so warm today.
There's …… (a / wind / cold / pretty).
5 The roads were busy.
There was …… (lot / traffic / a / of / quite).
6 I'm tired.
I've had …… (pretty / day / a / busy).
7 Sarah hasn't been working here long.
She …… (fairly / started / recently).

104.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use rather + adjective.

1 The weather isn't so good. It's rather cloudy .
2 I enjoyed the film, but it was …… .
3 Chris went away without telling anybody, which was …… .
4 Lucy doesn't like having to wait. Sometimes she's …… .
5 They have some lovely things in this shop, but it's …… .

104.4 What does quite mean in these sentences? Tick (✓) the right meaning.

	more than 'a little', less than 'very' (Section A)	*'completely' (Section D)*
1 It's quite cold. You need a coat.	✓	
2 'Are you sure?' 'Yes, quite sure.'		✓
3 Anna's English is quite good.		
4 I couldn't believe it. It was quite incredible.		
5 My bedroom is quite big.		
6 I'm quite tired. I think I'll go to bed.		
7 I quite agree with you.		

104.5 Complete these sentences using quite … . Choose from:

different impossible right safe sure ~~true~~

1 I didn't believe her at first, but in fact what she said was quite true .
2 You won't fall. The ladder is …… .
3 I'm afraid I can't do what you ask. It's …… .
4 I completely agree with you. You are …… .
5 You can't compare the two things. They are …… .
6 I think I saw them go out, but I'm not …… .

Unit
105

Comparative 1 (**cheaper, more expensive** etc.)

A

Look at these examples:

How shall we travel? Shall we drive or go by train?

Let's drive. It's **cheaper**.
Don't go by train. It's **more expensive**.

Cheaper and **more expensive** are *comparative* forms.

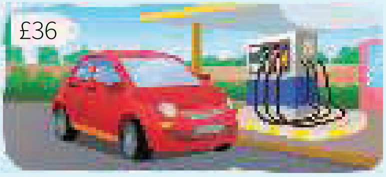

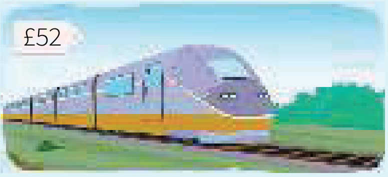

After comparatives you can use **than** (see Unit 107):

☐ It's **cheaper** to drive **than** go by train.
☐ Going by train is **more expensive than** driving.

B

The comparative form is -**er** or **more** . . . .

We use -**er** for short words (one syllable):

cheap → cheap**er** **fast** → fast**er**
large → larg**er** **thin** → thinn**er**

We also use -**er** for two-syllable words that end in -**y** (-**y** → -**ier**):

luck**y** → luck**ier** earl**y** → earl**ier**
eas**y** → eas**ier** prett**y** → prett**ier**

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

We use **more** . . . for longer words (two syllables or more):

more serious **more expensive**
more often **more comfortable**

We also use **more** . . . for adverbs that end in -**ly**:

more slowly **more seriously**
more easily **more quietly**

Compare these examples:

☐ You're **older** than me.
☐ The exam was quite easy – **easier** than I expected.
☐ Can you walk a bit **faster**?
☐ I'd like to have a **bigger** car.
☐ Last night I went to bed **earlier** than usual.

☐ You're **more patient** than me.
☐ The exam was quite difficult – **more difficult** than I expected.
☐ Can you walk a bit **more slowly**?
☐ I'd like to have a **more reliable** car.
☐ I don't play tennis much these days. I used to play **more often**.

We use both -**er** *or* **more** . . . with some two-syllable adjectives, especially:

clever **narrow** **quiet** **shallow** **simple**

☐ It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere **quieter**? *or* . . . somewhere **more quiet**?

C

A few adjectives and adverbs have irregular comparative forms:

good/well → **better**

☐ The garden looks **better** since you tidied it up.
☐ I know him well – probably **better** than anybody else knows him.

bad/badly → **worse**

☐ 'How's your headache? Better?' 'No, it's **worse**.'
☐ He did very badly in the exam – **worse** than expected.

far → **further** (*or* **farther**)

☐ It's a long walk from here to the park – **further** than I thought. (*or* **farther** than)

Note that **further** (*but not* farther) also means 'more' or 'additional':

☐ Let me know if you hear any **further** news. (= any more news)

Comparative 2–3 ➜ **Units 106–107** Superlative (**cheapest** / **most expensive** etc.) ➜ **Unit 108**

Exercises

105.1 **Complete the sentences using a comparative form (older / more important etc.).**

1 This restaurant is very expensive. Let's go somewhere ....cheaper........ .
2 This coffee is very weak. I like it ....
3 The town was surprisingly big. I expected it to be ....
4 The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be ....
5 The weather is too cold here. I'd like to live somewhere ....
6 Sometimes my job is a bit boring. I'd like to do something ....
7 It's a shame you live so far away. I wish you lived ....
8 It was quite easy to find a place to live. I thought it would be ....
9 Your work isn't very good. I'm sure you can do ....
10 Don't worry. The situation isn't so bad. It could be ....
11 You hardly ever call me. Why don't you call me .... ?
12 You're too near the camera. Can you move a bit .... away?

105.2 **Complete the sentences. Use the comparative forms of the words in the box. Use than where necessary.**

big ~~early~~ high important interested peaceful ~~reliable~~ serious slowly thin

1 I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed ....earlier than........ usual.
2 I'd like to have a ....more reliable........ car. The one I have keeps breaking down.
3 Unfortunately the problem was .... we thought at first.
4 You look .... Have you lost weight?
5 We don't have enough space here. We need a .... apartment.
6 James doesn't study very hard. He's .... in having a good time.
7 Health and happiness are .... money.
8 I like living in the country. It's .... living in a town.
9 I'm sorry I don't understand. Can you speak .... , please?
10 In some parts of the country, prices are .... in others.

105.3 **Complete the sentences. Choose from:**

than more worse quietly ~~longer~~ better careful frequent

1 Getting a visa was complicated. It took ....longer........ than I expected.
2 Sorry about my mistake. I'll try and be more .... in future.
3 Your English has improved. It's .... than it was.
4 You can travel by bus or by train. The buses are more .... than the trains.
5 You can't always have things immediately. You have to be .... patient.
6 I'm a pessimist. I always think things are going to get ....
7 We were busier .... usual in the office today. It's not usually so busy.
8 You're talking very loudly. Can you speak more .... ?

105.4 **Read the situations and complete the sentences. Use a comparative form (-er or more ...).**

1 Yesterday the temperature was six degrees. Today it's only three degrees.
It's ....colder today than........ it was yesterday.
2 Dan and I went for a run. I ran ten kilometres. Dan stopped after eight kilometres.
I ran .... Dan.
3 The journey takes four hours by car and five hours by train.
The journey takes .... train .... car.
4 I expected my friends to arrive at about 4 o'clock. In fact they arrived at 2.30.
My friends .... I expected.
5 There is always a lot of traffic here, but today the traffic is really bad.
The traffic today .... usual.

Unit 106

Comparative 2 (**much better / any better** etc.)

A **much** / **a lot** etc. + *comparative*

Before comparatives you can use:

much   **a lot**   **far** (= a lot)   **a bit**   **a little**   **slightly** (= a little)

☐ I felt ill earlier, but I feel **much better** now. (*or* **a lot better**)
☐ Don't go by train. It's **a lot more expensive**. (*or* **much more expensive**)
☐ Could you speak **a bit more slowly**? (*or* **a little more slowly**)
☐ This bag is **slightly heavier** than the other one.
☐ The problem is **far more serious** than we thought at first.

B **any** / **no** + *comparative*

You can use **any** and **no** + comparative (**any longer** / **no bigger** etc.):

☐ I've waited long enough. I'm not waiting **any longer**. (= not even a little longer)
☐ We expected their apartment to be very big, but it's **no bigger** than ours.
or . . . it is**n't any bigger** than ours. (= not even a little bigger)
☐ How do you feel now? Do you feel **any better**?
☐ This hotel is better than the other one, and it's **no more expensive**.

C **better and better**, **more and more** etc.

We repeat comparatives (**better and better** etc.) to say that something changes continuously:

☐ Your English is improving. It's getting **better and better**.
☐ The city has grown fast in recent years. It's got **bigger and bigger**.
☐ As I listened to his story, I became **more and more convinced** that he was lying.
☐ **More and more tourists** are visiting this part of the country.

D **the** . . . **the** . . .

You can say **the sooner the better**, **the more the better** etc. :

☐ A: What time shall we leave?
B: **The sooner the better**. (= as soon as possible)
☐ A: What sort of bag do you want? A big one?
B: Yes, **the bigger the better**. (= as big as possible)
☐ When you're travelling, **the less luggage** you have **the better**.

We also use **the** . . . **the** . . . to say that one thing depends on another thing:

☐ **The sooner** we leave, **the earlier** we'll arrive. (= if we leave sooner, we'll arrive earlier)
☐ **The younger** you are, **the easier** it is to learn.
☐ **The more expensive** the hotel, **the better** the service.
☐ **The more** I thought about the plan, **the less** I liked it.

E **older** and **elder**

The comparative of **old** is **older**:

☐ David looks **older** than he really is. (*not* looks elder)

We use **elder** only when we talk about people in a family (**my elder sister**, **their elder son** etc.).
You can also use **older**:

☐ **My elder sister** is a TV producer. (*or* My **older** sister . . .)

But we do not say that 'somebody is elder':

☐ My sister is **older** than me. (*not* elder than me)

any/no ➜ **Unit 86**   Comparative 1, 3 ➜ **Units 105, 107**   **eldest** ➜ **Unit 108C**
even + comparative ➜ **Unit 112C**

Exercises

106.1 **Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences. Use much / a bit etc. + a comparative form. Use than where necessary.**

1 The problem is ....much more serious than........ we thought at first. (much / serious)
2 This bag is too small. I need something .... (much / big)
3 I liked the museum. It was .... I expected. (a lot / interesting)
4 It was very hot yesterday. Today it's .... (a little / cool)
5 I'm afraid the problem is .... it seems. (far / complicated)
6 You're driving too fast. Can you drive .... ? (a bit / slowly)
7 I thought he was younger than me, but in fact he's .... (slightly / old)

106.2 **Complete the sentences using any/no + comparative. Use than where necessary.**

1 I've waited long enough. I'm not waiting ....any longer.... .
2 I'm sorry I'm a bit late, but I couldn't get here ....
3 This shop isn't expensive. The prices are .... anywhere else.
4 I need to stop for a rest. I can't walk ....
5 The traffic isn't especially bad today. It's .... usual.

106.3 **Complete the sentences using ... and ... (see Section C).**

1 It's getting ....more and more difficult.... to find a job. (difficult)
2 That hole in your sweater is getting .... (big)
3 I waited for my interview and became .... (nervous)
4 As the day went on, the weather got .... (bad)
5 Health care is becoming .... (expensive)
6 Since Anna went to Canada, her English has got .... (good)
7 These days I travel a lot. I'm spending .... away from home. (time)

106.4 **Complete the sentences using the ... the ... .**

1 You learn things more easily when you're young.
The ....younger you are.... , the easier it is to learn.
2 It's hard to concentrate when you're tired.
The more tired you are, the ....
3 We should decide what to do as soon as possible.
The .... , the better.
4 I know more, but I understand less.
The .... , the less I understand.
5 If you use more electricity, your bill will be higher.
The more electricity you use, ...
6 Kate had to wait a long time and became more and more impatient.
The .... , the more ....

106.5 **Use the words on the right to complete the sentences.**

1 I like to travel light. The ....less.... luggage, the better.
2 The problem is getting .... and more serious.
3 The more time I have, the .... it takes me to do things.
4 I'm walking as fast as I can. I can't walk .... faster.
5 The higher your income, ... more tax you have to pay.
6 I'm surprised Anna is only 25. I thought she was ....
7 Jane's .... sister is a nurse.
8 I was a little late. The journey took .... longer than I expected.
9 Applications for the job must be received .... later than 15 April.
10 Don't tell him anything. The .... he knows, the ....

any
better
elder
~~**less**~~
less
longer
more
no
older
slightly
the

Unit 107 Comparative 3 (**as … as / than**)

A

Study this example situation:

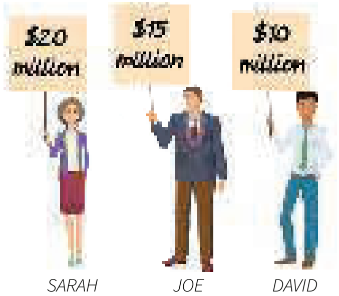

Sarah, Joe and David are all very rich.
Sarah has $20 million, Joe has $15 million and David has $10 million. So:

Joe is rich.

He is **richer than** David.

But he **isn't as rich as** Sarah.
(= Sarah is **richer than** he is)

Some more examples of **not as** … (**as**):

- ☐ Jack **isn't as old as** he looks. (= he looks **older than** he is)
- ☐ The town centre **wasn't as crowded as** usual. (= it is usually **more crowded**)
- ☐ Lisa **didn't** do **as well** in the exam **as** she had hoped. (= she had hoped to do **better**)
- ☐ The weather is better today. It's **not as cold**. (= yesterday was **colder than** today)
- ☐ **I don't** know **as many** people **as** you do. (= you know **more** people **than** me)
- ☐ 'How much was it? Fifty dollars?' 'No, **not as much** as that.' (= **less than** fifty dollars)

You can also say **not so** … (**as**):

- ☐ It's not warm, but it's **not so** cold **as** yesterday. (= it's not **as** cold **as** …)

Less than is similar to **not as** … **as**:

- ☐ I spent **less** money **than** you. (= I **didn't** spend **as** much money **as** you)
- ☐ The city centre was **less** crowded **than** usual. (= it **wasn't as** crowded **as** usual)
- ☐ I play tennis **less than** I used to. (= I **don't** play **as** much **as** I used to)

B

We also use **as** … **as** (*but not* so … as) in positive sentences and in questions:

- ☐ I'm sorry I'm late. I got here **as fast as** I could.
- ☐ There's plenty of food. You can have **as much as** you want.
- ☐ Can you send me the information **as soon as** possible, please?
- ☐ Let's walk. It's just **as quick as** taking the bus.

also **twice as** … **as**, **three times as** … **as** etc. :

- ☐ Petrol is **twice as expensive as** it was a few years ago.
- ☐ Their house is about **three times as big as** ours.
  (*or* … **three times the size of** ours)

C

We say **the same as** (*not* the same like):

- ☐ Laura's salary is **the same as** mine. *or* Laura gets **the same** salary **as** me.
- ☐ David is **the same** age **as** James.
- ☐ Sarah hasn't changed. She still looks **the same as** she did ten years ago.

D

than me / **than I am** etc.

You can say:

- ☐ You're taller **than me**. *or* You're taller **than I am**.
  (*not usually* You're taller than I)
- ☐ He's not as clever **as her**. *or* He's not as clever **as she is**.
- ☐ They have more money **than us**. *or* They have more money **than we have**.
- ☐ I can't run as fast **as him**. *or* I can't run as fast **as he can**.

Comparative 1–2 ➜ **Units 105–106** **as long as** ➜ **Unit 115B** **as** and **like** ➜ **Unit 117**

Exercises

107.1 Complete the sentences using as … as.

1 I'm tall, but you are taller. I'm not ....as tall as you..... .
2 My salary is high, but yours is higher. My salary isn't ....
3 You know a bit about cars, but I know more.
You don't ....
4 We are busy today, but we were busier yesterday.
We aren't ....
5 I still feel bad, but I felt a lot worse earlier.
I don't ....
6 Our neighbours have lived here for quite a long time, but we've lived here longer.
Our neighbours haven't ....
7 I was a little nervous before the interview, but usually I'm a lot more nervous.
I wasn't ....

107.2 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

1 Jack is younger than he looks. Jack isn't ....as old as he looks..... .
2 I didn't spend as much money as you. You ....spent more money than me..... .
3 The station was nearer than I thought. The station wasn't ....
4 The meal didn't cost as much as I expected. The meal cost ....
5 I watch TV less than I used to. I don't ....
6 Karen's hair isn't as long as it used to be. Karen used to ....
7 I know them better than you do. You don't ....
8 There are fewer students in this class than in the other one.
There aren't ....

107.3 Complete the sentences using as … as. Choose from:

~~fast~~ hard long often quietly soon well

1 I'm sorry I'm late. I got here ....as fast as..... I could.
2 It was a difficult question. I answered it .... I could.
3 'How long can I stay with you?' 'You can stay .... you like.'
4 I need the information quickly, so let me know .... possible.
5 I like to keep fit, so I go swimming .... I can.
6 I didn't want to wake anybody, so I came in .... I could.
7 You always say how tiring your job is, but I work just .... you.

107.4 Write sentences using the same as.

1 David and James are both 22 years old. David ....is the same age as..... James.
2 You and I both have dark brown hair. Your hair .... mine.
3 I arrived at 10.25 and so did you. I arrived .... you.
4 My birthday is 5 April. It's Tom's birthday too. My birthday .... Tom's.

107.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

as him is less me much ~~soon~~ than twice

1 I'll let you know as ....soon..... as I have any more news.
2 My friends arrived earlier .... I expected.
3 I live in the same street .... Katherine. We're neighbours.
4 He doesn't know much. I know more than ....
5 This morning there was .... traffic than usual.
6 I don't watch TV as .... as I used to.
7 Your bag is quite light. Mine is .... as heavy as yours.
8 We were born in the same year. I'm a little older than she ....
9 I was really surprised. Nobody was more surprised than ....

Unit 108

Superlative (**the longest** / **the most enjoyable** etc.)

A

Look at these examples:

What is **the longest** river in the world?
What was **the most enjoyable** holiday you've ever had?

Longest and **most enjoyable** are *superlative* forms.

The superlative form is **-est** or **most** . . . . In general, we use **-est** for short words and **most** . . . for longer words.

	long → long**est**	**hot** → hott**est**	**easy** → easi**est**	**hard** → hard**est**
but	**most** famous	**most** boring	**most** enjoyable	**most** difficult

A few superlative forms are irregular:

good → **best**   bad → **worst**   **far** → **furthest** *or* **farthest**

The rules are the same as those for the comparative – see Unit 105.
For spelling, see Appendix 6.

B

We normally use **the** (or **my**/**your** etc.) with a superlative:

- Yesterday was **the hottest** day of the year.
- The Louvre in Paris is one of **the most famous** museums in the world.
- She is really nice – one of **the nicest** people I know.
- What's **the best** movie you've ever seen, and what's **the worst**?
- How old is **your youngest** child?

Compare the superlative and the comparative:

- This hotel is **the cheapest** in town. *(superlative)*
  It's **cheaper** than all the others in town. *(comparative)*
- He's **the most patient** person I've ever met.
  He's much **more patient** than I am.

C

oldest and **eldest**

The superlative of **old** is **oldest**:

- That church is **the oldest** building in the town. (*not* the eldest)

We use **eldest** only when we talk about people in a family (you can also use **oldest**):

- **Their eldest son** is 13 years old. (*or* Their **oldest** son)
- Are you **the eldest** in your family? (*or* the **oldest**)

D

After superlatives we normally use **in** with places:

- What's the longest river **in the world**? (*not* of the world)
- We had a nice room. It was one of the best **in the hotel**. (*not* of the hotel)

We also use **in** for organisations and groups of people (a class / a company etc.):

- Who is the youngest student **in the class**? (*not* of the class)

For a period of time (**day**, **year** etc.), we normally use **of**:

- Yesterday was the hottest day **of the year**.
- What was the happiest day **of your life**?

E

We often use the *present perfect* (I **have done**) after a superlative (see also Unit 8A):

- What's **the most important** decision **you've** ever **made**?
- That was **the best** holiday **I've had** for a long time.

Comparative (**cheaper** / **more expensive** etc.) ➜ **Units 105–107**   **elder** ➜ **Unit 106E**

Exercises

108.1 Complete the sentences. Use the superlative forms (-est or most ...) of the words in the box.

bad ~~cheap~~ good honest popular short tall

1 We didn't have much money, so we stayed at .... the cheapest .... hotel in the town.
2 This building is 250 metres high, but it's not .... in the city.
3 It was an awful day. It was .... day of my life.
4 What is .... sport in your country?
5 I like the morning. For me it's .... part of the day.
6 Sarah always tells the truth. She's one of .... people I know.
7 A straight line is .... distance between two points.

108.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (-est or most ...) or a comparative (-er or more ...).

1 We stayed at .... the cheapest .... hotel in the town. (cheap)
2 Our hotel was .... cheaper .... than all the others in the town. (cheap)
3 I wasn't feeling well yesterday, but I feel a bit .... today. (good)
4 What's .... thing you've ever bought? (expensive)
5 I prefer this chair to the other one. It's .... (comfortable)
6 Amy and Ben have three daughters. .... is 14 years old. (old)
7 Who is the .... person you know? (old)
8 What's .... way to get to the station? (quick)
9 Which is .... – the bus or the train? (quick)
10 I can remember when I was three years old. It's .... memory. (early)
11 Everest is .... mountain in the world. It is .... than any other mountain. (high)
12 A: This knife isn't very sharp. Do you have a .... one?
B: No, it's .... one I have. (sharp)

108.3 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (-est or most ...) + a preposition (of or in).

1 It's a very good room. It's .... the best room in .... the hotel.
2 Brazil is a very large country. It's .... South America.
3 It was a very happy day. It was .... my life.
4 This is a very valuable painting. It's .... the museum.
5 Spring is a very busy time for me. It's .... the year.

In the following sentences use one of + a superlative + a preposition.

6 It's a very good room. It's .... one of the best rooms in .... the hotel.
7 He's a very rich man. He's one .... the country.
8 She's a very good student. She's .... the class.
9 It was a very bad experience. It was .... my life.
10 It's a very famous university. It's .... the world.

108.4 What do you say in these situations? Use a superlative + ever.

1 You've just been to the cinema. The movie was extremely boring. You tell your friend:
(boring / movie / ever / see) That's .... the most boring movie I've ever seen .... .
2 Someone has just told you a joke which you think is very funny. You say:
(funny / joke / ever / hear) That's ....
3 You're drinking coffee with a friend. It's really good coffee. You say:
(good / coffee / ever / taste) This ....
4 You have just run ten kilometres. You've never run further than this. You say:
(far / ever / run) That ....
5 You gave up your job. Now you think this was a very bad mistake. You say:
(bad / mistake / ever / make) It ....
6 Your friend meets a lot of people, some of them famous. You ask your friend:
(famous / person / ever / meet?) Who .... ?

Unit
109

Word order 1: verb + object; place and time

A

Verb + object

The *verb* and the *object* normally go together. We do not usually put other words between them:

	verb	*object*		
I	**like**	**my job**	very much.	(*not* I like very much)
Our guide	**spoke**	**English**	fluently.	(*not* spoke fluently English)
I didn't	**use**	**my phone**	yesterday.	
Do you	**eat**	**meat**	every day?	

Two more examples:

- I lost all my money and I also **lost my passport**.
(*not* I lost also my passport)
- At the end of this street you'll **see a supermarket** on your left.
(*not* see on your left a supermarket)

B

Place

The *verb* and *place* (where?) normally go together:

go home **live in a city** **walk to work** etc.

If the verb has an *object*, the order is:

	verb	*object*	*place*	
We	**took**	**the children**	**to the zoo**.	(*not* took to the zoo the children)
Don't	**put**	**anything**	**on the table**.	
Did you	**learn**	**English**	**at school**?	

C

Time

Normally *time* (when? / how often? / how long?) goes after *place*:

	place	*time*	
Ben walks	**to work**	**every morning**.	(*not* every morning to work)
I'm going	**to Paris**	**on Monday**.	
They've lived	**in the same house**	**for a long time**.	
We need to be	**at the airport**	**by 8 o'clock**.	
Sarah gave me a lift	**home**	**after the party**.	
You really shouldn't go	**to bed**	**so late**.	

Sometimes we put *time* at the beginning of the sentence:

- **On Monday** I'm going to Paris.
- **After the party** Sarah gave me a lift home.

Some time words (for example, **always**/**never**/**usually**) go with the verb in the middle of the sentence. See Unit 110.

Word order in questions ➜ **Units 49–50** Adjective order ➜ **Unit 99** Word order 2 ➜ **Unit 110**

Exercises

109.1 Is the word order OK or not? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Did you see your friends yesterday? OK
2 Ben walks every morning to work. Ben walks to work every morning.
3 Joe doesn't like very much football. ……
4 Dan won easily the race. ……
5 Tanya speaks German quite well. ……
6 Have you seen recently Chris? ……
7 I borrowed from a friend some money. ……
8 Please don't ask that question again. ……
9 I ate quickly my breakfast and went out. ……
10 Did you invite to the party a lot of people? ……
11 Sam watches all the time TV. ……
12 Does Kevin play football every weekend? ……

109.2 Complete the sentences. Put the parts in the correct order.

1 We (the children / to the zoo / took). We took the children to the zoo.
2 I (a friend of mine / on my way home / met). I …… .
3 I (to put / on the envelope / a stamp / forgot). I …… .
4 We (a lot of fruit / bought / in the market). We …… .
5 They (opposite the park / a new hotel / built). They …… .
6 Did you (at school / today / a lot of things / learn)?
Did you …… ?
7 We (some interesting books / found / in the library).
We …… .
8 Please (at the top / write / of the page / your name).
Please …… .

109.3 Complete the sentences. Put the parts in the correct order.

1 They (for a long time / have lived / in the same house).
They have lived in the same house for a long time.
2 I (to the supermarket / every Friday / go).
I …… .
3 Why (home / did you come / so late)?
Why …… ?
4 Sarah (her children / takes / every day / to school).
Sarah …… .
5 I haven't (been / recently / to the cinema).
I haven't …… .
6 I (her name / after a few minutes / remembered).
I …… .
7 We (around the town / all morning / walked).
We …… .
8 My brother (has been / since April / in Canada).
My brother …… .
9 I (on Saturday night / didn't see you / at the party).
I …… .
10 Lisa (her umbrella / last night / in a restaurant / left).
Lisa …… .
11 The moon (round the earth / every 27 days / goes).
The moon …… .
12 Anna (Italian / for the last three years / has been teaching / in London).
Anna …… .

Unit
110

Word order 2: adverbs with the verb

A

Some adverbs (for example, **always**, **also**, **probably**) go with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

- Emily **always drives** to work.
- We were feeling very tired and we **were also** hungry.
- The meeting **will probably be cancelled**.

B

If the verb is one word (**drives**/**cooked** etc.), the adverb goes *before* the verb:

	adverb	*verb*	
Emily	**always**	**drives**	to work.
I	**almost**	**fell**	as I was going down the stairs.

- I cleaned the house and **also cooked** the dinner. (*not* cooked also)
- Laura **hardly ever watches** television and **rarely reads** newspapers.
- 'Shall I give you my address?' 'No, I **already have** it.'

Note that these adverbs (**always**/**usually**/**also** etc.) go before **have to** ... :

- Joe never phones me. I **always have to** phone him. (*not* I have always to phone)

But adverbs go *after* **am**/**is**/**are**/**was**/**were**:

- We were feeling very tired and we **were also** hungry. (*not* also were)
- You**'re always** late. You**'re never** on time.
- The traffic **isn't usually** as bad as it was this morning.

C

If the verb is two or more words (for example, **can remember** / **will be cancelled**), the adverb usually goes *after the first verb* (**can**/**doesn't**/**will** etc.):

	verb 1	*adverb*	*verb 2*	
I	**can**	**never**	**remember**	her name.
Clare	**doesn't**	**usually**	**drive**	to work.
	Are you	**definitely**	**going**	away next week?
The meeting	**will**	**probably**	**be**	cancelled.

- You**'ve always been** very kind to me.
- Jack can't cook. He **can't even boil** an egg.
- **Do** you **still work** for the same company?
- The house **was only built** a year ago and it**'s already falling** down.

Note that **probably** goes before a negative (**isn't**/**won't** etc.). So we say:

- I **probably won't see** you. *or*
  I'll **probably not** see you. (*but not* I won't probably)

D

We also use **all** and **both** with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

- We **all felt** ill after the meal. (*not* felt all ill)
- My parents **are both** teachers.
- Sarah and Jane **have both applied** for the job.
- My friends **are all going** out tonight.

E

Sometimes we use **is**/**will**/**did** etc. instead of repeating part of a sentence (see Unit 51):

- Tom says he isn't clever, but I think he **is**. (= he **is clever**)

When we do this, we put **always**/**never** etc. *before* the verb:

- He always says he won't be late, but he **always is**. (= he **is always** late)
- I've never done it and I **never will**. (= I **will never** do it)

Word order 1 ➜ **Unit 109**

Exercises

110.1 Is the word order OK or not? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Helen drives always to work. Helen always drives to work.
2 I cleaned the house and also cooked the dinner. OK
3 I have usually a shower in the morning.
4 I'm usually hungry when I get home from work.
5 Steve gets hardly ever angry.
6 I called him and I sent also an email.
7 You don't listen! I have always to repeat things.
8 I never have worked in a factory.
9 I never have enough time. I'm always busy.
10 When I arrived, my friends already were there.

110.2 Rewrite the sentences to include the word in brackets.

1 Clare doesn't drive to work. (usually) Clare doesn't usually drive to work.
2 Katherine is very generous. (always)
3 I don't have to work on Sundays. (usually)
4 Do you watch TV in the evenings? (always)
5 Martin is learning Spanish, and he is learning Japanese. (also)
Martin is learning Spanish and he
6 a We were on holiday in Spain. (all)
b We were staying at the same hotel. (all)
c We had a great time. (all)
7 a The new hotel is expensive. (probably)
b It costs a lot to stay there. (probably)
8 a I can help you. (probably)
b I can't help you. (probably)

110.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets in the correct order.

1 What's her name again? I can never remember (remember / I / never / can) it.
2 Our cat .... (usually / sleeps) under the bed.
3 There are plenty of hotels here. .... (usually / it / easy / is) to find a place to stay.
4 Mark and Amy .... (both / were / born) in Manchester.
5 Lisa is a good pianist. .... (sing / she / also / can) very well.
6 How do you go to work? .... (usually / you / do / go) by bus?
7 I see them every day, but .... (never / I / have / spoken) to them.
8 We haven't moved. .... (we / still / are / living) in the same place.
9 This shop is always busy. .... (have / you / always / to wait) a long time to be served.
10 This could be the last time I see you. .... (meet / never / we / might) again.
11 Thanks for the invitation, but .... (probably / I / be / won't) able to come to the party.
12 I'm going out for an hour. .... (still / be / you / will) here when I get back?
13 Helen goes away a lot. .... (is / hardly ever / she) at home.
14 If we hadn't taken the same train, ... (never / met / we / would / have) each other.
15 The journey took a long time today. .... (doesn't / take / it / always) so long.
16 .... (all / were / we) tired, so .... (all / we / fell) asleep.
17 Tanya .... (says / always) that she'll phone me, but .... (does / she / never).

Unit 111

still any more yet already

A

We use **still** to say that a situation or action is continuing. It hasn't changed or stopped:

☐ It's ten o'clock and Joe is **still** in bed.
☐ When I went to bed, Chris was **still** working.
☐ Do you **still** want to go away or have you changed your mind?

Still also means 'in spite of this'. For example:

☐ He has everything he needs, but he's **still** unhappy.

Still usually goes in the middle of the sentence with the verb. See Unit 110.

B

We use **not** … **any more** or **not** … **any longer** to say that a situation has changed.
Any more and **any longer** go at the end of a sentence:

☐ Lucy **doesn't** work here **any more**. She left last month. *or*
Lucy **doesn't** work here **any longer**.
☐ We used to be good friends, but we **aren't any more**. *or* … we aren't **any longer**.

You can write **any more** (2 words) or **anymore** (1 word).

You can also use **no longer**. **No longer** goes in the middle of the sentence:

☐ Lucy **no longer** works here.

We do not normally use **no more** in this way:

☐ We are **no longer** friends. (*not* we are no more friends)

Compare **still** and **not** … **any more**:

☐ Sally **still** works here, but Lucy **doesn't** work here **any more**.

C

We use **yet** mainly in negative sentences (**He isn't** here **yet**) and questions (**Is he** here **yet**?).
Yet (= until now) shows that the speaker expects something to happen.

Yet usually goes at the end of a sentence:

☐ It's 10 o'clock and Joe **isn't** here **yet**.
☐ **Have** you **decided** what to do **yet**?
☐ 'Where are you going on holiday?' 'We **don't** know **yet**.'

We often use **yet** with the *present perfect* ('**Have** you **decided** … **yet**?'). See Unit 7C.

Compare **yet** and **still**:

☐ Mike lost his job six months ago and **is still** unemployed.
Mike lost his job six months ago and **hasn't found** another job **yet**.
☐ **Is** it **still** raining?
Has it **stopped** raining **yet**?

Still is also possible in *negative* sentences (before the negative):

☐ She said she would be here an hour ago and she **still hasn't** come.

This is similar to 'she hasn't come **yet**'. But **still** … **not** shows a stronger feeling of surprise or impatience. Compare:

☐ I sent him an invitation last week. He **hasn't** replied **yet**. (but I expect he will reply soon)
☐ I sent him an invitation weeks ago and he **still hasn't** replied. (he should have replied before now)

D

We use **already** to say that something happened sooner than expected.

☐ 'What time is Sue leaving?' 'She has **already** left.' (= sooner than you expected)
☐ Shall I tell Joe what happened or does he **already** know?
☐ I've just had lunch and I'm **already** hungry.

Already usually goes in the middle of a sentence (see Unit 110) or at the end:

☐ She's **already** left. *or* She's left **already**.

Present perfect + **already/yet** ➜ **Unit 7C** Word order ➜ **Unit 110**

Exercises

111.1 **Compare what Paul said a few years ago with what he says now. Some things are the same as before and some things have changed. Write sentences with still and any more.**

Paul a few years ago

I travel a lot.
I work in a shop.
I write poems.
I want to be a teacher.
I'm interested in politics.
I'm single.
I go fishing a lot.

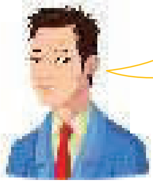

Paul now

I travel a lot.
I work in a hospital.
I gave up writing poems.
I want to be a teacher.
I'm not interested in politics.
I'm single.
I haven't been fishing for years.

1 (travel) He still travels a lot.
2 (shop) He doesn't work in a shop any more.
3 (poems) He ......
4 (teacher) ......
5 (politics) ......
6 (single) ......
7 (fishing) ......
8 (beard) ......

Now write three sentences about Paul using no longer.

9 He no longer works in a shop.
10 ......
11 ......
12 ......

111.2 **For each sentence (with still) write a sentence with a similar meaning using not … yet. Choose from these verbs:**

decide find finish go ~~stop~~ take off wake up

1 It's still raining. It hasn't stopped raining yet.
2 Gary is still here. He ......
3 They're still repairing the road. They ......
4 The children are still asleep. They ......
5 Kate is still looking for a job. She ......
6 I'm still wondering what to do. I ......
7 The plane is still waiting on the runway. It ......

111.3 **Put in still, yet, already or any more.**

1 Mike lost his job a year ago and he is still unemployed.
2 Shall I tell Joe what happened or does he already know?
3 Do you ...... live in the same place or have you moved?
4 I'm hungry. Is dinner ready ...... ?
5 I was hungry earlier, but I don't feel hungry ....
6 Can we wait a few minutes? I don't want to go out ....
7 Amy used to work at the airport, but she doesn't work there ....
8 I used to live in Amsterdam. I ...... have a lot of friends there.
9 There's no need to introduce me to Joe. We've ...... met.
10 John is 80 years old, but he's ...... very fit and healthy.
11 Would you like something to eat, or have you ...... eaten?
12 'Where's Helen?' 'She's not here .... She'll be here soon.'
13 Mark said he'd be here at 8.30. It's 9 o'clock now and he ...... isn't here.
14 Do you want to join the club or are you ...... a member?
15 It happened a long time ago, but I ...... remember it very clearly.
16 I've put on weight. These trousers don't fit me ....

Unit
112

even

A

Study this example situation:

Tina loves watching TV.

She has a television in every room of the house, **even the bathroom**.

We use **even** to say that something is unusual or surprising. It is not usual to have a television in the bathroom.

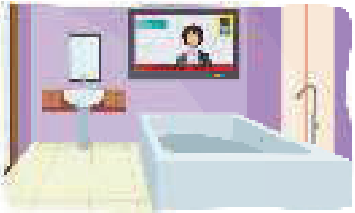

Some more examples:

- These pictures are really awful. **Even I** take better pictures than these. (and I'm certainly not a good photographer)
- He always wears a coat, **even in hot weather**.
- The print was very small. I couldn't read it, **even with glasses**.
- Nobody would help her, **not even her best friend**. *or*
  Not even her best friend would help her.

B

You can use **even** with the verb in the middle of a sentence (see Unit 110):

- Laura has travelled all over the world. She's **even** been to the Antarctic.
- They are very rich. They **even** have their own private jet.

You can use **even** with a negative (**not even**, **can't even**, **don't even** etc.):

- I can't cook. I **can't even** boil an egg. (and boiling an egg is very easy)
- They weren't very friendly to us. They **didn't even** say hello.
- Jessica is very fit. She's been running quite fast and she's **not even** out of breath.

C

You can use **even** + *comparative* (**cheaper** / **more expensive** etc.):

- I got up very early, but Jack got up **even earlier**.
- I knew I didn't have much money, but I have **even less** than I thought.
- We were very surprised to get an email from her. We were **even more surprised** when she came to see us a few days later.

D

even though / **even when** / **even if**

We use **even though** / **even when** / **even if** + *subject* + *verb*:

- **Even though** $\underbrace{\textbf{Tina can't}}_{\textit{subject + verb}}$ drive, she has a car.
- He never shouts, **even when he's** angry.
- This river is dangerous. It's dangerous to swim in it, **even if you're** a strong swimmer.

We do not use **even** + *subject* + *verb*. We say:

- **Even though she can't** drive, she has a car. (*not* even she can't drive)
- I can't reach the shelf **even if I stand** on a chair. (*not* even I stand)

Compare **even if** and **even** (without **if**):

- It's dangerous to swim here **even if you're** a strong swimmer. (*not* even you are)
- The river is dangerous, **even for strong swimmers**.

Compare **even if** and **if**:

- We're going to the beach tomorrow. It doesn't matter what the weather is like. We're going **even if** the weather is bad.
- We want to go to the beach tomorrow, but we won't go **if** the weather is bad.

if and **when** ➜ Unit 25D **though** / **even though** ➜ Unit 113E

Exercises

112.1 Amy, Kate and Lisa are three friends who went on holiday together. Use the information given about them to complete the sentences using even or not even.

AMY	*KATE*	*LISA* 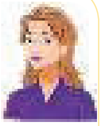
is usually happy	isn't very keen on art	is almost always late
is usually on time	is usually miserable	is a keen photographer
likes to get up early	usually hates hotels	loves staying in hotels
is very interested in art	doesn't use her camera much	isn't very good at getting up

1 They stayed at a hotel. Everybody liked it, ……even Kate…… .
2 They arranged to meet. They all arrived on time, …… .
3 They went to an art gallery. Nobody enjoyed it, …… .
4 Yesterday they had to get up early. They all managed to do this, …… .
5 They were together yesterday. They were all in a good mood, …… .
6 None of them took any pictures, …… .

112.2 Make sentences with even. Use the words in brackets.

1 Laura has been all over the world. (the Antarctic) ……She has even been to the Antarctic.……
2 We painted the whole room. (the floor) We ……
3 Rachel has met lots of famous people. (the prime minister)
She ……
4 You could hear the noise from a long way away. (from the next street)
You ……

Now make sentences with a negative + even (didn't even, can't even etc.).

5 They didn't say anything to us. (hello) ……They didn't even say hello.……
6 I can't remember anything about her. (her name)
I ……
7 There isn't anything to do in this town. (a cinema)
……
8 He didn't tell anybody where he was going. (his wife)
……
9 I don't know anyone in our street. (my neighbours)
……

112.3 Complete the sentences using even + comparative.

1 It was very hot yesterday, but today it's ……even hotter…… .
2 The church is 700 years old, but the house next to it is …… .
3 That's a very good idea, but I've got an …… one.
4 The first question was very difficult to answer. The second one was …… .
5 I did very badly in the exam, but most of my friends did …… .
6 Neither of us was hungry. I ate very little and my friend ate …… .

112.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from: if even even if even though

1 ……Even though…… she can't drive, she has a car.
2 The bus leaves in five minutes, but we can still catch it …… we run.
3 The bus leaves in two minutes. We won't catch it now …… we run.
4 Mark's Spanish isn't very good, …… after three years in Spain.
5 Mark's Spanish isn't very good, …… he lived in Spain for three years.
6 …… with the heating on, it was cold in the house.
7 I couldn't sleep …… I was very tired.
8 I won't forgive them for what they did, …… they apologise.
9 …… I hadn't eaten anything for 24 hours, I wasn't hungry.

→ Additional exercise 32 (page 321)

Unit 113 although though even though in spite of despite

A

Study this example situation:

Last year Paul and Sarah had a holiday by the sea.
It rained a lot, but they had a good time.

You can say:

Although it rained a lot, they had a good time.
(= It rained a lot, but they . . .)
or
In spite of
Despite } **the rain**, they had a good time.

B

After **although** we use a *subject* + *verb*:

- **Although it rained** a lot, they had a good time.
- I didn't apply for the job **although I had** the necessary qualifications.

Compare the meaning of **although** and **because**:

- We went out **although** it was raining heavily.
- We didn't go out **because** it was raining heavily.

C

After **in spite of** or **despite**, we use a *noun*, a *pronoun* (**this**/**that**/**what** etc.) or **-ing**:

- **In spite of the rain**, we had a good time.
- She wasn't well, but **in spite of this** she continued working.
- **In spite of what** I said yesterday, I still love you.
- I didn't apply for the job **in spite of having** the necessary qualifications.

Despite is the same as **in spite of**. We say **in spite of**, but **despite** (*without* of):

- She wasn't well, but **despite this** she continued working. (*not* despite of this)

You can say '**in spite of the fact** (that) . . .' and '**despite the fact** (that) . . .':

- I didn't apply for the job { **in spite of the fact** (that) / **despite the fact** (that) } I had the necessary qualifications.

Compare **in spite of** and **because of**:

- We went out **in spite of the rain**. (*or* . . . **despite the rain**.)
- We didn't go out **because of the rain**.

D

Compare **although** and **in spite of** / **despite**:

- **Although the traffic was** bad, / **In spite of the traffic**, } we arrived on time. (*not* in spite of the traffic was bad)
- I couldn't sleep { **although I was** very tired. / **despite being** very tired. (*not* despite I was tired)

E

though = **although**:

- I didn't apply for the job **though** I had the necessary qualifications.

In spoken English we often use **though** at the end of a sentence:

- The house isn't so nice. I like the garden **though**. (= but I like the garden)
- I see them every day. I've never spoken to them **though**. (= but I've never spoken to them)

Even though (*but not* 'even' alone) is similar to **although**:

- **Even though** I was really tired, I couldn't sleep. (*not* even I was really tired)

even ➜ Unit 112

Exercises

113.1 **Complete the sentences. Use although + a sentence from the box.**

I didn't speak the language well	**~~she has a very important job~~**
I had never seen her before	**we don't like them very much**
it was quite cold	**the heating was on**
I'd met her twice before	**we've known each other a long time**

1 Although she has a very important job, she isn't well-paid.
2 ……………… , I recognised her from a photo.
3 Sarah wasn't wearing a coat ……………… .
4 We decided to invite them to the party ……………… .
5 ……………… , I managed to make myself understood.
6 ……………… , the room wasn't warm.
7 I didn't recognise her ……………… .
8 We're not close friends ……………… .

113.2 **Complete the sentences with although / in spite of / because / because of.**

1 Although it rained a lot, we had a good time.
2 a ……………… all our careful plans, a lot of things went wrong.
b ……………… we'd planned everything carefully, a lot of things went wrong.
3 a I went home early ……………… I was feeling unwell.
b I went to work the next day ……………… I was still feeling unwell.
4 a Chris only accepted the job ……………… the salary, which was very high.
b Sam accepted the job ……………… the salary, which was rather low.
5 a ……………… there was a lot of noise, I slept quite well.
b I couldn't get to sleep ……………… the noise.

Use your own ideas to complete the following sentences:

6 a He passed the exam although ……………… .
b He passed the exam because ……………… .
7 a I didn't eat much although ……………… .
b I didn't eat much in spite of ……………… .

113.3 **Make one sentence from two. Use the word(s) in brackets in your sentences.**

1 I couldn't sleep. I was very tired. (despite)
I couldn't sleep despite being very tired.
2 We played quite well. We lost the game. (in spite of)
In spite ………………
3 I'd hurt my foot. I managed to walk home. (although)
………………
4 I enjoyed the film. The story was silly. (in spite of)
………………
5 We live in the same building. We hardly ever see each other. (despite)
………………
6 They came to the party. They hadn't been invited. (even though)
………………

113.4 **Use the words in brackets to make a sentence with though at the end.**

1 The house isn't very nice. (like / garden) I like the garden though.
2 I enjoyed reading the book. (very long) ………………
3 We didn't like the food. (ate) ………………
4 Laura is very nice. (don't like / husband) I ………………

➜ Additional exercise 32 (page 321)

Unit
114 in case

A

Study this example situation:

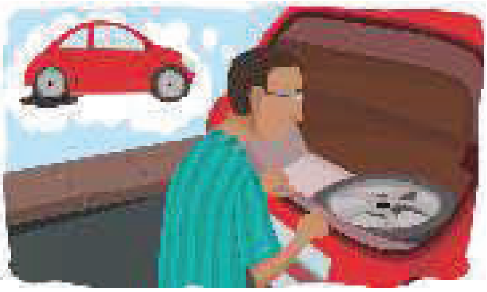

Your car should have a spare wheel **in case** you have a puncture.
(= because it is possible you will have a puncture)

in case something happens =
because it is possible it will happen

Some more examples of **in case**:

- I'd better write down my password **in case I forget it**.
(= because it is possible I will forget it)
- Shall I draw a map for you **in case you have a problem** finding our house?
(= because it is possible you will have problems finding it)
- I'll remind them about the meeting **in case they've forgotten**.
(= because it is possible they have forgotten)

We use **just in case** for a smaller possibility:

- I don't think it will rain, but I'll take an umbrella **just in case**. (= **just in case** it rains)

We do not use **will** after **in case** (see also Unit 25):

- I'll write down my password **in case** I **forget** it. (*not* in case I will forget)

B

In case and **if** are not the same. We use **in case** to say *why* somebody does (or doesn't do) something. You do something *now* **in case** something happens *later*.

Compare:

in case	**if**
We'll buy some more food **in case** Tom comes. (= Maybe Tom will come. We'll buy some more food now, whether he comes or not. Then we'll *already* have the food *if* he comes.)	We'll buy some more food **if** Tom comes. (= Maybe Tom will come. If he comes, we'll buy some more food. If he doesn't come, we won't buy any more food.)
I'll give you my phone number **in case** you need to contact me.	You can call me on this number **if** you need to contact me.
You should insure your bike **in case** it is stolen.	You should inform the police **if** your bike is stolen.

C

You can use **in case** + *past* to say why somebody did something:

- I gave him my phone number **in case he needed** to contact me.
(= because it was possible that he would need to contact me)
- I drew a map for Sarah **in case she had** a problem finding our house.
- We rang the doorbell again **in case they hadn't heard** it the first time.

D

in case of = if there is . . . (especially on notices, instructions etc.):

- **In case of fire**, please leave the building as quickly as possible. (= if there is a fire)
- **In case of emergency**, call this number. (= if there is an emergency)

if ➜ Units 25, 38–40

Exercises

114.1 **Sophie is going for a long walk in the country. You're worried about her because:**

perhaps she'll be thirsty
~~it's possible she'll get lost~~
she might need to call somebody
perhaps she'll get hungry
maybe she'll get lonely
maybe it will rain

You advise her to take some things with her. Complete the sentences using in case.

1 Take a map in case you get lost .
2 You should take some chocolate …… .
3 You'll need an anorak …… .
4 Take plenty of water …… .
5 Don't forget your phone …… .
6 Shall I come with you …… ?

114.2 **What do you say in these situations? Use in case.**

1 It's possible that Jane will need to contact you, so you give her your phone number.
You say: I'll give you my phone number in case you need to contact me .

2 A friend of yours is going away for a long time. Maybe you won't see her again before she goes, so you decide to say goodbye now.
You say: I'll say goodbye now …… .

3 You are buying food in a supermarket with a friend. You think you have everything you need, but maybe you've forgotten something. Your friend has the list. You ask her to check it.
You say: Can you …… ?

4 You're shopping with a friend. She's just bought some jeans, but she didn't try them on. Maybe they won't fit her, so you advise her to keep the receipt.
You say: Keep …… .

114.3 **Complete the sentences using in case.**

1 It was possible that it would rain, so I took an umbrella.
I took an umbrella in case it rained .
2 I thought that I might forget the name of the book. So I wrote it down.
I wrote down the name of the book …… .
3 I thought my parents might be worried about me. So I phoned them.
I phoned my parents …… .
4 I sent an email to Lisa, but she didn't reply. So I sent another email because maybe she didn't get the first one.
I sent her another email …… .
5 I met some people when I was on holiday in France. They said they might come to London one day. I live in London, so I gave them my phone number.
I gave them my phone number …… .

114.4 **Put in in case or if.**

1 I'll draw a map for you in case you have a problem finding our house.
2 You should tell the police if you have any information about the crime.
3 I hope you'll come to Australia sometime. …… you come, you must visit us.
4 I made a copy of the document …… something happens to the original.
5 This book belongs to Kate. Can you give it to her …… you see her?
6 Write your name and phone number on your bag …… you lose it.
7 Go to the lost property office …… you lose your bag.
8 The burglar alarm will ring …… somebody tries to break into the house.
9 You should lock your bike to something …… somebody tries to steal it.
10 I was advised to get insurance …… I needed medical treatment while I was abroad.

➜ Additional exercise 32 (page 321)

Unit 115 unless as long as provided

A unless

Study this example situation:

The club is for members only.

You can't go in **unless you are a member**.

This means:
You can't go in *except if* you are a member.
You can go in *only if* you are a member.

unless = except if

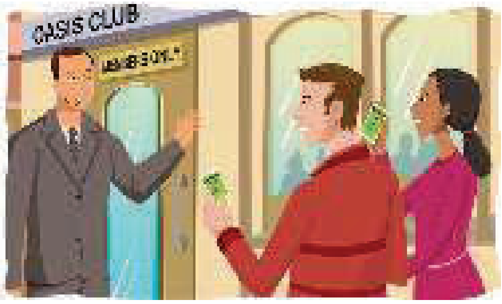

Some more examples of **unless**:

- I'll see you tomorrow **unless I have to work late**.
  (= except if I have to work late)
- There are no buses to the beach. **Unless you have a car**, it's difficult to get there.
  (= except if you have a car)
- A: Shall I tell Lisa what happened?
  B: **Not unless** she asks you. (= tell her only if she asks you)
- Ben hates to complain. He wouldn't complain about something **unless it was really bad**.
  (= except if it was really bad)
- We can take a taxi to the restaurant – **unless you'd prefer to walk**. (= except if you'd prefer to walk)

Instead of **unless** it is often possible to say **if** . . . **not**:

- **Unless we leave now**, we'll be late. *or* **If we don't leave now**, we'll . . .

B as long as / so long as and provided / providing

You can say **as long as** or **so long as** (= if, on condition that):

- You can borrow my car $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\textbf{as long as}\\ \textbf{so long as}\end{array}\right\}$ you promise not to drive too fast.
  (= You can borrow my car, but you must promise not to drive too fast. This is a condition.)

You can also say **provided** (**that**) or **providing** (**that**):

- Travelling by car is convenient $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\textbf{provided}\ (\textbf{that})\\ \textbf{providing}\ (\textbf{that})\end{array}\right\}$ you have somewhere to park.
  (= It's convenient but only if you have somewhere to park.)
- $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\textbf{Providing}\ (\textbf{that})\\ \textbf{Provided}\ (\textbf{that})\end{array}\right\}$ the room is clean, I don't mind which hotel we stay at.
  (= The room must be clean, but otherwise I don't mind.)

C unless / as long as etc. for the future

When we are talking about the future, we do *not* use **will** after **unless** / **as long as** / **so long as** / **provided** / **providing**. We use a *present* tense (see Unit 25):

- I'm not going out **unless** it **stops** raining. (*not* unless it will stop)
- **Providing** the weather **is** good, we're going to have a picnic tomorrow.
  (*not* providing the weather will be good)

if ➜ Units 25, 38–40

Exercises

115.1 Write a new sentence with the same meaning. Use unless in your sentence.

1 You must try a bit harder, or you won't pass the exam.
You won't pass the exam unless you try a bit harder.
2 Listen carefully, or you won't know what to do.
You won't know what to do
3 She must apologise to me, or I'll never speak to her again.

4 You have to speak very slowly, or he won't understand you.

5 Business must improve soon, or the company will have to close.

6 We need to do something soon, or the problem will get worse.

115.2 Write sentences with unless.

1 The club isn't open to everyone. You're allowed in only if you're a member.
You aren't allowed in the club unless you're a member.
2 I don't want to go to the party alone. I'm going only if you go too.
I'm not going
3 Don't worry about the dog. It will chase you only if you move suddenly.
The dog
4 Ben isn't very talkative. He'll speak to you only if you ask him something.
Ben
5 Today is a public holiday. The doctor will see you only if it's an emergency.
The doctor

115.3 Which is correct?

1 You can borrow my car ~~unless~~ / as long as you promise not to drive too fast.
(as long as *is correct*)
2 We're going to the beach tomorrow unless / providing the weather is bad.
3 We're going to the beach tomorrow unless / providing the weather is good.
4 I don't mind if you come home late unless / as long as you come in quietly.
5 I'm going now unless / provided you want me to stay.
6 I don't watch TV unless / as long as I have nothing else to do.
7 Children are allowed to use the swimming pool unless / provided they are with an adult.
8 Unless / Provided they are with an adult, children are not allowed to use the swimming pool.
9 We can sit here in the corner unless / as long as you'd rather sit by the window.
10 A: Our holiday cost a lot of money.
B: Did it? Well, that doesn't matter unless / as long as you enjoyed yourselves.

115.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 We'll be late unless we take a taxi.
2 I like hot weather as long as
3 It takes 20 minutes to drive to the airport provided
4 I don't mind walking home as long as
5 I like to walk to work in the morning unless
6 We can meet tomorrow unless
7 I'll lend you the money providing
8 I'll tell you a secret as long as
9 You won't achieve anything unless

➜ **Additional exercise 32** (page 321)

Unit
116

as (**as** I walked … / **as** I was … etc.)

A

as = at the same time as

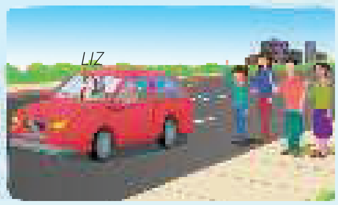

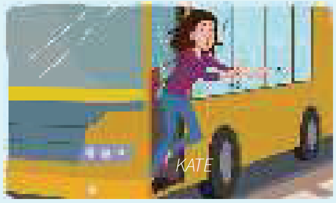

You can use **as** when two things happen together at the same time:

☐ We all waved goodbye to Liz **as she drove away**.
(we **waved** and she **drove** away at the same time)

☐ **As I walked along the street**, I looked in the shop windows.

☐ Can you turn off the light **as you go out**, please?

Or you can say that something happened **as you were doing** something else (in the middle of doing something else):

☐ Kate slipped **as she was getting off the bus**.

☐ We met Paul **as we were leaving the hotel**.

For the *past continuous* (**was getting** / **were going** etc.), see Unit 6.

You can also use **just as** (= exactly at that moment):

☐ **Just as I sat down**, the doorbell rang.

☐ I had to leave **just as** the conversation was getting interesting.

We also use **as** when two things happen together in a longer period of time:

☐ **As the day went on**, the weather got worse.

☐ I began to enjoy the job more **as I got used to it**.

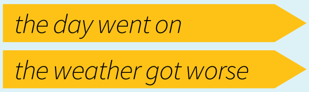

the day went on

the weather got worse

Compare **as** and **when**:

We use **as** only if two things happen at the same time. ☐ **As I drove home**, I listened to music. (= at the same time)	Use **when** (*not* as) if one thing happens after another. ☐ **When I got home**, I had something to eat. (*not* as I got home)

B

as = because

As also means 'because':

☐ **As I was hungry**, I decided to find somewhere to eat.
(= because I was hungry)

☐ **As it's late and we're tired**, let's get a taxi home. (= because it's late …)

☐ We watched TV all evening **as we didn't have anything better to do**.

☐ **As I don't watch TV any more**, I gave my television to a friend of mine.

You can also use **since** in this way:

☐ **Since** it's late and we're tired, let's get a taxi home.

Compare **as** (= because) and **when**:

☐ David wasn't in the office **as he was on holiday**. (= because he was on holiday)	☐ David lost his passport **when he was on holiday**. (= during the time he was away)
☐ **As they lived near us**, we used to see them quite often. (= because they lived near us)	☐ **When they lived near us**, we used to see them quite often. (= at the time they lived near us)

as … **as** ➜ **Unit 107** **like** and **as** ➜ **Unit 117** **as if** ➜ **Unit 118**

Exercises

116.1 **In this exercise as means 'at the same time as'. Use as to join sentences from the boxes.**

1 ~~We all waved goodbye to Liz~~
2 I listened
3 I burnt myself
4 The spectators cheered
5 A dog ran out in front of the car

we were driving along the road.
I was taking a hot dish out of the oven.
~~she drove away.~~
she told me her story.
the two teams came onto the field.

1 We all waved goodbye to Liz as she drove away.
2
3
4
5

116.2 **In this exercise as means 'because'. Join sentences from the boxes beginning with as.**

1 ~~I was hungry~~
2 today is a public holiday
3 I didn't want to disturb anybody
4 I can't go to the concert
5 it was a nice day

we went for a walk by the canal
I tried to be very quiet
~~I decided to find somewhere to eat~~
all government offices are shut
you can have my ticket

1 As I was hungry, I decided to find somewhere to eat.
2
3
4
5

116.3 **What does as mean in these sentences?**

	because	*at the same time as*
1 **As** they lived near us, we used to see them quite often.	✓	
2 Kate slipped **as** she was getting off the bus.		✓
3 **As** I was tired, I went to bed early.		
4 Unfortunately, **as** I was parking the car, I hit the car behind me.		
5 **As** we climbed the hill, we got more and more tired.		
6 We decided to go out to eat **as** we had no food at home.		
7 **As** we don't use the car very often, we've decided to sell it.		

116.4 **In some of these sentences, as is not correct. Correct the sentences where necessary.**

1 Julia got married as she was 22. when she was 22
2 As the day went on, the weather got worse. OK
3 He dropped the glass as he was taking it out of the cupboard.
4 I lost my phone as I was in London.
5 As I left school, I didn't know what to do.
6 The train slowed down as it approached the station.
7 I used to live near the sea as I was a child.
8 We can walk to the hotel as it isn't far from here.

116.5 **Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.**

1 Just as I sat down, the doorbell rang.
2 I saw you as
3 It started to rain just as
4 As she doesn't have a phone,
5 Just as I took the picture,

➜ **Additional exercise 32** (page 321)

Unit
117

like and as

A

Like = similar to, the same as:

- What a beautiful house! It's **like a palace**. (*not* as a palace)
- Be careful! The floor has been polished. It's **like walking on ice**. (*not* as walking)
- It's raining again. I hate weather **like this**. (*not* as this)
- 'What's that noise?' 'It sounds **like a baby crying**.' (*not* as a baby crying)

In these examples, **like** is a *preposition*. So it is followed by a *noun* (like **a palace**), a *pronoun* (like **this**) or **-ing** (like walk**ing**).

Sometimes **like** = for example. You can also use **such as**:

- I enjoy water sports, **like** surfing, scuba diving and water-skiing. *or*
  I enjoy water sports, **such as** surfing . . .

B

As = in the same way as, in the same condition as.
We use **as** with *subject (S)* + *verb (V)*:

- I didn't move anything. I left everything **as it was**.
- You should have done it **as I showed** you.

	S	*+ V*
as	**it**	**was**
as	**I**	**showed**

We also use **like** in this way (+ *subject* + *verb*):

- I left everything **like it was**.

Compare **as** and **like**. You can say:

- You should have done it **as I showed you**. *or* . . . **like I showed you**.

but You should have done it **like this**. (*not* as this)

We say **as usual** / **as always**:

- You're late **as usual**.
- **As always**, Nick was the first to complain.

We say **the same as** . . . :

- Your phone is **the same as** mine. (*not* the same like)

C

Sometimes **as** (+ *subject* + *verb*) has other meanings. For example, after **do**:

- You can do **as you like**. (= do what you like)
- They did **as they promised**. (= They did what they promised.)

We also say **as you know** / **as I said** / **as she expected** / **as I thought** etc. :

- **As you know**, it's Emma's birthday next week. (= you know this already)
- Andy failed his driving test, **as he expected**. (= he expected this before)

Like is not usual in these expressions, except with **say** (**like I said**):

- **As I said** yesterday, I'm sure we can solve the problem. *or* **Like I said** yesterday . . .

D

As can also be a *preposition* (**as** + *noun*), but the meaning is different from **like**.
Compare:

- **As a taxi driver**, I spend most of my working life in a car.
  (I am a taxi driver, it's my job.)

- Everyone in the family wants me to drive them to places. I'm **like a taxi driver**.
  (I'm not a taxi driver, but I'm like one.)

As (*preposition*) = in the position of, in the form of etc. :

- Many years ago I worked **as a photographer**. (I was a photographer)
- Many words, for example 'work' and 'rain', can be used **as verbs or nouns**.
- London is fine **as a place to visit**, but I wouldn't like to live there.
- The news of the tragedy came **as a great shock**.

as . . . **as** ➜ **Unit 107** **as** (= at the same time as / because) ➜ **Unit 116** **as if** ➜ **Unit 118**

Exercises

117.1 **In some of these sentences, you need like (not as). Correct the sentences where necessary. Write '*OK*' if the sentence is correct.**

1 It's raining again. I hate weather as this. .... I hate weather like this.
2 You should have done it as I showed you. .... OK
3 Do you think James looks as his father? ....
4 He gets on my nerves. I can't stand people as him. ....
5 Why didn't you do it as I told you to do it? ....
6 As her mother, Katherine has a very good voice. ....
7 You never listen. Talking to you is as talking to the wall. ....
8 I prefer the room as it was, before we decorated it. ....
9 I'll phone you tomorrow as usual, OK? ....
10 She's a very good swimmer. She swims as a fish. ....

117.2 **Which goes with which?**

1 I won't be able to come to the party.
2 I like Tom's idea.
3 I'm fed up with my job.
4 You drive too fast.
5 You don't have to take my advice.
6 I couldn't get a seat on the train.

a It was full, as I expected.
b As I've told you before, it's boring.
c ~~As you know, I'll be away.~~
d You can do as you like.
e Let's do as he suggests.
f You should take more care, as I keep telling you.

1 c
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

117.3 **Complete the sentences using like or as + the following:**

a beginner **blocks of ice** **~~a palace~~** **a birthday present**
a child **a theatre** **winter** **a tour guide**

1 This house is beautiful. It's .... like a palace ....
2 My feet are really cold. They're ....
3 I've been playing tennis for years, but I still play ....
4 Marion once had a part-time job ....
5 I wonder what that building is. It looks ....
6 My brother gave me this watch .... a long time ago.
7 It's very cold for the middle of summer. It's ....
8 He's 22 years old, but he sometimes behaves ....

117.4 **Put in like or as. Sometimes either word is possible.**

1 We heard a noise .... like .... a baby crying.
2 I wish I had a car .... yours.
3 Hannah has been working .... a waitress for the last two months.
4 We saw Kevin last night. He was very cheerful, ... always.
5 You waste a lot of time doing things .... sitting in cafes all day.
6 .... you can imagine, we were very tired after such a long journey.
7 Tom showed me some photos of the city .... it was thirty years ago.
8 My neighbour's house is full of interesting things. It's .... a museum.
9 In some countries in Asia, ... Japan, Indonesia and Thailand, traffic drives on the left.
10 The weather hasn't changed. It's the same .... yesterday.
11 You're different from the other people I know. I don't know anyone else .... you.
12 The news that they are getting married came .... a complete surprise to me.
13 This tea is awful. It tastes .... water.
14 Suddenly there was a terrible noise. It was .... a bomb exploding.
15 Right now I'm working in a shop. It's not great, but it's OK .... a temporary job.
16 Brian is a student, ... most of his friends.

Unit
118 like as if

A

We use **like** or **as if** to say how somebody/something looks, sounds or feels:

☐ That house **looks like** it's going to fall down. *or*
That house **looks as if** it's going to fall down.
☐ Amy **sounded like** she had a cold, didn't she? *or*
Amy **sounded as if** she had a cold, didn't she?
☐ I've just had a holiday, but I feel very tired.
I don't **feel like** I've had a holiday. *or*
I don't **feel as if** I've had a holiday.

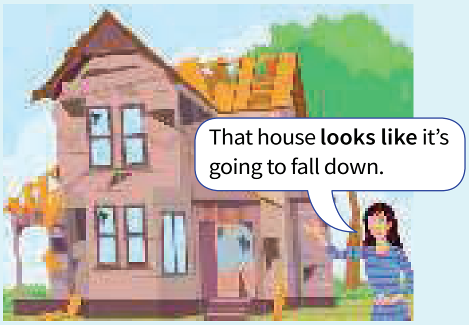
That house **looks like** it's going to fall down.

You can also use **as though** in these examples:

☐ I don't **feel as though** I've had a holiday.

Compare:

☐ You **look tired**. (**look** + *adjective*)
☐ You **look like you haven't slept**.
You **look as if you haven't slept**. } (**look like** / **as if** + *subject* + *verb*)

B

We say: **it looks like** . . . *or* **it looks as if** . . .
it sounds like . . . *or* **it sounds as if** . . .

☐ Sarah is very late. **It looks like** she isn't coming.
or **It looks as if** she isn't coming.
☐ **It looked like** it was going to rain, so we took an umbrella.
or **It looked as if** it was going to rain . . .
☐ The noise is very loud next door.
It sounds like they're having a party.
or **It sounds as if** they're . . .

You can also use **as though**:

☐ **It sounds as though** they're having a party.

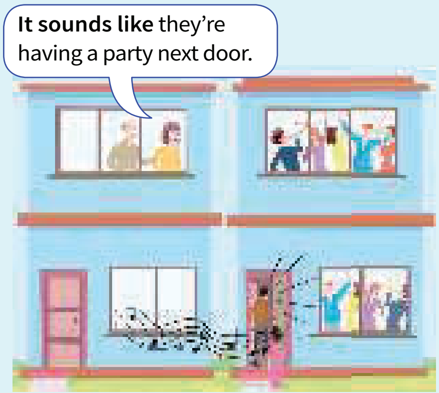
It sounds like they're having a party next door.

C

You can use **like** / **as if** / **as though** with other verbs to say how somebody does something:

☐ He ran **like he was running for his life**.
☐ After the interruption, the speaker went on talking **as if nothing had happened**.
☐ When I told them my plan, they looked at me **as though I was mad**.

D

After **as if**, we sometimes use the *past* when we are talking about the *present*.
For example:

☐ I don't like him. He talks **as if** he **knew** everything.

The meaning is not past. We use the past (as if he **knew**) because the idea is not real: he does *not* know everything. We use the past in the same way with **if** and **wish** (see Unit 39).
We do not normally use **like** in this way.

Some more examples:

☐ She's always asking me to do things for her – **as if I didn't** have enough to do already.
(I *have* enough to do already)
☐ Joe's only 40. Why do you talk about him **as if he was** an old man? (he *isn't* an old man)

When you use the past in this way, you can use **were** instead of **was**:

☐ Why do you talk about him **as if he were** an old man?
☐ They treat me **as if I were** their own son. *or* . . . **as if I was** their own son.
(I'm *not* their son)

if I was/were ➜ **Unit 39C** **look/sound** etc. + adjective ➜ **Unit 99C** **like** and **as** ➜ **Unit 117**

Exercises

118.1 **What do you say in these situations? Use the words in brackets to make your sentence.**

1 You meet Bill. He has a black eye and blood on his face. (look / like / be / a fight)
You say to him: You look like you've been in a fight.
2 Claire comes into the room. She looks absolutely terrified. (look / as if / see / a ghost)
You say to her: What's the matter? You ....
3 You have just run one kilometre, but you are exhausted. (feel / like / run / a marathon)
You say: I ....
4 Joe is on holiday. He's talking to you on the phone and sounds happy.
(sound / as if / have / a good time)
You say to him: You ....

118.2 **Make sentences beginning It looks like … or It sounds like … .**

you should see a doctor
it's going to rain
there's been an accident
~~**she isn't coming**~~
they're having an argument
they don't have any

1 Sarah said she would be here an hour ago.
You say: It looks like she isn't coming.
2 The sky is full of black clouds.
You say: It ....
3 You hear two people shouting at each other next door.
You say: ....
4 You see an ambulance, some policemen and two damaged cars at the side of the road.
You say: ....
5 You and a friend are in a supermarket. You're looking for bananas, but without success.
You say: ....
6 Dave isn't feeling well. He tells you all about it.
You say: ....

118.3 **Complete the sentences with as if. Choose from the box, putting the verbs in the correct form.**

she / enjoy / it
~~**he / need / a good rest**~~
I / not / exist
I / be / crazy
she / hurt / her leg
she / not / want / come
he / not / eat / for a week
he / mean / what he / say

1 Mark looks very tired. He looks as if he needs a good rest .
2 I don't think Paul was joking. He looked ....
3 What's the matter with Lisa? She's walking ....
4 Paul was extremely hungry and ate his dinner very quickly.
He ate ....
5 I looked at Sarah during the movie. She had a bored expression on her face.
She didn't look ....
6 I told my friends about my plan. They were amazed.
They looked at me ....
7 I phoned Kate and invited her to the party, but she wasn't very enthusiastic.
She sounded ....
8 I went into the office, but nobody spoke to me or looked at me.
Everybody ignored me ....

118.4 **These sentences are like the ones in Section D. Complete each sentence using as if.**

1 Andy is a terrible driver. He drives as if he were the only driver on the road.
2 I'm 20 years old, so please don't talk to me .... a child.
3 Steve has never met Nicola, but he talks about her .... his best friend.
4 We first met a long time ago, but I remember it .... yesterday.

Unit
119 during for while

A during

during = at a time between the start and end of something:

☐ I fell asleep **during the movie**. (= at a time between the start and end of the movie)
☐ We met some really nice people **during our holiday**.
☐ The ground is wet. It must have rained **during the night**.

With 'time words' (**the morning**, **the night**, **the summer** etc.), you can usually say **in** or **during**:

☐ It rained **in the night**. *or* … **during the night**.
☐ It's lovely here **during the summer**. *or* … **in the summer**.

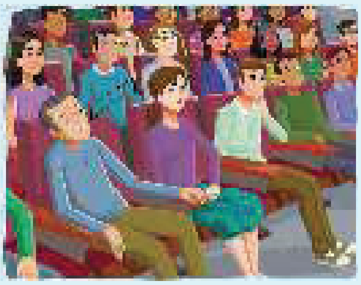

I fell asleep **during the movie**.

B for and during

We use **for** (+ a period of time) to say how long something goes on:

☐ We watched TV **for two hours** last night.
☐ Jess is going away **for a week** in September.
☐ How are you? I haven't seen you **for ages**.
☐ Are you going away **for the weekend**?

We do not use **during** to say *how long* something goes on. We do not say 'during two hours', 'during five years' etc. :

☐ It rained **for** three days without stopping. (*not* during three days)

We use **during** to say *when* something happens (*not* how long). Compare **during** and **for**:

☐ '**When** did you fall asleep?' '**During the movie**.'
☐ '**How long** were you asleep?' '**For half an hour**.'

C during and while

Compare:

We use **during** + *noun*:	We use **while** + *subject* + *verb*:
☐ I fell asleep **during** $\underbrace{\textbf{the movie}}_{\text{noun}}$.	☐ I fell asleep **while** $\underbrace{\textbf{I was watching}}_{\text{subject + verb}}$ TV.
☐ We met a lot of interesting people **during our holiday**.	☐ We met a lot of interesting people **while we were on holiday**.
☐ Robert suddenly began to feel ill **during the exam**.	☐ Robert suddenly began to feel ill **while he was doing the exam**.

Some more examples of **while**:

☐ We saw Clare **while we were waiting** for the bus.
☐ **While you were** out, there was a phone call for you.
☐ Alex read a book **while** Amy **watched** TV.

When we are talking about the future, we use the *present* after **while**. Do not use 'will' (see Unit 25):

☐ I'm going to Moscow next week. I hope the weather will be good **while I'm** there. (*not* while I will be)
☐ What are you going to do **while you're** waiting? (*not* while you'll be waiting)

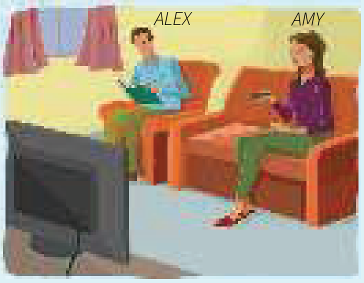

Alex read a book **while Amy watched** TV.

for and **since** ➜ Unit 12A **while** + **-ing** ➜ Unit 68B

Exercises

119.1 Put in **for** or **during**.

1 It rained ....for.... three days without stopping.
2 I fell asleep ....during.... the movie.
3 I went to the theatre last night. I met Sue .... the interval.
4 I felt really ill last week. I could hardly eat anything .... three days.
5 The traffic was bad. We were stuck in a traffic jam .... two hours.
6 Production at the factory was seriously affected .... the strike.
7 Sarah was very angry with me. She didn't speak to me .... a week.
8 I don't have much free time .... the week, but I relax at weekends.
9 I need a break. I think I'll go away .... a few days.
10 The president gave a short speech. She spoke .... only ten minutes.
11 We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn't eaten anything .... the journey.
12 We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn't eaten anything .... eight hours.

119.2 Put in **during** or **while**.

1 We met a lot of interesting people ....while.... we were on holiday.
2 We met a lot of interesting people ....during.... our holiday.
3 I met Mike .... I was shopping.
4 .... I was on holiday, I didn't use my phone at all.
5 I learnt a lot .... the course. The teachers were very good.
6 There was a lot of noise .... the night. What was it?
7 I'd been away for many years. Many things had changed .... that time.
8 What did they say about me .... I was out of the room?
9 When I fly anywhere, I never eat anything .... the flight.
10 Please don't interrupt me .... I'm speaking.
11 .... the festival, it's almost impossible to find a hotel room here.
12 We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn't eaten anything .... we were travelling.

119.3 Put in **during**, **for** or **while**.

1 I used to live in Berlin. I lived there .... five years.
2 One of the runners fell .... the race but managed to get up and continue.
3 Nobody came to see me .... I was in hospital.
4 Try to avoid travelling .... the busy periods of the day.
5 I was very tired. I slept .... ten hours.
6 Can you hold my bag .... I try on this jacket?
7 I'm not sure when we'll arrive, but it will be sometime .... the afternoon.
8 I wasn't well last week. I hardly ate anything .... three days.
9 My phone rang .... we were having dinner.
10 Nobody knows how many people were killed .... the war.

119.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 I fell asleep while ....I was watching TV...
2 I fell asleep during ....the movie...
3 Can you wait for me while ....
4 Most of the students looked bored during ....
5 I was asked a lot of questions during ....
6 Don't open the car door while ....
7 The lights suddenly went out while ....
8 What are you going to do while ....
9 It started to rain during ....
10 It started to rain while ....

➜ Additional exercise 33 (page 321)

Unit
120

by and until by the time . . .

A

by . . . = not later than:

☐ I sent the documents today, so they should arrive **by Monday**.
(= on or before Monday, not later than Monday)

☐ We'd better hurry. We have to be home **by 5 o'clock**.
(= at or before 5 o'clock, not later than 5 o'clock)

☐ Where's Sarah? She should be here **by now**.
(= now or before now – so she should already be here)

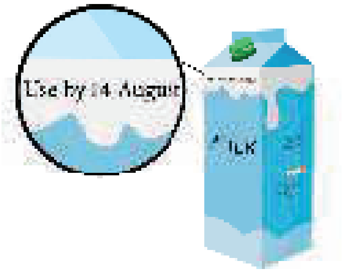

This milk has to be used **by 14 August**.

B

We use **until** (*or* **till**) to say *how long* a situation continues:

☐ A: Shall we go now?
B: No, let's **wait until** it stops raining. *or* . . . **till** it stops raining.

☐ I was very tired this morning. { I **stayed in bed until** half past ten.
I **didn't get up until** half past ten.

Compare **until** and **by**:

Something *continues* **until** a time in the future:	Something *happens* **by** a time in the future:
☐ Joe **will be away until** Monday. (so he'll be back *on* Monday)	☐ Joe **will be back by** Monday. (= not later than Monday)
☐ **I'll be working until** 11.30. (so I'll stop working *at* 11.30)	☐ **I'll have finished my work by** 11.30. (= I'll finish it not later than 11.30)

C

You can say '**by the time** something happens':

☐ It's too late to go to the bank now. **By the time we get there**, it will be closed.
(= it will close between now and the time we get there)

☐ You'll need plenty of time at the airport. **By the time you check in and go through security**, it will be time for your flight.
(= check-in and security will take a long time)

☐ Hurry up! **By the time we get to the cinema**, the film will already have started.

You can say '**by the time** something happened' (for the past):

☐ Karen's car broke down on the way to the party last night. **By the time she arrived**, most of the other guests had left.
(= it took her a long time to get there and most of the guests left during this time)

☐ I had a lot of work to do yesterday evening. I was very tired **by the time I finished**.
(= it took me a long time to do the work, and I became more and more tired)

☐ We went to the cinema last night. It took us a long time to find somewhere to park the car.
By the time we got to the cinema, the film had already started.

You can say **by then** *or* **by that time**:

☐ Karen finally got to the party at midnight, but **by then** most of the other guests had left.
or . . . but **by that time**, most of the other guests had left.

will be doing and **will have done** ➜ **Unit 24** **by** (other uses) ➜ **Units 42B, 60B, 128**

Exercises

120.1 Complete the sentences with **by**.

1 We have to be home not later than 5 o'clock.
We have to be home by 5 o'clock .
2 I have to be at the airport not later than 8.30.
I have to be at the airport ....
3 Let me know not later than Saturday whether you can come to the party.
.... whether you can come to the party.
4 Please make sure that you're here not later than 2 o'clock.
Please make sure that ....
5 If we leave now, we should arrive not later than lunchtime.
If we leave now, ...

120.2 Put in **by** or **until**.

1 Steve has gone away. He'll be away until Monday.
2 Sorry, but I must go. I have to be home .... 5 o'clock.
3 According to the forecast, the bad weather will continue .... the weekend.
4 I don't know whether to apply for the job or not. I have to decide .... Friday.
5 I think I'll wait .... Thursday before making a decision.
6 I'm still waiting for Tom to call me. He should have called me .... now.
7 I need to pay this bill. It has to be paid .... tomorrow.
8 Don't pay the bill today. Wait .... tomorrow.
9 We haven't finished painting the house yet. We hope to finish .... Tuesday.
10 'Will you still be in the office at 6.30?' 'No, I'll have gone home .... then.'
11 I'm moving into my new flat next week. I'm staying with a friend .... then.
12 I've got a lot of work to do. .... the time I finish, it will be time to go to bed.
13 We have plenty of time. The film doesn't start .... 8.30.
14 It is hoped that the new bridge will be completed .... the end of the year.

120.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use **by** or **until**.

1 David is away at the moment. He'll be away until Monday .
2 David is away at the moment. He'll be back by Monday .
3 I'm just going out. I won't be long. Wait here ....
4 I'm just going out. It's 4.30 now. I won't be long. I'll be back ....
5 If you want to apply for the job, your application must be received ....
6 My passport is valid ....
7 I missed the last bus and had to walk home. I didn't get home ....

120.4 Read the situations and complete the sentences using **By the time ...** .

1 I was invited to a party, but I got there much later than I intended.
By the time I got to the party , most of the other guests had left.
2 I intended to catch a train, but it took me longer than expected to get to the station.
.... , my train had already left.
3 I wanted to go shopping after work. But I finished work much later than expected.
.... , it was too late to go shopping.
4 I saw two men who looked as if they were trying to steal a car. I called the police,
but it was some time before they arrived.
.... , the two men had disappeared.
5 We climbed a mountain and it took us a long time to get to the top. There wasn't much
time to enjoy the view.
.... , we had to come down again.

➜ **Additional exercise 33** (page 321)

Unit 121

at/on/in (time)

A

Compare **at**, **on** and **in**:

- They arrived **at 5 o'clock**.
- They arrived **on Friday**.
- They arrived **in June**. / They arrived **in 2012**.

We use:

at for the time of day
at five o'clock **at 11.45** **at midnight** **at lunchtime** **at sunset** etc.

on for days and dates
on Friday / **on Fridays** **on 16 May 2012** **on New Year's Day** **on my birthday**

in for longer periods (months/years/seasons etc.)
in June **in 2012** **in the 1990s** **in the 20th century** **in the past** **in winter**

B

We say:

at the moment / **at the minute** / **at present** / **at this time** (= now):
- Can we talk later? I'm busy **at the moment**.

at the same time
- Kate and I arrived **at the same time**.

at the weekends / **at weekends** (*or* **on the weekend** / **on weekends** in American English):
- Will you be here **at the weekend**? (*or* … **on** the weekend)

at Christmas (*but* **on Christmas Day**)
- Do you give each other presents **at Christmas**?

at night (= during nights in general), **in the night** (= during a particular night):
- I don't like working **at night**. *but* I was woken up by a noise **in the night**.

C

We say:

in the morning(**s**) **in the afternoon**(**s**) **in the evening**(**s**)	*but*	**on Friday morning**(**s**) **on Sunday afternoon**(**s**) **on Monday evening**(**s**) etc.
I'll see you **in the morning**. Do you work **in the evenings**?		I'll see you **on Friday morning**. Do you work **on Saturday evenings**?

D

We do not use **at**/**on**/**in** before **last**/**next**/**this**/**every**:
- I'll see you **next Friday**. (*not* on next Friday)
- They got married **last June**.

We often leave out **on** before days. So you can say:
- I'll see you **on Friday**. *or* I'll see you **Friday**.
- I don't work **on Monday mornings**. *or* I don't work **Monday mornings**.

E

We say that something will happen **in a few minutes** / **in six months** etc. :
- The train will be leaving **in a few minutes**. (= a few minutes from now)
- Andy has gone away. He'll be back **in a week**. (= a week from now)
- They'll be here **in a moment**. (= a moment from now, very soon)

We also use **in** … to say how long it takes to do something:
- I learnt to drive **in four weeks**. (= it took me four weeks to learn)

on/**in time**, **at**/**in the end** ➜ **Unit 122** **in**/**at**/**on** (position) ➜ **Units 123–125** **in**/**at**/**on** (other uses) ➜ **Unit 127**
American English ➜ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

121.1 Put in at, on or in.

1 Mozart was born in Salzburg ……in…… 1756.
2 I've been invited to a wedding …………… 14 February.
3 Amy's birthday is …………… May, but I don't know which date.
4 This park is popular and gets very busy …………… weekends.
5 I haven't seen Kate for a few days. I last saw her …………… Tuesday.
6 Jonathan is 63. He'll be retiring from his job …………… two years.
7 I'm busy right now. I'll be with you …………… a moment.
8 Sam isn't here …………… the moment, but he'll be here this afternoon.
9 There are usually a lot of parties …………… New Year's Eve.
10 I don't like the dark. I try to avoid going out …………… night.
11 It rained very hard …………… the night. Did you hear it?
12 My car is being repaired at the garage. It will be ready …………… two hours.
13 The bus station was busy. A lot of buses were leaving …………… the same time.
14 Helen and David always go out for dinner …………… their wedding anniversary.
15 It was a short book and easy to read. I read it …………… a day.
16 …………… midday, the sun is at its highest point in the sky.
17 This building is very old. It was built …………… the fifteenth century.
18 The office is closed …………… Wednesday afternoons.
19 In the UK many people go home to see their families …………… Christmas.
20 My flight arrives …………… 5 o'clock …………… the morning.
21 The course begins …………… 7 January and ends sometime …………… April.
22 I might not be at home …………… Tuesday morning, but I'll be there …………… the afternoon.

121.2 Complete the sentences. Use at, on or in + the following:

the evening
the moment
about 20 minutes
21 July 1969
~~1756~~
night
the same time
Saturdays
the 1920s
11 seconds

1 Mozart was born ……in 1756…………………………………… .
2 If the sky is clear, you can see the stars …………………………………… .
3 After working hard during the day, I like to relax …………………………………… .
4 Neil Armstrong was the first man to walk on the moon …………………………………… .
5 It's difficult to listen if everyone is speaking …………………………………… .
6 Jazz became popular in the United States …………………………………… .
7 I'm just going out to the shop. I'll be back …………………………………… .
8 I don't think we need an umbrella. It's not raining …………………………………… .
9 Ben is a very fast runner. He can run 100 metres …………………………………… .
10 Lisa works from Monday to Friday. Sometimes she also works …………………………………… .

121.3 Which is correct: a, b, or both of them?

1 a I'll see you on Friday. b I'll see you Friday. ……both……
2 a I'll see you on next Friday. b I'll see you next Friday. ……b……
3 a Paul got married in April. b Paul got married April. ……………
4 a I play tennis on Sunday mornings. b I play tennis Sunday mornings. ……………
5 a We were ill at the same time. b We were ill in the same time. ……………
6 a What are you doing at the weekend? b What are you doing on the weekend? ……………
7 a Oliver was born at 10 May 1993. b Oliver was born on 10 May 1993. ……………
8 a He left school last June. b He left school in last June. ……………
9 a Will you be here on Tuesday? b Will you be here Tuesday? ……………
10 a I don't like driving in night. b I don't like driving at night. ……………

➜ Additional exercise 33 (page 321)

Unit
122

on time and in time at the end and in the end

A on time and in time

on time = punctual, not late

If something happens **on time**, it happens at the time that was planned:

- The 11.45 train left **on time**. (= it left at 11.45)
- Please be **on time**. Don't be late.
- The conference was well-organised. Everything began and finished **on time**.

in time (for something / to do something) = soon enough

- Will you be home **in time for dinner**? (= soon enough for dinner)
- I sent Amy a birthday present. I hope it arrives **in time**.
  (= on or before her birthday)
- I'm in a hurry. I want to get home **in time to watch** the game on TV.
  (= soon enough to see the game)

The opposite of **in time** is **too late**:

- I got home **too late** to watch the game on TV.

You can say **just in time** (= almost too late):

- We got to the station **just in time** for our train.
- A child ran into the road in front of the car, but I managed to stop **just in time**.

B at the end and in the end

at the end (of something) = at the time when something ends

For example:

at the end of the month
at the end of the film

at the end of January
at the end of the course

at the end of the game
at the end of the concert

- I'm going away **at the end of January** / **at the end of the month**.
- **At the end of the concert**, everyone applauded.
- The players shook hands **at the end of the game**.

We do not say '**in** the end of …'. For example, we do not say 'in the end of January'.

The opposite of **at the end** is **at the beginning**:

- I'm going away **at the beginning of January**. (*not* in the beginning)

in the end = finally

We use **in the end** when we say what the final result of a situation was:

- We had a lot of problems with our car. We sold it **in the end**. (= finally we sold it)
- He got more and more angry. **In the end** he just walked out of the room.
- Alan couldn't decide where to go for his holidays. He didn't go anywhere **in the end**.
  (*not* at the end)

The opposite of **in the end** is **at first**:

- **At first** we didn't get on very well, but **in the end** we became good friends.

at/on/in (time) ➜ Unit 121

Exercises

122.1 Complete the sentences with **on time** or **in time**.

1 The bus is usually ……on time…… , but it was late this morning.
2 The film was supposed to start at 8.30, but it didn't begin …………………… .
3 The train service isn't very good. The trains are rarely …………………… .
4 We nearly missed our train. We got to the station just …………………… .
5 We want to start the meeting ……………………, so please don't be late.
6 I've just washed this shirt. I want to wear it this evening, so I hope it will be dry …………………… .
7 I almost forgot that it was Joe's birthday. Fortunately I remembered …………………… .
8 Why are you never ……………………? You always keep everybody waiting.
9 It is hoped that the new stadium will be ready …………………… for the tournament later this year.

122.2 Read the situations and make sentences using **just in time**.

1 A child ran into the road in front of your car. You saw the child at the last moment.
(manage / stop) ……I managed to stop just in time.……
2 You were walking home. Just after you got home, it started to rain very heavily.
(get / home) I …………………………………… .
3 Your friend was going to sit on the chair you had just painted. You said, 'Don't sit on that chair!', so he didn't. (stop / him) I …………………………………… .
4 You and a friend went to the cinema. You were late, and you thought you would miss the beginning of the film. But the film began just as you sat down in the cinema.
(get / cinema / beginning / film)
We …………………………………… .

122.3 Complete the sentences using **at the end** + the following:

the course ~~**the game**~~ **the interview** **the month** **the race**

1 The players shook hands ……at the end of the game…… .
2 I get paid …………………………………… .
3 The students had a party …………………………………… .
4 Two of the runners collapsed …………………………………… .
5 I was surprised when I was offered the job …………………………………… .

122.4 Write sentences with **in the end**. Use the verb in brackets.

1 We had a lot of problems with our car. (sell) ……In the end we sold it.……
2 Anna got more and more fed up with her job.
(resign) …………………………………… .
3 I tried to learn Japanese, but I found it too difficult.
(give up) …………………………………… .
4 We couldn't decide whether to go to the party or not.
(not / go) …………………………………… .

122.5 Put in **at** or **in**.

1 I'm going away ……at…… the end of the month.
2 It took Gary a long time to find work. …………… the end he got a job as a bus driver.
3 I couldn't decide what to buy Amy for her birthday. I didn't buy her anything …………… the end.
4 I'm going away …………… the end of this week.
5 We waited ages for a bus. …………… the end we had to get a taxi.
6 …………… the end of the lesson, all the students left the classroom.
7 We had a few problems at first, but …………… the end everything was OK.
8 You were in a difficult position. What did you do …………… the end?
9 The journey took a very long time, but we got there …………… the end.
10 Are you going away …………… the beginning of August or …………… the end?

Unit
123

in/at/on (position) 1

A in

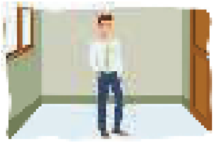

in a room
in a building
in a box
etc.

in a garden
in a town
in the city centre
etc.

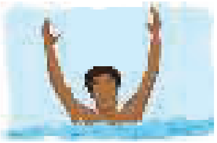

in a pool
in the sea
in a river
etc.

☐ There's no-one **in the room** / **in the building** / **in the garden**.
☐ What do you have **in your hand** / **in your mouth**?
☐ When we were **in Italy**, we spent a few days **in Venice**.
☐ I have a friend who lives **in a small village in the mountains**.
☐ There were some people swimming **in the pool** / **in the sea** / **in the river**.

B at

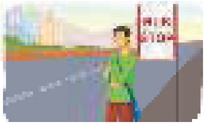

at the bus stop

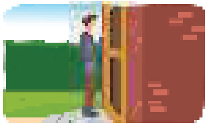

at the door

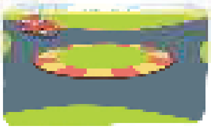

at the roundabout

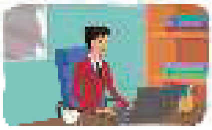

at her desk

☐ Who is that man standing **at the bus stop** / **at the door** / **at the window**?
☐ Turn left **at the traffic lights** / **at the next junction** / **at the roundabout** / **at the church**.
☐ We have to get off the bus **at the next stop**.
☐ When you leave the hotel, please leave your key **at reception**. (= at the reception desk)

Compare **in** and **at**:
☐ There were a lot of people **in the shop**. It was crowded.
Go along this road, then turn left **at the shop**.
☐ I'll meet you **in the hotel lobby**. (= in the building)
I'll meet you **at the entrance to the hotel**. (= outside the building)

C on

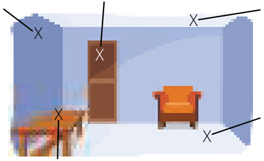

on her nose

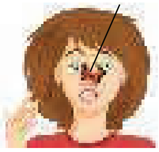

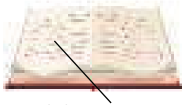

on a page

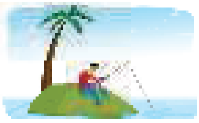

on an island

☐ I sat **on the floor** / **on the ground** / **on the grass** / **on the beach** / **on a chair**.
☐ There's a dirty mark **on the ceiling** / **on your nose** / **on your shirt**.
☐ Did you see the notice **on the wall** / **on the door**?
☐ You'll find details of TV programmes **on page seven** of the newspaper.
☐ The hotel is **on a small island** in the middle of a lake.

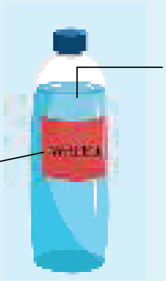

Compare **in** and **on**:
☐ There is some water **in the bottle**.
There is a label **on the bottle**.

Compare **at** and **on**:
☐ There is somebody **at the door**. Shall I go and see who it is?
There is a notice **on the door**. It says 'Do not disturb'.

in/at/on (position) 2–3 ➜ **Units 124–125**

Exercises

123.1 **Answer the questions about the pictures. Use in, at or on with the words below the pictures.**

1
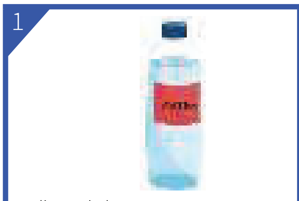
(bottle)

2
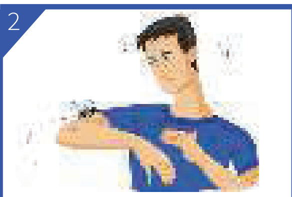
(arm)

3
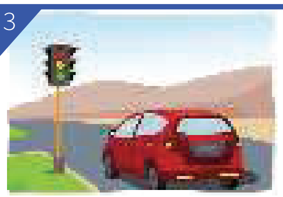
(traffic lights)

4
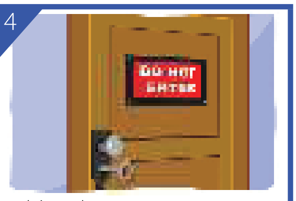

(door)

5
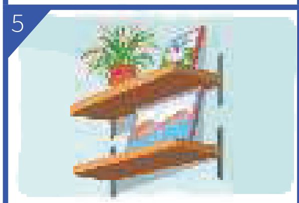
(wall)

6
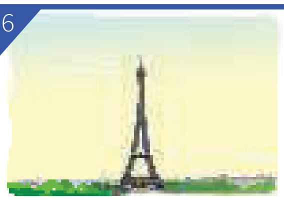
(Paris)

7
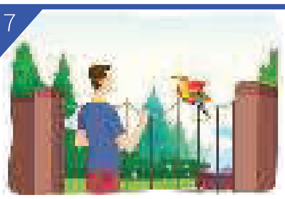
(gate)

8
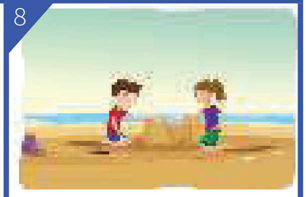
(beach)

1 Where's the label? On the bottle. ....
2 Where's the fly? ....
3 Where's the car waiting? ....
4 Where's the notice? .... Where's the key? ....
5 Where are the shelves? ....
6 Where's the Eiffel Tower? ....
7 Where's the man standing? .... Where's the bird? ....
8 Where are the children playing? ....

123.2 **Complete the sentences. Use in, at or on + the following:**

the window
my guitar
his hand
~~**the river**~~
the mountains
the island
that tree
junction 14

1 There were some people swimming in the river .
2 One of the strings .... is broken.
3 Leave the motorway .... and then turn left.
4 He was holding something .... , but I couldn't see what it was.
5 The leaves .... are a beautiful colour.
6 You can go skiing .... near here. There's plenty of snow.
7 There's nobody living .... It's uninhabited.
8 He spends most of the day sitting .... and looking outside.

123.3 **Complete the sentences with in, at or on.**

1 There was a long queue of people at the bus stop.
2 Nicola was wearing a silver ring .... her little finger.
3 There was a security guard standing .... the entrance to the building.
4 I wasn't sure whether I had come to the right office. There was no name .... the door.
5 There are plenty of shops and restaurants .... the town centre.
6 You'll find the weather forecast .... the back page of the newspaper.
7 The headquarters of the company are .... California.
8 I wouldn't like an office job. I couldn't spend the whole day sitting .... a desk.
9 The man the police are looking for has a scar .... his right cheek.
10 If you come here by bus, get off .... the stop after the traffic lights.
11 Have you ever been camping? Have you ever slept .... a tent?
12 Emily was sitting .... the balcony reading a book.
13 My brother lives .... a small village .... the south-west of England.
14 I like that picture hanging .... the wall .... the kitchen.

→ **Additional exercise 34** (page 322)

Unit 124 in/at/on (position) 2

A

We say that somebody/something is:

in a line, **in a row**, **in a queue**	**in an office**, **in a department**
in a picture, **in a photo**(**graph**)	**in the sky**, **in the world**
in a newspaper, **in a magazine**, **in a book**	**in the country** (= not in a town)

☐ When I go to the cinema, I like to sit **in the front row**.
☐ Amy works **in the sales department**.
☐ Who is the woman **in that picture**?
☐ Do you live in a city or **in the country**?
☐ It's a lovely day. There isn't a cloud **in the sky**.

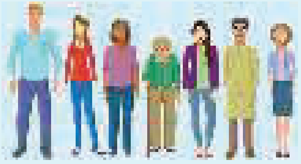

They're standing **in a row**.

B

We say that somebody/something is:

on the left, **on the right** (*or* **on the left-hand side**, **on the right-hand side**)
☐ Do you drive **on the left** or **on the right** in your country?

on the ground floor, **on the first floor**, **on the second floor** etc.
☐ Our apartment is **on the second floor** of the building.

on a map, **on a menu**, **on a list**, **on a page**, **on a website**
☐ Here's the shopping list. Don't buy anything that's not **on the list**.
☐ You'll find the information you need **on our website**.

We say that a place is **on a river** / **on a road** / **on the coast**:
☐ Vienna is **on the** (river) **Danube**.
☐ The town where you live – is it **on the coast** or is it inland?

We say **on the way** (from one place to another):
☐ We stopped at a shop **on the way** home.

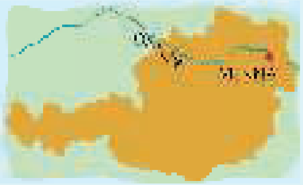

C

We say:
at the top (of . . .), **at the bottom** (of . . .), **at the end** (of . . .)
☐ Write your name **at the top of the page**.
☐ Jane lives **at the other end of the street**.

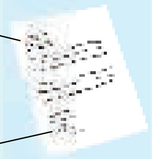

at the top (of the page)

at the bottom (of the page)

D

We say:
in the front, **in the back** of a car
☐ I was **in the back** (of the car) when we had the accident.

at the front, **at the back** of a building / theatre / group of people etc.
☐ The garden is **at the back of the house**.
☐ Let's sit **at the front** (of the cinema).
☐ We were **at the back**, so we couldn't see very well.

on the front, **on the back** of an envelope / a piece of paper etc.
☐ I wrote the date **on the back of the photo**.

at the back

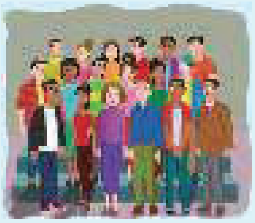

at the front

E

We say:
in the corner of a room
☐ The TV is **in the corner** of the room.

at the corner *or* **on the corner** of a street
☐ There is a small shop **at the corner** (of the street).
or . . . **on the corner** (of the street).

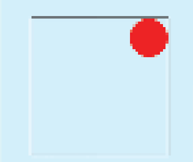

in the corner

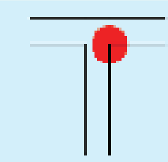

at *or* **on the corner**

in the world ➜ **Unit 108D** **in**/**at**/**on** (position) ➜ **Units 123, 125** American English ➜ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

124.1 **Answer the questions about the pictures. Use in, at or on with the words below the pictures.**

1
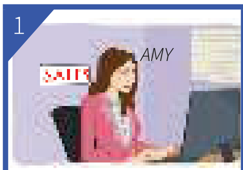

(sales department)

2
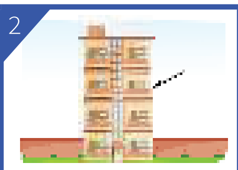
(second floor)

3
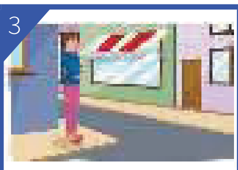
(corner)

4
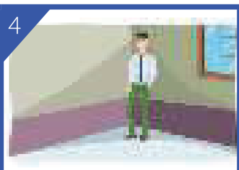
(corner)

5
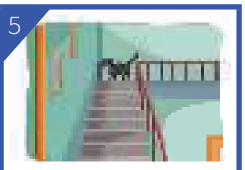
(top / stairs)

6
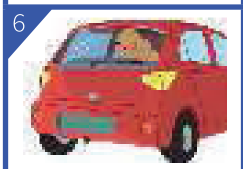
(back / car)

7
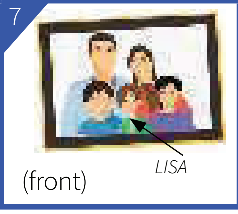

(front)

8
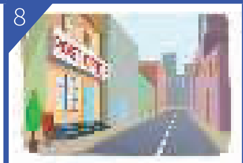
left

9
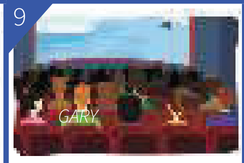

(back row)

10
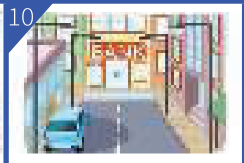
(end / street)

1 Where does Amy work? In the sales department.
2 Amy lives in this building. Where's her flat exactly? ....
3 Where is the woman standing? ....
4 Where is the man standing? ....
5 Where's the cat? ....
6 Where's the dog? ....
7 Lisa is in this group of people. Where is she? ....
8 Where's the post office? ....
9 Gary is at the cinema. Where is he sitting? ....
10 Where is the bank? ....

124.2 **Complete the sentences. Use in, at or on + the following:**

the west coast **the world** **the back of the class** **~~the sky~~**
the front row **the right** **the back of this card** **the way to work**

1 It's a lovely day. There isn't a cloud in the sky .
2 In most countries people drive ....
3 What is the tallest building .... ?
4 I met a friend of mine .... this morning.
5 San Francisco is .... of the United States.
6 We went to the theatre last night. We had seats ....
7 I couldn't hear the teacher. She spoke quietly and I was sitting ....
8 I don't have your address. Could you write it .... ?

124.3 **Complete the sentences with in, at or on.**

1 Write your name at the top of the page.
2 Is your sister .... this photo? I don't recognise her.
3 They live in a small house .... the bottom of the hill.
4 We normally use the front entrance to the building, but there's another one .... the back.
5 We had to wait .... a queue for an hour to check in at the airport.
6 There was a list of names, but my name wasn't .... the list.
7 Is there anything interesting .... today's newspaper?
8 I love to look up at the stars .... the sky at night.
9 When I'm a passenger in a car, I prefer to sit .... the front.
10 I live in a very small village. You probably won't find it .... your map.
11 Joe works .... the furniture department of a large store.
12 Paris is .... the (river) Seine.
13 I don't like cities. I'd much prefer to live .... the country.
14 My office is .... the top floor. It's .... your left as you come out of the lift.

➜ Additional exercise 34 (page 322)

Unit 125 **in/at/on** (position) 3

A **in hospital** / **at work** etc.

We say that somebody is **in bed** / **in hospital** / **in prison**:

- James isn't up yet. He's still **in bed**.
- Anna's mother is **in hospital**.

We say that somebody is **at home** / **at work** / **at school** / **at university** / **at college**:

- I'll be **at work** until 5.30.
- My sister is **at university**. My brother is still **at school**.

We say **be at home** or **be home** (with or without **at**), but **do something at home** (with **at**):

- I'll **be home** all evening. *or* I'll **be at home** all evening.
- Shall we go to a restaurant or **eat at home**?

B **at a party** / **at a concert** etc.

We say that somebody is **at** an event (**at a party**, **at a conference** etc.):

- Were there many people **at the party** / **at the meeting** / **at the wedding**?
- I saw Steve **at a conference** / **at a concert** on Saturday.

C **in** and **at** for buildings

You can often use **in** or **at** with buildings. For example, you can eat **in a restaurant** or **at a restaurant**; you can buy food **in a supermarket** or **at a supermarket**.
We usually say **at** when we say where an event takes place (a concert, a party, a meeting etc.):

- We went to a concert **at the National Concert Hall**.
- The meeting took place **at the company's head office** in Frankfurt.
- There was a robbery **at the supermarket**.

We say **at** somebody's house:

- I was **at Helen's house** last night. *or* I was **at Helen's** last night.

In the same way we say **at the doctor's**, **at the hairdresser's** etc.

We use **in** when we are thinking about the building itself. Compare **at** and **in**:

- I was **at Helen's** (house) last night.
  It's always cold **in Helen's house**. The heating doesn't work well. (*not* at Helen's house)
- We had dinner **at the hotel**.
  All the rooms **in the hotel** have air conditioning. (*not* at the hotel)

We say **at the station** / **at the airport**:

- There's no need to meet me **at the station**. I can get a taxi.

D **in** and **at** for towns etc.

We normally use **in** with cities, towns and villages:

- The Louvre is a famous art museum **in Paris**. (*not* at Paris)
- Sam's parents live **in a village** in the south of France. (*not* at a village)

We use **at** when we think of the place as a point or station on a journey:

- Does this train stop **at Oxford**? (= at Oxford station)

E **on a bus** / **in a car** etc.

We usually say **on a bus** / **on a train** / **on a plane** / **on a ship** *but* **in a car** / **in a taxi**:

- **The bus** was very full. There were too many people **on it**.
- Laura arrived **in a taxi**.

We say **on a bike** (= bicycle) / **on a motorbike** / **on a horse**:

- Jane passed me **on her bike**.

at school / **in hospital** etc. ➜ **Unit 74** **in**/**at**/**on** (position) ➜ **Units 123–124** **to**/**at**/**in**/**into** ➜ **Unit 126**
by car / **by bike** etc. ➜ **Unit 128B**

Exercises

125.1 **Complete the sentences about the pictures. Use in, at or on with the words below the pictures.**

1
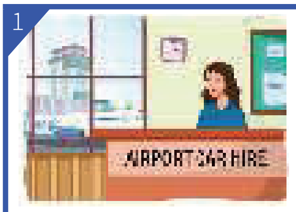

(the airport)

2
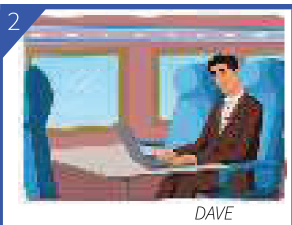

(a train)

3
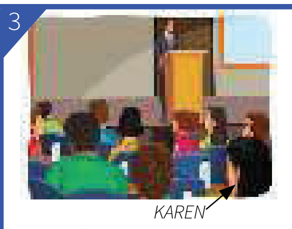

(a conference)

4
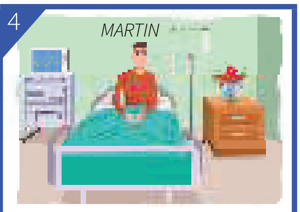

(hospital)

5
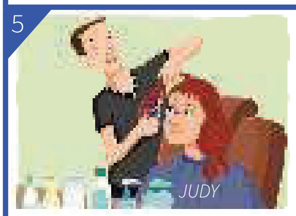

(the hairdresser's)

6
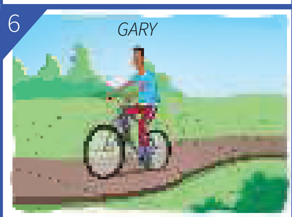

(his bike)

7
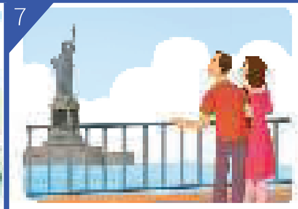
(New York)

8
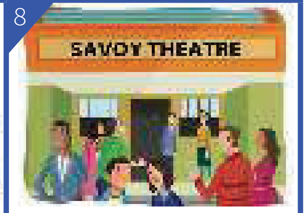

(the Savoy Theatre)

1 You can hire a car ……at the airport…… .
2 Dave is …………………… .
3 Karen is …………………… .
4 Martin …………………… .
5 Judy is …………………… .
6 I saw Gary …………………… .
7 We spent a few days …………………… .
8 We went to a show …………………… .

125.2 **Complete the sentences. Use in, at or on + the following:**

the plane **the station** **a taxi** **the art gallery**
Tokyo **school** **~~prison~~** **the sports centre**

1 Some people are ……in prison…… for crimes that they did not commit.
2 We can get coffee …………………… while we're waiting for our train.
3 We walked to the restaurant, but we went home …………………… .
4 I play basketball …………………… on Friday evenings.
5 I enjoyed the flight, but the food …………………… was awful.
6 Vicky has gone to Japan. She's living …………………… .
7 'Does your sister have a job?' 'No, she's only 16. She's still …………………… .'
8 There's a new exhibition of paintings …………………… . Let's go and see it.

125.3 **Complete these sentences with in, at or on.**

1 We went to a concert ……at…… the National Concert Hall.
2 There isn't a shop …………… the village where I live. It's very small.
3 Joe wasn't …………… the party. I don't know why he didn't go.
4 There were about ten tables …………… the restaurant, and four tables outside.
5 I don't know where my umbrella is. Perhaps I left it …………… the bus.
6 What do you want to study …………… university?
7 I didn't feel well when I woke up, so I stayed …………… bed.
8 We were …………… Sarah's house last night. She invited us to dinner.
9 It was a very slow train. It stopped …………… every station.
10 Shall we travel …………… your car or mine?
11 We took a taxi and Ben followed …………… his motorbike.
12 I'd like to see a movie. What's on …………… the cinema this week?
13 We went to see a movie last night. It was really cold …………… the cinema.
14 Two people were injured in the accident and are still …………… hospital.
15 Our flight was delayed. We had to wait …………… the airport for three hours.
16 I didn't expect you to be …………… home. I thought you'd be …………… work.

➜ **Additional exercise 34** (page 322)

Unit 126

to, at, in and into

A

We say **go**/**come**/**travel** (etc.) **to** a place or event. For example:

go to China	**go to** work	**come to** my house
go back to Italy	**go to** the bank	**drive to** the airport
return to London	**go to** a party	**be taken to** hospital

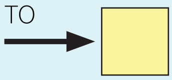

☐ When are your friends **going back to Italy**? (*not* going back in Italy)
☐ Three people were injured in the accident and **taken to hospital**.

In the same way we say **Welcome to** . . . , a **trip to** . . . , a **visit to** . . . , on **my way to** . . . etc. :

☐ **Welcome to our country**! (*not* Welcome in)
☐ We had to cancel **our trip to Paris**.

Compare **to** (for *movement*) and **in**/**at** (for *position*):

☐ They are **going to** France. *but* They **live in** France.
☐ Can you **come to** the party? *but* I'll **see you at** the party.

We say '(I've) **been to**' a place or an event:

☐ I've **been to Italy** four times, but I've never **been to Rome**.
☐ Amanda has never **been to a football match** in her life.

B

get and arrive

We say **get to** a place:

☐ They **got to the hotel** at midnight.
☐ What time did you **get to the party**?

We say **arrive in** . . . or **arrive at** . . . (*not* arrive to).
We say **arrive in** a town or country:

☐ They **arrived in Madrid** / **in Spain** a week ago.

For other places (buildings etc.) or events, we say **arrive at**:

☐ What time did you **arrive at the hotel** / **at the airport** / **at the party**?

C

home

We say: **go home**, **come home**, **get home**, **arrive home**, **on the way home** etc. (no preposition).
We do not say 'to home':

☐ What time did you **get home**? (*not* get to home)
☐ I met Lisa **on my way home**.

D

into

go into, **get into** . . . etc. = enter (a room / a building / a car etc.):

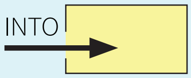

☐ I opened the door, **went into the room** and sat down.
☐ A bird **flew into the kitchen** through the window.
☐ Every month my salary **is paid** directly **into my bank account**.

With some verbs (especially **go**/**get**/**put**) we often use **in** (instead of **into**):

☐ She **got in the car** and drove away. *or* She **got into** the car . . .
☐ I read the letter and **put it** back **in the envelope**.

The opposite of **into** is **out of**:

☐ She **got out of** the car and **went into** a shop.

For buses, trains and planes, we usually say **get on** and **get off**:

☐ She **got on the bus** and I never saw her again.
☐ You need to **get off** (the train) at the next station.

been to ➜ **Units 7–8** **in**/**at**/**on** (position) ➜ **Units 123–125** **at home** ➜ **Unit 125A**
into and **in** ➜ **Unit 138A**

Exercises

126.1 **Put in to/at/in/into where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.**

1 Three people were taken ....to.... hospital after the accident.
2 I'm tired. Let's go ....–.... home now. *(no preposition)*
3 We left our luggage .... the station and went to find something to eat.
4 Shall we take a taxi .... the station or shall we walk?
5 I have to go .... the bank today. What time does it open?
6 The Amazon flows .... the Atlantic Ocean.
7 I missed the bus, so I walked .... home.
8 Have you ever been .... Canada?
9 I lost my key, but I managed to climb .... the house through a window.
10 We got stuck in a traffic jam on our way .... the airport.
11 We had lunch .... the airport while we were waiting for our plane.
12 It took us four hours to get .... the top of the mountain.
13 Welcome .... the hotel. We hope you enjoy your stay here.
14 We drove along the main road and then turned .... a narrow side street.
15 Did you enjoy your visit .... the zoo?
16 I did some shopping on my way .... home.
17 Marcel is French. He has just returned .... France after two years .... Brazil.
18 Carl was born .... Chicago, but his family moved .... Boston when he was three.

126.2 **Write sentences about places you have been to. Use I've been to / I've never been to + the words in brackets.**

1 (never) ....I've never been to Egypt.....
2 (once) ....
3 (never) ....
4 (a few times) ....
5 (many times) ....

126.3 **Put in to/at/in where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.**

1 What time does this train get ....to.... London?
2 They arrived .... Barcelona a few days ago.
3 What time did you get .... home last night?
4 What time do you usually arrive .... work in the morning?
5 When we got .... the cinema, there was a long queue outside.
6 We were delayed and arrived .... home very late.

126.4 **Write sentences using got + into / out of / on / off.**

1 You were walking home. A friend passed you in her car. She saw you, stopped and offered you a lift.
She opened the door. What did you do? ....I got into the car.....
2 You were waiting at the bus stop. At last your bus came and stopped. The doors opened.
What did you do then? I .... the bus.
3 You drove home in your car. You stopped outside your house and parked the car.
What did you do then? ....
4 You were travelling by train to Manchester. When the train got to Manchester, what did you do?
....
5 You needed a taxi. After a few minutes a taxi stopped for you. You opened the door.
What did you do then? ....
6 You were travelling by plane. At the end of your flight, your plane landed at the airport and stopped.
The doors were opened, you took your bag and stood up.
What did you do then? ....

→ **Additional exercise 34** (page 322)

Unit
127

in/on/at (other uses)

A in

in the rain / **in the sun** / **in the shade** / **in the dark** / **in bad weather** etc.

☐ We sat **in the shade**. It was too hot to sit **in the sun**.
☐ Don't go out **in the rain**. Wait until it stops.

in a language / **in** a currency etc.

☐ How do you say 'thank you' **in Russian**?
☐ How much is a hundred pounds **in dollars**?

(be/fall) **in love** (**with** somebody)

☐ They're very happy together. They're **in love**.

in a (good/bad) **mood**

☐ You seem to be **in a bad mood**. What's the matter?

in (my) **opinion**

☐ **In my opinion** the movie wasn't very good.

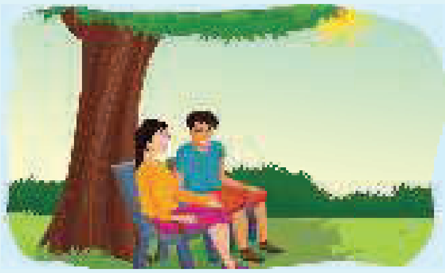

in the shade

B on

on TV / **on television**	☐ I didn't see the news **on TV**.
on the radio	☐ I heard the weather forecast **on the radio**.
on the phone	☐ I've never met her, but I've spoken to her **on the phone**.
on fire	☐ Look! That car is **on fire**.
on purpose (= intentionally)	☐ I'm sorry. I didn't mean to hurt you. I didn't do it **on purpose**.
on the whole (= in general)	☐ Sometimes I have problems at work, but **on the whole** I enjoy my job.

C on holiday / on a trip etc.

(be/go) **on holiday** / **on vacation**	☐ I'm going **on holiday** next week.
(be/go) **on a trip** / **on a tour** / **on a cruise** etc.	☐ One day I'd like to go **on a world tour**.
(be/go to a place) **on business**	☐ Emma's away **on business** at the moment.
(be/go) **on strike**	☐ There are no trains today. The drivers are **on strike**.
(be/go) **on a diet**	☐ I've put on weight. I'll have to go **on a diet**.

We also say 'go somewhere **for a** holiday':

☐ Steve has gone to France **for a holiday**.

D at the age of ... etc.

at the age of 16 / **at 90 miles an hour** / **at 100 degrees** etc. :

☐ Tracy left school **at 16**. *or*
Tracy left school **at the age of 16**.
☐ The train was travelling **at 120 miles an hour**.
☐ Water boils **at 100 degrees Celsius**.

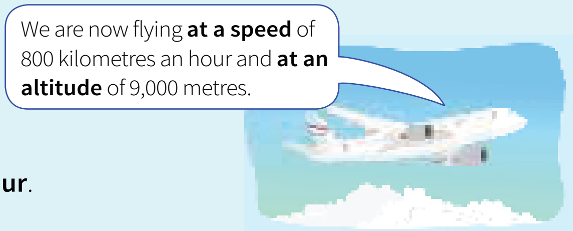
We are now flying **at a speed** of 800 kilometres an hour and **at an altitude** of 9,000 metres.

» **in**/**at**/**on** (time) ➜ **Unit 121** **in**/**at**/**on** (position) ➜ **Units 123–125**

Exercises

127.1 Complete the sentences using in + the following:

the mood
French
cold weather
~~the rain~~
love
kilometres
my opinion
the shade

1 Don't go out ...in the rain... . Wait until it stops.
2 Matt likes to keep warm, so he doesn't go out much ....
3 The movie was .... with English subtitles.
4 They fell .... almost immediately and were married in a few weeks.
5 I don't feel like going to a party tonight. I'm not ....
6 It's too hot here. I'm going to sit .... under that tree.
7 Amanda thought the restaurant was OK, but .... it wasn't very good.
8 Fifty miles? What's that .... ?

127.2 Complete the sentences using on + the following:

business
~~the radio~~
a cruise
purpose
a diet
strike
fire
TV
holiday
a tour
her phone
the whole

1 I heard the weather forecast ...on the radio... . It's going to get warmer.
2 Workers at the company have gone .... for better pay and conditions.
3 Don't go .... if you don't like being at sea.
4 There was panic when people realised that the building was ....
5 Soon after we arrived, we were taken .... of the city.
6 Emma has lots of useful apps ....
7 I feel lazy this evening. Is there anything worth watching .... ?
8 I'm sorry. It was an accident. I didn't do it ....
9 If you are .... , there are certain things you're not allowed to eat.
10 We'll be .... from Friday. We're going to the mountains.
11 Jane's job involves a lot of travelling. She often has to go away ....
12 Some of the exam questions were hard, but .... it was OK.

127.3 Complete the sentences with in, on or at.

1 Water boils ...at... 100 degrees Celsius.
2 When I was 14, I went .... a trip to France organised by my school.
3 Julia's grandmother died recently .... the age of 90.
4 Can you turn the light on, please? I don't want to sit .... the dark.
5 We didn't go .... holiday last year. We stayed at home.
6 I hate driving .... fog. You can't see anything.
7 Technology has developed .... great speed.
8 David got married .... 19, which is rather young to get married.
9 I listened to an interesting programme .... the radio this morning.
10 I wouldn't like to go .... a cruise. I think I'd get bored.
11 The earth travels round the sun .... 107,000 kilometres an hour.
12 I shouldn't eat too much. I'm supposed to be .... a diet.
13 A lot of houses were damaged .... the storm last week.
14 I won't be here next week. I'll be .... holiday.
15 I wouldn't like his job. He spends most of his time talking .... the phone.
16 'Did you enjoy your holiday?' 'Not every minute, but .... the whole, yes.'
17 .... your opinion, what should I do?
18 Ben is a happy sort of person. He always seems to be .... a good mood.
19 I don't think violent films should be shown .... TV.
20 The museum guidebook is available .... several languages.

➜ Additional exercise 34 (page 322)

Unit 128 by

A

You can say that something happens **by mistake** / **by accident** / **by chance**:

- We hadn't arranged to meet. We met **by chance**.

But we say 'do something **on purpose**' (= you mean to do it):

- I didn't do it **on purpose**. It was an accident.

Note that we say **by chance**, **by accident** etc. (*not* by the chance / by an accident).
In these expressions we use **by** + *noun* without **the** or **a**.

B

We use **by** . . . to say how somebody travels. For example, you can travel:

by car **by train** **by plane** **by boat** **by ship** **by bus** **by bike** etc.

- Jess usually goes to work **by bus** / **by bike** / **by car**.

We do not use **by** if we say **my car** / **the train** / **a taxi** etc. We say:

by car *but* **in my** car (*not* by my car)
by train *but* **on the** train (*not* by the train)

We use **in** for cars and taxis:

- They didn't come **in their car**. They came **in a taxi**.

We use **on** for bikes and public transport (buses, trains etc.):

- We travelled **on the 6.45 train**, which arrived at 8.30.

Note that we usually say **on foot** (*not usually* by foot):

- Did you come here **by car** or **on foot**?

We also use **by** to say how we do other things. For example, you can:

send something **by post** pay **by card** / **by cheque** do something **by hand**

- Can I pay **by credit card**?

But note that we say **pay cash** or **pay in cash** (*not usually* by cash).

C

We say that 'something is done **by** . . .' *(passive)*:

- Have you ever been bitten **by a dog**?
- The programme was watched **by millions of people**.

Compare **by** and **with**:

- The door must have been opened **with a key**. (*not* by a key)
  (= somebody used a key to open it)
- The door must have been opened **by somebody** with a key.

We say: a play **by Shakespeare**, a painting **by Rembrandt**, a novel **by Tolstoy** etc.

- Have you read any poems **by Shakespeare**?
- '**Who** is this painting **by**? Picasso?' 'I have no idea.'

D

By also means 'next to / beside':

- The light switch is **by the door**.
- Come and sit **by me**. (= next to me)

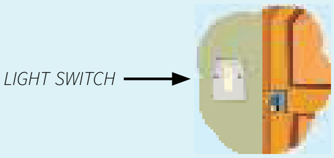

E

You can also use **by** . . . to show the difference between two things:

- Clare's salary has increased **by ten per cent**.
  (= it's now ten per cent more than before)
- Carl won the race **by five metres**.
  (= he was five metres in front of the other runners)

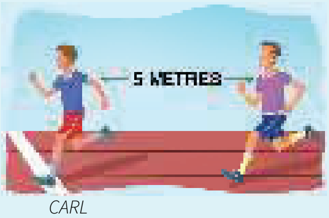

Passive + **by** ➜ **Unit 42B** **by** + -**ing** ➜ **Unit 60B** **by myself** ➜ **Unit 83C** **by** (time) ➜ **Unit 120**

Exercises

128.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

by mistake
by hand
~~by credit card~~
by chance
by email
on purpose

1 We don't need cash. We can pay ..by credit card.. .
2 Kate and James keep in touch with one another mainly ....
3 I didn't intend to take your umbrella. I took it ....
4 I think he arrived late .... He wanted to keep us waiting.
5 Some things are planned. Other things happen ....
6 Don't put my sweater in the washing machine. It has to be washed ....

128.2 Put in **by**, **in** or **on**.

1 Jess usually goes to work ..by.. bus.
2 I saw Jane this morning. She was .... the bus.
3 How did you get here? Did you come .... train?
4 I couldn't find a seat .... the train. It was full.
5 How much will it cost to the airport .... taxi?
6 Did you come here .... Sarah's car or yours?
7 The injured man was taken to hospital .... ambulance.
8 How long does it take to cross the Atlantic .... ship?
9 He doesn't drive much. He goes everywhere .... bike or .... foot.

128.3 Complete these sentences about books, paintings etc. Choose from the box.

by mosquitoes
by one of our players
by lightning
by Beethoven
~~by a strange noise~~
by Leonardo da Vinci
by a professional photographer

1 I was woken up in the night ..by a strange noise.. .
2 These pictures were taken ....
3 I hate getting bitten ....
4 'Mona Lisa' is a famous painting ....
5 We lost the game because of a mistake ....
6 The plane was damaged ...., but landed safely.
7 This music is ...., but I can't remember what it's called.

128.4 Put in **by**, **in**, **on** or **with**.

1 Have you ever been bitten ..by.. a dog?
2 We managed to put the fire out .... a fire extinguisher.
3 Who's that man standing .... the window?
4 Do you travel much .... bus?
5 We travelled .... my friend's car because it is larger and more comfortable than mine.
6 It was only .... accident that I discovered the error.
7 These pictures were taken .... a very good camera.
8 My friends live in a beautiful house .... the sea.
9 There were only a few people .... the plane. It was almost empty.
10 The new railway line will reduce the journey time .... two hours (from five hours to three).
11 There was a small table .... the bed .... a lamp and a clock .... it.

128.5 Complete the sentences using **by**.

1 Carl won the race. He was five metres in front of the other runners.
Carl ..won by five metres.......................
2 Ten years ago the population of the country was 50 million. Now it is 56 million.
In the last ten years the population has ....
3 There was an election. Helen won. She got 25 votes and James got 23.
Helen won ....
4 I went to Kate's office to see her, but she had left work five minutes before I arrived.
I missed ....

➜ Additional exercise 34 (page 322)

Unit 129

Noun + preposition (**reason for, cause of** etc.)

A *noun* + **for** . . .

a **demand** / a **need FOR** . . .
- ☐ The company went out of business. There was no **demand for** its product any more.
- ☐ There's no excuse for behaviour like that. There's no **need for** it.

a **reason FOR** . . .
- ☐ The train was late, but nobody knew the **reason for** the delay. (*not* reason of)

B *noun* + **of** . . .

a **cause OF** . . .
- ☐ The **cause of** the explosion is unknown.

a **picture** / a **photo** / a **photograph** / a **map** / a **plan** / a **drawing** (etc.) **OF** . . .
- ☐ Rachel showed me some **pictures of** her family.
- ☐ I had a **map of** the town, so I was able to find my way around.

an **advantage** / a **disadvantage OF** . . .
- ☐ The **advantage of living alone** is that you can do what you like.

but

there is an advantage **IN** doing something *or* **TO** doing something:
- ☐ **There are** many advantages **in** living alone. *or* . . . many advantages **to** living alone.

C *noun* + **in** . . .

an **increase** / a **decrease** / a **rise** / a **fall IN** (prices etc.)
- ☐ There has been an **increase in** the number of road accidents recently.
- ☐ Last year was a bad one for the company. There was a big **fall in** sales.

D *noun* + **to** . . .

damage TO . . .
- ☐ The accident was my fault, so I had to pay for the **damage to** the other car.

an **invitation TO** . . . (a party / a wedding etc.)
- ☐ Did you get an **invitation to** the wedding?

a **solution TO** a problem / a **key TO** a door / an **answer TO** a question / a **reply TO** a letter / a **reaction TO** something
- ☐ I hope we find a **solution to** the problem. (*not* a solution of the problem)
- ☐ I was surprised at her **reaction to** my suggestion.

an **attitude TO** . . . *or* an **attitude TOWARDS** . . .
- ☐ His **attitude to** his job is very negative. *or* His **attitude towards** his job . . .

E *noun* + **with** . . . / **between** . . .

a **relationship** / a **connection** / **contact WITH** . . .
- ☐ Do you have a good **relationship with** your parents?
- ☐ The police want to question a man in **connection with** the robbery.

a **relationship** / a **connection** / **contact** / a **difference BETWEEN** two things or people
- ☐ The police believe that there is no **connection between** the two crimes.
- ☐ There are some **differences between** British and American English.

Exercises

129.1 Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first.

1 What caused the explosion?
What was the cause of the explosion ?
2 We're trying to solve the problem.
We're trying to find a solution ....
3 Sue gets on well with her brother.
Sue has a good relationship ....
4 The cost of living has gone up a lot.
There has been a big increase ....
5 I don't know how to answer your question.
I can't think of an answer ....
6 I don't think that a new road is necessary.
I don't think there is any need ....
7 I think that living in a big city has many advantages.
I think that there are many advantages ....
8 Food prices fell last month.
Last month there was a fall ....
9 Nobody wants shoes like these any more.
There is no demand ....
10 In what way is your job different from mine?
What is the difference ....?

129.2 Complete the sentences using these nouns + a preposition:

cause **connection** **contact** **damage** **invitation**
key **~~map~~** **photos** **reason** **reply**

1 On the classroom wall there were some pictures and a map of the world.
2 Thank you for the .... your birthday party.
3 Anna has little .... her family these days. She rarely sees them.
4 I can't open this door. Do you have a .... the other door?
5 The .... the fire at the hotel is still unknown.
6 Did you get a .... the email you sent?
7 The two companies are separate. There is no .... them.
8 Jane showed me some .... the city as it looked 100 years ago.
9 Emily has decided to give up her job. I don't know her .... doing this.
10 It wasn't a bad accident. The .... the car wasn't serious.

129.3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

1 There are some differences between British and American English.
2 Money isn't the solution .... every problem.
3 There has been an increase .... the amount of traffic using this road.
4 The advantage .... having a car is that you don't have to rely on public transport.
5 There are many advantages .... being able to speak a foreign language.
6 Everything can be explained. There's a reason .... everything.
7 When Paul left home, his attitude .... many things seemed to change.
8 Ben and I used to be good friends, but I don't have much contact .... him now.
9 James did a very good drawing .... his father. It looks just like him.
10 What was Sarah's reaction .... the news?
11 Nicola took a picture .... me holding the baby.
12 The show is very popular and there has been a great demand .... tickets.
13 There has been a lot of debate about the causes .... climate change.
14 The fact that Jane was offered a job in the company has no connection .... the fact that she is a friend of the managing director.

→ **Additional exercise 35** (page 322)

Unit
130

Adjective + preposition 1

A nice of you, nice to me

nice / **kind** / **good** / **generous** / **polite** / **honest** / **stupid** / **silly** etc. **OF** somebody (to do something)
☐ Thank you. It was very **nice of** you to help me.
☐ It was **stupid of** me to go out without a coat in such cold weather.

(be) **nice** / **kind** / **good** / **generous** / **polite** / **rude** / **friendly** / **cruel** etc. **TO** somebody
☐ They have always been very **nice to** me. (*not* with me)
☐ Why were you so **unfriendly to** Lucy?

B *adjective* + **about** / **with**

angry / **annoyed** / **furious** / **upset** { **ABOUT** something
WITH somebody **FOR** doing something

☐ There's no point in getting **angry about** things that don't matter.
☐ Are you **annoyed with** me **for** being late?
☐ Lisa is **upset about** not being invited to the party.

excited / **worried** / **nervous** / **happy** etc. **ABOUT** something
☐ Are you **nervous about** the exam?

pleased / **satisfied** / **happy** / **delighted** / **disappointed WITH** something you get or experience
☐ They were **delighted with** the present I gave them.
☐ Were you **happy with** your exam results?

C *adjective* + **at** / **by** / **with** / **of**

surprised / **shocked** / **amazed** / **astonished** / **upset AT** / **BY** something
☐ Everybody was **surprised at** the news. *or* … **by** the news.
☐ I hope you weren't **shocked by** what I said. *or* … **at** what I said.

impressed WITH / **BY** somebody/something
☐ I'm very **impressed with** (*or* **by**) her English. It's very good.

fed up / **bored WITH** something
☐ I don't enjoy my job any more. I'm **fed up with** it. / I'm **bored with** it.

tired OF something
☐ Come on, let's go! I'm **tired of** waiting.

D sorry about / for

sorry ABOUT a situation or something that happened
☐ I'm **sorry about** the mess. I'll clear it up later.
☐ **Sorry about** last night. (= Sorry about something that happened last night)

sorry FOR / **ABOUT** something you did or caused
☐ I'm **sorry for** shouting at you yesterday. (*or* **sorry about** shouting)
☐ **Sorry for** the delay. (*or* **Sorry about** the delay)
You can also say 'I'm sorry I (did something)':
☐ I'm **sorry I shouted** at you yesterday.

feel / **be sorry FOR** somebody in a bad situation
☐ I **feel sorry for** Mark. He's had a lot of bad luck. (*not* I feel sorry about Mark)

Preposition + **-ing** ➜ **Unit 60** Adjective + **to** … ➜ **Unit 65** **sorry to** / **sorry for** … ➜ **Unit 66C**
Adjective + preposition 2 ➜ **Unit 131**

Exercises

130.1 Complete the sentences using nice of …, kind of … etc.

1 Tom offered to drive me to the airport. (nice) That was nice of him.

2 I needed money and Lisa gave me some. (generous) That …… her.

3 They didn't invite us to their party. (not very nice) That wasn't …….

4 Can I help you with your luggage? (very kind) That's …….

5 Kevin never says 'thank you'. (not very polite) That isn't …….

6 They've had an argument and now they refuse to speak to each other. (a bit childish) That's a bit …….

130.2 Complete the sentences using an adjective + preposition. Choose from:

amazed **angry** **bored** **careless** **excited** **impressed** **kind** ~~**nervous**~~

1 Are you nervous about the exam?
2 Thank you for all you've done. You've been very …… me.
3 What have I done wrong? Why are you …… me?
4 You must be very …… your trip next week. It sounds really great.
5 I wasn't …… the service in the restaurant. We had to wait ages.
6 Ben isn't very happy at college. He says he's …… the course he's doing.
7 I'd never seen so many people before. I was …… the crowds.
8 It was …… you to leave the car unlocked while you were shopping.

130.3 Put in the correct preposition.

1 They were delighted with the present I gave them.
2 It was nice …… you to come and see me when I was ill.
3 Why are you always so rude …… people? Why can't you be more polite?
4 We always have the same food every day. I'm fed up …… it.
5 We had a good holiday, but we were disappointed …… the hotel.
6 I can't understand people who are cruel …… animals.
7 I was surprised …… the way he behaved. It was completely out of character.
8 I've been trying to learn Japanese, but I'm not very satisfied …… my progress.
9 Tanya doesn't look very well. I'm worried …… her.
10 I'm sorry …… yesterday. I completely forgot we'd arranged to meet.
11 There's no point in feeling sorry …… yourself. It won't help you.
12 Are you still upset …… what I said to you yesterday?
13 Some people say Kate is unfriendly, but she's always been very nice …… me.
14 I'm tired …… doing the same thing every day. I need a change.
15 We interviewed ten people for the job, and we weren't impressed …… any of them.
16 Vicky is annoyed …… me because I didn't agree with her.
17 I'm sorry …… the smell in this room. I've just finished painting it.
18 I was shocked …… what I saw. I'd never seen anything like it before.
19 Jack is sorry …… what he did. He won't do it again.
20 The hotel was incredibly expensive. I was amazed …… the price of a room.
21 Paul made the wrong decision. It was honest …… him to admit it.
22 You've been very generous …… me. You've helped me a lot.
23 Our neighbours were very angry …… the noise we made.
24 Our neighbours were furious …… us …… making so much noise.

➜ Additional exercise 35 (page 322)

Unit
131 Adjective + preposition 2

A *adjective* + **of**

afraid / **scared** / **frightened** / **terrified OF** . . .
☐ 'Are you **afraid of** spiders?' 'Yes, I'm **terrified of** them.'

fond / **proud** / **ashamed** / **jealous** / **envious OF** . . .
☐ Why is he so **jealous of** other people?

suspicious / **critical** / **tolerant OF** . . .
☐ They didn't trust me. They were **suspicious of** my motives.

aware / **conscious OF** . . .
☐ 'Did you know he was married?' 'No, I wasn't **aware of** that.'

capable / **incapable OF** . . .
☐ I'm sure you are **capable of** doing the job well.

full / **short OF** . . .
☐ Amy is a very active person. She's always **full of** energy.
☐ I'm a bit **short of** money. Can you lend me some?

typical OF . . .
☐ He's late again. It's **typical of** him to keep everybody waiting.

certain / **sure OF** *or* **ABOUT** . . .
☐ I think she's arriving this evening, but I'm not **sure of** that. *or* . . . not **sure about** that.

B *adjective* + **at** / **to** / **from** / **in** / **on** / **with** / **for**

good / **bad** / **brilliant** / **better** / **hopeless** etc. **AT** . . .
☐ I'm not very **good at** repairing things. (*not* good in repairing things)

married / **engaged TO** . . .
☐ Louise is **married to** an American. (*not* married with)
but Louise is married **with three children**. (= she is married and has three children)

similar TO . . .
☐ Your handwriting is **similar to** mine.

different FROM *or* **different TO** . . .
☐ The film was **different from** what I'd expected. *or* . . . **different to** what I'd expected.

interested IN . . .
☐ Are you **interested in** art?

keen ON . . .
☐ We stayed at home. Chris wasn't **keen on** going out.

dependent ON . . . (*but* **independent OF** . . .)
☐ I don't want to be **dependent on** anybody.

crowded WITH (people etc.)
☐ The streets were **crowded with** tourists. (*but* . . . **full of** tourists)

famous FOR . . .
☐ The Italian city of Florence is **famous for** its art treasures.

responsible FOR . . .
☐ Who was **responsible for** all that noise last night?

Preposition + **-ing** ➜ **Unit 60** **afraid of/to** . . . ➜ **Unit 66A** Adjective + preposition 1 ➜ **Unit 130**
American English ➜ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

131.1 **Complete the sentences using an adjective + of. Choose from:**

ashamed aware capable envious proud scared ~~short~~ typical

1 I'm a bit ......short of...... money. Can you lend me some?
2 My children have done very well. I'm .... them.
3 What I did was very bad. I'm .... myself.
4 She always behaves like that. It's .... her.
5 He wouldn't be able to run his own business. He's not .... it.
6 I don't like going up ladders. I'm .... heights.
7 Nobody told me she was ill. I wasn't .... it.
8 I wish I had what Sarah has. I'm .... her.

131.2 **Write sentences about yourself. Are you good at these things or not? You can use:**

good pretty good not very good hopeless

1 (repairing things) ......I'm not very good at repairing things.......
2 (telling jokes) ....
3 (maths) ....
4 (remembering names) ....
5 (making decisions) ....

131.3 **Complete the sentences using an adjective + preposition. Choose from:**

afraid capable different interested proud responsible similar ~~sure~~

1 I think she's arriving this evening, but I'm not ......sure of...... that.
2 Your camera is .... mine, but it isn't exactly the same.
3 Don't worry. I'll look after you. There's nothing to be ....
4 I never watch the news on TV. I'm not .... the news.
5 The editor is the person who is .... what appears in a newspaper.
6 Sarah is a keen gardener and is very .... her garden.
7 I was surprised when I first met Tina. She was .... what I expected.
8 Ben could become world champion one day. He's .... it.

131.4 **Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.**

1 There were lots of tourists in the streets. The streets were crowded ......with tourists...... .
2 There was a lot of furniture in the room. The room was full ....
3 I don't like sport very much. I'm not very keen ....
4 We don't have enough time. We're short ....
5 Helen does her job very well Helen is very good ....
6 Steven's wife is a doctor. Steven is married ....
7 I don't trust Robert. I'm suspicious ....
8 My problem is not the same as yours. My problem is different ....

131.5 **Put in the correct preposition.**

1 Amy is always full ......of...... energy.
2 My home town is not a very interesting place. It's not famous .... anything.
3 Kate is very fond .... her younger brother.
4 You look bored. You don't seem interested .... what I'm saying.
5 'Our flight departs at 10.35.' 'Are you sure .... that?'
6 I wanted to go out for a meal, but nobody else was keen .... the idea.
7 These days everybody is aware .... the dangers of smoking.
8 The station platform was crowded .... people waiting for the train.
9 Mark has no money of his own. He's completely dependent .... his parents.
10 We're short .... staff in our office right now. We need more people to do the work.

➜ Additional exercise 35 (page 322)

Unit
132 Verb + preposition 1 **to** and **at**

A

verb + **to**

talk / **speak TO** somebody (**talk**/**speak with** is also possible)
☐ Who were you **talking to**?

listen TO …
☐ When I'm driving, I like to **listen to** the radio. (*not* listen the radio)

apologise TO somebody (for …)
☐ They **apologised to me** for their mistake. (*not* apologised me)

explain something **TO** somebody
☐ Can you **explain** this word **to me**? (*not* explain me this word)
explain / **describe** (**to** somebody) what/how/why …
☐ I **explained to them** why I was worried. (*not* I explained them)
☐ Let me **describe to you** what I saw. (*not* Let me describe you)

B

phone somebody, **ask** somebody etc. (*without* **to**)

phone / **call** / **email** / **text** somebody
☐ I **called the airline** to cancel my flight. (*not* called to the airline)
But we say '**write** (a letter) **to** somebody'.

answer somebody/something
☐ You didn't **answer my email**. (*not* answer to my email)
But we say **reply to** (an email / a letter etc.).

ask somebody (a question)
☐ If there's anything you want to know, you can **ask me**. (*not* ask to me)

thank somebody (**for** …)
☐ He **thanked me** for helping him. (*not* He thanked to me)

C

verb + **at**

look / **stare** / **glance AT** …, **have a look** / **take a look AT** …
☐ Why are you **looking at** me like that?

laugh AT …
☐ I look stupid with this haircut. Everybody will **laugh at** me.

aim / **point** (something) **AT** …, **shoot** / **fire** (a gun) **AT** …
☐ Don't **point** that knife **at** me. It's dangerous.
☐ We saw someone with a gun **shooting at** birds, but he didn't hit any.

D

Some verbs can be followed by **at** or **to**, with a difference in meaning. For example:

shout AT somebody (when you are angry or aggressive)
☐ He got very angry and started **shouting at** me.
shout TO somebody (so that they can hear you)
☐ He **shouted to** me from the other side of the street.

throw something **AT** somebody/something (to hit them)
☐ Somebody **threw** an egg **at** the politician.
throw something **TO** somebody (for somebody to catch)
☐ Lisa shouted 'Catch!' and **threw** the keys **to** me from the window.

Verb + preposition 2–5 ➜ **Units 133–136** **ask for ➜ Unit 133B**
apologise for / thank somebody for ➜ Unit 135B Other verbs + **to ➜ Unit 136D**

Exercises

132.1 Which is correct?

1 a Can you explain this word to me? (a *is correct*)
b ~~Can you explain me this word?~~
2 a I got angry with Mark. Afterwards, I apologised to him.
b I got angry with Mark. Afterwards, I apologised him.
3 a Amy won't be able to help you. There's no point in asking to her.
b Amy won't be able to help you. There's no point in asking her.
4 a I need somebody to explain me what I have to do.
b I need somebody to explain to me what I have to do.
5 a They didn't understand the system, so I explained it to them.
b They didn't understand the system, so I explained it them.
6 a I like to sit on the beach and listen to the sound of the sea.
b I like to sit on the beach and listen the sound of the sea.
7 a I asked them to describe me exactly what happened.
b I asked them to describe to me exactly what happened.
8 a We'd better phone the restaurant to reserve a table.
b We'd better phone to the restaurant to reserve a table.
9 a It was a difficult question. I couldn't answer to it.
b It was a difficult question. I couldn't answer it.
10 a I explained everybody the reasons for my decision.
b I explained to everybody the reasons for my decision.
11 a I thanked everybody for all the help they had given me.
b I thanked to everybody for all the help they had given me.
12 a My friend texted to me to let me know she was going to be late.
b My friend texted me to let me know she was going to be late.

132.2 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs + the correct preposition:

~~explain~~ ~~laugh~~ listen look point reply speak throw throw

1 I look stupid with this haircut. Everybody will ....laugh at.... me.
2 I don't understand this. Can you ....explain.... it ....to.... me?
3 We live in the same building, but we've never .... one another.
4 Be careful with those scissors! Don't .... them .... me!
5 You shouldn't .... directly .... the sun. You'll damage your eyes.
6 Please .... me! I've got something important to tell you.
7 Don't .... stones .... the birds!
8 If you don't want that sandwich, ... it .... the birds. They'll eat it.
9 I tried to contact Tina, but she didn't .... my emails.

132.3 Put in **to** or **at**.

1 They apologised ....to.... me for what happened.
2 I glanced .... my watch to see what time it was.
3 Please don't shout .... me! Try to calm down.
4 I saw Lisa and shouted .... her, but she didn't hear me.
5 Don't listen .... what he says. He doesn't know what he's talking about.
6 What's so funny? What are you laughing .... ?
7 Is it all right if I have a look .... your magazine?
8 I'm lonely. I need somebody to talk ....
9 She was so angry she threw a book .... the wall.
10 The woman sitting opposite me on the train kept staring .... me.
11 Do you have a moment? I need to speak .... you.

➜ Additional exercise 36 (page 323)

Unit
133

Verb + preposition 2 **about/for/of/after**

A *verb* + **about**

talk / **read** / **know ABOUT** …
- We **talked about** a lot of things at the meeting.

have a discussion ABOUT something
- We had **a discussion about** what we should do.

But we say '**discuss** something' (no preposition):
- We **discussed** what we should do. (*not* discussed about)

do something/nothing **ABOUT** something = *do something/nothing to improve a situation*
- If you're worried about the problem, you should **do** something **about** it.

B *verb* + **for**

ask (somebody) **FOR** …
- I sent an email to the company **asking** them **for** more information about the job.

But we say 'ask somebody **the way** / **the time**' etc. (no preposition):
- I **asked** somebody **the way to the station**.

apply (**TO** a company etc.) **FOR** a job etc.
- I think you could do this job. Why don't you **apply for** it?

wait FOR somebody, **wait FOR** something (to happen)
- Don't **wait for** me. I'll join you later.
- I'm not going out yet. I'm **waiting for** the rain to stop.

search (a person / a place / a bag etc.) **FOR** …
- I've **searched** the house **for** my keys, but I still can't find them.

leave (a place) **FOR** another place
- I haven't seen her since she **left** (home) **for** work. (*not* left to work)

C **take care of**, **care for** and **care about**

take care OF … = *look after, keep safe, take responsibility for*
- Don't worry about me. I can **take care of** myself.
- I'll **take care of** the travel arrangements. You don't need to do anything.

care FOR somebody = *take care of them, keep them safe*
- Alan is 85 and lives alone. He needs somebody to **care for** him.

I don't **care FOR** something = *I don't like it*
- I don't **care for** hot weather. (= I don't like …)

care ABOUT … = *think that somebody/something is important*
- He's very selfish. He doesn't **care about** other people.

care what/**where**/**how** … etc. (*without* **about**)
- You can do what you like. I don't **care what** you do.

D **look for** and **look after**

look FOR … = *search for, try to find*
- I've lost my keys. Can you help me to **look for** them?

look AFTER … = *take care of, keep safe or in good condition*
- Alan is 85 and lives alone. He needs somebody to **look after** him. (*not* look for)
- You can borrow this book, but please **look after** it.

Verbs + **about**/**of** (**think**/**hear** etc.) ➜ **Unit 134** Other verbs + **for** ➜ **Unit 135B**

Exercises

133.1 Which is right?

1 We ~~searched everywhere Joe~~ / searched everywhere for Joe, but we couldn't find him.
(searched everywhere for Joe *is correct*)
2 I sent her an email. Now I'm waiting for her to reply / waiting her to reply.
3 A security guard searched my bag / searched for my bag as I entered the building.
4 I paid the taxi driver and asked him a receipt / asked him for a receipt.
5 I wanted to get to the city centre, so I stopped a man to ask the way / to ask for the way.
6 We discussed about the problem / discussed the problem, but we didn't reach a decision.
7 There are many problems, but the government does nothing for them / nothing about them.
8 My flight is at 9.30. What time do I need to leave the hotel to the airport / for the airport?

133.2 Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 I'm not going out yet. I'm waiting ....for.... the rain to stop.
2 I've applied .... three universities. I hope one of them accepts me.
3 If you don't want the job, there's no point in applying .... it.
4 I don't want to talk .... what happened last night. Let's forget it.
5 I don't want to discuss .... what happened last night. Let's forget it.
6 We had an interesting discussion .... the problem, but we didn't reach a decision.
7 My friends are in Italy. They're in Rome now and tomorrow they leave .... Milan.
8 The roof of the house is in bad condition. We need to do something .... it.

133.3 Put in the correct preposition after care. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 He's very selfish. He doesn't care ....about.... other people.
2 Who's going to take care .... you when you are old?
3 She doesn't care .... the exam. She doesn't care whether she passes or fails.
4 I don't like this coat very much. I don't care .... the colour.
5 Don't worry about the shopping. I'll take care .... that.
6 He gave up his job to care .... his elderly father.
7 I want to have a good holiday. I don't care .... the cost.
8 I want to have a good holiday. I don't care .... how much it costs.

133.4 Complete the sentences with look for or look after. Use the correct form of look (looks/looked/looking).

1 I ....looked for.... my keys, but I couldn't find them anywhere.
2 Kate is .... a job. I hope she finds one soon.
3 Who .... you when you were ill?
4 The car park was full, so we had to .... somewhere else to park.
5 A child minder is somebody who .... other people's children.
6 I'm .... Lisa. I need to ask her something. Have you seen her?

133.5 Complete the sentences with these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

apply ask do leave look ~~search~~ talk wait

1 Police are ....searching for.... a man who escaped from prison.
2 Sarah wasn't ready. We had to .... her.
3 I think Amy likes her job, but she doesn't .... it much.
4 Don't .... me .... money. I don't have any.
5 Ben is unemployed. He has .... several jobs, but hasn't had any luck.
6 If something is wrong, why don't you .... something .... it?
7 Helen's car is very old, but she .... it. It's in excellent condition.
8 Diane is from Boston, but now she lives in Paris. She .... Boston .... Paris when she was 19.

➜ Additional exercise 36 (page 323)

Unit
134 Verb + preposition 3 **about** and **of**

A

hear ABOUT . . . = *be told about something*

- Did you **hear about** the fire at the hotel?

hear OF . . . = *know that somebody/something exists*

- A: Who is Tom Hart?
  B: I have no idea. I've never **heard of** him. (*not* heard from him)

hear FROM . . . = *be in contact with somebody*

- A: Have you **heard from** Jane recently?
  B: Yes, she called me a few days ago.

B

think ABOUT something = consider it, concentrate your mind on it:

- I've **thought about** what you said and I've decided to take your advice.
- A: Will you lend me the money?
  B: I'll **think about** it. (*not* think of it)

think OF something = produce an idea:

- It was my idea. I **thought of** it first. (*not* thought about it)
- I felt embarrassed. I couldn't **think of** anything to say. (*not* think about anything)

We also use **think of** when we ask for or give an opinion:

- A: What did you **think of** the movie?
  B: I didn't **think** much **of** it. (= I didn't like it much)

Sometimes the difference is very small and you can use **of** or **about**:

- When I'm alone, I often **think of** you. *or* . . . **think about** you.

You can say **think of** *or* **think about** doing something (for possible future actions):

- My sister is **thinking of** going to Canada. *or* . . . **thinking about** going . . .

C

dream ABOUT . . . (when you are asleep)

- I **dreamt about** you last night.

dream OF/ABOUT being something / doing something = *imagine*

- Do you **dream of** being rich and famous? *or* . . . **dream about** being rich . . .

I **wouldn't dream OF** doing something = *I would never do it*

- 'Don't tell anyone what I said.' 'No, I **wouldn't dream of** it.'

D

complain (**TO** somebody) **ABOUT** . . . = *say that you are not satisfied*

- We **complained to** the manager of the restaurant **about** the food.

complain OF a pain, an illness etc. = *say that you have a pain etc.*

- We called the doctor because George was **complaining of** a pain in his stomach.

E

remind somebody **ABOUT** . . . = *tell somebody not to forget*

- It's good you **reminded** me **about** the meeting. I'd completely forgotten about it.

remind somebody **OF** . . . = *cause somebody to remember*

- This house **reminds** me **of** the one I lived in when I was a child.
- Look at this photograph of Richard. Who does he **remind** you **of**?

» **remind** somebody **to** . . . ➜ **Unit 55B**

Exercises

134.1 **Complete the sentences using hear or heard + a preposition (about/of/from).**

1 I'm surprised you haven't ....heard of.... her. She's quite famous.
2 'Did you .... the accident last night?' 'No, what happened?'
3 Sarah used to call me quite often, but I haven't .... her for a long time now.
4 'Have you .... William Hudson?' 'No. Who is he?'
5 Thanks for your email. It was good to .... you.
6 'Do you want to .... our trip?' 'Not now. Tell me later.'
7 I live in a very small town. You've probably never .... it.

134.2 **Complete the sentences using think about or think of. Sometimes both about and of are possible. Use the correct form of think (think/thinking/thought).**

1 I've ....thought about.... what you said and I've decided to take your advice.
2 I need time to make decisions. I like to .... things carefully.
3 You look serious. What are you .... ?
4 That's a good idea. Why didn't I .... that?
5 I don't really want to meet Tom tonight. I'll have to .... an excuse.
6 I'm .... buying a new car. What would you advise me to buy?
7 When I was offered the job, I didn't accept immediately. I went away and .... it
for a while. In the end I decided to take the job.
8 A: I've just finished reading the book you lent me.
B: What did you .... it? Did you like it?
9 A: Will you be able to help me?
B: I'm not sure. I'll .... it.
10 I don't .... much .... this coffee. It's like water.
11 Katherine is homesick. She's always .... her family back home.
12 A: Do you think I should apply to do the course?
B: I can't .... any reason why not.

134.3 **Put in the correct preposition.**

1 Did you hear ....about.... the fire at the hotel yesterday?
2 I love living here. I wouldn't dream .... going anywhere else.
3 A: I had a strange dream last night.
B: Did you? What did you dream .... ?
4 I love this music. It reminds me .... a warm day in spring.
5 A: We've got no money. What are we going to do?
B: Don't worry. I'll think .... something.
6 Our neighbours complained .... us .... the noise we made.
7 Paul was complaining .... pains in his chest, so he went to the doctor.
8 He loves his job. He thinks .... it all the time, he dreams .... it, he talks .... it
and I'm fed up with hearing .... it.

134.4 **Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:**

complain dream hear remind remind ~~think~~ think

1 It was my idea. I ....thought of.... it first.
2 Ben is never satisfied. He's always .... something.
3 I can't make a decision yet. I need time to .... your proposal.
4 He's not a well-known singer. Not many people have .... him.
5 A: You wouldn't go away without telling me, would you?
B: Of course not. I wouldn't .... it.
6 I would have forgotten my appointment if you hadn't .... me .... it.
7 Do you see that man over there? Does he .... you .... anybody you know?

➜ Additional exercise 36 (page 323)

Unit
135

Verb + preposition 4 **of/for/from/on**

A *verb* + **of**

accuse / **suspect** somebody **OF** . . .
- Tina **accused** me **of** being selfish.
- Some students were **suspected of** cheating in the exam.

approve / **disapprove OF** . . .
- His parents don't **approve of** what he does, but they can't stop him.

die OF *or* **die FROM** an illness etc.
- 'What did he **die of**?' 'A heart attack.'

consist OF . . .
- We had an enormous meal. It **consisted of** seven courses.

B *verb* + **for**

pay (somebody) **FOR** . . .
- We didn't have enough money to **pay for** the meal. (*not* pay the meal)

But we say '**pay** a bill / a fine / a fee / tax / rent / a sum of money' etc. (no preposition)
- We didn't have enough money to **pay the rent**.

thank / **forgive** somebody **FOR** . . .
- I'll never **forgive** them **for** what they did.

apologise (**TO** somebody) **FOR** . . .
- When I realised I was wrong, I **apologised** (**to** them) **for** my mistake.

blame somebody/something **FOR** . . . , somebody is **to blame FOR** . . .
- Everybody **blamed** me **for** the accident.
- Everybody said that I was **to blame for** the accident.

blame (a problem etc.) **ON** . . .
- It wasn't my fault. Don't **blame** it **on** me.

C *verb* + **from**

suffer FROM an illness etc.
- There's been an increase in the number of people **suffering from** heart disease.

protect somebody/something **FROM** . . .
- Sun cream **protects** the skin **from** the sun.

D *verb* + **on**

depend ON . . . , **rely ON** . . .
- I don't know what time we'll arrive. It **depends on** the traffic.
- You can **rely on** Anna. She always keeps her promises.

You can use **depend** + **when**/**where**/**how** etc. with or without **on**:
- 'Are you going to buy it?' 'It **depends how much** it is.' (*or* 'It depends **on** how much . . .')

live ON money/food
- Michael's salary is very low. It isn't enough to **live on**.

congratulate / **compliment** somebody **ON** . . .
- I **congratulated** her **on** doing so well in her exams.
- The meal was really good. I **complimented** Mark **on** his cooking skills.

Verb + preposition + -**ing** ➜ **Unit 62** Other verbs + **for** ➜ **Unit 133** Other verbs + **on** ➜ **Unit 136E**

Exercises

135.1 **Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.**

1. Some students were suspected ....of.... cheating in the exam.
2. Are you going to apologise .... what you did?
3. The apartment consists .... three rooms, a kitchen and bathroom.
4. I was accused .... lying, but I was telling the truth.
5. We finished our meal, paid .... the bill, and left the restaurant.
6. The accident was my fault, so I had to pay .... the repairs.
7. Some people are dying .... hunger, while others eat too much.
8. I called Helen to thank her .... the present she sent me.
9. The government is popular. Most people approve .... its policies.
10. Do you blame the government .... our economic problems?
11. When something goes wrong, you always blame it .... other people.
12. Forgive me .... interrupting, but I'd like to ask you something.

135.2 **Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.**

1. Sue said that I was selfish.
   Sue accused me ....of being selfish.. .
2. The misunderstanding was my fault, so I apologised.
   I apologised ....
3. Jane won the tournament, so I congratulated her.
   I congratulated ....
4. He has enemies, and he has a bodyguard to protect him.
   He has a bodyguard to protect ....
5. Sandra eats only bread and eggs.
   Sandra lives ....
6. You can't say that the bad weather is my fault.
   You can't blame ....
7. The police thought my friend had stolen a car.
   The police suspected ....

135.3 **Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:**

accuse **apologise** **~~approve~~** **congratulate** **depend** **live** **pay** **suffer**

1. His parents don't ....approve of.... what he does, but they can't stop him.
2. When you went to the theatre with Paul, who .... the tickets?
3. It's not pleasant when you are .... something you didn't do.
4. We hope to go to the beach tomorrow, but it .... the weather.
5. Things are cheap there. You can .... very little money.
6. You were rude to Lisa. I think you should .... her.
7. Alex .... back pain. He spends too much time working at his desk.
8. I called Jack to .... him .... passing his driving test.

135.4 **Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.**

1. I'll never forgive them ....for.... what they did.
2. Vaccinations may protect you .... a number of diseases.
3. You know you can always rely .... me if you need any help.
4. Sophie will have to borrow money to pay .... her college fees.
5. She's often unwell. She suffers .... very bad headaches.
6. I don't know whether I'll go out tonight. It depends .... how I feel.
7. Anna doesn't have a job. She depends .... her parents for money.
8. My usual breakfast consists .... fruit, cereal and coffee.
9. I complimented her .... her English. It was really good.

→ **Additional exercise 36** (page 323)

Unit
136

Verb + preposition 5 **in/into/with/to/on**

A

verb + **in**

believe IN . . . = *believe that something exists, believe that it's good to do something*
☐ Do you **believe in** God? (= do you believe that God exists?)
☐ I **believe in** saying what I think. (= I believe it is right to say what I think)
but '**believe** something' (= believe that it is true), '**believe** somebody' (= believe what they say):
☐ The story can't be true. I don't **believe it**. (*not* believe in it)

specialise IN . . .
☐ Helen is a lawyer. She **specialises in** company law.

succeed IN . . .
☐ I hope you **succeed in** finding the job you want.

B

verb + **into**

break INTO . . .
☐ Our house was **broken into** a few days ago, but nothing was stolen.

crash / **drive** / **bump** / **run INTO** . . .
☐ He lost control of the car and **crashed into** a wall.

divide / **cut** / **split** something **INTO** two or more parts
☐ The book is **divided into** three parts.

translate a book etc. **FROM** one language **INTO** another
☐ She's a famous writer. Her books have been **translated into** many languages.

C

verb + **with**

collide WITH . . .
☐ There was an accident this morning. A bus **collided with** a car.

fill something **WITH** . . . (*but* **full of** – see Unit 131A)
☐ Take this saucepan and **fill** it **with** water.

provide / **supply** somebody **WITH** . . .
☐ The school **provides** all its students **with** books.

D

verb + **to**

happen TO . . .
☐ What **happened to** that gold watch you used to have? (= where is it now?)

invite somebody **TO** a party / a wedding etc.
☐ They only **invited** a few people **to** their wedding.

prefer one thing **TO** another
☐ I **prefer** tea **to** coffee.

E

verb + **on**

concentrate ON . . .
☐ I tried to **concentrate on** my work, but I kept thinking about other things.

insist ON . . .
☐ I wanted to go alone, but some friends of mine **insisted on** coming with me.

spend (money) **ON** . . .
☐ How much do you **spend on** food each week?

Verb + preposition + **-ing** ➜ **Unit 62** Other verbs + **to** ➜ **Unit 132** Other verbs + **on** ➜ **Unit 135D**

Exercises

136.1 Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

believe break concentrate divide drive fill happen ~~insist~~ invite succeed

1 I wanted to go alone, but my friends insisted on coming with me.
2 I haven't seen Mike for ages. I wonder what has …………………… him.
3 It's a very large house. It's …………………… four apartments.
4 We've been …………………… the party, but unfortunately we can't go.
5 I don't …………………… ghosts. I think people imagine that they see them.
6 Steve gave me an empty bucket and told me to …………………… it …………………… water.
7 A burglar is someone who …………………… a house to steal things.
8 Don't try and do two things together. …………………… one thing at a time.
9 It wasn't easy, but in the end we …………………… finding a solution to the problem.
10 The car in front of me stopped suddenly. Unfortunately I couldn't stop in time and …………………… the back of it.

136.2 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1 There was a collision between a bus and a car.
A bus collided with a car.
2 I don't mind big cities, but I prefer small towns.
I prefer …………………… .
3 I got all the information I needed from the company.
The company provided me …………………… .
4 This morning I bought a pair of shoes, which cost eighty pounds.
This morning I spent …………………… .
5 There are ten districts in the city.
The city is divided …………………… .

136.3 Put in the correct preposition. If the sentence is already complete, leave the space empty.

1 The school provides all its students with books.
2 A strange thing happened …………… me a few days ago.
3 Mark decided to give up sport to concentrate …………… his studies.
4 Money should be used well. I don't believe …………… wasting it.
5 My present job isn't wonderful, but I prefer it …………… what I did before.
6 I hope you succeed …………… getting what you want.
7 Ben was injured playing football when he collided …………… another player.
8 There was an awful noise as the car crashed …………… a tree.
9 Patrick is a photographer. He specialises …………… sports photography.
10 Joe doesn't spend much money …………… clothes.
11 I was amazed when I heard the news. I couldn't believe …………… it.
12 Somebody broke …………… my car and stole my bag.
13 I was quite cold, but Tom insisted …………… having the window open.
14 The teacher decided to split the class …………… four groups.
15 I filled the tank, but unfortunately I filled it …………… the wrong kind of fuel.
16 Some things are difficult to translate …………… one language …………… another.

136.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use a preposition.

1 I wanted to go out alone, but my friend insisted on coming with me.
2 I spend a lot of money …………………… .
3 I saw an accident. A car crashed …………………… .
4 Chris prefers basketball …………………… .
5 The restaurant we went to specialises …………………… .
6 Shakespeare's plays have been translated …………………… .

➜ **Additional exercise 36** (page 323)

Unit 137

Phrasal verbs 1 Introduction

A

We often use verbs with:

in	**on**	**up**	**away**	**by**	**about**	**over**	**round** *or* **around**
out	**off**	**down**	**back**	**through**	**along**	**forward**	

So you can say **look out** / **get on** / **take off** / **run away** etc. These are *phrasal verbs*.

We often use **on**/**off**/**out** etc. with verbs of movement. For example:

get on	○ The bus was full. We couldn't **get on**.
drive off	○ A woman got into the car and **drove off**.
come back	○ Sarah is leaving tomorrow and **coming back** on Saturday.
turn round	○ When I touched him on the shoulder, he **turned round**.

B

Often the second word (**on**/**off**/**out** etc.) gives a special meaning to the verb. For example:

break down	○ Sorry I'm late. The car **broke down**. (= the engine stopped working)
find out	○ I never **found out** who sent me the flowers. (= I never discovered)
take off	○ It was my first flight. I was nervous as the plane **took off**. (= went into the air)
give up	○ I tried many times to contact her. In the end I **gave up**. (= stopped trying)
get on	○ How was the exam? How did you **get on**? (= How did you do?)
get by	○ My French isn't good, but it's enough to **get by**. (= enough to manage)

For more phrasal verbs, see Units 138–145.

C

Sometimes a phrasal verb is followed by a *preposition*. For example:

phrasal verb	*preposition*	
look up	**at**	○ We **looked up at** the plane as it flew above us.
run away	**from**	○ Why did you **run away from** me?
keep up	**with**	○ You're walking too fast. I can't **keep up with** you.
look forward	**to**	○ Are you **looking forward to** your trip?

D

Sometimes a phrasal verb has an *object*. For example:

○ I turned on **the light**. (**the light** is the *object*)

Usually there are two possible positions for the object. You can say:

○ I **turned on** the light. *or* I **turned** the light **on**.
object *object*

But if the object is a *pronoun* (**it**/**them**/**me**/**him** etc.), only one position is possible:

○ I turned **it** on. (*not* I turned on it)

In the same way, you can say:

○ I'm going to { **take off** my shoes.
take my shoes **off**.

but These shoes are uncomfortable. I'm going to **take them off**. (*not* take off them)

○ Don't { **wake up** the baby.
wake the baby **up**.

but The baby is asleep. Don't **wake her up**. (*not* wake up her)

○ Don't { **throw away** this box.
throw this box **away**.

but I want to keep this box, so don't **throw it away**. (*not* throw away it)

Phrasal verbs 2–9 ➔ **Units 138–145** American English ➔ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

137.1 Complete each sentence using a verb from A (in the correct form) + a word from B.

A
be get fly sit
break get go speak
~~come~~ get look take

B
away by on round
~~back~~ down off up
back down out up

1 Sarah is leaving tomorrow and coming back on Saturday.
2 I've been standing a long time. I'm going to .... for a bit.
3 It's a very busy airport. There are planes landing and .... all the time.
4 A cat tried to catch the bird, but it .... just in time.
5 We were trapped in the building. We couldn't ....
6 I can't hear you very well. Can you .... a little?
7 Ben's salary is very low, but it's enough to ....
8 Everything is so expensive now. Prices have .... a lot.
9 I heard a noise behind me, so I .... to see what it was.
10 I'm going out now to do some shopping. I'll .... in about an hour.
11 Our car .... on the motorway and we had to call for help.
12 How is your new job? How are you .... ?

137.2 Complete each sentence using a word from A and a word from B.

A
away in ~~up~~ back
out up up forward

B
at to ~~with~~ about
at to with through

1 You're walking too fast. I can't keep up with you.
2 My holidays are nearly over. Next week I'll be .... work.
3 We went .... the top floor of the building to admire the view.
4 The meeting tomorrow is going to be difficult. I'm not looking .... it.
5 There was a bank robbery last week. The robbers got .... £50,000.
6 I love to look .... the stars in the night sky.
7 I was sitting in the kitchen when a bird flew .... the open window.
8 How do you know about the plan? How did you find .... it?

137.3 Complete the sentences. Use these phrasal verbs + it/them/me:

get out give back switch on take off ~~throw away~~ wake up

1 I want to keep this box. Don't throw it away .
2 I'm going to bed now. Can you .... at 6.30?
3 I've got something in my eye and I can't ....
4 I don't like it when people borrow things and don't ....
5 I want to use the hair dryer. How do I ....?
6 My shoes are dirty. I'd better .... before going into the house.

137.4 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets.

1 Don't throw away this box . I want to keep it. (away)
2 I don't want this newspaper. You can throw it away . (away)
3 These books are Lisa's. I have to give .... to her. (back)
4 We can turn .... Nobody is watching it. (off)
5 Shh! My mother is asleep. I don't want to wake .... (up)
6 It's cold today. You should put .... if you go out. (on)
7 It was only a small fire. I was able to put .... easily. (out)
8 It's a bit dark in this room. Shall I turn .... ? (on)
9 A: The hotel is more expensive than when we stayed here last year.
B: Yes, they've put .... (up)
10 A: How did the vase get broken?
B: I'm afraid I knocked .... while I was cleaning. (over)

➜ Additional exercises 37–41 (pages 323–25)

Unit
138

Phrasal verbs 2 **in/out**

A

Compare **in** and **out**:

in = into a room, a building, a car etc.
- ☐ How did the thieves **get in**?
- ☐ Here's a key, so you can **let yourself in**.
- ☐ Lisa walked up to the edge of the pool and **dived in**. (= into the water)
- ☐ I've got a new apartment. I'm **moving in** on Friday.
- ☐ As soon as I got to the airport, I **checked in**.

In the same way you can say **go in**, **come in**, **walk in**, **break in** etc.

Compare **in** and **into**:
- ☐ I'm moving **in** on Friday.
- ☐ I'm moving **into my new flat** on Friday

out = out of a room, a building, a car etc.
- ☐ Stay in the car. Don't **get out**.
- ☐ I had no key, so I was **locked out**.
- ☐ She swam up and down the pool, and then **climbed out**.
- ☐ Andy opened the window and **looked out**.
- ☐ We paid the hotel bill and **checked out**.

In the same way you can say **go out**, **get out**, **move out**, **let** somebody **out** etc.

Compare **out** and **out of**:
- ☐ She climbed **out**.
- ☐ She climbed **out of the pool**.

B

Other verbs + **in**

drop in = *visit somebody at home without arranging to do this*
- ☐ I **dropped in** to see Chris on my way home.

join in = *take part in something that is already going on*
- ☐ They were playing cards, so I **joined in**.

plug in an electrical machine = *connect it to the electricity supply*
- ☐ The fridge isn't working because you haven't **plugged** it **in**.

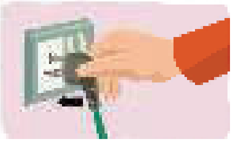
PLUG IN

take somebody **in** = *deceive somebody*
- ☐ The man said he was a policeman and I believed him. I was completely **taken in**.

fill in or **fill out** a form, a questionnaire etc. = *write the necessary information on a form*
- ☐ Please **fill in** the application form and send it to us by 28 February. *or*
Please **fill out** the application form . . .

C

Other verbs + **out**

eat out = *eat at a restaurant, not at home*
- ☐ There wasn't anything to eat at home, so we decided to **eat out**.

drop out of college / university / a course / a race = *stop before you have completely finished*
- ☐ Gary went to university but **dropped out** after a year.

get out of something that you arranged to do = *avoid doing it*
- ☐ I promised I'd go to the wedding. I don't want to go, but I can't **get out** of it now.

leave something **out** = *omit it, not include it*
- ☐ In the sentence 'She said that she was ill', you can **leave out** the word 'that'.

cross something **out** = *write a line through something*
- ☐ Some of the names on the list had been **crossed out**.

~~Sarah~~ CROSS OUT

Phrasal verbs 1 (Introduction) ➜ **Unit 137** More verbs + **out** ➜ **Unit 139**

Exercises

138.1 Complete the sentences.

1 Here's a key so that you can ....let.... yourself in.
2 Lisa doesn't like cooking, so she .... out a lot.
3 If you're in our part of town, you should .... in and say hello.
4 Could you .... in this questionnaire? It will only take five minutes.
5 Amy isn't living in this house any more. She .... out a few weeks ago.
6 After breakfast, we .... out of the hotel and got a taxi to the airport.
7 I wanted to charge my phone, but there was nowhere to .... the charger in.
8 Paul started doing a Spanish course, but he .... out after a few weeks.
9 Be careful! The water isn't very deep here, so don't .... in.

138.2 Complete the sentences with in, into, out or out of.

1 I've got a new flat. I'm moving ....in.... on Friday.
2 We arrived at the hotel and checked ....
3 When are you moving .... your new flat?
4 The car stopped and the driver got ....
5 Thieves broke .... the house and stole some jewellery.
6 How did the thieves break ....? Through a window?
7 He opened his wallet and something fell ....
8 Kate was angry and walked .... the meeting.

138.3 Complete the sentences using a verb + in or out (of).

1 Lisa walked to the edge of the pool, ...dived in.... and swam to the other end.
2 Not all the runners finished the race. Three of them ....
3 I went to see Joe and Sophie in their new house. They .... last week.
4 I've told you everything you need to know. I don't think I've .... anything.
5 Some people in the crowd started singing. Then a few more people .... and soon everybody was singing.
6 Don't be .... by him. If I were you, I wouldn't believe anything he says.
7 I .... to see Laura a few days ago. She was fine.

138.4 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets in the correct form.

1 A: The fridge isn't working.
B: That's because you haven't ....plugged it in.... . (plug)
2 A: What do I have to do with these forms?
B: .... and send them to this address. (fill)
3 A: I've made a mistake on this form.
B: That's OK. Just .... and correct it. (cross)
4 A: Have you been to the new club I told you about?
B: No. We went there, but they wouldn't .... because we weren't members. (let)
5 A: Can we meet tomorrow at ten?
B: Probably. I have another meeting, but I think I can .... (get)

138.5 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use a verb from Sections B or C.

1 Let's go to a restaurant tonight. — Let's ....eat out.... tonight.
2 Why didn't you finish college? — Why did you ....?
3 Please complete the application form. — Please .... form .
4 I can't avoid going to the party. — I can't .... to the party.
5 I thought the email was genuine, but it wasn't. — I was completely .... the email .
6 You must come and see us sometime. — You must .... sometime.
7 Steve was upset because he wasn't chosen for the team. — Steve was upset because he .... the team.

➜ Additional exercises 37–41 (pages 323–25)

Unit 139 Phrasal verbs 3 **out**

A

out = not burning, not shining

go out	☐ Suddenly all the lights in the building **went out**.
put out a fire / a cigarette / a light	☐ I **put** the fire **out** with a fire extinguisher.
turn out a light	☐ I **turned** the lights **out** before leaving.
blow out a candle	☐ We don't need the candle. You can **blow** it **out**.

B

work out

work out = *do physical exercises*

☐ Rachel **works out** at the gym three times a week.

work out = *develop, progress*

☐ Good luck for the future. I hope everything **works out** well for you.

☐ A: Why did James leave the company?
B: Things didn't **work out**. (= things didn't work out well)

work out (for calculations):

☐ The total bill for three people is £97.35. That **works out** at £32.45 each.

work (something) **out** = *calculate*

☐ 345 × 76? I need a calculator. I can't **work** it **out** in my head.

work out *or* **figure out** = *understand, think about a problem and find an answer*

☐ Investigators are trying to **work out** what caused the accident. *or*
Investigators are trying to **figure out** what caused the accident.

C

Other verbs + **out**

carry out an order / an experiment / a survey / an investigation / a plan etc.

☐ Soldiers are expected to **carry out** orders.

☐ An investigation into the accident will be **carried out**.

find out that/what/when (etc.) . . . , **find out about** . . . = *get information about*

☐ The police never **found out** who committed the crime.

☐ I just **found out** that it's Helen's birthday today.

☐ I checked a few websites to **find out** about hotels in the town.

give/**hand** things **out** = *give to each person*

☐ At the end of the lecture, the speaker **gave out** information sheets to the audience.

point something **out** (**to** somebody) = *draw attention to it*

☐ As we drove through the city, the tour guide **pointed out** all the sights.

☐ I didn't realise I'd made a mistake until somebody **pointed** it **out to** me.

run out (of something)

☐ We **ran out of** petrol on the motorway. (= we used all our petrol)

sort something **out** = *find a solution to, put in order*

☐ There are a few problems we need to **sort out**.

☐ All these papers are mixed up. I'll have to **sort** them **out**.

turn out to be . . . / **turn out** good/nice etc. / **turn out** that . . .

☐ Nobody believed Paul at first, but he **turned out** to be right. (= it became clear in the end that he was right)

☐ The weather wasn't so good in the morning, but it **turned out** nice later.

☐ I thought they knew each other, but it **turned out** that they'd never met.

try out a machine, a system, a new idea etc. = *test it to see if it is OK*

☐ The company is **trying out** some new software at the moment.

Phrasal verbs 1 (Introduction) ➔ **Unit 137** More verbs + **out** ➔ **Unit 138**

Exercises

139.1 Which words can go together? Choose from the list.

a candle a fire ~~a light~~ a new product an order a problem

1 turn out ..a light..........
2 blow out ....
3 carry out ....
4 put out ....
5 try out ....
6 sort out ....

139.2 Complete the sentences using a verb + out.

1 The company is ..trying out.. a new computer system at the moment.
2 Steve is very fit. He does a lot of sport and .... regularly.
3 The road will be closed for two days while building work is ....
4 We didn't manage to discuss everything at the meeting. We .... of time.
5 You have to .... the problem yourself. I can't do it for you.
6 I need to .... what happened exactly. It's not clear at the moment.
7 The new drug will be .... on a small group of patients.
8 I thought the two books were the same until someone .... the difference.
9 They got married a few years ago, but it didn't .... and they separated.
10 There was a power cut and all the lights ....
11 We thought she was American at first, but she .... to be Swedish.
12 Sometimes it .... cheaper to eat in a restaurant than to cook at home.
13 How did you .... about the project? Did somebody tell you?
14 It took firefighters two hours to .... the fire.
15 I can't .... how the water is getting into the house.

139.3 For each picture, complete the sentence using a verb + out.

1
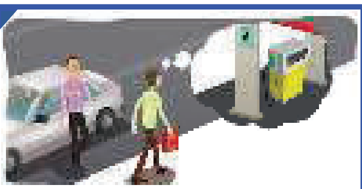

They've ..run out of petrol.. .

2
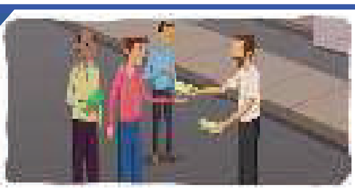

The man with the beard is .... leaflets.

3
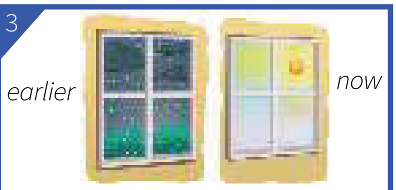

The weather has ....

4
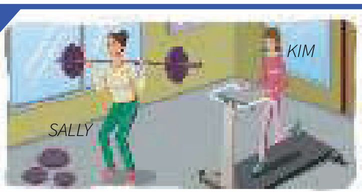

Sally and Kim are .... at the gym.

5
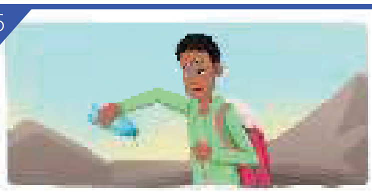

Joe has .... water.

6
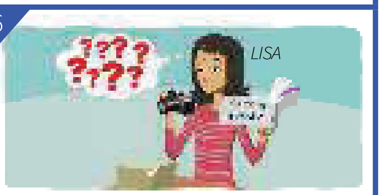

Lisa is trying to .... how ....

139.4 Complete the sentences. Each time use a verb + out.

1 A: Was the fire serious?
B: No, we were able to ..put it out.......... .
2 A: This recipe looks interesting.
B: Yes, let's ....
3 A: How much money do I owe you exactly?
B: Just a moment. I'll have to ....
4 A: What happened about your problem with your bank?
B: It's OK now. I went to see them and we ....
5 A: You've written the wrong date on this form.
B: Oh, so I have. Thanks for ....

➜ Additional exercises 37–41 (pages 323–25)

Unit
140

Phrasal verbs 4 **on/off** (1)

A

on and **off** for lights, machines etc.

We say:
the light **is on** / **put** the light **on** / **leave** the light **on** etc.
turn the light **on**/**off** *or* **switch** the light **on**/**off**

- Shall I **leave** the lights **on** or **turn** them **off**?
- '**Is** the heating **on**?' 'No, I **switched** it **off**.'

also
put (music, a song) **on**, **put** the kettle **on**:

- Let's **put** some music **on**. What would you like to hear?
- We need boiling water, so I'll **put** the kettle **on**.

B

on and **off** for events etc.

go on = *happen*

- What's all that noise? What's **going on**? (= what's happening)

call something **off** = *cancel it*

- The concert in the park had to be **called off** because of the weather.

put something **off**, **put off** doing something = *delay it*

- The election has been **put off** until January.
- We can't **put off** making a decision. We have to decide now.

C

on and **off** for clothes etc.

put on clothes, glasses, make-up, a seat belt etc.

- My hands were cold, so I **put** my gloves **on**.

put on weight = *get heavier*

- I've **put on** two kilos in the last month.

try on clothes (to see if they fit)

- I **tried on** a jacket in the shop, but it didn't look right.

take off clothes, glasses etc.

- It was warm, so I **took off** my coat.

D

off = away from a person or place

be off (to a place)

- Tomorrow I'**m off** to Paris. / I'**m off** on holiday.
  (= I'm going to Paris / I'm going on holiday)

walk off / **run off** / **drive off** / **ride off** / **go off** (similar to **walk away** / **run away** etc.)

- Anna got on her bike and **rode off**.
- Mark left home at the age of eighteen and **went off** to Canada.

set off = *start a journey*

- We **set off** early to avoid the traffic. (= We left early)

take off = *leave the ground (for planes)*

- After a long delay, the plane finally **took off**.

see somebody **off** = *go with them to the airport/station to say goodbye*

- Helen was going away. We went to the station with her to **see her off**.

Phrasal verbs 1 (Introduction) ➜ **Unit 137** More verbs + **on**/**off** ➜ **Unit 141**

Exercises

140.1 **Complete the sentences using put on + the following:**

some music **the heating** **the kettle** ~~**the light**~~ **the oven**

1 It was getting dark, so I put the light on .
2 It was getting cold, so I ....
3 I wanted to bake a cake, so I ....
4 I wanted to make some tea, so I ....
5 I wanted to relax, so I ....

140.2 **Complete the sentences. Use a verb + on or off.**

1 It was hot in the cinema, so I took off my jacket.
2 What are all these people doing? What's .... ?
3 The weather was too bad for the plane to .... , so the flight was delayed.
4 Rachel got into her car and .... at high speed.
5 Tim is too thin. He needs to .... weight.
6 We spent the whole day walking. We .... at 8 am and walked for ten hours.
7 Don't .... until tomorrow what you can do today.
8 They've changed their minds about getting married. The wedding has been ....
9 Are you cold? Shall I get you a sweater to .... ?
10 I .... some jeans in the shop, but they were too tight.
11 When I go away, I prefer to be alone at the station or airport. I don't like it when people come to .... me ....
12 I need to make an appointment to see the dentist, but I keep .... it ....

140.3 **Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.**

1
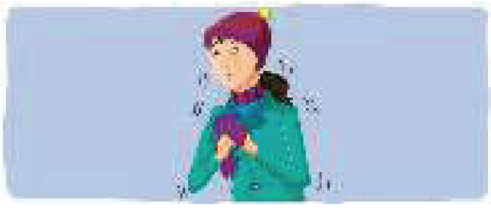
Her hands were cold, so she put her gloves on .

2
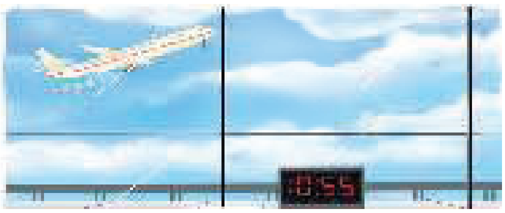

The plane .... at 10.55.

3
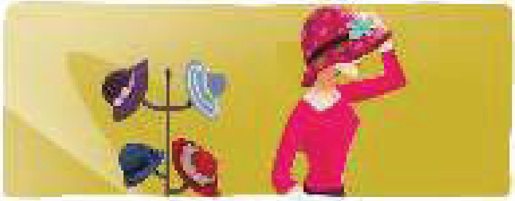
Maria .... , but it was too big for her.

4
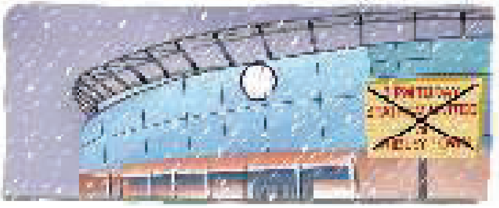
The match .... because of the weather.

5
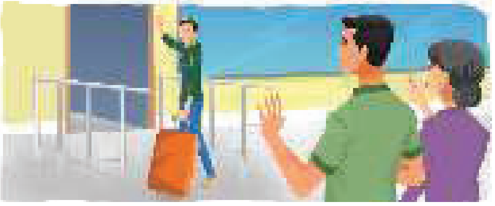
Mark's parents went to the airport to ....

6
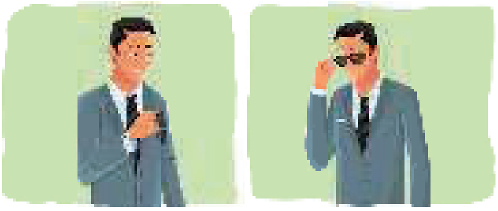
He took his sunglasses out of his pocket and ....

➜ Additional exercises 37–41 (pages 323–25)

Unit 141

Phrasal verbs 5 **on/off** (2)

A

verb + **on** = continue doing something

go on = *continue*
☐ The party **went on** until 4 o'clock in the morning.

go on / **carry on** doing something = *continue doing it*
☐ We can't **go on** spending money like this. We'll have nothing left soon.
☐ I don't want to **carry on** working here. I'm going to look for another job.

go on with / **carry on with** something = *continue it*
☐ Don't let me disturb you. Please **carry on with** what you're doing.

keep on doing (*or* **keep** doing) something = *do it continuously or repeatedly*
☐ He **keeps on** criticising me. It's not fair! (*or* He **keeps** criticising me.)

drive on / **walk on** / **play on** = *continue driving/walking/playing etc.*
☐ Shall we stop at this petrol station or shall we **drive on** to the next one?

B

get on

get on = *progress*
☐ How are you **getting on** in your new job? (= How is it going?)

get on (**with** somebody) = *have a good relationship*
☐ Joanne and Karen don't **get on**. They're always arguing.
☐ Richard **gets on** well **with** his neighbours. They're all very friendly.

get on with something = *continue something you have to do, usually after an interruption*
☐ I must **get on with** my work. I have a lot to do.

C

verb + **off**

doze off / **drop off** / **nod off** = *fall asleep*
☐ I **dozed off** during the lecture. It was very boring.

finish something **off** = *do the last part of it*
☐ A: Have you finished painting the kitchen?
B: Nearly. I'll **finish** it **off** tomorrow.

go off = *make an alarm sound*
☐ Did you hear the alarm **go off**?

put somebody **off** (doing) something *so that they don't want it or want to do it any more*
☐ We wanted to go to the exhibition, but we were **put off** by the long queue.
(= we didn't go because of the long queue)
☐ What **put** you **off** applying for the job? Was the salary too low?

rip somebody **off** / be **ripped off** = *cheat somebody / be cheated*
☐ Did you really pay £2,000 for that painting? I think you were **ripped off**.
(= you paid too much)

show off = *try to impress people with your ability, your knowledge etc.*
☐ Look at that boy on the bike riding with no hands. He's just **showing off**.

tell somebody **off** = *speak angrily to somebody because they did something wrong*
☐ Clare's mother **told** her **off** for wearing dirty shoes in the house.

»
go on / **carry on** / **keep on** ➜ **Unit 53B** Phrasal verbs 1 (Introduction) ➜ **Unit 137**
More verbs + **on**/**off** ➜ **Unit 140** American English → **Appendix 7**

Exercises

141.1 What do these sentences mean?

1 I carried on studying.
a ~~I started studying.~~ b I continued studying. c ~~I put off studying.~~ (b *is correct*)
2 I nodded off.
a I agreed. b I felt sick. c I fell asleep.
3 We were ripped off.
a We were attacked. b We paid too much. c Our clothes were torn.
4 I told them off.
a I criticised them. b I was satisfied with them. c I told them to go away.
5 They don't get on.
a They don't like each other much. b They are lazy. c They don't know each other.
6 He was showing off.
a He was joking. b He was trying to impress us. c He wasn't telling the truth.

141.2 Complete each sentence using a verb + on or off.

1 We can't ....go on.... spending money like this. We'll have nothing left soon.
2 I'm not ready to go home yet. I have a few things to ....
3 'Shall I stop the car here?' 'No, ... a bit further.'
4 Dan paid too much for the car he bought. I think he was ....
5 Emma is enjoying her course at university. She's .... very well.
6 The fire alarm .... and everybody had to leave the building.
7 Ben was .... by his boss for being late for work repeatedly.
8 The meeting has only just finished. It .... longer than expected.
9 I really like working with my colleagues. We all .... really well together.
10 I .... making the same mistake. It's very frustrating.
11 I've just had a coffee break, and now I must .... with my work.
12 Peter likes people to know how clever he is. He's always ....
13 We decided not to go to the concert. We were .... by the cost of tickets.
14 Jack paused for a moment and then .... with his story.
15 I was so tired at work today. I nearly .... at my desk a couple of times.

141.3 Complete the sentences. Use a verb (in the correct form) + on or off. Sometimes you will need other words as well. Choose from:

carry finish ~~get~~ get go keep rip tell

1 A: How ....are you getting on.... in your new job?
B: Fine, thanks. It's going very well.
2 A: What's Tanya like?
B: She's very nice and easy-going. She .... everybody.
3 A: Is Gary going to retire soon?
B: No, he likes his job and wants to .... working.
4 A: Have you written the letter you had to write?
B: I've started it. I'll .... tomorrow.
5 A: We took a taxi to the airport. It cost £40.
B: £40! Normally it costs about £20. You ....
6 A: Why were you late for work this morning?
B: I overslept. My alarm clock didn't ....
7 A: Some children at the next table in the restaurant were behaving very badly.
B: Why didn't their parents .... ?
8 A: Is Kate good at making decisions?
B: No, she isn't. .... changing her mind.

➜ Additional exercises 37–41 (pages 323–25)

Unit
142

Phrasal verbs 6 **up/down**

A

Compare **up** and **down**:

put something **up** (on a wall etc.)
☐ I **put** a picture **up** on the wall.

pick something **up**
☐ There was a letter on the floor. I **picked** it **up** and looked at it.

stand up
☐ Alan **stood up** and walked out.

turn something **up**
☐ I can't hear the TV. Can you **turn** it **up** a bit?

take something **down** (from a wall etc.)
☐ I didn't like the picture, so I **took** it **down**.

put something **down**
☐ I stopped writing and **put down** my pen.

sit down / **bend down** / **lie down**
☐ I **bent down** to tie my shoelace.

turn something **down**
☐ The oven is too hot. **Turn** it **down** to 150 degrees.

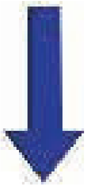

B

knock down, **cut down** etc.

knock down a building / **blow** something **down** / **cut** something **down** etc.
☐ Some old houses were **knocked down** to make way for the new shopping centre.
☐ Why did you **cut down** the tree in your garden?

be **knocked down** (by a car etc.)
☐ A man was **knocked down** by a car and taken to hospital.

burn down = *be destroyed by fire*
☐ They were able to put out the fire before the house **burnt down**.

C

down = getting less

slow down = *go more slowly*
☐ You're driving too fast. **Slow down**.

calm (somebody) **down** = *become calmer, make somebody calmer*
☐ **Calm down**. There's no point in getting angry.

cut down (**on** something) = *eat, drink or do something less often*
☐ I'm trying to **cut down on** coffee. I drink too much of it.

D

Other verbs + **down**

break down = *stop working (for machines, cars, relationships etc.)*
☐ The car **broke down** and I had to phone for help.
☐ Their marriage **broke down** after only a few months.

close down / **shut down** = *stop doing business*
☐ There used to be a shop at the end of the street. It **closed down** a few years ago.

let somebody **down** = *disappoint them because you didn't do what they hoped*
☐ You can always rely on Paul. He'll never **let** you **down**.

turn somebody/something **down** = *refuse an application, an offer etc.*
☐ I applied for several jobs, but I was **turned down** for all of them.
☐ Rachel was offered the job, but she decided to **turn** it **down**.

write something **down** = *write something on paper because you may need the information later*
☐ I can't remember Ben's address. I **wrote** it **down**, but I can't find it.

Phrasal verbs 1 (Introduction) ➜ **Unit 137** More verbs + **up** ➜ **Units 143–144**

Exercises

142.1 Complete the sentences. Use a verb + up or down.

1
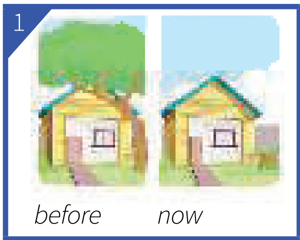

2
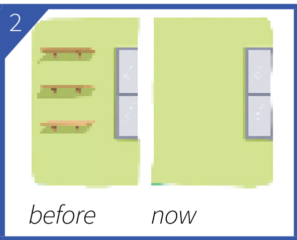

3
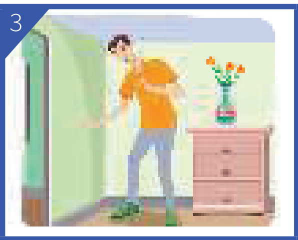

4
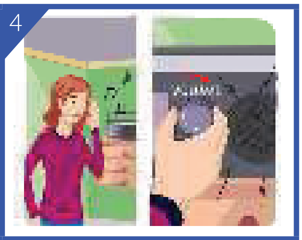

5
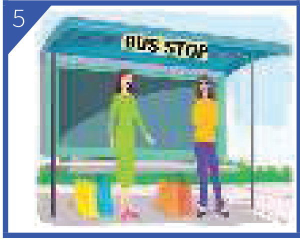

6
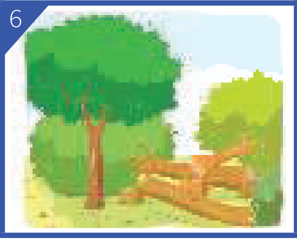

7
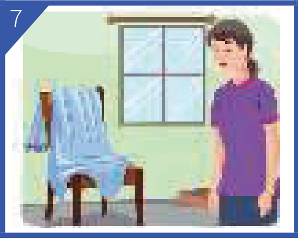

8
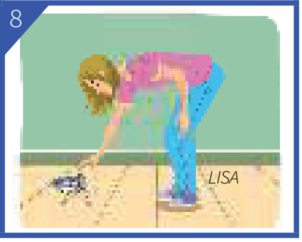

1 There used to be a tree next to the house, but we .... cut it down ....
2 There used to be some shelves on the wall, but I ....
3 The ceiling was so low, he couldn't .... straight.
4 She couldn't hear the radio very well, so she ....
5 While they were waiting for the bus, they .... on the ground.
6 A few trees .... in the storm last week.
7 We've got some new curtains, but we haven't .... yet.
8 Lisa dropped her keys, so she .... and ....

142.2 Complete the sentences. Use a verb (in the correct form) + down. Choose from:

calm cut let ~~take~~ turn write

1 I don't like this picture on the wall. I'm going to .... take it down ....
2 The music was too loud, so I ....
3 David was very angry. I tried to ....
4 I promised I would help Anna. I don't want to ....
5 I've forgotten my password. I should have ....
6 Those trees are beautiful. Please don't ....

142.3 Complete the sentences. Use a verb + down.

1 I stopped writing and .... put down .... my pen.
2 I was really angry. It took me a long time to ....
3 The train .... as it approached the station.
4 Sarah applied to study medicine at university, but she ....
5 Our car is very reliable. It has never ....
6 I spend too much money. I'm going to .... on things I don't need.
7 I didn't play well. I felt that I had .... the other players in the team.
8 The shop .... because it was losing money.
9 It's a very ugly building. Many people would like it to ....
10 I can't understand why you .... the chance of working in another country for a year. It would have been a great experience for you.
11 I didn't see the accident. Someone told me that a boy .... as he was crossing the road.
12 Peter got married when he was 20, but unfortunately the marriage .... a few years later.

→ **Additional exercises 37–41** (pages 323–25)

Unit
143

Phrasal verbs 7 **up** (1)

A

go up, **come up**, **walk up** (**to** . . .) = *approach*
○ A man **came up to** me in the street and asked me for money.

catch up (**with** somebody), **catch** somebody **up** = *move faster than people in front of you so that you reach them*
○ I'm not ready to go yet. You go on and I'll **catch up with** you / I'll **catch** you **up**.

keep up (**with** somebody) = *continue at the same speed or level*
○ You're walking too fast. I can't **keep up** (**with** you).
○ You're doing well. **Keep** it **up**!

B

set up an organisation, a company, a business, a system, a website etc. = *start it*
○ The government has **set up** a committee to investigate the problem.

take up a hobby, a sport, an activity etc. = *start doing it*
○ Laura **took up** photography a few years ago. She takes really good pictures.

fix up a meeting etc. = *arrange it*
○ We've **fixed up** a meeting for next Monday.

C

grow up = *become an adult*
○ Amy was born in Hong Kong but **grew up** in Australia.

bring up a child = *raise, look after a child*
○ Her parents died when she was a child and she was **brought up** by her grandparents.

D

clean up, **clear up**, **tidy up** = *make something clean, tidy etc.*
○ Look at this mess! Who's going to **tidy up**? (*or* . . . to **tidy** it **up**)

wash up = *wash the plates, dishes etc. after a meal*
○ I hate **washing up**. (*or* I hate **doing the washing-up**.)

E

end up somewhere, **end up** doing something etc.
○ There was a fight in the street and three men **ended up** in hospital.
(= that's what happened to these men in the end)
○ I couldn't find a hotel and **ended up** sleeping on a bench at the station.
(= that's what happened to me in the end)

give up = *stop trying*, **give** something **up** = *stop doing it*
○ Don't **give up**. Keep trying!
○ Sue got bored with her job and decided to **give** it **up**. (= stop doing it)

make up something, be **made up of** something
○ Children under 16 **make up** half the population of the city.
(= half the population are children under 16)
○ Air is **made up** mainly **of** nitrogen and oxygen. (= Air consists of . . .)

take up space or time = *use space or time*
○ Most of the space in the room was **taken up** by a large table.

turn up, **show up** = *arrive, appear*
○ We arranged to meet David last night, but he didn't **turn up**.

use something **up** = *use all of it so that nothing is left*
○ I'm going to make soup. We have a lot of vegetables and I want to **use them up**.

Phrasal verbs 1 (Introduction) ➜ **Unit 137** More verbs + **up** ➜ **Units 142, 144**

Exercises

143.1 **Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use three words each time, including a verb from Section A.**

1
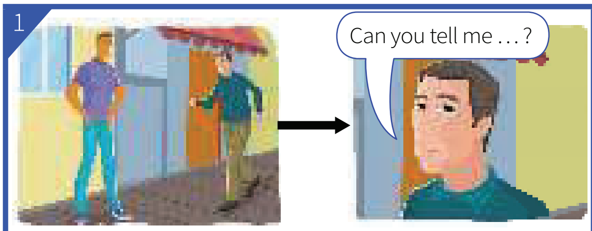
Can you tell me . . . ?

A man ....came up to.... me in the street and asked me the way to the station.

2
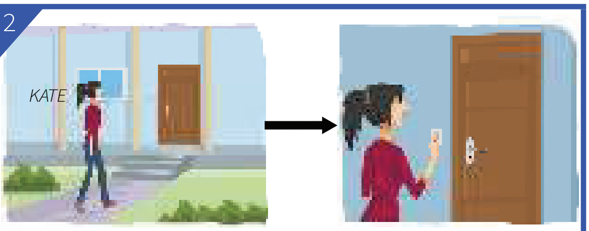

Kate .... the front door of the house and rang the doorbell.

3
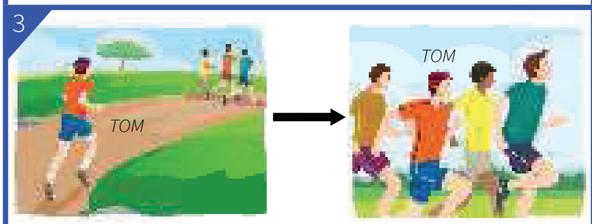

Tom was a long way behind the other runners, but he managed to .... them.

4
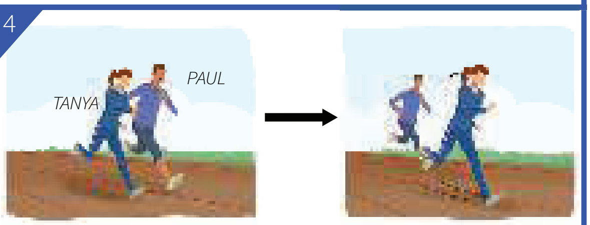

Tanya was running too fast for Paul. He couldn't .... her.

143.2 **Complete the sentences. Use a verb (in the correct form) + up. Choose from:**

~~end~~ end give give grow make take take turn use wash

1 I couldn't find a hotel and ....ended up.... sleeping on a bench at the station.
2 I'm feeling very tired now. I've .... all my energy.
3 After dinner I .... and put the dishes away.
4 People often ask children what they want to be when they ....
5 We arranged to meet Tom, but he didn't ....
6 Two years ago James .... his studies to be a professional footballer.
7 I don't do any sports right now, but I'm thinking of .... tennis.
8 You don't have enough determination. You .... too easily.
9 Karen travelled a lot for a few years and .... in Canada, where she still lives.
10 I do a lot of gardening. It .... most of my free time.
11 There are two universities in the city. Students .... 20 per cent of the population.

143.3 **Complete the sentences. Use a verb + up (with any other necessary words). Choose from:**

bring ~~catch~~ fix ~~give~~ give go keep keep make set tidy

1 Sue got bored with her job and decided to ....give it up.... .
2 I'm not ready yet. You go on and I'll ....catch up with.... you.
3 The room is in a mess. I'd better ....
4 We expect to go away on holiday in July, but we haven't .... yet.
5 Steven is having problems at school. He can't .... the rest of the class.
6 I .... in the country, but I have always preferred cities.
7 Our team lost the game. We started well, but we couldn't ....
8 I saw Mike at the party, so I .... him and said hello.
9 Helen has her own website. A friend of hers helped her to ....
10 Ben was learning to play the guitar, but he found it hard and in the end he ....
11 When I was on holiday, I joined a tour group. The group .... two Americans, three Japanese, five Germans and myself.

➜ Additional exercises 37–41 (pages 323–25)

Unit
144

Phrasal verbs 8 **up** (2)

A

bring up a topic etc. = *introduce it in a conversation*
○ I don't want to hear any more about this. Please don't **bring** it **up** again.

come up = *be introduced in a conversation*
○ Some interesting things **came up** in our discussion yesterday.

come up with an idea, a suggestion etc. = *produce an idea*
○ Sarah is very creative. She's always **coming up with** new ideas.

make something **up** = *invent something that is not true*
○ What Kevin told you about himself wasn't true. He **made** it all **up**.

B

cheer up = *be happier*, **cheer** somebody **up** = *make somebody feel happier*
○ You look so sad! **Cheer up**!
○ Helen is depressed. What can we do to **cheer** her **up**?

save up for something / to do something = *save money to buy something*
○ Dan is **saving up** for a trip to New Zealand.

clear up = *become bright (for weather)*
○ It was raining when I got up, but it **cleared up** later.

C

blow up = *explode*, **blow** something **up** = *destroy it with a bomb etc.*
○ The engine caught fire and **blew up**.
○ The bridge was **blown up** during the war.

tear something **up** = *tear it into pieces*
○ I didn't read the letter. I just **tore** it **up** and threw it away.

beat somebody **up** = *hit someone repeatedly so that they are badly hurt*
○ A friend of mine was attacked and **beaten up**. He had to go to hospital.

D

break up, **split up** (**with** somebody) = *separate*
○ I'm surprised to hear that Kate and Paul have **split up**. They seemed very happy together.

do up a coat, a shoelace, buttons etc. = *fasten, tie etc.*
○ It's quite cold. **Do up** your coat before you go out.

do up a building, a room etc. = *repair and improve it*
○ The kitchen looks great now that it has been **done up**.

look something **up** in a dictionary/encyclopaedia etc.
○ If you don't know the meaning of a word, you can **look** it **up** (in a dictionary).

put up with something = *tolerate a difficult situation or person*
○ We live on a busy road, so we have to **put up with** a lot of noise from the traffic.

hold up a person, a plan etc. = *delay*
○ Don't wait for me. I don't want to **hold** you **up**.
○ Plans to build a new factory have been **held up** because of financial problems.

mix up people/things, **get** people/things **mixed up** = *you think one is the other*
○ The two brothers look very similar. People often **mix** them **up**.
or . . . People often **get** them **mixed up**.

Phrasal verbs 1 (Introduction) ➜ **Unit 137** More verbs + **up** ➜ **Units 142–143**
American English ➜ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

144.1 Which goes with which?

1 He was angry and tore up
2 Jane came up with
3 Paul is always making up
4 I think you should do up
5 I don't think you should bring up
6 I'm saving up for
7 We had to put up with

a a motorbike
b a lot of bad weather
c your jacket
d a good suggestion
e excuses
f ~~the letter~~
g that subject

1 ....f....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....

144.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. You will need two or three words each time.

1
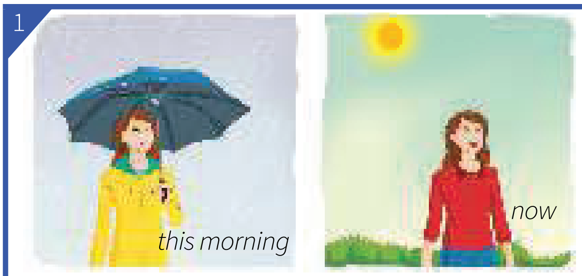

The weather was horrible this morning, but it's ....cleared up.... now.

2
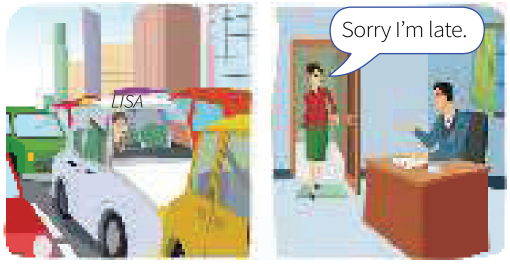

Lisa was late because she was .... in the traffic.

3
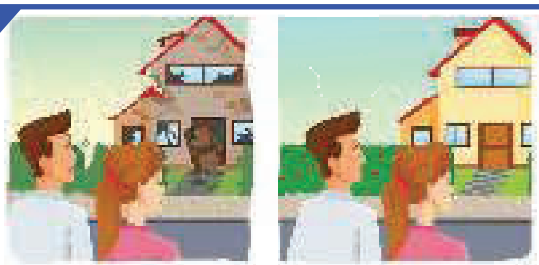

They bought an old house and .... It's really nice now.

4
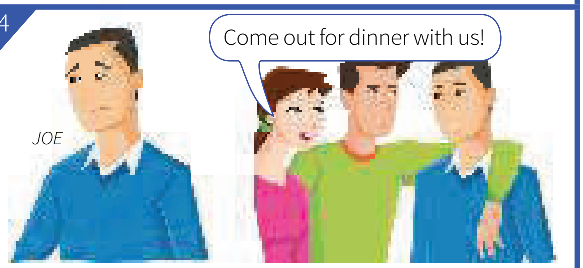
Come out for dinner with us!
JOE

Joe was really depressed. We took him out for a meal to ....

144.3 Complete the sentences using a verb + up. Sometimes you will need other words as well.

1 Some interesting things ....came up.... in our discussion yesterday.
2 The ship .... and sank. The cause of the explosion was never discovered.
3 James was attacked and .... by three men he'd never seen before.
4 Robert and Tina aren't together any more. They've ....
5 My hands were so cold, I found it hard to .... my shoelaces.
6 It's been raining all morning. Let's hope it .... this afternoon.
7 I turned up for the party on the wrong day. I got the dates ....

144.4 Complete the sentences using a verb + up. You will need other words as well.

1 Don't wait for me. I don't want to ....hold you up.... .
2 I don't know what this word means. I'll have to ....
3 I'm fed up with the way my boss treats me. I don't see why I should .... it.
4 I don't believe the story you're telling me. I think you're ....
5 The problem was complicated, but we managed to .... a solution.
6 Before you throw these documents away, you should ....
7 I'm trying to spend less money at the moment. I'm .... a holiday.
8 Tina doesn't like talking about the accident, so it's better not to ....
9 The words 'there' and 'their' sound the same, so it's easy to ....

➜ Additional exercises 37–41 (pages 323–25)

Unit 145

Phrasal verbs 9 **away/back**

A

Compare **away** and **back**:

away = away from home
- ☐ We're **going away** on holiday today.

away = away from a place, a person etc.
- ☐ Sarah got into her car, started the engine and **drove away**.
- ☐ I tried to take a picture of the bird, but it **flew away**.
- ☐ I dropped the ticket, and it **blew away** in the wind.
- ☐ The police searched the house and **took away** a computer.

In the same way you can say:
walk away, **run away**, **look away** etc.

back = back home
- ☐ We'll **be back** in three weeks.

back = back to a place, a person etc.
- ☐ A: I'm going out now.
  B: What time will you **be back**?
- ☐ After eating at a restaurant, we **walked back** to our hotel.
- ☐ I've still got Jane's keys. I forgot to **give** them **back** to her.
- ☐ When you've finished with that book, can you **put** it **back** on the shelf?

In the same way you can say:
go back, **come back**, **get back**, **take** something **back** etc.

B

Other verbs + **away**

get away = *escape, leave with difficulty*
- ☐ We tried to catch the thief, but she **got away**.

get away with something = *do something wrong without being caught*
- ☐ I parked in a no-parking zone, but I **got away with** it. I didn't have to pay a fine.

keep away (**from** ...) = *don't go near*
- ☐ **Keep away from** the edge of the pool. You might fall in.

give something **away** = *give it to somebody else because you don't want it any more*
- ☐ 'Did you sell your bike?' 'No, I **gave** it **away to a friend**.'

put something **away** = *put it in the place where it is usually kept*
- ☐ When the children finished playing with their toys, they **put** them **away**.

throw something **away** = *put it in the rubbish*
- ☐ I kept the letter, but I **threw away** the envelope.

C

Other verbs + **back**

wave back / **smile back** / **shout back** / **hit** somebody **back**
- ☐ I waved to her, and she **waved back**.

call/**phone**/**ring** (somebody) **back** = *return a phone call*
- ☐ I can't talk to you now. I'll **call** you **back** in ten minutes.

get back to somebody = *reply to them by phone etc.*
- ☐ I sent him an email, but he never **got back to** me.

look back (**on** something) = *think about what happened in the past*
- ☐ My first job was in a travel agency. I didn't like it much at the time but, **looking back on** it, I learnt a lot and it was a useful experience.

pay back money, **pay** somebody **back**
- ☐ If you borrow money, you have to **pay** it **back**.
- ☐ Thanks for lending me the money. I'll **pay** you **back** next week.

» Phrasal verbs 1 (Introduction) ➜ **Unit 137**

Exercises

145.1 **Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.**

1
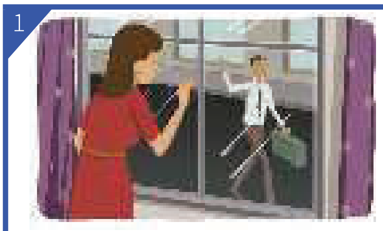
She waved to him and he ...waved back... .

2
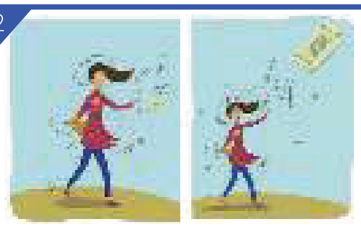
It was windy. I dropped a £20 note and it ....

3
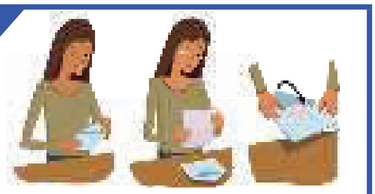
She opened the letter, read it and .... in the envelope.

4
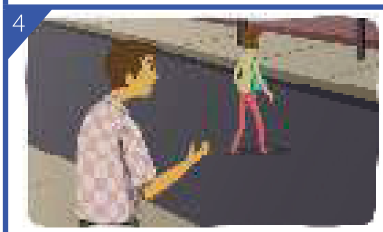
He tried to talk to her, but she just ....

5
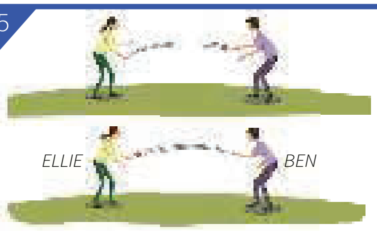

Ellie threw the ball to Ben and he ....

6
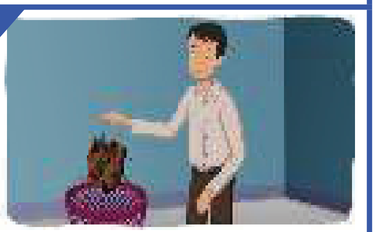
His shoes were worn out, so he ....

145.2 **Complete the sentences. Use a verb + away or back.**

1 I was away all day yesterday. I ...got back... very late.
2 I haven't seen our neighbours for a while. I think they must ....
3 'I'm going out now.' 'OK. What time will you .... ?'
4 I saw a man trying to break into a car. When he saw me, he ....
5 If you cheat in the exam, you might .... with it or you might get caught.
6 Be careful! That's an electric fence. Make sure you .... from it.
7 He wasn't very friendly. I smiled at him, but he didn't ....

145.3 **Complete the sentences. Use only one word each time.**

1 The woman got into her car, started the engine and ...drove... away.
2 This box could be useful, so I won't .... it away.
3 Jane doesn't do anything at work. I don't know how she .... away with it.
4 I'm going out now. I'll .... back in about an hour.
5 You should think more about the future. Don't .... back all the time.
6 Gary is very generous. He won some money in the lottery and .... it all away.
7 I'll .... back to you as soon as I have the information you need.
8 I washed the dishes, dried them and .... them away.

145.4 **Complete the sentences. Use the verb in brackets + away or back.**

1 A: Do you still have my keys?
B: No. Don't you remember? I ...gave them back... to you yesterday. (give)
2 A: Do you want this magazine?
B: No, I've finished with it. You can .... (throw)
3 A: How are your new jeans? Do they fit you OK?
B: No, they're too tight. I'm going to .... to the shop. (take)
4 A: Here's the money you asked me to lend you.
B: Thanks. I'll .... as soon as I can. (pay)
5 A: What happened to all the books you used to have?
B: I didn't want them any more, so I .... (give)
6 A: Did you phone Sarah?
B: Yes, I left a message for her, but she hasn't .... (call)

➜ **Additional exercises 37–41** (pages 323–25)

Appendix 1
Regular and irregular verbs

1.1 *Regular verbs*

If a verb is regular, the past simple and past participle end in **-ed**. For example:

infinitive	**clean**	**finish**	**use**	**paint**	**stop**	**carry**
past simple *past participle*	**cleaned**	**finished**	**used**	**painted**	**stopped**	**carried**

For spelling rules, see Appendix 6.

For the *past simple* (I **cleaned** / they **finished** / she **carried** etc.), see Unit 5.

We use the *past participle* to make the perfect tenses and all the passive forms.
Perfect tenses (**have**/**has**/**had** cleaned):

- I **have cleaned** the windows. (*present perfect* – see Units 7–8)
- They were still working. They **had**n't **finished**. (*past perfect* – see Unit 15)

Passive (**is** clean**ed** / **was** clean**ed** etc.):

- **He was carried** out of the room. (*past simple passive*)
- This gate has just **been painted**. (*present perfect passive*)

see Units 42–44

1.2 *Irregular verbs*

When the past simple and past participle do *not* end in **-ed** (for example, **I saw** / **I have seen**), the verb is *irregular*.
With some irregular verbs, all three forms (*infinitive*, *past simple* and *past participle*) are the same. For example, **hit**:

- Don't **hit** me. (*infinitive*)
- Somebody **hit** me as I came into the room. (*past simple*)
- I've never **hit** anybody in my life. (*past participle – present perfect*)
- George was **hit** on the head by a stone. (*past participle – passive*)

With other irregular verbs, the past simple is the same as the past participle (but different from the infinitive). For example, **tell** → **told**:

- Can you **tell** me what to do? (*infinitive*)
- She **told** me to come back the next day. (*past simple*)
- Have you **told** anybody about your new job? (*past participle – present perfect*)
- I was **told** to come back the next day. (*past participle – passive*)

With other irregular verbs, all three forms are different. For example, **wake** → **woke**/**woken**:

- I'll **wake** you up. (*infinitive*)
- I **woke** up in the middle of the night. (*past simple*)
- The baby has **woken** up. (*past participle – present perfect*)
- I was **woken** up by a loud noise. (*past participle – passive*)

1.3 The following verbs can be regular or irregular:

burn	→ burn**ed**	*or*	burn**t**	**smell**	→ smell**ed**	*or*	smel**t**
dream	→ dream**ed**	*or*	dream**t** [dremt]*	**spell**	→ spell**ed**	*or*	spel**t**
lean	→ lean**ed**	*or*	lean**t** [lent]*	**spill**	→ spill**ed**	*or*	spil**t**
learn	→ learn**ed**	*or*	learn**t**	**spoil**	→ spoil**ed**	*or*	spoil**t**

* *pronunciation*

So you can say:

- I **leant** out of the window. *or* I **leaned** out of the window.
- The dinner has been **spoiled**. *or* The dinner has been **spoilt**.

In British English the irregular form (**burnt**/**learnt** etc.) is more usual. For American English, see Appendix 7.

1.4 List of irregular verbs

infinitive	*past simple*	*past participle*
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
bet	bet	bet
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast
build	built	built
burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept
cut	cut	cut
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug	dug
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
flee	fled	fled
fly	flew	flown
forbid	forbade	forbidden
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	got/gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
kneel	knelt	knelt
know	knew	known
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain

infinitive	*past simple*	*past participle*
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read [red]*	read [red]*
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
seek	sought	sought
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
sew	sewed	sewn/sewed
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown/showed
shrink	shrank	shrunk
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
slide	slid	slid
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
spit	spat	spat
split	split	split
spread	spread	spread
spring	sprang	sprung
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
stink	stank	stunk
strike	struck	struck
swear	swore	sworn
sweep	swept	swept
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
weep	wept	wept
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

* *pronunciation*

Appendix 2
Present and past tenses

	simple	*continuous*
present	I **do** *present simple* (→ Units 2–4) ○ Anna often **plays** tennis. ○ I **work** in a bank, but I **don't enjoy** it much. ○ **Do** you **like** parties? ○ It **doesn't rain** so much in summer.	I **am doing** *present continuous* (→ Units 1, 3–4) ○ 'Where's Anna?' 'She**'s playing** tennis.' ○ Please don't disturb me now. **I'm working**. ○ Hello! **Are** you **enjoying** the party? ○ It **isn't raining** at the moment.
present perfect	I **have done** *present perfect simple* (→ Units 7–8, 10–14) ○ Anna **has played** tennis many times. ○ **I've lost** my key. **Have** you **seen** it anywhere? ○ How long **have** you and Sam **known** each other? ○ A: Is it still raining? B: No, it **has stopped**. ○ The house is dirty. I **haven't cleaned** it for weeks.	I **have been doing** *present perfect continuous* (→ Units 9–11) ○ Anna is tired. She **has been playing** tennis. ○ You're out of breath. **Have** you **been running**? ○ How long **have** you **been learning** English? ○ It's still raining. It **has been raining** all day. ○ I **haven't been feeling** well recently. Perhaps I should go to the doctor.
past	I **did** *past simple* (→ Units 5–6, 13–14) ○ Anna **played** tennis yesterday afternoon. ○ I **lost** my key a few days ago. ○ There was a film on TV last night, but we **didn't watch** it. ○ What **did** you **do** when you finished work yesterday?	I **was doing** *past continuous* (→ Unit 6) ○ I saw Anna at the sports centre yesterday. She **was playing** tennis. ○ I dropped my key when I **was trying** to open the door. ○ The TV was on, but we **weren't watching** it. ○ What **were** you **doing** at this time yesterday?
past perfect	I **had done** *past perfect* (→ Unit 15) ○ It wasn't her first game of tennis. She **had played** many times before. ○ They couldn't get into the house because they **had lost** the key. ○ The house was dirty because I **hadn't cleaned** it for weeks.	I **had been doing** *past perfect continuous* (→ Unit 16) ○ Anna was tired yesterday evening because she **had been playing** tennis in the afternoon. ○ James decided to go to the doctor because he **hadn't been feeling** well.

For the passive, see Units 42–44.

Appendix 3
The future

3.1 *List of future forms:*

I**’m leaving** tomorrow.	*present continuous*	(→ Unit 19A)
My train **leaves** at 9.30.	*present simple*	(→ Unit 19B)
I**’m going to leave** tomorrow.	(be) **going to**	(→ Units 20, 23)
I**’ll leave** tomorrow.	**will**	(→ Units 21–23)
I**’ll be leaving** tomorrow.	*future continuous*	(→ Unit 24)
I**’ll have left** by this time tomorrow.	*future perfect*	(→ Unit 24)
I hope to see you before I **leave** tomorrow.	*present simple*	(→ Unit 25)

3.2 *Future actions*

We use the present continuous (**I’m doing**) for arrangements:

- I**’m leaving** tomorrow. I’ve got my plane ticket. (already planned and arranged)
- ‘When **are** they **getting** married?’ ‘On 24 July.’

We use the present simple (**I leave** / it **leaves** etc.) for timetables, programmes etc. :

- My train **leaves** at 11.30. (according to the timetable)
- What time **does** the film **begin**?

We use (**be**) **going to** . . . to say what somebody has already decided to do:

- I’ve decided not to stay here any longer. I**’m going to leave** tomorrow. (*or* I**’m leaving** tomorrow.)
- ‘Your shoes are dirty.’ ‘Yes, I know. I**’m going to clean** them.’

We use **will** (**’ll**) when we decide or agree to do something at the time of speaking:

- A: I don’t want you to stay here any longer.
  B: OK. I**’ll leave** tomorrow. (B decides this at the time of speaking)
- That bag looks heavy. I**’ll help** you with it.
- I **won’t tell** anybody what happened. I promise. (**won’t** = **will not**)

3.3 *Future happenings and situations*

Most often we use **will** to talk about future happenings (‘something **will happen**’) or situations (‘something **will be**’):

- I don’t think John is happy at work. I think he**’ll leave** soon.
- This time next year I**’ll be** in Japan. Where **will** you **be**?

We use (**be**) **going to** when the situation *now* shows what **is going to happen** *in the future*:

- Look at those black clouds. It**’s going to rain**. (you can see the clouds *now*)

3.4 *Future continuous and future perfect*

Will be (do)**ing** = will be in the middle of (doing something):

- This time next week I’ll be on holiday. I**’ll be lying** on a beach or **swimming** in the sea.

We also use **will be -ing** for future actions (see Unit 24C):

- What time **will** you **be leaving** tomorrow?

We use **will have** (**done**) to say that something will already be complete before a time in the future:

- I won’t be here this time tomorrow. I**’ll have** already **left**.

3.5 We use the *present* (*not* will) after **when**/**if**/**while**/**before** etc. (see Unit 25):

- I hope to see you **before I leave** tomorrow. (*not* before I will leave)
- **When** you **are** in London again, come and see us. (*not* When you will be)
- **If** we **don’t hurry**, we’ll be late.

Appendix 4
Modal verbs (**can**/**could**/**will**/**would** etc.)

This appendix is a summary of modal verbs. For more information, see Units 21–41.

4.1 Compare **can**/**could** etc. for actions:

can	☐	I **can go** out tonight. (= there is nothing to stop me)
	☐	I **can't go** out tonight.
could	☐	I **could go** out tonight, but I'm not very keen.
	☐	I **couldn't go** out last night. (= I wasn't able)
can *or* **may**	☐ ☐	$\left.\begin{array}{l}\textbf{Can}\\ \textbf{May}\end{array}\right\}$ I **go** out tonight? (= do you allow me?)
will/won't	☐	I think I**'ll go** out tonight.
	☐	I promise I **won't go** out.
would	☐	I **would go** out tonight, but I have too much to do.
	☐	I promised I **wouldn't go** out.
shall	☐	**Shall I go** out tonight? (= do you think it is a good idea?)
should *or* **ought to**	☐	I $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\textbf{should}\\ \textbf{ought to}\end{array}\right\}$ **go** out tonight. (= it would be a good thing to do)
must	☐	I **must go** out tonight. (= it is necessary)
	☐	I **mustn't go** out tonight. (= it is necessary that I do *not* go out)
needn't	☐	I **needn't go** out tonight. (= it is not necessary)

Compare **could have** . . . / **would have** . . . etc. :

could	☐	I **could have gone** out last night, but I decided to stay at home.
would	☐	I **would have gone** out last night, but I had too much to do.
should *or* **ought to**	☐	I $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\textbf{should}\\ \textbf{ought to}\end{array}\right\}$ **have gone** out last night. I'm sorry I didn't.
needn't	☐	I **needn't have gone** out last night. (= I went out, but it was not necessary)

4.2 We use **will**/**would**/**may** etc. to say whether something is possible, impossible, probable, certain etc. Compare:

will	☐	'What time **will** she **be** here?' 'She**'ll be** here soon.'
would	☐	She **would be** here now, but she's been delayed.
should *or* **ought to**	☐	She $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\textbf{should}\\ \textbf{ought to}\end{array}\right\}$ **be** here soon. (= I expect she will be here soon)
may *or* **might** *or* **could**	☐	She $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\textbf{may}\\ \textbf{might}\\ \textbf{could}\end{array}\right\}$ **be** here now. I'm not sure. (= it's possible that she is here)
must	☐	She **must be** here. I saw her come in.
can't	☐	She **can't** possibly **be** here. I know for certain that she's away on holiday.

Compare **would have** . . . / **should have** . . . etc. :

will	☐	She **will have arrived** by now. (= before now)
would	☐	She **would have arrived** earlier, but she was delayed.
should *or* **ought to**	☐	I wonder where she is. She $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\textbf{should}\\ \textbf{ought to}\end{array}\right\}$ **have arrived** by now.
may *or* **might** *or* **could**	☐	She $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\textbf{may}\\ \textbf{might}\\ \textbf{could}\end{array}\right\}$ **have arrived**. I'm not sure. (= it's possible that she has arrived)
must	☐	She **must have arrived** by now. (= I'm sure – there is no other possibility)
can't	☐	She **can't** possibly **have arrived** yet. It's much too early. (= it's impossible)

Appendix 5
Short forms (**I'm** / **you've** / **didn't** etc.)

5.1 In spoken English we usually say **I'm** / **you've** / **didn't** etc. *(short forms* or *contractions)* rather than **I am** / **you have** / **did not** etc. We also use these short forms in informal writing (for example, a letter or message to a friend).

When we write short forms, we use an *apostrophe* (') for the missing letter(s):

I'm = I am you've = you have didn't = did not

5.2 List of short forms:

'm = am	I**'m**						
's = is *or* has		he**'s**	she**'s**	it**'s**			
're = are					you**'re**	we**'re**	they**'re**
've = have	I**'ve**				you**'ve**	we**'ve**	they**'ve**
'll = will	I**'ll**	he**'ll**	she**'ll**		you**'ll**	we**'ll**	they**'ll**
'd = would *or* had	I**'d**	he**'d**	she**'d**		you**'d**	we**'d**	they**'d**

's can be **is** or **has**:

- She**'s** ill. (= She **is** ill.)
- She**'s** gone away. (= She **has** gone)

but **let's** = let **us**:

- Let**'s** go now. (= Let **us** go)

'd can be **would** or **had**:

- I**'d** see a doctor if I were you. (= I **would** see)
- I**'d** never seen her before. (= I **had** never seen)

We use some of these short forms (especially **'s**) after question words (**who**/**what** etc.) and after **that**/**there**/**here**:

who**'s** what**'s** where**'s** how**'s** that**'s** there**'s** here**'s** who**'ll** there**'ll** who**'d**

- **Who's** that woman over there? (= who **is**)
- **What's** happened? (= what **has**)
- Do you think **there'll** be many people at the party? (= there **will**)

We also use short forms (especially **'s**) after a noun:

- **Katherine's** going out tonight. (= Katherine **is**)
- **My best friend's** just got married. (= My best friend **has**)

You cannot use **'m** / **'s** / **'re** / **'ve** / **'ll** / **'d** at the end of a sentence (because the verb is stressed in this position):

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I **am**.' (*not* Yes, I'm.)
- Do you know where she **is**? (*not* Do you know where she's?)

5.3 Negative short forms

isn't	(= is not)	**don't**	(= do not)	**haven't**	(= have not)
aren't	(= are not)	**doesn't**	(= does not)	**hasn't**	(= has not)
wasn't	(= was not)	**didn't**	(= did not)	**hadn't**	(= had not)
weren't	(= were not)				
can't	(= cannot)	**couldn't**	(= could not)	**mustn't**	(= must not)
won't	(= will not)	**wouldn't**	(= would not)	**needn't**	(= need not)
shan't	(= shall not)	**shouldn't**	(= should not)	**daren't**	(= dare not)

Negative short forms for **is** and **are** can be:

he **isn't** / she **isn't** / it **isn't** *or* he**'s not** / she**'s not** / it**'s not**
you **aren't** / we **aren't** / they **aren't** *or* you**'re not** / we**'re not** / they**'re not**

Appendix 6
Spelling

6.1 Nouns, verbs and adjectives can have the following endings:

noun + -**s**/-**es** *(plural)*	book**s**	idea**s**	match**es**
verb + -**s**/-**es** (after **he**/**she**/**it**)	work**s**	enjoy**s**	wash**es**
verb + -**ing**	work**ing**	enjoy**ing**	wash**ing**
verb + -**ed**	work**ed**	enjoy**ed**	wash**ed**
adjective + -**er** *(comparative)*	cheap**er**	quick**er**	bright**er**
adjective + -**est** *(superlative)*	cheap**est**	quick**est**	bright**est**
adjective + -**ly** *(adverb)*	cheap**ly**	quick**ly**	bright**ly**

When we use these endings, there are sometimes changes in spelling. These changes are listed below.

6.2 Nouns and verbs + -**s**/-**es**

The ending is -**es** when the word ends in -**s**/-**ss**/-**sh**/-**ch**/-**x**:

bu**s**/bus**es** mi**ss**/miss**es** wa**sh**/wash**es**
mat**ch**/match**es** sear**ch**/search**es** bo**x**/box**es**

Note also:

potato/potato**es** tomato/tomato**es**
do/do**es** go/go**es**

6.3 Words ending in -**y** (bab**y**, carr**y**, eas**y** etc.)

If a word ends in a *consonant** + **y** (-**by**/-**ry**/-**sy**/-**vy** etc.)

y changes to **ie** before the ending -**s**:

bab**y**/bab**ies** stor**y**/stor**ies** countr**y**/countr**ies** secretar**y**/secretar**ies**
hurr**y**/hurr**ies** stud**y**/stud**ies** appl**y**/appl**ies** tr**y**/tr**ies**

y changes to **i** before the ending -**ed**:

hurr**y**/hurr**ied** stud**y**/stud**ied** appl**y**/appl**ied** tr**y**/tr**ied**

y changes to **i** before the endings -**er** and -**est**:

eas**y**/eas**ier**/eas**iest** heav**y**/heav**ier**/heav**iest** luck**y**/luck**ier**/luck**iest**

y changes to **i** before the ending -**ly**:

eas**y**/eas**ily** heav**y**/heav**ily** temporar**y**/temporar**ily**

y does *not* change before -**ing**:

hurry**ing** study**ing** apply**ing** try**ing**

y does *not* change if the word ends in a *vowel** + **y** (-**ay**/-**ey**/-**oy**/-**uy**):

pl**ay**/pl**ays**/pl**ayed** monk**ey**/monk**eys** enj**oy**/enj**oys**/enj**oyed** b**uy**/b**uys**

An exception is: d**ay**/d**aily**
Note also: p**ay**/p**aid** l**ay**/l**aid** s**ay**/s**aid**

6.4 Verbs ending in -**ie** (d**ie**, l**ie**, t**ie**)

If a verb ends in -**ie**, **ie** changes to **y** before the ending -**ing**:

d**ie**/d**ying** l**ie**/l**ying** t**ie**/t**ying**

---

* **a e i o u** are *vowel* letters.
The other letters (**b c d f g** etc.) are *consonant* letters.

6.5 Words ending in -**e** (hop**e**, danc**e**, wid**e** etc.)

Verbs
If a verb ends in -**e**, we leave out **e** before the ending -**ing**:
hop**e**/hop**ing**   smil**e**/smil**ing**   danc**e**/danc**ing**   confus**e**/confus**ing**

Exceptions are **be**/**being** *and* verbs ending in -**ee**:
s**ee**/see**ing**   agr**ee**/agree**ing**

If a verb ends in -**e**, we add -**d** for the past (of regular verbs):
hop**e**/hop**ed**   smil**e**/smil**ed**   danc**e**/danc**ed**   confus**e**/confus**ed**

Adjectives and adverbs
If an adjective ends in -**e**, we add -**r** and -**st** for the comparative and superlative:
wid**e**/wid**er**/wid**est**   lat**e**/lat**er**/lat**est**   larg**e**/larg**er**/larg**est**

If an adjective ends in -**e**, we *keep* **e** before -**ly** in the adverb:
polit**e**/polit**ely**   extrem**e**/extrem**ely**   absolut**e**/absolut**ely**

If an adjective ends in -**le** (simp**le**, terri**ble** etc.), the adverb ending is -**ply**, -**bly** etc. :
sim**ple**/sim**ply**   terri**ble**/terri**bly**   reasona**ble**/reasona**bly**

6.6 Doubling consonants (**stop**/**stopping**/**stopped**, **wet**/**wetter**/**wettest** etc.)

Sometimes a word ends in *vowel* + *consonant*. For example:
st**op**   pl**an**   r**ub**   b**ig**   w**et**   th**in**   pref**er**   regr**et**

Before the endings -**ing**/-**ed**/-**er**/-**est**, we double the consonant at the end. So **p** → **pp**, **n** → **nn** etc. For example:

sto**p**	p → **pp**	sto**pp**ing	sto**pp**ed
pla**n**	n → **nn**	pla**nn**ing	pla**nn**ed
ru**b**	b → **bb**	ru**bb**ing	ru**bb**ed
bi**g**	g → **gg**	bi**gg**er	bi**gg**est
we**t**	t → **tt**	we**tt**er	we**tt**est
thi**n**	n → **nn**	thi**nn**er	thi**nn**est

If the word has more than one syllable (**prefer**, **begin** etc.), we double the consonant at the end *only if the final syllable is stressed*:
preFER / prefe**rr**ing / prefe**rr**ed   perMIT / permi**tt**ing / permi**tt**ed
reGRET / regre**tt**ing / regre**tt**ed   beGIN / begi**nn**ing

If the final syllable is not stressed, we do *not* double the final consonant:
VISit / visi**t**ing / visi**t**ed   deVELop / develo**p**ing / develo**p**ed
HAPpen / happe**n**ing / happe**n**ed   reMEMber / remembe**r**ing / remembe**r**ed

In British English, verbs ending in -**l** have -**ll**- before -**ing** and -**ed** whether the final syllable is stressed or not:
trave**l** / trave**ll**ing / trave**ll**ed   cance**l** / cance**ll**ing / cance**ll**ed
For American spelling, see Appendix 7.

Note that
we do *not* double the final consonant if the word ends in *two* consonants (-**rt**, -**lp**, -**ng** etc.):
sta**rt** / star**t**ing / star**t**ed   he**lp** / hel**p**ing / hel**p**ed   lo**ng** / lon**g**er / lon**g**est

we do *not* double the final consonant if there are *two* vowel letters before it (-**oil**, -**eed** etc.):
b**oil** / boi**l**ing / boi**l**ed   n**eed** / nee**d**ing / nee**d**ed   expl**ain** / explai**n**ing / explai**n**ed
ch**eap** / chea**p**er / chea**p**est   l**oud** / lou**d**er / lou**d**est   qu**iet** / quie**t**er / quie**t**est

we do *not* double **y** or **w** at the end of words. (At the end of words **y** and **w** are not consonants.)
sta**y** / sta**y**ing / sta**y**ed   gro**w** / gro**w**ing   ne**w** / ne**w**er / ne**w**est

Appendix 7
American English

There are a few grammatical differences between British English and American English:

Unit	BRITISH	AMERICAN
7A–B and 13A	The *present perfect* is often used for new or recent happenings: **I've lost** my key. **Have** you **seen** it? Sally isn't here. She**'s gone** out. The *present perfect* is used with **just** and **already**: I'm not hungry. I**'ve just had** lunch. A: What time is Mark leaving? B: He**'s already left**.	The *past simple* is more common for new or recent happenings: I **lost** my key. **Did** you **see** it? Sally isn't here. **She went out**. The *past simple* is more common with **just** and **already**: I'm not hungry. I **just had** lunch. A: What time is Mark leaving? B: He **already left**.
17C	**have** a bath, **have** a shower **have** a break, **have** a holiday	**take** a bath, **take** a shower **take** a break, **take** a vacation
21D and 22D	**Will** or **shall** can be used with **I**/**we**: I **will**/**shall** be late this evening. **Shall I** . . . **?** and **shall we** . . . **?** are used to ask for advice etc. : Which way **shall we** go?	**Shall** is unusual: I **will** be late this evening. **Should I** . . . **?** and **should we** . . . **?** are used to ask for advice etc. : Which way **should we** go?
28	British speakers use **can't** to say they believe something is not probable: Sarah hasn't contacted me. She **can't have got** my message.	American speakers use **must not** in this situation: Sarah hasn't contacted me. She **must not have gotten** my message.
32	You can use **needn't** or **don't need to**: We **needn't** hurry. *or* We **don't need to** hurry.	**Needn't** is unusual. The usual form is **don't need to**: We **don't need to** hurry.
34A–B	**insist**, **demand** etc. + **should** I insisted that he **should apologise**. We demanded that something **should be** done about the problem.	**insist**, **demand** etc. + *subjunctive* (see Unit 34B) I insisted that he **apologize**.* We demanded that something **be done** about the problem.
51B	**Have you?** / **Isn't she?** etc. A: Lisa isn't very well today. B: **Isn't she?** What's wrong with her?	**You have?** / **She isn't?** etc. A: Lisa isn't very well today. B: **She isn't?** What's wrong with her?
59D	I**'d rather** you **did** something Are you going to tell Anna, or **would** you **rather** I **told** her?	I**'d rather** you **do** something Are you going to tell Anna, or **would** you **rather** I **tell** her?
70B	**Accommodation** is usually uncountable: There **is** plenty of excellent **accommodation** in the city.	**Accommodation** can be countable: There **are** plenty of excellent **accommodations** in the city.
74B	to/in **hospital** (without **the**) Joe had an accident and was taken to **hospital**.	to/in **the hospital** Joe had an accident and was taken to **the hospital**.

* Many verbs ending in **-ise** in British English (apolog**ise**/organ**ise**/special**ise** etc.) are spelt with **-ize** (apolog**ize**/organ**ize**/special**ize** etc.) in American English.

Unit	BRITISH	AMERICAN
79C	Nouns like **government**/**team**/**family** etc. can have a singular or plural verb: ☐ The team **is**/**are** playing well.	These nouns normally take a singular verb in American English: ☐ The team **is** playing well.
121B	**at the weekend** / **at weekends** ☐ Will you be here **at the weekend**?	**on the weekend** / **on weekends** ☐ Will you be here **on the weekend**?
124D	**at** the front / **at** the back (of a group etc.) ☐ *(in a theatre)* Let's sit **at the front**.	**in** the front / **in** the back (of a group etc.) ☐ *(in a theater)* Let's sit **in the front**.
131C	**different from** or **different to** ☐ The film was **different from**/**to** what I'd expected.	**different from** or **different than** ☐ The movie was **different from**/**than** what I'd expected.
137A	**round** or **around** ☐ He turned **round**. *or* He turned **around**.	**around** (*not usually* round) ☐ He turned **around**.
137C	**fill in** or **fill out** (a form etc.) ☐ Please **fill in** this form. *or* Please **fill out** this form.	**fill out** (**a form**) ☐ Please **fill out** this form.
141B	**get on** (with somebody) ☐ Richard **gets on** well with his neighbours.	**get along** (with somebody) ☐ Richard **gets along** well with his neighbors.
142B	**knock down** (a building) ☐ Some old houses were **knocked down** to make way for a new shopping centre.	**tear down** a building ☐ Some old houses were **torn down** to make way for a new shopping mall.
144D	**do up** a house etc. ☐ That old house looks great now that it has been **done up**.	**fix up** a house etc. ☐ That old house looks great now that it has been **fixed up**.

Appendix	BRITISH	AMERICAN
1.3	**Burn**, **spell** etc. can be regular or irregular (**burned** *or* **burnt**, **spelled** *or* **spelt** etc.). The past participle of **get** is **got**: ☐ Your English has **got** much better. (= has become much better) **Have got** is also an alternative to **have**: ☐ **I've got** a car. (= **I have** a car)	**Burn**, **spell** etc. are normally regular (**burned**, **spelled** etc.). The past participle of **get** is **gotten**: ☐ Your English has **gotten** much better. **Have got** = have (as in British English): ☐ I**'ve got** a car.
6.6	British spelling: trave**l** → travel**l**ing / travel**l**ed cance**l** → cancel**l**ing / cancel**l**ed	American spelling: trave**l** → travel**i**ng / travel**e**d cance**l** → cancel**i**ng / cancel**e**d

Additional exercises

These exercises are divided into the following sections:

Present and past (Units 1–6)	Exercise 1
Present and past (Units 1–14)	Exercises 2–4
Present and past (Units 1–17)	Exercises 5–8
Past continuous and **used to** (Units 6, 18)	Exercise 9
The future (Units 19–25)	Exercises 10–13
Past, present and future (Units 1–25)	Exercises 14–15
Modal verbs (**can**/**must**/**would** etc.) (Units 26–36)	Exercises 16–18
if (conditional) (Units 25, 38–40)	Exercises 19–21
Passive (Units 42–45)	Exercises 22–24
Reported speech (Units 47–48, 50)	Exercise 25
-**ing** and **to** . . . (Units 53–66)	Exercises 26–28
a/**an** and **the** (Units 69–78)	Exercise 29
Pronouns and determiners (Units 82–91)	Exercise 30
Adjectives and adverbs (Units 98–108)	Exercise 31
Conjunctions (Units 25, 38, 112–118)	Exercise 32
Prepositions (time) (Units 12, 119–122)	Exercise 33
Prepositions (position etc.) (Units 123–128)	Exercise 34
Noun/adjective + preposition (Units 129–131)	Exercise 35
Verb + preposition (Units 132–136)	Exercise 36
Phrasal verbs (Units 137–145)	Exercises 37–41

Present and past

Units 1–6, Appendix 2

1 **Put the verb into the correct form: present simple (I do), present continuous (I am doing), past simple (I did) or past continuous (I was doing).**

1 We can go out now. It isn't raining (it / not / rain) any more.
2 Katherine was waiting (wait) for me when I arrived (I / arrive).
3 .... (I / get) hungry. Let's go and have something to eat.
4 What .... (you / do) in your spare time? Do you have any hobbies?
5 The weather was horrible when .... (we / arrive). It was cold and .... (it / rain) hard.
6 Louise usually .... (phone) me on Fridays, but .... (she / not / phone) last Friday.
7 A: When I last saw you, ... (you / think) of moving to a new flat.
B: That's right, but in the end .... (I / decide) to stay where I was.
8 Why .... (you / look) at me like that? What's the matter?
9 It's usually dry here at this time of the year. .... (it / not / rain) much.
10 I waved to Ben, but he didn't see me. .... (he / not / look) in my direction.
11 Lisa was busy when .... (we / go) to see her yesterday. She had an exam today and .... (she / prepare) for it. .... (we / not / want) to disturb her, so .... (we / not / stay) very long.
12 When I first .... (tell) Tom what happened, ... (he / not / believe) me. .... (he / think) that .... (I / joke).

Present and past

Units 1–14, Appendix 2

2 Which is correct?

1 Everything is going well. We ~~didn't have~~ / haven't had any problems so far.
(haven't had *is correct*)
2 Lisa didn't go / hasn't gone to work yesterday. She wasn't feeling well.
3 Look! That man over there wears / is wearing the same sweater as you.
4 I went / have been to New Zealand last year.
5 I didn't hear / haven't heard from Jess recently. I hope she's OK.
6 I wonder why James is / is being so nice to me today. He isn't usually like that.
7 Jane had a book open in front of her, but she didn't read / wasn't reading it.
8 I wasn't very busy. I didn't have / wasn't having much to do.
9 It begins / It's beginning to get dark. Shall I turn on the light?
10 After leaving school, Mark worked / has worked in a hotel for a while.
11 When Sue heard the news, she wasn't / hasn't been very pleased.
12 This is a nice hotel, isn't it? Is this the first time you stay / you've stayed here?
13 I need a new job. I'm doing / I've been doing the same job for too long.
14 'Anna has gone out.' 'Oh, has she? What time did she go / has she gone?'
15 'You look tired.' 'Yes, I've played / I've been playing basketball.'
16 Where are you coming / do you come from? Are you American?
17 I'd like to see Tina again. It's a long time since I saw her / that I didn't see her.
18 Robert and Maria have been married since 20 years / for 20 years.

3 Complete each question using a suitable verb.

1 A: I'm looking for Paul. Have you seen him?
B: Yes, he was here a moment ago.

2 A: Why did you go to bed so early last night?
B: I was feeling very tired.

3 A: Where …………………… ?
B: Just to the shop at the end of the street. I'll only be ten minutes.

4 A: …………………… TV every day?
B: No, only if there's something special on.

5 A: Your house is lovely. How long …………………… here?
B: Nearly ten years.

6 A: How was your parents' holiday? …………………… a nice time?
B: Yes, they really enjoyed it.

7 A: …………………… Sarah recently?
B: Yes, we had lunch together a few days ago.

8 A: Can you describe the woman you saw? What …………………… ?
B: A red sweater and black jeans.

9 A: I'm sorry to keep you waiting. …………………… long?
B: No, only about ten minutes.

10 A: How long …………………… to get from here to the airport?
B: Usually about 45 minutes. It depends on the traffic.

11 A: …………………… this song before?
B: No, this is the first time. I like it.

12 A: …………………… to the United States?
B: No, never, but I went to Canada a few years ago.

4 **Use your own ideas to complete B's sentences.**

1 A: What's Chicago like? Is it a good place to visit?
B: I've no idea. I've never been …… there.

2 A: How well do you know Ben?
B: Very well. We …… since we were children.

3 A: Did you enjoy your holiday?
B: Yes, it was really good. It's the best holiday …… .

4 A: Is David still here?
B: No, I'm afraid he isn't. …… about ten minutes ago.

5 A: I like your suit. I haven't seen it before.
B: It's new. It's the first time …… .

6 A: How did you cut your knee?
B: I slipped and fell when …… tennis.

7 A: Do you ever go swimming?
B: Not these days. I haven't …… a long time.

8 A: How often do you go to the cinema?
B: Very rarely. It's nearly a year …… to the cinema.

9 A: I bought some new shoes. Do you like them?
B: Yes, they're very nice. Where …… them?

Present and past

Units 1–17, 110, Appendix 2

5 **Put the verb into the correct form: past simple (I did), past continuous (I was doing), past perfect (I had done) or past perfect continuous (I had been doing).**

1

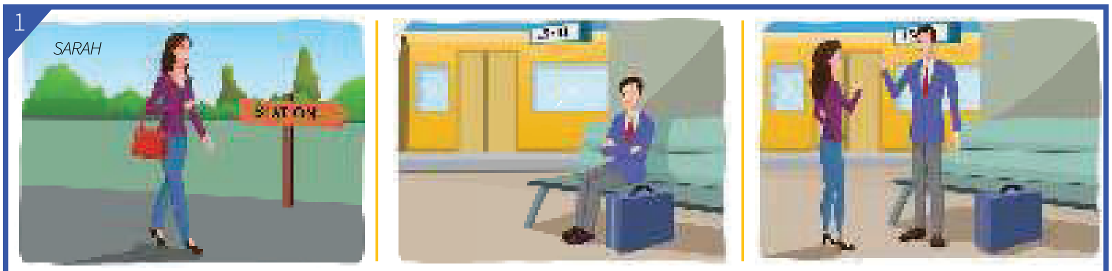

Yesterday afternoon Sarah went (go) to the station to meet Paul. When she …… (get) there, Paul …… (already / wait) for her. His train …… (arrive) early.

2

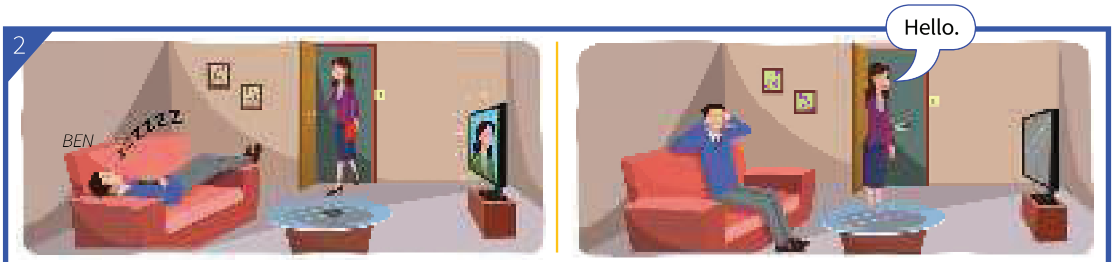

When I got home, Ben …… (lie) on the sofa. The TV was on, but he …… (not / watch) it. He …… (fall) asleep and …… (snore) loudly. I …… (turn) the TV off and just then he …… (wake) up.

3

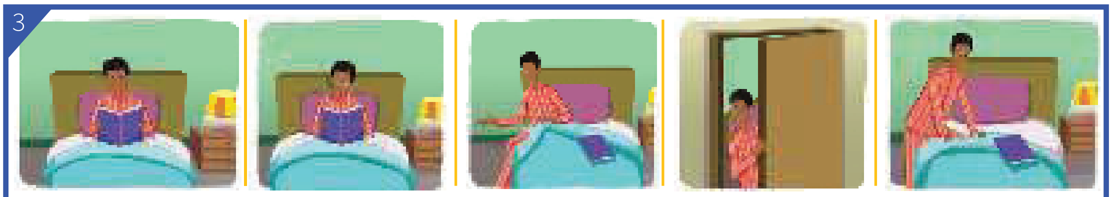

Last night I .... (just / go) to bed and .... (read) a book when suddenly I .... (hear) a noise. I .... (get) up to see what it was, but I .... (not / see) anything, so I .... (go) back to bed.

4

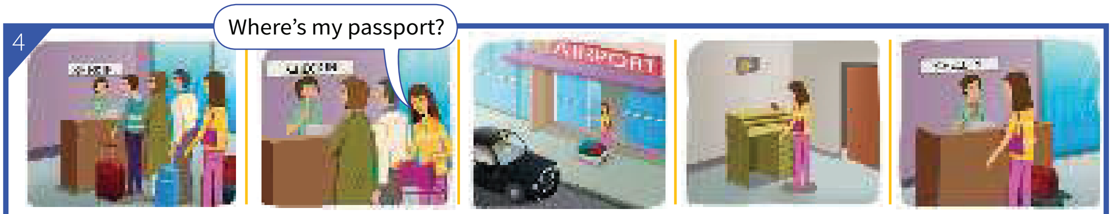

Lisa had to go to New York last week, but she almost .... (miss) the plane. She .... (stand) in the queue at the check-in desk when she suddenly .... (realise) that she .... (leave) her passport at home. Fortunately she lives near the airport, so she .... (have) time to take a taxi home to get it. She .... (get) back to the airport just in time for her flight.

5

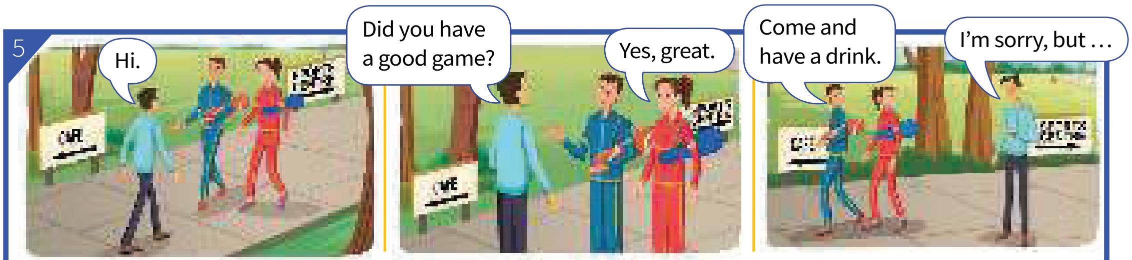
Hi.
Did you have a good game?
Yes, great.
Come and have a drink.
I'm sorry, but …

I .... (meet) Peter and Lucy yesterday as I .... (walk) through the park. They .... (be) to the Sports Centre where they .... (play) tennis. They .... (go) to a cafe and .... (invite) me to join them, but I .... (arrange) to meet another friend and .... (not / have) time.

6 **Make sentences from the words in brackets. Put the verb into the correct form: present perfect (I have done), present perfect continuous (I have been doing), past perfect (I had done) or past perfect continuous (I had been doing).**

1 Amanda is sitting on the ground. She's out of breath.
(she / run) She has been running. ....

2 Where's my bag? I left it under this chair.
(somebody / take / it) ....

3 We were all surprised when Jess and Nick got married last year.
(they / only / know / each other / a few weeks)
....

4 It's still raining. I wish it would stop.
(it / rain / all day) ....

5 Suddenly I woke up. I was confused and didn't know where I was.
(I / dream) ....

6 It was lunchtime, but I wasn't hungry. I didn't want to eat anything.
(I / have / a big breakfast) ……………………………………………
7 Every year Robert and Tina spend a few days at the same hotel by the sea.
(they / go / there for years) ……………………………………………
8 I've got a headache.
(I / have / it / since I got up) ……………………………………………
9 Next month Gary is going to run in a marathon.
(he / train / very hard for it) ……………………………………………

7 Put the verb into the correct form.

Sarah and Joe are old friends. They meet by chance at a train station.

SARAH: Hello, Joe. (1) …………………………… (I / not / see) you for ages. How are you?

JOE: I'm fine. How about you? (2) …………………………… (you / look) good.

SARAH: Thanks. You too. So, (3) …………………………… (you / go) somewhere or (4) …………………………… (you / meet) somebody?

JOE: (5) …………………………… (I / go) to London for a business meeting.

SARAH: Oh. (6) …………………………… (you / often / go) away on business?

JOE: Quite often, yes. And you? Where (7) …………………………… (you / go)?

SARAH: Nowhere. (8) …………………………… (I / meet) a friend. Unfortunately her train (9) …………………………… (be) delayed – (10) …………………………… (I / wait) here for nearly an hour.

JOE: How are your children?

SARAH: They're all fine, thanks. The youngest (11) …………………………… (just / start) school.

JOE: How (12) …………………………… (she / get) on? (13) …………………………… (she / like) it?

SARAH: Yes, (14) …………………………… (she / think) it's great.

JOE: (15) …………………………… (you / work) at the moment? The last time I (16) …………………………… (speak) to you, (17) …………………………… (you / work) for an insurance company.

SARAH: That's right. Unfortunately the company (18) …………………………… (go) out of business a couple of months after (19) …………………………… (I / start) work there, so (20) …………………………… (I / lose) my job.

JOE: And (21) …………………………… (you / not / have) a job since then?

SARAH: Not a permanent job. (22) …………………………… (I / have) a few temporary jobs. By the way, (23) …………………………… (you / see) Matt recently?

JOE: Matt? He's in Canada.

SARAH: Really? How long (24) …………………………… (he / be) in Canada?

JOE: About a year now. (25) …………………………… (I / see) him a few days before (26) …………………………… (he / go). (27) …………………………… (he / be) unemployed for months, so (28) …………………………… (he / decide) to try his luck somewhere else. (29) …………………………… (he / really / look forward) to going.

SARAH: So, what (30) …………………………… (he / do) there?

JOE: I have no idea. (31) …………………………… (I / not / hear) from him since (32) …………………………… (he / leave). Anyway, I have to go and catch my train. It was really good to see you again.

SARAH: You too. Bye! Have a good trip!

JOE: Thanks. Bye.

8 **Put the verb into the most suitable form.**

1 Who .... (invent) the bicycle?
2 'Do you still have a headache?' 'No, ... (it / go). I'm OK now.'
3 I was the last to leave the office last night. Everybody else .... (go) home when I .... (leave).
4 What .... (you / do) last weekend? .... (you / go) anywhere?
5 I like your car. How long .... (you / have) it?
6 It's a shame the trip was cancelled. I .... (look) forward to it.
7 Jane is an experienced teacher and loves her job. .... (she / teach) for 15 years.
8 Emily .... (buy) a new dress last week, but .... (she / not / wear) it yet.
9 A few days ago .... (I / meet) a man at a party whose face .... (be) very familiar. At first I couldn't think where .... (I / see) him before. Then suddenly .... (I / remember) who .... (he / be).
10 .... (you / hear) of Agatha Christie? .... (she / be) a writer who .... (die) in 1976. .... (she / write) more than 70 detective novels, but .... (I / not / read) any of them.
11 A: What .... (this word / mean)?
B: I've no idea. .... (I / never / see) it before. Look it up in the dictionary.
12 A: .... (you / get) to the theatre in time for the play last night?
B: No, we were late. By the time we got there, ... (it / already / start).
13 I went to Sarah's room and .... (knock) on the door, but there .... (be) no answer. Either .... (she / go) out or .... (she / not / want) to see anyone.
14 Dan asked me how to use the photocopier. .... (he / never / use) it before, so .... (he / not / know) what to do.
15 Lisa .... (go) for a swim after work yesterday. .... (she / need) some exercise because .... (she / sit) in an office all day in front of a computer.

Past continuous and *used to*

Units 6, 18

9 **Complete the sentences using the past continuous (was/were -ing) or used to ... . Use the verb in brackets.**

1 I haven't been to the cinema for ages now. We ....used to go.... a lot. (go)
2 Ann didn't see me wave to her. She ....was looking.... in the other direction. (look)
3 I .... a lot, but I don't use my car very much these days. (drive)
4 I asked the taxi driver to slow down. She .... too fast. (drive)
5 Rosemary and Jonathan met for the first time when they .... in the same bank. (work)
6 When I was a child, I .... a lot of bad dreams. (have)
7 I wonder what Joe is doing these days. He .... in Spain when I last heard from him. (live)
8 'Where were you yesterday afternoon?' 'I .... volleyball.' (play)
9 'Do you do any sports?' 'Not these days, but I .... volleyball.' (play)
10 George looked very smart at the party. He .... a very nice suit. (wear)

The future

Units 19–25, Appendix 3

10 **What do you say to Joe in these situations? Use the words given in brackets. Use the present continuous (I am doing), going to or will (I'll).**

1 You have made all your holiday arrangements. Your destination is Jamaica.
JOE: Have you decided where to go for your holiday yet?
YOU: I'm going to Jamaica. (I / go)

2 You have made an appointment with the dentist for Friday morning.
JOE: Shall we meet on Friday morning?
YOU: I can't on Friday. .... (I / go)

3 You and some friends are planning a holiday in Spain. You have decided to rent a car, but you haven't arranged this yet.
JOE: How do you plan to travel round Spain? By train?
YOU: No, ... (we / rent)

4 Joe reminds you that you have to call your sister. You completely forgot.
JOE: Did you call your sister?
YOU: No, I forgot. Thanks for reminding me. .... (I / call / now)

5 You have already arranged to have lunch with Sue tomorrow.
JOE: Are you free at lunchtime tomorrow?
YOU: No, ... (have lunch)

6 You are in a restaurant. You and Joe are looking at the menu. Maybe Joe has decided what to have. You ask him.
YOU: What ....? (you / have)
JOE: I don't know. I can't make up my mind.

7 Joe is reading, but it's getting dark. He's having trouble reading. You turn on the light.
JOE: It's getting dark and it's hard to read.
YOU: Yes, ... (I / turn on)

8 You and Joe are sitting in a room with the window open. It's getting cold. You decide to close the window. You stand up and walk towards it.
JOE: What are you doing?
YOU: .... (I / close)

11 **Choose the best alternative.**

1 'Are you doing anything tomorrow evening?' 'No, why?'
A Do you do **B** Are you doing **C** Will you do (**B** *is the best alternative*)

2 'I can't open this bottle.' 'Give it to me. .... it.'
A I open **B** I'll open **C** I'm going to open

3 'Is Emily here yet?' 'Not yet. I'll let you know as soon as ....'
A she arrives **B** she's arriving **C** she'll arrive

4 'Are you free tomorrow afternoon?' 'No, ...'
A I work **B** I'm working **C** I'll work

5 'What time is the film tonight?' '........ at 8.40.'
A It starts **B** It's going to start **C** It will start

6 'Are you going to the beach tomorrow?' 'Yes, if the weather .... good.'
A is going to be **B** will be **C** is

7 'What time .... tomorrow?' 'How about 8.30?'
A do we meet **B** are we meeting **C** shall we meet

8 'When ....?' 'Tomorrow.'
A does the festival finish **B** is the festival finished **C** is the festival finishing

12 **Put the verb into the most suitable form. Sometimes there is more than one possibility.**

1 *A has decided to learn a language.*

A: I've decided to try and learn a foreign language.

B: Have you? Which language (1) ....are you going to learn.... (you / learn)?

A: Spanish.

B: (2) .... (you / do) a course?

A: Yes, (3) .... (it / start) next week.

B: That's great. I'm sure (4) .... (you / enjoy) it.

A: I hope so. But I think (5) .... (it / be) difficult.

2 *A wants to know about B's holiday plans.*

A: I hear (1) .... (you / go) on holiday soon.

B: That's right. (2) .... (we / go) to Finland.

A: I hope (3) .... (you / have) a nice time.

B: Thanks. (4) .... (I / get) in touch with you when

(5) .... (I / get) back and maybe we can meet sometime.

3 *A invites B to a party.*

A: (1) .... (I / have) a party next Saturday. Can you come?

B: On Saturday? I'm not sure. Some friends of mine (2) .... (come) to

stay with me next week, but I think (3) .... (they / leave) by

Saturday. But if (4) .... (they / be) still here,

(5) .... (I / not / be) able to come to the party.

A: OK. Well, tell me as soon as (6) .... (you / know).

B: Right. (7) .... (I / call) you during the week.

4 *A and B are two secret agents arranging a meeting. They are talking on the phone.*

A: Well, what time (1) ....

(we / meet)?

B: Come to the cafe by the station at 4 o'clock.

(2) .... (I / wait) for you

when (3) .... (you / arrive).

(4) .... (I / sit) by the window

and (5) .... (I / wear) a bright green sweater.

A: OK. (6) .... (Agent 307 / come) too?

B: No, she can't be there.

A: Oh. (7) .... (I / bring) the documents?

B: Yes. (8) .... (I / explain) everything when

(9) .... (I / see) you. And don't be late.

A: OK. (10) .... (I / try) to be on time.

13 **Put the verb into the correct form. Choose from the following:**

present continuous (**I am doing**) — **will** (**'ll**) / **won't**
present simple (**I do**) — **will be doing**
going to (**I'm going to do**) — **shall**

1 I feel a bit hungry. I think .... (I / have) something to eat.
2 Why are you putting on your coat? .... (you / go) somewhere?
3 What time .... (I / phone) you tomorrow? About 10.30?
4 Look! That plane is flying towards the airport. .... (it / land).
5 We must do something soon, before .... (it / be) too late.
6 I'm sorry you've decided to leave the company. .... (I / miss) you when .... (you / go).
7 .... (I / give) you my phone number? If .... (I / give) you my number, ... (you / call) me?
8 Are you still watching that programme? What time .... (it / finish)?
9 .... (I / go) to a wedding next weekend. My cousin .... (get) married.
10 I'm not ready yet. .... (I / tell) you when .... (I / be) ready. I promise .... (I / not / be) very long.
11 .... (I / have) my hair cut tomorrow. I've just made an appointment.
12 She was very rude to me. I won't speak to her again until .... (she / apologise).
13 I wonder where .... (we / live) ten years from now.
14 What are you planning to do when .... (you / finish) your course at college?

Past, present and future

Units 1–25

14 **Use your own ideas to complete B's sentences.**

1 A: How did the accident happen?
B: I ...was going... too fast and couldn't stop in time.
2 A: Is that a new coat?
B: No, I .... it a long time.
3 A: Is that a new phone?
B: Yes, I .... it a few weeks ago.
4 A: I can't talk to you right now. You can see I'm very busy.
B: OK. I .... back in about half an hour.
5 A: This is a nice restaurant. Do you come here often?
B: No, it's the first time I .... here.
6 A: Do you do any sport?
B: No, I .... football, but I gave it up.
7 A: I'm sorry I'm late.
B: That's OK. I .... long.
8 A: When you went to the US last year, was it your first visit?
B: No, I .... there twice before.
9 A: Do you have any plans for the weekend?
B: Yes, I .... to a party on Saturday night.
10 A: Do you know what Steve's doing these days?
B: No, I .... him for ages.
11 A: Will you still be here by the time I get back?
B: No, I .... by then.

15 **Robert is travelling in North America. He sends an email to a friend in Winnipeg (Canada). Put the verb into the most suitable form.**

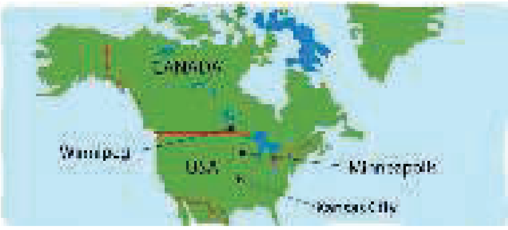

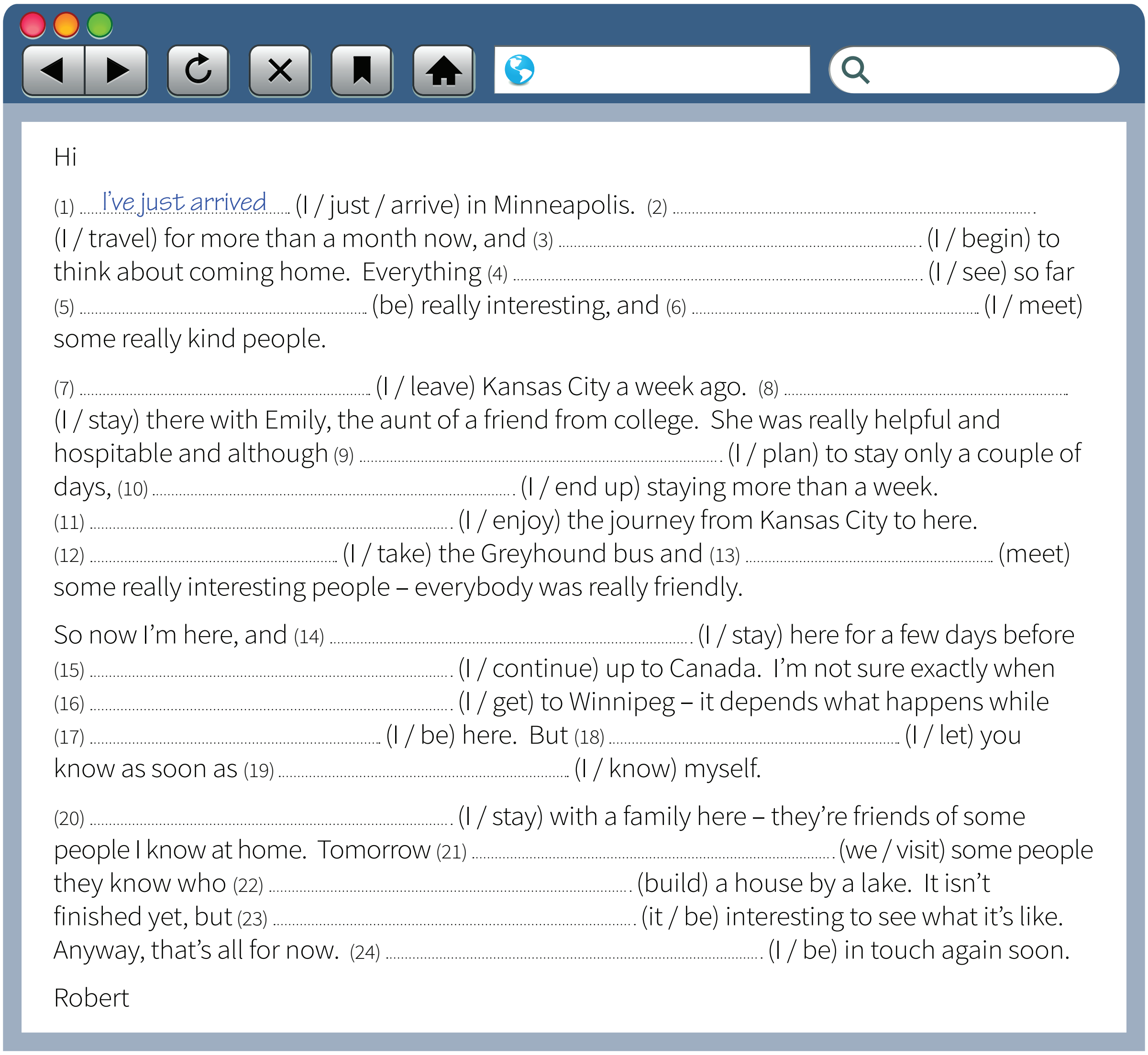

Hi

(1) ..I've just arrived.. (I / just / arrive) in Minneapolis. (2) .... (I / travel) for more than a month now, and (3) .... (I / begin) to think about coming home. Everything (4) .... (I / see) so far (5) .... (be) really interesting, and (6) .... (I / meet) some really kind people.

(7) .... (I / leave) Kansas City a week ago. (8) .... (I / stay) there with Emily, the aunt of a friend from college. She was really helpful and hospitable and although (9) .... (I / plan) to stay only a couple of days, (10) .... (I / end up) staying more than a week. (11) .... (I / enjoy) the journey from Kansas City to here. (12) .... (I / take) the Greyhound bus and (13) .... (meet) some really interesting people – everybody was really friendly.

So now I'm here, and (14) .... (I / stay) here for a few days before (15) .... (I / continue) up to Canada. I'm not sure exactly when (16) .... (I / get) to Winnipeg – it depends what happens while (17) .... (I / be) here. But (18) .... (I / let) you know as soon as (19) .... (I / know) myself.

(20) .... (I / stay) with a family here – they're friends of some people I know at home. Tomorrow (21) .... (we / visit) some people they know who (22) .... (build) a house by a lake. It isn't finished yet, but (23) .... (it / be) interesting to see what it's like. Anyway, that's all for now. (24) .... (I / be) in touch again soon.

Robert

Modal verbs (*can*/*must*/*would* etc.)

Units 26–36, Appendix 4

16 **Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes only one alternative is correct, and sometimes two of the alternatives are possible.**

1 'What time will you be home tonight?' 'I'm not sure. I ..A or B.. late.'
[✓ **A**] may be [✓ **B**] might be **C** can be (*both* A *and* B *are correct*)

2 I can't find the theatre tickets. They .... out of my pocket.
A must have fallen **B** should have fallen **C** had to fall

3 Somebody ran in front of the car as I was driving. Luckily, I .... just in time.
A could stop **B** could have stopped **C** managed to stop

4 We have plenty of time. We .... yet.
A mustn't go **B** don't have to go **C** don't need to go
5 I didn't go out yesterday. I .... with my friends, but I didn't feel like it.
A could go **B** could have gone **C** must have gone
6 I looked everywhere for Helen, but I .... her.
A couldn't find **B** couldn't have found **C** wasn't able to find
7 'What do you think of my theory?' 'You .... right, but I'm not sure.'
A could be **B** must be **C** might be
8 Our flight was delayed. We .... for two hours.
A must wait **B** must have waited **C** had to wait
9 I'm not sure whether I'll be free on Saturday. I ....
A must have to work **B** may have to work **C** might have to work
10 At first they didn't believe me when I told them what had happened, but in the end I .... them that I was telling the truth.
A was able to convince **B** managed to convince **C** could convince
11 I promised I'd call Amy this evening. I ....
A mustn't forget **B** needn't forget **C** don't have to forget
12 Why did you leave without me? You .... for me.
A must have waited **B** had to wait **C** should have waited
13 Lisa called me this morning. She suggested .... lunch together.
A we have **B** we should have **C** to have
14 That jacket looks good on you. .... it more often.
A You'd better wear **B** You should wear **C** You ought to wear
15 Do you think I should buy a car? What .... in my position?
A will you do **B** would you do **C** should you do

17 Complete the sentences using the words in brackets.

1 Don't phone them now. (might / have)
They ...might be having... lunch.
2 I ate too much and now I feel sick. (shouldn't / eat)
I .... so much.
3 I wonder why Tom didn't call me. (must / forget)
He ....
4 Why did you go home so early? (needn't / go)
You .... home so early.
5 You've signed the contract. (can't / change)
It .... now.
6 I'm not sure where the children are. (may / watch)
They .... TV.
7 I saw Laura standing outside the cinema. (must / wait)
She .... for somebody.
8 He was in prison at the time that the crime was committed. (couldn't / do)
He .... it.
9 Why are you so late? (should / be)
You .... here an hour ago.
10 Why didn't you contact me? (could / phone)
You .... me.
11 I'm surprised you weren't told that the road was dangerous. (should / warn)
You .... about it.
12 We had a great day at the beach yesterday. (ought / come)
You .... with us.

18 **Complete B's sentences using can/could/might/must/should/would + the verb in brackets. In some sentences you need to use have: must have ... / should have ... etc. In some sentences you need the negative (can't/couldn't etc.).**

1 A: I'm hungry.
B: But you've just had lunch. You ...can't be... hungry already. (be)
2 A: I haven't seen our neighbours for ages.
B: No. They ...must have gone... away. (go)
3 A: What's the weather like? Is it raining?
B: Not at the moment, but it .... later. (rain)
4 A: Where's Julia?
B: I'm not sure. She .... out. (go)
5 A: I didn't see you at Michael's party last week.
B: No, I had to work that night, so I .... (go)
6 A: I think I saw Ben in town this morning.
B: No, you .... him this morning. He's away on holiday. (see)
7 A: What time will we get to Sue's house?
B: Well, it takes about one and a half hours, so if we leave at 3 o'clock, we .... there by 4.30. (get)
8 A: When was the last time you saw Max?
B: Years ago. I .... him if I saw him now. (recognise)
9 A: Did you hear the explosion?
B: What explosion?
A: There was a loud explosion about an hour ago. You .... it. (hear)
10 A: We weren't sure which way to go. In the end we turned right.
B: You went the wrong way. You .... left. (turn)

---

if (conditional)

Units 25, 38–40

19 **Put the verb into the correct form.**

1 If ...you found... a wallet in the street, what would you do with it? (you / find)
2 I'd better hurry. My friend will be annoyed if ...I'm not... on time. (I / not / be)
3 I didn't realise that Gary was in hospital. If ...I'd known... he was in hospital, I would have gone to visit him. (I / know)
4 If the doorbell ...., don't answer it. (ring)
5 I can't decide what to do. What would you do if .... me? (you / be)
6 A: What shall we do tomorrow?
B: Well, if .... a nice day, we can go to the beach. (it / be)
7 A: Let's go to the beach.
B: No, it's not warm enough. If .... warmer, I'd go. (it / be)
8 A: Did you go to the beach yesterday?
B: No, it was too cold. If .... warmer, we might have gone. (it / be)
9 If .... enough money to go anywhere in the world, where would you go? (you / have)
10 I didn't have my phone with me, so I couldn't call you. I would have called you if .... my phone. (I / have)
11 The accident was your fault. If you'd been driving more carefully, ... (it / not / happen).
12 A: Why do you watch the news every day?
B: Well, if .... it, I wouldn't know what was happening in the world. (I / not / watch)

20 Complete the sentences.

1 Lisa is tired all the time. She shouldn't go to bed so late.
If Lisa ....didn't go.... to bed so late, she ....wouldn't be.... tired all the time.
2 It's getting late. I don't think Sarah will call me now.
I'd be surprised if Sarah .... now.
3 I'm sorry I disturbed you. I didn't know you were busy.
If .... you were busy, I .... you.
4 There are a lot of accidents on this road. There is no speed limit.
There .... so many accidents if .... a speed limit.
5 You didn't tell me about the problem, so I didn't try to help you.
If .... the problem, ... you.
6 It started to rain, but fortunately I had an umbrella.
I .... very wet if .... an umbrella.
7 Mark failed his driving test. He was very nervous and that's why he failed.
If he .... so nervous, he .... the test.

21 Use your own ideas to complete the sentences.

1 I'd go out tonight if ....
2 I'd have gone out last night if ....
3 If you hadn't reminded me, ...
4 If I had more free time, ...
5 If you give me the camera, ...
6 Who would you phone if .... ?
7 We wouldn't have been late if ....
8 If I'd been able to get a ticket, ...
9 If I'd done better at the interview, ...
10 You wouldn't be hungry now if ....
11 Cities would be nicer places if ....
12 If there was no internet, ...

Passive

Units 42–45

22 Put the verb into the most suitable passive form.

1 There's somebody behind us. I think ....we're being followed.... (we / follow).
2 A mystery is something that ....can't be explained.... (can't / explain).
3 We didn't play football yesterday. The game .... (cancel).
4 The TV .... (repair). It's working again now.
5 The village church .... (restore) at the moment. The work is almost finished.
6 The tower is the oldest part of the church. .... (it / believe) to be over 600 years old.
7 If I didn't do my job properly, ... (I / would / fire).
8 A: I left a newspaper on the desk last night and it isn't there now.
B: .... (it / might / throw) away.
9 Joe learnt to swim when he was very young. .... (he / teach) by his mother.
10 After .... (arrest), I was taken to the police station.
11 '........................ (you / ever / arrest)?' 'No, never.'
12 Two people .... (report) to .... (injure) in an accident at a factory in Birmingham early this morning.

23 **Put the verb into the correct form, active or passive.**

1 This house is quite old. It ....was built.... (build) over 100 years ago.
2 My grandfather was a builder. He ....built.... (build) this house many years ago.
3 'Is your car still for sale?' 'No, I .... (sell) it.'
4 A: Is the house at the end of the street still for sale?
B: No, it .... (sell).
5 Sometimes mistakes .... (make). It's inevitable.
6 It's not a good idea to leave your car unlocked. It .... (might / steal).
7 My bag has disappeared. It .... (must / steal).
8 I can't find my umbrella. Somebody .... (must / take) it by mistake.
9 It's a serious problem. I don't know how it .... (can / solve).
10 We didn't leave early enough. We .... (should / leave) earlier.
11 Very often when I travel by plane, my flight .... (delay).
12 A new bridge .... (build) across the river. Work started last year and the bridge .... (expect) to open next year.

24 **Read these newspaper reports and put the verbs into the most suitable form.**

1

Castle Fire

Winton Castle (1) ....was damaged.... (damage) in a fire last night. The fire, which (2) .... (discover) at about 9 o'clock, spread very quickly. Nobody (3) .... (injure), but two people had to (4) .... (rescue) from an upstairs room. A number of paintings (5) .... (believe / destroy). It (6) .... (not / know) how the fire started.

2

Shop Robbery

In Paxham yesterday a shop assistant (1) .... (force) to hand over £500 after (2) .... (threaten) by a man with a knife. The man escaped in a car which (3) .... (steal) earlier in the day. The car (4) .... (later / find) in a car park where it (5) .... (abandon) by the thief. A man (6) .... (arrest) in connection with the robbery and (7) .... (still / question) by the police.

3

Road Delays

Repair work started yesterday on the Paxham–Longworth road. The road (1) .... (resurface) and there will be long delays. Drivers (2) .... (ask) to use an alternative route if possible. The work (3) .... (expect) to last two weeks. Next Sunday the road (4) .... (close), and traffic (5) .... (divert).

4

Accident

A woman (1) .... (take) to hospital after her car collided with a lorry near Norstock yesterday. She (2) .... (allow) home later after treatment. The road (3) .... (block) for an hour after the accident, and traffic had to (4) .... (divert). A police inspector said afterwards: 'The woman was lucky. She could (5) .... (kill).'

Reported speech

Units 47–48, 50

25 **Complete the sentences using reported speech.**

1

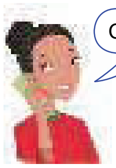

Can I speak to Paul, please?

I'll try again later.

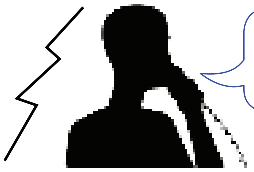

Paul has gone out. I don't know when he'll be back. Do you want to leave a message?

A woman phoned at lunchtime yesterday and asked .... if she could speak to Paul .... I told
.... and
.... I asked ....
.... , but she said .... later.
But she never did.

2

We have no record of a reservation in your name.

We're sorry, but the hotel is full.

Do you have any rooms free anyway?

I went to London recently, but my visit didn't begin well. I had reserved a hotel room, but
when I got to the hotel they told ....
.... When I asked .... ,
they said .... , but ....
There was nothing I could do. I just had to look for somewhere else to stay.

3

Why are you visiting the country?

How long do you intend to stay?

Where will you be staying during your visit?

Immigration

We're on holiday.

After getting off the plane, we had to queue for an hour to get through immigration. Finally,
it was our turn. The immigration officer asked us ....
.... , and we told ....
Then he wanted to know .... and
....
He seemed satisfied with our answers, checked our passports and wished us a pleasant stay.

4

I'll phone you from the airport when I arrive.

Don't come to the airport. I'll take the bus.

A: What time is Sue arriving this afternoon?
B: About three. She said ....
....
A: Aren't you going to meet her?
B: No, she said not .... She said
that ....

5

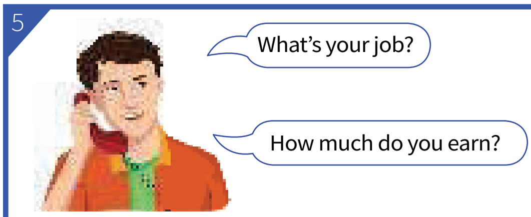
What's your job?
How much do you earn?

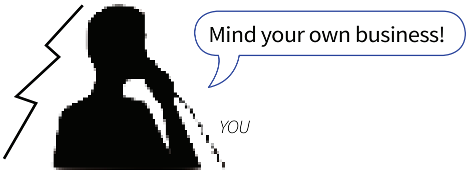
Mind your own business!
YOU

A few days ago a man phoned from a marketing company and started asking me questions. He wanted to know .... and asked .... I don't like people phoning and asking questions like that, so I told .... and ended the call.

6

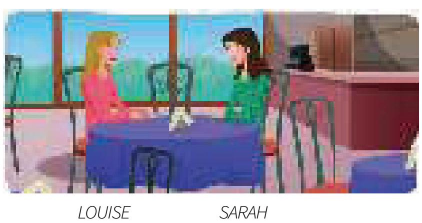
NOW
LOUISE
SARAH

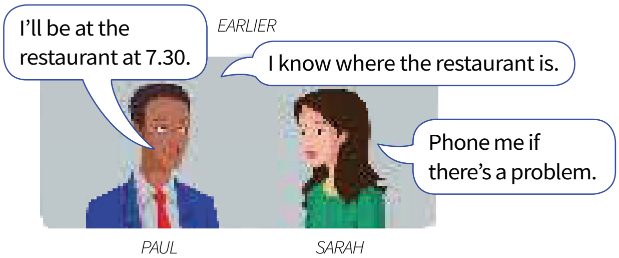
EARLIER
I'll be at the restaurant at 7.30.
I know where the restaurant is.
Phone me if there's a problem.
PAUL
SARAH

Sarah and Louise are in a restaurant waiting for Paul.

SARAH: I wonder where Paul is. He said ....
LOUISE: Maybe he got lost.
SARAH: I don't think so. He said ....
And I told ....

7

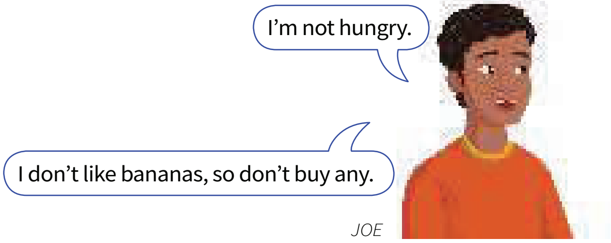
I'm not hungry.
I don't like bananas, so don't buy any.
JOE

Five minutes later

JOE: Is there anything to eat?
JANE: You just said ....
JOE: Well, I am now. I'd love a banana.
JANE: A banana? But you said ....
You told ....

-ing and to ...

Units 53–66

26 **Put the verbs into the correct form.**

1 How old were you when you learnt ....to drive.... ? (drive)
2 I don't mind ....walking.... home, but I'd rather ....get.... a taxi. (walk, get)
3 I can't make a decision. I keep .... my mind. (change)
4 He had made his decision and refused .... his mind. (change)
5 Why did you change your decision? What made you .... your mind? (change)
6 It was a really good holiday. I really enjoyed .... by the sea again. (be)

7 Did I really tell you I was unhappy? I don't remember .... that. (say)
8 'Remember .... Tom tomorrow.' 'OK. I won't forget.' (call)
9 The water here is not very good. I'd avoid .... it if I were you. (drink)
10 I pretended .... interested in the conversation, but really it was very boring. (be)
11 I got up and looked out of the window .... what the weather was like. (see)
12 I don't have far to go. It's not worth .... a taxi. (take)
13 I have a friend who claims .... able to speak five languages. (be)
14 I like .... carefully about things before .... a decision. (think, make)
15 I had a flat in the centre of town but I didn't like .... there, so I decided .... (live, move)
16 Steve used .... a footballer. He had to stop .... because of an injury. (be, play)
17 After .... by the police, the man admitted .... the car but denied .... at 100 miles an hour. (stop, steal, drive)
18 A: How do you make this machine .... ? (work)
B: I'm not sure. Try .... that button and see what happens. (press)

27 Make sentences from the words in brackets.

1 I can't find the tickets. (I / seem / lose / them)
I seem to have lost them.

2 I don't have far to go. (it / not / worth / take / a taxi)
It's not worth taking a taxi.

3 I'm feeling a bit tired. (I / not / fancy / go / out)
....

4 James isn't very reliable. (he / tend / forget / things)
....

5 I've got a lot of luggage. (you / mind / help / me?)
....

6 There's nobody at home. (everybody / seem / go out)
....

7 We don't like our apartment. (we / think / move)
....

8 The vase was very valuable. (I / afraid / touch / it)
....

9 I wanted to get to the station in plenty of time. (I / afraid / miss / my train)
....

10 I don't recommend the movie. (it / not / worth / see)
....

11 I'm very tired after that long walk. (I / not / used / walk / so far)
....

12 Sue is on holiday. She called me yesterday and sounded happy. (she / seem / enjoy / herself)
....

13 Dan took lots of pictures while he was on holiday. (he / insist / show / them to me)
....

14 I don't want to do the shopping. (I'd rather / somebody else / do / it)
....

28 **Complete the second sentence so that the meaning is similar to the first.**

1 I was surprised I passed the exam.
I didn't expect ..to pass the exam.......... .

2 Did you manage to solve the problem?
Did you succeed ..in solving the problem.......... ?

3 I don't read newspapers any more.
I've given up ....

4 I'd prefer not to go out tonight.
I'd rather ....

5 He finds it difficult to sleep at night.
He has trouble ....

6 Shall I phone you this evening?
Do you want .... ?

7 Nobody saw me come in.
I came in without ....

8 Some people said I was a cheat.
I was accused ....

9 It will be good to see them again.
I'm looking forward ....

10 What do you think I should do?
What do you advise me .... ?

11 It's a pity I couldn't go out with you last night.
I'd like ....

12 I wish I'd taken your advice.
I regret ....

---

a/an and *the*

Units 69–78

29 **Put in a/an or the where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.**

1 I don't usually like staying at ..–.. hotels, but last summer we spent two weeks at ..a.. very nice hotel by ..the.. sea.

2 If you go to live in .... foreign country, you should try and learn .... language.

3 Helen is .... economist. She lives in .... United States and works for .... investment company.

4 I love .... sport, especially .... tennis. I play two or three times .... week if I can, but I'm not .... very good player.

5 I won't be home for .... dinner this evening. I'm meeting some friends after .... work and we're going to .... cinema.

6 When .... unemployment is high, it's difficult for .... people to find .... work. It's .... big problem.

7 There was .... accident as I was going .... home last night. Two people were taken to .... hospital. I think .... most accidents are caused by .... people driving too fast.

8 A: What's .... name of .... hotel where you're staying?
B: .... Ambassador. It's in .... Queen Street in .... city centre. It's near .... station.

9 I have two brothers. .... older one is training to be .... pilot. .... younger one is still at .... school. When he leaves .... school, he wants to go to .... university to study .... law.

Pronouns and determiners

Units 82–91

30 **Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes only one alternative is correct, and sometimes two alternatives are possible.**

1 I don't remember ....A.... about the accident. (A *is correct*)
[✓ **A**] anything **B** something **C** nothing

2 Chris and I have known .... for quite a long time.
A us **B** each other **C** ourselves

3 'How often do the buses run?' '.................... twenty minutes.'
A All **B** Each **C** Every

4 I shouted for help, but .... came.
A nobody **B** no-one **C** anybody

5 Last night we went out with some friends of ....
A us **B** our **C** ours

6 It didn't take us a long time to get here. .... traffic.
A It wasn't much **B** There wasn't much **C** It wasn't a lot

7 Can I have .... milk in my coffee, please?
A a little **B** any **C** some

8 Sometimes I find it difficult to ....
A concentrate **B** concentrate me **C** concentrate myself

9 There's .... on at the cinema that I want to see, so there's no point in going.
A something **B** anything **C** nothing

10 I drink .... water every day.
A much **B** a lot of **C** lots of

11 .... in the city centre are open on Sunday.
A Most of shops **B** Most of the shops **C** The most of the shops

12 There were about twenty people in the photo. I didn't recognise .... of them.
A any **B** none **C** either

13 I've been waiting .... for Sarah to phone.
A all morning **B** the whole morning **C** all the morning

14 I can't afford to buy anything in this shop. .... so expensive.
A All is **B** Everything is **C** All are

Adjectives and adverbs

Units 98–108

31 **There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Correct the sentences where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.**

1 The building was total destroyed in the fire. ....totally destroyed....
2 I didn't like the book. It was such a stupid story. ....OK....
3 The city is very polluted. It's the more polluted place I've ever been to. ....
4 I was disappointing that I didn't get the job. I was well-qualified and the interview went well. ....
5 It's warm today, but there's quite a strong wind. ....
6 Joe works hardly, but he doesn't get paid very much. ....
7 The company's offices are in a modern large building. ....

8 Dan is a very fast runner. I wish I could run as fast as him. ....

9 I missed the three last days of the course because I was ill. ....

10 You don't look happy. What's the matter? ....

11 The weather has been unusual cold for the time of the year. ....

12 The water in the pool was too dirty to swim in it. ....

13 I got impatient because we had to wait so long time. ....

14 Is this box big enough or do you need a bigger one? ....

15 This morning I got up more early than usual. ....

Conjunctions

Units 25, 38, 112–118

32 **Which is correct?**

1 I'll try to be on time, but don't worry if / ~~when~~ I'm late. (if *is correct*)

2 Don't throw that bag away. If / When you don't want it, I'll have it.

3 Please report to reception if / when you arrive at the hotel.

4 We've arranged to go to the beach tomorrow, but we won't go if / when it's raining.

5 Tanya is in her final year at school. She still doesn't know what she's going to do if / when she leaves.

6 What would you do if / when you lost your keys?

7 I hope I'll be able to come to the party, but I'll let you know if / unless I can't.

8 I don't want to be disturbed, so don't phone me if / unless it's something important.

9 Please sign the contract if / unless you're happy with the conditions.

10 I like travelling by ship as long as / unless the sea is not rough.

11 You might not remember the name of the hotel, so write it down if / in case you forget it.

12 It's not cold now, but take your coat with you if / in case it gets cold later.

13 Take your coat with you and then you can put it on if / in case it gets cold later.

14 They always have the TV on, even if / if nobody is watching it.

15 Even / Although I left home early, I got to work late.

16 Despite / Although we've known each other a long time, we're not particularly close friends.

17 'When did you leave school?' 'As / When I was 17.'

18 I think Amy will be very pleased as / when she hears the news.

Prepositions (time)

Units 12, 119–122

33 **Put in one of the following:** at on in during for since by until

1 Jack has gone away. He'll be back ....in.... a week.

2 We're having a party .... Saturday. Can you come?

3 I've got an interview next week. It's .... Tuesday morning .... 9.30.

4 Sue isn't usually here .... weekends. She goes away.

5 The train service is very good. The trains are nearly always .... time.

6 It was a confusing situation. Many things were happening .... the same time.

7 I couldn't decide whether or not to buy the sweater. .... the end I decided not to.

8 The road is busy all the time, even .... night.

9 I met a lot of nice people .... my stay in New York.

10 I saw Helen .... Friday, but I haven't seen her .... then.

11 Robert has been doing the same job .... five years.

12 Lisa's birthday is .... the end of March. I'm not sure exactly which day it is.

13 We have friends staying with us .... the moment. They're staying .... Friday.

14 If you're interested in applying for the job, your application must be received .... Friday.

15 I'm just going out. I won't be long – I'll be back .... ten minutes.

Prepositions (position and other uses)

Units 123–128

34 **Put in the missing preposition.**

1 I'd love to be able to visit every country .... the world.
2 Jessica White is my favourite author. Have you read anything .... her?
3 There's a small shop .... the end of this road.
4 Tom is away at the moment. He's .... holiday.
5 We live .... the country, a long way from the nearest town.
6 I've got a stain .... my jacket. I'll have to have it cleaned.
7 We went ....a party .... Lisa's house on Saturday.
8 Boston is .... the east coast of the United States.
9 Look at the leaves .... that tree. They're a beautiful colour.
10 I've never been .... Japan, but I'd like to go very much.
11 Mozart died .... Vienna in 1791 .... the age of 35.
12 'Are you .... this photo?' 'Yes, that's me, ... the left.'
13 We went .... the theatre last night. We had seats .... the front row.
14 If you want to turn the light on, the switch is .... the wall .... the door.
15 It was late when we arrived .... the hotel.
16 I couldn't decide what to eat. There was nothing .... the menu that I liked.
17 We live .... a tower block. Our apartment is .... the fifteenth floor.
18 Some parts of the film were a bit stupid, but .... the whole I enjoyed it.
19 'When you paid the restaurant bill, did you pay cash?' 'No, I paid .... credit card.'
20 'How did you get here? Did you come .... the bus?' 'No, ... car.'
21 I watched a really interesting programme .... TV last night.
22 Helen works for a large company. She works .... the customer services department.
23 Anna spent two years working .... London before returning .... Italy.
24 How was your trip .... the beach? Did you have a good day?
25 On our first day in Paris, we went .... a trip round the city.

Noun/adjective + preposition

Units 129–131

35 **Put in the missing preposition.**

1 The plan has been changed, but nobody seems to know the reason .... this.
2 Don't ask me to decide. I'm not very good .... making decisions.
3 Some people say that Sue is unfriendly, but she's always very nice .... me.
4 What do you think is the best solution .... the problem?
5 Recently there has been a big increase .... the number of tourists visiting the city.
6 He lives a rather lonely life. He doesn't have much contact .... other people.
7 Paul is a keen photographer. He likes taking pictures .... people.
8 Michael got married .... a woman he met when he was studying at college.
9 He's very brave. He's not scared .... anything.
10 I'm surprised .... the traffic today. I didn't think it would be so busy.
11 Thank you for lending me the guidebook. It was full .... useful information.
12 I'm afraid I've had to change my plans, so I can't meet you tomorrow. I'm sorry .... that.

Verb + preposition

Units 132–136

36 **Complete each sentence with a preposition where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.**

1 She works quite hard. You can't accuse her .... being lazy.
2 Who's going to look .... your children while you're at work?
3 The problem is becoming serious. We have to discuss .... it.
4 The problem is becoming serious. We have to do something .... it.
5 I prefer this chair .... the other one. It's more comfortable.
6 I need to call .... the office to tell them I won't be at work today.
7 The river divides the city .... two parts.
8 'What do you think .... your new boss?' 'She's all right, I suppose.'
9 Can somebody please explain .... me what I have to do?
10 I said hello to her, but she didn't answer .... me.
11 'Do you like staying at hotels?' 'It depends .... the hotel.'
12 'Have you ever been to Borla?' 'No, I've never heard .... it. Where is it?'
13 You remind me .... somebody I knew a long time ago. You look just like her.
14 This is wonderful news! I can't believe ....it.
15 George is not an idealist – he believes .... being practical.
16 What's funny? What are you laughing .... ?
17 What did you do with all the money you had? What did you spend it .... ?
18 If Alex asks .... you .... money, don't give him any.
19 I apologised .... Sarah .... keeping her waiting so long.
20 Lisa was very helpful. I thanked .... her .... everything she'd done.

Phrasal verbs

Units 137–145

37 **A says something and B replies. Which goes with which?**

A

1 ~~I've made a mistake on this form.~~
2 I'm too warm with my coat on.
3 This jacket looks nice.
4 Your reference number is 318044BK.
5 This room is in a mess.
6 What's 45 euros in dollars?
7 How was the mistake discovered?
8 I'm not sure whether to accept their offer or not.
9 I need a place to stay when I'm in London.
10 It's a subject he doesn't like to talk about.
11 I don't know what this word means.

B

a Don't worry. I'll clear it up.
b That won't be a problem. I can fix it up.
c Kate pointed it out.
d ~~That's OK. Cross it out and correct it.~~
e Yes, why don't you try it on?
f OK, I won't bring it up.
g Just a minute. I'll write it down.
h Why don't you take it off then?
i You can look it up.
j I think you should turn it down.
k Give me a moment. I'll work it out.

1 .....d.....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....
11 ....

38 Only one alternative is correct. Which is it?

1 Nobody believed Paul at first but he ....B..... to be right. (B *is correct*)
A came out **B** turned out **C** worked out **D** carried out

2 Here's some good news. It will ....
A turn you up **B** put you up **C** blow you up **D** cheer you up

3 The children were behaving badly, so I ....
A told them up **B** told them off **C** told them out **D** told them over

4 The club committee is .... of the president, the secretary and seven other members.
A set up **B** made up **C** set out **D** made out

5 Why did you decide not to apply for the job? What .... ?
A put you off **B** put you out **C** turned you off **D** turned you away

6 I had no idea that he was lying to me. I was completely ....
A taken in **B** taken down **C** taken off **D** taken over

7 Helen started a course at college, but she .... after six months.
A went out **B** fell out **C** turned out **D** dropped out

8 You can't predict everything. Often things don't .... as you expect.
A make out **B** break out **C** turn out **D** get out

9 What's all this noise? What's .... ?
A going off **B** getting off **C** going on **D** getting on

10 It's a very busy airport. There are planes .... or landing every few minutes.
A going up **B** taking off **C** getting up **D** driving off

11 The road was blocked by a bus that had ....
A broken down **B** dropped out **C** driven off **D** held up

12 How are you .... in your new job? Are you enjoying it?
A keeping on **B** going on **C** carrying on **D** getting on

39 Complete the sentences. Use two words each time.

1 Keep ......away from...... the edge of the pool. You might fall in.
2 I didn't notice that the two pictures were different until Amy pointed it .... me.
3 I asked Max if he had any suggestions about what we should do, but he didn't come
.... anything.
4 I'm glad Sarah is coming to the party. I'm really looking .... seeing her again.
5 Things are changing all the time. It's difficult to keep .... all these changes.
6 I don't want to run .... food for the party. Are you sure we have enough?
7 We had a short break and then carried .... our work.
8 I've had enough of being treated like this. I'm not going to put .... it any more.
9 I didn't enjoy the trip very much at the time, but when I look .... it now,
I realise it was a good experience and I'm glad I went on it.
10 The wedding was supposed to be a secret, so how did you find .... it?
Who told you?
11 There is a very nice atmosphere in the office where I work. Everybody gets
.... everybody else.

40 **Complete each sentence using a phrasal verb that has a similar meaning to the words in brackets.**

1 The concert in the park had to be ....called off.... because of the weather. (cancelled)

2 The story Kate told wasn't true. She ....made it up.... . (invented it)

3 Paul finally .... an hour late. (arrived)

4 Here's an application form. Can you .... and sign it, please? (complete it)

5 Some houses will have to be .... to make way for the new road. (demolished)

6 Be positive! You must never .... ! (stop trying)

7 I was very tired and .... in front of the TV. (fell asleep)

8 After eight years together, they've decided to .... (separate)

9 The noise is terrible. I can't .... any longer. (tolerate it)

10 We don't have a lot of money, but we have enough to .... (manage)

11 I'm sorry I'm late. The meeting .... longer than I expected. (continued)

12 We need to make a decision today at the latest. We can't .... any longer. (delay it)

41 **Complete the sentences. Use one word each time.**

1 You're driving too fast. Please ....slow.... down.

2 It was only a small fire and I managed to .... it out with a bucket of water.

3 The house is empty right now, but I think the new tenants are .... in next week.

4 I've .... on weight. My clothes don't fit any more.

5 Their house is really nice now. They've .... it up really well.

6 I was talking to the woman next to me on the plane, and it .... out that she works for the same company as my brother.

7 I don't know what happened yet, but I'm going to .... out.

8 There's no need to get angry. .... down!

9 If you're going on a long walk, plan your route carefully before you .... off.

10 Sarah has just phoned to say that she'll be late. She's been .... up.

11 You've written my name wrong. It's Martin, not Marin – you .... out the T.

12 Three days at £45 a day – that .... out at £135.

13 We had a really interesting discussion, but Jane didn't .... in. She just listened.

14 Jonathan is pretty fit. He .... out in the gym every day.

15 Come and see us more often. You can .... in any time you like.

16 We are still discussing the contract. There are still a couple of things to .... out.

17 My alarm clock .... off in the middle of the night and .... me up.

Study guide

This guide is to help you decide which units you need to study. The sentences in the guide are grouped together (*Present and past*, *Articles and nouns* etc.) in the same way as the units in the *Contents* (pages iii–vi).

Each sentence can be completed using one or more of the alternatives (A, B, C etc.). There are between two and five alternatives each time. IN SOME SENTENCES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS POSSIBLE.

If you don't know or if you are not sure which alternatives are correct, then you probably need to study the unit(s) in the list on the right. You will also find the correct sentence in this unit. (If two or three units are listed, you will find the correct sentence in the first one.)

There is a key to this study guide on page 372.

	IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	**STUDY UNIT**
	Present and past	
1.1	At first I didn't like my job, but …………………… to enjoy it now. **A** I'm starting **B** I start	**1, 3**
1.2	I don't understand this sentence. What …………………… ? **A** does mean this word **B** does this word mean **C** means this word	**2, 49**
1.3	Robert …………………… away two or three times a year. **A** is going usually **B** is usually going **C** usually goes **D** goes usually	**2, 3, 110**
1.4	How …………………… now? Better than before? **A** you are feeling **B** do you feel **C** are you feeling	**4**
1.5	It was a boring weekend. …………………… anything. **A** I didn't **B** I don't do **C** I didn't do	**5**
1.6	Matt …………………… while we were having dinner. **A** phoned **B** was phoning **C** has phoned	**6, 14**
	Present perfect and past	
2.1	James is on holiday. He …………………… to Italy. **A** is gone **B** has gone **C** has been	**7**
2.2	Everything is going well. There …………………… any problems so far. **A** weren't **B** have been **C** haven't been	**8**
2.3	Sarah has lost her passport again. This is the second time this …………………… . **A** has happened **B** happens **C** happened **D** is happening	**8**
2.4	Why are you out of breath? …………………… ? **A** Are you running **B** Have you run **C** Have you been running	**9**
2.5	Where's the book I gave you? What …………………… with it? **A** have you done **B** have you been doing **C** are you doing	**10**
2.6	'How long …………………… Jane?' 'A long time. Since we were at school.' **A** do you know **B** have you known **C** have you been knowing	**11, 10**
2.7	Sally has been working here …………………… . **A** for six months **B** since six months **C** six months ago **D** six months	**12**

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
2.8	It's two years .... Joe. **A** that I don't see **B** that I haven't seen **C** since I didn't see **D** since I last saw	**12**
2.9	It .... raining for a while, but now it's raining again. **A** stopped **B** has stopped **C** was stopped	**13**
2.10	My mother .... in Italy. **A** grew up **B** has grown up **C** had grown up	**13**
2.11	.... a lot of sweets when you were a child? **A** Have you eaten **B** Had you eaten **C** Did you eat	**14**
2.12	Jack .... in New York for ten years. Now he lives in Los Angeles. **A** lived **B** has lived **C** has been living	**14, 11**
2.13	The people sitting next to me on the plane were nervous. .... before. **A** They haven't flown **B** They didn't fly **C** They hadn't flown **D** They'd never flown **E** They weren't flying	**15**
2.14	Katherine was lying on the sofa. She was tired because .... very hard. **A** she was working **B** she's been working **C** she'd been working	**16**
2.15	.... a car when you were living in Paris? **A** Had you **B** Were you having **C** Have you had **D** Did you have	**17, 14**
2.16	I .... tennis a lot, but I don't play very much now. **A** was playing **B** was used to play **C** used to play	**18**
Future		
3.1	I'm tired. .... to bed now. Goodnight. **A** I go **B** I'm going	**19**
3.2	.... tomorrow, so we can go out somewhere. **A** I'm not working **B** I don't work **C** I won't work	**19, 21**
3.3	That bag looks heavy. .... you with it. **A** I'm helping **B** I help **C** I'll help	**21**
3.4	I think the weather .... nice later. **A** will be **B** is **C** is going to be **D** shall be	**23, 22**
3.5	'Anna is in hospital.' 'Yes, I know. .... her this evening.' **A** I visit **B** I'm going to visit **C** I'll visit	**23, 20**
3.6	We're late. The film .... by the time we get to the cinema. **A** will already start **B** will be already started **C** will already have started	**24**
3.7	Don't worry .... late tonight. **A** if I'm **B** when I'm **C** when I'll be **D** if I'll be	**25**

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
Modals		
4.1	The fire spread quickly, but everybody .... from the building. **A** was able to escape **B** managed to escape **C** could escape	**26**
4.2	I'm so tired I .... for a week. **A** can sleep **B** could sleep **C** could have slept	**27**
4.3	The story .... be true, but I don't think it is. **A** might **B** can **C** could **D** may	**27, 29**
4.4	Why did you stay at a hotel? You .... with me. **A** can stay **B** could stay **C** could have stayed	**27**
4.5	I lost one of my gloves. I .... it somewhere. **A** must drop **B** must have dropped **C** must be dropping **D** must have been dropping	**28**
4.6	'Why wasn't Amy at the meeting yesterday?' 'She .... about it.' **A** might not know **B** may not know **C** might not have known **D** may not have known	**29**
4.7	What .... to get a new driving licence? **A** have I to do **B** do I have to do **C** I must do **D** I have to	**31**
4.8	We have plenty of time. We .... hurry. **A** don't need to **B** mustn't **C** needn't	**32**
4.9	You missed a great party last night. You .... Why didn't you? **A** must have come **B** should have come **C** ought to have come **D** had to come	**33**
4.10	Jane won the lottery. I suggested .... a car with the money she won. **A** that she buy **B** that she should buy **C** her to buy **D** that she bought	**34**
4.11	You're always at home. You .... out more often. **A** should go **B** had better go **C** had better to go	**35**
4.12	It's late. It's time .... home. **A** we go **B** we must go **C** we should go **D** we went **E** to go	**35**
4.13	.... a little longer, but I really have to go now. **A** I'd stay **B** I'll stay **C** I can stay **D** I'd have stayed	**36**
if* and *wish		
5.1	I'm not tired enough to go to bed. If I .... to bed now, I wouldn't sleep. **A** go **B** went **C** had gone **D** would go	**38, 39**
5.2	If I were rich, ... a lot. **A** I'll travel **B** I can travel **C** I would travel **D** I travelled	**39**
5.3	I wish I .... have to work tomorrow, but unfortunately I do. **A** don't **B** didn't **C** wouldn't **D** won't	**39, 41**

	IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
5.4	The view was wonderful. I would have taken some pictures if .... a camera with me. **A** I had **B** I would have **C** I would have had **D** I'd had	40
5.5	The weather is horrible. I wish it .... raining. **A** would stop **B** stopped **C** stops **D** will stop	41
Passive		
6.1	We .... by a loud noise during the night. **A** woke up **B** are woken up **C** were woken up **D** were waking up	42
6.2	A new supermarket is going to .... next year. **A** build **B** be built **C** be building **D** building	43
6.3	There's somebody walking behind us. I think .... **A** we are following **B** we are being following **C** we are followed **D** we are being followed	43
6.4	'Where .... ?' 'In Chicago.' **A** were you born **B** are you born **C** have you been born **D** did you born	44
6.5	There was a fight, but nobody .... **A** was hurt **B** got hurt **C** hurt	44
6.6	Jane .... to phone me last night, but she didn't. **A** supposed **B** is supposed **C** was supposed	45
6.7	Where .... ? Which hairdresser did you go to? **A** did you cut your hair **B** have you cut your hair **C** did you have cut your hair **D** did you have your hair cut	46
Reported speech		
7.1	Paul left the room suddenly. He said he .... to go. **A** had **B** has **C** have	48, 47
7.2	(*You meet Joe in the street.*) Joe, this is a surprise. Rachel said you .... in hospital. **A** are **B** were **C** was	48, 47
7.3	Anna .... and left. **A** said goodbye to me **B** said me goodbye **C** told me goodbye	48
Questions and auxiliary verbs		
8.1	'What time .... ?' 'At 8.30.' **A** starts the film **B** does start the film **C** does the film start	49
8.2	'Do you know where .... ?' 'No, he didn't say.' **A** Tom has gone **B** has Tom gone **C** has gone Tom	50
8.3	The police officer stopped us and asked us where .... **A** were we going **B** are we going **C** we are going **D** we were going	50

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
8.4	'Do you think it will rain?' '..' **A** I hope not **B** I don't hope **C** I don't hope so	51
8.5	'You don't know where Karen is, ...?' 'Sorry, I have no idea.' **A** don't you **B** do you **C** is she **D** are you	52
-ing and **to ...**		
9.1	You can't stop people .... what they want. **A** doing **B** do **C** to do **D** from doing	53, 62
9.2	I'd better go now. I promised .... late. **A** not being **B** not to be **C** to not be **D** I wouldn't be	54, 36
9.3	Do you want .... with you or do you want to go alone? **A** me coming **B** me to come **C** that I come **D** that I will come	55
9.4	I know I locked the door. I clearly remember .... it. **A** locking **B** to lock **C** to have locked	56
9.5	She tried to be serious, but she couldn't help .... **A** laughing **B** to laugh **C** that she laughed **D** laugh	57
9.6	Paul lives in Berlin now. He likes .... there. **A** living **B** to live	58
9.7	It's not my favourite job, but I like .... the kitchen as often as possible. **A** cleaning **B** clean **C** to clean **D** that I clean	58
9.8	I'm tired. I'd rather .... out this evening, if you don't mind. **A** not going **B** not to go **C** don't go **D** not go	59
9.9	I'd rather .... anyone what I said. **A** you don't tell **B** not you tell **C** you didn't tell **D** you wouldn't tell	59
9.10	Are you looking forward .... on holiday? **A** going **B** to go **C** to going **D** that you go	60, 62
9.11	When Lisa first came to Britain, she wasn't used .... on the left. **A** driving **B** to driving **C** to drive **D** drive	61
9.12	I'm thinking .... a house. Do you think that's a good idea? **A** to buy **B** of to buy **C** of buying **D** about buying	62, 66
9.13	I had no trouble .... a place to stay. In fact it was surprisingly easy. **A** find **B** found **C** to find **D** finding	63
9.14	I called the restaurant .... a table. **A** for reserve **B** to reserve **C** for reserving **D** for to reserve	64
9.15	James doesn't speak clearly. .... **A** It is hard to understand him **B** He is hard to understand **C** He is hard to understand him	65

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
9.16	The path was icy, so we walked very carefully. We were afraid …………………… . **A** of falling **B** from falling **C** to fall **D** to falling	**66**
9.17	I didn't hear you …………………… in. You must have been very quiet. **A** come **B** to come **C** came	**67**
9.18	…………………… a hotel, we looked for somewhere to eat. **A** Finding **B** After finding **C** Having found **D** We found	**68**
Articles and nouns		
10.1	It wasn't your fault. It was …………………… . **A** accident **B** an accident **C** some accident	**69**
10.2	Where are you going to put all your …………………… ? **A** furniture **B** furnitures	**70**
10.3	'Where are you going?' 'I'm going to buy …………………… .' **A** a bread **B** some bread **C** a loaf of bread	**70**
10.4	Sandra is …………………… . She works at a large hospital. **A** nurse **B** a nurse **C** the nurse	**71, 72**
10.5	Helen works six days …………………… week. **A** in **B** for **C** a **D** the	**72**
10.6	There are millions of stars in …………………… . **A** space **B** a space **C** the space	**73**
10.7	Every day …………………… starts at 9 and finishes at 3. **A** school **B** a school **C** the school	**74**
10.8	…………………… changed a lot in the last thirty years. **A** Life has **B** The life has **C** The lives have	**75**
10.9	When …………………… invented? **A** was camera **B** were cameras **C** were the cameras **D** was the camera	**76**
10.10	Have you been to …………………… ? **A** Canada or United States **B** the Canada or the United States **C** Canada or the United States **D** the Canada or United States	**77**
10.11	On our first day in Moscow, we visited …………………… . **A** Kremlin **B** a Kremlin **C** the Kremlin	**78**
10.12	I have some news for you. …………………… . **A** It's good news **B** They are good news **C** It's a good news	**79, 70**
10.13	It took us quite a long time to get here. It was …………………… journey. **A** three hour **B** a three-hours **C** a three-hour	**80**
10.14	This isn't my book. It's …………………… . **A** my sister **B** my sister's **C** from my sister **D** of my sister **E** of my sister's	**81**

	IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
	Pronouns and determiners	
11.1	What time shall we .... tomorrow? **A** meet **B** meet us **C** meet ourselves	**82**
11.2	I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. .... is getting married. **A** A friend of me **B** A friend of mine **C** One my friends	**83**
11.3	They live on a busy road. .... a lot of noise from the traffic. **A** It must be **B** It must have **C** There must have **D** There must be	**84**
11.4	He's lazy. He never does .... work. **A** some **B** any **C** no	**85**
11.5	'What would you like to eat?' 'I don't mind. .... – whatever you have.' **A** Something **B** Anything **C** Nothing	**85**
11.6	The course didn't go well. .... of the students were happy. **A** All **B** No-one **C** None **D** Nobody	**86**
11.7	We went shopping and spent .... money. **A** a lot of **B** much **C** lots of **D** many	**87**
11.8	I was ill yesterday. I spent .... in bed. **A** the most of day **B** most of day **C** the most of the day **D** most of the day	**88**
11.9	I asked two people how to get to the station, but .... of them knew. **A** none **B** either **C** both **D** neither	**89**
11.10	Our holiday was a disaster. .... went wrong. **A** Everything **B** All **C** All things **D** All of things	**90**
11.11	The bus service is excellent. There's a bus .... ten minutes. **A** each **B** every **C** all	**90, 91**
11.12	There were four books on the table. .... a different colour. **A** Each of books was **B** Each of the books was **C** Each book was	**91**
	Relative clauses	
12.1	I don't like stories .... have unhappy endings. **A** that **B** they **C** which **D** who	**92**
12.2	I didn't believe them at first, but in fact everything .... was true. **A** they said **B** that they said **C** what they said	**93**
12.3	We helped some people .... **A** their car had broken down **B** which car had broken down **C** whose car had broken down **D** that their car had broken down	**94**
12.4	Anna told me about her new job, ... a lot. **A** that she's enjoying **B** which she's enjoying **C** she's enjoying **D** she's enjoying it	**95**
12.5	Sarah couldn't meet us, ... was a shame. **A** that **B** it **C** what **D** which	**96**
12.6	George showed me some pictures .... by his father. **A** painting **B** painted **C** that were painted **D** they were painted	**97, 92**

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
Adjectives and adverbs		
13.1	Jane doesn't enjoy her job any more. She's .... because every day she does exactly the same thing. **A** boring **B** bored	**98**
13.2	Lisa was carrying a .... bag. **A** black small plastic **B** small and black plastic **C** small black plastic **D** plastic small black	**99**
13.3	Maria's English is excellent. She speaks .... **A** perfectly English **B** English perfectly **C** perfect English **D** English perfect	**100**
13.4	He .... to find a job, but he had no luck. **A** tried hard **B** tried hardly **C** hardly tried	**101**
13.5	I haven't seen her for ...., I've forgotten what she looks like. **A** so long **B** so long time **C** a such long time **D** such a long time	**102**
13.6	Don't stand on that chair. It isn't .... **A** enough strong to stand on **B** strong enough to stand on it **C** strong enough to stand on **D** strong enough for stand on	**103**
13.7	Sarah is doing OK at the moment. She has.......... . **A** a quite good job **B** quite a good job **C** a pretty good job	**104**
13.8	The exam was quite easy – .... I expected. **A** more easy that **B** more easy than **C** easier than **D** easier as	**105**
13.9	The more expensive the hotel, ... **A** the service will be better **B** will be better the service **C** the better the service **D** better the service will be	**106**
13.10	Patrick is a fast runner. I can't run as fast as .... **A** he **B** him **C** he can	**107**
13.11	What's .... you've ever made? **A** most important decision **B** the more important decision **C** the decision more important **D** the most important decision	**108**
13.12	Ben likes walking. .... **A** Every morning he walks to work **B** He walks to work every morning **C** He walks every morning to work **D** He every morning walks to work	**109**
13.13	Joe never phones me. .... **A** Always I have to phone him **B** I always have to phone him **C** I have always to phone him **D** I have to phone always him	**110**
13.14	Lucy .... She left last month. **A** still doesn't work here **B** doesn't still work here **C** no more works here **D** doesn't work here any more **E** no longer works here	**111**
13.15	.... she can't drive, she has a car. **A** Even **B** Even when **C** Even if **D** Even though	**112, 113**

	IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
	Conjunctions and prepositions	
14.1	I couldn't sleep …… very tired. **A** although I was **B** despite I was **C** despite of being **D** in spite of being	**113**
14.2	You should insure your bike …… stolen. **A** in case it will be **B** if it will be **C** in case it is **D** if it is	**114**
14.3	The club is for members only. You …… you're a member. **A** can't go in if **B** can go in only if **C** can't go in unless **D** can go in unless	**115**
14.4	Yesterday we watched TV all evening …… we didn't have anything better to do. **A** when **B** as **C** while **D** since	**116**
14.5	'What's that noise?' 'It sounds …… a baby crying.' **A** as **B** like **C** as if **D** as though	**117, 118**
14.6	They are very kind to me. They treat me …… their own son. **A** like I'm **B** as if I'm **C** as if I was **D** as if I were	**118**
14.7	I'm going to be in Moscow next week. I hope the weather will be good …… . **A** while I'll be there **B** while I'm there **C** during my visit **D** during I'm there	**119**
14.8	Joe is away at the moment. I don't know exactly when he's coming back, but I'm sure he'll be back …… Monday. **A** by **B** until	**120**
	Prepositions	
15.1	Bye! I'll see you …… . **A** at Friday morning **B** on Friday morning **C** in Friday morning **D** Friday morning	**121**
15.2	I'm going away …… the end of January. **A** at **B** on **C** in	**122**
15.3	When we were in Italy, we spent a few days …… Venice. **A** at **B** to **C** in	**123, 125**
15.4	Our apartment is …… the second floor of the building. **A** at **B** on **C** in **D** to	**124**
15.5	I saw Steve …… a conference on Saturday. **A** at **B** on **C** in **D** to	**125**
15.6	What time did you …… the hotel? **A** arrive to **B** arrive at **C** arrive in **D** get to **E** get in	**126**
15.7	I'm going …… holiday next week. I'll be away for two weeks. **A** at **B** on **C** in **D** for	**127**
15.8	We travelled …… 6.45 train, which arrived at 8.30. **A** in the **B** on the **C** by the **D** by	**128**
15.9	'Who is this painting …… ? Picasso?' 'I have no idea.' **A** of **B** from **C** by	**128**

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
15.10	The accident was my fault, so I had to pay for the damage .... the other car. **A** of **B** for **C** to **D** on **E** at	**129**
15.11	I like them very much. They have always been very nice .... me. **A** of **B** for **C** to **D** with	**130**
15.12	I'm not very good .... repairing things. **A** at **B** for **C** in **D** about	**131**
15.13	I don't understand this sentence. Can you .... ? **A** explain to me this word **B** explain me this word **C** explain this word to me	**132**
15.14	If you're worried about the problem, you should do something .... it. **A** for **B** about **C** against **D** with	**133**
15.15	'Who is Tom Hart?' 'I have no idea. I've never heard .... him.' **A** about **B** from **C** after **D** of	**134**
15.16	I don't know what time we'll arrive. It depends .... the traffic. **A** of **B** for **C** from **D** on	**135**
15.17	I prefer tea .... coffee. **A** to **B** than **C** against **D** over	**136, 59**

Phrasal verbs

16.1	These shoes are uncomfortable. I'm going to .... **A** take off **B** take them off **C** take off them	**137**
16.2	They were playing cards, so I .... **A** joined in **B** came in **C** got in **D** broke in	**138**
16.3	Nobody believed Paul at first, but he .... to be right. **A** worked out **B** came out **C** found out **D** turned out	**139**
16.4	We can't .... making a decision. We have to decide now. **A** put away **B** put over **C** put off **D** put out	**140**
16.5	'Have you finished painting the kitchen?' 'Nearly. I'll .... tomorrow.' **A** finish it up **B** finish it over **C** finish it off	**141**
16.6	You can always rely on Paul. He'll never .... **A** put you up **B** let you down **C** take you over **D** see you off	**142**
16.7	Children under 16 .... half the population of the city. **A** make up **B** put up **C** take up **D** bring up	**143**
16.8	I'm surprised to hear that Kate and Paul have .... They seemed very happy together. **A** broken up **B** ended up **C** finished up **D** split up	**144**
16.9	I parked in a no-parking zone, but I .... it. **A** came up with **B** got away with **C** made off with **D** got on with	**145**

Key to Exercises

In some of the exercises you have to use your own ideas to write sentences. Example answers are given in the Key. If possible, check your answers with somebody who speaks English well.

UNIT 1

1.1

2 He's tying / He is tying
3 They're crossing / They are crossing
4 He's scratching / He is scratching
5 She's hiding / She is hiding
6 They're waving / They are waving

1.2

2 e
3 g
4 a
5 d
6 h
7 b
8 c

1.3

2 Why are you crying?
3 Is she working today?
4 What are you doing these days?
5 What is she studying? / What's she studying?
6 What are they doing?
7 Are you enjoying it?
8 Why are you walking so fast?

1.4

3 I'm not listening / I am not listening
4 She's having / She is having
5 He's learning / He is learning
6 they aren't speaking / they're not speaking / they are not speaking
7 it's getting / it is getting
8 isn't working / 's not working / is not working
9 I'm looking / I am looking
10 It's working / It is working
11 They're building / They are building
12 He's not enjoying / He is not enjoying
13 The weather's changing / The weather is changing
14 He's starting / He is starting

UNIT 2

2.1

2 go
3 causes
4 closes
5 live
6 take
7 connects

2.2

2 do the banks close
3 don't use
4 does Maria come
5 do you do
6 does this word mean
7 doesn't do
8 takes … does it take

2.3

3 rises
4 make
5 don't eat
6 doesn't believe
7 translates
8 don't tell
9 flows

2.4

2 Does your sister play tennis?
3 How often do you go to the cinema?
4 What does your brother do?
5 Do you speak Spanish?
6 Where do your grandparents live?

2.5

2 I promise
3 I insist
4 I apologise
5 I recommend
6 I agree

UNIT 3

3.1

3 is trying
4 phones
5 *OK*
6 are they talking
7 *OK*
8 *OK*
9 It's getting / It is getting
10 I'm coming / I am coming
11 He always starts
12 *OK*

3.2

2 a Are you listening
  b Do you listen
3 a flows
  b is flowing / 's flowing
4 a I don't do
  b do you usually do
5 a She's staying / She is staying
  b She always stays

3.3

2 She speaks
3 Everybody's waiting / Everybody is waiting
4 do you pronounce
5 isn't working / is not working / 's not working
6 is improving
7 lives
8 I'm starting / I am starting
9 They're visiting / They are visiting
10 does your father do
11 it doesn't take
12 I'm learning / I am learning … is teaching / 's teaching

3.4

2 It's always breaking down.
3 I'm always making the same mistake. / … that mistake.
4 You're always leaving your phone at home.

UNIT 4

4.1

2 believes
3 I don't remember / I do not remember *or* I can't remember
4 I'm using / I am using
5 I need
6 consists
7 does he want
8 is he looking
9 Do you recognise
10 I'm thinking / I am thinking
11 do you think
12 he seems

4.2

2 I'm thinking.
3 Who does this umbrella belong to?
4 This smells good.
5 Is anybody sitting there?
6 These gloves don't fit me.

4.3

3 *OK* (I feel *is also correct*)
4 does it taste
5 *OK*
6 do you see
7 *OK*

4.4

2 's / is
3 's being / is being
4 're / are
5 are you being
6 Are you

UNIT 5

5.1

2 had
3 She walked to work
4 It took her (about) half an hour
5 She started work
6 She didn't have (any) lunch. / … eat (any) lunch.
7 She finished work
8 She was tired when she got home.
9 She cooked / She made
10 She didn't go
11 She went to bed
12 She slept

5.2

2 taught
3 sold
4 fell … hurt
5 threw … caught
6 spent … bought … cost

5.3

2 did you travel / did you go
3 did it take (you) / was your trip / were you there
4 did you stay
5 Was the weather
6 Did you go to / Did you see / Did you visit

5.4

3 didn't disturb
4 left
5 were
6 didn't sleep
7 didn't cost
8 flew
9 didn't have
10 wasn't

UNIT 6

6.1

2 wasn't listening
3 were sitting
4 was working
5 weren't looking
6 was snowing
7 were you going
8 was looking

6.2

2 e
3 a
4 g
5 c
6 d
7 b

6.3

1 didn't see … was looking
2 was cycling … stepped … was going … managed … didn't hit

6.4

2 were you doing
3 Did you go
4 were you driving … happened
5 took … wasn't looking
6 didn't know … did
7 saw … was trying
8 was walking … heard … was following … started
9 wanted … changed
10 dropped … was doing … didn't break

UNIT 7

7.1

2 Her English has improved.
3 My bag has disappeared.
4 Lisa has broken her leg.
5 The bus fare has gone up.
6 Dan has grown a beard.
7 It's stopped raining. / It has stopped raining.
8 My sweater has shrunk. / My sweater's shrunk.

7.2

2 been
3 gone
4 gone
5 been

7.3

2 Have you seen it
3 I've forgotten / I have forgotten
4 he hasn't replied
5 has it finished
6 The weather has changed
7 You haven't signed
8 have they gone
9 He hasn't decided yet
10 I've just seen her / I have just seen her
11 He's already gone / He has already gone
12 Has your course started yet
You can also use the past simple (**Did** you **see**, he **didn't reply** *etc.*) *in this exercise.*

7.4

2 he's just gone out / he has just gone out *or* he just went out
3 I haven't finished yet. *or* I didn't finish yet.
4 I've already done it. / I have already done it. *or* I already did it. / I did it already.
5 Have you found a place to live yet? *or* Did you find a place …?
6 I haven't decided yet. *or* I didn't decide yet.
7 she's just come back / she has just come back *or* she just came back

UNIT 8

8.1

2 Have you ever been to California?
3 Have you ever run a marathon?
4 Have you ever spoken to a famous person?
5 What's the most beautiful place you've ever visited? / … you have ever visited?

8.2

3 haven't eaten
4 I haven't played (it)
5 I've had / I have had
6 I haven't read
7 I've never been / I haven't been
8 it's happened / it has happened *or* that's happened / that has happened
9 I've never tried / I haven't tried *or* I've never eaten / I haven't eaten
10 's been / has been
11 I've never seen / I haven't seen

8.3

Example answers:
2 I haven't travelled by bus this week.
3 I haven't been to the cinema recently.
4 I haven't read a book for ages.
5 I haven't lost anything today.

8.4

2 It's the first time they've seen a giraffe. / … they have seen …
3 She's / She has never ridden a horse before.
4 This is the second time they've been to Japan. / … they have been to Japan.
5 It's not the first time she's / she has / Emily has stayed at this hotel.
6 He's / He has / Ben has never played tennis before. *or* He/Ben hasn't played tennis before.

UNIT 9

9.1

2 's been watching TV / has been watching TV *or* … watching television
3 've been playing tennis / have been playing tennis
4 's been running / has been running

9.2

2 Have you been waiting long?
3 What have you been doing?
4 How long have you been working here?
5 How long have you been doing that?

9.3

2 've been waiting / have been waiting
3 've been learning Japanese / have been learning Japanese
4 She's been working there / She has been working there
5 They've been going there / They have been going there *or* … going to Italy

9.4

2 I've been looking / I have been looking
3 are you looking
4 She's been teaching / She has been teaching
5 I've been thinking / I have been thinking
6 he's working / he is working
7 She's been working / She has been working
8 you're driving / you are driving
9 has been travelling

UNIT 10

10.1

2 She's been travelling / She has been travelling . . .
She's visited / She has visited . . .
3 He's won / He has won . . .
He's been playing tennis / He has been playing . . .
4 They've been making / They have been making . . .
They've made / They have made . . .

10.2

2 Have you been waiting long?
3 Have you caught any fish?
4 How many people have you invited?
5 How long have you been teaching?
6 How many books have you written?
How long have you been writing books?
7 How long have you been saving (money)?
How much money have you saved?

10.3

2 Somebody's broken / Somebody has broken
3 Have you been working
4 Have you ever worked
5 has she gone
6 I've had / I have had
7 I've been watching / I have been watching
8 He's appeared / He has appeared
9 I haven't been waiting
10 you've been crying / you have been crying
11 it's stopped / it has stopped
12 They've been playing / They have been playing
13 I've lost / I have lost . . . Have you seen
14 I've been reading / I have been reading . . . I haven't finished
15 I've read / I have read

UNIT 11

11.1

2 have you lived
3 It's raining
4 has been
5 Have you been waiting
6 We're living
7 I haven't known
8 She's
9 have you had
10 I've been feeling

11.2

2 How long have you known Katherine?
3 How long has your sister been in Australia?
4 How long have you been teaching English? / How long have you taught English?
5 How long have you had that jacket?
6 How long has Joe been working at the airport? / How long has Joe worked at the airport?
7 Have you always lived in Chicago?

11.3

3 's been / has been
4 's / is
5 haven't played
6 've been waiting / have been waiting
7 've known / have known
8 hasn't been
9 lives *or* 's living / is living
10 's lived / has lived *or* 's been living / has been living
11 's been watching / has been watching
12 haven't watched
13 've had / have had
14 haven't been
15 've always wanted / have always wanted

UNIT 12

12.1

2 for (*also correct without* for)
3 for (*also correct without* for)
4 since
5 for
6 since
7 since
8 for

12.2

2 How long have you had this car?
3 How long have you been waiting?
4 When did your course start?
5 When did Anna arrive in London?
6 How long have you known each other?

12.3

3 He has been ill/unwell since Sunday.
4 She got married a year ago.
5 I've had a headache since I woke up.
6 The meeting started/began at 9 o'clock.
7 I've been working in a hotel for six months. / I've been working there . . .
8 Kate started learning Japanese a long time ago.

12.4

2 No, I haven't seen Lisa/her for about a month.
3 No, I haven't been swimming for a long time.
4 No, I haven't ridden a bike for ages.
6 No, it's about a month since I (last) saw Lisa/her. *or*
No, it's been about a month since . . .
7 No, it's a long time since I (last) went swimming. *or*
No, it's been a long time since . . .
8 No, it's ages since I (last) rode a bike.
or No, it's been ages since . . .

UNIT 13

13.1

2 has gone
3 forgot
4 went
5 had
6 has broken

13.2

3 did William Shakespeare write
4 *OK*
5 Who invented
6 *OK*
7 We washed
8 Where were you born?
9 *OK*
10 Albert Einstein was the scientist who developed

13.3

3 I've forgotten / I have forgotten
4 arrested
5 it's improved / it has improved
6 Have you finished
7 I applied
8 It was
9 There's been / There has been
10 did you find . . . It was
11 He's / He has broken . . . *or* He broke . . . did that happen . . . He fell

UNIT 14

14.1

3 *OK*
4 I bought
5 Where were you
6 Maria left school
7 *OK*
8 *OK*
9 *OK*
10 When was this bridge built?

14.2
2 The weather has been cold recently.
3 It was cold last week.
4 I didn't eat any fruit yesterday.
5 I haven't eaten any fruit today.
6 Emily has earned a lot of money this year.
7 She didn't earn so much last year.
8 Have you had a holiday recently?

14.3
3 I didn't sleep
4 There was … there were
5 worked … he gave
6 She's lived / She has lived
7 died … I never met
8 I've never met / I have never met
9 I haven't seen
10 Did you go … was
11 It's been / It has been … it was
12 have you lived / have you been living … did you live … did you live

14.4
Example answers:
2 I haven't bought anything today.
3 I didn't watch TV yesterday.
4 I went out with some friends yesterday evening.
5 I haven't been to the cinema recently.
6 I've read a lot of books recently.

UNIT 15

15.1
3 It had changed a lot.
4 I hadn't heard it before.
5 She'd arranged to do something else. / She had arranged …
6 The film had already started.
7 We hadn't been there before.
8 I hadn't seen him for five years.
9 They'd just had lunch. / They had just had …
10 He'd never played before. / He had never played …

15.2
2 there was …
She'd gone / She had gone
3 He'd just come back from / He had just come back from
… He looked
4 got a phone call
He was
He'd sent her / He had sent her …
she'd never replied (to them) / she had never replied (to them)

15.3
2 I went
3 had gone
4 he'd already travelled / he had already travelled
5 broke
6 we saw … had broken … we stopped

UNIT 16

16.1
2 They'd been playing football. / They had been playing …
3 I'd been looking forward to it. / I had been looking forward …
4 She'd been having a bad dream. / She had been having …
5 He'd been watching a film. / He had been watching …
6 They'd been waiting a long time. / They had been waiting …

16.2
2 I'd been waiting / I had been waiting … I realised (that) I was (in …)
3 went … had been working *or* had worked
4 had been playing … started
5 *Example answer*:
I'd been walking for about ten minutes when a car suddenly stopped just behind me.

16.3
2 We'd been travelling
3 He was looking
4 She'd been running
5 He was walking
6 I'd had it
7 I'd been going
8 I've been training
9 (When I finally arrived,) she was waiting … she'd been waiting (such a long time)
10 a he was already working
b had already been working
c He's been working

UNIT 17

17.1
2 h
3 c
4 g
5 b
6 a
7 e
8 f

17.2
3 don't have / haven't got (haven't *is less usual*)
4 didn't have
5 doesn't have / hasn't got (hasn't *is less usual*)
6 do you have / have you got (have you *is less usual*)
7 didn't have
8 Does he have / Has he got (Has he *is less usual*)
9 did you have
10 don't have / haven't got
11 had … didn't

17.3
3 I didn't have / hadn't got my phone
4 I have a cold *or* I've got a cold
5 *OK*
6 I didn't have any energy
7 *OK* (*or* It hasn't got many shops.)
8 Did you have (Had you *is unusual*)
9 *OK*
10 he had a beard
11 *OK* (*or* We've got plenty of time.)
12 do you have a shower

17.4
2 has a break
3 had a party
4 have a look
5 's having / is having a nice time
6 had a chat
7 Did you have trouble
8 had a baby
9 was having a shower
10 haven't had a holiday / haven't had a break

UNIT 18

18.1
2 used to have/ride
3 used to live
4 used to be
5 used to eat/like/love
6 used to take
7 used to be
8 used to work

18.2
2 used
3 used to be
4 did
5 used to
6 use
7 to
8 be able
9 didn't

18.3
2–6
- She used to be very lazy, but she works very hard these days.
- She didn't use to like cheese, but she eats lots of cheese now. *or* She used not to like cheese, but …
- She used to play the piano, but she hasn't played the piano for a long time. / … played it for a long time.
- She didn't use to drink tea, but she likes it now. *or* She used not to drink tea, but …
- She used to have a dog, but it died two years ago.

18.4

Example answers:

3 I used to be a vegetarian, but now I eat meat sometimes.
4 I used to watch TV a lot, but I don't watch it much now.
5 I used to hate getting up early, but now it's no problem.
7 I didn't use to drink coffee, but I drink it every day now.
8 I didn't use to like hot weather, but now I love it.

UNIT 19

19.1

2 How long are you going for?
3 When are you leaving?
4 Are you going alone?
5 Are you travelling by car?
6 Where are you staying?

19.2

2 We're having
3 I'm not working
4 I'm leaving
5 are you going
6 Laura isn't coming / Laura's not coming
7 I'm going
8 He's working / He is working

19.3

Example answers:

2 I'm working tomorrow morning.
3 I'm not doing anything tomorrow evening.
4 I'm going swimming next Sunday.
5 I'm going to a party this evening.

19.4

2 Are you going
3 he's moving / he is moving
4 I'm going / I am going … does it start
5 we're meeting / we are meeting
6 Are you doing
7 does this term end … starts
8 We're going / We are going … Who's getting / Who is getting
9 Are you watching
10 leaves … arrives
11 It finishes
12 I'm not using / I am not using

UNIT 20

20.1

2 What are you going to wear?
3 Where are you going to put it?
4 Who are you going to invite?
5 How are you going to cook it?

20.2

2 I'm going to try
3 I'm going to say
4 I'm going to wash
5 I'm not going to accept
6 I'm going to learn
7 I'm going to run
8 I'm going to complain
9 I'm not going to tell

20.3

2 He's going to be late.
3 The boat is going to sink.
4 They're going to run out of petrol.
5 It's going to cost a lot (of money) to repair the car.

20.4

2 was going to buy
3 were going to play
4 was going to phone
5 was going to be
6 was going to give up
7 were you going to say

UNIT 21

21.1

2 I'll turn / I'll switch / I'll put
3 I'll check
4 I'll do
5 I'll show
6 I'll have
7 I'll stay / I'll wait
8 I'll try

21.2

2 I think I'll go to bed.
3 I think I'll go for a walk.
4 I don't think I'll have (any) lunch.
5 I don't think I'll go swimming today.

21.3

3 I'll meet
4 I'll stay
5 I'm having
6 I won't forget
7 we're going
8 Are you doing
9 Will you do
10 Do you go
11 won't tell
12 I'll do

21.4

2 Where shall we go (on holiday)?
3 Shall I buy it?
4 Shall we get a taxi (or) (shall we) walk?
5 What shall I give/buy/get Helen (for her birthday)?
6 What time shall we meet?

UNIT 22

22.1

2 won't
3 'll / will
4 won't
5 'll / will
6 won't

22.2

2 It will look
3 you'll like / you will like
4 You'll enjoy / You will enjoy
5 You'll get / You will get
6 people will live
7 we'll meet / we will meet
8 she'll come / she will come
9 she'll mind
10 it will be

22.3

2 Do you think it will rain?
3 When do you think it will end?
4 How much do you think it will cost?
5 Do you think they'll get married? / … they will get married?
6 What time do you think you'll be back? / … you will be back?
7 What do you think will happen?

22.4

Example answers:

2 I'll be in bed.
3 I'll be at work.
4 I'll probably be at home.
5 I don't know where I'll be.

22.5

2 I'll never forget it.
3 You'll laugh
4 I'm going
5 will win
6 is coming
7 It won't hurt
8 What will happen
9 we're going

UNIT 23

23.1

2 I'll lend
3 I'm going to wash
4 I'll show
5 are you going to paint
6 I'm going to buy
7 I'll have
8 I'm not going to finish
9 (What) is he going to study / (What)'s he going to study
10 I'll call
11 he's going to have … he's going to do

23.2

2 I'll see
3 I'm going to sell
4 you'll find (you're going to find *is also possible*)
5 a I'm going to throw
5 b I'll have it.
6 a I'll take
6 b Amy is going to take (*or* Amy is taking)

23.3

2 d
3 h
4 g
5 c
6 a
7 e
8 b

UNIT 24

24.1
2 b *is true*
3 a *and* c *are true*
4 b *and* d *are true*
5 c *and* d *are true*
6 c *is true*

24.2
2 be going
3 won't be playing
4 will be starting
5 be watching
6 will you be doing
7 won't be going
8 will be landing

24.3
2 we'll be playing / we will be playing
3 She'll be waiting / She will be waiting
4 it will have finished (*or* it will be finished)
5 you'll still be living / you will still be living
6 she'll have travelled / she will have travelled
7 I'll be staying / I will be staying
8 he'll have spent / he will have spent
9 I won't be doing / I will not be doing

UNIT 25

25.1
2 we'll let
3 starts
4 it changes
5 I'll make
6 I'm 40
7 I'll wait
8 he grows up
9 you're
10 is
11 will be
12 you've had

25.2
2 she goes
3 you know
4 I'll wait / I will wait . . . you're / you are
5 Will you still be . . . I get
6 there are . . . I'll let / I will let
7 You won't recognise / You will not recognise . . . you see
8 you need . . . I'm / I am

25.3
2 it gets dark
3 you decide *or* you've decided / you have decided
4 you're in Hong Kong / you go to Hong Kong
5 build the new road *or* 've built the new road / have built the new road
6 she apologises *or* she's apologised / she has apologised

25.4
2 if
3 If
4 when
5 If
6 When
7 if
8 if

UNIT 26

26.1
3 can
4 be able to
5 been able to
6 can (*or* will be able to)
7 be able to
8 can
9 be able to

26.2
Example answers:
2 I used to be able to run fast.
3 I'd like to be able to play the piano.
4 I've never been able to get up early.

26.3
2 could run
3 can wait
4 couldn't sleep
5 can't hear
6 couldn't believe

26.4
2 was able to finish it
3 were able to solve it
4 was able to get away

26.5
4 couldn't
5 managed to
6 could
7 managed to
8 could
9 couldn't
10 managed to

UNIT 27

27.1
2 e
3 b
4 f
5 a
6 d

27.2
2 could
3 can
4 could
5 can
6 can
7 could
8 can
9 could
10 could

27.3
2 could have come
3 could be
4 could have been
5 could have
6 could come
7 have moved
8 gone

27.4
3 couldn't wear
4 couldn't have managed
5 couldn't have been
6 couldn't afford (*or* couldn't manage)
7 couldn't have studied
8 couldn't stand

UNIT 28

28.1
2 must
3 can't
4 must
5 must
6 can't
7 must
8 can't
9 must
10 can't
11 must

28.2
3 know
4 have left
5 be
6 have been
7 be looking
8 have heard
9 have been
10 be joking
11 get / be getting *or* have

28.3
3 It must have been very expensive.
4 They must have gone away.
5 I must have left it in the restaurant last night.
6 It can't have been easy for her.
7 He must have been waiting for somebody.
8 She can't have understood what I said. *or* She couldn't have understood what I said.
9 I must have forgotten to lock it.
10 They must have been having a party.
11 The driver can't have seen the red light. *or* The driver couldn't have seen . . .
12 He can't have worn them much.

UNIT 29

29.1
2 might know
3 might be Brazilian
4 may not be possible
5 may be Tom's
6 might be driving
7 might have one
8 may not be feeling well

29.2
2 have been
3 have arrived
4 be waiting
5 have told
6 have gone
7 be watching
8 have
9 have left
10 have heard
11 have forgotten

29.3
2 might not have wanted
3 couldn't have been
4 couldn't have tried
5 might not have been American

UNIT 30

30.1
2 I'm going to get
3 He might come
4 I might hang
5 She's going
6 I might go away

30.2
2 might wake
3 might spill
4 might need
5 might hear
6 might slip

30.3
2 might have to leave
3 might be able to meet
4 might have to pay
5 might have to wait
6 might be able to fix

30.4
2 I might not recognise him.
3 We might not be able to get tickets for the game.
4 I might not have time to do the shopping.
5 I might not be able to go to the wedding.

30.5
2 I might as well buy a new one.
3 I might as well paint the bathroom too.
4 We might as well watch it.

UNIT 31

31.1
3 I have to go / I'll have to go
4 do you have to go / will you have to go
5 he has to get up
6 We had to run
7 does she have to work
8 I had to do
9 do you have to be
10 We had to close
11 did you have to pay

31.2
3 have to make
4 don't have to decide
5 had to ask
6 don't have to pay
7 didn't have to go
8 has to make
9 had to stand
10 will have to drive / 'll have to drive / is going to have to drive

31.3
3 *OK* (I **have to** remember *is also correct*)
4 I **had to** walk home.
5 *OK* (You **have to** come *is also correct*)
6 He **has to** study
7 We **have to** go
8 She **has had to** wear glasses since . . .

For the present perfect (**has had**) *with* **since**, *see Units 11–12.*

31.4
3 don't have to
4 mustn't
5 don't have to
6 doesn't have to
7 don't have to
8 mustn't
9 mustn't
10 don't have to

UNIT 32

32.1
2 d
3 b
4 e
5 g
6 a
7 c

32.2
2 must
3 mustn't
4 don't need to
5 mustn't
6 needn't
7 mustn't
8 don't need to
9 needn't . . . must

32.3
2 needn't come
3 needn't walk
4 needn't keep
5 needn't worry

32.4
2 You needn't have walked home. You could have taken a taxi.
3 They needn't have stayed at a hotel. They could have stayed with us.
4 She needn't have phoned me at 3 am. She could have waited until the morning.
5 You needn't have shouted at me. You could have been more patient.

32.5
3 You **needn't shout**. / You **don't need to** shout. / You **don't have to** shout.
4 I **didn't need to go** out. / I **didn't have to go** out.
5 *OK*
6 You **needn't** lock the door. / You **don't need to** lock the door. / You **don't have to** lock the door.
7 I **didn't need to say** anything. / I **didn't have to say** anything.
8 *OK*

UNIT 33

33.1
2 You should look for another job.
3 He shouldn't stay up so late.
4 You should take a picture.
5 She shouldn't worry so much.
6 He should put some pictures on the walls.

33.2
2 should be here soon
3 should be working OK
4 shouldn't take long
5 should receive
6 should be much warmer
7 shouldn't cost more
8 should solve

33.3
3 should do
4 should have done
5 should have won
6 should come
7 should have turned
8 should have done

33.4
2 We should have reserved a table.
3 I should have written down her address. / I should have written her address down. *or* I should have written it down.
4 The shop should be open (now / by now). / The shop should have opened by now. *or* It should . . .
5 I shouldn't have been looking at my phone. *or*
I should have looked / been looking where I was going.
6 She shouldn't be doing 50. / She shouldn't be driving so fast. / She should be driving more slowly.
7 I shouldn't have gone to work (yesterday).
8 Team A should win (the match).
9 The driver in front shouldn't have stopped without warning. / . . . shouldn't have stopped so suddenly.

UNIT 34

34.1

2 I should stay / I stay / I stayed a little longer
3 they should visit / they visit / they visited the museum after lunch
4 we should pay / we pay / we paid the rent by Friday
5 we should go / we go / we went to the cinema

34.2

2 *OK*
('suggested that we should meet' *is also correct*)
3 What do you suggest I do / I should do
4 *OK*
('suggest I buy' *is also correct*)
5 I suggest you read / you should read …
6 *OK*
('suggested that Anna should learn', 'suggested that Anna learns' *and* 'suggested that Anna learnt/learned' *are also correct*)

34.3

2 should say
3 should worry
4 should leave
5 should ask
6 should vote
7 should be done

34.4

2 If it should rain
3 If there should be any problems
4 If anyone should ask
6 Should it rain
7 Should there be any problems
8 Should anyone ask

34.5

2 I should keep
3 I should call
4 I should get

UNIT 35

35.1

2 We'd better reserve a table.
3 You'd better put a plaster on it.
4 You'd better not go to work this morning.
5 I'd/We'd better check what time the film starts.
6 I'd better not disturb her right now.

35.2

2 *OK*
3 You **should** come more often.
4 *OK*
5 *OK*
6 everybody **should** learn a foreign language
7 *OK*

35.3

2 had
3 not
4 should
5 to
6 I'd
7 were
8 better
9 hadn't
10 do
11 did
12 was

35.4

2 It's time I had a holiday.
3 It's time the children were in bed. / … went to bed.
4 It's time I started cooking (the) dinner.
5 It's time she/Kate stopped complaining about everything.
6 It's time (some) changes were made

UNIT 36

36.1

Example answers:
2 I wouldn't like to be a teacher.
3 I'd love to learn to fly a plane.
4 It would be nice to have a big garden.
5 I'd like to go to Mexico.

36.2

2 'd enjoy / would enjoy
3 'd have enjoyed / would have enjoyed
4 would you do
5 'd have stopped / would have stopped
6 would have been
7 'd be / would be
8 would have

36.3

2 e
3 b
4 f
5 a
6 d

36.4

2 He promised he'd call. / … he would call.
3 You promised you wouldn't tell her. *or* … wouldn't tell anyone/anybody.
4 They promised they'd wait (for us). / … they would wait.

36.5

2 wouldn't tell
3 wouldn't speak
4 wouldn't let

36.6

2 would shake
3 would share
4 would always forget
5 would stay
6 would always smile

UNIT 37

37.1

2 g
3 d
4 b
5 a
6 h
7 f
8 c

37.2

2 Would you like
3 I'd like
4 Would you like to come
5 Can I take
6 I'd like to
7 Would you like to try
8 Do you mind

37.3

2 Can/Could I/we have the bill, please? *or* … get the bill?
3 Can/Could you check these forms (for me)? *or* Do you think you could check …?
4 Can/Could you turn the music down, please? / … turn it down? *or* Do you think you could turn …?
5 Is it OK if I close the window? *or* Is it all right if …? *or* Can I close …? *or* Do you mind if I close …?
6 Would you like to sit down? *or* Would you like a seat? *or* Can I offer you a seat?
7 Can/Could you tell me how to get to the station? *or* … the way to the station? *or* … where the station is?
8 Can/Could I try on these trousers? *or* Can/Could I try these (trousers) on? *or* I'd like to try on these trousers. *or* Is it OK if I try …
9 Can/Could I get your autograph? / … have your autograph? *or* Do you think I could get/have your autograph?

UNIT 38

38.1

2 dropped
3 lost
4 happened
5 went
6 did
7 was

38.2

2 b
3 a
4 b
5 b
6 a
7 b

38.3
2 I bought
3 would you invite
4 he asked
5 I'd be / I would be
6 somebody gave … I'd have / I would have
7 Would you be … you met
8 would you do … you were … it stopped

38.4
2 If we stayed at a hotel, it would cost too much.
3 If I told you what happened, you wouldn't believe me. *or* … believe it.
4 If she left her job, it would be hard to find another one.
5 If he applied for the job, he wouldn't get it.

UNIT 39

39.1
3 I'd help / I would help
4 It would taste
5 we lived
6 we'd live / we would live
7 I was / I were
8 it wasn't / it weren't
9 I wouldn't wait … I'd go / I would go
10 you didn't go … you wouldn't be
11 there weren't … there wouldn't be
12 would you do if you didn't have

39.2
2 I'd / I would buy them if they weren't so expensive.
3 We'd / We would go on holiday if we could afford it.
4 We could have lunch outside if it weren't/wasn't raining.
5 If I wanted his advice, I'd / I would ask for it.

39.3
2 I wish I had more free time.
3 I wish Helen were/was here.
4 I wish it weren't/wasn't (so) cold.
5 I wish I didn't live in a big city.
6 I wish I could find my phone.
7 I wish I was/were feeling well/better.
8 I wish I didn't have to get up early tomorrow.
9 I wish I knew more about science.

39.4
Example answers:
1 I wish I was at home.
2 I wish I had a big garden.
3 I wish I could tell jokes.
4 I wish I was taller.

UNIT 40

40.1
2 If she'd missed / she had missed (the train), she'd have missed / she would have missed (her flight too).
3 I'd have forgotten / I would have forgotten (if) you hadn't reminded
4 I'd had / I had had (your email address) I'd have sent / I would have sent (you an email)
5 they'd have enjoyed / they would have enjoyed (it more if the weather) had been (better)
6 It would have been (quicker if) we'd walked / we had walked
7 you'd told / you had told (me) I'd have tried / I would have tried
8 I were / I was
9 I'd been / I had been

40.2
2 If the road hadn't been icy, the accident wouldn't have happened.
3 If I'd known / If I had known (that you had to get up early), I'd have woken / I would have woken you up.
4 If I hadn't lost my phone (*or* If I'd had my phone), I'd have called you. *or* … I would have called you. *or* … I could have called you.
5 If Karen hadn't been wearing a seat belt, she'd have been injured / she would have been injured (in the crash). *or* … she might have been injured *or* … she could have been injured
6 If you'd had / If you had had (some) breakfast, you wouldn't be hungry now.
7 If I'd had / If I had had enough money, I'd have got / I would have got a taxi. (*or* … taken a taxi)
8 If Dan had done well/better at school, he could/would have gone to university.

40.3
2 I wish I'd learned / I wish I had learned to play a musical instrument (when I was younger). *or* I wish I could play … / I wish I was able to play …
3 I wish I hadn't painted it red. *or* … the gate red. *or* I wish I had painted it a different colour.
4 I wish we'd gone / I wish we had gone by train. *or* I wish we hadn't gone by car.
5 I wish we'd had / I wish we had had more time (to do all the things we wanted to do).
6 I wish I hadn't moved (to my new flat). *or* I wish I'd stayed where I was. / … stayed in my old flat.

UNIT 41

41.1
2 hope
3 wish
4 wished
5 hope
6 wish
7 hope

41.2
2 wasn't/weren't
3 'd told / had told
4 had / could have
5 could
6 hadn't bought
7 didn't have
8 have gone

41.3
2 I wish she would come. *or* … would hurry up.
3 I wish somebody would give me a job.
4 I wish the/that dog would stop barking.
5 I wish you wouldn't drive so fast.
6 I wish you wouldn't leave the door open (all the time).
7 I wish people wouldn't drop litter in the street.

41.4
3 I knew
4 we hadn't gone
5 the bus would come
6 I could come
7 it was/were
8 I'd taken / I had taken
9 you'd listen / you would listen
10 you wouldn't complain *or* you didn't complain
11 it wasn't/weren't
12 the weather would change
13 I had / I could have
14 we could have stayed

UNIT 42

42.1
2 is made
3 was damaged
4 are shown
5 were invited
6 's/is found
7 were overtaken
8 are held
9 was injured
10 is surrounded
11 was sent
12 is owned

42.2
2 When was television invented?
3 How are mountains formed?
4 When was DNA discovered?
5 What is silver used for?

42.3

2 a covers
b is covered
3 a was stolen
b disappeared
4 a died
b were brought up
5 a sank
b was rescued
6 a was fired
b resigned
7 a doesn't bother
b 'm/am not bothered
8 a was knocked
b fell
9 a are they called
b do you call

42.4

2 All flights were cancelled because of fog.
3 I was accused of stealing money.
4 How is this word used?
5 All taxes are included in the price.
6 We were warned not to go out alone.
7 This office isn't / is not used any more.
8 Five hundred people were invited to the wedding.

UNIT 43

43.1

3 be made
4 be kept
5 have been repaired
6 be carried
7 have been arrested
8 be delayed
9 have been caused
10 be knocked
11 be known
12 have been forgotten

43.2

3 It's been stolen! / It has been stolen!
4 Somebody has taken it. *or*
. . . taken my umbrella.
5 He hasn't been seen since then.
6 I haven't seen her for ages.
7 Have you ever been stung by a bee?
8 It's / It is being repaired at the moment.
9 It hasn't / It has not been found yet.
10 The furniture had been moved.

43.3

2 A new road is being built
3 Two new hotels have been built
4 some new houses were being built
5 The date of the meeting has been changed.
6 I didn't know that our conversation was being recorded.
7 Is anything being done about the problem?
8 They hadn't / had not been cleaned for ages.

UNIT 44

44.1

2 was given
3 wasn't told / was not told
4 's paid / is paid
5 been shown
6 was asked
7 weren't given / were not given
8 to be offered

44.2

2 being invited
3 being given
4 being knocked down
5 being bitten
6 being treated
7 being stuck

44.3

2 got stung
3 get used
4 got stolen
5 get paid
6 get broken
7 get asked
8 got stopped

44.4

3 were
4 given
5 lost
6 being
7 get
8 doesn't
9 was
10 weren't

UNIT 45

45.1

2 Many people are reported to be homeless after the floods.
3 The thieves are thought to have got in through a window in the roof.
4 The driver (of the car) is alleged to have been driving at 110 miles an hour. *or* . . . to have driven at . . .
5 The building is reported to have been badly damaged by the fire.
6 The company is said to be losing a lot of money.
7 The company is believed to have lost a lot of money last year.
8 The company is expected to make a loss this year.

45.2

2 they're / they are supposed to be
3 it's / it is supposed to have been
4 they're / they are supposed to have won
5 the view is supposed to be
6 she's / she is supposed to be living

45.3

2 You're / You are supposed to be my friend.
3 I'm / I am supposed to be on a diet.
4 It was supposed to be a joke.
5 Or maybe it's / it is supposed to be a flower.
6 You're / You are supposed to be working.
7 It's supposed to be open every day.

45.4

2 're / are supposed to start
3 was supposed to phone
4 aren't / 're not / are not supposed to put
5 was supposed to depart
6 isn't / 's not / is not supposed to lift

UNIT 46

46.1

1 b
2 a
3 a
4 b

46.2

2 Sarah has her car serviced once a year.
3 Have you had your eyes tested recently?
4 I don't like having my hair cut.
5 It cost fifteen pounds to have my suit cleaned.
6 You need to get this document translated as soon as possible.

46.3

2 I had it cut.
3 We had them cleaned.
4 He had it built.
5 I had them delivered.
6 She had them repaired.

46.4

2 f
3 a
4 e
5 c
6 b

46.5

2 We had our bags searched.
3 I've had my salary increased. *or*
I had my salary increased.
4 He's had his application refused. *or*
He had his application refused.

UNIT 47

47.1

2 (that) it was too far
3 (that) she didn't want to go
4 (that) he would let me know next week.
5 (that) he hadn't seen her for a while
6 (that) I could borrow hers.
7 (that) she wasn't enjoying it very much
8 (that) he sold it a few months ago
or he'd sold it . . . / he had sold it . . .
9 (that) she didn't know
10 (that) there were twenty students in her class

47.2

Example answers:

2 wasn't coming / was going somewhere else / couldn't come
3 they didn't like each other / they didn't get on with each other / they couldn't stand each other
4 he didn't know anyone
5 she would be away / she was going away
6 you were staying at home
7 you couldn't speak / you didn't speak any other languages
8 he'd seen you / he saw you last weekend

UNIT 48

48.1

2 But you said you didn't like fish.
3 But you said you couldn't drive.
4 But you said she had a very well-paid job.
5 But you said you didn't have any brothers or sisters.
6 But you said you'd / you had never been to the United States.
7 But you said you were working tomorrow evening.
8 But you said she was a friend of yours.

48.2

2 Tell
3 Say
4 said
5 told
6 said
7 told
8 said
9 tell … said
10 tell … say

48.3

2 her to slow down
3 her not to worry
4 asked Tom to give me a hand *or* … to help me
5 asked/told me to open my bag
6 told him to mind his own business
7 asked her to marry him
8 told her not to wait (for me) if I was late

UNIT 49

49.1

2 Were you born there?
3 Are you married?
4 How long have you been married?
5 What do you do?
6 What does your wife do?
7 Do you have (any) children? *or* Have you got (any) children?
8 How old are they?

49.2

3 Who paid the bill? / Who paid it?
4 What are you worried about?
5 What happened?
6 What did she/Diane say?
7 Who does it / this book belong to?
8 Who lives in that house? / Who lives there?
9 What did you fall over?
10 What fell off the shelf?
11 What does it / this word mean?
12 Who was she/Sarah with?
13 What are you looking for?
14 Who does she/Emma remind you of?

49.3

2 How is cheese made?
3 Why isn't Sue working today?
4 What time are your friends arriving?
5 Why was the meeting cancelled?
6 When was paper invented?
7 Where were your parents born?
8 Why didn't you come to the party?
9 How did the accident happen?
10 Why aren't you happy?
11 How many languages can you speak?

49.4

2 Don't you like him?
3 Isn't it good?
4 Don't you have any? *or* Haven't you got any?

UNIT 50

50.1

2 c
3 a
4 b
5 b
6 c
7 b
8 a

50.2

2 How far is it to the airport?
3 I wonder how old Tom is.
4 How long have they been married?
5 Do you know how long they have been married?
6 Could you tell me where the station is?
7 I don't know whether anyone was injured in the accident.
8 Do you know what time you will arrive tomorrow?

50.3

2 She asked me how long I'd been in London. *or* … how long I had been …
3 They asked me if/whether I'd been to London before. *or* … I had been …
4 She asked me if/whether I liked London.
5 He asked me where I was staying.
6 She asked me how long I was going to stay.
7 She asked me if/whether I thought London was expensive. *or* … is expensive.
8 They asked me why I'd come to London. *or* … why I had come … *or* … why I came …

UNIT 51

51.1

2 doesn't
3 was
4 has
5 will
6 should
7 won't
8 do
9 didn't
10 might
11 am … isn't *or* 'm not … is *or* can't … can *or* can't … is
12 would … could … can't

51.2

3 Do you? I don't.
4 Didn't you? I did.
5 Aren't you? I am.
6 Did you? I didn't.

51.3

Example answers:

3 So did I. *or* Did you? What did you watch?
4 Neither will I. *or* Won't you? Where will you be?
5 So do I. *or* Do you? What sort of books do you like?
6 So would I. *or* Would you? Where would you like to live?
7 Neither can I. *or* Can't you? Why not?
8 So am I. *or* Are you? Are you doing something nice?

51.4

2 I hope so.
3 I hope not.
4 I don't think so.
5 I suppose so.
6 I'm afraid so.
7 I think so.
8 I'm afraid not.

UNIT 52

52.1

3 don't you
4 were you
5 does she
6 isn't he
7 did it
8 can't you
9 will they
10 aren't there
11 shall we
12 is it
13 aren't I
14 would you
15 hasn't she
16 should I
17 had he
18 will you

52.2

2 It's (very) expensive, isn't it?
3 The course was great, wasn't it?
4 You've had your hair cut, haven't you? *or*
You had your hair cut, didn't you?
5 She has a good voice, doesn't she?
or She has a good voice, hasn't she?
or She's got / She has got a good voice, hasn't she?
6 It doesn't look right, does it?
7 This bridge isn't very safe, is it? *or*
… doesn't look very safe, does it?

52.3

2 Joe, you couldn't help me (with this table), could you?
3 Lisa, you don't know where Sarah is, do you? *or*
… you haven't seen Sarah, have you?
4 Helen, you don't have a tennis racket, do you? *or*
… you haven't got a tennis racket, have you?
5 Anna, you couldn't take me to the station, could you? *or*
… you couldn't give me a lift to the station, could you?
6 Robert, you haven't seen my keys, have you?

UNIT 53

53.1

2 playing tennis
3 going for a walk
4 causing the accident
5 waiting a few minutes
6 not telling the truth *or*
(She admitted) lying.

53.2

2 making
3 listening
4 applying
5 reading
6 living
7 travelling
8 forgetting
9 paying
10 trying
11 losing
12 interrupting

53.3

2 I don't mind you driving it.
3 Can you imagine anybody being so stupid?
4 We can't stop it raining.
5 I don't want to keep you waiting.

53.4

Example answers:
2 going out
3 sitting on the floor
4 having a picnic
5 laughing
6 breaking down

UNIT 54

54.1

2 to help him
3 to carry her bag (for her)
4 to meet at 8 o'clock
5 to tell him her name / to give him her name
6 not to tell anyone *or* (She promised) she wouldn't tell anyone.

54.2

2 to get
3 to live
4 to play
5 to tell
6 say *or* to say

54.3

2 to look
3 to move
4 waiting
5 to finish
6 barking
7 to be
8 having
9 missing
10 to say

54.4

2 Tom appears to be worried about something.
3 You seem to know a lot of people.
4 My English seems to be getting better.
5 That car appears to have broken down.
6 Rachel seems to be enjoying her job.
7 They claim to have solved the problem.

54.5

2 what to do
3 how to ride
4 whether to go
5 where to put
6 how to use

UNIT 55

55.1

2 or do you want me to lend you some
3 or would you like me to shut it
4 or would you like me to show you
5 or do you want me to repeat it
6 or do you want me to wait

55.2

2 to stay with them
3 to call Joe.
4 him to be careful
5 her to give him a hand

55.3

2 I didn't expect it to rain.
3 Let him do what he wants.
4 Tom's glasses make him look older.
5 I want you to know the truth.
6 Sarah persuaded me to apply for the job.
7 My lawyer advised me not to say anything to the police.
8 I was warned not to believe everything he says.
9 Having a car enables you to get around more easily.

55.4

2 to do
3 cry
4 to study
5 finish
6 do
7 to do
8 drive
9 change
10 to work

UNIT 56

56.1

2 driving
3 to go
4 going
5 to win
6 asking
7 asking
8 to answer
9 causing
10 to do
11 being
12 to climb
13 to tell
14 talking … to see

56.2

2 He doesn't remember crying
3 He remembers falling into the river.
4 He doesn't remember saying he wanted to be a doctor. *or* He doesn't remember wanting to be a doctor.
5 He doesn't remember being bitten by a dog.
6 He remembers his sister being born (when he was four).

56.3

1 b meeting
  c leaving/putting
  d to say
  e lending
  f to call/phone
2 a doing
  b to say
  c wearing / having / taking / putting on
  d leaving / giving up
3 a to become
  b working
  c reading
  d going up / rising / increasing

UNIT 57

57.1

2 to reach
3 knocking
4 to put
5 to concentrate
6 asking
7 calling
8 to remember
9 restarting

57.2

2 It needs cutting.
3 They need cleaning.
4 They need tightening.
5 It needs emptying.

57.3

2 washing
3 looking
4 to think
5 cutting
6 to go
7 to iron
8 ironing

57.4

2 look *or* to look
3 overhearing
4 smiling
5 make *or* to make
6 organise *or* to organise
7 thinking
8 get *or* to get

UNIT 58

58.1

Example answers:

2 I don't mind playing cards.
3 I don't like being alone. *or* . . . to be alone.
4 I enjoy going to museums.
5 I love cooking. *or* I love to cook.
6 I hate getting up early.

58.2

2 She likes teaching biology.
3 He likes taking pictures. *or* He likes to take pictures.
4 I didn't like working there.
5 She likes studying medicine.
6 He doesn't like being famous.
7 She doesn't like taking risks. *or* She doesn't like to take risks.
8 I like to know things in advance.

58.3

2 to sit
3 turning
4 doing *or* to do
5 to get
6 being
7 to come / to go
8 living / being
9 to talk
10 to have / to know / to get / to hear / to be told
11 to wait
12 losing *or* to lose

58.4

2 I would like / I'd like to have seen the programme.
3 I would hate / I'd hate to have lost my watch.
4 I would love / I'd love to have met your parents.
5 I wouldn't like to have been alone.
6 I would prefer / I'd prefer to have travelled by train.

UNIT 59

59.1

Example answers:

2 I prefer basketball to football.
3 I prefer going to the cinema to watching movies at home.
4 I prefer being very busy to having nothing to do.
6 I prefer to go to the cinema rather than watch movies at home. *or* I prefer going to the cinema rather than watching movies at home.
7 I prefer to be very busy rather than have nothing to do. *or* I prefer being very busy to having nothing to do.

59.2

3 prefer
4 eat / stay
5 I'd rather (wait) / I'd prefer to (wait)
6 to go
7 (I'd) rather (think) / (I'd) prefer to (think)
8 I'd prefer
9 go
11 I'd rather listen to some music than watch TV.
12 I'd prefer to eat/stay at home rather than go to a restaurant.
13 I'd rather go for a swim than play tennis. *or* . . . than have a game of tennis.
14 I'd prefer to think about it for a while rather than decide now.

59.3

2 (would you rather) I paid it
3 would you rather I did it
4 would you rather I phoned her

59.4

2 came
3 watch
4 than
5 didn't
6 was
7 to watch
8 didn't
9 did
10 rather than

UNIT 60

60.1

2 applying for the job
3 remembering names
4 winning the lottery
5 being late
6 eating at home
7 having to queue *or* (without) queuing
8 being 90 years old

60.2

2 by standing
3 by pressing
4 by borrowing
5 by driving
6 by putting

60.3

2 paying/settling
3 going
4 making
5 being/travelling/sitting
6 going
7 asking/telling/consulting/informing
8 doing/having
9 turning/going
10 taking
11 bending
12 buying

60.4
2 I'm looking forward to seeing her (again).
3 I'm not looking forward to going to the dentist (tomorrow).
4 She's looking forward to leaving school (next summer).
5 They're looking forward to moving (to their new apartment).

UNIT 61

61.1
2 used to going
3 used to working / used to being
4 used to walking
5 used to living

61.2
1 It took her a few months to **get used to** it. . . .
She**'s used to working** nights. / She **is used to working** nights.
2 When Jack started working in this job, he **wasn't used to** driving two hours to work every morning, but after some time he **got used to** it.
. . . He**'s used to driving** two hours every morning. / He **is used to driving** . . .

61.3
2 No, I'm used to sleeping on the floor.
3 I'm used to working long hours.
4 I'm not used to the crowds (of people).

61.4
2 They soon got used to her. / . . . to the/their new teacher.
3 She had to get used to living in a much smaller house.
4 She can't get used to the weather.
5 He had to get used to having less money.

61.5
2 drink
3 eating
4 having
5 have/own
6 go
7 be
8 being

UNIT 62

62.1
2 doing
3 coming/going
4 doing/trying
5 buying/having
6 solving
7 buying/having/owning
8 seeing

62.2
2 of stealing
3 from taking off
4 of getting
5 on telling
6 to eating
7 for being
8 from walking (*or* . . . stop people walking)
9 for inviting
10 of using
11 of (not) trying

62.3
2 on taking Ann to the station
3 on getting married
4 Sue for coming to see her
5 (to me) for being late
6 me of not caring about other people

UNIT 63

63.1
2 h
3 d
4 g
5 b
6 a
7 e
8 c

63.2
2 There's no point in working if you don't need money.
3 There's no point in trying to study if you feel tired. *or*
There's no point in studying if . . .
4 There's no point in hurrying if you have plenty of time.

63.3
2 remembering people's names
3 finding a job / getting a job
4 getting a ticket for the game
5 understanding one another

63.4
2 going / travelling / getting
3 getting
4 watching
5 going / climbing / walking
6 getting / being
7 practising
8 working
9 applying
10 trying

63.5
2 went swimming
3 go skiing
4 goes riding
5 's/has gone shopping *or* went shopping

UNIT 64

64.1
2 I opened the box to see what was in it.
3 I moved to a new apartment to be nearer my friends.
4 I couldn't find a knife to chop the onions. *or*
. . . a knife to chop the onions with.
5 I called the police to report the accident.
6 I called the hotel to find out if they had any rooms free.
7 I employed an assistant to help me with my work.

64.2
2 to do
3 to walk
4 to drink
5 to put / to carry
6 to discuss / to consider / to talk about
7 to go / to travel
8 to talk / to speak
9 to wear / to put on
10 to celebrate
11 to help / to assist
12 to be

64.3
2 to
3 for
4 to
5 for
6 for
7 to
8 for . . . to

64.4
2 so that I wouldn't get/be cold.
3 so that he could contact me. / . . . would be able to contact me.
4 so that nobody else would hear us. / so that nobody else could hear us. / . . . would be able to hear us.
5 so that we can start the meeting on time. / so that we'll be able to start . . .
6 so that we wouldn't forget anything.
7 so that the car behind me could overtake. / . . . would be able to overtake.

UNIT 65

65.1
2 The window was difficult to open.
3 Some words are impossible to translate.
4 A car is expensive to maintain.
5 This meat isn't safe to eat.
6 My house is easy to get to from here.

65.2
2 It's an easy mistake to make.
3 It's a great place to live.
4 It was a strange thing to say.

65.3
2 glad
3 to hear
4 of you
5 to help
6 amazed
7 to make
8 not
9 silly

65.4
2 Paul was the last (person) to arrive.
3 Emily was the only student to pass (the exam). / … the only one to pass (the exam).
4 I was the second customer/person to complain.
5 Neil Armstrong was the first person/man to walk on the moon.

65.5
2 You're / You are bound to be tired
3 He's / He is sure to forget
4 It's / It is not likely to rain *or* It isn't likely to rain
5 There's / There is sure to be

UNIT 66

66.1
3 I'm afraid of losing it.
4 I was afraid to tell her.
5 We were afraid of missing our train.
6 We were afraid to look.
7 I was afraid of dropping it.
8 Don't be afraid to ask.
9 I was afraid of running out of petrol.

66.2
2 interested in starting
3 interested to know / interested to hear
4 interested in studying
5 interested to hear / interested to know (interested in hearing/knowing *is also possible here*)
6 interested in looking

66.3
2 sorry to hear
3 sorry for saying / sorry I said
4 sorry to see
5 sorry for making / sorry I made

66.4
1 b to leave
  c from leaving
2 a to solve
  b to solve
  c in solving
3 a of going / about going
  b to go (*or* on going)
  c to go
  d to going
4 a to buy
  b on buying
  c to buy
  d of buying

UNIT 67

67.1
1 b give
2 a stopped
  b stop
3 a open
  b opened
4 a say
  b said (says *is also possible*)
5 a fell
  b fall

67.2
2 We saw Clare eating/sitting in a restaurant.
3 We saw David and Helen playing tennis.
4 We could smell something burning.
5 We could hear Bill playing his/the guitar.
6 We saw Linda jogging/running.

67.3
3 say
4 happen
5 crying
6 put
7 tell
8 explode
9 crawling
10 riding
11 slam
12 lying

UNIT 68

68.1
2 Amy was sitting in an armchair reading a book.
3 Nicola opened the door carefully trying not to make a noise.
4 Sarah went out saying she would be back in an hour.
5 Lisa worked in Rome for two years teaching English.
6 Anna walked around the town looking at the sights and taking pictures.

68.2
2 I got very wet walking in the rain.
3 Laura had an accident driving to work.
4 My friend slipped and fell getting off a bus.
5 Emily hurt her back trying to lift a heavy box.
6 Two people were overcome by smoke trying to put out the fire.

68.3
Example answers:
2 Having bought our tickets / Having got our tickets
3 Having discussed the problem / Having talked about the problem / Having thought about the problem
4 Having said he was hungry
5 Having lost his job / Having given up his job / Having been fired from his job
6 Having spent most of his life / Having lived (for) most of his life

68.4
2 Thinking they might be hungry, …
3 Being a vegetarian, …
4 Not having a phone, …
5 Having travelled a lot, …
6 Not being able to speak the local language, …
7 Having spent nearly all our money, …

UNIT 69

69.1
3 We went to **a** very nice restaurant …
4 *OK*
5 I use **a** toothbrush …
6 … if there's **a** bank near here?
7 … for **an** insurance company.
8 *OK*
9 … we stayed in **a** big hotel.
10 If you have **a** problem …
11 … It's **an** interesting idea.
12 *OK*
13 … It's **a** good game.
14 *OK*
15 … wearing **a** beautiful necklace.
16 … have **an** airport?

69.2
3 a key
4 a coat
5 ice
6 a biscuit
7 electricity
8 a question
9 a moment
10 blood
11 a decision
12 an interview

69.3
2 days
3 meat
4 a queue
5 jokes
6 friends
7 people
8 air
9 patience
10 an umbrella
11 languages
12 space

UNIT 70

70.1
1 b there's a lot of noise
2 a Light
  b a light
3 a time
  b a great time
4 a a glass of water
  b broken glass
5 a a very nice room
  b room

70.2
2 bad luck
3 journey
4 complete chaos
5 doesn't
6 some lovely scenery
7 very hard work
8 paper
9 heavy traffic
10 Your hair is … it

70.3

2 furniture
3 chair**s**
4 hair
5 progress
6 permission
7 advice
8 experience
9 experience**s**
10 damage

70.4

2 I'd like some information about places to visit (in the town).
3 Can you give me some advice about which courses to do? / . . . courses I can do?
4 I've (just) got some good news. / I've (just) had some good news. / I (just) got some good news.
5 It's a beautiful view (from here), isn't it?
6 What horrible/awful weather!

UNIT 71

71.1

3 They're vegetables.
4 It's a flower.
5 They're planets.
6 It's a game.
7 They're tools.
8 They're rivers.
9 It's an insect.
10 They're languages.

71.2

2 He's a waiter.
3 She's a journalist.
4 He's a surgeon.
5 He's a chef.
6 He's a plumber.
7 She's a tour guide.
8 She's an interpreter.

71.3

2 a careful driver
3 some books
4 books
5 sore feet
6 a sore throat
7 a lovely present
8 some students
9 without an umbrella
10 Some people

71.4

4 a
5 Some
6 an
7 – (You're always asking questions!)
8 a
9 – (Do you like staying in hotels?)
10 Some
11 – (Those are nice shoes.)
12 You need **a** visa to visit **some** countries
13 Kate is **a** teacher. Her parents were teachers too.
14 He's **a** liar. He's always telling lies.

UNIT 72

72.1

1 . . . and **a** magazine. **The** book is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put **the** magazine.
2 I saw **an** accident this morning. **A** car crashed into **a** tree. **The** driver of **the** car wasn't hurt, but **the** car was badly damaged.
3 . . . **a** blue one and **a** grey one. **The** blue one belongs to my neighbours. I don't know who **the** owner of **the** grey one is.
4 My friends live in **an** old house in **a** small village. There is **a** beautiful garden behind **the** house. I would like to have **a** garden like that.

72.2

1 a a
  b the
  c the
2 a a
  b a
  c the
3 a the
  b the
  c a
4 a the
  b a
  c an
5 a the
  b a
  c a

72.3

2 **the** dentist
3 **the** door
4 **a** problem
5 **the** station
6 **the** post office
7 **a** very good player
8 **an** airport
9 **The** nearest airport
10 **the** floor
11 **the** book
12 **a** job in **a** bank
13 **a** small apartment in **the** city centre
14 **a** shop at **the** end of **the** street

72.4

Example answers:
2 About once a month.
3 Once or twice a year.
4 About seven hours a night.
5 Two or three times a week.
6 About two hours a day.
7 50 kilometres an hour.

UNIT 73

73.1

1 **a** lift
2 **a** nice holiday . . . **the** best holiday
3 **the** nearest shop . . . **the** end of this street
4 **a** lovely day . . . **a** cloud in **the** sky
5 **the** most expensive hotel . . . **a** cheaper hotel
6 to travel **in space** . . . go to **the** moon
7 think of **the** movie . . . I thought **the** ending . . .
8 Is it **a** star? No, it's **a** planet. It's **the** largest planet in **the** solar system.

73.2

2 TV
3 the radio
4 The television
5 dinner
6 the same name
7 for breakfast
8 vitamin C
9 the internet
10 the ground . . . the sky
11 The next train . . . platform 3

73.3

2 . . . doing **the** same thing
3 **Room 25** is on **the** second floor.
4 It was **a** very hot day. It was **the** hottest day of **the** year.
5 We had **lunch** in **a** nice restaurant by **the** sea.
6 What's on at **the** cinema . . .
7 I had **a** big breakfast . . .
8 You'll find **the** information you need at **the** top of **page 15**.

73.4

2 **the** sea
3 question 3
4 **the** cinema
5 **the** question
6 breakfast
7 Gate 24
8 **the** gate

UNIT 74

74.1

2 school
3 the school
4 school
5 . . . get to and from school
6 the school
7 school
8 . . . walk to school. The school isn't . . .

74.2
1 b university
c university
d the university
2 a hospital
b the hospital
c the hospital
d hospital
3 a prison
b the prison
c prison
4 a church
b church
c the church

74.3
2 to work
3 bed
4 at home
5 the bed
6 after work
7 in bed
8 home
9 work
10 like home

74.4
2 to school
3 at home *or* stayed home
(*without* at)
4 to work
5 at university
6 in bed
7 to hospital
8 in prison

UNIT 75

75.1
Example answers:
2–5 I like cats.
I don't like zoos.
I don't mind snow.
I'm not interested in boxing.

75.2
1 b the apples
2 a the people
b people
3 a names
b the names
4 a The First World War
b war
5 a hard work
b the work

75.3
3 spiders
4 meat
5 the questions
6 the people
7 Biology
8 lies
9 The hotels
10 The water
11 the grass
12 patience

75.4
1 stories
2 the words
3 the rooms
4 public transport
5 All the books
6 Life
7 The weather
8 water
9 films ('films with unhappy endings' *in general*)

UNIT 76

76.1
1 b the cheetah
c the kangaroo (and the rabbit)
2 a the swan
b the penguin
c the owl
3 a the wheel
b the laser
c the telescope
4 a the rupee
b the (Canadian) dollar
c the . . .

76.2
2 a
3 the
4 a
5 the
6 the
7 a
8 The
9 the
10 a

76.3
2 the sick
3 the unemployed
4 the injured
5 the elderly
6 the rich

76.4
2 a German
Germans / German people
3 a Frenchman/Frenchwoman
the French / French people
4 a Russian
Russians / Russian people
5 a Japanese
the Japanese / Japanese people
6 a Brazilian
Brazilians / Brazilian people
7 an Englishman/Englishwoman
the English / English people
8 . . .

UNIT 77

77.1
2 The doctor
3 Doctor Thomas
4 Professor Brown
5 the President
6 President Kennedy
7 Inspector Roberts
8 the Wilsons
9 the United States
10 France

77.2
3 *OK*
4 . . . and **the** United States
5 . . . than **the** north
6 *OK*
7 *OK*
8 . . . in **the** Swiss Alps
9 **The** UK . . .
10 **The** Seychelles . . . in **the** Indian Ocean
11 *OK*
12 **The** River Volga flows into **the** Caspian Sea.

77.3
2 (in) South America
3 **the** Nile
4 Sweden
5 **the** United States
6 **the** Rockies
7 **the** Mediterranean
8 Australia
9 **the** Pacific
10 **the** Indian Ocean
11 **the** Thames
12 **the** Danube
13 Thailand
14 **the** Panama Canal
15 **the** Amazon

UNIT 78

78.1
2 Turner's in Carter Road
3 **the** Crown (Hotel) in Park Road
4 St Peter's in Market Street
5 **the** City Museum in George Street
6 Blackstone's in Forest Avenue
7 Mario's in George Street
8 Victoria Park at the end of Market Street

78.2
2 **The** Eiffel Tower
3 Buckingham Palace
4 **The** White House
5 **The** Kremlin
6 Broadway
7 **The** Acropolis
8 Gatwick Airport

78.3
2 St Paul's Cathedral
3 Central Park
4 **the** Great Wall
5 Dublin Airport
6 **The** Classic
7 Liverpool University
8 **the** National Museum
9 Harrison's
10 Cathay Pacific
11 **The** Morning News
12 **the** Leaning Tower
13 Cambridge University Press
14 **the** College of Art
15 **The** Imperial Hotel is in Baker Street.
16 **The** Statue of Liberty is at the entrance to New York Harbor.

UNIT 79

79.1

2 don't
3 doesn't
4 some
5 them
6 pair
7 are
8 a
9 it

79.2

2 means
3 series
4 species
5 series
6 news
7 species
8 means

79.3

2 don't
3 want
4 was
5 are
6 is *or* are
7 Do
8 do *or* does
9 enjoy
10 is *or* are

79.4

2 **is** too hot
3 **isn't** enough money
4 **isn't** long enough
5 **is** a lot to carry

79.5

3 … wearing black jeans.
4 … very nice **people**.
5 *OK*
6 There was **a police officer / a policeman / a policewoman** …
7 **These** scissors **aren't** …
8 *OK* (The company **has** *is also correct*)
9 … is **a** very rare species.
10 Twelve hours **is** …

UNIT 80

80.1

3 train ticket
4 ticket machine
5 hotel staff
6 exam results
7 race horse
8 horse race
9 running shoes
10 shoe shop
11 shop window
12 window cleaner
13 a construction company scandal
14 car factory workers
15 road improvement scheme
16 New York department store

80.2

2 seat belt
3 credit card
4 weather forecast
5 washing machine
6 wedding ring
7 room number
8 birthday party
9 truck driver

80.3

2 school football team
3 film production company
4 life insurance policy
5 tourist information office

80.4

2 two-hour
3 two hours
4 twenty-pound
5 ten-pound
6 15-minute
7 60 minutes
8 twelve-storey
9 five days
10 Five-star
11 six years old
12 six-year-old

UNIT 81

81.1

3 your friend's umbrella
4 *OK*
5 James's daughter
6 Helen and Andy's son
7 *OK*
8 *OK*
9 Your children's friends
10 *OK*
11 Our neighbours' garden
12 David's hair
13 *OK*
14 my best friend's party
15 *OK*
16 Ben's parents' car
17 *OK*
18 *OK* (the government's policy *is also OK*)

81.2

2 father's
3 apples
4 Children's
5 Switzerland's
6 parents'
7 photos
8 someone else's
9 Shakespeare's

81.3

2 Last week's storm caused a lot of damage.
3 The town's only cinema has closed down.
4 Britain's weather is very changeable.
5 The region's main industry is tourism.

81.4

2 twenty minutes' walk
3 two weeks' holiday / fourteen days' holiday / a fortnight's holiday
4 an/one hour's sleep

UNIT 82

82.1

2 hurt himself
3 blame herself
4 put yourself
5 enjoyed themselves
6 burn yourself
7 express myself

82.2

2 me
3 myself
4 us
5 yourself
6 you
7 ourselves
8 them
9 themselves

82.3

3 feel
4 dried myself
5 concentrate
6 defend yourself
7 meeting
8 relax

82.4

2 themselves
3 each other
4 each other
5 themselves
6 each other
7 ourselves
8 each other
9 introduced **ourselves** to **each other**

82.5

2 I made it myself
3 Laura told me herself / Laura herself told me
4 know themselves
5 cuts it himself
6 do it yourself?

UNIT 83

83.1

2 We met a **relative of yours**.
3 Jason borrowed **a book of mine**.
4 I met Lisa and **some friends of hers**.
5 We had dinner with **a neighbour of ours**.
6 I went on holiday with **two friends of mine**.
7 I met **a friend of Amy's** at the party.
8 It's always been **an ambition of mine** to travel round the world.

83.2

2 his own opinions
3 her own business
4 our own words
5 its own private beach

83.3

2 your own fault
3 her own ideas
4 your own problems
5 his own decisions

83.4

2 make her own (clothes)
3 clean your own (shoes)
4 bake our own (bread)
5 write their own (songs)

83.5

2 myself
3 our own
4 themselves
5 himself
6 their own
7 yourself
8 her own

83.6

2 Sam and Chris are colleagues of **mine**.
3 I was scared. I didn't want to go out **on** my own.
4 In my last job I had **my** own office.
5 He must be lonely. He's always **by** himself.
6 My parents have gone away with some friends of **theirs**.
7 Are there any countries that produce all **their** own food?

UNIT 84

84.1

3 There's / There is
4 there wasn't
5 Is it
6 Is there
7 there was
8 It isn't / It's not
9 There wasn't
10 It's / It is … there isn't
11 It was
12 Is there … there's / there is
13 It's / It is … There's / There is
14 there was … It was

84.2

2 There's / There is a lot of salt in the soup. *or* … too much salt …
3 There was nothing in the box.
4 There were about 50 people at the meeting.
5 There's / There is a lot of violence in the film.
6 *(example answers)*
There is a lot to do in this town. / … plenty to do in this town. / … a lot happening in this town. *or* There are a lot of places to go in this town.

84.3

2 There may be
3 There won't be
4 There's / There is going to be
5 There used to be
6 there should be
7 there wouldn't be

84.4

3 **there** will be an opportunity
4 **There** must have been a reason.
5 *OK*
6 *OK*
7 **There** used to be a lot of tourists
8 **There**'s no signal.
9 *OK*
10 **There**'s sure to be a car park somewhere.
11 *OK*
12 **there** would be somebody … but **there** wasn't anybody.

UNIT 85

85.1

2 some
3 any
4 some
5 any … some
6 any
7 some
8 any
9 some
10 any
11 some … any

85.2

2 somebody/someone
3 anybody/anyone
4 anything
5 something
6 anything *or* anybody/anyone
7 anybody/anyone
8 somewhere
9 anybody/anyone
10 something
11 Anybody/Anyone
12 somebody/someone … anybody/anyone
13 anywhere
14 anything
15 something
16 something … anybody/anyone
17 somebody/someone … anybody/anyone
18 anybody/anyone anything

85.3

2 Any day
3 Anything
4 anybody/anyone
5 Any job *or* Anything
6 anywhere
7 Anybody/Anyone

UNIT 86

86.1

3 no
4 any
5 None
6 no
7 none
8 any
9 no
10 any
11 none
12 no
13 any
14 no

86.2

2 Nobody/No-one.
3 None.
4 Nowhere.
5 None.
6 Nothing.
8 I'm not waiting for anybody/anyone.
9 I didn't buy any (bread).
10 I'm not going anywhere.
11 I haven't read any (books).
12 It doesn't cost anything.

86.3

2 nobody/no-one
3 Nowhere
4 anything
5 Nobody/No-one
6 anywhere
7 Nothing
8 **Nothing**. I couldn't find **anything** I wanted.
9 **Nobody**/**No-one** said **anything**.

86.4

2 nobody
3 anyone
4 Anybody
5 Nothing
6 Anything
7 anything
8 any
9 No-one … anyone

UNIT 87

87.1

3 *OK*
4 It cost **a lot** to …
5 *OK*
6 You have **a lot of** luggage.
7 *OK*
8 … know **many** people *or* … know **a lot of** people
9 *OK*
10 He travels **a lot**.

87.2

2 He has (got) plenty of money.
3 There's plenty of room.
4 … she still has plenty to learn.
5 There is plenty to see.
6 There are plenty of hotels.

87.3
2 little
3 many
4 few
5 little
6 many
7 little
8 much
9 few

87.4
2 a few dollars
3 little traffic
4 a few years ago
5 a little time
6 only a few words
7 Few people

87.5
2 a little
3 a few
4 few
5 little
6 a little
7 little
8 a few
9 a few
10 a little

UNIT 88

88.1
3 —
4 of
5 —
6 —
7 of
8 of
9 — (**of** *is also correct*)
10 —
11 —
12 of

88.2
3 of my spare time
4 accidents
5 of the buildings
6 of her friends
7 of the population
8 birds
9 of the players
10 of her opinions
11 European countries
12 (of) my dinner

88.3
Example answers:
2 the time
3 my friends
4 (of) the questions
5 the pictures / the photos / the photographs
6 (of) the money

88.4
2 All of them
3 none of us
4 some of it
5 none of them
6 Some of them
7 all of it
8 none of it

UNIT 89

89.1
2 Neither
3 both
4 Either
5 Neither
6 both

89.2
2 either
3 both
4 Neither of
5 **neither** driver … **both** / **both the** / **both of the** cars
6 both / both of

89.3
2 either of them
3 both of them
4 Neither of us
5 neither of them

89.4
3 The movie was both boring and long.
4 Neither Joe nor Sam has a car. *or* … has got a car.
5 Emily speaks both German and Russian.
6 Ben neither watches TV nor reads newspapers.
7 That man's name is either Richard or Robert.
8 I have neither the time nor the money to go on holiday.
9 We can leave either today or tomorrow.

89.5
2 either
3 any
4 none
5 any
6 either
7 neither

UNIT 90

90.1
3 Everybody/Everyone
4 Everything
5 all
6 everybody/everyone
7 everything
8 All
9 everybody/everyone
10 All
11 everything
12 Everybody/Everyone
13 All
14 everything

90.2
2 The whole team played well.
3 He ate the whole box (of chocolates).
4 They searched the whole house.
5 The whole family plays tennis. *or* … play tennis.
6 Sarah/She worked the whole day.
7 It rained the whole week.
8 Sarah worked all day.
9 It rained all week.

90.3
2 every four hours
3 every four years
4 every five minutes
5 every six months

90.4
2 every day
3 all day
4 The whole building
5 Every time
6 all the time
7 all my luggage

UNIT 91

91.1
3 Each
4 Every
5 Each
6 every
7 each
8 every

91.2
3 Every
4 Each
5 every
6 every
7 each of
8 every
9 each
10 Every
11 each of
12 each

91.3
2 Sonia and I had ten pounds each. *or*
Sonia and I each had ten pounds.
3 Those postcards cost a pound each / … one pound each. *or*
Those postcards are a pound each / … one pound each
4 We paid 200 dollars each. *or*
We each paid 200 dollars.

91.4
2 everyone
3 every one *(2 words)*
4 Everyone
5 every one *(2 words)*

UNIT 92

92.1

2 A customer is someone who buys something from a shop.
3 A burglar is someone who breaks into a house to steal things.
4 A coward is someone who is not brave.
5 A tenant is someone who pays rent to live somewhere.
6 A shoplifter is someone who steals from a shop.
7 A liar is someone who doesn't tell the truth.
8 A pessimist is someone who expects the worst to happen.

92.2

2 The waiter who/that served us was impolite and impatient.
3 The building that/which was destroyed in the fire has now been rebuilt.
4 The people who/that were arrested have now been released.
5 The bus that/which goes to the airport runs every half hour.

92.3

2 who/that runs away from home
3 that/which were hanging on the wall
4 that/which cannot be explained
5 who/that has stayed there
6 that/which happened in the past
7 who/that developed the theory of relativity
8 that/which can support life

92.4

3 the nearest shop **that**/**which** sells
4 some things about me **that**/**which** were
5 The driver **who**/**that** caused
6 *OK* (the person **who** took *is also correct*)
7 a world **that**/**which** is changing
8 *OK*
9 the horse **that**/**which** won

UNIT 93

93.1

3 *OK* (the people **who**/**that** we met *is also correct*)
4 The people **who**/**that** work in the office
5 *OK* (the people **who**/**that** I work with *is also correct*)
6 *OK* (the money **that**/**which** I gave you *is also correct*)
7 the money **that**/**which** was on the table
8 *OK* (the worst film **that**/**which** you've ever seen *is also correct*)
9 the best thing **that**/**which** has ever happened to you

93.2

2 you're wearing *or* that/which you're wearing
3 you're going to see *or* that/which you're going to see
4 I/we wanted to visit *or* that/which I/we wanted to visit
5 I/we invited to the party *or* who/whom/that we invited …
6 you had to do *or* that/which you had to do
7 I/we rented *or* that/which I/we rented

93.3

2 the wedding we were invited to
3 the hotel you told me about
4 the job I applied for
5 the concert you went to
6 somebody you can rely on
7 the people you were with

93.4

3 – (that *is also correct*)
4 what
5 that
6 what
7 – (that *is also correct*)
8 what
9 – (that *is also correct*)

UNIT 94

94.1

2 whose wife is an English teacher
3 who owns a restaurant
4 whose ambition is to climb Everest
5 who have just got married
6 whose parents used to work in a circus

94.2

2 *more formal* I went to see a lawyer **whom** a friend of mine (had) recommended.
less formal I went to see a lawyer a friend of mine (had) recommended.
3 *more formal* The person **to whom** I spoke wasn't very helpful.
less formal The person I spoke **to** wasn't very helpful.
4 *more formal* The woman **with whom** Tom was in love wasn't in love with him.
less formal The woman Tom was in love **with** wasn't in love with him.

94.3

2 where
3 who
4 whose
5 where
6 whose
7 whom
8 where

94.4

Example answers:
2 The reason I left my job was that the salary was too low.
3 I'll never forget the time I got stuck in a lift.
4 2009 was the year Amanda got married.
5 The reason they don't have a car is that neither of them can drive.
6 The last time I saw Sam was about six months ago.
7 Do you remember the day we first met?

UNIT 95

95.1

3 We drove to the airport, which was not far from the city.
4 Kate's husband, who I've never met, is an airline pilot. *or* … whom I've never met …
5 Lisa, whose job involves a lot of travelling, is away from home a lot.
6 Paul and Emily have a daughter, Alice, who has just started school.
7 The new stadium, which will be finished next month, will hold 90,000 spectators.
8 My brother lives in Alaska, which is the largest state in the US.
9 Our teacher, whose name I have forgotten, was very kind.
10 We enjoyed our visit to the museum, where we saw a lot of interesting things.

95.2

2 The strike at the factory, which began ten days ago, has now ended.
3 I've found the book I was looking for this morning. *or* … the book that/which I was looking for …
4 My car, which I've had for 15 years, has never broken down.
5 Few of the people who/that applied for the job had the necessary qualifications.
6 Amy showed me a picture of her son, who is a police officer.

95.3

2 My office**, which** is on the second floor**,** is very small.
3 *OK*
(The office I'm using … *and* The office **which** I'm using … *are also correct*)
4 Sarah's father**, who** used to be in the army**,** now works for a TV company.
5 *OK* (The doctor **who** examined me … *is also correct*)
6 The sun**, which** is one of millions of stars in the universe**,** provides us with heat and light.

UNIT 96

96.1

2 in which
3 with whom
4 to which
5 of which
6 of whom
7 for which
8 after which

96.2

2 most of which was useless
3 none of whom was suitable
4 one of which they never use
5 half of which he gave to his parents
6 both of whom are lawyers
7 neither of which she replied to
8 only a few of whom I knew
10 sides of which were lined with trees
11 the aim of which is to save money

96.3

2 which makes it difficult to sleep sometimes.
3 which was very kind of her.
4 which makes it hard to contact her.
5 which is good news.
6 which meant I had to wait two hours at the airport.
7 which means we can't go away tomorrow.
8 which she apologised for *or* for which she apologised

UNIT 97

97.1

2 The taxi taking us to the airport
3 a path leading to the river
4 A factory employing 500 people
5 man sitting next to me on the plane
6 brochure containing the information I needed

97.2

2 stolen from the museum
3 damaged in the storm
4 made at the meeting
5 surrounded by trees
6 involved in the project

97.3

3 invited
4 called
5 living
6 offering
7 caused
8 blown
9 sitting … reading
10 working … studying

97.4

3 There's somebody coming.
4 There's nothing left.
5 There were a lot of people travelling.
6 There was nobody else staying there.
7 There was nothing written on it.
8 There's a course beginning next Monday.

UNIT 98

98.1

2 a exhausting
  b exhausted
3 a depressing
  b depressed
  c depressed
4 a exciting
  b exciting
  c excited

98.2

2 interested
3 exciting
4 embarrassing
5 embarrassed
6 amazed
7 amazing
8 amused
9 interested
10 terrifying … shocked
11 (look so) bored … (really so) boring
12 boring … interesting

98.3

2 bored
3 confusing
4 disgusting
5 interested
6 annoyed
7 boring
8 exhausted
9 excited
10 amusing
11 interesting

UNIT 99

99.1

2 an unusual gold ring
3 a beautiful old house
4 red leather gloves
5 an old American film
6 tiny pink flowers
7 a long thin face
8 big black clouds
9 a lovely sunny day
10 an ugly yellow dress
11 a long wide avenue
12 important new ideas
13 a nice new green sweater
14 a small black metal box
15 beautiful long black hair
16 an interesting old French painting
17 a large red and yellow umbrella
18 a big fat black and white cat

99.2

2 tastes/tasted awful
3 feel nervous
4 smell nice
5 look wet
6 sounds/sounded interesting

99.3

2 happy
3 happily
4 terrible
5 properly
6 good
7 slow
8 badly
9 violent

99.4

3 the last two days
4 the first two weeks of May
5 the next few days
6 the first three questions (in the exam)
7 the next two years
8 the last three days of our holiday

UNIT 100

100.1

2 easily
3 patiently
4 unexpectedly
5 regularly
6 perfectly … slowly … clearly

100.2

2 selfishly
3 suddenly
4 sudden
5 badly
6 awful
7 terribly
8 comfortable
9 clearly
10 safe
11 safe
12 safely

100.3

2 frequently
3 fluent
4 specially
5 complete
6 perfectly
7 financially *or* completely
8 permanently
9 nervous
10 dangerously

100.4

2 seriously ill
3 absolutely enormous
4 slightly damaged
5 unusually quiet
6 completely changed
7 unnecessarily long
8 happily married
9 badly planned

UNIT 101

101.1

2 good
3 well
4 well
5 good
6 well
7 well
8 well … good

101.2

2 well-known
3 well-kept
4 well-written
5 well-informed
6 well-paid

101.3

2 slowly
3 lately
4 fast
5 hard
6 hardly
7 hard
8 hardly see
9 hard

101.4

2 hardly hear
3 hardly slept
4 hardly speak
5 hardly said
6 hardly changed
7 hardly recognised

101.5

2 hardly any
3 hardly anything
4 hardly anybody/anyone
5 hardly ever
6 hardly anywhere
7 hardly *or* hardly ever
8 hardly anybody/anyone
9 hardly any
10 hardly anywhere

UNIT 102

102.1

2 so
3 such
4 such a
5 such
6 such a
7 so
8 so
9 such a
10 such

102.2

2 The bag was **so** heavy
3 I've got **such** a lot to do
4 I was **so** surprised
5 The music was **so** loud
6 It was **such** horrible weather
7 Her English is **so** good
8 The hotel was **such** a long way
9 I had **such** a big breakfast

102.3

2 Why are you in such a hurry?
3 I'm surprised it took so long.
4 … but there's no such company.
5 … why I did such a stupid thing.
6 Why are you driving so slowly?
7 How did you learn English in such a short time?
8 Why did you buy such an expensive phone?

102.4

Example answers:

2 She's so **friendly**.
3 She's such **a nice person**.
4 I haven't seen you for so **long**.
5 I didn't realise it was such **a long way**.
6 There were so **many people**.

UNIT 103

103.1

3 enough buses
4 wide enough
5 enough time
6 enough vegetables
7 tall enough
8 enough room
9 warm enough
10 enough cups

103.2

2 too busy to talk
3 too late to go
4 warm enough to sit
5 too shy to be
6 enough patience to be
7 too far away to hear
8 enough English to read

103.3

2 This coffee is too hot to drink.
3 The piano was too heavy to move.
4 These apples aren't / are not ripe enough to eat.
5 The situation is too complicated to explain.
6 The wall was too high to climb over.
7 This sofa isn't / is not big enough for three people (to sit on).
8 Some things are too small to see without a microscope. *or* … to be seen without a microscope.

UNIT 104

104.1

2 quite hungry
3 quite often
4 quite noisy
5 quite surprised
6 quite late
7 quite old

104.2

2 quite a good voice
3 quite a long way
4 a pretty cold wind
5 quite a lot of traffic
6 a pretty busy day
7 started fairly recently

104.3

Example answers:

2 rather long
3 rather strange
4 rather impatient
5 rather expensive

104.4

3 more than a little …
4 completely
5 more than a little …
6 more than a little …
7 completely

104.5

2 quite safe
3 quite impossible
4 quite right
5 quite different
6 quite sure

UNIT 105

105.1

2 stronger
3 smaller
4 more expensive
5 warmer / hotter
6 more interesting / more exciting
7 nearer / closer
8 harder / more difficult / more complicated
9 better
10 worse
11 more often
12 further / farther

105.2

3 more serious than
4 thinner
5 bigger
6 more interested
7 more important than
8 more peaceful than
9 more slowly
10 higher than

105.3

2 careful
3 better
4 frequent
5 more
6 worse
7 than
8 quietly

105.4

2 I ran further/farther than Dan.
3 The journey takes longer by train than by car.
4 My friends arrived earlier than I expected.
5 The traffic today is worse than usual.

UNIT 106

106.1

2 much bigger
3 a lot more interesting than
4 a little cooler
5 far more complicated than
6 a bit more slowly
7 slightly older

106.2

2 any sooner / any earlier
3 no higher than / no more expensive than / no worse than
4 any further/farther
5 no worse than

106.3

2 bigger and bigger
3 more and more nervous
4 worse and worse
5 more and more expensive
6 better and better
7 more and more time

106.4

2 The more tired you are, the harder it is to concentrate.
3 The sooner we decide (what to do), the better.
4 The more I know, the less I understand.
5 The more electricity you use, the higher your bill will be.
6 The more / The longer she had to wait, the more impatient she became.

106.5

2 more
3 longer
4 any
5 the
6 older
7 elder *or* older
8 slightly
9 no
10 (The) less (he knows, the) better

UNIT 107

107.1

2 My salary isn't as high as yours.
3 You don't know as much about cars as me. *or* … as I do. *or* … as I know.
4 We aren't as busy today as we were yesterday. *or* … as busy today as yesterday.
5 I don't feel as bad as I did earlier. *or* … as I felt earlier.
6 Our neighbours haven't lived here as long as us. *or* … as long as we have.
7 I wasn't as nervous (before the interview) as I usually am. *or* … as usual.

107.2

3 The station wasn't as far as I thought.
4 The meal cost less than I expected.
5 I don't watch TV as much as I used to. *or* … as often as I used to.
6 Karen used to have longer hair.
7 You don't know them as well as me. *or* … as I do.
8 There aren't as many students in this class as in the other one.

107.3

2 as well as
3 as long as
4 as soon as
5 as often as
6 as quietly as
7 as hard as

107.4

2 Your hair is the same colour as mine.
3 I arrived (at) the same time as you.
4 My birthday is (on) the same day as Tom's. *or* My birthday is the same as Tom's.

107.5

2 than
3 as
4 him
5 less
6 much
7 twice
8 is
9 me

UNIT 108

108.1

2 the tallest
3 the worst
4 the most popular
5 the best
6 the most honest
7 the shortest

108.2

3 better
4 the most expensive
5 more comfortable
6 The eldest *or* The oldest
7 oldest
8 the quickest
9 quicker
10 my earliest
11 … **the highest** mountain in the world … It is **higher** than …
12 Do you have a **sharper** one? No, it's **the sharpest** one I have.

108.3

2 It's the largest country in South America.
3 It was the happiest day of my life.
4 It's the most valuable painting in the museum.
5 It's the busiest time of the year.
7 He's one of the richest men in the country.
8 She's one of the best students in the class.
9 It was one of the worst experiences of my life.
10 It's one of the most famous universities in the world.

108.4

2 That's the funniest joke I've ever heard.
3 This is the best coffee I've ever tasted.
4 That's the furthest/farthest I've ever run.
5 It's the worst mistake I've ever made. *or* It was the worst …
6 Who's the most famous person you've ever met?

UNIT 109

109.1

3 Joe doesn't like football very much.
4 Dan won the race easily.
5 *OK*
6 Have you seen Chris recently?
7 I borrowed some money from a friend.
8 *OK*
9 I ate my breakfast quickly and went out. *or* I quickly ate my breakfast and …
10 Did you invite a lot of people to the party?
11 Sam watches TV all the time.
12 *OK*

109.2

2 I met a friend of mine on my way home.
3 I forgot to put a stamp on the envelope.
4 We bought a lot of fruit in the market.
5 They built a new hotel opposite the park.
6 Did you learn a lot of things at school today?
7 We found some interesting books in the library.
8 Please write your name at the top of the page.

109.3

2 I go to the supermarket every Friday.
3 Why did you come home so late?
4 Sarah takes her children to school every day.
5 I haven't been to the cinema recently.
6 I remembered her name after a few minutes.
7 We walked around the town all morning.
8 My brother has been in Canada since April.
9 I didn't see you at the party on Saturday night.
10 Lisa left her umbrella in a restaurant last night.
11 The moon goes round the earth every 27 days.
12 Anna has been teaching Italian in London for the last three years.

UNIT 110

110.1

3 I usually have …
4 *OK*
5 Steve hardly ever gets angry.
6 … and I also sent an email.
7 I always have to repeat …
8 I've never worked / I have never worked …
9 *OK*
10 … my friends were already there. *or* … my friends were there already.

110.2

2 Katherine is always very generous.
3 I don't usually have to work on Sundays.
4 Do you always watch TV in the evenings?
5 … he is also learning Japanese.
6 a We were all on holiday in Spain.
  b We were all staying at the same hotel.
  c We all had a great time.
7 a The new hotel is probably expensive.
  b It probably costs a lot to stay there.
8 a I can probably help you.
  b I probably can't help you.

110.3

2 usually sleeps
3 It's / It is usually easy to … *or* Usually it's / it is easy to …
4 were both born
5 She can also sing
6 Do you usually go …
7 I have / I've never spoken
8 We're / We are still living …
9 You always have to wait …
10 We might never meet
11 I probably won't be
12 Will you still be
13 She's / She is hardly ever
14 We would / We'd never have met
15 It doesn't always take
16 We were all … we all fell
17 always says … she never does

UNIT 111

111.1

3 He doesn't write poems any more.
4 He still wants to be a teacher.
5 He isn't / He's not interested in politics any more.
6 He's still single.
7 He doesn't go fishing any more.
8 He doesn't have a beard any more. *or* He hasn't got …

10–12

He no longer writes poems.
He is / He's no longer interested in politics.
He no longer goes fishing.
He no longer has a beard. / He's no longer got a beard.

111.2

2 He hasn't gone yet.
3 They haven't finished (it) yet. / … finished repairing the road yet.
4 They haven't woken up yet.
5 She hasn't found one yet. / … found a job yet.
6 I haven't decided (what to do) yet.
7 It hasn't taken off yet.

111.3

3 still
4 yet
5 any more
6 yet
7 any more
8 still
9 already
10 still
11 already
12 yet
13 still
14 already
15 still
16 any more

UNIT 112

112.1

2 even Lisa
3 not even Amy
4 even Lisa
5 even Kate
6 not even Lisa

112.2

2 We even painted the floor.
3 She's even met the prime minister.
4 You could even hear it from the next street. / You could even hear the noise from … *or* You could hear it / the noise even from the next street.
6 I can't even remember her name.
7 There isn't even a cinema.
8 He didn't even tell his wife (where he was going).
9 I don't even know my neighbours.

112.3

2 even older
3 even better
4 even more difficult
5 even worse
6 even less

112.4

2 if
3 even if
4 even
5 even though
6 Even
7 even though
8 even if
9 Even though

UNIT 113

113.1

2 Although I had never seen her before
3 although it was quite cold
4 although we don't like them very much
5 Although I didn't speak the language well
6 Although the heating was on
7 although I'd met her twice before
8 although we've known each other a long time

113.2

2 a In spite of (*or* Despite)
  b Although
3 a because
  b although
4 a because of
  b in spite of (*or* despite)
5 a Although
  b because of

Example answers:

6 a he hadn't studied very hard
  b he had studied very hard
7 a I was hungry
  b being hungry / my hunger / the fact (that) I was hungry

113.3

2 In spite of playing quite well, we lost the game. *or* In spite of the fact (that) we played quite well …
3 Although I'd hurt my foot, I managed to walk home. *or* I managed to walk home although I'd …
4 I enjoyed the film in spite of the silly story. / … in spite of the story being silly. / … in spite of the fact (that) the story was silly. *or* In spite of … , I enjoyed the film.
5 Despite living in the same building, we hardly ever see each other. *or* Despite the fact (that) we live in … *or* We hardly ever see each other despite …
6 They came to the party even though they hadn't been invited. *or* Even though they hadn't been invited, they came to the party.

113.4

2 It's very long though.
3 We ate it though.
4 I don't like her husband though.

UNIT 114

114.1

2 in case you get hungry / … you are hungry
3 in case it rains
4 in case you get thirsty / … you are thirsty
5 in case you need to call somebody
6 in case you get lonely / … you are lonely

114.2

2 I'll say goodbye now in case I don't see you again (before you go).
3 Can you check the list in case we've forgotten something? / … in case we forgot something?
4 Keep the receipt in case they don't fit you (and you have to take them back to the shop).

114.3

2 in case I forgot it.
3 in case they were worried (about me).
4 in case she didn't get the first one. / in case she hadn't got …
5 in case they came/come to London (one day).

114.4

3 If
4 in case
5 if
6 in case
7 if
8 if
9 in case
10 in case

UNIT 115

115.1

2 You won't know what to do unless you listen carefully.
3 I'll never speak to her again unless she apologises (to me). *or* Unless she apologises (to me), I'll …
4 He won't understand you unless you speak very slowly. *or* Unless you speak very slowly, he …
5 The company will have to close unless business improves soon. *or* Unless business improves soon, the company …
6 The problem will get worse unless we do something soon. *or* Unless we do something soon, the problem …

115.2

2 I'm not going (to the party) unless you go too. / … unless you're going too.
3 The dog won't chase you unless you move suddenly.
4 Ben won't speak to you unless you ask him something.
5 The doctor won't see you unless it's an emergency. / … unless it's an emergency.

115.3

2 unless
3 providing
4 as long as
5 unless
6 unless
7 provided
8 Unless
9 unless
10 as long as

115.4

Example answers:
2 it's not too hot.
3 there isn't too much traffic.
4 it isn't raining.
5 I'm in a hurry.
6 you have something else to do.
7 you pay it back next week.
8 you don't tell anyone else.
9 you take risks.

UNIT 116

116.1

2 I listened as she told me her story.
3 I burnt myself as I was taking a hot dish out of the oven.
4 The spectators cheered as the two teams came onto the field.
5 A dog ran out in front of the car as we were driving along the road.

116.2

2 As today is a public holiday, all government offices are shut.
3 As I didn't want to disturb anybody, I tried to be very quiet.
4 As I can't go to the concert, you can have my ticket.
5 As it was a nice day, we went for a walk by the canal.

116.3

3 because
4 at the same time as
5 at the same time as
6 because
7 because

116.4

3 *OK*
4 when I was in London
5 When I left school
6 *OK*
7 when I was a child
8 *OK*

116.5

Example answers:
2 I saw you as you were getting into your car.
3 It started to rain just as we started playing tennis.
4 As she doesn't have a phone, it's quite difficult to contact her.
5 Just as I took the picture, somebody walked in front of my phone.

UNIT 117

117.1

3 … like his father
4 … people like him
5 *OK*
6 Like her mother …
7 … like talking to the wall
8 *OK*
9 *OK*
10 like a fish

117.2

2 e
3 b
4 f
5 d
6 a

117.3

2 like blocks of ice
3 like a beginner
4 as a tour guide
5 like a theatre
6 as a birthday present
7 like winter
8 like a child

117.4

2 like
3 as
4 as
5 like
6 As
7 as
8 like
9 like *or* such as
10 as
11 like
12 as
13 like
14 like
15 as
16 like

UNIT 118

118.1

2 You look as if you've seen a ghost. / … as if you saw a ghost.
3 I feel like I've (just) run a marathon. / … like I (just) ran a marathon.
4 You sound as if you're having a good time.

118.2

2 It looks like it's going to rain.
3 It sounds like they're having an argument.
4 It looks like there's been an accident.
5 It looks like they don't have any.
6 It sounds like you should see a doctor.

118.3
2 as if he meant what he said
3 as if she's hurt her leg / as if she hurt her leg
4 as if he hadn't eaten for a week
5 as if she was enjoying it
6 as if I was crazy / as if I were crazy
7 as if she didn't want to come
8 as if I didn't exist

118.4
2 as if I was/were
3 as if she was/were
4 as if it was/were

UNIT 119

119.1
3 during
4 for
5 for
6 during
7 for
8 during (*or* in)
9 for
10 for
11 during
12 for

119.2
3 while
4 While
5 during
6 during (*or* in)
7 during (*or* in)
8 while
9 during
10 while
11 During
12 while

119.3
1 for
2 during
3 while
4 during (*or* in)
5 for
6 while
7 during (*or* in)
8 for
9 while
10 during

119.4
Example answers:
3 Can you wait for me while I make a quick phone call?
4 Most of the students looked bored during the lesson.
5 I was asked a lot of questions during the interview.
6 Don't open the car door while the car is moving.
7 The lights suddenly went out while we were watching TV.
8 What are you going to do while you're on holiday?
9 It started to rain during the game.
10 It started to rain while we were walking home.

UNIT 120

120.1
2 by 8.30
3 Let me know by Saturday
4 you're here by 2 o'clock.
5 we should arrive by lunchtime.

120.2
2 by
3 until
4 by
5 until
6 by
7 by
8 until
9 by
10 by
11 until
12 By
13 until
14 by

120.3
Example answers:
3 until I come back
4 by 5 o'clock
5 by 3 April
6 until 2028
7 until midnight

120.4
2 By the time I got to the station
3 By the time I finished (work)
4 By the time the police arrived
5 By the time we got to the top (of the mountain)

UNIT 121

121.1
2 on
3 in
4 at (*or* **on** *in American English*)
5 on (*or* I last saw her Tuesday.)
6 in
7 in
8 at
9 on (*or* There are usually a lot of parties New Year's Eve.)
10 at
11 in
12 in
13 at
14 on
15 in
16 At
17 in
18 on
19 at
20 **at** 5 o'clock **in** the morning
21 **on** 7 January . . . **in** April
22 **on** Tuesday morning . . . **in** the afternoon *or* at home Tuesday morning . . . **in** the afternoon

121.2
2 at night
3 in the evening
4 on 21 July 1969
5 at the same time
6 in the 1920s
7 in about 20 minutes
8 at the moment
9 in 11 seconds
10 on Saturdays *or* . . . works Saturdays

121.3
3 a
4 *both*
5 a
6 *both*
7 b
8 a
9 *both*
10 b

UNIT 122

122.1
2 on time
3 on time
4 in time
5 on time
6 in time
7 in time
8 on time
9 in time

122.2
2 I got home just in time.
3 I stopped him just in time.
4 We got to the cinema just in time for the beginning of the film. / . . . just in time to see the beginning of the film.

122.3
2 at the end of the month
3 at the end of the course
4 at the end of the race
5 at the end of the interview

122.4
2 In the end she resigned (from her job). *or* She resigned (from her job) in the end.
3 In the end I gave up (trying to learn Japanese / learning Japanese). *or* I gave up (learning Japanese) in the end.
4 In the end we decided not to go (to the party). *or* In the end we didn't go (to the party). *or* We decided not to go (to the party) in the end. *or* We didn't go (to the party) in the end.

122.5
2 In
3 in
4 at
5 In
6 At
7 in
8 in
9 in
10 at … at

UNIT 123

123.1
2 On his arm. *or* On the man's arm.
3 At the traffic lights.
4 On the door. (notice)
In the door. (key)
5 On the wall.
6 In Paris.
7 At the gate. (man)
On the gate. (bird)
8 On the beach.

123.2
2 on my guitar
3 at junction 14
4 in his hand
5 on that tree
6 in the mountains
7 on the island
8 at the window

123.3
2 on
3 at
4 on
5 in
6 on
7 in
8 at
9 on
10 at
11 in
12 on
13 **in** a small village **in** the south-west
14 **on** the wall **in** the kitchen

UNIT 124

124.1
2 On the second floor.
3 On the corner. *or* At the corner.
4 In the corner.
5 At the top of the stairs.
6 In the back of the car.
7 At the front.
8 On the left.
9 In the back row.
10 At the end of the street.

124.2
2 on the right
3 in the world
4 on the way to work
5 on the west coast
6 in the front row
7 at the back of the class
8 on the back of this card

124.3
2 in
3 at
4 at
5 in
6 on
7 in
8 in
9 in
10 on
11 in
12 on
13 in
14 on … on

UNIT 125

125.1
2 on a train
3 at a conference
4 is in hospital / in the hospital
5 at the hairdresser's
6 on his bike
7 in New York
8 at the Savoy Theatre

125.2
2 at the station
3 in a taxi
4 at the sports centre
5 on the plane
6 in Tokyo
7 at school
8 at the art gallery

125.3
2 in
3 at
4 in
5 on
6 at
7 in
8 at
9 at
10 in
11 on
12 at
13 in
14 in
15 at
16 at … at

UNIT 126

126.1
3 at
4 to
5 to
6 into
7 – *(no preposition)*
8 to
9 into
10 to
11 at
12 to
13 to
14 into
15 to
16 – *(no preposition)*
17 to (France) … in (Brazil)
18 in (Chicago) … to (Boston)

126.2
2 I've been to … once.
3 I've never been to …
4 I've been to … a few times.
5 I've been to … many times.

126.3
2 in
3 – *(no preposition)*
4 at
5 to
6 – *(no preposition)*

126.4
2 I got on
3 I got out (of the/my car).
4 I got off (the train).
5 I got into the taxi. *or*
I got in the taxi. *or*
I got in.
6 I got off (the plane).

UNIT 127

127.1
2 in cold weather
3 in French
4 in love
5 in the mood
6 in the shade
7 in my opinion
8 in kilometres

127.2
2 on strike
3 on a cruise
4 on fire
5 on a tour
6 on her phone
7 on TV
8 on purpose
9 on a diet
10 on holiday
11 on business
12 on the whole

127.3
2 on
3 at
4 in
5 on
6 in
7 at
8 at
9 on
10 on
11 at
12 on
13 in
14 on
15 on
16 on
17 In
18 in
19 on
20 in

UNIT 128

128.1

2 by email
3 by mistake
4 on purpose
5 by chance
6 by hand

128.2

2 on
3 by
4 on
5 by
6 in
7 by
8 by
9 **by** bike (*or* **on his** bike) … **on** foot

128.3

2 by a professional photographer
3 by mosquitoes
4 by Leonardo da Vinci
5 by one of our players
6 by lightning
7 by Beethoven

128.4

2 with
3 by
4 by
5 in
6 by
7 with
8 by
9 on
10 by
11 **by** the bed **with** a lamp and a clock **on** it

128.5

2 In the last ten years the population has gone up / increased / grown / risen by 6 million.
3 Helen won (the election) by two votes.
4 I missed her/Kate by five minutes.

UNIT 129

129.1

2 to the problem
3 with her brother
4 in the cost of living
5 to your question
6 for a new road
7 in/to living in a big city
8 in food prices
9 for shoes like these any more
10 between your job and mine

129.2

2 invitation to
3 contact with
4 key to (key for *is also possible*)
5 cause of
6 reply to
7 connection between
8 photos of
9 reason for
10 damage to

129.3

2 to
3 in
4 of
5 in *or* to
6 for
7 to *or* towards
8 with
9 of
10 to
11 of
12 for
13 of
14 with

UNIT 130

130.1

2 That was generous of her.
3 That wasn't very nice of them.
4 That's very kind of you.
5 That isn't very polite of him.
6 That's a bit childish of them.

130.2

2 kind to
3 angry with
4 excited about
5 impressed by / impressed with
6 bored with (bored by *is also possible*)
7 amazed at / amazed by
8 careless of

130.3

2 of
3 to
4 with
5 with (by *or* in *are also possible*)
6 to
7 at/by
8 with
9 about
10 about
11 for
12 about/by/at
13 to
14 of
15 by/with
16 with
17 about
18 at/by
19 for/about
20 at/by
21 of
22 to
23 about
24 furious **with** us **for** making

UNIT 131

131.1

2 proud of
3 ashamed of
4 typical of
5 capable of
6 scared of
7 aware of
8 envious of

131.2

Example answers:

2 I'm hopeless at telling jokes.
3 I'm not very good at maths.
4 I'm pretty good at remembering names.
5 I'm good at making decisions.

131.3

2 similar to
3 afraid of
4 interested in
5 responsible for
6 proud of
7 different from / different to (different than *is also correct*)
8 capable of

131.4

2 of furniture
3 on sport
4 of time
5 at her job
6 to a doctor
7 of him / of Robert
8 from yours / from your problem *or* to yours / to your problem (different than *is also correct*)

131.5

2 for
3 of
4 in
5 of
6 on
7 of
8 with
9 on
10 of

UNIT 132

132.1

2 a
3 b
4 b
5 a
6 a
7 b
8 a
9 b
10 b
11 a
12 b

132.2

3 spoken to
4 point (them) at
5 look (directly) at
6 listen to
7 throw (stones) at
8 throw (it) to
9 reply to

132.3

2 at
3 at
4 to
5 to
6 at
7 at
8 to
9 at
10 at
11 to

UNIT 133

133.1

2 waiting for her to reply
3 searched my bag
4 asked him for a receipt
5 to ask the way
6 discussed the problem
7 nothing about them
8 for the airport

133.2

2 to
3 for
4 about
5 – (*no preposition*)
6 about
7 for
8 about

133.3

2 of
3 about
4 for
5 of
6 for
7 about
8 – (*no preposition*)

133.4

2 looking for
3 looked after
4 look for
5 looks after
6 looking for

133.5

2 wait for
3 talk about
4 ask (me) for
5 applied for
6 do (something) about
7 looks after *or* has looked after
8 left (Boston) for

UNIT 134

134.1

2 hear about
3 heard from
4 heard of
5 hear from
6 hear about
7 heard of

134.2

2 think about
3 thinking about
4 think of
5 think of
6 thinking of *or* thinking about
7 thought about
8 think of
9 think about
10 think (much) of
11 thinking about *or* thinking of
12 think of

134.3

2 of
3 about
4 of
5 of
6 to (us) about
7 of
8 about . . . about . . . about . . . about

134.4

2 complaining about
3 think about
4 heard of
5 dream of
6 reminded (me) about
7 remind (you) of

UNIT 135

135.1

2 for
3 of
4 of
5 – (*no preposition*)
6 for
7 of/from
8 for
9 of
10 for
11 on
12 for

135.2

2 for the misunderstanding
3 her on winning the tournament
4 him from his enemies
5 on bread and eggs
6 me for the (bad) weather *or*
the (bad) weather on me
7 my friend of stealing a car *or*
(that) my friend had stolen a car

135.3

2 paid for
3 accused of
4 depends on
5 live on
6 apologise to
7 suffers from
8 congratulate (him) on

135.4

2 from
3 on
4 – (*no preposition*)
5 from
6 depends how (*no preposition*) *or*
depends **on** how
7 on
8 of
9 on

UNIT 136

136.1

2 happened to
3 divided into
4 invited to
5 believe in
6 fill (it) with
7 breaks into
8 Concentrate on
9 succeeded in
10 drove into

136.2

2 I prefer small towns to big cities.
3 The company provided me with all
the information I needed.
4 This morning I spent eighty pounds
on a pair of shoes.
5 The city is divided into ten districts.

136.3

2 to
3 on
4 in
5 to
6 in
7 with
8 into
9 in
10 on
11 – (*no preposition*)
12 into
13 on
14 into
15 with
16 from (one language) into (another)

136.4

Example answers:
2 on petrol
3 into a wall
4 to volleyball
5 in seafood
6 into many languages

UNIT 137

137.1

2 sit down
3 taking off
4 flew away / flew off
5 get out
6 speak up
7 get by
8 gone up
9 looked round
10 be back
11 broke down
12 getting on

137.2

2 back at
3 up to
4 forward to
5 away with
6 up at
7 in through
8 out about

137.3

2 wake me up
3 get it out
4 give them back
5 switch it on
6 take them off

137.4

3 I have to give **them back** to her.
4 We can turn **the TV**/**television off**. *or* We can turn **off the TV**/**television**.
5 I don't want to wake **her up**.
6 (*example answer*) You should put **your coat on** *or* You should put **on your coat**.
7 I was able to put **it out**
8 Shall I turn **the light**(**s**) **on**? *or* Shall I turn **on the light**(**s**)?
9 (*example answer*) they've put **the price**(**s**) **up** *or* they've put **up the price**(**s**)
10 I knocked **it over**

UNIT 138

138.1

2 eats
3 drop
4 fill
5 moved
6 checked
7 plug
8 dropped
9 dive

138.2

2 in
3 into
4 out
5 into
6 in
7 out
8 out of

138.3

2 dropped out
3 moved in
4 left out
5 joined in
6 taken in
7 dropped in

138.4

2 Fill them in *or* Fill them out
3 cross it out
4 let us in
5 get out of it

138.5

2 drop out of college
3 fill in / fill out the application form
4 get out of going to the party
5 taken in by the email
6 drop in (and see us) sometime
7 was left out of the team *or* had been left out . . .

UNIT 139

139.1

2 a candle
3 an order
4 a fire
5 a new product
6 a problem

139.2

2 works out
3 carried out
4 ran out
5 sort out
6 find out / work out / figure out
7 tried out
8 pointed out
9 work out
10 went out
11 turned out
12 works out / turns out
13 find out
14 put out
15 figure out / work out

139.3

2 giving/handing out
3 turned out nice/fine/sunny
4 working out
5 run out of
6 work out how to use the camera *or* figure out how to . . .

139.4

2 try it out
3 work it out
4 sorted it out / worked it out
5 pointing it out

UNIT 140

140.1

2 put the heating on
3 put the oven on
4 put the kettle on
5 put some music on

140.2

2 going on
3 take off
4 drove off / went off
5 put on
6 set off
7 put off
8 called off
9 put on
10 tried on
11 see (me) off
12 putting (it) off

140.3

2 took off
3 tried on a/the hat *or* tried a/the hat on
4 was called off
5 see him off
6 put them on

UNIT 141

141.1

2 c
3 b
4 a
5 a
6 b

141.2

2 finish off
3 drive on / carry on / go on
4 ripped off
5 getting on
6 went off
7 told off
8 went on
9 get on
10 keep on / keep
11 get on / carry on
12 showing off
13 put off
14 went on / carried on
15 dozed off / dropped off / nodded off

141.3

2 gets on with
3 carry on / go on / keep / keep on
4 finish it off
5 were ripped off
6 go off
7 tell them off
8 She keeps on / She keeps

UNIT 142

142.1

2 took them down
3 stand up
4 turned it up
5 put their bags down
6 were blown down
7 put them up
8 bent down (and) picked them up

142.2

2 turned it down
3 calm him down
4 let her down
5 written it down
6 cut them down

142.3

2 calm down
3 slowed down
4 was turned down
5 broken down
6 cut down
7 let down
8 closed down / has closed down
9 be knocked down
10 turned down
11 was knocked down
12 broke down

UNIT 143

143.1

2 went up to / walked up to
3 catch up with
4 keep up with

143.2

2 used up
3 washed up
4 grow up
5 turn up / show up
6 gave up
7 taking up
8 give up
9 ended up
10 takes up
11 make up

143.3

3 tidy it up / tidy up
4 fixed it up
5 keep up with
6 was brought up
7 keep it up
8 went up to
9 set it up
10 gave it up / gave up
11 was made up of

UNIT 144

144.1

2 d
3 e
4 c
5 g
6 a
7 b

144.2

2 held up
3 did it up
4 cheer him up

144.3

2 blew up
3 beaten up
4 broken up / split up
5 do up
6 clears up / will clear up
7 mixed up

144.4

2 look it up
3 put up with
4 making it up
5 come up with
6 tear them up
7 saving up for
8 bring it up
9 mix them up / get them mixed up

UNIT 145

145.1

2 blew away
3 put it back
4 walked away
5 threw it back (to her)
6 threw them away

145.2

2 be away / have gone away
3 be back
4 ran away
5 get away
6 keep away / keep back
7 smile back

145.3

2 throw
3 gets
4 be
5 look
6 gave
7 get
8 put

145.4

2 throw it away
3 take them back
4 pay you back / pay it back
5 gave them away
6 called back / called me back

Key to Additional exercises *(see page 302)*

1

3 I'm getting / I am getting
4 do you do
5 we arrived … it was raining
6 phones … she didn't phone
7 you were thinking … I decided
8 are you looking
9 It doesn't rain
10 He wasn't looking
11 we went … she was preparing … We didn't want … we didn't stay
12 told … he didn't believe … He thought … I was joking

2

2 didn't go
3 is wearing
4 went
5 haven't heard
6 is being
7 wasn't reading
8 didn't have
9 It's beginning
10 worked
11 wasn't
12 you've stayed
13 I've been doing
14 did she go
15 I've been playing
16 do you come
17 since I saw her
18 for 20 years

3

3 are you going
4 Do you watch
5 have you lived / have you been living / have you been
6 Did they have
7 Have you seen
8 was she wearing
9 Have you been waiting / Have you been here
10 does it take
11 Have you heard
12 Have you been / Have you ever been

4

2 've known each other / have known each other *or* 've been friends / have been friends
3 I've ever had / I've ever been on / I've had for ages *(etc.)*
4 He went / He went home / He went out / He left
5 I've worn it
6 I was playing
7 been swimming for
8 since I've been / since I went / since I last went
9 did you buy / did you get

5

1 got … was already waiting … had arrived
2 was lying … wasn't watching … 'd fallen / had fallen … was snoring … turned … woke
3 'd just gone / had just gone … was reading … heard … got … didn't see … went
4 missed … was standing … realised … 'd left / had left … had … got
5 met … was walking … 'd been / had been … 'd been playing / had been playing … were going … invited … 'd arranged / had arranged … didn't have

6

2 Somebody has taken it.
3 They'd only known / They had only known each other (for) a few weeks.
4 It's been raining / It has been raining all day. *or* It's rained / It has rained all day.
5 I'd been dreaming. / I had been dreaming.
6 I'd had / I had had a big breakfast.
7 They've been going / They have been going there for years.
8 I've had it / I have had it since I got up.
9 He's been training / He has been training very hard for it.

7

1 I haven't seen
2 You look / You're looking
3 are you going
4 are you meeting
5 I'm going
6 Do you often go
7 are you going
8 I'm meeting
9 has been (delayed) / is (delayed)
10 I've been waiting
11 has just started / just started
12 is she getting
13 Does she like
14 she thinks
15 Are you working
16 spoke
17 you were working
18 went
19 I started / I'd started
20 I lost
21 you haven't had
22 I've had
23 have you seen
24 has he been
25 I saw
26 he went
27 He'd been
28 he decided / he'd decided
29 He was really looking forward
30 is he doing
31 I haven't heard
32 he left

8

1 invented
2 it's gone / it has gone
3 had gone … left
4 did you do … Did you go
5 have you had
6 was looking *or* 'd been looking / had been looking
7 She's been teaching / She has been teaching
8 bought … she hasn't worn *or* she didn't wear
9 I met … was … I'd seen / I had seen … I remembered … he was
10 Have you heard … She was … died … She wrote … I haven't read
11 does this word mean … I've never seen
12 Did you get … it had already started
13 knocked … was … she'd gone / she had gone … she didn't want
14 He'd never used / He had never used … he didn't know
15 went … She needed *or* She'd needed / She had needed … she'd been sitting / she had been sitting

9

3 used to drive
4 was driving
5 were working
6 used to have
7 was living
8 was playing
9 used to play
10 was wearing

10

2 I'm going to the dentist.
3 No, we're going to rent a car.
4 I'll call her now.
5 I'm having lunch with Sue.
6 What are you going to have? / What are you having?
7 I'll turn on the light.
8 I'm going to close the window.

11

2 B
3 A
4 B
5 A
6 C
7 C
8 A

12

1 (2) Are you going to do / Are you doing
(3) it starts
(4) you'll enjoy / you're going to enjoy
(5) it will be / it's going to be
2 (1) you're going
(2) We're going
(3) you have
(4) I'll get
(5) I get
3 (1) I'm having / I'm going to have
(2) are coming
(3) they'll have left
(4) they're
(5) I won't be / I will not be
(6) you know
(7) I'll call
4 (1) shall we meet
(2) I'll be waiting
(3) you arrive
(4) I'll be sitting
(5) I'll be wearing
(6) Is Agent 307 coming / Is Agent 307 going to come / Will Agent 307 be coming
(7) Shall I bring
(8) I'll explain / I'm going to explain
(9) I see
(10) I'll try

13

1 I'll have
2 Are you going
3 shall I phone
4 It's going to land
5 it's / it is
6 I'll miss / I'm going to miss … you go / you've gone
7 Shall I give … I give … will you call
8 does it finish
9 I'm going … is getting
10 I'll tell … I'm … I won't be
11 I'm going to have / I'm having
12 she apologises
13 we'll be living / we'll live
14 you finish / you've finished

14

2 I've had / I have had
3 I bought *or* I got
4 I'll come / I will come *or* I'll be / I will be
5 I've been / I have been *or* I've eaten / I have eaten
6 I used to play
7 I haven't been waiting *or* I haven't been here
8 I'd been / I had been *or* I was
9 I'm going / I am going
10 I haven't seen *or* I haven't heard from
11 I'll have gone / I will have gone *or* I'll have left / I will have left

15

2 I've been travelling
3 I'm beginning
4 I've seen
5 has been
6 I've met
7 I left
8 I stayed *or* I was staying
9 I'd planned *or* I was planning
10 I ended up
11 I enjoyed
12 I took
13 met
14 I'm staying *or* I'm going to stay *or* I'll be staying *or* I'll stay
15 I continue
16 I'll get
17 I'm
18 I'll let
19 I know
20 I'm staying
21 we're going to visit *or* we're visiting
22 are building *or* have been building
23 it will be
24 I'll be

16

2 A
3 C
4 B *or* C
5 B
6 A *or* C
7 A *or* C
8 C
9 B *or* C
10 A *or* B
11 A
12 C
13 A *or* B
14 B *or* C
15 B

17

2 shouldn't have eaten
3 must have forgotten
4 needn't have gone
5 can't be changed
6 may be watching
7 must have been waiting
8 couldn't have done
9 should have been
10 could have phoned
11 should have been warned
12 ought to have come

18

3 could rain / might rain
4 might have gone / could have gone
5 couldn't go
6 couldn't have seen / can't have seen
7 should get
8 wouldn't recognise / might not recognise
9 must have heard
10 should have turned

19

4 rings
5 you were
6 it's / it is
7 it was *or* it were
8 it had been
9 you had
10 I'd had / I had had
11 it wouldn't have happened
12 I didn't watch

20

2 called (me)
3 (If) I'd known / I had known … (I) wouldn't have disturbed (you).
4 (There) wouldn't be (so many accidents if) there was … *or* … (if) there were …
5 (If) you'd told me about (the problem), I would have tried to help / I'd have tried to help (you). *or* … I would have helped / I'd have helped
6 (I) would have got/gotten (very wet if) I hadn't had …
7 (If he) hadn't been / hadn't got / hadn't gotten … (he) wouldn't have failed / would have passed / 'd have passed …

21

Example answers:
1 I wasn't feeling so tired
2 I hadn't had so much to do
3 I would have forgotten Amy's birthday
4 I'd probably waste it
5 I'll take a picture of you
6 you were in trouble
7 you hadn't taken so long to get ready
8 I would have gone to the concert
9 I might have got the job
10 you'd eaten lunch
11 there was less traffic
12 it would be harder to get information

22

3 was cancelled
4 has been repaired
5 is being restored
6 It's believed / It is believed
7 I'd be fired / I would be fired
8 It might have been thrown
9 He was taught
10 being arrested / having been arrested *or* I was arrested
11 Have you ever been arrested
12 are reported … have been injured

23

3 've sold / have sold *or* sold
4 's been sold / has been sold *or* was sold
5 are made
6 might be stolen
7 must have been stolen
8 must have taken
9 can be solved
10 should have left
11 is delayed
12 is being built … is expected

24

1 Castle Fire
2 was discovered
3 was injured
4 be rescued
5 are believed to have been destroyed
6 is not known
2 Shop Robbery
1 was forced
2 being threatened
3 had been stolen
4 was later found
5 had been abandoned
6 has been arrested / was arrested
7 is still being questioned
3 Road Delays
1 is being resurfaced
2 are asked / are being asked / have been asked
3 is expected
4 will be closed / is going to be closed
5 will be diverted / is going to be diverted
4 Accident
1 was taken
2 was allowed
3 was blocked
4 be diverted
5 have been killed

25

1 I told **her** (**that**) **Paul had gone out** and **I didn't know when he'd be back**.
I asked (**her**) **if**/**whether she wanted to leave a message**, but she said (**that**) **she'd try again** later.

2 I had reserved a hotel room, but when I got to the hotel they told **me** (**that**) **they had no record of a reservation in my name**.
When I asked (**them**) **if**/**whether they had any rooms free anyway**, they said (**that**) **they were sorry**, but **the hotel was full**.

3 The immigration officer asked us **why we were visiting the country**, and we told **him** (**that**) **we were on holiday**.
Then he wanted to know **how long we intended to stay** and **where we would be staying during our visit**.

4 She said (**that**) **she'd phone us from the airport when she arrived**. *or* She said (**that**) **she'll phone us from the airport when she arrives**.
No, she said not **to come to the airport**. She said that **she'd take the bus**. *or* She said that **she'll take the bus**.

5 He wanted to know **what my job was** and asked (**me**) **how much I earned**. *or* He wanted to know **what my job is** and asked (**me**) **how much I earn**.
… so I told **him to mind his own business** and ended the call.

6 He said (**that**) **he'd be at the restaurant at 7.30**.
He said (**that**) **he knew where the restaurant was**. And I told **him to phone me if there was a problem**.

7 You just said (**that**) **you weren't hungry**.
But you said (**that**) **you didn't like bananas**. You told **me not to buy any**.

26

3 changing
4 to change
5 change
6 being
7 saying
8 to call
9 drinking
10 to be
11 to see
12 taking
13 to be
14 to think … making
15 living … to move
16 to be … playing
17 being stopped … stealing … driving
18 work … pressing

27

3 I don't fancy going out.
4 He tends to forget things.
5 Would you mind helping me? / Do you mind helping me?
6 Everybody seems to have gone out.
7 We're / We are thinking of moving.
8 I was afraid to touch it.
9 I was afraid of missing my train.
10 It's / It is not worth seeing.
11 I'm not used to walking so far.
12 She seems to be enjoying herself. *or* She seemed …
13 He insisted on showing them to me.
14 I'd rather somebody else did it.

28

3 I've given up reading newspapers.
4 I'd rather not go out tonight. / … stay at home tonight.
5 He has trouble sleeping at night.
6 Do you want me to phone you this evening?
7 I came in without anybody/anyone seeing me. / … without being seen.
8 I was accused of being a cheat. / … of cheating.
9 I'm looking forward to seeing them again.
10 What do you advise me to do?
11 I'd like to have gone out with you last night.
12 I regret not taking your advice. / … that I didn't take your advice.

29

2 **a** foreign country … **the** language
3 **an** economist … in **the** United States … for **an** investment company
4 I love sport, especially tennis … two or three times **a** week … not **a** very good player
5 for dinner … after work … to **the** cinema
6 When unemployment is … for people to find work … **a** big problem
7 **an** accident … going home … taken to hospital / taken to **the** hospital … I think most accidents … by people driving
8 **the** name of **the** hotel … **The** Ambassador … in Queen Street in **the** city centre … near **the** station
9 **The** older one … **a** pilot … **The** younger one … at school … he leaves school …
go to university … study law

30

2 B
3 C
4 A *or* B
5 C
6 B
7 A *or* C
8 A
9 C
10 B *or* C
11 B

12 A
13 A *or* B
14 B

31

3 It's the **most** polluted place …
4 I was **disappointed** that …
5 *OK*
6 Joe works **hard**, but …
7 … in a **large modern** building.
8 *OK* (as fast as he can *is also correct*)
9 I missed the **last three** days …
10 *OK*
11 The weather has been **unusually** cold …
12 The water in the pool was too dirty to swim in.
13 … to wait **such a** long time. *or* to wait so long.
14 *OK*
15 … I got up **earlier** than usual.

32

2 If
3 when
4 if
5 when
6 if
7 if
8 unless
9 if
10 as long as
11 in case
12 in case
13 if
14 even if
15 Although
16 Although
17 When
18 when

33

2 on
3 **on** Tuesday morning **at** 9.30
4 at / on
5 on
6 at
7 In
8 at
9 during
10 **on** Friday … **since** then
11 for
12 at
13 **at** the moment … **until** Friday
14 by
15 in

34

1 in
2 by
3 at
4 on
5 in
6 on
7 **to** a party **at** Lisa's house
8 on
9 on
10 to
11 **in** Vienna … **at** the age of 35
12 **in** this photo … **on** the left
13 **to** the theatre … **in** the front row
14 **on** the wall **by** the door / **next to** the door / **beside** the door
15 at
16 on
17 **in** a tower block … **on** the fifteenth floor
18 on
19 by
20 **on** the bus … **by** car
21 on
22 in
23 **in** London … **to** Italy
24 to
25 on

35

1 for
2 at
3 to
4 to
5 in
6 with
7 of
8 to
9 of
10 at/by
11 of
12 about

36

1 of
2 after
3 – *(no preposition)*
4 about
5 to
6 – *(no preposition)*
7 into
8 of (about *is also possible*)
9 to
10 – *(no preposition)*
11 on
12 of
13 of
14 – *(no preposition)*
15 in
16 at (about *is also possible*)
17 on
18 If Alex **asks you for** money
19 I **apologised to Sarah for** keeping …
20 I **thanked her for** everything …

37

2 h
3 e
4 g
5 a
6 k
7 c
8 j
9 b
10 f
11 i

38

2 D
3 B
4 B
5 A
6 A
7 D
8 C
9 C
10 B
11 A
12 D

39

2 out to
3 up with
4 forward to
5 up with
6 out of
7 on with
8 up with
9 back on
10 out about
11 on with

40

3 turned up / showed up
4 fill it in / fill it out
5 knocked down / pulled down / torn down
6 give up
7 dozed off / dropped off / nodded off
8 split up / break up
9 put up with it
10 get by
11 went on
12 put it off

41

2 put
3 moving
4 put
5 done
6 turned / turns
7 find
8 Calm
9 set
10 held
11 left / 've left / have left *or* missed / 've missed / have missed
12 works
13 join
14 works
15 drop / call
16 sort / work
17 **went** off … **woke** me up

Key to Study guide

Present and past

1.1	A
1.2	B
1.3	C
1.4	B, C
1.5	C
1.6	A

Present perfect and past

2.1	B
2.2	C
2.3	A
2.4	C
2.5	A
2.6	B
2.7	A, D
2.8	D
2.9	A
2.10	A
2.11	C
2.12	A
2.13	C, D
2.14	C
2.15	D
2.16	C

Future

3.1	B
3.2	A
3.3	C
3.4	A, C
3.5	B
3.6	C
3.7	A

Modals

4.1	A, B
4.2	B
4.3	A, C, D
4.4	C
4.5	B
4.6	C, D
4.7	B
4.8	A, C
4.9	B, C
4.10	A, B, D
4.11	A
4.12	D, E
4.13	A

if and wish

5.1	B
5.2	C
5.3	B
5.4	D
5.5	A

Passive

6.1	C
6.2	B
6.3	D
6.4	A
6.5	A, B
6.6	C
6.7	D

Reported speech

7.1	A
7.2	B
7.3	A

Questions and auxiliary verbs

8.1	C
8.2	A
8.3	D
8.4	A
8.5	B

-ing and to …

9.1	A, D
9.2	B, D
9.3	B
9.4	A
9.5	A
9.6	A
9.7	C
9.8	D
9.9	C
9.10	C
9.11	B
9.12	C, D
9.13	D
9.14	B
9.15	A, B
9.16	A
9.17	A
9.18	B, C

Articles and nouns

10.1	B
10.2	A
10.3	B, C
10.4	B
10.5	C
10.6	A
10.7	A
10.8	A
10.9	D
10.10	C
10.11	C
10.12	A
10.13	C
10.14	B

Pronouns and determiners

11.1	A
11.2	B
11.3	D
11.4	B
11.5	B
11.6	C
11.7	A, C
11.8	D
11.9	D
11.10	A
11.11	B
11.12	B, C

Relative clauses

12.1	A, C
12.2	A, B
12.3	C
12.4	B
12.5	D
12.6	B, C

Adjectives and adverbs

13.1	B
13.2	C
13.3	B, C
13.4	A
13.5	A, D
13.6	C
13.7	B, C
13.8	C
13.9	C
13.10	B, C
13.11	D
13.12	A, B
13.13	B
13.14	D, E
13.15	D

Conjunctions and prepositions

14.1	A, D
14.2	C
14.3	B, C
14.4	B, D
14.5	B
14.6	C, D
14.7	B, C
14.8	A

Prepositions

15.1	B, D
15.2	A
15.3	C
15.4	B
15.5	A
15.6	B, D
15.7	B
15.8	B
15.9	C
15.10	C
15.11	C
15.12	A
15.13	C
15.14	B
15.15	D
15.16	D
15.17	A

Phrasal verbs

16.1	B
16.2	A
16.3	D
16.4	C
16.5	C
16.6	B
16.7	A
16.8	A, D
16.9	B

Index

The numbers in the index are unit numbers, not page numbers.

a/an 69–72
  a/an and *the* 72, 73A
  a little / a few 87D–E
  a/an with *quite* and *pretty* 104A
  such a/an 102
able (be able to) 26
about
  adjective + *about* 130, 131A
  verb + *about* 133–134
accuse (*of*) 62B, 135A
active and passive 42
adjectives 98–101
  adjective + *to …* 65–66
  the + adjective 76B
  adjectives ending in *-ing* and *-ed* 98
  order of adjectives 99
  adjectives after verbs 99C
  adjectives and adverbs 100–101
  comparative 105–107
  superlative 108
  adjective + preposition 130–131
admit (+ *-ing*) 53, 56A
advantage (*of/in/to*) 60A, 129B
adverbs
  adjectives and adverbs 100–101
  comparatives 105B
  position of adverbs with the verb (*always, also* etc.) 110
advice (uncountable noun) 70B
advise (+ *to …*) 55B
afford (+ *to…*) 54A, 56A
afraid (*of*) 131A
  I'm afraid so/not 51D
  afraid to do and *afraid of doing* 66A
after
  after + present simple / present perfect 25A–B
  after + *-ing* 60B, 68B
  look after 133D
ago 12C
agree (+ *to …*) 54A, 56A
all 88, 90
  all and *all the* 75B, 88B
  all (*of*) 88
  all and *both* 89D
  all, every and *whole* 90
  position of *all* 110D
alleged (*it is alleged …*) 45A
allow (+ *to …* and *-ing*) 55B, 66D
already 111D
  already with the present perfect 7D
  position of *already* 110
also (position of *also*) 110
although 113
always
  I always do and *I'm always doing* 3B
  position of *always* 110
amazed
  amazed + *to …* 65C
  amazed at/by 130C
American English Appendix 7
an see **a**
angry (*about/with/for*) 130B
annoyed (*about/with/for*) 130B
answer
  an answer to something 129D
  to answer a question (no preposition) 132B
any 69C, 85–86
  any and *some* 85
  anybody/anyone/anything/anywhere 85–86
  not … any 86
  any and *no* 86D
  any (*of*) 88
  any and *either* 89D
  any + comparative 106B
  any more / any longer 111B
apologise (*to somebody for*) 62, 132A, 135B
apostrophe (in short forms) Appendix 5
apostrophe s (**'s**) 81
appear (+ *to …*) 54C
apply (*for*) 133B
approve (*of* + *-ing*) 62A, 135A
aren't I? (question tag) 52D
arrange (+ *to …*) 54A, 56A
arrive (*in/at*) 126B
articles (*a/an/the*) 69–78
  a/an 69–72
  a/an and *the* 72, 73A
  the 72–78
  school / the school etc. 74
  children / the children etc. 75
  the with names 77–78
as 107, 116–118
  as soon as 25A–B
  as … as (in comparative sentences) 107
  as long as 115B
  as (= at the same time as) 116A
  as and *when* 116
  as (= because) 116B
  as and *like* 117
  as if / as though 118
ashamed (*of*) 131A
ask
  ask in passive sentences 44A
  ask (*somebody*) *to do something* 48D, 55A
  ask how/what + *to …* 54D
  ask somebody (no preposition) 132B
  ask somebody) for 133B
astonished
  astonished + *to …* 65C
  astonished at/by 130C
at
  at (time) 121
  at the end and *in the end* 122B
  at (position) 123–5
  at the age of … 127D
  adjective + *at* 130C, 131B
  verb + *at* 132
attitude (*to/towards*) 129D
auxiliary verbs (see also **modal verbs**)
  in questions 49A–B
  in short answers etc. 51
  in question tags 52
avoid (+ *-ing*) 53A, 56A
aware (*of*) 131A
away (verb + *away*) 137, 145

back
  in/at/on the back 124D, Appendix 7
  verb + *back* 145
bad (*at*) 131B
baggage (uncountable noun) 70B
because (of) 113B–C
bed (*in bed / to bed*) 74C, 124A, 126A
been to 8A, 126A
  been to and *gone to* 7B
before
  before + present simple 25A
  before + *-ing* 60B
begin (+ *-ing* or *to …*) 56C
beginning (*at the beginning*) 122B
being (*he is* and *he is being*) 4D
believe (*in*) 136A
believed (*it is believed …*) 45A
better 105C
  had better 35A–B
between (noun + *between*) 129E
blame 135B
bored
  bored and *boring* 98
  bored with 130C
born (*I was born …*) 44C
both (of) 89
  both … and 89C
  both and *all* 89D
  position of *both* 110D
bother (+ *-ing* or *to …*) 56C
bottom (*at the bottom*) 124C
bound (*bound to do*) 65E
bread (uncountable noun) 70B
break
  break into 136B
  break down 137B, 142D
  break up 144D
busy (*busy doing something*) 63D

- **by** 120, 128
  - *by* after the passive 42B, 128C
  - *by* (+ *-ing*) 60B
  - *by myself / yourself* etc. 83D
  - *by* (*the time*) 120
  - *by* and *until* 120B
  - *by chance / by mistake* etc. 128A
  - *by car / by bus* etc. 128B
  - *a play by Shakespeare* etc. 128C
  - adjective + *by* 130C

- **call** 26
  - *call somebody* (no preposition) 132B
  - *call something off* 140B
  - *call somebody back* 145C Appendix 4
- **can** 26
  - *can I/you* … ? 37
  - *can* and other modal verbs Appendix 4
- **can't** (*cannot*) 26, 28
  - *can't help* 57C
- **capable** (*of*) 131A
- **care** (*care about, care for, take care of*) 133C
- **carry**
  - *carry on* 53B, 141A
  - *carry out* 139C
- **case** (*in case*) 114
- **causative have** (*have something done*) 46
- **cause** (*of*) 129B
- **certain**
  - *certain* (+ *to* …) 65E, 84B
  - *certain of/about* 131A
- **cheque** (*by cheque*) 128B
- **church** (*church / the church*) 74B
- **claim** (+ *to* …) 54C
- **clauses**
  - *when* and *if* clauses 25
  - *if* clauses 38–40
  - *-ing* clauses 68, 97
  - relative clauses 92–96
- **collide** (*with*) 136C
- **comparative** 105–107
  - comparative with *even* 112C
- **complain** (*to somebody about/of* …) 134D
- **compound nouns** (*a tennis ball, a headache* etc.) 80
- **concentrate** (*on*) 136E
- **conditional sentences** (*if* sentences)
  - *if I do*… 25C
  - *if I do* and *if I did* 38
  - *if I knew, if I were* etc. 39
  - *if I had known, if I had been* etc. 40
  - *unless* 115A
  - *as long as* 115B
  - *providing / provided* 115B
- **congratulate** (*on*) 62B, 135D
- **connection** (*with/between*) 129E
- **conscious** (of) 131A
- **consider** (+ *-ing*) 53, 56A
- **consist** (*of*) 135A
- **contact** (*with/between*) 129E
- **continue** (+ to … or *-ing*) 56C
- **continuous tenses** see **present continuous**, **past continuous**
  - verbs not used in continuous tenses 4A, 6E, 10D, 16D, 17A
- **contractions** (short forms) Appendix 5
- **corner** (*in/at/on the corner*) 124E
- **could** 26, 27, 29C
  - *could* and *was able to* 26D
  - *could* (*do*) and *could have* (*done*) 27
  - *couldn't have* (*done*) 27E, 28B
  - *could* in *if* sentences 38C, 39E, 40D
  - *I wish I could* 41C
  - *could I/you …?* 37
  - *could* and other modal verbs Appendix 4
- **countable and uncountable nouns** 69–70
- **crash** (*into*) 136B
- **critical** (*of*) 131A
- **crowded** (*with*) 131B

- **damage** (uncountable noun) 70B
  - *damage to* 129D
- **dare** 54B
- **decide**
  - *decide* + *to* … 54, 56A
  - *decide against* + *-ing* 62A
- **delighted** (*with*) 130B
- **demand**
  - *demand* + *should* 34A–B
  - *a demand for* 129A
- **deny** (+ *-ing*) 53, 56A
- **depend** (*on*) 135D
- **dependent** (*on*) 131B
- **depressed** (and *depressing*) 98
- **deserve** (+ *to* …) 54A, 56A
- **despite** 113
- **did** (in past simple questions and negatives) 5C
- **die** (of) 135A
- **difference** (*between*) 129E
- **different** (*from/to*) 131B, Appendix 7
- **difficulty** (*have difficulty* + *-ing*) 63C
- **direct speech** and reported speech 47–48, 50B
- **disappointed**
  - *disappointed* + *to* … 65C
  - *disappointed* and *disappointing* 98
  - *disappointed with* 130B
- **discuss** (no preposition) 133A
- **divide** (*into*) 136B
- **do/does** (in present simple questions and negatives) 2C
- **do up** 144D
- **down** (verb + *down*) 137, 142
- **dream**
  - *dream of* + *-ing* 62A, 66D
  - *dream about/of* 134C
- **during** 119

- **each** (*of*) 91
  - *each other* 82C
- -**ed clauses** 97
- **either** (*of*) 89
  - *not … either* 51C
  - *either … or* 89C
  - *either* and *any* 89D
- **elder** 106E
- **eldest** 108C
- **encourage** (+ *to* …) 55B
- **end**
  - *in the end* and *at the end* 122B
  - *at the end* (position) 124C
  - *end up* 143E
- **enjoy** (+ *-ing*) 53A, 54A, 56A, 58A
- **enough** 103
- **envious** (*of*) 131A
- **even** 112
  - position of *even* 110
  - *even if / when* 112D
  - *even though* 112D, 113E
- **ever** (with the present perfect) 8A
- **every** 90
  - *every* and *all* 90
  - *everybody/everyone/everything* 90A, D
  - *every* and *each* 91
  - *everyone* and *every one* 91D
- **excited** (*about*) 130B
- **exclamations** (*What* …) 71A–B
- **excuse** (*for*) 62B
- **expect**
  - *I expect so / I don't expect so* 51D
  - *expect* + *to* … 55A
- **expected** (*it is expected that*) 45A
- **experience** (countable or uncountable noun) 70A
- **explain** 54D, 132A

- **fail** (+ to…) 54A, 56A, 66D
- **fairly** 104
- **famous** (*for*) 131B
- **fancy** (+ *-ing*) 53A, 56A
- **far**
  - *far/further/farther* 105C
  - *far* + comparative 106A
- **fast** 101B
- **fed up** (*with*) 60A, 130C
- **feel**
  - *how do you feel* and *how are you feeling* 4C
  - *feel like* 62A
  - *feel* + adjective 99C, 100C
- **few** 69C, 87
  - *few* and *a few* 87C–E
  - *few* (*of*) 88
- **finish**
  - *finish* + *-ing* 53A
  - *finish off* 141C
- **first**
  - *it's the first time I've* … 8C
  - *the first/last/next* + *to* … 65D
  - *the first two days* 99D
- **fond** (*of*) 131A

for
  for with the present perfect 8B, 9B, 11–12
  for and *since* 12A
  for and *to* … (purpose) 64C, 103C
  for and *during* 119
  noun + *for* 129A
  adjective + *for* 130D, 131B
  verb + *for* 133, 135B
forget (+ *to* …) 54, 56A
forgive (*for*) 135B
frightened (*of*) 131A
from
  adjective + *from* 131B
  verb + *from* 135C
front (*in/at/on the front*) 124D, Appendix 7
full (*of*) 131A
furious (*about/with/for*) 130B
furniture (uncountable noun) 70B
further 105C
future 19–25, Appendix 3
  present tenses for the future 19
  going to 20
  will 21–22
  will and shall 21D, 22D
  will and *going to* 23
  will be doing (future continuous) 24
  will have done (future perfect) 24
  future with *when, if* etc. 25, 114A, 115C, 119C

generous (+ preposition) 130A
geographical names with and without *the* 77
gerund see **-ing**
get
  get in the passive 44D
  get something done 46C
  get someone to do something 55B
  get used to 61
  get + adjective 99C
  get to (a place) 126B
  get in/out/on/off 126D, 138A
  get by 137B
  get out of 138C
  get on 137A, 141B
  get away (*with*) 145B
  get back to 145C
  getting (present continuous) 1C
give
  give in passive sentences 44A
  give up 53B, 143E
  give out 139C
  give away 145B
glad (+ to …) 65C
go
  go swimming/shopping etc. 63E
  go on holiday / on a trip etc. 127C
  go on 53B, 140B, 141A
  go on doing and *go on to do* 56B
  go out 139A
  go off 140D, 141C
going to 20, Appendix 3
  going to and *will* 23
  was/were going to 20D
gone to and *been to* 7B
good
  good at 60A, 131B
  good of someone to do something, (*be*) *good to someone* 130A
  good and *well* 101A
  it's no good (+ *-ing*) 63A
got (*have got*) 17A, 31D
gotten (American English) Appendix 7
guess (*I guess so*) 51D
  had
  had done (past perfect) 15
  had been doing (past perfect continuous) 16
  had (past of *have*) 17
  if I'd known / I wish I'd known 40

had
  had done (past perfect) 15
  had been doing (past perfect continuous) 16
  had (past of *have*) 17
  if I'd known / I wish I'd known 40
had better 35A–B
hair (countable or uncountable noun) 70A
half (**of**) 88
happen (*to*) 136D
happy (*happy about/with*) 130B
hard 101B–C
hardly 101C–D
hate
  hate doing / to do 58
  would hate 58B–C
have/has 17
  have done (present perfect) 7–14
  have been -ing (present perfect continuous) 9–10
  have and *have got* 17
  have breakfast / have a bath etc. 17C, Appendix 7
  I'm having, we're having etc. 17C
  have to (and *must*) 31
  have got to 31D
  have something done 46
  having (*done*) 53D, 68B–C
hear
  with the present simple or *can* 4C
  hear someone do/doing 67
  hear of/about/from 134A
help
  help + *to* … 55A
  can't help 57C
home 74C, 125A, 126C
hope
  hope + present simple 22B
  hope and *wish* 41A
  I hope so / I hope not 51D
  hope + *to* … 54A, 56A
hospital (*hospital / the hospital*) 74B, 125A
  American English Appendix 7
how about (+ *-ing*) 60A
how long … ? (+ present perfect) 11–12
how long is it since … ? 12D

if 25, 38–40
  if I do … 25C
  if I do and *if I did* 38
  if I knew, if I were etc. 39
  if I had known, if I had been etc. 40
  if and *when* 25D
  if + *should* 34E
  if any 85C
  even if 112D
  if and in case 114B
  as if 118
if (= *whether*) 50
imagine (+ *-ing*) 53, 56A
impressed (*with/by*) 130C
in
  in (time) 121
  in time and *on time* 122A
  in the end and *at the end* 122B
  in (position) 123–126
  in/of after a superlative 108D
  in (other uses) 127A, 129C
  adjective + *in* 131B
  verb + *in* 136A, 137, 138
  in and *into* 138A
in case 114
increase (*in*) 129C
infinitive (*to be, to play* etc.) 54–59, 64–67
  passive infinitive (*to be done*) 43A–B
  infinitive in reported speech 48D
  verb + infinitive 54–59
  continuous infinitive (*to be doing*) 54C
  perfect infinitive (*to have done*) 54C, 58C
  infinitive after a question word 54D
  verb + object + infinitive 55
  verb + infinitive or *-ing* 55–58
  to-infinitive and *to* + *-ing* 60C
  infinitive for purpose (*I called the restaurant to reserve a table*) 64
  adjective + infinitive 65–66
infinitive without *to*
  after *make* and *let* 55C
  see/hear somebody do 67
information (uncountable noun) 70B
-ing (*being, playing* etc.) 53, 55–63
  being (*done*) (passive) 44B
  verb + *-ing* 53, 55–59
  having (*done*) 53D, 68B–C
  verb + *-ing* or *to* … 55–58
  preposition + *-ing* 60, 66
  to + *-ing* and to–infinitive 60C
  used to + *-ing* 61
  verb + preposition + *-ing* 62, 66D
  expressions + *-ing* 63
  go swimming / go shopping etc. 63E
  see/hear somebody doing 67
  -ing clauses 68, 97

insist
  insist + *should* 34A–B
  insist on 62A, 136E
in spite of 60A, 113
instead of (+ *-ing*) 60A
intend (+ *to* … or *-ing*) 56C
interested (*in*) 60A, 131B
  interested in doing and *interested to do* 66B
  interested and *interesting* 98
into 126D
  verb + *into* 136B
  in and *into* 138A
invitation (*to*) 129D
invite
  invite + *to* … 55B
  invite somebody to something 136D
irregular verbs 5B, Appendix 1
it and *there* 84
it's no good / **it's no use** (+ *-ing*) 63A
it's time … 35C
it's worth (+ *-ing*) 63B

jealous (*of*) 131A
just
  just with the present perfect 7D, Appendix 7
  just in case 114A
  just as 116A
  just in time 122A

keen (*on*) 131B
keep
  keep on 53, 56A, 141A
  keep up (*with* …) 137C, 143A
  keep away (*from* …) 145B
kind (*kind of someone to do something* / *be kind to someone*) 65B, 130A
know (*how*/*what* etc. + to …) 54D

late and **lately** 101B
laugh (*at*) 132C
learn (*how*) (+ *to* …) 54, 56A
leave
  leave for 133B
  leave something out 138C
less 107A
let
  let somebody do something 55C
  let somebody down 142D
like (verb)
  like doing / *to do* 58
  would like 37D, 55A, 58B–C
like (preposition/conjunction)
  like and *as* 117
  like and *as if* 118
likely (+ to …) 65E, 84B
listen (to) 132A
little 69C, 87
  little and *a little* 87C–E
  little (*of*) 88
  a little + comparative 106A
live (*on*) 135D
long
  as long as 115B
  no longer / *not … any longer* 111B
look
  you look and *you're looking* 4C
  look forward to 60C, 62A, 137C
  look + adjective 99C, 100C
  look as if, *look like* 118
  look at 132C
  look back (*on*) 145C
  look for/after 133D
  look up 144D
lot (*a lot* /*lots*) 87A–B
  quite a lot 104A
  a lot + comparative 106A
love
  love doing / *to do* 58
  would love 55A, 58B–C
  be / *fall in love with* 127A
luck (uncountable noun) 70B
luggage (uncountable noun) 70B

make
  make somebody do something 55C
  make up 143E, 144A
manage (+ to …) 26D, 54A, 56A
many (and *much*) 69C, 87
  many (*of*) 88
married (to) 131B
may 29–30
  may as well 30D
  may I … ? 37B–C
  may and other modal verbs Appendix 4
mean (adjective – *mean of someone to do something* / *be mean to someone*) 65B
means (noun) 79B
might 29–30
  might in *if* sentences 30B, 38C, 40D
  might as well 30D
  might and other modal verbs Appendix 4
mind (+ *-ing*) 53, 56A, 58A–B
  do you mind if … ? 37C
mine / **yours** etc. (*a friend of mine*/*yours*) 83A
modal verbs (*will, can, must* etc.) 21–22, 26–37, Appendix 4
more
  more in comparatives 105
  not … any more 111B
most
  most + noun 75A
  most (*of*) 88
  the most … (superlative) 108
much (and *many*) 69C, 87
  much (*of*) 88
  much + comparative 106A
must
  must and *can't* 28, Appendix 7
  must and *have* to 31
  mustn't 31C, 32A
  must and *should* 33A
  must and other modal verbs Appendix 4
myself/**yourself** etc. (reflexive pronouns) 82
  by myself / *by yourself etc.* 83D

names with and without *the* 77–78
nationality words with *the* 76C
need
  need to do and *need doing* 57B
  a need for 129A
needn't 32
  needn't have (*done*) and *didn't need to* (*do*) 32 D
  needn't and other modal verbs Appendix 4
  American English Appendix 7
negative
  present simple 2C
  past simple 5C
  negative questions 49D
  no, none and *any* 86
  negative short forms Appendix 5.3
neither (**of**) 89
  neither am I, neither do I etc. 51C
  neither … nor 89C
  neither and *none* 89D
never
  never with the present perfect 8A
  position of *never* 110
news (uncountable noun) 70B, 79B
nice (*nice of someone to do something* / *be nice to someone*) 65B, 130A
no
  no and *none* (*of*) 86A, 88
  no and *any* 86
  nobody/*no-one*/*nothing*/*nowhere* 86B
  no + comparative 106B
  no longer 111B
none
  none (*of*) and *no* 86A, 88
  none and *neither* 89D
nor
  nor am I, nor *do I* etc. 51C
  neither … nor 89C
nouns
  countable and uncountable 69–70
  singular and plural 69, 71, 79
  noun + noun (compound nouns) 80
  noun + preposition 129

of
  of and *'s* 81
  all of / *none of* / *most of* etc. 88, 96B
  both *of* / *neither of* / *either of* 89, 96B
  a friend of mine/*yours* etc. 83A
  of/*in* after a superlative 108D
  noun + *of* 129B
  adjective + *of* 130A, 131A
  verb + *of* 134, 135A
off (verb + *off*) 137, 140–141
offer
  offer in passive sentences 44A
  offer + to … 54A, 56A

on
  on my own 83D
  on (time) 121
  on time and *in time* 122A
  on (position) 123–125
  on a bus / *on a train* etc. 125E
  on (other uses) 127B–C
  adjective + *on* 131B
  verb + *on* 135D, 136E, 137, 140–141
one another 82C
only (position of *only*) 110
ought to 33D
  ought and other modal verbs Appendix 4
out
  out of 126D
  verb + *out* 137–139
  out and *out of* 138A
own
  my own house / *your own car* 83B–C
  on my own / *on your own* etc. 83D

paper (countable and uncountable) 70A
participle clauses (*-ing* and *-ed* clauses) 68, 97
passive 42–44
  passive and active 42A
  by after the passive 42B
  simple tenses 42C
  to *be done/cleaned* etc. (infinitive) 43A–B
  perfect tenses 43C
  continuous tenses 43D
  being (*done*) 44B
  get 44D
  it is said that 45A
past (see also **past continuous**, **past perfect** and **past simple**)
  past after *if* and *wish* 38–40
  past after *I'd rather* 59D
  past after *it's time* 35C
  past after as *if* 118D
  present and past tenses Appendix 2
past continuous (*I was doing*) 6
  past continuous and past simple 6C–D
  past continuous and *used to* 18E
  past continuous passive 43D
past perfect (simple) (*I had done*) 15
  past perfect and present perfect 15B
  past perfect and past simple 15C
  past perfect after *if* 40
  past perfect passive 43C
past perfect continuous (*I had been doing*) 16
past simple (*I did*) 5
  past simple and past continuous 6C–D
  past simple and present perfect 12–14
  past simple and past perfect 15C
  past simple passive 42C
pay
  pay in passive sentences 44A
  pay (*somebody*) *for something* 135B
  pay back 145C
people 79D
perfect see **present perfect**, **past perfect**
  perfect infinitive (*to have done*) 43B (passive), 54C, 58C
persuade (+ *to* …) 55B
phone
  on the phone 127B
  phone somebody (no preposition) 132B
  phone somebody back 145C
photo/**photograph**
  in a photo 124A
  a photo of someone 129B
phrasal verbs (*break down* / *get on* etc.) 137–145
  introduction to phrasal verbs 137
  phrasal verb + preposition (*run away from* etc.) 137C
  position of object (*turn the light on* / *turn it on* etc.) 137D
  verb + *in/out* 138–139
  verb + *on/off* 140–141
  verb + *up/down* 142–144
  verb + *away/back* 145
picture
  in a picture 124A
  a picture of someone 129B
plan (+ *to* …) 54A, 56A
pleased
  pleased + *to* … 65C
  pleased with 130B
plenty (*of*) 87A
plural and singular 69, 71, 79
  they/them/their used for *somebody/nobody* etc. 85E, 86C, 90D
  spelling of plural nouns Appendix 6
point
  there's no point in + *-ing* 63A
  point (*something*) *at* 132C
  point out 139C
police (plural) 79C
polite
  polite of someone to do something / *be polite to someone* 130A
prefer 59
would prefer 55A, 58B–C, 59B
prefer (*one thing*) *to* (*another*) 59A, 60C, 136D
prepositions 121–136
  for and *since* 12A
  in questions 49C
  preposition + *-ing* 60, 66
  verb + preposition + *-ing* 62, 66D
  prepositions in relative clauses 93C, 96A
  in/*of* after a superlative 108D
  like and *as* 117
  for and *during* 119
  by 120, 128
  by and *until* 120B
  at/on/in (time) 121–122
  on time and *in time* 122A
  at the end and *in the end* 122B
  at/on/in (position) 123–125
  to/at/in/into 126
  in/at/on (other uses) 127
  by car / *by bus* etc. 128B
  noun + preposition 129
  adjective + preposition 130–31
  verb + preposition 132–136
  phrasal verb + preposition 137C
present see **present continuous**, **present simple**, **present perfect**
  present tenses for the future 19, Appendix 3
  present and past tenses Appendix 2
present continuous (*I am doing*) 1
  present continuous and present simple 3–4
  am/is/are being 4D
  present continuous for the future 19, 20B, Appendix 3
  present continuous passive 43D
present perfect (simple) (*I have done*) 7–8
  present perfect with *this morning, today* etc. 8B, 14B
  present perfect simple and continuous 10–11
  present perfect with *how long*, *for* and *since* 11–12
  present perfect and past simple 12–14
  present perfect and past perfect 15B
  present perfect after *when* 25B
  present perfect passive 43C
  present perfect after a superlative 108E
  American English Appendix 7
present perfect continuous (*I have been doing*) 9–10
  present perfect continuous and present continuous 9C
  present perfect continuous and simple 10–11
  present perfect continuous and past perfect continuous 16B

- **present simple** (*I do*)
  - present simple and present continuous 3–4
  - present simple for the future 19B
  - present simple after *when* and *if* 25, Appendix 3
  - present simple passive 42C
- **pretend** (+ *to* …) 54C
- **pretty** (*pretty good, pretty often* etc.) 104
- **prevent** (*from*) 62B, 66D
- **prison** (*prison* / *the prison*) 74B, 125A
- **probably**
  - *probably* + *will* 22B
  - position of *probably* 110
- **problem** (*have a problem* + *-ing*) 63C
- **progress** (uncountable noun) 70B
- **progressive** tenses see continuous
- **promise**
  - *promise* (+ *will/would*) 36B
  - *promise* + *to* … 54A, 56A
- **protect** (*from*) 135C
- **proud** (*of*) 131A
- **provide** (*with*) 136C
- **provided**/**providing** 115B
- **purpose**
  - *to* … for purpose 64
  - *on purpose* 127B, 128A
- **put**
  - *put out* 139A
  - *put off* 53B, 140, 141C
  - *put on* 140
  - *put up/down* 142A
  - *put up with* 144D
  - *put away* 145B

- **questions** 49–50
  - present simple questions 2C, 49B
  - past simple questions 5C, 49B
  - negative questions 49D
  - embedded questions (*Do you know what* … ?) 50A
  - reported questions 50B
  - question tags 52
- **quite** 104

- **rather**
  - *would rather* 59C
  - *I'd rather you did something* 59D
  - *rather cold* / *rather nice* etc. 104
- **reason** (*for*) 129A
- **recommend** 34 A–B, 53
- **reflexive pronouns** (*myself, yourself* etc.) 82
  - *by myself/yourself* etc. 83D
- **refuse** (+ *to* …) 54A, 56A
- **regret** (+ *-ing* and *to* …) 53D, 56B
- **regular and irregular verbs** Appendix 1
- **relationship** (*with/between*) 129E
- **relative clauses** 92–96
  - relative clauses as object 93
  - prepositions in relative clauses 93C
  - two types of relative clause 95
- **relative pronouns** 92–96
  - *who* 92–96
  - *which* 92–93, 95–96
  - *that* 92–94
  - *that* and *what* 92D
  - *whose* 94A, 95B
  - *whom* 94B, 95B, 96A–B
  - *where* 94C, 95B
  - *of whom* / *of which* 96B
- **rely** (*on*) 135D
- **remember**
  - *remember* + *to* … and *-ing* 56B
  - *remember how/what* + *to* … 54D
- **remind**
  - *remind* + *to* … 55B
  - *remind of/about* 134E
- **reported speech** 47–48
- reported questions 50B
- **responsible** (*for*) 131B
- **rise** (in) 129C
- **risk** (+ *-ing*) 53A, 56A
- **room** (countable or uncountable noun) 70A

- **'s** (**apostrophe s**) 81, Appendix 5.1
- **said** (*it is said that*) 45A
- **same** (*the same as*) 73B, 107C, 117B
- **satisfied**
  - *satisfied* and *satisfying* 98
  - *satisfied with* 130B
- **say**
  - *say* and *tell* 48C
  - *say* (+ *to* …) 48D
- **scared** (*of*) 131A
- **scenery** (uncountable noun) 70B
- **school** (*school* / *the school*) 74A
- **search** (for) 133B
- **see**
  - with the present simple or *can* 4C
  - *see someone do/doing* 67
  - *see off* 140D
- **seem**
  - *seem* + *to* … 54C
  - *seem* + adjective 99C
- **–self** (*myself/yourself* etc.) 82, 83D
- **series** 79B
- **shall** and *will* 22D
  - *shall I/we?* 21D
  - *Let's …, shall we?* 52D
  - *shall* and other modal verbs Appendix 4
  - American English Appendix 7
- **shocked**
  - *shocked* and *shocking* 98
  - *shocked at/by* 130C
- **short** (*of*) 131A
- **short forms** (*I'm, you've, didn't* etc.) Appendix 5
- **should** 33–34
  - *should* and *had better* 35B
  - *should* and other modal verbs Appendix 4
  - American English Appendix 7
- **shout** (at/to) 132D
- **show**
  - *show* in passive sentences 44A
  - *show someone how/what* + *to* … 54D
  - *show off* 141C
  - *show up* 143E
- **similar** (*to*) 131B
- **simple past** see **past simple**
- **simple present** see **present simple**
- **since**
  - with present perfect 8B, 9B, 11–12
  - *since* and *for* 12A
  - *how long is it since … ?* 12D
  - *since* (= because) 116B
- **singular** and plural 69, 71, 79
  - *they/them/their* used for *somebody/nobody* etc. 85E, 86C, 90D
- **slightly** (+ comparative) 106A
- **smell**
  - with the present simple and *can* 4C
  - *smell something* (*burn*)*ing* 67B
  - *smell* + adjective 99C
- **so**
  - *so am I, so do I* etc. 51C
  - *I think so, I hope so* etc. 51D
  - *so that* (purpose) 64D
  - *so* and *such* 102
  - *so* + adjective + *that* 102B
  - *so long as* 115B
- **solution** (to) 129D
- **some** 69C, 71, 85
  - *some* with countable nouns 71
  - *some* and *any* 85
  - *somebody/someone/something/somewhere* 85
  - *some* (*of*) 88
- **soon** (*as soon as*) 25A–B
- **sorry**
  - *sorry* + *to* … 65C
  - *sorry to do* and *sorry for/about doing* 66C
  - *sorry about/for* 130D
  - *feel sorry for* 130D
- **sound**
  - *sound* + adjective 99C
  - *sound as if* 118
- **space** (*space* and *a space*) 73C
- **speak** (to) 132A
- **species** 79B
- **spelling** Appendix 6
- **spend**
  - *spend time* + *-ing* 63D
  - *spend money on* … 136E
- **spite** (*in spite of*) 113
- **start** (*start* + *to* … or *-ing*) 56C
- **state verbs** (*like, know, belong* etc.) 4A, 6E, 10D, 16D, 17A
- **still** 111
  - *still and yet* 111C

stop
  stop + *-ing* 53, 56A
  stop someone (*from*) + *-ing* 53C, 62B, 66D
stupid (*stupid of someone to do something*) 65B, 130A
subjunctive 34B
  American English Appendix 7
succeed (*in* + *-ing*) 62A, 66D, 136A
such
  such and *so* 102
  such as 117A
suffer (*from*) 135C
suggest
  suggest + *should* 34A–C, 55B
  suggest + *-ing* 53, 54A, 56A
superlative (*longest*/*best* etc.) 108
suppose (*I suppose so/not*) 51D
supposed (*He is supposed to* …) 45B
sure
  sure + *to* … 65E, 84B
  sure of/about 131B
surprised
  surprised + *to* … 65C
  surprised and *surprising* 98
  surprised at/by 130C
suspect (*of*) 62B, 135A
suspicious (*of*) 131A

tags (question tags) 52
take
  take care of 133C
  take somebody in 138B
  take off 140
  take down 142A
  take up 143
talk
  talk to somebody 132A
  talk about something 62A, 133A
taste
  with the present simple or *can* 4C
  taste + adjective 99C
teach
  teach in passive sentences 44A
  teach somebody how to do something 54D
  teach + *to* … 55B
telephone see **phone**
tell
  tell in passive sentences 44A
  tell and say 48C
  tell someone to do something 48D, 55B
  tell someone what to do 54D
  tell someone off 141C
temporal clauses (*when* clauses) 25
tend (+ *to* …) 54A
than 105, 107
thank (*for*) 62B, 132B, 135B
that
  said that 47B
  in relative clauses 92–94
the 72–78
  the and *a/an* 72, 73A
  the sea, the sky etc. 73C
  the cinema, the theatre etc. 73D
  school / the school 74
  children / the children 75
  the + adjective (*the young* etc.) 76B
  the + nationality word (*the French* etc.) 76C
  the with geographical names 77
  the with streets, buildings etc. 78
  the + comparative (*the sooner, the better*) 106D
  the + superlative (*the oldest* etc.) 108B
there (and *it*) 84
  there's no point in … 63A
  there will/must/should etc. 84B
  there is + *-ing* or *-ed* 97C
they/**them**/**their** (used for *somebody/anybody/nobody/everybody*) 85E, 86C, 90D
think
  I think and *I'm thinking* 4B
  I think so, I don't think so 51D
  think of + *-ing* 54A, 62A, 66D
  think about and *think of* 134B
though 113E
  as though 118
  even though 112D, 113E
threaten (+ *to* …) 54A, 56A
throw
  throw to/at 132D
  throw away 137D, 145B
till see **until**
time
  it's the first time I've … 8C
  it's time … 35C
  countable or uncountable noun 70A
  on time and *in time* 122A
tired
  tired and *tiring* 98
  tired of 130C
to + infinitive (*to be / to do* etc.) see **infinitive**
to 126
  to + *-ing* 60C
  noun + *to* 129D
  adjective + *to* 130A, 131B
  verb + *to* 132, 136D
too and *enough* 103
top (*at the top*) 124C
translate (*from/into*) 136B
travel (uncountable noun) 70B
trouble (*have trouble doing something*) 63C
try
  try + *to* … or *-ing* 57A
  try out 139C
  try on 140C
turn
  turn out 139
  turn on/off 137D, 140A
  turn up 142A, 143E
  turn down 142
two-word verbs see **phrasal verbs**
typical (*of*) 131A

uncountable nouns 69–70
understand (*how/what* + *to* …) 54D
university (*university / the university*) 74B
unless 115A
until (or *till*)
  until + present simple / present perfect 25A–B
  until and *by* 120B
up (verb + *up*) 137, 142–144
upset (*about*) 130B
use (*it's no use* + *-ing*) 63A
used
  used to do 18
  be/get used to 61
  I am used to doing and *I used to do* 18F, 61D
usually (position of *usually*) 110

verbs see also **present**, **past**, **future**, **passive** etc.
  verbs not used in continuous tenses 4A, 6E, 10D, 16D, 17A
  list of irregular verbs Appendix 1.4
  present and past tenses Appendix 2
  verbs + *-ing* and verbs + *to* … (infinitive) 53–59
  verb + preposition 62, 132–136
    phrasal verbs (*break down / get on* etc.) 137–145

wait (*for*) 133B
want (+ *to* …) 55A, 66D
warn (+ *to* …) 55B
was/were 5D
  was/were -ing (past continuous) 6
  was/were going to 20D
  was/were able to 26D
  was and *were* in *if* sentences 39C
waste (*waste time* + *-ing*) 63D
weather (uncountable noun) 70B
well 101A
were (used with *I/he/she/it*) 39C, 118D
what
  what in questions 49
  what … *for?* 64C
  What … *!* (exclamations) 71A–B
  what and *that* (relative clauses) 92D, 93D
  what and *which* (relative clauses) 96C

when
  when + present simple / present perfect 25
  when and *if* 25D
  when + *-ing* 68A
  even when 112D
  when and *as* 116
where (in relative clauses) 94C, 95C
whether 50
which
  which in questions 49
  which in relative clauses 92–93, 95–96
  all/none/some of which 96B
while
  while + present simple / present perfect 25A
  while + *-ing* 68A
  while and *during* 119C
who
  who in questions 49
  who in relative clauses 92–96
  who and *whose* in relative clauses 94A
  who and *whom* in relative clauses 94B
whole 90B–C
  on the whole 127B
whom
  in questions 49C
  in relative clauses 94B, 96A–B
  all/none/some of whom 96B
whose (in relative clauses) 94A, 95C
why
  why isn't/didn't (etc.) … *?* 49D
  why in relative clauses 94D
will 21–22
  will you? 21, 37A
  will and *shall* 21D, 22D
  will and *going to* 23
  will be doing (future continuous) 24
  will have done (future perfect) 24
  will in *if and when* sentences 25, 115C
  will and *would* 36B, Appendix 4
  will in the passive 43A
  Don't … , will you? 52D
  will and other future forms Appendix 3
  will and other modal verbs Appendix 4
wish 41
  I wish I knew etc. 39, 41
  I wish I'd known etc. 40C, 41
  wish and *hope* 41A
  wish … would 41D
with
  noun + *with* 129E
  adjective + *with* 130B–C, 131B
  verb + *with* 136C
without (+ *-ing*) 60B
won't (= *will not*) 21–22
word order
  have something done 46
  questions 49
  negative questions 49D
  embedded questions (*Do you know what … ?*) 50A
  reported questions 50B
  order of adjectives 99
  verb and object together 109A
  place and time 109B
  position of adverbs with the verb (*also, always* etc.) 110
  word order with phrasal verbs (*turn on the light, turn it on* etc.) 137D
work
  uncountable noun 70B, 74C
  work out 139B
worried (*about*) 130B
worse 105C
worst 108A
worth (*it's worth* + *-ing*) 63B
would 36
  would and *will* 36B
  would you like? I'd like 37D
  would in *if* sentences 38–40
  wish … would 41D
  would like/love/hate/prefer + *to* … 55A, 58B–C
  would prefer 58B, 59B
  would rather 59C–D
  would and other modal verbs Appendix 4
write
  write to 132B
  write down 142D

yet
  yet and *still* 111C
  yet + present perfect 7D

Trusted by millions,
RIGHT FOR YOU.

CHOOSE
IN USE

For over 30 years, in Use has helped millions of learners around the world improve their grammar, vocabulary and pronunciation.

With clear explanations and essential practice exercises, in Use is perfect for self-study or to supplement the classroom.

cambridge.org/chooseinuse

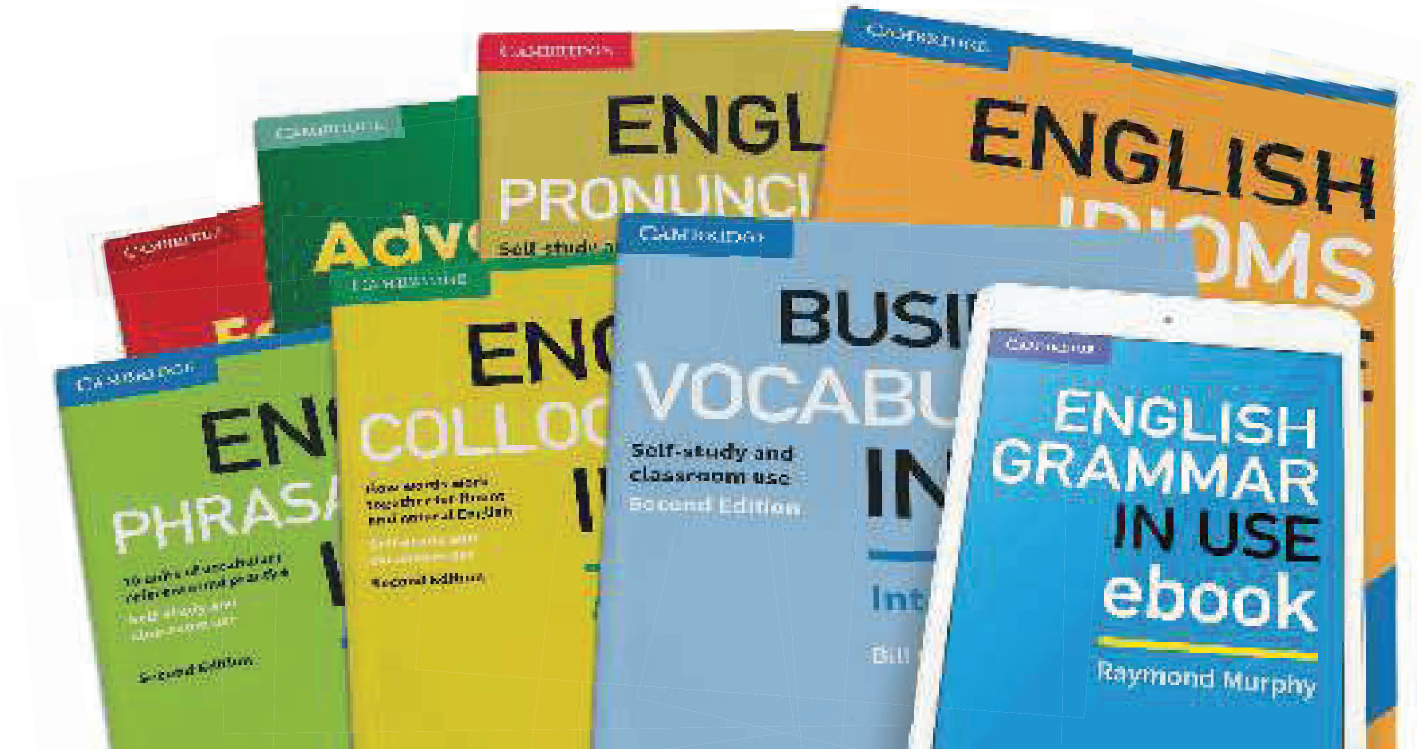
ENGL
PRONUNCI
ENGLISH
IDIOMS
Adv
EN
PHRAS
ENG
COLLOC
BUSI
VOCABU
Self-study and classroom use
Second Edition
ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE
ebook
Raymond Murphy

CAMBRIDGE

The world's best-selling grammar series

Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book
for elementary learners of English

Fourth Edition
with answers

Raymond Murphy

Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book
for elementary learners of English

Fourth Edition

with answers

Raymond Murphy

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/essentialgrammarinuse

Fourth Edition © Cambridge University Press 2015

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

Essential Grammar in Use first published 1990
Fourth edition 2015

S 300/31 g

Printed in Dubai by Oriental Press

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-1-107-48055-1 Edition with answers
ISBN 978-1-107-48053-7 Edition with answers and Interactive eBook
ISBN 978-1-107-48056-8 Edition without answers
ISBN 978-1-107-48061-2 Edition with Supplementary Exercises
ISBN 978-1-107-48060-5 Interactive eBook

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

Acknowledgements vii
To the student viii
To the teacher x

Present
1 **am/is/are**
2 **am/is/are** (questions)
3 **I am doing** (present continuous)
4 **are you doing?** (present continuous questions)
5 **I do/work/like** etc. (present simple)
6 **I don't ...** (present simple negative)
7 **Do you ... ?** (present simple questions)
8 **I am doing** (present continuous) and **I do** (present simple)
9 **I have ...** and **I've got ...**

Past
10 **was/were**
11 **worked/got/went** etc. (past simple)
12 **I didn't ...** **Did you ... ?** (past simple negative and questions)
13 **I was doing** (past continuous)
14 **I was doing** (past continuous) and **I did** (past simple)

Present perfect
15 **I have done** (present perfect 1)
16 **I've just ...** **I've already ...** **I haven't ... yet** (present perfect 2)
17 **Have you ever ... ?** (present perfect 3)
18 **How long have you ... ?** (present perfect 4)
19 **for** **since** **ago**
20 **I have done** (present perfect) and **I did** (past)

Passive
21 **is done** **was done** (passive 1)
22 **is being done** **has been done** (passive 2)

Verb forms
23 **be/have/do** in present and past tenses
24 Regular and irregular verbs

Future
25 **What are you doing tomorrow?**
26 **I'm going to ...**
27 **will/shall** 1
28 **will/shall** 2

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS TO STUDY, USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 271

Modals, imperative etc.

29 **might**
30 **can** and **could**
31 **must** **mustn't** **don't need to**
32 **should**
33 **I have to ...**
34 **Would you like ... ?** **I'd like ...**
35 **Do this!** **Don't do that!** **Let's do this!**
36 **I used to ...**

There *and* ***it***

37 **there is** **there are**
38 **there was/were** **there has/have been** **there will be**
39 **It ...**

Auxiliary verbs

40 **I am, I don't** etc.
41 **Have you?** **Are you?** **Don't you?** etc.
42 **too/either** **so am I / neither do I** etc.
43 **isn't, haven't, don't** etc. (negatives)

Questions

44 **is it ... ?** **have you ... ?** **do they ... ?** etc. (questions 1)
45 **Who saw you?** **Who did you see?** (questions 2)
46 **Who is she talking to?** **What is it like?** (questions 3)
47 **What ... ?** **Which ... ?** **How ... ?** (questions 4)
48 **How long does it take ... ?**
49 **Do you know where ... ?** **I don't know what ...** etc.

Reported speech

50 **She said that ...** **He told me that ...**

-ing *and* ***to ...***

51 **work/working** **go/going** **do/doing**
52 **to ... (I want to do)** and **-ing** **(I enjoy doing)**
53 **I want you to ...** **I told you to ...**
54 **I went to the shop to ...**

Go, get, do, make *and* ***have***

55 **go to ...** **go on ...** **go for ...** **go -ing**
56 **get**
57 **do** and **make**
58 **have**

Pronouns and possessives

59 **I/me** **he/him** **they/them** etc.
60 **my/his/their** etc.
61 **Whose** is this? It's **mine/yours/hers** etc.
62 **I/me/my/mine**
63 **myself/yourself/themselves** etc.
64 **-'s (Kate's** camera / **my brother's** car etc.)

A and the

65 **a/an ...**
66 **train(s)** **bus(es)** (singular and plural)
67 **a bottle** / **some water** (countable/uncountable 1)
68 **a cake** / **some cake** / **some cakes** (countable/uncountable 2)
69 **a/an** and **the**
70 **the ...**
71 **go to work** **go home** **go to the cinema**
72 I like **music** I hate **exams**
73 **the ...** (names of places)

Determiners and pronouns

74 **this/that/these/those**
75 **one/ones**
76 **some** and **any**
77 **not** + **any** **no** **none**
78 **not** + **anybody/anyone/anything** **nobody/no-one/nothing**
79 **somebody/anything/nowhere** etc.
80 **every** and **all**
81 **all** **most** **some** **any** **no/none**
82 **both** **either** **neither**
83 **a lot** **much** **many**
84 (a) **little** (a) **few**

Adjectives and adverbs

85 **old/nice/interesting** etc. (adjectives)
86 **quickly/badly/suddenly** etc. (adverbs)
87 **old/older** **expensive / more expensive**
88 **older than ...** **more expensive than ...**
89 **not as ... as**
90 **the oldest** **the most expensive**
91 **enough**
92 **too**

Word order

93 He **speaks English** very well. (word order 1)
94 **always/usually/often** etc. (word order 2)
95 **still** **yet** **already**
96 **Give me that book!** **Give it to me!**

Conjunctions and clauses

97 **and** **but** **or** **so** **because**
98 **When ...**
99 **If we go ...** **If you see ...** etc.
100 **If I had ...** **If we went ...** etc.
101 a person **who ...** a thing **that/which ...** (relative clauses 1)
102 the people **we met** the hotel **you stayed at** (relative clauses 2)

Prepositions

103 **at 8 o'clock** **on Monday** **in April**
104 **from … to** **until** **since** **for**
105 **before** **after** **during** **while**
106 **in** **at** **on** (places 1)
107 **in** **at** **on** (places 2)
108 **to** **in** **at** (places 3)
109 **under**, **behind**, **opposite** etc.
110 **up**, **over**, **through** etc.
111 **on** **at** **by** **with** **about**
112 **afraid of …** , **good at …** etc. **of/at/for** etc. (prepositions) + **-ing**
113 **listen to …** , **look at …** etc. (verb + preposition)

Phrasal verbs

114 **go in**, **fall off**, **run away** etc. (phrasal verbs 1)
115 **put on** your shoes **put** your shoes **on** (phrasal verbs 2)

Appendices

Appendix 1 Active and passive 243
Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs 244
Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups 245
Appendix 4 Short forms (**he's** / **I'd** / **don't** etc.) 246
Appendix 5 Spelling 248
Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (**take off** / **give up** etc.) 250
Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (**put out** a fire / **give up** your job etc.) 251

Additional exercises 252

Study guide 271

Key to Exercises 283
Key to Additional exercises 310
Key to Study guide 313

Index 315

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS TO STUDY, USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 271

To the student (working without a teacher)

This is a grammar book for elementary students of English. There are 115 units in the book and each unit is about a different point of English grammar. There is a list of units at the beginning of the book (*Contents*).

Do not study all the units in order from beginning to end. It is better to choose the units that you need to do. For example, if you have a problem with the present perfect (*I have been, he has done* etc.), study Units 15–20.

Use the *Contents* or the *Index* (at the back of the book) to find the unit (or units) that you need.

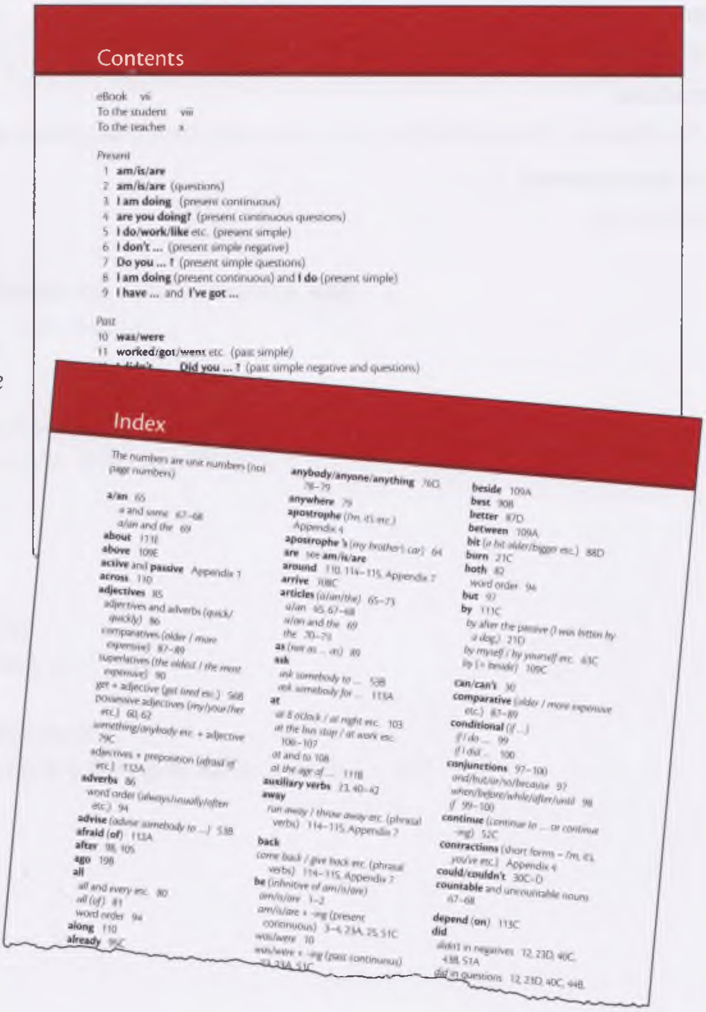

Contents

eBook vii
To the student viii
To the teacher x

Present
1 **am/is/are**
2 **am/is/are** (questions)
3 **I am doing** (present continuous)
4 **are you doing?** (present continuous questions)
5 **I do/work/like** etc. (present simple)
6 **I don't ...** (present simple negative)
7 **Do you ... ?** (present simple questions)
8 **I am doing** (present continuous) and **I do** (present simple)
9 **I have ...** and **I've got ...**

Past
10 **was/were**
11 **worked/got/went** etc. (past simple)
Did you ... ? (past simple negative and questions)

Index

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers)

a/an 65
a and *some* 67–68
a/an and *the* 69
about 111E
above 109E
active and **passive** Appendix 1
across 110
adjectives 85
adjectives and adverbs (*quick/quickly*) 86
comparatives (*older / more expensive*) 87–89
superlatives (*the oldest / the most expensive*) 90
get + adjective (*get tired* etc.) 56B
possessive adjectives (*my/your/her* etc.) 60, 62
something/anybody etc. + adjective 79C
adjectives + preposition (*afraid of* etc.) 112A
adverbs 86
word order (*always/usually/often* etc.) 94
advise (*advise somebody to ...*) 53B
afraid (of) 112A
after 98, 105
ago 19B
all
all and *every* etc. 80
all (of) 81
word order 94
along 110
already 95C
anybody/anyone/anything 76D, 78–79
anywhere 79
apostrophe (*I'm, it's* etc.) Appendix 4
apostrophe 's (*my brother's car*) 64
are see **am/is/are**
around 110, 114–115, Appendix 7
arrive 108C
articles (*a/an/the*) 65–73
a/an 65, 67–68
a/an and *the* 69
the 70–73
as (*not as ... as*) 89
ask
ask somebody to ... 53B
ask somebody for ... 113A
at
at 8 o'clock / at night etc. 103
at the bus stop / at work etc. 106–107
at and *to* 108
at the age of ... 111B
auxiliary verbs 23, 40–42
away
run away / throw away etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7
back
come back / give back etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7
be (infinitive of *am/is/are*)
am/is/are 1–2
am/is/are + *-ing* (present continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
was/were 10
was/were + *-ing* (past continuous) 13, 23A, 51C
beside 109A
best 90B
better 87D
between 109A
bit (*a bit older/bigger* etc.) 88D
born 21C
both 82
word order 94
but 97
by 111C
by after the passive (*I was bitten by a dog.*) 21D
by myself / by yourself etc. 63C
by (= *beside*) 109C
can/can't 30
comparative (*older / more expensive* etc.) 87–89
conditional (*if ...*)
if I do ... 99
if I did ... 100
conjunctions 97–100
and/but/or/so/because 97
when/before/while/after/until 98
if 99–100
continue (*continue to ...* or *continue -ing*) 52C
contractions (short forms – *I'm, it's, you've* etc.) Appendix 4
could/couldn't 30C–D
countable and uncountable nouns 67–68
depend (on) 113C
did
didn't in negatives 12, 23D, 40C, 43B, 51A
did in questions 12, 23D, 40C, 44B

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the *Study guide* at the back of the book.

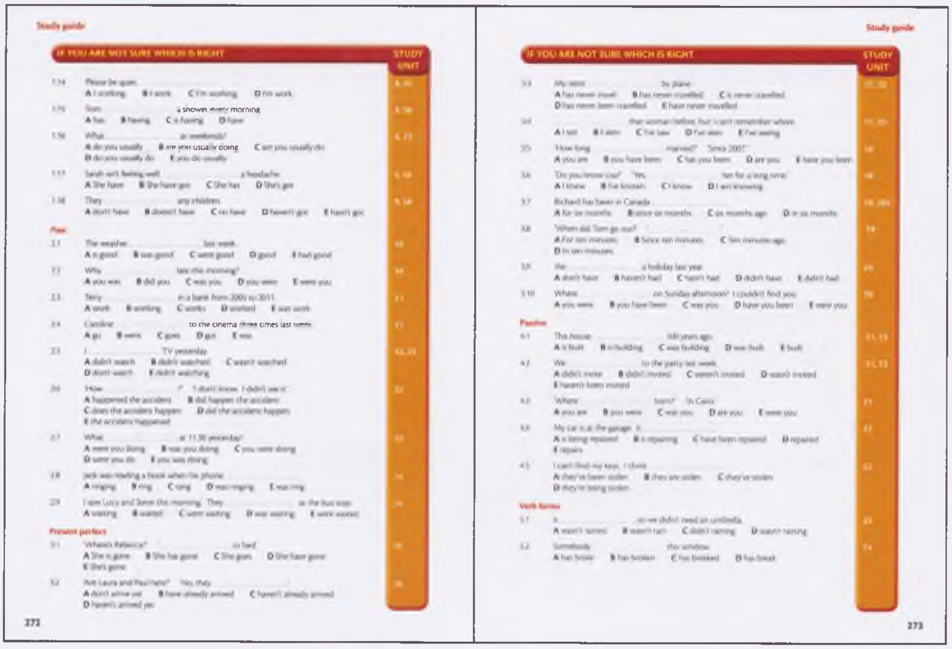

Study guide (pages 271–282)

Each unit is two pages. The information is on the left-hand page and the exercises are on the right:

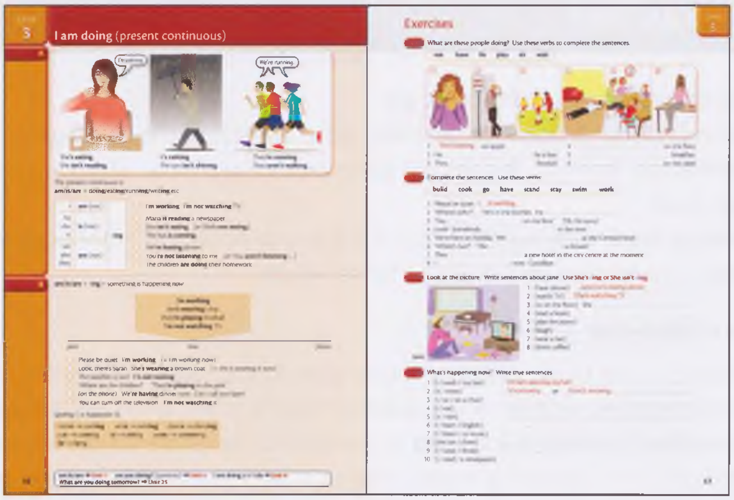

Information

Exercises

Study the left-hand page (information), and then do the exercises on the right-hand page.

Use the *Key* to check your answers. The *Key* is on pages 283–309.

Study the left-hand page again if necessary.

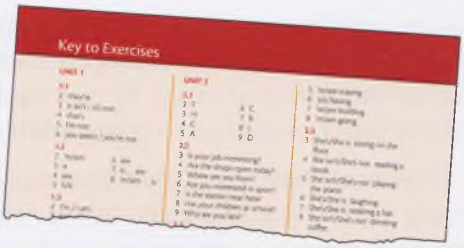

Don't forget the seven *Appendices* at the back of the book (pages 243–251). These will give you information about active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms, spelling and phrasal verbs.

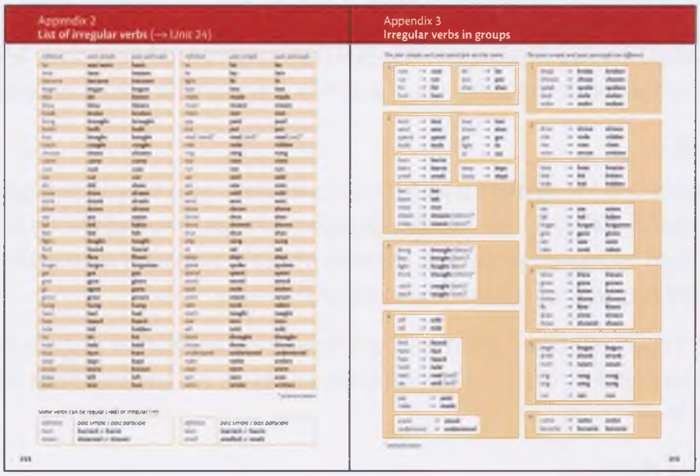

There are also *Additional exercises* at the back of the book (pages 252–270). There is a list of these exercises on page 252.

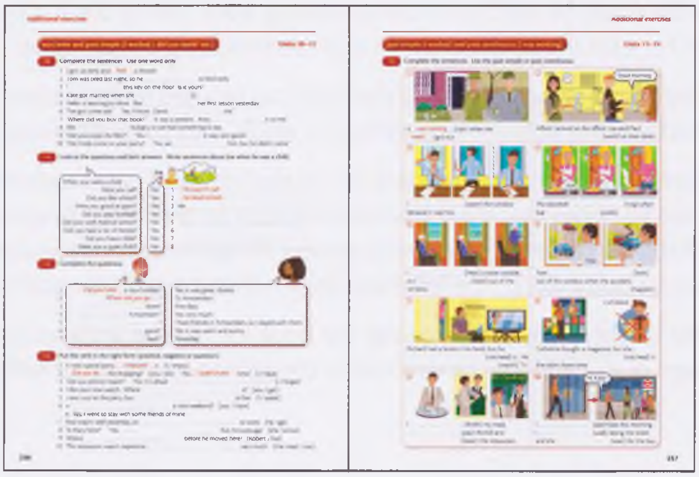

To the teacher

The most important features of this book are:

- ○ It is a grammar book. It does not deal with other aspects of the language.
- ○ It is for elementary learners. It does not cover areas of grammar which are not normally taught at elementary level.
- ○ It is a reference book with exercises. It is not a course book and is not organised progressively.
- ○ It is addressed to learners and intended for self-study.

Organisation of the book

There are 115 units in the book, each one focusing on a particular area of grammar. The material is organised in grammatical categories, such as tenses, questions and articles. Units are *not* ordered according to difficulty, and should therefore be selected and used in the order appropriate for the learner(s). The book should *not* be worked through from beginning to end. The units are listed in the *Contents* and there is a comprehensive *Index* at the end of the book.

Each unit has the same format consisting of two facing pages. The grammar point is presented and explained on the left-hand page and the corresponding exercises are on the right. There are seven *Appendices* (pages 243–251) dealing with active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms (contractions), spelling and phrasal verbs. It might be useful for teachers to draw students' attention to these.

At the back of the book there is a set of *Additional exercises* (pages 252–270). These exercises provide 'mixed' practice bringing together grammar points from a number of different units (especially those concerning verb forms). There are 35 exercises in this section and there is a full list on page 252.

Also at the back of the book there is a *Study guide* to help students decide which units to study – see page 271.

Finally, there is a *Key* (pages 283–309) for students to check their answers to all the exercises in the book. An edition without the *Study guide* and *Key* is available for teachers who would prefer it for their students.

Level

The book is for elementary learners, i.e. learners with very little English, but not for complete beginners. It is intended mainly for elementary students who are beyond the early stages of a beginners' course. It could also be used by low-intermediate learners whose grammar is weaker than other aspects of their English or who have problems with particular areas of basic grammar.

The explanations are addressed to the elementary learner and are therefore as simple and as short as possible. The vocabulary used in the examples and exercises has also been restricted so that the book can be used at this level.

Using the book

The book can be used by students working alone (see *To the student*) or as supplementary course material. In either case the book can serve as an elementary grammar book.

When used as course material, the book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help and practice.

In some cases it may be desirable to use the left-hand pages (presentation and explanation) in class, but it should be noted that these have been written for individual study and reference. In most cases, it would probably be better for teachers to present the grammar point in their preferred way with the exercises being done for homework. The left-hand page is then available for later reference by the student.

Some teachers may prefer to keep the book for revision and remedial work. In this case, individual students or groups of students can be directed to the appropriate units for self-study and practice.

Unit
1

am/is/are

A

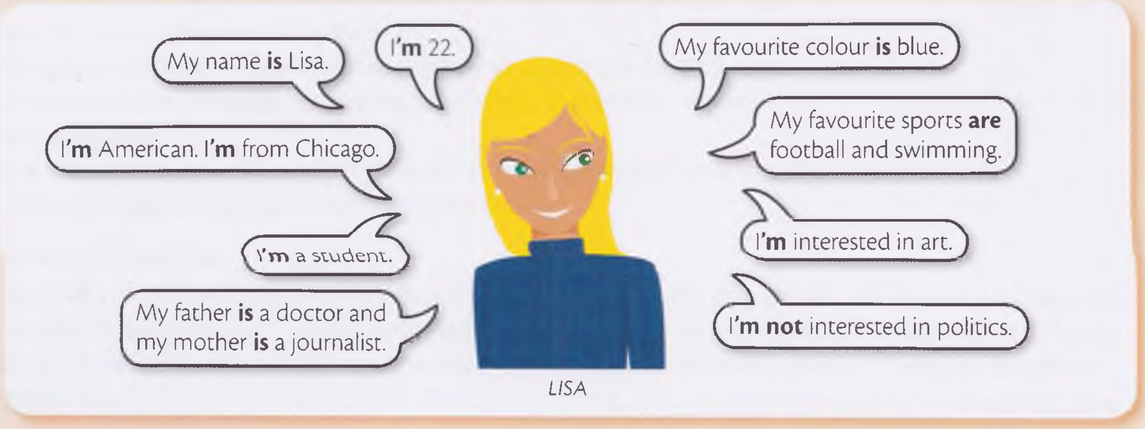
My name **is** Lisa.
I**'m** 22.
I**'m** American. I**'m** from Chicago.
I**'m** a student.
My father **is** a doctor and my mother **is** a journalist.
My favourite colour **is** blue.
My favourite sports **are** football and swimming.
I**'m** interested in art.
I**'m not** interested in politics.
LISA

B

positive

I	**am**	(I**'m**)
he she it	**is**	(he**'s**) (she**'s**) (it**'s**)
we you they	**are**	(we**'re**) (you**'re**) (they**'re**)

short form

negative

I	**am not**	(I**'m not**)		
he she it	**is not**	(he**'s not** (she**'s not** (it**'s not**	*or* *or* *or*	he **isn't**) she **isn't**) it **isn't**)
we you they	**are not**	(we**'re not** (you**'re not** (they**'re not**	*or* *or* *or*	we **aren't**) you **aren't**) they **aren't**)

short forms

- ○ I**'m** cold. Can you close the window, please?
- ○ I**'m** 32 years old. My sister **is** 29.
- ○ Steve **is** ill. He**'s** in bed.
- ○ My brother **is** scared of dogs.
- ○ It**'s** ten o'clock. You**'re** late again.
- ○ Ann and I **are** good friends.
- ○ Your keys **are** on the table.

- ○ I**'m** tired, but I**'m not** hungry.
- ○ Lisa **isn't** interested in politics. She**'s** interested in art.
- ○ James **isn't** a teacher. He**'s** a student.
- ○ Those people **aren't** English. They**'re** Australian.
- ○ It**'s** sunny today, but it **isn't** warm.

I'm scared of dogs.
Woof !!!!

C

that**'s** = that **is**   there**'s** = there **is**   here**'s** = here **is**

- ○ Thank you. That**'s** very kind of you.
- ○ Look! There**'s** Chris.
- ○ 'Here**'s** your key.' 'Thank you.'

Here's your key.
Thank you.

am/is/are (questions) ➜ Unit 2   there is/are ➜ Unit 37   a/an ➜ Unit 65   short forms ➜ Appendix 4

Exercises

1.1 Write the short form (**she's / we aren't** etc.).

1 she is ......she's......
2 they are ....
3 it is not ....
4 that is ....
5 I am not ....
6 you are not ....

1.2 Write **am, is** or **are.**

1 The weather ......is...... nice today.
2 I .... not rich.
3 This bag .... heavy.
4 These bags .... heavy.
5 Look! There .... Helen.
6 My brother and I .... good tennis players.
7 Emily .... at home. Her children .... at school.
8 I .... a taxi driver. My sister .... a nurse.

1.3 Complete the sentences.

1 Steve is ill. ......He's...... in bed.
2 I'm not hungry, but .... thirsty.
3 Mr Thomas is a very old man. .... 98.
4 These chairs aren't beautiful, but .... comfortable.
5 The weather is nice today. .... warm and sunny.
6 '.................. late.' 'No, I'm not. I'm early!'
7 Catherine isn't at home. .... at work.
8 '.................. your coat.' 'Oh, thank you very much.'

1.4 Look at Lisa's sentences in 1A. Now write sentences about yourself.

1 (name?) My ....
2 (age?) I ....
3 (from?) I ....
4 (job?) I ....
5 (favourite colour or colours?) My ....
6 (interested in ... ?) I ....

1.5 Write sentences for the pictures. Use:

angry **cold** **hot** **hungry** **scared** ~~**thirsty**~~

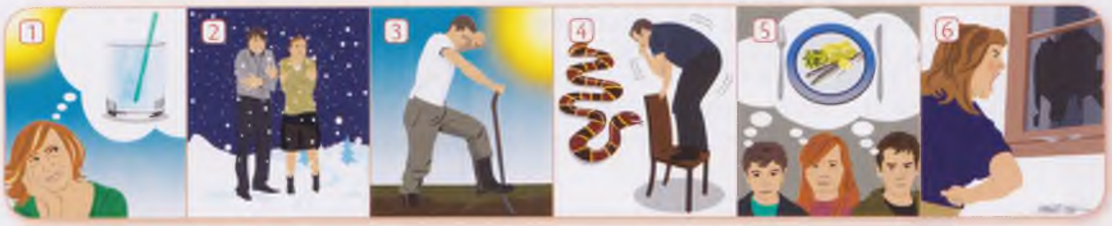

1 ......She's thirsty.......
2 They ....
3 He ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

1.6 Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use **is/isn't** or **are/aren't.**

1 (it / hot today) ......It isn't hot today...... or ......It's hot today......
2 (it / windy today) It ....
3 (my hands / cold) My ....
4 (Brazil / a very big country) ....
5 (diamonds / cheap) ....
6 (Toronto / in the US) ....

Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use **I'm / I'm not.**

7 (tired) ......I'm tired...... or ......I'm not tired......
8 (hungry) I ....
9 (a good swimmer) ....
10 (interested in football) ....

→ **Additional exercise 1** (page 252)

Unit
2

am/is/are (questions)

A

positive	
I	**am**
he she it	**is**
we you they	**are**

question	
am	I?
is	he? she? it?
are	we? you? they?

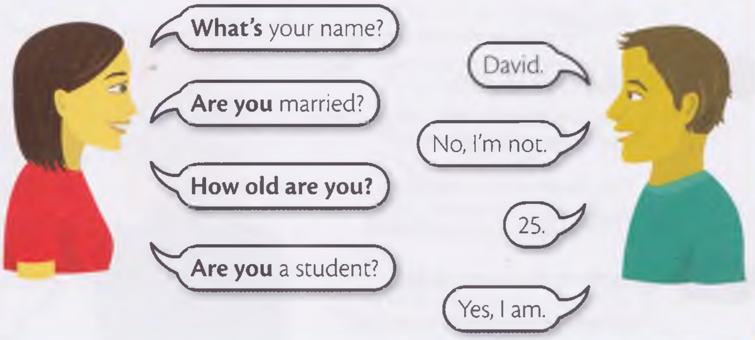
What's your name?
David.
Are you married?
No, I'm not.
How old are you?
25.
Are you a student?
Yes, I am.

- ○ '**Am I** late?' 'No, **you're** on time.'
- ○ '**Is your mother** at home?' 'No, **she's** out.'
- ○ '**Are your parents** at home?' 'No, **they're** out.'
- ○ '**Is it** cold in your room?' 'Yes, a little.'
- ○ **Your shoes are** nice. **Are they** new?

We say:

- ○ **Is she** at home? / **Is your mother** at home? (*not* Is at home your mother?)
- ○ **Are they** new? / **Are your shoes** new? (*not* Are new your shoes?)

B

Where ... **? / What** ... **? / Who** ... **? / How** ... **? / Why** ... **?**

- ○ **Where is** your mother? Is she at home?
- ○ '**Where are** you from?' 'Canada.'
- ○ '**What colour is** your car?' 'It's red.'
- ○ '**How old is** Joe?' 'He's 24.'
- ○ **How are** your parents? Are they well?
- ○ These shoes are nice. **How much are** they?
- ○ This hotel isn't very good. **Why is** it so expensive?

what'**s** = what **is** who'**s** = who **is** how'**s** = how **is** where'**s** = where **is**

- ○ **What's** the time?
- ○ **Where's** Lucy?
- ○ **Who's** that man?
- ○ **How's** your father?

C

Short answers

Yes,	I	**am**.
	he she it	**is**.
	we you they	**are**.

No,	I'**m**	**not**.
	he'**s** she'**s** it'**s**	
	we'**re** you'**re** they'**re**	

or

No,	he she it	**isn't**.
	we you they	**aren't**.

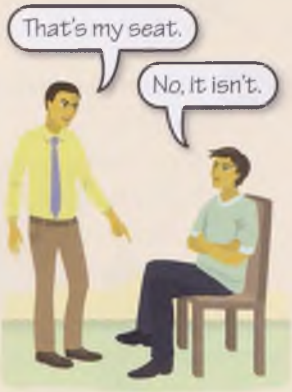
That's my seat.
No, it isn't.

- ○ 'Are you tired?' '**Yes, I am.**'
- ○ 'Are you hungry?' '**No, I'm not**, but I'm thirsty.'
- ○ 'Is your friend English?' '**Yes, he is.**'
- ○ 'Are these your keys?' '**Yes, they are.**'
- ○ 'That's my seat.' '**No, it isn't.**'

am/is/are ➔ **Unit 1** questions ➔ **Unit 44** **what/which/how** ➔ **Unit 47**

Exercises

2.1 Find the right answers for the questions.

1 Where's the camera?
2 Is your car blue?
3 Is Kate from London?
4 Am I late?
5 Where's Amy from?
6 What colour is your bag?
7 Are you hungry?
8 How is George?
9 Who's that woman?

A London.
B No, I'm not.
C Yes, you are.
D My sister.
E Black.
F No, it's black.
G In your bag.
H No, she's American.
I Very well.

1 G
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....

2.2 Make questions with these words.

1 (is / at home / your mother) Is your mother at home ?
2 (your parents / are / well) Are your parents well ?
3 (interesting / is / your job) .... ?
4 (the shops / are / open today) .... ?
5 (from / where / you / are) .... ?
6 (interested in sport / you / are) .... ?
7 (is / near here / the station) .... ?
8 (at school / are / your children) .... ?
9 (you / are / late / why) .... ?

2.3 Complete the questions. Use **What ... / Who ... / Where ... / How ... .**

1 How are your parents?	They're very well.
2 .... the bus stop?	At the end of the street.
3 .... your children?	Five, six and ten.
4 .... these oranges?	£1.50 a kilo.
5 .... your favourite sport?	Skiing.
6 .... the man in this photo?	That's my father.
7 .... your new shoes?	Black.

2.4 Write the questions.

1 (name?) What's your name?	Paul.
2 (American?)	No, I'm Australian.
3 (how old?)	I'm 30.
4 (a teacher?)	No, I'm a lawyer.
5 (married?)	Yes, I am.
6 (wife a lawyer?)	No, she's a designer.
7 (from?)	She's Italian.
8 (her name?)	Anna.
9 (how old?)	She's 27.

2.5 Write short answers (**Yes, I am. / No, he isn't.** etc.).

1 Are you married? No, I'm not.
2 Are you thirsty? ....
3 Is it cold today? ....
4 Are your hands cold? ....
5 Is it dark now? ....
6 Are you a teacher? ....

→ **Additional exercises 1–2** (pages 252–53)

Unit 3

I am doing (present continuous)

A

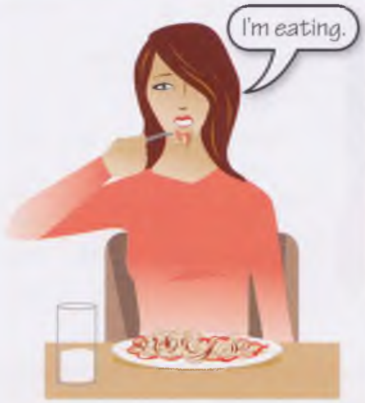

She**'s eating**.
She **isn't reading**.

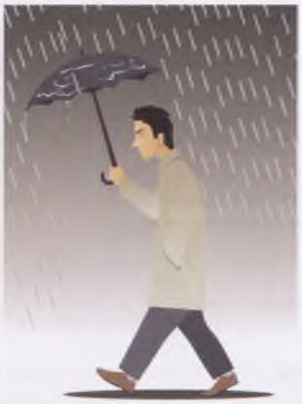

It**'s raining**.
The sun **isn't shining**.

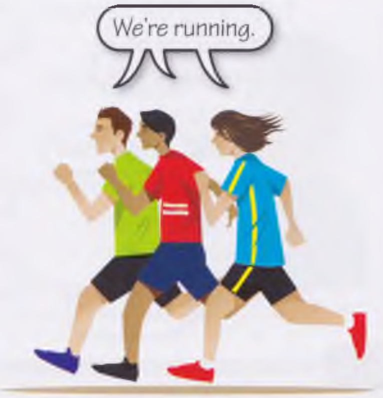
We're running.

They**'re running**.
They **aren't walking**.

The present continuous is:
am/**is**/**are** + do**ing**/eat**ing**/runn**ing**/writ**ing** etc.

I	**am** (not)	**-ing**
he she it	**is** (not)	
we you they	**are** (not)	

○ I**'m working**. I**'m not watching** TV.

○ Maria **is reading** a newspaper.
○ She **isn't eating**. (*or* She**'s not eating**.)
○ The bus **is coming**.

○ We**'re having** dinner.
○ You**'re not listening** to me. (*or* You **aren't listening** ...)
○ The children **are doing** their homework.

B

am/**is**/**are** + **-ing** = something is happening *now*:

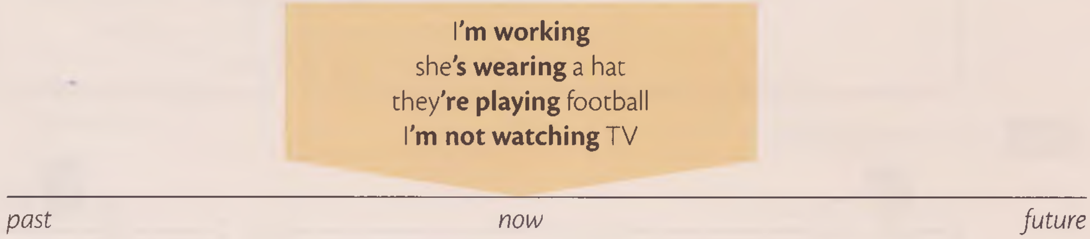

I**'m working**
she**'s wearing** a hat
they**'re playing** football
I**'m not watching** TV

past *now* *future*

○ Please be quiet. I**'m working**. (= I'm working now)
○ Look, there's Sarah. She**'s wearing** a brown coat. (= she is wearing it now)
○ The weather is nice. It**'s not raining**.
○ 'Where are the children?' 'They**'re playing** in the park.'
○ *(on the phone)* We**'re having** dinner now. Can I call you later?
○ You can turn off the television. I**'m not watching** it.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

com**e** → com**ing** writ**e** → writ**ing** danc**e** → danc**ing**
ru**n** → ru**nn**ing si**t** → si**tt**ing swi**m** → swi**mm**ing
lie → **ly**ing

am/is/are ➜ Unit 1 **are you doing?** (questions) ➜ Unit 4 **I am doing** and **I do** ➜ Unit 8
What are you doing tomorrow? ➜ Unit 25

Exercises

3.1 What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:

~~eat~~ **have** **lie** **play** **sit** **wait**

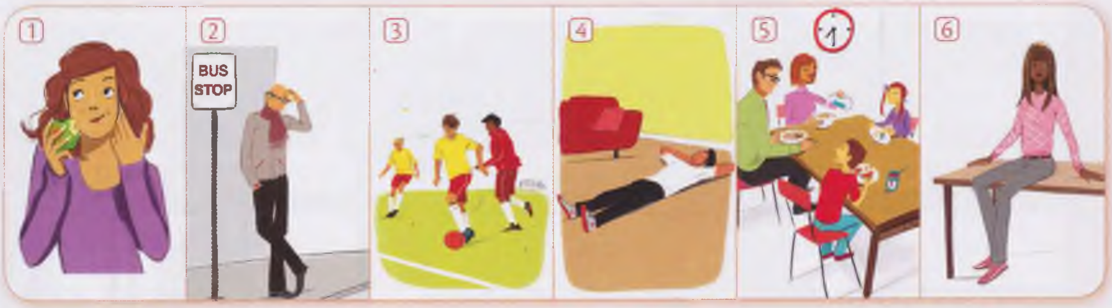

1 ....She's eating.......... an apple.
2 He .... for a bus.
3 They .... football.
4 .... on the floor.
5 .... breakfast.
6 .... on the table.

3.2 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:

build **cook** **go** **have** **stand** **stay** **swim** ~~work~~

1 Please be quiet. I ....'m working.......... .
2 'Where's John?' 'He's in the kitchen. He ....'
3 'You .... on my foot.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
4 Look! Somebody .... in the river.
5 We're here on holiday. We .... at the Central Hotel.
6 'Where's Sue?' 'She .... a shower.'
7 They .... a new hotel in the city centre at the moment.
8 I .... now. Goodbye.

3.3 Look at the picture. Write sentences about Jane. Use **She's -ing** or **She isn't -ing**.

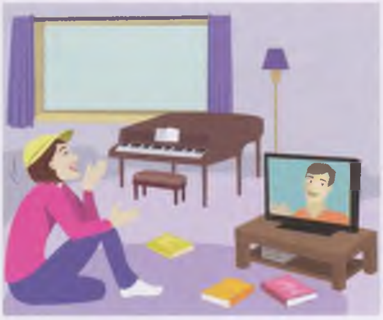

Jane

1 (have dinner) ....Jane isn't having dinner..........
2 (watch TV) ....She's watching TV..........
3 (sit on the floor) She ....
4 (read a book) ....
5 (play the piano) ....
6 (laugh) ....
7 (wear a hat) ....
8 (drink coffee) ....

3.4 What's happening now? Write true sentences.

1 (I / wash / my hair) ....I'm not washing my hair..........
2 (it / snow) ....It's snowing.......... or ....It isn't snowing..........
3 (I / sit / on a chair) ....
4 (I / eat) ....
5 (it / rain) ....
6 (I / learn / English) ....
7 (I / listen / to music) ....
8 (the sun / shine) ....
9 (I / wear / shoes) ....
10 (I / read / a newspaper) ....

Unit 4

are you doing?
(present continuous questions)

A

positive

I	**am**	**doing** **working** **going** **staying** etc.
he she it	**is**	
we you they	**are**	

question

am	I	**doing** **working** **going** **staying** etc.
is	he she it	
are	we you they	

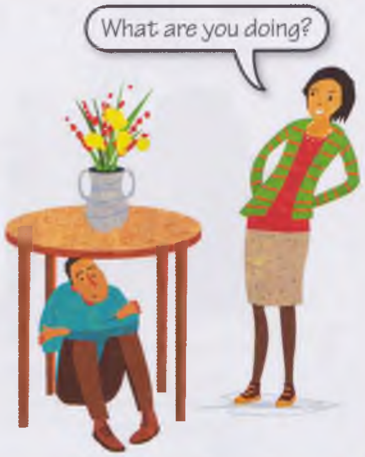
What are you doing?

- ○ '**Are** you **feeling** OK?' 'Yes, I'm fine, thanks.'
- ○ '**Is** it **raining**?' 'Yes, take an umbrella.'
- ○ Why **are** you **wearing** a coat? It's not cold.
- ○ 'What**'s** Paul **doing**?' 'He**'s studying** for his exams.'
- ○ 'What **are** the children **doing**?' 'They**'re watching** TV.'
- ○ Look, there's Emily! Where**'s** she **going**?
- ○ Who **are** you **waiting** for? **Are** you **waiting** for Sue?

B

Study the word order:

is/are + *subject* + **-ing**

	Is	he	**working** today?
	Is	Ben	**working** today? (*not* Is working Ben today?)
Where	**are**	they	**going**?
Where	**are**	those people	**going**? (*not* Where are going those people?)

C

Short answers

Yes,	I	**am**.
	he she it	**is**.
	we you they	**are**.

No,	I**'m**	**not**.
	he**'s** she**'s** it**'s**	
	we**'re** you**'re** they**'re**	

or

No,	he she it	**isn't**.
	we you they	**aren't**.

- ○ '**Are** you **going** now?' '**Yes, I am.**'
- ○ '**Is** Ben **working** today?' '**Yes, he is.**'
- ○ '**Is** it **raining**?' '**No, it isn't.**'
- ○ '**Are** your friends **staying** at a hotel?' '**No, they aren't.** They're staying with me.'

I am doing ➜ **Unit 3** **What are you doing tomorrow?** ➜ **Unit 25** questions ➜ **Units 44–47**

Exercises

4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.

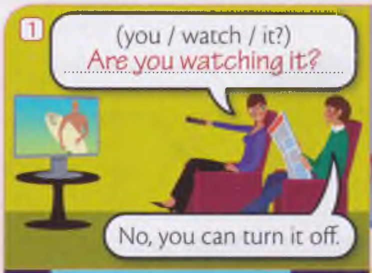

1 (you / watch / it?) Are you watching it?

No, you can turn it off.

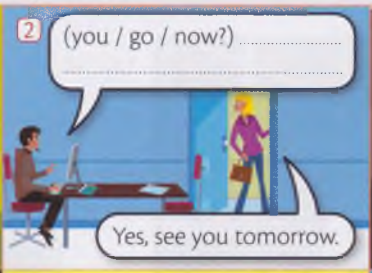

2 (you / go / now?) ……………

Yes, see you tomorrow.

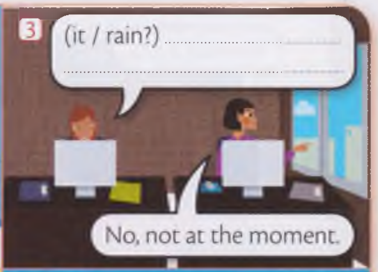

3 (it / rain?) ……………

No, not at the moment.

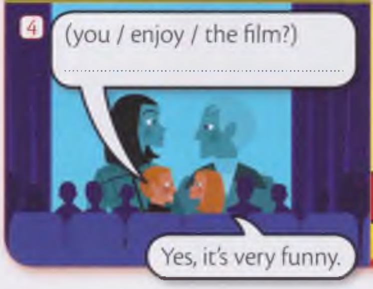

4 (you / enjoy / the film?) ……………

Yes, it's very funny.

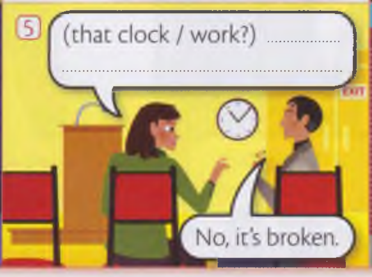

5 (that clock / work?) ……………

No, it's broken.

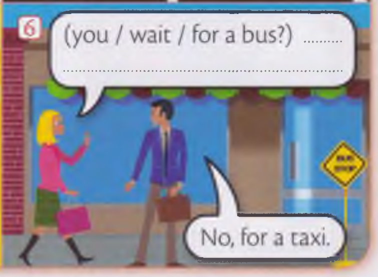

6 (you / wait / for a bus?) ……………

No, for a taxi.

4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use:

cry eat go laugh look at ~~read~~

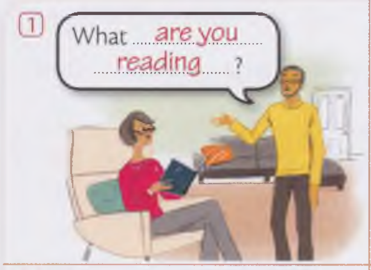

1 What are you reading ?

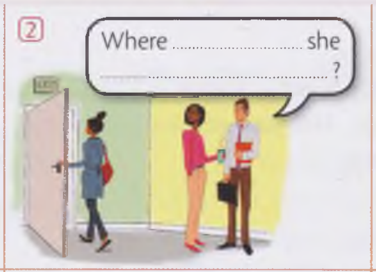

2 Where …………… she …………… ?

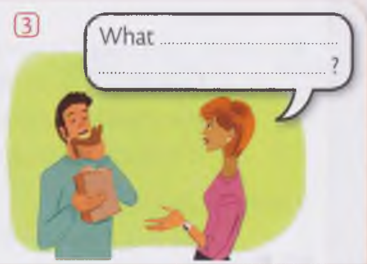

3 What …………… ?

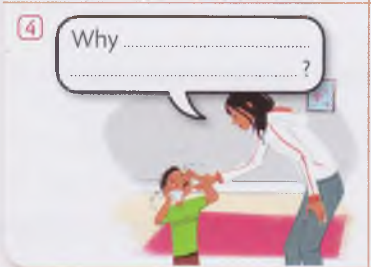

4 Why …………… ?

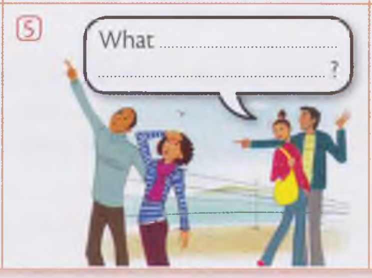

5 What …………… ?

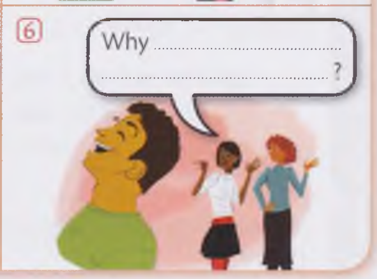

6 Why …………… ?

4.3 Make questions from these words. Put the words in the right order.

1 (is / working / Ben / today) Is Ben working today ?
2 (what / the children / are / doing) What are the children doing ?
3 (you / are / listening / to me) …………… ?
4 (where / your friends / are / going) …………… ?
5 (are / watching / your parents / TV) …………… ?
6 (what / Jessica / is / cooking) …………… ?
7 (why / you / are / looking / at me) …………… ?
8 (is / coming / the bus) …………… ?

4.4 Write short answers (**Yes, I am.** / **No, he isn't.** etc.).

1 Are you watching TV? No, I'm not.
2 Are you wearing a watch? ……………
3 Are you eating something? ……………
4 Is it raining? ……………
5 Are you sitting on the floor? ……………
6 Are you feeling well? ……………

→ **Additional exercise 3** (page 253)

Unit
5

I do/work/like etc. (present simple)

A

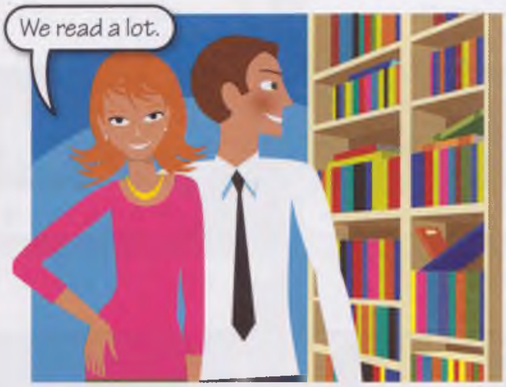
We read a lot.

They have a lot of books.
They **read** a lot.

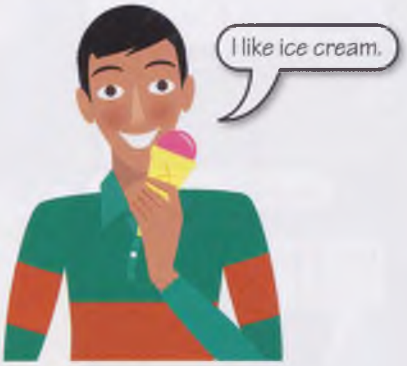
I like ice cream.

He's eating an ice cream.
He **likes** ice cream.

They **read** / he **likes** / I **work** etc. = the *present simple*:

I/we/you/they	**read**	**like**	**work**	**live**	**watch**	**do**	**have**
he/she/it	**reads**	**likes**	**works**	**lives**	**watches**	**does**	**has**

Remember:
he works / **she** lives / **it** rains etc.

○ **I work** in a shop. **My brother works** in a bank. (*not* My brother work)
○ **Lucy lives** in London. **Her parents live** in Scotland.
○ **It rains** a lot in winter.

I **have** → he/she/it **has**:

○ **Joe has** a shower every day.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

-es after **-s** / **-sh** / **-ch**:	pass → pass**es**	finish → finish**es**	watch → watch**es**
-y → **-ies**:	study → stud**ies**	try → tr**ies**	
also:	do → do**es**	go → go**es**	

B

We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:

○ I **like** big cities.
○ Your English is good. You **speak** very well.
○ Tom **works** very hard. He **starts** at 7.30 and **finishes** at 8 o'clock in the evening.
○ The earth **goes** round the sun.
○ We **do** a lot of different things in our free time.
○ It **costs** a lot of money to build a hospital.

C

always/never/often/usually/sometimes + present simple

○ Sue **always gets** to work early. (*not* Sue gets always)
○ I **never eat** breakfast. (*not* I eat never)
○ We **often go** away at weekends.
○ Mark **usually plays** football on Sundays.
○ I **sometimes walk** to work, but not very often.

I don't ... (negative) ➜ Unit 6 **Do you** ... ? (questions) ➜ Unit 7 **I am doing** and **I do** ➜ Unit 8
always/usually/often etc. (word order) ➜ Unit 94

Exercises

5.1 Write these verbs with **-s** or **-es.**

1 (read) she reads........
2 (think) he ....
3 (fly) it ....
4 (dance) he ....
5 (have) she ....
6 (finish) it ....

5.2 Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use:

eat go live ~~play~~ play sleep

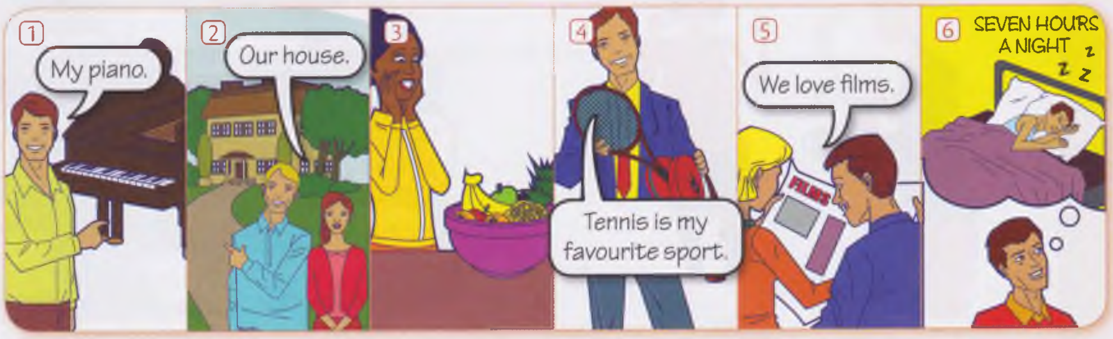

1 He plays........ the piano.
2 They .... in a very big house.
3 .... a lot of fruit.
4 .... tennis.
5 .... to the cinema a lot.
6 .... seven hours a night.

5.3 Complete the sentences. Use:

boil close cost cost like like meet open ~~speak~~ teach wash

1 Maria speaks.... four languages.
2 The shops in the city centre usually .... at 9 o'clock in the morning.
3 The City Museum .... at 5 o'clock in the evening.
4 Tina is a teacher. She .... mathematics to young children.
5 My job is very interesting. I .... a lot of people.
6 Peter's car is always dirty. He never .... it.
7 Food is expensive. It .... a lot of money.
8 Shoes are expensive. They .... a lot of money.
9 Water .... at 100 degrees Celsius.
10 Laura and I are good friends. I .... her and she .... me.

5.4 Write sentences from these words. Use the right form of the verb (**arrive** or **arrives** etc.).

1 (always / early / Sue / arrive) Sue always arrives early.
2 (to the cinema / never / I / go) I ....
3 (work / Martina / hard / always) ....
4 (like / chocolate / children / usually) ....
5 (Jackie / parties / enjoy / always) ....
6 (often / people's names / I / forget) ....
7 (TV / Sam / watch / never) ....
8 (usually / dinner / we / have / at 7.30) ....
9 (Kate / always / nice clothes / wear) ....

5.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use **always/never/often/usually/sometimes.**

1 (watch TV in the evening) I usually watch TV in the evening.
2 (read in bed) I ....
3 (get up before 7 o'clock) ....
4 (go to work/school by bus) ....
5 (drink coffee in the morning) ....

Unit
6

I don't ... (present simple negative)

A

The present simple negative is **don't/doesn't** + *verb*:

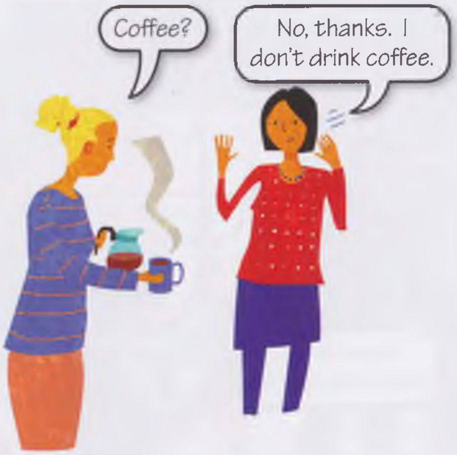
Coffee?
No, thanks. I don't drink coffee.

She **doesn't drink** coffee.

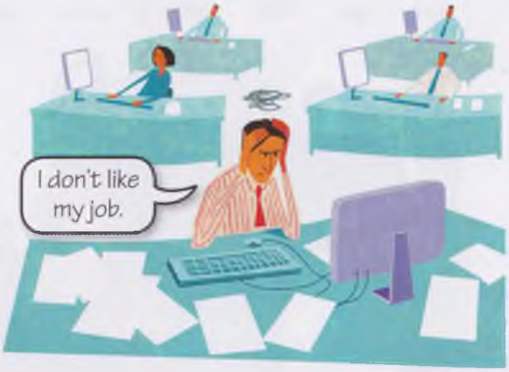
I don't like my job.

He **doesn't like** his job.

positive

I we you they	**work** **like** **do** **have**
he she it	**works** **likes** **does** **has**

negative

I we you they	**don't** (**do not**)	**work** **like** **do** **have**
he she it	**doesn't** (**does not**)	

- ☐ I **drink** coffee, but I **don't drink** tea.
- ☐ Sue **drinks** tea, but she **doesn't drink** coffee.
- ☐ You **don't work** very hard.
- ☐ We **don't watch** TV very often.
- ☐ The weather is usually nice. It **doesn't rain** very often.
- ☐ Sam and Chris **don't know** many people.

B

Remember:

I/we/you/they	**don't** ...
he/she/it	**doesn't** ...

- ☐ **I don't** like football.
- ☐ **He doesn't** like football.

- ☐ **I don't** like Fred and **Fred doesn't** like me. (*not* Fred don't like)
- ☐ **My car doesn't** use much petrol. (*not* My car don't use)
- ☐ Sometimes he is late, but **it doesn't** happen very often.

C

We use **don't/doesn't** + *infinitive* (don't **like** / doesn't **speak** / doesn't **do** etc.):

- ☐ I **don't like** washing the car. I **don't do** it very often.
- ☐ Sarah **speaks** Spanish, but she **doesn't speak** Italian. (*not* doesn't speaks)
- ☐ David **doesn't do** his job very well. (*not* David doesn't his job)
- ☐ Paula **doesn't** usually **have** breakfast. (*not* doesn't ... has)

I do/work/like etc. (present simple) ➜ **Unit 5** **Do you** ... ? (present simple questions) ➜ **Unit 7**

Exercises

6.1 Write the negative.

1 I play the piano very well. I don't play the piano very well.
2 Anna plays the piano very well. Anna ....
3 They know my phone number. They ....
4 We work very hard. ....
5 He has a bath every day. ....
6 You do the same thing every day. ....

6.2 Study the information and write sentences with **like**.

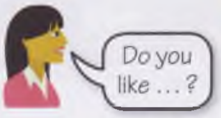

	Ben and Sophie	Kate	You
1 classical music?	yes	no	**?**
2 boxing?	no	yes	
3 horror movies?	yes	no	

1 Ben and Sophie like classical music.
Kate ....
I .... classical music.

2 Ben and Sophie ....
Kate ....
I ....

3 ....
....
....

6.3 Write about yourself. Use:

I never ... or **I often ...** or **I don't ... very often.**

1 (watch TV) I don't watch TV very often. or I never watch TV. or
I often watch TV.
2 (go to the theatre) ....
3 (ride a bike) ....
4 (eat in restaurants) ....
5 (travel by train) ....

6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use **don't/doesn't** + these verbs:

cost go know ~~rain~~ see use wear

1 The weather here is usually nice. It doesn't rain much.
2 Paul has a car, but he .... it very often.
3 Paul and his friends like films, but they .... to the cinema very often.
4 Amanda is married, but she .... a ring.
5 I .... much about politics. I'm not interested in it.
6 The Regent Hotel isn't expensive. It .... much to stay there.
7 Ed lives very near us, but we .... him very often.

6.5 Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

1 Margaret speaks four languages – English, French, German and Spanish. (speak)
2 I don t like my job. It's very boring. (like)
3 'Where's Steve?' 'I'm sorry. I ....' (know)
4 Sue is a very quiet person. She .... very much. (talk)
5 Andy .... a lot of tea. It's his favourite drink. (drink)
6 It's not true! I .... it! (believe)
7 That's a very beautiful picture. I .... it very much. (like)
8 Mark is a vegetarian. He .... meat. (eat)

Unit 7

Do you ... ? (present simple questions)

A We use **do/does** in present simple questions:

positive

I we you they	**work** **like** **do** **have**
he she it	**works** **likes** **does** **has**

question

do	I we you they	**work?** **like?** **do?** **have?**
does	he she it	

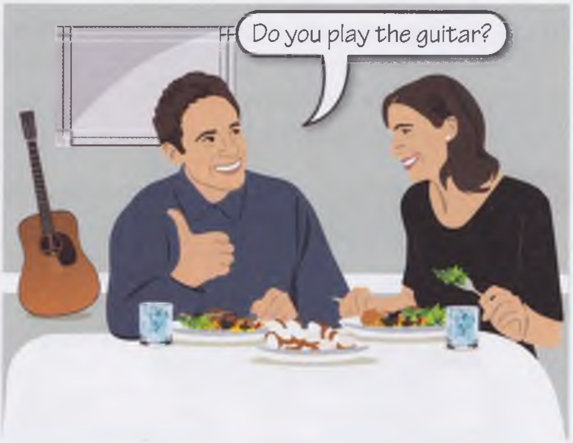
Do you play the guitar?

B Study the word order:

do/does + *subject* + *infinitive*

	Do	you	**play**	the guitar?
	Do	your friends	**live**	near here?
	Does	Chris	**work**	on Sundays?
	Does	it	**rain**	a lot here?
Where	**do**	your parents	**live?**	
How often	**do**	you	**wash**	your hair?
What	**does**	this word	**mean?**	
How much	**does**	it	**cost**	to fly to Rome?

Questions with **always** and **usually**:

	Does	Chris	**always**	**work**	on Sundays?
What	**do**	you	**usually**	**do**	at weekends?

What do you **do?** = What's your job?

○ '**What do** you **do?**' 'I work in a bank.'

C Remember:

do	I/we/you/they ...
does	he/she/it ...

○ **Do they** like music?
○ **Does he** like music?

D *Short answers*

Yes,	I/we/you/they **do**.
	he/she/it **does**.

No,	I/we/you/they **don't**.
	he/she/it **doesn't**.

○ '**Do you** play the guitar?' '**No, I don't.**'
○ '**Do your parents** speak English?' '**Yes, they do.**'
○ '**Does James** work hard?' '**Yes, he does.**'
○ '**Does your sister** live in London?' '**No, she doesn't.**'

I do/work/like etc. (present simple) ➜ **Unit 5** **I don't** ... (negative) ➜ **Unit 6** questions ➜ **Units 44–47**

Exercises

7.1 Write questions with **Do … ?** and **Does … ?**

1 I like chocolate. How about you? .... Do you like chocolate .... ?
2 I play tennis. How about you? .... you .... ?
3 You live near here. How about Lucy? .... Lucy .... ?
4 Tom plays tennis. How about his friends? .... ?
5 You speak English. How about your brother? .... ?
6 I do yoga every morning. How about you? .... ?
7 Sue goes away a lot. How about Paul? .... ?
8 I want to be famous. How about you? .... ?
9 You work hard. How about Anna? .... ?

7.2 Make questions from these words + **do/does**. Put the words in the right order.

1 (where / live / your parents) .... Where do your parents live .... ?
2 (you / early / always / get up) .... Do you always get up early .... ?
3 (how often / TV / you / watch) .... ?
4 (you / want / what / for dinner) .... ?
5 (like / you / football) .... ?
6 (your brother / like / football) .... ?
7 (what / you / do / in your free time) .... ?
8 (your sister / work / where) .... ?
9 (breakfast / always / you / have) .... ?
10 (what / mean / this word) .... ?
11 (in winter / snow / it / here) .... ?
12 (go / usually / to bed / what time / you)
.... ?
13 (how much / to phone New York / it / cost)
.... ?
14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what)
.... ?

7.3 Complete the questions. Use these verbs:

~~do~~ **do** **enjoy** **go** **like** **start** **teach** **work**

1	What .... do you do .... ?	I work in a bookshop.
2	.... it?	It's OK.
3	What time .... in the morning?	At 9 o'clock.
4	.... on Saturdays?	Sometimes.
5	How .... to work?	Usually by bus.
6	And your husband. What .... ?	He's a teacher.
7	What .... ?	Science.
8	.... his job?	Yes, he loves it.

7.4 Write short answers (**Yes, he does. / No, I don't.** etc.).

1 Do you watch TV a lot? .... No, I don't. .... or .... Yes, I do. ....
2 Do you live in a big city? ....
3 Do you often ride a bike? ....
4 Does it rain a lot where you live? ....
5 Do you play the piano? ....

→ **Additional exercises 4–7** (pages 253–54)

Unit
8

I am doing (present continuous) **and I do** (present simple)

A

Jack is watching television.
He is *not* playing the guitar.

But Jack has a guitar.
He often plays it and he plays very well.

Jack **plays** the guitar,
but he **is not playing** the guitar now.

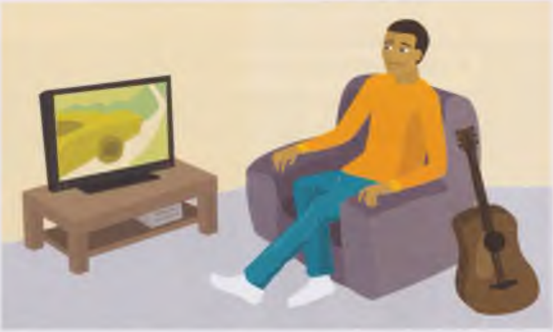

Is he playing the guitar?	**No, he isn't.**	*(present continuous)*
Does he play the guitar?	**Yes, he does.**	*(present simple)*

B

Present continuous (**I am doing**) = now, at the time of speaking:

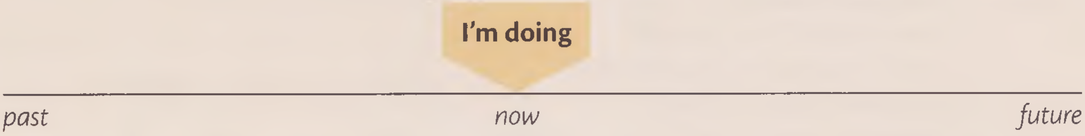

○ Please be quiet. I'**m** work**ing**. (*not* I work)
○ Tom **is** hav**ing** a shower at the moment. (*not* Tom has)
○ Take an umbrella with you. It'**s** rain**ing**.
○ You can turn off the television. I'**m** not watch**ing** it.
○ Why are you under the table? What **are** you do**ing**?

C

Present simple (**I do**) = in general, all the time or sometimes:

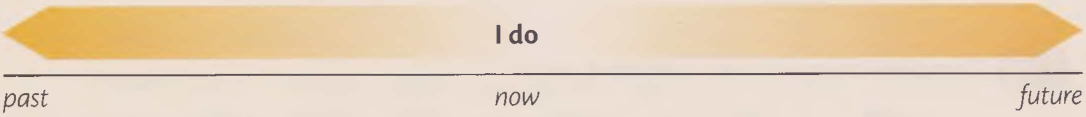

○ I **work** every day from 9 o'clock to 5.30.
○ Tom **has** a shower every morning.
○ It **rains** a lot in winter.
○ I **don't watch** TV very often.
○ What **do** you usually **do** at weekends?

D

We do *not* use these verbs in the present continuous (**I am -ing**):

like **want** **know** **understand** **remember**
prefer **need** **mean** **believe** **forget**

Use only the present simple with these verbs (I **want** / **do you like?** etc.):

○ I'm tired. I **want** to go home. (*not* I'm wanting)
○ '**Do** you **know** that girl?' 'Yes, but I **don't remember** her name.'
○ I **don't understand**. What **do** you **mean**?

present continuous ➔ Units 3–4 present simple ➔ Units 5–7 present for the future ➔ Unit 25

Exercises

8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.

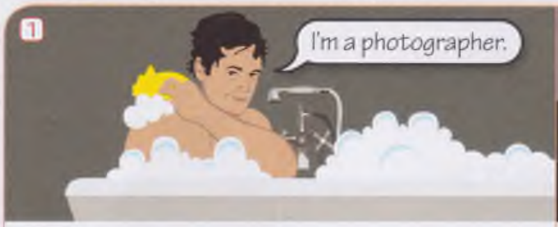

Does he take photographs? ...Yes, he does....

Is he taking a photograph? ...No, he isn't....

What is he doing?

...He's having a bath....

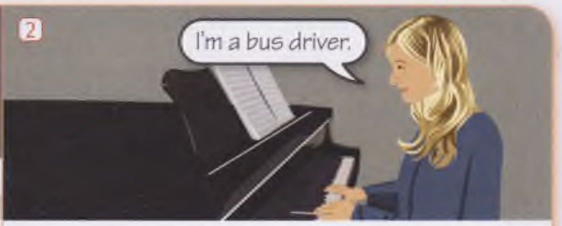

Is she driving a bus? ....

Does she drive a bus? ....

What is she doing?

....

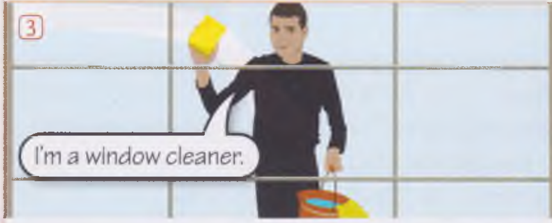

Does he clean windows? ....

Is he cleaning a window? ....

What is he doing?

....

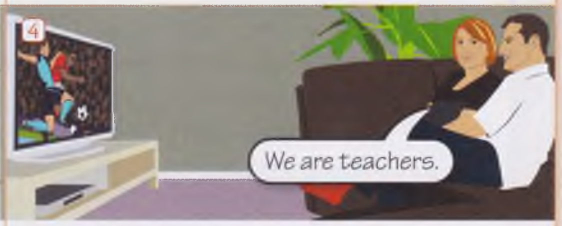

Are they teaching? ....

Do they teach? ....

What do they do?

....

8.2 Complete the sentences with **am/is/are** or **do/don't/does/doesn't**.

1 Excuse me, ...do... you speak English?

2 'Where's Kate?' 'I .... know.'

3 What's funny? Why .... you laughing?

4 'What .... your sister do?' 'She's a dentist.'

5 It .... raining. I .... want to go out in the rain.

6 'Where .... you come from?' 'Canada.'

7 How much .... it cost to stay at this hotel? Is it expensive?

8 Steve is a good tennis player, but he .... play very often.

8.3 Put the verb in the present continuous (**I am doing**) or the present simple (**I do**).

1 Excuse me, ...do you speak... (you/speak) English?

2 'Where's Tom?' '...He's having... (he/have) a shower.'

3 ...I don't watch... (I/not/watch) TV very often.

4 Listen! Somebody .... (sing).

5 Sarah is tired. .... (she/want) to go home now.

6 How often .... (you/use) your car? Every day?

7 'Excuse me, but .... (you/sit) in my seat.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'

8 I'm sorry, ... (I/not/understand). Can you speak more slowly?

9 It's late. .... (I/go) home now. ....
(you/come) with me?

10 What time .... (your father / finish) work every day?

11 You can turn off the radio. .... (I/not/listen) to it.

12 'Where's Paul?' 'In the kitchen. .... (he/cook) something.'

13 Mark .... (not/usually/drive) to work. He
.... (usually/walk).

14 Sue .... (not/like) coffee. .... (she/prefer) tea.

→ Additional exercises 8–9 (page 255)

Unit
9

I have ... and I've got ...

A

You can say **I have** or **I've got**, **he has** or **he's got**:

I we you they	**have**	*or*	I we you they	**have got**	(I**'ve got**) (we**'ve got**) (you**'ve got**) (they**'ve got**)
he she it	**has**	*or*	he she it	**has got**	(he**'s got**) (she**'s got**) (it**'s got**)
					short form

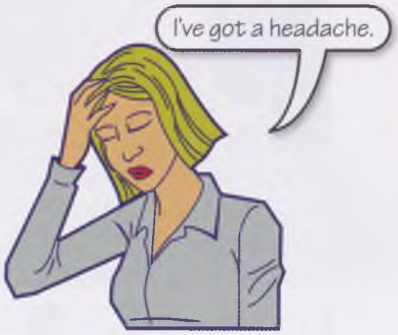
I've got a headache.

- I **have** blue eyes. *or* I**'ve got** blue eyes.
- Tom **has** two sisters. *or* Tom **has got** two sisters.
- Our car **has** four doors. *or* Our car **has got** four doors.
- Sarah isn't feeling well. She **has** a headache. *or* She**'s got** a headache.
- They like animals. They **have** a horse, three dogs and six cats. *or* They**'ve got** a horse ...

B

I **don't have** / I **haven't got** etc. (negative)

You can say:

I/you we/they	**don't**	**have**	*or*	I/you we/they	**haven't**	**got**
he/she it	**doesn't**			he/she it	**hasn't**	

- I **don't have** a car. *or* I **haven't got** a car.
- They **don't have** any children. *or* They **haven't got** any children.
- It's a nice house, but it **doesn't have** a garden. *or* ... it **hasn't got** a garden.
- Amy **doesn't have** a job at the moment. *or* Amy **hasn't got** a job ...

C

do you **have**? / **have** you **got**? etc. (questions)

You can say:

do	I/you we/they	**have**	*or*	**have**	I/you we/they	**got**
does	he/she it			**has**	he/she it	

- '**Do** you **have** a camera?' 'No, I **don't**.' *or*
  '**Have** you **got** a camera?' 'No, I **haven't**.'
- '**Does** Helen **have** a car?' 'Yes, she **does**.' *or*
  '**Has** Helen **got** a car?' 'Yes, she **has**.'
- What kind of car **does** she **have**? *or* ... **has** she **got**?
- How many children **do** they **have**? *or* ... **have** they **got**?

had / **didn't have** (past) ➜ Units 11–12 **have breakfast** / **have a shower** etc. ➜ Unit 58
some and **any** ➜ Unit 76

Exercises

9.1 Write these sentences with **got**. The meaning is the same.

1 They have two children. They've got two children.
2 She doesn't have a key. She hasn't got a key.
3 He has a new job. He ....
4 Do you have an umbrella? ....
5 We have a lot of work to do. ....
6 I don't have your phone number. ....
7 Does your father have a car? ....
8 How much money do we have? ....

9.2 Write these sentences with **do/does/don't/doesn't**. The meaning is the same.

1 Have you got any money? Do you have any money?
2 I haven't got many clothes. I ....
3 Has Tom got a brother? ....
4 How many children have they got? ....
5 Have you got any questions? ....
6 Sam hasn't got a job. ....

9.3 Read the questions and answers. Then write sentences about Mark.

1	Have you got a car?	No.	1 He hasn't got a car.
2	Have you got a bike?	Yes.	2 He ....
3	Have you got a dog?	No.	3 ....
4	Have you got a mobile phone?	Yes.	4 ....
5	Have you got a watch?	No.	5 ....
6	Have you got any brothers or sisters?	Yes, two brothers and a sister.	6 ....

What about you? Write sentences with **I've got** or **I haven't got**.

7 (a dog) ....
8 (a bike) ....
9 (brothers/sisters) ....

9.4 Complete the sentences. Use **have, has, don't have** or **doesn't have**.

1 Sarah doesn't have a car. She goes everywhere by bike.
2 They like animals. They have three dogs and two cats.
3 Charles isn't happy. He .... a lot of problems.
4 They are always busy. They .... much free time.
5 'What's wrong?' 'I .... something in my eye.'
6 'Where's my pen?' 'I don't know. I .... it.'
7 Amy wants to go to the concert, but she .... a ticket.

9.5 Complete the sentences. Use **have/has got** or **haven't/hasn't got** with:

six legs **a key** **~~a headache~~** **a lot of friends** **a job** **much time**

1 I'm not feeling very well. I 've got a headache.
2 Everybody likes Tom. He ....
3 She can't open the door. She ....
4 Quick!. We ....
5 An insect ....
6 I'm unemployed. I ....

→ **Additional exercises 5–7** (page 254)

Unit
10

was/were

A

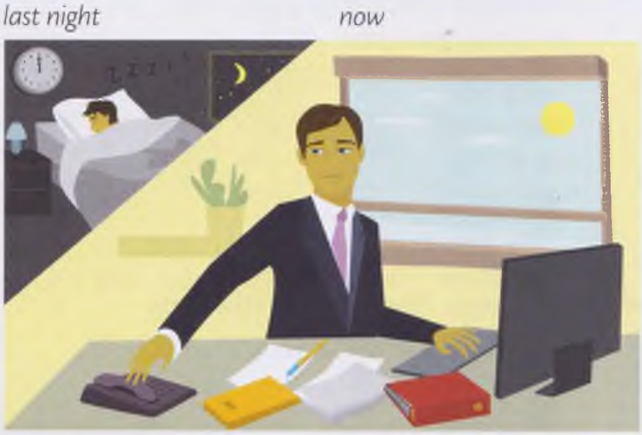

Now Robert **is** at work.

At midnight last night
he **wasn't** at work.

He **was** in bed.
He **was** asleep.

am/is (present) → **was** (past):

☐ I **am** tired. (now)	I **was** tired **last night**.
☐ Where **is** Kate? (now)	Where **was** Kate **yesterday**?
☐ The weather **is** good today.	The weather **was** good **last week**.

are (present) → **were** (past):

☐ You **are** late. (now)	You **were** late **yesterday**.
☐ They **aren't** here. (now)	They **weren't** here **last Sunday**.

B

positive

I he she it	**was**
we you they	**were**

negative

I he she it	**was not** **(wasn't)**
we you they	**were not** **(weren't)**

question

was	I? he? she? it?
were	we? you? they?

☐ Last year Rachel **was** 22, so she **is** 23 now.
☐ When I **was** a child, I **was** scared of dogs.
☐ We **were** hungry after the journey, but we **weren't** tired.
☐ The hotel **was** comfortable, but it **wasn't** expensive.

☐ **Was** the weather nice when you **were** on holiday?
☐ Your shoes are nice. **Were** they expensive?
☐ Why **were** you late this morning?

C

Short answers

Yes,	I/he/she/it **was.**
	we/you/they **were.**

No,	I/he/she/it **wasn't.**
	we/you/they **weren't.**

☐ '**Were you** late?' '**No, I wasn't.**'
☐ '**Was Tom** at work yesterday?' '**Yes, he was.**'
☐ '**Were Sue and Steve** at the party?' '**No, they weren't.**'

am/is/are → Units 1–2 **I was doing** → Unit 13

Exercises

10.1 Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?

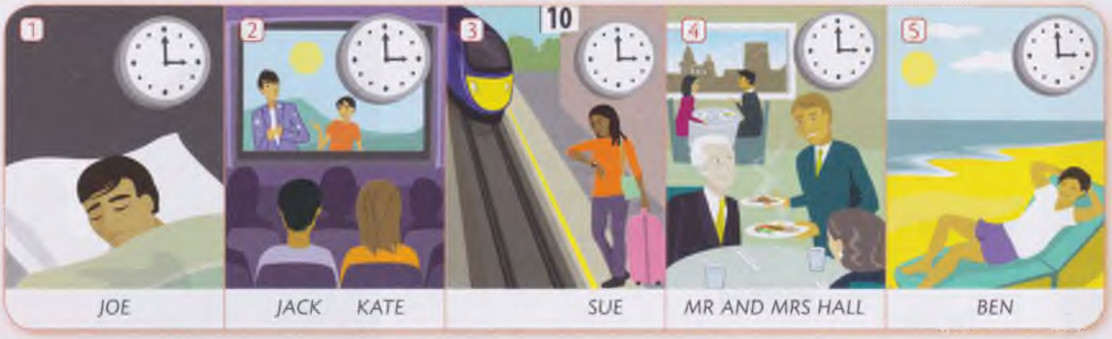

1 ....Joe was in bed.......................................
2 Jack and Kate ....
3 Sue ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 And you? I ....

10.2 Write **am/is/are** (present) or **was/were** (past).

1 Last year she ...was... 22, so she ...is... 23 now.
2 Today the weather .... nice, but yesterday it .... very cold.
3 I .... hungry. Can I have something to eat?
4 I feel fine this morning, but I .... very tired last night.
5 Where .... you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
6 Don't buy those shoes. They .... very expensive.
7 I like your new jacket. .... it expensive?
8 This time last year I .... in Paris.
9 'Where .... Sam and Joe?' 'I don't know. They .... here a few minutes ago.'

10.3 Write **was/were** or **wasn't/weren't**.

1 We weren't happy with the hotel. Our room ...was... very small and it ...wasn't... clean.
2 Mark .... at work last week because he .... ill. He's better now.
3 Yesterday .... a public holiday, so the banks .... closed. They're open today.
4 '.................... Kate and Ben at the party?' 'Kate .... there, but Ben ....'
5 Where are my keys? They .... on the table, but they're not there now.
6 You .... at home last night. Where .... you?

10.4 Write questions from these words + **was/were**. Put the words in the right order.

1 (late / you / this morning / why?) Why were you late this morning?	→ The traffic was bad.
2 (difficult / your exam?)	→ No, it was easy.
3 (last week / where / Sue and Chris?)	→ They were on holiday.
4 (your new camera / how much?)	→ A hundred pounds.
5 (angry / you / yesterday / why?)	→ Because you were late.
6 (nice / the weather / last week?)	→ Yes, it was beautiful.

Unit
11

worked/got/went etc. (past simple)

A

They **watch** TV every evening.
(*present simple*)

They **watched** TV yesterday evening.
(*past simple*)

watched is the *past simple*:

I/we/you/they	**watched**
he/she/it	

B

The past simple is often **-ed** (*regular verbs*). For example:

work → **worked** dance → **danced**
clean → **cleaned** stay → **stayed**
start → **started** need → **needed**

- ○ I clean my teeth every morning. This morning I **cleaned** my teeth.
- ○ Terry **worked** in a bank from 2005 to 2011.
- ○ Yesterday it **rained** all morning. It **stopped** at lunchtime.
- ○ We **enjoyed** the party last night. We **danced** a lot and **talked** to a lot of people. The party **finished** at midnight.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

try → tried study → studied copy → copied
stop → stopped plan → planned

C

Some verbs are *irregular* (= not regular). The past simple is *not* **-ed**. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendix 2–3):

begin →	**began**	fall →	**fell**	leave →	**left**	sell →	**sold**
break	**broke**	find	**found**	lose	**lost**	sit	**sat**
bring	**brought**	fly	**flew**	make	**made**	sleep	**slept**
build	**built**	forget	**forgot**	meet	**met**	speak	**spoke**
buy	**bought**	get	**got**	pay	**paid**	stand	**stood**
catch	**caught**	give	**gave**	put	**put**	take	**took**
come	**came**	go	**went**	read	**read** (red)*	tell	**told**
do	**did**	have	**had**	ring	**rang**	think	**thought**
drink	**drank**	hear	**heard**	say	**said**	win	**won**
eat	**ate**	know	**knew**	see	**saw**	write	**wrote**

* *pronounced 'red'*

- ○ I usually get up early, but this morning I **got** up at 9 o'clock.
- ○ We **did** a lot of work yesterday.
- ○ Caroline **went** to the cinema three times last week.
- ○ James **came** into the room, **took** off his coat and **sat** down.

was/were → Unit 10 **I didn't / Did you** ... ? (negative and questions) → Unit 12 **ago** → Unit 19

Exercises

11.1 Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box.

~~clean~~ die enjoy finish happen open rain start stay want

1 I ....cleaned.... my teeth three times yesterday.
2 It was hot in the room, so I .... the window.
3 The film was very long. It .... at 7.15 and .... at 10 o'clock.
4 When I was a child, I .... to be a doctor.
5 The accident .... last Sunday afternoon.
6 The weather is nice today, but yesterday it .... all day.
7 We .... our holiday last year. We .... at a very nice place.
8 Anna's grandfather .... when he was 90 years old.

11.2 Write the past simple of these verbs.

1 get ....got....
2 see ....
3 play ....
4 pay ....
5 visit ....
6 buy ....
7 go ....
8 think ....
9 copy ....
10 know ....
11 put ....
12 speak ....

11.3 Read about Lisa's journey to Madrid. Put the verbs in the correct form.

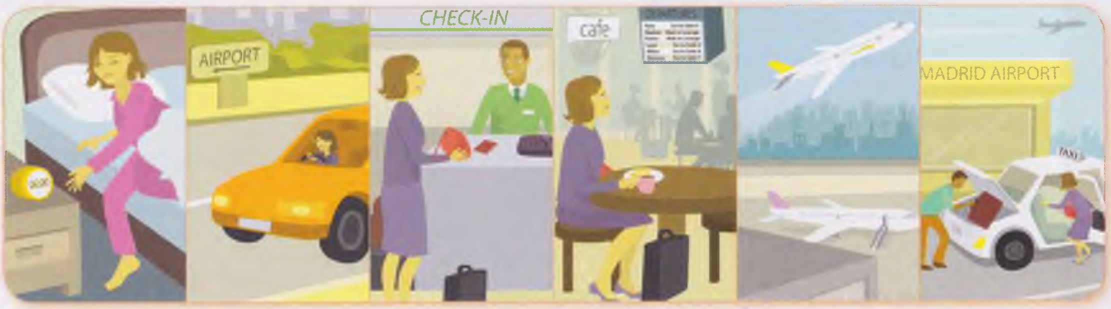

Last Tuesday Lisa (1) ....flew.... from London to Madrid. She (2) .... up at 6 o'clock in the morning and (3) .... a cup of coffee. At 6.30 she (4) .... home and (5) .... to the airport. When she (6) .... there, she (7) .... the car, (8) .... to the airport building, and (9) .... in. Then she (10) .... breakfast at a cafe and (11) .... for her flight. The plane (12) .... on time and (13) .... in Madrid two hours later. Finally she (14) .... a taxi from the airport to her hotel in the centre of Madrid.

fly, get
have
leave, drive
get, park, walk
check, have
wait, depart
arrive, take

11.4 Write sentences about the past (**yesterday** / **last week** etc.).

1 James always goes to work by car. Yesterday ....he went to work by car.....
2 Rachel often loses her keys. She .... last week.
3 Kate meets her friends every evening. She .... yesterday evening.
4 I buy a newspaper every day. Yesterday I ....
5 We often go to the cinema at weekends. Last Sunday we ....
6 I eat an orange every day. Yesterday I ....
7 Tom always has a shower in the morning. This morning he ....
8 Our friends often come to see us. They .... last Friday.

11.5 Write sentences about what you did yesterday.

1 ....I went to the theatre.....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

→ **Additional exercise 10** (page 256)

Unit 12

I didn't ... Did you ... ? (past simple negative and questions)

A

We use **did** in past simple negatives and questions:

infinitive	*positive*		*negative*			*question*		
play	I	**played**	I	**did not** **(didn't)**	play	**did**	I	play?
start	we	**started**	we		start		we	start?
watch	you	**watched**	you		watch		you	watch?
have	they	**had**	they		have		they	have?
see	he	**saw**	he		see		he	see?
do	she	**did**	she		do		she	do?
go	it	**went**	it		go		it	go?

B

do/**does** (*present*) → **did** (*past*):

- I **don't** watch TV very often.
  I **didn't** watch TV **yesterday**.
- **Does** she often go away?
  Did she go away **last week**?

C

We use **did**/**didn't** + *infinitive* (**watch**/**play**/**go** etc.):

I **watched**	*but*	I **didn't watch**	(*not* I didn't watched)
they **went**		**did** they **go**?	(*not* did they went?)
he **had**		he **didn't have**	
you **did**		**did** you **do**?	

- I **played** tennis yesterday, but I **didn't win**.
- '**Did** you **do** the shopping?' 'No, I **didn't have** time.'
- We **went** to the cinema, but we **didn't enjoy** the film.

D

Study the word order in questions:

	did	+ *subject* +	*infinitive*	
	Did	your sister	**call**	you?
What	**did**	you	**do**	last night?
How	**did**	the accident	**happen**?	
Where	**did**	your parents	**go**	for their holiday?

E

Short answers

Yes,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**did**.	No,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**didn't**.

- '**Did you** see Joe yesterday?' '**No, I didn't.**'
- '**Did it** rain on Sunday?' '**Yes, it did.**'
- '**Did Helen** come to the party?' '**No, she didn't.**'
- '**Did your parents** have a good holiday?' '**Yes, they did.**'

worked/**got**/**went** etc. (past simple) ➜ Unit 11

Exercises

12.1 Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.

1 I saw Barbara, but I ....didn't see.... Jane.
2 They worked on Monday, but they .... on Tuesday.
3 We went to the post office, but we .... to the bank.
4 She had a pen, but she .... any paper.
5 Jack did French at school, but he .... German.

12.2 Write questions with **Did ... ?**

1 I watched TV last night. How about you? ....Did you watch TV last night.... ?
2 I enjoyed the party. How about you? .... ?
3 I had a good holiday. How about you? .... ?
4 I finished work early. How about you? .... ?
5 I slept well last night. How about you? .... ?

12.3 What did you do yesterday? Write positive or negative sentences.

1 (watch TV) ....I watched TV.... or ....I didn't watch TV....
2 (get up before 7 o'clock) I ....
3 (have a shower) ....
4 (buy a magazine) ....
5 (eat meat) ....
6 (go to bed before 10.30) ....

12.4 Write B's questions. Use:

arrive **cost** **go** **go to bed late** **happen** **have a nice time** ~~**stay**~~ **win**

1 A: We went to New York last month.
B: Where ....did you stay.... ?
A: With some friends.

2 A: I was late for the meeting.
B: What time .... ?
A: Half past nine.

3 A: I played tennis this afternoon.
B: .... ?
A: No, I lost.

4 A: I had a nice holiday.
B: Good. Where .... ?
A: To the mountains.

5 A: We came home by taxi.
B: How much .... ?
A: Ten pounds.

6 A: I'm tired this morning.
B: .... ?
A: No, but I didn't sleep very well.

7 A: We went to the beach yesterday.
B: .... ?
A: Yes, it was great.

8 A: The window is broken.
B: How .... ?
A: I don't know.

12.5 Put the verb in the correct form – positive, negative or question.

1 We went to the cinema, but the film wasn't very good. We ....didn't enjoy.... it. (enjoy)
2 Tom .... some new clothes yesterday – two shirts, a jacket and a pullover. (buy)
3 '.................................... yesterday?' 'No, it was a nice day.' (rain)
4 We were tired, so we .... long at the party. (stay)
5 It was very warm in the room, so I .... a window. (open)
6 'Did you phone Chris this morning?' 'No, I .... time.' (have)
7 'I cut my hand this morning.' 'How .... that?' (do)
8 'Why weren't you at the meeting yesterday?' 'I .... about it.' (know)

→ Additional exercises 10–13 (page 256)

Unit 13

I was doing (past continuous)

A

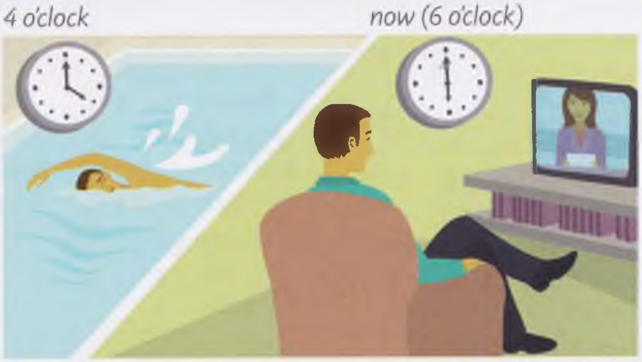

It is 6 o'clock now.
Paul **is** at home.
He **is watching** TV.

At 4 o'clock he **wasn't** at home.
He **was** at the sports club.

He **was swimming** in the pool.
He **wasn't watching** TV.

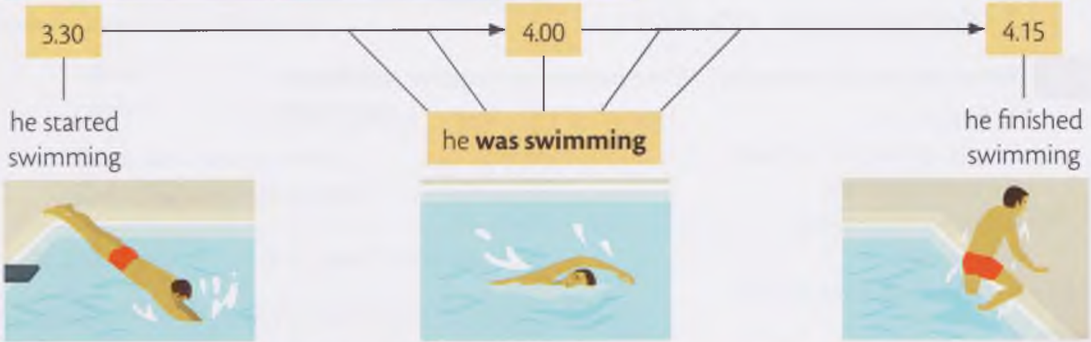

B

was/were + **-ing** is the *past continuous*:

positive

I he she it	**was**	**doing** **watching** **playing** **swimming** **living** etc.
we you they	**were**	

negative

I he she it	**was not** (**wasn't**)	**doing** **watching** **playing** **swimming** **living** etc.
we you they	**were not** (**weren't**)	

question

was	I he she it	**doing?** **watching?** **playing?** **swimming?** **living?** etc.
were	we you they	

- What **were** you **doing** at 11.30 yesterday? **Were** you **working**?
- 'What did he say?' 'I don't know. I **wasn't listening**.'
- It **was raining**, so we didn't go out.
- In 2009 we **were living** in Canada.
- Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she **was wearing** trousers.
- I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun **was shining** and the birds **were singing**.

Spelling (live → **living** / run → **running** / lie → **lying** etc.) → Appendix 5

C

am/is/are + **-ing** (*present*) → **was/were** + **-ing** (*past*):

present	*past*
I'm working (now).	I **was working** at 10.30 last night.
It **isn't raining** (now).	It **wasn't raining** when we went out.
What **are** you **doing** (now)?	What **were** you **doing** at 3 o'clock?

was/were → **Unit 10** **I was doing** and **I did** (past continuous and simple) → **Unit 14**

Exercises

13.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.

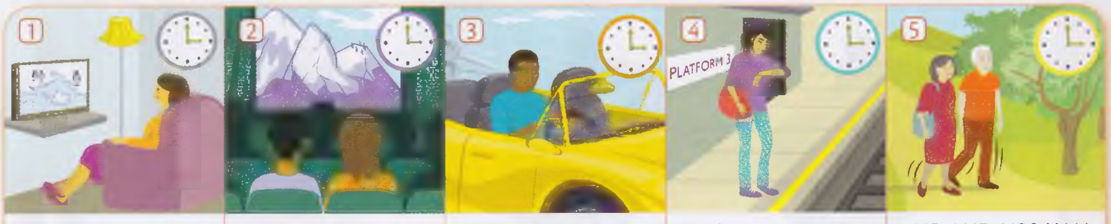

1	2	3	4	5
RACHEL	JACK KATE	TOM	TRACEY	MR AND MRS HALL
at home watch TV	at the cinema watch a film	in his car drive	at the station wait for a train	in the park walk

1 Rachel was at home. She was watching TV.
2 Jack and Kate .... They ....
3 Tom ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 And you? I ....

13.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

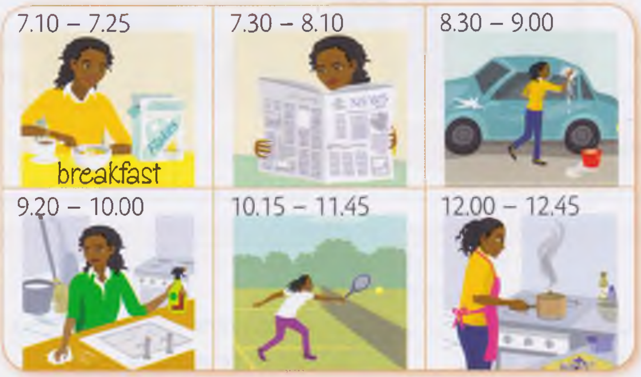

1 At 8.45 she was washing her car.
2 At 10.45 she ....
3 At 8 o'clock ....
4 At 12.10 ....
5 At 7.15 ....
6 At 9.30 ....

13.3 Complete the questions. Use **was/were -ing.** Use **what/where/why** if necessary.

1 (you/live) Where were you living in 2012?
2 (you/do) .... at 2 o'clock?
3 (it/rain) .... when you got up?
4 (Sue/drive) .... so fast?
5 (Tom/wear) .... a suit yesterday?

In London.
I was asleep.
No, it was sunny.
Because she was late.
No, a T-shirt and jeans.

13.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.

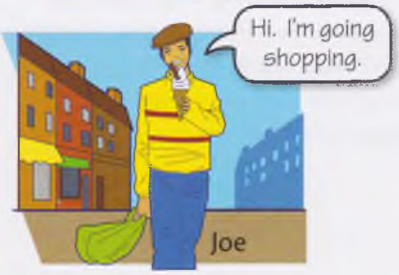

1 (wear / a jacket) He wasn't wearing a jacket.
2 (carry / a bag) ....
3 (go / to the dentist) ....
4 (eat / an ice cream) ....
5 (carry / an umbrella) ....
6 (go / home) ....
7 (wear / a hat) ....
8 (ride / a bicycle) ....

Unit
14

I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)

A

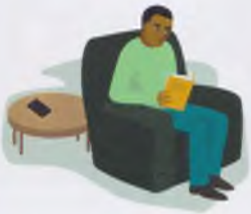
Jack was reading a book.

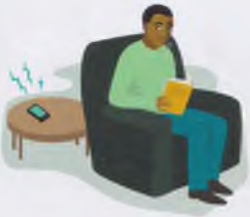
His phone rang.

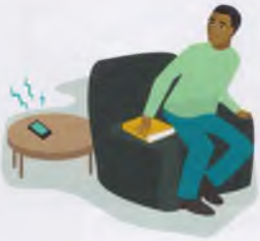
He stopped reading.

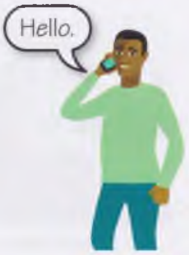

He answered his phone.

What **happened**? His phone **rang**. *(past simple)*
What **was** Jack **doing** when his phone rang?
He **was reading** a book. *(past continuous)*

What **did** he **do** when his phone rang?
He **stopped** reading and **answered** his phone. *(past simple)*

Jack began reading *before* his phone rang.
So *when* his phone rang, he **was reading**.

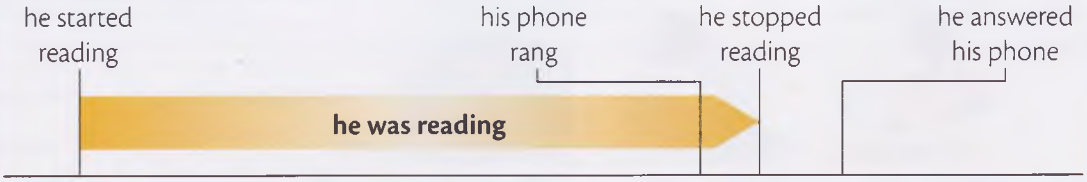
he started reading
his phone rang
he stopped reading
he answered his phone
he was reading

B

past simple

☐ A: What **did** you **do** yesterday morning?
B: We **played** tennis. (from 10 to 11.30)

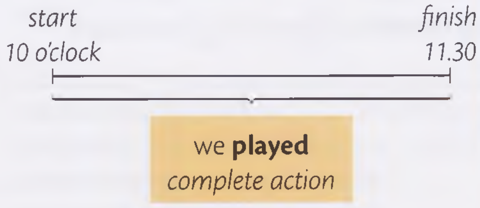
start
10 o'clock
finish
11.30
we played
complete action

- ☐ Jack **read** a book yesterday. (= from beginning to end)
- ☐ **Did** you **watch** the game on TV last night?
- ☐ It **didn't rain** while we were on holiday.

past continuous

☐ A: What **were** you **doing** at 10.30?
B: We **were playing** tennis.

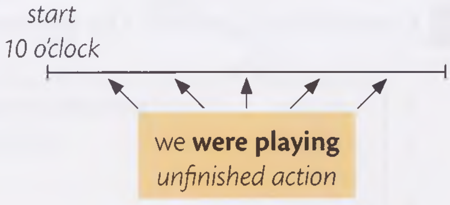
start
10 o'clock
we were playing
unfinished action

- ☐ Jack **was reading** a book when his phone rang.
- ☐ **Were** you **watching** TV when I phoned you?
- ☐ It **wasn't raining** when I got up.

- ☐ I **started** work at 9 o'clock and **finished** at 4.30. At 2.30 I **was working**.
- ☐ It **was raining** when we **went** out. (= it started raining *before* we went out)
- ☐ I **saw** Lucy and Steve this morning. They **were waiting** at the bus stop.
- ☐ Kelly **fell** asleep while she **was reading**.

I did (past simple) → **Units 11–12** **I was doing** (past continuous) → **Unit 13** **while** → **Unit 105**

Exercises

14.1 Look at the pictures. Put the verbs in the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1
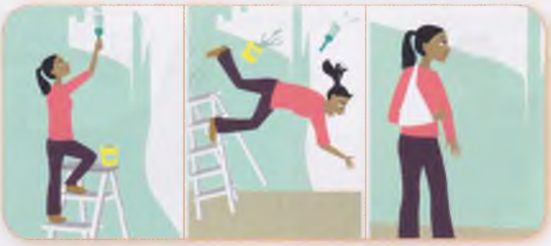

Lucy ....broke.... (break) her arm last week.
It .... (happen) when
she .... (paint) her
room. She .... (fall)
off the ladder.

2
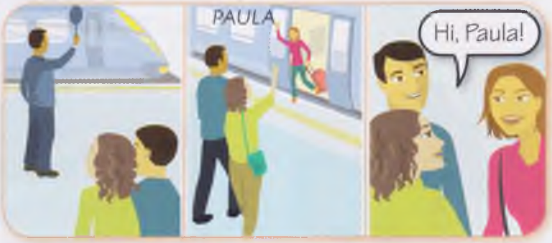

The train .... (arrive)
at the station and Paula ....
(get) off. Two friends of hers, Jon and Rachel,
.... (wait) to
meet her.

3
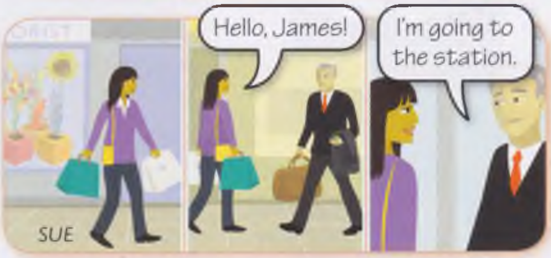
SUE
Hello, James!
I'm going to the station.

Yesterday Sue .... (walk)
along the road when she .... (meet)
James. He .... (go)
to the station to catch a train and he
.... (carry) a bag.
They .... (stop) to
talk for a few minutes.

14.2 Put the verb into the past continuous or past simple.

1 A: What was the weather like when you ....got.... (get) up this morning?
B: It ....was raining.... (rain).
2 A: Was Jane busy when you went to see her?
B: Yes, she .... (study).
3 A: .... (Paul/call) you this morning?
B: Yes, he .... (call) while I .... (have) breakfast.
4 A: Was Tracey at work today?
B: No, she .... (not/go) to work. She was ill.
5 A: How fast .... (you/drive) when the police
.... (stop) you?
B: I'm not sure, but I .... (not/drive) very fast.
6 A: .... (your team / win) the football match yesterday?
B: The weather was very bad, so we .... (not/play).
7 A: How .... (you/break) the window?
B: We .... (play) football. I .... (kick) the ball and
it .... (hit) the window.
8 A: .... (you/see) Jessica last night?
B: Yes, she .... (wear) a very nice jacket.
9 A: What .... (you/do) at 2 o'clock this morning?
B: I was asleep.
10 A: I .... (lose) my key last night.
B: How .... (you/get) into your room?
A: I .... (climb) in through a window.

→ **Additional exercises 14–15** (pages 257–58)

Unit
15

I have done (present perfect 1)

A

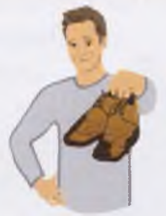

His shoes are dirty.

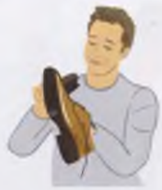

He is cleaning his shoes.

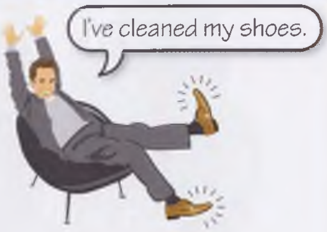
I've cleaned my shoes.

He **has cleaned** his shoes.
(= his shoes are clean *now*)

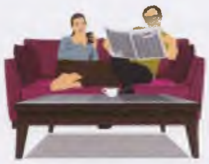

They are at home.

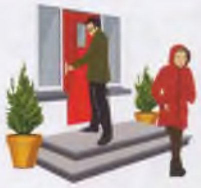

They are going out.

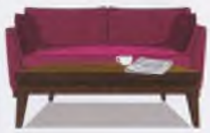

They **have gone** out.
(= they are not at home *now*)

B

has cleaned / **have gone** etc. is the *present perfect* (**have** + *past participle*):

I we you they	**have** (**'ve**) **have not** (**haven't**)	**cleaned** **finished** **started** **lost** **done** **been** **gone**
he she it	**has** (**'s**) **has not** (**hasn't**)	

↑
past participle

have	I we you they	**cleaned?** **finished?** **started?**	*regular verbs*
has	he she it	**lost?** **done?** **been?** **gone?**	*irregular verbs*

Regular verbs The past participle is **-ed** (the same as the past simple):

clean → I have clean**ed**   finish → we have finish**ed**   start → she has start**ed**

Irregular verbs The past participle is not **-ed**.
Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same:

buy → I **bought** / I have **bought**   have → he **had** / he has **had**

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different:

break → I **broke** / I have **broken**   see → you **saw** / you have **seen**
fall → it **fell** / it has **fallen**   go → they **went** / they have **gone**

C

We use the present perfect for *an action in the past* with a result *now*:

- **I've lost** my passport. (= I can't find my passport *now*)
- 'Where's Rebecca?' 'She**'s gone** to bed.' (= she is in bed *now*)
- We**'ve bought** a new car. (= we have a new car *now*)
- It's Rachel's birthday tomorrow and I **haven't bought** her a present. (= I don't have a present for her *now*)
- 'Bob is away on holiday.' 'Oh, where **has** he **gone**?' (= where is he *now*?)
- Can I take this newspaper? **Have** you **finished** with it? (= do you need it *now*?)

present perfect → **Units 16–19**   present perfect and past simple → **Unit 20**
irregular verbs → **Unit 24, Appendix 2–3**

Exercises

15.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Choose from the box.

go to bed **~~clean his shoes~~** **stop raining**
close the door **fall down** **have a shower**

before *now*

1 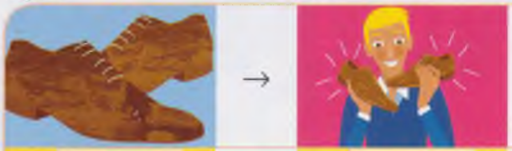 He has cleaned his shoes.

2 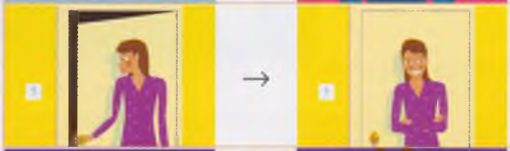 She ....

3 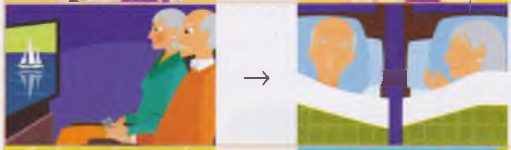 They ....

4 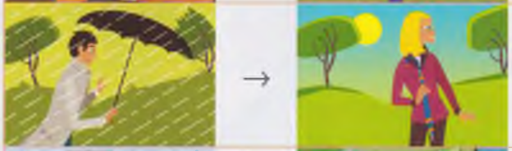 It ....

5 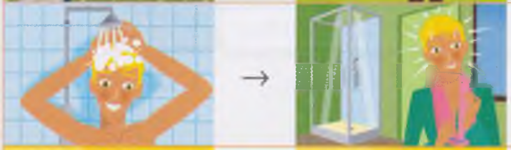 He ....

6 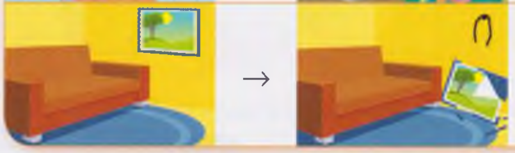 The ....

15.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box.

break **buy** **decide** **finish** **forget** **go** **go**
invite **~~lose~~** **see** **not/see** **take** **tell** **not/tell**

1 I ...'ve lost... my keys. I don't know where they are.
2 I .... some new shoes. Do you want to see them?
3 'Where is Helen?' 'She's not here. She .... out.'
4 I'm looking for Paula. .... you .... her?
5 Look! Somebody .... that window.
6 'Does Lisa know that you're going away?' 'Yes, I .... her.'
7 I can't find my umbrella. Somebody .... it.
8 'Where are my glasses?' 'I don't know. I .... them.'
9 I'm looking for Sarah. Where .... she .... ?
10 I know that woman, but I .... her name.
11 Sue is having a party tonight. She .... a lot of people.
12 What are you going to do? .... you .... ?
13 A: Does Ben know about the meeting tomorrow?
B: I don't think so. I .... him.
14 I .... with this magazine. Do you want it?

Unit 16

I've just … I've already … I haven't … yet (present perfect 2)

A I've just …

just = a short time ago

☐ A: Are Laura and Paul here?
B: Yes, they**'ve just arrived**.

☐ A: Are you hungry?
B: No, I**'ve just had** dinner.

☐ A: Is Tom here?
B: No, I'm afraid he**'s just gone**.
(= he **has** just gone)

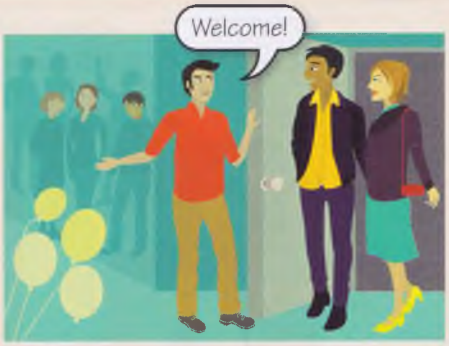

They **have just arrived**.

B I've already …

already = before you expected / before I expected

☐ A: What time are Laura and Paul coming?
B: They**'ve already arrived**.
(= before you expected)

☐ It's only 9 o'clock and Anna **has already gone** to bed. (= before I expected)

☐ A: Jon, this is Emma.
B: Yes, I know. We**'ve already met**.

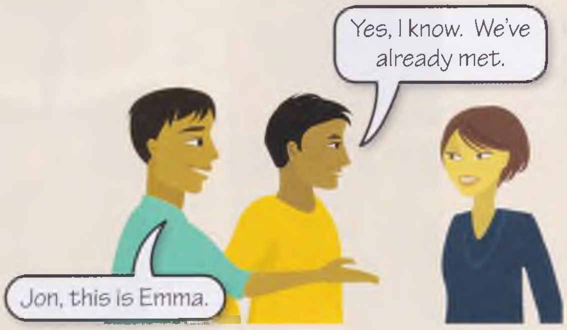
Yes, I know. We've already met.
Jon, this is Emma.

C I haven't … yet / Have you … yet?

yet = until now

We use **yet** in negative sentences and questions. **Yet** is usually at the end.

yet in negative sentences (**I haven't** … **yet**)

☐ A: Are Laura and Paul here?
B: No, they **haven't arrived yet**.
(but B expects Laura and Paul to arrive soon)

☐ A: Does James know that you're going away?
B: No, I **haven't told** him **yet**.
(but B is going to tell him soon)

☐ Silvia has bought a new dress, but she **hasn't worn** it **yet**.

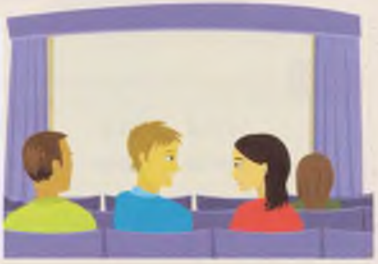

The film **hasn't started yet**.

yet in questions (**Have** you … **yet**?)

☐ A: **Have** Laura and Paul **arrived yet**?
B: No, not yet. We're still waiting for them.

☐ A: **Has** Nicola **started** her new job **yet**?
B: No, she starts next week.

☐ A: This is my new dress.
B: Oh, it's nice. **Have** you **worn** it **yet**?

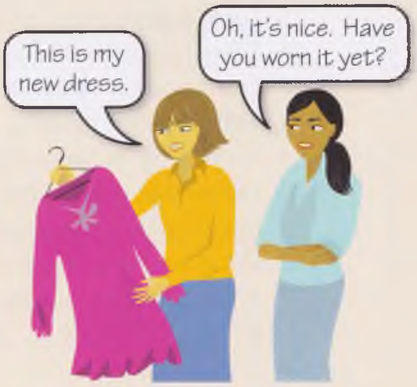
This is my new dress.
Oh, it's nice. Have you worn it yet?

present perfect ➜ Units 15, 17–20 word order ➜ Unit 94 **still**, **yet** and **already** ➜ Unit 95

Exercises

16.1 Write a sentence with **just** for each picture.

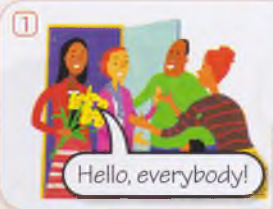
1
Hello, everybody!

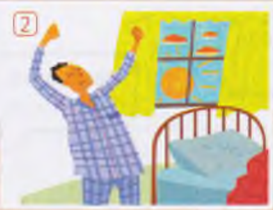

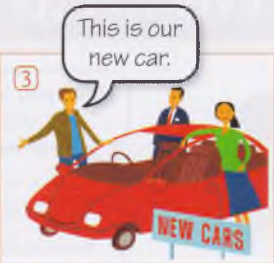
3
This is our new car.
NEW CARS

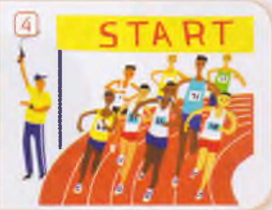

1 .... They've just arrived. ....

2 He ....

3 They ....

4 The race ....

16.2 Complete the sentences. Use **already** + present perfect.

1	What time is Paul arriving?	He's already arrived.
2	Do your friends want to see the film?	No, they .... it.
3	Don't forget to phone Tom.	I ....
4	When is Mark going away?	He ....
5	Do you want to read the newspaper?	I ....
6	When does Sarah start her new job?	She ....

16.3 Write a sentence with **just** (**They've just ...** / **She's just ...** etc.) or a negative sentence with **yet** (**They haven't ... yet** / **She hasn't ... yet** etc.).

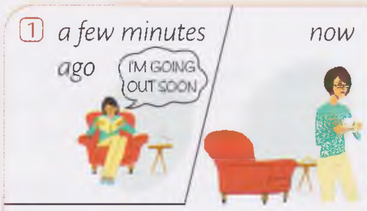
1
a few minutes ago
now
I'M GOING OUT SOON

(she / go / out)
She hasn't gone out yet.

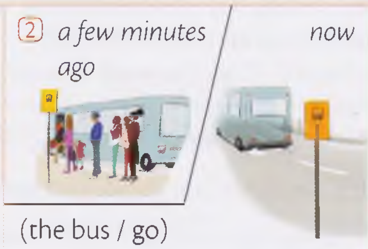
2
a few minutes ago
now

(the bus / go)
The bus ....
....

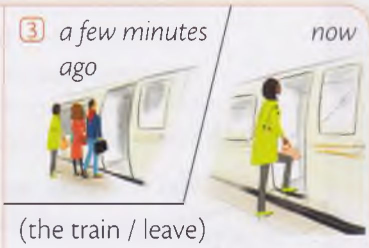
3
a few minutes ago
now

(the train / leave)
....
....

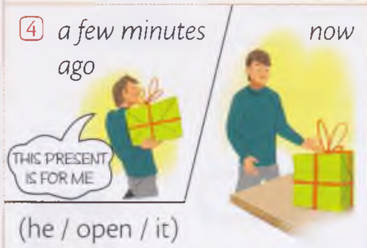
4
a few minutes ago
now
THIS PRESENT IS FOR ME

(he / open / it)
....
....

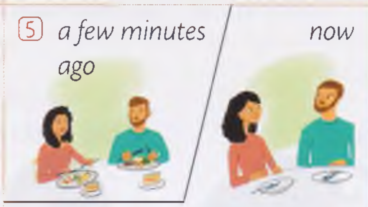
5
a few minutes ago
now

(they / finish / their dinner)
....
....

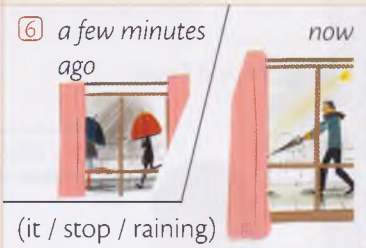
6
a few minutes ago
now

(it / stop / raining)
....
....

16.4 Write questions with **yet**.

1 Your friend has a new job. Perhaps she has started it. You ask her:
Have you started your new job yet?

2 Your friend has some new neighbours. Perhaps he has met them. You ask him:
.... you ....

3 Your friend has to pay her electricity bill. Perhaps she has paid it. You ask her:
....

4 Tom was trying to sell his car. Perhaps he has sold it. You ask a friend about Tom:
....

Unit
17

Have you ever ... ? (present perfect 3)

A

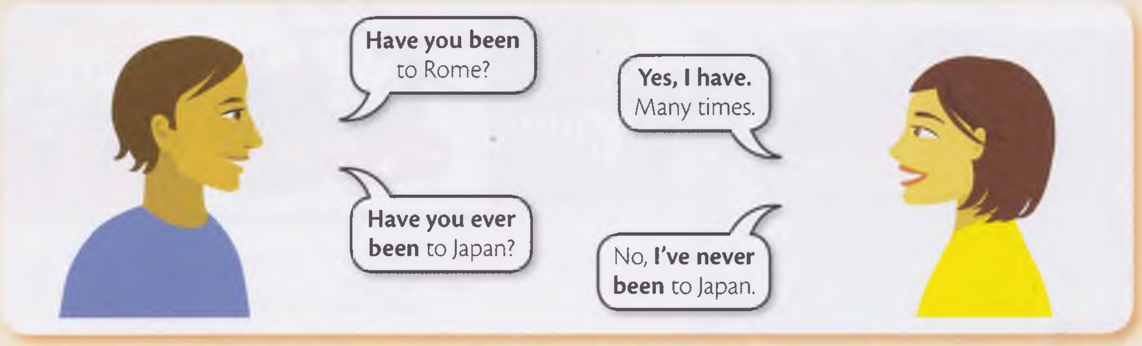
Have you been to Rome?
Yes, I have. Many times.
Have you ever been to Japan?
No, I've never been to Japan.

We use the *present perfect* (**have been** / **have had** / **have played** etc.) when we talk about a time from the past until now – for example, a person's life:

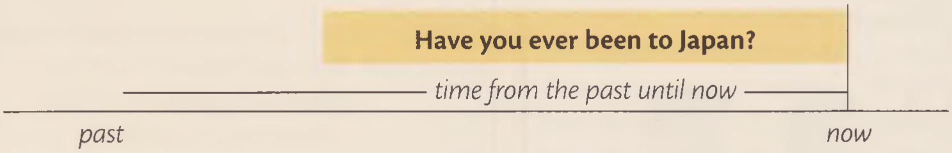
Have you ever been to Japan?
time from the past until now
past
now

- '**Have** you **been** to France?' 'No, I **haven't**.'
- **I've been** to Canada, but I **haven't been** to the United States.
- Mary is an interesting person. She **has had** many different jobs and **has lived** in many places.
- **I've seen** that woman before, but I can't remember where.
- How many times **has** Brazil **won** the World Cup?
- '**Have** you **read** this book?' 'Yes, **I've read** it twice.' (**twice** = two times)

B

present perfect + **ever** (in questions) and **never**:

- '**Has** Ann **ever been** to Australia?' 'Yes, once.' (**once** = one time)
- '**Have** you **ever played** golf?' 'Yes, I play a lot.'
- My sister **has never travelled** by plane.
- **I've never ridden** a horse.
- 'Who is that man?' 'I don't know. **I've never seen** him before.'

C

gone and **been**

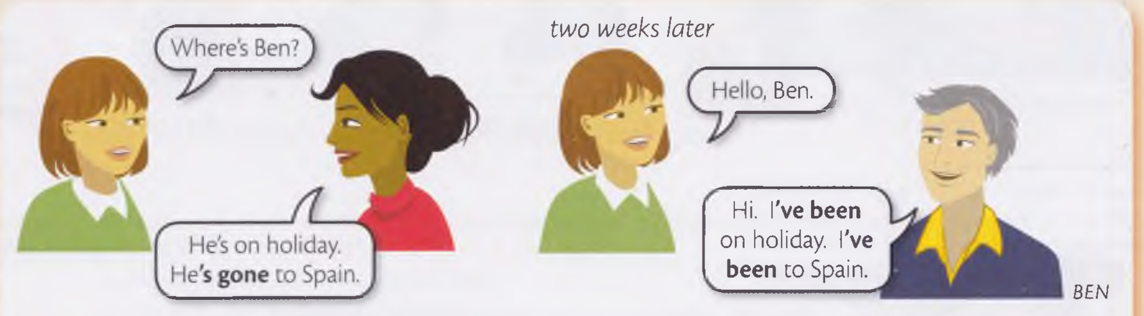
Where's Ben?
He's on holiday. He's gone to Spain.
two weeks later
Hello, Ben.
Hi. I've been on holiday. I've been to Spain.
BEN

Ben **has gone** to Spain.
(= he is in Spain *now*)

Ben **has been** to Spain.
(= he went to Spain, but now he is back)

Compare:

- I can't find Susan. Where **has** she **gone?** (= where is she now?)
- Oh, hello Susan! I was looking for you. Where **have** you **been**?

present perfect ➔ **Units 15–16, 18** present perfect and past simple ➔ **Unit 20**

Exercises

17.1 You are asking Helen questions beginning **Have you ever ... ?** Write the questions.

Helen

1 (be / London?)	Have you ever been to London?	No, never.
2 (play / golf?)	Have you ever played golf?	Yes, many times.
3 (be / Australia?)	Have	Yes, once.
4 (lose / your passport?)	......	No, never.
5 (fly / in a helicopter?)	......	Yes, a few times.
6 (win / a race?)	......	No, never.
7 (be / New York?)	......	Yes, twice.
8 (drive / a bus?)	......	No, never.
9 (break / your leg?)	......	Yes, once.

17.2 Write sentences about Helen. (Look at her answers in Exercise 17.1.)

1 (be / New York) She's been to New York twice.
2 (be / Australia) She ......
3 (win / a race) ......
4 (fly / in a helicopter) ......

Now write about yourself. How often have you done these things?

5 (be / New York) I ......
6 (play / tennis) ......
7 (drive / a lorry) ......
8 (be / late for work or school) ......

17.3 Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done?

Mary

~~have~~ be
do write
travel meet

all over the world **a lot of interesting things**
~~many different jobs~~ **a lot of interesting people**
ten books **married three times**

1 She has had many different jobs.
2 She ......
3 ......
4 ......
5 ......
6 ......

17.4 Write **gone** or **been**.

1 Ben is on holiday at the moment. He's gone to Spain.
2 'Have you ever ...... to Mexico?' 'No, never.'
3 My parents aren't at home at the moment. They've ...... out.
4 There's a new restaurant in town. Have you ...... to it?
5 Rebecca loves Paris. She's ...... there many times.
6 Helen was here earlier, but I think she's ...... now.
7 'Where's Jessica?' 'She's not in the office. I think she's ...... home.'
8 Hello, Sue. I was looking for you. Where have you ...... ?

→ **Additional exercises 16, 18** (pages 258–60)

Unit 18

How long have you ... ? (present perfect 4)

A

Helen is on holiday in Ireland.
She is there now.

She arrived in Ireland on Monday.
Today is Thursday.

How long **has she been** in Ireland?

She **has been** in Ireland { **since Monday**. / **for three days**.

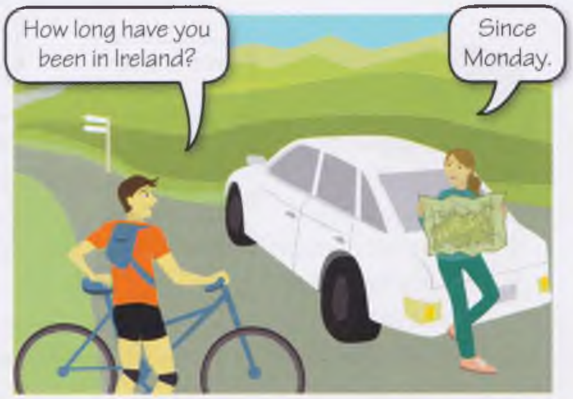
How long have you been in Ireland?
Since Monday.

Compare **is** and **has been**:

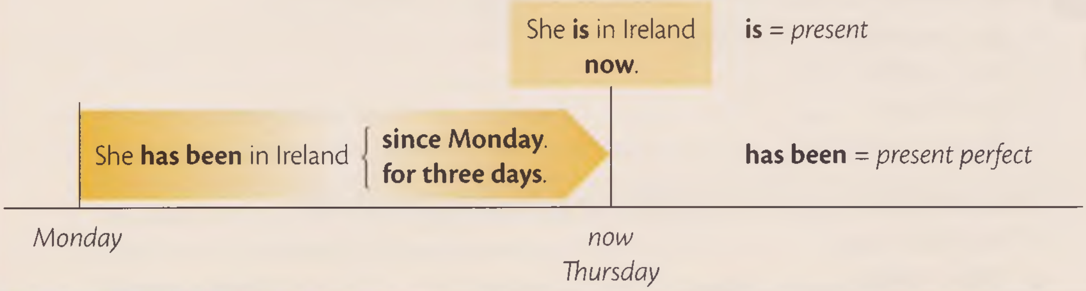

She **is** in Ireland **now**. — **is** = *present*

She **has been** in Ireland { **since Monday**. / **for three days**. — **has been** = *present perfect*

B

Compare:

present simple	*present perfect simple* (**have been** / **have lived** / **have known** etc.)
Dan and Kate **are** married.	They **have been** married **for five years**. (*not* They are married for five years.)
Are you married?	**How long have** you **been** married? (*not* How long are you married?)
Do you **know** Lisa?	**How long have** you **known** her? (*not* How long do you know her?)
I **know** Lisa.	I**'ve known** her **for a long time**. (*not* I know her for ...)
Vicky **lives** in London.	**How long has** she **lived** in London? She **has lived** there **all her life**.
I **have** a car.	**How long have** you **had** your car? I**'ve had** it **since April**.

present continuous	*present perfect continuous* (**have been** + **-ing**)
I**'m learning** German.	**How long have** you **been learning** German? (*not* How long are you learning German?) I**'ve been learning** German **for two years**.
David **is watching** TV.	**How long has** he **been watching** TV? He**'s been** (= He **has been**) **watching** TV **since 5 o'clock**.
It**'s raining**.	It**'s been** (= It **has been**) **raining all day**.

for and **since** ➜ Units 19, 104

Exercises

18.1 Complete these sentences.

1 Helen is in Ireland. She has been in Ireland since Monday.
2 I know Lisa. I have known her for a long time.
3 Sarah and Andy are married. They .... married since 2005.
4 Ben is ill. He .... ill for the last few days.
5 We live in Scott Road. We .... there for a long time.
6 Catherine works in a bank. She .... there for five years.
7 Alan has a headache. He .... a headache since he got up this morning.
8 I'm learning English. I .... English for six months.

18.2 Make questions with **How long ... ?**

1	Helen is on holiday.	How long has she been on holiday ?
2	Steve and Nadia are in Brazil.	How long .... ?
3	I know Amy.	How long .... you .... ?
4	Emily is learning Italian.	.... ?
5	My brother lives in Canada.	.... ?
6	I'm a teacher.	.... ?
7	It is raining.	.... ?

18.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with:

for ten minutes	**all day**	**all her life**
~~for ten years~~	**since he was 20**	**since Sunday**

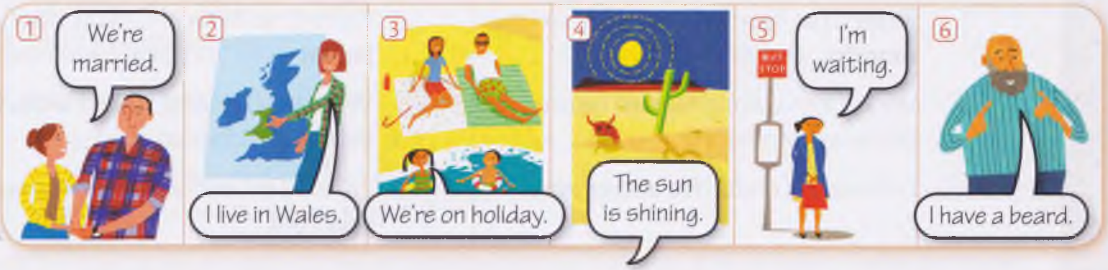

1 They have been married for ten years.
2 She ....
3 They ....
4 The sun ....
5 She ....
6 He ....

18.4 Which is right?

1 Mark ~~lives~~ / has lived in Canada since April. (has lived *is right*)
2 Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her very well.
3 Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her for a long time.
4 A: Sorry I'm late. How long are you waiting/ have you been waiting?
B: Not long. Only five minutes.
5 Luke works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job a lot.
6 Ruth is reading a newspaper. She is reading / She has been reading it for two hours.
7 'How long do you live / have you lived in this house?' 'About ten years.'
8 'Is that a new coat?' 'No, I have / I've had this coat for a long time.'
9 Tom is / has been in Spain at the moment. He is / He has been there for the last three days.

Unit
19

for since ago

A for and since

We use **for** and **since** to say *how long*:

- Helen is in Ireland. She **has been** there { **for three days**. / **since Monday**.

We use **for** + a period of time (**three days** / **two years** etc.):

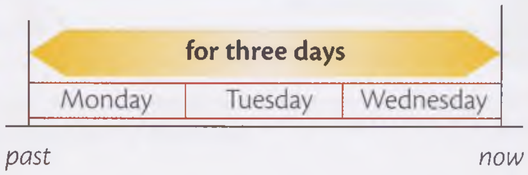

for

- three days
- an hour
- a week
- a month
- five years
- ten minutes
- two hours
- four weeks
- six months
- a long time

- Richard has been in Canada **for six months**. (*not* since six months)
- We've been waiting **for two hours**. (*not* since two hours)
- I've lived in London **for a long time**.

We use **since** + the start of the period (**Monday** / **9 o'clock** etc.):

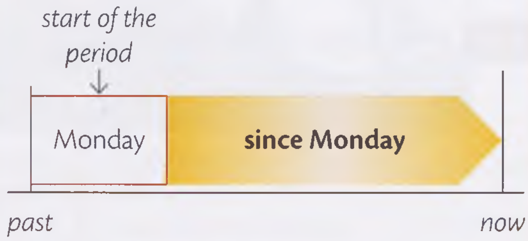

since

- Monday
- 9 o'clock
- 24 July
- January
- 1985
- Wednesday
- 12.30
- Christmas
- I was ten years old
- we arrived

- Richard has been in Canada **since January**. (= from January to now)
- We've been waiting **since 9 o'clock**. (= from 9 o'clock to now)
- I've lived in London **since I was ten years old**.

B ago

ago = before now:

- Susan started her new job **three weeks ago**. (= three weeks before now)
- 'When did Tom go out?' '**Ten minutes ago.**' (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner **an hour ago**.
- Life was very different **a hundred years ago**.

We use **ago** with the *past* (**started**/**did**/**had**/**was** etc.).

Compare **ago** and **for**:

- **When did** Helen **arrive** in Ireland?
  She **arrived** in Ireland **three days ago**.
- **How long has** she **been** in Ireland?
  She **has been** in Ireland **for three days**.

present perfect + **for/since** ➜ Unit 18 **from/until/since/for** ➜ Unit 104 **for** and **during** ➜ Unit 105

Exercises

19.1 Write **for** or **since**.

1 Helen has been in Ireland ....since.... Monday.
2 Helen has been in Ireland ....for.... three days.
3 My aunt has lived in Australia .... 15 years.
4 Tina is in her office. She has been there .... 7 o'clock.
5 India has been an independent country .... 1947.
6 The bus is late. We've been waiting .... 20 minutes.
7 Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty .... many years.
8 Michael has been ill .... a long time. He has been in hospital .... October.

19.2 Answer these questions. Use **ago**.

1 When was your last meal? ....Three hours ago.....
2 When was the last time you were ill? ....
3 When did you last go to the cinema? ....
4 When was the last time you were in a car? ....
5 When was the last time you went on holiday? ....

19.3 Complete the sentences. Use **for** or **ago** with these words.

1 Helen arrived in Ireland ....three days ago..... (three days)
2 Helen has been in Ireland ....for three days..... (three days)
3 Lynn and Mark have been married .... (20 years)
4 Lynn and Mark got married .... (20 years)
5 Dan arrived .... (an hour)
6 I bought these shoes .... (a few days)
7 Silvia has been learning English .... (six months)
8 Have you known Lisa ....? (a long time)

19.4 Complete the sentences with **for** or **since**.

1 (Helen is in Ireland – she arrived there three days ago)
....Helen has been in Ireland for three days.....
2 (Jack is here – he arrived on Tuesday)
Jack has ....
3 (It's raining – it started an hour ago)
It's been ....
4 (I know Sue – I first met her in 2008)
I've ....
5 (Claire and Matt are married – they got married six months ago)
Claire and Matt have ....
6 (Laura is studying medicine at university – she started three years ago)
Laura has ....
7 (David plays the piano – he started when he was seven years old)
David has ....

19.5 Write sentences about yourself. Begin your sentences with:

I've lived ... **I've been ...** **I've been learning ...** **I've known ...** **I've had ...**

1 ....I've lived in this town for three years.....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....

→ **Additional exercises 16–18** (pages 258–60)

Unit
20

I have done (present perfect) and I did (past)

A

With a *finished time* (**yesterday** / **last week** etc.), we use the past (**arrived**/**saw**/**was** etc.):

past	+ *finished time*
We **arrived**	yesterday. last week. at 3 o'clock. in 2002. six months ago.

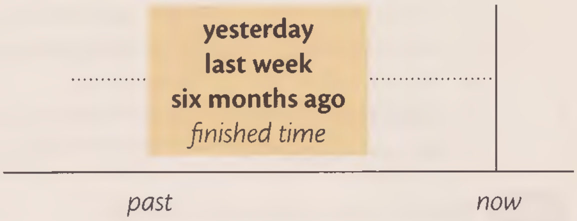

Do *not* use the present perfect (**have arrived** / **have done** / **have been** etc.) with a finished time:

- ☐ I **saw** Paula **yesterday**.
  (*not* I have seen)
- ☐ Where **were** you **on Sunday afternoon**?
  (*not* Where have you been)
- ☐ We **didn't have** a holiday **last year**.
  (*not* We haven't had)
- ☐ 'What **did** you **do last night**?' 'I **stayed** at home.'
- ☐ William Shakespeare **lived from 1564 to 1616**. He **was** a writer. He **wrote** many plays and poems.

Use the past to ask **When** … **?** or **What time** … **?**:

- ☐ **When did** you **buy** your computer? (*not* When have you bought)
- ☐ **What time did** Andy **go** out? (*not* What time has Andy gone out)

B

Compare:

present perfect	*past*
☐ I **have lost** my key. (= I can't find it *now*)	☐ I **lost** my key **last week**.
☐ Ben **has gone** home. (= he isn't here *now*)	☐ Ben **went** home **ten minutes ago**.
☐ **Have** you **seen** Kate? (= where is she *now*?)	☐ **Did** you **see** Kate **on Saturday**?
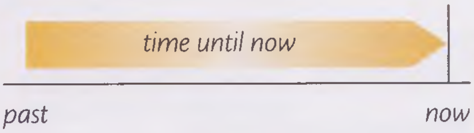	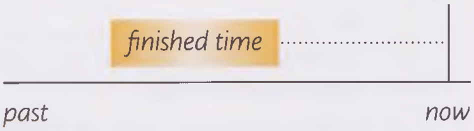
☐ **Have** you **ever been** to Spain? (= in your life, until *now*)	☐ **Did** you **go** to Spain **last year**?
☐ My friend is a writer. He **has written** many books.	☐ Shakespeare **wrote** many plays and poems.
☐ Sam **hasn't phoned** me yet.	☐ Sam **didn't phone** me yesterday.
☐ We**'ve lived** in Singapore for six years. (= we live there *now*)	☐ We **lived** in Glasgow for six years, but now we live in Singapore.

past simple → Units 11–12 present perfect → Units 15–18

Exercises

20.1 Complete the answers to the questions.

1	Have you seen Kate?	Yes, I saw her five minutes ago.
2	Have you started your new job?	Yes, I .... last week.
3	Have your friends arrived?	Yes, they .... at 5 o'clock.
4	Has Sarah gone away?	Yes, ... on Friday.
5	Have you worn your new suit?	Yes, ... yesterday.

20.2 Are these sentences OK? Correct the verbs that are wrong. (The verbs are underlined.)

1	I've lost my key. I can't find it.	OK
2	Have you seen Kate yesterday?	Did you see
3	I've finished my work at 2 o'clock.	....
4	I'm ready now. I've finished my work.	....
5	What time have you finished your work?	....
6	Sue isn't here. She's gone out.	....
7	Steve's grandmother has died two years ago.	....
8	Where have you been last night?	....

20.3 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

1 My friend is a writer. He has written (write) many books.
2 We didn't have (not/have) a holiday last year.
3 I .... (play) tennis yesterday afternoon.
4 What time .... (you/go) to bed last night?
5 .... (you ever meet) a famous person?
6 The weather .... (not/be) very good yesterday.
7 Kathy travels a lot. She .... (visit) many countries.
8 I .... (switch) off the light before going out this morning.
9 I live in New York now, but I .... (live) in Mexico for many years.
10 'What's Canada like? Is it beautiful?' 'I don't know. I .... (not/be) there.'

20.4 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

1 A: Have you ever been (you/ever/be) to Florida?
B: Yes, we went (go) there on holiday two years ago.
A: .... (you/have) a good time?
B: Yes, it .... (be) great.

2 A: Where's Alan? .... (you/see) him?
B: Yes, he .... (go) out a few minutes ago.
A: And Rachel?
B: I don't know. I .... (not/see) her.

3 Rose works in a factory. She .... (work) there for six months. Before that she .... (be) a waitress in a restaurant. She .... (work) there for two years, but she .... (not/enjoy) it very much.

4 A: Do you know Mark's sister?
B: I .... (see) her a few times, but I .... (never/speak) to her. .... (you/ever/speak) to her?
A: Yes. I .... (meet) her at a party last week. She's very nice.

→ **Additional exercises 19–23, 29–31** (pages 260–62, 265–67)

Unit
21

is done was done (passive 1)

A

The office **is cleaned** every day.

The office **was cleaned** yesterday.

Compare active and passive:

Somebody **cleans** the office every day. *(active)*

The office **is cleaned** every day. *(passive)*

Somebody **cleaned** the office yesterday. *(active)*

The office **was cleaned** yesterday. *(passive)*

B

The passive is:

				past participle	
present simple *past simple*	**am/is/are** **was/were**	(not)	+	**cleaned** **invented** **injured**	**done** **built** **taken** etc.

The past participle of regular verbs is **-ed** (clean**ed**/damag**ed** etc.).
For a list of irregular past participles (**done/built/taken** etc.), see Appendix 2–3.

- ○ Butter **is made** from milk.
- ○ Oranges **are imported** into Britain.
- ○ How often **are** these rooms **cleaned**?
- ○ I **am** never **invited** to parties.

- ○ This house **was built** 100 years ago.
- ○ These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- ○ When **was** the telephone **invented**?
- ○ We **weren't invited** to the party last week.
- ○ '**Was** anybody **injured** in the accident?' 'Yes, two people **were taken** to hospital.'

C

was/were born

- ○ I **was born** in Berlin in 1993. (*not* I am born)
- ○ 'Where **were** you **born**?' 'In Cairo.'

D

passive + **by** …

- ○ The telephone was invented **by Alexander Bell** in 1876. (= Alexander Bell invented it)
- ○ I was bitten **by a dog** a few days ago.
- ○ Do you like these paintings? They were painted **by a friend of mine**.

is being done / has been done ➜ **Unit 22** irregular verbs ➜ **Unit 24, Appendix 2–3** **by** ➜ **Unit 111**
active and passive ➜ **Appendix 1**

Exercises

21.1 Write sentences from these words. Some of the sentences are questions.

Sentences 1–7 are present.

1 (the office / clean / every day) The office is cleaned every day.
2 (how often / these rooms / clean?) How often are these rooms cleaned?
3 (glass / make / from sand) Glass ....
4 (the windows / clean / every two weeks) ....
5 (this room / not / use / very much) ....
6 (we / allow / to park here?) ....
7 (how / this word / pronounce?) ....

Sentences 8–15 are past.

8 (the office / clean / yesterday) The office was cleaned yesterday.
9 (the house / paint / last month) The house ....
10 (my phone / steal / a few days ago) ....
11 (three people / injure / in the accident) ....
12 (when / this bridge / build?) ....
13 (I / not / wake up / by the noise) ....
14 (how / these windows / break?) ....
15 (you / invite / to Jon's party last week?) ....

21.2 These sentences are not correct. Correct them.

1 This house built 100 years ago. This house was built ....
2 Football plays in most countries of the world. ....
3 Why did the letter send to the wrong address? ....
4 A film studio is a place where films make. ....
5 Where are you born? ....
6 How many languages are speaking in Switzerland? ....
7 Somebody broke into our house, but nothing stolen. ....
8 When was invented the bicycle? ....

21.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:

~~clean~~ damage find give invite make make show steal ~~take~~

1 The room is cleaned every day.
2 I saw an accident yesterday. Two people were taken to hospital.
3 Paper .... from wood.
4 There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms ....
5 'Where did you get this picture?' 'It .... to me by a friend of mine.'
6 Many American programmes .... on British TV.
7 'Did James and Sue go to the wedding?' 'No. They .... , but they didn't go.'
8 'How old is this film?' 'It .... in 1985.'
9 My car .... last week, but the next day it .... by the police.

21.4 Where were they born?

1 (Ian / Edinburgh) Ian was born in Edinburgh.
2 (Sarah / Manchester) Sarah ....
3 (her parents / Ireland) Her ....
4 (you / ???) I ....
5 (your mother / ???) ....

Unit
22

is being done has been done (passive 2)

A

is/are being ... *(present continuous passive)*

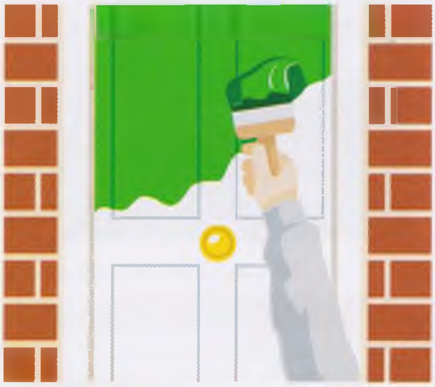

Somebody **is painting** the door. *(active)*

The door **is being painted**. *(passive)*

- My car is at the garage. It **is being repaired**. (= somebody is repairing it)
- Some new houses **are being built** opposite the park. (= somebody is building them)

Compare the present continuous and present simple:

- The office **is being cleaned** at the moment. *(continuous)*
  The office **is cleaned** every day. *(simple)*
- Football matches **are** often **played** at the weekend, but no matches **are being played** next weekend.

For the present continuous and present simple, see Units 8 and 25.

B

has/have been ... *(present perfect passive)*

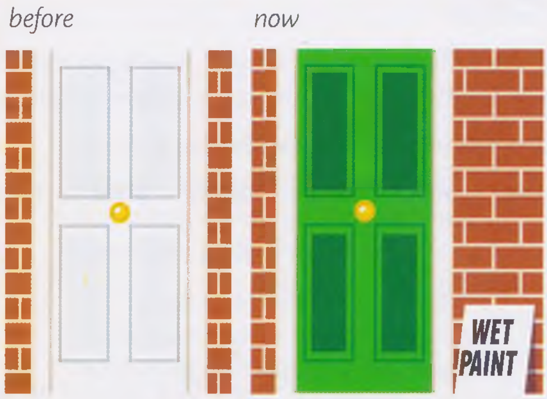

Somebody **has painted** the door. *(active)*

The door **has been painted**. *(passive)*

- My key **has been stolen**. (= somebody has stolen it)
- My keys **have been stolen**. (= somebody has stolen them)
- I'm not going to the party. I **haven't been invited**. (= nobody has invited me)
- **Has** this shirt **been washed**? (= has somebody washed it?)

Compare the present perfect and past simple:

- The room isn't dirty any more. It **has been cleaned**. *(present perfect)*
  The room **was cleaned** yesterday. *(past simple)*
- I can't find my keys. I think they**'ve been stolen**. *(present perfect)*
  My keys **were stolen** last week. *(past simple)*

For the present perfect and past simple, see Unit 20.

is done / was done ➜ **Unit 21** active and passive ➜ **Appendix 1**

Exercises

22.1 What's happening?

1
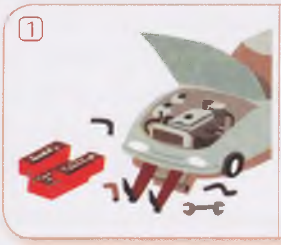

2
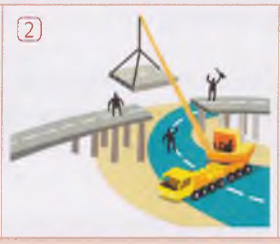

3
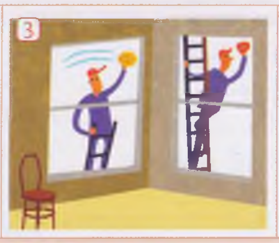

4
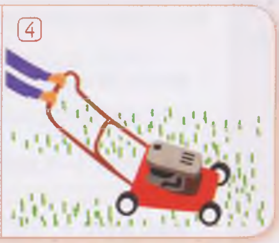

1 The car is being repaired.
2 A bridge ....
3 The windows ....
4 The grass ....

22.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous (**is/are being ...**) or the present perfect (**has/have been ...**).

1
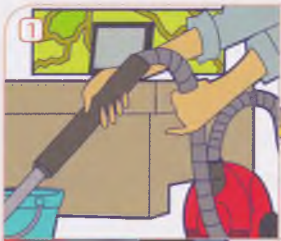

2
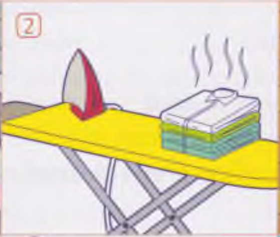

3
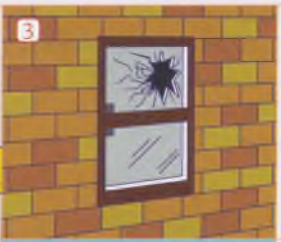

4
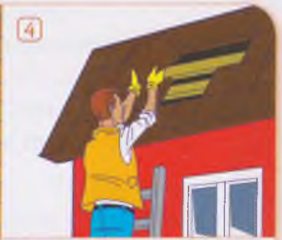

5
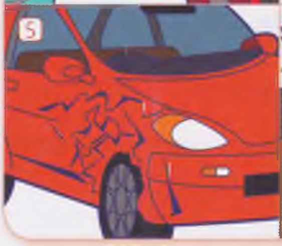

6
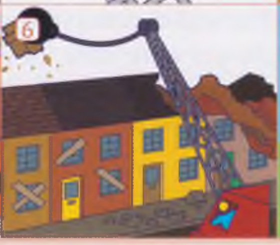

7
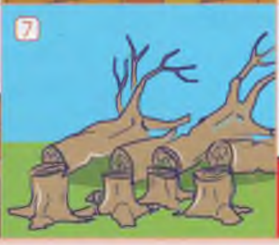

8
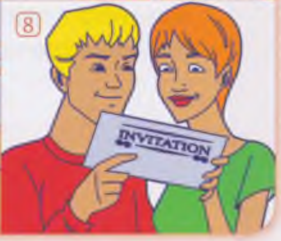

1 (the office / clean) The office is being cleaned.
2 (the shirts / iron) The shirts have been ironed.
3 (the window / break) The window ....
4 (the roof / repair) The roof ....
5 (the car / damage) ....
6 (the houses / knock / down) ....
7 (the trees / cut / down) ....
8 (they / invite / to a party) ....

22.3 Complete the sentences. (Study Unit 21 before you do this exercise.)

1 I can't use my office at the moment. It is being painted (paint).
2 We didn't go to the party. We weren't invited (not/invite).
3 The washing machine was broken, but it's OK now. It .... (repair).
4 The washing machine .... (repair) yesterday afternoon.
5 A factory is a place where things .... (make).
6 How old are these houses? When .... (they/build)?
7 A: .... (the photocopier / use) at the moment?
B: No, you can go ahead and use it.
8 I've never seen these flowers before. What .... (they/call)?
9 My sunglasses .... (steal) at the beach yesterday.
10 The bridge is closed at the moment. It .... (damage) last week and it .... (not/repair) yet.

→ **Additional exercises 24–27** (pages 263–64)

Unit
23

be/have/do in present and past tenses

A

be (= **am**/**is**/**are**/**was**/**were**) + **-ing** (**cleaning**/**working** etc.)

am/**is**/**are** + -ing *(present continuous)* → Units 3–4 and 25	○ Please be quiet. I**'m working**. ○ It **isn't raining** at the moment. ○ What **are** you **doing** this evening?
was/**were** + -ing *(past continuous)* → Unit 13	○ I **was working** when she arrived. ○ It **wasn't raining**, so we didn't need an umbrella. ○ What **were** you **doing** at 3 o'clock?

B

be + *past participle* (**cleaned**/**made**/**eaten** etc.)

am/**is**/**are** + *past participle* *(passive present simple)* → Unit 21	○ I**'m** never **invited** to parties. ○ Butter **is made** from milk. ○ These offices **aren't cleaned** every day.
was/**were** + *past participle* *(passive past simple)* → Unit 21	○ The office **was cleaned** yesterday. ○ These houses **were built** 100 years ago. ○ How **was** the window **broken**? ○ Where **were** you **born**?

C

have/**has** + *past participle* (**cleaned**/**lost**/**eaten**/**been** etc.)

have/**has** + *past participle* *(present perfect)* → Units 15–18	○ I**'ve cleaned** my room. ○ Tom **has lost** his passport. ○ Kate **hasn't been** to Canada. ○ Where **have** Paul and Emma **gone**?

D

do/**does**/**did** + *infinitive* (**clean**/**like**/**eat**/**go** etc.)

do/**does** + *infinitive* *(present simple negative and questions)* → Units 6–7	○ I like coffee, but I **don't like** tea. ○ Chris **doesn't go** out very often. ○ What **do** you usually **do** at weekends? ○ **Does** Sam **live** alone?
did + *infinitive* *(past simple negative and questions)* → Unit 12	○ I **didn't watch** TV yesterday. ○ It **didn't rain** last week. ○ What time **did** Paul and Emma **go** out?

irregular verbs → **Unit 24, Appendix 2–3**

Exercises

23.1 Write **is/are** or **do/does**.

1 ......Do...... you work in the evenings?
2 Where ......are...... they going?
3 Why .... you looking at me?
4 .... Ben live near you?
5 .... you like cooking?
6 .... the sun shining?
7 What time .... the shops close?
8 .... Maria working today?
9 What .... this word mean?
10 .... you feeling all right?

23.2 Write **am not/isn't/aren't** or **don't/doesn't**. All these sentences are negative.

1 Tom ......doesn't...... work at weekends.
2 I'm very tired. I .... want to go out this evening.
3 I'm very tired. I .... going out this evening.
4 Gary .... working this week. He's on holiday.
5 My parents are usually at home. They .... go out very often.
6 Nicola has travelled a lot, but she .... speak any foreign languages.
7 You can turn off the television. I .... watching it.
8 Lisa has invited us to her party next week, but we .... going.

23.3 Write **was/were/did/have/has**.

1 Where ......were...... your shoes made?
2 .... you go out last night?
3 What .... you doing at 10.30?
4 Where .... your mother born?
5 .... Laura gone home?
6 What time .... she go?
7 When .... these houses built?
8 .... Steve arrived yet?
9 Why .... you go home early?
10 How long .... they been married?

23.4 Write **is/are/was/were/have/has**.

1 Joe ......has...... lost his passport.
2 This bridge .... built ten years ago.
3 .... you finished your work yet?
4 This town is always clean. The streets .... cleaned every day.
5 Where .... you born?
6 I .... just made some coffee. Would you like some?
7 Glass .... made from sand.
8 This is a very old photograph. It .... taken a long time ago.
9 David .... bought a new car.

23.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

damage ~~**rain**~~ **enjoy** ~~**go**~~ **pronounce** **eat**
listen **use** **open** **go** **understand**

1 I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's ......raining...... .
2 Why are you so tired? Did you ......go...... to bed late last night?
3 Where are the chocolates? Have you .... them all?
4 How is your new job? Are you .... it?
5 My car was badly .... in the accident, but I was OK.
6 Kate has got a car, but she doesn't .... it very often.
7 Lisa isn't at home. She has .... away for a few days.
8 I don't .... the problem. Can you explain it again?
9 Mark is in his room. He's .... to music.
10 I don't know how to say this word. How is it .... ?
11 How do you .... this window? Can you show me?

Unit
24

Regular and irregular verbs

A

Regular verbs

The *past simple* and *past participle* of regular verbs is **-ed**:
clean → clean**ed** live → live**d** paint → paint**ed** study → studi**ed**

Past simple (→ Unit 11)

- I **cleaned** my room yesterday.
- Chris **studied** engineering at university.

Past participle

have/**has** + *past participle* (present perfect → Units 15–18):

- I **have cleaned** my room.
- Tina **has lived** in London for ten years.

be (**is**/**are**/**were**/**has been** etc.) + *past participle* (passive → Units 21–22):

- These rooms **are cleaned** every day.
- My car **has been repaired**.

B

Irregular verbs

The past simple and past participle of irregular verbs do *not* end in **-ed**:

	make	break	cut
past simple	**made**	**broke**	**cut**
past participle	**made**	**broken**	**cut**

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same. For example:

	make	find	buy	cut
past simple *past participle*	**made**	**found**	**bought**	**cut**

- I **made** a cake yesterday. *(past simple)*
- I **have made** some coffee. *(past participle – present perfect)*
- Butter **is made** from milk. *(past participle – passive present)*

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different. For example:

	break	know	begin	go
past simple	**broke**	**knew**	**began**	**went**
past participle	**broken**	**known**	**begun**	**gone**

- Somebody **broke** this window last night. *(past simple)*
- Somebody **has broken** this window. *(past participle – present perfect)*
- This window **was broken** last night. *(past participle – passive past)*

irregular verbs → **Appendix 2–3** spelling (regular verbs) → **Appendix 5**

Exercises

24.1 Write the past simple / past participle of these verbs. (The past simple and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)

1 make ....made....
2 cut ....cut....
3 get ....
4 bring ....
5 pay ....
6 enjoy ....
7 buy ....
8 sit ....
9 leave ....
10 happen ....
11 hear ....
12 put ....
13 catch ....
14 watch ....
15 understand ....

24.2 Write the past simple and past participle of these verbs.

1 break ....broke.... ....broken....
2 begin ....
3 eat ....
4 drink ....
5 drive ....
6 speak ....
7 write ....
8 come ....
9 know ....
10 take ....
11 go ....
12 give ....
13 throw ....
14 forget ....

24.3 Put the verb in the right form.

1 I ....washed.... my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
2 Somebody has ....broken.... this window. (break)
3 I feel good. I .... very well last night. (sleep)
4 We .... a really good film yesterday. (see)
5 It .... a lot while we were on holiday. (rain)
6 I've .... my bag. Have you .... it? (lose / see)
7 Rosa's bicycle was .... last week. (steal)
8 I .... to bed early because I was tired. (go)
9 Have you .... your work yet? (finish)
10 The shopping centre was .... about 20 years ago. (build)
11 Anna .... to drive when she was 18. (learn)
12 I've never .... a horse. (ride)
13 Jessica is a good friend of mine. I've .... her for a long time. (know)
14 Yesterday I .... and .... my leg. (fall / hurt)
15 My brother .... in the London Marathon last year. Have you ever .... in a marathon? (run / run)

24.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

cost	**drive**	**fly**	**~~make~~**	**meet**	**sell**
speak	**swim**	**tell**	**think**	**wake up**	**win**

1 I have ....made.... some coffee. Would you like some?
2 Have you .... John about your new job?
3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well, but we .... the game.
4 I know Gary, but I've never .... his wife.
5 We were .... by loud music in the middle of the night.
6 Stephanie jumped into the river and .... to the other side.
7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I .... it was very good.'
8 Many different languages are .... in the Philippines.
9 Our holiday .... a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.
10 Have you ever .... a very fast car?
11 All the tickets for the concert were .... very quickly.
12 A bird .... in through the open window while we were having our dinner.

Unit
25

What are you doing tomorrow?

A

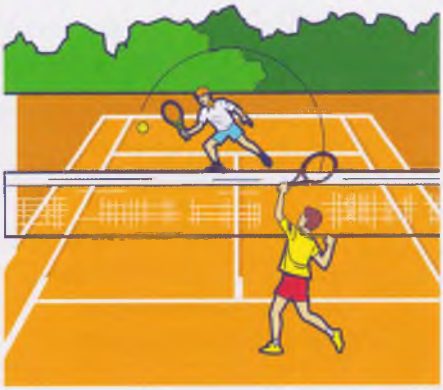

They **are playing** tennis (**now**).

today is Sunday

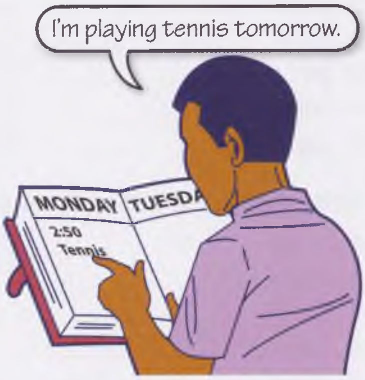

He **is playing** tennis **tomorrow**.

We use **am**/**is**/**are** + **-ing** (*present continuous*) for something happening now:

- 'Where are Tina and Helen?' 'They**'re playing** tennis in the park.'
- Please be quiet. I**'m working**.

We also use **am**/**is**/**are** + **-ing** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week etc.):

- Andrew **is playing** tennis tomorrow.
- I**'m** not **working** next week.

B

I am doing something tomorrow = I have arranged to do it, I have a plan to do it:

- Sophie **is going** to the dentist on Friday.
  (= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- We**'re having** a party next weekend.
- **Are** you **meeting** your friends tonight?
- What **are** you **doing** tomorrow evening?
- I**'m** not **going** out tonight. I**'m staying** at home.

You can also say '**I'm going to** do something' (→ Unit 26).

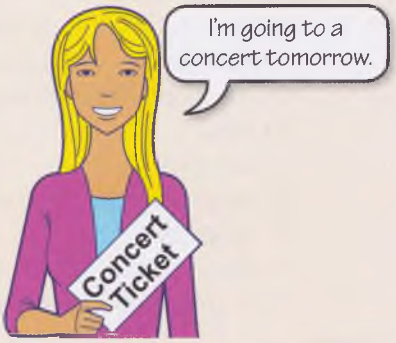
I'm going to a concert tomorrow.
Concert Ticket

C

We use the present continuous (**I'm staying** / **are you coming** etc.) to say what somebody has arranged to do:

- I**'m staying** at home this evening. (*not* I stay)
- **Are** you **going** out tonight? (*not* Do you go)
- Lisa **isn't coming** to the party next week. (*not* Lisa doesn't come)

But we use the present simple (**start**, **arrives** etc.) for timetables, programmes, trains, buses etc. :

- The train **arrives** at 7.30.
- What time **does** the film **finish**?

Compare:

present continuous (usually for people)	*present simple* (for timetables, programmes etc.)
I**'m going** to a concert tomorrow.	The concert **starts** at 7.30.
What time **are** you **leaving**?	What time **does** your train **leave**?

present continuous → **Units 3–4** present simple → **Units 5–7** **I'm going to** ... → **Unit 26**

Exercises

25.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?

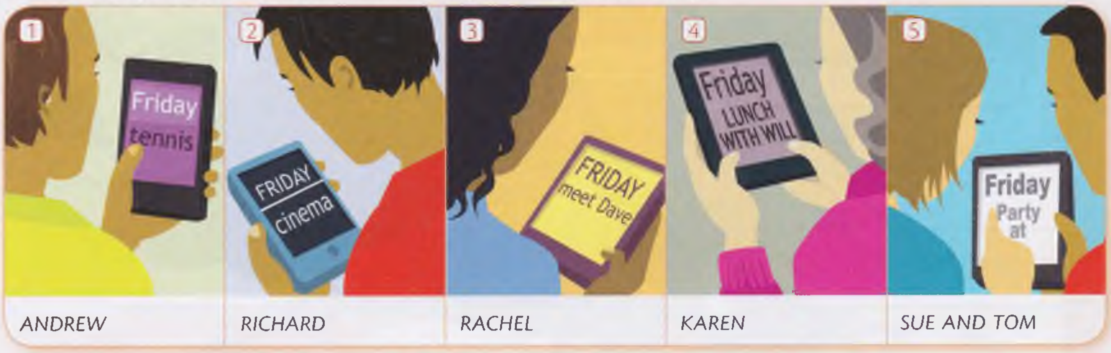

1 Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.
2 Richard .... to the cinema.
3 Rachel ....
4 .... lunch with Will.
5 ....

25.2 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

1 (you / go / out / tonight?) Are you going out tonight?
2 (you / work / next week?) ....
3 (what / you / do / tomorrow evening?) ....
4 (what time / your friends / come?) ....
5 (when / Lisa / go / on holiday?) ....

25.3 Write sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

1 I'm staying at home tonight.
2 I'm going to the theatre on Monday.
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

25.4 Put the verb in the present continuous (**he is leaving** etc.) or present simple (**the train leaves** etc.).

1 'Are you going (you/go) out tonight?' 'No, I'm too tired.'
2 We're going (we/go) to a concert tonight. It starts (it/start) at 7.30.
3 Do you know about Sarah? .... (she/get) married next month!
4 A: My parents .... (go) on holiday next week.
B: Oh, that's nice. Where .... (they/go)?
5 Silvia is doing an English course at the moment. The course .... (finish) on Friday.
6 There's a party tomorrow night, but .... (I/not/go).
7 .... (I/go) out with some friends tonight. Why don't you come too? .... (we/meet) at the Royal Hotel at 8 o'clock.
8 A: How .... (you/get) home after the party tomorrow? By taxi?
B: No, I can go by bus. The last bus .... (leave) at midnight.
9 A: .... (you/come) with us to the cinema tonight?
B: Yes, what time .... (the film / begin)?
10 A: What .... (you/do) tomorrow afternoon?
B: .... (I/work).

Unit 26

I'm going to ...

A

I'm going to do something

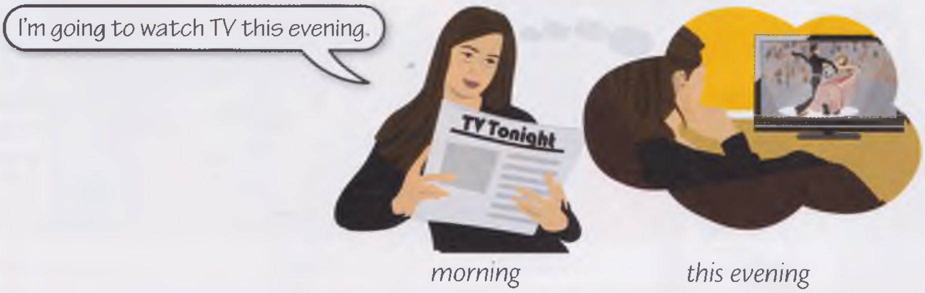
I'm going to watch TV this evening.
TV Tonight
morning
this evening

She **is going to watch** TV this evening.

We use **am/is/are going to** ... for the *future:*

I he/she/it we/you/they	**am** **is** **are**	(not) **going to**	do ... drink ... watch ...

am **is** **are**	I he/she/it we/you/they	**going to**	buy ... ? eat ... ? wear ... ?

B

I am going to do something = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it:

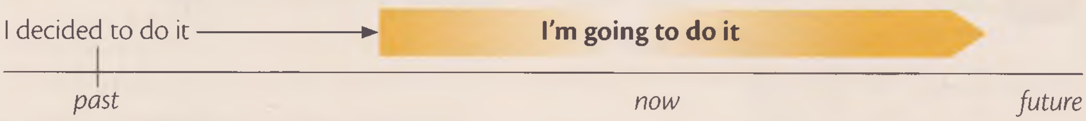
I decided to do it
I'm going to do it
past
now
future

- I'**m going to buy** some books tomorrow.
- Sarah **is going to sell** her car.
- **I'm not going to have** breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What **are** you **going to wear** to the wedding next week?
- 'Your hands are dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'**m going to wash** them.'
- **Are** you **going to invite** Mark to your party?

We also use the present continuous (**I am doing**) for the future, usually for arrangements (→ Unit 25):

- **I am playing** tennis with Julia tomorrow.

C

Something **is going to happen**

Something **is going to happen** = we can see *now* that it is sure to happen:

- Look at the sky! It'**s going to rain**.
(black clouds *now* → rain)
- Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready.
I'**m going to be** late.
(9 o'clock *now* and not ready → late)

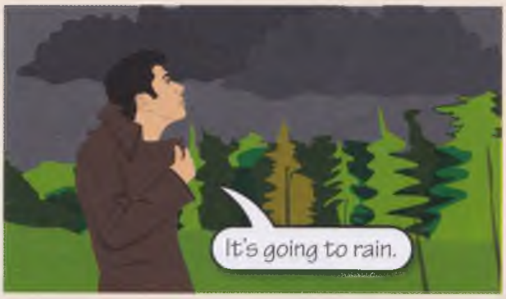
It's going to rain.

present for the future → **Unit 25** **will** → **Units 27–28**

Exercises

26.1 What are these people saying?

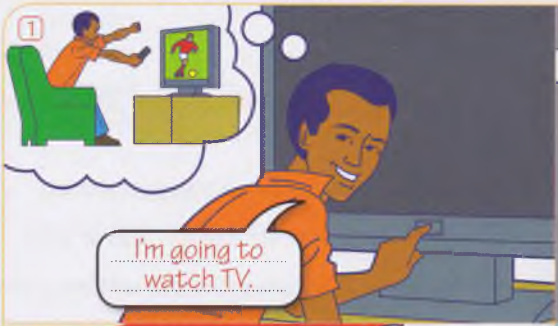
1
I'm going to watch TV.

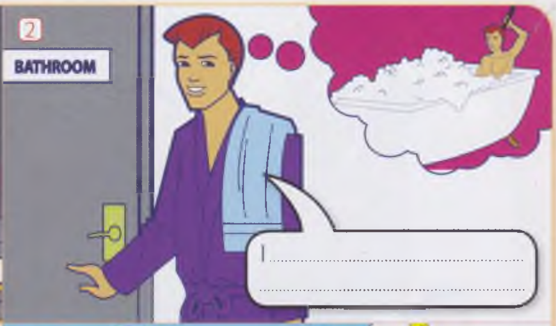

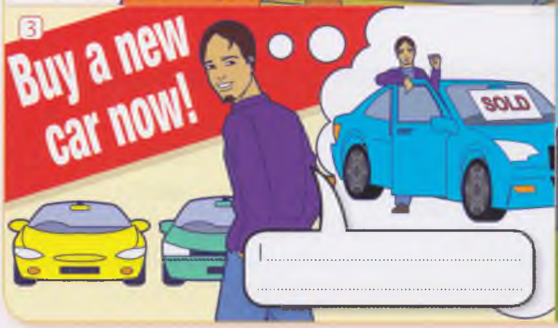
3
Buy a new car now!
SOLD
I ....

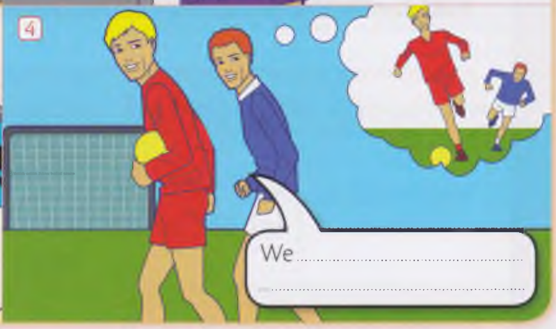

26.2 Complete the sentences. Use **going to** + these verbs:

do **eat** **give** **lie down** **stay** **walk** ~~**wash**~~ **watch** ~~**wear**~~

1 My hands are dirty. I'm going to wash them.
2 What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
3 It's a nice day. I don't want to take the bus. I ....
4 Steve is going to London next week. He .... with some friends.
5 I'm hungry. I .... this sandwich.
6 It's Sarah's birthday next week. We .... her a present.
7 Sue says she's feeling very tired. She .... for an hour.
8 Your favourite programme is on TV tonight. .... you .... it?
9 What .... Rachel .... when she leaves school?

26.3 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?

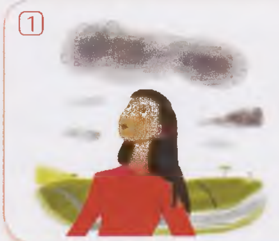

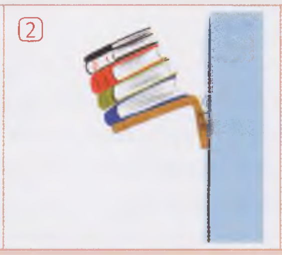

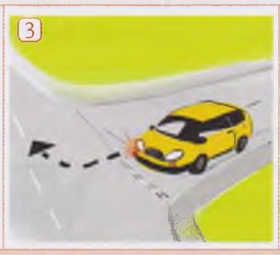

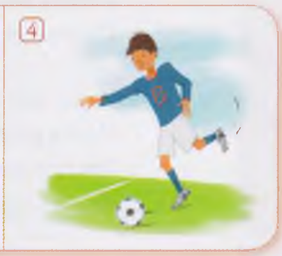

1 It's going to rain.
2 The shelf ....
3 The car ....
4 He ....

26.4 What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

1 I'm ....
2 ....
3 ....

Unit
27

will/shall 1

A

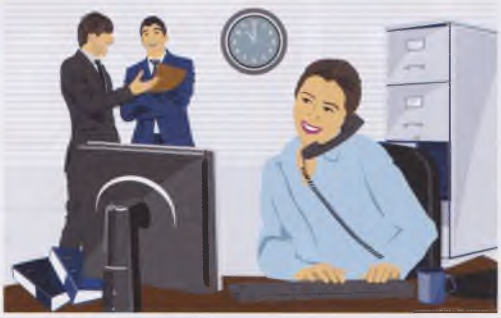

SARAH

Sarah goes to work every day. She is always there from 8.30 until 4.30.

It is 11 o'clock now. Sarah **is** at work.

At 11 o'clock yesterday, she **was** at work.

At 11 o'clock tomorrow, she **will be** at work.

will + *infinitive* (**will be** / **will win** / **will come** etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**will** (**'ll**) **will not** (**won't**)	**be** **win** **eat** **come** etc.

will	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**be?** **win?** **eat?** **come?** etc.

'll = **will**: I'**ll** (I will) / you'**ll** / she'**ll** etc.
won't = **will not**: I **won't** (= I will not) / you **won't** / she **won't** etc.

B

We use **will** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week etc.):

- Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Madrid. Tomorrow she'**ll be** in Rome. Next week she'**ll be** in Tokyo.
- You can call me this evening. I'**ll be** at home.
- Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds **will eat** it.
- We'**ll** probably **go** out this evening.
- **Will** you **be** at home this evening?

- I **won't be** here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You **won't sleep**.

We often say **I think** … **will** … :

- **I think** Kelly **will pass** the exam.
- **I don't think** it **will rain** this afternoon.
- **Do you think** the exam **will be** difficult?

C

We do *not* use **will** for things we have already arranged or decided to do (→ Units 25–26):

- We'**re going** to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? (*not* We will go)
- I'**m** not **working** tomorrow. (*not* I won't work)
- **Are** you **going to do** the exam? (*not* Will you do)

D

shall

You can say **I shall** (= I will) and **we shall** (= we will):

- **I shall be** late tomorrow. *or* **I will** (**I'll**) **be** late tomorrow.
- I think **we shall win**. *or* I think **we will** (**we'll**) **win**.

But *do not* use **shall** with **you**/**they**/**he**/**she**/**it**:

- **Tom will** be late. (*not* Tom shall be)

What are you doing tomorrow? ➜ **Unit 25** **I'm going to** … ➜ **Unit 26** **will/shall** 2 ➜ **Unit 28**

Exercises

27.1 Helen is travelling in Europe. Complete the sentences with **she was, she's** or **she'll be**.

1 Yesterday ......she was...... in Paris.
2 Tomorrow .... in Amsterdam.
3 Last week .... in Barcelona.
4 Next week .... in London.
5 At the moment .... in Brussels.
6 Three days ago .... in Munich.
7 At the end of her trip .... very tired.

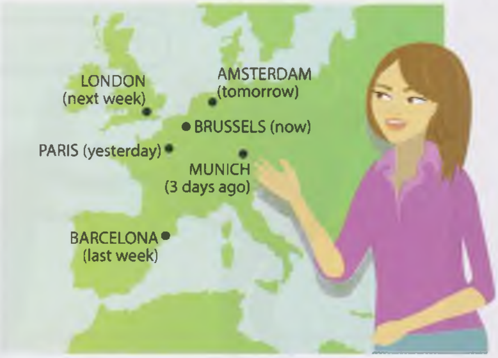

Helen

27.2 Where will you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use:

I'll be ... or **I'll probably be ...** or **I don't know where I'll be.**

1 (at 10 o'clock tomorrow) ......I'll probably be on the beach.......................
2 (one hour from now) ....
3 (at midnight tonight) ....
4 (at 3 o'clock tomorrow afternoon) ....
5 (two years from now) ....

27.3 Put in **will** ('ll) or **won't**.

1 Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You ......won't...... sleep.
2 'Are you ready yet?' 'Not yet. I .... be ready in five minutes.'
3 I'm going away for a few days. I'm leaving tonight, so I .... be at home tomorrow.
4 It .... rain, so you don't need to take an umbrella.
5 A: I don't feel very well this evening.
B: Well, go to bed early and you .... feel better in the morning.
6 It's Ben's birthday next Monday. He .... be 25.
7 I'm sorry I was late this morning. It .... happen again.

27.4 Write sentences with **I think ...** or **I don't think ...** .

1 (Kelly will pass the exam) ......I think Kelly will pass the exam.......................
2 (Kelly won't pass the exam) ......I don't think Kelly will pass the exam.......................
3 (we'll win the game) I ....
4 (I won't be here tomorrow) ....
5 (Sue will like her present) ....
6 (they won't get married) ....
7 (you won't enjoy the film) ....

27.5 Which is right? (Study Unit 25 before you do this exercise.)

1 ~~We'll go~~ / We're going to the theatre tonight. We've got tickets. (We're going *is right*)
2 'What will you do / are you doing tomorrow evening?' 'Nothing. I'm free.'
3 They'll go / They're going away tomorrow morning. Their train is at 8.40.
4 I'm sure your aunt will lend / is lending us some money. She's very rich.
5 'Why are you putting on your coat?' 'I'll go / I'm going out.'
6 Do you think Clare will phone / is phoning us tonight?
7 Steve can't meet us on Saturday. He'll work / He's working.
8 Will you / Shall you be at home tomorrow evening?
9 A: What are your plans for the weekend?
B: Some friends will come / are coming to stay with us.

Unit
28

will/shall 2

A

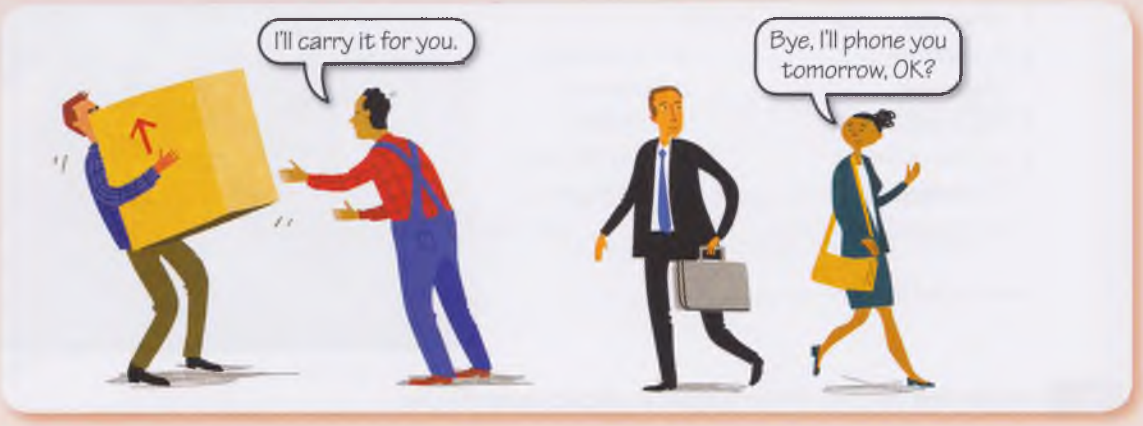
I'll carry it for you.
Bye, I'll phone you tomorrow, OK?

You can use **I'll** ... (**I will**) when you offer something or decide to do something:

- 'My bag is very heavy.' **'I'll carry** it for you.'
- **'I'll phone** you tomorrow, OK?' 'OK, bye.'

We often say **I think I'll** ... / **I don't think I'll** ... when we decide to do something:

- I'm tired. **I think I'll go** to bed early tonight.
- It's a nice day. **I think I'll sit** outside.
- It's raining. **I don't think I'll go** out.

Do *not* use the present simple (**I go** / **I phone** etc.) in sentences like these:

- **I'll phone** you tomorrow, OK? (*not* I phone you)
- I think I'**ll go** to bed early. (*not* I go to bed)

B

Do *not* use **I'll** ... for something you decided before (→ Units 25–26):

- **I'm working** tomorrow. (*not* I'll work)
- I don't want my car any more. **I'm going to sell** it. (*not* I'll sell)
- What **are** you **doing** at the weekend? (*not* What will you do)

C

Shall I ... ? **Shall we** ... ?

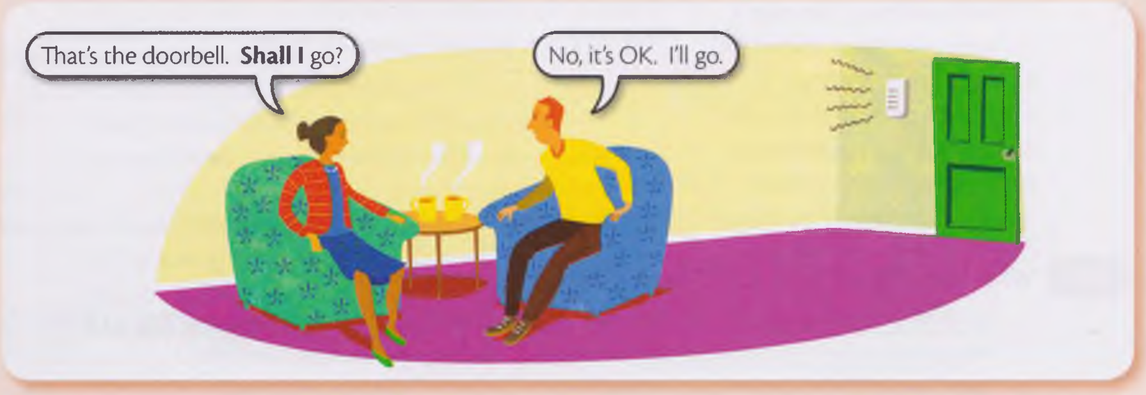
That's the doorbell. Shall I go?
No, it's OK. I'll go.

Shall I / **Shall we** ... ? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?

- It's very warm in this room. **Shall I open** the window?
- '**Shall I phone** you this evening?' 'Yes, please.'
- I'm going to a party tonight. What **shall I wear**?

- It's a nice day. **Shall we go** for a walk?
- Where **shall we go** for our holidays this year?
- 'Let's go out this evening.' 'OK, what time **shall we meet**?'

What are you doing tomorrow? → Unit 25 **I'm going to** ... → Unit 26 **will/shall** 1 → Unit 27
Let's → Units 35, 53

Exercises

28.1 Complete the sentences. Use **I'll (I will)** + these verbs:

~~carry~~ do eat show sit stay

1 My bag is very heavy. *I'll carry* .... it for you.
2 I don't want this banana. Well, I'm hungry. .... it.
3 Do you want a chair? No, it's OK. .... on the floor.
4 Did you phone Sophie? Oh no, I forgot. .... it now.
5 Are you coming with me? No, I don't think so. .... here.
6 How do you use this camera? Give it to me and .... you.

28.2 Complete the sentences. Use **I think I'll ...** or **I don't think I'll ...** + these verbs:

buy buy ~~go~~ have play

1 It's cold today. *I don't think I'll go* .... out.
2 I'm hungry. I .... something to eat.
3 I feel very tired. .... tennis.
4 I like this hat. .... it.
5 This camera is too expensive. .... it.

28.3 Which is right?

1 ~~I phone~~ / I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? (I'll phone *is right*)
2 I haven't done the shopping yet. I do / I'll do it later.
3 I like sport. I watch / I'll watch a lot of sport on TV.
4 I need some exercise. I think I go / I'll go for a walk.
5 Carl is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
6 'This book belongs to Tina.' 'OK. I give / I'll give / I'm going to give it to her.'
7 A: Are you doing / Will you do anything this evening?
B: Yes, I'm going / I'll go out with some friends.
8 I can't go out with you tomorrow night. I work / I'm working / I'll work.

28.4 Write sentences with **Shall I ... ?** Choose from the two boxes.

make turn off ~~open~~ turn on

some sandwiches the TV the light ~~the window~~

1 It's very warm in this room. *Shall I open the window?*
2 This programme isn't very good. ....
3 I'm hungry. ....
4 It's dark in this room. ....

28.5 Write sentences with **Shall we ... ?** Choose from the two boxes.

what where ~~what time~~ who

buy invite go ~~meet~~

1 Let's go out tonight. OK, *what time shall we meet?*
2 Let's have a holiday. OK, ...
3 Let's spend some money. OK, ...
4 Let's have a party. OK, ...

→ **Additional exercises 28–31** (pages 264–67)

Unit
29

might

A

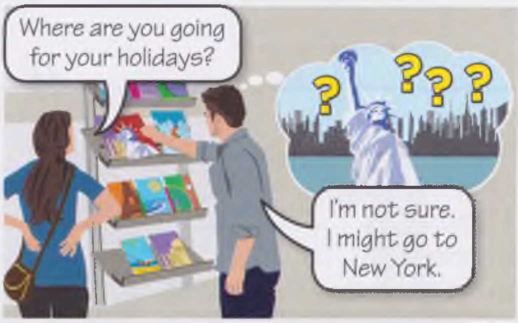
Where are you going for your holidays?
? ? ? ?
I'm not sure. I might go to New York.

He **might go** to New York.
(= it is possible that he will go to New York)

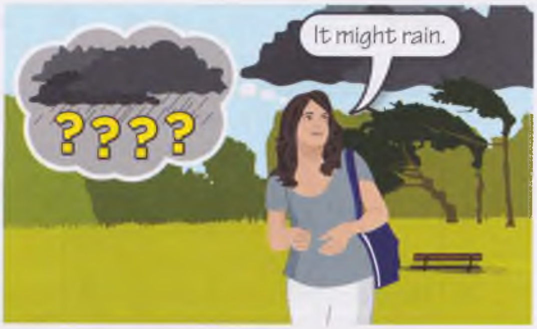

It **might rain**.
(= it is possible that it will rain)

might + *infinitive* (**might go** / **might be** / **might rain** etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**might** (not)	**be** **go** **play** **come** etc.

B

I might = it is possible that I will:

- I **might go** to the cinema this evening, but I'm not sure. (= it is possible that I will go)
- A: When is Rebecca going to phone you?
  B: I don't know. She **might phone** this afternoon.
- Take an umbrella with you. It **might rain**.
- Buy a lottery ticket. You **might be** lucky. (= perhaps you will be lucky)
- A: Are you going out tonight?
  B: **I might**. (= I might go out)

Study the difference:

- **I'm playing** tennis tomorrow. *(sure)*
  I **might play** tennis tomorrow. *(possible)*
- Rebecca **is going to phone** later. *(sure)*
  Rebecca **might phone** later. *(possible)*

C

I might not = it is possible that I will not:

- I **might not go** to work tomorrow.
  (= it is possible that I will not go)
- Sue **might not come** to the party.
  (= it is possible that she will not come)

D

may

You can use **may** in the same way. **I may** = **I might**:

- I **may go** to the cinema this evening. (= I might go)
- Sue **may not come** to the party. (= Sue might not come)

May I ... **?** = Is it OK to ... ? / Can I ... ?:

- **May I** ask a question? (= is it OK to ask / can I ask?)
- '**May I** sit here?' 'Yes, of course.'

will → **Units 27–28** **can** → **Unit 30**

Exercises

29.1 Write sentences with **might**.

1 (it's possible that I'll go to the cinema) I might go to the cinema.
2 (it's possible that I'll see you tomorrow) I ……
3 (it's possible that Sarah will forget to phone) ……
4 (it's possible that it will snow today) ……
5 (it's possible that I'll be late tonight) ……

Write sentences with **might not**.

6 (it's possible that Mark will not be here next week) ……
7 (it's possible that I won't have time to go out) ……

29.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas, but you are not sure. Choose from the list and write sentences with **I might**.

fish **go away** **~~Italy~~** **Monday** **a new car** **taxi**

1	Where are you going for your holidays?	I'm not sure. I might go to Italy.
2	What are you doing at the weekend?	I don't know. I ……
3	When will you see Kate again?	I'm not sure. ……
4	What are you going to have for dinner?	I don't know. ……
5	How are you going to get home tonight?	I'm not sure. ……
6	I hear you won some money. What are you going to do with it?	I haven't decided yet. ……

29.3 You ask Ben questions about his plans for tomorrow. Sometimes he is sure, but usually he is not sure.

1	Are you playing tennis tomorrow?	Yes, in the afternoon.
2	Are you going out tomorrow evening?	Possibly.
3	Are you going to get up early?	Perhaps.
4	Are you working tomorrow?	No, I'm not.
5	Will you be at home tomorrow morning?	Maybe.
6	Are you going to watch TV?	I might.
7	Are you going out in the afternoon?	Yes, I am.
8	Are you going shopping?	Perhaps.

Ben

Now write about Ben. Use **might** where necessary.

1 He's playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.
2 He might go out tomorrow evening.
3 He ……
4 ……
5 ……
6 ……
7 ……
8 ……

29.4 Write three things that you **might** do tomorrow.

1 ……
2 ……
3 ……

Unit
30

can and could

A

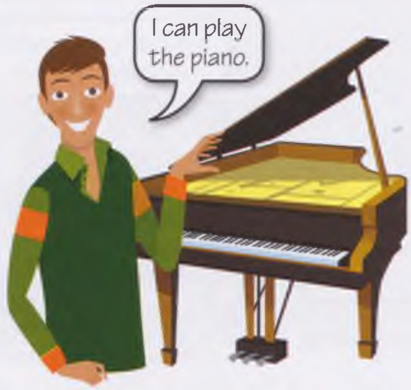
I can play the piano.

He **can play** the piano.

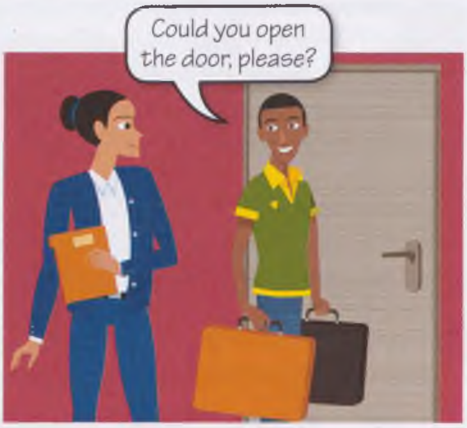
Could you open the door, please?

can + *infinitive* (**can do** / **can play** / **can come** etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**can** **can't** (**cannot**)	**do** **play** **see** **come** etc.

can	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**do?** **play?** **see?** **come?** etc.

B

I can do something = I *know how* to do it, or *it is possible* for me to do it:

- ○ I **can play** the piano. My brother **can play** the piano too.
- ○ Sarah **can speak** Italian, but she **can't speak** Spanish.
- ○ A: **Can** you **swim**?
  B: Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer.
- ○ A: **Can** you **change** twenty pounds?
  B: I'm sorry, **I can't**.
- ○ I'm having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel **can't come**.

C

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use **could**/**couldn't**:

- ○ When I was young, I **could run** very fast.
- ○ Before Maria came to Britain, she **couldn't understand** much English. Now she **can understand** everything.
- ○ I was tired last night, but I **couldn't sleep**.
- ○ I had a party last week, but Paul and Rachel **couldn't come**.

D

Can you … ? Could you … ? Can I … ? Could I … ?

We use **Can you** … **?** or **Could you** … **?** when we ask people to do things:

- ○ **Can you** open the door, please? *or* **Could you** open the door, please?
- ○ **Can you** wait a moment, please? *or* **Could you** wait … ?

We use **Can I have** … **?** or **Can I get** … **?** to ask for something:

- ○ **Can I have** a glass of water, please? *or* **Can I get** … ?

Can I … **?** or **Could I** … **?** = is it OK to do something?:

- ○ **Can I** sit here?
- ○ Tom, **could I** borrow your umbrella?

May I … ? ➜ **Unit 29**

Exercises

30.1 Ask Steve if he can do these things:

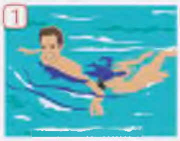

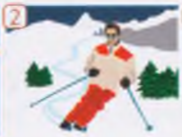

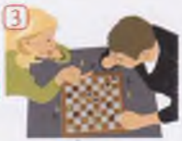

chess

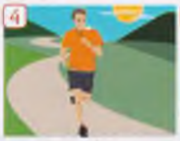

10 kilometres

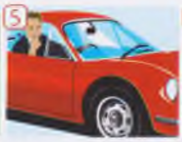

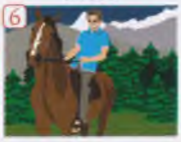

You — Steve

1 Can you swim?
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use **I can** or **I can't**.

7 I ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....
11 ....
12 ....

30.2 Complete these sentences. Use **can** or **can't** + one of these verbs:

~~come~~ find hear see speak

1 I'm sorry, but we can't come to your party next Saturday.
2 I like this hotel room. You .... the mountains from the window.
3 You are speaking very quietly. I .... you.
4 Have you seen my bag? I .... it.
5 Catherine got the job because she .... five languages.

30.3 Complete these sentences. Use **can't** or **couldn't** + one of these verbs:

decide eat find go go ~~sleep~~

1 I was tired, but I couldn't sleep .
2 I wasn't hungry yesterday. I .... my dinner.
3 Kate doesn't know what to do. She ....
4 I wanted to speak to Mark yesterday, but I .... him.
5 James .... to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.
6 Paula .... to the meeting last week. She was ill.

30.4 What do you say in these situations? Use **can** or **could**.

1 (open/door)

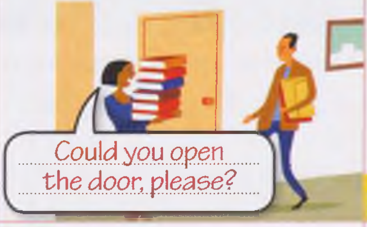

Could you open the door, please?

2 (pass/salt)

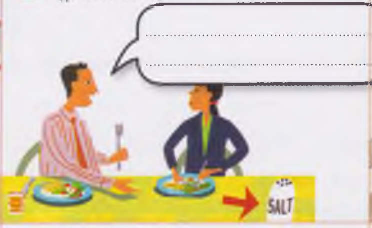

....

3 (have/postcards)

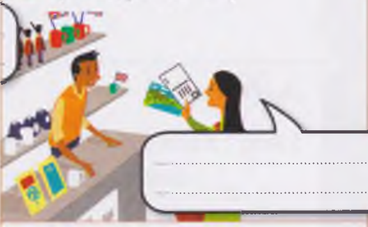

....

4 (turn off /radio)

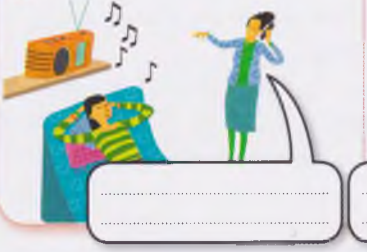

....

5 (borrow/newspaper)

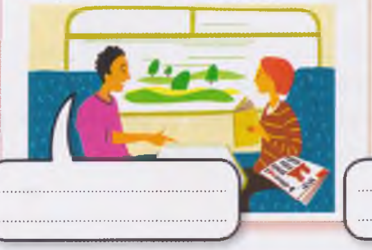

....

6 (use/pen)

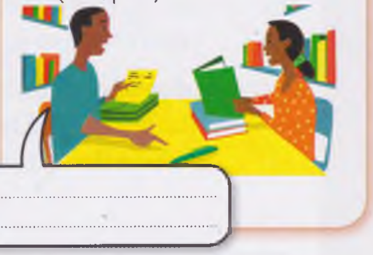

....

Unit
31

must mustn't don't need to

A

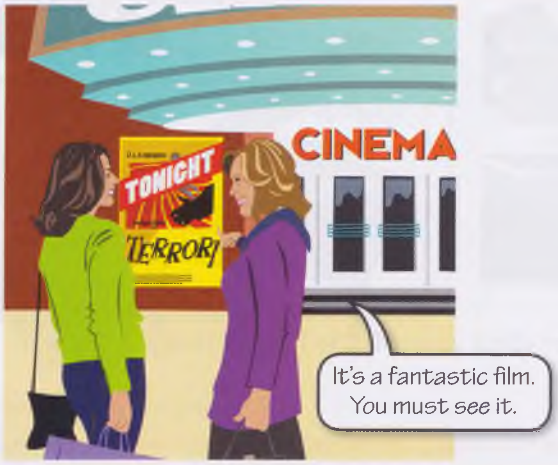
TONIGHT
TERROR!
CINEMA
It's a fantastic film.
You must see it.

must + *infinitive* (**must do** / **must work** etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**must**	**do** **go** **see** **eat** etc.

B

I must (do something) = I need to do it:

○ I'm very hungry. I **must eat** something.
○ It's a fantastic film. You **must see** it.
○ The windows are very dirty. We **must clean** them.

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use **had to** ... (*not* must):

○ I was very hungry. I **had to eat** something. (*not* I must eat)
○ We **had to walk** home last night. There were no buses. (*not* We must walk)

C

mustn't (= must not)

I mustn't (do something) = it is necessary *not* to do it, it is the wrong thing to do:

○ I **must go**. I **mustn't be** late.
○ I **mustn't forget** to phone Chris.
(= I **must remember** to phone her)
○ Be happy! You **mustn't be** sad. (= don't be sad)
○ You **mustn't touch** the pictures.
(= don't touch the pictures)

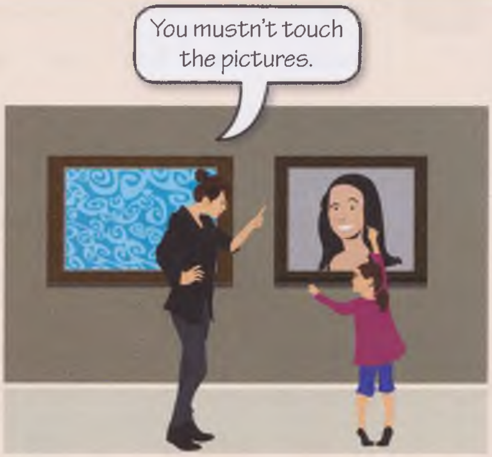
You mustn't touch the pictures.

D

don't need to

I don't need (to do something) = it is not necessary:

○ I **don't need to go** yet. I can stay a little longer.
○ You **don't need to shout**. I can hear you OK.

You can also say **don't have to** ... :

○ I **don't have to go** yet. I can stay a little longer.

Compare **don't need to** and **mustn't**:

○ You **don't need to** go. You can stay here if you want.
○ You **mustn't** go. You must stay here.

I have to ... ➜ **Unit 33**

Exercises

31.1 Complete the sentences. Use **must** + these verbs:

be ~~**eat**~~ **go** **learn** **meet** **wash** **win**

1 I'm very hungry. I ……must eat…… something.
2 Marilyn is a very interesting person. You …………………… her.
3 My hands are dirty. I …………………… them.
4 You …………………… to drive. It will be very useful.
5 I …………………… shopping. I need to buy some food.
6 The game tomorrow is very important for us. We …………………… .
7 You can't always have things immediately. You …………………… patient.

31.2 Write **I must** or **I had to**.

1 ……I had to…… walk home last night. There were no buses.
2 It's late. …………………… go now.
3 I don't usually work on Saturdays, but last Saturday …………………… work.
4 …………………… get up early tomorrow. I have a lot to do.
5 I came here by train. The train was full and …………………… stand all the way.
6 I was nearly late for my appointment this morning. …………………… run to get there on time.
7 I forgot to phone David yesterday. …………………… phone him later today.

31.3 Complete the sentences. Use **mustn't** or **don't need to** + these verbs:

forget ~~**go**~~ **lose** **phone** **rush** **wait**

1 I ……don't need to go…… home yet. I can stay a little longer.
2 We have a lot of time. We …………………… .
3 Keep these papers in a safe place. You …………………… them.
4 I'm not ready yet, but you …………………… for me. You can go now and I'll come later.
5 We …………………… to turn off the lights before we leave.
6 I must contact David, but I …………………… him – I can send him an email.

31.4 Find the sentences with the same meaning.

1 We can leave the meeting early.	A We must stay until the end.	1 ……E……
2 We must leave the meeting early.	B We couldn't stay until the end.	2 …………
3 We mustn't leave the meeting early.	C We can't stay until the end.	3 …………
4 We had to leave the meeting early.	D We can stay until the end.	4 …………
5 We don't need to leave the meeting early.	E We don't need to stay until the end.	5 …………

31.5 Write **must / mustn't / had to / don't need to.**

1 You ……don't need to…… go. You can stay here if you want.
2 It's a fantastic film. You ……must…… see it.
3 The restaurant won't be busy tonight. We …………………… reserve a table.
4 I was very busy last week. I …………………… work every evening.
5 I want to know what happened. You …………………… tell me.
6 I don't want Sue to know what happened. You …………………… tell her.
7 I …………………… go now or I'll be late for my appointment.
8 'Why were you so late?' 'I …………………… wait half an hour for a bus.'
9 We …………………… decide now. We can decide later.
10 It's Lisa's birthday next week. I …………………… forget to buy her a present.

Unit
32

should

A

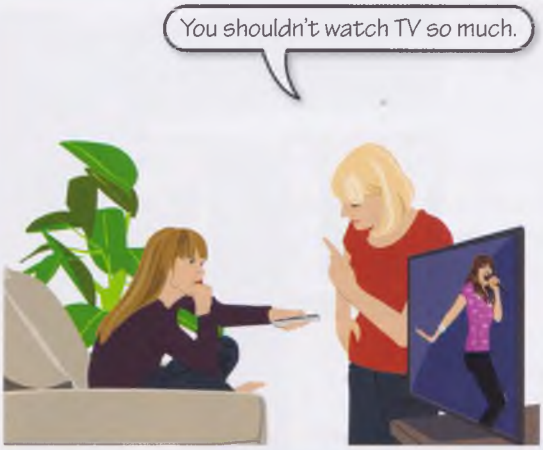
You shouldn't watch TV so much.

should + *infinitive*
(**should do** / **should watch** etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**should** **shouldn't**	**do** **stop** **go** **watch** etc.

B

You **should** do something = it is a good thing to do, it is the right thing to do:

- Tom doesn't study enough. He **should study** harder.
- It's a good film. You **should go** and see it.
- When you play tennis, you **should** always **watch** the ball.

C

You **shouldn't** do something = it is not a good thing to do.
Shouldn't = should not:

- Tom **shouldn't go** to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You **shouldn't watch** TV so much.

D

We often say **I think** ... **should** ...

I think ... **should** ... :

- **I think** Lisa **should buy** some new clothes.
  (= I think it is a good idea.)
- It's late. **I think** I **should go** home now.
- A: Shall I buy this coat?
  B: Yes, **I think** you **should**.

I don't think ... **should** ... :

- **I don't think** you **should work** so hard.
  (= I don't think it is a good idea.)
- **I don't think** we **should go** yet. It's too early.

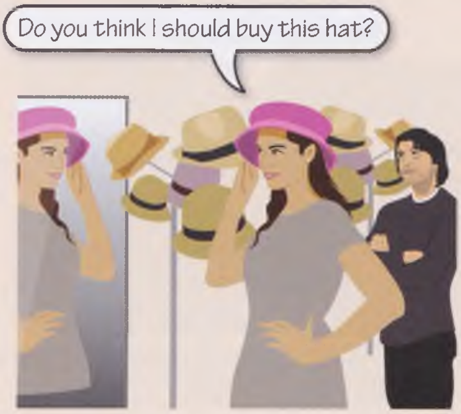
Do you think I should buy this hat?

Do you think ... **should** ... ?:

- **Do you think** I **should buy** this hat?
- What time **do you think** we **should go** home?

E

Must is stronger than **should**:

- It's a **good** film. You **should** go and see it.
- It's a **fantastic** film. You **must** go and see it.

F

Another way to say **should** is **ought to**:

- It's a good film. You **ought to go** and see it. (= you should go)
- I think Lisa **ought to buy** some new clothes. (= Lisa should buy)

shall ➜ Units 27–28 must ➜ Unit 31

Exercises

32.1 Complete the sentences. Use **you should** + these verbs:

eat go take visit ~~watch~~ wear

1 When you play tennis, *you should watch* the ball.
2 It's late and you're very tired. .... to bed.
3 .... plenty of fruit and vegetables.
4 If you have time, ... the Science Museum. It's very interesting.
5 When you're driving, ... a seat belt.
6 It's too far to walk from here to the station. .... a taxi.

32.2 Write about the people in the pictures. Use **He/She shouldn't ... so ... .**

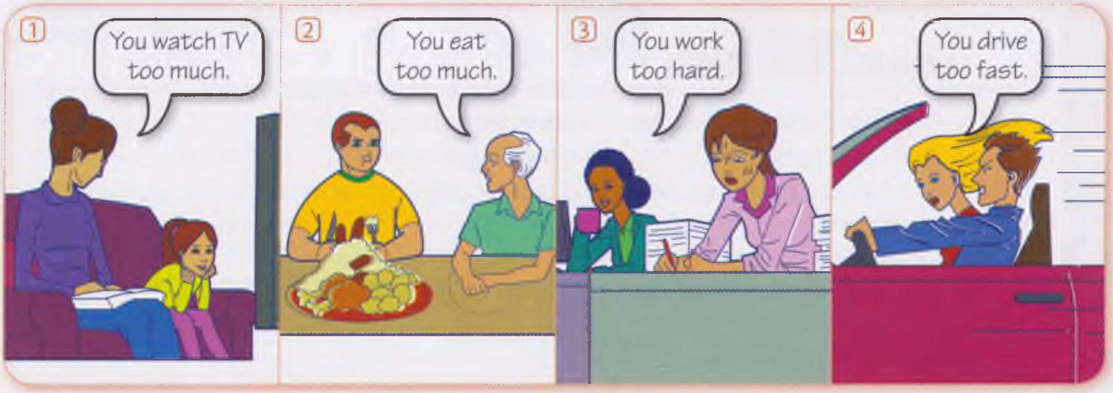
1
You watch TV too much.
2
You eat too much.
3
You work too hard.
4
You drive too fast.

1 *She shouldn't watch TV so much.*
2 He ....
3 .... hard.
4 ....

32.3 You are not sure what to do, so you ask a friend. Write questions with **Do you think I should ... ?**

1 You are in a shop. You are trying on a jacket. (buy?)
You ask your friend: *Do you think I should buy this jacket?*
2 You can't drive. (learn?)
You ask your friend: Do you think ....
3 You don't like your job. (get another job?)
You ask your friend: ....
4 You are going to have a party. (invite Gary?)
You ask your friend: ....

32.4 Write sentences with **I think ... should ...** and **I don't think ... should ... .**

1 We have to get up early tomorrow. (go home now) *I think we should go home now.*
2 That coat is too big for you. (buy it) *I don't think you should buy it.*
3 You don't need your car. (sell it) ....
4 Karen needs a rest. (have a holiday) ....
5 Sarah and Dan are too young. (get married) ....
6 You're not well this morning. (go to work) ....
7 James isn't well today. (go to the doctor) ....
8 The hotel is too expensive for us. (stay there) ....

32.5 What do you think? Write sentences with **should**.

1 I think *everybody should learn another language.*
2 I think everybody ....
3 I think ....
4 I don't think ....
5 I think I should ....

Unit
33

I have to ...

A

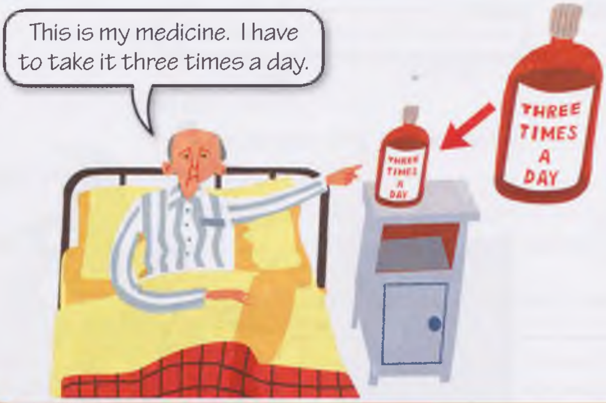
This is my medicine. I have to take it three times a day.
THREE TIMES A DAY
THREE TIMES A DAY

I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it

I/we/you/they	**have**	**to do** **to work** **to go** **to wear** etc.
he/she/it	**has**	

- I'll be late for work tomorrow. I **have to go** to the dentist.
- Jane starts work at 7 o'clock, so she **has to get** up at 6.
- You **have to pass** a test before you can get a driving licence.

B

The past (yesterday / last week etc.) is **had to** ... :

- I was late for work yesterday. I **had to go** to the dentist.
- We **had to walk** home last night. There were no buses.

C

In questions and negatives we use **do/does** (present) and **did** (past):

present

do	I/we/you/they	**have to** ... ?
does	he/she/it	

I/we/you/they	**don't**	**have to** ...
he/she/it	**doesn't**	

past

did	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**have to** ... ?

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**didn't have to** ...

- What time **do** you **have to go** to the dentist tomorrow?
- **Does** Jane **have to work** on Sundays?
- Why **did** they **have to leave** the party early?

I **don't have to** (do something) = it is not necessary to do it:

- I'm not working tomorrow, so I **don't have to get** up early.
- Ian **doesn't have to work** very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We **didn't have to wait** very long for the bus – it came in a few minutes.

D

must and **have to**

You can use **must** or **have to** when you say what *you* think is necessary, when you give *your* opinion:

- It's a fantastic film. You **must** see it. *or* You **have to** see it.

When you are *not* giving your personal opinion, use **have to** (*not* **must**). Compare:

- Jane won't be at work this afternoon. She **has to** go to the doctor.
  (this is not my personal opinion – it is a fact)
- Jane isn't well. She doesn't want to go to the doctor, but I told her she **must** go.
  (this is my personal opinion)

must / **mustn't** / **don't need to** ➔ **Unit 31**

Exercises

33.1 Complete the sentences. Use **have to** or **has to** + these verbs:

do **hit** **read** **speak** **travel** ~~**wear**~~

1 My eyes are not very good. I ...have to wear... glasses.
2 At the end of the course all the students .... a test.
3 Sarah is studying literature. She .... a lot of books.
4 Albert doesn't understand much English. You .... very slowly to him.
5 Kate is often away from home. She .... a lot in her job.
6 In tennis you .... the ball over the net.

33.2 Complete the sentences. Use **have to** or **had to** + these verbs:

answer **buy** **change** **go** ~~**walk**~~

1 We ...had to walk... home last night. There were no buses.
2 It's late. I .... now. I'll see you tomorrow.
3 I went to the supermarket after work yesterday. I .... some food.
4 This train doesn't go all the way to London. You .... at Bristol.
5 We did an exam yesterday. We .... six questions out of ten.

33.3 Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.

1	I have to get up early tomorrow.	What time ...do you have to get up...?
2	George had to wait a long time.	How long ....?
3	Lisa has to go somewhere.	Where ....?
4	We had to pay a lot of money.	How much ....?
5	I have to do some work.	What exactly ....?

33.4 Write sentences with **don't/doesn't/didn't have to ...** .

1 Why are you going out? You ...don't have to go out.
2 Why is Sue waiting? She ....
3 Why did you get up early? You ....
4 Why is Paul working so hard? He ....
5 Why do you want to leave now? We ....

33.5 Which is correct? Sometimes **must** and **have to** are both correct. Sometimes only one is correct.

1 It's a fantastic film. You must see / have to see it. (*both are correct*)
2 Jessica won't be at work this afternoon. She ~~must go~~ / has to go to the doctor.
(has to go *is correct*)
3 You can't park your car here for nothing. You must pay / have to pay.
4 I didn't have any money with me last night, so I must borrow / had to borrow some.
5 I eat too much chocolate. I really must stop / have to stop.
6 Paul is in a hurry. He must meet / has to meet somebody in five minutes.
7 What's wrong? You must tell / have to tell me. I want to help you.

33.6 Write some things that you (or your friends or family) have to do or had to do.

1 (every day) I have to travel ten miles every day.
2 (every day) ....
3 (yesterday) ....
4 (tomorrow) ....

Unit 34

Would you like ... ? I'd like ...

A

Would you like ... **?** = Do you want ... ?

We use **Would you like** ... **?** to offer things:

☐ A: **Would you like** some coffee?
B: No, thank you.
☐ A: **Would you like** a chocolate?
B: Yes, please.
☐ A: What **would you like**, tea or coffee?
B: Tea, please.

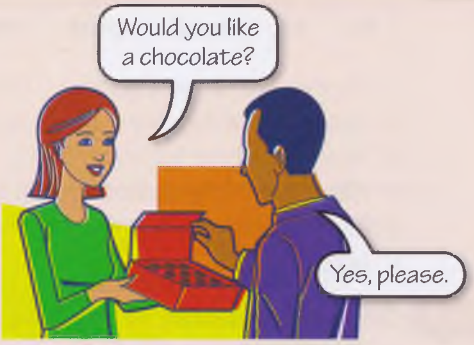
Would you like a chocolate?
Yes, please.

We use **Would you like to** ... **?** to invite somebody:

☐ **Would you like to go** for a walk?
☐ A: **Would you like to eat** with us on Sunday?
B: Yes, **I'd love to**. (= I would love to eat with you)
☐ What **would you like to do** this evening?

B

I'd like ... is a polite way to say 'I want'. **I'd** like = **I would** like:

☐ I'm thirsty. **I'd like** a drink.
☐ *(in a tourist office)* **I'd like** some information about hotels, please.
☐ I'm feeling tired. **I'd like to stay** at home this evening.

C

Would you like ... **?** and **Do you like** ... **?**

Would you like ... **?** / **I'd like** ...

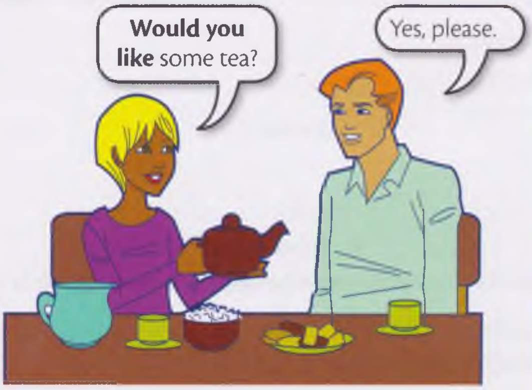
Would you like some tea?
Yes, please.

Would you like some tea? = Do you want some tea?

☐ A: **Would you like** to go to the cinema tonight?
(= do you want to go *tonight*?)
B: Yes, I'd love to.

☐ **I'd like** an orange, please.
(= can I have an orange?)

☐ What **would you like** to do next weekend?

Do you like ... **?** / **I like** ...

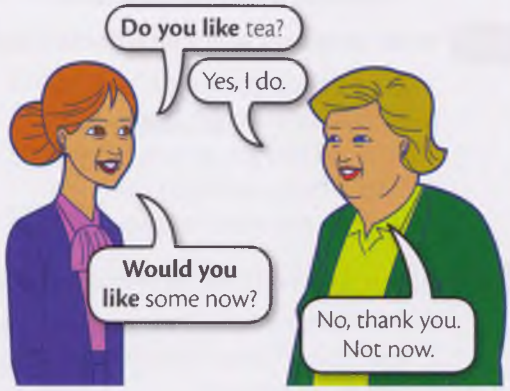
Do you like tea?
Yes, I do.
Would you like some now?
No, thank you. Not now.

Do you like tea? = Do you think tea is nice?

☐ A: **Do you like** going to the cinema? *(in general)*
B: Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.

☐ **I like** oranges. *(in general)*

☐ What **do you like** to do at weekends?

like to do and **like -ing** → Unit 52 **I would do** something **if** ... → Unit 100

Exercises

34.1 What are the people in the pictures saying? Use **Would you like … ?**

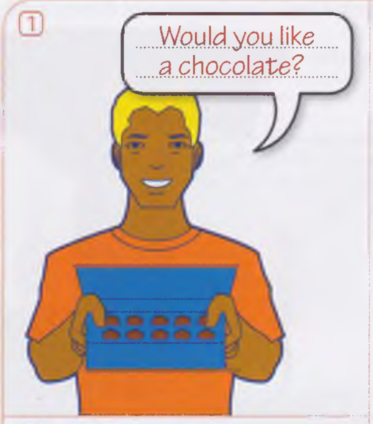
1
Would you like a chocolate?

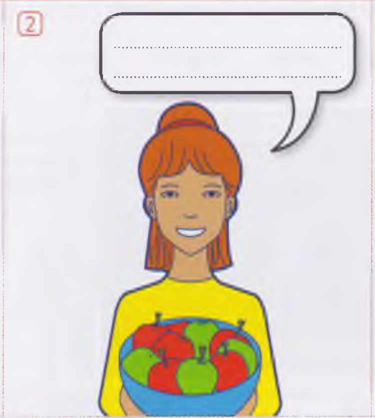

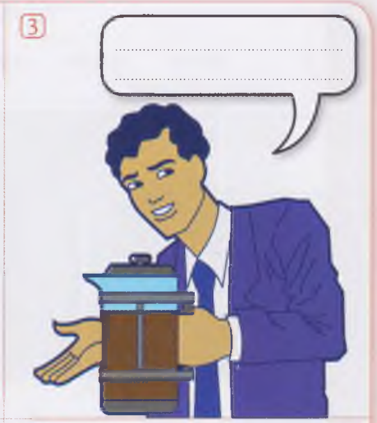

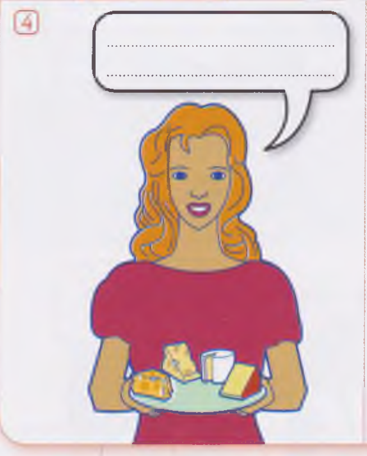

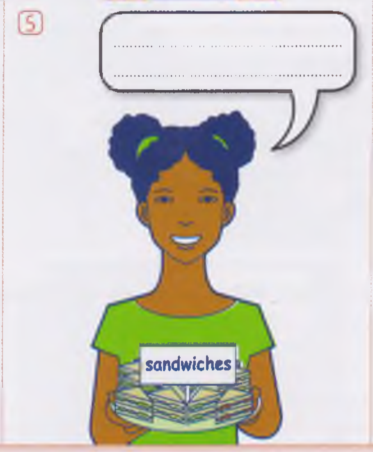

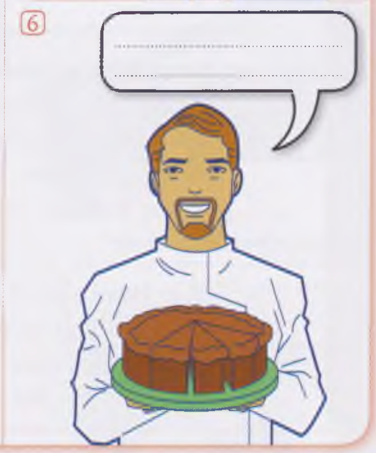

34.2 What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use **Would you like to … ?**

1 You want to go to the cinema tonight. Perhaps Sue will go with you. (go)
You say: Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?
2 You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Sue will play too. (play)
You say: ……………………
3 You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Sue will come. (come)
You say: ……………………
4 It's raining and Sue is going out. She doesn't have an umbrella, but you have one. (borrow)
You say: ……………………

34.3 Which is right?

1 '~~Do you like~~ / Would you like a chocolate?' 'Yes, please.' (Would you like *is right*)
2 'Do you like / Would you like bananas?' 'Yes, I love them.'
3 'Do you like / Would you like an ice cream?' 'No, thank you.'
4 'What do you like / would you like to drink?' 'A glass of water, please.'
5 'Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?' 'Not now. Perhaps later.'
6 I like / I'd like tomatoes, but I don't eat them very often.
7 What time do you like / would you like to have dinner this evening?
8 'Do you like / Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thanks. I'm not hungry.'
9 'Do you like / Would you like your new job?' 'Yes, I'm enjoying it.'
10 I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to sleep now.
11 'I like / I'd like a sandwich, please.' 'Sure. What kind of sandwich?'
12 'What kind of music do you like / would you like?' 'All kinds.'

Unit
35

Do this! Don't do that! Let's do this!

A

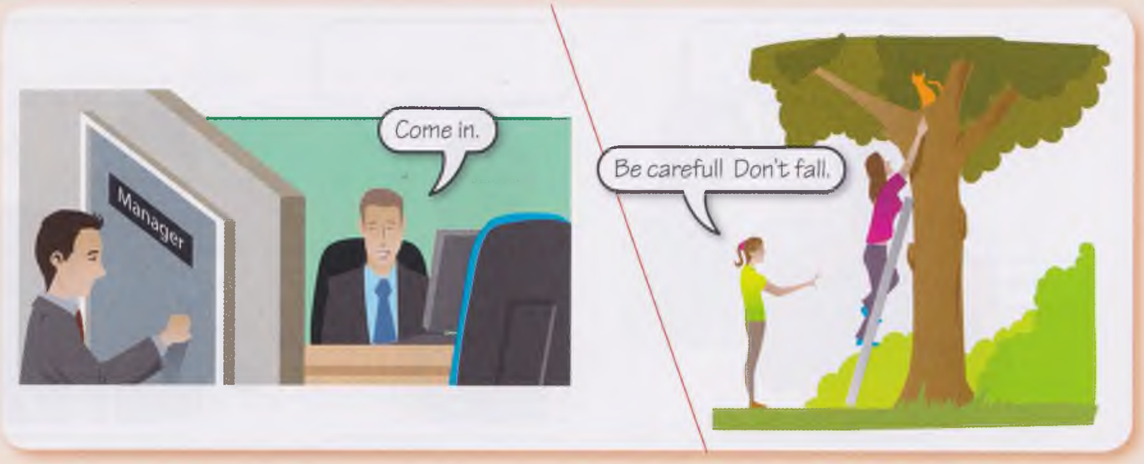
Manager
Come in.
Be careful! Don't fall.

We use **come**/**look**/**go**/**wait**/**be** etc. when we tell somebody to do something:

- '**Come** here and **look** at this!' 'What is it?'
- I don't want to talk to you. **Go** away!
- I'm not ready yet. Please **wait** for me.
- Please **be** quiet. I'm working.

also

- Bye! **Have** a good holiday! / **Have** a nice time! / **Have** a good flight! / **Have** fun!
  (= I hope you have a good holiday etc.)
- '**Have** a chocolate.' 'Oh, thanks.'
  (= would you like a chocolate?)

B

We use **don't** ... when we tell somebody not to do something:

- Be careful! **Don't fall**.
- Please **don't go**. Stay here with me.
- Be here on time. **Don't be** late.

C

You can say **Let's** ... when you want people to do things with you. **Let's** = Let us.

- It's a nice day. **Let's go** out.
  (= *you and I* can go out)
- Come on! **Let's dance**.
  (= *you and I* can dance)
- Are you ready? **Let's go**.
- **Let's have** fish for dinner tonight.
- A: Shall we go out tonight?
  B: No, I'm tired. **Let's stay** at home.

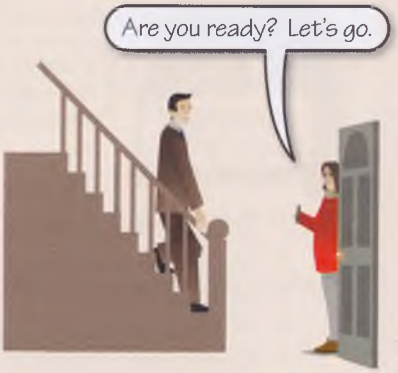
Are you ready? Let's go.

The negative is **Let's not** ... :

- It's cold. **Let's not** go out. Let's stay at home.
- **Let's not** have fish for dinner tonight. Let's have chicken.

shall we ... ? → Unit 28

Exercises

35.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Some sentences are positive (**buy**/**come** etc.) and some are negative (**don't buy** / **don't come** etc.). Use these verbs:

be **buy** ~~**come**~~ ~~**drink**~~ **drop** **forget** **have** **sit** **sleep** **smile**

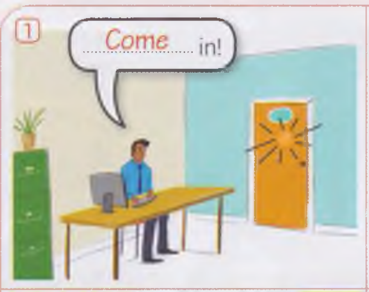

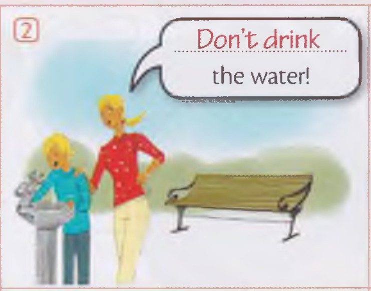
2
Don't drink .... the water!

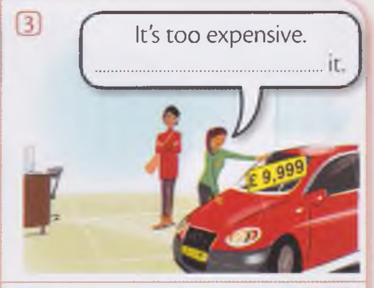
3
It's too expensive. .... it.
£9,999

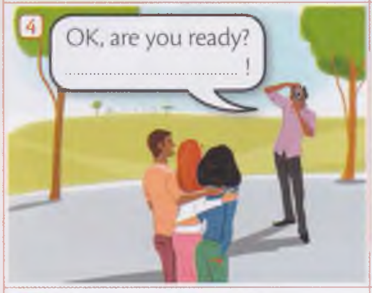
4
OK, are you ready? .... !

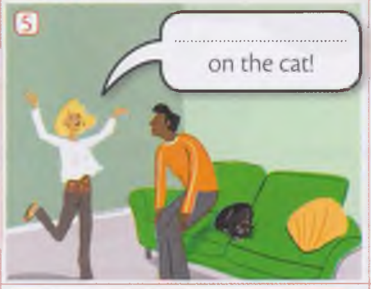

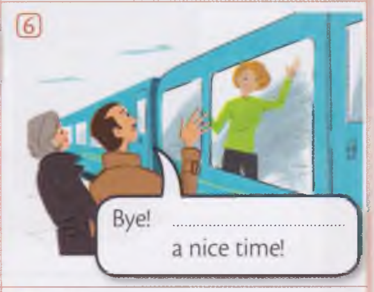
6
Bye! .... a nice time!

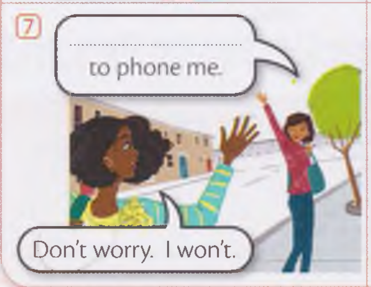
7
.... to phone me.
Don't worry. I won't.

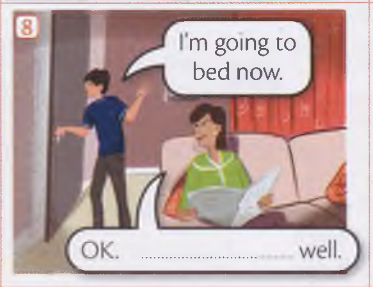
8
I'm going to bed now.
OK. .... well.

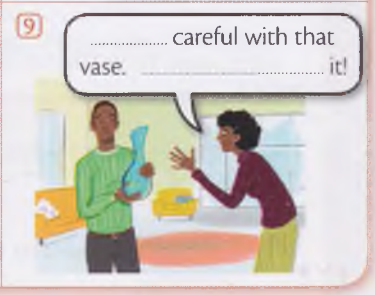
9
.... careful with that vase. .... it!

35.2 Complete the sentences. Use **let's** with:

~~**go for a swim**~~ **go to a restaurant** **take a taxi** **wait a little** **watch TV**

1 Would you like to play tennis? No, let's go for a swim.
2 Do you want to walk home? No, ...
3 Shall I put a CD on? No, ...
4 Shall we eat at home? No, ...
5 Would you like to go now? No, ...

35.3 Answer with **No, don't ...** or **No, let's not ...** .

1 Shall I wait for you? No, don't wait for me.
2 Shall we go home now? No, let's not go home yet.
3 Shall we go out? ....
4 Do you want me to close the window? ....
5 Shall I phone you tonight? ....
6 Do you think we should wait for Andy? ....
7 Do you want me to turn on the light? ....
8 Shall we go by bus? ....

Unit
36

I used to ...

A

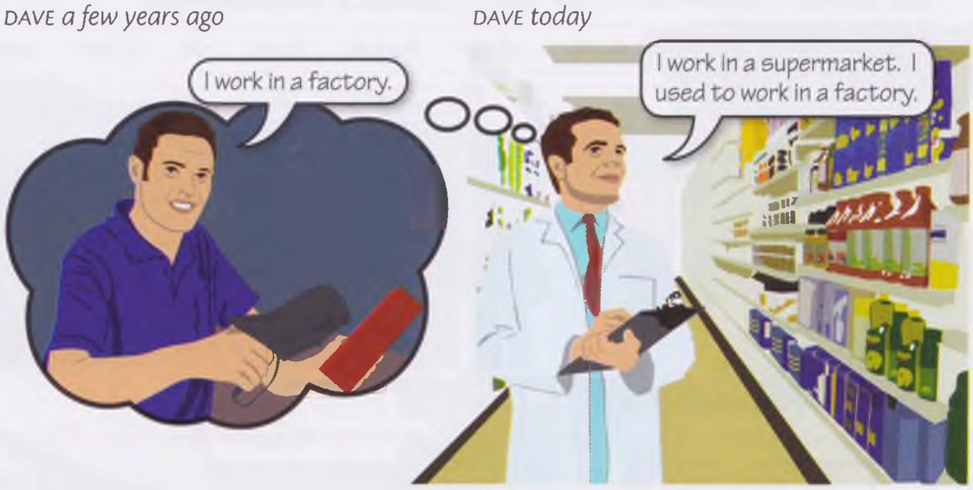
DAVE *a few years ago*
DAVE *today*
I work in a factory.
I work in a supermarket. I used to work in a factory.

Dave **used to work** in a factory. Now he **works** in a supermarket.

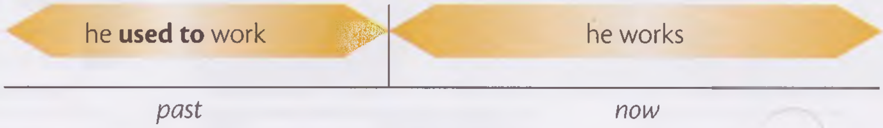
he **used to** work
he works
past
now

Dave **used to work** in a factory = he worked in a factory before, but he doesn't work there now.

B

You can say **I used to work** ... / **she used to have** ... / **they used to be** ... etc. :

I/you/we/they he/she/it	**used to**	**be** **work** **have** **play** etc.

- When I was a child, I **used to like** chocolate.
- I **used to read** a lot of books, but I don't read much these days.
- Lisa has got short hair now, but it **used to be** very long.
- They **used to live** in the same street as us, so we **used to see** them a lot. But we don't see them much these days.
- Helen **used to have** a piano, but she sold it a few years ago.

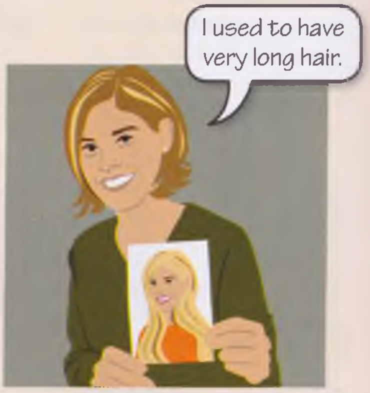
I used to have very long hair.

The negative is **I didn't use to** ... :

- When I was a child, I **didn't use to like** tomatoes.

The question is **did you use to** ... ?:

- Where **did** you **use to live** before you came here?

C

We use **used to** ... only for the past. You cannot say 'I use to ...' for the present:

- I **used to play** tennis. These days I **play** golf. (*not* I use to play golf)
- We usually **get** up early. (*not* We use to get up early)

Exercises

36.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with **used to ...** .

1
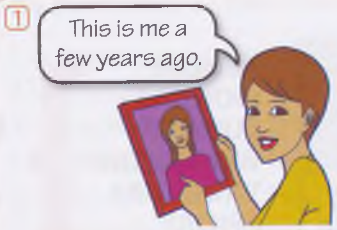
This is me a few years ago.

She used to have long hair.

2
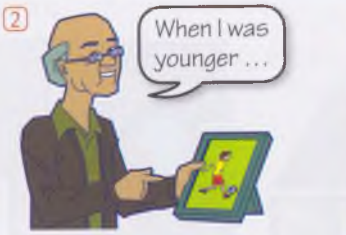
When I was younger ...

He .... football.

3
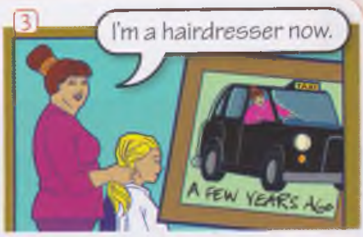
I'm a hairdresser now.
TAXI
A FEW YEARS AGO

.... a taxi driver.

4
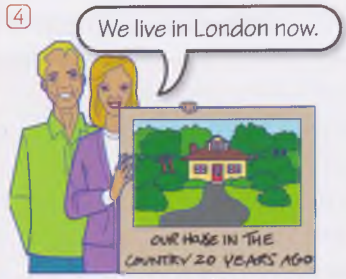
We live in London now.
OUR HOUSE IN THE COUNTRY 20 YEARS AGO

.... in the country.

5
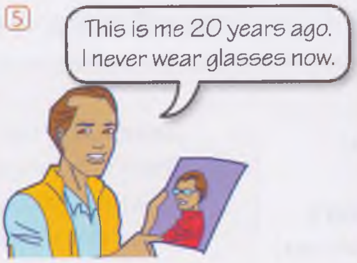
This is me 20 years ago. I never wear glasses now.

....

6
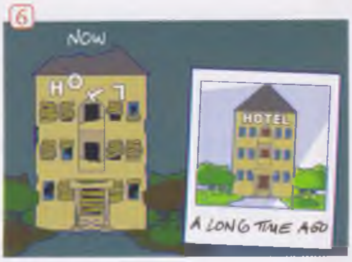
NOW
HOTEL
HOTEL
A LONG TIME AGO

This building ....

36.2 Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, things were different.

Karen a few years ago

Do you do any sport?	Yes, I swim every day and I play volleyball.
Do you go out much?	Yes, most evenings.
Do you play a musical instrument?	Yes, the guitar.
Do you like reading?	Yes, I read a lot.
Do you travel much?	Yes, I go away two or three times a year.

Karen now

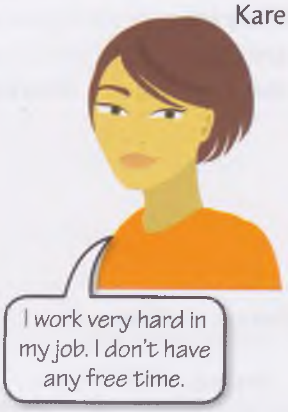
I work very hard in my job. I don't have any free time.

Write sentences about Karen with **used to ...** .

1 She used to swim every day.
2 She ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

36.3 Complete these sentences. Use **used to** or the present simple (**I play / he lives** etc.).

1 I used to play tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.
2 'Do you do any sport?' 'Yes, I play basketball.'
3 'Do you have a car?' 'No, I .... one, but I sold it.'
4 George .... a waiter. Now he's the manager of a hotel.
5 'Do you go to work by car?' 'Sometimes, but most days I .... by train.'
6 When I was a child, I never .... meat, but I eat it now.
7 Mary loves watching TV. She .... TV every evening.
8 We .... near the airport, but we moved to the city centre a few years ago.
9 Normally I start work at 7 o'clock, so I .... up very early.
10 What games .... you .... when you were a child?

Unit
37

there is there are

A

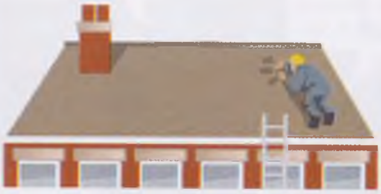

There's a man on the roof.

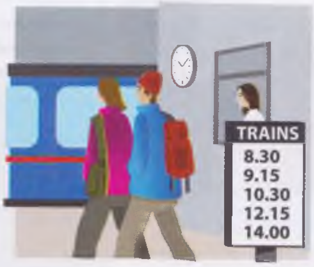

There's a train at 10.30.

SUNDAY
MONDAY
TUESDAY
WEDNESDAY } **7**
THURSDAY
FRIDAY
SATURDAY

There are seven days in a week.

singular

there is …	(**there's**)
is there … ?	
there is not …	(**there isn't** *or* **there's not**)

- **There's** a big tree in the garden.
- **There's** nothing on TV tonight.
- A: Do you have any money?
  B: Yes, **there's** some in my bag.
- A: Excuse me, **is there** a hotel near here?
  B: Yes, **there is**. / No, **there isn't**.
- We can't go skiing. **There isn't** any snow.

plural

there are …	
are there … ?	
there are not …	(**there aren't**)

- **There are** some big trees in the garden.
- **There are** a lot of accidents on this road.
- A: **Are there** any restaurants near here?
  B: Yes, **there are**. / No, **there aren't**.
- This restaurant is very quiet. **There aren't** many people here.
- How many players **are there** in a football team?
- **There are** 11 players in a football team.

B

there is and it is

there is

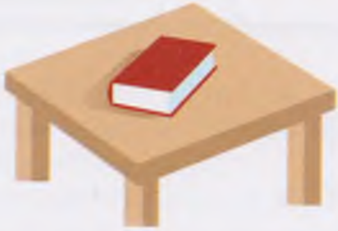

There's a book on the table.
(*not* It's a book on the table.)

it is

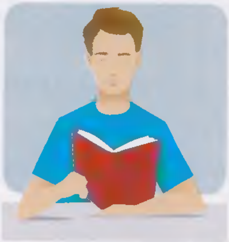

I like this book. **It's** interesting.
(**It** = this book)

Compare:

- 'What's **that noise**?' '**It's** a train.' (**It** = that noise)
  There's a train at 10.30. **It's** a fast train. (**It** = the 10.30 train)
- **There's** a lot of salt in this soup.
  I don't like **this soup**. **It's** too salty. (**It** = this soup)

there was / were / has been etc. ➔ Unit 38 **it** and **there** ➔ Unit 39 **some** and **any** ➔ Unit 76

Exercises

37.1 Kentham is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences about Kentham with **There is/are** or **There isn't/aren't**.

1	a castle?	No
2	any restaurants?	Yes (a lot)
3	a hospital?	Yes
4	a swimming pool?	No
5	any cinemas?	Yes (two)
6	a university?	No
7	any big hotels?	No

1 There isn't a castle.
2 There are a lot of restaurants.
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....

37.2 Write sentences about your town (or a town that you know). Use **There is/are** or **There isn't/aren't**.

1 There are a few restaurants.
2 There's a big park.
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

37.3 Write **there is** / **there isn't** / **is there** or **there are** / **there aren't** / **are there**.

1 Kentham isn't an old town. There aren't any old buildings.
2 Look! .... a picture of your brother in the newspaper!
3 'Excuse me, ... a bank near here?' 'Yes, at the end of the street.'
4 .... five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters and me.
5 'How many students .... in the class?' 'Twenty.'
6 The road is usually very quiet. .... much traffic.
7 '........................ a bus from the city centre to the airport?' 'Yes, every 20 minutes.'
8 '........................ any problems?' 'No, everything is OK.'
9 .... nowhere to sit down. .... any chairs.

37.4 Write sentences with **There are ...** . Choose from the boxes.

~~seven~~	twenty-six
eight	thirty
fifteen	fifty

letters	~~days~~
players	days
planets	states

September	the solar system
the USA	~~a week~~
a rugby team	the English alphabet

1 There are seven days in a week.
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

37.5 Write **there's** / **is there** or **it's** / **is it**.

1 'There's a train at 10.30.' 'Is it a fast train?'
2 I'm not going to buy this shirt. .... too expensive.
3 'What's wrong?' '........................ something in my eye.'
4 .... a red car outside your house. .... yours?
5 '........................ anything good on TV tonight?' 'Yes, ... a programme I want to see at 8.15.'
6 'What's that building?' '........................ a school.'
7 '........................ a restaurant in this hotel?' 'No, I'm afraid not.'

Unit 38

there was/were there has/have been there will be

A there was / there were *(past)*

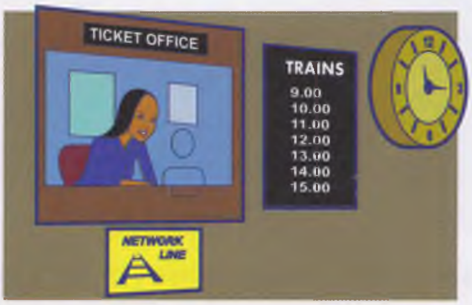

There is a train every hour.

The time now is 11.15.
There was a train at 11 o'clock.

Compare:

there is/are *(present)*	**there was/were** *(past)*
There is nothing on TV tonight.	**There was** nothing on TV last night.
We are staying at a very big hotel. **There are** 550 rooms.	We stayed at a very big hotel. **There were** 550 rooms.
Is everything OK? **Are there** any problems?	Was everything OK yesterday? **Were there** any problems?
I'm hungry, but **there isn't** anything to eat.	I was hungry when I got home, but **there wasn't** anything to eat.

B there has been / there have been *(present perfect)*

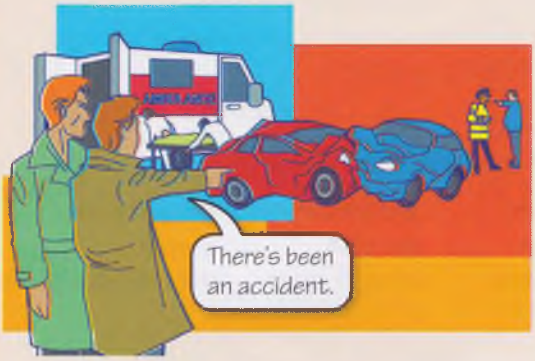
There's been an accident.

- Look! **There's been** an accident.
  (**there's been** = there **has** been)
- This road is very dangerous. **There have been** many accidents.

Compare **there was** *(past)*:

- **There was** an accident **last night**.
  (*not* There has been an accident last night.)

For past simple and present perfect, see Unit 20.

C there will be

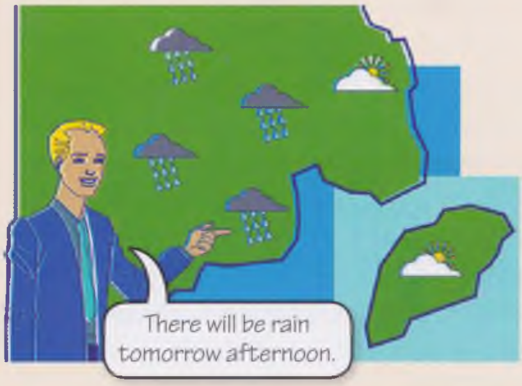
There will be rain tomorrow afternoon.

- Do you think **there will be** a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- The manager of the company is leaving, so **there will be** a new manager soon.
- I'm going away tomorrow. I'll do my packing today because **there won't be** time tomorrow.
  (**there won't be** = there **will not** be)

was/were ➜ Unit 10 **has/have been** ➜ Units 15–18 **will** ➜ Unit 27 **there is/are** ➜ Unit 37
there and **it** ➜ Units 37, 39 **some** and **any** ➜ Unit 76

Exercises

38.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty, but what was in the room last week? Choose from the box and write sentences with **There was ...** or **There were ...** .

an armchair **a carpet** **some flowers** **a sofa**
some books **~~a clock~~** **three pictures** **a small table**

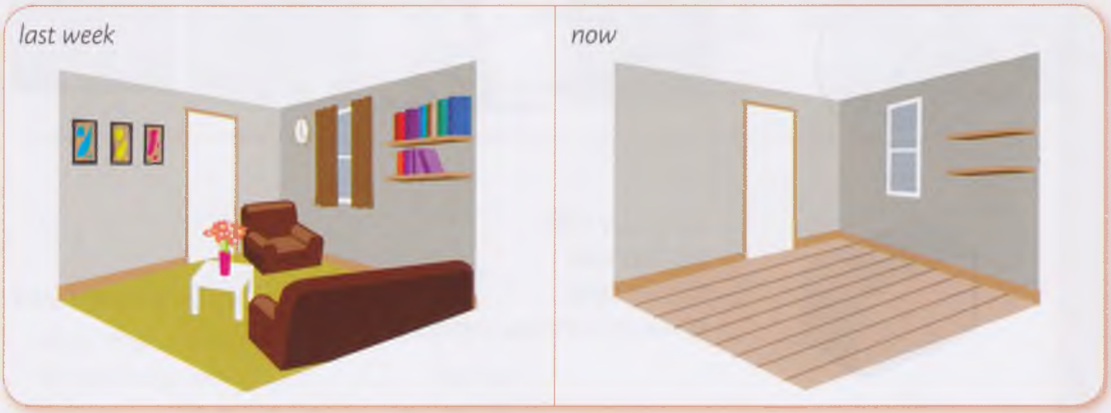

1 There was a clock. .... on the wall near the window.
2 .... on the floor.
3 .... on the wall near the door.
4 .... in the middle of the room.
5 .... on the table.
6 .... on the shelves.
7 .... in the corner near the door.
8 .... opposite the armchair.

38.2 Write **there was** / **there wasn't** / **was there** or **there were** / **there weren't** / **were there**.

1 I was hungry, but there wasn't anything to eat.
2 Was everything OK yesterday? Were there any problems?
3 I opened the envelope, but it was empty. .... nothing in it.
4 'We stayed at a very nice hotel.' 'Really? .... a swimming pool?'
5 'Did you buy any bananas?' 'No, ... any in the shop.'
6 The wallet was empty. .... any money in it.
7 '........ many people at the meeting?' 'No, very few.'
8 We didn't visit the museum. .... enough time.
9 I'm sorry I'm late. .... a lot of traffic.
10 Twenty years ago .... many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

38.3 Write **there** + **is** / **are** / **was** / **were** / **has been** / **have been** / **will be**.

1 There was a good film on TV last night.
2 .... 24 hours in a day.
3 .... a party at the club last Friday, but I didn't go.
4 'Where can I get something to eat?' '........ a cafe at the end of the street.'
5 'Why are the police outside the bank?' '........ a robbery.'
6 When we arrived at the theatre, ... a long queue outside.
7 When you arrive tomorrow, ... somebody at the station to meet you.
8 Ten years ago .... 500 children at the school. Now .... more than a thousand.
9 Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It's very different now. .... a lot of changes.
10 I think everything will be OK. I don't think .... any problems.

Unit
39

It ...

A We use **it** for time/day/distance/weather:

time

☐ What time is **it**?
☐ **It**'s half past ten.
☐ **It**'s late.
☐ **It**'s time to go home.

day

THURS
MAR
16

☐ What day is **it**?
☐ **It**'s Thursday.
☐ **It**'s 16 March.
☐ **It** was my birthday yesterday.

distance

our house
3 kilometres
city centre

☐ **It**'s three kilometres from our house to the city centre.
☐ How far is **it** from New York to Los Angeles?
☐ **It**'s a long way from here to the station.
☐ We can walk home. **It** isn't far.

We use **far** in questions (**is it far**?) and negatives (**it isn't far**).
In positive sentences, we use **a long way** (**it's a long way**).

weather

☐ **It**'s raining. **It** isn't raining. Is **it** snowing?
☐ **It** rains a lot here. **It** didn't rain yesterday. Does **it** snow very often?
☐ **It**'s warm/hot/cold/fine/cloudy/windy/sunny/foggy/dark etc.
☐ **It**'s a nice day today.

Compare **it** and **there**:

☐ **It rains** a lot in winter.
There is **a lot of rain** in winter.
☐ **It** was very **windy**.
There was **a strong wind** yesterday.

B **It's nice to** ... etc.

It's	easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe / expensive / interesting / nice / wonderful / terrible etc.	**to** ...

☐ **It**'s nice **to see you again**.
☐ **It**'s impossible **to understand her**.
☐ **It** wasn't easy **to find your house**.

C Don't forget **it**:

☐ **It**'s raining again. (*not* Is raining again)
☐ Is **it** true that you're going away? (*not* Is true that ...)

there is ➔ Unit 37

Exercises

39.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use **It's ...** .

1
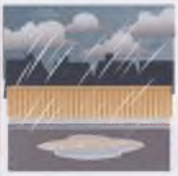

2
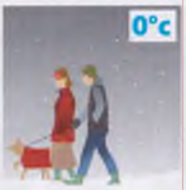

3
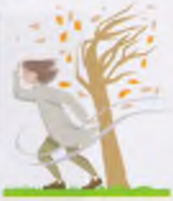

4
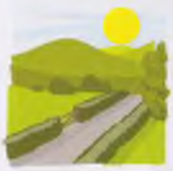

5
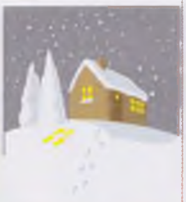

6
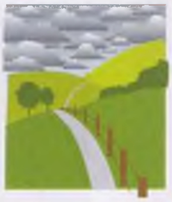

1 It's raining. ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

39.2 Write **it is (it's)** or **is it**.

1 What time is it ?
2 We have to go now. .... very late.
3 .... true that Ben can fly a helicopter?
4 'What day .... today? Tuesday?' 'No, ... Wednesday.'
5 .... ten kilometres from the airport to the city centre.
6 .... OK to call you at your office?
7 'Do you want to walk to the hotel?' 'I don't know. How far .... ?'
8 .... Lisa's birthday today. She's 27.
9 I don't believe it! .... impossible.

39.3 Write questions with **How far ... ?**

1 (here / the station) How far is it from here to the station?
2 (the hotel / the beach) How ....
3 (New York / Washington) ....
4 (your house / the airport) ....

39.4 Write **it** or **there**.

1 The weather isn't so nice today. It 's cloudy.
2 There was a strong wind yesterday.
3 .... 's hot in this room. Open a window.
4 .... was a nice day yesterday. .... was warm and sunny.
5 .... was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
6 I was afraid because .... was very dark.
7 .... 's often cold here, but .... isn't much rain.
8 .... 's a long way from here to the nearest shop.

39.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

it's

easy
~~difficult~~
impossible
dangerous
nice
interesting

to

work here
visit different places
see you again
~~get up early~~
go out alone
make friends

1 If you go to bed late, it's difficult to get up early in the morning.
2 Hello, Jane. .... How are you?
3 .... There is too much noise.
4 Everybody is very nice at work. ....
5 I like travelling. ....
6 Some cities are not safe. .... at night.

Unit
40

I am, I don't etc.

A

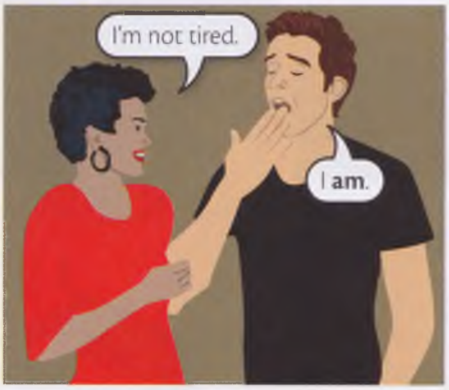
I'm not tired.
I am.

She isn't tired, but **he is**.
(**he is** = he is tired)

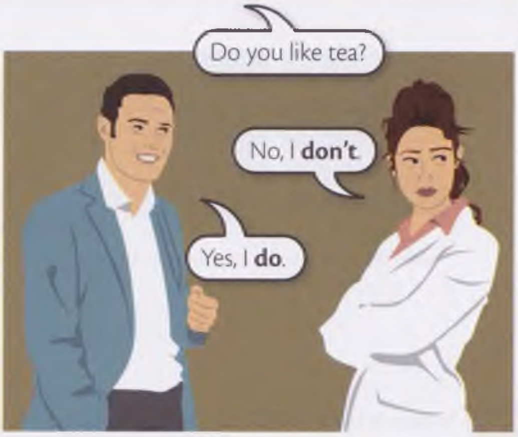

He likes tea, but **she doesn't**.
(**she doesn't** = she doesn't like tea)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat some words ('he is *tired*', 'she doesn't *like tea*').

You can use these verbs in the same way:

am/is/are
was/were
have/has
do/does/did
can
will
might
must

- I haven't got a car, but my sister **has**. (= my sister has got a car)
- A: Please help me.
  B: I'm sorry. I **can't**. (= I can't help you)
- A: Are you tired?
  B: I **was**, but I'**m not** now. (= I was tired, but I'm not tired now)
- A: Do you think Laura will come and see us?
  B: She **might**. (= she might come)
- A: Are you going now?
  B: Yes, I'm afraid I **must**. (= I must go)

We don't use **'m/'s/'ve** etc. (*short forms*) in this way. You must use **am/is/have** etc. :

- She isn't tired, but he **is**. (*not* but he's)

But you can use **isn't** / **haven't** / **won't** etc. (*negative* short forms):

- My sister has got a car, but I **haven't**.
- 'Are you and Jane working tomorrow?' 'I am, but Jane **isn't**.'

B

You can use **I am** / **I'm not** etc. after **Yes** and **No**:

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I **am**. / No, I'**m not**.'
- 'Will Alan be here tomorrow?' 'Yes, he **will**. / No, he **won't**.'
- 'Is there a bus to the airport?' 'Yes, there **is**. / No, there **isn't**.'

C

We use **do**/**does** for the *present simple* (→ Units 6–7):

- I don't like hot weather, but Sue **does**. (= Sue likes hot weather)
- Sue works hard, but I **don't**. (= I don't work hard)
- 'Do you enjoy your work?' 'Yes, I **do**.'

We use **did** for the *past simple* (→ Unit 12):

- A: Did you and Chris enjoy the film?
  B: I **did**, but Chris **didn't**. (= I enjoyed it, but Chris didn't enjoy it)
- 'I had a good time.' 'I **did** too.' (= I enjoyed it too)
- 'Did it rain yesterday?' 'No, it **didn't**.'

have you? / **don't you?** etc. ➔ Unit 41 **so am I** / **neither am I** etc. ➔ Unit 42

Exercises

40.1 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (**is/have/can** etc.) each time.

1 Kate wasn't hungry, but we ......were...... .
2 I'm not married, but my brother ....
3 Ben can't help you, but I ....
4 I haven't seen the film, but Tom ....
5 Karen won't be here, but Chris ....
6 You weren't late, but I ....

40.2 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (**isn't/haven't/can't** etc.).

1 My sister can play the piano, but I ......can't...... .
2 Sam is working today, but I ....
3 I was working, but my friends ....
4 Mark has been to China, but I ....
5 I'm ready to go, but Tom ....
6 I've got a key, but Sarah ....

40.3 Complete these sentences with **do/does/did** or **don't/doesn't/didn't**.

1 I don't like hot weather, but Sue ......does...... .
2 Sue likes hot weather, but I ......don't...... .
3 My mother wears glasses, but my father ....
4 You don't know Paul very well, but I ....
5 I didn't enjoy the party, but my friends ....
6 I don't watch TV much, but Peter ....
7 Kate lives in London, but her parents ....
8 You had breakfast this morning, but I ....

40.4 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people.

1 I didn't ......go out last night, but my friends did.................
2 I like ...., but ....
3 I don't ...., but ....
4 I'm ....
5 I haven't ....

40.5 Put in a verb, positive or negative.

1 'Are you tired?' 'I ......was...... earlier, but I'm not now.'
2 Steve is happy today, but he .... yesterday.
3 The bank isn't open yet, but the shops ....
4 I haven't got a telescope, but I know somebody who ....
5 I would like to help you, but I'm afraid I ....
6 I don't usually go to work by car, but I .... yesterday.
7 A: Have you ever been to the United States?
B: No, but Sandra .... She went there on holiday last year.
8 'Do you and Chris watch TV a lot?' 'I ...., but Chris doesn't.'
9 I've been invited to Sam's wedding, but Kate ....
10 'Do you think Sarah will pass her driving test?' 'Yes, I'm sure she ....'
11 'Are you going out tonight?' 'I .... I don't know for sure.'

40.6 Answer these questions about yourself. Use **Yes, I have.** / **No, I'm not.** etc.

1 Are you American? ......No, I'm not.................
2 Have you got a car? ....
3 Do you feel OK? ....
4 Is it snowing? ....
5 Are you hungry? ....
6 Do you like classical music? ....
7 Will you be in Paris tomorrow? ....
8 Have you ever broken your arm? ....
9 Did you buy anything yesterday? ....
10 Were you asleep at 3 a.m.? ....

Unit 41

Have you? Are you? Don't you? etc.

A

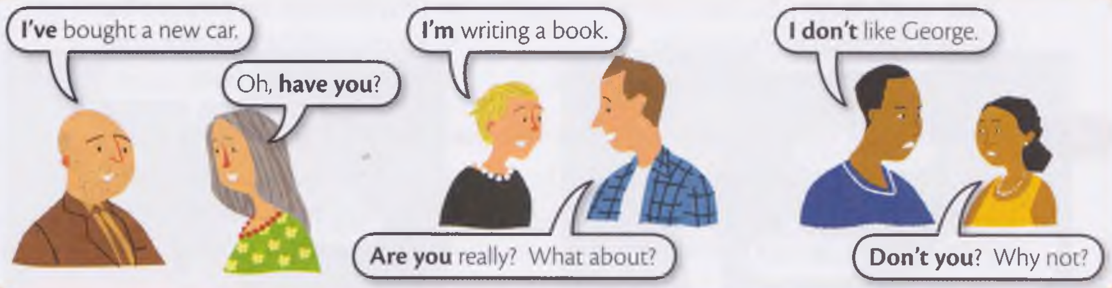
I've bought a new car.
Oh, **have you**?
I'm writing a book.
Are you really? What about?
I don't like George.
Don't you? Why not?

You can say **have you?** / **is it?** / **can't he?** etc. to show that you are interested or surprised:

○ '**You're** late.' 'Oh, **am I?** I'm sorry.'
○ '**I was** ill last week.' '**Were you?** I didn't know that.'
○ '**It's** raining again.' '**Is it?** It was sunny ten minutes ago.'
○ '**There's** a problem with the car.' '**Is there?** What's wrong with it?'

○ '**Bill can't** drive.' '**Can't he?** I didn't know that.'
○ '**I'm not** hungry.' '**Aren't you?** I am.'
○ '**Sue isn't** at work today.' '**Isn't she?** Is she ill?'

Use **do**/**does** for the *present simple*, and **did** for the *past simple*:

○ '**I speak** four languages.' '**Do you?** Which ones?'
○ '**Ben doesn't** eat meat.' '**Doesn't he?** Does he eat fish?'
○ '**Nicola got** married last week.' '**Did she?** Really?'

B

Question tags

You can use **have you?** / **is it?** / **can't she?** etc. at the end of a sentence.

These 'mini-questions' are *question tags*.

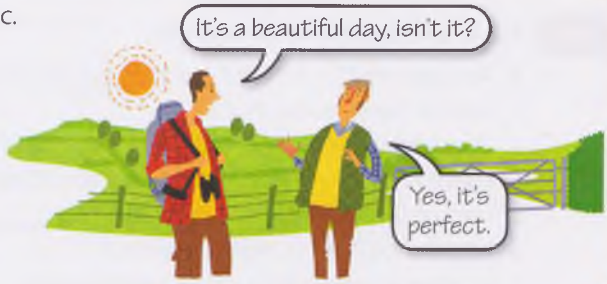
It's a beautiful day, isn't it?
Yes, it's perfect.

positive sentence → *negative* question tag

It's a beautiful day,	**isn't it?**	Yes, it's perfect.
Kate lives in London,	**doesn't she?**	Yes, that's right.
You closed the window,	**didn't you?**	Yes, I think so.
Those shoes are nice,	**aren't they?**	Yes, very nice.
Tom will be here soon,	**won't he?**	Yes, probably.

negative sentence → *positive* question tag

That isn't your car,	**is it?**	No, it's my mother's.
You haven't met my mother,	**have you?**	No, I haven't.
Helen doesn't go out much,	**does she?**	No, she doesn't.
You won't be late,	**will you?**	No, I'm never late.

I am / **I don't** etc. → **Unit 40**

Exercises

41.1 Answer with **Do you? / Doesn't she? / Did they?** etc.

1	I speak four languages.	Do you ? Which ones?
2	I work in a bank.	……………… ? I work in a bank too.
3	I didn't go to work yesterday.	……………… ? Were you ill?
4	Jane doesn't like me.	……………… ? Why not?
5	You look tired.	……………… ? I feel fine.
6	Kate phoned me last night.	……………… ? What did she say?

41.2 Answer with **Have you? / Haven't you? / Did she? / Didn't she?** etc.

1	I've bought a new car.	Have you ? What make is it?
2	Tim doesn't eat meat.	Doesn't he ? Does he eat fish?
3	I've lost my key.	……………… ? When did you last have it?
4	Sue can't drive.	……………… ? She should learn.
5	I was born in Italy.	……………… ? I didn't know that.
6	I didn't sleep well last night.	……………… ? Was the bed uncomfortable?
7	There's a film on TV tonight.	……………… ? Are you going to watch it?
8	I'm not happy.	……………… ? Why not?
9	I saw Paula last week.	……………… ? How is she?
10	Maria works in a factory.	……………… ? What kind of factory?
11	I won't be here next week.	……………… ? Where will you be?
12	The clock isn't working.	……………… ? It was working yesterday.

41.3 Complete these sentences with a question tag (**isn't it? / haven't you?** etc.).

1	It's a beautiful day, isn't it ?	Yes, it's perfect.
2	These flowers are nice, ……………… ?	Yes, what are they?
3	Jane was at the party, ……………… ?	Yes, but I didn't speak to her.
4	You've been to Paris, ……………… ?	Yes, many times.
5	You speak German, ……………… ?	Yes, but not very well.
6	Martin looks tired, ……………… ?	Yes, he works very hard.
7	You'll help me, ……………… ?	Yes, of course I will.

41.4 Complete these sentences with a question tag, positive (**is it? / do you?** etc.) or negative (**isn't it? / don't you?** etc.).

1	You haven't got a car, have you ?	No, I can't drive.
2	You aren't tired, ……………… ?	No, I feel fine.
3	Lisa is a very nice person, ……………… ?	Yes, everybody likes her.
4	You can play the piano, ……………… ?	Yes, but I'm not very good.
5	You don't know Mike's sister, ……………… ?	No, I've never met her.
6	Sarah went to university, ……………… ?	Yes, she studied psychology.
7	The film wasn't very good, ……………… ?	No, it was terrible.
8	Anna lives near you, ……………… ?	That's right. In the same street.
9	You won't tell anybody what I said, ……………… ?	No, of course not.

Unit 42

too/either so am I / neither do I etc.

A too and either

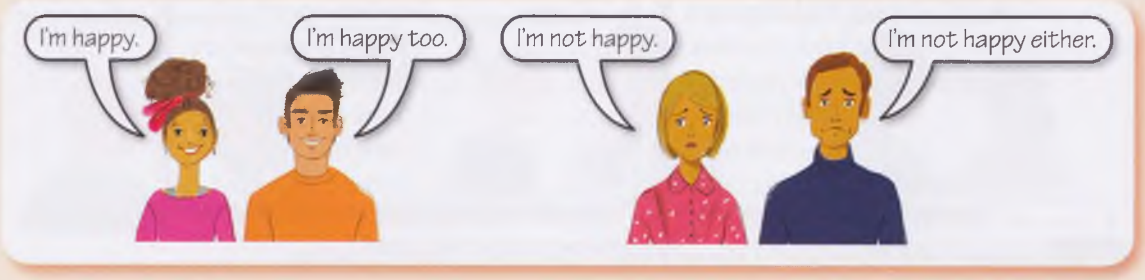
I'm happy.
I'm happy too.
I'm not happy.
I'm not happy either.

We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence.

We use **too** after a *positive* verb:

○ A: I'm happy.
B: I'**m** happy **too**.

○ A: I enjoyed the film.
B: I **enjoyed** it **too**.

○ Jane is a doctor. Her husband **is** a doctor **too**.

We use **either** after a *negative* verb:

○ A: I'm not happy.
B: I'**m not** happy **either**.

○ A: I can't cook.
B: I **can't either**.

○ Ben doesn't watch TV. He **doesn't** read newspapers **either**.

B so am I / neither do I etc.

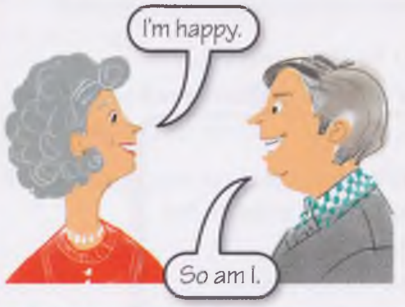
I'm happy.
So am I.

	am/is/are …
	was/were …
so	**do/does** …
	did …
	have/has …
neither	**can** …
	will …
	would …

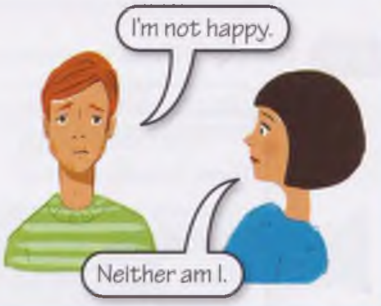
I'm not happy.
Neither am I.

so am I = I am too
so have I = I have too (etc.):

○ A: **I'm** working.
B: **So am I.** (= I'm working too)

○ A: **I was** late for work today.
B: **So was Sam.**

○ A: **I work** in a bank.
B: **So do I.**

○ A: **We went** to the cinema last night.
B: Did you? **So did we.**

○ A: **I'd** like to go to Australia.
B: **So would I.**

neither am I = I'm not either
neither can I = I can't either (etc.):

○ A: **I haven't** got a key.
B: **Neither have I.** (= I haven't either)

○ A: **Kate can't** cook.
B: **Neither can Tom.**

○ A: **I won't** (= will not) be here tomorrow.
B: **Neither will I.**

○ A: **I never go** to the cinema.
B: **Neither do I.**

You can also use **Nor** (= Neither):

○ A: I'm not married.
B: **Nor am I.** *or* **Neither am I.**

Remember: So **am I** (*not* So I am), Neither **have I** (*not* Neither I have).

I am / I don't etc. ➜ **Unit 40**

Exercises

42.1 Write **too** or **either**.

1 I'm happy. — I'm happy ...too... .
2 I'm not hungry. — I'm not hungry ....
3 I'm going out. — I'm going out ....
4 It rained on Saturday. — It rained on Sunday ....
5 Rachel can't drive a car. — She can't ride a bike ....
6 I don't like shopping. — I don't like shopping ....
7 Emma's mother is a teacher. — Her father is a teacher ....

42.2 Answer with **So … I** (**So am I** / **So do I** / **So can I** etc.).

1 I went to bed late last night. — So did I.
2 I'm thirsty. — ....
3 I've just eaten. — ....
4 I need a holiday. — ....
5 I'll be late tomorrow. — ....
6 I was very tired this morning. — ....

Answer with **Neither … I**.

7 I can't go to the party. — ....
8 I didn't phone Alex last night. — ....
9 I haven't got any money — ....
10 I'm not going out tomorrow. — ....
11 I don't know what to do. — ....

42.3 You are talking to Maria. Write sentences about yourself. Where possible, use **So … I** or **Neither … I**. Look at these examples carefully:

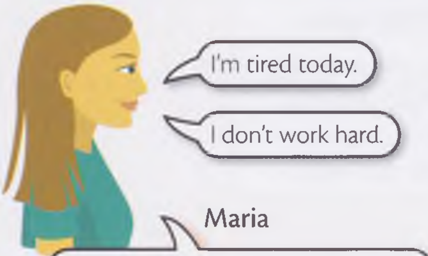
I'm tired today.
I don't work hard.
Maria

You can answer: ...So am I.... or ...I'm not....

You can answer: ...Neither do I.... or ...I do....

Maria — You

1 I'm learning English. — ....
2 I can ride a bike. — ....
3 I'm not American. — ....
4 I like cooking. — ....
5 I don't like cold weather. — ....
6 I slept well last night. — ....
7 I've never run a marathon. — ....
8 I don't use my phone much. — ....
9 I'm going out tomorrow evening. — ....
10 I haven't been to Scotland. — ....
11 I didn't watch TV last night. — ....
12 I go to the cinema a lot. — ....

Unit
43

isn't, haven't, don't etc. (negatives)

A

We use **not** (**n't**) in negative sentences:

positive → negative

am	**am not** (**'m not**)	○ I**'m not** tired.
is	**is not** (**isn't** *or* **'s not**)	○ It **isn't** (*or* It**'s not**) raining.
are	**are not** (**aren't** *or* **'re not**)	○ They **aren't** (*or* They**'re not**) here.
was	**was not** (**wasn't**)	○ Julian **wasn't** hungry.
were	**were not** (**weren't**)	○ The shops **weren't** open.
have	**have not** (**haven't**)	○ I **haven't** finished my work.
has	**has not** (**hasn't**)	○ Sue **hasn't** got a car.
will	**will not** (**won't**)	○ We **won't** be here tomorrow.
can	**cannot** (**can't**)	○ George **can't** drive.
could	**could not** (**couldn't**)	○ I **couldn't** sleep last night.
must	**must not** (**mustn't**)	○ I **mustn't** forget to phone Jane.
should	**should not** (**shouldn't**)	○ You **shouldn't** work so hard.
would	**would not** (**wouldn't**)	○ I **wouldn't** like to be an actor.

B

don't/doesn't/didn't

present simple negative	I/we/you/they	**do not** (**don't**)	**work**/**live**/**go** etc.
	he/she/it	**does not** (**doesn't**)	
past simple negative	I/they/he/she etc.	**did not** (**didn't**)	

positive	→	*negative*
I **want** to go out.	→	I **don't want** to go out.
They **work** hard.	→	They **don't work** hard.
Lisa **plays** the guitar.	→	Lisa **doesn't play** the guitar.
My father **likes** his job.	→	My father **doesn't like** his job.
I **got** up early this morning.	→	I **didn't get** up early this morning.
They **worked** hard yesterday.	→	They **didn't work** hard yesterday.
We **played** tennis.	→	We **didn't play** tennis.
Emily **had** dinner with us.	→	Emily **didn't have** dinner with us.

Don't ...

Look!	→	**Don't look!**
Wait for me.	→	**Don't wait** for me.

Sometimes **do** is the main verb (**don't do** / **doesn't do** / **didn't do**):

Do something!	→	**Don't do** anything!
Sue **does** a lot at weekends.	→	Sue **doesn't do** much at weekends.
I **did** what you said.	→	I **didn't do** what you said.

present simple (negative) ➜ **Unit 6** past simple (negative) ➜ **Unit 12**
don't look / **don't wait** etc. ➜ **Unit 35** **Why isn't/don't ... ?** ➜ **Unit 44**

Exercises

43.1 Make these sentences negative.

1 He's gone away. *He hasn't gone away.*
2 They're married. ....
3 I've had dinner. ....
4 It's cold today. ....
5 We'll be late. ....
6 You should go. ....

43.2 Make these sentences negative. Use **don't/doesn't/didn't**.

1 She saw me. *She didn't see me.*
2 I like cheese. ....
3 They understood. ....
4 He lives here. ....
5 Go away! ....
6 I did the shopping. ....

43.3 Make these sentences negative.

1 She can swim. *She can't swim.*
2 They've arrived. ....
3 I went to the bank. ....
4 He speaks German. ....
5 We were angry. ....
6 He'll be pleased. ....
7 Call me tonight. ....
8 It rained yesterday. ....
9 I could hear them. ....
10 I believe you. ....

43.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (**isn't/haven't/don't** etc.).

1 They aren't rich. They *haven't* got much money.
2 'Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thank you. I .... hungry.'
3 I .... find my glasses. Have you seen them?
4 Steve .... go to the cinema much. He prefers to watch DVDs at home.
5 We can walk to the station from here. It .... very far.
6 'Where's Jane?' 'I .... know. I .... seen her today.'
7 Be careful! .... fall!
8 We went to a restaurant last night. I .... like the food very much.
9 I've been to Japan many times, but I .... been to Korea.
10 Julia .... be here tomorrow. She's going away.
11 'Who broke that window?' 'Not me. I .... do it.'
12 We didn't see what happened. We .... looking at the time.
13 Lisa bought a new coat a few days ago, but she .... worn it yet.
14 You .... drive so fast. It's dangerous.

43.5 You ask Gary some questions. He answers 'Yes' or 'No'. Write sentences about Gary, positive or negative.

You	Gary		
Are you married?	No.	1	*He isn't married.*
Do you live in London?	Yes.	2	*He lives in London.*
Were you born in London?	No.	3	
Do you like London?	No.	4	
Would you like to live in the country?	Yes.	5	
Can you drive?	Yes.	6	
Have you got a car?	No.	7	
Do you read newspapers?	No.	8	
Are you interested in politics?	No.	9	
Do you watch TV most evenings?	Yes.	10	
Did you watch TV last night?	No.	11	
Did you go out last night?	Yes.	12	

Unit **44**

is it … ? have you … ? do they … ? etc. (questions 1)

A

positive	**you**	**are**	**You are** eating.	
question	**are**	**you**	**Are you** eating?	What **are you** eating?

In questions, the first verb (**is**/**are**/**have** etc.) is before the subject:

positive subject + verb			*question* verb + subject	
I	**am** late.	→	**Am**	**I** late?
That seat	**is** free.	→	**Is**	**that seat** free?
She	**was** angry.	→	Why **was**	**she** angry?
David	**has** gone.	→	Where **has**	**David** gone?
You	**have** got a car.	→	**Have**	**you** got a car?
They	**will** be here soon.	→	When **will**	**they** be here?
Paula	**can** swim.	→	**Can**	**Paula** swim?

Remember: the subject is after the first verb.

- Where **has David** gone? (*not* Where has gone David?)
- **Are those people** waiting for something? (*not* Are waiting … ?)
- When **was the telephone** invented? (*not* When was invented … ?)

B

do … ? / does … ? / did … ?

present simple questions	**do**	I/we/you/they	**work**/**live**/**go** etc. … ?
	does	he/she/it	
past simple questions	**did**	I/they/he/she etc.	

positive		*question*
They **work** hard.	→	**Do** they **work** hard?
You **watch** television.	→	How often **do** you **watch** television?
Chris **works** hard.	→	**Does** Chris **work** hard?
She **gets up** early.	→	What time **does** she **get** up?
They **worked** hard.	→	**Did** they **work** hard?
You **had** dinner.	→	What **did** you **have** for dinner?
She **got** up early.	→	What time **did** she **get** up?

Sometimes **do** is the main verb (do you **do** / did he **do** etc.):

- What **do** you usually **do** at weekends?
- A: What **does** your brother **do**?
  B: He works in a bank.
- A: I broke my finger last week.
  B: How **did** you **do** that? (*not* How did you that?)

C

Why isn't … ? / Why don't … ? etc. (**Why** + *negative*):

- Where's John? **Why isn't he** here? (*not* Why he isn't here?)
- **Why can't Paula** come to the meeting tomorrow? (*not* Why Paula can't … ?)
- **Why didn't you** phone me last night?

present simple questions ➔ **Unit 7** past simple questions ➔ **Unit 12** questions 2–3 ➔ **Units 45–46**
what/which/how ➔ **Units 47–48**

Exercises

44.1 Write questions.

1 I can swim. (and you?) Can you swim?
2 I work hard. (and Jack?) Does Jack work hard?
3 I was late this morning. (and you?)
4 I've got a key. (and Kate?)
5 I'll be here tomorrow. (and you?)
6 I'm going out this evening. (and Paul?)
7 I like my job. (and you?)
8 I live near here. (and Nicola?)
9 I enjoyed the film. (and you?)
10 I had a good holiday. (and you?)

44.2 You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the full questions.

You

1	(have / a car?) Have you got a car?	Yes, I have.
2	(use / a lot?) it	Yes, nearly every day.
3	(use / yesterday?)	Yes, to go to work.
4	(enjoy driving?)	Not very much.
5	(a good driver?)	I think I am.
6	(ever / have / an accident?)	No, never.

44.3 Make questions with these words. Put the words in the right order.

1 (has / gone / where / David?) Where has David gone?
2 (working / Rachel / is / today?) Is Rachel working today?
3 (the children / what / are / doing?) What
4 (made / is / how / cheese?)
5 (to the party / coming / is / your sister?)
6 (you / the truth / tell / don't / why?)
7 (your guests / have / yet / arrived?)
8 (leave / what time / your train / does?)
9 (to work / Emily / why / go / didn't?)
10 (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?)

44.4 Complete the questions.

1	I want to go out.	Where do you want to go?
2	Kate and Paul aren't going to the party.	Why aren't they going?
3	I'm reading.	What
4	Sue went to bed early.	What time
5	My parents are going on holiday.	When
6	I saw Tom a few days ago.	Where
7	I can't come to the party.	Why
8	Tina has gone away.	Where
9	I need some money.	How much
10	Angela doesn't like me.	Why
11	It rains sometimes.	How often
12	I did the shopping.	When

Unit 45

Who saw you? Who did you see? (questions 2)

A

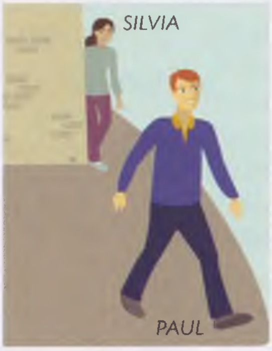

Silvia saw Paul.

Who **saw** Paul?
Silvia. (Silvia saw him.)

Who **did** Silvia **see?**
Paul. (She saw Paul.)

Silvia saw Paul

subject

Somebody saw Paul.

Who saw Paul?

Silvia. (Silvia saw him.)

who is the *subject*
Paul is the *object*

object

Silvia saw somebody.

Who did Silvia see?

Paul. (She saw Paul.)

who is the *object*
Silvia is the *subject*

B

In these questions, **who**/**what** is the *subject*:

- **Who lives** in this house? (= somebody lives in it – who?)
  (*not* Who does live?)
- **What happened?** (= something happened – what?)
  (*not* What did happen?)
- **What's happening?** (What's = What **is**)
- **Who's got** my key? (Who's = Who **has**)

In these questions, **who**/**what** is the *object*:

- Who did **you** meet yesterday? (= **you** met somebody – who?)
- What did **Paul** say? (= **Paul** said something – what?)
- Who are **you** phoning?
- What was **Silvia** wearing?

Compare:

- George likes oranges. → **Who likes** oranges? – George.
  What does George like? – Oranges.
- Jane won a new car. → **Who won** a new car? – Jane.
  What did Jane win? – A new car.

C

Use **who** for people (somebody). Use **what** for things, ideas etc. (something):

- **Who** is your favourite **singer**?
- **What** is your favourite **song**?

questions → **Units 44, 46** **what/which/how** → **Unit 47**

Exercises

45.1 Make questions with **who** or **what**. In these questions, **who/what** is the subject.

1	Somebody broke the window.	*Who broke the window?*
2	Something fell off the shelf.	What
3	Somebody wants to see you.	me?
4	Somebody took my umbrella.	
5	Something made me ill.	
6	Somebody is coming.	

45.2 Make questions with **who** or **what** (subject or object).

1	I bought something.	*What did you buy?*
2	Somebody lives in this house.	*Who lives in this house?*
3	I phoned somebody.	
4	Something happened last night.	
5	Somebody knows the answer.	
6	Somebody did the washing-up.	
7	Jane did something.	
8	Something woke me up.	
9	Somebody saw the accident.	
10	I saw somebody.	
11	Somebody has got my pen.	
12	This word means something.	

45.3 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with **who** or **what**.

1	I lost **XXXXX** yesterday, but fortunately **XXXXX** found it and gave it back to me.	*What did you lose?* *Who found it?*
2	**XXXXX** phoned me last night. She wanted **XXXXX**.	Who What
3	I needed some advice, so I asked **XXXXX**. He said **XXXXX**.	
4	I hear that **XXXXX** got married last week. **XXXXX** told me.	
5	I met **XXXXX** on my way home this evening. She told me **XXXXX**.	
6	Steve and I played tennis yesterday. **XXXXX** won. After the game we **XXXXX**.	
7	It was my birthday last week and I had some presents. **XXXXX** gave me a book and Catherine gave me **XXXXX**.	

Unit **46**

Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)

A

Jessica is talking to somebody.

Who is she talking **to**?

In questions beginning **Who** … **?** / **What** … **?** / **Where** … **?** / **Which** … **?**, prepositions (**to**/**from**/**with** etc.) usually go at the end:

- ○ '**Where** are you **from**?' 'I'm from Thailand.'
- ○ 'Jack was afraid.' '**What** was he afraid **of**?'
- ○ '**Who** do these books belong **to**?' 'They're mine.'
- ○ 'Tom's father is in hospital.' '**Which hospital** is he **in**?'
- ○ 'Kate is going on holiday.' '**Who with**?' / '**Who** is she going **with**?'
- ○ 'Can we talk?' 'Sure. **What** do you want to talk **about**?'

B

What's it like? / **What are they like?** etc.

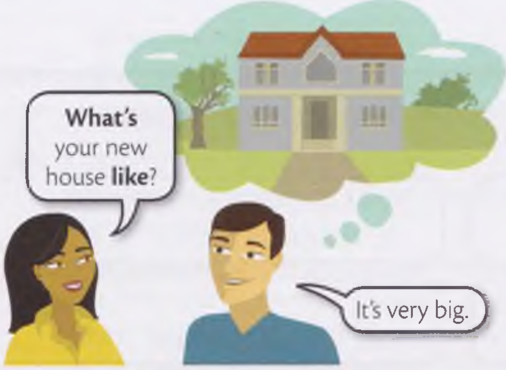
What's your new house **like**?
It's very big.

What**'s** it like? = What **is** it like?

What's it like? = tell me something about it – is it good or bad, big or small, old or new (etc.)?

When we say '**What is it like?**', **like** is a *preposition*. It is not the verb **like** ('**Do** you **like** your new house?' etc.).

○ A: There's a new restaurant in our street.
B: **What's** it **like**? Is it good?
A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.

○ A: **What's** your new teacher **like**?
B: She's very good. We learn a lot.

○ A: I met Nicola's parents yesterday.
B: Did you? **What** are they **like**?
A: They're very nice.

○ A: Did you have a good holiday? **What** was the weather **like**?
B: It was lovely. It was sunny every day.

questions 1–2 ➜ **Units 44–45** **what**/**which**/**how** ➜ **Unit 47** prepositions ➜ **Units 103–113**

Exercises

46.1 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with **who** or **what**.

1	The letter is from **XXXXX**.	Who is the letter from?
2	I'm looking for a **XXXXX**.	What .... you ....
3	I went to the cinema with **XXXXX**.	....
4	The film was about **XXXXX**.	....
5	I gave the money to **XXXXX**.	....
6	The book was written by **XXXXX**.	....

46.2 Write questions about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs + a preposition:

go **listen** **look** ~~**talk**~~ **talk** **wait**

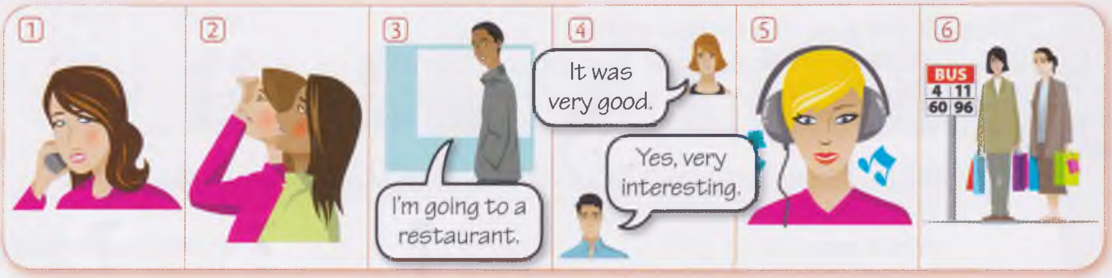

1 Who is she talking to?
2 What .... they ....
3 Which restaurant ....
4 What ....
5 What ....
6 Which bus ....

46.3 Write questions beginning **Which ... ?**

1	Tom's father is in hospital.	Which hospital is he in?
2	We stayed at a hotel.	.... you ....
3	Jack plays for a football team.	....
4	I went to school in this town.	....

46.4 You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with **What is/are ... like?**

1	(the roads)	What are the roads like?
2	(the food)	....
3	(the people)	....
4	(the weather)	....

46.5 Ask questions with **What was/were ... like?**

1 Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the weather.
What was the weather like?

2 Your friend has just come back from the cinema. Ask about the film.
....

3 Your friend has just finished an English course. Ask about the lessons.
....

4 Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the hotel.
....

Unit 47

What ... ? Which ... ? How ... ? (questions 4)

A

What + *noun* (**What colour** ... **?** / **What kind** ... **?** etc.)

- ☐ **What colour** is your car?
- ☐ **What size** is this shirt?
- ☐ **What time** is it?
- ☐ **What kind** of job do you want?
  (*or* **What type** of job ... ? / **What sort** of job ... ?)
- ☐ **What colour** are your eyes?
- ☐ **What make** is your TV?
- ☐ **What day** is it today?

What without a noun:

- ☐ **What**'s your favourite colour?
- ☐ **What** do you want to do tonight?

B

Which + *noun* (things or people):

- ☐ **Which train** did you catch – the 9.50 or the 10.30?
- ☐ **Which doctor** did you see – Doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?

We use **which** without a noun for things, not people:

- ☐ **Which** is bigger – Canada or Australia?

We use **who** for people (without a noun):

- ☐ **Who** is taller – Joe or Gary? (*not* Which is taller?)

C

What or **which**?

We use **which** when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps 2, 3 or 4):

- ☐ We can go this way or that way.
  Which way shall we go?
- ☐ There are four umbrellas here.
  Which is yours?

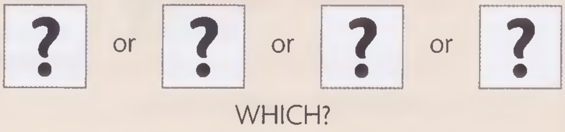

What is more general:

- ☐ **What**'s the capital of Argentina? (of all the cities in Argentina)
- ☐ **What sort** of music do you like? (of all kinds of music)

Compare:

- ☐ **What colour** are his eyes? (*not* Which colour?)
  Which colour do you prefer, **pink or yellow**?
- ☐ **What** is the longest river in the world?
  Which is the longest river – **the Mississippi, the Amazon or the Nile**?

D

How ... ?

- ☐ '**How** was the party last night?' 'It was great.'
- ☐ '**How** do you usually go to work?' 'By bus.'

You can use **how** + *adjective/adverb* (**how tall** / **how old** / **how often** etc.):

'**How**	**tall** are you?'	'I'm 1 metre 70.'
	big is the house?'	'Not very big.'
	old is your mother?'	'She's 45.'
	far is it from here to the airport?'	'Five kilometres.'
	often do you use your car?'	'Every day.'
	long have they been married?'	'Ten years.'
	much was the meal?'	'Thirty pounds.'

questions ➜ Units 44–46 How long does it take? ➜ Unit 48 which one(s) ➜ Unit 75

Exercises

47.1 Write questions with **what**.

1	I've got a new TV.	(make?) What make is it?
2	I want a job.	(kind?) What kind of job do you want?
3	I bought a new sweater.	(colour?) What ....
4	I got up early this morning.	(time?) .... get up?
5	I like music.	(type?) ....
6	I want to buy a car.	(kind?) ....

47.2 Complete the questions. Use **Which ... ?**

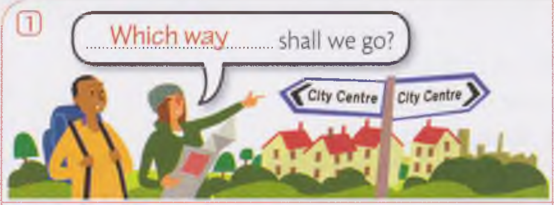

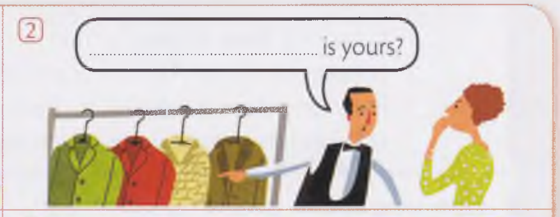

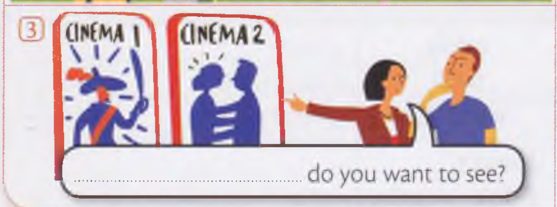

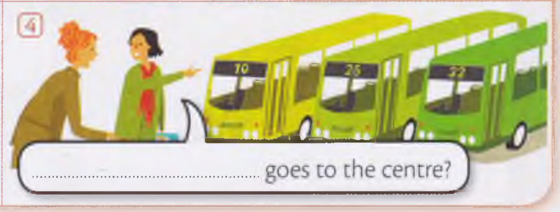

47.3 Write **what/which/who**.

1 What is that man's name?

2 Which way shall we go? Left or right?

3 You can have tea or coffee. .... do you prefer?

4 '........ day is it today?' 'Friday.'

5 This is a nice office. .... desk is yours?

6 .... is your favourite sport?

7 .... is more expensive, meat or fish?

8 .... is older, Liz or Steve?

9 .... kind of camera have you got?

10 A: I have three cameras.
B: .... camera do you use most?

11 .... nationality are you?

47.4 Complete the questions with **How** + adjective or adverb (**high/long** etc.).

1	How high is Mount Everest?	Nearly 9000 metres.
2	.... is it to the station?	It's about two kilometres from here.
3	.... is Helen?	She's 26.
4	.... do the buses run?	Every ten minutes.
5	.... is the water in the pool?	Two metres.
6	.... have you lived here?	Nearly three years.

47.5 Write questions with **How ... ?**

1 Are you 1 metre 70? 1.75? 1.80? How tall are you?

2 Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three? ....

3 Are you 20 years old? 22? 25? ....

4 Did you spend £20? £30? £50? ....

5 Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never?
....

6 Is it 1000 miles from Paris to Moscow? 1500? 2000?
....

Unit
48

How long does it take … ?

A How long does it take from … to … ?

New York
1 hour
Washington

How long **does it take** by plane from New York to Washington?

It takes an hour.

☐ How long **does it take** by train from London to Manchester?
☐ **It takes** two hours by train from London to Manchester.
☐ How long **does it take** by car from your house to the station?
☐ **It takes** ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

B How long does it take to do something?

How long	**does** **did** **will**	**it take to** … ?

It	**takes** **took** **will take**		a week a long time three hours	**to** …
	doesn't **didn't** **won't**	**take**	long	

☐ How long **does it take to cross** the Atlantic by ship?
☐ 'I came by train.' 'Did you? How long **did it take** (**to get** here)?'
☐ How long **will it take to get** from here to the hotel?

☐ **It takes** a long time **to learn** a language.
☐ **It doesn't take** long **to cook** an omelette.
☐ **It won't take** long **to fix** the computer.

C How long does it take you to do something?

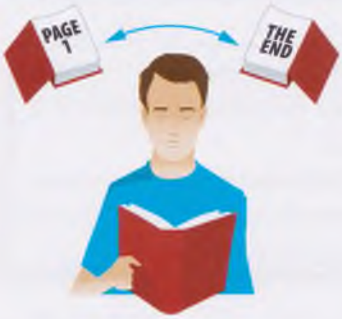

How long	**does** **did** **will**	**it take**	you Tom them	**to** … ?

It	**takes** **took** **will take**	me Tom them	a week a long time three hours	**to** …

I started reading the book on Monday.
I finished it on Wednesday evening.

It **took me** three days **to read** it.

☐ How long **will it take me to learn** to drive?
☐ **It takes Tom** 20 minutes **to get** to work in the morning.
☐ **It took us** an hour **to do** the shopping.
☐ **Did it take you** a long time **to find** a job?
☐ **It will take me** an hour **to cook** dinner.

Exercises

48.1 Look at the pictures and write questions with **How long ... ?**

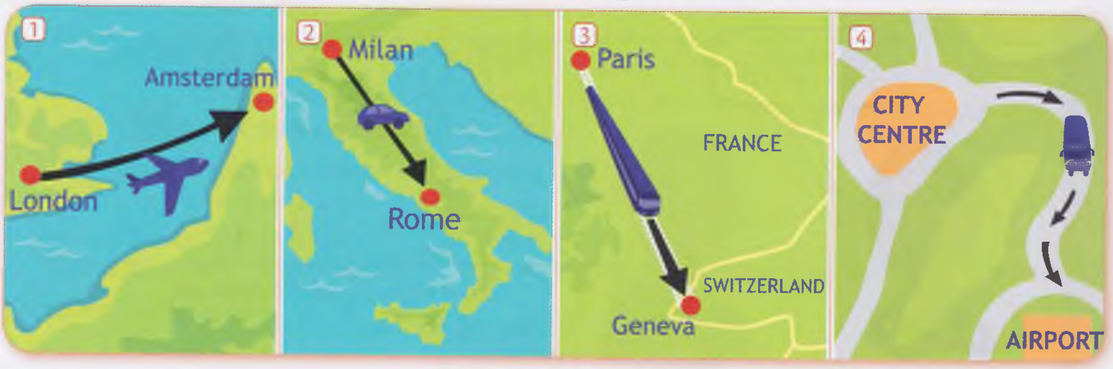

1 How long does it take by plane from London to Amsterdam?
2
3
4

48.2 How long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.

1 fly from your city/country to London
It takes two hours to fly from Madrid to London.
2 fly from your city/country to New York

3 study to be a doctor in your country

4 walk from your home to the nearest shop

5 get from your home to the nearest airport

48.3 Write questions with **How long did it take ... ?**

1 (Jane found a job.) How long did it take her to find a job?
2 (I walked to the station.) ... you ...
3 (Tom painted the bathroom.)
4 (I learnt to ski.)
5 (They repaired the car.)

48.4 Read the situations and write sentences with **It took ... .**

1 I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.
It took me three days to read the book.
2 We walked home last night. We left at 10 o'clock and we arrived home at 10.20.

3 I learnt to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I passed my driving test six months later.

4 Mark drove to London yesterday. He left home at 7 o'clock and got to London at 10.

5 Lisa began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last week.

6 *Write a sentence about yourself.*

Unit 49

Do you know where ... ? I don't know what ... etc

A

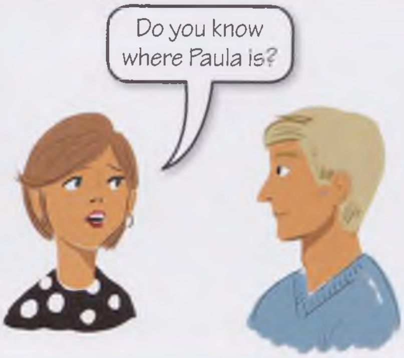
Do you know where Paula is?

We say: Where **is** **Paula**?

but **Do you know** where **Paula** **is** ?

(*not* Do you know where is Paula?)

In the same way we say:

I know
I don't know
Can you tell me
where **Paula is**.

Compare:

Who **are those people**?	*but*	**Do you know** **Can you tell me**	who **those people are**	?
How old **is Nicola**?			how old **Nicola is**	
What time **is it**?			what time **it is**	
Where **can I** go?			where **I can** go	
How much **is this camera**?		**I know** **I don't know** **I don't remember**	how much **this camera is**	.
When **are you** going away?			when **you're** going away	
Where **have they** gone?			where **they have** gone	
What **was Kate** wearing?			what **Kate was** wearing	

B

Questions with **do**/**does**/**did** (*present simple* and *past simple*)

Where **does he live** ?

but **Do you know** where **he lives** ? (*not* Do you know where does he live?)

Compare:

How **do airplanes** fly?	*but*	**Do you know**	how **airplanes fly**	?
What **does Jane** want?		**I don't know**	what **Jane wants**	.
Why **did she** go home?		**I don't remember**	why **she went** home	
Where **did I** put the key?		**I know**	where **I put** the key	

C

Questions beginning **Is** ... **?** / **Do** ... **?** / **Can** ... **?** etc. (yes/no questions)

Compare:

Is Jack at home?	*but*	**Do you know**	**if** *or* **whether**	**Jack is** at home	?
Have they got a car?				**they've got** a car	
Can Ben swim?		**I don't know**		**Ben can** swim	.
Do they live near here?				**they live** near here	
Did anybody see you?				**anybody saw** you	

You can use **if** *or* **whether** in these sentences:

- Do you know **if** they've got a car? *or*
  Do you know **whether** they've got a car?
- I don't know **if** anybody saw me. *or*
  I don't know **whether** anybody saw me.

Exercises

49.1 Answer these questions with **I don't know where/when/why ...** etc.

1 Have your friends gone home? (where) I don't know where they've gone.
2 Is Kate in her office? (where) I don't know ......
3 Is the castle very old? (how old) ......
4 Will Paul be here soon? (when) ......
5 Was he angry because I was late? (why) ......
6 Has Emily lived here a long time? (how long) ......

49.2 Complete the sentences.

1 (How do airplanes fly?) Do you know how airplanes fly ?
2 (Where does Susan work?) I don't know ....
3 (What did Peter say?) Do you remember ...... ?
4 (Why did he go home early?) I don't know ....
5 (What time does the meeting begin?) Do you know ...... ?
6 (How did the accident happen?) I don't remember. ....

49.3 Which is right?

1 Do you know what time ~~is it~~ / it is? (Do you know what time it is? *is right*)
2 Why are you / you are going away?
3 I don't know where are they / they are going.
4 Can you tell me where is the museum / the museum is?
5 Where do you want / you want to go for your holidays?
6 Do you know what do elephants eat / elephants eat?
7 I don't know how far is it / it is from the hotel to the station.

49.4 Write questions with **Do you know if ... ?**

1 (Have they got a car?) Do you know if they've got a car?
2 (Are they married?) Do you know ......
3 (Does Sue know Bill?) ......
4 (Will Gary be here tomorrow?) ......
5 (Did he pass his exam?) ......

49.5 Write questions beginning **Do you know ... ?**

1 (What does Laura want?) Do you know what Laura wants?
2 (Where is Paula?) Do ......
3 (Is she working today?) ......
4 (What time does she start work?) ......
5 (Are the shops open tomorrow?) ......
6 (Where do Sarah and Jack live?) ......
7 (Did they go to Jane's party?) ......

49.6 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 Do you know why the bus was late ?
2 Do you know what time ...... ?
3 Excuse me, can you tell me where ...... ?
4 I don't know what ......
5 Do you know if ...... ?
6 Do you know how much ...... ?

Unit
50

She said that ... He told me that ...

A

Last week you went to a party. A lot of your friends were there. Here are some things they said to you:

Today you meet Paul. You tell him about the party. You tell Paul what your friends said:

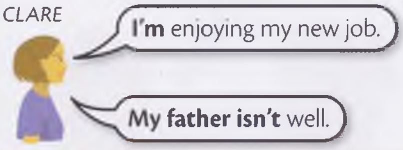
CLARE
I'm enjoying my new job.
My father isn't well.

am
is → **was**

○ Clare said that **she was** enjoying her new job.
○ She said that **her father wasn't** well.

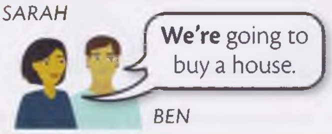
SARAH
We're going to buy a house.
BEN

are → **were**

○ Sarah and Ben said that **they were** going to buy a house.

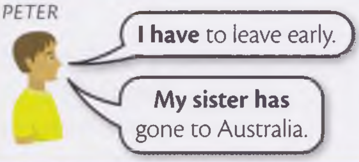
PETER
I have to leave early.
My sister has gone to Australia.

have
has → **had**

○ Peter said that **he had** to leave early.
○ He said that **his sister had** gone to Australia.

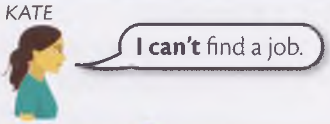
KATE
I can't find a job.

can → **could**

○ Kate said that **she couldn't** find a job.

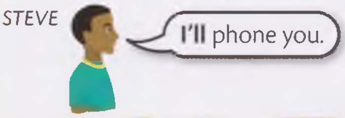
STEVE
I'll phone you.

will → **would**

○ Steve said that **he would** phone me.

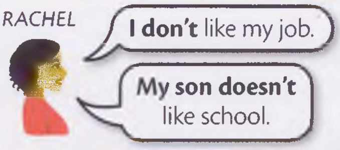
RACHEL
I don't like my job.
My son doesn't like school.

do
does → **did**

○ Rachel said that **she didn't** like her job.
○ She said that **her son didn't** like school.

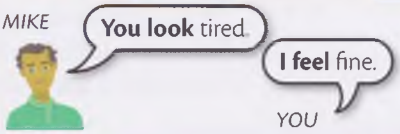
MIKE
You look tired.
I feel fine.
YOU

look → **looked**
feel → **felt**
etc. etc.
(present) *(past)*

○ Mike said that **I looked** tired.
○ I said that **I felt** fine.

B

say and **tell**

say (→ **said**)

○ He **said** that he was tired.
(*not* He said me)

○ What did she **say to** you?
(*not* say you)

We say **he said to me**, **I said to Ann** etc.
(*not* 'he said me', 'I said Ann').

tell (→ **told**)

○ He **told me** that he was tired.
(*not* He told that)

○ What did she **tell you**?
(*not* tell to you)

We say **he told me**, **I told Ann** etc.
(*not* 'he told to me', 'I told to Ann').

C

You can say:

○ He said **that** he was tired. *or* He said he was tired. (*without* that)
○ Kate told me **that** she couldn't find a job. *or* Kate told me she couldn't find a job.

I told you to ... ➜ **Unit 53**

Exercises

50.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with **He/She/They said (that) ...** .

1
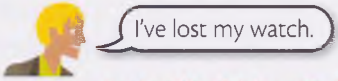
I've lost my watch.

He said he had lost his watch.

2
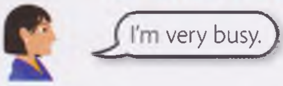
I'm very busy.

3
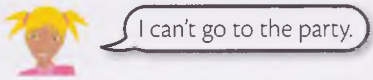
I can't go to the party.

4
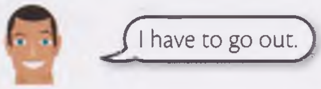
I have to go out.

5
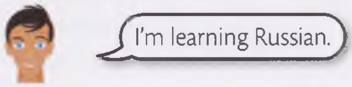
I'm learning Russian.

6
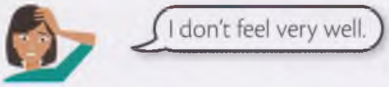
I don't feel very well.

7
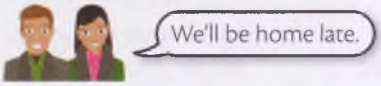
We'll be home late.

8
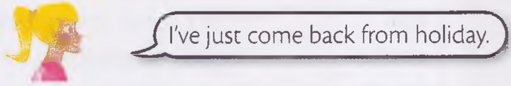
I've just come back from holiday.

9
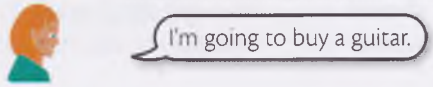
I'm going to buy a guitar.

10
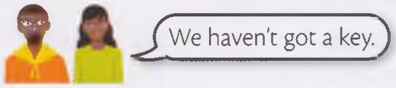
We haven't got a key.

50.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences.

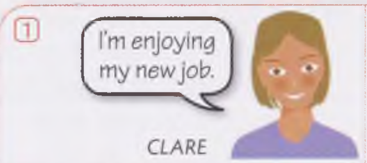
1
I'm enjoying my new job.
CLARE

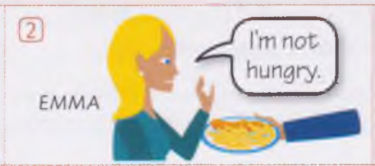
2
EMMA
I'm not hungry.

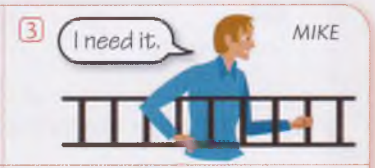
3
I need it.
MIKE

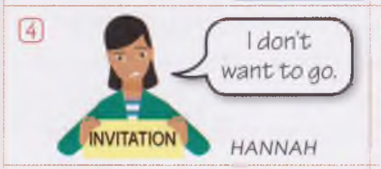
4
I don't want to go.
INVITATION
HANNAH

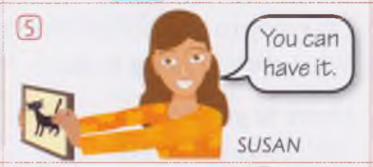
5
You can have it.
SUSAN

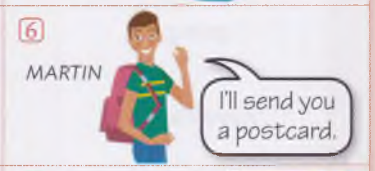
6
MARTIN
I'll send you a postcard.

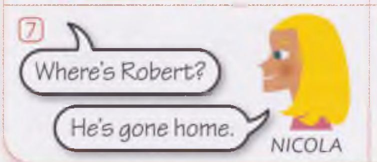
7
Where's Robert?
He's gone home.
NICOLA

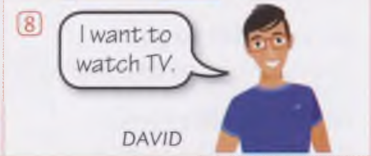
8
I want to watch TV.
DAVID

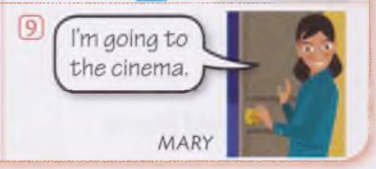
9
I'm going to the cinema.
MARY

1 I met Clare last week. She said she was enjoying her new job .
2 Emma didn't want anything to eat. She said ....
3 I wanted to borrow Mike's ladder, but he said ....
4 Hannah was invited to the party, but she said ....
5 Susan told me she didn't want the picture. She said ....
6 Martin has just gone away on holiday. He said ....
7 I was looking for Robert. Nicola said ....
8 'Why did David stay at home?' 'He said ....'
9 'Has Mary gone out?' 'I think so. She said ....'

50.3 Write **say/said** or **tell/told**.

1 He said he was tired.
2 What did she tell you?
3 Anna .... she didn't like Peter.
4 Jack .... me that you were ill.
5 Please don't .... Dan what happened.
6 Did Lucy .... she would be late?
7 The woman .... she was a reporter.
8 The woman .... us she was a reporter.
9 They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't .... them anything.
10 They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't .... anything.

Unit
51

work/working go/going do/doing

A

work/go/be etc. *(infinitive)*

will/can/must etc. + *infinitive*:

will	○ Anna **will be** here soon.	→ Units 27–28
shall	○ **Shall** I **open** the window?	
might	○ I **might phone** you later.	→ Unit 29
may	○ **May** I **sit** here?	
can	○ I **can't meet** you tomorrow.	→ Unit 30
could	○ **Could** you **pass** the salt, please?	
must	○ It's late. I **must go** now.	→ Unit 31
should	○ You **shouldn't work** so hard.	→ Unit 32
would	○ **Would** you **like** some coffee?	→ Unit 34

do/does/did + *infinitive*:

do/does *(present simple)*	○ **Do** you **work**? ○ They **don't work** very hard. ○ Helen **doesn't know** many people. ○ How much **does** it **cost**?	→ Units 6–7
did *(past simple)*	○ What time **did** the train **leave**? ○ We **didn't sleep** well.	→ Unit 12

B

to work / **to go** / **to be** etc. (**to** + *infinitive*)

(I'm) **going to** ...	○ **I'm going to play** tennis tomorrow. ○ What **are** you **going to do**?	→ Unit 26
(I) **have to** ...	○ I **have to go** now. ○ Everybody **has to eat**.	→ Unit 33
(I) **want to** ...	○ Do you **want to go** out? ○ They don't **want to come** with us.	→ Unit 52
(I) **would like to** ...	○ **I'd like to talk** to you. ○ **Would** you **like to go** out?	→ Unit 34
(I) **used to** ...	○ Dave **used to work** in a factory.	→ Unit 36

C

working/going/playing etc.

am/is/are + **-ing** *(present continuous)*	○ Please be quiet. **I'm working**. ○ Tom **isn't working** today. ○ What time **are** you **going** out?	→ Units 3–4, 8, 25
was/were + **-ing** *(past continuous)*	○ It **was raining**, so we didn't go out. ○ What **were** you **doing** at 11.30 yesterday?	→ Units 13–14

verbs + **to** ... and **-ing** (*I want to do / I enjoy doing*) ➜ *Unit 52* **go** and **-ing** ➜ *Unit 55*

Exercises

51.1 Complete the sentences. Write: **... phone Paul** or **... to phone Paul.**

1 I'll phone Paul .
2 I'm going to phone Paul .
3 Can you .... Paul?
4 Shall I .... ?
5 I'd like ....
6 Do you have .... ?
7 You should ....
8 I want ....
9 I might ....
10 You must ....

51.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the infinitive (**work/go** etc.) and sometimes you need **-ing** (**working/going** etc.).

do/doing
eat/eating
fly/flying
get/getting
go/going
listen/listening
~~sleep/sleeping~~
stay/staying
wait/waiting
watch/watching
wear/wearing
~~work/working~~

1 Please be quiet. I'm working .
2 I feel tired today. I didn't sleep very well last night.
3 What time do you usually .... up in the morning?
4 'Where are you ....?' 'To the office.'
5 Did you .... TV last night?
6 Look at that plane! It's .... very low.
7 You can turn off the radio. I'm not .... to it.
8 They didn't .... anything because they weren't hungry.
9 My friends were .... for me when I arrived.
10 'Does Susan always .... glasses?' 'No, only for reading.'
11 'What are you .... tonight?' 'I'm .... at home.'

51.3 Put the verb in the correct form. Choose from:

the infinitive (work/go etc.) or
to ... (to work / to go etc.) or
-ing (working/going etc.)

1 Shall I open the window? (open)
2 It's late. I have to go now. (go)
3 Amanda isn't working this week. She's on holiday. (work)
4 I'm tired. I don't want .... out. (go)
5 It might ...., so take an umbrella with you. (rain)
6 What time do you have .... tomorrow morning? (leave)
7 I'm sorry I can't .... you. (help)
8 My brother is a student. He's .... physics. (study)
9 Would you like .... on a trip round the world? (go)
10 When you saw Maria, what was she .... ? (wear)
11 When you go to London, where are you going .... ? (stay)
12 I'm hungry. I must .... something to eat. (have)
13 'Where's Gary?' 'He's .... a bath.' (have)
14 I used .... a car, but I sold it last year. (have)
15 He spoke very quietly. I couldn't .... him. (hear)
16 You don't look well. I don't think you should .... to work today. (go)
17 I don't know what he said. I wasn't .... to him. (listen)
18 I missed the bus and had .... home. (walk)
19 I want .... what happened. (know) You must .... me. (tell)
20 May I .... this book? (borrow)

Unit
52

to … (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

A

verbs + **to** … (**I want to do**)

want
hope
need
plan
expect
promise
decide
offer
refuse
try
forget
learn

+ **to** … (**to do** / **to work** / **to be** etc.)

- ☐ What do you **want to do** this evening?
- ☐ It's not very late. We don't **need to go** home yet.
- ☐ Tina has **decided to sell** her car.
- ☐ You **forgot to switch** off the light when you went out.
- ☐ My brother is **learning to drive**.
- ☐ I **tried to read** my book, but I was too tired.

B

verbs + **-ing** (**I enjoy doing**)

enjoy
mind
stop
finish
suggest

+ **-ing** (**doing** / **working** / **being** etc.)

- ☐ I **enjoy dancing**. (*not* enjoy to dance)
- ☐ I don't **mind getting** up early.
- ☐ Has it **stopped raining**?
- ☐ Sonia **suggested going** to the cinema.

I enjoy dancing.

C

verbs + **-ing** *or* **to** …

like
prefer
love
hate
start
begin
continue

+ **-ing** (**doing** etc.) *or* **to** … (**to do** etc.)

- ☐ Do you **like getting** up early? *or* Do you **like to get** up early?
- ☐ I **prefer travelling** by car. *or* I **prefer to travel** by car.
- ☐ Anna **loves dancing**. *or* Anna **loves to dance**.
- ☐ I **hate being** late. *or* I **hate to be** late.
- ☐ It **started raining**. *or* It **started to rain**.

D

would like to … etc.

would like
would prefer
would love
would hate

+ **to** … (**to do** / **to work** / **to be** etc.)

- ☐ Amy **would like to meet** you.
- ☐ I**'d love to go** to Australia. (I**'d** = I **would**)
- ☐ '**Would** you **like to sit** down?' 'No, I**'d prefer to stand**, thank you.'
- ☐ I like this apartment. I **wouldn't like to move**.
- ☐ I live in a small village. I**'d hate to live** in a big city.

would like ➜ Unit 34 **I want you to** … ➜ Unit 53 **go** + **-ing** ➜ Unit 55 preposition + **-ing** ➜ Unit 112

Exercises

52.1 Put the verb in the right form, **to …** or **-ing**.

1 I enjoy ..dancing...... . (dance)
2 What do you want ..to do........ tonight? (do)
3 Bye! I hope .... you again soon. (see)
4 I learnt .... when I was five years old. (swim)
5 Have you finished .... the kitchen? (clean)
6 Where's Anna? I need .... her something. (ask)
7 Do you enjoy .... other countries? (visit)
8 The weather was nice, so I suggested .... for a walk by the river. (go)
9 Where's Ben? He promised .... here on time. (be)
10 I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind .... (wait)
11 What have you decided .... ? (do)
12 Dan was angry and refused .... to me. (speak)
13 I'm tired. I want .... to bed. (go)
14 I was very upset and started .... (cry)
15 I'm trying .... (work) Please stop .... (talk)

52.2 Complete the sentences using **to …** or **-ing**. Use these verbs:

~~go~~ go help lose rain read see send wait watch

1 'Have you ever been to Australia?' 'No, but I'd love ..to go...... .'
2 Amy had a lot to do, so I offered .... her.
3 I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't expect .... you.
4 Kate has a lot of books. She enjoys ....
5 This ring was my grandmother's. I'd hate .... it.
6 Don't forget .... us a postcard when you're on holiday.
7 I'm not going out until it stops ....
8 What shall we do this afternoon? Would you like .... to the beach?
9 When I'm tired in the evenings, I like .... TV.
10 'Shall we go now?' 'No, I'd prefer .... a few minutes.'

52.3 Complete the answers to the questions.

1	Do you usually get up early?	Yes, I like ..to get up early........................ .
2	Do you ever go to museums?	Yes, I enjoy ....
3	Would you like to go to a museum now?	No, I'm hungry. I'd prefer .... to a restaurant.
4	Do you drive a lot?	No, I don't like ....
5	Have you ever been to New York?	No, but I'd love .... one day.
6	Do you often travel by train?	Yes, I enjoy ....
7	Shall we walk home or take a taxi?	I don't mind .... , but a taxi would be quicker.

52.4 Complete these sentences. Write about yourself. Use **to …** or **-ing**.

1 I enjoy ....
2 I don't like ....
3 If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like ....
4 When I'm on holiday, I like ....
5 I don't mind .... , but ....
6 I wouldn't like ....

→ **Additional exercise 32** (page 268)

Unit
53

I want you to ... I told you to ...

A

I want you to ...

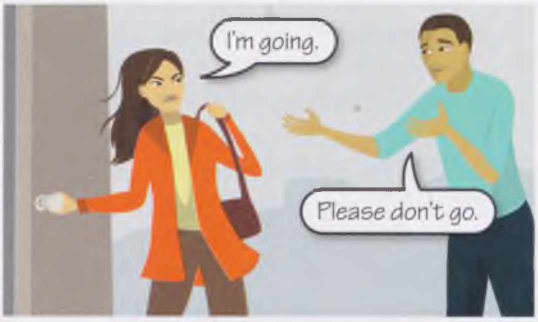
I'm going.
Please don't go.

The woman **wants to go**.

The man **doesn't want** the woman **to go**.
He **wants** her **to stay**.

We say:

I want	**you** **somebody** **Sarah**	**to do** something

- I **want you to be** happy. (*not* I want that you are happy)
- They didn't **want anybody to know** their secret.
- Do you **want me to lend** you some money?

We use **would like** in the same way:

- **Would** you **like me to lend** you some money?

B

We also use this structure with:

ask
tell
advise
expect
persuade
teach

	verb +	somebody +	**to** ...	
Sue	**asked**	a friend	**to lend**	her some money.
I	**told**	you	**to be**	careful.
What do you	**advise**	me	**to do**?	
I didn't	**expect**	them	**to be**	here.
We	**persuaded**	Gary	**to come**	with us.
I	**am teaching**	my brother	**to swim**.	

C

I told you to ... / I told you not to ...

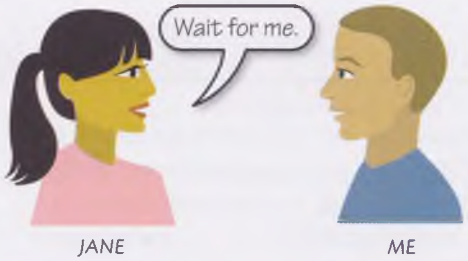

→ Jane **told** me **to wait** for her.

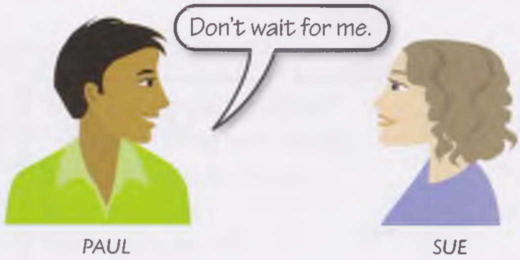

→ Paul **told** Sue **not to wait** for him.

D

make and let

After **make** and **let**, we do *not* use **to**:

- He's very funny. He **makes** me **laugh**. (*not* makes me to laugh)
- At school our teacher **made** us **work** very hard.
- I didn't have my phone with me, so Sue **let** me **use** hers. (*not* let me to use)

You can say **Let's** ... (= **Let us**) when you want people to do things with you:

- Come on! **Let's dance**.
- 'Do you want to go out tonight?' 'No, I'm tired. **Let's stay** at home.'

Let's ... ➜ **Unit 35** **He told me that** ... ➜ **Unit 50**

Exercises

53.1 Write sentences beginning **I want you ... / I don't want you ... / Do you want me ... ?**

1 (you must come with me) I want you to come with me.
2 (listen carefully) I want ……
3 (please don't be angry) I don't ……
4 (shall I wait for you?) Do you ……
5 (don't call me tonight) ……
6 (you must meet Sarah) ……

53.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

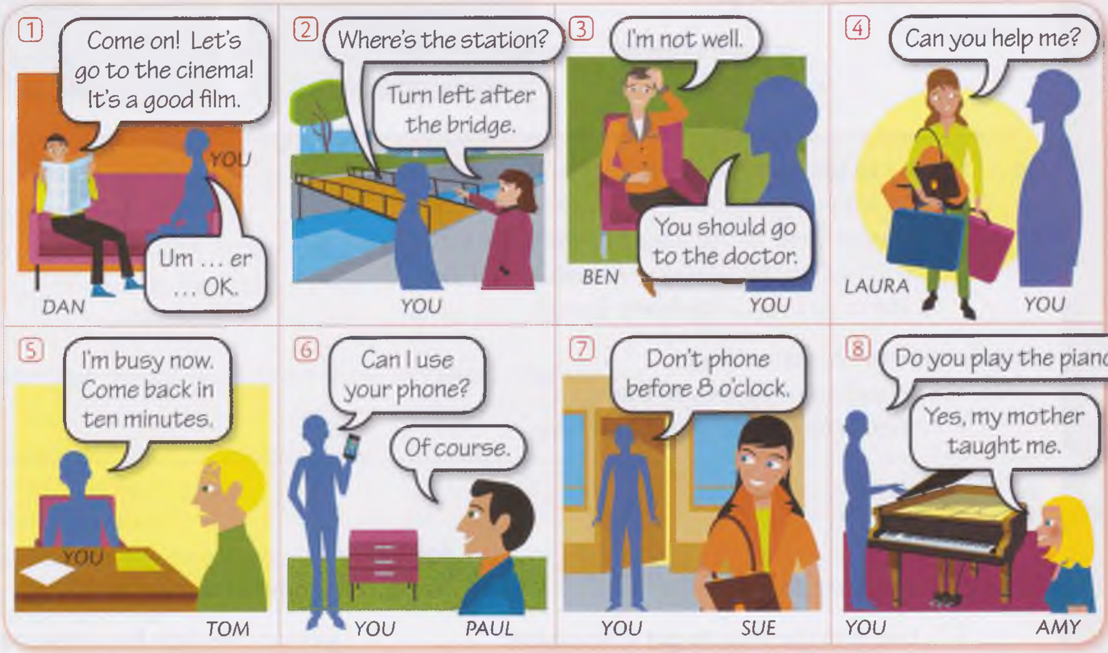
1
Come on! Let's go to the cinema! It's a good film.
YOU
Um … er … OK.
DAN
2
Where's the station?
Turn left after the bridge.
YOU
3
I'm not well.
You should go to the doctor.
BEN
YOU
4
Can you help me?
LAURA
YOU
5
I'm busy now. Come back in ten minutes.
YOU
TOM
6
Can I use your phone?
Of course.
YOU
PAUL
7
Don't phone before 8 o'clock.
YOU
SUE
8
Do you play the piano?
Yes, my mother taught me.
YOU
AMY

1 Dan persuaded me to go to the cinema.
2 I wanted to get to the station. A woman told ……
3 Ben wasn't well. I advised ……
4 Laura had a lot of luggage. She asked ……
5 I was too busy to talk to Tom. I told ……
6 I wanted to make a phone call. Paul let ……
7 Sue is going to call me later. I told ……
8 Amy's mother taught ……

53.3 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes **to** is necessary (**to go** / **to wait** etc.); sometimes **to** is not necessary (**go**/**wait** etc.).

arrive borrow get ~~go~~ go make repeat tell think wait

1 Please stay here. I don't want you to go yet.
2 I didn't hear what she said, so I asked her …… it.
3 'Shall we begin?' 'No, let's …… a few minutes.'
4 Are they already here? I expected them …… much later.
5 Kevin's parents didn't want him …… married.
6 I want to stay here. You can't make me …… with you.
7 'Is that your bike?' 'No, it's John's. He let me …… it.'
8 Rachel can't come to the party. She told me …… you.
9 Would you like a drink? Would you like me …… some coffee?
10 'Kate doesn't like me.' 'What makes you …… that?'

Unit
54

I went to the shop to ...

A

Paula wanted a newspaper, so she went to the shop.

Why did she go to the shop?
To get a newspaper.

She went to the shop **to get** a newspaper.

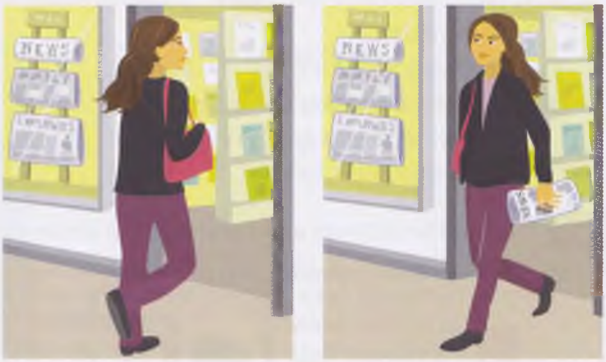

to ... (**to get** / **to see** etc.) tells us *why* a person does something:

- 'Why are you going out?' '**To buy** some food.'
- Catherine went to the station **to meet** her friend.
- Sue turned on the television **to watch** the news.
- I'd like to go to Spain **to learn** Spanish.

money/time to (do something):

- We need some **money to buy** food.
- I haven't got **time to watch** television.

B

to ... and **for** ...

to + *verb* (**to get** / **to see** etc.)	**for** + *noun* (**for a newspaper** / **for food** etc.)
I went to the shop **to get** a newspaper. (*not* for get)	I went to the shop **for a newspaper**.
They're going to Brazil **to see** their friends.	They're going to Brazil **for a holiday**.
We need some money **to buy** food.	We need some money **for food**.

C

wait for ... :

- Please **wait for** me.
- Are you **waiting for** the bus?

wait to (do something):

- Hurry up! I'm **waiting to go**.
- Are you **waiting to see** the doctor?

wait for (somebody/something) **to** ... :

- The lights are red. You have to **wait for them to change**.
- Are you **waiting for the doctor to come**?

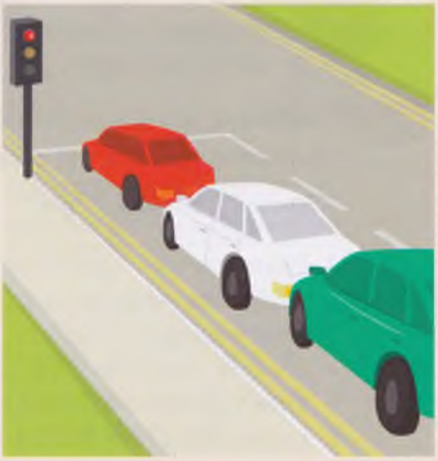

They're **waiting for the lights to change**.

go to ... and **go for** ... ➜ Unit 55 **something to eat** / **nothing to do** etc. ➜ Unit 79
enough + **to/for** ... ➜ Unit 91 **too** + **to/for** ... ➜ Unit 92

Exercises

54.1 *Write sentences beginning **I went to …** . Choose from the boxes.*

a coffee shop
the chemist
~~**the station**~~
the market

+

buy some vegetables
meet a friend
get some medicine
~~**get a train ticket**~~

1 I went to the station to get a train ticket.
2 I went ......
3 ......
4 ......

54.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

to get some fresh air
to open this door
to read the newspaper
to see who it was
to wake him up
~~**to watch the news**~~

1 I turned on the TV to watch the news.
2 Alice sat down in an armchair ....
3 Do I need a key ...... ?
4 I went for a walk by the river ....
5 I knocked on the door of David's room ....
6 The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window ....

54.3 Use your own ideas to finish these sentences. Use **to …** .

1 *I went to the shop* to get a newspaper .
2 I'm very busy. I don't have time ....
3 I called Amy ....
4 I'm going out ....
5 I borrowed some money ....

54.4 Write **to** or **for**.

1 I went out to get some bread.
2 We went to a restaurant ...... have dinner.
3 Robert wants to go to university ...... study economics.
4 I'm going to London ...... an interview next week.
5 I'm going to London ...... visit some friends of mine.
6 Do you have time ...... a cup of coffee?
7 I got up late this morning. I didn't have time ...... wash.
8 Everybody needs money ...... live.
9 We didn't have any money ...... a taxi, so we walked home.
10 The office is very small. There's space only ...... a desk and chair.
11 A: Excuse me, are you waiting ...... be served?
B: No, I'm already being served, thanks.

54.5 Complete these sentences. Choose from:

it / to arrive **you / tell me** ~~**them / change**~~ **the film / begin**

1 We stopped at the lights and waited for them to change .
2 I sat down in the cinema and waited ....
3 We called an ambulance and waited ....
4 'Do you know what to do?' 'No, I'm waiting ....'

Unit
55

go to ... go on ... go for ... go -ing

A

go to ... (**go to work** / **go to London** / **go to a concert** etc.)

- ☐ What time do you usually **go to work**?
- ☐ I'm **going to China** next week.
- ☐ Sophie didn't want to **go to the concert**.
- ☐ 'Where's Tom?' 'He's **gone to bed**.'
- ☐ I **went to the dentist** yesterday.

go to sleep = start to sleep:

- ☐ I was very tired and **went to sleep** quickly.

go home (without **to**)

- ☐ I'm **going home** now. (*not* going to home)

B

go on ...

go on	holiday a trip a tour a cruise strike

- ☐ We're **going on holiday** next week.
- ☐ Children often **go on school trips**.
- ☐ Workers at the airport have **gone on strike**.
  (= they are refusing to work)

C

go for ...

go (somewhere) **for**	a walk a run a swim a drink a meal

- ☐ 'Where's Emma?' 'She's **gone for a walk**.'
- ☐ Do you **go for a run** every morning?
- ☐ The water looks nice. I'm **going for a swim**.
- ☐ I met Chris in town, so we **went for coffee**.
- ☐ Shall we **go** out **for a meal**? I know a good restaurant.

D

go + **-ing**

We use **go** + **-ing** for many sports (**swimming** / **skiing** etc.) and also **shopping**.

I **go** he is **going** we **went** they have **gone** she wants to **go**	**shopping** **swimming** **fishing** **sailing** **skiing** **jogging** etc.

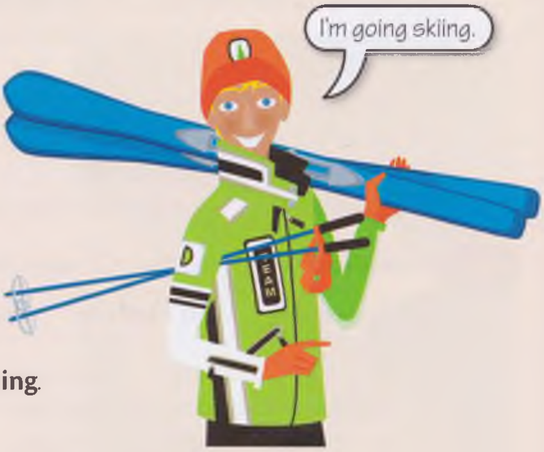
I'm going skiing.

- ☐ Are you **going shopping** this afternoon?
- ☐ It's a nice day. Let's **go swimming**.
  (*or* Let's **go for a** swim.)
- ☐ Richard has a small boat and he often **goes sailing**.
- ☐ I **went jogging** before breakfast this morning.

Exercises

55.1 Write **to/on/for** where necessary.

1 I'm going ...to... China next week.
2 Richard often goes ...–... sailing. *(no preposition)*
3 Sue went .... Mexico last year.
4 Jack goes .... jogging every morning.
5 I'm going out .... a walk. Do you want to come?
6 I'm tired because I went .... bed very late last night.
7 Mark is going .... holiday .... Italy next week.
8 The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went .... a swim.
9 The taxi drivers went .... strike when I was in New York.
10 Let's go .... the cinema this evening.
11 It's late. I have to go .... home now.
12 Would you like to go .... a tour of the city?
13 Shall we go out .... dinner this evening?
14 My parents are going .... a cruise this summer.

55.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use **go/goes/going/went + -ing**.

① *often*

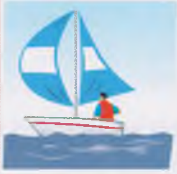

RICHARD

② *last Saturday*

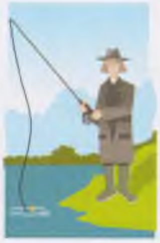

EMILY

③ *every day*

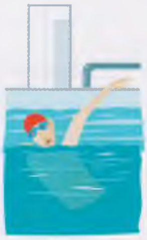

DAN

④ *next month*

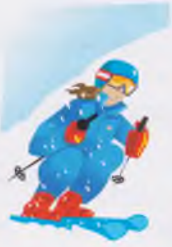

JESSICA

⑤ *later*

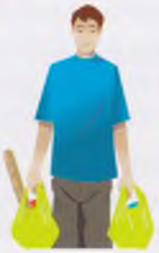

PETER

⑥ *yesterday*

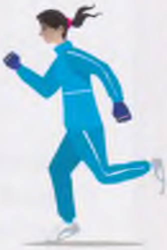

SARAH

1 Richard has a boat. He often ...goes sailing... .
2 Last Saturday Emily went ....
3 Dan .... every day.
4 Jessica is going on holiday next month. She is ....
5 Peter is going out later. He has to ....
6 Sarah .... after work yesterday.

55.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box. Use **to/on/for** if necessary.

~~a swim~~ **holiday** **Portugal** **shopping** **sleep**
a walk **home** **riding** **skiing** **university**

1 The water looks nice. Let's go ...for a swim... .
2 After leaving school, Tina went .... where she studied psychology.
3 I'm going .... now. I have to buy a few things.
4 I was very tired last night. I sat down in an armchair and went ....
5 I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went .... early.
6 We live near the mountains. In winter we go .... most weekends.
7 Robert has got a horse. He goes .... a lot.
8 The weather is nice. Shall we go .... along the river?
9 A: Are you going .... soon?
B: Yes, next month. We're going .... We've never been there before.

Unit 56

get

A

get + *noun* = receive, buy, find etc.

you **don't have** something → you **get** it → you **have** it

☐ I **got** an email from Sam this morning. (= receive)
☐ I like your sweater. Where did you **get** it? (= buy)
☐ It's hard to **get** a job at the moment? (= find)
☐ 'Is Lisa here?' 'Yes, I'll **get** her for you.'

also **get a bus** / **a train** / **a taxi** (= take a bus/train etc.):
☐ 'Did you walk here?' 'No, I **got** the bus.'

B

get hungry / **get cold** / **get tired** etc. (**get** + *adjective*) = become:

you're **not hungry** → you **get hungry** → you **are hungry**

☐ If you don't eat, you **get hungry**.
☐ Drink your coffee. It**'s getting cold**.
☐ I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she **gets better** soon.
☐ It was raining very hard. We didn't have an umbrella, so we **got** very **wet**.

also **get married**
get dressed (= put your clothes on)
get lost (= lose your way)

☐ Nicola and Frank are **getting married** soon.
☐ I got up and **got dressed** quickly.
☐ We didn't have a map, so we **got lost**.

C

get to a place = arrive:
☐ I usually **get to work** before 8.30. (= arrive at work)
☐ We left London at 10 o'clock and **got to Manchester** at 12.45.

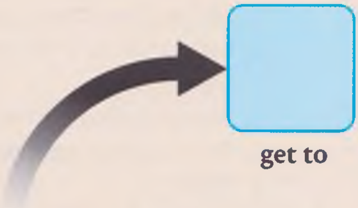
get to

get here/there (without **to**):
☐ How did you **get here**? By bus?

get home (without **to**):
☐ What time did you **get home** last night?

D

get in/out/on/off

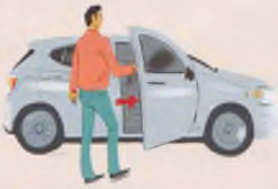
get in (a car)

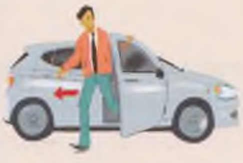
get out (**of** a car)

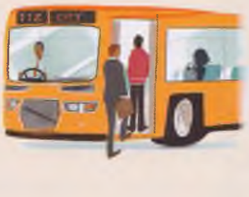
get on

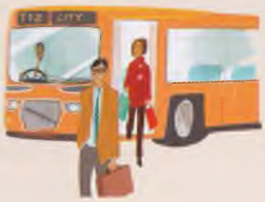
get off

(a bus / a train / a plane)

☐ Kate **got in the car** and drove away. (You can also say: Kate got **into** the car and ...)
☐ A car stopped and a man **got out**. (*but* A man got out **of the car**.)
☐ We **got on the bus** outside the hotel and **got off** in Church Street.

get to → Unit 108   **in/out/on/off** → Units 110, 114   **get up** → Unit 114   **get on** → Appendix 6

Exercises

56.1 Complete these sentences. Use **get/gets** and choose from the box.

a doctor
a good salary
a lot of rain
a new laptop
a taxi
a ticket
~~my email~~
some milk
the job
your boots

1 Did you ....get my email.... ? I sent it a week ago.
2 Where did you .... ? They're very nice.
3 Quick! This man is ill. We need to ....
4 I don't want to walk home. Let's ....
5 Tom has an interview tomorrow. I hope he ....
6 When you go to the shop, can you .... ?
7 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can ....'
8 Helen has got a well-paid job. She ....
9 The weather is horrible here in winter. We ....
10 I'm going to .... The one I have is too slow.

56.2 Complete these sentences. Use **getting** + these words:

~~cold~~ dark late married ready

1 Drink your coffee. It's ....getting cold.... .
2 Turn on the light. It's ....
3 'I'm .... next week.' 'Really? Congratulations!'
4 'Where's Karen?' 'She's .... to go out.'
5 It's .... It's time to go home.

56.3 Complete the sentences. Use **get/gets/got** + these words:

angry better ~~hungry~~ lost married old wet

1 If you don't eat, you ....get hungry.... .
2 Don't go out in the rain. You'll ....
3 My brother .... last year. His wife's name is Sarah.
4 Mark is always very calm. He never ....
5 We tried to find the hotel, but we ....
6 Everybody wants to stay young, but we all ....
7 Yesterday the weather wasn't so good at first, but it .... during the day.

56.4 Write sentences with **I left ...** and **got to ...** .

1 home / 7.30 → work / 8.15
....I left home at 7.30 and got to work at 8.15....
2 London / 10.15 → Bristol / 11.45
I left London at 10.15 and ....
3 the party / 11.15 → home / midnight
....
4 *Write a sentence about yourself.*
I left ....

56.5 Write **got in** / **got out of** / **got on** / **got off**.

1 Kate ....got in.... the car and drove away.
2 I .... the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
3 Isabel .... the car, shut the door and went into a shop.
4 I made a stupid mistake. I .... the wrong train.

Unit
57

do and make

A

Do is a general word for actions:

○ What are you **doing** this evening? (*not* What are you making?)
○ 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll **do** it.'
○ Rachel's job is very boring. She **does** the same thing every day.
○ I **did** a lot of things yesterday.

What do you do? = What's your job?:

○ 'What do you **do**?' 'I work in a bank.'

B

Make = produce/create. For example:

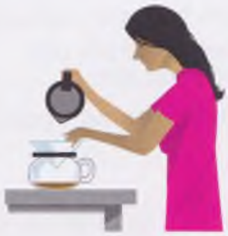
She's **making** coffee.

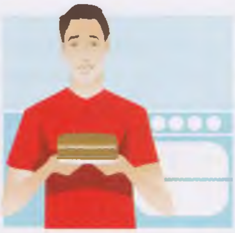
He has **made** a cake.

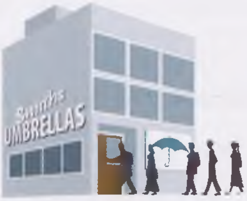

They **make** umbrellas.

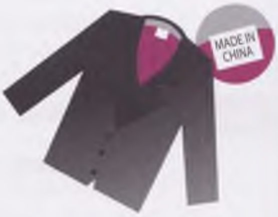

It was **made** in China.

Compare **do** and **make**:

○ I **did** a lot yesterday. I **cleaned** my room, I **wrote** some letters and I **made** a cake.
○ A: What do you **do** in your free time? Sport? Reading? Hobbies?
B: I **make** clothes. I **make** dresses and jackets. I also **make** toys for my children.

C

Expressions with **do**

do	an exam / a test
	a course
	homework
	housework
	somebody a favour
	an exercise

○ I'm **doing my driving test** next week.
○ John has just **done a training course**.
○ Our children have to **do** a lot of **homework**.
○ I hate **doing housework**, especially cleaning.
○ Sue, could you **do me a favour**?
○ I go for a run and **do exercises** every morning.

also **do the shopping** / **do the washing** / **do the washing-up** / **do the ironing** / **do the cooking** etc.:

○ I **did the washing**, but I didn't **do the shopping**.

D

Expressions with **make**

make	a mistake
	an appointment
	a phone call
	a list
	a noise
	a bed

○ I'm sorry, I **made a mistake**.
○ I need to **make an appointment** to see the doctor.
○ Excuse me, I have to **make a phone call**.
○ Have you **made a shopping list**?
○ It's late. Don't **make a noise**.
○ Sometimes I forget to **make my bed** in the morning.

We say **make a film** *but* **take a photo** / **take a picture**:

○ When was **this film made**?
but ○ When was **this photo taken**?

do/does/did (negatives and questions) → **Units 43–44** **make** somebody do something → **Unit 53**

Exercises

57.1 Write **make/making/made** or **do/doing/did/done.**

1 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll ..do.. it.'
2 What did you .... at the weekend? Did you go away?
3 Do you know how to .... bread?
4 Paper is .... from wood.
5 *Richard didn't help me. He sat in an armchair and .... nothing.*
6 'What do you ....?' 'I'm a doctor.'
7 I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you .... it?
8 'What do they .... in that factory?' 'Shoes.'
9 I'm .... some coffee. Would you like some?
10 Why are you angry with me? I didn't .... anything wrong.
11 'What are you .... tomorrow afternoon?' 'I'm working.'

57.2 What are these people doing?

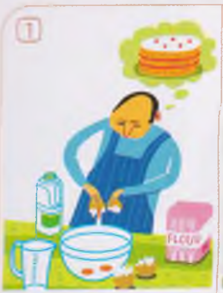

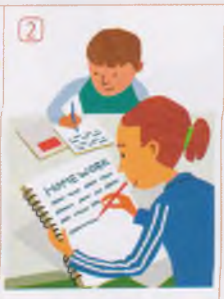

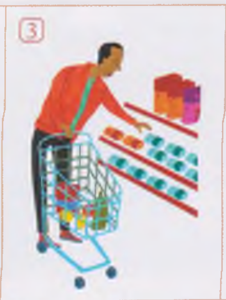

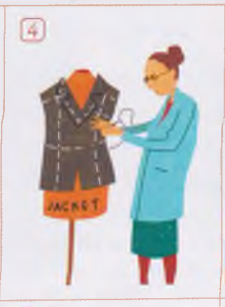

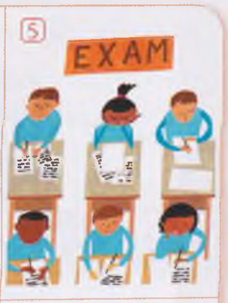

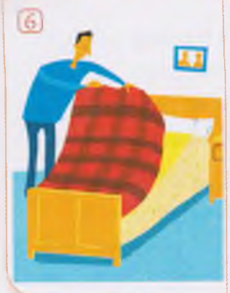

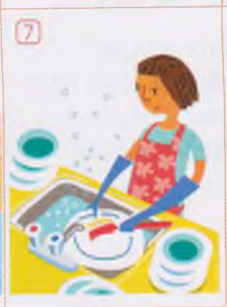

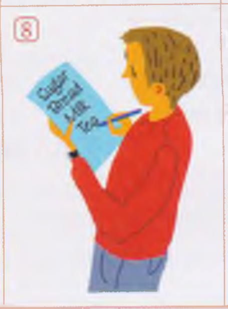

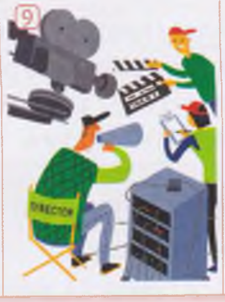

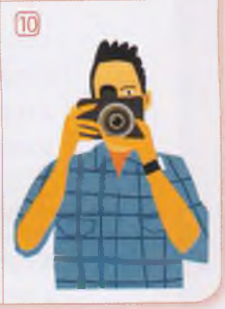

1 He's making a cake.
2 They ....
3 He ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....

57.3 Write **make** or **do** in the correct form.

1 I hate ..doing.. housework, especially cleaning.
2 Why do you always .... the same mistake?
3 'Can you .... me a favour?' 'It depends what it is.'
4 'Have you .... your homework?' 'Not yet.'
5 I need to see the dentist, but I haven't .... an appointment.
6 I'm .... a course in photography at the moment. It's very good.
7 The last time I .... an exam was ten years ago.
8 How many phone calls did you .... yesterday?
9 When you've finished Exercise 1, you can .... Exercise 2.
10 There's something wrong with the car. The engine is .... a strange noise.
11 It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I've ever ....
12 Let's .... a list of all the things we have to .... today.

Unit 58

have

A

have and **have got**

I have (something) or **I've got** (something) = it is mine:

- I **have** a new car. *or* I**'ve got** a new car.
- Sue **has** long hair. *or* Sue **has got** long hair.
- **Do** they **have** any children? *or* **Have** they **got** any children?
- Tom **doesn't have** a job. *or* Tom **hasn't got** a job.
- How much time **do** you **have**? *or* How much time **have** you **got**?

also

I **have** I**'ve got**	a headache / (a) toothache / a pain (in my leg etc.) a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a temperature / flu etc.

- I **have** a headache. *or* I**'ve got** a headache.
- **Do** you **have** a cold? *or* **Have** you **got** a cold?

The past is **I had** (without **got**) / **I didn't have** / **Did you have**? etc. :

- When I first met Sue, she **had** short hair.
- He **didn't have** any money because he **didn't have** a job.
- **Did** you **have** enough time to do everything you wanted?

B

have breakfast / **have a shower** etc.

In these expressions **have** = eat/drink/take etc. You can't use 'have got'.

have	breakfast / lunch / dinner a meal / a sandwich / a pizza etc. a cup of coffee / a glass of milk etc. something to eat/drink

- 'Where's Lisa?' 'She**'s having** lunch.'
- I **don't** usually **have** breakfast.
- I **had** three cups of coffee this morning.
- '**Have** a biscuit!' 'Oh, thank you.'

We also use **have** (*not* have got) in these expressions:

have	a bath / a shower a rest / a holiday / a party a nice time / a good trip / fun etc. a walk / a swim / a game (of tennis etc.) a dream / an accident a baby a look (at something)

- I **had** a shower this morning.
- We**'re having** a party next week. You must come.
- Enjoy your holiday. **Have** a nice time!
- **Did** you **have** a good time in Tokyo?
- Sandra **has** just **had** a baby.
- Can I **have** a look at your magazine?

C

Compare:

Have *or* **have got**

- I **have** / I**'ve got** a new shower. It's very good.

Have (*not* **have got**)

- I **have** a shower every morning.
  (*not* I**'ve got** a shower every morning)
- A: Where's Paul?
  B: He**'s having** a shower.
  (= he's washing now)

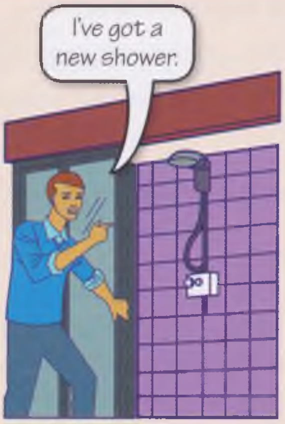

I've got a new shower.

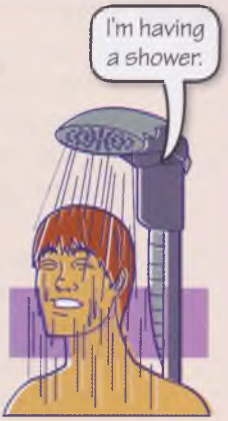

I'm having a shower.

I have / **I've got** ➜ Unit 9   **I've** (**done**) (present perfect) ➜ Units 15–18   **I have to** ... ➜ Unit 33

Exercises

58.1 Write the correct form of **have** or **have got**.

1 ....I didn't have.... time to do the shopping yesterday. (I / not / have)
2 '....Has Lisa got (OR Does Lisa have).... a car?' 'No, she can't drive.' (Lisa / have?)
3 He can't open the door. .... a key. (he / not / have)
4 .... a cold last week. He's better now. (Gary / have)
5 What's wrong? .... a headache? (you / have?)
6 We wanted to go by taxi, but .... enough money. (we / not / have)
7 Laura is very busy. .... much free time. (she / not / have)
8 .... any problems when you were on holiday? (you / have?)

58.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list:

a bath ~~**breakfast**~~ **a cup of tea** **dinner** **a good time** **a rest**

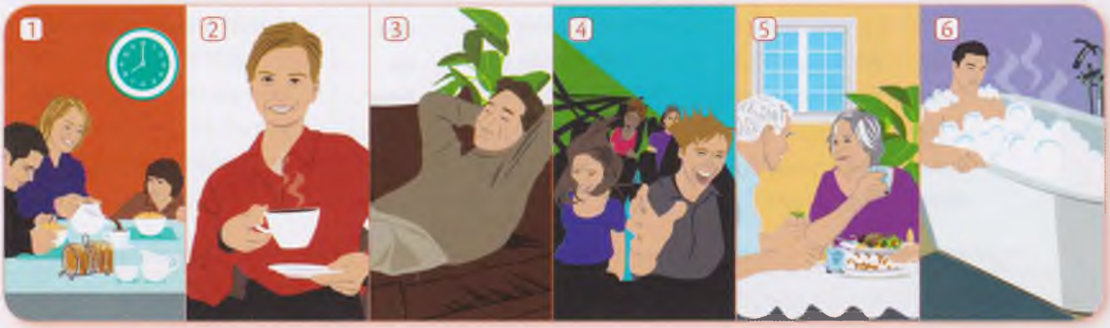

1 ....They're having breakfast....
2 She ....
3 He ....
4 They ....
5 ....
6 ....

58.3 What do you say in these situations? Use **have**.

1 Emily is going on holiday. What do you say to her before she goes?
Have a nice holiday!
2 You meet Clare at the airport. She has just got off her plane. Ask her about the flight.
Did you have a good flight?
3 Tom is going on a long trip. What do you say to him before he leaves?
....
4 It's Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.
....
5 Paul has just come home after playing tennis with a friend. Ask him about the game.
....
6 Rachel is going out this evening. What do you say to her before she goes?
....
7 Mark has just returned from holiday. Ask him about his holiday.
....

58.4 Complete the sentences. Use **have/had** and choose from the list.

an accident **a glass of water** **a look** **a walk** ~~**a party**~~ **something to eat**

1 We ....had a party.... a few weeks ago. We invited 50 people.
2 'Shall we ....?' 'No, I'm not hungry.'
3 I was thirsty, so I ....
4 I like to get up early and .... before breakfast.
5 Tina is a very good driver. She has never ....
6 There's something wrong with the engine of my car. Can you .... at it?

Unit
59

I/me he/him they/them etc.

A

People

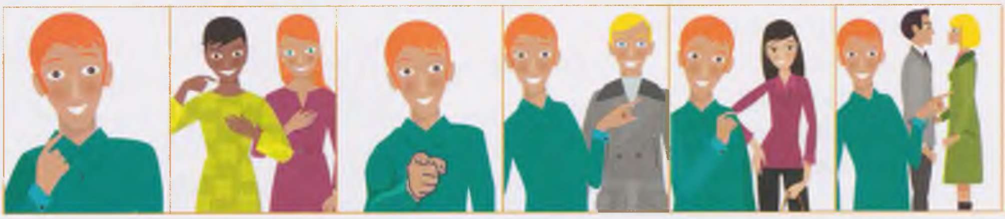

subject	**I**	**we**	**you**	**he**	**she**	**they**
object	**me**	**us**	**you**	**him**	**her**	**them**

subject	
I	**I** know Tom.
we	**We** know Tom.
you	**You** know Tom.
he	**He** knows Tom.
she	**She** knows Tom.
they	**They** know Tom.

	object
Tom knows **me**.	**me**
Tom knows **us**.	**us**
Tom knows **you**.	**you**
Tom knows **him**.	**him**
Tom knows **her**.	**her**
Tom knows **them**.	**them**

B

Things

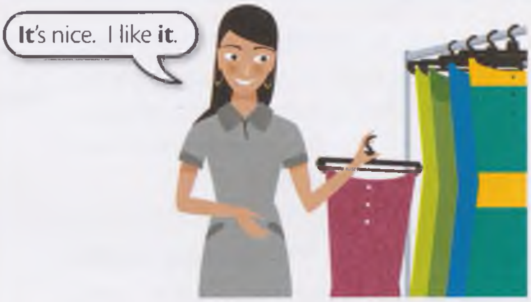
It's nice. I like **it**.

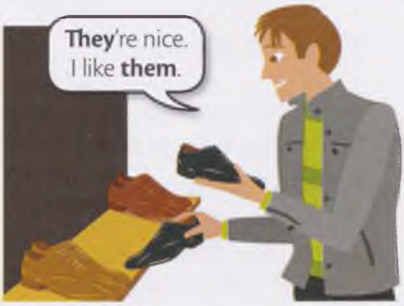
They're nice. I like **them**.

subject	**it**	**they**
object	**it**	**them**

- ○ I don't want **this book**. You can have **it**.
- ○ I don't want **these books**. You can have **them**.
- ○ Kate never drinks **milk**. She doesn't like **it**.
- ○ I never go to **parties**. I don't like **them**.

C

We use **me/her/them** etc. (object) after a *preposition* (**for/to/with** etc.):

- ○ This letter isn't **for me**. It's **for you**.
- ○ Who is that woman? Why are you looking **at her**?
- ○ We're going to the cinema. Do you want to come **with us**?
- ○ Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go **with them**?
- ○ 'Where's the newspaper?' 'You're sitting **on it**.'

give it/them to … :

- ○ I want that book. Please give **it to me**.
- ○ Robert needs these books. Can you give **them to him**, please?

my/his/their etc. ➜ **Unit 60** **Give me that book / Give it to me** ➜ **Unit 96**

Exercises

59.1 Complete the sentences with **him/her/them**.

1 I don't know those girls. Do you know ...them... ?
2 I don't know that man. Do you know .... ?
3 I don't know those people. Do you know .... ?
4 I don't know David's wife. Do you know .... ?
5 I don't know Mr Stevens. Do you know .... ?
6 I don't know Sarah's parents. Do you know .... ?
7 I don't know the woman in the black coat. Do you know .... ?

59.2 Complete the sentences. Use **I/me/you/she/her** etc.

1 **I** want to see **her**, but ...she... doesn't want to see ...me... .
2 **They** want to see **me**, but .... don't want to see ....
3 **She** wants to see **him**, but .... doesn't want to see ....
4 **We** want to see **them**, but .... don't want to see ....
5 **He** wants to see **us**, but .... don't want to see ....
6 **They** want to see **her**, but .... doesn't want to see ....
7 **I** want to see **them**, but .... don't want to see ....
8 **You** want to see **her**, but .... doesn't want to see ....

59.3 Write sentences beginning **I like ... , I don't like ...** or **Do you like ... ?**

1 I don't eat tomatoes. ...I don't like them... .
2 George is a very nice man. I like ....
3 This jacket isn't very nice. I don't ....
4 This is my new car. Do .... ?
5 Mrs Clark is not very friendly. I ....
6 These are my new shoes. .... ?

59.4 Complete the sentences. Use **I/me/he/him** etc.

1 Who is that woman? Why are you looking at ...her... ?
2 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I work with ....'
3 Where are the tickets? I can't find ....
4 I can't find my keys. Where are .... ?
5 We're going out. You can come with ....
6 I've got a new motorbike. Do you want to see .... ?
7 Maria likes music. .... plays the piano.
8 I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of ....
9 I'm talking to you. Please listen to ....
10 Where is Anna? I want to talk to ....
11 You can have these CDs. I don't want ....
12 My brother has a new job, but .... doesn't like .... very much.

59.5 *Complete the sentences.*

1 I need that book. Can you ...give it to me... ?
2 He wants the key. Can you give .... ?
3 She wants the keys. Can you .... ?
4 I need my bag. Can you .... ?
5 They want the money. Can you .... ?
6 We want the pictures. Can you .... ?

Unit
60

my/his/their etc.

A

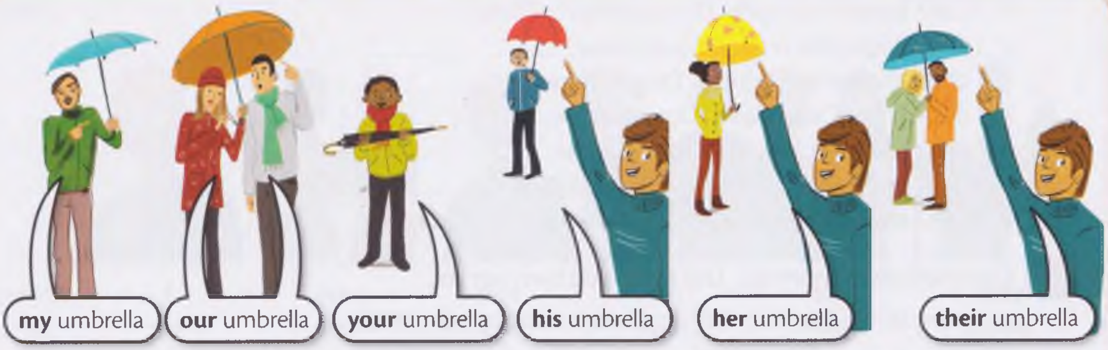
my umbrella
our umbrella
your umbrella
his umbrella
her umbrella
their umbrella

I	→	**my**
we	→	**our**
you	→	**your**
he	→	**his**
she	→	**her**
they	→	**their**

I	like	**my**	house.
We	like	**our**	house.
You	like	**your**	house.
He	likes	**his**	house.
She	likes	**her**	house.
They	like	**their**	house.

it → **its**

Oxford (= **it**) is famous for **its** university.

We use **my/your/his** etc. + *noun*:

my hands	**his** new **car**	**her parents**
our clothes	**your** best **friend**	**their room**

B

his/her/their

AMY

her car
(= Amy's car)

her husband
(= Amy's husband)

her children
(= Amy's children)

ANDY

his bike

his sister

his parents

MR AND MRS LEE

their son

their daughter

their children

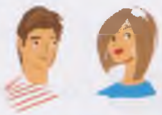

C

its and it's

its Oxford is famous for **its** university.
it's (= it **is**) I like Oxford. **It's** a nice place. (= It **is** a nice place.)

mine/yours etc. → Unit 61 **I/me/my/mine** → Unit 62

Exercises

60.1 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1 I'm going to wash ..my hands.. .
2 She's going to wash .... hands.
3 We're going to wash ....
4 He's going to wash ....
5 They're going to wash ....
6 Are you going to wash .... ?

60.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1 He ..lives with his parents.. .
2 They live with .... parents.
3 We .... parents.
4 Martina lives ....
5 I .... parents.
6 John ....
7 Do you live .... ?
8 Most children ....

60.3 Look at the family tree, and complete the sentences with **his/her/their.**

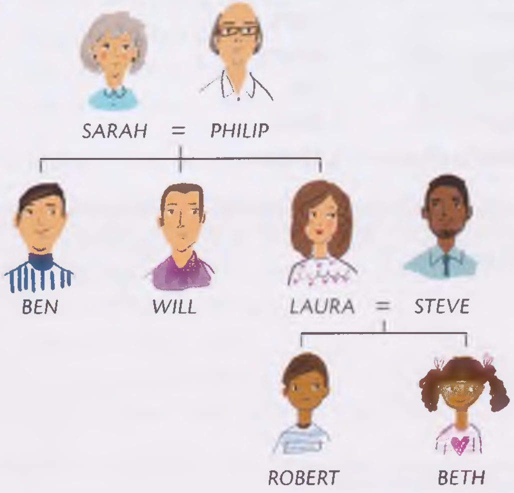

1 I saw Sarah with ..her.. husband, Philip.
2 I saw Laura and Steve with .... children.
3 I saw Steve with .... wife, Laura.
4 I saw Ben with .... brother, Will.
5 I saw Laura with .... brother, Will.
6 I saw Sarah and Philip with .... son, Will.
7 I saw Laura with .... parents.
8 I saw Beth and Robert with .... parents.

60.4 Write **my/our/your/his/her/their/its.**

1 Do you like ..your.. job?
2 I know Mr Watson, but I don't know .... wife.
3 Alice and Tom live in London. .... son lives in Australia.
4 We're going to have a party. We're going to invite all .... friends.
5 Anna is going out with .... friends this evening.
6 I like tennis. It's .... favourite sport.
7 'Is that .... car?' 'No, I don't have a car.'
8 I want to contact Maria. Do you know .... number?
9 Do you think most people are happy in .... jobs?
10 I'm going to wash .... hair before I go out.
11 This is a beautiful tree. .... leaves are a beautiful colour.
12 John has a brother and a sister. .... brother is 25, and .... sister is 21.

60.5 Complete the sentences. Use **my/his/their** etc. with these words:

coat **homework** **house** **husband** ~~**job**~~ **key** **name**

1 James doesn't enjoy ..his job.. . It's not very interesting.
2 I can't get in. I don't have ....
3 Sally is married. .... works in a bank.
4 Please take off .... and sit down.
5 'What are the children doing?' 'They're doing ....'
6 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, but I don't know ....'
7 We live in Barton Street. .... is at the end on the left.

Unit 61

Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers etc.

A

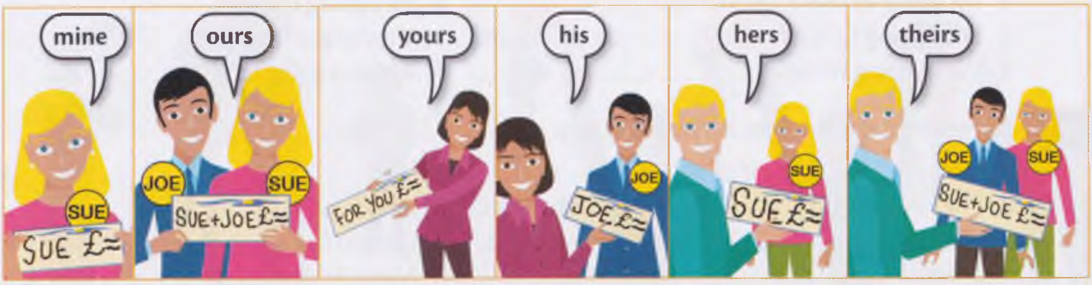

I	→	**my**	→	**mine**
we	→	**our**	→	**ours**
you	→	**your**	→	**yours**
he	→	**his**	→	**his**
she	→	**her**	→	**hers**
they	→	**their**	→	**theirs**

It's **my** money.	It's **mine**.
It's **our** money.	It's **ours**.
It's **your** money.	It's **yours**.
It's **his** money.	It's **his**.
It's **her** money.	It's **hers**.
It's **their** money.	It's **theirs**.

B

We use **my/your** etc. + *noun* (**my hands** / **your book** etc.):

- **My hands** are cold.
- Is this **your book**?
- Helen gave me **her umbrella**.
- It's **their problem**, not **our problem**.

We use **mine/yours** etc. without a noun:

- Is this book **mine** or **yours**? (= my book or your book)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Sarah gave me **hers**. (= her umbrella)
- It's their problem, not **ours**. (= not our problem)
- We went in our car, and they went in **theirs**. (= their car)

You can use **his** with or without a noun:

- 'Is this **his camera** or **hers**?' 'It's **his**.'

C

a friend **of mine** / a friend **of his** / some friends **of yours** etc.

- I went out to meet a friend **of mine**. (*not* a friend of me)
- Tom was in the restaurant with a friend **of his**. (*not* a friend of him)
- Are those people friends **of yours**? (*not* friends of you)

D

Whose ... ?

- **Whose phone** is this? (= Is it your phone? his phone? my phone? etc.)

You can use **whose** with or without a noun:

- **Whose money** is this?
  Whose is this? } It's mine.
- **Whose shoes** are these?
  Whose are these? } They're John's.

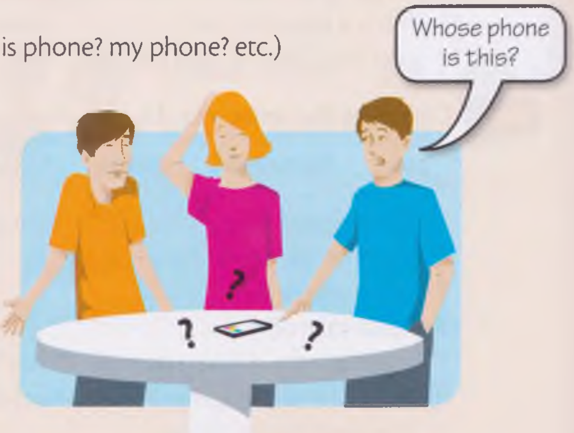

my/his/their etc. ➜ Unit 60 I/me/my/mine ➜ Unit 62 Kate's camera / my brother's car ➜ Unit 64

Exercises

61.1 Complete the sentences with **mine/yours** etc.

1 It's your money. It's yours.
2 It's my bag. It's ....
3 It's our car. It's ....
4 They're her shoes. They're ....
5 It's their house. It's ....
6 They're your books. They're ....
7 They're my glasses. They're ....
8 It's his coat. It's ....

61.2 Choose the right word.

1 It's their/~~theirs~~ problem, not ~~our~~/ours. (their *and* ours *are right*)
2 This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?
3 That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.
4 Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?
5 Catherine is going out with her/hers friends this evening.
6 My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.
7 They have two children, but I don't know their/theirs names.
8 Can we use your washing machine? Our/Ours isn't working.

61.3 Complete these sentences. Use **friend(s) of mine/yours** etc.

1 I went to the cinema with a friend of mine.
2 They went on holiday with some friends of theirs.
3 She's going out with a friend ....
4 We had dinner with some ....
5 I played tennis with a ....
6 Tom is going to meet a ....
7 Do you know those people? Are they .... ?

61.4 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?

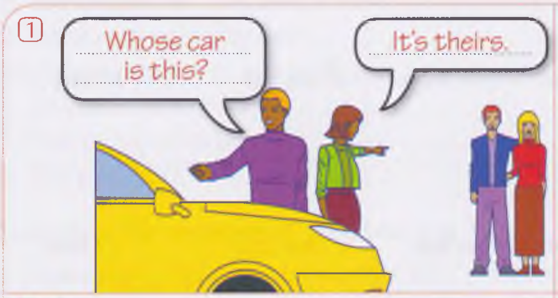
1
Whose car is this?
It's theirs.

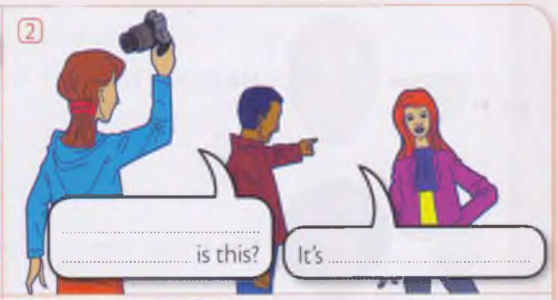
2
.... is this?
It's ....

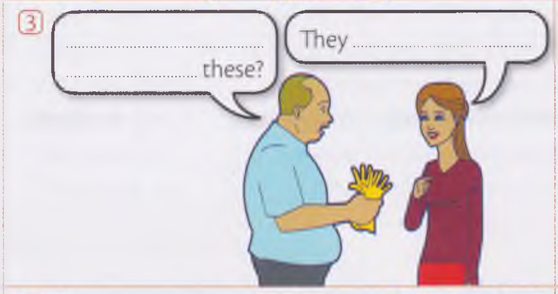
3
.... these?
They ....

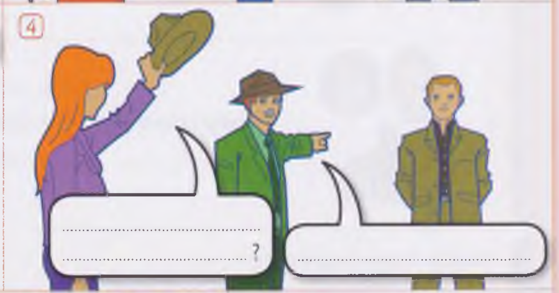

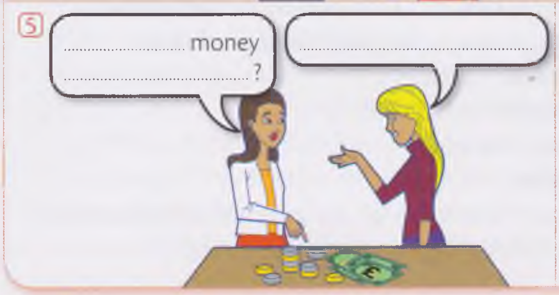

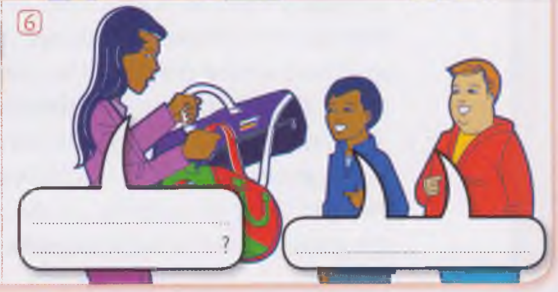

Unit
62

I/me/my/mine

A

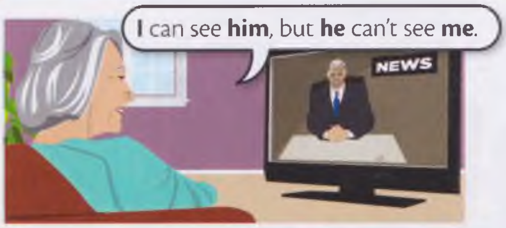
I can see **him**, but **he** can't see **me**.
NEWS

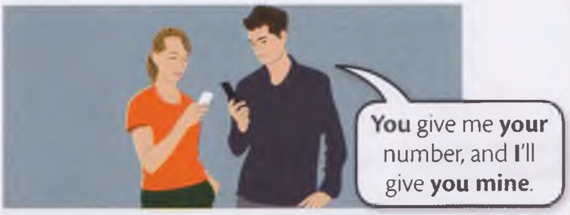
You give me **your** number, and **I'll** give **you mine**.

	I etc. (→ Unit 59)	**me** etc. (→ Unit 59)	**my** etc. (→ Unit 60)	**mine** etc. (→ Unit 61)
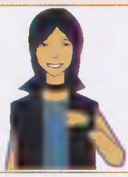	**I** know Tom.	Tom knows **me**.	It's **my** car.	It's **mine**.
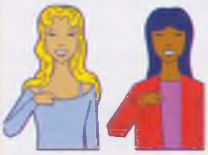	**We** know Tom.	Tom knows **us**.	It's **our** car.	It's **ours**.
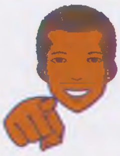	**You** know Tom.	Tom knows **you**.	It's **your** car.	It's **yours**.
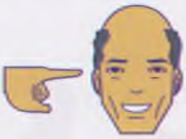	**He** knows Tom.	Tom knows **him**.	It's **his** car.	It's **his**.
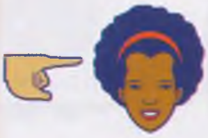	**She** knows Tom.	Tom knows **her**.	It's **her** car.	It's **hers**.
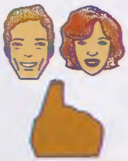	**They** know Tom.	Tom knows **them**.	It's **their** car.	It's **theirs**.

B

Study these examples:

- 'Do **you** know that man?' 'Yes, **I** know **him**, but **I** can't remember **his name**.'
- **She** was very pleased because **we** invited **her** to stay with **us** at **our house**.
- A: Where are the children? Have **you** seen them?
  B: Yes, **they** are playing with **their friends** in the park.
- That's **my pen**. Can **you** give it to **me**, please?
- 'Is this **your umbrella**?' 'No, it's **yours**.'
- **He** didn't have an umbrella, so **she** gave **him hers**. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- **I'm** going out with a friend of **mine** this evening. (*not* a friend of me)

myself/yourself etc. ➜ **Unit 63** **Give me that book / Give it to me** ➜ **Unit 96**

Exercises

62.1 Answer the questions in the same way.

1

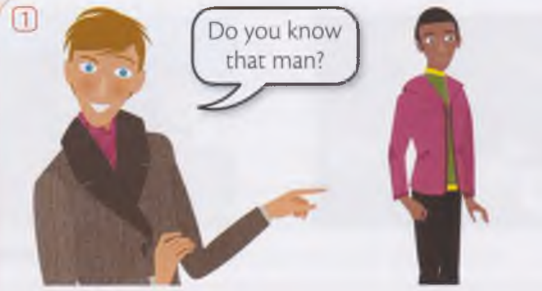
Do you know that man?

Yes, ...I know him, but I can't remember his name.... .

2

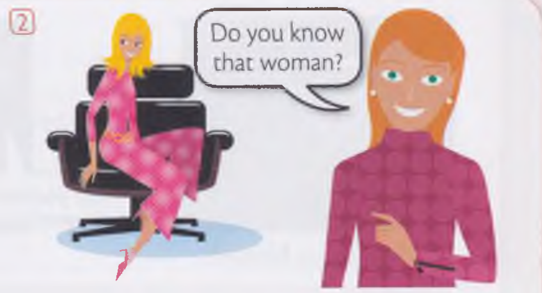
Do you know that woman?

Yes, I know .... but I can't remember ....

3

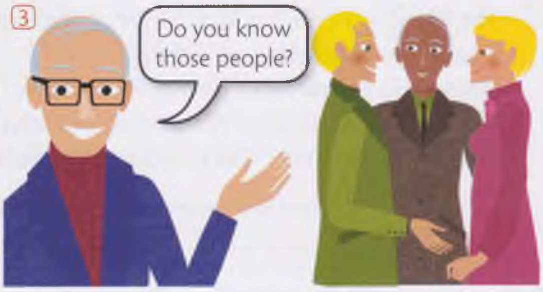
Do you know those people?

Yes, I ...., but I .... names.

4

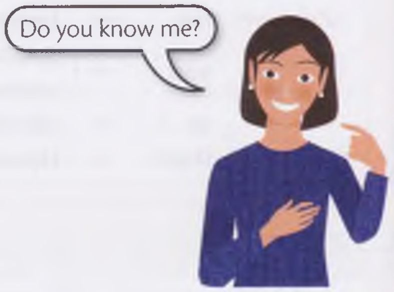
Do you know me?

Yes, I ...., but ....

62.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1 We invited her ....to stay with us at our house.... .
2 He invited us to stay with .... at his house.
3 They invited me to stay with .... house.
4 I invited them to stay .... house.
5 She invited us to stay .... house.
6 Did you invite him .... house?

62.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1 I gave him ....my.... phone number, and ....he gave me his.... .
2 I gave her ....my.... phone number, and she gave me ....
3 He gave me ....his.... phone number, and I gave ....
4 We gave them .... phone number, and they gave ....
5 She gave him .... phone number, and he gave ....
6 You gave us .... phone number, and we gave ....
7 They gave you .... phone number, and you gave ....

62.4 Write **him/her/yours** etc.

1 Where's Amanda? Have you seen ....her.... ?
2 Where are my keys? Where did I put .... ?
3 This book belongs to Ben. Can you give it to .... ?
4 We don't see .... neighbours much. They're not at home very often.
5 'I can't find my phone. Can I use .... ?' 'Yes, of course.'
6 We're going to the cinema. Why don't you come with .... ?
7 Did your sister pass .... exams?
8 Some people talk about .... work all the time.
9 Last night I went out for a meal with a friend of ....

Unit
63

myself/yourself/themselves etc.

A

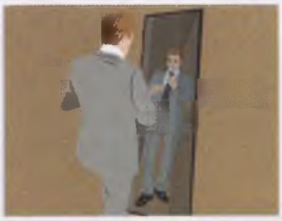

He's looking at **himself**.

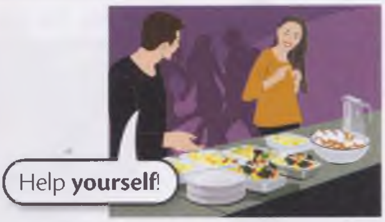
Help **yourself**!

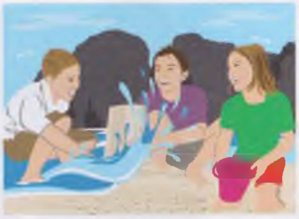

They're enjoying **themselves**.

I → **me** → **myself**
he → **him** → **himself**
she → **her** → **herself**
you → **you** → { **yourself** / **yourselves** }
we → **us** → **ourselves**
they → **them** → **themselves**

- **I** looked at **myself** in the mirror.
- **He** cut **himself** with a knife.
- **She** fell off her bike, but she didn't hurt **herself**.
- Please help **yourself**. *(one person)*
- Please help **yourselves**. *(two or more people)*
- We had a good holiday. **We** enjoyed **ourselves**.
- They had a nice time. **They** enjoyed **themselves**.

B

Compare:

me/him/them etc.

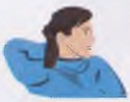

She is looking at **him**.
different people

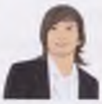

- You never talk to **me**.
- I didn't pay for **them**.
- I'm sorry. Did I hurt **you**?

myself/himself/themselves etc.

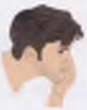

He is looking at **himself**.
the same person

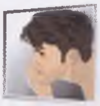

- Sometimes I talk to **myself**.
- They paid for **themselves**.
- Be careful. Don't hurt **yourself**.

C

by myself / **by yourself** etc. = alone:

- I went on holiday **by myself**. (= I went alone)
- 'Was she with friends?' 'No, she was **by herself**.'

D

each other

- Kate and Helen are good friends. They know **each other** well. (= Kate knows Helen / Helen knows Kate)
- Paul and I live near **each other**. (= he lives near me / I live near him)

Compare **each other** and **-selves**:

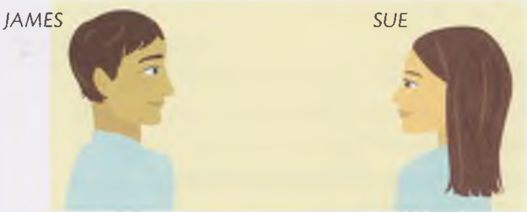

- James and Sue looked at **each other**. (= he looked at her, she looked at him)

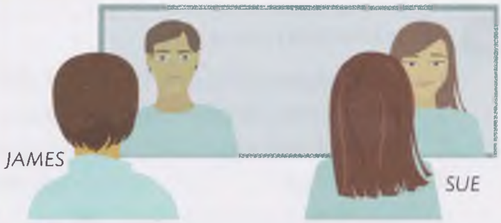

- James and Sue looked at **themselves**. (= he looked at himself, she looked at herself)

me/him/them etc. ➜ Unit 59

Exercises

63.1 Complete the sentences with **myself/yourself** etc.

1 He looked at ....himself.......... in the mirror.
2 I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with ....
3 Karen had a good time in Australia. She enjoyed ....
4 My friends had a good time in Australia. They enjoyed ....
5 I picked up a very hot plate and burnt ....
6 He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about ....
7 I want to know more about you. Tell me about .... *(one person)*
8 Goodbye! Have a good trip and take care of .... ! *(two people)*

63.2 Write sentences with **by myself / by yourself** etc.

1 I went on holiday alone. ....I went on holiday by myself..........
2 When I saw him, he was alone. When I saw him, he ....
3 Don't go out alone. Don't ....
4 I went to the cinema alone. I ....
5 My sister lives alone. My sister ....
6 Many people live alone. Many people ....

63.3 Write sentences with **each other**.

1
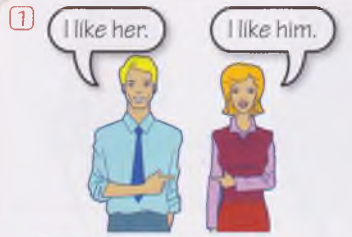
I like her.
I like him.

They like each other.

2
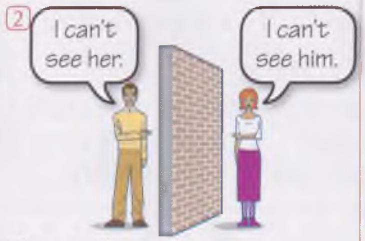
I can't see her.
I can't see him.

They can't ....
....

3
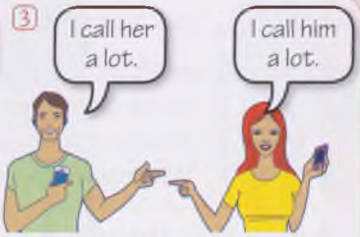
I call her a lot.
I call him a lot.

They ....
....

4
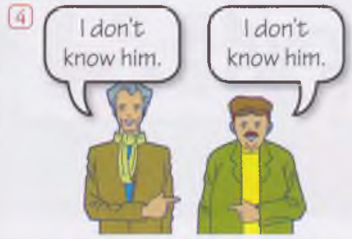
I don't know him.
I don't know him.

....
....

5
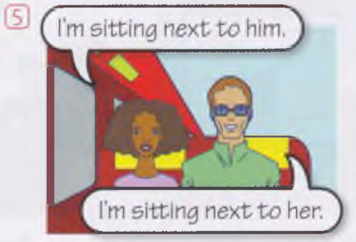
I'm sitting next to him.
I'm sitting next to her.

....
....

6
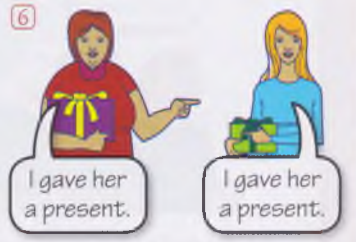
I gave her a present.
I gave her a present.

....
....

63.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

each other or **ourselves/yourselves/themselves** or **us/you/them**

1 Paul and I live near ....each other.......... .
2 Who are those people? Do you know ....them.......... ?
3 You can help Tom, and Tom can help you. So you and Tom can help ....
4 There's food in the kitchen. If you and Chris are hungry, you can help ....
5 We didn't go to Emily's party. She didn't invite ....
6 When we go on holiday, we always enjoy ....
7 Helen and Jane were at school together, but they never see .... now.
8 Karen and I are very good friends. We've known .... for a long time.
9 'Did you see Sam and Laura at the party?' 'Yes, but I didn't speak to ....'
10 Many people talk to .... when they're alone.

Unit 64

-'s (**Kate's** camera / **my brother's** car etc.)

A

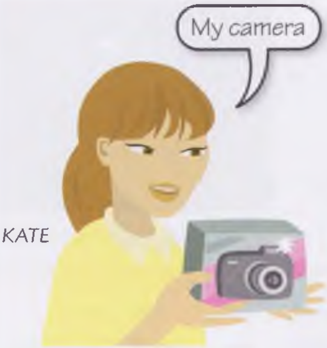

Kate**'s** camera
(**her** camera)

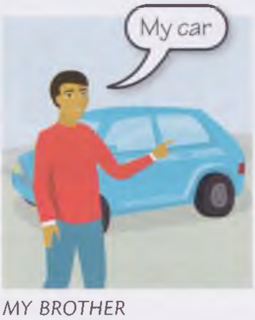

my brother**'s** car
(**his** car)

the manager**'s** office
(**his** *or* **her** office)

We normally use **-'s** for people:

- I stayed at **my sister's** house. (*not* the house of my sister)
- Have you met **Mr Black's** wife? (*not* the wife of Mr Black)
- Are you going to **James's** party?
- Paul is **a man's** name. Paula is **a woman's** name.

You can use **-'s** without a noun after it:

- Sophie's hair is longer than **Kate's**. (= Kate's hair)
- 'Whose umbrella is this?' 'It's **my mother's**.' (= my mother's umbrella)
- 'Where were you last night?' 'I was at **Paul's**.' (= Paul's house)

B

friend's and **friends'**

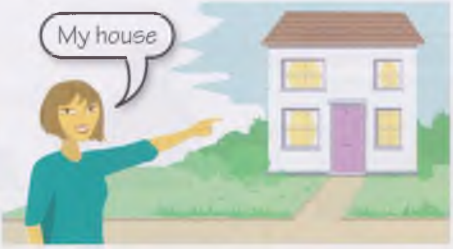

my **friend's** house = *one friend*
(= **his** house or **her** house)

We write **'s** after
friend/**student**/**mother** etc. (*singular*):
my mother**'s** car (*one mother*)
my father**'s** car (*one father*)

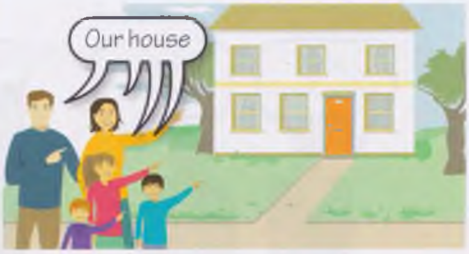

my **friends'** house = *two or more friends*
(= **their** house)

We write **'** after
friend**s**/student**s**/parent**s** etc. (*plural*):
my parent**s'** car (*two parents*)

C

We use **of** ... for things, places etc. :

- Look at the roof **of that building**. (*not* that building's roof)
- We didn't see the beginning **of the film**. (*not* the film's beginning)
- What's the name **of this village**?
- Do you know the cause **of the problem**?
- You can sit in the back **of the car**.
- Madrid is the capital **of Spain**.

mine/yours etc. ➜ **Unit 61** **whose** ... ? ➜ **Unit 61** **-'s** (**he's** / **Kate's** etc.) ➜ **Appendix 4.5**

Exercises

64.1 Look at the family tree. Complete the sentences about the people in the family.

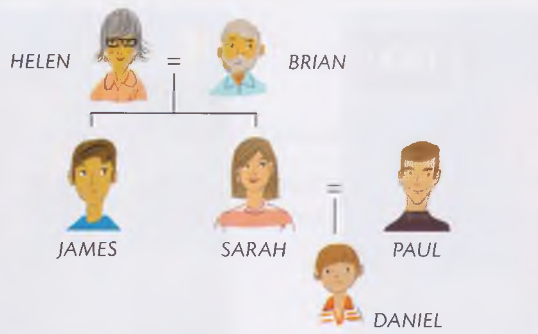

Helen and Brian are married.
They have a son, James, and a daughter, Sarah.
Sarah is married to Paul.
Sarah and Paul have a son, Daniel.

1 Brian is ....Helen's.......... husband.
2 Sarah is Daniel's ....mother.......... .
3 Helen is .... wife.
4 James is Sarah's ....
5 James is .... uncle.
6 Sarah is .... wife.
7 Helen is Daniel's ....
8 Sarah is James's ....
9 Paul is .... husband.
10 Paul is Daniel's ....
11 Daniel is .... nephew.

64.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use one word only.

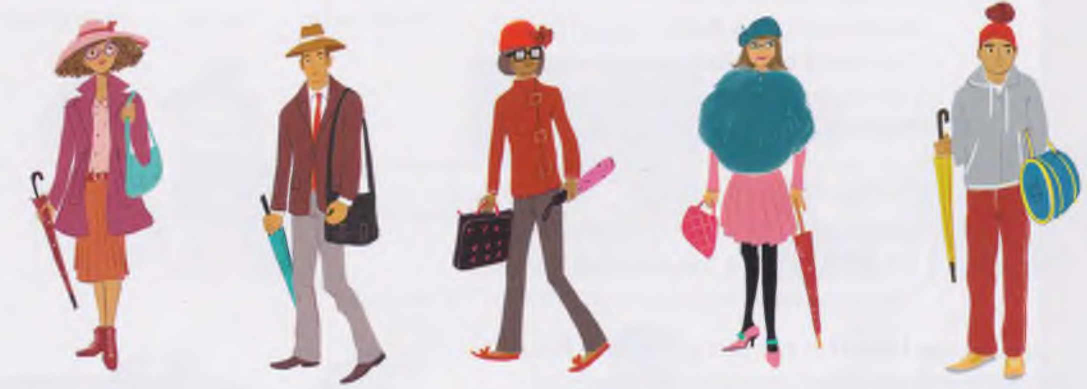

1 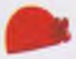 Whose is this? ....Alice's..........
2 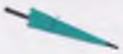 Whose is this? ....
3 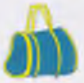 And this? ....
4 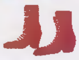 And these? ....
5 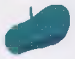 And this? ....
6 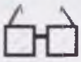 And these? ....

64.3 Are these sentences OK? Change them where necessary.

1 I stayed at the house of my sister. ....my sister's house..........
2 What is the name of this village? ....OK..........
3 Do you like the colour of this coat? ....
4 Do you have the phone number of Simon? ....
5 The job of my brother is very interesting. ....
6 Write your name at the top of the page. ....
7 For me, the morning is the best part of the day. ....
8 The favourite colour of Paula is blue. ....
9 When is the birthday of your mother? ....
10 The house of my parents isn't very big. ....
11 The walls of this house are very thin. ....
12 The car stopped at the end of the street. ....
13 Are you going to the party of Silvia next week? ....
14 The manager of the hotel is not here at the moment ....

Unit 65

a/an ...

A

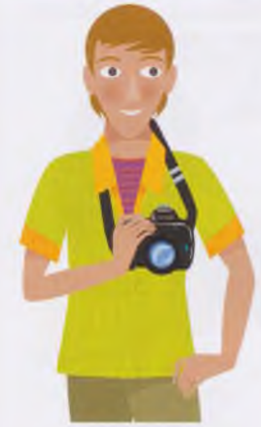
He's got **a** camera.

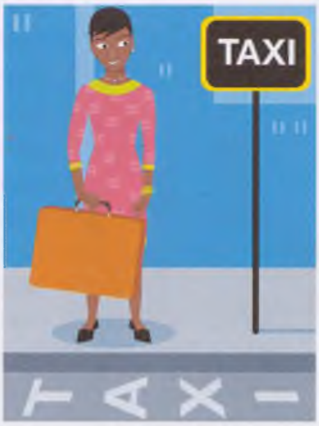

She's waiting for **a** taxi.

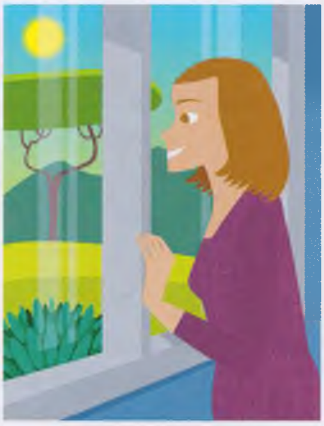
It's **a** beautiful day.

a ... = one thing or person:

- ☐ Rachel works in **a bank**. (*not* in bank)
- ☐ Can I ask **a question**? (*not* ask question)
- ☐ I don't have **a job** at the moment.
- ☐ There's **a woman** at the bus stop.

B

an (*not* a) before **a**/**e**/**i**/**o**/**u**:

- ☐ Do you want **an a**pple or **a b**anana?
- ☐ I'm going to buy **a h**at and **an u**mbrella.
- ☐ There was **an i**nteresting programme on TV last night.

also **an hour** (**h** is not pronounced: an ~~h~~our)
but **a university** (pronounced *yuniversity*)
a European country (pronounced *yuropean*)

another (= **an** + **other**) is one word:

- ☐ Can I have **another** cup of coffee?

C

We use **a/an** ... when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:

- ☐ The sun is **a star**.
- ☐ Football is **a game**.
- ☐ Dallas is **a city in Texas**.
- ☐ A mouse is **an animal**. It's **a small animal**.
- ☐ Joe is **a very nice person**.

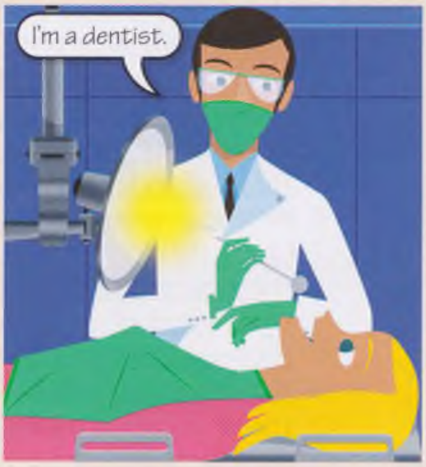
I'm a dentist.

We use **a/an** ... for jobs etc. :

- ☐ A: What's your job?
  B: I'm **a dentist**. (*not* I'm dentist)
- ☐ 'What does Mark do?' 'He's **an engineer**.'
- ☐ Would you like to be **a teacher**?
- ☐ Beethoven was **a composer**.
- ☐ Picasso was **a famous painter**.
- ☐ Are you **a student**?

a car / **some money** (countable/uncountable) ➔ **Units 67–68** **a** and **the** ➔ **Unit 69**

Exercises

65.1 Write **a** or **an**.

1 ....an.... old book
2 .... window
3 .... horse
4 .... airport
5 .... new airport
6 .... organisation
7 .... university
8 .... hour
9 .... economic problem

65.2 What are these things? Choose from the box.

~~bird~~
flower
fruit
game
mountain
planet
river
tool
musical instrument
vegetable

1 A duck is ....a bird...
2 A carrot is ....
3 Tennis is ....
4 A hammer is ....
5 Everest is ....
6 Saturn is ....
7 A banana is ....
8 The Amazon is ....
9 A rose is ....
10 A trumpet is ....

65.3 What are their jobs? Choose from the list and complete the sentences.

architect
electrician
~~dentist~~
nurse
shop assistant
taxi driver
photographer

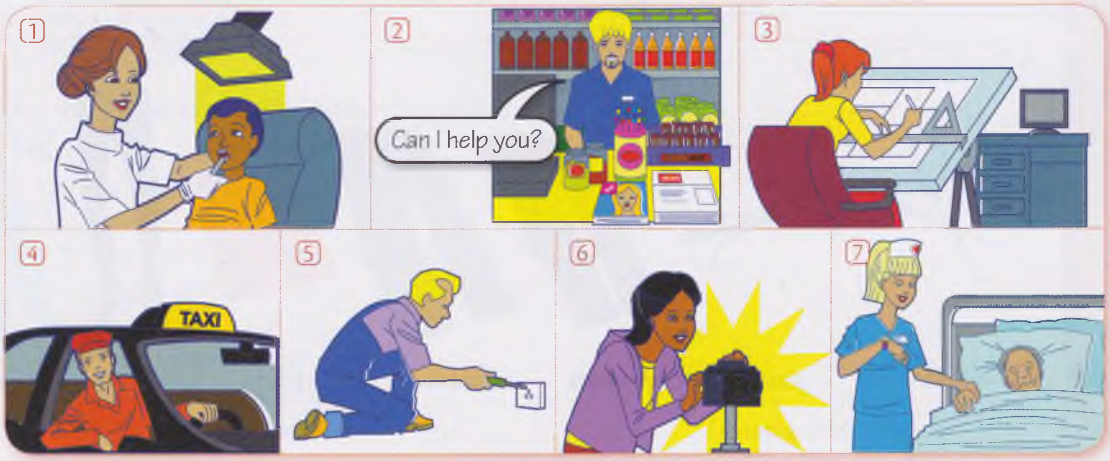

1 ....She's a dentist...
2 He's ....
3 She ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 And you? I'm ....

65.4 Write sentences. Choose from the two boxes. Use **a**/**an** where necessary.

~~I want to ask you~~
Tom never wears
I can't ride
My brother is
Rebecca works in
Jane wants to learn
Mike lives in
This evening I'm going to

+

old house
party
bookshop
hat
artist
~~question~~
foreign language
bike

1 ....I want to ask you a question...
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

Unit
66

train(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)

A

The plural of a noun is usually **-s**:

singular (= one) → *plural* (= two or more)
a flower → some **flowers**
a train → two **trains**
one week → a few **weeks**
a nice place → some nice **places**
this student → these **students**

a flower

some **flowers**

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

-s / **-sh** / **-ch** / **-x**	→	**-es**	bus → buses dish → dishes church → churches box → boxes
		also	potato → potatoes tomato → tomatoes
-y	→	**-ies**	baby → babies dictionary → dictionaries party → parties
but **-ay** / **-ey** / **-oy**		**-ys**	day → days monkey → monkeys boy → boys
-f / **-fe**	→	**-ves**	shelf → shelves knife → knives wife → wives

B

These things are plural:

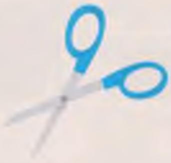

scissors

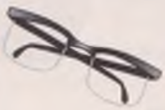

glasses

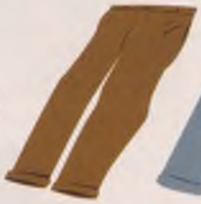

trousers

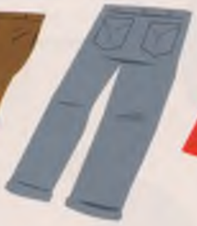

jeans

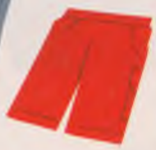

shorts

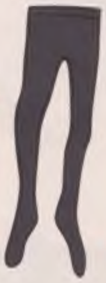

tights

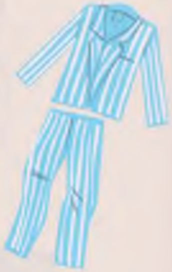

pyjamas

☐ Do you wear **glasses**?
☐ Where **are** the **scissors**? I need **them**.

You can also say **a pair of scissors** / **a pair of trousers** / **a pair of pyjamas** etc. :
☐ I need **a** new **pair of jeans**. *or* I need **some** new **jeans**. (*not* a new jeans)

C

Some plurals do *not* end in **-s**:

this **man** → these **men**
a **woman** → some **women**
a **child** → many **children**

one **foot** → two **feet**
a **tooth** → all my **teeth**
a **mouse** → some **mice**

that **sheep** → those **sheep**
a **fish** → a lot of **fish**

also a **person** → **two people** / **some people** / **a lot of people** etc. :
☐ **She**'s a nice **person**.
but ☐ **They** are nice **people**. (*not* nice persons)

D

People is plural (= they), so we say **people are** / **people have** etc. :
☐ **A lot of people speak** English. (*not* speaks)
☐ I like **the people** here. **They are** very friendly.

Police is plural:
☐ **The police want** to talk to anybody who saw the accident. (*not* The police wants)

Exercises

66.1 Write the plural.

1 flower ......flowers......
2 boat ....
3 woman ....
4 city ....
5 umbrella ....
6 address ....
7 knife ....
8 sandwich ....
9 family ....
10 foot ....
11 holiday ....
12 potato ....

66.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

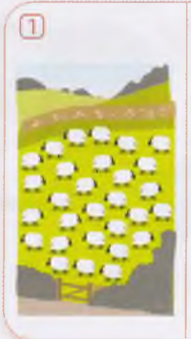

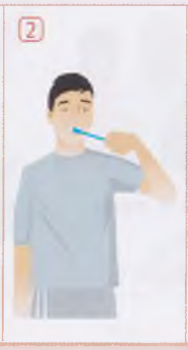

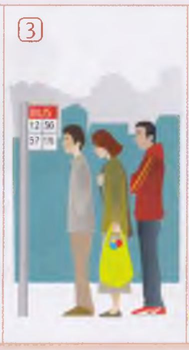

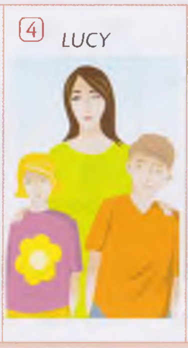

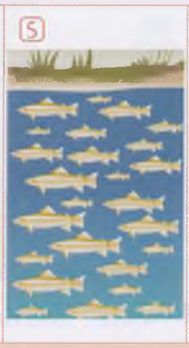

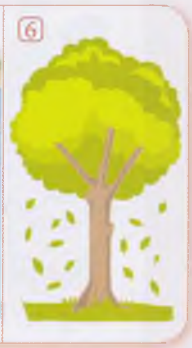

1 There are a lot of ......sheep...... in the field.
2 Gary is cleaning his ....
3 There are three .... at the bus stop.
4 Lucy has two ....
5 There are a lot of .... in the river.
6 The .... are falling from the tree.

66.3 Are these sentences OK? Change the sentences where necessary.

1 I'm going to buy some flowers. ......OK......
2 I need a new jeans. ......I need a new pair of jeans. OR I need some new jeans.......
3 It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree. ....
4 There was a woman in the car with two mens. ....
5 Sheep eat grass. ....
6 David is married and has three childs. ....
7 Most of my friend are student. ....
8 He put on his pyjama and went to bed. ....
9 We went fishing, but we didn't catch many fish. ....
10 Do you know many persons in this town? ....
11 I like your trouser. Where did you get it? ....
12 The town centre is usually full of tourist. ....
13 I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them. ....
14 This scissor isn't very sharp. ....

66.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

1 It's a nice place. Many people ......go...... there on holiday. **go** *or* **goes**?
2 Some people .... always late. **is** *or* **are**?
3 The new city hall is not a beautiful building. Most people .... like it. **don't** *or* **doesn't**?
4 A lot of people .... TV every day. **watch** *or* **watches**?
5 Three people .... injured in the accident. **was** *or* **were**?
6 How many people .... in that house? **live** *or* **lives**?
7 .... the police know the cause of the explosion? **Do** *or* **Does**?
8 The police .... looking for the stolen car. **is** *or* **are**?
9 I need my glasses, but I can't find .... **it** *or* **them**?
10 I'm going to buy .... new jeans today. **a** *or* **some**?

Unit 67

a bottle / some water (countable/uncountable 1)

A

A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*.

Countable nouns

For example: (a) **car** (a) **man** (a) **bottle** (a) **house** (a) **key** (an) **idea** (an) **accident**

You can use **one**/**two**/**three** (etc.) + *countable nouns* (you can count them):

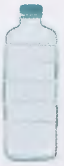

one **bottle**

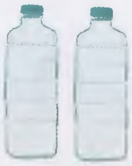

two **bottles**

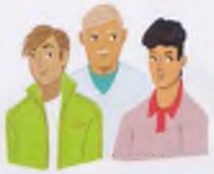

three **men**

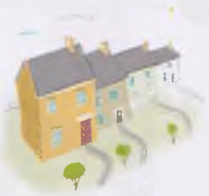

four **houses**

Countable nouns can be *singular* (= one) or *plural* (= two or more):

singular	**a car**	**the car**	**my car**	etc.		
plural	**cars**	**two cars**	**the cars**	**some cars**	**many cars**	etc.

○ I've got **a car**.
○ New **cars** are very expensive.
○ There aren't **many cars** in the car park.

You can't use the singular (**car**/**bottle**/**key** etc.) alone. You need **a**/**an**:

○ We can't get into the house without **a key**. (*not* without key)

B

Uncountable nouns

For example: **water** **air** **rice** **salt** **plastic** **money** **music** **tennis**

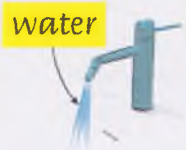

water

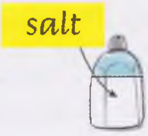

salt

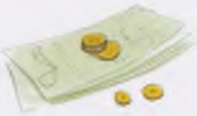

money

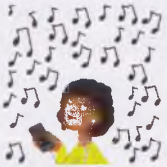

music

You can't say **one**/**two**/**three** (etc.) + these things: ~~one water~~ ~~two musics~~

Uncountable nouns have only *one* form:

money the **money** my **money** some **money** much **money** etc.

○ I've got **some money**.
○ There isn't **much money** in the box.
○ **Money** isn't everything.

You can't use **a**/**an** + *uncountable nouns*: ~~a~~ **money** ~~a~~ **music** ~~a~~ **water**

But you can say **a piece of** ... / **a bottle of** ... etc. + *uncountable noun*:

a bottle of water
a piece of cheese
a bowl of rice
a carton of milk
a bottle of perfume
a cup of coffee
a bar of chocolate
a piece of music
a game of tennis

a/an ➜ Unit 65 countable/uncountable 2 ➜ Unit 68

Exercises

67.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write **a/an** if necessary.
The names of these things are:

bucket
egg
envelope
jug
money
~~**salt**~~
sand
~~**spoon**~~
toothbrush
toothpaste
wallet
water

1
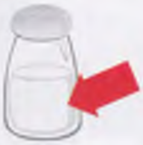
It's salt.

2
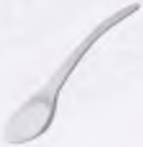
It's a spoon.

3
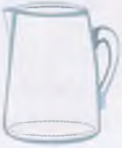
It's ....

4
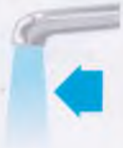
It's ....

5
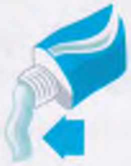
It's ....

6
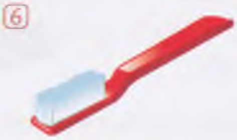
It's ....

7
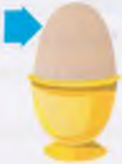
It's ....

8
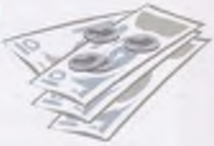
It's ....

9
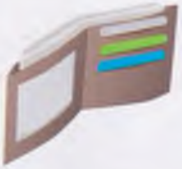
It's ....

10
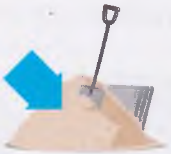
It's ....

11
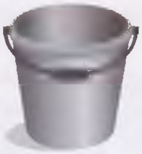
It's ....

12
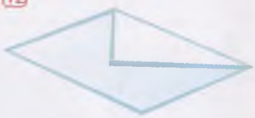
It's ....

67.2 Some of these sentences are OK, but some need **a/an**. Write **a/an** where necessary.

1 I don't have watch. a watch
2 Do you like cheese? OK
3 I never wear hat. ....
4 Are you looking for job? ....
5 Kate doesn't eat meat. ....
6 Kate eats apple every day. ....
7 I'm going to party tonight. ....
8 Music is wonderful thing. ....
9 Jamaica is island. ....
10 I don't need key. ....
11 Everybody needs food. ....
12 I've got good idea. ....
13 Can you drive car? ....
14 Do you want cup of coffee? ....
15 I don't like coffee without milk. ....
16 Don't go out without umbrella. ....

67.3 What are these things? Write **a … of …** for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.

1
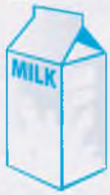

2
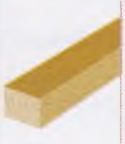

3
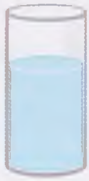

4
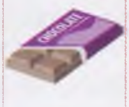

5
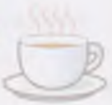

6
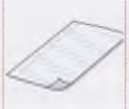

7
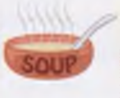

8
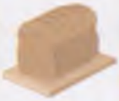

9
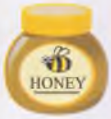

bar
bowl
~~**carton**~~
cup
glass
jar
loaf
piece
piece

+

bread
chocolate
honey
~~**milk**~~
paper
soup
tea
water
wood

1 a carton of milk
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....

Unit 68

a cake / some cake / some cakes (countable/uncountable 2)

A

a/an and **some**

a/an + *singular countable nouns* (**car/apple/shoe** etc.):
- I need **a** new **car**.
- Would you like **an apple**?

an apple

some + *plural countable nouns* (**cars/apples/shoes** etc.):
- I need **some** new **shoes**.
- Would you like **some apples**?

some apples

some + *uncountable nouns* (**water/money/music** etc.):
- I need **some water**.
- Would you like **some cheese**?
  (*or* Would you like **a piece of** cheese?)

some cheese *or*
a piece of cheese

Compare **a** and **some**:
- Nicola bought **a hat**, **some shoes** and **some perfume**.
- I read **a newspaper**, made **some phone calls**, and listened to **some music**.

B

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:

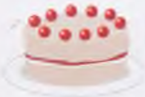
a cake

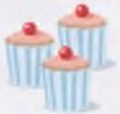
some cakes

some cake *or* **a piece of cake**

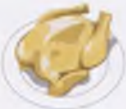
a chicken

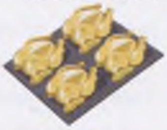
some chickens

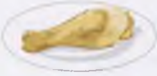
some chicken *or* **a piece of chicken**

Compare **a paper** (= a newspaper) and **some paper**:
- I want something to read. I'm going to buy **a paper**.

but
- I want to make a shopping list. I need **some paper** / **a piece of paper**. (*not* a paper)

C

Be careful with:

advice **bread** **furniture** **hair** **information** **news** **weather** **work**

These nouns are usually uncountable. So you can't say **a/an** ... (~~a bread, an advice~~), and they can't be plural (~~advices, furnitures~~ etc.).
- Can I talk to you? I need **some advice**. (*not* an advice)
- I'm going to buy **some bread**. (*not* a bread)
- They've got **some** nice **furniture** in their house. (*not* furnitures)
- Silvia has very long **hair**. (*not* hairs)
- Where can I get **some information** about hotels here? (*not* informations)
- Listen! I've just had **some** good **news**. (*not* a good news)
- It's nice **weather** today. (*not* a nice weather)
- 'Do you like your job?' 'Yes, but it's hard **work**.' (*not* a hard work)

We say **a job** (*but not* a work):
- I've got **a** new **job**. (*not* a new work)

countable/uncountable 1 ➜ Unit 67 **some** and **any** ➜ Unit 76

Exercises

68.1 What can you see in these pictures? Use **a** or **some**.

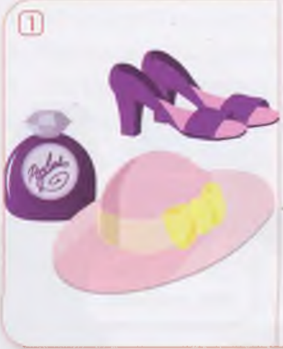

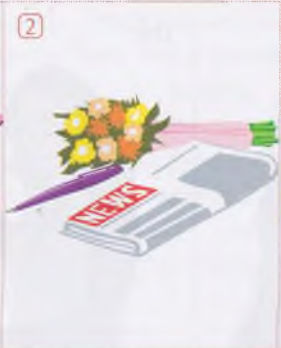

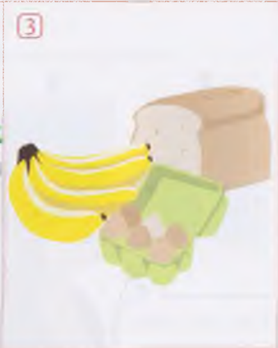

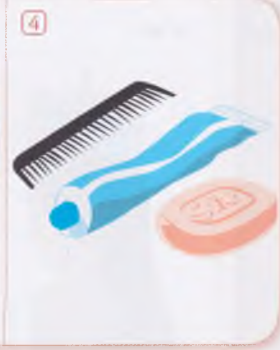

1 some perfume, a hat and some shoes
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....

68.2 Write sentences with **Would you like a ... ?** or **Would you like some ... ?**

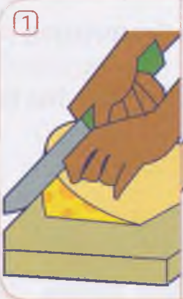

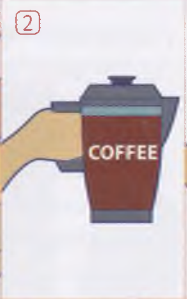

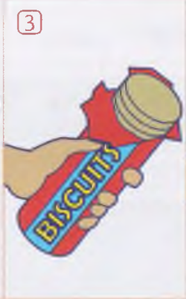

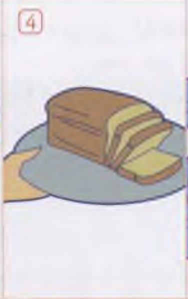

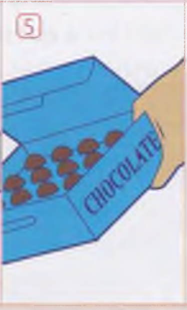

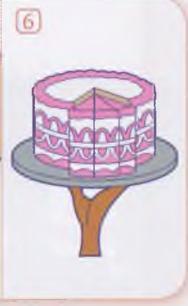

1 Would you like some cheese?
2 Would you like ....?
3 Would ....?
4 ....?
5 ....?
6 ....?

68.3 Write **a/an** or **some**.

1 I read ..a.. book and listened to ..some.. music.
2 I need .... money. I want to buy .... food.
3 We met .... interesting people at the party.
4 I'm going to open .... window to get .... fresh air.
5 Rachel didn't eat much for lunch – only .... apple and .... bread.
6 We live in .... big house. There's .... nice garden with .... beautiful trees.
7 I'm going to make a table. First I need .... wood.
8 Listen to me carefully. I'm going to give you .... advice.
9 I want to make a list of things to do. I need .... paper and .... pen.

68.4 Which is right?

1 I'm going to buy some new shoe/shoes. (*shoes is right*)
2 Mark has brown eye/eyes.
3 Paula has short black hair/hairs.
4 The tour guide gave us some information/informations about the city.
5 We're going to buy some new chair/chairs.
6 We're going to buy some new furniture/furnitures.
7 It's hard to find a work/job at the moment.
8 We had wonderful weather / a wonderful weather when we were on holiday.

Unit 69

a/an and the

A

a/an

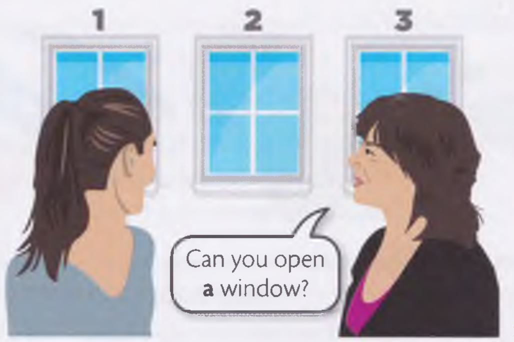
1
2
3
Can you open **a** window?

There are *three* windows here.
a window = window 1 or 2 or 3

- ☐ I've got **a car**. (there are many cars and I've got one)
- ☐ Can I ask **a question**? (there are many questions – can I ask one?)
- ☐ Is there **a hotel** near here? (there are many hotels – is there one near here?)
- ☐ Paris is **an interesting city**. (there are many interesting cities and Paris is one)
- ☐ Lisa is **a student**. (there are many students and Lisa is one)

the

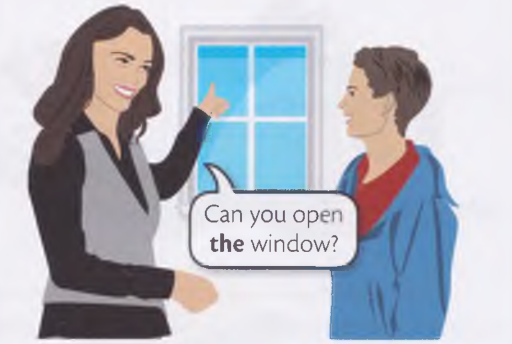
Can you open **the** window?

There is only *one* window here – **the** window.

- ☐ I'm going to clean **the car** tomorrow. (= my car)
- ☐ Can you repeat **the question**, please? (= the question that you asked)
- ☐ We enjoyed our holiday. **The hotel** was very nice. (= our hotel)
- ☐ Paris is **the capital of France**. (there is only one capital of France)
- ☐ Lisa is **the youngest student** in her class. (there is only one youngest student in her class)

Compare **a** and **the**:

- ☐ I bought **a jacket** and **a shirt**. **The jacket** was cheap, but **the shirt** was expensive. (= **the** jacket and **the** shirt **that I bought**)

B

We say **the** … when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example:

the door / **the ceiling** / **the floor** / **the carpet** / **the light** etc. *(of a room)*
the roof / **the garden** / **the kitchen** / **the bathroom** etc. *(of a house)*
the centre / **the station** / **the airport** / **the town hall** etc. *(of a town)*

- ☐ 'Where's Tom?' 'In **the kitchen**.' (= the kitchen of this house or flat)
- ☐ Turn off **the light** and close **the door**. (= the light and the door of the room)
- ☐ Do you live far from **the centre**? (= the centre of your town)
- ☐ I'd like to speak to **the manager**, please. (= the manager of this shop etc.)

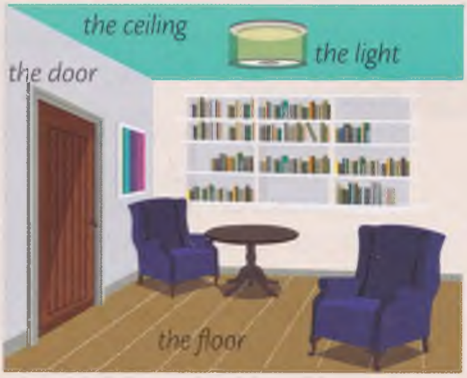

a/an ➜ Unit 65 the ➜ Units 70–73

Exercises

69.1 Write **a/an** or **the**.

1 We enjoyed our trip. ......The...... hotel was very nice.
2 'Can I ask ......a...... question?' 'Sure. What do you want to know?'
3 You look very tired. You need .... holiday.
4 'Where's Tom?' 'He's in .... garden.'
5 Eve is .... interesting person. You should meet her.
6 A: Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to .... city centre?
B: Yes, go straight on and then take .... next turning left.
7 A: Shall we go out for .... meal this evening?
B: Yes, that's .... good idea.
8 It's .... nice morning. Let's go for .... walk.
9 Amanda is .... student. When she finishes her studies, she wants to be .... journalist. She lives with two friends in .... apartment near .... college where she is studying. .... apartment is small, but she likes it.
10 Peter and Mary have two children, ... boy and .... girl. .... boy is seven years old, and .... girl is three. Peter works in .... factory. Mary doesn't have .... job at the moment.

69.2 Complete the sentences. Use **a** or **the** + these words:

airport **cup** **dictionary** ~~**door**~~ **floor** **picture**

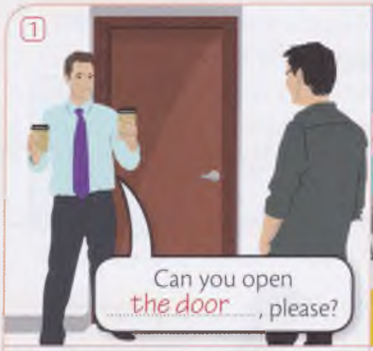
1
Can you open
the door, please?

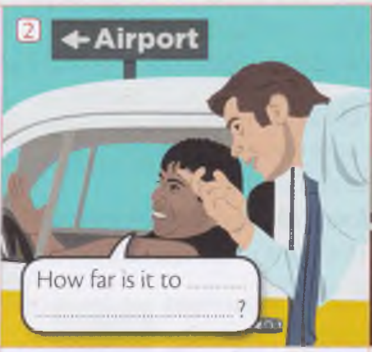
2
Airport
How far is it to ....
.... ?

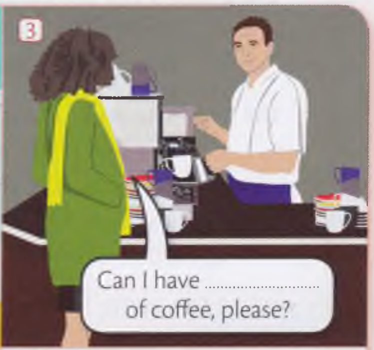
3
Can I have ....
of coffee, please?

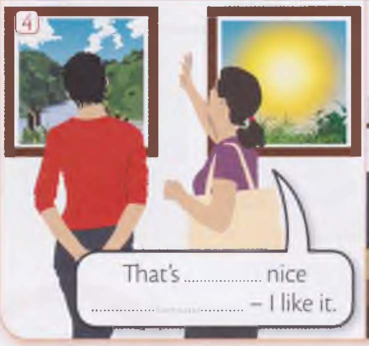
4
That's .... nice
.... – I like it.

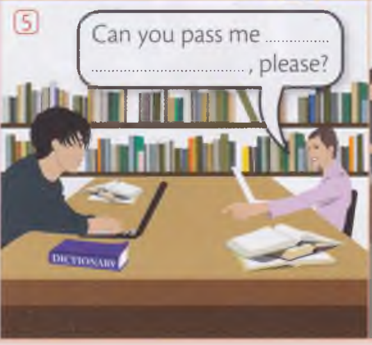
5
Can you pass me ....
............, please?
DICTIONARY

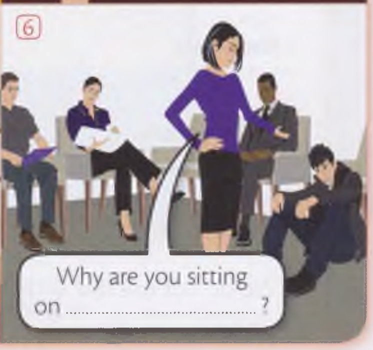
6
Why are you sitting
on .... ?

69.3 These sentences are not correct. Put in **a/an** or **the** where necessary.

1 Don't forget to turn off light when you go out. ......turn off the light......
2 Enjoy your trip, and don't forget to send me postcard. ....
3 What is name of this village? ....
4 Canada is very big country. ....
5 What is largest city in Canada? ....
6 I like this room, but I don't like colour of carpet. ....
7 'Are you OK?' 'No, I've got headache.' ....
8 We live in old house near station. ....
9 What is name of director of film we saw last night? ....

Unit 70

the ...

A

We use **the** when it is clear which thing or person we mean:

- What is **the name** of this street? (there is only one name)
- Who is **the best player** in your team? (there is only one best player)
- Can you tell me **the time**, please? (= the time *now*)
- My office is on **the first floor**. (= the first floor of the building)

Don't forget **the**:

- Do you live near **the city centre**? (*not* near city centre)
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest bank**? (*not* where is nearest ...)

B

the same ...

- We live in **the same street**. (*not* in same street)
- 'Are these two books different?' 'No, they're **the same**.' (*not* they're same)

C

We say:

the sun / **the moon** / **the world** / **the sky** / **the sea** / **the country**

- **The sky** is blue and **the sun** is shining.
- Do you live in a town or in **the country**?

the police / **the fire brigade** / **the army** (of a city, country etc.)

- My brother is a soldier. He's in **the army**.
- What do you think of **the police**? Do they do a good job?

the top / **the end** / **the middle** / **the left** etc.

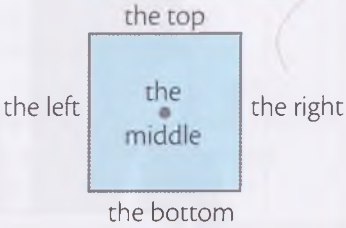

- Write your name at **the top of** the page.
- My house is at **the end of** the street.
- The table is in **the middle of** the room.
- Do you drive on **the right** or on **the left** in your country?

(play) **the piano** / **the guitar** / **the trumpet** etc. (musical instruments)

- Paula is learning to play **the piano**.

the radio

- I listen to **the radio** a lot.

the internet

- What do you use **the internet** for?

D

We do *not* use **the** with:

television / **TV**

- I watch **TV** a lot.
- What's on **television** tonight?

but Can you turn off **the TV**? (= the TV set)

breakfast / **lunch** / **dinner**

- What did you have for **breakfast**? (*not* the breakfast)
- **Dinner** is ready!

next / **last** + **week**/**month**/**year**/**summer**/**Monday** etc.

- I'm not working **next week**. (*not* the next week)
- Did you have a holiday **last summer**? (*not* the last summer)

a/an and the ➜ Unit 69 **the** ➜ Units 71–73 **the oldest** / **the most expensive** etc. ➜ Unit 90

Exercises

70.1 Put in **the** where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

1 What is name of this street? the name
2 What's on TV tonight? OK
3 Our apartment is on second floor. ......
4 Would you like to go to moon? ......
5 Which is best hotel in this town? ......
6 What time is lunch? ......
7 How far is it to city centre? ......
8 We're going away at end of May. ......
9 What are you doing next weekend? ......
10 I didn't like her first time I met her. ......
11 I'm going out after dinner. ......
12 It's easy to get information from internet. ......
13 My sister got married last month. ......
14 My dictionary is on top shelf on right. ......
15 We live in country about ten miles from nearest town. ......

70.2 Complete the sentences. Use **the same** + these words:

age **colour** **problem** ~~**street**~~ **time**

1 I live in North Street and you live in North Street. We live in the same street.
2 I arrived at 8.30 and you arrived at 8.30. We arrived at ....
3 James is 25 and Sue is 25. James and Sue are ....
4 My shirt is dark blue and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are ....
5 I have no money and you have no money. We have ....

70.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **the** if necessary.

1
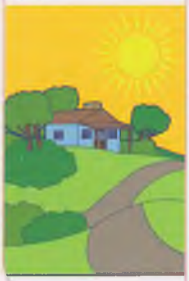

2
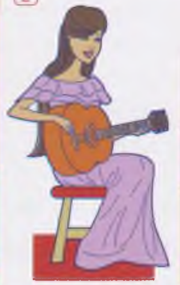

3
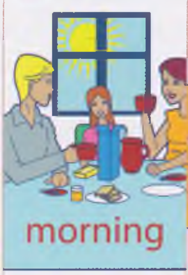

4
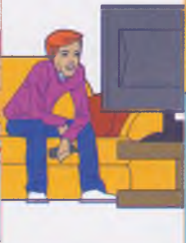

5
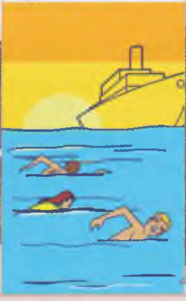

6
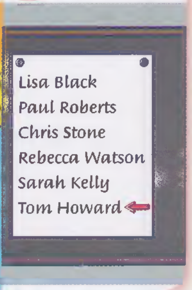

1 The sun is shining.
2 She's playing ....
3 They're having ....
4 He's watching ....
5 They're swimming in ....
6 Tom's name is at ...... of the list.

70.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use **the** if necessary.

capital ~~**dinner**~~ **police** **lunch** **middle** **name** **sky** **TV**

1 We had dinner at a restaurant last night.
2 We stayed at a very nice hotel, but I don't remember ....
3 ...... is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
4 Sometimes there are some good films on ...... late at night.
5 Somebody was trying to break into the shop, so I called ....
6 Tokyo is ...... of Japan.
7 'What did you have for ......?' 'A salad.'
8 I woke up in ...... of the night.

Unit 71

go to work go home go to the cinema

A

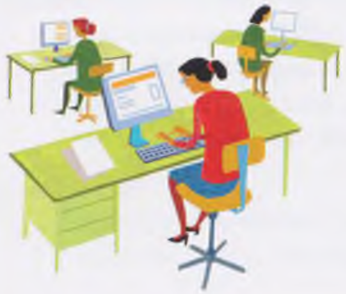

She's **at work**.

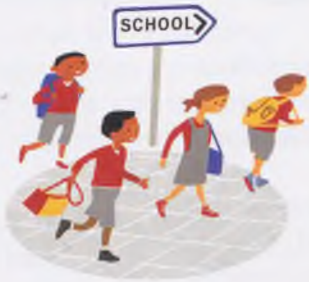

They're going **to school**.

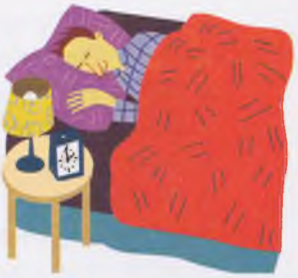

He's **in bed**.

We say:

(go) **to work**, (be) **at work**, start **work**, finish **work**

☐ Bye! I'm **going to work** now. (*not* to the work)

☐ I **finish work** at 5 o'clock every day.

(go) **to school**, (be) **at school**, start **school**, leave **school** etc.

☐ What did you learn **at school** today? (*not* at the school)

☐ Some children don't like **school**.

(go) **to university/college**, (be) **at university/college**

☐ Helen wants to **go to university** when she **leaves school**.

☐ What did you study **at college**?

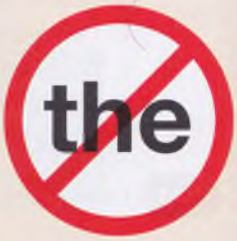

(go) **to hospital**, (be) **in hospital**

☐ Jack had an accident. He had to go **to hospital**.

(go) **to prison**, (be) **in prison**

☐ Why is he **in prison**? What did he do?

(go) **to church**, (be) **in/at church**

☐ David usually goes **to church** on Sundays.

(go) **to bed**, (be) **in bed**

☐ I'm tired. I'm **going to bed**. (*not* to the bed)

☐ 'Where's Alice?' 'She's **in bed**.'

(go) **home**, (be) **at home** etc.

☐ I'm tired. I'm **going home**. (*not* to home)

☐ Are you going out tonight, or are you **staying at home**?

B

We say:

(go to) **the cinema** / **the theatre** / **the bank** / **the post office** / **the station** / **the airport** / **the city centre**

☐ I never go to **the theatre**, but I go to **the cinema** a lot.

☐ 'Are you going to **the bank**?' 'No, to **the post office**.'

☐ The number 5 bus goes to **the airport**; the number 8 goes to **the city centre**.

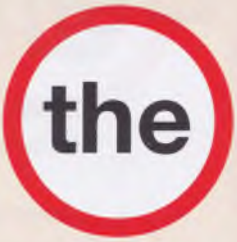

(go to) **the doctor**, **the dentist**

☐ You're not well. Why don't you go to **the doctor**?

☐ I have to go to **the dentist** tomorrow.

the ➜ Units 69–70, 72–73 **in/at** ➜ Units 106–107 **to/in/at** ➜ Unit 108 (at) **home** ➜ Unit 108

Exercises

71.1 Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need **the**.

1
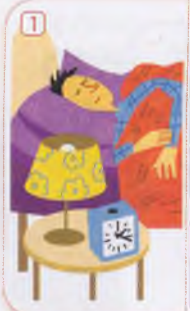
2
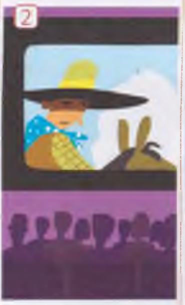
3
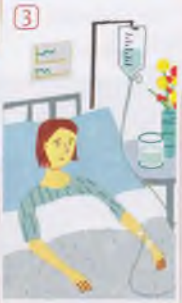
4
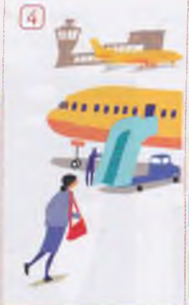
5
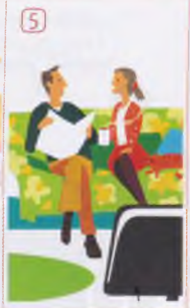
6
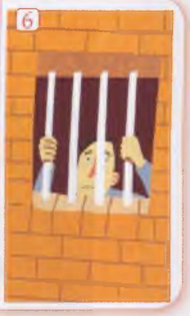

1 He's in ...bed..........................
2 They're at ....
3 She's in ....
4 She's at ....
5 They're at ....
6 He's in ....

71.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use **the** if necessary.

~~bank~~ **bed** **~~church~~** **home** **post office** **school** **station**

1 I need to change some money. I have to go to ...the bank.... .
2 David usually goes to ...church... on Sundays.
3 In Britain, children go to .... from the age of five.
4 There were a lot of people at .... waiting for the train.
5 We went to their house, but they weren't at ....
6 I'm going to .... now. Goodnight!
7 I'm going to .... to get some stamps.

71.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need **the**.

1 If you want to catch a plane, you ...go to the airport.......................... .
2 If you want to see a film, you go to ....
3 If you are tired and you want to sleep, you ....
4 If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you ....
5 If you have a problem with your teeth, you ....
6 If you want to study after you leave school, you ....
7 If you are badly injured in an accident, you ....

71.4 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 We went to cinema last night. ...to the cinema...
2 I finish work at 5 o'clock every day. ...OK...
3 Lisa wasn't feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor. ....
4 I wasn't feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed. ....
5 Why is Angela always late for work? ....
6 'Where are your children?' 'They're at school.' ....
7 We have no money in bank. ....
8 When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday. ....
9 What time do you usually get home from work? ....
10 Do you live far from city centre? ....
11 'Where shall we meet?' 'At station.' ....
12 James is ill. He's in hospital. ....
13 Kate takes her children to school every day. ....
14 Would you like to go to university? ....
15 Would you like to go to theatre this evening? ....

Unit 72

I like **music** I hate **exams**

A

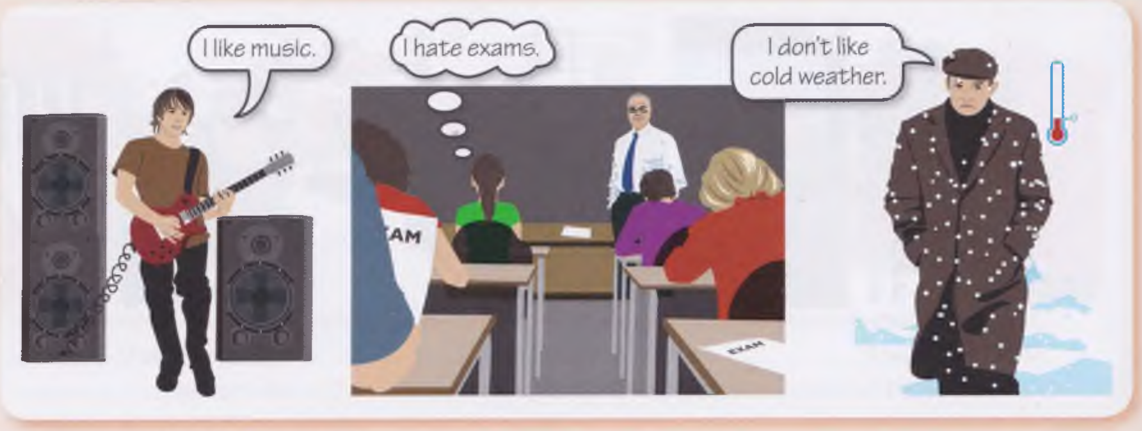
I like music.
I hate exams.
I don't like cold weather.
EXAM
EXAM

We do not use **the** for general ideas:

- ☐ I like **music**, especially **classical music**.
  (*not* the music … the classical music)
- ☐ We don't eat **meat** very often. (*not* the meat)
- ☐ **Life** is not possible without **water**.
  (*not* The life … the water)
- ☐ I hate **exams**. (*not* the exams)
- ☐ Is there a shop near here that sells **newspapers**?

We do not use **the** for games and sports:

- ☐ My favourite sports are **football** and **skiing**. (*not* the football … the skiing)

We do not use **the** for languages or school subjects (**history**/**geography**/**physics**/**biology** etc.):

- ☐ Do you think **English** is difficult? (*not* the English)
- ☐ Tom's brother is studying **physics** and **chemistry**.

B

flowers or **the flowers**?

Compare:

☐ **Flowers** are beautiful. (= flowers in general)	☐ I love this garden. **The flowers** are beautiful. (= the flowers in this garden)
☐ I don't like **cold weather**. (= cold weather in general)	☐ **The weather** isn't very good today. (= the weather today)
☐ We don't eat **fish** very often. (= fish in general)	☐ We had a great meal last night. **The fish** was excellent. (= the fish we ate last night)
☐ Are you interested in **history**? (= history in general)	☐ Do you know much about **the history** of your country?

The flowers are beautiful.

the → Units 69–71, 73

Exercises

72.1 What do you think about these things?

big cities **computer games** **exams** **jazz** **parties**
chocolate **dogs** **housework** **museums** **tennis**

Choose seven of these things and write sentences with:

I like ... **I don't like ...** **I love ...** **I hate ...** or **... is/are all right**

1 I hate exams. or I like exams. or Exams are all right. (etc.)
2
3
4
5
6
7
8

72.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I'm (very) interested in ... **I know a lot about ...** **I don't know much about ...**
I'm not interested in ... **I know a little about ...** **I don't know anything about ...**

1 (history) I'm very interested in history.
2 (politics) I
3 (sport)
4 (art)
5 (astronomy)
6 (economics)

72.3 Which is right?

1 My favourite sport is football / ~~the football~~. (football *is right*)
2 I like this hotel. ~~Rooms~~ / The rooms are very nice. (The rooms *is right*)
3 Everybody needs friends / the friends.
4 Jane doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.
5 I went shopping this morning. Shops / The shops were very busy.
6 'Where's milk / the milk?' 'It's in the fridge.'
7 I don't like milk / the milk. I never drink it.
8 'Do you do any sports?' 'Yes, I play basketball / the basketball.'
9 An architect is a person who designs buildings / the buildings.
10 We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.
11 I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
12 Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?
13 I like this town. I like people / the people here.
14 Vegetables / The vegetables are good for you.
15 Houses / The houses in this street are all the same.
16 I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
17 I enjoy taking pictures / the pictures. It's my hobby.
18 Do you want to see pictures / the pictures that I took when I was on holiday?
19 English / The English is used a lot in international business / the international business.
20 Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.

Unit
73

the ... (names of places)

A

Places (continents, countries, states, islands, towns etc.)

In general we do *not* use **the** with names of places:

- **France** is a very large country. (*not* the France)
- **Cairo** is the capital of **Egypt**.
- **Corsica** is an island in the Mediterranean.
- **Peru** is in **South America**.

~~the~~

But we use **the** in names with 'republic'/'states'/'kingdom':

the Czech **Republic**
the United **States** of America (**the** USA)
the United **Kingdom** (**the** UK)

the

B

the -s (plural names)

We use **the** with *plural* names of countries/islands/mountains:

the Netherlands
the Philippines

the Canary Islands
the Alps

the

C

Seas, rivers etc.

We use **the** with names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals:

the Atlantic (Ocean)
the (River) Nile

the Mediterranean (Sea)
the Suez Canal

the Amazon
the Black Sea

the

D

Places in towns (streets, buildings etc.)

In general we do *not* use **the** with names of streets, squares etc. :

- Kevin lives in **Newton Street**.
- Where is **Highfield Road**, please?
- **Times Square** is in New York.

~~the~~

We do not use **the** with names of airports, stations and many other important buildings:

Kennedy Airport
Victoria Station

Westminster Abbey
Edinburgh Castle

London Zoo

also

Cambridge University, **Harvard University** etc.

~~the~~

But we use **the** with names of most hotels, museums, theatres and cinemas:

the Regent Hotel
the Science Museum

the National Theatre
the Odeon (cinema)

the

E

the ... **of** ...

We use **the** + names with ... **of** ... :

the Museum **of** Modern Art
the Great Wall **of** China

the University **of** California
the Tower **of** London

We say **the north** / **the south** / **the east** / **the west** (of ...):

- I've been to **the north of Italy**, but not to **the south**.

the

the ➜ Units 69–72

Exercises

73.1 Answer these geography questions. Choose from the box. Use **The** if necessary.

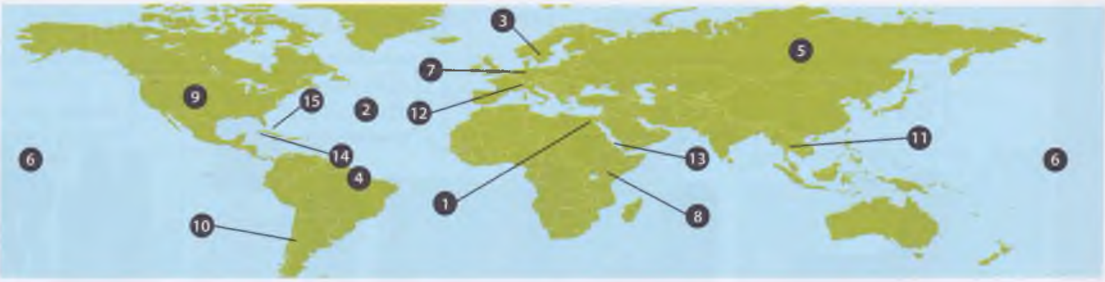

1 Cairo .... is the capital of Egypt.
2 The Atlantic .... is between Africa and America.
3 .... is a country in northern Europe.
4 .... is a river in South America.
5 .... is the largest continent in the world.
6 .... is the largest ocean.
7 .... is a river in Europe.
8 .... is a country in East Africa.
9 .... is between Canada and Mexico.
10 .... are mountains in South America.
11 .... is the capital of Thailand.
12 .... are mountains in central Europe.
13 .... is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.
14 .... is an island in the Caribbean.
15 .... are a group of islands near Florida.

Alps
Amazon
Andes
Asia
~~Atlantic~~
Bahamas
Bangkok
~~Cairo~~
Jamaica
Kenya
Pacific
Red Sea
Rhine
Sweden
United States

73.2 Write **the** where necessary. If the sentence is already correct, write OK.

1 Kevin lives in Newton Street. OK
2 We went to see a play at National Theatre. at the National Theatre
3 Have you ever been to China? ....
4 Have you ever been to Philippines? ....
5 Have you ever been to south of France? ....
6 Can you tell me where Regal Cinema is? ....
7 Can you tell me where Merrion Street is? ....
8 Can you tell me where Museum of Art is? ....
9 Europe is bigger than Australia. ....
10 Belgium is smaller than Netherlands. ....
11 Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile? ....
12 Did you go to National Gallery when you were in London? ....
13 We stayed at Park Hotel in Hudson Road. ....
14 How far is it from Trafalgar Square to Victoria Station (*in London*)? ....
15 Rocky Mountains are in North America. ....
16 Texas is famous for oil and cowboys. ....
17 I hope to go to United States next year. ....
18 Mary comes from west of Ireland. ....
19 Alan is a student at Manchester University. ....
20 Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean. ....

→ **Additional exercises 33–34** (pages 269–70)

Unit
74

this/that/these/those

A

this *(singular)*

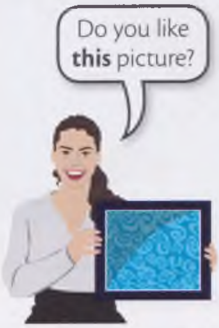
Do you like **this** picture?

these *(plural)*

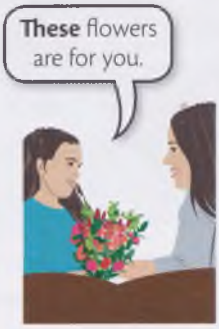
These flowers are for you.

that *(singular)*

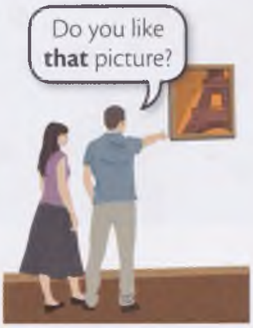
Do you like **that** picture?

those *(plural)*

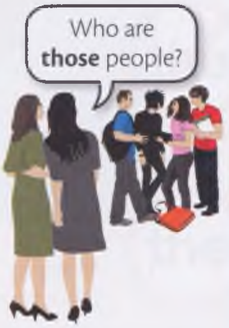
Who are **those** people?

this
these

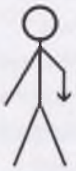

this picture
(= this picture *here*)
these flowers
(= these flowers *here*)

that
those

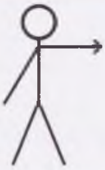

that picture
(= that picture *there*)
those people
(= those people *there*)

B

We use **this**/**that**/**these**/**those** with a noun (**this picture** / **those girls** etc.) or without a noun:

○ **This hotel** is expensive, but it's very nice.
○ 'Who's **that girl**?' 'I don't know.'
○ Do you like **these shoes**? I bought them last week.
○ **Those apples** look nice. Can I have one?

with a noun

○ **This** is a nice hotel, but it's very expensive.
○ 'Excuse me, is **this** your bag?' 'Oh yes, thank you.'
○ Who's **that**? (= Who is that person?)
○ Which shoes do you prefer – **these** or **those**?

without a noun

C

that = something that *has happened*:

○ 'I'm sorry I forgot to phone you.' '**That**'s all right.'
○ **That** was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

that = what somebody *has just said*:

○ 'You're a teacher, aren't you?' 'Yes, **that**'s right.'
○ 'Martin has a new job.' 'Really? I didn't know **that**.'
○ 'I'm going on holiday next week.' 'Oh, **that**'s nice.'

D

We use **this is** … and **is that** … **?** on the phone:

○ Hi Sarah, **this** is David.
(**this** = the speaker)
○ Is **that** Sarah?
(**that** = the other person)

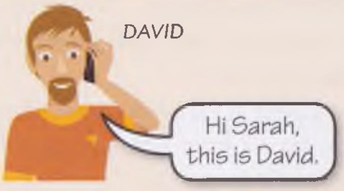
DAVID
Hi Sarah, this is David.

We use **this is** … to introduce people:

○ A: Ben, **this is** Chris.
B: Hello, Chris – nice to meet you.
C: Hi.

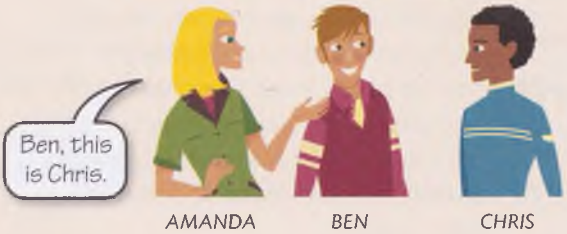
Ben, this is Chris.
AMANDA
BEN
CHRIS

this one / **that one** → Unit 75

Exercises

74.1 Complete the sentences. Use **this/that/these/those** + these words:

birds **house** **plates** **postcards** **seat** ~~**shoes**~~

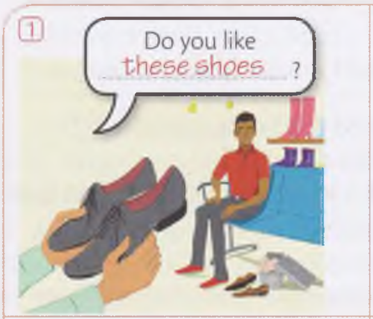
1
Do you like these shoes ?

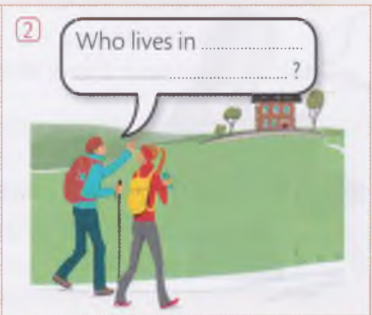
2
Who lives in .... ?

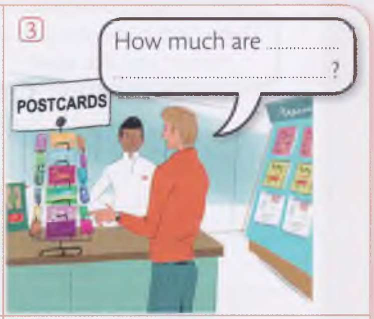
3
How much are .... ?
POSTCARDS

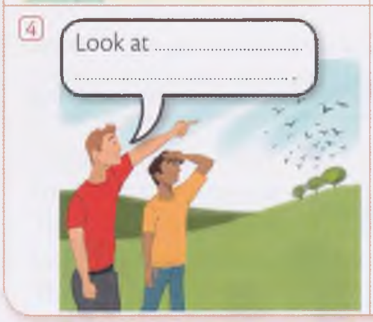

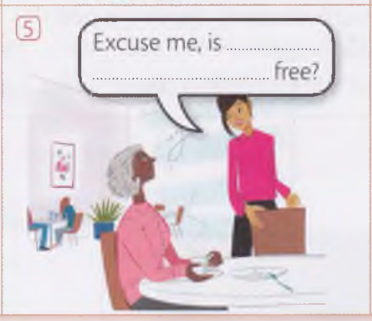
5
Excuse me, is .... free?

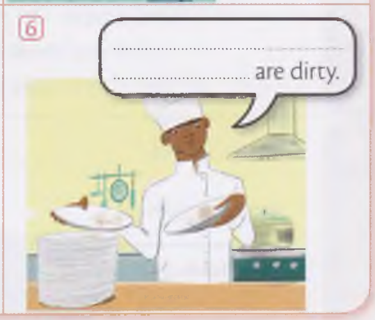

74.2 Write questions: **Is this/that your ... ?** or **Are these/those your ... ?**

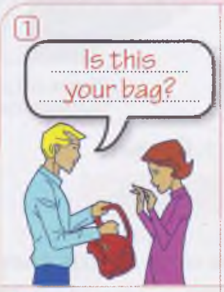
1
Is this your bag?

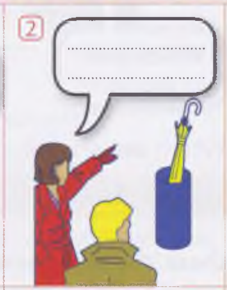

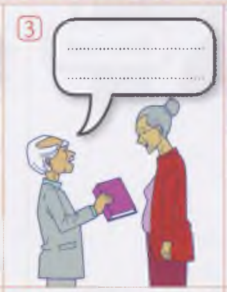

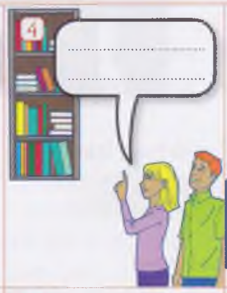

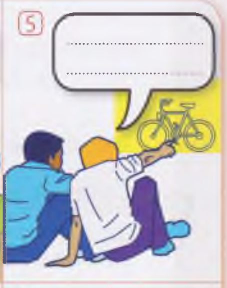

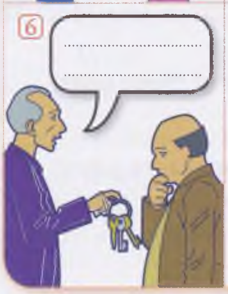

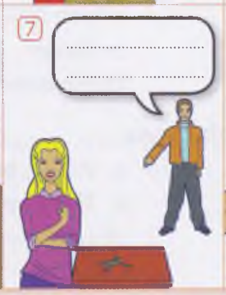

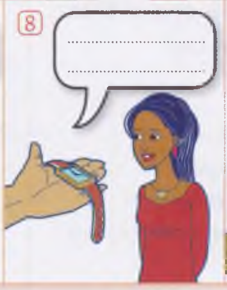

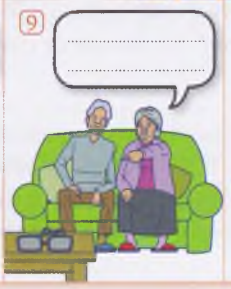

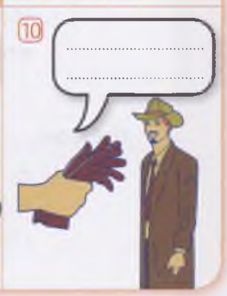

74.3 Complete the sentences with **this is** or **that's** or **that**.

1 A: I'm sorry I'm late.
B: That's all right.
2 A: I can't come to the party tomorrow.
B: Oh, ... a pity. Why not?
3 *on the phone*
SUE: Hello, Jane. .... Sue.
JANE: Oh, hi Sue. How are you?
4 A: You're lazy.
B: .... not true!
5 A: Beth plays the piano very well.
B: Does she? I didn't know ....
6 *Mark meets Paul's sister, Helen.*
PAUL: Mark, ... my sister, Helen.
MARK: Hi, Helen.
7 A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.
B: .... OK. Forget it!
8 A: You're a friend of Tom's, aren't you?
B: Yes, ... right.

Unit 75

one/ones

A one (= a ...)

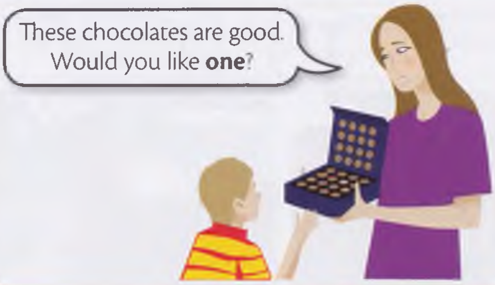
These chocolates are good. Would you like **one**?

Would you like **one** ?

= Would you like **a chocolate** ?

one = **a/an** ... (a chocolate / an apple etc.)

- I need **a pen**. Do you have **one**? (**one** = **a pen**)
- A: Is there **a bank** near here?
  B: Yes, there's **one** at the end of this street. (**one** = **a bank**)

B one and ones

one (*singular*)

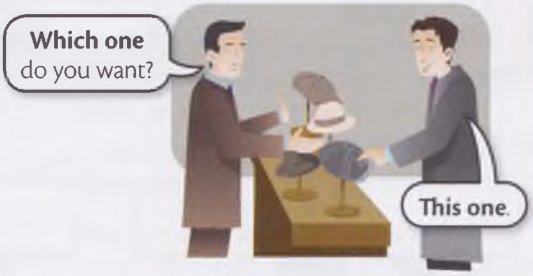
Which one do you want?
This one.

Which **one**? = Which **hat**?

one = **hat/car/girl** etc.

this one / **that one**

- Which **car** is yours? **This one** or **that one**? (= this car or that car)

the one ...

- A: Which **hotel** did you stay at?
  B: **The one** opposite the station.
- I found this **key**. Is it **the one** you lost?

the ... **one**

- I don't like the black **coat**, but I like **the brown one**.
- Don't buy that **camera**. Buy **the other one**.

a/an ... **one**

- This **cup** is dirty. Can I have **a clean one**?
- That **biscuit** was nice. I'm going to have **another one**.

ones (*plural*)

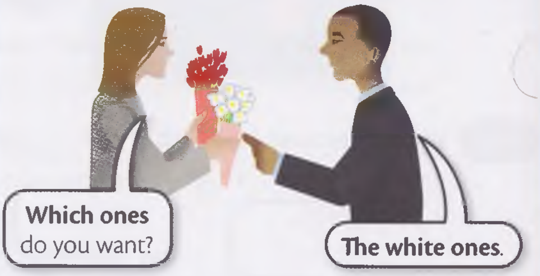
Which ones do you want?
The white ones.

Which **ones**? = Which **flowers**?

ones = **flowers/cars/girls** etc.

these/those or **these ones** / **those ones**

- Which flowers do you want? **These** or **those**? *or*
  These ones or **those ones**?

the ones ...

- A: Which **books** are yours?
  B: **The ones** on the table.
- I found these **keys**. Are they **the ones** you lost?

the ... **ones**

- I don't like the red **shoes**, but I like **the green ones**.
- Don't buy those **apples**. Buy **the other ones**.

some ... **ones**

- These **cups** are dirty. Can we have **some clean ones**?
- My **shoes** are very old. I'm going to buy **some new ones**.

which ... ? ➜ Unit 47   **another** ➜ Unit 65   **this/that** ➜ Unit 74

Exercises

75.1 A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use **one** (not **a/an ...**) in the answers.

B doesn't need a car
there's a chemist in Mill Road
~~B doesn't have a pen~~
B has just had a cup of coffee
B is going to get a bike
B doesn't have an umbrella

1 A: Can you lend me a pen? B: I'm sorry, I don't have one.
2 A: Would you like to have a car? B: No, I don't ……………… .
3 A: Do you have a bike? B: No, but ……………… .
4 A: Can you lend me an umbrella? B: I'm sorry, but ……………… .
5 A: Would you like a cup of coffee? B: No, thank you. ……………… .
6 A: Is there a chemist near here? B: Yes, ……………… .

75.2 Complete the sentences. Use **a/an ... one**. Use the words in the list.

better **big** ~~**clean**~~ **different** **new** **old**

1 This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
2 I'm going to sell my car and buy ……………… .
3 That's not a very good photo, but this is ……………… .
4 I want today's newspaper. This is ……………… .
5 This box is too small. I need ……………… .
6 Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to ……………… .

75.3 A is talking to B. Use the information to complete the conversations. Use **one/ones**.

1 *A stayed at a hotel. It was opposite the station.*
A: We stayed at a hotel.
B: Which one?
A: The one opposite the station.

2 *A sees some shoes in a shop window. They're green.*
A: I like those shoes.
B: Which ……………… ?
A: The ………………

3 *A is looking at a house. It has a red door.*
A: That's a nice house.
B: ……………… ?
A: ……………… with ………………

4 *A is looking at some CDs. They're on the top shelf.*
A: Are those your CDs?
B: ……………… ?
A: ………………

5 *A is looking at a jacket in a shop. It's black.*
A: Do you like that jacket?
B: ……………… ?
A: ………………

6 *A is looking at a picture. It's on the wall.*
A: That's an interesting picture.
B: ……………… ?
A: ………………

7 *A sees a girl in a group of people. She's tall with long hair.*
A: Do you know that girl?
B: ……………… ?
A: ………………

8 *A is looking at some flowers in the garden. They're yellow.*
A: Those flowers are beautiful.
B: ……………… ?
A: ………………

9 *A is looking at a man in a restaurant. He has a moustache and glasses.*
A: Who's that man?
B: ……………… ?
A: ………………

10 *A took some photos at the party last week.*
A: Did I show you my photos?
B: ……………… ?
A: ………………

Unit 76

some and any

A

some

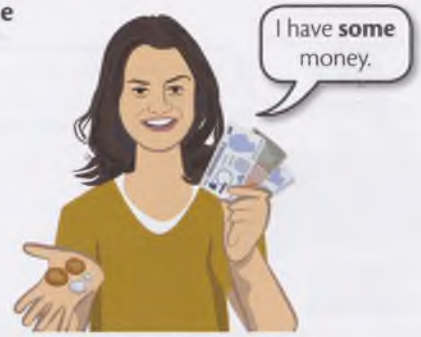
I have **some** money.

Use **some** in *positive* sentences:
- ☐ I'm going to buy **some** clothes.
- ☐ There's **some** milk in the fridge.
- ☐ We made **some** mistakes.

any

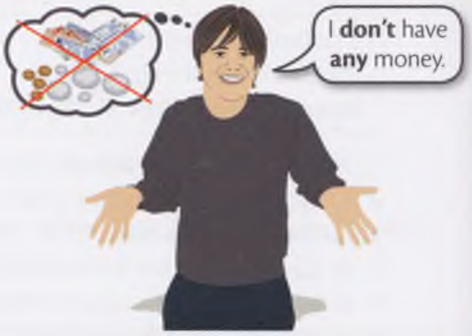
I **don't** have **any** money.

Use **any** in *negative* sentences:
- ☐ I'm **not** going to buy **any** clothes.
- ☐ There **isn't any** milk in the fridge.
- ☐ We **didn't** make **any** mistakes.

B

any and **some** in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any** (*not* **some**):
- ☐ Is there **any** milk in the fridge?
- ☐ Does he have **any** friends?
- ☐ Do you need **any** help?

We normally use **some** (*not* **any**) when we *offer* things (**Would you like** ... **?**):
- ☐ A: Would you like **some** coffee?
  B: Yes, please.

or when we *ask for* things (**Can I have** ... **?** etc.):
- ☐ A: Can I have **some** soup, please?
  B: Yes. Help yourself.
- ☐ A: Can you lend me **some** money?
  B: Sure. How much do you need?

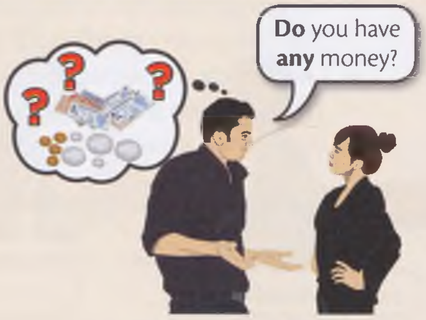
Do you have **any** money?

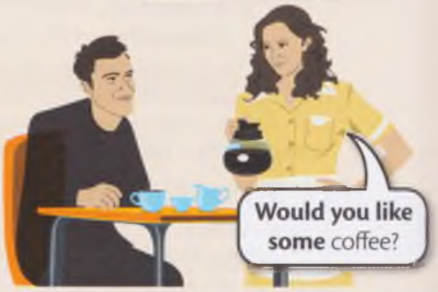
Would you like some coffee?

C

some and **any** without a noun

- ☐ I didn't take any pictures, but Jessica took **some**. (= some pictures)
- ☐ You can have some coffee, but I don't want **any**. (= any coffee)
- ☐ I've just made some coffee. Would you like **some**? (= some coffee)
- ☐ 'Where's your luggage?' 'I don't have **any**.' (= any luggage)
- ☐ 'Are there any biscuits?' 'Yes, there are **some** in the kitchen.' (= some biscuits)

D

something / **somebody** (*or* **someone**)
- ☐ She said **something**.
- ☐ I saw **somebody** (*or* **someone**).
- ☐ Would you like **something** to eat?
- ☐ **Somebody**'s at the door.

anything / **anybody** (*or* **anyone**)
- ☐ She **didn't** say **anything**.
- ☐ I **didn't** see **anybody** (*or* **anyone**).
- ☐ Are you doing **anything** tonight?
- ☐ Where's Sue? Has **anybody** seen her?

a and **some** → Unit 68 **somebody/anything** etc. → Unit 79

Exercises

76.1 Write some or any.

1 I bought ....some.... cheese, but I didn't buy ....any.... bread.
2 In the middle of the room there was a table and .... chairs.
3 There aren't .... shops in this part of town.
4 Gary and Alice don't have .... children.
5 Do you have .... brothers or sisters?
6 There are .... beautiful flowers in the garden.
7 Do you know .... good hotels in London?
8 'Would you like .... tea?' 'Yes, please.'
9 When we were on holiday, we visited .... interesting places.
10 Don't buy .... rice. We don't need ....
11 I went out to buy .... bananas, but they didn't have .... in the shop.
12 I'm thirsty. Can I have .... water, please?

76.2 Complete the sentences. Use some or any + the words in the box.

air
batteries
cheese
friends
help
languages
milk
pictures
questions
~~shampoo~~

1 I want to wash my hair. Is there ....any shampoo.... ?
2 The police want to talk to you. They want to ask you ....
3 I had my camera, but I didn't take ....
4 Do you speak .... foreign .... ?
5 Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant with .... of mine.
6 Can I have .... in my coffee, please?
7 The radio isn't working. There aren't .... in it.
8 It's hot in this office. I'm going out for .... fresh ....
9 A: Would you like .... ?
B: No, thank you. I've had enough to eat.
10 I can do this job alone. I don't need ....

76.3 Complete the sentences. Use some or any.

1 Kate didn't take any pictures, but ....I took some.... . (I/take)
2 'Where's your luggage?' '....I don't have any.... .' (I/not/have)
3 'Do you need any money?' 'No, thank you. ....' (I/have)
4 'Can you lend me some money?' 'I'm sorry, but ....' (I/not/have)
5 The tomatoes in the shop didn't look very good, so .... (I/not/buy)
6 There were some nice oranges in the shop, so .... (I/buy)
7 'How much coffee did you drink yesterday?' '.. .' (I/not/drink)

76.4 Write something/somebody or anything/anybody.

1 A woman stopped me and said ....something.... , but I didn't understand.
2 'What's wrong?' 'There's .... in my eye.'
3 Do you know .... about politics?
4 I went to the shop, but I didn't buy ....
5 .... has broken the window. I don't know who.
6 There isn't .... in the bag. It's empty.
7 I'm looking for my keys. Has .... seen them?
8 Would you like .... to drink?
9 I didn't eat .... because I wasn't hungry.
10 This is a secret. Please don't tell ....

Unit
77

not + any   no   none

A

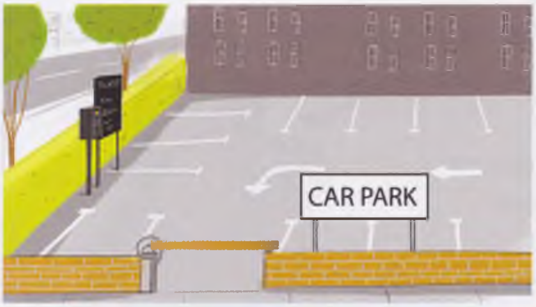

The car park is empty.

There are**n't any** cars } in the car park.
There are **no** cars

How many cars are there in the car park?
None.

not (**-n't**) + **any**

- There are**n't any** cars in the car park.
- Tracey and Jack do**n't** have **any** children.
- You can have some coffee, but I do**n't** want **any**.

no + *noun* (**no cars** / **no garden** etc.)

no ... = **not any** *or* **not a**

- There are **no cars** in the car park. (= there are**n't any** cars)
- We have **no coffee**. (= we do**n't** have **any** coffee)
- It's a nice house, but there's **no garden**. (= there is**n't a** garden)

We use **no** ... especially after **have** and **there is**/**are**.

negative verb + **any** = *positive verb* + **no**

- They **don't** have **any** children. *or* They **have no** children.
  (*not* They don't have no children)
- There **isn't any** sugar in your coffee. *or* There**'s no** sugar in your coffee.

B

no and **none**

Use **no** + *noun* (**no money** / **no children** etc.):

- We have **no money**.
- Everything was OK. There were **no problems**.

Use **none** alone (*without* a noun):

- 'How much money do you have?' '**None**.' (= no money)
- 'Were there any problems?' 'No, **none**.' (= no problems)

C

none and **no-one**

none = 0 (zero)
no-one = nobody

None is an answer for **How much**? / **How many**? (things or people):

- A: **How much** money do you have?
  B: **None**. (= no money)
- A: **How many** people did you meet?
  B: **None**. (= no people)

No-one is an answer for **Who**?:

- A: **Who** did you meet?
  B: **No-one**. (*or* **Nobody**.)

negatives ➜ Unit 43   **some** and **any** ➜ Unit 76   **anybody**/**nobody**/**nothing** etc. ➜ Units 78–79

Exercises

77.1 Write these sentences again with **no**.

1 We don't have any money. .....We have no money.....
2 There aren't any shops near here. There are ....
3 Carla doesn't have any free time. ....
4 There isn't a light in this room. ....

Write these sentences again with **any**.

5 We have no money. .....We don't have any money.....
6 There's no milk in the fridge. ....
7 There are no buses today. ....
8 Tom has no brothers or sisters. ....

77.2 Write **no** or **any**.

1 There's ...no... sugar in your coffee.
2 My brother is married, but he doesn't have .... children.
3 Sue doesn't speak .... foreign languages.
4 I'm afraid there's .... coffee. Would you like some tea?
5 'Look at those birds!' 'Birds? Where? I can't see .... birds.'
6 'Do you know where Jessica is?' 'No, I have .... idea.'

Write **no**, **any** or **none**.

7 There aren't .... pictures on the wall.
8 The weather was cold, but there was .... wind.
9 I wanted to buy some oranges, but they didn't have .... in the shop.
10 Everything was correct. There were .... mistakes.
11 'How much luggage do you have?' '..........'
12 'How much luggage do you have?' 'I don't have ....'

77.3 Complete the sentences. Use **any** or **no** + the words in the box.

difference **friends** **furniture** **heating** **idea**
money ~~**problems**~~ **questions** **queue**

1 Everything was OK. There were ...no problems... .
2 Jack and Emily would like to go on holiday, but they have ....
3 I'm not going to answer ....
4 He's always alone. He has ....
5 There is .... between these two machines. They're exactly the same.
6 There wasn't .... in the room. It was completely empty.
7 'Do you know how the accident happened?' 'No, I have ....'
8 The house is cold because there isn't ....
9 We didn't have to wait to get our train tickets. There was ....

77.4 Write short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use **none** where necessary.

1 How many letters did you write yesterday? ...Two.... or ...A lot.... or ...None....
2 How many sisters do you have? ....
3 How much coffee did you drink yesterday? ....
4 How many photos have you taken today? ....
5 How many legs does a snake have? ....

Unit
78

not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing

A

not + **anybody/anyone**
nobody/no-one
(for *people*)

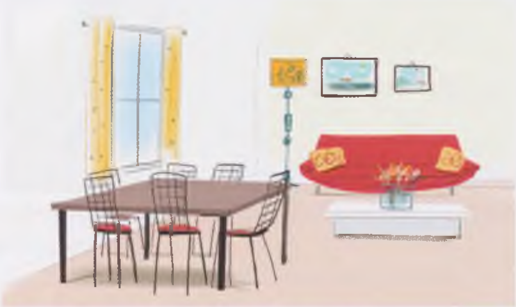

○ There **isn't** { **anybody** **anyone** } in the room.

○ There **is** { **nobody** **no-one** } in the room.

○ A: **Who** is in the room?
B: **Nobody**. / **No-one**.

-body and **-one** are the same:
any**body** = any**one**   no**body** = no-**one**

not + **anything**
nothing
(for *things*)

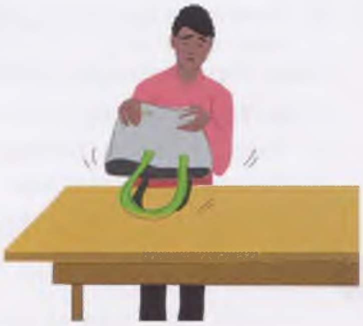

○ There **isn't anything** in the bag.

○ There **is nothing** in the bag.

○ A: **What**'s in the bag?
B: **Nothing**.

B

not + **anybody/anyone**

○ I **don't** know **anybody** (*or* **anyone**) here.

nobody = **not** + **anybody**
no-one = **not** + **anyone**

○ I'm lonely. I have **nobody** to talk to.
(= I **don't** have **anybody**)

○ The house is empty. There is **no-one** in it. (= There is**n't anyone** in it.)

not + **anything**

○ I **can't** remember **anything**.

nothing = **not** + **anything**

○ She said **nothing**.
(= She did**n't** say **anything**.)

○ There's **nothing** to eat.
(= There is**n't anything** to eat.)

C

You can use **nobody/no-one/nothing** at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question):

○ The house is empty. **Nobody** lives there.

○ 'Who did you speak to?' '**No-one**.'

○ **Nothing** happened.

○ 'What did you say?' '**Nothing**.'

D

Remember: *negative verb* + **anybody/anyone/anything**
positive verb + **nobody/no-one/nothing**

○ He does**n't** know **anything**. (*not* He doesn't know nothing)
○ Do**n't** tell **anybody**. (*not* Don't tell nobody)
○ There **is nothing** to do in this town. (*not* There isn't nothing)

some and **any** ➜ Unit 76   **any** and **no** ➜ Unit 77   **somebody/anything/nowhere** etc. ➜ Unit 79

Exercises

78.1 Write these sentences again with **nobody/no-one** or **nothing.**

1 There isn't anything in the bag. There's nothing in the bag.
2 There isn't anybody in the office. There's
3 I don't have anything to do. I
4 There isn't anything on TV.
5 There wasn't anyone at home.
6 We didn't find anything.

78.2 Write these sentences again with **anybody/anyone** or **anything.**

1 There's nothing in the bag. There isn't anything in the bag.
2 There was nobody on the bus. There wasn't
3 I have nothing to read.
4 I have no-one to help me.
5 She heard nothing.
6 We have nothing for dinner.

78.3 Answer these questions with **nobody/no-one** or **nothing.**

1a What did you say? Nothing.
2a Who saw you? Nobody.
3a What do you want?
4a Who did you meet?
5a Who knows the answer?
6a What did you buy?
7a What happened?
8a Who was late?

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.
Use **nobody/no-one/nothing** or **anybody/anyone/anything:**

1b I didn't say anything.
2b Nobody saw me.
3b I don't
4b I
5b .... the answer.
6b
7b
8b

78.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

nobody / no-one / nothing or **anybody / anyone / anything**

1 That house is empty. Nobody lives there.
2 Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember anything.
3 Be quiet! Don't say ....
4 I didn't know about the meeting. .... told me.
5 'What did you have to eat?' '........ . I wasn't hungry.'
6 I didn't eat .... I wasn't hungry.
7 Helen was sitting alone. She wasn't with ....
8 I'm afraid I can't help you. There's .... I can do.
9 I don't know .... about car engines.
10 The museum is free. It doesn't cost .... to go in.
11 I heard a knock on the door, but when I opened it, there was .... there.
12 The hotel receptionist spoke very fast. I didn't understand ....
13 'What are you doing tonight?' '........ . Why?'
14 Sophie has gone away. .... knows where she is. She didn't tell .... where she was going.

Unit 79

somebody/anything/nowhere etc.

A

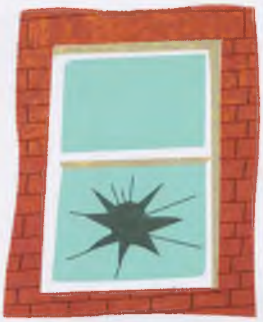

Somebody (or **Someone**) has broken the window.

somebody/someone = a person, but we don't know who

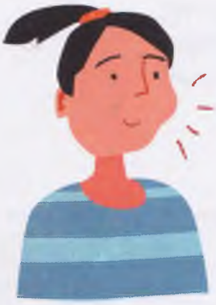

She has got **something** in her mouth.

something = a thing, but we don't know what

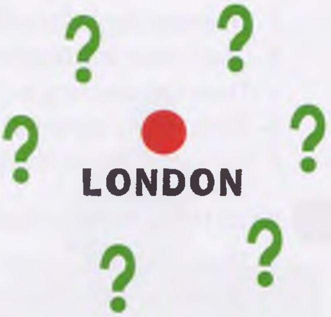

Tom lives **somewhere** near London.

somewhere = in/to a place, but we don't know where

B

people (**-body** *or* **-one**)

somebody *or* **someone**
anybody *or* **anyone**
nobody *or* **no-one**

☐ There is **somebody** (*or* **someone**) at the door.
☐ Is there **anybody** (*or* **anyone**) at the door?
☐ There isn't **anybody** (*or* **anyone**) at the door.
☐ There is **nobody** (*or* **no-one**) at the door.

-body and **-one** are the same: **somebody** = **someone, nobody** = **no-one** etc.

things (**-thing**)

something
anything
nothing

☐ Lucy said **something**, but I didn't understand what she said.
☐ Are you doing **anything** at the weekend?
☐ I was angry, but I did**n't** say **anything**.
☐ 'What did you say?' '**Nothing**.'

places (**-where**)

somewhere
anywhere
nowhere

☐ Ruth's parents live **somewhere** in the south of England.
☐ Did you go **anywhere** interesting for your holidays?
☐ I'm staying here. I'm **not** going **anywhere**.
☐ I don't like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.

C

something/anybody etc. + *adjective* (**big/cheap/interesting** etc.)

☐ Did you meet **anybody interesting** at the party?
☐ We always go to the same place. Let's go **somewhere different**.
☐ 'What's that letter?' 'It's **nothing important**.'

D

something/anybody etc. + **to** ...

☐ I'm hungry. I want **something to eat**. (= something that I can eat)
☐ Tony doesn't have **anybody to talk** to. (= anybody that he can talk to)
☐ There is **nowhere to go** in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

some and **any** ➜ Unit 76 **any** and **no** ➜ Unit 77 **anybody/nothing** etc. ➜ Unit 78
everything/-body/-where ➜ Unit 80

Exercises

79.1 Write **somebody** (or **someone**) / **something** / **somewhere**.

1	Lucy said something	What did she say?
2	I've lost	What have you lost?
3	Sue and Tom went	Where did they go?
4	I'm going to phone	Who are you going to phone?

79.2 Write **nobody** (or **no-one**) / **nothing** / **nowhere**.

1a	What did you say?	Nothing.
2a	Where are you going?	....
3a	What do you want?	....
4a	Who are you looking for?	....

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.
Use **not + anybody/anything/anywhere.**

1b I didn't say anything.
2b I'm not ....
3b ....
4b ....

79.3 Write **somebody/anything/nowhere** etc.

1 It's dark. I can't see anything .
2 Tom lives somewhere near London.
3 Do you know .... about computers?
4 'Listen!' 'What? I can't hear ....'
5 'What are you doing here?' 'I'm waiting for ....'
6 We need to talk. There's .... I want to tell you.
7 'Did .... see the accident?' 'No, ...'
8 We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat ....
9 'What's going to happen?' 'I don't know. .... knows.'
10 'Do you know .... in Paris?' 'Yes, a few people.'
11 'What's in that cupboard?' '........ . It's empty.'
12 I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them ....
13 I don't like cold weather. I want to live .... warm.
14 Is there .... interesting on TV tonight?
15 Have you ever met .... famous?

79.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

something **anything** **nothing**
something **anywhere** ~~**nowhere**~~
somewhere **nowhere**

do **eat** **park** **sit**
drink ~~**go**~~ **read** **stay**

1 We don't go out very much because there's nowhere to go .
2 There isn't any food in the house. We don't have ....
3 I'm bored. I've got ....
4 'Why are you standing?' 'Because there isn't ....'
5 'Would you like .... ?' 'Yes, please – a glass of water.'
6 If you're going to the city centre, take the bus. Don't drive because there's
....
7 I want .... I'm going to buy a magazine.
8 I need .... in London. Can you recommend a hotel?

Unit
80

every and all

A every

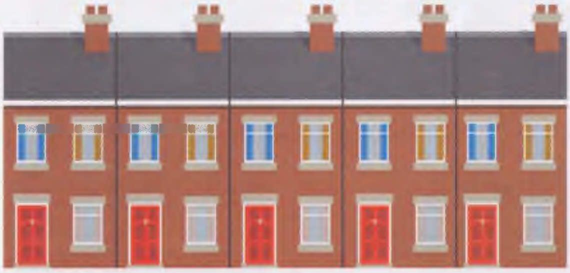

Every house in the street is the same.

every house in the street =
all the houses in the street

We use **every** + *singular noun* (**every house** / **every country** etc.):

- Sarah has been to **every country** in Europe.
- **Every summer** we have a holiday by the sea.
- She looks different **every time** I see her.

Use a *singular verb* after **every** ... :

- **Every house** in the street **is** the same. (*not* are the same)
- **Every country has** a national flag. (*not* have)

Compare **every** and **all**:

Every student in the class passed the exam.	**All the students** in the class passed the exam.
Every country has a national flag.	**All countries have** a national flag.

B every day and all day

every day = on all days:

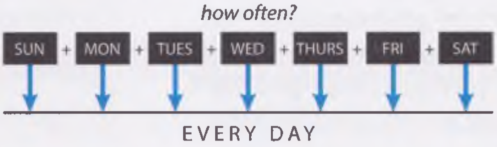

- It rained **every day** last week.
- Ben watches TV for about two hours **every evening**. (= on all evenings)

also **every morning/night/summer** etc.

all day = the complete day:

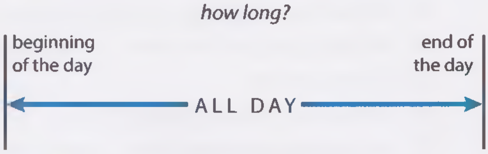

- It rained **all day** yesterday.
- On Monday, I watched TV **all evening**. (= the complete evening)

also **all morning/night/summer** etc.

C everybody (*or* everyone) / everything / everywhere

everybody *or* **everyone**
(people)
everything
(things)
everywhere
(places)

- **Everybody** (*or* **Everyone**) needs friends. (= all people need friends)
- Do you have **everything** you need? (= all the things you need)
- I lost my watch. I've looked **everywhere** for it. (= I've looked in all places)

Use a *singular verb* after **everybody/everyone/everything**:

- **Everybody has** problems. (*not* Everybody have)

all → Unit 81

Exercises

80.1 Complete the sentences. Use **every** + these words:

day **room** **~~student~~** **time** **word**

1 ....Every student.... in the class passed the exam.
2 My job is very boring. .... is the same.
3 Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play, she wins ....
4 .... in the hotel has free internet access and a minibar.
5 'Did you understand what she said?' 'Most of it, but not ....'

80.2 Complete the sentences with **every day** or **all day**.

1 Yesterday it rained ....all day.... .
2 I buy a newspaper .... , but sometimes I don't read it.
3 I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be at home ....
4 I usually drink about four cups of coffee ....
5 Paula was ill yesterday, so she stayed in bed ....
6 I'm tired now because I've been working hard ....
7 Last year we went to the seaside for a week, and it rained ....

80.3 Write **every** or **all**.

1 Bill watches TV for about two hours ....every.... evening.
2 Julia gets up at 6.30 .... morning.
3 The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat outside .... afternoon.
4 I'm going away on Monday. I'll be away .... week.
5 A: How often do you go skiing?
B: .... year. Usually in March.
6 A: Were you at home at 10 o'clock yesterday?
B: Yes, I was at home .... morning. I went out after lunch.
7 My sister loves new cars. She buys one .... year.
8 I saw Sam at the party, but he didn't speak to me .... evening.
9 We go away on holiday for two or three weeks .... summer.

80.4 Write **everybody/everything/everywhere**.

1 ....Everybody.... needs friends.
2 Chris knows .... about computers.
3 I like the people here. .... is very friendly.
4 This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable and .... is very clean.
5 Kevin never uses his car. He goes .... by motorcycle.
6 Let's get something to eat. .... is hungry.
7 Sue's house is full of books. There are books ....
8 You are right. .... you say is true.

80.5 Complete the sentences. Use one word only each time.

1 Everybody ....has.... problems.
2 Are you ready yet? Everybody .... waiting for you.
3 The house is empty. Everyone .... gone out.
4 Gary is very popular. Everybody .... him.
5 This town is completely different now. Everything .... changed.
6 I got home very late last night. I came in quietly because everyone .... asleep.
7 Everybody .... mistakes!
8 A: .... everything clear? .... everybody know what to do?
B: Yes, we all understand.

Unit 81

all most some any no/none

A

Compare:

children/money/books etc. (in general):

- **Children** like playing.
  (= children in general)
- **Money** isn't everything.
  (= money in general)
- I enjoy reading **books**.
- Everybody needs **friends**.

the children / **the** money / **these** books etc. :

- Where are **the children**?
  (= our children)
- I want to buy a car, but I don't have **the money**. (= the money for a car)
- Have you read **these books**?
- I often go out with **my friends**.

B

most / most of … , **some / some of** … etc.

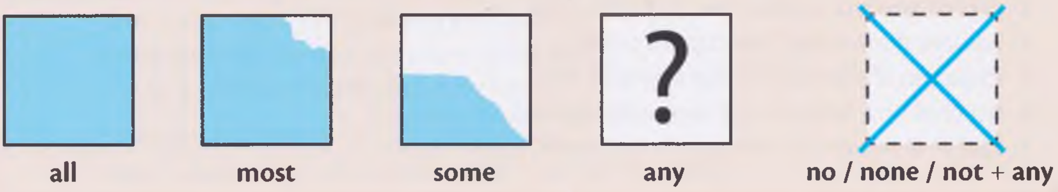

most/some etc. + noun

all **most** **some** **any** **no**	~~**of**~~	**cities** **children** **books** **money**

- **Most children** like playing.
  (= children in general)
- I don't want **any money**.
- **Some books** are better than others.
- He has **no friends**.
- **All cities** have the same problems.
  (= cities in general)

Do not use **of** in these sentences:

- **Most people** drive too fast.
  (*not* Most of people)
- **Some birds** can't fly.
  (*not* Some of birds)

most of/some of etc. + **the/this/my** … etc.

all	(**of**)	**the** … **this/that** … **these/those** … **my/your**… etc.
most **some** **any** **none**	**of**	

- **Most of the children at this school** are under 11 years old.
- I don't want **any of this money**.
- **Some of these books** are very old.
- **None of my friends** live near me.

You can say **all the** … or **all of the** … (with or without **of**):

- **All the students in our class** passed the exam. (*or* **All of the students** …)
- Amy has lived in London **all her life**.
  (*or*… **all of her life**.)

C

all of it / most of them / none of us etc.

all **most** **some** **any** **none**	**of**	**it** **them** **us** **you**

- You can have **some of this cake**, but not **all of it**.
- A: Do you know those people?
  B: **Most of them**, but not **all of them**.
- **Some of us** are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- I have a lot of books, but I haven't read **any of them**.
- 'How many of these books have you read?' '**None of them**.'

the … (**children** / **the children** etc.) ➜ Unit 72 **some** and **any** ➜ Unit 76 **no/none/any** ➜ Unit 77
all and **every** ➜ Unit 80

Exercises

81.1 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets (**some**/**most** etc.). Sometimes you need **of** (**some of** / **most of** etc.).

1 ......Most...... children like playing. (**most**)
2 ......Some of...... this money is yours. (**some**)
3 .... people never stop talking. (**some**)
4 .... the shops in the city centre close at 6.30. (**most**)
5 .... people have mobile phones these days. (**most**)
6 I don't like .... the pictures in the living room. (**any**)
7 He's lost .... his money. (**all**)
8 .... my friends are married. (**none**)
9 Do you know .... the people in this picture? (**any**)
10 .... birds can fly. (**most**)
11 I enjoyed .... the film, but I didn't like the ending. (**most**)
12 .... sports are very dangerous. (**some**)
13 We can't find anywhere to stay. .... the hotels are full. (**all**)
14 You must have .... this cheese. It's delicious. (**some**)
15 The weather was bad when we were on holiday. It rained .... the time. (**most**)

81.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use:

all/most/some/none + **of them / of it**

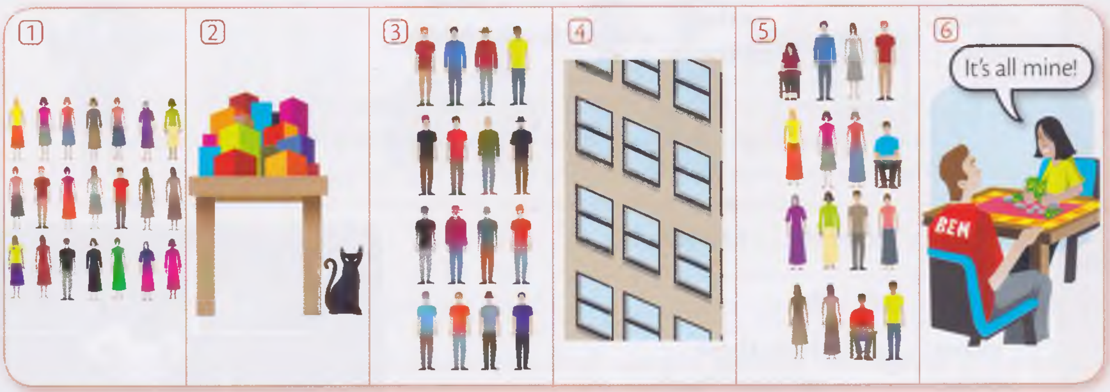

1 How many of the people are women? ......Most of them......
2 How many of the boxes are on the table? ....
3 How many of the men are wearing hats? ....
4 How many of the windows are open? ....
5 How many of the people are standing? ....
6 How much of the money is Ben's? ....

81.3 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1 Most of children like playing. ......Most children......
2 All the students failed the exam. ......OK......
3 Some of people work too hard. ....
4 Some of questions in the exam were very easy. ....
5 I haven't seen any of those people before. ....
6 All of insects have six legs. ....
7 Have you read all these books? ....
8 Most of students in our class are very nice. ....
9 Most of my friends are going to the party. ....
10 I'm very tired this morning – I was awake most of night. ....

Unit
82

both either neither

A

We use **both/either/neither** to talk about two things or people:

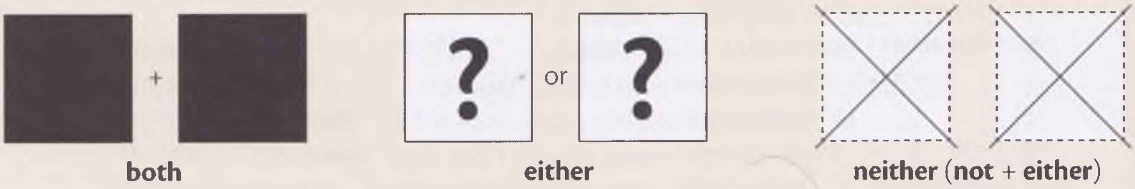

○ Rebecca has two children. **Both** are married. (**both** = the two children)
○ Would you like tea or coffee? You can have **either**. (**either** = tea or coffee)
○ A: Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre?
B: **Neither**. I want to stay at home. (**neither** = not the cinema or the theatre)

Compare **either** and **neither**:

○ 'Would you like **tea** or **coffee**?'
'**Either**. I don't mind.' (= tea or coffee)
'I **don't** want **either**.' (*not* I don't want neither)
'**Neither**.' (= not tea or coffee)

B

both/either/neither + *noun*

both + *plural*
either } + *singular*
neither }

both	**windows/books/children** etc.
either **neither**	**window/book/child** etc.

○ Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked **both cities** very much.
○ First I worked in an office, and later in a shop. **Neither job** was very interesting.
○ There are two ways from here to the station. You can go **either way**.

C

both of ... / **either of** ... / **neither of** ...

both	**(of)**	**the** ...
either **neither**	**of**	**these/those** ... **my/your/Paul's** ... etc.

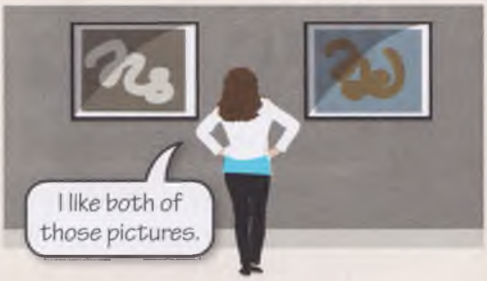
I like both of those pictures.

○ **Neither of my parents** is British.
○ I **haven't** read **either of these books**.

You can say **both of the/those/my** ... or **both the/those/my** ... (with or without **of**):

○ I like **both of** those pictures. *or*
I like **both** those pictures.
○ **Both of** Paul's sisters are married. *or*
Both Paul's sisters are married.
but ○ **Neither of** Paul's sisters is married. (*not* Neither Paul's sisters)

D

both of them / **neither of us**

both **either** **neither**	**of**	**them** **us** **you**

○ Paul has two sisters. **Both of them** are married.
○ Sue and I didn't eat anything. **Neither of us** was hungry.
○ Who are those two people? I **don't** know **either of them**.

I can't either / neither can I → Unit 42

Exercises

82.1 Write **both/either/neither**. Use **of** where necessary.

1 Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked .....both..... cities very much.
2 There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like .....either of..... them.
3 It was a good football match. .... teams played well.
4 It wasn't a good football match. .... team played well.
5 'Is your friend English or American?' '.......................... . She's Australian.'
6 We went away for two days, but the weather wasn't good. It rained .... days.
7 A: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?
B: .... It doesn't matter which one.
8 I invited Sam and Chris to the party, but .... them came.
9 'Do you go to work by car or by bus?' '.......................... . I always walk.'
10 'Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?' 'I don't like .... them.'
11 'Do you work or are you a student?' '.......................... . I work and I'm a student too.'
12 My friend and I went to the cinema, but .... us liked the film. It was really bad.
13 Helen has two sisters and a brother. .... sisters are married.
14 Helen has two sisters and a brother. I've met her brother, but I haven't met .... her sisters.

82.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use **Both ...** and **Neither ...** .

1
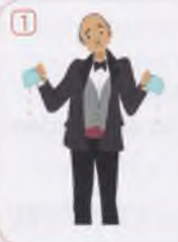
2
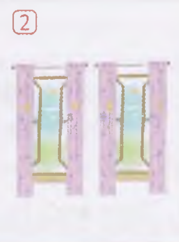
3
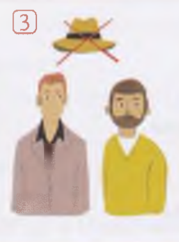
4
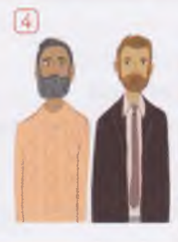
5
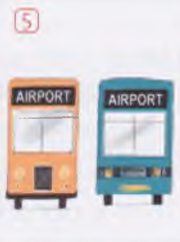

6
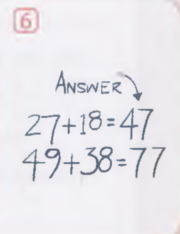

1 .....Both cups are..... empty.
2 .... are open.
3 .... wearing a hat.
4 .... beards.
5 .... to the airport.
6 .... correct.

82.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with **Both/Neither of them ...** .

1	Are you married?	No	No	1	Neither of them is married.
2	How old are you?	21	21	2	Both of them are 21.
3	Are you a student?	Yes	Yes	3	.... students.
4	Do you have a car?	No	No	4	.... a car.
5	Where do you live?	London	London	5	....
6	Do you like cooking?	Yes	Yes	6	....
7	Can you play the piano?	No	No	7	....
8	Do you eat seafood?	Yes	Yes	8	....
9	Are you interested in sport?	No	No	9	....

Unit
83

a lot much many

A

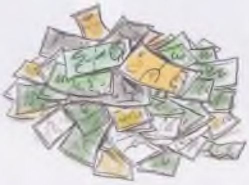

a lot of money

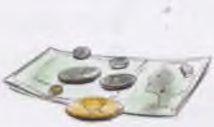

not much money

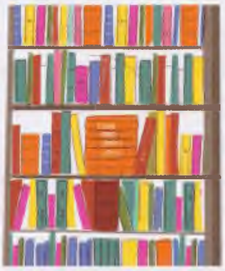

a lot of books

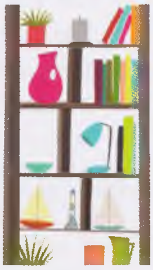

not many books

We use **much** + *uncountable noun*
(**much food** / **much money** etc.):

- ☐ Did you buy **much food**?
- ☐ We don't have **much luggage**.
- ☐ How **much money** do you want?
- ☐ A: Do you have any **money**?
  B: I have some, but **not much**.

We use **many** + *plural noun*
(**many books** / **many people** etc.):

- ☐ Did you buy **many books**?
- ☐ We don't know **many people**.
- ☐ How **many photos** did you take?
- ☐ A: Did you take any **photos**?
  B: I took some, but **not many**.

We use **a lot of** + *both types of noun*:

- ☐ We bought **a lot of food**.
- ☐ Paula doesn't have **a lot of** free **time**.
- ☐ We bought **a lot of books**.
- ☐ Did they ask **a lot of questions**?

We say:

- ☐ There **is** a lot of **food**/**money**/**water** … (*singular verb*)
- ☐ There **are** a lot of **trees**/**shops**/**people** … (*plural verb*)
- ☐ A lot of **people speak** English. (*not* speaks)

B

We use **much** in *questions* and *negative sentences*:

- ☐ Do you drink **much coffee**?
- ☐ I don't drink **much coffee**.

But we do not often use **much** in *positive sentences*:

- ☐ I drink **a lot of coffee**. (*not* I drink much coffee)
- ☐ 'Do you drink much coffee?' 'Yes, **a lot**.' (*not* Yes, much)

We use **many** and **a lot of** in all types of sentences (positive/negative/question):

- ☐ We have **many** friends / **a lot of** friends.
- ☐ We don't have **many** friends / **a lot of** friends.
- ☐ Do you have **many** friends / **a lot of** friends?

C

You can use **much** and **a lot** without a noun:

- ☐ Amy spoke to me, but she didn't say **much**.
- ☐ 'Do you watch TV **much**?' 'No, **not much**.' (= not often)
- ☐ We like films, so we go to the cinema **a lot**. (*not* go to the cinema much)
- ☐ I don't like him very **much**.

countable/uncountable ➜ **Units 67–68**

Exercises

83.1 Write **much** or **many**.

1 Did you buy ……much…… food?
2 There aren't …………… hotels in this town.
3 We don't have …………… petrol. We need to stop and get some.
4 Were there …………… people on the train?
5 Did …………… students fail the exam?
6 Paula doesn't have …………… money.
7 I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat …………… .
8 I don't know where Gary lives these days. I haven't seen him for …………… years.

Write **How much** or **How many**.

9 …………………… people are coming to the party?
10 …………………… milk do you want in your coffee?
11 …………………… bread did you buy?
12 …………………… players are there in a football team?

83.2 Complete the sentences. Use **much** or **many** with these words:

~~books~~ countries luggage people time times

1 I don't read very much. I don't have ……many books…… .
2 Hurry up! We don't have …………………… .
3 Do you travel a lot? Have you been to …………………… ?
4 Tina hasn't lived here very long, so she doesn't know …………………… .
5 'Do you have …………………… ?' 'No, only this bag.'
6 I know Tokyo well. I've been there …………………… .

83.3 Complete the sentences. Use **a lot of** + these words:

accidents ~~books~~ fun interesting things traffic

1 I like reading. I have ……a lot of books…… .
2 We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw …………………… .
3 This road is very dangerous. There are …………………… .
4 We enjoyed our holiday. We had …………………… .
5 It took me a long time to drive here. There was …………………… .

83.4 In some of these sentences **much** is not natural. Change the sentences or write *OK*.

1 Do you drink much coffee? ……OK……
2 I drink much tea. ……a lot of tea……
3 It was a cold winter. We had much snow. ……………………
4 There wasn't much snow last winter. ……………………
5 It costs much money to travel around the world. ……………………
6 We had a cheap holiday. It didn't cost much. ……………………
7 Do you know much about computers? ……………………
8 'Do you have any luggage?' 'Yes, much.' ……………………

83.5 Write sentences about these people. Use **much** and **a lot**.

1 James loves films. (go to the cinema) ……He goes to the cinema a lot.……
2 Nicola thinks TV is boring. (watch TV) ……She doesn't watch TV much.……
3 Tina is a good tennis player. (play tennis) She ……………………
4 Mark doesn't like driving. (use his car) He ……………………
5 Paul spends most of the time at home. (go out) ……………………
6 Sue has been all over the world. (travel) ……………………

Unit
84

(a) little (a) few

A

(a) **little** + *uncountable noun*:

(a) **little water**
(a) **little time**
(a) **little money**
(a) **little soup**

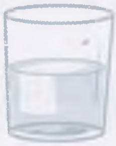

a little water

(a) **few** + *plural noun*:

(a) **few books**
(a) **few questions**
(a) **few people**
(a) **few days**

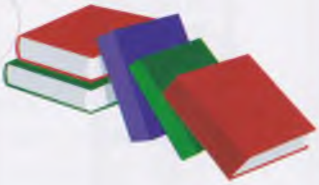

a few books

B

a little = some but not much

- She didn't eat anything, but she drank **a little water**.
- I speak **a little Spanish**. (= some Spanish but not much)
- A: Can you speak Spanish?
  B: **A little**.

a few = some but not many

- Excuse me, I have to make **a few phone calls**.
- We're going away for **a few days**.
- I speak **a few words** of Spanish.
- A: Are there any shops near here?
  B: Yes, **a few**.

C

✗**little** (without **a**) = nearly no *or* nearly nothing

- There was **little food** in the fridge. It was nearly empty.

You can say **very little**:

- Dan is very thin because he eats **very little**. (= nearly nothing)

✗**few** (without **a**) = nearly no

- There were **few people** in the theatre. It was nearly empty.

You can say **very few**:

- Your English is very good. You make **very few mistakes**.

D

Compare **little** and **a little**:

- They have **a little** money, so they're not poor. (= they have some money)
- They have **little** money. They are very poor. (= nearly no money)

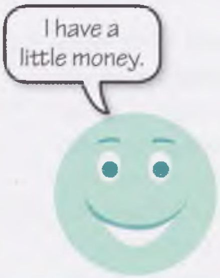
I have a little money.

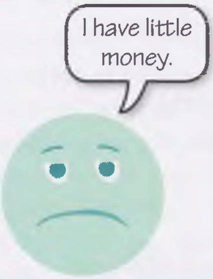
I have little money.

Compare **few** and **a few**:

- I have **a few** friends, so I'm not lonely. (= I have some friends)
- I'm sad and I'm lonely. I have **few** friends. (= nearly no friends)

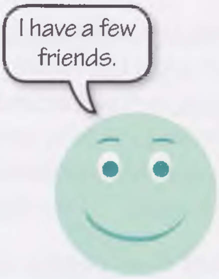
I have a few friends.

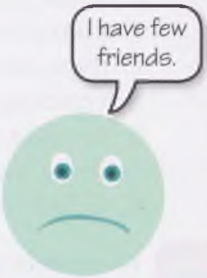
I have few friends.

countable/uncountable ➜ **Units 67–68**

Exercises

84.1 Answer the questions with **a little** or **a few**.

1 'Do you have any money?' 'Yes, a little.'
2 'Do you have any envelopes?' 'Yes, ...'
3 'Do you want sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes, ... , please.'
4 'Did you take any photos when you were on holiday?' 'Yes, ...'
5 'Does your friend speak English?' 'Yes, ...'
6 'Are there any good restaurants in this town?' 'Yes, ...'

84.2 Write **a little** or **a few** + these words:

chairs **days** **fresh air** **friends** **milk** **Russian** **times** **~~years~~**

1 Mark speaks Italian well. He lived in Italy for a few years.
2 Can I have .... in my coffee, please?
3 'When did Amy go away?' '......................... ago.'
4 'Do you speak any foreign languages?' 'I can speak ....'
5 'Are you going out alone?' 'No, I'm going with ....'
6 'Have you ever been to Mexico?' 'Yes, ...'
7 There wasn't much furniture in the room – just a table and ....
8 I'm going out for a walk. I need ....

84.3 Complete the sentences. Use **very little** or **very few** + these words:

coffee **hotels** **~~mistakes~~** **people** **rain** **time** **work**

1 Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes.
2 I drink .... I prefer tea.
3 The weather here is very dry in summer. There is ....
4 It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are ....
5 Hurry up. We have ....
6 The town is very quiet at night. .... go out.
7 Some people in the office are very lazy. They do ....

84.4 Write **little / a little** or **few / a few**.

1 There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.
2 'When did Sarah go out?' '......................... minutes ago.'
3 I can't decide now. I need .... time to think about it.
4 There was .... traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected.
5 The bus service isn't very good at night – there are .... buses after 9 o'clock.
6 'Would you like some soup?' 'Yes, ... , please.'
7 I'd like to practise my English more, but I have .... opportunity.

84.5 Right or wrong? Change the sentences where necessary. Write *OK* if the sentence is correct.

1 We're going away for few days next week. for a few days
2 Everybody needs little luck. ....
3 I can't talk to you now – I have few things to do. ....
4 I eat very little meat – I don't like it very much. ....
5 Excuse me, can I ask you few questions? ....
6 There were little people on the bus – it was nearly empty. ....
7 Mark is a very private person. Few people know him well. ....

Unit
85

old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)

A

adjective + *noun* (**nice day** / **blue eyes** etc.)

adjective	+ noun
It's a **nice**	**day** today.
Laura has **brown**	**eyes**.
There's a very **old**	**bridge** in this village.
Do you like **Italian**	**food**?
I don't speak any **foreign**	**languages**.
There are some **beautiful yellow**	**flowers** in the garden.

The adjective is *before* the noun:

- They live in a **modern house**. (*not* a house modern)
- Have you met any **famous people**? (*not* people famous)

The ending of an adjective is always the same:

a **different place** **different** places (*not* differents)

B

be (**am**/**is**/**was** etc.) + *adjective*

- The weather **is nice** today.
- These flowers **are** very **beautiful**.
- **Are** you **cold**? Shall I close the window?
- **I'm hungry**. Can I have something to eat?
- The film **wasn't** very **good**. It **was boring**.
- Please **be quiet**. I'm reading.

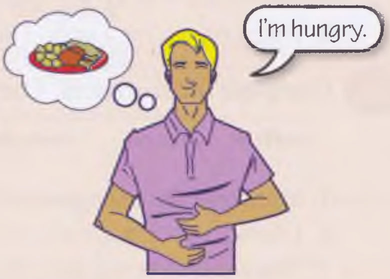

C

look/**feel**/**smell**/**taste**/**sound** + *adjective*

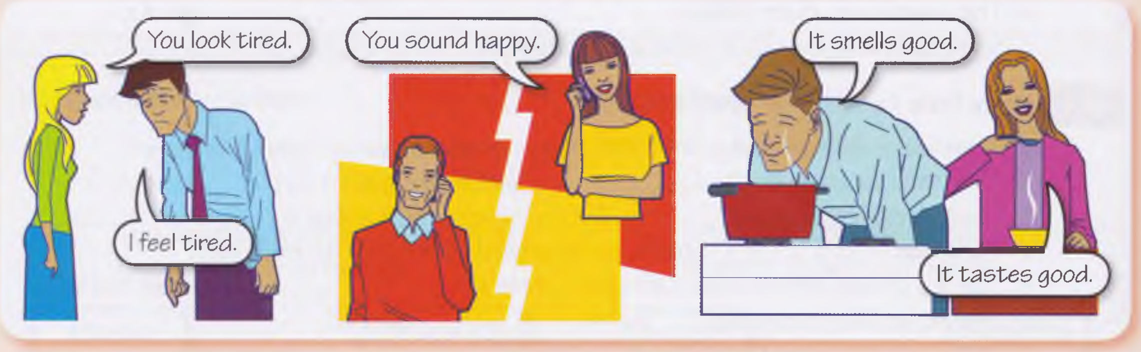
You look tired.
I feel tired.
You sound happy.
It smells good.
It tastes good.

- A: You **look tired**.
  B: Yes, I **feel tired**.
- Joe told me about his new job. It **sounds** very **interesting**.
- I'm not going to eat this fish. It doesn't **smell good**.

Compare:

He	**is** **feels** **looks**	**tired**.

They	**are** **look** **sound**	**happy**.

It	**is** **smells** **tastes**	**good**.

get + adjective (**get hungry**/**tired** etc.) ➜ **Unit 56** **something**/**anybody** + adjective ➜ **Unit 79**

Exercises

85.1 Put the words in the right order.

1 (new / live in / house / they / a) They live in a new house.
2 (like / jacket / I / that / green) I ……
3 (music / like / do / classical / you?) Do ……
4 (had / wonderful / a / I / holiday) ……
5 (went to / restaurant / a / Japanese / we) ……

85.2 The words in the box are adjectives (**black/foreign** etc.) or nouns (**air/job** etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

air **clouds** **~~foreign~~** **holiday** **job** **~~languages~~** **sharp**
black **dangerous** **fresh** **hot** **knife** **long** **water**

1 Do you speak any foreign languages ?
2 Look at those …… . It's going to rain.
3 Sue works very hard, and she's very tired. She needs a …… .
4 I would like to have a shower, but there's no …… .
5 Can you open the window? We need some …… .
6 I need a …… to cut these onions.
7 Fire-fighting is a …… .

85.3 Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from the boxes.

feel(s) **look(s)** **~~sound(s)~~**
look(s) **smell(s)** **taste(s)**

+

~~happy~~ **ill** **nice**
horrible **new** **surprised**

1
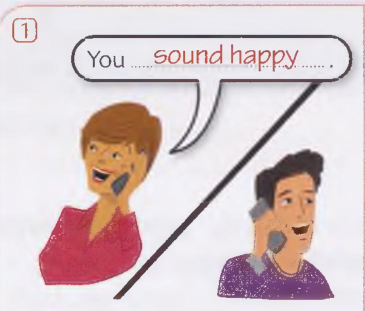

2
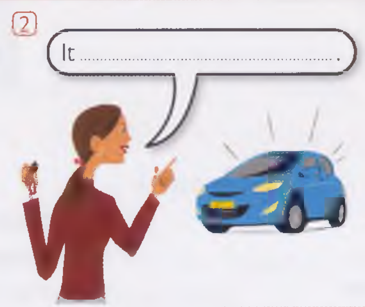

3
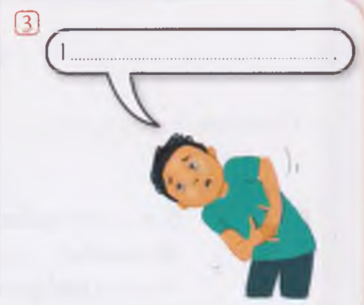

4
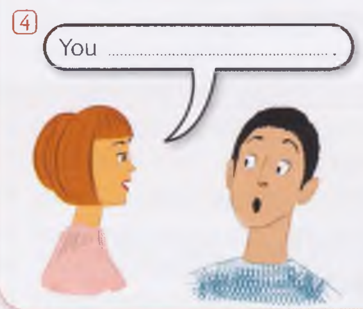

5
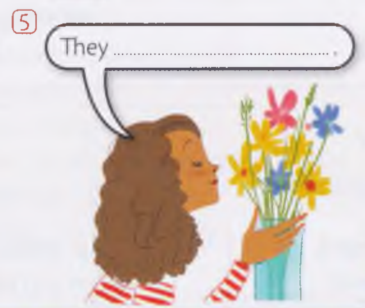

6
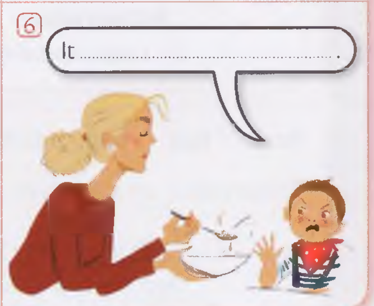

85.4 A and B don't agree. Complete B's sentences. Use **feel/look** etc.

	A	B	
1	You look tired.	Do I? I don't feel tired .	(feel)
2	This is a new coat.	Is it? It doesn't …… .	(look)
3	I'm American.	Are you? You …… .	(sound)
4	You look cold.	Do I? I …… .	(feel)
5	These bags are heavy.	Are they? They …… .	(look)
6	That soup looks good.	Maybe, but it …… .	(taste)

Unit
86

quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)

A

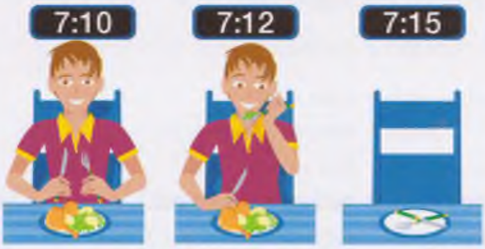

He ate his dinner very **quickly**.

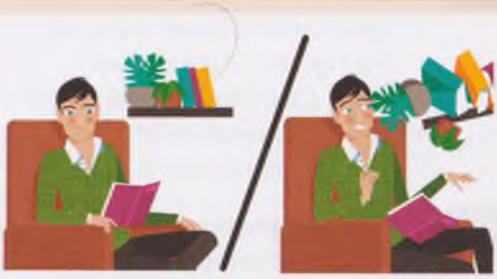

Suddenly the shelf fell down.

Quickly and **suddenly** are adverbs.

adjective + **-ly** → adverb:

adjective	**quick**	**bad**	**sudden**	**careful**	**heavy**	
adverb	**quickly**	**badly**	**suddenly**	**carefully**	**heavily**	etc.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): easy → eas**ily** heavy → heav**ily**

B

Adverbs tell you *how* something happens or *how* somebody does something:

- The train **stopped suddenly**.
- I **opened** the door **slowly**.
- Please **listen carefully**.
- I **understand** you **perfectly**.

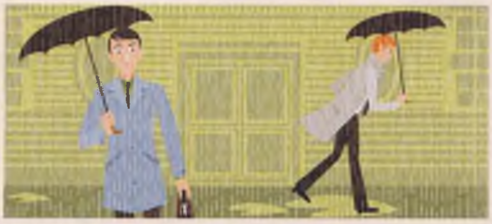

It's **raining heavily**.

Compare:

adjective	*adverb*
Sue is very **quiet**.	Sue **speaks** very **quietly**. (*not* speaks very quiet)
Be careful!	**Listen carefully**! (*not* listen careful)
It was **a bad game**.	Our team **played badly**. (*not* played bad)
I **felt nervous**. (= I was nervous)	I **waited nervously**.

C

hard fast late early

These words are adjectives *and* adverbs:

Sue's job **is** very **hard**.	Sue **works** very **hard**. (*not* hardly)
Ben is **a fast runner**.	Ben can **run fast**.
The bus **was late/early**.	I **went** to bed **late/early**.

D

good (*adjective*) → **well** (*adverb*)

Your English **is** very **good**.	You **speak** English very **well**. (*not* very good)
It was **a good game**.	Our team **played well**.

But **well** is also an *adjective* (= not ill, in good health):

- 'How are you?' '**I'm** very **well**, thank you. And you?'

adjectives ➜ Unit 85

Exercises

86.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with these adverbs:

angrily **badly** **dangerously** **fast** ~~**heavily**~~ **quietly**

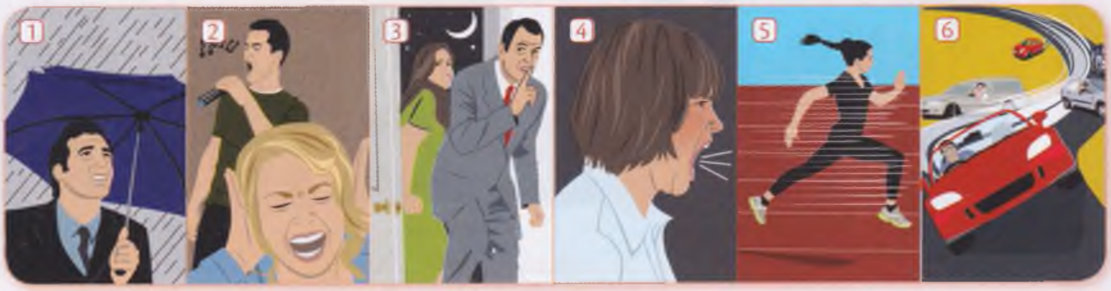

1 It's raining heavily.
2 He sings very ....
3 They came in ....
4 She shouted at me ....
5 She can run very ....
6 He was driving ....

86.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

come **know** **sleep** **win**
explain ~~**listen**~~ **think** **work**

+

~~**carefully**~~ **clearly** **hard** **well**
carefully **easily** **quickly** **well**

1 I'm going to tell you something very important, so please listen carefully.
2 They .... At the end of the day they're always tired.
3 I'm tired this morning. I didn't .... last night.
4 You play tennis much better than me. When we play, you always
....
5 .... before you answer the question.
6 I've met Alice a few times, but I don't .... her very ....
7 Our teacher doesn't .... things very .... We never understand him.
8 Helen! I need your help. .... !

86.3 Which is right?

1 Don't eat so ~~quick~~/quickly. It's not good for you. (quickly *is right*)
2 Why are you angry/angrily? I haven't done anything.
3 Can you speak slow/slowly, please?
4 Come on, Dave! Why are you always so slow/slowly?
5 Sam is a very careful/carefully driver.
6 Amy is studying hard/hardly for her examinations.
7 'Where's Anna?' 'She was here, but she left sudden/suddenly.'
8 Please be quiet/quietly. I'm studying.
9 Some companies pay their workers very bad/badly.
10 Those oranges look nice/nicely. Can I have one?
11 I don't remember much about the accident. Everything happened quick/quickly.

86.4 Write **good** or **well**.

1 Your English is very good. You speak it very well.
2 Jackie did very .... in her exams.
3 The party was very .... I enjoyed it very much.
4 Mark has a difficult job, but he does it ....
5 How are your parents? Are they .... ?
6 Did you have a .... holiday? Was the weather .... ?

Unit 87

old/older expensive / more expensive

A

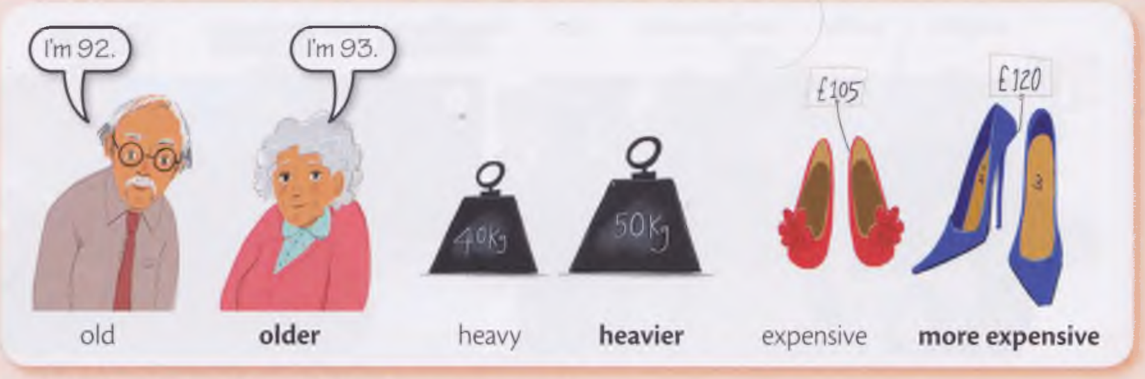

Older / **heavier** / **more expensive** are *comparative* forms.
The comparative is **-er** (**older**) or **more** ... (**more expensive**).

B

older/heavier etc.

Short words (1 syllable) → **-er**:

old → **older**	slow → **slower**	cheap → **cheaper**
nice → **nicer**	late → **later**	big → **bigger**

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): bi**g** → bi**gg**er ho**t** → ho**tt**er thi**n** → thi**nn**er

Words ending in **-y** → **-ier**:

easy → **easier**	heavy → **heavier**	early → **earlier**

○ Rome is **old**, but Athens is **older**. (*not* more old)
○ Is it **cheaper** to go by car or by train? (*not* more cheap)
○ Helen wants a **bigger** car.
○ This coat is OK, but I think the other one is **nicer**.
○ Don't take the bus. It's **easier** to take a taxi. (*not* more easy)

far → **further**:

○ A: How far is it to the station? A mile?
B: No, it's **further**. About two miles.

C

more ...

Long words (2/3/4 syllables) → **more** ... :

careful → **more careful**	polite → **more polite**
expensive → **more expensive**	interesting → **more interesting**

○ You must be **more careful**.
○ I don't like my job. I want to do something **more interesting**.
○ Is it **more expensive** to go by car or by train?

D

good/well → better bad → worse

○ The weather wasn't very **good** yesterday, but it's **better** today.
○ 'Do you feel **better** today?' 'No, I feel **worse**.'
○ Which is **worse** – a headache or a toothache?

older than ... / **more expensive than** ... ➔ Unit 88 **the oldest** / **the most expensive** ➔ Unit 90

Exercises

87.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (**older** / **more interesting** etc.).

1 heavy

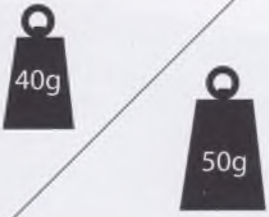

heavier

2 big

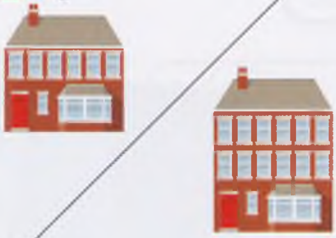

....

3 slow

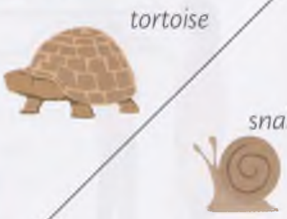

....

4 expensive

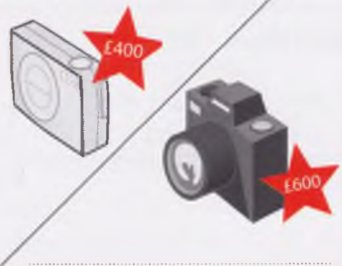

....

5 high

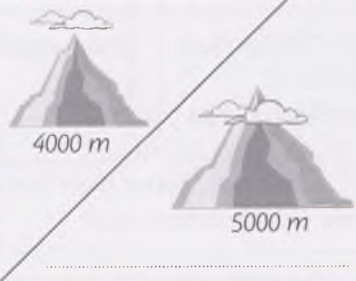

....

6 dangerous

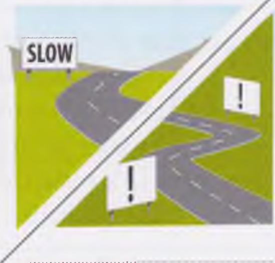

....

87.2 Write the comparative.

1 old older
2 strong ....
3 happy ....
4 modern ....
5 important ....
6 good ....
7 large ....
8 serious ....
9 pretty ....
10 crowded ....

87.3 Write the opposite.

1 younger older
2 colder ....
3 cheaper ....
4 better ....
5 nearer ....
6 easier ....

87.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

1 Helen's car isn't very big. She wants a bigger one.
2 My job isn't very interesting. I want to do something more interesting .
3 You're not very tall. Your brother is ....
4 David doesn't work very hard. I work ....
5 My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is ....
6 Your idea isn't very good. My idea is ....
7 These flowers aren't very nice. The blue ones are ....
8 My bag isn't very heavy. Your bag is ....
9 I'm not very interested in art. I'm .... in history.
10 It isn't very warm today. It was .... yesterday.
11 These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted ....
12 Britain isn't very big. France is ....
13 London isn't very beautiful. Paris is ....
14 This knife isn't very sharp. Have you got a .... one?
15 People today aren't very polite. In the past they were ....
16 The weather isn't too bad today. Often it is much ....

Unit
88

older than ... more expensive than ...

A

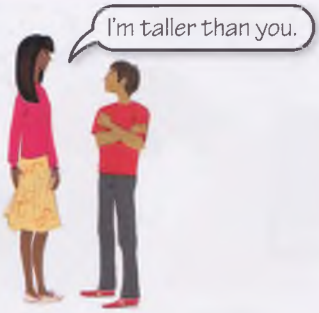
I'm taller than you.

She's **taller than** him.

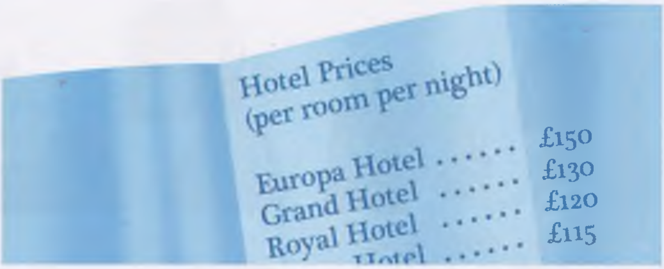
Hotel Prices
(per room per night)
Europa Hotel £150
Grand Hotel £130
Royal Hotel £120
Hotel £115

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand.

We use **than** after comparatives (**older than** ... / **more expensive than** ... etc.):

- Athens is **older than** Rome.
- Are oranges **more expensive than** bananas?
- It's **easier** to take a taxi **than** to take the bus.
- 'How are you today?' 'Not bad. **Better than** yesterday.'
- The restaurant is **more crowded than** usual.

B

We usually say: than **me** / than **him** / than **her** / than **us** / than **them**.
You can say:

- I can run faster **than him**. *or* I can run faster **than he can**.
- You are a better singer **than me**. *or* You are a better singer **than I am**.
- I got up earlier **than her**. *or* I got up earlier **than she did**.

C

more/less than ...

- A: How much did your shoes cost? £60?
  B: No, **more than** that. (= **more than** £60)
- The film was very short – **less than** an hour.
- They have **more money than** they need.
- You go out **more than** me.

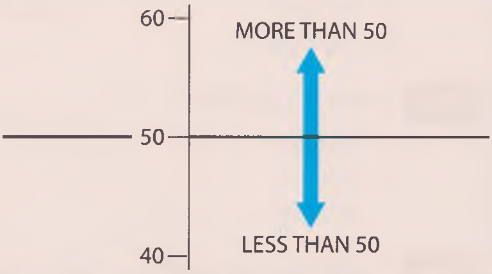

D

a bit older / **much older** etc.

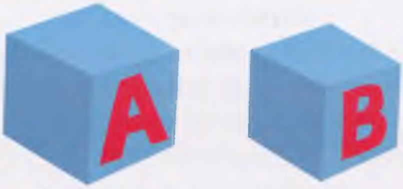

Box A is **a bit bigger** than Box B.

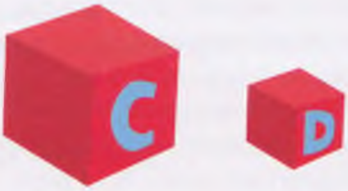

Box C is **much bigger** than Box D.

a bit **much**	bigger older better more difficult more expensive	than ...

- Canada is **much bigger** than France.
- Sue is **a bit older** than Joe – she's 25 and he's 24.
- The hotel was **much more expensive** than I expected.
- You go out **much more** than me.

old → older, expensive → more expensive ➜ Unit 87 **not as ... as ➜ Unit 89**

Exercises

88.1 Write sentences about Kate and Ben. Use **than**.

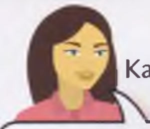

Kate

1 I'm 26.
2 I'm not a very good swimmer.
3 I'm 1 metre 68 tall.
4 I start work at 8 o'clock.
5 I don't work very hard.
6 I don't have much money.
7 I'm a very good driver.
8 I'm not very patient.
9 I'm not a very good dancer.
10 I'm very intelligent.
11 I speak French very well.
12 I don't go to the cinema very much.

Ben

1 I'm 24.
2 I'm a very good swimmer.
3 I'm 1 metre 63 tall.
4 I start work at 8.30.
5 I work very hard.
6 I have a lot of money.
7 I'm not a very good driver.
8 I'm very patient.
9 I'm a good dancer.
10 I'm not very intelligent.
11 I don't speak French very well.
12 I go to the cinema a lot.

1 Kate is older than Ben .
2 Ben is a better swimmer than Kate .
3 Kate is ....
4 Kate starts .... Ben.
5 Ben ....
6 Ben has ....
7 Kate is a ....
8 Ben ....
9 Ben ....
10 Kate ....
11 Kate ....
12 Ben ....

88.2 Complete the sentences. Use **than**.

1 He isn't very tall. You're taller than him (OR taller than he is) .
2 She isn't very old. You're ....
3 I don't work very hard. You work ....
4 He doesn't watch TV very much. You ....
5 I'm not a very good cook. You ....
6 We don't know many people. You ....
7 They don't have much money. You ....
8 I can't run very fast. You can ....
9 She hasn't been here very long. You ....
10 They didn't get up very early. You ....
11 He wasn't very surprised. You ....

88.3 Complete the sentences with **a bit** or **much** + comparative (**older**/**better** etc.).

1 Emma is 25. Joe is $24\frac{1}{2}$.
Emma is a bit older than Joe .
2 Jack's mother is 52. His father is 69.
Jack's mother ....
3 My camera cost £120. Yours cost £112.
My camera ....
4 Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel OK.
I feel ....
5 Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterday it was 10 degrees.
It's ....
6 Sarah is an excellent tennis player. I'm not a very good player.
Sarah ....

Unit
89

not as … as

A

not as … **as**

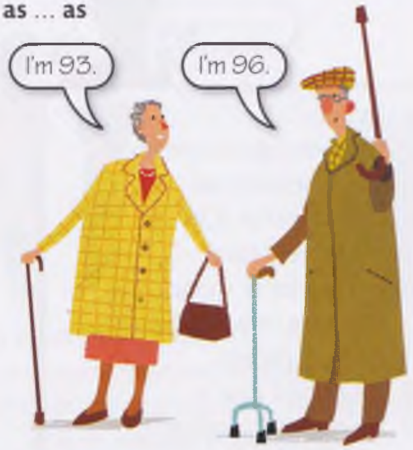

She's old, but she's **not as old as** he is.

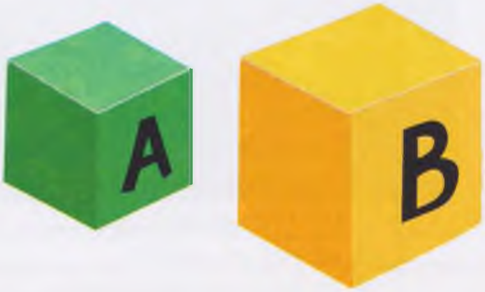

Box A is**n't as big as** Box B.

○ Rome **is not as old as** Athens.
(= Athens is **older**)

○ The Grand Hotel **isn't as expensive as** the Europa.
(= the Europa is **more expensive**)

○ I **don't** play tennis **as often as** you.
(= you play **more often**)

○ The weather is better than it was yesterday. It **isn't as cold**.
(= as cold **as it was yesterday**)

B

not as much as … / **not as many as** …

○ I don't have **as much money as** you. (= you've got **more money**)

○ I don't know **as many people as** you. (= you know **more people**)

○ I don't go out **as much as** you. (= you go out **more**)

C

Compare **not as** … **as** and **than**:

○ Rome is **not as old as** Athens.
Athens is **older than** Rome. (*not* older as Rome)

○ Tennis **isn't as popular as** football.
Football is **more popular than** tennis.

○ I **don't** go out **as much as** you.
You go out **more than** me.

D

We usually say: as **me** / as **him** / as **her** etc.
You can say:

○ She's not as old **as him**. *or* She's not as old **as he is**.

○ You don't work as hard **as me**. *or* You don't work as hard **as I do**.

E

We say **the same as** … :

○ The weather today is **the same as** yesterday.

○ My hair is **the same colour as** yours.

○ I arrived at **the same time as** Tom.

much/many ➜ Unit 83 **older than** … / **more expensive than** … ➜ Unit 88

Exercises

89.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B and C.

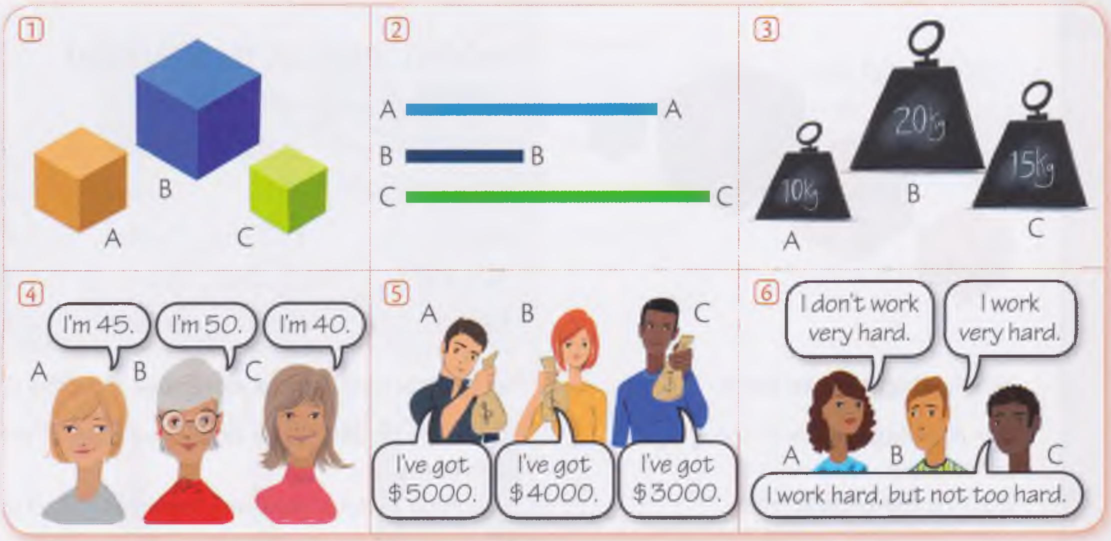
1
A
B
C
2
A
B
C
3
10kg
20kg
15kg
A
B
C
4
I'm 45.
I'm 50.
I'm 40.
A
B
C
5
A
B
C
I've got $5000.
I've got $4000.
I've got $3000.
6
I don't work very hard.
I work very hard.
I work hard, but not too hard.
A
B
C

1 A is bigger than C, but not as big as B.
2 A is .... B, but not .... C.
3 C is .... A, but ....
4 A is ...., but ....
5 B has got ....
6 C works ....

89.2 Write sentences with **as … as …** .

1 Athens is older than Rome. Rome isn't as old as Athens.
2 My room is bigger than yours. Your room isn't ....
3 You got up earlier than me. I didn't ....
4 We played better than them. They ....
5 I've been here longer than you. You ....
6 She's more nervous than him. He ....

89.3 Write **as** or **than**.

1 Athens is older than Rome.
2 I don't watch TV as much .... you.
3 You eat more .... me.
4 I'm more tired today .... I was yesterday.
5 Joe isn't as intelligent .... he thinks.
6 Belgium is smaller .... Switzerland.
7 Brazil isn't as big .... Canada.
8 I can't wait longer .... an hour.

89.4 Complete the sentences about Julia, Andy and Laura. Use **the same age** / **the same street** etc.

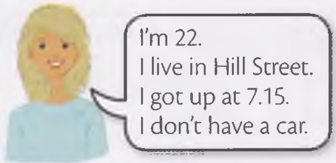
I'm 22.
I live in Hill Street.
I got up at 7.15.
I don't have a car.

Julia

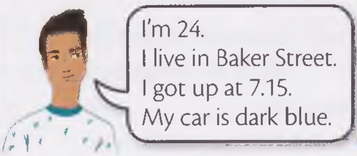
I'm 24.
I live in Baker Street.
I got up at 7.15.
My car is dark blue.

Andy

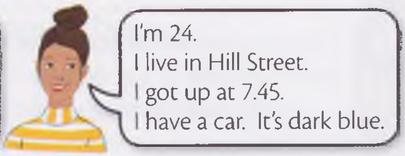
I'm 24.
I live in Hill Street.
I got up at 7.45.
I have a car. It's dark blue.

Laura

1 (age) Andy is the some age as Laura.
2 (street) Julia lives ....
3 (time) Julia got up ....
4 (colour) Andy's ....

Unit
90

the oldest the most expensive

A

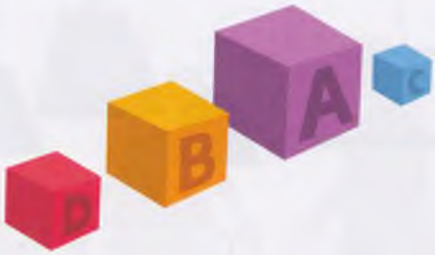

HOTEL PRICES IN KINTON

(Per room per night)

Europa Hotel	£150	Grosvenor	£110
Grand Hotel	£130	Bennets	£100
Royal	£120	Carlton	£98
Astoria	£115	Star	£85
Palace	£115	Station	£75

Box A is **bigger than** Box B.

Box A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.
Box A is **the biggest** box.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** all the other hotels in the city.
The Europa Hotel is **the most expensive** hotel in the city.

Bigger and **more expensive** etc. are *comparative* forms (→ Unit 87).
Biggest and **most expensive** etc. are *superlative* forms.

B

The superlative form is **-est** (**oldest**) or **most** … (**most expensive**).

Short words (**old**/**cheap**/**nice** etc.) → **the -est**:
old → **the oldest** cheap → **the cheapest** nice → **the nicest**
but good → **the best** bad → **the worst**

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): big → the bigg**est** hot → the hott**est**

Words ending in **-y** (**easy**/**heavy** etc.) → **the -iest**:
easy → **the easiest** heavy → **the heaviest** pretty → **the prettiest**

Long words (**careful**/**expensive**/**interesting** etc.) → **the most** … :
careful → **the most careful** interesting → **the most interesting**

C

We say **the** oldest … / **the** most expensive … etc. (with **the**):

- The church is very old. It's **the oldest** building in the town.
  (= it is **older than** all the other buildings)
- What is **the longest** river in the world?
- Money is important, but it isn't **the most important** thing in life.
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest** bank?

D

You can use **the oldest** / **the best** / **the most expensive** etc. without a noun:

- Luke is a good player, but he isn't **the best** in the team.
  (**the best** = the best player)

E

You can use *superlative* + **I've ever** … / **you've ever** … etc. :

- The film was very bad. I think it's **the worst** film **I've ever seen**.
- What is **the most unusual** thing **you've ever done**?

present perfect + **ever** ➜ **Unit 17** **older** / **more expensive** ➜ **Units 87–88**

Exercises

90.1 Write sentences with comparatives (**older** etc.) and superlatives (**the oldest** etc.).

1

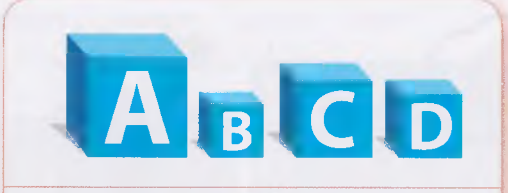

big/small
(A/D) A is bigger than D.
(A) A is the biggest.
(B) B is the smallest.

2

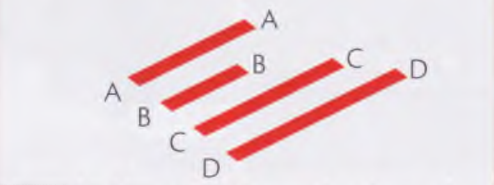

long/short
(C/A) C is …… A.
(D) D is ……
(B) B ……

3

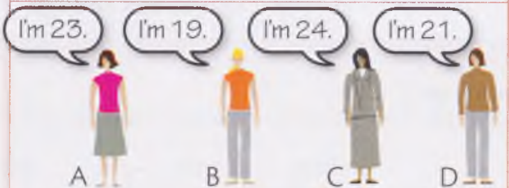
I'm 23.
I'm 19.
I'm 24.
I'm 21.
A
B
C
D

young/old
(D/C) D ……
(B) ……
(C) ……

4

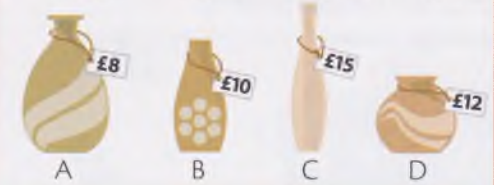

expensive/cheap
(D/A) ……
(C) ……
(A) ……

5

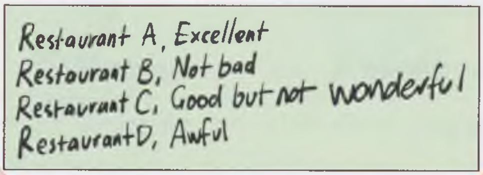

Restaurant A, Excellent
Restaurant B, Not bad
Restaurant C, Good but not wonderful
Restaurant D, Awful

good/bad
(A/C) ……
(A) ……
(D) ……

90.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (**the oldest** etc.).

1 This building is very old. It's the oldest building in the town.
2 It was a very happy day. It was …… of my life.
3 It's a very good film. It's …… I've ever seen.
4 She's a very popular singer. She's …… in the country.
5 It was a very bad mistake. It was …… I've ever made.
6 It's a very pretty village. It's …… I've ever seen.
7 It was a very cold day. It was …… of the year.
8 He's a very boring person. He's …… I've ever met.

90.3 Write sentences with a superlative (**the longest** etc.). Choose from the boxes.

~~Sydney~~	**Alaska**	**high**	**country**	**river**	**Africa**	**South America**
Everest	**the Nile**	**large**	**~~city~~**	**state**	**~~Australia~~**	**the world**
Brazil	**Jupiter**	**long**	**mountain**	**planet**	**the USA**	**the solar system**

1 Sydney is the largest city in Australia.
2 Everest ……
3 ……
4 ……
5 ……
6 ……

Unit
91

enough

A

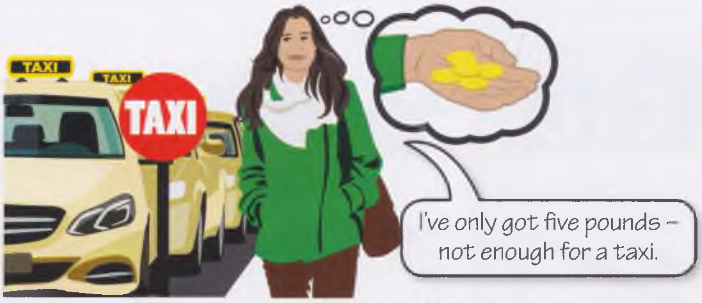
TAXI
TAXI
TAXI
I've only got five pounds – not enough for a taxi.

She isn't going to take a taxi.
She hasn't got **enough money**.

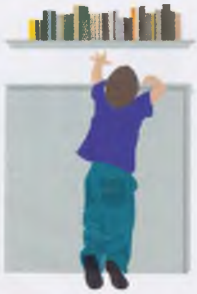

He can't reach the shelf.
He isn't **tall enough**.

B

enough + *noun* (**enough money** / **enough people** etc.)

- A: Is there **enough milk** in your coffee?
  B: Yes, thank you.
- We wanted to play football, but we didn't have **enough players**.
- Why don't you buy a car? You've got **enough money**. (*not* money enough)

enough *without a noun*

- I've got some money, but not **enough** to buy a car.
  (= I need more money to buy a car)
- A: Would you like some more to eat?
  B: No, thanks. I've had **enough**.
- You're always at home. You don't go out **enough**.

C

adjective + **enough** (**good enough** / **tall enough** etc.)

- A: Shall we sit outside?
  B: No, it isn't **warm enough**. (*not* enough warm)
- Can you hear the radio? Is it **loud enough** for you?
- Don't buy that coat. It's nice, but it isn't **long enough**. (= it's too short)

Remember:

enough + *noun* but	*adjective* + **enough**
enough money	tall **enough**
enough time	good **enough**
enough people	old **enough**

D

We say:

enough for somebody/something	This pullover isn't **big enough for me**. I haven't got **enough money for a new car**.
enough to do something	I haven't got **enough money to buy** a new car. (*not* for buy) Is your English **good enough to have** a conversation? (*not* for have)
enough for somebody/something **to do** something	There aren't **enough chairs for everybody to sit** down.

to … and **for** … ➜ **Unit 54** **too** ➜ **Unit 92**

Exercises

91.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **enough** + these words:

chairs ~~**money**~~ **paint** **wind**

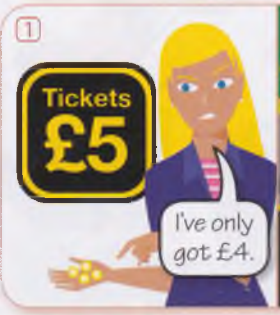

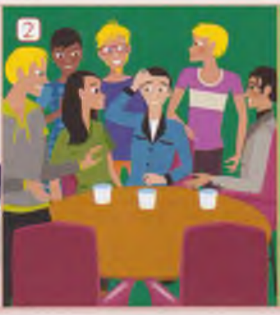

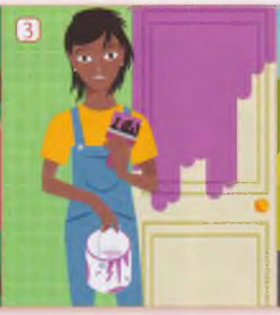

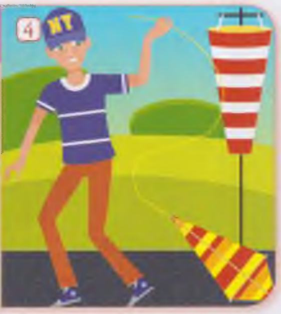

1 She hasn't got ......enough money...... .
2 There aren't ....
3 She hasn't got ....
4 There isn't ....

91.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these adjectives + **enough**:

big **long** **strong** ~~**tall**~~

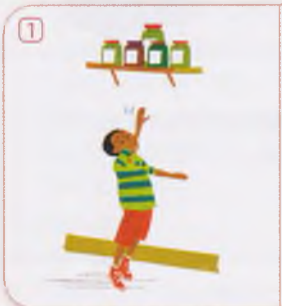

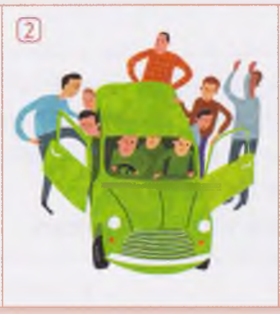

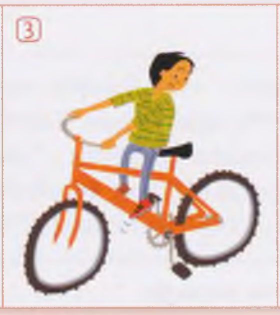

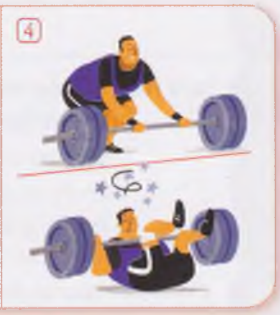

1 He ......isn't tall enough...... .
2 The car ....
3 His legs aren't ....
4 He ....

91.3 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** with these words:

big **eat** ~~**loud**~~ ~~**milk**~~ **old** **practise** **space** **time** **tired**

1 'Is there ......enough milk...... in your coffee?' 'Yes, thank you.'
2 Can you hear the radio? Is it ......loud enough...... for you?
3 He can leave school if he wants – he's ....
4 When I visited New York last year, I didn't have ...... to see all the things I wanted to see.
5 This house isn't ...... for a large family.
6 Tina is very thin. She doesn't ....
7 My office is very small. There isn't ....
8 It's late, but I don't want to go to bed now. I'm not ....
9 Lisa isn't a very good tennis player because she doesn't ....

91.4 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** with these words:

1 We haven't got ......enough money to buy...... a new car. (money/buy)
2 This knife isn't ...... tomatoes. (sharp/cut)
3 The water wasn't ...... swimming. (warm/go)
4 Have we got ...... sandwiches? (bread/make)
5 We played well, but not ...... the game. (well/win)
6 I don't have ...... newspapers. (time/read)

Unit
92

too

A

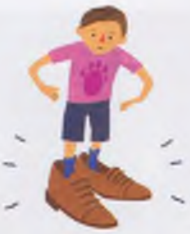

His shoes are **too big** for him.

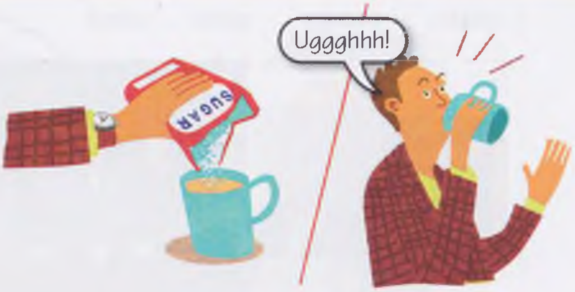

There is **too much** sugar in it.

B

too + *adjective* / *adverb* (**too big** / **too hard** etc.)

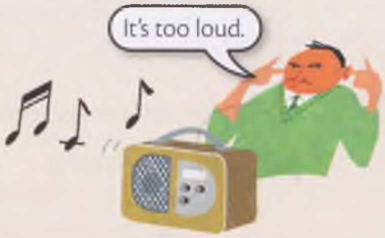
It's too loud.

○ Can you turn the radio down?
It's **too loud**. (= louder than I want)

○ I can't work. I'm **too tired**.

○ I think you work **too hard**.

C

too much / **too many** = more than you want, more than is good:

○ I don't like the weather here. There is **too much rain**. (= more rain than is good)

○ Let's go to another restaurant. There are **too many people** here.

○ Emily studies all the time. I think she studies **too much**.

○ Traffic is a problem in this town. There are **too many cars**.

D

Compare **too** and **not enough**:

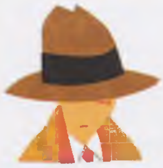

too big

○ The hat is **too big** for him.

○ The music is **too loud**. Can you turn it down, please?

○ There's **too much sugar** in my coffee.
(= more sugar than I want)

○ I don't feel very well. I ate **too much**.

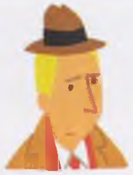

not big enough

○ The hat is**n't big enough** for him. (= it's **too small**)

○ The music is**n't loud enough**. Can you turn it up, please?

○ There's **not enough sugar** in my coffee.
(= I need more sugar)

○ You're very thin. You do**n't** eat **enough**.

E

We say:

too ... **for** somebody/something	○ These shoes are **too big for me**. ○ It's a small house – **too small for a large family**.
too ... **to do** something	○ I'm **too tired to go** out. (*not* for go out) ○ It's **too cold to sit** outside.
too ... **for** somebody **to do** something	○ She speaks **too fast for me to understand**.

to ... and for ... ➜ Unit 54 much/many ➜ Unit 83 enough ➜ Unit 91

Exercises

92.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **too** + these words:

big **crowded** **fast** **heavy** ~~**loud**~~ **low**

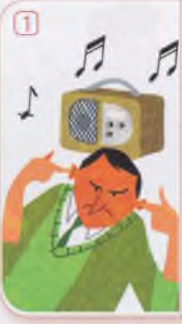

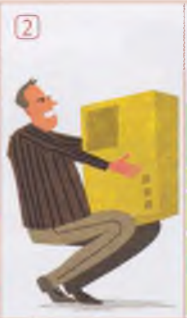

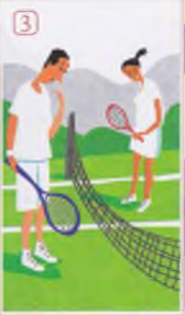

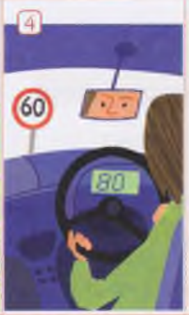

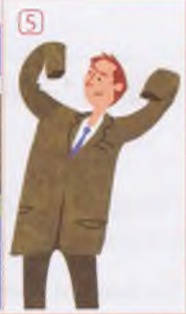

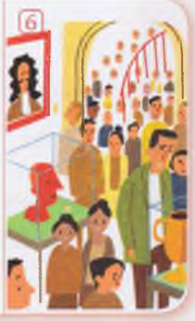

1 The music is too loud .
2 The box is ....
3 The net is ....
4 She's driving ....
5 His jacket is ....
6 The museum is ....

92.2 Write **too / too much / too many** or **enough.**

1 You're always at home. You don't go out enough .
2 I don't like the weather here. There's too much rain.
3 I can't wait for them. I don't have .... time.
4 There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were .... people.
5 You're always tired. I think you work .... hard.
6 'Did you have .... to eat?' 'Yes, thank you.'
7 You drink .... coffee. It's not good for you.
8 You don't eat .... vegetables. You should eat more.
9 I don't like the weather here. It's .... cold.
10 Our team didn't play well. We made .... mistakes.
11 'Would you like some milk in your tea?' 'Yes, but not ....'

92.3 Complete the sentences. Use **too** or **enough** with these words:

1 I couldn't work. I was too tired . (tired)
2 Can you turn the radio up, please? It isn't loud enough . (loud)
3 I don't want to walk home. It's .... (far)
4 Don't buy anything in that shop. It .... (expensive)
5 You can't put all your things in this bag. It .... (big)
6 I couldn't do the exercise. It .... (difficult)
7 Your work needs to be better. It .... (good)
8 I can't talk to you now. I .... (busy)
9 I thought the film was boring. It .... (long)

92.4 Complete the sentences. Use **too** (+ adjective) + **to ...** .

1 (I'm not going out / cold) It's too cold to go out .
2 (I'm not going to bed / early) It's ....
3 (they're not getting married / young) They're ....
4 (nobody goes out at night / dangerous)
It's ....
5 (don't phone Sue now / late)
It's ....
6 (I didn't say anything / surprised)
I was ....

Unit
93

He **speaks English** very well. (word order 1)

A

verb + object

Sue **bought** **some new shoes** yesterday.
subject *verb* *object*

The *verb* (**bought**) and the *object* (**some new shoes**) are usually together. We say:

☐ Sue **bought some new shoes** yesterday.
(*not* Sue bought yesterday some new shoes)

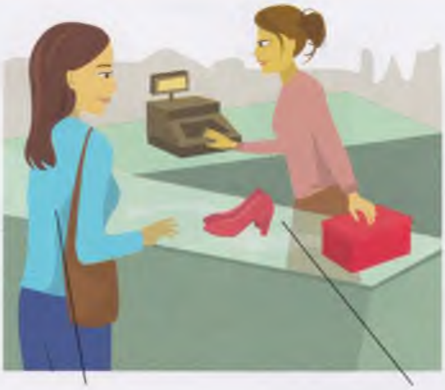

verb + object

He **speaks**	**English** very well.	(*not* He speaks very well English)
I **like**	**Italian food** very much.	(*not* I like very much ...)
Did you **watch**	**TV** all evening?	(*not* ... watch all evening TV)
Paul often **wears**	**a black hat**.	(*not* Paul wears often ...)
We **invited**	**a lot of people** to the party.	
I **opened**	**the door** slowly.	
Why do you always **make**	**the same mistake**?	
I'm going to **borrow**	**some money** from a friend.	

B

where and when

We went **to a party** **last night**.
where? *when?*

Place (*where?*) is usually before time (*when?*). We say:

☐ We went **to a party last night**. (*not* We went last night to a party)

	place (*where?*)	+	time (*when? how long? how often?*)	
Lisa walks	**to work**		**every day**.	(*not* ... every day to work)
Will you be	**at home**		**this evening**?	(*not* ... this evening at home)
I usually go	**to bed**		**early**.	(*not* ... early to bed)
We arrived	**at the airport**		**at 7 o'clock**.	
They've lived	**in the same house**		**for 20 years**.	
Joe's father has been	**in hospital**		**since June**.	

word order in questions ➜ Units 44–46 **always**/**usually**/**often** etc. ➜ Unit 94

Exercises

93.1 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1 Did you watch all evening TV? …… *Did you watch TV all evening?*
2 Sue bought some new shoes yesterday. …… *OK*
3 I like very much this picture. ……
4 Tom started last week his new job. ……
5 I want to speak English fluently. ……
6 Jessica bought for her friend a present. ……
7 I drink every day three cups of coffee. ……
8 Don't eat your dinner too quickly! ……
9 I borrowed from my brother fifty pounds. ……

93.2 Put the words in order.

1 (the door / opened / I / slowly) …… *I opened the door slowly.*
2 (a new phone / I / last week / got) I ……
3 (finished / Paul / quickly / his work) ……
4 (Emily / very well / French / doesn't speak) ……
5 (a lot of shopping / did / I / yesterday) ……
6 (London / do you know / well?) ……
7 (we / enjoyed / very much / the party) ……
8 (the problem / carefully / I / explained) ……
9 (we / at the airport / some friends / met) ……
10 (did you buy / in England / that jacket?) ……
11 (every day / do / the same thing / we) ……
12 (football / don't like / very much / I) ……

93.3 Put the words in order.

1 (to work / every day / walks / Lisa) …… *Lisa walks to work every day.*
2 (at the hotel / I / early / arrived) I ……
3 (goes / every year / to Italy / Julia) Julia ……
4 (we / since 1998 / here / have lived) We ……
5 (in London / Sue / in 1990 / was born)
Sue ……
6 (didn't go / yesterday / Paul / to work)
Paul ……
7 (to a wedding / last weekend / went / Helen)
Helen ……
8 (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had)
I ……
9 (in September / Amy / to university / is going)
Amy ……
10 (I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the garden / saw)
I ……
11 (many times / have been / my parents / to the United States)
My ……
12 (my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the restaurant)
I ……
13 (to the cinema / tomorrow evening / are you going?)
Are ……
14 (the children / I / took / this morning / to school)
I ……

Unit
94

always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)

A

These words (**always**/**never** etc.) go with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

always	**often**	**ever**	**rarely**	**also**	**already**	**all**
usually	**sometimes**	**never**	**seldom**	**just**	**still**	**both**

- My brother **never speaks** to me.
- She**'s always** late.
- Do you **often go** to restaurants?
- I **sometimes eat** too much. (*or* **Sometimes** I eat too much.)
- A: Don't forget to phone Laura.
  B: I**'ve already phoned** her.
- I've got three sisters. They**'re all** married.

B

Always/**never** etc. go *before* the verb:

	verb
always	**go**
often	**play**
never	**have**
etc.	etc.

- I **always drink** coffee in the morning.
  (*not* I drink always coffee)
- Helen **often goes** to London.
  (*not* Helen goes often)
- You **sometimes look** unhappy.
- They **usually have** dinner at 7 o'clock.
- We **rarely watch** TV. *or*
  We **seldom watch** TV.
- Richard is a good footballer. He **also plays** tennis and volleyball.
  (*not* He plays also tennis)
- I've got three sisters. They **all live** in London.

But **always**/**never** etc. go *after* **am**/**is**/**are**/**was**/**were**:

am **is** **are** **was** **were**	**always** **often** **never** etc.

- I **am always tired**.
  (*not* I always am tired)
- They **are never** at home during the day.
- It **is usually** very cold here in winter.
- When I was a child, I **was often** late for school.
- A: Where's Laura?
  B: She**'s still** in bed.
- I've got two brothers. They**'re both** doctors.

C

Always/**never** etc. go *between* two verbs (**have** ... **been** / **can** ... **find** etc.):

verb 1		*verb 2*
will **can** **do** etc.	**always** **often** **never** etc.	**go** **find** **remember** etc.
have **has**		**gone** **been** etc.

- I **will always remember** you.
- It **doesn't often rain** here.
- **Do** you **usually go** to work by car?
- I **can never find** my keys.
- **Have** you **ever been** to Egypt?
- A: Where's Laura?
  B: She**'s just gone** out. (She's = She has)
- My friends **have all gone** to the cinema.

always/**never** + present simple ➜ Unit 5 **just**/**already** + present perfect ➜ Unit 16 **all** ➜ Units 80–81
both ➜ Unit 82 **still** ➜ Unit 95

Exercises

94.1 Read Paul's answers to the questions. Write sentences about Paul with **often/never** etc.

			Paul
1	Do you ever play tennis?	Yes, often.	Paul often plays tennis.
2	Do you get up early?	Yes, always.	He ....
3	Are you ever late for work?	No, never.	He ....
4	Do you ever get angry?	Sometimes.	....
5	Do you ever go swimming?	Rarely.	....
6	Are you at home in the evenings?	Yes, usually.	....

94.2 Write these sentences with **never/always/usually** etc.

1 My brother speaks to me. (never) My brother never speaks to me.
2 Susan is polite. (always) Susan ....
3 I finish work at 5 o'clock. (usually) I ....
4 Sarah has started a new job. (just) Sarah ....
5 I go to bed before midnight. (rarely) ....
6 The bus isn't late. (usually) ....
7 I don't eat fish. (often) ....
8 I will forget what you said. (never) ....
9 Have you lost your passport? (ever) ....
10 Do you work in the same place? (still) ....
11 They stay in the same hotel. (always) ....
12 Jane doesn't work on Saturdays. (usually) ....
13 Is Tina here? (already) ....
14 What do you have for breakfast? (usually) ....
15 I can remember his name. (never) ....

94.3 Write sentences with **also**.

1 Do you play football? (tennis) Yes, and I also play tennis.
2 Do you speak Italian? (French) Yes, and I ....
3 Are you tired? (hungry) Yes, and ....
4 Have you been to England? (Ireland) Yes, ...
5 Did you buy any clothes? (some books) ....

94.4 Write sentences with **both** and **all**.

I live in London.
I play football.
I'm a student.
I've got a car.

I live in London.
I play football.
I'm a student.
I've got a car.

1 They both live in London.
They .... football.
.... students.
.... cars.

I'm married. I was born in England.
I live in New York.

2 They .... married.
They .... England.
....

Unit
95

still yet already

A

still

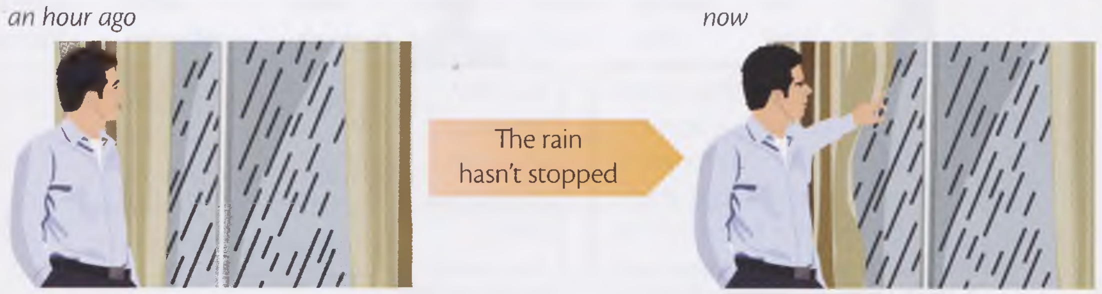

An hour ago it was raining.

It is **still** raining now.

still = something is the same as before:

- I had a lot to eat, but I'm **still** hungry. (= I was hungry before, and I'm hungry now)
- 'Did you sell your car?' 'No, I've **still** got it.'
- 'Do you **still** live in Barcelona?' 'No, I live in Madrid now.'

B

yet

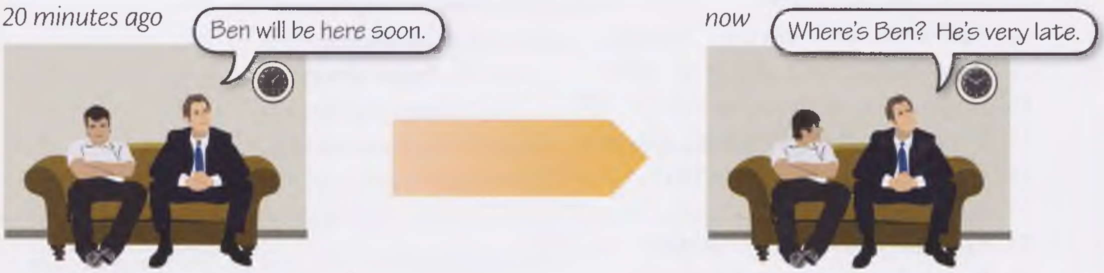
20 minutes ago
Ben will be here soon.
now
Where's Ben? He's very late.

Twenty minutes ago they were waiting for Ben.

They are **still** waiting for Ben. Ben **hasn't come yet**.

yet = until now

We use **yet** in *negative* sentences (He **hasn't** come yet.) and in *questions* (**Has he** come yet?). **Yet** is usually at the end of a sentence:

- A: Where's Emma?
  B: She **isn't** here **yet**. (= she will be here, but until now she hasn't come)
- A: What are you doing this evening?
  B: I **don't** know **yet**. (= I will know later, but I don't know at the moment)
- A: Are you ready to go **yet**?
  B: **Not yet**. In a minute. (= I will be ready, but I'm not ready at the moment)
- A: Have you finished with the newspaper **yet**?
  B: No, I'm still reading it.

Compare **yet** and **still**:

- She hasn't gone **yet**. = She's **still** here. (*not* she is yet here)
- I haven't finished eating **yet**. = I'm **still** eating.

C

already = earlier than expected:

- 'What time is Joe coming?' 'He's **already** here.' (= earlier than we expected)
- 'I'm going to tell you what happened.' 'That's not necessary. I **already** know.'
- Sarah isn't coming to the cinema with us. She has **already** seen the film.

already/**yet** + present perfect ➔ **Unit 16** word order (**still**/**already**) ➔ **Unit 94**

Exercises

95.1 You meet Tina. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with **still**.

Tina – two years ago

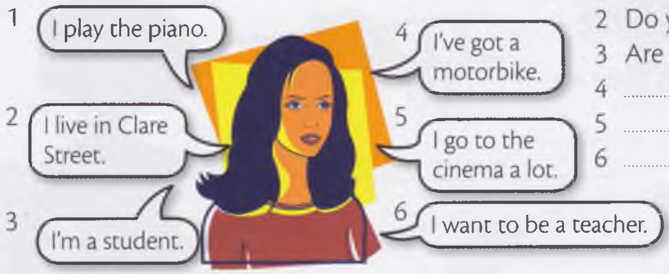
1
I play the piano.
2
I live in Clare Street.
3
I'm a student.
4
I've got a motorbike.
5
I go to the cinema a lot.
6
I want to be a teacher.

1 Do you still play the piano?
2 Do you ....
3 Are ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

95.2 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.

before *now*

1

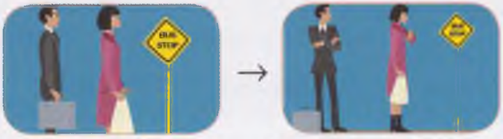

(*before*) They were waiting for the bus.
(still) They are still waiting.
(yet) The bus hasn't come yet.

2

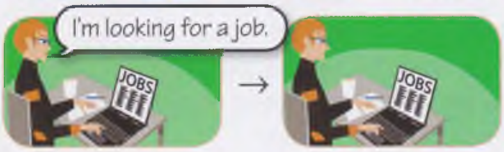
I'm looking for a job.
JOBS
→
JOBS

(*before*) He was ....
(still) He ....
(yet) .... yet.

3

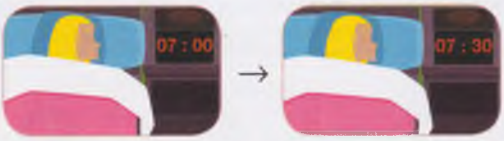

(*before*) She .... asleep.
(still) ....
(yet) ....

4

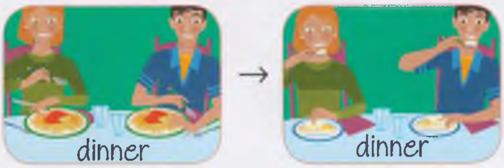
dinner
→
dinner

(*before*) They ....
(still) ....
(yet) ....

95.3 Write questions with **yet**.

1 You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Perhaps she is ready now.
You ask her: Are you ready yet?
2 You are waiting for Helen to arrive. She wasn't here ten minutes ago. Perhaps she is here now.
You ask somebody: .... Helen ....
3 Anna did an exam and is waiting for the results. Perhaps she has her results now.
You ask her: .... you ....
4 A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He wasn't sure where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now.
You ask him: ....

95.4 Complete the sentences. Use **already**.

1	What time is Joe coming?	He's already here.
2	Do they want to see the film?	No, they've already seen it.
3	I have to see Julia before she goes.	It's too late. She ....
4	Do you need a pen?	No, thanks. I .... one.
5	Shall I pay the bill?	No, it's OK. I ....
6	Shall I tell Paul about the meeting?	No, he .... I told him.

Unit 96

Give me that book! Give it to me!

A

give lend pass send show

After these verbs (**give**/**lend** etc.), there are two possible structures:

give something to somebody

- I gave **the keys to Sarah**.

give somebody something

- I gave **Sarah the keys**.

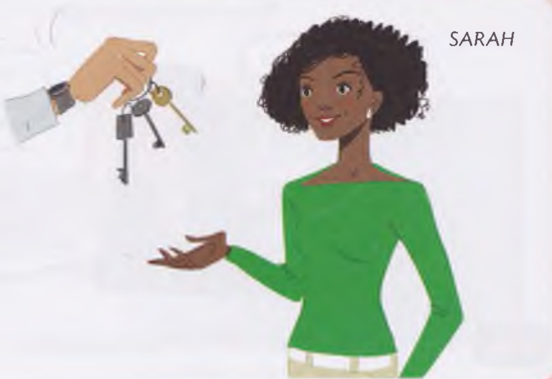

B

give **something to somebody**

		something	**to** somebody
That's my book.	**Give**	it	**to** me.
These are Sue's keys. Can you	**give**	them	**to** her?
Can you	**give**	these flowers	**to** your mother?
I	**lent**	my car	**to** a friend of mine.
Did you	**send**	the money	**to** Kate?
We've seen these photos. You	**showed**	them	**to** us.

C

give somebody something

		somebody	something
	Give	me	that book. It's mine.
Tom	**gave**	his mother	some flowers.
I	**lent**	Joe	some money.
How much money did you	**lend**	him?	
I	**sent**	you	an email. Did you get it?
Nicola	**showed**	us	her holiday photos.
Can you	**pass**	me	the salt, please?

You can also say '**buy**/**get** somebody something':

- I **bought my mother** some flowers. (= I bought some flowers **for** my mother.)
- I'm going to the shop. Can I **get you** anything? (= get anything for you)

D

You can say:

- I **gave** the keys **to Sarah**.

and I **gave Sarah** the keys.
(*but not* I gave to Sarah the keys)

- That's my book. Can you **give** it **to me**?

and Can you **give me** that book?
(*but not* Can you give to me that book?)

We prefer the first structure (**give** something **to** somebody) with **it** or **them**:

- I gave **it to her**. (*not* I gave her it)
- Here are the keys. Give **them to your father**. (*not* Give your father them)

it/him/them etc. ➜ **Unit 59**

Exercises

96.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want. He gave them to different people.

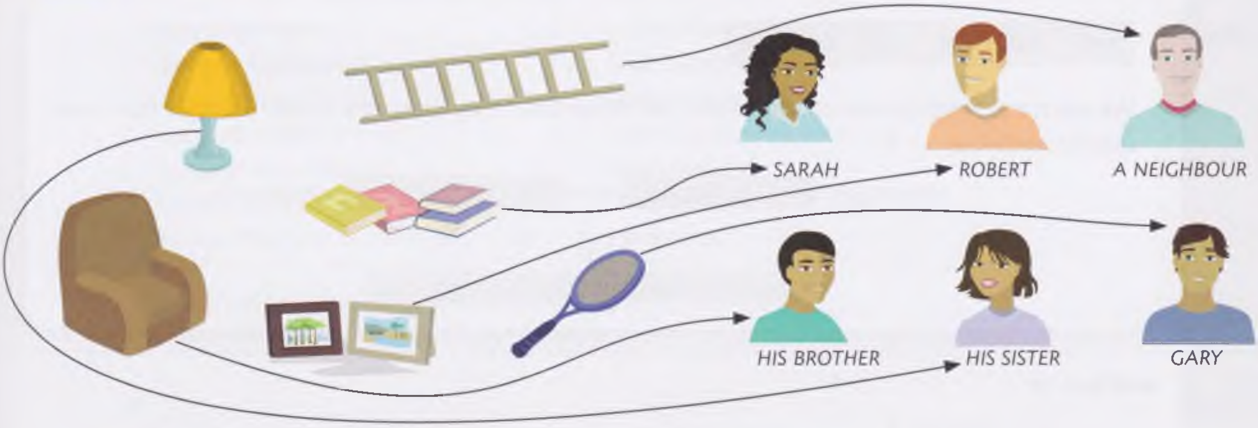

Write sentences beginning **He gave ... .**

1 What did Mark do with the armchair? *He gave it to his brother.*
2 What did he do with the tennis racket? He gave ....
3 What happened to the books? He ....
4 What about the lamp? ....
5 What did he do with the pictures? ....
6 And the ladder? ....

96.2 You gave presents to your friends. You decided to give them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.

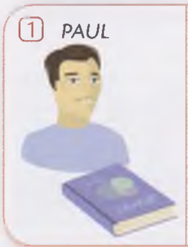
① PAUL

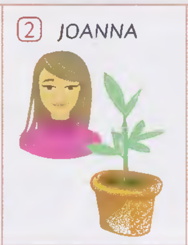
② JOANNA

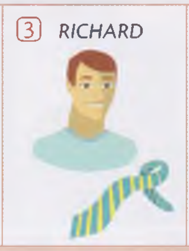
③ RICHARD

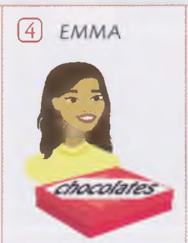
④ EMMA

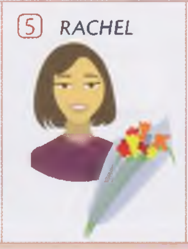
⑤ RACHEL

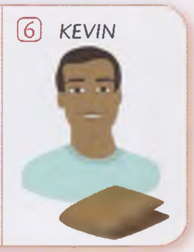
⑥ KEVIN

1 *I gave Paul a book.*
2 I gave ....
3 I ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

96.3 Write questions beginning **Can you give me ... ? / Can you pass me ... ?** etc.

1 (you want the salt) (pass) *Can you pass me the salt?*
2 (you need an umbrella) (lend) Can you ....
3 (you want my address) (give) Can .... your ....
4 (you need twenty pounds) (lend) ....
5 (you want more information) (send) ....
6 (you want to see the letter) (show) ....

96.4 Which is right?

1 ~~I gave to Sarah the keys.~~ / I gave Sarah the keys. (I gave Sarah the keys *is right*)
2 I'll lend to you some money if you want. / I'll lend you some money if you want.
3 Did you send the bill me? / Did you send the bill to me?
4 I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
5 Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?
6 This is Lisa's bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
7 I showed to the policeman my identity card. / I showed the policeman my identity card.

Unit
97

and but or so because

A

and but or so because

We use these words (*conjunctions*) to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

sentence A The car stopped. — The driver got out. *sentence B*

The car stopped **and** the driver got out.

B

and/but/or

sentence A		*sentence B*
We stayed at home	**and**	(we)* watched television.
My sister is married	**and**	(she)* lives in London.
He doesn't like her,	**and**	she doesn't like him.
I bought a sandwich,	**but**	I didn't eat it.
It's a nice house,	**but**	it doesn't have a garden.
Do you want to go out,	**or**	are you too tired?

* It is not necessary to repeat 'we' and 'she'.

In lists, we use commas (**,**). We use **and** before the last thing:

- I got home, had something to eat, sat down in an armchair **and** fell asleep.
  ↗ ↗ ↗
- Karen is at work, Sue has gone shopping **and** Chris is playing football.

C

so (the result of something)

sentence A		*sentence B*
It was very hot,	**so**	I opened the window.
Joe does a lot of sport,	**so**	he's very fit.
They don't like travelling,	**so**	they haven't been to many places.

D

because (the reason for something)

sentence A		*sentence B*
I opened the window	**because**	it was very hot.
Joe can't come to the party	**because**	he's going away.
Lisa is hungry	**because**	she didn't have breakfast.

Because is also possible at the beginning:

- **Because it was very hot**, I opened the window.

E

In these examples there is more than one conjunction:

- It was late **and** I was tired, **so** I went to bed.
- I always enjoy visiting London, **but** I wouldn't like to live there **because** it's too big.

when/while/before etc. ➜ **Unit 98**

Exercises

97.1 Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use **and/but/or**.

~~I stayed at home.~~
~~I bought a sandwich.~~
I went to the window.
I wanted to phone you.
I jumped into the river.
I usually drive to work.
Do you want me to come with you?

I didn't have your number.
Shall I wait here?
~~I didn't eat it.~~
I went by bus this morning.
~~I watched TV.~~
I swam to the other side.
I looked out.

1 I stayed at home and watched TV.
2 I bought a sandwich, but I didn't eat it.
3 I
4
5
6
7

97.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **and/but/so/because**.

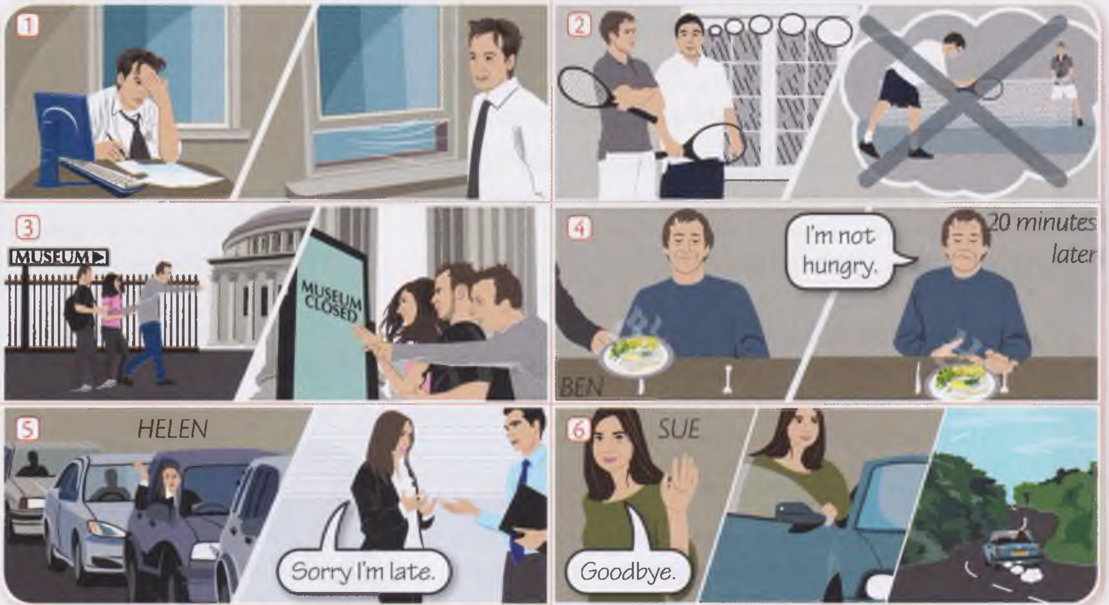
1
2
3
MUSEUM
MUSEUM CLOSED
4
BEN
I'm not hungry.
20 minutes later
5
HELEN
Sorry I'm late.
6
SUE
Goodbye.

1 It was very hot, so he opened the window.
2 They couldn't play tennis
3 They went to the museum,
4 Ben wasn't hungry,
5 Helen was late
6 Sue said

97.3 Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use **and/but** etc.

1 (and) In the evening I stayed at home and studied.
2 (because) I went to bed very early because I was tired.
3 (but)
4 (and)
5 (so)
6 (because)

Unit
98

When ...

A

When I went out, it was raining.

This sentence has two parts:

when I went out + **it was raining**

You can say:

○ **When I went out**, it was raining. *or*
It was raining when I went out.

We write a comma (,) if **When** ... is at the beginning:

○ { **When** you're tired, don't drive.
Don't drive **when** you're tired.

○ { Helen was 25 **when** she got married.
When Helen got married, she was 25.

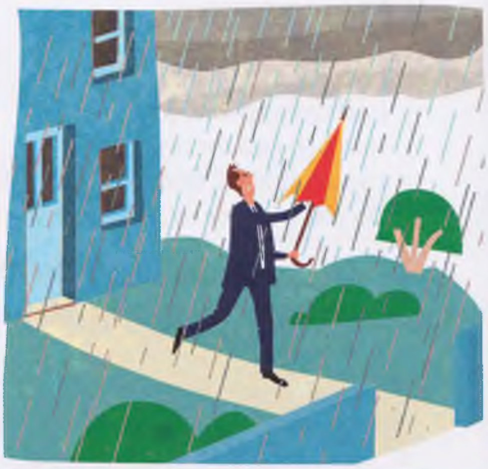

We do the same in sentences with **before/while/after**:

○ { Always look both ways **before** you cross the road.
Before you cross the road, always look both ways.

○ { **While** I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.
It began to rain **while** I was waiting for the bus.

○ { He never played football again **after** he broke his leg.
After he broke his leg, he never played football again.

B

When I am ... / **When I go** ... etc.

Next week Sarah is going to New York.
She has a friend, Lisa, who lives in New York,
but Lisa is also going away – to Mexico.
So they won't see each other in New York.

Lisa **will be** in Mexico **when** Sarah **is** in New York.

The time is *future* (**next week**) but we say:
... **when** Sarah **is** in New York.
(*not* when Sarah will be)

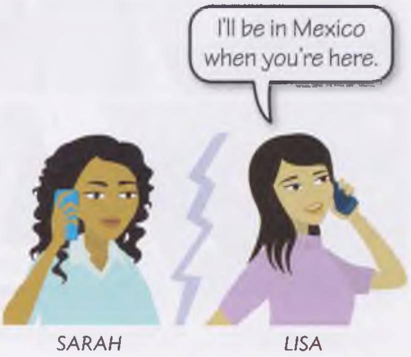
I'll be in Mexico when you're here.
SARAH
LISA

We use the *present* (**I am** / **I go** etc.) with a *future meaning* after **when**:

○ **When** I **get** home this evening, I'm going to have a shower.
(*not* When I will get home)

○ I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later **when** I **have** more time.

We do the same after **before/while/after/until**:

○ Please close the window **before** you **go** out.
(*not* before you will go)

○ Rachel is going to stay in our flat **while** we **are** away.
(*not* while we will be)

○ I'll wait here **until** you **come** back.
(*not* until you will come back)

if and **when** ➔ Unit 99 **until** ➔ Unit 104 **before/while/after** ➔ Unit 105

Exercises

98.1 Write sentences beginning with **when**. Choose from the boxes.

When +

~~I went out~~
I'm tired
I knocked on the door
I go on holiday
the programme ended
I got to the hotel

+

I turned off the TV
I always go to the same place
there were no rooms
~~it was raining~~
there was no answer
I like to watch TV

1 When I went out, it was raining.
2
3
4
5
6

98.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

somebody broke into the house
~~before they crossed the road~~
they went to live in New Zealand
before they came here
while they were away
when they heard the news
they didn't believe me

1 They looked both ways before they crossed the road.
2 They were very surprised .
3 After they got married, .
4 Their house was damaged in a storm .
5 Where did they live ?
6 While we were asleep, .
7 When I told them what happened, .

98.3 Which is right?

1 ~~I stay~~ / I'll stay here until you come / ~~you'll come~~ back. (I'll stay *and* you come *are right*)
2 I'm going to bed when I finish / I'll finish my work.
3 We must do something before it's / it will be too late.
4 Helen is going away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.
5 Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.
6 We come / We'll come and visit you when we're / we'll be in England again.
7 When I come to see you tomorrow, I bring / I'll bring our holiday photos.
8 I'm going to Paris next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm / I'll be there.
9 Let's go out for a walk before it gets / it will get dark.
10 I'm not ready yet. I tell / I'll tell you when I'm / I'll be ready.

98.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 Can you close the window before you go out ?
2 What are you going to do when ?
3 When I have enough money, .
4 I'll wait for you while .
5 When I start my new job, .
6 Will you be here when ?

Unit
99

If we go ...   If you see ...   etc.

A

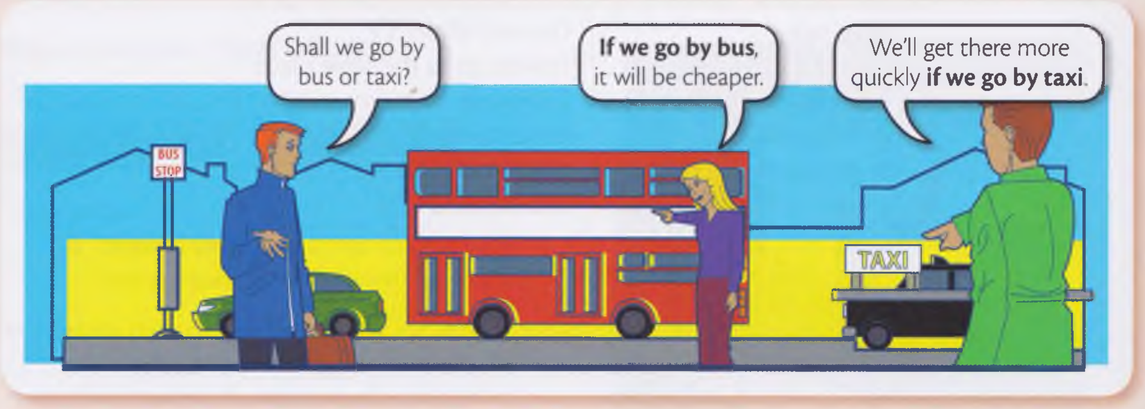
Shall we go by bus or taxi?
If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.
We'll get there more quickly **if we go by taxi**.
BUS STOP
TAXI

If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle:

If at the beginning

If we go by bus,	it will be cheaper.
If you don't hurry,	you'll miss the train.
If you're hungry,	have something to eat.
If the phone rings,	can you answer it, please?

if in the middle

It will be cheaper	**if** we go by bus.
You'll miss the train	**if** you don't hurry.
I'm going to the concert	**if** I can get a ticket.
Is it OK	**if** I use your phone?

In conversation, we often use the **if**-part of the sentence alone:

- 'Are you going to the concert?'   'Yes, **if I can get a ticket**.'

B

If you see Ann tomorrow ... etc.

After **if**, we use the present (*not* will). We say '**if** you **see** ...' (*not* if you will see):

- **If** you **see** Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to call me?
- **If I'm** late this evening, don't wait for me.   (*not* if I will be)
- What shall we do **if** it **rains**?   (*not* if it will rain)
- **If** I **don't feel** well tomorrow, I'll stay at home.

C

if and **when**

If I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I'm not sure:

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Maybe. **If I go out**, I'll close the windows.

When I go out = I'm going out (for sure):

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Yes, I am. **When I go out**, I'll close the windows.

Compare **when** and **if**:

- **When** I get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower.
- **If** I'm late this evening, don't wait for me.   (*not* When I'm late)
- We're going to play tennis **if** it doesn't rain.   (*not* when it doesn't rain)

when ➜ Unit 98   **if I had / if we went** ... etc. ➜ Unit 100

Exercises

99.1 Write sentences beginning with **if**. Choose from the boxes.

If +

~~you don't hurry~~
you pass the exam
you fail the exam
you don't want this magazine
you want those pictures
you're busy now
you're hungry
you need money

+

we can have lunch now
you can have them
I can lend you some
you'll get a certificate
~~you'll be late~~
I'll throw it away
we can talk later
you can do it again

1 *If you don't hurry, you'll be late.*

2 If you pass ....

3 If ....

4 ....

5 ....

6 ....

7 ....

8 ....

99.2 Which is right?

1 If I'm / ~~I'll be~~ late this evening, don't wait for me. (*I'm is right*)

2 Will you call me if I give / I'll give you my phone number?

3 If there is / will be a fire, the alarm will ring.

4 If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I call / I'll call you in the evening.

5 I'm / I'll be surprised if Michael and Jane get / will get married.

6 Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

99.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 I'm going to the concert if *I can get a ticket.*

2 If you don't hurry, *you'll miss the train.*

3 I don't want to disturb you if ....

4 If you go to bed early tonight, ...

5 Turn the TV off if ....

6 Tina won't pass her exams if ....

7 If I have time tomorrow, ...

8 We can go to the beach tomorrow if ....

9 I'll be surprised if ....

99.4 Write **if** or **when**.

1 *If* I'm late this evening, don't wait for me.

2 I'm going to do some shopping now. .... I come back, we can have lunch.

3 I'm thinking of going to see Tom. .... I go, will you come with me?

4 .... you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay at home.

5 Is it OK .... I close the window?

6 John is still at school. .... he leaves school, he wants to go to college.

7 Shall we have a picnic tomorrow .... the weather is good?

8 We're going to Madrid next week. We don't have anywhere to stay – we hope to find a hotel .... we get there. I don't know what we'll do .... we don't find a room.

Unit
100 If I had ... If we went ... etc.

A

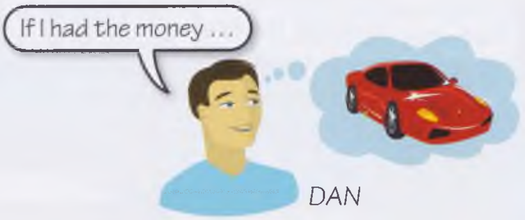
If I had the money ...
DAN

Dan likes fast cars, but he doesn't have one.
He doesn't have enough money.

If he **had** the money, he **would buy** a fast car.

Usually **had** is *past*, but in this sentence **had** is *not* past. **If** he **had** the money = if he had the money *now* (but he doesn't have it).

If	I	**had** / **knew** / **lived** (etc.) ... ,	I	**would** ...
	you	**didn't have** / **didn't know** (etc.) ... ,	you	**wouldn't** ...
	it	**were** ... ,	it	**could** ...
	they	**could** ... ,	they	**couldn't** ...

You can say:
- **If he had** the money, he would buy a car.

or He would buy a car **if he had** the money.

I'd / **she'd** / **they'd** etc. = I **would** / she **would** / they **would** etc. :
- I don't know the answer. **If** I **knew** the answer, I**'d tell** you.
- It's raining, so we're not going out. We**'d get** wet **if** we **went** out.
- Jane lives in a city. She likes cities. She **wouldn't be** happy **if** she **lived** in the country.
- **If** you **didn't have** a job, what **would** you **do**? (but you *have* a job)
- I'm sorry I can't help you. I**'d help** you **if** I **could**. (but I *can't*)
- **If** we **had** a car, we **could travel** more. (but we *don't* have a car, so we *can't* travel much)

B

If (I) **was/were** ...

You can say: **if** I/he/she/it **was** *or*
if I/he/she/it **were**

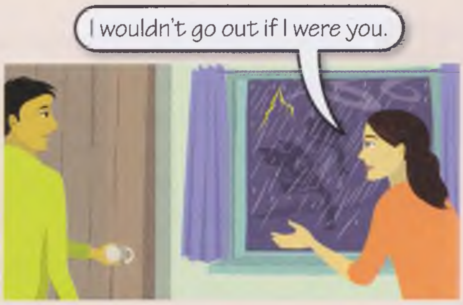
I wouldn't go out if I were you.

- It's not a very nice place. I wouldn't go there **if I were you**. (*or* ... **if I was** you)
- It would be nice **if the weather was** better. (*or* ... **if the weather were** better)
- What would Tom do **if he were** here? (*or* ... **if he was** here)

C

Compare:

if I have / **if it is** etc.	**if I had** / **if it was** etc.
○ I must go and see Helen. **If** I **have** time, I **will go** today. (= maybe I'll have time, so maybe I'll go)	○ I must go and see Helen. **If** I **had** time, I **would go** today. (= I don't have time today, so I will not go)
○ I like that jacket. I**'ll buy** it **if** it **isn't** too expensive. (= maybe it will not be too expensive)	○ I like this jacket, but it's very expensive. I**'d buy** it **if** it **wasn't** so expensive. (= it is expensive, so I'm not going to buy it)
○ I**'ll help** you **if** I **can**. (= maybe I can)	○ I**'d help** you **if** I **could**, but I can't.

if we go / **if I have** / **if I can** etc. ➜ **Unit 99**

Exercises

100.1 Complete the sentences.

1 I don't know the answer. If I ......*knew*...... the answer, I'd tell you.
2 I have a car. I couldn't travel very much if I ......*didn't have*...... a car.
3 I don't want to go out. If I .... to go out, I'd go.
4 We don't have a key. If we .... a key, we could get into the house.
5 I'm not hungry. I would have something to eat if I .... hungry.
6 Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn't do it if she .... it.
7 He can't speak any foreign languages. If he .... speak a foreign language, perhaps he would get a better job.
8 You don't try hard enough. If you .... harder, you would have more success.
9 I have a lot to do today. If I .... so much to do, we could go out.

100.2 Put the verb in the correct form.

1 If ......*he had*...... the money, he would buy a fast car. (he/have)
2 Jane likes living in a city. ......*She wouldn't be*...... happy if she lived in the country. (she/not/be)
3 If I wanted to learn Italian, ... to Italy. (I go)
4 I haven't told Helen what happened. She'd be angry if .... (she/know)
5 If .... a map, I could show you where I live. (we/have)
6 What would you do if .... a lot of money? (you/win)
7 It's not a very good hotel. .... there if I were you. (I/not/stay)
8 If .... nearer London, we would go there more often. (we/live)
9 It's a shame you have to go now. .... nice if you had more time. (it/be)
10 I'm not going to take the job. I'd take it if .... better. (the salary/be)
11 I don't know anything about cars. If the car broke down, ... what to do. (I/not/know)
12 If you could change one thing in the world, what .... ? (you/change)

100.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb in the correct form.

we (have) a bigger house
we (buy) a bigger house
we (have) some pictures on the wall
every day (be) the same
~~it (be) a bit cheaper~~
the air (be) cleaner
I (watch) it
I (be) bored

1 I'd buy that jacket if ......*it was a bit cheaper*...... .
2 If there was a good film on TV tonight, ...
3 This room would be nicer if ....
4 If there wasn't so much traffic, ...
5 Life would be boring if ....
6 If I had nothing to do, ...
7 We could invite all our friends to stay if ....
8 If we had more money, ...

100.4 Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas.

1 I'd be happier if ......*I could get a better job*...... .
2 If I could go anywhere in the world, ...
3 I wouldn't be very happy if ....
4 I'd buy .... if ....
5 If I saw an accident in the street, ...
6 The world would be a better place if ....

Unit 101

a person **who** … a thing **that/which** … (relative clauses 1)

A

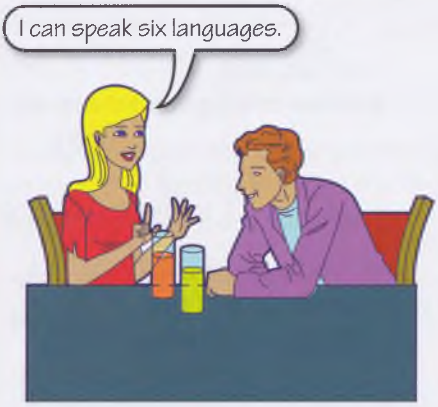
I can speak six languages.

I met a woman. **She** can speak six languages.
2 sentences

she → who

1 sentence
I met **a woman who** can speak six languages.

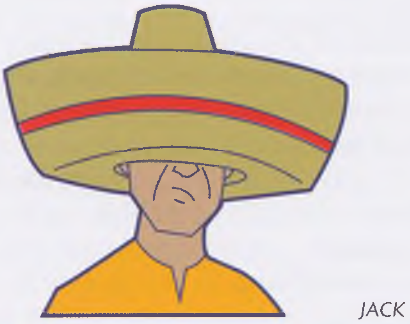

Jack was wearing a hat. **It** was too big for him.
2 sentences

it → that *or* **which**

1 sentence
Jack was wearing **a hat that** was too big for him.
or
Jack was wearing **a hat which** was too big for him.

B

who is for people (not things):

A thief is **a person**	**who** steals things.	
Do you know **anybody**	**who** can play the piano?	
The man	**who** phoned	didn't give his name.
The people	**who** work in the office	are very friendly.

C

that is for things or people:

An airplane is **a machine**	**that** flies.	
Emma lives in **a house**	**that** is 400 years old.	
The people	**that** work in the office	are very friendly.

You can use **that** for people, but **who** is more usual.

D

which is for things (not people):

An airplane is **a machine**	**which** flies. (*not* a machine who …)
Emma lives in **a house**	**which** is 400 years old.

Do not use **which** for people:

☐ Do you remember **the woman who** was playing the piano at the party?
(*not* the woman which …)

who and **which** in questions ➜ **Units 45, 47** **the people we met** (relative clauses 2) ➜ **Unit 102**

Exercises

101.1 Choose from the boxes and write sentences: **A ... is a person who ... .** Use a dictionary if necessary.

~~a thief~~
a butcher
a musician
a patient
a dentist
a fool
a genius
a liar

doesn't tell the truth
takes care of your teeth
is very intelligent
plays a musical instrument
is ill in hospital
~~steals things~~
does stupid things
sells meat

1 A thief is a person who steals things.
2 A butcher is a person ....
3 A musician ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

101.2 Make one sentence from two.

1 (A man phoned. He didn't give his name.)
The man who phoned didn't give his name.

2 (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.)
The woman .... a yellow dress.

3 (Some students took the exam. Most of them passed.)
Most of the students ....

4 (A policeman stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.)
The ....

101.3 Write **who** or **which**.

1 I met a woman ...who... can speak six languages.
2 What's the name of the man .... has just started work in your office?
3 What's the name of the river .... flows through the town?
4 Where is the picture .... was hanging on the wall?
5 Do you know anybody .... wants to buy a car?
6 You always ask questions .... are difficult to answer.
7 I have a friend .... is very good at repairing cars.
8 I think everybody .... went to the party enjoyed it very much.
9 Why does he always wear clothes .... are too small for him?

101.4 Right or wrong? Correct the mistakes.

1 A thief is a person which steals things. ...a person who steals...
2 An airplane is a machine that flies. ...OK...
3 A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee. ....
4 What's happened to the money that was on the table? ....
5 I don't like people which never stop talking. ....
6 I know somebody that can help you. ....
7 I know somebody who works in that shop. ....
8 Correct the sentences who are wrong. ....
9 My neighbour bought a car who cost £40,000 ....

Unit
102

the people **we met** the hotel **you stayed at** (relative clauses 2)

A

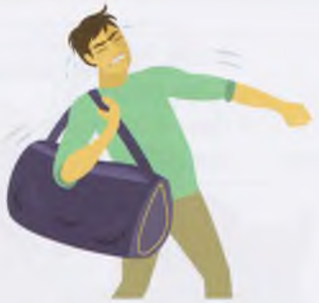

The man is carrying a bag.
It's very heavy. } *2 sentences*

The bag (**that**) **he is carrying** is very heavy.
1 sentence

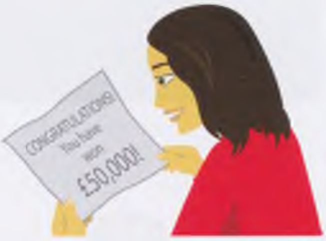

Kate won some money.
What is she going to do with it? } *2 sentences*

What is Kate going to do with **the money** (**that**) **she won**?
1 sentence

You can say:

- The bag **that** he is carrying ... *or* The bag he is carrying ... (with or without **that**)
- ... the money **that** Kate won? *or* ... the money Kate won?

You do not need **that**/**who**/**which** when it is the *object*:

subject	*verb*	*object*	
The man	was carrying	a bag	→ **the bag** (that) **the man was carrying**
Kate	won	some money	→ **the money** (that) **Kate won**
You	wanted	some books	→ **the books** (that) **you wanted**
We	met	some people	→ **the people** (who) **we met**

- Did you find **the books you wanted**? (*or* ... the books **that** you wanted?)
- **The people we met** were very friendly. (*or* The people **who** we met ...)
- **Everything I said** was true. (*or* Everything **that** I said ...)

We say:

- The film **we saw** was very good. (*not* The film we saw it was ...)

B

Sometimes there is a *preposition* (**to**/**in**/**at** etc.) after the verb:

Eve **is talking to** a man. → Do you know **the man Eve is talking to**?
We **stayed at** a hotel. → **The hotel we stayed at** was near the station.
I **told** you **about** some books. → These are **the books I told you about**.

We say:

... the books **I told you about**. (*not* the books I told you about them)

You can say '(a place) **where** ...':

- **The hotel where** we stayed was near the station. (= The hotel we stayed at ...)

C

You must use **who**/**that**/**which** when it is the *subject* (→ Unit 101):

- I met a woman **who can speak** six languages. (**who** is the subject)
- Jack was wearing a hat **that was** too big for him. (**that** is the subject)

a person who ... , **a thing that/which** ... (relative clauses 1) ➔ **Unit 101**

Exercises

102.1 Make one sentence from two.

1 (Helen took some pictures. Have you seen them?)
Have you seen the pictures Helen took?
2 (You gave me a pen. I've lost it.)
I've lost the ……
3 (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)
I like the ……
4 (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?)
Where are the …… ?
5 (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)
I ……
6 (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
How …… ?

102.2 Make one sentence from two.

1 (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)
The bag I was carrying was very heavy.
2 (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)
The ……
3 (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.)
The shoes ……
4 (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come.)
The ……

102.3 You ask your friend some questions. Complete the sentences.

1 Your friend stayed at a hotel. You ask:
What's the name of the hotel you stayed at ?
2 Your friend was talking to some people. You ask:
Who are the people …… ?
3 Your friend was looking for some keys. You ask:
Did you find the …… ?
4 Your friend is going to a party. You ask:
Where is the …… ?
5 Your friend was talking about a film. You ask:
What's the name of …… ?
6 Your friend is listening to some music. You ask:
What's that …… ?
7 Your friend applied for a job. You ask:
Did you get …… ?

102.4 Complete the questions. Use **where**.

1 John stayed at a hotel. You ask him:
Did you like the hotel where you stayed ?
2 Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:
What's the name of the restaurant …… ?
3 Sarah lives in a village. You ask her:
How big is the …… ?
4 Richard works in a factory. You ask him:
Where exactly is …… ?

Unit 103

at 8 o'clock on Monday in April

A

at

at	8 o'clock 10.30 midnight etc.

☐ I start work **at 8 o'clock**.
☐ The shops close **at 5.30**.

on

on	Sunday(s) / Monday(s) etc. 25 April / 6 June etc. New Year's Day etc.

☐ Bye! I'll see you **on Friday**.
☐ What do you usually do **on Sundays**?
☐ The concert is **on 22 November**.

in

in	April/June etc. 2013/1988 etc. summer/spring etc.

☐ I'm going on holiday **in October**.
☐ Emma was born **in 1995**.
☐ The park is beautiful **in spring**.

B

We say:

at the weekend
at night
at Christmas
at the end of …
at the moment

☐ Are you going away **at the weekend**?
☐ I can't sleep **at night**.
☐ Where will you be **at Christmas**? (*but* **on** Christmas **Day**)
☐ I'm going on holiday **at the end of** October.
☐ Are you busy **at the moment**?

C

in the morning / **in the afternoon** / **in the evening**

☐ I always feel good **in the morning**.
☐ Do you often go out **in the evening**?

but

on Monday morning / **on Tuesday afternoon** / **on Friday evening** / **on Saturday night** etc. :

☐ I'm meeting Jackie **on Monday morning**.
☐ Are you doing anything **on Saturday night**?

D

We do *not* use **at**/**on**/**in** before:

this … (**this morning** / **this week** etc.)
last … (**last August** / **last week** etc.)
next … (**next Monday** / **next week** etc.)
every … (**every day** / **every week** etc.)

☐ Are you going out **this evening**?
☐ We go on holiday **every summer**. **Last summer** we went to Canada.
☐ I'm leaving **next Monday**.
(*not* on next Monday)

E

in five minutes / **in a few days** / **in six weeks** / **in two years** etc.

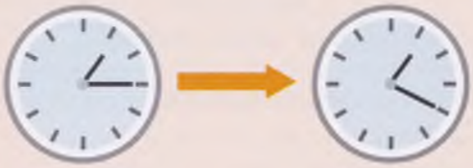

now **in five minutes**

☐ Hurry! The train leaves **in five minutes**.
(= it leaves five minutes from now)
☐ Bye! I'll see you **in a few days**.
(= a few days from now)

in/**on**/**at** (places) ➔ **Units 106–107**

Exercises

103.1 Write **at/on/in**.

1 ...on... 6 June
2 ...in... the evening
3 .... half past two
4 .... Wednesday
5 2007
6 .... September
7 .... 24 September
8 .... Thursday
9 .... 11.45
10 .... Christmas Day
11 .... Christmas
12 .... the morning
13 .... Friday morning
14 .... Saturday night
15 .... night
16 .... the end of the day
17 .... the weekend
18 .... winter

103.2 Write **at/on/in**.

1 Bye! See you ...on... Friday.
2 Where were you .... 28 February?
3 I got up .... 8 o'clock this morning.
4 I like getting up early .... the morning.
5 My sister got married .... May.
6 Jessica and I first met .... 2006.
7 Did you go out .... Tuesday?
8 Did you go out .... Tuesday evening?
9 Do you often go out .... the evening?
10 Let's meet .... 7.30 tomorrow evening.
11 I often go away .... the weekend.
12 I'm starting my new job .... 3 July.
13 We often go to the beach .... summer.
14 George isn't here .... the moment.
15 Jane's birthday is .... December.
16 Do you work .... Saturdays?
17 The company started .... 1999.
18 I like to look at the stars .... night.
19 I'll send you the money .... the end of the month.

103.3 Look at Lisa's diary for next week and complete the sentences.

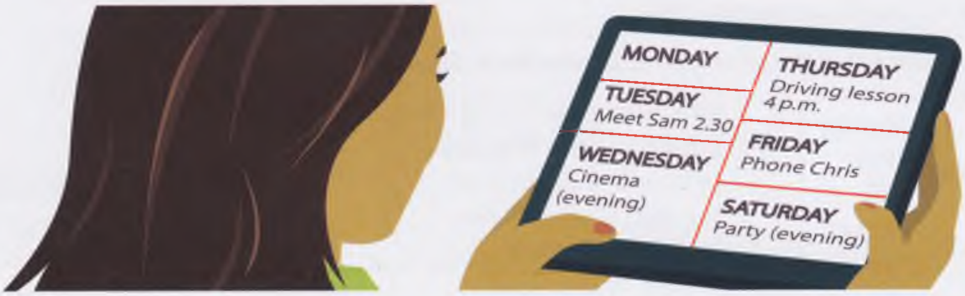

1 Lisa is going to the cinema on Wednesday evening.
2 She has to phone Chris ....
3 She isn't doing anything special ....
4 She's got a driving lesson ....
5 She's going to a party ....
6 She's meeting Sam ....

103.4 Write sentences with **in ...** .

1 It's 8.25 now. The train leaves at 8.30. The train leaves in five minutes.
2 It's Monday today. I'll call you on Thursday. I'll .... days.
3 Today is 14 June. My exam is on 28 June. My ....
4 It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30. Tom ....

103.5 Write **at/on/in** if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 I'm going ...on... Friday.
2 I'm going ...–... next Friday. *(already complete)*
3 I always feel tired .... the evening.
4 Will you be at home .... this evening?
5 We went to France .... last summer.
6 Laura was born .... 1997.
7 What are you doing .... the weekend?
8 I phone Robert .... every Sunday.
9 Shall we play tennis .... next Sunday?
10 I can't go to the party .... Sunday.
11 I'm going out. I'll be back .... an hour.
12 I don't often go out .... night.

Unit
104 from ... to until since for

A

from ... **to** ...

- We lived in Japan **from** 2003 **to** 2010.
- I work **from** Monday **to** Friday.

You can also say **from** ... **until** ... :

- We lived in Japan **from** 2003 **until** 2010.

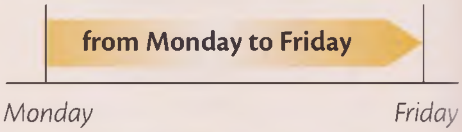

B

until ...

until	Friday December 3 o'clock I come back

- They're going away tomorrow. They'll be away **until Friday**.
- I went to bed early, but I wasn't tired. I read a book **until 3 o'clock**.
- Wait here **until I come back**.

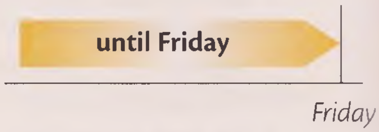

You can also say **till** (= **until**):

- Wait here **till** I come back.

Compare:

- '**How long** will you be away?' '**Until** Monday.'
- '**When** are you coming back?' '**On** Monday.'

C

since + a time in the past (to now)

We use **since** after the *present perfect* (**have been** / **have done** etc.):

since	Monday 1998 2.30 I arrived

- Joe is in hospital. He has been in hospital **since Monday**. (= from Monday to now)
- Sue and Dave have been married **since 1998**. (= from 1998 to now)
- It has been raining **since I arrived**.

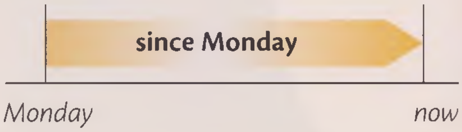

Compare:

- We lived in Japan **from** 2003 **to** 2010. We lived in Japan **until** 2010.
- Now we live in Canada. We came to Canada **in** 2010. We have lived in Canada **since** 2010. (= from 2010 until now)

We use **for** (*not* **since**) + a period of time (**three days** / **ten years** etc.):

- Joe has been in hospital **for three days**. (*not* since three days)

D

for + a period of time

for	three days ten years five minutes a long time

- Gary stayed with us **for three days**.
- I'm going away **for a few weeks**.
- I'm going away **for the weekend**.
- They've been married **for ten years**.

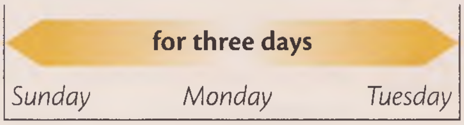

present perfect + **for**/**since** ➔ Units 18–19 present perfect (**I have lived**) and past simple (**I lived**) ➔ Unit 20

Exercises

104.1 Read the information and complete the sentences. Use **from ... to / until / since.**

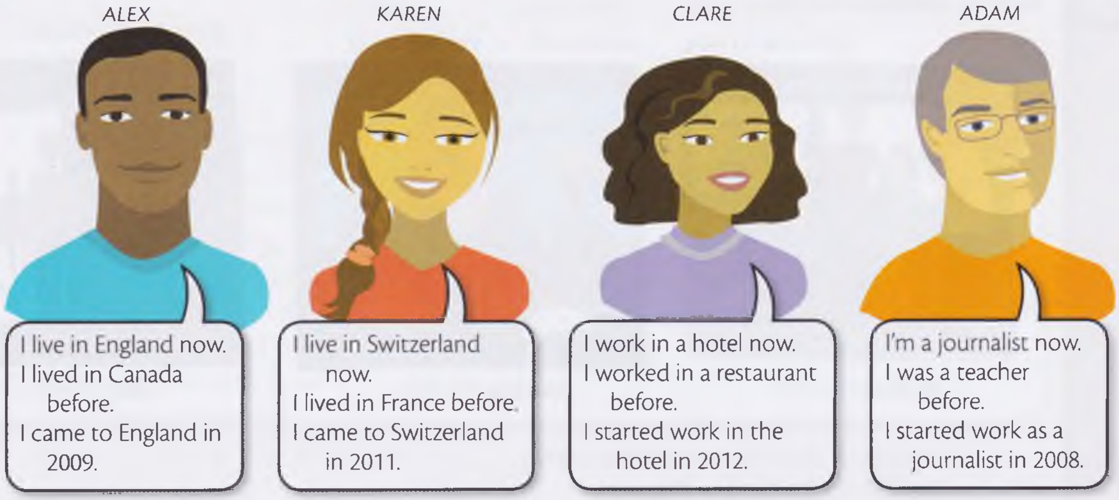
ALEX
KAREN
CLARE
ADAM
I live in England now. I lived in Canada before. I came to England in 2009.
I live in Switzerland now. I lived in France before. I came to Switzerland in 2011.
I work in a hotel now. I worked in a restaurant before. I started work in the hotel in 2012.
I'm a journalist now. I was a teacher before. I started work as a journalist in 2008.

1 (Alex / Canada / 2001 → 2009) Alex lived in Canada from 2001 to 2009 .
2 (Alex / Canada / → 2009) Alex lived in Canada .... 2009.
3 (Alex / England / 2009 →) Alex has lived in England ....
4 (Karen / France / → 2011) Karen lived in ....
5 (Karen / Switzerland / 2011 →) Karen has lived in ....
6 (Clare / a restaurant / 2010 → 2012) Clare worked .... 2010 ....
7 (Clare / a hotel / 2012 →) Clare has worked ....
8 (Adam / a teacher / 2002 → 2008) Adam was a ....
9 (Adam / a journalist / 2008 →) Adam has been ....

Now write sentences with **for.**

10 (Alex / Canada) Alex lived in Canada for eight years .
11 (Alex / England) Alex has lived in England ....
12 (Karen / Switzerland) Karen has ....
13 (Clare / a restaurant) Clare worked ....
14 (Clare / a hotel) Clare ....
15 (Adam / a teacher) Adam ....
16 (Adam / a journalist) Adam ....

104.2 Write **until/since/for.**

1 Sue and Dave have been married since 1998.
2 I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed .... 10 o'clock.
3 We waited for Sue .... half an hour, but she didn't come.
4 'Have you just arrived?' 'No, I've been here .... half past seven.'
5 'How long did you stay at the party last night?' '.......... midnight.'
6 Dan and I are good friends. We have known each other .... ten years.
7 I'm tired. I'm going to lie down .... a few minutes.
8 Don't open the door of the train .... the train stops.
9 This is my house. I've lived here .... I was seven years old.
10 Jack has gone away. He'll be away .... Wednesday.
11 Next week I'm going to Paris .... three days.
12 I usually finish work at 5.30, but sometimes I work .... six.
13 'How long have you known Anna?' '.......... we were at school together.'
14 Where have you been? I've been waiting for you .... twenty minutes.

Unit
105 before after during while

A before, during and after

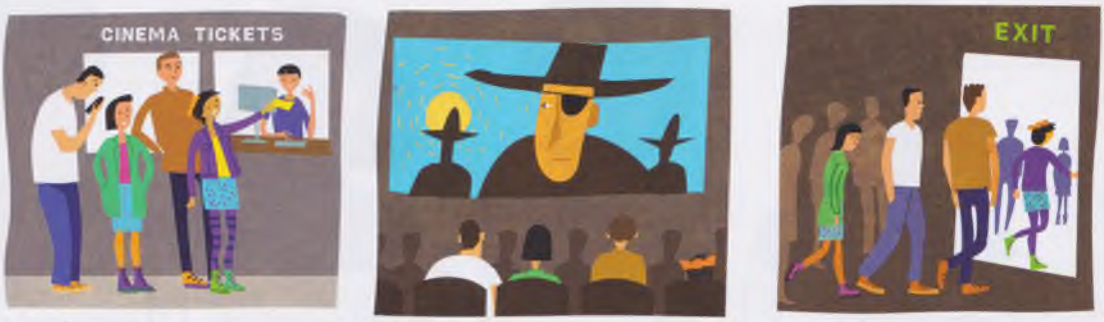

before the film **during** the film **after** the film

- Everybody feels nervous **before exams**.
- I fell asleep **during the film**.
- We were tired **after our visit** to the museum.

B before, while and after

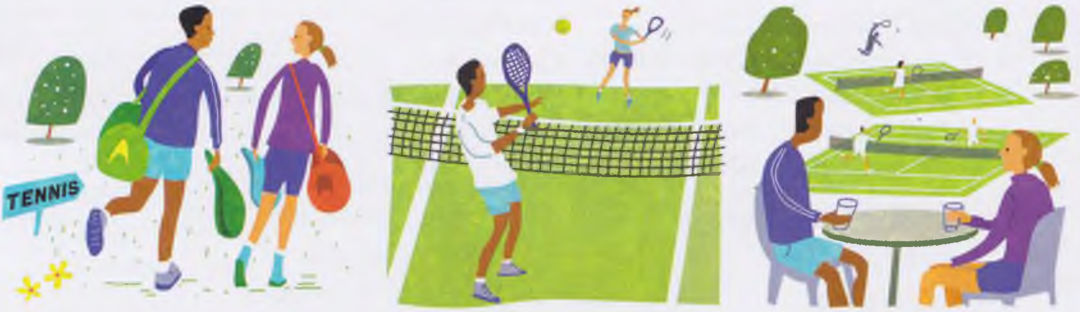

before we played **while** we were playing **after** we played

- Don't forget to close the window **before you go out**.
- I often fall asleep **while I'm reading**.
- They went home **after they did the shopping**.

C during, while and for

We use **during** + *noun* (during **the film**). We use **while** + *verb* (while **I'm reading**):

- We didn't speak **during the meal**.

but We didn't speak **while we were eating**. (*not* during we were eating)

Use **for** (*not* during) + *a period of time* (**three days** / **two hours** / **a year** etc.):

- We played tennis **for two hours**. (*not* during two hours)
- I lived in London **for a year**. (*not* during a year)

D

You can use **before/after** + **-ing** (**before going** / **after eating** etc.):

- I always have breakfast **before going** to work. (= before I go to work)
- **After doing** the shopping, they went home. (= after they did)

We say **before going** (*not* before to go), **after doing** (*not* after to do) etc. :

- **Before eating** the apple, I washed it carefully. (*not* before to eat)
- I started work **after reading** the newspaper. (*not* after to read)

past continuous (**I was -ing**) ➜ Units 13–14 **before/after/while/when** ➜ Unit 98 **for** ➜ Unit 104
prepositions + **-ing** ➜ Unit 112

Exercises

105.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

after **during**
before **while**

+

lunch **the end** **they went to Australia**
the concert ~~**the exam**~~ **you're waiting**
the course **the night**

1 Everybody was nervous before the exam .
2 I usually work four hours in the morning, and another three hours ....
3 The film was really boring. We left ....
4 Anna went to evening classes to learn German. She learnt a lot ....
5 My aunt and uncle lived in London ....
6 A: Somebody broke a window .... Did you hear anything?
B: No, I was asleep all the time.
7 Would you like to sit down .... ?
8 A: Are you going home .... ?
B: Yes, I have to get up early tomorrow.

105.2 Write **during/while/for.**

1 We didn't speak while we were eating.
2 We didn't speak during the meal.
3 Gary called .... you were out.
4 Amy went to Italy and stayed in Rome .... five days.
5 I didn't check my email .... I was away.
6 The students looked very bored .... the lesson.
7 I fell out of bed .... I was asleep.
8 Last night I watched TV .... three hours.
9 I don't usually watch TV .... the day.
10 Do you ever watch TV .... you are having dinner?

105.3 Complete the sentences. Use **-ing (doing, having** etc.).

1 After doing the shopping, they went home.
2 I felt sick after .... too much chocolate.
3 I'm going to ask you a question. Think carefully before .... it.
4 I felt awful when I got up this morning. I felt better after .... a shower.
5 After .... my work, I left the office and went home.
6 Before .... to a foreign country, it's good to try and learn a little of the language.

105.4 Write sentences with **before** + **-ing** and **after** + **-ing**.

1 They did the shopping. Then they went home.
After doing the shopping, they went home.

2 John left school. Then he worked in a bookshop for two years.
John worked ....

3 I read for a few minutes. Then I went to sleep.
Before ....

4 We walked for three hours. We were very tired.
After ....

5 Let's have a cup of coffee. Then we'll go out.
Let's ....

Unit
106

in at on (places 1)

A in

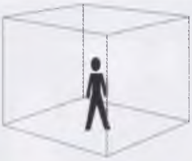

in a room
in a shop
in a car
in the water

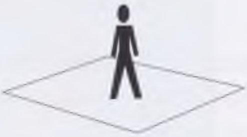

in a garden
in a town
in the city centre
in Brazil

- ☐ 'Where's David?' '**In the kitchen**. / **In the garden**. / **In London**.'
- ☐ What's **in that box** / **in that bag** / **in that cupboard**?
- ☐ Rachel works **in a shop** / **in a bank** / **in a factory**.
- ☐ I went for a swim **in the river** / **in the pool** / **in the sea**.
- ☐ Milan is **in the north of Italy**. Naples is **in the south**.
- ☐ I live **in a big city**, but I'd like to live in the country.

B at

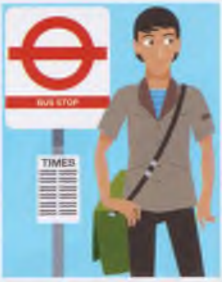

at the bus stop

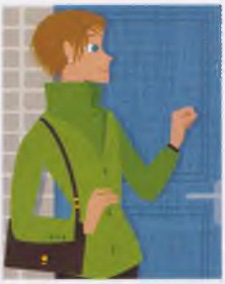

at the door

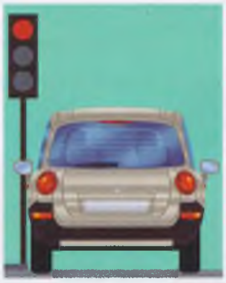

at the traffic lights

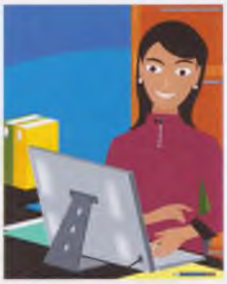

at her desk

- ☐ There's somebody **at the bus stop** / **at the door**.
- ☐ The car is waiting **at the traffic lights**.
- ☐ Vicky is working **at her desk**.

at the top / **at the bottom** / **at the end** (of ...):

- ☐ Write your name **at the top of the page**.
- ☐ My house is **at the end of the street**.

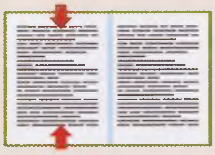

at the top (of the page)

at the bottom (of the page)

C on

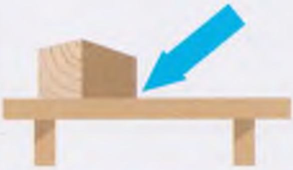

on a shelf
on a plate
on a balcony
on the floor
etc.

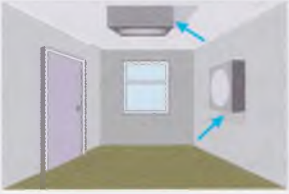

on a wall
on a door
on the ceiling
etc.

- ☐ There are some books **on the shelf** and some pictures **on the wall**.
- ☐ There are a lot of apples **on those trees**.
- ☐ Don't sit **on the grass**. It's wet.
- ☐ There is a stamp **on the envelope**.

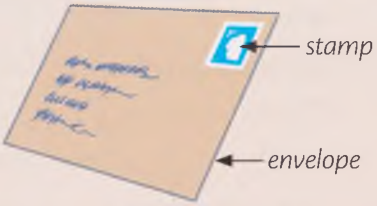

on a horse / **on a bicycle** / **on a motorbike**:

- ☐ Who is that man **on the motorbike**?

the top / **the bottom** → Unit 70 **at**/**on**/**in** (time) → Unit 103 **in**/**at**/**on** (places) → Unit 107

Exercises

106.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use **in/at/on**.

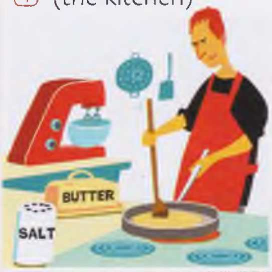

① (the kitchen)

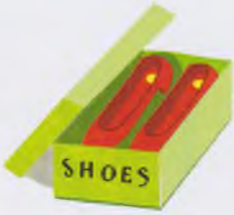

② (the box)

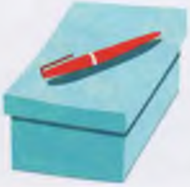

③ (the box)

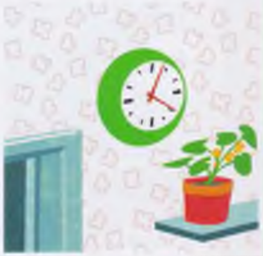

④ (the wall)

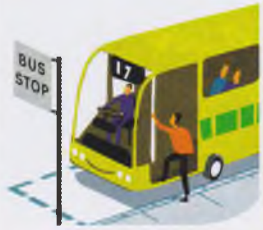

⑤ (the bus stop)

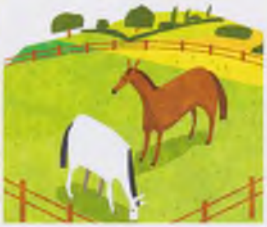

⑥ (the field)

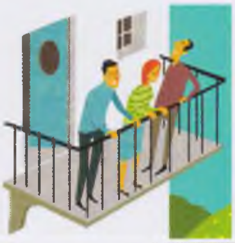

⑦ (the balcony)

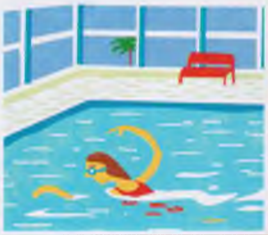

⑧ (the pool)

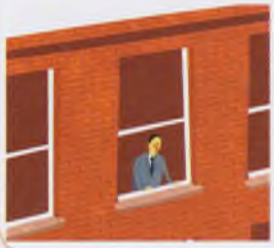

⑨ (the window)

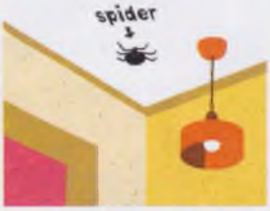

⑩ (the ceiling)

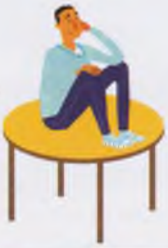

⑪ (the table)

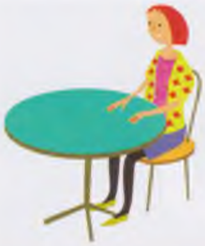

⑫ (the table)

1 Where is he? ......In the kitchen.......
2 Where are the shoes? ....
3 Where is the pen? ....
4 Where is the clock? ....
5 Where is the bus? ....
6 Where are the horses? ....
7 Where are they standing? ....
8 Where is she swimming? ....
9 Where is he standing? ....
10 Where is the spider? ....
11 Where is he sitting? ....
12 Where is she sitting? ....

106.2 Write **in/at/on**.

1 Don't sit ....on.... the grass. It's wet.
2 What do you have .... your bag?
3 Look! There's a man .... the roof. What's he doing?
4 There are a lot of fish .... this river.
5 Our house is number 45 – the number is .... the door.
6 'Is the hospital near here?' 'Yes, turn left .... the traffic lights.'
7 It's difficult to park .... the centre of town. It's better to take the bus.
8 My sister lives .... Brussels.
9 There's a small park .... the top of the hill.
10 I think I heard the doorbell. There's somebody .... the door.
11 Munich is a large city .... the south of Germany.
12 There are a few shops .... the end of the street.
13 It's difficult to carry a lot of things .... a bike.
14 I looked at the list of names. My name was .... the bottom.
15 There is a mirror .... the wall .... the living room.

Unit
107

in at on (places 2)

A in

in bed
in hospital
in the sky
in the world
in a newspaper / **in** a book
in a photo(graph) / **in** a picture
in a car / **in** a taxi
in the middle (of ...)

○ 'Where's Kate?' 'She's **in bed**.'
○ David's father is ill. He's **in hospital**.
○ I like to look at the stars **in the sky** at night.
○ What's the largest city **in the world**?
○ I read about the accident **in the newspaper**.
○ You look sad **in this picture**.
○ Did you come here **in your car**?
○ There's a big tree **in the middle** of the garden.

B at

at home
at work / **at** school
at university / **at** college
at the station / **at** the airport
at Lisa's (house) / **at** my sister's (house) / **at** the doctor's / **at** the hairdresser's etc.
at a concert / **at** a party / **at** a football match etc.

○ Will you be **at home** this evening?
○ 'Where's Kate?' 'She's **at work**.'
○ Helen is studying law **at university**.
○ I'll meet you **at the station**, OK?
○ A: Where were you yesterday?
B: **At my sister's**.
○ I saw Tom **at the doctor's**.
○ There weren't many people **at the party**.

Often it is possible to use **in** or **at** for buildings (hotels, restaurants etc.):

○ We stayed **at** a nice hotel. *or* We stayed **in** a nice hotel.

C on

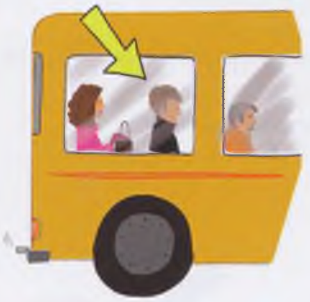

on a bus

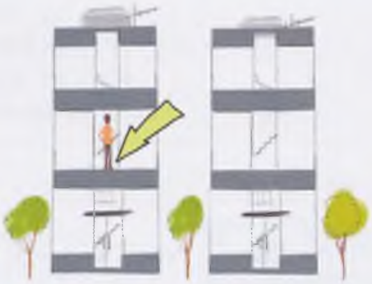

on the first floor

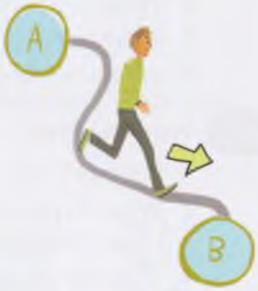

on the way from A to B

on a bus / **on** a train / **on** a plane / **on** a ship
on the ground floor / **on** the first floor etc.
on the way (to ...) / **on** the way home

○ Did you come here **on the bus**?
○ The office is **on the first floor**.
○ I met Anna **on the way** to work / **on the way** home.

in/at/on (places) ➜ Unit 106 **to/in/at** ➜ Unit 108 **on the left/right** ➜ Unit 109

Exercises

107.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use **in/at/on**.

1 (hospital)

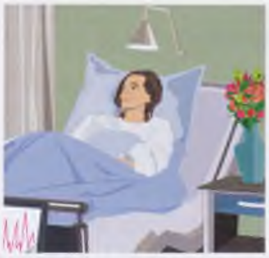

2 (the airport)

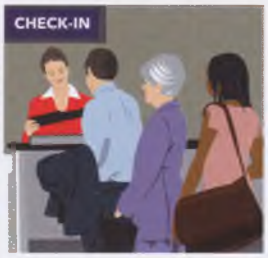

3 (bed)

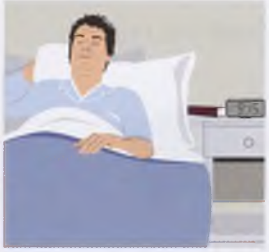

4 (a ship)

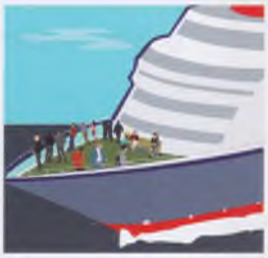

5 (the sky)

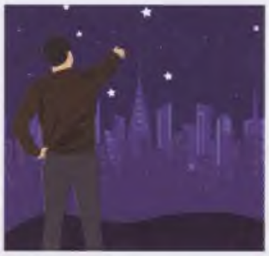

6 (a party)

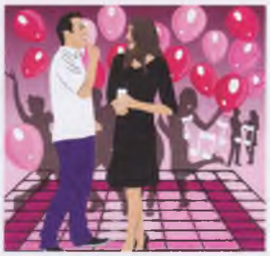

7 (the doctor's)

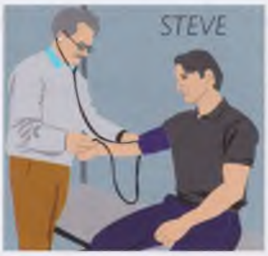

8 (the second floor)

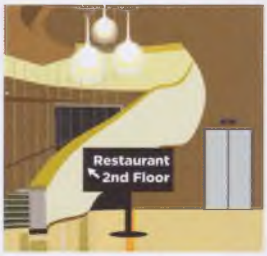

9 (work)

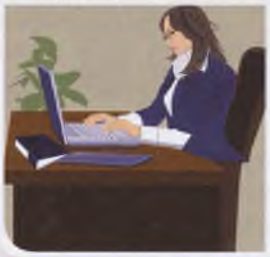

10 (a plane)

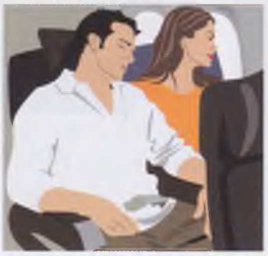

11 (a taxi)

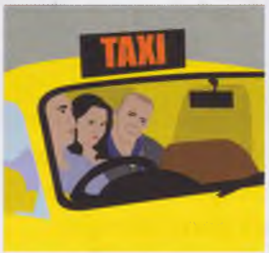

12 (a wedding)

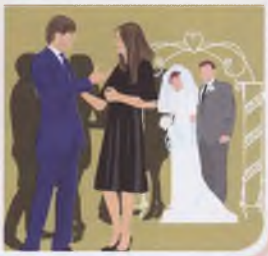

1 Where is she? ....In hospital.........
2 Where are they? ....
3 Where is he? ....
4 Where are they? ....
5 Where are the stars? ....
6 Where are they? ....
7 Where is Steve? ....
8 Where is the restaurant? ....
9 Where is she? ....
10 Where are they? ....
11 Where are they? ....
12 Where are they? ....

107.2 Write **in/at/on**.

1 Helen is studying law .....at..... university.
2 There was a big table .... the middle of the room.
3 What is the longest river .... the world?
4 Were there many people .... the concert last night?
5 Will you be .... home tomorrow afternoon?
6 Who is the man .... this photo? Do you know him?
7 Where are your children? Are they .... school?
8 Gary is coming by train. I'm going to meet him .... the station.
9 Charlie is .... hospital. He had an operation yesterday.
10 How many pages are there .... this book?
11 'Are you hungry after your journey?' 'No, I had something to eat .... the train.'
12 I'm sorry I'm late. My car broke down .... the way here.
13 'Is Tom here?' 'No, he's .... his friend's house.'
14 Don't believe everything you see .... the newspaper!
15 I walked to work, but I came home .... the bus.

Unit
108

to in at (places 3)

A

to

go/come/return/walk (etc.) **to** ...

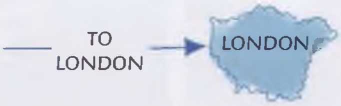

- We're **going to London** on Sunday.
- I want to **go to Italy** next year.
- We **walked** from my house **to the centre of town**.
- What time do you **go to bed**?

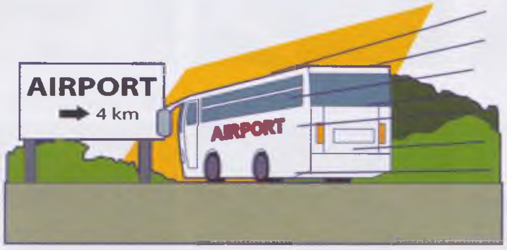

- The bus is **going to the airport**.
- Karen didn't **go to work** yesterday.
- I **went to a party** last night.
- You must **come to our house**.

in/at (→ Units 106–107)

be/stay/do something (etc.) **in** ...

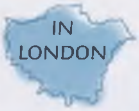

- Piccadilly Circus **is in London**.
- My brother **lives in Italy**.
- The main shops **are in the centre of town**.
- I like **reading in bed**.

be/stay/do something (etc.) **at** ...

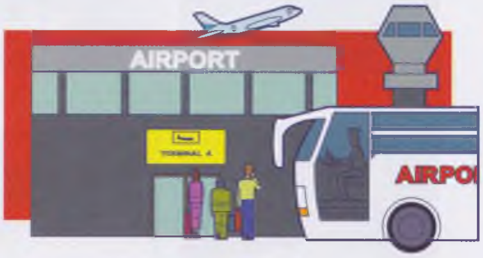

- The bus **is at the airport**.
- Sarah **wasn't at work** yesterday.
- I **met a lot of people at the party**.
- Helen **stayed at her brother's house**.

B

home

go/come/walk (etc.) **home** (without **to**):

- I'm tired. I'm **going home**.
  (*not* to home)
- Did you **walk home**?

be/stay/do something (etc.) **at home**:

- I'm **staying at home** tonight.
- Dan doesn't work in an office.
  He **works at home**.

C

arrive and **get**

arrive in a country or town (**arrive in Italy** / **arrive in Paris** etc.):

- They **arrived in this country** last week. (*not* arrived to this country)

arrive at other places (**arrive at the station** / **arrive at work** etc.):

- What time did you **arrive at the hotel**? (*not* arrive to the hotel)

get to (**a place**):

- What time did you **get to the hotel**?
- What time did you **get to Paris**?

get home / **arrive home** (no preposition):

- I was tired when **I got home**. *or* I was tired when I **arrived home**.

been to → Unit 17 **get** (to ...) → Unit 56 **in/at** → Units 106–107

Exercises

108.1 Write **to** or **in**.

1 I like reading ....in.... bed.
2 We're going .... Italy next month.
3 Sue is on holiday .... Italy at the moment.
4 I have to go .... the hospital tomorrow.
5 I was tired, so I stayed .... bed late.
6 What time do you usually go .... bed?
7 Does this bus go .... the centre?
8 Would you like to live .... another country?

108.2 Write **to** or **at** if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 Paula didn't go ....to.... work yesterday.
2 I'm tired. I'm going ....–.... home. *(already complete)*
3 Tina is not very well. She has gone .... the doctor.
4 Would you like to come .... a party on Saturday?
5 'Is Lisa .... home?' 'No, she's gone .... work.'
6 There were 20,000 people .... the football match.
7 Why did you go .... home early last night?
8 A boy jumped into the river and swam .... the other side.
9 There were a lot of people waiting .... the bus stop.
10 We had a good meal .... a restaurant, and then we went back .... the hotel.

108.3 Write **to**, **at** or **in** if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 I'm not going out this afternoon. I'm staying ....at.... home.
2 We're going .... a concert tomorrow evening.
3 I went .... New York last year.
4 How long did you stay .... New York?
5 Next year we hope to go .... Canada to visit some friends.
6 Do you want to go .... the cinema this evening?
7 Did you park your car .... the station?
8 After the accident three people were taken .... hospital.
9 How often do you go .... the dentist?
10 'Is Sarah here?' 'No, she's .... Helen's.'
11 My house is .... the end of the street on the left.
12 I went .... Maria's house, but she wasn't .... home.
13 There were no taxis, so we had to walk .... home.
14 'Who did you meet .... the party?' 'I didn't go .... the party.'

108.4 Write **to**, **at** or **in** if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 What time do you usually get .... work?
2 What time do you usually get .... home?
3 What time did you arrive .... the party?
4 When did you arrive .... London?
5 What time does the train get .... Paris?
6 We arrived .... home very late.

108.5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Use **to**/**in**/**at**.

1 At 3 o'clock this morning I was ....in bed..
2 Yesterday I went ....
3 At 11 o'clock yesterday morning I was ....
4 One day I'd like to go ....
5 I don't like going ....
6 At 9 o'clock yesterday evening I was ....

Unit
109 under, behind, opposite etc.

A next to / beside / between / in front of / behind

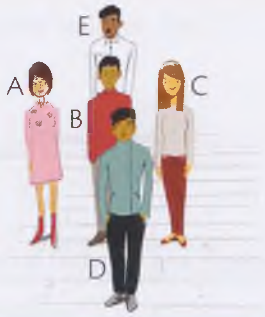

A is **next to** B. *or* A is **beside** B.
B is **between** A and C.
D is **in front of** B.
E is **behind** B.

also
A is **on the left**.
C is **on the right**.
B is **in the middle** (of the group).

B opposite / in front of

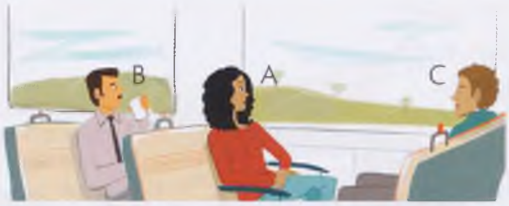

A is sitting **in front of** B.
A is sitting **opposite** C.
C is sitting **opposite** A.

C by (= next to / beside)

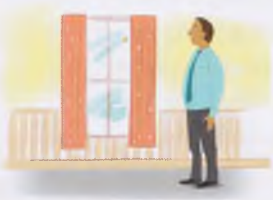

by the window

- ○ Our house is **by the sea**. (= beside the sea)
- ○ Who is that man standing **by the window**?
- ○ If you feel cold, why don't you sit **by the fire**?

D under

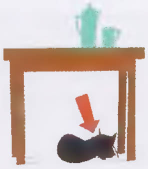

under the table

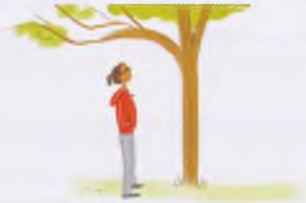

under a tree

- ○ The cat is **under the table**.
- ○ The girl is standing **under a tree**.
- ○ I'm wearing a jacket **under my coat**.

E above and below

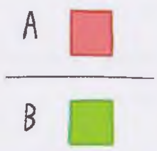

A is **above the line**.
(= higher than the line)

B is **below the line**.
(= lower than the line)

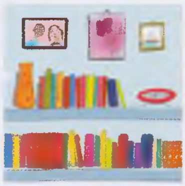

The pictures are **above the shelves**.

The shelves are **below the pictures**.

up/over/through etc. ➜ Unit 110 **by** ➜ Unit 111

Exercises

109.1 Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.

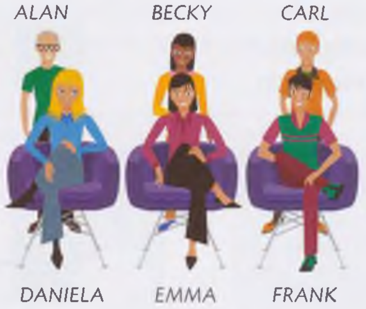
ALAN
BECKY
CARL
DANIELA
EMMA
FRANK

1 Carl is standing ....behind.... Frank.
2 Frank is sitting .... Emma.
3 Emma is sitting .... Becky.
4 Emma is sitting .... Daniela and Frank.
5 Daniela is sitting .... Emma.
6 Frank is sitting .... Carl.
7 Alan is standing .... Daniela.
8 Alan is standing .... left.
9 Becky is standing .... middle.

109.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

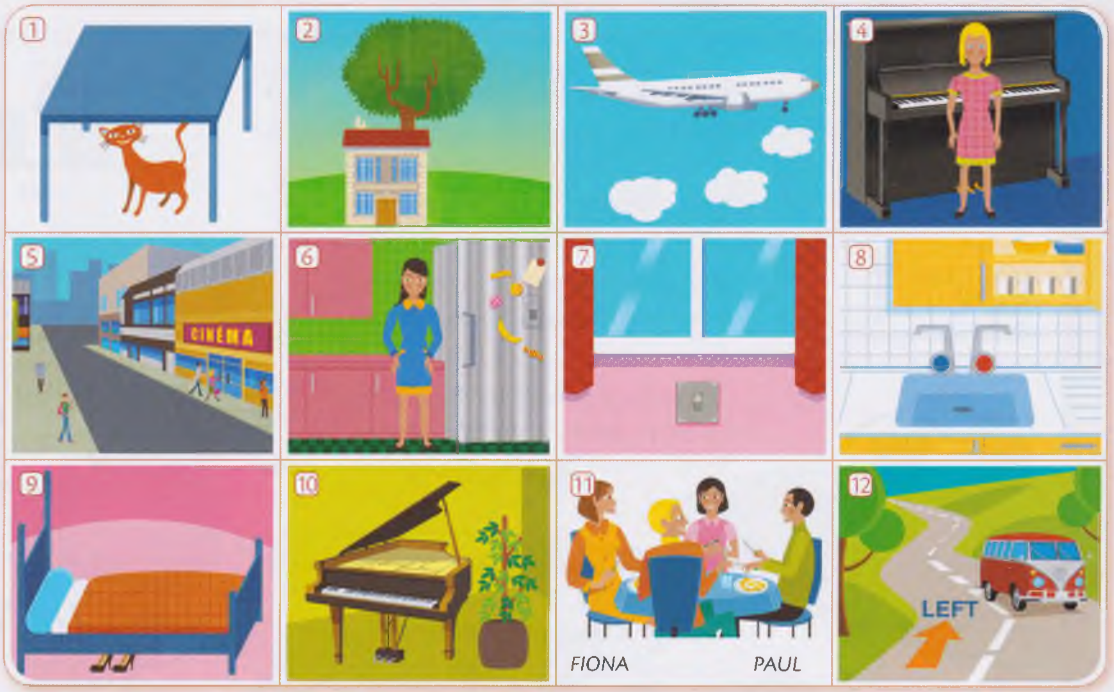
1
2
3
4
5
CINEMA
6
7
8
9
10
11
FIONA
PAUL
12
LEFT

1 The cat is ....under.... the table.
2 There is a big tree .... the house.
3 The plane is flying .... the clouds.
4 She is standing .... the piano.
5 The cinema is .... the right.
6 She's standing .... the fridge.
7 The switch is .... the window.
8 The cupboard is .... the sink.
9 There are some shoes .... the bed.
10 The plant is .... the piano.
11 Paul is sitting .... Fiona.
12 In Britain people drive .... the left.

109.3 Write sentences about the picture.

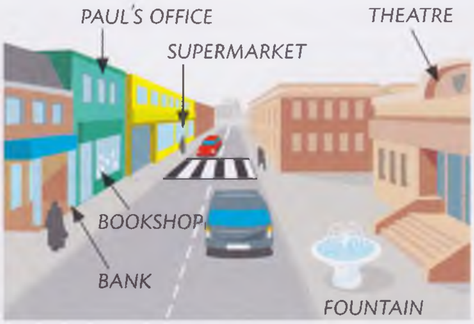
PAUL'S OFFICE
THEATRE
SUPERMARKET
BOOKSHOP
BANK
FOUNTAIN

1 (next to) ....The bank is next to the bookshop.....
2 (in front of) The .... in front of
....
3 (opposite) ....
....
4 (next to) ....
....
5 (above) ....
....
6 (between) ....
....

Unit
110

up, over, through etc.

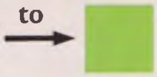

☐ Jane is going **to** France next week.
☐ We walked **from** the hotel **to** the station.
☐ A lot of English words come **from** Latin.

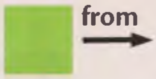

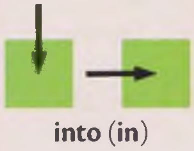

☐ We jumped **into** the water.
☐ A man came **out of** the house and got **into** a car.
☐ Why are you looking **out of** the window?
☐ I took the old batteries **out of** the radio.

We say **put** something **in** … (*not usually* into):
☐ I **put** new batteries **in** the radio.

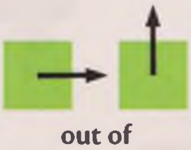

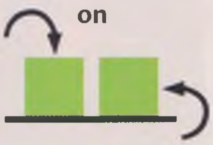

☐ Don't put your feet **on** the table.
☐ Please take your feet **off** the table.
☐ I'm going to hang some pictures **on** the wall.
☐ Be careful! Don't fall **off** your bike.
☐ We got **on** the bus in Princes Street.

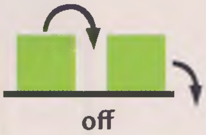

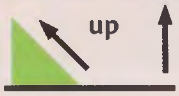

☐ We walked **up** the hill to the house.
☐ Be careful! Don't fall **down** the stairs.

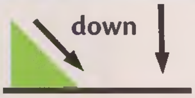

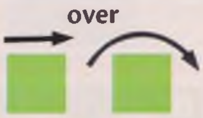

☐ The plane flew **over** the mountains.
☐ I jumped **over** the wall into the garden.
☐ Some people say it is unlucky to walk **under** a ladder.

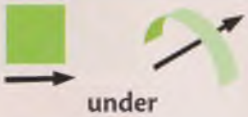

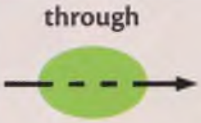

☐ A bird flew into the room **through** a window.
☐ The old road goes **through** the village.
☐ The new road goes **round** the village.
☐ The bus stop is just **round** the corner.
☐ I walked **round** the town and took some photographs.

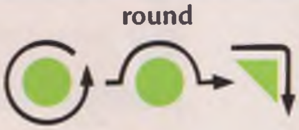

You can also use **around** (= round):
☐ We walked **around** the town.

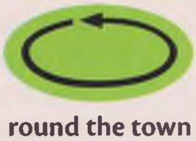

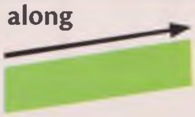

☐ I was walking **along** the road with my dog.
☐ Let's go for a walk **along** the river.
☐ The dog swam **across** the river.

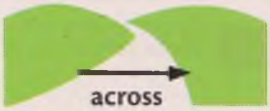

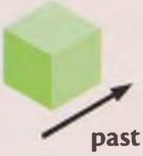

☐ They walked **past** me without speaking.
☐ A: Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital?
B: Go along this road, **past** the cinema, under the bridge and the hospital is on the left.

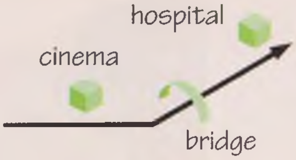

get in/on etc. → Unit 56 **in/on** → Units 106–107 **to** → Unit 108 **fall off** / **run away** etc. → Unit 114

Exercises

110.1 Somebody asks you how to get to a place. You say which way to go. Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning **Go ...** .

Excuse me, where is ... ?
Go ...

1
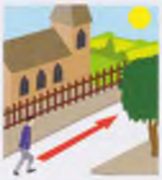
Go past the church.

2
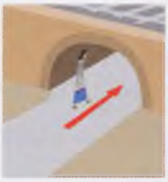
Go .... the bridge.

3
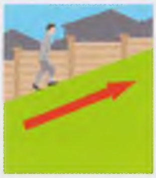
.... the hill.

4
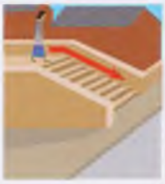
.... the steps.

5
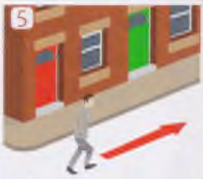
.... this street.

6
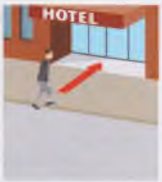

....

7
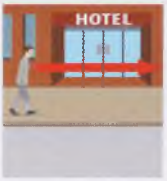

....

8
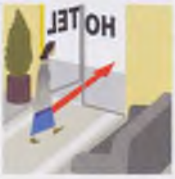

....

9
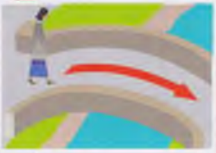
....

10
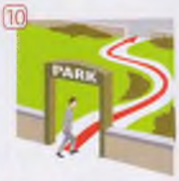

....

110.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1
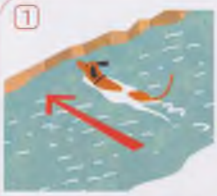

2
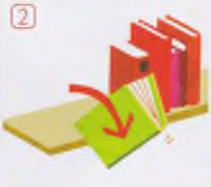

3
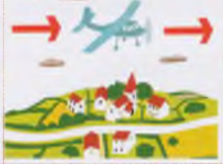

4
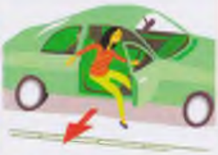

5
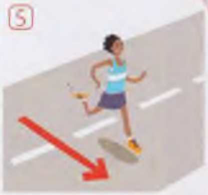

6
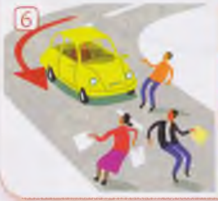

7
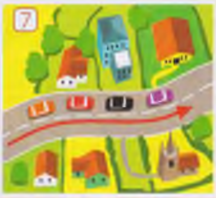

8
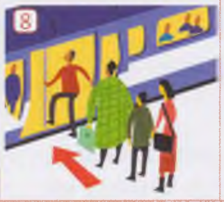

9
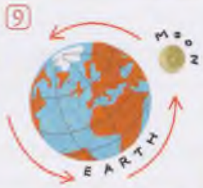

10
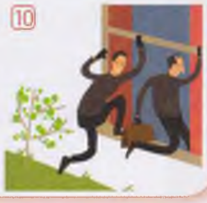

1 The dog swam across the river.
2 A book fell .... the shelf.
3 A plane flew .... the village.
4 A woman got .... the car.
5 A girl ran .... the road.
6 Suddenly a car came .... the corner.
7 They drove .... the village.
8 They got .... the train.
9 The moon travels .... the earth.
10 They got .... the house .... a window.

110.3 Complete the sentences. Use **over/from/into** etc.

1 I looked .... the window and watched the people in the street.
2 My house is very near here. It's just .... the corner.
3 'Where's my phone?' 'You put it .... your bag.'
4 How far is it .... here .... the airport?
5 We walked .... the museum for an hour and saw a lot of interesting things.
6 You can put your coat .... the back of the chair.
7 In tennis, you have to hit the ball .... the net.
8 Silvia took a key .... her bag and opened the door.

Unit 111

on at by with about

A

on

on holiday	☐ Jane isn't at work this week. She's **on holiday**.
on television	☐ We watched the news **on TV**.
on the radio	☐ We listened to the news **on the radio**.
on the phone	☐ I spoke to Rachel **on the phone** last night.
on fire	☐ The house is **on fire**! Call the fire brigade.
on time (= not late)	☐ 'Was the train late?' 'No, it was **on time**.'

B

at

at (**the age of**) **21** / **at 50 kilometres an hour** / **at 100 degrees** etc. :

☐ Lisa got married **at 21**. (*or*... **at the age of 21**.)

☐ A car uses more petrol **at 120 kilometres an hour** than **at 90**.

☐ Water boils **at 100 degrees Celsius**.

C

by

by car / **by bus** / **by plane** / **by bike** etc. :

☐ Do you like travelling **by train**?

☐ Jane usually goes to work **by bike**.

but **on foot**:

☐ You can't get there **by car**. You have to go **on foot**. (= you have to walk)

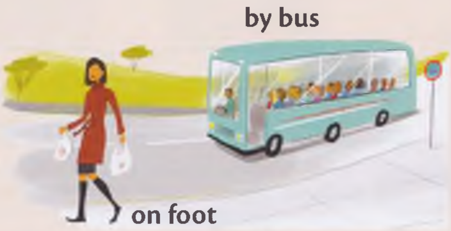

a book **by** ... / a painting **by** ... / a piece of music **by** ... etc. :

☐ Have you read any books **by Charles Dickens**?

☐ **Who** is that painting **by**? Picasso?

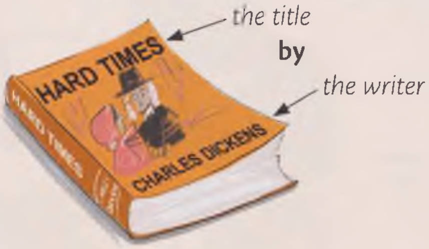

by after the passive (→ Unit 21):

☐ I was bitten **by a dog**.

D

with/without

☐ Did you stay at a hotel or **with friends**?

☐ Wait for me. Please don't go **without me**.

☐ Do you like your coffee **with** or **without milk**?

☐ I cut the paper **with a pair of scissors**.

a man **with** a beard / a woman **with** glasses etc. :

☐ Do you know that man **with the beard**?

☐ I'd like to have a house **with a big garden**.

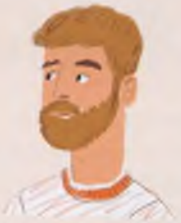

a man
with a beard

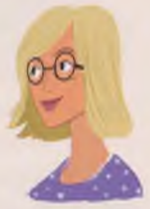

a woman
with glasses

E

about

talk/speak/think/hear/know about ... :

☐ Some people **talk about their work** all the time.

☐ I don't **know** much **about cars**.

a book / **a question** / **a programme** / **information** (etc.) **about** ... :

☐ There was **a programme about** volcanoes on TV last night. Did you see it?

by → Units 21, 63, 109 **at/on** → Units 103, 106–107 preposition + **-ing** → Unit 112

Exercises

111.1 Complete the sentences. Use **on** + these words:

holiday **the phone** ~~**the radio**~~ **TV** **time**

1 We heard the news ..on the radio.. .
2 Please don't be late. Try to be here ....
3 I won't be here next week. I'm going ....
4 'Did you see Linda?' 'No, but I talked to her ....'
5 'What's .... this evening?' 'Nothing that I want to watch.'

111.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with **at/by/with** etc.

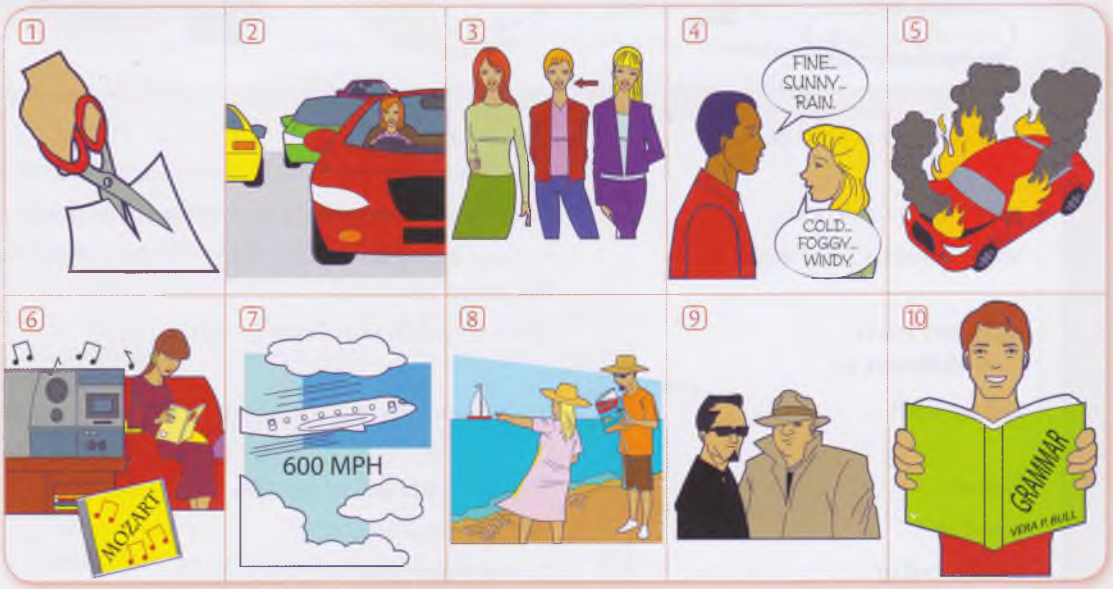

1 I cut the paper ..with.. a pair of scissors.
2 She usually goes to work .... car.
3 Who is the woman .... short hair?
4 They are talking .... the weather.
5 The car is .... fire.
6 She's listening to some music .... Mozart.
7 The plane is flying .... 600 miles an hour.
8 They're .... holiday.
9 Do you know the man .... sunglasses?
10 He's reading a book .... grammar .... Vera P. Bull.

111.3 Complete the sentences. Use **at/by/with** etc.

1 In tennis, you hit the ball .... a racket.
2 It's cold today. Don't go out .... a coat.
3 *Hamlet*, *Othello* and *Macbeth* are plays .... William Shakespeare.
4 Do you know anything .... computers?
5 My grandmother died .... the age of 98.
6 How long does it take from New York to Los Angeles .... plane?
7 I didn't go to the football match, but I watched it .... TV.
8 My house is the one .... the red door on the right.
9 These trains are very fast. They can travel .... very high speeds.
10 I don't use my car very often. I prefer to go .... bike.
11 Can you give me some information .... hotels in this town?
12 I was arrested .... two policemen and taken to the police station.
13 The buses here are very good. They're nearly always .... time.
14 What would you like to drink .... your meal?
15 We travelled from Paris to Moscow .... train.
16 The museum has some paintings .... Rembrandt.

Unit 112

afraid of ... , good at ... etc. of/at/for etc. (prepositions) + -ing

A

afraid of ... / **good at** ... etc. (*adjective + preposition*)

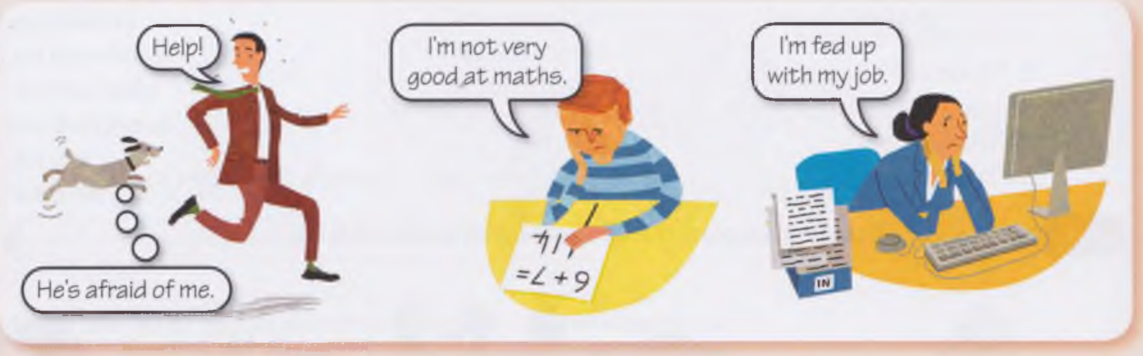
Help!
He's afraid of me.
I'm not very good at maths.
I'm fed up with my job.
IN

afraid of ... / **scared of** ...	○ Are you **afraid of** dogs?
angry with somebody	○ Why are you **angry with** me? What have I done?
angry about something	○ Are you **angry about** last night? (= something that happened last night)
different from ... *or* **different to** ...	○ Lisa is very **different from** (*or* **to**) her sister.
fed up with ...	○ I'm **fed up with** my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job)
full of ...	○ The room was **full of people**.
good at ...	○ Are you **good at** maths?
interested in ...	○ I'm not **interested in** sport.
married to ...	○ Sue is **married to** a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)
nice/**kind of** somebody to ...	○ It was **kind of** you to help us. Thank you very much.
be **nice**/**kind to** somebody	○ David is very friendly. He's always very **nice to** me.
sorry about a situation	○ I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm **sorry about** that.
sorry for/**about** doing something	○ I'm **sorry for**/**about** not phoning you yesterday. (*or* I'm sorry I didn't phone you)
be/feel **sorry for** somebody	○ I feel **sorry for** them. They are in a very difficult situation.

B

of/**at**/**for** (etc.) + **-ing**

After a preposition (**of**/**at**/**for** etc.), a verb ends in **-ing**:

I'm not very good **at**	**telling**	stories.
Are you fed up **with**	**doing**	the same thing every day?
I'm sorry **for**	not **phoning**	you yesterday.
Thank you **for**	**helping**	me.
Mark is thinking **of**	**buying**	a new car.
Tom left **without**	**saying**	goodbye. (= he didn't say goodbye)
After	**doing**	the shopping, they went home.

before/after -ing ➜ Unit 105 **think about/of** ➜ Unit 113

Exercises

112.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with **of/with/in** etc.

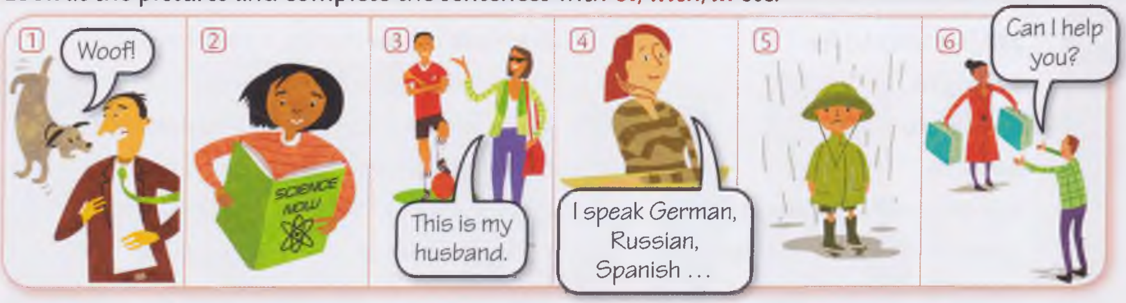

1 He's afraid ....of.... dogs.
2 She's interested .... science.
3 She's married .... a footballer.
4 She's very good .... languages.
5 He's fed up .... the weather.
6 A: Can I help you?
B: Thanks, that's very kind .... you.

112.2 Complete the sentences with **in/of/with** etc.

1 I'm not interested ....in.... sport.
2 I'm not very good .... sport.
3 I like Sarah. She's always very kind .... me.
4 I'm sorry .... your broken window. It was an accident.
5 He's very brave. He isn't scared .... anything.
6 It was very nice .... Jane to let us stay in her apartment.
7 Life today is very different .... life 50 years ago.
8 Are you interested .... politics?
9 I feel sorry .... her, but I can't help her.
10 Chris was angry .... what happened.
11 These boxes are very heavy. They are full .... books.
12 I'm sorry .... getting angry .... you yesterday.

112.3 Complete the sentences.

1 I'm not very ....good at telling.... stories. (good/tell)
2 I wanted to go to the cinema, but Paula wasn't .... (interested/go)
3 Sue isn't very .... up in the morning. (good/get)
4 Let's go! I'm .... (fed up / wait)
5 I'm .... you up in the middle of the night. (sorry/wake)
6 Sorry I'm late! .... (thank you / wait)

112.4 Complete the sentences. Use **without -ing**.

1 (Tom left / he didn't say goodbye) ....Tom left without saying goodbye.....
2 (Sue walked past me / she didn't speak)
Sue walked ....
3 (Don't do anything / ask me first)
Don't ....
4 (I went out / I didn't lock the door)
I ....

112.5 Write sentences about yourself.

1 (interested) ....I'm interested in sport.....
2 (scared) I'm ....
3 (not very good) I'm not ....
4 (not interested) ....
5 (fed up) ....

Unit
113

listen to ... , look at ... etc. (verb + preposition)

A

ask (somebody) **for** ...	○ Don't **ask** me **for** money. I don't have any.
belong to ...	○ This house doesn't **belong to** me. (= it's not mine)
happen to ...	○ I can't find my phone. What's **happened to** it?
listen to ...	○ **Listen to** this music. It's great.
talk to somebody (**about** ...)	○ Did you **talk to** Paul **about** the problem?
speak to somebody (**about** ...)	○ I'd like to **speak to** the manager, please.
thank somebody **for** ...	○ **Thank** you very much **for** your help.
think about ... *or* **think of** ...	○ He never **thinks about** (*or* **of**) other people. ○ Mark is **thinking of** (*or* **about**) buying a car.
wait for ...	○ **Wait for** me. I'm nearly ready.

Note that we say **call**/**phone**/**text**/**email** somebody (no preposition):

○ I have to **phone my parents** today.
(*not* phone to my parents)

○ Shall I **text you** or **email you**?

B

look at / look for / look after

look at ...

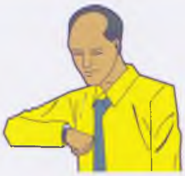

○ He's **looking at** his watch.

○ **Look at** these flowers! They're beautiful.

○ Why are you **looking at** me like that?

look for ...
(= try to find)

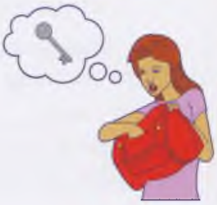

○ She's lost her key. She's **looking for** it.

○ I'm **looking for** Sarah. Have you seen her?

look after ...
(= take care of, keep safe)

○ When Emily is at work, a friend of hers **looks after** her children.

○ Don't lose this book. **Look after** it.
(= Keep it safe.)

C

depend

We say **depend on** ... :

○ A: Do you like eating in restaurants?
B: Sometimes. It **depends on** the restaurant. (*not* it depends of)

You can say **it depends what**/**where**/**how** (etc.) with or without **on**:

○ A: Do you want to come out with us?
B: It **depends where** you're going. *or* It **depends on where** you're going.

wait → Unit 54 preposition + **-ing** → Unit 112

Exercises

113.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with **to/for/at** etc.

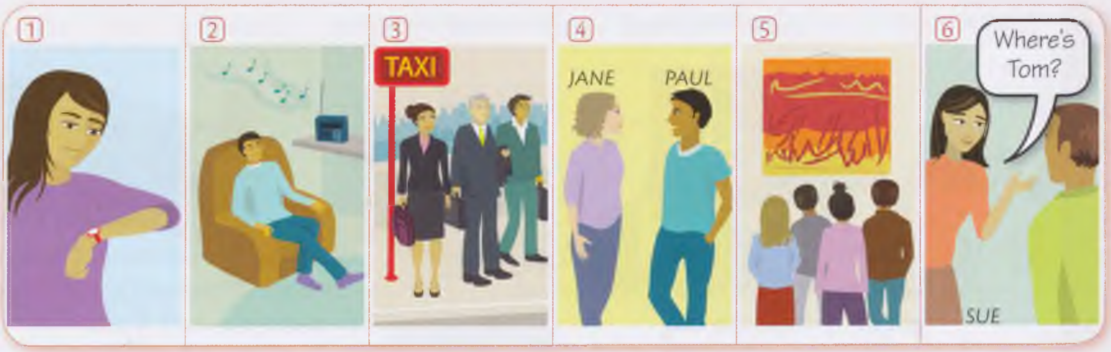

1 She's looking ....at.... her watch.
2 He's listening .... the radio.
3 They're waiting .... a taxi.
4 Paul is talking .... Jane.
5 They're looking .... a picture.
6 Sue is looking .... Tom.

113.2 Complete the sentences with **to/for/about** etc. Two sentences are already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 Thank you very much ....for.... your help.
2 This isn't my umbrella. It belongs .... a friend of mine.
3 I saw Steve, but I didn't speak .... him.
4 Don't forget to phone .... your mother tonight.
5 Thank you .... the present. It was lovely.
6 What happened .... Ella last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
7 We're thinking .... going to Australia next year.
8 We asked the waiter .... coffee, but he brought us tea.
9 'Do you like reading books?' 'It depends .... the book.'
10 John was talking, but nobody was listening .... what he was saying.
11 We waited .... Karen until 2 o'clock, but she didn't come.
12 I texted .... Lisa to tell her I would be late.
13 He's alone all day. He never talks .... anybody.
14 'How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?' 'It depends .... the type of room.'
15 Catherine is thinking .... changing her job.

113.3 Complete these sentences. Use **at/for/after**.

1 I looked .... the letter, but I didn't read it carefully.
2 When you are ill, you need somebody to look .... you.
3 Excuse me, I'm looking .... Hill Street. Is it near here?
4 Bye! Have a great holiday and look .... yourself.
5 I want to take a picture of you. Please look .... the camera and smile.
6 Ben is looking .... a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

113.4 Answer these questions with **It depends ...** .

1	Do you want to go out with us?	It depends where you're going.
2	Do you like eating in restaurants?	It depends on the restaurant.
3	Do you enjoy watching TV?	It depends ....
4	Can you do something for me?	It ....
5	Are you going away this weekend?	....
6	Can you lend me some money?	....

Unit
114

go in, fall off, run away etc. (phrasal verbs 1)

A *phrasal verb* is a verb (**go**/**look**/**be** etc.) + **in**/**out**/**up**/**down** etc.

in

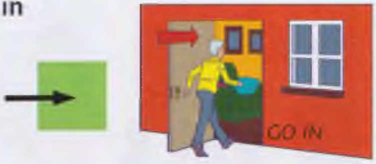

- ○ I waited outside the shop. I didn't **go in**.
- ○ Sarah opened the door of the car and **got in**. (= **into** the car)

out

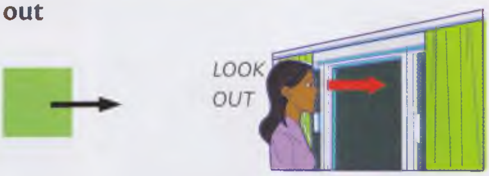

- ○ I went to the window and **looked out**.
- ○ The car stopped and a woman **got out**. (= **out of** the car)

on

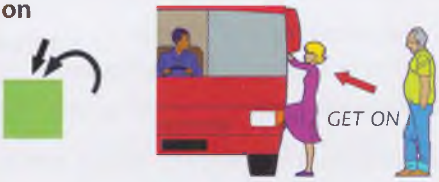

- ○ The bus came, and I **got on**.

off

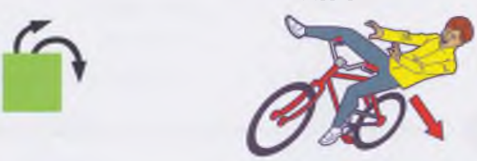

- ○ Be careful! Don't **fall off**.

up

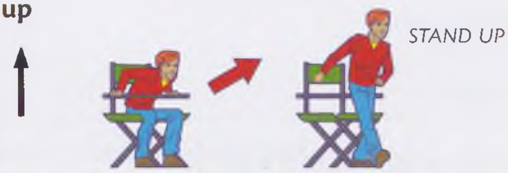

- ○ He **stood up** and left the room.
- ○ I usually **get up** early. (= get out of bed)
- ○ We **looked up** at the stars in the sky.

down

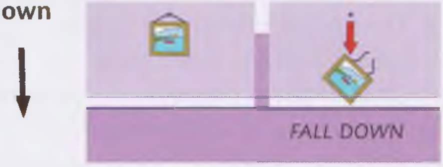

- ○ The picture **fell down**.
- ○ Would you like to **sit down**?
- ○ **Lie down** on the floor.

away *or* **off**

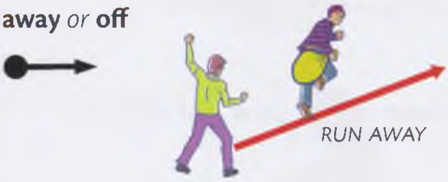

- ○ The thief **ran away**. (*or* … **ran off**)
- ○ Emma got into the car and **drove away**. (*or* … **drove off**)

be/go away (= in/to another place)

- ○ Tom has **gone away** for a few days.

back

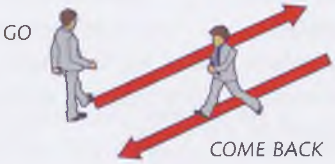

- ○ Go away and don't **come back**!
- ○ We went out for dinner and then **went back** to our hotel.

be back

- ○ Tom is away. He'll **be back** on Monday.

over

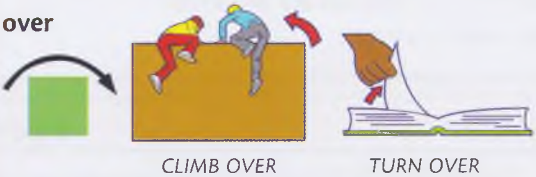

- ○ The wall wasn't very high, so we **climbed over**.
- ○ **Turn over** and look at the next page.

round (*or* **around**)

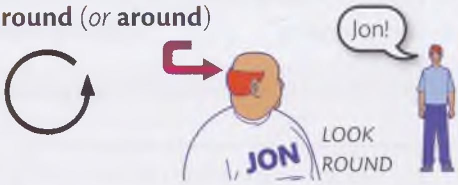

- ○ Somebody shouted my name, so I **looked round** (*or* **around**).
- ○ We went for a long walk. After an hour we **turned round** (*or* **around**) and went back.

get → **Unit 56** **put on** / **take off** etc. (phrasal verbs 2) → **Unit 115** more phrasal verbs → **Appendix 6**

Exercises

114.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these verbs + **in/out/up** etc.

got **got** ~~**looked**~~ **looked** **rode** **sat** **turned** **went**

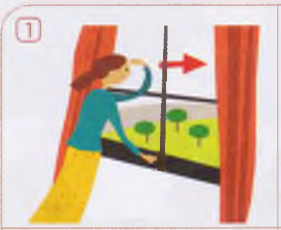

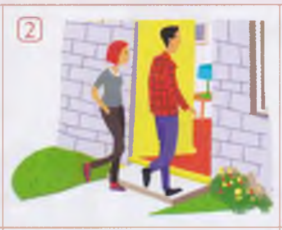

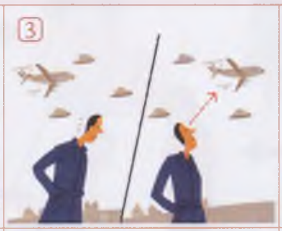

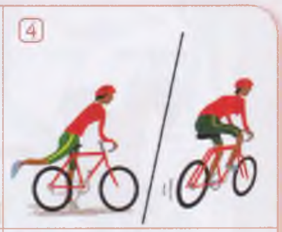

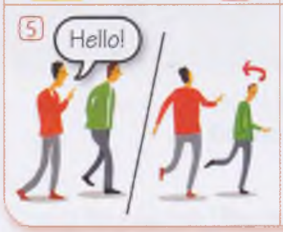

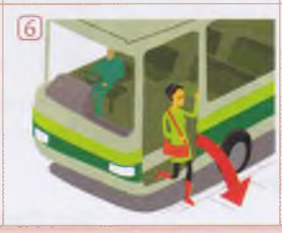

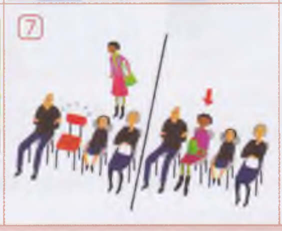

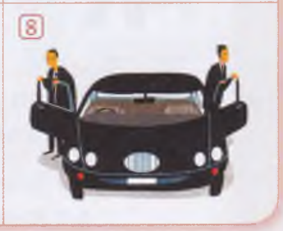

1 I went to the window and ...*looked out*... .
2 The door was open, so we ....
3 He heard a plane, so he ....
4 She got on her bike and ....
5 I said hello, and he ....
6 The bus stopped, and she ....
7 There was a free seat, so she ....
8 A car stopped, and two men ....

114.2 Complete the sentences. Use **out/away/back** etc.

1 'What happened to the picture on the wall?' 'It fell ...*down*....'
2 Wait a minute. Don't go .... I want to ask you something.
3 Lisa heard a noise behind her, so she looked .... to see what it was.
4 I'm going .... now to do some shopping. I'll be .... at 5 o'clock.
5 I'm feeling very tired. I'm going to lie .... on the sofa.
6 When you have read this page, turn .... and read the other side.
7 Mark is from Canada. He lives in London now, but he wants to go .... to Canada.
8 We haven't got a key to the house, so we can't get ....
9 I was very tired this morning. I couldn't get ....
10 A: When are you going .... ?
B: On the 5th. And I'm coming .... on the 24th.

114.3 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 6 (page 250). Complete the sentences. Choose a verb from the box + **on/off/up** etc. If necessary, put the verb into the correct form.

break **fall** **give** **hold** **speak** ~~**wake**~~
carry **get** **go** **slow** **take**

+ on/off/up/down/over

1 I went to sleep at 10 o'clock and ...*woke up*... at 8 o'clock the next morning.
2 'It's time to go.' '........................ a minute. I'm not ready yet.'
3 The train .... and finally stopped.
4 I like flying, but I'm always nervous when the plane ....
5 How are your children? How are they .... at school?
6 It's difficult to hear you. Can you .... a little?
7 This car isn't very good. It has .... many times.
8 When babies try to walk, they sometimes ....
9 The hotel isn't far from here. If you .... along this road, you'll see it on the left.
10 I tried to find a job, but I .... It was impossible.
11 The fire alarm .... and everyone had to leave the building.

Unit
115

put on your shoes put your shoes on (phrasal verbs 2)

A

Sometimes a phrasal verb (**put on** / **take off** etc.) has an *object*. For example:

verb *object*
put on your coat

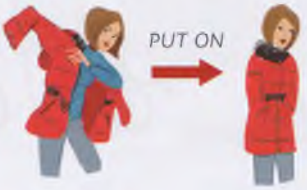

You can say:
put on your coat
or **put** your coat **on**

verb *object*
take off your shoes

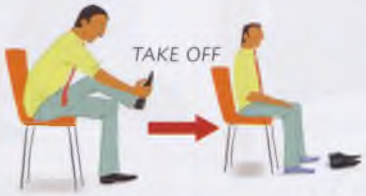

You can say:
take off your shoes
or **take** your shoes **off**

But **it**/**them** (*pronouns*) always go before **on**/**off** etc. :

put **it on** (*not* put on it)

take **them off** (*not* take off them)

- ○ It was cold, so I **put on** my coat.
  or ... I **put** my coat **on**.
- ○ Here's your coat. **Put it on**.
- ○ I'm going to **take off** my shoes.
  or ... **take** my shoes **off**.
- ○ Your shoes are dirty. **Take them off**.

B

Some more phrasal verbs + *object*:

turn on / **turn off** (lights, machines, taps etc.):

- ○ It was dark, so I **turned on** the light.
  or ... I **turned** the light **on**.
- ○ I don't want to watch this programme.
  You can **turn it off**.

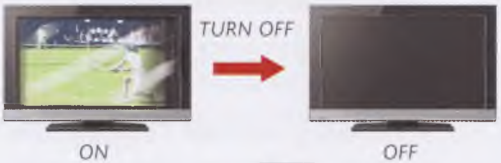

also **switch on** / **switch off** (lights, machines etc.):

- ○ I **switched on** the light and **switched off** the television.

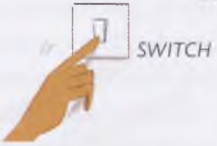

pick up / **put down**:

- ○ Those are my keys on the floor.
  Can you **pick them up** for me?
- ○ I stopped reading and **put** my book **down**.
  or ... **put down** my book.

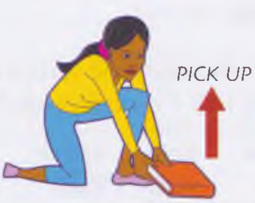

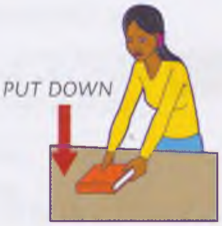

bring back / **take back** / **give back** / **put back**:

- ○ You can take my umbrella, but please **bring it back**.
- ○ I **took** my new sweater **back** to the shop. It was too small for me.
- ○ I've got Rachel's keys. I have to **give them back** to her.
- ○ I read the letter and then **put it back** in the envelope.

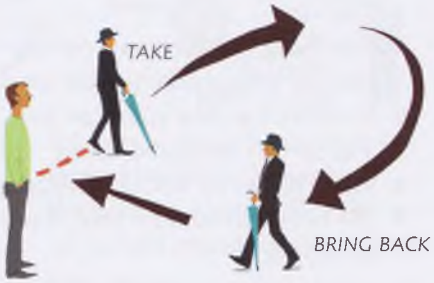

go in / **fall off** etc. (phrasal verbs 1) ➜ **Unit 114**   more phrasal verbs + object ➜ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

115.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?

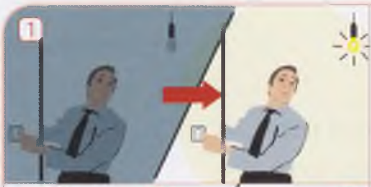

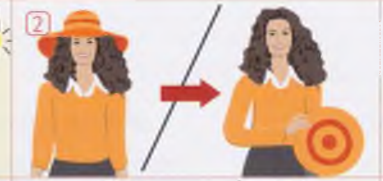

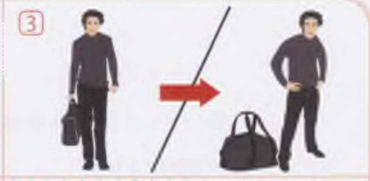

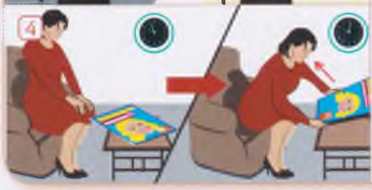

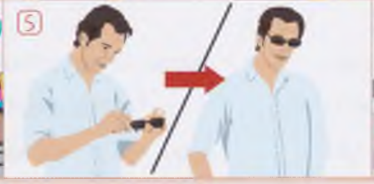

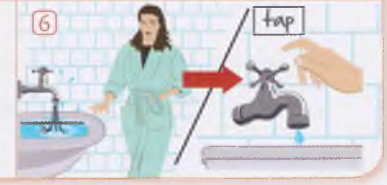

1 He ..turned on the light.......... .
2 She ....
3 He ....
4 She ....
5 He ....
6 She ....

115.2 You can write these sentences in three different ways. Complete the table.

1	I turned on the radio.	..I turned the radio on....	..I turned it on....
2	He put on his jacket.	He	He ....
3	She	She took her glasses off.	....
4	I picked up the phone.	....	....
5	They gave back the key.	....	....
6	....	We turned the lights off.	....

115.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs with **it** or **them**.

bring back **pick up** **switch off** **take back** **~~turn on~~**

1 I wanted to watch something on TV, so I ..turned it on.... .
2 My new lamp doesn't work. I'm going to .... to the shop.
3 There were some gloves on the floor, so I .... and put them on the table.
4 The heating was on but it was too warm, so I ....
5 Thank you for lending me these books. I won't forget to ....

115.4 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 7 (page 251). Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box. Sometimes you will also need to use **it/them/me**.

fill in **~~knock down~~** **look up** **show round** **~~turn down~~**
give up **knock over** **put out** **throw away** **try on**

1 They ..knocked.... a lot of houses ..down.... when they built the new road.
2 That music is very loud. Can you ..turn it down.... ?
3 I .... a glass and broke it.
4 'What does this word mean?' 'Why don't you .... ?'
5 I want to keep these magazines. Please don't ....
6 I .... a pair of shoes in the shop, but I didn't buy them.
7 I visited a school last week. One of the teachers ....
8 'Do you play the piano?' 'No, I started to learn, but I .... after a month.'
9 Somebody gave me a form and told me to ....
10 Smoking isn't allowed here. Please .... your cigarette ....

[illegible]

[illegible]

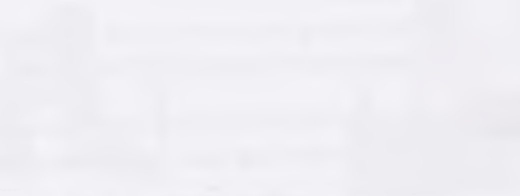

[illegible]

[illegible]

Appendix 1
Active and passive

1.1 Present and past

	active	*passive*
present simple	○ We **make** butter from milk.	○ Butter **is made** from milk.
	○ Somebody **cleans** these rooms every day.	○ These rooms **are cleaned** every day.
	○ People never **invite** me to parties.	○ I **am** never **invited** to parties.
	○ How **do** they **make** butter?	○ How **is** butter **made**?
past simple	○ Somebody **stole** my car last week.	○ My car **was stolen** last week.
	○ Somebody **stole** my keys yesterday.	○ My keys **were stolen** yesterday.
	○ They **didn't invite** me to the party.	○ I **wasn't invited** to the party.
	○ When **did** they **build** these houses?	○ When **were** these houses **built**?
present continuous	○ They **are building** a new airport at the moment. (= it isn't finished)	○ A new airport **is being built** at the moment.
	○ They **are building** some new houses near the river.	○ Some new houses **are being built** near the river.
past continuous	○ When I was here a few years ago, they **were building** a new airport. (= it wasn't finished at that time)	○ When I was here a few years ago, a new airport **was being built**.
present perfect	○ Look! They **have painted** the door.	○ Look! The door **has been painted**.
	○ These shirts are clean. Somebody **has washed** them.	○ These shirts are clean. They **have been washed**.
	○ Somebody **has stolen** my car.	○ My car **has been stolen**.
past perfect	○ Tina said that somebody **had stolen** her car.	○ Tina said that her car **had been stolen**.

1.2 **will** / **can** / **must** / **have to** etc.

active	*passive*
○ Somebody **will clean** the office tomorrow.	○ The office **will be cleaned** tomorrow.
○ Somebody **must clean** the office.	○ The office **must be cleaned**.
○ I think they**'ll invite** you to the party.	○ I think you**'ll be invited** to the party.
○ They **can't repair** my watch.	○ My watch **can't be repaired**.
○ You **should wash** this sweater by hand.	○ This sweater **should be washed** by hand.
○ They **are going to build** a new airport.	○ A new airport **is going to be built**.
○ Somebody **has to wash** these clothes.	○ These clothes **have to be washed**.
○ They **had to take** the injured man to hospital.	○ The injured man **had to be taken** to hospital.

Appendix 2
List of irregular verbs (→ Unit 24)

infinitive	*past simple*	*past participle*
be	**was/were**	**been**
beat	**beat**	**beaten**
become	**became**	**become**
begin	**began**	**begun**
bite	**bit**	**bitten**
blow	**blew**	**blown**
break	**broke**	**broken**
bring	**brought**	**brought**
build	**built**	**built**
buy	**bought**	**bought**
catch	**caught**	**caught**
choose	**chose**	**chosen**
come	**came**	**come**
cost	**cost**	**cost**
cut	**cut**	**cut**
do	**did**	**done**
draw	**drew**	**drawn**
drink	**drank**	**drunk**
drive	**drove**	**driven**
eat	**ate**	**eaten**
fall	**fell**	**fallen**
feel	**felt**	**felt**
fight	**fought**	**fought**
find	**found**	**found**
fly	**flew**	**flown**
forget	**forgot**	**forgotten**
get	**got**	**got**
give	**gave**	**given**
go	**went**	**gone**
grow	**grew**	**grown**
hang	**hung**	**hung**
have	**had**	**had**
hear	**heard**	**heard**
hide	**hid**	**hidden**
hit	**hit**	**hit**
hold	**held**	**held**
hurt	**hurt**	**hurt**
keep	**kept**	**kept**
know	**knew**	**known**
leave	**left**	**left**
lend	**lent**	**lent**

infinitive	*past simple*	*past participle*
let	**let**	**let**
lie	**lay**	**lain**
light	**lit**	**lit**
lose	**lost**	**lost**
make	**made**	**made**
mean	**meant**	**meant**
meet	**met**	**met**
pay	**paid**	**paid**
put	**put**	**put**
read (reed)*	**read** (red)*	**read** (red)*
ride	**rode**	**ridden**
ring	**rang**	**rung**
rise	**rose**	**risen**
run	**ran**	**run**
say	**said**	**said**
see	**saw**	**seen**
sell	**sold**	**sold**
send	**sent**	**sent**
shine	**shone**	**shone**
shoot	**shot**	**shot**
show	**showed**	**shown**
shut	**shut**	**shut**
sing	**sang**	**sung**
sit	**sat**	**sat**
sleep	**slept**	**slept**
speak	**spoke**	**spoken**
spend	**spent**	**spent**
stand	**stood**	**stood**
steal	**stole**	**stolen**
swim	**swam**	**swum**
take	**took**	**taken**
teach	**taught**	**taught**
tear	**tore**	**torn**
tell	**told**	**told**
think	**thought**	**thought**
throw	**threw**	**thrown**
understand	**understood**	**understood**
wake	**woke**	**woken**
wear	**wore**	**worn**
win	**won**	**won**
write	**wrote**	**written**

* *pronunciation*

Some verbs can be regular (**-ed**) *or* irregular (**-t**):

infinitive	*past simple / past participle*
burn	**burned** *or* **burnt**
dream	**dreamed** *or* **dreamt**

infinitive	*past simple / past participle*
learn	**learned** *or* **learnt**
smell	**smelled** *or* **smelt**

Appendix 3
Irregular verbs in groups

The past simple and past participle are the same:

1

cost	→	**cost**
cut	→	**cut**
hit	→	**hit**
hurt	→	**hurt**

let	→	**let**
put	→	**put**
shut	→	**shut**

2

lend	→	**lent**
send	→	**sent**
spend	→	**spent**
build	→	**built**

lose	→	**lost**
shoot	→	**shot**
get	→	**got**
light	→	**lit**
sit	→	**sat**

burn	→	**burnt**
learn	→	**learnt**
smell	→	**smelt**

keep	→	**kept**
sleep	→	**slept**

feel	→	**felt**
leave	→	**left**
meet	→	**met**
dream	→	**dreamt** (dremt)*
mean	→	**meant** (ment)*

3

bring	→	**brought** (brort)*
buy	→	**bought** (bort)*
fight	→	**fought** (fort)*
think	→	**thought** (thort)*
catch	→	**caught** (kort)*
teach	→	**taught** (tort)*

4

sell	→	**sold**
tell	→	**told**

find	→	**found**
have	→	**had**
hear	→	**heard**
hold	→	**held**
read	→	**read** (red)*
say	→	**said** (sed)*

pay	→	**paid**
make	→	**made**

stand	→	**stood**
understand	→	**understood**

* *pronunciation*

The past simple and past participle are different:

1

break	→	**broke**	**broken**
choose	→	**chose**	**chosen**
speak	→	**spoke**	**spoken**
steal	→	**stole**	**stolen**
wake	→	**woke**	**woken**

2

drive	→	**drove**	**driven**
ride	→	**rode**	**ridden**
rise	→	**rose**	**risen**
write	→	**wrote**	**written**

beat	→	**beat**	**beaten**
bite	→	**bit**	**bitten**
hide	→	**hid**	**hidden**

3

eat	→	**ate**	**eaten**
fall	→	**fell**	**fallen**
forget	→	**forgot**	**forgotten**
give	→	**gave**	**given**
see	→	**saw**	**seen**
take	→	**took**	**taken**

4

blow	→	**blew**	**blown**
grow	→	**grew**	**grown**
know	→	**knew**	**known**
throw	→	**threw**	**thrown**
fly	→	**flew**	**flown**
draw	→	**drew**	**drawn**
show	→	**showed**	**shown**

5

begin	→	**began**	**begun**
drink	→	**drank**	**drunk**
swim	→	**swam**	**swum**
ring	→	**rang**	**rung**
sing	→	**sang**	**sung**
run	→	**ran**	**run**

6

come	→	**came**	**come**
become	→	**became**	**become**

Appendix 4
Short forms (**he's / I'd / don't** etc.)

4.1 In spoken English we usually pronounce '**I am**' as one word. The short form (**I'm**) is a way of writing this:

I am → **I'm**
it is → **it's**
they have → **they've**
etc.

○ **I'm** feeling tired this morning.
○ 'Do you like this jacket?' 'Yes, **it's** nice.'
○ 'Where are your friends?' '**They've** gone home.'

When we write short forms, we use ' (*an apostrophe*):

I ~~a~~m → I**'m** he ~~i~~s → he**'s** you ~~ha~~ve → you**'ve** she ~~wi~~ll → she**'ll**

4.2 We use these forms with **I**/**he**/**she** etc. :

am	→	**'m**	**I'm**						
is	→	**'s**		**he's**	**she's**	**it's**			
are	→	**'re**					**we're**	**you're**	**they're**
have	→	**'ve**	**I've**				**we've**	**you've**	**they've**
has	→	**'s**		**he's**	**she's**	**it's**			
had	→	**'d**	**I'd**	**he'd**	**she'd**		**we'd**	**you'd**	**they'd**
will	→	**'ll**	**I'll**	**he'll**	**she'll**		**we'll**	**you'll**	**they'll**
would	→	**'d**	**I'd**	**he'd**	**she'd**		**we'd**	**you'd**	**they'd**

○ I**'ve** got some new shoes.
○ We**'ll** probably go out this evening.
○ It**'s** 10 o'clock. You**'re** late again.

's = **is** *or* **has**:

○ She**'s** going out this evening. (she**'s** going = she **is** going)
○ She**'s** gone out. (she**'s** gone = she **has** gone)

'd = **would** *or* **had**:

○ A: What would you like to eat?
B: I**'d** like a salad, please. (I**'d** like = I **would** like)
○ I told the police that I**'d** lost my passport. (I**'d** lost = I **had** lost)

Do not use **'m**/**'s**/**'d** etc. at the end of a sentence (→ Unit 40):

○ 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I **am**.' (*not* Yes, I'm.)
○ She isn't tired, but he **is**. (*not* he's)

4.3 We use short forms with **I**/**you**/**he**/**she** etc., but you can use short forms (especially **'s**) with other words too:

○ **Who's** your favourite singer? (= who **is**)
○ **What's** the time? (= what **is**)
○ **There's** a big tree in the garden. (= there **is**)
○ **My sister's** working in London. (= my sister **is** working)
○ **Paul's** gone out. (= Paul **has** gone out)
○ **What colour's** your car? (= What colour **is** your car?)

4.4 Negative short forms (→ Unit 43):

isn't (= is not)
aren't (= are not)
wasn't (= was not)
weren't (= were not)
hasn't (= has not)
haven't (= have not)
hadn't (= had not)

don't (= do not)
doesn't (= does not)
didn't (= did not)

can't (= cannot)
couldn't (= could not)
won't (= will not)
wouldn't (= would not)
shouldn't (= should not)
mustn't (= must not)

- We went to her house, but she **wasn't** at home.
- 'Where's David?' 'I **don't** know. I **haven't** seen him.'
- You work all the time. You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- I **won't** be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

4.5 **'s** (*apostrophe* + **s**)

's can mean different things:

(1) **'s** = **is** *or* **has** (→ section 4.2 of this appendix)

- It**'s** raining. (= It **is** raining)
- It**'s** stopped raining. (= It **has** stopped)

(2) let's = let **us** (→ Units 35, 53)

- It's a lovely day. **Let's** go out. (= Let **us** go out.)

(3) Kate**'s** camera = her camera
my brother**'s** car = his car
the manager**'s** office = his/her office etc.
(→ Unit 64)

Compare:

- **Kate's** camera was very expensive. (**Kate's** camera = **her** camera)
- **Kate's** a very good photographer. (**Kate's** = Kate **is**)
- **Kate's** got a new camera. (Kate**'s** got = Kate **has** got)

Appendix 5
Spelling

5.1 Words + **-s** and **-es** (bird**s**/watch**es** etc.)

noun + **s** (plural) (→ Unit 66)
bird → bird**s** mistake → mistake**s** hotel → hotel**s**

verb + **s** (he/she/it **-s**) (→ Unit 5)
think → think**s** live → live**s** remember → remember**s**

but

+ **es** after **-s** / **-sh** / **-ch** / **-x**
bu**s** → bus**es** pa**ss** → pass**es** addre**ss** → address**es**
di**sh** → dish**es** wa**sh** → wash**es** fini**sh** → finish**es**
wat**ch** → watch**es** tea**ch** → teach**es** sandwi**ch** → sandwich**es**
bo**x** → box**es**

also
potat**o** → potato**es** tomat**o** → tomato**es**
d**o** → do**es** g**o** → go**es**

-f / **-fe** → **-ves**
shel**f** → shel**ves** kni**fe** → kni**ves** *but* roof → roof**s**

5.2 Words ending in **-y** (bab**y** → bab**ies** / stud**y** → stud**ied** etc.)

-y → **-ies**
stud**y** → stud**ies** (*not* studys) famil**y** → famil**ies** (*not* familys)
stor**y** → stor**ies** cit**y** → cit**ies** bab**y** → bab**ies**
tr**y** → tr**ies** marr**y** → marr**ies** fl**y** → fl**ies**

-y → **-ied** (→ Unit 11)
stud**y** → stud**ied** (*not* studyed)
tr**y** → tr**ied** marr**y** → marr**ied** cop**y** → cop**ied**

-y → **-ier**/**-iest** (→ Units 87, 90)
eas**y** → eas**ier**/eas**iest** (*not* easyer/easyest)
happ**y** → happ**ier**/happ**iest** luck**y** → luck**ier**/luck**iest**
heav**y** → heav**ier**/heav**iest** funn**y** → funn**ier**/funn**iest**

-y → **-ily** (→ Unit 86)
eas**y** → eas**ily** (*not* easyly)
happ**y** → happ**ily** heav**y** → heav**ily** luck**y** → luck**ily**

y does not change to **i** if the ending is **-ay**/**-ey**/**-oy**/**-uy**:
holid**ay** → holid**ays** (*not* holidaies)
enj**oy** → enj**oys**/enj**oyed** st**ay** → st**ays**/st**ayed** b**uy** → b**uys** k**ey** → k**eys**

but
say → **said** **pay** → **paid** (*irregular verbs*)

5.3 -ing

Verbs that end in **-e** (mak**e**/writ**e**/driv**e** etc.) → -~~e~~**ing**:
mak**e** → mak**ing** writ**e** → writ**ing** com**e** → com**ing** danc**e** → danc**ing**

Verbs that end in **-ie** → **-ying**:
l**ie** → l**ying** d**ie** → d**ying** t**ie** → t**ying**

5.4 sto**p** → sto**pp**ed, bi**g** → bi**gg**er etc.

Vowels and consonants:

Vowel letters: a e i o u
Consonant letters: b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y

Sometimes a word ends in a *vowel* + a *consonant*. For example: st**op**, b**ig**, g**et**.
Before **-ing**/**-ed**/**-er**/**-est**, **p**/**g**/**t** etc. become **pp**/**gg**/**tt** etc.

For example:

		V+C				
stop	ST	**O**	**P**	p → **pp**	sto**pp**ing	sto**pp**ed
run	R	**U**	**N**	n → **nn**	ru**nn**ing	
get	G	**E**	**T**	t → **tt**	ge**tt**ing	
swim	SW	**I**	**M**	m → **mm**	swi**mm**ing	
big	B	**I**	**G**	g → **gg**	bi**gg**er	bi**gg**est
hot	H	**O**	**T**	t → **tt**	ho**tt**er	ho**tt**est
thin	TH	**I**	**N**	n → **nn**	thi**nn**er	thi**nn**est

V = *vowel*
C = *consonant*

This does *not* happen
(1) if the word ends in *two* consonant letters (C + C):

		C+C			
help	HE	**L**	**P**	hel**p**ing	hel**p**ed
work	WO	**R**	**K**	wor**k**ing	wor**k**ed
fast	FA	**S**	**T**	fas**t**er	fas**t**est

(2) if the word ends in two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C):

		V+V+C				
need	N	**E**	**E**	**D**	nee**d**ing	nee**d**ed
wait	W	**A**	**I**	**T**	wai**t**ing	wai**t**ed
cheap	CH	**E**	**A**	**P**	chea**p**er	chea**p**est

(3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is *not* stressed:

	stress		
happen	**HAP**-pen	→	happe**n**ing/happe**n**ed (*not* happenned)
visit	**VIS**-it	→	visi**t**ing/visi**t**ed
remember	re-**MEM**-ber	→	remembe**r**ing/remembe**r**ed
but			
prefer	pre-**FER**	(*stress at the end*)	→ prefe**rr**ing/prefe**rr**ed
begin	be-**GIN**	(*stress at the end*)	→ begi**nn**ing

(4) if the word ends in **-y** or **-w**. (At the end of words, **y** and **w** are not consonants.)
enjo**y** → enjo**y**ing/enjo**y**ed sno**w** → sno**w**ing/sno**w**ed fe**w** → fe**w**er/fe**w**est

Appendix 6
Phrasal verbs (**take off / give up** etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (→ Unit 114).

on

carry on = *continue*

☐ Don't stop working. **Carry on.** (= continue working)

☐ A: Excuse me, where is the station?
B: **Carry on** along this road and turn right at the lights. (= Continue along ...)

also **go on** / **walk on** / **drive on** etc. = *continue going/walking/driving* etc.

☐ Don't stop here. **Drive on.**

come on = *be quick*

☐ **Come on**! Everybody is waiting for you.

get on = *manage (in a job, at school, in an exam etc.)*

☐ How was your exam? How did you **get on**?
(= how did you do?)

hold on = *wait*

☐ Can you **hold on** a minute? (= can you wait?)

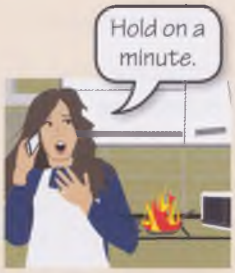
Hold on a minute.

off

take off = *leave the ground (for planes)*

☐ The plane **took off** 20 minutes late, but arrived on time.

TAKE OFF

go off = *explode (a bomb etc.) or ring (an alarm, an alarm clock etc.)*

☐ A bomb **went off** and caused a lot of damage.

☐ A car alarm **goes off** if somebody tries to break into the car.

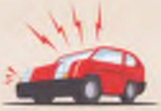

GO OFF

up

give up = *stop trying*

☐ I know it's difficult, but don't **give up**.
(= don't stop trying)

grow up = *become an adult*

☐ What does your son want to do when he **grows up**?

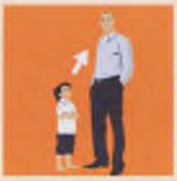

GROW UP

hurry up = *do something more quickly*

☐ **Hurry up**! We haven't got much time.

speak up = *speak more loudly*

☐ I can't hear you. Can you **speak up**, please?

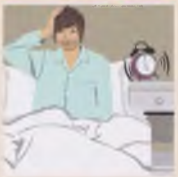

WAKE UP

wake up = *stop sleeping*

☐ I often **wake up** in the middle of the night.

wash up = *wash the plates etc. after a meal*

☐ Do you want me to **wash up**?
(*or* ... to do the washing-up?)

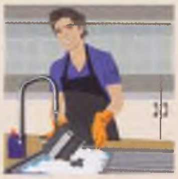

WASH UP

down

slow down = *go more slowly*

☐ You're driving too fast. **Slow down**!

break down = *stop working (for cars, machines etc.)*

☐ Sue was very late because her car **broke down**.

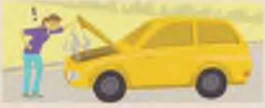

BREAK DOWN

over

fall over = *lose your balance*

☐ I **fell over** because my shoes were too big for me.

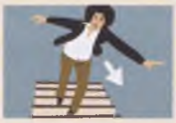

FALL OVER

Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (**put out** a fire / **give up** your job etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (→ Unit 115).

in/out

fill in / **fill out** a form = *complete a form*

○ Can you **fill in this form**, please? *or*
Can you **fill out this form**, please?

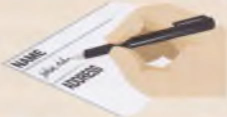

out

put out a fire, a cigarette etc.

○ The fire brigade arrived and **put the fire out**.

PUT OUT

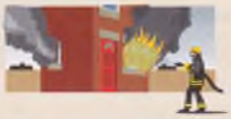

cross out a mistake, a word etc.

○ If you make a mistake, **cross it out**.

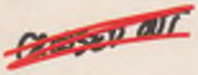

CROSS OUT

on

try on clothes = *put on clothes to see if they fit you*

○ (*in a shop*) This is a nice jacket. Shall I **try it on**?

up

give up something = *stop doing it*

○ Sue **gave up her job** when her baby was born. (= she stopped working)

○ 'Are you still learning Italian?' 'No, I **gave it up**.'

look up a word in a dictionary etc.

○ I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I **looked it up** in a dictionary.

turn up the TV, radio, music, heating etc. = *make it louder or warmer*

○ Can you **turn the radio up**? I can't hear it.

wake up somebody who is sleeping

○ I have to get up early tomorrow. Can you **wake me up** at 6.30?

down

knock down a building = *demolish it*

○ They are going to **knock down** the school and build a new one.

KNOCK DOWN

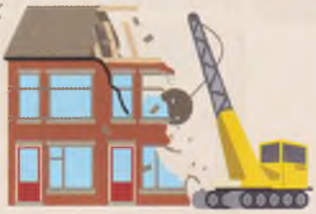

turn down the TV, radio, music, heating etc.
= *make it more quiet or less warm*

○ The music is too loud. Can you **turn it down**?

over

knock over a cup, a glass, a person etc.

○ Be careful. Don't **knock your cup over**.

○ There was an accident at the end of the road. A man was **knocked over** by a car. (*or* A man was **knocked down** by a car.)

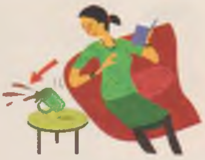

KNOCK OVER

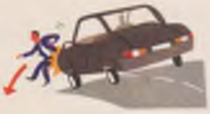

KNOCK OVER *or* KNOCK DOWN

away

throw away rubbish, things you don't want

○ These apples are bad. Shall I **throw them away**?

○ Don't **throw away that picture**. I want it.

THROW AWAY

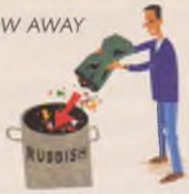

put something **away** = *put it in the place where you usually keep it*

○ After they finished playing, the children **put their toys away**.

back

pay somebody **back** = *give back money that you borrowed*

○ Thank you for lending me the money. I'll **pay you back** next week.

round/ around

show somebody **round**/**around** = *take somebody on a tour of a place*

○ We visited a factory last week. The manager **showed us round**.

Additional exercises

List of exercises:

1–2	**am/is/are**	Units 1–2
3	present continuous	Units 3–4
4	present simple	Units 5–7
5–7	present simple, **am/is/are** and **have (got)**	Units 1–2, 5–7, 9
8–9	present continuous and present simple	Units 3–8
10–13	**was/were** and past simple	Units 10–12
14	past simple and past continuous	Units 11–14
15	present and past	Units 3–14
16–18	present perfect	Units 15–19
19–22	present perfect and past simple	Units 18–20
23	present, past and present perfect	Units 3–20
24–27	passive	Units 21–22
28	future	Units 25–28
29	past, present and future	Units 3–20, 25–28
30–31	past, present and future	Units 3–22, 25–28, 52, 54, 98, 105
32	**-ing** and **to** …	Units 51–55,105,112
33–34	**a** and **the**	Units 65, 69–73
35	prepositions	Units 103–108,111

am/is/are

Units 1–2

1 Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + **is/isn't/are/aren't**.

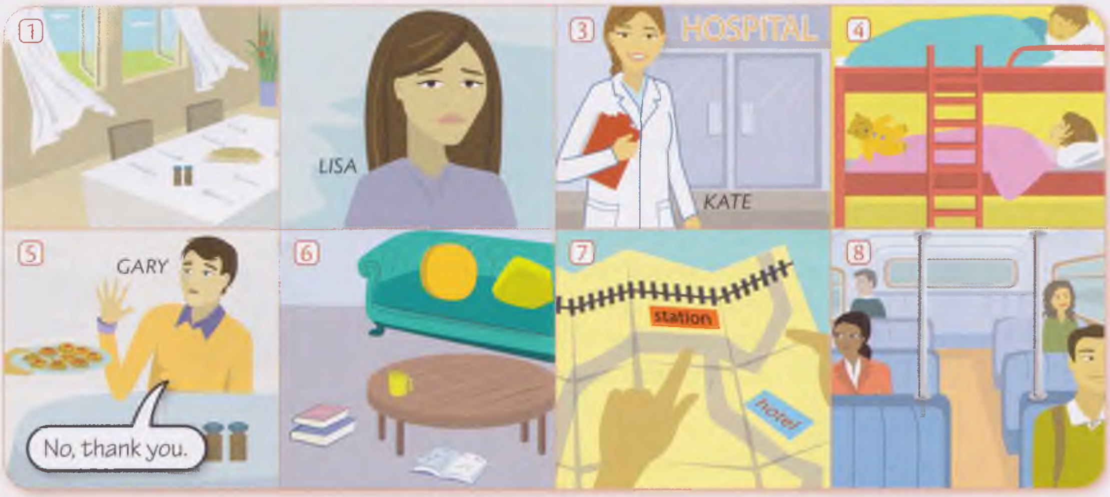

~~The windows~~
~~Lisa~~
Kate
The children
Gary
The books
The hotel
The bus

on the table
hungry
asleep
~~open~~
full
near the station
a doctor
~~happy~~

1 The windows are open.
2 Lisa isn't happy.
3 Kate ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

2 Complete the sentences.

1 'Are you hungry?' 'No, but ....I'm.... thirsty.'
2 '....How are.... your parents?' 'They're fine.'
3 'Is Anna at home?' 'No, ... at work.'
4 '........................ my keys?' 'On your desk.'
5 Where is Paul from? .... American or British?
6 .... very hot today. The temperature is 38 degrees.
7 'Are you a teacher?' 'No, ... a student.'
8 '........................ your umbrella?' 'Green.'
9 Where's your car? .... in the car park?
10 '........................ tired?' 'No, I'm fine.'
11 'These shoes are nice. How ....?' 'Sixty pounds.'

---

present continuous (I'm working / are you working? etc.)

Units 3–4

3 Use the words in brackets to write sentences.

1 A: Where are your parents?
B: ....They're watching TV.............. (they / watch / TV)
2 A: Paula is going out.
B: ....Where's she going?.............. (where / she / go?)
3 A: Where's David?
B: .... (he / have / a shower)
4 A: ....? (the children / play?)
B: No, they're asleep.
5 A: ....? (it / rain?)
B: No, not at the moment.
6 A: Where are Sue and Steve?
B: .... (they / come / now)
7 A: ....? (why / you / stand / here?)
B: .... (I / wait / for somebody)

---

present simple (I work / she doesn't work / do you work? etc.)

Units 5–7

4 Complete the sentences. Use the present simple.

1 ....Sue always gets.... to work early. (Sue / always / get)
2 ....We don't watch.... TV very often. (we / not / watch)
3 How often ....do you wash.... your hair? (you / wash)
4 I want to go to the cinema, but .... to go. (Sam / not / want)
5 .... to go out tonight? (you / want)
6 .... near here? (Helen / live)
7 .... a lot of people. (Sarah / know)
8 I enjoy travelling, but .... very much. (I / not / travel)
9 What time .... in the morning? (you / usually / get up)
10 My parents are usually at home in the evening.
.... very often. (they / not / go out)
11 .... work at five o'clock. (Tom / always / finish)
12 A: What ....? (Jessica / do)
B: .... in a hotel. (she / work)

present simple, am/is/are and have (got)

Units 1–2, 5–7, 9

5 Read the questions and Clare's answers. Then write sentences about Clare.

1	Are you married?	No.
2	Do you live in London?	Yes.
3	Are you a student?	Yes.
4	Have you got a car?	No.
5	Do you go out a lot?	Yes.
6	Have you got a lot of friends?	Yes.
7	Do you like London?	No.
8	Do you like dancing?	Yes.
9	Are you interested in sport?	No.

Clare

1 She isn't married.
2 She lives in London.
3 ......
4 ......
5 ......
6 ......
7 ......
8 ......
9 ......

6 Complete the questions.

1

What's your name ......?	Ben.
...... married?	Yes, I am.
Where ......?	In Barton Road.
...... any children?	Yes, a daughter.
How ......?	She's three.

2

......?	I'm 29.
......?	I work in a supermarket.
...... your job?	No, I hate it.
...... a car?	Yes, I have.
...... to work by car?	No, I usually go by bus.

3

Who is this man ......?	That's my brother.
......?	Michael.
......?	He's a travel agent.
...... in London?	No, in Manchester.

7 Write sentences from these words. All the sentences are present.

1 Sarah often / tennis ...... Sarah often plays tennis.
2 my parents / a new car ...... My parents have got a new car.
3 my shoes / dirty ...... My shoes are dirty.
4 Sonia / 32 years old ...... Sonia ......
5 I / two sisters ......
6 we often / TV in the evening ......
7 Amy never / a hat ......
8 a bicycle / two wheels ......
9 these flowers / beautiful ......
10 Emma / German very well ......

present continuous (I'm working) and present simple (I work)

Units 3–8

8 Complete the sentences.

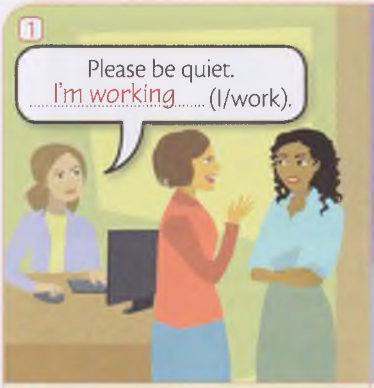
1 Please be quiet. I'm working (I/work).

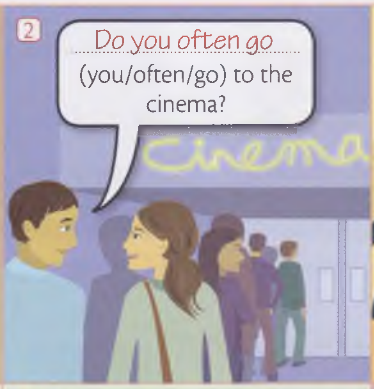
2 Do you often go (you/often/go) to the cinema?

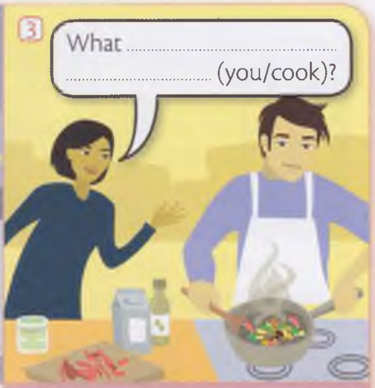
3 What ………… ………… (you/cook)?

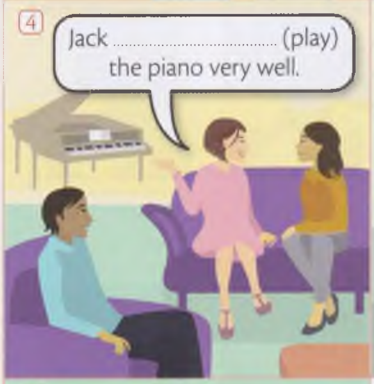
4 Jack ………… (play) the piano very well.

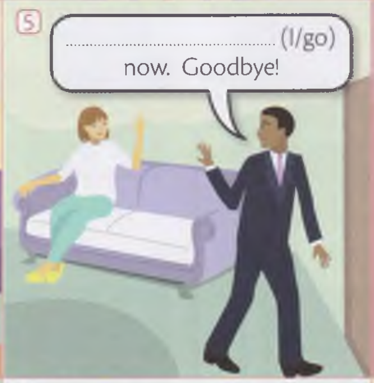
5 ………… (I/go) now. Goodbye!

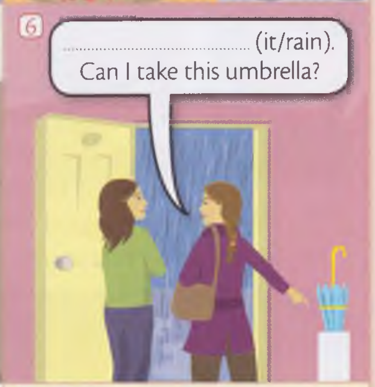
6 ………… (it/rain). Can I take this umbrella?

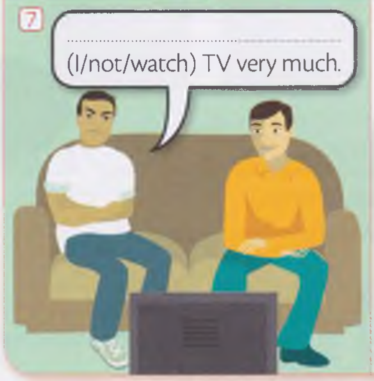
7 ………… (I/not/watch) TV very much.

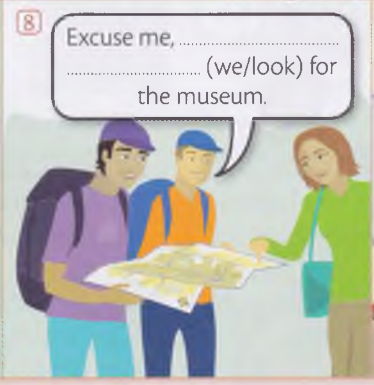
8 Excuse me, ………… ………… (we/look) for the museum.

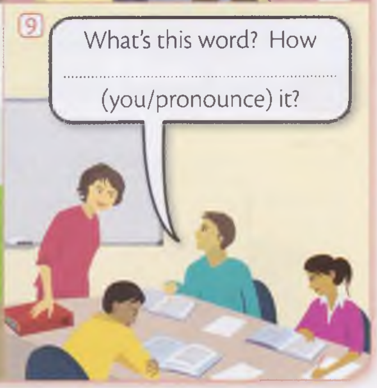
9 What's this word? How ………… (you/pronounce) it?

9 Which is right?

1 '~~Are you speaking~~ / Do you speak English?' 'Yes, a little.' (Do you speak *is right*)
2 Sometimes we're going / we go away at weekends.
3 It's a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.
4 *(You meet Kate in the street.)* Hello, Kate. Where are you going / do you go?
5 How often are you going / do you go on holiday?
6 Emily is a writer. She's writing / She writes books for children.
7 I'm never reading / I never read newspapers.
8 'Where are Mark and Laura?' 'They're watching / They watch TV in the living room.'
9 Helen is in her office. She's talking / She talks to somebody.
10 What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?
11 Joe isn't at home at the moment. He's visiting / He visits some friends.
12 'Would you like some tea?' 'No, thank you. I'm not drinking / I don't drink tea.'

was/were and past simple (I worked / did you work? etc.)

Units 10–12

10 Complete the sentences. Use one word only.

1 I got up early and ...had... a shower.
2 Tom was tired last night, so he .... to bed early.
3 I .... this key on the floor. Is it yours?
4 Kate got married when she .... 23.
5 Helen is learning to drive. She .... her first lesson yesterday.
6 'I've got a new job.' 'Yes, I know. David .... me.'
7 'Where did you buy that book?' 'It was a present. Amy .... it to me.'
8 We .... hungry, so we had something to eat.
9 'Did you enjoy the film?' 'Yes, I .... it was very good.'
10 'Did Andy come to your party?' 'No, we .... him, but he didn't come.'

11 Look at the questions and Joe's answers. Write sentences about Joe when he was a child.

When you were a child ...

	Joe	
Were you tall?	No.	1 He wasn't tall.
Did you like school?	Yes.	2 He liked school.
Were you good at sport?	Yes.	3 He ....
Did you play football?	Yes.	4 ....
Did you work hard at school?	No.	5 ....
Did you have a lot of friends?	Yes.	6 ....
Did you have a bike?	No.	7 ....
Were you a quiet child?	No.	8 ....

12 Complete the questions.

1 ...Did you have... a nice holiday?	Yes, it was great, thanks.
2 ...Where did you go... ?	To Amsterdam.
3 .... there?	Five days.
4 .... Amsterdam?	Yes, very much.
5 .... ?	I have friends in Amsterdam, so I stayed with them.
6 .... good?	Yes, it was warm and sunny.
7 .... back?	Yesterday.

13 Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative or question).

1 It was a good party. ...I enjoyed... it. (I / enjoy)
2 '...Did you do... the shopping?' (you / do) 'No, ...I didn't have... time.' (I / have)
3 'Did you phone Adam?' 'No, I'm afraid ....' (I / forget)
4 I like your new watch. Where .... it? (you / get)
5 I saw Lucy at the party, but .... to her. (I / speak)
6 A: .... a nice weekend? (you / have)
B: Yes, I went to stay with some friends of mine.
7 Paul wasn't well yesterday, so .... to work. (he / go)
8 'Is Mary here?' 'Yes, ... five minutes ago.' (she / arrive)
9 Where .... before he moved here? (Robert / live)
10 The restaurant wasn't expensive. .... very much. (the meal / cost)

past simple (I worked) and past continuous (I was working)

Units 11–14

14 Complete the sentences. Use the past simple or past continuous.

①
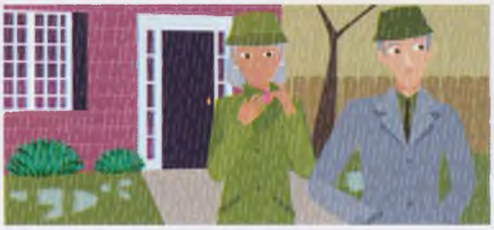

It *was raining* (rain) when we *went* (go) out.

②
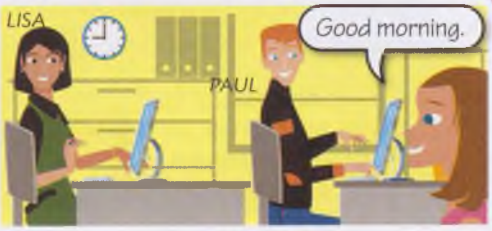

When I arrived at the office, Lisa and Paul .... (work) at their desks.

③
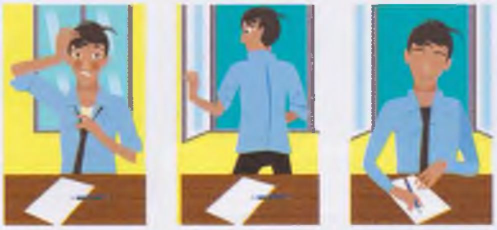

I .... (open) the window because it was hot.

④
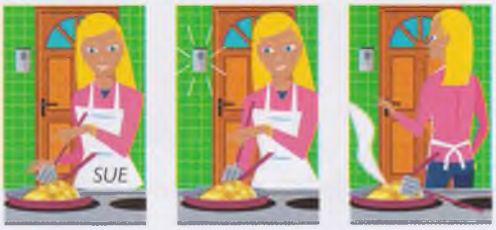

The doorbell .... (ring) when Sue .... (cook).

⑤
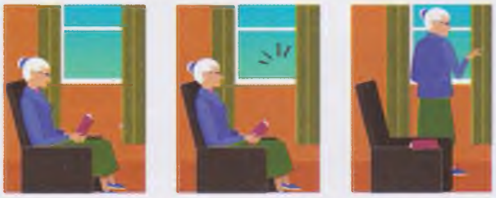

I .... (hear) a noise outside, so I .... (look) out of the window.

⑥
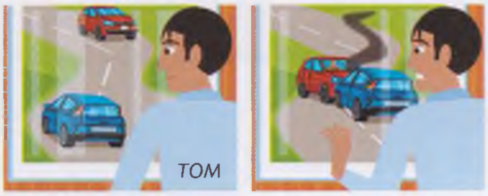

Tom .... (look) out of the window when the accident .... (happen).

⑦
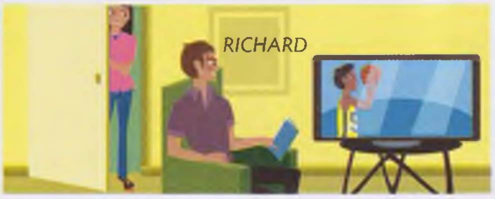

Richard had a book in his hand, but he .... (not/read) it. He .... (watch) TV.

⑧
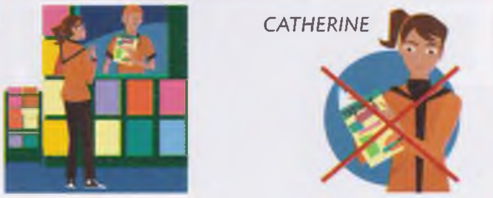

Catherine bought a magazine, but she .... (not/read) it. She didn't have time.

⑨
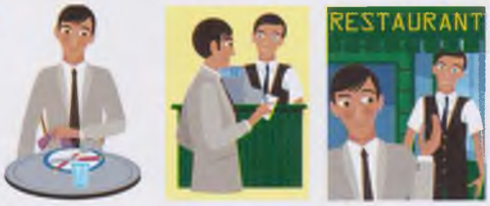

I .... (finish) my meal, ... (pay) the bill and .... (leave) the restaurant.

⑩
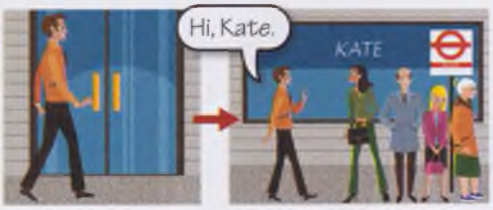

I .... (see) Kate this morning.
I .... (walk) along the street and she .... (wait) for the bus.

present and past

Units 3–14

15 Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms:

present simple (**I work/drive** etc.)
past simple (**I worked/drove** etc.)
present continuous (**I am working/driving** etc.)
past continuous (**I was working/driving** etc.)

1 You can turn off the television. I ……'m not watching…… (not/watch) it.
2 Last night Jenny ……fell…… (fall) asleep while she ……was reading…… (read).
3 Listen! Somebody …………………… (play) the piano.
4 'Have you got my key?' 'No, I …………………… (give) it back to you.'
5 David is very lazy. He …………………… (not/like) hard work.
6 Where …………………… (your parents / go) for their holidays last year?
7 I …………………… (see) Laura yesterday. She …………………… (drive) her new car.
8 A: …………………… (you/watch) TV much?
B: No, I haven't got a TV.
9 A: What …………………… (you/do) at 6 o'clock last Sunday morning?
B: I was in bed asleep.
10 Andy isn't at home very much. He …………………… (go) away a lot.
11 I …………………… (try) to find a job at the moment. It's not easy.
12 I'm tired this morning. I …………………… (not/sleep) very well last night.

present perfect (I have done / she has been etc.)

Units 15–19

16 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.

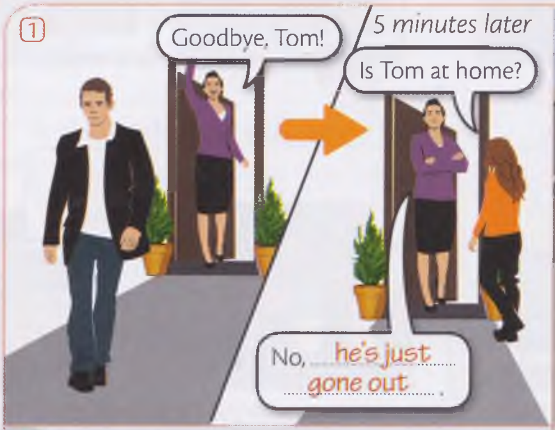
1
Goodbye, Tom!
5 minutes later
Is Tom at home?
No, ……he's just gone out…….

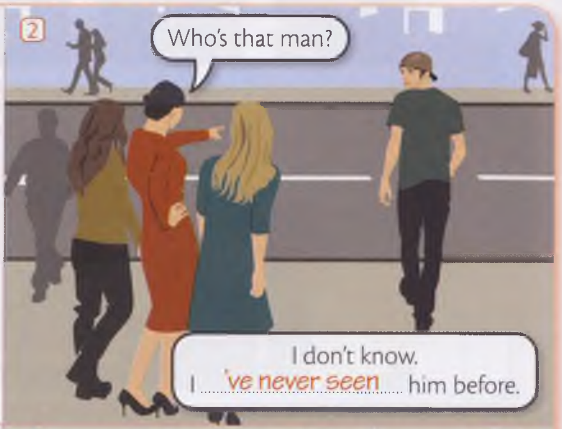
2
Who's that man?
I don't know. I ……'ve never seen…… him before.

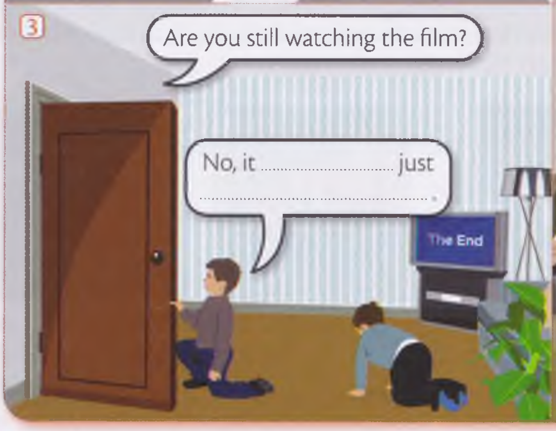
3
Are you still watching the film?
No, it …………… just …………….
The End

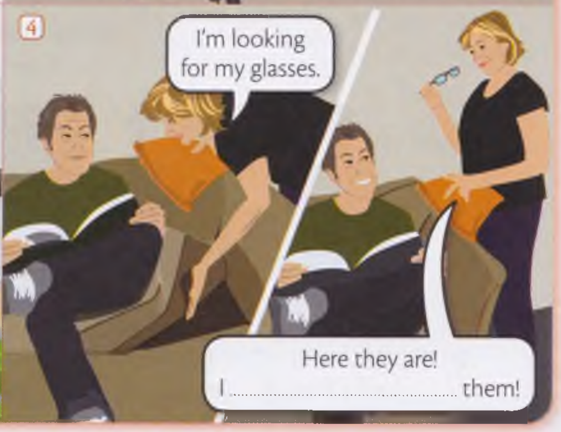
4
I'm looking for my glasses.
Here they are! I …………………… them!

5

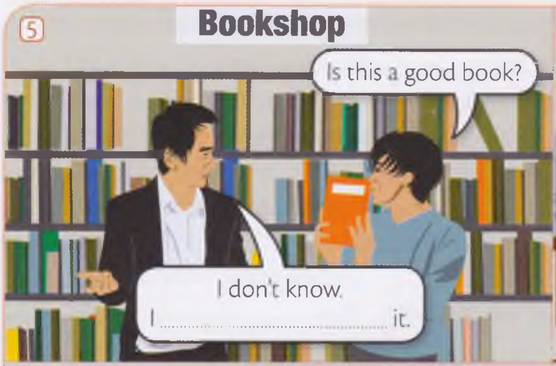
Bookshop
Is this a good book?
I don't know. I .... it.

6

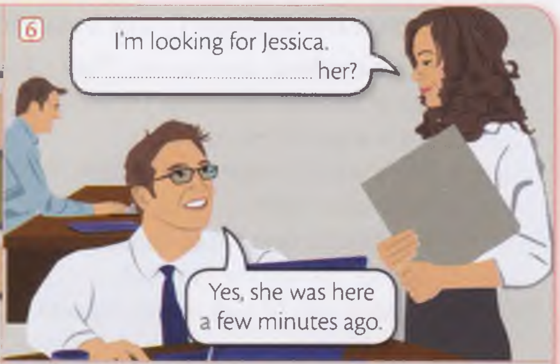
I'm looking for Jessica. .... her?
Yes, she was here a few minutes ago.

7

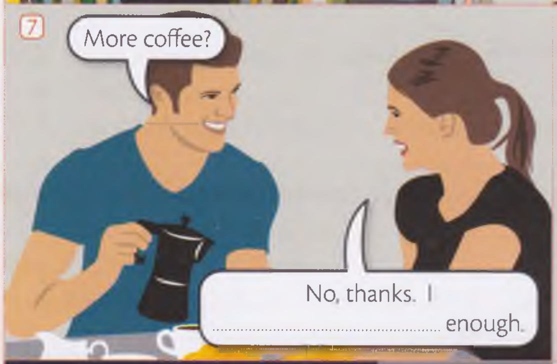
More coffee?
No, thanks. I .... enough.

8

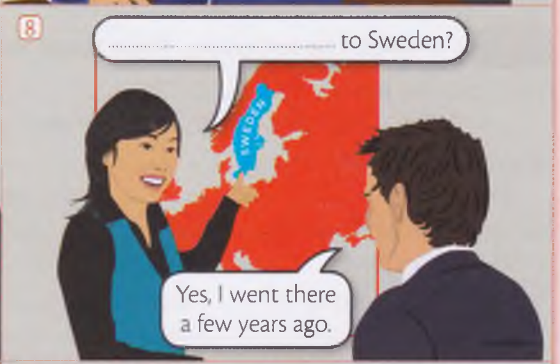
.... to Sweden?
SWEDEN
Yes, I went there a few years ago.

9

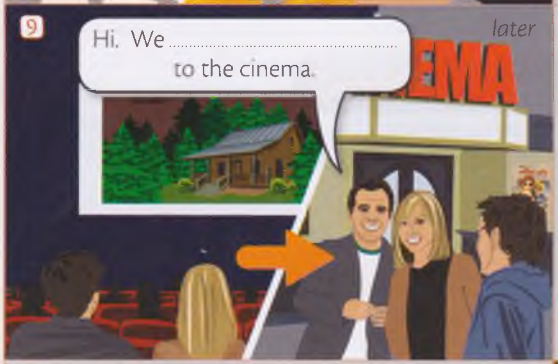
later
Hi. We .... to the cinema.
EMA

10

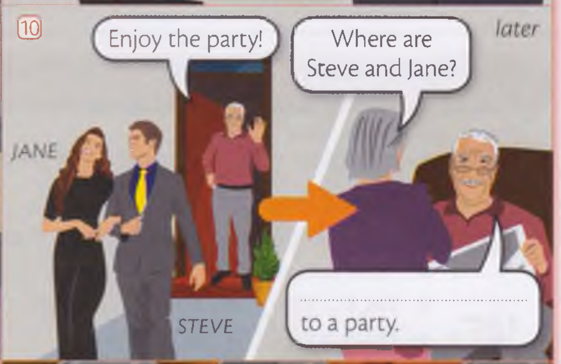
later
Enjoy the party!
Where are Steve and Jane?
JANE
STEVE
.... to a party.

11

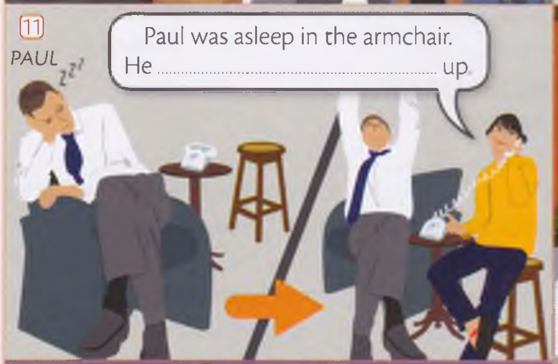
PAUL
zzz
Paul was asleep in the armchair. He .... up.

12

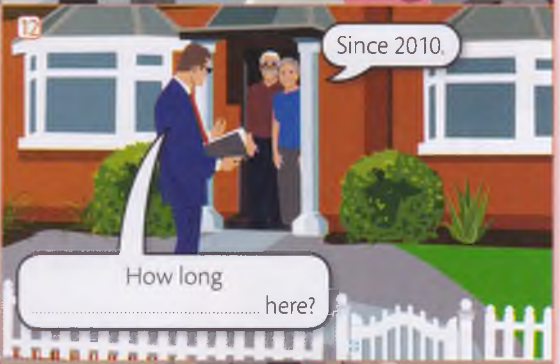
Since 2010.
How long .... here?

13

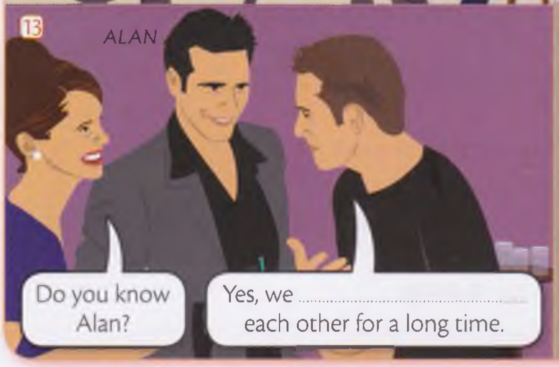
ALAN
Do you know Alan?
Yes, we .... each other for a long time.

14

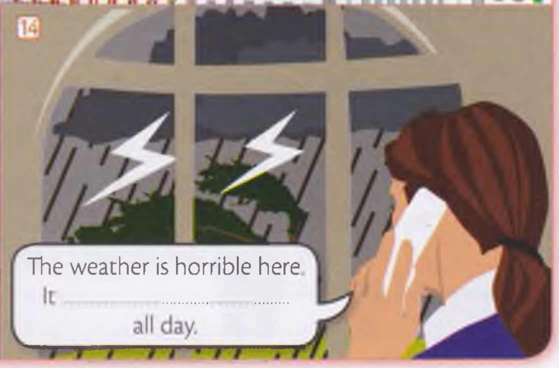
The weather is horrible here. It .... all day.

17 Complete the sentences (1, 2 or 3 words).

1 Mark and Sarah are married. They ....have been.... married for five years.
2 David has been watching TV ....since.... 5 o'clock.
3 Joe is at work. He .... at work since 8.30.
4 'Have you just arrived in London?' 'No, I've been here .... five days.'
5 I've known Helen .... we were at school together.
6 'My brother lives in Los Angeles.' 'Really? How long .... there?'
7 George has had the same job .... 20 years.
8 Some friends of ours are staying with us at the moment. They .... here since Monday.

18 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.

1 I've never ....ridden a horse.....
2 I've ....been to London.... many times.
3 I've just ....
4 I've .... (once / twice / a few times / many times)
5 I haven't .... yet.
6 I've never ....
7 I've .... since ....
8 I've .... for ....

---

present perfect (I have done etc.) and past simple (I did etc.)

Units 18–20

19 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences (positive or negative).

1 A: Do you like London?
B: I don't know. I ....haven't been.... there.
2 A: Have you seen Kate?
B: Yes, I ....saw.... her five minutes ago.
3 A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new?
B: Yes, I .... it last week.
4 A: Are you tired this morning?
B: Yes, I .... to bed late last night.
5 A: Do you want this newspaper, or can I have it?
B: You can have it. I .... it.
6 A: Are you enjoying your new job?
B: I .... yet. My first day is next Monday.
7 A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it?
B: No, but it .... nice yesterday.
8 A: Was Helen at the party on Saturday?
B: I don't think so. I .... her there.
9 A: Is your son still at school?
B: No, he .... school two years ago.
10 A: Is Silvia married?
B: Yes, she .... married for five years.
11 A: Have you heard of George Washington?
B: Of course. He .... the first President of the United States.
12 A: How long does it take to make a pizza?
B: I don't know. I .... a pizza.

20 Write sentences with the present perfect or past simple.

1 A: Have you been to Thailand?
B: Yes, I went there last year. (I / go / there / last year)
2 A: Do you like London?
B: I don't know. I've never been there. (I / never / there)
3 A: What time is Paul going out?
B: .... (he / already / go)
4 A: Has Catherine gone home?
B: Yes, ... (she / leave / at 4 o'clock)
5 A: New York is my favourite city.
B: Is it? ....? (how many times / you / there?)
6 A: What are you doing this weekend?
B: I don't know. .... (I / not / decide / yet)
7 A: I can't find my address book. Have you seen it?
B: .... (it / on the table / last night)
8 A: Do you know the Japanese restaurant in Leeson Street?
B: Yes, ... (I / eat / there a few times)
9 A: Paula and Sue are here.
B: Are they? ....? (what time / they / arrive?)

21 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences.

1 A: Have you been to France?
B: Yes, many times.
A: When .... the last time?
B: Two years ago.

2 A: Is this your car?
B: Yes, it is.
A: How long .... it?
B: It's new. I .... it yesterday.

Is this your car?

3 A: Where do you live?
B: In Harold Street.
A: How long .... there?
B: Five years. Before that ....
in Mill Road.
A: How long .... in Mill Road?
B: About three years.

Where do you live?

4 A: What do you do?
B: I work in a shop.
A: How long .... there?
B: Nearly two years.
A: What .... before that?
B: I .... a taxi driver.

What do you do?

22 Write sentences about yourself.

1 (yesterday morning) I was late for work yesterday morning.
2 (last night) ....
3 (yesterday afternoon) ....
4 (... days ago) ....
5 (last week) ....
6 (last year) ....

---

present, past and present perfect

Units 3–20

23 Which is right?

1 'Is Sue working? (C)' 'No, she's on holiday.'
A Does Sue work? **B** Is working Sue? **C** Is Sue working? **D** Does work Sue?

2 'Where ....?' 'In a village near London.'
A lives your uncle **B** does your uncle live **C** your uncle lives **D** does live your uncle

3 I speak Italian, but .... French.
A I speak not **B** I'm not speaking **C** I doesn't speak **D** I don't speak

4 'Where's Tom?' '.................... a shower at the moment.'
A He's having **B** He have **C** He has **D** He has had

5 Why .... angry with me yesterday?
A were you **B** was you **C** you were **D** have you been

6 My favourite film is *Cleo's Dream*. .... it four times.
A I'm seeing **B** I see **C** I was seeing **D** I've seen

7 I .... out last night. I was too tired.
A don't go **B** didn't went **C** didn't go **D** haven't gone

8 Tina is from Chicago. She .... there all her life.
A is living **B** has lived **C** lives **D** lived

9 My friend .... for me when I arrived.
A waited **B** has waited **C** was waiting **D** has been waiting

10 'How long .... English?' 'Six months.'
A do you learn **B** are you learning **C** you are learning **D** have you been learning

11 Paul is Canadian, but he lives in France. He has been there ....
A for three years **B** since three years **C** three years ago **D** during three years

12 'What time ....?' 'About an hour ago.'
A has Lisa phoned **B** Lisa has phoned **C** did Lisa phone **D** is Lisa phoning

13 What .... when you saw her?
A did Sue wear **B** was Sue wearing **C** has Sue worn **D** was wearing Sue

14 'Can you drive?' 'No, ... a car, but I want to learn.'
A I never drive **B** I'm never driving **C** I've never driven **D** I was never driving

15 I saw Helen at the station when I was going to work this morning, but she
.... me.
A didn't see **B** don't see **C** hasn't seen **D** didn't saw

passive

Units 21–22, Appendix 1

24 Complete the sentences.

1

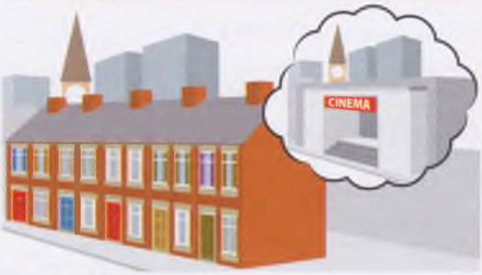

These houses ..were built.. (build) 20 years ago. Before that there was a cinema here, but the building .... (damage) in a fire and had to .... (knock down).

2

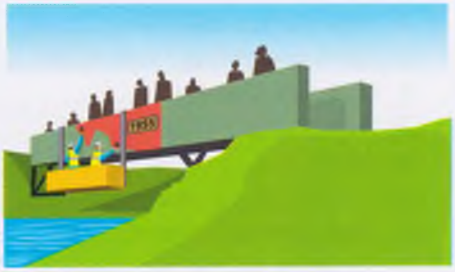

This bridge .... (build) in 1955. It .... (use) by hundreds of people every day. At the moment the bridge .... (paint).

3

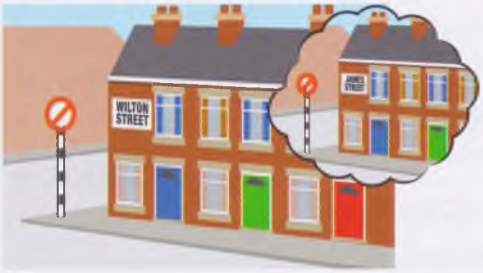

This street .... (call) Wilton Street. It used to .... (call) James Street, but the name .... (change) a few years ago.

4

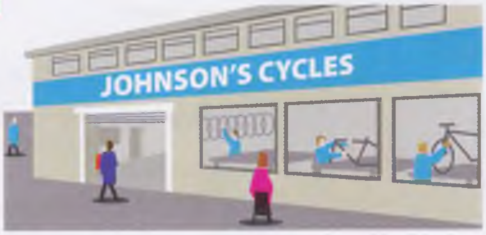

This is a bicycle factory. Bicycles .... (make) here since 1971. It's the largest bicycle factory in the country. Thousands of bicycles .... (produce) here every year.

25 Complete the sentences.

1 We ..were invited.. (invite) to the party, but we didn't go.
2 The museum is very popular. Every year it .... (visit) by thousands of people.
3 Many buildings .... (damage) in the storm last week.
4 A new road is going to .... (build) next year.
5 'Where's your jacket?' 'It .... (clean). It will be ready tomorrow.'
6 She's famous now, but in a few years her name will .... (forget).
7 'Shall I do the washing-up?' 'No, it .... (already/do).'
8 Milk should .... (keep) in a fridge.
9 .... (you/ever/bite) by a snake?
10 My bag .... (steal) from my car yesterday afternoon.

26 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

1 Somebody has stolen my keys. ..My keys have been stolen...
2 Somebody stole my car last week. My car ....
3 Somebody has eaten all the bananas. All the ....
4 Somebody will repair the machine. The ....
5 Somebody is watching us. We ....
6 Somebody has to do the housework. The ....

27 Active or passive? Complete the sentences.

1 They are building (build) a new airport at the moment.
2 These shirts are clean now. They have been washed (wash).
3 'How did you fall?' 'Somebody .... (push) me.'
4 'How did you fall?' 'I .... (push).'
5 I can't find my bag. Somebody .... (take) it!
6 My watch is broken. It .... (repair) at the moment.
7 Who .... (invent) the camera?
8 When .... (the camera/invent)?
9 These shirts are clean now. They .... (wash).
10 These shirts are clean now. I .... (wash) them.
11 The letter was for me, so why .... (they/send) it to you?
12 The information will .... (send) to you as soon as possible.

---

future

Units 25–28

28 Which is the best alternative?

1 We're having (B) a party next Sunday. I hope you can come.
A We have **B** We're having **C** We'll have

2 Do you know about Karen? .... her job. She told me last week.
A She leaves **B** She's going to leave **C** She'll leave

3 There's a programme on TV that I want to watch. .... in five minutes.
A It starts **B** It's starting **C** It will start

4 The weather is nice now, but I think .... later.
A it rains **B** it's raining **C** it will rain

5 'What .... next weekend?' 'Nothing. I've got no plans.'
A do you do **B** are you doing **C** will you do

6 'When you see Tina, can you ask her to phone me?' 'OK, ... her.'
A I ask **B** I'm going to ask **C** I'll ask

7 'What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?' '........................ tea, please.'
A I have **B** I'm going to have **C** I'll have

8 Don't take that magazine away. .... it.
A I read **B** I'm going to read **C** I'll read

9 Rachel is ill, so .... to the party tomorrow night.
A she doesn't come **B** she isn't coming **C** she won't come

10 I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time .... ?
A does her train arrive **B** is her train going to arrive **C** is her train arriving

11 'Will you be at home tomorrow evening?' 'No. ....'
A I go out **B** I'm going out **C** I'll go out

12 '........................ you tomorrow?' 'Yes, OK.'
A Do I phone **B** Am I going to phone **C** Shall I phone

past, present and future

Units 3–20, 25–28

29 Complete the sentences.

1 A: Did you go (you/go) out last night?
B: No, ... (I/stay) at home.
A: What .... (you/do)?
B: .... (I/watch) TV.
A: .... (you/go) out tomorrow night?
B: Yes, ... (I/go) to the cinema.
A: Which film .... (you/see)?
B: .... (I/not/know). .... (I/not/decide) yet.

Are you on holiday here?

2 A: Are you on holiday here?
B: Yes, we are.
A: How long .... (you/be) here?
B: .... (we/arrive) yesterday.
A: And how long .... (you/stay)?
B: Until the end of next week.
A: And .... (you/like) it here?
B: Yes, ... (we/have) a wonderful time.

3 A: .... (I/go) out with Chris and Steve this evening.
.... (you/want) to come with us?
B: Yes, where .... (you/go)?
A: To the Italian restaurant in North Street. .... (you/ever/eat) there?
B: Yes, ... (I/be) there two or three times. In fact I
.... (go) there last night, but I'd love to go again!

4 A: .... (I/lose) my glasses again.
.... (you/see) them?
B: .... (you/wear) them
when .... (I/come) in.
A: Well, ... (I/not/wear)
them now, so where are they?
B: .... (you/look) in the kitchen?
A: No, ... (I/go) and look now.

past, present and future

Units 3–22, 25–28, 52, 54, 98, 105

30 Rachel is talking about her best friend, Carolyn. Put the verbs in the correct form.

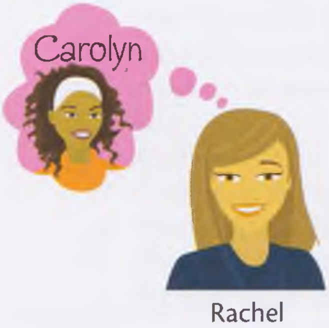

Carolyn is my best friend. I remember very well the first time (1) .... (we/meet). It was our first day at secondary school, and (2) .... (we/sit) next to each other for the first lesson. (3) .... (we/not/know) any other students in our class, and so (4) .... (we/become) friends. We found that (5) .... (we/like) the same things, especially music and sport, and so (6) .... (we/spend) a lot of time together.

(7) .... (we/leave) school five years ago, but (8) .... (we/meet) as often as we can. For the last six months Carolyn (9) .... (be) in Mexico – at the moment (10) .... (she/work) in a school as a teaching assistant. (11) .... (she/come) back to England next month, and when (12) .... (she/come) back, (13) .... (we/have) lots of things to talk about. (14) .... (it/be) really nice to see her again.

31 Nick and his friend Jon are travelling round the world. Read the emails between Nick and his parents, and put the verbs in the correct form.

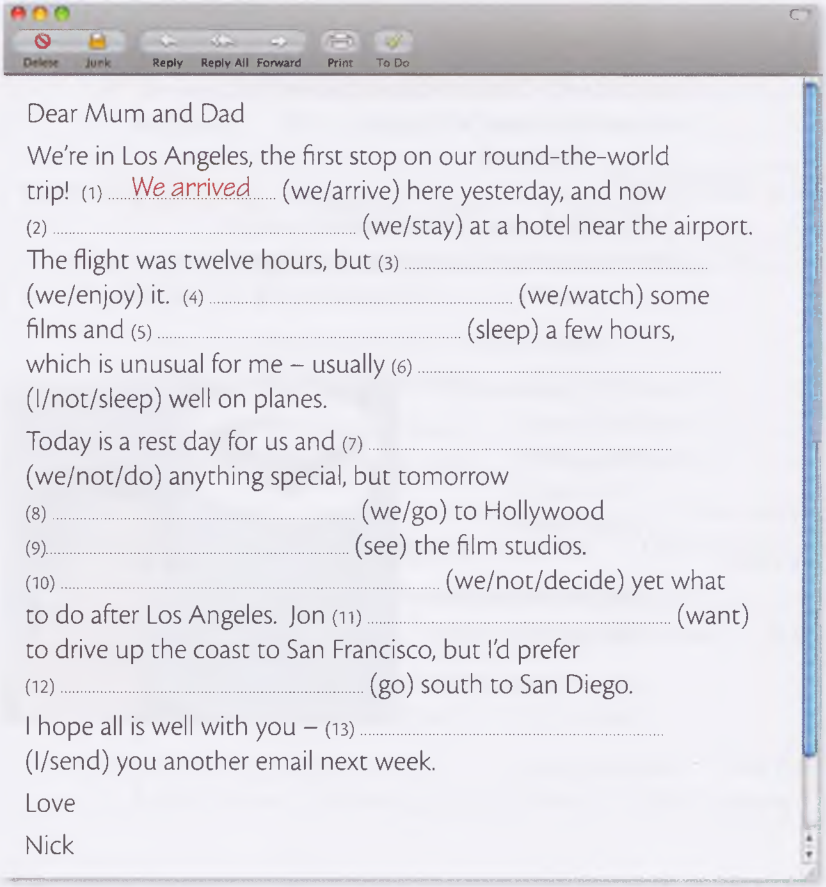

Dear Mum and Dad

We're in Los Angeles, the first stop on our round-the-world trip! (1) ....We arrived.... (we/arrive) here yesterday, and now (2) .... (we/stay) at a hotel near the airport. The flight was twelve hours, but (3) .... (we/enjoy) it. (4) .... (we/watch) some films and (5) .... (sleep) a few hours, which is unusual for me – usually (6) .... (I/not/sleep) well on planes.

Today is a rest day for us and (7) .... (we/not/do) anything special, but tomorrow (8) .... (we/go) to Hollywood (9) .... (see) the film studios. (10) .... (we/not/decide) yet what to do after Los Angeles. Jon (11) .... (want) to drive up the coast to San Francisco, but I'd prefer (12) .... (go) south to San Diego.

I hope all is well with you – (13) .... (I/send) you another email next week.

Love

Nick

Nick

SAN FRANCISCO
USA
LOS ANGELES
PACIFIC OCEAN
SAN DIEGO
MEXICO

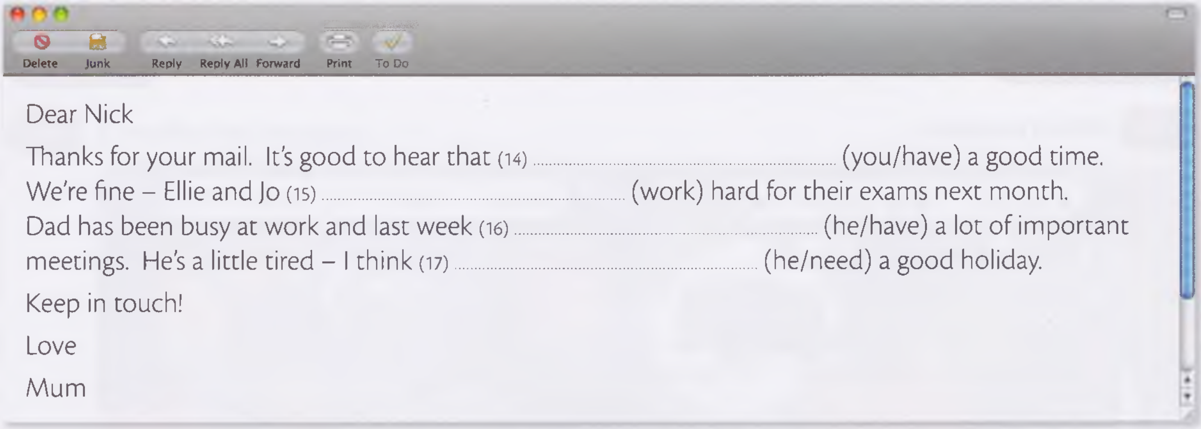
Delete
Junk
Reply
Reply All
Forward
Print
To Do

Dear Nick

Thanks for your mail. It's good to hear that (14) .... (you/have) a good time. We're fine – Ellie and Jo (15) .... (work) hard for their exams next month. Dad has been busy at work and last week (16) .... (he/have) a lot of important meetings. He's a little tired – I think (17) .... (he/need) a good holiday.

Keep in touch!

Love

Mum

A month later …

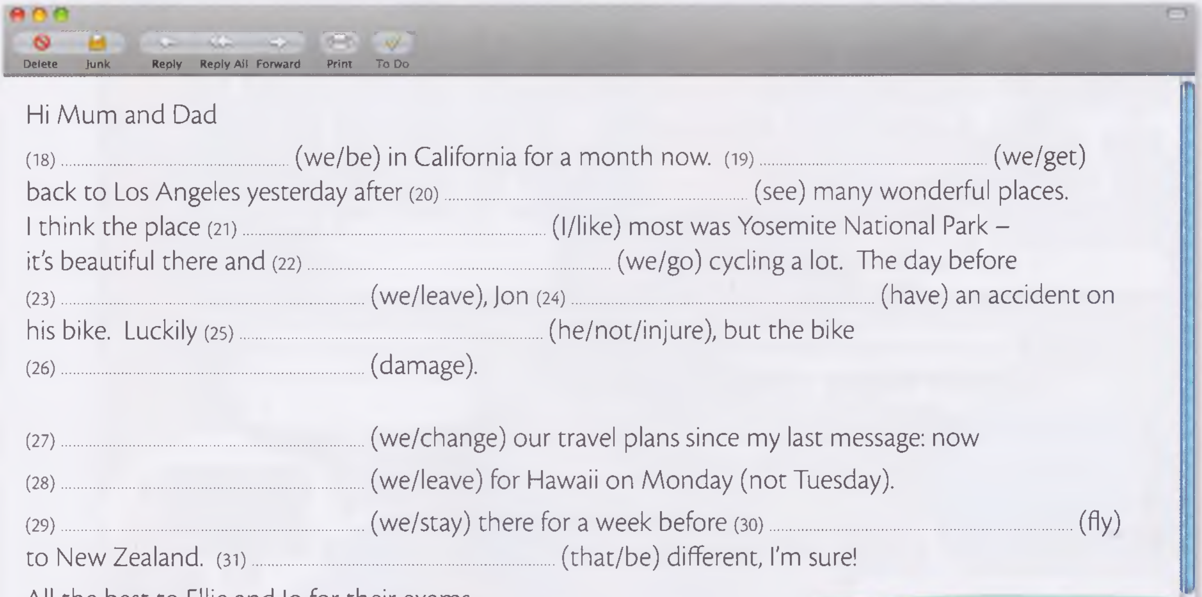
Delete
Junk
Reply
Reply All
Forward
Print
To Do

Hi Mum and Dad

(18) .... (we/be) in California for a month now. (19) .... (we/get) back to Los Angeles yesterday after (20) .... (see) many wonderful places. I think the place (21) .... (I/like) most was Yosemite National Park – it's beautiful there and (22) .... (we/go) cycling a lot. The day before (23) .... (we/leave), Jon (24) .... (have) an accident on his bike. Luckily (25) .... (he/not/injure), but the bike (26) .... (damage).

(27) .... (we/change) our travel plans since my last message: now

(28) .... (we/leave) for Hawaii on Monday (not Tuesday).

(29) .... (we/stay) there for a week before (30) .... (fly) to New Zealand. (31) .... (that/be) different, I'm sure!

All the best to Ellie and Jo for their exams.

Love

Nick

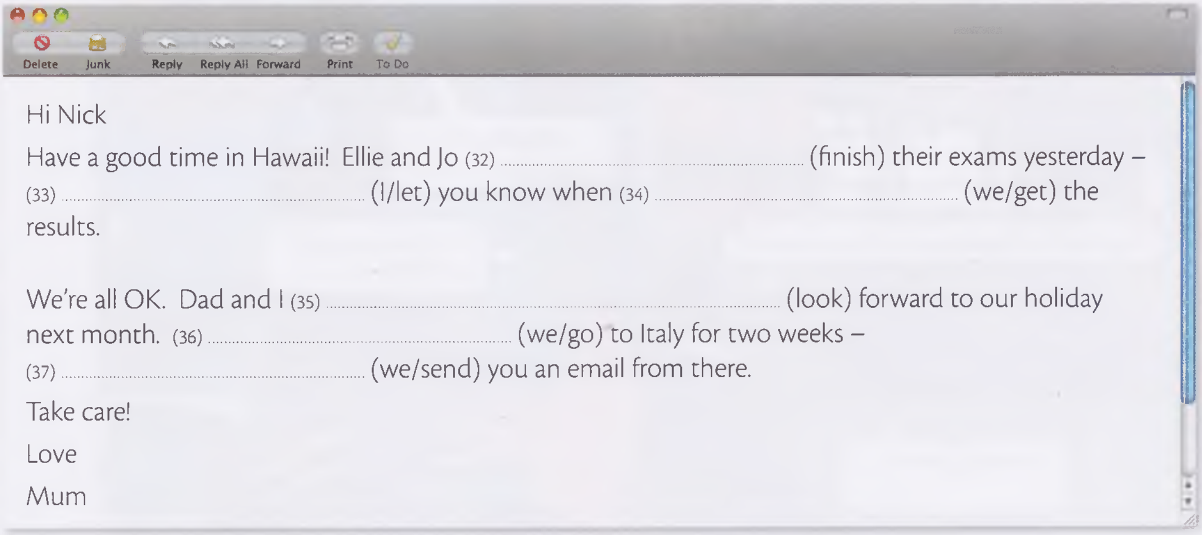
Delete
Junk
Reply
Reply All
Forward
Print
To Do

Hi Nick

Have a good time in Hawaii! Ellie and Jo (32) .... (finish) their exams yesterday – (33) .... (I/let) you know when (34) .... (we/get) the results.

We're all OK. Dad and I (35) .... (look) forward to our holiday next month. (36) .... (we/go) to Italy for two weeks – (37) .... (we/send) you an email from there.

Take care!

Love

Mum

-ing and to ...

Units 51–55, 105, 112

32 Which is correct?

1 Don't forget to switch (B) off the light before you go out.
A switch **B** to switch **C** switching

2 It's late. I must .... now.
A go **B** to go **C** going

3 I'm sorry, but I don't have time .... to you now.
A for talking **B** to talk **C** talking

4 Gary is always in the kitchen. He enjoys ....
A cook **B** to cook **C** cooking

5 We've decided .... away for a few days.
A go **B** to go **C** going

6 You're making too much noise. Can you please stop .... ?
A shout **B** to shout **C** shouting

7 Would you like .... and eat with us on Sunday?
A come **B** to come **C** coming

8 That bag is too heavy for you. Let me .... you.
A help **B** to help **C** helping

9 There's a swimming pool near my house. I go .... every day.
A to swim **B** to swimming **C** swimming

10 I need to go shopping .... some food.
A to buy **B** for buy **C** for buying

11 I'd love .... a car like yours.
A have **B** to have **C** having

12 Could you .... me with this bag, please?
A help **B** to help **C** helping

13 I don't mind .... here, but I'd prefer to sit by the window.
A sit **B** to sit **C** sitting

14 Do you want .... you?
A that I help **B** me to help **C** me helping

15 You should think carefully before .... an important decision.
A make **B** to make **C** making

16 I wasn't feeling very well, but the medicine made me .... better.
A feel **B** to feel **C** feeling

17 Shall I phone the restaurant .... a table?
A for reserve **B** for reserving **C** to reserve

18 Tom looked at me without .... anything.
A say **B** saying **C** to say

a and the

Units 65, 69–73

33 Complete the sentences.

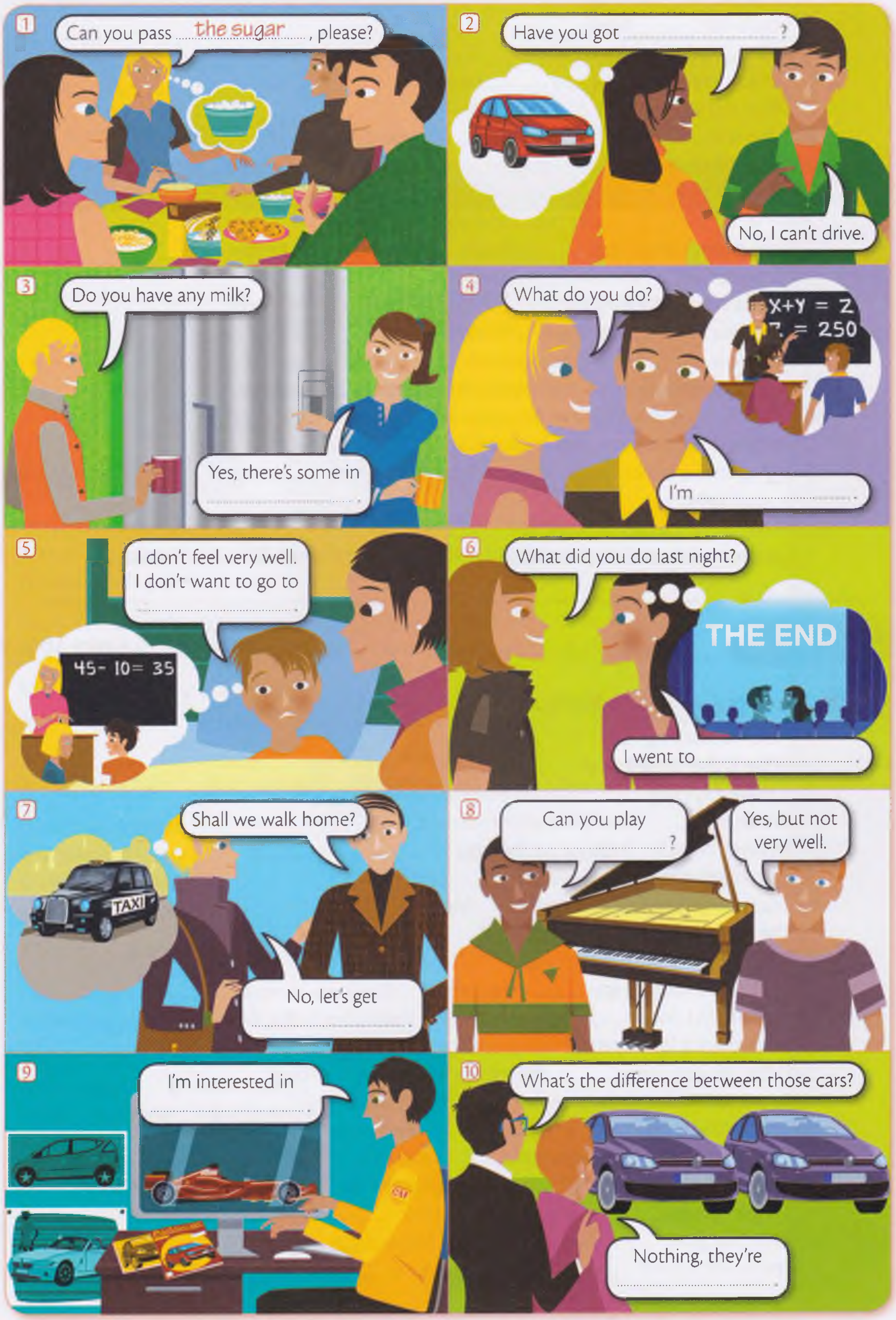
1
Can you pass the sugar, please?
2
Have you got …………………………?
No, I can't drive.
3
Do you have any milk?
Yes, there's some in …………………………
4
What do you do?
X+Y = Z
Z = 250
I'm …………………………
5
I don't feel very well. I don't want to go to …………………………
45- 10= 35
6
What did you do last night?
THE END
I went to …………………………
7
Shall we walk home?
TAXI
No, let's get …………………………
8
Can you play …………………………?
Yes, but not very well.
9
I'm interested in …………………………
10
What's the difference between those cars?
Nothing, they're …………………………

34 Write **a/an** or **the** if necessary. If **a/an/the** are not necessary, leave an empty space (–).

1 Who is ..the.. best player in your team?
2 I don't watch ..–.. TV very often.
3 'Is there ..a.. bank near here?' 'Yes, at ..the.. end of this street.'
4 I can't ride .... horse.
5 .... sky is very clear tonight.
6 Do you live here, or are you .... tourist?
7 What did you have for .... lunch?
8 Who was .... first President of .... United States?
9 I'm not feeling very good. I've got .... headache.
10 I'm sorry, but I've forgotten your name. I can never remember .... names.
11 What time is .... next train to London?
12 Kate doesn't often send .... emails. She prefers to call people.
13 'Where's Sue?' 'She's in .... garden.'
14 Excuse me, I'm looking for .... Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
15 Gary was ill .... last week, so he didn't go to .... work.
16 Everest is .... highest mountain in .... world.
17 I usually listen to .... radio while I'm having .... breakfast.
18 I like .... sport. My favourite sport is .... basketball.
19 Emily is .... doctor. Her husband is .... art teacher.
20 My apartment is on .... second floor. Turn left at .... top of .... stairs, and it's on .... right.
21 After .... dinner, we watched .... TV.
22 Last year we had .... wonderful holiday in .... south of .... France.

---

prepositions

Units 103–108, 111

35 Write a preposition (**in**/**for**/**by** etc.).

1 Helen is studying law ..at.. university.
2 What is the longest river .... Europe?
3 Is there anything .... TV this evening?
4 We arrived .... the hotel after midnight.
5 'Where's Mark?' 'He's .... holiday.'
6 Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still .... bed.
7 Lisa is away. She's been away .... Monday.
8 The next meeting is .... 15 April.
9 I usually go to work .... car.
10 There's too much sugar .... my coffee.
11 Joe lived in London .... six months. He didn't like it very much.
12 Were there a lot of people .... the party?
13 What are you doing .... the moment? Are you working?
14 I don't know any of the people .... this photo.
15 The train was very slow. It stopped .... every station.
16 I like this room. I like the pictures .... the walls.
17 'Did you buy that picture?' 'No, it was given to me .... a friend of mine.'
18 I'm going away .... a few days. I'll be back .... Thursday.
19 Silvia has gone .... Italy. She's .... Milan at the moment.
20 Emma left school .... sixteen and got a job .... a shop.

Study guide

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use this study guide.

You have to decide which alternative (A, B, C etc.) is right. SOMETIMES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS CORRECT.

If you don't know (or if you are not sure) which alternatives are correct, study the unit (or units) on the right. You will find the correct sentence in the unit.

The key to this study guide is on page 313.

	IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
	Present	
1.1	.... Can you close the window, please? **A** I cold **B** I'm cold **C** I have cold **D** It has cold	1
1.2	Lisa .... in politics. **A** isn't interested **B** not interested **C** doesn't interested **D** doesn't interest	1
1.3	'.................................. ?' 'No, she's out.' **A** Is at home your mother **B** Does your mother at home **C** Is your mother at home **D** Are your mother at home	2
1.4	These shoes are nice. .... **A** How much are they? **B** How many are they? **C** How much they are? **D** How much is they?	2
1.5	Look, there's Sarah. .... a brown coat. **A** She wearing **B** She has wearing **C** She is wearing **D** She's wearing	3, 23
1.6	You can turn off the television. .... it. **A** I'm not watch **B** I'm not watching **C** I not watching **D** I don't watching	3, 23
1.7	'.................................. today?' 'No, he's at home.' **A** Is working Ben **B** Is work Ben **C** Is Ben work **D** Is Ben working	4, 23
1.8	Look, there's Emily! .... **A** Where she is going? **B** Where she go? **C** Where's she going? **D** Where she going?	4, 23
1.9	The earth .... round the sun. **A** going **B** go **C** goes **D** does go **E** is go	5, 23
1.10	We .... away at weekends. **A** often go **B** go often **C** often going **D** are often go	5, 23, 94
1.11	We .... TV very often. **A** not watch **B** doesn't watch **C** don't watch **D** don't watching **E** watch not	6, 23
1.12	'.................................. play the guitar?' 'Yes, but I'm not very good.' **A** Do you play **B** Are you play **C** Does you play **D** Do you playing **E** Play you	7, 23
1.13	I don't understand this sentence. What .... ? **A** mean this word **B** means this word **C** does mean this word **D** does this word mean **E** this word means	7, 23

	IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
1.14	Please be quiet. .... **A** I working. **B** I work. **C** I'm working. **D** I'm work.	8, 23
1.15	Tom .... a shower every morning. **A** has **B** having **C** is having **D** have	8, 58
1.16	What .... at weekends? **A** do you usually **B** are you usually doing **C** are you usually do **D** do you usually do **E** you do usually	8, 23
1.17	Sarah isn't feeling well. .... a headache. **A** She have **B** She have got **C** She has **D** She's got	9, 58
1.18	They .... any children. **A** don't have **B** doesn't have **C** no have **D** haven't got **E** hasn't got	9, 58
Past		
2.1	The weather .... last week. **A** is good **B** was good **C** were good **D** good **E** had good	10
2.2	Why .... late this morning? **A** you was **B** did you **C** was you **D** you were **E** were you	10
2.3	Terry .... in a bank from 2005 to 2011. **A** work **B** working **C** works **D** worked **E** was work	11
2.4	Caroline .... to the cinema three times last week. **A** go **B** went **C** goes **D** got **E** was	11
2.5	I .... TV yesterday. **A** didn't watch **B** didn't watched **C** wasn't watched **D** don't watch **E** didn't watching	12, 23
2.6	'How .... ?' 'I don't know. I didn't see it.' **A** happened the accident **B** did happen the accident **C** does the accident happen **D** did the accident happen **E** the accident happened	12
2.7	What .... at 11.30 yesterday? **A** were you doing **B** was you doing **C** you were doing **D** were you do **E** you was doing	13
2.8	Jack was reading a book when his phone .... **A** ringing **B** ring **C** rang **D** was ringing **E** was ring	14
2.9	I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They .... at the bus stop. **A** waiting **B** waited **C** were waiting **D** was waiting **E** were waited	14
Present perfect		
3.1	'Where's Rebecca?' '........ to bed.' **A** She is gone **B** She has gone **C** She goes **D** She have gone **E** She's gone	15
3.2	'Are Laura and Paul here?' 'No, they ....' **A** don't arrive yet **B** have already arrived **C** haven't already arrived **D** haven't arrived yet	16

	IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
3.3	My sister .... by plane. **A** has never travel **B** has never travelled **C** is never travelled **D** has never been travelled **E** have never travelled	17, 23
3.4	.... that woman before, but I can't remember where. **A** I see **B** I seen **C** I've saw **D** I've seen **E** I've seeing	17, 23
3.5	'How long .... married?' 'Since 2007.' **A** you are **B** you have been **C** has you been **D** are you **E** have you been	18
3.6	'Do you know Lisa?' 'Yes, ... her for a long time.' **A** I knew **B** I've known **C** I know **D** I am knowing	18
3.7	Richard has been in Canada .... **A** for six months **B** since six months **C** six months ago **D** in six months	19, 104
3.8	'When did Tom go out?' '.......... ' **A** For ten minutes. **B** Since ten minutes. **C** Ten minutes ago. **D** In ten minutes.	19
3.9	We .... a holiday last year. **A** don't have **B** haven't had **C** hasn't had **D** didn't have **E** didn't had	20
3.10	Where .... on Sunday afternoon? I couldn't find you. **A** you were **B** you have been **C** was you **D** have you been **E** were you	20

Passive

4.1	This house .... 100 years ago. **A** is built **B** is building **C** was building **D** was built **E** built	21, 23
4.2	We .... to the party last week. **A** didn't invite **B** didn't invited **C** weren't invited **D** wasn't invited **E** haven't been invited	21, 23
4.3	'Where .... born?' 'In Cairo.' **A** you are **B** you were **C** was you **D** are you **E** were you	21
4.4	My car is at the garage. It .... **A** is being repaired **B** is repairing **C** have been repaired **D** repaired **E** repairs	22
4.5	I can't find my keys. I think .... **A** they've been stolen **B** they are stolen **C** they've stolen **D** they're being stolen	22

Verb forms

5.1	It ...., so we didn't need an umbrella. **A** wasn't rained **B** wasn't rain **C** didn't raining **D** wasn't raining	23
5.2	Somebody .... this window. **A** has broke **B** has broken **C** has breaked **D** has break	24

	IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
Future		
6.1	Andrew .... tennis tomorrow. **A** is playing **B** play **C** plays **D** is play	25
6.2	.... out tonight? **A** Are you going **B** Are you go **C** Do you go **D** Go you **E** Do you going	25
6.3	'What time is the concert tonight?' 'It .... at 7.30.' **A** is start **B** is starting **C** starts **D** start **E** starting	25
6.4	What .... to the wedding next week? **A** are you wearing **B** are you going to wear **C** do you wear **D** you are going to wear	26
6.5	I think Kelly .... the exam. **A** passes **B** will pass **C** will be pass **D** will passing	27
6.6	.... to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? **A** We go **B** We'll go **C** We're going **D** We will going	27
6.7	'.......... you tomorrow, OK?' 'OK, bye.' **A** I phone **B** I phoning **C** I'm phoning **D** I'll phone	28
6.8	.... tomorrow, so I can't meet you. **A** I work **B** I'll work **C** I'm working **D** I'll working	28
6.9	It's a nice day. .... for a walk? **A** Do we go **B** Shall we go **C** Are we go **D** We go **E** Go we	28
Modals, imperative etc.		
7.1	.... to the cinema this evening, but I'm not sure. **A** I'll go **B** I'm going **C** I may go **D** I might go	29
7.2	'.......... here?' 'Yes, of course.' **A** Can I sit **B** Do I sit **C** May I sit **D** Can I to sit	29, 30
7.3	I'm having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel .... **A** can't come **B** can't to come **C** can't coming **D** couldn't come	30
7.4	Before Maria came to Britain, she .... understand much English. **A** can **B** can't **C** not **D** couldn't **E** doesn't	30
7.5	We .... walk home last night. There were no buses. **A** have to **B** had to **C** must **D** must to **E** must have	31, 33
7.6	I .... go yet. I can stay a little longer. **A** must **B** mustn't **C** must not **D** don't need **E** don't need to	31
7.7	It's a good film. You .... go and see it. **A** should to **B** ought to **C** ought **D** should **E** need	32
7.8	What time .... go to the dentist tomorrow? **A** you must **B** you have to **C** have you to **D** do you have to	33
7.9	We .... wait long for the bus – it came in a few minutes. **A** don't have to **B** hadn't to **C** didn't have to **D** didn't had to **E** mustn't	33

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT **STUDY UNIT**

7.10 '………………………… some coffee?' 'No, thank you.' **34**
A Are you liking **B** You like **C** Would you like **D** Do you like

7.11 Please ………………………… . Stay here with me. **35**
A don't go **B** you no go **C** go not **D** you don't go

7.12 Dave ………………………… in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket. **36**
A working **B** works **C** worked **D** use to work **E** used to work

There and **it**

8.1 Excuse me, ………………………… a hotel near here? **37**
A has there **B** is there **C** there is **D** is it

8.2 ………………………… a lot of accidents on this road. It's very dangerous. **37**
A Have **B** It has **C** There have **D** They are **E** There are

8.3 I was hungry when I got home, but ………………………… anything to eat. **38**
A there wasn't **B** there weren't **C** it wasn't **D** there hasn't been

8.4 ………………………… three kilometres from our house to the city centre. **39**
A It's **B** It has **C** There is **D** There are

8.5 ………………………… true that you're going away? **39**
A Is there **B** Is it **C** Is **D** Are you

Auxiliary verbs

9.1 I haven't got a car, but my sister ………………………… . **40**
A have **B** is **C** has **D** hasn't **E** has got

9.2 I don't like hot weather, but Sue ………………………… . **40**
A does **B** doesn't **C** do **D** does like **E** likes

9.3 'Nicola got married last week.' '………………………… Really?' **41**
A Is she? **B** Got she? **C** Did she? **D** Has she?

9.4 You haven't met my mother, ………………………… ? **41**
A haven't you **B** have you **C** did you **D** you have **E** you haven't

9.5 Ben doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers ………………………… . **42**
A too **B** either **C** neither **D** never

9.6 'I'd like to go to Australia.' '…………………………' **42**
A So do I. **B** So am I. **C** So would I. **D** Neither do I. **E** So I would.

9.7 Sue ………………………… much at weekends. **43**
A don't **B** doesn't **C** don't do **D** doesn't do

Questions

10.1 'When ………………………… ?' 'I'm not sure. More than 100 years ago.' **44**
A did the telephone invent **B** has the telephone invented
C was invented the telephone **D** was the telephone invented
E the telephone was invented

10.2 'I broke my finger last week.' 'How ………………………… that?' **44**
A did you **B** you did **C** you did do **D** did you do

	IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
10.3	Why .... me last night? I was waiting for you to phone. **A** didn't you phone **B** you not phone **C** you don't phone **D** you didn't phone	44
10.4	'Who .... in this house?' 'I don't know.' **A** lives **B** does live **C** does lives **D** living	45
10.5	What .... when you told him the story? **A** said Paul **B** did Paul say **C** Paul said **D** did Paul said	45
10.6	'Tom's father is in hospital.' '..........................' **A** In which hospital he is? **B** In which hospital he is in? **C** Which hospital he is in? **D** Which hospital is he in?	46
10.7	Did you have a good holiday? .... **A** How was the weather like? **B** What was the weather like? **C** What the weather was like? **D** Was the weather like?	46
10.8	.... taller – Joe or Gary? **A** Who is **B** What is **C** Which is **D** Who has	47
10.9	There are four umbrellas here. .... is yours? **A** What **B** Who **C** Which **D** How **E** Which one	47, 75
10.10	How long .... to cross the Atlantic by ship? **A** is it **B** does it need **C** does it take **D** does it want	48
10.11	I don't remember what .... at the party. **A** Kate was wearing **B** was wearing Kate **C** was Kate wearing	49
10.12	'Do you know ....?' 'Yes, I think so.' **A** if Jack is at home **B** is Jack at home **C** whether Jack is at home **D** that Jack is at home	49

Reported speech

11.1	I saw Steve a week ago. He said that .... me, but he didn't. **A** he phone **B** he phones **C** he'll phone **D** he's going to phone **E** he would phone	50
11.2	'Why did Tim go to bed so early?' 'He ....' **A** said he was tired **B** said that he was tired **C** said me he was tired **D** told me he was tired **E** told that he was tired	50

-ing and to

12.1	You shouldn't .... so hard. **A** working **B** work **C** to work **D** worked	51
12.2	It's late. I .... now. **A** must to go **B** have go **C** have to going **D** have to go	51
12.3	Tina has decided .... her car. **A** sell **B** to sell **C** selling **D** to selling	52
12.4	I don't mind .... early. **A** get up **B** to get up **C** getting up **D** to getting up	52

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT **STUDY UNIT**

12.5 Do you like .... early? 52
A get up **B** to get up **C** getting up **D** to getting up

12.6 Do you want .... you some money? 53
A me lend **B** me lending **C** me to lend **D** that I lend

12.7 He's very funny. He makes 53
A me laugh **B** me laughing **C** me to laugh **D** that I laugh

12.8 Paula went to the shop .... a newspaper. 54
A for get **B** for to get **C** for getting **D** to get **E** get

Go, get, do, make and have

13.1 It's a nice day. Let's go 55
A for a swim **B** on a swim **C** to swimming **D** swimming

13.2 I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she .... better soon. 56
A has **B** makes **C** gets **D** goes

13.3 Kate .... the car and drove away. 56
A went into **B** went in **C** got in **D** got into

13.4 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll .... it.' 57
A do **B** make **C** get **D** open

13.5 I'm sorry, I .... a mistake. 57
A did **B** made **C** got **D** had

13.6 '.......... a good time in Tokyo?' 'Yes, it was great.' 58
A Have you **B** Had you **C** Do you have **D** Did you have

Pronouns and possessives

14.1 I don't want this book. You can have 59, 62
A it **B** them **C** her **D** him

14.2 Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with .... ? 59, 62
A her **B** they **C** them **D** him

14.3 I know Amy, but I don't know .... husband. 60, 62
A their **B** his **C** she **D** her

14.4 Oxford is famous for .... university. 60
A his **B** its **C** it's **D** their

14.5 I didn't have an umbrella, so Sarah gave me 61, 62
A her **B** hers **C** her umbrella **D** she's

14.6 I went out to meet a friend of 61, 62
A mine **B** my **C** me **D** I **E** myself

14.7 We had a good holiday. We enjoyed 63
A us **B** our **C** ours **D** ourself **E** ourselves

14.8 Kate and Helen are good friends. They know .... well. 63
A each other **B** them **C** themselves **D** theirselves

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT — STUDY UNIT

Determiners and pronouns

16.1 'I'm going on holiday next week.' 'Oh, ... nice.' 74
A it's **B** this is **C** that's

16.2 'Is there a bank near here?' 'Yes, there's .... at the end of this street.' 75
A some **B** it **C** one **D** a one

16.3 This cup is dirty. Can I have .... ? 75
A clean one **B** a clean one **C** clean **D** a clean

16.4 I'm going shopping. I'm going to buy .... clothes. 76
A any **B** some

16.5 'Where's your luggage?' 'I don't have ....' 76
A one **B** some **C** any

16.6 Tracey and Jack 77, 78
A have no children **B** don't have no children
C don't have any children **D** have any children

16.7 'How much money do you have?' '..........' 77
A No. **B** No-one. **C** Any. **D** None.

16.8 There is .... in the room. It's empty. 78, 79
A anybody **B** nobody **C** anyone **D** no-one

16.9 'What did you say?' '..........' 78, 79
A Nothing. **B** Nobody. **C** Anything. **D** Not anything.

16.10 I'm hungry. I want 79
A something for eat **B** something to eat **C** something for eating

16.11 Ben watches TV for about two hours 80
A all evening **B** all evenings **C** all the evenings **D** every evenings
E every evening

16.12 .... friends. 80
A Everybody need **B** Everybody needs **C** Everyone need **D** Everyone needs

16.13 .... children like playing. 81
A Most **B** The most **C** Most of **D** The most of

16.14 I like .... those pictures. 82
A both **B** both of **C** either **D** either of

16.15 I haven't read .... these books. 82
A neither **B** neither of **C** either **D** either of

16.16 Do you have .... friends? 83
A a lot of **B** much **C** many **D** much of **E** many of

16.17 We like films, so we go to the cinema 83
A a lot of **B** much **C** many **D** a lot

16.18 There were .... people in the theatre. It was nearly empty. 84
A a little **B** few **C** little **D** a few of

16.19 They have .... money, so they're not poor. 84
A a little **B** a few **C** few **D** little **E** little of

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY UNIT

Adjectives and adverbs

17.1 I don't speak any 85
A foreign languages **B** languages foreign **C** languages foreigns

17.2 He ate his dinner very 86
A quick **B** quicker **C** quickly

17.3 You speak English very 86
A good **B** fluent **C** well **D** slow

17.4 Helen wants 87
A a more big car **B** a car more big **C** a car bigger **D** a bigger car

17.5 'Do you feel better today?' 'No, I feel ....' 87
A good **B** worse **C** more bad **D** more worse

17.6 Athens is older .... Rome. 88
A as **B** than **C** that **D** of

17.7 I can run faster 88
A than him **B** that he can **C** than he can **D** as he can **E** as he

17.8 Tennis isn't .... football. 89
A popular as **B** popular than **C** as popular than **D** so popular that
E as popular as

17.9 The weather today is the same .... yesterday. 89
A as **B** that **C** than **D** like

17.10 The Europa Hotel is .... in the city. 90
A the more expensive hotel **B** the most expensive hotel
C the hotel most expensive **D** the hotel the more expensive
E the hotel more expensive

17.11 The film was very bad. I think it's the .... film I've ever seen. 90
A worse **B** baddest **C** most bad **D** worst **E** more worse

17.12 Why don't you buy a car? You've got 91
A enough money **B** money enough **C** enough of money

17.13 Is your English .... a conversation? 91
A enough good to have **B** good enough for have **C** enough good for
D good enough to have

17.14 I'm .... out. 92
A too tired for go **B** too much tired for going **C** too tired to go
D too much tired to go

Word order

18.1 Sue .... They're very nice. 93
A bought yesterday some new shoes **B** bought some new shoes yesterday
C yesterday bought some new shoes

18.2 .... coffee in the morning. 94
A I drink always **B** Always I drink **C** I always drink

	IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
18.3	.... during the day. **A** They are at home never **B** They are never at home **C** They never are at home **D** Never they are at home	**94**
18.4	'Where's Emma?' 'She ....' **A** isn't here yet **B** isn't here already **C** isn't here still	**95**
18.5	I locked the door and I gave .... **A** Sarah the keys **B** to Sarah the keys **C** the keys Sarah **D** the keys to Sarah	**96**

Conjunctions and clauses

19.1	I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later when .... more time. **A** I'll have **B** I had **C** I have **D** I'm going to have	**98**
19.2	.... late this evening, don't wait for me. **A** If I'm **B** If I'll be **C** When I'm **D** When I'll be	**99**
19.3	I don't know the answer. If I .... the answer, I'd tell you. **A** know **B** would know **C** have known **D** knew	**100**
19.4	I like this jacket. .... it if it wasn't so expensive. **A** I buy **B** I'll buy **C** I bought **D** I'd bought **E** I'd buy	**100**
19.5	Emma lives in a house .... is 400 years old. **A** who **B** that **C** which **D** it **E** what	**101**
19.6	The people .... work in the office are very friendly. **A** who **B** that **C** they **D** which **E** what	**101**
19.7	Did you find the books .... ? **A** who you wanted **B** that you wanted **C** what you wanted **D** you wanted **E** you wanted it	**102**
19.8	I met .... can speak six languages. **A** a woman who **B** a woman which **C** a woman **D** a woman she	**102**

Prepositions

20.1	Bye! I'll see you .... **A** until Friday **B** at Friday **C** in Friday **D** on Friday	**103**
20.2	Hurry! The train leaves .... five minutes. **A** at **B** on **C** from **D** after **E** in	**103**
20.3	'How long will you be away?' '.......................... Monday.' **A** On **B** To **C** Until **D** Till **E** Since	**104**
20.4	We played tennis yesterday. We played .... two hours. **A** in **B** for **C** since **D** during	**105**
20.5	I always have breakfast before .... to work. **A** I go **B** go **C** to go **D** going	**105**
20.6	Write your name .... the top of the page. **A** at **B** on **C** in **D** to	**106**

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY UNIT

20.7 There are a lot of apples …………………………… those trees. 106
A at **B** on **C** in **D** to

20.8 What's the largest city …………………………… the world? 107
A at **B** on **C** in **D** of

20.9 The office is …………………………… the first floor. 107
A at **B** on **C** in **D** to

20.10 I met a lot of people …………………………… the party. 108
A on **B** to **C** in **D** at

20.11 I want to go …………………………… Italy next year. 108
A at **B** on **C** in **D** to

20.12 What time did you arrive …………………………… the hotel? 108
A at **B** on **C** in **D** to

20.13 'Where is David in this picture?' 'He's …………………………… Laura.' 109
A at front of **B** in the front of **C** in front of **D** in front from

20.14 I jumped …………………………… the wall into the garden. 110
A on **B** through **C** across **D** over **E** above

20.15 Jane isn't at work this week. She's …………………………… holiday. 111
A on **B** in **C** for **D** to **E** at

20.16 Do you like travelling …………………………… ? 111
A with train **B** with the train **C** in train **D** on train **E** by train

20.17 I'm not very good …………………………… telling stories. 112
A on **B** with **C** at **D** in **E** for

20.18 Tom left without …………………………… goodbye. 112
A say **B** saying **C** to say **D** that he said

20.19 I have to phone …………………………… today. 113
A with my parents **B** to my parents **C** at my parents **D** my parents

20.20 'Do you like eating in restaurants?' 'It depends …………………………… the restaurant.' 113
A in **B** at **C** of **D** on **E** over

Phrasal verbs

21.1 The car stopped and a woman got …………………………… . 114
A off **B** down **C** out **D** out of

21.2 It was cold, so I …………………………… . 115
A put on my coat **B** put my coat on **C** put the coat on me
D put me the coat on

21.3 I've got Rachel's keys. I have to …………………………… to her. 115
A give back **B** give them back **C** give back them **D** give it back

Key to Exercises

UNIT 1

1.1
2 they're
3 it isn't / it's not
4 that's
5 I'm not
6 you aren't / you're not

1.2
2 'm/am
3 is
4 are
5 's/is
6 are
7 is … are
8 'm/am … is

1.3
2 I'm / I am
3 He's / He is
4 they're / they are
5 It's / It is
6 You're / You are
7 She's / She is
8 Here's / Here is

1.4
Example answers:
1 My name is Robert.
2 I'm 25.
3 I'm from Australia.
4 I'm a gardener.
5 My favourite colours are black and white.
6 I'm interested in plants.

1.5
2 They're / They are cold.
3 He's / He is hot.
4 He's / He is scared.
5 They're / They are hungry.
6 She's / She is angry.

1.6
2 It's/It is windy today. *or* It isn't/It's not windy today.
3 My hands are cold. *or* My hands aren't/are not cold.
4 Brazil is a very big country.
5 Diamonds aren't/are not cheap.
6 Toronto isn't/is not in the US.
8 I'm/I am hungry. *or* I'm not/I am not hungry.
9 I'm/I am a good swimmer. *or* I'm not/I am not a good swimmer.
10 I'm/I am interested in football. *or* I'm not/I am not interested in football.

UNIT 2

2.1
2 F
3 H
4 C
5 A
6 E
7 B
8 I
9 D

2.2
3 Is your job interesting?
4 Are the shops open today?
5 Where are you from?
6 Are you interested in sport?
7 Is the station near here?
8 Are your children at school?
9 Why are you late?

2.3
2 Where's / Where is
3 How old are
4 How much are
5 What's / What is
6 Who's / Who is
7 What colour are

2.4
2 Are you American?
3 How old are you?
4 Are you a teacher?
5 Are you married?
6 Is your wife a lawyer?
7 Where's/Where is she from?
8 What's/What is her name?
9 How old is she?

2.5
2 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
3 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
4 Yes, they are. *or* No, they aren't. / No, they're not.
5 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
6 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.

UNIT 3

3.1
2 's/is waiting
3 're/are playing
4 He's/He is lying
5 They're/They are having
6 She's/She is sitting

3.2
2 's/is cooking
3 're/are standing
4 's/is swimming
5 're/are staying
6 's/is having
7 're/are building
8 'm/am going

3.3
3 She's/She is sitting on the floor.
4 She isn't/She's not reading a book.
5 She isn't/She's not playing the piano.
6 She's/She is laughing.
7 She's/She is wearing a hat.
8 She isn't/She's not drinking coffee.

3.4
3 I'm sitting on a chair. *or* I'm not sitting on a chair.
4 I'm eating. *or* I'm not eating.
5 It's raining. *or* It isn't raining. / It's not raining.
6 I'm learning English.
7 I'm listening to music. *or* I'm not listening to music.
8 The sun is shining. *or* The sun isn't shining.
9 I'm wearing shoes. *or* I'm not wearing shoes.
10 I'm not reading a newspaper.

UNIT 4

4.1
2 Are you going now?
3 Is it raining?
4 Are you enjoying the film?
5 Is that clock working?
6 Are you waiting for a bus?

4.2
2 Where is she going?
3 What are you eating?
4 Why are you crying?
5 What are they looking at?
6 Why is he laughing?

4.3
3 Are you listening to me?
4 Where are your friends going?
5 Are your parents watching TV?
6 What is Jessica cooking?
7 Why are you looking at me?
8 Is the bus coming?

4.4

2 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
3 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
4 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
5 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
6 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.

UNIT 5

5.1

2 thinks
3 flies
4 dances
5 has
6 finishes

5.2

2 live
3 She eats
4 He plays
5 They go
6 He sleeps

5.3

2 open
3 closes
4 teaches
5 meet
6 washes
7 costs
8 cost
9 boils
10 like … likes

5.4

2 I never go to the cinema.
3 Martina always works hard.
4 Children usually like chocolate.
5 Jackie always enjoys parties.
6 I often forget people's names.
7 Sam never watches TV.
8 We usually have dinner at 7.30.
9 Kate always wears nice clothes.

5.5

Example answers:

2 I sometimes read in bed.
3 I often get up before 7 o'clock.
4 I never go to work by bus.
5 I usually drink two cups of coffee in the morning.

UNIT 6

6.1

2 Anna doesn't play the piano very well.
3 They don't know my phone number.
4 We don't work very hard.
5 He doesn't have a bath every day.
6 You don't do the same thing every day.

6.2

2 Kate doesn't like classical music.
I like (*or* I don't like) classical music.
3 Ben and Sophie don't like boxing.
Kate likes boxing.
I like (*or* I don't like) boxing.
4 Ben and Sophie like horror movies.
Kate doesn't like horror movies.
I like (*or* I don't like) horror movies.

6.3

Example answers:

2 I never go to the theatre.
3 I don't ride a bike very often.
4 I never eat in restaurants.
5 I often travel by train.

6.4

2 doesn't use
3 don't go
4 doesn't wear
5 don't know
6 doesn't cost
7 don't see

6.5

3 don't know
4 doesn't talk
5 drinks
6 don't believe
7 like
8 doesn't eat

UNIT 7

7.1

2 Do you play tennis?
3 Does Lucy live near here?
4 Do Tom's friends play tennis? / Do his friends play tennis? / Do they play tennis?
5 Does your brother speak English? / Does he speak English?
6 Do you do yoga every morning?
7 Does Paul go away a lot? / Does he go away a lot? *or* Does Paul go away much? / Does he go away much?
8 Do you want to be famous?
9 Does Anna work hard? / Does she work hard?

7.2

3 How often do you watch TV?
4 What do you want for dinner?
5 Do you like football?
6 Does your brother like football?
7 What do you do in your free time?
8 Where does your sister work?
9 Do you always have breakfast?
10 What does this word mean?
11 Does it snow here in winter?
12 What time do you usually go to bed?
13 How much does it cost to phone New York?
14 What do you usually have for breakfast?

7.3

2 Do you enjoy / Do you like
3 do you start
4 Do you work
5 do you go
6 does he do
7 does he teach
8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

7.4

2 Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
3 Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
4 Yes, it does. *or* No, it doesn't.
5 Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.

UNIT 8

8.1

2 No, she isn't.
Yes, she does.
She's playing the piano.
3 Yes, he does.
Yes, he is.
He's cleaning a window.
4 No, they aren't.
Yes, they do.
They teach.

8.2

2 don't
3 are
4 does
5 's/is … don't
6 do
7 does
8 doesn't

8.3

4 is singing
5 She wants
6 do you use
7 you're sitting
8 I don't understand
9 I'm going ... Are you coming
10 does your father finish
11 I'm not listening
12 He's/He is cooking
13 doesn't usually drive ... usually walks
14 doesn't like ... She prefers

UNIT 9

9.1

3 He's got a new job.
4 Have you got an umbrella?
5 We've got a lot of work to do.
6 I haven't got your phone number.
7 Has your father got a car?
8 How much money have we got?

9.2

2 I don't have many clothes.
3 Does Tom have a brother?
4 How many children do they have?
5 Do you have any questions?
6 Sam doesn't have a job.

9.3

2 He's got a bike. *or* He has a bike.
3 He hasn't got a dog. *or* He doesn't have a dog.
4 He's got a mobile phone. *or* He has a mobile phone.
5 He hasn't got a watch. *or* He doesn't have a watch.
6 He's got two brothers and a sister. *or* He has two brothers and a sister.
7 I've got a dog. / I have a dog. *or* I haven't got a dog. / I don't have a dog.
8 I've got a bike. / I have a bike. *or* I haven't got a bike. / I don't have a bike.
9 *(Example answer)* I've got a brother and a sister. *or* I have a brother and a sister.

9.4

3 has
4 don't have
5 have
6 don't have
7 doesn't have

9.5

2 's got / has got a lot of friends
3 hasn't got a key
4 haven't got much time
5 has got six legs
6 haven't got a job

UNIT 10

10.1

2 Jack and Kate were at/in the cinema.
3 Sue was at the station.
4 Mr and Mrs Hall were in/at a restaurant.
5 Ben was on the beach / on a beach / at the beach / at the seaside.
6 *(Example answer)* I was at work.

10.2

2 is ... was
3 'm/am
4 was
5 were
6 're/are
7 Was
8 was
9 are ... were

10.3

2 wasn't ... was
3 was ... were
4 '**Were** Kate and Ben at the party?' 'Kate **was** there, but Ben **wasn't**.' *or* 'Kate **wasn't** there, but Ben **was**.'
5 were
6 weren't ... were

10.4

2 Was your exam difficult?
3 Where were Sue and Chris last week?
4 How much was your new camera?
5 Why were you angry yesterday?
6 Was the weather nice last week?

UNIT 11

11.1

2 opened
3 started ... finished
4 wanted
5 happened
6 rained
7 enjoyed ... stayed
8 died

11.2

2 saw
3 played
4 paid
5 visited
6 bought
7 went
8 thought
9 copied
10 knew
11 put
12 spoke

11.3

2 got
3 had
4 left
5 drove
6 got
7 parked
8 walked
9 checked
10 had
11 waited
12 departed
13 arrived
14 took

11.4

2 lost her keys
3 met her friends
4 bought a newspaper
5 went to the cinema
6 ate an orange
7 had a shower
8 came (to see us)

11.5

2–6 *Example answers*
I got up late yesterday.
I met some friends at lunchtime.
I went to the supermarket.
I phoned a lot of people.
I lost my keys.

UNIT 12

12.1

2 didn't work
3 didn't go
4 didn't have
5 didn't do

12.2

2 Did you enjoy the party?
3 Did you have a good holiday?
4 Did you finish work early?
5 Did you sleep well last night?

12.3

2 I got up before 7 o'clock. *or* I didn't get up before 7 o'clock.
3 I had a shower. *or* I didn't have a shower.
4 I bought a magazine. *or* I didn't buy a magazine.
5 I ate meat. *or* I didn't eat meat.
6 I went to bed before 10.30. *or* I didn't go to bed before 10.30.

12.4

2 did you arrive
3 Did you win
4 did you go
5 did it cost
6 Did you go to bed late
7 Did you have a nice time
8 did it happen / did that happen

12.5

2 bought
3 Did it rain
4 didn't stay
5 opened
6 didn't have
7 did you do
8 didn't know

UNIT 13

13.1

2 Jack and Kate were at the cinema. They were watching a film.
3 Tom was in his car. He was driving.
4 Tracey was at the station. She was waiting for a train.
5 Mr and Mrs Hall were in the park. They were walking.
6 *(Example answer)* I was in a cafe. I was having a drink with some friends.

13.2

2 she was playing tennis
3 she was reading a/the paper/newspaper
4 she was cooking (lunch)
5 she was having breakfast
6 she was cleaning the kitchen

13.3

2 What were you doing
3 Was it raining
4 Why was Sue driving
5 Was Tom wearing

13.4

2 He was carrying a bag.
3 He wasn't going to the dentist.
4 He was eating an ice cream.
5 He wasn't carrying an umbrella.
6 He wasn't going home.
7 He was wearing a hat.
8 He wasn't riding a bicycle.

UNIT 14

14.1

1 happened … was painting … fell
2 arrived … got … were waiting
3 was walking … met … was going … was carrying … stopped

14.2

2 was studying
3 Did Paul call … called … was having
4 didn't go
5 were you driving … stopped … wasn't driving
6 Did your team win … didn't play
7 did you break … were playing … kicked … hit
8 Did you see … was wearing
9 were you doing
10 lost … did you get … climbed

UNIT 15

15.1

2 She has/She's closed the door.
3 They have/They've gone to bed.
4 It has/It's stopped raining.
5 He has/He's had a shower.
6 The picture has fallen down.

15.2

2 've bought / have bought
3 's gone / has gone
4 Have you seen
5 has broken
6 've told / have told
7 has taken
8 haven't seen
9 has she gone
10 've forgotten / have forgotten
11 's invited / has invited
12 Have you decided
13 haven't told
14 've finished / have finished

UNIT 16

16.1

2 He's/He has just got up.
3 They've/They have just bought a car.
4 The race has just started.

16.2

2 they've/they have already seen it.
3 I've/I have already phoned him.
4 He's/He has already gone (away).
5 I've/I have already read it.
6 She's/She has already started (it).

16.3

2 The bus has just gone.
3 The train hasn't left yet.
4 He hasn't opened it yet.
5 They've/They have just finished their dinner.
6 It's / It has just stopped raining.

16.4

2 Have you met your new neighbours yet?
3 Have you paid your electricity bill yet?
4 Has Tom/he sold his car yet?

UNIT 17

17.1

3 Have you ever been to Australia?
4 Have you ever lost your passport?
5 Have you ever flown in a helicopter?
6 Have you ever won a race?
7 Have you ever been to New York?
8 Have you ever driven a bus?
9 Have you ever broken your leg?

17.2

Helen:
2 She's/She has been to Australia once.
3 She's/She has never won a race.
4 She's/She has flown in a helicopter a few times.

You (example answers):
5 I've/I have never been to New York.
6 I've/I have played tennis many times.
7 I've/I have never driven a lorry.
8 I've/I have been late for work a few times.

17.3

2–6
She's/She has done a lot of interesting things.
She's/She has travelled all over the world. *or* She's/She has been all over the world.
She's/She has been married three times.
She's/She has written ten books.
She's/She has met a lot of interesting people.

17.4

2 been
3 gone
4 been
5 been
6 gone
7 gone
8 been

UNIT 18

18.1

3 have been
4 has been
5 have lived / have been living
6 has worked / has been working
7 has had
8 have been learning

18.2

2 How long have they been there? *or* … been in Brazil?
3 How long have you known her? *or* … known Amy?
4 How long has she been learning Italian?
5 How long has he lived in Canada? / How long has he been living … ?
6 How long have you been a teacher?
7 How long has it been raining?

18.3

2 She has lived in Wales all her life.
3 They have been on holiday since Sunday.
4 The sun has been shining all day.
5 She has been waiting for ten minutes.
6 He has had a beard since he was 20.

18.4

2 I know
3 I've known
4 have you been waiting
5 works
6 She has been reading
7 have you lived
8 I've had
9 is … He has been

UNIT 19

19.1

3 for
4 since
5 since
6 for
7 for
8 for … since

19.2

Example answers:
2 A year ago.
3 A few weeks ago.
4 Two hours ago.
5 Six months ago.

19.3

3 for 20 years
4 20 years ago
5 an hour ago
6 a few days ago
7 for six months
8 for a long time

19.4

2 Jack has been here since Tuesday.
3 It's been raining for an hour.
4 I've known Sue since 2008.
5 Claire and Matt have been married for six months.
6 Laura has been studying medicine (at university) for three years.
7 David has played / David has been playing the piano since he was seven years old.

19.5

Example answers
2 I've been in the same job for ten years.
3 I've been learning English for six months.
4 I've known Chris for a long time.
5 I've had a headache since I got up this morning.

UNIT 20

20.1

2 I started (it)
3 they arrived
4 she went (away)
5 I wore it

20.2

3 I finished
4 *OK*
5 did you finish
6 *OK*
7 (Steve's grandmother) died
8 Where were you / Where did you go

20.3

3 played
4 did you go
5 Have you ever met
6 wasn't
7 's/has visited
8 switched
9 lived
10 haven't been

20.4

1 Did you have … was
2 Have you seen … went … haven't seen
3 has worked / has been working … was … worked … didn't enjoy
4 've/have seen … 've/have never spoken … Have you ever spoken … met

UNIT 21

21.1
3 Glass is made from sand.
4 The windows are cleaned every two weeks.
5 This room isn't used very much.
6 Are we allowed to park here?
7 How is this word pronounced?
9 The house was painted last month.
10 My phone was stolen a few days ago.
11 Three people were injured in the accident.
12 When was this bridge built?
13 I wasn't woken up by the noise.
14 How were these windows broken?
15 Were you invited to Jon's party last week?

21.2
2 Football **is played** in most …
3 Why **was the letter sent** to … ?
4 … where films **are made**.
5 Where **were** you born?
6 How many languages **are spoken** … ?
7 … but nothing **was** stolen.
8 When **was** the bicycle **invented**?

21.3
3 is made
4 were damaged
5 was given
6 are shown
7 were invited
8 was made
9 was stolen … was found

21.4
2 Sarah was born in Manchester.
3 Her parents were born in Ireland.
4 I was born in …
5 My mother was born in …

UNIT 22

22.1
2 A bridge is being built.
3 The windows are being cleaned.
4 The grass is being cut.

22.2
3 The window **has been** broken.
4 The roof **is being** repaired.
5 The car **has been** damaged.
6 The houses **are being** knocked down.
7 The trees **have been** cut down.
8 They **have been** invited to a party.

22.3
3 has been repaired
4 was repaired
5 are made
6 were they built
7 Is the photocopier being used *or* Is anybody using the photocopier
8 are they called
9 were stolen
10 was damaged … hasn't been repaired

UNIT 23

23.1
3 are
4 Does
5 Do
6 Is
7 do
8 Is
9 does
10 Are

23.2
2 don't
3 'm/am not
4 isn't
5 don't
6 doesn't
7 'm/am not
8 aren't / 're not

23.3
2 Did
3 were
4 was
5 Has
6 did
7 were
8 Has
9 did
10 have

23.4
2 was
3 Have
4 are
5 were
6 've/have
7 is
8 was
9 has

23.5
3 eaten
4 enjoying
5 damaged
6 use
7 gone
8 understand
9 listening
10 pronounced
11 open

UNIT 24

24.1
3 got
4 brought
5 paid
6 enjoyed
7 bought
8 sat
9 left
10 happened
11 heard
12 put
13 caught
14 watched
15 understood

24.2
2	began	begun
3	ate	eaten
4	drank	drunk
5	drove	driven
6	spoke	spoken
7	wrote	written
8	came	come
9	knew	known
10	took	taken
11	went	gone
12	gave	given
13	threw	thrown
14	forgot	forgotten

24.3
3 slept
4 saw
5 rained
6 lost … seen
7 stolen
8 went
9 finished
10 built
11 learnt/learned
12 ridden
13 known
14 fell … hurt
15 ran … run

24.4
2 told
3 won
4 met
5 woken up
6 swam
7 thought
8 spoken
9 cost
10 driven
11 sold
12 flew

UNIT 25

25.1
2 Richard is going to the cinema.
3 Rachel is meeting Dave.
4 Karen is having lunch with Will.
5 Sue and Tom are going to a party.

25.2
2 Are you working next week?
3 What are you doing tomorrow evening?
4 What time are your friends coming?
5 When is Lisa going on holiday?

25.3
3–6 *Example answers*
I'm going away at the weekend.
I'm playing basketball tomorrow.
I'm meeting a friend this evening.
I'm going to the cinema on Thursday evening.

25.4
3 She's getting
4 are going … are they going
5 finishes
6 I'm not going
7 I'm going … We're meeting
8 are you getting … leaves
9 Are you coming … does the film begin
10 are you doing … I'm working

UNIT 26

26.1
2 I'm going to have a bath.
3 I'm going to buy a car.
4 We're going to play football.

26.2
3 'm/am going to walk
4 's/is going to stay
5 'm/am going to eat
6 're/are going to give
7 's/is going to lie down
8 Are you going to watch
9 is Rachel going to do

26.3
2 The shelf is going to fall (down).
3 The car is going to turn (right).
4 He's / He is going to kick the ball.

26.4
1–3 *Example answers*
I'm going to phone Maria this evening.
I'm going to get up early tomorrow.
I'm going to buy some shoes tomorrow.

UNIT 27

27.1
2 she'll be
3 she was
4 she'll be
5 she's
6 she was
7 she'll be

27.2
Example answers:
2 I'll be at home.
3 I'll probably be in bed.
4 I'll be at work.
5 I don't know where I'll be.

27.3
2 'll/will
3 won't
4 won't
5 'll/will
6 'll/will
7 won't

27.4
3 I think we'll win the game.
4 I don't think I'll be here tomorrow.
5 I think Sue will like her present.
6 I don't think they'll get married.
7 I don't think you'll enjoy the film.

27.5
2 are you doing
3 They're going
4 will lend
5 I'm going
6 will phone
7 He's working
8 Will you
9 are coming

UNIT 28

28.1
2 I'll eat
3 I'll sit
4 I'll do
5 I'll stay
6 I'll show

28.2
2 I think I'll have
3 I don't think I'll play
4 I think I'll buy
5 I don't think I'll buy

28.3
2 I'll do
3 I watch
4 I'll go
5 is going to buy
6 I'll give
7 Are you doing … I'm going
8 I'm working

28.4
2 Shall I turn off the TV?
3 Shall I make some sandwiches?
4 Shall I turn on the light?

28.5
2 where shall we go?
3 what shall we buy?
4 who shall we invite?

UNIT 29

29.1
2 I might see you tomorrow.
3 Sarah might forget to phone.
4 It might snow today.
5 I might be late tonight.
6 Mark might not be here next week.
7 I might not have time to go out.

29.2
2 I might go away.
3 I might see her on Monday.
4 I might have fish.
5 I might get/take a taxi. *or* … go by taxi.
6 I might buy/get a new car.

29.3

3 He might get up early.
4 He isn't/He's not working tomorrow.
5 He might be at home tomorrow morning.
6 He might watch TV.
7 He's going out in the afternoon.
8 He might go shopping.

29.4

1–3 *Example answers*
I might buy some new clothes.
I might go out with some friends.
I might have an egg for breakfast.

UNIT 30

30.1

2 Can you ski?
3 Can you play chess?
4 Can you run ten kilometres?
5 Can you drive (a car)?
6 Can you ride (a horse)?
7 I can/can't swim.
8 I can/can't ski.
9 I can/can't play chess.
10 I can/can't run ten kilometres.
11 I can/can't drive (a car).
12 I can/can't ride (a horse).

30.2

2 can see
3 can't hear
4 can't find
5 can speak

30.3

2 couldn't eat
3 can't decide
4 couldn't find
5 can't go
6 couldn't go

30.4

2 Can/Could you pass the salt (please)?
3 Can/Could I have these postcards (please)?
4 Can/Could you turn off the radio (please)?
5 Can/Could I borrow your newspaper (please)?
6 Can/Could I use your pen (please)?

UNIT 31

31.1

2 must meet
3 must wash
4 must learn
5 must go
6 must win
7 must be

31.2

2 I must
3 I had to
4 I must
5 I had to
6 I had to
7 I must

31.3

2 don't need to rush
3 mustn't lose
4 don't need to wait
5 mustn't forget
6 don't need to phone

31.4

2 C
3 A
4 B
5 D

31.5

3 don't need to
4 had to
5 must
6 mustn't
7 must
8 had to
9 don't need to
10 mustn't

UNIT 32

32.1

2 You should go
3 You should eat
4 you should visit
5 you should wear
6 You should take

32.2

2 He shouldn't eat so much.
3 She shouldn't work so hard.
4 He shouldn't drive so fast.

32.3

2 Do you think I should learn (to drive)?
3 Do you think I should get another job?
4 Do you think I should invite Gary (to the party)?

32.4

3 I think you should sell it.
4 I think she should have a holiday.
5 I don't think they should get married.
6 I don't think you should go to work.
7 I think he should go to the doctor.
8 I don't think we should stay there.

32.5

Example answers:
2 I think everybody should have enough food.
3 I think people should drive more carefully.
4 I don't think the police should carry guns.
5 I think I should take more exercise.

UNIT 33

33.1

2 have to do
3 has to read
4 have to speak
5 has to travel
6 have to hit

33.2

2 have to go
3 had to buy
4 have to change
5 had to answer

33.3

2 did he have to wait
3 does she have to go
4 did you have to pay
5 do you have to do

33.4

2 doesn't have to wait.
3 didn't have to get up early.
4 doesn't have to work (so) hard.
5 don't have to leave now.

33.5

3 have to pay
4 had to borrow
5 must stop *or* have to stop (*both are correct*)
6 has to meet
7 must tell *or* have to tell (*both are correct*)

33.6

Example answers:
2 I have to go to work every day.
3 I had to go to the dentist yesterday.
4 I have to go shopping tomorrow.

UNIT 34

34.1

2 Would you like an apple?
3 Would you like some coffee? / ... a cup of coffee?
4 Would you like some cheese? / ... a piece of cheese?
5 Would you like a sandwich?
6 Would you like some cake? / ... a piece of cake?

34.2

2 Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?
3 Would you like to come to a concert next week?
4 Would you like to borrow my umbrella?

34.3

2 Do you like
3 Would you like
4 would you like
5 Would you like
6 I like
7 would you like
8 Would you like
9 Do you like
10 I'd like
11 I'd like
12 do you like

UNIT 35

35.1

3 Don't buy
4 Smile
5 Don't sit
6 Have
7 Don't forget
8 Sleep
9 Be ... Don't drop

35.2

2 let's take a taxi
3 let's watch TV
4 let's go to a restaurant
5 let's wait a little

35.3

3 No, let's not go out.
4 No, don't close the window.
5 No, don't phone me (tonight).
6 No, let's not wait for Andy.
7 No, don't turn on the light.
8 No, let's not go by bus.

UNIT 36

36.1

2 He used to play football.
3 She used to be a taxi driver.
4 They used to live in the country.
5 He used to wear glasses.
6 This building used to be a hotel.

36.2

2–6

She used to play volleyball.
She used to go out most evenings. / She used to go out a lot.
She used to play the guitar.
She used to read a lot. / She used to like reading.
She used to go away two or three times a year. / She used to travel a lot.

36.3

3 used to have
4 used to be
5 go / travel
6 used to eat
7 watches
8 used to live
9 get
10 did you use to play

UNIT 37

37.1

3 There's/There is a hospital.
4 There isn't a swimming pool.
5 There are two cinemas.
6 There isn't a university.
7 There aren't any big hotels.

37.2

3–6 *Example answers*

There is a university in ...
There are a lot of big shops.
There isn't an airport.
There aren't many factories.

37.3

2 There's/There is
3 is there
4 There are
5 are there
6 There isn't
7 Is there
8 Are there
9 There's / There is ... There aren't

37.4

2–6

There are eight planets in the solar system.
There are fifteen players in a rugby team.
There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet.
There are thirty days in September.
There are fifty states in the USA.

37.5

2 It's
3 There's
4 There's ... Is it
5 Is there ... there's
6 It's
7 Is there

UNIT 38

38.1

2 There was a carpet
3 There were three pictures
4 There was a small table
5 There were some flowers
6 There were some books
7 There was an armchair
8 There was a sofa

38.2

3 There was
4 Was there
5 there weren't
6 There wasn't
7 Were there
8 There wasn't
9 There was
10 there weren't

38.3

2 There are
3 There was
4 There's/There is
5 There's been/There has been *or* There was
6 there was
7 there will be
8 there were ... there are
9 There have been
10 there will be *or* there are

UNIT 39

39.1
2 It's cold.
3 It's windy.
4 It's sunny/fine. *or* It's a nice day.
5 It's snowing.
6 It's cloudy.

39.2
2 It's / It is
3 Is it
4 is it … it's / it is
5 It's / It is
6 Is it
7 is it
8 It's / It is
9 It's / It is

39.3
2 How far is it from the hotel to the beach?
3 How far is it from New York to Washington?
4 How far is it from your house to the airport?

39.4
3 It
4 It … It
5 There
6 it
7 It … there
8 It

39.5
2 It's nice to see you again.
3 It's impossible to work here.
4 It's easy to make friends.
5 It's interesting to visit different places.
6 It's dangerous to go out alone

UNIT 40

40.1
2 is
3 can
4 has
5 will
6 was

40.2
2 'm not
3 weren't
4 haven't
5 isn't
6 hasn't

40.3
3 doesn't
4 do
5 did
6 does
7 don't
8 didn't

40.4
Example answers:
2 I like sport, but my sister doesn't.
3 I don't eat meat, but Jessica does.
4 I'm American, but my husband isn't.
5 I haven't been to Japan, but Jessica has.

40.5
2 wasn't
3 are
4 has
5 can't
6 did
7 has
8 do
9 hasn't
10 will
11 might

40.6
2 Yes, I have. *or* No, I haven't.
3 Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
4 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't.
5 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
6 Yes, I do. *or* No, I don't.
7 Yes, I will. *or* No, I won't.
8 Yes, I have. *or* No, I haven't.
9 Yes, I did. *or* No, I didn't.
10 Yes, I was. *or* No, I wasn't.

UNIT 41

41.1
2 Do you?
3 Didn't you?
4 Doesn't she?
5 Do I?
6 Did she?

41.2
3 Have you?
4 Can't she?
5 Were you?
6 Didn't you?
7 Is there?
8 Aren't you?
9 Did you?
10 Does she?
11 Won't you?
12 Isn't it?

41.3
2 aren't they
3 wasn't she
4 haven't you
5 don't you
6 doesn't he
7 won't you

41.4
2 are you
3 isn't she
4 can't you
5 do you
6 didn't she
7 was it
8 doesn't she
9 will you

UNIT 42

42.1
2 either
3 too
4 too
5 either
6 either
7 too

42.2
2 So am I.
3 So have I.
4 So do I.
5 So will I.
6 So was I.
7 Neither can I.
8 Neither did I.
9 Neither have I.
10 Neither am I.
11 Neither do I.

42.3
1 So am I.
2 So can I. *or* I can't.
3 Neither am I. *or* I am.
4 So do I. *or* I don't.
5 Neither do I. *or* I do.
6 So did I. *or* I didn't.
7 Neither have I. *or* I have.
8 Neither do I. *or* I do.
9 So am I. *or* I'm not.
10 Neither have I. *or* I have.
11 Neither did I. *or* I did.
12 So do I. *or* I don't.

UNIT 43

43.1
2 They aren't / They're not married.
3 I haven't had dinner.
4 It isn't cold today.
5 We won't be late.
6 You shouldn't go.

43.2
2 I don't like cheese.
3 They didn't understand.
4 He doesn't live here.
5 Don't go away!
6 I didn't do the shopping.

43.3
2 They haven't arrived.
3 I didn't go to the bank.
4 He doesn't speak German.
5 We weren't angry.
6 He won't be pleased.
7 Don't call me tonight.
8 It didn't rain yesterday.
9 I couldn't hear them.
10 I don't believe you.

43.4
2 'm not / am not
3 can't
4 doesn't
5 isn't / 's not

6 don't ... haven't
7 Don't
8 didn't
9 haven't
10 won't
11 didn't
12 weren't
13 hasn't
14 shouldn't / mustn't

43.5

3 He wasn't born in London.
4 He doesn't like London.
5 He'd like to live in the country.
6 He can drive.
7 He hasn't got a car. *or* He doesn't have a car.
8 He doesn't read newspapers.
9 He isn't interested in politics.
10 He watches TV most evenings.
11 He didn't watch TV last night.
12 He went out last night.

UNIT 44

44.1

3 Were you late this morning?
4 Has Kate got a key? *or* Does Kate have a key?
5 Will you be here tomorrow?
6 Is Paul going out this evening?
7 Do you like your job?
8 Does Nicola live near here?
9 Did you enjoy the film?
10 Did you have a good holiday?

44.2

2 Do you use it a lot?
3 Did you use it yesterday?
4 Do you enjoy driving?
5 Are you a good driver?
6 Have you ever had an accident?

44.3

3 What are the children doing?
4 How is cheese made?
5 Is your sister coming to the party?
6 Why don't you tell the truth?
7 Have your guests arrived yet?
8 What time does your train leave?
9 Why didn't Emily go to work?
10 Was your car damaged in the accident?

44.4

3 What are you reading?
4 What time did she go (to bed)?
5 When are they going (on holiday)?
6 Where did you see him?
7 Why can't you come (to the party)?
8 Where has she gone?
9 How much (money) do you need?
10 Why doesn't she like you?
11 How often does it rain?
12 When did you do it? / ... the shopping?

UNIT 45

45.1

2 What fell off the shelf?
3 Who wants to see me?
4 Who took your umbrella? / Who took it?
5 What made you ill?
6 Who is / Who's coming?

45.2

3 Who did you phone?
4 What happened last night?
5 Who knows the answer?
6 Who did the washing-up?
7 What did Jane do? / What did she do?
8 What woke you up?
9 Who saw the accident?
10 Who did you see?
11 Who has got your pen? / Who's got your pen? / Who has your pen?
12 What does this word mean? / What does it mean?

45.3

2 Who phoned you ?
What did she want?
3 Who did you ask?
What did he say?
4 Who got married?
Who told you?
5 Who did you meet?
What did she tell you?
6 Who won?
What did you do (after the game)?
7 Who gave you a/the book?
What did Catherine give you?

UNIT 46

46.1

2 What are you looking for?
3 Who did you go to the cinema with?
4 What/Who was the film about?
5 Who did you give the money to?
6 Who was the book written by?

46.2

2 What are they looking at?
3 Which restaurant is he going to?
4 What are they talking about?
5 What is she listening to?
6 Which bus are they waiting for?

46.3

2 Which hotel did you stay at?
3 Which (football) team does he play for?
4 Which school did you go to?

46.4

2 What is the food like?
3 What are the people like?
4 What is the weather like?

46.5

2 What was the film like?
3 What were the lessons like?
4 What was the hotel like?

UNIT 47

47.1

3 What colour is it?
4 What time did you get up?
5 What type of music do you like?
6 What kind of car do you want (to buy)?

47.2

2 Which coat
3 Which film/movie
4 Which bus

47.3

3 Which
4 What
5 Which
6 What
7 Which
8 Who
9 What
10 Which
11 What

47.4
2 How far
3 How old
4 How often
5 How deep
6 How long

47.5
2 How heavy is this box?
3 How old are you?
4 How much did you spend?
5 How often do you watch TV?
6 How far is it from Paris to Moscow?

UNIT 48

48.1
2 How long does it take by car from Milan to Rome?
3 How long does it take by train from Paris to Geneva?
4 How long does it take by bus from the city centre to the airport?

48.2
2 It takes … hours to fly from … to New York.
3 It takes … years to study to be a doctor in … .
4 It takes … to walk from my home to the nearest shop.
5 It takes … to get from my home to the nearest airport.

48.3
2 How long did it take you to walk to the station?
3 How long did it take him to paint the bathroom?
4 How long did it take you to learn to ski?
5 How long did it take them to repair the car?

48.4
2 It took us 20 minutes to walk home. / … to get home.
3 It took me six months to learn to drive.
4 It took Mark/him three hours to drive to London. / … to get to London.
5 It took Lisa/her a long time to find a job. / … to get a job.
6 It took me … to …

UNIT 49

49.1
2 I don't know where she is.
3 I don't know how old it is.
4 I don't know when he'll be here.
5 I don't know why he was angry.
6 I don't know how long she has lived here.

49.2
2 where Susan works
3 what Peter said
4 why he went home early
5 what time the meeting begins
6 how the accident happened

49.3
2 are you
3 they are
4 the museum is
5 do you want
6 elephants eat
7 it is

49.4
2 Do you know if/whether they are married?
3 Do you know if/whether Sue knows Bill?
4 Do you know if/whether Gary will be here tomorrow?
5 Do you know if/whether he passed his exam?

49.5
2 Do you know where Paula is?
3 Do you know if/whether she is working today? / … she's working today?
4 Do you know what time she starts work?
5 Do you know if/whether the shops are open tomorrow?
6 Do you know where Sarah and Jack live?
7 Do you know if/whether they went to Jane's party?

49.6
Example answers:
2 Do you know what time the bus leaves?
3 Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is?
4 I don't know what I'm going to do this evening.
5 Do you know if there's a restaurant near here?
6 Do you know how much it costs to rent a car?

UNIT 50

50.1
2 She said (that) she was very busy.
3 She said (that) she couldn't go to the party.
4 He said (that) he had to go out.
5 He said (that) he was learning Russian.
6 She said (that) she didn't feel very well.
7 They said (that) they would be home late. / … they'd be …
8 She said (that) she had just come back from holiday. / … she'd just come back …
9 She said (that) she was going to buy a guitar.
10 They said (that) they hadn't got a key. / They said (that) they didn't have a key.

50.2
2 She said (that) she wasn't hungry.
3 he said (that) he needed it.
4 she said (that) she didn't want to go.
5 She said (that) I could have it.
6 He said (that) he would send me a postcard. / … he'd send …
7 Nicola said (that) he had gone home. / … he'd gone home.
8 He said (that) he wanted to watch TV.
9 She said (that) she was going to the cinema.

50.3
3 said
4 told
5 tell
6 say
7 said
8 told
9 tell
10 say

UNIT 51

51.1
3 phone
4 phone Paul

5 to phone Paul
6 to phone Paul
7 phone Paul
8 to phone Paul
9 phone Paul
10 phone Paul

51.2

3 get
4 going
5 watch
6 flying
7 listening
8 eat
9 waiting
10 wear
11 doing ... staying

51.3

4 to go
5 rain
6 to leave
7 help
8 studying
9 to go
10 wearing
11 to stay
12 have
13 having
14 to have
15 hear
16 go
17 listening
18 to walk
19 to know ... tell
20 borrow

UNIT 52

52.1

3 to see
4 to swim
5 cleaning
6 to ask
7 visiting
8 going
9 to be
10 waiting
11 to do
12 to speak
13 to go
14 crying / to cry
15 to work ... talking

52.2

2 to help
3 to see
4 reading
5 to lose
6 to send
7 raining
8 to go
9 watching / to watch
10 to wait

52.3

2 going to museums
3 to go
4 driving / to drive
5 to go (there)
6 travelling by train
7 walking

52.4

Example answers:

1 I enjoy cooking.
2 I don't like studying.
3 If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like to go to the beach.
4 When I'm on holiday, I like to do very little.
5 I don't mind travelling alone, but I prefer to travel with somebody.
6 I wouldn't like to live in a big city.

UNIT 53

53.1

2 I want you to listen carefully.
3 I don't want you to be angry.
4 Do you want me to wait for you?
5 I don't want you to call me tonight.
6 I want you to meet Sarah.

53.2

2 A woman told me to turn left after the bridge.
3 I advised him to go to the doctor.
4 She asked me to help her. / ... asked me if I could help her.
5 I told him to come back in ten minutes.
6 Paul let me use his phone.
7 I told her not to phone before 8 o'clock. / ... not to call (me) before 8 o'clock.
8 Amy's mother taught her to play the piano.

53.3

2 to repeat
3 wait
4 to arrive
5 to get
6 go
7 borrow
8 to tell
9 to make (*or* to get)
10 think

UNIT 54

54.1

2–4

I went to a coffee shop to meet a friend.

I went to the chemist to get some medicine.

I went to the market to buy some vegetables.

54.2

2 to read the newspaper
3 to open this door
4 to get some fresh air
5 to wake him up
6 to see who it was

54.3

Example answers:

2 to talk to you now
3 to tell her about the party
4 to do some shopping
5 to buy a motorbike

54.4

2 to
3 to
4 for
5 to
6 for
7 to
8 to
9 for
10 for
11 to

54.5

2 for the film to begin
3 for it to arrive
4 for you to tell me

UNIT 55

55.1

3 to
4 – *(no preposition)*
5 for
6 to
7 on ... to
8 for
9 on
10 to
11 – *(no preposition)*
12 on
13 for
14 on

55.2

2 went fishing
3 goes swimming
4 going skiing
5 go shopping
6 went jogging

55.3
2 to university
3 shopping
4 to sleep
5 home
6 skiing
7 riding
8 for a walk
9 on holiday … to Portugal

UNIT 56

56.1
2 get your boots
3 get a doctor
4 get a taxi
5 gets the job
6 get some milk
7 get a ticket
8 gets a good salary
9 get a lot of rain
10 get a new laptop

56.2
2 getting dark
3 getting married
4 getting ready
5 getting late

56.3
2 get wet
3 got married
4 gets angry
5 got lost
6 get old
7 got better

56.4
2 got to Bristol at 11.45.
3 I left the party at 11.15 and got home at midnight.
4 *(Example answer)* I left home at 8.30 and got to the airport at 10 o'clock.

56.5
2 got off
3 got out of
4 got on

UNIT 57

57.1
2 do
3 make
4 made
5 did
6 do
7 done
8 make
9 making
10 do
11 doing

57.2
2 They're/They are doing (their) homework.
3 He's/He is doing the shopping. *or* He is shopping.
4 She's/She is making a jacket.
5 They're/They are doing an exam. (*or* … taking an exam.)
6 He's/He is making the/his bed.
7 She's/She is doing the washing-up. *or* She is washing up. / She is doing the dishes. / She is washing the dishes.
8 He's/He is making a (shopping) list.
9 They're/They are making a film.
10 He's/He is taking a picture/photo/photograph.

57.3
2 make
3 do
4 done
5 made
6 doing
7 did
8 make
9 do
10 making
11 made
12 make … do

UNIT 58

58.1
3 He doesn't have / He hasn't got
4 Gary had
5 Do you have / Have you got
6 we didn't have
7 She doesn't have / She hasn't got
8 Did you have

58.2
2 She's/She is having a cup of tea.
3 He's/He is having a rest.
4 They're/They are having a good time.
5 They're/They are having dinner.
6 He's/He is having a bath.

58.3
3 Have a nice/good trip!
4 Did you have a nice/good weekend?
5 Did you have a nice/good game (of tennis)?
6 Have a nice/good time! *or* Have a nice/good evening! *or* Have fun!
7 Did you have a nice/good holiday?

58.4
2 have something to eat
3 had a glass of water
4 have a walk
5 had an accident
6 have a look

UNIT 59

59.1
2 him
3 them
4 her
5 him
6 them
7 her

59.2
2 I … them
3 he … her
4 they … us
5 we … him
6 she … them
7 they … me
8 she … you

59.3
2 I like him.
3 I don't like it.
4 Do you like it?
5 I don't like her.
6 Do you like them?

59.4
2 him
3 them
4 they
5 us
6 it
7 She
8 them
9 me
10 her
11 them
12 he … it

59.5
2 Can you give it to him?
3 Can you give them to her?
4 Can you give it to me?
5 Can you give it to them?
6 Can you give them to us?

UNIT 60

60.1
2 her hands
3 our hands
4 his hands
5 their hands
6 your hands

60.2
2 They live with their parents.
3 We live with our parents.
4 Martina lives with her parents.
5 I live with my parents.
6 John lives with his parents.
7 Do you live with your parents?
8 Most children live with their parents.

60.3
2 their
3 his
4 his
5 her
6 their
7 her
8 their

60.4
2 his
3 Their
4 our
5 her
6 my
7 your
8 her
9 their
10 my
11 Its
12 His … his

60.5
2 my key
3 Her husband
4 your coat
5 their homework
6 his name
7 Our house

UNIT 61

61.1
2 mine
3 ours
4 hers
5 theirs
6 yours
7 mine
8 his

61.2
2 yours
3 my … Mine
4 Yours … mine
5 her
6 My … hers
7 their
8 Ours

61.3
3 of hers
4 friends of ours
5 friend of mine
6 friend of his
7 friends of yours

61.4
2 Whose camera is this? It's hers.
3 Whose gloves are these? They're mine.
4 Whose hat is this? It's his.
5 Whose money is this? It's yours.
6 Whose bags are these? They're ours.

UNIT 62

62.1
2 Yes, I know **her**, but I can't remember **her name**.
3 Yes, I **know them**, but I **can't remember their** names.
4 Yes, I **know you**, but **I can't remember your name**.

62.2
2 He invited us to stay with **him** at his house.
3 They invited me to stay with **them at their** house.
4 I invited them to stay **with me at my** house.
5 She invited us to stay **with her at her** house.
6 Did you invite him **to stay with you at your** house?

62.3
2 I gave her my phone number, and she gave me **hers**.
3 He gave me his phone number, and I gave **him mine**.
4 We gave them **our** phone number, and they gave **us theirs**.
5 She gave him **her** phone number, and he gave **her his**.
6 You gave us **your** phone number, and we gave **you ours**.
7 They gave you **their** phone number, and you gave **them yours**.

62.4
2 them
3 him
4 our
5 yours
6 us
7 her
8 their
9 mine

UNIT 63

63.1
2 myself
3 herself
4 themselves
5 myself
6 himself
7 yourself
8 yourselves

63.2
2 When I saw him, he **was by himself**.
3 Don't **go out by yourself**.
4 I **went to the cinema by myself**.
5 My sister **lives by herself**.
6 Many people **live by themselves**.

63.3
2 They can't see each other.
3 They call each other a lot.
4 They don't know each other.
5 They're/They are sitting next to each other.
6 They gave each other presents / a present.

63.4
3 each other
4 yourselves
5 us
6 ourselves
7 each other
8 each other
9 them
10 themselves

UNIT 64

64.1
3 Helen is **Brian's** wife.
4 James is Sarah's **brother**.
5 James is **Daniel's** uncle.
6 Sarah is **Paul's** wife.
7 Helen is Daniel's **grandmother**.
8 Sarah is James's **sister**.
9 Paul is **Sarah's** husband.
10 Paul is Daniel's **father**.
11 Daniel is **James's** nephew.

64.2
2 Andy's
3 Dave's
4 Jane's
5 Rachel's
6 Alice's

64.3
3 *OK*
4 Simon's phone number
5 My brother's job
6 *OK*
7 *OK*
8 Paula's favourite colour
9 your mother's birthday
10 My parents' house
11 *OK*
12 *OK*
13 Silvia's party
14 *OK*

UNIT 65

65.1

2 a
3 a
4 an
5 a
6 an
7 a
8 an
9 an

65.2

2 a vegetable
3 a game
4 a tool
5 a mountain
6 a planet
7 a fruit
8 a river
9 a flower
10 a musical instrument

65.3

2 He's a shop assistant.
3 She's an architect.
4 He's a taxi driver.
5 He's an electrician.
6 She's a photographer.
7 She's a nurse.
8 I'm a/an …

65.4

2–8
Tom never wears **a** hat.
I can't ride **a** bike.
My brother is **an** artist.
Rebecca works in **a** bookshop.
Jane wants to learn **a** foreign language.
Mike lives in **an** old house.
This evening I'm going to **a** party.

UNIT 66

66.1

2 boats
3 women
4 cities
5 umbrellas
6 addresses
7 knives
8 sandwiches
9 families
10 feet
11 holidays
12 potatoes

66.2

2 teeth
3 people
4 children
5 fish
6 leaves

66.3

3 … with a lot of beautiful **trees**.
4 … with two **men**.
5 *OK*
6 … three **children**.
7 Most of my **friends** are **students**.
8 He put on his **pyjamas** …
9 *OK*
10 Do you know many **people** …
11 I like your **trousers**. Where did you get **them**?
12 … full of **tourists**.
13 *OK*
14 **These scissors aren't** …

66.4

2 are
3 don't
4 watch
5 were
6 live
7 Do
8 are
9 them
10 some

UNIT 67

67.1

3 a jug
4 water
5 toothpaste
6 a toothbrush
7 an egg
8 money
9 a wallet
10 sand
11 a bucket
12 an envelope

67.2

3 … **a** hat.
4 … **a** job?
5 *OK*
6 … **an** apple …
7 … **a** party …
8 … **a** wonderful thing.
9 … **an** island.
10 … **a** key.
11 *OK*
12 … **a** good idea.
13 … **a** car?
14 … **a** cup of coffee?
15 *OK*
16 … **an** umbrella.

67.3

2 a piece of wood
3 a glass of water
4 a bar of chocolate
5 a cup of tea
6 a piece of paper
7 a bowl of soup
8 a loaf of bread
9 a jar of honey

UNIT 68

68.1

2 a newspaper (*or* a paper), some flowers (*or* a bunch of flowers) and a pen
3 some bananas, some eggs and some bread (*or* a loaf of bread)
4 some toothpaste, some soap (*or* a bar of soap) and a comb

68.2

2 Would you like some coffee? (*or* … a cup of coffee?)
3 Would you like a biscuit?
4 Would you like some bread? (*or* … a piece of bread? / a slice of bread?)
5 Would you like a chocolate?
6 Would you like some cake? (*or* … a piece of cake?)

68.3

2 some … some
3 some
4 a … some
5 an … some
6 a … a … some
7 some
8 some
9 some … a

68.4

2 eyes
3 hair
4 information
5 chairs
6 furniture
7 job
8 wonderful weather

UNIT 69

69.1

3 a
4 the
5 an
6 the … the
7 a … a
8 a … a
9 … **a** student … **a** journalist … **an** apartment near **the** college … **The** apartment is …
10 … two children, **a** boy and **a** girl. **The** boy is seven years old, and **the** girl is three … in **a** factory … doesn't have **a** job …

69.2
2 **the** airport
3 **a** cup
4 **a** nice picture
5 **the** dictionary
6 **the** floor

69.3
2 … send me **a** postcard.
3 What is **the** name of …
4 … **a** very big country.
5 What is **the** largest …
6 … **the** colour of **the** carpet.
7 … **a** headache.
8 … **an** old house near **the** station.
9 … **the** name of **the** director of **the** film …

UNIT 70

70.1
3 … **the** second floor.
4 … **the** moon?
5 … **the** best hotel in this town?
6 *OK*
7 … **the** city centre?
8 … **the** end of May.
9 *OK*
10 … **the** first time I met her.
11 *OK*
12 It's easy to get information from **the** internet.
13 *OK*
14 … on **the** top shelf on **the** right.
15 … in **the** country about ten miles from **the** nearest town.

70.2
2 the same time
3 the same age
4 the same colour
5 the same problem

70.3
2 **the** guitar
3 breakfast
4 television/TV
5 **the** sea
6 **the** bottom

70.4
2 **the** name
3 **The** sky
4 TV
5 **the** police
6 **the** capital
7 lunch
8 **the** middle

UNIT 71

71.1
2 **the** cinema
3 hospital
4 **the** airport
5 home
6 prison

71.2
3 school
4 **the** station
5 home
6 bed
7 **the** post office

71.3
2 **the** cinema
3 go to bed
4 go to prison
5 go to **the** dentist
6 go to university/college
7 go to hospital / are taken to hospital
(American speakers say 'go to **the** hospital', 'are taken to **the** hospital'.)

71.4
3 **the** doctor
4 *OK*
5 *OK*
6 *OK*
7 **the** bank
8 *OK*
9 *OK*
10 **the** city centre
11 **the** station
12 *OK*
(American speakers say 'in **the** hospital'.)
13 *OK*
14 *OK*
15 **the** theatre

UNIT 72

72.1
2–8 *Example answers:*
I don't like dogs.
I hate museums.
I love big cities.
Tennis is all right.
I love chocolate.
I don't like computer games.
I hate parties.

72.2
Example answers:
2 I'm not interested in politics.
3 I'm interested in sport.
4 I don't know much about art.
5 I don't know anything about astronomy.
6 I know a little about economics.

72.3
3 friends
4 parties
5 **The** shops
6 **the** milk
7 milk
8 basketball
9 buildings
10 **The** water
11 cold water
12 **the** salt
13 **the** people
14 Vegetables
15 **The** houses
16 **the** words
17 pictures
18 **the** pictures
19 English … international business
20 Money … happiness

UNIT 73

73.1
3 Sweden
4 **The** Amazon
5 Asia
6 **The** Pacific
7 **The** Rhine
8 Kenya
9 **The** United States
10 **The** Andes
11 Bangkok
12 **The** Alps
13 **The** Red Sea
14 Jamaica
15 **The** Bahamas

73.2

3 *OK*
4 **the** Philippines
5 **the** south of France
6 **the** Regal Cinema
7 *OK*
8 **the** Museum of Art
9 *OK*
10 Belgium is smaller than **the** Netherlands.
11 **the** Mississippi ... **the** Nile
12 **the** National Gallery
13 **the** Park Hotel in Hudson Road
14 *OK*
15 **The** Rocky Mountains are in North America.
16 *OK*
17 **the** United States
18 **the** west of Ireland
19 *OK*
20 **The** Panama Canal joins **the** Atlantic Ocean and **the** Pacific Ocean.

UNIT 74

74.1

2 that house
3 these postcards
4 those birds
5 this seat
6 These plates

74.2

2 Is that your umbrella?
3 Is this your book?
4 Are those your books?
5 Is that your bicycle/bike?
6 Are these your keys?
7 Are those your keys?
8 Is this your watch?
9 Are those your glasses?
10 Are these your gloves?

74.3

2 that's
3 This is
4 That's
5 that
6 this is
7 That's
8 that's

UNIT 75

75.1

2 I don't need one
3 I'm going to get one
4 I don't have one / I haven't got one
5 I've just had one
6 there's one in Mill Road

75.2

2 a new one
3 a better one
4 an old one
5 a big one
6 a different one

75.3

2 Which ones?
The green ones.
3 Which one?
The one with a/the red door.
4 Which ones?
The ones on the top shelf.
5 Which one?
The black one.
6 Which one?
The one on the wall.
7 Which one?
The tall one with long hair.
8 Which ones?
The yellow ones.
9 Which one?
The one with a/the moustache and glasses.
10 Which ones?
The ones I took at the party last week.

UNIT 76

76.1

2 some
3 any
4 any
5 any
6 some
7 any
8 some
9 some
10 any ... any
11 some ... any
12 some

76.2

2 some questions
3 any pictures
4 any foreign languages
5 some friends
6 some milk
7 any batteries
8 some fresh air
9 some cheese
10 any help

76.3

3 I have some / I've got some
4 I don't have any / I haven't got any / I haven't any
5 I didn't buy any
6 I bought some
7 I didn't drink any

76.4

2 something
3 anything
4 anything
5 Somebody/Someone
6 anything
7 anybody/anyone
8 something
9 anything
10 anybody/anyone

UNIT 77

77.1

2 There are no shops near here.
3 Carla has no free time. / Carla has got no free time.
4 There's no light in this room.
6 There isn't any milk in the fridge.
7 There aren't any buses today.
8 Tom doesn't have any brothers or sisters. / Tom hasn't got any brothers or sisters.

77.2

2 any
3 any
4 no
5 any
6 no
7 any
8 no
9 any
10 no
11 None
12 any

77.3

2 no money
3 any questions
4 no friends
5 no difference
6 any furniture
7 no idea
8 any heating
9 no queue

77.4

Example answers:
2 Three.
3 Two cups.
4 None.
5 None.

UNIT 78

78.1

2 There's nobody in the office.
3 I have nothing to do. / I've got nothing to do.
4 There's nothing on TV.
5 There was no-one at home.
6 We found nothing.

78.2
2 There wasn't anybody on the bus.
3 I don't have anything to read. / I haven't got anything to read.
4 I don't have anyone to help me. / I haven't got anyone to help me.
5 She didn't hear anything.
6 We don't have anything for dinner. / We haven't got anything for dinner.

78.3
3 a Nothing.
4 a Nobody./No-one.
5 a Nobody./No-one.
6 a Nothing.
7 a Nothing.
8 a Nobody./No-one.
3 b I don't want anything.
4 b I didn't meet anybody/anyone.
5 b Nobody/No-one knows the answer.
6 b I didn't buy anything.
7 b Nothing happened.
8 b Nobody/No-one was late.

78.4
3 anything
4 Nobody/No-one
5 Nothing
6 anything
7 anybody/anyone
8 nothing
9 anything
10 anything
11 nobody/no-one
12 anything
13 Nothing
14 Nobody/No-one … anybody/anyone

UNIT 79

79.1
2 something
3 somewhere
4 somebody/someone

79.2
2a Nowhere.
3a Nothing.
4a Nobody./No-one.
2b I'm not going anywhere.
3b I don't want anything.
4b I'm not looking for anybody/anyone.

79.3
3 anything
4 anything
5 somebody/someone
6 something
7 anybody/anyone … nobody/no-one
8 anything
9 Nobody/No-one
10 anybody/anyone
11 Nothing
12 anywhere
13 somewhere
14 anything
15 anybody/anyone

79.4
2 anything to eat
3 nothing to do
4 anywhere to sit
5 something to drink
6 nowhere to park
7 something to read
8 somewhere to stay

UNIT 80

80.1
2 Every day
3 every time
4 Every room
5 every word

80.2
2 every day
3 all day
4 every day
5 all day
6 all day
7 every day

80.3
2 every
3 all
4 all
5 Every
6 all
7 every
8 all
9 every

80.4
2 everything
3 Everybody/Everyone
4 everything
5 everywhere
6 Everybody/Everyone
7 everywhere
8 Everything

80.5
2 is
3 has
4 likes
5 has
6 was
7 makes
8 Is … Does

UNIT 81

81.1
3 Some
4 Most of
5 Most
6 any of
7 all *or* all of
8 None of
9 any of
10 Most
11 most of
12 Some
13 All *or* All of
14 some of
15 most of

81.2
2 All of them.
3 Some of them.
4 None of them.
5 Most of them.
6 None of it.

81.3
3 Some people …
4 Some of **the** questions … *or* Some questions …
5 *OK*
6 All insects …
7 *OK* (*or* … all **of** these books)
8 Most of **the** students … *or* Most students …
9 *OK*
10 … most of **the** night.

UNIT 82

82.1
3 Both
4 Neither
5 Neither
6 both
7 Either
8 neither of
9 Neither
10 either of
11 Both
12 neither of
13 Both
14 either of

82.2
2 Both windows are open.
3 Neither man is wearing a hat. *or* Neither of them is wearing …
4 Both men have (got) beards. *or* Both of them have …
5 Both buses go to the airport. *or* … are going to the airport.
6 Neither answer is correct.

82.3

3 Both of them are students.
4 Neither of them has a car. / ... has got a car.
5 Both of them live in London.
6 Both of them like cooking.
7 Neither of them can play the piano.
8 Both of them eat seafood.
9 Neither of them is interested in sport.

UNIT 83

83.1

2 many
3 much
4 many
5 many
6 much
7 much
8 many
9 How many
10 How much
11 How much
12 How many

83.2

2 much time
3 many countries
4 many people
5 much luggage
6 many times

83.3

2 a lot of interesting things
3 a lot of accidents
4 a lot of fun
5 a lot of traffic

83.4

3 a lot of snow
4 *OK*
5 a lot of money
6 *OK*
7 *OK*
8 a lot

83.5

3 She plays tennis a lot.
4 He doesn't use his car much. (*or* ... a lot.)
5 He doesn't go out much. (*or* ... a lot.)
6 She travels a lot.

UNIT 84

84.1

2 a few
3 a little
4 a few
5 a little
6 a few

84.2

2 a little milk
3 A few days
4 a little Russian
5 a few friends
6 a few times
7 a few chairs
8 a little fresh air

84.3

2 very little coffee
3 very little rain
4 very few hotels
5 very little time
6 Very few people
7 very little work

84.4

2 A few
3 a little
4 little
5 few
6 a little
7 little

84.5

2 ... **a** little luck
3 ... **a** few things
4 *OK*
5 ... **a** few questions
6 ... **few** people
7 *OK*

UNIT 85

85.1

2 I like that green jacket.
3 Do you like classical music?
4 I had a wonderful holiday.
5 We went to a Japanese restaurant.

85.2

2 black clouds
3 long holiday
4 hot water
5 fresh air
6 sharp knife
7 dangerous job

85.3

2 It looks new.
3 I feel ill.
4 You look surprised.
5 They smell nice.
6 It tastes horrible.

85.4

2 It doesn't look new.
3 You don't sound American.
4 I don't feel cold.
5 They don't look heavy.
6 Maybe, but it doesn't taste good.

UNIT 86

86.1

2 badly
3 quietly
4 angrily
5 fast
6 dangerously

86.2

2 work hard
3 sleep well
4 win easily
5 Think carefully
6 know her very well
7 explain things very clearly/well
8 Come quickly

86.3

2 angry
3 slowly
4 slow
5 careful
6 hard
7 suddenly
8 quiet
9 badly
10 nice (*See Unit 85C.*)
11 quickly

86.4

2 well
3 good
4 well
5 well
6 good ... good

UNIT 87

87.1

2 bigger
3 slower
4 more expensive
5 higher
6 more dangerous

87.2

2 stronger
3 happier
4 more modern
5 more important
6 better
7 larger
8 more serious
9 prettier
10 more crowded

87.3

2 hotter/warmer
3 more expensive

4 worse
5 further
6 more difficult *or* harder

87.4

3 taller
4 harder
5 more comfortable
6 better
7 nicer
8 heavier
9 more interested
10 warmer
11 better
12 bigger
13 more beautiful
14 sharper
15 more polite
16 worse

UNIT 88

88.1

3 Kate is taller than Ben.
4 Kate starts work earlier than Ben.
5 Ben works harder than Kate.
6 Ben has more money than Kate. / Ben has got more money ...
7 Kate is a better driver than Ben.
8 Ben is more patient than Kate.
9 Ben is a better dancer than Kate. / Ben dances better than Kate.
10 Kate is more intelligent than Ben.
11 Kate speaks French better than Ben. / Kate speaks better French than Ben. / Kate's French is better than Ben's.
12 Ben goes to the cinema more than Kate. / ... more often than Kate.

88.2

2 You're older than her. / ... than she is.
3 You work harder than me. / ... than I do.
4 You watch TV more than him. / ... than he does.
5 You're a better cook than me. / ... than I am. *or* You cook better than me. / ... than I do.
6 You know more people than us. / ... than we do.
7 You have more money than them. / ... than they have.
8 You can run faster than me. / ... than I can.
9 You've been here longer than her. / ... than she has.
10 You got up earlier than them. / ... than they did.
11 You were more surprised than him. / ... than he was.

88.3

2 Jack's mother is much younger than his father.
3 My camera cost a bit more than yours. / ... than your camera. *or* My camera was a bit more expensive than ...
4 I feel much better today than yesterday. / ... than I did yesterday. /... than I felt yesterday.
5 It's a bit warmer today than yesterday. / ... than it was yesterday.
6 Sarah is a much better tennis player than me. / ... than I am. *or* Sarah is much better at tennis than me. / ... than I am. *or* Sarah plays tennis much better than me. / ... than I do.

UNIT 89

89.1

2 A is longer than B, but not as long as C.
3 C is heavier than A, but not as heavy as B.
4 A is older than C, but not as old as B.
5 B has got more money than C, but not as much as A. *or* ... but less (money) than A.
6 C works harder than A, but not as hard as B.

89.2

2 Your room isn't as big as mine. / ... as my room.
3 I didn't get up as early as you. / ... as you did.
4 They didn't play as well as us. / ... as we did.
5 You haven't been here as long as me. / ... as I have.
6 He isn't as nervous as her. / ... as she is.

89.3

2 as
3 than
4 than
5 as
6 than
7 as
8 than

89.4

2 Julia lives in the same street as Laura.
3 Julia got up at the same time as Andy.
4 Andy's car is the same colour as Laura's.

UNIT 90

90.1

2 C is longer than A.
D is the longest.
B is the shortest.
3 D is younger than C.
B is the youngest.
C is the oldest.
4 D is more expensive than A.
C is the most expensive.
A is the cheapest.
5 A is better than C.
A is the best.
D is the worst.

90.2

2 the happiest day
3 the best film
4 the most popular singer
5 the worst mistake
6 the prettiest village
7 the coldest day
8 the most boring person

90.3

2 Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

3–6

Brazil is the largest country in South America.

Alaska is the largest state in the USA.

The Nile is the longest river in Africa. / ... in the world.

Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.

UNIT 91

91.1

2 enough chairs
3 enough paint
4 enough wind

91.2
2 The car isn't big enough.
3 His legs aren't long enough.
4 He isn't strong enough.

91.3
3 old enough
4 enough time
5 big enough
6 eat enough
7 enough space
8 tired enough
9 practise enough

91.4
2 sharp enough to cut
3 warm enough to go
4 enough bread to make
5 well enough to win
6 enough time to read

UNIT 92

92.1
2 too heavy
3 too low
4 too fast
5 too big
6 too crowded

92.2
3 enough
4 too many
5 too
6 enough
7 too much
8 enough
9 too
10 too many
11 too much

92.3
3 It's too far.
4 It's too expensive.
5 It isn't/It's not big enough.
6 It was too difficult.
7 It isn't good enough.
8 I'm too busy.
9 It was too long.

92.4
2 too early to go to bed
3 too young to get married
4 too dangerous to go out at night
5 too late to phone Sue (now)
6 too surprised to say anything

UNIT 93

93.1
3 I like this picture very much.
4 Tom started his new job last week.
5 *OK*
6 Jessica bought a present for her friend. *or* Jessica bought her friend a present.
7 I drink three cups of coffee every day.
8 *OK*
9 I borrowed fifty pounds from my brother.

93.2
2 I got a new phone last week.
3 Paul finished his work quickly.
4 Emily doesn't speak French very well.
5 I did a lot of shopping yesterday.
6 Do you know London well?
7 We enjoyed the party very much.
8 I explained the problem carefully.
9 We met some friends at the airport.
10 Did you buy that jacket in England?
11 We do the same thing every day.
12 I don't like football very much.

93.3
2 I arrived at the hotel early.
3 Julia goes to Italy every year.
4 We have lived here since 1998.
5 Sue was born in London in 1990.
6 Paul didn't go to work yesterday.
7 Helen went to a wedding last weekend.
8 I had my breakfast in bed this morning.
9 Amy is going to university in September.
10 I saw a beautiful bird in the garden this morning.
11 My parents have been to the United States many times.
12 I left my umbrella in the restaurant last night.
13 Are you going to the cinema tomorrow evening?
14 I took the children to school this morning.

UNIT 94

94.1
2 He always gets up early.
3 He's/He is never late for work.
4 He sometimes gets angry.
5 He rarely goes swimming.
6 He's/He is usually at home in the evenings.

94.2
2 Susan is always polite.
3 I usually finish work at 5 o'clock.
4 Sarah has just started a new job.
5 I rarely go to bed before midnight.
6 The bus isn't usually late.
7 I don't often eat fish.
8 I will never forget what you said.
9 Have you ever lost your passport?
10 Do you still work in the same place?
11 They always stay in the same hotel.
12 Jane doesn't usually work on Saturdays.
13 Is Tina already here?
14 What do you usually have for breakfast?
15 I can never remember his name.

94.3
2 Yes, and I also speak French.
3 Yes, and I'm also hungry.
4 Yes, and I've also been to Ireland.
5 Yes, and I also bought some books.

94.4
1 They both play football.
They're/They are both students.
They've both got cars. / They both have cars.
2 They're/They are all married.
They were all born in England.
They all live in New York.

UNIT 95

95.1

2 Do you still live in Clare Street?
3 Are you still a student?
4 Have you still got a motorbike? / Do you still have a motorbike?
5 Do you still go to the cinema a lot?
6 Do you still want to be a teacher?

95.2

2 He was looking for a job.
He's/He is still looking (for a job).
He hasn't found a job yet.
3 She was asleep.
She's/She is still asleep.
She hasn't woken up yet. / She isn't awake yet. *or* She hasn't got up yet. / She isn't up yet.
4 They were having dinner. / They were eating.
They're/They are still having dinner. / … still eating.
They haven't finished (dinner) yet. / They haven't finished eating yet.

95.3

2 Is Helen here yet? *or* Has Helen arrived/come yet?
3 Have you got your (exam) results yet? / Have you had your … / Have you received your …
4 Have you decided where to go yet? / Do you know where you're going yet?

95.4

3 She's/She has already gone/left.
4 I've already got one. / I already have one.
5 I've/I have already paid (it).
6 he already knows.

UNIT 96

96.1

2 He gave it to Gary.
3 He gave them to Sarah.
4 He gave it to his sister.
5 He gave them to Robert.
6 He gave it to a neighbour.

96.2

2 I gave Joanna a plant.
3 I gave Richard a tie.
4 I gave Emma some chocolates / a box of chocolates.
5 I gave Rachel some flowers / a bunch of flowers.
6 I gave Kevin a wallet.

96.3

2 Can you lend me an umbrella?
3 Can you give me your address?
4 Can you lend me twenty pounds?
5 Can you send me more information?
6 Can you show me the letter?

96.4

2 lend you some money
3 send the bill to me
4 buy you a present
5 pass me the sugar
6 give it to her
7 showed the policeman my identity card

UNIT 97

97.1

3 I went to the window and (I) looked out.
4 I wanted to phone you, but I didn't have your number.
5 I jumped into the river and (I) swam to the other side.
6 I usually drive to work, but I went by bus this morning.
7 Do you want me to come with you, or shall I wait here?

97.2

Example answers:
2 because it was raining. / because the weather was bad.
3 but it was closed.
4 so he didn't eat anything. / so he didn't want anything to eat.
5 because there was a lot of traffic. / because the traffic was bad.
6 Sue said goodbye, got into her car and drove off/away.

97.3

Example answers:
3 I went to the cinema, **but** the film wasn't very good.
4 I went to a café **and** met some friends of mine.
5 There was a film on television, **so** I watched it.
6 I got up in the middle of the night **because** I couldn't sleep.

UNIT 98

98.1

2 When I'm tired, I like to watch TV.
3 When I knocked on the door, there was no answer.
4 When I go on holiday, I always go to the same place.
5 When the programme ended, I turned off the TV.
6 When I got to the hotel, there were no rooms.

98.2

2 when they heard the news
3 they went to live in New Zealand
4 while they were away
5 before they came here
6 somebody broke into the house
7 they didn't believe me

98.3

2 I finish
3 it's
4 I'll be … she leaves
5 stops
6 We'll come … we're
7 I'll bring
8 I'm
9 it gets
10 I'll tell … I'm

98.4

Example answers:
2 you finish your work
3 I'm going to buy a motorbike
4 you get ready
5 I won't have much free time
6 I come back

UNIT 99

99.1
2 If you pass the exam, you'll get a certificate.
3 If you fail the exam, you can do it again.
4 If you don't want this magazine, I'll throw it away.
5 If you want those pictures, you can have them.
6 If you're busy now, we can talk later.
7 If you're hungry, we can have lunch now.
8 If you need money, I can lend you some.

99.2
2 I give
3 is
4 I'll call
5 I'll be … get
6 Will you go … they invite

99.3
Example answers:
3 … you're busy.
4 … you'll feel better in the morning.
5 … you're not watching it.
6 … she doesn't study.
7 … I'll go and see Chris.
8 … the weather is good.
9 … it rains today.

99.4
2 When
3 If
4 If
5 if
6 When
7 if
8 when … if

UNIT 100

100.1
3 wanted
4 had
5 were/was
6 didn't enjoy
7 could
8 tried
9 didn't have

100.2
3 I'd go / I would go
4 she knew
5 we had
6 you won
7 I wouldn't stay
8 we lived
9 It would be
10 the salary was/were
11 I wouldn't know
12 would you change

100.3
2 I'd watch it / I would watch it
3 we had some pictures on the wall
4 the air would be cleaner
5 every day was/were the same
6 I'd be bored / I would be bored
7 we had a bigger house / we bought a bigger house
8 we would/could buy a bigger house *or*
we would/could have a bigger house

100.4
Example answers:
2 I'd go to Antarctica
3 I didn't have any friends
4 I'd buy a house if I had enough money.
5 I'd try and help
6 there were no guns

UNIT 101

101.1
2 A butcher is a person who sells meat.
3 A musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.
4 A patient is a person who is ill in hospital.
5 A dentist is a person who takes care of your teeth.
6 A fool is a person who does stupid things.
7 A genius is a person who is very intelligent.
8 A liar is a person who doesn't tell the truth.

101.2
2 The woman who opened the door was wearing a yellow dress.
3 Most of the students who took the exam passed (it).
4 The policeman who stopped our car wasn't very friendly.

101.3
2 who
3 which
4 which
5 who
6 which
7 who
8 who
9 which
that *is also correct in all these sentences.*

101.4
3 … a machine **that/which** makes coffee.
4 *OK* (**which** *is also correct*)
5 … people **who/that** never stop talking.
6 *OK* (**who** *is also correct*)
7 *OK* (**that** *is also correct*)
8 … the sentences **that/which** are wrong.
9 … a car **that/which** cost £40,000.

UNIT 102

102.1
2 I've lost the pen you gave me.
3 I like the jacket Sue is wearing.
4 Where are the flowers I gave you?
5 I didn't believe the story he told us.
6 How much were the oranges you bought?

102.2
2 The meal you cooked was excellent.
3 The shoes I'm wearing aren't very comfortable.
4 The people we invited to dinner didn't come.

102.3
2 Who are the people you were talking to?
3 Did you find the keys you were looking for?
4 Where is the party you're going to?
5 What's the name of the film you were talking about?
6 What's that music you're listening to?
7 Did you get the job you applied for?

102.4

2 What's the name of the restaurant where you had dinner?
3 How big is the village where you live?
4 Where exactly is the factory where you work?

UNIT 103

103.1

3 at
4 on
5 in
6 in
7 on
8 on
9 at
10 on
11 at
12 in
13 on
14 on
15 at
16 at
17 at*
18 in

* American speakers say '**on** the weekend'.

103.2

2 on
3 at
4 in
5 in
6 in
7 on
8 on
9 in
10 at
11 at*
12 on
13 in
14 at
15 in
16 on
17 in
18 at
19 at

* American speakers say '**on** the weekend'.

103.3

2 on Friday
3 on Monday
4 at 4 o'clock on Thursday (afternoon) / on Thursday (afternoon) at 4 o'clock
5 on Saturday evening
6 at 2.30 on Tuesday (afternoon) / on Tuesday (afternoon) at 2.30

103.4

2 I'll call you in three days.
3 My exam is in two weeks.
4 Tom will be here in half an hour. / … in 30 minutes.

103.5

3 in
4 – *(already complete)*
5 – *(already complete)*
6 in
7 at*
8 – *(already complete)*
9 – *(already complete)*
10 on
11 in
12 at

* American speakers say '**on** the weekend'.

UNIT 104

104.1

2 Alex lived in Canada **until** 2009.
3 Alex has lived in England **since** 2009.
4 Karen lived in France **until** 2011.
5 Karen has lived in Switzerland **since** 2011.
6 Clare worked in a restaurant **from** 2010 **to** 2012.
7 Clare has worked in a hotel **since** 2012.
8 Adam was a teacher **from** 2002 **to** 2008.
9 Adam has been a journalist **since** 2008.
11 Alex has lived in England for … years.
12 Karen has lived in Switzerland for … years.
13 Clare worked in a restaurant for two years.
14 Clare has worked in a hotel for … years.
15 Adam was a teacher for six years.
16 Adam has been a journalist for … years.

104.2

2 until
3 for
4 since
5 Until
6 for
7 for
8 until
9 since
10 until
11 for
12 until
13 Since
14 for

UNIT 105

105.1

2 after lunch
3 before the end
4 during the course
5 before they went to Australia
6 during the night
7 while you're waiting
8 after the concert

105.2

3 while
4 for
5 while
6 during
7 while
8 for
9 during
10 while

105.3

2 eating
3 answering
4 having/taking
5 finishing/doing
6 going/travelling

105.4

2 John worked in a bookshop for two years after leaving school.
3 Before going to sleep, I read for a few minutes.
4 After walking for three hours, we were very tired.
5 Let's have a cup of coffee before going out.

UNIT 106

106.1

2 **In** the box.
3 **On** the box.
4 **On** the wall.
5 **At** the bus stop.
6 **In** the field.
7 **On** the balcony.
8 **In** the pool.
9 **At** the window.
10 **On** the ceiling.
11 **On** the table.
12 **At** the table.

106.2

2 in
3 on
4 in
5 on
6 at
7 in
8 in
9 at
10 at
11 in
12 at
13 on
14 at
15 **on** the wall **in** the living room

UNIT 107

107.1

2 **At** the airport.
3 **In** bed.
4 **On** a ship.
5 **In** the sky.
6 **At** a party.
7 **At** the doctor's.
8 **On** the second floor.
9 **At** work.
10 **On** a plane.
11 **In** a taxi.
12 **At** a wedding.

107.2

2 in
3 in
4 at
5 at
6 in
7 at
8 at
9 in
10 in
11 on
12 on
13 at
14 in
15 on

UNIT 108

108.1

2 to
3 in
4 to
5 in
6 to
7 to
8 in

108.2

3 to
4 to
5 **at** home ... **to** work
6 at
7 – *(already complete)*
8 to
9 at
10 **at** a restaurant ... **to** the hotel

108.3

2 to
3 to
4 in
5 to
6 to
7 at
8 to
9 to
10 at
11 at
12 **to** Maria's house ... **at** home
13 – *(already complete)*
14 meet **at** the party... go **to** the party

108.4

1 to
2 – *(already complete)*
3 at
4 in
5 to
6 – *(already complete)*

108.5

Example answers:
2 to work
3 at work
4 to Canada
5 to parties
6 at a friend's house

UNIT 109

109.1

2 next to / beside / by
3 in front of
4 between
5 next to / beside / by
6 in front of
7 behind
8 on the left
9 in the middle

109.2

2 behind
3 above
4 in front of
5 on
6 by / next to / beside
7 below / under
8 above
9 under
10 by / next to / beside
11 opposite
12 on

109.3

2 The fountain is in front of the theatre.
3 The bank/bookshop is opposite the theatre. *or* Paul's office is opposite the theatre. *or* The theatre is opposite ...
4 The bank/bookshop/supermarket is next to ...
5 Paul's office is above the bookshop.
6 The bookshop is between the bank and the supermarket.

UNIT 110

110.1

2 Go under the bridge.
3 Go up the hill.
4 Go down the steps.
5 Go along this street.
6 Go into the hotel.
7 Go past the hotel.
8 Go out of the hotel.
9 Go over the bridge.
10 Go through the park.

110.2

2 off
3 over
4 out of
5 across
6 round/around
7 through
8 on
9 round/around
10 **into** the house **through** a window

110.3

1 out of
2 round/around
3 in
4 **from** here **to** the airport
5 round/around
6 on/over
7 over
8 out of / from

UNIT 111

111.1

2 on time
3 on holiday
4 on the phone
5 on TV

111.2

2 by
3 with
4 about
5 on
6 by
7 at
8 on
9 with
10 **about** grammar **by** Vera P. Bull

111.3

1 with
2 without
3 by
4 about
5 at
6 by
7 on
8 with
9 at
10 by

11 about
12 by
13 on
14 with
15 by
16 by

UNIT 112

112.1

2 in
3 to
4 at
5 with
6 of

112.2

2 at
3 to
4 about
5 of
6 of
7 from/to (*You can also say* different than …)
8 in
9 for
10 about
11 of
12 **for/about** getting angry **with** you

112.3

2 interested in going
3 good at getting
4 fed up with waiting
5 sorry for/about waking
6 Thank you for waiting.

112.4

2 Sue walked past me without speaking.
3 Don't do anything without asking me first.
4 I went out without locking the door.

112.5

Example answers:
2 I'm scared of the dark.
3 I'm not very good at drawing.
4 I'm not interested in cars.
5 I'm fed up with living here.

UNIT 113

113.1

2 to
3 for
4 to
5 at
6 for

113.2

2 to
3 to
4 – (*already complete*)
5 for
6 to
7 of/about
8 for
9 on
10 to
11 for
12 – (*already complete*)
13 to
14 on
15 of/about

113.3

1 at
2 after
3 for
4 after
5 at
6 for

113.4

Example answers:
3 It depends on the programme.
4 It depends (on) what it is.
5 It depends on the weather.
6 It depends (on) how much you want.

UNIT 114

114.1

2 went in
3 looked up
4 rode off/away
5 turned round/around
6 got off
7 sat down
8 got out

114.2

2 away
3 round/around
4 going **out** … be **back**
5 down
6 over
7 back
8 in
9 up
10 going **away** … coming **back**

114.3

2 Hold on
3 slowed down
4 takes off
5 getting on
6 speak up
7 broken down
8 fall over / fall down
9 carry on
10 gave up
11 went off

UNIT 115

115.1

2 She took off her hat. *or* She took her hat off.
3 He put down his bag. *or* He put his bag down.
4 She picked up the magazine. *or* She picked the magazine up.
5 He put on his sunglasses. *or* He put his sunglasses on.
6 She turned off the tap. *or* She turned the tap off.

115.2

2 He put his jacket on.
He put it on.
3 She took off her glasses.
She took them off.
4 I picked the phone up.
I picked it up.
5 They gave the key back.
They gave it back.
6 We turned off the lights.
We turned them off.

115.3

2 take it back
3 picked them up
4 switched it off
5 bring them back

115.4

3 knocked over
4 look it up
5 throw them away
6 tried on
7 showed me round
8 gave it up *or* gave up (*without* it)
9 fill it in
10 put your cigarette out

Key to Additional exercises

1

3 Kate is a doctor.
4 The children are asleep.
5 Gary isn't hungry.
6 The books aren't on the table.
7 The hotel is near the station.
8 The bus isn't full.

2

3 she's / she is
4 Where are
5 Is he
6 It's / It is
7 I'm / I am *or* No, I'm not. I'm a student.
8 What colour is
9 Is it
10 Are you
11 How much are they?

3

3 He's/He is having a shower.
4 Are the children playing?
5 Is it raining?
6 They're/They are coming now.
7 Why are you standing here? I'm/I am waiting for somebody.

4

4 Sam doesn't want
5 Do you want
6 Does Helen live
7 Sarah knows
8 I don't travel
9 do you usually get up
10 They don't go out
11 Tom always finishes
12 does Jessica do … She works

5

3 She's/She is a student.
4 She hasn't got a car. *or* She doesn't have a car.
5 She goes out a lot.
6 She's got/She has got a lot of friends. *or* She has a lot of friends.
7 She doesn't like London.
8 She likes dancing.
9 She isn't/She's not interested in sport.

6

1 Are you married?
Where do you live?
Have you got any children? *or* Do you have any children?
How old is she?
2 How old are you?
What do you do? / Where do you work? / What's your job?
Do you like/enjoy your job?
Have you got a car? *or* Do you have a car?
Do you (usually) go to work by car?
3 What's his name? / What's he called?
What does he do? / What's his job?
Does he live/work in London?

7

4 Sonia is 32 years old.
5 I've got two sisters. *or* I have two sisters.
6 We often watch TV in the evening.
7 Amy never wears a hat.
8 A bicycle has got two wheels. *or* … has two wheels.
9 These flowers are beautiful.
10 Emma speaks German very well.

8

3 are you cooking
4 plays
5 I'm going
6 It's raining
7 I don't watch
8 we're looking
9 do you pronounce

9

2 we go
3 is shining
4 are you going
5 do you go
6 She writes
7 I never read
8 They're watching
9 She's talking
10 do you usually have
11 He's visiting
12 I don't drink

10

2 went
3 found
4 was
5 had
6 told
7 gave
8 were
9 thought
10 invited/asked

11

3 He was good at sport.
4 He played football.
5 He didn't work hard at school.
6 He had a lot of friends.
7 He didn't have a bike.
8 He wasn't a quiet child.

12

3 How long were you there? / How long did you stay there?
4 Did you like/enjoy Amsterdam?
5 Where did you stay?
6 Was the weather good?
7 When did you get/come back?

13

3 I forgot
4 did you get
5 I didn't speak
6 Did you have
7 he didn't go
8 she arrived
9 did Robert live
10 The meal didn't cost

14

2 were working
3 opened
4 rang … was cooking
5 heard … looked
6 was looking … happened
7 wasn't reading … was watching
8 didn't read
9 finished … paid … left
10 saw … was walking … was waiting

15

3 is playing
4 gave
5 doesn't like

6 did your parents go
7 saw … was driving
8 Do you watch
9 were you doing
10 goes
11 'm/am trying
12 didn't sleep

16

3 it's/it has just finished/ended.
4 I've/I have found them. *or* I've got them.
5 I haven't read it.
6 Have you seen her?
7 I've/I have had enough.
8 Have you (ever) been to Sweden?
9 We've/We have (just) been to the cinema.
10 They've/They have gone to a party.
11 He's/He has (just) woken up.
12 How long have you lived here? *or* … have you been living here?
13 we've/we have known each other for a long time.
14 It's/It has been raining all day. *or* It has rained all day. *or* It has been horrible/bad all day.

17

3 's/has been
4 for
5 since
6 has he lived / has he been / has he been living
7 for
8 've/have been

18

Example answers:
3 I've just started this exercise.
4 I've met Sarah a few times.
5 I haven't had lunch yet.
6 I've never been to Australia.
7 I've lived here since I was born.
8 I've lived here for three years.

19

3 bought/got
4 went
5 've/have read *or* read *or* 've/have finished with
6 haven't started (it) *or* haven't begun (it)
7 was
8 didn't see
9 left
10 's/has been
11 was
12 've/have never made

20

3 He's/He has already gone.
4 she left at 4 o'clock.
5 How many times have you been there?
6 I haven't decided yet.
7 It was on the table last night.
8 I've eaten there a few times.
9 What time did they arrive?

21

1 When was the last time? *or* When did you go the last time?
2 How long have you had it? I bought/got it yesterday.
3 How long have you lived there / have you been there / have you been living there? Before that we lived in Mill Road. How long did you live in Mill Road?
4 How long have you worked there / have you been working there? What did you do before that? I was a taxi driver. *or* I worked as a taxi driver.

22

Example answers:
2 I didn't go out last night.
3 I was at work yesterday afternoon.
4 I went to a party a few days ago.
5 It was my birthday last week.
6 I went to America last year.

23

2 B
3 D
4 A
5 A
6 D
7 C
8 B
9 C
10 D
11 A
12 C
13 B
14 C
15 A

24

1 was damaged … be knocked down
2 was built … is used … is being painted
3 is called … be called … was changed
4 have been made … are produced

25

2 is visited
3 were damaged
4 be built
5 is being cleaned
6 be forgotten
7 has already been done
8 be kept
9 Have you ever been bitten
10 was stolen

26

2 My car was stolen last week.
3 All the bananas have been eaten.
4 The machine will be repaired.
5 We're/We are being watched.
6 The housework has to be done.

27

3 pushed
4 was pushed
5 has taken
6 is being repaired
7 invented
8 was the camera invented
9 have been washed *or* were washed
10 I've/I have washed them. *or* I washed them.
11 did they send *or* have they sent
12 be sent

28

2 B
3 A
4 C
5 B
6 C
7 C
8 B
9 B
10 A
11 B
12 C

29

1 I stayed
did you do
I watched
Are you going
I'm going
are you going to see
I don't know. I haven't decided
2 have you been
We arrived
are you staying / are you going to stay
do you like
we're having
3 I'm going ... Do you want
are you going
Have you ever eaten
I've been ... I went
4 I've lost ... Have you seen
You were wearing ... I came
I'm not wearing
Have you looked / Did you look
I'll go

30

1 we met
2 we sat / we were sitting
3 We didn't know
4 we became
5 we liked
6 we spent
7 We left
8 we meet
9 has been
10 she's working
11 She's coming
12 she comes
13 we'll have / we're going to have
14 It will be

31

2 we're staying
3 we enjoyed
4 We watched
5 slept
6 I don't sleep
7 we're not doing / we're not going to do *or* we aren't doing / we aren't going to do
8 we're going
9 to see
10 We haven't decided
11 wants
12 to go
13 I'll send
14 you're having
15 are working / have been working
16 he had
17 he needs
18 We've been
19 We got
20 seeing
21 I liked
22 we went
23 we left
24 had
25 he wasn't injured
26 was damaged
27 We've changed / We changed
28 we're leaving
29 We're staying / We're going to stay / We'll stay
30 flying
31 That will be / That's going to be
32 finished
33 I'll let
34 we get
35 are looking
36 We're going
37 we'll send

32

2 A
3 B
4 C
5 B
6 C
7 B
8 A
9 C
10 A
11 B
12 A
13 C
14 B
15 C
16 A
17 C
18 B

33

2 a car
3 the fridge
4 a teacher
5 school
6 the cinema
7 a taxi
8 the piano
9 cars
10 the same

34

4 **a** horse
5 **The** sky
6 **a** tourist
7 for lunch (–)
8 **the** first President of **the** United States
9 **a** headache
10 remember names (–)
11 **the** next train
12 send emails (–)
13 **the** garden
14 **the** Majestic Hotel
15 ill last week (–) ... to work (–)
16 **the** highest mountain in **the** world
17 to **the** radio ... having breakfast (–)
18 like sport (–) ... is basketball (–)
19 **a** doctor ... **an** art teacher
20 **the** second floor ... **the** top of **the** stairs ... on **the** right
21 After dinner (–) ... watched TV (–)
22 **a** wonderful holiday in **the** south of France (–)

35

2 in
3 on
4 at
5 on
6 in
7 since
8 on
9 by
10 in
11 for
12 at
13 at
14 in
15 at
16 on
17 by
18 for ... on
19 to ... in
20 at ... in

Key to Study guide

Present

1.1	B
1.2	A
1.3	C
1.4	A
1.5	C, D
1.6	B
1.7	D
1.8	C
1.9	C
1.10	A
1.11	C
1.12	A
1.13	D
1.14	C
1.15	A
1.16	D
1.17	C, D
1.18	A, D

Past

2.1	B
2.2	E
2.3	D
2.4	B
2.5	A
2.6	D
2.7	A
2.8	C
2.9	C

Present perfect

3.1	B, E
3.2	D
3.3	B
3.4	D
3.5	E
3.6	B
3.7	A
3.8	C
3.9	D
3.10	E

Passive

4.1	D
4.2	C
4.3	E
4.4	A
4.5	A

Verb forms

5.1	D
5.2	B

Future

6.1	A
6.2	A
6.3	C
6.4	A, B
6.5	B
6.6	C
6.7	D
6.8	C
6.9	B

Modals, imperative etc.

7.1	C, D
7.2	A, C
7.3	A
7.4	D
7.5	B
7.6	E
7.7	B, D
7.8	D
7.9	C
7.10	C
7.11	A
7.12	E

There and it

8.1	B
8.2	E
8.3	A
8.4	A
8.5	B

Auxiliary verbs

9.1	C
9.2	A
9.3	C
9.4	B
9.5	B
9.6	C
9.7	D

Questions

10.1	D
10.2	D
10.3	A
10.4	A
10.5	B
10.6	D
10.7	B
10.8	A
10.9	C, E
10.10	C
10.11	A
10.12	A, C

Reported speech

11.1	E
11.2	A, B, D

-ing and to ...

12.1	B
12.2	D
12.3	B
12.4	C
12.5	B, C
12.6	C
12.7	A
12.8	D

Go, get, do, make and have

13.1	A, D
13.2	C
13.3	C, D
13.4	A, D
13.5	B
13.6	D

Pronouns and possessives

14.1	A
14.2	C
14.3	D
14.4	B
14.5	B, C
14.6	A
14.7	E
14.8	A
14.9	D
14.10	C

A and the

15.1	C
15.2	B
15.3	A, C
15.4	B
15.5	B
15.6	A
15.7	D
15.8	C
15.9	B
15.10	B
15.11	E
15.12	D
15.13	B
15.14	A

Determiners and pronouns

16.1	C
16.2	C
16.3	B
16.4	B
16.5	C
16.6	A, C
16.7	D
16.8	B, D
16.9	A
16.10	B
16.11	E
16.12	B, D
16.13	A
16.14	A, B
16.15	D
16.16	A, C
16.17	D
16.18	B
16.19	A

Adjectives and adverbs

17.1	A
17.2	C
17.3	C
17.4	D
17.5	B
17.6	B
17.7	A, C
17.8	E
17.9	A
17.10	B
17.11	D
17.12	A
17.13	D
17.14	C

Word order

18.1	B
18.2	C
18.3	B
18.4	A
18.5	A, D

Conjunctions and clauses

19.1	C
19.2	A
19.3	D
19.4	E
19.5	B, C
19.6	A, B
19.7	B, D
19.8	A

Prepositions

20.1	D
20.2	E
20.3	C, D
20.4	B
20.5	A, D
20.6	A
20.7	B
20.8	C
20.9	B
20.10	D
20.11	D
20.12	A
20.13	C
20.14	D
20.15	A
20.16	E
20.17	C
20.18	B
20.19	D
20.20	D

Phrasal verbs

21.1	C
21.2	A, B
21.3	B

Index

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).

a/an 65
  a and *some* 67–68
  a/an and *the* 69
about 111E
above 109E
active and **passive** Appendix 1
across 110
adjectives 85
  adjectives and adverbs (*quick/quickly*) 86
  comparatives (*older / more expensive*) 87–89
  superlatives (*the oldest / the most expensive*) 90
  get + adjective (*get tired* etc.) 56B
  possessive adjectives (*my/your/her* etc.) 60, 62
  something/anybody etc. + adjective 79C
  adjectives + preposition (*afraid of* etc.) 112A
adverbs 86
  word order (*always/usually/often* etc.) 94
advise (*advise somebody to …*) 53B
afraid (of) 112A
after 98, 105
ago 19B
all
  all and *every* etc. 80
  all (of) 81
  word order 94
along 110
already 95C
  already + present perfect 16B
  word order 94
also (word order) 94
always
  always + present simple 5C
  word order 94
am/is/are 1–2
  am/is/are -ing (present continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
  there is / there are 37
an see **a**
and 97
angry (**with/about**) 112A
another 65B
any
  any and *some* 76
  not + *any* 77
  any and *no* 77
  any (of) 81
anybody/anyone/anything 76D, 78–79
anywhere 79
apostrophe (*I'm, it's* etc.) Appendix 4
apostrophe 's (*my brother's car*) 64
are see **am/is/are**
around 110, 114–115, Appendix 7
arrive 108C
articles (*a/an/the*) 65–73
  a/an 65, 67–68
  a/an and *the* 69
  the 70–73
as (*not as … as*) 89
ask
  ask somebody to … 53B
  ask somebody for … 113A
at
  at 8 o'clock / at night etc. 103
  at the bus stop / at work etc. 106–107
  at and *to* 108
  at the age of … 111B
auxiliary verbs 23, 40–42
away
  run away / throw away etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7

back
  come back / give back etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7
be (infinitive of *am/is/are*)
  am/is/are 1–2
  am/is/are + *-ing* (present continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
  was/were 10
  was/were + *-ing* (past continuous) 13, 23A, 51C
  have/has been (present perfect) 15–18
  passive 21–22, Appendix 1
  will be 27
because 97
been
  have/has been (present perfect) 15–18
  been and *gone* 17C
  there has/have been 38B
before 98, 105
begin (*begin to …* or *begin -ing*) 52C
behind 109A
belong (to) 113A
below 109E
beside 109A
best 90B
better 87D
between 109A
bit (*a bit older/bigger* etc.) 88D
born 21C
both 82
  word order 94
but 97
by 111C
  by after the passive (*I was bitten by a dog.*) 21D
  by myself / by yourself etc. 63C
  by (= *beside*) 109C

can/can't 30
comparative (*older / more expensive* etc.) 87–89
conditional (*if …*)
  if I do … 99
  if I did … 100
conjunctions 97–100
  and/but/or/so/because 97
  when/before/while/after/until 98
  if 99–100
continue (*continue to …* or *continue -ing*) 52C
contractions (short forms – *I'm, it's, you've* etc.) Appendix 4
could/couldn't 30C–D
countable and uncountable nouns 67–68

depend (on) 113C
did
  didn't in negatives 12, 23D, 40C, 43B, 51A
  did in questions 12, 23D, 40C, 44B, 51A
different (from) 112A
direct speech and reported speech 50
do and **make** 57
  don't/doesn't in negatives 6, 23D, 40C, 43B, 51A
  do/does in questions 7, 23D, 40C, 44B, 51A
  don't go / don't fall etc. (imperative) 35B
down 110
  sit down / put down etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
during 105

Index

- **each other** 63D
- **either**
  - *either* and *too* 42A
  - *either (of)* 82
- **embedded questions** (*Do you know what ... ? etc.*) 49
- **end** (*at the end of*) 103B, 106B
- **enjoy**
  - *enjoy -ing* 52B
  - *enjoy myself/yourself* etc. 63A
- **enough** 91
  - *enough* and *too* 92D
- **ever**
  - *Have you ever ... ?* 17
  - superlative + *ever* 90E
  - word order 94
- **every** 80
- **everybody/everyone/everything/everywhere** 80C
- **expect** 52A, 53B

- **far**
  - *How far is it?* 39A, 47D
  - *far → further* 87B
- **fast** 86C
- **fed up** (**with**) 112A
- **few** / **a few** 84
- **finish** (*finish -ing*) 52B
- **for**
  - *for ten minutes / for three years* etc. 19, 104D
  - *for* and *to ...* 54B
  - *go for a walk* etc. 55C
  - *for* and *during* 105C
- **from** 104A, 110
- **front** (*in front of*) 109A–B
- **full** (**of**) 112A
- **further** 87B
- **future** 25–28
  - *I'm working tomorrow.* (present continuous) 25
  - *The concert starts at 7.30.* (present simple) 25C
  - *(I'm) going to (do something)* 26
  - *will* 27–28
  - *shall* 27D, 28C
  - future after *when/before/while* etc. 98B
  - future after *if* 99B

- **geographical names** with and without *the* 73
- **gerund** see **-ing**
- **get** 56
  - *get to (a place)* 56C, 108C
  - *get on / get up* etc. (phrasal verbs) 114, Appendix 6
- **give**
  - *give something to somebody / give somebody something* 96
  - *give up / give back* etc. (phrasal verbs) 115, Appendix 6–7
- **go** 55
  - *go -ing (go swimming* etc.) 55D
  - *go home / go to work / go to the cinema* 71
  - *go in / go back* etc. (phrasal verbs) 114
- **going to** (*I'm going to do something*) 26
- **gone** and **been** 17C
- **good**
  - *good* and *well* 86D
  - *good at* 112A
- **got**
  - past of *get* 11C, 56
  - *have/has got* 9, 58A

- **had**
- past of *have* 11C
  - *had to* 33B
  - *He said he had (done something)* 50, Appendix 1.1
- **happen** (**to**) 113A
- **hard** 86C
- **has** see **have**
- **hate** 52C–D
- **have** 9, 58
  - *have got / has got* 9, 58A
  - *have done / have been* etc. (present perfect) 15–18, 23C
  - *have to* 33
  - *have a nice time / have fun* etc. 35A
  - *there has/have been* 38B
  - *have breakfast / have a shower* etc. 58B
- **her** 59–60, 62
- **hers** 61–62
- **herself** 63
- **him** 59, 62
- **himself** 63
- **his** 60–62
- **holiday** (*on holiday*) 55B, 111A
- **home** 55A, 71A, 108B
  - *get home* 56C, 108C
- **how** 47
  - *How long have you ... ?* (present perfect) 18
  - *how big? / how old? / how far?* etc. 47D
  - *How long does it take?* 48
  - *how much? / how many?* 83A

- **I/you/he/she** etc. (personal pronouns) 59, 62
- **if** 99–100
  - *if we go / If you see* etc. 99
  - *if* and *when* 99C
  - *if I had / if we went* 100
  - *Do you know if ... ?* 49C
- **imperative** (*do this / don't do that* etc.) 35
- **in**
  - *in April / in summer* etc. 103
  - *in a room / in hospital* etc. 106–107
  - *in five minutes / in three years* etc. 103E
  - *in* and *to* 108
  - *put something in* 110
  - *go in / fill in* etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7
- **infinitive** (*do/see/play* etc.)
  - infinitive (*do/see* etc.) and *to* + infinitive (*to do / to see* etc.) 51, 53
  - *can/will/should* etc. + infinitive 51A
  - verbs + *to* + infinitive (*I want to go* etc.) 51B, 52–53
  - infinitive and *-ing* (*do/doing* etc.) 51–52
  - *I went to the shop to buy ...* (infinitive for purpose) 54
  - infinitive and *for ...* 54B
  - adjective + infinitive (*it's easy to ...*) 39B
  - *something to eat / nowhere to go* etc. 79D
- **-ing** (*doing/playing/going* etc.)
  - *am/is/are* + *-ing* (present continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
  - *was/were* + *-ing* (past continuous) 13, 23A, 51C
  - *-ing* and infinitive (*do/doing* etc.) 51–52
  - verbs + *-ing* (*enjoy -ing* etc.) 52B–C
  - *go -ing* (*go swimming* etc.) 55D
  - prepositions + *-ing* 105D, 112B
- **interested** (**in**) 112A
- **into** 110
- **irregular verbs** 11C, 24B, Appendix 2–3
- **is** see **am/is/are**
- **it** 39, 59B
  - *it is* and *there is* 37B, 39A
  - *it's* and *its* 60C
- **its** 60

- **just**
  - *just* + present perfect 16A
  - word order 94

- **kind** (*kind to somebody / kind of somebody*) 112A
- **know** (*Do you know where ... ?*) 49

- **learn** (*learn to ...*) 52A
- **left** (*on the left*) 109A
- **lend** (*lend something to somebody*) 96
- **less** 88C
- **let** 53D
- **let's** (*let's go / let's dance* etc.) 35C, 53D
- **like** (*What is it like?*) 46B
- **like** (verb)
  - *would like* 34, 52D, 53A
  - *do you like?* and *would you like?* 34C
  - *like to ...* or *like -ing* 52C
- **listen (to)** 113A
- **little / a little** 84
- **look**
  - *look* + adjective (*look tired* etc.) 85C
  - *look at/for/after* 113B
- **lot (a lot of ...)** 83
- **love** 52C–D

- **make** 57
  - *make somebody do something* 53D
  - *make* and *do* 57
- **many**
  - *many* and *much* 83
  - *not as many (as)* 89B
  - *too many* 92C
- **married**
  - *married to* 112A
  - *get married* 56B
- **may** 29D
- **me/you/him** etc. (personal pronouns) 59, 62
- **middle** (*in the middle of*) 107A, 109A
- **might** 29
- **mind** (*I don't mind -ing*) 52B
- **mine/yours/hers** etc. (possessive pronouns) 61–62
- **modal verbs** (*will/can/might* etc.) 27–34, 51A
- **more** 87C, 88
- **most**
  - *most (of)* 81
  - *the most expensive / the most difficult* etc. 90
- **much**
  - *much* and *many* 83
  - *much bigger / much more expensive* 88D
  - *not as much (as)* 89B
  - *too much* 92C
- **must** 31
- **mustn't** 31C
  - *must* and *should* 32E
  - *must* and *have to* 33D
- **my/your/his** etc. (possessive adjectives) 60, 62
- **myself/yourself** etc. (reflexive pronouns) 63

- **need**
  - *don't need to ...* 31D
  - *need to ...* 52A
- **negatives** 43
  - negative questions 44C
  - *no* and *none* 77
  - *not + any* 77–78
- **neither**
  - *Neither am I / Neither do I* etc. 42B
  - *neither (of)* 82
- **never**
  - *never* + present simple 5C
  - *never* + present perfect 17B
  - word order 94
- **next to** 109A
- **nice** (*nice to somebody / nice of somebody*) 112A
- **no** (*no money / no friends* etc.) 77A–B, 81B
- **nobody/no-one/nothing** 78–79
  - *no-one* and *none* 77C
- **none** 77B–C, 81B–C
- **nor** (*Nor am I / Nor do I* etc.) 42B
- **nouns** (countable and uncountable) 67–68
- **nowhere** 79

- **of**
  - *the roof of the building* etc. 64C
  - *the ... of ...* 73E
- **off** 110
  - *get off / turn off* etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6
- **offer** (*to do something*) 52A
- **often**
  - *often* + present simple 5C
  - word order 94
- **on**
  - *on Monday / on 25 April* etc. 103
  - *on the table / on the wall* 106–107
  - *on the left/right* 109A
  - *on holiday / on television* etc. 111A
  - *go on* (*holiday/ a trip* etc.) 55B
  - *get on / put on* etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
- **one/ones** 75
- **opposite** 109B
- **or** 97A–B
- **ought to** 32F
- **our** 60, 62
- **ours** 61–62
- **ourselves** 63
- **out**
  - *out of* 110
  - *go out / put out* etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
- **over** 110
  - *climb over / knock over* (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7

- **pair** (*a pair of ...*) 66B
- **passive** 21–22, 23B, Appendix 1
  - present simple (*is done*) and past simple (*was done*) 21
  - present continuous (*is being done*) and present perfect (*has been done*) 22
  - *will/can/must* (etc.) *be done* Appendix 1.2
- **past** (*Go past the cinema ...*) 110
- **past continuous** (*was/were + -ing*) 13–14, 23A, 51C
  - past continuous (*I was doing*) and past simple (*I did*) 14
  - past continuous passive Appendix 1.1
- **past participle** (*cleaned/done/seen* etc.) 24A
  - present perfect (*I have cleaned*) 15, 23C
  - passive (*the room was cleaned*) 21–22, 23B, Appendix 1
  - regular (*cleaned*) and irregular (*seen*) 24B, Appendix 2–3
- **past perfect**
  - *He said he had (done something)* 50
  - active and passive Appendix 1.1
- **past simple** (*did/cleaned/saw* etc.) 11–12
  - negative (*didn't ...*) 12, 43B
  - questions (*did ... ?*) 12, 44B
  - *was/were* 10
  - regular (*cleaned*) and irregular verbs (*saw*) 11B–C, Appendix 2–3
  - past simple + *ago* 19B
  - past simple (*I did*) and present perfect (*I have done*) 20
  - past simple (*I did*) and past continuous (*I was doing*) 14
  - past simple passive (*the room was cleaned*) 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1
  - *if* + past simple (*if I had / if we went*) 100
- **people** 66C–D
- **personal pronouns** (*I/me/you* etc.) 59, 62
- **persuade** (*persuade somebody to ...*) 53B

phrasal verbs (*get up / put on* etc.) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
plural (*cup* → *cups* / *man* → *men* etc.) 66
police (plural) 66D
possessive adjectives (*my/your/his* etc.) 60, 62
possessive pronouns (*mine/yours/his* etc.) 61–62
prefer 52C–D
prepositions 103–113
  at/on/in (time) 103
  for/since 19, 104
  until 104A–B
  before/after/during/while 105
  in/at/on (places) 106–107
  to/in/at (places) 108
  on 103, 106–107, 109A, 111A
  at 103, 106–108, 111B
  under/behind/opposite etc. (position) 109
  up/over/through etc. (movement) 110
  by 109C, 111C
  with/without 111D, 112B
  about 111E
  prepositions + *-ing* (*in -ing /without -ing* etc.) 105D, 112B
  adjective + prepositions (*afraid of* etc.) 112A
  verb + preposition (*listen to / wait for* etc.) 113
  prepositions at the end (*Who is she talking to?*) 46
  prepositions in relative clauses (*the man she is talking to*) 102B
present continuous (*am/is/are + -ing*) 3–4, 23A, 51C
  negative (*I'm not -ing*) 3
  questions (*are you -ing?*) 4
  present continuous (*I am doing*) and present simple (*I do*) 8
  present continuous passive 22A, Appendix 1.1
  present continuous for the future (*What are you doing tomorrow?*) 25
present perfect (*I have done*) 15–20, 23C
  present perfect + *just* 16A
  present perfect + *already* 16B
  present perfect + *yet* 16C, 95B
  Have you ever ... ? 17
  gone and *been* 17C
  How long have you ... ? 18
  present perfect + *for/since* 18–19
  present perfect continuous (*I have been -ing*) 18B
  present perfect (*I have done*) and past simple (*I did*) 20
  present perfect passive 22B, Appendix 1.1
  regular and irregular verbs 15B, 24, Appendix 2–3
present simple (*I work / she works* etc.) 5–7, 23D
  negative (*don't/doesn't*) 6, 43B
  questions (*do/does ... ?*) 7, 44B
  present simple + *always/usually/never* etc. 5C
  present simple (*I do*) and present continuous (*I am doing*) 8
  present simple passive (*the room is cleaned*) 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1
  present simple for the future (*The concert starts at 7.30.*) 25C
  present simple after *when/while* etc. 98B
  present simple after *if* 99B
promise (*promise to ...*) 52A
pronouns
  personal pronouns (*I/me/you* etc.) 59, 62
  possessive pronouns (*mine/yours* etc.) 61–62
  reflexive pronouns (*myself/yourself* etc.) 63
  one/ones 75
  relative pronouns (*who/which/that*) 101–102
put
  put something in ... 110
  put on / put out etc. (phrasal verbs) 115, Appendix 7

questions 44–47
  am/is/are ... ? 2
  do/does ... ? (present simple) 7, 44B
  did ... ? (past simple) 12, 44B
  Why don't ... ? / Why isn't ... ? etc. 44C
  Who saw you? / Who did you see? 45
  preposition at the end (*Who is she talking to?*) 46
  What / Which / How ... ? 47
  How long does it take? 48
  Do you know where ... ? (embedded questions) 49
  reply questions (*Have you? / Are you?* etc.) 41A
  question tags (*... do you? / ... isn't it?* etc.) 41B
reflexive pronouns (*myself/yourself* etc.) 63
regular and irregular verbs 11, 24, Appendix 2–3
relative clauses 101–102
relative pronouns (*who/which/that*) 101–102
reply questions (*Have you? / Are you?*) 41A
reported speech
  He said that ... / He told me that ... 50
  He told me to ... 53B–C
right (*on the right*) 109A
round 110
  turn round / show round (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7

's (apostrophe **'s**) 64, Appendix 4.5
same 70B, 89E
say/said
  He said that ... (reported speech) 50
  say and *tell* 50B
scared (of) 112A
shall 27D, 28C
short forms (*I'm / it's / you've* etc.) Appendix 4
should 32
simple past see **past simple**
simple present see **present simple**
since 19A, 104C
singular and plural (*flower* → *flowers*) 66
so
  so am I / so do I etc. 42B
  I was tired, so I went to bed. 97
some
  some and *a/an* 67–68
  some and *any* 76
  some (of) 81
somebody/someone/something/somewhere 76, 79
sometimes
  sometimes + present simple 5C
  word order 94
sorry (*sorry about* and *sorry for*) 112A
speak (to) 113A
spelling Appendix 5
start (*start to ...* and *start -ing*) 52C
still 95
  word order 94
stop (*stop -ing*) 52B
suggest (*suggest -ing*) 52B
superlative (*the biggest / the most expensive* etc.) 90

tags (question tags) 41B
take (*How long does it take?*) 48
talk (to) 113A
tell/told
  He told me that … 50
  tell and *say* 50B
  Can you tell me where … ? 49A
  He told me to … 53B–C
tenses
  active and passive Appendix 1.1
  present continuous (*I am doing*) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
  present simple (*I do*) 5–7, 23D, 25C
  past simple (*I did*) 11–12, 14, 20, 23D
  past continuous (*I was doing*) 13–14, 23A, 51C
  present perfect (*I have done*) 15–20, 23C
  be/have/do in present and past tenses 23
than 88–89
that 74
  He said that … (reported speech) 50C
  that and *this* 74
  a thing that … (relative clauses) 101
the 69–73
  the and *a/an* 69
  the same 70B
  the sun / the sky etc. 70C
  the cinema / the theatre / the bank etc. 71B
  flowers / the flowers 72
  the in names of places 73
  the biggest / the most expensive etc. 90
their 60, 62
theirs 61, 62
them 59, 62
themselves 63
there
  there is/are 37
  there was/were 38A
  there has/have been 38B
  there will be 38C
  there is and *it is* 37B
these 74
think (*think about / think of*) 113A
this 74
those 74
through 110
till (= *until*) 104B
to
  time 104A
  places 108, 110
  go to … 55A, 108A
  get to … 56C, 108C
to + infinitive (*to go / to be* etc.)
  see **infinitive**
too 92
  too and *either* 42A
turn (*turn round / turn on* etc.)
(phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7

uncountable nouns
  (*salt/water/music* etc.) 67–68
under 109D, 110
until 98B, 104A–B
up 110
  get up / pick up etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
us 59, 62
used (*I used to …*) 36
usually
  usually + present simple 5C
  word order 94

verbs
  present tenses 1–9, 23, 25
  past tenses 10–14, 20, 23
  present perfect 15–20, 23
  passive 21–22, Appendix 1
  regular and irregular verbs 24, Appendix 2–3
  future 25–28
  modal verbs (*will/can/should* etc.) 27–34, 51A
  negatives 43
  questions 44–47
  reported speech 50
  verbs + *-ing* 51–52
  verbs + *to …* (infinitive) 51–53
  verbs + preposition (*look at / speak to* etc.) 113
  phrasal verbs (*get up / put on* etc.) 114–115, Appendix 6–7

wait (for) 54C, 113A
want
  want to … 52A
  want somebody to … 53A
was/were 10
  was/were + *-ing* (past continuous) 13, 23A, 51C
  was/were done (passive) 21, 23B
  there was/were 38A
  if I was/were … 100B
well 86D
were see **was**
what
  What … ? and *Who … ?* 45C
  What … like? 46B
  What … ? 47
  What … ? and *Which … ?* 47C
when 98
  when and *if* 99C
whether 49C
which
  Which … ? 47
  Which … ? and *What … ?* 47C
  Which one/ones? 75B
  a thing which … (relative clauses) 101
while 98, 105
who
  Who … ? 45
  a person who … (relative clauses) 101
whose (*Whose is this?*) 61D
will 27–28
  will and *shall* 27D, 28C
  won't 27A
  there will be 38C
with/without 111D
  with/without + *-ing* 112B
won't (= *will not*) 27A
word order
  questions 44–46
  present continuous questions 4B
  present simple questions 7B
  past simple questions 12D
  passive 21–22
  Do you know where … ? (embedded questions) 49
  verb + object 93A
  place and time 93B
  always/usually/often etc. 94
  after *give/lend/send* etc. 96
worse 87D
worst 90B
would
  I'd like / would you like? 34
  would like/love etc. 52D
  He would buy a car if he had the money. 100

yet 95B
  yet + present perfect 16C
you 59, 62
your 60, 62
yours 61–62
yourself/yourselves 63

N11<
41273832
109
Zentral- und Landesbibliothek Berlin

Essential Grammar in Use

With answers • Fourth Edition

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary learners of English

Clear examples and easy-to-follow exercises make *Essential Grammar in Use* perfect for independent study. Used by millions of learners around the world, it covers all the grammar you will need at this level.

- Easy-to-use format of two-page units with clear explanations on the left and exercises on the right
- A study guide to help you find the units you need to study
- Additional exercises for extra practice

Want more grammar practice? The *Essential Grammar in Use Extra Activities* app and *Essential Grammar in Use Supplementary Exercises* book are also available.

CEFR Levels A1, A2, B1

Also available: **Essential Grammar in Use Fourth Edition eBook**
English Grammar in Use Fourth Edition with answers
Essential Grammar in Use Extra Activities app

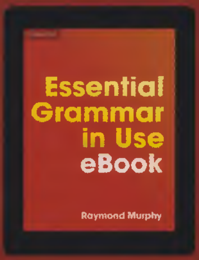
Essential Grammar in Use eBook
Raymond Murphy

ISBN 978 1 107 48060 5

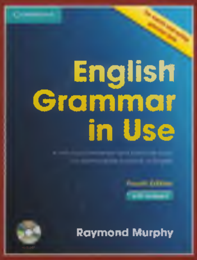
English Grammar in Use
Raymond Murphy

ISBN 978 0 521 18939 2

CAMBRIDGE
Essential Grammar in Use Extra Activities

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

CAMBRIDGE

Essential Grammar in Use Supplementary Exercises

with answers

SECOND EDITION

Helen Naylor
with Raymond Murphy

New

Essential Grammar in Use Supplementary Exercises

With Answers

Helen Naylor
with Raymond Murphy

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town, Singapore, São Paulo, Delhi

Cambridge University Press
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9780521675420

© Cambridge University Press 2007

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2007
3rd printing 2009

Printed in Dubai by Oriental Press

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-0-521-675420 Essential Grammar in Use Supplementary Exercises with Answers
ISBN 978-0-521-675413 Essential Grammar in Use Supplementary Exercises without Answers
ISBN 978-0-521-675802 Essential Grammar in Use with Answers
ISBN 978-0-521-675819 Essential Grammar in Use without Answers
ISBN 978-0-521-675444 Essential Grammar in Use CD-ROM

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or
accuracy of URLs for external or third-party Internet websites referred to in
this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is,
or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel
timetables and other factual information given in this work are correct at
the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee
the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Produced by Kamae Design, Oxford.

Contents

To the student v
To the teacher v

Exercises Page
1–5 am/is/are 6
6–9 I am doing (present continuous) 9
10–14 I do/work/like (present simple) 11
15–19 I am doing and I do (present continuous and present simple) 14
20–21 have got 17
22–29 was/were and I worked/got/went (past) 18
30–32 I was doing and I did (past continuous and past simple) 22
33–35 I do / I am doing and I did / I was doing (present and past, simple and continuous) 25
36–39 I have done (present perfect) 28
40–43 How long have you … ? (present perfect questions) 31
44–49 I have done and I did (present perfect and past simple) 33
50–52 I do / I have done / I did (present, present perfect and past) 37
53–57 is done / was done and is being done / has been done (passive) 39
58–60 be/have/do and regular/irregular verbs (verb forms) 42
61–63 What are you doing tomorrow? (the future: present tenses) 44
64–66 I'm going to do 46
67–70 will/shall 48
71–74 I am doing / I am going to do / I'll do (future forms) 51
75–76 might 53
77–80 can and could 54
81–82 must mustn't don't need to 56
83–85 should 57
86–87 I have to 58
88–90 Do this! Don't do that! Let's do this! 59
91–92 I used to 61

93–94 there and it 63
95–99 I do do you? so do I I don't 64
(auxiliary verbs)
100–105 is it … ? have you … ? do they … ? 67
(questions)
106–109 Do you know where … ? 71
110–111 She said that … He told me that …
(reported speech) 73
112–118 doing do to do 75
119–120 do make have 78
121–125 I me my mine myself 79
(pronouns and possessives)
126–128 Kate's camera 81
129–132 a/an and some
(singular and plural) 82
133–136 a/an and the 84
137–141 some any no none 86
142–143 someone anything nowhere 88
144–145 every and all 89
146–147 all most some any no none 90
148–149 both either neither 91
150–152 a lot / much / many (a) little / (a) few 92
153–154 old / nice / interesting quickly / badly / suddenly 94
(adjectives and adverbs)
155–159 older (than) the oldest not as old as 95
(comparatives and superlatives)
160–164 enough and too 98
165–166 word order 100
167–168 and but or so because when … 101
169–171 if we go and if we went 102
172–174 a person (who) … a thing (that/which) … 103
(relative clauses)
175–177 at until before 105
(prepositions of time)
178–180 in under through 107
(prepositions of place and movement)
181–183 good at (doing) listen to 109
(prepositions before and after verbs)
184–185 go in, fall off, run away 111
(phrasal verbs)

Key 112
Thanks 128

To the student

This book is for elementary (and lower intermediate) students who want extra practice in grammar. It covers most of the grammar areas in *Essential Grammar in Use*. You can use it without a teacher.

There are 185 exercises in this new edition. Each exercise relates to a particular part of *Essential Grammar in Use: Third Edition*. You can find the *Essential Grammar in Use* unit numbers in the top right-hand corner of each page. You can use this book if you don't have *Essential Grammar in Use* because all the answers, with lots of alternatives, are given in the Key (pages 112–127). But if you want an explanation of the grammar points, you'll need to check in *Essential Grammar in Use*.

The grammar points covered in this book are not in order of difficulty, so you can go straight to the parts where you need most practice. But where there are several exercises on one grammar point, you will find that the easier ones come first. So, it is a good idea to follow the exercise order in each section.

Many of the exercises are in the form of letters, conversations or short articles. You can use these as models for writing or speaking practice.

To the teacher

Essential Grammar in Use Supplementary Exercises offers extra practice of most of the grammar covered in *Essential Grammar in Use: Third Edition*. Much of the language is contextualised within dialogues, letters, articles, etc., encouraging students to consider meaning as well as form. This book can be used as self-study material or as a basis for further practice in class or as homework. It is designed for students who have already worked through the exercises in *Essential Grammar in Use* (or elsewhere), but who need more, or more challenging, practice. It is particularly useful for revision work.

The exercises are organised in the same order as the units of *Essential Grammar in Use*, and the numbers of the relevant *Essential Grammar in Use* units are shown in the top right-hand corner of each page. Although the grammar areas are not covered in order of difficulty in the book as a whole, there is a progression where several exercises are offered on one area. For example, Exercise 7 requires students to use given verbs in the correct form, Exercise 8 requires them to write complete positive and negative sentences, and Exercise 9 requires them to write complete questions within the context of a conversation. The contextualised practice in the book offers the opportunity for much further writing practice, using the exercises as models or springboards for speaking and writing practice of a freer nature. The symbol 📝 is used where a student is required to write freely from personal experience.

am/is/are

1 Complete the description of Hannah, and her family and friends. Use the words from the box.

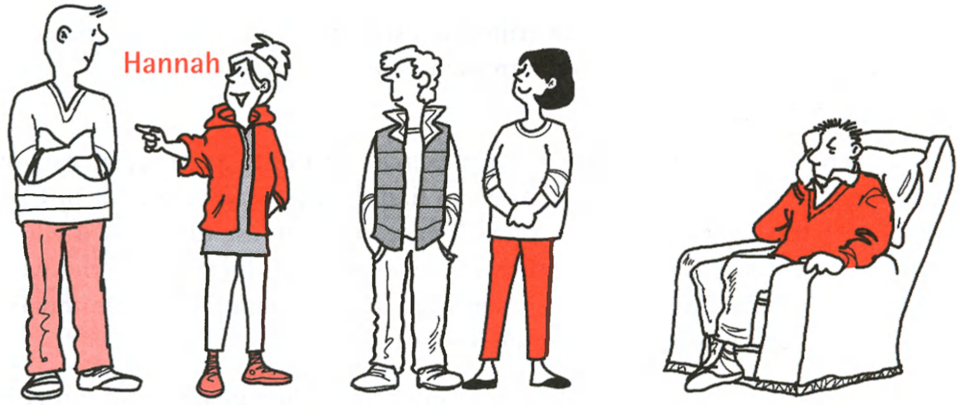

’m (am) / ’m not (am not)	’s (is) / isn’t (is not)	’re (are) / aren’t (are not)

‘Hello, I (1) ..’m.. Hannah. I (2) ..’m not.. British. I (3) .... from Canada. My favourite sport (4) .... basketball, but I (5) .... a good player because I (6) .... very tall.

This (7) .... my brother, Josh. He (8) .... interested in sport. He thinks it (9) .... boring.

Mark and Steffi (10) .... our friends. They (11) .... at work today because it’s a holiday. It (12) .... Steffi’s birthday today – she (13) .... 18 years old.’

Write what Hannah says about her father.

That’s my father.
(Steve) ....
(45 years old) ....
(engineer) ....
(interested in cars) ....
(not at work today – sick) ....

2 Rose works for a magazine. She is asking a man some questions. Complete the questions.

	ROSE	ALBERTO
1	What’s your .... name?	Alberto Simonetti.
2	.... from?	Italy.
3	.... old .... ?	20.
4	.... eyes?	Brown.
5	.... job?	I’m a student.
6	.... afraid of?	Snakes and spiders.
7	.... favourite actor?	Al Pacino.
8	.... here?	Because I want to visit your country.
	Thank you for answering my questions.	*You’re welcome*

3 Look at the words in the boxes and answer the questions. Write two sentences, one positive and one negative.

1 Which of these buildings is old?

The Acropolis in Athens	The Opera House in Sydney

The Acropolis in Athens is old.

The Opera House in Sydney isn't old.

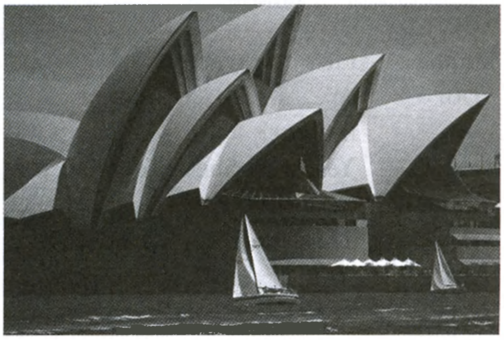

2 Which of these countries are islands?

Cuba	Scotland	Iceland	Russia

Cuba and Iceland are islands.

Scotland and

3 Which of these vegetables are green?

carrots	onions	peas

4 Which of these animals are big?

elephants	whales	cats

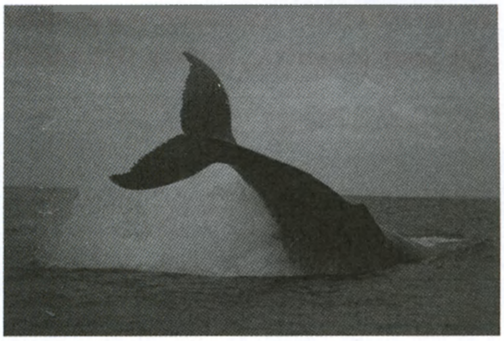

5 Which of these is expensive?

gold	milk	ice-cream

6 Which of these are you interested in?

politics	music	sport

4 Look at the photo of a family group. Read the answers first, then write the questions about the people.

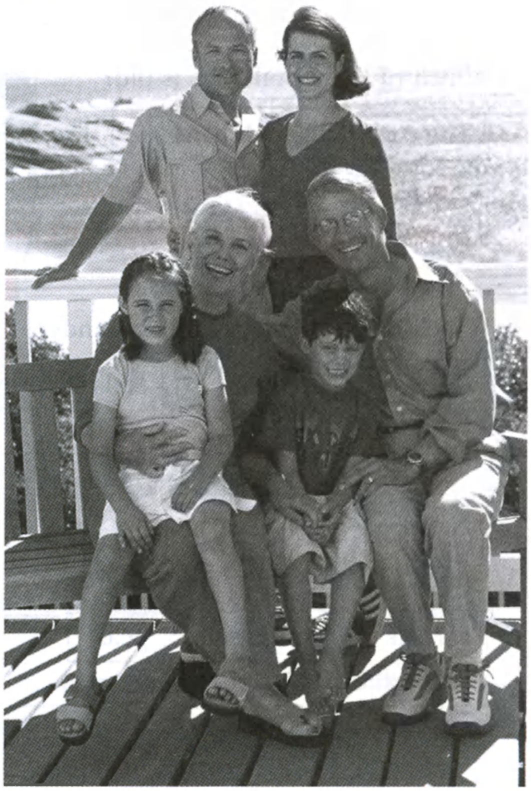

YOU: (1) Who's that man . ?
MARIA: That's my father. He's a dentist.
YOU: (2) ……………………………… ?
MARIA: He's 58.
YOU: (3) ……………… that ……………… mother?
MARIA: Yes, it is. She's a dentist, too.
YOU: (4) ……………………………… ?
MARIA: That's my sister, Laura.
YOU: (5) ……………………………… ?
MARIA: She's 30.
YOU: (6) ……………… your brother?
MARIA: No, it's Laura's husband.
YOU: (7) ……………………………… ?
MARIA: Ferdinand.
YOU: (8) ……………………… their children?
MARIA: Yes. That's Ella and Francisco.

5 Write sentences using the words from the box. Include some questions (Where is … ?, Are your parents … ? etc.). Use each word at least once.

18	I	is/isn't	your parents	expensive
Jim's book	am/am not	an engineer	Anna	where
old	Spanish	at work	are/aren't	how

Anna isn't Spanish.
Where is Jim's book?

I am doing
(present continuous)

Units 3–4,
Appendix 5

6 How do you spell it? Write the continuous form (-ing) of these verbs in the correct list.

~~arrive~~ ~~begin~~ come ~~cry~~ dance decide ~~die~~ dig forget have help laugh listen
lie live make play put rob start stop swim tie wear win work write

+ -ing	n → nn, t → tt, etc.	e → ing	ie → ying
crying	beginning	arriving	dying
....	....	....	....
....	....	....	....
....	....	....	
....	....	....	
....	....	....	
....	....	....	
....	....	....	

7 Complete the postcard with the correct form of the present continuous (is/are + -ing). Sometimes the verb is negative (isn't/aren't + -ing).

Well, here we are in Jamaica, and the sun
(1) ....is shining.... (shine).
I (2) .... (lie) on the beach
and (3) .... (watch) people in the
sea. Most of them (4) .... (swim),
but one or two of them (5) ....
(swim) – they (6) .... (stand) in
the water and (7) .... (watch) the
little fish around their feet. A group of people
(8) .... (play) volleyball on the
beach. The sun is very hot, so Julia
(9) .... (lie) with me on the beach –
she (10) .... (sit) under a tree.
She (11) .... (wear) a big sun hat
and (12) .... (eat) a piece of
watermelon. It's a great life! See you in ten
days.
Love, Josie

8 Look at the picture and the description. Correct the mistakes in the description.

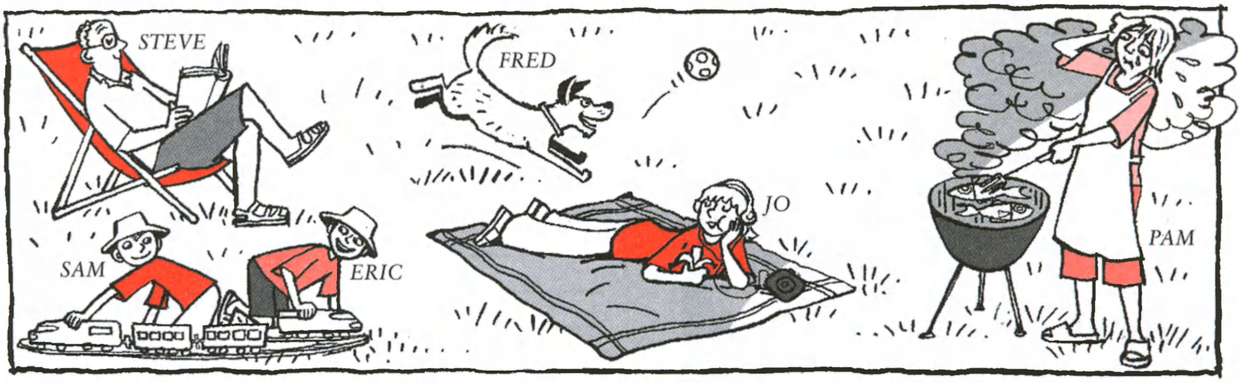

Steve is reading a newspaper. The boys, Sam and Eric, are playing with a ball. They are both wearing sunglasses. Pam is cooking chicken. She's laughing because the smoke is getting in her eyes. Jo is standing with her mother and is listening to music on her personal stereo. She is eating an orange. Fred, the dog, is lying on the grass asleep.

1 Steve isn't reading a newspaper. He's reading a book.
2 Sam and Eric ……………………
3 They ……………………
4 ……………………
5 ……………………
6 ……………………
7 ……………………
8 ……………………

9 You are talking to your friend, Barbara, on the phone. Ask questions to find out what she and her family are doing.

	YOU	BARBARA
	Where are you?	In the sitting room.
1	What are you doing (do)?	I'm talking to you!
2	…………………… (sit)?	On the floor.
3	…………………… (laugh)?	Because there's a funny man on TV.
4	…………………… (watch)?	A comedy programme.
5	…………………… (enjoy) it?	Yes, I am, but I'm listening to you too.
	Where's Pete?	In the kitchen.
6	…………………… (cook) dinner?	No, he's talking to someone.
7	…………………… (talk) to?	His friend, James.
	And where are your parents?	In the kitchen too.
8	…………………… (talk) to James?	No, they're making dinner.
9	…………………… (make)?	My mum is cooking fish and my dad is cutting the bread.

I do/work/like
(present simple)

10 Sam and Marisa have very different lives. Read about Sam. Then complete the sentences about Marisa. Use the present simple, negative and then positive.

Sam gets up early. (1) Marisa ....doesn't get up early.....
She ....stays.... in bed until 10 o'clock. (stay)

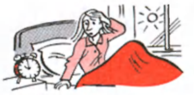

He drives a car. (2) She ....
She .... a bike. (ride)

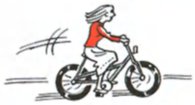

He works in an office. (3) ....
.... at home. (stay)

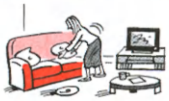

He has lunch in a restaurant. (4) ....
.... lunch at home. (make)

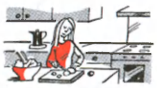

He likes cats. (5) ....
.... dogs. (prefer)

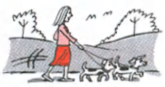

He plays computer games. (6) ....
.... TV. (watch)

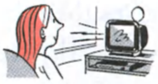

11 Complete the description of London. Use the present simple.

London, the capital city of the UK,

(1) ....has.... (have) a population of eight million. It is a 24-hour city. Some people say the city never (2) .... (sleep), so it's an exciting place to visit.

There are many interesting things for tourists to do and see in London – the London Eye, for example. The London Eye is a big wheel. It (3) .... (have) 32 capsules and each one (4) .... (hold) 25 people. The wheel (5) .... (not move) very fast – a ride (6) .... (take) 30 minutes. A ticket (7) .... (cost) £11.50 for adults. You (8) .... (not pay) for children under 5 years old. It is better to book your tickets before if you (9) .... (not want) to wait for hours. The London Eye (10) .... (not work) late at night, but it is open every day, usually until 10 pm.

12 There are mistakes in nine of these sentences. Correct the sentences where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

1 David take the bus to work. David takes the bus to work.
2 Go you to the office every day? ....
3 My car don't work when it is cold. ....
4 What time the film starts? ....
5 How many eggs you want for breakfast? ....
6 Does the 9.30 train stop at every station? ....
7 What does do your father? ....
8 I not write many letters. I usually use email. ....
9 What Sue usually have for lunch? ....
10 How much do these apples cost? ....
11 Charlie play tennis, but he doesn't enjoy it. ....

13 Complete the text with the words from the box.

gives them breakfast	6 o'clock	many times	St John's Hospital	bus
wakes the children up	10 o'clock	very tired	20 children	~~a nurse~~

My name is Jennie. I'm (1) a nurse and I work at (2) .... I look after sick children at night. I start work at (3) .... and finish early at (4) .... in the morning. I go to work by (5) ...., but I come home in the morning by taxi because I'm tired. I have (6) .... in my section. I look at the children (7) .... during the night. Sometimes I sit and talk to a child. The children sleep most of the time. At 6 o'clock the day nurse arrives and (8) .... She (9) .... at 7 o'clock. I go home and go to bed at 8 o'clock. I usually feel (10) ....

You are asking Jennie about her job. Use the information in the text to complete the questions.

11 What do you do ?
12 Where .... ?
13 What time .... ?
14 What time .... ?
15 How .... ?
16 How many .... ?
17 How often .... ?
18 When .... ?
19 What .... at 7 o'clock?
20 How .... when you go home?

14 Paula is in the city centre. An interviewer is asking her some questions about the local cinema. Read Paula's answers first, then write the interviewer's questions.

CINEMA
SCREEN 2 : THE RE

INTERVIEWER: (1) How often do you go to the cinema ?
PAULA: Usually once a week.
INTERVIEWER: (2) .... alone?
PAULA: No, with a friend.
INTERVIEWER: (3) .... there?
PAULA: I walk because I live nearby.
INTERVIEWER: (4) .... ?
PAULA: £6.00.
INTERVIEWER: (5) .... ?
PAULA: At the back of the cinema.
INTERVIEWER: (6) .... ?
PAULA: All kinds of films, especially comedies.
INTERVIEWER: (7) .... film?
PAULA: My favourite is ‘Silent Streets’.
INTERVIEWER: (8) ....
anything – ice-cream, for example?
PAULA: No, I don’t, but I usually have a cola.
INTERVIEWER: Thank you for answering my questions.
PAULA: You’re welcome.

Now use Paula's answers to complete this paragraph.

Paula usually (9) goes to the cinema once a week with a friend. She (10) .... to the cinema because she (11) .... nearby. The ticket (12) .... £6.00 and she (13) .... at the back of the cinema. She (14) .... all kinds of films, especially comedies. Her favourite film (15) .... ‘Silent Streets’. She (16) .... anything, but she usually (17) .... a cola.

What about you? Do you go to the cinema? Write a short paragraph like the one above.

....

....

....

....

I am doing and I do
(present continuous and present simple)

15 Which is right?

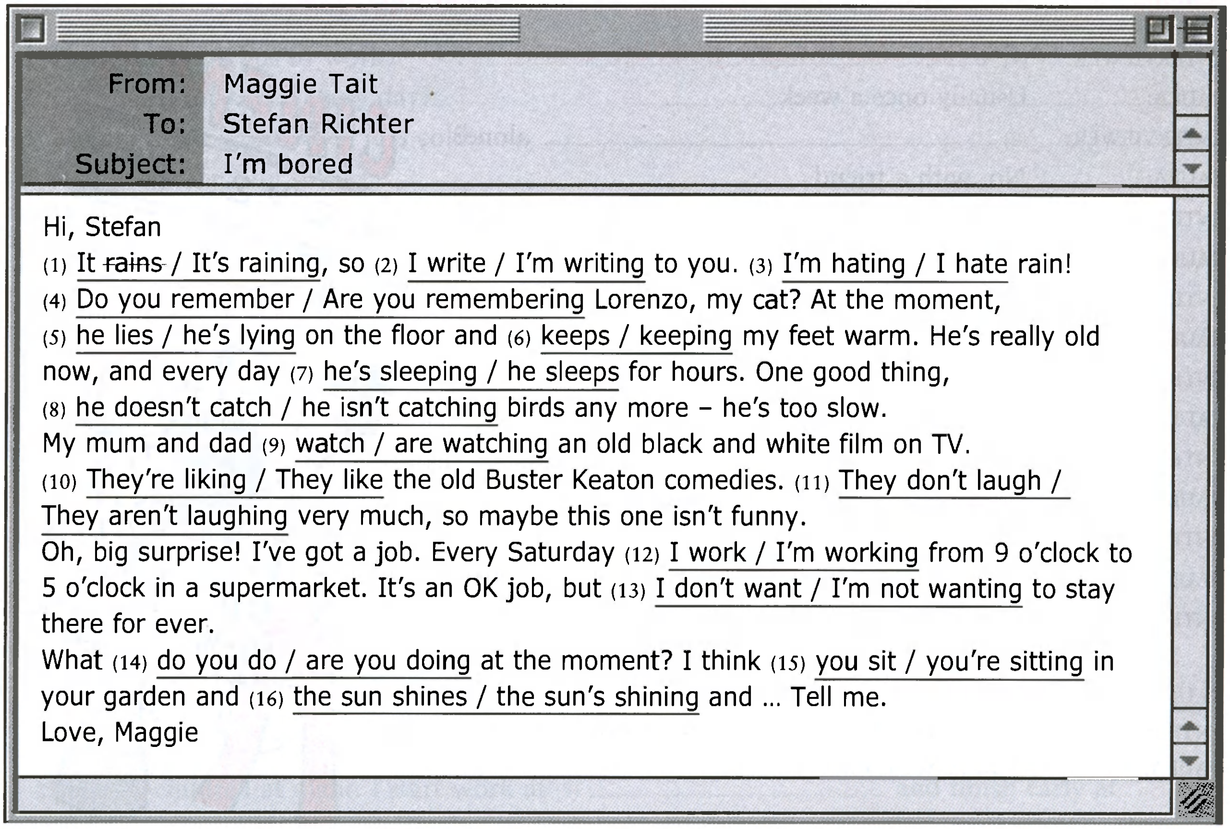

From: Maggie Tait
To: Stefan Richter
Subject: I'm bored

Hi, Stefan
(1) It ~~rains~~ / It's raining, so (2) I write / I'm writing to you. (3) I'm hating / I hate rain! (4) Do you remember / Are you remembering Lorenzo, my cat? At the moment, (5) he lies / he's lying on the floor and (6) keeps / keeping my feet warm. He's really old now, and every day (7) he's sleeping / he sleeps for hours. One good thing, (8) he doesn't catch / he isn't catching birds any more – he's too slow.
My mum and dad (9) watch / are watching an old black and white film on TV. (10) They're liking / They like the old Buster Keaton comedies. (11) They don't laugh / They aren't laughing very much, so maybe this one isn't funny.
Oh, big surprise! I've got a job. Every Saturday (12) I work / I'm working from 9 o'clock to 5 o'clock in a supermarket. It's an OK job, but (13) I don't want / I'm not wanting to stay there for ever.
What (14) do you do / are you doing at the moment? I think (15) you sit / you're sitting in your garden and (16) the sun shines / the sun's shining and ... Tell me.
Love, Maggie

16 Read about what John does before breakfast every day and what he is doing now.

Every day John gets up at 6.30 and does some exercises in the garden. Then he has a shower. He gets dressed and listens to the news on the radio. Then he goes downstairs and makes breakfast. At the moment John is sitting in the kitchen and drinking a cup of tea. He is reading a magazine and thinking about his holiday.

Now write two paragraphs about yourself. Use some of the words from the boxes, or some of the words from John's story, or think of your own ideas.

- Write about four things you do before breakfast every day.

clean my teeth	feed the cat	go for a run	read	talk

Every day I ……………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………………

- Write about four things you're doing now.

do	hold	learn	listen to	look at	sit	write

At the moment I ……………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………………

17 Look at the pictures. Write two questions for each picture. Use the present continuous of one verb and the present simple of the other verb.

1 RUTH: Where ....are you going.... ? (go)
JAMES: To the cinema.
RUTH: ....Do you enjoy.... the cinema? (enjoy)
JAMES: Yes, I do.

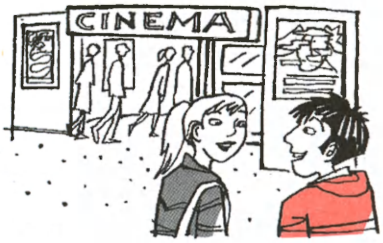

2 BOY: What .... ? (do)
WOMAN: I'm a photographer.
BOY: .... ? (do)
WOMAN: I'm checking the light.

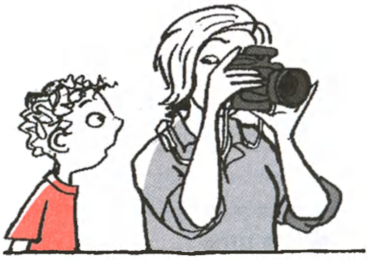

3 JEFF: When .... usually .... work? (finish)
BRIAN: At quarter past five.
JEFF: Why .... now? (leave)
BRIAN: Because I have a dentist's appointment.

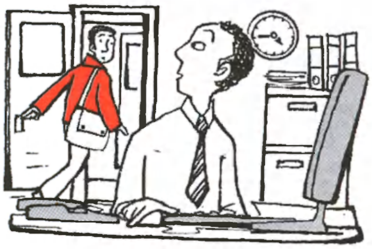

4 LUCY: What .... John .... ? (do)
PAUL: Reading, I think.
LUCY: .... a lot? (read)
PAUL: Yes, all the time.

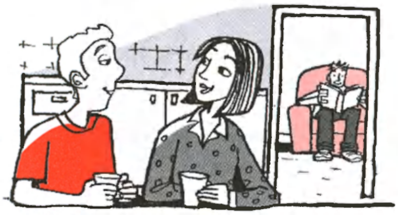

5 BETH: .... the children .... ? (run)
ANNE: Because they're late.
BETH: .... they .... school? (start)
ANNE: At half past eight.

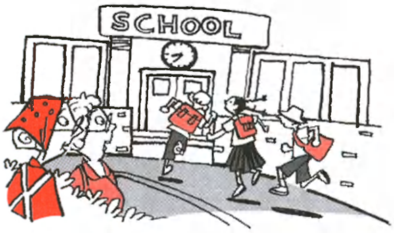

18

Complete the sentences. Use the present simple (do etc.) or present continuous (doing etc.), positive or negative.

1	Have a chocolate.	No thanks, I don't like (like) chocolate.
2	What are you reading (read)?	A letter from my sister.
3	Let's have lunch in the garden.	No, we can't. It .... (rain).
4	Where's David?	He's in his study. He .... (read) emails.
5	Are Sue and Joe asleep?	Yes. Turn the TV off. They .... (watch) it.
6	What time .... (get up)?	Me? About 7 usually.
7	.... (eat) meat?	Sandra? No, she's a vegetarian.
8	Why .... (smile)?	Because I'm happy.
9	Do you like French films?	Not really. I .... (understand) French.

19

Write questions from these words. Put the verbs in the present simple (do you have etc.) or the present continuous (are you having etc.). Then write your own positive or negative short answers.

1 you / have / dinner at the moment?
Are you having dinner at the moment? — No, I'm not.

2 you / read / a newspaper every day?
....

3 it / rain much in your country?
....

4 you / usually / do your homework on a computer?
....

5 you / have / a drink now?
....

6 you / drink coffee for breakfast every day?
....

7 you / work / at the moment?
....

8 students / eat lunch at school in your country?
....

20 Complete the description of Ruth with has got ('s got) / hasn't got or have got ('ve got) / haven't got.

Ruth is 21. She (1) ...'s got... fair hair and blue eyes. She (2) .... two brothers, Will and Carl, but she (3) .... any sisters. Her brothers (4) .... brown hair and brown eyes. One of her brothers, Will, is married. He (5) .... two children, so Ruth is an aunt. She lives with her parents in a house. It (6) .... five rooms, but it (7) .... a garden. She (8) .... a small room in the house. In it she (9) .... her computer and a TV. She (10) .... a car, but her parents (11) .... one because they can't drive.

What about you? Write about yourself and other people you know. Write positive and negative sentences for each person.

I ...'ve got long hair...

...I haven't got a bike...

....

....

My mother/father ....

....

Our neighbours ....

....

My teacher ....

....

My best friend ....

....

21 Write questions with got (have you got ... ?, has it got ... ? etc.).

1 MARY: Tim is a good photographer.
PAT: What kind of camera ...has he got... ?
2 HELEN: My neighbours love cats.
PAM: How many .... ?
3 PETER: Jack and Sally are buying a new house.
SUE: How many rooms .... ?
4 DIANA: Tony wants to talk to you.
ALEX: .... my mobile number?
5 MARTIN: My sister and brother-in-law have been married for six years.
ROSE: .... any children?
6 TONY: Kate is going to the dentist this afternoon.
ALICE: .... toothache?
7 CHRIS: Can you write down Jon's new address for me?
SARAH: Sure. .... a pen?

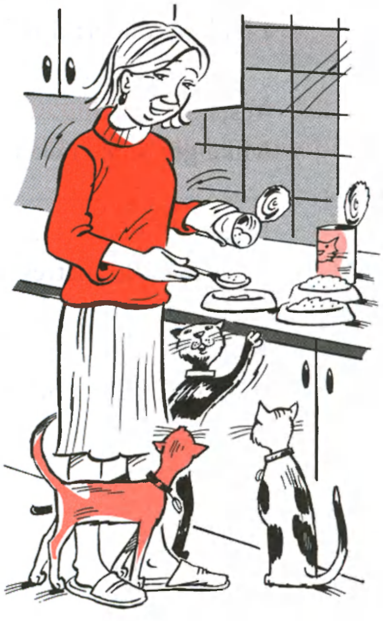

was/were and I worked/got/went
(past)

22 Complete the sentences. Use I/she was etc. or we/they were etc.

1 Liz worked very late last night. ……She was…… tired.
2 Carlos lost his job yesterday. ………………… angry.
3 We laughed a lot at last night's film. ………………… funny.
4 Joe and his dog fell into the river yesterday. ………………… wet.
5 Yesterday was a beautiful day. ………………… sunny.
6 We saw a horror film on Saturday. ………………… really frightened.
7 Paul and Sue didn't have anything to eat yesterday. ………………… hungry.
8 I had a great holiday last year. ………………… happy.

23 Where were you at these times? Use I was at/in + a place.

1 ……I was at the swimming pool…… at 6.30 yesterday morning.
2 ………………………… last Saturday.
3 ………………………… at 7 o'clock yesterday evening.
4 ………………………… last Tuesday afternoon.
5 ………………………… at midnight last night.
6 ………………………… at 1 o'clock yesterday.
7 ………………………… ten minutes ago.

24 Write questions and short answers with was/were.

1 MAX: My grandmother died in 1990.
OSCAR: ……Was she very old…… ? (old)
MAX: No, ……she wasn't…… .
2 ELLA: Jack and Rita had an examination yesterday.
BETH: ………………………… ? (difficult)
ELLA: No, ………………………… .
3 SALLY: I had a wonderful red sports car when I was younger.
TONY: ………………………… ? (fast)
SALLY: Yes, ………………………… .
4 DAVE: Mike got some tickets for the World Cup.
CAROL: ………………………… ? (expensive)
DAVE: No, ………………………… .
5 ALEX: I ran the 100 metres in competitions when I was younger.
KATYA: ………………………… ? (nervous)
ALEX: No, ………………………… .
6 BEN: Julia wasn't at work yesterday.
MARK: ………………………… ? (ill)
BEN: Yes, ………………………… .

25 Last weekend Judy went to Paris to see her friend, Sarah. Read Judy's diary, then complete the letter that she wrote. Use the past simple, positive or negative.

Saturday 27 June

am fly to Paris
have lunch with Sarah
pm go to an art exhibition
meet Chris for dinner
go to the Tango Club

Sunday 28 June

am buy a birthday present for Mum
have a picnic by the river
pm take a boat cruise on the river
make dinner in Sarah's apartment
catch the late flight home

… so early on Saturday morning I (1) flew to Paris and
(2) …………………… with Sarah. Then we (3) …………………… in the
afternoon. We (4) …………………… for dinner, but we
(5) …………………… because we were too tired. On Sunday morning I
(6) …………………… for Mum, and then for lunch we
(7) …………………… . Unfortunately, in the afternoon it rained, so we
(8) …………………… on the river. You know I love cooking, so I
(9) …………………… and then I (10) …………………… .

Think about what you did one day last week. Write a letter to a friend. Use the past simple.

On …………………… morning I ……………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………

26 A father asked his child some questions at the end of the day. Begin the questions with Did you … and the verbs from box A. Complete the questions with the endings from box B.

A

- ~~do~~
- go
- have
- have
- play
- spend
- visit
- watch

B

- a big lunch
- any money
- football
- your grandmother
- a history lesson
- any TV
- to school
- ~~your homework~~

Did you do your homework?
……………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………

27 Here is part of a website about the singer Elvis Presley. Complete the text with the verbs from the box. Use the past simple, positive or negative.

be	be	be	~~come~~	die	go	have	have	leave	make
marry	meet	sing	spend	study	teach	wear	win		

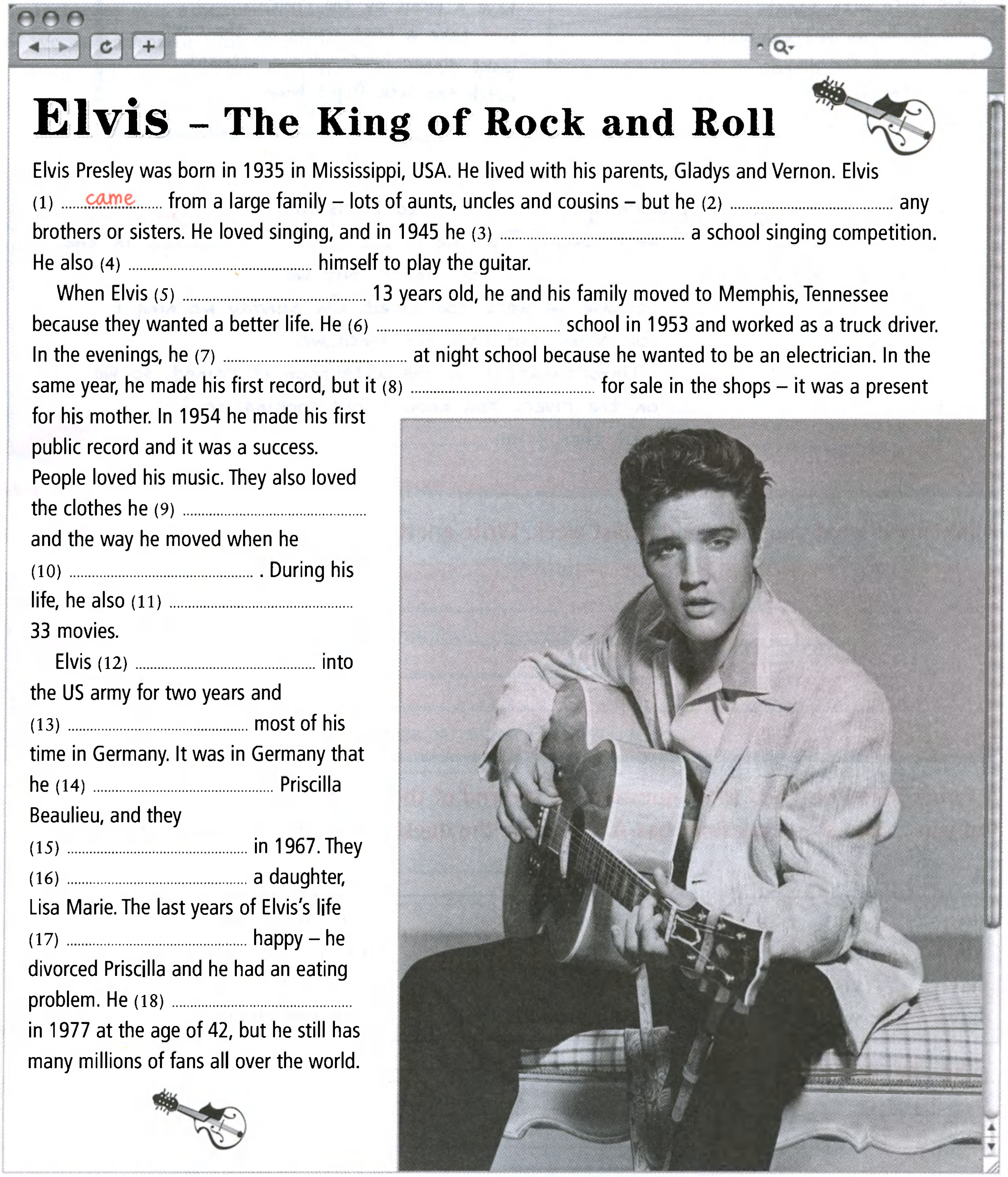

Elvis – The King of Rock and Roll

Elvis Presley was born in 1935 in Mississippi, USA. He lived with his parents, Gladys and Vernon. Elvis (1) ....came.... from a large family – lots of aunts, uncles and cousins – but he (2) .... any brothers or sisters. He loved singing, and in 1945 he (3) .... a school singing competition. He also (4) .... himself to play the guitar.

When Elvis (5) .... 13 years old, he and his family moved to Memphis, Tennessee because they wanted a better life. He (6) .... school in 1953 and worked as a truck driver. In the evenings, he (7) .... at night school because he wanted to be an electrician. In the same year, he made his first record, but it (8) .... for sale in the shops – it was a present for his mother. In 1954 he made his first public record and it was a success. People loved his music. They also loved the clothes he (9) .... and the way he moved when he (10) .... During his life, he also (11) .... 33 movies.

Elvis (12) .... into the US army for two years and (13) .... most of his time in Germany. It was in Germany that he (14) .... Priscilla Beaulieu, and they (15) .... in 1967. They (16) .... a daughter, Lisa Marie. The last years of Elvis's life (17) .... happy – he divorced Priscilla and he had an eating problem. He (18) .... in 1977 at the age of 42, but he still has many millions of fans all over the world.

28 Your friend asks you some questions about Elvis Presley. Read the answers first, then write the questions. Use the past simple (Did ... ? , When did ... ? etc.).

	YOUR FRIEND	YOU
1	Did he have any brothers or sisters ?	No, but he had lots of other people in his family.
2	When did .... ?	In 1945 – when he was ten years old.
3	.... ?	He taught himself to play.
4	.... ?	Because they wanted a better life.
5	.... ?	In 1953.
6	.... ?	Yes, as a truck driver.
7	.... ?	Because he wanted to be an electrician.
8	.... ?	Everything – his music, his clothes and the way he moved.
9	.... ?	33.
10	.... ?	Two years.
11	.... ?	Priscilla Beaulieu.
12	.... ?	Yes, one girl – Lisa Marie.
13	.... ?	In 1977.

29 Complete the postcard. Use the past simple (arrived, saw etc.) or was/were. Two verbs are in the negative.

Hi Tony

I'm in San Francisco now. We (1) ......arrived...... *here yesterday. Before that, we* (2) .... *ten days in New York. It* (3) .... *wonderful. Paula and I* (4) .... *a lot of interesting places, including the Empire State Building. We* (5) .... *to the top – it* (6) .... *very high and we* (7) .... *both really excited to be there. We* (8) .... *a boat down the river to see the Statue of Liberty. We* (9) .... *through Greenwich Village and watched many artists at work. The paintings* (10) .... *expensive, so I bought one. We also* (11) .... *to the theatre and saw a musical – I* (12) .... *it was fantastic, but Paula* (13) .... *it very much. The weather* (14) .... *OK – a bit wet sometimes. But now here in San Francisco, it's hot and sunny.*

Love, Elena (and Paula)

UNITED STATES POSTAGE

Now write a postcard to a friend from your last holiday.

....

....

....

....

....

I was doing and I did
(past continuous and past simple)

30 Look at the picture. This was Rosamund Street at 10.30 yesterday morning. What was happening? Where was it happening? Write sentences. Use the past continuous.

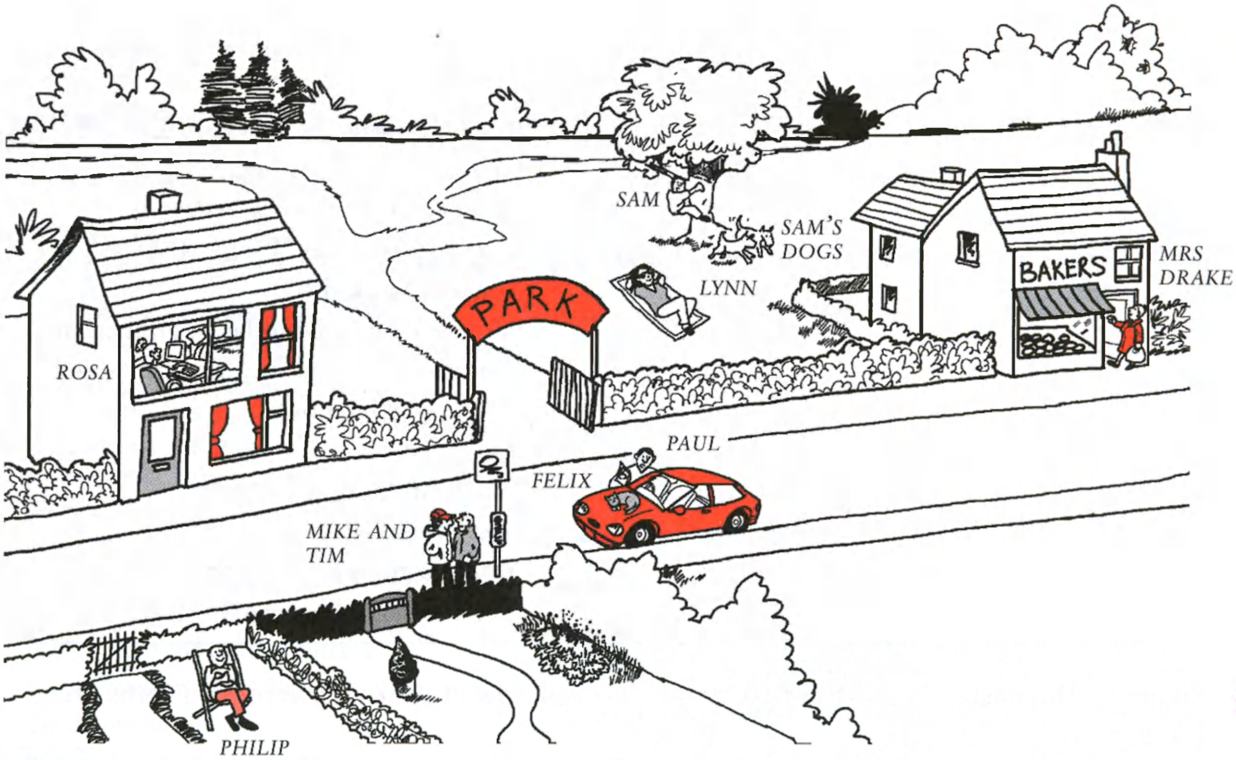
SAM
SAM'S DOGS
LYNN
PARK
BAKERS
MRS DRAKE
ROSA
PAUL
FELIX
MIKE AND TIM
PHILIP

At 10.30 yesterday morning

1 Rosa was working in her room.
2 Sam ....
3 Sam's dogs ....
4 Lynn ....
5 Mrs Drake ....
6 Philip ....
7 Mike and Tim ....
8 Felix ....
9 Paul ....

What about you? What were you doing yesterday at these times? Use the past continuous.

10 10.30 in the morning At 10.30 in the morning I ....
11 12.30 ....
12 6.15 in the evening ....
13 8.30 in the evening ....
14 midnight ....

31 Complete the conversations. Use was/were, the past simple (did etc.) or the past continuous (was doing etc.).

1 POLICE OFFICER: What ....were you doing.... (you / do) when the accident ....happened.... (happen)?
COLIN: I ....was.... at the bus stop. I ....was waiting.... (wait) for a bus.
POLICE OFFICER: .... (you / see) the accident?
COLIN: No, because I .... (read) the newspaper.

2 NICOLA: I .... (telephone) you at 9 o'clock last night, but you were not at home.
MARTIN: 9 o'clock? I .... (sit) in a café, ... (drink) hot chocolate.
NICOLA: .... Jane with you?
MARTIN: No, she .... (work) in the library.
NICOLA: Where .... (you / go) after the café?
MARTIN: I .... (go) home.

3 MUM: Oh no! My beautiful cup! What happened?
ANGIE: I'm really sorry, Mum. I .... (break) it when I .... (wash) it.
MUM: How?
ANGIE: My hands .... wet and I .... (drop) it on the floor.

4 SOPHIE: .... (you / think) yesterday's exam .... difficult?
EDDIE: No, not really, but I .... (not / write) very much.
SOPHIE: Why not?
EDDIE: Because I .... (dream) about my holidays.

5 ANDREW: There .... a crash outside my house yesterday.
MAGGIE: What .... (happen)?
ANDREW: I don't know. It .... (rain), but the two drivers .... (not / go) too fast.
MAGGIE: .... they hurt?
ANDREW: One man .... (break) his arm and the other man .... (cut) his hand.

6 TRACEY: Pardon? I didn't hear you. Could you say that again, please?
DAVE: I .... (not / talk) to you.
TRACEY: Who .... (you / talk) to?
DAVE: Sarah.
TRACEY: Oh, sorry.

32 At 10 o'clock yesterday morning, there was a robbery at the Midwest Bank. You are a police officer and you are asking Tim Smith some questions about what he was doing, what other people were doing, and what he saw. Write the questions. Use was/were, the past simple (did you do etc.) and the past continuous (were you doing etc.).

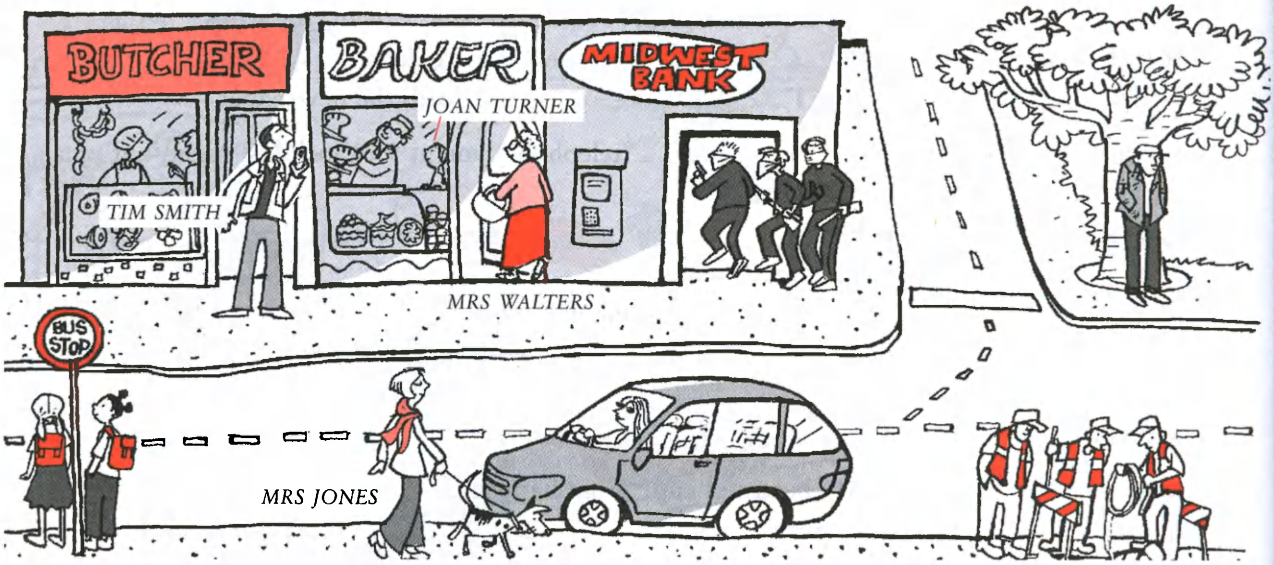

'Now then, Mr Smith, I know you saw the robbery yesterday. I would like to ask you some questions.

1 What / you / do / at 10 o'clock? What were you doing at 10 o'clock?
2 Where / Joan Turner? ....
3 What / Mrs Jones / do? ....
4 Where / Mrs Walters / go? ....
5 the robbers / carry / guns? ....
6 Where / the big car / wait? ....
7 driver / a man or a woman? ....
8 you / see / a man on the corner? ....
9 some men / repair / the road? ....
10 anyone / wait / at the bus stop? ....
11 you / phone / the police? ....

Thank you, Mr Smith. That was very helpful.'

Now use Tim Smith's answers to complete this paragraph. Look at the picture to help you.

Mr Smith told me that at 10.00 yesterday morning he (12) was outside the butcher's. Joan Turner (13) .... Mrs Jones (14) .... with her dog. Mrs Walters (15) .... The three robbers (16) .... guns. A big car (17) .... and the driver (18) .... A man (19) .... on the corner and the workmen (20) .... the road. Two children (21) .... at the bus stop. Mr Smith (22) .... the police on his mobile.

I do / I am doing and I did / I was doing
(present and past, simple and continuous)

Units 3–14

33 Look at this information about Marco and Jill.

name:	Marco	Jill
age:	15	29
home town:	Rome	Dublin
job:	student	computer programmer
education/study:	12 subjects at school	mathematics at university
likes:	playing football, cinema	travelling, swimming, chocolate
last holiday:	2 weeks in Greece last summer with his family; hotel in the mountains; lots of walking	1 month in Thailand last year with friends; hotel by the sea; lots of water sports

Write questions about Marco. Use verbs in the present or past.

1 How old is Marco ? (old)
2 Where does he live ? (live)
3 .... ? (do)
4 .... ? (study)
5 .... ? (like)
6 .... ? (go for his last holiday)
7 .... ? (stay)
8 .... ? (do on holiday)

Read the paragraph about Marco.

Marco is 15 and he lives in Rome. He's a student and he studies 12 subjects at school. He likes playing football and going to the cinema. Last summer he went to Greece with his family for two weeks. He stayed in a hotel in the mountains and he did lots of walking.

Write a similar paragraph about Jill.

Jill ....

....

....

Now write a paragraph for yourself.

I am ....

....

....

34 Kate and Julia are in a café on Wednesday morning. Read their conversation. There are mistakes in 13 of the underlined verbs. Correct the verbs where necessary. Write 'OK' if the verb is already correct.

JULIA: Hi there, Kate. Where (1) did you go .... were you going
when I (2) saw you yesterday morning? .... OK

KATE: I (3) was on my way to the bank. ....

JULIA: I (4) am usually going to the bank every ....
Monday after the weekend.

KATE: Me too, usually. But I (5) don't have time ....
this week, so I went yesterday.
Julia, why (6) do you look at me? ....

JULIA: Because you (7) wear something different. ....
What is it?

KATE: It's a new sweater and I (8) was buying it ....
on Saturday.

JULIA: It's a good colour. … What (9) does Tim do ....
at the moment?

KATE: Oh, poor Tim! He's at the doctor's now.
He (10) was falling yesterday when he ....
(11) was running for the bus. ....

JULIA: (12) Does he hurt himself? ....

KATE: He (13) was waking up this morning and ....
said his leg was painful, but I think he's
OK really.

JULIA: I hope he (14) don't watch that programme ....
on TV last night. It was about new ways of
mending broken legs.

KATE: No, we (15) aren't usually watching ....
much TV.

JULIA: That's OK then. Let's have another cup
of coffee.

KATE: Good idea. Then you can tell me about
Rosie. I (16) go to her house on Friday night ....
and she (17) was sitting in the dark – no ....
lights on anywhere in the house. She
(18) was very unhappy all weekend. ....
What's the matter? Do you know?

JULIA: Yes, but hang on, let me get the coffee first.

35 Complete this conversation with film actor, Nicole Casey. Put the verbs in the correct past or present form.

INTERVIEWER: When (1) ......did you start...... (you / start) acting?

NICOLE: When I (2) .... (be) 12. I (3) .... (go) to a drama school, and one day I (4) .... (sit) in the classroom and Nigel Stewart, the famous film director, (5) .... (walk) in. He (6) .... (see) me, and that (7) .... (be) the beginning.

INTERVIEWER: What (8) .... (be) your first film?

NICOLE: 'Holiday Home' with Terry Veale, who (9) .... (be) now my husband! We (10) .... (make) the film in Spain. We (11) .... (be) very young when we met – 17 and 13.

INTERVIEWER: I know that Terry (12) .... (have) an accident in that film. How (13) .... (it / happen)?

NICOLE: Well, one day near the end of the filming we (14) .... (ride) horses and Terry's horse suddenly (15) .... (stop) and he (16) .... (fall) off. He (17) .... (break) his arm. Today, Terry and I often (18) .... (talk) about our first meeting.

INTERVIEWER: (19) .... (you / ride) nowadays?

NICOLE: No, I (20) .... (stop) when I (21) .... (move) to Los Angeles.

INTERVIEWER: I know you are very busy, but what (22) .... (you / do) in your free time?

NICOLE: Well, Terry (23) .... (like) swimming – he (24) .... (swim) for two hours every day. And I (25) .... (love) cooking. The dish I (26) .... (make) for lunch today is a new idea of mine.

INTERVIEWER: Great! Nicole, can I ask you some more questions, and can I also talk to Terry?

NICOLE: Yes, of course. He (27) .... (swim) in our pool at the moment. Let's go outside and enjoy the sun. Come on.

I have done
(present perfect)

Units 15–17

36 Put the verbs in the present perfect, positive or negative.

1 MUM: Can I use the computer please?
JESSICA: Sorry, I ……haven't finished…… my homework yet. (finish)

2 NED: Is Paul enjoying his holiday in Australia?
VICTOR: I hope so, but his mother …………………… from him. I think she's a bit worried. (hear)

3 HELEN: Can I borrow your 'Shrek' DVD?
CATHERINE: Sorry, I …………………… it. I don't know where it is. (lose)

4 LUCY: Let's go and buy our tickets for the 'Pets' concert.
JO: Don't worry. I ………… already …………………… them. (buy)

5 JACK: Does your dad like his new car?
ANNIE: Well, he …………………… it yet, because he hasn't sold the old one. (get)

6 NINA: I've got my driving test next week.
MICHAEL: How many times ………… you …………………… it? (take)
NINA: This is the third time.

7 ROSEMARY: Let's take your parents to that new restaurant. Do they like Japanese food?
LUKE: I don't know. They ………… never …………………… it. (try)

8 ROB: Are you going to Pat's party tonight?
JOSEPH: I don't know. Who ………… he …………………… ? (invite)
ROB: All the usual people I think – and those girls he met in London.

9 JOHN: I enjoyed reading that new novel by Sarah Cunliffe. Is it her first book?
LIZ: No, she …………………… three, but I think this is her best. (write)

10 FRAN: John looks thinner, doesn't he?
ALISON: Yes. ………… he …………………… weight? (lose)

11 IAN: Why doesn't this DVD player work?
ROLAND: I think you …………………… it. (break)

12 NEIL: Where are my keys?
SALLY: I don't know. I …………………… them. (see)

37 You work for a travel agency. Jack Brown, a customer, is interested in one of your walking holidays in the tropical rain forests of South America. You are asking him some questions. Complete the questions with Have you ever ... ?

	YOU	*JACK*
1	Can you walk a long distance?	Yes, no problem.
	Have you ever walked (walk) more than 40 kilometres?	Yes, often.
2	Are you healthy?	Yes, very.
	.... (have) a serious illness?	No, never.
	.... (break) an arm or a leg?	My leg, twice.
3	Do you enjoy your food?	Yes, very much.
	.... (eat) crocodile?	No, never.
4	Can you swim?	Yes.
	.... (travel) in a canoe?	Yes, once.
5	Can you read a map?	I think so.
	.... (lose) your way?	No, never.
6	Do you sleep well?	Yes, always.
	.... (sleep) outside?	Yes, many times.
7	Are you afraid of heights?	No.
	.... (climb) a high mountain?	Yes, once.

Now write three sentences about what Jack has done and two sentences about what he hasn't done.

Jack has done a lot of things in his life. He has (often) walked more than 40 kilometres.

....

He has never had a serious illness.

....

And what about you?

I've never walked more than 40 kilometres.

....

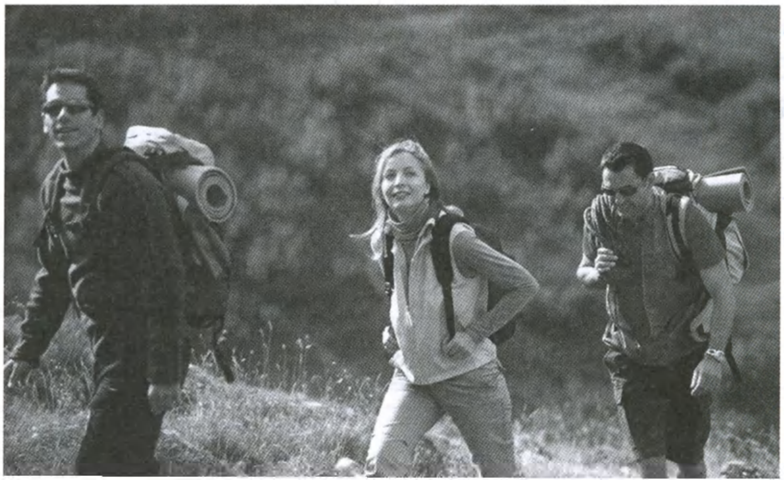

38 Write has/have been or has/have gone.

1 HARRY: I saw you in Annabel's Restaurant last night.
DIANA: No, it wasn't me. I ...'ve... never ...been... there.
2 SAM: Roberto and Sophie are on holiday, aren't they? Where .... they .... ?
SUE: To Florida, again.
SAM: How many times .... they .... there?
SUE: This is their third visit.
3 JOE: Can I have an apple, please?
MARY: We haven't got any. I .... n't .... to the shops today.
4 ALAN: Where's Emma?
MARK: She's got a headache, so she .... to bed.
5 STEVE: *(on the phone)* Can I speak to Manuela, please?
KATH: She's out, I'm afraid. She .... to the cinema.
STEVE: Again? She .... already .... to the cinema three times this week.

39 Complete what James is saying using verbs in the present perfect.

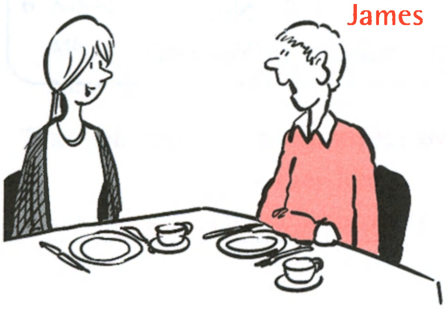

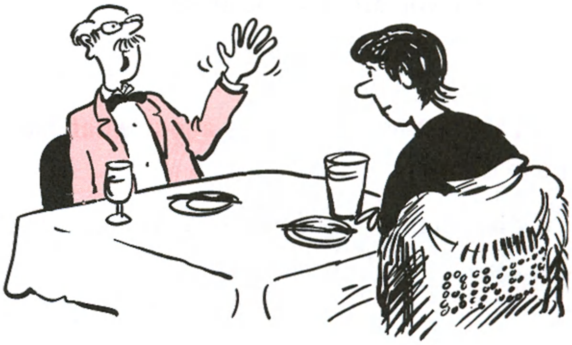

JAMES: See that man over there, Alice? I'm sure I (1) ...'ve seen... him on TV. Oh yes, I remember, it's David Sen – the man I'm going to see at the Festival Hall tonight. He's a wonderful piano player. He and his family (2) .... a lot of different things in their lives. He (3) .... all over the world, playing the piano, and he (4) .... a lot of interesting people. He (5) .... a lot of money in piano-playing competitions, so he's rich now. His daughter's only 20 and she (6) .... already .... a very successful cookery book and she's writing another one now. That's his son, Kenny, with him. He loves motorbikes. He (7) .... his bike all the way from Canada to Chile, and he (8) .... just .... the story of his journey to a travel magazine. So he'll be rich soon! David Sen's wife is a musician too. She plays the flute. They (9) .... together many times in different countries. But they (10) .... never .... to this country before, so I'm going to their concert at the Festival Hall tonight.

ALICE: You certainly know a lot about him!

How long have you ... ?

(present perfect questions)

Units 18–19

40 Read the information about Cheryl Atkins. Ask Cheryl some questions with How long ... ? + the present perfect simple. Then complete Cheryl's answers with for and since.

My name is Cheryl Atkins and (1) I live in London. (2) I'm married to Paul and we have a 1-year-old baby girl, Rita. (3) We also have a new dog. (4) I work as a hairdresser. (5) Paul is a train driver. (6) My parents live with us and (7) my mother looks after the baby. She also looks after my father. (8) He is ill.

	YOU	CHERYL
1	How long have you lived in London ?	Since 2002.
2	………………………………………… ?	……………… more than five years.
3	………………………………………… ?	……………… last week.
4	………………………………………… ?	……………… I left school.
5	………………………………………… ?	……………… about nine months.
6	………………………………………… ?	……………… a long time.
7	………………………………………… ?	……………… Rita was born.
8	………………………………………… ?	……………… the beginning of this year.

41 Complete the sentences with for (for ten minutes etc.), since (since 5 o'clock etc.) or ago (two hours ago etc.). Use your own ideas.

1 You can't be hungry. You had lunch half an hour ago .

2 Jane is fed up. Her friend is late. She's been waiting for an hour / since 3 o'clock .

3 I don't live in London now. I moved to Paris ………………………………………… .

4 I now live in Paris. I've been here ………………………………………… .

5 Tom's grandfather died ………………………………………… .

6 Maggie's got flu. She's been in bed ………………………………………… .

7 Sue and Richard got married ………………………………………… and their first child was born ………………………………… .

8 I like Mary's hair. She's had it in that style ………………………………………… .

What about you? Write your own short answers to these questions. Use for, since and ago.

9	How long have you lived in the place where you're living now?	…………………………………………
10	When did you last play a sport?	…………………………………………
11	How long have you had this book?	…………………………………………
12	When did you start doing this exercise?	…………………………………………
13	How long have you been a student?	…………………………………………
14	When did you last buy a pair of shoes?	…………………………………………
15	How long have you been able to speak English?	…………………………………………

42 Complete the postcard with the present perfect simple, the present perfect continuous or the past simple.

We (1) ....arrived.... (arrive) here in Cape Town six days ago. I can't believe we (2) .... (be) here since last Sunday – we've done such a lot. At the moment we're waiting for a boat to take us on a trip round the harbour. But it's late. We (3) .... (wait) for about half an hour. David flew in 24 hours ago, but he (4) .... (be) in bed since he arrived. He's got a horrible cold – he (5) .... (have) it for a week. The weather is a bit strange – rain for five days, but today the sun is shining. It (6) .... (shine) since we got up this morning.

Two days ago we (7) .... (go) to visit my aunt Nina – she (8) .... (live) here for more than 20 years. She (9) .... (get married) a year ago. She (10) .... (know) Alfie (that's his name) for years – so I've got a new uncle!
Hey great! The boat has arrived. Bye for now.

Kristen

CAPE TOWN SA

43 Write a sentence for each situation. Use the present perfect continuous (has/have been doing etc.) + for/since.

1 Sam and I arranged to meet at the cinema at 7 o'clock. I arrived on time, but I'm still waiting for Sam to arrive.
I ....have been waiting for Sam since 7 o'clock.....................................

2 John started his phone call 20 minutes ago and he's still talking.
John ....

3 Olga and Peter are tired. They started walking six hours ago and they're still walking.
They ....

4 You started watching TV at 9 o'clock this morning and you're still watching it.
You ....

5 Laura felt sick at lunchtime today and she's still feeling sick.
Laura ....

6 Fred got on the Trans-Europe express train on the 28th of June. Today it's the 30th of June and he's still travelling.
Fred ....

7 I hate this weather. It started raining 12 hours ago and it's still raining.
It ....

I have done and I did

(present perfect and past simple)

44 Write questions. Use the present perfect or the past simple. Read the answers first.

1	How long / Sarah / live / in Poland? How long has Sarah lived in Poland ?	Since 2000.
2	When / John / lose / his job? …… ?	Three weeks ago.
3	How long / Ricardo / have / a cat? …… ?	Since January.
4	What time / you / finish / work last night? …… ?	At 9 o'clock.
5	When / last time / you / have / a holiday? …… ?	Last year.
6	How long / you / watch / TV / last night? …… ?	All evening.
7	When / Chris / go out? …… ?	Ten minutes ago.
8	How long / your father / be / in hospital? …… ?	Since Monday.

45 There are mistakes in eight of these sentences. Correct the sentences where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

1 When have Tim and Annie been to India? When did Tim and Annie go to India?
2 I'm here since last year. ……
3 Maria has just written a book. It's very good. ……
4 Sue's an actor. She's been a photographer five years ago. ……
5 James and I have met last March. ……
6 The weather has been cold for many days. ……
7 John is looking for a new job since last month. ……
8 Have you spoken to your parents last night? ……
9 I played the guitar since I was a child. ……
10 What have you done last night? ……

46 Tick (✓) the best ending for each sentence.

1 I've already been to the museum,
A after I was in London.
B so I don't want to go again. ✓

2 David and Akemi have been married for five years
A and they were very happy.
B and they are very happy.

3 Maggie and Di met in 1988
A and started a business together two years later.
B and have started a business together two years later.

4 Jackie has been ill
A yesterday.
B all day.

5 I went to Italy
A in the summer.
B since my birthday.

6 John has gone out,
A so don't phone him.
B when he heard the news.

47 Complete the second sentence in each pair. Use the present perfect or the past simple.

1 How long have you been here?
When did you arrive ? (arrive)
2 When did Jane buy her computer?
How long .... ? (have)
3 Clare became a politician 20 years ago.
Clare .... 20 years. (be)
4 Joe started work here in 2004.
Joe .... since 2004. (work)
5 I am still doing my homework.
I .... yet. (finish)
6 Matt has known his best friend, Ahmed, for two years.
Matt first .... two years ago. (meet)
7 Adam and Sam have both got flu. It started a week ago.
Adam and Sam .... a week. (have)
8 Julia was first interested in music when she was five years old.
Julia .... since she was five. (be)

48 Put the verbs in the present perfect or the past simple.

'Here is the Six o'clock News from ITC, on Monday the 25th of April.

Our reporter in Nepal (1) ....telephoned.... (telephone) us ten minutes ago and (2) ....said.... (say) that Junko Shimoto and her partner, Miki Sato, are on top of the world today. They (3) .... (reach) the top of Mount Everest half an hour ago. Our reporter spoke to another climber on the expedition.

REPORTER: Are Junko and Miki still on the top of Mount Everest?

CLIMBER: No, they (4) .... (just start) their return journey.

REPORTER: How long (5) .... they .... (spend) up there?

CLIMBER: About ten minutes. They (6) .... (take) some photos of each other.

REPORTER: Are they in good health?

CLIMBER: Well, they're both tired, but they're fine.

The President of Volponia, Madame Fernoff, (7) .... (arrive) in Britain last night. Madame Fernoff (8) .... (be) President since 2001. She said she was happy to be in Britain.

At yesterday's meeting of European finance ministers, Jack Delaney, the Irish Finance Minister, (9) .... (say), 'I am going to leave my job soon. I (10) .... (work) very hard, and I want to spend more time with my family.' Mr Delaney (11) .... (be) Irish Finance Minister for five years.

Last night, Camford United (12) .... (win) the football league championship. The team (13) .... (win) the championship four times now – the first time (14) .... (be) in 1986. In their final game yesterday, Bryan Riggs (15) .... (score) the winning goal. Riggs (16) .... (be) with the team since he (17) .... (leave) school.

And now to the weather. We (18) .... (have) a lot of rain over the country since the beginning of the week and unfortunately this will continue until the end of the weekend. For your information, last week (19) .... (be) the wettest April week for 100 years.

And that's the end of tonight's news.'

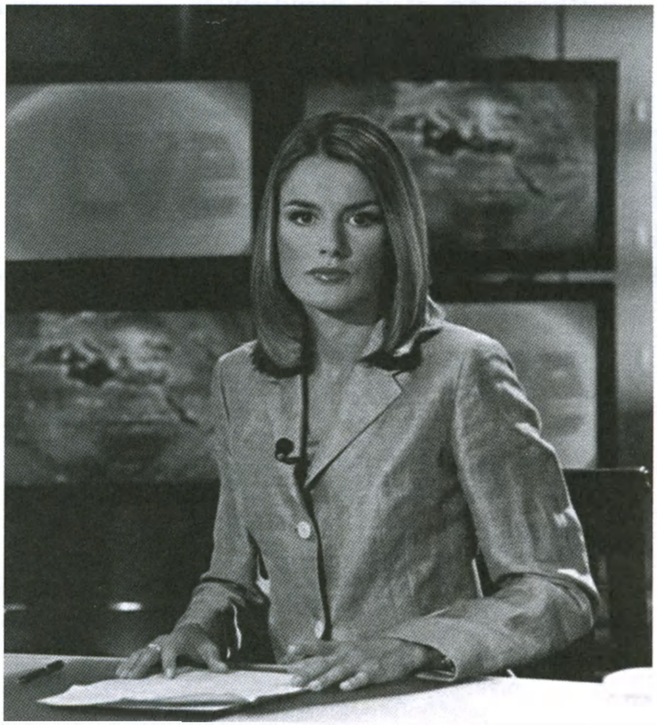

49 Put the verbs in the present perfect or the past simple.

1 CLARE: ....Have.... you ....seen.... John? (see)
MARCUS: No, why?
CLARE: He ....'s broken.... his leg. (break)
MARCUS: Really? When ....did.... he ....do.... that? (do)
CLARE: Yesterday.

2 ADAM: Oh no! I .... my wallet. I can't find it. (lose)
TONY: When .... you last .... it? (see)
ADAM: This morning when I .... the house. (leave)

3 MARY: Alan's going to sell his car.
SIMON: Really? He only .... it last month. (buy)
MARY: I know. He just loves changing cars.
SIMON: How many cars .... he .... in his life? (have)
MARY: At least 20.

4 BEN: Can I look at the newspaper, please?
VAL: In a minute. I .... with it yet. (not / finish)
BEN: You're very slow. You .... it this morning after breakfast. (start)

5 JULIA: There was a good programme on TV last night about elephants. .... you .... it? (see)
SARAH: Yes, it was wonderful. .... you ever .... a LIVE elephant? (see)
JULIA: Yes, and I .... one. (also touch)
SARAH: When .... that? (be)
JULIA: Two years ago when I .... on holiday in Kenya. (be)

6 PATRICK: Connie looks really fed up. What's the matter?
DAN: She .... her car again. (crash)
PATRICK: Again! How many times .... she .... that? (do)
DAN: I think about four.

I do / I have done / I did

(present, present perfect and past)

50 Complete the questions.

MARCO: (1) ......What's...... your job?
PETE: I'm an engineer with National Telephones.
MARCO: How long (2) .... for that company?
PETE: About nine months.
MARCO: (3) .... it?
PETE: Not really. I preferred my old job.
MARCO: What (4) .... that?
PETE: I was a gardener.

TOM: Why (5) .... at me?
RUTH: Because you've got a bit of tomato on your face.
TOM: Where (6) .... it?
RUTH: On the right of your nose.
TOM: (7) .... or is it still there?
RUTH: It's still there.

51 Complete the letter. Use present, present perfect and past forms.

Hi Jo

Well, I (1) ......arrived...... *(arrive) back safely two weeks ago. The flight* (2) .... *(be) fine, but a bit long. I* (3) .... *(watch) two films and* (4) .... *(eat) two breakfasts!*

Thanks for everything. I (5) .... *(have) a really good time with you in London. I hope you* (6) .... *(enjoy) it too. Everything here is very different from London. I* (7) .... *(write) this letter outside in the garden. I* (8) .... *(sit) under a big umbrella because the sun is very hot today. I know we* (9) .... *(have) some sunny days in London, but I remember there* (10) .... *(be) also some rain.*

It was difficult for me to start work after my wonderful holiday, but it's OK now. I (11) .... *(be) in a new department since I* (12) .... *(come) home, and it's interesting. I* (13) .... *(have) a new manager now, and that's good because the old one* (14) .... *(be) horrible to me.*

(15) .... *(you / like) rock music? My brother* (16) .... *(practise) in his room at the moment and it's quite loud! I* (17) .... *(just / send) you some of his CDs. I hope you like them.*

By the way, (18) .... *(you / find) a black leather photo album? I think I* (19) .... *(leave) it in the bedroom. Could you send it to me sometime? No hurry.*

Jill (20) .... *(sit) in the garden with me and she sends her love to you. Please write or call soon, and thank you again for a wonderful time.*

Love, Chris

52 Write Jo's reply. Use the words to write complete sentences.

Dear Chris

1 Thank you for your letter. Yes, I / enjoy / the time you / spend / with me very much. We / have / some good fun.

Thank you for your letter. Yes, I enjoyed the ……………………………………

2 You / leave / a big box of chocolates for my parents. Thank you. We / just / finish / them – they / be delicious.

……………………………………………………………………

3 And thank you also for the CDs. They / arrive / yesterday. I / not / play / all of them yet. At the moment I / listen / to 'Paradise Rock'. It / be / very good.

……………………………………………………………………

4 My mother / find / your photo album the day you / leave. I / send / it back two weeks ago. you / receive / it yet?

……………………………………………………………………

5 Do you remember Steve? We / meet / him at Sue's party. Well, he / come / to my house last week. He / ask / for your address, so I / give / it to him. I hope that's OK. He / be / in California now on business.

……………………………………………………………………

6 I / look / out of the window at the moment. The sun / shine / and it / be / a beautiful warm day. In fact, it / be / sunny every day since you / go back / to San Francisco. Honestly!

……………………………………………………………………

7 The CD / just / finish. Tell your brother I love his music. he / want / a publicity agent in London?

……………………………………………………………………

That's all for now.
Lots of love,
Jo

Last week you stayed with a friend for a few days, but now you're home again. Write a 'thank you' letter to your friend. Use the following ideas and the letter from Chris to Jo to help you.

- Thank your friend.
- Write about the journey home.
- Write about the things you enjoyed when you were with your friend.
- You are sending a present – tell him/her about it.
- Write about what you're doing now.
- Ask your friend to write to you.

is done / was done and is being done / has been done (passive)

53 Complete the crossword with the past participles.

Down	Across
1 choose	5 read
2 write	6 buy
3 make	8 grow
4 find	9 speak
7 think	10 forget
10 feel	12 hold
11 shoot	13 take
	14 build

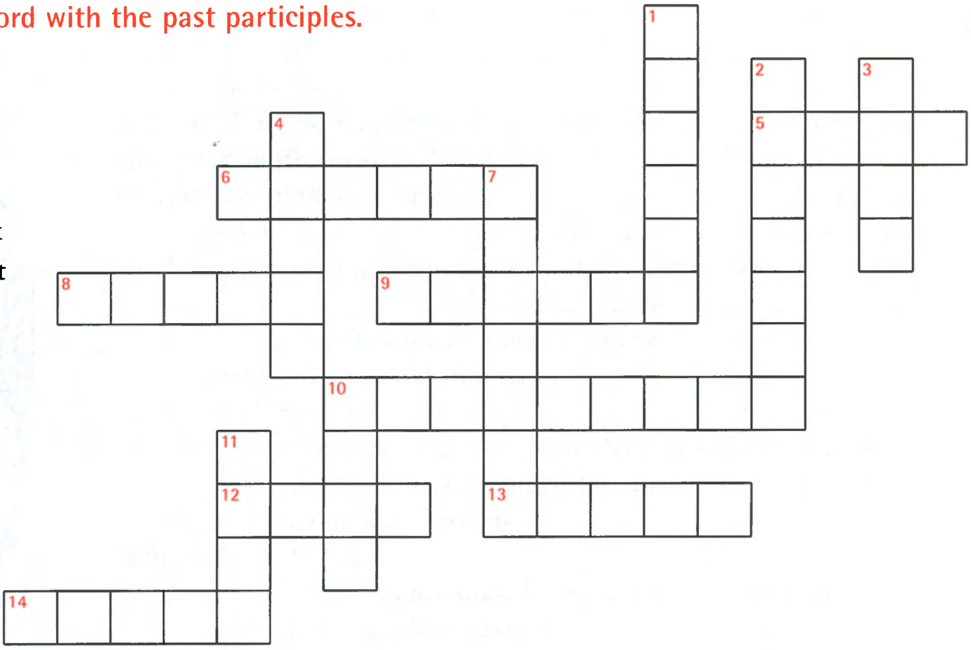

54 Use some of the past participles from the crossword to write questions. For questions 1–4, use the present passive; for questions 5–9, use the past passive. What are the right answers? You can check at the bottom of the page.

1 In which continent / tigers / find?
In which continent are tigers found ? A Africa B Asia

2 How many languages / speak / in the world?
.... ? A about 500 B about 5,000

3 Where / coffee / grow?
.... ? A Kenya B France

4 What / the country of Siam / now call?
.... ? A China B Thailand

5 When / 'Romeo and Juliet' / write?
When was 'Romeo and Juliet' written ? A in the 1590s B in the 1740s

6 When / first photograph / take?
.... ? A 1827 B 1893

7 Where / CDs / first make?
.... ? A China B the Netherlands

8 When / Taj Mahal / build?
.... ? A 1631 B 1931

9 Where / John Lennon / shoot?
.... ? A New York B Liverpool

Answers
1 B 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A 7 B 8 A 9 A

55

Look at the picture of Hartson's jam factory. A visitor is being shown around the factory by the manager. Complete what he says. Use the present simple or present continuous passive.

The machines (1) are switched on (switch on) at 7.30 every morning and they (2) are turned off (turn off) at 5.30. The factory (3) .... (lock) at 6.30 by our security guards and all the staff (4) .... (check) before they go home. We don't want our jam to disappear! Now as you can see, strawberry jam (5) .... (make) here today. And over there the jars of jam (6) .... (put) into boxes by our team. Hartson's jam (7) .... (not/export) because this country buys everything we produce. It's very important to keep our factory clean and hygienic, so everything (8) .... (wash) very carefully every night. Of course nobody (9) .... (allow) to smoke anywhere in the factory. Now I think lunch (10) .... (serve) in the canteen at the moment, so shall we go?

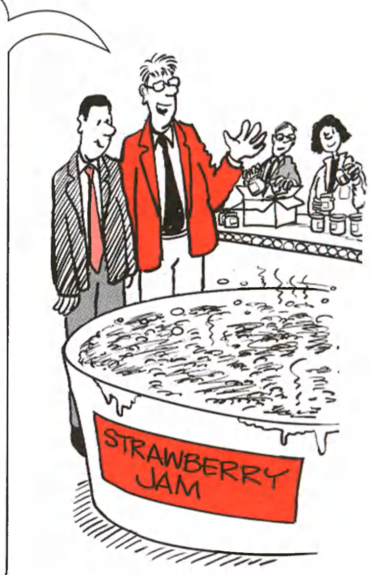

56

Look at the pictures. What has been done and what hasn't been done since 4.30? Write sentences.

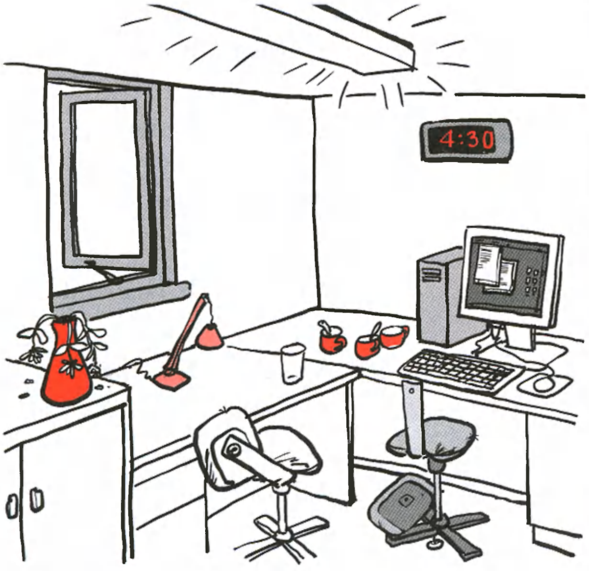

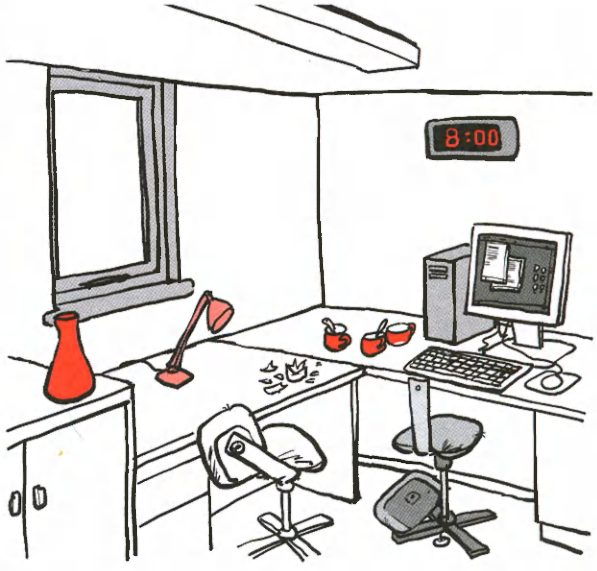

what has been done

The flowers have been thrown away.

....

....

....

....

what hasn't been done

The cups haven't been washed.

....

....

57 Put the verbs in the correct form, active or passive.

STUDIO: Here is the local news for today, Friday the 23rd of November. Last night in Cowford, many trees (1) ......were blown...... (blow) down in the storm. One tree (2) ......fell...... (fall) across the main road into Cowford. It damaged the telephone lines. The tree (3) .... (take) away by the fire service during the night. Heavy rain also (4) .... (cause) problems on the roads. Some roads (5) .... (cover) by half a metre of water. Many motorists (6) .... (leave) their cars and (7) .... (walk) home. Now, over to our reporter, Carol Black.

CAROL: The situation this morning is better and nearly back to normal. I can see the telephone engineers at work. The broken lines (8) .... (repair) at the moment, so people will soon be able to use their phones again. There is no water on the roads – it (9) .... (disappear). And the last few cars (10) .... just .... (remove) by the emergency services.

STUDIO: Thank you, Carol. And some football news. We (11) .... just .... (hear) that Cowford Town are the champions for the fourth time. A few minutes ago the referee (12) .... (blow) his whistle at the end of the game against Grimetown United. Our reporter at the match, Kevin Anderton, (13) .... (wait) to talk to us at the stadium. Kevin, (14) .... it a good game?

KEVIN: Yes, excellent, but unfortunately a bit rough. Cowford's star player, Tony Ancock, (15) .... (send) off because he (16) .... (kick) one of the Grimetown players. And the Grimetown goalkeeper (17) .... (hurt) when he (18) .... (crash) into one of the goalposts. He (19) .... (carry) off the field with leg injuries, so both teams (20) .... (play) with ten men for the last few minutes.

STUDIO: Is he all right?

KEVIN: Well, we don't know. He (21) .... (take) to hospital right now. The manager (22) .... (think) it's serious.

STUDIO: Oh dear. That's a bad end for Grimetown. What (23) .... (happen) now in the stadium?

KEVIN: The Cowford players (24) .... (give) the Champions Cup. And now back to the studio.

Write a short report of something that has happened for your local TV news. Use one of these ideas to help you.

Bank robbery: €6 million taken
Local woman wins lottery
Dog attacks man outside supermarket
Car hits actor on bike

....

....

....

be/have/do and regular/irregular verbs
(verb forms)

58 Complete the sentences with the correct form of be, have and do. Use positive and negative verbs.

1 I .....am..... reading the newspaper at the moment.
2 Frank isn't at work at the moment. He .... gone to Switzerland for a conference.
3 The Channel Tunnel .... built between 1985 and 1994.
4 Philip .... eat meat. He's a vegetarian.
5 We .... been to Toronto before. This is our first time in Canada.
6 Look! How strange! Our cat .... playing with the dog from next door.
7 Your jeans .... washed last week and now they're dirty again.
8 I turned the music off because you .... listening to it.
9 A lot of leather shoes .... imported from Italy every year.
10 I was tired, so I .... go out last night.

59 Complete the sentences with the past simple (sold, broke etc.) or the past participle (rung, gone etc.).

1 Sue .....sold..... (sell) her motorbike when she .....broke..... (break) her leg last year.
2 I've .....rung..... (ring) the doorbell three times and there's no answer. I think they've .....gone..... (go) out.
3 I .... (give) the letter to Ruth, but she .... (forget) to post it.
4 Ian hasn't .... (find) his credit cards yet. He can't remember where he .... (leave) them.
5 Do you remember the photo of Don that you .... (show) me? Was it .... (take) by a professional photographer?
6 A lion .... (escape) from the national zoo yesterday, but it was .... (catch) a few hours later.
7 James has often .... (think) about learning to fly, but he hasn't .... (do) it yet.
8 When she was younger, Pat always .... (wear) a ring which was .... (give) to her by her grandmother.
9 Alan .... (learn) to swim when he was a baby. But he .... (fall) into a river when he was four years old and he's never .... (swim) again.
10 Jill .... (feel) ill last night, so she .... (go) to bed and .... (sleep) for ten hours.

60 Complete the questions that you ask about a friend's new camera.

YOU

1 You've already got a good camera, so why ....did you.... buy a new one?
2 How long .... had it?
3 .... get it in a shop or on-line?
4 .... very expensive?
5 Why .... choose that model?
6 .... learnt how to use it yet?
7 Where .... made?
8 .... take good pictures?
9 .... usually put your photos on your computer?
10 Your husband likes cameras. .... tried your new camera yet?

Now complete what your friend says. Use the past simple or the past participle.

'I (11) ....broke.... (break) my old camera a few months ago, so I (12) .... (buy) this new one. I've only (13) .... (have) it for two weeks. I (14) .... (get) it on-line and it wasn't very expensive. I (15) .... (choose) this model because I (16) .... (read) about it in a photography magazine. It was (17) .... (make) in Japan. I've (18) .... (learn) how to use it, but I'm not very good yet. I (19) .... (take) some pictures last week and they were brilliant. I (20) .... (put) my first lot of pictures on my computer last weekend and I've just (21) .... (send) them to my sister. And no, nobody else has (22) .... (use) the camera yet, but I've (23) .... (show) Bill how it works.'

Canon
SET MENU DISP. FUNC

What are you doing tomorrow?

(the future: present tenses)

Unit 25

61 Josie Turner is the export manager of a large international company. Harry Brentwood is a customer from Canada. They are trying to arrange an appointment for next week. Look at their diaries and complete the conversation. Use the present continuous ('s coming etc.) or the present simple (comes etc.).

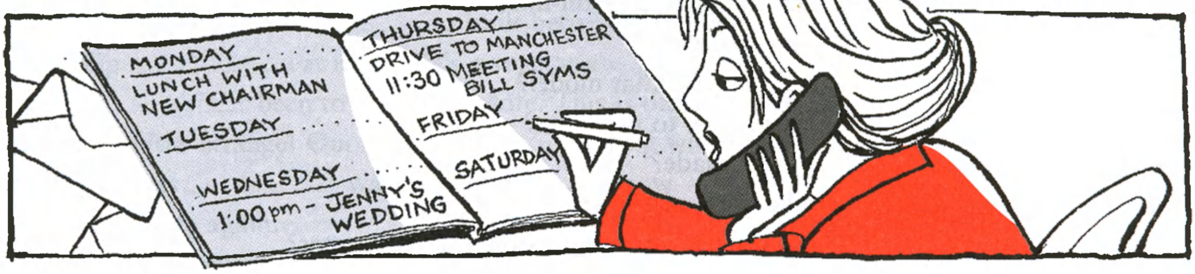
MONDAY
LUNCH WITH NEW CHAIRMAN
TUESDAY
WEDNESDAY
1:00 pm - JENNY'S WEDDING
THURSDAY
DRIVE TO MANCHESTER
11:30 MEETING BILL SYMS
FRIDAY
SATURDAY

JOSIE: Hello, Josie Turner speaking.

HARRY: Oh Josie, this is Harry Brentwood. How are you? I (1) ...'m coming... to London on Sunday and I'd like to meet you next week. Can we arrange a time?

JOSIE: Sure. When are you free?

HARRY: Well, how about lunch on Monday?

JOSIE: I can't, I'm afraid. I (2) .... lunch with our new chairman. How about Tuesday at 10.30?

HARRY: No, no good. Dennis, my London agent, (3) .... to the office on Tuesday morning. Wednesday afternoon is a possibility.

JOSIE: Not for me. My secretary, Jenny, (4) .... and all of us from the office (5) .... to the wedding. And on Thursday morning I (6) .... to Manchester for a meeting with Bill Syms.

HARRY: What time (7) .... the meeting .... ?

JOSIE: At 11.30. I've got an idea. Why don't you come with me? We can talk on the way.

HARRY: That sounds good. Oh, but wait a minute, I can't. I (8) .... to some people about business opportunities in Canada at lunchtime.

JOSIE: So Friday, then?

HARRY: Yes, that's the only possibility because my return flight to Montreal (9) .... early on Saturday morning. So, how about 11.30 on Friday morning at your office?

JOSIE: Yes, that's perfect. Looking forward to seeing you then.

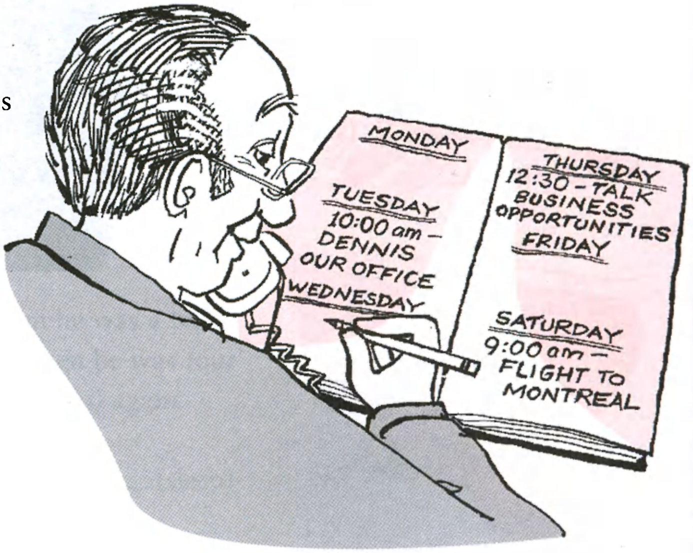
MONDAY
TUESDAY
10:00 am - DENNIS OUR OFFICE
WEDNESDAY
THURSDAY
12:30 - TALK BUSINESS OPPORTUNITIES
FRIDAY
SATURDAY
9:00 am - FLIGHT TO MONTREAL

62 Some friends of yours invite you to do different things next week, but you can't do any of them because you're busy. Write what you're doing at those times. Use the present continuous (I'm having etc.).

	YOUR FRIEND	*YOU*
1	There's a party at my house on Tuesday night. Would you like to come?	I can't, I'm afraid. I'm having dinner with Mary.
2	Meet me on Wednesday evening in the city centre.	I can't, I'm afraid. ....
3	See you on Friday at 1 o'clock outside the museum. OK?	I can't, I'm afraid. ....
4	Jim wants you to come to the cinema with us on Saturday afternoon.	I can't, I'm afraid. ....
5	Let's go for a walk on Sunday.	I can't, I'm afraid. ....

63 Marta and her friends, Emma and Jane, are going on holiday tomorrow to China. Marta is emailing Emma with lots of questions. Write Marta's questions. Use the present simple or the present continuous.

1 What time / the flight / leave? What time does the flight leave ?
2 What time / we / meet / tomorrow? What time are we meeting tomorrow ?
3 When / the check-in desk / open? .... ?
4 How / we / travel / to the airport? .... ?
5 Where / we / meet / Jane? .... ?
6 Where / we / stay / for the first night? .... ?
7 What time / flight / land? .... ?
8 Who / meet / us / at the airport in Beijing? .... ?

Now use your own ideas to write Emma's answers.

The flight leaves at 9 o'clock in the evening. We're meeting at ....

....

....

64 Write questions with going to.

1 BEN: What / Dad / do?
What's Dad going to do ?
MUM: Paint the kitchen walls.
BEN: What colour / he / do them?
What colour's he going to do them ?
MUM: White.

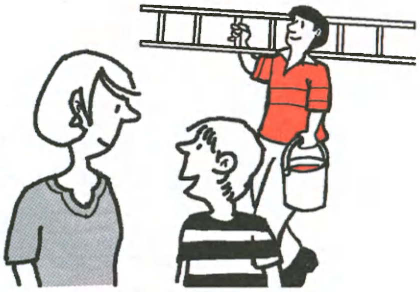

2 JILL: What / you / buy / for Paul's birthday?
.... ?
MEG: I don't know yet.
JILL: he / have / a party?
.... ?
MEG: Yes, on Saturday.

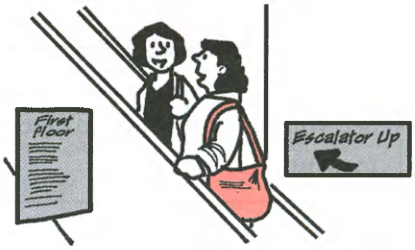

3 TIM: you / buy / a new computer?
.... ?
SAM: Yes.
TIM: What kind / you / get?
.... ?
SAM: A Bell laptop, I think.

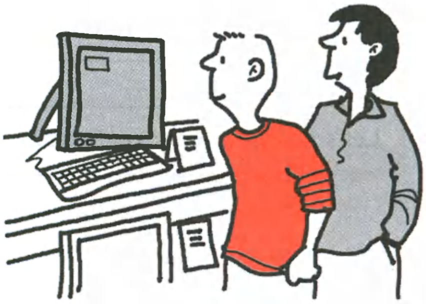

4 MARY: What / Sarah / do / after university?
.... ?
JACK: First, she's going to travel.
MARY: How long / she / be away?
.... ?
JACK: About six months.

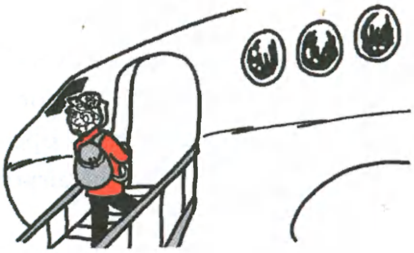

5 SALLY: Chris and Kate / get married?
.... ?
PAUL: Yes, it's great news, isn't it?
SALLY: Where / they / live?
.... ?
PAUL: With her parents.

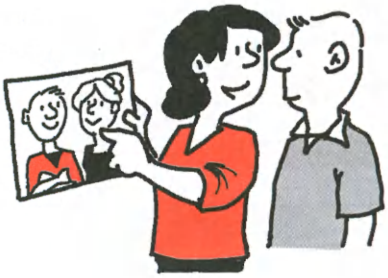

65 What are you, and your friends and family going to do or not going to do this evening? Use these ideas to write sentences about yourself, and your friends and family.

read a book
email a friend
clean (your) room
cook dinner
wash (your) hair
do some work
listen to music
play on the computer
eat some chocolate
spend a lot of money
watch TV
phone a friend

I'm not going to read a book this evening.
My mother is going to cook dinner.
....
....
....
....

66 Complete the sentences. Use going to.

1
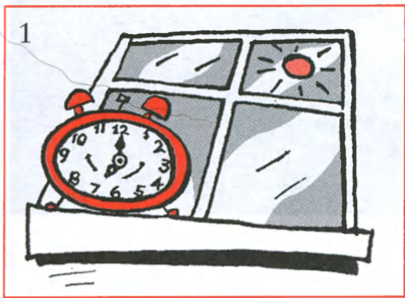

2
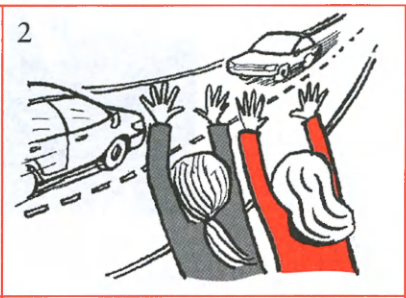

3
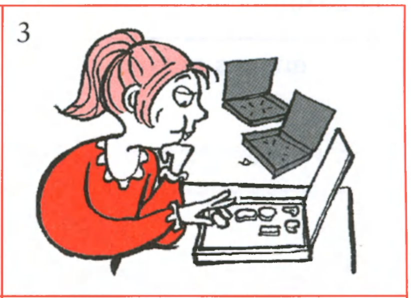

4
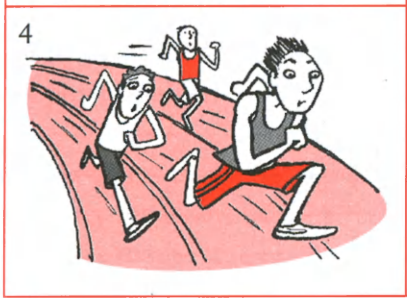

5
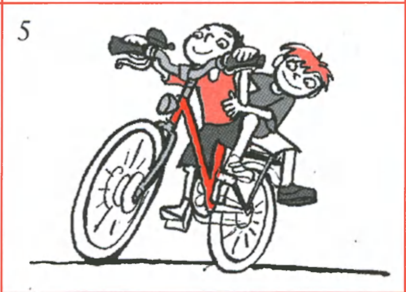

6
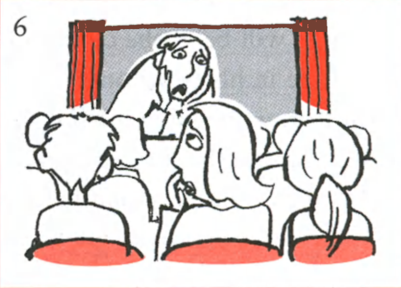

1 It's only 7 o'clock in the morning, but the sun is shining and it's warm.
It 's going to be a beautiful day.
2 John is driving on the wrong side of the road!
He .... an accident!
3 Eve is eating her third box of chocolates!
.... sick!
4 What a fantastic race! Roger's nearly there! Only 50 metres to the finish.
.... win!
5 Look at those boys on that big bicycle! They're not safe.
.... fall off!
6 This film is making me feel very sad.
.... cry.

67 **Read what George says about his life at the moment and his future.**

At the moment, I have to work very hard. I study at home every night. It's Friday today, but I'll be at home as usual this evening. I'll be in my bedroom with my books.

But tomorrow is Saturday – no college and no work! So tomorrow morning, I'll probably be in the city centre. I want to buy some clothes.

College finishes next month, so at the end of the month I'll be on holiday in Paris with my friends.

A few years from now, I'll probably be married. In 2030, I'll be 40 years old. My children will probably be at school. I don't know where I'll be in 2050.

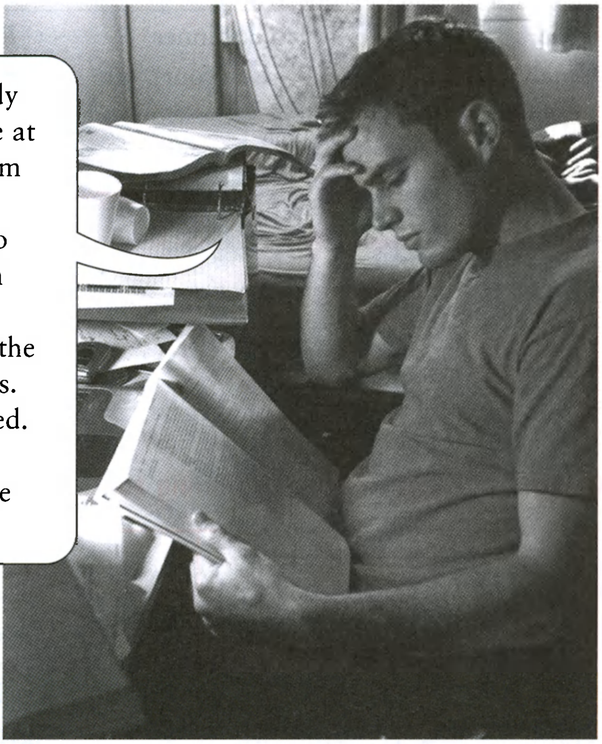

Now correct the sentences that are not true. Use will and won't.

1 George will be at the cinema this evening. No, he won't. He'll be at home.
2 He'll be in his bedroom. True.
3 Tomorrow morning, he'll be at college.
4 Next month, he'll be in Paris.
5 He'll be on holiday on his own.
6 A few years from now, he'll probably be married.
7 He'll be 30 in 2030.
8 His children will probably be at university in 2030.
9 He'll be in Paris in 2050.

And what about you? Where will you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use I'll be / I'll probably be / I don't know where I'll be.

This evening
Tomorrow morning
Next month
A few years from now
In 2030

68 What do you say in these situations? Write two sentences for each situation. Use I think I'll / he'll etc. and I don't think they'll / she'll etc.

1 Your favourite baseball team, the Milton Reds, are playing very well at the moment. The last time they were beaten was two years ago. They have a match on Saturday.
I think the Milton Reds will win the match.
I don't think they will lose.

2 You have to go out tonight, but you've hurt your foot so it's difficult to walk. You could go by car.
I don't think
I think

3 Your brother has got a history exam tomorrow. He likes history and he's done a lot of work.
I don't think
I think

4 Your grandparents don't like the cold winters in Scotland. They want to move to a warm country. They're thinking about Australia.
I think
I don't think

5 Kim doesn't like her job at the garage. She's been talking about changing jobs for a long time, but she's still at the garage.
I think
I don't think

6 Jana wants to sell her old computer and buy a new one. The problem is she doesn't have enough money for a new one.
I don't think
I think

69 Carol's grandmother has a few problems, so Carol offers to help her. Write sentences with Shall I ... ?

1	Oh dear! I can't read Jane's letter.	Shall I read .... it to you?
2	I'm thirsty.	.... you a cup of tea?
3	It's a bit cold in here.	.... the window?
4	I can't open this packet of biscuits.	.... it for you?
5	I can't hear the TV.	.... it up?
6	The dog needs some exercise.	.... him for a walk?
7	I think the kitchen floor is dirty.	.... it for you?

70 Joe and Phil went camping in Portugal last year. Now they're planning their next holiday. Write questions with Shall we ... ? Read the answers first, then write the questions.

JOE: It's time to start planning this summer's holiday. Where (1) shall we go ?

PHIL: Let's go to Portugal again. I enjoyed it last year.

JOE: (2) .... in the same hotel?

PHIL: No, let's try something different. How about camping?

JOE: Great! I bought a new tent last month. (3) .... that?

PHIL: Yes, good idea. (4) .... or fly?

JOE: Oh, drive I think because we'll have a lot of luggage.

PHIL: When (5) .... ?

JOE: The middle of July is best for me. How about you?

PHIL: July's fine with me too. (6) .... Tony to come with us?

JOE: No. The tent is only big enough for two people!

I am doing / I am going to do / I'll do
(future forms)

Units 25–28

71 Which is right?

Hi Mark

I know (1) you're working / ~~you'll work~~ in Sweden in June, but what (2) are you doing / do you do for the first two weeks in July? Hannah and I (3) are going / will go to the Czech Republic for a holiday, and we want you and Sue to come with us! I don't think Hannah (4) will fly / flies to the Czech Republic because she hates planes, so (5) are we going / shall we go by train? What do you think?

We can spend a few days in Prague and then go to the mountain area and do some walking. (6) We're not going to camp / We won't camp this year. I think (7) we'll probably stay / we're probably staying in small hotels.

Good plans? Anyway, Hannah's calling me. (8) We're going to have / We will have dinner, but (9) I'll phone / I'm phoning you later this evening.

Jack

72 Write complete sentences.

1 **present continuous or *will*?**

JIM: everybody / come / to the meeting on Friday afternoon?
Is everybody coming to the meeting on Friday afternoon?
PAM: Most people.
JIM: it / be / a long meeting? Will it be a long meeting?
PAM: I'm not sure. It / probably / be /about three hours. Why?
JIM: I / go / to the dentist at 5.30. I made the appointment two weeks ago.

2 **present simple or *going to*?**

TOM: Great! That's the end of school for a few weeks.
LUCY: When / the next term / begin?
TOM: On the 3rd of September.
LUCY: What / you / do / during the holidays?
TOM: I don't know yet. What about you?
LUCY: My school / not / finish / until next week.
Then I / look / for a job for the summer.

3 ***will* or *going to*?**

VAL: Do you want to play tennis on Friday?
BEN: I can't. I / visit my grandmother.
VAL: Does she live near?
BEN: Not really. About 100 kilometres away. I usually drive, but my car isn't working at the moment. I / take / it to the garage tomorrow.
VAL: I / lend / you mine. I don't need it on Friday.
BEN: Oh thanks a lot. I / pay for / the petrol.

73 Are these sentences OK? Correct the verbs that are wrong.

1 The new road shall be open in the summer. .... will
2 The exam starts at 9.00 tomorrow. .... OK
3 I've got an appointment. I will see the dentist tomorrow. ....
4 Come in, Joe. You look cold. Sit down. I'm making you a cup of tea. ....
5 What time is the sun rising tomorrow? ....
6 Where do you go for lunch tomorrow? ....
7 Shall we learn Spanish next year? ....
8 Do you think it is snowing later? ....
9 I can't come because I'll be on holiday. ....
10 *(on the phone)* You need to speak to Ann. Just a moment, please. I'm going to call her. ....
11 Don't worry about me, Mum. I'll email you every day from New Zealand. ....

74 What do you say in the following situations? Use will (will go/do etc.) or the present continuous (am going / is doing etc.).

1 Jane tells you she cannot play tennis tonight because her partner is ill. You offer to play with her. What do you say?
I'll play with you.

2 Your young brother has broken his favourite toy train. He's very sad. You offer to buy him another one. What do you say?
....

3 You and your sister have arranged to go shopping tomorrow. A friend invites you to lunch. What do you say?
I can't come, I'm afraid. ....

4 You're flying to Athens this afternoon. Your mother wants to know that you have arrived safely. You offer to telephone her this evening. What do you say?
....

5 Your brother, Tony, and his wife, Rachel, come to dinner once a week at your house. Tonight is the night. What do you say to your mother?
Don't forget that ....

6 Franco wants to go to the cinema to see 'Black Nights'. It's a horror film and you know he doesn't like horror films. What do you say to him?
I don't think ....

7 Julia wants to know about your weekend plans. What does she ask you?
.... at the weekend?

8 You've arranged to go to the seaside for the weekend. What do you say to Julia?
.... for the weekend.

75 Your friends are asking you about some plans. Complete your answers with might (not).

1 JOE: Where are you going this weekend?
YOU: I don't know yet. ......I might go to Tim's party...... (Tim's party), but ......I might not go anywhere...... (not / anywhere).

2 PAUL: It's a national holiday tomorrow, so there's no public transport. How are Jane and Sue going to get here?
YOU: I don't know. They .... (taxi), but .... (not / come).

3 HELEN: Who are you going to invite for dinner?
YOU: I haven't decided yet. .... (Sarah), but .... (not / Tony).

4 SARAH: What new clothes does Clare want to buy on Saturday?
YOU: She's not sure yet. .... (some jeans), but .... (not / anything).

76 Your friend, Peter, is going on holiday tomorrow to China. Read the list of things he is (not) going to do and the things he might (not) do. Complete the email you send to another friend, Karen.

sure
1 visit the Forbidden City, Beijing
3 walk along the Great Wall
5 not eat western food
7 learn a little Chinese

perhaps
2 not have time to visit the museums
4 go on a boat trip down the Yangtse River
6 try green tea
8 not come home!

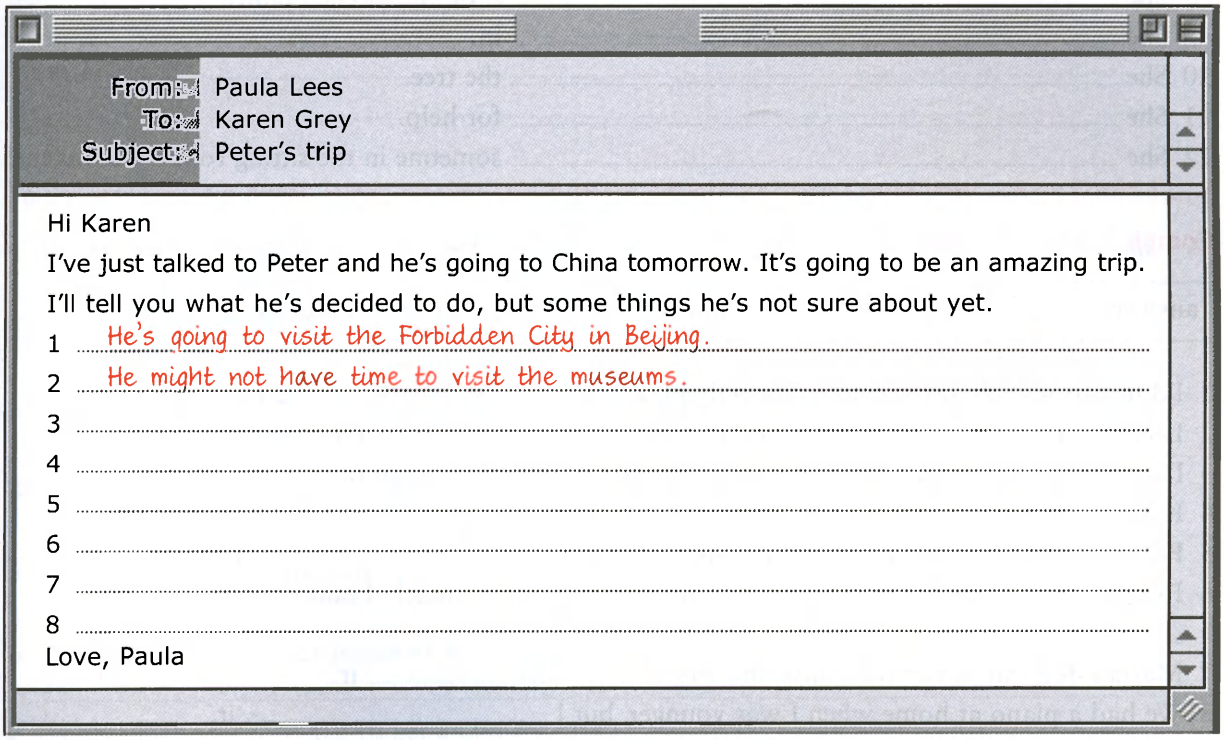

From: Paula Lees
To: Karen Grey
Subject: Peter's trip

Hi Karen
I've just talked to Peter and he's going to China tomorrow. It's going to be an amazing trip.
I'll tell you what he's decided to do, but some things he's not sure about yet.
1 He's going to visit the Forbidden City in Beijing.
2 He might not have time to visit the museums.
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
Love, Paula

can and could

77 Pat has got a problem. Complete what she says with can or can't.

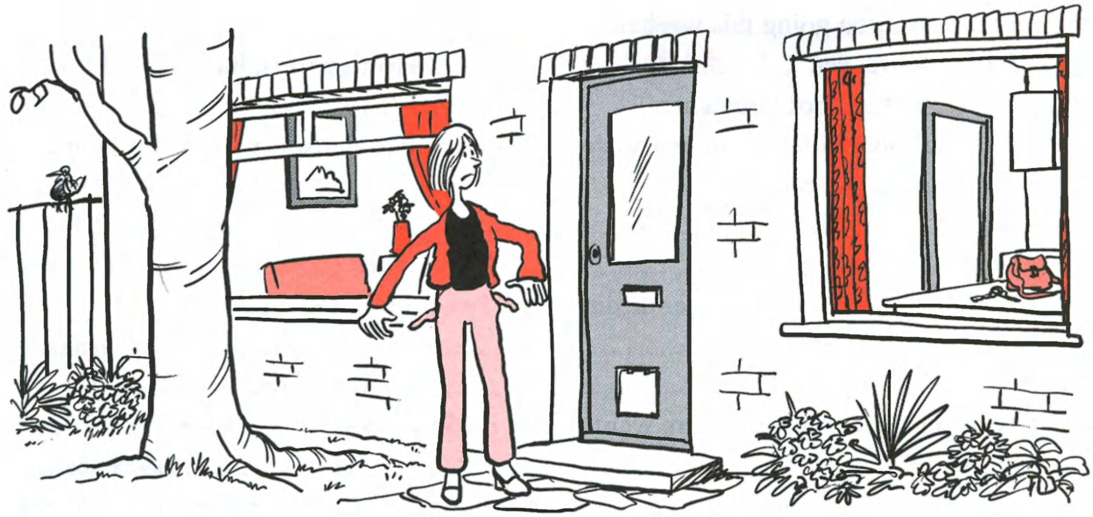

'Oh dear! Where's my key? I (1) ....can't.... find it. Oh look! It's on the kitchen table. I (2) .... see it. Now what am I going to do? I (3) .... get in. I (4) .... climb the tree to the window on the first floor. It's too high. I (5) .... phone for help because I haven't got my mobile with me. Hey, what's that noise in the sitting room? I (6) .... hear something. Oh good, it's Peter. He's at home. Brilliant!'

The next day, Peter tells his friend, Kate, about Pat's problem. Complete the sentences.

7 Pat ....couldn't find her key.................... yesterday.
8 She .... it on the kitchen table.
9 She .... in.
10 She .... the tree.
11 She .... for help.
12 She .... someone in the sitting room – it was me!

78 Complete the sentences. Use can't or couldn't and the verbs from the box.

~~answer~~ catch come cook ~~find~~ play see sleep understand

1 I'd like to read Andrea's letter. The only problem is I ....can't find.... my glasses.
2 Lisa didn't pass her maths exam because she ....couldn't answer.... the questions.
3 I'd like to invite my friends to dinner at my house, but unfortunately I ....
4 Kevin was really tired last night, but he ....
5 People said he was a very interesting speaker, but I .... him.
6 I've got two tickets for the theatre on Saturday, but unfortunately Frank
....
7 Maria's dog ran out of the house and she .... it.
8 We had a piano at home when I was younger, but I .... it.
9 *(at the cinema)* Those people in front of me are very tall. I .... the screen.

79 Look at the information about Fred. Complete the sentences about him. Use can/can't or could/couldn't.

Fred's mother is English and his father is German. When Fred was young:

	✓	✗
1	understand German	speak it
2	play the guitar	sing
3	swim really well	ride a bike
And now:		
4	speak three languages fluently	play the guitar
5	play the piano	drive a car

1 When Fred was young, he could understand German, but he couldn't speak it.

2 He ……, but …… .

3 ……, but …… .

4 Now, Fred can speak three languages fluently, but …… .

5 ……, but ……

What about you? What could (or couldn't) you do when you were younger? What can (or can't) you do now? Write sentences with could/couldn't and can/can't. You can use the verbs from the box or think of your own ideas.

cook drive eat make play run sleep speak swim understand use

When I was younger, ……

……

Now, I ……

……

80 You're staying in a hotel. What do you say in these situations? Use Could you ... ? or Could I ... ?

1 You want the receptionist to turn the air-conditioning off in your room because you're cold.
Could you turn the air-conditioning off, please?

2 There is only one towel in your room. You want another one.
Could I have another towel, please?

3 There's no hair dryer in your room. You want to borrow one.
……

4 You want the receptionist to give you a wake-up call at 6.30 in the morning.
……

5 You want breakfast in your room tomorrow morning.
……

6 You want to leave your passport and traveller's cheques in the hotel safe.
……

7 You want the receptionist to get a taxi for you.
……

must mustn't don't need to

81 Complete one sentence with must, one sentence with mustn't, and one sentence with don't/doesn't need to.

1 Your friend Paul is going on holiday tomorrow. What do you say to him?

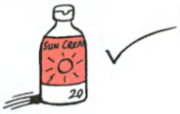

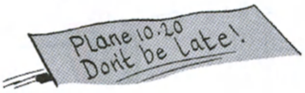

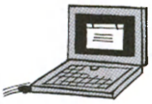

not necessary

You must buy .... some sun cream.
You mustn't be .... late for the flight.
You don't need to take .... your laptop because you aren't going to work on holiday.

2 Your parents are going away for the weekend. What do they say to you before they leave?

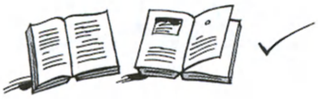

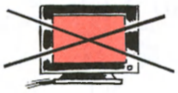

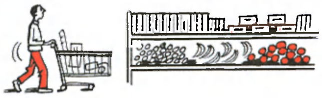

not necessary

You .... for your exam next week.
You .... too much TV.
You .... There's plenty of food in the fridge.

3 You're ill in bed. Your friend comes to visit you. What does (s)he say?

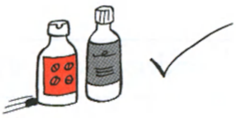

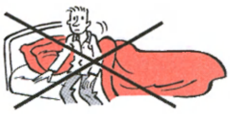

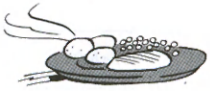

not necessary

You ....
You ....
You .... if you don't want to.

What about you? Write two things you must(n't) do in the next few days and two things you don't need to do. Explain why.

I must buy a present for Anna because it's her birthday on Saturday.
....
....
....

82 Use your own ideas to complete the sentences. Use must or had to.

1 I've just heard Simon and Cara are getting married, so I must ring Sally and tell her .
2 Unfortunately, my car didn't start yesterday, so I had to walk to my office .
3 John had an important job to finish at the office last night, so he ....
4 The party finished late last night. So, if you're tired, you ....
5 Jamie forgot his front door key last night, so he ....
6 Alex had terrible toothache yesterday, so he ....
7 Come on! Our train leaves in an hour. We ....

should

83 Complete one sentence with should and one sentence with shouldn't.

1 GARY: I always feel tired these days. What do you think I should do?
ANNE: ....You should have.... a holiday. ....You shouldn't work.... so hard.
2 GARY: I've got a hole in one of my teeth. What do you think I should do?
ANNE: .... to the dentist.
.... so many sweets.
3 GARY: I've got a terrible headache again. What do you think I should do?
ANNE: .... an aspirin.
.... without your glasses.
4 GARY: Bruno wants to borrow my car for the weekend, but he's a terrible driver. What do you think I should do?
ANNE: .... him you need it.
.... it to him.

84 You are asking a friend for advice. Write questions with Do you think I/we should ... ?

1 There are two buttons missing on this shirt I've just bought.
....Do you think I should take.... it back to the shop?
2 I think I work very hard, but I don't get a big salary.
.... my boss for more money?
3 Jane is very nervous about going on holiday alone.
.... with her?
4 Burnt toast again! This toaster is getting worse.
.... a new one?

85 What advice would you give in the following situations? Use should.

1 Alan had a terrible argument with his wife at the weekend. It was his fault. What do you think he should do?
I think ....he should apologise to his wife.....
I don't think ....she should speak to him until he apologises.....
2 Maria has got some important exams. She's been invited to a party on Saturday night. What do you think she should do?
I think ....
I don't think ....
3 Joe is very intelligent, but he wants to leave school and get a job. His parents think he ought to go to university. What do you think he should do?
I think ....
I don't think ....
4 Dave and Rita haven't got much money, but they go out every night. At the end of the month they can't pay their electricity bills. What advice would you give?
I think ....
I don't think ....

I have to

86 Complete the sentences with the correct form of have to. Some of the sentences are in the present and some of them are in the past.

1 MARK: I don't like beans.
SUE: That's OK. You ....don't have to eat them.... . (eat)
2 DAVE: I have to write a 1,000-word story before next Friday.
JILL: What about me? .... one too? (write)
3 ANN: CAN YOU PASS ME THE SALT, PLEASE?
PETE: You .... ! I'm not deaf! (shout)
4 JOHN: Which job did Jenny accept?
RUTH: She hasn't decided. She's going to think about it at the weekend. She .... yesterday. (choose)
5 GINA: What's the matter with Marcus today?
TONY: I'm not sure. The doctor says he .... in bed for a few days. (stay)
6 JOE: Was Tina angry when you told her the news?
MARK: She already knew it, so I .... her. (tell)

87 Beth and her grandmother are talking about school. Complete their conversation using the correct form of have to. Sometimes you need the present and sometimes the past. Read the conversation before you write.

GRAN: (1) ....Do you have to go.... (go) to school tomorrow, Beth?
BETH: No, thank goodness. We've got a day off, but I have lots of homework to do.
(2) .... (do) homework every night when you were at school?
GRAN: No, we didn't. School was easier in my time. But my school was a long way from my house – and we didn't have a car.
BETH: (3) How far .... (travel)?
GRAN: About five kilometres, twice a day. And you're lucky. At your school, you (4) .... (wear) uniform. We did, and I hated mine.
BETH: What colour was it?
GRAN: Red and grey, and I remember we (5) .... (wear) white gloves as well. Anyway, where's your brother at the moment?
BETH: In his room. He's got lots of exams next week, so he (6) .... (work) really hard.
GRAN: How many exams (7) .... (take)?
BETH: Seven or eight, I think. He (8) .... (get) good marks in them all if he wants to go to university.
GRAN: I finished school when I was 14 and (9) .... (do) any exams at all. Only the students who wanted to go to college (10) .... (take) exams.
BETH: So, school was easier in your day.
GRAN: Mmm, maybe.

88 Read the email from Sally to her friend, Marie. Then complete the Rules of the House. Some sentences are positive (go/turn etc.) and some are negative (don't go / don't come etc.).

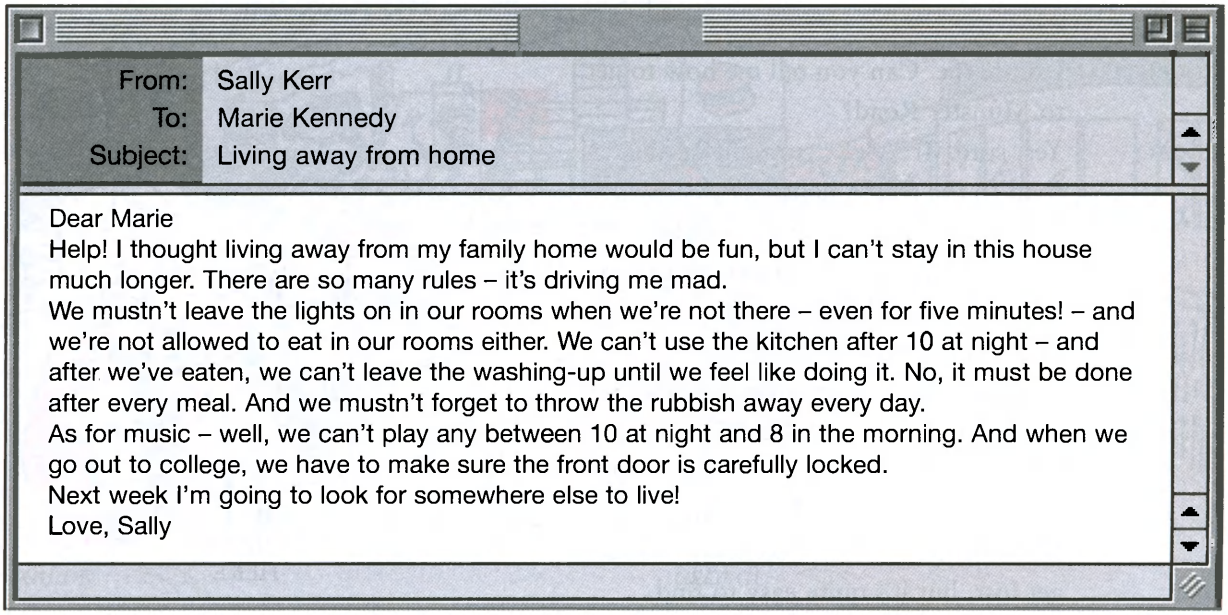

From: Sally Kerr
To: Marie Kennedy
Subject: Living away from home

Dear Marie
Help! I thought living away from my family home would be fun, but I can't stay in this house much longer. There are so many rules – it's driving me mad.
We mustn't leave the lights on in our rooms when we're not there – even for five minutes! – and we're not allowed to eat in our rooms either. We can't use the kitchen after 10 at night – and after we've eaten, we can't leave the washing-up until we feel like doing it. No, it must be done after every meal. And we mustn't forget to throw the rubbish away every day.
As for music – well, we can't play any between 10 at night and 8 in the morning. And when we go out to college, we have to make sure the front door is carefully locked.
Next week I'm going to look for somewhere else to live!
Love, Sally

Rules of the House

1 Switch off the lights .... when you leave your room.
2 .... in your rooms.
3 .... the kitchen after 10 at night.
4 .... after every meal.
5 .... every day.
6 .... between 10 at night and 8 in the morning.
7 .... when you go out.

What about you? What rules would you write for people living in your house? Think of two positive sentences and two negative sentences.

Rules of the House

....
....
....
....
....

89 Look at the map and complete the directions. Use the verbs from the box.

ask	cross	~~go~~	take	turn	walk

TOURIST: Excuse me. Can you tell me how to get to Munster Road?

LOCAL: Yes, sure. (1) ....Go........ straight up this road to the traffic lights. (2) .... right at the traffic lights. (3) .... along that road – I think it's called Craven Road – for about 100 metres. (4) .... the road – there's a pedestrian crossing there which is good because the road is really busy. (5) .... the second road on the left and that's Munster Road. (6) .... someone if you get lost, but it's quite easy to find.

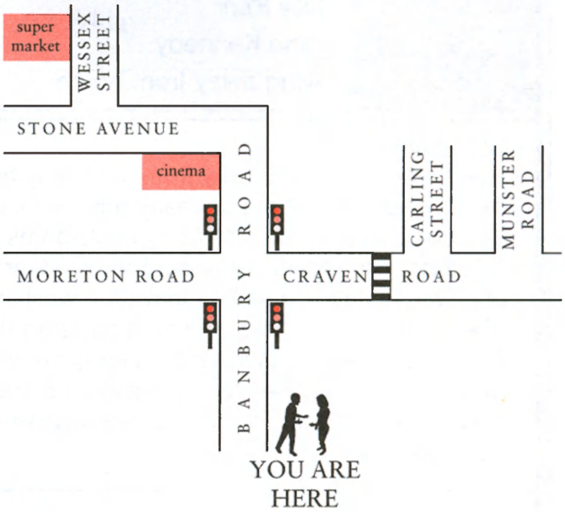

Look at the map again. Give directions.

TOURIST: Excuse me. Can you tell me how to get to the supermarket?

LOCAL: ....

....

....

....

90 Write what you would say in these situations. Use imperatives (have / go / don't go etc.) or Let's (not) / Don't let's.

1 What do you say to someone just before they go out for the evening?
......Have a nice...... evening.

2 What do you say to a child who is opening the sitting room window?
.... the window. It's cold in here.

3 You've got a delicious chocolate cake. You want to offer your friend a piece. What do you say?
.... cake.

4 Your friend says, 'Shall we have take-away pizza tonight?' You want to go to the new Spanish restaurant for dinner. What do you say?
.... pizza. .... Spanish restaurant.

5 You have a headache and your brother is playing music very loudly. What do you say?
.... , please.

6 Your friend keeps asking you some questions about your job. You can't answer because it's a difficult situation at work at the moment. What do you say?
.... because I can't answer them.

91 George Medley is listening to a guide telling a group of visitors about the town of Stanton. He's thinking about Stanton in the past. Complete the sentences. Use used to and a suitable verb.

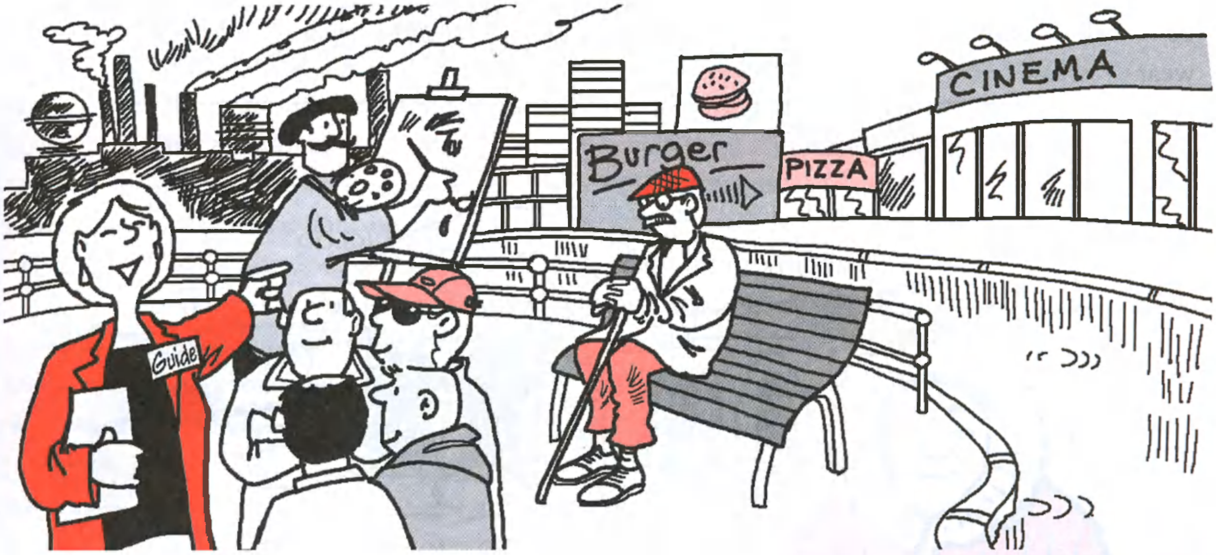

GUIDE

Stanton is a very busy town nowadays.
There are lots of things to do here.
For example, we have a new cinema complex.
And this is the chemical factory. It's very important. A lot of people work here.
Unfortunately, the river is not very clean now.
Pitt Street is the main shopping street in town.

We now have a wonderful city bus service.

And of course, we've got lots of fast food restaurants.
And look, there's Paul Carr, our famous artist.
As you can see, Stanton is a good place to live.

GEORGE

→ (1) It used to be very quiet.

→ (2) It .... a school.
→ (3) I .... football in the park there.
→ (4) I .... in that river.
→ (5) Our family .... in Pitt Street.
→ (6) Everyone .... to the shops.
→ (7) We .... at home.
→ (8) He .... in a bookshop.
→ (9) It .... better.

Can you think of four things you used to do when you were younger that you don't do now? You can use the verbs from the box or think of your own ideas.

go	like	listen	live	play	speak

....

....

....

....

92 Complete the text about the Inuit people of North America. Use used to or the present simple form of the verbs from the box.

be	~~call~~	cook	go	hate	hunt	live	ride	spend	take	take off
wear	wear									

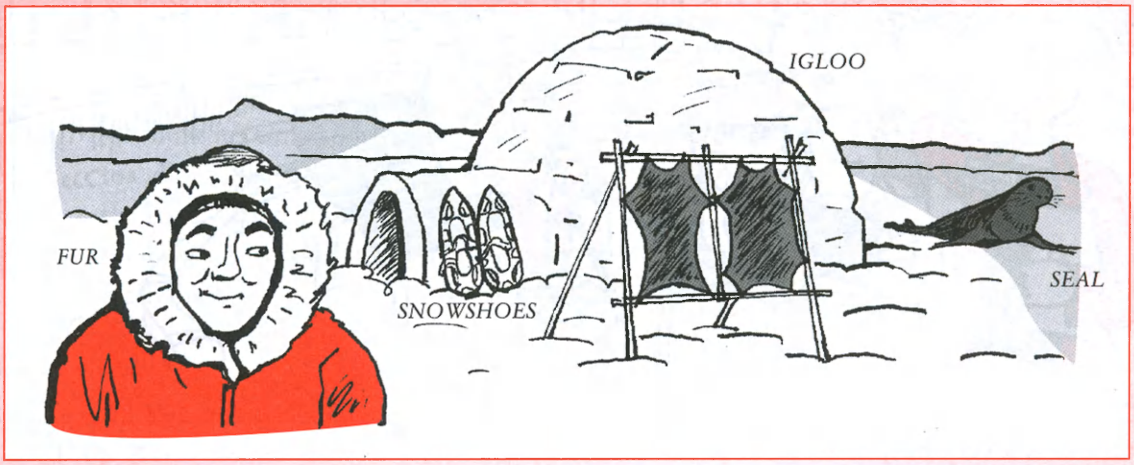

The lives of the Inuit people of North America have changed a lot in 30 years. First, their name: people (1) used to call them Eskimos, but now they are called Inuits, which means 'the people'.

They (2) .... in igloos in the winter, but today, many of them live in houses in small towns. They (3) .... seals – they ate the meat and made clothes from the fur. Many of the people still (4) .... seal-skin clothes today because they are very warm. Remember, the weather is extremely cold for many months of the year.

Mariano Tagalik, a 65-year-old Inuit, told us a little about her early life. 'Our winter igloos were very warm. We (5) .... inside, so sometimes it got too hot. When I was a child, I (6) .... most of my clothes when I was in our igloo. In the short summers, we lived in seal-skin tents, but I (7) .... as much time as possible playing outside.'

To move over the snow, Inuit people (8) .... special snowshoes on their feet, but today many Inuits (9) .... snowmobiles. These machines can travel long distances in a short time. In the past, it (10) .... them days or weeks to travel the same distance.

Inuit children never went to school – they learnt everything from their parents, but now, like all North Americans, they (11) .... to school for about ten years. Life is not as hard as it (12) .... , but many of the older Inuits (13) .... modern life and want to go back to the old days.

there and it

93 Complete the conversation. Use the positive, negative or question form of *there is/are* or *it is*.

JANE: *(standing outside a restaurant)* This is the new Mexican restaurant.
MARY: (1) ....Is it....... expensive?
JANE: No, I don't think so. Look, (2) .... an empty table. Let's go in.
MARY: OK. *(walking into the restaurant)* Mm, (3) .... very noisy.
JANE: That's because (4) .... a man with a guitar over there – look.
MARY: Oh yes, and (5) .... some Mexican dancers too.
JANE: Great! I like dancing. (6) .... somewhere we can put our coats?
MARY: Yes, by the door … Let's have a look at the menu. Mmm, (7) .... a lot of things that I don't understand. I mean, what's guacamole?
JANE: I don't know, but we can ask the waiter.
MARY: Excuse me, could you tell me what guacamole is, please?
WAITER: Avocado, tomatoes, …
JANE: (8) .... any nuts in it? I can't eat nuts – I'm allergic to them.
WAITER: No, (9) .... any nuts in it.
MARY: (10) .... hot or cold?
WAITER: Cold.
MARY: OK, two guacamoles, to start with. Then what, Jane?
JANE: (11) .... a vegetarian dish on the menu, unfortunately, so …
WAITER: Excuse me, try fajitas. (12) .... a vegetarian dish, made with beans.
MARY: Great, so two fajitas as well, then.

94 Complete this email from Nina, who lives in Britain, to Martin, her Australian friend. Use *it is(n't)/was(n't)* or *there is(n't)/was(n't)*.

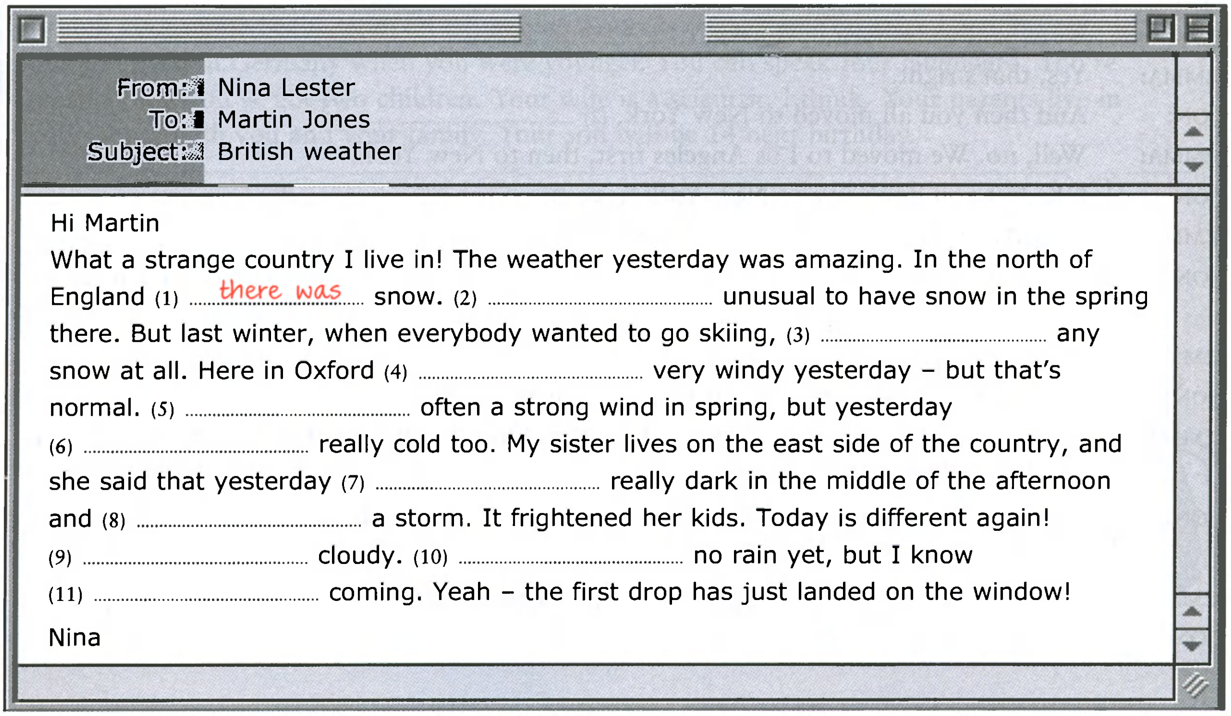

From: Nina Lester
To: Martin Jones
Subject: British weather

Hi Martin

What a strange country I live in! The weather yesterday was amazing. In the north of England (1) ....there was....... snow. (2) .... unusual to have snow in the spring there. But last winter, when everybody wanted to go skiing, (3) .... any snow at all. Here in Oxford (4) .... very windy yesterday – but that's normal. (5) .... often a strong wind in spring, but yesterday (6) .... really cold too. My sister lives on the east side of the country, and she said that yesterday (7) .... really dark in the middle of the afternoon and (8) .... a storm. It frightened her kids. Today is different again! (9) .... cloudy. (10) .... no rain yet, but I know (11) .... coming. Yeah – the first drop has just landed on the window!

Nina

I do do you? so do I I don't
(auxiliary verbs)

95 Write short questions (Do you, Isn't it etc.).

1 I said something very stupid yesterday. — Did you ? What was it?
2 I don't want to talk to that man over there. — .... ? Why not?
3 My husband can't cook at all. — .... ? Is that a problem for you?
4 You forgot to phone me yesterday. — .... ? I'm sorry.
5 My wife doesn't like football. — .... ? Why not?
6 I haven't met any new people recently. — .... ? What a pity.
7 I'm not going to eat anything tonight. — .... ? Are you on a diet?
8 My son was ill last week. — .... ? Is he better now?
9 I was wrong about Adam. — .... ? In what way?
10 Jane has just agreed to marry me! — .... ? Congratulations!

96 Jon Clark is interviewing actor, Emma Pierce. Complete the conversation with positive question tags (is it?, can you? etc.) or negative question tags (weren't you?, hasn't it? etc.).

JON: Now, you were born in Alaska, (1) weren't you ?
EMMA: Yes, that's right.
JON: And then you all moved to New York, (2) .... ?
EMMA: Well, no. We moved to Los Angeles first, then to New York.
JON: OK, but you don't live in New York now, (3) .... ?
EMMA: No. My family do, but I live in Atlanta.
JON: I see. Now, you've got two brothers, (4) .... ? And you're all actors. That's very unusual, (5) .... ?
EMMA: I guess so, but my parents were both actors, so …
JON: They weren't very happy about you becoming an actor, (6) .... ?
EMMA: No, not at first. They wanted one of their children to do something different. But now they're really pleased about my success.
JON: I know you've acted with your brothers in a film, but you haven't made a film with your parents, (7) .... ?
EMMA: Not yet, but we're hoping to do one together next year.
JON: Fascinating. Tell me more.

7 A journalist from a music magazine asked Tim Drake and Damian Sutton, two members of the band 'Jamba', some questions. Read their answers.

		TIM	DAMIAN
1	Are you interested in sport?	yes	no – boring
2	Do you have a girlfriend at the moment?	no	yes – Nina
3	Were you good at school?	yes	no – left at 16
4	Did you go to university?	yes	no – worked in bank for two years
5	Do you enjoy listening to other bands?	yes	no – no time
6	Have you been to many countries?	no	yes – favourite place Jamaica

Now complete the article in the magazine.

Did you know? … Tim and Damian, from 'Jamba'

1 • Tim is interested in sport, but Damian isn't. He thinks it's boring.
2 • Tim …………………………………… She's called Nina.
3 • Tim …………………………………… He left when he was 16.
4 • Tim …………………………………… He worked in a bank for two years.
5 • Tim …………………………………… He has no time.
6 • Tim …………………………………… His favourite place is Jamaica.

8 Mark has gone to see Madame Petra. A lot of what she says is wrong. Mark tells Madame Petra where she's wrong. Complete what he says with verbs in the negative form.

I think your name begins with an 'a', maybe Andreas or Aaron. You were born in England, but you lived in Germany when you were younger. You can speak four languages. You're married and you've got two children. Your wife is a scientist, I think. Your parents live in your house with you and your family. Your son will be 14 next birthday.

You're wrong about me. My name (1) isn't Andreas . It's Mark. I (2) …………………… in England. I was born in Canada. I (3) …………………… in Germany when I was younger. We lived in the USA. I (4) …………………… four languages. I can only speak two. Yes, I'm married, but I (5) …………………… two children – only one, who's called Tony. My wife (6) …………………… a scientist. She's a teacher, and my parents (7) …………………… with us – they live in their own house. My son (8) …………………… 14 next birthday. He'll be 10.

99 Read this information and complete what Meg says. Use So (So can I etc.) or Neither (Neither have I etc.) or I (I'm not etc.).

	JULIA		MEG
1	I like comedy films.	agree	So do I.
2	I'd like to live in New Zealand.	disagree	I wouldn't.
3	I can't play volleyball very well.	agree	Neither can I.
4	I don't like jazz music very much.	disagree	
5	I haven't got any brothers.	agree	
6	I'm looking for a new job.	disagree	
7	I went to university.	agree	
8	I never go to discos.	agree	
9	I'll be 25 next birthday.	agree	

Sheila introduced Julia and Meg to each other. Complete Sheila's email to her brother, John. Only write about the things that Meg agrees with. Use So ... Meg or Neither ... Meg.

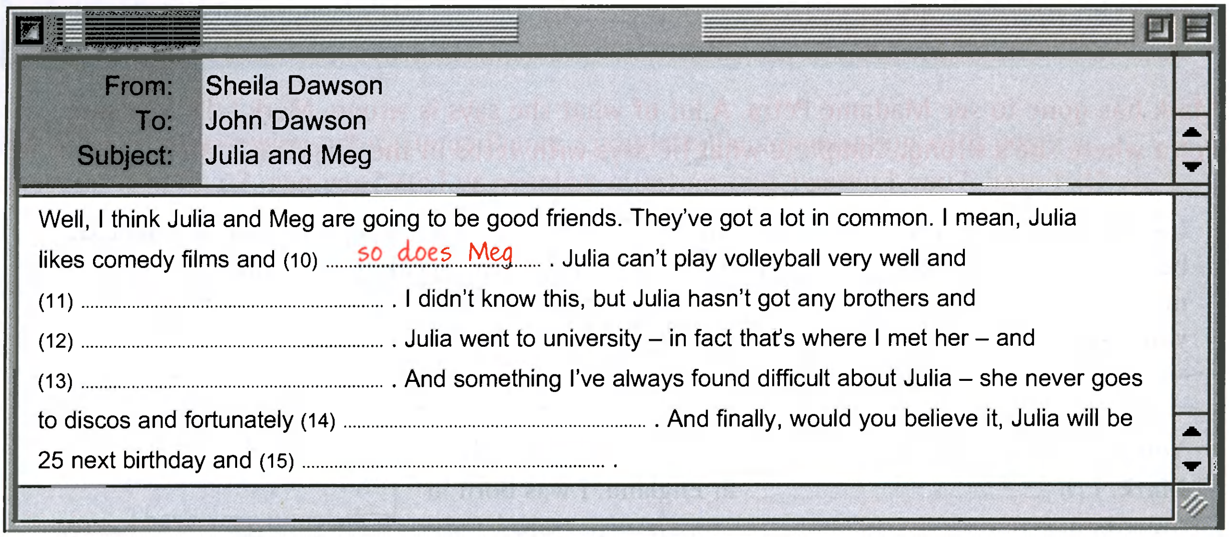

From: Sheila Dawson
To: John Dawson
Subject: Julia and Meg

Well, I think Julia and Meg are going to be good friends. They've got a lot in common. I mean, Julia likes comedy films and (10) so does Meg . Julia can't play volleyball very well and (11) .... I didn't know this, but Julia hasn't got any brothers and (12) .... Julia went to university – in fact that's where I met her – and (13) .... And something I've always found difficult about Julia – she never goes to discos and fortunately (14) .... And finally, would you believe it, Julia will be 25 next birthday and (15) ....

And what about you? Are you the same as Meg or Julia? Write true answers about yourself. Use so (so do I etc.) and neither (neither do I etc.).

Julia and Meg like comedy films and so do I.
Meg wouldn't like to live in New Zealand and neither would I.
....
....
....
....

is it ... ? have you ... ? do they ... ? (questions)

Units 44–48

00 You are asking Jack some questions. Write the questions.

	YOU	JACK
1	(live?) Where do you live ?	In the middle of the town.
2	(do?) ?	I'm a teacher.
3	(university?) ?	Yes, I studied physics.
4	(married?) ?	Yes, I am.
5	(meet your wife?) ?	At a wedding!
6	(any children?) ?	Yes, a daughter called Emily.
7	(Emily / to school?) ?	No, not yet. She's only three.
8	(your wife work?) ?	Yes, at home. She looks after Emily.
9	(enjoy your job?) ?	Yes, most of the time.
10	(holiday?) ?	Eleven weeks a year.

01 This is the scene at Emily's party. Complete the questions.

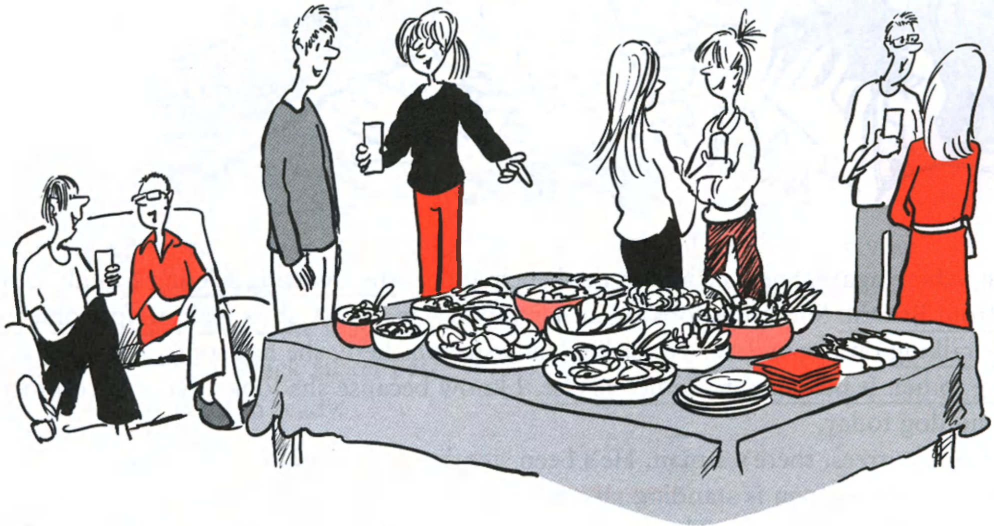

1 There's some wonderful food over there.
Mmm. Who made it? (make)

2 I went to the cinema last night.
What did you see ? (see)

3 I'm going to tell Maria that I don't want to meet her again.
What .... to her? (say)

4 ... and then just at that moment, a man opened the window and started to climb in.
What .... next? (happen)

5 Well, Julia likes Simon, but he doesn't really like her. Someone else does.
Really? Who .... Julia? (like)

6 I heard that Carmen is getting married next month.
I didn't know that. Who .... you that? (tell)

7 I can hear music coming from next door.
Me too. Who .... the piano? (play)

102 Andy Perkins is a private investigator. He is watching someone in the park and he's reporting what he can see to his colleague in his office. His colleague is writing down some questions. Complete the questions. Each question ends with a preposition (to, for, at, with etc.).

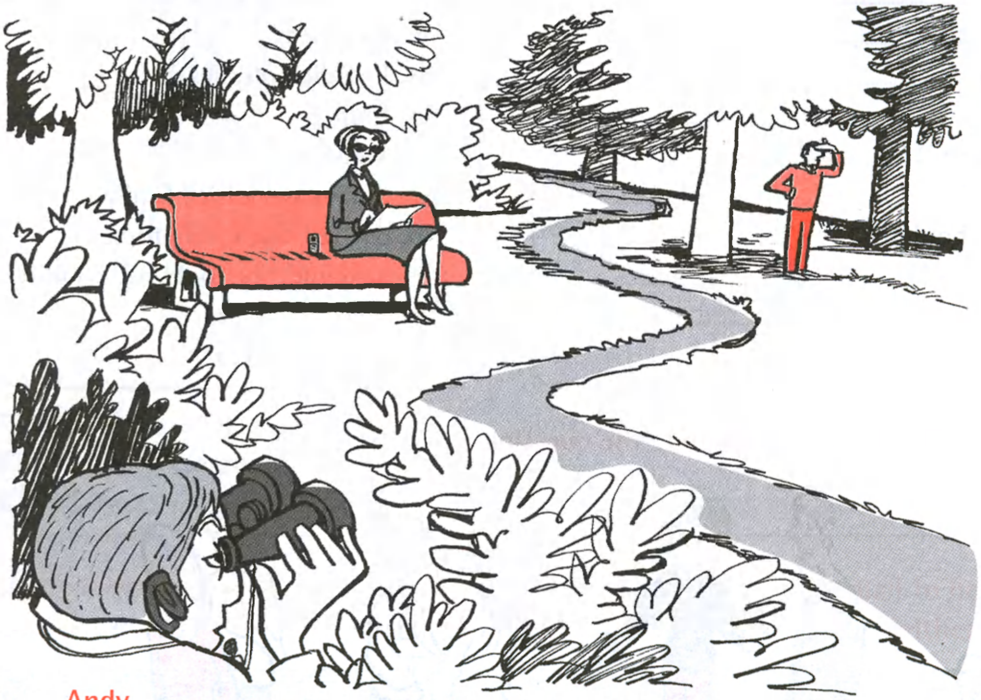

'The woman is here again. She's sitting on the bench and (1) she's writing a letter, I think. (2) I don't think she's from Britain. She keeps looking at her watch – maybe (3) she's waiting for someone. Oh, now (4) she's talking on her mobile. Yesterday when she was here, she had a dog with her. (5) It didn't belong to her. It belonged to someone else. I know because she looked very uncomfortable with it. But no dog today.

Now over by the trees, there's a man. He's been standing there and (6) looking at something for a long time. Now the woman is standing up and walking in his direction. They've just shaken hands and now (7) they're talking. They're leaving the park. I must follow them.

1 Who 's she writing to ?
2 Where .... ?
3 Who .... ?
4 Who .... ?
5 Who .... ?
6 What .... ?
7 What .... ?

103 Read each conversation and complete the questions.

1 RACHEL: ....Did you.... enjoy your holiday?
DAVE: Yes, thanks. It was wonderful.
RACHEL: .... go?
DAVE: To Jamaica.
RACHEL: .... go with?
DAVE: Two friends from college.
RACHEL: .... the weather like?
DAVE: Sunny every day.

2 ROB: .... done?
DAN: I've broken my arm.
ROB: .... do it?
DAN: I fell off my bike.
ROB: .... hurt?
DAN: Not now, but it did.

3 BRUNO: We can catch the next Manchester train if we hurry.
ELLA: .... leave?
BRUNO: Half past nine, from Central Station.
ELLA: .... take?
BRUNO: About two hours. We should be there just after 11.30. So hurry up!
ELLA: I'm nearly ready. .... wear – the brown one or the black one?
BRUNO: I like your black jacket best.
ELLA: OK, then I'm ready.

04 Find the mistakes in these sentences. Correct the sentences.

1 What time leaves the train? ....What time does the train leave?....
2 Why you didn't ring me last night? ....
3 To who are you giving that present? ....
4 How much has spent Mary? ....
5 Where did Jo went for her holidays last year? ....
6 How long takes it to get to your school? ....
7 What do you usually in the evenings? ....
8 What did happen yesterday evening? ....
9 When was built the Taj Mahal? ....

105 Marta is phoning her friend, Silvia. Use the words to complete the conversation. Do not change the form of the words.

MARTA: Hi Silvia. (1) anything / you / doing / tonight / are?
Are you doing anything tonight ?

SILVIA: No, nothing special. Why?

MARTA: I'd like to go to the cinema.

SILVIA: (2) to see / do / want / you / what?
.... ?

MARTA: 'Casablanca'. It's an old film. (3) it / you / have / seen?
.... ?

SILVIA: Yes. I went last night – sorry.

MARTA: Oh, what a pity. (4) did / who / go / with / you?
.... ?

SILVIA: My mum. She's seen it five times.

MARTA: (5) like / was / what / it?
.... ?

SILVIA: Good – I cried at the end. Anyway, (6) you / to do / like / else / would / something?
.... ?

MARTA: Yeah, OK. (7) you / come / why / to my house / don't?
.... ?
I'll cook dinner for you. My parents are away at the moment.

SILVIA: That sounds great. (8) going / are / how long / away / they / to be?
.... ?

MARTA: Just until the weekend.

SILVIA: (9) anything / I / for dinner / bring / can?
.... ?

MARTA: No, nothing – just yourself. Come early, because I need to tell you something.

SILVIA: Really? (10) you / to me / do / to talk / want / what / about?
.... ?

MARTA: I'll tell you when I see you.

SILVIA: OK. See you later. Oh by the way, (11) to your house / to walk / it / how long / from the station / does / take?
.... ?
Last time I came, I was driving.

MARTA: It's only about ten minutes.

SILVIA: OK. See you soon. Bye.

Do you know where ... ?

06 **Carla has emailed her friend Charlotte some questions about another friend, Juan. Unfortunately, Charlotte doesn't know the answers to Carla's questions!**

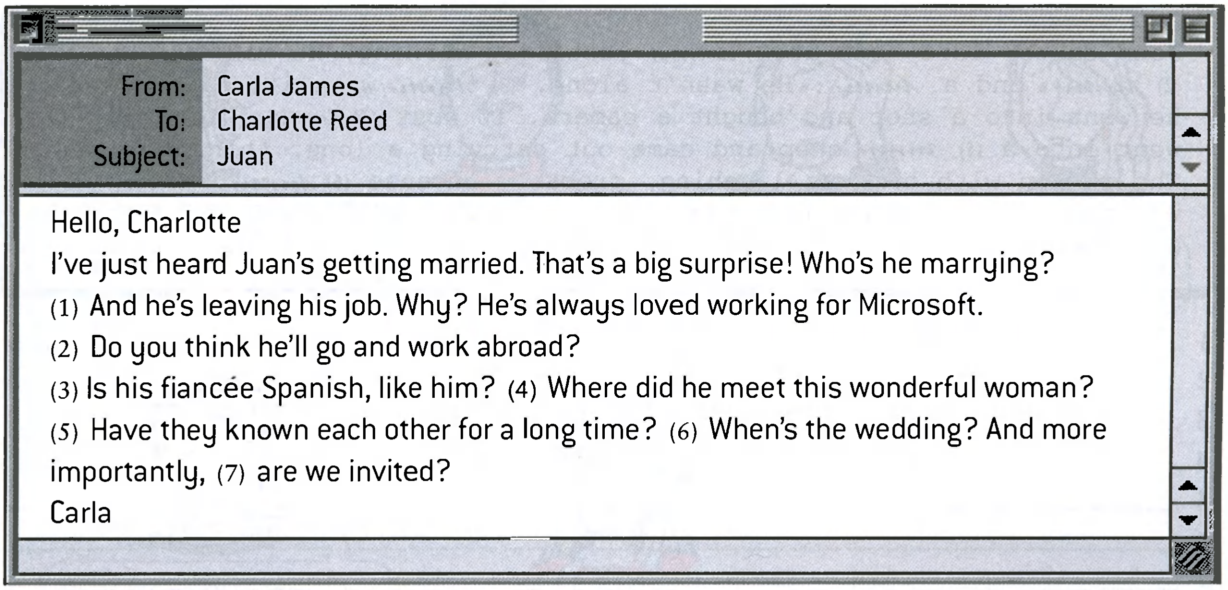

From: Carla James
To: Charlotte Reed
Subject: Juan

Hello, Charlotte
I've just heard Juan's getting married. That's a big surprise! Who's he marrying?
(1) And he's leaving his job. Why? He's always loved working for Microsoft.
(2) Do you think he'll go and work abroad?
(3) Is his fiancée Spanish, like him? (4) Where did he meet this wonderful woman?
(5) Have they known each other for a long time? (6) When's the wedding? And more importantly, (7) are we invited?
Carla

Complete Charlotte's answers. Use I don't know.

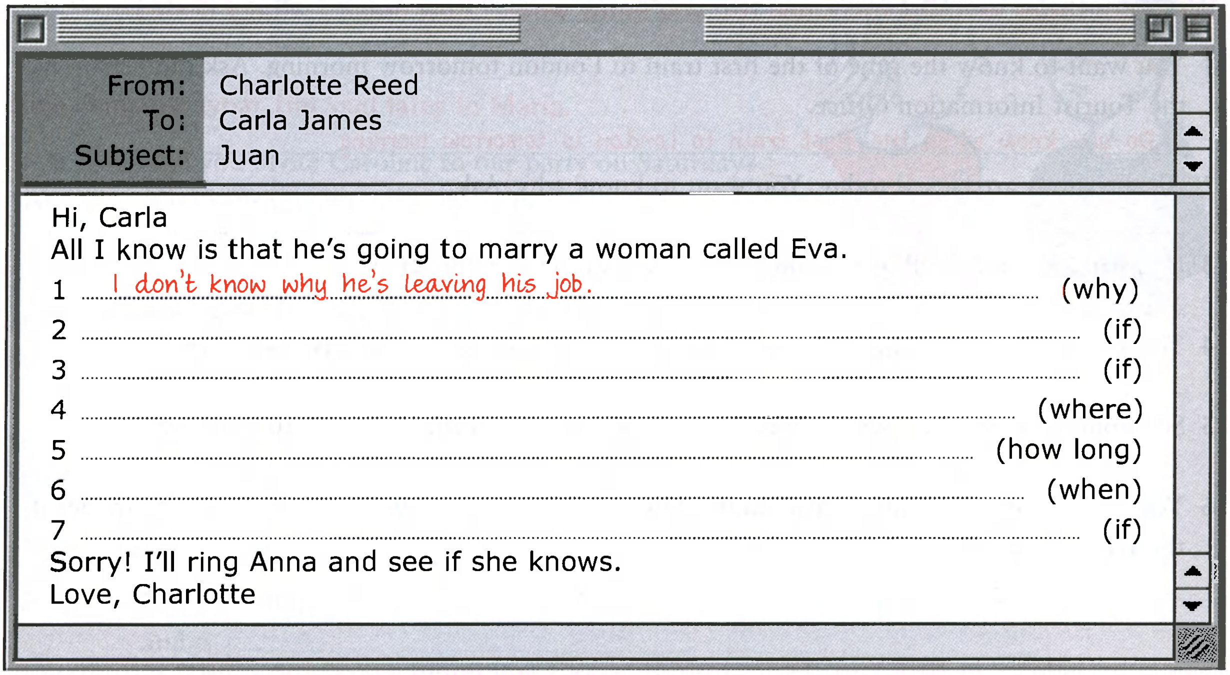

From: Charlotte Reed
To: Carla James
Subject: Juan

Hi, Carla
All I know is that he's going to marry a woman called Eva.
1 I don't know why he's leaving his job. .... (why)
2 .... (if)
3 .... (if)
4 .... (where)
5 .... (how long)
6 .... (when)
7 .... (if)
Sorry! I'll ring Anna and see if she knows.
Love, Charlotte

107 Some words in this report are difficult to read. Ask questions to find the missing information. Use Do you know ... ?

> John Carter left home at (1) [illegible] yesterday morning. He was wearing a (2) [illegible] and a [illegible] . He wasn't alone. (3) [illegible] was with him. First he went into a shop and bought a camera. It cost (4) [illegible] . Then he went into a (5) [illegible] shop and came out carrying a long, thin package. The person with him was laughing, probably because (6) [illegible] . They walked to the station and caught the fast train which was going to (7) [illegible] .

1 Do you know what time John Carter left home yesterday morning?
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....

108 Write questions with Do you know (Do you know when / how much / what / if etc.).

1 You want to know the time of the first train to London tomorrow morning. Ask the person in the Tourist Information Office.
Do you know when the first train to London is tomorrow morning ?

2 All the shops are closed today. You want to know why. Ask.
.... ?

3 You want to find the Regent Hotel. You ask a stranger in the street.
.... ?

4 You want to go to a concert, but you don't know the cost of the tickets. Ask a friend.
.... ?

5 Someone told you that Mr Collins, your old teacher, has died. You want to know when.
.... ?

6 You want to go to a Chinese restaurant, but you don't want to walk very far. Ask a stranger if there is one nearby.
.... ?

109 You're on holiday in New York. Write four questions you might ask at the Tourist Information Office. Use Do you know (Do you know when / how much / what / if etc.).

.... ?
.... ?
.... ?
.... ?

She said that ... He told me that ...
(reported speech)

110 Tim invited some people to his and Maria's party on Saturday.

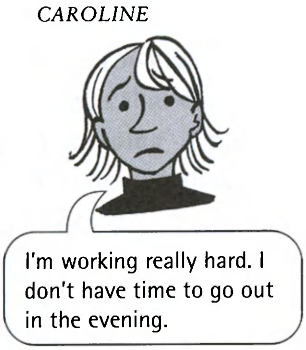
CAROLINE
I'm working really hard. I don't have time to go out in the evening.

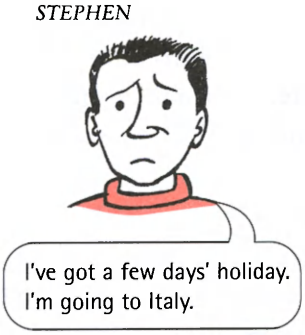
STEPHEN
I've got a few days' holiday. I'm going to Italy.

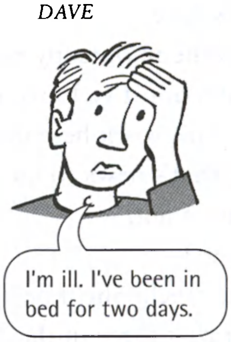
DAVE
I'm ill. I've been in bed for two days.

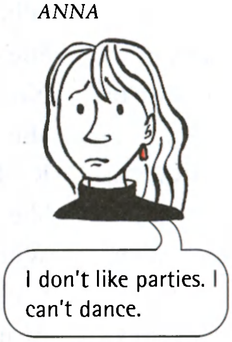
ANNA
I don't like parties. I can't dance.

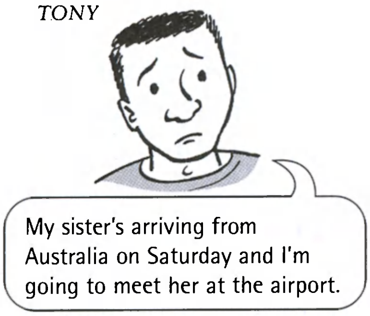
TONY
My sister's arriving from Australia on Saturday and I'm going to meet her at the airport.

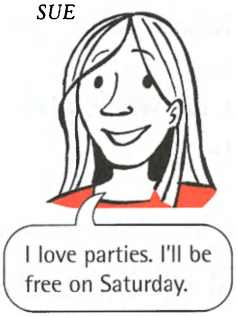
SUE
I love parties. I'll be free on Saturday.

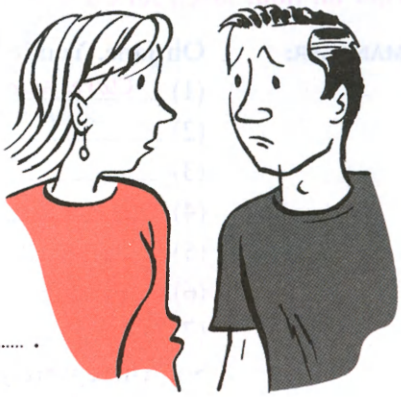

Now complete what Tim said later to Maria.

MARIA: Did you invite Caroline to our party on Saturday?
TIM: Yes, but she can't come. She said
(1) she was working really hard and
(2) she didn't have time to go out in the evening .
MARIA: OK. What about Stephen?
TIM: No. He said (3) ....
and (4) ....
MARIA: Dave?
TIM: No. He said (5) ....
and (6) ....
MARIA: Anna?
TIM: No, not Anna. She said (7) ....
and (8) ....
MARIA: Can Tony come?
TIM: No. He said (9) ....
and (10) ....
MARIA: What about Sue?
TIM: Yes. She said (11) ....
and (12) ....
MARIA: Great! That's a start!

111 At the office, Jane's manager is looking for her. Read what these people say.

MANAGER: Where's Jane?
1 CLARE: She's in the photocopy room.
MANAGER: No, she's not. I've looked there.
2 PAUL: She doesn't work here on Mondays.
MANAGER: Really, that's news to me.
3 STUART: She's gone out.
MANAGER: Where to?
4 SIMON: She's at lunch. She'll be back soon.
MANAGER: At half past three in the afternoon?
5 MIKE: She leaves early on Mondays.
MANAGER: Nobody leaves early on Mondays.
6 DIANA: She's making a cup of tea.
MANAGER: Come on, Mary. You tell me. Where's Jane?
7 MARY: I don't know where she is.

Half an hour later, Jane's manager finds her. Complete the conversation.

MANAGER: Oh Jane. You're here. I asked everyone where you were.
(1) Clare said you were in the photocopy room.
(2) ....
(3) ....
(4) .... and ....
(5) ....
(6) ....
(7) ....
So, where were you?
(Finish with your own ideas.)
JANE: (8) I was ....

doing do to do

Units 51–55, 112

12 Which alternative is correct?

1 Could I ......B...... your dictionary, please?
A borrowing B borrow C to borrow
2 Why is that car .... outside our house?
A stopping B stop C to stop
3 You don't look well. You should .... to bed.
A going B go C to go
4 Do we have .... now? I'm enjoying myself.
A leaving B leave C to leave
5 'Shall I .... off the TV?' 'Yes, please.'
A turning B turn C to turn
6 I must .... my postcards today. We're leaving on Friday.
A writing B write C to write
7 You didn't need .... any more eggs. We had some in the fridge.
A buying B buy C to buy
8 We used .... a dog, but it died last year.
A having B have C to have
9 My brother wants .... a teacher when he finishes college.
A being B be C to be
10 'What would you like .... tonight?' 'Let's go out for a walk.'
A doing B do C to do

13 Complete the letter with the to ... or -ing form of the verbs.

Dear Francesca

Thank you for your last letter. It was good to hear from you. My big news is that I've decided (1) ......to change...... (change) jobs. I finish (2) ......working...... (work) at Simpsons next month and start in my new company, Galt, the week after. Simpsons didn't want me (3) .... (go), but Galt offered me more money and more opportunities. I hope (4) .... (be) a manager there in two years.

By the way, I forgot (5) .... (tell) you – I'm learning (6) .... (drive). My new company offered (7) .... (let) me use one of their cars, which was very good of them. I had a lot of problems at first because I wanted (8) .... (do) everything quickly. My teacher thought I was a bit dangerous on the road! He suggested (9) .... (slow) down, and now it's getting better.

I'm having a party on the 25th and would love (10) .... (see) you. Perhaps you could persuade your sister (11) .... (come) with you as well. I really enjoyed (12) .... (talk) to her at your party. My neighbours have promised (13) .... (go) out for the evening, so we can play the music as loud as we want.

I must stop (14) .... (write) now and do some work. See you on the 25th, I hope.

Love, Carolina

114 Complete the second sentence in each pair. Use to if necessary.

1 The doctor said I should stop eating chocolate.
The doctor advised me to stop eating chocolate. (advise)
2 I said to David, 'Don't play with that knife.'
I .... (tell)
3 Stuart didn't allow his young sons to play with toy guns.
Stuart .... (let)
4 Jane didn't want to come swimming with us, but we asked her again and she said 'yes'.
We .... (persuade)
5 I was surprised that you failed the exam.
I .... (expect)
6 My father said I had to pay back all the money I borrowed.
My father .... (make)

115 Complete the questions with do / to do / doing.

1 What do you hope to do when you finish studying?
2 When you were younger, what did your parents make you .... ?
3 What did your parents never let you .... ?
4 Is there a job in the house that you don't mind .... ?
5 What have you always wanted .... , but never had the time or money?
6 What do you most enjoy .... when you want to relax?
7 If you could have any job, what would you like .... ?

Now answer the questions for yourself.

1 I hope to have a long holiday when I finish studying.
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....

116 Finish the sentences with to (do something) or for (something). Use your own ideas.

1 Tanya went upstairs to wash her hair.
2 Jack went upstairs for a book.
3 I wrote to Maria to ....
4 Manuel is going to call the airport for ....
5 I need some more money ....
6 Kate's going to the kitchen ....
7 Lucy didn't have enough time ....
8 Gina waited a long time ....

doing do to do

Units 51–55, 112

117 Two alternatives are correct. Cross out the wrong alternative.

1	I	would like don't want ~~suggest~~	to meet Lisa.
2	My sister	doesn't mind wants me likes	swimming in the sea.
3	Stella's boss	made asked let	her work late.
4	Did you	use learn finish	to play the piano when you were younger?
5	Matthias	started decided suggested	learning Spanish as well as English.
6	I	forgot don't need don't mind	to buy some bread.
7	David	told made advised	me not to speak so loudly.

118 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs.

JANE: What are you doing this weekend?

PAT: Well, on Saturday we're going (1) ....swimming.... (swim). Do you want (2) ....to come.... (come) with us?

JANE: I can't swim if someone isn't (3) .... (hold) me. I've been thinking of (4) .... (have) lessons.

PAT: Well, I can help you. I taught Karen (5) .... (swim).

JANE: Did you? OK, I'll come. Would you like me (6) .... (bring) a picnic?

SARA: What did you do after (7) .... (leave) school?

ROB: I studied law. My father is a lawyer and he persuaded me (8) .... (go) to law school.

SARA: Did you enjoy it?

ROB: Not really, because it wasn't my choice. My father made me (9) .... (do) it. I wanted (10) .... (go) to college (11) .... (study) journalism. So after two years of law school I left without (12) .... (tell) my father and went to live in France.

SARA: And now you work for a French newspaper in London.

ROB: That's right, and I love it.

119 Complete the story with the correct form of do or make.

Today was my first day back at work after my holiday. Halfway through the morning I thought, 'I've got so much (1) ....to do.... that I've forgotten my holiday already.' The company I work for (2) ....makes.... chairs – not really the most exciting things in the world. My job is well-paid, but I don't think I'll (3) .... it for much longer.

I went into the office kitchen and (4) .... myself a cup of coffee. Then, I went back to my office and (5) .... a few phone calls. At lunchtime, I went to the park. I always (6) .... some sandwiches before I come to work in the mornings. I prefer not to eat too much at lunchtime because John always (7) .... something delicious for dinner.

The afternoon passed quickly. I (8) .... a list of all the things I had to (9) .... the next day. Then at 6 o'clock, the phone rang. It was my boss. 'Sally, what are you (10) .... tomorrow? Do you think you could (11) .... me a favour?'

'Sure,' I answered. 'What is it you want me (12) .... ?'

'Could you take Dave Turner out for lunch? He's the buyer from Martins. I've (13) .... an appointment to see my accountant at 1 o'clock and I don't want to cancel it.'

'OK, I'll (14) .... it.' But I knew I was (15) .... a big mistake. I didn't like Dave Turner and I don't think he liked me either.

At home that evening, I helped my son (16) .... his homework. Then we all had dinner together. Afterwards, John (17) .... the washing-up and I (18) .... the ironing.

I slept badly that night, but in the morning I knew what I had (19) .... I wasn't happy in my job. It was time for a big talk with my boss.

120 What do you say in these situations? Use the correct form of have (or have got).

1 Your friend, Lorenzo, has just come back from his holiday. Ask him about it.
(a good holiday) ....Did you have a good holiday.... ?
2 Your brother looks very red and hot. What do you ask him?
(a temperature) .... ?
3 Your mother is preparing lunch for everyone today. Ask her what you're going to eat.
(lunch today) .... ?
4 There's a problem with your computer. Ask your brother to check it.
(a look) .... ?
5 David has just got a new job. You know he changes work quite often. Ask him about his jobs.
(How many) .... ?
6 You and a friend need some exercise. Suggest a walk later.
(Shall) .... ?

I me my mine myself
(pronouns and possessives)

1 Complete the sentences. Use I/she/they etc. and them/him/you etc.

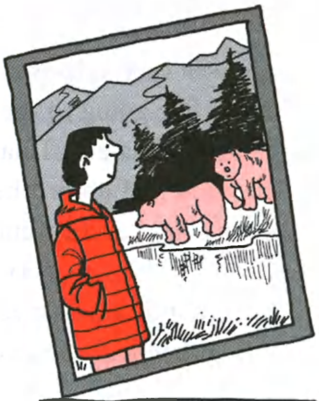

'Hi. I'm Josie Clark. This is Pete. (1) ....He.... 's my best friend and I like (2) .... very much. Pete and (3) .... aren't British. (4) .... 're from San Francisco. (5) .... 's a beautiful city on the west coast of North America. Last autumn, Pete came on holiday with (6) .... to Yellowstone National Park. In this photo, (7) .... 's watching some bears. We were lucky to see (8) .... because at that time of year (9) .... were getting ready to go to sleep for the winter.'

Complete the sentences. Use I/me/my/mine, you/your/yours and he/him/his etc.

'And in this photo you can see the bridge. San Francisco is famous for (10) .... bridge – the Golden Gate Bridge. I'm lucky because (11) .... family live near the bridge. From (12) .... sitting room window we can see it. It's great – especially at night. (13) .... brother, Sam, lives with (14) .... wife, Laura, and (15) .... two kids about two kilometres from us. Laura is from Uruguay, and (16) .... parents still live there.'

22 Complete the letter. Use I/me/my/mine, you/your/yours and he/him/his etc.

Dear Ellie

Thank you for (1) ....your.... card. It was good to hear from (2) .... and to know (3) .... news. Let (4) .... tell you my news. In June, (5) .... sister, Isabel, is getting married to Joe. Do you remember? I met Joe ten years ago, so he's an old friend of (6) .... (7) ....'re getting married in the afternoon and my parents are having a big party for (8) .... in the evening. Isabel's not been well recently, so (9) ....'m really happy for (10) .... , and for Joe too. After the wedding, they're coming to stay with (11) .... because they haven't got an apartment yet. So we'll be one big, happy family.

My good friend, Pete, is taking (12) .... final exams next month. After that, (13) .... wants to get a job in a hospital. I think it'll be difficult for (14) .... , but he really wants to be a doctor. Good luck to (15) .... !

Last week I met Jane and Tina Sarton. Do you remember (16) .... ? (17) .... brother was at school with us. I gave Jane your telephone number and she gave me (18) .... Perhaps we can all meet sometime soon.

I must stop now. By the way, I found a silver pen in my room. It's not (19) .... Is it (20) ....? I know you've got a silver one. My parents send (21) .... love to you and (22) .... parents.

Love, Liz

123 Complete the sentences. Use himself/themselves etc., by myself / by herself etc. or each other.

1 Jack was very surprised when he looked at ....himself.... in the mirror.
2 I don't like going to the cinema with other people. I prefer going ....by myself.... .
3 Joe loves Tina and Tina loves Joe. They love ....each other.... .
4 The child had no brothers or sisters, so she often had to play ....
5 My husband and I went to the same school when we were children, so we saw
.... very often.
6 'Are you talking to me?' 'No, I'm talking to .... !'
7 Paul and Mike have known .... for ten years.

124 Complete the sentences. Use himself/themselves etc., by myself / by herself etc. or each other and the verbs from the box.

cut enjoyed ~~lived~~ understand went wrote

1 Carlo ....lived by himself.... in a large house by the sea.
2 I'm afraid that the children are going to
.... on the broken glass.
3 Marie speaks only French and Jill speaks
only English, so they can't ....
4 Eva didn't go to Madrid with anyone.
She ....
5 We had a great time in London together. We really ....
6 Marianne and Catherine were penfriends for a long time. They .... to
.... every week for five years.

125 There are mistakes in ten of these sentences. Correct the sentences where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

1 Is this book your? ....Is this book yours?....
2 Meg and I have known us for five years. ....Meg and I have known each other for five years.....
3 James gave me those books. I really like it. ....
4 Some friends of them told them the news. ....
5 Pat gave her brother a DVD and he gave she a book. ....
6 My sister and her husband don't love themselves any more. They aren't happy together. ....
7 John is a good friend of me. ....
8 It's your decision, not ours. ....
9 I like this house, but her windows are broken. ....
10 I know Mary, but I don't know his brother. ....
11 I sometimes ask me why I work in a noisy city. ....

26 Complete the second sentence. Use -'s or -s' + a noun.

1 Adam and Claudia are husband and wife. — Adam is Claudia's husband .
2 This car belongs to Anne. — It's ....
3 I was with Elena at her house last night. — I was at .... last night.
4 All the students have put their books on the table. — All .... are on the table.
5 My sister was born on the 28th of June. — The 28th of June is ....
6 Mrs Penn makes delicious cakes. — .... are delicious.
7 My grandparents have a house next door to us. — My .... is next door to ours.
8 Jenny and Mark Smith have a daughter, Chris. — Jenny and Mark are ....

27 This is Mike and Alan's room. Whose are the objects in the room? Are they Mike's or Alan's?

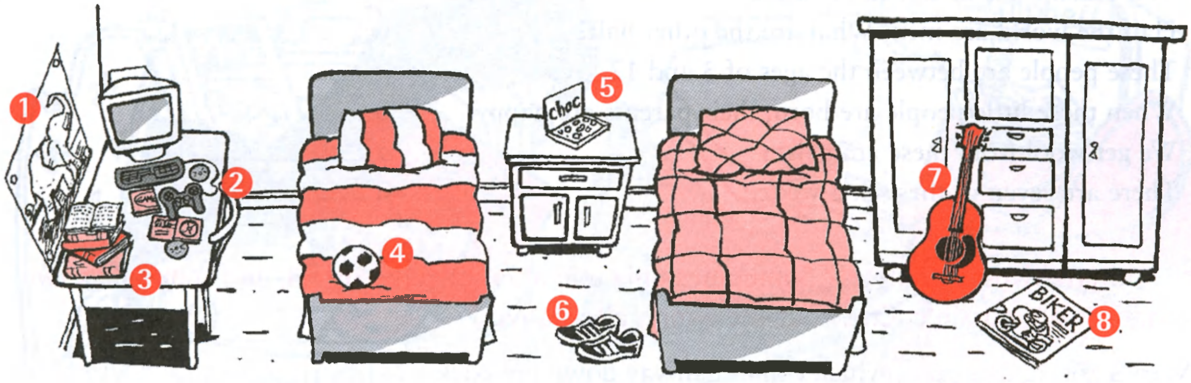

Mike likes:	football, motorbikes, chocolate, wild animals
Alan likes:	reading, playing the guitar, computer games, running

1 The elephant poster is Mike's.
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

28 Complete the sentences. Use -'s/-s' or the ... of ... .

1 What's the name of this street ? (the name / this street)
2 When's Alice's birthday ? (the birthday / Alice)
3 Which is .... ? (the favourite team / John)
4 What's .... ? (the result / the match)
5 When's .... ? (the anniversary party / your parents)
6 How big are .... ? (the windows / the house)
7 What's .... ? (the telephone number / the station)
8 Do you know .... ? (the daughter / Mark Turner)

a/an and some
(singular and plural)

Units 65–68

129 Write the opposites. Use a or an.

1 a big house a small house

2 a full glass ……………

3 an easy question ……………

4 a new book ……………

5 a cold day ……………

6 an expensive hotel ……………

7 an old man ……………

8 a light bag ……………

9 a boring film ……………

130 Write answers to the quiz questions. Use plural nouns.

1 People use these to cut meat with. knives

2 People wear these to tell the time. w……………

3 We eat these round red fruits in salads. t……………

4 You stand and walk on these important parts of the body. f……………

5 You brush these after you've eaten. t……………

6 Half the world are men. What are the other half? w……………

7 These people are between the ages of 3 and 12. c……………

8 When these little people are born, their parents are happy. b……………

9 We get wool from these animals. s……………

10 There are seven of these in a week. d……………

131 Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes only one alternative is correct, and sometimes two alternatives are possible. Cross out the wrong alternatives.

1 Mary's got …………… which comes halfway down her back.
A long hair B ~~long hairs~~ C ~~a long hair~~

2 There's …………… about English courses at the back of the book. It's very useful.
A some information B an information C some informations

3 It's …………… today, isn't it? Let's go for a swim.
A beautiful weather B a beautiful weather C a beautiful day

4 My son gave me …………… for my birthday. It smells lovely.
A a perfume B some perfume C a bottle of perfume

5 I don't usually buy …………… in the morning, but I did this morning. There was an interesting story in it.
A a paper B paper C some paper

6 'Why is Jane crying?' 'She's just had …………… .'
A some bad news B a bad news C a bad new

7 Jake is really happy. He's got …………… in a multi-national company. It's a big change from his old one.
A new job B a new work C a new job

8 I've got …………… to do tonight, so I can't come to the cinema with you.
A work B some work C a work

32 The Campbell family are packing their suitcases for their summer holiday. Complete the lists. Use a(n), some or a pair of / two pairs of … .

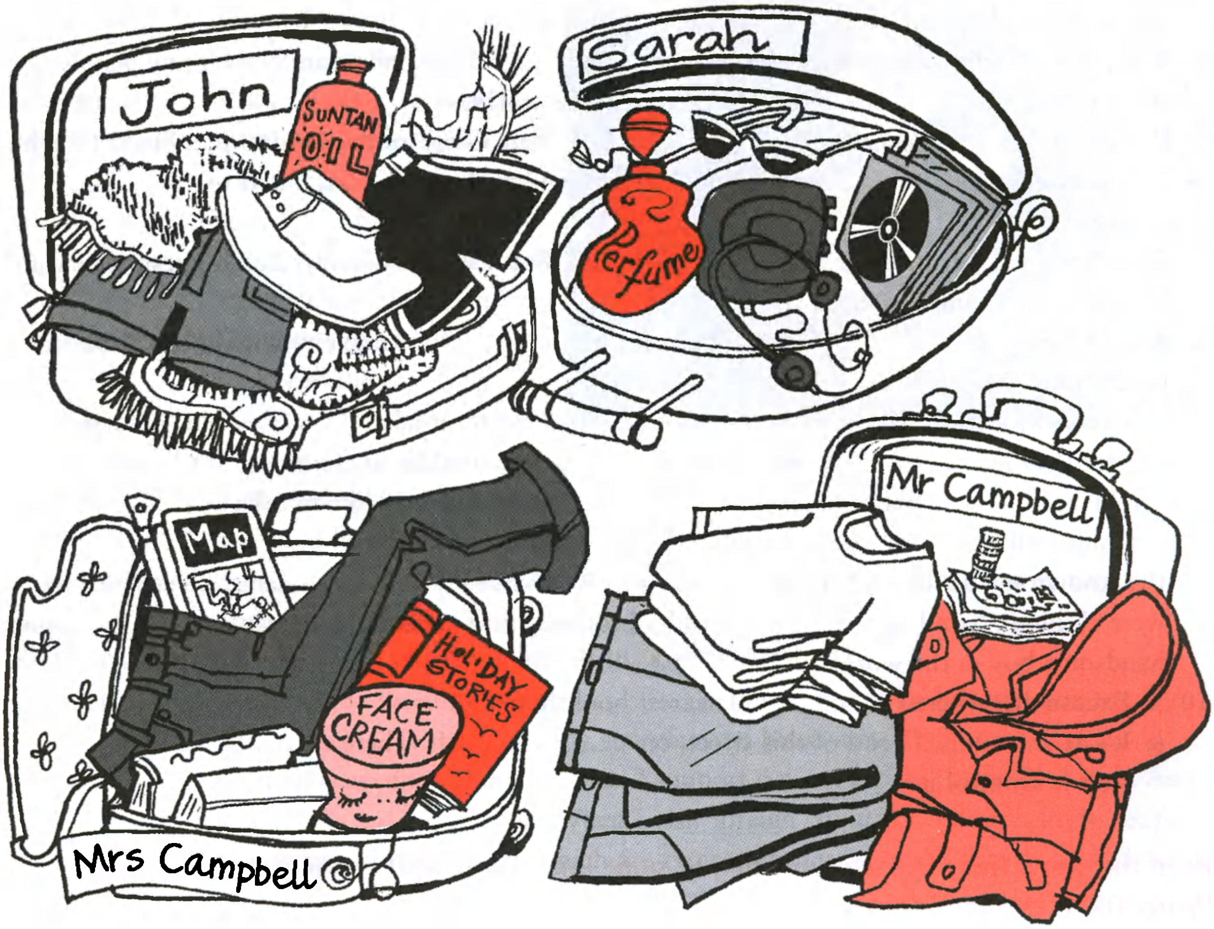
John
SUNTAN OIL
Sarah
Perfume
Map
HOLIDAY STORIES
FACE CREAM
Mrs Campbell
Mr Campbell

1 John is taking
two pairs of shorts
a hat
some towels
…………………………

2 Sarah is taking
…………………………
…………………………
…………………………
…………………………

3 Mrs Campbell is taking
…………………………
…………………………
…………………………
…………………………

4 Mr Campbell is taking
…………………………
…………………………
…………………………
…………………………

And what about you? Next month you're going on holiday for three weeks to Australia (or the mountains of South America, or Florida). Write six things that you're going to take with you.

I'm going to take ……………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………

a/an and the

Write a/an or the.

1 William wrote .... letter to his bank yesterday, but he forgot to post it. This morning, he saw ....the.......... letter on the kitchen table.

2 When Eva White was younger, she wanted to be .... musician. Now many people think she's .... best trumpet player in the world.

3 I've got .... idea. Let's go to .... new Greek restaurant in Main Street tonight.

4 Julia arrived at .... station at 7 o'clock and took .... taxi to .... city centre.

5 We usually eat our meals in .... kitchen. But if we have .... guest, we eat in .... dining room.

the moon

6 Bangkok is .... capital of Thailand. It's .... large city with about 8 million inhabitants.

7 I work in Montreal. My office is on .... third floor of .... old building.

8 Martin lives in .... large town in .... middle of Germany, but he wants to live in .... country. He's got .... dog and he'd like to take .... dog for long walks.

9 I've known my husband, Sam, since I was six. We lived in .... same street when we were children. Sam had .... older brother, Frank. I thought he was .... most handsome boy in the world.

10 A: Excuse me, where's .... nearest bookshop?
B: It's at .... end of this street, on .... left. There's .... bus stop in front of it.

Read the story. There is a word missing in some lines. Write a(n) or the where necessary. Write 'OK' if the line is already complete.

Last night, moon was shining brightly. Clare's train (1) ....
arrived at the station and she got off. She went up (2) ....OK..............................
to station manager and asked, 'Do you know if there (3) ....
is Italian restaurant near here?' 'Yes, it's very (4) ....
near, just about 200 metres on left, opposite (5) ....
Information Centre.' 'Thank you,' said Clare and (6) ....
she started walking. She found restaurant and went (7) ....
inside. There was woman playing the piano, and (8) ....
there, in the corner of the room next to kitchen, was (9) ....
Ron Allen – man she wanted to see. He was eating (10) ....
dinner, but he stopped when he saw Clare. He thought (11) ....
she looked exactly same – beautiful and calm. 'Have (12) ....
you got papers?' he asked. 'No, I haven't. I've given (13) ....
them to police,' she replied. 'I hope they will arrest (14) ....
you and send you to prison.' When he heard her words, (15) ....
Ron jumped up, took a knife from table and ran out. (16) ....

35 A journalist is interviewing Michael Winterton, who is a travel writer. Write *the* where necessary. If *the* is not necessary, leave an empty space (–).

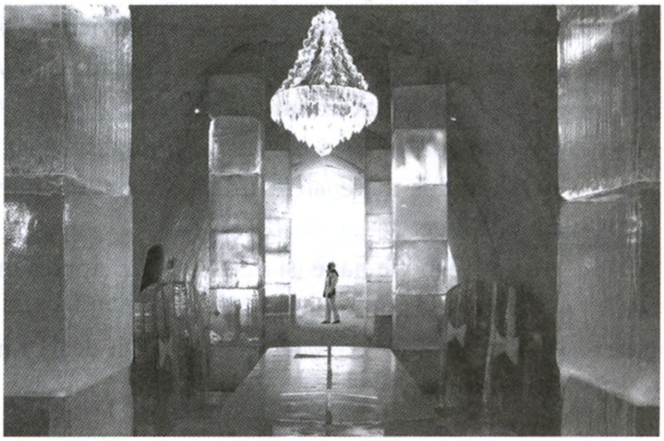

INTERVIEWER: When did your interest in (1) ....–.... travel start?

MICHAEL: Well, I wasn't interested in it at all until I was 15. Then I read a book about (2) ....the.... history of the South American Indians, and that got me started.

INTERVIEWER: Do you spend a lot of time travelling?

MICHAEL: Yes, I'm probably away from (3) .... home about 50 per cent of (4) .... year. And I get really fed up with staying in (5) .... hotels. But (6) .... hotel I stayed in last month in Sweden was a bit different – it was made of (7) .... ice. I must show you (8) .... photos my wife took of it. She's good at taking (9) .... photos.

INTERVIEWER: Tell me about your likes and dislikes.

MICHAEL: Well, I enjoy listening to (10) .... music, but to be honest I don't really like (11) .... music my son plays on his guitar. Watching (12) .... football is another of my hobbies. I support (13) .... my local club. And I love (14) .... food. When I visit foreign countries, I always go to local restaurants and try dishes which are typical of that region. The only thing I don't eat is (15) .... cheese – I hate it!

36 Here is some information about London. Put in *the* where necessary before the names of the famous places. If *the* is not necessary, leave an empty space (–).

Most tourists want to see where the Queen lives when they visit (1) ....–.... London, so (2) .... Buckingham Palace is very popular. But I think the best thing to do is to take a boat trip on (3) .... River Thames to see all the famous buildings. You can get on the boat at (4) .... Westminster Bridge, near (5) .... Houses of Parliament. If you go down the river to (6) .... Tower of London, you'll pass (7) .... St Paul's Cathedral on the way. This is a very old and beautiful church, and my favourite building.

As a change from sightseeing, you could go shopping along (8) .... Oxford Street, or maybe if you like animals, go to (9) .... London Zoo. There's lots to do and see in the capital. Come and see!

What can tourists do and see in your capital city? Is your capital city on a river or on the coast? Write about an important street and some famous buildings that you like.

My capital city is .... I think a good thing for tourists to do is to ....

....

some any no none

137 Write some or any.

DAN: Let's go for a picnic by the river tomorrow.
JUDY: OK. We'll make (1) ....some.... sandwiches. What do we need?
DAN: We haven't got (2) .... bread. Can you buy (3) .... ?
JUDY: Yes, sure. What about butter?
DAN: We've got (4) .... I'll buy (5) .... cheese, shall I?
JUDY: OK, and is there (6) .... orange juice in the fridge?
DAN: No, I'll get (7) ....
JUDY: Good. Do we have (8) .... apples or cherries?
DAN: We've just got apples.
JUDY: I'll get (9) .... cherries. Oh dear! I haven't got (10) .... money to buy all these things!

138 Write someone (or somebody) / something or anyone (or anybody) / anything.

1 Did ....anyone.... telephone me last night?
2 I feel a bit sick. I think I've eaten .... bad.
3 'What's the matter?' 'I think there's .... in the garden.'
4 'What's wrong?' 'I've put .... in my coffee and it isn't sugar!'
5 Please don't tell .... about the letter. It's a secret.
6 You look bored. Would you like .... to do?
7 There isn't .... to watch on TV tonight. Let's go out.
8 .... dropped a €50 note in the street outside my house yesterday.
9 I don't think I learnt .... from the lecture I went to.

139 Complete this conversation between John Grant and his wife, Kate. Use either no or any.

1 JOHN: I want to lie in the bath and relax for hours.
KATE: I'm sorry, but there ....'s no hot water.... or ....isn't any hot water.... . (hot water)
2 JOHN: I've been thinking, Kate. I'd really like to buy a new car this year.
KATE: So would I, but unfortunately we .... (money)
3 JOHN: Can I have a chocolate?
KATE: Sorry, I .... (chocolates)
4 JOHN: What about a biscuit?
KATE: I'm afraid there .... either. (biscuits)
5 JOHN: This coffee's good, but you know I don't like it black!
KATE: Sorry, but there .... (milk)
6 JOHN: What's for dinner tonight?
KATE: I'm afraid we .... (food)
Shall we go out to that new Spanish restaurant in Broad Street?
JOHN: OK, but just let me go and change my clothes first.
KATE: Sorry, there .... for that. (time)
I booked a table for 9 o'clock and it's quarter to now.

40 There are mistakes in seven of these sentences. Correct the underlined words that are wrong. Use some/any/no/none. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

1 Mary hasn't got some stamps in her purse. ....any..........
2 There aren't no easy questions. ....
3 'How many books did you read on holiday?' 'Any.' ....
4 Would you like some ice-cream? ....
5 Please don't offer me chocolates. I don't want none. ....
6 I didn't give him no help. ....
7 Have you written any postcards yet? ....
8 There are any biscuits in the tin. We must buy some. ....
9 Can I have any potatoes, please? ....

41 Complete the conversation between Jess and her friend, Sam. Use some/any/no/none.

JESS: Hi, Sam. How are you?

SAM: Fine, but busy. We've got (1) .....some..... exams next week – remember?

JESS: I know. How much work did you do last night?

SAM: (2) .... , I went to the cinema. What about you?

JESS: I had (3) .... time last night. It was my sister's birthday, so we all went out for dinner.

SAM: Have you done (4) .... this morning?

JESS: (5) .... , but not a lot. Anyway, I called to ask you something. Do you know where my physics book is?

SAM: I've got (6) .... idea, but you can borrow mine if you want.

JESS: Thanks.

SAM: Let's meet outside Natbank in the High Street this lunchtime. I need to get (7) .... money and I'll bring my physics book for you.

JESS: Good idea. I'm very worried about the physics exam. Have you got (8) .... old exam papers? I'd really like to look at them.

SAM: I haven't got (9) .... , but my brother's got (10) .... from a few years ago. I'll bring them with me.

JESS: Wonderful! See you at 12.30. OK?

someone anything nowhere

142 Write someone (or somebody) / anything / nowhere etc.

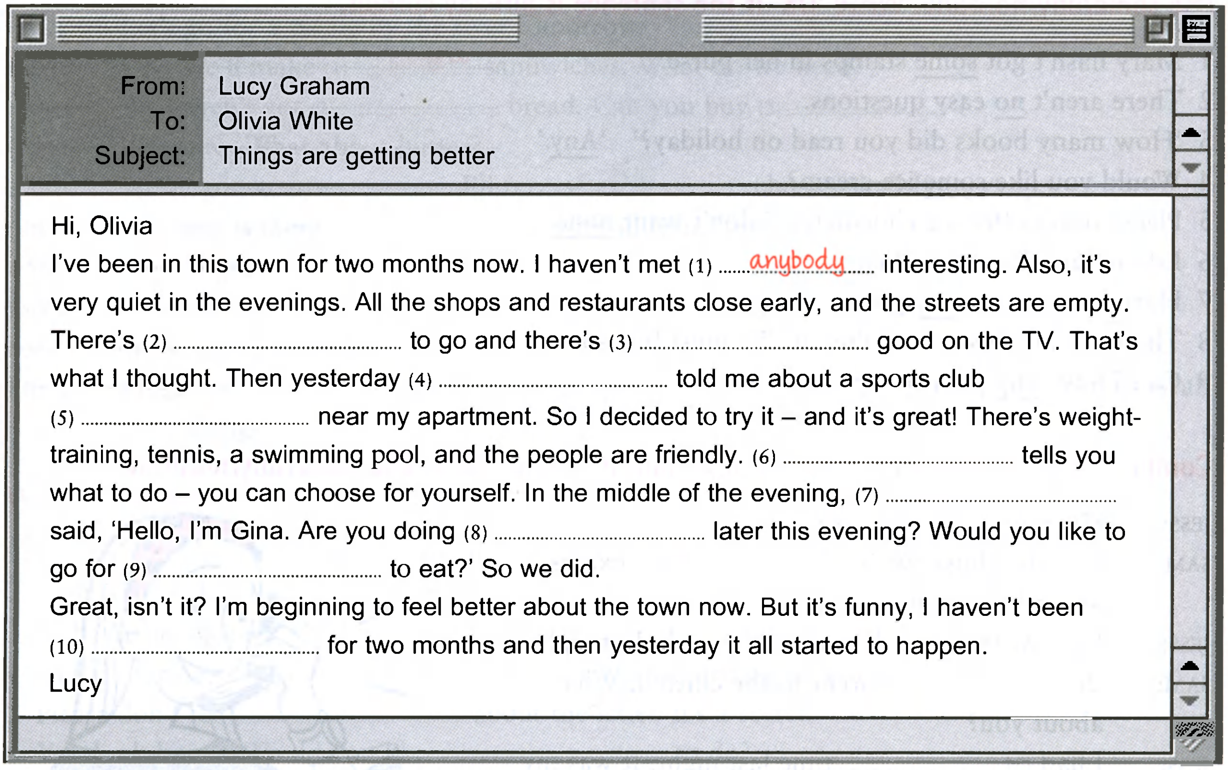

From: Lucy Graham
To: Olivia White
Subject: Things are getting better

Hi, Olivia

I've been in this town for two months now. I haven't met (1) ......anybody...... interesting. Also, it's very quiet in the evenings. All the shops and restaurants close early, and the streets are empty. There's (2) .... to go and there's (3) .... good on the TV. That's what I thought. Then yesterday (4) .... told me about a sports club (5) .... near my apartment. So I decided to try it – and it's great! There's weight-training, tennis, a swimming pool, and the people are friendly. (6) .... tells you what to do – you can choose for yourself. In the middle of the evening, (7) .... said, 'Hello, I'm Gina. Are you doing (8) .... later this evening? Would you like to go for (9) .... to eat?' So we did.

Great, isn't it? I'm beginning to feel better about the town now. But it's funny, I haven't been (10) .... for two months and then yesterday it all started to happen.

Lucy

143 Complete the sentences. Use somebody / anything / nowhere etc. + to (to go / to stay etc.).

MICHAEL: Let's have lunch in this restaurant.
MARY: It looks very busy. Is there (1) ......anywhere to sit...... ?
MICHAEL: Yes, there are two seats over there.

SUE: I'm hungry.
DAD: Would you like (2) .... ?
SUE: Yes, please.

LEO: I'm bored. I've got (3) ....
MUM: Go and play tennis.
LEO: All my friends are on holiday, so I haven't got (4) .... with.

LIZ: We're going to Rome in September.
JOSHUA: Wonderful.
LIZ: Yes, but we've got a problem. We haven't got (5) .... yet.
JOSHUA: Try the Plaza Hotel – they often have rooms free.

PAT: I'm going to a party at the weekend and I need (6) ....
JENNY: You can borrow my new black dress if you like.

TANYA: Gerry, go and talk to Annie. She's in the kitchen.
GERRY: I haven't got (7) ....
TANYA: Of course you have! You always have lots to say. Go and talk about food or sport.

every and all

Unit 80

44 Complete the description of Naomi's weekend with every or all.

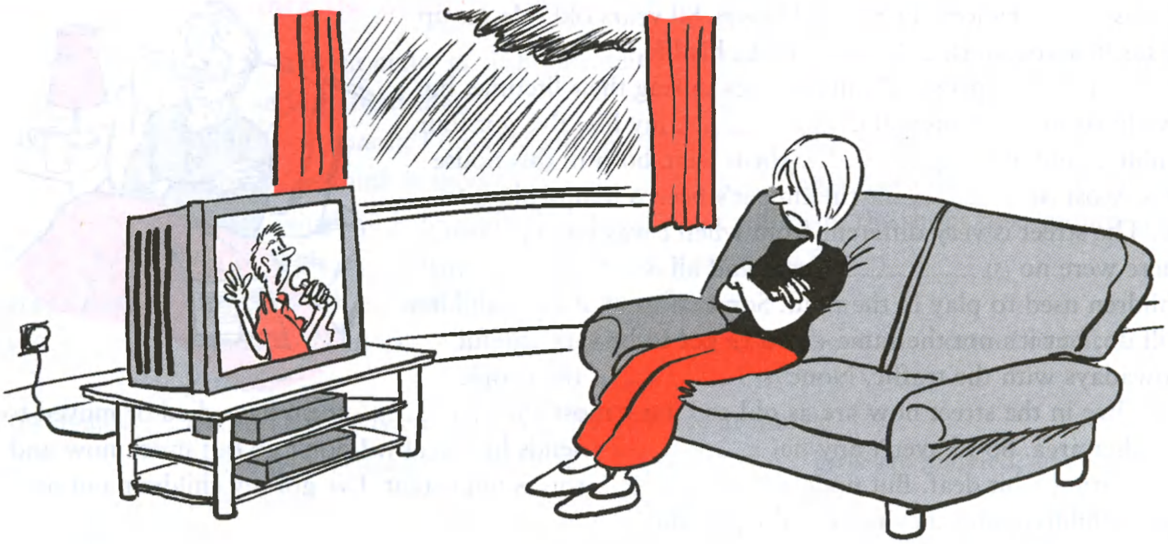

Naomi had a bad weekend. On Friday evening, (1) .....every...... time she tried to sit down to eat dinner, the telephone rang. Later, she shouted at her brother John and he sat on the sofa (2) .... evening and didn't speak to anyone.

On Saturday, it rained (3) .... day, so she didn't go out. She watched a programme on TV – some kind of singing competition – but she thought that the singers were terrible. In the evening, it was still raining. But she needed some fresh air, so she went to the park. (4) .... person she saw looked wet and miserable!

That night in bed, she could hear the people in the next-door apartment. They were having a party and making a lot of noise, so she was awake (5) .... night.

On Sunday, she went to her grandmother's. She did this (6) .... Sunday, and usually she loved it. But this Sunday (7) .... the buses were late, and she arrived in a bad mood. 'I'll be happy to go back to work tomorrow,' she thought.

45 Write everyone (or everybody) / everywhere / everything.

SARAH: These shirts are expensive.
SUE: (1) ....Everything....... is expensive in this shop.
SARAH: And why are there so many black things? It's a very boring colour.
SUE: It's fashionable. (2) .... is wearing black this year.

DAN: Granddad says that family life was better when he was young.
MUM: Yes, a lot of old people think that (3) .... was better in the past.
DAN: And he says things in our country are changing too quickly at the moment.
MUM: Well, it's not only our country. Life is changing (4) ....

ERICA: Did you enjoy your day in London?
TIM: Yes, very much, but it was really busy (5) .... It was school holiday time and (6) .... was doing the same as us.

146 Write of where necessary. If of is not necessary, leave an empty space (–).

It was David Fallon's birthday. He was 80 years old. He sat up in his bed and started thinking about his life.
'Most (1) ...–... people change houses during their lifetime, but I've lived in this house all (2) .... my life. I've got four children and all (3) .... them were born in this house too. Most (4) .... the time it's been a happy place to be. The street is very different from when I was young. Then, there were no (5) .... cars and all (6) .... the children used to play in the road. Some (7) .... children still do, but it's not the same – you've got to be very careful nowadays with the traffic. None (8) .... the people who live in the street now are as old as I am – most (9) .... them have died or moved to another area. So I haven't any (10) .... friends here really. I don't go out much now and I'm getting a bit deaf. But none (11) .... this is important. I've got my children and my grandchildren, and they're everything to me.'

147 Write sentences. Use all, most, some or none.

Richard is 40 years old. He's a manager in a large multi-national company. He and the people who work in this company answered some questions about their health.

	Yes		Yes
Do you take regular exercise?	78%	Have you got a car?	100%
Do you walk to work?	25%	Do you use your car every day?	80%

1 Most of Richard's colleagues take regular exercise.
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....

Lisa is 16 years old and she's a high school student. Read the answers that she and her friends gave to some different questions.

	Yes		Yes
Do you go to the cinema every month?	20%	Do you study every night?	0%
Do you play some kind of sport?	100%	Do you enjoy dancing?	73%

5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

What about you and your friends? Write four sentences. Use all, most, some or none.

....
....
....
....

48 This is part of a radio interview with Jamie Carpenter, writer of science fiction novels. Write both/either/neither. Use of where necessary.

INTERVIEWER: You've written many great books, but your last two weren't very successful. How did you feel about that?

JAMIE: Well, to be honest, I didn't really like (1) either of them. I wrote them in a hurry and I think it shows. (2) .... book has sold well – only 1,000 copies, which isn't good. But my latest book will be in the shops next month and I'm very pleased with it. I think it's my best one so far.

INTERVIEWER: Do you work in your house or in an office?

JAMIE: I don't work in (3) .... I have a studio at the bottom of our garden.

INTERVIEWER: Do you have any children, and do they live at home?

JAMIE: I have two girls and one boy. (4) .... girls are married, so they live with their husbands. My boy, Sam, is still living with us.

INTERVIEWER: I know you get a lot of your ideas from travelling, so can I ask you where you would like to go for a summer holiday – Thailand or Sri Lanka?

JAMIE: (5) .... them sound wonderful, don't they? But I'd choose Sri Lanka. It's somewhere I've always wanted to visit.

INTERVIEWER: When you're working, I believe that you listen to music. Do you like pop music or classical music?

JAMIE: I don't like (6) .... them. I prefer jazz.

INTERVIEWER: And what about sport? Is that an important part of your life?

JAMIE: Oh, yes. I play regularly with a team of people who are now good friends.

INTERVIEWER: Is that football or rugby?

JAMIE: (7) .... Baseball is the only sport for me. I learnt how to play it when I was living in the USA.

INTERVIEWER: Jamie Carpenter, thank you for talking to us today.

49 Write sentences about yourself and one of your friends. Think of things which are similar in your lives. Use Both of us ... / Neither of us ... .

Both of us live in apartments.

Neither of us has got a dog.

....

....

....

....

....

....

a lot / much / many (a) little / (a) few

150 Look at the picture. What is left after the wedding party has finished? Write sentences. Use *There aren't many ... / There isn't much ... / There isn't/aren't any ... .*

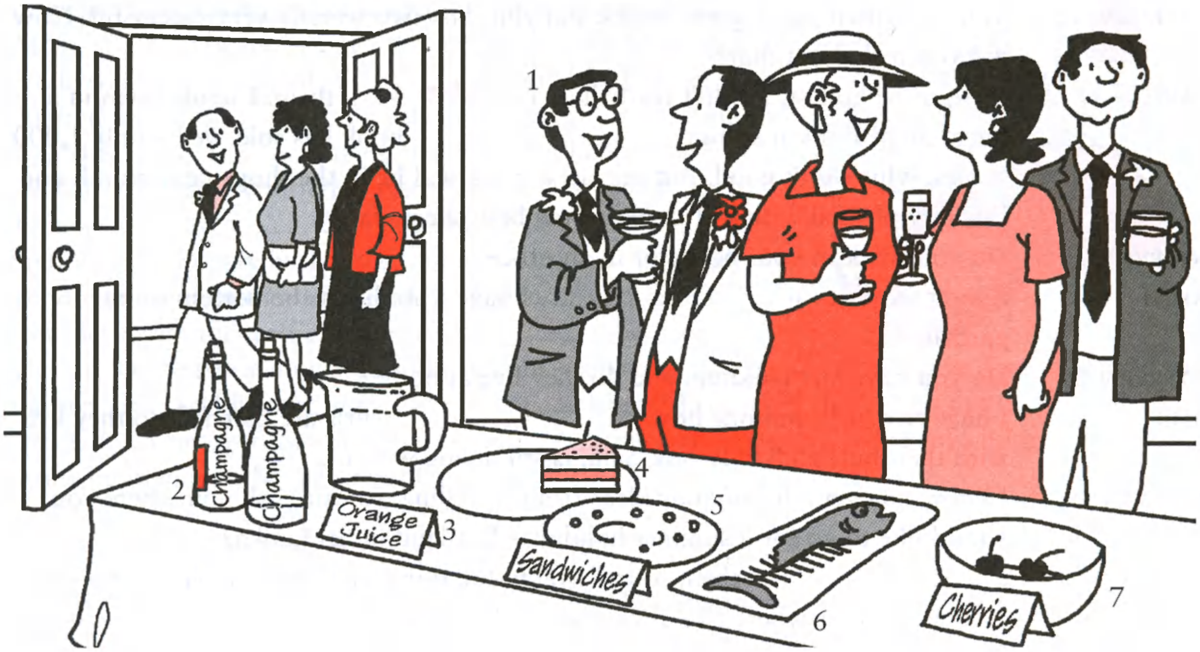

1 There aren't many people.
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....

151 Liz is asking you some questions. Write questions with *How much / many ...* ? Then write your own answers. Use *a lot, not (very) much / not (very) many, a few / a little* or *none.*

	LIZ	YOU
1	books / be / on your table? How many books are there on your table ?	Not many.
2	milk / you like / in your coffee? ?	
3	cars / you see / out of the window? ?	
4	money / you spend / in one month? ?	
5	good friends / you have? ?	
6	water / you drink / every day? ?	
7	pairs of socks / you have? ?	

52 Complete the text about Antarctica. Write little / a little or few / a few.

The coldest continent

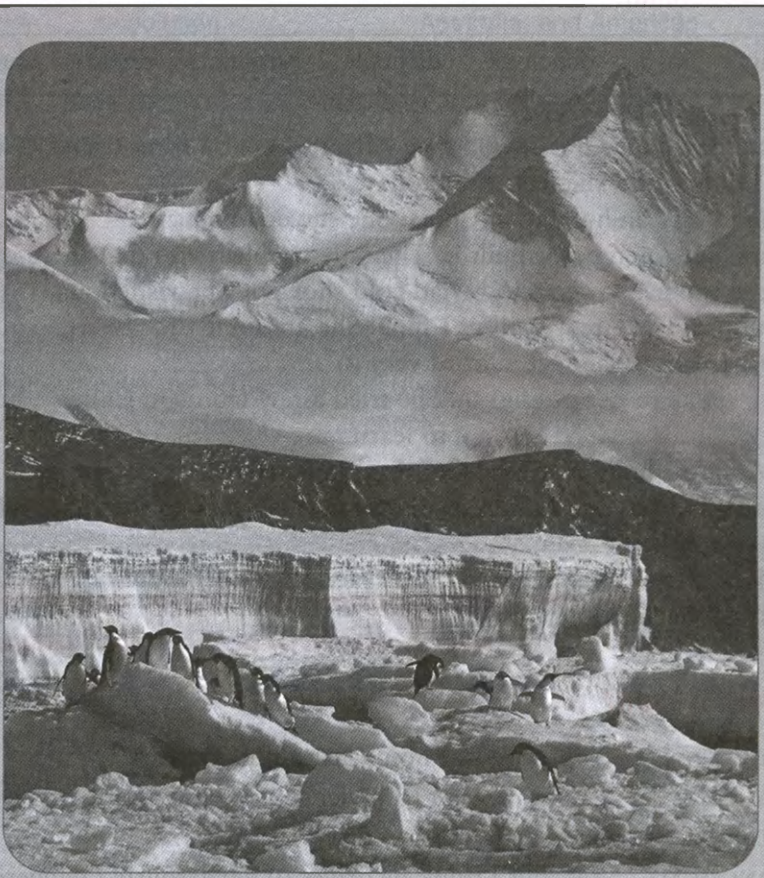

Antarctica is a snow-covered continent. The average temperature at the South Pole is –51° Celsius. (1) ....Few.... plants or animals can live on the land – it is too cold for them. The animal life is found on and in the sea. There are (2) .... scientists from different countries who live and work on special bases in Antarctica. On midsummer's day (22 December) there is daylight for 24 hours and during this period (3) .... tourist ships and planes come to see this strange land. But in the winter there is (4) .... daylight for months. It must be a terrible place in the winter. The snow is always there – winter and summer – but in fact (5) .... snow falls in the year (an average of 15–20 centimetres). People say that Antarctica can be a beautiful place. At first, it appears rather frightening, but after (6) .... time, some people fall in love with it.

old / nice / interesting quickly / badly / suddenly

(adjectives and adverbs)

153

Complete the story about Jane's visit to China. Use the adjectives from the box + a suitable noun.

big busy delicious difficult famous friendly hot ~~long~~ old

Yesterday, Jane Greenwood flew back to London from China. It was a very (1) long flight – 12 hours – and she feels tired today.

Jane was on holiday in China. She stayed in an (2) .... Three hundred years ago an emperor built it. The only problem was that there was no (3) .... in the rooms, so everybody had cold showers. She visited many (4) .... – for example, The Great Wall of China. She ate some (5) .... Her favourite was egg fried rice. She met a lot of very (6) .... Jane can't speak Chinese, so they spoke to her in English. She tried a few words in Chinese, but people said it is a (7) .... to learn.

A lot of things in China surprised Jane. For example, the (8) .... There were hundreds and hundreds of cars and bicycles on the roads all day and all night. There was never a quiet moment.

Jane wants to go back to China next year. She knows it's a (9) .... and she only saw a small part of it.

154

Which is right?

MUM: You were late home last night, Francesca.

FRANCESCA: I know, I went to Javier's party, and afterwards I walked home.

MUM: Didn't Joe offer to drive you home?

FRANCESCA: Yes, but I think he drives (1) dangerously / ~~dangerous~~, so I said 'no'.

MUM: Well, you look (2) happily / happy today. Was it a (3) good / well party?

FRANCESCA: Yeah, great. Martin was there and he had his guitar with him. He plays really (4) good / well.

MUM: I didn't know he was (5) good / well on the guitar.

FRANCESCA: He plays flamenco music (6) brilliant / brilliantly. And Carmen was there and she's a (7) fantastic / fantastically dancer. She taught us how to do a bit of flamenco dancing. She explained really (8) careful / carefully and everybody did quite (9) good / well.

MUM: Sounds fun. Would you like something to eat? I'm doing some bacon and eggs.

FRANCESCA: Oh yes, please. It smells (10) delicious / deliciously.

MUM: What have you got to do today?

FRANCESCA: Well, we've got a maths exam next week and I did really (11) badly / bad in the last one, so I've got to work (12) hard / hardly today.

MUM: OK, well eat this (13) quick / quickly, and get started.

older (than) the oldest not as old as
(comparatives and superlatives)

5 **Complete this comparison between the USA and Australia. Write one word only in each space.**

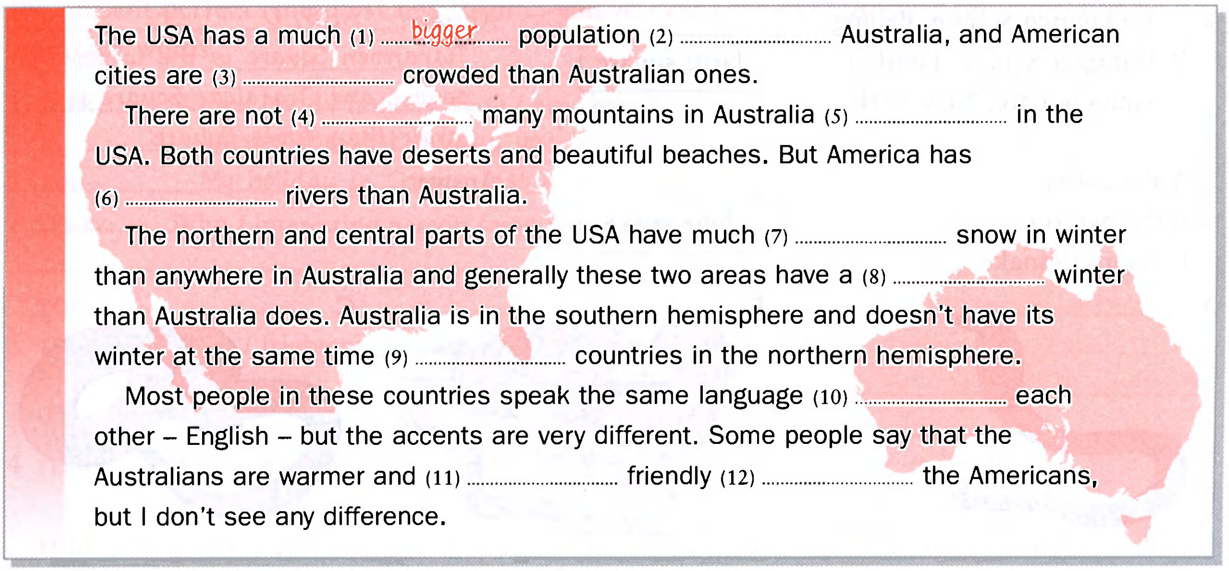

The USA has a much (1) ....bigger.... population (2) .... Australia, and American cities are (3) .... crowded than Australian ones.

There are not (4) .... many mountains in Australia (5) .... in the USA. Both countries have deserts and beautiful beaches. But America has (6) .... rivers than Australia.

The northern and central parts of the USA have much (7) .... snow in winter than anywhere in Australia and generally these two areas have a (8) .... winter than Australia does. Australia is in the southern hemisphere and doesn't have its winter at the same time (9) .... countries in the northern hemisphere.

Most people in these countries speak the same language (10) .... each other – English – but the accents are very different. Some people say that the Australians are warmer and (11) .... friendly (12) .... the Americans, but I don't see any difference.

Now write some sentences comparing your country with another country that you know. Use the comparison of the USA and Australia to help you. Write about:

- the geography (rivers, mountains etc.)
- the weather (hot, wet, dry, cold etc.)
- the people (language, character etc.)

....

....

....

....

....

....

56 **Albert is thinking about life today and life 50 years ago. Complete his sentences. Use the comparative (faster, harder, etc.) or not as ... as.**

1 (cars / fast) Cars are faster than they were.
2 (children / more things) Children have got more things than they had.
3 (people / work / hard) People don't work as hard as they did.
4 (life / expensive) ....
5 (people / not / friendly) ....
6 (films / violent) ....
7 (people / live / long) ....
8 (houses / good) ....
9 (families / not big) ....
10 (children / freedom) ....
11 (people / eat / good food) ....

157 Put the alternatives into the correct order, starting with the largest, most common etc.

1 A Tiananmen Square, Beijing
B Trafalgar Square, London
C Times Square, New York

large square

Answer: A, B, C
Tianamen Square is the largest square and Trafalgar Square is larger than Times Square.

2 A the cobra
B the python
C the rattlesnake

long snake

Answer:

A

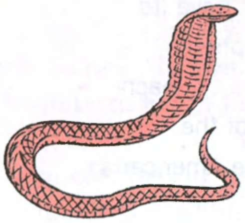

B

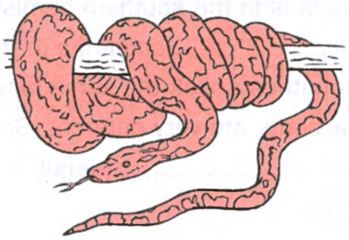

C

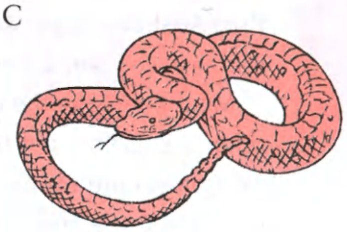

3 A Scotland
B Antarctica
C France

cold place

Answer:

4 A the cheetah
B the mouse
C the lion

fast animal

Answer:

A

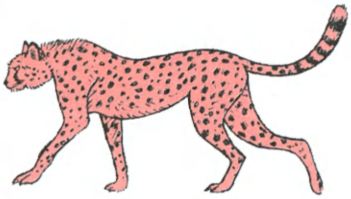

B

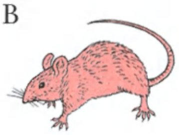

C

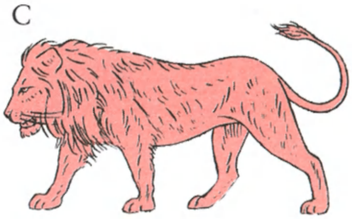

5 A into
B at
C of

common preposition in English

Answer:

6 A the Great White Shark
B the cockroach
C the scorpion

dangerous creature

Answer:

A

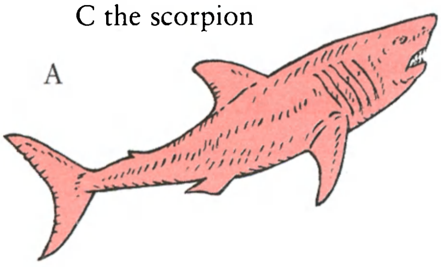

B

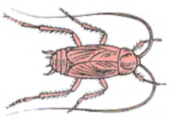

C

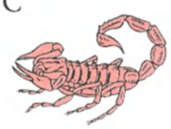

older (than)   the oldest   not as old as

58 Terry is asking you some questions about your life. Write his questions. Use the superlative + the present perfect (the most beautiful ... you've ever seen etc.). Answer the questions in your own words.

1 TERRY: What / good / holiday / you / ever have?
What's the best holiday you've ever had?
YOU: My holiday in Greece last year.

2 TERRY: Who / interesting person / you / ever meet?
YOU:

3 TERRY: What / frightening experience / you / ever have?
YOU:

4 TERRY: What / bad film / you / ever see?
YOU:

5 TERRY: What / expensive thing / you / ever buy?
YOU:

6 TERRY: What / unusual food / you / ever eat?
YOU:

7 TERRY: Which / large city / you / ever visit?
YOU:

9 There are mistakes in ten of these sentences. Correct the sentences where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

1 He got up more early than she did. He got up earlier than she did.
2 Jo lives much more far away now.
3 My mum is the same age like my dad.
4 I paid less than you for the ticket.
5 This is the older house in the city.
6 Traffic in the city is more bad in the evenings.
7 This dictionary is best I've ever had.
8 Paul isn't as lazy than he seems.
9 Is there a better hotel in town?
10 Meg is the more intelligent person in her family.
11 It's not as warmer as it was yesterday.
12 This is the comfortablest chair in the room.

enough and too

160 Put the word enough in the correct place.

1 Is your English good for a translator's job? .... your English good enough
2 Have you got money to pay for the tickets? ....
3 Have you got information to answer the question? ....
4 Has he worked hard to pass his exams? ....
5 Are there plates for everyone? ....
6 Is your tea sweet or would you like some more sugar? ....

161 Complete the sentences. Use the words from the box + enough + to ... (to do, to drive etc.).

money	~~old~~	sharp	time	warm	well

1 Mary is 14 years old. She isn't ....old enough to drive.... a car.
2 I can't use this knife. It's not .... the meat.
3 Oh dear! I haven't got .... Pete a birthday present. Can you lend me some?
4 You should stay in bed. You don't look .... to Tina's party.
5 That was a horrible test. Did you have .... all the questions?
6 It's only 13 degrees. It's not .... tennis outside.

162 Complete the sentences. Use too + adjective or too much / too many + noun.

1
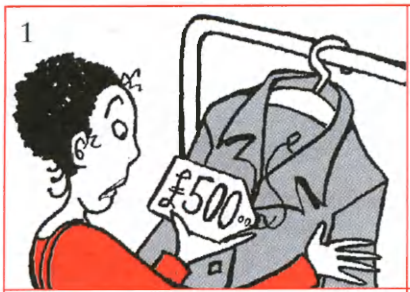

2
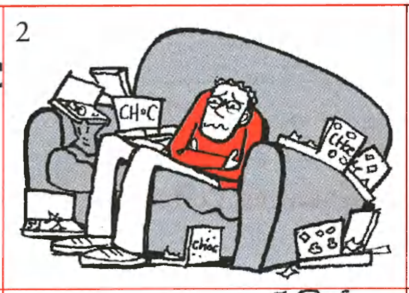

3
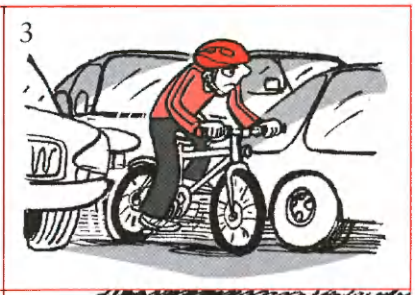

4
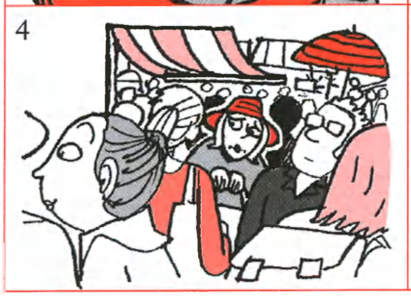

5
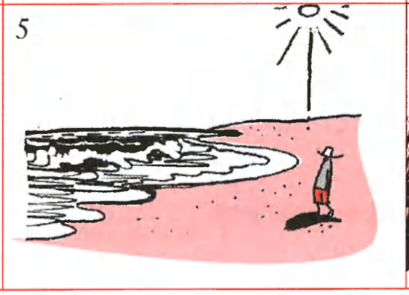

6
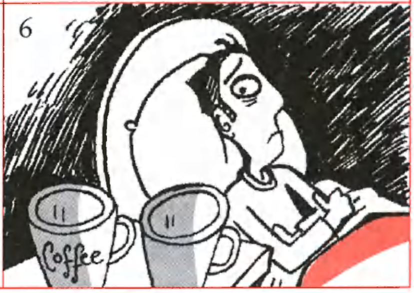

1 Sara didn't buy the coat because it ....was too expensive.... .
2 Carl felt ill last night because he ....
3 Jack doesn't use his bicycle in town because there ....
4 I don't like going shopping in the market because there ....
5 You shouldn't go to the beach at midday because it ....
6 Amir didn't sleep very well last night because he ....

63 Marco lives in an old city. It's very popular with tourists. He doesn't like it. Look at what Marco doesn't like about the city and complete the sentences. Use **too** or **enough**.

1 cars – a lot
2 streets – very narrow
3 cinemas – only 2
4 noise and dirt – a lot
5 the parks – very small
6 the evenings – very few things to do
7 tourists – a lot

1 There are too many cars.
2 The streets are not wide enough. or The streets are too narrow.
3 There ……………………
4 There ……………………
5 The …………………… or ……………………
6 There ……………………
7 There ……………………

What about the place where you live? Are there some things you don't like? Use **too** and **enough** to write about your city / town / village.

……………………

……………………

……………………

4 When are you allowed to do certain things?

In Britain, at the age of:
5 You start primary school.
12 You can buy a pet (e.g. a dog or a cat).
13 You can work for two hours a day.
16 You can leave school.
You can get married with your parents' permission.
17 You can drive a car.
18 You can vote.

Use the information above to say whether these people are old enough. Use **too** and **enough**.

1 John is only 3 years old, but he wants to go to school. Can he?
No, he's too young to go to school. or He's not old enough to go to school.

2 My daughter is 14. Can she work in a shop after school?
Yes, she's old enough to work for two hours a day.

3 Can Jane and Tom get married? They're 15.
……………………

4 Can Peter start driving lessons? He's 17.
……………………

5 Barbara's 10 and she wants to buy a dog with her own money. Can she?
……………………

6 Shaun is 16 and fed up with school. Can he leave?
……………………

7 Anna is 17 and very interested in politics. Can she vote?
……………………

165 Write the sentences with often, still, also etc.

1 Rachel is late for school.
(often) Rachel is often late for school.

2 Maria goes to bed before midnight.
(rarely) ……………………

3 I've got lots of friends, but they are on holiday at the moment.
(all) ……………………

4 I like chocolate.
(very much) ……………………

5 When do you do your homework?
(usually) ……………………

6 I can remember my car registration number.
(never) ……………………

7 Carmen always arrives late from work.
(home) ……………………

8 Clare is a good piano player. She's learning to play the guitar.
(also) ……………………

9 John and Steve? They are living in Brazil now.
(both) ……………………

10 José finished his exams.
(yesterday) ……………………

166 Complete the sentences. Use still (+ positive verbs) and yet (+ negative verbs).

1 TEACHER: OK everyone. Stop now. Please give me your test papers.
STUDENT: Sorry, I haven't finished yet . (finish) I'm still writing . (write)

2 SALLY: Come, on we're going to be late.
MARK: I …………………… my keys. (look for)
I …………………… . (find them)

3 Dear Sue
The weather continues to be wet. It …………………… . (rain)
We …………………… . (see the sun)

4 *(on the phone)*
SUE: You sound very sleepy.
KAREN: Yes, I …………………… . (get up)
I …………………… in bed. (be)

5 DAVE: Are you and Tony friends again?
IAN: No. He …………………… . (apologise)
I …………………… with him. (be angry)

6 SAM: What car have you got at the moment?
TONY: I …………………… my old Toyota. (drive)
I …………………… . (buy a new car)

and but or so because when ...

Units 97–98

7 Read about Jane's Friday morning. Complete the sentences with and, but, or, so or because.

'On Friday morning I woke up late (1) ....because.... I'd forgotten to set the alarm clock the night before. I jumped out of bed (2) ....and.... got dressed quickly. I wanted to wash my hair, (3) .... I didn't have enough time to do that (4) .... have breakfast too. Big decision! Shall I wash my hair (5) .... have breakfast? Breakfast won. I needed some toast and coffee, (6) .... unfortunately the toaster burnt the bread, (7) .... I just drank the coffee.

I ran out of the house to catch the bus. It was raining hard (8) .... I didn't have my umbrella with me, (9) .... I got wet. I had to wait at the bus stop for 20 minutes (10) .... no bus arrived. Then I saw a taxi coming down the road, (11) .... I put up my arm to catch the driver's attention. Unfortunately, he didn't see me and drove past. I now had the choice of walking to work in the rain, waiting for another taxi (12) .... going home. I went home (13) .... rang my office. "I'm really sorry, I can't come in today (14) .... I've got a terrible cold." And I stayed in bed all day.'

8 Complete the conversations. Use any other words that are necessary.

1 LISA: How long has Anne worked at Harrods?
ALLY: She started there ....after she finished college.... . (after / finish college)

2 STEVE: I thought Joe lived in Manchester.
SUE: He used to. ....Before he got married.... , he lived there. (before / get married)

3 HELEN: Ooh! Are these flowers for me?
JACK: Yes, they arrived .... (while / at work)

4 DAN: What did the doctor say, Mum?
MUM: You mustn't go back to school .... (until / better)

5 SAM: Dad, Dad. Come and play football with me.
DAD: Sam, be quiet. Don't talk to me .... (when / speak on phone)

6 ALAN: .... , I'm going to travel for six months. (when / finish college)
WILL: Can I come with you?

7 ADAM: Oh, Maria, you're completely wet!
MARIA: I know. .... , it started raining hard. (while / walk home)

8 MARK: OK, we're ready. Let's go.
LUCY: Hang on. I must make sure the cat is outside .... (before / leave the house)

9 JILL: I can't believe that Clare's writing a book! I've never even seen her reading one.
RICHARD: I know! .... , I thought it was a joke. (when / hear the news)

10 JENNY: Oh, no! I've broken my lovely blue vase.
MIKE: Don't worry. I'll get you another one .... tomorrow. (when / in town)

if we go and if we went

169 Jill and Tina are waiting at the bus stop. They're on their way to the cinema. Complete their story. Use the end of the previous sentence to make the beginning of the next sentence.

SUE: Oh dear, what's happened to the bus? Why hasn't it come?
TINA: If (1) the bus doesn't come soon, we'll be late.
SUE: If (2) .... late, we'll miss the beginning of the film.
TINA: If (3) .... the film, we won't understand the story.
SUE: If (4) .... the story, we'll be bored.
TINA: If (5) .... , we'll probably fall asleep.
SUE: If (6) .... , we'll miss the end of the film.
TINA: Let's not go to the cinema.

170 There is a mistake in each of these sentences. One verb is right and the other is wrong. Correct the verbs that are wrong.

1 If I will see Anne, I won't ask her about the exam. see
2 I haven't got a bike. If I have one, I would lend it to you. ....
3 Barbara's in bed with a fever. She would be here with you if she wouldn't be ill. ....
4 All the plants in the garden will die if it won't rain soon. ....
5 What would you do if you would find a lot of money in the street? ....
6 Ben doesn't get up early enough to catch the 6.30 train. If he would get up earlier, he wouldn't be late. ....
7 If I ask Tony for the answer, I know he doesn't tell me. ....

171 What do you say in the following situations? Make sentences with the words.

1 Paul has asked you to go to a jazz concert. You don't like jazz, so you're not going with him.
(I / go / with you / if I / like / jazz) I'd go with you if I liked jazz.
2 You're in a restaurant with your sister. She's got some peas on her plate. You know she doesn't like them, but you do!
(If you / not / want / your / peas / I / eat / them) If you don't want your peas, I'll eat them.
3 You want to go on holiday, but you're very busy at college at the moment.
(If I / not / be / busy at college / I / go / on holiday) ....
4 You want to buy a new laptop. The one you're looking at is quite cheap, but it doesn't have any more memory than the one you've got.
(If it / have / a bigger memory / I / buy / it) ....
5 Your brother is going to buy an old car in bad condition. You don't think it's a good idea.
(I / not / buy it / if I / be / you) ....
6 You and Sarah are at the railway station, waiting for David. You are all going to Manchester. David is late and the train leaves in five minutes.
(We / miss / the train / if he / not / arrive / soon) ....

a person (who) … a thing (that/which) …
(relative clauses)

72 Make one sentence from two sentences. Use who or which.

1 James lives on an island. It is famous for its beautiful beaches.
James lives on an island which is famous for its beautiful beaches .
2 There's a new chef in our canteen. He's very good at making desserts.
There's a new chef in our canteen who's very good at making desserts .
3 A car crashed into mine. It was green.
The car …………………………………………………… .
4 Where's the newspaper? It was on the table.
Where …………………………………………………… ?
5 A backpack was left on the bus yesterday. It belongs to my sister.
The backpack …………………………………………………… my sister.
6 I spoke to an assistant. She had long, dark hair.
I …………………………………………………… .
7 Peter writes books. They are translated into many languages.
Peter …………………………………………………… .
8 A lot of people went to last night's concert. They enjoyed it.
The people …………………………………………………… .

73 Make one sentence from two sentences. Don't use who, that or which.

1 Gill is looking at a man. She thinks she knows him.
Gill thinks she knows the man she's looking at .
2 I worked in a shop. It was called 'Bangles'.
The shop I …………………………………………………… .
3 I was watching elephants on TV. They were playing in a river.
The elephants I …………………………………………………… .
4 'Sally stayed with some friends.' 'What's their name?'
What's the name …………………………………………………… ?
5 Kate went on holiday with some people. They live in the same street.
The people …………………………………………………… .
6 I'm reading a book. It was written over 300 years ago.
The book …………………………………………………… .
7 You were waiting for a train. Did it arrive?
Did the train …………………………………………………… ?
8 Fiona's playing tennis with a man. Who is he?
Who's the …………………………………………………… ?

174 Complete the sentences. Read the extra information first.

GUIDE: Ladies and gentlemen, this is the house (1) Michael Barnes was born in .
(Michael Barnes was born in this house.)

CLARE: Who's Michael Barnes?

ADAM: He's the man (2) ....
(Michael Barnes wrote over 100 books.)

CLARE: I've never heard of him!

ADAM: You have! You know that film (3) .... ?
(We went to see a film last week.)
Well, it was based on one of his books.

CLARE: Oh.

GUIDE: And now, if you look on your right, you can see Jane Carter's house.

CLARE: Why is that important?

ADAM: You must remember! Jane Carter is the woman
(4) ....
(I told you about Jane Carter.)

CLARE: Oh yes. She lived until she was 100.

ADAM: That's right. And do you remember the name of the institute
(5) .... ?
(The institute was started by Jane Carter.)

CLARE: The Fellcome Institute, wasn't it?

ADAM: Yes, and it was the Fellcome Institute
(6) ....
(The Fellcome Institute gave me the money to study in America.)

CLARE: I remember now. So, this is her house. Interesting.

GUIDE: And now, let's go into the main street and look at the statue of King Henry VIII.

CLARE: I know about him. He's the king (7) ....
(Henry VIII made tennis popular.)

ADAM: Did he? I thought you were going to say that he's the king
(8) ....
(He had six wives.)

CLARE: Well, let's go and see him, anyway.

at until before
(prepositions of time)

75 Complete the sentences. Choose words from the boxes.

at		night	22 November 1963	winter
on	+	midnight	Thursday morning	6.30 am
in		~~the evening~~	the weekend	1920

1 After working all day, John is too tired to go out ..in the evening.. .
2 Last night I went to bed ....
3 President Kennedy was shot ....
4 Our cat stays out .... and comes back in the morning.
5 Jill loves skiing, so she usually takes her holidays ....
6 My parents' alarm clock always rings ....
7 Clare's grandfather was born .... , so he's now a very old man.
8 I've had a busy week, so I'm going to stay at home ....
9 I have a lecture .... , so I can't meet you then, I'm afraid.

76 Complete the text with the words from the box. Use some words more than once.

after   at   before   for   from   in   on   since   until   to

The Channel Tunnel

The Channel Tunnel is 50 kilometres long and is between Britain and France. There are two tunnels for trains and one smaller service tunnel.

The tunnel was first talked about (1) ....at.... the beginning of the 19th century. This, of course, was (2) .... trains and cars were invented. (3) .... 1802, it was suggested that two tunnels could be built for carriages which would be pulled by horses. Fortunately, nothing happened. Then (4) .... the end of the 19th century, the English Channel Company started to build a tunnel. Engineers on both sides began digging (5) .... 1881. Technically, it was a success. (6) .... the first year, each side had dug almost two kilometres of tunnel. But digging stopped two years later because Britain and France were no longer political friends. (7) .... then (8) .... 1966, nothing more happened. (9) .... 1966, the Prime Ministers of Britain and France decided to try again, and (10) .... 20 years of talking, work began (11) .... December 1987. The French and British tunnel workers 'met' (12) .... the 1st of December 1990. The engineers said the tunnel would be ready for opening (13) .... five years' time. In fact, it was two years late. It opened (14) .... May 1994. (15) .... that time, the channel tunnel trains have carried millions of passengers. It takes about three hours to travel between London and Paris, and during that time, the train is under the Channel (16) .... about 20 minutes.

177 Complete the story of Jess Brewer's life. Use the words from the box.

after	before	during	for	~~from~~	since	to/until	until	while

Jess Brewer was a pupil at her local school (1) ....from.... 1980 (2) .... 1993. (3) .... her last year at school she learnt how to use computers, and this knowledge was very useful for her later. (4) .... leaving school, she went to university and studied mathematics. She was responsible for producing a student magazine (5) .... she was there. She stayed at university (6) .... four years and then decided to travel (7) .... looking for a job. She has been working as a computer programmer (8) .... she came back from her travels, but she wants to go away again. She knows that she has to stay with the computer company (9) .... she has enough money to go and do what she wants.

Jess is describing a normal day in her life. Complete her story with the words from the box. Use some words more than once.

after	~~at~~	before	~~during~~	for	from	in	on	since	to	until	while

'I wake up (10) ....at.... about 7.30 (11) ....during.... the week, but much later (12) .... Saturdays. (13) .... I wake up, I move very fast. In fact, I'm very good (14) .... the mornings. I only need 20 minutes (15) .... the time my alarm clock rings (16) .... the time I leave the house. I don't have breakfast at home; I have to wait (17) .... I arrive at the office for a cup of coffee.

I start work (18) .... 9 o'clock and work (19) .... four hours. (20) .... lunchtime, I often sit in the park and read (21) .... I'm eating my sandwiches. (22) .... going back to the office, I do some shopping. The afternoon passes very quickly. I work (23) .... 6 o'clock and then I go home. I've been working for the same company (24) .... 1999.

(25) .... the evenings, I usually watch TV or maybe go out for dinner with some friends. I don't go to bed late because I have to get up for work the next day. (26) .... weekends, my routine is very different.

Now write a paragraph about a normal day in your life. Use the words from the box to help you.

wake up / get up	breakfast	work / school	lunchtime	afternoon	evenings	bed

I usually wake up ....

....

....

....

in under through
(prepositions of place and movement)

Units 106–110

8 Some customers in the supermarket can't find what they want. You are the assistant. Complete the sentences.

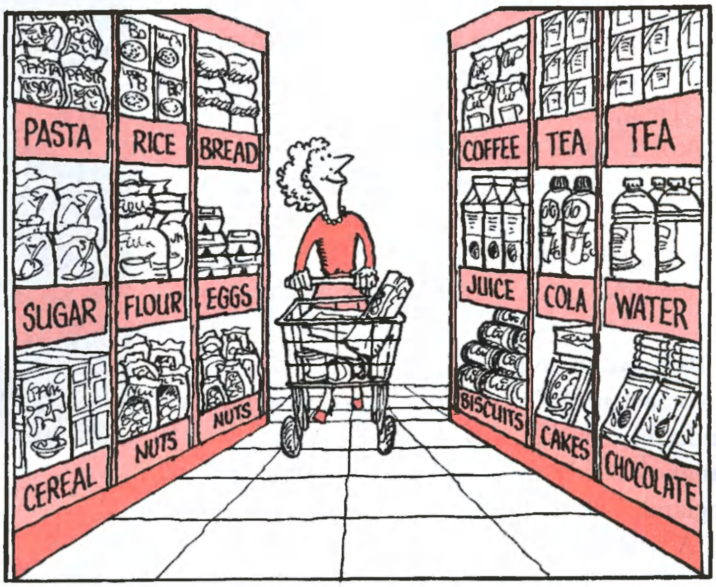
PASTA
RICE
BREAD
SUGAR
FLOUR
EGGS
CEREAL
NUTS
NUTS
COFFEE
TEA
TEA
JUICE
COLA
WATER
BISCUITS
CAKES
CHOCOLATE

CUSTOMER 1: I can't find the cereals.
YOU: They're ....on.... the left, ...on.... the bottom shelf, ...below.... the sugar.
CUSTOMER 2: Where's the rice, please?
YOU: It's .... the left, ... the top shelf, ... the pasta and the bread.
CUSTOMER 3: Where are the biscuits, please?
YOU: They're .... the right, ... shelf, ... the nuts.
CUSTOMER 4: Where's the water, please?
YOU: It's .... the right, ... shelf, ... the cola.
CUSTOMER 5: I can't find the tea.
YOU: It's .... the right, ... shelf, ... the cola.
CUSTOMER 6: And the cakes?
YOU: They're .... the cola, ... shelf, ... middle, ... the biscuits and the chocolate.
CUSTOMER 7: And the coffee?
YOU: ....
....
CUSTOMER 8: And the flour?
YOU: ....
....

in under through

179 Complete Leo's story using to, in or at if necessary. In one sentence, no preposition is necessary.

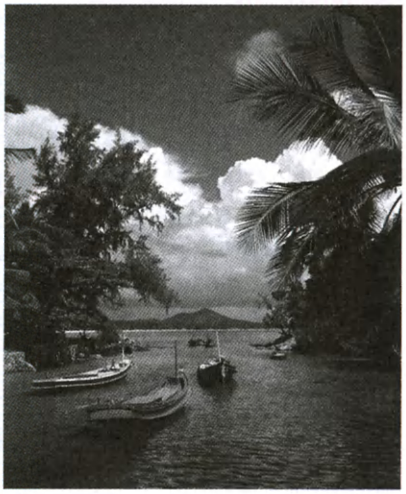

'I'm flying (1) ....to.... Italy on Sunday the 2nd of September, and the plane arrives (2) .... Rome airport at 11 o'clock at night. I'm staying (3) .... Rome (4) .... the Park Hotel for three days. Then, on Wednesday, I'm going (5) .... Bangkok for five days. I'll arrive (6) .... the Plaza Hotel (7) .... the centre of Bangkok late on Wednesday evening. On Saturday, I'm meeting a friend of mine (8) .... the hotel. He lives (9) .... the north of Thailand and is coming (10) .... Bangkok. We're going on holiday together.

On Monday the 10th, we're taking a boat (11) .... one of the islands, Ko Samui. We're staying there for two weeks. It's going to be wonderful. On the 26th, we return (12) .... Bangkok. Early the next day, I fly back (13) .... England. I arrive (14) .... home in the middle of the night. A wonderful month for me!'

180 Look at the journey that Felix, the cat, made in Sue's garden. Complete the story with prepositions (over, up, into, out of etc.).

Felix jumped (1) ....over.... the wall and walked (2) ....across.... the grass. Then he went (3) .... the pond and (4) .... the path. He walked (5) .... Sue's chair and (6) .... the table. Suddenly, he jumped (7) .... the table and took the fish which was (8) .... Sue's plate. He jumped (9) .... the table with the fish. Then the dog, Rosie, came (10) .... the house and chased the cat. They both ran (11) .... the bushes and (12) .... the patio. Felix stopped suddenly, but Rosie fell (13) .... the pond. Felix looked at her and then jumped (14) .... the wall again, still holding the fish in his mouth.

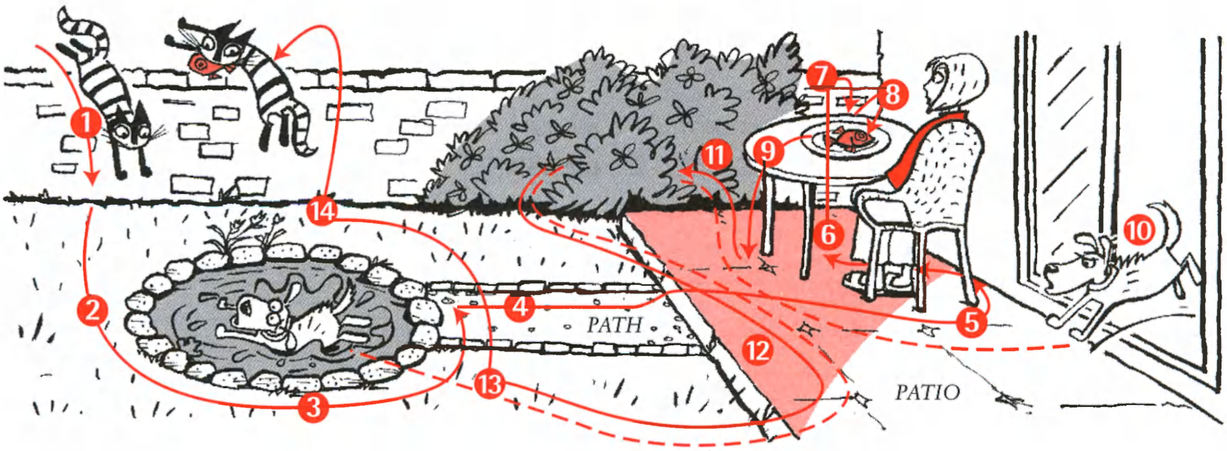

good at (doing) listen to

(prepositions before and after verbs)

Units 112–113

81 Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it has the same meaning. Use a preposition (to, at, with etc.).

1 I always got the best mark in history at school.
I was good at history at school .... (good)
2 The apples you bought yesterday were green. These are red.
These apples .... (different)
3 Turn the TV off, please. It's rugby and I don't like it.
I .... (not interested)
4 Rain, rain, rain! I'd like some sunshine for a change.
I .... (fed up)
5 Charlie doesn't like storms. They frighten him.
Charlie .... (afraid)
6 Stuart can't cook. A boiled egg is too difficult for him!
Stuart .... (not very good)
7 Jess always helps her elderly neighbours.
Jess .... (nice)
8 You can't move in my grandmother's sitting room. She's got a lot of furniture.
My grandmother's sitting room .... (full)
9 What's the matter? Why are you shouting at Liz?
Why .... ? (angry)

82 Complete the letter. Use a preposition + verb.

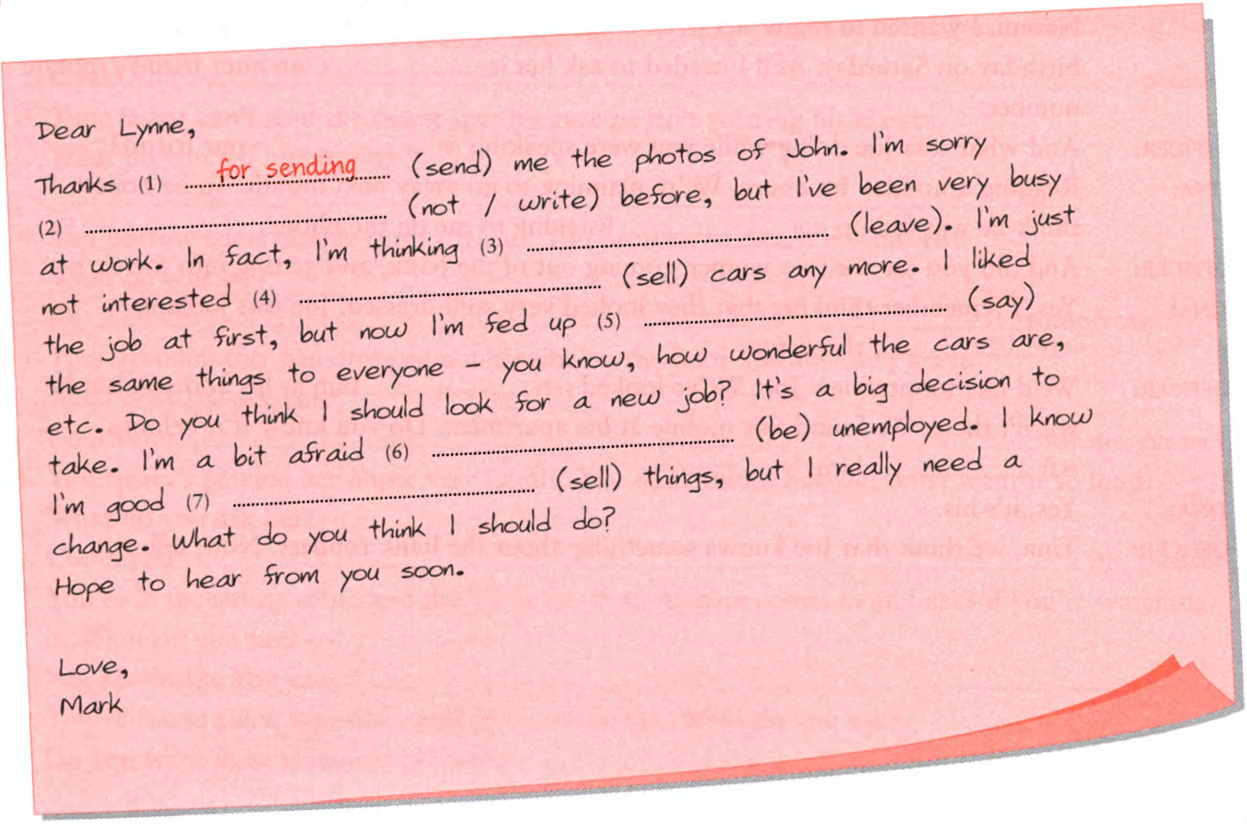

Dear Lynne,
Thanks (1) for sending (send) me the photos of John. I'm sorry
(2) .... (not / write) before, but I've been very busy
at work. In fact, I'm thinking (3) .... (leave). I'm just
not interested (4) .... (sell) cars any more. I liked
the job at first, but now I'm fed up (5) .... (say)
the same things to everyone – you know, how wonderful the cars are,
etc. Do you think I should look for a new job? It's a big decision to
take. I'm a bit afraid (6) .... (be) unemployed. I know
I'm good (7) .... (sell) things, but I really need a
change. What do you think I should do?
Hope to hear from you soon.

Love,
Mark

183 Read this interview between a police officer and Tina Bledlow, who saw a bank robbery yesterday. Write a preposition where necessary. There is no preposition in one sentence.

OFFICER: Can you tell us what you saw?

TINA: Well, Joe and I were standing opposite the bank, waiting (1) ...for... a bus. I was talking (2) .... Joe (3) .... the film we were going to see. I know he wasn't really listening (4) .... me because he was looking (5) .... a car which was parked across the road.

OFFICER: What kind of car was it?

TINA: A blue Mercedes, I think. Anyway, I decided to call (6) .... my friend, Naomi. I wanted to thank her (7) .... the present she gave me for my birthday on Saturday. And I needed to ask her (8) .... another friend's mobile number.

OFFICER: And what was Joe doing while you were speaking (9) .... your friend?

TINA: Reading a holiday brochure. We're planning to go away next month. To be honest, I think he was fed up (10) .... listening to me on the phone.

OFFICER: And did you see the two women coming out of the bank, and getting into the car?

TINA: Yes, I remember thinking that they looked very well-dressed. Joe was looking (11) .... them, too.

OFFICER: We'd like to interview Joe. We've looked (12) .... him at his address, but he wasn't there. We found this mobile at his apartment. Do you know if it belongs (13) .... him?

TINA: Yes, it's his.

OFFICER: Tina, we think that Joe knows something about the bank robbery. Now, tell us …

go in, fall off, run away
(phrasal verbs)

4 Complete the sentences with up, off, in etc.

1 Hurry ......up...... , Patti. The plane takes ......off...... in ten minutes.

2 Jane was asleep on the bus. Suddenly, the bus driver said, 'Wake .... ! This is your stop.' Jane quickly got .... and the bus drove ....

3 A young boy ran out of the sweet shop and rode .... on his bike. Two seconds later, the shop assistant came out and shouted, 'Come .... ! You haven't paid!'

4 Be careful! There's an old woman trying to cross the road. I think you're driving too fast. Slow .... a bit, please.

5 If you've finished Exercise 6, turn .... and carry .... Exercises 7 and 8 are on page 5.

6 SUE: Can I speak to Bob, please?
MEG: Sorry, I can't hear you. Can you speak .... ?
SUE: Can I speak to Bob, please.
MEG: Yes, hold .... a minute. He's in the kitchen, washing .... I'll call him. BOB!

7 One cold night last winter my car broke .... I went to a house and asked for help. The man there was very kind and said, 'Come .... and keep warm.'

5 Complete the sentences with a verb + on, off, up etc.

1 You're in a clothes shop. You want to buy some jeans, but first you want to see if they're the right size. What do you ask the shop assistant?
Can I ...try these jeans on... , please?

2 It's dark in the room. You need some light. What do you ask?
Could you .... , please?

3 Your father can't read the newspaper because he isn't wearing his glasses.
What do you tell him to do?
.... , Dad.

4 You borrow some money from a friend. You promise to return it tomorrow.
What do you say?
I'll .... tomorrow.

5 Your grandmother has dropped a magazine on the floor and she can't get it.
What does she ask you?
Could you .... for me, please?

6 Your sister's playing her music very loudly. You don't mind, but you don't want it so loud.
What do you ask her?
Could you .... a bit, please?

7 You're in the sitting room and the TV is on. Your mother comes in and asks if you're watching it. What do you say?
No, not really. You can ....

8 You've found some very old tomatoes in the fridge. What do you ask?
Do you want these tomatoes or shall I .... ?

In many of these answers you can use the full form of the verb (*I am*, *he has* etc.) or the short form of the verb (*I'm*, *she's* etc.)

1

3 'm/am
4 is
5 'm not/am not
6 'm not/am not
7 is
8 isn't/is not
9 's/is
10 are
11 aren't/are not
12 's/is
13 's/is

Example answer:
His name is Steve.
He's 45 years old.
He's an engineer.
He's interested in cars.
He isn't at work today because he's sick.

2

2 Where are you … ?
3 How … are you?
4 What colour are your … ?
5 What's your … ?
6 What are you … ?
7 Who's your … ?
8 Why are you … ?

3

2 Russia aren't islands.
3 Peas are green.
Carrots and onions aren't green.
4 Elephants and whales are big (animals).
Cats aren't big (animals).
5 Gold is expensive.
Milk and ice-cream aren't expensive.
6 *Example answers:*
I'm interested in sport.
I'm not interested in politics and music.

4

2 How old is he?
3 Is … your … ?
4 Who's that?
5 How old is she?
6 Is that … ?
7 What's his name?
8 Are those … ?

5

There are a lot more than ten possible sentences in this exercise. Example answers:
3 Are your parents old?
4 I'm/am an engineer.
5 How old is Anna?
6 Jim's book isn't expensive.
7 Where's/is Anna?
8 Your parents aren't at work.
9 How are your parents?
10 I'm/am not 18.

6

+ -ing
helping
laughing
listening
playing
starting
wearing
working
n → nn, t → tt etc.
digging
forgetting
putting
robbing
stopping
swimming
winning
e → ing
coming
dancing
deciding
having
living
making
writing
ie → ying
lying
tying

7

2 'm lying / am lying
3 am watching *or* watching
4 are swimming
5 aren't swimming
6 're standing / are standing
7 are watching *or* watching
8 are playing
9 isn't lying
10 's sitting / is sitting
11 's wearing / is wearing
12 is eating *or* eating

8

2 Sam and Eric aren't playing with a ball.
They're playing with a train.
3 They aren't wearing sunglasses.
They're wearing hats.
4 Pam isn't cooking chicken.
She's cooking fish.
5 She isn't laughing.
She's crying.
6 Jo isn't standing with her mother.
She's lying on the grass.
7 She isn't eating an orange.
She's eating a banana.
8 Fred, the dog, isn't lying on the grass asleep.
He's playing with a ball.

9

2 Where are you sitting?
3 Why are you laughing?
4 What are you watching?
5 Are you enjoying (it)?
6 Is he cooking (dinner)?
7 Who's he talking (to)?
8 Are they talking (to James)?
9 What are they making?

10

2 She doesn't drive a car.
She rides (a bike).
3 She doesn't work in an office.
She stays (at home).
4 She doesn't have lunch in a restaurant.
She makes (lunch at home).
5 She doesn't like cats.
She prefers (dogs).
6 She doesn't play computer games.
She watches (TV).

11

2 sleeps
3 has
4 holds
5 doesn't move
6 takes
7 costs

8 don't pay
9 don't want
10 doesn't work

12

2 Do you go to the office every day?
3 My car doesn't work when it is cold.
4 What time does the film start?
5 How many eggs do you want for breakfast?
6 *OK*
7 What does your father do?
8 I don't write many letters. I usually use email.
9 What does Sue usually have for lunch?
10 *OK*
11 Charlie plays tennis, but he doesn't enjoy it.

13

2 St John's Hospital
3 10 o'clock
4 6 o'clock
5 bus
6 20 children
7 many times
8 wakes the children up
9 gives them breakfast
10 very tired

12 do you work
13 do you start work
14 do you finish
15 do you go to work
16 children do you have in your section
17 do you look at the children
18 does the day nurse arrive
19 does she do
20 do you usually feel

14

2 Do you go
3 How do you get/travel
4 How much does it cost
5 Where do you (usually) sit
6 What/Which kind of films do you like
7 What's your favourite
8 Do you eat/buy
10 walks
11 lives
12 costs
13 sits
14 likes
15 is
16 doesn't eat
17 has/buys/drinks

(Use the paragraph about Paula to help you with your answer.)

15

2 I'm writing
3 I hate
4 Do you remember
5 he's lying
6 keeping
7 he sleeps
8 he doesn't catch
9 are watching
10 They like
11 They aren't laughing
12 I work
13 I don't want
14 are you doing
15 you're sitting
16 the sun's shining

16

Example answer:

Every day I get up at 7 o'clock and clean my teeth. I go for a run and then I have a shower.

At the moment I'm sitting in my room and I'm doing this exercise. I'm holding a cup of coffee in my left hand and I'm thinking about my lunch.

17

2 What do you do?
What are you doing?
3 When do you usually finish work?
Why are you leaving now?
4 What's John doing?
Does he read a lot?
5 Why are the children running?
What time do they start school?

18

3 's raining
4 's reading
5 aren't watching
6 do you get up
7 Does Sandra eat
8 are you smiling
9 don't understand

19

2 Do you read a newspaper every day?
Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
3 Does it rain much in your country? Yes, it does. / No, it doesn't.
4 Do you usually do your homework on a computer?
Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
5 Are you having a drink now?
Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.
6 Do you drink coffee for breakfast every day?
Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
7 Are you working at the moment?
Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.
8 Do students eat lunch at school in your country?
Yes, they do. / No, they don't.

20

2 's/has got
3 hasn't got
4 have got
5 's/has got
6 's/has got
7 hasn't got
8 's/has got
9 's/has got
10 's/has got
11 haven't got

Example answers:

I've got blue eyes. I haven't got a brother.

My mother has got a kind face. She hasn't got a lot of money.

Our neighbours haven't got a dog. They've got a garden.

My teacher has got a digital camera. She hasn't got a car.

My best friend has got a problem. She hasn't got a job.

21

2 have they got
3 has it got
4 Has he got
5 Have they got
6 Has she got
7 Have you got

22

2 He was
3 It was
4 They were
5 It was
6 We were
7 They were
8 I was

23

Example answers:
2 I was in the city centre
3 I was at the cinema
4 I was at the sports centre
5 I was in bed
6 I was in a restaurant
7 I was in the park

24

2 Was it difficult … it wasn't
3 Was it fast … it was
4 Were they expensive … they weren't
5 Were you nervous … I wasn't
6 Was she ill … she was

25

2 had lunch
3 went to an art exhibition
4 met Chris
5 didn't go to the Tango Club
6 bought a birthday present
7 had a picnic by the river
8 didn't take a boat cruise
9 made dinner in Sarah's apartment
10 caught the late flight home

Example answer:
On Friday morning I got up at eight o'clock and had breakfast. I went to work as usual. At one o'clock I had lunch with two of my colleagues. In the afternoon I didn't go to work. I went to the dentist. I had an appointment at half past two. After my appointment, I went shopping. I bought some jeans and two T-shirts. In the evening I went to the cinema with some friends, but I didn't enjoy the film very much.

26

Did you go to school?
Did you have a big lunch?
Did you have a history lesson?
Did you play football?
Did you spend any money?
Did you visit your grandmother?
Did you watch any TV?

27

2 didn't have
3 won
4 taught
5 was
6 left
7 studied
8 wasn't
9 wore
10 sang
11 made
12 went
13 spent
14 met
15 married
16 had
17 weren't
18 died

28

2 When did he win a school singing competition?
3 How did he learn to play the guitar?
4 Why did his family move to Memphis?
5 When did he leave school?
6 Did he work? *or* Did he have a job?
7 Why did he study at night school?
8 What did people love (about him)?
9 How many movies did he make?
10 How long was he in the army? *or* … did he stay in the army?
11 Who did he marry?
12 Did they have any children? *or* … have a child?
13 When did he die?

29

2 spent/had
3 was
4 saw/visited
5 climbed/went
6 was
7 were
8 took/caught
9 walked/went
10 weren't
11 went
12 thought
13 didn't like / didn't enjoy
14 was

(Use the postcard from Elena to help you with your answer.)

30

2 Sam was climbing a tree in the park.
3 Sam's dogs were running in the park. *or* … were playing in the park.
4 Lynn was lying on the grass in the park.
5 Mrs Drake was going into the baker's.
6 Philip was sitting in the garden.
7 Mike and Tim were waiting at the bus stop.
8 Felix was sleeping on a/the car.
9 Paul was getting into a/the/his car.

Example answers:
10 At 10.30 in the morning I was sitting in my office.
11 At 12.30 I was having lunch.
12 At 6.15 in the evening I was writing an email.
13 At 8.30 in the evening I was cooking the dinner.
14 At midnight I was sleeping.

31

1 Did you see … was reading
2 telephoned … was sitting … drinking … Was … was working … did you go … went
3 broke … was washing … were … dropped
4 Did you think … was … didn't write … was dreaming
5 was … happened … was raining … weren't going … Were … broke … cut
6 wasn't talking … were you talking

32

2 Where was Joan Turner?
3 What was Mrs Jones doing?
4 Where was Mrs Walters going?
5 Were the robbers carrying guns?
6 Where was the big car waiting?
7 Was the driver a man or a woman?
8 Did you see a man on the corner?
9 Were some men repairing the road?
10 Was anyone waiting at the bus stop?
11 Did you phone the police?

13 was in the baker's
14 was walking along the street
15 was going into the baker's
16 were carrying
17 was waiting opposite the bank
18 was a woman
19 was standing
20 were repairing
21 were waiting
22 phoned

33

3 What does he do?
4 What does he study?
5 What does he like?
6 Where did he go for his last holiday?
7 Where did he stay?
8 What did he do on holiday?

Example answer:
Jill is 29 and she lives in Dublin. She's a computer programmer and she studied mathematics at university. She likes travelling, swimming and chocolate. Last year she went to Thailand for one month with friends. She stayed in a hotel by the sea and she did lots of water sports.

(Use the paragraphs about Marco and Jill to help you with your answer.)

34

3 *OK*
4 usually go
5 didn't have
6 are you looking
7 're/are wearing
8 bought
9 is Tim doing
10 fell
11 *OK*
12 Did he hurt
13 woke
14 didn't watch
15 don't usually watch
16 went
17 *OK*
18 *OK*

35

2 was
3 went
4 was sitting
5 walked
6 saw
7 was
8 was
9 is
10 made
11 were
12 had
13 did it happen
14 were riding
15 stopped
16 fell
17 broke
18 talk
19 Do you ride
20 stopped
21 moved
22 do you do
23 likes
24 swims
25 love
26 'm making
27 's swimming

36

2 hasn't heard
3 've lost
4 've (already) bought
5 hasn't got
6 have (you) taken
7 've (never) tried
8 has (he) invited
9 has written
10 Has (he) lost
11 've broken
12 haven't seen

37

2 Have you ever had … Have you ever broken
3 Have you ever eaten
4 Have you ever travelled
5 Have you ever lost
6 Have you ever slept
7 Have you ever climbed

Two of the following:
He has broken his leg (twice).
He has travelled in a canoe.
He has slept outside.
He has climbed a high mountain.
And the following:
He has never eaten crocodile.
He has never lost his way.
Example answers:
I've broken my arm once.
I've never slept outside.

38

2 have (they) gone
have (they) been
3 have(n't) been
4 's gone
5 's gone … 's (already) been

39

2 have done
3 's/has travelled *or* been
4 's/has met *or* seen
5 's/has made *or* earned *or* won
6 's/has (already) written

7 ’s/has ridden
8 ’s/has (just) sold *or* sent
9 ’ve/have played
10 ’ve/have (never) been

40

2 How long have you been married to Paul? For
3 How long have you had a (new) dog? Since
4 How long have you worked as a hairdresser? Since
5 How long has Paul been a train driver? For
6 How long have your parents lived with you? For
7 How long has your mother looked after the baby? Since
8 How long has your father been ill? Since

41

Example answers:
3 3 years ago
4 for three years *or* since 2003
5 10 years ago
6 since Monday *or* for three days
7 5 years ago … 2 years ago
8 since the summer *or* for a month

42

2 ’ve been
3 ’ve been waiting
4 ’s been
5 ’s had
6 ’s been shining
7 went
8 ’s lived *or* ’s been living
9 got married
10 ’s known

43

2 John’s been talking for 20 minutes.
3 They’ve been walking for six hours.
4 You’ve been watching TV since 9 o’clock this morning.
5 Laura’s been feeling sick since lunchtime.
6 Fred’s been travelling for two days / since June 28th.
7 It’s been raining for 12 hours.

44

2 When did John lose his job?
3 How long has Ricardo had a cat?
4 What time did you finish work last night?
5 When was the last time you had a holiday?
6 How long did you watch TV last night?
7 When did Chris go out?
8 How long has your father been in hospital?

45

2 I’ve been here since last year.
3 *OK*
4 She was a photographer five years ago.
5 James and I met last March.
6 *OK*
7 John has been looking for a new job since last month.
8 Did you speak to your parents last night?
9 I’ve played the guitar since I was a child.
10 What did you do last night?

46

2 B
3 A
4 B
5 A
6 A

47

2 has Jane/she had her computer
3 has been a politician for
4 has worked here *or* has been working here
5 haven’t finished it/my homework
6 met his best friend, Ahmed,
7 have had flu for
8 has been interested in music

48

3 reached
4 have just started
5 did (they) spend
6 took
7 arrived
8 has been
9 said
10 have worked / have been working
11 has been
12 won
13 has won
14 was
15 scored
16 has been
17 left
18 have had
19 was

49

2 ’ve lost … did (you last) see … left
3 bought … has (he) had
4 haven’t finished … started
5 Did (you) see … Have (you ever) seen … ’ve also touched … was … was
6 ’s crashed … has (she) done

50

2 have you worked / have you been working
3 Do you like
4 was
5 are you looking
6 is
7 Has it gone/disappeared

51

2 was
3 watched
4 ate
5 had
6 enjoyed
7 ’m writing
8 ’m sitting
9 had
10 was
11 ’ve been
12 came
13 have (got)
14 was
15 Do you like
16 ’s practising
17 ’ve just sent

18 did you find *or* have you found
19 left
20 's sitting

52

1 time you spent with me very much. We had some good fun.
2 You left a big box of chocolates for my parents. Thank you. We've just finished them – they were delicious.
3 And thank you also for the CDs. They arrived yesterday. I haven't played all of them yet. At the moment I'm listening to 'Paradise Rock'. It's very good.
4 My mother found your photo album the day you left. I sent it back two weeks ago. Have you received it yet?
5 Do you remember Steve? We met him at Sue's party. Well, he came to my house last week. He asked for your address, so I gave it to him. I hope that's OK. He's in California now on business.
6 I'm looking out of the window at the moment. The sun's shining and it's a beautiful warm day. In fact, it has been sunny every day since you went back to San Francisco. Honestly!
7 The CD has just finished. Tell your brother I love his music. Does he want a publicity agent in London?

(Use exercise 51 to help you with your answer.)

53

Down	Across
1 chosen	5 read
2 written	6 bought
3 made	8 grown
4 found	9 spoken
7 thought	10 forgotten
10 felt	12 held
11 shot	13 taken
	14 built

54

2 How many languages are spoken in the world?
3 Where is coffee grown?
4 What is the country of Siam now called?
6 When was the first photograph taken?
7 Where were CDs first made?
8 When was the Taj Mahal built?
9 Where was John Lennon shot?

55

3 is locked
4 are checked
5 is being made
6 are being put
7 isn't exported
8 is washed
9 is allowed
10 is being served

56

what has been done
The lamp has been repaired.
The glass has been broken.
The lights have been switched/turned off.
The window has been closed.
what hasn't been done
The computer hasn't been switched off.
The chairs haven't been repaired.

57

3 was taken
4 caused
5 were covered
6 left
7 walked
8 are being repaired
9 has disappeared
10 have (just) been removed
11 have (just) heard
12 blew
13 is waiting
14 was
15 was sent
16 kicked
17 was hurt
18 crashed
19 was carried
20 played
21 is being taken
22 thinks
23 is happening
24 are being given

Example answers:

Bank robbery: €6 million taken
Thieves entered a bank in Bergamo yesterday and took €6 million. Six members of staff were locked in a room, but no-one was hurt. Police are now looking for a white van which was used to take away the money.

Dog attacks man outside supermarket
A man was attacked by a dog outside the Laftis supermarket yesterday afternoon. He was bitten on the arms and legs. The man was taken to hospital, but he has now been released.

Local woman wins lottery
A 55-year-old woman has won £3 million in the lottery. Jane Smith, a shop assistant from Brighton, was told the news on Sunday morning.

Car hits actor on bike
The actor James Grady was hit by a car yesterday afternoon while he was cycling with friends. An ambulance was called and Grady was taken to hospital. The driver of the car was later arrested for dangerous driving.

58

2 has
3 was
4 doesn't
5 haven't
6 is
7 were
8 weren't
9 are
10 didn't

59

3 gave … forgot
4 found … left
5 showed … taken
6 escaped … caught
7 thought … done

8 wore … given
9 learnt/learned … fell … swum
10 felt … went … slept

60

2 have you
3 Did you
4 Was it
5 did you
6 Have you
7 was it
8 Does it *or* Do you
9 Do you
10 Has he

12 bought
13 had
14 got
15 chose
16 read
17 made
18 learnt
19 took
20 put
21 sent
22 used
23 shown

61

2 'm having
3 is coming
4 is getting married
5 are going
6 'm driving
7 does (the meeting) start
8 'm talking
9 leaves/goes/is

62

Example answers:
2 I'm going to the cinema.
3 I'm having lunch with my sister.
4 I'm playing football.
5 I'm working on Sunday.

63

3 When does the check-in desk open?
4 How are we travelling to the airport?
5 Where are we meeting Jane?
6 Where are we staying for the first night?
7 What time does the flight land?
8 Who's meeting us at the airport in Beijing?

Example answer:
We're meeting at 7 a.m. and the check-in desk opens at quarter past seven. We're going to the airport by train and we're meeting Jane at the station. We're staying at the Plaza Hotel in Beijing for the first night. The flight lands at 4 o'clock in the afternoon and someone from the hotel is meeting us.

64

2 What are you going to buy for Paul's birthday?
Is he going to have a party?
3 Are you going to buy a new computer?
What kind are you going to get?
4 What's Sarah going to do after university?
How long is she going to be away?
5 Are Chris and Kate going to get married?
Where are they going to live?

65

Example answers:
I'm going to listen to some rock music.
I'm not going to spend a lot of money.
My brother is going to play on the computer.
My mother is not going to eat some chocolate.
My friend, Colin, is going to do some work.
I'm going to email some friends.

66

2 's going to have
3 She's going to be
4 He's going to
5 They're going to
6 I'm going to

67

3 No, he won't. He'll probably be in the city centre.
4 *True.*
5 No, he won't. He'll be with his friends.
6 *True.*
7 No, he won't. He'll be 40.
8 No, they won't. They'll probably be at school.
9 He doesn't know where he'll be in 2050.

Example answers:
This evening I'll probably be at home.
Tomorrow morning I'll probably be at school.
Next month I'll be on holiday.
A few years from now I'll probably have a good job.
In 2030 I don't know where I'll be.

68

Example answers:
2 I don't think I'll walk.
I think I'll go by car.
3 I don't think he'll fail (his history exam).
I think he'll pass.
4 I think they'll go to Australia.
I don't think they'll stay in Scotland.
5 I think she'll stay at the garage.
I don't think she'll change jobs.
6 I don't think she'll buy a new computer.
I think she'll keep her old computer.

69

2 Shall I make
3 Shall I close
4 Shall I open/do
5 Shall I turn
6 Shall I take
7 Shall I clean/wash

70

2 Shall we stay
3 Shall we use/take

4 Shall we drive *or* Shall we go by car
5 shall we go
6 Shall I ask/invite

71

2 are you doing
3 are going
4 will fly
5 shall we go
6 We're not going to camp
7 we'll probably stay
8 We're going to have
9 I'll phone

72

1 It'll probably be about three hours.
I'm going to the dentist at 5.30.
2 When does the next term begin?
What are you going to do during the holidays?
My school doesn't finish until next week.
Then I'm going to look for a job for the summer.
3 I'm going to visit my grandmother.
I'm going to take it to the garage tomorrow.
I'll lend you mine.
I'll pay for the petrol.

73

3 'm seeing
4 'll make
5 does (the sun) rise
6 are (you) going
7 *OK*
8 'll snow
9 *OK*
10 'll call
11 *OK*

74

2 I'll buy/get you another one.
3 I'm going shopping with my sister.
4 I'll ring/(tele)phone/call you this evening.
5 Tony and Rachel are coming to dinner tonight
6 you'll like it
7 What are you doing
8 I'm going to the seaside

75

2 might take/get a taxi … they might not come
3 I might invite/ask Sarah … I might not invite/ask Tony
4 She might buy/get some jeans … she might not buy/get anything

76

3 He's going to walk along the Great Wall.
4 He might go on a boat trip down the Yangtse River.
5 He's not going to eat western food.
6 He might try green tea.
7 He's going to learn a little Chinese.
8 He might not come home.

77

2 can
3 can't
4 can't
5 can't
6 can

8 could see
9 couldn't get
10 couldn't climb
11 couldn't phone
12 could see

78

3 can't cook
4 couldn't sleep
5 couldn't understand
6 can't come
7 couldn't catch
8 couldn't play
9 can't see

79

2 He could play the guitar … he couldn't sing.
3 He could swim really well … he couldn't ride a bike.
4 he can't play the guitar.
5 He can play the piano … he can't drive a car.

Example answers:
When I was younger, I could sleep for a long time. I couldn't speak English.
Now, I can drive a car. I can't cook very well.

80

3 Could I borrow a hair dryer, please?
4 Could you give me a wake-up call at 6.30 in the morning, please?
5 Could I have breakfast in my room tomorrow morning, please?
6 Could I leave my passport and traveller's cheques in the hotel safe, please?
7 Could you get a taxi for me, please?
(You can also use can *in these situations.)*

81

2 must study … mustn't watch … don't need to buy any food / go shopping
3 must take your medicine … mustn't get up … don't need to eat anything

Example answers:
I must email my friend because I want to ask him something.
I mustn't shout at my brother because he cries when I do.
I don't need to take the dog for a walk tonight because I took him this morning.
I don't need to go to the gym today because I went yesterday for 2 hours.

82

Example answers:
3 had to work late
4 must go to bed
5 had to stay with a friend
6 had to go to the dentist
7 must hurry

83

2 You should go
You shouldn't eat/have
3 You should take/have
You shouldn't work/read/use the computer
4 You should tell
You shouldn't lend/give

84

2 Do you think I should ask
3 Do you think I/we should go
4 Do you think I/we should get/buy/have

85

Example answers:
2 I think / I don't think she should go to the party.
I think / I don't think she should (stay at home and) study.
3 I think / I don't think he should stay at school.
I think / I don't think he should listen to his parents.
4 I think / I don't think they should be careful with their money.
I think / I don't think they should go out every night.

86

2 Do I have to write
3 don't have to shout
4 didn't have to choose
5 has to stay
6 didn't have to tell

87

2 Did you have to do
3 did you have to travel
4 don't have to wear
5 had to wear
6 has to work
7 does he have to take
8 has to get
9 didn't have to do
10 had to take

88

2 Don't eat
3 Don't use
4 Wash up
5 Throw the rubbish away
6 Don't play music
7 Lock the door carefully
Example answers:
Clean the shower after you use it.
Make a cup of coffee for me every evening.
Don't borrow my clothes.
Don't make a noise when you come in.

89

2 Turn
3 Walk
4 Cross
5 Take
6 Ask

Example answer:
Go straight up Banbury Road. Turn left at the cinema. Walk along Stone Avenue and then take the first road on the right. It's called Wessex Street. Cross the road and you'll see the supermarket.

90

Example answers:
2 Don't open
3 Have a piece of *or* Have some
4 Let's not have *or* Don't let's have ... Let's go to the new
5 Turn the music down
6 Don't ask me questions

91

2 used to be
3 used to play
4 used to swim/fish
5 used to live
6 used to walk
7 used to eat/cook
8 used to work
9 used to be

Example answers:
I used to go to the park every day.
I used to like drawing.
I used to listen to cassettes.
I used to live in a small village.

92

2 used to live
3 used to hunt
4 wear
5 used to cook
6 used to take off
7 used to spend
8 used to wear
9 ride
10 used to take
11 go
12 used to be
13 hate

93

2 there's
3 it's
4 there's
5 there are
6 Is there
7 there are
8 Are there
9 there aren't
10 Is it
11 There isn't
12 It's

94

2 It's
3 there wasn't
4 it was
5 There's
6 it was
7 it was
8 there was
9 It's
10 There's / There has been
11 it's

95

2 Don't you?
3 Can't he?
4 Did I?
5 Doesn't she?
6 Haven't you?
7 Aren't you?
8 Was he?
9 Were you?
10 Has she?

96

2 didn't you
3 do you
4 haven't you
5 isn't it
6 were they
7 have you

97

2 Tim doesn't have a girlfriend at the moment, but Damian does.
3 Tim was good at school, but Damian wasn't.
4 Tim went to university, but Damian didn't.
5 Tim enjoys listening to other bands, but Damian doesn't.
6 Tim hasn't been to many countries, but Damian has.

98

2 wasn't born
3 didn't live
4 can't speak
5 haven't got
6 isn't
7 don't live
8 won't be

99

4 I do.
5 Neither have I.
6 I'm not.
7 So did I.
8 Neither do I.
9 So will I.

11 neither can Meg
12 neither has Meg
13 so did Meg
14 neither does Meg
15 so will Meg

Example answers:
Julia and Meg can't play volleyball and neither can I.
Meg likes jazz and so do I.
Julia and Meg haven't got any brothers and neither have I.
Meg isn't looking for a new job and neither am I.

100

2 What do you do?
3 Did you go to university? *or* … study at university?
4 Are you married?
5 Where/How did you meet your wife?
6 Have you got any children? *or* Do you have …
7 Does Emily go to school?
8 Does your wife work?
9 Do you enjoy your job?
10 How much holiday do you have/get?

101

3 are you going to say
4 happened
5 likes
6 told
7 's playing

102

2 does she come from? *or* is she from?
3 's she waiting for?
4 's she talking to?
5 did it belong to?
6 's he looking at?
7 are they talking about?

103

1 Where did you … Who did you … What was
2 What have you … How did you … Does it
3 What time does it … How long does it … Which jacket shall I

104

2 Why didn't you ring me last night?
3 Who are you giving that present to?
4 How much has Mary spent?
5 Where did Jo go for her holidays last year?
6 How long does it take to get to your school?
7 What do you usually do in the evenings?
8 What happened yesterday evening?
9 When was the Taj Mahal built?

105

2 What do you want to see?
3 Have you seen it?
4 Who did you go with?
5 What was it like?
6 would you like to do something else?
7 Why don't you come to my house?
8 How long are they going to be away?
9 Can I bring anything for dinner?
10 What do you want to talk to me about?
11 how long does it take to walk to your house from the station? *or* … from the station to your house?

106

2 I don't know if he'll go and work abroad.
3 I don't know if his fiancée is Spanish.
4 I don't know where he met this wonderful woman.
5 I don't know how long they've known each other.
6 I don't know when the wedding is.
7 I don't know if we're invited.

107

2 Do you know what he was wearing?
3 Do you know who was with him? *or* … who he was with?
4 Do you know how much it / the camera cost?
5 Do you know what kind of shop he went into? *or* Do you know which shop …
6 Do you know why the person (with him) was laughing?
7 Do you know where the train was going to?

108

2 Do you know why all the shops are closed today?
3 Do you know where the Regent Hotel is?
4 Do you know how much the tickets cost/are?
5 Do you know when Mr Collins died?
6 Do you know if there's a Chinese restaurant nearby / near here?

109

Example answers:
Do you know if the subway closes at night?
Do you know if you can go up the Statue of Liberty?
Do you know what's on at the theatre?
Do you know where I can buy some stamps?

110

3 he had (got) a few days' holiday
4 (he) was going to Italy
5 he was ill
6 (he) had been in bed for two days
7 she didn't like parties
8 (she) couldn't dance
9 his sister was arriving from Australia on Saturday
10 he was going to meet her at the airport
11 she loved parties
12 (she) would be free on Saturday

111

2 Paul said you didn't work here on Mondays.
3 Stuart said you'd gone out.
4 Simon said you were at lunch and (you) would be back soon.
5 Mike said you left early on Mondays.
6 Diana said you were making a cup of tea.
7 Mary said she didn't know (where you were).

Example answer:

8 I was in the chairman's office.

112

2 A
3 B
4 C
5 B
6 B
7 C
8 C
9 C
10 C

113

3 to go
4 to be
5 to tell
6 to drive
7 to let
8 to do
9 slowing
10 to see
11 to come
12 talking
13 to go
14 writing

114

2 told David not to play with that knife
3 didn't let his young sons play with toy guns
4 persuaded Jane to come swimming with us
5 didn't expect you to fail the exam *or* expected you to pass
6 made me pay back all the money I (had) borrowed

115

2 do
3 do
4 doing
5 to do
6 doing
7 to do

Example answers:

2 They made me go to bed early.
3 They never let me go to other children's houses.
4 I don't mind washing the dishes.
5 I've always wanted to learn to dive.
6 I most enjoy watching a video or DVD.
7 I'd like to be a doctor.

116

Example answers:

3 invite her to my party.
4 some information.
5 to pay the bills / for my holiday.
6 to make a cup of coffee / for a knife.
7 to finish her work / for sport.
8 to see the new Disney film / for a letter.

117

The correct answers are:

2 doesn't mind / likes
3 made / let
4 use / learn
5 started / suggested
6 forgot / don't need
7 told / advised

118

3 holding
4 having
5 to swim
6 to bring
7 leaving
8 to go
9 do
10 to go
11 to study
12 telling

119

3 do
4 made
5 made
6 make
7 makes
8 made
9 do
10 doing
11 do
12 to do
13 made
14 do
15 making
16 do *or* to do
17 did
18 did
19 to do

120

2 Do you have a temperature? *or* Have you got …
3 What are we going to have for lunch today? *or* What are we having …
4 Can you have a look at my computer? *or* Could you …
5 How many jobs have you had?
6 Shall we have a walk later?

121

2 him
3 I
4 We
5 It
6 me
7 he
8 them
9 they
10 its
11 my
12 our

13 My
14 his
15 their
16 her

122

2 you
3 your
4 me
5 my
6 mine
7 They
8 them
9 I
10 her
11 us
12 his
13 he
14 him
15 him
16 them
17 Their
18 hers
19 mine
20 yours
21 their
22 your

123

4 by herself
5 each other
6 myself
7 each other

124

2 cut themselves
3 understand each other
4 went by herself
5 enjoyed ourselves
6 wrote … each other

125

3 James gave me those books. I really like them.
4 Some friends of theirs told them the news.
5 Pat gave her brother a DVD and he gave her a book.
6 My sister and her husband don't love each other any more. They aren't happy together.
7 John is a good friend of mine.
8 *OK*
9 I like this house but its windows are broken.
10 I know Mary, but I don't know her brother.
11 I sometimes ask myself why I work in a noisy city.

126

2 Anne's car
3 Elena's house
4 the students' books
5 my sister's birthday
6 Mrs Penn's cakes
7 grandparents' house
8 Chris's parents

127

2 The computer games are Alan's.
3 The books are Alan's.
4 The football is Mike's.
5 The chocolates are Mike's. *or* The box of chocolates is Mike's.
6 The (running) shoes are Alan's.
7 The guitar is Alan's.
8 The magazine is Mike's.

128

3 John's favourite team
4 the result of the match
5 your parents' anniversary party
6 the windows of the house
7 the telephone number of the station
8 Mark Turner's daughter

129

2 an empty glass
3 a difficult question
4 an old book
5 a hot day
6 a cheap hotel
7 a young man
8 a heavy bag
9 an interesting film

130

2 watches
3 tomatoes
4 feet
5 teeth
6 women
7 children
8 babies
9 sheep
10 days

131

The correct answers are:
2 A
3 A / C
4 B / C
5 A
6 A
7 C
8 A / B

132

1 some suntan oil
2 some CDs
a CD player
some perfume / a bottle of perfume
a pair of sunglasses
3 some books
a pair of jeans
some face cream
a map
4 two pairs of trousers
some/three T-shirts
some money
a (rain)coat/jacket

Example answers:
a camera, a guidebook, a sunhat, a dictionary, a pair of walking boots, some books

133

2 a (musician) … the (best)
3 an (idea) … the (new)
4 the (station) … a (taxi) … the (city centre)
5 the (kitchen) … a (guest) … the (dining room)
6 the (capital) … a (large)
7 the (third) … an (old)
8 a (large) … the (middle) … the (country) … a (dog) … the (dog)
9 the (same) … an (older) … the (most)
10 the (nearest) … the (end) … the (left) … a (bus stop)

134

3 the station manager
4 an Italian restaurant
5 the left

6 the Information Centre
7 the restaurant
8 a woman
9 the kitchen
10 the man
11 *OK*
12 the same
13 the papers
14 the police
15 *OK*
16 the table

135

3 –
4 the
5 –
6 the
7 –
8 the
9 –
10 –
11 the
12 –
13 –
14 –
15 –

136

2 –
3 the
4 –
5 the
6 the
7 –
8 –
9 –

137

2 any
3 some
4 some
5 some
6 any
7 some
8 any
9 some
10 any

138

2 something
3 someone/somebody
4 something
5 anyone/anybody
6 something
7 anything
8 Someone/Somebody
9 anything

139

2 haven't got any money / don't have any money *or* have (got) no money
3 haven't got any chocolates / don't have any chocolates *or* have (got) no chocolates
4 aren't any (biscuits) *or* are no biscuits
5 isn't any milk *or* 's no milk
6 haven't got any food / don't have any food *or* have (got) no food
7 isn't any time *or* 's no time

140

2 any
3 None
4 *OK*
5 any
6 any
7 *OK*
8 no
9 some

141

2 None
3 no
4 any
5 Some
6 no
7 some
8 any
9 any
10 some

142

2 nowhere
3 nothing
4 someone/somebody
5 somewhere
6 No-one/Nobody
7 someone/somebody
8 anything
9 something
10 anywhere

143

2 something to eat
3 nothing to do
4 anyone/anybody to play
5 anywhere to stay
6 something to wear
7 anything to say / to talk about

144

2 all
3 all
4 Every
5 all
6 every
7 all

145

2 Everyone/Everybody
3 everything
4 everywhere
5 everywhere
6 everyone/everybody

146

2 –
3 of
4 of
5 –
6 –
7 –
8 of
9 of
10 –
11 of

147

2 Some of Richard's colleagues walk to work. *or* Some of them walk …
3 All (of) Richard's colleagues have (got) a car. *or* All of them have …
4 Most of Richard's colleagues use their car every day. *or* Most of them use …
5 Some of Lisa's friends go to the cinema every month.
6 All (of) Lisa's friends play some kind of sport. *or* All of them play …
7 None of Lisa's friends study every night. *or* None of them study …
8 Most of Lisa's friends enjoy dancing. *or* Most of them enjoy …

Example answers
All of us take regular exercise.
Most of us play some kind of sport.
Some of us enjoy dancing.
None of us study every night.

148

2 Neither
3 either
4 Both
5 Both of
6 either of
7 Neither

149

Example answers:
Both of us like dancing.
Neither of us has got a brother.
Both of us go to the gym every day.
Neither of us is married.
Both of us have to learn English.
Neither of us drives a car.

150

2 There isn't much champagne.
3 There isn't any orange juice.
4 There isn't much cake.
5 There aren't any sandwiches.
6 There isn't much fish.
7 There aren't many cherries.

151

2 How much milk do you like in your coffee? (A lot. / Not (very) much. / A little. / None.)
3 How many cars can you see out of the window? (A lot. / Not (very) many. / A few. / None.)
4 How much money do you spend in one month? (A lot. / Not (very) much. / A little. / None.)
5 How many good friends do you have? (A lot. / Not (very) many. / A few. / None.)
6 How much water do you drink every day? (A lot. / Not (very) much. / A little. / None.)
7 How many pairs of socks do you have? (A lot. / Not (very) many. / A few. / None.)

152

2 a few
3 a few
4 little
5 little
6 a little

153

2 old hotel
3 hot water
4 famous places/sights
5 delicious food/meals
6 friendly people
7 difficult language
8 busy roads/streets/towns
9 big country/place

154

2 happy
3 good
4 well
5 good
6 brilliantly
7 fantastic
8 carefully
9 well
10 delicious
11 badly
12 hard
13 quickly

155

2 than
3 more
4 as
5 as
6 more
7 more
8 colder/worse
9 as
10 as
11 more
12 than

(Use the paragraphs about the USA and Australia to help you with your answer.)

156

4 Life is more expensive than it was.
5 People are not as friendly as they were.
6 Films are more violent than they were.
7 People live longer than they did.
8 Houses are better than they were.
9 Families are not as big as they were.
10 Children have (got) more freedom than they had.
11 People eat better food than they did.

157

2 B, C, A: The python is the longest snake and the rattlesnake is longer than the cobra.
3 B, A, C: Antarctica is the coldest place and Scotland is colder than France.
4 A, C, B: The cheetah is the fastest animal and the lion is faster than the mouse.
5 C, B, A: 'Of' is the most common preposition in English and 'at' is more common than 'into'.
6 A, C, B: The Great White Shark is the most dangerous creature and the scorpion is more dangerous than the cockroach.

158

2 Who's the most interesting person you've ever met?
3 What's the most frightening experience you've ever had?
4 What's the worst film you've ever seen?
5 What's the most expensive thing you've ever bought?
6 What's the most unusual food you've ever eaten?
7 Which is the largest city you've ever visited?

159

2 Jo lives much further away now.
3 My mum is the same age as my dad.
4 *OK*
5 This is the oldest house in the city.
6 Traffic in the city is worse in the evenings.
7 This dictionary is the best I've ever had.
8 Paul isn't as lazy as he seems.
9 *OK*
10 Meg is the most intelligent person in her family.
11 It's not as warm as it was yesterday.
12 This is the most comfortable chair in the room.

160

2 Have you got enough money to pay for the tickets?
3 Have you got enough information to answer the question?

4 Has he worked hard enough to pass his exams?
5 Are there enough plates for everyone?
6 Is your tea sweet enough or would you like some more sugar?

161

2 sharp enough to cut
3 enough money to buy
4 well enough to go
5 enough time to answer/do
6 warm enough to play

162

2 ate/had too many chocolates
3 is too much traffic *or* are too many cars
4 are too many people
5 is too hot
6 drank/had too much coffee

163

3 There aren't enough cinemas.
4 There's too much noise and dirt.
5 The parks are too small. *or* The parks aren't big enough.
6 There aren't enough things to do in the evenings.
7 There are too many tourists.

Example answers:
There are too many cars and not enough parking spaces.
There aren't enough tennis courts.
The shops aren't open long enough.
There's too much noise in the city centre.

164

3 No, they're not old enough to get married. *or* they're too young to …
4 Yes, he's old enough to drive a car.
5 No, she's not old enough to buy a dog. *or* she's too young to …
6 Yes, he's old enough to leave school.
7 No, she's too young to vote. *or* she's not old enough to …

165

2 Maria rarely goes to bed before midnight.
3 I've got lots of friends, but they are all on holiday at the moment.
4 I like chocolate very much.
5 When do you usually do your homework?
6 I can never remember my car registration number.
7 Carmen always arrives home late from work.
8 Clare is a good piano player. She's also learning to play the guitar.
9 John and Steve? They are both living in Brazil now.
10 José finished his exams yesterday.

166

2 'm still looking for … haven't found them yet
3 's still raining … haven't seen the sun yet
4 haven't got up yet … 'm still in bed
5 hasn't apologised yet … 'm still angry
6 'm still driving … haven't bought a new car yet

167

3 but
4 and
5 or
6 but
7 so
8 and (*but* is also possible)
9 so
10 because (*but* is also possible)
11 so
12 or
13 and
14 because

168

3 while you were at work
4 until you're better
5 when I'm speaking on the phone
6 When I finish college
7 While I was walking home
8 before we leave the house
9 When I heard the news
10 when I'm in town

169

2 we're
3 we miss the beginning of
4 we don't understand
5 we're bored
6 we fall asleep

170

2 if I had one
3 if she weren't/wasn't ill
4 it doesn't rain
5 you found
6 he got up
7 he won't tell

171

3 If I weren't/wasn't (so) busy at college, I'd go on holiday.
4 If it had a bigger memory, I'd buy it.
5 I wouldn't buy it if I were/was you.
6 We'll miss the train if he doesn't arrive soon.

172

3 which crashed into mine was green
4 's the newspaper which was on the table
5 which was left on the bus yesterday belongs to
6 spoke to an assistant who had long, dark hair
7 writes books which are translated into many languages
8 who went to last night's concert enjoyed it

173

2 worked in was called 'Bangles'
3 was watching on TV were playing in a river
4 of the friends Sally stayed with
5 Kate went on holiday with live in the same street
6 I'm reading was written over 300 years ago
7 you were waiting for arrive
8 man Fiona's playing tennis with

174

2 who/that wrote over 100 books
3 (which/that) we went to see last week
4 (who/that) I told you about
5 (which/that) she started
6 which/that gave me the money to study in America
7 who/that made tennis popular
8 who/that had six wives

175

2 at midnight
3 on 22 November 1963
4 at night
5 in winter
6 at 6.30 am
7 in 1920
8 at the weekend
9 on Thursday morning

176

2 before
3 In
4 at
5 in
6 After/In
7 From
8 to/until
9 In
10 after
11 in
12 on
13 in
14 in
15 Since
16 for

177

2 to/until
3 During
4 After
5 while
6 for
7 before
8 since
9 until
12 on
13 After
14 in
15 from
16 to/until
17 until
18 at
19 for
20 At
21 while
22 Before
23 until
24 since
25 In
26 At

(Use the paragraphs about Jess Brewer to help you with your answer)

178

2 It's on the left, on the top shelf, between the pasta and the bread.
3 They're on the right, on the bottom shelf, opposite the nuts.
4 It's on the right, on the middle shelf, next to the cola.
5 It's on the right, on the top shelf, above the cola.
6 They're below the cola, on the bottom shelf, in the middle, between the biscuits and the chocolate.

Example answers:

7 It's on the right, on the top shelf, opposite the bread.
8 It's on the left, on the middle shelf, in the middle, between the sugar and the eggs.

179

2 at
3 in
4 at
5 to
6 at
7 in
8 at
9 in
10 to
11 to
12 to
13 to
14 –

180

3 past/(a)round
4 along/down
5 (a)round
6 under
7 on/onto
8 on
9 off
10 out of
11 through
12 across
13 into
14 over

181

2 are different from the ones/apples you bought yesterday
3 'm not interested in rugby
4 'm fed up with (the) rain
5 is afraid of storms
6 isn't very good at cooking
7 is nice to her elderly neighbours
8 is full of furniture
9 are you angry with Liz?

182

2 about/for not writing
3 of/about leaving
4 in selling
5 with saying
6 of being
7 at selling

183

2 to
3 about
4 to
5 at
6 –
7 for
8 for
9 to
10 with
11 at
12 for
13 to

184

2 up … off … away/off
3 off/away … back
4 down
5 over … on
6 up … on … up
7 down … in

185

2 switch / turn the light on *or* switch / turn on the light
3 Put your glasses on
4 give it / the money back (to you) *or* give (you) back the money
5 pick it / the magazine up *or* pick up the magazine
6 turn it / your music / the music / down *or* turn down your/the music
7 turn it off
8 throw them away/out

Thanks

The authors would like to thank Alison Sharpe and Jessica Roberts of Cambridge University Press for advice and support, and Liz Driscoll for her helpful suggestions and great editing. Also, everyone at Kamae for their creative design work.

Photo Acknowledgements
The publishers are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce copyright photographs and material:

Key: l = left, c = centre, r = right, t = top, b = bottom

Alamy Images/©Tibor Bognar for p 11; Art Directors & TRIP for p 108; Corbis/©John Springer Collection for p 20, /©Royalty Free for p 29, /©Bill Varie for p 48, /©Hans Strand for p 85, /©Goegel/Zefa for p 93; Getty Images for pp 7(t), 7(b), 32, 74, 99; Photolibrary/©The Travel Library Ltd for p 9; Punchstock/©PhotoAlto for p 8; Rex Features for pp 35, 43, 49.

Picture Research by Hilary Luckcock.

Essential Grammar in Use Supplementary Exercises

With answers · New Edition

A thoroughly updated and revised new edition to accompany *Essential Grammar in Use Third Edition*. The book contains a wealth of additional exercises which provide students with extra practice of the grammar they have studied. Suitable for class work or for self-study, the exercises offer excellent revision, consolidation and extension opportunities.

This new edition:

- provides contrastive practice of the grammar areas covered in *Essential Grammar in Use Third Edition*
- has a wide variety of exercise types, including many based on different kinds of texts, for added interest
- is clearly cross-referenced to *Essential Grammar in Use Third Edition* but is flexible enough to be used independently
- contains a complete key, making it an ideal self-study practice book
- has a fresh new design and is attractively illustrated.

Also available: **Essential Grammar in Use** Third Edition with answers
Cambridge Essential English Dictionary

in Use

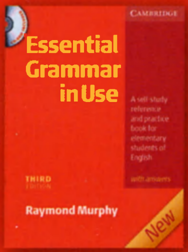
CAMBRIDGE
Essential Grammar in Use
THIRD EDITION
Raymond Murphy
New

ISBN 978-0-521-67543-7

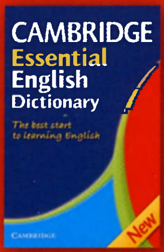
CAMBRIDGE
Essential English Dictionary
The best start to learning English
New

ISBN 978-0-521-00537-1

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org
ISBN 978-0-521-67542-0
9 780521 675420

CAMBRIDGE

English Collocations in Use

Advanced

How words work together for fluent and natural English

Self-study and classroom use

Felicity O'Dell
Michael McCarthy

English Collocations in Use

Advanced

How words
work together
for fluent and
natural English

Self-study and
classroom use

Felicity O'Dell
Michael McCarthy

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town, Singapore, São Paulo, Delhi

Cambridge University Press
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9780521707800

© Cambridge University Press 2008

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2008

Printed in Italy by L.E.G.O. S.p.A., Lavis (TN)

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-0-521-70780-0 Paperback

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or
accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in
this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is,
or will remain, accurate or appropriate.

Contents

Acknowledgements 3
Using this book 4

Learning about collocations

1 Introducing collocations
2 Strong, fixed and weak collocations
3 Grammatical categories of collocation
4 Using your dictionary and other resources
5 Finding and working on collocations in texts
6 Register

Varieties of collocations

7	Metaphor	*foot the bill, heavy burden, run into trouble*
8	Intensifying and softening adverbs	*deeply offensive, spotlessly clean, wildly inaccurate*
9	*Make* and verbs that mean *make*	*make a contribution, make a habit of, turn in a profit*
10	Communicating	*generally speaking, talk business, get a message across*
11	Collocations with phrasal verbs	*take up office, work up an appetite, see off an intruder*

Topics: work and study

12	Working life	*make a living, take up a post, move up the ladder*
13	New employment	*fit the job description, land a new job, menial tasks*
14	Thoughts and ideas	*bear in mind, widespread belief, jump to conclusions*
15	Business reports	*fierce competition, stimulate growth, hike in prices*
16	Customer services	*fit for purpose, kick up a fuss, grounds for complaint*
17	Student life	*gifted child, mature student, thirst for knowledge*
18	Writing essays, assignments and reports	*working hypothesis, confront issues, critical analysis*

Topics: leisure and lifestyle

19	Social life	*call for a celebration, social whirl, play host to*
20	Talking	*juicy gossip, broach the subject, opening gambit*
21	News	*declare independence, reach agreement, bow to pressure*
22	Current affairs	*refuse point-blank, decline to comment, gauge reaction*
23	Festivals and celebrations	*date back to, movable feast, propose a toast*
24	Advertisements and fashion	*set the trend, fashion victim, flawless complexion*
25	Traffic and driving	*lengthy delays, grind the gears, bear left*
26	Travel and adventure	*get itchy feet, off the beaten track, leg of the journey*
27	Sport	*keep in shape, reach fever pitch, score an own goal*
28	Plans and decisions	*toy with an idea, tentative suggestion, deciding factor*
29	Film and book reviews	*star-studded cast, glowing reviews, hold one's attention*

Topics: the modern world

30 Regulations and authority	*minimise danger, grant permission, faceless bureaucrats*
31 The environment	*dump waste, searing heat, offset carbon emissions*
32 Town and country life	*back of beyond, rural idyll, urban regeneration*
33 Personal finance	*clear one's debts, agreed credit limit, identity theft*
34 The economy	*curb inflation, safeguard one's interests, plummeting profits*
35 Social issues	*antisocial behaviour, dysfunctional family, unfit for human habitation*
36 Science and technology	*harness technology, cutting edge design, wireless hotspots*
37 Health and medicine	*build up resistance, adverse reaction, shake off a cold*
38 Criminal justice	*custodial sentences, beyond reasonable doubt, trumped-up charges*
39 War and peace	*deploy troops, pre-emptive strike, collateral damage*

Topics: people

40 Friendship	*lifelong friends, platonic relationship, heal the rift*
41 Youth and age	*child prodigy, go through a midlife crisis, senior moment*
42 Celebrities and heroes	*go into rehab, kiss and tell, heap praise on*
43 Criticising people	*bone idle, poison the atmosphere, nasty piece of work*
44 References	*act as a referee, accumulate experience, financial acumen*
45 Appearance and personality	*boundless energy, stubborn streak, act one's age*

Basic concepts

46 Time and space	*cramped conditions, waste of space, go down in history*
47 Sound	*husky voice, incessant noise, let out a cry*
48 Making things easier	*viable options, simplicity itself, take the easy way out*
49 Difficulty	*severe blow, hinder progress, encounter difficulties*
50 Quantity and size	*finite number, endless supply, unknown quantity*
51 Change	*sweeping changes, would make a change, sudden shift*

Functions

52 Stopping and starting	*bring a halt to, close off a street, dispel rumours*
53 Cause and effect	*root cause, provoke an outcry, dire consequences*
54 Describing groups and amounts	*swarm of bees, flurry of activity, stroke of genius*
55 Comparing and contrasting	*bear little resemblance to, polar opposites, draw a comparison between*
56 Making an effort	*give it one's best shot, abortive attempt, worth a try*
57 Social English	*not lose any sleep, to be brutally honest, be on the go*
58 Discussing issues	*make a commitment, give a straight answer, miss the point*
59 Negative situations and feelings	*nasty shock, take exception to, suffer at the hands of*
60 Positive situations and feelings	*sense of achievement, state of euphoria, derive pleasure from*

Key 126
Index 162

Acknowledgements

The authors wish above all to thank their editors at Cambridge University Press, especially Caroline Thiriau and Frances Disken whose expertise and unfailing guidance and encouragement have supported the project from beginning to end. We also thank Alyson Maskell for all her professional skills in steering the book through its final stages. Linda Matthews, too, deserves our thanks for organising the production schedules for the book.

We must also thank the Corpus team at Cambridge University Press for their help in providing lists of frequent collocation errors made by learners taking advanced exams. Special thanks also must go to Liz Walter for her invaluable feedback and suggestions while we were compiling the lists of collocations.

Also, as always, we thank our domestic partners for their patience and support during the writing of this book.

We have also received invaluable feedback from both students and teachers. Their comments have had a great influence on the final manuscript and we are very grateful to them. In particular, we would like to thank the following teachers from all over the world who have reviewed the material throughout its development:

Garan Holcombe, UK
Terry Nelson, Korea
Brendan O'Se, Ireland
Paul Pauwels, Belgium
Artur Polit, UK
Mark Tondeur, UK

Produced by Kamae Design, Oxford

Illustrations by Kathy Baxendale, Jo Blake, Robert Calow, David Mostyn and Sam Thompson

Using this book

What is a collocation?

Collocation means a natural combination of words; it refers to the way English words are closely associated with each other. For example, *pay* and *attention* go together, as do *commit* and *crime*; *blond* goes with *hair* and *heavy* with *rain*.

Why learn collocations?

You need to learn collocations because they will help you to speak and write English in a more natural and accurate way. People will probably understand what you mean if you talk about *making a crime* or say *there was very hard rain this morning*, but your language will sound unnatural and might perhaps confuse. Did you mean that there was a lot of rain or perhaps that there was a hailstorm?

Learning collocations will also help you to increase your range of English vocabulary. For example, you'll find it easier to avoid words like *very* or *nice* or *beautiful* or *get* by choosing a word that fits the context better and has a more precise meaning. This is particularly useful if you are taking a written exam in English and want to make a good impression on the examiners. In advanced level exams, marks are often specifically awarded for the appropriate handling of collocation.

At an advanced level an appreciation of collocation can also be helpful in terms of appreciating other writers' use of language. Skilled users of the language may choose to create effects by varying the normal patterns of collocation, with the aim of either startling or amusing their audience. This technique is particularly popular with poets, journalists and advertisers. From an appreciation of the way in which creative writers play with language, you may then even want to move on to use words in more original ways yourself. You are more likely to be able to do this effectively if you have assimilated the standard patterns of language use presented in this book.

How were the collocations in this book selected?

The collocations presented in this book were all selected from those identified as significant by the CANCODE corpus of spoken English, developed at the University of Nottingham in association with Cambridge University Press, and the *Cambridge International Corpus* of written and spoken English. We also made extensive use of the *Cambridge Learner Corpus*, a corpus of student language which showed us what kind of collocation errors learners tend to make.

These corpora show that there are many thousands of collocations in English. So how could we select which ones would be most useful for you to work on in this book?

Firstly, of course, we wanted to choose ones that you might want to use in your own written and spoken English. So, in the unit *Health and medicine* we include, for example, **shake off a cold** and **respond well to treatment** but not **grumbling appendix**, which is a strong collocation, but one which – we hope – most of you will not feel the need for.

Secondly, we decided it would be most useful for you if we focused on those collocations which are not immediately obvious. **A pretty girl**, **a modern car** or **to buy a ticket** are all collocations, but they are combinations which you can easily understand and produce yourself without any problems. So we deal here with less obvious word combinations, for instance, **flatly contradict** (not ~~strongly~~ contradict) and **bitter enemies** (not ~~serious~~ enemies).

Some of you may have already used our *English Collocations in Use Intermediate*. In general, we have tried to avoid focusing on collocations that we dealt with in that book. The one exception is with collocations that the *Cambridge Learner Corpus* highlighted as causing frequent problems for students, even in advanced level exams. We felt that it would be useful to draw attention to such collocations again, even if we had dealt with them previously.

Idioms can be seen as one type of collocation. We deal with them separately in *English Idioms in Use*, and so do not focus on them here.

How is the book organised?

The book has 60 two-page units. The left-hand page presents the collocations that are focused on in the unit. You will usually find examples of collocations in typical contexts with, where appropriate, any special notes about their meaning and their usage. The right-hand page checks that you have understood the information on the left-hand page by giving you a series of exercises that practise the material just presented.

The units are organised into different sections. First we start with important information relating to learning about collocations in general. Then there is a section focusing on different types of collocation. The rest of the book deals with collocations that relate to particular topics such as *Student life* and *Film and book reviews*, concepts such as *Sound* or *Difficulty* and functions such as *Cause and effect* or *Comparing and contrasting*.

The book has a key to all the exercises and an index which lists all the collocations we deal with, and indicates the units where they can be found.

How should I use this book?

It is strongly recommended that you work through the six introductory units first, so that you become familiar with the nature of collocations and with how best to study them. After that, you may work on the units in any order that suits you.

What else do I need in order to work with this book?

You need a notebook or file in which you can write down the collocations that you study in this book, as well as any others that you come across elsewhere.

You also need to have access to a good dictionary. At this level we strongly recommend the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary* as this gives exactly the kind of information that you need to have about collocations. It does this both through the examples provided for each word entry and through special collocations boxes or mini-panels. Your teacher, however, may also be able to recommend other dictionaries that you will find useful. If you have access to the Internet, you will also find this a useful source of information about language use and we occasionally suggest possible activities using the web.

So, a study of collocation is **highly recommended** (*Unit 8*) if you want to impress people with your natural and accurate use of language and to **gain more marks** (*Unit 1*) in English exams. Above all, we **sincerely hope** (*Unit 57*) both that this book will help you **acquire the knowledge** (*Unit 17*) you need about English collocations and also that you will **thoroughly enjoy** (*Unit 8*) working through the units in *English Collocations in Use Advanced*.

1 Introducing collocations

A What are collocations?

A collocation is a combination of two or more words which frequently occur together. If someone says, 'She's got *yellow hair*', they would probably be understood, but it is not what would ordinarily be said in English. We'd say, 'She's got **blond hair**'. In other words, *yellow* doesn't collocate with *hair* in everyday English. *Yellow* collocates with, say, *flowers* or *paint*.

Collocations are not just a matter of how adjectives combine with nouns. They can refer to any kind of typical word combination, for example verb + noun (e.g. **arouse someone's interest, lead a seminar**), adverb + adjective (e.g. **fundamentally different**), adverb + verb (e.g. **flatly contradict**), noun + noun (e.g. **a lick of paint, a team of experts, words of wisdom**). There is much more about different grammatical types of collocation in Unit 3.

Phrasal verbs (e.g. *come up with, run up, adhere to*) and compound nouns (e.g. *economy drive, stock market*) are sometimes described as types of collocations. However, in this book we consider them as individual lexical items and so include them here only in combination with something else, e.g. **come up with a suggestion, run up a bill, adhere to your principles, go on an economy drive, play the stock market.**

It can be difficult for learners of English to know which words collocate, as natural collocations are not always logical or guessable. There is, for example, no obvious reason why we say **making friends** rather than *~~getting~~ friends* or **heavy rain,** not *~~strong~~ rain.*

Learners also need to know when specific collocations are appropriate. This is usually referred to by linguists as knowing which register to use. **Alight from a bus** is a formal collocation used in notices and other official contexts. In everyday situations we would, of course, always talk about **getting off a bus.** There is more about register and collocation in Unit 6.

B Why is it important to learn collocations?

An appreciation of collocation will help you to:

- use the words you know more accurately
  In other words, you'll **make** (NOT ~~do~~) fewer **mistakes.**
- sound more natural when you speak and write
  By saying, for example, **of great importance,** rather than *of big* or *high importance*, you won't just be understood, you will – quite rightly – sound like a fluent user of English.
- vary your speech and, probably more importantly, your writing
  Instead of repeating everyday words like *very, good* or *nice*, you will be able to exploit a wider range of language. You would gain more marks in an exam, for instance, for writing *We had a blissfully happy holiday in a picturesque little village surrounded by spectacular mountains* than for *We had a very happy holiday in a nice little village surrounded by beautiful mountains*, even though both sentences are perfectly correct.
- understand when a skilful writer departs from normal patterns of collocation
  A journalist, poet, advertiser or other inventive user of language often creates an effect by not choosing the expected collocation. For example, a travel article about the Italian capital might be entitled *No place like Rome*, a reference to the popular expression **There's no place like home.**

Exercises

1.1 **Match the two parts of these collocations.**

1 adhere to
2 arouse
3 blond
4 come up with
5 flatly
6 fundamentally
7 go on
8 heavy
9 lead
10 a lick
11 play
12 words

rain
different
of wisdom
your principles
an economy drive
a seminar
someone's interest
contradict
hair
the stock market
of paint
a suggestion

1.2 **Correct the underlined collocation errors with words from B. Be careful, you will find the words in the *text*, not in the examples.**

1 Exam candidates often make faults in their use of verbs like *do*, *make*, *go* and *get*.
2 Try to use a longer range of language when you write.
3 Exam candidates who use collocations well gather better marks.
4 You have to know what normal collocation patterns are before you can lose them.
5 The writer used colloquial language to form an effect.

1.3 **Look at these sentences from a hotel brochure. Improve the style by replacing the words in italics with the word in brackets that forms the best collocation. (Use each word only once.)**

1 Our new family hotel is set in a *nice* location and all the rooms have *nice* furnishings and *nice* views over the surrounding countryside. (stylish / secluded / breathtaking)
2 Visitors will enjoy the *good* atmosphere in either of our *good* dining rooms, both serving *good* food to both residents and non-residents. (delicious / relaxing / spacious)
3 We organise tours to *beautiful* surrounding villages where you'll have the opportunity to take some *beautiful* photographs and sample the *beautiful* local cuisine. (mouth-watering / picturesque / stunning)

1.4 **Write F (formal), I (informal) or N (neutral) in the brackets at the end of each sentence. In each pair of sentences, there is one neutral sentence and one formal or informal sentence. Underline the collocations that are noticeably formal or informal.**

1 a Passengers must not alight from the bus while it is in motion. ( )
  b Passengers must not get off the bus while it is moving. ( )
2 a Let's grab a bite before we get down to work. ( )
  b Let's have something to eat before we start work. ( )
3 a SFTS has the right to bring the agreement to an end with three months' notice. ( )
  b SFTS reserves the right to terminate the agreement with three months' notice. ( )
4 a She thinks her boyfriend is planning to pop the question tonight. ( )
  b She thinks her boyfriend is planning to ask her to marry him tonight. ( )

1.5 **Correct the four collocation errors in this paragraph.**

The yellow-haired boy said he had joined the English class to get some new friends. He also said that he wanted to learn about collocations because it would be of big importance in helping him to do fewer mistakes when writing in English.

2 Strong, fixed and weak collocations

A Strong collocations

A strong collocation is one in which the words are very closely associated with each other. For example, the adjective **mitigating** almost always collocates with **circumstances** or **factors**; it rarely collocates with any other word. *Although she was found guilty, the jury felt there were **mitigating circumstances**.* [factors or circumstances that lessen the blame]
Here are some other examples of strong collocations.

collocation	*comment*
Inclement weather was expected.	(very formal) = unpleasant weather *Inclement* collocates almost exclusively with *weather*.
She has **auburn hair**.	*Auburn* only collocates with words connected with hair (e.g. *curls, tresses, locks*).
I felt **deliriously happy**.	= extremely happy Strongly associated with *happy*. Not used with *glad, content, sad*, etc.
The chairperson **adjourned the meeting**.	= have a pause or rest during a meeting/trial *Adjourn* is very strongly associated with *meeting* and *trial*.

B Fixed collocations

Fixed collocations are collocations so strong that they cannot be changed in any way. For example, you can say *I was walking **to and fro*** (meaning I was walking in one direction and then in the opposite direction, a repeated number of times). No other words can replace *to* or *fro* or *and* in this collocation. It is completely fixed. The meaning of some fixed collocations cannot be guessed from the individual words. These collocations are called idioms and are focused on in the book *English Idioms in Use*.

C Weak collocations

Weak collocations are made up of words that collocate with a wide range of other words. For example, you can say you are **in broad agreement** with someone [generally in agreement with them]. However, *broad* can also be used with a number of other words – **a broad avenue, a broad smile, broad shoulders, a broad accent** [a strong accent], **a broad hint** [a strong hint] and so on. These are weak collocations, in the sense that *broad* collocates with **a broad range** of different nouns.

Strong collocations and weak collocations form a continuum, with stronger ones at one end and weaker ones at the other. Most collocations lie somewhere between the two. For example, the (formal) adjective *picturesque* collocates with *village*, *location* and *town*, and so appears near the middle of the continuum.

stronger ← ——————————————————————————— → weaker

inclement weather	*picturesque village* *picturesque location*	*broad hint* *broad accent* *broad smile*

D Types of collocations in this book

The collocations in this book are all frequently used in modern English. We used a corpus (a database of language) to check this. We have also selected the collocations which will be useful to you as an advanced learner. We pay most attention to those that are not predictable. *A broad avenue*, for example, would be predicted by any student who knows *broad* and *avenue*. However, the use of *broad* to mean *strong* as in **a broad accent** is more difficult to predict.

Exercises

2.1 Complete the collocations using the words in the box. You will need to use some words more than once.

adjourn auburn broad deliriously inclement mitigating picturesque

1 a .... accent
2 in .... agreement
3 .... circumstances
4 .... factors
5 .... hair
6 .... happy
7 a .... smile
8 a .... location
9 .... a meeting
10 a .... town
11 .... a trial
12 .... weather

2.2 Rewrite each sentence using a collocation from 2.1.

1 Melissa has quite a strong Scottish accent.
2 Bad weather led to the cancellation of the President's garden party.
3 We were all very happy when we heard we'd won the award.
4 Their new home was in a very pretty location.
5 Because there were circumstances that made the theft less serious, the judge let him off with a warning.
6 I think we should stop the meeting now and continue it tomorrow.
7 She had a big smile on her face when she arrived.
8 She has lovely reddish-brown hair.
9 I think we're generally in agreement as to what should be done.

2.3 Think of as many collocations as you can for each word. Then look in a dictionary for other suitable words. Write W (weak) or S (strong) next to each group depending on how many words you found.

1 extremely ....
2 .... an effort
3 cancel ....
4 deliver ....
5 .... a living

2.4 How useful do you think the collocations you have worked on in 2.2 and 2.3 are for you personally? Choose which collocations are most important to you personally and make sentences with them.

FOLLOW UP

Choose an English-language text that you have worked on recently. Underline five collocations in it. Are these collocations weak, strong or fixed?

3 Grammatical categories of collocation

A Verb + noun

verb	*noun*	*example*	*meaning of verb*
draw up	a list a contract	Our lawyer **drew up a contract** for us to sign.	prepare something, usually official, in writing
pass up	a chance an opportunity	I didn't want to **pass up the chance** of seeing Hong Kong, so I agreed to go on the trip.	fail to take advantage of
withstand	pressure the impact	The police officer's vest **can withstand the impact** of a bullet.	bear

B Noun + verb

noun	*verb*	*example*
opportunity	arise	An **opportunity arose** for me to work in China, so I went and spent a year there.
standards	slip	People feel educational **standards slipped** when the government cut finances.

C Noun + noun

- Noun + noun collocations used to describe groups or sets:
  There's been **a spate of attacks/thefts** in our area recently. [unusually large number happening in close succession]
  The minister had to put up with **a barrage of questions/insults** from the angry audience. [unusually large number, happening at the same time]
- Noun + noun collocations used with uncountable nouns:
  By **a stroke of luck** I found my keys in the rubbish bin! [sudden, unexpected piece of luck]
  She gave me **a snippet of information** which is top secret. [small piece of information]

D Adjective + noun

This is not an **idle threat**; I will call the police if this happens again! [simply a threat]
He waited in the **vain hope** that the Minister would meet him. [unlikely to be fulfilled hope]
There is **mounting concern/criticism/fury** over the decision. [growing concern etc.]
The **simple/plain truth** is that no one was aware of the problem.

E Adverb + adjective

The article provides an **intensely personal** account of the writer's relationship with his sons.
Joe's sister was a **stunningly attractive** woman.

F Verb + adverb or prepositional phrase

The teenager tried to persuade his mother that he was innocent but he **failed miserably**.
I don't like to travel with my brother because he **drives recklessly**. [wildly, without care]
As soon as the singer came on stage she **burst into song**.
If your dog starts to **foam at the mouth**, you should take it to the vet immediately.

G More complex collocations

Mary was looking forward to retiring and **taking it easy for a while**.
It's time you **put the past behind you** and started focusing on the future.

Exercises

3.1 Match a word from each box to form collocations. Not all the collocations appear on the opposite page, so use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

A disease evidence opportunity smoke standards teeth wind withstand

B arises chatter howls pressure rises slip spreads suggests

1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

3.2 Complete each sentence using a collocation from 3.1 in the appropriate form.

1 The scientific .... human beings first emerged in Africa.
2 The .... was .... all night and it was raining, so I couldn't sleep.
3 The machine has to be made of materials that can .... a lot of ....
4 Oh, no! There's a fire. Look at the .... from those buildings.
5 It was so cold I couldn't stop my .... from ....
6 Our survey shows that parents believe .... have .... at the school.
7 You must accompany Bob on one of his business trips to Asia, if the .... ever ....
8 An alarming new .... is .... among cattle in the south of the country.

3.3 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using a collocation from the opposite page.

1 I don't want to say no to the chance of meeting such a famous person.
2 We'll have to write a contract before you start work, as it's a new position.
3 You're working too hard. You should try to relax for a short period of time.
4 This new bullet-proof car can take the impact of a rocket-propelled grenade.
5 Do you have any interesting little bits of information about our new boss to tell us?
6 The Minister faced a large number of questions from reporters.
7 I had some luck last week. The police found my stolen wallet and nothing was missing.
8 There's been a number of violent attacks in the area recently.
9 After her divorce Mandy was determined to forget the past and build a new life.

3.4 Answer these questions.

1 Who do you think is the most stunningly attractive person you have ever seen?
2 What should you do if you are in a car with someone who is driving recklessly?
3 Do you prefer walking in the country if there is a gentle breeze or a strong wind?
4 Would you write your most intensely personal thoughts and feelings in your diary?

3.5 Choose the correct collocation.

1 He said he would throw us out, but it was just a(n) *vain / idle / lazy* threat.
2 They rushed the victim to hospital, in the *idle / simple / vain* hope of saving her life.
3 The government is encountering *mounting / climbing / rising* criticism of its policies.
4 There is *raising / mounting / vain* concern across the world about climate change.
5 The horse was *fuming / foaming / fainting* at the mouth, so we called the vet.
6 Suddenly, without warning, Marjorie *busted / bustled / burst* into song.
7 The *right / straight / plain* truth is that I hate my job.
8 I tried to persuade her but I'm afraid I failed *desperately / miserably / wholeheartedly*.

4 Using your dictionary and other resources

A Using dictionaries

Good modern learners' dictionaries include example sentences which make a point of illustrating each word's most frequent collocations. Enormous databases of language, known as corpora, are used to analyse speech and text to identify which words collocate most frequently. Look up the word *abject* in the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary* and you will find the entry above. Notice how frequent collocations are used in the example sentences.

abject /ˈæb.dʒekt/ ***adjective*** FORMAL **EXTREME➲ 1 abject misery/poverty/terror, etc.** when someone is extremely unhappy, poor, frightened, etc: *They live in abject poverty.* ○ *This policy has turned out to be an abject failure.* **NOT PROUD➲ 2** showing no PRIDE or respect for yourself: *an abject **apology*** ○ *He is almost abject in his respect for his boss.* ● **abjectly** /ˈæb.dʒekt.li/ ***adverb***

Remember that dictionaries today are not only available on paper; you can also access them on CD-ROM and online. These can be particularly helpful when you are exploring collocations, as they make it quick and easy to search for items in different ways and to jump from one entry to another. Online dictionaries give you easy access to an enormous amount of information relating to meaning, collocation and register, for which there is not enough space in a book. In whatever form, a dictionary is an invaluable tool for developing your knowledge of collocation.

B Using other resources

The Internet enables you to explore collocations in other ways too. A search engine can be very helpful. Although it is almost impossible to come up with a word combination that a search engine will be unable to find examples of, the number of results can give you a good idea of whether a combination is a true collocation or not. For example, compare the results below for "abject failure" and "abject success". (You need to use inverted commas so that the search covers only instances where the words occur consecutively.)

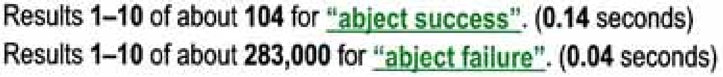

Results **1–10** of about **104** for "abject success". (**0.14** seconds)

Results **1–10** of about **283,000** for "abject failure". (**0.04** seconds)

To be sure that a word combination is a normal collocation you would expect a search engine to find thousands of instances of it.

It is often useful to consult a corpus to find out how words are commonly used. Here is an example of how a corpus presents information:

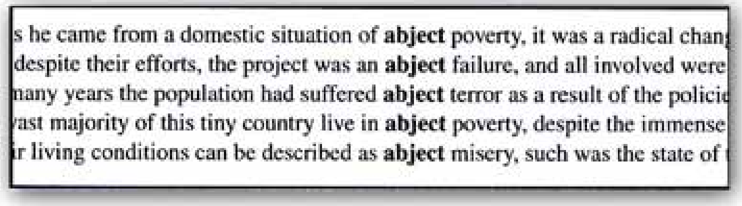

s he came from a domestic situation of **abject** poverty, it was a radical chan
despite their efforts, the project was an **abject** failure, and all involved were
nany years the population had suffered **abject** terror as a result of the polici
ast majority of this tiny country live in **abject** poverty, despite the immense
r living conditions can be described as **abject** misery, such was the state of

The site www.webcorp.org.uk lets you use the web as a corpus. It will search the web for words of your choice and display samples of text containing those words. You can make various choices about how you wish the web to be searched and how you would like the information to be presented to you.

The problem with using the web as a corpus is, of course, that the Internet includes a certain amount of language that is not accurate or standard. You may prefer to do a search of the British National Corpus at www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk which is a real corpus, so should produce a more accurate result. Both these sites should prove useful resources if you want to do your own in-depth investigation of specific collocations.

Exercises

4.1 **Use your dictionary (book, CD-ROM or online version) to find three collocations for each of these words.**

1 cast (as verb with basic meaning of throw) ……
2 application ……
3 utter (as adjective) ……
4 absolutely ……
5 release (as verb) ……

4.2 **Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using the word in brackets. Use a dictionary to help you.**

1 His opponent made critical and damaging remarks about his honesty. (ASPERSIONS)
2 The point you're making is quite unrelated to our topic. (RELEVANCE)
3 The speaker praised Janice's contribution to the project. (TRIBUTE)
4 As soon as she got home Kay started working. (SET)
5 His rudeness made us all fall silent. (RENDERED)
6 It is uncertain how many workers will be affected by the changes. (INDETERMINATE)
7 The marketing campaign was better than we had expected. (EXCEEDED)
8 I'm slightly unsure about these sales figures. (NIGGLING)

4.3 **Type these phrases into a search engine. Don't forget to use inverted commas. How many results do you get for each? What does this suggest about whether these phrases are collocations or not?**

cast a concert   cast a groan   cast a play   cast a smile

4.4 **Go to www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk. Type in the words below. Note the number of times the words appear in the same collocations as in the sentences in 4.2. Do they often collocate with any other words?**

aspersions   indeterminate   niggling   tribute

4.5 **a) Answer these questions.**

1 What field do you work in, or plan to work in?
2 What do you enjoy doing at the weekend?
3 What is, or was, your favourite subject at school or college?
4 How did you spend your last holiday?
5 What did you have to eat yesterday?
6 What was the last book you read?

b) Now use a dictionary to find three collocations that relate to each of your answers to 1–6.

Find the collocations by looking up key words relating to your answer. For example, if your answer to question 1 was *medicine*, you could look up key words such as *medication*, *ill* and *surgical* to find such collocations as *to prescribe medication*, *terminally ill*, *a surgical procedure*.

c) Now write example sentences using the collocations you have found.

TIP Be careful when using corpora to check or find new collocations. Corpora include many types of text, some of which are technical. Check the sources of the texts where the collocations appear to see if the collocations are used in a variety of situations.

5 Finding and working on collocations in texts

A Finding collocations

You can expand your collocation vocabulary by training yourself to notice collocations whenever you read. Note the collocations in these three examples of texts from different sources – a newspaper feature, a film review and a website for London tourists.

As a **newly qualified** teacher at a comprehensive school in Wiltshire, every day Joe **faces the challenge** of **gaining the respect** of a class of 15-year-olds. Joe, 26, admits it is a **tough challenge** but thinks he is **winning the battle**. Joe, who teaches English and media studies and coaches a school football team, will **qualify fully** in July, **pending the results**[1] of his lesson assessments. With this **milestone passed**[2], and the increased financial stability it will bring, Joe will **turn his thoughts to** buying his first home.

[1] (formal) as long as he achieves successful results

[2] major life event behind him

★★★ *The Interpreter*

She has a **gift for languages**, which brings her to the UN. She wants to **make a difference**. She is idealistic in that single-minded, dedicated manner associated with freedom fighters. Silvia (Nicole Kidman) remains an enigma. When Tobin Keller (Sean Penn) begins to investigate her, he is faced with a blank sheet. She is beautiful, blonde, lissom and lithe. She lives alone, has no lover, rides a Vespa throughout New York and works all day, **providing simultaneous translation** for delegates. She has an odd accent, which, like everything else about her, is **difficult to pin down**[3].

[3] hard to fix or place

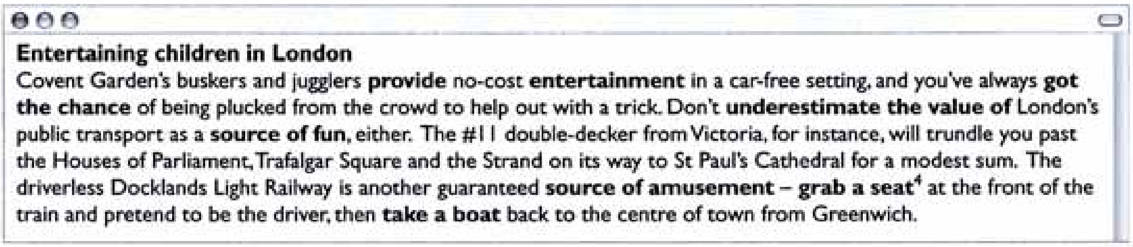

Entertaining children in London

Covent Garden's buskers and jugglers **provide** no-cost **entertainment** in a car-free setting, and you've always **got the chance** of being plucked from the crowd to help out with a trick. Don't **underestimate the value of** London's public transport as a **source of fun**, either. The #11 double-decker from Victoria, for instance, will trundle you past the Houses of Parliament, Trafalgar Square and the Strand on its way to St Paul's Cathedral for a modest sum. The driverless Docklands Light Railway is another guaranteed **source of amusement** – **grab a seat**[4] at the front of the train and pretend to be the driver, then **take a boat** back to the centre of town from Greenwich.

[4] (informal) take a seat

Remember you will also hear collocations in conversations, lectures, songs and films. Try to get into the habit of recording any interesting collocations that you notice.

B Recording collocations

When working on collocations in a text, use your dictionary to find more relating to one or both parts of the original collocation. You can record strong collocations effectively in collocation forks:

simultaneous – translation / equation

pending – the outcome / the results / the response

and weak ones in collocation bubbles (because there are so many more of them):

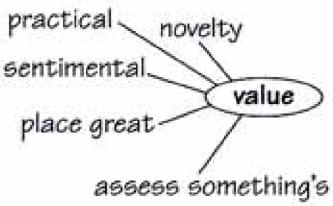

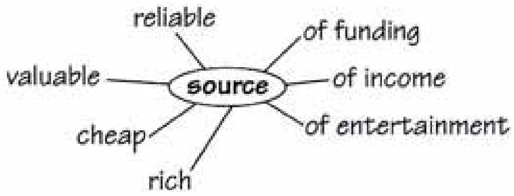

Exercises

5.1 **Complete each sentence using a collocation from A.**

1 Tania has always had a .... so I'm not surprised she wants to study Chinese at university.
2 At high tide the sea covers the causeway and the only way to get to the island is to ....
3 It's very crowded in this café. You .... and I'll get our drinks.
4 Once my exams are over I'll .... planning a holiday.
5 Far more people these days manage to .... against cancer.
6 Most politicians say they enter politics because they want to ....
7 Try not to .... having good friends. Ultimately, friendship is far more important than work.
8 He's got the job – .... a successful .... in his driving test tomorrow.
9 Although they lack experience, ... doctors are often very enthusiastic and passionate about their work.

5.2 **Complete the collocations. The first letters are given to help you. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

to j _ _ _ a _ t _ _ — chance
to p _ _ _ u _ t _ _ — chance
to g _ _ t _ _ — chance
to s _ _ _ _ a — chance
to b _ i _ w _ _ _ a — chance

to f _ _ _ a — challenge
to p _ _ _ a — challenge
a d _ _ _ _ _ — challenge
to r _ _ _ to the — challenge
a s _ _ _ _ _ _ — challenge

5.3 **Check these expressions (a) in a good dictionary and (b) using a search engine. Which two are collocations and which two are not?**

1 learn by head 2 learn by heart 3 lose a chance 4 miss a chance

5.4 **Answer these questions.**

1 Name three milestones in your life that you have already passed.
2 Are you already fully qualifed? If so, as what? If not, when will you be?
3 What are some typical sources of income?
4 What is the toughest challenge you have ever faced?
5 What qualities would be needed by someone providing simultaneous translation?
6 What are some examples of things that have sentimental value for you?

5.5 **Here is one student's plan for work on collocations. Complete the gaps, using a dictionary if necessary. Then tick the ideas you can use yourself.**

- (1) .... an effort to notice collocations in any English text I read.
- (2) .... hold of a good dictionary to check other collocations for words that I want to learn.
- Write down at least three collocations for each new word I want to (3) .... to memory.
- Look back over old homework to see where I have (4) .... mistakes with collocations and (5) .... my best to (6) .... those mistakes in future.
- (7) .... a point of using good collocations when I have to write or speak in English.
- Read and listen to as much English as (8) .... because that will expose me to natural collocations.
- Every week revise the collocations I have (9) .... a note of in my vocabulary file.

6 Register

A What is register?

Our use of language changes according to the situation that we are in. If your close friend hosts a party, you could say, 'Thanks for the party. It was a blast.'(very informal) However, if your boss was the host, you would probably say, 'Thanks for the party. I really enjoyed it.' (neutral) In this example, *neutral* and *very informal* are both examples of register.

The register of most language is neutral (it can be used in any situation). However, register can also be formal, informal, characteristic of a certain professional field (e.g. legal, journalistic or media) or specific to official notices and forms.

Our choice of register depends on **what** we are talking about (business, the news, the neighbours), **who** we are talking to (friends, strangers, figures of authority) and **how** we are talking to them (in a letter, in an email, in public, in private). Study the table below and notice how different words and phrases are used to describe the same situation.

example	*register*	*comment*
The police are **investigating / looking into** the arms deal.	neutral	Either version would not seem out of place in any spoken or written contexts.
The cops are trying to **dig out info about** the arms deal.	informal	Phrasal verbs are often an informal alternative – although some are neutral.
The police are **conducting an investigation into** the arms deal.	formal	Longer words of Latin or Greek origin often indicate more formal language.
Police to **probe** arms deal	neutral, journalistic	*Probe* is typical of newspaper headline style.
The arms deal may be **subject to police investigation**.	formal, legal and official	*Subject to investigation* is typical of a bureaucratic or legal style.

Be careful not to think of formal language as written and informal language as spoken. There is a lot of overlap. For example, markedly formal language is most typical of official or academic writing and official legal or bureaucratic speech. Informal language is typical of conversation, personal letters and emails, and some journalism.

B Formal versus neutral collocations

formal (from official documents)	*neutral* (spoken)
Students must **submit** their **assignments** by 1 May.	'You have to **hand in** your **assignments** by 1 May.'
Students may **request an extension** after **consulting their tutor**.	'You can **ask for an extension** after you've talked to / **had a word with** your tutor.'

C Informal versus neutral collocations

That film was **totally awesome!** (mainly used by teenagers, predominantly US) [neutral equivalent: absolutely amazing/fantastic]
That party was well good! (*Well* used to mean 'very'/'really', mainly by younger speakers.)
I haven't a clue / the foggiest idea what you mean. [neutral equivalent: I have no idea]
We can **grab a snack** before the meeting if you're hungry. [neutral equivalent: have a snack]

TIP Make a note in your notebook if a collocation is very formal or informal in register.

Exercises

6.1 **Write F (formal), I (informal) or N (neutral) in the brackets at the end of each sentence. Underline the collocations which indicate the register. Then rewrite the formal and informal sentences to make them neutral.**

Example: Do not alight from the bus until it stops. (F) *Do not get off the bus until it stops.*

1 I feel dead tired all the time. ( )
2 We were all bored stupid by the poetry reading. ( )
3 Currency exchange offices are located in the arrivals lounge. ( )
4 She conducted a study of single-parent family units. ( )
5 She did her degree in London and found work there in 2001. ( )
6 I just got the latest software so my computer is bang up-to-date. ( )
7 Affix a passport-size photograph to the application form. ( )
8 Jake asked his tutor for an extension to complete his dissertation. ( )

6.2 **Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending. Then label each sentence with the appropriate register from the list below. Underline the collocations which indicate the register.**

Registers: informal conversation (IC) journalism/news (J) entertainment (E)
technical (T) legal (L) notices (N)

1 This is breaking
2 These are the songs that are climbing
3 There are tons of good reasons
4 Visitors must keep to the designated
5 In any such case, customers shall forfeit
6 Fuel consumption may vary
7 I'll give you
8 The Minister will tour Asia in a bid
9 Joss Engold stars in the latest
10 A microchip is a miniaturised
11 Please restrict your use
12 A witness may be asked to

a ring after dinner.
according to model and road conditions.
blockbuster from Star Studios.
news here on Global TV Extra.
electronic circuit.
of the fitness machines to 20 minutes.
to win support for the plan.
the charts this week.
for not studying law.
testify for a second time.
areas at all times.
the right to compensation.

6.3 **Complete this conversation between a doctor and a patient, using the verbs in the box in the appropriate form. The language is quite informal, without technical medical terms.**

come clear do feel get run take write

Doctor: What can I (1)........................ for you, Mr Wilson?
Patient: Well, Doctor, I've been (2) .... a temperature for the last couple of days and I've (3) .... out in a rash on my neck. Do you see? These red spots here.
Doctor: Hmm. Let's (4) .... a look.
Patient: It's very irritating and I have trouble (5) .... off to sleep at night. Then I (6) .... down all day and can't concentrate on my work.
Doctor: Right. I don't think it's anything serious. I'll (7) .... you out a prescription for some lotion which should help to (8) .... up the rash.

6.4 **Look at how the doctor describes the case in his records using more technical language. Choose the correct word from the choice provided. Use a dictionary to help if necessary.**

A patient (1) *presented / represented* this morning with an (2) *elevating / elevated* temperature. He was also (3) *exposing / exhibiting* a neck rash. He further (4) *complained / grumbled* of an (5) *inability / impossibility* to concentrate.

7 Metaphor

When we speak metaphorically, we use words in a non-literal sense. For example, when we say a writer **casts light on a situation**, we mean that the writer helps us understand it more clearly, in the same way that putting a light on in a dark room helps us see more clearly.

A Metaphors based on the body

collocation	*example*	*meaning*
face (up to) the facts	You're never going to run in the Olympics. It's time you **faced (up to) the facts**.	accepted reality
shoulder the blame	Although others were also responsible for the problem, Sue decided to **shoulder the blame**.	take responsibility for something bad
foot the bill	Choose what you like from the menu – the company is **footing the bill**.	paying
head a team	Jo **heads a team** working on crime prevention.	leads a project group
keep someone on their toes	Having three sons under the age of five **keeps** Jana **on her toes**.	makes her stay active and concentrated
have an eye for	Gina **has an eye for** detail, so ask her to check the report.	is good at noticing
go hand in hand with	Unemployment **goes hand in hand with** social unrest.	happens at the same time or as a result of

B Metaphors based on weight

Heavy can be used to mean serious or difficult, as in **heavy responsibility. A heavy burden** can be either something heavy to carry or a difficult responsibility to deal with, while a **heavy book** can be either one that weighs a lot or one with difficult content. A **weighty tome**, however, would only be used to mean a book with difficult content. Similarly in **weighty matters** or **weighty problems**, *weighty* means difficult and serious.

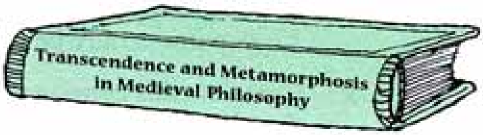
Transcendence and Metamorphosis in Medieval Philosophy

Light, the opposite of *heavy*, can also be used metaphorically to mean carefree or lacking in seriousness. So **light reading** is reading material that is not serious. If you do something with a **light heart**, you feel carefree and happy.

If someone has a **slim chance** of doing something, there is a chance, but it is small. **Fat chance** (very informal) means almost no chance.

C Metaphors based on movement

James did a lot of partying in his final year and **ran into difficulties** with his course. His father was **hopping mad**[1] when he only just managed to get his degree. However, when he left university he **walked straight into a job**[2] in an excellent company. Some people **jumped to the conclusion** that this was because he'd started going out with the Managing Director's daughter. His mother worried that, if their relationship **hit the rocks**[3], he would **run into trouble** at work too.

[1] (informal) extremely angry

[2] got a job very easily

[3] ended (metaphor based on a boat being destroyed on rocks)

Exercises

7.1 **Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using a metaphor from A.**

1 The presidential visit meant no one had time to relax.
2 Rosetta took full responsibility for the failure of the project.
3 I don't think Greg will ever win Rosie's heart; it's time he accepted that.
4 The company had done so well that year that it agreed to pay for a staff night out.
5 I'm glad I'm not in charge of this team.
6 Carola is very good at finding a bargain.

7.2 **Answer these questions about the metaphors on the opposite page.**

1 What usually goes hand in hand with inflation, an increase or a decrease in savings?
2 If a relationship hits the rocks, is it the end or the beginning of that relationship?
3 If you say that someone is hopping mad, do you mean that they are good at athletics or that they are very angry?
4 If you run into difficulties or trouble, does that mean that they happen quickly?
5 Would you be more likely to call a magazine publishing gossip about celebrities light reading or a weighty tome?
6 If you talk about facing the facts, are the facts more likely to be pleasant or unpleasant?

7.3 **Explain the difference in meaning between the sentences in each pair.**

1a Jill walked into a well-paid job in the City.	1b Jill got a well-paid job in the City.
2a Pat is heading the project team.	2b Pat is backing the project team.
3a Dad jumped to the wrong conclusion.	3b Dad came to the wrong conclusion.
4a Rod left the room with a light heart.	4b Rod left the room with a heavy heart.
5a Fat chance I've got of winning!	5b I've got a slim chance of winning.

7.4 **Choose the correct collocation.**

1 Kieran's constant whistling is *riding / getting / driving* me crazy.
2 Sylvia is a first-class designer as she has a good *eye / nose / hand* for detail.
3 You mustn't shoulder the heavy *weight / burden / task* of redecorating the house all by yourself.
4 There is just a *thin / slim / skinny* chance that Marek might pop in today.
5 The committee has some *fat / weighty / heavy* matters to discuss on today's agenda.
6 When the results came out, Marco was thrilled to see his name *footing / facing / heading* the list of successful candidates.

7.5 **Explain what the play on words is based on in each of these headlines.**

1 ATHLETE RUNS INTO TROUBLE

2 DIET PILLS HAVE FAT CHANCE OF SUCCESS

3 NEW DIRECTOR KEEPS ROYAL BALLET ON ITS TOES

4 SHOEWORLD CO. TO FOOT THE BILL

5 NEW LAW MAKES RABBIT OWNERS HOPPING MAD

TIP You may find it useful to draw little pictures in your vocabulary notebook – or imagine them in your mind – to help you remember some collocations.

8 Intensifying and softening adverbs

Adverbs are often used before adjectives and verbs either to strengthen their meaning (intensifying adverbs) or to weaken it (softening adverbs).
Her comments were **deeply offensive.** (intensifier – very/extremely)
Her comments were **slightly offensive.** (softener – a little bit)

A Intensifying adverbs

Notice how intensifying adverbs are used to mean 'extremely' or 'completely' in the sentences below. The expressions marked with * are very informal.

Jane really enjoys doing housework. You should see her flat – it's always **spotlessly clean.**
It was **downright rude** of Antonio to tell Paula that she looked older than her own mother. I hope he feels **thoroughly ashamed.**
It's **blatantly obvious** that Olga is only interested in Richard because he's **stinking rich***.
I wonder what she'll do when she finds out he's **wildly exaggerated** how rich he really is!
I don't know what I was worrying about! The exam turned out to be **dead easy***!
This celebrity website is good fun but most of the information is **wildly inaccurate.**

B Softening adverbs

Note the softening adverbs used in these sentences from newspapers.

The spokesperson said the new insurance scheme was only **slightly different** from the old one. [weak collocation; *slightly* can be used with a wide range of adjectives]
The Chief Executive said he was **mildly surprised** by the public interest in the firm's plans. [*mildly* also collocates with *amusing/ed*, *irritating/ed*, *offensive*]
Alfredo Scaluzzi's new film is **loosely based on** a nineteenth century novel. [*loosely* also collocates with *centred*, *structured*, *related*, *connected*]
Ms Giroa said she regarded reports that she was about to seek a divorce as **faintly ridiculous.** [fairly formal; *faintly* also collocates with *amused*, *surprised*, *patronising*, *absurd*]

C Alternatives to *very*

There are a variety of words that you can use as alternatives to *very* which collocate with most adjectives, for example: *really*, *extremely*, *terribly*, *incredibly* and *awfully*. Other adverbs collocate with certain adjectives and verbs but not with others.

alternatives to very	✓	*NOT*
highly	unlikely, educated, recommended	~~appreciate, influence, interesting~~
strongly	influence	~~appreciate~~
greatly	appreciate, influence	
utterly	absurd, ridiculous	~~sorry, busy, glad, lonely~~
completely/totally/entirely	different, dependent, separate	
thoroughly	enjoy	

ERROR WARNING

Absolutely only collocates with adjectives which have strong meanings, e.g. **absolutely** (NOT ~~very~~) **delighted**, **very** (NOT ~~absolutely~~) **happy**.

Exercises

8.1 **Match a word from each box to form collocations.**

blatantly downright spotlessly
stinking thoroughly wildly

ashamed clean inaccurate
obvious rich rude

8.2 **Complete each sentence using a collocation from 8.1.**

1 He's just bought a 200,000 dollar yacht – he must be .... !
2 I'm amazed you didn't realise she was lying! It was .... to me!
3 It was .... of him not to say hello to the secretary.
4 I've been hoovering and dusting all day, so now my flat is ....
5 Most of the facts were wrong in that news report. It was ....
6 You should be .... of yourself. Your behaviour was appalling!

8.3 **Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using a collocation from the opposite page.**

1 The American writer Mark Twain is famous for commenting that reports of his death had been over-exaggerated.
2 This restaurant is recommended by many different people.
3 The exam was extremely easy; everyone got high marks. (make this informal)
4 The musical *West Side Story* is kind of based on the plot of Shakespeare's play *Romeo and Juliet*. (make this less informal)
5 The idea of the boss singing *Happy Birthday* to me struck me as a little bit ridiculous.
6 The success of the Wimbledon tennis tournament is 100% dependent on the weather. (give two answers)
7 I really enjoyed the days I spent at your lovely house in the country.
8 I was just a little surprised by her decision to quit her job so soon.
9 I was really delighted when they told me I'd got the job.
10 The new model of this camera is a little bit different from the old one.

8.4 **Add intensifying adverbs from the opposite page to these sentences to make the words in bold stronger.**

1 I **appreciate** the fact that you have given me so much of your time.
2 Sometimes Tony says **ridiculous** things.
3 The crossword in today's newspaper is **difficult**. I can't even start it!
4 It's **sweet** of you to offer to help.
5 I found his remarks **offensive**; he should apologise.
6 She leads a **lonely** life in a tiny house on a remote island.
7 We should try to keep the two groups **separate** from each other.
8 She is an **educated** person.
9 I've been **busy** all week.
10 That meal was **expensive**! I'm not eating there again.

8.5 **Are the adverb collocations correct or not? If they are incorrect, correct them using collocations from C opposite.**

1 I thoroughly enjoyed the film.
2 Your help would be strongly appreciated.
3 The song is highly influenced by Brazilian folk rhythms.
4 I find the situation utterly absurd.

TIP Look out for more collocations with these words as you listen and read, and record them in collocation bubbles indicating what they do, and do not collocate with.

9 *Make* and verbs that mean *make*

A Common errors with *make*

The *Cambridge Learner Corpus* shows that some of the most frequent collocation errors made by candidates in advanced English exams relate to the use of *make*. Here are some typical errors and their corrections.

I would like to ~~do/give~~ some suggestions – **make some suggestions**
I think that I could ~~have/give~~ a contribution to the project – **make a contribution**
I expect you to ~~give~~ a formal apology – **make a formal apology**
There is still some way to go and lots of improvements to ~~do~~ – **improvements to make**
Thank you very much for ~~doing~~ these arrangements – **making these arrangements**

Sometimes candidates use *make* where another verb is required. For example:
We're going to ~~make a party~~ on Saturday – **have a party**
Lana ~~made some interesting research~~ into her family roots – **did ... research**

B Other expressions with *make*

It's a good idea to **make a habit of** switching off the lights when you leave a room.
If you always say exactly what you think, you'll **make** a lot of **enemies**.
The team **made** several **attempts** to climb the mountain before they finally succeeded.
I hope that they'll **make a success of** their new restaurant business.
I have to go to a party for a colleague after work but I will try and **make an** early **escape**.
Our research team has **made** an important **discovery** about how whales communicate.
When doing your accounts, try to ensure you **make** all the **calculations** correctly.
If we move the sofa closer to the window, it'll **make room for** the piano.
I first **made his acquaintance** when he moved in next door. [formal: got to know him]
The house we looked at is just what we want and we've decided to **make an offer** on it.
As no one else has any ideas, I'd like to **make a proposal**. [make a formal suggestion]
We must **make a stand against** the casino they propose to build here. [protest about]

C Other verbs that mean *make*

collocation	*example*	*comment*
create a good/bad impression	Wear your grey suit to the interview if you want to **create a good impression**.	slightly more formal than **make an impression**
create a (+ adj.) atmosphere	The lanterns in the garden **create a** romantic **atmosphere**.	more formal than **make for a romantic atmosphere**
stage a protest	The students **staged a protest** against rising tuition fees.	= make a formal protest
lodge a complaint	Several people have **lodged a complaint** about the bank manager's rudeness.	= make a formal complaint
rustle up a meal	It took Sam ten minutes to **rustle up a meal**.	(informal) = make a meal very quickly
run up curtains	This weekend I'm going to **run up** some **curtains** for my new room.	= make quickly using a sewing machine
turn in a profit	This month our company should **turn in a profit** for the first time.	slightly more informal than **make a profit**
coin a phrase	I wonder who **coined the term** 'blogging'.	= invent / make up a new phrase

Exercises

9.1 **Are these sentences correct or incorrect? If they are incorrect, correct them.**

1 Have you any suggestions to make about how to celebrate the school's anniversary?
2 We are planning to have a party next Saturday.
3 The company director gave a formal apology for his earlier comments.
4 The manager had to make a number of changes to office procedures in order to do all the improvements he had planned for the company.
5 My sister did all the arrangements for the party.

9.2 **Complete each sentence using a word from the box.**

acquaintance attempt calculations discovery enemies
habit offer room stand success

1 Try to make a .... of noticing good collocations in any text you read.
2 A railway official asked us to move our luggage to make .... for the boy's bike.
3 The new CEO has made a lot of .... by being so autocratic.
4 If Pauline makes a .... of this project, she'll probably get promoted.
5 The old gentleman said he was delighted to make my ....
6 Do you think you'll make an .... on the flat you viewed yesterday?
7 Every young scientist dreams of making a .... that will change the world.
8 Rachel made no .... to contact me when she was over here last year.
9 We tried to make a .... against the new housing development but to no avail: the contractors started work this morning.
10 The .... that you made contained a few inaccuracies.

9.3 **Replace *make* in each sentence with an alternative word. Then say whether you have made the sentence more or less formal.**

1 The Green Party plans to make a major protest against the government's new farming policy.
2 Tessa helped me to make some lovely cushion covers for my new flat.
3 I regret to inform you that several clients have made complaints about your conduct.
4 You won't make a good first impression if you arrive late for your interview.
5 It won't take me long to make a meal for the children.
6 Do you expect your business to make a profit this year?

9.4 **Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.**

1 At the meeting the chairman proposed something rather interesting. (PROPOSAL)
2 I hope we can leave soon as I'm terribly tired. (ESCAPE)
3 I'm reading a fascinating book about the invention of new words and phrases to express new social and technical needs. (COINED)
4 We changed the layout of the hall to make it more relaxed for the yoga class. (ATMOSPHERE)
5 I tried to phone the company several times at the weekend. (ATTEMPTS)
6 Kim contributed very positively to the discussion. (CONTRIBUTION)
7 The service was poor but I wouldn't go so far as to formally complain. (LODGE)
8 I first got talking to Roger on a train. (ACQUAINTANCE)

FOLLOW UP

Make a point of looking back through any pieces of your writing that a teacher has corrected. Have you ever **made any mistakes** involving collocations with *make*? If so, **make an effort** to use those expressions correctly in your next assignment.

10 Communicating

A Collocations with *say, speak, talk* and *tell*

I wouldn't **say no to** a nice cup of tea. [informal: I'd really like]
Needless to say / It goes without saying that the workers voted in favour of the wage increase.
Jana **didn't say a word** when I told her I was leaving.
Generally speaking, people are aware of the environmental consequences of their actions.
Strictly speaking, a tomato is a fruit and not a vegetable because it contains seeds.
She always **speaks very highly** of you. [says good things about you]
Charlie, stop mumbling and **speak properly.** I can't understand a word you're saying. (generally used by parents or teachers to children, not between adults)
Now we've got to know each other, I think it's time we **talked business.**
At first, Andrew appears to be **talking nonsense** but after a while you realise he's actually **talking a lot of sense.**
I'll **tell** you **a secret** but please don't tell anyone else.
The old woman looked at Glen's palm and began to **tell his fortune.** [predict his future life]

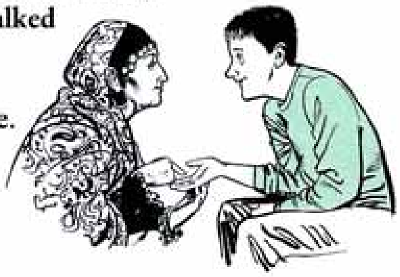

B Collocations meaning communicate

example	*comment*
I asked why she didn't trust him but she wouldn't **give** me **a reason.**	NOT ~~say~~ a reason
The charity **states its aim** as being to help underprivileged children.	(formal) also **state your purpose/goal**
The staff on reception required each visitor to **state their business** before issuing them with an entry permit.	(formal) = say what their intentions are
In her lecture Lucia **gave an account of** her trip to the Andes.	used about both speech and writing
The speech **got** the **message** about the policy changes **across.**	(informal) = conveyed the idea
I **declare** Hiroshi Yamamoto **the winner of** the gold medal.	(formal) statement made at the time of the win
He was **pronounced dead** at 1.10.	(formal) used when making an official statement of death
The old man tried to **impart** his **knowledge** to his sons.	(formal) = transfer knowledge; also **impart wisdom**
That journalist gets amazing stories but he won't **divulge** his **sources.**	(formal) = make something secret known; also **divulge a secret**
The Internet is a powerful means of **disseminating information.**	(formal) = spreading information to a lot of people
We **notified the police** of the burglary.	(formal) = officially informed
Although found guilty, Robson continued to **protest his innocence.**	(formal) = insist he was not guilty
He **professed ignorance** of the dent to the car but I think he was lying.	(formal) = claimed – perhaps insincerely – that he did not know
Did you **break the news** to her that her mother is in prison?	used for news that is very upsetting

Exercises

10.1 **Complete each sentence with the appropriate form of *say*, *speak*, *talk* or *tell*.**

1 Strictly .... , you shouldn't be here.
2 Ilya .... me a secret and made me promise not to pass it on to anyone else.
3 It goes without .... that we'll invite you to our wedding.
4 I spend most days with my three-year-old son, so forgive me if I start .... nonsense.
5 The teachers always .... very highly of my son's abilities.
6 I had my fortune .... at the fair yesterday.
7 It's so hot. I wouldn't .... no to an ice cream, would you?
8 Shall we have lunch first and then sit down to .... business?
9 I think that, generally .... , it's better to use public transport than drive yourself.

10.2 **Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence to make it more formal.**

1 The victim was asked why he had not told the police sooner about the mugging.
2 The older generation has always attempted to pass its wisdom on to young people.
3 Stockman has always insisted that he is innocent.
4 Robert claimed that he knew nothing of the damage to the car.
5 The reporter had no option but to explain where he had got his information from.
6 The doctors said he was dead when they arrived at the scene of the accident.
7 The judges said that Magda Karlson had won the competition.
8 The charity does a great deal to inform people about its activities.

10.3 **Are these sentences correct or incorrect? If they are incorrect, correct them.**

1 Do you think I managed to give the message across in my speech?
2 Needless to say, he didn't tell a word to his parents about what had happened.
3 You can't chew gum and say properly at the same time.
4 He refused to say his reasons for turning down our invitation.
5 She was devastated when we dropped the news to her.
6 In your report we would like you to give a detailed account of what happened.
7 I really like this documentary maker, he tells a lot of sense.
8 At the beginning of your dissertation you must say your goals clearly.

10.4 **Use a dictionary to find nouns to complete these phrases based on collocations in B.**

1 .... of innocence in the face of evidence to the contrary
2 a company's .... of aims
3 .... of information among the population
4 .... of a crime to the police
5 .... of the winner of a competition

10.5 **Use a dictionary to complete these collocation forks.**

1

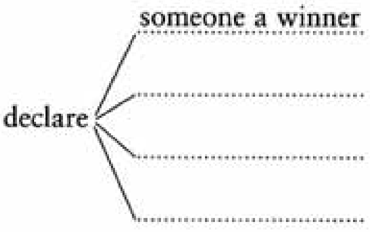

2

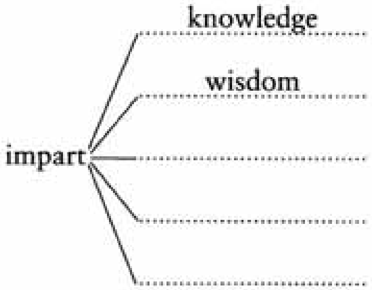

3

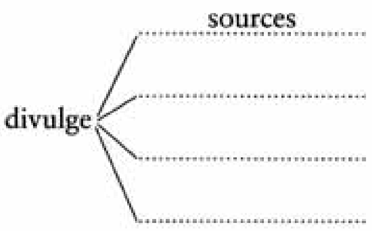

11

Collocations with phrasal verbs

A News items

The Justice Minister said he would **abide by the decision**[1] of the High Court to free the prisoner.

The new Regional Governor will **take up office**[2] on 1 March, following his party's recent election victory. The Education Commission has been asked by the government to **come up with an alternative** to the present schools examination system.

The police, **acting on a tip-off**[3], arrested the thieves as they left the building.

Hollywood star Glenda Nixon has **filed for divorce**[4]. She and her husband Kevin Lomax have lived apart for the last six months.

The police intend to **come down heavily on**[5] anyone causing trouble at tomorrow's football final.

[1] (formal) accept the decision
[2] (formal) start work in an official position
[3] a secret warning
[4] made an official request for a divorce
[5] punish very strongly

B Everyday conversation

Note how B uses a collocation with a phrasal verb to repeat A's ideas.

A: It was great just sitting in the town square and enjoying the feel of the place, wasn't it?
B: Yes, it was nice to just sit there **soaking up the atmosphere.**

A: I think we should both arrange our work schedules so we don't have to work in May.
B: Yes, I'll try to **free up some time** so we can go away together.

A: I'm finding it hard to find time to practise the French I learnt at school.
B: Yes, I have a similar problem **keeping up my Spanish.**

A: Well, all that gardening has made me hungry.
B: Yes, it certainly helps to **work up an appetite.**

A: It'd suit my arrangements if we could meet up at lunch-time.
B: Yes, that would **fit in** perfectly **with my plans** too.

A: The hotel wasn't as good as I thought it would be.
B: No, it didn't **live up to my expectations** either.

C Other phrasal verbs with strong collocations

burst into laughter/tears [suddenly start to laugh/cry]
When she saw the damage the floods had done to her house, she **burst into tears.**

dip into savings/funds [spend part of some money which was being saved]
The club had to **dip into** their emergency **funds** to pay for the repairs to the roof.

jot down an address / a phone number / a room number [write down quickly]
Can I **jot down** your email **address**?

see off an intruder/opponent [get rid of, defeat]
He's a tough guy. He **saw off several intruders** who were trying to break into his house.

adhere to principles / beliefs / ideals / a philosophy [formal: continue to maintain a belief]
It's difficult to **adhere to one's beliefs** when one is being constantly attacked.

TIP It is often difficult to remember the meanings of phrasal verbs. When a phrasal verb has a set of collocations as in the examples in C, write them down together. This is a good way of remembering the meaning.

Exercises

11.1 **Complete the collocations using prepositions from the box.**

by down for in with to up up to up with

1 file .... divorce
2 come .... an alternative
3 take .... office
4 adhere .... a philosophy
5 live .... expectations
6 abide .... a decision
7 jot .... someone's address
8 fit .... plans

11.2 **Complete each sentence using a collocation from 11.1 in the appropriate form.**

1 I'd been looking forward to the course but unfortunately it .... my expectations.
2 Has anyone .... a good alternative to the petrol- or diesel-fuelled car yet?
3 I should .... your address in case I forget it.
4 The new president of our club is due to .... office next week.
5 We have to .... the decision of the committee; we have no choice.
6 Most members of the group .... a common philosopy.
7 I don't have any special arrangements, so can easily .... your plans.
8 Hilda Bragg has .... divorce in a New York court.

11.3 **Answer these questions using collocations from the opposite page.**

1 What can you do with savings or funds in an emergency?
2 What can you do with principles or ideals?
3 What can you try to do with a language if you don't want to lose it?
4 What can guard dogs help you to do if you have intruders?

11.4 **Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.**

1 Everyone broke into laughter when she told the story.
2 We had a run along the beach to work in an appetite before lunch.
3 The police have said they intend to go down heavily on anyone carrying an offensive weapon at the match.
4 Do you think you could free out some time to have a quick meeting this afternoon?
5 The police acted on a rip-off and managed to avert a possible disaster.
6 I hope the party will live on to your expectations.
7 We sat on our hotel balcony, soaking through the atmosphere of the carnival.
8 Tanya quickly saw out her opponent in the semi-final and now goes on to the final.

11.5 **Answer these questions. Write full sentences using the word in brackets in a collocation from the opposite page.**

1 What do you plan to do in future to make sure you don't lose your English? (KEEP)
2 What film or gig or sports event have you been to that wasn't as good as you expected? (LIVE)
3 What sort of thing might tempt you to use some of your savings? (DIP)
4 Your best friend is getting married 100 miles away tomorrow and all the trains have been cancelled. What would you try to do? (COME)
5 At short notice some friends have invited you to stay for the weekend. They've already made some plans for the weekend. What would you do your best to do? (FIT)
6 How easy do you find it always to act according to your principles? (ADHERE)

12 Working life

A Fiona

In my mid-twenties I **joined the staff** of a language school. The pay wasn't brilliant but I could **make a living**[1] and there were many **aspects of the job** that I enjoyed. The other **members of staff** were nice and I enjoyed teaching the students. A few years later, after returning from **maternity leave**, I decided to **go part-time**. Luckily I was able to **do a job-share**[2] with another woman who had a small child. Then the school began to go through a difficult period and had to **lay off staff**[3]. I decided to **go freelance**[4]. I had managed to build up a **network of contacts** and this gave me a good start. I soon had a substantial **volume of work** – private students and marking exams – and was able to **earn a good living**.

[1] earn enough to live (can also be used just to refer to one's job and how one earns one's money: *She makes a living as a hairdresser*)
[2] situation where two people share equal parts of the same job
[3] dismiss staff because there is no work for them to do
[4] work for several different organisations rather than working full-time for one organisation

ERROR WARNING

People usually **do work**, NOT ~~make~~ work. If we talk about people **making work**, it means that they create work for other people to do, e.g. *A baby **makes** a lot of **work** for its parents – but it's worth it.*

B Ben

After graduating, **I practised medicine**[1] for a number of years in London. I managed to **carve a niche for myself**[2] as a specialist in dermatology. Then I realised I needed some fresh challenges and so I did a job swap for a year with my **opposite number**[3] in a clinic in Vancouver. When I returned, I went back to my old job and also **took up** the **post**[4] of editor of a leading medical journal. I **held that position** for a number of years. I'm now hoping to go abroad again and so am letting everyone know that I **am open to offers**.

[1] worked as a doctor
[2] make a special position for myself
[3] someone doing the same job in a different location
[4] started work

C Julia

After graduating in economics, I did the usual thing of **putting together** my **CV**[1] and applying for jobs. I got a very **tempting offer** from an investment bank and accepted it. It was a high pressure environment but I felt motivated and I did very well. I was put on a **fast-track scheme**[2] and was **moving up the ladder**[3] fast. However, one day I **had a change of heart**[4]. I realised I'd stopped enjoying the excitement. I felt I needed to **get my priorities right**[5]. I decided that other aspects of my life should **take priority over**[6] my work. I **handed in my resignation** and moved to the country.

[1] CV = *curriculum vitae*, a written description of your education, qualifications, skills and career
[2] system for rapid training and promotion of talented staff
[3] being promoted
[4] my attitude or mood changed
[5] give importance to the right aspects of life
[6] be more important to me than

ERROR WARNING

We say someone is **under a lot of / considerable pressure**,
NOT under ~~high~~ pressure.

Exercises

12.1 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 My husband and I do
2 Circulate the report to all members
3 Kazuki has been happier since he went
4 I hope it won't be necessary to lay
5 It's not easy to make
6 Meeting people is the best aspect
7 Marian was the last person to join
8 Anna will be going on maternity
9 Try to build up a good network
10 We've had a ridiculous volume

of contacts.
the staff in our company.
of work this month.
of staff.
part-time.
a job-share.
off many of our staff.
of the job.
a living as an actor.
leave next month.

12.2 Complete the conversation using words from the opposite page.

Meg: Did you know my son's in Australia at the moment? He's doing a job swap with his opposite (1) .... , the person who (2) .... a similar position to his in the company's Sydney office.

José: Wow, that's good! But I thought he wanted to go to the States this year?

Meg: Well, yes. He did have a very tempting (3) .... from a company in New York and he was about to accept, but then he had a (4) .... of heart.

José: So, have you met the exchange person from Sydney?

Meg: Yes, he's been to dinner a couple of times. He'd like to settle here in fact and has asked us to tell everyone he's (5) .... to offers from any companies that might be interested. Maybe your firm might be interested?

José: Perhaps. We could do with someone with good Australian contacts. But we could really do with someone who could (6) .... a post before the end of the year.

Meg: That could work out perhaps. He certainly seems very nice. And he'd be motivated to do well for you because he's so keen to stay here.

José: And do you think your son will stay in Australia?

Meg: I hope not. I've told him to get his priorities (7) .... Being near his mum should (8) .... priority over Australian beaches and sunshine!

12.3 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 The recession meant that the company had to make some workers redundant. (LAY)
2 Your family should really be more important to you than your work. (PRIORITY)
3 Nita soon gained several promotions at work. (LADDER)
4 Bill hates his new boss so much that I think he'll soon leave. (RESIGNATION)
5 Vic earns good money as a freelance journalist. (LIVING)
6 I need to write down all my qualifications and experience before I apply for jobs. (CV)
7 My father always wanted to work as a doctor in a rural community. (PRACTISE)

12.4 Correct the seven collocation errors in this paragraph.

George makes a life as a sports reporter on a local newspaper but he is under high pressure at work at the moment. He's had far too much work to make recently. He's been put on a fast-train scheme for promotion and they're really pushing him. It's so hard that he's thinking of handing over his resignation and going freelancing. It wouldn't be easy but I'm sure he'd soon work a niche for himself as a sports journalist.

13

New employment

A Discussing job applicants

Guy: So which of these applicants do you think we should interview? They all seem to **fit the job description** quite well to me. It's quite a **daunting task** to **narrow the list down** to just one person.

Julia: I agree. So, lets start by **taking up references** for these ten people.

Guy: OK. So why did you pick these ten out of the fifty who applied?

Julia: Well, these ten all seem to be people who realise the importance of **working as a team.** They've all shown that they are capable of **mastering new skills.** And they're all clearly comfortable with **taking on responsibility.**

Guy: Did you automatically eliminate the two who'd previously **taken industrial action**[1]?

Julia: One of them – I'd also heard rumours about his involvement in a **professional misconduct** case. He was certainly **relieved of his duties**[2] at ARG under mysterious circumstances. But the other was standing up for a woman who'd been **wrongfully dismissed**[3], even though he knew he might lose his own job. So he sounded good to me.

Guy: Fair enough. He must have strength of character to risk **losing his own livelihood.**

Julia: That's right. So could we **pencil in a meeting** for considering the references? And then I'd better leave you and go and **clear my desk**[4] before I go home.

Guy: Yes, sure. How about Friday at 10?

[1] gone on strike

[2] (formal) dismissed

[3] (formal, legal) unfairly dismissed

[4] deal with all the papers on one's desk (also used when someone is clearing their desk because they are leaving their job)

ERROR WARNING

If workers refuse to work, they **go on strike** or **stage a strike**, NOT ~~make~~ a strike.

B Conversation about a new job

Jenny: I hear your brother's **landed** a fantastic **new job**[1].

Ali: Actually it's not as good as he hoped. He's got a terribly **heavy workload** and that means working some very **unsocial hours.** He also complains about having to do lots of **menial tasks** around the office, **running errands** for his boss.

Jenny: But he's paid well?

Ali: Not really. He just about gets a **living wage**[2]. And all the **overtime** is **unpaid.**

Jenny: He'll just have to **throw a sickie**[3] from time to time.

Ali: Yes, I suggested he did that too, but he says he's afraid of **getting the sack**[4] if he does. He feels there might **be** some **prospects for** him there eventually, even if he is just being used as **sweated labour**[5] at the moment.

Jenny: Well, with any luck he'll eventually find that he can **realise his potential**[6] there.

Ali: I hope so. But they have a very **high turnover of staff** and it won't be easy for him to **stay the course**[7].

Jenny: No, but he's very determined, isn't he? So let's hope it all works out.

[1] (informal) got a new (and usually a good) job

[2] enough money to live on

[3] (informal) take a day off work pretending to be sick

[4] (informal) being dismissed

[5] workers who are paid very little and work in very bad conditions

[6] achieve all that he is capable of

[7] remain there until he is successful

Exercises

13.1 **Find a collocation in A that matches each definition.**

1 to make a provisional date for a meeting
2 an alarmingly difficult task
3 to become skilled at doing new things
4 to request statements from referees
5 to have the skills required for a job
6 unfairly sacked
7 to be deprived of your source of income
8 behaviour unacceptable for someone in a particular job

13.2 **Complete this paragraph using words from the box in the appropriate form.**

be fit land run sweat take

Mel was surprised but happy to (1) .... a job on her local newspaper as soon as she left university. She was surprised because she didn't feel that she (2) .... the job description, but she was happy because she had always dreamt of working as a journalist. So she didn't really mind when she found that she was spending much of her time (3) .... errands for the editor. Her brother said she was just being used as (4) .... labour but she felt confident that there (5) .... good prospects for her there. She was sure she would soon have the chance to (6) .... on more responsibility.

13.3 **Complete each conversation using a collocation from the opposite page to make B agree with what A says.**

1 A: I think that Mick will leave his new job before the year is out.
B: Yes, I agree. I don't think he'll .... either.
2 A: Had you heard that they may fire some members of staff?
B: Yes, I did hear a rumour that some people might ....
3 A: Inflation is so high that I don't seem to earn enough to live on any more.
B: No. I don't feel I earn .... myself.
4 A: Has the HR Manager been removed from his job?
B: Yes, he was .... yesterday.
5 A: I hope the workers don't decide to go on strike.
B: Yes, it would be very unfortunate if they decide to ....
6 A: It's going to be hard to decide which of the job applicants to shortlist.
B: Yes, I don't know how we are going to ....

13.4 **Answer these questions about your own work or ask someone else these questions and write down the answers.**

1 What kind of menial tasks does your job involve?
2 Do you think this job will allow you to realise your potential?
3 Do you ever have to work unsocial hours? If so, why? If not, why not?
4 Does there tend to be a high turnover of staff at your workplace?
5 If you do overtime, is it paid or unpaid?
6 Have you ever thrown a sickie? If so, why? If not, why not?
7 Have you ever taken or would you ever consider taking industrial action?
8 In your job is it necessary to work as a team?
9 Do you have a heavy workload?

FOLLOW UP

It will probably be particularly useful for you to learn work collocations that relate to your own professional life. Look on the Internet for information in English about the job that you do or are interested in doing in the future. Make a note of any interesting collocations that you come across.

14 Thoughts and ideas

A Talking about thoughts

I **honestly think** we can win the match tonight. [NOT I ~~strongly~~ think]
I'm not sure if I want to invest in your business or not, but I'll **give it some thought.**
Bear in mind that there are often delays to flights during bad weather. [remember]
It's common knowledge that Jane is looking for a new job. [everyone knows]
My teenage son hasn't yet **grasped the importance of** revising for exams. [understood how important something is]
I **take the view** that we are all responsible for our own actions. [believe]
It's **a foregone conclusion** that Jaime will win the race. [absolutely certain]
I'm not quite sure what I'm going to do but I've got a **rough idea.** [general idea]
I don't **subscribe to the theory** that nature and nurture are of equal significance but it is now a **widespread belief.** [hold that opinion]; [generally held view]
Opinions are divided as to whether mothers of young children should go out to work or not, but **it is my firm conviction** that different things suit different families. [people hold different views]; [I am totally convinced]

ERROR WARNING We say I am **becoming aware** of the problem, NOT I am ~~getting~~ aware.

B Judging

collocation	*example*	*meaning*
judge someone harshly	Don't **judge** him too **harshly**. He really couldn't have done things differently.	be very critical of someone
poor judgement	Deciding to set up a business now shows **poor judgement** of the economic situation.	
pass judgement on	Di's quick to **pass judgement on** other people but she's far from perfect herself.	criticise
against your better judgement	I finally agreed to go out with him, **against my better judgement**.	despite the knowledge that something is a bad idea
a lack of judgement	His approach to his children showed **a lack of judgement**.	an inability to judge a situation wisely
an error of judgement	Promoting Alec was a serious **error of judgement**.	bad decision

C Metaphors of thinking

We can talk about **thinking laterally** [approaching a problem in an imaginative and original way rather than using a traditional approach]. We can say someone has a **fertile imagination** [one that produces lots of original and interesting ideas]. We can **wrestle with a problem** [struggle to find a solution] and we can have a **nagging doubt** [an unpleasant feeling of doubt that will not go away]. We can also talk about something **fuelling speculation** [encouraging people to consider that something may be true], and sometimes people **jump to conclusions** [guess the facts about a situation without having enough information].

Exercises

14.1 Look at A. Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.

1 Opinions are separated on the issue of single-sex schools and there are sound arguments on both sides of the case.

2 I believe that the government will win another term in office but my girlfriend takes a different opinion.

3 I strongly think that you'd be making a serious mistake if you took that job.

4 I don't believe it's a foregone fact that the larger company will win the contract.

5 People are gradually getting aware of the problem of climate change.

6 You should bear in thought that your visitors will be tired after their long flight.

7 I've got a raw idea of what I want to say in my essay but I haven't planned it properly yet.

8 Increasing numbers of people today subscribe for the theory that small is beautiful.

14.2 Complete the paragraph using words from the box.

error firm grasped laterally pass poor

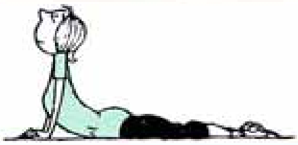

Recent research shows that people who spend time meditating each day improve their mental abilities. It seems that meditation particularly enhances our ability to think in creative, unusual ways, in other words, to think 'outside the box' or think (1) .... It may, then, have been an unfortunate (2) .... of judgement on the part of the management at BNM and Co. to put a stop to the yoga classes that staff had organised for their lunch-breaks. 'It would seem that our managers have not yet (3) .... the importance of these classes,' explained yoga instructor Zandra, 'but it is not my place to (4) .... judgement on them. Their judgement may be (5) .... at the moment but it is my (6) .... conviction that as people come to understand yoga better, they will see how it could benefit the company as well as individual members of staff.'

14.3 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 It's unwise to draw conclusions too quickly about people's motives. (JUMP)
2 Everyone knows that Ellie has been taking money from the till. (COMMON)
3 I agreed to help him though I knew it was wrong. (AGAINST)
4 I'm afraid your decisions show you are unable to judge situations well. (LACK)
5 We have to decide when to have the party. Can you think about it? (THOUGHT)
6 I think you are being too critical of him. Remember he's only 18. (HARSHLY)
7 Surprisingly, a large number of people believe left-handed people are more intelligent. (WIDESPREAD)

14.4 Use a dictionary to find frequent collocations with these words. Your collocations can use the words literally or metaphorically.

1 a fertile 2 to fuel 3 to wrestle with 4 a nagging

14.5 Use a dictionary or an online corpus (see Unit 4) to decide whether these are common collocations or not.

1 bear in memory 2 personal conviction 3 harshly treated 4 a rough belief

15 Business reports

A Business news

Charles Park and Sons have **announced record profits** for last year despite a slight **decline in demand** for one of their key products, caused by increasingly **fierce competition**[1] in the sector. They say they are already well on the way to **meeting their targets** for the first quarter. Their new models will **go into production**[2] in the spring and this is expected to **boost**[3] their **sales** and **profits** even more.

The government today announced its intentions to **stimulate growth** in the south-west by **allocating** a large **part of its** development **budget** to industrial projects in the area. Roger Middle, who **chaired the committee** working on this scheme, said that local people welcomed the decision, which should **generate** more **business** for local firms. They appreciate that their area has many **unique selling points** for businesses and their employees, and feel that development will **pay dividends**[4] for everyone living and working in the area.

Clothing firm G and L has announced plans to build a new factory in the Midlands. Their spokesperson, Mark Mulloy, said yesterday that the proposal **made sound business sense**. 'It will be easier for us to **maintain quality** and **promote the interests** of our shareholders at the same time as **satisfying the demands** of our **target market**,' he said.

SIB Distribution held an **emergency meeting** last night to discuss the crisis caused by yesterday's rise in fuel prices. Their MD said, 'This **hike in prices**[5] will seriously **affect the bottom line**[6]. It's a considerable challenge for us as we already operate on **narrow profit margins**. However, we have **set ourselves clear objectives** and are confident we will still be able to **balance the books**[7]. We have no intention of **calling in the receivers**[8] yet!'

[1] NOT ~~high~~ competition
[2] start being made
[3] increase
[4] bring advantages
[5] (journalistic) rise in prices
[6] affect the net income
[7] make sure the amount spent is not more than the amount earned
[8] going bankrupt

B Describing trends

An important part of many business reports is the description of trends. The *Cambridge Learner Corpus* shows that there are a number of collocation errors which are frequently made when candidates write about business in advanced English exams.

sales	showed	a rise
profits	saw	a fall
the market	experienced	a decline
exports/imports	NOT ~~had~~	a growth

ERROR WARNING

We say a **slight decrease/increase**, NOT a ~~little~~ decrease/increase and a **substantial decrease/increase**, NOT a ~~strong~~ decrease/increase.
When comparing two things in terms of quantity, we say, for example, Exports were **five times greater than** imports, NOT Exports were five times ~~larger~~ than imports.

Exercises

15.1 Are these sentences true or false?

1 A business executive will feel worried if the company experiences a decline in demand for its products.
2 A business CEO is pleased if the company does not meet its quarterly sales targets.
3 A hike in the price of raw materials is likely to present a difficult challenge for a business that uses those materials.
4 Marketing and sales staff will promote their products' unique selling points.
5 Business managers are likely to be happy about calling in the receivers.
6 A company is likely to feel more secure if it has narrow profit margins.

15.2 Complete each sentence using a word from the opposite page.

1 It was a sad day for the company when it finally had to call in the ....
2 I'm sure you'll agree that our new mobile phone has a number of unique selling ....
3 We use a professional accountant to help us balance our ....
4 The bank agreed that our plans make sound business ....
5 We must ensure that the research project does not negatively affect the bottom ....
6 We look forward to next spring, when our exciting new line will go into ....
7 All your hard work will eventually pay ....
8 We are confident that our new business strategy will help boost both sales and ....

15.3 Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.

1 The company is pleased to report a strong increase in profits over the last quarter.
2 The new health and safety committee is to be tabled by a retired doctor.
3 There is increasingly high competition between airline companies.
4 The company's exports to Japan had considerable growth over the last decade.
5 The sales figures for March show a little decrease on those for February.
6 Our sales in the domestic market are certain to have a rise next year.
7 Last year sales were three times larger in Europe than in Australia.
8 We feel that this proposal does considerable business sense.
9 Although we need to reduce our costs, it's important we attain the quality that our reputation is built on.
10 Business leaders hope new government policies will stimulus growth.

15.4 Answer these questions about the collocations in this unit.

1 When might the Managing Director of a company call an emergency meeting?
2 What kind of age group is a sports car company likely to have as its target market?
3 Why would shareholders be pleased if their company announced record profits?
4 In what situations other than business do people set themselves objectives?
5 Name three things that a business would have to allocate part of its budget to.
6 How might a company try to stimulate growth in demand for its products?

FOLLOW UP

On the website www.companieshouse.gov.uk you can find reports on several million companies. Look up a company that interests you and make a note of any interesting collocations that you find.

16 Customer services

A Shopping in the high street or online?

Most companies **carry out surveys**[1] to find out what customers or potential customers feel about their products and services. I answered one recently about **online shopping.** I personally much prefer to **go shopping** on the high street rather than to shop on the Internet. You get a much better impression of whether something is good **value for money** or truly **fit for purpose**[2] when you can touch it. And I feel if you have a problem with a purchase, it's easier to go back and **make a complaint** if you've bought something from a shop. But shopping online has its advantages, and many companies **offer** you **a discount** when you **place an order** online. And, of course, lots of online companies have plenty of **regular customers** and plenty of **satisfied customers.** I suppose the bottom line is that it's good for us as consumers to have as much **healthy competition** as possible.

[1] or **do surveys**, NOT ~~make~~ **surveys** [2] good at doing what it is supposed to do

ERROR WARNING

We say **do the shopping** or **go shopping**, NOT ~~do shopping~~. **Do the shopping** means the regular daily, weekly or monthly shopping that people do for food and household items. It is a household chore (compare: do the *ironing/washing*). While **go shopping** also means this, it has the additional meaning of shopping as a leisure activity (compare: go *fishing/swimming*).

B Complaining about service

I ordered this skirt on the Internet and I'm furious. On their website they promise **prompt service.** In fact they said they offered **a next-day service** but it took ten days to come. When I rang up to complain they **put me on hold** and then never got back to me! Then, when the skirt eventually arrived, the zip was broken. It's really **poor quality** – though the advert says all their clothes are **top quality.** I'm going to **kick up** such **a fuss**[1]. Of course, I'll demand **a full refund**[2], but I'd really like an apology as well. And I'll certainly **take my custom elsewhere**[3] in future.

[1] (informal) make a very forcible complaint
[2] ask for all my money back (NB NOT ~~strongly~~ demand because the verb *demand* cannot be made stronger in English – it is already strong enough)
[3] not buy from the same place again

C Company promise

If you have **grounds for complaint**[1], please contact our Head Office at the address below. We pride ourselves on **providing an excellent service** and all our products **conform to safety regulations**[2]. We **honour all commitments**[3] to customers. We **take** very **seriously** any **complaints** about poor service. So if you feel that one of our products does not **come up to standard**[4], then we will immediately offer you a replacement. We promise to **handle all complaints** promptly.

[1] a reason for complaining
[2] obey all the rules or laws relating to safety
[3] do what we said we would do
[4] reach appropriate standards

TIP

Learn more collocations relating to the topic of customer services by looking at the customer services page of a company website, for example, that of John Lewis, a British department store: www.johnlewis.com/Help/HelpHome.aspx. Make a note of any interesting collocations.

Exercises

16.1 **Look at A. Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.**

1 Have you ever made a complain to the management about the food in a restaurant?
2 I hate making shopping on Saturdays as the town is so crowded then.
3 If you want your shopping delivered, you can put your order with us online or by phone.
4 We made a large-scale customer survey before developing our new product range.
5 On-the-web shopping is proving increasingly popular.
6 I was surprised by the weak quality of the acting in that film we saw last night.

16.2 **Choose the correct collocation.**

1 This shop gives very good *worth / cost / value* for money.
2 Every business wants *satisfactory / satisfied / satisfying* customers.
3 He is an economist who believes in the advantages of *healthy / rich / fertile* competition.
4 Service doesn't have to be next-day but it should be reasonably *punctual / prompt / present.*
5 I hate it when you phone a company and get put on *hole / hang / hold* for ages.
6 Dan kicked up a terrible *fuss / foot / fever* about the service we received.
7 The hotel manager *dealt / handled / honoured* our complaint very efficiently.
8 We can't sell our old sofa because it doesn't *perform / inform / conform* to modern safety regulations.
9 I would prefer not to take my custom *somewhere / anywhere / elsewhere.*
10 The service at the hair salon did not *run / come / do* up to standard.

16.3 **Complete the letters using words from the opposite page.**

Dear Sir/Madam,
I am writing to complain about the service I received in your Cambridge branch.
I bought a suit there recently but it is poorly cut and does not fit well, even though it is the size I normally take. I am a (1) .... customer of yours and have never had any problems before. I returned the suit to the shop the next day, but the manager refused to give me a full (2) ....
I request that you look into this matter and (3) .... this complaint seriously. Otherwise I may be forced to take my (4) .... elsewhere.
Yours faithfully,
John Cole

Dear Mr Cole,
Thank you for your letter regarding your purchase of a suit from us. We apologise for the inconvenience caused to you.
Our company is committed to (5) .... an excellent service and selling (6) .... quality garments. We therefore enclose the requested refund and trust that you will continue to shop with us and will never again have (7) .... for complaint about our goods.
Yours sincerely,
Jason Campbell
Customer Services Manager

16.4 **Complete the crossword.**

Across
1 When choosing new offices you must ensure that they will be fit for — .
3 To get your money back you'll have to prove you have — for complaint.
4 I have no option but to demand a — refund.
5 I am afraid that your service simply fails to come up to — .
6 As a respected firm we always — all our commitments.
7 It is our policy to offer students a — on books and stationery.

Down
2 Your helmets do not conform to safety — .

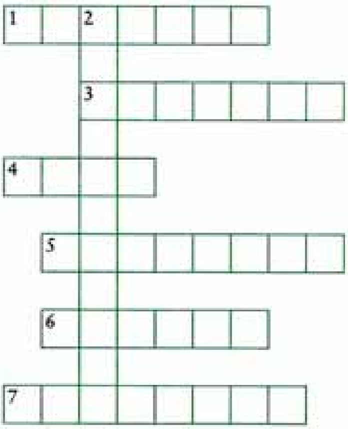

17

Student life

A Courses and qualifications

When she was a small child, Amelia's teachers identified her as having unusual intelligence and remarkable **mental agility**[1], and they put her on a special programme for **gifted children**. Amelia **won a scholarship** to **attend** a local grammar **school**. By the age of eighteen, she was a **straight A student**[2], and she **secured a place**[3] at one of the country's most prestigious **seats of learning**[4] to **read**[5] **English Literature**.

In the first **academic year** of the English Literature programme, the **core subjects**[6] were *The development of the novel* and *Contemporary poetry*. Amelia had a large number of **set texts**[7] to read. It was hard work but she loved it. Her professors were all **distinguished scholars** and her courses were taught by some of the world's **leading authorities** in the field. She completed her studies with considerable success and **graduated from university** last year. In the meantime, her parents have decided that it is time they made up for their lack of **formal education** and they have **signed up for** a number of evening **courses**[8]. Eventually they hope to **meet the entry requirements** for university entrance and to be able to complete a degree as **mature students**[9].

[1] ability to think quickly and clearly
[2] a student who always gets very good marks
[3] (formal) was accepted as a student; (informal: **got a place**)
[4] (very formal) educational institution with a very good reputation
[5] (formal and increasingly old-fashioned) do or study
[6] subjects which all the students on the course have to do
[7] specific books which students must study
[8] or **enrolled on … courses**
[9] students who are older than average

B Harry's school report

Mathematics	Harry's work has shown a **marked improvement** this term. However, his **attention** occasionally **wanders** in class.
English	Harry has a **natural talent** for English. He achieved **full marks**[1] in the last class test.
French	There is **room for improvement** in Harry's work in French. He seems to find it difficult to **learn** vocabulary **by heart**.
Geography	Harry has a **thirst for knowledge** and is **a quick learner**. It is a pity that sometimes his **concentration** in class **wavers**[2].
Science	Harry has **demonstrated an ability** to apply what he learns to the wider world. He **showed** considerable **initiative** in the way he approached his project on energy.
Physical Education	Although Harry has a **proven ability**[3] for tennis, he will not make any progress until he stops **playing truant**.[4] This must not continue.

[1] 100%
[2] concentration is not steady
[3] ability shown by his achievements
[4] being absent without permission

ERROR WARNING

You attend school to **acquire knowledge**, NOT ~~get~~ knowledge.

Exercises

17.1 **Answer the questions using collocations from A.**

1 What happens when you successfully complete a degree course?
2 What do you call students who are in their thirties or older?
3 What are, for example, Harvard, the Sorbonne and Cambridge University?
4 What kind of people teach at Harvard, the Sorbonne and Cambridge University?
5 What do you call children who are particularly intelligent or have special talents?
6 What do you call students whose marks are always excellent?

17.2 **Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.**

1 We were all very impressed by the student's mental
2 My grandmother is very intelligent but she's had little formal
3 I've never found it easy to learn scientific formulae by
4 I'd love to study medicine there but it's very hard to get a
5 For the first year Shakespeare exam we had to read six set
6 I am so proud of you for managing to get full
7 Your work is not too bad but there is certainly still room for
8 Your little girl has shown herself to be a very quick
9 The test has been designed to enable pupils to demonstrate their
10 I hope to study there but I may not be able to meet the entry

heart.
place.
education.
ability.
requirements.
agility.
learner.
marks.
texts.
improvement.

17.3 **Complete this teacher's letter to the parents of a problem pupil.**

Dear Mr and Mrs Wolf,

We are very concerned about Peter's behaviour. He has played (1) .... from school three times this month and has been seen in town in school hours. When he does come to class, his attention (2) .... and he does not seem able to concentrate on his lessons. He does not seem to understand the work and yet he never asks any questions or requests any help. The only time he (3) .... any initiative is in devising excuses for not having done his homework. Although he has a (4) .... talent for art, he is not even taking any interest in art lessons.

This is disappointing, as last year there was a (5) .... improvement in Peter's work and we hoped he might (6) .... a scholarship. However, unless he starts to (7) .... school regularly and to put more effort into his studies, he will certainly not even meet the (8) .... for the college course he has plans to (9) .... on next year.

I would be grateful if you could come into school to discuss this situation further.

Yours sincerely,
Thomas Chips
(Headteacher)

17.4 **Answer these questions.**

1 What are the core subjects for pupils at primary school in your country?
2 What would you say are the most prestigious seats of learning in your country?
3 Have you ever signed up for a course that you didn't complete?
4 If you could take a degree course now, what subject would you like to read?
5 When does the academic year begin and end in your country?
6 What do you need to do to secure a place at university in your country?

17.5 **Use a dictionary to find different words to complete each collocation.**

1 a thirst for ....
2 join a ....
3 his .... wavers
4 proven ....

18 Writing essays, assignments and reports

A Preparing for a research assignment

Here is an extract from a study skills leaflet given to students at a university, containing advice on how to tackle a research project. Note the collocations in bold.

- All students are expected to **submit a** 5,000-word **report**, detailing their research project and **presenting** their **findings**.
- **Select a research topic** in discussion with your tutor. You will need to formulate a **working hypothesis**[1] when you begin your study. The purpose of your research is to see if your data **supports the hypothesis**[2].
- If you are **undertaking**[3] **a study** which involves informants or volunteers, read the advice on **research ethics**[4] in the department handbook.
- A key section of your report will be a **literature review**. This is not simply a summary of your **background reading**, but an **in-depth critique**[5] of the most important books and articles, where you can show your awareness of current research.
- Make sure you **provide**[6] **a rationale** for your study, and always **back up your conclusions** with evidence; never exaggerate any claims you make.
- Wherever appropriate, you should **lay out your results** in the form of tables, charts and diagrams.

[1] a theory which can be used provisionally but may change
[2] We usually do not say *prove the hypothesis*; *prove* is too strong.
[3] (formal) carrying out; (informal: doing)
[4] a system of standards which control how research is done
[5] examination and judgement of something, done carefully and in great detail
[6] (formal) give

B Other collocations often used in essays, reports and assignments

The book offers a **vigorous**[1] **defence** of free market economics and **makes the case for** privatisation of all state-owned industries. It **confronts issues** which are of current importance in developing countries.

McGraw **puts the case for** single-sex primary education but he fails to **tackle** all of **the issues** that opponents of this approach to early schooling have raised.

This essay cannot give an **exhaustive**[2] **account** of climate change; it focuses only on the risk to sea levels. Recent **research indicates** that sea levels are rising very rapidly.

Physicists have recently begun to **formulate new theories** about the nature of the universe. The big question is how to **test** these **theories**.

Although Kristov's book **covers a lot of ground**, it does not offer a **full explanation** of the events leading to the civil war. Indeed, **the thrust**[3] **of Kristov's argument** is that such an account cannot be written, since the people with **first-hand**[4] **knowledge** of those events are no longer living.

This essay provides a **critical analysis**[5] of international trade agreements.

[1] very strong and forceful [2] extremely detailed [3] the main idea or opinion that is discussed
[4] experienced directly [5] a detailed study or examination which assesses quality

ERROR WARNING

We say **do research**, NOT ~~make~~ research. The Internet is a good place to **do research**.

Exercises

18.1 Complete each sentence using a verb from the box in the appropriate form.

cover indicate present provide put
review tackle test undertake

1 It is a huge task to .... a study involving hundreds of participants.
2 Fischler .... her findings at an international biochemistry conference last year.
3 Chapter 2 .... the literature on urban regeneration and concludes that more research is needed.
4 I have .... a rationale for the study in the introduction to this essay.
5 The research .... that owning a pet increases life expectancy by five years.
6 The next step was to .... the theory by carrying out a set of experiments.
7 The essay .... a lot of ground.
8 The book .... a number of issues which were previously ignored.
9 The lecturer .... the case for a dramatic change in economic policy.

18.2 Rewrite each sentence using a form of the words in brackets.

1 The system of standards for conducting research are described in the university's research manual. (ETHIC)
2 You need to make an examination and judgement of the arguments which is very detailed. (DEPTH, CRITIQUE)
3 You need to read books and articles which give you information about the subject. (BACKGROUND)
4 You do the analysis in order to find out whether the data indicate that your initial idea was correct. (HYPOTHESIS)
5 All the interviewees were people who had knowledge of the situation from direct experience. (FIRST)
6 It is impossible to give a complete explanation of the decline of agriculture in the 1960s. (FULL)

18.3 Complete each sentence using a word from the box in the correct form. Then number the events in the order in which they would occur in real life.

☐ Write a .... analysis of previous studies.
☐ Form a .... hypothesis.
☐ .... out your results in tables and diagrams.
☐ .... your report.
1 .... a topic.
☐ Make the .... for studying the topic in the introduction.

case
critical
lay
select
submit
work

18.4 Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.

1 The trust of Torsten's argument is that public transport can never replace the private car.
2 Economists reformed a new theory of inflation in the late 1980s.
3 It is important that we should front the issue of climate change immediately.
4 In her essay, she put forward a vigorated defence of the European Union constitution.
5 I shall not attempt to give an exhausting account of population growth in this essay.
6 The article does not back down its conclusions with enough convincing evidence.

FOLLOW UP Find an article on the Internet relating to an academic subject that is important for you. Print it off and highlight any useful collocations you notice in it.

19 Social life

A Organising your social life

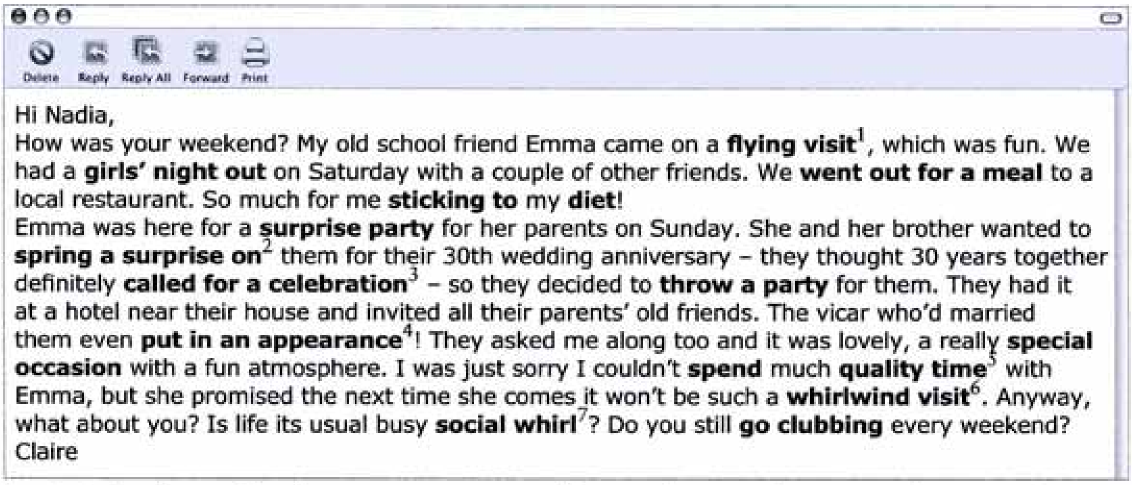

Hi Nadia,
How was your weekend? My old school friend Emma came on a **flying visit**[1], which was fun. We had a **girls' night out** on Saturday with a couple of other friends. We **went out for a meal** to a local restaurant. So much for me **sticking to** my **diet**!
Emma was here for a **surprise party** for her parents on Sunday. She and her brother wanted to **spring a surprise on**[2] them for their 30th wedding anniversary – they thought 30 years together definitely **called for a celebration**[3] – so they decided to **throw a party** for them. They had it at a hotel near their house and invited all their parents' old friends. The vicar who'd married them even **put in an appearance**[4]! They asked me along too and it was lovely, a really **special occasion** with a fun atmosphere. I was just sorry I couldn't **spend** much **quality time**[5] with Emma, but she promised the next time she comes it won't be such a **whirlwind visit**[6]. Anyway, what about you? Is life its usual busy **social whirl**[7]? Do you still **go clubbing** every weekend?
Claire

[1] a visit that doesn't last long
[2] to surprise
[3] meant that a celebration was appropriate
[4] came just for a short time
[5] time where people can give their complete attention to each other
[6] brief and very busy visit
[7] non-stop set of social events

B Formal entertaining

To: Councillor D. M. Patel
County Hall, Swithick

Penniston International Youth Festival

Dear Councillor Patel,
First let me thank the County Council, on behalf of the Festival Organising Committee, for **playing host to**[1] the welcome reception for our international colleagues and for **making us** so **welcome** at County Hall last week. We were also grateful that you were able to **find time** to **pay us a visit** at our weekly planning meeting, where we were delighted to hear that you intend to **join the festivities** at the opening ceremony of the festival.
We would further like to invite you and your spouse to **attend a formal function**, to be held at the Castle Hotel, Penniston on Friday 27 July, from 7.30pm to 10.30pm, to mark the closing of the festival.
Yours sincerely,
Mark Janowski (Committee Chair)

[1] providing the facilities for
[2] social event where a family comes together, usually to celebrate something
[3] take out for dinner and drinks
[4] (rather formal) a very friendly and welcoming atmosphere
[5] place where a public event or meeting happens

ERROR WARNING We say **organise a barbecue** or **have a barbecue**, NOT ~~make~~ a barbecue.

Castle Hotel Penniston

Whether you are planning a formal party, a **family gathering**[2] or simply want to **wine and dine**[3] new business contacts in a **convivial atmosphere**[4], the 16th-century Castle Hotel is **the perfect venue**[5]. Our 24 bedrooms, three restaurants and Function Room can be reserved by calling us on 1327 5547655 or by booking online at www.castlepenniston.com.

Exercises

19.1 Complete the conversation words from the opposite page.

Suki: How was Bill's (1) .... retirement party?

Dave: Great. You should have seen his face; he really had no idea about it and he was so moved. It was a really nice gesture for the company to (2) .... a party for him like that. They really wined and (3) .... us. And even the MD put in an (4) .... ! What happened to you? I was surprised not to see you there.

Suki: Oh, well I was planning to come, but then my friends (5) .... a surprise on me too that same night.

Dave: Was it a (6) .... occasion?

Suki: Yes, it was my birthday and my friends had arranged a girls' (7) .... out and invited lots of friends that I hadn't seen for ages.

Dave: Sounds great. Happy Birthday, by the way.

19.2 Choose the correct collocation.

1 My parents have always *gave* / *made* / *had* my friends feel very welcome.
2 My aunt came on a *quality* / *whirling* / *flying* visit last week.
3 It's quite difficult to *hold on* / *keep with* / *stick to* a diet when you're eating out with friends.
4 You've passed your exam! Well, that *takes* / *gives* / *calls* for a celebration!
5 We hope you will *give* / *find* / *spend* time to visit our exhibition of students' artwork.
6 It's important to try to spend plenty of *welcome* / *convivial* / *quality* time with your family.
7 My sister's life is a constant *special* / *active* / *social* whirl.
8 I recommend you *pay* / *spend* / *go* a visit to the folk museum while you're in Dekksu.
9 Athens *threw* / *gave* / *played* host to the first modern Olympic Games in 1896.

19.3 Rewrite each sentence using a collocation from the opposite page. Then say whether the sentence you have written is more or less formal.

1 We could go to a nightclub later.
2 The restaurant has a really friendly atmosphere.
3 London is holding the Olympics in 2012.
4 She has a mad social life.
5 I have to go to a formal function on Thursday.
6 We invite you to join in the fun at the opening of the Arts Festival.
7 Grapsley Park is a great place for an outdoor concert.

19.4 Which do you prefer:

1 when you're too tired to cook, ordering a takeaway or eating out?
2 plain food or rich food?
3 having a family gathering or having a barbecue with friends?
4 giving a dinner party or going out for a meal?
5 paying your friends a visit or playing host to friends at your own home?
6 a whirlwind visit from a friend, or a relative who stays for a week?

20

Talking

A Types of language and conversation

Some conversations are not serious. They consist of **idle chatter**, in which the speakers just **exchange pleasantries**[1] or share **juicy**[2] **gossip** about their friends and colleagues, **exchanging** news and **spreading rumours**. **Rumours are always flying around** in any society, of course. But sometimes when you **engage someone in conversation**, it may become more serious. You may **open your heart** to the person you are talking to, for example. You may even find yourself **drawn into an argument**. Some people always want to **win an argument**; for others **losing the argument** is not important as they simply enjoy a good discussion. If you are in a very noisy place, it can become impossible to **carry on a conversation** of any kind and it is also hard for parents to **hold a conversation** when there are small children in the room.

[1] (formal) make polite conversation

[2] (informal) interesting because it is shocking or personal

B Managing topics

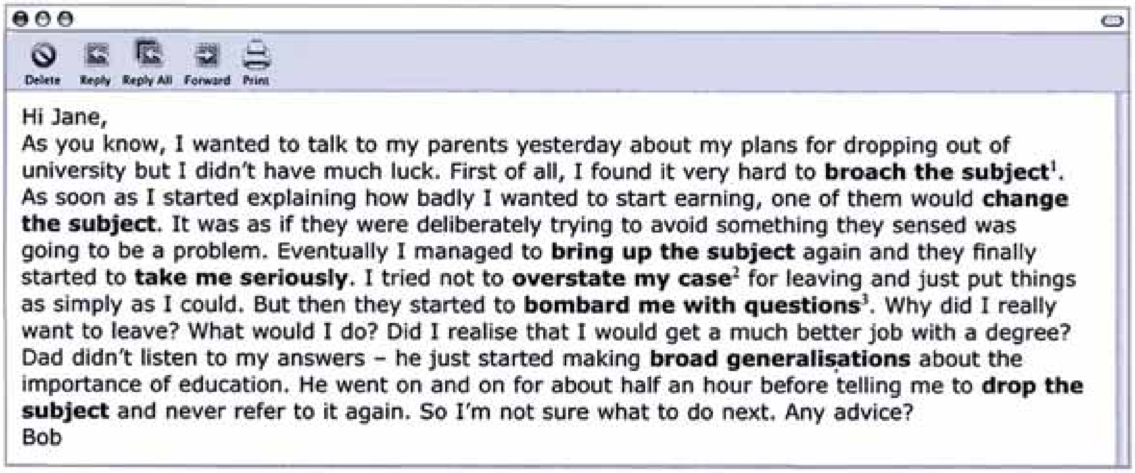

Hi Jane,

As you know, I wanted to talk to my parents yesterday about my plans for dropping out of university but I didn't have much luck. First of all, I found it very hard to **broach the subject**[1]. As soon as I started explaining how badly I wanted to start earning, one of them would **change the subject**. It was as if they were deliberately trying to avoid something they sensed was going to be a problem. Eventually I managed to **bring up the subject** again and they finally started to **take me seriously**. I tried not to **overstate my case**[2] for leaving and just put things as simply as I could. But then they started to **bombard me with questions**[3]. Why did I really want to leave? What would I do? Did I realise that I would get a much better job with a degree? Dad didn't listen to my answers – he just started making **broad generalisations** about the importance of education. He went on and on for about half an hour before telling me to **drop the subject** and never refer to it again. So I'm not sure what to do next. Any advice?

Bob

[1] begin a discussion of a difficult topic

[2] give too much importance or seriousness to a point of view

[3] ask me lots of questions

C Adjective + noun phrases

collocation	*example*	*meaning*
bad/strong/foul language	TV dramas today use much more **bad/strong/foul language** than they did 40 years ago.	swear words, taboo language; *foul* suggests much stronger disapproval than *bad* or *strong*
four-letter words	Please try to express your feelings without using **four-letter words**.	swear words, taboo words (many of which have four letters in English)
opening gambit	'You're a teacher, aren't you?' was his **opening gambit**.	a remark made in order to start a conversation
a rash promise	Don't make any **rash promises**. Think before you agree to anything.	promises made without thinking
an empty promise	She's full of **empty promises**. You shouldn't believe a word she says.	promises made which the speaker has no intention of keeping
a tough question	Do I regret anything? That's a **tough question**.	difficult question to answer

Exercises

20.1 Look at A. Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.

1 It can be hard to carry out a serious conversation in a noisy room.
2 He finds it very difficult to open his head and talk about his feelings to anyone.
3 I don't like discussing things with people who always want to gain every argument.
4 My mother always used to tell me not to spill unkind rumours.
5 I usually find it better not to get driven into an argument with Paul.
6 We had a very enjoyable time just sitting in the park enjoying some idling chatter.
7 I managed to resist all his attempts to engage me into conversation.
8 I've never talked to him much – we've done no more than change pleasantries.

20.2 Complete each sentence using a word from the box in the appropriate form.

bring broach drop hold lose strong take tough

1 I .... the argument because I didn't know enough about the subject.
2 I think it's time we .... the subject of our marriage with our parents.
3 No one will .... your ideas seriously unless you present them more effectively.
4 My mother can't get used to hearing well-dressed young people using .... language in public places.
5 Whenever I try to .... up the subject of moving to London, he leaves the room.
6 I've said I'm sorry – why can't you just .... the subject?
7 They're sure to ask you some .... questions at your interview but you can take time to think before you answer.
8 I felt so ill last week that I could barely .... a conversation.

20.3 Match the two parts of these collocations.

1 juicy	promise
2 broad	generalisations
3 exchange	gambit
4 take	question
5 four-letter	seriously
6 tough	word
7 rash	gossip
8 opening	news

20.4 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 Please stop talking about this subject immediately. (DROP)
2 Sam has a habit of promising things that he has no intention of doing. (EMPTY)
3 You must give due importance to the lab's safety regulations. (SERIOUSLY)
4 It's better not to spend too long trying to make your point. (OVERSTATE)
5 Could we please start talking about something else? (SUBJECT)
6 Did you hear the rumours that people were spreading about your boss last year? (FLYING)
7 There are rather a lot of rude words in the play. (LANGUAGE)
8 Such general statements tend to be rather meaningless. (BROAD)
9 The way he began the conversation took me by surprise. (GAMBIT)
10 The children asked me lots and lots of questions about my trip. (BOMBARD)

21 News

A Politicical headlines

A PM **CALLS** APRIL **ELECTION**[1]

B MINISTER **RESIGNS FROM OFFICE**

C PARTY **SECURES SLIM MAJORITY**[2]

D ISLANDS **DECLARE INDEPENDENCE**

E GOVERNMENT'S **HUMILIATING DEFEAT**

F PARTY **PRESENTS SHOW OF UNITY**[3]

G UNPOPULAR **REGIME TOPPLED**[4]

H LEFT **PROCLAIMS VICTORY**[5]

I ARMY **SEIZES POWER**

J PRESIDENT **DELIVERS** KEY **SPEECH**[6]

[1] officially announces that an election will take place
[2] wins a small majority
[3] publicly appears to be united
[4] (journalistic) made to fall (of regime or government)
[5] makes an official announcement of victory
[6] (formal, journalistic) makes/gives a speech

B News reports

The police have been carrying out a **nationwide search** for 22-year-old Chris Tait, who has not been seen since **trouble broke out** on Saturday night at the hotel where he was working. This evening they announced that they had found some **vital clues** but there are currently no plans to **call off the search**[1].

Following the robbery of over $10m from its main city branch, the bank has offered a **substantial reward** to anyone providing information leading to the **recovery of the money.**

Management and workers at the troubled Longside car factory have finally agreed to **enter into talks** and hopes are growing that they may soon **reach agreement.** The **dispute arose** some weeks ago when management tried to introduce new working conditions. Workers have **held demonstrations** in the city in support of Longside staff. Management described the situation as **a test of strength** and union attempts to **negotiate a settlement**[2] have so far proved unsuccessful. However, an independent arbitrator has **acted as a go-between**[3] and has succeeded in **brokering**[4] **an agreement** to talk.

TV chiefs have **bowed to**[5] **public pressure** and have **entered into an agreement** not to show scenes of gun violence on **prime-time**[6] **television.** They will **hold a press conference** later today where they will explain their decision to **impose** this degree of **censorship.**

[1] stop searching [2] have formal discussions in the hope of coming to an agreement
[3] delivered messages between people who were reluctant or unable to speak to each other
[4] arranging [5] given in to [6] most popular time of day for watching TV

Exercises

21.1 The sentences below come from the stories beneath some of the headlines in A. Which headline does each sentence go with? Two of the headlines are not used.

1 A military coup has taken place in the island kingdom of Grammaria and the country's popular monarch now faces exile.
2 In last night's vote, the Government's new education bill was rejected.
3 Paul Cox, minister in charge of public finance, has decided that he wishes to spend more time with his family.
4 Previous rifts between rival ministers would appear to have been healed.
5 The Conservatives have succeeded in gaining 200 of the 390 seats.
6 The country will now be going to the polls somewhat earlier than anticipated.
7 Widespread and well-orchestrated rebellions have achieved their aim of overthrowing the country's dictator.
8 The country has voted that it no longer wishes to be ruled by its 19th century colonisers.

21.2 Complete this newspaper item with collocations from the opposite page. The first letters are given to help you.

Last night the Culture Minister (1) d........................... a s........................... in which she promised to try to (2) b........................... an a........................... between the Government and the film industry with regard to the decision to (3) i........................... stricter c........................... on films. After the speech, which was broadcast (4) on p........................... t........................... , the Minister (5) h........................... a press c........................... . She promised to appoint an independent negotiator to (6) a........................... as a (7) g...........................-b........................... in the hope that the Government and the film industry would soon (8) r........................... a........................... .

21.3 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 The President has finally agreed to the public's demand to hold a referendum. (BOWED)
2 Early this morning the Eco-democratic Party announced it had won the election. (VICTORY)
3 The police detective discovered the clue which led to the stolen jewels being found. (RECOVERY)
4 The police will not stop searching until the child has been found. (CALL)
5 We were on holiday when the recent political troubles started. (BROKE)
6 The police are searching the whole country for the missing boy. (CARRYING)
7 The two parties will try to come to an agreement today. (SETTLEMENT)
8 Today thousands of students demonstrated against the increase in fees. (HELD)

21.4 Explain the difference between the sentences in each pair.

1 The rally is a test of the army's strength.
The rally is a show of the army's strength.
2 The police have found vital clues.
The police have found significant clues.
3 The woman has offered a small reward for the return of her cat.
The woman has offered a substantial reward for the return of her cat.
4 The politician delivered a passionate speech.
The politician made a passionate speech.
5 The countries involved in the dispute have agreed to enter into talks.
The countries involved in the dispute have entered into an agreement.

FOLLOW UP

Use a dictionary to find extra collocations for:

to hold a ....
to broker a ....
to .... (an) agreement
a .... majority

22

Current affairs

The collocations in this unit are typically used in the news media.

A Current affairs in the press

Golfer Rick Tate has issued an **abject**[1] **apology** for his **disorderly behaviour** at the weekend. However, he **refused point-blank**[2] to **provide an explanation** for his behaviour and today further **damaging disclosures**[3] about his private life have been published in *The Daily Planet*.

The Leader of the Opposition has accused the Prime Minister of **misleading the electorate** in his **public pronouncements** on security. He has demanded that the PM **clarify his position** without delay. The PM's office has **declined to comment**.

The head of the National Union of Students (NUS) has **re-opened the debate** on tuition fees as **evidence emerges** of government plans to raise them still further. The NUS is committed to **taking a firm stance**[4] against tuition fees and has **flatly rejected**[5] claims that it may be about to change its position.

The President has **issued a statement** relating to the health of her husband, who is **critically ill** in a private hospital following a massive heart attack. **Regular updates** on his condition will be provided.

Migrant workers **seeking permission**[6] to stay in this country may have to submit a **detailed account** of their work and personal lives to the visa authorities before they are **given leave** to stay.

[1] (formal) humble [2] completely refused
[3] sensitive, private information which has been revealed
[4] (formal) position [5] (formal) completely denied
[6] (formal) asking permission

B Feelings and reactions in connection with current affairs

verb + noun	*example*	*meaning*
take issue with	I **take issue with** some of the points made in the speech.	(formal) disagree with
gauge reaction	The government leaked the story to the press in order to **gauge** public **reaction**.	test the response
excite speculation	The incident has **excited speculation** that the couple may be about to divorce.	(formal) caused rumours to circulate
air a grievance	Workers have **aired their grievances** to reporters about the new pay structure.	(formal) complained

adjective + noun	*example*	*meaning*
a dissenting voice	When it came to the vote, there was only one **dissenting voice**.	(formal) person who disagreed
a vociferous opponent	Our local MP is a **vociferous opponent** of having a casino in our city.	someone who opposes something loudly and publicly
passionate entreaty	Plans to extend the airport went ahead, despite **passionate entreaties** from local residents.	requests made because of strong beliefs
a throwaway comment	I don't think the politician really meant to say he was leaving the party – it was just a **throwaway comment**.	an unintentional remark which should not be taken seriously

Exercises

22.1 Correct the two collocation errors in each sentence.

1 The committee, with one disagreeing voice, voted to take a firm post on the issue.
2 It was only a throwoff comment but it has thrilled a lot of speculation.
3 As new evidence submerges of government involvement in the scandal, people are beginning to question the Prime Minister's public pronunciations on the affair.
4 The prince refused blink-point to provide a detailing account of his actions that night.
5 The Minister was accused of mislaying the electorate when he said that very few migrant workers had been handed leave to stay in the country.

22.2 Look at A. Complete each sentence using the word in brackets in the appropriate form.

1 The film star's son was arrested for .... behaviour. (ORDER)
2 The reporter asked the Minister to .... the government's position on health service reform. (CLEAR)
3 The jury felt that the accused had been unable to provide a satisfactory .... as to why he had gone to the house. (EXPLAIN)
4 The council will issue a .... at the close of their meeting today. (STATE)
5 She .... rejected the allegation that she had a financial motive. (FLAT)
6 Anyone seeking .... for permanent residence here is subject to a set of standard checks. (PERMIT)
7 There have recently been a number of damaging .... in the press about the politician's personal financial affairs. (DISCLOSE)
8 After years of silence on the issue in the press, teachers are now hopeful that the debate on school discipline will be .... (OPEN)

22.3 Complete the second sentence using a collocation from the opposite page. Both sentences should have the same meaning.

1 The singer has strongly and publicly opposed the war.
The singer has been a .... of the war.
2 We carried out market research to see whether the public would like our new car.
We carried out market research to .... to our new car.
3 The rock star made an emotional request for the earthquake victims, which produced a huge response.
The rock star's .... for help for the earthquake victims produced a huge response.
4 The team will post accounts of their progress on their website every few days.
The team will post .... on their progress on their website.
5 The newsletter allows staff to complain openly about conditions.
The newsletter gives staff the chance to .... publicly.
6 I opposed the committee's stance on this matter.
I .... with the committee's stance on this matter.
7 The actor would not say anything about the accusations that had been made.
The actor .... on the accusations that had been made.
8 The doctors announced that the film star was very ill indeed.
The doctors announced that the film star was ....
9 The politician made a public statement humbly regretting his derogatory comments about the town.
The politician issued an .... for his derogatory comments about the town.

23

Festivals and celebrations

A Talking about festivals

Ballynoe Fiddle Festival (18 July)

This fun **festival falls on** the third Saturday of July, and the village becomes the centre of wild music for the whole day. The **festival celebrates** the birthday of Pat Davey, a famous local musician. This year's special guests include Anne O'Keeffe (fiddle) and Ger Downes (guitar), who will **uphold**[1] **the annual tradition** of playing at the house where Darvey was born.

Golden Apple Week (3-9 Sep)

Every year, the villagers of Hartsby **hold an unusual festival** – the Week of the Golden Apple. Hartsby, at the centre of the apple-growing region, celebrates this **tradition**, which **dates back to** the Middle Ages, at the beginning of every September. The festival is held to celebrate the apple harvest. Come and **join in the festivities** and eat as many apples as you want! Tickets £5 (children £2)

Fire and Light Festival (18 Dec)

It may be winter, dark and cold, but the village of Taft will be in **festive mood** on December 18th. **Wearing traditional dress**, the women of the village **perform dances** around a huge fire in the main square, while the men keep up **the age-old**[2] **tradition** of wearing large, brightly-coloured hats and carrying lanterns. The **event marks**[3] the beginning of the **festive season**[4].

[1] also *keep up*
[2] (journalistic/literary) very old
[3] also **festival marks**
[4] usually refers to the time around Christmas and New Year

B Traditional festivities

Different religions often have **movable feasts**[1] which depend on the phases of the moon.
There is a **rich tradition** of music and dance in central Sweden.
Jazz and blues are part of the **cultural heritage** of the southern United States.
Every year the town **puts on a** firework **display** as part of the festival.
We have a **proud tradition** of raising funds for charity through our annual town festival.
This month some of our students are **observing the festival of** Ramadan.
In a **break with tradition** this year's festival will feature modern dances alongside traditional ones.

[1] can refer to any arrangement, plan or appointment where the date is flexible

C A wedding celebration

Look at this speech by the best man (usually the bridegroom's best or oldest male friend) at a wedding. He mixes informal and formal collocations, which can have a humorous effect.

"Ladies and Gentlemen, according to **long-standing**[1] **tradition**, I now have to make a speech, but it'll be very short, so here goes. I never thought Jim would ever **get hitched**[2], but he's finally decided to **tie the knot**[3]. Yesterday he was suffering from **pre-wedding nerves**, but today he looked calm and happy as he and Sally were **joined in matrimony**[4]. So now, I'd like to **propose a toast**[5] to the bride and groom. Please **raise your glasses**. To Sally and Jim! May they have many years of **wedded bliss**[6]!"

[1] which has existed for along time [2/3] (informal) get married [4] (formal: used as part of the marriage ceremony) married [5] also **make a toast** [6] (usually used slightly humorously) happiness through being married

ERROR WARNING

Dress is an uncountable noun when it refers to a style of clothing (e.g. **traditional dress, formal dress**). Don't say *traditional dresses*; this would mean dresses for women only.

Exercises

23.1 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 This year's National Day festival	a traditional dance from the region.
2 In this region we have a rich	the tradition, despite opposition.
3 A group of children performed	festival in spring.
4 This year's festival represents a break	celebrates 50 years of independence.
5 The tradition of carol singing dates	of giving food to older villagers every new year.
6 The people are determined to uphold	with tradition, as it will be held in May.
7 The town holds its annual	tradition of poetry, music and dance.
8 Our village has a proud tradition	back hundreds of years.

23.2 Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.

1 All the men wore traditional dresses consisting of green jackets and white trousers.
2 The festival makes the beginning of the Celtic summer.
3 The festival is part of the region's cultural inherit.
4 Hundreds of people, locals and tourists, join on the festivities.
5 The annual 'Day of the Horse' drops on 30 March this year.
6 Everyone in the village was in feast mood as the annual celebrations began.
7 The average age at which couples tie the strings is rising.
8 This region has a ripe tradition of folk singing and dancing.
9 Getting joined to matrimony is a significant reason for celebration.
10 The area is famous for observing a number of age-standing traditions.

23.3 Read these remarks by different people. Then answer the questions.

Alicia: Grandparents Day is a movable feast, depending on when Easter falls.
Brona: Every year we put on a display of traditional arts and crafts.
Monica: Nowadays, only older people observe the Festival of the Dead.
Erik: The festive season usually gets underway towards the middle of December.
Evan: The harp is part of the cultural heritage of Wales.

1 Who is talking about the beginning of a period of celebration?
2 Who is talking about something that represents the identity of a group of people?
3 Who is talking about something that happens on a different day each year?
4 Who is talking about something that not everyone celebrates?
5 Who is talking about people organising an exhibition of some sort?

23.4 Answer these questions about weddings.

1 Does *get hitched* mean get (a) engaged (b) married (c) divorced?
2 What kind of happiness do married couples hope for?
3 What do the bride and bridegroom 'tie' when they get married?
4 What is the difference between making toast and making a toast?
5 What phrase means the nervousness people feel before they get married?
6 What formal expression is used in the marriage ceremony meaning to marry?
7 Why do people raise their glasses?
8 Are the two expressions referred to in questions 1 and 3 formal or informal?

FOLLOW UP

Look up a festival that is special in your country on the Internet. What information in English can you find about it? Make a note of any interesting collocations in the text. A good starting-point for your search might be: www.festivals.com.

24 Advertisements and fashion

A The language of advertisements

*Relax in the **sheer luxury** of a Florella Foam Bath.*

Florella
Foam
Bath

Enjoy the **unrivalled service** at our **exclusive restaurant** in London's West End.

For **long-lasting colour** and to treat **sun-damaged hair** use ***Tressy products***.

The Luxe is a very special hotel. With us you experience **gracious living** in truly **grand style**.

Daisy Oil will bring out the **natural highlights** in your hair.

EcoCream has **anti-ageing properties**. It has been **clinically proven** to **banish wrinkles**[1]. One application of this **luxury cream** will make **fine lines** and other signs of ageing disappear, leaving you with a **flawless complexion**.

You won't **pile on the pounds**[2] if you eat one of our **tasty snacks** whenever you're **feeling peckish**[3]. Each one is a mere 40 calories.

[1] get rid of lines
[2] put on weight
[3] (informal) feeling hungry

B Interview with a fashion model

Reporter: Would you say that fashion has always been important to you?

Beth: Well, ever since I was a child, I've loved reading **glossy magazines**[1], looking at the photos and finding out **what's in fashion**.

Reporter: And as you grew up, did you buy **designer label** clothes?

Beth: Oh, no! I couldn't afford them, and I was actually quite happy with **high-street fashion**[2]. But I loved looking at fashion shows on TV, especially when Paris or Milan designers **launched their new collections**.

Reporter: And now you are the one showing us the **new season's look**[3] and **setting the trend**[4]!

Beth: That's right. I still can't quite believe it.

Reporter: So what should we be wearing this year?

Beth: Well, there is a **stunning range** of new leisurewear about to **hit the high street**[5]. It's based on the new adventure-influenced trend we saw coming out of Paris and I think it's going to be a **hugely popular** look. And it's going to be comfortable to wear too.

Reporter: That's good. So, have you ever let yourself become a **fashion victim**[6]?

Beth: Well, I must admit I've worn some **excruciatingly uncomfortable** shoes in the past, so I'm happy to report that flat shoes are definitely **back in fashion**!

[1] magazines printed on high quality paper with lots of photos and adverts
[2] clothes bought in ordinary shops rather than from special fashion designers
[3] the new fashion style
[4] starting the fashion
[5] become available in chainstores
[6] a person who always wears fashionable clothes even if they make them look ridiculous or don't suit them

Exercises

24.1 Look at A. Add a word to each sentence to make the language typical of advertisements.

1 These vitamins have been proven to protect the body from winter viruses.
2 Our snacks cost only 24p.
3 Enjoy a weekend of luxury at the Highlands Health Hotel.
4 We manage a number of restaurants in Paris and New York.
5 Our new shampoo will subtly bring out the highlights in your hair.
6 Our lipsticks come in a range of colours.
7 We guarantee you will be impressed by the service provided by all our hotels.
8 Our new concealer will make the lines around your eyes disappear.

24.2 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 I don't believe those ads that claim their creams have anti-ageing	peckish.
2 While working in Austria I ate so many lovely cakes that I piled on the	hair.
3 Why not have a bowl of soup or a banana if you're feeling a bit	wrinkles.
4 We guarantee that you will see instant results with our luxury hand	magazines.
5 You should use this shampoo to revive your sun-damaged	style.
6 Sometimes I wish it were really possible to banish	cream.
7 The hotel gives all its guests the chance to experience gracious	restaurants.
8 We were invited to a banquet, where they entertained us in grand	properties.
9 At the airport she bought herself a couple of glossy	pounds.
10 This part of town is famous for its classy hotels and exclusive	living.

24.3 Complete this article from a fashion magazine using collocations from B. The first letters are given to help you.

A stunning (1) r...................... of new summer clothes is about to (2) h...................... a high street near you. Vibrant colours are (3) b...................... in fashion, and there were also many more practical designs in the collections (4) l...................... last week at the Paris fashion show than we have seen for some time. The Paris designs instantly (5) s...................... the trends which have quickly been taken up and adapted for the mass market. Such adaptations for the (6) h...................... street fashion stores may not carry designer (7) l...................... but they allow us all to wear the new (8) s...................... look. We are confident that this will be a hugely (9) p...................... look as it is designed with comfort as well as elegance in mind. So there's no need to be a fashion (10) v...................... this summer!

24.4 Find three collocations for each word. One is in this unit. Use a dictionary or online corpus (see Unit 4) to find two more.

1
luxury ....
....
....

2
excruciatingly ....
....
....

3
flawless ....
....
....

4
unrivalled ....
....
....

5
launch a ....
....
....

6
exclusive ....
....
....

25 Traffic and driving

A Traffic problems

Traffic has been **severely disrupted**[1] on the M82 motorway, owing to an accident. Currently all **traffic** is being **diverted**[2] through the village of Oxtoe. Motorists are advised to avoid the area as **heavy traffic** is expected on many side roads for the rest of the day.

Traffic is very **dense**[3] on all routes into the city at the moment because of this evening's football cup final. **Lengthy delays** are expected around the National Stadium area. The heavy **traffic** is not expected to **die down**[4] till around 10pm. So walk or cycle to the match if you want to avoid getting **stuck in traffic**.

If you're thinking of using the N27 this morning, don't! Traffic is currently **tailing back**[5] over ten kilometres, following an accident near junction 14. Police say **traffic is building up** on all approach roads and is not expected to **ease off**[6] during the next three hours.

[1] prevented from continuing as usual
[2] made to take a different route
[3] very close together
[4] gradually become less
[5] forming a long queue
[6] gradually become less (similar to *die down*)

B Learning to drive

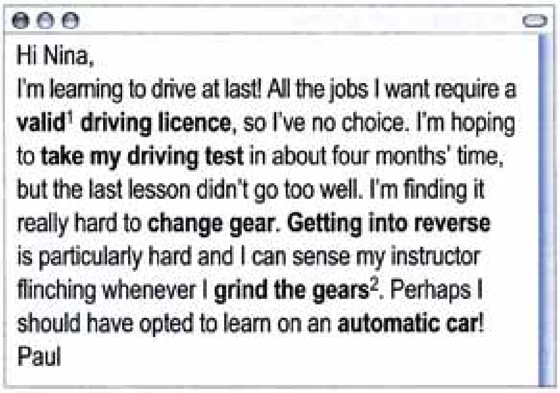

Hi Nina,

I'm learning to drive at last! All the jobs I want require a **valid**[1] **driving licence**, so I've no choice. I'm hoping to **take my driving test** in about four months' time, but the last lesson didn't go too well. I'm finding it really hard to **change gear**. **Getting into reverse** is particularly hard and I can sense my instructor flinching whenever I **grind the gears**[2]. Perhaps I should have opted to learn on an **automatic car**!

Paul

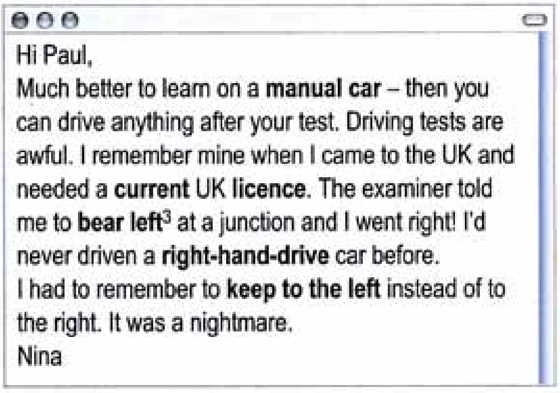

Hi Paul,

Much better to learn on a **manual car** – then you can drive anything after your test. Driving tests are awful. I remember mine when I came to the UK and needed a **current** UK **licence**. The examiner told me to **bear left**[3] at a junction and I went right! I'd never driven a **right-hand-drive** car before.

I had to remember to **keep to the left** instead of to the right. It was a nightmare.

Nina

[1] currently in use or acceptable [2] change gear roughly and noisily [3] change direction slightly towards the left

C A new kind of transport

A bike that travels sideways

It has been **hailed as** the first **major development** in bicycle design for 150 years. The Sideways Bike has a steerable wheel with **a set of handlebars** at either end. The cyclist sits sideways and operates a wheel with each hand. However, some people don't like the fact that the rider doesn't face the **oncoming traffic**. Its **key advantage** is that it's more manoeuvrable than a conventional bike. It's very like snowboarding because you're **moving sideways**. That affords you tremendous grace, though it will never win you the Tour de France!

Exercises

25.1 Choose the correct collocation.

1 After the accident the traffic *failed / tailed / held* back for more than five miles.
2 The traffic didn't die *back / up / down* until long after the rock concert.
3 Traffic is being *disrupted / dispensed / diverted* onto the B2534 because of an accident on the M73 motorway.
4 The traffic starts *rising up / building up / massing up* in the city centre around 4pm.
5 When the lorry broke down, traffic was severely *disrupted / diverted / disturbed* for several hours.
6 When you come into the town, *hold / maintain / keep* to the left, then *bear / drive / hold* left at the first roundabout.

25.2 Replace the underlined part of each sentence using a collocation from the opposite page with the opposite meaning.

1 There was light traffic on the motorway at the time of the accident. (give two answers)
2 The traffic built up after the match was over. (give two answers)
3 I have an outdated driving licence. (give two answers)
4 Brief delays are expected on all routes because of the start of the holiday weekend.
5 Bear right at the next junction.
6 I much prefer to drive an automatic car.
7 I don't know how he manages to change gear smoothly like that.
8 His invention was said to be a minor development in aeronautics.

25.3 Complete each sentence using a word from the opposite page.

1 I always find it difficult in this car to get into .... when I need, for example, to back into a parking space.
2 The handlebars on my bike got twisted in the accident – I'm going to have to get a new ....
3 Being able to get through rush hour traffic quickly is the key .... of travelling by bike.
4 Electric cars were hailed as a major .... in automotive engineering.
5 In an automatic car you don't need to .... gear manually.
6 The policeman pointed out that my licence was no longer .... – it expired last week.
7 I .... my driving test three times before I eventually passed it.
8 The traffic is always particularly .... on the main road coming into town in the rush hour.

25.4 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using the word in brackets in the appropriate form.

1 I was in a car with the steering-wheel on the right. (HAND)
2 Crabs are one of the few creatures that do not move in a forwards direction. (SIDE)
3 I took the examination to become a qualified driver in 1999. (TEST)
4 The jet engine was soon understood to be a major development in aircraft design. (HAIL)
5 The best thing about manual cars is that there is less that can go wrong with them. (KEY)
6 People were being delayed at the airport for hours because of the fog. (LENGTHY)
7 There were major traffic problems on the ring road this morning. (SEVERE)
8 I got held up by a traffic jam on my way to the airport. (STUCK)
9 Be careful and always be aware of the traffic that is coming towards you. (COME)

26 Travel and adventure

A An exciting trip

Read Catherine's account of her trip to South America.

I'd always had **a thirst for adventure** and often **get itchy feet** so I could hardly **contain my excitement** when I set off for South America for a year. After a 12-hour flight to São Paulo, Brazil, I had another long flight to Manaus in the Amazon. Then I went by bus to a smaller town. It was a very **arduous**[1] **journey**. I should have **broken the journey**[2] somewhere but I did it all in one go. Next time, I'll **have a stopover**[3] in São Paolo, have a bit of a rest and **do the sights** there before travelling on.

After two fantastic weeks in the Amazon I got a flight on a **low-cost airline** to Rio de Janeiro. I then tried to get a flight to Peru but they were all full, so they **put me on standby**[4]. Luckily I got a seat on the flight I wanted.

In Peru I **went trekking** in the Andes with a group. The guide took us **off the beaten track** and I felt like an **intrepid**[5] **explorer** from another century in some **unexplored wilderness**. There was a real **sense of adventure**. One day we actually got **hopelessly lost**. It was getting dark and we were afraid they'd have to **send out a search party** to look for us. But then we met some locals who were very friendly and helped us get back on to our path. It was a great trip.

[1] difficult, tiring, needing a lot of effort [2] stopped for a short time [3] have a brief (usually) overnight stay in a place when on a long journey to somewhere else, usually by air
[4] made me wait to see if a seat became available [5] brave, with no fear of dangerous situations

B Articles about travel adventures

Note the collocations in these brief magazine items about travel adventures.

Some longed-for **sunny spells** have **boosted** the **spirits**[1] of three British women hoping to set a polar trekking record. The women have **faced severe weather conditions** since setting off to walk to the North Pole 18 days ago. However, the team's base camp manager said she had spoken to them yesterday by satellite phone and they had been relieved to report the weather was sunny and **their spirits were high**[2].

London to Tangier by train: Whilst this journey may not compare in terms of **sheer epic grandeur** to some of the great American train journeys, it does **have a special charm** all of its own. It may not be cheap but if you **keep your eyes peeled**[3], you can find some surprisingly good deals. If **your budget doesn't quite stretch to**[4] a sleeping compartment, you can always just curl up in your seat for the night. Let the rhythmical motion and the dull rumbles of the train **lull you to sleep**. The first **leg of the journey** gives you very little indication of what lies ahead ...

[1] made feel more cheerful [2] they were in a positive mood [3] (informal) keep your eyes open
[4] you can't afford

TIP There are many English language websites relating to the theme of travel and adventure. Try, for example, a magazine site such as www.nationalgeographic.com or an adventure travel company such as www.keadventure.com.

Exercises

26.1 Complete these descriptions of TV documentaries using a word from the box.

arduous beaten intrepid sense sights trekking unexplored

1 John Howes presents essential holiday tips for those heading off the .... track, while Anneke Zousa does the .... of New York in record time.

2 In this fascinating film, Grieshaus gives us a picture of the largely .... wilderness of the Kara Kum Desert.

3 Like a(n) .... explorer of the nineteenth century, James Westly travelled with only two companions.

4 In 1957, Anna Trensholm went .... through the mountains of North-Eastern Turkey and filmed every step of her way. This unique footage reveals the harshness of her .... journey.

5 This film conveys a genuine .... of adventure, as we travel with its makers through the dense jungles of Guyana.

26.2 Choose the correct collocations.

I have always had itchy (1) *hands / feet / fingers* and last summer I had the amazing opportunity to travel to the – for me at least – (2) *unexplored / unplanned / unprepared* territory of the Gobi Desert. My budget wouldn't (3) *spread / stretch / afford* to travelling on a normal flight but I couldn't find a (4) *low-cost / low-key / low-cut* airline to fly me there. In the end, I got a (5) *stand-up / stand-off / standby* ticket and it was not too expensive. Once there I joined a group and we made a journey on horseback into the desert. You wouldn't believe the sheer (6) *very / mere / epic* grandeur of the region. If you keep your eyes (7) *peeled / scaled / washed* you can see all sorts of amazing plants and creatures. We were lucky with the weather. We were told that the previous group had had to (8) *meet / face / address* severe weather (9) *circumstances / coincidences / conditions.* Our main problem was that one day we got (10) *hopelessly / fearlessly / carelessly* lost and they had to send out a search (11) *group / party / set* to find us. We felt so stupid. Anyway, the Gobi Desert may not be everyone's choice of holiday destination but I can assure you that it (12) *does / gets / has* a very special charm of its own.

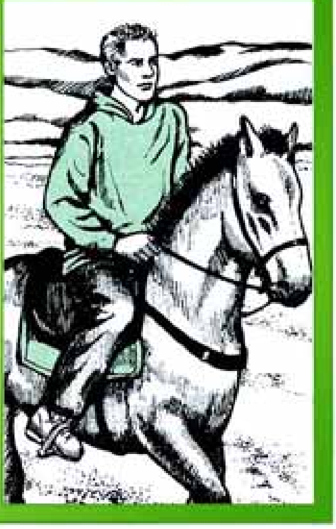

26.3 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 At the beginning the journey was straightforward. (LEG)
2 I couldn't afford to travel first class. (STRETCH)
3 After we arrived at our base camp we felt more cheerful. (BOOSTED)
4 There will be periods of sunshine in most areas today. (SPELLS)
5 We broke our journey to Australia in Singapore. (STOPOVER)
6 Jack has always longed to have adventures. (THIRST)
7 Grandmother is very cheerful today. (SPIRITS)
8 The movement of the ship helped me to fall asleep. (LULLED)

26.4 Use a dictionary or online corpus (see Unit 4) to find two more collocations for these words.

1 arduous 2 wilderness 3 uncharted

27 Sport

A Emails about a sports camp

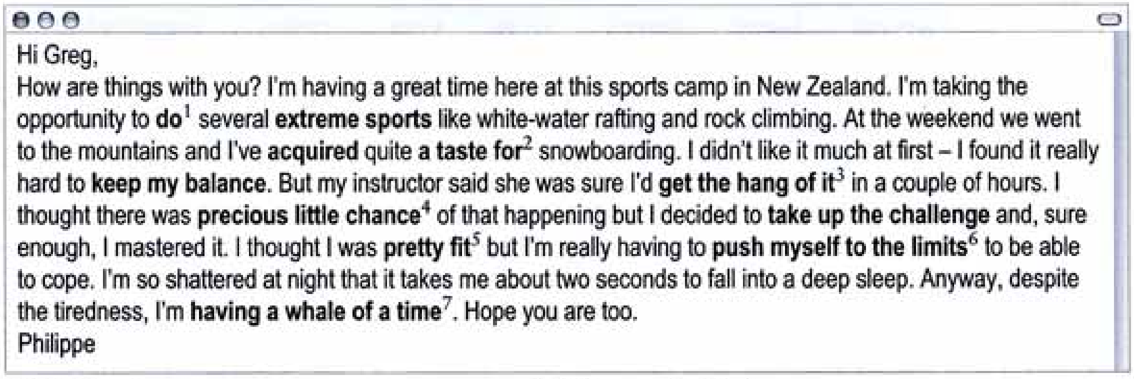

Hi Greg,

How are things with you? I'm having a great time here at this sports camp in New Zealand. I'm taking the opportunity to **do**[1] several **extreme sports** like white-water rafting and rock climbing. At the weekend we went to the mountains and I've **acquired** quite **a taste for**[2] snowboarding. I didn't like it much at first – I found it really hard to **keep my balance**. But my instructor said she was sure I'd **get the hang of it**[3] in a couple of hours. I thought there was **precious little chance**[4] of that happening but I decided to **take up the challenge** and, sure enough, I mastered it. I thought I was **pretty fit**[5] but I'm really having to **push myself to the limits**[6] to be able to cope. I'm so shattered at night that it takes me about two seconds to fall into a deep sleep. Anyway, despite the tiredness, I'm **having a whale of a time**[7]. Hope you are too.

Philippe

[1] NOT ~~make~~
[2] begun to enjoy
[3] (informal) become able to do something
[4] (informal) very little chance
[5] (informal) fairly fit
[6] make a considerable effort
[7] (informal) having a fantastic time

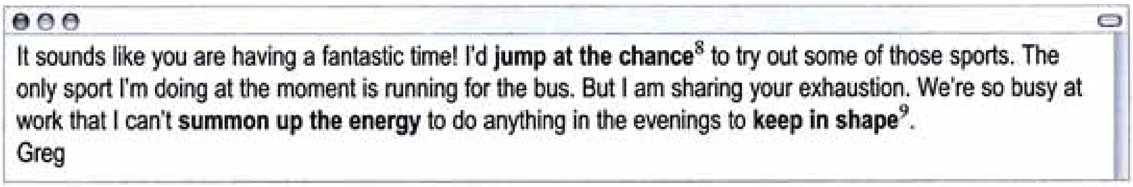

It sounds like you are having a fantastic time! I'd **jump at the chance**[8] to try out some of those sports. The only sport I'm doing at the moment is running for the bus. But I am sharing your exhaustion. We're so busy at work that I can't **summon up the energy** to do anything in the evenings to **keep in shape**[9].

Greg

[8] (informal) really like to do something
[9] stay in good physical condition

B Sports news

The mood amongst the crowd **reached fever pitch**[1] at yesterday's match between India and Pakistan. In the last few minutes of the game Khan **played a blinder**[2] and secured **a convincing victory** for Pakistan.

In the cricket match between Australia and South Africa the **score** currently **stands at** 65 for 3 wickets. We'll bring you the **latest scores** on the hour, every hour.

[1] became very excited/agitated
[2] (informal) performed brilliantly, usually in sport

C Match reports

The teams **took the field**[1] to the applause of 5,000 spectators. Despite **putting up** a determined **performance**, the England team seemed unable to **break through the** formidable Australian **defence**. After some impressive tackles, Australia was **awarded a penalty** just before half time. The **penalty was missed**, much to the delight of ...

Yesterday's match was full of excitement with three players being **given yellow cards** and some controversial **free kicks**. The game was lost when the Blues **scored an own goal**[2] in the last two minutes. The crowd **went wild**[3].

[1] went on the pitch
[2] scored a goal in error against their own team
[3] became crazy with excitement (can also be used for other emotions, such as rage)

TIP

Listen to commentaries in English relating to a sport that interests you and find a website dedicated to that sport. Note down any collocations about that sport that you notice being frequently used. You may find this website useful: www.bbc.co.uk/fivelive/sport.

Exercises

27.1 **Look at A. Choose the correct collocation.**

1 I'm finding it hard to *summon up / acquire / reach* the energy to do anything much in the evenings these days.
2 Have you ever tried any *formidable / fever / extreme* sports?
3 I didn't realise how difficult the marathon would be when I originally *took / had / got* up the challenge.
4 I don't think I could ever *acquire / educate / achieve* a taste for bungee jumping.
5 I'd *rise / jump / take* at the chance of a trip to Venice if I were offered one!
6 It won't take you long to get the *balance / taste / hang* of cross-country skiing as you're such an experienced downhill skier.

27.2 **Complete each sentence using a word from the page opposite.**

1 Don't .... yourself to the limits now. Conserve some strength for later on.
2 I'm having a .... of a time learning how to surf, though I find it almost impossible to .... my balance.
3 There's precious little .... of your getting her to go for a long walk today.
4 I've just heard the .... scores. Italy's winning and excitement's reaching fever ....
5 The score in the rugby match currently .... at 27 to 5 and France looks set to win a convincing ....
6 You must try harder to keep in .... over the winter. You could walk to work instead of going by bus, for example.
7 John Shane was given a yellow .... for performing an illegal tackle on an opponent.
8 The captain took the free .... and it reached Jobbs, who instantly scored.
9 Fortunately for Wales, Scotland .... every penalty that they were .... during the match.
10 When the headteacher offered a prize to the pupils who built the best raft over the holidays, children from every class decided to take up the ....

27.3 **Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.**

1 I'd love to meet Johnny Depp, wouldn't you? (JUMP)
2 The spectators stood and clapped as the teams went on to the pitch. (TOOK)
3 You should only attempt this climb if you have a reasonable level of fitness. (PRETTY)
4 The crowd was extremely excited at the end of the match. (WILD)
5 We very much enjoyed our time in Australia. (WHALE)
6 I decided to be brave and start my own business. (CHALLENGE)
7 The little boy soon learnt how to ride his bike without stablisers. (HANG)
8 The team captain felt dreadful when he kicked the ball into his own team's goal. (OWN)

27.4 **Complete each sentence using the word in brackets in the appropriate form.**

1 I get the .... football scores sent through to my mobile. (LATE)
2 The home team won a .... victory. (CONVINCE)
3 Our team put up an excellent .... (PERFORM)
4 It took some time before our team succeeded in breaking through the Reds' .... and scoring our first goal. (DEFEND)
5 The team captain helped to win the game by playing a .... (BLIND)

28 Plans and decisions

A Decisions and solutions

Hans Brokaw, head of a company making garden furniture, is announcing to his senior staff **plans** he is **making** to move the business exclusively to the Internet.

As you know, for some time now we've been **toying**[1] **with the idea** of transferring all our business to Internet-only sales as a **long-term solution** to the problem of finding good retail outlets. You'll remember that at the last team meeting Rob **unveiled**[2] **a plan** to move the line to the web in three phases over nine months. And Philippa did a great job **drumming up support**[3] for the move among the sales and marketing people. Since then, as you also know, we've had a **slight change of plan**, and, **acting on a suggestion**[4] from the logistics team, we've now decided that the move should happen over 12 months. In order to **implement**[5] such **a plan**, we need to **draw up a schedule** and **stick to**[6] that **schedule.**

So I'd like to make a **tentative suggestion**[7]. Before we **launch the scheme**, I think we should invite the web designers to come here and take us through the process from their side. That will give us the opportunity to **exercise greater control** over things. I don't think we should just **leave** everything **to their discretion**[8]. I'm just aware of how important it's going to be to **cover every eventuality**[9] before we commit 100% to the Internet.

We propose to end our relationship with the garden centres where we currently sell. We've reached this decision **after careful consideration.** We do believe that realistically it's the only **option open to us. The deciding factor** was losing our biggest customer – the Greenway garden centre chain. After that, we really had no choice.

[1] considering, but not in a focused way [2] showed / made known for the first time
[3] increasing support for something [4] doing something as a result of a suggestion
[5] put into operation [6] keep to [7] a suggestion that you are not sure will be accepted
[8] leave everything to their judgement [9] consider all possible situations and difficulties

B Making plans

Note the collocations in this speech at the start of an annual youth summit.

Good morning, friends, and welcome to our summit, the first of what we plan as an annual event! I have been waiting for this day with **eager anticipation**[1] for a long time. We **came up with the idea** five years ago and **preparations have been underway**[2] ever since. There was a certain amount of **necessary groundwork**[3] to do, of course, before our sponsors were able to **reach the decision** to support us. But then we were able to turn our attention to how best to **put** our ideas **into practice.**

[1] feeling of great excitement about something that is going to happen [2] happening
[3] work done in preparation

C Rejecting plans

Someone may **declare outright opposition** or **outright hostility** to a plan. [say they are completely opposed/hostile] A plan can be **rejected out of hand.** [totally rejected] Those who do not like a plan or piece of work may offer **constructive criticism.** [criticism which is useful and intended to help or improve]

ERROR WARNING

Note that we **come to** or **arrive at** a conclusion, NOT ~~make~~ a conclusion.

Exercises

28.1 **Match the two parts of these collocations.**

1 unveil	every eventuality
2 stick to	a lot of support
3 make	something a reality
4 leave it	a schedule
5 drum up	a plan
6 cover	to someone's discretion

28.2 **Complete each conversation to make B agree with what A says.**

1 A: I think we should do what Hilary is proposing.
B: Yes, I think we should definitely act .... her suggestion.
2 A: We need to make a timetable for what needs to be done.
B: Yes, we need to draw .... a schedule.
3 A: We need a lot of discussion before we can put the scheme into operation.
B: Yes, we need a couple of meetings before we can implement the ....
4 A: We need to be able to have more influence over what's happening.
B: I agree. We must .... greater control over things.
5 A: It's not an answer to the problem that will solve it permanently.
B: I agree. It's not a .... solution.
6 A: We don't really have that choice.
B: I agree. That .... is not open to us.

28.3 **Complete each sentence using a word from the box.**

change consideration factor groundwork launch outright suggestion

1 After careful .... , we decided not to sell the business.
2 We'll do the necessary .... and then .... the scheme in May.
3 I was very shocked to encounter such .... hostility to my plan.
4 Money is always the deciding .... in business decisions.
5 It was only a tentative .... , not a final decision.
6 There's been a slight .... of plan, I'm afraid.

28.4 **Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.**

1 Final preparations for the music festival are now undergone.
2 I was very upset when they rejected my suggestions out of foot.
3 The company came on with the idea of encouraging customers to recycle packaging.
4 I don't think you will find it easy to get your ideas into practice.
5 He declared his offright opposition to the plan.
6 Constructed criticism is always welcome, but negative criticism is not.

28.5 **Complete the word puzzle.**

Across
1 It's difficult to put the idea into — .
Down
1 There's been a change of — .
2 We need to — a decision today.
3 He always leaves me to — the plans for our holidays.
4 We should — on this suggestion at once.
5 I tend to — with an idea before making a decision.
6 The kids are full of — anticipation.

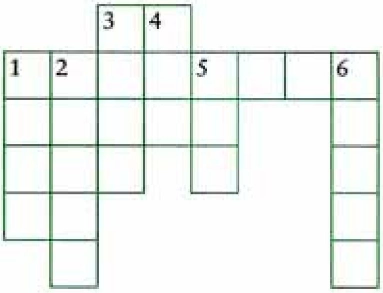

29 Film and book reviews

Note the collocations in these reviews of the same film from different publications.

Quality newspapers

Larissa is an excellent film. It tells the story of what happens when a young woman decides to try to find out what really happened to her grandmother, who disappeared in Russia in the 1930s under mysterious circumstances. As the **suspense builds up**, Larissa sets off **an amazing chain of events**. It's an incredibly gripping film and its direction shows **startling originality**.

It was certainly a **bold experiment**[1] to cast Jenni Adams as a woman twice her age, but Jenni is a very **accomplished actor** and a **consummate professional**[2], and she carried it off brilliantly. And the rest of the **star-studded cast** gave a **dazzling display** of their talents too. The film, which documents an extraordinary **series of events**, was **spectacularly successful** in the US – the New York Times gave it **glowing reviews**[3], and not without good reason.

[1] a brave and risky thing to do [2] (formal) complete professional [3] very positive reviews

Popular (tabloid) newspaper

Whoever decided to **cast** Jenni Adams **in the role of** the disappearing grandma in *Larissa* must have been out of their mind. An **unmitigated disaster**[4], **strongly influenced**[5] by the very worst kind of Hollywood sentimentality. The only good thing was the theme music. Perhaps they'll **release the CD** of it – that would be something. The cinema next door was showing *Screech of the Vampire* – now that I would **highly recommend**[6] ... if you **can bear the suspense**[7]!

[4] total disaster [5] or **heavily influenced**, but NOT ~~highly~~ influenced
[6] **thoroughly recommend** is also possible [7] can stand the excitement

Entertainment magazine

I usually **think highly** of Joel Hanson's films but this one, based on a novel by Slevan Gorsky, is a **dismal failure.** In spite of the **all-star cast**, the film just didn't **hold my attention** the way the book did. I was a college student when I read it, but it made a **lasting impression**[8] on me. It **fired my imagination** more than any other book has ever done, and **awakened my interest** in Russia in the 1930s so much that my poor old bookshelves are groaning with books on Russian history! The film, however, simply failed to **create**[9] **the atmosphere** of Leningrad in the 1930s which the book achieved so successfully.

[8] We can also say **an indelible impression,** meaning a permanent one [9] also **evoke an atmosphere**

ERROR WARNING

Someone can have a **considerable reputation** or a **well-deserved** reputation, but NOT a ~~high~~ reputation.

Exercises

29.1 Complete the review using words from the opposite page. The first letter is given to help you.

The recently released film, *1,000 Nights*, does not have a (1) s................................. cast but it will not fail to make a (2) l................................. impression with its startling (3) o................................. and its dazzling (4) d................................. of new talent. Jon Hayden is cast in the (5) r................................. of Tim Alexon, a man of principles trying to make his way in the world of big business. It is Hayden's first appearance on the big screen, but he shows himself as an exceptionally (6) a................................. actor playing the little man caught up in an intriguing and at times terrifying (7) s................................. of events. The use of unknown actors was a bold (8) e................................. but it turned out to be (9) s................................. successful. *1,000 Nights* will (10) f................................. the imagination of even the most cynical of viewers.

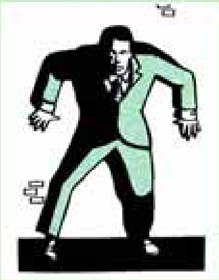

29.2 Cross out the option which *cannot* be used in each sentence.

1 Alla Repina has a *high / considerable / well-deserved* reputation as a character actor.
2 The *all-star / star-studded / starring* cast is set to make the film a box-office success.
3 My cousin *highly / spectacularly / thoroughly* recommended the play.
4 The plot is based on an extraordinary *series / burst / chain* of events that happened in New York in the early 1800s.
5 The stage sets were obviously *strongly / highly / heavily* influenced by the work of the surrealist artist, Salvador Dali.
6 The film made a(n) *consummate / lasting / indelible* impression on me.
7 The author *evoked / created / wrote* a magical atmosphere.

29.3 Complete each sentence using a word from the opposite page.

1 I admire that producer because he is such a consummate ....
2 We all began to feel increasingly nervous as the suspense built ....
3 All that writer's books have received glowing ....
4 The central character's actions set off an amazing chain of ....
5 To my mind the play is an unmitigated ....
6 Making a film lasting six hours was quite a bold ....
7 I'm afraid the novel didn't really succeed in holding my ....
8 I couldn't watch the film at the most exciting point – I just couldn't bear the ....

29.4 Name the following:

1 a CD that has been recently released.
2 a film director whom you think highly of.
3 a film that has recently been spectacularly successful.
4 a book that has awakened your interest in a different place or period of history.

29.5 Two of the collocations on the opposite page are strongly negative ways of saying that something did not succeed. Which are they?

FOLLOW UP

Go to www.imdb.com (The Internet Movie Database) and read some of the items and reviews there. Make a note of any useful collocations not in this unit.

30 Regulations and authority

A Health and safety regulations

Dear colleague,

As you are probably aware, the Government has recently **passed** new **laws** relating to health and safety in the workplace. These new **regulations** have been **introduced**[1] to **standardise procedure** in workplaces across the country and ensure that employers **adhere to standards**.

The enclosed guide details the steps you need to take in order to **comply with** these new **laws**. All employers **have an obligation** to **carry out a risk assessment**[2]. Failure to do so will leave us **in breach of the law**[3]. The purpose of the risk assessment is to **minimise danger** to employees and also to make it easier for employers to **satisfy the requirements** of the regulations.

All department heads **have an obligation** to read the information in the guide carefully. Please do so, and if you have any further questions, I will be happy to answer them.

Bill Lloyd

Health and Safety Officer

[1] also *brought in* [2] an exercise to identify and assess risks [3] (formal) breaking the law

ERROR WARNING

We say We could not **arrive at an agreement** or We could not **reach an agreement**, NOT We could not ~~get to~~ or We could not ~~find~~ an agreement.

B Planning permission

If you wish to build, say, an extension to your house, it is **absolutely essential**[1] to **seek permission**[2] to do so. If your **plan is approved**, then you will be **granted permission**[3] to build. But it is becoming more difficult to **obtain permission**[4] as the government has **introduced new legislation** which has **tightened controls**[5]. It can take quite some time after **putting in an application** for **permission to be given**. This is because the planning officers have to ensure that your plans do not **infringe the regulations**[6] relating to building in your area.

Be wary of treating the planning officers as **faceless bureaucrats**[7]; they are **in a position of** considerable **authority**, though some of them are more vigorous about **exercising authority**[8] than others. Some will be prepared to **cut through the red tape**[9] for you, whereas others might seem to be doing everything they can to block your plans, especially if they think you are trying to **flout the rules**[10].

[1] NOT ~~very~~ essential
[2] (formal) ask for permission
[3] (formal) given permission
[4] (formal) receive permission
[5] made the rules tougher
[6] (formal) break the rules
[7] used as an insult to officials, suggesting that they lack character
[8] (formal) using that authority
[9] deal quickly and effectively with bureaucratic procedures
[10] (formal) intentionally break the rules

TIP

Language relating to the law and to regulations often has its own very special, often formal, collocations. These are more likely to be used in written than spoken English so avoid using them in informal speech.

Exercises

30.1 Complete these collocations from A using a word from the box.

1 .... requirements
2 .... an obligation
3 .... at an agreement
4 .... out a risk assessment
5 .... a new law
6 .... in regulations
7 .... to standards
8 .... authority

adhere
bring
exercise
pass
arrive
carry
have
satisfy

30.2 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence to make it more formal.

1 You will be punished if you continue to ignore the rules.
2 All our sister organisations stick to the standards listed in the Code of Practice.
3 We asked for permission to build on a field next to our house and after some time we were given that permission.
4 It is important that all citizens should do what the law says they should do.
5 If your business doesn't meet the legal requirements, you may find yourself prosecuted for breaking company law.

30.3 Complete this letter of complaint using words from the opposite page.

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing to complain about the behaviour of our town council. When its members were elected to (1) .... of authority, they promised to (2) .... the ridiculous amount of red tape that is choking modern society. Yet all they have done is (3) .... still more pointless new legislation, thus (4) .... controls over the ordinary family. They have turned out to be no better than their predecessors, (5) .... bureaucrats, all of them. Their latest decision – to (6) .... a plan to build a multi-million new council office block – is an absolute disgrace!

Yours faithfully,

W. Hinger

30.4 Complete the word puzzle.

Across

1 The builders had friends in high places and got away with flouting the — for several years.
2 It is hard to find staff who — all our requirements.
3 Extreme sports are risky, but we do all we can to minimise the — to participants.
4 I chose not to — my authority and impose a punishment as it was a special holiday.
5 It is absolutely — that we do not put staff at risk.
6 By building a house without permission the builder found himself in — of the law.
7 It took time but eventually we — permission to demolish our garage.

Down

1 Before the shop opens for business you must carry out a — .

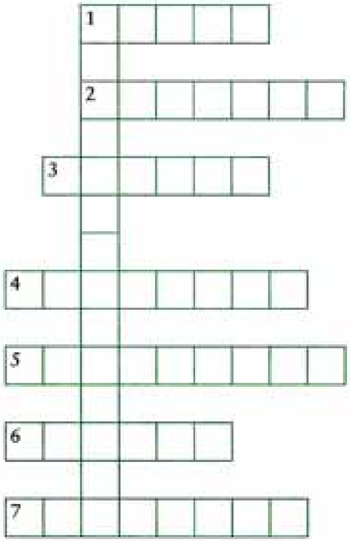

30.5 Find one other possible collocation for each of the verbs in the box in 30.1. Use a dictionary to help you.

31

The environment

A Damaging the environment

Read this extract from a report on getting rid of waste.

> **Disposal of household waste** is a daunting task for local authorities. Towns and cities cannot just **dump**[1] such **waste** and hope it will go away. Household waste contains many materials and substances which are extremely **harmful to the environment**, and authorities need long-term solutions. Efforts to **recycle waste** are only a partial solution. Meanwhile, the problem of **toxic**[2] **waste** remains. One expert recently warned that the risks to **public health** are so great that we may have less than a decade to avoid an **environmental catastrophe** on a global scale.

[1] dispose of in an irresponsible manner [2] poisonous

B Climate change and its consequences

Here is an interview with Gary Prime, the American rock star known for his support of environmental campaigns, who is visiting London.

Interviewer: Would you agree that climate change is the most urgent issue facing us today?

Prime: Definitely. You only have to look at the changing **weather patterns** in many parts of the world. It's **absolutely vital** that we **change our ways** before it's too late. Parts of Europe which used to be cooler now experience intense, **searing heat**[1], and **temperatures soar** above the average every summer. Other areas suffer **widespread flooding** on a regular basis. We can't continue in this way without there being **dire**[2] **consequences.**

Interviewer: So what can people do in the face of this **irreversible climate change?**

Prime: Yes, there is. We can all **reduce our carbon footprint**[3] by flying less, and reduce our **food miles**[4] by buying local produce. Some airlines have schemes now for **offsetting carbon emissions**[5].

Interviewer: Flying's only one part of it, though. Most of the problems come from **vehicle emissions** and power stations.

Prime: True, but there are things we can do about that too. Buy a **hybrid car**[6], develop **alternative energy sources** for homes, **solar heating** for instance, and build more **offshore**[7] **wind farms.** Oil supplies will **run dry**[8] within 50 years. **Renewable energy** can make a real difference. And politicians shouldn't be afraid of **introducing green taxes**[9] and incentives to encourage **eco-friendly design** in architecture. With sufficient will, we can **find a solution.**

Interviewer: Gary Prime, thank you for giving up your time for this interview.

Prime: No problem, I've got just enough time to catch my flight to Los Angeles.

[1] extreme heat [2] extremely serious [3] amount of carbon dioxide created by an activity/person/business [4] distance food has to travel between where it is grown or made and where it is consumed [5] paying for an equivalent amount of carbon dioxide to be saved elsewhere [6] a car which can alternate between different energy sources (e.g. petrol and battery) [7] at sea, away from the coast [8] finish [9] taxes which relate to the protection of the environment

ERROR WARNING

- We say ***absolutely* vital**, NOT *~~very~~ vital.*
  It's **absolutely vital** that everyone plays their part in combating climate change.
- We say ***find* a solution**, NOT *~~give~~ a solution.*
  We need to **find a solution** to the problem of energy supplies.

Exercises

31.1 Read these remarks by different speakers, and then answer the questions.

Sylvia: We found that poisonous chemicals had been thrown into the river.
Tomas: We have to protect everyone from illnesses caused by environmental problems.
Marcos: We can collect glass and plastic from homes which can then be re-used.
Gerard: We are heading for a major disaster in terms of the pollution of the oceans.
Ulla: We must stop using this chemical. It can destroy plant and animal life.

1. Who mentions public health?
2. Who is complaining about people dumping toxic waste?
3. Who is talking about avoiding the use of something which is harmful to the environment?
4. Who is explaining about recycling household waste?
5. Who is sounding a warning about an environmental catastrophe?

31.2 Complete each sentence using a word from the opposite page.

1. We looked out to sea and spotted some .... wind farms.
2. Oil supplies are likely to .... dry within the next 200 years.
3. It's absolutely .... that we all do something to reduce global warming.
4. As a green organisation we only use architects who specialise in .... design.
5. Continued use of fossil fuels will have .... consequences in the long term.
6. The airline has a scheme where you can .... your carbon emissions.

31.3 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using a collocation from the opposite page based on the word in brackets.

1. How far our food travels before we consume it should be a concern for everyone. (MILE)
2. Energy which comes from inexhaustible sources, such as wind, is our greatest hope for the future. (RENEW)
3. The region has experienced flooding over large areas in recent years. (WIDE)
4. We have caused the world's climate to alter in a way that cannot be changed back. (CHANGE)
5. We must do something to eliminate the problem of toxic waste. (SOLVE)
6. We should all try to reduce the amount of carbon we emit. (FOOT)
7. Wind farms located out at sea can provide a partial solution to the problem. (SHORE)
8. The Minister chairs a committee aiming to improve the way we get rid of rubbish from our homes. (DISPOSE)

31.4 Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.

1. Temperatures expanded during the summer months and reached a record high.
2. We must change our way before it is too late.
3. They now have a sun heating system in their house; it's very economical.
4. The desert experiences soaring heat during the day but is cold at night.
5. The weather designs have changed in recent years: winters are milder, summers are hotter.
6. He has one of those mixed cars which alternates between petrol and battery power.
7. The government must present green taxes so people who damage the environment pay more.
8. Vehicle transmissions are the main source of pollution in big cities.
9. We need to find alternative energy origins for private homes.

FOLLOW UP

Go to the United Nations Environment Programme website at www.unep.org, and make a note of useful collocations you find there connected with the environment.

32 Town and country life

A City life

Read this advertisement for new houses in the city, and note the collocations.

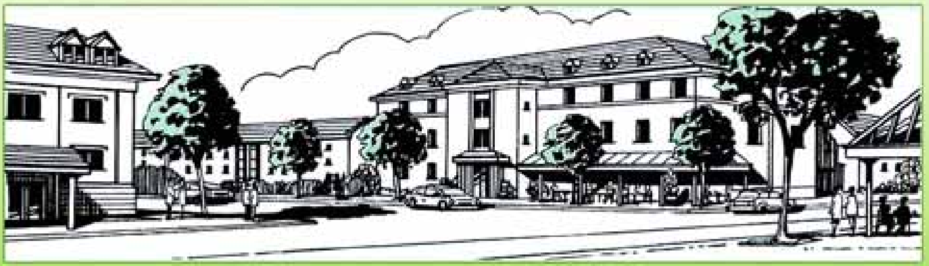

Secure your new home now in the exciting city of Lorchester. In Lorchester's **bustling**[1] **centre** you can enjoy high-quality **urban living**, with **reliable public transport** and shops and restaurants whose **long opening hours** will suit your busy lifestyle.

Phone us now on 00345 877223 to visit our extensive range of show houses and apartments, or take a virtual tour at www.incitilife.com.

[1] full of busy activity

B Country life versus city life

Jerome has just moved from his home village into a big town. He emails Rosie about it.

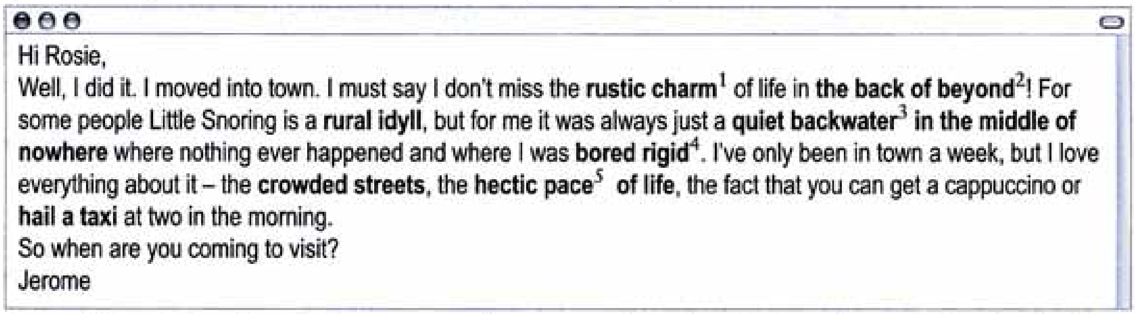

Hi Rosie,

Well, I did it. I moved into town. I must say I don't miss the **rustic charm**[1] of life in **the back of beyond**[2]! For some people Little Snoring is a **rural idyll**, but for me it was always just a **quiet backwater**[3] **in the middle of nowhere** where nothing ever happened and where I was **bored rigid**[4]. I've only been in town a week, but I love everything about it – the **crowded streets**, the **hectic pace**[5] **of life**, the fact that you can get a cappuccino or **hail a taxi** at two in the morning.

So when are you coming to visit?

Jerome

[1] appeal that is simple and picturesque [2] an extremely isolated place [3] a quiet, isolated village [4] (informal) extremely bored [5] very busy and fast pace

C City Council plans

GOOD NEWS FOR INNER CITY LIFE

City Councillors last night approved extensive plans for **urban regeneration**.

Key features of the plan include the restoration of **derelict buildings**[1] and a **tree-planting scheme**.

The hope is that the **inner city** will soon resemble the **leafy suburbs** as an attractive and **desirable place to live**.

Planners believe that an increase in the number of **residential dwellings**[2] in the town centre will ease the problem of **congested roads** and night-time crime: with commercial and recreational facilities **within walking distance** and **open all hours**, it is hoped that many people will choose to leave their cars at home, and that it will be safer to walk on the street at night.

[1] buildings that are not cared for and are in a very bad condition [2] (formal, official) homes

Exercises

32.1 Complete each sentence with *the city* and *the country* in the correct space.

1 There is a less hectic pace of life in .... than in ....
2 It's much easier to hail a taxi in .... than in ....
3 You are less likely to find reliable public transport in .... than in ....
4 You are more likely to find rustic charm in .... than in ....
5 You are more likely to find congested roads in .... than in ....

32.2 Explain the difference in meaning between the sentences in each pair.

1 The roads are very congested. The streets are very crowded.
2 We live in the inner city. They live in the leafy suburbs.
3 He lives in a quiet backwater. She lives in a bustling city centre.
4 I enjoy urban living. I love my rural idyll.

32.3 Put the collocations in the box into pairs that are similar in meaning.

city life long opening hours rustic charm in the back of beyond open all hours
urban living in the middle of nowhere rural idyll

32.4 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using a collocation from the opposite page.

1 The village is regarded as a quiet place where nothing happens, but the people who live there love it.
2 She lives in a simple cottage miles away from any other inhabited places.
3 The government plans to provide funds to subsidise the modernisation and improvement of our cities.
4 The city announced a plan to plant more trees in 2007.
5 The south side of the city is an area where many people would like to have a home.
6 The city council has declared that part of the town may only be used for people's homes.

32.5 Find collocations on the opposite page with the opposite meaning to these phrases.

1 smart, modern buildings ....
2 quiet roads (2 answers) ....
3 a quiet city centre ....
4 urban decay ....
5 the urban nightmare ....
6 restricted opening times (2 answers) ....

32.6 Use a dictionary to find three collocations for these words.

1 countryside 2 landscape 3 village

32.7 Answer these questions.

1 Do any types of TV programmes or films bore you rigid? If so, what types?
2 Would you consider living in a remote country village in your country to be living in a rural idyll?
3 Do you have a reliable public transport system in the place where you live?
4 Are there any derelict buildings where you live?
5 What sort of facilities are there within walking distance of the house or flat where you live?

33 Personal finance

A Managing your finances

Read this leaflet on personal financial management given out by a university to its students. Note the collocations.

££££££ Keeping afloat[1] – how to manage your finances ££££££

While you're doing your degree, your main **source of income** may be a student loan or, if you're lucky, a grant or scholarship. But you may well still need to **supplement**[2] **your income** by getting some kind of part-time work. Here are some tips for avoiding financial problems:

- **Open a current account** at the campus bank – they have a team there which specialises in helping students with their financial matters.
- If you **get into debt**, try to **clear**[3] **your debts** as soon as possible.
- If things are difficult, you may have to economise by, say, **cutting down on luxuries**. This is far better than **running up huge debts**[4].
- If you have a credit-card debt, try to **make a payment** every month, however small. Never exceed your **agreed credit limit**.
- It's a bad idea to **borrow heavily** to repay your debts. Always seek advice from your bank about how to clear **outstanding**[5] **debts** and **pay back loans**.
- Never **run up an overdraft**[6] if you can avoid it. If you do need one, remember that most banks will offer students an **interest-free overdraft**.

[1] having enough money to pay what you owe (can also be **staying afloat**)
[2] add something to something to make it larger or better
[3] pay in full
[4] continuing to spend and therefore owing a large amount of money
[5] not yet paid
[6] amount of money that a customer with a bank account is temporarily allowed to owe to the bank

B Financial crimes and disputes

These newspaper clips are all concerned with financial crimes and problems.

Credit-card fraud[1] has reached an all-time high. One in ten people are the victims of **identity theft**[2] and the crime is on the increase.

Mr Ambrose **spent a fortune** staying at expensive hotels. He managed to **run up**[3] **a bill** of £7,000 at one hotel. He used his employer's funds and **falsified**[4] **records**. He made **fraudulent claims** for travel expenses.

People are being encouraged to **put down a deposit**[5] on new homes, thanks to low interest rates. But if borrowers **default on repayments**[6], banks are obliged to **call in loans**[7].

The company is now under new management. Its backers have **written off debts**[8] of £100,000 on the promise of new **cost-cutting measures** designed to solve the company's financial problems.

[1] crime of misusing another person's credit card without their permission
[2] stealing someone's personal details, usually in order to access their bank accounts or credit cards
[3] accumulate
[4] changed something, e.g. a document, in order to deceive people
[5] pay a sum of money in advance as part of a total payment
[6] fail to pay a debt
[7] demand that a person pay back the money the bank has lent to them
[8] accepted that an amount of money has been lost or that a debt will not be paid

Exercises

33.1 **Match words from each box to form collocations from the opposite page and use them to complete the sentences below.**

borrow make spend stay supplement

afloat a fortune heavily my income a payment

1 I .... of €500 every month to my credit-card account.
2 When I was a student I got a job in a fast-food outlet to ....
3 I used to .... on books when I was at university.
4 I had no grant or scholarship, so I had to .... to finance my studies.
5 Small firms find it difficult to .... when costs and interest rates are high.

33.2 **Copy and complete the collocation bubbles using words from the box. Some words collocate only with *debt*, some only with *overdraft* and some with both. Use a dictionary to help you find one more collocation for each bubble.**

to arrange a(n) a bad to be in
to clear a(n) deep in facility to get a(n)
to get into a hefty the national
to pay off a(n) -ridden to run up a(n)
an unauthorised

33.3 **Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.**

1 The firm has huge debts and has had to borrow $10 million. The new Chief Executive has introduced cost-cutting methods.
2 When I left university I had no upstanding debts, unlike most of my friends, who owed thousands of pounds.
3 The manager falsified company recordings and stole money from her employer.
4 I had no resource of income, so I had to get a job, and quickly.
5 We placed down a deposit on a new car last week.
6 She faulted on her loan repayment and had to sell her business.
7 Many people don't trust online banking because they are afraid of identification theft.
8 If we don't cut up on luxuries, we're going to find ourselves in serious debt.
9 There are special offers for students who enter a current account at the university bank.
10 You will pay a lot of interest if you go over your discussed credit limit.

33.4 **Answer the questions about collocations from the opposite page.**

1 What object is a person or company being compared to when we use the collocation *keep* or *stay afloat* metaphorically?
2 What are you eventually expected to do with a loan?
3 If a bank *calls in* a loan, do they (a) give it (b) write it off (c) demand full payment?
4 If someone defaults on a payment, do they (a) not make it (b) make it in full (c) partially make it?
5 What is the crime called when someone makes illegal use of another person's credit card?

33.5 **Complete each sentence using the word in brackets in the appropriate form.**

1 The accused was found guilty of .... company records. (FALSE)
2 The insurance company takes all .... claims very seriously. (FRAUD)
3 I try to make a .... into my savings account every month. (PAY)
4 Identity .... is becoming an increasingly common crime. (THIEF)
5 I was glad that the bank was able to offer me an .... overdraft. (INTEREST)

34 The economy

Budget speech

As we can all testify, this country's economy is strong and getting stronger.

Our measures to **curb inflation**[1] have proved highly successful. The **rampant inflation**[2] of the previous government is a thing of the past. Inflation currently stands at 2 per cent. The strength of the **current economic climate** suggests that **interest rates** are unlikely to be raised again this year. This should help us to build up a culture of **investing for the long-term**.

This Government has **steered the economy** through seven years of **uninterrupted economic growth**; a trend which is set to continue with our major success in **stimulating growth**. And in the latest quarter, the economy has been growing at an annual rate of 2.5 per cent.

All indicators show that **industry is thriving**[3]. But we are particularly proud of the **steady growth** experienced by small businesses. We have made it our aim to **safeguard their interests**[4] and the healthy economy we have created has enabled them to **increase output**. The **plummeting profits**[5] caused by the previous government's misguided policies are now safely behind them.

Our goal is to establish world-class public services through investment and reform in order to ensure that taxpayers receive real **value for money**. **Public spending** goes to provide strong and dependable public services. These are vital to **extend opportunity**, tackle **social exclusion**[6] and improve people's life chances.

The **taxes** that we **levy**[7] allow us to **allocate resources** to achieve that goal. And we have **met with** considerable **success**[8]. In particular, we must now **build on the success**[9] of the climate-change **levy we introduced** last year.

Another of our goals is to win the battle against the **black economy**. **If left unchecked**[10], the black economy – I think here particularly of the loss to our economy of **undeclared earnings**[11] and other tax evasion practices – **will push up costs**[12] and lead to **rising unemployment**. This government is committed to its eradication.

[1] control inflation [continuous increase in prices]
[2] very dramatic, uncontrolled, inflation
[3] doing very well
[4] protect their interests
[5] rapidly falling profits
[6] the problems of the underprivileged, of those who have less fortunate places in society than others
[7] impose or introduce
[8] been very successful
[9] develop previous success
[10] not stopped
[11] income that people fail to report to the tax authorities
[12] make costs rise

Exercises

34.1 **Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.**

1 The government is finding it very difficult to curb
2 The country is suffering because of the current economic
3 Although heavy industry is in decline, service industries are
4 The CEO is anxious to safeguard his company's
5 New machinery has enabled the factory to increase its
6 The tax authorities plan to tackle the issue of undeclared
7 The budget plan explains how we intend to allocate our various
8 We must tackle and solve the problems caused by social

exclusion.
interests.
inflation.
climate.
resources.
output.
thriving.
earnings.

34.2 **Which of these phrases would a Finance Minister be likely to use about the economy under his/her own guidance and which about the economy under a previous rival government?**

build on success
extend opportunity
leave inflation unchecked
levy heavy taxes
meet with success
poor value for money
rampant inflation
rising unemployment
safely steer the economy
steady growth
thriving black economy
thriving industry
uninterrupted growth

34.3 **Find the opposite of the underlined words in these collocations on the opposite page.**

1 to invest for the short term
2 to restrict opportunity
3 declared earnings
4 falling unemployment
5 stunting growth

6 soaring profits
7 private spending
8 to reduce costs
9 to lower interest rates
10 to abolish a levy

34.4 **Complete each sentence using words from 34.3 (either those underlined above or their opposites) in the appropriate form.**

1 The government has more control over .... than over .... spending.
2 Tax inspectors make spot checks to ensure we do not have any .... earnings.
3 If you have a steady and secure income, then it may be sensible to invest for the .... rather than the .... term.
4 .... unemployment is a sign of a healthy economy.
5 If the government wants to slow down the economy by .... interest rates, then a company's costs will be .... and so their profits may ....
6 A progressive government will want to .... opportunity and to .... growth.
7 A political party might think it was a good idea to slow growth down but it would be very unlikely to say that it wanted to .... growth.
8 The government has decided to .... a levy on commercial waste collection in order to encourage recycling.

FOLLOW UP

Go to www.economist.com/index.html. Enter your own country in the Search box and select an article that interests you. Make a note of any more useful collocations relating to the topic of the economy.

35 Social issues

A Facing and solving social problems

Read these short reviews of books about social problems, and note the collocations in bold.

To Dream a Better Life by Ken Lomond
How can we best **address the issues** surrounding large-scale economic migration? Can economic migration be seen as a **force for good**[1], rather than always seen as a problem that must be tackled? This book offers a **novel**[2] **solution**.

Disaster and After by Sandra Haley
Should rich nations **provide relief** when disasters occur in poorer countries, or is this too little, too late? Haley's book calls for a **fresh drive**[3] to address the issue, and **makes a plea**[4] for governments to **break the cycle**[5] of dependency.

A *Fragile Calm* by Alexander Fleig
When **law and order break down**, when **riots erupt**[6] and **public disorder**[7] threatens **the social fabric**[8], politicians tend to take **draconian**[9] **measures** which rarely work. Fleig's book looks at alternatives and offers lessons from history.

Cities in Crisis by Mark Golanz
Problems of **run-down**[10] **areas** in big cities are the subject of this book. **Antisocial behaviour**, **underage drinking**, **dysfunctional**[11] **families**, all come under intense scrutiny in this wide-ranging study.

[1] a positive influence [2] new and original [3] new effort [4] an urgent or emotional request
[5] bring a stop to a negative pattern of behaviour [6] burst out suddenly
[7] expression of dissatisfaction by crowds of people, especially about a political matter
[8] social structure [9] extremely severe [10] in a very bad condition [11] not behaving normally

B Neighbourhoods and housing

In these extracts from meetings where local problems are being discussed, the second speaker echoes the ideas of the first speaker by using the collocations in bold.

A: The problems faced by poorer households are very complex indeed.
B: Yes, there are many issues affecting **low-income families**, and they are indeed complex.

A: When someone becomes homeless, our immediate task is to find a roof for them.
B: Yes, our job is to **provide shelter** as quickly as possible.

A: Fifteen per cent of families are living in houses without running water. Many are in houses which are so bad no one should be living in them.
B: That's right. Too many people are living with **poor sanitary conditions** and it's unacceptable that there are houses which are **unfit for human habitation.**

A: The problem is that houses are too expensive for most ordinary families.
B: Yes, the government should do something to provide **affordable housing.**

A: The people who encourage others to commit violent acts should be dealt with firmly.
B: That's right. Anyone **inciting violence** deserves harsh punishment.

A: The thing is, people should be more vigilant about crime in their local communities.
B: Yes, it would be good if more **neighbourhood watch schemes** could be **introduced.**

C Other collocations connected with social issues

He was arrested for possessing an **illegal substance**. [formal: an illegal drug]
Families who **claim benefits** often feel ashamed. [financial support from the state]
Green organisations are increasingly important as a **force for change** in the world today.

Exercises

35.1 **Complete each sentence using a verb from the box in the appropriate form. You do not need to use all the verbs in the box.**

address answer break break down break up
finish give incite make provide supply

1 How can we .... the issue of alcohol abuse?
2 Aid agencies .... emergency relief, but is this always the best thing?
3 In 1997, law and order .... completely and there was chaos.
4 Social workers try hard to .... the cycle of abuse in families where violence occurs.
5 Community leaders .... a plea for understanding and tolerance of cultural differences.
6 People who .... violence should be severely punished.

35.2 **Complete each sentence using a collocation from the opposite page.**

1 The house has no roof, and there are rats in it. It is unfit ....
2 The lack of a mains water supply means that they have very poor ....
3 At night you often see 14- and 15-year-olds consuming alcohol. The city has a big problem with ....
4 That part of the city has many homes where people behave very badly with regard to others around them. There is a big problem with ....
5 Hundreds of people protested in the streets, and sometimes things got violent. For several days there was major ....
6 Neighbourhood committees can have a positive influence in the community, and indeed most people believe they are a force ....

35.3 **Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.**

1 Poor people often have to claim	the issues of global poverty and disease.
2 The city council introduced a	shelter and food to the earthquake victims.
3 The government took some draconian	benefits in order to survive financially.
4 All governments need to address	erupted in all the major cities.
5 The authorities had to provide	neighbourhood watch scheme.
6 As the discontent grew, riots	measures to prevent public disorder.

35.4 **Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.**

1 The violence threatened the sociable fabric.
2 The Minister said it was time for a fresh driving to cut crime.
3 Customs officials found some illegitimate substances in the passenger's luggage.
4 The run-out areas of the city are often dangerous at night.
5 We hope our new organisation will be a force for political changing.
6 He proposed a novelist solution to address the issue of social inequality.
7 Multifunctional families are a difficult problem for social workers.
8 The union representative did a plea for the workers to stand firm.
9 There were scenes of publicity disorder on the streets last night.
10 It is very difficult for young people to find affordable building.

FOR SALE
£349,077,275 ONLY

36 Science and technology

A Technology in business

Scientists and technologists are **pushing back the frontiers**[1] of knowledge every day. Scientists **publish** their **findings**[2] and those findings are developed into commercial applications. We have become very skilled at **harnessing**[3] **technology** in all sorts of creative ways. New **cutting-edge design**[4] is transforming our daily lives and our businesses. But even with technology we are already familiar with, things do not always **run smoothly**[5]. There can be difficulties **installing equipment** and hardware can suffer from **wear and tear**[6]. More serious are viruses, which can cause **systems** to **crash** and lead to the loss of important data. A **power cut** may cause machinery to lose power and **production may be halted** until **power is restored**. If **computers** have to be **shut down**[7] for even a short time, it can cause a variety of problems, all of them costly.

[1] extending the limits [2] results [3] making use of [4] the most innovative design
[5] work without problems [6] damage caused by ordinary use [7] switched off completely

ERROR WARNING *Findings* is almost always used in the plural. Scientists **publish** their **findings**, NOT ~~finding~~. *Research* is uncountable; it is not used in the plural. They **published** some **interesting** research, NOT ~~researches~~.

B Innovations

We asked our readers to remind us of the little technical innovations that have quietly entered – and improved? – our lives over the last 20 years. Here are some of their replies.

- I never carry much 'real money' and I hardly ever even write a cheque. I just put a piece of plastic in a slot, **enter my PIN** and take out the cash!
- You're more likely to have to **swipe a card** than use a traditional key these days.
- Remember when you had to rush out of work to get to the bank in your lunch hour? I never need to go into a bank today. **Online banking** is fantastic.
- My music collection used to take up a whole wall of my room. Now I've got far more **music stored** on my little MP3 player.
- How did people manage without mobile phones? And I love all the extra bits. I love being able to **download** new **ringtones**!
- **Wireless hotspots**[1] are fantastic – I can easily get online using my own laptop.
- I travel a lot and it's great to be able to **remote access** my **email**.
- Remember when you had to get off the sofa to **switch channels** on your black and white TV? Now you turn your huge **flat-screen TV** on and off **by remote control**!
- **High-definition TV** – the picture is fantastic compared with before.
- I **use SATNAV**[2] in the car all the time – much easier than looking at a paper map.

I SAID TURN LEFT, NOT RIGHT

[1] public places where people can access the Internet via a wireless signal
[2] short for satellite navigation

TIP Collect collocations that relate to the specific areas of science and technology that interest you. Go to www.newscientist.com and click on a link that appeals to you.

Exercises

36.1 **Look at A. Correct the collocation errors in these sentences. In some sentences there is more than one error.**

1 If you switch off your computer without shutting it properly, you may lose data.
2 I didn't expect everything to run gently in my new job but I didn't imagine it would be quite so difficult as it was.
3 Alex had some technical problems initiating his new computer equipment.
4 The company is famous for its cutting-side design.
5 If they'd serviced their machines regularly, they wouldn't have had to halt producing.
6 Vic dreams of making a discovery that would help to push out the frontiers of science.
7 Scientists usually publicise their findings in academic journals.
8 There was a power break this morning. The power went off at ten and it wasn't restorated till midday.
9 Urs loves pure research but his brother is more interested in the application of research to practical projects and in harassing new technology for commercial ends.
10 They carried out researches over a ten-year period and finally published their finding this month.

36.2 **What are the people in the pictures doing? Answer using a collocation from B.**

1
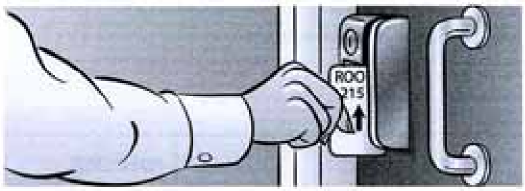

He's ....

2
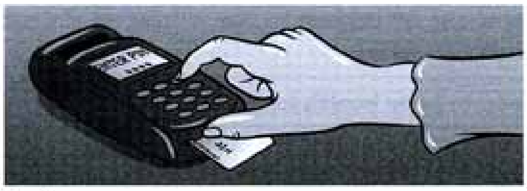

She's ....

3
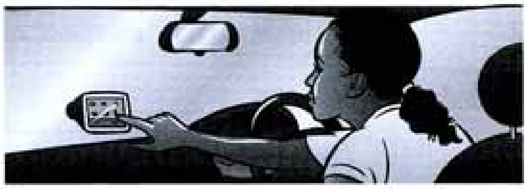

She's ....

4
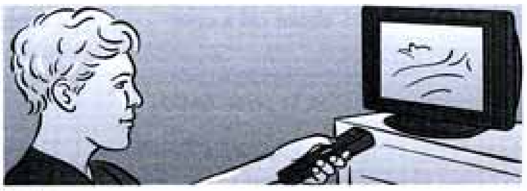

He's ....

36.3 **Answer these questions using collocations from the opposite page.**

1 What three technological developments have made watching television a better experience?
2 What is an MP3 player used for?
3 What might happen if the computer systems in a company suddenly became overloaded, or there was a serious problem with the software or hardware?
4 Is it always necessary for people to visit the bank personally to do their business?
5 What might you try to find at an airport if you, say, wanted to check your email from your own laptop?
6 You want to watch TV but a boring programme has come on. What do you do?
7 You are tired of the sound your phone makes when a call comes in. You want something different. What can you do?
8 What eventually happens to electrical items that you use a lot?

36.4 **Use a dictionary to help you answer the questions.**

1 What collocations with *screen* can be used to mean (a) TV and (b) the cinema?
2 What can *online* collocate with as well as *shopping* and *banking*?
3 What can *remote* collocate with as well as *access* and *control*?

37

Health and medicine

A Maintaining good health

Do you want to **enjoy good health**? Or perhaps you want to **reduce your stress levels**? **Build up your strength** by **doing plenty of exercise**[1]. It's better to start with **gentle exercise** unless you already **do** a lot of **sport**[2]. It's equally important to **watch what you eat**. There's no need to **go on a diet**: just eating the right food will help you to **build up resistance** to disease.

[1] NOT ~~making~~ exercise [2] NOT ~~make~~ sport

B Treatment

When Alexa was diagnosed with a **serious medical condition**, she was worried that she might have to **have an operation**[1]. However, her doctor first prescribed a **course of medication**. Fortunately, she **responded well to treatment**, and **made a full recovery**.

[1] NOT ~~make~~ an operation

PATIENT INFORMATION LEAFLET

- Do not **exceed the recommended dose**.
- If you think you have **taken an overdose**[2], consult a doctor immediately.
- If you suffer any of the **side effects**[3] mentioned in this leaflet, or any other **adverse**[4] **reactions**, consult your doctor or pharmacist.

[2] taken too much of a drug
[3] unwanted secondary effects of a drug
[4] negative

C Illness

collocation	*example*	*meaning*
a streaming cold	I've had **a streaming cold** for days now.	a heavy cold
shake off a cold	I wish I could **shake off this cold** – I've had it for nearly two weeks.	get rid of a cold
be in poor health	My gran's **been in poor health** for years.	not be very well
an infectious disease	There are a number of **infectious diseases** which mainly affect children.	diseases caught from someone with that disease
a rare illness/disease	The baby was born with **a rare illness**.	an illness that seldom occurs
critically ill	She's still **critically ill** in hospital.	extremely/dangerously ill
fight for one's life	The accident has left three people **fighting for their lives**.	in danger of dying
fall into / come out of a coma	The boxer **fell into a coma** after receiving a blow to the head and didn't **come out of the coma** for five days.	become unconscious; regain consciousness
a massive heart attack	He suffered **a massive heart attack**.	a very serious heart attack
untimely/premature death	We were all saddened by the young woman's **untimely/premature death**.	death at too early an age

TIP

If you need to know more about the language of health and medicine, have a look at: www.nhsdirect.nhs.uk – a site aimed at the non-specialist.
For more specialist language, try www.doctorupdate.net, which is aimed at medical professionals.

Exercises

37.1 **Look at A. Combine the words in the box to form eight collocations.**

your
exercise
plenty
build
what
reduce
watch
gentle
resistance
do
on
eat
do
health
stress
enjoy
levels
diet
exercise
of
up
sport
your
go
good
you
a

37.2 **Complete the collocation forks.**

1 go on a
a balanced
a sensible ....

2 a .... of flu
of medicine
of penicillin

3 to .... resistance
your strength
a medical practice

4 an infectious
a rare
an incurable ....

5 a nasty
a heavy
a streaming ....

6 a .... of antibiotics
of treatment
of physiotherapy

37.3 **Match each question with its answer.**

1 Is the man still in a coma?	a He had to have an operation.
2 What did Pat's grandfather die of?	b A massive heart attack.
3 How did Tim's uncle respond to treatment?	c A rare but not incurable disease.
4 Why did Sam have to stay in hospital?	d His friend is critically ill.
5 Your little boy has a runny nose, hasn't he?	e Yes, he's had a streaming cold since Sunday.
6 What sort of medical condition has he got?	f A course of medication.
7 What cured Meg's brother?	g By doing some gentle exercise.
8 Why does Tony look so worried?	h He initially had some adverse reactions.
9 How does Joe plan to build up his strength?	i He's still fighting for his life.
10 Is the patient recovering yet?	j He came out of it this morning.

37.4 **Complete each short dialogue using a collocation from the opposite page.**

1 Anna: Did the medication the doctor prescribed help you?
Ben: Yes, but it has had some rather unpleasant ....
2 Clara: Mozart died when he was just 35.
Dean: Yes, he had a very ....
3 Ellie: Have you still got that cold?
Fran: Yes, I just can't ....
4 Grant: Your aunt doesn't look very well.
Harry: Yes, I'm afraid she is in rather ....
5 Inga: Why do they only sell these tablets in small packets?
Joan: To try to prevent people ....
6 Karl: Make sure you don't take more than the doctor told you to.
Lotte: Don't worry. I would never ....
7 Masha: What did the doctor say about your grandfather's painful leg?
Nina: She has referred him to a surgeon. He has to ....
8 Orla: Do you have to change your diet if you're diabetic?
Pat: Well, you have to ....
9 Quasim: What's the prognosis for your uncle now he's had a kidney transplant?
Rita: He's still feeling rather weak but he's expected to ....

38

Criminal justice

A Expressing views about crime and punishment

Look at these extracts from calls to a radio phone-in programme called 'Your Call to Jeremy', which on this occasion is about crime and punishment.

Hello, Jeremy. I want to know why financial criminals in the City always seem to **escape punishment**, while poor people always seem to receive **custodial sentences**[1] even for **committing minor offences.**

My view is that if someone is **put on trial** and is **found guilty** and **given a sentence**, then they should have to **serve out**[2] **their sentence.** Releasing someone early for **good behaviour** is a complete nonsense.

Jeremy, I'd like to point out that there have been a couple of serious **miscarriages of justice**[3] recently and people don't seem to realise how damaging this is. No one should **face trial** on the basis of **unreliable evidence** or **trumped-up charges**[4].

We're facing **soaring**[5] **crime rates** in this city and it's about time the criminals were **brought to justice.** And I'm sick of hearing about **extenuating circumstances**[6] – that someone had a deprived childhood, or they're not fit to **stand trial.** Rubbish!

[1] a sentence to be served in a prison or similar institution
[2] serve the full amount of time
[3] situation where innocent people are found guilty
[4] invented and false accusations
[5] rising very fast
[6] circumstances that lessen the blame, also **mitigating circumstances**

B Courts and trials

These newspaper clips contain typical collocations about courts and trials.

A key witness **gave evidence** today in the Misthorpe murder trial. The witness claimed to have seen the accused leaving Ms Bartram's house. **The trial was adjourned**[1] **until** March 7th. The accused, 27-year-old Liam Grout, was **remanded in custody**[2].

In a **unanimous verdict**[3] today in Raylton District Court, Clare Irene Wilson, 37, was **found not guilty** of murder. The judge said the prosecution had failed to prove **beyond reasonable doubt** that Ms Wilson was guilty.

Mr Hanry had **denied all knowledge** of the alleged fraudulent business deal. His lawyers attempted to show that Derek Yardley was an **unreliable witness**. Despite suggestions that the judge might **dismiss the case**[4], he found in favour of Mr Hanry and **awarded damages**[5] to him.

Mary Jones was released this morning after her lawyers successfully **contested the verdict**[6] which sentenced her to prison for three years. The judge, Mr James Egdon, **overturned the verdict** in the Court of Appeal. Mary Jones herself did not **appear in court** but later said that she felt **justice had been served**.

[1] was suspended till a later time or date
[2] send to prison until the trial begins or continues
[3] verdict which all the decision makers agree to
[4] decide that the case is not worth considering
[5] ordered the organisation or person who has been responsible for causing injury or loss to pay money to the victim as compensation
[6] disagreed with the verdict and tried to change it

Exercises

38.1 Rewrite the underlined part of each of these extracts from conversations to make them sound more like extracts from newspaper reports.

1 An increasing number of crimes per head of the population have been recorded in the last twelve months.
2 Why should young criminals get away without being punished for crimes just because of their age?
3 The lawyers disagreed with the court's decision.
4 The judge threw out the case because he felt the evidence was not strong enough.
5 John Jones said he didn't know anything about the robbery.
6 The judge said that the trial would now take place next month.

38.2 Choose the correct collocation.

1 Someone might get out of prison early for *soaring / extenuating / good* behaviour.
2 If you get a custodial sentence, you *go to prison / only serve the sentence if you commit another crime / have to do some community service.*
3 If you are remanded in custody, you are *allowed to go home / obliged to pay some money / kept in prison.*
4 If you serve out a sentence, you are *released from prison early / kept in prison for the full amount of time / kept in prison for life.*
5 If charges are trumped-up, they are *accurate / invented / exaggerated.*

38.3 Correct the mistakes with prepositions in the collocations.

1 He was put in trial for murder.
2 He was later remanded on custody.
3 The witness appeared on court for the first time today.
4 The murderer was soon brought into justice.
5 The case against Mr Sharp was proved over reasonable doubt.

38.4 Complete each sentence using a word from the opposite page.

1 Unfortunately, there have been a number of .... of justice recently.
2 The lawyer claimed that there were some .... circumstances.
3 This is the sixth time the accused has .... in court.
4 The jury was quick to reach a .... verdict, finding the accused guilty.
5 The accused .... all knowledge of the crime, but no one believed her.
6 Charles Weiss was .... damages for the injury he had suffered.
7 The newspaper said .... had been served by the conviction of Joe Lee.
8 The trial has been .... until next week.
9 He has been in court on several previous occasions but only for committing .... offences.

38.5 For each word in box A find two collocating words in B. Then write sentences using each of the ten collocations.

A find give trial
unreliable verdict

B contest face evidence evidence guilty
not guilty overturn sentence stand witness

FOLLOW UP

Look up the following legal words in the British National Corpus, searchable online at www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk: verdict witness custody
Note down any other interesting collocations that you find.

39 War and peace

A Ten days of war

Bitter enemies, the Sornak Republic and Vorinland are once more **engaged in hostilities**. Our timeline charts the latest fighting.

Jan 1	The Sornak Republic accuses Vorinland of **stockpiling weapons**[1]. Vorinland accuses the Sornak Republic of **creating instability**[2] in the area. Both sides **deploy troops**[3] to the region.
Jan 4	Vorinland attacks a Sornak Republican border town. The Sornak Republic claims it was an **unprovoked attack** and **violence erupts** along the border. The **violence escalates**[4] with a **spate of attacks**[5] on both sides of the border. Both countries claim that innocent victims have been **caught in the crossfire**[6].
Jan 6	The Sornak Republic **goes on the offensive** and makes a **pre-emptive strike**[7] on the capital of Vorinland. Bombs are dropped in the city centre and it is claimed that they hit their intended targets, but that some **collateral damage**[8] was inevitable.
Jan 8	Vorinland **launches a counter-attack** on the Sornak Republic by making '**surgical strikes**[9]' on a number of industrial cities. They also **seize power** in Tensington, the Sornak Republic border town and major rail centre.
Jan 10	Both sides **suffer** a large number of **casualties** but neither is willing to **call for a ceasefire**[10].

[1] building up large quantities of weapons
[2] making the area unsafe
[3] send soldiers
[4] violence increases dramatically
[5] a large number of attacks
[6] shot by accident as they were in the wrong place at the wrong time
[7] an attack made to prevent the enemy from attacking you
[8] unintentional killing of civilians and destruction of non-military targets – term used by those who cause it to make it sound less serious
[9] short and narrowly targeted military attacks
[10] an agreement to stop fighting

B Ending fighting

collocation	*example*	*meaning*
uneasy truce	The **uneasy truce** came to an end when the rebels attacked the capital.	a truce that could easily be broken
fragile peace	There is a **fragile peace** in the area with hopes it will soon strengthen.	a peace that could easily be destroyed
ceasefire comes into effect	The **ceasefire will come into effect** at midnight.	agreement to stop fighting starts from this time
restore peace	The aim of the talks is to **restore peace** in the area.	stop the fighting
bring stability	At last the treaty has **brought stability** to the region.	made the region feel safe
disband an army	It will be hard to persuade the warlords to **disband their army**.	send the soldiers home, as the army is no longer in existence
lift a blockade	They have agreed to **lift the blockade** on our ports.	stop preventing goods from entering
withdraw troops	The country agreed to **withdraw their troops** from the area.	take their soldiers out

Exercises

39.1 **Look at A. Complete the collocations used in these newspaper headlines.**

1 BORDER AREA HIT BY .... OF ATTACKS

2 .... ERUPTS AFTER ELECTIONS

3 PRE-EMPTIVE .... LAUNCHED LAST NIGHT

4 JOURNALISTS .... IN THE CROSSFIRE

5 ARMY SEIZES .... IN NIGHT-TIME COUP

6 CIVIL SOCIETY CALLS FOR A ....

39.2 **Read the article and answer the questions using full sentences.**

UN attempts to restore peace to this troubled region may finally be meeting with some success. A ceasefire has been agreed and will come into effect from midnight tomorrow. It is hoped this will bring an end to a decade of escalating violence between these two historically bitter enemies.

1 What is the UN's aim?
2 What success have they had?
3 When will it start?
4 For how long have they been engaged in hostilities?
5 Has the situation been getting better?
6 What is the relationship generally like between the two sides?

39.3 **Complete each sentence using a collocation from the box.**

collateral damage
launch a counter-attack
create instability
lift the blockade
fragile peace
suffer casualties
go on the offensive
surgical strikes

1 The enemy have agreed to .... on our ports.
2 The General said that we have carried out some .... on the enemy.
3 There are hopes that the .... will develop into something more lasting.
4 It was their decision to .... first ...
5 ... and so we had no choice but to ....
6 It is believed that the aim of the invading army is to .... in the region.
7 He mentioned .... but didn't say exactly how many civilians died.
8 Our army is certain to ...., given the strength of the opposition.

39.4 **Correct the collocation errors in these sentences. In some sentences there is more than one error.**

1 The two countries have been engaged in hostile for a long time.
2 The ceasefire makes into effect today and all hope it will bring stable to the area again.
3 The government has promised to retreat its troops next year.
4 There is an uncomfortable truce between the two sides at the moment.
5 When peace is replaced, we shall be able to deform the army.
6 The newspaper reported that the enemy had felt a defeat despite the fact that they had employed large numbers of troops to the area.
7 They accused us of piling weapons and of preparing to launch a provoked attack.
8 Some argue that the nuclear deterrent has prevented violence from excavating.

FOLLOW UP

Choose a conflict currently in the news and find reports of it in different English-language newspapers. At this website www.thebigproject.co.uk/news you can find links to large numbers of these. Note down collocations that you notice being used in several different reports.

40 Friendship

A Friendship over a lifetime

Read this introduction to an article about friendship from a popular science magazine.

Do you have a lot of **close friends**? Are they **lifelong friends**? **Childhood friends**? Have you ever met someone and instantly felt that you've made **a friend for life**?

People with a large **circle of friends** may well have discovered the secret of a long and happy life, according to recent scientific research which suggests that having good friends may actually help us live longer.

For many, the most important friendship is a **long-term relationship**[1] with a partner or a spouse. However, the research shows that **platonic relationships**[2] are equally valuable. Whether your **social network** is made up of **firm friends** or **casual acquaintances**, socialising could impact positively on your life expectancy.

[1] usually referring to a romantic relationship [2] relationships which are not romantic or sexual

B Making, keeping and losing friends

Note the collocations in these magazine horoscopes.

Capricorn 22 Dec–19 Jan

Relations are **cordial**[1] at work, but they could be better. It will take hard work to **remain on friendly terms** with everyone, but it will be worth the effort.

Aquarius 20 Jan–19 Feb

A **complete stranger** comes into your life and friendship quickly develops. However, a **close confidant**[2] is uneasy and advises you to **put some distance** between yourself and the newcomer. It's advice you don't want to hear.

Pisces 20 Feb–20 March

It takes a long time to **win someone's trust**, so when somebody **abuses that trust** it hurts. It's going to take a lot of effort to **make the relationship work**. Is it worth it? Yes.

Aries 21 Mar–19 Apr

Someone **takes** something you say **the wrong way**. A good **relationship breaks down**, but don't worry, a **heart-to-heart chat** will soon help to **heal the rift**[3].

Taurus 20 Apr–20 May

It's a good time for you to **forge**[4] new **relationships.** But only devote your energies to those you feel will **stand the test of time**[5]. You may soon need some **stable relationships** in your life, so don't let yourself get **on bad terms** with those around you.

Gemini 21 May–20 Jun

You'll need to **spring to someone's defence**[6] this week when they **come under attack.** Later you'll get a big thank-you for **providing moral support**[7] when it was most needed.

[1] friendly, but formal and polite [2] person you trust and share your feelings and secrets with [3] end a serious disagreement between friends [4] form or create [5] last [6] act very quickly to defend them [7] showing that you approve of someone and what they are doing

ERROR WARNING

Remember, the collocation is **make friends**, NOT ~~get~~ friends or ~~find~~ friends.
At first it was difficult to **make friends** at my new school, but then I met Richard.

Exercises

40.1 Choose the correct collocation.

1 I was contacted by a *childish / childhood / childlike* friend I hadn't seen for years.
2 I am sure that my friendship with Louisa will *pass / sit / stand* the test of time.
3 *Foraging / Forcing / Forging* good relationships helps us live longer.
4 Mason was a *long-life / lifelong / lifelike* friend of my father's.
5 She has quite a wide *circle / circulation / cycle* of friends.
6 It's hard to form *life-term / long-time / long-term* relationships when you're in a job that involves a lot of travelling.

40.2 Complete each sentence using an adjective from the box.

bad casual close complete cordial firm friendly moral social stable

1 I don't know her well – we're just .... acquaintances.
2 We have been on .... terms ever since Jack refused to return the money I lent him.
3 For many people the Internet plays an important role in developing new .... networks.
4 Jack Whitley was a .... confidant of the Prime Minister in the 1980s.
5 Their relationship hasn't been very .... They've broken up and got back together again several times.
6 She told her entire life story to a .... stranger on a train.
7 Bethan and I have been .... friends for many years.
8 Thanks for all the .... support you gave me when I needed it.
9 Despite their political differences the two leaders have always enjoyed .... relations.
10 Leslie and I have remained on .... terms despite our professional disagreements.

40.3 Rewrite each sentence using a synonym of the underlined words to create collocations from the opposite page.

1 From the moment they met they knew they would be friends for ever.
2 She always leapt to Angela's defence if anyone criticised her.
3 He very quickly gained his employer's trust and was given a very important job.
4 She gave me a lot of moral support when I had problems at work.
5 I arranged a meeting to try and resolve the rift between Hilary and Jake.
6 I'm sorry that you interpreted what I said the wrong way.
7 Their relationship collapsed when she discovered he was seeing someone else.
8 We've been very good friends ever since our first day at primary school.

40.4 Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.

1 We should have a head-to-foot chat to resolve our differences.
2 She got under attack from some colleagues at work who didn't like her.
3 If you disuse someone's trust you deserve to lose their friendship.
4 We tried hard to have the relationship work but failed.
5 I think you need to make some distance between yourself and Eduardo.

FOLLOW UP

Horoscopes are a good source of vocabulary on relationships. Read English ones now and then in a newspaper or online at, say, www.horoscopes.co.uk, and make notes of any useful collocations you find.

41 Youth and age

A

Childhood

Ever since he was a **newborn baby**, Horace's adoring parents were convinced he was **a child prodigy**[1] and **pandered to his every whim**[2], so that he soon grew into a **spoilt brat**[3]. As a young teenager, he hung around with the rest of the town's **disaffected youth**[4], and was on the verge of becoming a **juvenile delinquent**[5]. But then a music teacher realised he had a talent for singing and helped him to **see the error of his ways**[6]. He spent the rest of his teenage years singing for a group which made a considerable contribution to popular youth culture.

[1] young genius
[2] did every little thing that he wanted even when it was not appropriate
[3] (informal, disapproving) an unpleasant child, one who behaves badly and whose parents allow to behave as he/she wishes
[4] young people who do not accept society's values
[5] a criminal who is still legally a minor
[6] understand his mistakes

B

Middle age

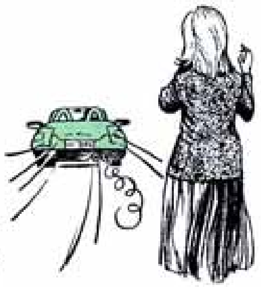

Amy and Stewart got married young. They **had a baby**[1] and then another almost at once and quickly **fell into the pattern** of family life. They concentrated so much on providing a **stable environment** for their children that they neglected their relationship and soon began to **take** each other **for granted**[2]. The children **left home** and went off to university and Stewart began to **go through a midlife crisis**[3]. He said he was bored with his daily routine and he wanted to go off and travel the world while he was still young enough. Amy thought he was just **going through a phase**[4] but she felt she had no choice but to **respect his wishes.** She said nothing to stop him as he bought a red sports car and set off on a road trip through Europe.

[1] NOT ~~got~~ a baby
[2] not value each other
[3] period of dissatisfaction in the middle of one's life
[4] going through a period of strange or difficult behaviour

C

Old age

Louise and John are in their seventies now. They say they don't **feel their age**[1] except for 'the **occasional twinge**[2]'. They both admit to the occasional '**senior moment**[3]' and John can sometimes be a bit of a **grumpy old man**[4]. They don't have to **support their family** any more, so they **live quite a comfortable life**[5]. When they were younger, they were quite poor but those days are only a **hazy memory** now. At home they are surrounded by things of great **sentimental value** to them and it has **become their habit** to spend the evenings poring over their photo albums. These are full of pictures that **rekindle memories**[6] of days gone by. Louise and John are happiest when their grandchildren come to stay. They give them their **undivided attention.** In fact, they **don't let them out of their sight.** Sometimes the grandchildren complain about this but Louise always explains, 'We just want to make sure you don't **come to any harm.**'

[1] feel as old as they are
[2] a slight ache from time to time
[3] moment of forgetfulness
[4] (informal, uncomplimentary) an old man who is always complaining about things
[5] note how *live* often collocates with *a life*
[6] bring back memories

Exercises

41.1 **Combine the words in the box to form five collocations presented on the opposite page.**

baby brat child delinquent disaffected
juvenile newborn prodigy spoilt youth

A number of other collocations using words from the box are possible apart from those presented in A. What are they?

41.2 **Complete these short dialogues using collocations from 41.1.**

1 A: Antonio can play all Mozart's violin concertos and he's only nine.
B: Yes, I've heard he's a ....
2 A: Meena has just had a son. I want to get him a present.
B: Well, they've got lovely things for .... in the shop next to the hospital.
3 A: Why did the police decide to build that new unit for young offenders?
B: It was suggested by a businessman who'd once been a .... himself.
4 A: Tim's older boys are nice but the youngest screams if he doesn't get his own way.
B: Yes, he's a .... His parents give him whatever he wants.
5 A: I've read a lot recently about young people who feel alienated from society.
B: Yes, there seems to have been a spate of headlines about ....

41.3 **Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.**

1 It is all too easy to make your close friends and your family for granted.
2 Liz's got four children and she's just bought herself a sports car. Do you think she's going against some kind of midlife crisis?
3 My sister got a baby boy last month.
4 You'll spoil your daughter if you keep on wandering to her every whim.
5 My parents are vegetarians, so I admire their wishes and don't eat meat in their house.
6 Sorry. I must be having an elderly moment. I just can't remember your name!
7 Jacqui insists she has seen the mistake of her ways.
8 Don't worry about your daughter leaving home. She won't go to any harm.
9 Make sure you don't let the child out of your view.

41.4 **Explain the difference between:**

1 leaving home and leaving the house.
2 a hazy memory and a distinct memory.
3 a grumpy old man and a dear old man.
4 an occasional twinge and a sudden twinge.
5 become a habit and develop a habit.
6 fall into a pattern and fit into a pattern.

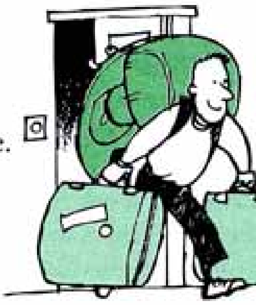

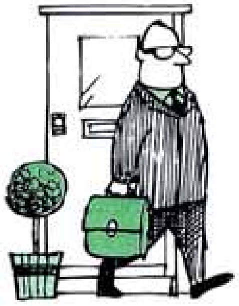

41.5 **Cross out the word in each set which does *not* form a normal collocation.**

1 *live / lead / go / have* a comfortable life
2 a *firm / familiar / pleasant / stable* environment
3 *feel / look / talk / show* your age
4 go through a *crisis / stage / divorce / problem*
5 *undivided / perfect / careful / close* attention
6 *share / wake up / rekindle / stir up* memories
7 have *adventures / a baby / visitors / an increase*
8 *sentimental / sensitive / practical / outstanding* value

42 Celebrities and heroes

A Contents of a celebrity magazine

page	CONTENTS
23	AN **EXCLUSIVE INTERVIEW** WITH PAOLA SIMONE. Paola **lets us in on the secrets** of her **fairytale wedding** and the **lavish lifestyle**[1] she now leads.
27	JOEY WINTER **GOES INTO REHAB**[2]. **Sources close to** Joey **reveal the truth** about the rock star's drug problem.
30	ACTRESS PHILADELPHIA MARRIOTT tells the truth about her **prenuptial agreement**[3] and her **messy divorce**[4] from footballer Tyrone Finton.
34	A ROYAL **KISS AND TELL**[5]. Traina Grabb, ex-girlfriend of Prince Henrik of Glosvatt is ready to **sell her story** to **the highest bidder**[6]. Who will buy it?
41	COURT SCANDAL. Tennis ace Bach Handar in the second of two **in-depth interviews**. Handar **reveals** some of the **secrets** about match fixing that kept him **in the full glare of publicity** for much of last year.

[1] rich and extravagant way of life

[2] (short for *rehabilitation*), getting treatment in a clinic for an addiction

[3] legal agreement made before marriage dealing with the distribution of money and property in the event of a divorce

[4] (informal) divorce which involved many arguments and legal problems

[5] (informal, journalistic) a story sold to the press about one's love life

[6] person who is prepared to pay most in an auction

B Speech at an awards ceremony

We are here today to **celebrate the achievements** of Monty Sharpe, a remarkable film director. Monty's first full length feature film, *Lincoln's Boyhood*, about the life of Abraham Lincoln, was **highly praised** by the critics and **received nominations** for a number of prestigious awards.

Monty's film-making goes back a long way. He made several short films at university which received rave reviews in the student press. After university he soon **realised his ambition** of working in cinema when he got his first job at Sheepton Studios.

Monty soon began directing and enjoyed a **meteoric rise**[1] to fame. Critics have **heaped praise on** all his work, highlighting his unique approach to film. It is my great honour today to be **presenting this award** to him. The Director's Bowl is the **highest accolade**[2] which can be offered to anyone in his profession. We offer Monty this award not only because of his own achievements but also because his work has had a **significant impact**[3] on all of our leading young directors and will do so for many years to come. Let me share with you some of the **glowing tributes**[4] which we have received from other directors...

[1] rapid rise

[2] top symbol of praise and approval

[3] NOT ~~strong~~ impact

[4] (journalistic) extremely positive comments

ERROR WARNING

Be careful with the word *success*. We say The song **enjoyed** or **had great success** all over the world, NOT ~~made~~ great success. You can, however, **make a success of** something. For example: She **made a success** of her new job and was promoted after a short time.

Exercises

42.1 Look at A. Are these sentences true or false?

1 'Sources close to the Prime Minister' means 'members of the Prime Minister's family'.
2 A lavish lifestyle is one that occasionally breaks the law.
3 When someone goes into rehab, they want to learn a new skill.
4 The highest bidder is the most important person asking for something.
5 A fairytale wedding is likely to cost a lot of money.
6 If someone lets you in on a secret, they tell you something not generally known.
7 A kiss and tell story is one where a couple talk to the press about their relationship.
8 A prenuptial agreement is an agreement made just after a couple marry.
9 The 'full glare of publicity' is a metaphor based on the idea of a bright light shining on someone or something.
10 An exclusive interview suggests that the interview does not include much information about the interviewee's private life.

42.2 Complete each sentence using a word from the opposite page.

1 Shelly Winter enjoyed a meteoric .... to fame in Hollywood in the 1990s.
2 Carlos never realised his .... of becoming a top footballer and played for his local team for 20 years.
3 The critics have .... praise on De Suta's latest film and it has been nominated for an Oscar.
4 In 2001, his latest novel received a .... for an award but it did not win the prize.
5 The film was .... praised by some critics but it received some negative reviews too.
6 Imelda Fry gave an interview to *Celeb* magazine but she didn't .... many secrets.
7 The film .... great success on both sides of the Atlantic.
8 He .... a success of his career in music and travelled the world.

42.3 Match each question with its answer.

1 What kind of divorce did they have?
2 What kind of interview did you get?
3 What kind of impact did he have?
4 What are we here to celebrate?
5 What does she want to sell?
6 What have you got to present?
7 What sort of agreement did they sign?
8 What sort of accolade did she get?
9 What kind of wedding did they have?
10 What kinds of tributes were paid to him?

An exclusive one.
The highest.
A fairytale one.
Glowing ones.
A prenuptial one.
A very significant one.
Her achievements.
An award.
Her story.
A messy one.

42.4 Which collocations from this unit are the opposites of these expressions?

1 a superficial interview
2 a gradual rise to fame
3 a minor impact
4 a simple lifestyle

FOLLOW UP

Read an article from a current issue of a celebrity magazine. You will find one at www.hellomagazine.com. How many collocations from this unit can you find? Highlight any interesting new collocations that you find in it.

43 Criticising people

A Lecturers and students

Students these days are not what they used to be. Half of them are **bone idle**[1] and the others **have an attitude problem**[2]. They seem to let anyone in to university these days – I have one very **slippery customer**[3] in one of my classes. He's more interested in **mindless violence** than books and is ready to **pick a fight**[4] at any opportunity.

[1] (informal) extremely lazy [2] a negative, uncooperative attitude
[3] (informal) someone who cannot be trusted [4] provoke a fight

Lecturers these days say that students **have no respect for** authority but they seem to **hold us in contempt**[5]. I always seem to **take the flak**[6] if there's a problem in class, as they have decided that I am a **disruptive influence**[7] who **poisons the atmosphere** for other students. But, as I see it, if a class is a disaster, **the blame rests**[8] fairly and squarely with the lecturer. They shouldn't be allowed to **shirk their responsibilities**[9] to us students.

[5] despise [6] be held responsible [7] someone who encourages others to behave in a negative way
[8] it is the fault of [9] pay no attention to their responsibilities

B Critical exclamations

These collocations are quite forceful, but can also be used humorously. A rising intonation combined with a smile will soften them.

'I am appalled that you would **stoop to that level!**' [do something as bad as that]
'That was a really **dirty trick to play!**' [nasty/dishonest thing to do]
'I think Ron is **a nasty piece of work!**' [an unpleasant, untrustworthy person]
'Your behaviour was **totally out of order!**' [very inappropriate]
'It was a **downright disgrace** to behave like that!' [absolutely disgraceful]
'**I wouldn't trust** Eva **an inch!**' [wouldn't trust at all]

C Other collocations relating to criticising people

example	*meaning*
I'll never tell you a secret again. You have totally **betrayed my trust**.	disappointed me because I trusted you
He did really well, given that he is only a child. It's not fair to **belittle his achievements**.	make what someone has done seem unimportant
You're letting his good looks **cloud your judgement**.	affect your judgement negatively
Your essay was not bad, but I have a few **minor niggles**.	small complaints
How did you manage to overlook such a **glaring error**?	obvious mistake
He said he was leaving me because he was sick of my **constant nagging**.	complaining or criticising all the time

ERROR WARNING

Note that we say **deep dissatisfaction**, NOT ~~strong~~ dissatisfaction, for example, I am writing to express my **deep dissatisfaction** about…

Exercises

43.1 **Look at A. Find a collocation that matches each of these definitions.**

1 an untrustworthy person
2 senselessly violent behaviour
3 not take one's duties seriously
4 provoke a fight
5 be blamed
6 spoil the mood
7 despise
8 a negative impact (on other people)

43.2 **Find a collocation on the opposite page that could be used about these people.**

1 A colleague, Sue, doesn't seem to you to do any work at all.
Sue's ....
2 Another colleague, George, seems to be making the atmosphere at work less pleasant than it used to be.
George is .... at work.
3 You suspect your neighbour, Glyn, is involved in some illegal activity.
I wouldn't ....
4 You always thought your sister, Josie, was rather silly but now she has done something particularly bad. (give two answers)
Josie's behaviour was ....
5 You are not completely satisfied with the translation work done by your student because there are a few errors.
I have some ....
with your translation.
6 You think your new neighbour looks like a very unpleasant person.
My new neighbour looks
....

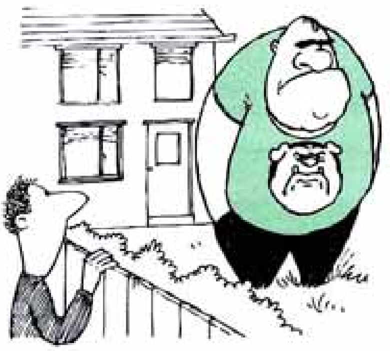

43.3 **Complete these collocations using a verb from the box.**

belittle betray cloud have have
hold pick play rests stoop

1 .... someone's trust
2 .... in contempt
3 .... an attitude problem
4 .... a fight
5 the blame ....
6 .... someone's achievements
7 .... someone's judgement
8 .... a dirty trick
9 would never .... to that level
10 .... no respect for

43.4 **Complete each sentence using the word in brackets in the appropriate form.**

1 The papers are increasingly full of stories of .... violence. (MIND)
2 Your work is full of .... errors. (GLARE)
3 I'm afraid your son is a .... influence in my lessons. (DISRUPT)
4 Such dreadful behaviour is a downright .... (GRACE)
5 It's very unkind to belittle his .... in that way. (ACHIEVE)
6 His parents' constant .... made him keen to leave home. (NAG)

44 References

Note the useful collocations to use in reference letters in the texts below.

A A reference for a student

I am happy to **act as a referee** for Ilona Hradetska, who has applied to do a course in archaeology at your university. Ilona has a **keen interest**[1] in archaeology and although she **lacks experience**, she makes up for this in her enthusiasm for the archaeology of the classical world. She has an **encyclopaedic knowledge**[2] of Ancient Greece and Rome. However, she has already managed to **accumulate** some practical **experience**[3] as she worked on a dig for two weeks in Greece last April, and she is looking forward to **honing**[4] **her** practical **skills** at the same dig over the summer holiday. Her dream of **pursuing her interests** in archaeology is **of paramount importance**[5] to her and I am sure she has the ability to **meet the challenges**[6] of the course.

[1] very strong interest
[2] very extensive knowledge
[3] (formal) gain experience
[4] making perfect
[5] (formal) extremely important
[6] deal with the difficult aspects

B A job reference

It is my pleasure to **provide a reference for** Phil Lee, who has applied for the post of Marketing Manager in your company. I can **wholeheartedly recommend** Mr Lee for this position as I **have every confidence in** his ability to **perform the tasks**[1] indicated in your job description. He has remarkable **financial acumen**[2] and excellent **interpersonal skills**. He is a good team player and while working here has **revealed a** remarkable **talent**[3] for **handling** difficult **situations**. It goes without saying that you can **trust him implicitly**[4]. I am confident that if you were to offer him the position he would quickly become an invaluable member of your team.

[1] perform tasks is a more formal way of saying carry out tasks
[2] talent in financial matters
[3] (formal) showed a talent
[4] trust him totally

C Common errors

There are a number of errors which are frequently made when students are required to write a reference as an exam task.

error	*correction*
He has ~~high~~ computer skills.	He has **good/advanced computer skills**.
He has ~~a high education~~.	He is **highly educated**. He has **a good level of education**.
A secretary ~~with high qualifications~~ is required.	A **well-qualified** secretary is required. A secretary **with good qualifications** is required.
He has a ~~high knowledge~~ of English.	He has **a good / an advanced knowledge** of English.
He has a ~~wide~~ knowledge of all subjects.	He has **an extensive / a comprehensive knowledge** of all subjects.
He has ~~big/great/wide~~ experience of teaching.	He has **considerable experience** of teaching.
He managed to ~~get~~ a good relationship with his boss.	He managed to **establish/develop a good relationship** with his boss.
Mr Day is a ~~very appreciated~~ member of staff.	Mr Day is a **highly valued** member of staff.

Exercises

44.1 Complete each sentence using a collocation from A. The first letters are given to help you.

1 Jason takes a k................................ i................................ in all his school subjects, but particularly in the sciences.
2 Suzie is looking forward to h................................ her computer s................................ on a course next month.
3 We set the job applicants a particularly difficult task in order to discover who would best be able to m................................ the c................................ .
4 You can rest assured that your happiness will always be of p................................ i................................ to me.
5 My brother chose that university because it was the best place for him to p................................ his i................................ in marine biology.
6 Over the years I have managed to a................................ plenty of e................................ of working with young people.

44.2 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets to make it more formal.

1 Paul knows a lot about African history. (ENCYCLOPAEDIC)
2 Karen is very good at dealing with people. (SKILLS)
3 Eric did a lot of work on farms when he was in Canada. (ACCUMULATED)
4 Toyah has an excellent teaching qualification but she hasn't done much work in the classroom yet. (LACKS)
5 I have total trust in Dr Robinson. (IMPLICITLY)
6 This job will offer you the perfect opportunity to become more skilled at working with a computer. (HONE)
7 I am totally confident you will be able to complete the course. (CONFIDENCE)
8 It was Duncan's talent for making money that led to his promotion. (ACUMEN)

44.3 Correct the reference letter below by replacing the underlined words with more appropriate collocations.

> **I am happy to do as a referee for James McBride, who has applied for a teaching post at your language school. I take every confidence in Mr McBride's abilities as a teacher. He spent last summer working at the school where I am Principal and he was a very appreciated member of our staff. He was very successful in getting a good relationship with both students and staff. He has a high education with a particularly wide knowledge of English literature. He combines high teaching qualifications with wide experience of teaching students at all levels of English. He also has high computer skills, which should certainly prove useful in a technologically advanced school such as yours.**

44.4 Choose the correct collocation.

1 Jenny *revealed / provided* some surprising talents during our expedition.
2 I'd *wholeheartedly / implicitly* recommend Mr Lee for promotion.
3 Mehmet has every ability to *meet / run* the challenges of the position.
4 I am delighted to *provide / act* a reference for Meena Mistry.
5 The position would require you to *perform / hone* a wide range of tasks.
6 Your contributions to the project are *highly / wholeheartedly* valued.

44.5 Use a dictionary to find other words to complete these word forks.

financial
.... acumen
....

highly valued
highly ....
highly ....

perform a task
perform ....
perform ....

45 Appearance and personality

A Describing how people look and behave

Note the collocations in these interviews where famous people discuss their own or other people's **personality traits** (or **personal characteristics**).

Film star Jerry Bowen

Interviewer: You seem to have had such a special relationship with Kara Hanson over many years. What is it about working with her?

Bowen: Kara's wonderful. She just seems to have **boundless energy**[1] and she's always been able to **boost** people's **confidence**[2], especially new young actors. She has a wonderful, **bubbly**[3] **personality** and she's got a **dazzling smile**. She **bears a striking resemblance to**[4] Ingrid Bergman, one of the great cinema beauties. She **has** some wonderful personal **qualities** that are so rare in stars nowadays.

[1] lots of energy [2] make more confident [3] lively [4] looks very like

Ex-rock star Eddie Stewart

Interviewer: You always had a troubled relationship with your drummer, Kaz Porter, in the days of your band, The Loop. Kaz died in 1987. How do you remember him now?

Stewart: Well, Kaz was not an easy person to work with. He had a very **thinly disguised**[5] dislike of the music industry and the people in it. Politeness wasn't **his strong point**! He had a real **stubborn streak**[6] that made him unpopular with managers and agents. But, you know, behind that **gruff**[7] **exterior** he had a **sharp wit**[8].

Interviewer: You say gruff, some would say **downright rude**. Would that be too harsh? He always seemed full of **pent-up anger**[9] towards the world in general.

Stewart: Well, 'rude' is a bit unfair. Yeah, he had a **forthright**[10] **manner**, and he was capable of **open hostility** if he thought we were being manipulated.

Interviewer: Yes, he did **display** some rather scary **characteristics.**

[5] barely hidden [6] a stubborn side to his character [7] rude and unfriendly
[8] was very amusing in a clever way [9] anger which he didn't express [10] direct

Retired golfer Andy Barstow

Interviewer: Andy, you're retired, you're a senior citizen, but everyone would agree you certainly don't **look your age**[11]. What's your secret?

Barstow: Well thanks. I'm sure some people would say I don't **act my age**[12] either!

Interviewer: Oh, that's not necessarily a bad thing! You do always seem to be **bursting with energy**!

Barstow: That's what golf does for you!

[11] look as old as you are [12] behave in a manner expected of your age

B Other useful collocations for behaviour and appearance

She had a **blank expression** on her face. [showing no understanding or emotion]
He always gave everyone a **warm, friendly smile**.
Tracy's new colleagues gave her a rather **cool reception**. [unfriendly welcome]
You have been guilty of **unacceptable behaviour**.
I'm surprised you find Jack unfriendly. He's always been **perfectly friendly** to me.
Angela has a rather **abrasive manner**. [rude and unfriendly manner]

Exercises

45.1 **Match words from each box to form collocations from the opposite page. Then match them to the definitions below.**

blank
gruff
striking
cool
stubborn
bubbly

personality
streak
reception
exterior
resemblance
expression

Amanda often had a blank expression on her face.

1 two things or people which look very similar
2 a very lively person
3 a person's face which shows no emotion
4 when someone is being inflexible
5 an apparently rude and unfriendly personality
6 a rather unfriendly welcome

45.2 **Which of these things that people say would usually be compliments?**

1 He/She certainly looks his/her age.
2 He/She's downright rude.
3 He/She's bursting with energy.
4 He/She has a bubbly personality.
5 He/She has a very abrasive manner.
6 He/She has a warm smile.
7 He/She's full of pent-up anger.
8 He/She has boundless energy.

45.3 **Complete this conversation using collocations from the box in the appropriate form so that Nell always agrees with Zoë.**

bear a striking resemblance to
forthright manner
boost your confidence
has a lot of admirable qualities
burst with energy
strong points

1 Zoë: Tom looks a bit like Brad Pitt, doesn't he?
Nell: Yes, he does. He .... him.
2 Zoë: And he's very good at making you feel more confident, isn't he?
Nell: Yes, he's great at ....
3 Zoë: Though of course he does say what he thinks directly to you.
Nell: Yes, he sometimes has a rather .... but I like that.
4 Zoë: Me too. In fact, I think that it might be one of his best characteristics.
Nell: Yes, you could say it is one of his .... , I suppose.
5 Zoë: Well, he has a lot of good points.
Nell: Yes, I'd certainly agree that he ....
6 Zoë: He's very energetic, for example.
Nell: Yes, I love the way he's always .... It's very attractive.

45.4 **Complete each sentence using the word in brackets in the appropriate form.**

1 Teresa is always .... friendly towards me. (PERFECT)
2 Can you see how Holly is looking at him with open .... ? (HOSTILE)
3 I refuse to put up with such .... behaviour. (ACCEPT)
4 He displays a lot more attractive .... than his brother does. (CHARACTER)
5 The woman looked at the official with .... disguised contempt. (THIN)
6 The star was upset that his home town gave him such a cool .... (RECEIVE)

46 Time and space

A Talking about space

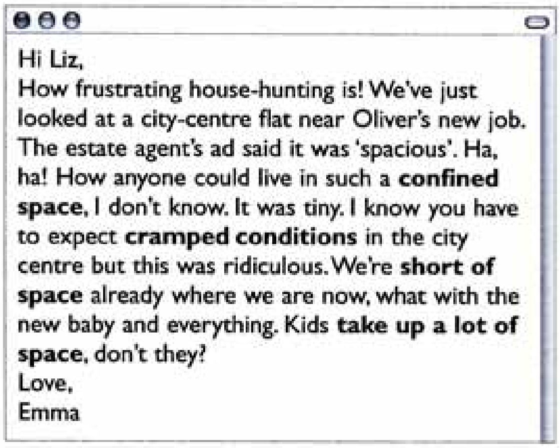

Hi Liz,
How frustrating house-hunting is! We've just looked at a city-centre flat near Oliver's new job. The estate agent's ad said it was 'spacious'. Ha, ha! How anyone could live in such a **confined space**, I don't know. It was tiny. I know you have to expect **cramped conditions** in the city centre but this was ridiculous. We're **short of space** already where we are now, what with the new baby and everything. Kids **take up a lot of space**, don't they?
Love,
Emma

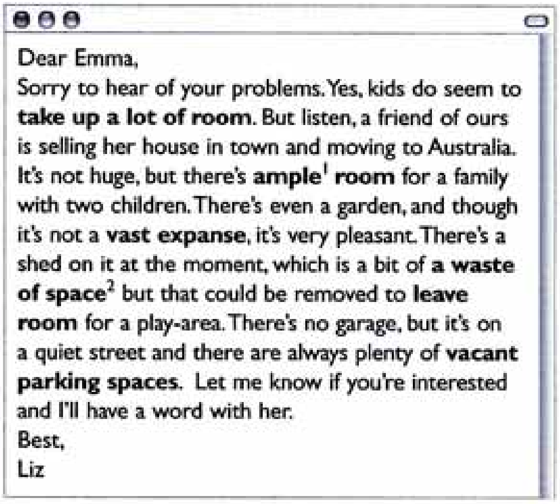

Dear Emma,
Sorry to hear of your problems. Yes, kids do seem to **take up a lot of room**. But listen, a friend of ours is selling her house in town and moving to Australia. It's not huge, but there's **ample**[1] **room** for a family with two children. There's even a garden, and though it's not a **vast expanse**, it's very pleasant. There's a shed on it at the moment, which is a bit of **a waste of space**[2] but that could be removed to **leave room** for a play-area. There's no garage, but it's on a quiet street and there are always plenty of **vacant parking spaces**. Let me know if you're interested and I'll have a word with her.
Best,
Liz

[1] more than enough [2] bad use of space when there is limited amount of it

Note that you can say **ample space/room; leave space/room; short of space/room** and **take up a lot of space/room**. However, you can only talk about something being a **waste of space** (NOT a waste of ~~room~~).

B Talking about time

In these magazine clips, notice the useful collocations for talking about time.

Pop bands come and go **over the course of time**[1], but few bands have **made** such **a lasting contribution** as The Beatles. They will **go down in history**[2] as possibly the greatest pop musicians of all time. Their music represents the **golden era**[3] of British pop in the 1960s, and every one of their songs **brings back memories** of that unforgettable time. Their music is all **preserved for posterity**[4] on a new set of re-mastered CDs.

[1] as time passes [2] be remembered [3] can also be **golden age**; period of time when a particular art, business, etc. was very successful [4] (formal) kept for people in the future

Buildings from a **bygone era**[5] are the main attraction at Castmere Folk Village. Homes, shops, even a cinema, have been **restored to their former glory**[6] in a massive project that has now reached completion.

[5] (literary) a time in the distant past [6] *glory* here means 'beauty'

For many people, the 1960s are nothing more than a **dim and distant**[7] **memory**, but in the **decades** that have **elapsed**, those of us born in the 60s begin to realise how that decade, which is still well **within living memory** for much of the population, has **shaped our destiny**. Our parents worked with pen and paper, or machines, or with their hands. They couldn't have known how computers would change everything in **the not-so-distant future**[8]. All indications are that many more changes will help to **shape** our children's **lives** in **the foreseeable future**[9].

[7] remembered slightly, but not very well [8] not the immediate future but relatively near
[9] as far into the future as you can imagine or plan for

TIP Where alternatives exist for a collocation, make a note in your vocabulary book and list the alternatives together, for example, **take up (a lot of) space/room, a golden age/era**.

Exercises

46.1 **Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.**

1 Living in such a confined
2 The piano took up a lot of
3 This office is better than the cramped
4 We're moving because we're short of
5 We demolished an old outhouse to leave
6 The attic is a waste of

room for a bigger kitchen and utility room.
space, so we're going to convert it into a study.
space is difficult with three kids.
room, so we sold it.
conditions I used to work in.
space where we're living at the moment.

46.2 **Complete the second sentence using a collocation from the opposite page so that it has the same meaning as the first sentence.**

1 Einstein's ideas significantly contributed to our understanding of the universe.
Einstein's ideas made .... our understanding of the universe.
2 The hotel car park didn't have any room, so we parked in the street.
There were no .... at the hotel, so we parked in the street.
3 Few people now have any clear memories of the Second World War.
The Second World War is now a ....
4 We won't have problems with our furniture as it's a big house.
It's a big house, so there will be .... for all our furniture.
5 She crossed the enormous Senoui desert on horseback.
She crossed .... of the Senoui desert on horseback.

46.3 **Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using a collocation from the opposite page based on the words in brackets.**

1 It's ten years since the agreement was signed. (ELAPSE)
2 I can't see any great changes happening in the future as far as we can imagine. (FORESEE)
3 Machines from an era which has long passed are the theme of the exhibition at the city museum. (GO BY)
4 The event will be remembered in history as the nation's worst tragedy. (DOWN)
5 Everything changes as time passes. (COURSE)
6 In the fairly near future we can expect to be able to travel to other planets. (DISTANT)

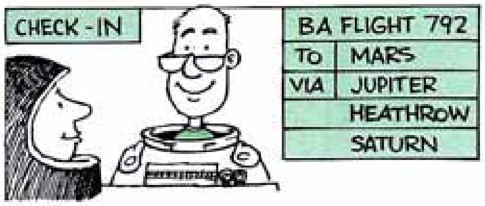

46.4 **Complete the crossword.**

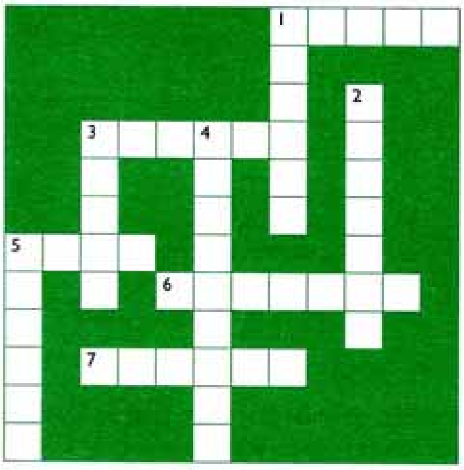

Across
1 The palace was restored to its former — .
3 The events have — our lives.
5 That song brings — memories.
6 Many things shape the — of a nation.
7 It all happened within — memory.

Down
1 It was the — era of Italian football.
2 My schooldays are now just a dim and — memory.
3 This table takes up a lot of — .
4 The castle has been preserved for — .
5 The cottage is a remnant of a — era.

47 Sound

The collocations marked * are rather literary and not frequent in everyday conversation.

A The human voice

Here are some brief extracts from novels, where people's voices and speech are being described.

- Lennox noticed **a trace of**[1] a foreign **accent** in the man's voice. It was a **booming**[2] **voice,** one he had heard before, many years ago.
- Lucy's **voice faltered**[3]* as she told her sad story.
- Wilson **gave** a loud **laugh*** as he watched Robert trying to fire the gun. Then, in a **gruff**[4] **voice**, he said, 'You're useless! Bring it here!' Robert **muttered** something **under his breath** as he obeyed.
- Mildred **met with a stony**[5] **silence** as she entered the room. It was as if everyone had **lost their voice.** Nobody **uttered a word**[6] as she walked across to the table.
- The woman spoke with a **broad**[7] Scottish **accent.** She had a rather **husky**[8] **voice**, which James found attractive, but she **slurred her words**[9] a little, as if she were too tired to talk.
- **Muffled**[10] **voices** could be heard coming from the next room, then **a strangled cry**[11]*, as though someone was in pain.
- Polly's suggestion met with **hoots of laughter**[12]*. She **raised her voice** angrily and shouted, 'Okay, do it your way then!'

[1] very slight [2] very loud [3] lost strength and hesitated [4] low, unfriendly and harsh
[5] cold and unfriendly [6] note, this collocation is normally in the negative or has a negative subject [7] strong (of accents) [8] low and rough, often thought to be attractive
[9] spoke unclearly, running the sounds together [10] quiet and unclear
[11] weak, high, interrupted sound made by an extremely frightened or anxious person
[12] sounds of loud laughter

B Sounds and silence

Here are four winning entries from a student poetry competition. The theme of the competition was 'Sound and silence'.

1st prize: Sasha Brokenburg

A **clap**[1] **of thunder**
then a **deathly hush**[2]*.
In a **soft whisper**
the wind tells the moon
how beautiful she is.

2nd prize: Abdul Zahra

Silence descends on Carthmore Lake.
My heart is still.
Only the **distant echo** of a sad cry
can be heard.

3rd prize: Nuria Palomar

In the street below, the **incessant**[3] **noise**
of trams and vans
of trucks and cars.
But my soul **makes** no **sound.**
Here in this darkened room
silence reigns[4].

4th prize: Liu Chan

A **dull thud**[5] awakens me.
The **sound travels** from
the valley where it was made
to this place here,
where no one dares **let out a cry.**

[1] sudden loud noise made by thunder [2] extreme silence, in a way that is unpleasant
[3] which never stops [4] dominates [5] unclear sound made when something heavy falls

Exercises

47.1 Read the sentences. Then answer the questions.

Despite his gruff voice, Fabrice's boss is actually quite an approachable person.
Zara gave a strangled cry when she realised the child was injured.
Kevin spoke in a booming voice, as if he were an army sergeant.
Ilona raised her voice and angrily addressed the young man at the door.
As she entered, she could hear Joe's husky voice addressing someone.

	name
1 Who spoke in an extremely loud voice?	
2 Who spoke in a low, rough, but perhaps attractive way?	
3 Who spoke in a low, unfriendly voice?	
4 Who started to speak louder than before?	
5 Who made a high, interrupted sound of fear or anxiety?	

47.2 Complete each sentence using a word from the box in the appropriate form.

descend falter give let lose make slur travel utter

1 The woman .... a shrill laugh when she heard the story.
2 Try not to .... a sound as we pass the baby's bedroom.
3 We didn't .... a single word as Harry told his sad tale.
4 The sound .... through the thin walls of my apartment; I hear everything.
5 The patient .... out a cry of pain as the doctor took his hand.
6 Silence .... in the hall as Mr Traynor walked to the platform to speak.
7 The man's voice .... as he answered the detective's questions.
8 What's the matter with you? Have you .... your voice? Say something!
9 Travis .... his words somewhat. I thought he might have been drinking.

47.3 Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.

1 I could hear a slight track of an Irish accent in her voice.
2 Paolo was met with a rocky silence as everyone tried to absorb the bad news.
3 The old woman let off a cry of anger when she heard the result of the trial.
4 She has a wide American accent, even though she was not born there.
5 I could hear thuds of laughter coming from the next room.
6 The voices were muttered, so I could not make out what anyone was saying.
7 Silence ruled in the classroom as the pupils were all hard at work.
8 Speak up. I hate it when you mutter something under your voice.

47.4 Replace the underlined words with their opposites to form collocations from the opposite page.

1 The nearby echo of gunfire could be heard across the valley.
2 The intermittent noise of the planes kept me awake all night.
3 In a loud whisper she said, 'You look wonderful tonight.'
4 I heard a sharp thud as the men dropped the heavy box on the floor above me.
5 There was a joyful hush in the room as General Wilkins broke the news.
6 Suddenly there was a murmur of thunder and it started to rain heavily.

48 Making things easier

A Choosing your approach

COMPLETING A TASK – HOW TO DO IT

When you need to work out the easiest way to do something, you have to **explore different ways** of approaching the task. Sometimes there will be many **feasible**[1] **alternatives** to consider and sometimes there will only be one or two **viable**[2] **options.** You need to **enlist the help** of people to give you advice before you decide on which **method to adopt.**

The best advice is to take a **step-by-step approach**: **break the task down** into stages, so that you are dealing with small **manageable chunks.** This way you will soon find that something you thought was hard is in fact **simplicity itself**[3]. But be careful, don't always take what looks like **the easy option.** Think first. At the end, you can feel proud that you didn't just **take the easy way out**[4].

[1] possible
[2] workable
[3] extremely simple
[4] do what is easiest but not what is best – which may mean avoiding doing anything at all

B Ways of remembering

Notice the collocations in this text introducing techniques for improving your memory.

A trained memory is an **immense asset**[1], particularly in public life. Mnemonics are systems for **dealing with the complexities** of learning and remembering, and people who use them can recall things with an **amazing degree of accuracy**.

The Ancient Greeks **perfected**[2] a number of mnemonic **techniques**, some of which are still used today, for example, using the first letter of each item to form a word that will help you remember the whole list of items. For instance, you might remember the female first name, ADA, to help you recall the phrase ***amazing degree of accuracy***. Or you might think of the word BAG, which will give you three colours that collocate with *hair* (*blond, auburn, ginger*).

A **simple rule** of all memory training systems is the idea of 'Initial Awareness'. This works in a **straightforward**[3] **way**. The **basic principle** is that the system helps you **concentrate the mind** on whatever you are trying to remember for just long enough to force Initial Awareness.

This may **sound like hard work** at first, but in fact all memory training systems are perfectly simple. Once you have **taken the time** to learn them, you will be able to **instantly recall** any new **items of information** you want to, **with remarkable ease.**

[1] something of great value
[2] the verb is pronounced /pɜː'fekt/
[3] easy to understand or simple

TIP Do you know any mnemonic techniques to help you learn vocabulary? If possible, share them with other students.

Exercises

48.1 **Answer these questions about the text in A.**

1 Which alternatives is it best to focus on when considering ways of doing something?
2 What sort of options are those that could work well?
3 Which option is not always the best one to take?
4 What sort of approach can one take to make a big task more manageable?

48.2 **Match words from each box to form collocations from the opposite page.**

adopt concentrate enlist immense
instantly perfect perfectly remarkable
simple take

asset ease help a method the mind
recall rule simple a technique the time

48.3 **Complete B's responses using collocations from the opposite page.**

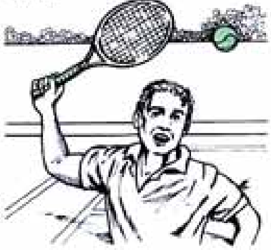

1 A: I notice your tennis serve is much better these days.
B: Yes, I think I've finally .... the technique, though it took months of practice.
2 A: Was the new computer easy to set up?
B: Yes, it was .... itself.
3 A: How did you get on in the charity race?
B: Well, I actually managed it with remarkable .... , given how unfit I was!
4 A: I didn't envy you having to sort out 200 CDs for the school music library!
B: Well, it sounded like .... at first, but it wasn't in fact that difficult.
5 A: How well does the pedometer your son made at college actually work?
B: With an amazing .... , in fact.
6 A: I have to sort out all these old papers and I just don't know where to start!
B: Why don't you .... the task down into smaller chunks and deal with them gradually?
7 A: Do you enjoy working with collocations?
B: Well, it's worth .... time to learn them as they make your language sound so much more natural.
8 A: How was your computer course?
B: Good. I find it much easier to deal with the .... of programming now.

48.4 **Choose the correct collocation.**

1 I always use mnemonics to help me recall important .... of information.
A spots B objects C items D stuff
2 We .... all the different ways of getting home before eventually deciding to fly.
A exploded B exploited C explicated D explored
3 The system works in a .... way.
A straightforward B strong C straight D forthright
4 It's a good idea to divide a task up into .... chunks.
A portable B manageable C edible D thinkable
5 All memory systems work on the same basic ....
A promotion B prime C principal D principle

FOLLOW UP

Look at this mnemonics site: www.fun-with-words.com/mnemonics.html. Make a note of useful ones.

49 Difficulty

A Adjective + noun collocations

- Life seems to have been a **constant struggle** for her ever since she left home.
- When the electricity went off everyone was rushing about in a **state of confusion.**
- Losing the job she loved so much was a **severe blow** for Anna. She **took it** very **badly.**
- Our plane was cancelled because of **adverse weather conditions.**
- Unfortunately, after the **widespread flooding** came **widespread looting** of the properties that had been abandoned. Meanwhile, many families remained in **grave danger** as the flood waters showed little sign of abating.
- If you continue to smoke there is a **high risk** of your developing a number of serious diseases.
- Jasmine's birthday party was a **complete disaster.** She decided to invite all of her own and her sisters' ex-boyfriends – with **catastrophic results.**

B Verb + noun collocations

collocation	*example*
face a problem	My grandmother **faced** many **problems** in her life.
address a problem	How do you think we should **address** the traffic **problems** in our city?
tackle a problem	More must be done to **tackle** the AIDS **problem.**
pose a threat	Nuclear weapons **pose a threat** to the whole world.
carry a risk	Most things that we do in life **carry** some degree of **risk.**
minimise a risk	Not smoking **minimises the risk** of getting a whole range of illnesses.
relish a challenge	Rob **relishes the challenge** of a new project.
hinder progress	Our party believes that this country's complex tax laws mainly serve to **hinder progress.**
spot an error	Terry **spotted an error** in the email he was about to send.
encounter difficulties	Any new business is bound to **encounter** some initial **difficulties.**
overcome hurdles	As she was born blind she has had to **overcome** many extra **hurdles** in her life.
fight for survival	Poor people in this drought-ridden country **fight for survival.**
respond to an emergency	The international community **responded** rapidly **to the emergency.**
disaster strikes	**Disaster struck** the province last June, when torrential rains caused mudslides in many areas.

ERROR WARNING

Remember that we **make mistakes**, NOT ~~do~~ mistakes, we usually **have problems** or **experience problems**, just as we usually also **have/experience difficulties**, NOT ~~get problems/difficulties~~. We attempt to **find a solution**, NOT ~~give~~ a solution. **Problems arise** or **occur**, NOT ~~happen~~ and **difficulties arise,** NOT ~~appear~~.

Exercises

49.1 Find a collocation in A that has the opposite meaning of these collocations ...

1 favourable weather conditions
2 a magnificent success
3 an easy ride
4 isolated flooding
5 slight danger

... and the same meaning as these collocations.

6 total confusion
7 disastrous results
8 serious risk
9 a terrible shock
10 a total disaster

49.2 Complete each sentence using a verb from the box in the appropriate form.

carry face fight hinder pose respond spot strike tackle

1 The government is doing all it can to .... the drug problem in our cities.
2 We had only just set off on our holiday when disaster ....
3 Can you .... the six deliberate errors in this story?
4 The international community does not always .... as promptly as would be desirable to an emergency.
5 Any new enterprise .... some risk of failure but that should not deter you.
6 I am afraid that Sandy's problems at home may be .... his progress at school.
7 If we .... the problems together we should find it easier to tackle them.
8 By the end of the expedition the climbers were .... for their very survival.
9 A man like that in a position of power .... a serious threat to world security.

49.3 Match each question (1–6) with its response (a–f).

1 Is Roy enjoying the challenge of his new post?
2 What can I do to minimise the risk of falling ill?
3 What made them decide to postpone the match?
4 What happened after the earthquake?
5 How can we address the climate change problem?
6 What was the hardest hurdle to overcome in your job?

a By reducing our carbon footprint.
b Widespread looting.
c Eat healthily.
d He's relishing it.
e Gender stereotyping, probably.
f Adverse weather conditions.

49.4 Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.

1 We are getting a number of problems with our new car.
2 Some problems happened when we tried to follow your instructions.
3 Somehow our society must give a solution to the problem of child poverty.
4 A difficulty has appeared with regard to a member of our project team.
5 Even advanced students sometimes do mistakes with this type of collocation.
6 I've always found a lot of difficulties with English spelling.

49.5 Use a dictionary or online corpus to find two other collocations for each of these words.

1 encounter 2 tackle 3 pose

50 Quantity and size

A Countable and uncountable expressions of quantity

The expressions in the table all mean quite a large number or amount.

collocation	*example*	*comment*
a good/fair few	**A good few** students are likely to get a first-class degree.	informal, used with countable nouns
a good/fair number	We spent **a good number of** weeks planning the project.	informal, used with countable nouns
a substantial/significant number	**A significant number of** people pledged their support.	formal, used with countable nouns
a substantial/significant quantity	We took **a significant quantity of** provisions with us.	formal, used with countable or uncountable nouns
a substantial/significant amount	He'll get **a substantial amount of** money when his father dies.	formal, used with uncountable nouns

B Other expressions about size and quantity

We couldn't believe **the sheer quantity** of food on the table. [the surprisingly large amount]

There's only a **finite number** of days until the exam. [limited number]

The room is a **good size.** [quite large]

A teacher needs to possess **unbounded enthusiasm** as well as **infinite patience** and an **endless supply** of good jokes.

They charge **astronomical fees** for the course. [very high]

We had a **bumper crop** of tomatoes last year and I gave masses away to our neighbours. [informal; very large crop]

Unemployment reached **epic proportions** and this led to social instability.

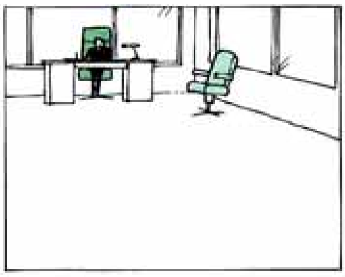

I was amazed by the sheer size of his office.

The rock star died from a **massive overdose** of barbiturates.

An **overwhelming majority** of the population are in favour of reform.

I visited a lot of different relatives yesterday and drank an **inordinate amount** of tea.

Try to use a **wide range** of vocabulary in your essay.

There is a **wide variety/choice** of things to do here in the evenings.

The new maths teacher is **an unknown quantity.** I hope she'll get on well with the students. [a person or thing whose characteristics are not yet clear]

C Common errors

There are a number of errors often made by learners when talking about quantity or size.

correct word(s)	*collocates with ...*	*wrong word(s)*
small	minority, amount, number, quantity, percentage	~~little~~
large	quantity, amount, number, majority	~~great, big, high~~
large, high	percentage	~~great~~
great	importance, significance	~~high, big~~

Exercises

50.1 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 We had a large number of apples from our trees last year. (BUMPER)
2 A lot of their income comes from the apartments they rent out. (SUBSTANTIAL)
3 I feel confident that quite a few people will vote for Mac. (NUMBER)
4 Jill's room at college is quite big. (GOOD)
5 We don't have an unlimited number of tickets, so we're offering them on a first-come-first-served basis. (FINITE)
6 I was terrifed when I saw how big the dog was. (SHEER)
7 I still don't know what my new colleague is like. (QUANTITY)
8 There were rather a lot of careless mistakes in your homework. (FAIR)

50.2 Complete each sentence using a word from the opposite page.

1 The Green Party won the election with an overwhelming ....
2 He did not realise how strong the tablets were and died of a massive ....
3 Some lawyers are known to charge astronomical ....
4 The government didn't take action until inflation had reached epic ....
5 I have a profound admiration for your sister's infinite ....
6 We didn't have many plums last year but this year we enjoyed a bumper ....
7 Paul doesn't really like coffee but I drink a substantial ....
8 There never used to be any nightclubs here but now there are a good ....

50.3 Match the two parts of these collocations from the opposite page.

1 unbounded
2 bumper
3 astronomical
4 infinite
5 fair
6 endless
7 inordinate
8 sheer

quantity
amount
enthusiasm
patience
fees
few
supply
crop

50.4 Put a tick in the box if the collocation is possible.

	minority	majority	amount	number	percentage	quantity	importance	significance
small								
little								
large								
great								
big								
high								
wide								

50.5 Use a dictionary or online corpus to find two other collocations for each of these words.

1 infinite 2 epic 3 overwhelming 4 endless 5 massive

51 Change

A Collocations with *change* as a noun

There have been **dramatic changes** in the climate of the Arctic region in the last decade. [very sudden or noticeable changes]
The government is proposing **fundamental changes** to the laws on marriage and divorce. [basic changes, and more important than anything else]
There was a **radical change** in party policy in 2003. [great or extreme change]
The new manager made **sweeping changes** to the way the company was run. [change affecting many people/things]
Let's go swimming this morning instead of jogging – it **would make a change**. [be pleasantly different to one's usual routine]
Read the teacher's comments on your essays, then **make** any necessary **changes**.
The **changes** in the system **will be implemented** soon. [will be put into operation/practice]
The **change** in the electoral system **came about** because of widespread public protest.
Many **changes** had **taken place** in my home town – and not always for the better.

B Collocations with *change* as a verb, adjective or adverb

Things can **change dramatically, fundamentally** or **radically** but NOT ~~sweepingly~~.
Pronunciation **changes imperceptibly** over the years. [changes so slowly that you hardly notice it]
In the ten years since our last meeting, Irene had **changed beyond recognition**. [changed so much one couldn't recognise her]
If we call someone **a changed man/woman** we mean that he or she has changed for the better.
Life in the village **remained unchanged** for centuries. [formal: **stayed the same**]
Some people are much better than others at **adapting to changing circumstances**.

C Other ways of talking about change

example	*comment*
The hotel had **undergone a transformation** since our last stay.	also **undergo a revival**
The exchange rate has been **fluctuating wildly** over the last few days.	= going up and down in an unpredictable way (also used with *temperature(s)* and *share prices*)
We have had a **modest increase** in students enrolling on our courses.	also a **modest improvement, modest gain, modest recovery**, where modest = slight or small
There has been a **sudden shift** in public opinion in favour of the ban on smoking.	also a **dramatic shift**
Amy's work **shows** considerable **improvement**.	one opposite might be: There is **room for improvement** in her work.
Our children's **lives were turned upside-down** when we moved.	= **changed dramatically**, usually for the worse
Elderly people sometimes find it difficult to **move with the times**.	= keep up with changes and adapt to them

ERROR WARNING

Profits **show an increase/decrease** and **show an upward / a downward trend**, NOT ~~have~~ an increase etc.
Figures **increase dramatically** or **significantly**, NOT increase ~~strongly~~.

Exercises

51.1 **Answer these questions about the collocations on the opposite page.**

1 What is the opposite of:
  a) to change imperceptibly b) to cancel planned changes
2 Which of these words suggest major changes and which minor changes?
  a) dramatic b) slight c) fundamental d) superficial e) radical
3 Which is the more formal alternative in each pair:
  a) The town remains unchanged. The town is the same.
  b) Over the years the school has changed a lot.
    Over the years many changes have taken place in the school.
4 If someone says Emma is a changed woman, do they approve of the change in Emma?
5 Is it easier for a young person or an elderly person to adapt to changing circumstances?
6 If someone says 'It made a nice change going out for a meal last night', what changed – the fact that they went out, or the restaurant they went to?

51.2 **Complete each sentence using a word from the box in the appropriate form.**

dramatic make implement increase recognise
show times turn undergo wild

1 The figures .... a dramatic increase in the number of women in paid employment in the 1940s.
2 My grandmother loves her laptop and her mobile phone – she has no problem moving with the ....
3 I can't face moving house again – I don't want to have my life .... upside-down another time.
4 The pop music of the 1980s seems to be .... a bit of a revival.
5 The weather's been odd this month – temperatures have fluctuated ....
6 We have experienced a modest .... in profits this year.
7 I .... some changes to the document but forgot to save them!
8 I think you'll find that the school has changed beyond ....
9 The new leader promised that things would change .... and for the better.
10 When are they planning to .... the changes to the school curriculum?

51.3 **Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.**

1 Your coursework assignment is still not quite as good as it should be. (ROOM)
2 Public attitudes towards the issue of capital punishment suddenly changed. (SHIFT)
3 There were several changes in our management structure last year. (PLACE)
4 The school programme has changed a lot since I was a pupil here. (SWEEPING)
5 Some quite significant changes took place last year. (CAME)
6 Penny has been much nicer since she got the job she wanted. (CHANGED)
7 My life changed dramatically when I lost my job. (TURNED)
8 It'd be nice to do something different and stay in a hotel rather than go camping this summer. (CHANGE)

FOLLOW UP

Go to www.bbc.co.uk and search for 'climate change'. Click on one of the items, read it and make a note of any collocations relating to change that you find in it.

52 Stopping and starting

A Stopping

example	*comment*
The accident **brought** traffic **to a halt** for several hours.	often used about transport (trains, etc.)
The union **called a halt to** the strike after 21 days.	= prevent something from continuing (e.g. military action, protests, etc.)
The chair **brought** the meeting **to a close** at 5pm.	often used about discussions.
The new teacher soon **put a stop to** bad behaviour in the class.	used about unpopular activities or habits (e.g. crime, antisocial activities)
They **terminated his contract** since he failed to meet his sales targets.	formal; also **terminate a pregnancy**
The government may **abandon their policy** on ID cards.	also **abandon an attempt** to do sth
Police **called off the search** as darkness fell.	= cancelled; also **call off a match** or other sports event
The police have **closed off** the **street** while repairs are being carried out there.	= block the entrance to stop people entering a street
Wait until there is a **lull in the conversation**, then we can leave.	= a pause; also **lull in the fighting** (in a military conflict)

B Starting

As **dawn broke** we set off up the mountain. [as the sun first appeared]
Jasmine suddenly **broke into song.** [started singing]
William **broke into a run** when he saw the bus leaving. [started running]
The rain set in for the day. [it started and seemed likely to continue]
The smoke **set off the fire alarm.**
Customs have **instigated measures** to deal with illegal immigration. [formal: introduced]
The chairperson made some **opening remarks**, others then **entered into the discussion.**

C News headlines

VIOLENCE **SPARKS FEARS**[1] OF FURTHER UNREST

MINISTER **ALLAYS FEARS**[6] OF TAX INCREASE

PEACE PROCESS **TALKS COLLAPSE**[2]

ARMY **QUELLS UNREST**[7] ON BORDER

STADIUM FINALLY NEARS COMPLETION[3]

NEW REPUBLIC BREAKS DIPLOMATIC RELATIONS WITH NEIGHBOURS

STAR **DISPELS RUMOURS**[4] OF DIVORCE

SINGER **CLEARS UP CONFUSION**[5] ABOUT LYRICS

[1] makes people worry about
[2] come to an unsuccessful conclusion
[3] is almost finished
[4] makes a statement to end the rumours
[5] ends confusion
[6] stops people worrying about
[7] stops disturbances

Exercises

52.1 Look at A. Which word fits in both sentences in each pair?

1 The Minister may be forced to .... his policy on constitutional reform.
The climbers had to .... their attempt to reach the summit because of bad weather.
2 During a .... in the fighting, aid workers were able to get food to people in need.
Have something ready to say in case there is a .... in the conversation.
3 I think we should .... the meeting to a close now.
Did the demonstration .... the traffic to a halt?
4 It's time the union .... a halt to the industrial action.
The college .... off the match because of the bad weather.

52.2 Match the beginning of each sentence (1–8) with its ending (a–h).

1 I'm afraid it was me burning the toast that set
2 As soon as she saw her mother the little girl broke
3 Because of the President's visit, they've closed
4 I didn't manage to fall asleep until dawn
5 I hope they won't decide to terminate
6 The missing child was found, so the police called
7 The school is planning to instigate some
8 We were halfway up the mountain when the rain

a the contract.
b off the smoke alarm.
c anti-bullying measures.
d off the area.
e set in.
f into a run.
g off their search.
h was breaking.

52.3 Match each topic of a newspaper article to the most likely headline in C.

1 There was a disagreement about who wrote a particular song.
2 A problem between two neighbouring countries is solved by military means.
3 A country recalls its ambassador from another country.
4 Two countries at war fail to reach agreement.
5 People are beginning to worry that there will be more disturbances.
6 A celebrity denies that her marriage is over.
7 Some sports facilities will soon be ready for use.
8 The government promises that rumours are untrue.

52.4 Choose the correct collocation.

1 First I'd like to make a few *beginning / opening / starting* remarks.
2 I'm not going to *enter / bring / come* into any further discussion of the issue.
3 I hope I can manage to *collapse / staunch / allay* your fears.
4 I wish we could put a *close / stop / halt* to the redevelopment plans.
5 I love it when she *sparks / clears / breaks* into song as she prepares our meal.
6 We must do something to *close off / dispel / break off* the rumours about us.
7 The guards soon managed to *quell / collapse / allay* the unrest at the prison.
8 At long last the building is nearing *finish / termination / completion.*

53 Cause and effect

A Collocations with *cause* and *effect*

We have yet to **establish the cause** of this latest outbreak of foot and mouth disease.
Mass unemployment is believed to be the **root cause**[1] of the riots.
The research team thinks that a virus is the **primary cause**[2] of this type of cancer.
The President said it would take time for the reforms to produce the **desired effect**.
It is likely to be some weeks before we **feel the full effect** of the rise in interest rates.
This morning's delays to flights have **had a knock-on effect**[3] on departures all day.
The children involved in the hijack are not expected to suffer any long-term **ill effects**[4].

[1] origin
[2] main cause
[3] indirect result (NOT ~~make~~ an effect)
[4] negative results (Note that *ill* here means *bad* rather than *sick*)

B Other words meaning *cause*

example	*meaning*
The advertising campaign didn't **produce the results** we hoped for.	lead to the results
The Finance Minister's decision to raise income tax **provoked an outcry**.	caused a lot of public anger
If teachers show favouritism, it **breeds resentment**.	makes others feel angry and unhappy
Mary didn't believe the rumours about her boss but they **planted doubts** in her mind.	made her feel uncertain
The film star's photo **prompted speculation** that she may be pregnant.	caused people to suspect
Email has more or less **rendered** the fax machine **obsolete**.	caused to be no longer used
If you want to make an insurance claim, you can **set the wheels in motion** by filling in this form.	make something start to happen
This wind will **wreak havoc** with my flowers!	cause a lot of damage to
Our new neighbours are so noisy, it's enough to **drive** anyone **crazy**!	informal, make angry and upset
The strike could **spell disaster** for the country.	cause serious problems

C Talking about reasons and consequences

Mr Ball: Why did Jack behave so badly in class? There must have been some **compelling reason**[1] surely. He must have known there'd be **dire consequences**[2].
Miss Cane: I don't know. I think his parents' financial problems might be a **contributing factor** but he refused to **give me a reason**. Anyway, I sent him to the headteacher and I'm sure she'll **demand an explanation**.
Mr Ball: Yes, she'll certainly make him **face the consequences** of his actions!

[1] very powerful reason
[2] very serious consequences

Exercises

53.1 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 I think that computers will eventually render
2 The preliminary meeting set the wheels
3 Her mother calling her sister 'the pretty one' bred
4 I always suspected the new tax law would spell
5 I'm sure that your hard work will produce
6 The boss's decision to cut wages provoked
7 The way he behaved last night planted
8 The Minister's absence has prompted
9 The uncertainty of the situation is driving
10 The floods last week wrought

havoc in low-lying areas.
an outcry from the staff.
speculation that he is unwell.
a positive result.
us crazy.
disaster for the economy.
a lot of resentment.
of the new project in motion.
books obsolete.
doubts in my mind about his honesty.

53.2 Complete each sentence using a word from the opposite page. The first letters are given for you.

1 Henry's mother d................................. an explanation for his extraordinary behaviour.
2 Fortunately the consequences were not as d................................. as we had anticipated.
3 Now I dread having to f................................. the consequences of my over-hasty decision to hand in my notice.
4 Do you have any c................................. reason for wanting to invite Zoë to come too?
5 When I asked the doctor why I felt so exhausted, he said that stress might be a c................................. factor.
6 Can you give me any sensible r................................. why we should do something so risky?
7 Unfortunately, the sleeping pills she's taking are not having the d................................. effect.
8 The hurricane has w................................. havoc along the Florida coast.
9 I suspect that the journalist deliberately wanted to p................................. doubts in his readers' minds about the effectiveness of the recent security measures.

53.3 Order the words to form sentences.

1 the / next / nearly / crazy. / dust / site / building / The / me / is / from / driving / door
2 them / will / time / establish / of / It / a / the / the / take / cause / long / accident. / to
3 motion / If / now, / your / week. / things / we / next / visa / ready / should / set / in / be
4 out / customer / produced / results. / The / survey / company / surprising / carried / which / the / some

53.4 Answer these questions.

1 What is the desired effect of any medication?
2 Is a knock-on effect usually welcomed or not?
3 Which other collocation in A has a similar meaning to *primary cause*?
4 If a dentist gives you a local anaesthetic injection, how long does it usually take before you feel the full effect of the injection?
5 Do you think society has suffered any ill effects as the result of the invention of television?
6 Can you name an invention that has been rendered obsolete by new technology?

FOLLOW UP

Use a search engine or corpus to find sentences using (a) cause and (b) effect. Note down five sentences for each word, illustrating typical collocations.

54 Describing groups and amounts

A Groups of animals

When we describe a group of animals, the word we use depends on the animals we are talking about. So, we talk about **a pack of dogs, hounds** or **wolves** but a **herd of cattle** and **elephants** (and other large herbivorous mammals). We say **a swarm of bees/locusts** (and other flying insects) but we say **a flock of birds** and also **a flock of sheep.**
Other more unusual examples include **a pride of lions, a shoal of fish** or **sardines** (or other specific small fish), **a school** or **pod of dolphins** or **whales, a tribe of monkeys** or **baboons.**

B Feelings and behaviour

Here are some collocations using 'amount' words relating to feelings and behaviour. Note that the futher collocations listed in the third column do not all relate to feelings or behaviour.

example	*comment*	*further collocations*
There was **a flurry of activity** as the children fetched their paints.	*Flurry* suggests a sudden, short period of interest or activity.	**a flurry of interest/excitement/ speculation/snow**
I didn't detect **even a flicker of emotion** in his cold eyes.	*Flicker* suggests a brief expression of emotion.	**a flicker of hope/interest**
The company's figures are beginning to offer **a glimmer of hope** for the future.	*Glimmer* suggests a faint indication of something.	**a glimmer of interest/light/ understanding**
There was **a touch of sadness** in her voice as she told us her news.	*Touch* suggests a small amount of something.	**a touch of humour/irony** **a touch of class** = sophistication
I've experienced the **whole gamut of emotions** from joy to sorrow.	*Gamut* means the entire range of something.	collocates very strongly with *emotions*, though it can also be used about colours or musical notes
Inviting José to join our project team was a **stroke of genius.**	A *stroke of* means a bit of.	**a stroke of luck;** he never does **a stroke of work** (always used with the negative)

C Food

Set menu

Soup

freshly made soup of the day, with **a hunk[1] of bread**

Garlic chicken

(10 **cloves[2] of garlic** in every helping!) served on **a bed of rice** or with baked potato and **a knob of butter[3]**

Apple pie

served with a generous **dollop of cream[4]**

To finish, try our speciality coffee with **a drop of brandy, a dash[5] of cream** and **a sprinkling[6] of cinnamon** on top.

[1] thick slice (of cheese, bread or meat)

[2] one piece taken from a head of garlic

[3] small lump of butter

[4] large spoonful of jam or cream

[5] small amount of liquid

[6] small amount of herb or spice

Exercises

54.1 **Look at A. Which creature in each group has a different group word?**

1 birds, bees, flies
2 zebras, cattle, wasps
3 sardines, sheep, birds
4 whales, dolphins, fish
5 elephants, baboons, monkeys
6 wolves, lions, dogs

54.2 **Complete the answers to the questions using a word from the opposite page.**

1 A: What have the stock exchanges been like this morning?
B: Well, there was a .... of activity first thing but it's quietened down now.
2 A: Would you like your coffee black or white?
B: Can I have just a .... of milk, please?
3 A: *(on the phone)* What's the weather like with you?
B: Cold! There was even a .... of snow here this morning.
4 A: Do you think it was a good idea to write our new advert in verse?
B: It was brilliant, a .... of genius! Everyone's talking about it.
5 A: Do I need to do anything more to finish off the sauce?
B: Add a .... of brandy and a .... of herbs and it'll be perfect.
6 A: What do the critics say about the film?
B: The Times critic says it takes viewers through a whole .... of emotions.
7 A: Shall we have our picnic here?
B: No, look at that .... of ants. Let's go a bit further.
8 A: Do you think the pupils enjoyed the lecture?
B: Well, I saw an occasional .... of interest but it didn't last.
9 A: Do you think she knows what's going on?
B: I thought there was a .... of understanding in her eyes but I'm not sure.

54.3 **Which is bigger?**

1 a dash of cream; a dollop of cream
2 a slice of bread; a hunk of bread
3 a head of garlic; a clove of garlic
4 100g of butter; a knob of butter

54.4 **Match words from each box to form collocations.**

a bed
gamut
a pod
a drop
a glimmer
a shoal
a flurry
a pack
a touch

of brandy
of hope
of rice
of colours
of hounds
of speculation
of fish
of humour
of whales

54.5 **Here are some more 'group' or 'amount' words. Complete each sentence using a word from the box. You need to use some of the words twice. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

grain pack pad pinch suite swig torrent

1 Pass me that .... of paper, please. I need to write some thank-you letters.
2 I think his story was just a .... of lies without even a .... of truth in it.
3 The film star is staying in a .... of rooms at the Grosvenor Hotel.
4 I'd like to play patience. Have you got a .... of cards?
5 The speaker was met with a .... of abuse.
6 Sometimes Ian doesn't seem to possess even a .... of common sense.
7 Don't forget to add a .... of salt.
8 I'm so thirsty. Could I have a .... of lemonade?

55 Comparing and contrasting

A Comparing two places

Emily has been offered two different jobs. The jobs are **fundamentally similar** but they are in different towns – Alton and Belville. The two towns **bear very little resemblance to**[1] each other. Alton is a small town by the sea; Belville is **entirely different** as it is a large industrial town. Alton is a beautiful old town which attracts a lot of tourists. This is **in marked contrast to** Belville, which is rather an ugly town. There is a **wide variation** in the cost of accommodation in the two towns. Emily could rent a flat much more cheaply in Belville.

There is also **a world of difference** in the entertainment on offer in the two places. Both towns have several cinemas and theatres, but because there is a **clear distinction** between the types of people who live in each place – there are far more students and other young people in Belville – there is a **yawning gap**[2] between what the cinemas and theatres show. Belville tends to have a lot of foreign films and original new plays, and those are much more to Emily's taste. The options for eating out also **differ widely**. Although Alton is smaller, it has a lot of good restaurants, though they do tend to be rather expensive. Belville is the **exact opposite**. It has a small number of relatively inexpensive restaurants.

To sum up, Alton and Belville are in many respects **polar opposites**[3]. Emily is finding it hard to make up her mind. As soon as she decides that **the advantages** of Alton **outweigh its disadvantages**[4], then someone reminds her of the other **side of the argument**. Which of these two **strikingly different** places do you think she should decide to move to?

[1] don't look at all alike
[2] an enormous difference
[3] extreme opposites
[4] are stronger than the disadvantages

B Finding a balance

Tom: How's work going these days, Karl? Are you still at the bank?
Karl: Didn't you know I'd left? I decided to do something **fundamentally different** last year and retrained as a teacher.

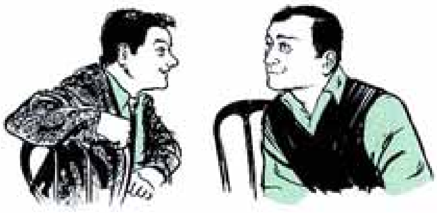

Tom: Wow! That's a bit of a change! Your salary as a teacher surely **doesn't bear comparison with**[1] what you got as an investment banker.
Karl: Yes, but in other respects teaching **compares** very **favourably with** banking. I find it very personally rewarding – the financial advantages of banking **pale in comparison**[2].
Tom: So, what appeals to you so much about teaching?
Karl: Well, a teaching friend of mine once **drew a comparison between** teaching and gardening. Teachers tend children in much the same way as gardeners tend flowers. I love gardening, so perhaps that's why I love teaching so much!
Tom: But lots of people say it's a very stressful job these days.
Karl: Perhaps. When I first started, I found it hard to **strike the balance between** being firm and being friendly. I wanted to be my pupils' friend but I soon learnt that you can never totally **bridge the gap** between pupil and teacher.
Tom: Yes, I guess there's a **subtle distinction**[3] between being friendly and being weak.
Karl: That's right. Anyway I think I've got the balance right now and I have no regrets at all about my career change – despite the **growing disparity**[4] between what I earn now and the salaries of my ex-colleagues still at the bank.

[1] can't be compared with
[2] seem unimportant
[3] also **subtle difference**
[4] increasing difference

Exercises

55.1 Look at A. Complete the sentences.

1 There is a .... gap between the lives of the rich and the poor. The rich person's experience of life is entirely .... from that of someone without money.
2 Once you have read both .... of the argument, you can draw your own conclusion.
3 The two approaches are in many ways polar ....
4 There is a world of .... between your way of life and mine. Your living arrangements are, for a start, in marked .... to my own.
5 There is a .... distinction between lying and not telling the whole truth.
6 There was a .... variation between the exam marks of the stronger and the weaker candidates.

55.2 Match the beginning of each sentence (1–8) with its ending (a–h).

1 Harula bears very little
2 I find it hard to appreciate the subtle
3 In my essay I attempted to draw a
4 My own painting doesn't bear
5 Our results were the exact
6 Students may find it hard to strike the
7 The conference's aim is to bridge the
8 There seems to be a growing

a difference between the cheeses from these two regions.
b right balance between their studies and their social life.
c opposite of what we had predicted.
d gap between artists and scientists.
e disparity between the rich and the poor.
f comparison between language learning and riding a bike.
g resemblance to her sister.
h comparison with that of a trained artist.

55.3 Choose the correct collocation. More than one option may be possible. Use a dictionary or online corpus to help you if necessary.

1 The two performers are *entirely / highly / strikingly* different.
2 Politicians talk a lot about how to *join / bridge / cross* the gap between rich and poor.
3 Tessa's work is OK, but it doesn't *make / work / bear* comparison with yours.
4 There is a *deep / clear / subtle* distinction between our points of view.
5 There is a *land / world / planet* of difference between our two lifestyles.
6 The two theories are *fundamentally / strikingly / widely* similar.
7 There is a(n) *growing / rising / extending* disparity between the haves and the have-nots.
8 It is important that you should also hear the other *edge / side / aspect* of the argument.

55.4 Write sentences comparing life in the town with life in the country using the words in brackets in a collocation from this unit.

1 (OUTWEIGH) ....
2 (FAVOURABLY) ....
3 (FUNDAMENTALLY) ....
4 (PALE) ....
5 (STRIKINGLY) ....
6 (DIFFER) ....

FOLLOW UP

Look in a good dictionary, use a search engine or the corpus at www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk to find two more collocations for: contrast, outweigh and gap.

56 Making an effort

A Adjective + noun collocations

collocation	*example*	*meaning*
a determined effort	Mike has been making **a determined effort** to save money.	a very serious and thorough effort
a concerted effort	We made **a concerted effort** to meet all our deadlines this week.	a determined effort, usually made by several people working together
a joint effort	I couldn't have done it on my own – it was truly **a joint effort**.	done by two or more people
a team effort	The manager congratulated the sales force on their magnificent **team effort**.	done by a group of people
a valiant effort	Meena has made **a valiant effort** to keep up with work despite her illness.	a brave effort in the face of great difficulty
strenuous efforts	**Strenuous efforts** were made to prevent the story from reaching the papers.	attempts requiring a lot of effort or energy
give it one's best shot	Although Kerry didn't succeed in breaking the record, he **gave it his best shot**.	make an attempt that is worthy of admiration
an abortive attempt	They made several **abortive attempts** to climb the mountain.	(formal) failed attempts
physical exertion	I'm exhausted – I'm not used to so much **physical exertion**!	hard physical effort
a hard slog	It was **a hard slog** getting my thesis finished on time but I made it!	(informal) hard work
an uphill struggle	It'll be **an uphill struggle** persuading the boss to make the changes you want.	(informal) a lot of effort with no certainty of success

B Careers advice

Note the collocations in this advertisement for training workshops.

■ CAREERS WORKSHOPS ■

Our workshops **offer advice** to anyone who is thinking about a new career. We can **provide a solution** to any careers problem. Our training is based on the premise that successful career choice **requires effort**. But if you **devote energy to** making the right decisions, if you **follow our advice** and **heed**[1] **our warnings** we guarantee you will **reap the rewards**[2] of your efforts. Those who **ignore our advice** tend to find their career is **doomed to failure**[3]. So if you have a **desperate desire** to succeed, don't just **pin your hopes on**[4] good luck, come to one of our workshops. Our methods have **stood the test of time**[5]. So come on, you know it's got to be **worth a try**. Sign up for one of our workshops and you won't look back.

[1] listen to
[2] be rewarded
[3] sure to fail
[4] rely on
[5] been proved successful over a long period of time

ERROR WARNING

You **make an effort**, NOT do an effort.

Exercises

56.1 **Answer these questions about collocations from A.**

1 'Max is not used to so much physical exertion.'
What is Max not accustomed to – exercise or intellectual activity?
2 'Doing a degree while you're working will be a hard slog but it'll be worth it.'
Does the speaker think it will be straightforward for their friend to do a degree?
3 'You mustn't forget that the project requires a joint effort.'
Is the project the responsibility of one person or more?
4 'It's important that you give things your best shot.'
Is the speaker encouraging someone to try their hardest or to spend a lot of money?
5 'In 1905 a female revolutionary made an abortive attempt to kill the heir to the throne.'
Did the revolutionary assassinate the heir?
6 'You'll have to make a team effort if you want to win the trophy!'
Is the speaker talking about cooperation or competition between the members of the team?

56.2 **Complete this paragraph using words from the box in the appropriate form.**

desire determine devote doom heed ignore
pin reap require shot strenuous worth

Last year I decided to set up my own online company. I received conflicting advice about doing so from different people. My friends said it was (1) .... a try and encouraged me to make a (2) .... effort to get it going. My parents said my plans were (3) .... to failure. I wish I hadn't (4) .... my parents' advice. I wouldn't have been in this mess now, had I (5) .... their warnings. I should have known that such a vague business plan was risky, but I suppose I had such a desperate (6) .... to succeed that I thought I might get away with it. It's not because I didn't give it my best (7) .... I made (8) .... efforts to get things going, (9) .... more or less all my energy to getting it started. But in the end it just (10) .... too much effort. I had been (11) .... my hopes on getting enough publicity for my site but that just never happened. So, unfortunately, it seems I will never (12) .... the rewards of my efforts.

56.3 **Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.**

1 It'll be extremely difficult to get your work finished by the deadline. (UPHILL)
2 The appeal of Shakespeare's plays has certainly lasted through the centuries. (TEST)
3 It would be sensible for you to do what he advises. (FOLLOW)
4 No parents can solve all their children's problems. (PROVIDE)
5 After a few months you will begin to benefit from all your hard work. (REAP)
6 Rob tried hard not to fall behind in the race but he just didn't have enough stamina. (VALIANT)
7 Being very active physically certainly works up an appetite. (EXERTION)
8 A lawyer would probably be the best person to advise you. (OFFER)
9 I'm very much hoping I may win a scholarship to the college. (PINNING)
10 Alex has been trying very hard to do better this term. (CONCERTED)

57 Social English

All the collocations in this unit are typical of informal English.

A Conversations

Zita: I was looking for a birthday present for my nephew but I **didn't have much luck.** You don't have any **bright ideas,** do you?

Alan: You could just give him some money or a book token perhaps?

Zita: That **thought occurred to me,** but then it looks like I haven't **gone to any trouble.**

Lisa: I really hate my sister's new boyfriend, Greg. I went out for a meal with them last night and he really **had a go at** her for being late. He **really got to her**[1].

Pat: You're being a bit hard on him. I'm sure he didn't **mean any harm**[2].

Lisa: I'm not so sure about that. Actually, I don't think I **can bear the thought of** ever having to spend time with him again.

Pat: Well, it's not you who is going out with him. I **wouldn't lose any sleep**[3] over it.

Ana: How do you feel about Nina going to work in Tasmania?

Tania: Goodness, **news travels fast!** I didn't realise anyone else knew about it yet. Well, **it came as a bit of a shock** when she first told me. But, **to be brutally honest,** now I've had time to think about it, I'm finding it a bit of **a welcome relief.**

Ana: **I know the feeling**[4]. She can be good fun but she's so sharp-tongued that I have to say I'll be **glad to see the back of**[5] her.

Paul: **Are you up for**[6] going to Sam's leaving party tonight? We're planning to **give him a** really **good send-off**[7].

Adam: I really don't think I can make it. I'm just too tired. **The simple reason** is I've **been on the go**[8] all week and I haven't had a **decent night's sleep** for ages. I just can't **face the thought of** going out tonight.

Paul: Well, that's a **feeble excuse,** if ever there was one.

Adam: I know, and I feel terrible about it because I really like him. I might invite him to my house for dinner next week instead. Would you like to come too?

Paul: Sure, I'll be up for that. **Give me a ring**[9] or **drop me an email** with the details.

[1] made her very upset
[2] intend to do or say anything wrong
[3] wouldn't worry
[4] I feel the same
[5] happy to see someone leave
[6] would you like to
[7] do something special to say goodbye
[8] been very busy
[9] phone me

B Common errors

The *Cambridge Learner Corpus* shows that candidates for advanced English exams often make mistakes with these collocations.

example of error	*correct sentence*
I hope I didn't ~~bring~~ you any trouble.	I hope I didn't **cause you any trouble / put you to any trouble.**
I'm ~~very~~ looking forward to seeing you.	I'm **really / very much looking forward** to seeing you soon.
I ~~strongly~~ hope you will apologise.	I **sincerely / very much hope** you will apologise.
I'm ~~very~~ delighted by your invitation.	I'm **absolutely delighted** by your invitation.
It's a ~~big~~ pleasure to hear from you again.	It's a **great pleasure** to hear from you again.

Exercises

57.1 **Choose the correct collocation to complete each short dialogue.**

1 Jan: Have you decided what to do for Sophie's birthday?
Gus: No, I'm afraid I haven't had any *decent / bright / welcome* ideas at all.

2 Liz: That wasn't a very nice thing for her to say when we were only trying to *get / make / give* her a good send-off.
Will: I know, but I'm sure she didn't *mean / lose / drop* any harm.

3 Tom: Are you still *on / up / in* for a night out tonight?
Sue: No, I'm afraid not. I really need to get a *big / simple / decent* night's sleep tonight.

4 Ros: Congratulations! I hear you've been promoted.
Ana: Wow! News *goes / comes / travels* fast!

5 Flo: I wish I hadn't *had / got / given* a go at him for forgetting my birthday.
Ed: Well, I wouldn't lose any *luck / sleep / shock* over it! He's very thick-skinned.

6 Nell: I wish I'd spent less time going out with my friends and more time revising.
Tim: I *mean / know / have* the feeling. I made exactly the same mistake.

57.2 **Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.**

1 I'm very delighted with my wonderful present.
2 I'm absolutely shattered – I've been in the go all week.
3 It was a big pleasure to meet you.
4 I'm very looking forward to hearing from you soon.
5 It got as a bit of a shock when I heard that Ellen and Jim had split up.
6 To be strongly honest, I don't think he'll ever make a good teacher.
7 I didn't get much luck when I was trying to find a new dress for the party.
8 I hope I didn't bring your parents any trouble.
9 We strongly hope that you will visit us again soon.
10 The thought happened to me that he might be in some kind of trouble.
11 Please don't come to any trouble on my account!
12 Drop me a ring when you want to be picked up from the station.

57.3 **Complete the crossword.**

Across
1 I don't want to go there again tomorrow. I can't — the thought of it.
2 He — got to me with his nasty comments.
3 Oddly enough, I found it a welcome — to be living in a much smaller flat.
4 Don't forget to drop us an — from time to time.
5 I'm glad to be seeing the — of my old boss.
6 The simple — why I can't stand him is that he was very rude to my best friend.

Down
1 You can't be too tired to come out tonight. That's a really — — .

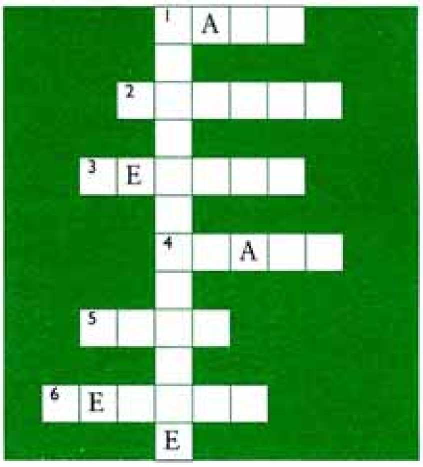

FOLLOW UP

If you are not often in an English-speaking situation, you may find it hard to learn collocations that are typical of spoken English. English-language films can help. You can download scripts from www.simplyscripts.com. Get the script of your favourite film and note any good collocations from either the first or your favourite scene.

58 Discussing issues

A Political interviews

Interviewer: Despite the fact that you **gave repeated assurances** that you would not raise taxes, you seem to have **broken your promise** and raised five different taxes. Can you **offer an explanation** for why this happened? Haven't you **betrayed the trust** of the voters?

Politician: I **reject that charge** completely. We have **kept our** manifesto **promise** and not raised the basic rate of income tax at all.

Interviewer: Yes, but you've raised indirect taxes instead, so, in effect, you've **gone back on**[1] **your promise** of no tax increases, have you not?

Politician: No. We **made a commitment** with regard to the basic rate of income tax. And I'm happy to **reaffirm**[2] **that commitment** now. The basic rate will remain unchanged ...

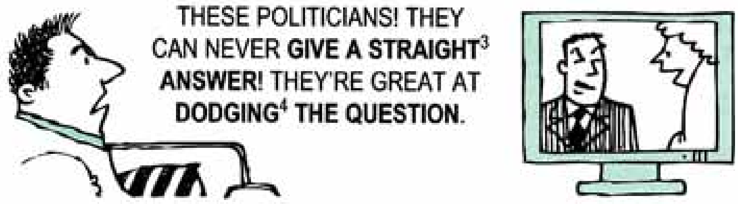
THESE POLITICIANS! THEY CAN NEVER **GIVE A STRAIGHT**[3] **ANSWER**! THEY'RE GREAT AT **DODGING**[4] **THE QUESTION**.

[1] not kept, or changed in some way
[2] strongly state again
[3] direct and honest
[4] avoiding

B Discussing communication

Tutor: Right. I want to **put** the following **question** to you: do you think the **channels of communication** between politicians and the people are adequate?

(The students are silent.)

Tutor: Well, let me **frame**[1] **the question** differently. Do politicians genuinely communicate directly with the public? Zoë, what do you think?

Zoë: Not really. It's just soundbites on TV, isn't it? They hardly ever meet ordinary people face-to-face. They don't mind **fielding**[2] **questions** from journalists, they're used to that, but that's not the same as **confronting the issues** directly with real people.

Tutor: Well, that's **a fair comment**. But what about politicians who have websites and write blogs? Are these better ways of **establishing communication** with people? Young people don't watch TV; they're on the web all the time.

Paul: **With all due respect**[3], I think you're **missing the point**[4], if you don't mind me saying so. The politicians can still keep their distance. They don't have to **face a grilling**[5] from journalists or anyone if they just have a web page or a blog. In some ways it's worse than media interviews.

Tutor: Fine. I **take your point**[6]. But no politician can meet everyone face-to-face, so communicating with as many people as possible using technology could be seen as more genuinely democratic, couldn't it?

Imelda: Yes, but they become less accountable. If there's a scandal, they just **issue a denial**, and when did you last hear a politican **give a full apology** for getting things wrong? They **enter into a contract** with the people and if they **breach**[7] **that contract** they should be directly accountable, and not just at election time.

Tutor: Right. Okay then. Get into groups and discuss ways in which politicians can be made more directly accountable. Okay? About ten minutes.

[1] formulate [2] dealing with [3] used before the speaker disagrees with or criticises the person they are addressing [4] misunderstanding the idea someone is expressing [5] face a lot of tough questions [6] accept that you have a serious opinion worth considering [7] break

Exercises

58.1 Match words from each box to form collocations and use them in the appropriate form to complete the sentences below.

reject break
reaffirm dodge
offer betray

a promise someone's trust
a question a commitment
a charge an explanation

1 He said he wouldn't tell anyone of my plans but he .... his .... and shared everything with his wife.
2 She was unable to .... any .... for what had happened.
3 I want to .... my .... to your scheme to help poorer families.
4 The Minister .... the .... and denied he had misled the public.
5 Why do politicians always .... the .... and never give an honest answer?
6 The Prime Minister has .... the .... of those who elected her.

58.2 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using the words in brackets in the appropriate form in a collocation from the opposite page.

1 The school's Director reassured everyone over and over again that the school was not going to close, despite reports in the press. (GIVE REPEAT)
2 Henry broke his promise to take part in our charity football match. (BACK)
3 Politicians rarely respond directly and honestly to a question. (STRAIGHT)
4 Philip said very firmly that he would support us. (COMMIT)
5 Thank you for doing what you promised to do. (KEEP)
6 The team manager gave quite skilful answers to a number of hostile questions from reporters after the match. (FIELD)
7 We need better ways of communicating with our customers. (CHANNEL)
8 I accept that you have a strong argument but it's a very complex problem. (TAKE)
9 He said he was 100 per cent sorry for his behaviour. (GIVE FULL)

58.3 Read these remarks by different people, and then answer the questions.

Simon: I didn't quite know the best way to ask him what I wanted to know.
Arlene: I took more days off than I was officially allowed and was fired from my job.
Alex: I had to answer almost an hour of really difficult questions at the interview.
Finn: I couldn't sign an agreement with the builder because I didn't get the bank loan.
Brona: I didn't see what was important in what the lecturer was saying, did you?

	name
1 Who faced a grilling?	
2 Who missed the point of something?	
3 Who had problems framing a question?	
4 Who breached a contract?	
5 Who didn't enter into a contract with someone?	

58.4 Make six collocations from these words and write a sentence using each.

confront due establish
fair issue put

comment communication denial
issue question respect

59 Negative situations and feelings

A Common problems and difficulties

- I had a **nasty shock** when Janelle came home yesterday with a black eye.
- Billy hit his sister in **a fit of jealousy**.
- I feel **sick with worry** / I'm **worried sick** every time Rosie goes out on her motorbike.
- Josh has come up with another **harebrained scheme** to make money. It will no doubt fail, just like the last one. [crazy plan]
- His teacher's unkind remarks have **shattered** Tom's **confidence**. [made him lose all his confidence]
- I **took exception to** my mother-in-law's unfair comments. [objected to, was annoyed by]
- The thought of having visitors to stay for a whole month **fills me with dread**. [makes me feel very upset and worried, about something in the future]
- The little boy **gave vent to his frustration** by scribbling all over the wall. [expressed his feelings of frustration, *give vent to* is only used about negative feelings]
- I tried to persuade her to go to university, but in the end I had to **admit defeat**. [accept that I would not succeed]
- If you **bottle up your feelings**, you'll only **increase your stress levels**. [don't express your feelings; make yourself feel more stressed]

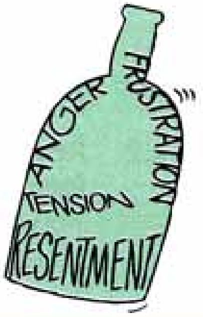

B International problems

There was an **outpouring of grief**[1] this morning when the death of King Alexander was announced. The country is still **in a state of shock** after his wife, Queen Dorina, died suddenly last month and there is a feeling that the King's own **inconsolable grief** may have **hastened his death**[2]. There is now a **threat of** civil war **hanging over** the country as much of the population has an **intense dislike** of the late King's eldest son.

[1] widespread expression of sadness caused by someone's death [2] made him die sooner

Many reporters are today criticising the President of Grammaria for a **lapse of judgement**[3] with regard to the **disparaging remarks**[4] he made in a public speech yesterday about the government of Vocabulia. His comments have **fuelled fears**[5] that Vocabulia may retaliate with more than just words. Sources close to the President of Vocabulia said last night that their country has long experience of **suffering** rough treatment **at the hands of** Grammaria and that they had been **left with little alternative** but to take decisive action to put an end to President Tense's habit of **hurling insults** at them. **Taking a further sideswipe**[6] at Vocabulia this morning in an interview with morning television, President Tense said that it was a **laughable idea** that a disorganised country like Vocabulia could **pose a threat** of any real significance to the likes of Grammaria. Many suspect, however, that Grammaria may finally **be in for a shock**[7].

[3] poor judgement
[4] unpleasant comments
[5] made people feel more afraid
[6] making a critical remark about one thing while talking about something else
[7] get a nasty surprise

ERROR WARNING

We say **absolutely furious**, NOT ~~very furious~~.

Exercises

59.1 Complete the paragraph using words from A.

Jeremy is always full of (1) .... schemes. I used to try to persuade him out of them but I've long since (2) .... defeat. It only increased my stress (3) .... and it didn't make any difference to his behaviour. Now, if I (4) .... exception to any of his ideas, I just (5) .... up my feelings and let him get on with it. But, if things get really bad, I give (6) .... to my frustration by going to the gym and taking it out on the punch-bag.

59.2 Choose the correct collocation.

1 When asked about his own party's transport policies, the candidate .... a sidesweep at his opponent by mentioning the recent railstrikes.
A made B did C took D gave
2 The threat of redundancy is .... over everyone at the factory.
A hanging B holding C keeping D swinging
3 I wish he wouldn't make such unkind and .... remarks.
A lapse B disparaging C inconsolable D rough
4 I'm afraid you may be .... for a bit of a shock.
A out B on C in D up
5 Henry never says anything sensible – his ideas are all quite ....
A laughing B laughs C laughter D laughable
6 I hope you didn't .... exception to any of my comments.
A find B take C make D put

59.3 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 Catching a bug while he was in hospital meant the old man died sooner than he would otherwise have done. (HASTENED)
2 Cinderella was treated very badly by her wicked stepmother. (SUFFER)
3 A large number of the public expressed its grief when the film star died. (OUTPOURING)
4 The accident has made people feel more afraid with regard to safety on the railways. (FUELLED)
5 Because of their behaviour our only alternative is to boycott their goods. (LEFT)
6 It was unwise of him to act as he did. (LAPSE)
7 I was extremely worried when Dad was having his operation. (SICK)
8 It's better to give vent to your feelings. (BOTTLE)

59.4 Use a dictionary or online corpus to find two ways of completing each of these collocations – one from the unit and one more.

1 a fit of ....
2 to shatter someone's ....
3 to fill someone with ....
4 to hurl .... at someone
5 in a state of ....
6 pose a ....
7 a lapse of ....
8 an intense ....

60 Positive situations and feelings

A Good feelings

example	*meaning*
You should have a great **sense of achievement** at having reached the last unit of the book.	feeling of having succeeded
John has always had a very strong **sense of purpose** in his life.	feeling of having a clear aim
Kay heaved a **sigh of relief** as she saw Dick step off the plane.	happy feeling that something bad has not happened
Tamara felt a **shiver down her spine** as she heard the orchestra tuning up.	feeling of excitement (or sometimes fear)
As I stood up to speak I felt a **surge of adrenalin**.	a sudden increase in adrenalin
I had a sudden **burst of energy** and decided to spring clean the whole flat.	a feeling of being full of energy
We are all in a **state of euphoria** after our fantastic exam results.	a feeling of excited happiness
I just loved my day at the beauty spa. It was **sheer bliss**.	a feeling of calm happiness

B Interview with a film star

Interviewer: Justine, how did you feel about winning the Oscar?

Justine Fay: I can truly say that my **heart leapt** when I heard the news. Winning an Oscar has been my **lifelong ambition**, so this was a **dream come true**!

Interviewer: And how did your family feel about it?

Justine Fay: My husband is always very supportive. He had **high hopes** that I would win this time. My mother **went into raptures**[1][*]! And my son literally **jumped for joy**. He's now **dead keen**[2] to become an actor himself.

Interviewer: And how would you feel about that?

Justine Fay: I've certainly **found happiness** in this profession. But it **doesn't** always **live up to** people's **expectations**[3], of course. It's not as glamorous as it's made out to be.

Interviewer: Do you think it'd **work to his advantage**[4] that both parents are in the business?

Justine Fay: Maybe. But it's more important to have talent, of course. And a lot also depends on **pure luck**, being in the right place at the right time, that sort of thing. But I'd be **cautiously optimistic** about his chances of success, I think.

Interviewer: Does the fact that your career is currently more successful than your husband's cause any tensions at home?

Justine Fay: Not at all. My husband **takes** great **delight in** any success that I have. And I have a **profound admiration** for his work. I hope one day he'll **get the recognition he deserves**. But even if he doesn't, we both know that a great many people **derive** a lot of **pleasure from**[5] his films. He receives a lot of quite moving fan mail in which people **express their admiration** for his work.

Interviewer: Thank you, Justine. It was a **great pleasure**[6] to talk to you.

[1] expressed her extreme pleasure and excitement
[2] (informal) very keen
[3] isn't as good as expected
[4] be of benefit to him
[5] (formal) find great enjoyment in
[6] NOT a ~~big~~ pleasure

* This expression is very strong and effusive and sounds a little extreme. This is appropriate for an Oscar-winning film star but you should probably take care not to over-use it yourself.

Exercises

60.1 Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.

1 The whole country seems to be in a place of euphoria after winning the World Cup.
2 I heaved a breath of relief when I heard Joe had finally passed his driving test.
3 As the starting whistle blew, a jump of adrenalin helped me get off to a good start.
4 I still always feel a shake down my spine when I set off on a long journey.
5 It was a difficult climb but we had a marvellous emotion of achievement as we stood at the top.
6 Agreeing to do a bit of overtime could walk to your advantage, you know.
7 Rick seems to have lost his idea of purpose.
8 As winter ends I always seem to feel a break of energy.
9 It was clean luck that the answer suddenly came to me in the middle of the exam.
10 I don't think those engineers ever got the cognition they deserved.

60.2 Complete each sentence using a word from the opposite page.

1 Parents .... more pleasure from their children's success than from their own.
2 I had .... hopes of this job but it hasn't .... up to my expectations.
3 I hope that all your dreams will .... true.
4 In his article the critic .... considerable admiration for the poet's early work.
5 The audience .... into raptures as the group started to play their first ever hit.
6 My .... leapt when I saw that at last I had an email from Mark.
7 My grandmother .... great delight in creating a beautiful garden.
8 We are cautiously .... that Pauline will get the job she's applied for.
9 It was a .... pleasure to meet you. I hope our paths will cross again soon.
10 The children jumped for .... when they saw their aunt at the door.

60.3 Answer these questions using a dictionary or online corpus if necessary.

1 What else can *come true* as well as a *dream*?
2 What can be *lifelong* as well as an *ambition*?
3 With what words apart from *keen*, can *dead* be used as an informal adverb to mean *extremely*?
4 With what words apart from *bliss*, can *sheer* be used as an adjective to mean *complete*?
5 What can be described as *profound* as well as *admiration*?

60.4 Answer these questions in full sentences.

1 Where do you think people are more likely to find happiness – in a relationship or a career?
2 Would you say you had a profound admiration for anyone? If so, who and why?
3 What has happened to you that can be described as a matter of pure luck?
4 Do you derive more pleasure from music or from reading?
5 When did you last experience a sense of achievement?

FOLLOW UP

As this is the final unit in the book, take this opportunity now to look back at the units you have covered and note your favourite collocations from each unit.

Key

Unit 1

1.1
1 adhere to your principles
2 arouse someone's interest
3 blond hair
4 come up with a suggestion
5 flatly contradict
6 fundamentally different
7 go on an economy drive
8 heavy rain
9 lead a seminar
10 a lick of paint
11 play the stock market
12 words of wisdom

1.2 The underlined words in these sentences can sometimes be changed in other ways but the answers given reflect collocations in B.
1 mistakes
2 wider
3 gain
4 depart from
5 create

1.3 This is the most appropriate way to complete this exercise although some other collocations are also possible, as indicated.
1 Our new family hotel is set in a **secluded** location and all the rooms have **stylish** furnishings and **breathtaking** views over the surrounding countryside.
(*Breathtaking* could also go with *location* but *secluded* could not go with *views*.)
2 Visitors will enjoy the **relaxing** atmosphere in either of our **spacious** dining rooms, both serving **delicious** food to residents and non-residents.
(*Relaxing* could also perhaps go with *dining rooms* but *spacious* could not go with *atmosphere*.)
3 We organise tours to **picturesque** surrounding villages where you'll have the opportunity to take some **stunning** photographs and sample the **mouth-watering** local cuisine.
(*Stunning* could go with *villages* but *picturesque* could not go with *photographs*.)

1.4
1 a Passengers must not alight from the bus while it is in motion. F
b Passengers must not get off the bus while it is moving. N
2 a Let's grab a bite before we get down to work. I
b Let's have something to eat before we start work. N
3 a SFTS has the right to bring the agreement to an end with three months' notice. N
b SFTS reserves the right to terminate the agreement with three months' notice. F
4 a She thinks her boyfriend is planning to pop the question tonight. I
b She thinks her boyfriend is planning to ask her to marry him tonight. N

1.5 The **blond-haired** boy said he had joined the English class to **make** some new friends. He also said that he wanted to learn about collocations because it would be of **great** importance in helping him to **make** fewer mistakes when writing in English.

Unit 2

2.1
1 a broad accent
2 in broad agreement
3 mitigating circumstances
4 mitigating factors
5 auburn hair
6 deliriously happy
7 a broad smile
8 a picturesque location
9 adjourn a meeting
10 a picturesque town
11 adjourn a trial
12 inclement weather

2.2 1 Melissa has quite a **broad** Scottish accent.
2 **Inclement** weather led to the cancellation of the President's garden party.
3 We were all **deliriously** happy when we heard we'd won the award.
4 Their new home was in a very **picturesque** location.
5 Because there were **mitigating** circumstances, the judge let him off with a warning.
6 I think we should **adjourn** the meeting **till/until** tomorrow.
7 She had a **broad** smile on her face when she arrived.
8 She has lovely **auburn** hair.
9 I think we're **in broad** agreement as to what should be done.

2.3 *Example answers:*

	stronger	weaker
1 extremely hot / tired / easy / expensive		✓
2 make / require / be an effort	✓	
3 cancel a class / a meeting / a match / an agreement		✓
4 deliver a letter / a warning / a baby / goods		✓
5 earn / make / scrape a living	✓	

2.4 *Possible example sentences:*
I felt deliriously happy when I passed all my exams.
I must make an effort to learn more collocations.
It's difficult nowadays to make a living as a small shopkeeper.
We had to cancel the match because of the rain.

Follow-up
Ask your teacher to check your answers if you are not confident about them.

Unit 3

3.1 The collocations are:
1 disease spreads
2 evidence suggests
3 opportunity arises
4 smoke rises
5 standards slip
6 teeth chatter
7 wind howls
8 withstand pressure

3.2 1 evidence suggests
2 wind; howling
3 withstand; pressure
4 smoke rising
5 teeth; chattering
6 standards; slipped
7 opportunity; arises
8 disease; spreading

3.3 1 pass up
2 draw up
3 take it easy for a while
4 withstand
5 snippets
6 barrage
7 a stroke of
8 spate
9 put the past behind her

3.4 *Author's answers:*

1 My husband, of course!
2 You could tell them to drive more carefully or you could say that you want to get out.
3 It depends on my mood. A gentle breeze is pleasant but a strong wind can be very exhilarating.
4 Sometimes I do. But then I have to remember to be careful not to leave my diary lying around.

3.5

1 idle
2 vain
3 mounting
4 mounting
5 foaming
6 burst
7 plain
8 miserably

Unit 4

4.1 *Possible answers:*

1 cast (as verb)	cast a light / a shadow / a look / doubt / aspersions / suspicion / votes / a spell
2 application	letter of application / to send off an application / to fill in an application form / the application of research / to have a particular application to
3 utter (as adjective)	confusion / rubbish / chaos / nonsense / waste of time / bliss
4 absolutely	absolutely silent / absolutely nothing / absolutely disgusting / absolutely delicious / absolutely loathe / absolutely adore
5 release (as verb)	a prisoner / the handbrake / gases / an album

4.2

1 cast aspersions on
2 has no relevance for/to
3 paid tribute to
4 set to work
5 rendered; speechless
6 An indeterminate number of
7 exceeded (all) our (wildest) expectations
8 I have some niggling doubts

4.3 *Author's answers:*

cast a concert (7) cast a groan (0) cast a play (382,000) cast a smile (2710)

These results indicate that *cast a smile* and *cast a play* are both collocations. *Cast a smile* is much less frequent than *cast a play* because it is a more literary expression. *Cast a groan* and *cast a concert* are clearly not collocations.

4.4 Note that each time you do this you will get a different set of sentences. However you are likely to note these points:

Aspersions almost always collocates with *cast.*
Indeterminate often collocates with *number* and *age.*
Niggling often collocates with *doubt*, *problem* and *fear.*
Tribute often collocates with *pay*, but also with *great* and *fitting.*

4.5 *Author's answers:*

1 teaching – to mark homework, gifted children, to sit an exam
The one bad thing about teaching is all the homework you have to mark.
Teaching is more of a challenge if you have gifted children and children with learning difficulties in the same class.
At the end of my teacher-training course I had to sit a number of exams.

2 going to the cinema – spectacular car chase, to win an Oscar, to play the starring role
Cate Blanchett played the starring role in the last film I saw and she won an Oscar for her performance.
In all James Bond films there is at least one spectacular car chase.

3 languages – irregular verbs, feminine nouns, to extend your vocabulary
Most irregular verbs in English are ones in everyday use.
Romance languages, for example, distinguish between masculine and feminine nouns and this can be a major problem for students whose first language is English.
Reading is a very good way of extending your vocabulary in any language.

4 touring round France – to catch a ferry, delicious food, historical sites
Ferries from England to France are so frequent that there is usually no problem catching one.
France is world-famous for its delicious food.
I usually prefer looking at historical sites to lazing on a beach.

5 steak and salad – rare steak, to chop parsley, to crush garlic
I prefer my steak rare.
If you chop the parsley for the sauce, I'll crush some garlic.

6 *The Bad Mother's Handbook* – adopted daughter, to file for divorce, light reading
Nan didn't tell anyone that Karen was her adopted daughter.
Fewer couples filed for divorce last year than in the previous ten years.
Light reading is particularly suitable for travelling or when you just want to relax and not think too much.

Unit 5

5.1
1 gift for languages
2 take a boat
3 grab a seat
4 turn my thoughts to
5 win the battle
6 make a difference
7 underestimate the value of
8 pending; result
9 newly qualified

5.2 to jump at the / pass up the / get the / stand a / be in with a chance
to face a challenge / to rise to the challenge / to pose a challenge / a direct challenge / a serious challenge

5.3 The correct collocations are *learn by heart* and *miss a chance.*

5.4 *Author's answers:*
1 Three milestones in my life that I have already passed include graduating from university, getting my first job and getting married.
2 I am fully qualified as a teacher.
3 Typical sources of income are wages or salaries, income from investments, rental income and business profits.
4 The toughest challenge I have ever faced was possibly completing my doctoral thesis on time.
5 Someone providing simultaneous translation needs to be bilingual and to have excellent powers of concentration.
6 Personal letters, photos and old diaries have sentimental value for me.

5.5
1 Make
2 Get
3 commit
4 made
5 do
6 avoid
7 Make
8 possible
9 made

Ideally you would tick all the ideas, as they are all good ways of improving your knowledge and use of collocations.

Unit 6

6.1
1 I feel dead tired all the time. (I)
I feel very/extremely tired all the time.
2 We were all bored stupid by the poetry reading. (I)
We were all very/extremely/utterly bored by the poetry reading.
3 Currency exchange offices are located in the arrivals lounge. (F)
There are exchange offices in the arrival lounge.
4 She conducted a study of single-parent family units. (F)
She did a study of single-parent families.
5 She did her degree in London and found work there in 2001. (N)
6 I just got the latest software so my computer is bang up-to-date. (I)
I have just bought the latest software and so my computer is fully up-to-date.
7 Affix a passport-size photograph to the application form. (F)
Stick a passport photo on the application form.
8 Jake asked his tutor for an extension to complete his dissertation. (N)

You may find it useful to look up some of these expressions in a good dictionary to see what else they collocate with. Paperwork, for example, can be bang up-to-date but a car is unlikely to be described as such.

6.2

1	This is breaking news here on Global TV Extra.	J
2	These are the songs that are climbing the charts this week.	E
3	There are tons of good reasons for not studying law.	IC
4	Visitors must keep to the designated areas at all times.	N
5	In any such case, customers shall forfeit the right to compensation.	L
6	Fuel consumption may vary according to model and road conditions.	T
7	I'll give you a ring after dinner.	IC
8	The Minister will tour Asia in a bid to win support for the plan.	J
9	Joss Engold stars in the latest blockbuster from Star Studios.	E
10	A microchip is a miniaturised electronic circuit.	T
11	Please restrict your use of the fitness machines to 20 minutes.	N
12	A witness may be asked to testify for a second time.	L

6.3
1 do
2 running
3 come
4 take
5 getting
6 feel
7 write
8 clear

6.4 1 presented 2 elevated 3 exhibiting 4 complained 5 inability

Unit 7

7.1
1 The presidential visit **kept everyone on their toes.**
2 Rosetta **shouldered the blame** for the failure of the project.
3 I don't think Greg will ever win Rosie's heart; it's time he **faced the facts.**
4 The company had done so well that year that it agreed to **foot the bill** for a staff night out.
5 I'm glad I'm not **heading** this team.
6 Carola **has an eye for** a bargain.

7.2 1 A decrease in savings is likely to go hand in hand with inflation as people will have less money available for saving.
2 If a relationship hits the rocks, it is the end of that relationship.
3 If you say someone is hopping mad, you mean that they are very angry.
4 No, not necessarily. If you run into difficulties or trouble, it just means that you encounter them or have them. The verb *run* here doesn't have any associations with speed.
5 You'd call a magazine dealing with celebrity gossip light reading. A weighty tome would only be used to refer to a book that is long and has difficult content – unless it is being used ironically, of course. So you might joke to a friend who is reading a celebrity magazine, 'I can see you're reading your usual weighty tome!'
6 If you talk about facing the facts, the facts are likely to be unpleasant.

7.3 1a Jill got the job very easily.
1b Jill got the job – but we don't know whether it was easy for her to get it or not.
2a Pat is in charge of the project team.
2b Pat is supporting the project team / giving the project team her support.
3a Dad very quickly drew the wrong conclusion.
3b Dad drew the wrong conclusion – but we don't know whether he did so quickly or not.
4a Rod left the room feeling happy and carefree.
4b Rod left the room feeling sad and despondent.
5a I've got no chance of winning at all.
5b I've got a very small chance of winning.

7.4 1 driving
2 eye
3 burden
4 slim
5 weighty
6 heading

7.5 1 The metaphor here is based on the word *run*. An athlete literally runs in a race. But if he metaphorically runs into trouble that simply means that he has a problem. The problem might not be connected with running in any way.
2 The metaphor is based on the connection between being fat and dieting. Diet pills are intended to help people lose weight but if they have a fat chance of success, they are unlikely to succeed.
3 The play on words is based on the idea of ballet dancers literally dancing on their toes and the figurative meaning of the expression *keep someone on their toes* which is to keep someone energetic and concentrated.
4 The play on words connects the word *foot*, used here metaphorically to mean pay, with its literal meaning of the part of the body where we wear shoes.
5 The play on words is based on the fact that *hop* is a verb closely associated with the movement of rabbits (and frogs). The new legislation must be something that makes rabbit owners angry e.g. a tax on owning rabbits.

Unit 8

8.1 blatantly obvious
downright rude
spotlessly clean
stinking rich
thoroughly ashamed
wildly inaccurate

8.2 1 stinking rich
2 blatantly obvious
3 downright rude
4 spotlessly clean
5 wildly inaccurate
6 thoroughly ashamed

8.3
1 wildly exaggerated
2 highly recommended
3 dead easy
4 loosely based on
5 faintly/mildly ridiculous
6 completely/totally/entirely dependent
7 thoroughly enjoyed
8 mildly surprised
9 absolutely delighted
10 slightly different

8.4
1 greatly appreciate
2 utterly ridiculous
3 terribly/extremely/incredibly difficult
4 awfully/extremely/incredibly sweet
5 deeply/slightly offensive
6 awfully/terribly/extremely/incredibly lonely
7 totally/entirely/completely separate
8 a highly educated
9 awfully/terribly/incredibly/extremely busy
10 terribly/incredibly/extremely expensive

8.5
1 Correct
2 Incorrect. We say *greatly appreciated.*
3 Incorrect. We say *strongly influenced.*
4 Correct

Unit 9

9.1
1 Correct
2 Correct
3 The company director **made** a formal apology for his earlier comments.
4 The manager had to make a number of changes to office procedures in order to **make** all the improvements he had planned for the company.
5 My sister **made** all the arrangements for the party.

9.2
1 habit
2 room
3 enemies
4 success
5 acquaintance
6 offer
7 discovery
8 attempt
9 stand
10 calculations

9.3
1 The Green Party plans to **stage** a major protest against the government's new farming policy. (more formal)
2 Tessa helped me to **run up** some lovely cushion covers for my new flat. (less formal)
3 I regret to inform you that several clients have **lodged** complaints about your conduct. (more formal)
4 You won't **create** a good first impression if you arrive late for your interview. (more formal)
5 It won't take me long to **rustle up** a meal for the children. (less formal)
6 Do you expect your business to **turn in** a profit this year? (less formal)

9.4
1 At the meeting the chairman made a rather interesting proposal.
2 I hope we can make an/our escape soon as I'm terribly tired.
3 I'm reading a fascinating book about how new words and phrases are coined to express new social and technical needs.
4 We changed the layout of the hall to create a more relaxed atmosphere for the yoga class.

5 I made several attempts to phone the company at the weekend.
6 Kim made a very positive contribution to the discussion.
7 The service was poor but I wouldn't go so far as to lodge a formal complaint.
8 I first made Roger's acquaintance on a train.

Unit 10

10.1 1 speaking
2 told
3 saying
4 talking
5 speak
6 told
7 say
8 talk
9 speaking

10.2 1 notified
2 impart its wisdom
3 protested his innocence
4 professed ignorance
5 divulge his sources
6 pronounced him
7 declared Magda Karlson the winner of
8 disseminate information

10.3 1 Do you think I managed to **get** the message across in my speech?
2 Needless to say, he didn't **say** a word to his parents about what had happened.
3 You can't chew gum and **speak** properly at the same time.
4 He refused to **give** his reasons for turning down our invitation.
5 She was devastated when we **broke** the news to her.
6 Correct
7 I really like this documentary maker, he **talks** a lot of sense.
8 At the beginning of your dissertation you must **state** your goals clearly.

10.4 1 protestation(s) (The noun *protest* is not accurate here because it carries a meaning of opposition. *Protestation*, however, means a declaration, which echoes the meaning of protest in the collocation *protest one's innocence*, meaning to declare one's innocence.)
2 statement
3 dissemination
4 notification
5 declaration

10.5 *Possible answers:*
1 declare **war on**, declare **independence**, declare **support for**
2 impart **bad news**, impart **facts**, impart **a secret**
3 divulge **information**, divulge **secrets**, divulge **confidential details**

Unit 11

11.1 1 for 2 up with 3 up 4 to 5 up to 6 by 7 down 8 in with

11.2 1 didn't live up to
2 come up with
3 jot down
4 take up
5 abide by
6 adhere to
7 fit in with
8 filed for

11.3 1 dip into them 2 adhere to them 3 keep it up 4 see them off

11.4 1 Everyone **burst** into laughter when she told the story.
2 We had a run along the beach to work **up** an appetite before lunch.
3 The police have said they intend to **come** down heavily on anyone carrying an offensive weapon at the match.

4 Do you think you could free **up** some time to have a quick meeting this afternoon?
5 The police acted on a **tip**-off and managed to avert a possible disaster. (A *rip-off* is a colloquial word meaning something that is not worth what you paid for it, e.g. That meal was an absolute rip-off.)
6 I hope the party will live **up** to your expectations.
7 We sat on our hotel balcony, soaking **up** the atmosphere of the carnival.
8 Tanya quickly saw **off** her opponent in the semi-final and now goes on to the final.

11.5 *Possible answers:*
1 I'll **keep it up** by watching English-language TV and reading news items on the Internet.
2 The last Bond film didn't **live up to my expectations.**
3 I might be tempted to **dip into my savings** for a special holiday.
4 I'd try to **come up with an alternative** means of transport.
5 I'd do my best to **fit in with the plans** they had already made.
6 I sometimes find it very hard to **adhere to my principles.**

Unit 12

12.1
1 My husband and I do a job share.
2 Circulate the report to all members of staff.
3 Kazuki has been happier since he went part-time.
4 I hope it won't be necessary to lay off many of our staff.
5 It's not easy to make a living as an actor.
6 Meeting people is the best aspect of the job.
7 Marian was the last person to join the staff in our company.
8 Anna will be going on maternity leave next month.
9 Try to build up a good network of contacts.
10 We've had a ridiculous volume of work this month.

12.2 1 number 2 holds 3 offer 4 change 5 open 6 take up 7 right 8 take

12.3
1 The recession meant that the company had to **lay off some workers/staff** or **lay some workers/staff off.**
2 Your family should really **take priority over** your work.
3 Nita soon **moved up the ladder** at work.
4 Bill hates his new boss so much that I think he'll soon **hand in his resignation.**
5 Vic earns **a good living** as a freelance journalist.
6 I need to **put together my CV** before I apply for jobs.
7 My father always wanted to **practise medicine** in a rural community.

12.4 George makes a **living** as a sports reporter on a local newspaper but he is under **considerable / a lot of** pressure at work at the moment. He's had far too much work to **do** recently. He's been put on a fast-**track** scheme for promotion and they're really pushing him. It's so hard that he's thinking of handing **in** his resignation and going **freelance.** It wouldn't be easy but I'm sure he'd soon **carve** a niche for himself as a sports journalist.

Unit 13

13.1
1 to pencil a meeting in
2 a daunting task
3 to master new skills
4 to take up references
5 to fit the job description
6 wrongfully dismissed
7 to lose your livelihood
8 professional misconduct

13.2
1 land
2 fitted (US English: fit)
3 running
4 sweated
5 were / would be
6 take

13.3
1 stay the course
2 get the sack
3 a living wage
4 relieved of his duties
5 take industrial action / stage a strike
6 narrow the list down

13.4 *Author's answers:*
1 I suppose that copying materials and collating pages could be called menial work.
2 I certainly hope that it will.
3 As someone who does a lot of freelance work, I work a lot of unsocial hours. I get up early to work at my computer, for example. But it is my own choice and not imposed on me by an employer, so I don't mind it. The plus side is that I can have a long lunch with a friend whenever I want to.
4 When I was working at a language school, there was quite a high turnover of staff as teachers often used to go off and work in different countries.
5 When I was teaching in a language school, I often did overtime – taking students on excursions and so on. It was paid.
6 No, I haven't. I feel superstitious about it. I worry that if I pretend to be ill then I will soon become ill in reality.
7 I haven't taken industrial action but I think I might consider it if colleagues were being wrongly treated.
8 Yes, it is. Getting a book ready for publication is very much a team effort.
9 As a freelancer I sometimes have a heavy workload and sometimes I don't. It can be quite difficult to spread my work in a balanced way.

Unit 14

14.1
1 Opinions are **divided** on the issue of single-sex schools and there are sound arguments on both sides of the case.
2 I believe that the government will win another term in office but my girlfriend takes a different **view**. [or ... has a different opinion.]
3 I **honestly/really** think that you'd be making a serious mistake if you took that job.
4 I don't believe it's a foregone **conclusion** that the larger company will win the contract.
5 People are gradually **becoming** aware of the problem of climate change.
6 You should bear in **mind** that your visitors will be tired after their long flight.
7 I've got a **rough** idea of what I want to say in my essay but I haven't planned it properly yet.
8 Increasing numbers of people today subscribe **to** the theory that small is beautiful.

14.2 1 laterally 2 error 3 grasped 4 pass 5 poor 6 firm

14.3
1 It's unwise to **jump to conclusions** about people's motives.
2 **It's common knowledge** that Ellie has been taking money from the till.
3 I agreed to help him (though it was) **against my better judgement**.
4 I'm afraid your decisions show **a lack of judgement**.
5 We have to decide when to have the party. Can you **give it some thought**?
6 I think you are **judging him too harshly**. Remember he's only 18.
7 Surprisingly, there's a **widespread belief** that left-handed people are more intelligent.

14.4
1 a fertile land / egg / soil / environment / mind / area
2 to fuel resentment / a feeling of ... / a heating system / a vehicle (the verb is used mainly in the passive when referring to vehicles) / a debate / desire / gossip
3 to wrestle with a decision / your conscience (Note that this verb collocates with only a small number of words.)
4 a nagging fear / voice / pain / sense / feeling

14.5 The common collocations are *personal conviction* and *harshly treated*.

Unit 15

15.1
1 True
2 False. A company wants to meet its targets.
3 True
4 True
5 False. A company has failed if it has to call in the receivers.
6 False. A company will feel more secure with wider profit margins.

15.2
1 receivers
2 points
3 books
4 sense
5 line
6 production
7 dividends
8 profits

15.3
1 The company is pleased to report a **substantial** increase in profits over the last quarter.
2 The new health and safety committee is to be **chaired** by a retired doctor.
3 There is increasingly **fierce** competition between airline companies. (Competition can also be described as *intense* or *stiff*.)
4 The company's exports to Japan **saw/experienced/showed** considerable growth over the last decade.
5 The sales figures for March show a **slight** decrease on those for February.
6 Our sales in the domestic market are certain to **see/experience/show** a rise next year.
7 Last year sales were three times **greater** in Europe than in Australia.
8 We feel that this proposal **makes** considerable business sense. (Notice that although you *do* business, something *makes* business sense.)
9 Although we need to reduce our costs, it's important we **maintain** the quality that our reputation is built on.
10 Business leaders hope new government policies will **stimulate** growth (or be a stimulus to growth).

15.4
1 The Managing Director of a company might call an emergency meeting when there is some kind of crisis affecting the company – a strike, for example, or a major increase in the cost of raw materials or fuel.
2 A sports car company is likely to have young people in their twenties as their target market.
3 Shareholders would be pleased if their company announced record profits because it would be likely to increase the value of their investment and to lead to higher dividends.
4 Students and governments set themselves objectives.
5 A business would have to allocate part of its budget to staff, research and development and raw materials, for example.
6 A company might try to stimulate growth in demand for its products by increasing its advertising.

Unit 16

16.1
1 Have you ever made a **complaint** to the management about the food in a restaurant?
2 I hate **going** shopping on Saturdays as the town is so crowded then.
3 If you want your shopping delivered, you can **place** your order with us online or by phone.
4 We **carried out/did** a large-scale customer survey before developing our new product range.
5 **Online** shopping is proving increasingly popular.
6 I was surprised by the **poor** quality of the acting in that film we saw last night.

16.2
1 value
2 satisfied
3 healthy
4 prompt
5 hold
6 fuss
7 handled
8 conform
9 elsewhere
10 come

16.3
1 regular
2 refund
3 take
4 custom
5 providing
6 top
7 grounds

16.4

1P	U	2R	P	O	S	E		
		E						
		3G	R	O	U	N	D	S
		U						
4F	U	L	L					
		A						
	5S	T	A	N	D	A	R	D
		I						
	6H	O	N	O	U	R		
		N						
7D	I	S	C	O	U	N	T	

Unit 17

17.1
1 You graduate from university.
2 mature students
3 (prestigious) seats of learning
4 distinguished scholars or leading authorities (in their fields)
5 gifted children
6 straight A students

17.2
1 We were all very impressed by the student's mental agility.
2 My grandmother is very intelligent but she's had little formal education.
3 I've never found it easy to learn scientific formulae by heart.
4 I'd love to study medicine there but it's very hard to get a place.
5 For the first year Shakespeare exam we had to read six set texts.
6 I am so proud of you for managing to get full marks.
7 Your work is not too bad but there is certainly still room for improvement.
8 Your little girl has shown herself to be a very quick learner.
9 The test has been designed to enable pupils to demonstrate their ability.
10 I hope to study there but may not be able to meet the entry requirements.

17.3
1 truant
2 wanders
3 shows
4 natural
5 marked
6 win
7 attend
8 requirements
9 enrol

17.4 *Author's answers:*
1 English, maths and science.
2 The universities of Oxford and Cambridge.
3 Yes. I once signed up for a Spanish evening class but only went to two lessons.
4 I'd love to read History of Art.
5 The academic year begins in September and ends in July.
6 Different universities and departments have different entry requirements and you have to fulfil whatever their specific requirements are.

17.5 *Possible answers:*
1 power 2 club 3 support 4 work record

Unit 18

18.1
1 undertake
2 presented
3 reviews
4 provided
5 indicates
6 test
7 covers
8 tackles
9 puts

18.2
1 The research ethics are described in the university's research manual.
2 You need to make an in-depth critique of the arguments.
3 You need to do background reading.
4 You do the analysis in order to find out whether the data support your hypothesis. (remember: try to avoid saying *prove* a hypothesis)
5 All the interviewees were people who had first-hand knowledge of the situation.
6 It is impossible to give a full explanation of the decline of agriculture in the 1960s.

18.3 Order of events:
1 Select a topic.
2 Form a working hypothesis.
3 Make the case for studying the topic in the introduction.
4 Write a critical analysis of previous studies.
5 Lay out your results in tables and diagrams.
6 Submit your report.

18.4
1 The **thrust** of Torsten's argument is that public transport can never replace the private car.
2 Economists **formulated** a new theory of inflation in the late 1980s.
3 It is important that we should **confront** the issue of climate change immediately.
4 In her essay, she put forward a **vigorous** defence of the European Union constitution.
5 I shall not attempt to give an **exhaustive** account of population growth in this essay.
6 The article does not back **up** its conclusions with enough convincing evidence.

Unit 19

19.1 1 surprise 2 throw 3 dined 4 appearance 5 sprung 6 special 7 night

19.2 1 made 2 flying 3 stick to 4 calls 5 find 6 quality 7 social
8 pay 9 played

19.3
1 We could go clubbing later. (more informal)
2 The restaurant has a convivial atmosphere. (more formal)
3 London is playing host to the Olympics in 2012. (more formal)
4 Her life is a social whirl. (more formal)
5 I have to attend a formal function on Thursday. (more formal)
6 We invite you to join the festivities at the opening of the Arts Festival. (more formal)
7 Grapsley Park is the perfect venue for an outdoor concert. (more formal)

19.4 *Author's answers:*
1 eating out
2 plain food, as long as it's cooked properly
3 a barbecue with friends
4 I like both, but giving a dinner party can be a lot of work.
5 I much prefer playing the host.
6 definitely a whirlwind visit! Guests are always best when they don't stay long!

Unit 20

20.1
1 It can be hard to carry **on** a serious conversation in a noisy room.
2 He finds it very difficult to open his **heart** and talk about his feelings to anyone.
3 I don't like discussing things with people who always want to **win** any argument.
4 My mother always used to tell me not to **spread** unkind rumours.
5 I usually find it better not to get **drawn** into an argument with Paul.
6 We had a very enjoyable time just sitting in the park enjoying some **idle** chatter.
7 I managed to resist all his attempts to engage me in conversation.
8 I've never talked to him much – we've done no more than **exchange** pleasantries.

20.2
1 lost
2 broached
3 take
4 strong
5 bring
6 drop
7 tough
8 hold

20.3
1 juicy gossip
2 broad generalisations
3 exchange news
4 take seriously
5 four-letter word
6 tough question
7 rash promise
8 opening gambit

20.4
1 Please drop the subject immediately.
2 Sam has a habit of making empty promises.
3 You must take the lab's safety regulations seriously.
4 It's better not to overstate your case.
5 Could we please change the subject?
6 Did you hear the rumours (that were) flying around about your boss last year?
7 There is rather a lot of bad/foul/strong language in the play. (*Foul* is the strongest of these alternatives.)
8 Such broad generalisations tend to be rather meaningless.
9 His opening gambit took me by surprise.
10 The children bombarded me with questions about my trip.

Unit 21

21.1
1 I
2 E
3 B
4 F. Note the collocation *to heal a rift*, meaning that a harmonious relationship has been re-established following a break due to a serious disagreement.
5 C
6 A. Note that the expression *to go to the polls* is often used, particularly in newspapers, to mean take part in an election.
7 G
8 D

21.2
1 delivered; speech
2 broker; agreement
3 impose; censorship
4 prime-time television
5 held; conference
6 act; go-between
7 reach agreement

21.3
1 The President has finally bowed to public pressure to hold a referendum.
2 Early this morning the Eco-democratic Party proclaimed victory in the election. (*announced its victory* would also be possible)
3 The police detective discovered the clue which led to the recovery of the stolen jewels.
4 The police will not call off the search until the child has been found.
5 We were on holiday when the recent political troubles broke out.
6 The police are carrying out a nationwide search (or a countrywide search) for the missing boy.
7 The two parties will try to negotiate a settlement today.
8 Today thousands of students held a demonstration / held demonstrations against the increase in fees.

21.4 1 In the first sentence, the outcome of the rally will show whether the army is strong or not. In the second sentence, the rally is proof of the army's strength.
2 The clues in the first sentence are more important than those in the second.
3 The reward for the cat in the second sentence is large.
4 The verb *deliver* suggests either a more formal situation for the speech itself or a more formal context for reporting about the speech than is suggested by *make*.
5 In the first sentence, the countries are going to talk for the first time.
In the second sentence they have made an agreement.

Follow-up

Possible collocations:
to hold a meeting / a conversation / an election
to broker a deal / a ceasefire
to reach / come to an agreement
a sizeable / narrow / large / vast majority

Unit 22

22.1 1 The Committee, with one **dissenting** voice, voted to take a firm **stance** on the issue.
2 It was only a **throwaway** comment but it has **excited** a lot of speculation.
3 As new evidence **emerges** of government involvement in the scandal, people are beginning to question the Prime Minister's public **pronouncements** on the affair.
4 The prince refused **point-blank** to provide a **detailed** account of his actions that night.
5 The Minister was accused of **misleading** the electorate when he said that very few migrant workers had been **given** leave to stay in the country.

22.2 1 disorderly
2 clarify
3 explanation
4 statement
5 flatly
6 permission
7 disclosures
8 re-opened

22.3 1 vociferous opponent
2 gauge (public/people's) reaction
3 passionate entreaty
4 regular updates
5 air their grievances
6 took issue
7 declined to comment
8 critically ill
9 abject apology

Unit 23

23.1 1 This year's National Day festival celebrates 50 years of independence.
2 In this region we have a rich tradition of poetry, music and dance.
3 A group of children performed a traditional dance from the region.
4 This year's festival represents a break with tradition, as it will be held in May.
5 The tradition of carol singing dates back hundreds of years.
6 The people are determined to uphold the tradition, despite opposition.
7 The town holds its annual festival in spring.
8 Our village has a proud tradition of giving food to older villagers every new year.

23.2 1 All the men wore traditional **dress** consisting of green jackets and white trousers.
2 The festival **marks** the beginning of the Celtic summer.
3 The festival is part of the region's cultural **heritage**.
4 Hundreds of people, locals and tourists, join **in** the festivities.
5 The annual 'Day of the Horse' **falls** on 30 March this year.
6 Everyone in the village was in **festive** mood as the annual celebrations began.
7 The average age at which couples tie the **knot** is rising.
8 This region has a **rich** tradition of folk singing and dancing.
9 Getting joined **in** matrimony is a significant reason for celebration.
10 The area is famous for observing a number of age-old/long-standing traditions.

23.3
1 Erik
2 Evan
3 Alicia
4 Monica
5 Brona

23.4
1 (b) married
2 wedded bliss
3 the knot
4 *Toast* used uncountably means bread made brown and crisp by heating it. *Making a toast* (countable) means offering an expression of good wishes or respect for someone which involves holding up and then drinking from a glass after a short speech.
5 pre-wedding nerves (one can also say *pre-wedding jitters*)
6 be joined in matrimony
7 to make a toast / to toast someone
8 informal

Unit 24

24.1
1 These vitamins have been **clinically** proven to protect the body from winter viruses.
2 Our **tasty** snacks cost only 24p.
3 Enjoy a weekend of **sheer** luxury at the Highlands Health Hotel.
4 We manage a number of **exclusive** restaurants in Paris and New York.
5 Our new shampoo will subtly bring out the **natural** highlights in your hair.
6 Our lipsticks come in a range of **long-lasting** colours.
7 We guarantee you will be impressed by the **unrivalled** service provided by all our hotels.
8 Our new concealer will make the **fine** lines around your eyes disappear.

24.2
1 I don't believe those ads that claim their creams have anti-ageing properties.
2 While working in Austria I ate so many lovely cakes that I piled on the pounds.
3 Why not have a bowl of soup or a banana if you're feeling a bit peckish.
4 We guarantee that you will see instant results with our luxury hand cream.
5 You should use this shampoo to revive your sun-damaged hair.
6 Sometimes I wish it were really possible to banish wrinkles.
7 The hotel gives all its guests the chance to experience gracious living.
8 We were invited to a banquet, where they entertained us in grand style.
9 At the airport she bought herself a couple of glossy magazines.
10 This part of town is famous for its classy hotels and exclusive restaurants.

24.3
1 range
2 hit
3 back
4 launched
5 set
6 high
7 labels
8 season's
9 popular
10 victim

24.4 *Possible answers:*
1 luxury cream / restaurant / hotel / travel
2 excruciatingly uncomfortable / painful / embarrassing / boring / funny
3 flawless complexion / performance / design
4 unrivalled service / collection / style
5 launch a new collection / an attack / a new service / a boat
6 exclusive restaurant / offer / story / club / part of town

Unit 25

25.1
1 tailed
2 down
3 diverted
4 building up
5 disrupted
6 keep; bear

25.2
1 heavy/dense traffic
2 eased off / died down (Although both of these are possible, the meaning is not exactly the same. *Eased off* simply means became less, whereas *died down* means to become less and eventually disappear to nothing or almost nothing.)
3 a valid/current driving licence (*Valid* and *current* in this context have almost the same meaning. They both mean that it is a licence that fulfils all the legal conditions. However, *current* puts the emphasis on the time element of the licence – licences and other official documents expire after a fixed period of time.)
4 Lengthy delays
5 Bear left
6 a manual car
7 grind the gears
8 hailed as a major development

25.3
1 reverse
2 set
3 advantage
4 development
5 change
6 valid / current
7 took
8 heavy

25.4
1 a right-hand drive car
2 move sideways
3 my driving test
4 was (soon) hailed as a major development
5 The key advantage of
6 There were lengthy/long delays
7 Traffic was severely disrupted
8 got stuck in traffic
9 the oncoming traffic

Unit 26

26.1 1 beaten; sights 2 unexplored 3 an intrepid 4 trekking; arduous 5 sense

26.2
1 feet
2 unexplored
3 stretch
4 low-cost
5 standby
6 epic
7 peeled
8 face
9 conditions
10 hopelessly
11 party
12 has

26.3
1 The first leg of the journey was straightforward.
2 My budget didn't stretch to travelling first class / to first-class travel.
3 Arriving at our base camp boosted our spirits. / Our spirits were boosted when we arrived at our base camp.
4 There will be sunny spells in most areas today.
5 We had a stopover in Singapore on our way to Australia.
6 Jack has always had a thirst for adventure.
7 Grandmother's spirits are high today.
8 The movement of the ship lulled me to sleep.

26.4 *Possible collocations*:
1 arduous task / climb
2 a mountain / a remote / a lonely wilderness
3 uncharted waters / seas / lands

Unit 27

27.1 1 summon up 2 extreme 3 took 4 acquire 5 jump 6 hang

27.2
1 push
2 whale; keep
3 chance
4 latest; pitch
5 stands; victory
6 shape
7 card
8 kick
9 missed; awarded
10 challenge

27.3
1 I'd jump at the chance to meet Johnny Depp, wouldn't you?
2 The spectators stood and clapped as the teams took the field.
3 You should only attempt this climb if you are pretty fit.
4 The crowd went wild at the end of the match.
5 We had a whale of a time in Australia.
6 I decided to take up the challenge of starting my own business.
7 The little boy soon got the hang of riding his bike without stabilisers.
8 The team captain felt dreadful when he scored an own goal.

27.4
1 latest 2 convincing 3 performance 4 defence 5 blinder

Unit 28

28.1
1 unveil a plan
2 stick to a schedule
3 make something a reality
4 leave it to someone's discretion
5 drum up a lot of support
6 cover every eventuality

28.2
1 on 2 up 3 plan 4 exercise 5 long-term 6 option

28.3
1 consideration
2 groundwork; launch
3 outright
4 factor
5 suggestion
6 change

28.4
1 Final preparations for the music festival are now **underway**.
2 I was very upset when they rejected my suggestions **out of hand**.
3 The company came **up** with the idea of encouraging customers to recycle packaging.
4 I don't think you will find it easy to **put** your ideas into practice.
5 He declared his **outright** opposition to the plan.
6 **Constructive** criticism is always welcome, but negative criticism is not.

28.5

		^{3}M	^{4}A				
^{1}P	^{2}R	A	C	^{5}T	I	C	^{6}E
L	E	K	T	O			A
A	A	E		Y			G
N	C						E
	H						R

Unit 29

29.1
1 star-studded
2 lasting
3 originality
4 display
5 role
6 accomplished
7 series
8 experiment
9 spectacularly
10 fire

29.2 The options that are NOT possible are:
1 high
2 starring
3 spectacularly
4 burst
5 highly
6 consummate
7 wrote

29.3
1 professional
2 up
3 reviews
4 events
5 disaster
6 experiment
7 attention
8 suspense

29.5 an unmitigated disaster
a dismal failure

Unit 30

30.1
1 satisfy requirements
2 have an obligation
3 arrive at an agreement
4 carry out a risk assessment
5 pass a new law
6 bring in regulations
7 adhere to standards
8 exercise authority

Other quite common collocations using these words are:
meet requirements
satisfy conditions

30.2
1 flout
2 adhere
3 sought; granted
4 comply with the law
5 satisfy; being in breach of

30.3
1 positions
2 cut through
3 introduce
4 tightening
5 faceless
6 approve

30.4

		¹R	U	L	E	S		
		I						
		²S	A	T	I	S	F	Y
		K						
	³D	A	N	G	E	R		
		S						
		S						
⁴E	X	E	R	C	I	S	E	
		S						
⁵E	S	S	E	N	T	I	A	L
		M						
⁶B	R	E	A	C	H			
		N						
⁷O	B	T	A	I	N	E	D	

30.5 *Possible answers:*
1 satisfy someone's desires
2 have a duty
3 arrive at a decision
4 carry out an experiment
5 meet someone's needs
6 address an issue
7 bring in a law
8 adhere to the rules

Unit 31

31.1 1 Tomas 2 Sylvia 3 Ulla 4 Marcos 5 Gerard

31.2
1 offshore
2 run (we also say *run out*)
3 vital
4 eco-friendly
5 dire (we could also say *disastrous* or *devastating*)
6 offset

31.3
1 Food miles
2 Renewable energy
3 widespread flooding
4 irreversible climate change
5 find a solution to
6 our carbon footprint

7 Offshore wind farms
8 the disposal of household waste

31.4 1 Temperatures **soared** during the summer months and reached a record high.
2 We must change our **ways** before it is too late.
3 They now have a **solar** heating system in their house; it's very economical.
4 The desert experiences **searing** heat during the day but is cold at night. (Note: we say **searing heat** or **soaring temperatures**, but we do NOT say ~~searing~~ temperatures or ~~soaring~~ heat.)
5 The weather **patterns** have changed in recent years: winters are milder, summers are hotter.
6 He has one of those **hybrid** cars which alternates between petrol and battery power.
7 The government must **introduce** green taxes so people who damage the environment pay more.
8 Vehicle **emissions** are the main source of pollution in big cities.
9 We need to find alternative energy **sources** for private homes.

Unit 32

32.1 1 the country; the city
2 the city; the country
3 the country; the city
4 the country; the city
5 the city; the country

32.2 1 The first sentence refers to cars and other traffic on the roads, whereas the second sentence refers to shoppers and other pedestrians on the pavements.
2 The first sentence means that the speaker lives in the centre of town, whereas the second sentence is talking about other people who live in quiet, residential and well-off suburbs.
3 The first sentence means that he lives in a very quiet, traditional place where nothing much happens, whereas the second sentence means that she lives in a very busy, active city centre.
4 The first sentence means the speaker loves living in the city, whereas in the second one, the speaker loves living in the country.

32.3 city life, urban living
long opening hours, open all hours
rustic charm, rural idyll
in the back of beyond, in the middle of nowhere

32.4 1 quiet backwater
2 in the back of beyond / in the middle of nowhere
3 urban regeneration
4 a tree-planting scheme
5 a desirable place to live
6 residential dwellings

32.5 1 derelict buildings
2 busy roads / congested roads
3 a bustling city centre
4 urban regeneration
5 the rural idyll
6 long opening hours / open all hours

32.6 *Possible answers:*
1 flock to the countryside / unspoilt countryside / rolling countryside / surrounding countryside / protect the countryside
2 a rural landscape / a barren landscape / dominate the landscape / a watercolour landscape / a landscape painter / a rugged landscape / an urban landscape
3 a fishing village / a mountain village / outlying villages / surrounding villages / a picturesque village / the global village / a coastal village / a remote village / a neighbouring village

32.7 *Author's answers:*
1 Sports programmes bore me rigid.
2 I think I might consider life in a remote country village in Britain to be a rural idyll for a couple of weeks but then I would probably miss the facilites of a big town.
3 No, the public transport system where I live is not reliable at all. The buses are very infrequent and they often arrive late or not at all.
4 No, I can't think of any derelict buildings where I live. Land with derelict buildings on it tends to be quickly redeveloped.
5 There are some small shops, a post box, a school, and a doctor's surgery.

Unit 33

33.1 1 make a payment
2 supplement my income
3 spend a fortune
4 borrow heavily
5 stay afloat

33.2 to arrange an overdraft
a bad debt
to be in debt
to clear a debt
deep in debt
overdraft facility
to get an overdraft
to get into debt
a hefty debt / overdraft
the national debt
to pay off a debt / an overdraft
debt-ridden
to run up a debt / an overdraft
an unauthorised overdraft

Other possible collocations:
to repay a debt / to owe a debt (of gratitude) / a debt mounts up
an overdraft limit / to reduce your overdraft / a sizeable overdraft

33.3 1 The firm has huge debts and has had to borrow $10 million. The new Chief Executive has introduced cost-cutting **measures**.
2 When I left university I had no **outstanding** debts, unlike most of my friends, who owed thousands of pounds.
3 The manager falsified company **records** and stole money from her employer.
4 I had no **source** of income, so I had to get a job, and quickly.
5 We **put** down a deposit on a new car last week.
6 She **defaulted** on her loan repayment and had to sell her business.
7 Many people don't trust online banking because they are afraid of **identity** theft.
8 If we don't cut **down** on luxuries, we're going to find ourselves in serious debt.
9 There are special offers for students who **open** a current account at the university bank.
10 You will pay a lot of interest if you go over your **agreed** credit limit.

33.4 1 The metaphor is that of a boat which must keep/stay afloat (otherwise it will sink under water).
2 You're expected to pay it back.
3 (c). To write off a loan would mean to accept that it will never be paid.
4 (a)
5 credit-card fraud

33.5 1 falsifying 2 fraudulent 3 payment 4 theft 5 interest-free

Unit 34

34.1

1 The government is finding it very difficult to curb inflation.
2 The country is suffering because of the current economic climate.
3 Although heavy industry is in decline, service industries are thriving.
4 The CEO is anxious to safeguard his company's interests.
5 New machinery has enabled the factory to increase its output.
6 The tax authorities plan to tackle the issue of undeclared earnings.
7 The budget plan explains how we intend to allocate our various resources.
8 We must tackle and solve the problems caused by social exclusion.

34.2

Own guidance	Previous rival government
build on success	leave inflation unchecked
extend opportunity	levy heavy taxes
meet with success	poor value for money
safely steer the economy	rampant inflation
steady growth	rising unemployment
thriving industry	thriving black economy
uninterrupted growth	

34.3

1 long
2 extend
3 undeclared
4 rising
5 stimulating
6 plummeting
7 public
8 push up
9 raise
10 introduce

34.4

1 public; private
2 undeclared
3 long; short
4 Falling
5 raising; pushed up; plummet
6 extend; stimulate
7 stunt
8 introduce

Unit 35

35.1 1 address 2 provide 3 broke down 4 break 5 made 6 incite

35.2

1 for human habitation
2 sanitary conditions
3 underage drinking
4 antisocial behaviour
5 public disorder
6 for good / for change

35.3

1 Poor people often have to claim benefits in order to survive financially.
2 The city council introduced a neighbourhood watch scheme.
3 The government took some draconian measures to prevent public disorder.
4 All governments need to address the issues of global poverty and disease.
5 The authorities had to provide shelter and food to the earthquake victims.
6 As the discontent grew, riots erupted in all the major cities.

35.4

1 The violence threatened **the social fabric**.
2 The Minister said it was time for a **fresh drive** to cut crime.
3 Customs officials found some **illegal substances** in the passenger's luggage.
4 The **run-down areas** of the city are often dangerous at night.
5 We hope our new organisation will be a **force for political change**.
6 He proposed a **novel solution** to address the issue of social inequality.
7 **Dysfunctional families** are a difficult problem for social workers.
8 The union representative **made a plea** for the workers to stand firm.
9 There were scenes of **public disorder** on the streets last night.
10 It is very difficult for young people to find **affordable housing**.

Unit 36

36.1

1 If you switch off your computer without shutting it **down** properly, you may lose data.
2 I didn't expect everything to run **smoothly** in my new job but I didn't imagine it would be quite so difficult as it was.
3 Alex had some technical problems **installing** his new computer equipment.
4 The company is famous for its **cutting-edge** design.
5 If they'd serviced their machines regularly, they wouldn't have had to halt **production**.
6 Vic dreams of making a discovery that would help to push **back** the frontiers of science.
7 Scientists usually **publish** their findings in academic journals.
8 There was a power **cut** this morning. The power went off at ten and it wasn't **restored** till midday.
9 Urs loves pure research but his brother is more interested in the application of research to practical projects and in **harnessing** new technology for commercial ends.
10 They carried out **research** over a ten-year period and finally published their **findings** this month.

36.2

1 He's swiping a card.
2 She's entering her PIN number.
3 She's using SATNAV.
4 He's switching channels by TV remote control.

36.3

1 High-definition TV (HD TV), flat screen TV and remote controls
2 It's used for storing music (files).
3 The systems might crash.
4 No, online banking is now available at most banks.
5 A wireless hotspot
6 Switch channels
7 Download a new ringtone
8 They suffer from wear and tear.

36.4

1 (a) the small screen (b) the big screen (also the silver screen)
2 online dictionary / education / course / magazine
3 remote mountain village / past / possibility / manner

Unit 37

37.1

enjoy good health
reduce your stress levels
do plenty of exercise
go on a diet
gentle exercise
build up your resistance
do sport
watch what you eat

37.2

1 diet
2 dose. A dose of medicine/penicillin is a measured amount of it, while a dose of flu is an experience of flu (*dose* in this second sense would only be used about an unpleasant experience).
3 build up
4 disease
5 cold
6 course

37.3

1 j
2 b
3 h
4 a
5 e
6 c
7 f
8 d
9 g
10 i

37.4
1 side effects
2 untimely death (*premature* is also possible but does not sound right after *very*)
3 shake it off
4 poor health
5 taking an overdose
6 exceed the recommended dose
7 have an operation
8 watch what you eat
9 make a full recovery

Unit 38

38.1
1 **Soaring crime rates** have been recorded in the last twelve months.
2 Why should young criminals **escape punishment** for crimes just because of their age?
3 The lawyers **contested the verdict of the court**.
4 The judge **dismissed** the case because he felt the evidence was **unreliable.**
5 John Jones **denied all knowledge of** the robbery.
6 The judge **adjourned** the trial **until** next month.

38.2
1 good
2 go to prison
3 kept in prison
4 kept in prison for the full amount of time
5 invented

38.3
1 He was put **on** trial for murder.
2 He was later remanded **in** custody.
3 The witness appeared **in** court for the first time today.
4 The murderer was soon brought **to** justice.
5 The case against Mr Sharp was proved **beyond** reasonable doubt.

38.4
1 miscarriages
2 extenuating
3 appeared
4 unanimous
5 denied
6 awarded
7 justice
8 adjourned
9 minor

38.5
find guilty, find not guilty (Note that a *guilty verdict* and a *not guilty verdict* are also possible collocations.)
give evidence, give a sentence (usually used in passive – be given a sentence)
stand trial, face trial
unreliable witness, unreliable evidence
contest a verdict, overturn a verdict

Possible sentences using the collocations:
He was found guilty of theft, but found not guilty of murder.
The witness gave evidence which resulted in the accused being given a five-year sentence.
She was facing trial for murder, but escaped from prison and never actually stood trial for the offence.
It was an example of unreliable evidence from an unreliable witness.
The verdict was contested, and was subsequently overturned.

Follow-up
Here are some examples of collocations found from a search on the website suggested. Note that each search throws up 50 different sentences and so it is possible that you may have found some quite different examples.

deliver a verdict
return a verdict of
reach a verdict
record a verdict
verdict of accidental death
a key witness
bear witness to
to witness atrocities
an expert witness
a witness statement
witness evidence
a vital witness
struggle for custody
take into custody
custody officer
provide safe custody
bitter custody battle
keep in custody
hold in custody
discharge from custody
be released from custody
an interim custody order
in police custody

Unit 39

39.1
1 SPATE
2 VIOLENCE
3 STRIKE(S)
4 CAUGHT
5 POWER
6 CEASEFIRE

39.2 *Possible answers:*
1 The UN's aim is to restore peace in an area where there has clearly been a lot of fighting.
2 They have managed to get both sides to agree to a ceasefire.
3 The ceasefire is due to come into effect from midnight the following day.
4 There have been hostilities for ten years.
5 No, it has been getting worse. It has been escalating.
6 The two sides have clearly been deadly/bitter enemies for a long time.

39.3
1 lift the blockade
2 surgical strikes
3 fragile peace
4 go on the offensive
5 launch a counter-attack
6 create instability
7 collateral damage
8 suffer casualties

39.4
1 The two countries have been engaged in **hostilities** for a long time.
2 The ceasefire **comes** into effect today and all hope it will bring **stability** to the area again.
3 The government has promised to **withdraw** its troops next year.
4 There is an **uneasy** truce between the two sides at the moment.
5 When peace is **restored,** we shall be able to **disband** the army.
6 The newspaper reported that the enemy had **suffered** a defeat despite the fact that they had **deployed** large numbers of troops to the area.
7 They accused us of **stockpiling** weapons and of preparing to launch **an unprovoked** attack.
8 Some argue that the nuclear deterrent has prevented violence from **escalating.**

Unit 40

40.1
1 childhood
2 stand
3 Forging
4 lifelong
5 circle
6 long-term

40.2
1 casual
2 bad
3 social
4 close
5 stable
6 complete
7 firm/close
8 moral
9 cordial
10 friendly

40.3
1 life
2 sprang
3 won
4 provided me with
5 heal
6 took
7 broke down
8 close/firm

40.4
1 We should have a **heart-to-heart** chat to resolve our differences.
2 She **came** under attack from some colleagues at work who didn't like her.
3 If you **abuse** someone's trust you deserve to lose their friendship.
4 We tried hard to **make** the relationship work but failed.
5 I think you need to **put** some distance between yourself and Eduardo.

Unit 41

41.1 newborn baby spoilt brat child prodigy juvenile delinquent disaffected youth
(Other possible collocations are: *spoilt baby, spoilt child, delinquent youth.*)

41.2
1 child prodigy
2 newborn babies
3 juvenile delinquent
4 spoilt brat
5 disaffected youth

41.3
1 It is all too easy to **take** your close friends and your family for granted.
2 Liz's got four children and she's just bought herself a sports car. Do you think she's going **through** some kind of midlife crisis?
3 My sister **had** a baby boy last month.
4 You'll spoil your daughter if you keep on **pandering** to her every whim.
5 My parents are vegetarians, so I **respect** their wishes and don't eat meat in their house.
6 Sorry. I must be having a **senior** moment. I just can't remember your name!
7 Jacqui insists she has seen the **error** of her ways.
8 Don't worry about your daughter leaving home. She won't **come** to any harm.
9 Make sure you don't let the child out of your **sight**.

41.4
1 Leaving home means going to live in another place, and leaving the house is what you do when you go out of your front door every day.
2 A hazy memory is vague, not clear or distinct, and a distinct memory is very clear.
3 A grumpy old man is one who is bad-tempered and complains a lot, and a dear old man is one who is kind and good-natured.
4 An occasional twinge is a pain that happens from time to time, and a sudden twinge is a pain that happens unexpectedly.
5 Something becomes a habit but a person develops a habit.
6 If you fall into a pattern, that pattern gradually develops, whereas if you fit into a pattern, the pattern has already been established by someone else and you adapt to it.

41.5
The collocations that are impossible (or at least very unlikely) are:
1 go
2 firm
3 talk
4 problem
5 perfect
6 wake up
7 an increase
8 sensitive

Unit 42

42.1
1 False. It could include members of his/her family, but it also includes his/her immediate colleagues and/or friends.
2 False. A lavish lifestyle is one that is very extravagant and luxurious, but it is not necessarily one that occasionally breaks the law.
3 False. When someone goes into rehab, they want to lose an addiction, usually to alcohol or drugs.
4 False. The highest bidder is the person who is prepared to pay most for something.
5 True
6 True
7 False. A kiss and tell story is one where *one person* talks to the press about a romantic or sexual relationship they had with a famous person.
8 False. A prenuptial agreement is made before a couple marry.
9 True
10 False. It suggests that the interviewee spoke only to one journalist or newspaper.

42.2
1 rise
2 ambition (could also be *dream*)
3 heaped
4 nomination
5 highly
6 reveal
7 enjoyed/had
8 made

42.3
1 A messy one.
2 An exclusive one.
3 A very significant one.
4 Her achievements.
5 Her story.
6 An award.
7 A pre nuptial one.
8 The highest.
9 A fairy-tale one.
10 Glowing ones.

42.4
1 an in-depth interview
2 a meteoric rise to fame
3 a significant impact
4 a lavish lifestyle

Unit 43

43.1
1 a slippery customer
2 mindless violence
3 shirk one's responsibilities
4 pick a fight
5 take the flak
6 poison the atmosphere
7 hold in contempt
8 a disruptive influence

43.2
1 bone idle
2 poisoning the atmosphere
3 trust Glyn an inch
4 out of order / a downright disgrace
5 minor niggles
6 a nasty piece of work

43.3
1 betray
2 hold
3 have
4 pick
5 rests
6 belittle
7 cloud
8 play
9 stoop
10 have

43.4
1 mindless
2 glaring
3 disruptive
4 disgrace
5 achievement(s)
6 nagging

Unit 44

44.1
1 keen interest
2 honing; skills
3 meet; challenge
4 paramount importance
5 pursue; interest
6 accumulate; experience

44.2
1 Paul has an encyclopaedic knowledge of African history.
2 Karen has very good interpersonal skills / has excellent people skills.
3 Eric accumulated considerable experience of farming / on farms when he was in Canada.
4 Toyah has an excellent teaching qualification but she lacks classroom experience.
5 I trust Dr Robinson implicitly.
6 This job will offer you the perfect opportunity to hone your computer/computing skills.
7 I have every confidence in your ability to / that you will be able to complete the course.
8 It was Duncan's financial acumen that led to his promotion.

44.3 I am happy to **act** as a referee for James McBride, who has applied for a teaching post at your language school. I **have** every confidence in Mr McBride's abilities as a teacher. He spent last summer working at the school where I am Principal and he was a **much/greatly** appreciated member of our staff. He was very successful in **establishing/developing** a good relationship with both students and staff. He **is highly educated / has a good level of education** with a particularly **extensive/comprehensive** knowledge of English literature. He combines **good** teaching qualifications with **considerable** experience of teaching students at all levels of English. He also has **advanced/good** computer skills, which should certainly prove useful in a technologically advanced school such as yours.

44.4
1 revealed
2 wholeheartedly
3 meet
4 provide
5 perform
6 highly

44.5
financial / business / political acumen
highly valued / placed / prized
perform a task / an operation / a song

Unit 45

45.1	blank expression gruff exterior striking resemblance cool reception stubborn streak bubbly personality	1 striking resemblance 2 bubbly personality 3 blank expression 4 stubborn streak 5 gruff exterior 6 cool reception

45.2 Sentences 3, 4, 6 and 8 are complimentary.

45.3
1 bears a striking resemblance to
2 boosting your confidence
3 forthright manner
4 strong points
5 has admirable qualities
6 bursting with energy

45.4
1 perfectly
2 hostility
3 unacceptable
4 characteristics
5 thinly
6 reception

Unit 46

46.1
1 Living in such a confined space is difficult with three kids.
2 The piano took up a lot of room, so we sold it.
3 This office is better than the cramped conditions I used to work in.
4 We're moving because we're short of space where we're living at the moment.
5 We demolished an old outhouse to leave room for a bigger kitchen and utility room.
6 The attic is a waste of space, so we're going to convert it into a study.

46.2
1 a lasting contribution to
2 (vacant) parking spaces
3 dim and distant memory
4 ample room
5 the vast expanse

46.3
1 A decade has elapsed
2 foreseeable future
3 a bygone era
4 go down in history
5 over the course of time
6 not-so-distant future

46.4

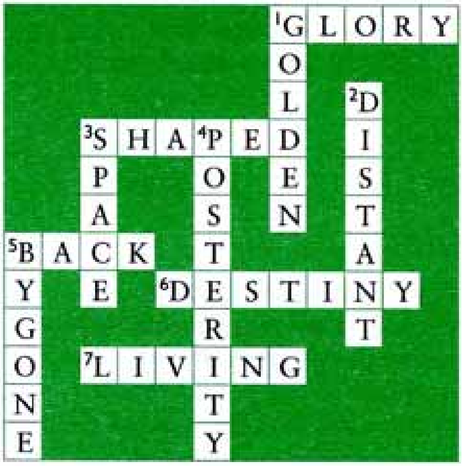

Unit 47

47.1 1 Kevin 2 Joe 3 Fabrice's boss 4 Ilona 5 Zara

47.2
1 gave
2 make
3 utter
4 travels
5 let
6 descended
7 faltered
8 lost
9 slurred

47.3
1 I could hear a slight **trace** of an Irish accent in her voice.
2 Paolo was met with a **stony** silence as everyone tried to absorb the bad news.
3 The old woman let **out** a cry of anger when she heard the result of the trial.
4 She has a **broad** American accent, even though she was not born there.
5 I could hear **hoots** of laughter coming from the next room.
6 The voices were **muffled**, so I could not make out what anyone was saying.
7 Silence **reigned** in the classroom as the pupils were all hard at work.
8 Speak up. I hate it when you mutter something under your **breath**.

47.4
1 distant
2 incessant (also constant)
3 soft (also quiet)
4 dull
5 deathly
6 clap (Note that the phrase *a murmur of thunder* in the original sentence would be a very unusual combination of words in English.)

Unit 48

48.1 1 feasible alternatives 2 viable options 3 the easy option 4 a step-by-step approach

48.2
adopt a method
concentrate the mind
enlist help
immense asset
instantly recall
perfect a technique
perfectly simple
remarkable ease
simple rule
take the time

48.3
1 perfected
2 simplicity
3 ease
4 hard work
5 degree of accuracy
6 break
7 taking the
8 complexities

48.4 1 C 2 D 3 A 4 B 5 D

Unit 49

49.1
1 adverse weather conditions
2 a complete disaster
3 a constant struggle
4 widespread flooding
5 grave danger
6 a state of confusion
7 catastrophic results
8 high risk
9 a severe blow
10 a complete disaster

49.2
1 tackle
2 struck
3 spot
4 respond
5 carries
6 hindering
7 face
8 fighting
9 poses

49.3 1 d 2 c 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 e

49.4
1 We are **having/experiencing** a number of problems with our new car.
2 Some problems **arose/occurred** when we tried to follow your instructions.
3 Somehow our society must **find** a solution to the problem of child poverty.
4 A difficulty has **arisen** with regard to a member of our project team.
5 Even advanced students sometimes **make** mistakes with this type of collocation.
6 I've always **had/experienced** a lot of difficulties with English spelling.

49.5 *Possible answers:*

encounter	resistance problems	tackle	an issue an opponent	pose	a question a problem

Unit 50

50.1
1 We had a bumper crop of apples from our trees last year.
2 A substantial amount of their income comes from the apartments they rent out.
3 I feel confident that a substantial/significant/good/fair number of people will vote for Mac.
4 Jill's room at college is a good size.
5 We have a finite number of tickets, so we're offering them on a first-come-first-served basis.
6 I was terrifed by the sheer size of the dog.
7 My new colleague is still an unknown quantity.
8 There were a fair few / a fair number of careless mistakes in your homework.

50.2
1 majority
2 overdose
3 fees
4 proportions
5 patience
6 crop
7 amount
8 few/number

50.3
1 unbounded enthusiasm
2 bumper crop
3 astronomical fees
4 infinite patience
5 fair few
6 endless supply
7 inordinate amount
8 sheer quantity

50.4

	minority	majority	amount	number	percentage	quantity	importance	significance
small	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓		
little							✓	✓
large	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
great							✓	✓
big								
high					✓			
wide								

50.5
1 infinite wisdom / variety / number
2 epic film / journey / struggle
3 overwhelming urge / desire / need
4 endless arguments / possibilities
5 massive house / scale / heart attack

Unit 51

51.1
1 a) to change beyond recognition
b) to implement planned changes
2 a) major b) minor c) major d) minor e) major
3 a) The town remains unchanged.
b) Over the years many changes have taken place in the school.
4 Yes.
5 It's usually easier for a young person than an elderly person to adapt to changing circumstances.
6 The fact that they went out.

51.2 1 show/showed
2 times
3 turned
4 undergoing
5 wildly
6 increase
7 made
8 recognition
9 dramatically
10 implement

51.3 1 There is room for improvement in your coursework assignment.
2 There was a sudden shift in public attitudes towards the issue of capital punishment.
3 Several changes in our management structure took place last year.
4 There have been sweeping changes to the school programme since I was a pupil here.
5 Some quite significant changes came about last year.
6 Penny is a changed woman since she got the job she wanted.
7 My life turned / was turned upside-down when I lost my job.
8 It'd make a change to stay in a hotel rather than go camping this summer.

Unit 52

52.1 1 abandon 2 lull 3 bring 4 called

52.2 1 I'm afraid it was me burning the toast that set off the smoke alarm.
2 As soon as she saw her mother the little girl broke into a run.
3 Because of the President's visit, they've closed off the area.
4 I didn't manage to fall asleep until dawn was breaking.
5 I hope they won't decide to terminate the contract.
6 The missing child was found, so the police called off their search.
7 The school is planning to instigate some anti-bullying measures.
8 We were halfway up the mountain when the rain set in.

52.3 1 SINGER CLEARS UP CONFUSION ABOUT LYRICS
2 ARMY QUELLS UNREST ON BORDER
3 NEW REPUBLIC BREAKS DIPLOMATIC RELATIONS WITH NEIGHBOURS
4 PEACE PROCESS TALKS COLLAPSE
5 VIOLENCE SPARKS FEARS OF FURTHER UNREST
6 STAR DISPELS RUMOURS OF DIVORCE
7 STADIUM FINALLY NEARS COMPLETION
8 MINISTER ALLAYS FEARS OF TAX INCREASE

52.4 1 opening
2 enter
3 allay
4 stop
5 breaks
6 dispel
7 quell
8 completion

Unit 53

53.1 1 I think that computers will eventually render books obsolete.
2 The preliminary meeting set the wheels of the new project in motion.
3 Her mother calling her sister the 'pretty one' bred a lot of resentment.
4 I always suspected the new tax law would spell disaster for the economy.
5 I'm sure that your hard work will produce a positive result.
6 The boss's decision to cut wages provoked an outcry from the staff.
7 The way he behaved last night planted doubts in my mind about his honesty.
8 The Minister's absence has prompted speculation that he is unwell.

9 The uncertainty of the situation is driving us crazy.
10 The floods last week wrought havoc in low-lying areas.

53.2
1 demanded
2 dire
3 face
4 compelling
5 contributing
6 reason
7 desired
8 wrought/wreaked
9 plant

53.3
1 The dust from the building site next door is nearly driving me crazy.
2 It will take them a long time to establish the cause of the accident.
3 If we set things in motion now, your visa should be ready next week.
4 The customer survey which the company carried out produced some surprising results.

53.4
1 The desired effect of any medication is to cure an infection or disease, or treat its symptoms.
2 A knock-on effect might or might not be welcomed as it can be either positive or negative.
3 Root cause. The *root cause* means the original source of the problem and the *primary cause* is the main cause amongst several possible causes.
4 It probably takes about five minutes before you feel the full effect of a dental injection.
5 Some people would argue that television has had some ill effects on society – it may, for example, have encouraged people to read less and to talk to their families less in the evenings.
6 a video or audio cassette player

Unit 54

54.1
1 birds (flock of birds) – swarm of bees/flies
2 wasps (swarm of wasps) – herd of zebras/cattle
3 sardines (shoal of sardines) – flock of sheep/birds
4 fish (shoal of fish) – pod of whales/dolphins
5 elephants (herd of elephants) – tribe of baboons/monkeys
6 lions (pride of lions) – pack of wolves/dogs

54.2
1 flurry
2 dash
3 flurry
4 stroke
5 drop; sprinkling
6 gamut
7 swarm (could also be an army or a colony of ants)
8 flicker
9 glimmer

54.3
1 a dollop of cream
2 a hunk of bread
3 a head of garlic
4 100g of butter

54.4
a bed of rice
a drop of brandy
a flurry of speculation
gamut of colours
a glimmer of hope
a pack of hounds
a pod of whales
a shoal of fish
a touch of humour

54.5
1 pad or pack (a pad of paper is paper glued together at the top intended for hand-writing, while a pack of paper refers to the loose sheets of paper sold together for printing)
2 pack; grain
3 suite
4 pack
5 torrent
6 grain
7 pinch
8 swig

Unit 55

55.1

1 yawning; different
2 sides
3 opposites
4 difference; contrast
5 clear
6 wide

55.2 1 g 2 a 3 f 4 h 5 c 6 b 7 d 8 e

55.3

1 entirely / strikingly
2 bridge
3 bear
4 clear / subtle
5 world
6 fundamentally / strikingly
7 growing
8 side

55.4 *Possible answers:*

1 I think the advantages of living in the country far outweigh the disadvantages.
2 Life in the country compares very favourably with life in the town.
3 Social relationships in the country are fundamentally different from those in the town.
4 The pleasures of town life pale in comparison with the pleasures of country living.
5 Unfortunately, public transport in the country is strikingly different from the transport services available in the city.
6 Entertainment and sports facilities available in the town and in the country differ widely.

Follow up

Here are some possible collocations:

in stark contrast
in sharp contrast
to contrast dramatically
outweigh the benefits
outweigh the risks
a gap in the market
a gap between her teeth
the generation gap

Unit 56

56.1

1 Exercise – this is made clear by the word *physical.*
2 No, the speaker thinks it will be difficult – this is made clear by the phrase *hard slog.*
3 It's the responsibility of two or more people – this is made clear by the word *joint.*
4 To try their hardest – this is shown by the use of *give things your best shot.*
5 No, she didn't – this is made clear by the word *abortive.*
6 Cooperation – this is made clear by the word *team.*

56.2

1 worth
2 determined
3 doomed
4 ignored
5 heeded
6 desire
7 shot
8 strenuous
9 devoting
10 required
11 pinning
12 reap

56.3

1 It'll be an uphill struggle to get your work finished by the deadline.
2 The appeal of Shakespeare's plays has certainly stood the test of time.
3 It would be sensible for you to follow his advice.
4 No parents can provide a solution to/for all their children's problems.
5 After a few months you will begin to reap the rewards of all your hard work.
6 Rob made a valiant effort not to fall behind in the race but he just didn't have enough stamina.
7 (Hard) physical exertion certainly works up an appetite.
8 A lawyer would probably be the best person to offer you advice.
9 I'm pinning my hopes on winning a scholarship to the college.
10 Alex has been making a concerted effort to do better this term.

Unit 57

57.1 1 bright 2 give; mean 3 up; decent 4 travels 5 had; sleep 6 know

57.2
1 I'm **really/absolutely** delighted with my wonderful present.
2 I'm absolutely shattered – I've been **on** the go all week.
3 It was a **great** pleasure to meet you.
4 I'm **really / very much** looking forward to hearing from you soon.
5 It **came** as a bit of a shock when I heard that Ellen and Jim had split up.
6 To be **brutally** honest, I don't think he'll ever make a good teacher.
7 I didn't **have** much luck when I was trying to find a new dress for the party.
8 I hope I didn't **cause** your parents any trouble. Or I hope I didn't **put** your parents **to** any trouble.
9 We **sincerely / very much** hope that you will visit us again soon.
10 The thought **occurred** to me that he might be in some kind of trouble.
11 Please don't **go** to any trouble on my account!
12 **Give** me a ring when you want to be picked up from the station.

57.3

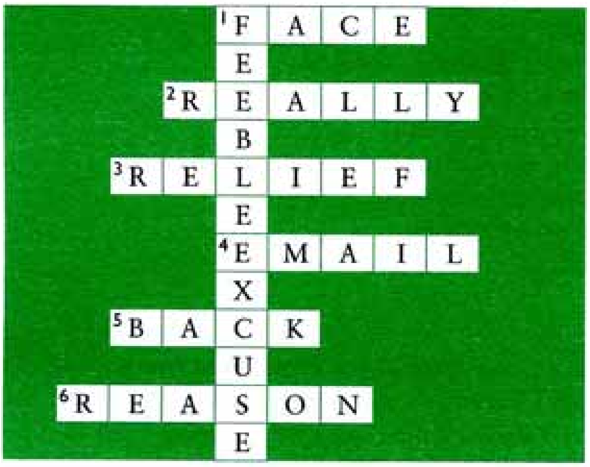

			^{1}F	A	C	E	
			E				
		^{2}R	E	A	L	L	Y
			B				
	^{3}R	E	L	I	E	F	
			E				
			^{4}E	M	A	I	L
			X				
	^{5}B	A	C	K			
			U				
^{6}R	E	A	S	O	N		
			E				

Unit 58

58.1
1 broke; promise
2 offer; explanation
3 reaffirm; commitment
4 rejected; charge
5 dodge; question
6 betrayed; trust

58.2
1 gave repeated assurances
2 went back on his promise
3 give a straight answer
4 made a (firm) commitment to
5 keeping your promise
6 fielded
7 channels of communication
8 I take your point
9 He gave a full apology

58.3 1 Alex 2 Brona 3 Simon 4 Arlene 5 Finn

58.4 *Collocations in possible sentences:*

We all have to **confront the issue** of climate change.

With all **due respect**, I think that your comments are very short-sighted.

The police are trying to **establish communication** with the terrorists in the building.

I accept what you say. It's a **fair comment**.

The politician / film star / footballer **issued a denial** after reports in the newspapers that he/she was having an affair.

The lecturer **put** an interesting **question** to the class about the reasons for antisocial behaviour.

Unit 59

59.1 1 harebrained 2 admitted 3 levels 4 take 5 bottle 6 vent

59.2 1 C 2 A 3 B 4 C 5 D 6 B

59.3
1 Catching a bug while he was in hospital hastened the old man's death / the death of the old man.
2 Cinderella suffered (very rough treatment) at the hands of her wicked stepmother.
3 There was a public outpouring of grief when the film star died.
4 The accident has fuelled fears about / with regard to safety on the railways.
5 Because of their behaviour we are left with little/no alternative but to boycott their goods.
6 It was a lapse of judgement for him to act as he did.
7 I was sick with worry / worried sick when Dad was having his operation.
8 It's better not to bottle up your feelings.

59.4
1 a fit of jealousy / temper / rage
2 to shatter someone's confidence / illusions / dreams
3 to fill someone with dread / joy / foreboding
4 to hurl insults / abuse / stones at someone
5 in a state of shock / euphoria / emergency
6 pose a threat / problem / challenge / question
7 a lapse of judgement / time / concentration
8 an intense dislike / fear / loathing

Unit 60

60.1
1 The whole country seems to be in a **state** of euphoria after winning the World Cup.
2 I heaved a **sigh** of relief when I heard Joe had finally passed his driving test.
3 As the starting whistle blew, a **surge** of adrenalin helped me get off to a good start.
4 I still always feel a **shiver** down my spine when I set off on a long journey.
5 It was a difficult climb but we had a marvellous **sense** of achievement as we stood at the top.
6 Agreeing to do a bit of overtime could **work** to your advantage, you know.
7 Rick seems to have lost his **sense** of purpose.
8 As winter ends I always seem to feel a **burst** of energy.
9 It was **pure** luck that the answer suddenly came to me in the middle of the exam.
10 I don't think those engineers ever got the **recognition** they deserved.

60.2
1 derive
2 high; lived
3 come
4 expressed
5 went
6 heart
7 takes/took
8 optimistic
9 great
10 joy

60.3 *Possible answers:*
1 a hope or a wish
2 a habit or a dream
3 easy, certain or jealous
4 luck, willpower, nonsense or coincidence
5 an effect, a hope or a change (but not something concrete like, say, a swimming pool)

60.4 *Author's answers:*
1 I think that most people are more likely to find long-lasting happiness in a relationship than a career – though you can find plenty of happiness in a career too, of course.

2 I have profound admiration for a twelve-year-old girl I know who takes most of the responsibility for looking after her seriously disabled mother and who always appears cheerful.
3 Getting my first writing commission was a matter of pure luck, of bumping into someone at the right moment.
4 I enjoy both, but I think I derive more pleasure from reading.
5 I last experienced a sense of achievement when I finished writing the units for this book.

Index

abandon
  ~ an attempt 52
  ~ a policy 52
abide by a decision 11
ability
  demonstrate an ~ 17
  proven ~ 17
abject
  ~ apology 22
  ~ failure 4
  ~ misery 4
  ~ povery 4
  ~ terror 4
abortive attempt 56
abrasive manner 45
absolutely
  ~ delighted 8, 57
  ~ essential 30
  ~ furious 59
  ~ vital 31
  ~ wonderful 8
  have ~ no idea 6
utterly absurd 8
abuse trust 40
academic year 17
accent
  broad ~ 2, 47
  trace of an ~ 47
remote access your email 36
highest accolade 42
accomplished actor 29
account
  detailed ~ 22
  exhaustive ~ 18
  give an ~ of 10
  open a current ~ 33
accumulate experience 44
amazing degree of accuracy 48
sense of achievement 60
achievements
  belittle someone's ~ 43
  celebrate the ~ 42
acquaintance
  casual ~ 40
  make someone's ~ 9
acquire
  ~ knowledge 17
  ~ a taste for 27
get a message across 10
act
  ~ your age 45
  ~ as a go-between 21
  ~ as a referee 44
act on
  ~ a suggestion 28
  ~ a tip off 11
take industrial action 13
flurry of activity 54
accomplished actor 29
financial acumen 44
adapt to changing circumstances 51
address *noun*
  jot down an ~ 11
address *verb*
  ~ an issue 35
  ~ a problem 49
adhere
  ~ to beliefs 11
  ~ to ideals 11
  ~ to a philosophy 11
  ~ to principles 1, 11
  ~ to standards 30
adjourn
  ~ a meeting 2
  ~ a trial 38
admiration
  express ~ 60
  profound ~ 60
admit defeat 59
adopt a method 48
surge of adrenalin 60
advanced
  ~ computer skills 44
  ~ knowledge 44
advantage
  key ~ 25
  work to someone's ~ 60
advantages outweigh the disadvantages 55
adventure
  sense of ~ 26
  thirst for ~ 26
adverse
  ~ reaction 37
  ~ weather conditions 49
advice
  follow ~ 56
  ignore someone's ~ 56
  offer ~ 56
affect the bottom line 15
affordable housing 35
keep afloat 33
after careful consideration 28
against
  ~ your better judgement 14
  make a stand ~ 9
  take a firm stance ~ 22
age
  act your ~ 45
  feel your ~ 41
  look your ~ 45
age-old tradition 23
mental agility 17
agreed credit limit 33
agreement
  arrive at an ~ 30
  in broad ~ 2
  broker an ~ 21
  enter into an ~ 21
  prenuptial ~ 42
  reach ~ 21, 30
state an aim 10
air a grievance 22
low-cost airline 26
set off a fire alarm 52
alight from a bus 1
all
  deny ~ knowledge 38
  open ~ hours 32
  with ~ due respect 58
all-star cast 29
allay fears 52
allocate
  ~ part of a budget 15
  ~ resources 34
alternative *adjective*
  ~ energy source 31
alternative *noun*
  be left with little ~ 59
  come up with an ~ 11
  feasible ~ 48
amazing
  ~ chain of events 29
  ~ degree of accuracy 48
ambition
  lifelong ~ 60
  realise your ~ 42
amount
  inordinate ~ 50
  large ~ 50

  significant ~ (of) 50
  small ~ 50
  substantial ~ (of) 50
ample room 46
source of amusement 5
critical analysis 18
pent-up anger 45
announce record profits 15
annual tradition 23
give a straight answer 58
anti-ageing properties 24
eager anticipation 28
antisocial behaviour 35
apology
  abject ~ 22
  give a full ~ 58
  make an ~ 9
appear in court 38
put in an appearance 19
work up an appetite 11
put in an application 30
greatly appreciate 8
step-by-step approach 48
approve a plan 30
arduous journey 26
run-down area 35
argument
  be drawn into an ~ 20
  lose an ~ 20
  other side of the ~ 55
  thrust of an ~ 18
  win an ~ 20
arises
  difficulty ~ 49
  dispute ~ 21
  opportunity ~ 3
  problem ~ 49
disband an army 39
rumour flies around 20
arouse someone's interest 1
make arrangements 9
arrive at
  ~ an agreement 30
  ~ a conclusion 28
thoroughly ashamed 8
ask for an extension 6
aspects of the job 12
cast aspersions 4
assess something's value 5
carry out a risk assessment 30
immense asset 48
assignments
  hand in ~ 6
  submit ~ 6
give repeated assurances 58
astronomical fees 50
atmosphere
  convivial ~ 19
  create an ~ 9, 29
  evoke an ~ 29
  poison the ~ 43
  soak up ~ 11
attack
  come under ~ 40
  massive heart ~ 37
  unprovoked ~ 39
spate of attacks 3
attempt
  abandon an ~ 52
  abortive ~ 56
  make an ~ 9
attend
  ~ a formal function 19
  ~ school 17
attention
  hold someone's ~ 29
  undivided ~ 41
  ~ wanders 17
have an attitude problem 43
stunningly attractive 3
auburn hair 2
authority
  exercise ~ 30
  leading ~ 17
  in a position of ~ 30
automatic car 25
broad avenue 2
awaken your interest 29
award *noun*
  present an ~ 42
award *verb*
  ~ damages 38
be awarded a penalty 27
become aware 14
totally awesome 6
tribe of baboons 54
baby
  have a ~ 41
  newborn ~ 41
back *adverb*
  ~ in fashion 24
  bring ~ memories 46
  go ~ on a promise 58
  pay ~ a loan 33
  push ~ the frontiers 36
  tradition dates ~ to 23
  traffic tails ~ 25
back *noun*
  ~ of beyond 32
  be glad to see the ~ of 57
back up conclusions 18
bad
  ~ language 20
  create a ~ impression 9
  on ~ terms 40
take something badly 49
balance *noun*
  keep your ~ 27
  strike a ~ (between) 55
balance *verb*
  ~ the books 15
banish wrinkles 24
online banking 36
barbecue
  have a ~ 19
  organise a ~ 19
barrage
  ~ of insults 3
  ~ of questions 3
loosely based on 8
basic principle 48
win the battle 5
be
  ~ awarded a penalty 27
  ~ drawn into an argument 20
  ~ given leave 22
  ~ given a sentence 38
  ~ given a yellow card 27
  ~ glad to see the back of 57
  ~ on the go 57
  ~ joined in matrimony 23
  ~ left with little alternative 59
  ~ open to offers 12
  ~ the only option open to someone 28
  ~ in poor health 37
  ~ prospects for 13
  ~ in for a shock 59
  ~ up for 57
  ~ worth a try 56
bear
  ~ left 25
  ~ little resemblance to 55
  ~ in mind 14
  ~ a striking resemblance to 55
  ~ the suspense 29
  ~ the thought of 57
  not ~ comparison with 55
off the beaten track 26

become
  ~ aware 14
  ~ a habit 41
bed of rice 54
swarm of bees 54
behaviour
  antisocial ~ 35
  disorderly ~ 22
  good ~ 38
  unacceptable ~ 45
put the past behind you 3
widespread belief 14
adhere to beliefs 11
belittle someone's achievements 43
claim benefits 35
give it your best shot 56
betray someone's trust 43, 58
against your better judgement 14
between
  draw a comparison ~ 55
  put some distance ~ 40
  strike a balance (~) 55
beyond
  ~ reasonable doubt 38
  back of ~ 32
  change ~ recognition 51
highest bidder 42
bill
  foot the ~ 7
  run up a ~ 1, 33
flock of birds 54
come as a bit of a shock 57
bitter enemy 39
black economy 34
blame
  ~ rests with 43
  shoulder the ~ 7
blank expression 45
blatantly obvious 8
play a blinder 27
wedded bliss 23
blissfully happy 1
lift a blockade 39
blond hair 1
severe blow 49
take a boat 5
bold experiment 29
bombard someone with questions 20
bone idle 43
heavy book 7
balance the books 15
booming voice 47
boost
  ~ your confidence 45
  ~ sales 15
  ~ spirits 26
  ~ profits 15
bored rigid 32
borrow heavily 33
bottle up your feelings 59
affect the bottom line 15
boundless energy 45
bow to pressure 21
drop of brandy 54
spoilt brat 41
breach *noun*
  in ~ of the law 30
breach *verb*
  ~ a contract 58
hunk of bread 54
break *noun*
  ~ with tradition 23
break *verb*
  ~ the cycle 35
  ~ diplomatic relations 52
  ~ through the defence 27
  ~ the journey 26
  ~ news 10
  ~ a promise 58
  ~ into a run 52
  ~ into song 52
  ~ a task down 48
law and order
break down 35
dawn breaks 52
relationship breaks down 40
trouble breaks out 21
mutter under your breath 47
breed resentment 53
bridge the gap 55
bright idea 57
bring
  ~ to a close 52
  ~ to a halt 52
  ~ to justice 38
  ~ stability 39
bring back memories 46
bring up the subject 20
broach the subject 20
broad
  ~ accent 2, 47
  ~ avenue 2
  ~ generalisation 20
  ~ hint 2
  ~ range 2
  ~ shoulders 2
  ~ smile 2
  in ~ agreement 2
broker an agreement 21
brutally honest 57
bubbly personality 45
budget
  ~ doesn't stretch to 26
  allocate part of a ~ 15
build on the success 34
build up
  ~ your strength 37
  ~ resistance 37
derelict building 32
builds up
  traffic ~ 25
  suspense ~ 29
bumper crop 50
heavy burden 7
faceless bureaucrats 30
burst *noun*
  ~ of energy 60
burst *verb*
  ~ into laughter 11
  ~ into song 3
  ~ into tears 11
bursting with energy 45
get off the bus 1
business
  generate ~ 15
  make sound ~ sense 15
  state your ~ 10
  talk ~ 10
bustling centre 32
knob of butter 54
bygone era 46
make calculations 9
call
  ~ for a ceasefire 39
  ~ for a celebration 19
  ~ an election 21
  ~ a halt to 52
call in
  ~ a loan 33
  ~ the receivers 15
call off
  ~ a match 52
  ~ a search 21, 52
can't face the thought of 57
car
  automatic ~ 25
  hybrid ~ 31
  manual ~ 25
  right-hand-drive ~ 25
carbon
  offset ~ emissions 31
  reduce your ~ footprint 31

card
  be given a yellow ~ 27
  swipe a ~ 36
after careful consideration 28
carry a risk 49
carry on a conversation 20
carry out
  ~ a risk assessment 30
  ~ a survey 16
carve a niche for yourself 12
case
  dismiss a ~ 38
  make the ~ for 18
  overstate a ~ 20
  put the ~ for 18
cast *noun*
  all-star ~ 29
  star-studded ~ 29
cast *verb*
  ~ aspersions 4
  ~ light on a situation 7
  ~ in the role of 29
casual acquaintance 40
suffer casualties 39
environmental catastrophe 31
catastrophic results 49
herd of cattle 54
caught in the crossfire 39
cause
  establish a ~ 53
  primary ~ 53
  root ~ 53
  not ~ someone any trouble 57
cautiously optimistic 60
release a CD 29
ceasefire
  ~ comes into effect 39
  call for a ~ 39
celebrate the achievements 42
festival celebrates 23
call for a celebration 19
impose censorship 21
bustling centre 32
amazing chain of events 29
chair a committee 15
challenge
  face the ~ 5
  relish a ~ 49
  take up a ~ 27
  tough ~ 5
meet the challenges 44
chance
  fat ~ 7
  have (got) the ~ 5
  jump at the ~ 27
  pass up a ~ 3
  precious little ~ 27
  slim ~ 7
change *noun*
  ~ comes about 51
  ~ takes place 51
  dramatic ~ 51
  force for ~ 35
  fundamental ~ 51
  have a ~ of heart 12
  implement a ~ 51
  irreversible climate ~ 31
  it would make a ~ 51
  radical ~ 51
  slight ~ of plan 28
  sweeping ~ 51
change *verb*
  ~ dramatically 51
  ~ fundamentally 51
  ~ gear 25
  ~ imperceptibly 51
  ~ radically 51
  ~ beyond recognition 51
  ~ the subject 20
  ~ your ways 31
changed
  ~ man 51
  ~ woman 51
make changes 51
adapt to changing
circumstances 51
channel of communication 58
switch channels 36
display characteristics 45
reject a charge 58
trumped-up charges 38
charm
  rustic ~ 32
  have a special ~ 26
heart-to-heart chat 40
idle chatter 20
cheap source 5
child prodigy 41
childhood friends 40
gifted children 17
wide choice 50
manageable chunk 48
sprinkling of cinnamon 54
circle of friends 40
circumstances
  adapt to changing ~ 51
  extenuating ~ 38
  mitigating ~ 2, 38
inner city 32
claim *noun*
  fraudulent ~ 33
claim *verb*
  ~ benefits 35
clap of thunder 47
clarify a position 22
touch of class 54
spotlessly clean 8
clear *adjective*
  ~ distinction 55
  set yourself ~ objectives 15
clear *verb*
  ~ a debt 33
  ~ your desk 13
clear up confusion 52
climate
  current economic ~ 34
  irreversible ~ change 31
clinically proven 24
close *adjective*
  ~ confidant 40
  ~ friend 40
  sources ~ to 42
close *noun*
  bring to a ~ 52
close off a street 52
cloud your judgement 43
clove of garlic 54
go clubbing 19
clue
  haven't a ~ 6
  vital ~ 21
coin
  ~ a phrase 9
  ~ a term 9
cold
  shake off a ~ 37
  streaming ~ 37
talks collapse 52
collateral damage 39
launch a new collection 24
long-lasting colour 24
coma
  come out of a ~ 37
  fall into a ~ 37
come
  ~ under attack 40
  ~ out of a coma 37
  ~ to a conclusion 28
  ~ as a bit of a shock 57
  not ~ to any harm 41
come down heavily on 11
comes
  ceasefire ~ into effect 39
  change ~ about 51
  dream ~ true 60

come up
  ~ with an alternative 11
  ~ with an idea 28
  ~ to standard 16
  ~ with a suggestion 1
live a comfortable life 41
comment
  decline to ~ 22
  fair ~ 58
  throwaway ~ 22
commit a minor offence 38
commitment
  honour a ~ 16
  make a ~ 58
  reaffirm a ~ 58
chair a committee 15
common knowledge 14
communication
  channel of ~ 58
  establish ~ 58
compare favourably with 55
comparison
  not bear ~ with 55
  draw a ~ between 55
  pale in ~ 55
compelling reason 53
competition
  fierce ~ 15
  healthy ~ 16
complaint
  grounds for ~ 16
  handle a ~ 16
  lodge a ~ 9
  make a ~ 16
  take a ~ seriously 16
complete
  ~ disaster 49
  ~ stranger 40
completely
  ~ dependent 8
  ~ different 8
  ~ separate 8
near completion 52
flawless complexion 24
deal with the complexities 48
comply with the law 30
comprehensive knowledge 44
computer
  advanced ~ skills 44
  good ~ skills 44
  shut down a ~ 36
concentrate the mind 48
concentration wavers 17
mounting concern 3
concerted effort 56
conclusion
  arrive at a ~ 28
  come to a ~ 28
  foregone ~ 14
  jump to a ~ 7
conclusions
  back up ~ 18
  jump to ~ 14
serious medical condition 37
conditions
  adverse weather ~ 49
  cramped ~ 46
  face severe weather ~ 26
  poor sanitary ~ 35
conduct an investigation into a crime 6
hold a press conference 21
close confidant 40
confidence
  boost your ~ 45
  have every ~ in 44
  shatter someone's ~ 59
confined space 46
conform to safety regulations 16
confront issues 18
confusion
  clear up ~ 52
  state of ~ 49
congested road 32
consequences
  dire ~ 53
  disastrous ~ 31
  face the ~ 53
considerable
  ~ experience 44
  ~ reputation 29
  under ~ pressure 12
after careful consideration 28
constant
  ~ nagging 43
  ~ struggle 49
constructive criticism 28
consult 6
consummate professional 29
network of contacts 12
contain your excitement 26
hold someone/something in contempt 43
contest a verdict 38
contract
  breach a ~ 58
  draw up a ~ 3
  enter into a ~ 58
  terminate a ~ 52
flatly contradict 1
in marked contrast to 55
contributing factor 53
contribution
  lasting ~ 46
  make a ~ 9
control
  exercise greater ~ over 28
  by remote ~ 36
tighten controls 30
conversation
  carry on a ~ 20
  engage someone in ~ 20
  hold a ~ 20
  lull in the ~ 52
it is my firm conviction 14
convincing victory 27
convivial atmosphere 19
cool reception 45
cordial relations 40
core subject 17
cost-cutting measure 33
push up costs 34
launch a counter-attack 39
course
  ~ of medication 37
  enrol on a ~ 17
  sign up for a ~ 17
  stay the ~ 13
  over the ~ of time 46
appear in court 38
cover
  ~ every eventuality 28
  ~ a lot of ground 18
cramped conditions 46
systems crash 36
drive someone crazy 53
cream
  dash of ~ 54
  dollop of ~ 54
  luxury ~ 24
create
  ~ an atmosphere 9, 29
  ~ a bad impression 9
  ~ a good impression 9
  ~ an effect 1
  ~ an impression 9
  ~ instability 39
agreed credit limit 33
credit-card fraud 33
crime
  conduct an investigation into a ~ 6
  dig out info about a ~ 6
  investigate a ~ 6
  look into a ~ 6

  probe a ~ 6
  soaring ~ rates 38
go through a midlife crisis 41
critical analysis 18
critically ill 22, 37
criticism
  constructive ~ 28
  mounting ~ 3
in-depth critique 18
bumper crop 50
caught in the crossfire 39
crowded street 32
cry
  let out a ~ 47
  strangled ~ 47
cultural heritage 23
curb inflation 34
current
  ~ driving licence 25
  ~ economic climate 34
  open a ~ account 33
run up curtains 9
custodial sentence 38
remand in custody 38
take your custom elsewhere 16
customer
  regular ~ 16
  satisfied ~ 16
  slippery ~ 43
cut *noun*
  power ~ 36
cut *verb*
  ~ through red tape 30
cut down on luxuries 33
cutting-edge design 36
put together a CV 12
break the cycle 35
collateral damage 39
award damages 38
damaging disclosure 22
perform a dance 23
danger
  grave ~ 49
  minimise ~ 30
dash of cream 54
tradition dates back to 23
daunting task 13
dawn breaks 52
dazzling
  ~ display 29
  ~ smile 45
dead
  ~ easy 8
  ~ keen 60
  pronounce someone ~ 10
deal with the complexities 48
death
  hasten someone's ~ 59
  premature ~ 37
  untimely ~ 37
deathly hush 47
re-open a debate 22
debt
  clear a ~ 33
  get into ~ 33
  outstanding ~ 33
  run up a huge ~ 33
  write off a ~ 33
decades elapse 46
decent night's sleep 57
the deciding factor 28
decision
  abide by a ~ 11
  reach the ~ 28
declare
  ~ independence 21
  ~ outright hostility 28
  ~ outright opposition 28
  ~ someone the winner 10
decline *noun*
  ~ in demand 15
  experience a ~ 15
  see a ~ 15
  show a ~ 15
decline *verb*
  ~ to comment 22
decrease
  show a ~ 51
  slight ~ 15
  substantial ~ 15
deeply offensive 8
default on repayments 33
defeat
  admit ~ 59
  humiliating ~ 21
defence
  break through the ~ 27
  spring to someone's ~ 40
  vigorous ~ 18
amazing degree of accuracy 48
lengthy delays 25
take delight in 60
absolutely delighted 8, 57
juvenile delinquent 41
deliriously happy 2
deliver a speech 21
demand *noun*
  decline in ~ 15
  satisfy a ~ 15
demand *verb*
  ~ an explanation 53
demonstrate an ability 17
hold a demonstration 21
issue a denial 58
dense traffic 25
deny all knowledge 38
depart from a pattern 1
dependent
  completely ~ 8
  entirely ~ 8
  totally ~ 8
deploy troops 39
put down a deposit 33
derelict building 32
derive pleasure from 60
silence descends 47
fit the job description 13
get the recognition you deserve 60
design
  cutting-edge ~ 36
  eco-friendly ~ 31
designer label 24
desirable place to live 32
desperate desire 56
desired effect 53
clear your desk 13
desperate desire 56
shape your destiny 46
detailed account 22
determined effort 56
develop a good relationship 44
hail as a major development 25
devote energy to 56
traffic dies down 25
diet
  go on a ~ 37
  stick to a ~ 19
differ widely 55
difference
  make a ~ 5
  subtle ~ 55
  world of ~ 55
different
  completely ~ 8
  entirely ~ 8, 55
  explore ~ ways 48
  fundamentally ~ 1
  slightly ~ 8
  strikingly ~ 55
  totally ~ 8
difficult
  handle a ~ situation 44
  ~ to pin down 5

difficulties
  experience ~ 49
  have ~ 49
  run into ~ 7
difficulty
  ~ arises 49
  encounter a ~ 49
dig out info about a crime 6
dim and distant memory 46
wine and dine 19
wining and dining 19
dip
  ~ into emergency funds 11
  ~ into savings 11
break diplomatic relations 52
dire consequences 53
play a dirty trick 43
the advantages outweigh
the disadvantages 55
disaffected youth 41
disaster
  ~ strikes 49
  complete ~ 49
  spell ~ 53
  unmitigated ~ 29
disastrous consequences 31
disband an army 39
damaging disclosure 22
offer a discount 16
make a discovery 9
leave something to someone's
discretion 28
enter into a discussion 52
infectious disease 37
downright disgrace 43
thinly disguised 45
intense dislike 59
dismal failure 29
dismiss
  ~ a case 38
  wrongfully ~ 13
public disorder 35
disorderly behaviour 22
disparaging remark 59
growing disparity 55
dispel a rumour 52
display *noun*
  dazzling ~ 29
  put on a ~ 23
display *verb*
  ~ characteristics 45
disposal of household waste 31
dispute arises 21
severely disrupted 25
disruptive influence 43
disseminate information 10
dissenting voice 22
distance
  put some ~ between 40
  within walking ~ 32
distant
  dim and ~ memory 46
  ~ echo 47
distinction
  clear ~ 55
  subtle ~ 55
distinguished scholar 17
divert traffic 25
divided opinions 14
pay dividends 15
divorce
  file for ~ 11
  messy ~ 42
divulge
  ~ a secret 10
  ~ a source 10
do
  ~ a job-share 12
  ~ plenty of exercise 37
  ~ research 9, 18
  ~ the shopping 16
  ~ the sights 26
  ~ sport 37
  ~ extreme sports 27
  ~ a survey 16
  ~ work 12
dodge the question 58
pack of dogs 54
dollop of cream 54
dolphins
  pod of ~ 54
  school of ~ 54
doom to failure 56
exceed the recommended dose 37
doubt
  nagging ~ 14
  beyond reasonable ~ 38
doubts
  niggling ~ 4
  plant ~ 53
download a ringtone 36
downright
  ~ rude 8, 45
  ~ disgrace 43
show a downward trend 51
draconian measures 35
dramatic
  ~ change 51
  ~ shift 51
dramatically
  change ~ 51
  increase ~ 51
draw a comparison between 55
draw up
  ~ a contract 3
  ~ a list 3
  ~ a schedule 28
be drawn into an argument 20
fill someone with dread 59
dream comes true 60
dress
  formal ~ 23
  wear traditional ~ 23
underage drinking 35
drive *noun*
  go on an economy ~ 1
  fresh ~ 35
drive *verb*
  ~ recklessly 3
  ~ someone crazy 53
driving
  current ~ licence 25
  take your ~ test 25
  valid ~ licence 25
drop
  ~ of brandy 54
  ~ someone an email 57
  ~ the subject 20
drum up support 28
run dry 31
with all due respect 58
dull thud 47
dump waste 31
relieve someone of their duties 13
residential dwellings 32
dysfunctional family 35
eager anticipation 28
earn a good living 12
undeclared earnings 34
with remarkable ease 48
traffic eases off 25
easy
  ~ option 48
  dead ~ 8
  take the ~ way out 48
  take it ~ for a while 3
watch what you eat 37
distant echo 47
eco-friendly design 31
economic
  current ~ climate 34
  uninterrupted ~ growth 34

economy
  black ~ 34
  go on an ~ drive 1
  steer the ~ 34
highly educated 8, 44
education
  formal ~ 17
  good level of ~ 44
effect
  ceasefire comes into ~ 39
  create an ~ 1
  desired ~ 53
  feel the full ~ 53
  have an ~ on 53
  have a knock-on ~ 53
effects
  ill ~ 53
  side ~ 37
effort
  concerted ~ 56
  determined ~ 56
  joint ~ 56
  make an ~ 56
  require ~ 56
  strenuous ~ 56
  team ~ 56
  valiant ~ 56
decades elapse 46
call an election 21
mislead the electorate 22
herd of elephants 54
take your custom elsewhere 16
email
  drop someone an ~ 57
  remote access your ~ 36
emergency
  ~ meeting 15
  dip into ~ funds 11
  respond to an ~ 49
evidence emerges 22
emissions
  offset carbon ~ 31
  vehicle ~ 31
flicker of emotion 54
whole gamut of emotions 54
empty promise 20
encounter a difficulty 49
encyclopaedic knowledge 44
endless supply 50
make enemies 9
bitter enemy 39
energy
  alternative ~ source 31
  boundless ~ 45
  burst of ~ 60
  bursting with ~ 45
  devote ~ to 56
  renewable ~ 31
  summon up the ~ 27
engage
  ~ someone in conversation 20
  ~ in hostilities 39
enjoy
  ~ good health 37
  ~ great success 42
  thoroughly ~ 8
enlist help 48
enrol on a course 17
enter
  ~ into an agreement 21
  ~ into a contract 58
  ~ into a discussion 52
  ~ into talks 21
  ~ your PIN 36
entertainment
  provide ~ 5
  source of ~ 5
unbounded enthusiasm 50
entirely
  ~ dependent 8
  ~ different 8, 55
  ~ separate 8
passionate entreaty 22
meet the entry requirements 17
environment
  harmful to the ~ 31
  stable ~ 41
environmental catastrophe 31
epic
  ~ proportions 50
  sheer ~ grandeur 26
simultaneous equation 5
install equipment 36
era
  bygone ~ 46
  golden ~ 46
run errands 13
error
  ~ of judgement 14
  see the ~ of your ways 41
  spot an ~ 49
erupts
  riot ~ 35
  violence ~ 39
violence escalates 39
escape *noun*
  make an ~ 9
escape *verb*
  ~ punishment 38
absolutely essential 30
establish
  ~ a cause 53
  ~ communication 58
  ~ a good relationship 44
research ethics 18
state of euphoria 60
event marks 23
events
  amazing chain of ~ 29
  series of ~ 29
cover every eventuality 28
every
  cover ~ eventuality 28
  have ~ confidence in 44
  pander to someone's ~ whim 41
evidence
  ~ emerges 22
  give ~ 38
  unreliable ~ 38
evoke an atmosphere ~ 29
exact opposite 55
exacting standards 30
wildly exaggerated 8
exceed
  ~ expectations 4
  ~ the recommended dose 37
provide an excellent service 16
take exception to 59
exchange *noun*
  ~ rates fluctuate 51
exchange *verb*
  ~ news 20
  ~ pleasantries 20
excite speculation 22
excitement
  contain your ~ 26
  flurry of ~ 54
social exclusion 34
exclusive
  ~ interview 42
  ~ restaurant 24
excruciatingly uncomfortable 24
feeble excuse 57
exercise *noun*
  do plenty of ~ 37
  gentle ~ 37
exercise *verb*
  ~ authority 30
  ~ greater control over 28
physical exertion 56
exhaustive account 18
vast expanse 46

expectations
  exceed ~ 4
  live up to ~ 11, 60
experience *noun*
  accumulate ~ 44
  considerable ~ 44
  have an ~ 27
  lack ~ 44
experience *verb*
  ~ a decline 15
  ~ difficulties 49
  ~ a fall 15
  ~ a growth 15
  ~ a rise 15
bold experiment 29
team of experts 1
explanation
  demand an ~ 53
  full ~ 18
  offer an ~ 58
  provide an ~ 22
explore different ways 48
intrepid explorer 26
exports are five times greater than imports 15
express admiration 60
blank expression 45
extend opportunity 34
extension
  ask for an ~ 6
  request an ~ 6
extensive knowledge 44
extenuating circumstances 38
gruff exterior 45
do extreme sports 27
extremely successful 60
have an eye for 7
keep your eyes peeled 26
the social fabric 35
face
  ~ the challenge 5
  ~ the consequences 53
  ~ (up to) the facts 7
  ~ a grilling 58
  ~ a problem 49
  ~ trial 38
  ~ severe weather conditions 26
  can't ~ the thought of 57
faceless bureaucrats 30
factor
  contributing ~ 53
  deciding ~ 28
  mitigating ~ 2, 38
face (up to) the facts 7
fail miserably 3
failure
  abject ~ 4
  dismal ~ 29
  doom to ~ 56
faintly ridiculous 8
fair
  ~ comment 58
  ~ few 50
  ~ number (of) 50
fairytale wedding 42
fall *noun*
  experience a ~ 15
  see a ~ 15
  show a ~ 15
fall *verb*
  ~ into a coma 37
  ~ into a pattern 41
festival falls on 23
falsify records 33
voice falters 47
meteoric rise to fame 42
family
  ~ gathering 19
  dysfunctional ~ 35
  low-income ~ 35
  support a ~ 41
offshore wind farm 31
fashion
  ~ victim 24
  back in ~ 24
  high-street ~ 24
  what's in ~ 24
news travels fast 57
fast-track scheme 12
fat chance 7
compare favourably with 55
fears
  allay ~ 52
  fuel ~ 59
  spark ~ 52
feasible alternative 48
movable feast 23
feeble excuse 57
feel
  ~ your age 41
  ~ the full effect 53
  ~ peckish 24
I know the feeling 57
bottle up your feelings 59
astronomical fees 50
get itchy feet 26
fertile imagination 14
festival
  ~ celebrates 23
  ~ falls on 23
  ~ marks 23
  hold a ~ 23
  observe a ~ 23
festive
  ~ mood 23
  ~ season 23
join (in) the festivities 19, 23
reach fever pitch 27
few
  fair ~ 50
  good ~ 50
field *noun*
  take the ~ 27
field *verb*
  ~ questions 58
fierce competition 15
fight *noun*
  pick a ~ 43
fight *verb*
  ~ for your life 37
  ~ for survival 49
lull in the fighting 52
file for divorce 11
fill
  ~ someone with dread 59
  ~ in a form 6
financial acumen 44
find
  ~ guilty 38
  ~ not guilty 38
  ~ happiness 60
  ~ a solution 31
  ~ time 19
findings
  present ~ 18
  publish ~ 36
fine lines 24
finite number 50
fire *noun*
  set off a ~ alarm 52
fire *verb*
  ~ someone's imagination 29
firm
  ~ friends 40
  it is my ~ conviction 14
  take a ~ stance against 22
first-hand knowledge 18
shoal of fish 54
fit *adjective*
  ~ for purpose 16
  pretty ~ 27

fit *noun*
  ~ of jealousy 59
fit *verb*
  ~ the job description 13
  ~ in with plans 11
take the flak 43
flat-screen TV 36
flatly
  ~ contradict 1
  ~ reject 22
flawless complexion 24
flicker
  ~ of emotion 54
  ~ of hope 54
  ~ of interest 54
rumour flies around 20
flock
  ~ of birds 54
  ~ of sheep 54
widespread flooding 31, 49
flout a rule 30
fluctuate
  ~ wildly 51
  exchange rates ~ 51
  share prices ~ 51
  temperatures ~ 51
flurry
  ~ of activity 54
  ~ of excitement 54
  ~ of snow 54
  ~ of speculation 54
flying visit 19
foam at the mouth 3
haven't the foggiest idea 6
follow advice 56
food
  ~ miles 31
  plain ~ 19
foot the bill 7
reduce your carbon footprint 31
force
  ~ for change 35
  ~ for good 35
foregone conclusion 14
foreseeable future 46
forge new relationships 40
complete a form 6
formal
  ~ dress 23
  ~ education 17
  attend a ~ function 19
restore to its former glory 46
formulate a theory 18
forthright manner 45
fortune
  spend a ~ 33
  tell someone's ~ 10
forward
  really look ~ to 57
  very much look ~ to 57
foul language 20
four-letter word 20
fragile peace 39
frame a question 58
credit-card fraud 33
fraudulent claim 33
free
  ~ kick 27
  ~ up time 11
go freelance 12
fresh drive 35
friend for life 40
friendly
  ~ smile 45
  perfectly ~ 45
  remain on ~ terms 40
friends
  childhood ~ 40
  circle of ~ 40
  close ~ 40
  firm ~ 40
  lifelong ~ 40
  make ~ 1
to and fro 2
push back the frontiers 36
give vent to your frustration 59
fuel
  ~ fears 59
  ~ speculation 14
full
  ~ explanation 18
  ~ marks 17
  ~ refund 16
  feel the ~ effect 53
  give a ~ apology 58
  the ~ glare of publicity 42
  make a ~ recovery 37
qualify fully 5
source of fun 5
attend a formal function 19
fundamental change 51
fundamentally
  ~ different 1, 55
  ~ similar 55
  change ~ 51
source of funding 5
dip into emergency funds 11
absolutely furious 59
mounting fury 3
kick up a fuss 16
future
  foreseeable ~ 46
  not-so-distant ~ 46
gain *noun*
  modest ~ 51
gain *verb*
  ~ marks 1
  ~ respect 5
opening gambit 20
whole gamut of emotions 54
gap
  bridge the ~ 55
  yawning ~ 55
clove of garlic 54
family gathering 19
gauge reaction 22
change gear 25
grind the gears 25
broad generalisation 20
generally speaking 10
generate business 15
stroke of genius 54
gentle exercise 37
get
  ~ into debt 33
  ~ the hang of 27
  ~ hitched 23
  ~ itchy feet 26
  ~ a message across 10
  ~ a place 17
  ~ your priorities right 12
  ~ into reverse 25
  ~ the sack 13
  ~ the recognition you deserve 60
  really ~ to someone 57
get off the bus 1
gift for languages 5
gifted children 17
girls' night out 19
give
  ~ an account of 10
  ~ it your best shot 56
  ~ evidence 38
  ~ a full apology 58
  ~ someone a good send-off 57
  ~ a loud laugh 47
  ~ permission 30
  ~ a reason 10
  ~ repeated assurances 58
  ~ someone a ring 57
  ~ a straight answer 58

  ~ something some thought 14
  ~ vent to your frustration 59
given
  be ~ leave 22
  be ~ a sentence 38
  be ~ a yellow card 27
be glad to see the back of 57
full glare of publicity 42
raise your glasses 23
glimmer
  ~ of hope 54
  ~ of interest 54
  ~ of light 54
  ~ of understanding 54
restore to its former glory 46
glossy magazine 24
glowing
  ~ review 29
  ~ tribute 42
go *noun*
  be on the ~ 57
go *verb*
  ~ clubbing 19
  ~ on a diet 37
  ~ on an economy drive 1
  ~ freelance 12
  ~ hand in hand with 7
  ~ out for a meal 19
  ~ through a midlife crisis 41
  ~ on the offensive 39
  ~ part-time 12
  ~ through a phase 41
  ~ into production 15
  ~ into raptures 60
  ~ into rehab 42
  ~ shopping 16
  ~ on strike 13
  ~ trekking 26
  ~ wild 27
  not ~ to any trouble 57
go back on a promise 58
go down in history 46
act as a go-between 21
goal
  score an own ~ 27
  state a ~ 10
it goes without saying 10
golden era 46
good
  ~ behaviour 38
  ~ computer skills 44
  ~ few 50
  ~ knowledge 44
  ~ level of education 44
  ~ number (of) 50
  ~ size 50
  create a ~ impression 9
  develop a ~ relationship 44
  earn a ~ living 12
  enjoy ~ health 37
  establish a ~ relationship 44
  force for ~ 35
  give someone a ~ send off 57
  with ~ qualifications 44
  really ~ 6
  well ~ 6
juicy gossip 20
have got the chance 5
grab
  ~ a seat 5
  ~ a snack 6
gracious living 24
graduate from university 17
grand style 24
sheer epic grandeur 26
grant permission 30
take for granted 41
grasp the importance of 14
grave danger 49
great
  ~ pleasure 57, 60
  ~ significance 50
  enjoy ~ success 42
  have ~ success 42
  (of) ~ importance 1, 50
  place ~ value on 5
greater
  exercise ~ control over 28
  exports are five times ~ than imports 15
greatly
  ~ appreciate 8
  ~ influence 8
introduce green taxes 31
grief
  inconsolable ~ 59
  outpouring of ~ 59
air a grievance 22
face a grilling 58
grind the gears 25
cover a lot of ground 18
grounds for complaint 16
necessary groundwork 28
growing disparity 55
growth
  experience a ~ 15
  see a ~ 15
  show a ~ 15
  steady ~ 34
  stimulate ~ 15, 34
  uninterrupted economic ~ 34
gruff
  ~ exterior 45
  ~ voice 47
grumpy old man 41
guilty
  find ~ 38
  find not ~ 38
habit
  become a ~ 41
  make a ~ of 9
unfit for human habitation 35
hail
  ~ as a major development 25
  ~ a taxi 32
hair
  auburn ~ 2
  blond ~ 1
  sun-damaged ~ 24
halt *noun*
  bring to a ~ 52
  call a ~ to 52
halt *verb*
  ~ production 36
hand *noun*
  go ~ in hand with 7
  reject out of ~ 28
hand *verb*
  ~ in assignments 6
  ~ in your resignation 12
handle
  ~ a complaint 16
  ~ a difficult situation 44
set of handlebars 25
suffer at the hands of 59
get the hang of 27
threat hangs over 59
find happiness 60
happy
  blissfully ~ 1
  deliriously ~ 2
hard
  ~ slog 56
  sounds like ~ work 48
harebrained scheme 59
harm
  not come to any ~ 41
  not mean any ~ 57
harmful to the environment 31
harness technology 36
judge someone harshly 14
hasten someone's death 59

- have
  - ~ absolutely no idea 6
  - ~ an attitude problem 43
  - ~ a baby 41
  - ~ a barbecue 19
  - ~ (got) the chance 5
  - ~ a change of heart 12
  - ~ difficulties 49
  - ~ an effect on 53
  - ~ every confidence in 44
  - ~ an experience 27
  - ~ an eye for 7
  - ~ great success 42
  - ~ a knock-on effect 53
  - ~ an obligation 30
  - ~ an operation 37
  - ~ a party 9
  - ~ a quality 45
  - ~ relevance to 4
  - ~ no respect for 43
  - ~ a snack 6
  - ~ a special charm 26
  - ~ a stopover 26
  - ~ a whale of a time 27
  - ~ a word with 6
  - not ~ much luck 57
- wreak havoc 53
- hazy memory 41
- head a team 7
- heal the rift 40
- health
  - be in poor ~ 37
  - enjoy good ~ 37
  - risk to public ~ 31
- healthy competition 16
- heap praise on 42
- heart
  - ~ leaps 60
  - have a change of ~ 12
  - learn by ~ 17
  - massive ~ attack 37
  - open your ~ to 20
  - with a light ~ 7
- heart-to-heart chat 40
- searing heat 31
- solar heating 31
- heavily
  - ~ influenced 29
  - borrow ~ 33
  - come down ~ on 11
- heavy
  - ~ book 7
  - ~ burden 7
  - ~ rain 1
  - ~ responsibility 7
  - ~ traffic 25
  - ~ workload 13
- hectic pace of life 32
- heed a warning 56
- enlist help 48
- herd
  - ~ of cattle 54
  - ~ of elephants 54
- cultural heritage 23
- high
  - ~ hopes 60
  - ~ percentage 50
  - ~ risk 49
  - ~ turnover of staff 13
  - hit the ~ street 24
  - spirits are ~ 26
- high-definition TV 36
- high-street fashion 24
- highest
  - ~ accolade 42
  - ~ bidder 42
- natural highlights 24
- highly
  - ~ educated 8, 44
  - ~ praised 42
  - ~ recommend 29
  - ~ recommended 8
  - ~ unlikely 8
  - ~ valued 44
  - speak very ~ of 10
  - think ~ of 29
- hike in prices 15
- hinder progress 49
- broad hint 2
- go down in history 46
- hit
  - ~ the high street 24
  - ~ the rocks 7
- get hitched 23
- hold *noun*
  - put someone on ~ 16
- hold *verb*
  - ~ someone's attention 29
  - ~ someone/something in contempt 43
  - ~ a conversation 20
  - ~ a demonstration 21
  - ~ a festival 23
  - ~ a press conference 21
  - ~ a position 12
- home
  - leave ~ 41
  - second ~ 41
  - there's no place like ~ 1
- hone your skills 44
- brutally honest 57
- honestly think 14
- honour a commitment 16
- hoots of laughter 47
- hope *noun*
  - flicker of ~ 54
  - glimmer of ~ 54
  - vain ~ 3
- hope *verb*
  - sincerely ~ 57
  - very much ~ 57
- hopelessly lost 26
- hopes
  - high ~ 60
  - pin your ~ on 56
- hopping mad 7
- play host to 19
- engage in hostilities 39
- hostility
  - declare outright ~ 28
  - open ~ 45
- wireless hotspot 36
- pack of hounds 54
- hours
  - long opening ~ 32
  - open all ~ 32
  - unsocial ~ 13
- disposal of household waste 31
- affordable housing 35
- run up a huge debt 33
- hugely popular look 24
- unfit for human habitation 35
- humiliating defeat 21
- touch of humour 54
- hunk of bread 54
- overcome a hurdle 49
- hurl insults 59
- deathly hush 47
- husky voice 47
- hybrid car 31
- hypothesis
  - supports the ~ 18
  - working ~ 18
- idea
  - bright ~ 57
  - come up with an ~ 28
  - have absolutely no ~ 6
  - haven't the foggiest ~ 6
  - laughable ~ 59
  - rough ~ 14
  - toy with an ~ 28
- adhere to ideals 11
- identity theft 33

- idle
  - ~ chatter 20
  - ~ threat 3
  - bone ~ 43
- rural idyll 32
- profess ignorance 10
- ignore someone's advice 56
- ill
  - ~ effects 53
  - critically ~ 22, 37
- illegal substance 35
- rare illness 37
- imagination
  - fertile ~ 14
  - fire someone's ~ 29
- immense asset 48
- impact
  - significant ~ 42
  - withstand the ~ 3
- impart
  - ~ knowledge 10
  - ~ wisdom 10
- change imperceptibly 51
- implement
  - ~ a change 51
  - ~ a plan 28
- trust someone implicitly 44
- importance
  - grasp the ~ of 14
  - (of) great ~ 1, 50
  - of paramount ~ 44
- imports
  - exports are five times greater than ~ 15
- impose censorship 21
- impression
  - create an ~ 9
  - create a bad ~ 9
  - create a good ~ 9
  - indelible ~ 29
  - lasting ~ 29
- improvement
  - marked ~ 17
  - modest ~ 51
  - room for ~ 17, 51
  - show an ~ 51
- make improvements 9
- in-depth
  - ~ critique 18
  - ~ interview 42
- wildly inaccurate 8
- incessant noise 47
- not trust an inch 43
- incite violence 35
- inclement weather 2
- income
  - source of ~ 5, 33
  - supplement your ~ 33
- inconsolable grief 59
- increase *noun*
  - modest ~ 51
  - show an ~ 51
  - slight ~ 15
  - substantial ~ 15
- increase *verb*
  - ~ dramatically 51
  - ~ output 34
  - ~ significantly 51
  - ~ your stress levels 59
- indelible impressions 29
- declare independence 21
- indeterminate number 4
- research indicates 18
- indigenous people 26
- take industrial action 13
- thriving industry 34
- infectious disease 37
- infinite patience 50
- inflation
  - curb ~ 34
  - rampant ~ 34
- influence *noun*
  - disruptive ~ 43
- influence *verb*
  - greatly ~ 8
  - strongly ~ 8
- influenced
  - heavily ~ 29
  - strongly ~ 29
- dig out info about a crime 6
- information
  - disseminate ~ 10
  - item of ~ 48
  - snippet of ~ 3
- infringe the regulations 30
- show initiative 17
- inner city 32
- protest innocence 10
- inordinate amount 50
- create instability 39
- install equipment 36
- instantly recall 48
- instigate measures 52
- insults
  - barrage of ~ 3
  - hurl ~ 59
- intense dislike 59
- intensely personal 3
- interest
  - arouse someone's ~ 1
  - awaken your ~ 29
  - flicker of ~ 54
  - glimmer of ~ 54
  - keen ~ 44
  - raise ~ rates 34
- interest-free overdraft 33
- interests
  - promote ~ 15
  - pursue your ~ 44
  - safeguard someone's ~ 34
- interpersonal skills 44
- interview
  - exclusive ~ 42
  - in-depth ~ 42
- intrepid explorer 26
- introduce
  - ~ green taxes 31
  - ~ a levy 34
  - ~ a neighbourhood watch scheme 35
  - ~ new legislation 30
  - ~ regulations 30
- see off an intruder 11
- invest in the long-term 34
- investigate a crime 6
- investigation
  - conduct an ~ into a crime 6
  - subject to police ~ 6
- touch of irony 54
- irreversible climate change 31
- issue *noun*
  - address an ~ 35
  - confront an ~ 58
  - tackle the ~ 18
  - take ~ with 22
- issue *verb*
  - ~ a denial 58
  - ~ a statement 22
- confront issues 18
- get itchy feet 26
- item of information 48
- simplicity itself 48
- fit of jealousy 59
- job
  - aspects of the ~ 12
  - fit the ~ description 13
  - land a ~ 13
  - walk straight into a ~ 7
- do a job-share 12
- join
  - ~ in the festivities 19, 23
  - ~ the staff 12

be joined in matrimony 23
joint effort 56
jot down
  ~ an address 11
  ~ a phone number 11
  ~ a room number 11
journey
  arduous ~ 26
  break the ~ 26
  leg of a ~ 26
jump for joy 60
judge someone harshly 14
judgement
  against your better ~ 14
  cloud your ~ 43
  error of ~ 14
  lack of ~ 14
  lapse of ~ 59
  pass ~ on 14
  poor ~ 14
juicy gossip 20
jump
  ~ at the chance 27
  ~ to a conclusion 7
  ~ to conclusions 14
  ~ for joy 60
justice
  ~ is served 38
  bring to ~ 38
  miscarriage of ~ 38
juvenile delinquent 41
keen
  ~ interest 44
  dead ~ 60
keep
  ~ afloat 33
  ~ your balance 27
  ~ your eyes peeled 26
  ~ to the left 25
  ~ a promise 58
  ~ in shape 27
  ~ someone on their toes 7
keep up
  ~ a foreign language 11
  ~ the tradition 23
key advantage 25
free kick 27
kick up a fuss 16
kiss and tell 42
knob of butter 54
have a knock-on effect 53
tie the knot 23
I know the feeling 57
knowledge
  acquire ~ 17
  advanced ~ 44
  common ~ 14
  comprehensive ~ 44
  deny all ~ 38
  encyclopaedic ~ 44
  extensive ~ 44
  first-hand ~ 18
  good ~ 44
  impart ~ 10
  thirst for ~ 17
designer label 24
sweated labour 13
lack
  ~ experience 44
  ~ of judgement 14
move up the ladder 12
land a job 13
language
  bad ~ 20
  foul ~ 20
  keep up a foreign ~ 11
  strong ~ 20
gift for languages 5
lapse of judgement 59
large
  ~ amount 50
  ~ number 50
  ~ percentage 50
  ~ quantity 50
lasting
  ~ contribution 46
  ~ impression 29
think laterally 14
the latest scores 27
give a loud laugh 47
laughable idea 59
laughter
  burst into ~ 11
  hoots of ~ 47
launch
  ~ a counter-attack 39
  ~ a new collection 24
  ~ a scheme 28
lavish lifestyle 42
law
  ~ and order break down 35
  in breach of the ~ 30
  comply with the ~ 30
pass laws 30
lay off staff 12
lay out the results 18
lead a seminar 1
leading authority 17
leafy suburbs 32
heart leaps 60
learn by heart 17
quick learner 17
seat of learning 17
leave *noun*
  maternity ~ 12
  be given ~ 22
leave *verb*
  ~ something to someone's discretion 28
  ~ unchecked 34
  ~ home 41
  ~ room 46
left *adjective*
  be ~ with little alternative 59
  bear ~ 25
left *noun*
  keep to the ~ 25
leg of a journey 26
introduce new legislation 30
lengthy delays 25
let
  ~ out a cry 47
  ~ someone in on a secret 42
  ~ someone out of your sight 41
level
  good ~ of education 44
  reduce your stress ~ 37
  stoop to that ~ 43
increase your stress levels 59
levy *noun*
  introduce a ~ 34
levy *verb*
  ~ a tax 34
licence
  current driving ~ 25
  valid driving ~ 25
lick of paint 1
life
  ~ is turned upside-down 51
  fight for your ~ 37
  friend for ~ 40
  hectic pace of ~ 32
  live a comfortable ~ 41
  shape someone's ~ 46
lifelong
  ~ ambition 60
  ~ friends 40
lavish lifestyle 42
lift a blockade 39
light *adjective*
  ~ reading 7
  with a ~ heart 7

light *noun*
  cast ~ on a situation 7
  glimmer of ~ 54
like
  sounds ~ hard work 48
  there's no place ~ home 1
agreed credit limit 33
push yourself to the limits 27
affect the bottom line 15
fine lines 24
pride of lions 54
list
  draw up a ~ 3
  narrow the ~ down 13
literature review 18
little
  be left with ~ alternative 59
  bear ~ resemblance to 55
  precious ~ chance 27
live
  ~ a comfortable life 41
  desirable place to ~ 32
live up to expectations 11, 60
lose your livelihood 13
living
  ~ wage 13
  earn a good ~ 12
  gracious ~ 24
  make a ~ 12
  urban ~ 32
  within ~ memory 46
loan
  call in a ~ 33
  pay back a ~ 33
picturesque location 2
swarm of locusts 54
lodge a complaint 9
long opening hours 32
long-lasting colour 24
long-standing tradition 23
long-term
  ~ relationship 40
  ~ solution 28
  invest in the ~ 34
look *noun*
  new season's ~ 24
  hugely popular ~ 24
look *verb*
  ~ your age 45
  ~ into a crime 6
  really ~ forward to 57
  very much ~ forward to 57
loosely based on 8
widespread looting 49
lose
  ~ an argument 20
  ~ your livelihood 13
  ~ your voice 47
  not ~ any sleep over 57
hopelessly lost 26
lot
  cover a ~ of ground 18
  take up a ~ of room 46
  take up a ~ of space 46
  talk a ~ of sense 10
  under a ~ of pressure 12
give a loud laugh 47
low-cost airline 26
low-income family 35
luck
  not have much ~ 57
  pure ~ 60
  stroke of ~ 3, 54, 60
lull *noun*
  ~ in the conversation 52
  ~ in the fighting 52
lull *verb*
  ~ someone to sleep 26
cut down on luxuries 33
luxury
  ~ cream 24
  sheer ~ 24
hopping mad 7
glossy magazine 24
maintain quality 15
hail as a major development 25
majority
  overwhelming ~ 50
  secure a ~ 21
  slim ~ 21
make
  ~ someone's acquaintance 9
  ~ an apology 9
  ~ arrangements 9
  ~ an attempt 9
  ~ calculations 9
  ~ the case for 18
  ~ changes 51
  ~ a commitment 58
  ~ a complaint 16
  ~ a contribution 9
  ~ a difference 5
  ~ a discovery 9
  ~ an effort 56
  ~ enemies 9
  ~ an escape 9
  ~ friends 1
  ~ a full recovery 37
  ~ a habit of 9
  ~ improvements 9
  ~ a living 12
  ~ mistakes 1, 49
  ~ an offer 9
  ~ a payment 33
  ~ plans 28
  ~ a plea 35
  ~ a proposal 9
  ~ a relationship work 40
  ~ room for 9
  ~ a sound 47
  ~ sound business sense 15
  ~ a stand against 9
  ~ a success of 9, 42
  ~ some suggestions 9
  ~ someone welcome 19
  it would ~ a change 51
man
  changed ~ 51
  grumpy old ~ 41
manageable chunk 48
manner
  abrasive ~ 45
  forthright ~ 45
manual car 25
narrow profit margins 15
marked
  ~ improvement 17
  in ~ contrast to 55
market
  play the stock ~ 1
  target ~ 15
marks *noun*
  full ~ 17
  gain ~ 1
marks *verb*
  event ~ 23
  festival ~ 23
massive
  ~ heart attack 37
  ~ overdose 50
master new skills 13
call off a match 52
maternity leave 12
be joined in matrimony 23
weighty matters 7
mature student 17
meal
  go out for a ~ 19
  rustle up a ~ 9
not mean any harm 57
cost-cutting measure 33
measures
  draconian ~ 35
  instigate ~ 52

serious medical condition 37
course of medication 37
practise medicine 12
meet
  ~ the challenges 44
  ~ the entry requirements 17
  ~ with a stony silence 47
  ~ with success 34
  ~ a target 15
meeting
  adjourn a ~ 2
  emergency ~ 15
  pencil in a ~ 13
member of staff 12
memories
  bring back ~ 46
  rekindle ~ 41
memory
  dim and distant ~ 46
  hazy ~ 41
  within living ~ 46
menial tasks 13
mental agility 17
get a message across 10
messy divorce 42
meteoric rise to fame 42
adopt a method 48
in the middle of nowhere 32
go through a midlife crisis 41
mildly surprised 8
food miles 31
pass a milestone 5
mind
  bear in ~ 14
  concentrate the ~ 48
mindless violence 43
minimise
  ~ danger 30
  ~ a risk 49
minor
  ~ niggles 43
  commit a ~ offence 38
small minority 50
miscarriage of justice 38
professional misconduct 13
fail miserably 3
abject misery 4
mislead the electorate 22
miss
  ~ a penalty 27
  ~ the point 58
make mistakes 1, 49
mitigating
  ~ circumstances 2, 38
  ~ factor 2
modest
  ~ gain 51
  ~ improvement 51
  ~ increase 51
  ~ recovery 51
senior moment 41
money
  recovery of ~ 21
  value for ~ 16, 34
tribe of monkeys 54
festive mood 23
provide moral support 40
set the wheels in motion 53
spectacular mountains 1
mounting
  ~ concern 3
  ~ criticism 3
  ~ fury 3
foam at the mouth 3
movable feast 23
move up the ladder 12
move sideways 25
muffled voice 47
store music 36
mutter under your breath 47
nagging *adjective*
  ~ doubt 14
nagging *noun*
  constant ~ 43
narrow *adjective*
  ~ profit margins 15
narrow *verb*
  ~ the list down 13
nasty
  ~ piece of work 43
  ~ shock 59
nationwide search 21
natural
  ~ highlights 24
  ~ talent 17
near completion 52
necessary groundwork 28
needless to say 10
negotiate a settlement 21
introduce a neighbourhood watch scheme 35
pre-wedding nerves 23
network
  ~ of contacts 12
  social ~ 40
new
  ~ season's look 24
  forge ~ relationships 40
  introduce ~ legislation 30
  launch a ~ collection 24
  master ~ skills 13
newborn baby 41
newly qualified 5
news
  ~ travels fast 57
  break ~ 10
  exchange ~ 20
next-day service 16
carve a niche for yourself 12
minor niggles 43
niggling doubts 4
night
  girls' ~ out 19
  decent night's sleep 57
no
  have absolutely ~ idea 6
  have ~ respect for 43
  there's ~ place like home 1
  wouldn't say ~ to 10
incessant noise 47
receive a nomination 42
talk nonsense 10
the not-so-distant future 46
notify the police 10
novel solution 35
novelty value 5
in the middle of nowhere 32
number
  fair ~ (of) 50
  finite ~ 50
  good ~ (of) 50
  indeterminate ~ 4
  jot down a phone ~ 11
  jot down a room ~ 11
  large ~ 50
  opposite ~ 12
  significant ~ (of) 50
  small ~ 50
  substantial ~ (of) 50
set yourself clear objectives 15
have an obligation 30
observe a festival 23
render obsolete 53
obtain permission 30
blatantly obvious 8
special occasion 19
occasional twinge 41
occurs
  problem ~ 49
  thought ~ to 57
off the beaten track 26
commit a minor offence 38
offensive
  deeply ~ 8
  go on the ~ 39
  slightly ~ 8

offer *noun*
  make an ~ 9
  tempting ~ 12
offer *verb*
  ~ advice 56
  ~ a discount 16
  ~ an explanation 58
be open to offers 12
office
  resign from ~ 21
  take up ~ 11
offset carbon emissions 31
offshore wind farm 31
grumpy old man 41
oncoming traffic 25
online
  ~ banking 36
  ~ shopping 16
be the only option open to someone 28
open *adjective*
  ~ all hours 32
  ~ hostility 45
  be ~ to offers 12
  be the only option ~ to someone 28
open *verb*
  ~ a current account 33
  ~ your heart to 20
opening
  ~ gambit 20
  ~ remarks 52
  long ~ hours 32
have an operation 37
divided opinions 14
opponent
  see off an ~ 11
  a vociferous ~ 22
opportunity
  ~ arises 3
  extend ~ 34
  pass up an ~ 3
opposite
  ~ number 12
  exact ~ 55
  polar ~ 55
declare outright opposition 28
cautiously optimistic 60
option
  be the only ~ open to someone 28
  easy ~ 48
  viable ~ 48
order *noun*
  law and ~ break down 35
  place an ~ 16
  totally out of ~ 43
order *verb*
  ~ a takeaway 19
organise a barbecue 19
startling originality 29
the other side of the argument 55
pending the outcome 5
provoke an outcry 53
broad outline 2
outpouring of grief 59
increase output 34
outright
  declare ~ hostility 28
  declare ~ opposition 28
outstanding debt 33
the advantages outweigh the disadvantages 55
over
  ~ the course of time 46
  exercise greater control ~ 28
  not lose any sleep ~ 57
  take priority ~ 12
  threat hangs ~ 59
overcome a hurdle 49
overdose
  massive ~ 50
  take an ~ 37
overdraft
  interest-free ~ 33
  run up an ~ 33
overstate a case 20
unpaid overtime 13
overturn a verdict 38
overwhelming majority 50
score an own goal 27
hectic pace of life 32
pack
  ~ of dogs 54
  ~ of hounds 54
  ~ of wolves 54
lick of paint 1
pale in comparison 55
pander to someone's every whim 41
of paramount importance 44
vacant parking space 46
allocate part of a budget 15
go part-time 12
party
  have a ~ 9
  send out a search ~ 26
  surprise ~ 19
  throw a ~ 19
pass
  ~ judgement on 14
  ~ laws 30
  ~ a milestone 5
pass up
  ~ a chance 3
  ~ an opportunity 3
passionate entreaty 22
put the past behind you 3
infinite patience 50
pattern
  depart from a ~ 1
  fall into a ~ 41
weather patterns 31
pay
  ~ dividends 15
  ~ tribute to 4
  ~ someone a visit 19
pay back a loan 33
make a payment 33
peace
  fragile ~ 39
  restore ~ 39
feel peckish 24
keep your eyes peeled 26
penalty
  be awarded a ~ 27
  miss a ~ 27
pencil in a meeting 13
pending
  ~ the outcome 5
  ~ the response 5
  ~ the results 5
pent-up anger 45
indigenous people 26
percentage
  small ~ 50
  high ~ 50
  large ~ 50
perfect *noun*
  the ~ venue 19
perfect *verb*
  ~ a technique 48
perfectly friendly 45
perform
  ~ a dance 23
  ~ a task 44
put up a performance 27
permission
  give ~ 30
  grant ~ 30
  obtain ~ 30
  seek ~ 22, 30

intensely personal 3
personality
  ~ traits 45
  bubbly ~ 45
go through a phase 41
adhere to a philosophy 11
jot down a phone number 11
coin a phrase 9
physical exertion 56
pick a fight 43
picturesque
  ~ location 2
  ~ town 2
  ~ village 1, 2
nasty piece of work 43
pile on the pounds 24
pin
  ~ your hopes on 56
  difficult to ~ down 5
enter your PIN 36
reach fever pitch 27
place *noun*
  change takes ~ 51
  desirable ~ to live 32
  get a ~ 17
  secure a ~ 17
  there's no ~ like home 1
place *verb*
  ~ great value on 5
  ~ an order 16
plain
  ~ food 19
  ~ truth 3
plan
  approve a ~ 30
  implement a ~ 28
  slight change of ~ 28
  unveil a ~ 28
plans
  fit in with ~ 11
  make ~ 28
plant doubts 53
platonic relationships 40
play
  ~ a blinder 27
  ~ a dirty trick 43
  ~ host to 19
  ~ the stock market 1
  ~ truant 17
make a plea 35
exchange pleasantries 20
pleasure
  derive ~ from 60
  great ~ 57, 60
do plenty of exercise 37
plummeting profits 34
pod
  ~ of dolphins 54
  ~ of whales 54
point
  miss the ~ 58
  strong ~ 45
  take someone's ~ 58
  unique selling ~ 15
refuse point-blank 22
poison the atmosphere 43
polar opposite 55
police
  notify the ~ 10
  subject to ~ investigation 6
abandon a policy 52
poor
  ~ judgement 14
  ~ quality 16
  ~ sanitary conditions 35
  be in ~ health 37
hugely popular look 24
pose a threat 49
position
  in a ~ of authority 30
  clarify a ~ 22
  hold a ~ 12
take up a post 12
preserve for posterity 46
realise your potential 13
pile on the pounds 24
abject poverty 4
power
  ~ cut 36
  restore ~ 36
  seize ~ 21, 39
practical value 5
put into practice 28
practise medicine 12
heap praise on 42
highly praised 42
pre-emptive strike 39
pre-wedding nerves 23
precious little chance 27
terminate a pregnancy 52
premature death 37
prenuptial agreement 42
preparations are underway 28
present
  ~ an award 42
  ~ findings 18
preserve for posterity 46
hold a press conference 21
pressure
  bow to ~ 21
  under considerable ~ 12
  under a lot of ~ 12
  withstand ~ 3
pretty fit 27
prices
  hike in ~ 15
  share ~ fluctuate 51
pride of lions 54
primary cause 53
prime-time television 21
basic principle 48
adhere to principles 1, 11
get your priorities right 12
take priority over 12
probe a crime 6
problem
  ~ arises 49
  ~ occurs 49
  address a ~ 49
  face a ~ 49
  have an attitude ~ 43
  tackle a ~ 49
  wrestle with a ~ 14
weighty problems 7
standardise procedures 30
proclaim a victory 21
child prodigy 41
produce a result 53
production
  go into ~ 15
  halt ~ 36
profess ignorance 10
professional *adjective*
  ~ misconduct 13
professional *noun*
  consummate ~ 29
profit
  narrow ~ margins 15
  turn in a ~ 9
profits
  announce record ~ 15
  boost ~ 15
  plummeting ~ 34
profound admiration 60
hinder progress 49
promise
  break a ~ 58
  empty ~ 20
  go back on a ~ 58
  keep a ~ 58
  rash ~ 20
promote interests 15

prompt
  ~ service 16
  ~ speculation 53
pronounce someone dead 10
public pronouncement 22
speak properly 10
anti-ageing properties 24
epic proportions 50
make a proposal 9
propose a toast 23
be prospects for 13
protest *noun*
  stage a ~ 9
protest *verb*
  ~ innocence 10
proud tradition 23
proven
  ~ ability 17
  clinically ~ 24
provide
  ~ entertainment 5
  ~ an excellent service 16
  ~ an explanation 22
  ~ moral support 40
  ~ a rationale 18
  ~ a reference for 44
  ~ relief 35
  ~ shelter 35
  ~ simultaneous translation 5
  ~ a solution 56
provoke an outcry 53
public
  ~ disorder 35
  ~ pronouncement 22
  ~ spending 34
  reliable ~ transport 32
  risk to ~ health 31
full glare of publicity 42
publish
  ~ findings 36
  ~ research 36
escape punishment 38
pure luck 60
purpose
  fit for ~ 16
  sense of ~ 60
  state a ~ 10
pursue your interests 44
push
  ~ back the frontiers 36
  ~ up costs 34
  ~ yourself to the limits 27
put
  ~ the case for 18
  ~ some distance between 40
  ~ someone on hold 16
  ~ the past behind you 3
  ~ into practice 28
  ~ a question to someone 58
  ~ a stop to 52
  ~ together a CV 12
  not ~ someone to any trouble 57
put down a deposit 33
put in
  ~ an appearance 19
  ~ an application 30
put on
  ~ a display 23
  ~ standby 26
  ~ trial 38
put up a determined performance 27
with good qualifications 44
qualified
  newly ~ 5
  well ~ 44
qualify fully 5
quality
  have a ~ 45
  maintain ~ 15
  poor ~ 16
  spend ~ time 19
  top ~ 16
quantity
  large ~ 50
  sheer ~ 50
  significant ~ (of) 50
  small ~ 50
  substantial ~ (of) 50
  unknown ~ 50
quell unrest 52
question
  dodge the ~ 58
  frame a ~ 58
  put a ~ to someone 58
  tough ~ 20
questions
  barrage of ~ 3
  bombard someone with ~ 20
  field ~ 58
quick learner 17
quiet backwater 32
radical change 51
change radically 51
rain
  ~ sets in 52
  heavy ~ 1
raise
  ~ your glasses 23
  ~ interest rates 34
  ~ your voice 47
rampant inflation 34
range
  broad ~ 2
  stunning ~ 24
  wide ~ 1, 50
go into raptures 60
rare illness 37
rash promise 20
rates
  exchange ~ fluctuate 51
  raise interest ~ 34
  soaring crime ~ 38
provide a rationale 18
re-open a debate 22
reach
  ~ agreement 21, 30
  ~ the decision 28
  ~ fever pitch 27
reaction
  adverse ~ 37
  gauge ~ 22
read a subject at university 17
reading
  background ~ 18
  light ~ 7
reaffirm a commitment 58
realise
  ~ your ambition 42
  ~ your potential 13
really
  ~ get to someone 57
  ~ look forward to 57
reap the rewards 56
reason
  compelling ~ 53
  give a ~ 10, 53
  simple ~ 57
beyond reasonable doubt 38
instantly recall 48
receive a nomination 42
call in the receivers 15
cool reception 45
drive recklessly 3
recognition
  change beyond ~ 51
  get the ~ you deserve 60
recommend
  highly ~ 29
  thoroughly ~ 29
  wholeheartedly ~ 44
recommended
  exceed the ~ dose 37
  highly ~ 8

announce record profits 15
falsify records 33
recovery
  ~ of money 21
  make a full ~ 37
  modest ~ 51
recycle waste 31
cut through red tape 30
reduce
  ~ your carbon footprint 31
  ~ your stress level 37
act as a referee 44
provide a reference for 44
take up references 13
full refund 16
refuse point-blank 22
urban regeneration 32
regime topples 21
regular
  ~ customer 16
  ~ update 22
regulations
  conform to safety ~ 16
  infringe the ~ 30
  introduce ~ 30
go into rehab 42
silence reigns 47
reject
  ~ a charge 58
  ~ out of hand 28
  flatly ~ 22
rekindle memories 41
relations
  break diplomatic ~ 52
  cordial ~ 40
relationship
  ~ breaks down 40
  develop a good ~ 44
  establish a good ~ 44
  long-term ~ 40
  make a ~ work 40
  stable ~ 40
relationships
  forge new ~ 40
  platonic ~ 40
release a CD 29
have relevance to 4
reliable
  ~ public transport 32
  ~ source 5
relief
  provide ~ 35
  sigh of ~ 60
  welcome ~ 57
relieve someone of their duties 13
relish a challenge 49
remain
  ~ on friendly terms 40
  ~ unchanged 51
remand in custody 38
disparaging remark 59
with remarkable ease 48
opening remarks 52
remote *adjective*
  by ~ control 36
remote *verb*
  ~ access your email 36
render
  ~ obsolete 53
  ~ speechless 4
renewable energy 31
default on repayments 33
give repeated assurances 58
submit a report 18
reputation
  a considerable ~ 29
  a well-deserved ~ 29
request an extension 6
require effort 56
requirements
  meet the entry ~ 17
  satisfy the ~ 30
research
  ~ ethics 18
  ~ indicates 18
  do ~ 9, 18
  publish ~ 36
  select a ~ topic 18
resemblance
  bear little ~ to 55
  bear a striking ~ to 45
breed resentment 53
residential dwellings 32
resign from office 21
hand in your resignation 12
build up resistance 37
allocate resources 34
respect *noun*
  gain ~ 5
  have no ~ for 43
  with all due ~ 58
respect *verb*
  ~ someone's wishes 41
respond
  ~ to an emergency 49
  ~ well to treatment 37
pending the response 5
shirk responsibilities 43
responsibility
  heavy ~ 7
  take on ~ 13
exclusive restaurant 24
restore
  ~ to its former glory 46
  ~ peace 39
  ~ power 36
the blame rests with 43
produce a result 53
results
  catastrophic ~ 49
  lay out the ~ 18
  pending the ~ 5
reveal
  ~ a secret 42
  ~ a talent 44
get into reverse 25
review
  glowing ~ 29
  literature ~ 18
undergo a revival 51
substantial reward 21
reap the rewards 56
bed of rice 54
rich
  ~ source 5
  ~ tradition 23
  stinking ~ 8
ridiculous
  faintly ~ 8
  utterly ~ 8
heal the rift 40
get your priorities right 12
right-hand-drive car 25
bored rigid 32
give someone a ring 57
download a ringtone 36
riot erupts 35
rise
  experience a ~ 15
  see a ~ 15
  show a ~ 15
  meteoric ~ to fame 42
rising unemployment 34
risk
  ~ to public health 31
  carry a ~ 49
  carry out a ~ assessment 30
  high ~ 49
  minimise a ~ 49
congested road 32
hit the rocks 7
cast in the role of 29

room
  ~ for improvement 17, 51
  ample ~ 46
  jot down a ~ number 11
  leave ~ 46
  make ~ for 9
  take up a lot of ~ 46
the root cause 53
rough idea 14
downright rude 8
rule
  flout a ~ 30
  simple ~ 48
rumour
  ~ flies around 20
  dispel a ~ 52
  spread a ~ 20
run *noun*
  break into a ~ 52
run *verb*
  ~ into difficulties 7
  ~ dry 31
  ~ errands 13
  ~ smoothly 36
  ~ into trouble 7
run up
  ~ a bill 1, 33
  ~ curtains 9
  ~ a huge debt 33
  ~ an overdraft 33
run-down area 35
rural idyll 32
rustic charm 32
rustle up a meal 9
get the sack 13
touch of sadness 54
safeguard someone's interests 34
conform to safety regulations 16
boost sales 15
stay the same 51
poor sanitary conditions 35
a shoal of sardines 54
use SATNAV 36
satisfied customer 16
satisfy
  ~ a demand 15
  ~ the requirements 30
dip into savings 11
say
  needless to ~ 10
  not ~ a word 10
  wouldn't ~ no to 10
it goes without saying 10
schedule
  draw up a ~ 28
  stick to a ~ 28
scheme
  fast-track ~ 12
  harebrained ~ 59
  introduce a neighbourhood
  watch ~ 35
  launch a ~ 28
  tree-planting ~ 32
distinguished scholar 17
win a scholarship 17
school
  ~ of dolphins 54
  ~ of whales 54
  attend ~ 17
score *noun*
  ~ stands at 27
score *verb*
  ~ an own goal 27
the latest scores 27
search
  call off a ~ 21, 52
  nationwide ~ 21
  send out a ~ party 26
searing heat 31
season
  festive ~ 23
  new ~'s look 24
seat
  ~ of learning 17
  grab a ~ 5
second home 41
secret
  divulge a ~ 10
  let someone in on a ~ 42
  reveal a ~ 42
  tell a ~ 10
secure
  ~ a majority 21
  ~ a place 17
see
  ~ a decline 15
  ~ the error of your ways 41
  ~ a fall 15
  ~ a growth 15
  ~ off an intruder 11
  ~ off an opponent 11
  ~ a rise 15
  be glad to ~ the back of 57
seek permission 22, 30
seize power 21, 39
select a research topic 18
sell a story 42
unique selling point 15
lead a seminar 1
send out a search party 26
give someone a good sendoff 57
senior moment 41
sense
  ~ of achievement 60
  ~ of adventure 26
  ~ of purpose 60
  make sound business ~ 15
  talk a lot of ~ 10
sentence
  be given a ~ 38
  custodial ~ 38
  serve out a ~ 38
sentimental value 5, 41
separate
  completely ~ 8
  entirely ~ 8
  totally ~ 8
series of events 29
serious medical condition 37
seriously
  take a complaint ~ 16
  take someone ~ 20
serve out a sentence 38
justice is served 38
service
  next-day ~ 16
  prompt ~ 16
  provide an excellent ~ 16
  unrivalled ~ 24
set *adjective*
  ~ text 17
set *noun*
  ~ of handlebars 25
set *verb*
  ~ yourself clear objectives 15
  ~ off a fire alarm 52
  ~ a trend 24
  ~ the wheels in motion 53
  ~ to work
rain sets in 52
negotiate a settlement 21
severe
  ~ blow 49
  face ~ weather conditions 26
severely disrupted 25
shake off a cold 37
shape *noun*
  keep in ~ 27
shape *verb*
  ~ your destiny 46
  ~ someone's life 46
share prices fluctuate 51
sharp wit 45

shatter someone's confidence 59
flock of sheep 54
sheer
  ~ epic grandeur 26
  ~ luxury 24
  ~ quantity 50
  ~ size 50
provide shelter 35
shift
  dramatic ~ 51
  sudden ~ 51
shirk responsibilities 43
shiver down your spine 60
shoal
  ~ of fish 54
  ~ of sardines 54
shock
  be in for a ~ 59
  come as a bit of a ~ 57
  nasty ~ 59
  in a state of ~ 59
shopping
  do the ~ 16
  go ~ 16
  online ~ 16
short of space 46
give it your best shot 56
shoulder the blame 7
broad shoulders 2
show *noun*
  ~ of unity 21
show *verb*
  ~ a decline 15
  ~ a decrease 51
  ~ a downward trend 51
  ~ a fall 15
  ~ a growth 15
  ~ an improvement 51
  ~ an increase 51
  ~ initiative 17
  ~ a rise 15
  ~ an upward trend 51
shut down a computer 36
sick
  ~ with worry 59
  worried ~ 59
throw a sickie 13
side
  ~ effects 37
  the other ~ of the argument 55
take a sideswipe 59
move sideways 25
sigh of relief 60
let someone out of your sight 41
do the sights 26
sign up for a course 17
great significance 50
significant
  ~ amount (of) 50
  ~ impact 42
  ~ number (of) 50
  ~ quantity (of) 50
increase significantly 51
silence
  ~ descends 47
  ~ reigns 47
  meet with a stony ~ 47
fundamentally similar 55
simple
  ~ reason 57
  ~ rule 48
  ~ truth 3
simplicity itself 48
simultaneous
  ~ equation 5
  provide ~ translation 5
sincerely hope 57
situation
  cast light on a ~ 7
  handle a difficult ~ 44
size
  good ~ 50
  sheer ~ 50
skills
  advanced computer ~ 44
  good computer ~ 44
  hone your ~ 44
  interpersonal ~ 44
  master new ~ 13
sleep
  decent night's ~ 57
  not lose any ~ over 57
  lull someone to ~ 26
slight
  ~ change of plan 28
  ~ decrease 15
  ~ increase 15
slightly
  ~ different 8
  ~ offensive 8
slim
  ~ chance 7
  ~ majority 21
standards slip 3
slippery customer 43
hard slog 56
slur your words 47
small
  ~ amount 50
  ~ minority 50
  ~ number 50
  ~ percentage 50
  ~ quantity 50
smile
  broad ~ 2
  dazzling ~ 45
  friendly ~ 45
  warm ~ 45
run smoothly 36
snack
  grab a ~ 6
  have a ~ 6
tasty snacks 24
snippet of information 3
flurry of snow 54
soak up atmosphere 11
soaring crime rates 38
temperature soars 31
social
  ~ exclusion 34
  ~ fabric 35
  ~ network 40
  ~ whirl 19
soft whisper 47
solar heating 31
solution
  find a ~ 31
  long-term ~ 28
  novel ~ 35
  provide a ~ 56
song
  break into ~ 52
  burst into ~ 3
sound *adjective*
  make ~ business sense 15
sound *noun*
  ~ travels 47
  make a ~ 47
sounds like hard work 48
source
  ~ of amusement 5
  ~ of entertainment 5
  ~ of fun 5
  ~ of funding 5
  ~ of income 5, 33
  alternative energy ~ 31
  cheap ~ 5
  divulge a ~ 10
  reliable ~ 5
  rich ~ 5
  valuable ~ 5
sources close to 42

space
  confined ~ 46
  short of ~ 46
  take up a lot of ~ 46
  vacant parking ~ 46
  waste of ~ 46
spark fears 52
spate
  ~ of attacks 3, 39
  ~ of thefts 3
speak
  ~ properly 10
  ~ very highly of 10
speaking
  generally ~ 10
  strictly ~ 10
special
  ~ occasion 19
  have a ~ charm 26
spectacular mountains 1
spectacularly successful 29
speculation
  excite ~ 22
  flurry of ~ 54
  fuel ~ 14
  prompt ~ 53
deliver a speech 21
render speechless 4
spell disaster 53
sunny spells 26
spend
  ~ a fortune 33
  ~ quality time 19
public spending 34
shiver down your spine 60
spirits
  ~ are high 26
  boost ~ 26
spoilt brat 41
do sport 37
do extreme sports 27
spot an error 49
spotlessly clean 8
spread a rumour 20
spring
  ~ to someone's defence 40
  ~ a surprise on 19
sprinkling of cinnamon 54
bring stability 39
stable
  ~ environment 41
  ~ relationship 40
staff
  high turnover of ~ 13
  join the ~ 12
  lay off ~ 12
  member of ~ 12
stage
  ~ a protest 9
  ~ a strike 13
take a firm stance against 22
stand *noun*
  make a ~ against 9
stand *verb*
  ~ the test of time 40
  ~ trial 38
come up to standard 16
standardise procedures 30
standards
  ~ slip 3
  adhere to ~ 30
  exacting ~ 30
put on standby 26
score stands at 27
star-studded cast 29
startling originality 29
state *noun*
  ~ of confusion 49
  ~ of euphoria 60
  in a ~ of shock 59
state *verb*
  ~ an aim 10
  ~ your business 10
  ~ a goal 10
  ~ a purpose 10
issue a statement 22
stay
  ~ the course 13
  ~ the same 51
steady growth 34
steer the economy 34
step-by-step approach 48
stick
  ~ to a diet 19
  ~ to a schedule 28
stimulate growth 15, 34
stinking rich 8
play the stock market 1
stockpile weapons 39
meet with a stony silence 47
stoop to that level 43
put a stop to 52
have a stopover 26
store music 36
sell a story 42
straight
  ~ A student 17
  give a ~ answer 58
  walk ~ into a job 7
in a straightforward way 48
complete stranger 40
strangled cry 47
stubborn streak 45
streaming cold 37
street
  close off a ~ 52
  crowded ~ 32
  hit the high ~ 24
strength
  build up your ~ 37
  test of ~ 21
strenuous effort 56
stress
  increase your ~ levels 59
  reduce your ~ level 37
budget doesn't stretch to 26
strictly speaking 10
strike
  ~ a balance (between) 55
  go on ~ 13
  pre-emptive ~ 39
  stage a ~ 13
  surgical ~ 39
disaster strikes 49
bear a striking resemblance to 45
strikingly different 55
stroke
  ~ of genius 54
  ~ of luck 3, 54, 60
  ~ of work 54
strong
  ~ language 20
  ~ point 45
strongly
  ~ influence 8
  ~ influenced 29
struggle
  constant ~ 49
  uphill ~ 56
stubborn streak 45
stuck in traffic 25
student
  mature ~ 17
  straight A ~ 17
undertake a study 18
stunning range 24
stunningly attractive 3
grand style 24
subject *adjective*
  ~ to police investigation 6

subject *noun*
  bring up the ~ 20
  broach the ~ 20
  change the ~ 20
  core ~ 17
  drop the ~ 20
  read a ~ at university 17
submit
  ~ assignments 6
  ~ a report 18
subscribe to the theory 14
illegal substance 35
substantial
  ~ amount (of) 50
  ~ decrease 15
  ~ increase 15
  ~ number (of) 50
  ~ quantity (of) 50
  ~ reward 21
subtle
  ~ difference 55
  ~ distinction 55
leafy suburbs 32
success
  build on the ~ 34
  enjoy great ~ 42
  have great ~ 42
  make a ~ of 9, 42
  meet with ~ 34
successful
  extremely ~ 60
  spectacularly ~ 29
sudden shift 51
suffer
  ~ casualties 39
  ~ at the hands of 59
suggestion
  act on a ~ 28
  come up with a ~ 1
  tentative ~ 28
make some suggestions 9
summon up the energy 27
sun-damaged hair 24
sunny spells 26
supplement your income 33
endless supply 50
support *noun*
  drum up ~ 28
  provide moral ~ 40
support *verb*
  ~ a family 41
  ~ the hypothesis 18
surge of adrenalin 60
surgical strike 39
surprise
  ~ party 19
  spring a ~ on 19
mildly surprised 8
survey
  carry out a ~ 16
  do a ~ 16
fight for survival 49
suspense
  ~ builds up 29
  bear the ~ 29
swarm
  ~ of bees 54
  ~ of locusts 54
sweated labour 13
sweeping change 51
swipe a card 36
switch channels 36
systems crash 36
tackle
  ~ the issue 18
  ~ a problem 49
traffic tails back 25
take
  ~ something badly 49
  ~ a boat 5
  ~ a complaint seriously 16
  ~ your custom elsewhere 16
  ~ delight in 60
  ~ your driving test 25
  ~ it easy for a while 3
  ~ the easy way out 48
  ~ exception to 59
  ~ the field 27
  ~ a firm stance against 22
  ~ the flak 43
  ~ for granted 41
  ~ industrial action 13
  ~ issue with 22
  ~ an overdose 37
  ~ someone's point 58
  ~ priority over 12
  ~ someone seriously 20
  ~ a sideswipe 59
  ~ the time to 48
  ~ the view that 14
  ~ something the wrong way 40
take on responsibility 13
take up
  ~ a challenge 27
  ~ office 11
  ~ a post 12
  ~ references 13
  ~ a lot of room 46
  ~ a lot of space 46
order a takeaway 19
change takes place 51
talent
  natural ~ 17
  reveal a ~ 44
talk
  ~ business 10
  ~ nonsense 10
  ~ a lot of sense 10
talks
  ~ collapse 52
  enter into ~ 21
cut through red tape 30
target
  ~ market 15
  meet a ~ 15
task
  break a ~ down 48
  daunting ~ 13
  perform a ~ 44
menial tasks 13
acquire a taste for 27
tasty snacks 24
levy a tax 34
introduce green taxes 31
hail a taxi 32
team
  ~ effort 56
  ~ of experts 1
  head a ~ 7
  work as a ~ 13
wear and tear 36
burst into tears 11
perfect a technique 48
harness technology 36
prime-time television 21
tell
  ~ someone's fortune 10
  ~ a secret 10
  kiss and ~ 42
temperature soars 31
temperatures fluctuate 51
tempting offer 12
tentative suggestion 28
coin a term 9
terminate
  ~ a contract 52
  ~ a pregnancy 52
terms
  on bad ~ 40
  remain on friendly ~ 40
abject terror 4

test *noun*
  ~ of strength 21
  stand the ~ of time 40
  take your (driving) ~ 25
test *verb*
  ~ a theory 18
set text 17
identity theft 33
spate of thefts 3
theory
  formulate a ~ 18
  subscribe to the ~ 14
  test a ~ 18
there's no place like home 1
think
  ~ highly of 29
  ~ laterally 14
  honestly ~ 14
thinly disguised 45
thirst
  ~ for adventure 26
  ~ for knowledge 17
thoroughly
  ~ ashamed 8
  ~ enjoy 8
  ~ recommend 29
thought
  ~ occurs to 57
  bear the ~ of 57
  can't face the ~ of 57
  give something some ~ 14
turn your thoughts to 5
threat
  ~ hangs over 59
  idle ~ 3
  pose a ~ 49
thriving industry 34
throw
  ~ a sickie 13
  ~ a party 19
throwaway comment 22
thrust of an argument 18
dull thud 47
clap of thunder 47
tie the knot 23
tighten controls 30
time
  find ~ 19
  free up ~ 11
  have a whale of a ~ 27
  over the course of ~ 46
  spend quality ~ 19
  stand the test of ~ 40
  take the ~ to 48
exports are five times greater than imports 15
act on a tip-off 11
propose a toast 23
keep someone on their toes 7
put together a CV 12
weighty tome 7
top quality 16
select a research topic 18
regime topples 21
totally
  ~ awesome 6
  ~ dependent 8
  ~ different 8
  ~ out of order 43
  ~ separate 8
picturesque town 2
touch
  ~ of class 54
  ~ of humour 54
  ~ of irony 54
  ~ of sadness 54
tough
  ~ challenge 5
  ~ question 20
toxic waste 31
toy with an idea 28
trace of an accent 47
off the beaten track 26
tradition
  ~ dates back to 23
  age-old ~ 23
  annual ~ 23
  break with ~ 23
  keep up the ~ 23
  long-standing ~ 23
  proud ~ 23
  rich ~ 23
  uphold a ~ 23
wear traditional dress 23
traffic
  ~ builds up 25
  ~ dies down 25
  ~ eases off 25
  ~ tails back 25
  dense ~ 25
  divert ~ 25
  heavy ~ 25
  oncoming ~ 25
  stuck in ~ 25
personality traits 45
undergo a transformation 51
provide simultaneous translation 5
reliable public transport 32
travels
  news ~ fast 57
  sound ~ 47
respond well to treatment 37
tree-planting scheme 32
go trekking 26
trend
  show a downward ~ 51
  show an upward ~ 51
  set a ~ 24
trial
  adjourn a ~ 38
  face ~ 38
  put on ~ 38
  stand ~ 38
tribe
  ~ of baboons 54
  ~ of monkeys 54
tribute
  glowing ~ 42
  pay ~ to 4
play a dirty trick 43
troops
  deploy ~ 39
  withdraw ~ 39
trouble
  ~ breaks out 21
  not cause someone any ~ 57
  not go to any ~ 57
  not put someone to any ~ 57
  run into ~ 7
play truant 17
uneasy truce 39
dream comes true 60
trumped-up charges 38
trust *noun*
  abuse ~ 40
  betray someone's ~ 43, 58
  win someone's ~ 40
trust *verb*
  ~ someone implicitly 44
  not ~ an inch 43
truth
  plain ~ 3
  simple ~ 3
be worth a try 56
turn your thoughts to 5
turn in a profit 9
life is turned upside-down 51
high turnover of staff 13
TV
  flat-screen ~ 36
  high-definition ~ 36
occasional twinge 41
unacceptable behaviour 45

unanimous verdict 38
unbounded enthusiasm 50
remain unchanged 51
leave unchecked 34
excruciatingly uncomfortable 24
undeclared earnings 34
underage drinking 35
underestimate the value of 5
undergo
  ~ a revival 51
  ~ a transformation 51
glimmer of understanding 54
undertake a study 18
preparations are underway 28
undivided attention 41
uneasy truce 39
rising unemployment 34
unexplored wilderness 26
unfit for human habitation 35
uninterrupted economic growth 34
unique selling point 15
show of unity 21
university
  graduate from ~ 17
  read a subject at ~ 17
unknown quantity 50
highly unlikely 8
unmitigated disaster 29
unpaid overtime 13
unprovoked attack 39
unreliable
  ~ evidence 38
  ~ witness 38
quell unrest 52
unrivalled service 24
unsocial hours 13
untimely death 37
unveil a plan 28
regular update 22
uphill struggle 56
uphold a tradition 23
life is turned upside-down 51
show an upward trend 51
urban
  ~ living 32
  ~ regeneration 32
use SATNAV 36
not utter a word 47
utterly
  ~ absurd 8
  ~ ridiculous 8
vacant parking space 46
vain hope 3
valiant effort 56
valid driving licence 25
valuable source 5
value
  ~ for money 16, 34
  assess something's ~ 5
  novelty ~ 5
  place great ~ on 5
  practical ~ 5
  sentimental ~ 5, 41
  underestimate the ~ of 5
highly valued 44
wide variation 55
wide variety 50
vast expanse 46
vehicle emissions 31
give vent to your frustration 59
perfect venue 19
verdict
  contest a ~ 38
  overturn a ~ 38
  unanimous ~ 38
viable option 48
fashion victim 24
victory
  convincing ~ 27
  proclaim a ~ 21
take the view that 14
vigorous defence 18
picturesque village 1
violence
  ~ erupts 39
  ~ escalates 39
  incite ~ 35
  mindless ~ 43
visit
  flying ~ 19
  pay someone a ~ 19
  whirlwind ~ 19
vital
  ~ clue 21
  absolutely ~ 31
vociferous opponent 22
voice
  ~ falters 47
  booming ~ 47
  dissenting ~ 22
  gruff ~ 47
  husky ~ 47
  lose your ~ 47
  muffled ~ 47
  raise your ~ 47
volume of work 12
living wage 13
walk straight into a job 7
within walking distance 32
attention wanders 17
warm smile 45
heed a warning 56
waste
  ~ of space 46
  disposal of household ~ 31
  dump ~ 31
  recycle ~ 31
  toxic ~ 31
watch *noun*
  introduce a neighbourhood ~ scheme 35
watch *verb*
  ~ what you eat 37
concentration wavers 17
way
  in a straightforward ~ 48
  take the easy ~ out 48
  take something the wrong ~ 40
ways
  change your ~ 31
  explore different ~ 48
  see the error of your ~ 41
stockpile weapons 39
wear
  ~ and tear 36
  ~ traditional dress 23
weather
  ~ patterns 31
  adverse ~ conditions 49
  face severe ~ conditions 26
  inclement ~ 2
wedded bliss 23
fairytale wedding 42
weighty
  ~ matters 7
  ~ problems 7
  ~ tome 7
welcome
  ~ relief 57
  make someone ~ 19
well
  ~ good 6
  ~ qualified 44
  respond ~ to treatment 37
a well-deserved reputation 29
have a whale of a time 27
whales
  pod of ~ 54
  school of ~ 54
what
  ~'s in fashion 24
  watch ~ you eat 37
set the wheels in motion 53
take it easy for a while 3

pander to someone's every whim 41
social whirl 19
whirlwind visit 19
soft whisper 47
whole gamut of emotions 54
wholeheartedly recommend 44
wide
  ~ choice 50
  ~ range 1, 50
  ~ variation 55
  ~ variety 50
differ widely 55
widespread
  ~ belief 14
  ~ flooding 31, 49
  ~ looting 49
go wild 27
unexplored wilderness 26
wildly
  ~ exaggerated 8
  ~ inaccurate 8
  fluctuate ~ 51
win
  ~ an argument 20
  ~ the battle 5
  ~ a scholarship 17
  ~ someone's trust 40
offshore wind farm 31
wine and dine 19
wining and dining 19
declare someone the winner 10
wireless hotspot 36
wisdom
  impart ~ 10
  words of ~ 1
respect someone's wishes 41
sharp wit 45
withdraw troops 39
within
  ~ living memory 46
  ~ walking distance 32
it goes without saying 10
withstand
  ~ the impact 3
  ~ pressure 3
unreliable witness 38
pack of wolves 54
changed woman 51
absolutely wonderful 8
word
  four-letter ~ 20
  have a ~ with 6
  not say a ~ 10
  not utter a ~ 47
words
  ~ of wisdom 1
  slur your ~ 47
work *noun*
  do ~ 12
  nasty piece of ~ 43
  set to ~ 4
  sounds like hard ~ 48
  stroke of ~ 54
  volume of ~ 12
work *verb*
  ~ to someone's advantage 60
  ~ as a team 13
  make a relationship ~ 40
work up an appetite 11
working hypothesis 18
heavy workload 13
world of difference 55
worried sick 59
sick with worry 59
be worth a try 56
wouldn't say no to 10
wreak havoc 53
wrestle with a problem 14
banish wrinkles 24
write off a debt 33
take something the wrong way 40
wrongfully dismiss 13
yawning gap 55
academic year 17
be given a yellow card 27
disaffected youth 41

English Collocations in Use

Advanced

Collocations are word combinations that frequently appear together. This book will help you master collocations, which will make your English sound more natural and fluent.

- Learn useful collocations from a wide range of topics relevant to modern life such as: *opening gambit*, *work up an appetite* and *star-studded cast*
- Avoid common mistakes and improve your exam results by studying error warnings – based on real student errors from Cambridge ESOL papers for CAE, CPE and IELTS
- Develop better learning strategies through study tips and follow-up activities

English Collocations in Use Advanced

- 60 easy-to-use two-page units: collocations are presented and explained on left-hand pages with a range of practice exercises on right-hand pages.
- Presents and explains approximately 1,500 collocations in typical contexts using short texts, dialogues, tables and charts.
- Contains a comprehensive answer key and full index for easy reference.
- Highlights register to help students choose the appropriate language for particular situations.
- Informed by the Cambridge International Corpus to ensure that the most frequently used collocations are presented.

CAMBRIDGE INTERNATIONAL CORPUS

The Cambridge International Corpus (CIC) is a collection of over 1 billion words of real spoken and written English. The texts are stored in a database that can be searched to see how English is used. The CIC also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, a unique collection of over 90,000 exam papers from Cambridge ESOL. It shows real mistakes students make and highlights the parts of English which cause problems for students.

www.cambridge.org/corpus

REAL ENGLISH GUARANTEE

Also available: **English Phrasal Verbs in Use Advanced**
Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary
English Vocabulary in Use Advanced

in Use

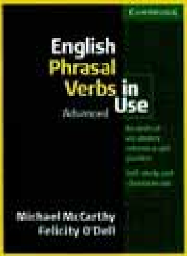

ISBN 978 0 521 68418 7

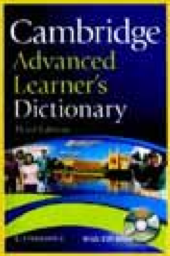

ISBN 978 0 521 71266 8

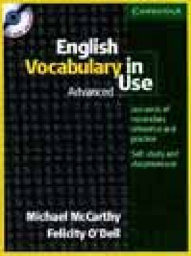

ISBN 978 0 521 67746 2

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org

ISBN 978-0-521-70780-0

CAMBRIDGE

ENGLISH COLLOCATIONS IN USE

How words work together for fluent and natural English

Self-study and classroom use

Second Edition

Intermediate

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

Experience
Better
Learning

ENGLISH COLLOCATIONS IN USE

How words work together for fluent and natural English

Self-study and classroom use

Second Edition

Intermediate

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom

One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA

477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia

4843/24, 2nd Floor, Ansari Road, Daryaganj, Delhi – 110002, India

79 Anson Road, #06–04/06, Singapore 079906

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9781316629758

© Cambridge University Press 2017

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2005
Second edition 2017
20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Printed in Dubai by Oriental Press

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-1-31-66297-58 Paperback

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

Acknowledgements 3
Using this book 4

Learning about collocations

1 What is a collocation?
2 Finding, recording and learning collocations
3 Using your dictionary
4 Types of collocation
5 Register

Grammatical aspects of collocations

6 Intensifying adverbs *highly unlikely, utterly ridiculous, strongly object*
7 Everyday verbs 1 *make a mistake, do your best, do damage*
8 Everyday verbs 2 *go bald, become extinct, fall ill*
9 Everyday verbs 3 *have fun, take action, pay a compliment*

Special aspects of collocation

10 Synonyms and confusable words 1 *close a meeting, antique furniture, only child*
11 Synonyms and confusable words 2 *gain power, achieve your goals, defeat an opponent*
12 Metaphor *sunny smile, ideas flow, heated discussion*

Topics: Travel and the environment

13 Weather *strong wind, blanket of fog, river bursts its banks*
14 Travel *tiring journey, aisle seat, family-run hotel*
15 Countryside *surrounding countryside, well worth seeing*
16 Towns and cities *lined with shops, sprawling city, volume of traffic*

Topics: People and relationships

17 People: character and behaviour *have a vivid imagination, lose your patience*
18 People: physical appearance *slender waist, immaculately groomed*
19 Families *distant cousin, expecting a baby, stable home*
20 Relationships *casual acquaintance, love at first sight*

Topics: Leisure and lifestyle

21 Houses, flats and rooms *move into a flat, spacious living room*
22 Eating and drinking *nourishing meal, spoil your appetite, dying of hunger*
23 Films and books *film critic, go on the stage*
24 Music *give a performance, go on tour, strum a guitar*
25 Sport *go snowboarding, take a penalty*
26 Health and illness *catch a cold, vigorous exercise, be taken ill*

Topics: Work and study

27 Using the Internet *refine your search, open an attachment*
28 Study and learning *do research, attend a lecture, first draft*
29 Presentations *target audience, prepare handouts, public speaking*
30 Work *high-powered job, hand in your notice*
31 Business *set up a business, launch a product, rival company*
32 Academic writing 1 *key factor, challenge a theory, carry out research*
33 Academic writing 2 *make reference to, argue convincingly, research suggests*

Topics: Society and institutions

34 Laws and punishments *break the law, bend the rules, fair trial*
35 Crime *hardened criminal, juvenile crime, tackle crime*
36 News *hit the headlines, hold talks, take hostage*
37 Money *squander money, price soars, go cheap*
38 War and peace *war breaks out, restore order, call a truce*
39 Global problem *eradicate poverty, forced and voluntary migration*

Basic concepts

40 Time *save time, ungodly hours, from dawn till dusk*
41 Sound *break the silence, excessive noise, almighty bang*
42 Distance and size *within commuting distance, painfully thin*
43 Colour and light *bright colour, beam of light, shed some light on*
44 Texture *choppy sea, soft pillow, ice melts*
45 Taste and smell *fragrant perfume, have a taste, smell danger*
46 Number and frequency *significant number, come to a total of, rare species*
47 Movement and speed *prompt payment, painfully slow, lose your balance*
48 Change *make an adjustment, break a habit, change the subject*
49 Ways of speaking *brief chat, raise a subject, drop a hint*
50 Ways of walking *pace up and down, wander aimlessly, faltering steps*

Functions

51 Starting and finishing *promising start, bring something to an end*
52 Talking about success and failure *make a breakthrough, fail miserably*
53 Talking about cause and effect *cause alarm, adverse effects, have a major impact*
54 Remembering and sensing *vaguely remember, blot out a memory, have a feeling*
55 Agreeing and disagreeing *settle a dispute, agree to differ, heated argument*
56 Talking about beliefs and opinions *firmly believe, colour someone's judgement*
57 Deciding and choosing *arrive at a decision, have second thoughts, tough choice*
58 Claiming and denying *make the point that, contradictory evidence*
59 Liking and disliking *have a liking, state a preference, take offence*
60 Praising and criticising *offer your congratulations, speak highly of*

Key 126
Index 158

Acknowledgements

Joy Goodwin wrote two new units for the Second Edition: Unit 27, *Using the Internet*, and Unit 29, *Presentations*. The publishers would like to thank Joy for her contribution to this edition.

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting & in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable.

Key: T = Top, B = Below, TR = Top Right, CR = Centre Right, CL = Centre Left, BL = Below Left.

Photographs

All the photographs are sourced from Getty Images.

p. 7: uanmonino/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 17: FatCamera/E+; p. 19 & p. 78: PeopleImages/E+; p. 21: Inti St Clair/Blend Images; p. 25: Muhammad Owais Khan/Moment; p. 25 (photo 1): Echo/Cultura; p. 25 (photo 2): Dougal Waters/DigitalVision; p. 25 (photo 3): onurdongel/iStock; p. 25 (photo 4): Tuomas Marttila/Maskot/Getty Images Plus; p. 25 (photo 5): Cultura RM Exclusive/Henry Arden/Cultura Exclusive; p. 25 (photo 6): Tom Merton/OJO Images; p. 27: swissmediavision/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 30: John Linton/EyeEm; p. 32 & p. 70 (photo 3): Hero Images; p. 36 (photo 1): Ezra Bailey/Photonica; p. 36 (photo 2) & p. 116 (photo 4): Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/Blend Images; p. 36 (photo 3): Kathrin Ziegler/Taxi; p. 36 (photo 4): Dan Kitwood News; p. 37 (photo 1): Blackstation; p. 37 (photo 2): Danja Ulrich/EyeEm; p. 37 (photo 3): jayk7/Moment; p. 37 (photo 4): Stephen Dorey/Photodisc; p. 38: monsitj/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 43 (photo 1): Hill Street Studios/Blend Images; p. 43 (photo 2): Philipp Nemenz/Cultura; p. 45: Jake Curtis/Iconica; p. 47: Stephen Dorey/Photolibrary; p. 48 (CL) & p. 58 (T): Klaus Vedfelt/DigitalVision; p. 48 (CR): Casarsa/E+; p. 52: Robert Kohlhuber/Stockbyte; p. 55: Martin Poole/DigitalVision; p. 56: Mike Harrington/DigitalVision; p. 58 (B): Daniel Sambraus/EyeEm; p. 60: Maskot; p. 61: Caiaimage/Sam Edwards/OJO+; p. 62: ImagesBazaar; p. 64: filadendron/E+; p. 65 (TR): John Lamb/DigitalVision; p. 65 (photo 1): Portra Images/DigitalVision; p. 65 (photo 2): Yuri_Arcurs/DigitalVision; p. 65 (photo 3): Klaus Tiedge/Blend Images; p. 70 (photo 1): Bloomberg; p. 70 (photo 2): JohnnyGreig/E+; p. 70 (photo 4): IPGGutenbergUKLtd/iStock; p. 73: RichLegg/E+; p. 80: George Marks/Retrofile; p. 81: Cebas/iStock; p. 85 (man): Marli/STOCK4B-RF; p. 85 (e-chess): klenger/iStock; p. 85 (phone): Apple Bookazine/Future; p. 85 (tracker): MileA/iStock; p. 90: Image by Catherine MacBride/Moment; p. 99: Phillip Suddick/Taxi; p. 102 (TR): Creatas; p. 102 (BL): Jetta Productions/Blend Images; p. 111: lambada/Vetta; p. 112: Image Source; p. 113 (photo 1): Kajetan Kandler/Stone; p. 113 (photo 2), p. 116 (photo 6) & p. 118: Morsa Images/DigitalVision; p. 113 (photo 3): Michael Blann/Iconica; p. 113 (photo 4): Howard Kingsnorth/Iconica; p. 116 (photo 1): Nick Daly/Iconica; p. 116 (photo 2): David A Land/Blend Images; p. 116 (photo 3): Westend61; p. 116 (photo 5): Indeed; p. 116 (photo 7): photosindia; p. 116 (photo 8): Ezra Bailey/Taxi; p. 120: DreamPictures/Stone; p. 123: Guido Cavallini/Cultura; p. 125 (photo 1): Caiaimage/Tom Merton/Riser; p. 125 (photo 2): blue jean images/China; p. 125 (photo 3): annabaek/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 125 (photo 4): 4x6/iStock/Getty Images Plus.

Illustrations

John Lund (Beehive Illustration), Katie Mac (NB Illustration), Martina (KJA Artists) and Miguel Diaz Rivas (Advocate Art).

Using this book

What is a collocation?

Collocation means a natural combination of words; it refers to the way English words are closely associated with each other. For example, *do* and *homework* go together, as do *make* and *mistakes*; *tall* goes with *man/woman* and *high* with *mountain*.

Why learn collocations?

You need to learn collocations because they will help you to speak and write English in a more natural and accurate way. People will probably understand what you mean if you talk about 'making your homework' or say 'My uncle is a very high man' but your language will sound unnatural and might perhaps confuse. Did you mean that your uncle is two metres tall or did you mean that he has a high position in government or business?

Learning collocations will also help you to increase your range of English vocabulary. For example, you'll find it easier to avoid words like *very* or *nice* or *beautiful* or *get* by choosing a word that fits the context better and has a more precise meaning. This is particularly useful if you are taking a written exam in English and want to make a good impression on the examiners.

How were the collocations in the book selected?

The collocations presented in this book were mainly selected from those identified as significant by the Cambridge International Corpus of written and spoken English (now known as the Cambridge English Corpus) and also the CANCODE corpus of spoken English, developed at the University of Nottingham in association with Cambridge University Press. The Cambridge English Corpus is a vast database of real English taken from a range of sources, such as books, newspapers, advertising, letters and emails, websites, conversations and speeches, radio and television. By studying this corpus we obtained a representative picture of how English is really used and which words naturally and frequently go together. We also made much use of the Cambridge Learner Corpus, a corpus of learner English made up of exam scripts from students taking Cambridge English examinations all over the world. This particular corpus showed us what kind of collocation errors learners tend to make.

These corpora show that there are many thousands of collocations in English. So how could we select which ones would be most useful for you to work on in this book?

Firstly, of course, we wanted to choose ones that you might want to use in your own written and spoken English. So, in the unit on Eating and drinking we include, for example, *have a quick snack* and *processed food* but not *cocoa butter*, which is a very strong collocation, but one which has very limited use for most people.

Secondly, we decided it would be most useful for you if we focused on those collocations which are not immediately obvious and which the Cambridge Learner Corpus shows can cause problems for students. *A friendly girl*, *cold water* or *to eat an apple* are all collocations, but they are combinations which you can easily understand and produce yourself without any problems. So we deal here with less obvious – though equally useful – word combinations, with, for instance, *make friends* (not *~~get friends~~*) and *heavy rain* (not *~~strong rain~~*).

Idioms are a special type of collocation where a fixed group of words has a meaning that cannot be guessed by knowing the meaning of the individual words. We deal with them separately in *English Idioms in Use* and so do not focus on them here.

How is the book organised?

The book has 60 two-page units. The left-hand page presents the collocations that are focused on in the unit. You will usually find examples of collocations in typical contexts with, where appropriate, any special notes about their meaning and their usage. The right-hand page checks that you have understood the information on the left-hand page by giving you a series of exercises that practise the material just presented.

The units are organised into different sections. First we start with important information about collocations in general. Then there are sections looking at grammatical and other special aspects of collocations. The rest of the book deals with collocations that relate to particular topics such as *Weather* or *Business*, concepts such as *Time* or *Change* and functions such as *Agreeing and disagreeing* or *Liking and disliking*.

The book has a key to all the exercises and an index which lists all the collocations we deal with and indicates the units where they can be found.

How should I use this book?

We recommend that you work through the five introductory units first so that you become familiar with the nature of collocations and with how best to study them. After that, you may work on the units in any order that suits you.

What else do I need in order to work with this book?

You need a notebook or file in which you can write down the collocations that you study in this book as well as any others that you come across elsewhere.

You also need to have access to a good dictionary. We strongly recommend the *Cambridge Learner's Dictionary* or the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary*, as both of these give exactly the kind of information that you need to have about collocations. They do this both through the examples provided for each word entry and through their special collocations boxes or mini-panels.
For more information about Cambridge dictionaries and to do online searches you could go to http://dictionary.cambridge.org. Your teacher, however, may also be able to recommend other dictionaries that you will find useful.

So, a study of collocation is **highly recommended** (Unit 6) if you want to **make a good impression** (Unit 2) with your natural and accurate use of English. Above all, we hope that you will not only learn a lot but will also **have fun** (Unit 9) as you **do the exercises** (Unit 7) in this book.

1 What is a collocation?

A

A collocation is a pair or group of words that are often used together. These combinations sound natural to native speakers, but students of English have to make a special effort to learn them because they are often difficult to guess. Some combinations just sound 'wrong' to native speakers of English. For example, the adjective *fast* collocates with *cars*, but not with *a glance*.

We say …	We don't say …
fast cars **fast food**	~~quick~~ cars ~~quick~~ food
a quick glance **a quick meal**	a ~~fast~~ glance a ~~fast~~ meal

Learning collocations is an important part of learning the vocabulary of a language. Some collocations are fixed, or very strong, for example **take a photo**, where no word other than *take* collocates with *photo* to give the same meaning. Some collocations are more open, where several different words may be used to give a similar meaning, for example **keep to** / **stick to the rules**. Here are some more examples of collocations.

You must **make an effort** and study for your exams (NOT ~~do~~ an effort)
Did you **watch TV** last night? (NOT ~~look at~~ TV)
This car has a very **powerful engine**. It can do 200 km an hour. (NOT ~~strong~~ engine)
There are some **ancient monuments** nearby. (NOT ~~antique~~ monuments)

Sometimes, a pair of words may not be absolutely wrong, and people will understand what is meant, but it may not be the natural, normal collocation. If someone says *I did a few mistakes*, they will be understood, but a fluent speaker of English would probably say **I made a few mistakes**.

B

Compounds and idioms

Compounds are units of meaning formed with two or more words. Sometimes the words are written separately, sometimes they have a hyphen and sometimes they are written as one word. Usually the meaning of the compound can be guessed by knowing the meaning of the individual words. Some examples of compounds are **car park**, **post office**, **narrow-minded**, **shoelaces**, **teapot**.

It is not always easy to separate collocations and compounds and, where they are useful for learners or an important part of the vocabulary of a topic, we include some compounds in this book too.

Idioms are groups of words in a fixed order that have a meaning that cannot be guessed by knowing the meaning of the individual words. For example, **pass the buck** is an idiom meaning 'to pass responsibility for a problem to another person to avoid dealing with it oneself'. We deal with idioms in detail in the book *English Idioms in Use* in this series.

C

Why learn collocations?

Learning collocations is a good idea because they can:

a) give you the most natural way to say something: *smoking is* ***strictly forbidden*** is more natural than *smoking is strongly forbidden*.
b) give you alternative ways of saying something, which may be more colourful/expressive or more precise: instead of repeating *It was* ***very*** *cold and* ***very*** *dark*, we can say *It was* ***bitterly cold*** *and* ***pitch dark***.
c) improve your style in writing: instead of saying *poverty* ***causes crime***, you can say *poverty* ***breeds crime***; instead of saying *a* ***big meal*** you can say *a* ***substantial meal***. You may not need or want to use these in informal conversations, but in writing they can give your text more variety and make it read better: this book includes notes about formality wherever the collocations are especially formal or informal.

Exercises

1.1 **Read A and B and answer these questions.**

1 What is a collocation?
2 Which of these words does *fast* collocate with: *car*, *food*, *glance*, *meal*?
3 Which of these are compounds: *computer*, *narrow-minded*, *teapot*, *ancient monument*, *car park*?
4 What do we call expressions like *pass the buck* and *be over the moon*?

1.2 **Make ten collocations from the words in the box.**

an effort ancient bitterly make breakfast cold dark
engine forbidden mistakes have make meal monument
pitch powerful strictly substantial TV watch

1.3 **Are these statements about collocations true or false?**

1 Learning collocations will make your English sound more natural.
2 Learning collocations will help you to express yourself in a variety of ways.
3 Learning collocations will help you to write better English.
4 Using collocations properly will get you better marks in exams.
5 You will not be understood unless you use collocations properly.

1.4 **Put the expressions from the box into the correct category in the table below.**

make a mistake a storm in a tea cup live music checkpoint key ring
pull somebody's leg heavy snow valid passport teapot bitterly disappointed

compound	collocation	idiom

1.5 **Underline the collocations in this text.**

When I left university I made a decision to take up a profession in which I could be creative. I could play the guitar, but I'd never written any songs. Nonetheless, I decided to become a singer-songwriter. I made some recordings but I had a rather heavy cold, so they didn't sound good. I made some more, and sent them to a record company and waited for them to reply.
So, while I was waiting to become famous, I got a job in a fast-food restaurant. That was five years ago.
I'm still doing the same job.

COLIN LIVERPOOL, ENGLAND

2 Finding, recording and learning collocations

A Finding collocations

There are two main ways in which you can find collocations.

- You can train yourself to notice them whenever you read or listen to anything in English.

  Look at the collocations that are worth learning from this short text in English.

After **giving** Mark a **lift** to the airport, Julie **made her way** home. What an exciting **life** he **led**! At times Julie felt **desperately jealous** of him. She **spent her time** doing little more than **taking care of** him and the children. Now her sister was **getting divorced** and would doubtless be **making demands on** her too. Julie had promised to **give** her sister **a call** as soon as she got home but she decided to **run** herself **a bath** first. She had a **sharp pain** in her side and hoped that a hot bath might **ease the pain**.

Tip

Get into the habit of making a note of any good collocations you come across in any English text you read.

- You can find them in any good learner's dictionary.

  For example, if you look up the word *sharp* you will find some of these collocations:

  a **sharp pain**
  a **sharp bend/turn**
  a **sharp contrast/difference/distinction**
  a **sharp rise/increase/drop**

Tip

When you look up a new word, make a point of noting it down in several different collocations.

B Recording collocations

The best way to record a collocation is in a phrase or a sentence showing how it is used. Highlight the collocation by underlining it or by using a highlighting pen.

For example: I don't have access to that kind of secret information.
Or: Jim gave me a very useful piece of advice.

C Learning collocations

Learning collocations is not so different from learning any vocabulary item. The key things are to:

- regularly revise what you want to learn
- practise using what you want to learn in contexts that are meaningful for you personally
- learn collocations in groups to help you fix them in your memory. You might group together collocations relating to the same topic. Or you might group collocations based on the same word, for example:

  I must **find a way** to help him.

  Can you **find your way** back to my house?

  I **learnt the hard way** that Jack can't be trusted.

  Please tell me if I'm **getting in your way**.

  You must **give way to** traffic from the left.

  I've **tried every possible way** to get him to change his mind.

Exercises

2.1 Underline 11 collocations in this text.

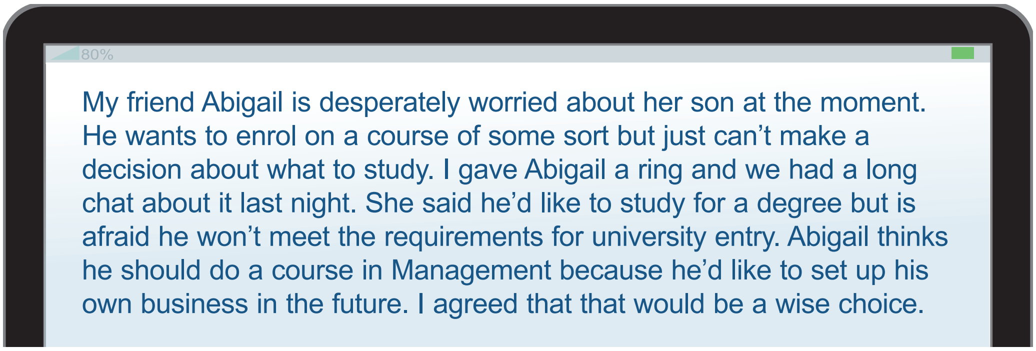

My friend Abigail is desperately worried about her son at the moment. He wants to enrol on a course of some sort but just can't make a decision about what to study. I gave Abigail a ring and we had a long chat about it last night. She said he'd like to study for a degree but is afraid he won't meet the requirements for university entry. Abigail thinks he should do a course in Management because he'd like to set up his own business in the future. I agreed that that would be a wise choice.

2.2 Match the beginning of each sentence on the left with its ending on the right.

1 She's having	her duty.
2 She's taking	a lecture.
3 She's giving	a party.
4 She's making	an exam.
5 She's doing	good progress.

2.3 Correct the eight collocation errors in this text. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

In the morning I made some work in the garden, then I spent a rest for about an hour before going out to have some shopping in town. It was my sister's birthday and I wanted to do a special effort to cook a nice meal for her. I gave a look at a new Thai cookery book in the bookshop and decided to buy it. It has some totally easy recipes and I managed to do a good impression with my very first Thai meal. I think my sister utterly enjoyed her birthday.

2.4 Look at this entry for the verb *lead* in the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary*. What collocations could you learn from this entry? Underline or highlight them. Then write one new sentence for each of them.

lead CONTROL Ⓔ /liːd/ *verb* [I or T] (**led**, **led**) to control a group of people, a country, or a situation: *I think we've chosen the right person to lead the expedition.* ○ *I've asked Gemma to lead the discussion.* ○ *Who will be leading the inquiry into the accident?*
● **lead *sb* by the nose** *INFORMAL* to control someone and make them do exactly what you want them to do

See also **Unit 3**, **Using your dictionary**.

Over to you

Use a dictionary to find three or four other good collocations for each of these words:

desperately pain wise run

Write the collocations you find in an appropriate way in your vocabulary notebook.

3

Using your dictionary

A good learner's dictionary will give you information on collocations. Sometimes the information is highlighted in some special way. In other cases, the examples used in the dictionary include the most common collocations.

In the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary* (CALD), common and useful collocations are given in **bold type**. Look at the CALD entry for the word *pain* and note how useful collocations are highlighted in bold.

> **pain** Ⓔ /peɪn/ *noun* [**C** or **U**] **1** a feeling of physical suffering caused by injury or illness: *Her symptoms included abdominal pain and vomiting.* ○ *Are you* ***in*** (= suffering from) *pain?* ○ *She was in* ***constant*** *pain.* ○ *These tablets should help to* ***ease*** *the pain.* ○ *I felt a* ***sharp*** *pain* ***in*** *my foot.* ○ *He's been suffering various* ***aches and*** *pains for years.* **2** emotional or mental suffering: *It's a film about the pains and pleasures of parenthood.* ○ *The parents are still in great pain* ***over*** *the death of their child.*
> ● **a pain (in the neck)** *INFORMAL* someone or something that is very annoying: *That child is a* ***real*** *pain in the neck.*

Online dictionaries are very useful because you can search for a lot more information very quickly. The Cambridge Dictionary (dictionary.cambridge.org) provides definitions as well as more examples including the key word and links to the SMART Thesaurus. The SMART Thesaurus gives synonyms, related words and phrases of the word you are looking up. Here is the entry for 'advice' in the Cambridge online dictionary.

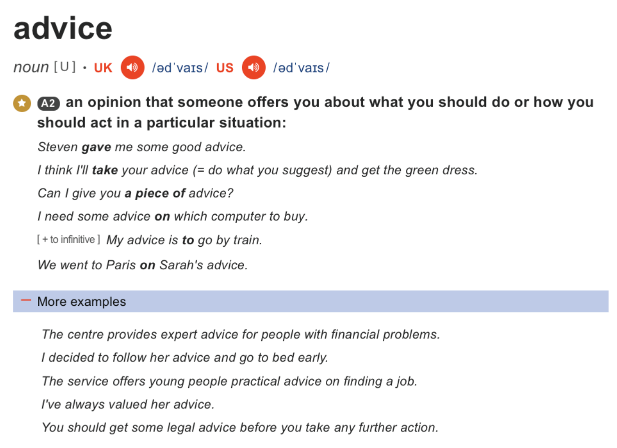

advice

noun [U] • UK /ədˈvaɪs/ US /ədˈvaɪs/

A2 **an opinion that someone offers you about what you should do or how you should act in a particular situation:**

Steven ***gave*** *me some good advice.*

I think I'll ***take*** *your advice (= do what you suggest) and get the green dress.*

Can I give you ***a piece of*** *advice?*

I need some advice ***on*** *which computer to buy.*

[+ to infinitive] *My advice is* ***to*** *go by train.*

We went to Paris ***on*** *Sarah's advice.*

— More examples

The centre provides expert advice for people with financial problems.

I decided to follow her advice and go to bed early.

The service offers young people practical advice on finding a job.

I've always valued her advice.

You should get some legal advice before you take any further action.

A good dictionary will also tell you if a collocation is formal or informal. For example, CALD indicates that **to take somebody up on an offer** is an informal collocation (**accept an offer** would be a more formal alternative).

> **offer** Ⓔ /ˈɒf.əʳ/ ㊣ /ˈɑː.fɚ/ *noun* [**C**] when someone asks you if you would like to have something or if you would like them to do something: *"If you like I can do some shopping for you." "That's a very kind offer."* ○ *I must say the offer* ***of*** *a weekend in Barcelona quite tempts me.* ○ *INFORMAL One day I'll* ***take*** *you* ***up on*** (= accept) *that offer.*

Tip

When you buy a dictionary, make sure it gives good, clear information about collocations. When you look up words, if you don't know the collocations, highlight them in your dictionary or transfer them to your vocabulary notebook.

Exercises

3.1 Answer these questions about collocations and dictionaries.

1 How does the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary* show collocations?
2 Which five collocations can you see in the top box on the opposite page?
3 Why is an online dictionary particularly useful?
4 What information does the online Thesaurus usually show?
5 How does the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary* indicate that a collocation is informal?
6 Look at the dictionary that you normally use. Does it indicate collocations? If so, how?
7 Look up *pain* in your own dictionary. Which of the collocations on the left-hand page does it either highlight or illustrate in example sentences?
8 Look up the noun *offer* in your own dictionary. What collocations can you find? Does the dictionary indicate whether the collocations are formal or informal? If so, how?

3.2 Put the expressions from the box into the correct category in the table below.

to alleviate pain to cause pain to complain of pain
to ease pain to experience pain to feel pain to inflict pain
to lessen pain to be racked with pain to relieve pain
to soothe pain pain subsides to suffer pain

making others experience pain	the experience of being in pain	making pain go away

3.3 Look in a good learner's dictionary. What collocations do you find there for the word *ache*?

Over to you

Look up two or three words that you have recently learnt, using a good learner's dictionary. Write down any interesting collocations that are shown for those words.

4 Types of collocation

There are many different types of collocation. Here are some examples.

A Adjectives and nouns

Notice adjectives that are typically used with particular nouns.

Emma always wears red or yellow or some other **bright colour**.
We had a **brief chat** about the exams but didn't have time to discuss them properly.
Unemployment is a **major problem** for the government at the moment.
Improving the health service is another **key issue** for government.

B Nouns and verbs

Notice how nouns and verbs often go together. The examples below are all to do with economics and business.

The **economy boomed** in the 1990s. [the economy was very strong]
The company has **grown** and now employs 50 more people than last year.
The company has **expanded** and now has branches in most major cities.
The two **companies merged** in 2013 and now form one very large corporation.
The company **launched the product** in 2012. [introduced the product]
The price increase **poses a problem** for us. [is a problem]
The internet has **created opportunities** for our business. [brought new opportunities]

C Noun + noun

There are a lot of collocations with the pattern *a … of …* .

As Max read the lies about him, he felt **a surge of anger**. [literary: a sudden angry feeling]
Every parent feels **a sense of pride** when their child does well or wins something.
I felt **a pang of nostalgia** when I saw the old photos of the village where I grew up.

D Verbs and expressions with prepositions

Some verbs collocate with particular prepositional expressions.

As Jack went on stage to receive his gold medal for the judo competition you could see his parents **swelling with pride**. [looking extremely proud]
I was **filled with horror** when I read the newspaper report of the explosion.
When she spilt juice on her new skirt the little girl **burst into tears**. [suddenly started crying]

E Verbs and adverbs

Some verbs have particular adverbs which regularly collocate with them.

She **pulled steadily** on the rope and helped him to safety. [pulled firmly and evenly]
He **placed** the beautiful vase **gently** on the window ledge.
'I love you and want to marry you,' Dylan **whispered softly** to Madison.
She **smiled proudly** as she looked at the photos of her new grandson.

F Adverbs and adjectives

Adjectives often have particular adverbs which regularly collocate with them.

They are **happily married**.
I am **fully aware** that there are serious problems. [I know well]
Harry was **blissfully unaware** that he was in danger. [Harry had no idea at all, often used about something unpleasant]

Exercises

4.1 Complete each sentence with a collocation from A.

1 Come to my office ten minutes before the meeting so we can have …
2 With her lovely dark hair Ella looks best when she wears …
3 In your essay on the influence of TV, don't forget to discuss these …
4 There is some crime in our town but it isn't …

4.2 Replace the underlined words with a collocating verb from B.

1 We are going to introduce an exciting new product in June.
2 The economy was extremely high 30 years ago.
3 The new university they are planning will provide a lot of job opportunities.
4 There are always some problems when two companies join together but I think it will be worth it in the long run.
5 The increase in oil prices certainly creates a problem for us.
6 The company got bigger and has now added children's clothing to its product range.

4.3 Choose the correct feeling from the box to complete each sentence.

anger	horror	tears	nostalgia	pride	pride

1 Most older people feel a slight pang of .... as they think back on their schooldays.
2 Grace's father was filled with .... when he saw that she had dyed her beautiful black hair blonde.
3 When Daniel saw how harshly the poor were treated by the wealthy landowners he felt a surge of ....
4 Swelling with ...., Jack watched his daughter pick up her violin and play.
5 When she saw her exam results, Kate burst into ....
6 If people have a sense of .... in their town, they are more likely to behave well there.

4.4 Look at E and F and choose the correct adverb to complete these sentences.

1 Perhaps it's a good thing that Liam's .... unaware of what people really think of him.
2 I am .... aware that there will be problems whatever we decide.
3 Stella smiled .... as she watched the children playing happily in the garden.
4 My grandparents have been .... married for 45 years.
5 Place the glasses .... in the box – they're very fragile.
6 William whispered .... in Anna's ear that he would always love her.

4.5 Which of the sections A–F on the opposite page would each of these collocations fit into?

1 make a decision
2 blissfully happy
3 tread carefully
4 a surge of emotion
5 acutely embarrassing
6 roar with laughter
7 a key factor
8 prices rise
9 a ginger cat
10 burst into song

Over to you

Make a page in your vocabulary notebook for each of the types of collocation listed on the opposite page.

5 Register

Often, collocations rather than individual words suggest a particular register. For example, phrases using *pretty* meaning *fairly* sound informal when used with negative adjectives (**pretty awful**, **pretty dreadful**, **pretty dull**), and are typical of spoken English.

A Spoken English

Here are some more collocations which are almost exclusively found in spoken English.

I'm **bored stiff**[1] in this lesson!

You **badly need** a haircut!

I'll **have a think** about it and let you know.

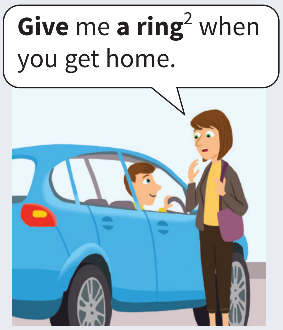
Give me **a ring**[2] when you get home.

[1] extremely bored

[2] give me a phone call

B Formal English

Some collocations are typical of formal English and are most likely to be found in an official, often legal, context, such as in notices.

Passengers must not **alight from the bus** whilst it is in motion.

[get off the bus]

CYCLISTS must **dismount** here

[get off their bicycles]

Trespassers will be **prosecuted**

[people who go onto someone's land or enter their building without permission will be taken to court]

Please **dispose of**[1] **unwanted items** in the **receptacle**[2] provided

[1] throw away

[2] container used for storing or putting objects in

C Newspaper English

Some collocations – particularly ones that use short, dramatic words – are found mainly in newspapers. In most cases they would not normally be used in everyday conversation.

COMPUTER FACTORY TO AXE JOBS

[make staff redundant]

AIRLINE SLASHES PRICES

[cuts prices drastically]

Government **spending** will **rocket** this year

POLICE CRACK DOWN ON SPEEDING

[start dealing with it in a more severe way]

POLICE QUIZ 16-YEAR-OLD IN MURDER ENQUIRY

[ask questions]

FLU **OUTBREAK HITS** SOUTHERN EUROPE

D Business English

Some collocations are characteristic of business English.

to **submit a tender** [present a document offering to do a job and stating the price]
to **raise capital** [get money to put into a business]
to **go into partnership with** someone [agree to start or run a business with someone]
to **start up a business**

Exercises

5.1 Underline formal (F) or informal (I) collocations in these sentences (one per sentence) and put F or I in the brackets at the end.

1 Cyclists should dismount before crossing the footbridge. ( )
2 Never dispose of batteries and similar items by throwing them onto a fire. ( )
3 The students were all bored stiff by the lecture. ( )
4 Passengers must alight from the bus through the rear door. ( )
5 The grass badly needs cutting. ( )
6 Please place all used tickets in the receptacle provided as you leave the building. ( )

5.2 Underline typical news/media collocations in these newspaper clips.

1

OIL COMPANIES SLASH PRICES

There was good news for motorists today as pump prices were lowered by the major oil companies.

2

DETECTIVES QUIZ BUSINESSMAN OVER MISSING TEENAGER

Senior detectives interviewed a man who has been named as prime suspect in the case of a missing 18-year-old who is feared to have been abducted.

3

FLOODS HIT CENTRAL REGION

Towns and villages in the Central region were battling against floods tonight as heavy rain continued.

4

CAR FIRM TO AXE 200 JOBS

The Presco car firm has announced that 200 workers will be made redundant at its Kenton factory. The job losses are the result of falling profits.

5.3 Rewrite the headlines in exercise 5.2 using collocations more typical of ordinary conversation, as if you were telling a friend the news. Start each answer with 'Have you heard …?' Use a dictionary if necessary.

5.4 Match the beginning of each sentence on the left with its ending on the right to make typical collocations used in business English.

1 We raised	partnership to develop a new range of products.
2 They submitted	capital to expand the business.
3 They went into	a business to supply sports equipment to schools.
4 We started up	a tender for the new stadium.

5.5 Choose a formal or informal collocation as instructed at the end of each sentence. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 She was *dead* / *extremely* keen to meet the new coach. (informal)
2 We will be *boarding the aircraft* / *getting on the plane* in about ten minutes. (formal)
3 Mr Trotter *paid for* / *bore the cost of* the repairs. (formal)
4 I *withdrew from* / *dropped out of* my university course after a year. (informal)
5 The marketing manager *launched into* / *embarked upon* a detailed explanation of her new strategy. (informal)

6 Intensifying adverbs

In English there are lots of other ways of saying *very* or *very much*. For example, we can use words such as *highly*, *utterly*, *bitterly*, *deeply*. These alternatives collocate strongly with specific words, and other combinations often sound unnatural.

A *Highly*

collocations	comments
(un)likely unusual successful competitive profitable effective controversial recommended	*Highly* is used with some probability words (*likely*, *unusual*). With the exception of **highly controversial** it usually combines with very positive words. **Extremely** can also be used with all the opposite adjectives except *recommended*.

It is **highly unlikely** that I'll finish my work on time.
Julia's **highly unusual** behaviour began to worry her parents.

B *Absolutely, utterly*

collocations	comments
ridiculous stupid impossible wrong alone appalled convinced devastated miserable	*Absolutely* and (slightly more formal) *utterly* combine with adjectives with very extreme meanings where we can't use *very*. For example, we say **absolutely/utterly exhausted**, not *~~very~~ exhausted*, whereas we say *very tired*, but not *~~absolutely~~* or *~~utterly~~ tired*. Often, but not always, these words have negative connotations.

It was an **absolutely stupid** comment to make.
The whole area was **utterly devastated** after the earthquake.

C *Bitterly, deeply, ridiculously, strongly*

word	collocations	comments
bitterly	**disappointing/disappointed resent criticise regret complain cry weep**	carries a feeling of deep sadness; used slightly more in writing than in conversation
deeply	**ashamed concerned shocked committed moved affected** **hurt** (of feelings) **regret care religious unhappy**	collocates mainly with words associated with feelings; used slightly more in writing than in conversation
ridiculously	**cheap expensive easy low high long short small large early**	suggests something extreme, which seems unbelievable or unreasonable
strongly	**oppose influence believe deny recommend support condemn suggest feel argue object**	collocates with verbs, particularly verbs that relate to having an opinion

I was **bitterly disappointed** when I failed the exam.
Professor McDellvit was always **deeply committed** to her students.
The restaurant was **ridiculously expensive**. I don't think we'll go there again.
I would **strongly recommend** that you learn a foreign language.

Exercises

6.1 Choose an adverb from the box to replace *very* in each of these expressions.

utterly strongly bitterly ridiculously highly deeply

1 very ashamed
2 very cheap
3 very controversial
4 very stupid
5 very successful
6 very disappointing
7 very opposed
8 very ridiculous
9 very easy
10 very concerned

6.2 Use a collocation from exercise 6.1 to complete each of these sentences.

1 The flight from London to Rome was .... It only cost 20 euros.
2 Some people love her new book, others are very angry about it. It is ....
3 His father was a peace campaigner all his life and was .... to war.
4 The exam results were .... for the whole class. We had all expected to do much better.
5 When I realised how much my selfish behaviour had upset everyone, I was ....
6 In the 1990s she ran a(n) .... company which made outstanding profits.
7 Everyone got more than 95% correct in the test; it was ....
8 You must apologise immediately. It was a(n) .... remark to make.
9 She has always been .... about the environment and would like to work for a conservation agency.
10 That you should even *think* that I would steal money from you is .... ! You must be crazy!

6.3 In each of these sets of phrases, one is not a correct collocation. Cross out the incorrect one.

1 strongly recommend strongly influence strongly love strongly dislike
2 highly educated highly profitable highly unusual highly exhausted
3 bitterly regard bitterly regret bitterly resent bitterly criticise
4 absolutely convinced absolutely tired absolutely devastated absolutely absurd
5 deeply unhappy deeply religious deeply successful deeply committed

6.4 In this short text, the writer has often misused the word *strongly*. Correct the wrong collocations using adverbs from the box. Use each adverb once only.

COMMUNITY NEWS

Everyone was complaining strongly when they heard about the new plan. People were strongly shocked to hear that children would be strongly forbidden to use the sports ground and most people were strongly opposed to the new rules. Even people who normally never expressed an opinion were strongly appalled by the proposals.

bitterly strictly deeply utterly

7 Everyday verbs 1

This unit deals with *make* and *do*, two verbs that many learners have problems with. If you remember that the basic meaning of *make* is about producing something and the basic meaning of *do* is about performing an action, then the collocations on this page may seem more logical.

A *Make*

collocation	example
make arrangements for	The school can **make arrangements for** pupils with special needs.
make a change / changes	The new manager is planning to **make some changes**.
make a choice	Amelia had to **make a choice** between her career and her family.
make a comment / comments	Would anyone like to **make any comments** on the talk?
make a contribution to	She **made a** useful **contribution to** the discussion.
make a decision	I'm glad it's you who has to **make the decision**, not me.
make an effort	Michael is really **making an effort** with his maths this term.
make an excuse	I'm too tired to go out tonight. Let's **make an excuse** and stay at home.
make friends	Caroline is very good at **making friends**.
make an improvement	Repainting the room has really **made an improvement**.
make a mistake	They've **made a mistake** in our bill.
make a phone call	I've got to **make some phone calls** before dinner.
make progress	Holly is **making progress** with all her schoolwork.

B *Do*

collocation	example
do your best	All that matters in the exam is to **do your best**.
do damage	The storm **did some damage** to our roof.
do an experiment	We are **doing an experiment** to test how the metal reacts with water.
do exercises	We'll **do some exercises** practising these collocations tomorrow.
do someone a good turn / do someone a favour	Could you **do me a favour** and pick me up some milk from the supermarket? Jess **did me a good turn** by lending me her car while mine was in the garage.
do harm	Changing the rules may **do** more **harm** than good.
do your hair	No, I'm not ready. I haven't **done my hair** yet.
do your homework	My son has to **do his homework** straight after school.
do the ironing/shopping/washing, etc.	I'll **do the washing** if you **do the ironing**.
do some work	We'll **do some work** on our project and then we'll go to the cinema.

Tip

Notice all the patterns that you can see in these tables. For example, *make a comment*, *make an excuse* and *make a contribution to a discussion* are all connected with saying things.
Noticing connections like this may help you to remember the correct collocation.

Exercises

7.1 **Use a collocation with *make* and a noun instead of the underlined words in each of these conversations.**

1 Naomi: The bill says we've had three desserts. We only had two.
Stella: The waiter must have been mistaken.

2 Avery: It's so difficult. Should I take the job or not?
Owen: I know it's difficult. But you have to decide one way or the other.

3 Grace: Can you and Ethan come to dinner on Saturday?
Lily: Yes, we'll have to arrange to get a babysitter, but it should be OK.

4 Zoe: Did you hear about the air traffic controllers' strike in the USA?
Aaron: Yes. We had to change our travel itinerary because of it.

5 Luke: Can I have chips *and* rice with my lunch?
Clare: No, you have to choose, chips or rice, but not both.

6 Gavin: Do you intend to speak at the meeting?
Victoria: Yes, I hope I can contribute to the debate.

7.2 **Choose the correct collocation, *do* or *make*.**

1 Did the fire *do / make* much damage to the factory?
2 I hate *doing / making* my homework at the last minute.
3 You must *do / make* an effort to work harder.
4 Did you *do / make* any work at the weekend?
5 We are trying to *do / make* improvements to the system for registering.
6 Do you think it would *do / make* any harm if I cut some leaves off this plant?

7.3 **You are designing a questionnaire for your school website. Complete each question with *do* or *make*.**

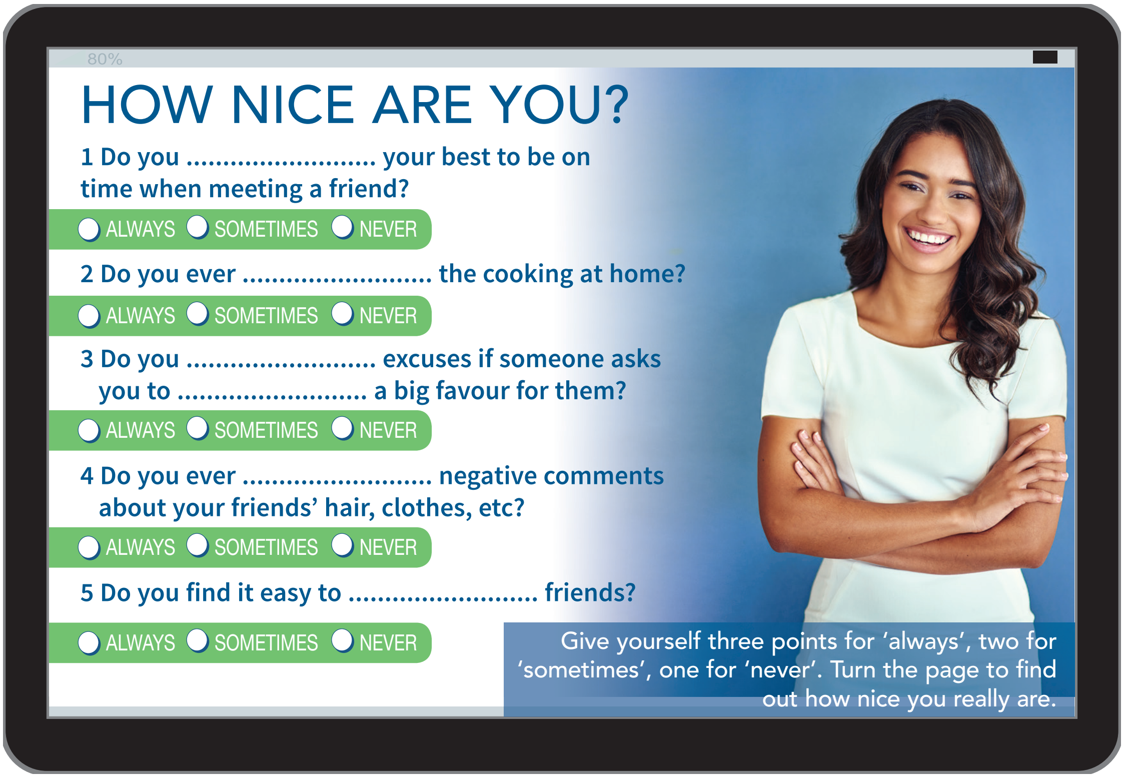

HOW NICE ARE YOU?

1 Do you .... your best to be on time when meeting a friend?
○ ALWAYS ○ SOMETIMES ○ NEVER

2 Do you ever .... the cooking at home?
○ ALWAYS ○ SOMETIMES ○ NEVER

3 Do you .... excuses if someone asks you to .... a big favour for them?
○ ALWAYS ○ SOMETIMES ○ NEVER

4 Do you ever .... negative comments about your friends' hair, clothes, etc?
○ ALWAYS ○ SOMETIMES ○ NEVER

5 Do you find it easy to .... friends?
○ ALWAYS ○ SOMETIMES ○ NEVER

Give yourself three points for 'always', two for 'sometimes', one for 'never'. Turn the page to find out how nice you really are.

8 Everyday verbs 2

Get is a very common verb in English, but it is not always appropriate for talking about changes. Note also alternatives to *get* which can improve your style.

A *Go*, not *get*

Go is used for changes in people's personality, appearance and physical abilities:
People **go mad/bald/grey/blind/deaf**.

Go is often used for sudden, usually negative, changes:
He was very embarrassed and his face **went red**.
Suddenly the sky **went** very **dark** and it started to rain.

Go can also be used for slower colour changes:
The pages of the book had **gone yellow** over the years.

B *Turn*, not *get*

Turn often collocates with colours:
The sky **turned gold** as the sun set.
When the tomatoes **turn red**, the farmers pick them and sell them.
The news gave his mother such a shock that her hair **turned white** overnight.

C *Get* and *become*

Get and *become* can often be used with the same collocations, but *become* is more formal and is therefore more appropriate in essays:
She gave up smoking when she **became pregnant**.
I would like to **become involved** in raising money for charity.

The same is true for collocations with adjectives such as *angry*, *bored*, *excited*, *depressed*, *upset*, *impatient*, *violent*:
He **became depressed** after his wife's death.

Become, not *get*, is used with the following: *extinct*, *(un)popular*, *homeless*, *famous*.
Our local baker's has **become famous** for its apple tarts.

D Alternatives to *get* and *become*

She **fell ill** and was taken to hospital.
Everyone **fell silent** when they heard the shocking news.
As my father **grew older**, he spent less time working.
The noise **grew louder** and soon we realised it was a plane approaching.

E Overusing and misusing *get*

Here are some sentences from students' essays where *get* is wrongly used.

sentences with *get*	more appropriate alternatives
I was able to get new friends.	I was able to **make** new **friends**.
A year ago he got a heart attack.	A year ago he **had/suffered a heart attack**.
If I get a child of my own one day ...	If I **have a child** of my own one day ...
I was getting crazy.	I was **going crazy**.
In June, I got a baby, James.	In June, I **had a baby**, James.

Exercises

8.1 Answer these questions using collocations from A and B.

1 What can happen to men as they get older? (Clue: Think of their hair.)
2 What can happen if you are embarrassed? (Clue: Think of your face.)
3 What can happen if you get bad news? (Clue: Think of your face or hair.)
4 What can happen to the pages of a newspaper after a long time?
5 What happens to strawberries as they ripen?
6 The poet John Milton lost his eyesight at the end of his life. What is another way of saying that?
7 The composer Beethoven lost his hearing at the end of his life. What is another way of saying that?
8 At the end of Shakespeare's play, Hamlet loses his mind. What is another way of saying that?
9 If it is about to rain, what might happen to the sky?

8.2 Look at C, D and E opposite. Correct these sentences.

1 Dinosaurs got extinct thousands of years ago.
2 When I get married, I'd like to get lots of children.
3 Jasmine fell depressed after failing her final exams.
4 Niklas has always dreamt of getting famous.
5 Would you be interested in growing involved in this project?
6 More people have got homeless this year than in any previous year.
7 My sister got a baby last week.
8 My grandfather got a heart attack last winter.

8.3 Replace each use of *get* with a verb from the box.

fall	become	grow	have	make

As you get older, you'll begin to understand your parents better. Getting angry with them all the time doesn't help. You may not want to go to summer camp when none of your friends will be there, but your parents know you will soon get new friends there. You would all have gone on a family holiday together if your grandmother hadn't got ill, but surely you can understand why they don't want to leave her. You'll feel much more sympathetic to your parents' feelings when you get a child of your own!

8.4 Complete the collocations in these sentences.

1 I think I'd go .... if I had to put up with such a terrible boss!
2 It was a wonderful sunset. The sky .... gold and we sat on the terrace enjoying it.
3 Once upon a time the walls were probably cream but they have .... brown now and badly need repainting.
4 When I start .... grey, I'm definitely going to dye my hair.
5 As the head teacher walked into the hall, the children all .... silent.
6 The noise on the street .... louder and I looked out of the window to see what was happening.
7 My grandmother is a little afraid of .... ill while she is abroad.
8 I was so embarrassed that I .... bright red.

9 Everyday verbs 3

A *Have*

Note that these verbs collocate with *have* rather than any other verb (e.g. *get* or *make*).

collocation	example
have an accident	Mr Grey **had an accident** last night but he's OK now.
have an argument / a row	We **had an argument / a row** about how to fix the car.
have a break	Let's **have a break** when you finish this exercise.
have a conversation/chat	I hope we'll have time to **have a chat** after the meeting.
have difficulty	The class **had difficulty** understanding what to do.
have a dream/nightmare	I **had a nightmare** last night.
have an experience	I **had a** frightening **experience** the other day.
have a feeling	I **have a feeling** that something is wrong.
have fun / a good time	I'm sure you'll **have fun** on the school trip.
have a look	The manager wanted to **have a look** at what we were doing.
have a party	Let's **have a party** at the end of term.
have a problem / problems	Ask the teacher if you **have problems** with the exercise.
have a try/go	I'll explain what to do and then you can **have a go/try**.

B *Take*

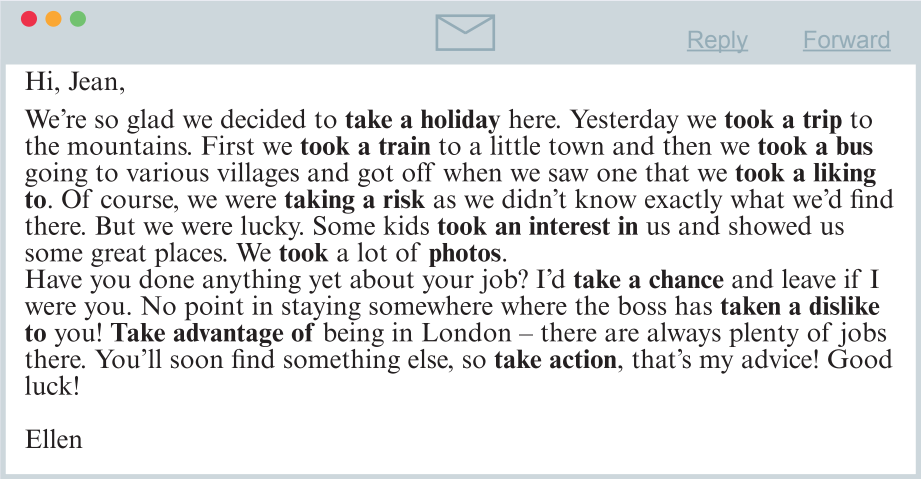

Hi, Jean,

We're so glad we decided to **take a holiday** here. Yesterday we **took a trip** to the mountains. First we **took a train** to a little town and then we **took a bus** going to various villages and got off when we saw one that we **took a liking to**. Of course, we were **taking a risk** as we didn't know exactly what we'd find there. But we were lucky. Some kids **took an interest in** us and showed us some great places. We **took** a lot of **photos**.
Have you done anything yet about your job? I'd **take a chance** and leave if I were you. No point in staying somewhere where the boss has **taken a dislike to** you! **Take advantage of** being in London – there are always plenty of jobs there. You'll soon find something else, so **take action**, that's my advice! Good luck!

Ellen

C *Pay*

collocation	example
pay attention	You must **pay attention** to the teacher.
pay a compliment	I was trying to **pay** her **a compliment** but she misunderstood.
pay your (last) respects	At a funeral people **pay their last respects** to the person who has died.
pay tribute [formal]	When Jack retired, his boss made a speech **paying tribute** to all he had done for the company.

Tip

There are other common verbs in English which have strong and possibly surprising collocations. Notice any that you find with, for example, *break*, *fall*, *run* and *take*.

Exercises

9.1 Complete the questions using collocations from A opposite.

1 You want a friend to look at a letter you have written before you send it.
YOU: Could you ....?
2 You want to know why your two friends aren't speaking to each other.
YOU: Why aren't you speaking to Hazel? Did you ....?
3 A friend comes to school on crutches with a bandage round her head.
YOU: What happened? Did you ....?
4 You want to know if a friend did lots of enjoyable things on their recent holiday.
YOU: How was the holiday? Did you ....?
5 You are having a meeting with some colleagues. You think it is time to stop for half an hour or so.
YOU: Shall we ....?
6 A friend has just bought a new bicycle. You'd like to ride it to see what it's like.
YOU: Nice bike! Can I ....?
7 You want to talk informally to your tutor about what to do next year.
YOU: When you're free, could I ....?
8 A friend is trying with difficulty to read your address, which you have just written down for them.
YOU: What's the matter? Are you ....?

9.2 Choose the correct collocation.

1 She *had / took / paid* attention to what I told her and started working harder.
2 I *had / made / took* over a hundred photographs on my trip to Antarctica.
3 She *made / paid / brought* me a nice compliment yesterday.
4 I *got / made / had* a bad dream last night and woke up sweating.
5 The President *made / gave / paid* tribute to all the people who had supported him.
6 I *got / took / had* a liking to my new doctor the moment I met her.
7 I *gave / made / had* a feeling I had met Richard before, but I couldn't remember where.
8 I went to Douglas Farnham's funeral to *give / take / pay* my last respects to a fine man.
9 I think I'll *take / make / do* a chance and leave my flight booking till the last minute. I may get a cheaper ticket.
10 Shall we *make / get / have* a party for Ruby? She's moving to Manchester next week.
11 We need to *make / get / take* action immediately!
12 I *had / got / took* a feeling that he was trying to hide something from me.

9.3 Which collocations in this text could be replaced by collocations with *take* instead of the verbs used?

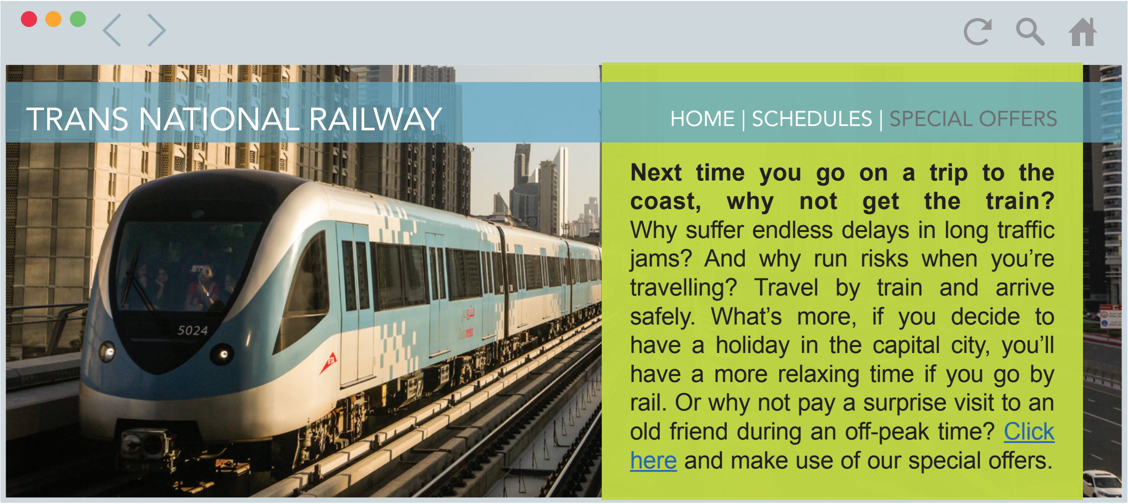

Next time you go on a trip to the coast, why not get the train? Why suffer endless delays in long traffic jams? And why run risks when you're travelling? Travel by train and arrive safely. What's more, if you decide to have a holiday in the capital city, you'll have a more relaxing time if you go by rail. Or why not pay a surprise visit to an old friend during an off-peak time? Click here and make use of our special offers.

10 Synonyms and confusable words 1

A Common synonym pairs

The (a) and (b) words in each pair in the table have similar meanings. Sometimes either word can be used in a sentence to give the same meaning, but in the collocations below only one word is possible.

synonyms	(a) example	(b) example
(a) close (b) shut	The chairperson **closed the meeting** at 4.30. [We **close meetings/discussions/conferences**, etc.]	She was very rude. She said '**Shut your mouth!**' [impolite way of telling someone not to speak] A dentist might ask you to *close* your mouth. *Shut* is generally more informal.
(a) start (b) begin	It was a cold morning and I could not **start my car**. [*Start*, NOT ~~begin~~, is used for engines and vehicles.]	Before **the universe began**, time and space did not exist. [*Begin* is preferred in more formal and abstract contexts.]
(a) big (b) large	It was a **big decision** to make. There were some **big problems** to solve.	I wanted the sweater in the **large size** but they only had medium.
(a) end (b) finish	The **film ended with** the hero dying. They **ended their relationship** a year ago. [*End* here means decide to stop.]	I haven't **finished my homework** yet. [*Finish* here means complete.]

B Groups of words with similar meanings

Words meaning 'old'

I met an **old friend** the other day. It's a very **old building**.
She studied **ancient history**. In **ancient times**, life was very hard.
This shop sells **antique furniture**. She collects **antique jewellery**. [old and valuable]
I helped an **elderly person** who was trying to cross the road. [*elderly* is more polite than *old*]

Words meaning 'with no one or nothing else or with nothing similar'

Donna is a **single parent**; it's difficult for her to work full time.
He lives in a very **lonely place/spot** up in the mountains.
At first I felt **desperately lonely** when I moved from London to the countryside.
I **live alone**, but I don't like **travelling alone**; it's nice to be with someone.
There was just one **solitary figure** on the otherwise deserted beach. [one person on their own]
She was the **sole survivor** of the crash. Everyone else died. [only survivor]
I am **an only child**; I sometimes wonder what it would be like to have a brother or sister.
This is a **unique occasion**, with three past Prime Ministers all together in one room.

C Other synonym pairs

synonyms	(a) example	(b) example
(a) charge (b) load	I need to **charge my phone**. [used for batteries, electrical items]	They **loaded the lorry** and drove away. [used for cargoes, lorries, vans, ships, etc. and for weapons]
(a) injure (b) damage	Three **injured people** were taken to hospital after the accident. [collocates with words to do with people]	The shop tried to sell me a **damaged sofa** but I noticed it just in time. [collocates with words for things]
(a) grow (b) raise	In the south the farmers **grow crops**. [collocates with crops, plants]	In the north the farmers mostly **raise cattle**. [collocates with animals, children]

Exercises

10.1 Choose the correct collocation.

1 The dentist told me to *shut / close* my mouth.
2 I didn't know what to do when I got into my car and couldn't *start / begin* the engine.
3 I want to buy a sweater for my dad. He needs one in a *big / large* size.
4 I haven't *finished / ended* my essay yet. I can't decide how to *finish / end* it.
5 At what time do you plan to *shut / close* the conference?
6 All societies develop their own stories about how the world *started / began*.
7 It's far too *big / large* a problem for you to solve on your own.
8 It's never easy to *finish / end* a relationship.

10.2 Look at B. Complete each phrase with a word meaning either 'old' or 'alone'.

1 a .... figure on the horizon
2 a shop selling .... furniture
3 to be an .... child
4 the .... survivor of the accident
5 to study .... history
6 to live ....
7 to feel desperately ....
8 to catch up with .... friends
9 support for .... parents
10 a home for .... people

10.3 Correct these sentences.

1 Were many people damaged in the earthquake?
2 Single parents who are growing children without a partner's support are entitled to financial help from the government.
3 My mobile isn't working. I need to load the battery.
4 She has a lot of beautiful elderly jewellery.
5 When we moved house, two men helped us to charge the van.
6 That's not news – it's antique history!
7 I don't know how to charge a gun, let alone fire one.
8 I've never been very successful at raising plants.

10.4 Which of the collocations on the opposite page do these pictures illustrate?

1

3

5

2

4

6

Over to you

Look up *big* and *large* in a good learner's dictionary of English and see what other collocations it suggests for them.

11 Synonyms and confusable words 2

A Verbs connected with gaining, winning and achieving

Note these typical collocations connected with 'gaining' or 'achieving'.

verb	collocates with	example	comments
gain	power, control, access	The Socialist Party **gained control** of the National Assembly.	*Gain* is often used with abstract nouns relating to political authority.
gain [formal]	a reputation, publicity, recognition, an advantage	Her paintings **gained recognition** thanks to a major exhibition in New York.	*Gain* is often used with abstract nouns that suggest benefit to the 'gainer'.
win	an award, a prize, a medal, a match	He **won a medal** in the 2016 Olympic Games.	*Win* is often used in contexts associated with competition.
win	a battle, a war, an election	The Conservative Party **won the** 2015 General **Election**.	*Win* is often used in contexts associated with fighting.
earn	a salary, money	I **earn $2110** a month.	You **earn money** by working for it.
make	a profit, money	The company **made a profit** last year.	You can **make money** by investing etc., not just by working.
achieve	success, your goals, your aims	It's difficult to **achieve success** in international sport.	*Achieve* is used mainly with abstract nouns.
beat/ defeat	a team, an opponent	He **defeated his opponent** in the tennis final.	You **win a match** but **beat/defeat an opponent**. *Defeat* is more formal than *beat*.

B Other words that are often confused

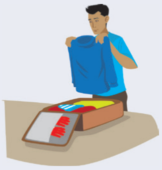
You'll need to **take** warm **clothes** when you go to Alaska. (NOT ~~carry~~)

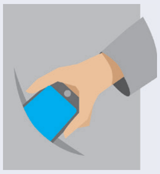
I always **carry** my **mobile phone** whenever I go out. (NOT ~~wear~~)

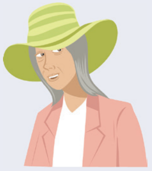
She was **wearing a hat**. (NOT ~~carrying~~)

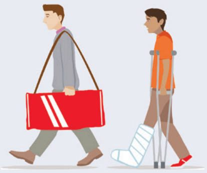
He kindly offered to **carry** my **bag** for me.

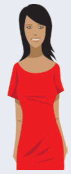
She's **wearing a dress**. (NOT ~~using~~)

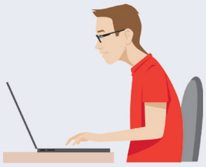
He's **using a laptop**.

Common mistakes

Notice how *spend* is used when talking about time and money.
We **spent three days** in the mountains. It was wonderful. (NOT ~~passed~~)
If you buy a big car you'll have to **spend more money** on petrol. (NOT ~~use~~)
Last night I **spent two hours** watching TV. (NOT ~~stayed~~)
I **spent an hour** looking for the keys before I found them in my bag. (NOT ~~passed~~)

Exercises

11.1 Look at A. Use a verb from the box in the correct form to complete each collocation.

achieve	beat	earn	gain	make	win

1 I don't have ambitions to .... a lot of money; I just want to be happy in life.
2 Jack has already .... a very good reputation as a talented lawyer.
3 Sophia has .... several prizes for her singing.
4 It is important to have goals even if you do not always .... them.
5 Chris .... a lot of money when he sold some old shares on the stock exchange.
6 In the tournament Hannah .... all her opponents and .... the gold medal.
7 Nowadays Alex .... a very good salary.
8 In the cycle race, Henrik .... an advantage when several of his opponents had punctures.

11.2 Look at the picture and answer the questions.

1 What is the woman wearing?
2 What is the woman carrying?
3 What is the woman using?
4 What is the man wearing?
5 What is the man using?
6 What is the man carrying?

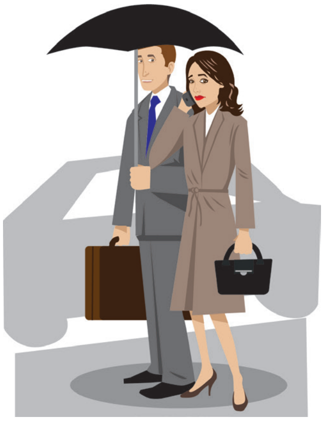

11.3 Correct the nine collocation errors in this paragraph.

Last year I got a new job and started gaining a lot more money. I realised I could afford to use more money on my holiday than I usually do and decided to pass a month in Australia. I knew it would be hot there and so I wouldn't need to carry warm clothes with me. In fact, I used a t-shirt and jeans all the time I was there. I carried a hat all the time too, of course, to protect me from the sun. It was fantastic there. I passed a week sightseeing in Sydney and then stayed the rest of the time travelling round the country. I even did my lifelong ambition of stroking a koala.

11.4 Change the underlined words so that each sentence has the opposite meaning.

1 The Democratic Party lost the election.
2 The ruling power has lost control of the situation.
3 Our team was defeated in the match.
4 I spent a lot of money last month.
5 Our company made a loss last year.

11.5 Complete these questions. Then answer them.

1 Where did you .... your last holiday?
2 How much money did you .... last week?
3 What do you always .... with you when you go out?
4 Have you ever .... a trophy?
5 What aim would you particularly like to .... in life?

12 Metaphor

If someone uses a metaphor, they use a word in a way that is slightly different from its basic meaning. For example, the first meaning of *sunny* is connected with the weather, so we talk about a **sunny day**. However, *sunny* can also be used in expressions like a **sunny smile**, the **children's sunny faces** to mean happy; in these collocations *sunny* is used in a metaphorical way. Metaphors are more common in written than spoken English and often have the effect of sounding quite poetic.

A Light and dark

Light in English is associated with happiness. So a **face shines** with pleasure and **eyes shine** with excitement or delight. If someone's **face lights up** or their **eyes light up**, they show that they suddenly feel happy. If an **atmosphere lightens** or a **mood lightens**, it becomes more relaxed or cheerful than it was.

Darkness is associated with unhappiness and negative feelings. **Dark thoughts** are gloomy or sinister ones and **dark days** or **dark times** are unpleasant times to live through. If someone's **face darkens** or their **eyes darken** or someone's **expression darkens**, then we know that that person is unhappy, often because they are feeling angry.

B Water

collocation	example	comment
ideas flow, conversation flows	It was a very successful meeting. The **ideas flowed**.	*Flow* suggests that things progress easily, without effort.
a flood / floods of tears, tears streaming down someone's face	The little girl was **in floods of tears. Tears were streaming down her face**.	Both of these metaphors about tears suggest the girl is crying a lot.
people pour/stream somewhere	**People poured** out of the hall at the end of the lecture.	*Pour* and *stream* suggest lots of people moving smoothly.
people trickle	**People trickled** into the concert hall.	*Trickle* suggests a few people moving slowly.
a stream of visitors/traffic	There was a **stream of traffic** outside our room all night.	*Stream* suggests continuous movement.

C Fire and heat

Words associated with fire and heat often suggest anger in English. A **heated debate**, a **heated discussion** or a **heated conversation** is one in which people disagree in an angry way with each other. If you say that someone has a **fiery temper**, you mean that they often get suddenly angry. The word *flare* means *show a bright light in the dark*. If you say **tempers flared**, you mean that people became angry with each other. Similarly **violence flares up** and **troubles flare up**. These all mean that problems which existed in the past suddenly become serious again.

However, not all metaphors relating to fire suggest anger. If you feel very embarrassed, your **cheeks burn with embarrassment**. A *blaze* is a very bright fire. We talk about a **blaze of glory** or a **blaze of publicity** meaning there is a lot of it and it is spectacular.

Tip

When you are reading English, try to notice metaphorical uses of language. This will help you to see how familiar words can be used in extra, interesting ways.

Exercises

12.1 Use a word from the box in the correct form to complete each collocation. Use each word once only.

shine	dark	light up	sunny	lighten	darken

1 I could tell Maria was in a good mood by the .... smile on her face.
2 The little boy's eyes .... when he saw his daddy approaching.
3 Let's put some happy music on to .... the atmosphere. Everyone's too serious.
4 My grandparents lived through the .... days of civil war from 1936 to 1939.
5 The girl's eyes .... with excitement as she prepared for the party.
6 Mr Garnham's expression .... as he was told the terrible news.

12.2 Read these remarks by different people, then answer the questions.

Jason:	I was in floods of tears. It was such a sad film.
Thomas:	An hour before the match there was already a trickle of vehicles entering the car park.
Emma:	I had a heated conversation with Alice the other day.
Madeline:	I didn't think there'd be much traffic today but there was a steady stream of vehicles on the main highway.
Rob:	Tempers flared, I'm afraid, and mine was one of them.
Charlotte:	Everyone was pouring out of the stadium as I drove past.

	name(s)
1 Who saw a lot of cars?	
2 Who got very angry indeed?	
3 Who saw a lot of people all at once?	
4 Who had a disagreement or argument?	
5 Who saw a small number of cars?	
6 Who cried over something?	

12.3 Put these words in order to make sentences.

1 with / cheeks / embarrassment / burning / were / My
2 city / up / has / in / capital / flared / the / Violence
3 flowed / The / during / discussion / ideas / the
4 divorce / was / footballer's / The / publicity / surrounded / famous / a / by / blaze / of

12.4 Answer the questions.

1 What is most likely to be fiery?
   (a) someone's intelligence (b) someone's temper
2 Which is the most typical collocation? a blaze of
   (a) temper (b) glory (c) joy
3 What is most likely to be heated?
   (a) discussions (b) cheeks (c) troubles
4 What is most likely to flare up?
   (a) love (b) interest (c) violence

12.5 Use a dictionary to find collocations using these words in a metaphorical way.

1 bright 2 warm 3 cold

13 Weather

A

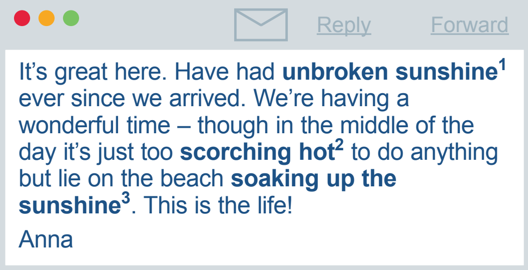

It's great here. Have had **unbroken sunshine**[1] ever since we arrived. We're having a wonderful time – though in the middle of the day it's just too **scorching hot**[2] to do anything but lie on the beach **soaking up the sunshine**[3]. This is the life!

Anna

Reply
Forward

It's been **pouring with rain** all day. In fact I've never seen such **torrential rain**[4]! It's **freezing cold** in the tent - we all **got soaked**. Every half hour we look out of the tent hoping for **a break in the clouds**. In vain! We're going to a hotel next year!

Reply
Forward

It **rained heavily** all day yesterday but it's dry at the moment. There's **thick cloud**, though, and it certainly **looks like rain**[5]. Quite **a strong wind is blowing** too! Am glad we brought warm clothes!

[1] only sunshine, no clouds in the sky
[2] extremely hot
[3] enjoying the sunshine

[4] heavy rain [5] looks as if it is going to rain

B Weather conditions

collocation	example	comment
weather deteriorates [opposite: improves]	The **weather** is likely to **deteriorate** later on today.	*Deteriorate* is quite formal – the **weather is getting worse** is more informal.
thick/dense fog patches of fog/mist a blanket of fog [literary] fog/mist comes down [opposite: lifts]	There is **thick fog** on the motorway. There are **patches of fog** on the east coast but these should **lift** by midday.	*Patches of fog/mist* are small areas of fog/mist, whereas *a blanket of fog/mist* is thicker and more extensive.
strong sun [opposite: weak]	Avoid going on the beach at midday when the **sun is strongest**.	
heavy rain (NOT ~~strong~~ rain) driving rain	Road conditions are difficult because of the **driving rain**.	*driving rain* = rain falling fast and heavily
heavy/fresh/crisp/thick/driving snow	The **snow** is lovely and **crisp** this morning.	*crisp snow* = snow that is fresh and hard
hard frost	There will be a **hard frost** tonight.	opposite of *a hard frost* = *a light frost* (NOT a ~~soft~~ frost)
high/strong/light/biting winds the wind picks up [opposite: dies down] the wind blows/whistles	The **wind** was **light** this morning but it's **picking up** now and will be very **strong** by the evening. The **wind was whistling** through the trees.	*biting winds* = very cold winds If the wind picks up, it gets stronger.

C Extreme weather

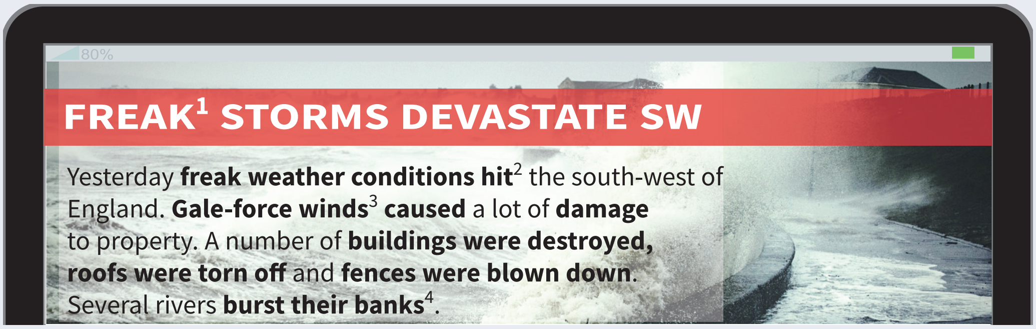

FREAK[1] STORMS DEVASTATE SW

Yesterday **freak weather conditions hit**[2] the south-west of England. **Gale-force winds**[3] **caused** a lot of **damage** to property. A number of **buildings were destroyed, roofs were torn off** and **fences were blown down**. Several rivers **burst their banks**[4].

[1] very unusual or unexpected
[2] struck, badly affected
[3] extremely strong winds
[4] rivers flooded

Exercises

13.1 Look at A and B opposite and complete these weather collocations.

1 crisp ....
2 patches of ....
3 strong ....
4 a biting ....
5 a hard ....
6 torrential ....
7 unbroken ....
8 a blanket of ....

13.2 Look at A and B opposite. Change the underlined words so that each sentence has the opposite meaning.

1 There was a light wind yesterday.
2 The wind picked up in the evening.
3 The weather is likely to improve tomorrow.
4 It was scorching hot here yesterday.
5 There may be some light rain later on today.
6 The mist came down at about midday.

13.3 Replace the underlined words in this message with collocations from the opposite page.

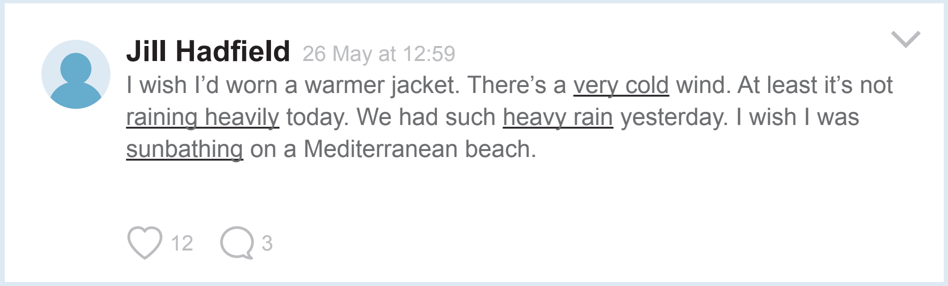

Jill Hadfield 26 May at 12:59

I wish I'd worn a warmer jacket. There's a very cold wind. At least it's not raining heavily today. We had such heavy rain yesterday. I wish I was sunbathing on a Mediterranean beach.

13.4 Answer these questions about the collocations on the opposite page.

1 What might make a river burst its banks?
2 What can you probably see if someone says, 'It looks like rain'?
3 What kind of wind is a freak wind?
4 Is it harder to drive if there's dense fog or if there are patches of fog?
5 What kind of weather conditions have you got if the rain is described as driving rain?
6 If we talk about severe weather conditions *hitting* or *striking* an area, what kind of image is created?
7 What, apart from wind, can blow or whistle?
8 Which of these verbs suggests most destruction and which least?
The storm *destroyed* / *damaged* / *devastated* the town.

13.5 Look up these words in your dictionary. Note down two more collocations for each one.

wind

rain

snow

Over to you

Either listen to the weather forecast on an English-language TV or radio channel **or** go to the website www.bbc.co.uk/weather. (You can enter the name of your own country to get information about the weather there.)

Make a note of any other useful weather collocations that you find.

14 Travel

A Travel, journey, trip

Look at these emails and note the different collocations for *travel*, *journey* and *trip*.

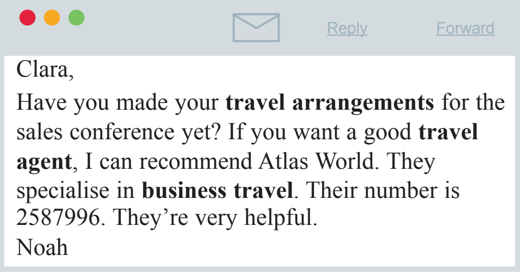

Clara,

Have you made your **travel arrangements** for the sales conference yet? If you want a good **travel agent**, I can recommend Atlas World. They specialise in **business travel**. Their number is 2587996. They're very helpful.

Noah

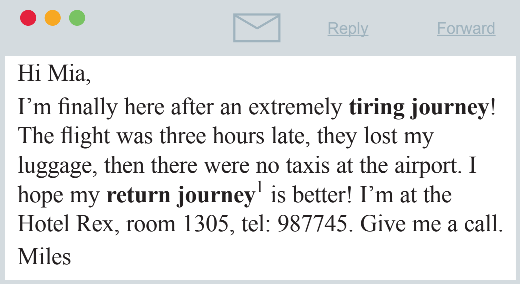

Hi Mia,

I'm finally here after an extremely **tiring journey**! The flight was three hours late, they lost my luggage, then there were no taxis at the airport. I hope my **return journey**[1] is better! I'm at the Hotel Rex, room 1305, tel: 987745. Give me a call.

Miles

[1] The opposite of **return journey** is **outward journey**.

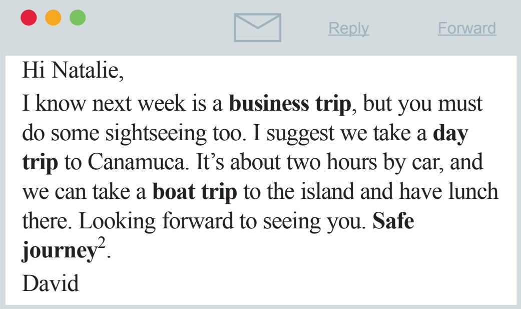

Hi Natalie,

I know next week is a **business trip**, but you must do some sightseeing too. I suggest we take a **day trip** to Canamuca. It's about two hours by car, and we can take a **boat trip** to the island and have lunch there. Looking forward to seeing you. **Safe journey**[2].

David

[2] said to someone who is about to make a journey

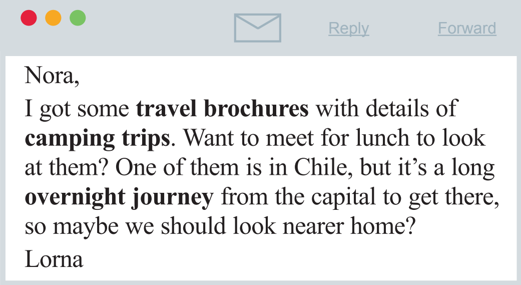

Nora,

I got some **travel brochures** with details of **camping trips**. Want to meet for lunch to look at them? One of them is in Chile, but it's a long **overnight journey** from the capital to get there, so maybe we should look nearer home?

Lorna

B Flights

These collocations are all rather formal ones connected with flying:

Palair offers excellent **in-flight entertainment**, with the latest films and music.
The **in-flight magazine** includes maps and information about major airports.
[announcement by a cabin attendant] Ladies and gentlemen, we'll shortly be landing at Dublin Airport. Please **fasten your seatbelts**.
The passenger **boarded the plane** on time, but it was delayed taking off and she missed her **connecting flight** in Amsterdam.
Domestic flights are often more expensive than international ones. [flights within a country]
Do you normally prefer a **window seat** or an **aisle seat** when you fly?
We managed to get a **charter**[1] **flight**; it was half the price of the **scheduled**[2] **flight**.

[1] flight on a plane rented for special use
[2] regular flight organised by the company which owns the plane

The weather en route is fine, and we anticipate a **smooth flight**[3] to Stockholm today.

[3] The opposite is a **bumpy flight**.

C Accommodation

We stayed in a small, **family-run hotel**.
The Panorama is a rather **run-down hotel** in a back street near the city centre.
The Palace is a **luxury hotel** on the main square of Porto Alegre.
I can't afford to stay in **smart hotels**. I always have to look for **budget accommodation**. [very cheap]
I'd advise you to **make a reservation** before you go. The hotels near the beach are very popular and get **fully booked** during the summer.

Exercises

14.1 Complete each sentence with *trip*, *travel* or *journey*.

1 I'll get some .... brochures today and we can start planning our holiday.
2 Tom is away on a business .... all week.
3 It's a rather difficult overnight .... to the mountains but it's well worth it.
4 I prefer to arrange my holidays myself rather than use a .... agent.
5 On Saturday we went on a day .... to an interesting old castle.
6 Was it a tiring .... from Seoul to Los Angeles?
7 On summer weekends we often used to go on camping ....
8 Do you use a special firm to arrange business .... for your staff?
9 Do you make your own .... arrangements or does your secretary do it all?
10 I hope your flight is on time tomorrow. Safe ....! See you at the airport.

14.2 Complete these sentences.

1 We couldn't .... a reservation; all the hotels were .... booked.
2 As I've got long legs, I usually ask for an .... seat on a long flight, but on the flight to New York I had a .... seat and I got a great view of Manhattan as we came in, even though I didn't have much leg-room.
3 We're only scheduled to have about half an hour in Dubai, so I hope we don't miss our .... flight.
4 They seem to have much better in-flight .... on that airline; they have the latest films and you can play video games.
5 Passengers must .... their seatbelts before take-off and landing.
6 Passengers with seats in rows 1 to 25 are now invited to .... the plane.
7 The Principality Hotel was rather ....-down and we were very disappointed.
8 You can spend a lot of money and stay in a .... hotel or you can look for budget ....

14.3 Answer these questions about travel collocations.

1 What is the opposite of a smooth flight?
2 Which of these two kinds of flight do most people prefer and why?
3 What do we call a flight which is not a *charter* flight?
4 What do airlines often provide for passengers to read?
5 What is the difference between *a business trip* and *business travel*?
6 What is the opposite of *outward journey*?
7 If a hotel is family-run, is it especially trying to attract families as guests?

14.4 Write about 100 words describing a recent personal travel experience. Use the collocations from this unit.

Over to you

Next time you fly, look at the signs at the airports you pass through, which are often in English as well as the local language(s). Find and make a note of three useful collocations.

15 Countryside

A Writing about the landscape

From my room I look out over the **surrounding countryside**. It's very different from the **familiar landscape** I see from the windows at home. At home it's a **gentle landscape**[1] with **open fields**[2]. Here it's a **bleak landscape** with **rocky mountains** in the distance.

[1] a landscape with nothing extreme or threatening about it
[2] fields uninterrupted by woods or houses

Yesterday we **followed a path** down to the lake. As we **turned a corner**, we **caught a glimpse of**[3] a kingfisher standing in the water. John tried to **take a picture**[4] of it but it **caught sight of** us and flew off. A little further on we **rounded a bend**[5] and St John's Abbey **came into view**. The Abbey **fell into ruin**[6] about three hundred years ago. Although it **lies in ruins**, it is **well worth seeing** as it stands in a **dramatic setting** on a **steep slope** beside a **fast-flowing river** with **mountains towering**[7] above it.

[3] saw for a moment
[4] take a photo
[5] turned a corner
[6] became a ruin
[7] mountains rising dramatically

The cottage is in some wonderful **unspoilt countryside**[8] on the edge of a **dense forest**[9]. Unfortunately the trees **block the view** of the **snow-covered mountains**. It has a little garden with a stream at the end of it. The **stream winds**[10] through the forest. They wanted to build a timber factory here but the local people said that it would **destroy the countryside** and, fortunately, their campaign to **protect the environment** succeeded.

[8] countryside that has not been changed by industry or modern buildings
[9] thick forest
[10] makes lots of bends, doesn't flow in a straight line

B The language of tourism

collocation	example
uninterrupted view	From most rooms there are **uninterrupted views** of the castle. [nothing blocks the views of the castle]
panoramic view	From the top floor restaurant diners have a **panoramic view** of the countryside. [view over a very wide area]
spectacular view	From the balcony there is a **spectacular view** of the mountains. [very dramatic view]
enjoy/admire a view	We stopped for a few minutes to **admire the view**.
breathtaking scenery	The area has some **breathtaking scenery** – mountains, cliffs, lakes. [extremely striking and beautiful views]
dominate the landscape	The castle **dominates the landscape** for miles around. [can be seen from a long way away]
beach stretches	A beautiful **beach stretches** for miles along the coast.
sandy beach	The hotel has its own **sandy beach**.
secluded beach	You'll love the **secluded beaches**. [without many people]
golden sands	You can wander for miles along the **golden sands**.
peaceful/tranquil countryside	You can quickly go from the hustle and bustle of the town to the **tranquil countryside**. [formal]

Exercises

15.1 Look at A. Complete the collocations to fit these pictures.

1
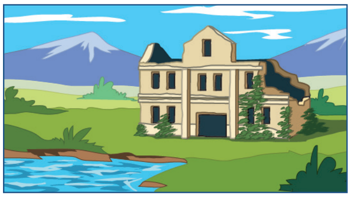

2
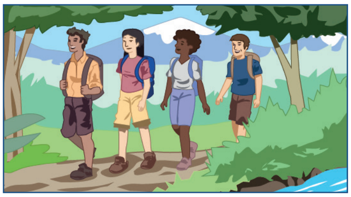

3
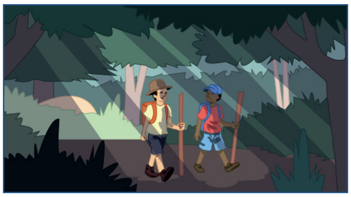

1 Near the lake there is an old house that .... ruin about a hundred years ago. It stands in a lovely landscape, surrounded by .... fields.
2 We .... a footpath along the river for about three kilometres. In the distance there were snow-.......................... mountains.
3 We walked through a .... forest; it was very dark among the trees.

15.2 Correct the underlined collocation errors in this paragraph.

A chain of snowy mountains runs down the east of the country. The Wassa River, the country's biggest, dances slowly from the northern mountains to the sea. Even in summer it is a sour landscape, with its dark, stony mountains and its cold streams. But for me it is the family landscape of my childhood and I am happy that the government has decided to guard this environment. It is a dramatic set which is a lot worth visiting for anyone who likes spectacle views.

15.3 Choose the correct collocation.

1 We *made / took / put* a lot of photographs because it was such a beautiful day.
2 As I *returned / turned* the corner I *made / caught / took* a glimpse of the house through the trees.
3 A long *sanded / sandy* beach *reached / ran / stretched* for miles in front of us.
4 Unfortunately, the new hotel *blocks / jams / stops* the view of the castle.

15.4 Complete this collocation web for *countryside*.

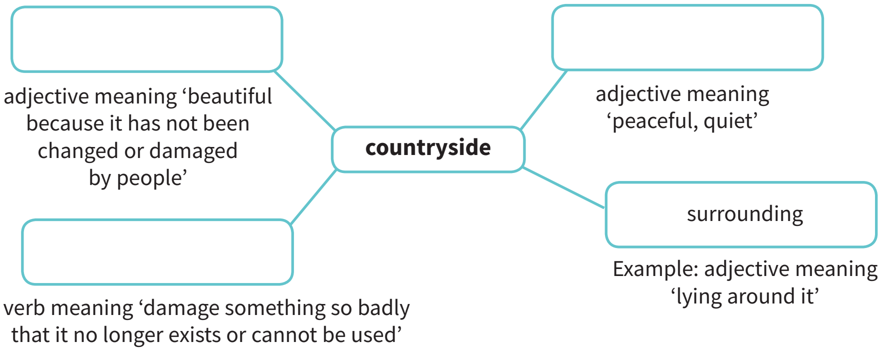

adjective meaning 'beautiful because it has not been changed or damaged by people'

adjective meaning 'peaceful, quiet'

countryside

surrounding

Example: adjective meaning 'lying around it'

verb meaning 'damage something so badly that it no longer exists or cannot be used'

15.5 Replace the words in brackets in each sentence with one word which collocates with the underlined word.

1 It's a beautiful town and the countryside (which is all around it) is even more beautiful.
2 The tower (is the most important and visible thing on) the landscape. From the top of the tower, you get a view (which allows you to see a very wide stretch) of the surrounding area.
3 There are lovely beaches (with very few people on them).
4 We travelled through some scenery (which was extremely exciting and beautiful).
5 From the windows of our villa we had views (which were continuous, without any obstacles,) of the lakes and mountains.

16 Towns and cities

A Describing towns and cities for visitors

Look at these extracts from a magazine article about tourist cities.

The **city skyline** is a wonderful mix of old and new, and the city itself has a lot of busy, narrow **cobbled**[1] **streets**. The old town is a **conservation area** and it has a lot of **quaint**[2] **old buildings** dating back to the city's foundation in the 1500s.

[1] made of a regular pattern of stones [2] attractive because of being unusual and especially old-fashioned

Doradella Street has a lot of **upmarket**[3] **shops** and rather **pricey**[4], sometimes **overpriced**, **restaurants**, but not far away is the Genasia district, where you'll find restaurants which offer **good value** and a more **relaxed atmosphere**.

[3] for people with expensive tastes [4] expensive, in a negative sense

Royal Avenue runs from north to south, and is **lined with shops**. Behind it, the streets are full of **lively bars** and **fashionable clubs**. The **pavement cafés** and shops of Luna Square are pleasant but very expensive.

As you drive into the city, the **tree-lined avenues** of the **residential areas** are soon replaced by the **high-rise flats** of the **inner city**[5]. Then come the **imposing buildings** of the Parliament and government departments.

[5] central part of a city where poorer people live and where there are often social problems

B Towns and cities and their problems

Here are some descriptions of the more negative aspects of towns and cities.

Some of the **inner-city areas are** an **urban wasteland**[1] and are somewhat dangerous for visitors. In fact some streets have become **no-go**[2] **areas**, with high crime. Many streets are **strewn with litter** and there are numerous **run-down**[3] **buildings**. There are some **deprived**[4] **areas** round the city centre with huge social problems. The **industrial zones** which lie on the edge of the city are grey and polluted.

[1] a city area which is empty and in a bad condition
[2] where the police and other authorities are afraid to enter
[3] in very bad condition
[4] not having the things that are necessary for a pleasant life, e.g. enough money, good living conditions

Triope is a **sprawling**[5] **city** with **bumper-to-bumper**[6] **traffic** all day long. The **exhaust fumes** can be a nightmare. The **volume of traffic** has increased in recent years and the **incessant roar**[7] of trucks and buses makes the city centre an extremely noisy place. The **comfortable suburbs**[8] away from the city centre contrast sharply with the poor **shanty towns**[9] one sees on the way to the airport.

[5] spread over a large area (slightly negative)
[6] so many cars and so close that they are almost touching each other
[7] very loud noise which never stops
[8] a place from which many people travel in order to work in a bigger town or city
[9] very poor houses made of discarded materials (e.g. tin, cardboard, plastic, etc.)

Exercises

16.1 Which of the collocations in A opposite do these photos illustrate?

1

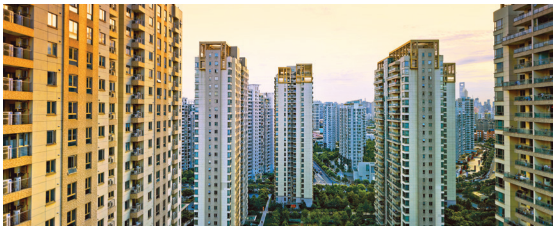

3

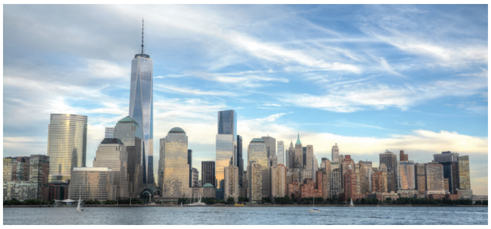

2

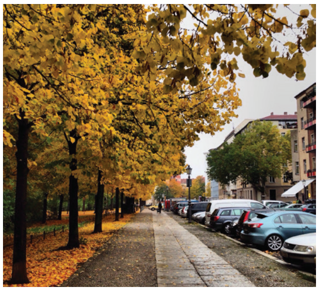

4

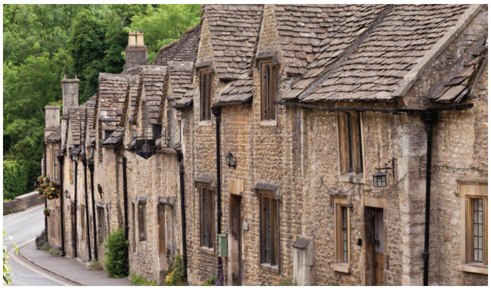

16.2 Which of the collocations in the box have a positive meaning (+) and which have a negative meaning (–)?

relaxed atmosphere lively bar over-priced restaurants urban wasteland
no-go area imposing building shanty town fashionable club run-down buildings

16.3 Answer these questions using collocations from the opposite page.

1 What might prevent you from sleeping in a house near a busy motorway?
2 Exhaust fumes will get worse if what increases?
3 What is the opposite of a restaurant which is good value?
4 What kind of area with poor, home-made houses could certainly be called a deprived area?
5 If an area is very interesting historically, what may it officially be called?
6 What is another way of saying an expensive restaurant?
7 What do we call blocks of flats which have many storeys, perhaps 20 or more?
8 What adjective could be used about an attractive and perhaps slightly unusual old building?

16.4 Match the beginning of each sentence on the left with its ending on the right.

1 It is a sprawling
2 It is full of upmarket
3 There was bumper-to-bumper
4 I get asthma from the terrible exhaust
5 I live in a residential
6 Some of the more deprived
7 The main street in town
8 The main street is lined
9 On the outskirts are some industrial
10 The streets were strewn

traffic all the way to the airport.
runs from the castle to the river.
zones and some large supermarkets.
with shops and cafés.
city covering an enormous area.
with litter.
area but work in the city centre.
areas are not far from the city centre.
fumes in the city centre.
shops, which are too expensive for me.

Over to you

Find a description in an encyclopaedia, tourist brochure or guide book of a city that you know well or are interested in. Make a note of any interesting collocations that you find there.

17 People: character and behaviour

A Your month of birth and your character

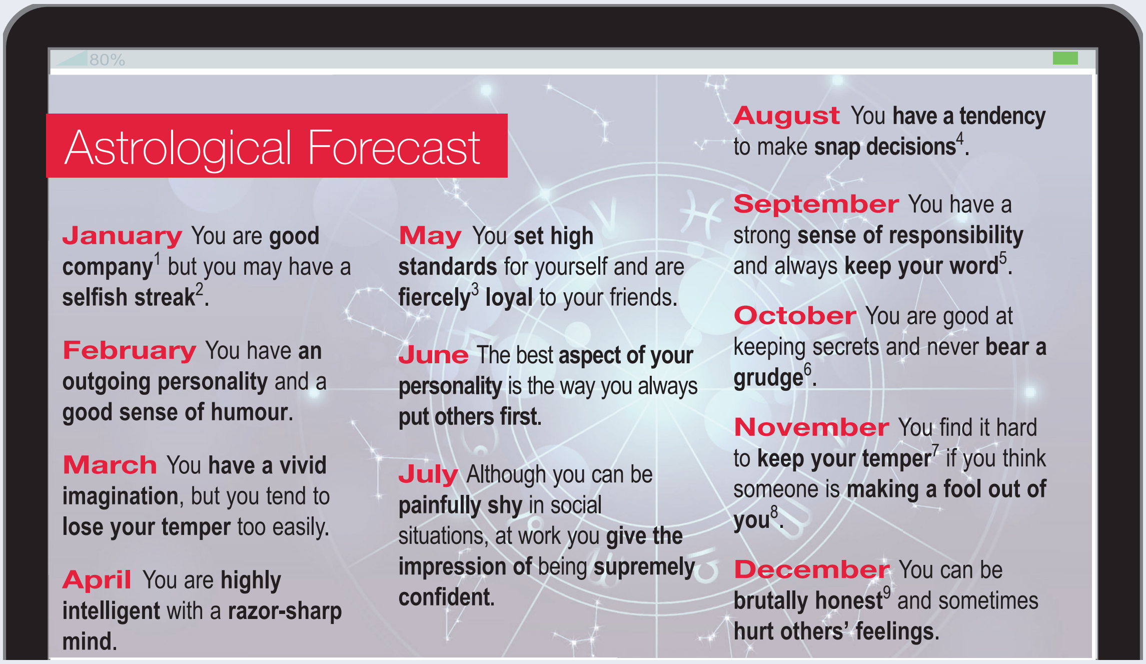

80%

Astrological Forecast

January You are **good company**[1] but you may have a **selfish streak**[2].

February You have **an outgoing personality** and a **good sense of humour**.

March You **have a vivid imagination**, but you tend to **lose your temper** too easily.

April You are **highly intelligent** with a **razor-sharp mind**.

May You **set high standards** for yourself and are **fiercely**[3] **loyal** to your friends.

June The best **aspect of your personality** is the way you always **put others first**.

July Although you can be **painfully shy** in social situations, at work you **give the impression of** being **supremely confident**.

August You **have a tendency** to make **snap decisions**[4].

September You have a strong **sense of responsibility** and always **keep your word**[5].

October You are good at keeping secrets and never **bear a grudge**[6].

November You find it hard to **keep your temper**[7] if you think someone is **making a fool out of you**[8].

December You can be **brutally honest**[9] and sometimes **hurt others' feelings**.

[1] people enjoy being with you

[2] you sometimes act in a selfish way

[3] stronger than *extremely*

[4] quick decisions

[5] do what you say you will do, keep your promises

[6] resent for a long time bad things others have done to you

[7] not get angry

[8] trying to deceive or trick you

[9] honest in a way that may hurt

B Behaviour: verb + noun collocations

collocation	example	comment
play a joke/trick	The children **played a joke on** the teacher by hiding under their desks before she came into the room.	NOT ~~make~~ a joke/trick
take a joke	Fortunately, the teacher could **take a joke** and didn't punish them.	= didn't mind a joke being played on her
swallow your pride	Isabella **swallowed her pride** and admitted that she was wrong.	= she did it even though it was embarrassing for her
throw a tantrum	The child **threw a tantrum** when I wouldn't buy him any sweets.	= behaved in a very uncontrolled manner
lose your patience	Finally I **lost my patience** and shouted at her.	= lost my temper, became angry
come to terms with	Nick has found it hard to **come to terms with** his illness.	= accept something psychologically
reveal your true character	Daniel's failure to support her has certainly **revealed his true character**.	opposite = conceal/hide your true character

Tip

Associating these collocations with people you know may help you to learn them.

Exercises

17.1 Which of the collocations in A describe negatives aspects of character?

17.2 Add the missing words in these letters to a magazine where readers are discussing their and others' characters. You are sometimes given the first letter.

1 I know that I .... a tendency to .... a grudge, but I just can't forget something bad a friend did to me recently. She has a selfish s.......................... and doesn't care sometimes how much she .... my feelings. I am finding it increasingly hard to k.......................... my temper with her. But perhaps it might be better to l.......................... my temper and let her know how I really feel?
Silvia M.

2 I have always tried to .... others first and not to think of myself. I believe you should not lose your p.......................... with your friends, but if someone seems to enjoy .... a fool out of you in front of other people, do those rules of friendship still apply?
Stefan P.

3 I'm a little shy with new people, though not p.......................... shy, but sometimes I think I .... the impression that I'm unfriendly. How can I convince people that I'm good c.......................... and worth getting to know?
Tom W.

4 Should I talk about personal matters to my closest colleague at work? She is not very good at .... secrets and she has a very v.......................... imagination. She always promises not to tell other people, but I'm not sure she always .... her word.
Jan H.

5 My boyfriend has a really friendly, o.......................... personality and a great .... of humour. He's .... intelligent and has a ....-sharp mind. The perfect man. We've been together now for a year, and I like him a lot, but don't love him any more. Should I be b.......................... honest with him and tell him?
Lydia T.

6 I think a friend is destroying himself with drugs. I feel a .... of responsibility towards him. He has always been f.......................... loyal to me in good and bad times, which is a wonderful a.......................... of his personality. I feel I ought to contact the police or social services, but I don't want to make a s.......................... decision which I'll regret later.
Gary J.

17.3 Complete B's remarks in these conversations so that they mean more or less the same as A's, using collocations from the opposite page.

1 A: Charlie's found it hard to accept psychologically the fact that he's now divorced.
B: Yes, he's found it hard .... with his new situation.
2 A: Parker's problem is he can't laugh when people play jokes on him.
B: No, it's true. He just can't ...., can he?
3 A: Well, Sara's behaviour last night certainly showed the truth about her.
B: Yes, it certainly ....
4 A: She always has very high expectations of both herself and her children.
B: Yes, she always ....
5 A: Max started screaming and stamping his feet when I tried to put him to bed.
B: Well, two-year-olds often ....

17.4 Look in your dictionary. Can you find any other collocations …

1 … where *word* has the meaning of promise?
2 … where *temper* relates to behaviour?
3 … where *sense of …* relates to an aspect of character?

18 People: physical appearance

A Words describing people's physical appearance

Read these quotations taken from essays where students were asked to describe their family members.

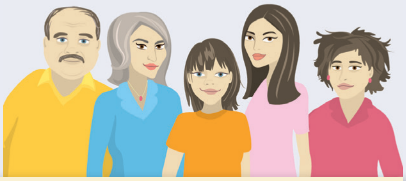

My father has a **round face** and a **droopy**[1] **moustache**. My mother has a more **pointed face** and a **straight nose**. My younger sister is more like my father. She has an **oval**[2] **face** and an **upturned nose**. My older sister is like a model. She has a **slim figure** and a **slender**[3] **waist**. She has a **lovely complexion**[4] and beautiful **sleek**[5], **shoulder-length hair**, and she's always **immaculately groomed**[6]. I feel so ordinary next to her – I've got **coarse**[7] **hair** and rather **broad hips**, but she always says I look nice.

[1] long and hanging down heavily
[2] shaped like an egg
[3] attractively slim (a rather formal, poetic word)
[4] the natural colour and quality of a person's skin
[5] smooth and shiny
[6] her appearance is always tidy and looked after with great care
[7] rough, and not smooth or soft

My father and my two older brothers are all **well-built**[8] with **broad shoulders**. My father is **going bald** but he still has a very **youthful appearance** for someone who is over forty. My brothers both have **thick hair** and **bushy**[9] **eyebrows**. My younger brother is only two, but he's very cute, with **chubby cheeks**[10]. My mother's side of the family mostly have **dark hair** – in fact my mother had **jet-black hair**[11] when she was younger, before she **went grey** – but on my father's side, some have **fair hair** and some have **ginger**[12] **hair**.

[8] have strong, attractive bodies
[9] very thick
[10] fat in a pleasant and attractive way
[11] completely black
[12] a red or orange-brown colour; used of people's hair

B More collocations describing appearance

A short, **dumpy woman** was selling flowers at a stall on the street corner. [short and quite fat woman; used more often of women than of men. This collocation is slightly negative, so be careful how you use it.]

A **portly gentleman** answered the door. [fat and round; usually used of middle-aged and older men]

A **lanky youth** was standing at the street corner. [tall and thin and tending to move awkwardly]

I wouldn't like people to see me with **dishevelled hair** and dirty clothes. [very untidy; used of people's hair and appearance]

He **bears a striking resemblance to** his father. [looks remarkably like]

The lady who entered the room **had** a very **striking appearance**. [unusual appearance, in a positive, attractive sense]

Tip

Sometimes words are very restricted in what they can collocate with. The colour adjectives *blonde*, *ginger* and *auburn*[1] are only used of people's hair (not, for example, their clothes or other objects). When a word has restricted collocations, make a special note in your vocabulary notebook.

[1] reddish brown

Exercises

18.1 **Put the words from the box into the 'fat' or 'thin' column, then answer the questions.**

portly	lanky	slender	dumpy	slim	chubby

'fat' words	'thin' words

1 Which words could be used to describe someone's waist?
2 Which word is likely to be used of a rather physically awkward young person?
3 Which word means 'fat but in a pleasant way'?
4 Which word is more likely to be used to describe a man rather than a woman?
5 Which word is more likely to be used to describe a woman rather than a man?

18.2 **Look at B. Then match the adjectives in the first box below with the nouns in the second box.**

bushy	oval	striking	broad	droopy	chubby	dishevelled

cheeks	moustache	shoulders	hair	eyebrows	resemblance	face

18.3 **Fill the gaps with appropriate collocations. You are sometimes given the first letter(s).**

I hadn't seen Owen since he was just a baby, so I was surprised to see that he was now a tall young man. He was (1) im.................................... gr.................................... , smart and elegant. He was with a pretty young woman with (2) j..............................-black, (3) shoulder-.................................... hair and a (4) l.................................... com.................................... . She could have been a model, she had such a (5) str.................................... ap.................................... . He had his arm round her (6) s.................................... wa.................................... . With them was a (7) po.................................... g.................................... , who looked as though he enjoyed good food, and who was probably her father. When I introduced myself to Owen, he smiled. 'Of course, I remember you,' he said. 'You used to work with my father. But you haven't aged at all! You have a much more (8) y.................................... a.................................... than my father now does. Dad has (9) .... very grey.' I felt very pleased when he said that; he obviously didn't notice I was beginning to (10) .... bald. Everyone likes to think they look young when they get older.

18.4 **Use the words from the box to fill the gaps to give contrasting meanings.**

round	coarse	upturned	fair	pointed	straight	dark	sleek

1 Her hair's not ...., it's quite ...., in fact it's almost black.
2 She has an .... nose but her brother has a .... nose.
3 Her mother has a .... face but her father has a .... face.
4 My hair is so .... and ugly; Sally's is so .... and lovely.

Over to you

Think of a relative or friend of yours. Write a short description using collocations from this unit.

19 Families

A Family relationships

Sociologists talk about **nuclear** and **extended families**. A **nuclear family** is just parents and children. An **extended family** is a wider network including grandparents, cousins, etc.

Close relatives are those like parents, children, brothers or sisters. **Distant relatives** are people like **second cousins** [the children of a cousin of your mother or father] or **distant cousins**.

Close/immediate family refers to people who are your nearest **blood relatives**:
I don't have much **close/immediate family**.
She's a **distant cousin** of mine; she's not a **blood relative**.
Close can also be used to mean that the relationship is a very strong one:
We are a very **close family**. *or* We are a very **close-knit family**.

These adjectives also collocate with **family**:
loving, **respectable**, **dysfunctional** [unhappy, not working in a healthy way]
Henry came from a **respectable family**, so Ella's parents felt happy about the marriage.

Someone's **late husband/wife** is one who has died.
An **estranged** [formal] **husband/wife** is one who lives in a different place and has a difficult relationship with their husband/wife. They may be having a **trial separation** and may eventually decide to **get a divorce**. In some cases it can be a **bitter/acrimonious divorce**. [full of anger, arguments and bad feeling]
A person's **ex-husband**/**ex-wife** is a man/woman that she/he used to be married to.

Children whose parents have separated or divorced are said to come from a **broken home**. If their family is a strong, loving one it can be called a **stable home**. If it is a poor one, not having the things that are necessary for a pleasant life, such as enough money, food or good living conditions, it can be called a **deprived home**.

A **confirmed bachelor** is a man who seems to have no intention of ever marrying.

B Parents and children

collocation	example	comment
start a family	They are hoping to **start a family** soon.	NOT ~~begin~~ a family
have children	I'd like to **have** three **children**.	NOT ~~get~~ children
expect a baby	Astrid **is expecting a baby**.	NOT ~~wait (for)~~ a baby
have a baby	Alyssa **had her baby** yesterday.	NOT ~~get~~ a baby
the baby is due	The **baby is due** next week.	= expected to arrive
single parent/mother	It's hard being a **single parent**.	may be either unmarried or divorced
raise / bring up children / a family	Violet had to **bring up** four young **children** on her own.	*Raise a family* is more common in US than in UK English.
apply for custody of give/grant [formal] custody	The father **applied for custody of** the children, but the judge **gave/granted custody** to the mother.	*custody*: the legal right or duty to care for a child after its parents have separated or died
provide for your family	Nico works very long hours to **provide for his family**.	= to earn enough money to support your family
set up home	We live with my mum now, but we'll **set up home** on our own soon.	= to start an independent life in one's own flat or house

Exercises

19.1 **Fill the gaps in this old man's memories about his life with words from A.**

I grew up in an (1) .... family as my grandparents and a couple of aunts and an uncle, who was a (2) .... bachelor, lived with us. We saw a lot of our (3) .... relatives as well as our close ones. I think that families tended to be much more (4) .... then – we talked to each other more and did things together more. I'm sure there are far more (5) .... families now than there used to be – you know, where parents hardly spend any time with their children, or with each other – and a lot of parents who are divorced. My (6) .... wife, who died two years ago, used to say that it is not fair on children to let them grow up in (7) ....homes.

19.2 **Look at B. Correct the six collocation errors in this young woman's plans for the future.**

James and I are hoping to begin a family soon. We both want to get lots of children. Ideally, I'd like to have my first baby next year, when I'll be 32. My sister is waiting a baby now. It's coming next month. She's going to be a sole parent and it'll be hard for her to grow up a child on her own.

19.3 **Match the two parts of these collocations.**

1 apply for
2 get
3 estranged
4 nuclear
5 provide for
6 distant
7 set up
8 trial

cousin
separation
custody
home
wife
family
your family
a divorce

19.4 **Answer these questions.**

1 Who do you have in your immediate family?
2 Do you have much contact with your distant relatives? If so, when?
3 Where did your parents first set up home?
4 Which would most children prefer to live in, and why, a stable home or a deprived home?
5 What collocation means the same as *to be pregnant*?
6 Can dysfunctional families also be respectable ones?
7 What can be put before the words *wife* and *husband* to indicate that they are no longer married to someone?
8 What is a more formal alternative for *give custody*?

19.5 **Write a paragraph about your own family using as many as possible of the collocations from this unit.**

Over to you

Read some English-language women's magazines and note down any other interesting family collocations that you find.

20 Relationships

A Friendship

Here are some common collocations relating to friends and friendship.

collocation	example	comment
make friends	When you go to university you will **make** a lot of new **friends**.	NOT ~~find~~ friends (a common student error)
strike up a friendship	Nathan **struck up a friendship** with a girl he met on holiday.	= start a friendship
form/develop a friendship	Audrey **formed a** lasting **friendship** with the boy she sat next to at primary school.	NOT ~~make~~ a friendship
cement/spoil a friendship	Spending several weeks on holiday together has **cemented their friendship**.	*cement* = strengthen *spoil* = have a bad effect on
a friendship grows	We were at school together, but our **friendship grew** after we'd left school.	*grow* = get stronger
close/special friends mutual friends	I'm glad that our children are such **close friends**, aren't you?	*mutual friends* = friends that you share with someone else
a casual acquaintance	I don't know Santiago well. We're just **casual acquaintances**.	= someone you know a little
have a good relationship with someone	Anna and Samantha **have a** very **good relationship**. They love doing things together.	NOT have a ~~relation / relations~~ with
keep in contact/touch	We must **keep in contact** when the course ends.	opposite = **lose contact/ touch**

B More than just good friends

A love story

A LOVE STORY

I **fell madly in love with** Anton from the moment I met him. It was certainly **love at first sight**. I knew at once that he was **the love of my life** but at first I was not sure if my **love was returned** or not. Within a few days, however, he had told me that he was **desperately in love** with me too. A couple of weeks later, we realised that we wanted to **make a commitment** to each other and, when Anton asked me to marry him, I immediately **accepted his proposal**. I'm sure we will always **love each other unconditionally**[1]. Neither of us would ever consider **having an affair**[2] with someone else.

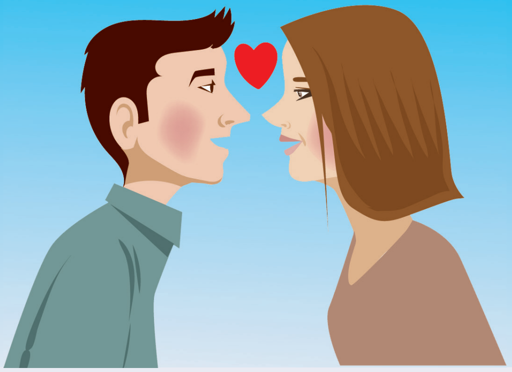

---

[1] love that is total and does not change regardless of what you or the **object of your love** does

[2] having a sexual relationship with someone outside marriage

Exercises

20.1 Look at A. Choose an appropriate word to complete each sentence.

1 Ellie is quite a shy person and finds it hard to .... friends.
2 Do Matthew and Emily .... a good relationship?
3 Alex is always .... up friendships with people he meets on trains and planes.
4 I hope their disagreement over the bill won't .... their friendship.
5 It's amazing, when you meet someone new, how often you find that you have some .... friends.
6 Apparently, people .... most of their closest friendships when they are young.
7 I wouldn't call Graham a close friend, more a casual ....
8 We didn't really like each other at first, but our friendship .... as we got to know each other better.

20.2 Make nine collocations out of the words in the box. Use each of the words once only.

a a a accept affair an at commitment contact
contact first friends friendship have in keep lose make
love love proposal return sight someone's special
strike up

20.3 Answer these questions about the collocations on the opposite page.

1 Which verb suggests that friendship can be seen as a plant?
2 Which collocation suggests that love is close to being crazy?
3 Which collocation from the love story means *agree to marry someone*?
4 Which collocation means the same as *special friends*?
5 Which collocation means the same as *keep in contact with*?

20.4 Complete these questions. Then answer them.

1 Have you ever fallen in love at first ....?
2 Do you think it's true that men are more reluctant to .... a commitment than women?
3 How old were you when you .... in love for the first time?
4 Do you think it is possible to have one person who is the love of your ....?
5 Have you ever been in love with someone who has not .... your love?
6 Do you think that men or women are more likely to be tempted to .... an affair?

20.5 Look up these words in your dictionary. Note down two more good collocations for each one.

love friend friendship relationship

Soup
Red lentil
Coconut, tomato
w/ cucumber & mint yoghurt
with WATER
with MILK
Bonsoy, decaf, extra

21 Houses, flats and rooms

A Finding somewhere to live

Short-let[1] accommodation available near university.

Rooms and **studio flats[2]**
Tel: 899544

Are you looking to **move into a flat or house** next term? The Harmer Agency has a wide range of **suitable accommodation.**
Call us on 4446677

Fully furnished flat **available to rent** from 1st September. Quiet **residential area.**
£800 per calendar month
Tel: 897633
after 5 pm.

Newly-built apartment available soon. Spacious accommodation, **fully-fitted kitchen[3]**. **Off-road parking.** To let furnished or unfurnished. Would suit single academic or mature student. Tel: 3215786.

[1] can be rented for short periods of time
[2] small flats designed for one person
[3] kitchen that is already equipped with modern cooker, washing machine, cupboards, etc.

B Describing your house/flat/room

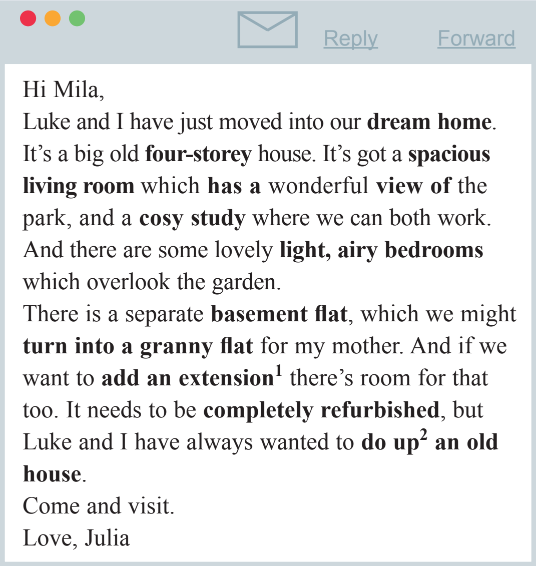

Hi Mila,
Luke and I have just moved into our **dream home**. It's a big old **four-storey** house. It's got a **spacious living room** which **has a** wonderful **view of** the park, and a **cosy study** where we can both work. And there are some lovely **light, airy bedrooms** which overlook the garden.
There is a separate **basement flat**, which we might **turn into a granny flat** for my mother. And if we want to **add an extension[1]** there's room for that too. It needs to be **completely refurbished**, but Luke and I have always wanted to **do up[2] an old house**.
Come and visit.
Love, Julia

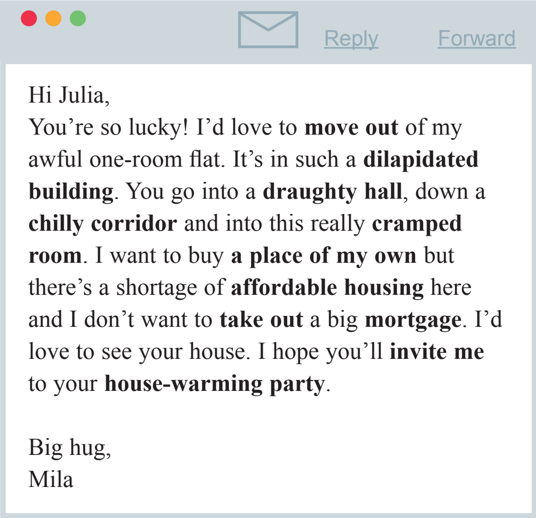

Hi Julia,
You're so lucky! I'd love to **move out** of my awful one-room flat. It's in such a **dilapidated building**. You go into a **draughty hall**, down a **chilly corridor** and into this really **cramped room**. I want to buy **a place of my own** but there's a shortage of **affordable housing** here and I don't want to **take out** a big **mortgage**. I'd love to see your house. I hope you'll **invite me** to your **house-warming party**.

Big hug,
Mila

[1] we can also say **build an extension** = build an extra room or two onto an existing house
[2] repair, repaint and decorate (a house)

C Collocations with *home*

She **left home** to go to university, but moving away from her family made her **feel homesick**.

Peter's back from a year abroad. His family are throwing a party to **welcome him home**.

(*To a guest who's just arrived*) Come in and **make yourself at home** while I finish getting dinner ready. [relax and make yourself comfortable]

I haven't lived in Oxford for long but I already **feel at home** here.

I'd like to buy a **second home** near the coast. [house used only for weekends, holidays, etc.]

Exercises

21.1 Answer these questions using collocations from A.

1 What kind of accommodation would suit a student who has no furniture of his or her own?
2 What kind of accommodation would suit someone who is only going to be in a place for three months?
3 What part of town would you want to live in if you wanted to be somewhere where there are lots of private houses and no factories or other work places?
4 What kind of accommodation would suit a young single person who would prefer to live alone rather than to share?
5 If accommodation doesn't have its own garage, what else might it have to make life easier for car-owning residents?
6 If you are moving into a new unfurnished house, but don't need to take a washing machine, cooker or fridge with you, what does the house have?

21.2 Look at B. Match the beginning of each sentence on the left with its ending on the right.

1 We want to turn our garage into a	house-warming party.
2 Harper has invited me to her	mortgage.
3 Next week I have to move out of	my own.
4 Xavier makes a business out of doing up	granny flat.
5 Our bedroom overlooks	my flat.
6 Our house needs to be completely	the garden.
7 I hope that one day I'll have a place of	old houses.
8 The bank can help if you want to take out a	refurbished.

21.3 Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.

1 We live on a busy road, but we're lucky because we have off-road park.
2 Gemma has moved off from her old flat and has now got a new place in Walville Street.
3 We're building an expansion to our house which will give us a bigger kitchen.
4 The flat is totally furnished, which is good because I have no furniture of my own.
5 She had to get out a big mortgage as the house was very expensive.
6 There is no buyable housing for young people in this area; prices are ridiculously high.
7 New people have entered into the house next door. I haven't met them yet.
8 It's a very spatial apartment with a huge living room and a big kitchen.
9 The flat is accessible to rent from the first of March onwards.
10 My brother and his wife live in a windy old cottage.

21.4 Replace the underlined words with collocations from the opposite page.

Riverview Dream at Highdale Cottages

The home you've always imagined could be waiting for you at Highdale Cottages. All cottages let you see the River Marn. Ideal for anyone seeking a house used only for weekends or holidays in the area.

Telephone 3340251 for appointments to view.

21.5 Complete these sentences using collocations from C opposite.

1 Lila's been away a whole year and now she's back. We must have a party to ....
2 Our son lives at home right now but he'll be 21 soon. He'll finish university and then he'll probably ....
3 I've lived here almost a year now and I'm really beginning to ....
4 I'll leave the keys to my flat with the neighbour. Just go in and ....
5 Alexis thought she would miss her friends and family when she started her new job in Rome but she soon found she had no time to ....

22 Eating and drinking

A Talking about types of food

Tom: Kids eat far too much **junk food**.
Lucy: Yeah, but it's hard to get them to eat **nourishing meals**[1]. They think they're boring.

[1] meals which make you healthy and strong

Sergio: Have you tried the new supermarket yet?
Jim: Yes. The **fresh produce**[2] is excellent, and they have a big **organic food** section.
Sergio: Mm, yes. I actually think their **ready meals**[3] are good too.

[2] foods produced from farming, e.g. dairy produce, agricultural produce; pronounced /ˈprɒdjuːs/
[3] meals already prepared or which just need to be heated quickly before eating

Liam: I can't believe **food additives**[4] are good for our long-term health.
Ryan: No, and I think **processed foods**[5] in general are probably bad for us, not to mention **GM foods**[6]!

[4] substances added to food to improve its taste or appearance or to preserve it
[5] foods which are changed or treated as part of an industrial operation
[6] genetically modified foods

Stella: The restaurant was leaving **perishable food**[7] lying round outside the fridge, and some people got **food poisoning**, so the authorities closed it down.
Jaxon: Oh dear.

[7] food which goes bad quickly, e.g. cheese, fish

B Eating and drinking

Eva and Leo are in the Old Port restaurant area looking for somewhere to eat.

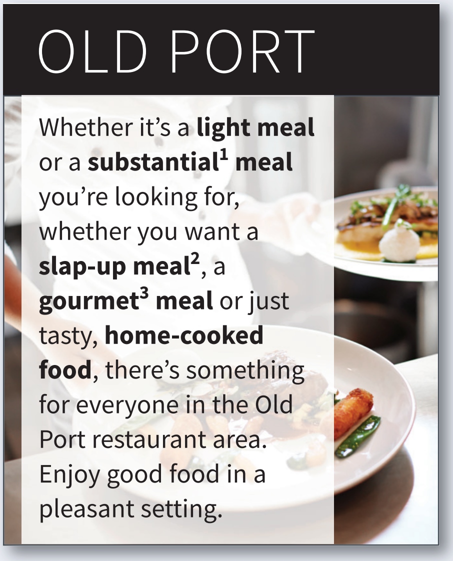

OLD PORT

Whether it's a **light meal** or a **substantial**[1] **meal** you're looking for, whether you want a **slap-up meal**[2], a **gourmet**[3] **meal** or just tasty, **home-cooked food**, there's something for everyone in the Old Port restaurant area. Enjoy good food in a pleasant setting.

[1] large [2] unusually large and good
[3] high-quality

Eva Let's find a café and have a **quick snack**. And I could really do with a **refreshing drink**.

Leo I'm **dying of hunger**! I need a **decent meal**.

Eva I know you have a **healthy appetite**, but you had a **hearty breakfast** only three hours ago! Well, how about having a **soft drink** and a bag of crisps now, and a proper lunch later?

Leo Crisps will only **spoil your appetite**. Look, this restuarant looks good and the **set menu** is **reasonably priced**. Let's go in.

Common mistakes

We say **international food/cuisine**, NOT ~~world-wide~~ food/cuisine. A Chinese/ Mexican/French **meal** is what you eat in a restaurant. When referring in general to the food of a country or culture we say Chinese/Mexican/French **food/cooking/cuisine**.

Exercises

22.1 Match the words on the left with their collocations on the right.

1 set	additives
2 food	food
3 junk	produce
4 ready	menu
5 fresh	meals

22.2 Complete these sentences using the collocations from exercise 22.1 to fill the gaps.

1 ………………… ………………… such as artificial flavours and colouring can cause allergies.
2 ………………… ………………… may be unhealthy, but it's quick and easy and fills you up.
3 People who don't have much time to cook often buy ………………… ………………… from the supermarket.
4 It's always better to buy ………………… ………………… instead of canned or frozen foods.
5 The ………………… ………………… is usually cheaper than ordering dishes separately in a restaurant.

22.3 Read these remarks by different people, then answer the questions.

Logan: I've got some cheese and milk. Is there a fridge here I could put them in?
Connor: I feel so hungry! I can't believe it!
Layla: I've been sick and my stomach is aching. Must be something I ate.
Michael: No matter how much I eat, I always want more.
Scarlett: All these vegetables have been grown without any chemicals at all.
Bella: I always enjoy my food and look forward to it.

	name
1 Who has organic food?	
2 Who has an insatiable appetite?	
3 Who has perishable food?	
4 Who has a healthy appetite?	
5 Who has food poisoning?	
6 Who is dying of hunger?	

22.4 Replace the underlined words with suitable collocations from the opposite page.

1 Foods which are changed or treated as part of an industrial operation may damage our health in the long term.
2 Some people always have three full, satisfying meals a day, but I prefer a large breakfast and then a small meal around midday and a more sizeable meal in the evening.
3 There are some overpriced restaurants in the city centre, but down at the beach, there are some nice, not too expensively priced ones.
4 On my birthday my parents took me out for a big, good meal. They wanted to go for a very high quality meal but I said I'd prefer something more ordinary.
5 Iced tea is a drink that cools you and makes you feel less tired on a hot day, and is probably better for you than non-alcoholic drinks such as cola or lemonade.
6 Let me take you out to dinner on your birthday. Or would you prefer a meal prepared at home? I could make dinner for you at my place.

23 Films and books

A Talking about films and books

When a new **book** or **film comes out**, newspapers and websites, like BookLikes and IMDb, will review it. The people who **review the book/film** are called **book reviewers** / **film critics** and they write **book/film reviews**. If they don't like a book/film they **give it a bad review**. We can say that a novel or film is **based on a true story**. We say that a **book/film captures** an atmosphere or that a **book/film deals with** a topic. We talk about the **opening/closing scenes** of a film and the **opening/closing chapters** of a book. We talk about the **beginning** and **end of a book/film** (NOT ~~start~~ and ~~finish~~). If everything works out well for the **central characters**, we say that the book/film **has a happy ending**. You may **recommend a book/film** that you enjoyed to a friend. If a lot of people have enjoyed it, it is **highly recommended**.

B Just about films and acting

I've never had any desire to **go on the stage**[1] myself but I'd love to produce a film. I think historical dramas work particularly well on **the big screen**[2] and I'd love to make a film about Vikings in Britain. There'd be plenty of opportunities to use **special effects**[3] during battle scenes. I'd want the **male lead**[4] to be played by Hugh Jackman, while Jennifer Lawrence could have the **female lead**. Liam Neeson could **play the role of** a Viking warrior and I'd like Judi Dench to take on a **cameo role**[5]. I'm sure that, as always, she would **give** an excellent **performance**. My dream is to make a film that would be **nominated for an Oscar**[6]. Of course, I'd also like it to be an immediate **box-office hit**[7], playing to **full houses**[8] worldwide.

[1] become an actor
[2] the cinema
[3] powerful visual effects, often created using technology
[4] main male part
[5] small but special part
[6] put on the official list of people in the film world who may receive a special prize (an Oscar)
[7] extremely successful with audiences
[8] cinemas/theatres with no empty seats

Other strong collocations are **cast a film** [select the actors for a film], **star in a film**, **shoot a film**, **make a film**.

C Just about books, audiobooks and e-books

collocation	example
be engrossed/absorbed in a book	Claudia was so **engrossed/absorbed in her book** that she didn't hear me.
compulsive reading	Many people find articles about the private lives of film stars **compulsive reading**. [so interesting you can't stop reading]
bedtime reading	I don't think a horror story makes good **bedtime reading**.
an easy read	Detective stories are good for train journeys as they're **an easy read**.
download an audiobook / an e-book reader app	You can look up the latest book releases and **download an audiobook** from the iTunes store. I've just helped my mother **download an e-book reader app** on her tablet.
flick/skim through a book	Mona **flicked/skimmed through the book** without reading it in detail.
beautifully written	The book is **beautifully written** – I highly recommend it.

Common mistakes

Critics **review** books and films, NOT ~~criticise~~ them. To *criticise* a book or film means to say negative things about it.
Remember that you **watch television**, NOT ~~see~~ television, but you can **see** or **watch a film** or **programme** on television. We usually say **see a film** at the cinema.

Exercises

23.1

Use collocations from A opposite instead of the underlined words in this conversation. The conversation has no errors, but the changes will improve it.

Matthew: Have you downloaded that new e-book that has just appeared about Ireland?
Camilla: No, I don't use my e-book reader app much and I don't visit websites with articles discussing new books. What's it about?
Matthew: Well, it concerns the Irish War of Independence. It's very authentic and it manages to give the atmosphere of Ireland at the beginning of the 20th century.
Camilla: Is it just historical facts, then?
Matthew: No, the main people are two brothers who have different opinions about the war and this divides their family. In the first chapters they're happy and do everything together, but by the last chapter they have become enemies.
Camilla: Mm, it sounds a bit depressing to me.
Matthew: Well, it certainly doesn't finish in a happy way, but I liked it, and it's recommended very much by all the critics.
Camilla: So, a book with a pleasant start and a sad finish. Not for me, I'm afraid. I prefer the opposite.

23.2

Complete the crossword.

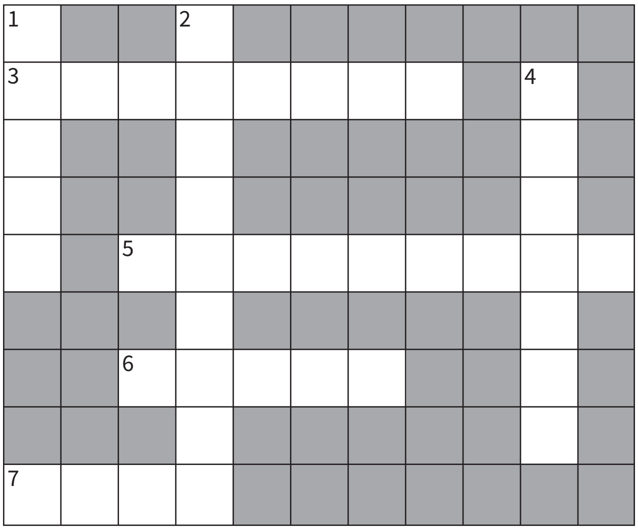

Across

3 I was completely —— in my book and didn't realise how late it had got.
5 An alternative to 3 across.
6 He wants to go on the ——. He's always wanted to be an actor.
7 Who played the male —— in *Destination Saturn*?

Down

1 —— role means 'small but special part in a film/play'.
2 The film was —— for an Oscar but it didn't win.
4 It was an amazing film about space travel, with fantastic special ——.

23.3

Match the words in the box on the left with their collocations on the right.

full big bedtime
female box-office

screen reading
lead hit house

23.4

Complete these collocations.

1 shoot / star in / make a ……………………
2 download an ……………………
3 flick / skim through a ……………………
4 compulsive / bedtime ……………………

Over to you

Online bookshops, as well as book and film review websites, often have mini-reviews and descriptions of books and films. Find a review of a book or film that you know and note down any interesting collocations in it.

24 Music

A Describing music

The Year in Review: Music

Bloom ***Music from the Centre of the Earth* (Palm records 234655)**
New arrivals on the rock **music scene**, Bloom are already making a big impact. If you're looking for **background music**, then this is not for you, but if you want music to **blast out from**[1] your hi-fi and annoy the neighbours, then Bloom's **debut**[2] **album**, with tracks from their **live performance** at the Delaya Stadium, may be just what you want.

Johnny MacRoy ***Songs we loved* (Kase Phonograph 488792)**
For fans of **easy listening**[3] and **catchy**[4] **tunes**, this is all you need. In fact it's so relaxing you might just fall asleep. MacRoy **gives a** sentimental **performance** of these old love songs. At 47, he's not exactly a **pop idol** but his **adoring fans** will love it.

The Divide ***Amphibian* (Fono Corp 3321978)**
This is a rock symphony, an extraordinary **piece of music**. After their **massive hit** in 2015 with Megalith, their record company has **released** this album hoping for another **big hit**. The band themselves **wrote the music**. They have a **huge following** and are due to **go on tour** later this year.

The Oxbridge Symphonia ***British classics old and new* (Rotor Records 775537)**
Haunting melodies and the **occasional virtuoso**[5] **performance** from its two soloists mark this collection of popular British classical music, which aims to **capture a wider audience** for the classics and to promote Britain's **musical heritage**. Roger Crow **conducts the orchestra**. Crow himself **composed** two of the **pieces**, hence the title. Good birthday present for your uncle and aunt. But if you're a real classical **music lover**, save your money.

BUST-OUT WITH JOLA V
BLAZE MAMA (Presto 58843)
Bust-out's new double album **features**[6] **Jola V**, a young **rap**[7] **artist** from Miami. Jola used to be with Chicago hip-hop band Frenzy, but **went solo** in 2015. The band have **remixed**[8] four tracks from earlier albums and Jola's **up-tempo**[9] numbers just add to the excitement.

[1] sound extremely loud
[2] presented to the public for the first time
[3] music that is not serious or difficult
[4] pleasant and easy to remember
[5] extremely skilful
[6] includes as an important part
[7] rock music in which rhymed lyrics are spoken over rhythm tracks
[8] made a new version of a musical track
[9] played at a fast beat

B Playing music

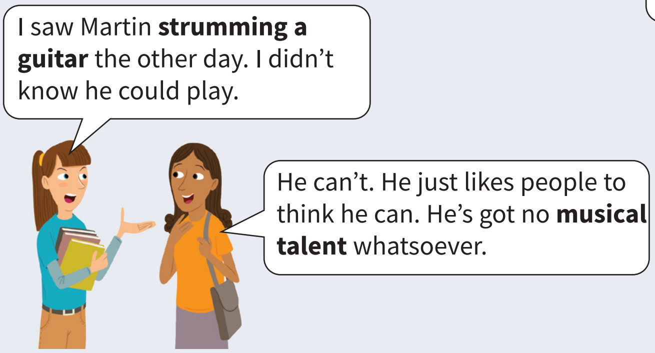
I saw Martin **strumming a guitar** the other day. I didn't know he could play.
He can't. He just likes people to think he can. He's got no **musical talent** whatsoever.

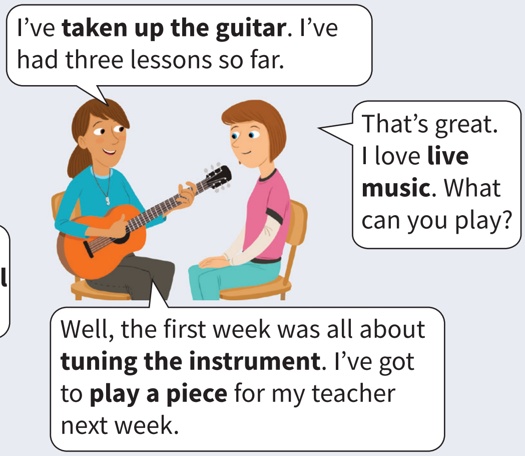
I've **taken up the guitar**. I've had three lessons so far.
That's great. I love **live music**. What can you play?
Well, the first week was all about **tuning the instrument**. I've got to **play a piece** for my teacher next week.

Exercises

24.1 Change the underlined words using collocations from A so that each sentence has the opposite meaning.

1 The band's last album was a minor hit. (give two answers)
2 There are some great slow numbers on this new album.
3 The band has a small following of dedicated fans.
4 Music was playing quietly on the hi-fi when I entered the house.
5 Maria Plurosa gave a poor performance of Heder's violin concerto last night.

24.2 Correct the eight collocation errors in this paragraph. The first one is done for you.

For all folk music ~~likers~~, Johnny Coppin's new album, *The Long Harvest*, published last week, will be a great addition to their collection. Johny recently got solo after five years with the folk band Blue Mountain. He is proud of the musical inheritance of his native Kentucky. Tracks 3 and 7 comprise his old friend Wiz Carter on guitar. With this album Coppin says he hopes to control a wider audience for folk music. His excellent living performance at the recent Lockwood Folk Festival suggests he has a good chance of succeeding. He makes a tour next month. Don't miss him.

1 lovers
2
3
4
5
6
7
8

24.3 What word(s) mean ...?

1 ... music that is playing while you are doing something else and not really listening to it?
2 ... music that is not complicated or difficult to listen to?
3 ... a pop musician who is a very big star with many fans?
4 ... a type of performer who speaks rhymed lyrics over rhythm tracks?
5 ... to tighten or loosen the strings of an instrument till they make the correct note?
6 ... a way of playing a guitar by moving your fingers across the strings?

24.4 Complete these sentences with suitable collocations.

1 Hundreds of .... fans were waiting for Shamira to come out of the concert hall.
2 The orchestra gave a wonderful .... of some popular classics.
3 It was a very .... tune; you only had to hear it once and you were singing it.
4 I'd love to .... a musical instrument but I don't have time.
5 It is one of those .... melodies which you never forget, so beautiful, yet so sad.
6 There's a lot of musical .... in the family; all the children play an instrument.

Now, for twenty thousand dollars, who wrote Beethoven's Fifth Symphony?

25 Sport

A *Do*, *play* and *go*

The table below gives examples of common sporting collocations with *do*, *play* and *go*.

You **do**	gymnastics, judo, weightlifting, aerobics, yoga, wrestling, circuit training, archery, athletics
You **play**	games, badminton, billiards, hockey, bowls, rugby, golf, (table) tennis, cricket, baseball, chess, darts, cards, dominoes
You **go**	fishing, skiing, bowling, cycling, skateboarding, surfing, snowboarding, hang-gliding, climbing, hill walking, sailing, jogging, swimming

You can also say you **go to aerobics**/**judo**/**yoga**/**karate** – this means that you go to a class in this sport.

Common mistakes

Learners often make mistakes with some common collocations connected with sport. Make a point of learning these commonly used collocations.

- You **do** or **play sport**. (NOT ~~make~~ sport)
- You **do exercises**. (NOT ~~make~~ exercises)
- You **play computer** or other **games**. (NOT ~~do~~ games)
- You **have/play a game of** cards. (NOT ~~make~~ a game)
- You **go skiing**. (NOT ~~make~~ skiing)
- You **do activities**. (NOT ~~make~~ or ~~practise~~ activities)

If you are a serious sportsperson, you will certainly practise your sport, but that has a specific meaning, which is to do something again and again in order to get better at it, in other words **to train**. If you are a footballer you might **practise taking a penalty**, for example.

B Winning and losing

Sportsmen and sportswomen want to **win matches**, not **lose matches**. But you can't win all the time! Sometimes a team or player **deserves to win**, but gets **narrowly defeated/beaten**.

Before they **go in for / enter a competition**, athletes **train hard**. They probably **attend/do** at least five **training sessions** a week. They are likely to **put up a fight** to **gain/get a place** in the next **stage/round of the competition**. Of course, a sportsperson's ultimate aim is to **break the world record** in their sport. If they succeed, they **set a new world record** and become a **world record holder**. They are sure to **come up against fierce/intense competition** as they try to **achieve their ambitions**. Sometimes they are satisfied if they just **achieve a personal best**.

Some sports people so **desperately want** to win that they take drugs to **enhance their performance**. This will be discovered when they **fail a drugs test**.

C Football

You can **play** or **have a (football) match** / **game (of football)**. It might be a **home** or an **away match** depending on whether you're playing on your team's **home ground** or not.

The aim is to **score a goal**. Players may **tackle an opponent** to try to **take possession of the ball**[1]. If you tackle in an illegal way, you **foul your opponent**. This will lead to the referee **blowing his whistle** and an opponent **taking a penalty** or **taking a free kick**. If someone isn't playing very well the manager may decide to **drop the player** from the team or **bring on a substitute**[2]. Both teams hope that they will have **taken the lead**[3] by half-time.

[1] get the ball [2] replace one player with another [3] be in a winning position

Exercises

25.1 **Look at A. Complete the sentences with *do*, *play* or *go* in the correct form.**

New Sports Club Opening Next Week

You can ___________ judo!
You can ___________ badminton!
You can ___________ swimming!
You can ___________ weight lifting!
You can ___________ circuit training!

You can ___________ table tennis!
You can ___________ skateboarding!
You can even ___________ darts!
In fact, you can ___________ almost any sport you can think of.

So join now!

25.2 **Look at B and C. Make ten collocations by matching a word from the box on the left with a word or phrase from the box on the right.**

personal
blow
bring on
fail
enter
set
achieve
train
enhance
take

the lead
best
a substitute
a record
a whistle
a competition
your performance
a drugs test
hard
your ambitions

25.3 **Look at the error warning. There are six verb + noun errors in this email. Find and correct them.**

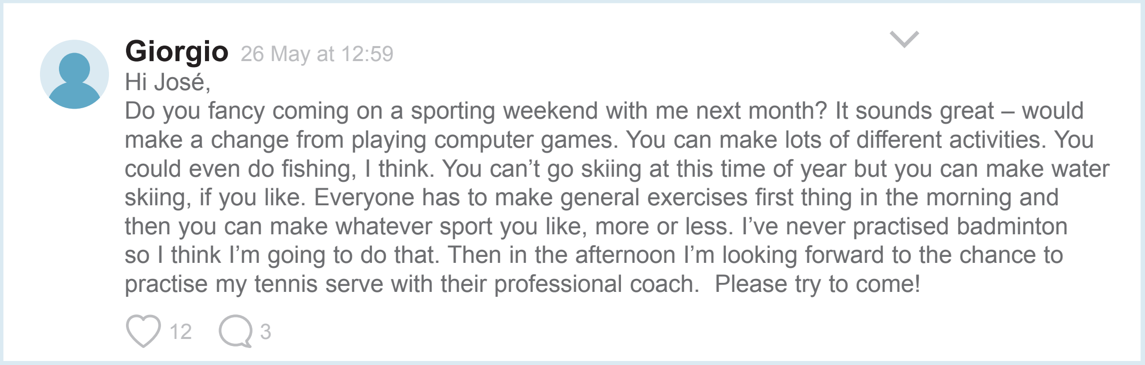

Giorgio 26 May at 12:59

Hi José,

Do you fancy coming on a sporting weekend with me next month? It sounds great – would make a change from playing computer games. You can make lots of different activities. You could even do fishing, I think. You can't go skiing at this time of year but you can make water skiing, if you like. Everyone has to make general exercises first thing in the morning and then you can make whatever sport you like, more or less. I've never practised badminton so I think I'm going to do that. Then in the afternoon I'm looking forward to the chance to practise my tennis serve with their professional coach. Please try to come!

♡ 12 💬 3

25.4 **Complete the collocations in this report of a rugby match.**

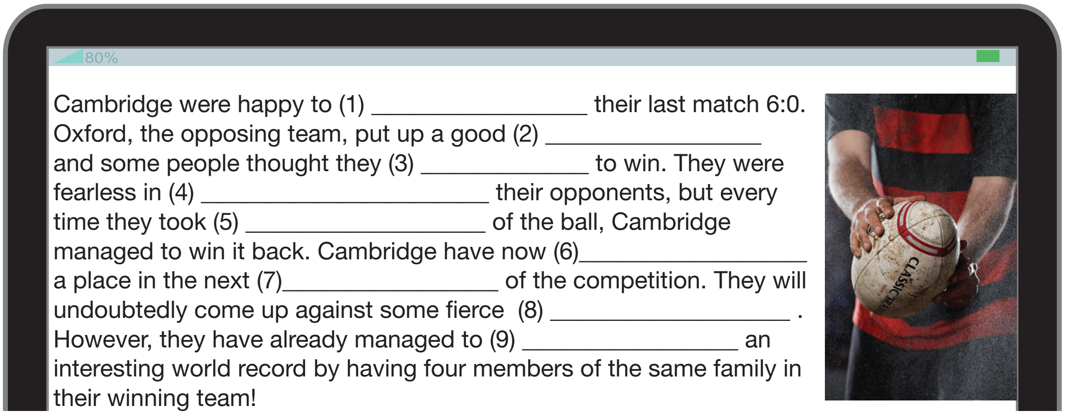

Cambridge were happy to (1) ________________ their last match 6:0. Oxford, the opposing team, put up a good (2) ________________ and some people thought they (3) _____________ to win. They were fearless in (4) ______________________ their opponents, but every time they took (5) __________________ of the ball, Cambridge managed to win it back. Cambridge have now (6)_________________ a place in the next (7)________________ of the competition. They will undoubtedly come up against some fierce (8) __________________ . However, they have already managed to (9) ________________ an interesting world record by having four members of the same family in their winning team!

Over to you

Make a section in your vocabulary notebook for your own favourite sport. Find an English-language website connected with that sport. Write down any useful collocations you notice there.

26 Health and illness

A Verb collocations referring to illnesses and injuries

In most everyday situations you can use the verbs *get* or *have* with the names of illnesses, but you will improve your written style if you can use these alternative verbs and expressions.

verb	common collocations	example
catch	a cold, the flu, a chill, pneumonia	I got soaking wet and **caught a cold**.
contract [formal]	a disease, malaria, typhoid	Uncle Jess **contracted malaria** while he was working in Africa.
develop [formal]	(lung/breast) cancer, diabetes, AIDS, arthritis, Alzheimer's disease	My grandfather **developed Alzheimer's disease** and could no longer remember things or recognise people.
suffer from	asthma, hay fever, backache	She has **suffered from asthma** all her life.
have an attack of	bronchitis, asthma, hay fever, diarrhoea	She **had an attack of hay fever** and was sneezing non-stop.
be diagnosed with	(lung/breast) cancer, AIDS, leukaemia, autism	He was **diagnosed with lung cancer** and died a year later.
suffer / sustain [formal]	(major/minor/serious/head) injuries	The driver **sustained serious head injuries** in the crash.

B Fitness and good health

Look at this magazine questionnaire and note the collocations relating to fitness.

Are You in Good Shape?

1 Do you **take** regular **vigorous exercise**?
2 Do you eat a **balanced diet**?
3 Do you care about **healthy eating**?
4 Do you **follow** a personal **fitness programme**?
5 Do you always **stick to your programme**?
6 In general, have you **kept fit** over the last two years?

C Talking about sickness and pain

My poor friend Gina is **terminally ill**. [She will die soon.] She suffers **excruciating/unbearable pain** most of the time. Apparently it's an **incurable illness** that runs in her family.

Dave annoys everyone at work. He takes days off even for the most **trivial/minor ailments**.

It's a **serious illness**, but probably not **life-threatening**.

For a few days it was **acutely/intensely painful**, but now it's just a **dull ache**. My doctor **prescribed** me **some tablets** and they **relieved/alleviated the pain**.

Cora was **taken ill** the other day. She's in hospital. They're not sure what it is yet.

I had a **heavy cold** and a **splitting headache**, so I wasn't in a good mood. [the opposite of a heavy cold is a **slight cold**]

Common mistakes

In accidents, wars, etc., **things** get **damaged** and **people** get **injured**:
Their **car was slightly damaged** but luckily **no one was injured**.

Exercises

26.1 Look at A. Match the verbs and expressions on the left with their collocations on the right.

1 sustain
2 contract
3 have an attack of
4 develop
5 be diagnosed with
6 catch

diarrhoea
a cold
breast cancer
minor injuries
typhoid
autism

26.2 Use the verbs and expressions in the left-hand column of exercise 26.1 instead of the verb *get* in these newspaper extracts.

1 Many musicians who get arthritis experience the tragedy of no longer being able to play their instrument.

2 **More than 50 passengers on the flight got moderate or severe diarrhoea. Medical officials suspect the in-flight catering was responsible.**

3 **To get cancer is the most frightening experience, and people often need intense counselling to cope with it.**

4 **Millions of people get malaria each year in poorer countries, and drugs to treat it are in short supply.**

5 Mr Taylor escaped with bruises, but experts say he was lucky not to have got serious injuries.

6 **Patients often get pneumonia while in hospital. In fact, experts now think hospitals may be the worst place to be if you are sick and weak.**

26.3 Complete the collocations. You are given the first letter of the missing words.

1 Flu is not a s.................. illness for most people, but it can be l..................-t.................. for elderly people who are weak and who haven't been vaccinated.
2 Patients who are t.................. ill often prefer to die at home surrounded by their loved ones.
3 I'm not in pain, it's just a d.................. ache in my back tooth. I hate going to the dentist's.
4 The children have a b.................. diet, with lots of fruit and vegetables and only a few sweet things now and then.
5 Turn that music down! I've got a s.................. headache!
6 You shouldn't waste the doctor's time with t.................. ailments. Get something at the chemist's instead.
7 I need to adopt a proper fitness programme and to s.................. to it. I was in good s.................. a year ago but then I became a bit lazy.
8 Diseases which are i.................. now will be beaten one day if scientists continue to make progress with drugs and genetic science.
9 My aunt was t.................. ill when she was on holiday. Apparently, she was in e.................. pain. Luckily she had travel insurance.
10 I believe in h.................. eating and I try to do v.................. exercise every other day.
11 My doctor p.................. me a new drug to a.................. my backache. It worked!
12 I took a day off work yesterday. It was nothing serious, just a s.................. cold.

Over to you

If you have not already done it, complete the questionnaire at B opposite. If you think you need to change your habits, make a note of it, e.g. *Take more vigorous exercise!*

27 Using the Internet

A Online research

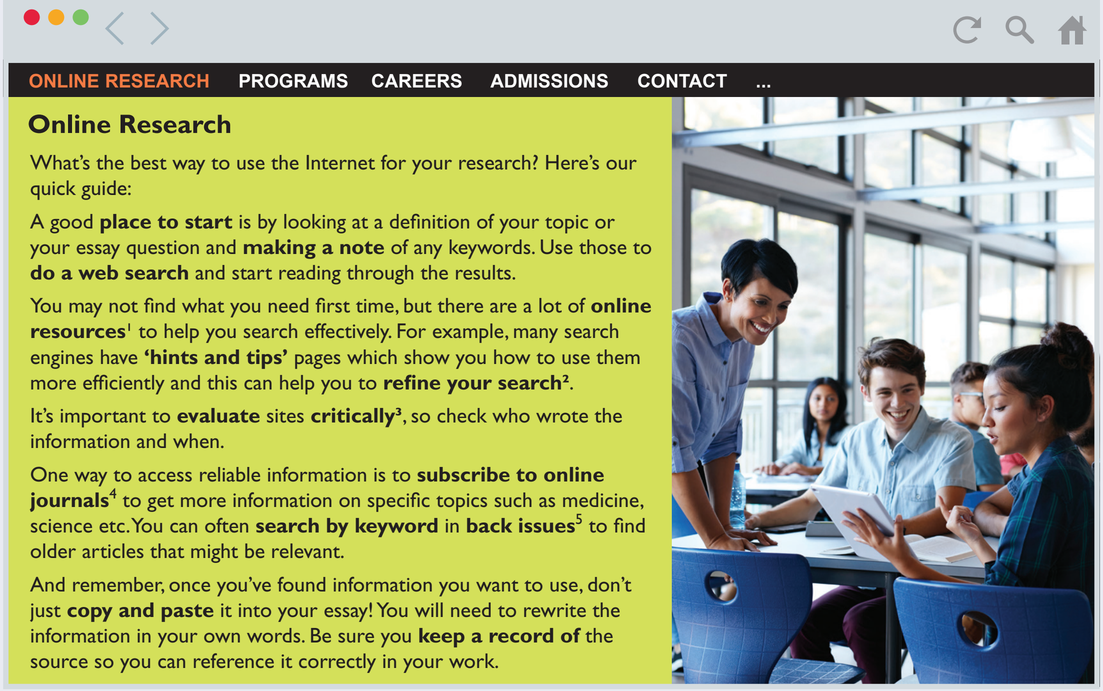

Online Research

What's the best way to use the Internet for your research? Here's our quick guide:

A good **place to start** is by looking at a definition of your topic or your essay question and **making a note** of any keywords. Use those to **do a web search** and start reading through the results.

You may not find what you need first time, but there are a lot of **online resources**[1] to help you search effectively. For example, many search engines have **'hints and tips'** pages which show you how to use them more efficiently and this can help you to **refine your search**[2].

It's important to **evaluate** sites **critically**[3], so check who wrote the information and when.

One way to access reliable information is to **subscribe to online journals**[4] to get more information on specific topics such as medicine, science etc. You can often **search by keyword** in **back issues**[5] to find older articles that might be relevant.

And remember, once you've found information you want to use, don't just **copy and paste** it into your essay! You will need to rewrite the information in your own words. Be sure you **keep a record of** the source so you can reference it correctly in your work.

[1] useful online materials

[2] make your search more accurate (e.g. by searching for more words or changing the settings)

[3] think carefully about whether something is reliable or truthful

[4] to pay for or ask to receive (journals) regularly

[5] previous editions of a magazine, newspaper or journal

B Problems and solutions

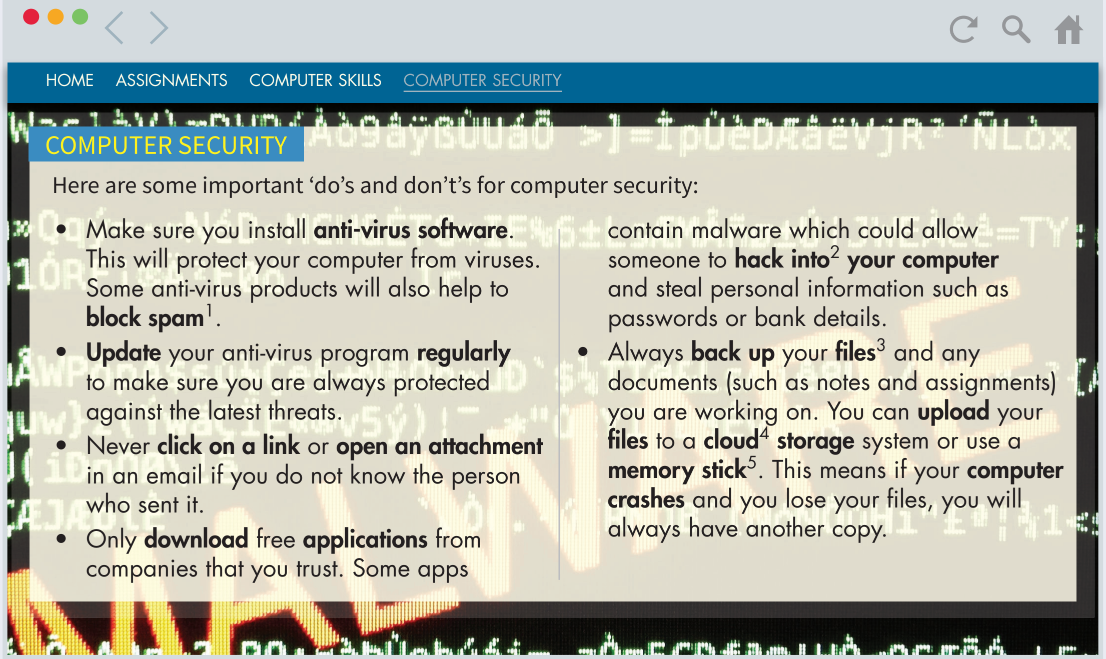

COMPUTER SECURITY

Here are some important 'do's and don't's for computer security:

- Make sure you install **anti-virus software**. This will protect your computer from viruses. Some anti-virus products will also help to **block spam**[1].
- **Update** your anti-virus program **regularly** to make sure you are always protected against the latest threats.
- Never **click on a link** or **open an attachment** in an email if you do not know the person who sent it.
- Only **download** free **applications** from companies that you trust. Some apps contain malware which could allow someone to **hack into**[2] **your computer** and steal personal information such as passwords or bank details.
- Always **back up** your **files**[3] and any documents (such as notes and assignments) you are working on. You can **upload** your **files** to a **cloud**[4] **storage** system or use a **memory stick**[5]. This means if your **computer crashes** and you lose your files, you will always have another copy.

[1] stop unwanted emails

[2] get into (a computer system) illegally

[3] make a copy of your files

[4] online

[5] a small piece of equipment you connect to a computer to store data [also called a **flash drive** or **USB stick**]

Exercises

27.1 Look at A. Match the beginning of each sentence on the left with its ending on the right.

1 When I write an essay, I start by doing a web
2 Many university libraries subscribe to
3 The college website has some good hints
4 When I find a useful site, I usually copy and
5 Our professor mentioned a really useful website, but I didn't make
6 If you get too many results, you could refine

a) and tips pages which helped me when I started writing essays.
b) a note of it! I'll have to email him.
c) online journals so that students can access them for free.
d) search of key words in the question.
e) your search by using more keywords.
f) paste the address into a separate document.

27.2 Look at B. Choose the correct collocation.

1 Someone *crashed* / *hacked* / *backed* into my computer and changed my passwords.
2 This new software is really effective at *crashing* / *sending* / *blocking* spam from my email account. I hardly ever get junk emails anymore!
3 Poor Lorna. Her computer *crashed* / *hacked* / *blocked* and she lost all her work!
4 Be sure you *storage* / *back up* / *link* your files, so you don't lose anything.
5 Every time I *put* / *switch* / *click* on the link you sent me, my browser crashes.
6 I wanted to *upload* / *backup* / *download* a vocab app, but there's not enough space on my phone.

27.3 Read these remarks by different people. Then answer the questions.

Saleema: I didn't want to spend money on it. But now my computer is infected with a virus and I have to pay to get it fixed.
Helena: I always keep a copy of all my work on it, and take it home every night so I can do more work in the evenings.
Steve: I was working on my presentation and suddenly the screen went black.
Ned: I can't open the file you sent. It says I don't have permission to view it.
Elise: I always update the software every month to make sure my computer is protected.
Ethan: My photos are all online, which means I can access them on any computer.

1 Whose computer crashed? ……………………
2 Who updates their virus protection regularly? ……………………
3 Who doesn't have anti-virus software? ……………………
4 Who is talking about a memory stick? ……………………
5 Who uses cloud storage? ……………………
6 Who is having trouble opening an attachment? ……………………

27.4 Choose the word which does NOT fit in each sentence

1 It took ages, but he finally uploaded all his …………………… to the cloud.
a) data b) files c) spam

2 I need to back up my …………………….
a) hints and tips b) folders c) data

3 Somebody hacked into my …………………….
a) computer b) virus c) system

4 I always back up my most important files on a(n) …………………….
a) anti-virus software b) cloud storage system c) memory stick

27.5 Put the words in order to make sentences.

1 note / websites / most / I / a / of / the / made / useful
2 the / keyword / can / by / search / You / database
3 from / need / evaluate / You / to / information / critically / websites
4 some / searched / We / through / the / of / issues / back

28 Study and learning

A Alternatives to *do* and *get*

You can improve your written style by using alternative collocations instead of *do* and *get*.

expression with ***do***/***get***	alternatives
do an exam	I have to **sit/take an exam** in biology at the end of term.
do research, do a research project	Our class **carried out / conducted a research project** into the history of our school.
do a course	I decided to **enrol on / take** a course in Computer programming.
do a degree/diploma	She **studied for / took** a degree in Engineering.
do a subject (e.g. law)	I **studied/took history and economics** in high school.
do an essay/assignment	All students have to **write an essay/assignment** at the end of term.
do a lecture/talk	Professor Parkinson **gave a lecture** on the American Civil War.
get a degree/diploma	He **obtained / was awarded a diploma** in Town Planning in 2010.
get a grade	Her essay **received / was given** an A-grade.
get a qualification	You will need to **obtain/acquire a qualification** in social work.
get an education	The country is poor; only 27% of children **receive** a basic **education**.

Common mistakes

Don't confuse **pass an exam** with **sit/take an exam**. *Pass* means to be successful in an exam or test. Say 'I **did** my homework', NOT 'I ~~made~~ my homework.'

B

Look at these conversations between a teacher and students. Note how the teacher uses more formal collocations to repeat what each student says.

Student: Do we have to **go to** all **the lectures** to **do the course** or just yours?
Teacher: You must **attend** all **the lectures** to **complete the course**.

Student: Excuse me. Where will next week's **class be**? In this room?
Teacher: No. Next week's **class will be held** in Room 405.

Student: When do we have to **give** you **our essays**?
Teacher: You have to **hand in your essays** on Friday.

Student: When do we have to **send in our** university **applications**?
Teacher: You have to **submit your application** by December 1st.

Student: What do I have to do if I want to **leave the course**?
Teacher: If you want to **withdraw from the course**, you have to go to the College Office.

C More collocations connected with study and learning

Do you **keep a** vocabulary **notebook**? It's a good way of recording new collocations.
I did the **first draft** of my essay last week and the **final draft** this week. I have to hand it in tomorrow. Then the teacher **gives** us **feedback** after about a week.
We don't have exams at my school. We have **continuous assessment**. [system where the quality of a student's work is judged by pieces of course work and not by one final examination]
The local technical college **provides training** for young people in a variety of professions.
After secondary school, 30% of the population go on to **higher/tertiary education**, and 20% of adults do some sort of **further education** course during their lives.
Does your government **recognise** foreign **qualifications** for school teachers?

Exercises

28.1 Replace all the uses of *do* or *get* in this paragraph with more interesting words.

I have three daughters. The oldest one did a degree in Economics. She got her bachelor's degree last year and is now doing some research on taxation laws in different countries. The second one is doing a course at Newcastle University. She's doing History. She loves it, though she says she has to do far too many assignments. My youngest daughter is still at school. She's doing her school-leaving exams in the summer. She'll go to university next year if she gets good enough grades in her exams. She wants to do Sociology and then get a social work qualification. My daughters are all getting a much better education than I ever had.

28.2 Complete these questions.

1 What homework do we have to .... tonight?
2 In which month do students usually .... their final exams in your country?
3 Who do we have to .... our essays in to?
4 Who is .... today's lecture on Shakespeare?
5 What do we need to do if we want to .... from the course?
6 In which room is the translation class going to be ....?
7 Have you done the first .... of your essay yet?
8 Do you prefer exams or continuous ....?
9 Do you always .... to all your lectures?
10 Does the college .... training in computer skills?

28.3 Choose the correct collocation.

1 I'm happy to say that you have all *sat / taken / passed* your maths test.
2 Will the teacher *give / provide / make* us some feedback on our essays?
3 The university *agrees / recognises / takes* the school-leaving exams of most other countries.
4 It isn't compulsory to *assist / attend / listen* all the lectures at this university.
5 How long will it take you to *complete / carry out / fulfil* your degree?
6 You must *submit / send / write* your application in before the end of June.
7 Several students have decided to *withdraw / go / leave* the course this year.
8 I want you all to *write / hold / keep* a vocabulary notebook.

28.4 Answer these questions about education.

1 At what age do children in your country sit their final school exams?
2 How long does it take in your country to do a degree in Medicine?
3 Give one advantage you think continuous assessment has over traditional exams.
4 What sort of feedback might a teacher give a student who has just given a presentation in class?
5 Give one advantage for a learner of English of doing homework.
6 What advice about keeping a vocabulary notebook would you give to someone starting to learn English?
7 What is the difference between further education and higher or tertiary education?
8 What would you expect to be the difference between the first draft of an essay and the final draft?

29 Presentations

A Giving a presentation

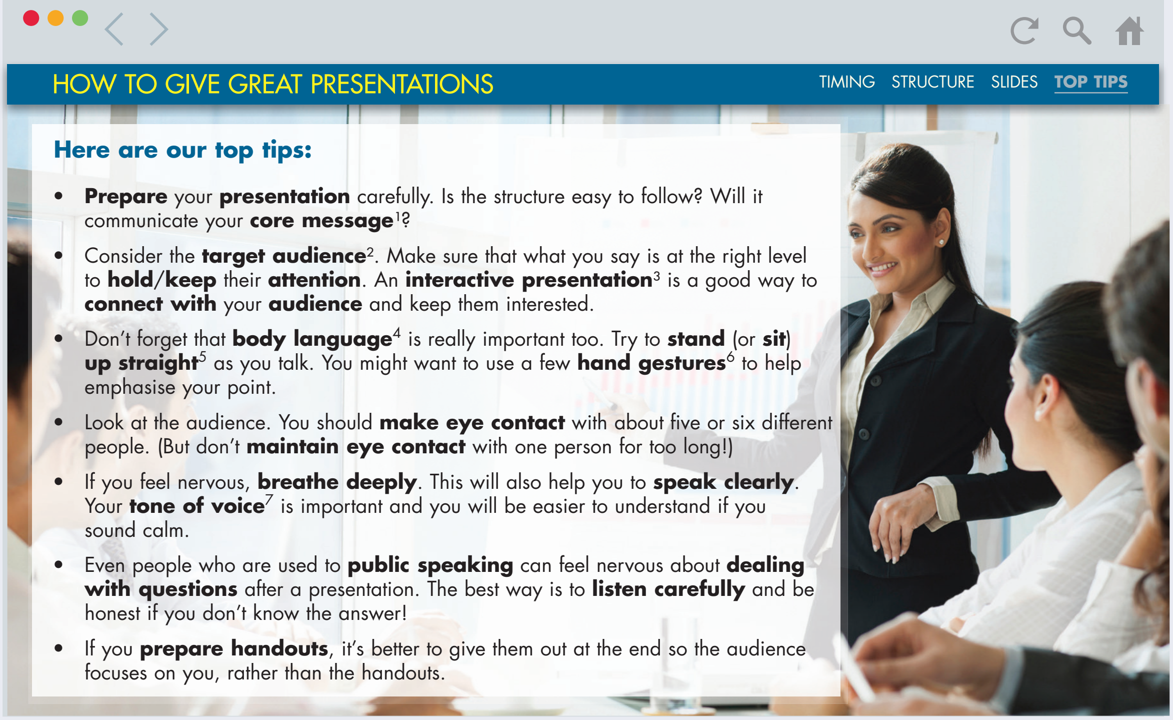

HOW TO GIVE GREAT PRESENTATIONS

Here are our top tips:

- **Prepare** your **presentation** carefully. Is the structure easy to follow? Will it communicate your **core message**[1]?
- Consider the **target audience**[2]. Make sure that what you say is at the right level to **hold/keep** their **attention**. An **interactive presentation**[3] is a good way to **connect with** your **audience** and keep them interested.
- Don't forget that **body language**[4] is really important too. Try to **stand** (or **sit**) **up straight**[5] as you talk. You might want to use a few **hand gestures**[6] to help emphasise your point.
- Look at the audience. You should **make eye contact** with about five or six different people. (But don't **maintain eye contact** with one person for too long!)
- If you feel nervous, **breathe deeply**. This will also help you to **speak clearly**. Your **tone of voice**[7] is important and you will be easier to understand if you sound calm.
- Even people who are used to **public speaking** can feel nervous about **dealing with questions** after a presentation. The best way is to **listen carefully** and be honest if you don't know the answer!
- If you **prepare handouts**, it's better to give them out at the end so the audience focuses on you, rather than the handouts.

[1] the most important point(s)
[2] the people you are focusing on
[3] a presentation which involves the audience
[4] the way you move, stand, hold your arms etc
[5] keep your back straight and your shoulders back
[6] a movement of your hands
[7] the sound and volume of your voice

B Visual aids

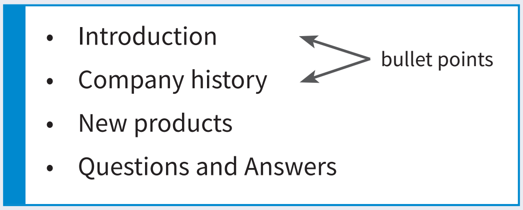

- Introduction
- Company history
- New products
- Questions and Answers

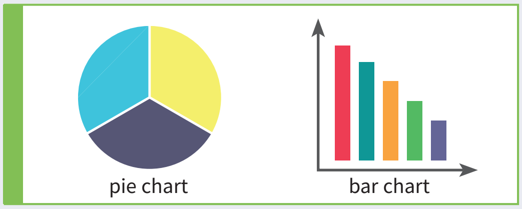

Clear **visual aids**[1] are a great way to **make**/**have an impact** on your audience. Using **PowerPoint**® **slides** or other **presentation software** can create a very **effective presentation**.

You should **keep** slides **simple** with just a few words or images on each one. Be sure to use a clear font which is **easy to read**.

Think about your **key points**[2] for each area and try to write these in just a few words on the slide. You might want to use **bullet points** to help the audience **follow** your **argument**[3].

If you are presenting numbers or data, **pie charts**, **bar charts** or graphs are often the clearest way to present them.

Using pictures or animations can help **bring** the presentation **to life**[4] and make it more memorable, but too many can be confusing and distracting.

[1] pictures, charts, films etc
[2] main points (We can also talk about *key issues*, *key areas*, *key elements* and *key questions*.)
[3] understand your reasons or explanation
[4] make more interesting and lively

Exercises

29.1

Look at A. Match the beginning of each sentence on the left with its ending on the right.

1 Nick is quite a shy person, so maintaining eye
2 It's important to be aware of your body
3 Rosie knows how to hold
4 I read somewhere that Americans fear public
5 A lot of people are worried about dealing
6 The first time I gave a presentation, I was so nervous I didn't listen
7 Scott is very well-respected in his field, but he doesn't really connect

a) with questions at the end of the presentation.
b) carefully to one of the questions.
c) contact will be difficult for him.
d) with the audience. He needs to make his presentations more interactive.
e) language. It can have a big impact.
f) speaking more than death. That's crazy!
g) the audience's attention by asking questions.

29.2

Look at B. Correct the eight collocation errors in this text about presentations.

Do you want to give great presentations which give an impact on the audience? Firstly, make sure that your slides are easy to watch. Don't use an unusual or small font. Also, don't have too much text on each slide. Keep them simply so people can take your argument. Use pictures or examples to carry your ideas to life. You can also use cake charts or bar tables to show figures or data more clearly. Finally, repeat your big points several times to make sure the audience has understood your message.

29.3

Read these remarks by different people. Then answer the questions.

Rory made us all answer questions and get involved in his presentation – it was great!
Isabel repeated the main point at least three times, but at least we all remembered it!
Jason's sales presentation was really successful – we all wanted to buy his products.
Amelia used lots of slides with pictures and even some short video clips.
John gave us all a printed copy of the main points from the presentation at the end.
Fiona's slides only had three or four short bullet points on them.

1 Who had prepared handouts? ……………………
2 Who gave an interactive presentation? ……………………
3 Who used a lot of visual aids? ……………………
4 Who kept their slides simple? ……………………
5 Who gave an effective presentation? ……………………
6 Who had a clear core message? ……………………

29.4

Match the words in the box on the left with the words they collocate with on the right.

prepare
tone of
breathe
target
hand
speak

clearly
audience
voice
gestures
deeply
a presentation

29.5

Complete these sentences using the collocations from exercise 29.4 to fill the gaps.

1 Unfortunately, the speaker used lots of big ……………………, which was really distracting.
2 Try to vary your ……………………. Don't speak on the same level all the time as it can be boring.
3 The professor was very knowledgeable about her subject but she used a lot of technical terms which the …………………… of university students were unlikely to understand.
4 If I feel nervous before giving a presentation, I try to …………………… as it helps me relax.
5 I don't have time to go out tonight. I've got to …………………… for a big meeting tomorrow.
6 You don't need to be a native speaker to give a good presentation in English. You just need to …………………… and keep it simple.

30 Work

A Jobs, career and work

JOB
- a fulfilling job
- a high-powered job[1]
- to apply for a job
- a permanent job
- to offer someone a job
- a steady job
- a demanding job

WORK
- to carry out work
- to supervise work
- to work closely with
- to take on work
- available to start work
- to complete work

CAREER
- to wreck/ruin someone's career
- to embark on a career[2]
- to have a career in (medicine)
- a brilliant career
- a career takes off[3]
- a promising career
- to climb the career ladder
- her career lasted …
- at the height/peak of your career

Note we say **have a job**, NOT have a ~~work~~.

[1] an important job
[2] to start a career
[3] a career starts to become very successful

B Job adverts

Do you have a good knowledge of the fashion industry?

For details, phone 08965 439820.

Do you **have experience** in sales?
Are you a **good team player**[1]?
Are you looking for a **stimulating working environment**?
Would you like to be an **integral part** of a **close team**?
We can offer you **job satisfaction** and **generous benefits**[2].
Vacancy must be filled[3] within three weeks.

[1] a person who co-operates well with other people
[2] good rewards for work – not just salary but also perhaps a company car, good holiday entitlement, etc.
[3] the job must be offered to someone and accepted

C Things you might do at work

Bella **has a job as** a PA. Basically her role is to **take charge of** her boss, who is not a very organised person, and make sure nothing **goes wrong**. She **makes appointments** for her boss and she makes sure he **keeps his appointments**. She spends a lot of time **answering the phone** and **fielding telephone calls**[1] on his behalf. When her boss has to travel, she **makes the reservations** for him. When her boss has to **give a presentation**, she **makes** all **the preparations** that are required, including **making photocopies** of any papers that he needs. She **arranges meetings** for him and she **takes the minutes**[2] at the meetings. Bella is a very well-organised person. She **keeps a record** of everything she does at work and **sets** herself **targets**. She does her best to **achieve her goals**. Every morning she **makes a list** of everything she needs to do. Today the first thing on her list is '**Hand in my notice**'[3]! But she's not going to **take early retirement**. She's got a new job where she will be the boss and will have her own PA.

[1] dealing with all the calls she can handle herself and only putting the most urgent ones through to her boss
[2] keeps the official record of a meeting
[3] resign, inform her boss she's planning to stop working for him

Exercises

30.1 Complete the sentences with *work*, *job* or *career*.

1 I took on too much .... last month and couldn't finish it all.
2 At the peak of her .... she was managing a sales force of 200 people.
3 Daniel Robertson's .... in education lasted almost four decades.
4 I have a very demanding ...., but I enjoy it, nonetheless.
5 At the moment we are carrying out .... on the design of the new stadium.
6 The scandal ruined his .... and he never worked in the stock market again.
7 I'm going to apply for a .... in a supermarket.
8 She had a long and brilliant .... in show business. At 20, she got her first steady .... in a small regional theatre, but it was in 1980 that her .... really took off when she was offered a part in a TV series.

30.2 Look at this job advert, then look at the shortlist of candidates below. Rank them in order of suitability for the job, from 1 (most suitable) to 3 (least suitable), and give your reasons.

The Carlsson Group: Marketing Manager

The Carlsson Group is looking for a Marketing Manager with relevant qualifications and at least five years' experience in sales and marketing. A competitive salary and generous benefits are available for the right candidate. You must have a good knowledge of current markets, be available to start work at short notice, and must be a good team player. This is a high-powered and fulfilling job for anyone wishing to embark on a career in senior management. The company wishes to fill the vacancy immediately.

applicant		1–3	reasons
	Kevin Marsh, 21, just left university with a degree in Management. Likes working in teams, wants a satisfying job. Unemployed at the moment.		
	Katharina Bauer, 35, worked in international Marketing for seven years. Degree in Business, used to working under stress and meeting deadlines. One month's notice required in present job.		
	Nuala Riley, 28, six years' experience as editor for a large publisher. Extremely adaptable, excellent relations with colleagues. Three months' notice required.		

30.3 Match the beginning of each sentence on the left with its ending on the right.

1 She has set	a presentation to my colleagues.
2 We're making	the minutes at the meeting.
3 I always keep	my phone calls while I took time off.
4 Kate will take	some difficult targets for us all.
5 I have to give	his goals in his career.
6 He never achieved	my appointments.
7 He fielded	preparations for the sales conference.

30.4 What do the collocations in bold in the text below mean? Use a dictionary to help you.

Kika started out in a **dead-end job** in a jam factory but she ended up with a **glittering career** on the stage, a **career spanning** five decades. She is quoted as saying 'Stage acting may not be a particularly **lucrative job** but it has to be one of the most **rewarding jobs** in the world.'

31 Business

A Going into business

Interviewer: When did you first **go into business**?

Jeffries: I **set up a** small **business** selling office equipment in 2001. Then in 2003, I **went into partnership** with my old friend, Ethan Smith. We **made a loss** for the first two years, but then things got better and we've **made a profit** for most years ever since. But there have been bad times, too.

Interviewer: In what way?

Jeffries: Well, during the economic recession, a lot of small **businesses were going under**[1], and I thought our **business would fold**[2]. All around us, small firms were **going bankrupt**[3]. But in 2010 we **won a contract**, despite **stiff competition**, to supply the local government offices. That was an important moment for us. We **took on staff** and expanded. We were proud that we had **created jobs** for local people at a time when unemployment was high. Our **sales figures** improved steadily and soon we had an **annual turnover**[4] of more than eighteen million pounds.

Interviewer: So what's the **secret of your success**?

Jeffries: Well, we're quite cautious. For instance, we always **carry out**[5] **market research** before **launching a** new **product**. But we also firmly believe in customer service, especially **after-sales service**. But at the end of the day, **running a** successful **business** is a combination of hard work, luck and intuition.

Interviewer: Finally, there are rumours that you may **float the company**[6] on the stock market.

Jeffries: At the moment we have no intention of **going public**[7]. People shouldn't believe everything they read online!

[1] failing financially

[2] close because of failure

[3] unable to pay debts, so the company's property is sold by order of a court of law

[4] amount of business a company does in a year

[5] the formal equivalent would be **conduct market research**

[6] and [7] start selling shares in a business or company for the first time

B More business collocations

Owing to the economic crisis, many small firms **ceased trading**. [closed their business]

There is **cut-throat competition** in the music industry these days. [very severe competition]

Market forces have caused many factories to close as businesses move overseas. [forces not influenced by government that decide price levels in an economy]

Our local bakery has **gone out of business**. Most people buy their bread at the supermarket these days.

Business is booming for Internet-based travel companies as most people book travel online. [business is doing extremely well]

She resigned and went to work for a **rival company**.

We **did/struck a deal** with the vendor of the house and got a 15% discount on the price.

It's quite difficult sometimes to **balance the budget** because of increased costs.

Our company have **put in a bid** for the new leisure centre contract. [offered to do the work for a particular amount of money]

Common mistakes

Remember, the collocation is **do business**, NOT ~~**make**~~ business: We're **doing** a lot of **business** in Asia these days.

Exercises

31.1 Look at A. Complete these collocations.

1 to .... a company on the stock market
2 to .... a new product
3 to .... a profit
4 to .... bankrupt
5 to .... into business
6 to .... into partnership
7 to .... market research
8 to .... public
9 to .... up a business
10 to .... a loss

31.2 Match the newspaper headlines 1–6 with the topics of the stories a–f.

1 BUSINESS GOES UNDER
2 STIFF COMPETITION FOR LOCAL FIRM
3 BUSINESS BOOMING IN THE AREA
4 JACKSON'S STRIKE SUCCESSFUL DEAL WITH JAPAN
5 ICE CREAM COMPANY TO BE FLOATED
6 PAPER COMPANY EXPECTED TO FOLD

a a company wins a promising new contract
b a rival company is causing problems
c a firm is going to sell shares for the first time
d a company has ceased trading
e a company may go out of business
f local companies' sales figures are looking good

31.3 Choose the correct collocation

1 Competition to *earn / win / achieve* the contract was *strong / stiff / hard*.
2 You need a wide range of skills to *run / work / go* a successful business.
3 How long have you been *doing / making / getting* business with China for?
4 The annual *takeover / overtake / turnover* of their company is growing rapidly.
5 It's my job to *weigh / add / balance* the budget.
6 They've put in a very competitive *offer / bid / deal* so they hope to get the job.

31.4 Fill the gaps in this local magazine article.

Jan Vickers now (1) .... a successful bicycle company in the town. He set it (2) .... ten years ago to cater for students and he has done extremely well. He (3) .... a lot of rental business with the tourist trade at local hotels. In his first year of operations he (4) .... a loss, but his sales (5) .... for his second year showed an upturn and he has never looked back since. Indeed you could say that (6) .... is currently booming as he has just (7) .... an important new contract with a chain of fitness centres. There was stiff (8) .... but Jan (9) .... in a bid which was more attractive than anything that (10) .... companies could offer. So, the deal was (11) .... As a result, Jan's company is planning to (12) .... 20 new jobs. When asked to explain the (13) ....of his success, Jan puts it down to his company's emphasis on after-sales (14) ....

Over to you

Choose an article from the magazine *Management Today*, available online at www.managementtoday.co.uk Make a note of any interesting collocations you find.

32 Academic writing 1: giving opinions

A Reviewing the work of academics

Look at these extracts from reviews in academic journals.

In 1998, Lucas Georgescu published the results of his **groundbreaking research** on genetics. His latest paper also **makes a significant contribution** to the field. He **sets out** some **powerful arguments** which will **shape**[1] **our thinking** for years to come.

[1] influence

In this latest book, Marina Kass **gives an account of** Karl Marx's philosophy and **provides evidence** to **support the claim** that Garpov seriously misinterpreted Marx. In addition, the book offers a **concise**[2] **summary** of the present state of Marxist philosophy.

[2] short and clear

Partridge **strenuously defends** her theory, which has **come under attack** recently in several journals. She argues that the Prime Minister **played a central role** in the political crisis of 1811, and **goes into great detail** to support her argument.

Nathan Peel attempts to **establish a connection** between mobile phone use and physical damage to users' brains, but he does not offer **irrefutable proof**[3] and the statistics do not show any **significant trends**.

[3] absolute proof, impossible to prove wrong

B Stating things strongly and less strongly

The sentences below express opinions, either strongly or less strongly.

Strong expressions of opinion

The invention of the steam engine was the **key factor** in the birth of the industrial revolution.
The events of 1954 are a **perfect example** of how political leaders make misjudgements that have serious long-term effects.
This is a **clear illustration** of the importance of a strong monetary policy.

Less strong expressions of opinion

The figures offer a **tentative explanation** of the causes of acid rain pollution. [an explanation given by someone who is not totally certain that it is the correct explanation]
The statistics **broadly support** the view that the economy is heading towards recession.

C Other general academic collocations

There is a **strong tendency** in the work of some linguists to suggest that spoken language is inferior to written language.

We must first **gather evidence**, then **carry out a** detailed **study** of all the factors that **play a part** in social conditioning.

You cannot expect your claim to be accepted if you cannot offer **supporting evidence**.

Simon Hart **challenges the theory** of social change put forward by Professor Kemp.

It is important in academic writing always to **acknowledge your sources**. If you fail to do this, you will **commit plagiarism**. [use another person's idea or a part of their work and pretend that it is your own]

Common mistakes

We **do research** or **carry out research**, NOT ~~make~~ research.
Someone **puts forward a theory** or **proposes a theory**, NOT ~~gives~~ a theory.

Exercises

32.1 Look at A and answer the questions.

1 Which collocations suggest that the writer admires Georgescu's work?
2 Which collocations indicate that Partridge's work has not been accepted by everyone?
3 Which collocations suggest that Marina Kass focuses on facts?
4 Which collocations suggest that Nathan Peel is interested in analysing social statistics?

32.2 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets, so that it keeps the same meaning.

1 The example of Mrs Brown clearly illustrates the need for better medical services in the area. (ILLUSTRATION)
2 A doctoral thesis must always make it clear where it got its information. (SOURCES)
3 Dr Kahn's results provide clear evidence that our theory is correct. (IRREFUTABLE)
4 The article begins by concisely summarising the background to the research project. (CONCISE)
5 The book interestingly describes the life of Marx as a young man. (ACCOUNT)
6 Janet's theory has been attacked recently in a number of journals. (COME)

32.3 In B some collocations are presented as expressing an opinion in a strong way. Which collocations in the texts in A also express an opinion in a strong way?

32.4 Match the words in the box on the left with the words that they collocate with on the right.

play make set carry
convinced go come shape

people's thinking under attack a contribution
a part out a study out an argument
by someone's argument into detail

32.5 Choose the correct collocation.

REVIEWS

Kelly has written a fascinating study of how early people originally got to Australia. He presents some very (1) *powerful / mighty* arguments to support his theory. He offers plenty of (2) *persuading / supporting* evidence to back up his ideas. He has a rather strong (3) *trend / tendency* to (4) *test / challenge* others' theories too aggressively, but in general this is a (5) *groundbreaking / irrefutable* research paper which will (6) *form / shape* thinking for some time to come.

32.6 Complete this table with collocations for the nouns listed. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary. The first line is completed as an example.

verb	adjective	noun
to publish	*an outstanding*	article
		research
		experiment
		theory
		survey

33

Academic writing 2: structuring an argument

A

Organising the text

Here are some useful collocations for organising one's arguments.

Adverbs in English **fall into** two main **categories**: those ending in *–ly* (e.g. *softly*) and those with other endings (e.g. *well*).

Later, I shall **make reference to** the work of Georgi Perelmutter, a leading figure in the field of zoology.

In this chapter, I **draw a distinction between** societies where democracy has developed slowly and those where it came about quickly or suddenly.

Chapter 3 **raises** important **questions** about the need for transport planning in rapidly growing urban environments. It also **touches on issues** such as pollution.

But we also need to **take into consideration** the economic history of Latin America as a whole.

This chapter **makes a case for** re-examining the assassination of President Kennedy in the light of evidence which has emerged since 1963.

B

Reinforcing arguments

Look at these extracts from university lectures and note the collocations.

Many studies have attempted to **assess the significance** of diet in the prevention of cancer.

Wastov **lays emphasis on** examining the vital first three years of a child's development.

These statistics **lend support to** the view that attitudes to the environment are changing fundamentally.

Some economists **hold firmly to** the belief that a certain level of unemployment is inevitable.

C

More collocations for referring to arguments

The book *The Eye of the Universe* **draws an analogy**[1] between the birth of the universe and a lottery. It also **draws parallels**[2] between the formation of new stars and the birth and death of flowers. It **presents the case for** a complete rethinking of how we understand space. The author, Patrick Rivaux, **puts forward the argument** that the universe is as it is because we humans are here looking at it. The author **takes up / adopts the position** that the universe cannot have any beginning or end, and **states** his **opinion** that we can never understand the universe using the human ideas of time and space. He **argues convincingly**[3] that the universe has a unique nature. He **draws attention to** new **research** which **suggests** that other universes may also exist alongside ours. He **briefly summarises**[4] the views of leading physicists and mathematicians, **disagrees profoundly**[5] with some of them and **draws the conclusion** that science alone cannot solve the mystery of the universe.

[1] makes a comparison between things which have similar features, to help explain an idea
[2] says that something is very similar to something else
[3] argues in a way that makes people believe that something is true or right
[4] expresses the most important ideas in a short and clear form
[5] disagrees very strongly or in an extreme way

Exercises

33.1

Look at A and fill the gaps in this article about collocations.

Collocations in English (1) .... into a number of different categories. In this article I should like to draw a (2) .... between 'ordinary' collocations and those that are so fixed that they can be called idioms. Although my main focus is on 'ordinary' collocations, I shall also to some extent (3) .... idioms into consideration too. I plan to (4) .... a number of questions about learning collocations in a foreign or second language. I shall attempt to answer these questions by (5) .... reference to the work of the leading writers in the field. My intention is to make a strong (6) .... for a more intensive focus on collocation in the language learning process. I shall also (7) .... on issues such as pronunciation.

33.2

Look at B and C and complete these collocations.

1 .... the significance of a factor
2 argue something very ....
3 .... an analogy
4 .... support to an argument
5 put .... an argument
6 .... firmly to a belief
7 .... attention to a new trend
8 .... emphasis on one factor
9 disagree .... with someone
10 .... a conclusion

33.3

Choose the correct collocation.

1 This paper *proposes / presents / offers* the case for the complete revision of the theory.
2 Recent research *hints / explains / suggests* that Jackson's theory of economic development is flawed.
3 The author of the book *adopts / adapts / affects* an unusual position on the topic.
4 The writer of the article *explains / states / declares* his opinion very clearly.
5 The article concludes by *briefly / shortly / precisely* summarising the main points that the author wishes to put across.
6 The writer *does / draws / creates* some interesting parallels between life now and life in the Middle Ages.
7 I *keep / take / hold* firmly to my belief in the importance of basic human rights.
8 The book *rises / arises / raises* some key questions but fails to deal with them in a satisfactory manner.

33.4

Correct the nine collocation errors in this review of an academic article.

Kerr takes in a controversial position in his latest article. He gets forward the argument that differences in behaviour between the sexes can be explained totally by the genes. He attempts to do a case for educating boys and girls separately in their primary school years. He argues, occasionally persuadingly, that both sexes would benefit from this. He pulls attention to recent research which, he claims, makes support for his argument. However, he fails to draw a number of important factors into consideration. He also gives no reference to the important work of Potter and Sinclair in this field. I am sure that I will not be alone in disagreeing highly with many of his conclusions.

Over to you

Look up the words *theory*, *research* and *argument* (with its academic meaning) in a good learner's dictionary. Make a note of any other interesting collocations that you find.

34 Laws and punishments

A Verbs that collocate with law

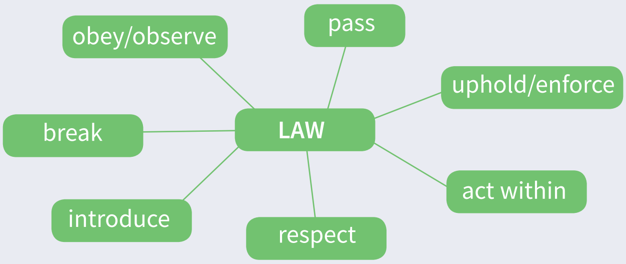

We must all **observe the law** at all times. [formal]
People who refuse to **obey the law** should be punished. [less formal]
A new **law** has been **introduced/passed** forbidding the use of mobile phones while driving.
The company **acted within the law** as regards the rights of its employees. [formal]
It is the job of the police to **uphold/enforce the law**. [make sure that people obey the law]

B Noun and verb collocations

The new **law forbids/prohibits** smoking in all public places. [the law does not allow]
The **rules permit/allow** members to bring guests into the club only at weekends.
These **rules/regulations apply to** all students, not just new ones. [the rules are for]
If we **follow the rules**, at least 20 people must be present at the meeting. [do what the rules say]
The **regulations require/stipulate** that all students must register for the course. [formal: the rules say that]
We have to **comply with the regulations** concerning the testing of equipment. [formal: do what the rules say]
I hope we can **bend the rules** and let her take the exam on another day. [informal: break the rules in a way that is not considered important]

C Punishments

collocation	example
carry out an investigation	Police are **carrying out an investigation** into a major theft in a factory in Woodvale.
appear in court	The trial starts today but the witnesses will be **appearing in court** tomorrow.
go on trial	George Arthur Lode, accused of murdering his wife, **went on trial** today.
reach a verdict	The jury are expected to take several days to **reach a verdict**.
a fair trial	It now seems impossible that Harold Graves can receive **a fair trial**, given the media publicity surrounding his case.
be severely punished	That judge believes that all shoplifters should **be severely punished**.
pay/face a heavy fine	People who park on double yellow lines **face a heavy fine**.
face the death penalty	If he is found guilty of murder, he will have to **face the death penalty**.
act as a deterrent	People often support the death penalty because they say it **acts as a deterrent**.
suffer the consequences	Anyone who commits a crime has to **suffer the consequences**.
a harsh penalty/sentence	Some judges are more likely to give **harsh sentences** than others.
a hard legal battle	After a **hard legal battle**, she won compensation for the accident.
win a case	You will need a very good lawyer if you are going to have any hope of **winning your case**.

Exercises

34.1 Choose the correct verb from A to fill the gaps in this paragraph. Use each verb once only and put it in the correct form.

In law-abiding societies ordinary citizens are usually happy to (1) .... or (2) .... the law. But there are also rather different societies where most people feel that it is not such a serious matter to (3) .... the law. In such places, people do not seem to (4) .... the law and even the most honest of citizens does not expect always to (5) .... within it. The rulers of such societies have no difficulty in (6) .... or (7) .... new laws but the police have considerable problems when it comes to (8) .... or (9) .... those laws.

34.2 Match the beginning of each sentence on the left with its ending on the right.

1 The rules apply	with the regulations.
2 The rules prohibit	to all students in the college.
3 The rules allow students	the rules to allow Mary to submit her coursework a little late.
4 The regulations stipulate	to book college guestrooms at weekends.
5 Most students follow	the use of mobile phones in class.
6 The authorities bent	that coursework must be handed in on time.
7 All students must comply	the rules without too many complaints.

34.3 Put these events in a crime story in order.

a) A number of witnesses appear in court.
b) Bill Sikes goes on trial.
c) Bill Sikes is found guilty.
d) Bill Sikes is severely punished.
e) Bill Sikes robs a bank.
f) The jury reaches its verdict.
g) The police carry out an investigation.

34.4 Answer these questions using one of the collocations from C opposite.

1 What does every lawyer in a trial hope to do?
2 What does every wrongly accused person who appears in court hope to receive?
3 What do the police do after a major crime is committed?
4 What may happen to people in some countries if they are found guilty of a very serious crime like murder or terrorism?
5 How might the death penalty help to prevent serious crime?
6 What does the jury have to do at the end of a trial?
7 What kind of punishments does a hard-hearted judge give?
8 What kind of fine might a judge impose if the offence is quite serious?

34.5 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets, so that it keeps the same meaning.

1 Everyone must observe these regulations. (COMPLY)
2 All citizens must obey these rules. (APPLY)
3 The jury found the accused guilty. (REACHED)
4 The police are investigating the bank robbery. (INVESTIGATION)
5 Our company would never break the law. (ACTS)
6 The rules prohibit eating and drinking in the classrooms. (ALLOW STUDENTS)

35 Crime

A Talking about criminals

Note the collocations in these news clips.

The Judge, Mr Newell, said that Hickey was a **hardened criminal**[1] who had **committed** 12 serious **offences**. He ordered that Hickey should **serve a sentence of** at least 15 years in prison.

[1] someone who has committed a lot of crimes

The lawyer for the prosecution, Mr Arthur Larchwood, stated that Henry Banks was already a **convicted criminal**[2] when he was appointed chairman of the company but that nobody knew this fact. He had a **conviction for robbery** dating back to 1996.

[2] someone declared officially in a court of law to be guilty of a crime

The Justice Minister said that the men were not **political prisoners** but were **common criminals**[3] who had committed **acts of terrorism**.

[3] low class criminal, negative term

The judge said it was vital that anyone with a **criminal record**[4] should not be able to get a job where large sums of money were placed in their care. Charles Amworth, 26, had served two years in a prison for **young offenders** ten years ago before working for the bank.

[4] list kept by the police of someone's previous crimes

B Politicians on crime

Politicians often make speeches about crime. Here are some extracts from recent ones.

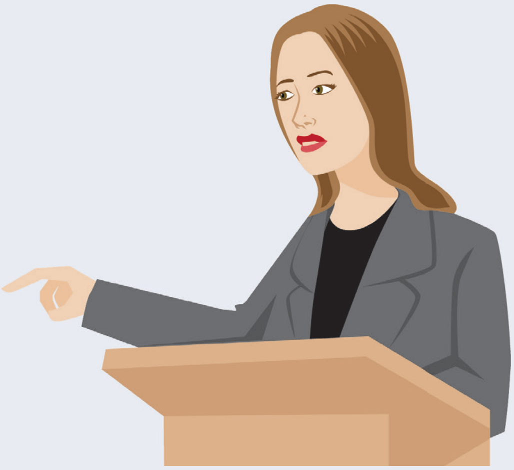

"In **the fight against** crime we will not just **target serious crime**, but all crime, including **street crime** and **vehicle crime**, so that the streets will be safer for everyone."

"If someone **breaks into your house**, **steals your car**, or **robs you** in the street, then of course you feel society has let you down. That's why we're determined to **tackle crime**."

"We are doing everything in our power to **combat crime**. The **crime rate** has come down, and that is because we have put 10,000 more police officers on the streets and focused on **juvenile crime**[1], because that is where the problem begins."

[1] crime relating to young persons not yet old enough to be considered adults

"This government is doing very little to fight crime. We have all had some experience of the recent **crime wave** in our cities, whether it is **petty crime**[2] or more serious offences."

[2] crime not considered serious when compared with some other crimes

"The **crime figures** are the worst since 1995. We have had a **spate**[3] **of burglaries** in this part of the city, **vehicle theft**, **drug abuse** and so on, and police have reported a **staggering increase** in the number of acts of **mindless vandalism**. It is time the party in power did something."

[3] large number of events, especially unwanted ones, happening at about the same time

Common mistakes

Don't forget the difference between *steal* and *rob*. A person **steals *something***, e.g. He stole a car / some money, but **robs *someone*** or ***an institution***, e.g. She robbed an elderly person / a bank. **Steal** is often used in the passive, e.g. My car was stolen.

Exercises

35.1 Find a collocation in A that matches each definition.

1 a schoolchild who commits a crime
2 someone who has been found guilty of a crime in a court of law
3 someone who has committed a lot of crimes
4 to spend time in prison as punishment
5 to do something that is against the law
6 someone who is imprisoned for what they believe
7 someone who has committed a crime (a disapproving term)
8 a document stating that someone has been found guilty in a court of law

35.2 Match the headlines from a local newspaper with the first lines of their stories.

1 JUVENILE CRIME RISING
2 DRUG ABUSE SCANDAL
3 PETTY CRIME CONTINUES
4 POLICE TARGET VEHICLE THEFT
5 PENSIONER ROBBED
6 CRIME FIGURES OUT TODAY

a) 80-year-old Marianne Roberts had her house broken into and some money and jewellery stolen while she was asleep in front of the TV last night.
b) An increasing number of young people are getting involved in criminal activity according to a report published yesterday.
c) So many cars have recently been stolen in the city that the police are launching a special campaign to tackle the problem.
d) A detailed report on crime in the UK is to be published later today.
e) Small-scale robberies remain a significant problem in this area and police are concerned that the problem may soon become more serious.
f) A number of TV celebrities have been named as having attended a party where illegal drugs were being openly used.

35.3 Fill in the gaps in this paragraph.

Police are concerned about the growing number of offences that are being (1) .... by young people in our town. They say that increasing numbers of youngsters are (2) .... into people's houses or (3) .... their cars. Indeed, police claim that it is probably young (4) .... who are to blame for the recent (5) .... of burglaries in our town. Police are proposing a special campaign to (6) .... the problem and are asking for the public's support in this (7) .... against (8) .... crime.

35.4 Answer these questions.

1 Would you feel pleased or worried if there were reports of a crime wave in your area?
2 What sorts of crime might be considered as petty crime?
3 If the police are *targeting* serious crime, what are they doing?
4 What word could replace *tackle* in this sentence? *The police are doing all they can to tackle petty crime in the city centre.*
5 What does the phrase *an act of terrorism* mean?
6 Which of these words could complete the phrase *a spate of* …: *robberies*, *young offenders*, *drug abuse*?
7 Give an example of mindless vandalism.

36 News

A Collocations about newspapers

collocation	example
a (news) story breaks	The singer was out of the country when the **story** about his wife **broke**.
news comes in	TV newscaster: **News** has just **come in** of an earthquake.
news leaks out	Although the two stars tried to keep their relationship secret, **news** of it soon **leaked out**.
hit the headlines	The scandal is expected to **hit the headlines** tomorrow.
make headlines	A dramatic story like that will **make headlines** world-wide.
front-page headline	The scandal was the **front-page headline** in all the newspapers.
the latest news	**The latest news** from the earthquake zone is more hopeful.
be headline/front-page news	Any story about the Royal Family will **be headline/front-page news** in Britain.
item of news	The main **item of news** today is the earthquake in Broskva City.
run a story [publish a story]	The *Daily Times* recently **ran a story** about an affair between a famous rock star and a politician.
flick through the newspaper	He **flicked through the newspaper** as he didn't have time to read it properly.

B The language of news stories

MINISTER GIVES THE GO-AHEAD TO PLANS

In a surprising **turn of events** last night, the government agreed to plans for the development of the City. **Interested parties**[1] will **hold talks** throughout the week.

[1] people or groups who have a connection with a particular situation, event, etc.

ANTI-SMOKING CAMPAIGN

The Minister for Health today **outlined plans** for a national anti-smoking campaign. The government intends to **launch the campaign** in the new year.

MINISTER QUITS

The Arts Minister has resigned after only six months in the **top job**. He has **attracted attention** over his **controversial decision** to re-introduce charges for museum entry.

TOURIST **TAKEN CAPTIVE**

A tourist was **taken hostage** when rebel troops **seized control** of St Pips Airport last night. The government has **lost control of** the area. Our reporter in St Pips is **keeping a close watch on** the situation and we shall be **keeping you informed** as the **news develops**.

PEACE TALKS END IN FAILURE

Peace **talks** between the Eastern Liberation Army and the government of Karavia **broke down** last night. Civil war is now likely.

LIGHTNING STRIKES

A building **caught fire** when **lightning struck** a farm in Hampshire yesterday. Fortunately there was **no loss of life**.

Common mistakes

Note that we say **the latest news**, NOT the ~~last~~ news.

Exercises

36.1 Complete the collocations in these descriptions of TV programmes. 'Pick of the week' means 'most highly recommended programmes for the week'.

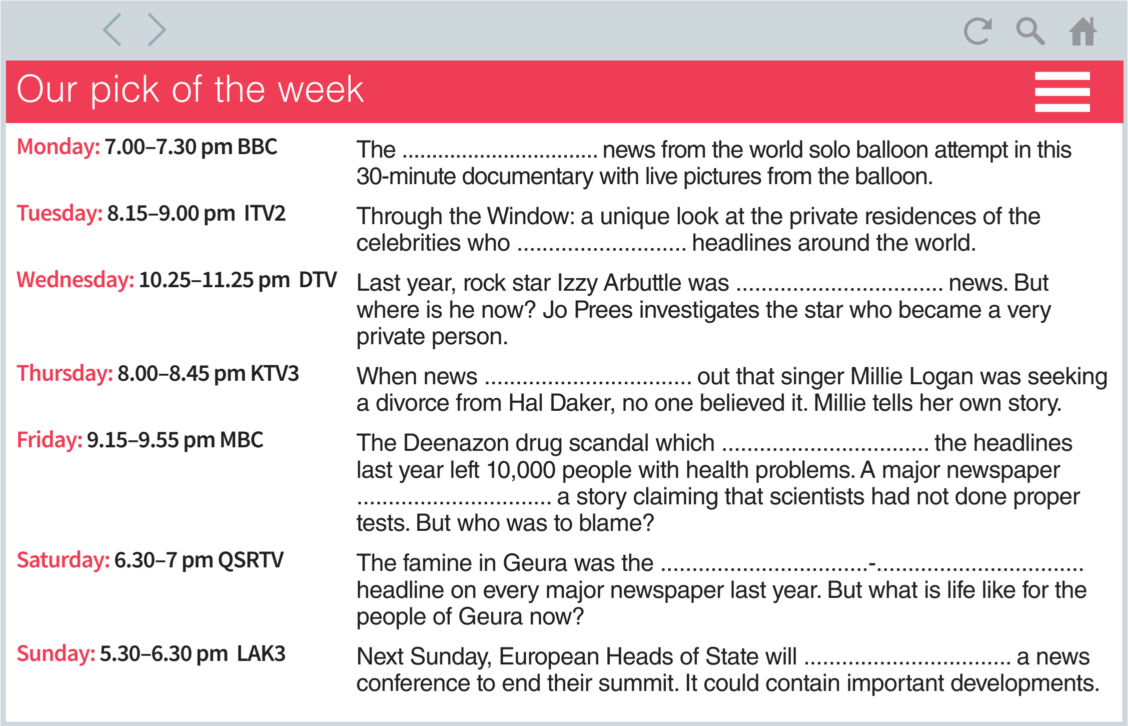

Our pick of the week

Monday: 7.00–7.30 pm BBC	The .... news from the world solo balloon attempt in this 30-minute documentary with live pictures from the balloon.
Tuesday: 8.15–9.00 pm ITV2	Through the Window: a unique look at the private residences of the celebrities who .... headlines around the world.
Wednesday: 10.25–11.25 pm DTV	Last year, rock star Izzy Arbuttle was .... news. But where is he now? Jo Prees investigates the star who became a very private person.
Thursday: 8.00–8.45 pm KTV3	When news .... out that singer Millie Logan was seeking a divorce from Hal Daker, no one believed it. Millie tells her own story.
Friday: 9.15–9.55 pm MBC	The Deenazon drug scandal which .... the headlines last year left 10,000 people with health problems. A major newspaper .... a story claiming that scientists had not done proper tests. But who was to blame?
Saturday: 6.30–7 pm QSRTV	The famine in Geura was the ....-............................... headline on every major newspaper last year. But what is life like for the people of Geura now?
Sunday: 5.30–6.30 pm LAK3	Next Sunday, European Heads of State will .... a news conference to end their summit. It could contain important developments.

36.2 Complete the crossword.

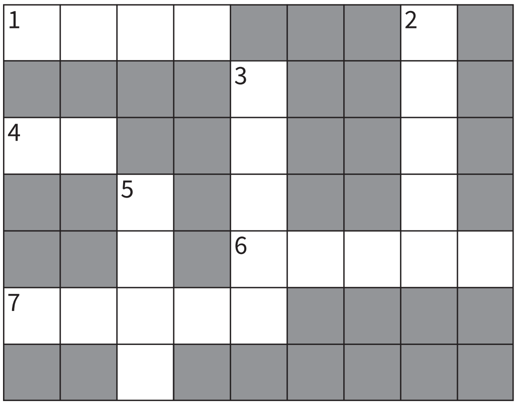

Across

1 The parties could not agree and the talks broke ——.

4 The plan got the ——-ahead yesterday.

6 We must keep a —— watch on the dollar-euro exchange rate.

7 Big news stories do this.

Down

2 The Minister outlined —— for a new university funding system.

3 I don't really read the newspaper, I usually just —— through it.

5 There was an interesting news —— in the local paper yesterday.

36.3 Complete the collocations.

1 In an unexpected .... of events, the manager has been sacked and it is rumoured that the job might go to the club's coach. We will .... you informed as more news .... in.

2 Rebel troops .... control of the capital of Jalamaa last night. Meanwhile, five police officers were .... captive by rebels in the south of the country.

3 Lightning .... a house yesterday which immediately .... fire.

4 The government will .... talks with all .... parties to try to end the strike.

5 Charles Ankram is to quit the .... job of personal adviser to the President. He recently objected to a .... decision to cut next year's health budget.

6 The government has .... a campaign to clean up the countryside.

37 Money

A Spending money

Here are some verbs which often collocate with money.

collocation	meaning	example
spend money (on)	give money as payment for something	Juan **spends** a lot of **money** on travelling.
save money	keep money for use in the future	We're **saving** a little **money** each month to buy a new car next year.
waste/squander money (on)	spend money in a bad way; *squander* is stronger and is only used about large sums of money	Sara **wasted/squandered** all her **money** on clothes and fast cars.
change money	exchange one currency for another, e.g. dollars for euros	You can **change** some **money** at the airport.
throw money around	spend money in an obvious and careless way on unnecessary things	If Jim keeps on **throwing** his **money around** like that, he soon won't have any left.
throw money at	spend a lot of money, possibly more than necessary, trying to solve a problem	The government think they can solve the problem by **throwing money at it**.
donate money (to)	give money to help society in some way	The business **donates** a lot of **money** each year to charity.

B Prices

Many collocations including the word **price** are connected with height. **Prices** can be **high** or **low**. If they are very low, they may be called (usually by advertisers) **rock-bottom prices**. **Prices** may **increase**, **prices go up** and **prices rise**. If they go up very fast we say that **prices soar**. Occasionally **prices go down**. If you say that something is **reasonably priced**, you think it is neither too cheap nor too expensive. Calling something a **ridiculous price** may mean it is much too cheap or much too expensive.

C Getting money

Henry and his brother grew up in a family where **money was always tight**[1]. Henry hoped that when he was grown-up, money would be never be **in short supply** for him. Henry's brother only wanted a **steady income** but Henry wasn't interested in just **earning a good salary**, he wanted to make **big money**[2], to be **seriously rich**[3]. He started **making money** at school when he sold the sandwiches his mother had made him to other children. He also worked in his school holidays to **earn money**. He put this money in a bank account and hardly ever **made a withdrawal**[4] from it. When he left school, he **raised enough money** through the bank to buy his first shop. He **got a really good deal**[5] because he found a shop that was **going cheap**[6]. By the time he was twenty he had already **made a small fortune**[7] though, of course, most of his **money was tied up**[8] **in** his business.

[1] there wasn't much money
[2] informal: a lot of money
[3] informal: very rich
[4] took money out of the bank
[5] informal: got a bargain
[6] informal: selling for a low price
[7] made a large amount of money
[8] not available for spending because it was needed for his business

Exercises

37.1 Read these remarks by different people, then answer the questions.

Lauren: I sent 100 euros to the Children's Fund for the Developing World.

Anthony: I went into the bank with 1,000 euros and came out with the equivalent in Australian dollars.

Patrick: I won 100,000 dollars on the lottery and bought stupid, useless things. I have almost nothing left now.

Emilia: The garden was in a terrible mess after the storm. I paid a gardener a lot of money to sort it out but he didn't seem to make it any better.

Hannah: I put 5,000 euros in an account which gives 4% interest.

	name
1 Who threw money at something?	
2 Who saved money?	
3 Who donated money?	
4 Who squandered money?	
5 Who changed money?	

37.2 Complete these sentences using collocations from B opposite. Use each collocation once only.

1 In January, the price of gold was 35,000 dollars a kilo. In July it was 44,000 dollars. In just six months the price had ....

2 An airline is offering a return flight from London to New York for just 50 dollars. At first sight this seems like a ...., as many people on the same flight will be paying 1,000 dollars or more.

3 Given that most first-class hotels were charging 350 dollars a night because of the festival, at 275 dollars our four-star hotel seemed ....

4 Tablet computers are now selling at .... prices because there's so much competition. One that cost 150 dollars a year ago now costs only 70.

5 Car prices .... down last year, but they will probably .... again before the end of the year as steel becomes more expensive.

37.3 Choose the correct collocation.

1 Bank assistant: Can I help you?
Customer: Yes. I'd like to *take* / *get* / *make* a withdrawal from my account, please.

2 Bank Manager: Is your company *getting* / *making* / *taking* money?
Business customer: Yes. We are in profit. So I have a *firm* / *steady* / *strong* income.

3 Teenage son: Dad, will you lend me some money to buy a car?
Father: Well, money is rather *slim* / *hard* / *tight* at the moment. Ask your mother.

4 Jake: These cameras aren't as expensive as I thought.
Fran: They're *going* / *asking* / *giving* cheap right now because a new model has just come out. The new ones are ridiculously expensive because they are in such *low* / *short* / *little* supply.

5 George: We need to *bring up* / *rise* / *raise* money for the new gym. Any ideas?
Joe: Well, we could have a children's sports day and get all the parents to contribute.

6 Mick: You must have made a *slight* / *slim* / *small* fortune when you sold your house.
Kathy: Yes, I did, but the money is all *closed up* / *tied up* / *packed up* in the new one.

7 Oscar: I guess Zara is making *big* / *large* / *huge* money with her Internet business.
Erica: Oh yes, she's *absolutely* / *utterly* / *seriously* rich now.

38 War and peace

A War

When **war broke out**[1], my grandfather **joined the army**. **War was declared** on his 25th birthday. He didn't want to **go to war** but he had no choice. The government were sending troops to the south, where they expected **fierce fighting**. At first there were just **minor incidents** but soon it developed into **all-out war**[2]. My grandfather has told me how terrified he was the first time he came **within firing range**[3] of the enemy. They saw him and **opened fire**[4] but he was able to escape. A couple of his friends, though, were killed or **taken prisoner**. After several months, our **army went into action** in the first **decisive battle** of the war. The **battle raged**[5] for several days. My grandfather said he hated being involved in **fighting the war** and that the only armies we should have should be **peacekeeping forces**. He can never forget **the horrors of war**, and he believes that we must do everything we can to **avert**[6] **war** in the future. I agree.

[1] suddenly started
[2] a complete/total war
[3] the distance within which the enemy could hit him by firing their guns
[4] started shooting
[5] the battle was very violent
[6] prevent something bad from happening

B Peace

collocation	example
bring about peace	It will be no easy task to **bring about peace** in the area.
negotiate a peace agreement	It can be useful to invite a neutral country to help **negotiate a peace agreement**.
call a truce/ceasefire	Although **a ceasefire has been called** for the duration of the peace negotiations, hopes of its success are not high.
sign a (peace) treaty	At the end of the war, all the countries involved **signed a peace treaty** in Paris.
lasting peace	Hopes for a **lasting peace** are, unfortunately, fading fast.
peace activist	**Peace activists** around the world staged a series of massive demonstrations against the war.
keep the peace	After the war was over, UN troops were sent into the troubled area to help **keep the peace** there.
restore order	Soldiers were sent in to **restore order** after the uprising.

C War expressions in everyday language

The police fought a **running battle** with football hooligans in the town centre.

The people of the village **put up a heroic fight against** the construction of the new motorway, but finally **lost the battle**.

The bank robbers didn't **offer** any **resistance** when the police surrounded them.

The President is **fighting for his life** tonight in the City hospital after a major operation.

Tip

Some collocations connected with war and military action are also used in a business or political context, e.g. a **price war**, a **war on crime**, to **fight crime**, to **fight a war** against poverty.

Exercises

38.1 **Use a word from the box in the correct form to complete the extracts from news broadcasts.**

go	horrors	join	avert	fight	open	rage

1 The president said he is ready to .... to war against the enemy. He said he had done everything possible to .... war, but now there was no alternative.

2 A two hour battle .... in the northern district today after troops .... fire on rebel positions.

3 The army will continue to .... the war against the drug barons.

4 The president said that young persons who .... the army must expect to fight to defend their country. They would experience the .... of war, but they must be brave.

38.2 **Rewrite the sentences, replacing the words in brackets with collocations from the opposite page.**

1 The war between the two countries (started) in 1983 after a dispute over territory in the northern province. At first there were just (small events) but it soon turned into (a full-scale war). The war ended after (a battle which finally decided the course of events) in 1987.
2 There was (very violent fighting) in the capital city yesterday. United Nations (forces who will maintain peace) are expected to enter the city as soon as (the armies say they will stop firing at each other).
3 Forces sent in to (make the peace continue) in the troubled region of the island had to retreat after they came (within the firing distance) of rebel artillery.
4 The military forces today (officially stated that they were at war) against the guerillas.
5 Armed troops were sent in to (bring order again) after the riots and violence of last week.
6 Even though the two sides (put their names to a document officially stating that the war was at an end) last July, fighting has started again and hopes for (a peace which might continue for a long time) are fading.
7 As more of our soldiers were killed or (captured and put in prison), (people who were actively promoting peace) organised demonstrations against the unpopular war.
8 Representatives of the two sides are meeting in Zurich in an attempt to (make peace) in the troubled region. It is hoped that they will (have negotiations and agree the details for peace) which both governments can accept.

38.3 **Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.**

1 The police fought a walking battle with a group of violent demonstrators.
2 I feel we are missing the battle to persuade the management to increase our salaries.
3 The students made up a heroic fight against the plan to increase course fees.
4 I was surprised that the Management Committee sent no resistance to our demands.
5 A tiny baby with a rare heart condition is fighting her life in the General Hospital tonight.

38.4 **Use your dictionary to find two more collocations for each of these words.**

army	soldier	battle	weapon	to fight	peace

Over to you

Look at the International Peace and Security section of the United Nations website:
http://www.un.org/en/sections/priorities/international-peace-and-security/index.html
Make a note of any interesting collocations that you find there.

39 Global problems

A The environment

Look at these extracts from letters to an international magazine.

Your article on **climate change** was excellent. **Rising sea levels** and the increase in **greenhouse gases**[1] are the result of our actions. We are **disturbing the ecological balance** everywhere, as can be seen in the decrease in **fish stocks**[2] in the oceans.

[1] gases which cause the greenhouse effect, especially carbon dioxide

[2] the number of fish

It is clear that we must **tackle pollution** before it is too late. **Exhaust fumes** from millions of vehicles and the burning of **fossil fuels**[3] are causing **irreparable**[4] **damage** to our environment.

[3] fuels such as gas, coal and oil

[4] which cannot be repaired (also *irreversible*)

We must accept that we have seriously **depleted**[5] **the ozone layer** in the last few decades by our selfish actions. Embracing **green politics** may be our best hope in the long term, but we need urgent short-term measures too.

[5] reduced something in size or amount, especially supplies of energy, money, etc.

Crops fail year after year in some of the poorest parts of the world. This has brought **devastating**[6] **famines** to some regions and equally **devastating floods** to others. We call these **natural disasters**, but it is human beings who are causing them.

[6] causing a lot of damage or destruction

B Poverty

Look at this radio interview with Pascal Delrio, an international expert, talking about poverty.

Interviewer: Mr Delrio, do you believe we can solve the problem of world poverty?

Delrio: I am more optimistic now than before. Millions of people have succeeded in **escaping poverty** in the last decade, but it is also true that in some regions, more people than ever are living **below the poverty line**, and we must help these people to **lift them out of poverty**.

Interviewer: But how can we achieve that?

Delrio: I accept that there is no **simple solution**. The **widening gulf**[1] between rich and poor in some countries is often due to external forces beyond their control. Some of the most **deprived regions** have large populations living on the **margins of society**, and it is for these specific groups that we can do most.

Interviewer: But poverty is not just an issue for **developing countries**, is it? We have thousands **sleeping rough**[2] every night in cities like London and New York, and **street children** in a lot of big cities around the world.

Delrio: I agree, and I accept that children and adults who **live on the streets** are in **desperate need**, and that these social conditions **breed crime**. But so much depends on **the global economy**. Right now, we have a **golden opportunity** to **combat poverty**. Perhaps we cannot **eradicate**[3] **poverty** altogether, but we can certainly **alleviate**[4] **poverty**, and that is our challenge.

Interviewer: Mr Delrio, thank you very much.

[1] an important difference between the ideas, opinions, or situations of two groups of people

[2] in the open, without shelter

[3] get rid of completely

[4] make less serious

C Other global problems

Thousands of people seek **political asylum** in other countries every year. Most are genuine **asylum seekers**, but some are **economic migrants** looking for a better life.

Hundreds of people **took to the streets** to demonstrate about third-world **debt repayments**.

A terrible **earthquake hit** the region last year. The **death toll** was massive.

The **sexual exploitation** of children is a **world-wide problem**, as is **child labour**.

Exercises

39.1 Complete the collocations.

1 a rise in the number of asylum ....
2 to deplete the ozone ....
3 bad social conditions .... crime
4 increasing amounts of greenhouse ....
5 a golden .... to combat poverty
6 people who .... rough
7 a massive .... toll
8 to be in desperate ....
9 to .... people out of poverty
10 below the poverty ....

39.2 Match sentences 1–5 with sentences a–e.

1 There was a big protest against child labour.
2 There is new evidence of a widening gulf between the wealthy and more deprived sectors of society.
3 There has been some small success in tackling marine pollution.
4 The problem of street children in big cities has become a global crisis.
5 A spokesperson for one of the biggest charities said access for economic migrants should be made easier.

a) There is some evidence to suggest that fish stocks are beginning to rise slightly in the North Sea.
b) People wanting to come to this country to escape poverty should be welcomed.
c) Large numbers of people took to the streets yesterday to demonstrate against the increasing employment of children in appalling conditions.
d) A worldwide study of young people who sleep rough has raised universal alarm.
e) Figures published today indicate that the divide between the rich and the poor is getting bigger.

39.3 Fill in the gaps in this announcement.

Environment Concern is a new magazine for people interested in (1) .... politics. The first issue includes an article on what happened to local crops when the earthquake (2) .... Santa Graziela last year. Another feature looks at the problems which (3) .... repayments are causing for (4) .... countries and how this affects people who live on the (5) .... of society there. We appreciate that there is no simple (6) .... to the problem of poverty in today's world but we have asked four experts what *they* would do to (7) .... poverty. Their answers make stimulating reading.

39.4 Answer these questions about the collocations in A.

1 What will happen if crops fail in an important agricultural area?
2 Name two fossil fuels.
3 Name three types of natural disaster.
4 What might a devastating flood do to an area?
5 What could governments do in response to a devastating famine?
6 What are green politics concerned with?
7 What is the cause of rising sea-levels?
8 Why are exhaust fumes an increasing problem?

40 Time

A Collocations using the word *time*

collocation	example	comment
spend time	I **spent some time** in South America when I was younger.	NOT ~~passed~~ in this context – though you can say things like *reading **passes the time***.
waste time, save time	Don't do it like that. You're **wasting time**. You'll **save time** if you do it like this.	*Spend*, *waste* and *save* are often used with *money* as well as *time*.
tell someone the time	Can you **tell me the time**, please? I left my watch at home.	NOT tell the ~~hour~~
free/spare time	What do you like to do in your **free**/**spare time**?	Both expressions refer to the time when you are not working.
have time to	I'm sorry, I didn't **have time to** do my homework.	Compare: Jo **doesn't have time for** lazy people. [has no patience with]
make time for	The doctor's very busy but he'll try to **make time for** you.	*Make* here has a simple meaning of *create*.
kill time	We got to the airport very early, so we had a meal in the restaurant to **kill** (some) **time**.	to fill in the time while you are waiting to do something you have planned
take your time	No need to hurry – you can **take your time**.	This means you can be as long as you wish.
bang/dead/right on time	The train left **bang/dead/right on time**.	Exactly on time – the first two are very informal.

Here are some other useful expressions relating to time.
We **had a good/great time** at the party. [NOT ~~spent~~ a great time]
Lena **had the time of her life** in Brazil.
Your attitude to work may change a bit as **time goes by** / as **time passes**.
I couldn't finish the exam because I **ran out of time**.
You'll be sorry **big time** for speaking to me like that! [informal: extremely]

B Past and future

The **past few weeks** have been really difficult for Tina's two grown-up children. They're both at university writing dissertations. Her son's is on **early 21st century** fiction while her daughter's is about life in **prehistoric times** – she's not interested in the **recent past** at all. They are both working very hard. They are nearly finished but there are lots of last-minute things left to do. They **set their alarms** for five o'clock and get up as soon as the **alarm goes off**. They work **from dawn till dusk**[1] and indeed sometimes they stay up until **the small hours**[2]. Tina can't wait until they stop working such **ungodly hours**[3]. It's **taking them ages** to complete their work but Tina is sure it will eventually all be **worth their while**[4]. She is sure they both **have a great future ahead** of them. She thinks they will both get good academic jobs **in the not too distant future**. Of course, no one can know what **the future holds**, but I hope she is right.

[1] all day
[2] 2, 3, 4 a.m.
[3] unreasonably late or early hours
[4] worth the time spent

Exercises

40.1 Complete the collocations in these advertisements for leisure activities.

What do you do when you're not working? If you want to spend your (1) .... **time** in pleasant, relaxing surroundings, why not (2) .... **some time** at the Haven Health Centre? Slow down, (3) .... **your time**. (4) .... **time** for yourself in your busy world.

Don't (6) .... time writing appointments on your calendar! You can (7) .... valuable time by using Timemate, the new software from Compcorpus. Just enter appointment details and Timemate will automatically text you on your mobile phone to remind you. You'll arrive (8) .... on time for every appointment and never be late again.

Comchess

If you like chess, you'll love this. Chess for your laptop or tablet. Great for (5) .... **time** on a long plane or train journey! Play with a friend or play the machine. Visit our website and order online: www.comchesswld.com

Are you looking for a watch that doesn't just (9) .... **the time**? Do you also want to be able to measure the distance you walk, your calorie consumption, heart rate and sleeping quality? Well, here's what you're looking for! The latest fitness tracker: FitWatch!

40.2 Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.

1 I was hoping to finish my dissertation last year but I ran off time.
2 It's hard work learning a language but I'm sure you'll find it's worth the while.
3 Asher spends all his time at the office – he's there from dusk till dawn.
4 As a teacher I often wonder what the future has for my pupils.
5 Did you spend a good time on holiday?
6 I didn't have time for doing the ironing last night.

40.3 Complete the second part of each conversation with a collocation using the words in brackets.

1 Adam: Don't forget, everybody. We have to get up at 5 a.m. tomorrow.
Sadie: Well, we'd better all .... (ALARMS)

2 Sebastian: Did you enjoy your trip to Malaysia?
Elena: Yes. It was fantastic. I had .... (LIFE)

3 Lydia: I think as you get older you change your attitude towards your parents.
Mark: Yes, I think you learn to respect them more as .... (BY)

4 Emmett: You must come and visit us some time. Don't keep putting it off.
Mary: Yes. I'll try to come and see you in the .... (NOT/DISTANT)

5 Avery: You were late for work this morning!
Carter: Yes. I didn't wake up. The alarm didn't .... (OFF)

6 Julian: Sonia was studying till 2 a.m. again last night.
Aurora: Yes, she always stays up working until .... (SMALL)

40.4 Find two collocations for each of these words in your dictionary.

day hour clock minute

41 Sound

A Sounds in nature

Look at these extracts from short stories.

At first there was an **eerie**[1] **silence**, then there was a **rumble of thunder** in the distance. Soon **the wind** was **whistling** through the trees and we could hear **the waves crashing** on the beach. The storm had begun.

[1] strange in a frightening and mysterious way

It was a lovely place for a picnic. There was a little **babbling**[2] **stream** and **birds were singing** in the trees. Then we heard **the patter of rain** on the leaves above us. Sadly, it was turning into a typical British summer's day.

[2] low, continuous noise of water flowing over stones

No sound **broke the silence** of the wintry landscape. Then suddenly **two shots rang out** and we heard the **piercing**[3] **cry** of a dying bird. The hunting season had begun.

[3] high, loud and unpleasant

B Everyday sounds

collocation		example
deafening, ear-splitting	sound, noise (used as a countable noun)	We heard the **ear-splitting/deafening sound/noise** of three huge military aircraft passing low over our heads.
excessive	noise (used uncountably)	People who make **excessive noise** after 10 pm are very antisocial.
background	noise	When you work in a big office you get used to constant **background noise**.
muffled[1]	sound	We could hear the **muffled sound** of music from the flat above us.
shrill[2]	voice, laugh	Marie has such a **shrill voice**. I can't listen to her for long.
raucous[3]	laughter	I could hear **raucous laughter** coming from the party next door.
dull	thud	The heavy box fell off the shelf on to the carpet with a **dull thud**.
grating[4]	noise, sound	The big old iron door made a **grating noise** as it opened.
loud, almighty	bang, explosion	Suddenly there was a **loud** / an **almighty bang**, the lights went out and smoked poured from the back of the TV set.
roar	traffic	I couldn't sleep with the constant **roar** of the **traffic** outside my window.
music, radio	blare (out)	Loud **music** was **blaring out** of the radio in the kitchen.
machine	hum[5], whirr[6]	As we talked to the factory owner, the **machines hummed/ whirred** in the background.

[1] made quieter or less clear (e.g. by the walls)
[2] loud, high sound that is unpleasant or painful to listen to
[3] loud and unpleasant
[4] harsh, unpleasant sound
[5] make a continuous low sound
[6] make a low, soft, continuous sound

C Verbs and sounds

A person can **give a sigh, a laugh, a loud cry, a cry of pain/surprise/alarm, a gasp, a groan**.

A person, animal or thing can **make a scratching/clicking/rustling/crackling sound**.

Exercises

41.1 Look at A. Choose the correct collocation.

My friends and I went camping this weekend. We put up our tent in a lovely spot beside a (1) *babbling / whistling* stream. The birds were (2) *piercing / singing* and it felt great to be so far from the noisy traffic of the town. The weather wasn't very good but it was cosy listening to the (3) *rumble / patter* of rain on the roof of the tent. When it eventually stopped, there was (4) *an eerie / a piercing* silence all around us. The silence was suddenly (5) *broken / closed* when a shot (6) *crashed / rang* out. Someone was shooting rabbits.

41.2 Are these noises loud or soft? Write L (loud) or S (soft) after each collocation.

1 a deafening sound
2 a dull thud
3 music blaring out
4 a machine whirring
5 raucous laughter
6 a shrill voice
7 an almighty bang
8 an ear-splitting noise
9 a machine humming
10 someone giving a sigh
11 leaves making a rustling sound
12 a muffled sound

41.3 Match each statement 1–8 with a response a–h.

1 Our neighbours really make excessive noise, I think.
2 Did the group react negatively to the news that the flight was delayed?
3 I think the neighbours might be having a party.
4 I hate it when chalk makes that horrible noise on the board.
5 I think this wonderful weather is going to change soon.
6 It's a comfortable hotel but it's a bit noisy, isn't it?
7 Did you hear that almighty bang in the middle of the night?
8 Did the child react when she had the injection?

a Yes, you can tell by their raucous laughter.
b Yes, I thought I heard a rumble of thunder in the distance.
c Yes, she gave a cry of pain.
d Yes, the roar of the traffic kept me awake most of the night.
e Yes, it really is too much to play such loud music after midnight.
f Yes, I was woken by what sounded like a loud explosion.
g Yes, they all gave a groan of disappointment.
h Yes, it's a horrible grating sound, isn't it?

41.4 Answer these questions.

1 What is more likely to make a dull thud – a person falling out of bed onto a carpeted floor in the room above you or a heavy metal box falling onto a stone floor?
2 Who is more likely to have shrill voices – primary schoolchildren or old age pensioners?
3 If waves are crashing on the beach, are they more likely to be little waves or big waves?
4 If you hear a piercing cry, is it more likely to be from a machine or from a bird?
5 What is more likely to make an ear-splitting noise – a group of motorbikes roaring past or a large waterfall in a fast-running river?

42 Distance and size

A Distance

collocation	example
a considerable/long/short distance from	The hotel is a **considerable distance** from the beach. [quite a long way]
within commuting/walking distance	We have to live **within commuting distance** of my husband's office. [where it is possible to travel to work every day]
cover/travel (a distance of) × kilometres	On our cycling tour we managed to **cover** (**a distance of**) about 40 **kilometres** a day.
far-off/far-flung places	Zachary is always travelling to **far-off/far-flung places**. [distant]
at close range	I've never seen a member of the royal family **at** such **close range** before. [so near]
neighbouring town/country/area	Many people who work here actually live in **neighbouring towns**.

B *Little*, *small* and *large*

We talk about **low prices**, **low wages**, **low levels**. (NOT ~~small~~)

We say **small quantities**, **small numbers**, **small amounts**, **a small increase**. (NOT ~~little~~)
The opposite is **large quantities**, **large numbers**, **large amounts**, **a large increase**.

Similarly, we talk about problems or objects being **on a large scale** or **on a small scale**:
If you are walking in the mountains you need **a large scale map**.
The UK has similar problems to the USA, but **on a smaller scale**.

In informal spoken English we often use **little** after another adjective to make it sound more friendly, e.g. **poor little** Joe, **dear little** dog, **nice little** room.

Little can also mean young, e.g. **little brother** [informal: younger brother, NOT ~~small~~ brother; the opposite is **big brother**]. Sometimes **little** or **small** suggests that something is not very important, e.g. a **little problem**, I've got a lot of **little things** to do, to make someone **look small**, to **make small talk** [talk socially, about unimportant subjects].

C Other size collocations

We can talk about **fat books** and **slim books** as well as **fat people** and **slim people**. Only **people** (not books) can be **plump** or **skinny** or **painfully thin**.

We use **a great deal of** (NOT ~~large~~ or ~~big~~) in contexts like this:
She should be able to help you because she has **a great deal of time** / **a great deal of money** / **a great deal of energy** / **a great deal of enthusiasm**.

Major and **minor** often collocate with words relating to problems or points in an argument, e.g. **major/minor difference**, **major/minor change**, **major/minor effect**, **major/minor difficulty**, **major/minor point**, **major/minor issues**, **major/minor factor**.

Common mistakes

Take care with the different collocations that go with *tall* and *high*. We talk about **tall people**, **tall trees**, **tall buildings**, but **high mountains**, **high prices**, **high interest rates**, **high heels**, **high tide**, **high jump**. Make a note of any collocations with *tall* or *high* as you notice them.

Exercises

42.1 Look at A and complete the collocations in these short travel texts.

1 Tassia, and the n................................ towns of Hiol and Gebja, were all damaged during the earthquake but have been rebuilt.

2 The roads in Baxa are bad, so don't expect to .... more than 50 or 60 miles in a day. Petrol stations tend to be a c................................ distance from one another, so watch your fuel level.

3 If you love heading for ....-flung destinations in far-................................ places, but in the safety of a small group, then Safetrek Holidays could be what you are looking for.

4 Within .... distance of our hotel was the Alfama Bird sanctuary, where we were able to see a wonderful variety of birds at .... range.

42.2 Cross out the five collocation errors in this text and write the correct words in the right-hand column. The first one has been done for you.

Although we had a ~~little~~ increase in our pay ..small..........................
last month, we still earn very small wages. ....
We have not had a big deal of help from the ....
union, and tall prices mean that life is not ....
easy. Luckily, we only have a small level of ....
inflation at the moment.

42.3 Change the underlined words so that each sentence has the opposite meaning.

1 Cecilia is having some minor difficulties at work.
2 She was wearing red boots with low heels.
3 The company manufactures these components on a small scale.
4 We have had low interest rates for the last three years.
5 It's quite a fat book.
6 There were small quantities of oil in the tanks.
7 I had to share a room with my big brother until I was ten.
8 Eva is shorter than her mother.

42.4 Answer the questions.

1 What adverb beginning with 'p' collocates with thin?
2 Do we normally say 'a plump book'?
3 What do we call the maximum level of the sea on a beach or in a harbour?
4 Which adjective usually collocates with people, trees and buildings: *high* or *tall*?
5 Which word could fill the gap? That poor .... child looks lost.
6 Which word could fill the gap? Dave has a great .... of enthusiasm.
7 Which word could fill the gap? I'm no good at making .... talk.
8 Would we say 'Could you help me do some small things before dinner?'
9 If you owe the bank money, what kind of interest rates do you prefer?

43 Colour and light

A Describing colours

Look at these letters to *Home Making* magazine, asking for advice about colours.

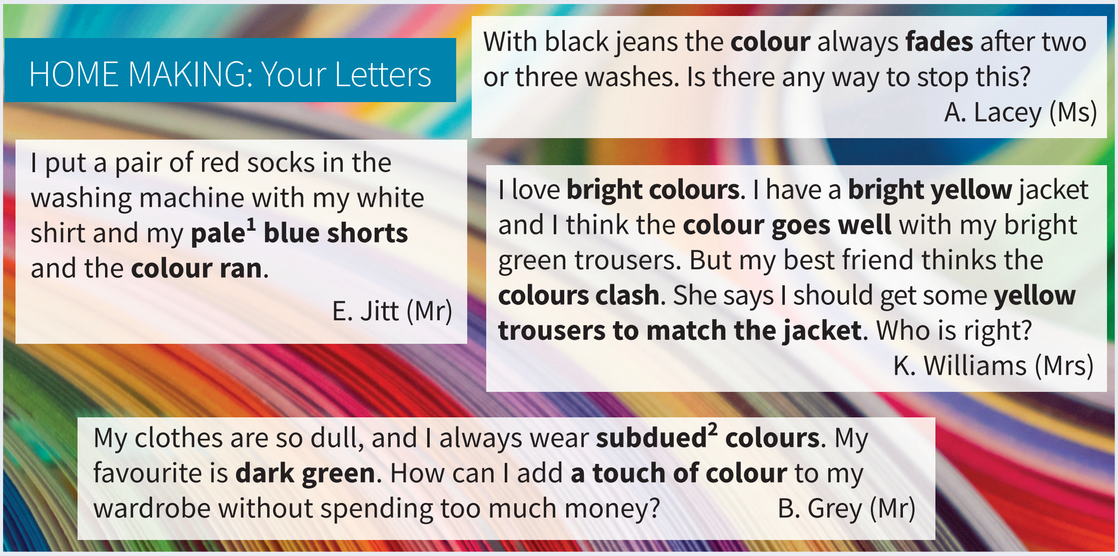

HOME MAKING: Your Letters

With black jeans the **colour** always **fades** after two or three washes. Is there any way to stop this?
A. Lacey (Ms)

I put a pair of red socks in the washing machine with my white shirt and my **pale**[1] **blue shorts** and the **colour ran**.
E. Jitt (Mr)

I love **bright colours**. I have a **bright yellow** jacket and I think the **colour goes well** with my bright green trousers. But my best friend thinks the **colours clash**. She says I should get some **yellow trousers to match the jacket**. Who is right?
K. Williams (Mrs)

My clothes are so dull, and I always wear **subdued**[2] **colours**. My favourite is **dark green**. How can I add **a touch of colour** to my wardrobe without spending too much money?
B. Grey (Mr)

---

[1] a light colour that is not bright or strong

[2] not very bright

B Describing light

Look at these extracts from short stories, where the writers describe different kinds of light.

It had **grown dark**, the **candle flickered** and Bertram could see almost nothing, but suddenly a powerful **beam of light** shone into the room and a police officer entered, with a torch in her hand.

A **ray of sunlight** fell on his face and woke him up. It was 6 am. Soon the **glare of the sun** would make it difficult to see his way across the desert. He must get to the village at once.

It was **pitch dark** when she left the house, but by the time she arrived at the beach, the **faint glow** of dawn was visible on the horizon. The sky was **tinged with gold**.

Above her, the **stars twinkled** in the night sky. Then she saw a **pinpoint of light** in the distance. As she walked towards it she realised it was a man on a bicycle coming towards her.

C Colour and light: metaphorical collocations

The law about re-using pictures from the internet seems to be **a grey area**. [an unclear area]

The trip to Brazil certainly **added colour** to our rather boring lives.

My brother cares a lot about **green issues** and has volunteered to do conservation work.

The government tried to **blacken his name** because he was critical of their policies. [destroy his reputation]

I'm hoping Hilary can **shed/throw some light on** what happened at work yesterday. [explain]

My sister's illness **cast a shadow** over our New Year family reunion. [made it less happy/cheerful]

Jim has always **been under the shadow of** his super-intelligent sister. [got less attention]

Exercises

43.1 Look at A and choose the right collocation to complete each of these sentences.

1 Shocking pink, lime green and orange are very ………………………… ………………………… and I personally prefer to wear more ………………………… ………………………… .
2 I think I'll wear my dark blue sweater and those grey trousers. The ………………………… ………………………… well together.
3 When I washed my red and white football shirt, the ………………………… ………………………… and it's ruined now!
4 I don't think it is a good idea to wear a purple top with orange trousers and red shoes – the ………………………… ………………………… terribly, in my opinion.
5 I like that red brooch on your black dress – it adds a lovely ………………………… ………………………… ………………………… .
6 My son always washes new jeans so that the ………………………… ………………………… before he wears them.

43.2 Match the two halves of each collocation.

1	a candle	dark
2	a beam	glow
3	pitch	area
4	a faint	someone's name
5	a star	of light
6	pale	a shadow
7	green	green
8	a grey	flickers
9	cast	twinkles
10	blacken	issues

43.3 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets, so that it keeps the same meaning.

1 The police are looking for someone who can explain how the accident happened. (SHED)
2 He has always been in an inferior position to his world-famous father. (SHADOW)
3 In the east the sky had some golden shades in it. (TINGE)
4 Joe's crazy behaviour certainly brightens up our dull office. (COLOUR)
5 Very bright sun can make driving difficult at this time of day. (GLARE)
6 She walked until the fire was just a little light in the distance. (PINPOINT)
7 Darkness was falling and Jill began to feel a little afraid. (GROWING)
8 The newspapers seem to be trying to destroy the minister's reputation. (BLACKEN)

43.4 Now answer these questions about the collocations in exercise 43.2

1 What probably causes a candle to flicker?
2 A *beam* of light is often used about the headlights of a car or the light of a torch. What similar phrase is used about sunlight?
3 Would you use *pitch black* to describe someone's hair or the night?
4 If you see a light as *a faint glow* is it likely to be far away or near to you?
5 What is the difference in meaning between saying that a star *shines* and a star *twinkles*?
6 What kind of issues are green issues?
7 What do you feel about something if you say that it is a grey area?
8 What sort of thing might cast a shadow over a special celebration?
9 If Mark accuses Karen of 'blackening his name', what has Karen done?
10 If something adds colour to someone's life or to a story, what happens to the life or the story?

44

Texture

A Adjectives and their opposites for describing textures

adjective + noun	opposite adjective + noun	example
dry hair	greasy hair	You need to wash **greasy hair** more often than you need to wash **dry hair**.
dry skin	oily skin	This cream is good for **dry skin** – that one would be better for **oily skin**.
smooth skin/surface/ complexion	rough skin/surface/ complexion	Use this cream and the **rough skin** on your hands will soon become **smooth**.
smooth water/sea	choppy or rough water/sea	I hope the **sea** will be **smooth** today – I hate **rough seas**.
smooth road/flight	bumpy road/flight	The outward **flight** was very **bumpy**. I hope the return **flight** is **smoother**.
soft pillow/bed/ ground	hard or firm pillow/ bed/ground	I'd much rather sleep with a **firm pillow** than a very **soft pillow**.
tender meat	tough meat	It's deliciously **tender meat** – how did you cook it? My steak is always **tough**.
sharp pencil/knife	blunt pencil/knife	This **pencil's blunt** – I can't work unless I have a good **sharp pencil**.

B Verbs relating to textures

When the temperature gets warmer, **ice melts** but **snow melts** or **snow thaws**.

As time goes by, **fruit goes soft** and **bread goes hard**.

A voice **softens** or **hardens** [gets more friendly or gets less friendly] and an **attitude softens** or **hardens**. [gets less severe or gets more severe]

C Other texture words with their collocations

HAVE YOUR
PHOTOS PRINTED
HERE
MATT FINISH OR
GLOSS FINISH[1]

TRY OUR YOGURT
– **smooth, creamy texture**
delicious with **finely chopped**[2] cucumber, **coarse grain**[3] sea salt and **crushed garlic**.

NATURAL HAIR
PRODUCTS
for beautiful
glossy hair.

CLEANO POLISH
will get rid of those marks on paint and wallpaper made by **greasy hands** and **sticky fingers**.
Buy some today.

[1] You can paint your walls using either **matt paint** or **gloss paint**. Gloss paint and gloss photos have a shinier finish than matt.

[2] cut into small pieces, opposite would be **coarsely chopped**

[3] large grains of salt rather than small or **fine grains**

D Metaphorical uses of texture words

If things go **smoothly**, they go well.

If someone **has a sharp tongue**, they say unkind things.

If you're in a difficult position, you can say that you're in a **sticky situation**. [informal]

Coarse **jokes** are vulgar jokes, jokes in bad taste.

Velvety sky is dark and deep with a beautiful soft smooth quality like the cloth velvet.

Exercises

44.1 Can you remember the pairs of adjectives at A on the opposite page? Change the underlined words to their opposite meaning.

1 I always prefer to sleep on a soft pillow. How about you?
2 My grandmother had very rough skin, which surprised me as a child.
3 Remember the Parazo restaurant? It was where we had the really tender lamb chops.
4 I found an old sharp penknife in the pocket of a jacket I hadn't worn for years.
5 The surface of the lake was very rough as we set out on our fishing trip.
6 Can you help me? I'm looking for a shampoo for dry hair.
7 I've always had rather dry skin, so I always use Milona face cream.
8 We had a smooth flight over the mountains.

44.2 Use collocations from the opposite page to complete the second speakers' answers.

1 Customer: (*In a photo-lab*) Is there a choice of finish for the prints?
Assistant: Yes. You can either have …………………………… or …………………………… .
2 Charles: The temperature was minus five yesterday; it's plus eight today!
Riley: Yes. And the ice on the lake has already …………………………… .
3 Aubrey: What's that loaf of bread like now? It's about four days old.
Dylan: I'm afraid it has …………………………… .
4 Ian: I think the protesters are very angry about this new road, and getting angrier.
Luna: Yes, I think attitudes …………………………… .
5 Taylor: There are some oranges in the bowl, but I'm afraid they may be old.
Kate: Mm. Yes. They are rather old. They're beginning …………………………… .

44.3 Complete the crossword.

■	■	■	■	■	1	■	■	■
2	■	■	3					
	■	■	■	■		■	■	■
	■	■	■	■		■	■	■
4						■	■	■
	■	■	■	■	5			
6						■	■	■

Across

3 the texture of yogurt
4 the texture of large grains of sand
5 It's warm; the snow's beginning to —— .
6 The little child had —— fingers after eating chocolate.

Down

1 adjective meaning 'has a beautiful soft, smooth quality or appearance, usually dark or deep'
2 The couple spoke very angrily at first, but their —— softened when they realised it was a mistake.

44.4 Find four collocations on the opposite page that have positive associations and four that have negative associations.

Over to you

Find more collocations describing texture in English language magazine articles or advertisements about beauty and health products, or about fabrics and furnishings.

45 Taste and smell

A Food and restaurant reviews

Look at these descriptions of smells and tastes in travel review articles.

> Everywhere you go, the **fragrant perfume** of Caranza Island's wild flowers follows you. And in the village of Jarca, the **distinctive aroma**[1] of the local dishes and the **smell** of fresh coffee **wafting**[2] across the square from the small cafés is simply wonderful.

> For many people, octopus is **an acquired taste**[3], but it's a must on the south coast, and the **subtle**[4] **flavour** of the local vegetable, *quingat*, provides a perfect accompaniment. The **fresh scent** of herbs is everywhere in the local markets.

[1] a slightly literary word used to refer to pleasant smells (often of food and drink, e.g. coffee); often used with adjectives such as *distinctive*, *rich*, *strong*, *sweet*, *appetising*

[2] moving gently through the air

[3] something you dislike at first but start to like after trying it several times

[4] not noticeable or obvious

B Negative collocations connected with smells and tastes

I can't drink **bitter coffee**. I'll have to put some sugar in this.

There was nothing in the fridge except an old carton of **milk** which had **gone sour**.

The lovely beach was completely spoilt by the **acrid**[1] smoke and **noxious**[2] **fumes** from a **foul-smelling chemical factory** nearby. [[1]strong smelling, causing a burning feeling in your throat [2]poisonous]

Body odour can be extremely unpleasant and embarrassing. [an unpleasant smell on a person's body that is caused by sweat]

C More taste and smell collocations

Mateo: Quinn, do you think this cheese is bad? It has a **strong smell**. **Have a taste**, tell me what you think.
Quinn: Hmm. Let me **have a smell** … mm … When did you buy it? It **smells off**[1] to me.

[1] no longer fresh or good to eat because of being too old

Julia: There was an **overpowering stink** coming from the river today as I drove over the bridge. It always **gives off a smell** in the hot weather but this was dreadful.
Austin: Yes, I passed there the other day. It's a **revolting stench**[2]. The pollution is getting worse and worse.

[2] *Stench* is a stronger, more extreme word than *stink*. *Revolting* means extremely unpleasant, disgusting.

Chris: Do I detect a **whiff**[3] **of perfume**? Are you meeting someone special tonight?
Lillian: It's none of your business!

[3] slight smell

D Smell and taste: metaphorical collocations

Her cruel remarks **left a bad/unpleasant taste in our mouths**. [left an unpleasant memory]
I **tasted freedom** when I gave up my job and travelled for a year. Now I can't go back to normal life.
Hudson and I **share the same taste in** music; we often buy the same CDs.
She has **developed a taste for** fast cars. She's just bought a bright red Ferrari.
We **smelt danger** and decided not to enter the city. It was a wise choice.
I didn't hear every word, but I **got the flavour of** what he was saying and I didn't like it.

Exercises

45.1 Look at A. Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 I think caviar must be an acquired	fumes from the factory behind it.
2 The delicious aroma of fresh coffee	is just too bitter for my taste.
3 The park was spoilt by the noxious	wafted in from the kitchen.
4 We just loved the fragrant	smoke from the bonfire.
5 I particularly enjoy the subtle	taste – I don't like it very much.
6 Smell the bottle and tell me if the milk	perfume of the blossom on the trees.
7 I usually love coffee but this coffee	is sour or OK to drink still.
8 It must be the wet wood causing such acrid	flavours that herbs give to food.

45.2 Divide the collocations in the box into those that have a positive meaning and those that have negative connotations.

acrid smoke
appetising aroma
foul-smelling chemicals
fragrant perfume
noxious fumes
overpowering stink
revolting stench
fresh scent

positive	negative

45.3 Read the sentences and answer the questions about them.

1 *Evan has developed a taste for visiting old churches.*
How frequently do you think Evan visits old churches?
2 *Skylar always leaves a whiff of perfume behind her.*
Does Skylar leave a strong smell or a light one?
Is it a pleasant or an unpleasant smell?
3 *As I entered the train carriage I couldn't help noticing the body odour.*
Does the speaker notice the smell of sweat or the smell of cosmetics?
4 *Jim asked his girlfriend to have a taste of the sauce he was preparing.*
Does the girlfriend probably take a lot or a little of the sauce?
5 *Some fish were rotting in a bucket and were giving off an overpowering stink.*
Did the speaker like the smell?
If the speaker had said *revolting stench* instead of *overpowering stink*, would this have made the smell seem better or worse?
6 *If you just read the introduction to the article, you can get the flavour of it.*
How could you say *get the flavour* in a different way?
7 *The argument has left an unpleasant taste in my mouth.*
Is the speaker upset by something he has eaten or something that has happened?
8 *Eleanor and I get on so well together because we share the same taste in lots of things.*
Do Eleanor and the speaker only like the same kinds of food or other things too?

Over to you

Look up the words *taste*, *flavour*, *aroma*, *smell*, *perfume*, *scent* and *odour* in a good learner's dictionary. Make a note of what kinds of things they collocate with.

46 Number and frequency

A Commenting on how much or how many

These adjectives collocate strongly with both *number* and *amount*. Try to use them instead of *small* or *large* where appropriate.

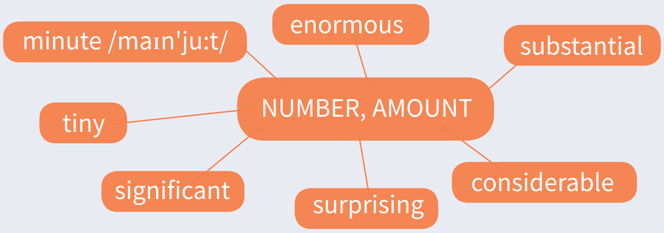

B Talking about numbers

collocation	example	comments
odd/even numbers	51 is an **odd number** – 50 is an **even number**	odd numbers = 1, 3, 5, etc. even numbers = 2, 4, 6, etc.
a decline/drop in the number of	There's been a recent **decline in the number of** boys joining the army.	*Drop* is more informal than *decline*.
an increase/rise in the number of	The **increase in the number of** homeless people is worrying.	*Rise* is slightly more informal than *increase*.
come to a total of	If we add up all the figures, it **comes to a total of** 794.	A calculation **comes to a total of** ×; the person calculating **arrives at a total of** ×.
birth rate rises/falls	Over the last few years the **birth rate has been falling**.	A **rate** can also **drop** or **decline** as well as fall.
a unit of currency/ measurement	The standard **unit of currency** in most EU countries is the euro.	We also talk about a **unit of electricity**, **unit of length**.

C Frequency

Widespread [existing or happening in many places or among many people] collocates strongly with a lot of words relating to either attitude (**widespread interest**, **widespread support**) or problems (**widespread damage**, **widespread poverty**):
There has been **widespread support** for the government's new policy on education.
The heavy winds at the weekend have caused **widespread damage**.

Rare [infrequent and special] collocates with things in the natural world (**rare disease**, **rare bird**, **rare species**) and also with collectable items of special interest (**rare coins**).

If someone repeatedly does something that annoys you, you can use the expression **keeps asking**, **keeps interrupting**, **keeps hitting**, etc. This is common in informal spoken English:
Please don't **keep interrupting** me when I'm trying to work.
The children **keep asking** me when we're going to buy a new computer.

Constant and **continual** also convey the idea of something happening repeatedly:
I couldn't get on with my work today because of **constant interruptions** – the phone kept ringing every five minutes.
It was a mistake to go on holiday with them. Their **continual complaining** drove us mad.

D Describing graphs and charts

Profits **rose sharply/steeply** in July, but **fell sharply/steeply** in September.

There was a **dramatic rise/fall** in the number of students applying to university this year.

Numbers of mature students have **increased steadily/gradually** since the 1960s.

The number of crimes committed in the city has **remained constant/stable** since 2011.

Exercises

46.1 Use adjectives from A opposite instead of the underlined words to complete the collocations.

1 I only put a very small amount of chilli in the soup but it was still too hot for some people.
2 There was an extremely large amount of information to read, 5,000 pages, which was far too much for one person to absorb.
3 We can't ignore the fact that a small but important number of people disagree with the plan.
4 There was an unexpected number of people at the meeting who had never voted in their lives.
5 The government's new budget will mean that a rather large number of people will have to pay more in taxes. (Give two answers.)

46.2 Choose the correct collocation.

1 17, 29 and 395 are all *strange / odd / unequal* numbers.
2 Many European countries use the euro as their standard unit of *money / value / currency*.
3 26, 8 and 192 are all *equal / level / even* numbers.
4 The bill *comes / arrives / gets* to a total of 287 dollars.
5 The unemployment rate is *falling / decreasing / lowering*.

46.3 Use words from the box to complete the news reports. You may use the words more than once.

decline rare keep widespread drop fall rise

Following (1) .... criticism of the government's environmental policy and a recent report showing a (2) .... in the numbers of seabirds along the nation's coastline, a scheme has been announced which, it is hoped, will result in a (3) .... in the population of birds, especially of those (4) ....species which are seriously threatened with extinction.

Unfortunately, last year's storms did (5) .... damage to homes in the north, and the damage is still visible in many places. One local resident complained, 'We (6) .... asking the authorities when we will be compensated. They (7) .... promising to sort it out but then nothing happens.' There has been a steady (8) .... in the number of severe storms in the area, with an average of two per year recorded in the 1980s and more than five per year now.

Although only a relatively small number of people die from (9) .... diseases each year, a plan to build a research centre into such diseases has received (10) .... support from all political parties. 'I'm glad to say that we have seen a steady (11) .... in the incidence of these diseases,' a medical expert said. 'But we must be careful. The numbers could (12) .... again if we do not continue to support research.'

46.4 Write sentences describing the sales figures in the chart. Use all the collocations from D.

Sales of mobile phones

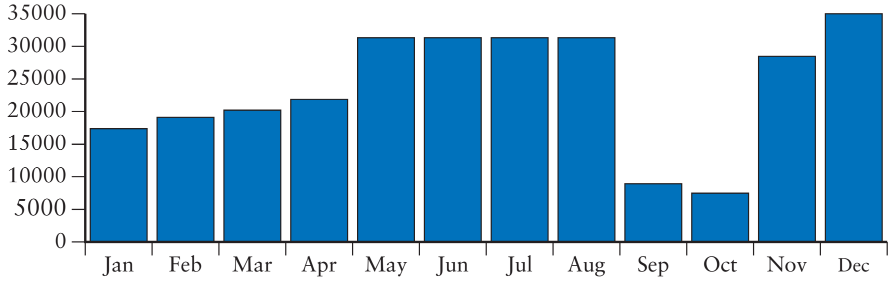

47 Movement and speed

A Synonyms of *fast*

adjective	collocations	examples
fast	car, train, lane, computer, pace	The **fast train** to London only takes 45 minutes. I don't like driving in the **fast lane** on the motorway.
quick	look, glance, answer, decision, shower, lunch	We had a **quick glance** at the menu and went in. I think I'll have a **quick shower** before going out.
rapid*	growth, decline, change, progress, increase, movement	There has been a **rapid decline** in the number of seabirds visiting the island each year. The builders made **rapid progress** with the new stadium.
speedy*	recovery, conclusion, response, access	She made a **speedy recovery** after her operation. The new web pages provide **speedy access** to airline and train timetables for 52 countries.
swift*	action, response, reaction, recovery	The government took **swift action** to change the law. This is an extremely urgent matter. I hope you will be able to give us a **swift response**.
prompt*	payment, reply, response	**Prompt payment** of bills is a good idea. I was happy that my letter received such a **prompt reply**.
brisk	walk, pace, business, efficiency	We had a **brisk walk** before lunch. She does everything with **brisk efficiency**.
hasty	decision, exit, conclusion, words	We should not make **a hasty decision**; we may regret it later. He made a **hasty exit** when he saw his wife enter the room.

* these are more formal

Note also these collocations with speed:

This car has a **top speed** of 180 kilometres per hour. [maximum speed]

He drove **at breakneck speed** along the motorway and was soon stopped by the police. [carelessly fast and dangerous]

B Slow movement and stopping

It was fascinating to see the winning goal again **in slow motion**.

We were stuck in **slow-moving traffic** for an hour on our way to the airport.

After the accident the traffic **slowed to a crawl** and then finally **came to a standstill**.

He always does everything **in an unhurried manner**. [slow; implies slight criticism]

We got up late and had a **leisurely breakfast**. [done in a relaxed way, without hurrying]

I'm trying to learn the violin, but my progress is **painfully slow**.

C Changes in speed, movement and direction

As it left the city, the train **gathered/picked up speed** and headed north.

We **took a shortcut** through a narrow side-street and saved ourselves a 15-minute walk.

Several roads were closed, so we had to **make/take a detour**. [a different or indirect route]

I **lost my balance** and fell off my bike.

I **lost my footing** and fell down the bank into the river.

I tried to **steer the conversation** away from my terrible exam results. [change the subject]

She **took** a few **steps** towards the bus, then changed her mind and decided not to go after all.

I **turned** my bike **upside down** and tried to repair it.

One of the packages I posted **went astray** and never arrived. [got lost]

Exercises

47.1 Look at A. Choose the correct collocation.

1 Joe gave Hailey a *speedy / fast / quick* glance to see if she was OK.
2 If you come to a *hasty / prompt / brisk* decision, it may well be the wrong one.
3 I marked my email as urgent, so I hope I get a *brisk / prompt / rapid* response.
4 The missile attacks provoked a *fast / swift / hasty* reaction from the other side.
5 There has been a *fast / rapid / quick* increase in the number of tourists visiting the city since the museum was opened.
6 Luke has a passion for *quick / swift / fast* cars.
7 I'm glad to say that business has been very *brisk / prompt / swift* all morning.
8 I think I'd better bring the meeting to a *brisk / speedy / fast* conclusion now, as we are running out of time.

47.2 Fill in the missing words in this paragraph about a day out.

Last Saturday we put our bikes on the train and had a lovely day out. At first, the train moved along slowly, but as we reached more open countryside it soon (1) p............................ up speed and after about an hour we had reached our destination, a small town at the foot of the mountains. We took our bikes and got off the train. We were surprised to find a lot of slow-(2) m............................ traffic in the town and indeed after a few minutes the traffic actually came to a (3) s............................ . There was a festival on in the main square. Fortunately, as we were on bikes we were able to (4) m............................ a detour through some back lanes. Eventually we were on a steep road leading to the mountains. I'm not as fit as I should be and cycling uphill was (5) p............................ slow but it was worth it. Near the top we got off our bikes and had a (6) l............................ picnic, enjoying the magnificent views. After lunch, I got up and (7) t............................ a couple of steps back to take some photos. I (8) l............................ my footing and fell. Fortunately, I didn't hurt myself. Cycling downhill was much easier, though at one point I (9) l............................ my balance and fell off my bike. We had a drink at a café in the valley beside a little river. We then (10) t............................ a shortcut across a field and got back to the station in time for the train home.

47.3 Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.

1 Let's take the speedy train to Paris, even though it's more expensive.
2 Jack did his best to drive the conversation away from the topic of work.
3 If you take the clock upside down, you might find the maker's name on the bottom.
4 You could only be sure which runner had won the race by watching the film of the finish in slow movement.
5 I posted your birthday present in plenty of time. I hope it won't get astray.
6 Let's have a rapid lunch and then get back to work as soon as possible.
7 Charlie always does everything in an unhurrying manner.
8 The car was travelling at neckbreak speed through the residential streets.
9 She bought a motorbike with a peak speed of almost 200 kilometres per hour.

48 Change

A Ways of talking about change

Small changes

I **made a few adjustments** to the gears and my bike works much better now.

We've had to **make a slight alteration** to our plans for the evening.

We've **made** a few **modifications** to the software so that it suits our systems better.

We've decided to **adopt** a new **approach** to the parking problem.

I've lost some weight – I need to **have** some of my **clothes altered**.

Major changes

It is often much more difficult than you'd expect to **break a habit**.

The organisation helps smokers who want to **kick the habit**. [informal]

The internet has **revolutionised the way** people do research.

Her grandparents **converted to Christianity** in the last century.

Yoga has **the power to transform** the way we feel. [make a positive change]

B Other collocations with change

collocation	example
change places/seats	Would you like to **change places/seats** with me – then you can sit next to your friend?
change jobs/schools/ doctors, but move house NOT ~~change~~ house	Jack is going to **change jobs** next year, so they'll have to **move house** and the children will have to **change schools**.
change your mind	Harry is planning to study law at university but he may **change his mind**.
change the subject	Whenever Flora talks about marriage, Adam **changes the subject**.
change the beds	I'll get some clean sheets and we'll **change the beds**.
change the baby	It's your turn to **change the baby** – there's a packet of nappies upstairs.
change your clothes	Do you want to **change your clothes** before we go out?

Note that *exchange* cannot be used in any of the collocations in the box. You **exchange money** (from one currency to another), **exchange addresses** (when people give each other details of where they live), **exchange ideas** (when people share their thoughts about something).

C Some error warnings

Here are some collocations relating to the theme of change which seem to cause particular problems, so note them carefully.

Some new jobs will **become available** soon. (NOT ~~get~~)

I'm sure George will **become successful** one day. (NOT ~~get~~)

The **standard of living is rising** steadily / **is improving**. (NOT ~~increasing~~ or ~~growing~~)

There's been a big **improvement in** your **performance** this year. (NOT ~~increase~~)

A number of **problems arose** during the journey. (NOT ~~appeared~~)

Common mistakes

Something **rises**, for example, **prices rise**, **profits rise**, **the sun rises**. But you **raise** something. You **raise** (NOT ~~rise~~) **your hand**, the government **raises** (NOT ~~rises~~) **taxes**, and during a meeting you sometimes **raise** (NOT ~~rise~~) **a question**.

Exercises

48.1 Complete the collocations in these work emails between Chris and Elena.

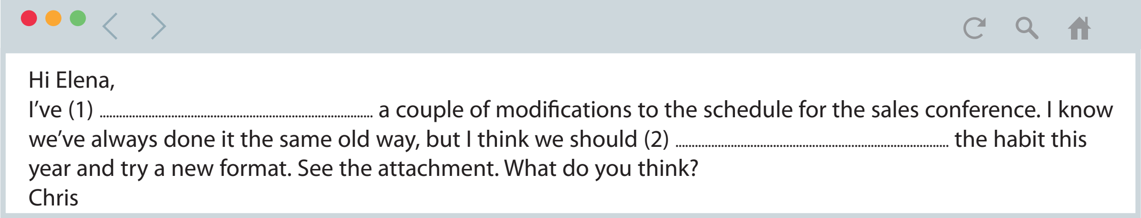

Hi Elena,
I've (1) …………………………… a couple of modifications to the schedule for the sales conference. I know we've always done it the same old way, but I think we should (2) …………………………… the habit this year and try a new format. See the attachment. What do you think?
Chris

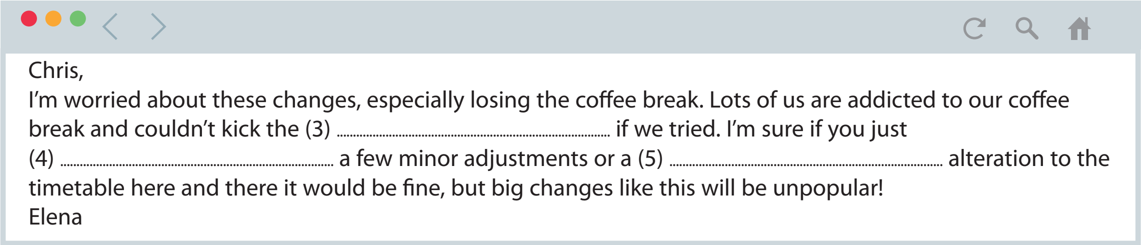

Chris,
I'm worried about these changes, especially losing the coffee break. Lots of us are addicted to our coffee break and couldn't kick the (3) …………………………… if we tried. I'm sure if you just (4) …………………………… a few minor adjustments or a (5) …………………………… alteration to the timetable here and there it would be fine, but big changes like this will be unpopular!
Elena

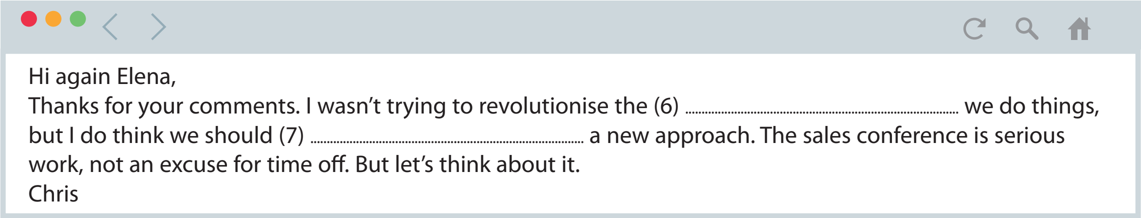

Hi again Elena,
Thanks for your comments. I wasn't trying to revolutionise the (6) …………………………… we do things, but I do think we should (7) …………………………… a new approach. The sales conference is serious work, not an excuse for time off. But let's think about it.
Chris

48.2 What would you say? Use collocations with *change* from B opposite.

1 A friend starts to talk about something unpleasant and you would prefer to talk about something else.
YOU: I'd rather not talk about that. Let's ……………………

2 You are on a train, sitting next to the window. A parent and child get on and the child sits next to you. Offer the child your window seat.
YOU: Would you like ……………………?

3 You order something in a restaurant but immediately wish you had ordered something different. You call the waiter back.
YOU: Sorry, I've …………………… Can I have fish instead?

4 A friend says she hates her job and is bored with it. Suggest she gets a new one.
YOU: Have you thought about ……………………?

5 You and a friend are wearing smart clothes and are about to do a messy, dirty job. Suggest you put different clothes on.
YOU: It's going to be messy. I think we should …………………… before we start.

6 You have three guests coming to stay. Suggest to your housemate that you should put new sheets on the guest beds.
YOU: They're arriving this evening. We should ……………………

48.3 Choose the correct collocation.

1 The standard of living has *grown / risen / increased* in the last ten years.
2 We *changed / exchanged / passed* some interesting ideas with our colleagues in the USA.
3 Tom and Jo are *changing / transferring / moving* house to be nearer Jo's elderly parents.
4 The new model of this computer will *become / get / make* available in September.
5 At the end of the presentation we could *raise / rise / arise* any issues that we wanted to discuss.
6 The firm *got / made / became* very successful, but then problems *appeared / arrived / arose*.

49 Ways of speaking

A Wedding speech

Whenever I **make a speech** I always try to **get to the point** as quickly as possible. I could **tell** a lot of **stories** about James, my best friend since childhood, but I don't want to embarrass him, so I won't. Also, before the wedding, I **gave** him **my word** that I wouldn't **crack** any **jokes**, as I'm really bad at **telling jokes**. So I'll do no more than **wish** James and Sophia **luck** and hope they have a long and happy life together.

B Business conversation

Olivia: I wonder if I could have a **brief chat** with you about our new office assistant?

David: Mm. Yes. I had a **quick word** with Mel yesterday; she said there have been problems.

Olivia: Could we talk now? I know it's a **delicate subject** but I don't think we need to make it a **lengthy discussion** with everyone involved.

David: Well, actually, I'm rather glad you **raised the subject**. Yes, let's talk.

Olivia: Well, **speaking off the record**[1], every time you **give** her **instructions**, she never seems to understand, and if you **challenge** her **directly** she just **pleads ignorance**[2]. The other assistants are **complaining bitterly** that they end up doing her work. One of them **dropped a hint** that she might resign if nothing is done about it. I could tell by **the tone of her voice** that she was serious.

David: Oh dear. I'll **have a word** with her and **make it clear** that she has to improve.

Olivia: Thanks, David. Anyway, let's **change the subject**. How's the sales plan going?

David: Oh, not bad, but I have to **tell** you **the truth**, I've been very busy with other things lately. In fact I was going to **ask** you **a favour** …

[1] saying something you do not want to be publicly reported [2] says she does not know about something

C Advice column

Ask Chloe

Dear Chloe,
I find it difficult to **get into conversation** with new people, or to **join in a conversation** that's already started. And even if I do talk to someone, I feel as if I'm boring them. I like meeting people and I want to be able to get to know them and not just **make polite conversation**. What can I do? *Sophia T.*

Dear Chloe,
A friend of mine **made an** interesting **observation** the other day: she said I always **address** people too **politely** and I **apologise** too **profusely** if I do something wrong. Why am I like this? Why can't I relax and be informal? *Cooper M.*

Dear Chloe,
I was at a party recently and I heard my friend Margie **strike up**[1] **a conversation** with a handsome man sitting next to her. Then, after a while, during a **lull**[2] **in the conversation**, I heard her **whisper softly** to him that she was not married. She is. Why did she **tell a lie**? Should I have told him? *Madison C.*

[1] begin a conversation [2] short period of quiet

Common mistakes

We **speak** a (foreign) language. We don't say 'I can ~~talk~~ Arabic/French, etc.'

Exercises

49.1 Replace the underlined words with a collocation from A.

1 I always get a bit nervous whenever I have to speak in public.
2 Julia promised me she would not leave the country without informing me.
3 I wish Fred would hurry up and get to the important part of what he's trying to say.
4 I hope that you will be successful in your new job.
5 After dinner everyone sat around sharing funny stories.

49.2 Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.

1 You can borrow my camera – I'll make you instructions about how to use it.
2 I could say you a lot of stories about what we used to do when we were kids.
3 That's enough about computers. I think it's time we moved the subject, don't you?
4 On the train I hit up a conversation with an interesting man from Japan.
5 I can't talk Japanese.
6 I'm afraid I really don't have time for a large discussion on the matter.
7 The US President George Washington is famous for confessing after saying a lie.
8 I don't like your note of voice – there's no need to be so aggressive.

49.3 Complete this email.

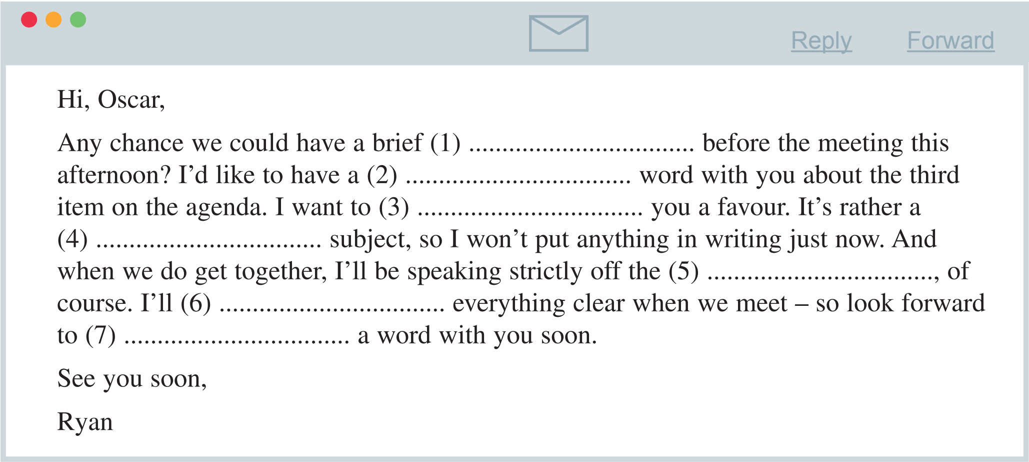

Hi, Oscar,

Any chance we could have a brief (1) .... before the meeting this afternoon? I'd like to have a (2) .... word with you about the third item on the agenda. I want to (3) .... you a favour. It's rather a (4) .... subject, so I won't put anything in writing just now. And when we do get together, I'll be speaking strictly off the (5) ...., of course. I'll (6) .... everything clear when we meet – so look forward to (7) .... a word with you soon.

See you soon,

Ryan

49.4 Complete each sentence with a word or phrase from the box.

bitterly conversation enough hints ignorance in the conversation
observations politely profusely softly the conversation the subject
the truth

1 I hope you will always tell me ....
2 I wish you had never raised ....
3 I hope she'll get the point if I drop ....
4 You can usually rely on Jack to make some interesting ....
5 I don't believe George when he pleads ....
6 I was too shy to join in ....
7 When he arrived late he apologised ....
8 When I give my students a lot of homework, they always complain ....
9 It doesn't sound quite natural to address your fellow students so ....
10 'I love you,' he whispered to her ....
11 I'll try to attract his attention during a lull ....
12 It's not always easy making polite ....

50 Ways of walking

A Key walking collocations

Cathy always preferred **to go** places **on foot** rather than driving. She loved **going for a walk** in the park in the early morning. There were always a surprising number of people around. Some were **taking a stroll** with their dogs, while more energetic people chose to **go running**. Cathy preferred to **go for a run** in the evenings. In the morning she liked a **brisk walk**. Today she was surprised to see a man **pacing up and down** beside the lake. He was **taking** long **steps** as if he was measuring the length of the lake. Cathy was puzzled but thought little more of it at the time.

B Adjectives and adverbs associated with walking

collocation	example	comment
an easy / a gentle walk	It's an **easy walk** into town from here.	**Gentle walk** suggests going slowly; **easy walk** suggests it's neither long nor difficult.
heavy/light steps	I could hear his **heavy steps** coming down the corridor.	*Heavy* can suggest either that the person walking is large or that they are sad, angry or tired.
a leisurely/gentle stroll	We can go for a **leisurely stroll** around the park later.	**Go for a stroll** is more common in speech than **take a stroll**.
to walk briskly/swiftly	The nurse **walked briskly** over to the bed.	Use these adverbs sometimes instead of *quickly*.
to pick your way cautiously	She **picked her way cautiously** along the icy pavement.	= walked carefully across a dangerous or difficult area
to wander aimlessly	I didn't know what to do, so I just **wandered aimlessly** around town all morning.	Both *wander* and *aimlessly* suggest having no particular purpose.
to stride angrily/ confidently/purposefully	The president **strode confidently** across the room.	We can also say **took confident/angry/ purposeful strides**. *Striding* suggests large steps.

C Walking through life

Walking collocations are often used metaphorically. Notice the examples in this text.

Jack always did very well at school. He **walked**[1] every **exam** he ever went in for. His teachers used to call him a **walking encyclopaedia**. It was only when he left school that he began to **run into problems**. He couldn't decide what job to choose. Many **different walks of life** appealed to him. He didn't want to **rush headlong into**[2] something that he would later regret. Eventually he decided he most wanted to become a writer. The next day he **took his first faltering steps**[3] at writing a novel. After only a month or two he had **made great strides**[4] and was ready to take his book to a publishing house. It was here that he **ran up against some opposition**. He seemed to **get off on the wrong foot**[5] with the publishers, who didn't like him and turned his book down. They're sorry now! A second publisher accepted his novel and it's already a best-seller world-wide.

[1] passed very easily (informal) [2] start doing something too quickly

[3] not very confident steps. You can also talk about *careful/tentative steps* when someone is doing something which they are not confident about.

[4] made great progress [5] make a bad start to a relationship

Exercises

50.1 Choose the correct collocations in these comments from people on holiday.

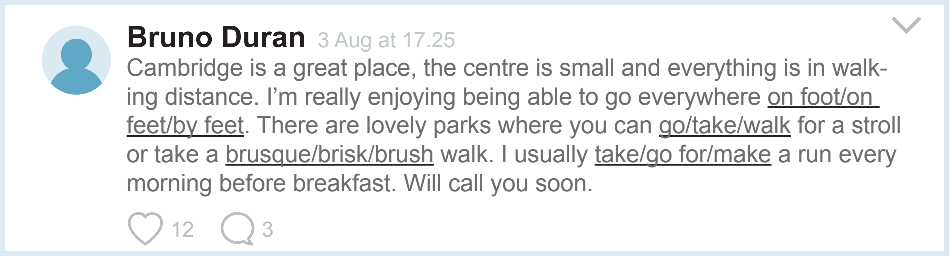

Bruno Duran 3 Aug at 17.25

Cambridge is a great place, the centre is small and everything is in walking distance. I'm really enjoying being able to go everywhere on foot/on feet/by feet. There are lovely parks where you can go/take/walk for a stroll or take a brusque/brisk/brush walk. I usually take/go for/make a run every morning before breakfast. Will call you soon.

♡ 12 🗨 3

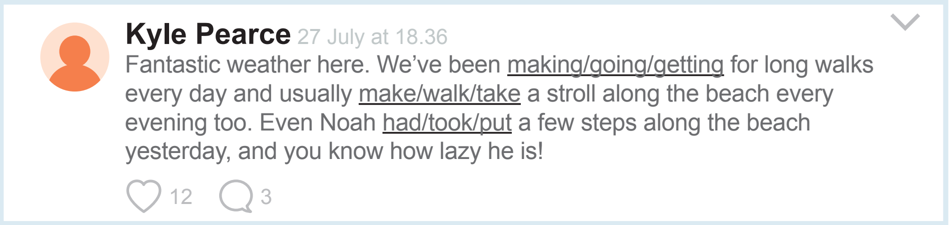

Kyle Pearce 27 July at 18.36

Fantastic weather here. We've been making/going/getting for long walks every day and usually make/walk/take a stroll along the beach every evening too. Even Noah had/took/put a few steps along the beach yesterday, and you know how lazy he is!

♡ 12 🗨 3

Katy Jackson 15 June at 14.15

I'm having a great time here, but Chris hates it and spends all day stepping/pacing/going up and down in the hotel room wishing he was home! I usually just leave him and make/do/go running in the local park!

♡ 12 🗨 3

50.2 Read the sentences in the box, then say if the statements below are true or false. If false, say why.

> Polly strode confidently into the boss's office and asked for a pay rise.
> Mick just wandered aimlessly round the shops.
> Jade picked her way cautiously across the muddy field.
> Harry walked briskly towards the exit.
> Karen took a leisurely stroll through the park.

1 Jade moved quickly and cheerfully. TRUE / FALSE
2 Karen walked nervously and quite quickly. TRUE / FALSE
3 Polly walked quite quickly. TRUE / FALSE
4 Mick walked without any real purpose. TRUE / FALSE
5 Harry walked fairly slowly. TRUE / FALSE

50.3 Complete B's responses using the words in brackets to make suitable collocations.

1 A: Is everything going OK?
B: No, I'm afraid we've .... some problems. (RUN)
2 A: Is David making progress with his maths?
B: Yes, he's making .... (STRIDE)
3 A: Did Ed pass his exam?
B: Yes, he simply .... (WALK)
4 A: What sorts of people play golf? Is it just rich people?
B: No, not at all. There are people from all .... (WALK)
5 A: So James is not taking up Marta's offer of starting a business together?
B: Well, he said he needs time to think. He doesn't want to .... into it. (HEADLONG)
6 A: Is the town centre far from here?
B: No, it's only ten minutes. It's .... (WALK)

50.4 Look up the word *run* in your dictionary. Make a note of three or four collocations.

51 Starting and finishing

A Starting

PROMISING START FOR AMBROSE

Sally Ambrose, Britain's best hope in this year's Eurotennis tournament, **made a promising start** when she won her first match today against Sweden's Ulla Hemvik.

EARLY START TO HOLIDAY

Many people have decided to **make an early start** to the bank holiday weekend. **Traffic was** already **building up** on major motorways on Thursday evening.

ABSOLUTE BEGINNERS MAKE BEST LANGUAGE LEARNERS

Research shows that **absolute beginners** have a better chance of learning a language well than those who start with some knowledge.

ARTS FESTIVAL **GETS OFF TO A GOOD START**

The Glasgow Arts Festival **got off to a good start** this week, attracting more than 120,000 visitors during its first three days.

B Finishing

CLOSE FINISH IN SPANISH RALLY

Pedro Macarro emerged the winner of today's Spanish Grand Prix in a very **close finish**. Macarro was just 0.5 seconds ahead of Finland's Pekka Hirvonen.

ROUX JUST WINS

Claude Roux won the championship yesterday in a **nail-biting finish**.

NEW CONSTITUTION

Ministers met in Rome today to **put the finishing touches** to a new constitution for the European Union.

NEW HEALTH CONTRACT BRINGS STRIKE TO AN END

The doctors' strike was finally brought to an end yesterday when the union and management signed an agreement over pay and working hours.

C More collocations for starting and finishing

The invention of television **marked the beginning of the end** for popular radio shows.
I studied hard for a whole month and the **end result** was that I got a grade 'A' in the exam.
The meal we had on our last evening in Istanbul was a **perfect end** to our holiday.
It's two o'clock. Let's **make a start / get started**, shall we? Then we can finish by five.
As my time at university **came to an end**, I knew I had to start looking for a job.
The meeting **drew to a close** at 5.30, after a long discussion.
Without any warning, he was fired from the newspaper in 2014. It was an **abrupt end** to his career in journalism.

Common mistakes

We say that a holiday/journey/trip/meal **ended**, NOT ~~finished~~.

Exercises

51.1 What are the opposites of the underlined phrases in these sentences?

1 We can make a late start tomorrow if you like.
2 The competition has got off to a disappointing start as far as the British are concerned.
3 Meeting Josh on the beach on the last day was a horrible end to my holiday!
4 The meeting came to an unsatisfactory close.

51.2 Correct the collocation errors in these sentences.

1 It was such a near finish that no one was quite sure who had won.
2 I've just got to put the ending touches to my painting and then you can see it.
3 I expect the meeting will go to an end at about 5.30.
4 Everyone is here, so I think we should do a start now.
5 We all hope that the negotiations will succeed in taking the strike to an end.
6 Email marked the start of the end for the fax machine.
7 Our journey finished – as it had begun – in Cairo.
8 Have you heard yet what the finish result of the talks was?

51.3 Put the words in order to make sentences.

1 meeting / I / will soon / close / a / hope / draw / the / to
2 Town Hall / excellent reception / The conference / good / got / with / in / off / a / start / to / an / the
3 didn't / As / know / a single word / beginners' / Dan / was put / class / he / Japanese / absolute / an / of / in
4 as a politician / The / end / scandal / Jackson's / brought / abrupt / to / career/ an
5 won / nail-biting / a / Alberto Contador / finish / cycle / the / race / in

51.4 Match the questions on the left with the responses on the right.

1 Do you think we should get started soon?
2 Did you already know some French when you started your course?
3 Was the race exciting?
4 Were you sad when your school days came to an end?
5 Did you enjoy the opera last night?
6 Do you know why their relationship came to such an abrupt end?

a No, it's a complete mystery to me.
b No, I was looking forward to university.
c Yes, most people are here now.
d No, I was an absolute beginner.
E YES, THE FINISH WAS NAIL-BITING!
f Yes, it made the perfect end to a lovely day.

Over to you

Look up the words *begin*, *start*, *end* and *finish* in a good learner's dictionary and note down any other interesting collocations that you find there.

52 Talking about success and failure

A Success

Notice the collocations for talking about success in this schoolboy's end-of-term report.

SCHOOL REPORT

James Turner

MATHS:	James has **made a breakthrough** in his maths this year, doing excellent work in comparison with last year. A **remarkable achievement**.
ENGLISH:	This year has seen a **dramatic improvement** in James's English. His **crowning achievement** was his performance in the school production of *Othello*.
FRENCH:	James **has an excellent grasp of** French. This will **come in useful** for the school trip to France next year, and we hope he will **take advantage of** the opportunities to speak French there.
SCIENCE:	James has done very well this year, **passing his exams** without any problems. If he continues to work hard, his **success** next year **is guaranteed**.
GEOGRAPHY:	James has **made good progress** with his geography this year, **gaining good marks** in the end-of-year exam.
HISTORY:	James's history project was a **great success**. His use of original sources was **highly effective**. He **makes useful contributions** in class and **has the ability to** explain difficult ideas clearly to less able pupils.
ART:	James found some **effective ways** of working with natural materials this year and his self-portrait was a **brilliant success**.
SPORT:	James has been training hard and, as a member of the First Football Team, is now able to **enjoy the fruits of his hard work**. Playing for the school has certainly **brought out the best** in him and he has rightly **won the respect** of all his team-mates.

B Failure

Notice the collocations relating to failure in these extracts from a newspaper called *Today's Bad News*.

Unfortunately the peace talks now seem likely to **fail miserably**. [be totally unsuccessful]
Although a lot of money was invested in the film it has proved to be a **spectacular failure**. [extremely unsuccessful]
O'Connor's first play was a great success but his second **play flopped**. [failed to attract audiences]
Hopes that the play would enjoy a long run in London **were dashed**. [hopes have had to be abandoned]
Unfortunately, more pupils than ever are said to be **failing** their final **exams**.
The mountaineer's attempt to climb Mt Everest **went badly wrong**.
Everyone agrees that the peace talks are **doomed to failure**. [are certain to fail]
Hopes were initially high for the new project but it has proved to be a **dismal failure**. [a total failure]
A couple of major companies in the area **went out of business** last month. [stopped doing business]
I think the new plans for cutting railway costs **are a recipe for disaster**. [will certainly lead to major problems]
At the last moment the Olympic ski jumper **lost his nerve** and did not take part in the competition. [was not brave enough]
The President's speech was disappointing as it totally **missed the point**. [failed to understand what is really important]

Exercises

52.1 Look at A. Complete these speeches congratulating people on various types of success.

Over the years, Henry has (1) .... the respect of his colleagues, and now, as he retires, we all hope he can enjoy the (2) .... of his many years of hard work. His career has been a (3) .... success, and he has (4) .... an enormous contribution to our profession. Thank you from all of us.

As Head Teacher I am proud to say the school has had a great year. 87% of students (5) .... their exams with grades B or higher, while the remaining 13% (6) .... good or very good marks. The school rugby team has done well; its (7) .... achievement was winning the regional championship. We believe that Garfham School (8) .... out the best in our boys and girls!

Our research team has (9) .... a breakthrough and the success of the project is now (10) .... It has been a (11) .... achievement. We must now (12) .... advantage of the excellent progress we have (13) .... and find more (14) .... ways of persuading the public of the importance of our work. I know we (15) .... the ability to do this successfully.

I am delighted to present our annual school Language prize to Tom Linton. Tom now has an excellent (16) .... of five major languages, which will certainly (17) .... in useful. Tom was not always a brilliant language learner, but his work showed a (18) .... improvement. Well done!

52.2 Match the beginning of each sentence on the left with its ending on the right.

1	Our plans went	miserably.
2	My hopes were	to failure.
3	After the horse threw me, I lost	complete flop.
4	The scheme is doomed	disaster.
5	He failed his	business.
6	Our political campaign failed	point completely.
7	His plans are a recipe for	badly wrong.
8	A year later he went out of	dashed when I heard the news.
9	She seemed to miss the	final exams.
10	Her latest novel was a	my nerve and couldn't get back on.

52.3 Correct the six collocation errors in this text.

I was always a dismal fail at school. I completely passed the point of maths and I failed sadly at most other subjects. Only the drama teacher managed to bring off the best in me and gave me a part in the school play. However, I lost my courage on the day of the performance and my hopes of a career on the stage were smashed.

53 Talking about cause and effect

A Different 'cause' verbs

topic	verb	examples
negative events, situations and feelings	cause	The storm **caused chaos** / **havoc** / **a lot of damage**. Her remarks **caused alarm/concern**. Her son's behaviour **caused her great anxiety** / **a lot of embarrassment**.
positive and negative changes	bring about	The discovery of X-rays **brought about a revolution/transformation** in medical science. The events **brought about the downfall/collapse** of the government.
positive and negative situations and feelings	create	Her book helped **create awareness** of inner-city poverty. Your presence on the committee is **creating problems** for all of us.
sudden, often negative, events	spark off	The announcement **sparked off riots/demonstrations** in the cities. His wife's absence **sparked off rumours** in the media.
reactions from people	attract	His book has **attracted** a lot of **criticism/interest**. The charity appeal **attracted support** from a wide range of people.
results and effects	produce	My comments **produced the opposite effect** to what I intended. Her research has not yet **produced any results**, but we must wait.

B Causes and effects

The **immediate cause** of the problem was an oil leak.	The **underlying cause** of the problem was a lack of funds over many years.
The government hopes to **reduce/minimise the impact** of the new taxes.	The support she got from the Prime Minister **strengthened/increased the impact** of her report.
The new measures had an **unexpected/unforeseen outcome**.	The new tax led to the **predictable/inevitable outcome** that many people became poorer.
The **positive/beneficial effects** of the changes were soon apparent.	The **negative/adverse effects** of the changes were not noticed immediately.
The crisis was the **direct/inevitable result** of bad economic planning.	One **indirect/unforeseen result** of the new laws has been a rise in unemployment.

C Common expressions for everyday events

The book **caused an uproar** in the United States. [made a lot of people complain angrily]
If you make her angry, you'll have to **suffer the consequences**.
The accident **had a huge effect** on her life.
Latino singers have **had a major impact** on pop music this year.
Remember that it **makes/creates a bad impression** if you're late.
The drug companies **have a lot of influence** on doctors.
Their love affair **caused a sensation**.

Common mistakes

To ***affect*** means 'to have an influence on someone/something, or to cause them to change'. (Her death **affected** everyone **deeply**.) To *effect* means 'to achieve something / make something happen'. (We are trying to **effect a change** in the way people think about their diet.) The noun *effect(s)* refers to the result(s) of something. (His stressful life **has had an effect** on his health.)

Exercises

53.1 Complete each sentence with a verb from A. Use each verb once only.

1 The film has .... a lot of criticism, both positive and negative.
2 The extra work Olga's had to do has .... her a lot of stress.
3 The experiment didn't .... the results we'd expected.
4 David Line wrote an excellent article on the factors that .... the collapse of the Soviet Union.
5 The rise in the price of fuel has .... a series of protests.

53.2 Choose the correct collocation.

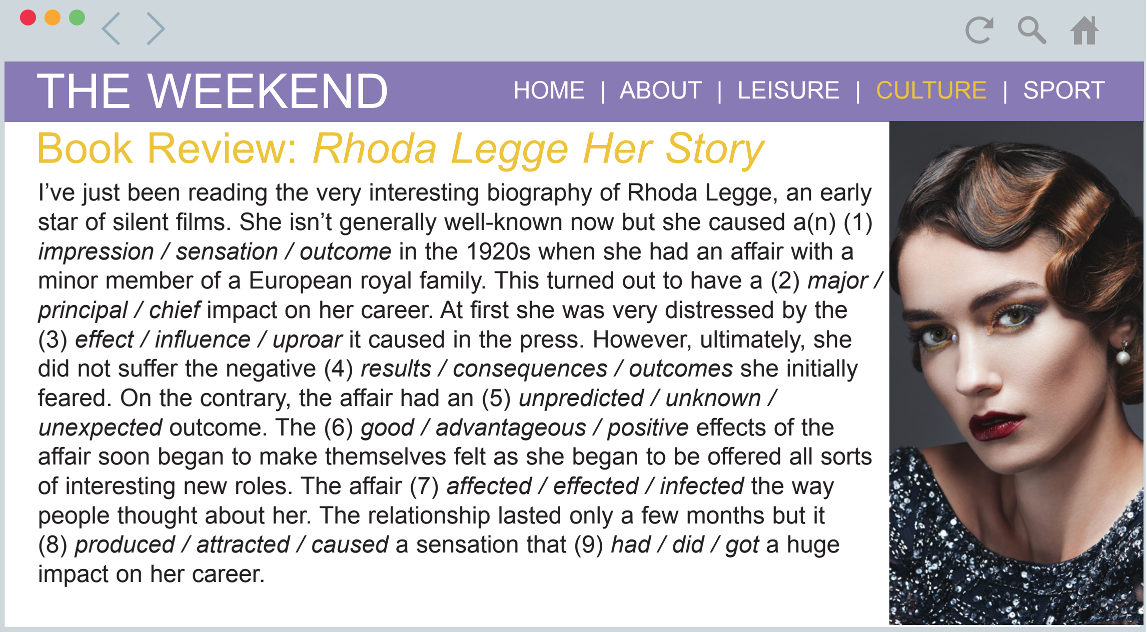

Book Review: *Rhoda Legge Her Story*

I've just been reading the very interesting biography of Rhoda Legge, an early star of silent films. She isn't generally well-known now but she caused a(n) (1) *impression / sensation / outcome* in the 1920s when she had an affair with a minor member of a European royal family. This turned out to have a (2) *major / principal / chief* impact on her career. At first she was very distressed by the (3) *effect / influence / uproar* it caused in the press. However, ultimately, she did not suffer the negative (4) *results / consequences / outcomes* she initially feared. On the contrary, the affair had an (5) *unpredicted / unknown / unexpected* outcome. The (6) *good / advantageous / positive* effects of the affair soon began to make themselves felt as she began to be offered all sorts of interesting new roles. The affair (7) *affected / effected / infected* the way people thought about her. The relationship lasted only a few months but it (8) *produced / attracted / caused* a sensation that (9) *had / did / got* a huge impact on her career.

53.3 Choose an ending from the box to complete each sentence below.

some changes in the way the college is structured.
the development of personality very deeply.
the impact of the tragedy on their children.
result of the huge tax rises.
a considerable influence on his choice of career.
cause of the fire was.
the impact of the new measures.
results which no one could have predicted.
a good impression at a job interview.
causes of crime.

1 The enquiry aims to establish what the immediate
2 Henry's grandmother had
3 The changes had some unforeseen
4 Criticising your previous boss doesn't create
5 The parents did all they could to minimise
6 What happens in childhood affects
7 Management is trying to effect
8 The TV coverage they have received has strengthened
9 The government should do something about the underlying
10 The riots were an inevitable

Over to you

Look up the words *influence*, *effect*, *impact* and *consequence* in a good learner's dictionary. Make a note of any other interesting collocations that you find.

54 Remembering and sensing

A Remembering

Notice all the memory collocations in this dialogue between two old school friends.

Beth: I saw Terry last night. Do you remember her? We were at school together.

Emma: No, my **long-term memory**[1] is terrible these days. Come to think of it, my **short-term memory**[2] isn't that brilliant either. And I used to **have** such **a good memory**! Anyway, **give me a clue**[3].

Beth: She was the one with long black hair and glasses. You always used to say that she **reminded** you **strongly** of that singer you used to like.

Emma: Oh, yes. I **vaguely remember** her now. She used to be friends with Jo, didn't she?

Beth: Yes. I'd **clean forgotten**[4] about her too. She ran over to me in the street and said hello. My **mind went blank**[5]. I could **remember her face** but I'd **completely forgotten her name**. But once we started talking, the **memories came flooding back**[6]. My **earliest memory** of her is that we all went to the beach with her parents one weekend when we were about 12.

Emma: Oh yes. Now you're **stirring up memories**[7] for me. I can **distinctly remember** being stung by a jellyfish in the water.

Beth: I can see why you wanted to **blot out that memory**[8]!

Emma: I can **vividly remember** it now though. Actually, the whole weekend was an **unforgettable experience**. We told ghost stories all night **if I remember rightly**.

Beth: Oh yes, that's right. Now I **remember it well**. It's terrible how **memories fade**[9] as time passes, isn't it! Mind you, I'm happy to lose some of my more **painful memories** of school.

[1] memory of what happened a long time ago
[2] memory of what happened recently
[3] informal: tell me something more to help me
[4] informal: completely forgotten
[5] I couldn't remember anything.
[6] lots of memories returned
[7] making old memories come back
[8] avoid remembering something unpleasant
[9] memories get less clear

Common mistakes

I've forgotten my homework. I left it at home. NOT ~~I've forgotten my homework at home~~.

B Sensing

Read these problem letters from a magazine and notice the collocations relating to sensing.

When I first met my new boss, I **had/got the impression** that he might be a difficult person to work for. I **sensed** some **tension** between us. Now I **have a feeling** that he is trying to make things difficult for me. I don't know whether I should **trust my intuition**[1] and hand in my resignation. Or am I just being **ridiculously over-sensitive**?

Kim T.

For the last few weeks I've been much more **sensitive to heat** and **sensitive to light** than I used to be. I've always had **sensitive skin** and **sensitive teeth** but this is much worse than ever before. My hands have also started **going numb**[2] if I get at all cold. I used to have an **acute**[3] **sense of smell** and **acute hearing** but I don't any more.

Jan P.

[1] feel confident that my instinctive feelings are correct
[2] losing all feeling
[3] acute = sharp, very good

Common mistakes

Remember the difference between a **sensitive person** [a person who is easily upset] and a **sensible person** [a person with good judgement].

Exercises

54.1 These people are all talking about their memories of childhood. Use words from A opposite to complete the collocations. The words in brackets give the meaning of the word you need.

1
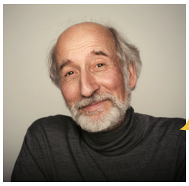

Well, my .... (*first*) memory is of sitting in our garden on my mother's lap. I .... (*not very clearly*) remember that there was a cat or dog there too, but I can't remember much else.

2

I used to have a .... memory when I was young, but I'm 82 now, and as you get older your .... memory (*memory for things that happened long ago*) is very clear, but your .... memory (*memory for things that happened recently*) is less good. Sometimes I can't remember what happened yesterday. But I can .... (*very clearly*) remember my first day at school as a child.

3

My mother sometimes tells me things I did or said when I was little but which I've .... (*totally*) forgotten. One embarrassing memory which I'd rather .... out (*avoid remembering*) is when I took some scissors and cut my own hair. It looked awful!

4

Seeing schoolchildren often .... up all kinds of memories (*makes old memories come to the surface*) for me. I wasn't happy at school and I have some .... (*unpleasant*) memories of being forced to do sports, which I hated. Sometimes, when I hear certain songs, memories come .... back (*lots of memories return*).

54.2 Complete the collocations connected with remembering.

1 It was a nightmare. The moment I looked at the exam paper my mind went ....
2 Her name's Lyn, and she worked with Nick a few years ago, if I remember ....
3 Let me see if I can remember where we met. Give me a ....
4 It was a wonderful trip to India. It was a(n) .... experience.

54.3 Complete each sentence using a word from the box.

intuition	sensitive	numb	acute	impression	sensible	over-sensitive	sensed

1 Do you ever get the .... that Silvia is a little mad? She says some very odd things.
2 I .... a bit of tension between Mark and Pauline. I wonder if they've had a row?
3 Usually I can trust my .... to tell me if someone is lying or not.
4 You're ridiculously ....! You treat everything I say as a personal attack on you.
5 It was so cold and I had no gloves on. My hands went .... as I rode my bike.
6 He uses a special face cream and toothpaste as he has .... skin and teeth.
7 Dogs have .... hearing and smell, and are often used to rescue disaster victims.
8 Paul is a very .... person; you can trust him not to do anything foolish.

54.4 Choose the correct collocation.

1 I *distinctly / strongly / rightly* remember that we agreed to meet at the gym.
2 I *made / had / took* the impression that you didn't like Molly.
3 You must wear gloves in this cold or your fingers will *do / have / go* numb.
4 I usually find that I can *trust / rely / depend* my intuition.
5 I'd rather *stir up / flood back / blot out* such unpleasant memories.

55 Agreeing and disagreeing

A Verb and noun collocations

collocation	example
go along with an idea / a view	I **go along with your view** that crime and poverty are linked.
be in (complete) agreement	We **are in complete agreement** over the question of drug abuse in athletics.
tend to agree/disagree	I **tend to agree** that parents often blame teachers for problems which start within the family.
share an opinion / a view	I **share your opinion** that sport is over-commercialised.
appreciate someone's point of view	I **appreciate your point of view**, but I still think you are overstating the problem.
see someone's point [understand their opinion]	I can **see your point**; I've never thought of it in that way before.
enter into an argument	I'd prefer not to **enter into an argument** over the result of the elections.
differences arise/exist	**Differences exist / have arisen** between the unions and the management over how to solve the problem.
come to / reach a compromise	We disagree over what to do, but I'm sure we can **come to / reach a compromise.**
settle a dispute / your differences	The management and the union have finally **settled their pay dispute**. I'm sure we can **settle our differences** without damaging our friendship.
agree to differ [agree to have different opinions]	I don't think we will ever agree with each other. We'll just have to **agree to differ**.

B Verb and adverb collocations

verb	adverb	example
agree	entirely/ wholeheartedly	I **entirely agree** with you on the question of nuclear waste.
agree	partly / up to a point	I **agree up to a point**, but I also think there are other important factors.
disagree	fundamentally/ totally/strongly	The two philosophers **disagreed fundamentally** over the effect of the environment on behaviour.

C Adjective and noun collocations for disputes and strong disagreements

I've often disagreed strongly with Nancy but I've never had such a **head-on clash** with her before. [disagreement where two people confront each other directly]

The **bitter dispute** between the two groups finally led to violence.

We had a very **heated argument** about immigration the other day.

Jeff and I had a **fundamental disagreement** over who should be the next Chair of the club.

D Further collocations for agreeing and disagreeing

The Regional Education Committee has reached a **unanimous agreement** on a new system of exams for secondary schools.

Controversy continues to **exist/rage** over the appointment of the new Director.

A **conflict of opinion** within the National Olympic Association is threatening to delay the building of a new stadium.

Exercises

55.1 **Look at A. Make collocations by matching words from the circle on the left with words from the oval on the right.**

agree
enter
appreciate
share
be
come
settle
see

an opinion
to differ
in agreement
others' points of view
into an argument
our differences
to a compromise
someone's point

55.2 **Put the expressions from the box into the appropriate category below.**

a controversy rages
a head-on clash
a heated argument
settle a dispute
come to a compromise
differences exist

reaching agreement	disagreeing

55.3 **Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets, so that it keeps the same meaning.**

1 I don't completely agree with what you say. (POINT)
2 I am in total agreement with you. (ENTIRELY)
3 There was no disagreement among the committee members. (UNANIMOUS)
4 There will always be differences of opinion even between friends. (ARISE)
5 James and Ben had a big disagreement over the question of climate change. (STRONGLY)
6 The project has been delayed because of the different opinions among the members of the committee. (CONFLICT)
7 I find it difficult to agree with such an idea. (ALONG)
8 We are in total disagreement about most things. (FUNDAMENTALLY)

55.4 **Answer these questions about the collocations on the opposite page.**

1 Which collocation suggests that a disagreement is like a high temperature?
2 Which two collocations suggest that a disagreement is like a fight or a war?
3 Which collocation suggests that controversy is like anger?
4 Why do you think the word *bitter* is used to refer to quarrels and disputes as well as to taste?
5 Which collocation suggests that understanding someone's opinion is like using your eyes?

56 Talking about beliefs and opinions

A Speaking about beliefs and opinions

I **firmly believe** that young people should have the right to vote at 16.

I **share your opinion on** the issue of hunting. I'm **a great believer in** animals' rights.

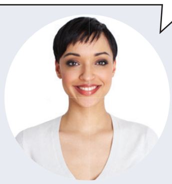

Contrary to **popular belief**[1], it is not true that blondes are dumb.

We **have reason to believe** that you witnessed the accident.

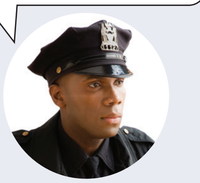

[1] what many people think

We are poles apart[2] in our attitudes to life.

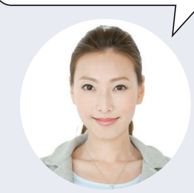

It's **a matter of opinion** whether men are better drivers than women.

I had a **difference of opinion**[3] with my brother.

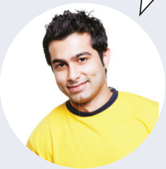

I've got a sneaking suspicion[4] you may be right.

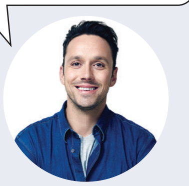

[2] are completely different

[3] disagreement

[4] I'm beginning to think

B More formal ways of discussing beliefs

Look at this extract from a student essay and notice the collocations referring to beliefs.

> The writer seems to **make assumptions**[1] based on an **unshakeable belief** in the superiority of her own value system. She seems to be unaware of the extent to which her own **set of beliefs** has **coloured her judgement**[2]. Her research **leads her to conclude** that military action was justified. However, her **evidence is based on** one single document and **attaches** too much **importance** to this. I do not **trust her judgement**. Moreover, other documents **cast doubt on**[3] her conclusions. **Opinions** on the issue **are divided**[4] and my own **considered opinion**[5] is that the writer is not to be trusted. I **have serious misgivings about**[6] her research and I **have doubts** about the accuracy of some of her facts.

[1] thinks or says things are true without enough evidence
[2] affected her judgement
[3] suggest something may be wrong with
[4] people have different opinions
[5] opinion after much thought
[6] I have serious doubts about

C Some error warnings

The expressions in this table are collocations that learners often have difficulty with.

collocation	comment
I **hope you'll come** to my party.	NOT ~~wish~~
They've **given up hope** of any survivors.	NOT ~~the~~ hope
We need to **think hard** about this problem.	NOT ~~consider~~ hard – could be **consider** this problem **carefully**
I wish they would just **leave me alone**.	NOT ~~let~~
Many people **hold the view/opinion** that …	NOT ~~meaning~~
He **has strong opinions** on many subjects.	NOT ~~heavy~~ or ~~big~~

Exercises

56.1 Look at A. Complete the collocations in these letters to a newspaper.

Sir/Madam,

I (1) .... the opinion of your correspondent that the EU has brought peace to Europe, but I cannot agree that a single currency for all of Europe is necessary. It is a (2) .... of opinion whether economic stability can be maintained with one currency, and there is (3) .... to believe that some European economies were more stable before they joined the euro.

Yours,

L. Knight

Sir/Madam,

According to popular (4) ...., the war between Gronbia and Karzkut started with a (5) .... of opinion over how best to preserve the beautiful mountain environment on both sides of the border between them. The two countries were apparently (6) .... apart on how to approach the issue, and war resulted. If this is indeed true, how stupid can human beings become?

Yours sincerely,

B. Stephenson

Sir/Madam,

While I (7) .... believe in the right of everyone to own a car, I am also a great (8) .... in keeping fit and healthy. The government tells us we must take exercise, but I have a (9) .... suspicion that they are afraid of saying we should sell our cars because they would lose billions in road taxes.

Yours,

S. Adams

56.2 Correct the seven collocation errors in this text.

I wish we can solve a big problem we have regarding our student committee. Opinions are separated about how to approach the issue and, naturally, some members have very heavy opinions. Some of their views are based on their unstirred belief that they are always right and that no one can challenge their group of beliefs. My own thoughtful opinion is that we should have new elections, but I know that others have quite a different meaning.

56.3 Match each verb in the box with its noun collocation in the table below. Then write one sentence for each collocation.

cast colour attach make have trust

	verb	noun
1		assumptions
2		somebody's judgement
3		
4		importance to
5		doubt on
6		serious misgivings
		doubts

56.4 Make seven collocations using the words in the box. Use each word once only.

apart belief believe cast think firmly hard opinions
sneaking strong suspicion doubt poles popular

57 Deciding and choosing

A Decisions and judgements

Note the collocations in bold in these emails between colleagues.

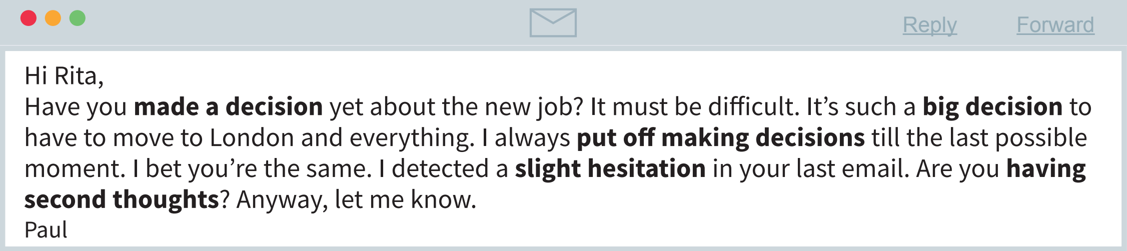

Hi Rita,
Have you **made a decision** yet about the new job? It must be difficult. It's such a **big decision** to have to move to London and everything. I always **put off making decisions** till the last possible moment. I bet you're the same. I detected a **slight hesitation** in your last email. Are you **having second thoughts**? Anyway, let me know.
Paul

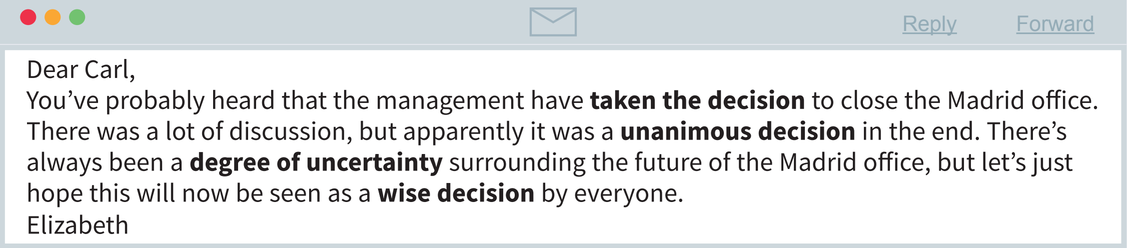

Dear Carl,
You've probably heard that the management have **taken the decision** to close the Madrid office. There was a lot of discussion, but apparently it was a **unanimous decision** in the end. There's always been a **degree of uncertainty** surrounding the future of the Madrid office, but let's just hope this will now be seen as a **wise decision** by everyone.
Elizabeth

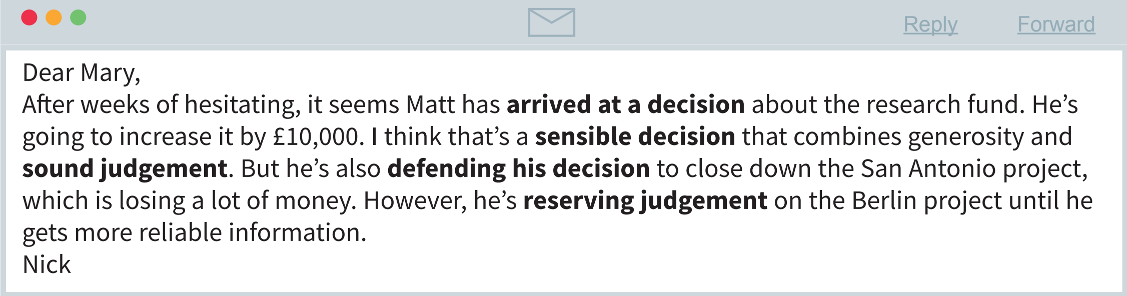

Dear Mary,
After weeks of hesitating, it seems Matt has **arrived at a decision** about the research fund. He's going to increase it by £10,000. I think that's a **sensible decision** that combines generosity and **sound judgement**. But he's also **defending his decision** to close down the San Antonio project, which is losing a lot of money. However, he's **reserving judgement** on the Berlin project until he gets more reliable information.
Nick

B Choices, opportunities, advice

Tim: I'm going to have to **make a choice** soon about next year. I've been **given the chance** of going on a six-month expedition to South America and I've been offered a job in a bookshop here.

Laura: Wow! South America! That sounds like **the opportunity of a lifetime**! How could you say no?

Tim: Well, believe it or not, I don't have **a burning desire** to see the world, I'd **much prefer** just to stay at home. Anyway, I'm going to **consider** all **the options** before I decide.

Laura: Well, I know you never **take** my **advice** but I would **strongly advise** you to think of the future. Overseas experience is much more useful than working in your home town. You're lucky to **have a choice**, a lot of people stay at home because they **have no option**.

Tim: I know, I know, but it's a **tough choice**. You wouldn't understand.

Laura: Well, I think you're just **taking** the **soft option** if you choose the bookshop. I can't believe you're going to **pass up the opportunity** of a trip to South America.

Tim: Well, we all **face difficult choices** now and then.

Laura: Difficult! You're mad! Look, just don't **reject** South America **out of hand**. Promise me you'll think about it.

Tim: Yes, yes, I already said I'm going to **weigh up the options** and **come to a decision**.

Tip

Horoscopes often focus on choices and decisions in people's lives. Read horoscopes in English and note any new collocations connected with decisions and choices.

Exercises

57.1 Using collocations from section A on the opposite page, complete B's remarks in these conversations so that B agrees with what A says.

1 A: I still don't know whether to take the job or not. But I'll have to decide soon.
B: Yes, you can't go on putting .... the decision for ever.
2 A: It was good that absolutely everyone agreed in the end, wasn't it?
B: Yes, I'm glad it was a .... decision.
3 A: I think I'd prefer to wait and see what happens before judging the new system.
B: Yes, I think it's best if we all .... judgement till we see the results.
4 A: I said I would join the committee but now I'm not so sure.
B: Mm, it's obvious you're having .... thoughts.
5 A: I felt he was hesitating a little bit before deciding, didn't you?
B: Yes, I definitely detected a .... hesitation on his part, you're right.

57.2 Complete each sentence using a word from the box.

degree	come	wise	take	sound	defend	give	tough	arrive	weigh

1 She has always been respected for her .... judgement in financial matters.
2 Do you think it was a .... decision to sell off the company's Dublin branch? I think it was a mistake.
3 I think we should .... up the options before deciding.
4 It took the committee a whole day to .... at a decision.
5 There seems to be a .... of uncertainty as to whether they will sign the contract.
6 I don't think we can .... our decision to exclude some of the children from the competition. Everyone thinks it's very unfair.
7 It was a .... choice, but we had to make it, even though we hated doing so.
8 I think you should .... your father's advice and say no.
9 I wish someone would .... me the chance to prove how good I am.
10 Have you .... to a decision yet about your university course?

57.3 Read these remarks by different people, then answer the questions.

Ava: I think I'll choose the supermarket job; the job at the children's hospital seems like very hard work. I want something easy.
Amelia: I've decided to say no to the offer to join the conservation team in Canada.
Riley: I desperately want to see the world; I'll take any job if it means I can travel.
Lucas: I don't want to sell my flat but I have no other way of getting money.
Matthias: Me, work in a zoo? Never, absolutely not! I'm not even prepared to consider it!
Penelope: I've been offered a job singing on a cruise ship. It's fantastic! I'll never get an offer like this, ever again.

	name
1 Who is going to do something because they have no option?	
2 Who has been given the opportunity of a lifetime?	
3 Who wants to take the soft option?	
4 Who is rejecting something out of hand?	
5 Who has decided to pass up an opportunity?	
6 Who has a burning desire to do something?	

58 Claiming and denying

A Making accusations

A government minister is today **facing accusations** of taking bribes. There have been **heavy hints**[1] about this for some time. An article in *The Moon* last week **clearly implied**[2] that a top political figure was involved in a scandal and **dropped** a number of **broad hints**[3] as to who it was. A **leaked document**[4] published in today's *Moon*, however, **makes** a number of **serious allegations**[5], which **openly accuse** the Minister of corruption. The Minister has **issued a statement**[6], saying **the claims are unfounded**[7]. He claims that he has been **wrongly accused** by *The Moon* because of its **long-running battle**[8] with the government.

[1] strong suggestions
[2] suggested clearly but indirectly
[3] made a number of obvious suggestions
[4] an official document unofficially given to the press
[5] makes serious claims of criminal behaviour
[6] made a formal statement
[7] the claims are untrue, have no basis in reality
[8] an argument that has been going on for a long time

B Putting forward a point of view

Jones **puts forward** an interesting **theory**[1] of language learning, **backing up**[2] his **argument** with thorough data. **Fully accepting** the fact that different learners find different methods useful, Jones **makes the point**[3] that motivation is the key factor in most learners' success. Although this has been **widely acknowledged**[4] in general terms for some time, Jones is more precise than most, **stating clearly** that motivation is more important than all other factors, and **substantiating**[5] this **claim** with impressive data.

[1] proposes a theory
[2] supporting
[3] presents an argument
[4] accepted by many people
[5] supporting

C Denying

collocation	example
strongly deny	The PM **strongly denied** claims of corruption made against him.
deny charges / an accusation	Despite the evidence against him, the accused **denied the charges**.
deny a rumour / an allegation	The pop star has **denied all the rumours** about her marriage.
disclaim responsibility	The hotel **disclaims all responsibility** for guests' vehicles.
reject an idea / a suggestion	Ann **rejected** all Joe's **suggestions** about how to decorate their flat.
run contrary to	The research findings **run contrary to** popular belief.
contradictory evidence/advice	**Contradictory evidence** made it hard for the jury to reach a verdict.

Common mistakes

Note these collocations: **deny/reject a claim, deny a rumour / an allegation / an accusation** but **reject an idea** / **a suggestion** and **refuse an invitation/offer**. You **deny/ reject/refuse something**. You **deny that something** is true. You can also **refuse to do something** (in the future) but **deny doing something** (in the past).

Exercises

58.1 Complete the sentences, using collocations from A.

1 A .... provided the press with information about the government's secret plans.
2 Management has been having a .... with trade union representatives over a number of aspects of employees' rights.
3 I'm going to get my son a racing bike for his birthday. He's been dropping .... about what he wants for some time.
4 At the end of the three-day meeting a spokesperson will .... to inform the press about any agreements that have been signed.
5 A front-page article in today's paper is making some .... about the behaviour of some top international bankers.
6 The article did not name anyone directly but it .... who was involved.

58.2 Fill each gap in this extract from a scientific article.

In his latest article on the free market Milton King puts (1) .... some original theories. He (2) .... earlier ideas which up until now most economists have accepted without question. He (3) .... some fascinating points based on his own extensive research which is widely (4) .... as an important contribution to economic thought. The data from his research (5) .... up his theories and help to (6) .... his claim that modern economies would benefit from major reforms.

58.3 Replace the underlined words with an appropriate form of either *deny*, *reject* or *refuse* to give the sentences the opposite meaning.

1 The politician agreed that the allegations made against him were true.
2 I think we should accept Jill's invitation to their New Year's Party, don't you?
3 Hill accepts the theories put forward by Jackson.
4 Katie agreed that she had been present at the meeting.
5 I hope they will accept my offer of help.

58.4 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets, so that it keeps the same meaning.

1 We are not responsible for valuables that are not left in the hotel safe. (DISCLAIM)
2 The pop star insisted that there was no basis to the claims made against him. (UNFOUNDED)
3 Jones's views do not accord with the facts. (RUN)
4 The newspaper clearly suggested who the actor's new partner was. (DROPPED)
5 John insisted that what people were saying about him was untrue. (DENIED)
6 Whatever idea I suggest, Daniel says it is no good. (REJECTS)
7 I don't know what to do, as everyone keeps suggesting I do something different. (CONTRADICTORY)
8 The student is being accused of cheating in the exam. (FACING)
9 In her new book the writer presents an interesting theory of art. (FORWARD)
10 Recent research supports McIntyre's theory. (UP)

59 Liking and disliking

A Strong statements: nouns and adjectives

noun	collocations
liking	I **have a particular liking** for quiet, relaxing music. She **had a genuine liking** for her cousins.
love	His **great love** of nature can be seen in his paintings. Her **passionate love** of the sea inspired her to sail round the world.
regard [formal]	I have always had the **greatest regard** for her. She has the **highest regard** for her teacher.
enjoyment	I will never forget the **sheer enjoyment** of listening to the children singing. We get **great enjoyment** out of our little cottage in the mountains.
pleasure	It's been a **great pleasure** meeting you. I hope we meet again. It was such a **huge pleasure** to be able to relax and do nothing for a week.
preference	When asked, many people expressed a **clear preference** for organic food. I've always had a **strong preference** for short stories rather than novels.
dislike	I have an **intense dislike** of rock music that is played too loud. She **took an instant dislike to** Mr Peabody, but she did not know why.
aversion[1]	He has always had a **huge aversion** to hard work of any kind. Most people have a **strong aversion** to excessive violence on TV.
hatred	She had a **deep hatred** of politicians, especially corrupt ones. The **deep-rooted hatred** between the two families goes back several generations.

[1] a feeling of strong dislike or a lack of willingness to do something

B Verbs and nouns

These people are talking about their favourite airlines.

I think Globe Air are pretty good. You can **state** your **preference** for a special low fat menu, or seafood or vegetarian. They have great in-flight entertainment too – they try to **cater for** everyone's **tastes**. They seem to **take pride in** their service.

I do a lot of long-distance flying and I **don't relish the thought**[1] of a twelve-hour flight with no leg-room, so I usually fly with Arrow. They give you a lot of space, even in economy. And they seem to **take pleasure** in looking after you.

[1] don't like to think that it is going to happen

I think most people **take offence**[2] if they're just treated like a number. I **have no sympathy** for airlines that lose customers because they're too lazy to **give** them **a warm welcome** when they step on board. Visa Airlines are always very friendly.

[2] become upset because someone has insulted or disrespected them

C Other useful collocations for likes and dislikes

I like most James Bond Films, but *Goldfinger* is my **absolute/all-time favourite**.
I've always been a **great lover** of Mozart's operas.
She's a(n) **ardent**/**dedicated fan** of American football. [showing strong feelings]
I'm a **keen admirer** of the new President. He is such a strong leader.
My wife's father always **filled me with admiration**. He achieved so much during his life.
It always **gives** me **pleasure** when I see my children doing well at school.

Exercises

59.1 Look at A. Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets, so that it keeps the same meaning.

1 In the survey most people said they much preferred coffee to tea. (PREFERENCE)
2 Karl really dislikes people using mobile phones in restaurants. (AVERSION)
3 The staff all think very highly of their managing director. (REGARD)
4 I've enormously enjoyed getting to know you. (PLEASURE)
5 Suzie genuinely likes cowboy films. (GENUINE)
6 My parents absolutely detest most modern architecture. (HATRED)
7 We enormously enjoy our weekends in the country. (GREAT)
8 Rex knew at once that he could never like his new flatmate. (INSTANT)

59.2 Mark the statements with + if they are about liking and – if they are about disliking.

1 I have no sympathy for anyone who takes such foolish risks.
2 Jane Austen is my all-time favourite writer.
3 I'm a dedicated fan of Robin Williams.
4 I don't relish the thought of a holiday with all my cousins.
5 It gives me no pleasure to have to say this to you.
6 I take pride in doing my work as neatly as I can.
7 I must say I rather took offence at what she said to me.
8 I'm a great lover of the open air life.
9 I've always been a keen admirer of Nelson Mandela.

59.3 Choose the correct collocation.

I went to a new Italian restaurant last night. It claimed to (1) *cater / cook / feed* for everyone's tastes. I went there with my brother. We both have a (2) *large / heavy / strong* preference for Italian food. We also both have a (3) *peculiar / special / particular* liking for sitting out-of-doors and this restaurant had a lovely terrace. Unfortunately, the food did not (4) *make / give / pass* us quite so much pleasure. Although the staff gave us a very (5) *warm / hot / boiling* welcome when we arrived, they didn't seem to (6) *take / do / make* much pride in their service or their cooking. I certainly don't much relish the (7) *suggestion / proposal / thought* of going there again.

59.4 Answer these questions.

1 Does it give you more pleasure to give a present or to receive a present?
2 Are you more likely to take an intense dislike to a person or a place?
3 If you are asked to state your preference for a window or an aisle seat on a plane, what do you normally go for?
4 Which singer is your absolute favourite?
5 Name one person who has filled you with admiration in the last five years.
6 Do you take more pride in your work or your home?
7 Name three people or things that you feel great love for.
8 Do you get more pleasure from reading or from listening to music?

60 Praising and criticising

A Praising

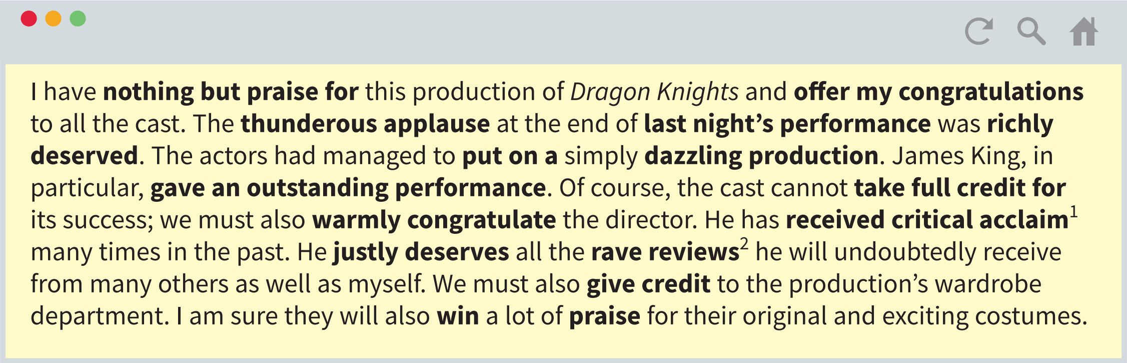

I have **nothing but praise for** this production of *Dragon Knights* and **offer my congratulations** to all the cast. The **thunderous applause** at the end of **last night's performance** was **richly deserved**. The actors had managed to **put on a** simply **dazzling production**. James King, in particular, **gave an outstanding performance**. Of course, the cast cannot **take full credit for** its success; we must also **warmly congratulate** the director. He has **received critical acclaim**[1] many times in the past. He **justly deserves** all the **rave reviews**[2] he will undoubtedly receive from many others as well as myself. We must also **give credit** to the production's wardrobe department. I am sure they will also **win** a lot of **praise** for their original and exciting costumes.

[1] enthusiastic words

[2] very enthusiastic reviews [informal]

Also note these collocations relating to praise:

The orchestra **received a standing ovation** for their performance of the symphony. [the audience liked the performance so much that they stood up to applaud]
Your boss **thinks the world of** you. He's always **singing your praises** to me. [informal]
My parents always used to **speak well/highly of** that journalist.
Her father **warmly/heartily approves** of her new boyfriend.
I hope you will **give your blessing** to the plan. [say you wish it well]
Let's **give** the winner **a big clap / a round of applause.**
You deserve **a pat on the back** for such excellent marks! [you deserve praise]

B Criticising

When you are criticised, you **come in for criticism**. You may **respond to this criticism**, you may **counter the criticism** [criticise your critic back] or you may **dismiss the criticism** [say it is untrue or unimportant].
A person may **show his/her disapproval** or **express his/her disapproval** and this is often done by giving a **look of disapproval** or with a **frown of disapproval**.

word	collocates with	example
criticism	harsh [strong], constant, constructive [useful]	The play came in for some **harsh criticism**.
critical	highly and sharply	The writer is **sharply critical** of our political system.
criticise	roundly [thoroughly], fiercely, bitterly	He was **roundly criticised** for his rudeness.
a critic	harsh, outspoken [critic who says exactly what s/he thinks]	Actors fear him because he is such an **outspoken critic**.
disapprove of	strongly, thoroughly	I **strongly disapprove of** smoking.
condemn	severely	The banker was **severely condemned** for his dishonesty.
condemnation	wholesale, universal [both mean by (almost) everyone]	The country's aggressive behaviour has earned **universal condemnation**.
object to	strongly, strenuously [with a lot of effort]	Local residents **strenuously objected to** the development plans.

Exercises

60.1 Complete these extracts from TV programmes where the speakers are praising people.

For this young violinist, Nuria Shilov, her performance ends with a (1).. ovation and (2).. applause. Her playing has received critical (3).. in the last year in her home country, and now her talent has been recognised by an international audience.

Now the President of the National Badminton Federation (4)........................ congratulates Wang Shih-Ping on his (5)........................ deserved victory in this year's tournament. His skilful playing has (6)............................... a lot of praise from commentators, though he personally refuses to (7).. full credit for his achievements, and (8)...............................credit instead to his manager, Karla Ennaise.

Well, the team manager is ecstatic and is at this moment making a speech (9)... the praises of the captain, Blake Samson, and the rest of the team. And there is no doubt that they (10)...........................deserve all this praise for such a remarkable victory.

So, at the end of this week's quiz, the blue team have won. Let me (11)... my congratulations to you all. You'll be coming back next week. And let's give the losers a (12).............................. of applause. The red team also played a great game.

60.2 Circle T (True) or F (False) after each statement. If you circle F, say why.

1 If you speak highly of someone, you praise them. T F
2 If you have nothing but praise for someone, you do not approve of what they do. T F
3 If you criticise someone roundly, you criticise them only slightly. T F
4 If you heartily approve of something, you are in favour of it. T F
5 If you counter criticism, you just accept it. T F
6 If someone gives their blessing to something, they are against it. T F
7 If you give someone a clap, it is usually because you like what they have done. T F
8 If you give constructive criticism, you normally have a positive intention. T F

60.3 Put the words in order to make sentences.

1 lot / He / in / for / criticism / a / of / came
2 criticism / the / responded / of / to / disapprove / how / I / thoroughly / she
3 him / condemned / lying / for / severely / judge / The
4 disapproval / my / behaviour / of / want / I / express / to / her
5 outspoken / were / but / dismissed / critics / he / The / criticisms / their
6 comments / condemnation / His / universal / received
7 objected / plan / We / and / strenuously / the / to / were / critical / it / highly / of
8 always / a / government / been / I /critic / of / have / corrupt / harsh

60.4 Complete the collocations in this text.

This is the last exercise in this book. May we give you a pat on the .... for getting to this point. Indeed, you .... deserve a .... clap. We have .... but praise for you and would like to .... you our warm congratulations!

Key

Unit 1

1.1 1 A collocation is a pair or group of words which are often used together in a way which sounds natural to native speakers of English.
2 *car* and *food*
3 *narrow-minded, teapot* and *car park*
4 idioms

1.2 make mistakes
powerful engine
have breakfast
make an effort
watch TV
ancient monument
substantial meal
bitterly cold
pitch dark
strictly forbidden
Other possible collocations are: make breakfast, substantial breakfast.

1.3 The first four statements are all true. The final statement is probably not true. You may well be understood if you use less natural collocations but you will not sound as you probably wish to sound.

1.4

compound	collocation	idiom
teapot	make a mistake	pull somebody's leg
key ring	heavy snow	a storm in a tea cup
checkpoint	valid passport	
	bitterly disappointed	
	live music	

1.5 The most useful collocations to learn are underlined here.

When I left university I made a decision to take up a profession in which I could be creative. I could play the guitar, but I'd never written any songs. Nonetheless I decided to become a singer-songwriter. I made some recordings but I had a rather heavy cold so they didn't sound good. I made some more, and sent them to a record company and waited for them to reply. So, while I was waiting to become famous, I got a job in a fast-food restaurant. That was five years ago. I'm still doing the same job.

Unit 2

2.1 All of the underlined phrases are strong collocations.

My friend Abigail is desperately worried about her son at the moment. He wants to enrol on a course of some sort but just can't make a decision about what to study. I gave Abigail a ring and we had a long chat about it last night. She said he'd like to study for a degree but is afraid he won't meet the requirements for university entry. Abigail thinks he should do a course in Management because he'd like to set up his own business in the future. I agreed that that would be a wise choice.

2.2
1 She's having a party.
2 She's taking an exam.
3 She's giving a lecture. / She's giving a party.
4 She's making good progress.
5 She's doing her duty. / [informal] She's doing an exam.

2.3 In the morning I ~~made~~ **did** some work in the garden then I ~~spent~~ **had** a rest for about an hour before going out to ~~have~~ **do** some shopping in town. It was my sister's birthday and I wanted to ~~do~~ **make** a special effort to cook a nice meal for her. I ~~gave~~ **had** (or **took**) a look at a new Thai cookery book in the bookshop and decided to buy it. It has some ~~totally~~ **very**/**quite**/**extremely** easy recipes and I managed to ~~do~~ **make** a good impression with my very first Thai meal. I think my sister ~~utterly~~ **thoroughly/really** enjoyed her birthday.

2.4

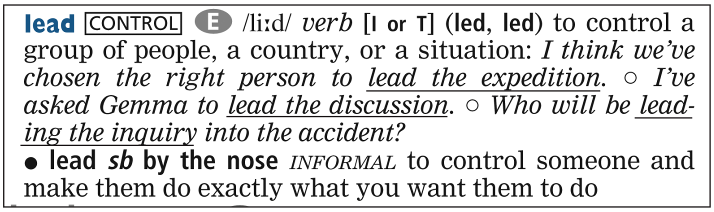

lead CONTROL Ⓔ /liːd/ *verb* [I or T] (**led**, **led**) to control a group of people, a country, or a situation: *I think we've chosen the right person to lead the expedition.* ○ *I've asked Gemma to lead the discussion.* ○ *Who will be leading the inquiry into the accident?*
● **lead** ***sb*** **by the nose** *INFORMAL* to control someone and make them do exactly what you want them to do

Possible new sentences:
1 He led an expedition to the Amazon in 1887.
2 She led the discussion very skilfully.
3 The Prime Minister appointed a senior judge to lead the inquiry into the scandal.

Over to you

Here are some possible good collocations for the words suggested. You may choose to record them in different ways, of course. The important thing is that they are recorded as collocations in a phrase or sentence that will help you to understand their meaning and to remember them.
desperately ill; desperately busy; desperately keen; desperately in love with
an acute pain; a sudden pain; to relieve the pain; to put up with pain (see also Unit 3)
a wise decision; to be older and wiser; to be wise after the event; a wise guy (informal)
to run a business; to run smoothly; buses run regularly; to run for political office

Unit 3

3.1
1 It puts them **in bold**.
2 in pain, constant pain, ease the pain, a sharp pain, aches and pains
3 It can take you to a lot of information about a word or about types of word very quickly.
4 Synonyms, related words and phrases
5 By writing INFORMAL after the relevant use of the word.
6 If your dictionary does not indicate good collocations either by putting them in bold or by using them in example sentences, then you should seriously consider getting another dictionary that will help you in this way. It will be very useful when you are writing English compositions as well as helping you to improve your vocabulary.
7 Your answer will depend on your own dictionary.
8 Your answer will depend on your own dictionary.

3.2

making others experience pain	the experience of being in pain	making pain go away
to cause pain	to complain of pain	to alleviate pain
to inflict pain	to experience pain	to ease pain
	to feel pain	to lessen pain
	to be racked with pain	to relieve pain
	to suffer pain	to soothe pain
		pain subsides

3.3 You might find these collocations:
aches and pains
a dull ache
to have a stomach ache

Unit 4

4.1
1 a brief chat
2 bright colours
3 key issues
4 a major problem

4.2
1 launch
2 was booming
3 create
4 merge
5 poses
6 expanded

4.3
1 nostalgia
2 horror
3 anger
4 pride
5 tears
6 pride

4.4
1 blissfully
2 fully
3 proudly
4 happily
5 gently
6 softly

4.5
1 B
2 F
3 E
4 C
5 F
6 D
7 A
8 B
9 A
10 D

Unit 5

5.1
1 Cyclists should dismount before crossing the footbridge. (F)
2 Never dispose of batteries and similar items by throwing them onto a fire. (F)
3 The students were all bored stiff by the lecture. (I)
4 Passengers must alight from the bus through the rear door. (F)
5 The grass badly needs cutting. (I)
6 Please place all used tickets in the receptacle provided as you leave the building. (F)

5.2
1 slash prices, pump prices, major companies
2 detectives quiz, missing teenager, prime suspect
3 floods hit, battling against floods
4 axe (200) jobs, made redundant, job losses, falling profits

5.3 *Suggested answers:*
1 Have you heard? The oil companies are bringing down / putting down / lowering / reducing their prices.
2 Have you heard? Detectives have interrogated/questioned/interviewed a business man about the missing teenager. *or* Detectives are interrogating/questioning/interviewing …
3 Have you heard? Floods are affecting / there are floods in the Central region.
4 Have you heard? The Presco car firm is getting rid of 200 jobs (*or* staff/people) / is making 200 workers (*or* staff/people) redundant / is laying off 200 people (*or* workers/staff).

5.4
1 We raised capital to expand the business.
2 They submitted a tender for the new stadium.
3 They went into partnership to develop a new range of products.
4 We started up a business to supply sports equipment to schools.

5.5 1 dead keen
2 boarding the aircraft
3 bore the cost of
4 dropped out of
5 launched into

Unit 6

6.1 1 deeply ashamed
2 ridiculously cheap
3 highly controversial
4 utterly stupid
5 highly successful
6 bitterly disappointing
7 strongly/utterly opposed
8 utterly ridiculous
9 ridiculously easy
10 deeply concerned

6.2 1 ridiculously cheap
2 highly controversial
3 strongly/utterly opposed
4 bitterly disappointing
5 deeply ashamed
6 highly successful
7 ridiculously easy
8 utterly stupid
9 deeply concerned
10 utterly ridiculous

6.3 *The incorrect collocations are:*
1 strongly love
2 highly exhausted
3 bitterly regard
4 absolutely tired
5 deeply successful

6.4 Everyone was complaining **bitterly** when they heard about the new plan. People were **deeply** shocked to hear that children would be **strictly** forbidden to use the sports ground and most people were strongly opposed to the new rules. Even people who normally never expressed an opinion were **utterly** appalled by the proposals.

Unit 7

7.1 1 made a mistake
2 make a decision
3 make arrangements / an arrangement
4 make a change / (some) changes to
5 make a choice
6 make a contribution

7.2 1 do
2 doing
3 make
4 do
5 make
6 do

7.3 1 do
2 do
3 make; do
4 make
5 make

Unit 8

8.1 1 They can go bald. / They can go grey.
2 You can go red.
3 Your face / You can go white. If the news is a great shock your hair might go/turn white.
4 They can go yellow.
5 They turn red.
6 John Milton went blind.
7 Beethoven went deaf.
8 Hamlet went mad.
9 It might turn grey. / It might go dark.

8.2 1 Dinosaurs **became** extinct …
2 … I'd like to **have** lots of children.
3 Jasmine **became** depressed …
4 … dreamt of **becoming** famous.
5 Would you be interested in **becoming** involved …
6 More people have **become** homeless …
7 My sister **had** a baby …
8 My grandfather **had/suffered** a heart attack …

8.3 As you **grow** older, you'll begin to understand your parents better. **Becoming** angry with them all the time doesn't help. You may not want to go to summer camp when none of your friends will be there, but your parents know you will soon **make** new friends there. You would all have gone on a family holiday together if your grandmother hadn't **fallen** ill, but surely you can understand why they don't want to leave her. You'll feel much more sympathetic to your parents' feelings when you **have** a child of your own!

8.4 1 mad
2 turned
3 gone
4 going / to go
5 fell
6 grew
7 falling
8 went/turned

Unit 9

9.1 *Suggested questions:*
1 Could you have a look at this letter before I send it?
2 Why aren't you speaking to Hazel? Did you have an argument / a row?
3 What happened? Did you have an accident?
4 How was the holiday? Did you have fun / have a good time?
5 Shall we have a break for half an hour or so?
6 Nice bike! Can I have a go/try (on it)?
7 When you're free, could I have a chat with you about next year?
8 What's the matter? Are you having difficulty / problems / a problem reading it?

9.2 1 paid
2 took
3 paid
4 had
5 paid
6 took
7 had
8 pay
9 take
10 have
11 take
12 had

9.3 Next time you **take** a trip to the coast, why not **take** the train?
Why suffer endless delays in long traffic jams? And why **take** risks when you're travelling – **take** a train and arrive safely. What's more, if you decide to **take** a holiday in the capital city, you'll have a more relaxing time if you **take** a train. Or why not pay a surprise visit to an old friend during an off-peak time? Click here and **take advantage of** our special offers.

Unit 10

10.1 1 close
2 start
3 large
4 finished; end
5 close
6 began
7 big
8 end

10.2

1 solitary
2 antique
3 only
4 sole
5 ancient
6 alone
7 lonely
8 old
9 single [*elderly parents* is also a possible collocation]
10 elderly

10.3

1 Were many people **injured** in the earthquake?
2 Single parents who are **raising** children without a partner's support are entitled to financial help from the government.
3 My mobile isn't working. I need to **charge** the battery.
4 She has a lot of beautiful **antique** jewellery.
5 When we moved house, two men helped us to **load** the van.
6 That's not news – it's **ancient** history!
7 I don't know how to **load** a gun, let alone fire one.
8 I've never been very successful at **growing** plants.

10.4

Possible answers:

1 They're loading a ship.
2 She's growing plants.
3 I'm charging my mobile phone. *or*
A mobile phone is charging.
4 The chair is damaged.
5 He's raising sheep.
6 He has injured his leg. *or* He is injured.

Over to you

Possible collocations:

big – big city, big house, big eater, big sister, big brother, big difference, big day, big deal, big idea, big business – when *big* means *important*, it cannot be replaced by *large*.
large – large city, large house, large number, large survey, large intestine

Unit 11

11.1

1 earn/make
2 gained
3 won
4 achieve
5 made
6 beat/defeated; won
7 earns
8 gained

11.2

1 The woman is wearing a coat.
2 She's carrying a (hand)bag.
3 She's using her mobile phone.
4 The man is wearing a suit.
5 He's using an umbrella.
6 He's carrying a briefcase.

11.3

Last year I got a new job and started **earning/making** a lot more money. I realised I could afford to **spend** more money on my holiday than I usually do and decided to **spend** a month in Australia. I knew it would be hot there and so I wouldn't need to **take** warm clothes with me. In fact, I **wore** a t-shirt and jeans all the time I was there. I **wore** a hat all the time too, of course, to protect me from the sun. It was fantastic there. I **spent** a week sightseeing in Sydney and then **spent** the rest of the time travelling round the country. I even **achieved** my lifelong ambition of stroking a koala.

11.4

1 The Democratic Party **won** the election.
2 The ruling power **has gained** control of the situation.
3 Our team **won** the match.
4 I **earned/made** a lot of money last month.
5 Our company made **a profit** last year.

11.5

1 Where did you **spend** your last holiday?
2 How much money did you **earn/make** last week?
3 What do you always **carry/take** with you when you go out?
4 Have you ever **won** a trophy?
5 What aim would you particularly like to **achieve** in life?

Possible answers:

1 I spent my last holiday in Switzerland.
2 I'm not sure what I earned last week – much the same as usual, probably.
3 I always carry my mobile phone, some money, a credit card and my keys.
4 I once won a trophy for writing an essay at school.
5 I'd like to achieve my aim of writing a novel.

Unit 12

12.1

1 sunny
2 lit up
3 lighten
4 dark
5 shone / were shining
6 darkened

12.2

1 Madeline
2 Rob
3 Charlotte
4 Emma (and Alice)
5 Thomas
6 Jason

12.3

1 My cheeks were burning with embarrassment.
2 Violence has flared up in the capital city.
3 The ideas flowed during the discussion.
4 The famous footballer's divorce was surrounded by a blaze of publicity.

12.4

1 b 2 b 3 a 4 c

12.5

Possible answers:

1 a bright future [a future that is looking happy and successful]
a bright child [an intelligent child]
2 a warm welcome [a friendly welcome]
a warm smile [a friendly smile]
3 cold eyes [unfriendly eyes]
a cold stare [an unfriendly stare]

Unit 13

13.1

1 snow
2 fog/mist
3 winds/sun
4 wind
5 frost
6 rain
7 sunshine – Note that you can also talk about **unbroken cloud**.
8 fog/mist – Note that you can also talk about **a blanket of snow**.

13.2

1 strong
2 died down
3 deteriorate / get worse
4 freezing cold
5 heavy/driving
6 lifted

13.3 I wish I'd worn a warmer jacket. There's a **freezing cold** / **biting** wind. At least it's not **pouring with rain** today. We had such **torrential rain** yesterday. I wish I was **soaking up the sunshine** on a Mediterranean beach.

13.4

1 Very heavy rain or snow melting perhaps.
2 You can probably see heavy grey clouds – but note that it has not started to rain yet.
3 It's unexpected, unusual for the time of year or the place, and unusually strong.
4 It's probably harder to drive if there is dense fog. However, patches of fog can also be dangerous as you may unexpectedly run into fog.
5 Heavy rain with wind.
6 An image of violence is created.
7 People can blow or whistle. They do this by exhaling air from their lips. So you might blow on soup or tea to cool it. If you whistle you make a noise by blowing through your lips in a special way.
8 *Devastated* suggests most destruction and *damaged* suggests least destruction.

13.5 Other collocations you might have found are:

wind	**rain**	**snow**
not a breath of wind	light rain	snow falls
a gust of wind	a downpour of rain	snow melts
	a shower of rain	a blanket of snow
	to rain hard	
	rain fell heavily	

Unit 14

14.1

1 travel
2 trip
3 journey
4 travel
5 trip
6 journey
7 trips
8 travel/trips
9 travel
10 journey

14.2

1 make; fully
2 aisle; window
3 connecting
4 entertainment
5 fasten
6 board
7 run
8 smart/luxury; accommodation

14.3

1 A bumpy flight.
2 Most people prefer smooth flights – though some people perhaps enjoy it when it is bumpy because it is more exciting!
3 A scheduled flight.
4 In-flight magazines.
5 A business trip is one specific journey for business purposes, whereas business travel refers to travelling in general for business purposes.
6 Return journey.
7 Not necessarily – family-run means that the main hotel staff are largely from the same family.

14.4 *Possible answer based on the experience of one of the authors:*

Last year I went to California. I made all the travel arrangements myself over the internet so it was cheaper than using a travel agent. I got a charter flight and good budget accommodation in San Francisco for a few nights. Although it was a long, tiring journey from London, it was worth it. While in San Francisco, I took a day trip to the other side of the Bay, across the Golden Gate Bridge, and also went on a boat trip, which was fun. I had a smooth flight on the return journey but I was exhausted when I got home.

Unit 15

15.1 1 fell into; open 2 followed; covered 3 dense

15.2 A chain of **snow-covered** mountains runs down the east of the country. The Wassa River, the country's biggest, **winds/flows** slowly from the northern mountains to the sea. Even in summer it is a **bleak** landscape, with its dark, **rocky** mountains and its cold streams. But for me it is the **familiar** landscape of my childhood and I am happy that the government has decided to **protect** this environment. It is a dramatic **setting** which is **well** worth visiting for anyone who likes **spectacular** views.

15.3
1 took
2 turned; caught
3 sandy; stretched
4 blocks

15.4

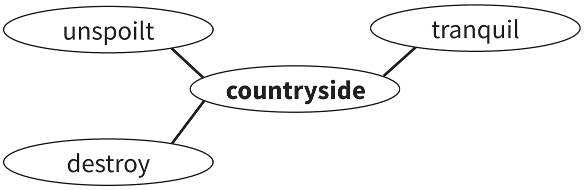

15.5
1 surrounding countryside
2 dominates the landscape; panoramic view
3 secluded beaches
4 breathtaking scenery
5 uninterrupted views

Unit 16

16.1
1 high-rise flats
2 a tree-lined avenue
3 a city skyline
4 quaint old buildings

16.2

positive +	**negative –**
relaxed atmosphere	over-priced restaurants
lively bar	urban wasteland
imposing building	no-go area
fashionable club	shanty town
	run-down buildings

16.3
1 the incessant roar of the traffic
2 (the volume of) traffic
3 an over-priced restaurant
4 a shanty town
5 a conservation area
6 a pricey restaurant
7 high-rise flats
8 quaint

16.4
1 It is a sprawling city covering an enormous area.
2 It is full of upmarket shops, which are too expensive for me.
3 There was bumper-to-bumper traffic all the way to the airport.
4 I get asthma from the terrible exhaust fumes in the city centre.
5 I live in a residential area but work in the city centre.
6 Some of the more deprived areas are not far from the city centre.
7 The main street in town runs from the castle to the river.
8 The main street is lined with shops and cafés.
9 On the outskirts are some industrial zones and some large supermarkets.
10 The streets were strewn with litter.

Unit 17

17.1 These collocations clearly describe negative aspects of character:
a selfish streak
bear a grudge
make a fool out of someone
hurt someone's feelings

These collocations may describe negative aspects of character – it depends on your point of view:
lose your temper
painfully shy
snap decisions
brutally honest

17.2

1 I know that I **have** a tendency to **bear** a grudge, but I just can't forget something bad a friend did to me recently. She has a selfish **streak** and doesn't care sometimes how much she **hurts** my feelings. I am finding it increasingly hard to **keep** my temper with her. But perhaps it might be better to **lose** my temper and let her know how I really feel?
2 I have always tried to **put** others first and not to think of myself. I believe you should not lose your **patience** with your friends, but if someone seems to enjoy **making** a fool out of you in front of other people, do those rules of friendship still apply?
3 I'm a little shy, though not **painfully** shy, but sometimes I think I **give** the impression that I'm unfriendly. How can I convince people that I'm good **company** and worth getting to know?
4 Should I talk about personal matters to my closest colleague at work? She is not very good at **keeping** secrets and she has a very **vivid** imagination. She always promises not to tell other people, but I'm not sure she always **keeps** her word.
5 My boyfriend has a really friendly, **outgoing** personality and a great **sense** of humour. He's **highly** intelligent and has a **razor**-sharp mind. The perfect man. We've been together now for a year, and I like him a lot, but don't love him any more. Should I be **brutally** honest with him and tell him?
6 I think a friend is destroying himself with drugs. I feel a **sense** of responsibility towards him. He has always been **fiercely** loyal to me in good and bad times, which is a wonderful **aspect** of his personality. I feel I ought to contact the police or social services, but I don't want to make a **snap** decision which I'll regret later.

17.3

1 B: Yes, he's found it hard **to come to terms** with his new situation.
2 B: No, it's true. He just can't **take a joke**, can he?
3 B: Yes, it certainly **revealed her true character**.
4 B: Yes, she always **sets high standards for herself**.
5 B: Well, two-year-olds often **throw tantrums**.

17.4 Other collocations you might find are:
1 to give your word; a man or woman of his or her word
2 to have a bad/foul temper; to have a sweet temper; to control your temper; tempers got frayed
3 sense of duty; sense of honour; sense of fun

Unit 18

18.1

'fat' words	**'thin' words**
portly	lanky
dumpy	slender
chubby	slim

1 slender, slim
2 lanky
3 chubby
4 portly
5 dumpy

18.2
bushy eyebrows
oval face
striking resemblance
broad shoulders
droopy moustache
chubby cheeks
dishevelled hair

18.3
1 immaculately groomed
2 jet-black
3 shoulder-length
4 lovely complexion
5 striking appearance
6 slim/slender waist
7 portly gentleman
8 youthful appearance
9 gone
10 go

18.4
1 fair; dark
2 upturned; straight
3 round/pointed; pointed/round
4 coarse; sleek

Unit 19

19.1
1 extended
2 confirmed
3 distant
4 close-knit
5 dysfunctional
6 late
7 broken

19.2 James and I are hoping to **start** a family soon. We both want to **have** lots of children. Ideally, I'd like to have my first baby next year, when I'll be 32. My sister is **expecting** a baby now. It's **due** next month. She's going to be a **single** parent and it'll be hard for her to **bring up** / **raise** a child on her own.

19.3
1 apply for custody
2 get a divorce
3 estranged wife
4 nuclear family
5 provide for your family
6 distant cousin
7 set up home
8 trial separation

19.4 *Possible answers:*
1 Just my husband and son.
2 No, I don't know much at all about my distant relatives.
3 In a small flat in London.
4 A stable home, where there are not likely to be sudden or unpleasant changes. A *deprived home* is one where living conditions are extremely poor.
5 to be expecting a baby
6 Yes, they can. A respectable family is one that outwardly conforms to social norms, but within its own private world, it may be dysfunctional.
7 ex-
8 grant custody

19.5 If possible, ask your teacher or another good speaker of English to correct your paragraph for you.

Unit 20

20.1
1 make
2 have
3 striking
4 spoil
5 mutual
6 form
7 acquaintance
8 grew

20.2
special friends
make a commitment
accept a proposal
return someone's love
have an affair
keep in contact
lose contact
strike up a friendship
love at first sight

20.3

1 grow
2 to be/fall madly in love
3 accept a proposal
4 close friends
5 keep in touch with

20.4

The gaps can be filled in the following ways. The answers are, of course, private and personal!

1 sight
2 make
3 fell
4 life
5 returned
6 have

20.5

Possible collocations:

love
to make love
to love someone deeply
to send someone your love

friend
my best friend
an old friend
a childhood friend
a true friend

friendship
a lasting friendship
to hold out the hand of friendship
to value someone's friendship

relationship
a good relationship
to end a relationship
a family relationship

Unit 21

21.1

1 fully-furnished accommodation
2 short-let accommodation
3 a residential area
4 a studio flat
5 off-road parking
6 a fully-fitted kitchen

21.2

1 We want to turn our garage into a granny flat.
2 Harper has invited me to her house-warming party.
3 Next week I have to move out of my flat.
4 Xavier makes a business out of doing up old houses.
5 Our bedroom overlooks the garden.
6 Our house needs to be completely refurbished.
7 I hope that one day I'll have a place of my own.
8 The bank can help if you want to take out a mortgage.

21.3

1 We live on a busy road, but we're lucky because we have off-road **parking**.
2 Gemma has moved **out of** her old flat and has now got a new place in Walville Street.
3 We're building an **extension** to our house which will give us a bigger kitchen.
4 The flat is **fully** furnished, which is good because I have no furniture of my own.
5 She had to **take** out a big mortgage as the house was very expensive.
6 There is no **affordable** housing for young people in this area; prices are ridiculously high.
7 New people have **moved** into the house next door. I haven't met them yet.
8 It's a very **spacious** apartment with a huge living room and a big kitchen.
9 The flat is **available** to rent from the first of March onwards.
10 My brother and his wife live in a **draughty** old cottage.

21.4

Your dream home could be waiting for you at Highdale Cottages. All cottages **have a view of** the River Marn. Ideal for anyone seeking a **second home** in the area.
Telephone 3340251 for appointments to view.

21.5

1 … welcome her home.
2 … leave home / move out.
3 … feel at home.
4 … make yourself at home.
5 … feel homesick.

Unit 22

22.1

1 set menu
2 food additives
3 junk food
4 ready meals
5 fresh produce (*Fresh food* is also a possible collocation.)

22.2

1 Food additives
2 Junk food
3 ready meals
4 fresh produce
5 set menu

22.3

1 Scarlett
2 Michael
3 Logan
4 Bella
5 Layla
6 Connor

22.4

1 **Processed foods** may damage our health in the long term.
2 Some people always have three **decent meals** a day, but I prefer a **hearty breakfast** and then a **light meal** around midday and a more **substantial meal** in the evening.
3 There are some overpriced restaurants in the city centre, but down at the beach, there are some nice, **reasonably priced** ones.
4 On my birthday my parents took me out for a **slap-up meal**. They wanted to go for a **gourmet meal** but I said I'd prefer something more ordinary.
5 Ice tea is a **refreshing drink** on a hot day, and is probably better for you than **soft drinks** such as cola or lemonade.
6 Let me take you out to dinner on your birthday. Or would you prefer a **home-cooked meal**? I could make dinner for you at my place.

Unit 23

23.1

Matthew: Have you downloaded that new e-book that has just **come out** about Ireland?
Camilla: No, I don't use my e-book reader app much and I don't visit websites with **book reviews**. What's it about?
Matthew: Well, it **deals with** the Irish War of Independence. It's very authentic and it manages to **capture the atmosphere** of Ireland at the beginning of the 20th century.
Camilla: Is it just historical facts, then?
Matthew: No, the **central characters** are two brothers who have different opinions about the war and this divides their family. In the **opening chapters** they're happy and do everything together, but by the **closing chapter** they have become enemies.
Camilla: Mm, it sounds a bit depressing to me.
Matthew: Well, it certainly doesn't **have a happy ending**, but I liked it, and it's **highly recommended** by all the critics.
Camilla: So, a book with a pleasant **beginning** and a sad **end(ing)**. Not for me, I'm afraid. I prefer the opposite.

23.2

Across	Down
3 absorbed	1 cameo
5 engrossed	2 nominated
6 stage	4 effects
7 lead	

23.3

full house
bedtime reading
box-office hit
big screen
female lead

23.4

1 film
2 audiobook / e-book reader app
3 book/magazine/article
4 reading

Unit 24

24.1

1 The band's last album was a **massive/big** hit.
2 There are some great **up-tempo** numbers on this new album.
3 The band has a **huge** following of dedicated fans.
4 Music was **blasting out from** the hi-fi when I entered the house.
5 Maria Plurosa gave a **virtuoso** performance of Heder's violin concerto last night.

24.2

1	~~likers~~	lovers	5	~~comprise~~	feature
2	~~published~~	released	6	~~control~~	capture
3	~~got solo~~	went solo	7	~~living~~	live
4	~~inheritance~~	heritage	8	~~makes a~~	goes on

24.3

1 background music
2 easy listening
3 a pop idol
4 a rap artist
5 to tune an instrument
6 to strum (a guitar)

24.4

1 adoring
2 performance
3 catchy
4 take up
5 haunting
6 talent

Unit 25

25.1

You can **do** judo!
You can **play** badminton!
You can **go** swimming!
You can **do** weight lifting!
You can **do** circuit training!
You can **play** table tennis!
You can **go** skateboarding!
You can even **play** darts!
In fact, you can **do/play** almost any sport you can think of.

25.2

personal best
blow a whistle
bring on a substitute
fail a drugs test
enter a competition
set a record
achieve your ambitions
train hard
enhance your performance
take the lead (*take a drugs test* is also possible)

25.3

Hi José,

Do you fancy coming on a sporting weekend with me next month? It sounds great – would make a change from playing computer games. You can **do** lots of different activities. You could even **go** fishing, I think. You can't go skiing at this time of year but you can **go** water skiing, if you like. Everyone has to **do** general exercises first thing in the morning and then you can **do/play** whatever sport you like, more or less. I've never **played** badminton so I think I'm going to do that. Then in the afternoon I'm looking forward to the chance to practise my tennis serve with their professional coach. Please try to come!

Giorgio

25.4

1 win
2 fight
3 deserved
4 tackling
5 possession
6 gained/got
7 stage/round
8 competition
9 set (possibly *beat*, if there was an existing record for a team with several family members in it)

Unit 26

26.1
1 sustain minor injuries
2 contract typhoid
3 have an attack of diarrhoea
4 develop breast cancer
5 be diagnosed with autism / breast cancer
6 catch a cold

26.2
Suggested answers:
1 **develop** arthritis
2 **had/suffered/experienced** moderate or severe **attacks of** diarrhoea
3 To **be diagnosed with** cancer
4 **contract** malaria
5 **sustained** serious injuries
6 **catch** pneumonia

26.3
1 serious; life-threatening
2 terminally
3 dull
4 balanced
5 splitting
6 trivial
7 stick; shape
8 incurable
9 taken; excruciating
10 healthy; vigorous
11 prescribed; alleviate
12 slight

Unit 27

27.1
1 d 2 c 3 a 4 f 5 b 6 e

27.2
1 hacked
2 blocking
3 crashed
4 back up
5 click
6 download

27.3
1 Steve
2 Elise
3 Saleema
4 Helena
5 Ethan
6 Ned

27.4
1 c
2 a
3 b
4 a

27.5
1 I made a note of the most useful websites.
2 You can search the database by keyword.
3 You need to evaluate information from websites critically. Or You need to critically evaluate information from websites.
4 We searched through some of the back issues.

Unit 28

28.1
I have three daughters. The oldest one **studied for / took** a degree in economics. She **obtained / was awarded** her bachelor's degree last year and is now **carrying out / conducting** some research on taxation laws in different countries. The second one is **taking / enrolled on** a course at Newcastle University. She's **studying/taking** history. She loves it, though she says she has to **write** far too

many assignments. My youngest daughter is still at school. She's **sitting/taking** her school-leaving exams in the summer. She'll go to university next year if she **receives / is given** good enough grades in her exams. She wants to **study/take** sociology and then **obtain/acquire** a social work qualification. My daughters are all **receiving** a much better education than I ever had.

28.2

1 do
2 take/sit
3 hand/give
4 giving/doing
5 withdraw
6 held
7 draft
8 assessment
9 go
10 provide/give/offer

28.3

1 passed
2 give
3 recognises
4 attend
5 complete
6 send
7 leave
8 keep

28.4

Possible answers:

1 Schoolchildren often take those exams at about 16 if they are leaving school as soon as possible, or at 18 if they are planning to go on to further or higher education.
2 about 6 years
3 It does not depend on how you are feeling on one specific day. You can see whether you are improving or not as you go along. You can spend more time doing your work.
4 Feedback on the clarity and accuracy of the presentation, on the student's pronunciation, on the student's use of visual aids.
5 It helps you revise what you did in class. It gives you a chance to do extra things that you don't have time to do in class.
6 Write the words down in context, and revise what you've written down every few days or weeks.
7 Further education is less academic than higher or tertiary education. Students studying, say, car mechanics or secretarial skills are in further education whereas students studying, say, to be lawyers or doctors are in higher or tertiary education.
8 You'd expect a final draft to be better than a first draft, to be better organised, to have fewer spelling mistakes, and so on.

Unit 29

29.1 1 c 2 e 3 g 4 f 5 a 6 b 7 d

29.2

Do you want to give great presentations which **have/make** an impact on the audience? Firstly, make sure that your slides are easy to **read**. Don't use an unusual or small font. Also, don't have too much text on each slide. Keep them **simple** so people can **follow** your argument. Use pictures or examples to **bring** your ideas to life. You can also use **pie** charts or bar **charts** to show figures or data more clearly. Finally, repeat your **key** points several times to make sure the audience has understood your message.

29.3

1 John
2 Rory
3 Amelia
4 Fiona
5 Jason
6 Isabel

29.4

prepare a presentation
tone of voice
breathe deeply
target audience
hand gestures
speak clearly

29.5

1 hand gestures
2 tone of voice
3 target audience
4 breathe deeply
5 prepare a presentation
6 speak clearly

Unit 30

30.1

1 work
2 career
3 career
4 job
5 work
6 career
7 job
8 career; job; career

30.2 *Suggested answer:*

applicant	1–3	reasons
Kevin Marsh	3	Too young, does not have any experience
Katharina Bauer	1	Enough experience, right qualifications, has worked in a team, short notice
Nuala Riley	2	Wrong kind of experience, long period of notice, person needed immediately

30.3

1 She has set some difficult targets for us all.
2 We're making preparations for the sales conference.
3 I always keep my appointments.
4 Kate will take the minutes at the meeting.
5 I have to give a presentation to my colleagues.
6 He never achieved his goals in his career.
7 He fielded my phone calls while I took time off.

30.4

dead-end job – a job that has few prospects of leading somewhere interesting or successful
glittering career – an impressive career, one that is admired by many people
career spanning – a career covering a specified and notably long period of time
lucrative job – a job where the person earns a lot of money for doing the work
rewarding job – a job where the person gets a lot of personal satisfaction – emotional rather than financial – from doing the work

Unit 31

31.1

1 float
2 launch
3 make
4 go
5 go
6 go
7 carry out
8 go
9 set
10 make

31.2 1 d 2 b 3 f 4 a 5 c 6 e

31.3

1 win, stiff
2 run
3 doing
4 turnover
5 balance
6 bid

31.4

1 runs
2 up
3 does
4 made
5 figures
6 business
7 won
8 competition
9 put
10 rival
11 done/struck
12 create
13 secret
14 service

Unit 32

32.1 You may be able to justify other answers than those offered here.

1 **Groundbreaking research**, **makes a significant contribution to**, **powerful arguments** and **shape our thinking** all suggest that the writer admires Georgescu's work.
2 **Strenuously defends** and **come under attack** both suggest that Partridge's work has been criticised.
3 **Gives an account of**, **provides evidence** and **concise summary** all suggest that Marina Kass presents facts.
4 **Establish a connection** and **significant trends** both suggest that Nathan Peel is interested in analysing social statistics.

32.2

1 The example of Mrs Brown **is/provides a clear illustration** of the need for better medical services in the area.
2 A doctoral thesis must always **acknowledge its sources**.
3 Dr Kahn's results offer/provide **irrefutable proof** that our theory is correct.
4 The article begins **with a concise summary of** the background to the research project.
5 The book **gives an interesting account of** the life of Marx as a young man.
6 Janet's theory has **come under attack** recently in a number of journals.

32.3 *Suggested answers:*

groundbreaking research
makes a significant contribution to
powerful arguments
shape our thinking
strenuously defends
played a central role
goes into great detail
concise summary
irrefutable proof
significant trends

32.4

1 play a part
2 set out an argument
3 convinced by someone's argument
4 come under attack
5 make a contribution
6 carry out a study
7 go into detail
8 shape people's thinking

32.5

1 powerful
2 supporting
3 tendency
4 challenge
5 groundbreaking
6 shape

32.6 *Possible answers – there are many other ways of completing this table:*

verb	adjective	noun
to publish	*an outstanding*	article
to carry out	original	research
to conduct	a controlled	experiment
to develop	a coherent	theory
to undertake	a comprehensive	survey

Unit 33

33.1
1 fall
2 distinction
3 take
4 raise
5 making
6 case
7 touch

33.2
1 assess
2 convincingly
3 draw
4 lend
5 forward
6 hold
7 draw
8 lay
9 profoundly
10 draw

33.3
1 presents
2 suggests
3 adopts
4 states
5 briefly
6 draws
7 hold
8 raises

33.4 Kerr takes **up** a controversial position in his latest article. He **puts** forward the argument that differences in behaviour between the sexes can be explained totally by the genes. He attempts to **make** a case for educating boys and girls separately in their primary school years. He argues, occasionally **convincingly**, that both sexes would benefit from this. He **draws** attention to recent research which, he claims, **lends** support **to** his argument. However, he fails to **take** a number of important factors into consideration. He also **makes** no reference to the important work of Potter and Sinclair in this field. I am sure that I will not be alone in disagreeing **profoundly** with many of his conclusions.

Over to you
Possible collocations are:
revolutionary theory, dismiss/disprove someone's theory
groundbreaking research, a major research project
present one's argument, a powerful argument

Unit 34

34.1
1 obey/observe
2 observe/obey
3 break
4 respect
5 act
6 passing/introducing
7 introducing/passing
8 upholding/enforcing
9 enforcing/upholding

34.2
1 The rules apply to all students in the college.
2 The rules prohibit the use of mobile phones in class.
3 The rules allow students to book college guestrooms at weekends.
4 The regulations stipulate that coursework must be handed in on time.
5 Most students follow the rules without too many complaints.
6 The authorities bent the rules to allow Mary to submit her coursework a little late.
7 All students must comply with the regulations.

34.3
1 e) Bill Sikes robs a bank.
2 g) The police carry out an investigation.
3 b) Bill Sikes goes on trial.
4 a) A number of witnesses appear in court.
5 f) The jury reaches its verdict.
6 c) Bill Sikes is found guilty.
7 d) Bill Sikes is severely punished.

34.4
1 to win his or her case
2 a fair trial
3 carry out an investigation
4 They may face the death penalty.

5 It might act as a deterrent.
6 reach a verdict
7 harsh punishments/sentences
8 a heavy fine

34.5
1 Everyone must comply with these regulations.
2 These rules apply to all citizens.
3 The jury reached a verdict of guilty.
4 The police are carrying out an investigation into the bank robbery.
5 Our company always acts within the law.
6 The rules do not allow students to eat and drink in the classrooms.

Unit 35

35.1
1 a young/juvenile offender
2 a convicted criminal
3 a hardened criminal
4 to serve a sentence
5 to commit a crime / an offence
6 a political prisoner
7 a common criminal
8 a criminal record

35.2
1 b
2 f
3 e
4 c
5 a
6 d

35.3
1 committed
2 breaking
3 stealing
4 offenders
5 spate
6 tackle/combat
7 fight
8 juvenile

35.4
1 Worried, because it would mean that a lot of crimes were currently being committed in the area.
2 A crime that is not too serious, for example, small-scale shoplifting or putting graffiti on public places.
3 They are putting a lot of time and money into solving serious crime.
4 combat
5 a crime in which innocent people are killed for political purposes
6 robberies – *a spate of* is used to describe a series of negative events
7 For example breaking windows, breaking down fences, slashing car tyres, etc.

Unit 36

36.1

Monday	latest
Tuesday	make
Wednesday	headline/front-page
Thursday	leaked
Friday	hit; ran
Saturday	front-page
Sunday	hold

36.2

Across	**Down**
1 down	2 plans
4 go	3 flick
6 close	5 item
7 break	

36.3

1 turn; keep; comes
2 seized; taken
3 struck; caught
4 hold; interested
5 top; controversial
6 launched

Unit 37

37.1

1 Emilia
2 Hannah
3 Lauren
4 Patrick
5 Anthony

37.2

1 soared
2 ridiculous price
3 reasonably priced
4 rock-bottom/ridiculous
5 went; go up / rise

37.3

1 make
2 making; steady
3 tight
4 going; short
5 raise
6 small; tied up
7 big; seriously

Unit 38

38.1

1 go; avert
2 raged; opened
3 fight
4 join(ed); horrors

38.2

1 The war between the two countries **broke out** in 1983 after a dispute over territory in the northern province. At first there were just **minor incidents** but it soon turned into **all-out war**. The war ended after **a decisive battle** in 1987.
2 There was **fierce fighting** in the capital city yesterday. United Nations **peacekeeping forces** are expected to enter the city as soon as **a ceasefire is called**.
3 Forces sent in to **keep the peace** in the troubled region of the island had to retreat after they came **within (firing) range** of rebel artillery.
4 The military forces today **declared war** against the guerillas.
5 Armed troops were sent in to **restore order** after the riots and violence of last week.
6 Even though the two sides **signed a peace treaty** / **peace agreement** last July, fighting has started again and hopes for **a lasting peace** are fading.
7 As more of our soldiers were killed or **taken prisoner**, **peace activists** organised demonstrations against the unpopular war.
8 Representatives of the two sides are meeting in Zurich in an attempt to **bring about peace** in the troubled region. It is hoped that they will **negotiate a peace agreement** which both governments can accept.

38.3

1 … a running battle …
2 … losing the battle …
3 … put up a heroic fight …
4 … offered no resistance …
5 … fighting for (her) life …

38.4

Possible answers:

army – an army advances, marches, retreats; to mobilise an army; a victorious army
soldier – veteran soldier; rank-and-file soldier; a wounded soldier; to serve as a soldier
battle – a fierce battle; a battle of words; a battle of wits; to go into battle; to win/lose a battle
weapon – deadly weapon; chemical weapon; biological weapon; to carry a weapon
to fight – to fight bravely; to fight bitterly; to fight hard
peace – to make peace; the peace process; a peace conference; to take part in a peace demonstration

Unit 39

39.1
1 seekers
2 layer
3 breed
4 gases
5 opportunity
6 sleep
7 death
8 need
9 lift
10 line

39.2
1 c 2 e 3 a 4 d 5 b

39.3
1 green
2 devastated
3 debt
4 developing
5 margins
6 solution
7 alleviate/eradicate

39.4
Possible answers
1 People may suffer from famine. Prices for food will rise.
2 petrol, diesel, coal
3 flood, earthquake, volcanic eruption, forest fire
4 It might destroy people's homes and workplaces, damage or destroy crops, destroy roads and therefore make the area inaccessible, cause diseases because of lack of clean water.
5 They could send relief teams, send essential supplies, food, medicines, etc.
6 ecological issues
7 Climate change leading to the melting of the polar ice caps.
8 Because there are more and more cars and other vehicles emitting exhaust fumes.

Unit 40

40.1
1 spare/leisure/free
2 spend
3 take
4 Make
5 killing
6 waste
7 save
8 bang/dead/right
9 tell

40.2
1 … ran out of time.
2 … worth your while.
3 … from dawn till dusk.
4 … what the future holds …
5 Did you have a good time …
6 I didn’t have time to do the ironing …

40.3
1 Sadie: Well, we’d better all **set our alarms**.
2 Elena: Yes. It was fantastic. I had **the time of my life**.
3 Mark: Yes, I think you learn to respect them more as **time goes by**.
4 Mary: Yes. I’ll try to come and see you in the **not too distant future**.
5 Carter: Yes. I didn’t wake up. The alarm didn’t **go off**.
6 Aurora: Yes, she always stays up working until **the small hours**.

40.4
Possible answers – you may well find other good collocations for these words:

day
day breaks
day dawns
at the end of the day
the good old days
in this day and age

clock
a clock strikes
a clock chimes
to watch the clock
put the clock back/forward
stop the clock

hour
last an hour
with every passing hour
to work anti-social hours
to work regular hours
to sleep for eight solid hours

minute
minutes tick by
can you spare a minute
do you have a minute
hold on a minute
the minute something happens

Unit 41

41.1

1 babbling
2 singing
3 patter
4 an eerie
5 broken
6 rang

41.2

1 L
2 S
3 L
4 S
5 L
6 L
7 L
8 L
9 S
10 S
11 S
12 S

41.3

1 e
2 g
3 a
4 h
5 b
6 d
7 f
8 c

41.4

1 A person falling out of bed onto a carpeted floor in the room above you – something metal on stone would make a sharp noise rather than a dull thud.
2 Primary schoolchildren – as *shrill* suggests high-pitched voices.
3 Big waves – as *crashing* suggests a big sound.
4 From a bird.
5 A group of motorbikes roaring past. A large waterfall will make a loud noise but it won't be as sudden or as unpleasant as it would need to be in order to be called ear-splitting.

Unit 42

42.1

1 neighbouring
2 cover; considerable
3 far; off
4 walking; close

42.2

Although we had a ~~little~~ increase in our pay last month, we still earn very ~~small~~ wages. We have not had a ~~big~~ deal of help from the union, and ~~tall~~ prices mean that life is not easy. Luckily, we only have a ~~small~~ level of inflation at the moment.	small low great high low

42.3

1 **major** difficulties
2 **high** heels
3 on a **large** scale
4 **high** interest rates
5 **slim** book
6 **large** quantities
7 **little** brother
8 **taller** than

42.4

1 painfully
2 No (a fat book, or a plump person)
3 high tide
4 tall
5 little
6 deal
7 small
8 No. We'd say, 'Could you help me do some little things before dinner?'
9 You'd prefer low interest rates (not high interest rates) because then you wouldn't need to pay so much extra money back to the bank.

Unit 43

43.1

1 bright colours; subdued colours
2 colours go
3 colour ran
4 colours clash
5 touch of colour
6 colour fades

43.2

1 a candle flickers
2 a beam of light
3 pitch dark
4 a faint glow
5 a star twinkles
6 pale green
7 green issues
8 a grey area
9 cast a shadow
10 blacken someone's name

43.3

1 The police are looking for someone who can **shed light on** how the accident happened.
2 He has always been **under the shadow of** his world-famous father.
3 In the east the sky **was tinged with gold**.
4 Joe's crazy behaviour certainly **adds colour to** our dull office.
5 **The glare of the sun** can make driving difficult at this time of day.
6 She walked until the fire was just a **pinpoint of light** in the distance.
7 **It was growing dark** and Jill began to feel a little afraid.
8 The newspapers seem to be trying to **blacken** the minister's **name**.

43.4

1 A draught, the wind or some other movement of air.
2 A ray of sunlight.
3 The night. If you want to say that someone's hair is very black, you would call it jet black.
4 Far away, because *a faint glow* means that the light is not strong.
5 *A star shines* suggests a more constant strong light, whereas *a star twinkles* suggests a bright light in the distance that gives the illusion of moving a little.
6 Issues concerned with conservation or the environment.
7 You may feel confused, it is not a clear-cut issue, there is no obvious right answer.
8 Something sad or worrying – an illness perhaps or a war.
9 She has said something bad about him that he believes is harming his reputation.
10 It becomes livelier or more interesting.

Unit 44

44.1

1 a **firm/hard** pillow
2 **smooth** skin
3 **tough** lamb chops
4 **blunt** penknife
5 **smooth/calm**
6 **greasy** hair
7 **oily** skin (also **greasy** skin)
8 **bumpy** flight

44.2

Suggested answers:

1 Assistant: Yes. You can either have **matt** or **gloss** (finish).
2 Riley: Yes. And the ice on the lake has already **melted**.
3 Dylan: I'm afraid it has **gone hard**.
4 Luna: Yes, I think attitudes **are hardening / have hardened / are beginning to harden / have begun to harden**.
5 Kate: Mm. Yes. They are rather old. They're beginning **to go soft**.

44.3

Across

3 creamy
4 coarse
5 thaw
6 sticky

Down

1 velvety
2 voices

44.4 These are the collocations with the strongest positive or negative associations. You may be able to justify including others in your selection.

positive collocations	**negative collocations**
smooth skin	rough skin
smooth road/flight	greasy hair
tender meat	bumpy road/flight
creamy texture	tough meat
go smoothly	sharp tongue
glossy hair	coarse jokes
	greasy hands
	sticky fingers
	sticky situation

Unit 45

45.1
1 I think caviar must be an acquired taste – I don't like it very much.
2 The delicious aroma of fresh coffee wafted in from the kitchen.
3 The park was spoilt by the noxious fumes from the factory behind it.
4 We just loved the fragrant perfume of the blossom on the trees.
5 I particularly enjoy the subtle flavours that herbs give to food.
6 Smell the bottle and tell me if the milk is sour or OK to drink still.
7 I usually love coffee but this coffee is just too bitter for my taste.
8 It must be the wet wood causing such acrid smoke from the bonfire.

45.2

positive	**negative**
appetising aroma	acrid smoke
fragrant perfume	foul-smelling chemicals
fresh scent	noxious fumes
	overpowering stink
	revolting stench

45.3
1 probably a lot, or at least as much as he can
2 a light smell
a pleasant smell
3 the smell of sweat
4 Just a little – probably to check that it is all right and doesn't, for example, need more salt.
5 No, not at all.
It would have seemed even worse.
6 get the general idea
7 something that has happened
8 They both like a variety of things (e.g. books, films, music, clothes, holidays), not just food.

Unit 46

46.1
1 **a tiny/minute** amount
2 **an enormous** amount
3 **a significant** number
4 **a surprising** number
5 **a considerable/substantial** number

46.2
1 odd
2 currency
3 even
4 comes
5 falling

46.3
1 widespread
2 drop/fall/decline
3 rise
4 rare
5 widespread
6 keep
7 keep
8 rise
9 rare
10 widespread
11 decline/fall
12 rise

46.4 *Possible answers:*
Sales increased steadily/gradually between January and April.
Sales rose sharply/steeply in May.
Sales remained constant between May and August.
Sales fell sharply/steeply in September. / In September there was a dramatic fall in sales.
There was a dramatic rise in sales in November.

Unit 47

47.1
1 quick
2 hasty
3 prompt
4 swift
5 rapid
6 fast
7 brisk
8 speedy

47.2
1 picked
2 moving
3 standstill
4 make
5 painfully
6 leisurely
7 took
8 lost
9 lost
10 took

47.3
1 … the **fast** train …
2 … to **steer** the conversation …
3 … **turn** the clock upside down …
4 … in slow **motion**.
5 … **go** astray.
6 … a **quick** lunch …
7 … in **an unhurried** manner.
8 … at **breakneck** speed …
9 … a **top** speed of …

Unit 48

48.1
1 made
2 break
3 habit
4 made
5 slight
6 way
7 adopt

48.2
1 … change the subject.
2 … to change places/seats?
3 … changed my mind. …
4 … changing jobs?
5 … change our clothes …
6 … change the beds.

48.3
1 risen
2 exchanged
3 moving
4 become
5 raise
6 became; arose

Unit 49

49.1
1 … make a speech.
2 … gave me her word …
3 … get to the point.
4 I wish you luck …
5 … cracking/telling jokes.

49.2
1 You can borrow my camera – I'll **give** you instructions about how to use it.
2 I could **tell** you a lot of stories about what we used to do when we were kids.
3 That's enough about computers. I think it's time we **changed** the subject, don't you?
4 On the train I **struck** up a conversation with an interesting man from Japan.
5 I can't **speak** Japanese.
6 I'm afraid I really don't have time for a **lengthy** discussion on the matter.
7 The US President George Washington is famous for confessing after **telling** a lie.
8 I don't like your **tone** of voice – there's no need to be so aggressive.

49.3
1 chat
2 quick
3 ask
4 delicate
5 record
6 make
7 having

49.4
1 … the truth.
2 … the subject.
3 … enough hints.
4 … observations.
5 … ignorance.
6 … the conversation.
7 … profusely.
8 … bitterly.
9 … politely.
10 … softly.
11 … in the conversation.
12 … conversation.

Unit 50

50.1
1 on foot; go; brisk; go for
2 going; take; took
3 pacing; go

50.2
1 False – *Cautiously* means slowly and with great care.
2 False – A leisurely stroll is a slow, relaxed walk.
3 True
4 True
5 False – *Briskly* means quite quickly.

50.3
1 run into / run up against
2 great strides
3 walked it
4 walks of life
5 rush headlong
6 an easy walk

50.4
Possible collocations include:
go for a run
break into a run [suddenly start running]
make a run for [escape]
run blindly
run headlong
run a business
(businesses) run efficiently
(things) run smoothly
(buses, trains) run regularly

Unit 51

51.1
1 an early start
2 a promising start
3 a perfect end
4 got off to a good start

51.2
1 It was such a **close** finish that no one was quite sure who had won.
2 I've just got to put the **finishing** touches to my painting and then you can see it.
3 I expect the meeting will **come** to an end at about 5.30. (**draw to a close** is also possible)
4 Everyone is here, so I think we should **make** a start now.
5 We all hope that the negotiations will succeed in **bringing** the strike to an end.
6 Email marked the **beginning** of the end for the fax machine.
7 Our journey **ended** – as it had begun – in Cairo.
8 Have you heard yet what the **end** result of the talks was?

51.3
1 I hope the meeting will soon draw to a close.
2 The conference got off to a good start with an excellent reception in the Town Hall.
3 As Dan didn't know a single word of Japanese he was put in an absolute beginners' class.
4 The scandal brought an abrupt end to Jackson's career as a politician. *or* The scandal brought Jackson's career as a politician to an abrupt end.
5 Alberto Contador won the cycle race in a nail-biting finish.

51.4
1 c 2 d 3 e 4 b 5 f 6 a

Unit 52

52.1

1 won
2 fruits
3 brilliant/great
4 made
5 passed
6 gained
7 crowning
8 brings
9 made
10 guaranteed
11 remarkable
12 take
13 made
14 effective
15 have
16 grasp
17 come
18 dramatic

52.2

1 Our plans went badly wrong.
2 My hopes were dashed when I heard the news.
3 After the horse threw me I lost my nerve and couldn't get back on.
4 The scheme is doomed to failure.
5 He failed his final exams.
6 Our political campaign failed miserably.
7 His plans are a recipe for disaster.
8 A year later he went out of business.
9 She seemed to miss the point completely.
10 His latest novel was a complete flop.

52.3

I was always a dismal **failure** at school. I completely **missed** the point of maths and I failed **miserably** at most other subjects. Only the drama teacher managed to bring **out** the best in me and gave me a part in the school play. However, I lost my **nerve** on the day of the performance and my hopes of a career on the stage were **dashed**.

Unit 53

53.1

1 attracted
2 caused
3 produce
4 brought about
5 sparked off

53.2

1 sensation
2 major
3 uproar
4 consequences
5 unexpected
6 positive
7 affected
8 caused
9 had

53.3

1 The enquiry aims to establish what the immediate cause of the fire was.
2 Henry's grandmother had a considerable influence on his choice of career.
3 The changes had some unforeseen results which no one could have predicted.
4 Criticising your previous boss doesn't create a good impression at a job interview.
5 The parents did all they could to minimise the impact of the tragedy on their children.
6 What happens in childhood affects the development of personality very deeply.
7 Management is trying to effect some changes in the way the college is structured.
8 The TV coverage they have received has strengthened the impact of the new measures.
9 The government should do something about the underlying causes of crime.
10 The riots were an inevitable result of the huge tax rises.

Over to you
Possible collocations are:
influence – to exert an influence, a considerable influence, a slight influence, a strong influence
effect – to assess the effect, the main effect, short-term/long-term effects
impact – to exaggerate the impact, fundamental impact, international impact
consequences – accept/take the consequences, adverse consequences, likely consequences
There are, however, many other good collocations for these words that you might find.

Unit 54

54.1

1 Well, my **earliest** memory is of sitting in our garden on my mother's lap. I **vaguely** remember that there was a cat or dog there too, but I can't remember much else.
2 I used to have a **good** memory when I was young, but I'm 82 now, and as you get older your **long-term** memory is very clear, but your **short-term** memory is less good. Sometimes I can't remember what happened yesterday. But I can **distinctly/vividly** remember my first day at school as a child.
3 My mother sometimes tells me things I did or said when I was little but which I've **completely/clean** forgotten. One embarrassing memory which I'd rather **blot** out is when I took some scissors and cut my own hair. It looked awful!
4 Seeing schoolchildren often **stirs** up all kinds of memories for me. I wasn't happy at school and I have some **painful** memories of being forced to do sports, which I hated. Sometimes, when I hear certain songs, memories come **flooding** back.

54.2

1 blank
2 rightly
3 clue
4 a memorable / an unforgettable

54.3

1 impression
2 sensed
3 intuition
4 over-sensitive
5 numb
6 sensitive
7 acute
8 sensible

54.4

1 distinctly
2 had
3 go
4 trust
5 blot out

Unit 55

55.1

agree	to differ
enter	into an argument
share	an opinion
settle	our differences
see	someone's point
come	to a compromise
be	in agreement
appreciate	others' points of view

55.2

reaching agreement	disagreeing
settle a dispute	a controversy rages
come to a compromise	a head-on clash
	a heated argument
	differences exist

55.3

1 I (can) agree with what you say up to a point.
2 I entirely agree with you. / I am entirely in agreement with you.
3 The committee members reached a unanimous agreement.
4 Differences (of opinion) will always arise even between friends.
5 James and Ben strongly disagreed over the question of climate change.
6 The project has been delayed because of a conflict of opinion / because of conflicting opinions among the members of the committee.
7 I find it difficult to go along with such an idea.
8 We fundamentally disagree / disagree fundamentally about most things.

55.4
1 a heated argument
2 a head-on clash, a conflict of opinion
3 controversy rages
4 Because *bitter* usually refers to an unpleasant taste and for most people disagreements are unpleasant and can even be said to leave an unpleasant taste in your mouth.
5 see someone's point

Unit 56

56.1
1 share
2 matter
3 reason
4 belief
5 difference
6 poles
7 firmly
8 believer
9 sneaking

56.2 I **hope** we can / I **wish** we **could** solve a big problem we have regarding our student committee. Opinions are **divided** about how to approach the issue and, naturally, some members have very **strong** opinions. Some of their views are based on their **unshakeable** belief that they are always right and that no one can challenge their **set** of beliefs. My own **considered** opinion is that we should have new elections, but I know that others have quite a different **opinion**.

56.3

	verb	noun
1	make	assumptions
2	colour	somebody's judgement
3	trust	
4	attach	importance to
5	cast	doubt on
6	have	serious misgivings
		doubts

Possible sentences:
1 It is wrong to make assumptions about people before you really get to know them.
2 Recent events have coloured his judgement and he cannot see things objectively any more.
3 I would never trust the judgement of someone who had no experience of the matter.
4 I don't attach much importance to her comments; she knows nothing about the subject.
5 The new statistics cast doubt on the claim that using mobile phones does not damage children's health.
6 I have serious misgivings about the new scheme. I don't think it will work.
Professor Wiseman has doubts about the accuracy of the results of Professor Dumbssort's experiment.

56.4
poles apart
sneaking suspicion
strong opinions
popular belief
cast doubt
firmly believe
think hard

Unit 57

57.1

1 B: Yes, you can't go on putting **off (making)** the decision for ever.
2 B: Yes, I'm glad it was a **unanimous** decision.
3 B: Yes, I think it's best if we all **reserve** judgement till we see the results.
4 B: Mm, it's obvious you're having **second** thoughts.
5 B: Yes, I definitely detected a **slight** hesitation on his part, you're right.

57.2

1 sound
2 wise
3 weigh
4 arrive
5 degree
6 defend
7 tough
8 take
9 give
10 come

57.3

1 Lucas 2 Penelope 3 Ava 4 Matthias 5 Amelia 6 Riley

Unit 58

58.1

1 leaked document
2 long-running battle
3 heavy/broad hints
4 issue a statement
5 serious allegations
6 clearly implied / dropped heavy/broad hints as to

58.2

1 forward 2 rejects 3 makes 4 acknowledged 5 back 6 substantiate

58.3

1 denied 2 refuse 3 rejects 4 denied 5 refuse

58.4

1 We disclaim responsibility for valuables that are not left in the hotel safe.
2 The pop star insisted that the claims made against him were unfounded.
3 Jones's views run contrary to the facts.
4 The newspaper dropped (heavy/broad) hints about / as to who the actor's new partner was.
5 John denied the rumours about him.
6 Whatever idea I suggest, Daniel rejects it. *Or* Daniel rejects whatever idea I suggest.
7 I don't know what to do, as everyone keeps giving me contradictory advice.
8 The student is facing accusations of cheating in the exam.
9 In her new book the writer puts forward an interesting theory of art.
10 Recent research backs up McIntyre's theory.

Unit 59

59.1

1 In the survey most people expressed a clear/strong preference for coffee rather than tea.
2 Karl has a huge/strong aversion to people using mobile phones in restaurants.
3 The staff all have the highest/greatest regard for their managing director.
4 It's been a great/huge pleasure getting to know you.
5 Suzie has a genuine liking for cowboy films.
6 My parents have a deep/deep-rooted hatred for most modern architecture.
7 We get great enjoyment out of our weekends in the country.
8 Rex took an instant dislike to his new flatmate.

59.2

1 – 2 + 3 + 4 – 5 – 6 + 7 – 8 + 9 +

59.3

1 cater
2 strong
3 particular
4 give
5 warm
6 take
7 thought

59.4

Possible answers:

1 I like both, but I suppose it is a fantastice feeling when you give something and you can tell that the person you give it to really likes it.
2 I think I am more likely to take an intense dislike to a person than a place as my feelings in general – both liking and disliking – are stronger for people than places.
3 I normally go for an aisle seat because I like to be able to stretch my legs.
4 I don't have a singer who I could call my absolute favourite – I like a lot of different people, and who I want to listen to depends on my mood.

5 Hilary Benn, a British politician, has filled me with admiration over the last five years. I think he is principled and intelligent, which is not something that can be said about all politicians.
6 I take more pride in my work, if, by home, you mean the house that I live in. But if by home you mean family, then I take more pride in my home.
7 I feel great love for my husband, my son and my nephews.
8 I personally get more pleasure from reading.

Unit 60

60.1
1 standing
2 thunderous
3 acclaim
4 warmly
5 richly/justly
6 won
7 take
8 gives
9 singing
10 justly/richly
11 offer
12 round

60.2
1 T
2 F – If you have nothing but praise for someone, you praise them a lot and have no criticisms to make of them.
3 F – If you criticise someone roundly, you criticise them very strongly.
4 T
5 F – If you counter criticism, you criticise your critic back.
6 F – If someone gives their blessing to something, they say they are in favour of it.
7 T
8 T

60.3
1 He came in for a lot of criticism.
2 I thoroughly disapprove of how she responded to the criticism.
3 The judge severely condemned him / condemned him severely for lying.
4 I want to express my disapproval of her behaviour.
5 The critics were outspoken but he dismissed their criticisms.
6 His comments received universal condemnation.
7 We strenuously objected to the plan and were highly critical of it.
Or We were highly critical of the plan and strenuously objected to it.
8 I have always been a harsh critic of corrupt government.

60.4
This is the last exercise in this book. May we give you a pat on the **back** for getting to this point. Indeed, you **richly/justly** deserve a **big** clap. We have **nothing** but praise for you and would like to **offer** you our warm congratulations!

Index

have the **ability** to 52
abrupt end 51
absolute
  ~ beginner 51
  ~ favourite 59
absolutely
  ~ absurd 6
  ~ alone 6
  ~ appalled 6
  ~ convinced 6
  ~ devastated 6
  ~ exhausted 6
  ~ impossible 6
  ~ miserable 6
  ~ ridiculous 6
  ~ stupid 6
  ~ wrong 6
absorbed in a book 23
absolutely **absurd** 6
drug **abuse** 35
accept
  ~ an offer 3
  ~ someone's proposal 20
  fully ~ 58
access
  gain ~ 11
  have ~ to 2
  speedy ~ 47
have an **accident** 9
receive critical **acclaim** 60
accommodation
  budget ~ 14
  short-let ~ 21
  suitable ~ 21
give an **account** of 32
accusation
  deny an ~ 58
  face an ~ 58
accuse
  openly ~ 58
  wrongly ~ 58
dull **ache** 26
aches and pains 3
achieve
  ~ a personal best 25
  ~ success 11
  ~ your aims 11
  ~ your ambition 25
  ~ your goals 11, 30
achievement
  crowning ~ 52
  remarkable ~ 52
acknowledge your sources 32
widely **acknowledged** 58
casual **acquaintance** 20
acquire a qualification 28
acquired taste 45
acrid smoke 45
acrimonious divorce 19
act *verb*
  ~ as a deterrent 34
  ~ within the law 34
act *noun*
  ~ of terrorism 35
action
  army goes into ~ 38
  swift ~ 47
  take ~ 9
peace **activist** 38
do **activities** 25
acute
  ~ hearing 54
  ~ sense of smell 54
acutely
  ~ embarrassing 4
  ~ painful 26
add
  ~ colour to 43
  ~ an extension 21
food **additives** 22
address *noun*
  exchange addresses 48
address *verb*
  ~ someone politely 49
make an **adjustment** 48
fill someone with **admiration** 59
admire the view 15
keen **admirer** 59
adopt
  ~ an approach 48
  ~ a position 33
adoring fan 24
advantage
  gain an ~ 11
  take ~ of 9, 52
adverse effect 53
advice
  contradictory ~ 58
  piece of ~ 2
  take someone's ~ 57
strongly **advise** 57
aerobics
  do ~ 25
  go to ~ 25
have an **affair** 20
affect someone deeply 53
deeply **affected** 6
affordable housing 21
after-sales service 31
travel **agent** 14
take someone **ages** 40
agree
  ~ to differ 55
  ~ up to a point 55
  entirely ~ 55
  tend to ~ 55
  wholeheartedly ~ 55
agreement
  be in ~ 55
  in complete ~ 55
  negotiate a peace ~ 38
  unanimous ~ 55
have a great future **ahead** 40
AIDS
  be diagnosed with ~ 26
  develop ~ 26
ailment
  minor ~ 26
  trivial ~ 26
wander **aimlessly** 50
aim
achieve your **aims** 11
board an **aircraft** 5
light, **airy** bedrooms 21
aisle seat 14
alarm
  ~ goes off 40
  cause ~ 53
  cry of ~ 41
  set your ~ 40
album
  ~ features 24
  debut ~ 24
  release an ~ 24
alight from a bus 5
all-out war 38
all-time favourite 59
allegation
  deny an ~ 58
  make an ~ 58
  serious ~ 58
alleviate
  ~ pain 3
  ~ the pain 26
  ~ poverty 39
rules **allow** 34
almighty
  ~ bang 41
  ~ explosion 41
alone
  absolutely ~ 6
  leave someone ~ 56
  live ~ 10
  travel ~ 10
  utterly ~ 6
along
  go ~ with an idea 55
  go ~ with a view 55
make a slight **alteration** 48
have clothes **altered** 48
develop **Alzheimer's** disease 26
achieve your **ambition** 25
amount
  considerable ~ 46
  enormous ~ 46

large ~ 42
minute ~ 46
significant ~ 46
small ~ 42
substantial ~ 46
surprising ~ 46
tiny ~ 46
draw an **analogy** 33
ancient
~ history 10
~ monument 1
~ times 10
anger
mounting ~ 21
seething with ~ 21
surge of ~ 4
stride **angrily** 50
angry
become ~ 8
get ~ 8
answer
~ the phone 30
quick ~ 47
antique
~ furniture 10
~ jewellery 10
anti-virus software 27
cause **anxiety** 53
increasingly **anxious** 21
poles **apart** 56
newly-built **apartment** 21
apologise profusely 49
appalled
absolutely ~ 6
utterly ~ 6
appear in court 34
appearance
have a striking ~ 18
youthful ~ 18
appetite
healthy ~ 22
spoil your ~ 22
applause
round of ~ 60
thunderous ~ 60
application
send in an ~ 28
submit an ~ 28
apply
~ for custody of 19
~ for a job 30
regulations ~ to 34
rules ~ to 34
appointment
keep an ~ 30
make an ~ 30
appreciate someone's point of view 55
adopt an **approach** 48
approve
heartily ~ 60
warmly ~ 60
do **archery** 25
ardent fan 59
area
conservation ~ 16
deprived ~ 16
grey ~ 43
inner-city ~ 16
neighbouring ~ 42
no-go ~ 16
residential ~ 16, 21
argue
~ convincingly 33
~ strongly 6
argument
back up an ~ 58
enter into an ~ 55
follow your ~ 29
have an ~ 9
heated ~ 55
powerful ~ 32
put forward an ~ 33
set out an ~ 32
arise
differences ~ 55
problem arises 48
army
~ goes into action 38
join the ~ 38
distinctive **aroma** 45
throw money **around** 37
arouse feelings 21
arrange a meeting 30
arrangements
make ~ for 7
travel ~ 14
arrive
~ at a decision 57
~ at a total of 46
develop **arthritis** 26
rap **artist** 24
deeply **ashamed** 6
ask someone a favour 49
keep **asking** 46
aspect of someone's personality 17
assess
~ the significance of 33
continuous **assessment** 28
assignment
do an ~ 28
write an ~ 28
make an **assumption** 56
asthma
have an attack of ~ 26
suffer from ~ 26
go **astray** 47
asylum
~ seeker 39
political ~ 39
seek political ~ 39
do **athletics** 25
atmosphere
~ lightens 12
relaxed ~ 16
book captures (an ~) 23
film captures (an ~) 23
attach
~ importance to 56
open an **attachment** 27
attack
come under ~ 32
have a heart ~ 8
have an ~ of asthma 26
have an ~ of bronchitis 26
have an ~ of diarrhoea 26
have an ~ of hay fever 26
suffer a heart ~ 8
attend a lecture 28
attention
attract ~ 36
draw ~ to 33
hold their ~ 29
keep their ~ 29
pay ~ 9
attitude
~ hardens 44
~ softens 44
attract
~ attention 36
~ criticism 53
~ interest 53
~ support 53
auburn hair 18
audience
capture a wider ~ 24
connect with your ~ 29
be diagnosed with **autism** 26
download an **audiobook** 23
available
~ to rent 21
~ to start work 30
become ~ 48
avenue
~ runs 16
tree-lined ~ 16
aversion
huge ~ 59
strong ~ 59
avert war 38
win an **award** 11
awarded
be ~ a degree 28
be ~ a diploma 28
fully **aware** 4
create **awareness** 53

away match 25
pretty **awful** 5
axe jobs 5
babbling stream 41
baby
  ~ is due 19
  change the ~ 48
  expecting a ~ 19
  have a ~ 8, 19
confirmed **bachelor** 19
back
  ~ issues 27
  pat on the ~ 60
back up
  ~ an argument 58
  ~ your files 27
suffer from **backache** 26
background
  ~ music 24
  ~ noise 41
bad
  create a ~ impression 53
  give a book a ~ review 23
  give a film a ~ review 23
  leave a ~ taste in your mouth 45
  make a ~ impression 53
badly
  ~ need 5
  go ~ wrong 52
  let someone down ~ 21
play **badminton** 25
balance
  disturb the ecological ~ 39
  lose your ~ 47
balanced diet 26
go **bald** 8, 18
take possession of the **ball** 25
bang
  ~ on time 40
  almighty ~ 41
  loud ~ 41
river bursts its **banks** 13
go **bankrupt** 31
lively **bar** 16
play **baseball** 25
based
  ~ on a story 23
  evidence is ~ on 56
basement flat 21
run a **bath** 2
battle *noun*
  ~ rages 38
  decisive ~ 38
  hard legal ~ 34
  long-running ~ 58
  lose a ~ 38
  running ~ 38
  win a ~ 11
battle *verb*
  ~ against floods 5
beach
  ~ stretches 15
  secluded ~ 15
  sandy ~ 15
beam of light 43
bear
  ~ the cost 5
  ~ a grudge 17
  ~ a striking resemblance to 18
beat
  ~ an opponent 11
  ~ a team 11
narrowly **beaten** 25
beautifully written 23
become
  ~ angry 8
  ~ available 48
  ~ bored 8
  ~ depressed 8
  ~ excited 8
  ~ extinct 8
  ~ famous 1, 8
  ~ homeless 8
  ~ impatient 8
  ~ involved 8
  ~ popular 8
  ~ pregnant 8
  ~ successful 48
  ~ unpopular 8
  ~ upset 8
  ~ violent 8
bed
  firm ~ 44
  hard ~ 44
  soft ~ 44
light, airy **bedrooms** 21
change the **beds** 48
bedtime reading 23
absolute **beginner** 51
beginning
  ~ of a book 23
  ~ of a film 23
  mark the ~ of the end 51
universe **begins** 10
belief
  popular ~ 56
  unshakeable ~ 56
  set of beliefs 56
believe
  have reason to ~ 56
  firmly ~ 56
  strongly ~ 6
great **believer** in 56
bend *verb*
  ~ the rules 34
bend *noun*
  round a ~ 15
  sharp ~ 2
beneficial effect 53
generous **benefits** 30
best
  achieve a personal ~ 25
  bring out the ~ 52
  do your ~ 7
put in a **bid** 31
big
  ~ brother 42
  ~ decision 10, 57
  ~ hit 24
  ~ meal 1
  ~ money 37
  ~ problem 10
  ~ time 40
  the ~ screen 23
  give someone a ~ clap 60
play **billiards** 25
bird
  rare ~ 46
  birds sing 41
birth rate 46
biting wind 13
bitter
  ~ coffee 45
  ~ dispute 55
  ~ divorce 19
bitterly
  ~ cold 1
  ~ criticise 6, 60
  ~ disappointed 1, 6, 21
  ~ disappointing 6
  ~ regret 6
  ~ resent 6
  complain ~ 6, 49
  cry ~ 6
  weep ~ 6
blacken someone's name 43
mind goes **blank** 54
blanket
  ~ of fog 13
  ~ of mist 13
blare
  music blares (out) 41
  radio blares (out) 41
music **blasts** out from 24
blaze
  ~ of glory 12
  ~ of publicity 12
bleak landscape 15
give your **blessing** 60
go **blind** 8
blissfully
  ~ happy 4, 21
  ~ unaware 4

block the view 15
blood relative 19
blot out a memory 54
blow
  ~ the whistle 25
  wind blows 13
blow down fences 13
pale **blue** 43
blunt
  ~ knife 44
  ~ pencil 44
board
  ~ an aircraft 5
  ~ a plane 14
boat trip 14
body
  ~ language 29
  ~ odour 45
book
  absorbed in a ~ 23
  beginning of a ~ 23
  ~ captures (an atmosphere) 23
  ~ comes out 23
  ~ deals with 23
  ~ review 23
  ~ reviewer 23
  end of a ~ 23
  engrossed in a ~ 23
  fat ~ 42
  flick through a ~ 23
  give a ~ a bad review 23
  recommend a ~ 23
  review a ~ 23
  skim through a ~ 23
  slim ~ 42
fully **booked** 14
economy **booms** 4
bored
  become ~ 8
  ~ stiff 5
  get ~ 8
go **bowling** 25
play **bowls** 25
box-office hit 23
bread goes hard 44
break *noun*
  ~ in the clouds 13
  have a ~ 9
break *verb*
  ~ a habit 48
  ~ the law 34
  ~ the silence 41
  ~ the world record 25
  news breaks 36
  story breaks 36
talks **break down** 36
break into a house 35
war **breaks out** 38
breakfast
  hearty ~ 22
  leisurely ~ 47
at **breakneck** speed 47
make a **breakthrough** 52
breast cancer
  develop ~ 26
  be diagnosed with ~ 26
breathe deeply 29
breathtaking scenery 15
breed crime 1, 39
brief chat 4, 49
briefly summarise 33
bright
  ~ colour 4, 43
  ~ yellow 43
brilliant
  ~ career 30
  ~ success 52
bring something to an end 51
bring about
  ~ the collapse 53
  ~ the downfall 53
  ~ peace 38
  ~ a revolution 53
  ~ a transformation 53
bring on a substitute 25
bring out the best 52
bring up
  ~ children 19
  ~ up a family 19
brisk
  ~ business 47
  ~ efficiency 47
  ~ pace 47
  ~ walk 47, 50
walk **briskly** 50
broad
  ~ hint 58
  ~ hips 18
  ~ shoulders 18
broadly support 32
travel **brochure** 14
broken home 19
have an attack of **bronchitis** 26
brother
  big ~ 42
  little ~ 42
brutally honest 17
budget accommodation 14
balance the **budget** 31
building
  destroy buildings 13
  dilapidated ~ 21
  imposing ~ 16
  old ~ 10
  quaint old ~ 16
  run-down ~ 16
  tall ~ 42
bullet points 29
bumper-to-bumper traffic 16
bumpy
  ~ flight 14, 44
  ~ road 44
spate of **burglaries** 35
burn
  cheeks ~ with
  embarrassment 12
burning desire 57
burst
  ~ into song 4
  ~ into tears 4
  river bursts its banks 13
bus
  alight from a ~ 5
  take a ~ 9
bushy eyebrows 18
business
  ~ is booming 31
  brisk ~ 47
  ~ travel 14
  ~ trip 14
  go into ~ 31
  go out of ~ 31, 52
  run a ~ 31
  set up a ~ 31
  start up a ~ 5
  ~ would fold 31
  businesses are going under 31
first-time **buyer** 22
pavement **café** 16
call *verb*
  ~ a ceasefire 38
  ~ a truce 38
call *noun*
  give someone a ~ 2
  make a phone ~ 7
  field telephone calls 30
cameo role 23
launch a **campaign** 36
camping trip 14
cancer
  develop breast ~ 26
  develop ~ 26
  develop lung ~ 26
  be diagnosed with breast ~ 26
  be diagnosed with ~ 26
  be diagnosed with lung ~ 26
candle flickers 43
raise **capital** 5
take **captive** 36
capture
  book captures (an atmosphere) 23
  ~ a wider audience 24
  film captures (an atmosphere) 23
car
  fast ~ 1
  start a ~ 10
  steal a ~ 35

play **cards** 25
care deeply 6
take **care** of 2
career
  at the height of your ~ 30
  at the peak of your ~ 30
  brilliant ~ 30
  ~ fair 30
  ~ lasts 30
  ~ spans 30
  ~ takes off 30
  climb the ~ ladder 30
  embark on a ~ 30
  glittering ~ 30
  have a ~ in 30
  promising ~ 30
  ruin someone's ~ 30
  wreck someone's ~ 30
tread **carefully** 4
carry
  ~ a mobile phone 11
  ~ a suitcase 11
carry out
  ~ an investigation 34
  ~ a research project 28
  ~ a study 32
  ~ work 30
case
  make a ~ for 33
  present a ~ for 33
  win a ~ 34
cast
  ~ doubt on 56
  ~ a film 23
  ~ a shadow over 43
casual acquaintance 20
ginger **cat** 4
catch
  ~ a chill 26
  ~ a cold 26
  ~ fire 36
  ~ (the) flu 26
  ~ a glimpse of 15
  ~ pneumonia 26
  ~ sight of 15
catchy tune 24
fall into a **category** 33
cater for someone's tastes 59
raise **cattle** 10
cause *verb*
  ~ alarm 53
  ~ anxiety 53
  ~ chaos 53
  ~ concern 53
  ~ crime 1
  ~ damage 13
  ~ a lot of damage 53
  ~ embarrassment 53
  ~ havoc 53
  ~ pain 3
  ~ a sensation 53
  ~ an uproar 53
cause *noun*
  immediate ~ 53
  underlying ~ 53
pick your way **cautiously** 50
cease trading 31
call a **ceasefire** 38
cement a friendship 20
central
  ~ character 23
  play a ~ role 32
early 21st **century** 40
challenge
  ~ someone directly 49
  ~ a theory 32
chance
  be given the ~ 57
  take a ~ 9
change *verb*
  ~ the baby 48
  ~ the beds 48
  ~ your clothes 48
  ~ doctors 48
  ~ jobs 48
  ~ your mind 48
  ~ money 37
  ~ places 48
  ~ seats 48
  ~ schools 48
  ~ the subject 48, 49
change *noun*
  climate ~ 39
  effect a ~ 53
  major ~ 42
  make a ~ 7
  make changes 7
  minor ~ 42
  rapid ~ 47
cause **chaos** 53
chapters
  closing ~ 23
  opening ~ 23
character
  central ~ 23
  reveal your true ~ 17
  strength of ~ 17
charge a phone 10
take **charge** of 30
deny **charges** 58
chart
  bar ~ 29
  pie ~ 29
charter flight 14
chat
  brief ~ 4, 49
  have a ~ 2, 9
cheap
  go ~ 37
  ridiculously ~ 6
cheeks
  ~ burn with embarrassment 12
  chubby ~ 18
foul-smelling **chemicals** 45
play **chess** 25
child
  ~ labour 39
  have a ~ 8
  only ~ 10
children
  bring up ~ 19
  have ~ 19
  raise ~ 10, 19
  street ~ 39
catch a **chill** 26
chilly corridor 21
choice
  face a difficult ~ 57
  have a ~ 57
  make a ~ 7, 57
  tough ~ 57
  wise ~ 2
chopped
  coarsely ~ 44
  finely ~ 44
choppy
  ~ sea 44
  ~ water 44
convert to **Christianity** 48
chubby cheeks 18
see a film at the **cinema** 23
do **circuit** training 25
city
  ~ skyline 16
  inner ~ 16
  sprawling ~ 16
claim *noun*
  claims are unfounded 58
  deny a ~ 58
  reject a ~ 58
  substantiate a ~ 58
  support a ~ 32
claim *verb*
  give someone a big **clap**
60 **clash**
  colours ~ 43
  head-on ~ 55
class is held 28
clean forget 54
clear
  ~ illustration 32
  ~ preference 59
  make it ~ 49
clearly
  ~ imply 58
  state ~ 58

clicking sound 41
climate change 39
climb the career ladder 30
go **climbing** 25
close *verb*
  ~ a conference 10
  ~ a discussion 10
  ~ a meeting 10
  ~ your mouth 10
close *noun*
  draw to a ~ 51
close *adjective*
  ~ family 19
  ~ friend 20
  ~ finish 51
  at ~ range 42
  ~ relative 19
  ~ team 30
  ~ watch 36
close-knit family 19
work **closely** with 30
closing
  ~ chapters 23
  ~ scenes 23
clothes
  change your ~ 48
  have ~ altered 48
  take ~ with you 11
cloud
  ~ storage 27
  thick ~ 13
  break in the **clouds** 13
fashionable **club** 16
give someone a **clue** 54
coarse
  ~ grain 44
  ~ hair 18
  ~ joke 44
coarsely chopped 44
cobbled street 16
bitter **coffee** 45
cold *adjective*
  bitterly ~ 1
  freezing ~ 13
cold *noun*
  catch a ~ 26
  heavy ~ 1, 26
  slight ~ 26
bring about the **collapse** 53
colour *noun*
  add ~ to 43
  bright ~ 4, 43
  ~ fades 43
  ~ goes well with 43
  ~ runs 43
  colours clash 43
  subdued ~ 43
  touch of ~ 43
colour *verb*
  ~ someone's judgement 56
combat
  ~ crime 35
  ~ poverty 39
come
  ~ into view 15
  ~ to a compromise 55
  ~ to a decision 57
  ~ to an end 51
  ~ to a standstill 47
  ~ to terms with 17
  ~ to a total of 46
  ~ under attack 32
  memories ~ flooding back 54
come down
  fog comes down 13
  mist comes down 13
come in
  ~ useful 52
  news comes in 36
come in for criticism 60
come out
  book comes out 23
  film comes out 23
come up against
  ~ up against fierce competition 25
  ~ up against intense competition 25
comfortable suburbs 16
make a **comment** 7
make **comments** 7
commit
  ~ an offence 35
  ~ plagiarism 32
make a **commitment** 20
deeply **committed** 6
common criminal 35
within **commuting** distance 42
major **companies** 5
company
  ~ expands 4
  ~ grows 4
  ~ merges 4
  good ~ 17
make a **comparison** 33
competition
  come up against fierce ~ 25
  come up against intense ~ 25
  enter a ~ 25
  go in for a ~ 25
  round of a ~ 25
  stage of a ~ 25
  stiff ~ 31
competitive
  extremely ~ 6
  highly ~ 6
complain
  ~ bitterly 6, 49
  ~ of pain 3
continual **complaining** 46
complete *verb*
  ~ a course 28
  ~ work 30
complete *adjective*
  in ~ agreement 55
completely
  ~ forget 54
  ~ refurbished 21
complexion
  lovely ~ 18
  rough ~ 44
  smooth ~ 44
pay a **compliment** 9
comply with the regulations 34
compose a piece 24
compromise
  come to a ~ 55
  reach a ~ 55
compulsive reading 23
computer
  ~ crashes 27
  fast ~ 47
  hack into someone's ~ 27
  play ~ games 25
  cause **concern** 53
  deeply **concerned** 6
concise summary 32
lead someone to **conclude** 56
conclusion
  draw a ~ 33
  hasty ~ 47
  speedy ~ 47
condemn
  severely ~ 60
  strongly ~ 6
condemnation
  universal ~ 60
  wholesale ~ 60
  widespread ~ 21
conditions
  freak weather ~ 13
conduct
  ~ an orchestra 24
  ~ a research project 28
  ~ market research 31
close a **conference** 10
supremely **confident** 17
stride **confidently** 50
confirmed bachelor 19
conflict
  ~ of opinion 55
warmly **congratulate** 60
offer your **congratulations** 60
connecting flight 14

connection
  establish a ~ 32
consequences
  suffer the ~ 34, 53
conservation
  ~ area 16
consider the options 57
considerable
  ~ amount 46
  ~ distance from 42
  ~ number 46
take into **consideration** 33
considered opinion 56
constant
  ~ criticism 60
  ~ interruptions 46
  ~ pain 3
  remain ~ 46
constructive criticism 60
contact
  keep in ~ 20
  lose ~ 20
continual complaining 46
continuous assessment 28
contract noun
  win a ~
contract *verb*
  ~ a disease 26
  ~ malaria 26
  ~ typhoid 26
contradictory
  ~ advice 58
  ~ evidence 58
run **contrary** to 58
sharp **contrast** 2
contribution
  make a ~ 52
  make a ~ to 7, 32
  significant ~ 32
  useful ~ 52
control
  gain ~ 11
  seize ~ 36
controversial
  ~ decision 36
  extremely ~ 6
  highly ~ 6
controversy
  ~ rages 55
  ~ exists 55
conversation
  ~ flows 12
  get into ~ 49
  have a ~ 9
  heated ~ 12
  join in a ~ 49
  lull in the ~ 49
  make polite ~ 49
  steer the ~ 47
  strike up a ~ 49
convert to Christianity 48
convicted criminal 35
conviction for robbery 35
convinced
  absolutely ~ 6
  utterly ~ 6
argue **convincingly** 33
cooking
  Chinese/Mexican/French ~ 22
  do the ~ 7
copy and paste 27
core message 29
turn a **corner** 15
chilly **corridor** 21
bear the **cost** 5
cosy study 21
counter criticism 60
country
  developing ~ 39
  neighbouring ~ 42
countryside
  destroy the ~ 15
  peaceful ~ 15
  surrounding ~ 15
  tranquil ~ 15
  unspoilt ~ 15
happy **couple** 21
course
  complete a ~ 28
  do a ~ 2, 28
  enrol on a ~ 2, 28
  leave a ~ 28
  take a ~ 28
  withdraw from a ~ 28
appear in **court** 34
cousin
  distant ~ 19
  second ~ 19
cover a distance of x kilometres 42
crack a joke 49 police
crack down 5
crackling sound 41
cramped room 21
crash
  computer crashes 27
  waves ~ 41
slow to a **crawl** 47
go **crazy** 8
creamy texture 44
create
  ~ awareness 53
  ~ a bad impression 53
  ~ opportunities 4
  ~ problems 53
credit
  give ~ 60
  take full ~ for 60
play **cricket** 25
crime
  breed ~ 1, 39
  cause ~ 1
  ~ figures 35
  ~ rate 35
  ~ wave 35
  combat ~ 35
  fight ~ 38
  fight against ~ 35
  juvenile ~ 35
  petty ~ 35
  street ~ 35
  tackle ~ 35
  target serious ~ 35
  vehicle ~ 35
  war on ~ 38
criminal *noun*
  common ~ 35
  convicted ~ 35
  ~ record 35
  hardened ~ 35
  crisp snow 13
critic
  film ~ 23
  harsh ~ 60
  outspoken ~ 60
critical
  highly ~ 60
  receive ~ acclaim 60
  sharply ~ 60
criticise
  bitterly ~ 6, 60
  fiercely ~ 60
  roundly ~ 60
criticism
  attract ~ 53
  come in for ~ 60
  constant ~ 60
  constructive ~ 60
  counter ~ 60
  dismiss ~ 60
  harsh ~ 60
  respond to ~ 60
crop
  ~ fails 39
  grow crops 10
crowning achievement 52
crushed garlic 44
cry *noun*
  ~ of alarm 41
  ~ of pain 41
  ~ of surprise 41
  give a ~ 41
  give a loud ~ 41
  piercing ~ 41
cry *verb*
  ~ bitterly 6

cuisine
  Chinese/Mexican/French ~ 22
  international ~ 22
unit of **currency** 46
custody
  apply for ~ of 19
  give ~ to 19
  grant ~ to 19
cut-throat competition 31
go **cycling** 25
cyclists dismount 5
damage
  cause ~ 13
  cause a lot of ~ 53
  do ~ 7
  irreparable ~ 39
  widespread ~ 46
damaged
  ~ sofa 10
  ~ things 26
smell **danger** 45
dark
  ~ days 12
  ~ green 43
  ~ hair 18
  ~ thoughts 12
  ~ times 12
  go ~ 8
  grow ~ 43
  pitch ~ 1, 43
darken
  expression darkens 12
  eyes ~ 12
  face darkens 12
play **darts** 25
dash someone's hopes 52
from **dawn** till dusk 40
day
  dark days 12
  ~ trip 14
  spend days 11
  sunny ~ 12
dazzling production 60
dead
  ~ keen 5
  ~ on time 40
dead-end job 30
go **deaf** 8
deafening
  ~ noise 41
  ~ sound 41
deal *noun*
  do a ~ 31
  get a really good ~ 37
  great ~ of 42
  great ~ of energy 42
  great ~ of enthusiasm 42
  great ~ of money 42
  great ~ of time 42
  strike a ~ 31
deal *verb*
  book deals with 23
  film deals with 23
dear little 42
death
  ~ toll 39
  face the ~ penalty 34
heated **debate** 12
debt repayment 39
debut album 24
decent meal 22
decision
  arrive at a ~ 57
  big ~ 10, 57
  come to a ~ 57
  controversial ~ 36
  defend your ~ 57
  hasty ~ 47
  make a ~ 1, 2, 4, 7, 57
  put off (making) a ~ 57
  quick ~ 47
  sensible ~ 57
  snap decisions 17
  take a ~ 57
  unanimous ~ 57
  wise ~ 57
decisive battle 38
declare
  ~ war 38
decline
  ~ in the number of 46
  rapid ~ 47
dedicated fan 59
deep hatred 59
deep-rooted hatred 59
deeply
  affect someone ~ 53
  care ~ 6
  ~ affected 6
  ~ ashamed 6
  ~ committed 6
  ~ concerned 6
  ~ hurt 6
  ~ moved 6
  ~ regret 6
  ~ religious 6
  ~ shocked 6
  ~ unhappy 6
defeat
  ~ an opponent 11
  ~ a team 11
narrowly **defeated** 25
defend
  ~ your decision 57
  strenuously ~ 32
degree
  be awarded a ~ 28
  ~ of uncertainty 57
  do a ~ 28
  get a ~ 28
  obtain a ~ 28
  study for a ~ 2, 28
  take a ~ 28
delicate subject 49
demanding job 30
make **demands** on 2
spark off **demonstrations** 53
dense
  ~ fog 13
  ~ forest 15
deny
  ~ an accusation 58
  ~ an allegation 58
  ~ charges 58
  ~ a claim 58
  ~ a rumour 58
  strongly ~ 6, 58
deplete the ozone layer 39
depressed
  become ~ 8
  deeply ~ 21
  get ~ 8
deprived
  ~ area 16
  ~ home 19
  ~ region 39
deserve
  ~ to win 25
  justly ~ 60
richly **deserved** 60
burning **desire** 57
desperate need 39
desperately
  ~ jealous 2
  ~ lonely 10
  ~ in love 20
  ~ sad 21
  ~ want 25
  ~ worried 2
destroy
  ~ buildings 13
  ~ the countryside 15
go into great **detail** 32
weather **deteriorates** 13
act as a **deterrent** 34
detour
  make a ~ 47
  take a ~ 47
devastated
  absolutely ~ 6
  utterly ~ 6
devastating
  ~ famine 39
  ~ flood 39
develop
  ~ AIDS 26

~ Alzheimer's disease 26
~ arthritis 26
~ breast cancer 26
~ cancer 26
~ diabetes 26
~ a friendship 20
~ lung cancer 26
~ a taste for 45
news develops 36
developing country 39
develop **diabetes** 26
diagnosed
be ~ with AIDS 26
be ~ with autism 26
be ~ with breast cancer 26
be ~ with cancer 26
be ~ with leukaemia 26
be ~ with lung cancer 26
have an attack of **diarrhoea** 26
wind **dies** down 13
balanced **diet** 26
agree to **differ** 55
difference
~ of opinion 56
major ~ 42
minor ~ 42
sharp ~ 2
differences
~ arise 55
~ exist 55
settle your ~ 55
different walks of life 50
face a **difficult** choice 57
difficulty
have ~ 9
major ~ 42
minor ~ 42
dilapidated building 21
diploma
be awarded a ~ 28
do a ~ 28
get a ~ 28
obtain a ~ 28
study for a ~ 28
take a ~ 28
direct result 53
challenge someone **directly** 49
disagree
~ fundamentally 55
~ profoundly 33
tend to ~ 55
fundamental **disagreement** 55
bitterly **disappointed** 1, 6, 21
bitterly **disappointing** 6
disappointment
express your ~ 21
huge ~ 21
disapproval
express your ~ 60
frown of ~ 60
look of ~ 60
show your ~ 60
disapprove
strongly ~ of 60
thoroughly ~ 60
disaster
be a recipe for ~ 52
natural ~ 39
disclaim responsibility 58
discussion
close a ~ 10
heated ~ 12
lead a ~ 2
lengthy ~ 49
disease
contract a ~ 26
develop Alzheimer's ~ 26
rare ~ 46
dishevelled hair 18
dislike
instant ~ 59
intense ~ 59
strongly ~ 6
take a ~ to 9, 59
dismal failure 52
dismiss criticism 60
cyclists **dismount** 5
dispose of items 5
dispute
bitter ~ 55
settle a ~ 55
distance
considerable ~ from 42
cover a ~ of x kilometres 42
long ~ from 42
short ~ from 42
travel a ~ of x kilometres 42
within commuting ~ 42
within walking ~ 42
distant
~ cousin 19
in the not too ~ future 40
~ relative 19
distinction
draw a ~ between 33
sharp ~ 2
distinctive aroma 45
distinctly remember 54
disturb the ecological balance 39
opinions are **divided** 56
divorce
acrimonious ~ 19
bitter ~ 19
get a ~ 19
get **divorced** 2
do
~ activities 25
~ aerobics 25
~ archery 25
~ an assignment 28
~ athletics 25
~ your best 7
~ circuit training 25
~ the cooking 7
~ a course 2, 28
~ damage 7
~ a degree 28
~ a diploma 28
~ your duty 2
~ an essay 28
~ an exam 28
~ exercises 7, 25
~ an experiment 7
~ someone a favour 7
~ someone a good turn 7
~ gymnastics 25
~ your hair 7
~ harm 7
~ homework 28
~ your homework 7
~ the ironing 7
~ judo 25
~ a lecture 28
~ research 28, 32
~ a research project 28
~ some shopping 2
~ the shopping 7
~ sport 25
~ a subject 28
~ a talk 28
~ the washing 7
~ weightlifting 25
~ some work 2, 7
~ wrestling 25
~ yoga 25
do up an old house 21
change **doctors** 48
leak a **document** 58
domestic flight 14
dominate the landscape 15
play **dominoes** 25
donate money to 37
doomed to failure 52
cast **doubt** on 56
have **doubts** 56
bring about the **downfall** 53
download
~ an audiobook 23
~ an e-book reader app 23
~ applications 27
draft
final ~ 28
first ~ 28
dramatic
~ fall 46

  ~ improvement 52
  ~ rise 46
  ~ setting 15
draughty hall 21
draw
  ~ an analogy 33
  ~ attention to 33
  ~ a conclusion 33
  ~ a distinction between 33
  ~ parallels 33
  ~ to a close 51
pretty **dreadful** 5
dream
  ~ home 21
  have a ~ 9
dress *noun*
  wear a ~ 11
drink
  refreshing ~ 22
  soft ~ 22
driving
  ~ rain 13
  ~ snow 13
droopy moustache 18
drop *verb*
  ~ a hint 49, 58
  ~ a player 25
drop *noun*
  ~ in the number of 46
  sharp ~ 2
drug abuse 35
fail a **drugs** test 25
dry
  ~ hair 44
  ~ skin 44
baby is **due** 19
dull
  ~ ache 26
  pretty ~ 5
  ~ thud 41
dumpy woman 18
from dawn till **dusk** 40
dying of hunger 22
dysfunctional family 19
download an **e-book**
reader app 23
ear-splitting
  ~ noise 41
  ~ sound 41
earliest memory 54
early
  ~ 21st century 40
  ~ start 51
  ridiculously ~ 6
  take ~ retirement 30
earn
  ~ a good salary 37
  ~ money 11, 37
  ~ a salary 11
ease
  ~ pain 3
  ~ the pain 2
easy
  ~ listening 24
  ~ read 23
  ~ to read 29
  ~ walk 50
  extremely ~ 2
  ridiculously ~ 6
healthy **eating** 26
disturb the **ecological** balance 39
economic
  ~ migrant 39
economy
  ~ booms 4
  global ~ 39
highly **educated** 6
education
  further ~ 28
  get an ~ 28
  higher ~ 28
  receive an ~ 28
  tertiary ~ 28
eerie silence 41
effect *noun*
  adverse ~ 53
  beneficial ~ 53
  have an ~ 53
  have an ~ on 53
  huge ~ 53
  major ~ 42
  minor ~ 42
  negative ~ 53
  positive ~ 53
  produce the opposite ~ 53
effect *verb*
  ~ a change 53
effective
  ~ way 52
  extremely ~ 6
  highly ~ 6, 52
special **effects** 23
efficiency
  brisk ~ 47
effort
  make an ~ 1, 2, 7
elderly person 10
win an **election** 11
unit of **electricity** 46
embark
  ~ on a career 30
  ~ upon an explanation 5
acutely **embarrassing** 4
embarrassment
  cause ~ 53
  cheeks burn with ~ 12
  surge of **emotion** 4
emotional
  ~ impact 21
  ~ involvement 21
  ~ response 21
  ~ wreck 21
  highly ~ 21
lay **emphasis** on 33
life feels **empty** 21
walking **encyclopaedia** 50
end *noun*
  abrupt ~ 51
  bring something to an ~ 51
  come to an ~ 51
  ~ of a book 23
  ~ of a film 23
  ~ result 51
  mark the beginning of the ~ 51
  perfect ~ 51
end *verb*
  ~ a relationship 10
  film ends 10
  holiday ended 51
  journey ended 51
  meal ended 51
  trip ended 51
have a happy **ending** 24
energy
  great deal of ~ 42
enforce the law 34
powerful **engine** 1
engrossed in a book 23
enhance your performance 25
enjoy
  ~ the fruits of 52
  ~ a view 15
  thoroughly ~ 2
  really ~ 2
enjoyment
  great ~ 59
  sheer ~ 59
enormous
  ~ amount 46
  ~ number 46
lead an **enquiry** 2
enrol on a course 2, 28
enter
  ~ a competition 25
  ~ into an argument 55
in-flight **entertainment** 14
great deal of **enthusiasm** 42
entirely agree 55
university **entry** 2
environment
  protect the ~ 15
  stimulating working ~ 30
eradicate poverty 39
escape poverty 39

essay
  do an ~ 28
  give (the teacher) an ~ 28
  hand in an ~ 28
  write an ~ 28
establish a connection 32
estranged
  ~ husband 19
  ~ wife 19
evaluate critically 27
even number 46
turn of **events** 36
try **every** possible way 2
evidence
  contradictory ~ 58
  ~ is based on 56
  gather ~ 32
  provide ~ 32
  supporting ~ 32
ex-husband 19
ex-wife 19
exam
  do an ~ 28
  fail an ~ 52
  pass an ~ 52
  sit an ~ 28
  take an ~ 2, 28
  walk an ~ 50
perfect **example** 32
excellent grasp of 52
excessive noise 41
exchange
  ~ addresses 48
  ~ ideas 48
  ~ money 48
excited
  become ~ 8
  get ~ 8
excruciating pain 26
make an **excuse** 7
exercise
  take ~ 26
  vigorous ~ 26
do **exercises** 7, 25
exhaust fumes 16, 39
exhausted
  absolutely ~ 6
  utterly ~ 6
exist
  differences ~ 55
  controversy exists 55
hasty **exit** 47
company **expands** 4
expecting a baby 19
lead an **expedition** 2
ridiculously **expensive** 6
experience *noun*
  have an ~ 9
  have ~ in 30
  unforgettable ~ 54
experience *verb*
  ~ pain 3
do an **experiment** 7
explanation
  embark upon an ~ 5
  launch into an ~ 5
  tentative ~ 32
sexual **exploitation** 39
explosion
  almighty ~ 41
  loud ~ 41
express
  ~ your disappointment 21
  ~ your disapproval 60
expression darkens 12
extended family 19
extension
  add an ~ 21
become **extinct** 8
extremely
  ~ competitive 6
  ~ controversial 6
  ~ easy 2
  ~ effective 6
  ~ keen 5
  ~ likely 6
  ~ profitable 6
  ~ successful 6
  ~ unlikely 6
  ~ unusual 6
bushy **eyebrows** 18
eyes
  ~ darken 12
  ~ light up 12
  ~ shine 12
eye contact
  maintain ~ 29
  make ~ 29
face *noun*
  ~ darkens 12
  ~ lights up 12
  ~ shines 12
  oval ~ 18
  pointed ~ 18
  remember someone's ~ 54
  round ~ 18
  sunny ~ 12
  tears stream down someone's ~ 12
face *verb*
  ~ an accusation 58
  ~ the death penalty 34
  ~ a difficult choice 57
  ~ a fine 34
factor
  key ~ 4, 32
  major ~ 42
  minor ~ 42
foul-smelling **factory** 45
fade
  memories ~ 54
  colour fades 43
fail
  crop fails 39
  ~ a drugs test 25
  ~ an exam 52
  ~ miserably 52
failure
  dismal ~ 52
  doomed to ~ 52
  spectacular ~ 52
faint glow 43
fair *adjective*
  ~ hair 18
  ~ trial 34
fall *verb*
  ~ ill 8
  ~ in love 20
  ~ into a category 33
  ~ into ruin 15
  ~ sharply 46
  ~ silent 8
  ~ steeply 46
  rate falls 46
fall *noun*
  dramatic ~ 46
falling profits 5
faltering steps 50
familiar landscape 15
family
  bring up a ~ 19
  close ~ 19
  close-knit ~ 19
  dysfunctional ~ 19
  extended ~ 19
  immediate ~ 19
  loving ~ 19
  nuclear ~ 19
  provide for your ~ 19
  raise a ~ 19
  respectable ~ 19
  start a ~ 19
family-run hotel 14
devastating **famine** 39
become **famous** 1, 8
fan
  adoring ~ 24
  ardent ~ 59
  dedicated ~ 59
far-flung places 42
far-off places 42
fashionable club 16
fast
  ~ car 1, 47
  ~ computer 47
  ~ food 1
  ~ lane 47

~ pace 47
~ train 47
fast-flowing river 15
fasten your seatbelt 14
fat
~ book 42
~ person 42
favour
ask someone a ~ 49
do someone a ~ 7
favourite
absolute ~ 59
all-time ~ 59
album **features** 24
give **feedback** 28
feel
~ at home 21
~ homesick 21
~ pain 3
~ strongly 6
life feels empty 21
feeling
have a ~ 9, 54
arouse feelings 21
hurt someone's feelings 17
show your feelings 21
female lead 23
blow down **fences** 13
fever
have an attack of hay ~ 26
suffer from hay ~ 26
past **few** weeks 40
field telephone calls 30
open **fields** 15
fierce
come up against ~ competition 25
~ fighting 38
fiercely
~ criticise 60
~ loyal 17
fiery temper 12
fight *verb*
~ crime 38
~ for life 38
~ a war 38
fight *noun*
~ against crime 35
put up a ~ 25
put up a ~ against 38
fierce **fighting** 38
figure
slim ~ 18
solitary ~ 10
crime **figures** 35
fill
~ someone with admiration 59
~ a vacancy 30
filled with horror 4
film
beginning of a ~ 23
cast a ~ 23
end of a ~ 23
~ captures (an atmosphere) 23
~ comes out 23
~ critic 23
~ deals with 23
~ ends 10
~ review 23
give a ~ a bad review 23
make a ~ 23
recommend a ~ 23
review a ~ 23
see a ~ at the cinema 23
see a ~ on television 23
shoot a ~ 23
star in a ~ 23
watch a ~ on television 23
final draft 28
find
~ a way 2
~ your way 2
fine *noun*
face a ~ 34
heavy ~ 34
pay a ~ 34
fine *adjective*
~ grain 44
finely chopped 44
sticky **fingers** 44
finish *noun*
close ~ 51
gloss ~ 44
matt ~ 44
nail-biting ~ 51
finish *verb*
~ your homework 10
put the **finishing** touches to 51
fire
catch ~ 36
open ~ 38
within **firing** range 38
firm
~ bed 44
~ ground 44
~ pillow 44
firmly
~ believe 56
hold ~ to 33
first
~ draft 28
love at ~ sight 20
put others ~ 17
first-time buyer 22
fish stocks 39
go **fishing** 25
keep **fit** 26
follow a **fitness** programme 26
flare
tempers ~ 12
troubles ~ up 12
violence flares up 12
flat
basement ~ 21
granny ~ 21
high-rise flats 16
move into a ~ 21
move out of a ~ 21
studio ~ 21
turn into a ~ 22
flavour
get the ~ of 45
subtle ~ 45
flick
~ through a book 23
~ through a newspaper 36
candle **flickers** 43
flight
bumpy ~ 14, 44
charter ~ 14
connecting ~ 14
domestic ~ 14
scheduled ~ 14
smooth ~ 14, 44
float the company 31
flood *noun*
battle against floods 5
devastating ~ 39
floods hit 5
~ of tears 12
flood *verb*
memories come flooding back 54
play **flops** 52
flow
ideas ~ 12
conversation flows 12
catch (the) **flu** 26
fog
blanket of ~ 13
dense ~ 13
~ comes down 13
~ lifts 13
patches of ~ 13
thick ~ 13
follow
~ a fitness programme 26
~ a path 15
~ the rules 34
huge **following** 24
food
Chinese/Mexican/French ~ 22
fast ~ 1
~ additives 22
~ poisoning 22
GM ~ 22
home-cooked ~ 22

  international ~ 22
  junk ~ 22
  organic ~ 22
  perishable ~ 22
  processed ~ 22
make a **fool** out of someone 17
foot
  get off on the wrong ~ 50
  go on ~ 50
football
  have a ~ game 25
  have a game of ~ 25
  have a ~ match 25
  play a ~ game 25
  play a game of ~ 25
  play a ~ match 25
lose your **footing** 47
strictly **forbidden** 1, 6
law **forbids** 34
gale **force** winds 13
peacekeeping **forces** 38
dense **forest** 15
forget
  clean ~ 54
  completely ~ 54
  ~ your homework 54
  ~ someone's name 54
form a friendship 20
make a small **fortune** 37
fossil fuels 39
foul your opponent 25
foul-smelling
  ~ chemicals 45
  ~ factory 45
four-storey house 21
fragrant perfume 45
freak
  ~ storms 13
  ~ weather conditions 13
free
  ~ time 40
  take a ~ kick 25
taste **freedom** 45
freezing cold 13
fresh
  ~ produce 22
  ~ scent 45
  ~ snow 13
friend
  close ~ 20
  make friends 7, 8, 20
  mutual friends 20
  old ~ 10
  special ~ 20
friendship
  cement a ~ 20
  develop a ~ 20
  form a ~ 20
  ~ grows 20
  spoil a ~ 20
  strike up a ~ 20
front-page
  ~ headline 36
  be ~ news 36
frost
  hard ~ 13
  light ~ 13
frown of disapproval 60
fruit goes soft 44
enjoy the **fruits** of 52
fossil **fuels** 39
fulfilling job 30
full
  ~ house 23
  take ~ credit for 60
fully
  ~ accept 58
  ~ aware 4
  ~ booked 14
  ~ furnished 21
fully-fitted kitchen 21
fumes
  exhaust ~ 16, 39
  noxious ~ 45
have **fun** 9
fundamental disagreement 55
disagree **fundamentally** 55
fully **furnished** 21
antique **furniture** 10
further education 28
future *noun*
  ~ holds 40
  have a great ~ ahead 40
  in the not too distant ~ 40
future adjective
  ~ employer
gain
  ~ access 11
  ~ an advantage 11
  ~ control 11
  ~ good marks 52
  ~ a place 25
  ~ power 11
  ~ publicity 11
  ~ recognition 11
  ~ a reputation 11
gale force winds 13
game
  have a football ~ 25
  have a ~ of 25
  have a ~ of football 25
  play a football ~ 25
  play a ~ of 25
  play a ~ of football 25
  play computer games 25
  play games 25
overlook the **garden** 22
crushed **garlic** 44
greenhouse **gases** 39
give a **gasp** 41
gather
  ~ evidence 32
  ~ speed 47
generous benefits 30
gentle
  ~ landscape 15
  ~ stroll 50
  ~ walk 50
portly **gentleman** 18
place **gently** 4
genuine liking 59
get
  ~ angry 8
  ~ bored 8
  ~ into conversation 49
  ~ a degree 28
  ~ depressed 8
  ~ a diploma 28
  ~ a divorce 19
  ~ divorced 2
  ~ an education 28
  ~ excited 8
  ~ the flavour of 45
  ~ a grade 28
  ~ impatient 8
  ~ the impression 54
  ~ involved 8
  ~ a job 1
  ~ a place 25
  ~ to the point 49
  ~ pregnant 8
  ~ a qualification 28
  ~ a really good deal 37
  ~ started 51
  ~ upset 8
  ~ violent 8
  ~ in someone's way 2
  weather gets worse 13
get off
  ~ on the wrong foot 50
  ~ to a good start 51
get on a plane 5
ginger
  ~ cat 4
  ~ hair 18
give
  be given the chance 57
  ~ an account of 32
  ~ your blessing 60
  ~ a book a bad review 23
  ~ credit 60
  ~ a cry 41
  ~ custody to 19
  ~ feedback 28
  ~ a film a bad review 23
  ~ a gasp 41
  ~ a grade 28

  ~ a groan 41
  ~ the go-ahead 36
  ~ the impression 17
  ~ a laugh 41
  ~ a lecture 2, 28
  ~ a loud cry 41
  ~ a performance 23, 24, 60
  ~ a presentation 30
  ~ a sigh 41
  ~ someone a big clap 60
  ~ someone a call 2
  ~ someone a clue 54
  ~ someone instructions 49
  ~ someone a lift 2
  ~ someone pleasure 59
  ~ someone a ring 2, 5
  ~ someone a warm welcome 59
  ~ someone your word 49
  ~ a talk 28
  ~ (the teacher) an essay 28
  ~ way to 2
give off a smell 45
give up hope 56
quick **glance** 1, 47
glare of the sun 43
catch a **glimpse** of 15
glittering career 30
global economy 39
blaze of **glory** 12
gloss
  ~ finish 44
  ~ paint 44
glossy hair 44
faint **glow** 43
GM food 22
go *verb*
  alarm goes off 40
  army goes into action 38
  bread goes hard 44
  colour goes well with 43
  fruit goes soft 44
  ~ astray 47
  ~ bald 8, 18
  ~ blind 8
  ~ bowling 25
  ~ cheap 37
  ~ climbing 25
  ~ crazy 8
  ~ cycling 25
  ~ dark 8
  ~ deaf 8
  ~ fishing 25
  ~ for a run 50
  ~ for a walk 50
  ~ grey 8, 18
  ~ hang-gliding 25
  ~ hill walking 25
  ~ into great detail 32
  ~ into partnership with 5
  ~ jogging 25
  ~ mad 8
  ~ numb 54
  ~ on foot 50
  ~ on the stage 23
  ~ on tour 24
  ~ on trial 34
  ~ out of business 52
  ~ red 8
  ~ running 50
  ~ sailing 25
  ~ skateboarding 25
  ~ skiing 25
  ~ smoothly 44
  ~ snowboarding 25
  ~ solo 24
  ~ surfing 25
  ~ to aerobics 25
  ~ to judo 25
  ~ to karate 25
  ~ to a lecture 28
  ~ to war 38
  ~ to yoga 25
  ~ wrong 30
  ~ badly wrong 52
  ~ yellow 8
  milk goes sour 45
  mind goes blank 54
  time goes by 40
go along with
  ~ an idea 55
  ~ a view 55
price **goes down** 37
go in for a competition 25
price **goes up** 37
go *noun*
  have a ~ 9
give the **go-ahead** 36
score a **goal** 25
achieve your **goals** 11, 30
gold
  tinged with ~ 43
  turn ~ 8
golden
  ~ opportunity 39
  ~ sands 15
play **golf** 25
good
  do someone a ~ turn 7
  earn a ~ salary 37
  gain ~ marks 52
  get off to a ~ start 51
  get a really ~ deal 37
  ~ company 17
  ~ sense of humour 17
  ~ team player 30
  ~ value 16
  have a ~ knowledge of 30
  have a ~ memory 54
  have a ~ relationship with someone 20
  have a ~ time 9, 40
  in ~ shape 26
  make a ~ impression 2
  make ~ progress 52
gourmet meal 22
grade
  get a ~ 28
  be given a ~ 28
  receive a ~ 28
increase **gradually** 46
grain
  coarse ~ 44
  fine ~ 44
granny flat 21
grant custody to 19
grasp
  excellent ~ of 52
  have a ~ of 52
grating
  ~ noise 41
  ~ sound 41
greasy
  ~ hair 44
  ~ hands 44
great
  go into ~ detail 32
  ~ believer in 56
  ~ deal of 42
  ~ deal of energy 42
  ~ deal of enthusiasm 42
  ~ deal of money 42
  ~ deal of time 42
  ~ enjoyment 59
  ~ love 59
  ~ lover 59
  ~ pleasure 59
  ~ sadness 21
  ~ success 52
  have a ~ future ahead 40
  have a ~ time 40
  make ~ strides 50
greatest regard 59
green
  dark ~ 43
  ~ issue 43
  ~ politics 39
greenhouse gases 39
grey
  go ~ 8, 18
  ~ area 43
give a **groan** 41
immaculately **groomed** 18
ground
  firm ~ 44
  hard ~ 44
  home ~ 25
  soft ~ 44

groundbreaking research 32
grow
  company grows 4
  friendship grows 20
  ~ crops 10
  ~ dark 43
  ~ louder 8
  ~ older 8
  ~ plants 10
  rapid **growth** 47
bear a **grudge** 17
guarantee success 52
guitar
  play the ~ 1
  strum a ~ 24
  take up the ~ 24
widening **gulf** 39
do **gymnastics** 25
habit
  break a ~ 48
  kick the ~ 48
hack into someone's computer 27
hair
  auburn ~ 18
  coarse ~ 18
  dark ~ 18
  dishevelled ~ 18
  dry ~ 44
  do your ~ 7
  fair ~ 18
  ginger ~ 18
  glossy ~ 44
  greasy ~ 44
  jet-black ~ 18
  shoulder-length ~ 18
  sleek ~ 18
  thick ~ 18
draughty **hall** 21
hand
  ~ gestures 29
  greasy hands 44
  raise your ~ 48
  reject something out of ~ 57
hand in
  ~ an essay 28
  ~ your notice 30
prepare **handouts** 29
go **hang-gliding** 25
happily married 4
lasting **happiness** 21
happy
  blissfully ~ 4, 21
  ~ couple 21
  ~ occasion 21 have
  a ~ ending 24
hard *adjective*
  bread goes ~ 44
  ~ bed 44
  ~ frost 13
  ~ ground 44
  ~ legal battle 34
  ~ pillow 44
  ~ work 52
  learn the ~ way 2
hard *adverb*
  think ~ 56
  train ~ 25
harden
  attitude hardens 44
  voice hardens 44
hardened criminal 35
do **harm** 7
harsh
  ~ critic 60
  ~ criticism 60
  ~ penalty 34
  ~ sentence 34
hasty
  ~ conclusion 47
  ~ decision 47
  ~ exit 47
  ~ words 47
wear a **hat** 11
hatred
  deep ~ 59
  deep-rooted ~ 59
haunting melody 24
have
  ~ the ability to 52
  ~ access to 2
  ~ an accident 9
  ~ an affair 20
  ~ an argument 9
  ~ an attack of 26
  ~ a baby 8, 19
  ~ a break 9
  ~ a career in 30
  ~ a chat 2, 9
  ~ a child 8
  ~ children 19
  ~ a choice 57
  ~ clothes altered 48
  ~ a conversation 9
  ~ difficulty 9
  ~ doubts 56
  ~ a dream 9
  ~ an effect on 53
  ~ an experience 9
  ~ experience in 30
  ~ a feeling 9, 54
  ~ fun 9
  ~ a game 25
  ~ a go 9
  ~ a good knowledge of 30
  ~ a good memory 54
  ~ a good relationship with someone 20
  ~ a good time 9, 40
  ~ a grasp of 52
  ~ a great future ahead 40
  ~ a great time 40
  ~ a happy ending 24
  ~ a heart attack 8
  ~ an impact on 53
  ~ the impression 54
  ~ a job as 30
  ~ a liking for 59
  ~ a look 2, 9
  ~ a lot of influence 53
  ~ a match 25
  ~ misgivings about 56
  ~ a nightmare 9
  ~ no option 57
  ~ a party 2, 9
  ~ a problem 9
  ~ a quick snack 22
  ~ reason to believe 56
  ~ a rest 2
  ~ a row 9
  ~ second thoughts 57
  ~ a sharp tongue 44
  ~ a smell 45
  ~ a sneaking suspicion 56
  ~ a striking appearance 18
  ~ strong opinions 56
  ~ sympathy 59
  ~ a taste 45
  ~ a tendency 17
  ~ a think 5
  ~ the time of your life 40
  ~ time to 40
  ~ a try 9
  ~ a view of 21
  ~ a vivid imagination 17
  ~ a word 49
cause **havoc** 53
hay fever
  have an attack of ~ 26
  suffer from ~ 26
head injuries 26
head-on clash 55
splitting **headache** 26
headline
  front-page ~ 36
  hit the headlines 36
  make headlines 36
  be ~ news 36
rush **headlong** into 50
healthy
  ~ appetite 22
  ~ eating 26
acute **hearing** 54
heart attack
  have a ~ 8
  suffer a ~ 8
heartily approve 60

hearty breakfast 22
sensitive to **heat** 54
heated
  ~ argument 55
  ~ conversation 12
  ~ debate 12
  ~ discussion 12
rain **heavily** 13
heavy
  ~ cold 1, 26
  ~ fine 34
  ~ hint 58
  ~ rain 13
  ~ snow 1, 13
  ~ steps 50
high **heels** 42
at the **height** of your career 30
musical **heritage** 24
slight **hesitation** 57
high
  ~ heels 42
  ~ interest rates 42
  ~ jump 42
  ~ mountain 42
  ~ price 37, 42
  ~ tide 42
  ~ wind 13
  ridiculously ~ 6
  set ~ standards 17
high-powered job 30
high-rise flats 16
higher education 28
highest regard 59
highly
  ~ competitive 6
  ~ controversial 6
  ~ critical 60
  ~ educated 6
  ~ effective 6, 52
  ~ emotional 21
  ~ intelligent 17
  ~ likely 6
  ~ profitable 6
  ~ recommended 6, 23
  ~ successful 6
  ~ unlikely 6
  ~ unusual 6
  speak ~ of 60
go **hill** walking 25
hint
  broad ~ 58
  drop a ~ 49, 58
  heavy ~ 58
  hints and tips 27
broad **hips** 18
history
  ancient ~ 10
  study ~ 28
hit *verb*
  earthquake hits 39
  floods ~ 5
  ~ the headlines 36
  keep hitting 46
  outbreak hits 5
  weather hits 13
hit *noun*
  big ~ 24
  box-office ~ 23
  massive ~ 24
play **hockey** 25
hold
  class is held 28
  future holds 40
  ~ firmly to 33
  ~ the opinion that 56
  ~ talks 36
  ~ the view that 56
world record **holder** 25
holiday
  ~ ended 51
  take a ~ 9
home
  broken ~ 19
  deprived ~ 19
  dream ~ 21
  feel at ~ 21
  ~ ground 25
  ~ match 25
  leave ~ 21
  leave something at ~ 54
  make yourself at ~ 21
  second ~ 21
  set up ~ 19
  stable ~ 19
  welcome someone ~ 21
home-cooked food 22
become **homeless** 8
feel **homesick** 21
homework
  do ~ 28
  do your ~ 7
  finish your ~ 10
  forget your ~ 54
brutally **honest** 17
hope
  give up ~ 56
  dash someone's hopes 52
filled with **horror** 4
horrors of war 38
take **hostage** 36
scorching **hot** 13
hotel
  family-run ~ 14
  luxury ~ 14
  run-down ~ 14
  smart ~ 14
hours
  the small ~ 40
  spend ~ 11
  ungodly ~ 40
house
  break into a ~ 35
  do up a ~ 21
  four-storey ~ 21
  full ~ 23
  move ~ 48
  move into a ~ 21
house-warming party 21
affordable **housing** 21
huge
  ~ aversion 59
  ~ disappointment 21
  ~ effect 53
  ~ following 24
  ~ pleasure 59
humour
  good sense of ~ 17
  sense of ~ 17
machine **hums** 41
dying of **hunger** 22
hurt
  deeply ~ 6
  ~ someone's feelings 17
husband
  late ~ 19
  estranged ~ 19
ice melts 44
idea
  exchange ideas 48
  go along with an ~ 55
  ideas flow 12
  reject an ~ 58
pop **idol** 24
plead **ignorance** 49
ill
  fall ~ 8
  be taken ~ 26
  terminally ~ 26
illness
  incurable ~ 26
  life-threatening ~ 26
  serious ~ 26
clear **illustration** 32
have a vivid **imagination** 17
immaculately groomed 18
immediate
  ~ cause 53
  ~ family 19
impact
  emotional ~ 21
  have an ~ on 29, 53
  increase the ~ 53
  major ~ 53
  make an ~ 29
  minimise the ~ 53

  reduce the ~ 53
  strengthen the ~ 53
impatient
  become ~ 8
  get ~ 8
clearly **imply** 58
attach **importance** to 56
imposing building 16
impossible
  absolutely ~ 6
  utterly ~ 6
impression
  create a bad ~ 53
  get the ~ 54
  give the ~ 17
  have the ~ 54
  make a bad ~ 53
  make a good ~ 2
improvement
  dramatic ~ 52
  ~ in performance 48
  make an ~ 7
  make improvements 7
  weather improves 13
in-flight
  ~ entertainment 14
  ~ magazine 14
incessant roar 16
minor **incident** 38
steady **income** 37
increase *verb*
  ~ gradually 46
  ~ the impact 53
  ~ steadily 46
  price increases 37
increase *noun*
  ~ in the number of 46
  large ~ 42
  rapid ~ 47
  sharp ~ 2
  small ~ 42
  staggering ~ 35
increasingly anxious 21
incurable illness 26
indirect result 53
industrial zone 16
inevitable
  ~ outcome 53
  ~ result 53
inflict pain 3
have a lot of **influence** 53
strongly **influence** 6
keep someone **informed** 36
injured people 10, 26
injuries
  head ~ 26
  major ~ 26
  minor ~ 26
  serious ~ 26
  suffer ~ 26
  sustain ~ 26
inner city 16
inner-city area 16
instant dislike 59
rob an **institution** 35
give someone **instructions** 49
tune an **instrument** 24
highly **intelligent** 17
intense
  come up against ~ competition 25
  ~ dislike 59
intensely painful 26
interest
  attract ~ 53
  high ~ rates 42
  take an ~ in 9
  widespread ~ 46
interested party 36
international
  ~ cuisine 22
  ~ food 22
keep **interrupting** 46
constant **interruptions** 46
introduce a law 34
trust your **intuition** 54
carry out an **investigation** 34
refuse an **invitation** 58
invite someone to a party 21
involved
  become ~ 8
  get ~ 8
emotional **involvement** 21
do the **ironing** 7
irrefutable proof 32
issue *noun*
  green ~ 43
  key ~ 4
  major ~ 42
  minor ~ 42
  touch on issues 33
issue *verb*
  ~ a statement 58
item of news 36
items
  dispose of ~ 5
  unwanted ~ 5
trousers match a **jacket** 43
desperately **jealous** 2
jet-black hair 18
antique **jewellery** 10
job
  apply for a ~ 30
  axe jobs 5
  change jobs 48
  create jobs 31
  dead-end ~ 30
  demanding ~ 30
  fulfilling ~ 30
  get a ~ 1
  have a ~ as 30
  high-powered ~ 30
  ~ satisfaction 30
  lucrative ~ 30
  offer someone a ~ 30
  permanent ~ 30
  rewarding ~ 30
  steady ~ 30
  top ~ 36
join the army 38
join in a conversation 49
joke
  coarse ~ 44
  crack a ~ 49
  play a ~ on 17
  take a ~ 17
  tell a ~ 49
journey
  ~ ended 51
  outward ~ 14
  overnight ~ 14
  return ~ 14
  safe ~ 14
  tiring ~ 14
judgement
  colour someone's ~ 56
  reserve ~ 57
  sound ~ 57
  trust someone's ~ 56
judo
  do ~ 25
  go to ~ 25
high **jump** 42
junk food 22
justly deserve 60
juvenile crime 35
go to **karate** 25
keen
  dead ~ 5
  extremely ~ 5
  ~ admirer 59
keep
  ~ an appointment 30
  ~ asking 46
  ~ fit 26
  ~ hitting 46
  ~ in contact 20
  ~ interrupting 46
  ~ in touch 20
  ~ a notebook 28
  ~ the peace 38
  ~ a record 30
  ~ to the rules 1
  ~ secrets 17
  ~ someone informed 36
  ~ your temper 17
  ~ a watch on 36
  ~ your word 17

key
  ~ factor 4, 32
  ~ issue 4
  ~ points 29
kick
  ~ the habit 48
  take a free ~ 25
kill time 40
kilometres
  cover a distance of x ~ 42
  travel a distance of x ~ 42
fully-fitted **kitchen** 21
knife
  blunt ~ 44
  sharp ~ 44
have a good **knowledge** of 30
child **labour** 39
climb the career **ladder** 30
landscape
  bleak ~ 15
  dominate the ~ 15
  familiar ~ 15
  gentle ~ 15
fast **lane** 47
speak a **language** 49
lanky youth 18
use a **laptop** 11
large
  ~ amount 42
  ~ increase 42
  ~ number 42
  ~ quantity 42
  ~ scale map 42
  ~ size 10
  on a ~ scale 42
  ridiculously ~ 6
last *adjective*
  ~ night's performance 60
  pay your (~) respects 9
last *verb*
  career lasts 30
lasting
  ~ happiness 21
  ~ peace 38
late
  ~ husband 19
  ~ wife 19
the **latest** news 36
laugh
  give a ~ 41
  shrill ~ 41
laughter
  raucous ~ 41
  roar with ~ 4
launch
  ~ a campaign 36
  ~ into an explanation 5
  ~ a product 31, 66
law
  act within the ~ 34
  break the ~ 34
  enforce the ~ 34
  introduce a ~ 34
  ~ forbids 34
  ~ prohibits 34
  obey the ~ 34
  observe the ~ 34
  pass a ~ 34
  respect the ~ 34
  uphold the ~ 34
lay emphasis on 33
deplete the ozone **layer** 39
lead *verb*
  ~ a discussion 2
  ~ an enquiry 2
  ~ an expedition 2
  ~ a life 2
  ~ someone to conclude 56
lead *noun*
  female ~ 23
  male ~ 23
  take the ~ 25
leak
  ~ a document 58
  news leaks out 36
learn the hard way 2
leave
  ~ a bad taste in your mouth 45
  ~ a course 28
  ~ home 21
  ~ someone alone 56
  ~ something at home 54
  ~ university 1
  ~ an unpleasant taste in your mouth 45
lecture
  attend a ~ 28
  do a ~ 28
  give a ~ 2, 28
  go to a ~ 28
hard **legal** battle 34
leisurely
  ~ breakfast 47
  ~ stroll 50
lend support to 33
unit of **length** 46
lengthy discussion 49
lessen pain 3
let someone down badly 21
be diagnosed with **leukaemia** 26
level
  low ~ 42
  rising sea levels 39
lie in ruins 15
tell a **lie** 49
life
  bring to ~ 29
  different walks of ~ 50
  fight for ~ 38
  have the time of your ~ 40
  lead a ~ 2
  ~ feels empty 21
  loss of ~ 36
  love of your ~ 20
life-threatening
  ~ illness 26
opportunity of a **lifetime** 57
lift *verb*
  fog lifts 13
  ~ someone out of poverty 39
  mist lifts 13
lift *noun*
  give someone a ~ 2
light *noun*
  beam of ~ 43
  pinpoint of ~ 43
  sensitive to ~ 54
  shed some ~ on 43
  throw some ~ on 43
light *adjective*
  ~, airy bedrooms 21
  ~ frost 13
  ~ meal 22
  ~ steps 50
  ~ wind 13
light up
  eyes ~ 12
  face lights up 12
lighten
  atmosphere lightens 12
  mood lightens 12
lightning strikes 36
likely
  extremely ~ 6
  highly ~ 6
liking
  genuine ~ 59
  have a ~ for 59
  particular ~ 59
  take a ~ to 9
below the poverty **line** 39
lined with shops 16
click on a **link** 27
make a **list** 30
listen carefully 29
easy **listening** 24
strewn with **litter** 16
little
  dear ~ 42
  ~ brother 42
  ~ problem 42
  ~ things 42
  nice ~ 42
  poor ~ 42

live *verb*
~ alone 10
~ on the streets 39
live *adjective*
~ music 1, 24
~ performance 24
lively bar 16
living
standard of ~ rises 48
living room
spacious ~ 21
load a lorry 10
lonely
desperately ~ 10
~ place 10
~ spot 10
long
~ distance from 42
ridiculously ~ 6
long-running battle 58
long-term memory 54
look *verb*
~ small 42
looks like rain 13
look *noun*
have a ~ 2, 9
~ of disapproval 60
quick ~ 47
take a ~ 2
load a **lorry** 10
lose
~ your balance 47
~ a battle 38
~ contact 20
~ your footing 47
~ a match 25
~ your nerve 52
~ your patience 17
~ your temper 17, 21
~ touch 20
loss
make a ~ 31
~ of life 36
job losses 5
lot
cause a ~ of damage 53
have a ~ of influence 53
loud
give a ~ cry 41
~ bang 41
~ explosion 41
grow **louder** 8
love *verb*
~ someone unconditionally 20
love *noun*
desperately in ~ 20
fall in ~ 20
great ~ 59
~ at first sight 20
~ of your life 20
madly in ~ 20
passionate ~ 59
return someone's ~ 20
lovely complexion 18
lover
great ~ 59
music ~ 24
loving family 19
low
~ level 42
~ price 37, 42
~ wage 42
ridiculously ~ 6
fiercely **loyal** 17
wish someone **luck** 49
lucrative job 30
lull in the conversation 49
quick **lunch** 47
lung cancer
develop ~ 26
be diagnosed with ~ 26
luxury hotel 14
machine
~ hums 41
~ whirrs 41
go **mad** 8
madly in love 20
in-flight **magazine** 14
major
~ change 42
~ companies 5
~ difference 42
~ difficulty 42
~ effect 42
~ factor 42
~ impact 53
~ injuries 26
~ issue 42
~ point 42
~ problem 4
make
~ an adjustment 48
~ an allegation 58
~ an appointment 30
~ arrangements for 7
~ an assumption 56
~ a bad impression 53
~ a breakthrough 52
~ a case for 33
~ a change 7
~ changes 7
~ a choice 7, 57
~ it clear 49
~ a comment 7
~ comments 7
~ a commitment 20
~ a comparison 33
~ a contribution 52
~ a contribution to 7, 32
~ a decision 1, 2, 4, 7, 57
~ demands on 2
~ a detour 47
~ an effort 1, 2, 7
~ an excuse 7
~ eye-contact 29
~ a film 23
~ a fool out of someone 17
~ friends 7, 8, 20
~ a good impression 2
~ good progress 52
~ great strides 50
~ headlines 36
~ an improvement 7
~ improvements 7
~ a list 30
~ a mistake 1, 7
~ modifications 48
~ money 11, 37
~ an observation 49
~ a phone call 7
~ photocopies 30
~ a point 58
~ polite conversation 49
~ preparations 30
~ a profit 11
~ progress 2, 7
~ a recording 1
~ redundant 5
~ reference to 33
~ a reservation 14, 30
~ a slight alteration 48
~ a small fortune 37
~ small talk 42
~ a sound 41
~ a speech 49
~ a start 51
~ time for 40
~ your way 2
~ a withdrawal 37
~ yourself at home 21
contract **malaria** 26
male lead 23
unhurried **manner** 47
large scale **map** 42
margins of society 39
mark the beginning of the end 51
gain good **marks** 52
market
~ forces 31
carry out ~ research 31
happily **married** 4
massive hit 24
match *noun*
away ~ 25
have a football ~ 25
home ~ 25
lose a ~ 25

play a football ~ 25
win a ~ 11, 25
match *verb*
trousers ~ a jacket 43
matt
~ finish 44
~ paint 44
matter of opinion 56
meal
big ~ 1
Chinese/Mexican/French ~ 22
decent ~ 22
gourmet ~ 22
light ~ 22
~ ended 51
nourishing ~ 22
quick ~ 1
ready ~ 22
slap-up ~ 22
substantial ~ 1, 22
unit of **measurement** 46
meat
tender ~ 44
tough ~ 44
win a **medal** 11
meet requirements 2
meeting
arrange a ~ 30
close a ~ 10
haunting **melody** 24
melt
ice melts 44
snow melts 44
memory
blot out a ~ 54
earliest ~ 54
have a good ~ 54
long-term ~ 54
memories come flooding back 54
memories fade 54
painful ~ 54
short-term ~ 54
~ stick 27
stir up memories 54
set **menu** 22
company **merges** 4
economic **migrant** 39
milk goes sour 45
mind
change your ~ 48
~ goes blank 54
razor-sharp ~ 17
mindless vandalism 35
minimise the impact 53
minor
~ ailment 26
~ change 42
~ difference 42
~ difficulty 42
~ effect 42
~ factor 42
~ incident 38
~ injuries 26
~ issue 42
~ point 42
minute
~ amount 46
~ number 46
take the **minutes** 30
miserable
absolutely ~ 6
utterly ~ 6
fail **miserably** 52
misgivings
have ~ about 56
serious ~ 56
miss the point 52
missing teenager 5
mist
blanket of ~ 13
~ comes down 13
~ lifts 13
patches of ~ 13
mistake
make a ~ 1, 7
carry a **mobile phone** 11
make **modifications** 48
money
big ~ 37
change ~ 37
donate ~ to 37
earn ~ 11, 37
exchange ~ 48
great deal of ~ 42
make ~ 11, 37
~ is tied up in 37
~ is tight 37
raise ~ 37
save ~ 37
spend ~ 11
spend ~ (on) 37
squander ~ (on) 37
throw ~ around 37
throw ~ at 37
waste ~ (on) 37
spend a **month** 11
ancient **monument** 1
mood lightens 12
take out a **mortgage** 21
in slow **motion** 47
mountain
high ~ 42
mountains tower 15
rocky mountains 15
snow-covered mountains 15
mounting anger 21
droopy **moustache** 18
mouth
close your ~ 10
leave a bad taste in your ~ 45
leave an unpleasant taste in your ~ 45
shut your ~ 10
move
~ house 48
~ into a flat 21
~ into a house 21
~ out of a flat 21
deeply **moved** 6
rapid **movement** 47
much prefer 57
muffled sound 41
music
background ~ 24
live ~ 1, 24
~ blares (out) 41
~ blasts out from 24
~ lover 24
~ scene 24
piece of ~ 24
write the ~ 24
musical
~ heritage 24
~ talent 24
mutual friends 20
a place of **my** own 21
nail-biting finish 51
name
blacken someone's ~ 43
forget someone's ~ 54
narrowly
~ beaten 25
~ defeated 25
natural
~ disaster 39
need *verb*
badly ~ 5
need *noun*
desperate ~ 39
negative effect 53
negotiate a peace agreement 38
neighbouring
~ area 42
~ country 42
~ town 42
lose your **nerve** 52
set a **new** world record 25
newly-built apartment 21
news
be front-page ~ 36
be headline ~ 36
item of ~ 36
the latest ~ 36

  ~ breaks 36
  ~ comes in 36
  ~ develops 36
  ~ leaks out 36
flick through a **newspaper** 36
nice little 42
have a **nightmare** 9
last **night's** performance 60
have **no** option 57
no-go area 16
noise
  background ~ 41
  deafening ~ 41
  ear-splitting ~ 41
  excessive ~ 41
  grating ~ 41
nominate for an Oscar 23
nose
  straight ~ 18
  upturned ~ 18
pang of **nostalgia** 4
make a **note** 27
keep a **notebook** 28
have **nothing** but praise for 60
hand in your **notice** 30
nourishing meal 22
noxious fumes 45
nuclear family 19
go **numb** 54
number
  considerable ~ 46
  decline in the ~ of 46
  drop in the ~ of 46
  enormous ~ 46
  even ~ 46
  increase in the ~ of 46
  large ~ 42
  minute ~ 46
  odd ~ 46
  rise in the ~ of 46
  significant ~ 46
  small ~ 42
  substantial ~ 46
  surprising ~ 46
  tiny ~ 46
  up-tempo ~ 24
obey the law 34
object
  strenuously ~ 60
  strongly ~ 6, 60
make an **observation** 49
observe the law 34
obtain
  ~ a degree 28
  ~ a diploma 28
  ~ a qualification 28
occasion
  happy ~ 21
  sad ~ 21
  unique ~ 10
odd number 46
body **odour** 45
off-road parking 21
offence
  commit an ~ 35
  take ~ 59
young **offender** 35
offer *verb*
  ~ your congratulations 60
  ~ resistance 38
  ~ someone a job 30
offer *noun*
  accept an ~ 3
  refuse an ~ 58
  take someone up on an ~ 3
oily skin 44
old
  ~ building 10
  ~ friend 10
  quaint ~ building 16
grow **older** 8
online resources 27
only child 10
open
  ~ fields 15
  ~ fire 38
  ~ an attachment 27
opening
  ~ chapters 23
  ~ scenes 23
openly accuse 58
opinion
  conflict of ~ 55
  considered ~ 56
  difference of ~ 56
  have strong opinions 56
  hold the ~ that 56
  matter of ~ 56
  opinions are divided 56
  share an ~ 55
  share someone's ~ on 56
  state an ~ 33
opponent
  beat an ~ 11
  defeat an ~ 11
  foul your ~ 25
  tackle an ~ 25
opportunity
  create opportunities 4
  golden ~ 39
  ~ of a lifetime 57
  pass up the ~ 57
strongly **opposed** 6
produce the **opposite** effect 53
run up against **opposition** 50
option
  consider the options 57
  have no ~ 57
  take the soft ~ 57
  weigh up the options 57
conduct an **orchestra** 24
restore **order** 38
organic food 22
nominate for an **Oscar** 23
put **others** first 17
outbreak hits 5
outcome
  inevitable ~ 53
  predictable ~ 53
  unexpected ~ 53
  unforeseen ~ 53
outgoing personality 17
outline plans 36
outspoken critic 60
outstanding performance 60
outward journey 14
oval face 18
receive a standing **ovation** 60
over-powering stink 45
ridiculously **over-sensitive** 54
overlook the garden 22
overnight journey 14
overpriced restaurant 16
a place of my **own** 21
deplete the **ozone** layer 39
pace *noun*
  brisk ~ 47
  fast ~ 47
pace *verb*
  ~ up and down 50
pain
  alleviate ~ 3
  alleviate the ~ 26
  cause ~ 3
  complain of ~ 3
  constant ~ 3
  cry of ~ 41
  ease ~ 3
  ease the ~ 2
  excruciating ~ 26
  experience ~ 3
  feel ~ 3
  inflict ~ 3
  lessen ~ 3
  ~ subsides 3
  racked with ~ 3
  relieve ~ 3
  relieve the ~ 26
  sharp ~ 2, 3
  soothe ~ 3
  suffer from ~ 3
  unbearable ~ 26
painful
  acutely ~ 26
  intensely ~ 26
  ~ memory 54

painfully
~ shy 17
~ slow 47
~ thin 42
aches and **pains** 3
paint
gloss ~ 44
matt ~ 44
pale blue 43
pang of nostalgia 4
panoramic view 15
draw **parallels** 33
single **parent** 10, 19
off-road **parking** 21
play a **part** 32
particular liking 59
go into **partnership** with 5, 31
party
have a ~ 2, 9
house-warming ~ 21
interested ~ 36
invite someone to a ~ 21
pass
~ an exam 52
~ a law 34
~ the time 40
~ up the opportunity 57
time passes 40
passionate love 59
valid **passport** 1
log in with username and
past
~ few weeks 40
recent ~ 40
pat on the back 60
patches
~ of fog 13
~ of mist 13
follow a **path** 15
lose your **patience** 17
patter of rain 41
pavement café 16
pay
~ attention 9
~ a compliment 9
~ a fine 34
~ your (last) respects 9
~ tribute 9
prompt **payment** 47
peace
bring about ~ 38
keep the ~ 38
lasting ~ 38
negotiate a ~ agreement 38
~ activist 38
~ treaty 38
peaceful countryside 15
peacekeeping forces 38
at the **peak** of your career 30
penalty
face the death ~ 34
harsh ~ 34
practise taking a ~ 25
take a ~ 25
pencil
blunt ~ 44
sharp ~ 44
people
injured ~ 10, 26
~ pour 12
~ stream 12
~ trickle 12
perfect
~ end 51
~ example 32
performance
enhance your ~ 25
give a ~ 23, 24, 60
improvement in ~ 48
last night's ~ 60
live ~ 24
outstanding ~ 60
virtuoso ~ 24
perfume
fragrant ~ 45
whiff of ~ 45
perishable food 22
permanent
~ job 30
rules **permit** 34
person
elderly ~ 10
fat ~ 42
plump ~ 42
rob a ~ 35
sensible ~ 54
sensitive ~ 54
skinny ~ 42
slim ~ 42
tall ~ 42
well-built ~ 18
achieve a **personal** best 25
personality
aspect of someone's ~ 17
outgoing ~ 17
petty crime 35
phone
answer the ~ 30
carry a mobile ~ 11
charge a ~ 10 make
a ~ call 7
photo
take a ~ 1
take photos 9
make **photocopies** 30
pick your way cautiously 50
pick up
~ speed 47
wind picks up 13
picture take a ~ 15
piece
compose a ~ 24
~ of advice 2
~ of music 24
play a ~ 24
piercing cry 41
pillow
firm ~ 44
hard ~ 44
soft ~ 44
pinpoint of light 43
pitch dark 1, 43
place *noun*
change places 48
far-flung places 42
far-off places 42
gain a ~ 25
get a ~ 25
lonely ~ 10
a ~ of my own 21
~ to start 27
place *verb*
~ gently 4
commit **plagiarism** 32
plane
board a ~ 14
get on a ~ 5
outline **plans** 36
grow **plants** 10
play *verb*
~ badminton 25
~ baseball 25
~ billiards 25
~ bowls 25
~ cards 25
~ a central role 32
~ chess 25
~ computer games 25
~ cricket 25
~ darts 25
~ dominoes 25
~ a football game 25
~ a football match 25
~ games 25
~ a game of 25
~ a game of football 25
~ golf 25
~ the guitar 1
~ hockey 25
~ a joke on 17
~ a part 32
~ a piece 24
~ the role of 23
~ rugby 25
~ sport 25

  ~ table tennis 25
  ~ tennis 25
  ~ a trick on 17
play *noun*
  ~ flops 52
player
  drop a ~ 25
  good team ~ 30
plead ignorance 49
pleasure
  give someone ~ 59
  great ~ 59
  huge ~ 59
  take ~ 59
plump person 42
catch **pneumonia** 26
point
  agree up to a ~ 55
  appreciate someone's ~ of view 55
  get to the ~ 49
  major ~ 42
  make a ~ 58
  minor ~ 42
  miss the ~ 52
  see someone's ~ 55
pointed face 18
food **poisoning** 22
poles apart 56
police
  ~ crack down 5
  ~ quiz 5
make **polite** conversation 49
address someone **politely** 49
political
  ~ asylum 39
  ~ prisoner 35
green **politics** 39
tackle **pollution** 39
poor little 42
pop idol 24
popular
  become ~ 8
  ~ belief 56
portly gentleman 18
pose a problem 4
position
  adopt a ~ 33
  take up a ~ 33
positive effect 53
take **possession** of the ball 25
try every **possible** way 2
pour
  people ~ 12
  ~ with rain 13
poverty
  alleviate ~ 39
  below the ~ line 39
  combat ~ 39
  eradicate ~ 39
  escape ~ 39
  lift someone out of ~ 39
  widespread ~ 46
power *verb*
is powered by software 11
power *noun*
  gain ~ 11
powerful
  ~ engine 1
  ~ argument 32
practise taking a penalty 25
praise
  have nothing but ~ for 60
  sing someone's praises 60
  win ~ 60
predictable outcome 53
much **prefer** 57
preference
  clear ~ 59
  state a ~ 59
  strong ~ 59
pregnant
  become ~ 8
  get ~ 8
prehistoric times 40
make **preparations** 30
prescribe tablets 26
present a case for 33
presentation
  effective ~ 29
  give a ~ 30
  interactive ~ 29
  prepare a ~ 29
  ~ software 29
pretty
  ~ awful 5
  ~ dreadful 5
  ~ dull 5
price
  high ~ 37, 42
  low ~ 37, 42
  ~ goes down 37
  ~ goes up 37
  ~ increases 37
  ~ rises 37, 48
  ~ soars 37
  ~ war 38
  prices rise 4
  pump prices 5
  ridiculous ~ 37
  rock-bottom ~ 37
  slash prices 5
reasonably **priced** 22, 37
pricey restaurant 16
pride
  sense of ~ 4
  swallow your ~ 17 s
  well with ~ 4
  take ~ in 59
prime suspect 5
prisoner
  political ~ 35
  take ~ 38
win a **prize** 11
problem
  big ~ 10
  create problems 53
  have a ~ 9
  have problems 9
  little ~ 42
  major ~ 4
  pose a ~ 4
  ~ arises 48
  run into problems 50
  world-wide ~ 39
processed food 22
produce *verb*
  ~ the opposite effect 53
  ~ results 53
produce *noun*
  fresh ~ 22
launch a **product** 31
production
  dazzling ~ 60
  put on a ~ 60
take up a **profession** 1
profit
  falling profits 5
  make a ~ 11, 31
  profits rise 48
profitable
  extremely ~ 6
  highly ~ 6
disagree **profoundly** 33
apologise **profusely** 49
programme
  follow a fitness ~ 26
  see a ~ on television 23
  stick to a ~ 26
  watch a ~ on television 23
progress
  make ~ 2, 7
  make good ~ 52
  rapid ~ 47
law **prohibits** 34
project
  carry out a research ~ 28
  conduct a research ~ 28
  do a research ~ 28
promising
  ~ career 30
  ~ start 51
prompt
  ~ payment 47

  ~ reply 47
  ~ response 47
irrefutable **proof** 32
accept someone's **proposal** 20
propose a theory 32
prosecute trespassers 5
protect the environment 15
smile **proudly** 4
provide
  ~ evidence 32
  ~ for your family 19
  ~ training 28
receptacle **provided** 5
public
  go ~ 31
  ~ speaking 29
publicity
  blaze of ~ 12
  gain ~ 11
publish a story 36
pull steadily 4
pump prices 5
severely **punished** 34
stride **purposefully** 50
put
  ~ the finishing touches to 51
  ~ others first 17
put forward
  ~ an argument 33
  ~ a theory 32, 58
put off (making) a decision 57
put on a production 60
put up
  ~ a fight 25
  ~ a fight against 38
quaint old building 16
qualification
  acquire a ~ 28
  get a ~ 28
  obtain a ~ 28
  recognise qualifications 28
quantity
  large ~ 42
  small ~ 42
question
  deal with questions 29
  raise a ~ 48
  raise questions 33
quick
  have a ~ snack 22
  ~ answer 47
  ~ decision 47
  ~ glance 1, 47
  ~ look 47
  ~ lunch 47
  ~ meal 1
  ~ shower 47
  ~ word 49
police **quiz** 5
racked with pain 3
radio blares (out) 41
rage
  battle rages 38
  controversy rages 55
rain *noun*
  driving ~ 13
  heavy ~ 13
  looks like ~ 13
  patter of ~ 41
  pour with ~ 13
  torrential ~ 13
rain *verb*
  ~ heavily 13
raise
  ~ capital 5
  ~ cattle 10
  ~ children 10, 19
  ~ a family 19
  ~ your hand 48
  ~ money 37
  ~ a question 48
  ~ questions 33
  ~ a subject 49
  ~ taxes 48
range
  at close ~ 42
  within firing ~ 38
rap artist 24
rapid
  ~ change 47
  ~ decline 47
  ~ growth 47
  ~ increase 47
  ~ movement 47
  ~ progress 47
rare
  ~ bird 46
  ~ coin 46
  ~ disease 46
  ~ species 46
rate
  birth ~ 46
  crime ~ 35
  high interest rates 42
  ~ falls 46
  ~ rises 46
raucous laughter 41
rave review 60
ray of sunlight 43
razor-sharp mind 17
reach
  ~ a compromise 55
  ~ a verdict 34
swift **reaction** 47
easy **read** 23
reading
  bedtime ~ 23
  compulsive ~ 23
ready meal 22
really
  get a ~ good deal 37
  ~ enjoy 2
have **reason** to believe 56
reasonably
  ~ priced 22, 37
receive
  ~ critical acclaim 60
  ~ an education 28
  ~ a grade 28
  ~ a standing ovation 60
recent past 40
receptacle provided 5
be a **recipe** for disaster 52
recognise qualifications 28
gain **recognition** 11
recommend
  ~ a book 23
  ~ a film 23
  strongly ~ 6
highly **recommended** 6, 23
record *noun*
  break the world ~ 25
  criminal ~ 35
  keep a ~ (of) 27, 30
  set a new world ~ 25
  speak off the ~ 49
  world ~ holder 25
make a **recording** 1
recovery
  speedy ~ 47
  swift ~ 47
red
  go ~ 8
  turn ~ 8
reduce
  ~ the impact 53
make **redundant** 5
make **reference** to 33
refine your search 27
refreshing drink 22
completely **refurbished** 21
refuse
  ~ an invitation 58
  ~ an offer 58
regard
  greatest ~ 59
  highest ~ 59
deprived **region** 39
regret
  bitterly ~ 6
  deeply ~ 6
regulations
  comply with the ~ 34
  ~ apply to 34
  ~ require 34
  ~ stipulate 34

reject
~ a claim 58
~ an idea 58
~ something out of hand 57
~ a suggestion 58
relationship
end a ~ 10
have a good ~ with someone 20
relative
blood ~ 19
close ~ 19
distant ~ 19
relaxed atmosphere 16
release a CD 24
relieve
~ pain 3
~ the pain 26
religious
deeply ~ 6
relish the thought 59
remain
~ constant 46
~ stable 46
remarkable achievement 52
remember
distinctly ~ 54
if I ~ rightly 54
~ someone's face 54
vaguely ~ 54
vividly ~ 54
remind someone strongly of 54
remix a track 24
available to **rent** 21
debt **repayment** 39
prompt **reply** 47
gain a **reputation** 11
regulations **require** 34
meet **requirements** 2, 30
research
carry out a ~ project 28
conduct a ~ project 28
do ~ 28, 32
do a ~ project 28
groundbreaking ~ 32
~ suggests 33
bearing a striking **resemblance** to 18
bitterly **resent** 6
make a **reservation** 14, 30
reserve judgement 57
residential
~ area 16, 21
offer **resistance** 38
respect *verb*
~ the law 34
respect *noun*
win ~ 52
respectable family 19
pay your (last) **respects** 9
respond to criticism 60
response
emotional ~ 21
prompt ~ 47
speedy ~ 47
swift ~ 47
responsibility
disclaim ~ 58
sense of ~ 17
have a **rest** 2
restaurant
overpriced ~ 16
pricey ~ 16
restore order 38
result
direct ~ 53
end ~ 51
indirect ~ 53
inevitable ~ 53
produce results 53
unforeseen ~ 53
take early **retirement** 30
return *verb*
~ someone's love 20
return *adjective*
~ journey 14
reveal your true character 17
review *noun*
book ~ 23
film ~ 23
give a book a bad ~ 23
give a film a bad ~ 23
rave ~ 60
review *verb*
~ a book 23
~ a film 23
book **reviewer** 23
revolting stench 45
bring about a **revolution** 53
revolutionise the way 48
rewarding job 30
seriously **rich** 37
richly deserved 60
ridiculous
absolutely ~ 6
~ price 37
utterly ~ 6
ridiculously
~ cheap 6
~ early 6
~ easy 6
~ expensive 6
~ high 6
~ large 6
~ long 6
~ low 6
~ over-sensitive 54
~ short 6
~ small 6
right on time 40
if I remember **rightly** 54
give someone a **ring** 2, 5
shot **rings out** 41
spark off **riots** 53
rise *verb*
price rises 37, 48
prices ~ 4
profits ~ 48
rate rises 46
~ sharply 46
~ steeply 46
standard of living rises 48
the sun rises 48
rise *noun*
dramatic ~ 46
~ in the number of 46
sharp ~ 2
rising sea levels 39
take a **risk** 9
rival company 31
river
fast-flowing ~ 15
~ bursts its banks 13
road
bumpy ~ 44
smooth ~ 44
roar *verb*
~ with laughter 4
roar *noun*
incessant ~ 16
~ of traffic 41
rob
~ an institution 35
~ a person 35
conviction for **robbery** 35
rock-bottom price 37
spending **rockets** 5
rocky mountains 15
role
cameo ~ 23
play a central ~ 32
play the ~ of 23
tear off **roofs** 13
room
cramped ~ 21
spacious living ~ 21
rough
~ complexion 44
~ sea 44
~ skin 44
~ surface 44
~ water 44
sleep ~ 39
round *noun*
~ of applause 60
~ of a competition 25
round *verb*
~ a bend 15

round *adjective*
  ~ face 18
roundly criticise 60
have a **row** 9
play **rugby** 25
ruin *noun*
  fall into ~ 15
  lie in ruins 15
ruin *verb*
  ~ someone's career 30
rules
  bend the ~ 34
  follow the ~ 34
  keep to the ~ 1
  ~ allow 34
  ~ apply to 34
  ~ permit 34
  stick to the ~ 1
rumble of thunder 41
rumour
  deny a ~ 58
  spark off rumours 53
run *noun*
  go for a ~ 50
run *verb*
  avenue runs 16
  colour runs 43
  ~ a bath 2
  ~ contrary to 58
  ~ into problems 50
  ~ out of time 40
  ~ a story 36
run up against opposition 50
run-down
  ~ building 16
  ~ hotel 14
running
  go ~ 50
  ~ battle 38
rush headlong into 50
rustling sound 41
sad
  desperately ~ 21
  ~ occasion 21
great **sadness** 21
safe journey 14
go **sailing** 25
salary
  earn a good ~ 37
  earn a ~ 11
sales figures 31
share the **same** taste in 45
golden **sands** 15
sandy beach 15
job **satisfaction** 30
save
  ~ money 37
  ~ time 40
scale
  large ~ map 42
  on a large ~ 42
  on a small ~ 42
music **scene** 24
breathtaking **scenery** 15
scenes
  closing ~ 23
  opening ~ 23
fresh **scent** 45
scheduled flight 14
change **schools** 48
scorching hot 13
score a goal 25
scratching sound 41
screen *noun*
  ~ the big ~ 23
sea
  choppy ~ 44
  rising ~ levels 39
  rough ~ 44
  smooth ~ 44
refine your **search** 27
search by keyword 27
seat
  aisle ~ 14
  window ~ 14
  change seats 48
fasten your **seatbelt** 14
secluded beach 15
second
  have ~ thoughts 57
  ~ cousin 19
  ~ home 21
secret of your success 31
keep **secrets** 17
see
  ~ a film at the cinema 23
  ~ a film on television 23
  ~ a programme on television 23
  ~ someone's point 55
well worth **seeing** 15
seek political asylum 39
asylum **seeker** 39
seething with anger 21
seize control 36
selfish streak 17
send in an application 28
cause a **sensation** 53
sense *noun*
  acute ~ of smell 54
  good ~ of humour 17
  ~ of humour 17
  ~ of pride 4
  ~ of responsibility 17
sense *verb*
  ~ tension 54
sensible
  ~ decision 57
  ~ person 54
sensitive
  ~ person 54
  ~ skin 54
  ~ teeth 54
  ~ to heat 54
  ~ to light 54
sentence
  harsh ~ 34
  serve a ~ of (period of time) 35
trial **separation** 19
serious
  ~ allegation 58
  ~ illness 26
  ~ injuries 26
  ~ misgivings 56
  target ~ crime 35
seriously rich 37
serve a sentence of 35
training **session** 25
set *verb*
  ~ your alarm 40
  ~ high standards 17
  ~ a new world record 25
  ~ targets 30
set *noun*
  ~ of beliefs 56
set *adjective*
  ~ menu 22
set out an argument 32
set up
  ~ a business 66
  ~ home 19
dramatic **setting** 15
settle
  ~ your differences 55
  ~ a dispute 55
severely
  ~ condemn 60
  ~ punished 34
sexual exploitation 39
shadow
  cast a ~ over 43
  be under the ~ of 43
shanty town 16
shape *noun*
  in good ~ 26
shape *verb*
  ~ our thinking 32
share
  ~ an opinion 55
  ~ the same taste in 45
  ~ someone's opinion on 56
  ~ a view 55
sharp
  have a ~ tongue 44

  ~ bend 2
  ~ contrast 2
  ~ difference 2
  ~ distinction 2
  ~ drop 2
  ~ increase 2
  ~ knife 44
  ~ pain 2, 3
  ~ pencil 44
  ~ rise 2
  ~ turn 2
sharply
  fall ~ 46
  rise ~ 46
  ~ critical 60
shed some light on 43
sheer enjoyment 59
shine
  eyes ~ 12
  face shines 12
deeply **shocked** 6
shoot a film 23
shop
  lined with shops 16
  upmarket shops 16
shopping
  do some ~ 2
  do the ~ 7
short
  in ~ supply 37
  ridiculously ~ 6
  ~ distance from 42
short-let accommodation 21
short-term memory 54
take a **shortcut** 47
shot rings out 41
shoulder-length hair 18
broad **shoulders** 18
show
  ~ your disapproval 60
  ~ your feelings 21
quick **shower** 47
shrill
  ~ laugh 41
  ~ voice 41
shut your mouth 10
painfully **shy** 17
worried **sick** 21
give a **sigh** 41
sight
  catch ~ of 15
  love at first ~ 20
sign a treaty 38
assess the **significance** of 33
significant
  ~ amount 46
  ~ contribution 32
  ~ number 46
  ~ trend 32
silence
  break the ~ 41
  eerie ~ 41
fall **silent** 8
simple
  keep ~ 29
  ~ solution 39
sing
  birds ~ 41
  ~ someone's praises 60
single parent 10, 19
sit an exam 28
sticky **situation** 44
large **size** 10
go **skateboarding** 25
go **skiing** 25
skim through a book 23
skin
  dry ~ 44
  oily ~ 44
  rough ~ 44
  sensitive ~ 54
  smooth ~ 44
skinny person 42
velvety **sky** 44
city **skyline** 16
slap-up meal 22
slash prices 5
sleek hair 18
sleep rough 39
slender waist 18
slight
  make a ~ alteration 48
  ~ cold 26
  ~ hesitation 57
slim
  ~ book 42
  ~ figure 18
  ~ person 42
steep **slope** 15
slow *adjective*
  painfully ~ 47
  in ~ motion 47
slow *verb*
  ~ to a crawl 47
slow-moving traffic 47
small
  look ~ 42
  make a ~ fortune 37
  make ~ talk 42
  on a ~ scale 42
  ridiculously ~ 6
  ~ amount 42
  the ~ hours 40
  ~ increase 42
  ~ number 42
  ~ quantity 42
smart hotel 14
smell *noun*
  acute sense of ~ 54
  give off a ~ 45
  have a ~ 45
  ~ wafts 45
  strong ~ 45
smell *verb*
  ~ danger 45
  ~ off 45
smile *noun*
  sunny ~ 12
smile *verb*
  ~ proudly 4
acrid **smoke** 45
smooth
  ~ complexion 44
  ~ flight 14, 44
  ~ road 44
  ~ sea 44
  ~ skin 44
  ~ surface 44
  ~ texture 44
  ~ water 44
go **smoothly** 44
have a quick **snack** 22
snap decisions 17
have a **sneaking** suspicion 56
snow
  crisp ~ 13
  driving ~ 13
  fresh ~ 13
  heavy ~ 1, 13
  ~ melts 44
  ~ thaws 44
  thick ~ 13
snow-covered mountains 15
go **snowboarding** 25
soak up the sunshine 13
price **soars** 37
margins of **society** 39
damaged **sofa** 10
soft
  fruit goes ~ 44
  ~ bed 44
  ~ drink 22
  ~ ground 44
  ~ pillow 44
  take the ~ option 57
soften
  attitude softens 44
  voice softens 44
softly
  whisper ~ 4, 49
sole survivor 10
solitary figure 10
go **solo** 24
simple **solution** 39
song
  burst into ~ 4
soothe pain 3

sound *noun*
  clicking ~ 41
  crackling ~ 41
  deafening ~ 41
  ear-splitting ~ 41
  grating ~ 41
  make a ~ 41
  muffled ~ 41
  rustling ~ 41
  scratching ~ 41
sound *adjective*
  ~ judgement 57
milk goes **sour** 45
sources
  acknowledge your ~ 32
spacious living room 22
block **spam** 27
career **spans** 30
spare time 40
spark off
  ~ demonstrations 53
  ~ riots 53
  ~ rumours 53
spate of burglaries 35
speak
  ~ clearly 29
  ~ highly of 60
  ~ a language 49
  ~ off the record 49
  ~ well of 60
special friend 20
special effects 23
rare **species** 46
spectacular
  ~ failure 52
  ~ view 15
make a **speech** 49
speed
  at breakneck ~ 47
  gather ~ 47
  pick up ~ 47
  top ~ 47
speedy
  ~ access 47
  ~ conclusion 47
  ~ recovery 47
  ~ response 47
spend
  ~ days 11
  ~ hours 11
  ~ money 11
  ~ money (on) 37
  ~ a month/week 11
  ~ some time 40
  ~ your time 2
spending rockets 5
splitting headache 26
spoil
  ~ your appetite 22
  ~ a friendship 20
sport
  do ~ 25
  play ~ 25
lonely **spot** 10
sprawling city 16
squander money (on) 37
stable
  remain ~ 46
  ~ home 19
take on **staff** 31
stage
  go on the ~ 23
  ~ of a competition 25
staggering increase 35
stand up straight 29
standard of living rises 48
set high **standards** 17
receive a **standing** ovation 60
come to a **standstill** 47
star *noun*
  ~ twinkles 43
star *verb*
  ~ in a film 23
start *verb*
  available to ~ work 30
  ~ a car 10
  ~ a family 19
start *noun*
  early ~ 51
  get off to a good ~ 51
  make a ~ 51
  promising ~ 51
start up a business 5
get **started** 51
state *verb*
  ~ clearly 58
  ~ an opinion 33
  ~ a preference 59
issue a **statement** 58
steadily
  increase ~ 46
  pull ~ 4
steady
  ~ income 37
  ~ job 30
steal
  ~ a car 35
  ~ something 35
steep slope 15
steeply
  fall ~ 46
  rise ~ 46
steer the conversation 47
revolting **stench** 45
steps
  faltering ~ 50
  heavy ~ 50
  light ~ 50
  take ~ 47, 50
stick
  ~ to a programme 26
  ~ to the rules 1
sticky
  ~ fingers 44
  ~ situation 44
bored **stiff** 5
stimulating working environment 30
over-powering **stink** 45
regulations **stipulate** 34
stir up memories 54
fish **stocks** 39
freak **storms** 13
story
  based on a ~ 23
  publish a ~ 36
  run a ~ 36
  ~ breaks 36
  tell a ~ 49
  true ~ 23
straight nose 18
selfish **streak** 17
stream *noun*
  babbling ~ 41
  ~ of traffic 12
  ~ of visitors 12
  ~ winds 15
stream *verb*
  people ~ 12
  tears ~ down someone's face 12
street
  cobbled ~ 16
  live on the ~ 39
  ~ children 39
  ~ crime 35
  take to the ~ 39
strength of character 17
strengthen the impact 53
strenuously
  ~ defend 32
  ~ object 60
beach **stretches** 15
strewn with litter 16
strictly forbidden 1, 6
stride
  ~ angrily 50
  ~ confidently 50
  ~ purposefully 50
make great **strides** 50
strike
  lightning strikes 36
strike up
  ~ a conversation 49
  ~ a friendship 20

striking
  bearing a ~ resemblance to 18
  have a ~ appearance 18
stroll
  gentle ~ 50
  leisurely ~ 50
  take a ~ 50
strong
  ~ aversion 59
  have ~ opinions 56
  ~ preference 59
  ~ smell 45
  ~ sun 13
  ~ tendency 32
  ~ wind 13
strongly
  argue ~ 6
  feel ~ 6
  remind someone ~ of 54
  ~ advise 57
  ~ believe 6
  ~ condemn 6
  ~ deny 6, 58
  ~ disapprove of 60
  ~ dislike 6
  ~ influence 6
  ~ object 6, 60
  ~ opposed 6
  ~ recommend 6
  ~ suggest 6
  ~ support 6
strum a guitar 24
studio flat 21
study *verb*
  ~ for a degree 2, 28
  ~ for a diploma 28
  ~ history 28
  ~ a subject 28
study *noun*
  carry out a ~ 32
  cosy ~ 21
stupid
  absolutely ~ 6
  utterly ~ 6
subdued colour 43
subject
  change the ~ 48, 49
  delicate ~ 49
  do a ~ 28
  raise a ~ 49
  study a ~ 28
  take a ~ 28
submit
  ~ an application 28, 30
  ~ a tender 5
subscribe to online journals 27
pain **subsides** 3
substantial
  ~ amount 46
  ~ meal 1, 22
  ~ number 46
substantiate a claim 58
bring on a **substitute** 25
subtle flavour 45
comfortable **suburbs** 16
success
  achieve ~ 11
  brilliant ~ 52
  great ~ 52
  guarantee ~ 52
successful
  become ~ 48
  extremely ~ 6
  highly ~ 6
suffer
  ~ from asthma 26
  ~ from backache 26
  ~ the consequences 34, 53
  ~ from hay fever 26
  ~ a heart attack 8
  ~ injuries 26
  ~ from pain 3
suggest
  strongly ~ 6
  research suggests 33
reject a **suggestion** 58
suitable accommodation 21
carry a **suitcase** 11
briefly **summarise** 33
concise **summary** 32
sun
  glare of the ~ 43
  strong ~ 13
  the ~ rises 48
ray of **sunlight** 43
sunny
  ~ day 12
  ~ face 12
  ~ smile 12
sunshine
  soak up the ~ 13
  unbroken ~ 13
supervise work 30
in short **supply** 37
support *verb*
  broadly ~ 32
  strongly ~ 6
  ~ a claim 32
support *noun*
  attract ~ 53
  lend ~ to 33
  widespread ~ 46
supporting evidence 32
supremely confident 17
surface
  rough ~ 44
  smooth ~ 44
go **surfing** 25
surge
  ~ of anger 4
  ~ of emotion 4
cry of **surprise** 41
surprising
  ~ amount 46
  ~ number 46
surrounding countryside 15
sole **survivor** 10
prime **suspect** 5
have a sneaking **suspicion** 56
sustain injuries 26
swallow your pride 17
swell with pride 4
swift
  ~ action 47
  ~ reaction 47
  ~ recovery 47
  ~ response 47
walk **swiftly** 50
have **sympathy** 59
play **table** tennis 25
prescribe **tablets** 26
tackle
  ~ crime 35
  ~ an opponent 25
  ~ pollution 39
take
  practise taking a penalty 25
  ~ action 9
  ~ advantage of 9, 52
  ~ a bus 9
  ~ captive 36
  ~ care of 2
  ~ a chance 9
  ~ charge of 30
  ~ clothes 11
  ~ a course 28
  ~ a decision 57
  ~ a degree 28
  ~ a detour 47
  ~ a diploma 28
  ~ a dislike to 9, 59
  ~ early retirement 30
  ~ an exam 2, 28
  ~ exercise 26
  ~ a free kick 25
  ~ full credit for 60
  ~ a holiday 9
  ~ hostage 36
  ~ an interest in 9
  ~ into consideration 33
  ~ a joke 17
  ~ the lead 25
  ~ a liking to 9
  ~ a look 2
  ~ the minutes 30
  ~ offence 59
  ~ a penalty 25

~ a photo 1
~ photos 9
~ a picture 15
~ pleasure 59
~ possession of the ball 25
~ pride in 59
~ prisoner 38
~ responsibility 5
~ a risk 9
~ a shortcut 47
~ the soft option 57
~ someone ages 40
~ someone up on an offer 3
~ someone's advice 57
~ steps 47, 50
~ a stroll 50
~ a subject 28
~ your time 40
~ to the streets 39
~ a train 9
~ a trip 9
career **takes off** 30
take on work 30
take out a mortgage 21
take up
~ the guitar 24
~ a position 33
~ a profession 1
be **taken** ill 26
musical **talent** 24
talk
do a ~ 28
give a ~ 28
make small ~ 42
talks
hold ~ 36
~ break down 36
tall
~ building 42
~ person 42
~ tree 42
throw a **tantrum** 17
target audience 29
target serious crime 35
set **targets** 30
taste *noun*
acquired ~ 45
cater for someone's tastes 59
develop a ~ for 45
have a ~ 45
leave a bad ~ in your mouth 45
leave an unpleasant ~ in your mouth 45
share the same ~ in 45
taste *verb*
~ freedom 45
raise **taxes** 48
team
beat a ~ 11
close ~ 30
defeat a ~ 11
good ~ player 30
tear off roofs 13
tears
burst into ~ 4
flood of ~ 12
~ stream down someone's face 12
missing **teenager** 5
sensitive **teeth** 54
field **telephone** calls 30
television
see a film on ~ 23
see a programme on ~ 23
watch a film on ~ 23
watch a programme on ~ 23
watch ~ 23
tell
~ a joke 49
~ a lie 49
~ someone the time 40
~ a story 49
~ the truth 49
temper
fiery ~ 12
keep your ~ 17
lose your ~ 17, 21
tempers flare 12
tend
~ to agree 55
~ to disagree 55
tendency
have a ~ 17
strong ~ 32
tender *noun*
submit a ~ 5
tender *adjective*
~ meat 44
tennis
play table ~ 25
play ~ 25
sense **tension** 54
tentative explanation 32
terminally ill 26
come to **terms** with 17
act of **terrorism** 35
tertiary education 28
fail a drugs **test** 25
texture
creamy ~ 44
smooth ~ 44
snow **thaws** 44
vehicle **theft** 35
theory
challenge a ~ 32
propose a ~ 32
put forward a ~ 32, 58
thick
~ cloud 13
~ fog 13
~ hair 18
~ snow 13
painfully **thin** 42
things
damaged ~ 26
little ~ 42
think *verb*
~ hard 56
~ the world of someone 60
think *noun*
have a ~ 5
shape our **thinking** 32
thoroughly
~ disapprove 60
~ enjoy 2
thought
relish the ~ 59
dark thoughts 12
have second thoughts 57
throw
~ money around 37
~ money at 37
~ some light on 43
~ a tantrum 17
dull **thud** 41
rumble of **thunder** 41
thunderous applause 60
high **tide** 42
money is **tied** up in 37
money is **tight** 37
time
bang on ~ 40
big ~ 40
dead on ~ 40
free ~ 40
great deal of ~ 42
have a good ~ 9, 40
have a great ~ 40
have the ~ of your life 40
have ~ to 40
kill ~ 40
make ~ for 40
pass the ~ 40
right on ~ 40
run out of ~ 40
save ~ 40
spare ~ 40
spend some ~ 40
spend your ~ 2
take your ~ 40
tell someone the ~ 40
~ goes by 40
~ passes 40
waste ~ 40
times
ancient ~ 10
dark ~ 12
prehistoric ~ 40

tinged with gold 43
tiny
  ~ amount 46
  ~ number 46
tiring journey 14
death **toll** 39
tone
  ~ of someone’s voice 29, 49
have a sharp **tongue** 44
top
  ~ job 36
  ~ speed 47
torrential rain 13
total
  arrive at a ~ of 46
  come to a ~ of 46
touch *noun*
  keep in ~ 20
  lose ~ 20
  ~ of colour 43
touch on issues 33
put the finishing **touches** to 51
tough
  ~ choice 57
  ~ meat 44
go on **tour** 24
mountains **tower** 15
town
  neighbouring ~ 42
  shanty ~ 16
remix a **track** 24
traffic
  bumper-to-bumper ~ 16
  roar of ~ 41
  slow-moving ~ 47
  stream of ~ 12
  volume of ~ 16
train *noun*
  fast ~ 47
  take a ~ 9
train *verb*
  ~ hard 25
training
  do circuit ~ 25
  provide ~ 28
  ~ session 25
tranquil countryside 15
power to **transform** 48
bring about a **transformation** 53
travel *verb*
  ~ alone 10
  ~ a distance of x kilometres 42
travel *noun*
  business ~ 14
  ~ agent 14
  ~ arrangements 14
  ~ brochure 14
tread carefully 4
treaty
  peace ~ 38
  sign a ~ 38
tall **tree** 42
tree-lined avenue 16
significant **trend** 32
prosecute **trespassers** 5
trial *noun*
  fair ~ 34
  go on ~ 34
trial *adjective*
  ~ separation 19
pay **tribute** 9
play a **trick** on 17
people **trickle** 12
trip
  boat ~ 14
  business ~ 14
  camping ~ 14
  day ~ 14 take a ~ 9
  ~ ended 51
trivial ailment 26
win a **trophy** 11
troubles flare up 12
trousers match a jacket 43
call a **truce** 38
true
  reveal your ~ character 17
  ~ story 23
trust
  ~ your intuition 54
  ~ someone’s judgement 56
tell the **truth** 49
try *verb*
  ~ every possible way 2
try *noun*
  have a ~ 9
tune *noun*
  catchy ~ 24
tune *verb*
  ~ an instrument 24
turn *verb*
  ~ a corner 15
  ~ gold 8
  ~ into a flat 22
  ~ red 8
  ~ something upside down 47
  ~ white 8
turn *noun*
  do someone a good ~ 7
  sharp ~ 2
  ~ of events 36
annual **turnover** 31
watch **TV** 1
star **twinkles** 43
contract **typhoid** 26
unanimous
  ~ agreement 55
  ~ decision 57
blissfully **unaware** 4
unbearable pain 26
unbroken sunshine 13
degree of **uncertainty** 57
love someone **unconditionally** 20
underlying cause 53
unexpected outcome 53
unforeseen
  ~ outcome 53
  ~ result 53
unforgettable experience 54
claims are **unfounded** 58
ungodly hours 40
deeply **unhappy** 6
unhurried manner 47
uninterrupted view 15
unique occasion 10
unit
  ~ of currency 46
  ~ of electricity 46
  ~ of length 46
  ~ of measurement 46
universal condemnation 60
universe begins 10
university
  leave ~ 1
  ~ entry 2
unlikely
  extremely ~ 6
  highly ~ 6
  leave an **unpleasant** taste in your mouth 45
become **unpopular** 8
unshakeable belief 56
unspoilt countryside 15
unusual
  extremely ~ 6
  highly ~ 6
unwanted items 5
update regularly 27
uphold the law 34
upload your files 27
upmarket shops 16
embark **upon** an explanation 5
cause an **uproar** 53
upset
  become ~ 8
  get ~ 8
turn something **upside** down 47
up-tempo number 24
upturned nose 18
urban wasteland 16
use a laptop 11
useful
  come in ~ 52
  ~ contribution 52
utterly
  ~ alone 6
  ~ appalled 6

  ~ convinced 6
  ~ devastated 6
  ~ exhausted 6
  ~ impossible 6
  ~ miserable 6
  ~ ridiculous 6
  ~ stupid 6
  ~ wrong 6
vaguely remember 54
valid passport 1
good **value** 16
mindless **vandalism** 35
vehicle
  ~ crime 35
  ~ theft 35
velvety sky 44
reach a **verdict** 34
view
  admire the ~ 15
  appreciate someone's point of ~ 55
  block the ~ 15
  come into ~ 15
  enjoy a ~ 15
  go along with a ~ 55
  have a ~ of 21
  hold the ~ that 56
  panoramic ~ 15
  share a ~ 55
  spectacular ~ 15
  uninterrupted ~ 15
vigorous exercise 26
violence flares up 12
violent
  become ~ 8
  get ~ 8
virtuoso performance 24
stream of **visitors** 12
visual aids 29
have a **vivid** imagination 17
vividly remember 54
voice
  shrill ~ 41
  ~ hardens 44
  ~ softens 44
  tone of someone's ~ 49
volume of traffic 16
smell **wafts** 45
low **wage** 42
slender **waist** 18
walk *verb*
  ~ briskly 50
  ~ an exam 50
  ~ swiftly 50
walk *noun*
  brisk ~ 47, 50
  easy ~ 50
  gentle ~ 50
  go for a ~ 50
walking
  go hill ~ 25
  ~ encyclopaedia 50
  within ~ distance 42
different **walks** of life 50
wander aimlessly 50
desperately **want** 25
war
  all-out ~ 38
  avert ~ 38
  declare ~ 38
  fight a ~ 38
  go to ~ 38
  horrors of ~ 38
  price ~ 38
  ~ breaks out 38
  ~ on crime 38
  win a ~ 11
give someone a **warm** welcome 59
warmly
  ~ approve 60
  ~ congratulate 60
do the **washing** 7
waste
  ~ money (on) 37
  ~ time 40
urban **wasteland** 16
watch
  close ~ 36
  keep a ~ on 36
  ~ a film on television 23
  ~ a programme on television 23
  ~ television 23
  ~ TV 1
water
  choppy ~ 44
  rough ~ 44
  smooth ~ 44
wave
  crime ~ 35
  waves crash 41
way
  effective ~ 52
  find a ~ 2
  find your ~ 2
  get in someone's ~ 2
  give ~ to 2
  learn the hard ~ 2
  make your ~ 2
  pick your ~ cautiously 50
  revolutionise the ~ 48
  try every possible ~ 2
wear
  ~ a dress 11
  ~ a hat 11
weather
  freak ~ conditions 13
  ~ deteriorates 13
  ~ gets worse 13
  ~ hits 13
  ~ improves 13
do a **web** search 27
week
  spend a ~ 11
  past few weeks 40
weep bitterly 6
weigh up the options 57
do **weightlifting** 25
welcome *noun*
  give someone a warm ~ 59
welcome *verb*
  ~ someone home 21
well
  colour goes ~ with 43
  speak ~ of 60
  ~ worth seeing 15
well-built person 18
whiff of perfume 45
worth your **while** 40
machine **whirrs** 41
whisper softly 4, 49
blow the **whistle** 25
wind **whistles** 13, 41
turn **white** 8
wholeheartedly agree 55
wholesale condemnation 60
widely acknowledged 58
widening gulf 39
capture a **wider** audience 24
widespread
  ~ condemnation 21
  ~ damage 46
  ~ interest 46
  ~ poverty 46
  ~ support 46
wife
  estranged ~ 19
  late ~ 19
win
  deserve to ~ 25
  ~ an award 11
  ~ a battle 11
  ~ a case 34
  ~ an election 11
  ~ a match 11, 25
  ~ a medal 11
  ~ praise 60
  ~ a prize 11
  ~ respect 52
  ~ a trophy 11
  ~ a war 11
wind *noun*
  biting ~ 13
  gale force winds 13
  high ~ 13
  light ~ 13
  strong ~ 13
  ~ blows 13

  ~ dies down 13
  ~ picks up 13
  ~ whistles 13, 41
wind *verb*
  stream winds 15
window seat 14
wise
  ~ choice 2
  ~ decision 57
wish someone luck 49
withdraw from a course 28
make a **withdrawal** 37
within
  act ~ the law 34
  ~ commuting distance 42
  ~ firing range 38
  ~ walking distance 42
dumpy **woman** 18
word
  give someone your ~ 49
  hasty words 47
  have a ~ 49
  keep your ~ 17
  quick ~ 49
work *noun*
  available to start ~ 30
  carry out ~ 30
  complete ~ 30
  do some ~ 2, 7
  hard ~ 52
  supervise ~ 30
  take on ~ 30
work *verb*
  ~ closely with 30
stimulating **working** environment 30
world
  break the ~ record 25
  set a new ~ record 25
  think the ~ of someone 60
  ~ record holder 25
world-wide problem 39
worried
  desperately ~ 2
  ~ sick 21
weather gets **worse** 13
worth
  well ~ seeing 15
  ~ your while 40
wreck *noun*
  emotional ~ 21
wreck *verb*
  ~ someone's career 30
do **wrestling** 25
write
  ~ an assignment 28
  ~ an essay 28
  ~ the music 24
  ~ a song 1
beautifully **written** 23
wrong
  absolutely ~ 6
  get off on the ~ foot 50
  go badly ~ 52
  go ~ 30
  utterly ~ 6
wrongly accuse 58
yellow
  bright ~ 43
  go ~ 8
yoga
  do ~ 25
  go to ~ 25
young offender 35
lanky **youth** 18
youthful appearance 18
industrial **zone** 16

CAMBRIDGE

ENGLISH IDIOMS IN USE

60 units of vocabulary reference and practice

Self-study and classroom use

Second Edition

Advanced

Felicity O'Dell
Michael McCarthy

Experience
Better
Learning

ENGLISH IDIOMS IN USE

60 units of vocabulary reference and practice

Self-study and classroom use

Second Edition

Advanced

Felicity O'Dell
Michael McCarthy

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom

One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA

477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia

4843/24, 2nd Floor, Ansari Road, Daryaganj, Delhi – 110002, India

79 Anson Road, #06–04/06, Singapore 079906

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/elt

© Cambridge University Press 2017

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2010
Second Edition 2017
20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Printed in Dubai by Oriental Press

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-131-6629734 Paperback

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party Internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

Acknowledgements 3

Using this book 4

Learning about idioms

In this section the units deal with key aspects of what idioms are and how you can use them.

1 What are idioms?
2 When and how are idioms used?
3 Using reference resources
4 Common metaphors in idioms
5 Using idioms accurately
6 Playing with idioms
7 Idioms from other varieties of English
8 Modern idioms

Types of idiom

In this section the units deal with specific types of idiom.

9 Similes
10 Binomials
11 Proverbs
12 Clichés and fixed statements
13 Other languages

Idioms from the topic area of ...

In this section the units are organised around the aspect of life from which the idioms have originated.

14 Sailing
15 War and conflict
16 Transport
17 Animals
18 Parts of the body
19 Games and sport
20 Ancient myths and history
21 Shakespeare
22 Literature
23 Learning
24 Science and technology

Idioms to talk about ...

In this section the units are organised around the topic or functional area where they are most likely to be used.

25 Films, plays and books
26 Relationships – friends and family
27 People – character and behaviour
28 Crime and punishment
29 Work
30 Business news
31 Business meetings
32 Money
33 Society
34 Daily life
35 Positive feelings
36 Negative feelings
37 Problems
38 Arguing

Idioms used in ...

This section focuses on some of the written contexts where idioms are frequently found.

39 Journalism
40 Advertising
41 Formal writing

Idioms used in conversation

This section focuses on ways in which idioms are typically used in spoken language.

42 Advising and warning
43 Telling stories
44 Responding to what people say
45 Agreeing and disagreeing
46 Expressing success and failure
47 Emphasising

Idioms using these keywords:

In this section each unit focuses on one keyword which has given rise to a particularly large number of English idioms.

48 Play and game
49 Half
50 Two
51 All
52 No
53 Hand
54 Heart
55 Life and live
56 Dead and death
57 Mind
58 Hard
59 Fall
60 Own

Key 126

Phonemic symbols 158

Index 159

Acknowledgements

Joy Godwin wrote two new units for the Second Edition: Unit 23, *Learning*, and Unit 38, *Arguing*. The publishers would like to thank Joy for her contribution to this edition.

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting & in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable.

Key: TR = Top Right.

Photographs

All the photographs are sourced from Getty Images.

p. 7: Oleh_Slobodeniuk/E+; p. 11: lisafx/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 17 (photo 1): Ryuichi Sato/Taxi Japan; p. 17 (photo 2): Simon Winnall/Taxi; p. 17 (photo 3): Richard Thwaites/Moment; p. 18: David Madison/The Image Bank; p. 21 (boat): Marek Jagoda/EyeEm; p. 21 (radar): Ivcandy/DigitalVision Vectors; p. 21 (runners): Tetra Images; p. 21 (clock): malerapaso/E+; p. 21 (woman): Dan Hallman/ Photographer's Choice; p. 25 (photo 1): Doug McKinlay/Perspectives; p. 25 (photo 2): Michael Steele/ Getty Images Europe; p. 25 (photo 3): Gerville/E+; p. 25 (photo 4): Anthony Lee/OJO Images; p. 32: Thinkstock Images/Stockbyte; p. 40: Michael Blann/Iconica; p. 50 (TR): Jack Hollingsworth/Blend Images; p. 50 (Kasia): Adam Orzechowski/Stone; p. 50 (Sadiq): petekarici/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 50 (Massimo): ajr_images/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 50 (Farah): Ryoko Uyama/Taxi; p. 50 (Ana): NADOFOTOS/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 54: Victor Chavez/WireImage; p. 60: Mgkaya/E+; p. 68: Jonathan Lansangan/EyeEm; p. 72: Maskot; p. 80: JohnnyGreig/E+; p. 81 (photo 1): Allan Baxter/The Images Bank; p. 81 (photo 2): Jana Leon/DigitalVision; p. 81 (photo 3): Stephanie McDowell/Moment Open; p. 81 (photo 4): Martin Shields/Photographer's Choice; p. 81 (photo 5): b-d-s/iStock; p. 81 (photo 6): Kami/arabianEye; p. 84 (photo 1): EasyBuy4u/E+; p. 84 (photo 2): Resolution Productions/ Blend Images; p. 84 (photo 3): Lauren Burke/DigitalVision; p. 90: Adrianko/Cultura; p. 92: andresr/E+; p. 98 (photo 1): Sam Edwards/OJO Images; p. 98 (photo 2): Ezra Bailey/Taxi; p. 102: wundervisuals/ E+; p. 106: Dougal Waters/DigitalVision; p. 117 (photo 1): Guillaume Souvant/Stringer/AFP; p. 117 (photo 2): Image Source; p. 117 (photo 3): ChoochartSansong/iStock; p. 117 (photo 4): Dimitrios Stefanidis/iStock; p. 117 (photo 5): Chris Howes/Canopy; p. 117 (photo 6): ChrisAt/E+.

Illustrations

emc design Ltd: pp. 48, 56, and 112; Christopher Flint (Lemonade Illustration): 19 and 59; John Goodwin (Eye Candy Illustration): pp. 10, 37, 45 and 105; 419 Ludmila (KJA Artists): pp. 13, 47, 49, 65, 101 and 119; John Lund (Beehive Illustration): pp. 40, 55, 67 and 79; Katie Mac (NB Illustration): pp. 15, 43, 63, 94 and 97; 302 Martina (KJA Artists): pp. 9, 22, 39, 75 and 89.

Using this book

Why was this book written?

It was written to help you take your knowledge of idioms to a more advanced level. The ability to use idioms accurately and appropriately is an indicator that you have a truly advanced level of English, and so this book pays attention to the productive use of idioms as well as to the comprehension of their meaning. Many of you will have already worked with *English Idioms in Use Intermediate*, and this book builds on the work done there. However, it does not matter if you have gained your knowledge of idioms in a different way. We do not assume that you have used *English Idioms in Use Intermediate*, although we do present and practise different idioms from those that were presented in the lower-level book.

How were the idioms in this book selected?

The idioms which are presented in this book were mainly selected from those identified as significant by the CANCODE corpus of spoken English, developed at the University of Nottingham in association with Cambridge University Press, and the Cambridge International Corpus of written and spoken English (now known as the Cambridge English Corpus). The idioms selected are all also to be found in the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary 4th Edition*, where you can find additional usage notes and examples. You can search this dictionary online by going to the following website: http://dictionary.cambridge.org

How is the book organised?

The book has 60 two-page units. The left-hand page explains the idioms that are presented in the unit. You will usually find an explanation of the meaning of the idiom, an example of it in use and, where appropriate, some comments on when and how it is used. The exercises on the right-hand page check that you have understood the information on the left-hand page and give you practice in using the material presented.

The units are organised into seven sections:

Learning about idioms (Units 1–8) gives important information relating to idioms in general, such as what they are and how to use them accurately.

Types of idiom (Units 9–13) looks at some different types of idiom, dealing with such areas as *Similes* and idioms from other languages.

Idioms from the topic area of … (Units 14–24) focuses on idioms originating from different topic areas. For example, a great many idioms in English are based on sailing, a result of Britain's history as an island with a strong dependence on the sea. This section therefore opens with a unit dealing with idioms originating from the topic area of *Sailing*. Other units in this section deal with, for example, idioms based on *Parts of the body*, *Games and sport* and *Literature*. Many of us find it interesting to learn about the origins of idioms, and studying them in this way can also help to fix their meaning in your memory.

Idioms to talk about … (Units 25–38) focuses on the topic areas where certain idioms are frequently used. For instance, there are units dealing with idioms used when talking about *Money*, about *Society* or about *Problems*.

Idioms used in … (Units 39–41) looks at three types of writing where distinct types of idioms are used – *Journalism*, *Advertising* and *Formal writing*.

Idioms used in conversation (Units 42–47) presents idioms used in conversations from a functional point of view. For example, there are units dealing with *Telling stories*, *Agreeing and disagreeing* and *Emphasising*.

Idioms using these keywords (Units 48–60) groups idioms according to the keywords that they centre on. Unit 53, for instance, presents and practises idioms using the word *hand*, while Unit 59 focuses on idioms using the verb *fall*.

The book also contains a key and an index, listing the idioms we deal with and indicating the units where they can be found.

How should I use this book?

We strongly recommend that you do the first two units in the book first – *What are idioms?* and *When and how are idioms used?* – as these give you basic information that underpins all the other units. After that, you may work on the units in any order that you prefer.

What else do I need in order to work with this book?

You need a notebook or file so that you can write down the idioms that you study in the book as well as any others that you come across elsewhere.

You also need to have access to a good dictionary. We strongly recommend the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary*, as this gives you exactly the kind of information that you need to have about idioms. Your teacher, however, may also be able to recommend other dictionaries that you may find useful.

So all that remains is to say if you want to *stand out from the crowd* (Unit 40), start studying the idioms in this book. *There's no time like the present!* (Unit 40). We hope you'll find this an enjoyable and useful way to keep up and extend your knowledge of English idioms in use.

1 What are idioms?

A Formulaic language

Idioms are a type of formulaic language. Formulaic language consists of fixed expressions which you learn and understand as units rather than as individual words, for example:

type of formulaic language	examples
greetings and good wishes	Hi there! See you soon! Happy birthday!
prepositional phrases	at the moment, in a hurry, from time to time
sayings, proverbs and quotations	It's a small world! Don't put all your eggs in one basket. To be or not to be – that is the question.
compounds	car park, bus stop, home-made
phrasal verbs	take off, look after, turn down
collocations	blonde hair, deeply disappointed

B Idioms

Idioms are fixed combinations of words whose meaning is often difficult to guess from the meaning of each individual word.

For example, if I say '**I put my foot in it** the other day at Linda's house – I asked her if she was going to marry Simon', what does it mean? If you do not know that **put your foot in it** means *say something accidentally which upsets or embarrasses someone*, it is difficult to know exactly what the sentence means. It has a non-literal or idiomatic meaning.

Idioms are constructed in different ways, and this book gives you practice in a wide variety of types of idiom. Here are some examples:

Tim **took a shine to** [immediately liked] his teacher. (verb + object + preposition)
The band's number one hit was just **a flash in the pan** [something that happens only once] (idiomatic noun phrase)
Little Jimmy has been **as quiet as a mouse** [extremely quiet] all day. (simile. **See Unit 9 for more similes.**)
We arrived **safe and sound** [safely]. (binomial. **See Unit 10 for more binomials.**)

Idioms are often based on everyday things and ideas, for example, the human body:
Mark and Alistair **don't see eye to eye**. [don't agree with each other]

C How can I use idioms?

Many idioms are quite informal, so use them carefully. You will need to be able to understand a lot of idioms if you want to read English fiction, newspapers or magazines, or understand TV shows, films and songs. People also often use idioms for humour or to comment on themselves, other people and situations.

You will sound more natural and fluent if you can use idioms in everyday conversation or informal writing. Be careful not to use too many, though!

Language help

The words and word order of idioms are usually fixed, and we cannot change them in any way. For example, we cannot say *gave a shine to* or *sound and safe*.

Exercises

1.1 **Read the beginning of this story and label the type of formulaic language used in the words in bold. Use the information in A opposite to help you.**

In 2009, I **set off** on a long journey. As I left my house, my neighbour shouted, **'Good luck!'** I didn't know **at that moment** that I would not see him again for three years. I **boarded** the **plane** at Heathrow, and soon it **took off** for Malaysia. When we **touched down** in Kuala Lumpur, I couldn't wait to **get off** the plane. I **took a bus** to the **city centre** and **spent the night** at a **youth hostel**. The first person I met was someone I had been at school with years ago. **'It's a small world!'** he said when he saw me.

1.2 **Underline the seven idioms in the rest of the story you read in 1.1.**

My friend suggested that we join forces. 'There's safety in numbers,' he said. 'Let's hit the road together.' I was in two minds whether to go with him but finally decided to say yes. We travelled together for six months and had a whale of a time. We spent money like there was no tomorrow. I had to twist my dad's arm and persuade him to send me some more money so I could travel further.

1.3 **Choose the correct answer.**

1 His first novel was just a) a flash in a pan b) a flash of the pan c) a flash in the pan.
2 I think Philip has a) given a shine to b) taken a shine to c) got a shine to his new babysitter.
3 I hope you have a good trip and come home a) safely and soundly b) sound and safe c) safe and sound.
4 Oh dear! I think I've a) had a foot in it b) put my foot in it c) got my foot in it!
5 Kate is really noisy, but her best friend is a) as quiet as a cat b) as quiet as a mouse c) as quiet like a mouse.

1.4 **Look at these newspaper headlines. Each one has an idiom based on a part of the human body. What do you think they mean? Choose the correct answer.**

1 University **goes cap in hand** to finance minister

2 Airline **foots the bill** for delays and cancellations

3 Rita Soraz is **the apple of** Hollywood's **eye**

4 Government is **burying its head in the sand**, says Opposition leader

1 A university a) apologises to the minister b) asks the minister for financial help c) awards the minister a great honour.
2 An airline a) has refused to pay the costs b) sends the bill to someone else c) will pay the costs.
3 Rita Soraz is a) loved by everyone in Hollywood b) hated by everyone in Hollywood c) missed by everyone in Hollywood.
4 The government is a) refusing to face a difficult situation b) about to resign c) making unpopular plans.

2 When and how are idioms used?

A Idioms and change

Idioms frequently change in English. Although many idioms last for a long time, some disappear very quickly. Therefore, some idioms that were popular 50 years ago may sound very old-fashioned and odd today. For example, the idiom **as stiff / straight as a ramrod** [sitting or standing with a very straight and stiff back] is not frequently used nowadays. It is therefore important to be careful if you learn an idiom from, say, an older novel, as it may sound unnatural if you use it in your own speech or writing. In this book we focus only on up-to-date idioms which are still commonly used.

B What are idioms used for?

- For emphasis, e.g. 'The singer's second album **sank like a stone**.' [failed completely]
- To agree with a previous speaker, e.g.
  A: Did you notice how Lisa started listening when you said her name?
  B: Yes, that certainly made her **prick** her **ears up**. [start listening carefully]
- To comment on people, e.g. 'Did you hear Tom has been invited for dinner with the prime minister? He's certainly **gone up in the world**!' [gained a better social position – or more money – than before]
- To comment on a situation, e.g. 'The new finance minister wants to **knock** the economy **into shape**.' [take action to get something into a good condition]
- To make an anecdote more interesting, e.g. 'It was just one disaster after another today, a sort of **domino effect**.' [when something, usually bad, happens and causes a series of other things to happen]
- To catch the reader's eye. Idioms – particularly those with strong images – are often used in headlines, advertising slogans and the names of small businesses. The writer may play with the idiom or make a pun (a joke involving a play on words) in order to create a special effect, e.g. *a debt of dishonour* instead of the usual **debt of honour**. [a debt that you owe someone for moral rather than financial reasons]
- To indicate membership of a particular group, e.g. surfers **drop in on** someone, meaning to get on a wave another surfer is already on. This kind of group-specific idiom is outside the focus of this book.

C Where will you see or hear idioms?

You will see and hear idioms in all sorts of speaking and writing. They are particularly common in everyday conversation and in popular journalism. For example, they are often found in magazine horoscopes, e.g. You'll spend much of this week **licking your wounds** [trying to recover from a bad experience], or in problem pages, e.g. 'Do you think that my relationship has **run its course**?' [come to a natural end] However, idioms are also used in more formal contexts, such as lectures, academic essays and business reports, e.g. 'It is hoped the regulations will **open the door to** better management.' [let something new start] **See Unit 41 for more idioms used in formal writing.**

Language help

Look out for idioms being used in headlines and advertisements. Make a note of any interesting examples that you find.

Exercises

2.1 **Are these sentences true or false? If the answer is false, say why.**

1 Few idioms stay in frequent usage for a long time.
2 Your English may sound unnatural if you use certain idioms.
3 Idioms can be used for dramatic effect.
4 Idioms are frequently used to comment on people and situations.
5 Headline writers always use idioms in their correct form.
6 Idioms are only used in some types of speaking and writing.
7 Newspapers and magazines are a good place to find idioms in use.
8 Idioms are not used in academic writing.

2.2 **Complete each idiom.**

1 My essay is really not very good. Could you please help me knock it into ....
2 It's time you stopped .... your wounds and got back to your normal life.
3 Although the film cost a lot of money to make, it enjoyed no success at all; in fact, it sank like a ....
4 There was a kind of domino .... when Jill left the company. Others in her team decided to follow her example, and that then gave the idea to other employees too.
5 Ben and Sarah went out together for a long time, but the relationship eventually ran its .... – they're both happily married to other people now.
6 The children .... up their ears when they heard the word 'chocolate'.

2.3 **Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1
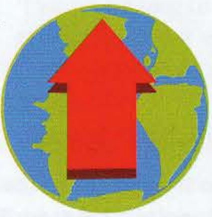

2
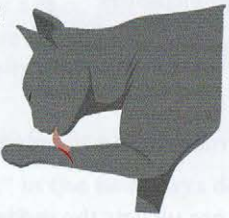

3
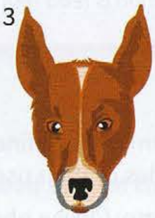

4
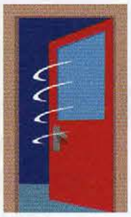

2.4 **Answer these questions.**

1 Would *Going up in the world* be a better name for a mountain-climbing organisation or a furniture business?
2 Would *Knock yourself into shape* be a better slogan for dance classes or a boxing club?
3 Would *Let things run their course* be advising someone to act quickly or to be patient?
4 If a headline mentioned a *debt of honour*, would it be suggesting that the law or the person's conscience should be encouraging them to pay something back?
5 Would *This'll make you prick your ears up* be a better slogan for a hi-fi company or an earring business?

Over to you

Do an Internet search for 'company names with puns'. Find three puns that you can explain.

3 Using reference resources

At advanced level, your aim will be not only to understand idioms, but also to use them accurately and appropriately. This book will help you achieve these aims. There are other resources which you should use too.

A Dictionaries

To help you study idioms, you need a good learner's dictionary, ideally one which focuses on idioms. The *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary* gives you examples of how idioms are used and also gives information on their use, e.g. whether they are used humorously, or informally, or in a more literary context. It also highlights the most important idioms to learn. You can access this dictionary online at www.dictionary.cambridge.org. The best learner's dictionaries are corpus-based, i.e. they focus on idioms that people actually use and give authentic examples of their use. *English Idioms in Use Advanced* is based on the Cambridge International Corpus, which is a collection of over one billion words of real spoken and written English. Here is an example of how idioms are presented in the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary*:

> **like it or lump it** *informal*
> if you tell someone to like it or lump it, you mean they must accept a situation they do not like, because they cannot change it • *The fact remains, that's all we're going to pay him and he can like it or lump it.* • *Like it or lump it, romantic fiction is read regularly by thousands.*

B The Internet

You can use the Internet to find out more about the meanings and origins of idioms, and to see more examples of their use.

- The website http://www.phrases.org.uk lists the meanings and origins of many idioms, and the site provides examples of how the idioms are used. There is also a link to a Phrase Finder Facebook page, where you can ask questions about the meaning and origin of idioms.
- Use a search engine such as Google to find further examples of idioms in use. You could specify the context in which you want to find examples, for example by typing 'like it or lump it news', to find examples of the idiom used in newspaper headlines or articles.

C Vocabulary notebooks

Always make good, detailed notes about idioms in your vocabulary notebook. Include an example of the idiom in context, as well as its meaning. Add any notes about its usage, e.g. *informal* or *literary*. Doing a quick drawing of an idiom may help you to learn it.

Each time they asked him a question, he was like a rabbit caught in the headlights.
The speaker unfortunately looked like a rabbit caught in the headlights during most of the discussion.
= looked very frightened, unable to move or think
(also 'deer' instead of 'rabbit')

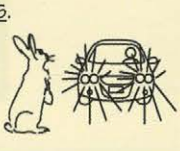

Exercises

3.1 **Answer these questions. Use the information in A opposite to help you.**

1 What two things does a good learner's dictionary do, as well as explain the meaning of idioms?
2 How much language and what kind of language is in the Cambridge International Corpus?
3 What does the dictionary say about the usage of *like it or lump it*?

3.2 **Use the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary* (book or online) to match each idiom on the left with the label used in the dictionary on the right. Can you explain the meaning of the idioms?**

1 get off your backside	informal
2 have occasion to do something	formal
3 the shit hits the fan	slang
4 know something inside out	old-fashioned
5 not soil your hands	offensive
6 send someone to Coventry	humorous
7 pigs might fly	literary

3.3 **Complete each sentence with an idiom from 3.2. You may need to change the form of the verb.**

1 Henry will help you deal with these forms. He .... the system ....
2 They think he's the boss of the criminal gang, but he never .... by committing crimes personally.
3 Joey can be so lazy. I wish he'd ....
4 'I won't be late to work ever again.' 'Oh yes, and ....!'
5 If Greg finds out what you've done, ...
6 I live very close to the hospital, but luckily I've never .... go there.
7 She had lied to them, and so they ....

3.4 **Search for "like it or lump it" in the two ways described in B on the opposite page. What information did you get?**

3.5 **Underline the eight idioms in this newspaper article. What do you think each idiom means? Use a dictionary to help you.**

SPORTS MINISTER HOPPING MAD

John Hamilton has made a name for himself by running a tight ship at the Ministry of Sport. So it was no surprise to his staff that he reportedly 'went spare' when he learnt what had been going on behind his back. Two of his leading advisors had been feathering their own nests with government money intended for young people's sports organisations. 'Such behaviour is quite beyond the pale,' said Hamilton, 'and the two people concerned have already been given the sack'.

4 Common metaphors in idioms

A What is a metaphor?

Metaphors describe a person, object or situation by comparing it to something else with similar characteristics. They are often used in poetry and literature. In Shakespeare's *Romeo and Juliet*, for example, Romeo says 'Juliet is my sun,' suggesting that she is the most important force in his life, bringing him light and warmth.

Many idioms are based on metaphors. However, idioms are expressions that are used so frequently and are so fixed in the language that people often do not think about the metaphors behind them. The metaphors used in idioms are therefore much less original and thought-provoking than those used in literary contexts. People say, for example, 'The new president **was / took centre stage** at the meeting' [was the most important or noticeable thing or person], without thinking of the original image of a theatre.

B Work = war

The language of idioms seems to suggest that English speakers see work and business life as a kind of war, with many work and business idioms based on images connected with war and fighting. For example, companies **launch** marketing **campaigns**, and they may **join forces with** one another. Business people might say that a situation **is a minefield** [is potentially dangerous] or that a company **is a casualty** of a difficult economic situation [was badly affected by it]. A manager may **pull rank** on his employees [use the power his position gives him to make them do something], and he may have to **get / take the flak** for a problem [receive strong criticism]. An employee may **be given** or **get his marching orders** [lose his job]. **See Unit 15 for more idioms based on war and conflict.**

C Understanding = seeing

Idioms often equate seeing with understanding. For example, we talk about **seeing sense** or **seeing reason** [becoming sensible / reasonable] or **seeing the point** [understanding the importance of something]. Similarly, if someone **sees the joke**, they understand it. To **see the light** can mean to suddenly understand something.

D Some other metaphors

Emotion = colour

Red can suggest anger, e.g. 'My brother **saw red** when I broke his phone.' Black is often associated with unpleasant feelings: if you get a **black mark** for something, it means people think you have done something bad, and they will remember it in future.

Life = a journey

If someone **is at a crossroads**, they are at a stage in life when they have to make an important decision. If you say that you **are going / getting nowhere**, you mean you are making no progress. If you say something is taking you into **uncharted territory / waters**, you mean it is taking you into unknown areas of experience.

Life = a gamble

If you **have something up your sleeve**, you have a secret plan or idea (someone playing cards for money may hide a card up their sleeve). If you **bluff your way** into or out of a situation, you get yourself there by deception in the same way that a gambler may bluff (pretend to be in a weaker or stronger position than is really the case).

Language help

Noticing the metaphors underlying many idioms will help you understand and learn them. Look out for other common concepts such as time = money.

Exercises

4.1 **Answer these questions. Use the information in A opposite to help you.**

1 How do metaphors describe people, objects and situations?
2 In what kind of writing are metaphors frequently used?
3 How are the metaphors used in literary contexts different from those used in idioms?
4 Why do you think it can sometimes be useful for you to be aware of the origins of idioms?

4.2 **Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1
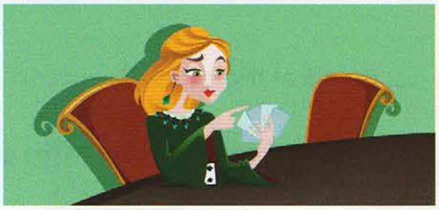

3
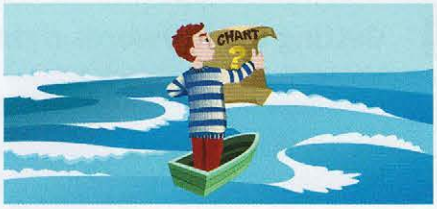

2
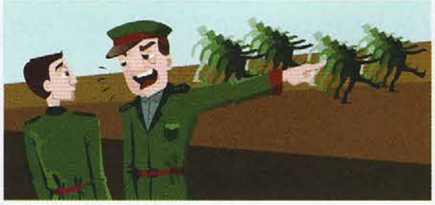

4
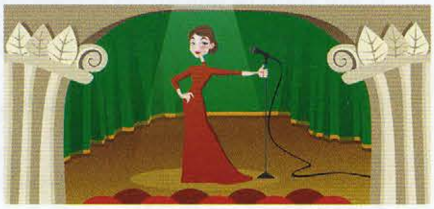

4.3 **Complete each idiom.**

1 Tax legislation can be a .... for new businesses; there are so many rules to follow.
2 Our company is planning to .... a new marketing campaign in April.
3 Shouting at his manager got Tom a black .... at work.
4 I'm sure your boss will .... sense eventually and agree to your plan.
5 At first I didn't see the .... of going to university or college, but then I saw the .... and realised studying would give me more choices for the future.
6 If she doesn't offer to write the report, I'll .... rank on her and tell her to do it.
7 Noor is .... a crossroads in her life now that she has finished her medical degree. She has to decide what she is going to specialise in.
8 George doesn't know much about the job, but I'm sure he'll be able to .... his way through the interview.

4.4 **Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.**

1 Everyone else was laughing, but Katie couldn't understand what was funny.
2 Eva is making no progress with her research.
3 BritTel is going to work together with SatCom to lobby the government.
4 The teacher was furious when Matt refused to do his homework.
5 The errors in the report really weren't Sam's fault, but he was blamed for them.
6 Tina is hoping her father will eventually become more reasonable and let her drive the family car.
7 Unfortunately, my brother's transport business was very seriously affected by the rise in fuel prices.
8 As the president of a major company, Ross is used to being the focus of attention.

5 Using idioms accurately

All the examples in this unit come from the Cambridge Learner Corpus. This is a collection of over 95,000 exam scripts by students from over 190 countries taking Cambridge ESOL exams. The errors in this unit were actually made by learners in advanced-level exams, including CAE, Proficiency and IELTS (level 6+).

A major difficulty with idioms is that they are fixed expressions which cannot be changed – except when you are deliberately playing with the language. It is therefore very important to use idioms accurately. **See Unit 6 for more information on playing with idioms.**

A Getting the keywords right

You say that rising unemployment figures are just **the tip of the iceberg** [a small part of a much bigger problem], NOT the ~~top~~ of the iceberg.

You say that the state is responsible for its citizens' welfare **from the cradle to the grave** [from birth to death], NOT from the cradle to the ~~coffin~~.

If you want to talk about people that you do not know or that you do not think are important, you can say **every Tom, Dick and / or Harry** could do that job, NOT every ~~Tom and Jerry~~!

If you pay for something yourself, you pay for it **out of your own pocket**, NOT out of your own ~~wallet~~.

If someone is in a bad mood, you can say they are **like a bear with a sore head**, NOT like a bear with a sore ~~throat~~.

When you remember the past nostalgically, you talk about **the good old days**, NOT the good old ~~time~~.

To say that someone or something will not exist for much longer, you can say their **days are numbered**, NOT their days are ~~counted~~.

To talk about limiting someone's freedom, you can use the idiom **to clip someone's wings**, NOT to ~~cut~~ someone's wings.

B Getting the details right

Using idioms accurately also means getting even the little words exactly right.

You must not add articles where they are not needed: someone has a **spirit of adventure** [enthusiasm for adventurous activities], NOT spirit of ~~an~~ adventure. You must not leave out articles either: fashion can be described as **up-to-the-minute** [new], NOT ~~up to minute~~.

Take care with prepositions too: someone can **be at a loss for words** [not know what to say], NOT at a loss ~~of~~ words.

Make sure that you also use singular and plural forms correctly: you talk about a couple **tying the knot** [getting married (informal)], NOT ~~tying the knots~~.

Word order is very important too: you can be **sick and tired of** something [angry and bored], NOT ~~tired and sick~~ of it.

Language help

Translating idioms word for word can cause problems. For example, we **make a mountain out of a molehill** [make a small difficulty seem like a serious problem], NOT ~~make an elephant out of a mouse~~. Always check in a good dictionary before translating an idiom from your own language.

Exercises

5.1 **Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1
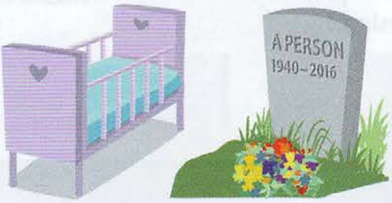

3
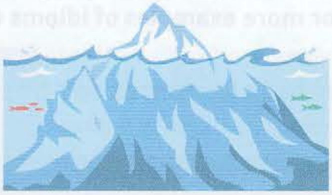

2
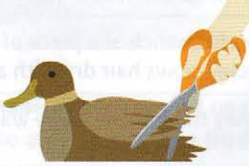

4
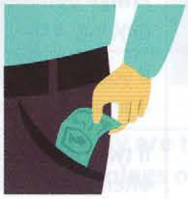

5.2 **Are the idioms in these sentences used correctly? If not, correct them.**

1 My sister is always buying up-to-minute gadgets.
2 I'm sick and tired of listening to him complaining all the time.
3 My grandad's always talking about good old days.
4 They've been engaged for six months but haven't made any plans about when they're going to tie the knots.
5 Magda was at a loss for words when her son told her he had quit his new job.
6 Engineering isn't the kind of job that every Tom, Dick or Henry could do.

5.3 **Complete each idiom.**

1 Don't make such a .... out of a molehill.
2 Everyone uses mobile phones now, so the days of the landline are ....
3 My son's got a real .... of adventure. He's going travelling around the world for a year.
4 We won free train tickets to Paris in the competition, but we had to pay for the hotel out of our own ....
5 Freddie keeps shouting at everyone today. I don't know why he's behaving like a .... with a sore head.

5.4 **Here are some errors made with idioms by candidates in advanced-level exams. Can you correct them? Looking up the word in brackets in a good idioms dictionary should help you find the correct idiom.**

1 You'll pass your driving test if you really want to – where there's a will, there's a power. [WILL]
2 I get bored if I always do the same things at the weekend – change is a spice of life. [VARIETY]
3 Sh! Be quiet! There's no need to talk at the top of your head. [TOP]
4 He never saves any money. He spends whatever he has. Easy coming easy going is his motto. [EASY]
5 I was so upset when I failed the exam. I wept my eyes out of my head. [CRY]
6 She's a total optimist – she always manages to look the good part. [LOOK]

6 Playing with idioms

People often play with idioms for humorous effect or to make something more memorable. This wordplay is particularly common in journalism and advertising. **See Unit 40 for more examples of idioms used in advertising**.

A Memorable names for businesses

Here are some catchy names of hairdressers' salons.

name of salon	explanation
FRINGE BENEFITS	**Fringe benefits** are something extra you get because of your job in addition to your pay, e.g. a company car. A *fringe* is the hair that hangs down over your forehead.
BLOWN AWAY	If you **are blown away by** something (e.g. a performance or a piece of music), it amazes you because it is so good. A hairdresser *blows* hair dry with a hair dryer.
WAVELENGTHS	If two people are **on the same wavelength**, they think in the same way. People often have, or want, *waves* in their hair.

B News headlines

News headlines often play with idioms in some way, to attract people to read the article.

headline	explanation
DELIVERY DELAYS **PART AND PARCEL** OF POST OFFICE PROBLEMS Recent delays in the postal service are symptoms of wider problems, a government report claims.	a necessary part of an event or experience which cannot be avoided. (The Post Office delivers letters and *parcels*.)
FIREWORKS FUND **BURNING A HOLE IN THE POCKET OF** CITY COUNCIL The city council today voted to spend £100,000 on a massive public fireworks display.	If you have money burning a hole in your pocket, you want to spend it as soon as possible. (Fireworks *burn*, and if one burnt in your pocket, it would make a *hole*!)
OPTICIANS FAIL TO **SEE EYE TO EYE** The National Association of British Opticians (NABO) today disagreed about a new set of standards for the industry.	If two people do not see eye to eye, they disagree with each other. (Opticians care for people's eyes and help them see better.)
THEATRE MANAGERS FINALLY **GET THEIR ACT TOGETHER** The managers of the Cleo Theatre have come up with a rescue package to save the theatre.	organise themselves so that they do things efficiently (informal). (Actors *act* in a theatre, and performers have an *act* which they perform.)
AGRICULTURAL REFORM POLICY – FARMERS **SIT ON THE FENCE** The Farmers' Union has stated that it remains neutral over the latest plans for reform.	delay making a decision when they have to choose between two different options in a dispute. (Farms often have *fences* which separate the fields.)
CHESS COMPUTER BEATEN BY HUMAN – DESIGNERS **ARE BACK TO SQUARE ONE** Software engineers now have to rethink the design of the *Redray* software that failed to work as planned.	have to work on a plan from the beginning again because a previous attempt failed and the progress made was wasted. (A chessboard has 64 *squares* on it.)

Exercises

6.1 **Look at the salon names in A opposite. Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1

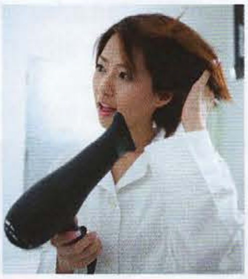

2

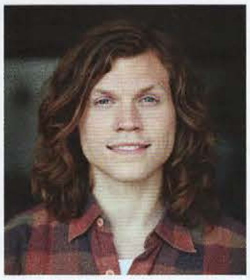

3

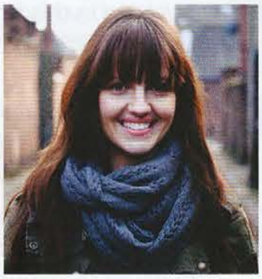

6.2 **These sentences all use idioms from the opposite page. Why are they humorous? Use a dictionary to find both the idiomatic and literal meanings of the expressions if necessary.**

1 I was offered a job at a hairdresser's salon but the fringe benefits weren't very good, so I turned it down.
2 Both John and Emma work as newsreaders for the local radio station, so I'm not surprised they're always on the same wavelength.
3 The audience were blown away by Tom's solo in the wind instrument competition.
4 Walking a lot and carrying heavy bags is part and parcel of working as a postman.
5 The two film stars have got their act together and resolved their marital problems.

6.3 **Complete each idiom.**

1 The money was burning …………………………… my pocket.
2 Her two brothers don't see …………………………… and haven't spoken to each other for over a year.
3 Learning how to manage your finances is part …………………………… of becoming an adult.
4 It's time you got …………………………… and found a job!
5 The president refused to make a decision and was accused of sitting …………………………… .
6 My computer crashed, so I'm back to …………………………… with my assignment.

6.4 **Match the idioms on the left with the companies or organisations on the right.**

1 BACK TO SQUARE ONE ☐
2 GETTING OUR ACT TOGETHER ☐
3 PART AND PARCEL ☐
4 SITTING ON THE FENCE ☐

a a delivery firm
b a gardening company
c a company that makes board games
d a local drama club

Over to you

What products, organisations or services do you think these idioms from other units in this book could be used to advertise?
it never rains but it pours (Unit 11)
fighting fit (Unit 47)
two left feet (Unit 50)

7 Idioms from other varieties of English

In this book we focus mainly on idioms which are widely understood throughout the English-speaking world. However, there are many other idioms which are typical of specific English-speaking countries, such as the US, Scotland, Australia and South Africa. There is not space in this book to include idioms from all these different countries, but a few idioms from the US are included here for interest.

A Idioms from the US

Many US idioms originate from baseball. For example, if you do something **right off the bat**, you do it immediately; if you **throw someone a curveball**, you surprise them with something difficult or unpleasant to deal with. If someone **is batting a thousand**, they are doing something extremely well, better than they had hoped. If someone **drops the ball**, they do something stupid or careless.

Other examples of US idioms:
He's trying to **catch some z's**/zɪ:s/. [sleep (informal)]
The store **is fresh out of** tomatoes. [has just finished or sold all its supply]
His advice **isn't worth a dime**. [has little or no value]

B Variations between British and American English

There are sometimes slightly different forms of idioms in US and British English. Here are some examples:

British English idiom	US English idiom	meaning
the icing on the cake	**the frosting on the cake**	something that makes a good thing even better
fight like cat and dog	**fight like cats and dogs**	argue violently all the time
donkey work	**grunt work**	hard, boring work
take the biscuit	**take the cake**	used informally to describe something the speaker finds very annoying
weep buckets	**cry buckets**	cry a lot (informal)
hard cash	**cold cash**	money in the form of cash or notes, not a cheque or credit card
like the cat that got the cream	**like the cat that ate the canary**	very pleased with oneself (informal, usually collocates with 'look', 'grin' or 'smile')

Language help

Idioms that are used mainly in one specific country will often not be easily understood by native English speakers from other parts of the world. You may not see or hear them outside the countries where they originate, so it's safer to use the idioms in this unit when you are in the appropriate country.

Exercises

7.1 **Complete each US idiom.**

1 I'm exhausted after such a difficult day at work. I'm going to try to .... some z's before I have to go out again this evening.
2 I'm afraid we're .... out of milk. Try next door – maybe they have some.
3 Will was doing well at college until he had some problems with his girlfriend and .... the ball.
4 Joe is very efficient – he always deals with jobs right off the ....
5 Her ring may look expensive, but it isn't .... a dime.
6 Rachel's batting a .... at the moment – she's making a great success of her new job.
7 The speaker found it hard to answer the questions. He clearly wasn't expecting the audience to .... him so many curveballs.

7.2 **Is each speaker more likely to be from the US or from Britain?**

1 You have to pay the deposit for hiring the boat in cold cash.
2 Rhiannon and her sister have always fought like cat and dog.
3 It was such a sad film – I wept buckets.
4 There's a lot of grunt work to be done before we can open the new restaurant.
5 Having such perfect weather on holiday was the frosting on the cake.
6 Having to stay late at work on a holiday weekend really took the biscuit.
7 What's happened? You look like the cat that got the cream.

7.3 **Rewrite the sentences in 7.2. If the speaker used US idioms, change them to the equivalent British idiom and vice versa.**

7.4 **Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1

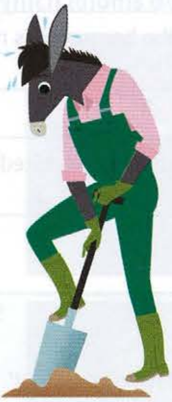

2

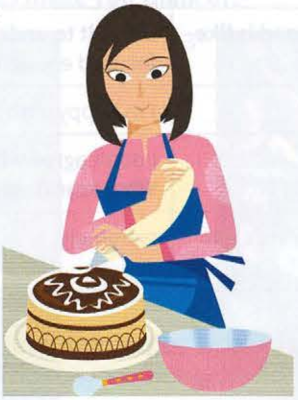

3

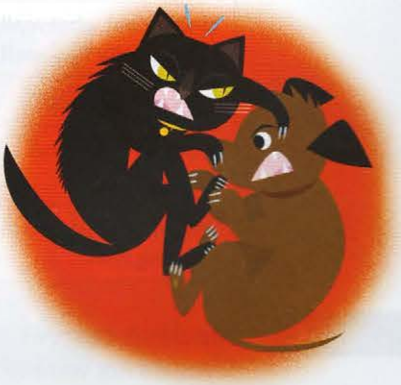

Over to you

Find out more about a variety of English that interests you by going to the website http://www.world-english.org/accent.htm. The site includes recordings so you can listen to the speech of people from different regions too.

8 Modern idioms

A Where do new idioms come from?

As Units 15–24 show, many English idioms have very deep roots in history and culture. They have their origins in traditional skills, such as sailing (Unit 14), and in such areas as war (Unit 15), ancient myths (Unit 20) and literature (Unit 22).

However, new idioms evolve all the time from TV, advertising, politics and business. These idioms often quickly become expressions understood and used by many people in their everyday lives. Some of these idioms will be popular for a few years but then get forgotten; others may last. In this unit, we look at some examples of common, but relatively new, idioms.

B Some modern idioms

example	meaning
Is Madonna still **the first lady of** pop?	the expert, or the best (by analogy with how the wife of a US president is referred to as *the First Lady*)
This programme looks at one couple's experience of living next to neighbours **from hell**.	People frequently refer to difficult people or unpopular things as being the … from hell, e.g. the neighbours from hell or the airport from hell.
That young politician was in the news every day for weeks, but now he seems to have **fallen off the radar**.	been forgotten
Sofia is a wonderful nurse. She'll always **go the extra mile** for her patients.	make an extra big effort or do things that are more than is strictly necessary
The website www.cheapholidays.org **does exactly what it says on the tin**.	does exactly what it claims to do
Finding out what really happened is **like nailing jelly to a wall**.	difficult to understand or describe because it is not clear or focused enough
I'm cool with that.	I'm happy with a suggestion
It **doesn't float my boat**!	I don't agree with what you like or are interested in. (Also **Whatever floats your boat!**)
I'm fed up with him **big time**. / He's into judo **big time**.	extremely

C Modern conversational fixed expressions

If you do not want to discuss anything further, you can say 'That's it! **End of** (**story**)!'

If you think that someone is telling you about very personal things that you do not want to hear about, you can stop them by saying '**Too much information**!'

If a friend starts talking about a subject you do not want to discuss, you could respond '**Don't even go there**!'

Exercises

8.1 **Look at B opposite. Are the idioms in these sentences used correctly? If not, correct them.**

1 You have to be prepared to go the further mile if you want to get promoted.
2 Whatever happened to that pop star you used to like so much? He seems to have completely fallen off the radar now.
3 This shampoo is great – it does exactly what it writes on the tin.
4 I'd never share an apartment with her – she'd be the flatmate of hell.
5 Stella McCartney is often called the 'first lady of fashion'.

8.2 **Complete the dialogue with idioms from B and C opposite. Use one word per space.**

Jo: Hi, Meg. Great to see you again. Where's Kate?
Meg: She just texted. She's not coming. Apparently she's really sick and has been throwing up all night.
Jo: (1) .... ! I don't want to know! What shall we do then?
Meg: I really want to go that new photography exhibition.
Jo: Mmm, (2) .... ! I know you're into art (3) .... , but I'm not. How about the cinema instead?
Meg: Yeah, (4) .... Is Matt coming too?
Jo: (5) .... ! We broke up.
Meg: Really? What happened?
Jo: I don't want to talk about it. We're finished. (6) .... !

8.3 **Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1
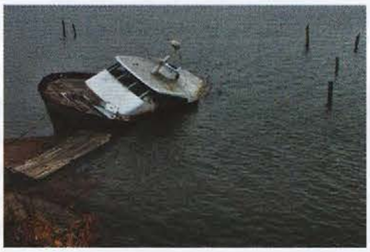

2
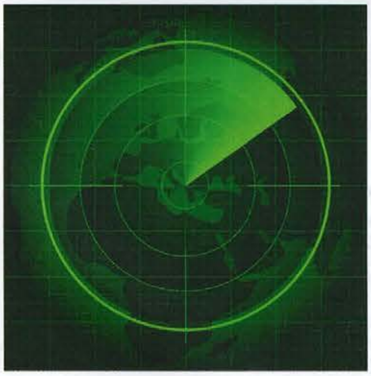

3
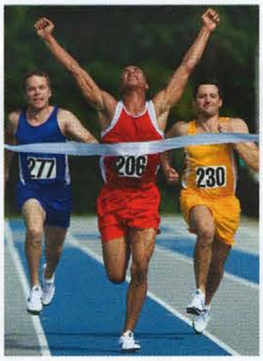

4
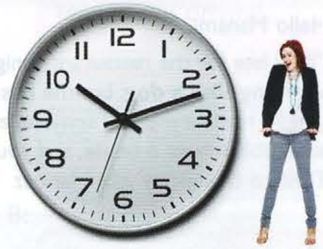

8.4 **Do these sentences make sense? Explain why / why not.**

1 It could be fun to live next door to the neighbours from hell.
2 Tilly's father was happy about her plans to marry, but her mother was cool with it.
3 Rani loves that painter's work, but it doesn't float my boat.
4 Getting him to say what he thinks is like nailing jelly to a wall – he's always honest and open.

9 Similes

A What are similes?

Similes are expressions which compare two things; they always include the words *as* or *like*. You can use similes to make your spoken and written English more colourful and your comparisons more powerful. For example:

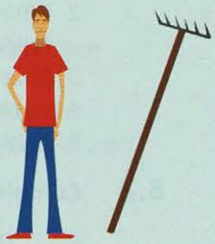

My brother's **as thin as a rake**. [extremely thin]
The baby's skin is **as smooth as silk**. [extremely smooth]
Pilar is **as bright as a button**. [extremely clever]
I slept really well, so I feel **as fresh as a daisy** this morning. [extremely fresh and full of energy]
George **ran like the wind** to get the message to Paula before she left. [ran extremely fast]
I don't want to go in the car with Lottie. She **drives like a maniac**! [drives fast and badly]
My new sweater **fits like a glove**. I'm so pleased with it. [fits extremely well]
The two men were in the next room, but I could hear every word they said **as clear as crystal**. [very clearly]
Ben claimed to be **as poor as a church mouse**, but we knew he was rich. [very poor]
As Beth walked in, the house was **as silent as the grave**. [totally silent]

You should learn similes as whole phrases, because it is usually not possible to change the individual words (e.g. we do not say as thin as a stick or as thin as a pole). Where it is possible to change the individual words, the meaning of the simile often changes, for example:
I needed a drink of water. My mouth was **as dry as a bone**. [extremely dry / thirsty]
His lecture was **as dry as dust**, and everyone was bored. [extremely boring]

B Everyday similes

The similes in these emails are often used in everyday conversation and informal writing.

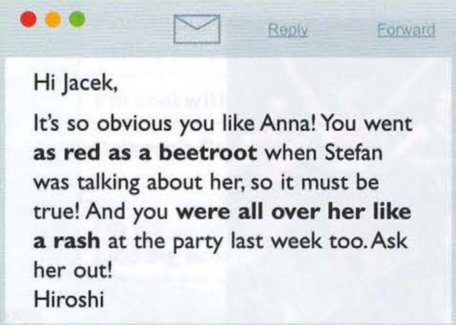

Hi Jacek,

It's so obvious you like Anna! You went **as red as a beetroot** when Stefan was talking about her, so it must be true! And you **were all over her like a rash** at the party last week too. Ask her out!
Hiroshi

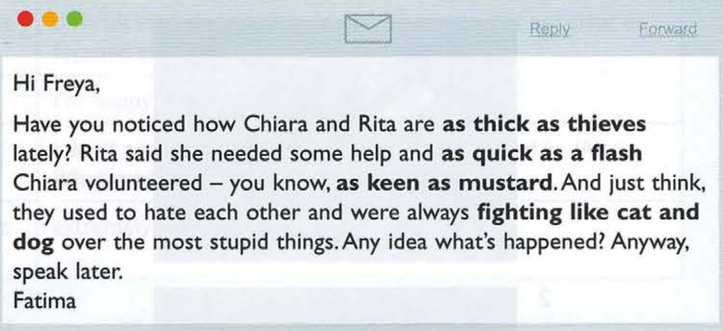

Hi Freya,

Have you noticed how Chiara and Rita are **as thick as thieves** lately? Rita said she needed some help and **as quick as a flash** Chiara volunteered – you know, **as keen as mustard**. And just think, they used to hate each other and were always **fighting like cat and dog** over the most stupid things. Any idea what's happened? Anyway, speak later.
Fatima

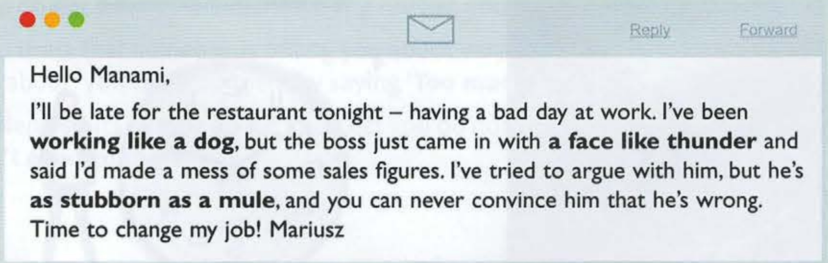

Hello Manami,

I'll be late for the restaurant tonight – having a bad day at work. I've been **working like a dog**, but the boss just came in with **a face like thunder** and said I'd made a mess of some sales figures. I've tried to argue with him, but he's **as stubborn as a mule**, and you can never convince him that he's wrong. Time to change my job! Mariusz

Language help

Be careful how you use similes. They have strong meanings and are often used in a humorous or sarcastic way, e.g. *My teacher's explanations are* ***as clear as mud*** [not clear at all].

Exercises

9.1 **Look at A opposite. Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending. Then complete the sentence with *as* or *like*.**

1 My new dress fits ....
2 You'll need to run ....
3 She's as thin ....
4 Ana always looks as fresh ....
5 He drove off ....
6 Her mouth felt as dry ....
7 Their son is as bright ....
8 Her hair felt as smooth ....

a maniac.
silk.
a button.
a bone.
a rake.
a glove.
the wind to catch the train.
a daisy.

9.2 **Choose the correct word to complete each simile.**

1 That book was so boring. It was as dry as [a bone / dust].
2 You explained it so well – it's a difficult concept, but it's as clear as [crystal / mud] now.
3 I wonder what they're plotting – they look as thick as [two short planks / thieves].
4 After working in that airless room my mouth feels as dry as [a bone / dust].
5 I can't understand what he's trying to say – it's as clear as [crystal / mud].

9.3 **Replace the underlined part of each sentence with a simile.**

1 Tom and Rosa have been arguing all the time recently.
2 Amy blushed and looked very embarrassed when Lasse commented on her new dress.
3 When our teacher asks the class a difficult question, Hatsuki usually answers without a moment's hesitation.
4 It was early Sunday morning, and the house was strangely silent.
5 Emma was behaving towards Jakob in a very affectionate way at the barbecue last week.
6 All her sisters are extremely poor.
7 Caterina felt full of energy after her shower.
8 The students in my class are great – hardworking, punctual and very enthusiastic.

9.4 **Agree with what A says. Complete each response with a simile.**

1 A: He looked really angry.
B: Yes, he had ....

2 A: It's impossible to get him to change his mind.
B: Yes, he's ....

3 A: He drove off very quickly, didn't he?
B: Yes, he was driving ....

4 A: You've been very busy at work, haven't you?
B: Yes, I've been ....

5 A: You can always rely on Suzie to organise the school concert.
B: Yes, she's ....

10 Binomials

A What are binomials?

Binomials are a type of idiom in which two words are joined by a conjunction (linking word), usually *and*. The order of the two words is fixed. For example, we always say **black and white**, NOT ~~white and black~~: 'Managing climate change isn't a **black and white** issue.' [separate and clear]

The words can be

- synonyms (words which mean the same): Sara's work is always very **neat and tidy**.
- opposites: If you go for cheaper speakers, the sound quality may be a bit **hit and miss**. [sometimes good, sometimes bad (informal)]
- the same word: They finished the race **neck and neck**. [equal]
- rhyming: Tables in the canteen take a lot of **wear and tear**. [damage through everyday use]
- alliterative: After the match, the players' legs were **black and blue**. [very bruised]
- joined by words other than *and*: The traffic was **bumper to bumper** all the way to the coast. [very heavy] **Little by little**, Vera gained the horse's confidence. [gradually] The house must be worth a quarter of a million, **give or take** a few thousand. [plus or minus (informal)]

Trinomials are a similar type of idiom, in which three words are joined, e.g. 'I've looked **here, there and everywhere** for my glasses but can't find them.' [everywhere]

B Other examples

example	meaning
Let's toss a coin to see who starts. You call: **heads or tails**?	heads is the side of a British coin with the monarch's head on it; tails is the other side
We're **at sixes and sevens** at work this week.	in a state of confusion (informal)
Hannah had flu last week, but she's **out and about** again now.	active, doing her usual activities (informal)
Although the twins look the same, when you talk to them you realise they're like **chalk and cheese**.	totally different (informal)
It's great to leave the **hustle and bustle** of the city at the weekend.	crowds and noise
I can't do up these tiny buttons – I'**m all fingers and thumbs** today.	am awkward with my hands, unable to do what I want to do (informal)
The money for the charity appeal came in **in dribs and drabs**, but we reached our target in the end.	small amounts at a time (informal)
It took a lot of **blood, sweat and tears** to get the business going.	hard work
I've asked you **time after time** not to do that.	many times (usually suggests irritation)
Her interest in painting **waxed and waned** over the years.	fluctuated (The literal meaning of *wax* and *wane* relates to the moon's changes in shape.)
She really doesn't enjoy living in the countryside. She's a city person, **through and through**.	completely (typically used about people)
We had a great holiday and explored **every nook and cranny** of the island.	every small place

Exercises

10.1 **Combine the words in the box to form ten binomials or trinomials from A opposite. For each, you will need to add *and* or another joining word.**

black neck little bumper everywhere give cranny here hit little
bumper miss neat blue neck nook take tear there tidy wear

10.2 **Complete each dialogue with an idiom from the opposite page.**

1 A: Was the traffic bad on the way here?
B: Yes, it was .... the whole way.
2 A: Did you get everything you needed today?
B: Yes, but I had to go .... to find it all.
3 A: This sofa is only six months old, but it looks really old.
B: Well, it gets a lot of ....
4 A: We're making very slow progress with this project.
B: But we're getting there ....
5 A: Have you found your watch yet?
B: No, I've searched in every .... but I still can't find it!
6 A: What's Galya's flat like?
B: Well, you know how organised she is! It's very ....
7 A: Which horse won the race?
B: Two of them finished ....
8 A: Were there a lot of people at the party?
B: About a hundred, ... a few.

10.3 **Which binomials do these pictures make you think of? Complete the captions.**

1
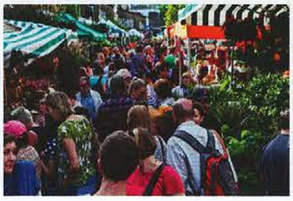
'The .... of market day.'

2
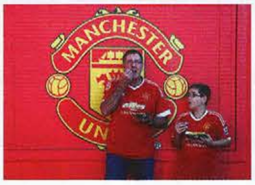
'He's a United supporter ....'

3
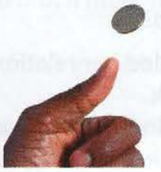
'........................ ?'

4
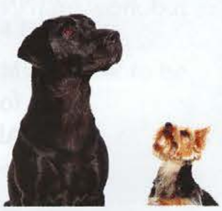
'Her two dogs are like ....'

10.4 **Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.**

1 People started to gradually enter the room. [DRIBS]
2 Jack's commitment to work went up and down throughout the year. [WAXED]
3 Have a few days' rest, and you'll be fully recovered in no time. [ABOUT]
4 I've often told him not to leave his car unlocked. [TIME]
5 The work required a lot of effort, but it was worth it. [BLOOD]
6 The whole team's been in a state of confusion since Kay resigned. [SEVENS]
7 I keep dropping things today – I'm so clumsy. [THUMBS]
8 My mum and I are completely different people, but we get on well. [CHALK]

11 Proverbs

Proverbs are short sentences which refer to something most people have experienced and which give advice or warnings. Like idioms, their form is fixed, and it is not always possible to guess the meaning from looking at the individual words.

A Positive situations

In these conversations, the second speaker uses a proverb to repeat and sum up what the first speaker says.

A: We all want to solve this problem, and I'm sure we'll find a solution.
B: Yes. **Where there's a will, there's a way**. [if we really want to achieve something, we can]

A: Well, we'll have to invest all of our savings and work really hard, and there's still a chance the project won't succeed.
B: I know, but **nothing ventured, nothing gained**. [you need to take risks to achieve something]

A: I was upset when I didn't get into university, but at least it leaves me free to go travelling.
B: Yeah. **Every cloud has a silver lining**. [there is something good in every bad situation]

A: My job is different every day. It's never boring.
B: Well, **variety is the spice of life**, isn't it? [change makes life interesting]

A: Josh found it impossible to get a new job, so he set up his own business instead.
B: Yes, well, **necessity is the mother of invention**. [if people really need to do something, they will find a way to do it]

B Negative situations

In these conversations, the second speaker uses a proverb to repeat and sum up what the first speaker says.

A: Marta ended her relationship with Jakob, and the next day her friend Ellie met Jakob for a drink.
B: **All's fair in love and war!** [all behaviour is acceptable in extreme situations, especially in romantic situations and competitions]

A: What a day! My car broke down and my wallet has been stolen.
B: **It never rains but it pours.** [problems always happen together]

A: I wonder why Sylvia and Ben have broken up.
B: Well, **it takes two to tango**. [two people are equally responsible]

C Other popular proverbs

I'm really impatient to finish decorating my flat, but **Rome wasn't built in a day!** [it takes a long time to do important things properly]

We should buy extra travel insurance for our skiing trip. **Better safe than sorry**. [it is better not to take risks, even if it seems boring or hard work]

I have to study hard and do a lot of exams to become an accountant, but **no pain no gain**. [there must be some suffering in order to succeed]

We don't have enough tickets for everybody, so it's a case of **first come, first served**. [the first to arrive will get something]

Exercises

11.1 **Look at A opposite. Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.**

1 Every cloud ☐ a mother of invention.
2 Nothing ventured, ☐ b there's a way.
3 Necessity is the ☐ c spice of life.
4 Where there's a will, ☐ d nothing gained.
5 Variety is the ☐ e has a silver lining.

11.2 **Write a suitable response to each remark with a proverb from B opposite.**

1 A friend tells you that Max and Lydia are getting divorced because they've both been having affairs.
2 Someone tells you about three bad things that happened to them all on the same day.
3 Someone tells you about a small lie they told in order to meet somebody that they really like.
4 A friend tells you that they missed the train they wanted to get, but the next train was cheaper and faster.
5 A friend tells you that they are frustrated that it is taking a long time to set up their own business.
6 A friend tells you that they are determined to save up enough money to go travelling, but they don't know how to do this.

11.3 **Correct the mistakes in these proverbs.**

1 We had no tent, so we made a shelter out of branches and leaves to protect ourselves from the storm. It was a case of need is the mother of invention.
2 I'm doing three jobs at the moment to pay for my studies. Still, they say that change is the spice of life!
3 I went to the gym every day for three months and felt so much fitter. It was very hard work but nothing pained, nothing gained.
4 I decided that bungee jumping was too dangerous and didn't go with my friends – better to be safe than dead.
5 We've got ten laptops at half-price. But hurry – it's first come, first serve.
6 Three big bills at the same time? It never pours but it rains!

11.4 **Complete each proverb.**

1 When we got there, they had given away all the free tickets. It was a case of first .... , first ....
2 Take your time and don't be impatient. Rome wasn't .... in .... !
3 It's a shame you missed your flight, but at least we can spend more time together. They do say every .... has .... silver ....
4 All my problems seem to come at the same time. It's true what they say: it never .... it pours!
5 It's going to be a lot of hard work, but nothing .... , nothing ....
6 They are both in the wrong. It takes .... to ....

12 Clichés and fixed statements

A

Clichés

A cliché is a comment that is often used in certain common, everyday situations. It is a comment that most people are familiar with and is therefore not original. Clichés are often used in everyday conversation, and they are also frequently played with in advertising slogans and newspaper headlines.

There are plenty more fish in the sea. [There are plenty more people or possibilities. Often used to cheer up someone who has found one person or opportunity unsuccessful.]

Look on the bright side. [Try to see something good in a bad situation. This is usually followed by an explanation of what the bright side might be, e.g. after failing a job interview you are told that you probably wouldn't have enjoyed the job if you'd got it.]

It's easy to be wise after the event or **Hindsight is a wonderful thing.** [When you know what happens next, it's easy to say what you or others should have done.]

It's not over until the fat lady sings. [You cannot be sure what will happen until the very end of something, often a sports event. The expression refers to a long opera which ends with a female singing the final song.]

Enough is as good as a feast. [You shouldn't have more of something than you need, e.g. food.]

Ignorance is bliss. [You may be happier sometimes when you do not know all the facts about a situation.]

You can lead a horse to water (**but you can't make it drink**). [You can give someone the opportunity to do something, but you cannot force them to do it. The second part of the idiom (but you can't make it drink) is often not actually said.]

Truth will out! [The truth will always become known.]

B

Fixed statements

fixed statement	meaning
Get your skates on! (informal)	Hurry up!
I'll believe it when I see it.	I'm doubtful that it will happen.
Mum's the word. (informal)	I promise not to tell a secret.
Good riddance! (informal)	I'm happy something or someone has gone.
Take it easy!	Calm down! Relax!
Fair's fair. (informal)	Their behaviour is reasonable.
So far, so good.	Things are going well up to this point.
Give me a break! (informal)	Stop criticising me!

Language help

It is best not to use clichés in formal writing or when you want to express an original or complex idea.

Exercises

12.1 Answer these questions about the idioms in A opposite.

1 Who do we say has to sing before we can be confident something has finished?
2 What do we say is as good as a feast?
3 What side do we say you have to look on if you are trying to be optimistic?
4 What do we say there are plenty more of in the sea?
5 What do we say that ignorance is?
6 When do we say that it is easy to be wise?
7 Which animal do we say you can lead to water but not make drink?
8 What do we say will happen with truth?

12.2 Complete each dialogue with a suitable idiom from the opposite page.

1 A: You won't tell anyone what I told you, will you?
B: No, I promise. ....
2 A: You're always late. It's just not good enough.
B: That's not fair. .... ! It's only the third time this week.
3 A: Lucy says she'll have finished her dissertation by Friday.
B: Hmm. ....
4 A: .... ! We need to leave in five minutes.
B: Don't worry – I'm nearly ready.
5 A: I'm not sorry Boris is leaving our office. Are you?
B: Not at all. .... !
6 A: I'm never going to get this finished in time.
B: .... ! Don't panic. I'll help you, if you like.
7 A: Sonia's made a bit of a mess of this work, hasn't she?
B: Just .... It's only her second day here.
8 A: How are you enjoying your new job?
B: .... But it's early days yet.
9 A: Who do you think was behind the plot to bring down the government?
B: I don't know, but I'm sure we'll find out. ....

12.3 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 Let me a break!
2 There are plenty more sharks in the sea.
3 So long, so good.
4 It's not over until the fat lady dies.
5 Truth will escape.
6 Dad's the word.

Over to you

Search online to find examples of the following clichés: *Any friend of yours is a friend of mine. Beauty is only skin deep. Money is the root of all evil.* What does each cliché mean? Write a short dialogue illustrating it in use.

13 Other languages

As you probably know, English includes many words from other languages. The idiomatic expressions in this unit all come from Latin or French.

A Latin

idiom	example	meaning
ad hoc /æd'hɒk/	He was paid on an **ad hoc** basis.	not planned but arranged or done when needed
ad infinitum /ædɪnfɪ'naɪtəm/	Their list of demands seemed to go on **ad infinitum**.	without end, forever
compos mentis /kɒmpɒs'mentis/	My grandfather is nearly 100, but he is perfectly **compos mentis**.	in control of his actions, mentally healthy
de facto /deɪ'fæktəʊ/	Jorge is the **de facto** head of the organisation.	existing but not officially agreed (formal)
non sequitur /nɒn'sekwɪtə/	Keiko's response seemed like a complete **non sequitur** to me.	a statement which does not seem to be connected with what was said before
status quo /steɪtəs'kwəʊ/	The Conservatives favoured maintaining the **status quo**, while the Liberals hoped for change.	the present situation

B French

A: Are you familiar with our health and safety procedures?

B: No, I'**m** not really **au fait** /əʊ'feɪ/ **with** them yet. [fully knowledgeable about]

A: I hate people who talk loudly on their mobile phones on trains.

B: I agree. They're my absolute **bête noire** /bet'nwaː/. [what the speaker hates most]

A: It's always beautiful weather when you have to study for exams.

B: I know. It's always the way. **C'est la vie** /seɪ.læ'viː/! [you say this when something happens that you do not like but which you have to accept]

A: Only the very best students are accepted on this course.

B: I know. They really are the **crème de la crème** /krem.də. laː'krem/. [very best]

A: I wish he'd consulted with us first about changing the computer systems.

B: Yes, he just presented us with **a fait accompli** /fet.əkɒm'pliː/. [a decision that has been made or a completed action that cannot be changed]

A: I think she should make more effort to control her children.

B: Yes, she has quite a **laissez-faire** /leɪseɪ'feə/ approach, doesn't she? [desire not to control]

A: The older generation criticising young people! There's nothing new about that.

B: Yes, **plus ça change** /pluː sæ' ʃɒnʒ/! [times change, but some things stay the same.]

Exercises

13.1 **Complete each sentence with a Latin expression from A opposite.**

1 We don't receive many complaints, so we just deal with them on an .... basis.

2 They are now the .... government and will remain in power until the election results are finalised.

3 This sentence in your essay is a .... – it's not logically connected to your previous point.

4 I could go on .... about the advantages of moving to the countryside.

5 Whenever a new person takes over as manager, they disturb the ...., at least to some extent.

6 His lawyer claims he wasn't fully .... when he admitted he was guilty.

13.2 **Replace the underlined part of each sentence with a suitable expression.**

1 There were no opportunities for discussion. The reform was presented as a decision which had already been made.

2 All players must be confident that they know the rules of the game.

3 I can't come out tonight because I have to work late. Oh well, it can't be helped.

4 Of course, I love being a movie star, but I must say that awards ceremonies are what I most detest.

5 So Dan has been arguing with his boss again. Things don't change!

6 A lot of the parents are not very happy about the new headmaster's liberal attitude to behaviour.

13.3 **Are these sentences true or false? If the answer is false, say why.**

1 A laissez-faire approach is strict and intolerant.

2 A de facto leader is the officially recognised leader of an organisation.

3 The crème de la crème of applicants are the best applicants for the job.

4 It is good to include non sequiturs in your writing.

5 A bête noire is something that you do not like.

6 If you are compos mentis, you are not responsible for your actions.

7 A fait accompli can easily and quickly be changed.

8 If someone talks about something ad infinitum, they talk about it for a long time.

Over to you

Match the following literal translations to idioms on the opposite page: *cream of the cream, it does not follow, a done deed*. What is the connection between the translation and the way the idiom is used in English? Can you work out any more literal translations to idioms in this unit?

14 Sailing

As Britain is an island nation, with the sea playing a major role in the country's history and its economy, it is not surprising that the language has developed many idioms from sailing.

A Talking about a business

Read this magazine article about a couple who bought a hotel.

When we took over the hotel five years ago, the business was **on the rocks**[1]. The economy was doing badly and people were **giving** luxury hotels like ours **a wide berth**[2]. The previous owners had decided to **cut and run**[3], but we loved the place and were sure we could make a go of it. We **battened down the hatches**[4] by cutting costs as much as possible and did all we could to **run a tight ship**[5]. Holidays and any other luxuries for our own family **went by the board**[6] for two years. However, we managed to **weather the storm**[7] and are now **making good headway**[8]. We have lots of major bookings **in the offing**[9] and are confident of making excellent profits this year.

[1] in serious difficulty

[2] avoiding (*berth* is an old sailing term meaning the distance a ship should leave between itself and a potential danger such as rocks)

[3] avoid a difficult situation by leaving suddenly (the image comes from cutting mooring ropes in order to make a quick departure)

[4] got ready for a difficult situation by preparing in every way possible (the image comes from closing the ship's doors securely when a storm is likely)

[5] control a business or organisation firmly and effectively

[6] were abandoned (the image comes from something being thrown overboard into the sea)

[7] survive difficult times

[8] making good progress

[9] likely to happen soon (*offing* was a term used to refer to the part of the sea on the horizon)

B More sailing idioms

idiom	example	explanation
be taken aback	We **were taken aback** when Ben announced his resignation.	were very surprised (If a boat is taken aback, it is suddenly attacked from behind.)
leave high and dry	Many holidaymakers were **left high and dry** when the tour company collapsed.	put in a difficult situation which they could not improve (The image is of a boat stuck on a sandbank and unable to move.)
take the wind out of sb's sails	Amelia was keen to become an actor, but her teacher's criticism of her performance **took the wind out of her sails.**	made her feel less confident, by saying or doing something unexpected (If there is no wind in a boat's sails, then it is unable to move.)
in the wake of sb / sth or in sb's / sth's wake	Thousands of people lost their jobs **in the wake of** the recession. The consultant strode through the hospital, several students **in his wake.**	following closely behind (The wake is the trail of foam left by a boat as it moves.)
all hands on deck	We'll need **all hands on deck** if we're going to be ready for the party on time.	everyone must help (A *hand* is a sailing term for a sailor and *deck* is the area you walk on outside on a boat.)
any port in a storm	I really don't like staying there, but I had no choice but to accept Jan's offer. **Any port in a storm**, I'm afraid!	You must accept any help you're offered when you're in a difficult situation. (When there is a storm at sea, a boat has to go to the nearest port.)

Exercises

14.1 Choose the correct answers.

1 Are you more likely to cut and run if a) things are going badly or b) things are going well?
2 Would you give a wide berth to a) something that attracts you or b) something that you do not want to approach?
3 If a politician is said to have weathered the storm, has he a) got through some problems or b) created some problems?
4 Would you batten down the hatches if you are a) expecting problems or b) expecting a relaxed period?
5 Is your daily exercise regime more likely to go by the board if a) you have some extra time or b) you are very busy?
6 If you were making good headway with your language studies, would you be a) pleased or b) upset?
7 If an event is in the offing, a) has it already happened or b) is it still in the future?
8 If a boss likes to run a tight ship, is he/she a) strict or b) relaxed?
9 If you had a business which was on the rocks would you be a) pleased or b) worried?

14.2 Complete each idiom.

1 I'd like all hands on .... for the next few hours, please.
2 The bad reviews of his first album took the .... out of the singer's sails.
3 He wrote an interesting article about European politics .... the wake of the war.
4 I was quite .... aback to hear that Maura had handed in her notice.
5 Alex went home early, leaving me .... and dry at the party with no one else to talk to.
6 Unfortunately, our plans to go on holiday this summer have had to go by the .... , as we're moving house.
7 I didn't want to sleep on my aunt's sofa for two weeks, but any port in a .... , as they say.
8 Despite the financial problems, I am confident that the company will succeed in .... the storm.

14.3 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 There's trouble ahead, so we'd better batten down the	☐	a offing.
2 It's a long journey, but we're making good	☐	b wake.
3 The business is doing so badly that I'm tempted to cut and	☐	c hatches.
4 There are some interesting plans for new projects in the	☐	d sails.
5 The film star left the room with a group of journalists in her	☐	e run.
6 It's about time someone took the wind out of Marco's	☐	f headway.

14.4 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 I try to avoid the city centre on Saturdays if I possibly can. [BERTH]
2 Jaime's mother was very surprised by his decision to leave school. [ABACK]
3 Amy's plans to buy a new car were abandoned when she lost her job. [BOARD]
4 Their relationship has been in serious difficulty for some months. [ROCKS]
5 Asim controls the business in a firm and efficient way. [SHIP]
6 The cost of home insurance has risen as a result of last summer's floods. [WAKE]
7 We were in a difficult situation when the babysitter didn't turn up. [HIGH]
8 I know it's been hard for you, but I'm sure you'll get through the bad times. [STORM]

15 War and conflict

A Idioms based on war

Many idioms come from the topic of war. They are used to refer to actions and events that are seen as similar to battles, conflicts or struggles.

In these newspaper cuttings, the first sentence explains the idiom in the headline.

Emotional **call to arms** inspires a generation

President Forga's recent challenge to young people to show solidarity and vote in the next election has won widespread support.

Minister **drops an** economic **bombshell**

The shock announcement by Ms Hanaria that the country is in a deep economic crisis, and that the currency must be devalued, stunned city economists today.

Sales tax – PM **beats a retreat**

After widespread negative reaction to his suggestion yesterday that sales tax should be raised, the prime minister today said there were 'no immediate plans for an increase'.

School closures – parents **on the warpath**

'Parents are very angry and have decided to take action immediately,' said a spokesperson. Demonstrations are planned for all major cities.

More bad news for **shell-shocked** investors

Investors, who are already suffering from the financial crisis, are feeling nervous today as Southern Bank prepares to announce unexpectedly high losses.

Teachers **come out fighting**

The head of the teachers' union said today that teachers would not accept a drop in salary and would oppose the decision to the very end.

B Idioms connected with firearms

I think you **shot yourself in the foot** by leaving your old job before getting a new one. [unintentionally did or said something foolish which made your situation worse]

When I suggested raising the membership fee, Sergio **shot me down in flames**. [immediately criticised my idea and refused to accept it]

I think we should **hang / hold fire** before making any rash decisions about redundancies. [delay making a decision]

C Idioms connected with violent events, armies, conflict and struggle

Now that I have a PhD, I've at least got **a fighting chance** of getting a teaching job in a university. [a small but real possibility]

Winning the cup in 1998 was just **a flash in the pan** – they haven't won a match since then! [something that happened only once and was not repeated]

Our new IT manager had a **baptism of fire** on her first day at work – all the computers crashed! [very difficult first experience of something]

As she left the studio, Dana Freen had to **run the gauntlet** of reporters asking her about her controversial new film. [face a lot of people who were criticising or attacking her]

Sometimes it's a real **battle of wills** between me and my dog – he wants to go one way across the park and I want to go another! [conflict between two different, strong desires or intentions]

After college, I **joined the ranks of** the unemployed for a year before I got my first job. [became (unemployed)]

Zetec **stole a march on** its rivals by launching its new car model six months earlier than expected. [got an advantage by acting before their rivals did]

Exercises

15.1 Complete the text with idioms from A opposite.

Teachers are on the (1) .... after the education minister yesterday dropped his (2) .... about government plans to reduce teachers' pay and increase their working hours. Teaching unions have issued a call to (3) ...., and (4) ....-shocked teachers have instantly agreed to oppose the plans, with strike action if necessary. 'All our members have come out (5) .... and we are confident that the government will be forced to (6) .... a retreat,' said union leader Chris Banks at a press conference this afternoon.

15.2 Match words from each box to form six idioms.

shoot down in baptism a flash in
a battle run hang / hold

of fire the pan of wills flames
fire the gauntlet

15.3 Complete each dialogue with an idiom from 15.2. You may need to change the form of the verb.

1 A: I think it would be better to postpone making a decision for a bit.
B: Yes, let's .... until the situation is clearer.

2 A: Well, your first day at work was certainly full of drama.
B: Yes, it was a real ....

3 A: Has he written any other books?
B: No, I think the first one was just ....

4 A: Would you like to be a celebrity?
B: No, I'd hate to have to .... of the paparazzi whenever I left the house.

5 A: He's very critical, isn't he, your boss?
B: Yes, all my ideas usually get ....

6 A: Why do parents and teenagers always seem to clash?
B: Well, you often have ...., especially between sons and fathers.

15.4 Correct the ten mistakes with idioms in this paragraph.

When Ali graduated, he decided he didn't want to meet the ranks of commuters struggling to work every day. He wanted to set up his own online gift-ordering business so that he could work from home. He knew it was a risk but felt he would have at least a fighting opportunity of success. Initially, he and a college friend planned to start the business together. Ali had the idea and Igor, his friend, had the money to invest in the company. But then just weeks before the launch, Igor dropped a bomb: he said he no longer wanted to be part of Ali's plans. Despite Ali's attempts to persuade him to wait fire on his decision, Igor said he was no longer prepared to take the risk and was going to hit a retreat before it was too late. However, two weeks later Igor took a march on Ali by launching his own online gift-ordering company. Ali was gun-shocked by this betrayal, but he soon came out battling. He took Igor's behaviour as a call to weapons and has persuaded a bank to lend him the money he needs. Ali's introduction to the business world has certainly been a beginning of fire, but I'm sure he will be really successful.

Over to you

Use a search engine to search for these words: *warpath, shell-shocked, bombshell, gauntlet*. Write down an example sentence where each word is used in an idiom.

16 Transport

As transport is such an everyday experience for many people, it is unsurprisingly a rich source of idioms.

A Trains

Karl was full of enthusiasm when he started his university course. He worked extremely hard at first, but, after a couple of years, he **ran out of steam**[1] and lost interest in his studies. He spent much more time going to parties and staying out all night than studying, and his tutor worried that he had **gone off the rails**[2]. But then Karl fell in love with a student in his department. Now, six months **down the line**[3], he is **back on track**[4] towards gaining an excellent degree and fulfilling his dreams.

[1] lost energy or interest

[2] started behaving in an unacceptable way

[3] later

[4] again on the way to achieving something

B Cars

We use **at / behind the wheel** to mean 'be the driver' (NB in this expression, *wheel* refers to the steering wheel): I saw their car this morning but couldn't make out who was **at the wheel**.

We talk about someone being **in the driving seat** to mean that they are in control of the situation: Although the general manager is officially in charge, everyone knows his deputy is really **in the driving seat**.

We talk about **life in the fast lane** to mean a life that is active, exciting and dangerous. **Life in the slow lane** is correspondingly lacking in excitement and danger: I've had enough of **life in the fast lane**, so I'm giving up my executive sales job and moving to the countryside.

Doing a U-turn means changing direction, and it is used idiomatically when talking about politics: Initially, the minister was against increasing road tax, but he has now **done a U-turn** and is defending the plan.

If we **go / move / step up a gear**, we start to work or play more effectively or quickly than before: After half-time, the team **stepped up a gear** and managed to score three goals.

C Planes

idiom	example	meaning
be flying high	The company had some initial problems but now it **is flying high**.	is very successful
fly by the seat of your pants	We had no business experience before opening the shop, so we were really **flying by the seat of our pants** at first.	doing something difficult without much experience or ability (informal)
do something on autopilot	I've written so many references now that I can more or less **do it on autopilot**.	do something without thinking (informal)
take a nosedive	Share prices **took a nosedive** last week.	went down suddenly and fast
be on a collision course	The two countries **are on a collision course**, and it seems that nothing can be done to prevent serious trouble.	are behaving in such a way that is likely to cause a major disagreement or fight
come to a standstill	Production has **come to a standstill** because of the strike.	stopped

Exercises

16.1 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1

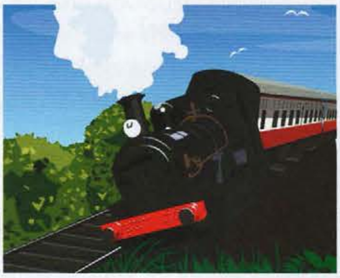

2

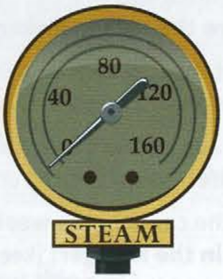

3

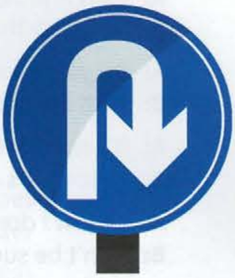

go .... run .... do ....

16.2 Complete each dialogue with an idiom from the opposite page.

1 Tim: Edward's moving to New York. He said he needs more excitement in his life.
Ruth: Yes, I think he's tired of ....
2 Rob: The government have changed their mind completely on the new vehicle tax!
Pierre: Yes, they've ....
3 Mona: Their son has started getting into trouble with the police.
Leon: Yes, he seems to have ....
4 Rajiv: They were so enthusiastic when they started the new conservation scheme, but now it all seems to have slowed down.
Nick: Yes, the whole project seems to have ....
5 Ursula: We need to start doing things more effectively and quickly.
Mark: Yes, we definitely need to ....
6 Freda: Did you see who was driving when the accident happened?
Krishnan: No, I couldn't see who was ....

16.3 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 I'm glad to say that things are now back ☐ a a driving seat any more.
2 We don't know what could happen a year down ☐ b a collision course.
3 Things are out of control. Nobody seems to be in the ☐ c the line.
4 Profits of Internet-based companies have taken ☐ d a complete standstill.
5 I think the employers and the unions are on ☐ e on track.
6 Nothing's happening. Things have come to ☐ f a nosedive recently.

16.4 Choose the correct answer.

1 If a business is flying high, it is a) failing b) just starting up c) doing well and is profitable.
2 If you do something on autopilot, you do it a) without thinking b) using a computer c) deliberately.
3 If someone is back on track, they are a) being punished for bad behaviour b) behaving in a less responsible way c) behaving responsibly again.
4 If you are flying by the seat of your pants, you are doing something a) without much ability or experience b) without thinking about it c) which is very exciting.

Over to you

Find the meanings of these idioms in a dictionary or online and make a note of them in your notebook under the heading 'Transport idioms'. Note down the definition, an example sentence and any other useful information, such as whether it is formal or informal, etc.: *drive someone round the bend, a back-seat driver, step on it, put the brakes on, give / get the green light*.

17 Animals

A Cats and dogs

A: Matt and Jess are so arrogant.
B: Yes, they think they'**re the cat's whiskers**. [better than everyone else]

A: Do you think he'll get the job?
B: With no qualifications or experience? He **hasn't** got **a cat in hell's chance!** [no chance at all]

A: It's not fair that we have exams immediately after the school holidays!
B: I know, **it's a dog's life!** [life is hard and unpleasant]

A: I know I don't need the car over the weekend, but I don't want you to use it either.
B: Don't be such a **dog in the manger!** [keeping something so that other people can't use it, not because you really want it yourself]

B Farm animals

idiom	example	meaning
flog a dead horse	You're **flogging a dead horse** trying to persuade Kim to move house again.	wasting time trying to do something that won't succeed (usually used in continuous tenses)
(straight) from the horse's mouth	Guess what? Juan is going to work in Moscow! I got it **straight from the horse's mouth**!	from the person concerned
until the cows come home	You can argue **until the cows come home**, but I'll never agree.	for a very long time
sort (out) the sheep from the goats	Setting the class such a difficult exercise will certainly **sort the sheep from the goats**.	find the people or things of high quality from a group of mixed quality
might as well be hung for a sheep as a lamb	You're already late, so just take all day off. You **might as well be hung for a sheep as a lamb**!	might as well do something more serious as you are going to be punished anyway

C Other animals

In these conversations, the second speaker uses an idiom to repeat and sum up what the first speaker says.

A: The president's just pretending to be upset about the situation, don't you think?
B: Yes, he's **shedding crocodile tears** to get popular support.

A: Thomas was really upset when his team let in an own goal.
B: Yes, he was **sick as a parrot**, wasn't he?

A: Ana's hoping that Carlos will stop gambling once they're married, but I doubt he will.
B: No, **a leopard can't change its spots**.

A: He complained his business was about to fail so often that no one believed him when it finally did.
B: Yes, he **cried wolf** once too often.

A: He looks kind and gentle, but he's not like that at all.
B: You're right. He really is **a wolf in sheep's clothing**.

A: I'm sure everyone is thinking about the divorce, but no one ever mentions it.
B: That's right. It's certainly **the elephant in the room**.

Exercises

17.1 **Complete each dialogue with an idiom from A opposite.**

1 A: She obviously thinks she looks really good in that new dress, doesn't she?
B: Yes, she thinks ....
2 A: Things are pretty hard for you at the moment, I guess.
B: Yes, it's .... !
3 A: Do you think you'll pass your driving test?
B: No, I haven't got ....
4 A: Her husband is so selfish. he never shares anything, even if he doesn't want it.
B: Yes, he has a real .... attitude.

17.2 **Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1
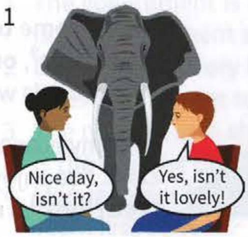
Nice day, isn't it?
Yes, isn't it lovely!

3
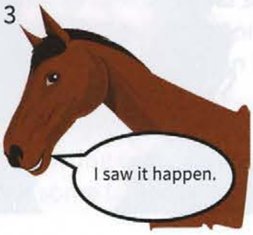
I saw it happen.

5
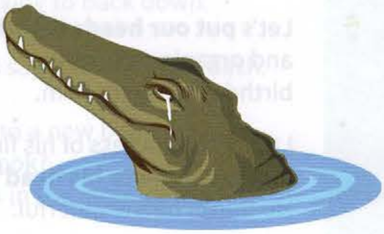

2
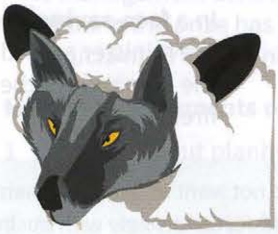

4
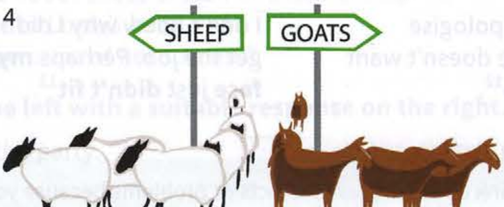

6
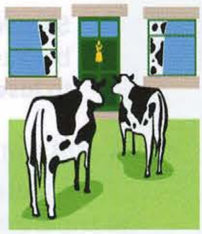

17.3 **Complete each idiom.**

1 He's flogging a dead .... trying to revive that old idea.
2 He'll never stop causing trouble – a .... can't change its spots.
3 Lucy will argue with you about that until the .... come home.
4 He was sick as a .... not to make the finals.
5 Let's stay out a bit longer. We might as well be hung for a .... as a ....

17.4 **Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.**

1 Don't pretend there's an emergency, or no one will help when you really need it.
2 The minister pretends to be upset about homelessness, but does nothing about it.
3 I hate our neighbours' selfish attitude – they don't want the parking space, but they won't let us have it.
4 We can discuss it for a very long time, but I won't change my mind.

Over to you

Look up these animals in your dictionary: *snake, fish, rat*. Can you find an idiom using each of them?

18 Parts of the body

A The head and face

You should face up to your problems. Don't just **bury your head in the sand**[1]

My dad **has a good head for**[4] figures. He can do complicated sums in seconds.

There's more to this news story **than meets the eye**[6].

Let's **put our heads together**[8] and organise a surprise birthday party for Sam.

I think the success of his first film **has gone to his head**[10]. He thinks he's wonderful.

She won't apologise because she doesn't want to **lose face**[12].

Kate **is head and shoulders above**[2] her twin sister when it comes to passing exams.

I don't know why I didn't get the job. Perhaps **my face** just **didn't fit**[13].

It **was one in the eye for**[3] his critics when he won the tennis tournament.

I just **held / bit my tongue**[5] and said nothing.

As an English speaker, I find it difficult to **get my tongue round**[7] Scandinavian names.

After some **teething troubles**[9], our new wireless network is working well.

I like my economic history class. I've enjoyed **getting my teeth into**[11] a new subject.

In a **face-saving**[14] exercise, the minister agreed to meet the demands of the striking firefighters.

[1] refuse to think about unpleasant facts or problems because you do not want to deal with them
[2] a lot better than
[3] a disappointment for
[4] is good at something; collocates strongly with business, figures or heights
[5] stopped myself from saying something which I really wanted to say
[6] it is more difficult to understand or involves more things than one thought
[7] pronounce
[8] plan something together
[9] problems in the early stages of doing something new
[10] made him think he's very important and made him a less pleasant person
[11] becoming involved in something enthusiastically
[12] lose the respect of others
[13] my appearance or personality was not suitable for the job
[14] done so that other people will continue to respect you

B Other body idioms

I **would give my right arm for** a job in the film industry. I've always loved the movies. [would very much like to have]

I don't want to **tread on your toes**, but would it be OK if I added a few paragraphs to your report? [do something that could upset someone by getting involved in something that is their responsibility]

The media tend to **point the finger at** the government for most of the current problems. [accuse of being responsible for]

He gave an awful speech. He made lots of jokes but nobody laughed. It **made my toes curl**. [made you feel extremely embarrassed or ashamed for someone else]

You have to read the newspapers daily if you want to **keep your finger on the pulse**. [stay up-to-date]

Language help

Draw pictures to help you remember the idioms, e.g. draw toes and write the 'toes curl' idiom in it.

made my toes curl

Exercises

18.1 Correct the mistakes in these idioms from A opposite.

1 I wonder what is really behind the president's decision. I'm sure there's more to it than meets the mind.
2 Melissa is head and hair above her brother when it comes to maths.
3 I'm sure we can think of a good present for Jim if we put our hearts together.
4 Kasia really loves getting her mouth into a new project.
5 You mustn't bury your feet in the sand – problems don't go away if you ignore them.
6 It was one in the nose for Liliana's brother when she passed her driving test first time – it had taken him five attempts.

18.2 Read these statements and answer the questions.

1 The government is anxious not to lose face and so is refusing to back down.
Is the government afraid of losing respect or money?
2 Danny finds it very hard to bite his tongue when his boss says something foolish.
Does Danny want to laugh or to speak?
3 The novelist said she always enjoyed getting her teeth into a new book.
Is the novelist talking about starting or finishing a new book?
4 Management has introduced some face-saving measures in the attempt to make the problems seem less serious.
Is management concerned about a loss of staff or a loss of respect?
5 Winning the prize has gone to Lucia's head.
Is Lucia nicer or less nice because of her success?

18.3 Match the statements on the left with a suitable response on the right.

1 Let's talk about planning the party.	☐	a Yes, there's more to it than meets the eye.
2 Bruno was upset when he lost the race to his rival.	☐	b That's right, his face didn't fit.
3 Ahmed's been so arrogant since he won that competition.	☐	c Yes, he was afraid of losing face.
4 He didn't want people to think less of him.	☐	d Yes, it was one in the eye for him.
5 They never really liked him in his old job.	☐	e Yes, they're all pointing the finger at him.
6 It's a very complicated issue, I think.	☐	f Yes, let's put our heads together.
7 Everyone says that Karl is to blame.	☐	g Well, it's good to keep your finger on the pulse.
8 I read a newspaper every day.	☐	h Yes, it's really gone to his head.

18.4 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 I wish I could go to Japan with you! [ARM]
2 After some initial small problems, the business began to do well. [TEETHING]
3 I find it very hard to pronounce some Welsh place names. [TONGUE]
4 I don't know why they're accusing me – I'm not guilty. [FINGER]
5 I'm not very good at maths, but my brother understands all about figures. [HEAD]
6 I hope I'm not interfering, but could I suggest you try a different approach? [TOES]
7 Paulo's speech at the wedding was so embarrassing! [TOES]
8 I don't see how you can keep in touch with what's going on in the world if you never watch TV or listen to the radio. [FINGER]

19 Games and sport

A Card games and board games

You'd think it was **Monopoly money**, the amount he spent last week. [money that has no value and is used only in games]

I wanted the job in Paris, but I knew **the dice were loaded against** me because my French isn't very good. [I would be unlikely to succeed]

He drives so fast! You're **dicing with death** if you let him drive you. [taking a great risk]

The audience sat there **poker-faced** all through the play. [expressionless; this comes from the card game *poker*, where you must not let your face reveal whether you have good or bad cards]

Management found that the union **held all the cards** in the pay talks. [was in a strong position]

I **kept / played my cards close to my chest** in the interview. [didn't reveal my plans]

The politician **played his ace / trump card** by promising lower taxes for all on the day of the election. [used his advantage, especially one others did not know about]

B Ball games

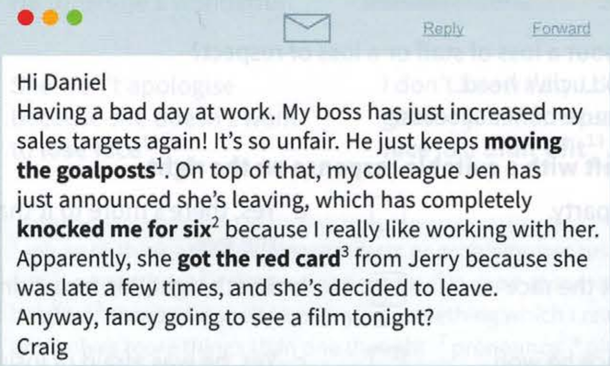

Hi Daniel
Having a bad day at work. My boss has just increased my sales targets again! It's so unfair. He just keeps **moving the goalposts**[1]. On top of that, my colleague Jen has just announced she's leaving, which has completely **knocked me for six**[2] because I really like working with her. Apparently, she **got the red card**[3] from Jerry because she was late a few times, and she's decided to leave.
Anyway, fancy going to see a film tonight?
Craig

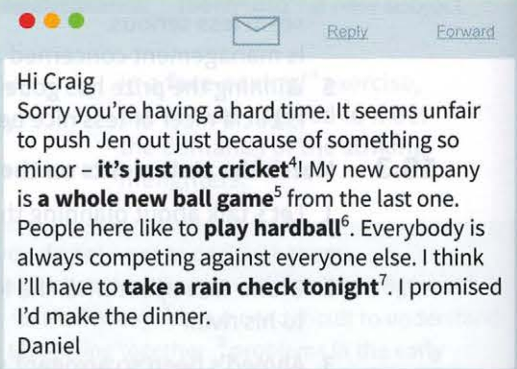

Hi Craig
Sorry you're having a hard time. It seems unfair to push Jen out just because of something so minor – **it's just not cricket**[4]! My new company is **a whole new ball game**[5] from the last one. People here like to **play hardball**[6]. Everybody is always competing against everyone else. I think I'll have to **take a rain check tonight**[7]. I promised I'd make the dinner.
Daniel

[1] changing the rules in a situation in a way that is not fair [2] surprised and upset me [3] received official criticism for bad behaviour [4] it's not right or fair behaviour; usually used humorously [5] a completely different situation [6] be so determined to get what they want that they use unfair methods [7] something you say when you have to refuse someone's invitation to something that you would like to do at another time

C Boxing

idiom	example	explanation
not pull any punches	The coach did**n't pull any punches** when he told the team how badly they had played.	spoke in an honest and direct way without trying to be tactful
be / feel punch-drunk	The trade fair was so noisy and busy that I **felt punch-drunk** by the end of the week.	was tired and confused (If a boxer is punch-drunk, he is dazed as a result of being hit on the head.)
below the belt	It was **below the belt** to mention his rival's marital problems to the journalist.	an unfair attack (In boxing, hitting someone below the belt is not allowed.)
throw in the sponge / towel	Kisho will never agree to **throw in the sponge**, even if he has lost any chance of winning the election.	In the past, throwing the sponge or towel into the ring meant admitting defeat.

Exercises

19.1 Look at A opposite. Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1

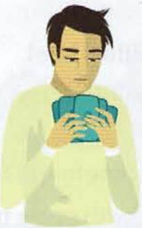

play / keep ....

2

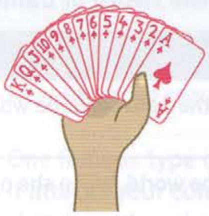

hold ....

3

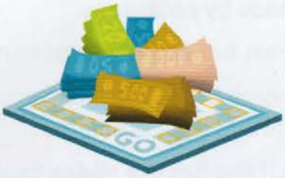

M..................................

4

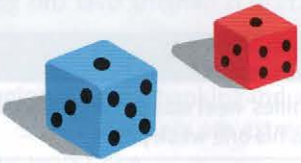

the dice ....

5

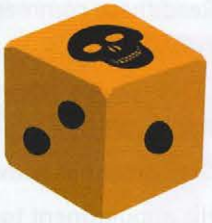

dicing ....

6

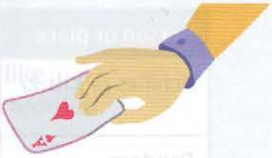

play ....

19.2 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using an idiom from 19.1.

1 I felt I was taking a huge risk riding at high speed on the back of his motorbike.
2 I didn't tell anyone about my plans and didn't mention that I was going to resign soon.
3 He's so rich. He spends money as if it were toy money.
4 The barrister used an advantage none of us knew about and revealed the final piece of evidence.
5 I wanted a job in politics, but felt I was unlikely to succeed as I had no personal contacts in the political world.
6 Masa is so much more qualified and experienced than I am. He has all the advantages if we both apply for the same job.

19.3 Read these statements and answer the questions.

a Joseph just sat there with a blank expression on his face.
b I think Ivana was unfair when she mentioned to her boss that Kim had once been in prison.
c Jung said he was too busy to come with us this time, so we went without him.
d The news obviously surprised and upset Gina a lot.

1 Who said something that was below the belt? ....
2 Who took a rain check? ....
3 Who was knocked for six by something? ....
4 Who was poker-faced? ....

19.4 Complete each idiom.

1 Jin's in a very powerful position; he .... all the ....
2 The teacher has .... the .... so many times that none of the students knows what the rules are any more.
3 Liam is very direct with people; he never .... any ....
4 What? The headteacher changed the holiday from a whole day to a half day! Poor kids! It's just not .... , is it?
5 The two presidential candidates have played .... recently and have made quite personal attacks on each other.
6 Advertising on TV is not the same as it was 20 years ago; it's a whole .... now.
7 Everyone felt .... after six hours of political debate.
8 At 10 pm on the night of the election, the president threw .... and admitted he had lost.

20 Ancient myths and history

A Greek mythology

Read these comments made by politicians:

I think this party has a great future, but corruption seems to be our **Achilles' heel**.

In his latest speech criticising the prime minister's actions, the finance minister has opened a **Pandora's box** of political and legal problems.

Our leader has shown that she has **the Midas touch** when it comes to economic planning.

His appointment to leader has caused many problems within the party, with some members accusing him of being **a Trojan horse**, sent to destroy the party from within.

Another stock market crash is hanging over this government like **the sword of Damocles**.

person or place	explanation
Achilles /ə'kɪliːz/	Achilles' heel was the only place on his body that the hero could be wounded or killed. It was his one weak point.
Pandora	Pandora carried a box which held all the evils of the world. When she opened it, evil escaped into the world.
King Midas	Everything Midas touched turned into gold.
Troy	The Greeks sent a huge wooden horse into the city of Troy as a gift. Soldiers were hiding inside, who then attacked the city.
Damocles	During a banquet, Damocles saw a sword hanging by just one hair above his head, ready to fall and kill him.

B Other expressions related to ancient myths and history

In these conversations, the second speaker uses an idiom to repeat and sum up what the first speaker says.

A: The government needs to act now before it's too late!
B: I know. It's like they're **fiddling while Rome burns**.

A: We've won an important victory, but we must fight on.
B: Yes, we mustn't **rest on our laurels**.

A: I'll examine every word in every single document until I find the answer.
B: Yes – **leave no stone unturned**.

A: We knew it was going to end in disaster. It was so obvious!
B: I know – we all **saw the writing on the wall**.

A: The early days of our business were such fun, and we were so successful!
B: Yes, they really were **the halcyon days**.

A: I don't think we should react to their insults.
B: I agree. Let's just **turn the other cheek**.

A: We won our court case, but we've got no money left. It wasn't such a great success after all!
B: No, I agree. It was more of **a Pyrrhic victory**.

A: So Marco accepted responsibility for the situation and resigned as director?
B: Yes, he decided to **fall on his sword**.

A: The last thing Edward said to his boss when he left the job was that she was a fool!
B: Yes, that wasn't such a great **parting shot**, was it?

A: The dispute has got bigger and bigger – everyone's involved now.
B: Yes, it seems to have grown to **epic proportions**.

Exercises

20.1 Look at A opposite. Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1
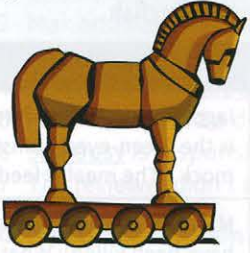

2
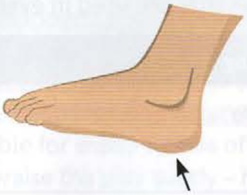

3
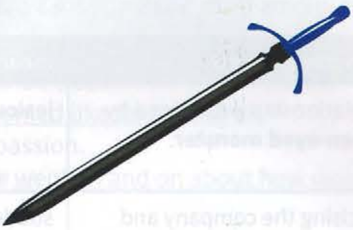

4
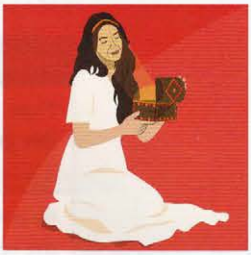

20.2 Complete each sentence with an idiom from 20.1.

1 New financial regulations are hanging over the banking industry like .... Bankers are extremely worried.

2 One famous type of computer virus works like .... It attacks your computer from inside the system.

3 He's a good worker in many ways, but planning is his .... He's so disorganised.

4 She opened .... when she started investigating corruption in the building industry.

20.3 Complete the crossword.

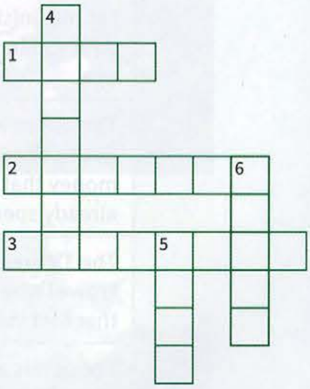

Across

1 the writing on the ....

2 a .... victory

3 leave no stone ....

Down

4 .... days

5 Don't .... on your laurels.

6 turn the other ....

20.4 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 Julia's leaving shot as she walked out of the room was to say that she never wanted to see any of us ever again.

2 The police left no stones unturned in trying to trace the missing child.

3 Piero fell into his sword and accepted full responsibility for the disaster.

4 She really has the Pandora touch – everything she does is hugely successful.

5 It was a task of epic size, but everyone tried their hardest to succeed.

6 We should continue to work hard and not sleep on our laurels.

7 If we are faced with a violent attack, we should just turn the other face and not react.

8 Doing nothing at this stage would be like singing while Rome burns.

Over to you

Use the Internet to find out where the idioms in B come from. You can use a search engine like Google or a specific site about idioms, e.g. www.phrases.org.uk

21 Shakespeare

Many common idioms actually come from the works of Shakespeare (1564–1616), the famous English poet and dramatist who wrote 38 plays, including *Romeo and Juliet* and *Hamlet.* Here are some idioms from Shakespeare's plays that are used in everyday English.

modern-day example	meaning	origin
Their relationship was ruined by **the green-eyed monster**.	jealousy	Iago: O, beware, my lord, of jealousy; It is the green-eyed monster which doth mock / The meat it feeds on. (*Othello*)
By criticising the company and the team's performance, the new manager succeeded in upsetting everyone **at one fell swoop**.	suddenly, at the same time	Macduff (on hearing that all his family have been killed): What, all my pretty chickens and their dam / At one fell swoop? (*Macbeth*)
My nephews came to stay at the weekend and have **eaten me out of house and home.**	eaten all the food there is in my house (informal)	Mistress Quickly: He hath eaten me out of house and home; he hath put all my substance into that fat belly of his. (*Henry IV Pt II*)
It was a terrifying film – it **made my hair stand on end.**	frightened me very much	Ghost: I could a tale unfold [which] would … make each particular hair to stand on end, like quills upon the fretful porpentine. (*Hamlet*)
Let me finish this email – I'll be with you **in the twinkling of an eye.**	in an instant	Launcelot: I'll take my leave of the Jew in the twinkling of an eye. (*The Merchant of Venice*)
The police were sent on **a wild-goose chase**, looking for the money that the criminals had already spent.	a search that has no hope of success (informal)	Mercutio: If thy wits run the wild-goose chase, I have done. (*Romeo and Juliet*)
The TV presenter **laid it on with a trowel** when he was introducing that film star.	praised somebody or something excessively (informal)	Celia: Well said: that was laid on with a trowel. (*As You Like It*)
The film is a classic love story about **star-crossed lovers.**	people unlucky in love	Prologue: A pair of star-crossed lovers take their life. (*Romeo and Juliet*)
Nick and Maria have broken up again! **The course of true love never did run smooth.**	There are always difficulties to face in romantic relationships.	Lysander: The course of true love never did run smooth. (*A Midsummer Night's Dream*)

Exercises

21.1 **Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.**

1 The film is about two people unlucky in love and their relationship.
2 Max and his friends managed to eat all the food I had in the house.
3 Harry's driving terrified me, but we arrived safely.
4 He set off on a hopeless quest to find the buried treasure he'd read about.
5 Masha prepared a delicious meal in what seemed like no time at all.
6 Jealousy is responsible for many crimes of passion.
7 The reviewer didn't praise the play subtly – he went on and on about how wonderful it was.

21.2 **Complete each idiom.**

1 So, Helen's parents are trying to persuade her not to get married to Tom? Oh well, the course of .... love never did run ....!
2 This thriller is terrifying. It'll make your hair stand on ....
3 I need to go shopping. The kids have eaten us out of .... and home.
4 I'll just let the cat out, then I'll be with you in the twinkling of an ....
5 Let's try and write all our holiday postcards at one fell .... this morning.

21.3 **Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1
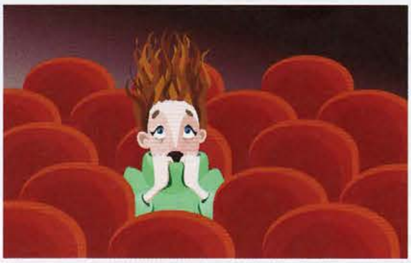

3
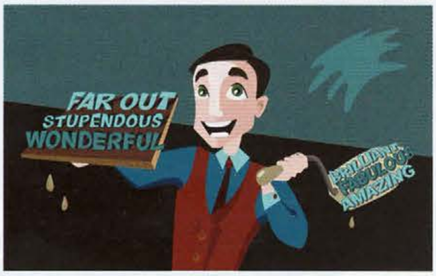

2
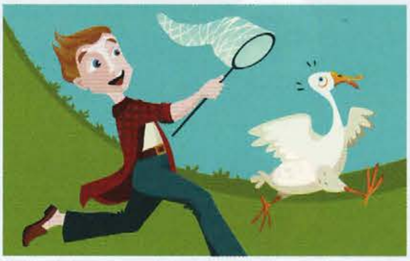

4
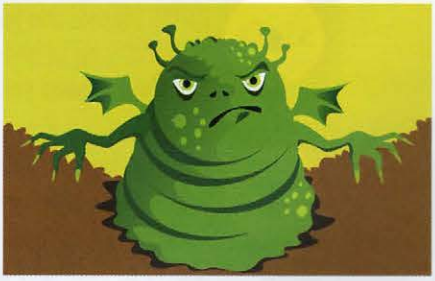

21.4 **Complete each sentence with an idiom from 21.3.**

1 The bank robbers left the country after they had cleverly managed to send the police off on a ....
2 The ghost story David told made ....
3 Maya and Harry's relationship was destroyed by ....
4 Simply tell your daughter that you like her work. There's no need to ....

Over to you

'Pound of flesh' and 'send someone packing' are two other idioms from Shakespeare. Search for these phrases online and see if you can find their meaning and origin. You could search using a search engine such as Google, or visit the website http://www.phrases.org.uk. See if you can find any other Shakespearean idioms in common usage.

22 Literature

A Famous literary characters

example	explanation
My grandmother's attic was **an Aladdin's cave** of old paintings and other valuable objects.	In *The Arabian Nights*, Aladdin is imprisoned in a cave full of treasure.
All the cameras on our streets mean that **Big Brother** is watching us all the time.	Big Brother is the dictator who watches everybody all the time in George Orwell's novel *1984*.
When I was learning to play golf, Jack was my **Man Friday**. He advised me and even carried all my equipment. (You may also see **Girl** or **Person Friday**)	Man Friday is the servant on a desert island in Daniel Defoe's novel *Robinson Crusoe*.
George is a real **Jekyll and Hyde** character. One minute he's happy and friendly, the next minute he's aggressive and violent.	Jekyll and Hyde represent two opposite sides of Dr Jekyll's personality in Robert Louis Stevenson's novel *The Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde*.
I'm single and still waiting for **Prince Charming** to appear on his white horse!	Prince Charming is the handsome prince in many fairy tales. The expression is often used humorously.

B Novels, plays, fairy tales and poems

The idioms in these horoscopes all come from novels, plays, fairy tales and poems.

Horoscopes

ARIES Someone asks you to take on a big responsibility, but be careful: it may become **an albatross around your neck**[1].

TAURUS You meet someone this week who you think will play an important role in your life. But be prepared to say goodbye; you may **be like ships that pass in the night**[2].

GEMINI You sometimes feel that your hopes and ambitions are just **castles in the air**[3]. But hold on to your dreams; one of them will soon come true.

CANCER You find yourself in **a Catch-22 situation**[4] with someone very close to you. One of you needs to be mature and act first, but who will it be?

LEO You have decided you need a new challenge. Why not **go the whole hog**[5]: sell your house, leave town and travel the world?

VIRGO Spending all your time studying has put you in **an ivory tower**[6]. Try to live life more in the real world, not just with your books

LIBRA There may be a big argument with someone close to you. But don't worry: it will just be **a storm in a teacup**[7].

SCORPIO You don't like offending people, but sometimes you have to **call a spade a spade**[8]. Don't be afraid to say something that may hurt someone.

[1] a problem that it is difficult to be free of [2] be like people who come into your life and leave again after a short time [3] plans that have very little chance of happening [4] an impossible situation where you are prevented from doing one thing until you have done another thing, but you cannot do the other thing until you have done the first thing [5] do something as completely as possible [6] a situation where you are separated from the ordinary and unpleasant things that happen in life [7] a situation where people get very angry or worried about something that is not important [8] to tell the truth about something, even if it is not polite or pleasant

Exercises

22.1 **Answer these questions. Use the information in A opposite to help you.**

1 Which servant helped Robinson Crusoe?
2 What was the surname of Dr Jekyll's evil side?
3 Who do fairy-tale heroines fall in love with?
4 Which authoritarian figure do we say watches everything we do?
5 Who found himself in a cave full of treasure?

22.2 **Complete each sentence with a literary character from 22.1.**

1 My sister's getting married next week. I'm so happy she's found her ....
2 The Internet service providers know exactly which websites we visit – .... is watching us all the time.
3 My life is totally chaotic. I need a .... to help me with everything.
4 The old cupboard was a(n) ....'s cave of valuable objects.
5 Roberto is a real Jekyll and .... character. You can never predict how he's going to behave.

22.3 **Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using the word in brackets.**

1 Don't worry, it's just one of those problems where everyone gets upset and then it's forgotten. [STORM]
2 He wants to borrow a lot of money to go travelling, but paying it back could become a problem that he can't escape from. [NECK]
3 Why are you just getting a new fridge and cooker? Why not do things completely and get a new kitchen? [WHOLE]
4 He's always got some new money-making plan or scheme, but most of the time they're just plans that will never happen. [AIR]
5 I met him ten years ago and then saw him again last year. We seem to be like people who enter and leave each other's lives after a short time. [SHIPS]

22.4 **Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.**

1 She's very direct and always calls	☐	a Catch-22 situation.
2 I found myself in a ridiculous	☐	b a storm in a teacup.
3 People say that academics live in	☐	c ivory towers.
4 There's nothing to worry about; it's just	☐	d a spade a spade.

22.5 **Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1
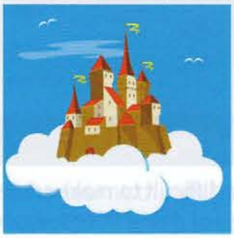

2
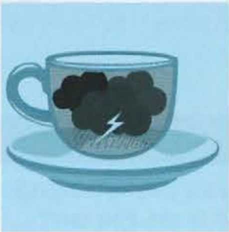

3
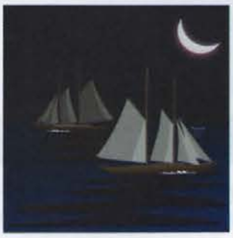

4
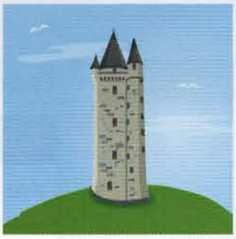

Over to you

Use the Internet to find out the literary origins of the idioms in B opposite. The Phrase Finder at www.phrases.org.uk is a good place to start your research.

23 Learning

A

A Studying and making progress

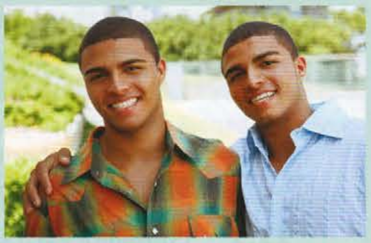

Tom and Harry are twin brothers. Tom had **set his sights on**[1] going to university, but some of his teachers told him his grades were not **up to scratch**[2]. So he decided to work harder, **burning the candle at both ends**[3] and studying long hours. As a result, his work improved **in leaps and bounds**[4] and he got a place at university.

Harry, on the other hand, was naturally clever. When he was younger, all his teachers thought he was **on track**[5] for a place at university. In his last couple of years at school, however, he started getting poor grades and had **a lot of ground to make up**[6] in order to improve. Unlike his brother, though, he didn't work **round the clock**[7], and as a result he didn't get in to university.

[1] decided to achieve something (You can also say 'have your sights set on (doing) something') [2] up to a satisfactory standard or quality [3] going to bed late and getting up early [4] progressing rapidly (You can also say 'by leaps and bounds') [5] working on and likely to achieve something [6] a lot of work to catch up [7] all the time

B

Remembering and forgetting

How do you learn and remember new vocabulary in English? Here are some tips from other students:

Kasia: I usually try to **learn** new expressions **off by heart**[1], especially when they don't exist in my language.

Sadiq: I've got **a memory like a sieve**[2], so I find a mind map or drawing can help. If I have a few key words or an image, it **jogs my memory**[3].

Massimo: Because I like acting in my spare time, I often learn certain things like I would learn a script, so I can repeat them **word for word**[4]. Stuff like irregular verbs, for example.

Farah: At school, we were always taught to **learn by rote**[5], so that we could repeat things from memory, and I still use that technique to help me remember new vocabulary.

Ana: I've got a terrible memory. Most things just **go in one ear and out the other**[6], so I always try to make a mental image when I learn new words. Often it's something funny. I find that helps the words **stick in my mind**[7] better.

[1] learn something so that you can remember it perfectly [2] a bad memory [3] helps me to remember / reminds me [4] using exactly the same words [5] learn something to be able to repeat it exactly (even if you do not understand it) [6] are forgotten immediately [7] be easily remembered

C

Teaching and learning

example	meaning
I've been doing this job for 20 years, but now they're bringing in new software which I'm finding difficult to use. **You can't teach an old dog new tricks.**	It's difficult to make someone change their way of doing things, especially if they have been doing it for a long time.
You're teaching your grandmother to suck eggs! I've been fishing here for years, so I think I know where the best places are.	You are giving advice to someone about something they know more about than you.
I stayed up all night the night before the exam, but was so tired the next day I did really badly. I've **learnt my lesson** and won't be doing that again.	to learn from a negative experience not to do something again
The next time he arrives late, just go without him – that will **teach him a lesson**.	to show someone as a result of experience what not to do

Exercises

23.1 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 I'm absolutely exhausted at the moment. I've been working round ☐
2 Since she started at her new school, Tanya's work has come on in leaps ☐
3 I handed in my essay, but my tutor gave it back and said it wasn't up to ☐
4 Michael's working hard at university and is on ☐
5 I taught the children a new song yesterday and they repeated it back to me word ☐
6 Our chemistry teacher told us we had to learn part of the periodic table off by ☐

a track to graduate in the summer.
b for word today. I was very impressed!
c the clock to finish my essay on time.
d scratch. I have to rewrite it.
e heart for a test tomorrow.
f and bounds.

23.2 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 Alain was always eating sweet things, but after the dentist gave him several fillings, I think he's studied his lesson.
2 Florence seems to be burning the candle at both sides at the moment – going to parties every night and then getting up early to study.
3 Dev started telling the IT manager how to set up a spreadsheet. Talk about teaching your grandmother to eat eggs!
4 I keep forgetting that I can use online banking to pay my bills. You can't teach an old bird new tricks, I suppose.
5 Frida has set her eyes on becoming CEO, and after her latest promotion, she's well on the way.
6 After his rude behaviour, Oli's mother decided to learn him a lesson and didn't let him play with his friends.

23.3 Read these statements and answer the questions.

Imogen: I draw pictures in my notebook so that when I see the picture, I remember the word.

Ralf: I can still repeat all the poems I memorised as a child.

Meredith: I'm determined to get top marks in my next test!

Rajesh: I've tried to explain to my grandad how to use a smartphone, but he just doesn't get it.

Hailey: I read through all my notes last night, and now I can't remember anything!

Tom: I was ill for three weeks at the beginning of term, and so I need to catch up on my homework.

1 Who learnt things by rote?
2 Who can't teach an old dog new tricks?
3 Who needs something to jog their memory?
4 Who has a memory like a sieve?
5 Who has a lot of ground to make up?
6 Who has set their sights on achieving a high grade?

23.4 Do these sentences make sense? Explain why or why not.

1 Habib's work came on in leaps and bounds, so he failed his exam.
2 My password sticks in my mind. I keep forgetting it.
3 Rafaella learnt all her lines for the play off by heart. She didn't need any help remembering them.
4 We've had a great year this year. The company is on track to make a big profit.
5 I've got a great memory for names. They go in one ear and out the other.
6 Jamie's been working round the clock recently, so I'm sure he'll have plenty of energy.

24 Science and technology

A Science and technology idioms in positive contexts

Some science- and technology-based idioms are used to evaluate things in a positive way. Read these magazine reviews and note the idioms.

The *Soundboom 88* software suite is **at the cutting edge**[1] of audio technology, providing a complete home studio

This new web search engine is **the brainchild of**[3] Alex Wells, who originally developed *Worldseek* software.

Hot off the press[2], this online survey of consumer preferences is essential for anyone setting up a small business.

With its modern design and functionality, the *Autoband* USB turntable **pushes** all **the right buttons**[4].

[1] at the most recent stage of development in a particular type of work or activity [2] having just been printed and containing the most recent information [3] a clever and original idea, plan or invention [4] does exactly what is necessary to get the result you want

B Science and technology idioms in negative contexts

Science- and technology-based idioms can also be used to evaluate situations in a more negative way. Read this conversation about a problem at work and note the idioms.

Rob: We**'re light years away from**[1] developing good software for our customer database. The hardware doesn't help either. The main computer **is on the blink**[2] and needs replacing.

Hannah: Well, we can replace the computer, but I thought the database was OK.

Rob: So did I, but Krishnan **threw a spanner in the works**[3] when he found some faults in its design.

Hannah: Well, we should be able to sort that out. I mean, **it's not rocket science**[4], is it? There must be software we can use. Trying to do it all ourselves may mean we're just **reinventing the wheel**[5].

Rob: Yes, but we want to do it properly. In some ways, the old system we had worked fine – you know what they say, '**If it ain't broke, don't fix it**[6]!'

Hannah: Well, if we don't fix things soon, the system will **go haywire**[7] and we won't be able to contact our customers. I think you should order a new computer and replace the software.

Rob: I'm not authorised to do that. I'm just **a** small **cog in the machine** here[8].

[1] be a long way away from [2] is not working correctly [3] did something that prevented a plan from succeeding [4] used to say that something is not very difficult to do or to understand (humorous) [5] wasting time trying to create something that someone else has already created [6] said when you see that something works well, and there is no reason to try to change it [7] stop working normally and start working in a different and strange way (informal) [8] one part of a large organisation

C Other science- and technology-based idioms

The government has **set the wheels in motion**[1] for a complete reform of the tax system.
My new car is very economical. The old one was such a **gas guzzler**[2].
Government investment has **oiled the wheels**[3] of economic development in the poorer regions.

[1] done something which will cause a series of actions to start [2] car that uses a lot of fuel [3] made it easier for something to happen

Exercises

24.1 **Look at A opposite. Read these statements and answer the questions.**

Rob: I got his new book the day it was published.

Matthew: My new tablet is great: it's easy to use, it looks good, and it was cheap.

Clara: This phone has features that no other phone has yet; it's amazing.

Julian: Apparently, it was invented by a Russian scientist, who worked on it for ten years.

Who is talking about ...

1 something that is at the cutting edge of technology?
2 something that was hot off the press?
3 something that pushes the right buttons?
4 something that was the brainchild of someone?

24.2 **Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using the word in brackets.**

1 I try my best to do my job well, but sometimes I feel as if I'm just an unimportant person in a massive organisation. [MACHINE]
2 I don't want to do anything to prevent your plan from working, but I think you should apply for official permission first. [SPANNER]
3 I worry sometimes that we're just wasting time doing something someone has already done in our research. [WHEEL]
4 I'm afraid I couldn't print the document; our printer is not working properly. [BLINK]
5 There was a power failure and everything suddenly stopped working. [HAYWIRE]
6 She should be able to write a simple text message. I mean, it's not a difficult thing to do, is it? [SCIENCE]
7 I think we're a long way away from finding a cure for this terrible disease. [LIGHT]
8 Why change the system? If it works OK, we don't need to do anything! [BROKE]

24.3 **Choose the correct answer.**

1 If you oil the wheels of something, you a) make something happen very suddenly b) make it easier for something to happen c) stop something happening.
2 A gas guzzler is a) a type of cooker b) a person who drinks a lot c) a type of car.
3 If you set the wheels in motion for something, you a) cause it to start b) create complications for it c) cause it to stop.
4 If a machine is on the blink, it a) is working correctly b) is not working at all c) is working, but not correctly.

24.4 **Here are some errors made with idioms by candidates in advanced-level exams. Can you correct them?**

1 My school was new. We had all kinds of cutting-hedge technology.
2 Suddenly, everything went hayware, and there was complete chaos.
3 She felt she was just a cog in the wheel and that no one ever noticed her.
4 The city council set the wheel to turn for the construction of the new park.

25 Films, plays and books

A Idioms from film and theatre reviews

The show had the audience **rolling in the aisles**[1].

The plot will **keep you on the edge of your seat**[4].

The finale **brought the house down**[2].

His dramatic performance **sent shivers down my spine**[5].

Helena Good **stole the show**[3] with a fantastic performance.

[1] laughing a lot [2] made the audience laugh or clap a lot; was extremely successful [3] got all the attention and praise at an event or performance [4] keep you excited and interested in what happens next [5] was very moving

B Talking about books

Ben: I read that novel that Laura recommended. I eventually managed to **wade through**[1] all 400 pages, but I didn't like it very much. It was really **heavy going**[2]. It's not what I would call **a page-turner**[3]!

Nina: Yeah. The critics in the Sunday papers certainly **did a hatchet job on**[4] it.

Ben: Well, it's pretty easy to **pick holes in**[5] the plot. I didn't think it was at all convincing.

Nina: Mind you, I could never write a short story, let alone a novel.

Ben: Yes, it's much easier to **be an armchair critic**[6], isn't it?

[1] finish reading something, but with difficulty [2] difficult to read or understand [3] a book that is so exciting that you have to read it quickly [4] criticised strongly and cruelly [5] find mistakes in; criticise 6 criticise, but without any personal expertise in what is being criticised (You can also say 'armchair traveller' and 'armchair gardener'.)

C An actor's career

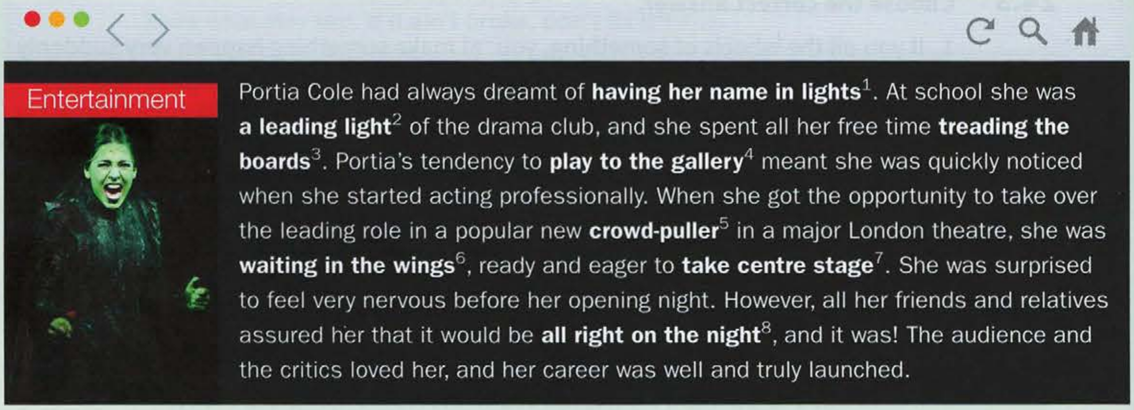

Portia Cole had always dreamt of **having her name in lights**[1]. At school she was **a leading light**[2] of the drama club, and she spent all her free time **treading the boards**[3]. Portia's tendency to **play to the gallery**[4] meant she was quickly noticed when she started acting professionally. When she got the opportunity to take over the leading role in a popular new **crowd-puller**[5] in a major London theatre, she was **waiting in the wings**[6], ready and eager to **take centre stage**[7]. She was surprised to feel very nervous before her opening night. However, all her friends and relatives assured her that it would be **all right on the night**[8], and it was! The audience and the critics loved her, and her career was well and truly launched.

[1] being famous [2] an important member [3] acting on stage (in the theatre) [4] behave in a way to make people admire or support her; often slightly disapproving [5] something attracting a lot of attention and interest [6] ready to become important (this idiom is often used in non-theatrical contexts too, e.g. 'Investors are **waiting in the wings**, ready to act if the business is sold'.) [7] become the most important person in the play (this idiom is often used in non-theatrical contexts too, e.g. 'Education **took centre stage** in the new political manifesto'.) [8] without problems on the day of the actual performance

Exercises

25.1 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 The critics didn't hesitate to pick ☐
2 The hero's dying words sent ☐
3 The comedian's jokes brought ☐
4 It took me all of my holiday to wade ☐
5 The singers were all great, but the young soprano stole ☐
6 The play was so funny it had the audience rolling ☐
7 The film was really exciting and kept us on the edge ☐
8 The *Sunday News* critic hated the book and did a ☐

a shivers down my spine.
b in the aisles.
c hatchet job on it.
d holes in her performance.
e of our seats.
f through that novel.
g the show.
h the house down.

25.2 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1

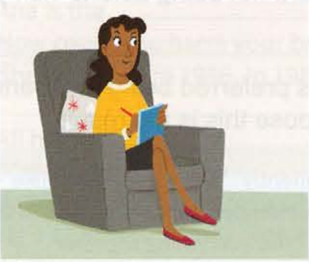

3

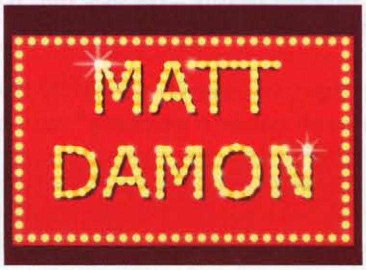

5

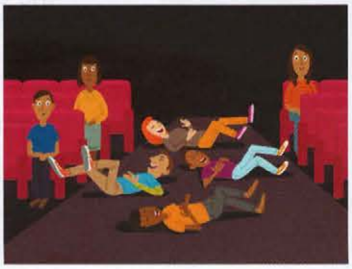

2

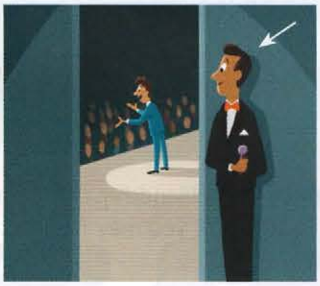

4

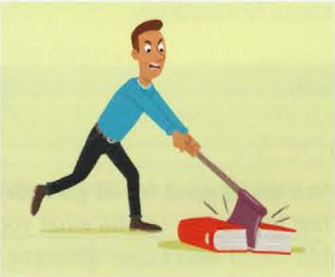

6

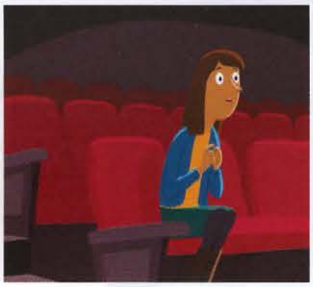

25.3 Complete each sentence. There may be more than one possible answer.

1 When a politician plays to the gallery, it is because they want people to .... them.
2 People say 'It'll be all right on the night' when they want to .... you.
3 The boards referred to in 'tread the boards' are those of a ....
4 .... people would be at a crowd-pulling show.
5 .... people do not usually enjoy taking centre stage.

25.4 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 Richard is an important person in the local tennis club. [LIGHT]
2 The teacher was very critical of my essay. [PICKED]
3 Don't worry about your presentation. It'll all go well, I'm sure. [NIGHT]
4 The dog got all the attention in the evening's performance. [STOLE]
5 She spent years acting in the theatre before getting a part in a TV soap. [BOARDS]
6 The new manager is good at saying things that make her popular. [GALLERY]
7 The book was very difficult to read. [HEAVY]
8 I can't believe that the *Sunday News* critic described such a boring novel as a book you just have to read quickly. [PAGE]

26 Relationships – friends and family

A Family relationships

Alice and Sara are talking about their families. The idioms they use are fairly informal.

Alice: How quickly time passes! It seems like only yesterday that my son Jason was **a twinkle in his father's eye**[1], and now suddenly he's 18 and about to **fly the nest**[2]. He's got a job in Spain, so he's moving there.

Sara: Yes, my son Richard's the same. He's 21, and he'**s the spitting image of**[3] his dad now. He's just like him in character too – he's **a real chip off the old block**[4]! They're both so tall too – tall men seem to **run in the family**[5]. Richard's already left home – we only see him a couple of times a year.

Alice: Yes, it's sad when your **nearest and dearest**[6] move away. Our daughter lives in the US, and we hardly ever see her. It's hard not being able to visit **your own flesh and blood**[7] very often.

Sara: Yes. But then, you know, our family always preferred being independent. We never **lived in each other's pockets**[8], so I suppose this is the result.

[1] was not even born (humorous) [2] leave home to live independently [3] looks very much like [4] similar in personality to one of his parents or an older family member [5] a lot of people in the family have that characteristic [6] your family (humorous) [7] relatives [8] did everything together

B Friends and other social contacts

Note the idioms in these horoscopes.

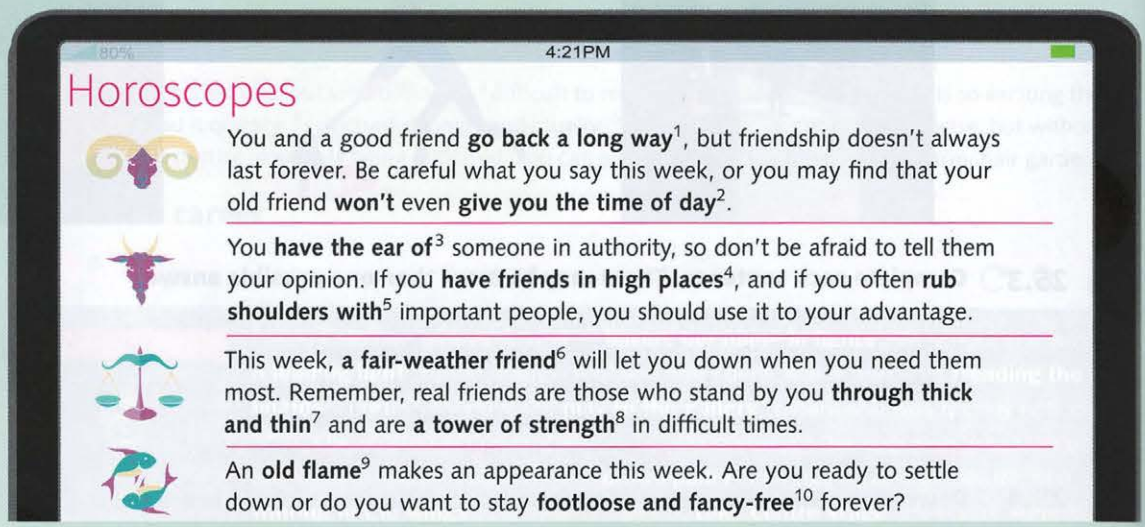

Horoscopes

You and a good friend **go back a long way**[1], but friendship doesn't always last forever. Be careful what you say this week, or you may find that your old friend **won't** even **give you the time of day**[2].

You **have the ear of**[3] someone in authority, so don't be afraid to tell them your opinion. If you **have friends in high places**[4], and if you often **rub shoulders with**[5] important people, you should use it to your advantage.

This week, **a fair-weather friend**[6] will let you down when you need them most. Remember, real friends are those who stand by you **through thick and thin**[7] and are **a tower of strength**[8] in difficult times.

An **old flame**[9] makes an appearance this week. Are you ready to settle down or do you want to stay **footloose and fancy-free**[10] forever?

[1] have known each other a long time [2] will refuse to speak to you because they think they're better than you or they don't like you [3] the person is ready to listen to your views and ideas [4] know important and influential people [5] spend time with important or famous people [6] someone who is your friend only when things are going well for you [7] through good and bad situations [8] someone who supports you a lot in difficult situations. (You can also say 'pillar of strength'.) [9] someone you had a romantic relationship with in the past [10] free and without responsibilities to anyone

Exercises

26.1 Look at A opposite. Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 They invited their nearest	☐	a father's eye three years ago!
2 We don't live in each other's	☐	b the old block – he's just like his uncle Rex.
3 He has deserted his own flesh	☐	c the nest and went to live in Australia.
4 Young Sam is the spitting	☐	d and dearest to the wedding.
5 She was just a twinkle in her	☐	e run in the family.
6 When he turned 18, he flew	☐	f pockets, but we're a happy family.
7 Harry is a real chip off	☐	g and blood and gone to join the army.
8 Both girls are pretty. Good looks	☐	h image of his grandfather.

26.2 Complete each sentence with an idiom from 26.1.

1 Ana is the ………………………… her mother – she looks just like her.
2 How could you harm your brother? He's your own ………………… and ………………… .
3 She was born in 1986. In 1983, she was just a ………………… in ………………………… .
4 All her ………………… and ………………… gathered round her for a family photo on her 90th birthday.
5 I'd hate the sort of family where everybody lives ………………………… .
6 He's 42 and still living with his parents. Most people ………………………… a lot earlier.
7 All of her sisters are really musical too. It must ………………………… .
8 Max is as generous as his dad. He's a ………………………… .

26.3 Read these statements and answer the questions.

Lidia: My so-called friend Lucy doesn't even give me the time of day any more.

Connor: My friend Tessa has been with me through thick and thin.

Ashley: I've got friends in high places, you know.

Chelsea: My best friend and I go back a long way.

Zenab: I've come to the conclusion that Ben is just a fair-weather friend.

1 Who has known someone for many years?
2 Whose friend is only there when things are going well?
3 Who has a friend who won't speak to her?
4 Whose friend has given support in difficult times?
5 Who knows powerful and influential people?

26.4 Rewrite each sentence using an idiom from the opposite page.

1 If the boss listens to him and respects his ideas, we should let him represent us.
2 Joanna was incredibly supportive when I was going through a bad time.
3 Amina has invited a former boyfriend of hers to the party on Saturday.
4 My friend Ali has stood by me through good times and bad times.
5 He was independent and had no responsibilities until he was 25; then he got married.
6 I've known Raisa a very long time.

27 People – character and behaviour

A Positive characteristics and behaviour

In this conversation, Lucy uses an idiom to repeat and sum up what Beth says.

Lucy: I'm trying to organise a quiz team. Who do you think I should ask?

Beth: Why not ask Nathan? He knows a lot about all sorts of different things.

Lucy: You're right. He's **a mine of information**.

Beth: He can do all sorts of different things too. He's good at sport, and he's set up his own software business, which is doing very well, I believe.

Lucy: That's right. He's **a man of many parts**[1].

Beth: Why don't you ask Matt as well? He's young, but he's so clever and really successful.

Lucy: Yes, he's **a whizz kid**, if ever there was one. Good idea!

Beth: His sister Georgie is nice too, isn't she? Full of energy and enthusiasm.

Lucy: That's right. She's got plenty of **get-up and go**.

Beth: She'd be great in a quiz too. She's a trained chef; she's a qualified singing teacher, so she knows about music; and she's studying film at college.

Lucy: Yes, she **has plenty of strings to her bow**. Thanks, Beth. I'll ask them all!

[1] You can also say 'woman of many parts'.

B Negative characteristics and behaviour

idiom	example	meaning
a glutton for punishment	She's certainly **a glutton for punishment**. She's started doing a second degree, even though she's got a full-time job and two small children.	someone who likes working hard or doing things other people would find unpleasant (humorous)
highly strung	She's so **highly strung** that even a loud noise can make her jump.	very nervous and easily upset
act / play the fool	He'd be a nicer person if he didn't **play the fool** so much.	behave in a silly way, often to make people laugh
look out for number one	Trust Fred to take the last piece of cake. He always **looks out for number one**.	puts himself first, as he thinks he is the most important person (informal)
eat sb for breakfast	The lawyers are going to **eat** the accused man **for breakfast**.	speak angrily or critically to easily control or defeat someone
a love rat	Movie star Jake King was exposed as **a love rat** yesterday, when details of his affair with co-star Kelly Black emerged.	a man having a secret sexual relationship with someone not his wife or girlfriend (informal, mainly used in popular journalism)
a wet blanket	Stop complaining about the weather. It's not that cold. Enjoy the picnic and stop being such **a wet blanket**.	someone who says or does something that stops others from enjoying themselves (informal)
a loose cannon	Our sales manager is **a loose cannon**. You never know what he'll say or do next.	someone who cannot be trusted because they act in an unpredictable way

Exercises

27.1 Complete each idiom from A opposite.

1 Let's hire Dan. He has a lot of get …………………………… and go, and will really inspire the team.
2 He's a person with many skills and talents, a true man of many …………………………… .
3 The restaurant is popular with banking whizz …………………………… , all talking loudly about the financial deals they're doing.
4 Schools often encourage their students to collect as many …………………………… to their bow as possible.
5 Ask Auntie Lily to help with your geography project – she's a …………………………… of information about different places.

27.2 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 Concentrate on your homework and stop playing a fool!
2 I hope Joe doesn't come to the party – he's such a cold blanket.
3 I suppose that everyone ultimately has to look out for figure one.
4 Kate volunteers for all the jobs that no one else will do – she's a real glutton for work.
5 I always said she was a loose gun, so I'm not surprised she's causing trouble.
6 The newspapers are claiming that the prince is a love snake.
7 Be extra kind and calm with Jarek – he's very tightly strung.
8 Everyone admires the young entrepreneur for his get-up and buy.

27.3 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1

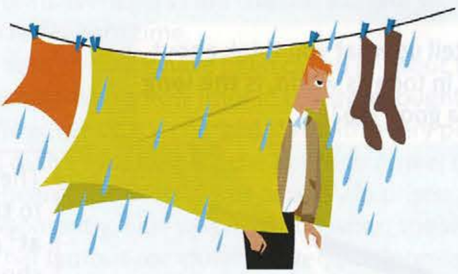

3

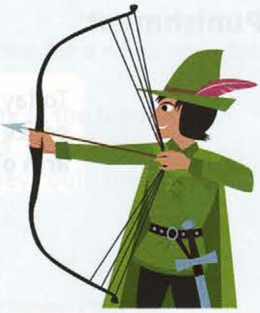

2

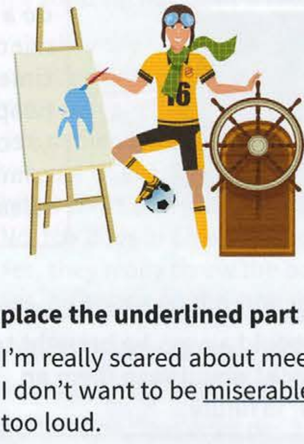

4

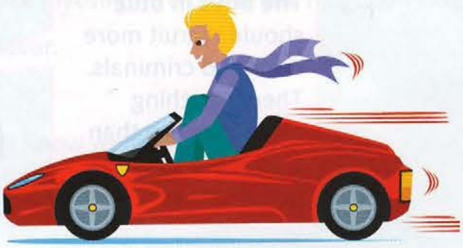

27.4 Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.

1 I'm really scared about meeting them. I'm sure they'll be angry and criticise me.
2 I don't want to be miserable and spoil your fun, but please can you turn the music down? It's too loud.
3 Some people say that to succeed in business, you need to put your own interests first.
4 There always seems to be a child in every class who acts in a silly way to make the other pupils laugh.
5 Martina would be easier to live with if she weren't so nervous and easily upset.
6 Some see him as an unpredictable and untrustworthy person, but this is unfair.

28 Crime and punishment

A Crime

Carlos and Ayse are talking about a crime at work. Read the conversation and note the idioms. All the idioms they use are informal.

Carlos: I'd never have dreamt Ben **was on the fiddle**[1], would you?

Ayse: Well, no. I knew money was going missing, but I never thought it would be **an inside job**[2]. Ben seemed so honest, yet he **had his hand in the till**[3] all the time.

Carlos: Yeah, he **pulled the wool over everyone's eyes**[4].

Ayse: I can't believe he was **taking us all for a ride**[5]. He was so strict with us, and yet he **was lining his own pockets**[6] the whole time!

Carlos: He sacked Jay when he was found selling things **under the counter**[7] last year.

Ayse: I know! And now Ben has **done a runner**[8].

Carlos: Well, I hope they catch up with him.

[1] was getting money in an illegal or dishonest way
[2] a crime committed by someone from within the organisation affected
[3] was stealing the business's money
[4] deceived everyone
[5] tricking us
[6] was making money for himself in a dishonest way
[7] secretly; illegally
[8] run away to avoid a difficult situation

B Punishment

Today we'd like you to tell us what you think about police and punishment in today's world. Is **the long arm of the law**[1] doing a good job?

The boys in blue[8] should recruit more reformed criminals. There's nothing more effective than a **poacher turned gamekeeper**[9]!

They're too quick to **throw the book at**[2] people. Why should someone **do a stretch**[3] for a minor offence? **Doing time**[4] just makes people more likely to commit another crime when they're released.

I think young offenders should always **be brought to book**[5]. **A short sharp shock**[6] would keep them **on the straight and narrow**[7] in future.

[1] the police (suggesting it has far-reaching powers)
[2] punish someone as severely as possible (informal)
[3] have a prison sentence (informal)
[4] spending time in prison (informal)
[5] be punished (usually used in the passive)
[6] a brief but severe punishment
[7] behaving in an honest, moral way
[8] the police (informal)
[9] someone whose job involves working against the kind of person they used to be

Exercises

28.1 Read these comments about people's attitudes to banks. Complete each idiom.

Interviewer: 'Do you think banks are honest and open?'

1 No, there's too much secrecy and too many deals done under the .... They should be more open.

2 Well, I think there are a minority of bankers who are just .... own .... , which gives the banks a bad name.

3 They're OK on the whole. But occasionally you get major financial crime involving billions of pounds. And often it's an inside .... involving someone working in the bank. We all suffer then.

4 No, banks are on the .... all the time, defrauding us and pulling the .... over our .... about what's really going on.

5 Well, I think the banks are .... us all for a .... They never lose out – it's always the ordinary customers who suffer.

28.2 Match each statement (1–9) with a suitable response (a–i).

1 I think teenagers who commit a crime should be sent to prison for a week and given a really hard time.
2 I see the police have been called in about the missing money at the tennis club.
3 People who throw litter in the street ought to be prosecuted.
4 Wow, the police charged Max with every possible offence they could think of!
5 It didn't take long for the police to arrive, did it?
6 I heard that Donald was actually in prison years ago.
7 Apparently, Ellie was in prison when she was younger.
8 That famous computer hacker, Jin Soon, is apparently a reformed character.
9 It's amazing how that former burglar is helping the police investigate crime in the neigbourhood.

a Yes, they say she did time for attacking her husband's lover.
b Yes, it's a real case of poacher turned gamekeeper.
c Yes, I agree. They should be brought to book.
d Yes, someone told me he had done a stretch, but I don't know what for.
e Yes, the thieves won't be able to escape from the long arm of the law.
f Yes, a short sharp shock would do them good!
g No, the boys in blue were soon on the scene!
h Yes, they really threw the book at him, didn't they!
i Yes, he's back on the straight and narrow.

28.3 Are these sentences true or false? If the answer is false, say why.

1 If someone has their hand in the till, they are illegally taking money from a business.
2 If someone does a runner, they chase after a criminal.
3 An inside job is a crime committed by someone from within the organisation affected.
4 If someone does a stretch, they tell the police who committed a crime.

Over to you

Find an article on the Internet relating to crime. Either go to a newspaper site or use a search engine to look for 'crime stories in the news'. Try to find three or four idioms used in the article. Write them down in their context.

29 Work

A Describing people's work situation

Read these comments by people about work situations. Idioms marked * in this unit are particularly informal.

'Clare's babysitting job is such **a cushy number***. All she has to do is take the children to the beach and watch them play.' [a very easy job]

'Lily's really **at the top of the ladder** now. She finally has the success she deserves.' [in the highest position in an organisation]

'I took the job at Linderhoffs to **get a foot in the door**, even though it wasn't well paid.' [take a job at a low level in an organisation, because you want a better job in the same organisation in the future]

'I **slogged my guts out*** for years in the water company and never got a pay rise.' [worked very hard or used a lot of effort]

'Harry doesn't do very much, even though he owns half the company. He's just **a sleeping partner**.' [a partner in a company who does not take an active part in its management, but often provides some of the money; you can also say 'silent partner']

'Erica has a good **track record** as a sales person. She deserves to be promoted.' [all the achievements or failures that someone or something has had in the past]

'Did Charlie get **a golden handshake** when he left the company?' [a large payment made to someone when they leave their job, either because their employer has asked them to leave, or as a reward for good service when they retire]

'She got a very generous **golden hello** when she started her first job after university.' [a large payment made to someone when they accept a new job]

B The world of work

These business news cuttings contain idioms used to talk about the world of work and business. Idioms describing work and business are often quite strong and colourful.

Roaflex is **doing a roaring trade**[1]* and has effectively **cornered the market**[2] in camping equipment. 'The company is **going great guns**[3]*. We've had a record year,' its president said today.

'The big international companies dominate the fast-food market, and we're **shutting up shop**[7]*. We can't compete any more. I'm getting out of **the rat race**[8] and retiring to Spain,' said the owner of a small sandwich bar.

More travel agents will **go belly up**[4]* if the economic recession continues. Two major operators have already **gone to the wall**[5]: Worldex **went bust**[6]* in February, and Overglobe closed in April.

'I worked very hard and hoped I would get a promotion,' said Ms Kirby, 'but now I realise I've hit **a glass ceiling**[9] and won't go any further in this company.'

[1] selling a lot of goods very quickly [2] become so successful at selling a product that almost no one else can sell it [3] doing something very successfully [4] fail [5] been destroyed financially [6] was forced to close because of financial problems [7] closing the business [8] a way of life in which people compete with one another for power and money [9] a point after which you cannot progress in your career (The idiom is mainly used to express the idea that women are unable to progress because the top jobs are given only to men in some companies.)

Language help

Always make a special note if an idiom is very informal, and be careful not to use informal idioms in formal situations.

Exercises

29.1 **Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1

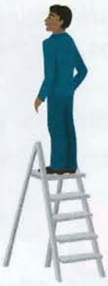

3

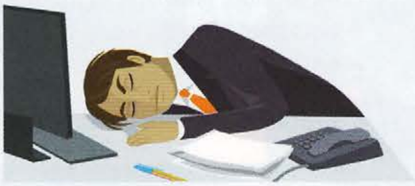

2

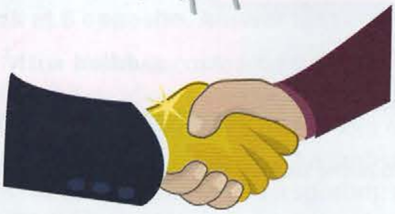

4

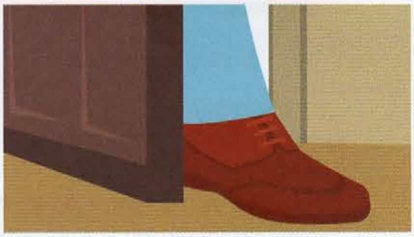

29.2 **Complete each sentence with an idiom from 29.1.**

1 She founded the company, but she's not very active in it now. She's just a ....

2 He desperately wanted to work in the film industry, so he got a job carrying camera equipment to get ....

3 When he retired, the company gave him a ....

4 It took him years to become chief executive, but he's .... now.

29.3 **Do these sentences make sense? Explain why or why not.**

1 She had a good track record, so they fired her.

2 It was a cushy number, so he had to work very hard indeed.

3 I slogged my guts out and was exhausted.

4 She changed jobs and got a golden hello from her new employer.

5 The shop was doing a roaring trade, so they had to close down.

6 Porterfax Ltd went belly up and employed 30 new staff.

7 Opticarm cornered the market in digital cameras and faced strong competition.

8 He went to live in the country because he was tired of the rat race.

29.4 **Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using the word in brackets.**

1 Our new online business is doing extremely well. [GUNS]

2 Some airlines are in danger of collapsing financially. [WALL]

3 That new farmers' market seems to be selling a lot of goods. [ROAR]

4 Mr Olsen decided to close his business and retire to the coast. [SHOP]

5 Another insurance company was forced to close down last week. [BUST]

6 She realised she had hit a point where she could go no higher at work. [GLASS]

30 Business news

A Metaphors in business news

Metaphors (see Unit 4) are frequently used when journalists are writing about business. Notice how these headlines use metaphors from the weather, religion, horse riding, the natural world and the sea.

Cloud on the horizon[1] for local firm

Smith opts to be **a big fish in a small pond**[4]

Time to stop **worshipping at the altar of**[2] consumerism

Bank **throws** small companies **a lifeline**[3]

Axco **saddled with**[5] debt

[1] problem likely to happen in the future
[2] being totally dedicated to (You can also say 'worship at the shrine / temple of'.)
[3] gives help to someone in a very difficult situation
[4] an important person in a not very important organisation
[5] given a problem which will cause them a lot of difficulty

B Financial news

idiom	example	meaning
the bottom drops / falls out of the market	**The bottom has dropped / fallen out of the** housing **market.**	people have stopped buying something
a ballpark figure	What's **a ballpark figure** for replacing the office furniture?	an estimated price
shoot / soar sky-high	Oil prices **shot sky-high** last month.	rose dramatically
take a nosedive	The company's shares **took a nosedive** yesterday.	fell suddenly and quickly
receive a windfall	Investors will each **receive a windfall** of $10,000.	get some unexpected money
rein in spending	Many firms try to **rein in spending** during times of financial difficulty.	spend less
across the board	The impact of the reorganisation will be felt **across the board.**	by people at every level

C Management news

Following the company's disastrous performance, the CEO has announced that **heads will roll**. [people will be severely punished, often by losing their jobs]

The managing director of Lo-cost supermarkets has been put on **gardening leave** since being offered a new job with rival company Costless. [told not to come into work during their notice period, although they will receive payment for this period]

The EatWell restaurant chain **takes** luxury catering **to the next level**. [makes something even more special or dramatic]

The company's controversial sales manager has been warned that he will lose his job if he does not **fall into line**. [start to follow the rules]

The director said that she **is under no illusions** about how difficult it will be for the company to survive. [understands the truth]

Exercises

30.1 Look at A opposite. Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1
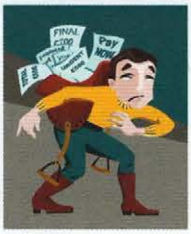

2
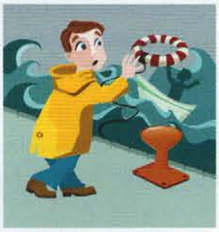

3
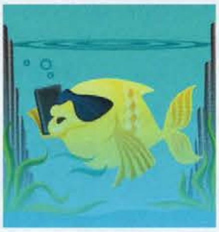

4
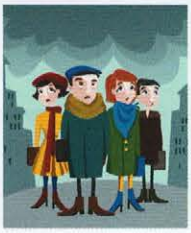

30.2 Look at B opposite. Answer these questions.

1 Which idiom is a horse-riding metaphor?
2 Which two idioms are metaphors based on flying?
3 Which of the two flying metaphors relates to a bird and which to a plane?
4 Which idiom is based on a metaphor relating to fruit trees?
5 Which idiom is based on a sporting metaphor?
6 Which idiom is based on a metaphor relating to a breaking box?

30.3 Are the idioms in these sentences used correctly? If not, correct them.

1 The speaker said he was concerned about the way in which young people queue at the altar of instant gratification.
2 If people are given gardening leave, they are not allowed to come into work during their notice period.
3 Receiving a sizeable winddrop from one of our investments allowed us to extend our premises.
4 Changes in the company's structure will take place across the boards.
5 Jackson was underneath no illusions about how long it would take his business to get established.
6 Unfortunately, our profits took a nosedive last month.
7 It's time we considered how we can take our business to the next step.
8 The senior staff all went into line with the new CEO's demands.

30.4 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 The latest crisis at work means that heads will ☐
2 I can't tell you the exact price, but I can give you a ballpark ☐
3 No one will want to take over a company so saddled ☐
4 As our profits have fallen, we'll have to rein ☐
5 Jake likes being a big fish ☐
6 There are fears that the bottom may fall out ☐
7 For the first time in ages, there are no clouds on the company's ☐
8 The plan is to implement substantial changes across the ☐

a with debt.
b in a small pond.
c horizon.
d of the market.
e board.
f roll.
g figure.
h in spending.

Over to you

Look at the business news on an English-language newspaper website. Make a note of any idioms that you find there.

31 Business meetings

A Features of business language

Business language can be lively, but it is sometimes criticised for certain negative features. It can be 'wordy', using more words than are necessary, for example, using **at this moment in time** (instead of 'now') or **on a weekly basis** (instead of 'weekly').

A second negative feature of business language is its use of clichés (certain phrases that are used so often in specific contexts that they lose their originality), for example, **have a window** (have some time available) or **touch base** (talk to each other).

A: Can we **touch base** next week?
B: Sure, I **have a window** on Monday afternoon between two and four.

Many of the idioms in this unit could also be considered clichés.

B Idioms in business meetings

I have two issues to **bring to the table** at our next meeting. [raise for discussion]

It's hard to know what do. We're **between a rock and a hard place.** [whichever decision we make, there is a problem]

The fact of the matter is that we are in a very difficult situation. [the truth is]

I think Hari is the ideal person for the job. He **ticks all the boxes.** [has all the characteristics we want]

The two managers used to be polite to each other; but now **the gloves are off**, and they make no attempt to hide their feelings. [they challenge each other in an unpleasant way (informal)]

We must work **24/7** [twenty-four seven] to achieve our aims. [all the hours we can]

It's a **dog-eat-dog** world in our line of business. [situation where people will do anything to be successful, even if it is harmful to others]

C Idioms to talk about business ideas

idiom	example	meaning
at the cutting edge	We have to try to develop a product that is truly **at the cutting edge.**	the most up-to-date and advanced
blue-sky thinking	Management are going away for a weekend of **blue-sky thinking** about the company's future.	creative thinking
think outside the box	We hired Frank because of his ability to **think outside the box.**	think in an original and imaginative way
push the envelope	We don't want to lose our company's reputation for **pushing the envelope.**	innovating; going beyond normal boundaries
joined-up thinking	Unfortunately, there hasn't been enough **joined-up thinking** in our approach over the last year.	making appropriate connections
suck it and see	The idea might work, and it might not. We need to just **suck it and see.**	do something you have not done before to find out whether it is successful or not (informal)

Exercises

31.1 Read these comments and answer the questions.

1 When do you next **have a window**, Sandra?

What does the speaker want to find out?

2 We'll need to **touch base** soon.

What is the speaker suggesting?

3 Things are rather difficult **at this moment in time.**

Why would some people not like this expression?

4 We should have a meeting **on a weekly basis.**

Does this sentence mean exactly the same as 'We should have a meeting every week'?

31.2 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1

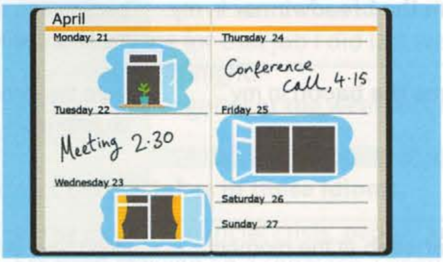

3

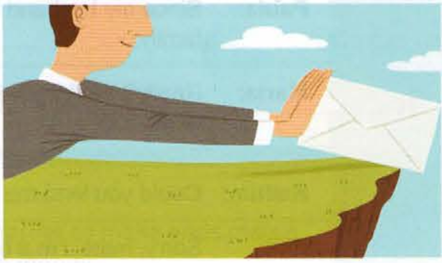

2

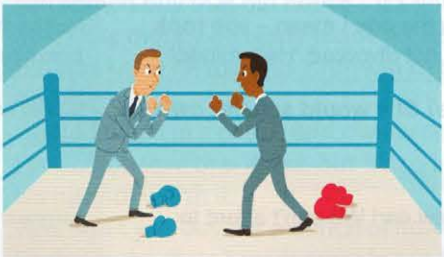

4

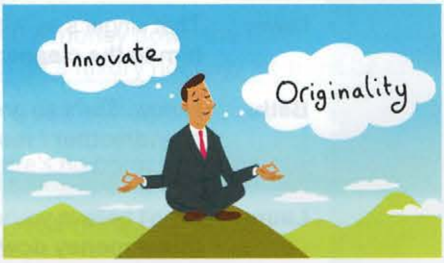

31.3 Complete each idiom.

1 I don't know what to advise. The only solution is to .... it and see.
2 The .... of the matter is that the company is now in a very difficult position.
3 We've tried all the obvious solutions. Now we'll have to try thinking outside the ....
4 The two managers have become serious rivals, and the gloves are ....
5 In the business world, it's a matter of dog eat ....
6 There is a need for more joined-.. thinking from our managers.
7 It's a very difficult situation. We're between a .... and a hard place.
8 Some of his ideas are very innovative. They really push the ....

31.4 Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.

1 Do you have any points that you would like us to discuss today?
2 We need to prove that our products are the most up-to-date if we are to stay competitive.
3 They've been working all hours of the day and night to complete the project.
4 The truth is that our previous advertising campaign was not as successful as we had hoped.
5 I have some time when we could meet on Thursday afternoon if that suits you.
6 They chose Mark for the job because he had everything they were looking for.

32 Money

A People's financial circumstances

Alex:	If this business idea is as successful as we think it'll be, we'll **be quids in** for a change.	[make a profit; *quid* is a colloquial word for a pound sterling (informal)]
Sam:	Yes, we'll be **laughing all the way to the bank**.	[making a lot of money easily]
Alex:	And it will be so easy too – it really will be **money for old rope**.	[money that is easily earned (informal)]
Lee:	I'd love to get a job with a decent salary. I'm tired of **living on a shoestring**.	[living on very little money]
Kumiko:	Me too. It would be great to **be rolling in it**, wouldn't it?	[have lots of money (informal)]
Paula:	Since my husband lost his job, **I'm the breadwinner** in my family.	[person who earns the money the family needs]
Maria:	Really? Well, I guess I **bring home the bacon** in my family too.	[earn the money the family lives on (informal)]
Kallum:	Could you lend me 20 pounds?	
Phil:	Sorry, mate, I'**m** a bit **strapped for cash** at the moment.	[don't have enough money]
Dave:	That singer's ex-wife – you know the one I mean – she **took him to the cleaner's** when they got divorced. He's ruined!	[got as much money from him as she could]
Beth:	I know. She's so greedy, isn't she? She **would sell her own grandmother / mother**.	[would do anything to get money (informal)]
Laura:	I can't believe you've bought a new car! We can't afford to **throw money down the drain**.	[waste money]
Tim:	It's OK. It was **going for a song** – I only paid a few hundred pounds.	[being sold very cheaply]

B How people use money

Enter our **rags to riches**[1] competition!

Are you tired of **scrimping and saving**[2] in order to **make ends meet**[3]?

Fed up with **paying over the odds**[4] for things and **penny-pinching**[5] all the time?

Are you always on the lookout for **cheap and cheerful**[6] things that **won't break the bank**[7]?

Would you like to feel you had **money to burn**[8]?

Then enter our competition for a chance to win £10,000 and a **no-expense-spared**[9] weekend in Paris.

All you have to do is …

[1] from poverty to wealth [2] living very economically [3] have just enough money to pay for the things you need [4] paying more than something is worth [5] spending as little money as possible [6] cheap but good or enjoyable [7] don't cost a lot [8] excess money [9] luxury; a lot of money is spent to make it good

Exercises

32.1 Complete each idiom.

1 Working as a security guard is money ...., unless someone actually tries to break in.

2 He went from ...., but he was always afraid he'd end up poor again.

3 A lot of students find it difficult to .... and end up borrowing money from the bank or from their parents.

4 When I was a student, I was always .... cash, so I had to get part-time jobs.

5 He's completely immoral about financial matters. He would ....

6 He sued the newspaper for libel, won his case and took them ....

7 They set up a social networking website. It was an instant success, and now they're laughing ....

8 Why do I work so hard and such long hours? Well, someone has to bring .... !

9 Jessie paid me for that job I did last week, so I'm .... We can have a nice meal out tonight!

10 I bought a new guitar at the weekend. It was going for a .... at only £80.

32.2 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 In the current financial crisis, people are finding it harder to make ends match.

2 I'm tired of living on a shoelace. I need to earn more money.

3 You should buy that old house – it's going for a tune.

4 Spending money on ready-made meals is just throwing money down the hole.

5 Did you know he took his girlfriend to the Caribbean for a luxury holiday? He must be absolutely running in it.

6 We had lunch in a cheap and cheesy restaurant.

7 I know you love that dress, but it's so expensive. There's no point in paying over the evens for it – it's just not worth it.

8 Why don't you buy her a bunch of flowers? It won't break the wallet.

9 Rachel is the main breadearner in our family.

10 I wish we had more money. I hate being so penny-picking all the time.

32.3 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 The prize is a luxury weekend in a London hotel. [SPARED]

2 Ivana is always going shopping. She must have a huge amount of money. [BURN]

3 Kim has never had much money. She has always had to live economically. [SCRIMP]

4 If you like children, babysitting is a very easy way to earn money. [ROPE]

5 Everyone has to go to work in order to earn enough to live on. [BACON]

6 You sold the car for £200 more than you paid for it, so you've made a good profit. [QUIDS]

7 Rosie has no principles when it comes to making money. [GRANDMOTHER]

8 I don't make much money, so I find it almost impossible to live on what I earn. [MEET]

32.4 Answer these questions.

1 What would you buy if you were rolling in it?

2 What would you stop buying if you felt strapped for cash?

3 Have you ever paid over the odds for something?

4 Have you ever bought anything that was going for a song?

33 Society

A People in society

The table below shows some idioms used to describe people in relation to their roles in society.

idiom	example	meaning
a self-made man	Andrew Carnegie is the typical **self-made man**: he was born into a poor family but became one of America's richest men.	person who is rich and successful because they have worked hard, not because they were born into a rich family
the chattering classes	A lot of people find his books boring and pretentious, but he's really popular among **the chattering classes.**	educated people who enjoy discussing social, political and cultural issues
a second-class citizen	Pensioners often feel they are treated as **second-class citizens** by younger people.	someone treated as if they are less important than others in society
the grass roots	Football managers often go to smaller clubs to recruit new players from **the grass roots.**	ordinary people in a political or sporting organisation, not the leaders
the silent majority	I don't think their new policy represents the views of **the silent majority.**	the large number of people who do not express their opinions publicly
the (men in) grey suits	**The men in grey suits** have a lot to do if they are to win back public confidence in our banking system.	people in business or politics with a lot of influence or power, although they are not well known to the public
public enemy number one	Smoking has become **public enemy number one** since the introduction of the smoking ban.	something or someone that a lot of people dislike or disapprove of
new kid on the block	I've only been working here for a few weeks, so I really feel like the **new kid on the block.**	someone who is new in a place or organisation and has many things to learn about it (informal)

B Power in society

Bob: Have you seen this newspaper article? It seems like all **the movers and shakers**[1] were at the president's post-election party: all those people who helped him **win by a landslide**[2].

Tim: Or at least helped **rig the election**[3] if you believe what some of the papers say!

Bob: Who knows! Apparently his wife is **the power behind the throne**[4], although she hates **being in the public eye**[5].

Tim: Yes, I'm sure she **pulls the strings**[6]. She's popular with **the grey vote**[7] too, I believe.

Bob: Oh well. It looks like there's another few years for **Mr Big**[8] and his government on **the gravy train**[9].

[1] the people with power and influence

[2] win by a very large majority

[3] arrange an election in a dishonest way

[4] someone with no official position in government or an organisation but who secretly controls it

[5] being famous; written about in the media and seen on TV

[6] is in control, often secretly

[7] the vote of older people (You can also say 'grey pound', the spending power of older people.)

[8] the most important person in a company or organisation (informal)

[9] used to refer to a way of making money quickly, easily and often dishonestly, usually through your position in society

Exercises

33.1 Match the words in the box to form five idioms from A opposite.

man citizen classes roots self-made majority
second-class grass silent chattering

33.2 Complete each sentence with an idiom from 33.1.

1 Politicians often lose touch with the .... and become isolated from the public.
2 It's time the .... was heard, instead of the more vocal and aggressive minority.
3 My father was a .... He came from a poor background and worked his way up until he became quite rich.
4 I'm sick of listening to the opinions of the .... What about the opinions of ordinary people?
5 If you are poor, you may sometimes think you are a .... in terms of access to university.

33.3 Answer these questions.

1 How do you feel if you are the new kid on the block?
2 What, or who, in your opinion, is public enemy number one?
3 What kind of people are in the public eye?
4 What kind of people make up the grey vote?

33.4 Are these sentences true or false? If the answer is false, say why.

1 Second-class citizens are the people with most influence in a society.
2 The gravy train refers to the big travel expenses which politicians can claim.
3 The chattering classes means very talkative people.
4 If you rig an election, you arrange it in a dishonest or criminal way.
5 If someone wins an election by a landslide, they win by just a small number of votes.

33.5 Complete each idiom.

1 It must be hard for that film star's family, being in the public .... all the time.
2 I hate the way some politicians seem more interested in getting on the .... train than in helping ordinary people.
3 After a few days at your new school you won't feel like the new kid on the .... any more.
4 The men – and women – in .... suits have far more influence on our daily lives than we imagine. They pull all the ....
5 The owner of this TV company is the Mr .... of the media world.
6 Sunbathing is public .... number one as far as doctors are concerned.

33.6 Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.

1 Although Ollie receives all the media attention, his mother is really in control.
2 In the election, the Green candidate got far more votes than any other party.
3 Everyone suspects that the elections were not honestly won.
4 Mark has become very successful in business, despite starting out with nothing.
5 Journalists need to establish good contacts with the people who have influence in society.

34 Daily life

A Eating and sleeping

idiom	example	meaning
square meal	You shouldn't just snack – try to have at least one **square meal** every day.	a proper meal with all the types of food your body needs
done to a turn	The meat is delicious. It's **done to a turn.**	perfectly cooked
eat like a pig	He has no table manners – he **eats like a pig.**	eats very greedily and unpleasantly (disapproving)
eat like a horse	She's quite thin, even though she **eats like a horse.**	eats a lot
eat like a bird	My grandmother's tiny, and she **eats like a bird.**	eats very little
burn the midnight oil	Try not to **burn the midnight oil** the night before an exam. It's best to get an early night.	work or study until very late at night
sleep on it	Don't decide now – **sleep on it** and see how you feel in the morning.	postpone making a decision until after a night's sleep
go / be out like a light	The little boy **went out like a light** as soon as he went to bed.	fell asleep very quickly
not lose sleep over sth	It was just a silly argument – I **wouldn't lose any sleep over** it.	not worry about

B More daily life idioms

Jack: Hi, Tara. Haven't seen you for ages! How are things?

Tara: I've been really busy. In fact, I **don't know whether I'm coming or going**[1]!

Jack: Is that because of work?

Tara: Partly. But I've also got some friends staying with me this week. They're lovely, but they want to **go out on the town**[2] every night. I'm exhausted!

Jack: But surely they could go out on their own?

Tara: Well, last night I suggested I **give it a miss**[3], but they wouldn't listen.

Jack: Sounds like they've **outstayed their welcome**[4]!

Tara: Yes, they have. And also we're so busy at work that I don't have time to eat lunch. I just have a sandwich **on the hoof**[5]. There's not even a spare moment to **pass the time of day**[6] with colleagues. And I'm **having a bad hair day**[7] today too!

Jack: Poor you! You just need to **take each day as it comes**[8]. We're having a difficult week too. We've got no electricity, so the flat's freezing, and we can't cook or have a hot shower. As you know, I like my **creature comforts**[9], so I'm finding it really hard. We were lucky last night, though. We went out for a meal and the owner let us have it **on the house**[10] because I once did a favour for him. Anyway, here's my train. See you soon. Bye.

[1] am unable to think clearly or decide what to do because there are so many things to deal with [2] spend the evening in bars, restaurants or clubs [3] not take part (informal) [4] stayed longer than the host would like [5] while doing other things [6] have a short, informal conversation or chat [7] having a day when you feel that you look unattractive, especially because of your hair; often used humorously to describe a day when everything seems to go wrong (informal) [8] deal with things as they happen and not worry about the future; often used to describe recovering from an illness [9] physical comforts like a comfortable bed, hot water, food and warmth [10] given free by the business

Exercises

34.1 **Look at A opposite. Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.**

1 Don't worry. There's no point losing any ☐ a like a light.
2 We had a great meal. The meat was done ☐ b meal every evening.
3 Helen has been up all night burning ☐ c sleep on it.
4 My grandmother doesn't want much lunch. She eats ☐ d sleep over it.
5 I didn't think I was tired, but I went out ☐ e like a pig.
6 I feel hungry and tired if I don't eat a square ☐ f the midnight oil.
7 It's late. Let's not talk about this now – we need to ☐ g like a bird.
8 I'm embarrassed to go to restaurants with him. He eats ☐ h to a turn.

34.2 **Complete the paragraph using idioms from the box.**

on the hoof   square meal   creature comforts   go out on the town

When Sam first went travelling, he really missed his (1) .... , like hot water and a soft bed. However, he loved being able to (2) .... at night with new friends in different countries. He had such an exciting time that he was usually too busy to eat a (3) .... , and so he just ate (4) .... from street markets. Sam is now back at work but is planning his next trip.

34.3 **Complete each dialogue with an idiom from the opposite page.**

1 A: How is your new job going?
B: It's really busy! I don't whether I .... !
2 A: Are you enjoying having Lisa and Bob to stay with you?
B: Well, I was at first, but now I'm fed up. They've ....
3 A: Do you fancy going to some bars and maybe a club or two on Saturday night?
B: Yes, let's .... together.
4 A: Excuse me. You haven't charged us for our coffee.
B: It's OK. It's ....
5 A: Are you going to come to chess club this evening?
B: I was hoping to, but I'm afraid I'm going to have to ....
6 A: Shall we meet for lunch today?
B: Sorry. I'm too busy at work. I'll just have to have a sandwich ....
7 A: Do you know your neighbours well?
B: Not really, we just .... sometimes.
8 A: How is your father feeling after his operation?
B: He's just trying to ....
9 A: Anything wrong? You've been looking miserable all day!
B: Oh, nothing in particular. I'm just having a ....
10 A: I made a huge amount of food and Ahmed ate it all!
B: Yes, he eats .... !

35 Positive feelings

A Successful events

Read these positive reviews about the arts and note the idioms.

It's difficult to get children interested in sculpture, but the special exhibition at the City Gallery **hits** exactly **the right note**[1].

Everyone **entered into the spirit of**[4] things at the opening of the museum by dressing up as their favourite historical characters.

Wilma Gore's performance of Beatles songs **went down a treat**[2] with the family audience at the Priory Theatre last night.

Coldplay have certainly **hit the jackpot**[5] with this, their third number one album.

The Tara Dance Festival **went with a swing**[3] this year, with a wide variety of fun events.

The exciting dishes at the Hantown Food Festival certainly **hit the spot**[6] with everyone.

[1] is suitable and has the right effect (You can also say 'strike the right note'.) [2] was enjoyed by everyone very much [3] was successful and exciting [4] showed that they were happy to be there [5] been very successful (and probably made a lot of money) [6] tasted good and made everyone satisfied

B Personal experiences

In these conversations, the second speaker uses an idiom to agree with the first speaker.

Tim: Molly has entered that pop singer contest on TV, The Nation's Best.

Daisy: I know, she**'s** really **got stars in** her **eyes**, hasn't she! [is very excited about the future and thinks she's going to be famous]

Gina: The new album by Adele is absolutely amazing! Just fantastic!

Eva: Yeah, it really **blew my mind** the first time I heard it! [made me feel extremely excited or surprised (informal)]

Ciaran: Congratulations on getting the job in Italy. You always wanted that, didn't you?

Fran: Yes, it's **a dream come true**! I can't believe my luck. [something that happened, although it was not likely that it would]

Lily: Steve seems so happy ever since he passed his exams.

Ana: Yes, he's **been on a high** ever since he got the news, hasn't he? [been feeling very happy and excited (informal)]

Ben: Hugo seems so happy and contented now that he's married, doesn't he?

Lisa: Yes, he's **as happy as Larry**. [very happy indeed (informal)]

Theo: William seems very happy today. I wonder why.

Natasha: Yes, he seems to be **full of the joys of spring**! [very happy indeed]

Dan: The boss has said we can all go home early today!

Hilda: Wow, that's **music to my ears**. Great news! [makes me feel happy]

Stefano: Osvaldo is always so happy and never seems to worry about anything!

Fred: Yes, he's such a **happy-go-lucky** person. [someone who is always happy and never worries]

Exercises

35.1 Complete each idiom from A opposite.

1 The company's new line of sportswear has been incredibly popular, and they've made a lot of money. They really .... jackpot this time.
2 The end-of-term party really went with .... Everyone enjoyed themselves.
3 That apple pie you made went down .... with our dinner guests.
4 We were freezing, so she gave us some hot chocolate to drink – it really .... spot.
5 Everyone was in a happy mood and entered .... the fancy-dress ball.
6 His lecture hit exactly .... Everyone enjoyed it and said it was very informative too.

35.2 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1
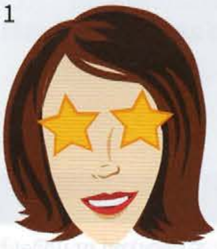

2
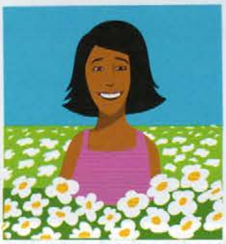

3
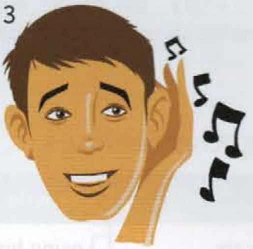

4
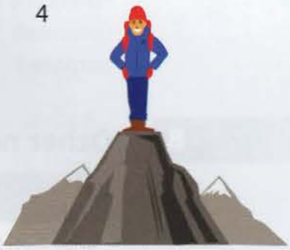

35.3 Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.

1 After winning the race, I was feeling extremely excited for the rest of the day.
2 The decision to cancel the rugby match was very good news to me. I hadn't been looking forward to it at all.
3 Meeting the president was something I had always dreamt of, and now it was real.
4 Shona was looking very happy this morning. Something good must have happened.
5 George is dreaming of becoming famous – he's joined a rock band and given up his job.

35.4 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 Sam Bagg's new album filled me with amazement and excitement. [BLEW]
2 My sister is such a happy and easy-going person. [LUCKY]
3 Iris is incredibly happy today! [SPRING]
4 He's so very happy in his new job. [LARRY]
5 This new series of adventure novels is just perfect for a teenage audience. [STRIKE]

35.5 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 The music festival went on a swing, and a lot of money was raised for charity.
2 The song we wrote for the end-of-course party went as a treat for all the teachers.
3 My cousin's got a star on her eye ever since her music teacher told her she could be famous one day.
4 Edward is such a happy-lucky person; he never worries about anything.

Over to you

Look in a good dictionary or visit Cambridge Dictionaries Online and find at least one idiom referring to positive feelings based on each of these words: *content, cheerful, moon.*

36 Negative feelings

A Anger

What makes people angry?

Chewing gum in class really **rattles** my teacher's **cage**[6]!

People who are rude to waiters **make my blood boil**[1]!

People who talk loudly on their mobiles on the train make me **see red**[2]!

Mum **almost burst a blood vessel**[5] when she saw my brother fighting on the street.

People who drive too closely behind me make me **all hot and bothered**[3]!

Phone calls from people trying to sell me things I don't want really **get my goat**[4]!

[1] make me very angry [2] get angry [3] angry and worried (informal) [4] irritate me (informal) [5] got very angry (informal) [6] makes sb angry (This idiom is often used to describe someone who has been made angry on purpose.)

B Other negative feelings

idiom	example	meaning
knock sb for six	Losing his job has **knocked** John **for six**.	shocked or upset him very much (informal)
wild horses couldn't make me	**Wild horses couldn't make me** have a filling at the dentist's without an injection.	I would never
have a sinking feeling	I had forgotten to do my homework, so I **had a sinking feeling** when my teacher asked for it.	felt that something bad was about to happen
down in the dumps	Katy has been **down in the dumps** since she failed her exam.	miserable (informal)
not be your bag / not be your thing	Playing cards **is not my bag / not my thing**. It's really boring!	is not something I am interested in or like (informal)
wouldn't give sth house room	The new government **wouldn't give house room** to those outdated policies.	don't like or approve of
kick yourself	I could **kick myself** for forgetting my sister's birthday.	am very cross with myself because I did something stupid
reduce to tears	Her brother's unkind words **reduced** her **to tears**.	made her cry
be a bundle of nerves	Amy **was a bundle of nerves** before her wedding.	was extremely nervous (informal)
run out of patience	**I'm running out of patience** with these naughty children.	am beginning to feel annoyed

Language help

Help yourself remember these idioms by writing sentences about situations where you experienced the feelings they describe.

Exercises

36.1 Correct the mistakes in these idioms from A opposite.

1 Dad almost split a blood vessel when I told him I'd driven into his car.
2 Lucy felt all warm and bothered after having to push her way onto the train.
3 Dave saw black when he heard the boy speak so rudely to Maddie.
4 You're in a bad temper today. What's rattled your box?
5 What Lily said to her mother really made my water boil.
6 It really gets my dog when you say such stupid things!

36.2 Complete the idioms. What idiom would you use if you felt …

1 very nervous? 'I'm a …………………………………………'
2 unhappy? 'I feel …………………………………………… today.'
3 apprehensive? 'I …………………………………………… about this exam.'
4 impatient? 'I'm …………………………………………… with that incompetent company.'
5 upset? 'The argument I had with my best friend has ……………………………………………'
6 unwilling to do something? '…………………………………………… apologise to Nick.'

36.3 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 Going to the opera isn't my ☐
2 I wouldn't give that artist's work ☐
3 On rainy days I often feel down in the ☐
4 People dropping litter makes my blood ☐
5 Oliver's rudeness made me see ☐
6 Not getting the job has knocked Ben for ☐
7 Losing his keys made Tom all hot and ☐
8 When the phone rang, I had a sinking ☐

a six.
b boil.
c feeling.
d bothered.
e bag.
f house room.
g dumps.
h red.

36.4 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 Selfish behaviour makes me very angry. [BOIL]
2 The film's sad ending made Jess cry. [TEARS]
3 Cruelty to animals makes me very angry. [RED]
4 I am going to get angry soon with James. [PATIENCE]
5 My brother's laziness makes me very angry. [GOAT]
6 I was angry with myself for missing the train. [KICKED]
7 What's made Paul so annoyed? [CAGE]
8 I shouldn't let him make me so angry. [BOTHERED]
9 Long walks in the countryside are not the sort of thing that appeals to me. [BAG]
10 Your father will be furious if you say you're dropping out of university. [BURST]

36.5 Complete these sentences so that they are true for you.

1 …………………………………………… reduced me to tears.
2 I wouldn't give …………………………………………… house room.
3 …………………………………………… gets my goat.
4 I was a bundle of nerves when …………………………………………… .
5 I could have kicked myself when I …………………………………………… .
6 …………………………………………… is not my bag.
7 Wild horses couldn't make me …………………………………………… .
8 …………………………………………… knocked me for six.

37 Problems

A Problems with situations

Matt: How are things at work these days, Nadia?

Nadia: It'**s a nightmare**[1]. I **took my eye off the ball**[2] when I was trying to negotiate an important deal and managed to lose quite a bit of money.

Matt: Can't you **sweep it under the carpet**[3]?

Nadia: Well, I did wonder about that, but decided I'd just have to own up to **making a pig's ear of**[4] it.

Matt: Was your boss angry?

Nadia: Very! He said I was **losing my touch**[5]. It was quite **a slap in the face**[6] because I've brought in lots of good business until now.

Matt: So are you thinking of looking for another job?

Nadia: That was my first reaction, but I've thought about it again **in the cold light of day**[7], and I think it might be better to stay there for a bit and try to make up for it.

Matt: Well, I'm sure you'll be able to do that without any problems.

Nadia: I certainly hope so. I'd hate to feel I'd really **lost the plot**[8].

[1] is terrible (informal) [2] lost concentration [3] hide what happened [4] doing something very badly (informal) [5] losing my previous skill [6] hurtful; upsetting [7] later, when feeling calmer [8] gone crazy

B Problems with people

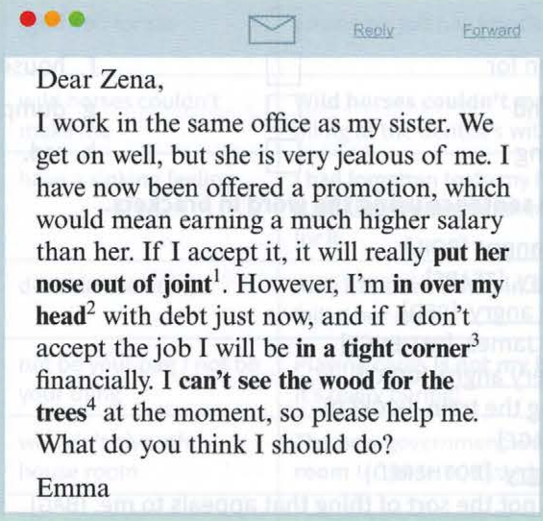
Reply
Forward

Dear Zena,

I work in the same office as my sister. We get on well, but she is very jealous of me. I have now been offered a promotion, which would mean earning a much higher salary than her. If I accept it, it will really **put her nose out of joint**[1]. However, I'm **in over my head**[2] with debt just now, and if I don't accept the job I will be **in a tight corner**[3] financially. I **can't see the wood for the trees**[4] at the moment, so please help me. What do you think I should do?

Emma

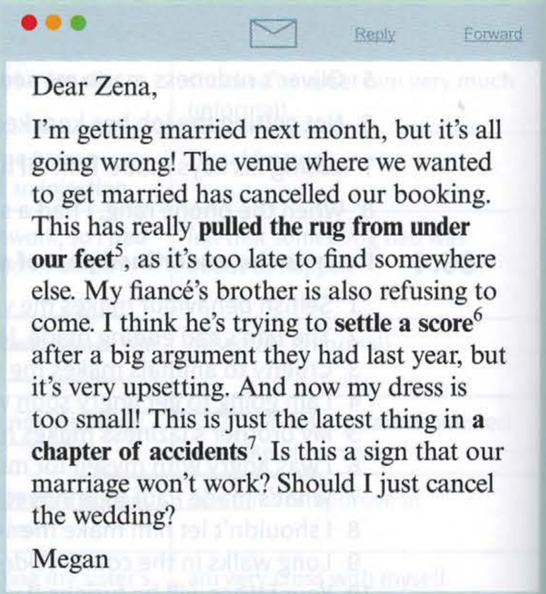
Reply
Forward

Dear Zena,

I'm getting married next month, but it's all going wrong! The venue where we wanted to get married has cancelled our booking. This has really **pulled the rug from under our feet**[5], as it's too late to find somewhere else. My fiancé's brother is also refusing to come. I think he's trying to **settle a score**[6] after a big argument they had last year, but it's very upsetting. And now my dress is too small! This is just the latest thing in **a chapter of accidents**[7]. Is this a sign that our marriage won't work? Should I just cancel the wedding?

Megan

[1] upset or offend her by getting something she wanted

[2] in a difficult situation that I can't deal with

[3] in a difficult position (You can also say 'in a tight spot'.)

[4] am unable to understand a situation because I am too involved in it

[5] done something that causes difficulties for us, or suddenly taken away help or support from us

[6] punish someone for something they did in the past and that you cannot forgive

[7] a series of unlucky events

Exercises

37.1 Choose the correct word to complete each idiom from A opposite.

1 When children help you cook, you can't take your eye off the [TV / car / ball].
2 You're refusing to speak to her now, but I suspect you'll feel differently in the cold [time / air / light] of day.
3 I really don't want to make a speech at my friend's wedding – I'm sure I'll make a total [pig's / dog's / cow's] ear of it.
4 Trying to park in town was an absolute [nightfall / nightcap / nightmare] this morning.
5 Dan's behaving very strangely. Do you think he's finally lost the [map / plot / plan]?

37.2 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1
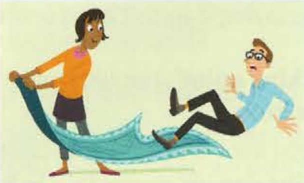

2
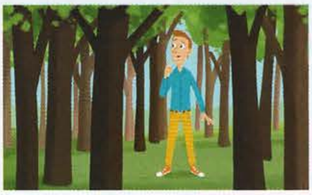

3
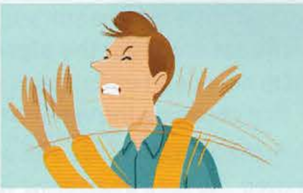

4
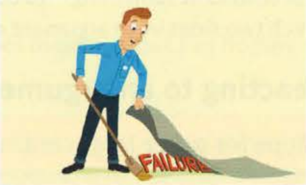

37.3 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 I'm not making as many sales as I used to. I must be losing my ☐ a corner.
2 I don't know why Bill is still so determined to settle a ☐ b accidents.
3 I wonder if you could help me out of a tight ☐ c the ball.
4 His neighbours' new car certainly put Ted's nose out of ☐ d touch.
5 He realised he'd made a terrible mistake in the cold light of ☐ e score with Jack.
6 No one in this business can afford to take their eye off ☐ f day.
7 There have been problems all week – it's just been a chapter of ☐ g the trees.
8 Stand back from the problem so you can see the wood for ☐ h joint.

37.4 Agree with what A says. Complete each dialogue with an idiom from the opposite page.

1 A: This job is really much too difficult for us now.
B: I agree. We're in ....
2 A: Selina has upset Gemma by going out with her ex-boyfriend.
B: I know, it's really ....
3 A: It will be impossible to hide our mistake.
B: Yes, there's no point trying to ....
4 A: That singer's nothing like as popular as he used to be.
B: You're right, I think he's ....
5 A: We need to get away for a while and think about the situation more clearly.
B: Good idea. At the moment we ....
6 A: I keep forgetting things recently.
B: Me too. I feel like I'm .... !
7 A: You have to concentrate all the time in this job.
B: You're right. You can't ....
8 A: He's got himself into a very difficult position now financially.
B: Yes, he's ....

38 Arguing

A Having an argument

A: I'm having difficulty working with Ronan at the moment – the venue for the training course has become a real **bone of contention**[1] between us.

B: I know what you mean – he's always got a **bone to pick**[2] with people. Even when we've all agreed something, he'll decide he wants to **argue the toss**[3]. It's really frustrating.

A: Yes, exactly! At the last meeting we'd discussed the venue and all agreed on The Grand, so I booked it. Then yesterday he started **picking holes in**[4] the hotel, saying it wasn't good enough. That really **put the cat amongst the pigeons**[5]!

B: Oh no! I don't understand why it's become such a **sticking point**[6]. I would have thought it's obvious that changing the venue at this stage is **out of the question**[7].

[1] something which causes a lot of disagreement [2] something you want to talk about because you are annoyed [3] to keep disagreeing with something that is already decided (disapproving) [4] to find mistakes or problems in something [5] to do something that causes a lot of trouble for other people [6] a subject which two sides in an argument cannot agree on [7] impossible or not allowed

B Reacting to an argument

Hope for peace as government and rebels find **common ground**[1]

President **puts her foot down**[2] with new energy minister

Unions **stand their ground**[3] on 2% wage increase

Ministers told to **toe the line**[4] on foreign policy

Chairman **put in his place**[5] as shareholders reject pay rises for board members

[1] topics or areas which the two sides can agree on [2] to use your authority to tell someone they must (not) do something [3] to refuse to change your opinion or position when others try to persuade you to [4] to do what someone orders or expects you to do (also spelt *tow the line*) [5] to let someone know they are not as important as they think they are

C Moving on

example	meaning
After all the difficulties in the department last week, we've just had a meeting to **clear the air**.	to make bad feelings or disagreements disappear
Although I personally still don't agree with the new office layout, I'm going to **let sleeping dogs lie.**	to ignore a bad situation from the past because you don't want new problems
The prime minister **held out an olive branch** to the opposition by offering them more power in the new coalition government.	to do or say something to show that you want an argument to end
Tara and I had a lot of arguments last year, but it's all **water under the bridge** now.	a problem or disagreement which happened in the past but that no one is upset about any longer
After a very public disagreement last week, the two ministers have agreed to **let bygones be bygones** and work together to support the proposal.	to forget about a disagreement or unpleasant situation and move on

Exercises

38.1 **Which idiom does the picture remind you of?**

1

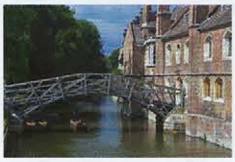

2

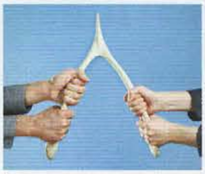

3

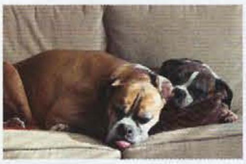

4

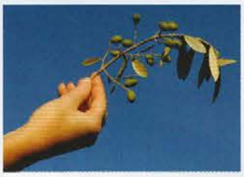

5

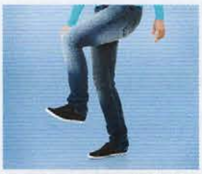

6

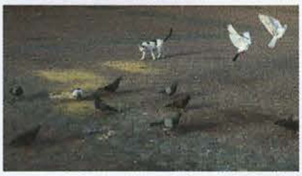

38.2 **Use the idioms from 38.1 to complete these sentences.**

1 My mum was pretty easy-going about mess, but I remember she .... and said no when we wanted to fill the bath with mud!

2 We'd already agreed the schedule when the board asked us to bring the dates forward and that ....

3 We had a lot of disagreements when we were at school together, but I'm hoping that's all ....

4 The packaging for the new shower gel is a real .... between the marketing department and the production team. They both want completely different designs.

5 He was really difficult to work with for the first few weeks, but then he offered to get me a coffee the other day, which I think was his way of ....

6 I've had a lot of arguments with my father about what he said to me. He's not going to apologise, so I'm just going to ....

38.3 **Choose the correct answer.**

1 If someone says something is out of the question, they mean a) it's a good idea b) they're not sure about it c) they won't consider it.

2 A sticking point in a negotiation is a) something which is difficult to agree on b) something which everyone agrees on c) a compromise.

3 If you have a discussion to clear the air after an argument you a) don't want to apologise b) want to create a good atmosphere c) don't want to discuss a difficult subject.

4 If somebody picks holes in your suggestion, they a) find a lot of faults with it b) partly agree with it c) don't want to discuss it with you.

5 If someone has a bone to pick with you, they want to a) move on after an argument b) talk about something you have done which has annoyed them c) stop you from doing something.

6 If you stand your ground in a discussion, you a) refuse to change your opinion b) say something in order to cause trouble c) find something you can agree on with the other side.

38.4 **Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets**

1 Sylvia is very difficult to work with. She always disagrees with every decision. [TOSS]

2 Although the negotiations were difficult, we managed to find some areas where we agreed in terms of product development. [COMMON]

3 When I told my dad I was thinking of dropping out of university, he told me I was not allowed to. [FOOT]

4 A group of ministers refused to do what they were expected to do and voted against the latest tax bill. [TOE]

5 Somebody should really tell Rashid he's not as important as he thinks he is. He can't keep telling everyone what to do. [PLACE]

6 After our disagreement, I wanted to forget about the situation and move on, but Emma still seemed very angry with me. [BYGONES]

39 Journalism

There are many expressions in English which are frequently used in journalism but are rarely used in other contexts. This kind of idiomatic language is sometimes called *journalese*.

A Newspaper articles about politics

Marathon talks[1] come to an end

Several weeks of lengthy talks are coming to an end, and planners are now almost certain to **be given the go-ahead**[2] to build a new housing estate on what is now North Park.

PM **fighting for his political life**[3]

The prime minister is facing increasing problems today, **amid mounting calls**[4] for his resignation. Many say he **has blood on his hands**[5] after the number of civilian deaths in the recent war.

Eleventh-hour[6] agreement reached

Management and unions have at last managed to **hammer out**[7] a possible **agreement** on wages. **If, and it's a big if**[8], the final contract is not signed today, workers plan to strike next week.

[1] very long talks [2] get permission [3] in danger of losing his position [4] with more and more people asking [5] is responsible for the death of someone or something [6] last-minute [7] reach (also collocates with other nouns, for example *deal*, *treaty* and *compromise*) [8] used to emphasise that something is not certain

B A newspaper article about war

Vorinland attacked

The **war-torn country**[1] of Vorinland has been further **plunged into chaos**[2] by a series of cross-border raids from the Sornak Republic, which took place **under cover of darkness**[3] last night. A number of **bloody confrontations**[4] have resulted in warehouses near the border being **engulfed in flames**[5]. The situation has brought an end to the **uneasy peace**[6] which the two countries had been experiencing for the last few weeks. The immediate motive for the raids is as yet **shrouded in mystery**[7], but one theory is that it was **a last-ditch attempt**[8] to sabotage the peace negotiations currently underway. The international community has appealed for calm.

[1] country which has suffered a lot as a result of war [2] put into an extremely difficult situation [3] protected by the fact that it was dark [4] violent acts of conflict [5] set alight [6] peace that is not stable [7] not known [8] a final try (also collocates with other nouns, for example *challenge* and *effort*)

Language help

To find more examples of journalese, type "journalese" into a search engine, e.g Google. You should find both idioms and other language characteristic of modern journalism.

Exercises

39.1 **Read the headlines. Are the statements below true or false? If they are false, say why.**

1 **City mayor fighting for his political life**

The mayor is going through a successful period.

2 **New road link given the go-ahead**

The new road link will be built.

3 **Eleventh-hour agreement to save battleship**

The agreement to save the battleship was made in plenty of time.

4 **Court finds man has blood on his hands**

The court found the man guilty.

5 **Ministers determined to hammer out agreement**

The ministers want to come to an agreement.

6 **Marathon talks end in failure**

The talks were brief.

39.2 **Complete each idiom.**

1 shrouded .... mystery
2 engulfed .... flames
3 .... cover .... darkness
4 plunged .... chaos
5 hammer .... an agreement

39.3 **Complete each sentence with an idiom from 39.2.**

1 The forest fires resulted in some entire villages being ....
2 The robbers got into the house ....
3 It will not be easy for the two sides to ....
4 The reasons for the bank manager's disappearance are still
....
5 The power cuts .... the whole area ....

39.4 **Choose the correct word to complete each idiom.**

1 Jessica Matthews, the British actor, has agreed to take the part if, and it's a [big / strong / hard] if, she gets the co-star she has requested.
2 Amid [rising / climbing / mounting] calls for his resignation, the president has not been seen in public today.
3 The [handy / bloody / hearty] confrontations show no sign of coming to an end.
4 There is now an [uncomfortable / unpleasant / uneasy] peace in the area.
5 The councillor is fighting [for / over / to] his political life.
6 There is growing evidence that the CEO himself has [dirt / mud / blood] on his hands.
7 The directors are making a [last-time / last-line / last-ditch] attempt to save the company.
8 It is a [war-worn / war-torn / war-broken] country, with problems of poverty and disease.

39.5 **What images do these words make you think of? Why do you think journalists like such images?**

1 engulfed
2 plunged
3 shrouded
4 last-ditch
5 eleventh-hour
6 war-torn

40 Advertising

A Idioms to convince people life can be better

Advertisements often claim that products will improve your life or give you special and exciting experiences, and so they use idioms connected with that theme.

The cruise ship *Ocean Comet* offers luxury **beyond your wildest dreams**[1]. Holiday in style with our exclusive 21-day winter cruises. Go on, **do yourself the world of good**[2] and book now at cometcruiser.com.

Mary Wilkes has a glass of *Corngrass* health drink every day. 'Drinking Corngrass has **taken years off me**[3],' she says. At 85, Mary still believes in **living life to the full**[4], and with Corngrass, she does.

The *Vestbook 3800T* is a laptop that is truly **ahead of its time**[5]. Less than 500 g in weight, it **packs an** impressive **punch**[6] with its super-fast Pandros processor.

In a world where it's getting more and more difficult to **stand out from the crowd**[7], the top-of-the-range Vedra 2000 **beats** other cars in its class **hands down**[8]. *Vedra* – love to be different.

'We tried every kind of holiday, but they never quite **hit the mark**[9],' said Ben Stax. 'Then we discovered *Jetaway*. There's **a world of difference**[10] between a normal airline and one that takes care of you from the moment you leave your house.'

[1] more than you could ever imagine or wish for

[2] make yourself feel much healthier or happier

[3] made me look and feel much younger

[4] experiencing as many good things as possible in life

[5] has already got features other products will not have for a long time yet

[6] is impressively powerful

[7] be different from and better than others so that everyone notices you

[8] is superior to other cars of its class

[9] were never successful

[10] a very big difference (usually with *between*)

B Idioms and wordplay in advertisements

Advertisers often play with idioms to make a greater impact, for example by basing the names of products and services on idioms to make them more memorable. Here are some examples from recent advertisements. The products and services are shown in the pictures. **See Unit 6 for more information on playing with idioms.**

Dustbattler 206

It's time to **come clean**[1] and admit you have a dust problem!

Selling your house was **a smart move**[2]. Now let us do the hard work.

Johnston Removals Ltd

There's no time like the present[3] ... and we have the perfect gift for everyone

This week only – free gift wrapping at Lennards

[1] come clean means 'tell the truth', usually about something bad that has been kept secret; the Dustbattler 206 *cleans* carpets [2] a smart move is a wise or clever action; removal companies help people *move* to a new home [3] said if you think it is a good idea to do something immediately; a *present* is a gift

Exercises

40.1 Complete each idiom from A opposite.

1 There's a .... difference .... economy class and business class when you fly long distance.
2 A camera that is ahead .... The new Imagion A64.
3 *Trick me!* The new family fun game that beats other games .... Available now at all good toy shops.
4 A villa in the Mediterranean? Free petrol for life? There are prizes beyond your .... in our new super-lotto competition. Enter online today!
5 Small but perfectly formed, this music player .... an impressive ...., with great sound quality and portability.
6 If your cooking doesn't quite hit ...., why not try our new online home-cookery course at www.foodstermania.com?

40.2 Agree with what A says. Complete each dialogue with an idiom from the opposite page.

1 A: The first hotel was dirty and noisy. The second one was beautiful and really luxurious.
B: Yes, there was a world .... them.
2 A: Our Caribbean cruise was great. We came home feeling absolutely wonderful.
B: Yes, it did us ....
3 A: Jake loves meeting new people and trying new things.
B: Yes, he certainly lives ....
4 A: This new vacuum cleaner is incredibly powerful – look how clean the floor is now!
B: Yes, it certainly packs ....
5 A: Freya is finding it difficult to get a job in the theatre. There are so many good actors looking for jobs.
B: Yes, it must be very hard to stand out .... these days.
6 A: Have you seen Edith since she had a facelift? She looks so much younger.
B: Yes, it's taken .... I think I might have one done myself!

40.3 Which product do you think each idiom would be best suited to advertise using wordplay? Choose the correct answer and say why.

idiom	products
1 a smart move	a) a hair dryer b) an electronic chess game c) a lamp
2 there's no time like the present	a) a watch b) a scarf c) a computer game
3 come clean	a) a mobile phone b) perfume c) washing powder

40.4 Match the advertising slogans on the left (which all contain idioms) with the companies, products or services on the right.

1 PRESENT PERFECT ☐ a an airline with beds in its first-class cabin
2 PHOTOGRAPHIC MEMORY ☐ b a new gift shop
3 QUALITY TIME ☐ c an exhibition of pictures of a village taken 100 years ago
4 SLOWLY BUT SURELY ☐ d a new range of luxury watches
5 FLAT OUT TO NEW YORK ☐ e a cookery course to encourage people to stop eating fast food

Over to you

Look out for adverts in English and make a note of any idioms used in them, especially any which involve wordplay.

41 Formal writing

Accurate and fluent formal writing is important in advanced-level exams. This unit presents some expressions to help you organise your arguments and ideas in an essay.

A Structuring an argument

First and foremost is a more emphatic form of *first*: **First and foremost**, it must be emphasised that there are several reasons for this change.

On balance, **by and large** and **in the main** are used to draw a conclusion after evaluating several different facts or opinions: **On balance / By and large / In the main**, the general public seems to be in favour of the proposal.

On no account is an emphatic way of saying *not*. Remember to invert the subject and verb when the phrase is used at the beginning of a sentence: **On no account** should their conclusions be accepted. Their conclusions must **on no account** be accepted.

On the one hand and **on the other hand** are used to present two contrasting ways of looking at the same problem: **On the one hand**, there is some published evidence to support the theory. **On the other hand**, that evidence has been questioned by some recent studies.

Last but not least is used to emphasise that even though something is mentioned last, it is still important: **Last but not least**, the impracticalities of the proposal created many problems.

In the final / last analysis is used to emphasise that you are talking about what is most important or true in a situation: **In the final analysis**, although this is an innovative idea, it is not one that we can consider.

B Indicating relationships between ideas or events

The **conventional wisdom**[1] is that only children can learn a second language to a really high level. Many people claim that a good adult language learner is **a contradiction in terms**[2]. Young children can be excellent language learners, but that is **not the whole picture**[3]. Adult learners can also master a language. My brother is **a case in point**[4]. He learnt perfect Arabic when he was 30. However, adults, **as a matter of course**[5], have more difficulties than children with pronunciation.

[1] something that people generally believe is true when in fact it is often false [2] an expression that is confusing because the words in it seem to have opposite meanings [3] not taking all the facts into consideration [4] an example of something just described [5] describes what normally happens or what is normally done.

A recently published Ministry of Education document **points the way**[1] to more teaching of languages at primary schools. This document **sets the stage**[2] for radical changes in language teaching. However, this **begs the question**[3] as to how enough teachers will be found to teach second languages to young learners. Some changes in teacher training are about to be **set in motion**[4], and it is hoped that these will **open the door to**[5] more successful language teaching.

[1] suggests how something might be done in a better way [2] makes something more likely to happen [3] causes you to ask a particular question [4] started [5] let something new start

Language help

On the one hand / On the other hand do not present two arguments for the same position but are used to present two contrasting ways of looking at the same problem:
On the one hand, *I find life in the country less stressful than living in the city.* **On the other hand,** *I do miss theatres and cinemas.*

Exercises

41.1 **Complete each idiom from A opposite.**

1 last but not ....
2 .... balance
3 first and ....
4 .... and large
5 .... no account
6 in the final / last ....

41.2 **Complete each sentence with an idiom from 41.1. There may be more than one possible answer.**

1 .... should we forget the history behind this conflict.
2 .... doctors must trust their own judgement.
3 I can see both arguments, but .... I am in favour of extending the school-leaving age.
4 .... , we must give a definition of family law before we can apply it to the case in question.
5 .... , let us consider the role of the media in this debate.
6 .... , the writer uses traditional poetic style.

41.3 **Choose the correct idiom.**

1 Liberal right-wing policies sound like [received wisdom / a contradiction in terms].
2 [On no account / In the main], I approve of the government's approach.
3 The reform [begs the question of / opens the door] to an eventual solution of the problem.
4 Once the papers are signed, this legal process is [set the stage / set in motion].
5 [As a matter of course / Last but not least], large companies outperform smaller companies. This is only to be expected.
6 People who fail at school often succeed in later life. Einstein is [a case in point / not the whole picture].
7 The research [points the way / sets the stage] to a future cure for the disease.
8 Saying that boys achieve less at school does not give [a contradiction in terms / the whole picture].
9 Advocating equal opportunity for all [points the way to / begs the question of] how this can be achieved.
10 [On the one hand / On no account], international law exists to protect people from the power of states. [On balance / On the other hand], it can also restrict states from exercising their power to protect the interests of their own people.

41.4 **Here are some errors made with idioms by candidates in advanced-level exams. Can you correct them? Looking up the word in brackets in a good idioms dictionary should help you find the correct idiom.**

1 The new building stands out like a sore finger. [THUMB]
2 An interesting painting caught my eyeballs. [EYE]
3 It's hard to keep up with government policy, as it seems to choose and change all the time. [CHOP]
4 Business success often goes in pair with good working conditions. [HAND]

Over to you

Find an article relating to your studies. For example, if you study science, you could choose an article from the *New Scientist* website at www.newscientist.com. Can you find any examples of idioms? If so, note them down in sentences to show them in context.

42 Advising and warning

A Changing people's attitudes or behaviour

You've been behaving very badly. It's time to **turn over a new leaf**[1] and start behaving responsibly.

If I were you, I'd **think twice**[5] before taking the job. It doesn't seem very well paid.

Well, if you're bored with your job, maybe it's time to **ring the changes**[2] and look for something new.

You keep saying you want to give to charity, but now it's time to **put your money where your mouth is**[6]!

You'll never pass your exams if you don't work hard. You need to **put your shoulder to the wheel**[3] and start studying.

Don't assume you're going to get into university. Buying all your books before you get a place is **tempting fate**[7].

My advice to you is to **reach for the stars**[4]. You can achieve anything you want.

If you no longer want to marry Sandra, you need to **bite the bullet**[8] and tell her.

[1] start behaving better [2] make something more interesting by changing it in some way [3] make an effort and work hard [4] try to achieve your ambitions or something that is very difficult (You can also say 'reach for the moon'.) [5] think carefully before making a decision (You can also say 'think long and hard'.) [6] do something practical about something you believe in, especially give money [7] causing bad luck for yourself by talking or acting too confidently about something [8] force yourself to do something difficult or unpleasant

B Other idioms connected with advising and warning

example	meaning
Be careful what you say! I wouldn't **stick my neck out** if I were you.	give an opinion which others might not like or which others are afraid to give
I really think you **are on thin ice** when you criticise your manager so strongly.	are taking a risk (You can also say 'be skating on thin ice'; always used in the continuous form.)
Let's just agree with the plan. We don't want to **upset the apple cart.**	cause trouble or spoil people's plans
I can't help you financially. I know things are difficult, but you'll just have to **tough it out.**	face a difficult situation without changing your plans or opinions
It's great that you want to start your own business, but don't **bite off more than you can chew.**	try to do more than you are able to
Don't worry about paying for your university studies. We'll **cross that bridge when we come to it.**	face that problem when it happens, not now
Business is not looking good. We have to **trim our sails** and be more realistic about our costs.	spend less money

Exercises

42.1 **Look at A opposite. Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1

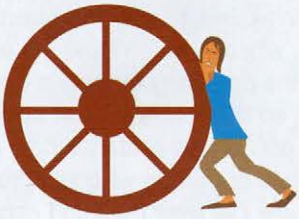

2

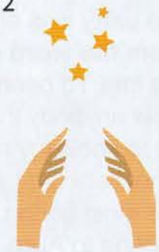

3

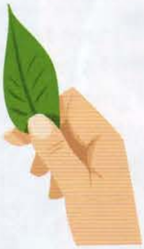

4

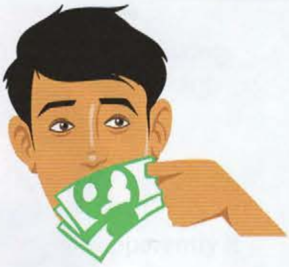

42.2 **Complete each sentence with an idiom from the opposite page.**

1 The club needs money desperately. Charlie says he wants to help, so he should ....

2 I know you don't want to tell her the bad news, but you have to ....

3 Come on, work harder! You have to .... !

4 The teacher told his students to be ambitious and to ....

5 You need to stop lying and be honest. It's time to ....

42.3 **Choose the correct word to complete each idiom.**

1 You should think [over / double / twice] before you give anyone your personal details.

2 I wouldn't upset [the apple cart / the fruit cart / the apple tree] at work. Just say you agree with your manager.

3 The company realised that it had to [change / tighten / trim] its sails because of the economic recession.

4 Let's not book the holiday until Mum has had her operation and she's out of hospital. We don't want to [test / try / tempt] fate.

5 It's going to be a difficult year for us financially, but we'll just have to tough it [out / through / over].

6 You've been wearing the same boring old clothes for years. Come on, let's go shopping. It's time to ring [a change / the changes / the change]!

42.4 **What could you say in these situations? Use the idioms in the box.**

be (skating) on thin ice
tough it out
bite off more than you can chew
stick your neck out

1 A friend buys an old, ruined house, then finds out it will cost a lot of money and take a lot of time to make it habitable.

2 A friend speaks out at a public meeting and gives an opinion that most people do not agree with. You think it was not a good idea to speak out in this way.

3 A friend is in financial difficulties and asks you to help, but you can't. You think he just has to accept his situation.

4 A classmate sends an email to your teacher containing a very strong criticism of her. You think the classmate is taking a big risk.

Over to you

A lot of idioms are based on parts of the human body (for example, *put your shoulder to the wheel* and *stick your neck out* in this unit). Find one more idiom for *shoulder* and one more for *neck* and record them in your vocabulary notebook.

43 Telling stories

A The office party

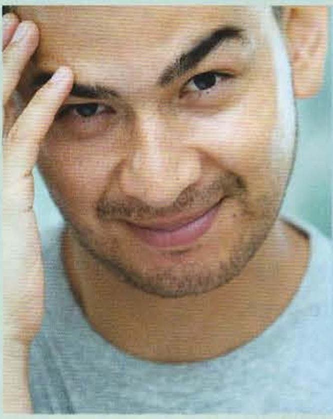

The office party was embarrassing, **to say the least**[1]. It all went wrong **from the word go**[2], when I couldn't find the venue and was two hours late. I'd been at the company for only a week and didn't really know anybody there, so there was a lot **at stake**[3] in terms of getting to know my new colleagues and making a good first impression. I started talking to someone who was, **to put it mildly**[4], one of the most boring people I've ever met, so I escaped quickly and started talking to Alice, who I sit next to at work. I was complaining about the man I'd been talking to and noticed she had gone very quiet. **The penny dropped**[5] when she said, 'He's my husband.' I later discovered that, **for good measure**[6], he's also a director of the company. I can't believe I **dropped** such **a clanger**[7].

[1] expression used to indicate that something is more serious or important than your words may suggest
[2] from the very start
[3] to lose
[4] expression used to describe something as more extreme than your words may suggest
[5] I suddenly understood (informal)
[6] in addition
[7] said something very embarrassing

B Getting a job

I'm sure I got my job **more by luck than judgement**[1]. My CV wasn't very good, **to say nothing of**[2] the disastrous interview. I **nearly fell off my chair**[3] when they offered me the job, and I even got a company car **into the bargain**[4]. **There's a lot to be said for**[5] not worrying about things until you know the final outcome.

[1] by chance rather than skill
[2] and in addition there is / was
[3] was extremely surprised
[4] as well as other things mentioned
[5] there's much in favour of

C Other stories

John told me he'd won the lottery and **for a split second**[1] I believed him!

Between you and me[2], I think Kate's thinking of dropping out of university.

Guess who I bumped into on the way to work? Sara! It **was a real bolt from the blue**[3]. I've not seen her for years.

The exam looked really easy **at first glance**[4], but it was actually really difficult, and I think I've failed.

They may seem a strange couple, but **when all's said and done**[5], they're really happy together.

That's **a real turn-up for the books**[6] – I just got a pay rise I wasn't expecting.

[1] for a very brief moment
[2] said when you are going to tell someone something confidential
[3] was an unexpected and very surprising event
[4] when you first look at it
[5] said when you are about to say the most important fact in a situation
[6] a strange or surprising event

Exercises

43.1 Complete each idiom.

1 I felt at home in my new flat from the word ....
2 It took a while for the penny to .... , but eventually Joe realised I was joking.
3 Kathy nearly fell off her .... when she saw a film star in her local restaurant.
4 For a .... second I was afraid the car was going to crash.
5 He doesn't like spending money, to .... it mildly.
6 Just .... you and me, I'm thinking of applying for a new job.
7 Be careful what you say in the meeting – there's a lot at ....
8 I dropped a .... at Emma's party: I asked where her cat was, but apparently it died last week!

43.2 Answer these questions about the idioms on the opposite page.

1 Which two idioms talk about the beginning of something?
2 Which three idioms comment on something being surprising?
3 Which three idioms can be used to add extra information to other points mentioned?
4 Which idiom can be used to emphasise that you want to say something significant?
5 Which two idioms relate to chance and risk?

43.3 Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.

1 There are many advantages to working in an open-plan office.
2 Very briefly, I believed Tom when he said he was moving to Australia; then I realised he was joking.
3 Initially, the project seemed quite simple.
4 He passed his driving test first time, but I'd say it was more thanks to good fortune than to any special ability.
5 Don't tell anyone else, but I think Abbie and Mike may be going out together.
6 Their decision to marry came as a complete surprise.
7 It was, at best, a risky thing to do.
8 Both the brothers are very clever, as is their brilliant sister.

43.4 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 The party was fantastic – delicious food, a great band and all my favourite people there for full measure.
2 She's pretty, clever and nice for the bargain.
3 When all's told and done, I think you made the right decision.
4 No one thought the film would be a success, so it was a real turn-up in the books when it won three Oscars.
5 I feel very nervous about this exam; there is a lot at the stake.
6 I didn't understand what he meant at first, but then the pound dropped.
7 We got on really well from the word start.
8 I think you were rather rude to her, to tell it mildly.

Over to you

Choose three idioms that you particularly want to learn from this unit. Look them up in an online dictionary, e.g. http://dictionary.cambridge.org/. Write down the example sentences you find there that use these idioms. Then write another example using the idioms in a context relevant to you.

44 Responding to what people say

The idioms in this unit are used mainly in informal spoken language or in informal writing, e.g. emails to friends. They are not used in formal speaking or writing.

A Short responses

In these conversations, the second speaker uses an idiom to react to what the first speaker says.

A: What's Joe doing these days?
B: **You may well ask**! [when someone asks you about something which you think is strange, funny or annoying (humorous)]

A: Do you think Rosie will come and help us tomorrow morning?
B: **Fat chance**! She never gets up before ten o'clock! [you think this will definitely not happen]

A: Did you know Nina's boyfriend was a basketball player?
B: Actually, he's a volleyball player.
A: Well, **same difference**. [you admit you were wrong, but think the difference is unimportant]

A: Farah has an amazing job. She travels the world as some millionaire's personal assistant.
B: **Nice work if you can get it**! [an easy job that you would like to have if you could]

A: Teresa and Harry are bringing their four noisy kids and their dog when they come to stay.
B: Oh, no! They're bad enough, but their kids and dog too? **That's all we need**! [something even worse will be added to an already bad situation]

A: Petra has resigned. She's leaving at the end of the month.
B: Well, **good riddance**, I say! I've never liked her. [you are pleased that someone or something you didn't like has gone; you can also say 'good riddance to bad rubbish' (impolite)]

A: Richard says he's going to move to Hollywood and become a famous film star.
B: Oh, **give me a break**! He's the worst actor I've ever seen! [you don't believe what you have just heard]

A: When shall we tell Lily the bad news?
B: Well, **there's no time like the present**. [it's better to do something immediately rather than wait]

B Reacting to news and events

Maria: Hi, Tara. You know Kerry's split up with Matt? Well, **the plot thickens**[1] – she's going out with James!
Tara: **I thought as much**[2]! I saw them together this morning.
Maria: **What is the world coming to**[3]? Matt's lovely! **Don't get me wrong**[4], James is gorgeous, but he's not a very nice person, and he's really boring. He needs to **get a life**[5]!
Tara: I know, **it will all end in tears**[6]! What does she see in him?
Maria: **You've got me there**[7]. Didn't you use to like him?
Tara: **Do me a favour**[8]! **I wouldn't trust him as far as I could throw him**[9]. He cheated on his last girlfriend, you know.
Maria: **Fair enough**[10]. I was only asking!
Tara: Oh well. **Time will tell**[11] whether they stay together or not.

[1] something has happened to make a strange situation even stranger [2] I thought so [3] said when you are shocked by events [4] said before you criticise someone, to make the criticism less severe [5] stop doing boring things and start doing exciting things [6] it will end badly [7] said when you don't know the answer to a question [8] said when you don't believe what someone has said or you disagree very much with it [9] I do not trust him at all [10] I accept your point of view [11] the truth will become clear after a period of time

Exercises

44.1 Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom from A opposite.

1 A: We're already running late, and now I can't find the car keys!
B: Well, that just makes a bad situation worse!
2 A: You never know, we might win the lottery and become millionaires.
B: Huh! I don't think that will ever happen!
3 A: Felix says he's joining a rock band and is going to make a number one hit.
B: Felix? Ha-ha! I don't believe a word of it!
4 A: I wonder why Grace isn't going to work today.
B: I also think this is strange.
5 A: I hear Kelly has emigrated to New Zealand.
B: I'm glad she's gone! I could never stand her.
6 A: He ended the relationship by email, not text message.
B: Well, the difference is not important.
7 A: You need to tell your boss that you're resigning today.
B: You're right. It's better to do it immediately.
8 A: That film star gets paid ten million dollars per film.
B: I wish I could make money in that easy way.

44.2 Are these sentences true or false? If the answer is false, say why.

1 If you say to someone 'You've got me there', you mean they have convinced you that they are right.
2 If you tell someone to 'get a life', you mean they should find a life partner or marry.
3 If you say 'the plot thickens', you mean that something has happened that makes a strange situation even stranger.
4 If you say 'Nice work if you can get it', you mean you would hate to have to do that work.

44.3 Complete each idiom.

1 They may be enjoying themselves now, but in the long run it will all ……………………………………
2 It says here in the paper that children prefer playing computer games alone to playing with their friends. What is the world ……………………………………!
3 I think Tara's unreliable and a liar. I wouldn't trust her …………………………………….
4 So Annika has been lying about how much money she makes? I thought ……………………………………!
5 The new manager may make a difference to the company, or he may fail. Only time …………………………………….
6 We should act now and not delay. There's no …………………………………….

44.4 Match each statement with a suitable response.

1 So you're saying she's selfish?	☐	a You've got me there. I really can't remember.
2 Erik says he's been in a Hollywood movie.	☐	b Good riddance to bad rubbish!
3 I didn't invite her because she upset me.	☐	c Do me a favour! How absurd!
4 What time did Granny say she was arriving?	☐	d Well, there's no time like the present.
5 That useless manager got the sack.	☐	e No, don't get me wrong. That's not the problem.
6 Should we go and tell her now or later?	☐	f Fair enough. I'm sorry to hear that.

45 Agreeing and disagreeing

A Agreeing

Maria doesn't approve of letting children eat sweets and chocolate, and her husband is **of the same mind / of like mind**. [has the same opinion]

The four people are all agreeing in an informal way with the woman in the centre.

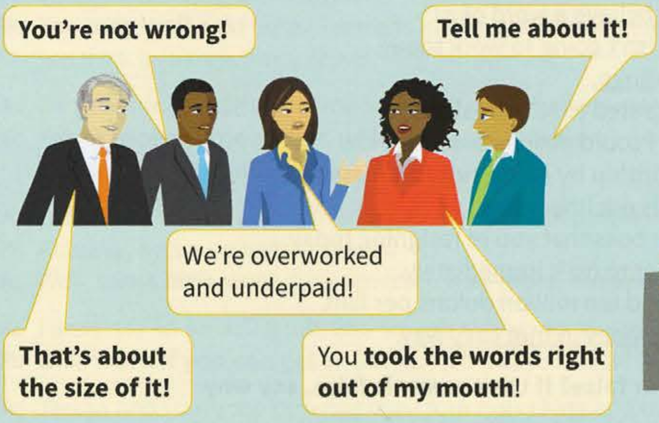
You're not wrong!
Tell me about it!
We're overworked and underpaid!
That's about the size of it!
You took the words right out of my mouth!

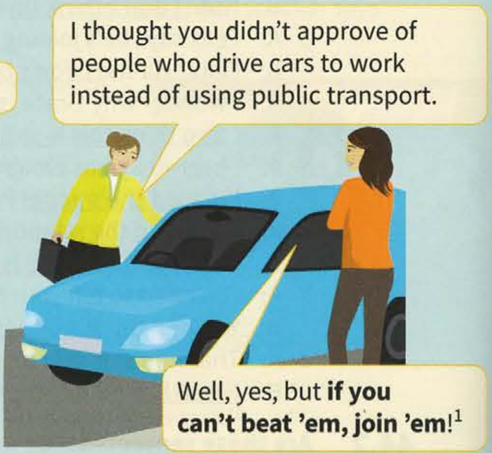
I thought you didn't approve of people who drive cars to work instead of using public transport.
Well, yes, but if you can't beat 'em, join 'em![1]

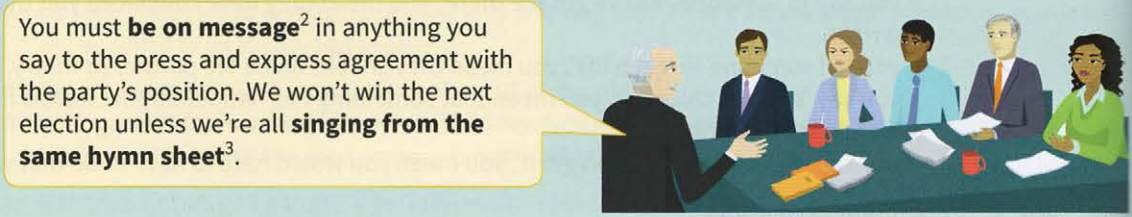
You must be on message[2] in anything you say to the press and express agreement with the party's position. We won't win the next election unless we're all singing from the same hymn sheet[3].

[1] something that you say when you decide to do something bad because other people are getting an advantage from doing it and you cannot stop them (informal) [2] support the official view of an organisation [3] saying the same things in public

B Disagreeing

Manager: The only choice is to introduce my plan for longer working hours. It'll increase our productivity levels, which will be good for us all.

Adam: **I beg to differ**[1]. I think the staff will get very tired, and that will reduce productivity.

Manager: There's **a world of difference**[2] between expecting people to work twelve hours a day and asking them to occasionally work ten hours, which is all I'm asking.

Adam: Ten hours and fifteen minutes actually.

Manager: Now you're just **splitting hairs**[3].

Adam: Well, you'**re at odds with**[4] your staff on this one. Everyone thinks you'**re barking up the wrong tree**[5]! They say that paying people more would be a far better way to increase productivity.

Manager: Hey, I'm not exactly **a lone voice**[6]! Joanna, you backed my plan yesterday.

Joanna: Yes, well, now **I'm torn**[7]. I'm **in two minds**[8] as to whether it'd work or not.

Manager: Well, I'm sorry this **note of discord**[9] has crept into our discussions. I know it's a difficult decision to make. Tom, what do you think? You're usually good at **pouring oil on troubled waters**[10].

[1] I disagree (formal) [2] a big difference [3] arguing about whether unimportant details are exactly correct [4] have a different opinion from [5] trying to achieve something in the wrong way or being wrong about the reason for something (informal) [6] the only person with a specific opinion [7] I'm undecided [8] unable to decide [9] disagreement (formal) [10] calming down a difficult situation

Exercises

45.1 Correct the mistakes in these idioms from A opposite.

1 A: I think we should go home now.
B: You took the sentence right out of my mouth.
2 A: This project is a total disaster, isn't it?
B: Yes, that's about the shape of it!
3 A: I think Jack is arrogant and rude.
B: Talk about it!
4 A: I think they were wrong to sack George just for being late a few times.
B: I think most of us are of the same meaning about that.
5 A: I'd never have expected to see you at a casino. I thought you didn't approve of gambling.
B: Well, in the end I thought, 'If you can't win 'em, join 'em.'

45.2 Complete each idiom.

1 They were having a terrible row, so I tried to pour oil on troubled ....
2 Ryan's convinced he's right, but I think he's barking up the wrong ....
3 The CEO wants to ensure we're all singing from the same ....
....
4 It's part of a lawyer's job to be pedantic, to spend time splitting ....
5 Absolutely. You took the words right out of my ....
6 Our normally friendly meetings have been spoilt by a note of .... recently.
7 You may think it's a good idea, but I beg to ....
8 I don't know what to think. I'm in two ....

45.3 Choose the correct word to complete each idiom.

1 He certainly is a nasty person. You're not [untrue / wrong / false]!
2 When everyone else was ignoring the situation, Kate was a(n) [lone / only / alone] voice pointing out the danger we were in.
3 It's so hard to decide – I'm really [worn / torn / broken] about what to do.
4 As twins, Una and I tend to be of [alike / similar / like] mind over most issues.
5 That politician is at [difference / minds / odds] with his party over their economic policy.
6 The company's spokespeople were briefed before talking to the press to ensure they were all on [note / tone / message].

45.4 Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.

1 There's a big difference between being poor and not having as much money as you'd like.
2 I have a different opinion from everyone else in my family about where we should go on holiday.
3 Please do all you can to calm things down. I hate it when people argue.
4 The politician was sacked for not following the party line.

45.5 Do you agree or disagree with these statements? Respond to each statement with an idiom.

1 Men are better drivers than women.
2 Learning grammar rules is a waste of time.
3 Footballers deserve to be paid a lot more money than politicians.
4 TV has a bad effect on family life.
5 I couldn't live without my mobile phone.

46 Expressing success and failure

A Success

Look at these newspaper headlines about sport and business success. The meaning of the idiom in the headline is explained in the story that follows.

Jackson **wins his spurs**[1]

Jackson's performance last night proved that he deserves his place in the team. He is clearly a very talented young player.

County team is **on a roll**[4]

Red County basketball team has been having a very successful season, with six wins in a row.

PCL **is riding high**[2] in popularity poll

PCL is one of the most popular businesses to work for this year, according to the results of a major survey.

New collection **goes down a storm**[5]

The designer's exclusive dresses sold out within minutes at the New York fashion show.

Venco stay **ahead of the game**[6]

Shoe company Venco have maintained their lead in the industry for the third year running.

Blake **comes up trumps**[3]

The young player did far better than anyone would have expected in last night's match, scoring three goals to win the game for City.

[1] does something to show that he deserves a particular position and has the skills needed for it; *spurs* are sharp, metal, wheel-shaped objects fixed to the heel of boots worn by people riding horses, and used to make the horse go faster [2] is very successful [3] has completed an activity successfully or produced a good result, especially when he was not expected to [4] having a successful period [5] is very popular [6] know more about the most recent developments than the people or companies with whom they are competing

B Failure

The comedian's performance at the Variety Show **went down like a lead balloon**. [people did not like it at all]

The disastrous attempt at a military campaign revealed the country as **a paper tiger**. [country or organisation which seems strong but is actually weak]

The president is dealing with the **double whammy** of losing the election and having his private life discussed in the press. [two bad things happening at the same time (informal)]

Starting a new business without careful planning is **a recipe for disaster**. [sure to become a disaster]

Unfortunately, it soon became clear that the new CEO **couldn't cut the mustard**. [couldn't deal with any difficulties or problems]

The economic crisis will have a huge impact on any business that **is built on sand**. [is not firmly established]

Language help

The idioms in this unit are all based on vivid metaphors, which is one reason they are particularly popular in journalism. Draw (or even just imagine) pictures to help you remember the idioms.

Exercises

46.1 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 Our team's been practising hard, so I hope we'll come ☐
2 Negotiating that important deal makes me feel I have won ☐
3 His excellent IT skills have helped him stay ahead ☐
4 I found it hard to get started with my thesis, but I'm on ☐
5 Her latest book has gone down a ☐
6 After some initial problems, the pop group is now riding ☐

a storm, both with critics and the public.
b high.
c a roll now.
d my spurs in my new job.
e up trumps in the match tomorrow.
f of the game.

46.2 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1
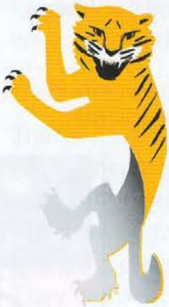

2
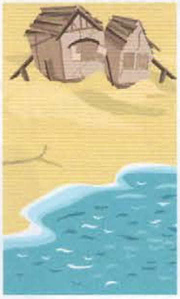

3
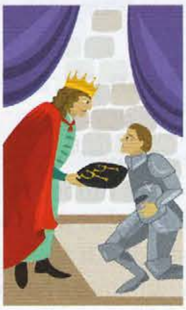

4
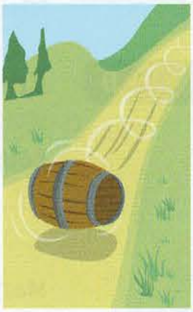

46.3 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 The chef's new recipes were very popular with the clientele. [STORM]
2 My ideas for restructuring the company were met with total silence. [BALLOON]
3 The new prime minister is extremely popular at the moment. [RIDING]
4 I'm quite worried about starting my new job. I'm afraid I won't be able to cope. [MUSTARD]
5 I've been studying hard all year, so I hope I will know a lot about the subject when it comes to taking my exams. [GAME]
6 Poor Carl has been hit by two problems at the same time – losing his job and having a flood in his house. [DOUBLE]

46.4 Complete each idiom in this review of a play.

Although Lucy James's disappointing first play went down like a (1) .... balloon, she has come up (2) .... with her second play, now showing at the West Theatre. The dramatic plot went down a (3) .... with the first-night audience. I thought it would be a (4) .... for disaster casting the young Harry Catlin as an old man, but I was proved wrong. Catlin is (5) .... a roll at the moment; his last play also delighted critics.

Over to you

Look at Units 56 and 59, which are based on the keywords *dead* and *fall*. Which other idioms relating to failure can you find there?

47 Emphasising

In this unit, we look at the way certain nouns and adjectives combine to form idiomatic compounds, which emphasise the second word in the compound.

A Emphasis of adjectives

The words before each adjective express the idea of *very / completely / extremely*.

My trousers got soaked. I laid them on the sand, and, in the hot sun, they were soon **bone dry**.

The cakes I made were a disaster. They were **rock hard** and nobody could eat them!

He lost his shorts in the water and came out of the river **stark naked**.

Derek has a **razor-sharp** sense of humour; he's so funny.

The oven broke down, and our dinner was **stone cold** instead of **piping hot**.

The new prime minister is trying to project a **squeaky-clean** image of herself.

My grandad is 87, but he's **fighting fit** and goes for a long walk every day.

It's **crystal clear** to me that we need to raise money urgently.

His uncle Peter is **filthy rich**. He owns houses in England, Italy and the Caribbean.

B Emphatic noun phrases

Read this phone conversation between Lou and Mary-Jo and note the idioms.

Lou: Have you heard about Yolanda? She was robbed **in broad daylight**[1] in the city centre yesterday. It really scared her.

Mary-Jo: Oh no! Things have really hit **rock bottom**[2] here if people are getting mugged in the middle of the day in crowded places!

Lou: Yes. Nobody has any respect any more. The city spent **a small fortune**[3] on surveillance cameras, but nobody ever gets caught. The police do nothing.

Mary-Jo: Well, even if they do get caught, they have no respect for the courts. They just tell **barefaced lies**[4] and walk away free, or get fined **a mere pittance**[5].

Lou: Well, I think anyone who mugs someone should go to prison, **full stop**[6].

[1] during the day when people could have seen it [2] the lowest and worst possible level [3] a large sum of money [4] obvious untruths [5] a very small sum of money [6] there is nothing more to say about the subject

Language help

There are a large number of emphatic compounds with idiomatic meanings like the ones above. Always make a special note of them in your vocabulary notebook when you find new ones.

Exercises

47.1 **Match the beginning of each idiom with its ending.**

1 razor ☐ a clear
2 fighting ☐ b hot
3 crystal ☐ c sharp
4 stark ☐ d fit
5 piping ☐ e naked

47.2 **Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom from A opposite.**

1 My old auntie Lily is very fit, even though she had an operation two months ago.
2 She's very rich: she owns a private jet and a massive yacht.
3 A man jumped into the fountain completely naked and was arrested by the police.
4 The new government had a completely clean image until the recent scandal broke.
5 Erica has a very sharp mind and is the most intelligent person I know.
6 My feet and hands were completely cold, so I sat in front of the fire, had a bowl of very hot soup and soon felt better.
7 I overcooked the meat and it was very dry.
8 We can't put the tent up here. The ground's very hard.

47.3 **Correct the mistakes in these idioms.**

1 Things have hit stone bottom between my parents and their neighbours; they don't speak to each other any more.
2 I couldn't sleep on that mattress – it was stone hard.
3 This vase is stark dry and the poor old flowers are dying!
4 It is glass clear to me that she is trying to deceive us all.
5 They've spent a filthy fortune on furniture for their new house.
6 Police report that more crimes are taking place in full daylight.

47.4 **Answer these questions.**

1 Which idiom in this unit means you have a lot of money?
2 Which idiom means 'There's nothing more to say about it!'?
3 Which idiom means a) 'a very small sum of money' and b) 'a very large sum of money'?
4 Which idiom means 'in the middle of the day, when everyone can see what is happening'?

47.5 **Complete the crossword.**

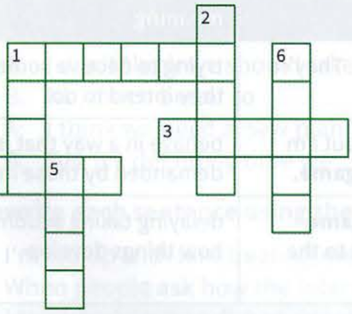

Across
1 goes with *rock*
3 goes with *crystal*
4 goes with *pittance*

Down
1 goes with *-faced lies*
2 goes with *fortune*
5 goes with *filthy*
6 goes with *naked*

48 Play and game

A Play

I went out with my brother and his girlfriend. They didn't really want me there, and it was really boring **playing gooseberry**. [being an unwanted third person in a romantic situation]

If you really like him, don't make it too obvious. Try to **play it cool**. [behave in a calm way, pretending to be less interested in someone than you really are]

I always take an umbrella with me, even if it's not raining. I like to **play it safe**! [be extra careful and not take any risks]

I run a restaurant. Another restaurant in town **plays dirty**, saying there are rats in our kitchen, and so on. [behaves dishonestly] But I'm not stupid – they can't **play me for a fool**. [treat me as if I am stupid] At the moment we're just waiting and **playing for time**, [waiting until we're ready] but we'll get our revenge in the end.

In my opinion, scientists have no right to **play God** by experimenting on embryos. [act as if they have control over other people's lives]

I'm tired of **playing second fiddle** to my brother. [being in a less important or weaker position]

The police **played cat and mouse** with the suspect before arresting him. [tried to defeat someone by tricking them so that they had an advantage over them]

B Game

idiom	example	meaning
raise your game	Our competitors won an award this week. We're really going to have to **raise our game**.	work harder to achieve something
the game's up	He's got away with lying for a long time, but **the game's up** now.	used to say that someone's secret activities are known and must now stop
a game plan	The marketing campaign isn't working. We need a new **game plan**.	plan for achieving success
the name of the game	Good customer service is **the name of the game** for successful companies.	the most important part of an activity or quality needed for that activity

C Idioms with *play* and *game*

idiom	example	meaning
play games	They're never going to sign the contract. They're just **playing games.**	trying to deceive someone about what they intend to do
play the game	I don't agree with the changes at work, but I'm not going to complain. I'll just **play the game.**	behave in a way that is expected or demanded by those in authority.
play a / the waiting game	The banks are **playing a / the waiting game** until they see how their customers react to the financial crisis.	delaying taking action until they see how things develop

Language help

It is important to use articles correctly in idioms. We always say 'play second fiddle' and 'play gooseberry', NOT '~~play a second fiddle~~' and '~~play a gooseberry~~'.

Exercises

48.1 **Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1

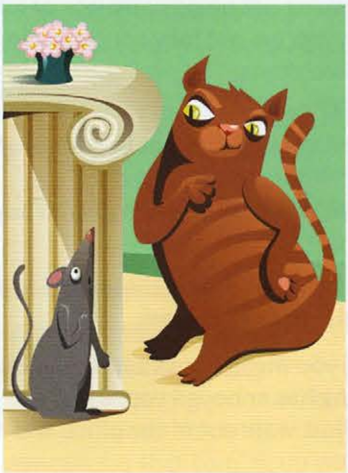

2

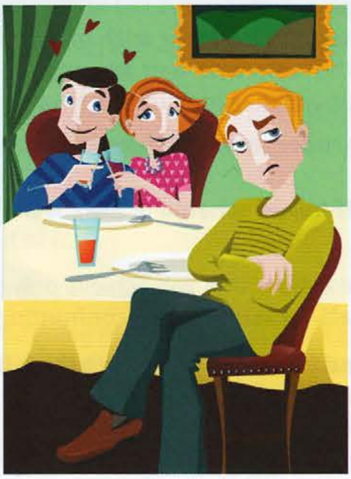

3

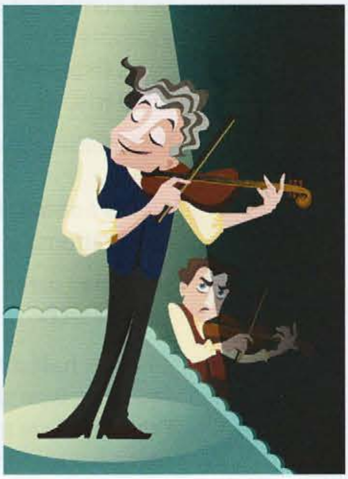

48.2 **Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.**

1 We want the directors to agree to our proposals, so we need to discuss our strategy.
2 OK, kids – that's enough. I know where you've been hiding my glasses!
3 Martha has decided to apply to be the shop manager. She's been an assistant manager for five years and is tired of not being fully in charge.
4 When you're looking for a new flat, location is the most important thing to consider.
5 I went to the cinema with Elena and her new boyfriend, but it was horrible being there with them when they just wanted to be alone.
6 I think that doctors sometimes go too far in their attempts to control what happens in our lives.
7 We're still not ready to decide, so we need to try to delay things a bit and not sign the contract yet.

48.3 **Complete each dialogue with an idiom from the opposite page.**

1 A: Have you seen this email? I don't have time to do all of this extra work!
B: I know, I know. Just .... for now. There's nothing we can do about it.
2 A: I really like him. Why won't he answer any of my texts?
B: Maybe he's just ....
3 A: The new mayor seems fair and honest, doesn't he?
B: Yes, he's promised not to ....
4 A: I don't think we should take any risks or experiment.
B: No, much better to ....
5 A: I think we need a new plan to improve sales and increase profits.
B: Yes, it's definitely time we ....

48.4 **Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.**

1 I'm fed up with him treating me as if I were stupid. [FOOL]
2 When people ask how the interview went, just answer calmly. [COOL]
3 I think he behaves dishonestly because he enjoys tricking people. [GAMES]
4 Some businesses behave dishonestly just to make more money. [DIRTY]

49 Half

A Meaning 'not full' or 'not complete'

In a number of idioms, *half* conveys the idea of something not being complete or full. For example, if you **listen** to something **with half an ear,** you are not fully concentrating on it:
I was **listening** to the radio **with half an ear** as I cooked dinner.
Similarly, you might watch something **with half an eye**.

If something is described as a **half-baked scheme** (informal), it has not been thought through fully:
This is another **half-baked scheme** of the government. They haven't considered any of its implications.

Half-measures are actions that will achieve only part of what they are intended to achieve:
There can be no **half-measures** when confronting this serious problem.

To **have half a mind to** do something is to think that you might do something (though you probably won't), often because someone or something has annoyed you:
I can't believe my boss said that! **I've half a mind to** just walk out of the office and never come back.
Note that I've **a good mind to** is an alternative form of this idiom. **See Unit 57 for more idioms with** ***mind*****.**

If someone **doesn't know the half of it** (informal), they know a little about something that happens, especially something bad, but they do not know everything about it:
His mother thought she knew all about what happened when he was in Spain, but she **doesn't know the half of it**.

If you **meet someone halfway**, you do some of the things that someone would like you to do in order to show that you want to reach an agreement or improve your relationship:
I didn't want to spend a week at the conference, but I decided to **meet my manager halfway** and agreed to go for a couple of days.

B *Half* as emphasis

Read these conversations and note the emphatic idioms.
All of the idioms in this section are informal.

A: Did you enjoy the party last night?
B: **Not half**! [said to agree emphatically]

A: It **isn't half** busy in here! [is very]
B: You're right. Let's go somewhere less crowded.

A: It's important to keep a positive attitude when you're recovering from an operation.
B: Yes, they say that**'s half the battle.** [is the most difficult part of the process]

A: That was **a** game **and a half**, wasn't it! [something very special, surprising or that took a long time]
B: Yes, it was fantastic!

A: Would you like to visit Canada again?
B: **Given half a chance**, I'd move there tomorrow. [if I had the opportunity]

A: Rachel is always correcting the teacher, isn't she?
B: Yes, she's **too clever by half**. [confident and smart in an annoying way]

Exercises

49.1 **Complete each idiom from A opposite.**

1 Whoever thought up such a stupid, half-.................................... scheme?
2 I know we can't agree to all their requests, but I'd like to .... them halfway if possible.
3 I spent the evening reading the newspaper and watching TV with half an ....
4 I've half a .... to tell him exactly how unkind I think he's being!
5 They'll never solve the problem if they only try half-....................................
6 The company is in very serious trouble. It's probably just as well that most of our employees don't .... the half of it.

49.2 **Correct the mistakes in these idioms.**

1 Amy was doing a crossword and listening to the radio with half her ear.
2 Giving half a chance, I'd leave my job and stay at home with the children.
3 We had a really good plan, but Sophie pointed out all the things that were wrong with it. I find her just too clever in half.
4 Writers say that coming up with a good idea for a novel is half a battle.
5 I've the good mind to write a letter of complaint to your manager.
6 I'm a perfectionist. I have no time for half-measurements.
7 I know it's hard to compromise, but you should try to join him halfway.

49.3 **Complete each dialogue with an idiom from the opposite page.**

1 Sam: Pat's little brother seems very confident, doesn't he?
Ben: He's .... in my opinion!
2 Daisy: Our new boss is really good-looking, isn't he?
Laura: .... !
3 Katy: Would you give up your job if you won the lottery?
Mark: ...., I'd leave tomorrow, lottery or no lottery!
4 May: It .... hot in here!
Tim: Yes, it's boiling!
5 Ana: What a fantastic dinner they gave us!
Rob: Yes, it was a meal ...., wasn't it?
6 Lisa: Our boss has no idea what we get up to while he's away, does he?
Meg: No, he ....
7 Ali: We need to stay focused if our business is going to succeed.
Jamie: Yes, I'm sure that's ....

49.4 **Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.**

1 It's extremely noisy here – shall we go somewhere quieter?
2 Having a clear structure and plan for your essay is the most important thing.
3 It'll be to management's advantage to come to a compromise with the union.
4 There was a lot of bad behaviour on the school trip, but the teachers didn't find out about everything that happened.
5 Well, that was certainly an extremely long walk!

50 Two

A People in pairs

Read these problems from an online problem page and note the informal idioms in the responses.

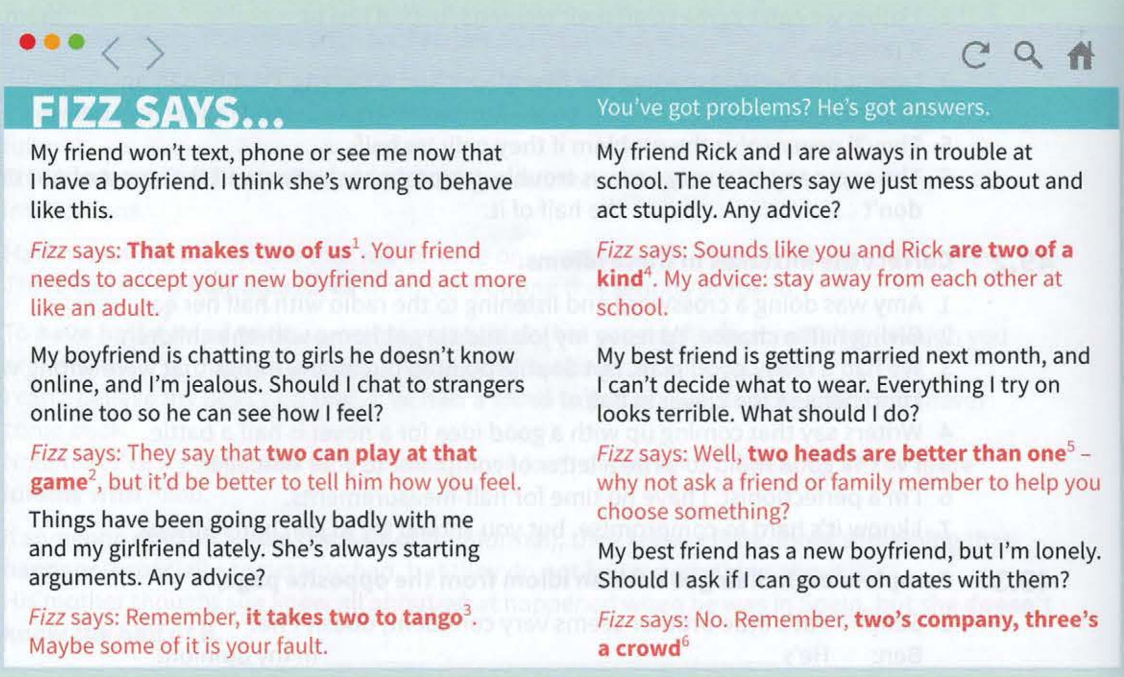

FIZZ SAYS...

You've got problems? He's got answers.

My friend won't text, phone or see me now that I have a boyfriend. I think she's wrong to behave like this.

Fizz says: **That makes two of us**[1]. Your friend needs to accept your new boyfriend and act more like an adult.

My boyfriend is chatting to girls he doesn't know online, and I'm jealous. Should I chat to strangers online too so he can see how I feel?

Fizz says: They say that **two can play at that game**[2], but it'd be better to tell him how you feel.

Things have been going really badly with me and my girlfriend lately. She's always starting arguments. Any advice?

Fizz says: Remember, **it takes two to tango**[3]. Maybe some of it is your fault.

My friend Rick and I are always in trouble at school. The teachers say we just mess about and act stupidly. Any advice?

Fizz says: Sounds like you and Rick **are two of a kind**[4]. My advice: stay away from each other at school.

My best friend is getting married next month, and I can't decide what to wear. Everything I try on looks terrible. What should I do?

Fizz says: Well, **two heads are better than one**[5] – why not ask a friend or family member to help you choose something?

My best friend has a new boyfriend, but I'm lonely. Should I ask if I can go out on dates with them?

Fizz says: No. Remember, **two's company, three's a crowd**[6]

[1] we have the same opinion about a situation [2] you can hurt that person in the same way they hurt you
[3] both people are responsible for the bad situation [4] are very similar in character [5] it is better to have two people trying to solve the same problem [6] it's better that two people in a romantic situation should be alone

B Other idioms with *two*

Young people these days just **put / stick two fingers up at**[1] authority.
School tests **cut both / two ways**[2]: they let teachers monitor progress, but they also prevent teachers from teaching freely.
Beata **knows a thing or two about**[3] local history – let's ask her.
Anger and frustration are **two sides of the same coin**[4].

[1] show that they are angry or have no respect (informal) [2] have positive and negative effects
[3] knows a lot about (informal) [4] two different aspects of the same problem

C Other *two* idioms for people and things

Don't ask me to dance – I**'ve got two left feet**[1]!
When my parents first got married, they **didn't have two pennies to rub together**[2].
Let's ask Mr Ross for a donation to the club. He**'s not short of a bob or two**[3].
Mobile phones are **two a penny**[4] these days. In the 1980s, few people had one.
When he heard he'd passed all his exams, he was **like a dog with two tails**[5].
Gloria and Manuela are **like two peas in a pod**[6] – you can tell they're sisters.
Anna's so arrogant. She needs to **be brought down a peg or two**[7].

[1] am a very bad dancer [2] were very poor [3] is quite rich (informal) [4] very common [5] very happy
[6] very similar [7] have something happen to her to show her she is not as good as she thinks she is

Language help

Many idioms are informal. The ones marked *informal* here are particularly informal. Always make a special note about formality, and be careful not to use very informal idioms in formal writing.

Exercises

50.1 Complete each idiom from A opposite.

1 Lois told our boss that I left work early yesterday, so I told the boss that she's looking for a new job. Two can ....
2 The director and department head are both very arrogant. They're two
....
3 You hate meetings and I hate meetings, so that makes ....
4 When a couple breaks up, it is hardly ever the fault of just one person. It takes
....
5 Lily, can you help me with this? Two heads ....
6 I'm not going to the restaurant with Matt and Emily. I can see they want to be alone. Two's
....

50.2 Read these statements and answer the questions.

Tony: No, sorry. Ask someone else. I've got two left feet.

Amy: My cousin has just bought an amazing new house. She's not short of a bob or two.

Lotta: Sam has been like a dog with two tails since he got that new job.

Adam: I just don't have two pennies to rub together these days.

Who is …
1 short of money?
2 a bad dancer?
3 talking about someone who has a lot of money?
4 talking about someone who is feeling very happy?

50.3 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1
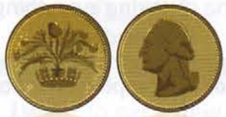
2
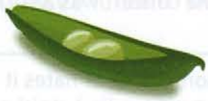
3
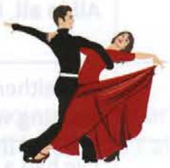
4
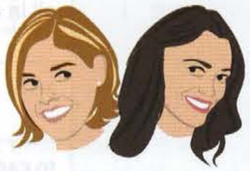

50.4 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 Richard is knowledgeable on the subject of finance. [THING]
2 Losing the race made him realise he wasn't as good as he thought. [PEG]
3 A lot of kids nowadays disrespect the police and do what they want. [FINGER]
4 Political power has positive and negative effects: it enables people to change things, but it tempts them to become corrupt too. [CUT]
5 Einstein saw time and space as two aspects of the same phenomenon. [COIN]
6 Satnav systems in cars are very common these days. [PENNY]

51 All

A Having a chat

Clare: You look tired, Ella. Is everything OK?

Ella: It's just our new neighbours. They come and go **at all hours**[1] of the day and night. I don't know how my husband manages to sleep through it. But **that's him all over**[2] – he sleeps really heavily, but I wake up each time they come in or out. Last night, they woke me up seven times, **all told**[3]!

Clare: He sounds like my husband! Once he's asleep, the house could be burning down **for all he cares**[4]. Anyway, can't you speak to your neighbours about it?

Ella: I've tried, and they're **all smiles**[5]. They apologise and say it won't happen again. It gets better for a day or two, but then it goes back to how it was. But how about you? Have you fully recovered from your operation?

Clare: Almost, but I won't **get the all-clear**[6] to go back to work for another couple of weeks, I don't think.

Ella: Oh well. **All in good time**[7]! It won't be too long before **it's all systems go**[8] again.

[1] at all sorts of unusual times [2] that's typical of him (informal) [3] in total [4] and it wouldn't bother him [5] unexpectedly friendly and pleasant [6] get official permission, usually medical [7] you just have to be patient [8] everything is busy

B Other idioms with *all*

idiom	example	meaning
all in all	**All in all,** I think the concert was a success.	taking everything into consideration
all or nothing	Tim either loves something or hates it – it's **all or nothing** with him.	completely or not at all
to cap it all	I've had a really stressful week, and **to cap it all** I've got to work over the weekend.	in addition to all the other bad things that have happened
in all but name	Alice runs the business **in all but name.**	existing as a fact, but not officially described that way
an all-time high / low	Share prices reached **an all-time high / low** yesterday.	a record high / low point
be all in the mind	His doctor told him that he isn't really ill – his symptoms **are all in the mind.**	are imagined; not physically real
be all things to all men	The show would have been better if it hadn't tried to **be all things to all people.**	please everyone even when this is not possible
all-singing, all-dancing	There's a new **all-singing, all-dancing** version of the software, but it's expensive.	ambitious and modern, with lots of special features

Exercises

51.1 Complete each idiom from A opposite with one word.

1 get the all-..........
2 be all ....
3 all systems ....
4 .... all she cares
5 at all ....
6 all in .... time
7 all ....
8 that's him all ....

51.2 Complete each sentence with an idiom from 51.1. You may need to change the form of the verb.

1 The office never stops. It's .... from 8 am to 6 pm.
2 There were 18 of us for dinner, ...
3 Don't be in such a hurry to pass your driving test. .... !
4 My sister isn't interested in what I'm doing. I could be homeless ....
5 Stefan went out to celebrate .... from his doctor.
6 Some parents allow their children to come home .... of the day and night.
7 My brother's really forgetful, so I'm not surprised he forgot your birthday. .... !
8 My dad was really grumpy this morning, but .... now.

51.3 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 There are over a hundred thousand books in the library, all ☐ a high.
2 The new government is trying to be all things to all ☐ b smiles.
3 He claims that he is the boss of his company in all but ☐ c told.
4 She's said some terrible things about me, but to my face she's all ☐ d nothing.
5 The banks raised interest rates yesterday to an all-time ☐ e name.
6 You can't give up smoking slowly – it has to be all or ☐ f people.

51.4 Choose the correct idiom.

1 I want to get a new [all-time high / all-singing, all-dancing / all-clear] tablet.
2 I was late for work, I argued with my friend, and [in all but name / all in good time / to cap it all], my bike got stolen.
3 She's the head of the school [all in all / all or nothing / in all but name].
4 They're trying to be [all things to all people / all told / at all hours], but it's an impossible aim.
5 The atmosphere at work seems to be at [an all-time low / all or nothing / all systems go].
6 I've got 13 uncles, [in all but name / all told / all smiles].

51.5 Correct the six mistakes with idioms in this email.

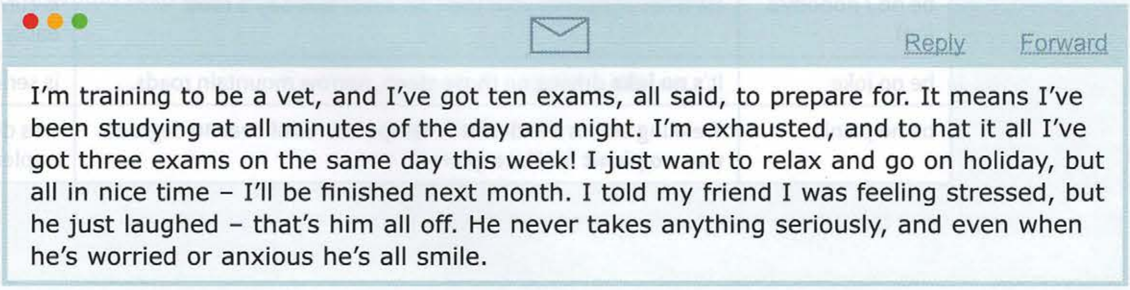

I'm training to be a vet, and I've got ten exams, all said, to prepare for. It means I've been studying at all minutes of the day and night. I'm exhausted, and to hat it all I've got three exams on the same day this week! I just want to relax and go on holiday, but all in nice time – I'll be finished next month. I told my friend I was feeling stressed, but he just laughed – that's him all off. He never takes anything seriously, and even when he's worried or anxious he's all smile.

52

No

A Conversational expressions using *no*

I'll be home **in next to no time**[1].

I found **no end of**[2] bargains in the sales.

It'd help me **no end**[3] if you did the shopping.

She was spending money **like there was no tomorrow**[4].

You must come to my party.
I **won't take no for an answer**[5].

No prizes for guessing[6] who arrived last.

Let's ask her now. **No time like the present**[7].

Go and wash your hands. **No ifs and buts**[8].

I'll help you. **No strings attached**[9], I promise.

Don't believe their promises. **There's no such thing as a free lunch**[10].

Some parts of the city are **no-go areas**[11] at night.

He's not phoned or emailed, but **no news is good news**[12].

She told me **in no uncertain terms**[13] that she thought I was making a foolish mistake.

[1] very quickly [2] lots of [3] very much [4] quickly [5] won't let you refuse to come [6] it's obvious
[7] now is the perfect time [8] do it without arguing (usually used to a child) [9] there'll be no unpleasant or inconvenient demands [10] if someone gives you something, they always expect something in return
[11] dangerous places [12] we'd hear something if there were a problem [13] strongly and directly

B *No* for dramatic effect

Note these idioms with *no*. In each one, the idiom is used in place of a more direct word or expression. For example, *Rome is no ordinary city* actually means *Rome is an extraordinary city*.

idiom	example	meaning
be no oil painting	Lottie is a beautiful woman, but her daughter **is no oil painting.**	is not pretty
be no spring chicken	She loves windsurfing and paragliding, even though she**'s no spring chicken.**	is not young any more
be no / nobody's fool	He'll never believe your lies – he**'s no / nobody's fool.**	is clever and not easily deceived
be no joke	It**'s no joke** driving on those steep, narrow mountain roads.	is serious or difficult
be no picnic	Trekking across the desert in temperatures of over 40 degrees **was no picnic** for the explorers.	was difficult and unpleasant

Exercises

52.1 When would you use the idioms in the box? Match the idioms with the situations.

I won't take no for an answer!
Go at once – no ifs and buts!
No time like the present!
There's no such thing as a free lunch!
No news is good news!
No strings attached – I promise!

1 Someone tells you about an email they received promising them a free dream holiday.
2 You are determined that someone will accept your invitation to dinner.
3 A friend asks you when to do something. You think they should do it immediately.
4 You want to reassure a friend that you won't ask anything in return for taking them to an expensive restaurant.
5 You want your child to go to bed immediately.
6 You want to reassure a friend who is worried that she hasn't heard from her teenage daughter who is travelling round Australia.

52.2 Read these statements and answer the questions.

1 Richard said it was no picnic for someone of his age to get used to a new job.
Was it easy or difficult for Richard when he started his new job?
2 Lena is very nice, but she's no oil painting.
Is Lena pretty?
3 John is very good at squash, even though he's no spring chicken.
Is John still a young man?
4 People often laugh at Georgie, but she's nobody's fool.
How easy would it be to deceive Georgie?
5 Luke's boss told him in no uncertain terms that he'd be dismissed immediately if he didn't work hard enough.
How direct was Luke's boss with his threats?
6 It's no joke trying to bring up a family on the minimum wage.
How easy is it to look after a family if your only income is the minimum wage?

52.3 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 There's no such thing as a free gift.
2 She loves going shopping and spending like there's no future.
3 We were told in no uncertain words that we must always be punctual for work.
4 He said he would lend me €2,000 with no strings involved.
5 He's a very good squash player, even though he's no spring onion.
6 The new housing development caused no finish of problems.

52.4 Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.

1 The town was full of people partying madly on New Year's Eve.
2 You won't be surprised when I tell you who won the cookery competition.
3 The journey was very easy, and we got to our destination very quickly.
4 There are lots and lots of places to eat in our town.
5 The police have declared the zone a dangerous place.
6 It would help your grandma a lot if you cut the grass for her.

53 Hand

A Positive situations

In these comments, the speakers use an idiom to repeat and sum up what they say.

He was the only candidate for the job, and he got it. It **was handed to him on a plate**[1].

Let's ask Ellie to be club president as she has so much experience. She**'s an old hand at**[4] running organisations.

Our team played well from the start, and we soon **had the upper hand**[2].

Laura's opponent in the badminton final played badly, so Laura **won hands down**[5].

I know she's arrogant, but she *has* broken three world records. **You have to hand it to her**[3]!

He's a great comedian. He **had** the audience **eating out of the palm of his hand**[6].

[1] he got it very easily and did not have to work for it [2] gained power and control [3] you have to admire what she did, even if you don't admire everything about her [4] is very experienced at [5] won very easily [6] had complete control of them (You can also say he had the audience 'in the palm of his hand'.)

B Negative situations

Refusing to speak to your uncle when he has been so generous to you is **biting the hand that feeds you**. [treating somebody badly who helps you in some way, often by giving you money]

I'd like to pay you more, but **my hands are tied**. [I'm not free to do what I'd like to do]

The minister's accidental reference to tax increases in an interview **played into** the opposition's **hands**. [unintentionally gave them an advantage]

The government have rejected **out of hand** the allegation that torture has been used in prisons. [completely]

If you **lay a hand on** me, I will report you to the police. [hurt or physically attack]

He lost his job, then his house was flooded. Some people **are dealt a lousy hand**. [are very unlucky in life]

They gave their opponents an advantage by naming the team before the final. They shouldn't have **shown their hand** so early. [told people their plans when they were a secret before]

Very few people supported her. You **could count them on the fingers of one hand**. [they were very small in number]

C Other idioms with *hand*

If you **give someone a big hand**, you applaud them by clapping.

If you **hand over the reins to** someone, you give the power you had (for example, over a business or an organisation) to another person.

If you say 'Her children **are off her hands** now. One is married and the other is at university', you mean she is not responsible for them any more.

If you just **sit on your hands**, you do nothing about a problem that needs to be solved.

If you say 'I know I have a map of Dublin somewhere, but I **can't lay my hands on it** at the moment', you mean you can't find it.

If you ask someone to **put their hand on their heart** and tell you something, you ask them to tell you something truthfully.

Exercises

53.1 **Complete each idiom from A opposite.**

1 He doesn't know anything about business, but he's made a success of his Internet company – you have to .... him.
2 In the tennis final, Edward Roxley had the .... for the entire match and won easily.
3 Katarina is always complaining that a lot of children with rich parents have everything handed to them ....
4 We scored 230 points. No other team got more than 120, so we won the competition ....
5 What a brilliant speaker! She had everyone eating .... of her hand.
6 Adam is an .... at dealing with lawyers – he used to be one himself!

53.2 **Correct the mistakes in the idioms in these news cuttings.**

1 By publishing their tax plans a year before the election, the opposition have shown hand too early.

2 Mr Mills has gone right into the hands of his critics by admitting that he made errors in the past.

3 You can count on your fingers of one hand the number of times this government has done anything to help the poor.

4 In court, the accused said he had never laid his hand on anyone and denied the charges.

5 The minister claimed that her hand was tied by European regulations, and that she could not act to change the situation.

6 The minister of education rejected out off hand the claim that small schools would be closed.

53.3 **Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.**

1 I think you've been dealt ☐
2 It's crazy to bite ☐
3 My sister feels relieved that her kids are ☐
4 If you do that, you'll play ☐
5 You mustn't expect things to be handed ☐
6 You've got everyone eating ☐

a into the hands of your enemies.
b off her hands and are independent.
c out of the palm of your hand.
d a lousy hand. You've been unlucky.
e the hand that feeds you.
f to you on a plate.

53.4 **What would you say in these situations? Use an idiom from the opposite page in your answer.**

1 You are the chairperson of an informal lecture. The guest speaker, Professor Ward, has given a wonderful lecture, and you want everyone to applaud her.
2 Someone asks if they can borrow your dictionary. You know you have one somewhere, but you can't find it at the moment. Explain.
3 Tell your colleagues that you think you should all do something positive about a bad situation instead of doing nothing.
4 You have been the secretary of a sports club for ten years. Tell the other members that you are ready to pass the job to someone else.
5 Your friend says they have never told a lie. Ask them if they would swear this is the truth.

Over to you

Make a special page in your vocabulary notebook for *hand* idioms and see how many you can collect in one month. Check their meanings in a dictionary if you are not sure.

54 Heart

A People and personalities

In these conversations, the second speaker uses an idiom to repeat and sum up what the first speaker says.

A: She's always dreamt of being a ballet dancer, hasn't she?
B: Yes, it's been **her heart's desire** ever since she was three years old.

A: She sometimes seems a bit rude, but she's very kind really.
B: I know. She's **got a heart of gold**, hasn't she?

A: The teacher is only strict with his students because he thinks it will help them.
B: That's right. He only **has their best interests at heart**.

A: Only the coldest, most unfeeling person could fail to be moved by such a sad story.
B: I agree. You'd have to **have a heart of stone** not to be upset by it.

A: The movement wants to attack our society's most important values.
B: That's right. It aims to **strike at the heart of** freedom and democracy.

A: I don't want to go to her party, but it would be unkind not to, don't you think?
B: Yes, I do**n't have the heart to** say no.

A: Was Tania very upset when she told you about Henry leaving?
B: Yes, she certainly was. She **cried her heart out**!

A: I feel so sorry for everyone who lost their homes in the flood.
B: Me too. **My heart goes out to** them.

A: Jo says she's exhausted after going on that luxury cruise.
B: **My heart bleeds** for her! [I don't feel sorry for her at all; this idiom is often used ironically to mean the opposite, but is sometimes used in a non-humorous way, e.g. 'My heart bleeds for the victims of the tragedy.']

B Feelings

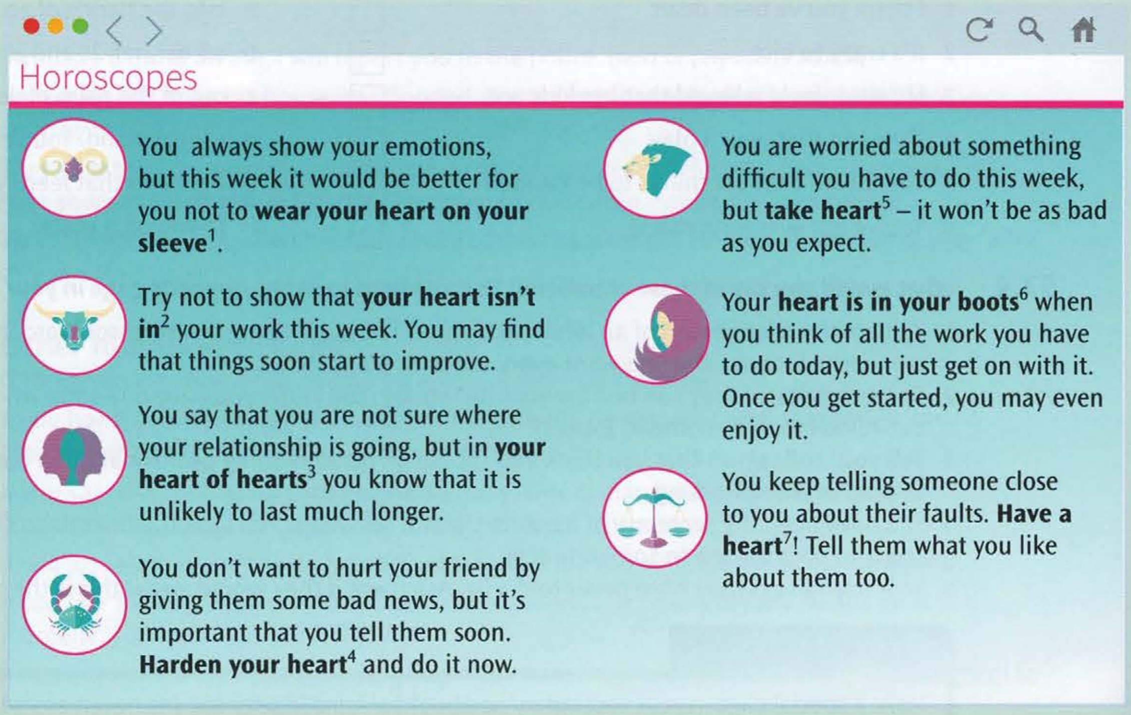

Horoscopes

You always show your emotions, but this week it would be better for you not to **wear your heart on your sleeve**[1].

Try not to show that **your heart isn't in**[2] your work this week. You may find that things soon start to improve.

You say that you are not sure where your relationship is going, but in **your heart of hearts**[3] you know that it is unlikely to last much longer.

You don't want to hurt your friend by giving them some bad news, but it's important that you tell them soon. **Harden your heart**[4] and do it now.

You are worried about something difficult you have to do this week, but **take heart**[5] – it won't be as bad as you expect.

Your **heart is in your boots**[6] when you think of all the work you have to do today, but just get on with it. Once you get started, you may even enjoy it.

You keep telling someone close to you about their faults. **Have a heart**[7]! Tell them what you like about them too.

[1] make your feelings obvious [2] you are not interested in [3] in your true, most secret thoughts
[4] don't let your feelings stop you [5] don't be anxious or afraid [6] you feel unhappy [7] be kind

Exercises

54.1 **Look at A opposite. Choose the correct answer.**

1 If someone is very kind to others, do they have a) a heart of stone or b) a heart of gold?
2 If your heart bleeds for someone, does this always mean you feel sorry for them? a) Yes b) No
3 If you cry your heart out, are you a) shouting or b) sobbing?
4 If someone has your best interests at heart, are they concerned about a) your general well-being or b) your finances?
5 Is your heart more likely to go out to someone who is a) suffering or b) very successful?
6 Are you more likely to say 'I don't have the heart to' do something a) pleasant or b) unpleasant?

54.2 **Correct the five mistakes with idioms in this post on an online problem page.**

> I've been offered a job that all my friends and family think I should take. The problem is that in my heart of heart, I really don't want it. It's always been my heart's wish to leave this city and work abroad, but I don't get the heart to tell my family this, as I know they'll be upset. I know you will tell me to keep heart and be strong, but I really don't want to hurt them. After all, I know they have my best interests by heart. What should I do?

54.3 **Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.**

1 Don't expect so much of him – he's only four! Be kind to him!
2 You'll only get hurt if you make your feelings so obvious.
3 He felt very miserable as he thought about the difficult week ahead.
4 You know your parents want what is best for you.
5 He showed her round the city, but she could tell that he was not really interested in it.

54.4 **Complete the crossword.**

Across

3 Karl knew he hadn't studied enough, and his heart was in his .... as he entered the exam room.
6 So you only have two cars now, not three? My heart .... for you.
7 He's trying to be enthusiastic, but you can tell his heart isn't really .... it.
9 Rosa was frightened, but she .... her heart and entered the room.
10 When I saw the film about the refugees, my heart .... out to them, and I had to do something to help.

Down

1 Kasia didn't have the heart .... refuse to help her little brother.
2 The article strikes .... the heart of the problem when it talks about child poverty.
4 You always know how Daniela feels – she wears her heart on her ....
5 Few people in life are lucky enough to achieve their heart's ....
8 .... heart, Irma! Lots of people fail their driving test the first time.

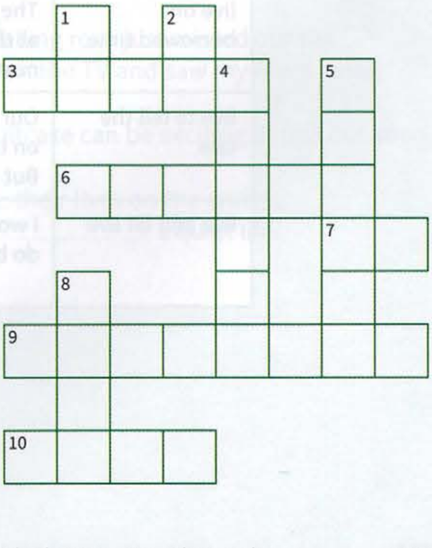

55 Life and live

A Idioms with *life*

Lucy: Did you have a good holiday in New Zealand?

Sophie: Yes, thanks. We **had the time of our life**[1]! Did I tell you I bumped into my next-door neighbour there? I **got the shock of my life**[2]!

Lucy: What a surprise! So, what did you do on holiday?

Sophie: We did lots of sailing, and my husband even went bungee jumping.

Lucy: Wow! That'd **scare the life out of me**[3].

Sophie: Me too. There's no way I'd **risk life and limb**[4] like that. Anyway, we had some friends round last night, and he **was the life and soul of the party**[5], telling them all about his bungee jump. He claims he **came within an inch of his life**[6] doing it!

Lucy: Oh dear!

Sophie: Still, we both feel we've **got a new lease of life**[7].

Lucy: Oh, I'd love to go travelling and **see life**[8]! I'm going to **make** my husband's **life a misery**[9] until he agrees that we can go to Canada. I've always wanted to go there.

Sophie: Do you think he'll agree?

Lucy: Of course. He'd **do anything for a quiet life**[10]!

[1] enjoyed ourselves very much
[2] was very shocked
[3] frighten me very much
[4] do something physically dangerous
[5] was the centre of attention
[6] nearly died
[7] become more energetic and active; can also be used to describe objects or places as seeming like new again
[8] experience different, often unexpected things
[9] make things difficult for someone, e.g. by talking about something all the time
[10] agree to anything to avoid problems

B Idioms with *live*

idiom	example	meaning
be / live in a dream world	He**'s living in a dream world** if he thinks he'll become a famous pop star.	has unrealistic hopes (usually used in continuous form)
live a charmed life	James has **lived a charmed life**; everything he does works out well.	been very lucky in life
live a lie	You must tell her you're married – you can't go on **living a lie**.	living dishonestly by pretending to be something that is not true
live out of a suitcase	After a month sleeping on a friend's floor, Becky is tired of **living out of a suitcase**.	not having a permanent place to live
live on borrowed time	The government is **living on borrowed time** at the moment and is unlikely to survive the next election.	existing longer than expected
live to tell the tale	Our walking holiday was awful! We got lost on the mountains, and it rained all the time. But at least we **lived to tell the tale**.	successfully dealt with a difficult or frightening experience
live and let live	I wouldn't want to have as many pets as they do but, hey, **live and let live**!	accept how others live and behave, even though it is different from your way of life

Exercises

55.1 Look at A opposite. Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 Mum finally said I could go out – she'd do ☐
2 When he retired, Steve got ☐
3 The children had the time ☐
4 That film scared the life ☐
5 Firefighters risk life ☐
6 Melanie is always the life ☐
7 He threatened to make her life ☐
8 Ana got the shock of ☐

a a misery if she spoke to the police.
b and soul of the party.
c her life when she saw the snake.
d anything for a quiet life.
e of their lives at the party.
f and limb every day to help others.
g out of me!
h a new lease of life.

55.2 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 We were within a mile of our lives when the lightning struck the tree beside us.
2 I don't like cycling to work. I feel like I'm risking life and legs in all that traffic.
3 The operation has given my grandmother a new licence of life.
4 Taking your final exams won't be easy, but I'm sure you'll live to tell the news.
5 Clare felt the shock of her life when she saw the police officer at her door.
6 Some people find living out of some luggage away from home very stressful.
7 The company chairman is living on lent time after the latest fall in profits.
8 Lewis is really shy and isn't usually the life and heart of the party.

55.3 Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.

1 Your life will be based on deceit if you don't tell him you were once in prison.
2 In this life, we have to accept people for what they are, even if they are very different from us.
3 Not many people have lived such a happy and successful life as Ed has.
4 We had a fantastic holiday in California last year.
5 Travelling is the best way to discover different things about the world.
6 The explorers faced many challenges in the Arctic but came back safely and told us all about it.
7 The sudden scream gave me a terrible fright.
8 Jess thinks she'll have a career as a model, but she's being totally unrealistic in my opinion.
9 The naughty child made things very unpleasant for his teacher.
10 The full service has made our old car feel like new again.

55.4 Complete each idiom with a preposition.

1 Ever since they lost the competition, United's coach has felt he is living .... borrowed time.
2 We were .... an inch of our lives when the falling rock just missed our car.
3 I got the shock .... my life when I switched on the TV and saw my mum being interviewed.
4 Travelling round the world living .... of a suitcase can be exciting at first but soon loses its novelty.
5 I'm sure your parents will have the time .... their lives on the cruise.
6 My dad hates confrontation. I think he'd do anything .... a quiet life!

56 Dead and death

A

Dead and *death* as the end of something or as failure

In these conversations, the second speaker uses an idiom to react to what the first speaker says.

A: I wanted to talk to you about your plan to start a hiking club.
B: I don't want to talk about it. As far as I'm concerned, that idea is now **dead and buried**[1].

A: It was a pity that house prices rose so much last year.
B: Yes. That was **the kiss of death to**[2] our plan to buy a place in the city centre.

A: Did anything happen about that scheme to build a centre for the homeless?
B: No. The city council ran out of money, and the whole plan is **dead in the water**[3].

A: I tried to buy *Zoom* magazine today but couldn't get it anywhere.
B: Oh yes. That's **as dead as a dodo**[4]. They stopped publishing it about a year ago.

A: Your committee doesn't seem to achieve much. Why is that?
B: If you want my opinion, there's too much **dead wood**[5]. We need some new people.

A: What happened to the party's manifesto for change?
B: Oh, it's **a dead duck**[6]. Everyone voted against it.

A: Many companies are struggling financially at the moment.
B: Yes. The economic recession has dealt **a death blow**[7] to many small businesses.

[1] finished or ended completely [2] event that caused our plan to fail (informal) [3] failed and will never succeed [4] not existing or popular or important any more (informal; a *dodo* is an extinct bird)
[5] members of a group who are not useful any more and who should be removed
[6] not successful or useful (informal) [7] an event that causes something to fail completely

B

Other idioms with *dead* and *death*

If you are **dead to the world**, you are in a deep sleep.

If you are **sick to death** of something, you are annoyed by it because you have experienced it for too long. (You can also say 'bored *or* worried to death'.)

If something is **a fate worse than death** (humorous), it is the worst thing that can happen to you.

If someone endures **a living death**, they have a life so full of suffering that it would be better to be dead.

If something is **a matter of life and / or death**, it is a serious situation where people might die.

If you do something **in the dead of night**, you do it in the middle of the night.

If you say something will happen **'over my dead body**!', you mean you will do everything you can to prevent it.

If you say a vehicle, a building or a machine is **a death trap**, you think it is so dangerous it could cause people to die.

If someone **is at death's door**, they are nearly dead.

Language help

There are many idioms based on *dead* and *death* in English. Make a special page for *dead / death* idioms in your vocabulary notebook and record any new ones you find.

Exercises

56.1 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 There are a lot of useless people in my office. They should sack some people. [WOOD]
2 Putting Joshua in charge was the event that caused the project to fail. [KISS]
3 His idea of building a plane and flying round the world has been abandoned. [DODO]
4 The old family quarrel has now ended completely, and they live in harmony. [BURIED]
5 The planning committee's decision was an event that caused the failure of the proposal to build the new airport. [BLOW]

56.2 Which *dead* or *death* idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1
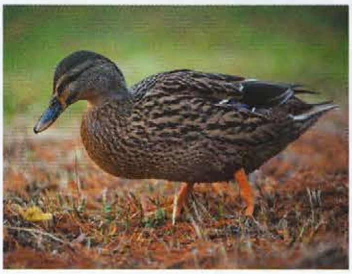

3
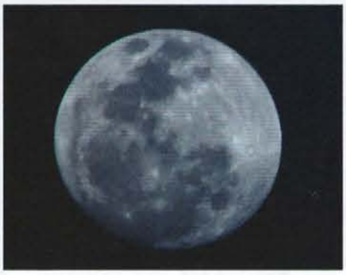

5
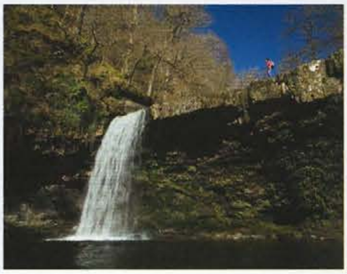

2
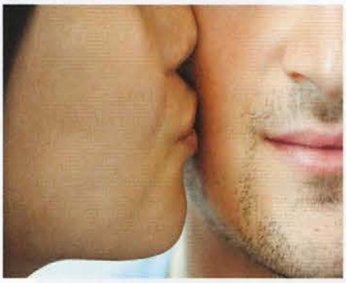

4
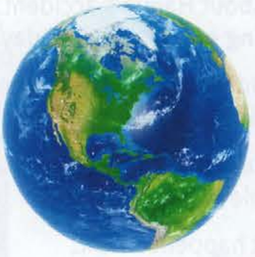

6
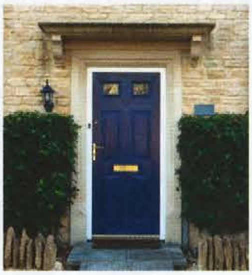

56.3 Complete each sentence with an idiom from 56.2.

1 The burglars came .... , when everyone was sleeping.
2 The bank refused to lend him the money. That was the .... to his plan to open a restaurant.
3 I was .... and didn't hear her enter the room.
4 The negotiations have broken down, and the deal is ....
5 I don't think people will pay to have their computers cleaned every three months. That idea is .... if you ask me.
6 Poor old Jesse is .... I don't think he'll last another year.

56.4 Correct the mistakes in the idioms.

1 You should only call an ambulance if it is the matter of death and life.
2 The thieves stole the painting in the death of night.
3 I am sick to the dead of people complaining all the time. It's not my fault!
4 That old car is so dangerous. It's the dead trap.
5 Having to sit next to my boring uncle at the restaurant was the fate like death.
6 Many people suffered a death in life in prison camps during the civil war.
7 The council are planning to demolish my house to build a motorway. On my dead body!
8 There are too many dead woods on the school committee. They never do anything useful.

57 Mind

A *Mind* as a noun

Mind as a noun means 'thoughts' or 'imagination'. In these conversations, the second speaker uses an idiom to repeat and sum up what the first speaker says.

A: I'm fed up with listening to the teacher and not doing anything, aren't you?
B: Yes, I'm **bored out of my mind**.

A: Emma should pass her maths exam, provided she makes an effort.
B: Yes, she certainly should, **if she puts her mind to it**.

A: The concert was absolutely spectacular, wasn't it!
B: Yes, it **blew my mind**!

A: No sane person would want to be prime minister.
B: That's true. **Nobody in their right mind** would want that responsibility.

A: He must be crazy to spend all that money on a car.
B: Yes, he's **out of his mind**!

A: I'm really tired of this boring party. Shall we go home?
B: You **read my mind** – let's go!

A: We must do something to stop your sister thinking about her operation tomorrow.
B: Let's take her to the cinema. That should **take her mind off** it.

A: I can't stop worrying about Hamid's accident.
B: I know. It's been **preying on my mind** all day.

A: I can't believe the wedding has been cancelled. They seemed so happy.
B: Yes, I can't **get my mind round** it either! (You can also say 'I can't get my head round it'.)

A: Whatever I say, he always brings the conversation back to sport!
B: I know. He **has a** terrible **one-track mind**.

A: Try to remember what happened next.
B: I'm trying to **cast my mind back**, but I just can't remember a thing.

A: Tell yourself you can do it, and you'll easily manage to swim that distance.
B: I know. It's just a question of **mind over matter**. [your thoughts influencing your body]

B *Mind* as a verb

Mind can also be a verb and is often used when warning people to be careful.

A: My dad hates bad manners, so **mind your Ps and Qs** when you meet him. [be polite – *p* stands for *please* and *q* represents the /kjuː/ sound at the end of *thank you*]
B: Don't worry! I will.

A: The pavement is very uneven here.
B: Yes, you need to **mind your step**. [walk carefully]

A: Why did you come back so late last night?
B: **Mind your own business**! [it's got nothing to do with you]

A: See you later, Grandma.
B: OK. **Mind how you go**! [take care; used when saying goodbye (informal)]

A: Nathan doesn't trust his colleagues. He thinks they're telling lies about him to his boss.
B: Yes, he needs to **mind his back** in that office. [be careful because others are trying to cause problems for him; you can also say 'watch your back']

Exercises

57.1 Are the idioms in these sentences used correctly? If not, correct them.

1 Nobody in their correct mind would lend him money again. He never pays it back.
2 Ben had always said he wanted to study law, so his mother is finding it hard to get her mind round his decision to leave university and join a rock band.
3 He's always talking about cars. I've never met anyone with such a one-way mind.
4 I'm sure you can mend your own bike if you put your mind to it.
5 What can we do to take Marco's mind out of his problems?
6 Now, I'd like you all to throw your mind back to your very first day at school.

57.2 Complete each dialogue with an idiom from the opposite page.

1 Max: I'm off now then. See you in a couple of hours.
Beth: Bye. ....
2 Harry: You've bought another pair of shoes?! How much were they?
Tina: .... !
3 Nathan: Why are you yawning?
Molly: I'm ....
4 Lisa: I'm thinking of taking a year off to cycle round the world.
Rita: You must be .... !
5 Joe: Were you able to forget about the exam today?
Lou: No, it's .... all day.
6 Police officer: Please .... and tell us exactly what happened on the night in question.
Tess: Well, it's a long time ago now ...

57.3 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of? Complete the captions.

1

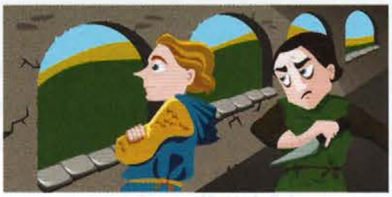

He needs to ....

2

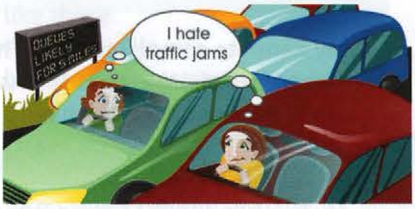

I can ....

3

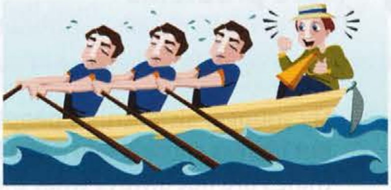

Come on – .... !

4

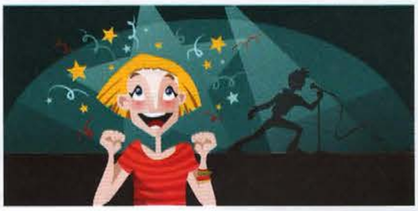

That singer .... !

57.4 Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.

1 Walk carefully on the ice – it's very slippery.
2 The actor's performance was amazing!
3 It goes without saying that you should always be very polite at an interview.
4 People who drink and drive must be totally crazy.
5 My twin brother can tell exactly what I'm thinking.
6 I'm always so bored in physics lessons!
7 Their argument worried Freya for a long time.
8 You'll find it quite easy to learn the guitar if you make a bit of an effort.

58 Hard

A Problems

Dear Bella

I've just started working in a clothes shop, but it's proving much **harder than I had bargained for**[1]. I've realised that I'm no good at **giving people the hard sell**[2], and there don't seem to be any **hard-and-fast rules**[3] for what I should be doing. I thought I would love it, but I'm finding it really **hard going**[4]. Will it get better or is this it?

Liz

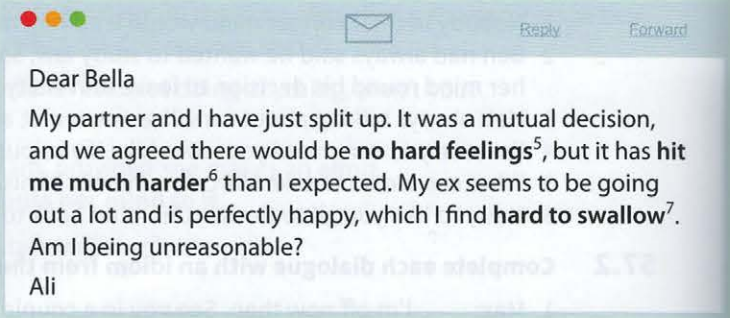

Dear Bella

My partner and I have just split up. It was a mutual decision, and we agreed there would be **no hard feelings**[5], but it has **hit me much harder**[6] than I expected. My ex seems to be going out a lot and is perfectly happy, which I find **hard to swallow**[7]. Am I being unreasonable?

Ali

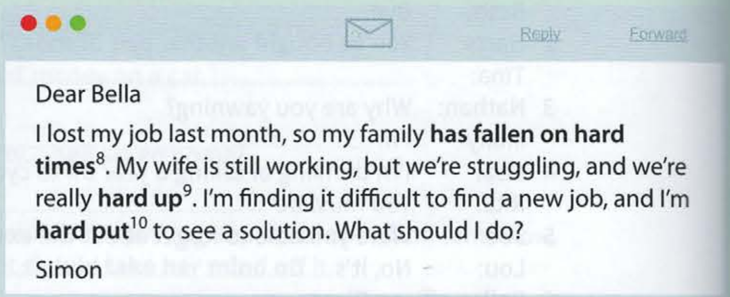

Dear Bella

I lost my job last month, so my family **has fallen on hard times**[8]. My wife is still working, but we're struggling, and we're really **hard up**[9]. I'm finding it difficult to find a new job, and I'm **hard put**[10] to see a solution. What should I do?

Simon

[1] more difficult than expected [2] trying very hard to persuade people to buy something [3] clear rules
[4] difficult and tiring [5] no anger towards each other [6] affected me much worse [7] difficult to accept
[8] are finding life difficult through lack of money [9] without much money [10] finding it difficult

B More problems

Read what six people say about their problems.

My younger sister trusts people too easily, but I guess she will **learn the hard way**[1] that things are not always what they seem.

I hate dealing with salespeople. They always try to **drive a hard bargain**[2], and I'm not very good at saying no!

I've got far too much work this week. I'll **be hard-pressed**[3] to get it all finished, and I'm worried my boss will be angry if I don't manage.

I want to go to Australia this summer, so I need to persuade my boss to let me have three weeks off work. It will be **a hard nut to crack**[4], but I'm going to try.

My flatmate complains if I ask him to help clean the flat. He always seems to **make hard work of**[5] anything I ask him to do!

My brother doesn't have a job, and he feels **hard done by**[6] because I've got more money than him. I work hard, though, so I don't think it's unfair!

[1] discover something through a difficult experience [2] demand a lot in exchange for the service given
[3] find it difficult [4] a difficult problem to solve [5] make something into a major problem
[6] unfairly treated

Exercises

58.1 **Correct the mistakes in these idioms from A opposite.**

1 I hate it when people try to give you the hard sale over the phone.
2 Her grandfather's illness has really struck her very hard.
3 I'm so glad we're friends again. No hard feels, OK?
4 Walking home in the heavy snow was really hard go.
5 I find his constant criticism of me very hard to drink.
6 Learning how to skate turned out to be much harder than Nina had bargained by.

58.2 **Read this post on an online problem page. Are these sentences true or false? If the answer is false, say why.**

> I'm feeling very hard-pressed at work at the moment. I have a long report to finish, but I'll be hard put to get it done in time. I'd love to hand in my notice, but I'm far too hard up to be able to manage without a salary even for a week or two. I guess I'm learning the hard way that money doesn't grow on trees! Can you help me? Kira

1 Kira is very busy at work.
2 She will easily meet her deadline for the report.
3 She can't afford to leave her job.
4 She is learning a fun lesson about life.

58.3 **Complete each idiom.**

1 .... on hard times
2 a hard .... to crack
3 hard to ....
4 .... a hard bargain
5 hard-and- .... rules
6 learn the hard ....
7 .... hard work of
8 feel hard .... by

58.4 **Complete each sentence with an idiom from 58.3. You may need to change the form of the verb.**

1 The truth is unpleasant, and I'm worried you'll find it ....
2 Although Jack's grandfather used to be rich, he .... and the family lived in poverty.
3 There are no .... as to how you should behave in circumstances like these.
4 I'm sure Lydia will .... when she discovers that her uncle has bought her twin sister a new sports car.
5 Children eventually .... that life is not always fair.
6 I have no idea how we're going to solve this problem. It's going to be ...., I'm sure.
7 Ruby always complains and seems to .... any little problem.
8 You want me to reduce the price by £200? You certainly ....

Over to you

Look up *hard* in the Cambridge Idioms Dictionary at http://dictionary.cambridge.org/. Make a note of three other interesting idioms that you find there. Write them down in example sentences.

59 Fall

A When things go wrong

Many idioms with *fall* refer to situations where things go wrong, people encounter problems, or where something fails. Read these news cuttings and note the idioms.

The minister of education seems to have **fallen from grace**[1]. There are rumours that the president is planning to sack her next week when ...

Occasionally, secret documents **fall into the wrong hands**[2] and national security is threatened. One such case has raised fears ...

Last year, a petition with 10,000 signatures demanding an end to the tax **fell on deaf ears**[3], so yesterday protesters took to the streets and ...

House prices have **fallen through the floor**[4] in the last six months, leaving many homeowners worrying about how ...

The village carnival **fell foul of**[5] health and safety regulations and was cancelled. A spokesperson said that ...

The minister's statement **fell short of**[6] an apology, though he did admit that some ...

The government has **fallen into the trap of**[7] creating committee after committee, thinking that will solve the problems of social ...

The global banking system seemed to **be falling apart at the seams**[8] in 2009 ...

[1] done something which made people in authority stop liking or admiring them
[2] the wrong people obtain and control them
[3] was ignored
[4] dropped to a very low level
[5] broke a law or regulation
[6] did not come up to the standard of
[7] done something which seemed like a good idea but was not wise
[8] be in a very bad state and about to fail

B Other idioms with *fall*

People were **falling over themselves to** volunteer as helpers for the president's visit. [very keen and eager]

She never seems to have to work to get what she wants. Everything just seems to **fall / drop into her lap.** [happen or be given to her without any effort on her part]

Fabio seems to have **fallen for** Elena **hook, line and sinker**! [fallen madly in love with]

My colleagues at the office played a joke on me, and I **fell for it hook, line and sinker**. [completely believed something which was not true]

I'm afraid you will have to **fall into line** and accept the company's rules and policy. [start to accept the rules of an organisation]

Here are two proverbs which include *fall*:
Pride comes before a fall. [if someone is too confident or arrogant, something bad will happen, which will show that they are not as good as they think they are]
The bigger they are / come, the harder they fall. [the more power or success someone has, the harder it will be for them to lose it]

See Unit 11 for more proverbs.

Exercises

59.1 Complete the emails with idioms from A opposite.

1

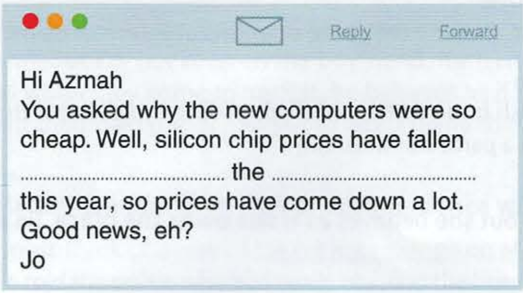

Hi Azmah

You asked why the new computers were so cheap. Well, silicon chip prices have fallen .... the .... this year, so prices have come down a lot. Good news, eh?

Jo

2

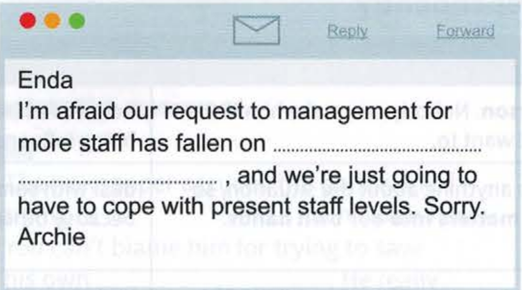

Enda

I'm afraid our request to management for more staff has fallen on ...., and we're just going to have to cope with present staff levels. Sorry.

Archie

3

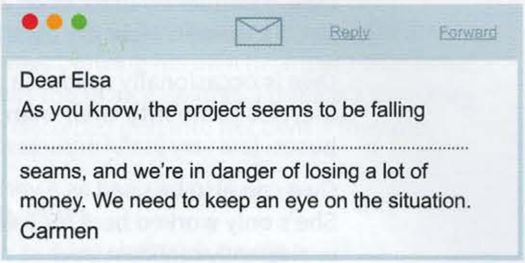

Dear Elsa

As you know, the project seems to be falling .... seams, and we're in danger of losing a lot of money. We need to keep an eye on the situation.

Carmen

4

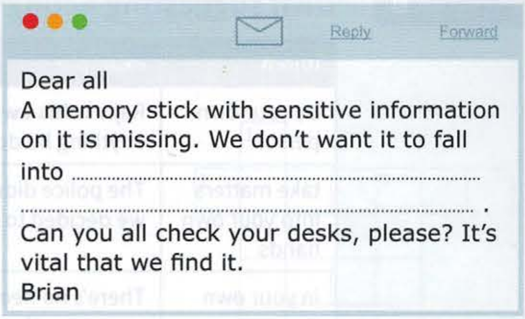

Dear all

A memory stick with sensitive information on it is missing. We don't want it to fall into .... Can you all check your desks, please? It's vital that we find it.

Brian

59.2 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 It seems that the prime minister's special adviser, Lily Sparks, is not liked or respected any more, and she is expected to resign soon. [GRACE]
2 Everyone had to accept the decision and work longer hours for the same pay. [LINE]
3 The deal broke the export regulations and had to be cancelled at the last minute. [FOUL]
4 The report is not really an outright condemnation of the government's actions, but it does contain strong criticism. [SHORT]

59.3 Complete each idiom.

1 I didn't realise she was deceiving me, and I fell for it hook, ...
2 It looks as if the whole system is falling apart ....
3 I didn't really have to do anything to get the job. It just fell ....
4 Sara may not like the new rules, but she'll just have to ....

59.4 Answer these questions.

1 What is the difference between falling for something hook, line and sinker and falling for a person hook, line and sinker?
2 What proverb could you use about someone who is over-confident and arrogant, and you suspect something bad will happen to them as a result?
3 True or false? If someone falls over themselves to do something, it means they have an accident.
4 What proverb could you use about a billionaire who lost all their money in one day and had to beg in the streets?

60 Own

A *Own* as adjective, noun and verb

Own is frequently used as an adjective:
She's **a** woman **after my own heart**. [having the same opinions or interests as me]

Own is occasionally used as a noun:
Bicycles **come into their own** in rush hour, as they end up moving much faster than cars or buses. [are very useful or successful in a particular situation]

Own can also be used as a verb:
She's only worked here for a week, but she behaves **as if she owns the place.** [in an unpleasantly confident way]

B *Own* suggesting acting independently

idiom	example	meaning
be your own person	Rajiv **is his own person**. Nobody can make him do anything he doesn't want to.	behaves as he wants to without being influenced by others
take matters into your own hands	The police didn't do anything about the situation, so we decided to **take matters into our own hands.**	deal with something ourselves because others are failing to act
in your own time	There's no need to hurry. Just give me an answer **in your own time.**	when you are ready
save your own skin	Don't expect her to support you – she's only wants to **save her own skin.**	protect herself from danger or difficulty, regardless of others
go their own ways	They've decided they can't live together any longer and are going to **go their own ways.**	separate (verb)
hold your own	Fazia is only 14, but she can **hold her own** in any adult conversation.	be as successful as anyone else

C *Own* in idioms criticising people

Pilar: Mario's always saying how wonderful he is.
Maya: I know. He never stops **blowing his own trumpet**.
Pilar: His behaviour will cause him a lot of trouble.
Maya: Yes, he's **digging his own grave**, isn't he!
Pilar: It's his own fault that he's so unpopular.
Maya: I know, it'**s of his own making.**
Pilar: Everyone thinks he's using his position to make money dishonestly.
Maya: Yes, they suspect him of **feathering his own nest**.
Pilar: The trouble is, it encourages others to use the same methods as he does.
Maya: That's right. I suppose they're trying to **play him at his own game**.
Pilar: Yes, they want to get revenge by showing him how unpleasant it is.
Maya: That's exactly it. They're trying to **get their own back**.

Language help

We always use *own* with a possessive form before it (e.g. *his own making*), not an article, e.g. *the* or *an*. The only exception to this rule is the idiom *an own goal*, e.g. 'The government's decision to raise taxes just before the election was very much **an own goal.**' [something which helped the other side rather than themselves]

Exercises

60.1 Choose the correct word to complete each idiom.

I like Tina. She's her own [*girl / person*]. In fact, she's very much a woman after my own [*heart / head*]. But I'm not keen on her boyfriend, Karl. He's always blowing his own [*trumpet / trombone*], and when they come to my flat, he behaves as if he owns the [*space / place*]. I think it's time they went their own [*roads / ways*]. In fact, I really think she'd [*come / get*] into her own if they did.

60.2 Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.

1 I must think of a way of taking my revenge on Matt for playing that trick on me.
2 He told the police who had really planned the burglary in order to get out of trouble himself.
3 Tim was smaller than the other judo players, but he was as successful as anyone else.
4 You're making trouble for yourself by putting your boss in such a difficult position.
5 If women want to succeed in politics, they have to use the same methods as men.

60.3 Complete the crossword.

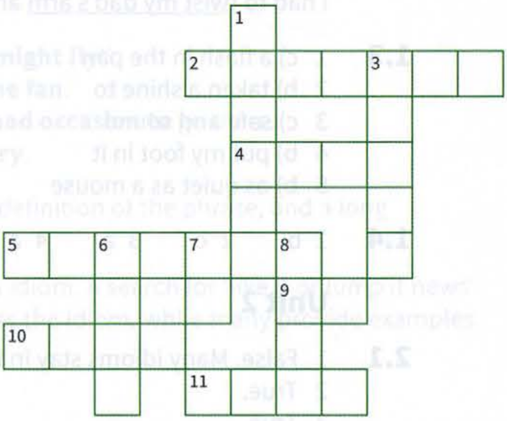

Across

2 The newspaper accused the politician of trying to .... his own nest.
4 You can't blame him for trying to save his own .... He really can't afford to lose his job.
5 You're .... your own grave by going on strike.
9 My problems may be .... my own making, but that doesn't make it any easier.
10 Just answer in your own .... There's no rush.
11 The company has managed to .... its own, despite fierce competition.

Down

1 I admire Faye for always being her own ...., even when it makes her unpopular.
3 If the town council has no plans to improve the appearance of our street, why don't we take matters into our own .... ?
6 If we want to beat our competitors, we'll have to play them at their own ....
7 Henry had never been to such a luxurious hotel before, but he walked in as .... he owned the place.
8 I'm afraid I scored an own .... when I told my boss that I didn't really need a pay rise.

Over to you

Note uses of *own* that you see in the course of your reading over the next week. In each case, think about whether it is being used ordinarily or idiomatically and write down any new idiomatic uses of *own* that you find.

Key

Unit 1

1.1 In 2009, I **set off** (phrasal verb) on a long journey. As I left my house, my neighbour shouted, '**Good luck!**' (greetings and good wishes) I didn't know **at that moment** (prepositional phrase) that I would not see him again for three years. I **boarded** the **plane** (collocation) at Heathrow, and soon it **took off** (phrasal verb) for Malaysia. When we **touched down** (phrasal verb) in Kuala Lumpur, I couldn't wait to **get off** (phrasal verb) the plane. I **took a bus** (collocation) to the **city centre** (compound) and **spent the night** (collocation) at a **youth hostel** (compound). The first person I met was someone I had been **at school** (prepositional phrase) with years ago. **'It's a small world**!' (saying or proverb) he said when he saw me.

1.2 My friend suggested that we join forces. 'There's safety in numbers,' he said. 'Let's hit the road together.' I was in two minds whether to go with him but finally decided to say yes. We travelled together for six months and had a whale of a time. We spent money like there was no tomorrow. I had to twist my dad's arm and persuade him to send me some more money so I could travel further.

1.3
1 c) a flash in the pan
2 b) taken a shine to
3 c) safe and sound
4 b) put my foot in it
5 b) as quiet as a mouse

1.4 1 b   2 c   3 a   4 a

Unit 2

2.1
1 False. Many idioms stay in frequent usage for a long time.
2 True.
3 True.
4 True.
5 False. Headline writers often play with idioms for humorous or dramatic effect, or to catch the reader's eye.
6 False. They can be found in most types of speaking and writing (although they may be more frequent in some types, such as popular journalism and informal conversation).
7 True.
8 False. Idioms are used in academic writing, although these idioms are different from typical idioms used in speech or informal writing.

2.2
1 shape
2 licking
3 stone
4 effect
5 course
6 pricked

2.3
1 go up in the world
2 lick your wounds
3 prick up your ears
4 open the door to

2.4
1 a mountain-climbing organisation
2 a boxing club
3 be patient
4 the person's conscience
5 a hi-fi company

Unit 3

3.1 1 It gives information – where necessary – about the usage of the idiom (e.g. whether it is used in a literary or an informal context), and it gives examples of the idiom in a typical context.
2 There are over 1 billion words of international English (e.g. British, American and Australian) taken from both spoken and written contexts.
3 It is informal.

3.2 1 slang (*Get off your backside* means 'stop being lazy'.)
2 formal (*Have occasion to do something* means 'need to do something'.)
3 offensive (*The shit hits the fan* means 'a situation causes a lot of trouble'.)
4 informal (*Know something inside out* means 'know everything about a subject'.)
5 literary (*Not soil your hands* means 'not become involved in something unpleasant or bad'.)
6 old-fashioned (*Send someone to Coventry* means 'refuse to speak to someone as a punishment'.)
7 humorous (*Pigs might fly* means 'there is no chance at all of something happening'.)

3.3 1 Henry will help you deal with these forms. He **knows** the system **inside out**.
2 They think he's the boss of the criminal gang, but he never **soils his hands** by committing crimes personally.
3 Joey can be so lazy. I wish he'd **get off his backside**.
4 'I won't be late to work ever again.' 'Oh yes, and **pigs might fly**!'
5 If Greg finds out what you've done, **the shit will hit the fan**.
6 I live very close to the hospital, but luckily I've never **had occasion to** go there.
7 She had lied to them, and so they **sent her to Coventry**.

3.4 At the time of writing, the Phrase Finder website gives a definition of the phrase, and a long description of its origin and history.

The search engine Google finds 20,900,00 sites using this idiom. A search for 'like it or lump it news' gets 32,400,00 results. Some of these sites directly discuss the idiom, while many provide examples of it in a range of different contexts.

3.5 SPORTS MINISTER HOPPING MAD
John Hamilton has made a name for himself by running a tight ship at the Ministry of Sport. So it was no surprise to his staff that he reportedly 'went spare' when he learnt what had been going on behind his back. Two of his leading advisors had been feathering their own nests with government money intended for young people's sports organisations. 'Such behaviour is quite beyond the pale,' said Hamilton, 'and the two people concerned have already been given the sack'.

Meaning of idioms from 'Sports Minister Hopping Mad':
hopping mad = very angry
make a name for = become famous or respected for
run a tight ship = control something firmly and effectively
go spare = be extremely angry
behind someone's back = without someone knowing
feather your own nest = dishonestly use your position to get money for yourself
be beyond the pale = be unacceptable
be given the sack = be dismissed from your job

Unit 4

4.1 1 They make a comparison.
2 In literary writing, e.g. poetry
3 Those used in literary contexts are original, and the comparison is intended to make the reader think; those used in idioms have become so much part of the language that speakers rarely still notice the original comparison.
4 It can help to make sense of the meaning of the idiom, and thinking about the image underlying the idiom may help you to learn and remember the idiom.

4.2
1 have something up your sleeve
2 get / be given your marching orders / pull rank on
3 uncharted waters
4 take centre stage

4.3
1 minefield
2 launch
3 mark
4 see
5 point, light
6 pull
7 at
8 bluff

4.4
1 Everyone else was laughing, but Katie couldn't see the joke.
2 Eva is going / getting nowhere with her research.
3 BritTel is going to join forces with SatCom to lobby the government.
4 The teacher saw red when Matt refused to do his homework.
5 The errors in the report really weren't Sam's fault, but he took / got the flak for them.
6 Tina is hoping her father will eventually see reason / sense and let her drive the family car.
7 Unfortunately, my brother's transport business was a casualty of the rise in fuel prices.
8 As the president of a major company, Ross is used to taking centre stage.

Unit 5

5.1
1 from the cradle to the grave
2 to clip someone's wings
3 the tip of the iceberg
4 out of your own pocket

5.2
1 My sister is always buying up-to-the-minute gadgets.
2 Correct.
3 My grandad's always talking about the good old days.
4 They've been engaged for six months but haven't made any plans about when they're going to tie the knot.
5 Correct.
6 Engineering isn't the kind of job that every Tom, Dick or Harry could do.

5.3
1 mountain
2 numbered
3 spirit
4 pocket
5 bear

5.4
1 You'll pass your driving test if you really want to – where there's a will, there's a way.
2 I get bored if I always do the same things at the weekend – variety is the spice of life.
3 Sh! Be quiet! There's no need to talk at the top of your voice.
4 He never saves any money. He spends whatever he has. Easy come, easy go is his motto.
5 I was so upset when I failed the exam. I cried my eyes out.
6 She's a total optimist – she always manages to look on / see the bright side.

Unit 6

6.1
1 be blown away by
2 be on the same wavelength
3 fringe benefits

6.2
1 *Fringe benefits* are extra benefits you get with a job apart from your pay, and a *fringe* is hair that hangs down over your forehead.
2 Non-digital radio stations broadcast their programmes on particular FM or AM *wavelengths*. If two people are *on the same wavelength*, they think in the same way.

3 If you are *blown away* by a performance, you are amazed and impressed because it is so good. A trumpet is an example of a *wind* instrument. A strong wind can also 'blow you away'.
4 *Part and parcel* refers to a necessary part of the job, and postmen have to deliver *parcels*.
5 Film stars *act*, and *get your act together* means to organise yourself and resolve a problem.

6.3
1 The money was burning **a hole in** my pocket.
2 Her two brothers don't see **eye to eye** and haven't spoken to each other for over a year.
3 Learning how to manage your finances is part **and parcel** of becoming an adult.
4 It's time you got **your act together** and found a job!
5 The president refused to make a decision and was accused of sitting **on the fence**.
6 My computer crashed, so I'm back to **square one** with my assignment.

6.4
1 c
2 d
3 a
4 b

Over to you *Possible answers:*
it never rains but it pours: a company that makes raincoats, umbrellas or wellington boots
fighting fit: a judo club, a boxing club, a gym
two left feet: a dance school

Unit 7

7.1
1 catch
2 fresh
3 dropped
4 bat
5 worth
6 thousand
7 throw

7.2
1 US
2 Britain
3 Britain
4 US
5 US
6 Britain
7 Britain

7.3
1 You have to pay the deposit for hiring the boat in hard cash. (British)
2 Rhiannon and her sister have always fought like cats and dogs. (US)
3 It was such a sad film / movie – I cried buckets. (US)
4 There's a lot of donkey work to be done before we can open the new restaurant. (British)
5 Having such perfect weather on holiday was the icing on the cake. (British)
6 Having to stay late at work on a holiday weekend really took the cake. (US)
7 What's happened? You look like the cat that ate the canary. (US)

7.4
1 donkey work
2 the icing / frosting on the cake
3 fight like cat and dog / like cats and dogs

Unit 8

8.1
1 You have to be prepared to go the **extra** mile if you want to get promoted.
2 Correct.
3 This shampoo is great – it does exactly what it **says** on the tin.
4 I'd never share an apartment with her – she'd be the flatmate **from** hell.
5 Correct.

8.2
1 Too much information
2 whatever floats your boat
3 big time
4 I'm cool with that
5 Don't even go there
6 End of

8.3 1 doesn't float my boat
2 fall off the radar
3 go the extra mile
4 big time

8.4 *Possible answers:*
1 This doesn't make sense – it would be annoying or upsetting to live next door to the neighbours from hell.
2 This doesn't make sense – being happy about something is the same as being cool with it.
3 This makes sense, as loving the painter's work is the opposite of it not floating the speaker's boat.
4 This doesn't make sense – nailing jelly to a wall means that something is hard to do; if someone is honest and open, then it is easy to see and understand their feelings and opinions.

Unit 9

9.1 1 My new dress fits **like** a glove.
2 You'll need to run **like** the wind to catch the train.
3 She's as thin **as** a rake.
4 Ana always looks as fresh **as** a daisy.
5 He drove off **like** a maniac.
6 Her mouth felt as dry **as** a bone.
7 Their son is as bright **as** a button.
8 Her hair felt as smooth **as** silk.

9.2 1 dust
2 crystal
3 thieves
4 a bone
5 mud

9.3 1 Tom and Rosa have been fighting like cat and dog recently.
2 Amy went as red as a beetroot when Lasse commented on her new dress.
3 When our teacher asks the class a difficult question, Hatsuki usually answers as quick as a flash.
4 It was early Sunday morning, and the house was as silent as the grave.
5 Emma was all over Jakob like a rash at the barbecue last week.
6 All her sisters are as poor as church mice. (Notice how this simile is made plural to match the plural subject.)
7 Caterina felt as fresh as a daisy after her shower.
8 The students in my class are great – hardworking, punctual and keen as mustard.

9.4 1 Yes, he had **a face like thunder**.
2 Yes, he's **as stubborn as a mule**.
3 Yes, he was driving **like a maniac**.
4 Yes, I've been **working like a dog**.
5 Yes, she's **as keen as mustard**.

Unit 10

10.1 black and blue
neck and neck
little by little
bumper to bumper
here, there and everywhere
give or take (Notice that we also say *give and take*, but it has a different meaning: *For a relationship to work, you need a lot of* ***give and take***. [compromise])
nook and cranny
hit and miss (*Hit or miss* is also possible and has the same meaning.)
neat and tidy
wear and tear

10.2
1 bumper to bumper
2 here, there and everywhere
3 wear and tear
4 little by little
5 nook and cranny
6 neat and tidy
7 neck and neck
8 give or take

10.3
1 'The **hustle and bustle** of market day.'
2 'He's a United supporter **through and through**.'
3 '**Heads or tails**?'
4 'Her two dogs are like **chalk and cheese**.'

10.4
1 People started to enter the room **in dribs and drabs**.
2 Jack's commitment to work **waxed and waned** throughout the year.
3 Have a few days' rest and you'll be **out and about** in no time.
4 I've told him **time after time** (also *time and time again*) not to leave his car unlocked.
5 The work required a lot of **blood, sweat and tears**, but it was worth it.
6 The whole team's been **at sixes and sevens** since Kay resigned.
7 I keep dropping things today – I'm **all fingers and thumbs**.
8 My mum and I are **like chalk and cheese**, but we get on well.

Unit 11

11.1
1 e
2 d
3 a
4 b
5 c

11.2
1 It takes two to tango.
2 It never rains but it pours.
3 All's fair in love and war.
4 Every cloud has a silver lining.
5 Rome wasn't built in a day.
6 Where there's a will, there's a way.

11.3
1 We had no tent, so we made a shelter out of branches and leaves to protect ourselves from the storm. It was a case of **necessity** is the mother of invention.
2 I'm doing three jobs at the moment to pay for my studies. Still, they say that **variety** is the spice of life!
3 I went to the gym every day for three months and felt so much fitter. It was very hard work but **no pain, no gain**.
4 I decided that bungee jumping was too dangerous and didn't go with my friends – better to be safe than **sorry**.
5 We've got ten laptops at half-price. But hurry – it's first come, first **served**.
6 Three big bills at the same time? It never **rains** but it **pours**!

11.4
1 When we got there, they had given away all the free tickets. It was a case of first **come**, first **served**.
2 Take your time and don't be impatient. Rome wasn't **built** in **a day**!
3 It's a shame you missed your flight, but at least we can spend more time together. They do say every **cloud** has a silver **lining**.
4 All my problems seem to come at the same time. It's true what they say: it never **rains but** it pours!
5 It's going to be a lot of hard work, but nothing **ventured**, nothing **gained**.
6 They are both in the wrong. It takes **two** to **tango**.

Unit 12

12.1
1 the fat lady
2 enough
3 the bright side
4 fish
5 bliss
6 after the event
7 a horse
8 it will out

12.2
1 B: No, I promise. Mum's the word.
2 B: That's not fair! Give me a break! It's only the third time this week.
3 B: Hmm. I'll believe it when I see it.

4 A: Get your skates on! We need to leave in five minutes.
5 B: Not at all. Good riddance!
6 B: Take it easy! Don't panic! I'll help you if you like.
7 B: Just give her a break. It's only her second day here.
8 B: So far, so good. But it's early days yet.
9 B: I don't know but I'm sure we'll find out. Truth will out.

12.3
1 Give me a break!
2 There are plenty more fish in the sea.
3 So far, so good.
4 It's not over until the fat lady sings.
5 Truth will out.
6 Mum's the word. Note that *mum* in this expression has nothing to do with mothers. It comes from an old word meaning 'silent'.

Over to you *Possible answers:*

Any friend of yours is a friend of mine: I like you, so I am sure I will like any friend of yours too.

Beauty is only skin deep: People who are good-looking do not always have good characters.

Money is the root of all evil: The reason people do illegal and immoral things is often money.

A: Would it be all right if I bring my friend Jack to your birthday party?
B: Of course. *Any friend of yours is a friend of mine.*

A: I'm amazed that someone so beautiful can say and do such terrible things.
B: Well, *beauty is only skin deep*, remember.

A: I just can't understand why anyone would want to set fire to their own house.
B: Well, *money is the root of all evil*. Perhaps they were hoping to claim on the insurance.

Unit 13

13.1
1 We don't receive many complaints, so we just deal with them on an **ad hoc** basis.
2 They are now the **de facto** government and will remain in power until the election results are finalised.
3 This sentence in your essay is a **non sequitur** – it's not logically connected to your previous point.
4 I could go on **ad infinitum** about the advantages of moving to the countryside.
5 Whenever a new person takes over as manager, they disturb the **status quo**, at least to some extent.
6 His lawyer claims he wasn't fully **compos mentis** when he admitted he was guilty.

13.2
1 There were no opportunities for discussion. The reform was presented as a **fait accompli**.
2 All players must be **au fait with** the rules of the game.
3 I can't come out tonight because I have to work late. Oh well, **c'est la vie**.
4 Of course I love being a movie star, but I must say that awards ceremonies are **my bête noire**.
5 So Dan has been arguing with his boss again. **Plus ça change**!
6 A lot of the parents are not very happy about the new headmaster's **laissez-faire** attitude to behaviour.

13.3
1 False. A laissez-faire approach is relaxed.
2 False. A de facto leader is a leader who has not been officially recognised as such.
3 True.
4 False. It is important not to include non sequiturs in your writing.
5 True.
6 False. If you are compos mentis, you are in control of your actions.
7 False. A fait accompli is a completed action that cannot be changed.
8 True.

Over to you *Possible answers:*

cream of the cream – the crème de la crème

The expression is used to describe the very best examples of people or things; the cream sits on top of the milk.

it does not follow – non sequitur

The expression is used to refer to a statement which does not follow on logically from what was previously said.

a done deed – a fait accompli

If a deed is done, then it cannot be changed. Note that we do also use the expression *a done deed.*

Unit 14

14.1 1 a 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 b 6 a 7 b 8 a 9 b

14.2
1 deck
2 wind
3 in
4 taken
5 high
6 board
7 storm
8 weathering

14.3
1 c
2 f
3 e
4 a
5 b
6 d

14.4
1 I try to **give** the city centre **a wide berth** on Saturdays if I possibly can.
2 Jaime's mother was **taken aback** by his decision to leave school.
3 Amy's plans to buy a new car **went by the board** when she lost her job.
4 Their relationship has been **on the rocks** for some months.
5 Asim **runs a tight ship**.
6 The cost of home insurance has risen **in the wake of** last summer's floods.
7 We were **left high and dry** when the babysitter didn't turn up.
8 I know it's been hard for you, but I'm sure you'll **weather the storm**.

Unit 15

15.1
1 warpath
2 bombshell
3 arms
4 shell
5 fighting
6 beat

15.2
shoot down in flames
baptism of fire
a flash in the pan
a battle of wills
run the gauntlet
hang / hold fire

15.3
1 hang / hold fire
2 baptism of fire
3 a flash in the pan
4 run the gauntlet
5 shot down in flames
6 a battle of wills

15.4 When Ali graduated, he decided he didn't want to **join the ranks** of commuters struggling to work every day. He wanted to set up his own online gift-ordering business so that he could work from home. He knew it was a risk but felt he would have at least **a fighting chance** of success. Initially, he and a college friend planned to start the business together. Ali had the idea and Igor, his friend, had the money to invest in the company. But then just weeks before the launch, Igor **dropped a bombshell**: he said he no longer wanted to be part of Ali's plans. Despite Ali's attempts to persuade him to **hang / hold fire** on his decision, Igor said he was no longer prepared to take the risk and was going to **beat a retreat** before it was too late. However, two weeks later Igor **stole a march** on Ali by launching his own online gift-ordering company. Ali was **shell-shocked** by this betrayal, but he soon **came out fighting**. He took Igor's behaviour as **a call to arms** and has persuaded a bank to lend him the money he needs. Ali's introduction to the business world has certainly been a **baptism of fire**, but I'm sure he will be really successful on his own.

Over to you
Here are some typical examples of sentences using these idioms.

The last thing he needed at the moment was an outraged husband *on the warpath*.

It took a while for the true magnitude of his achievement to dawn on the crowd, *shell-shocked* as they were by the defeat of their hero.

On 1 November they told us that normal Christmas arrangements would apply – that we would work for most of the holiday period – then they *dropped this bombshell* on 22 November and said we would be off for two weeks.

Freshers were obliged to *run a gauntlet* of computer software, insurance and Student Railcard salesmen and a host of banks seeking their overdrafts, before reaching the union societies' billeted in the sports hall.

Unit 16

16.1
1 go off the rails
2 run out of steam
3 do a U-turn

16.2
1 life in the slow lane
2 done a complete U-turn
3 gone off the rails
4 run out of steam
5 go / move / step up a gear
6 at / behind the wheel

16.3
1 e
2 c
3 a
4 f
5 b
6 d

16.4 1 c 2 a 3 c 4 a

Over to you *Possible answers:*
Drive someone round the bend means to annoy or irritate someone: *Be quiet! You're driving me round the bend!*

A back-seat driver is a passenger in a car who keeps giving advice to the driver that the driver has not asked for. It also means someone trying to control what happens, even though it is not their responsibility: *Even though we have a new director, the old one still seems to be a back-seat driver in the company.*

Step on it means to drive faster or to hurry up (informal). We can also say 'step on the gas', meaning put your foot on the accelerator in a car to make it go faster: *Step on it! We have to be there in five minutes!*

Put the brakes on means to slow down or stop an activity: *The government has put the brakes on airport expansion because of climate change.*

Give / get the green light means give / get permission for someone to do something or for something to happen: *The architects have been given the green light to build a new bridge over the River Handa.*

Unit 17

17.1
1 Yes, she thinks **she's the cat's whiskers.**
2 Yes, it's **a dog's life**!
3 No, I haven't got **a cat in hell's chance.**
4 Yes, he has a real **dog-in-the-manger** attitude. (Notice the use of hyphens when the idiom is used as an adjective.)

17.2
1 the elephant in the room
2 a wolf in sheep's clothing
3 straight from the horse's mouth
4 to sort (out) the sheep from the goats
5 shedding crocodile tears
6 until the cows come home

17.3 1 horse 2 leopard 3 cows 4 parrot 5 sheep, lamb

17.4
1 Don't **cry wolf** or no one will help when you really need it.
2 The minister **sheds crocodile tears** about homelessness, but does nothing about it.
3 I hate our neighbours' **dog-in-the-manger** attitude – they don't want the parking space but they won't let us have it.
4 We can discuss it **until the cows come home**, but I won't change my mind.

Over to you *Possible answers:*
A snake in the grass: someone who pretends to be your friend but is really an enemy.
A big fish in a small pond: an important person in a not very important place.
To smell a rat: to suspect something.

Unit 18

18.1
1 I wonder what is really behind the president's decision. I'm sure there's more to it than meets the **eye**.
2 Melissa is head and **shoulders** above her brother when it comes to maths.
3 I'm sure we can think of a good present for Jim if we put our **heads** together.
4 Kasia really loves getting her **teeth** into a new project.
5 You mustn't bury your **head** in the sand – problems don't go away if you ignore them.
6 It was one in the **eye** for Liliana's brother when she passed her driving test first time – it had taken him five attempts.

18.2 1 respect 2 to speak 3 starting 4 respect 5 less nice

18.3
1 f
2 d
3 h
4 c
5 b
6 a
7 e
8 g

18.4
1 **I'd give my right arm to** go to Japan with you!
2 After some **teething troubles**, the business began to do well.
3 I find it very hard to **get my tongue round** some Welsh place names.
4 I don't know why they're **pointing the finger at** me – I'm not guilty.
5 I'm not very good at maths, but my brother **has a good head for** figures.
6 I hope I'm not **treading on your toes**, but could I suggest you try a different approach?
7 Paulo's speech at the wedding **made my toes curl**!
8 I don't see how you can **keep your finger on the pulse** if you never watch TV or listen to the radio.

Unit 19

19.1
1 play / keep your cards close to your chest
2 hold all the cards
3 Monopoly money
4 the dice are loaded against (someone)
5 dicing with death
6 play your ace / play your trump card

19.2
1 I felt I was **dicing with death** riding at high speed on the back of his motorbike.
2 I **played / kept my cards close to my chest** and didn't mention that I was going to resign soon.
3 He's so rich. He spends money as if it were **Monopoly money**.
4 The barrister **played his ace / played his trump card** and revealed the final piece of evidence.
5 I wanted a job in politics, but felt **the dice were loaded against me** as I had no personal contacts in the political world.
6 Masa is so much more qualified and experienced than I am. He **holds all the cards** if we both apply for the same job.

19.3 1b Ivana 2c Jung 3d Gina 4a Joseph

19.4
1 Jin's in a very powerful position; he **holds** all the **cards**.
2 The teacher has **moved** the **goalposts** so many times that none of the students knows what the rules are any more.
3 Liam is very direct with people; he never **pulls** any **punches**.
4 What? The headteacher changed the holiday from a whole day to a half day! Poor kids! It's just not **cricket**, is it?
5 The two presidential candidates have played **hardball** recently and have made quite personal attacks on each other.
6 Advertising on TV is not the same as it was 20 years ago; it's a whole **new ball game** now.
7 Everyone felt **punch-drunk** after six hours of political debate.
8 At 10 pm on the night of the election, the president threw **in the sponge / towel** and admitted he had lost.

Unit 20

20.1
1 a Trojan horse
2 Achilles' heel
3 the sword of Damocles
4 Pandora's box

20.2
1 New financial regulations are hanging over the banking industry like **the sword of Damocles**. Bankers are extremely worried.
2 One famous type of computer virus works like **a Trojan horse**. It attacks your computer from inside the system.
3 He's a good worker in many ways, but planning is his **Achilles' heel**. He's so disorganised.
4 She opened a **Pandora's box** when she started investigating corruption in the building industry.

20.3

	4 H						
1 W	A	L	L				
	L						
	C						
2 P	Y	R	R	H	I	6 C	
	O					H	
3 U	N	T	U	5 R	N	E	D
				E		E	
				S		K	
				T			

20.4
1 Julia's **parting** shot as she walked out of the room was to say that she never wanted to see any of us ever again.
2 The police left no **stone** unturned in trying to trace the missing child.
3 Piero fell **on** his sword and accepted full responsibility for the disaster.
4 She really has the **Midas** touch – everything she does is hugely successful.
5 It was a task of epic **proportions**, but everyone tried their hardest to succeed.
6 We should continue to work hard and not **rest** on our laurels.
7 If we are faced with a violent attack, we should just turn the other **cheek** and not react.
8 Doing nothing at this stage would be like **fiddling** while Rome burns.

Unit 21

21.1
1 The film is about two **star-crossed lovers** and their relationship.
2 Max and his friends **ate me out of house and home**.
3 Harry's driving **made my hair stand on end**, but we arrived safely.
4 He set off on **a wild-goose chase** to find the buried treasure he'd read about.
5 Masha prepared a delicious meal **in the twinkling of an eye**.
6 **The green-eyed monster** is responsible for many crimes of passion.
7 The reviewer didn't praise the play subtly – he **laid it on with a trowel**.

21.2 1 true, smooth 2 end 3 house 4 eye 5 swoop

21.3
1 make your hair stand on end
2 a wild-goose chase
3 lay it on with a trowel
4 the green-eyed monster

21.4
1 The bank robbers left the country after they had cleverly managed to send the police off on a **wild-goose chase**.
2 The ghost story David told made **my hair stand on end**.
3 Maya and Harry's relationship was destroyed by **the green-eyed monster**.
4 Simply tell your daughter that you like her work. There's no need to **lay it on with a trowel**.

Over to you

pound of flesh: something owed but which it is unreasonable to demand, e.g. *People accuse the taxman of always making sure he gets his pound of flesh.*

send someone packing: ask someone to leave at once, e.g. *I can't face any visitors, so if anyone comes to the door, just send them packing.*

Unit 22

22.1
1 Man Friday
2 Hyde
3 Prince Charming
4 Big Brother
5 Aladdin

22.2
1 My sister's getting married next week. I'm so happy she's found her **Prince Charming**.
2 The Internet service providers know exactly which websites we visit – **Big Brother** is watching us all the time.
3 My life is totally chaotic. I need a **Man Friday / Girl Friday** to help me with everything.
4 The old cupboard was an **Aladdin**'s cave of valuable objects.
5 Roberto is a real Jekyll and **Hyde** character. You can never predict how he's going to behave.

22.3
1 Don't worry, it's just **a storm in a teacup**.
2 He wants to borrow a lot of money to go travelling, but paying it back could become **an albatross around his neck.**
3 Why are you just getting a new fridge and cooker? Why not **go the whole hog** and get a new kitchen?
4 He's always got some new money-making plan or scheme, but most of the time they're just **castles in the air**.
5 I met him ten years ago and then saw him again last year. We seem to **be like ships that pass in the night**.

22.4
1 d
2 a
3 c
4 b

22.5
1 castles in the air
2 storm in a teacup
3 ships that pass in the night
4 ivory tower

Unit 23

23.1
1 c
2 f
3 d
4 a
5 b
6 e

23.2
1 Alain was always eating sweet things, but after the dentist gave him several fillings, I think he's **learnt** his lesson.
2 Florence seems to be burning the candle at both **ends** at the moment – going to parties every night and then getting up early to study.
3 Dev started telling the IT manager how to set up a spreadsheet. Talk about teaching your grandmother to **suck** eggs!
4 I keep forgetting that I can use online banking to pay my bills. You can't teach an old **dog** new tricks, I suppose.
5 Frida has set her **sights** on becoming CEO, and after her latest promotion, she's well on the way.
6 After his rude behaviour, Oli's mother decided to **teach** him a lesson and didn't let him play with his friends.

23.3
1 Ralf
2 Rajesh
3 Imogen
4 Hailey
5 Tom
6 Meredith

23.4
1 No. If your work comes on in leaps and bounds, you are making progress.
2 No. If something sticks in your mind, you remember it.
3 Yes.
4 Yes.
5 No. If something goes in one ear and out the other, you forget it very quickly.
6 No. If you work round the clock, you are working all the time, so you will be tired.

Unit 24

24.1
1 Clara
2 Rob
3 Matthew
4 Julian

24.2
1 I try my best to do my job well, but sometimes I feel as if I'm just **a cog in the machine**.
2 I don't want to **throw a spanner in the works**, but I think you should apply for official permission first.
3 I worry sometimes that we're just **reinventing the wheel** in our research.
4 I'm afraid I couldn't print the document; our printer is **on the blink**.
5 There was a power failure and everything **went haywire**.
6 She should be able to write a simple text message. I mean, it's not **rocket science**, is it?
7 I think we're **light years away from** finding a cure for this terrible disease.
8 Why change the system? **If it ain't broke, don't fix it**!

24.3
1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c

24.4
1 My school was new. We had all kinds of **cutting-edge** technology.
2 Suddenly, everything went **haywire**, and there was complete chaos.
3 She felt she was just a cog in the **machine** and that no one ever noticed her.
4 The city council set the **wheels in motion** for the construction of the new park.

Unit 25

25.1
1 d
2 a
3 h
4 f
5 g
6 b
7 e
8 c

25.2
1 an armchair critic
2 waiting in the wings
3 have your name in lights
4 do a hatchet job on something
5 rolling in the aisles
6 keep you on the edge of your seat

25.3
Possible answers:
1 support / admire
2 reassure / calm
3 stage in a theatre
4 A lot of / Lots of
5 Shy / Unconfident

25.4
1 Richard is **a leading light** in the local tennis club.
2 The teacher **picked holes in** my essay.
3 Don't worry about your presentation. **It'll be all right on the night**.
4 The dog **stole the show**.
5 She spent years **treading the boards** before getting a part in a TV soap.
6 The new manager is good at **playing to the gallery**.
7 The book was very **heavy going**.
8 I can't believe that the *Sunday News* critic described such a boring novel as a **page-turner**.

Unit 26

26.1
1 d
2 f
3 g
4 h
5 a
6 c
7 b
8 e

26.2
1 Ana is the **spitting image of** her mother – she looks just like her.
2 How could you harm your brother? He's your own **flesh** and **blood**.
3 She was born in 1986. In 1983, she was just a **twinkle** in **her father's eye**.
4 All her **nearest** and **dearest** gathered round her for a family photo on her 90th birthday.
5 I'd hate the sort of family where everybody lives **in each other's pockets**.
6 He's 42 and still living with his parents. Most people **fly the nest** a lot earlier.
7 All of her sisters are really musical too. It must **run in the family**.
8 Max is as generous as his dad. He's a **chip off the old block**.

26.3
1 Chelsea
2 Zenab
3 Lidia
4 Connor
5 Ashley

26.4 1 If **he has the ear of the boss**, we should let him represent us.
2 Joanna was **a tower** (or *pillar*) **of strength** when I was going through a bad time.
3 Amina has invited **an old flame** of hers to the party on Saturday.
4 My friend Ali has stood by me **through thick and thin**.
5 He was **footloose and fancy-free** until he was 25; then he got married.
6 Raisa and I **go back a long way**.

Unit 27

27.1 1 up 2 parts 3 kids 4 strings 5 mine

27.2 1 Concentrate on your homework and stop playing **the** fool!
2 I hope Joe doesn't come to the party – he's such a **wet** blanket.
3 I suppose that everyone ultimately has to look out for **number** one.
4 Kate volunteers for all the jobs that no one else will do – she's a real glutton for **punishment**.
5 I always said she was a loose **cannon**, so I'm not surprised she's causing trouble.
6 The newspapers are claiming that the prince is a **love rat**.
7 Be extra kind and calm with Jarek – he's very **highly** strung.
8 Everyone admires the young entrepreneur for his get-up and **go**.

27.3 1 a wet blanket
2 a man of many parts
3 have (plenty of) strings to your bow
4 a whizz kid

27.4 1 I'm really scared about meeting them. I'm sure they'll **eat me for breakfast**.
2 I don't want to be **a wet blanket**, but please can you turn the music down? It's too loud.
3 Some say that to succeed in business, you need to **look out for number one**.
4 There always seems to be a child in every class who **plays the fool** to make the other pupils laugh.
5 Martina would be easier to live with if she weren't so **highly strung**.
6 Some see him as **a loose cannon**, but this is unfair.

Unit 28

28.1 1 counter
2 lining their, pockets
3 job
4 fiddle, wool, eyes
5 taking, ride

28.2 1 f 2 e 3 c 4 h 5 g 6 d 7 a 8 i 9 b

28.3 1 True.
2 False. They themselves run away, usually from trouble.
3 True.
4 False. They spend time in prison.

Unit 29

29.1 1 at the top of the ladder
2 a golden handshake
3 a sleeping / silent partner
4 a foot in the door

29.2 1 She founded the company, but she's not very active in it now. She's just a **sleeping / silent partner**.
2 He desperately wanted to work in the film industry, so he got a job carrying camera equipment to get **a foot in the door**.
3 When he retired, the company gave him a **golden handshake**.
4 It took him years to become chief executive, but he's **at the top of the ladder** now.

29.3 1 No. If you have a good track record, you have a history of success, not failure.
2 No. A cushy number is a very easy job.
3 Yes.
4 Yes.

5 No. If you are doing a roaring trade, you are selling lots of goods.
6 No. If a company goes belly up, it has failed and usually closes.
7 No. If a company corners the market, they are very successful and do not have any serious competitors.
8 Yes.

29.4 1 Our new online business is **going great guns**.
2 Some airlines are in danger of **going to the wall**.
3 That new farmers' market seems to be **doing a roaring trade**.
4 Mr Olsen decided to **shut up shop** and retire to the coast.
5 Another insurance company **went bust** last week.
6 She realised she had hit a **glass ceiling** at work.

Unit 30

30.1 1 saddled with debt 3 big fish in small pond
2 throw someone a lifeline 4 cloud on the horizon

30.2 1 rein in spending (riders use reins to guide the horse and control its speed)
2 soar sky-high and take a nosedive
3 birds soar sky-high and a plane can take a nosedive
4 receive a windfall (the image is that of a strong wind blowing fruit off the trees unexpectedly early)
5 a ballpark figure (the idiom comes from baseball)
6 the bottom drops / falls out of the market (the image is of the bottom coming off a box, thus spilling all its contents)

30.3 1 The speaker said he was concerned about the way in which young people **worship** at the altar of instant gratification.
2 Correct.
3 Receiving a sizeable **windfall** from one of our investments allowed us to extend our premises.
4 Changes in the company's structure will take place across the **board**.
5 Jackson was **under** no illusions about how long it would take his business to get established.
6 Correct.
7 It's time we considered how we can take our business to the next **level**.
8 The senior staff all **fell** into line with the new CEO's demands.

30.4 1 f
2 g
3 a
4 h
5 b
6 d
7 c
8 e

Unit 31

31.1 1 The speaker wants to know when Sandra will be free, e.g. to meet.
2 The speaker is suggesting that they make contact with each other, or meet.
3 Because it uses several words ('at this moment in time') where one ('now') would do equally well.
4 Yes, it does.

31.2 1 have a window 3 push the envelope
2 the gloves are off 4 blue-sky thinking

31.3 1 suck 3 box 5 dog 7 rock
2 fact 4 off 6 up 8 envelope

31.4 1 Do you have any points that you would like **to bring to the table** today?
2 We need to prove that our products are **at the cutting edge** if we are to stay competitive.
3 They've been working **24/7** to complete the project.
4 **The fact of the matter is** that our previous advertising campaign was not as successful as we had hoped.
5 I have **a window** on Thursday afternoon if that suits you.
6 They chose Mark for the job because he **ticked all the boxes**.

Unit 32

32.1 1 Working as a security guard is money **for old rope**, unless someone actually tries to break in.
2 He went from **rags to riches**, but he was always afraid he'd end up poor again.
3 A lot of students find it difficult to **make ends meet** and end up borrowing money from the bank or from their parents.
4 When I was a student, I was always **strapped for** cash, so I had to get part-time jobs.
5 He's completely immoral about financial matters. He would **sell his own grandmother**.
6 He sued the newspaper for libel, won his case and took them **to the cleaners**.
7 They set up a social networking website. It was an instant success, and now they're laughing **all the way to the bank**.
8 Why do I work so hard and such long hours? Well, someone has to bring **home the bacon**!
9 Jessie paid me for that job I did last week, so I'm **quids in**. We can have a nice meal out tonight!
10 I bought a new guitar at the weekend. It was going for a **song** at only £80.

32.2 1 In the current financial crisis, people are finding it harder to make ends **meet**.
2 I'm tired of living on a **shoestring**. I need to earn more money.
3 You should buy that old house – it's going for a **song**.
4 Spending money on ready-made meals is just throwing money down the **drain**.
5 Did you know he took his girlfriend to the Caribbean for a luxury holiday? He must be absolutely **rolling** in it.
6 We had lunch in a cheap and **cheerful** restaurant.
7 I know you love that dress, but it's so expensive. There's no point in paying over the **odds** for it – it's just not worth it.
8 Why don't you buy her a bunch of flowers? It won't break the **bank**.
9 Rachel is the main **breadwinner** in our family.
10 I wish we had more money. I hate being so penny-**pinching** all the time.

32.3 1 The prize is a **no-expense-spared** weekend in a London hotel *or* The prize is a weekend in a London hotel, **no-expense-spared**.
2 Ivana is always going shopping. She must have **money to burn**.
3 Kim has never had much money. She has always had to **scrimp and save**.
4 If you like children, babysitting is **money for old rope**.
5 Everyone has to go to work in order to **bring home the bacon**.
6 You sold the car for £200 more than you paid for it, so **you're quids in**.
7 (When it comes to making money), Rosie **would sell her own grandmother**.
8 I don't make much money, so I find it almost impossible to **make ends meet**.

32.4 *Answers from the author who wrote this unit*
1 a very expensive violin
2 electronic gadgets
3 Yes, a meal in a London restaurant
4 Yes, a second-hand bicycle

Unit 33

33.1 self-made man
second-class citizen
chattering classes
grass roots
silent majority

33.2 1 Politicians often lose touch with the **grass roots** and become isolated from the public.
2 It's time the **silent majority** was heard, instead of the more vocal and aggressive minority.
3 My father was a **self-made man**. He came from a poor background and worked his way up until he became quite rich.
4 I'm sick of listening to the opinions of the **chattering classes**. What about the opinions of ordinary people?
5 If you are poor, you may sometimes think you are a **second-class citizen** in terms of access to university.

33.3 *Possible answers:*
1 Probably a bit nervous and apprehensive.
2 Big cars which use an excessive amount of fuel and damage the environment.
3 Celebrities, politicians, sports people, etc.
4 Elderly people.

33.4 1 False. They have very little influence or power in society.
2 False. The gravy train refers to ways of making money quickly, easily and often dishonestly, usually through your position in society.
3 False. It means educated people who enjoy discussing social, political and cultural issues.
4 True.
5 False. They win by a very large number of votes or a very large majority.

33.5 1 eye
2 gravy
3 block
4 grey, strings
5 Big
6 enemy

33.6 1 Although Ollie receives all the media attention, his mother is **the power behind the throne**.
2 In the election, the Green candidate **won by a landslide**.
3 Everyone suspects that **the elections were rigged**.
4 Mark **is a self-made man**.
5 Journalists need to establish good contacts with **the movers and shakers**.

Unit 34

34.1 1 d
2 h
3 f
4 g
5 a
6 b
7 c
8 e

34.2 When Sam first went travelling, he missed his **creature comforts**, like hot water and a soft bed. However, he loved being able to **go out on the town** at night with new friends in different countries. He had such an exciting time that he was usually too busy to eat a **square meal**, and so he just ate **on the hoof** from street markets. Sam is now back at work but is planning his next trip.

34.3 1 It's really busy! I don't know whether **I'm coming or going**!
2 Well, I was at first, but now I'm fed up. They've **outstayed their welcome**.
3 Yes, let's **go out on the town** together.
4 It's OK. It's **on the house**.
5 I was hoping to, but I'm afraid I'm going to have to **give it a miss**.
6 Sorry. I'm too busy at work. I'll just have to have a sandwich **on the hoof**.
7 Not really, we just **pass the time of day** sometimes.
8 He's just trying to **take each day as it comes**.
9 Oh, nothing in particular. I'm just having a **bad hair day**.
10 Yes, he eats **like a horse**!

Unit 35

35.1
1 The company's new line of sportswear has been incredibly popular, and they've made a lot of money. They really **hit the** jackpot this time.
2 The end-of-term party really went with **a swing**. Everyone enjoyed themselves.
3 That apple pie you made went down **a treat** with our dinner guests.
4 We were freezing, so she gave us some hot chocolate to drink – it really **hit the** spot.
5 Everyone was in a happy mood and entered **into the spirit of** the fancy-dress ball.
6 His lecture hit exactly **the right note**. Everyone enjoyed it and said it was very informative too.

35.2
1 stars in her eyes
2 full of the joys of spring
3 music to my ears
4 be on a high

35.3
1 After winning the race, I was **on a high** for the rest of the day.
2 The decision to cancel the rugby match **was music to my ears**. I hadn't been looking forward to it at all.
3 Meeting the president was **a dream come true**.
4 Shona was **full of the joys of spring** this morning. Something good must have happened.
5 George **has got stars in his eyes** – he's joined a rock band and given up his job.

35.4
1 Sam Bagg's new album **blew my mind**.
2 My sister is such a **happy-go-lucky** person. / My sister is so **happy-go-lucky**.
3 Iris is **full of the joys of spring** today!
4 He's **as happy as Larry** in his new job.
5 This new series of adventure novels **strikes** (exactly) **the right note** for a teenage audience.

35.5
1 The music festival went **with** a swing, and a lot of money was raised for charity.
2 The song we wrote for the end-of-course party went **down** a treat **with** all the teachers.
3 My cousin's got **stars in her eyes** ever since her music teacher told her she could be famous one day.
4 Edward is such a **happy-go-lucky** person; he never worries about anything.

Over to you *Possible answers:*

You can play football **to your heart's content** when the exams are over, but now you must study! [do something pleasant for as long as you want to]

It's not a luxury hotel; it's **cheap and cheerful**. [cheap, but pleasant and attractive]

I was **over the moon** when I heard the news! [very happy indeed]

Unit 36

36.1
1 Dad almost **burst** a blood vessel when I told him I'd driven into his car.
2 Lucy felt all **hot** and bothered after having to push her way onto the train.
3 Dave saw **red** when he heard the boy speak so rudely to Maddie.
4 You're in a bad temper today. What's rattled your **cage**?
5 What Lily said to her mother really made my **blood** boil.
6 It really gets my **goat** when you say such stupid things!

36.2
1 I'm a **bundle of nerves**.
2 I feel **down in the dumps** today.
3 I **have a sinking feeling** about this exam.
4 I'm **running out of patience** with that incompetent company.
5 The argument I had with my best friend has **knocked me for six**.
6 **Wild horses couldn't make me** apologise to Nick.

36.3
1 e
2 f
3 g
4 b
5 h
6 a
7 d
8 c

36.4
1 Selfish behaviour **makes my blood boil.**
2 The film's sad ending **reduced Jess to tears.**
3 Cruelty to animals **makes me see red.**
4 **I am running out of patience** with James.
5 My brother's laziness **gets my goat.**
6 **I (could have) kicked myself** for missing the train.
7 What's **rattled Paul's cage?**
8 I shouldn't let him make me so **hot and bothered.**
9 Long walks in the countryside **are not my bag.**
10 Your father **will burst a blood vessel** if you say you're dropping out of university.

36.5 *Possible answers:*
1 That TV programme about child poverty reduced me to tears.
2 I wouldn't give that politician's opinions house room.
3 Amos's arrogance gets my goat.
4 I was a bundle of nerves when I was waiting for my exam results.
5 I could have kicked myself when I let your secret slip.
6 Watching cricket is not my bag.
7 Wild horses couldn't make me sing in public.
8 My friend's accident knocked me for six.

Unit 37

37.1
1 ball
2 light
3 pig's
4 nightmare
5 plot

37.2
1 pull the rug from under (my feet)
2 can't see the wood for the trees
3 a slap in the face
4 sweep it under the carpet

37.3
1 d
2 e
3 a
4 h
5 f
6 c
7 b
8 g

37.4
1 I agree. We're in **over our heads.**
2 I know, it's really **put her nose out of joint.**
3 Yes, there's no point trying to **sweep it under the carpet.**
4 You're right, I think he's **lost / losing his touch.**
5 Good idea. At the moment we **can't see the wood for the trees.**
6 Me too. I feel like I'm **losing the plot!**
7 You're right. You can't **take your eye off the ball.**
8 Yes, he's **in a tight corner / spot.**

Unit 38

38.1
1 water under the bridge
2 bone of contention
3 let sleeping dogs lie
4 to hold out an olive branch
5 to put your foot down
6 to put the cat amongst the pigeons

38.2
1 My mum was pretty easy-going about mess, but I remember she **put her foot down** and said no when we wanted to fill the bath with mud!
2 We'd already agreed the schedule when the board asked us to bring the dates forward and that **put the cat amongst the pigeons**.
3 We had a lot of disagreements when we were at school together, but I'm hoping that's all **water under the bridge**.
4 The packaging for the new shower gel is a real **bone of contention** between the marketing department and the production team. They both want completely different designs.
5 He was really difficult to work with for the first few weeks, but then he offered to get me a coffee the other day, which I think was his way of **holding out an olive branch**.
6 I've had a lot of arguments with my father about what he said to me. He's not going to apologise, so I'm just going to **let sleeping dogs lie**.

38.3 1 c 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 a

38.4
1 Sylvia is very difficult to work with. She always argues the toss.
2 Although the negotiations were difficult, we managed to find some common ground in terms of product development.
3 When I told my dad I was thinking of dropping out of university, he put his foot down.
4 A group of ministers refused to toe/tow the line and voted against the latest tax bill.
5 Somebody should really put Rashid in his place. He can't keep telling everyone what to do.
6 After our disagreement, I wanted to let bygones be bygones, but Emma still seemed very angry with me.

Unit 39

39.1
1 False. The mayor is going through a difficult period.
2 True.
3 False. It was made at the last minute.
4 True.
5 True.
6 False. 'Marathon' means that they were long.

39.2
1 in
2 in
3 under, of
4 into
5 out

39.3
1 The forest fires resulted in some entire villages being **engulfed in flames**.
2 The robbers got into the house **under cover of darkness**.
3 It will not be easy for the two sides to **hammer out an agreement**.
4 The reasons for the bank manager's disappearance are still **shrouded in mystery**.
5 The power cuts **plunged** the whole area **into chaos**.

39.4
1 big
2 mounting
3 bloody
4 uneasy
5 for
6 blood
7 last-ditch
8 war-torn

39.5 *Possible answers:*
1 something totally covered by fire or water
2 something going down very fast, often into water
3 something totally covered – a shroud is the cloth that traditionally covers a dead body
4 a battle (The last ditch is the last part of an army's defences, i.e. the last point at which it can avoid defeat.)
5 something being saved in the last few moments before disaster strikes (at 12 o'clock)
6 a country divided into pieces by war.

They are all dramatic images, which is why journalists like them.

Unit 40

40.1
1 world of, between
2 of its time
3 hands down
4 wildest dreams
5 packs, punch
6 the mark

40.2
1 Yes, there was a world **of difference between** them.
2 Yes, it did us **the world of good**.
3 Yes, he certainly lives **life to the full**.
4 Yes, it certainly packs **a punch**.
5 Yes, it must be hard to stand out **from the crowd** these days.
6 Yes, it's taken **years off her**. I think I might have one done myself!

40.3
1 b) in chess, the players make moves
2 a) you use a watch to tell the time
3 c) washing powder makes clothes clean

40.4
1 b
2 c
3 d
4 e
5 a

Unit 41

41.1
1 least
2 on
3 foremost
4 by
5 on
6 analysis

41.2 *Possible answers:*
1 **On no account** should we forget the history behind this conflict.
2 **In the final analysis**, doctors must trust their own judgement.
3 I can see both arguments, but **on balance** I am in favour of extending the school-leaving age.
4 **First and foremost**, we must give a definition of family law before we can apply it to the case in question.
5 **Last but not least**, let us consider the role of the media in this debate.
6 **By and large**, the writer uses traditional poetic style.

41.3
1 Liberal right-wing policies sound like **a contradiction in terms**.
2 **In the main**, I approve of the government's approach.
3 The reform **opens the door** to an eventual solution of the problem.
4 Once the papers are signed, this legal process is **set in motion**.
5 **As a matter of course**, large companies outperform smaller companies. This is only to be expected.
6 People who fail at school often succeed in later life. Einstein is **a case in point**.
7 The research **points the way** to a future cure for the disease.
8 Saying that boys achieve less at school does not give **the whole picture**.
9 Advocating equal opportunity for all **begs the question of** how this can be achieved.
10 **On the one hand**, international law exists to protect people from the power of states. **On the other hand**, it can also restrict states from exercising their power to protect the interests of their own people.

41.4
1 The new building **stands out like a sore thumb**.
2 An interesting painting **caught my eye**.
3 It's hard to keep up with government policy, as it seems to **chop and change** all the time.
4 Business success often goes **hand in hand with** good working conditions.

Unit 42

42.1
1 put your shoulder to the wheel
2 reach for the stars
3 turn over a new leaf
4 put your money where your mouth is

42.2
1 The club needs money desperately. Charlie says he wants to help, so he should **put his money where his mouth is.**
2 I know you don't want to tell her the bad news, but you have to **bite the bullet.**
3 Come on, work harder! You have to **put your shoulder to the wheel!**
4 The teacher told his students to be ambitious and to **reach for the stars.**
5 You need to stop lying and be honest. It's time to **turn over a new leaf.**

42.3
1 twice
2 the apple cart
3 trim
4 tempt
5 out
6 the changes

Possible answers:

42.4
1 I think you've bitten off more than you can chew. / Don't bite off more than you can chew.
2 I don't think it's a good idea to stick your neck out. / You shouldn't stick your neck out like that.
3 I'm sorry, I can't help. I think you'll just have to tough it out.
4 I think you're (skating) on thin ice, criticising her so strongly.

Over to you Look up these idioms in a good dictionary or at Cambridge Dictionaries Online if you do not know their meanings.

Examples of idioms with *shoulder*:
a shoulder to cry on
have a chip on your shoulder
shoulder to shoulder
give someone the cold shoulder

Examples of idioms with *neck*:
breathe down someone's neck
be a pain in the neck
be up to your neck in something
have the brass neck to do something

Unit 43

43.1
1 go
2 drop
3 chair
4 split
5 put
6 between
7 stake
8 clanger

43.2
1 from the word go; at first glance
2 nearly fell off my chair; a bolt from the blue; a real turn-up for the books
3 for good measure; into the bargain; to say nothing of
4 when all's said and done
5 a lot at stake; more by luck than judgement

43.3
1 **There's a lot to be said for** working in an open-plan office.
2 **For a split second,** I believed Tom when he said he was moving to Australia; then I realised he was joking.
3 **At first glance,** the project seemed quite simple.
4 He passed his driving test first time, but I'd say it was **more by luck than judgement**.
5 **Between you and me,** I think Abbie and Mike may be going out together.
6 Their decision to marry **was a real bolt from the blue.**
7 It was, **to say the least / to put it mildly,** a risky thing to do.
8 Both the brothers are very clever, **to say nothing of** their brilliant sister.

43.4
1 The party was fantastic – delicious food, a great band and all my favourite people there for **good** measure.
2 She's pretty, clever and nice **into** the bargain.
3 When all's **said** and done, I think you made the right decision.
4 No one thought the film would be a success, so it was a real turn-up **for** the books when it won three Oscars.
5 I feel very nervous about this exam; there is a lot **at stake**.
6 I didn't understand what he meant at first, but then the **penny** dropped.
7 We got on really well from the word **go**.
8 I think you were rather rude to her, to **put** it mildly.

Unit 44

44.1
1 Well, **that's all we need**!
2 Huh! **Fat chance**!
3 Felix? Ha-ha! **Give me a break**!
4 **You may well ask**!
5 **Good riddance (to bad rubbish)**! I could never stand her.
6 Well, **same difference**.
7 You're right. **There's no time like the present**.
8 **Nice work if you can get it**.

44.2
1 False. It means you don't understand what they mean or who / what they are referring to.
2 False. It is something you say to someone who has a boring life or does boring things; it means they should do more exciting things.
3 True.
4 False. It means you would love to have the same job if it were possible.

44.3
1 They may be enjoying themselves now, but in the long run it will all **end in tears**.
2 It says here in the paper that children prefer playing computer games alone to playing with their friends. What is the world **coming to**!
3 I think Tara is unreliable and a liar. I wouldn't trust her **as far as I could throw her**.
4 So Annika has been lying about how much money she makes? I thought **as much**.
5 The new manager may make a difference to the company, or he may fail. Only time **will tell**.
6 We should act now and not delay. There's no **time like the present**.

44.4
1 e
2 c
3 f
4 a
5 b
6 d

Unit 45

45.1
1 You took the **words** right out of my mouth.
2 Yes, that's about the **size** of it!
3 **Tell me** about it!
4 I think most of us are of the same **mind** about that.
5 Well, in the end I thought, 'If you can't **beat** 'em, join 'em.'

45.2
1 waters
2 tree
3 hymn sheet
4 hairs
5 mouth
6 discord
7 differ
8 minds

45.3
1 wrong
2 lone
3 torn
4 like
5 odds
6 message

45.4
1 There's **a world of difference** between being poor and not having as much money as you'd like.
2 I **am at odds with** everyone else in my family about where we should go on holiday.
3 Please do all you can to **pour oil on troubled waters**. I hate it when people argue.
4 The politician was sacked for not **being on message**.

45.5 *Possible answers:*
1 I beg to differ.
2 I'm in two minds about that.
3 I'm torn over that.
4 You're not wrong.
5 Tell me about it.

Unit 46

46.1
1 e
2 d
3 f
4 c
5 a
6 b

46.2
1 a paper tiger
2 built on sand
3 win your spurs
4 on a roll

46.3
1 The chef's new recipes **went down a storm** with the clientele.
2 My ideas for restructuring the company **went down like a lead balloon**.
3 The new prime minister **is riding high** at the moment.
4 I'm quite worried about starting my new job. I'm afraid I won't be able to **cut the mustard**.
5 I've been studying hard all year, so I hope I will **be ahead of the game** when it comes to taking my exams.
6 Poor Carl has been hit by **a double whammy** – losing his job and having a flood in his house.

46.4
1 lead
2 trumps
3 storm
4 recipe
5 on

Unit 47

47.1 1 c 2 d 3 a 4 e 5 b

47.2
1 My old auntie Lily is **fighting fit**, even though she had an operation two months ago.
2 She's **filthy rich**: she owns a private jet and a massive yacht.
3 A man jumped into the fountain **stark naked** and was arrested by the police.
4 The new government had a **squeaky-clean** image until the recent scandal broke.
5 Erica has a **razor-sharp** mind and is the most intelligent person I know.
6 My feet and hands were **stone cold**, so I sat in front of the fire, had a bowl of **piping hot** soup and soon felt better.
7 I overcooked the meat, and it was **bone dry**.
8 We can't put the tent up here. The ground's **rock hard**.

47.3
1 Things have hit **rock** bottom between my parents and their neighbours; they don't speak to each other any more.
2 I couldn't sleep on that mattress – it was **rock** hard.
3 This vase is **bone** dry and the poor old flowers are dying!
4 It is **crystal** clear to me that she is trying to deceive us all.
5 They've spent a **small** fortune on furniture for their new house.
6 Police report that more crimes are taking place in **broad** daylight.

47.4
1 filthy rich
2 full stop
3 a) a mere pittance b) a small fortune
4 in broad daylight

47.5

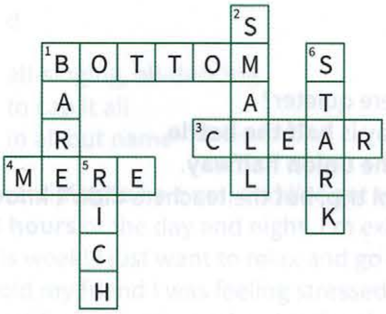

Unit 48

48.1
1 play cat and mouse
2 play gooseberry
3 play second fiddle

48.2
1 We want the directors to agree to our proposals, so we need to discuss our **game plan**.
2 OK, kids – **the game's up**. I know where you've been hiding my glasses!
3 Martha has decided to apply to be the shop manager. She's been an assistant manager for five years and is tired of **playing second fiddle**.
4 When you're looking for a new flat, location is **the name of the game**.
5 I went to the cinema with Elena and her new boyfriend, but it was horrible **playing gooseberry**.
6 I think that doctors sometimes go too far in their attempts to **play God**.
7 We're still not ready to decide, so we need to **play for time** and not sign the contract yet.

48.3
1 I know, I know. Just **play the game** for now. There's nothing we can do about it.
2 Maybe he's just **playing it cool**.
3 Yes, he's promised not to **play dirty**.
4 No, much better to **play it safe**.
5 Yes, it's definitely time we **raised our game**.

48.4
1 I'm fed up with him **playing me for a fool**.
2 When people ask how the interview went, just **play it cool**.
3 I think he behaves dishonestly because he enjoys **playing games** with people.
4 Some businesses **play dirty** just to make more money.

Unit 49

49.1
1 baked
2 meet
3 eye
4 mind
5 measures
6 know

49.2
1 Amy was doing a crossword and listening to the radio with half **an** ear.
2 **Given** half **a** chance, I'd leave my job and stay at home with the children.
3 We had a really good plan, but Sophie pointed out all the things that were wrong with it. I find her just too clever **by** half.
4 Writers say that coming up with a good idea for a novel is half **the** battle.
5 I've **a** good mind to write a letter of complaint to your manager. *Or* I've **half a mind** to write …
6 I'm a perfectionist. I have no time for **half-measures**.
7 I know it's hard to compromise but you should try to **meet** him halfway.

49.3
1 He's **too clever by half** in my opinion!
2 **Not half**!
3 **Given half a chance**, I'd leave tomorrow, lottery or no lottery!
4 It **isn't half** hot in here!
5 Yes, it was a meal **and a half**, wasn't it?
6 No, he **doesn't know the half of it**.
7 Yes, I'm sure that's **half the battle**.

49.4
1 **It isn't half** noisy here – shall we go somewhere quieter?
2 Having a clear structure and plan for your essay is **half the battle**.
3 It'll be to management's advantage to **meet the union halfway**.
4 There was a lot of bad behaviour on the school trip, but the teachers **didn't know the half of it**.
5 Well, that was certainly **a walk and a half**!

Unit 50

50.1
1 Lois told our boss that I left work early yesterday, so I told the boss that she's looking for a new job. Two can **play at that game**.
2 The director and department head are both very arrogant. They're two **of a kind**.
3 You hate meetings and I hate meetings, so that makes **two of us**.
4 When a couple breaks up, it is hardly ever the fault of just one person. It takes **two to tango**.
5 Lily, can you help me with this? Two heads **are better than one**.
6 I'm not going to the restaurant with Matt and Emily. I can see they want to be alone. Two's **company, three's a crowd**.

50.2
1 Adam
2 Tony
3 Amy
4 Lotta

50.3
1 two sides of the same coin
2 like two peas in a pod
3 it takes two to tango
4 two heads are better than one / that makes two of us

50.4
1 Richard **knows a thing or two about** finance.
2 Losing the race **brought him down a peg or two**.
3 A lot of kids nowadays **put / stick two fingers up at** the police and do what they want.
4 Political power **cuts two / both ways**: it enables people to change things, but it tempts them to become corrupt too.
5 Einstein saw time and space as **two sides of the same coin**.
6 Satnav systems in cars are **two a penny** these days.

Unit 51

51.1
1 clear
2 smiles
3 go
4 for
5 hours
6 good
7 told
8 over

51.2
1 The office never stops. It's **all systems go** from 8 am to 6 pm.
2 There were 18 of us for dinner, **all told**.
3 Don't be in such a hurry to pass your driving test. **All in good time!**
4 My sister isn't interested in what I'm doing. I could be homeless **for all she cares**.
5 Stefan went out to celebrate **getting the all-clear** from his doctor.
6 Some parents allow their children to come home **at all hours** of the day and night.
7 My brother's really forgetful, so I'm not surprised he forgot your birthday. **That's him all over**!
8 My dad was really grumpy this morning, but **he's all smiles** now.

51.3
1 c
2 f
3 e
4 b
5 a
6 d

51.4
1 all-singing, all-dancing
2 to cap it all
3 in all but name
4 all things to all people
5 an all-time low
6 all told

51.5 I'm training to be a vet, and I've got ten exams, all **told**, to prepare for. It means I've been studying at all **hours** of the day and night. I'm exhausted, and to **cap** it all I've got three exams on the same day this week! I just want to relax and go on holiday, but all in **good** time – I'll be finished next month. I told my friend I was feeling stressed, but he just laughed – that's him all **over**; he never takes anything seriously, and even when he's worried or anxious he's all **smiles**.

Unit 52

52.1
1 There's no such thing as a free lunch!
2 I won't take no for an answer!
3 No time like the present!
4 No strings attached – I promise!
5 Go at once – no ifs and buts!
6 No news is good news!

52.2
1 It was difficult.
2 No, she isn't.
3 No, he's not young any more.
4 It would be difficult.
5 He was very direct.
6 It's difficult.

52.3
1 There's no such thing as a free **lunch**.
2 She loves going shopping and spending like there was no **tomorrow**.
3 We were told in no uncertain **terms** that we must always be punctual for work.
4 He said he would lend me €2,000 with no strings **attached**.
5 He's a very good squash player, even though he's no spring **chicken**.
6 The new housing development caused no **end** of problems.

52.4
1 The town was full of people partying **like there's no tomorrow** on New Year's Eve.
2 **No prizes for guessing** who won the cookery competition.
3 The journey was very easy, and we got to our destination **in next to no time**.
4 There are **no end of** places to eat in our town.
5 The police have declared the zone **a no-go area**.
6 It would help your grandma **no end** if you cut the grass for her.

Unit 53

53.1
1 hand it to
2 upper hand
3 on a plate
4 hands down
5 out of the palm
6 old hand

53.2
1 By publishing their tax plans a year before the election, the opposition have shown **their** hand too early.
2 Mr Mills has **played** right into the hands of his critics by admitting that he made errors in the past.
3 You can count on **the** fingers of one hand the number of times this government has done anything to help the poor.
4 In court, the accused said he had never laid **a** hand on anyone and denied the charges.
5 The minister claimed that her **hands were** tied by European regulations, and that she could not act to change the situation.
6 The minister of education rejected out **of** hand the claim that small schools would be closed.

53.3

1 d
2 e
3 b
4 a
5 f
6 c

53.4 *Possible answers*:

1 Professor Ward has given a wonderful lecture. Please give her a big hand.
2 I know I have one somewhere, but I can't lay my hands on it at the moment.
3 I think we should all act and do something, not just sit on our hands.
4 I'm ready to hand over the reins to someone else.
5 Hand on heart, have you never told a lie?

Unit 54

54.1

1 b) a heart of gold
2 b) No. It is often used ironically.
3 b) sobbing
4 a) your general well-being. In some contexts, it might also be used with reference to someone's financial interests.
5 a) suffering
6 b) unpleasant

54.2 I've been offered a job that all my friends and family think I should take. The problem is that in my heart of **hearts**, I really don't want it. It's always been my heart's **desire** to leave this city and work abroad, but I don't **have** the heart to tell my family this, as I know they'll be upset. I know you will tell me to **take** heart and be strong, but I really don't want to hurt them. After all, I know they have my best interests **at** heart. What should I do?

54.3

1 Don't expect so much of him – he's only four! **Have a heart!**
2 You'll only get hurt if you **wear your heart on your sleeve.**
3 **His heart was in his boots** as he thought about the difficult week ahead.
4 You know your parents **have your best interests at heart.**
5 He showed her round the city, but she could tell that **his heart was not in it.**

54.4

	1 T		2 A				
3 B	O	O	T	4 S		5 D	
				L		E	
	6 B	L	E	E	D	S	
				E		7 I	N
	8 T			V		R	
9 H	A	R	D	E	N	E	D
	K						
10 W	E	N	T				

Unit 55

55.1
1 d
2 h
3 e
4 g
5 f
6 b
7 a
8 c

55.2
1 We were within **an inch** of our lives when the lightning struck the tree beside us.
2 I don't like cycling to work. I feel like I'm risking life and **limb** in all that traffic.
3 The operation has given my grandmother a new **lease** of life.
4 Taking your final exams won't be easy, but I'm sure you'll live to tell the **tale**.
5 Clare **got** the shock of her life when she saw the police officer at her door.
6 Some people find living out of **a suitcase** away from home very stressful.
7 The company chairman is living on **borrowed** time after the latest fall in profits.
8 Lewis is really shy and isn't usually the life and **soul** of the party.

55.3
1 **You'll be living a lie** if you don't tell him you were once in prison.
2 In this life, we have to **live and let live**.
3 Not many people have lived such **a charmed life** as Ed has.
4 We had **the time of our lives** in California last year.
5 Travelling is the best way to **see life**.
6 The explorers faced many challenges in the Arctic but **lived to tell the tale**.
7 The sudden scream **scared the life out of me**.
8 Jess thinks she'll have a career as a model, but **she's living in a dream world** in my opinion.
9 The naughty child **made his teacher's life a misery**.
10 The full service has **given our old car a new lease of life**.

55.4
1 on
2 within
3 of
4 out
5 of
6 for

Unit 56

56.1
1 **There is a lot of dead wood** in my office. They should sack some people.
2 Putting Joshua in charge was **the kiss of death to the project**.
3 His idea of building a plane and flying round the world **is as dead as a dodo**.
4 The old family quarrel **is now dead and buried**, and they live in harmony.
5 The planning committee's decision was **a death blow to** the proposal to build the new airport. (You can also say **dealt a death blow to**.)

56.2
1 a dead duck
2 kiss of death
3 in the dead of night
4 dead to the world
5 dead in the water
6 at death's door

56.3
1 in the dead of night
2 kiss of death
3 dead to the world
4 dead in the water
5 a dead duck
6 at death's door

56.4
1 You should only call an ambulance if it is **a** matter of **life and death** (or **a matter of life or death**).
2 The thieves stole the painting in the **dead** of night.
3 I am sick to **death** of people complaining all the time. It's not my fault!
4 That old car is so dangerous. It's **a death** trap.
5 Having to sit next to my boring uncle at the restaurant was **a fate worse than death**.
6 Many people suffered a **living death** in prison camps during the civil war.
7 The council are planning to demolish my house to build a motorway. **Over** my dead body!
8 **There is too much dead wood** on the school committee. They never do anything useful.

Unit 57

57.1

1 Nobody in their **right** mind would lend him money again. He never pays it back.
2 Correct.
3 He's always talking about cars. I've never met anyone with such a one-**track** mind.
4 Correct.
5 What can we do to take Marco's mind **off** his problems?
6 Now, I'd like you all to **cast** your mind back to your very first day at school.

57.2

1 Bye. **Mind how you go**!
2 **Mind your own business**!
3 I'm **bored out of my mind**.
4 You must be **out of your mind**!
5 No, it's **been (preying) on my mind** all day.
6 Please **cast your mind back** and tell us exactly what happened on the night in question.

57.3

1 He needs to **mind his back**.
2 I can **read her mind**.
3 Come on – **mind over matter**!
4 That singer **blows my mind**!

57.4

1 **Mind your step** on the ice – it's very slippery.
2 The actor's performance **blew my mind**!
3 It goes without saying that you should always **mind your Ps and Qs** at an interview.
4 People who drink and drive must be **out of their mind**.
5 My twin brother can **read my mind**.
6 I'm always **bored out of my mind** in physics lessons!
7 Their argument **preyed on Freya's mind** for a long time.
8 You'll find it quite easy to learn the guitar if you **put your mind to it**.

Unit 58

58.1

1 I hate it when people try to give you the hard **sell** over the phone.
2 Her grandfather's illness has really **hit** her very hard.
3 I'm so glad we're friends again. No hard **feelings**, OK?
4 Walking home in the heavy snow was really hard **going**.
5 I find his constant criticism of me very hard to **swallow**.
6 Learning how to skate turned out to be much harder than Nina had bargained **for**.

58.2

1 True.
2 False. She will find it difficult to meet her deadline.
3 True.
4 False. It is not an enjoyable way to learn this lesson.

58.3

1 fall
2 nut
3 swallow
4 drive
5 fast
6 way
7 make
8 done

58.4

1 The truth is unpleasant, and I'm worried you'll find it **hard to swallow**.
2 Although Jack's grandfather used to be rich, he **fell on hard times** and the family lived in poverty.
3 There are no **hard-and-fast rules** as to how you should behave in circumstances like these.
4 I'm sure Lydia will **feel hard done by** when she discovers that her uncle has bought her twin sister a new sports car.
5 Children eventually **learn the hard way** that life is not always fair.
6 I have no idea how we're going to solve this problem. It's going to be **a hard nut to crack**, I'm sure.
7 Ruby always complains and seems to **make hard work of** any little problem.
8 You want me to reduce the price by £200? You certainly **drive a hard bargain**.

Over to you

Some other idioms that you might find are:

be caught between a rock and a hard place: Whatever I decide to do there will be problems. *I'm caught between a rock and a hard place.*

be a hard act to follow: Colin was such a good manager that he is going to be *a hard act to follow*. I wouldn't want to take on his job when he leaves.

be too much like hard work: I certainly don't want to help my dad plant some rose bushes. It sounds *too much like hard work* to me.

Unit 59

59.1
1 through, floor
2 deaf ears
3 apart at the
4 the wrong hands

59.2
1 It seems that the prime minister's special adviser, Lily Sparks, **has fallen from grace**, and she is expected to resign soon.
2 Everyone had to **fall into line** and work longer hours for the same pay.
3 The deal **fell foul of** the export regulations and had to be cancelled at the last minute.
4 The report **falls short of** an outright condemnation of the government's actions, but it does contain strong criticism.

59.3
1 I didn't realise she was deceiving me, and I fell for it hook, **line and sinker**.
2 It looks as if the whole system is falling apart **at the seams**.
3 I didn't really have to do anything to get the job. It just fell **into my lap**.
4 Sara may not like the new rules, but she'll just have to **fall into line**.

59.4
1 If you fall for a thing (e.g. a trick or a lie) hook, line and sinker, you believe it completely. If you fall for a person hook, line and sinker, you fall madly in love with them.
2 Pride comes before a fall.
3 False. If someone falls over themselves to do something, it means they are very keen and eager to do it.
4 The bigger they are / come, the harder they fall.

Unit 60

60.1 I like Tina. She's her own **person**. In fact, she's very much a woman after my own **heart**. But I'm not keen on her boyfriend, Karl. He's always blowing his own **trumpet**, and when they come to my flat, he behaves as if he owns the **place**. I think it's time they went their own **ways**. In fact, I really think she'd **come** into her own if they did.

60.2
1 I must think of a way of **getting my own back** on Matt for playing that trick on me.
2 He told the police who had really planned the burglary, in order to **save his own skin**.
3 Tim was smaller than the other judo players, but he **held his own**.
4 You're **digging your own grave** by putting your boss in such a difficult position.
5 If women want to succeed in politics, they have to **play men at their own game**.

60.3

					1P					
				2F	E	A	T	3H	E	R
					R			A		
					4S	K	I	N		
					O			D		
5D	I	6G	G	7I	N	8G		S		
		A		F		9O	F			
10T	I	M	E			A				
		E		11H	O	L	D			

Phonemic symbols

Vowel sounds

Symbol	Examples		
/iː/	sleep	me	
/i/	happy	recipe	
/ɪ/	pin	dinner	
/ʊ/	foot	could	pull
/uː/	do	shoe	through
/e/	red	head	said
/ə/	arrive	father	colour
/ɜː/	turn	bird	work
/ɔː/	sort	thought	walk
/æ/	cat	black	
/ʌ/	sun	enough	wonder
/ɒ/	got	watch	sock
/ɑː/	part	heart	laugh
/eɪ/	name	late	aim
/aɪ/	my	idea	time
/ɔɪ/	boy	noise	
/eə/	pair	where	bear
/ɪə/	hear	beer	
/əʊ/	go	home	show
/aʊ/	out	cow	
/ʊə/	pure	poor	

Consonant sounds

Symbol	*Examples*		
/p/	put		
/b/	book		
/t/	take		
/d/	dog		
/k/	car	kick	
/g/	go	guarantee	
/tʃ/	catch	church	
/dʒ/	age	lounge	
/f/	for	cough	
/v/	love	vehicle	
/θ/	thick	path	
/ð/	this	mother	
/s/	since	rice	
/z/	zoo	houses	
/ʃ/	shop	sugar	machine
/ʒ/	pleasure	usual	vision
/h/	hear	hotel	
/m/	make		
/n/	name	now	
/ŋ/	bring		
/l/	look	while	
/r/	road		
/j/	young		
/w/	wear		

Index

*The numbers in the Index are **Unit** numbers not page numbers.*

be taken **aback** 14
out and **about** 10
Tell me **about** it! 45
That's **about** the size of it! 45
be head and shoulders **above** sb 18
be a chapter of **accidents** 37
a fait **accompli** 13
play your **ace** / trump card 19
Achilles heel 20
across the board 30
get your **act** together 6
ad hoc 13
ad infinitum 13
spirit of **adventure** 5
after your own heart 60
It's easy to be wise **after** the event. 12
time **after** time 10
the dice are loaded **against** sb 19
hammer out an **agreement** 39
ahead of its time 40
ahead of the game 46
castles in the **air** 22
clear the **air** 38
rolling in the **aisles** 25
an **Aladdin's** cave 22
an **albatross** around your neck 22
all in **all** 51
all in good time 51
all or nothing 51
All's fair in love and war. 11
all-singing, **all**-dancing 51
all told 51
an **all**-time high / low 51
at **all** hours 51
be **all** in the mind 51
be **all** over sb like a rash 9
be **all** smiles 51
be **all** things to **all** men 51
for **all** sb cares 51
get the **all**-clear 51
hold **all** the cards 19
in **all** but name 51
it will **all** end in tears 44
it's **all** systems go 51
laugh **all** the way to the bank 32
push **all** the right buttons 24
that's **all** we need 44
that's sb **all** over 51
tick **all** the boxes 31
to cap it **all** 51
when **all**'s said and done 43
worship at the **altar** / shrine / temple of 30
amid mounting calls 39
in the final / last **analysis** 41
not take no for an **answer** 52
do **anything** for a quiet life 55
be falling **apart** at the seams 59
upset the **apple cart** 42
no-go **area** 52
argue the toss 38
give your right **arm** for 18
the long **arm** of the law 28
armchair critic / traveller / gardener 25
call to **arms** 15
an albatross **around** your neck 22
You may well **ask**! 44
no strings **attached** 52
a last-ditch **attempt** 39
be **au** fait with 13
do sth on **autopilot** 16
be blown **away** by sth 6
be light years **away** from sth 24
back on track 16
be **back** to square one 6
behind sb's **back** 3
cast your mind **back** 57
get your own **back** 60
go **back** a long way 26
mind / watch your **back** 57
get off your **backside** 3
bring home the **bacon** 32
have a **bad** hair day 34
not be your **bag** 36
on **balance** 41
a whole new **ball** game 19
drop the **ball** 7
take your eye off the **ball** 37
go down like a lead **balloon** 46
a **ballpark** figure 30
laugh all the way to the **bank** 32
not break the **bank** 32
baptism of fire 15
bare-faced lies 47
drive a hard **bargain** 58
into the **bargain** 43
harder than you'd **bargained** for 58
be **barking** up the wrong tree 45
touch **base** 31

on a weekly **basis** 31
right off the **bat** 7
batten down the hatches 14
be **batting** a thousand 7
battle of wills 15
be half the **battle** 49
like a **bear** with a sore head 5
beat a retreat 15
beat sb / sth hands down 40
If you can't **beat** 'em, join 'em! 45
as red as a **beetroot** 9
beg the question 41
I **beg** to differ. 45
behind your back 3
at / **behind** the wheel 16
the power **behind** the throne 33
I'll **believe** it when I see it. 12
go **belly** up 29
below the **belt** 19
fringe **benefits** 6
give sb / sth a wide **berth** 14
have your **best** interests at heart 54
bête noire 13
better safe than sorry. 11
two heads are **better** than one 50
between a rock and a hard place 31
between you and me 43
beyond your wildest dreams 40
be **beyond** the pale 3
Big Brother 22
big fish in a small pond 30
big time 8
give sb a **big** hand 53
if and it's a **big** if 39
Mr **Big** 33
the **bigger** they are / come, the harder they fall 59
eat like a **bird** 34
take the **biscuit** / cake 7
bite off more than one can chew 42
bite the bullet 42
bite the hand that feeds you 53
hold / **bite** your tongue 18
black and blue 10
black and white 10
a **black** mark 4
a wet **blanket** 27
my heart **bleeds** 54
be on the **blink** 24
Ignorance is **bliss**. 12
a chip off the old **block** 26
new kid on the **block** 33
blood, sweat and tears 10
burst a **blood** vessel 36
have **blood** on your hands 39
make your **blood** boil 36
your own flesh and **blood** 26
bloody confrontations 39
blow your mind 35, 57
blow your own trumpet 60
a death **blow** 56
be **blown** away by sth 6
blue-sky thinking 31
be a bolt from the **blue** 43
black and **blue** 10
the boys in **blue** 28
bluff your way 4
across the **board** 30
go by the **board** 14
tread the **boards** 25
it doesn't float my **boat** 8
Whatever floats your **boat**! 8
not be short of a **bob** or two 50
over my dead **body** 56
make your blood **boil** 36
be a **bolt** from the blue 43
drop a **bombshell** 15
bone dry 47
bone of contention 38
bone to pick 38
as dry as a **bone** 9
bring to **book** 28
throw the **book** at 28
that's a turn-up for the **books** 43
your heart is in your **boots** 54
bored out of your mind 57
live on **borrowed** time 55
cut **both** / two ways 50
all hot and **bothered** 36
rock **bottom** 47
the **bottom** drops / falls out of the market 30
in leaps and **bounds** 23
have plenty of strings to your **bow** 27
Pandora's **box** 20
think outside the **box** 31
tick all the **boxes** 31
the **boys** in blue 28
the **brainchild** of sb 24
put the **brakes** on 16
hold out an olive **branch** 38
be the **breadwinner** 32
Give me a **break**! 12, 44
not **break** the bank 32

eat sb for **breakfast** 27
cross that **bridge** when you come to it 42
water under the **bridge** 38
as **bright** as a button 9
Look on the **bright** side. 12
bring home the bacon 32
bring sb down a peg or two 50
bring the house down 25
bring to book 28
bring to the table 31
in **broad** daylight 47
If it ain't **broke**, don't fix it! 24
Big **Brother** 22
cry / weep **buckets** 7
be **built** on sand 46
Rome wasn't **built** in a day. 11
bite the **bullet** 42
bumper to **bumper** 10
be a **bundle** of nerves 36
dead and **buried** 56
burn the midnight oil 34
money to **burn** 32
burning the candle at both ends 23
have sth **burning** a hole in your pocket 6
fiddle while Rome **burns** 20
burst a blood vessel 36
bury your head in the sand 1
mind your own **business** 57
go **bust** 29
hustle and **bustle** 10
no ifs and **buts** 52
as bright as a **button** 9
push the right **buttons** 24
let **bygones** be bygones 38
rattle sb's **cage** 36
take the biscuit / **cake** 7
the frosting / icing on the **cake** 7
call a spade a spade 22
call to arms 15
amid mounting **calls** 39
launch a **campaign** 4
like the cat that ate the **canary** 7
burning the **candle** at both ends 23
a loose **cannon** 27
to **cap** it all 51
get the red **card** 19
play your ace / trump **card** 19
hold all the **cards** 19
keep / play your **cards** close to your chest 19
for all sb **cares** 51
sweep sth under the **carpet** 37
a **case** in point 41
cold / hard **cash** 7
be strapped for **cash** 32
cast your mind back 57
castles in the air 22
be a **casualty** of 4
fight like **cat** and dog 7, 9
like the **cat** that ate the canary 7
like the **cat** that got the cream 7
not have a **cat** in hell's chance 17
put the **cat** amongst the pigeons 38
play **cat** and mouse 48
the **cat**'s whiskers 17
a **Catch**-22 situation 22
catch some z's 7
like a deer / rabbit **caught** in the headlights 3
an Aladdin's **cave** 22
a glass **ceiling** 29
be / take **centre** stage 4, 25
nearly fall off your **chair** 43
chalk and cheese 10
a fighting **chance** 15
fat **chance** 44
given half a **chance** 49
not have a cat in hell's **chance** 17
a leopard can't **change** its spots 17
plus ça **change** 13
ring the **changes** 42
plunge into **chaos** 39
a **chapter** of accidents 37
live a **charmed** life 55
Prince **Charming** 22
a wild-goose **chase** 21
the **chattering** classes 33
cheap and cheerful 32
take a rain **check** 19
turn the other **cheek** 20
cheap and **cheerful** 32
chalk and **cheese** 10
keep / play your cards close to your **chest** 19
bite off more than you can **chew** 42
be no spring **chicken** 52
a **chip** off the old block 26
as poor as a **church** mouse 9
a second-class **citizen** 33
drop a **clanger** 43
the chattering **classes** 33
come **clean** 40
squeaky-**clean** 47
take sb to the **cleaner**'s 32
clear the air 38

as **clear** as crystal 9
as **clear** as mud 9
crystal **clear** 47
too **clever** by half 49
clip sb's wings 5
round the **clock** 23
keep / play your cards **close** to your chest 19
a wolf in sheep's **clothing** 17
a **cloud** on the horizon 30
Every **cloud** has a silver lining. 11
a **cog** in the machine 24
two sides of the same **coin** 50
cold / hard cash 7
in the **cold** light of day 37
stone **cold** 47
be on a **collision** course 16
come clean 40
come into your own 60
come out fighting 15
come to a standstill 16
come up trumps 46
a dream **come** true 35
cross that bridge when you **come** to it 42
first **come**, first served 11
The bigger they are / **come**, the harder they fall. 59
until the cows **come** home 17
Pride **comes** before a fall. 59
take each day as it **comes** 34
creature **comforts** 34
not know whether you're **coming** or going 34
What is the world **coming** to? 44
common ground 38
Two's **company**, three's a crowd. 50
compos mentis 13
bloody **confrontations** 39
bone of **contention** 38
a **contradiction** in terms 41
the **conventional** wisdom 41
be **cool** with 8
play it **cool** 48
corner the market 29
in a tight **corner** 37
can **count** sth on the fingers of one hand 53
under the **counter** 28
war-torn **country** 39
as a matter of **course** 41
be on a collision **course** 16
run its **course** 2
the **course** of true love never did run smooth 21
under **cover** of darkness 39
until the **cows** come home 17
a hard nut to **crack** 58
from the **cradle** to the grave 5
nook and **cranny** 10
like the cat that got the **cream** 7
creature comforts 34
it's not **cricket** 19
an armchair **critic** 25
shed **crocodile** tears 17
cross that bridge when you come to it 42
be at a **crossroads** 4
a **crowd**-puller 25
stand out from the **crowd** 40
Two's company, three's a **crowd**. 50
cry / weep buckets 7
cry wolf 17
cry your heart out 54
crystal clear 47
crème de la **crème** 13
make sb's toes **curl** 18
throw sb a **curveball** 7
a **cushy** number 29
cut and run 14
cut both / two ways 50
can't **cut** the mustard 46
at the **cutting** edge 24, 31
C'est la vie. 13
as fresh as a **daisy** 9
the sword of **Damocles** 19
all-singing, all-**dancing** 51
under cover of **darkness** 39
have a bad hair **day** 34
in the cold light of **day** 37
not give sb the time of **day** 26
Rome wasn't built in a **day**. 11
take each **day** as it comes 34
in broad **daylight** 47
sb's / sth's **days** are numbered 5
the good old **days** 5
the halcyon **days** 20
de facto 13
dead and buried 56
dead in the water 56
dead to the world 56
dead wood 56
a **dead** duck 56
as **dead** as a dodo 56
flog a **dead** horse 17
in the **dead** of night 56
over my **dead** body 56
fall on **deaf** ears 59
be **dealt** a lousy hand 53

nearest and **dearest** 26
a **death** blow 56
a **death** trap 56
a fate worse than **death** 56
a living **death** 56
a matter of life and / or **death** 56
be at **death**'s door 56
dice with **death** 19
sick to **death** of sth 56
the kiss of **death** 56
debt of honour 2
all hands on **deck** 14
like a **deer** / rabbit caught in the headlights 3
be sb's heart's **desire** 54
dice with death 19
the **dice** are loaded against 19
every Tom, **Dick** and Harry 5
I beg to **differ**. 45
a world of **difference** 40, 45
same **difference** 44
dig your own grave 60
not be worth a **dime** 7
play **dirty** 48
a recipe for **disaster** 46
note of **discord** 45
a last-**ditch** attempt 39
as dead as a **dodo** 56
dog eat **dog** 31
dog in the manger 17
a **dog**'s life 17
be like a **dog** with two tails 50
fight like cat and **dog** 7, 9
work like a **dog** 9
You can't teach an old **dog** new tricks 23
let sleeping **dogs** lie 38
domino effect 2
donkey / grunt work 7
be at death's **door** 56
get a foot in the **door** 29
open the **door** to 2, 41
double whammy 46
down in the dumps 36
down the line 16
beat sb / sth hands **down** 40
bring sb **down** a peg or two 50
bring the house **down** 25
go **down** a storm 46
go **down** a treat 35
go **down** like a lead balloon 46
send shivers **down** your spine 25
shoot sb **down** in flames 15
throw money **down** the drain 32
win hands **down** 53
in dribs and **drabs** 10
throw money down the **drain** 32
a **dream** come true 35
be / live in a **dream** world 55
beyond your wildest **dreams** 40
in **dribs** and drabs 10
You can lead a horse to water (but you can't make it **drink**). 12
drive a hard bargain 58
drive like a maniac 9
a back-seat **driver** 16
in the **driving** seat 16
drop a bombshell 15
drop a clanger 43
drop in on 2
drop the ball 7
drop / fall into your lap 59
the penny **drops** 43
the bottom **drops** / falls out of the market 30
punch-**drunk** 19
as **dry** as a bone 9
as **dry** as dust 9
bone **dry** 47
leave sb high and **dry** 14
a dead **duck** 56
down in the **dumps** 36
as dry as **dust** 9
go in one **ear** and out the other 23
have the **ear** of sb 26
listen with half an **ear** 49
make a pig's **ear** of sth 37
fall on deaf **ears** 59
prick your **ears** up 2
It's **easy** to be wise after the event. 12
Take it **easy**. 12
eat like a bird 34
eat like a horse 34
eat like a pig 34
eat sb for breakfast 27
eat sb out of house and home 21
dog **eat** dog 31
have sb **eating** out of the palm of your hand 53
at the cutting **edge** 24, 31
keep sb on the **edge** of their seat 25
domino **effect** 2
You're teaching your grandmother to suck **eggs**! 23
rig an **election** 33
the **elephant** in the room 17
eleventh-hour 39

end of (story)! 8
help sb no **end** 52
it will all **end** in tears 44
make your hair stand on **end** 21
no **end** of 52
make **ends** meet 32
public **enemy** number one 33
engulfed in flames 39
enough is as good as a feast. 12
fair **enough** 44
enter into the spirit of sth 35
push the **envelope** 31
epic proportions 20
Don't **even** go there! 8
It's easy to be wise after the **event**. 12
every cloud has a silver lining. 11
every Tom, Dick and Harry 5
here, there and **everywhere** 10
it does **exactly** what it says on the tin 8
no **expense** spared 32
go the **extra** mile 8
a twinkle in your father's **eye** 26
be in the public **eye** 33
be one in the **eye** for sb 18
in the twinkling of an **eye** 21
see **eye** to **eye** 1, 6
take your **eye** off the ball 37
there's more to sth than meets the **eye** 18
watch with half an **eye** 49
the green-**eyed** monster 21
have stars in your **eyes** 35
pull the wool over sb's **eyes** 28
face-saving 18
a **face** like thunder 9
a slap in the **face** 37
lose **face** 18
sb's **face** doesn't fit 18
bare-**faced** lies 47
poker-**faced** 19
the **fact** of the matter is 31
de **facto** 13
fair enough. 44
fair's **fair** 12
a **fair**-weather friend 26
All's **fair** in love and war. 11
a **fait** accompli 13
be au **fait** with 13
fall foul of 59
fall from grace 59
fall into line 30, 59
fall into the trap of 59
fall into your lap 59
fall into the wrong hands 59
fall off the radar 8
fall on deaf ears 59
fall on hard times 58, 59
fall on your sword 20
fall over yourself to do sth 59
fall short of 59
fall through the floor 59
fall for sb / sth hook, line and sinker 59
nearly **fall** off your chair 43
Pride comes before a **fall**. 59
The bigger they are / come, the harder they **fall**. 59
be **falling** apart at the seams 59
the bottom drops / **falls** out of the market 30
run in the **family** 26
the shit hits the **fan** 3
footloose and **fancy**-free 26
I wouldn't trust sb as **far** as I could throw them. 44
So **far**, so good. 12
hard-and-**fast** rules 58
life in the **fast** lane 16
fat chance 44
It's not over until the **fat** lady sings. 12
a **fate** worse than death 56
tempt **fate** 42
a twinkle in your **father**'s eye 26
do me a **favour** 44
Enough is as good as a **feast**. 12
feather your own nest 3, 60
bite the hand that **feeds** you 53
feel hard done by 58
have a sinking **feeling** 36
no hard **feelings** 58
have two left **feet** 50
pull the rug from under your **feet** 37
at one **fell** swoop 21
sit on the **fence** 6
fiddle while Rome burns 20
be on the **fiddle** 28
play second **fiddle** 48
fight for your life 39
fight like cat and dog 7, 9
fighting fit 47
a **fighting** chance 15
come out **fighting** 15
a ballpark **figure** 30
filthy rich 47
in the **final** / last analysis 41
keep your **finger** on the pulse 18
point the **finger** at 18

fingers and thumbs 10
can count sth on the **fingers** of one hand 53
put / stick two **fingers** up at sth 50
baptism of **fire** 15
hang **fire** 15
first and foremost 41
first come, **first** served 11
at **first** glance 43
the **first** lady of sth 8
big **fish** in a small pond 30
There are plenty more **fish** in the sea. 12
fit like a glove 9
fighting **fit** 47
sb's face doesn't **fit** 18
If it ain't broke, don't **fix** it. 24
get / take the **flak** 4
an old **flame** 26
engulfed in **flames** 39
shoot sb down in **flames** 15
a **flash** in the pan 1, 15
as quick as a **flash** 9
your own **flesh** and blood 26
pound of **flesh** 21
it doesn't **float** my boat 8
Whatever **floats** your boat! 8
flog a dead horse 17
fall through the **floor** 59
fly by the seat of your pants 16
fly the nest 26
be **flying** high 16
be no / nobody's **fool** 52
play sb for a **fool** 48
act / play the **fool** 27
get a **foot** in the door 29
put your **foot** down 38
put your **foot** in it 1
shoot yourself in the **foot** 15
footloose and fancy-free 26
join **forces** with 4
first and **foremost** 41
a small **fortune** 47
fall **foul** of 59
footloose and fancy-**free** 26
There's no such thing as a **free** lunch. 52
as **fresh** as a daisy 9
be **fresh** out of sth 7
Girl / Man / Person **Friday** 22
Any **friend** of yours is a **friend** of mine. 12
a fair-weather **friend** 26
have **friends** in high places 26
fringe benefits 6
the **frosting** / icing on the cake 7
full of the joys of spring 35
full stop 47
live life to the **full** 40
no pain no **gain** 11
Nothing ventured, nothing **gained**. 11
play to the **gallery** 25
a **game** plan 48
a whole new ball **game** 19
ahead of the **game** 46
play a / the waiting **game** 48
play sb at their own **game** 60
play the **game** 48
raise your **game** 48
the **game**'s up 48
the name of the **game** 48
two can play at that **game** 50
poacher turned **gamekeeper** 28
play **games** 48
gardening leave 30
gas guzzler 24
run the **gauntlet** 15
go / move / step up a **gear** 16
get off your backside 3
be **getting** / going nowhere 4
give me a break! 12, 44
give your right arm for 18
give and / or take 10
give sb a big hand 53
give sb / sth a wide berth 14
give sb the hard sell 58
give sth a miss 34
give / get the green light 16
not **give** sb the time of day 26
wouldn't **give** sth house room 36
given half a chance 49
be **given** / get your marching orders 4
be **given** the go-ahead 39
be **given** the sack 3
at first **glance** 43
a **glass** ceiling 29
fit like a **glove** 9
the **gloves** are off 31
a **glutton** for punishment 27
go in one ear and out the other 23
go back a long way 26
go belly up 29
go bust 29
go by the board 14
go down a storm 46
go down a treat 35

go down like a lead balloon 46
go haywire 24
go in one ear and out the other 23
go off the rails 16
go out like a light 34
go out on the town 34
go spare 3
go the extra mile 8
go the whole hog 22
go their own ways 60
go to your head 18
go to the wall 29
go up in the world 2
go with a swing 35
go / move / step up a gear 16
be given the **go**-ahead 39
Don't even **go** there! 8
from the word **go** 43
get-up and **go** 27
happy-**go**-lucky 35
it's all systems **go** 51
Mind how you **go**. 57
no-**go** area 52
an own **goal** 60
move the **goalposts** 19
get your **goat** 36
sort (out) the sheep from the **goats** 17
play **God** 48
your heart **goes** out to sb 54
be **going** great guns 29
be getting / **going** nowhere 4
be heavy-**going** 25
hard **going** 58
not know whether you're coming or **going** 34
a heart of **gold** 54
golden handshake 29
golden hello 29
good riddance (to bad rubbish)! 12z, 44
all in **good** time 51
do sb the world of **good** 40
Enough is as **good** as a feast. 12
for **good** reason 43
have a **good** head for sth 18
have a **good** mind to 49
make **good** headway 14
no news is **good** news 52
So far, so **good**. 12
the **good** old days 5
a wild-**goose** chase 21
play **gooseberry** 48
You've **got** me there. 44
fall from **grace** 59
would sell your own **grandmother** 32
You're teaching your **grandmother** to suck eggs! 23
grass roots 33
as silent as the **grave** 9
dig your own **grave** 60
from the cradle to the **grave** 5
gravy train 34
be going **great** guns 30
give / get the **green** light 17
the **green**-eyed monster 22
grey vote 33
men in **grey** suits 33
a lot of **ground** to make up 23
common **ground** 38
stand your **ground** 38
donkey / **grunt** work 7
no prizes for **guessing** sth 52
be going great **guns** 29
slog your **guts** out 29
gas-**guzzler** 24
have a bad **hair** day 34
make your **hair** stand on end 21
split **hairs** 45
the **halcyon** days 20
half-measures 49
a **half**-baked scheme 49
a sth and a **half** 49
be **half** the battle 49
be not **half** 49
given **half** a chance 49
have **half** a mind to 49
listen with **half** an ear 49
not **half** 49
not know the **half** of it 49
too clever by **half** 49
watch with **half** an eye 49
meet sb **halfway** 49
hammer out an agreement 39
hand over the reins 53
hand sth to sb on a plate 53
be an old **hand** at sth 53
be dealt a lousy **hand** 53
bite the **hand** that feeds you 53
can count sth on the fingers of one **hand** 53
give sb a big **hand** 53
have your **hand** in the till 28
have sb eating out of / in the palm of your **hand** 53
have the upper **hand** 53
lay a **hand** on 53
on the one **hand**, on the other **hand** 41

out of **hand** 53
put your **hand** on your heart 53
show your **hand** 53
you have to **hand** it to sb 53
all **hands** on deck 14
beat sb / sth **hands** down 40
can't lay your **hands** on sth 53
fall into the wrong **hands** 59
have blood on your **hands** 39
off your **hands** 53
play into sb's **hands** 53
sit on your **hands** 53
sb's **hands** are tied 53
take matters into your own **hands** 60
win **hands** down 53
golden **handshake** 29
hang fire 15
happy-go-lucky 35
as **happy** as Larry 35
hard-and-fast rules 58
hard going 58
hard to swallow 58
hard up 58
a **hard** nut to crack 58
be **hard** pressed to 58
be **hard** put to 58
between a rock and a **hard** place 31
cold / **hard** cash 7
drive a **hard** bargain 58
fall on **hard** times 58, 59
feel **hard** done by 58
give sb the **hard** sell 58
hit sb **hard** 58
learn the **hard** way 58
make **hard** work of 58
no **hard** feelings 58
rock **hard** 47
play **hardball** 19
harden your heart 54
harder than you'd bargained for 58
The bigger they are / come, the **harder** they fall. 59
every Tom, Dick and **Harry** 5
batten down the **hatches** 14
do a **hatchet** job on 25
go **haywire** 24
be **head** and shoulders above sb 18
be in over your **head** 37
bury your **head** in the sand 18
get your mind / **head** round 57
go to your **head** 18
have a good **head** for sth 18
like a bear with a sore **head** 5
like a deer / rabbit caught in the **headlights** 3
heads will roll 30
put our **heads** together 18
two **heads** are better than one 50
make good **headway** 14
after your own **heart** 60
a **heart** of gold 54
a **heart** of stone 54
be your **heart's** desire 54
cry your **heart** out 54
harden your **heart** 54
have a **heart** 54
have your best interests at **heart** 54
in your heart of **hearts** 54
learn sth off by **heart** 23
my **heart** bleeds 54
not have the **heart** to 54
your **heart** goes out sb 54
your **heart** is in your boots 54
your **heart** isn't in sth 54
put your hand on your **heart** 53
strike at the **heart** of 54
take **heart** 54
wear your **heart** on your sleeve 54
in your heart of **hearts** 54
be **heavy** going 25
Achilles **heel** 20
not have a cat in **hell's** chance 17
the sb / sth from **hell** 8
golden **hello** 29
help sb no end 52
here, there and everywhere 10
an all-time **high** / low 51
be flying **high** 16
be on a **high** 35
have friends in **high** places 26
leave sb **high** and dry 14
ride **high** 46
shoot sky-**high** 30
highly strung 27
Hindsight is a wonderful thing. 12
hit and miss 10
hit sb hard 58
hit the jackpot 35
hit the mark 40
hit the right note 35
hit the spot 35
the shit **hits** the fan 3
ad **hoc** 13
go the whole **hog** 22

hold all the cards 19
hold out an olive branch 38
hold your own 60
hold / bite your tongue 18
have sth burning a **hole** in your pocket 6
pick **holes** in 25
pick **holes** in sth 38
bring **home** the bacon 32
eat sb out of house and **home** 21
until the cows come **home** 17
debt of **honour** 2
on the **hoof** 34
fall for sb / sth **hook**, line and sinker 59
hopping mad 3
cloud on the **horizon** 30
a Trojan **horse** 20
eat like a **horse** 34
flog a dead **horse** 17
straight from the **horse**'s mouth 17
You can lead a **horse** to water (but you can't make him drink). 12
wild **horses** couldn't make me 36
hot off the press 24
all **hot** and bothered 36
piping **hot** 47
eleventh-**hour** 39
at all **hours** 51
bring the **house** down 25
eat sb out of **house** and home 21
on the **house** 34
wouldn't give sth **house** room 36
mind **how** you go 57
huff and puff 10
might as well be **hung** for a sheep as a lamb 19
hustle and bustle 10
sing from the same **hymn sheet** 45
be (skating) on thin **ice** 42
the tip of the **iceberg** 5
the frosting / **icing** on the cake 7
no **ifs** and buts 52
Ignorance is bliss. 12
be under no **illusions** 30
the spitting **image** 26
within an **inch** of your life 55
ad **infinitum** 13
a mine of **information** 27
too much **information** 8
an **inside** job 28
know sth **inside** out 3
have your best **interests** at heart 54
Necessity is the mother of **invention**. 11
an **ivory** tower 22
hit the **jackpot** 35
like nailing **jelly** to a wall 8
an inside **job** 28
do a hatchet **job** on 25
join forces with 4
join the ranks of 15
If you can't beat 'em, **join** 'em! 45
joined-up thinking 31
put sb's nose out of **joint** 37
be no **joke** 52
see the **joke** 4
full of the **joys** of spring 35
more by luck than **judgement** 43
as **keen** as mustard 9
keep your finger on the pulse 18
keep / play your cards close to your chest 19
keep sb on the edge of their seat 25
kick yourself 36
a whizz **kid** 27
new **kid** on the block 33
be two of a **kind** 50
the **kiss** of death 56
knock into shape 2
knock sb for six 19, 36
tie the **knot** 5
know sth inside out 3
not **know** the half of it 49
not **know** whether you're coming or going 34
at the top of the **ladder** 29
It's not over until the fat **lady** sings. 12
the first **lady** of sth 8
laissez-faire 13
might as well be hung for a sheep as a **lamb** 17
win by a **landslide** 33
life in the fast **lane** 17
life in the slow **lane** 17
drop / fall into your **lap** 59
by and **large** 41
as happy as **Larry** 35
a **last**-ditch attempt 39
in the final / **last** analysis 41
last but not least 41
laugh all the way to the bank 32
launch a campaign 4
rest on your **laurels** 20
the long arm of the **law** 28
lay a hand on 53
lay it on with a trowel 21
can't **lay** your hands on sth 53
go down like a **lead** balloon 46

You can **lead** a horse to water (but you can't make it drink). 12
a **leading** light 25
turn over a new **leaf** 42
in **leaps** and bounds 23
learn by rote 23
learn sth off by heart 23
learn the hard way 58
learn your lesson 23
get a new **lease** of life 55
last but not **least** 41
to say the **least** 43
leave no stone unturned 20
leave sb high and dry 14
gardening **leave** 31
have two **left** feet 50
a **leopard** can't change its spots 17
learn your **lesson** 23
teach sb a **lesson** 23
live and **let** live 55
take to the next **level** 30
live a **lie** 55
bare-faced **lies** 47
life in the fast lane 16
life in the slow lane 16
a dog's **life** 17
a matter of **life** and / or death 56
do anything for a quiet **life** 55
fight for your **life** 39
get a **life** 44
get a new lease of **life** 55
get the shock of your **life** 55
have the time of your **life** 55
live a charmed **life** 55
live **life** to the full 40
make sb's **life** a misery 55
risk **life** and limb 55
scare the **life** out of 55
see **life** 55
the **life** and soul of the party 55
Variety is the spice of **life**. 11
within an inch of your **life** 55
throw a **lifeline** 30
a leading **light** 25
be **light** years away from sth 24
be out like a **light** 34
give / get the green **light** 16
go out like a **light** 34
in the cold **light** of day 37
see the **light** 4
have your name in **lights** 25
risk life and **limb** 55
line your own pockets 28
down the **line** 16
fall for sb / sth hook, **line** and sinker 59
fall into **line** 30, 59
toe the **line** 38
tow the **line** 38
every cloud has a silver **lining** 11
listen with half an ear 49
little by **little** 10
live a charmed life 55
live a lie 55
live and let **live** 55
live in each other's pockets 26
live life to the full 40
live in a dream world 55
live on a shoestring 32
live on borrowed time 55
live out of a suitcase 55
live to tell the tale 55
a **living** death 56
the dice are **loaded** against 19
a **lone** voice 45
go back a **long** way 26
the **long** arm of the law 28
look on the bright side 12
look out for number one 27
a **loose** cannon 27
lose your touch 37
lose face 18
lose the plot 37
not **lose** sleep over sth 34
at a **loss** for words 5
there's a **lot** to be said for 43
be dealt a **lousy** hand 53
a **love** rat 27
All's fair in **love** and war. 11
The course of true **love** never did run smooth. 21
star-crossed **lovers** 21
an all-time high / **low** 51
more by **luck** than judgement 43
happy-go-**lucky** 35
like it or **lump** it 3
There's no such thing as a free **lunch**. 52
a cog in the **machine** 24
hopping **mad** 3
self-**made** man 33
in the **main** 41
silent **majority** 33
make a mountain out of a molehill 5
make a name for 3

make a pig's ear of 37
make ends meet 32
make good headway 14
make hard work of 58
make sb's toes curl 18
make sb's life a misery 55
make your blood boil 36
make your hair stand on end 21
wild horses couldn't **make** me 36
that **makes** two of us 50
of your own **making** 60
a **man** / woman of many parts 27
Girl / **Man** / Person Friday 22
self-made **man** 33
dog in the **manger** 17
drive like a **maniac** 9
a man / woman of **many** parts 27
marathon talks 39
steal a **march** on sb 15
be given / get your **marching** orders 4
a black **mark** 4
hit the **mark** 40
corner the **market** 29
the bottom drops / falls out of the **market** 30
take **matters** into your own hands 60
a **matter** of life and death 56
as a **matter** of course 41
mind over **matter** 57
the fact of the **matter** is 31
You **may** well ask! 44
a square **meal** 34
half-**measures** 49
meet sb halfway 49
make ends **meet** 32
there's more to sth than **meets** the eye 18
a **memory** like a sieve 23
men in grey suits 33
be all things to all **men** 51
compos **mentis** 13
a **mere** pittance 47
on **message** 45
the **Midas** touch 20
burn the **midnight** oil 34
might as well be hung for a sheep as a lamb 17
to put it **mildly** 43
go the extra **mile** 8
stick in my **mind** 23
mind how you go 57
mind your back 57
mind your own business 57
mind your Ps and Qs 57
mind your step 57
mind over matter 57
be all in the **mind** 51
blow your **mind** 35, 57
bored out of your **mind** 57
cast your **mind** back 57
get your **mind** / head round 57
have a good **mind** to 49
have a one-track **mind** 57
have half a **mind** to 49
if you put your **mind** to it 57
nobody in their right **mind** 57
of like **mind** 45
of the same **mind** 45
out of your **mind** 57
prey on your **mind** 57
read sb's **mind** 57
stick in my **mind** 23
take your **mind** off it 57
be in two **minds** 45
a **mine** of information 27
Any friend of yours is a friend of **mine**. 12
be a **minefield** 4
up-to-the-**minute** 5
make sb's life a **misery** 55
give sth a **miss** 34
hit and **miss** 10
make a mountain out of a **molehill** 5
at this **moment** in time 31
money for old rope 32
money to burn 32
Monopoly **money** 19
put your **money** where your mouth is 42
throw **money** down the drain 32
Monopoly money 19
the green-eyed **monster** 21
more by luck than judgement 43
bite off **more** than one can chew 42
There are plenty **more** fish in the sea. 12
there's **more** to sth than meets the eye 18
Necessity is the **mother** of invention. 11
set in **motion** 41
set the wheels in **motion** 24
make a **mountain** out of a molehill 5
amid **mounting** calls 39
as poor as a church **mouse** 9
as quiet as a **mouse** 1
play cat and **mouse** 48
put your money where your **mouth** is 42
straight from the horse's **mouth** 17
take the words right out of my **mouth** 45

move the goalposts 19
a smart **move** 40
go / **move** / step up a gear 16
movers and shakers 33
Mr Big 33
as clear as **mud** 9
as stubborn as a **mule** 9
Mum's the word. 12
as keen as **mustard** 9
can't cut the **mustard** 46
shrouded in **mystery** 39
like **nailing** jelly to a wall 8
stark **naked** 47
have your **name** in lights 25
in all but **name** 51
make a **name** for 3
the **name** of the game 48
on the straight and **narrow** 28
nearest and dearest 26
nearly fall off your chair 43
neat and tidy 10
Necessity is the mother of invention. 11
neck and **neck** 10
an albatross around sb's **neck** 22
stick your **neck** out 42
that's all we **need** 44
be a bundle of **nerves** 36
feather your own **nest** 3, 60
fly the **nest** 26
It **never** rains but it pours. 11
The course of true love **never** did run smooth. 21
new kid on the block 33
a whole **new** ball game 19
get a **new** lease of life 55
turn over a **new** leaf 42
no **news** is good **news** 52
in **next** to no time 52
take to the **next** level 30
nice work if you can get it 44
all right on the **night** 25
be like ships that pass in the **night** 22
in the dead of **night** 56
be a **nightmare** 37
no end of 52
no expense spared 32
no-go area 52
no ifs and buts 52
no news is good news 52
no pain **no** gain 11
no prizes for guessing sth 52
no strings attached 52
no time like the present 52
be **no** joke 52
be **no** / nobody's fool 52
be **no** oil painting 52
be **no** picnic 52
be **no** spring chicken 52
be under **no** illusions 30
help sb **no** end 52
in next to **no** time 52
in **no** uncertain terms 52
know **no** bounds 3
leave **no** stone unturned 20
like there's **no** tomorrow 52
There's **no** such thing as a free lunch. 52
There's **no** time like the present. 40, 44
not take **no** for an answer 52
nobody in their right mind 57
be no / **nobody**'s fool 52
bête **noire** 13
non sequitur 13
nook and cranny 10
put sb's **nose** out of joint 37
take a **nosedive** 16, 30
note of discord 45
hit the right **note** 35
nothing ventured, **nothing** gained. 11
all or **nothing** 51
to say **nothing** of 43
be getting / going **nowhere** 4
a cushy **number** 29
look out for **number** one 27
public enemy **number** one 33
sb's / sth's days are **numbered** 5
a hard **nut** to crack 58
be at **odds** with 45
pay over the **odds** 32
in the **offing** 14
oil the wheels 24
be no **oil** painting 52
burn the midnight **oil** 34
pour **oil** on troubled waters 45
a chip off the **old** block 26
an **old** flame 26
be an **old** hand at sth 53
money for **old** rope 32
the good **old** days 5
hold out an **olive** branch 38
at **one** fell swoop 21
be back to square **one** 6
be **one** in the eye for sb 18
can count sth on the fingers of **one** hand 53

have a **one**-track mind 57
look out for number **one** 27
on the **one** hand, on the other hand 41
public enemy number **one** 33
two heads are better than **one** 50
open the door to 2, 41
be given / get your marching **orders** 4
on the one hand, on the **other** hand 41
turn the **other** cheek 20
think **outside** the box 31
outstay your welcome 34
over my dead body 56
be all **over** sb like a rash 9
be in **over** your head 37
fall **over** yourself to do sth 59
hand **over** the reins 53
It's not **over** until the fat lady sings. 12
mind **over** matter 57
not lose sleep **over** sth 34
pay **over** the odds 32
pull the wool **over** sb's eyes 28
that's sb all **over** 51
turn **over** a new leaf 42
after your **own** heart 60
an **own** goal 60
blow your **own** trumpet 60
come into your **own** 60
dig your **own** grave 60
feather your **own** nest 3, 60
get your **own** back 60
go their **own** ways 60
hold your **own** 60
in your **own** time 60
line your **own** pockets 28
mind your **own** business 57
of your **own** making 60
your **own** flesh and blood 26
be your **own** person 60
out of your **own** pocket 5
play sb at their **own** game 60
save your **own** skin 60
take matters into your **own** hands 60
would sell your **own** grandmother 32
as if (he) **owned** the place 60
pack a punch 40
send sb **packing** 21
a **page**-turner 25
no **pain** no gain 11
be no oil **painting** 52
be beyond the **pale** 3
have sb eating out of / in the **palm** of your hand 53
a flash in the **pan** 1, 15
Pandora's box 20
fly by the seat of your **pants** 16
a **paper** tiger 46
part and **parcel** 6
as sick as a **parrot** 17
part and parcel 6
parting shot 20
silent / sleeping **partner** 29
a man / woman of many **parts** 27
the life and soul of the **party** 55
be like ships that **pass** in the night 22
run out of **patience** 36
pay over the odds 32
uneasy **peace** 39
be like two **peas** in a pod 50
bring sb down a **peg** or two 50
not have two **pennies** to rub together 50
penny-pinching 32
be two a **penny** 50
the **penny** drops 43
be your own **person** 60
pick holes in 25
pick holes in sth 38
bone to **pick** 38
be no **picnic** 52
not the whole **picture** 41
eat like a **pig** 34
make a **pig**'s ear of 37
put the cat amongst the **pigeons** 38
penny-**pinching** 32
piping hot 47
a mere **pittance** 47
as if (he) owned the **place** 60
between a rock and a hard **place** 31
put sb in their **place** 38
have friends in high **places** 26
a game **plan** 48
as thick as two short **planks** 9
hand sth to sb on a **plate** 53
play cat and mouse 48
play dirty 48
play for time 48
play games 37
play God 48
play gooseberry 48
play hardball 19
play into sb's hands 53
play it cool 48
play it safe 48
play your ace / trump card 19

play sb at their own game 60
play sb for a fool 48
play second fiddle 48
play the fool 27
play the game 48
play to the gallery 25
play your cards close to your chest 19
two can **play** at that game 50
have **plenty** of strings to your bow 27
There are **plenty** more fish in the sea. 12
lose the **plot** 37
the **plot** thickens 44
plunge into chaos 39
plus ça change 13
poacher turned gamekeeper 28
have sth burning a hole in your **pocket** 6
out of your own **pocket** 5
line your own **pockets** 28
live in each other's **pockets** 26
be like two peas in a **pod** 50
point the finger at 18
point the way to 41
a case in **point** 41
see the **point** 4
sticking **point** 38
poker-faced 19
big fish in a small **pond** 30
as **poor** as a church mouse 9
any **port** in a storm 14
pound of flesh 21
pour oil on troubled waters 45
It never rains but it **pours**. 11
the **power** behind the throne 33
There's no time like the **present**. 40, 44, 52
hot off the **press** 24
be hard **pressed** to 58
prey on your mind 57
prick your ears up 2
Pride comes before a fall. 59
Prince Charming 22
no **prizes** for guessing sth 52
epic **proportions** 20
mind your **Ps** and Qs 57
public enemy number one 33
be in the **public** eye 33
huff and **puff** 10
pull rank 4
pull the rug from under your feet 37
pull the strings 33
pull the wool over sb's eyes 28
not **pull** any punches 19
a crowd-**puller** 25
keep your finger on the **pulse** 18
punch-drunk 19
pack a **punch** 40
not pull any **punches** 19
a glutton for **punishment** 27
push the envelope 31
push the right buttons 24
put our heads together 18
put sb in their place 38
put sb's nose out of joint 37
put the brakes on 16
put two fingers up at sth 50
put your foot down 38
put your foot in it 1
put your hand on your heart 53
put your money where your mouth is 42
put your shoulder to the wheel 42
be hard **put** to 58
if you **put** your mind to it 57
to **put** it mildly 43
a **Pyrrhic** victory 20
mind your Ps and **Qs** 57
beg the **question** 41
out of the **question** 38
as **quick** as a flash 9
be **quids** in 2
as **quiet** as a mouse 1
do anything for a **quiet** life 55
status **quo** 13
like a deer / **rabbit** caught in the headlights 3
the rat **race** 29
fall off the **radar** 8
rags to riches 32
go off the **rails** 16
take a **rain** check 19
It never **rains** but it pours. 11
raise your game 48
as thin as a **rake** 9
as stiff / straight as a **ramrod** 2
pull **rank** 4
join the **ranks** of 15
be all over sb like a **rash** 9
a love **rat** 27
the **rat** race 29
rattle sb's cage 36
razor-sharp 47
reach for the stars 42
read sb's mind 57
for good **reason** 43
see **reason** 4

receive a windfall 30
a **recipe** for disaster 46
track **record** 29
as **red** as a beetroot 9
get the **red** card 19
see **red** 4, 36
reduce to tears 36
rein in spending 30
hand over the **reins** 53
reinvent the wheel 24
rest on your laurels 20
beat a **retreat** 15
filthy **rich** 47
rags to **riches** 32
Good **riddance** (to bad rubbish)! 12, 44
ride high 46
take sb for a **ride** 28
rig an election 33
right off the bat 7
all **right** on the night 25
give your **right** arm for 18
hit the **right** note 35
nobody in their **right** mind 57
push the **right** buttons 24
take the words **right** out of my mouth 45
ring the changes 42
risk life and limb 55
do a **roaring** trade 29
rock bottom 47
rock hard 47
between a **rock** and a hard place 31
it's not **rocket** science 24
on the **rocks** 14
heads will **roll** 30
on a **roll** 46
rolling in the aisles 25
be **rolling** in it 32
Rome wasn't built in a day. 11
fiddle while **Rome** burns 20
the elephant in the **room** 17
wouldn't give sth house **room** 36
grass **roots** 33
money for old **rope** 32
learn by **rote** 23
round the clock 23
get your mind / head **round** 57
get your tongue **round** sth 18
rub shoulders with sb 26
not have two pennies to **rub** together 50
Good riddance (to bad **rubbish**)! 12, 44
pull the **rug** from under your feet 37
hard-and-fast **rules** 58
run a tight ship 3, 14
run in the family 26
run its course 2
run like the wind 9
run out of patience 36
run out of steam 16
run the gauntlet 15
cut and **run** 14
The course of true love never did **run** smooth. 21
do a **runner** 28
be given the **sack** 3
saddled with debt 30
safe and sound 1
better **safe** than sorry 11
play it **safe** 48
there's a lot to be **said** for 43
when all's **said** and done 43
take the wind out of sb's **sails** 14
trim your **sails** 42
same difference 44
be on the **same** wavelength 6
of the **same** mind 45
sing from the **same** hymn sheet 45
two sides of the **same** coin 50
be built on **sand** 46
bury your head in the **sand** 18
save your own skin 60
scrimp and **save** 32
face-**saving** 18
to **say** nothing of 43
to **say** the least 43
it does exactly what it **says** on the tin 8
scare the life out of 55
set the **scene** / stage 41
a half-baked **scheme** 49
it's not rocket **science** 24
settle a **score** 37
up to **scratch** 23
scrimp and save 32
There are plenty more fish in the **sea**. 12
be falling apart at the **seams** 59
a back-**seat** driver 16
fly by the **seat** of your pants 16
in the driving **seat** 16
keep sb on the edge of their **seat** 25
for a split **second** 43
play **second** fiddle 48
a **second**-class citizen 33
see eye to eye 1, 6
see life 55

see reason 4
see red 4, 36
see sense 4
see the joke 4
see the light 4
see the point 4
see the writing on the wall 20
can't **see** the wood for the trees 37
I'll believe it when I **see** it. 12
suck it and **see** 31
self-made man 33
give sb the hard **sell** 58
would **sell** your own grandmother 32
send sb packing 21
send shivers down your spine 25
see **sense** 4
non **sequitur** 13
first come, first **served** 11
set in motion 41
set the scene / stage 41
set the wheels in motion 24
set your sights on 23
settle a score 37
at sixes and **sevens** 10
movers and **shakers** 33
knock into **shape** 2
a short **sharp** shock 28
razor-**sharp** 47
shed crocodile tears 17
a wolf in **sheep**'s clothing 17
might as well be hung for a **sheep** as a lamb 17
sort (out) the **sheep** from the goats 17
shell-shocked 15
take a **shine** to sb 1
run a tight **ship** 3, 14
be like **ships** that pass in the night 22
the **shit** hits the fan 3
send **shivers** down your spine 25
a short sharp **shock** 28
get the **shock** of your life 55
shell-**shocked** 15
live on a **shoestring** 32
shoot yourself in the foot 15
shoot sb down in flames 15
shoot sky-high 30
shut up **shop** 29
a **short** sharp shock 28
as thick as two **short** planks 9
fall **short** of 59
not be **short** of a bob or two 50
parting **shot** 20
put your **shoulder** to the wheel 42
be head and **shoulders** above sb 18
rub **shoulders** with sb 26
show your hand 53
steal the **show** 25
worship at the altar / **shrine** / temple of 30
shrouded in mystery 39
shut up shop 29
sick and tired 5
sick to death of sth 56
as **sick** as a parrot 17
Look on the bright **side**. 12
two **sides** of the same coin 50
a memory like a **sieve** 23
set your **sights** on 23
silent majority 33
silent partner 29
as **silent** as the grave 9
as smooth as **silk** 9
every cloud has a **silver** lining 11
sing from the same hymn sheet 45
all-**singing**, all-dancing 51
It's not over till the fat lady **sings**. 12
sink like a stone 2
fall for sb / sth hook, line and **sinker** 59
have a **sinking** feeling 36
sit on the fence 6
sit on your hands 53
a Catch-22 **situation** 22
knock sb for **six** 19, 36
at **sixes** and sevens 10
That's about the **size** of it! 45
get your **skates** on 12
be (**skating**) on thin ice 42
save your own **skin** 60
blue-**sky** thinking 31
shoot **sky**-high 30
a **slap** in the face 37
sleep on it 34
not lose **sleep** over sth 34
sleeping partner 29
let **sleeping** dogs lie 38
have sth up your **sleeve** 4
wear your heart on your **sleeve** 54
slog your guts out 29
life in the **slow** lane 16
a **small** fortune 47
big fish in a **small** pond 30
a **smart** move 40
be all **smiles** 51
as **smooth** as silk 9

The course of true love never did run **smooth**. 21
So far, **so** good. 12
for a **song** 32
like a bear with a **sore** head 5
Better safe than **sorry**. 11
sort (out) the sheep from the goats 17
the life and **soul** of the party 55
safe and **sound** 1
call a **spade** a **spade** 22
spick and **span** 10
throw a **spanner** in the works 24
go **spare** 3
no expense **spared** 32
rein in **spending** 30
Variety is the **spice** of life. 11
spick and span 10
send shivers down your **spine** 25
spirit of adventure 5
enter into the **spirit** of sth 35
the **spitting** image 26
split hairs 45
for a **split** second 43
throw in the **sponge** 19
hit the **spot** 35
a leopard can't change its **spots** 17
be no **spring** chicken 52
full of the joys of **spring** 35
win your **spurs** 46
a **square** meal 34
be back to **square** one 6
squeaky-clean 47
be / take centre-**stage** 4
set the scene / **stage** 41
at **stake** 43
stand out from the crowd 40
stand your ground 38
make your hair **stand** on end 21
come to a **standstill** 16
star-crossed lovers 21
stark naked 47
have **stars** in your eyes 35
reach for the **stars** 42
status quo 13
steal a march on sb 15
steal the show 25
run out of **steam** 16
step on it 16
mind your **step** 57
go / move / **step** up a gear 16
stick in my mind 23
stick two fingers up at sth 50
stick your neck out 42
sticking point 38
as **stiff** as a ramrod 2
stone cold 47
a heart of **stone** 54
leave no **stone** unturned 20
sink like a **stone** 2
full **stop** 47
a **storm** in a teacup 22
any port in a **storm** 14
go down a **storm** 46
weather the **storm** 14
end of (**story**) 8
straight from the horse's mouth 17
as **straight** as a ramrod 2
on the **straight** and narrow 28
be **strapped** for cash 32
be a tower of **strength** 26
do a **stretch** 28
strike at the heart of 54
have plenty of **strings** to your bow 27
no **strings** attached 52
pull the **strings** 33
highly **strung** 27
as **stubborn** as a mule 9
There's no **such** thing as a free lunch. 52
suck it and see 31
You're teaching your grandmother to **suck** eggs! 23
live out of a **suitcase** 55
men in grey **suits** 33
hard to **swallow** 58
blood, **sweat** and tears 10
sweep sth under the carpet 37
go with a **swing** 35
at one fell **swoop** 21
fall on your **sword** 20
the **sword** of Damocles 20
it's all **systems** go 51
bring to the **table** 31
be like a dog with two **tails** 50
take centre stage 4, 25
take a nosedive 16, 30
take a rain check 19
take a shine to sb 1
take each day as it comes 34
take heart 54
take it easy 12
take matters into your own hands 60
take your eye off the ball 37
take your mind off it 57
take sb for a ride 28

take sb to the cleaner's 32
take the biscuit / cake 7
take the flak 4
take the wind out of sb's sails 14
take the words right out of my mouth 45
take to the next level 30
take years off sb 40
take centre stage 4, 25
give or **take** 10
not **take** no for an answer 52
be **taken** aback 14
It **takes** two to tango. 11, 50
live to tell the **tale** 55
marathon **talks** 39
It takes two to **tango**. 11, 50
teach sb a lesson 23
You can't **teach** an old dog new tricks 23
You're **teaching** your grandmother to suck eggs! 23
a storm in a **teacup** 22
wear and **tear** 10
blood, sweat and **tears** 10
it will all end in **tears** 44
reduce to **tears** 36
shed crocodile **tears** 17
get your **teeth** into sth 18
teething troubles 18
tell me about it 45
live to **tell** the tale 55
time will **tell** 44
worship at the altar / shrine / **temple** of 30
tempt fate 42
a contradiction in **terms** 41
in no uncertain **terms** 52
uncharted **territory** / waters 4
as **thick** as thieves 9
as **thick** as two short planks 9
through **thick** and thin 26
the plot **thickens** 44
as thick as **thieves** 9
as **thin** as a rake 9
be (skating) on **thin** ice 42
through thick and **thin** 26
Hindsight is a wonderful **thing**. 12
not be your **thing** 36
There's no such **thing** as a free lunch. 52
be all **things** to all men 51
think outside the box 31
think twice 42
blue-sky **thinking** 31
joined-up **thinking** 31
I **thought** as much. 44
be batting a **thousand** 7
Two's company, **three**'s a crowd. 50
the power behind the **throne** 33
throw a lifeline 30
throw a spanner in the works 24
throw in the sponge 19
throw money down the drain 32
throw sb a curveball 7
throw the book at 28
I wouldn't trust sb as far as I could **throw** them 44
fingers and **thumbs** 10
a face like **thunder** 9
tick all the boxes 31
neat and **tidy** 10
tie the knot 5
sb's hands are **tied** 53
a paper **tiger** 46
in a **tight** corner 37
run a **tight** ship 3, 14
have your hand in the **till** 28
time after **time** 10
time will tell 44
ahead of its **time** 40
all in good **time** 51
an all-**time** high / low 51
at this moment in **time** 31
big **time** 8
do **time** 28
have the **time** of your life 55
in next to no **time** 52
in your own **time** 60
live on borrowed **time** 55
no **time** like the present 52
not give sb the **time** of day 26
play for **time** 48
There's no **time** like the present. 40, 44
fall on hard **times** 58, 59
it does exactly what it says on the **tin** 8
the **tip** of the iceberg 5
sick and **tired** 5
toe the line 38
make sb's **toes** curl 18
tread on sb's **toes** 18
get your act **together** 6
not have two pennies to rub **together** 50
put our heads **together** 18
all **told** 51
every Tom, **Dick** and Harry 5
like there's no **tomorrow** 52
get your **tongue** round sth 18
hold / bite your **tongue** 18

too clever by half 49
too much information! 8
at the **top** of the ladder 29
be **torn** 45
war-**torn** country 39
argue the **toss** 38
touch base 31
lose your **touch** 37
the Midas **touch** 20
tough it out 42
tow the line 38
be a **tower** of strength 26
an ivory **tower** 22
go out on the **town** 34
track record 29
back on **track** 16
have a one-**track** mind 57
on **track** 23
do a roaring **trade** 29
gravy **train** 33
a death **trap** 56
fall into the **trap** of 59
tread on sb's toes 18
tread the boards 24
go down a **treat** 35
be barking up the wrong **tree** 45
can't see the wood for the **trees** 37
You can't teach an old dog new **tricks** 23
trim your sails 42
a **Trojan** horse 20
pour oil on **troubled** waters 45
teething **troubles** 18
lay it on with a **trowel** 21
a dream come **true** 35
The course of **true** love never did run smooth. 21
play your ace / **trump** card 19
blow your own **trumpet** 60
come up **trumps** 46
I wouldn't **trust** sb as far as I could throw them 44
truth will out 12
turn over a new leaf 42
turn the other cheek 20
do a U-**turn** 16
done to a **turn** 34
poacher **turned** gamekeeper 28
a page-**turner** 25
that's a **turn-up** for the books 43
think **twice** 42
a **twinkle** in your father's eye 26
in the **twinkling** of an eye 21
two can play at that game 50
two heads are better than one 50
two sides of the same coin 50
two's company, three's a crowd. 50
as thick as **two** short planks 9
bring sb down a peg or **two** 50
be in **two** minds 45
be like a dog with **two** tails 50
be like **two** peas in a pod 50
be **two** a penny 50
be **two** of a kind 50
cut both / **two** ways 50
have **two** left feet 50
It takes **two** to tango. 11, 50
not be short of a bob or **two** 50
not have **two** pennies to rub together 50
put / stick **two** fingers up at sth 50
that makes **two** of us 50
do a **U-turn** 16
in no **uncertain** terms 52
uncharted territory / waters 4
uneasy peace 39
leave no stone **unturned** 20
have the **upper** hand 53
upset the apple cart 42
that makes two of **us** 50
Variety is the spice of life. 11
Nothing **ventured**, nothing gained. 11
burst a blood **vessel** 36
a Pyrrhic **victory** 20
C'est la **vie**. 13
a lone **voice** 45
grey **vote** 33
wade through 25
wait in the wings 25
play a / the **waiting** game 48
in sb's / sth's **wake** 14
in the **wake** of sb / sth 14
go to the **wall** 29
like nailing jelly to a **wall** 8
see the writing on the **wall** 20
wax and **wane** 10
war-torn country 39
All's fair in love and **war**. 11
be on the **warpath** 15
watch with half an eye 49
mind / **watch** your back 57
water under the bridge 38
dead in the **water** 56
You can lead a horse to **water** (but you can't make him drink). 12
pour oil on troubled **waters** 45

uncharted territory / **waters** 4
be on the same **wavelength** 6
wax and wane 10
bluff your **way** 4
go back a long **way** 26
laugh all the **way** to the bank 32
learn the hard **way** 58
point the **way** to 41
Where there's a will there's a **way**. 11
cut both / two **ways** 50
go their own **ways** 60
wear and tear 10
wear your heart on your sleeve 54
weather the storm 14
a fair-**weather** friend 26
on a **weekly** basis 31
cry / **weep** buckets 7
outstay your **welcome** 34
You may **well** ask! 44
a **wet** blanket 26
double **whammy** 46
what is the world coming to? 44
it does exactly **what** it says on the tin 8
Whatever floats your boat! 8
at / behind the **wheel** 16
put your shoulder to the **wheel** 42
reinvent the **wheel** 24
oil the **wheels** 24
set the **wheels** in motion 24
when all's said and done 43
cross that bridge **when** you come to it 42
I'll believe it **when** I see it. 12
where there's a will there's a way. 11
put your money **where** your mouth is 42
not know **whether** you're coming or going 34
the cat's **whiskers** 17
black and **white** 10
a **whizz** kid 27
a **whole** new ball game 19
go the **whole** hog 22
not the **whole** picture 41
give sb / sth a **wide** berth 14
wild horses couldn't make me 36
a **wild**-goose chase 21
beyond your **wildest** dreams 40
battle of **wills** 15
win by a landslide 33
win hands down 53
win your spurs 46
run like the **wind** 9
take the **wind** out of sb's sails 14
receive a **windfall** 30
have a **window** 31
clip sb's **wings** 5
wait in the **wings** 24
the conventional **wisdom** 41
It's easy to be **wise** after the event. 12
within an inch of your life 55
a **wolf** in sheep's clothing 17
cry **wolf** 17
a man / **woman** of many parts 27
Hindsight is a **wonderful** thing. 12
can't see the **wood** for the trees 37
dead **wood** 56
pull the **wool** over sb's eyes 28
word for word 23
from the **word** go 43
Mum's the **word**. 12
at a loss for **words** 5
take the **words** right out of my mouth 45
work like a dog 9
donkey / grunt **work** 7
make hard **work** of 58
Nice **work** if you can get it! 44
throw a spanner in the **works** 24
a **world** of difference 40, 45
dead to the **world** 56
go up in the **world** 2
be / live in a dream **world** 55
do yourself the **world** of good 40
What is the **world** coming to? 44
a fate **worse** than death 56
worship at the altar / shrine / temple of 30
not be **worth** a dime 7
lick your **wounds** 2
see the **writing** on the wall 20
be barking up the **wrong** tree 45
don't get me **wrong** 44
fall into the **wrong** hands 59
You're not **wrong**! 45
be light **years** away from sth 24
take **years** off sb 40
catch some **z**'s 7

ENGLISH
IDIOMS
IN USE

Advanced

Improve your understanding of idioms in English.

Explanations and practice of English idioms, written for advanced-level (C1-C2) learners of English. Perfect for both self-study and classroom activities.

- Increase your knowledge of idioms and how to use them, with easy to understand explanations and practice exercises.
- Learn idioms in context, with lots of different topics, including 'Learning', 'Formal writing' and 'Telling stories'.
- Be confident about what you are learning, thanks to Cambridge research into how English is really spoken and written.
- Get better at studying by yourself, with study tips, follow-up tasks and an easy to use answer key.

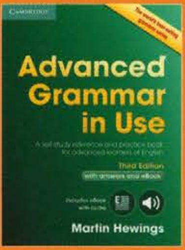

Advanced Grammar in Use

Third Edition

Martin Hewings

ISBN 978 1 107 53930 3

ENGLISH COLLOCATIONS IN USE

Advanced

ISBN 978 1 316 62995 6

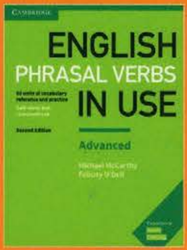

ENGLISH PHRASAL VERBS IN USE

Advanced

ISBN 978 1 316 62809 6

Also available:

ADVANCED GRAMMAR IN USE
ENGLISH COLLOCATIONS IN USE ADVANCED
ENGLISH PHRASAL VERBS IN USE ADVANCED

Better Learning is our simple approach where deeper insights help shape richer content that drives stronger results.

Discover more:

cambridge.org/betterlearning

Deeper Insights
Richer Content
Stronger Results

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org

ISBN 978-1-316-62973-4

CAMBRIDGE

ENGLISH IDIOMS IN USE

62 units of vocabulary reference and practice

Self-study and classroom use

Second Edition

Intermediate

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

Experience
Better
Learning

ENGLISH IDIOMS IN USE

62 units of vocabulary reference and practice

Self-study and classroom use

Second Edition

Intermediate

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom
One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA
477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia
4843/24, 2nd Floor, Ansari Road, Daryaganj, Delhi – 110002, India
79 Anson Road, #06–04/06, Singapore 079906

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/elt

© Cambridge University Press 2017

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2002
Second Edition 2017
20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Printed in Dubai by Oriental Press

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-131-6629888 Paperback

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party Internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

Acknowledgements 3
Using this book 4

Learning about idioms

1 What are idioms?
2 Using your dictionary

Idioms to talk about ...

3 Happiness and sadness
4 Anger
5 Knowing and understanding
6 Experience and perception
7 Success and failure
8 Having problems
9 Dealing with problems
10 Power and authority
11 Structuring and talking about arguments
12 Conversational responses
13 Praise and criticism
14 Opinions on people and actions
15 Behaviour and attitudes
16 Reacting to what others say
17 Danger
18 Effort
19 Necessity and desirability
20 Probability and luck
21 Social status
22 Human relationships
23 Size and position
24 Money
25 Work
26 Speed, distance and intensity
27 Communication 1: words and language
28 Communication 2: expressing yourself
29 Life and experience: proverbs
30 Memory

Idioms from the topic area of ...

31 Time 1: the past and the future
32 Time 2: clocks and frequency
33 The elements
34 Colour
35 Clothes
36 Games and sport
37 Animals 1: describing people
38 Animals 2: describing situations
39 Weapons and war
40 Food
41 Roads
42 Houses and household objects
43 Nature
44 Boats and sailing
45 Science, technology and machines
46 Music and theatre

Idioms using these keywords:

47 Finger, thumb, hand
48 Foot, heel, toe
49 Bones, shoulder, arm, leg
50 Head
51 Face, hair, neck, chest
52 Eyes
53 Ear, lips, mouth, nose, teeth, tongue
54 Heart

55 Brain, mind, blood and guts
56 Back
57 Long
58 Line
59 Act, action, activity
60 Good and bad
61 Ground
62 Similes and idioms with *like* and *as*

Key 130

Phonemic symbols 164

Index 165

Acknowledgements

Sabina Ostrowska wrote two new units for the Second Edition: Unit 35, *Clothes*, and Unit 46, *Music and theatre*. The publishers would like to thank Sabina for her contribution to this edition.

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting & in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable.

Key: BL = Below Left, BR = Below Right, C = Centre, CL = Centre Left, CR = Centre Right, TR = Top Right, TL = Top Left.

Photographs

All the photographs are sourced from Getty Images.

p. 10: PhotoAlto/Sandro Di Carlo Darsa/Brand X Pictures/Getty Images Plus; p. 12: Klubovy/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 20: PhotoAlto/Michele Constantini/PhotoAlto Agency RF Collections; p. 22: Jason Homa/Blend Images; p. 26: Blend Images - JGI/Jamie Grill/Brand X Pictures; p. 30: Tetra Images; p. 38: Ma-Ke/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 40 (CR) & p. 40 (CL): Michael Blann/Iconica; p. 40 (TL): Image Source; p. 40 (C): Peathegee Inc/Blend Images; p. 40 (BL): Izusek/E+; p. 40 (TR): Nick Dolding/Iconica; p. 40 (BR): Drbimages/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 41: Ryuhei Shindo/DigitalVision; p. 44: James Kang/EyeEm; p. 49: Hero Images; p. 54 (TL) & p. 74 (photo 3): Shannon Fagan/The Image Bank; p. 54 (TR): BJI/Lane Oatey; p. 54 (BL) & p. 75 (photo 2): Jamie Grill; p. 54 (C): Mark Scott/The Image Bank; p. 54 (BR): DreamPictures/Vstock/Blend Images; p. 55: FangXiaNuo/E+; p. 74 (photo 1): Daly and Newton/OJO Images; p. 74 (photo 2): Compassionate Eye Foundation/DigitalVision; p. 74 (photo 4): Rick Gomez/Blend Images/Getty Images Plus; p. 74 (photo 5): Yagi Studio/DigitalVision; p. 74 (pocket): Peter Dazeley/Photographer's Choice; p. 75 (photo 1): Robert Chlopas/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 75 (photo 3): AnnBaldwin/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 75 (photo 4): Gary Waters/Ikon Images; p. 75 (photo 5): pidjoe/E+; p. 88 (TR): Matto353/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 88 (CR): Peter Chadwick LRPS/Moment; p. 97 (photo 1): Fgorgun/E+/Getty Images; p. 97 (photo 2): Caiaimage/Paul Bradbury/OJO+; p. 97 (photo 3): roibu/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 97 (photo 4): Duc Françoise/Sygma; p. 97 (photo 5): ranplett/E+; p. 104: Michael Blann/Stone; p. 106: Rob Lewine; p. 120: Tetra Images; p. 124: wasantistock/istock/Getty Images Plus.

Illustrations

Christopher Flint (Lemonade Illustration): pp. 14, 17, 53, 101 and 125; 419 Ludmila (KJA Artists): pp. 10, 13, 29, 35, 51, 54, 65, 80, 86, 95 and 107; John Lund (Beehive Illustration): pp. 8, 11, 25, 31, 36, 55, 69 and 81; Katie Mac (NB Illustration): pp. 22, 23, 33, 47, 63, 77, 105, 112, 114 and 118; 302 Martina (KJA Artists): pp. 21, 39, 71, 89, 108 and 127.

Using this book

Why was this book written?

It was written to help you improve your knowledge of idioms in English. Idioms are fixed expressions whose meaning is not immediately obvious from looking at the individual words in the idiom. You will come across a great many idioms when you listen to and read English. So it is important that you learn about the meanings of idioms and about how they are used. You can use this book either with a teacher or for self-study.

We wanted to encourage language learners to have a balanced approach to idioms in English. Sometimes in the past, teachers used to argue that it was a waste of time for learners to study idioms as they might start using them in an inaccurate or unsuitable way. But idioms are in such widespread use that it is inappropriate to ignore them. This book focuses just on those idioms which the modern student needs to know and it aims to provide the information and practice which will help you understand and use them correctly.

How were the idioms in the book selected?

There are a great many idioms in English, but some of them sound rather old-fashioned or are not very widely used. The idioms which are worked on in this book were mainly selected from those identified as significant based on computer searches of huge language databases: the CANCODE corpus of spoken English, developed at the University of Nottingham in association with Cambridge University Press, and the Cambridge International Corpus of written and spoken English (now known as the Cambridge International Corpus). These databases show us how the idioms have actually been used by native speakers of English in conversations, newspapers, novels, and many other contexts. The idioms selected are all also to be found in the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary 4th Edition* where additional examples and usage notes will also be found. You can search this dictionary online by going to the following website: http://dictionary.cambridge.org

How is the book organised?

The book has 62 two-page units. The left-hand page presents the idioms that are worked on in the unit. You will usually find an explanation of the meaning of each idiom, an example of it in use and, where appropriate, any special notes about its usage. The right-hand page checks that you have understood the information on the left-hand page by giving you a series of exercises that practise the material just presented. The exercises pay particular attention to checking your understanding of the idioms and how they are used because this is more important for most learners than being able to actively use the idioms.

The units are organised in three sections:

Idioms to talk about … which groups idioms according to the topic area that they are used to talk about. Thus, **be snowed under** [have an enormous amount of work to do] is included in Unit 25, Work.

Idioms from the topic area of … which groups idioms according to the image they are based on. Thus, **hit the roof** [react in a very angry way] is included in Unit 42, Houses and household objects.

Idioms using these keywords which groups idioms according to keywords in them. For example, Unit 50 deals with a set of idioms based on the word **head**.

The book also has a key to all the exercises and an index which lists the 1,000 idioms we deal with and indicates the units where they can each be found.

How should I use this book?

The first two units of the book, Unit 1, What are idioms? and Unit 2, Using your dictionary are introductory units. It is strongly recommended that you work through these units first. After that, you may work on the units in any order that suits you.

What else do I need in order to work with this book?

You need a notebook or file in which you can write down the idioms that you study in this book as well as any others that you come across elsewhere.

You also need to have access to a good dictionary. We strongly recommend the *Cambridge Learner's Dictionary* as this gives exactly the kind of information that you need to have about idioms. Your teacher, however, may also be able to recommend other dictionaries that you will find useful.

So, we hope that this book will 'shed light' on all you need to know about English idioms (see Unit 9) and that, by the time you finish the units, you'll be saying: 'English idioms? A piece of cake!' (see Unit 18).

1 What are idioms?

A Idioms and meaning

Idioms are expressions which have a meaning that is not obvious from the individual words. For example, the idiom **drive someone round the bend** means *make someone angry or frustrated*, but we cannot know this just by looking at the words.

The best way to understand an idiom is to see it in context. If someone says:

That noise is driving me round the bend! It's so annoying!

then the context and common sense tells us that **drive round the bend** means something different from driving a car round a curve in the road. The context tells us the noise is annoying and that it's having an effect on the person hearing it.

B Types of idioms

form	example	meaning
verb + object/complement (and/or adverbial)	**kill two birds with one stone**	produce two useful results by just doing one action
prepositional phrase	**in the blink of an eye**	in an extremely short time
compound	**a bone of contention**	something which people argue and disagree over
simile /ˈsɪmɪli/ (as + adjective + *as*, or *like* + noun)	**as dry as a bone**	very dry indeed
binomial (word + *and* + word)	**rough and ready**	crude and lacking sophistication
trinomial (word + word + *and* + word)	**cool, calm and collected**	relaxed, in control, not nervous
whole clause or sentence	**to cut a long story short**	to tell the main points, but not all the fine details

C Fixed aspects of idioms

Most idioms are fixed in their form, and cannot be changed or varied. Sometimes, however, the grammar or the vocabulary can be varied slightly. Where this book or a dictionary gives information on what can be varied, always note it in your vocabulary notebook.

variation	example
Occasionally an idiom in the active voice can be used in the passive.	Government Ministers always **pass the buck** if they are challenged about poverty. [blame someone else / refuse to accept responsibility] The **buck has been passed** from Minister to Minister. No one seems prepared to accept the responsibility.
Some verb-based idioms also have noun-compound forms.	There is too much **buck-passing** in government nowadays. No one accepts the blame for anything.
One or more words in the idiom can be varied.	don't **give me a hard/rough/tough time**. [don't make things difficult for me]

Exercises

1.1 **How much can you guess about the meaning of these idioms just by looking at the context? Tick the boxes according to what you can understand about the words in bold.**

1 I decided I was going to get a place at university **by hook or by crook**. It had always been my dream to study for a degree in history.

	YES	NO	DON'T KNOW/ CAN'T TELL
means using illegal methods if necessary	☐	☐	☐
means nothing will stop me	☐	☐	☐
means was very determined	☐	☐	☐

See Unit 18.

2 The government and the unions are **at loggerheads**; there may be a general strike.

	YES	NO	DON'T KNOW/ CAN'T TELL
means have a good relationship	☐	☐	☐
means hate each other	☐	☐	☐
means disagree very strongly	☐	☐	☐

See Unit 22.

3 We had to **pay through the nose** to get our visas in five days instead of the usual 30 days.

	YES	NO	DON'T KNOW/ CAN'T TELL
means suffer in some way	☐	☐	☐
means pay a small sum of money	☐	☐	☐
means pay a large sum of money	☐	☐	☐

See Unit 24.

1.2 **Classify the idioms in the sentences below according to their grammatical type:**

Type A	verb + object/complement (and/or adverbial)	Type D	simile
Type B	prepositional phrase	Type E	binomial or trinomial
Type C	compound	Type F	whole clause or sentence

1 Should we fly or go by train? What are the pros and cons?
Type: .... **See Unit 11.**

2 I'm having second thoughts about going on holiday with Jean. She can be a bit difficult.
Type: .... **See Unit 6.**

3 When I had finished all my exams, I felt as free as a bird.
Type: .... **See Unit 62.**

4 I don't know much about design, so I gave the decorator a free hand in my new flat.
Type: .... **See Unit 47.**

5 She comes from a rather well-to-do family. She's always had a comfortable life.
Type: .... **See Unit 24.**

6 My old school friend Harriet arrived out of the blue. I hadn't seen her for 15 years.
Type: .... **See Unit 43.**

1.3 **Correct the mistakes in the idioms in these sentences. Use the clues in brackets. Use a good general dictionary or a dictionary of idioms if necessary.**

1 My father's foot was put down when I said I wanted a car for my seventeenth birthday. He said I was too young. (grammar – voice) **See Unit 48.**

2 Her words put the cat among the birds; Sam is furious. (vocabulary) **See Unit 38.**

3 You'll be pleased to hear we arrived sound and safe in Peru. (binomial) **See Unit 17.**

4 He was lying in his teeth when he said he had got a first-class grade in his exam; the truth is he failed. (grammar – small word) **See Unit 53.**

Cambridge Dictionary
ry.cambridge.org

2 Using your dictionary

A What do you look up?

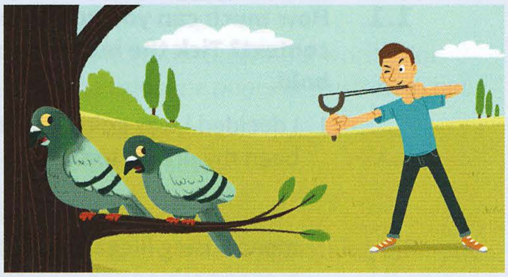

As it can be difficult to work out what an idiom means even when you know all the individual words in the idiom, you will often need to look up idioms in a dictionary. If you are working with an online dictionary, then you will have no problems finding the idiom in question, but working with a traditional dictionary, you have to find where the idiom is listed. As an idiom consists of several words, which of these do you look up in your dictionary? For example, do you try to find **kill two birds with one stone** under *kill*, *two*, *birds* or *stone*, or **let the cat out of the bag** under *let, cat* or *bag*?

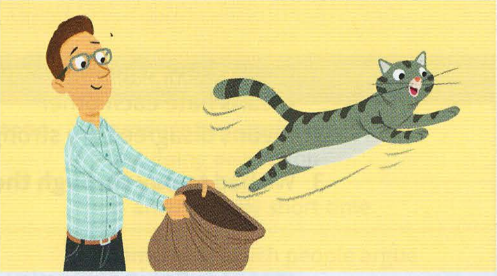

If you are using either the *Cambridge International Dictionary of Idioms* (CIDI) or the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary* (CALD), then the easiest way of finding what you need is to look in the alphabetical index at the back of the book. This lists all the expressions included in the dictionary with the word where an entry for the expression will be found in the dictionary highlighted in bold. This shows that in CIDI **kill two birds with one stone** will be found under *two* and **let the cat out of the bag** will be found under *cat*. In CALD these two idioms will be found under *kill* and *cat*.

If you are using a different dictionary, read its introductory notes now to see how it deals with idioms. This will avoid the frustration you would otherwise feel on deciding to look up the wrong element of the idiom first.

B What information does your dictionary give you?

Your dictionary will tell you a lot of other things as well as the meaning of the idiom. As idioms are used in such fixed ways, it is important to read the notes in your dictionary carefully if you want to use idioms as well as to understand them.

You will find all these things in a good dictionary of idioms:

- information about words that are interchangeable, e.g. **drive/send sb round the bend**
- information about how the idiom is used – brackets, for example, show if any words in the idiom can be left out, e.g. **I (can) feel it in my bones**.
- notes about the grammar of the idiom – there may be notes, for example, to say that an idiom is usually used in a passive construction or in a continuous form or in a negative sentence
- examples of the idiom in use
- comments on register – the register labels used in CIDI are *informal*, *formal*, *very informal*, *old-fashioned*, *taboo*, *humorous* and *literary*
- notes about regional variations in use – this is important as many British idioms will sound very strange to an American and vice versa

Tip

It is not possible for this book to include as much information about each idiom as you will find in a dictionary. So, look up the idioms that you particularly want to learn from this book in a dictionary as well. In your vocabulary notebook, write any further information or other examples of the idioms in the context that you find in the dictionary.

Exercises

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

2.1 Look up the idioms in these sentences in your dictionary. What word is each idiom listed under?

1 It's the person in the street who **picks up the bill** for the government's mistakes.
2 She had a wonderful trip to Australia, but now she's **come back down to earth with a bump.**
3 John had a furious argument with his supervisor, but he managed to **stand his ground.**
4 He's feeling very miserable, so there's no need for you to **stick the knife in** too.
5 You**'re banging your head against a brick wall** trying to get him to help you.
6 You **scared the living daylights out of** me by creeping up behind me like that.

2.2 Which word(s) could be left out of the idioms in these sentences?

1 It's always hard when you have to **come back down to earth with a bump** after a holiday.
2 No one thought she could climb the mountain without oxygen, but she succeeded **against all the odds.**
3 She **hit him where it hurt most** by telling him that he had always been a disappointment to his parents.
4 The way he reacted **scared the living daylights out** of me!

2.3 Which word in each idiom could be changed for another word?

1 Don't worry about a thing – I'm sure the company will **pick up the bill.**
2 **I came back down to earth with a bump** when I saw the pile of post waiting for me after the weekend.
3 The army had lost many of its men, but it managed to **stand its ground.**
4 Why do critics seem to enjoy **sticking the knife into** untalented actors and writers?
5 I feel as if **I'm banging my head against a brick wall** with him at the moment.
6 It's a terrifying film – it **scared the living daylights out of** me!

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

2.4 What grammatical information does your dictionary give about these idioms? Read the information and then write a sentence with each idiom.

1 look a gift horse in the mouth
2 be banging your head against a brick wall
3 be on the brink of
4 tie yourself up in knots
5 be man enough

2.5 Match the register labels in the box with the idioms in the sentences below.

formal humorous informal literary old-fashioned very informal

1 I really don't like him – he's such **a slime ball.**
2 OK. I'll do the washing-up. **There's no peace for the wicked!**
3 Her family has lived in that village **from time immemorial.**
4 My grandma always used to say that **an apple a day keeps the doctor away.**
5 The food was so delicious – we **stuffed our faces.**
6 I hope that what I have said will **give you pause for thought.**

3 Happiness and sadness

A Extreme happiness

There are many informal idioms which mean *extremely happy.*

I'm **thrilled to bits.**

I am/feel **on top of the world.**

I'm **on cloud nine.**

I'm **over the moon.**

I'm **in seventh heaven.**

B Other happiness idioms

idiom	meaning	example
get a (real) kick out of something	very much enjoy doing something (informal)	I get a (real) kick out of going for a run first thing in the morning before anyone else is up.
do something for kicks	do something because it is exciting, usually something dangerous (informal)	Kate is keen to have a go at bungee-jumping – just for kicks.
jump for joy	be very happy and excited about something that has happened	Rowena jumped for joy when she heard that she'd won first prize.
be floating/ walking on air	be very happy about something good that happened	I've been walking on air ever since Chris and started going out together.
something makes your day	something makes you feel very happy	It's great to hear from you. It's really made my day.

C Sadness

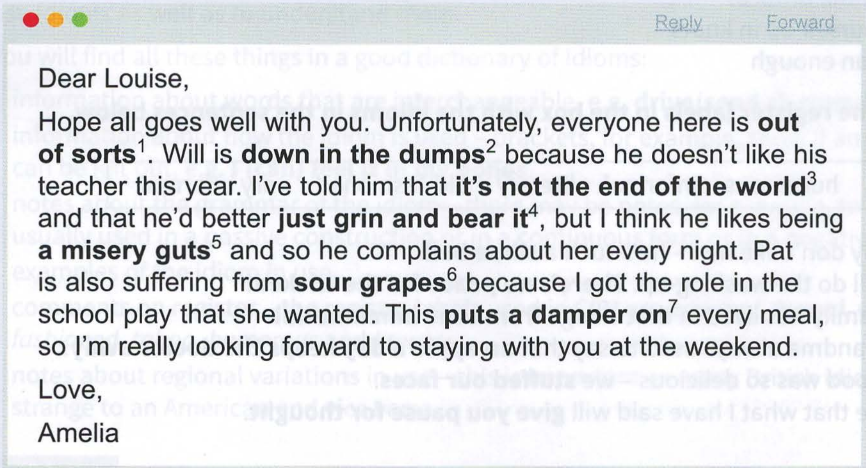

Dear Louise,

Hope all goes well with you. Unfortunately, everyone here is **out of sorts**[1]. Will is **down in the dumps**[2] because he doesn't like his teacher this year. I've told him that **it's not the end of the world**[3] and that he'd better **just grin and bear it**[4], but I think he likes being **a misery guts**[5] and so he complains about her every night. Pat is also suffering from **sour grapes**[6] because I got the role in the school play that she wanted. This **puts a damper on**[7] every meal, so I'm really looking forward to staying with you at the weekend.

Love,

Amelia

---

[1] slightly unhappy or slightly ill

[2] unhappy (informal)

[3] what has happened won't cause any serious problems

[4] accept a situation you don't like because you can't change it

[5] someone who complains all the time and is never happy (very informal)

[6] being jealous about something you can't have

[7] stop an occasion from being enjoyable (sometimes *dampener* is used instead of *damper*)

Exercises

3.1 **Combine the words in the box in order to make five expressions meaning *extremely happy*. Use each word once only.**

bits cloud heaven in moon nine of on on over seventh the
the thrilled to top world

3.2 **Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1
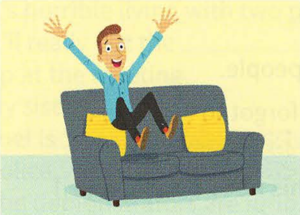

2
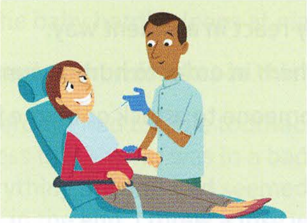

3
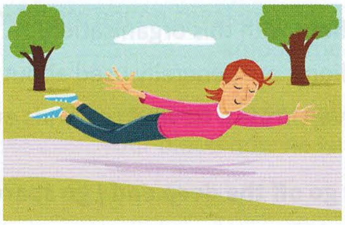

4
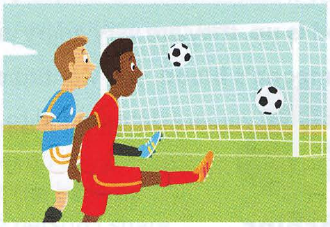

5
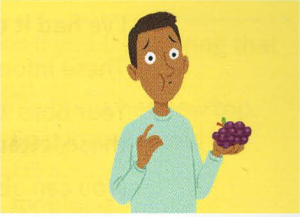

6
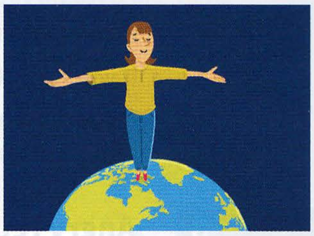

3.3 **Correct the mistakes in these idioms.**

1 The child was thrilled for bits to have her photo in the paper.
2 I felt as if I was floating in air as I ran down the hill into his arms.
3 Why does Marti look so out of sort today?
4 Don't make such a fuss. It's not the finish of the world!
5 Your telephone call has really done my day!
6 Jill said she was on cloud seven and Jack agreed that he was in ninth heaven.
7 Why does Mark always have to be such a miserable guts?
8 Stereotypically, happy footballers say that they are over the sun.

3.4 **Answer these questions.**

1 Would a piece of good news or a piece of bad news be more likely to make your day?
2 If you got top marks in an exam, would you feel down in the dumps?
3 Are people more likely to get a kick out of hot-air ballooning or cleaning their boots?
4 Do you have to grin and bear it when you are happy or unhappy about something that has happened?
5 If you are at someone's birthday party, what would be more likely to put a damper on the event – news of the illness of a close friend or a heavy shower of rain?
6 Do people usually enjoy or not enjoy being in the company of a misery guts?
7 You have a beautiful new sports car that a colleague is rather envious of. What is your colleague more likely to say out of sour grapes? 'I love its green colour!' or 'Of course, that model is very unreliable!'
8 A damper is literally a thing put on piano strings to make the sound less loud. How does knowing this help you to understand the idiom using the word *damper*?
9 Do you notice anything that a number of the images in the happiness idioms have in common?

4 Anger

A Being angry

These informal idioms can be used either about yourself or about a third person.

I'm **fed up (to the back teeth)** with trying to live on such a small wage.

I'm **at my wits' end** trying to keep things in order.

(wits = intelligence, brains)

I've **had it up to here** with this organisation!

These informal idioms are generally used about other people.

Your boss will **have/throw a fit** when he finds out you forgot to reply to those letters.

(You can also say **go off the deep end / go spare / do his nut / blow a fuse.**)

These less informal idioms describe other people's anger and are based on the word *blood*.

If **someone's blood is up**, they are very angry and may react in a violent way.

If you are **after someone's blood**, you want to catch them in order to hurt or punish them.

If you are **out for blood**, you are determined to find someone to attack or blame for something bad that has happened.

B Angry relationships

idiom	meaning	example
drive someone up the wall	make someone very angry (or sometimes very bored)	The neighbours' loud music every night is driving me up the wall.
drive/send someone round the bend/twist	make someone very angry (or sometimes very bored)	His lack of consideration is driving me round the twist.
rub someone up the wrong way	make someone annoyed	Jill always manages to say something to rub her father up the wrong way.
get/put someone's back up	make someone annoyed	Roger put his sister's back up by saying she would never be a good driver.
ruffle someone's feathers	make someone annoyed	Jo says what she thinks without worrying about whether she might be ruffling anyone's feathers.
put/send the cat among the pigeons	do or say something that makes a lot of people angry or worried	Danny put the cat among the pigeons by suggesting that the company might have to make some redundancies.
not be on speaking terms	be so angry with each other that they refuse to speak to each other	They haven't been on speaking terms for years although neither can remember what they first quarrelled about.
give someone an earful	tell someone how angry you are with them (informal)	The old lady gave the children an earful for nearly knocking her over.
give someone a piece of your mind	tell someone how angry you are with them	He'll give the boys a piece of his mind if he catches them in his garden.

Exercises

4.1 Put the expressions in the box into pairs that mean more or less the same.

went off the deep end   gave him an earful   drove him up the wall   gave him a piece of her mind
put his back up   did his nut   rubbed him up the wrong way   sent him round the bend

4.2 Complete each of these idioms.

1 Ethan has had it up to ………………………… with his work.
2 It's horrible living with two people who are not on speaking ………………………… .
3 It'll really put the ………………………… among the pigeons if you try to bring that up at the meeting.
4 My sister ………………………… spare when she found out I'd burnt her new top.
5 Joel is ………………………… your blood now he knows it was you who told the police.
6 The demonstrators are furious and ………………………… for blood.
7 Your father will throw a ………………………… if you go out dressed like that.
8 The baby hardly sleeps at night and her mother is at her ………………………… end.

4.3 Correct eight mistakes in this paragraph.

Yesterday I had terrible toothache. It hurt a lot and I guess that's why I was in a bad temper all day. Everything anyone said seemed to put the back up and, in the end, I threw a fuse with the person I share my office with. Even when I'm in a good mood, she sends me up the twist with her constant chatter and yesterday I had had it off to here with her after only ten minutes. I really gave her an eyeful and the result is that we are no longer in speaking terms. I know I'll have to apologise for doing my nuts like that, but perhaps I'll wait a while. It's much easier to work when she isn't talking to me! Perhaps I should give her a peace of my mind more often.

4.4 Answer these questions.

1 Name one thing that drives you up the wall.
2 Find two idioms on the left-hand page that conjure up images of birds.
3 Can you remember a teacher ever going off the deep end? If so, what caused it?
4 Find seven idioms on the left-hand page that are based on parts of the body.
5 Has anyone recently rubbed you up the wrong way? If so, how did they do this?
6 Which idiom in A on the left-hand page do you think is usually accompanied by a gesture?
7 Have you ever given someone a piece of your mind? If so, what about?
8 Find an idiom on the left-hand page connected with electricity.

Over to you

Think about a situation you have experienced in which someone became angry. What idioms from this unit can you use to describe what happened?

5 Knowing and understanding

A Knowing and not knowing

knowing	meaning
She **knows** the system **inside out**.	She knows every detail of it.
When it comes to geography, he certainly **knows his stuff**.	He has a very good knowledge of it.
That book title **has a familiar ring to it**. I think I read it a long time ago.	It sounds familiar / I think I've heard it before.
I'm not sure if I know her, but the name **rings a bell**. (very commonly used with *name*)	I have a vague memory of someone with that name, but can't remember exactly.

not knowing	meaning
I **haven't (got) / don't have a clue** how to get to her house.	I don't know at all.
I **haven't (got) / don't have the faintest idea** where she lives.	I really don't know at all.
I **haven't (got) / don't have the foggiest (idea)** what this switch is for.	I absolutely don't know at all.
I **can't for the life of me** remember her first name.	I can't remember at all.
I'm a bit **out of touch** with computers these days.	I used to know about them, but don't know the latest developments.
I'm sorry, that name **doesn't ring any bells with me**. (very commonly used with *name*)	I don't think I've ever heard it before; it is unfamiliar.

B Coming to conclusions

I didn't actually know where you were staying, but Mark said you were with a relative. So I **put two and two together** and guessed it was that aunt of yours in Manchester. [concluded from the facts I knew]

I'm sorry, I **got (hold of) the wrong end of the stick**. I thought you were complaining about something. [came to the wrong conclusion]

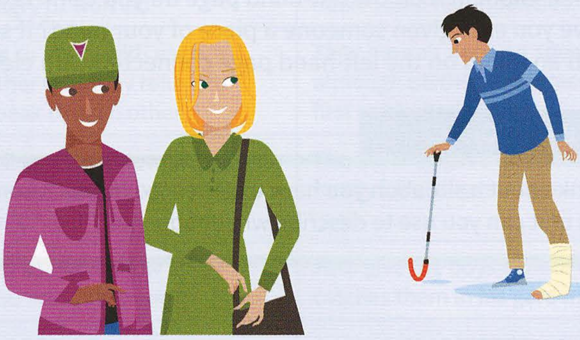

'I think he's got hold of the wrong end of the stick.'

Exercises

5.1 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 I don't have even a faint idea where he is today; you'll have to ask somebody else.
2 The title of the book has familiar rings to it, but I don't think I've ever read it.
3 My cousin knows the tax laws outside and in, so if you want advice on your tax, he'll help you.
4 I can't for life think what it was I came into the kitchen for.
5 I saw Tom and Lily together in a restaurant looking adoringly into each other's eyes. I added up two and two, and decided they must be madly in love.

5.2 Use the corrected idioms from exercise 5.1 to rewrite the underlined parts of this paragraph. Use each idiom once only.

I always thought I knew my computer in every detail, but the other day it started to crash every time I opened a certain program. I could not in any way understand why it was doing this, and I didn't have any idea at all about what to do to fix it. I rang the helpline which I had used in the past, and after about 20 minutes I spoke to someone who said his name was Patrick, and that he was there to help me. He gave me some advice which sounded quite familiar to me from previous calls I had made to the same helpline. I thought about all this, put the facts together, and concluded that they give the same advice to everybody, and that it's just a way of getting rid of you. The computer still crashes every time I open the program.

5.3 Write sentences that mean the opposite of these sentences. Use idioms from this unit and make any other necessary changes.

1 Yes, that name is very familiar to me. I think I've met her several times.
2 I'm really up to date with TV soap operas these days. I watch them every day.
3 She knows absolutely nothing when it comes to the history of this area.
4 I correctly interpreted what she was trying to tell me and it solved a big problem.
5 No, sorry, her name means nothing to me. I may have met her, I just can't remember.

5.4 Complete each sentence with a different idiom which refers to 'not knowing'.

1 I .... how to use the photocopier. Do you think you could help me? (weakest of the three)
2 I .... where I left that letter I brought for you. I'm really sorry. (stronger than 1)
3 I .... what she's talking about. She's crazy! (even stronger than 2)

Over to you

Look up the word *know* in your dictionary or in an online dictionary and find idioms containing this word. Choose three idioms to learn, and make a note of them in your vocabulary notebook. Note down examples of how they are used, too.

6 Experience and perception

A Learning from experiences

If ...	you can say ...
something bad has happened, but you decide to learn from it instead of being upset by it,	I've decided to **put it down to experience**.
you don't know what your position is or what your situation is with someone, and it's worrying you,	I just want to **know where I stand**, that's all.
something happens or someone says something that makes you think very seriously about it,	the events / your suggestions have certainly **given me food for thought**.
something bad happens to you and you decide you will never let it happen again,	I've **learnt my lesson**.
someone does something stupid which affects them in a way that they'll never want to do it again,	that will **teach him/her a lesson**!
someone finally becomes aware of a fact (often used with unpleasant facts),	I think he/she's **got the message**.
you tell the true facts to someone who has believed a different set of facts up to that moment,	I just want to **set/put the record straight**.

B Other common idioms connected with perceiving situations

I **heard it on/through the grapevine** that you're thinking of leaving the company. Is it true? [heard it from someone who had heard it from someone else]

He doesn't hate you at all. It's completely untrue. It's just **a figment of your imagination**. [something you have imagined which is not true]

The Prime Minister seems to have **lost sight of** why she was elected. She's broken all her promises to the people. [forgotten a central, important fact or truth about something]

What beats me is why people are prepared to sit in a traffic jam every morning for half an hour just to get to work. [what I cannot understand]

I'm **having second thoughts about** moving house. I like this part of the city and I'm not sure I'd be happy anywhere else. [I decided something, but now I am no longer sure about it]

I don't know all **the ins and outs of** the situation, but it seems that David has decided to move out of the flat he shares with Ruth and Monica. [the details of]

Language help

If an idiom has a preposition associated with it, e.g. *ins and outs **of***, *second thoughts **about***, always write the preposition with the idiom in your vocabulary notebook, as well as any other important structural information.

Exercises

6.1 In each of these conversations, the second speaker uses an idiom to repeat what the first speaker says. Complete the idioms.

1 Ben: Well, Luke has finally learnt that he can't expect everyone else to pay for him.
Philip: Yes, I think he's ....

2 Anne: Well, Sara will certainly learn never to do that again!
Ross: Yes, that should definitely ....

3 Frances: His suggestions are worth taking seriously, aren't they?
Brad: Yes, they've certainly given us ....

4 Will: Joe's convinced himself that his neighbours are drug smugglers. He's just crazy!
Nick: Yes, I'm sure the whole thing is a ....

5 Grace: Well, I think we were right to tell her what really happened, don't you?
Steve: Yes, it was important to ....

6.2 Complete the crossword.

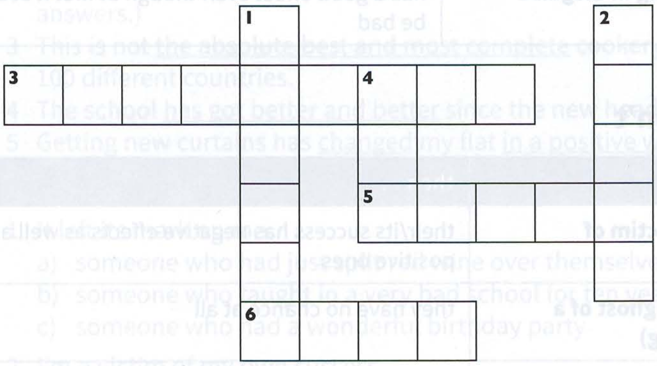

Across
3 You can hear news through it.
5 She lost .... of the key points in the presentation.
6 Put it .... to experience.

Down
1 They're not your first thoughts.
2 Usually means *hits*, but is used in an idiom about not understanding something.
4 They go with 'outs'.

6.3 Complete each of these idioms.

1 I want to know .... I .... One day you say you love me, the next day you say I'm just a friend. It's driving me crazy.

2 He spent £500 of my money. I'll never lend him my credit card again. I've .... my ....

3 I don't know all the .... and .... of the situation, but I think one of the directors is going to resign. There must be a big problem.

4 I can understand that she needed help, but .... me is that she should ask someone as stupid as Leon to help her!

6.4 Answer these questions.

1 Think of an occasion when you learnt your lesson.

2 Think of something which happened to you that you decided to put down to experience.

3 Have you ever decided to do something, then had second thoughts about it? What was it?

4 Think of something you heard recently on the grapevine. What was it?

5 Have you ever been in a friendship or relationship where you had to say 'I need to know where I stand'? What was the situation?

FOOD FOR THOUGHT
PET FOOD
KANT
MARX
CONFUCIUS
PLATO
HEGEL
MARX
KANT
CIUS

7 Success and failure

A When things go well

If something …	then it …
makes all the difference (to something)	has a very good effect on a situation or a thing
works/goes/runs like a dream	works/goes/runs very well indeed
works like magic	works immediately and very well indeed
goes from strength to strength	gets better and better
does the trick	solves a problem very well
is the be-all-and-end-all (of something)	is the most important thing (often used in the negative: *not the be-all-and-end-all*)
is / turns out to be a blessing in disguise	has a good effect even though at first it seemed it would be bad

B … and when they don't

If …	then …
someone/something is a victim of their/its own success	their/its success has negative effects as well as or instead of positive ones
someone doesn't have the ghost of a chance (of doing something)	they have no chance at all
someone/something gives up the ghost	they/it stop(s) working or they stop trying to succeed because they know they will not
someone/something leaves their/its mark (on someone/something)	they have / it has an effect (usually negative) that changes someone or something for ever

C Other useful idioms connected with success and failure

I always knew Ahmed **would go places**. He's been an excellent athlete since he was a teenager. [would be successful (*go places* is not used in the simple tense forms)]

He's a good writer, but he hasn't really ever **hit the big time**. [been successful nationally or internationally and made lots of money]

He's really **made a go of** that restaurant he bought. He's extended it and he employs about ten people now. [been very successful with]

Tip

If a dictionary or your teacher tells you an idiom is not used with a particular tense or has other grammatical restrictions, e.g. *go places* in C above, always make a note about the grammar in your notebook.

Exercises

7.1 Complete these idioms with prepositions.

1 His company has gone .... strength .... strength in the last six months. He's making a lot of money now.
2 The flood ruined our old kitchen, but it was a blessing .... disguise, because the insurance company paid for a completely new one.
3 This new model is not the be-all-and-end-all .... digital cameras, but it certainly has many technical features that others do not have.
4 Your offer to drive us to the airport makes all the difference .... our travel plans.
5 Your plan to persuade Lela to join the committee worked .... magic.

7.2 Use the idioms from exercise 7.1 to rewrite the underlined parts of the sentences.

1 At first we thought the new road would spoil our village, but in fact it was a positive development and the village shops are doing more business.
2 I sprayed the stain remover onto my jacket and it had an immediate positive result. (Give two answers.)
3 This is not the absolute best and most complete cookery book, but it does have recipes from 100 different countries.
4 The school has got better and better since the new head teacher took over.
5 Getting new curtains has changed my flat in a positive way. It feels like a new one.

7.3 Who would be most likely to say these remarks? Choose the correct answer.

1 It left its mark on me.
  a) someone who had just spilt red wine over themselves
  b) someone who taught in a very bad school for ten years
  c) someone who had a wonderful birthday party

2 I'm a victim of my own success.
  a) someone who won a lot of money then spent it all
  b) a student who always passes every exam they take
  c) a popular teacher whose class everyone wants to be in

3 I don't think I'll ever hit the big time.
  a) a rock musician who is popular in local clubs
  b) an athlete who has just got a place in an Olympic team
  c) a dentist with a very heavy schedule of appointments

4 Work isn't the be-all-and-end-all in my life.
  a) someone who is unemployed
  b) someone who has a lot of interesting hobbies
  c) someone who never finishes a job they start

7.4 Complete each of these idioms.

1 The photocopier has completely .... the ghost. We need a new one.
2 I didn't think I .... ghost of a .... of passing the exam, but I did.
3 My new motorbike .... a dream; it's fast, but so smooth and quiet.

7.5 Answer these questions.

1 If you make a go of something, do you succeed or fail?
2 What should you remember about the grammar of the idiom *go places*?
3 What could you write in your vocabulary notebook about the use of *be-all-and-end-all*?

8 Having problems

A Describing the problem

I've **come up against a brick wall.**

[something is blocking me from doing what I want to do]

I put my foot in it.

[said something tactless and embarrassing]

I'm **in dire straits.**

[in a very difficult or dangerous situation]

I've **dug myself into a hole.**

[have myself caused a problem that will be difficult to escape from (informal)]

I've **spread myself too thin.**

[am trying to do too many things at the same time, with the result that I can't give any of them the attention they need]

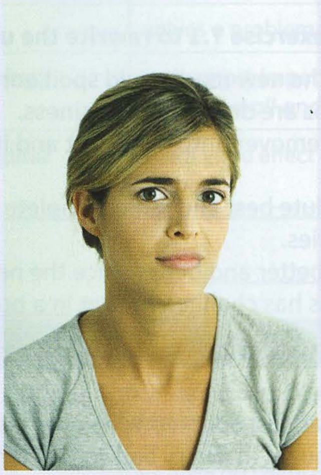

I've been **left holding the baby.**

[others have left me to deal with a problem alone]

They've got me **over a barrel.**

[have put me in a situation where I have no choice over what I can do]

I've come up against a **stumbling block.**

[a problem which stops me from achieving something]

I'm **clutching at straws now.**

[am in such a difficult situation that I will try anything]

I've **drawn a blank.**

[am unable to find information or to achieve something I'd hoped for]

So now we are all going to have to **face the music.**

[accept criticism or punishment for what you have done]

B Fact of life

Taxes are, unfortunately, **a fact of life.** [an unpleasant situation which has to be accepted because it cannot be changed]

A fact of life must not be confused with the phrase *the facts of life*, which is a slightly indirect (humorous) way of referring to information about sexual reproduction.

C Easier said than done

Why don't you take the train to work? Then you'd avoid all the traffic jams.

Easier said than done! There are no trains at the right time. [something you say when something seems like a good idea, but is difficult to actually do]

Tip

Make a 'problems' idioms page in your vocabulary notebook. You will find examples of other idioms that can be used for talking about problems in other units of this book too. As you find them, add them to this page of your notebook.

Exercises

8.1 Match the beginning of each idiom on the left with its ending on the right.

1 left holding the ☐ a wall
2 brick ☐ b block
3 stumbling ☐ c music
4 dire ☐ d baby
5 draw a ☐ e barrel
6 have you over a ☐ f straits
7 face the ☐ g blank

8.2 Put the words in the right order and make sentences.

1 done / said / Easier / than
2 too / to / Try / spread / thin / not / yourself
3 I / I / foot / it / wish / my / put / hadn't / in
4 a / life / older / of / Getting / fact / is
5 straits / The / is / company / dire / in
6 life / primary / facts / of / the / Children / taught / in / school / are

8.3 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1
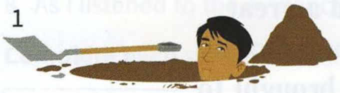

3
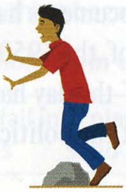

5
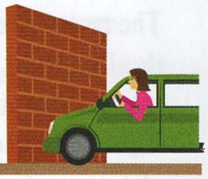

2
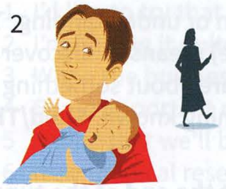

4
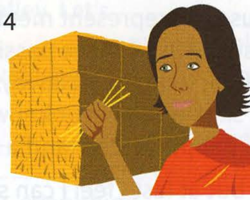

6
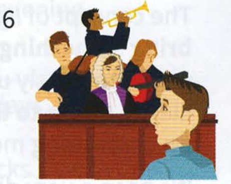

8.4 Complete each of these idioms with one word.

1 You'd better stop talking or you'll dig yourself into a deeper ....
2 I hoped I'd find the address needed in the library, but I drew a ....
3 If you take on any more work, you'll be spreading yourself far too ....
4 Stranded on the island with no money and no luggage, we were well aware that we were in dire ....
5 The police explored a number of leads, but each time they came up against a brick ....
6 Not having enough savings to set up a business was a major stumbling ....
7 I wish I could leave my job, but they've got me over a ....

Over to you

Magazines often have articles about people's problems or question and answer pages dealing with problems of different kinds. Find an article or a question and answer page like this and make a note of any idioms that you find there.

9 Dealing with problems

A Trying to solve a problem

Rafael needed a bookcase. He had been **making do**[1] with planks of wood on bricks, but he wanted something nicer now. His sister, Ana, suggested buying a self-assembly bookcase where the pieces came in a flat pack for him to put together himself. Rafael knew he wasn't much good at that sort of thing, but he decided to **give it a shot/whirl**[2]. When he opened the pack, it all looked very confusing, but he was determined to **get to grips with**[3] it. After a couple of hours, he had something that looked a bit like a bookcase but was rather wobbly. **To be on the safe side**[4], he asked Ana to check it for him. 'There's something not quite right about this,' she said. 'I think we'd better **get to the bottom of**[5] it before you put your books on it.'

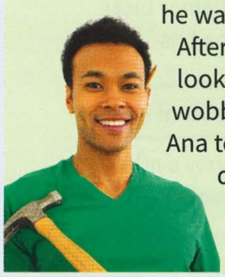

[1] managing with something that isn't as good as you would like
[2] give something a try (informal)
[3] make an effort to understand or to deal with a problem or situation
[4] to protect himself even though it might not be necessary
[5] try to discover the truth about something

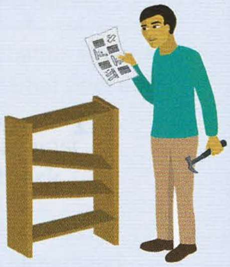

B Light and understanding

The recent release of fifty-year-old documents has **shed a great deal of light** on the political crises of the 1950s. Some unexpected information about the government of the day has been **brought to light** and some surprising facts about the politicians of the time have also **come to light**.

The concept of *light* is often used to represent mental illumination or understanding. The idiom **bring something to light** (usually used in the passive – see above) means to discover facts that were previously unknown. Often, though not always, these facts are about something bad or illegal. **Come to light** gives a similar idea of unknown facts becoming known. **Shed/Throw light on something** means to help people understand a situation.

It's been a very difficult year, but at last I feel I can see the **light at the end of the tunnel**. [something makes you believe that a difficult and unpleasant situation is coming to an end]

C The problem's over

The Democratic Party is behaving as if victory was already **in the bag**. [certain to be achieved (informal)]

I was in despair until Chris turned up – **the answer to my prayers**. [something or someone that you have needed for a long time]

I want to **wave a magic wand** and make things better. [find an easy way to solve a problem]

I've got to **tie up a few loose ends** before I go on holiday. [deal with the last few things that need to be done before something is completed]

Once Sara explains why she acted as she did, everything will **fall into place**. [be understood or go well]

After the flood, it took us some time to **pick up the pieces**. [try to return to normal]

Exercises

9.1 Match each idiom on the left with its definition on the right.

1 tie up loose ends	☐	a understand and deal with something
2 come to light	☐	b try something
3 give something a shot	☐	c find an easy solution
4 get to grips with something	☐	d just in case
5 make do	☐	e finish off final little tasks
6 to be on the safe side	☐	f uncover the truth
7 wave a magic wand	☐	g manage with something of worse quality
8 get to the bottom of something	☐	h be discovered

9.2 Complete each of these idioms with one word.

1 I've been busy at work, but I can see the light at the end of the .... now.
2 Sarah wanted to .... a magic wand and make her son happy again.
3 Just wait while I tie up these .... ends, then I'll go to the match with you.
4 When her parents gave her some money, it was like the answer to her ....
5 I've never tried yoga before, but I'd be happy to give .... a shot.
6 The job isn't in the .... till you've had an offer in writing.
7 This research may shed fresh .... on the causes of asthma in children.
8 As I listened to the evidence, everything began to .... into place.

9.3 Complete each sentence with an idiom from the box. Make any other necessary changes.

bring to light   come to light   fall into place   get to grips with   get to the bottom of
give it a whirl   pick up the pieces   shed light on

1 I'd like to try that new bowling alley. Let's .... this evening.
2 I'm finding it quite hard .... my new role at work.
3 When the business failed, Paul vanished, leaving his partner ....
4 Some important new evidence .... in the last few days.
5 I hope that we'll be able .... what's been going on.
6 New medical research .... the causes of heart attacks.
7 As soon as I met Joshua's family, everything ....
8 In the investigation into their accounts, a number of errors ....

9.4 Match each statement on the left with the most likely response on the right.

1 I'll wash your car for you!	☐	a OK, just to be on the safe side.
2 Let's go home now.	☐	b If only I could wave a magic wand!
3 The job's in the bag!	☐	c You're the answer to my prayers!
4 We'd better take umbrellas.	☐	d Soon. I've still got some loose ends to tie up.
5 Can you make do with a pencil?	☐	e I hope you're right!
6 We just don't know what to do!	☐	f Sure, that'll do fine.

9.5 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1
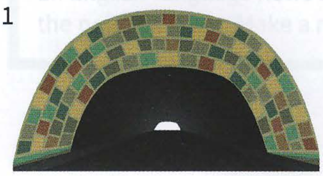

2
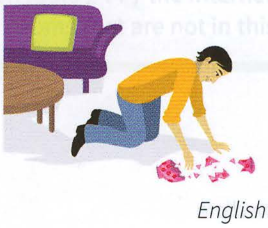

3
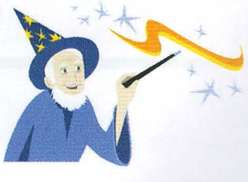

10 Power and authority

A Laws and rules

Note the idioms in this online comment on news website

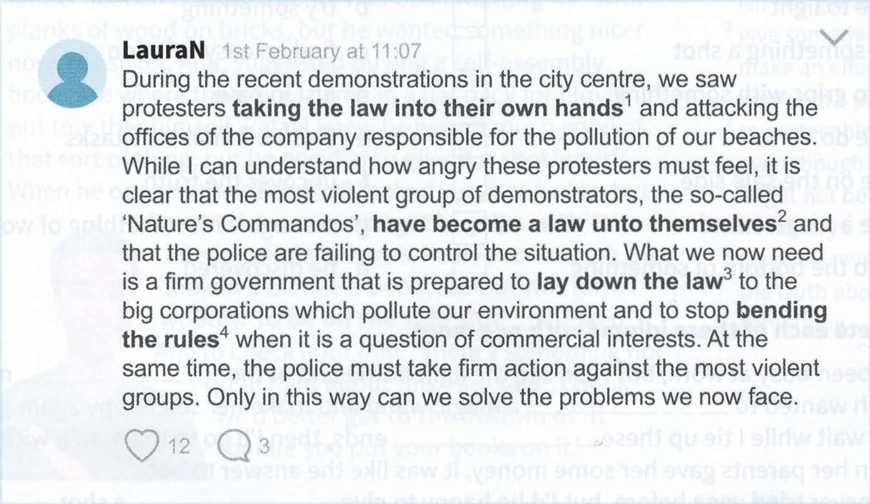

LauraN 1st February at 11:07

During the recent demonstrations in the city centre, we saw protesters **taking the law into their own hands**[1] and attacking the offices of the company responsible for the pollution of our beaches. While I can understand how angry these protesters must feel, it is clear that the most violent group of demonstrators, the so-called 'Nature's Commandos', **have become a law unto themselves**[2] and that the police are failing to control the situation. What we now need is a firm government that is prepared to **lay down the law**[3] to the big corporations which pollute our environment and to stop **bending the rules**[4] when it is a question of commercial interests. At the same time, the police must take firm action against the most violent groups. Only in this way can we solve the problems we now face.

[1] taking action which should be taken by the police or the courts

[2] are completely out of control and simply ignore the law

[3] be very firm and clear about the law, and enforce it

[4] making special exceptions; letting some people disobey the rules/ laws

B Authority and responsibility

If you ...	then you ...
carry the can (for something which happens)	accept the blame/responsibility alone, even though other people were responsible
get / let someone off the hook	are free / leave someone free from all responsibility or from a difficult situation
leave someone to their own devices	allow them to decide how to act; do not control or supervise them
are at/on the receiving end (of something, for example, a person's anger/criticism)	suffer from / are the target of (the other person's anger/ criticism, etc.)
are at someone's beck and call	do everything they tell you to do, whenever they tell you to do it
get your own way	persuade other people to let you do what you want

C Power and politics

The people of Sweden **go to the polls** next Sunday. [/pəʊlz/ vote in a general election]

The government's **spin doctors** always make sure the news is very positive. [public relations officers who meet the press/media and present events in a way that suits them]

I think there is **a hidden agenda** in the government's plans. [an attempt to hide their real intentions]

Exercises

10.1 **Which of these people are in a good situation (from their point of view) and which are in a bad situation? The idioms all come from B opposite.**

1 Jack has been let off the hook.
2 Lily has had to carry the can.
3 Carmen is at everyone's beck and call.
4 Bea has got her own way.

10.2 **Complete each of these idioms with a preposition.**

1 It's wrong to take the law .... your own hands.
2 It's time I laid .... the law and made them do their duty.
3 I would not want to be .... the receiving end of his bad temper. (Give two answers.)
4 Old Bob seems to have become a law .... himself at work. He does just what he likes.
5 Nobody tells you what to do. You're just left .... your own devices.

10.3 **Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.**

1 I think there is a reason she's not telling us about that letter she sent to the boss.
2 I thought I was going to have to represent my class at the staff–student meeting, but they've told me I don't have to.
3 She's an awful boss to work for; the secretaries have to do what she wants whenever she wants it, eight hours a day, seven days a week.
4 He has had to take a lot of criticism from the press in recent weeks.
5 They cause all the trouble, and I always have to take the blame.
6 I don't want someone telling me what to do all the time. I'd rather be allowed to make my own decisions about how to do things.

10.4 **Write a sentence or a couple of sentences for each of these idioms to show their meaning.**

1 a hidden agenda
2 a spin doctor
3 bend the rules
4 go to the polls

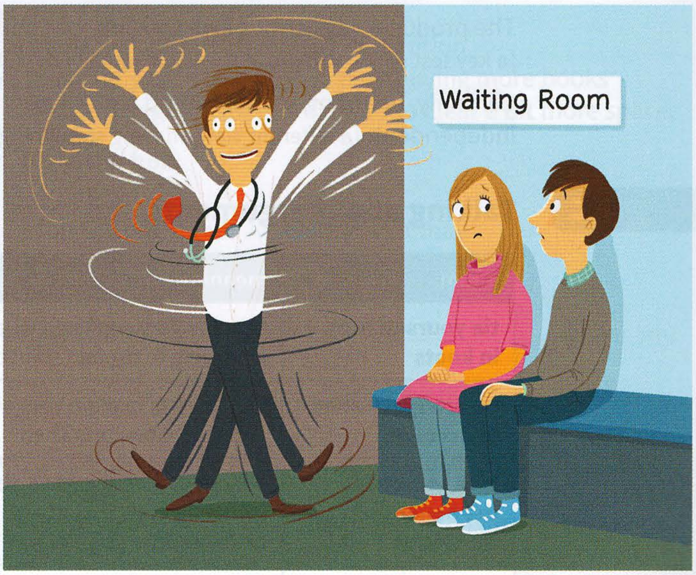

'I think he must be one of those spin doctors.'

Over to you

Read the editorials and/or letters to the Editor in an English-language newspaper or watch / listen to an English-language news broadcast on radio / TV / the Internet. Notice how many idioms occur in the political news. Make a note of any idioms that are not in this unit.

11 Structuring and talking about arguments

A Structuring arguments

On the one hand[1], I don't think that schoolchildren should have mobile phones at school. It's too easy for them to get distracted on social media. **On the other hand**[2], they are a useful way for kids to get in touch with their parents when there is a crisis. **Be that as it may**[3], it is still a nuisance when phones go off in the middle of a lesson. To put it **in a nutshell**[4], there are a lot of **pros and cons**[5] with regard to kids and mobiles.

[1] and [2] these phrases are used to present two opposite facts or two different ways of looking at the same issue
[3] an expression which means you accept that something is true, but it still does not change your opinion
[4] indicates that you're describing something as briefly as you can
[5] advantages and disadvantages

B Noun phrases relating to arguments

She's caught in **a vicious circle**. She gets depressed, so she buys some new clothes, so she has no money, which makes her depressed again. [a problem that cannot be solved because it causes another problem that causes the first problem again]

Don't let's get onto corruption in the police. That would really be opening **a can of worms**! [a problem which you do not want to deal with because it will cause trouble (informal)]

The producer says critics love the film, but box-office takings will provide **the acid test**. [a key test which will prove the value, quality or truth of something]

Certainly, boarding school is hard for children. **The other side of the coin** is that they learn to be independent. [a different view, making something look either better or worse than before]

C Talking about arguments

idiom	meaning	example
tie yourself (up) in knots	become very confused when you are trying to explain something	Fiona tried to explain the problem, but she soon tied herself up in knots.
be brought/called to account	be forced to explain your actions and (probably) punished	The Ministers responsible should be called to account for their incompetence.
give someone the benefit of the doubt	believe something good about someone even though you could believe either good or bad	I'm not sure that David is telling the truth, but I'm giving him the benefit of the doubt.
go round in circles	make no progress in an argument or discussion	We're going round in circles. I wish you'd come up with a new idea!
won't budge/give an inch	won't modify an opinion or agree to even small changes that another person wants	I'm prepared to compromise, but Bert won't budge an inch.

Exercises

11.1 **Match the beginning of each idiom on the left with its ending on the right.**

1 a can of	☐	a circle
2 the acid	☐	b hand
3 a vicious	☐	c nutshell
4 in a	☐	d coin
5 on the other	☐	e inch
6 the other side of the	☐	f circles
7 tie yourself up in	☐	g worms
8 go round in	☐	h knots
9 be called to	☐	i test
10 won't give an	☐	j account

11.2 **What are the situations describing? Match an idiom from the box with each situation.**

a vicious circle   going round in circles   putting it in a nutshell   the acid test
tying yourself up in knots   the pros and cons of a situation

1 Trying out a new invention for the first time.
2 Trying to explain something complex that you do not really understand.
3 The advantages and disadvantages of moving to a different town.
4 Explaining a complicated situation in two minutes.
5 Trying to reach agreement when neither side is prepared to modify its position.
6 Getting rid of some books so you have space on your bookshelves, then buying more books because you now have space, so you now need to get rid of more books to clear a bit more space.

11.3 **Complete each sentence with an idiom from the box.**

a can of worms   called to account   on the one hand   be that as it may
give him the benefit of the doubt   the other side of the coin

1 In some ways it's glamorous being a pop star. But .... is that you no longer have any privacy.
2 It's time these petty criminals were .... for their irresponsible actions.
3 I know Bill's a nice friendly person, but, ... , he still has to pull his weight in the office.
4 .... , I think Janna might have the best personality for the job, but, on the other, Mina has more experience.
5 If he's apologised, I think you should ....
6 It would be opening .... to inquire about his finances.

11.4 **Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.**

1 I got very confused trying to explain to Karl how I felt about him.
2 I'd like you to write an essay on the advantages and disadvantages of working abroad.
3 To put it briefly, James needs to produce better homework.
4 Natasha was prepared to compromise, but Alex wouldn't compromise at all.
5 You need more money so you work more. You earn more so you spend more. So you need to work more. It never ends.

12 Conversational responses

A Emphasis

possible stimulus	you say	you mean
You can borrow my car tonight.	**Thanks a million!**	Thank you very much indeed.
Did you get the job you wanted?	**No such luck!**	You're disappointed you were not able to do something.
Can I go skiing with you and your friends this weekend?	**The more, the merrier.**	You're happy for others to join your group or activity.
She's a great teacher!	**You can say that again!**	You totally agree with someone.
Come on the roller coaster with me!	**No way!**	You do not want to do something.
I don't know how you can drive a car in London traffic!	**There's nothing to it!**	You think something is easy.
You could become a model.	**Don't make me laugh!**	You think something is unlikely.
It's nearly the end of the holiday already.	**How time flies!**	You are surprised at how quickly time has passed.
We bumped into John's teacher in Venice!	**It's a small world.**	You are surprised at a coincidence, e.g. meeting someone unexpectedly or discovering mutual friends.

B Indifference

possible stimulus	you say	you mean
What do you think caused the problem?	**It's neither here nor there** what I think.	It is not very important.
Who do you think is to blame – the boss or the workers?	**It's six of one and half a dozen of the other.**	Two people or groups are equally responsible for a bad situation.
What do you think of Joe Hart's acting?	**I can take it or leave it.**	You do not hate something, but you don't particularly like it either.
Luke's got so many computer games.	I know. **You name it**, he's got it.	Anything you say or choose, e.g. *You name it, he's done it.*

C Life

LIFE

Get a life!
[Find more interesting things to do.]

This is the life!
[It's great to relax and not to be at work.]

It's/That's the story of my life!
[Bad things always seem to be happening to me. (humorous)]

You haven't lived!
[Something someone has not experienced is very good or exciting and they should try it. (humorous)]

Such is / That's life!
[Bad things happen and you cannot prevent them.]

Exercises

12.1 Complete these dialogues with an idiom from A or B opposite.

1 A: My new neighbour was at school with you!
B: ....

2 A: Is it OK if bring Jeff to your party?
B: ....

3 A: Do you think Anne or Brian is to blame for their break-up?
B: ....

4 A: Goodness! It's nearly midnight!
B: ....

5 A: Did you manage to get tickets for the concert in the end?
B: ....

6 A: Do you like caviar?
B: ....

7 A: He says he's going to be Prime Minister one day.
B: ....

8 A: Would you agree to do overtime for no extra pay?
B: ....

12.2 Complete these sentences with an idiom from C opposite.

1 A: I can't come out with you because I've got to wash my hair.
B: ....

2 A: I've never swum in the Mediterranean.
B: .... It really is wonderful!

3 A: Your new girlfriend has dropped you already!
B: ....

4 A: As soon as I moved into my new flat, the roof started leaking.
B: ....

5 A: It's wonderful being here on the river when everyone else is at work!
B: You're right ....

12.3 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 It's a lovely present. Thanks a thousand.
2 You won't find it difficult to learn to ski. There's really nothing to that.
3 It's either here or there which hotel you decide to stay in – they're both excellent.
4 Let's have a really big wedding. The more, the merry.
5 You may say that again! I couldn't agree with you more!
6 He's travelled a lot. You say it, he's been there.

12.4 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1

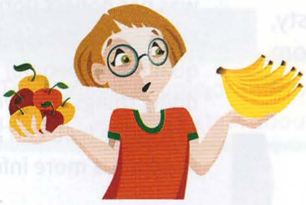

2

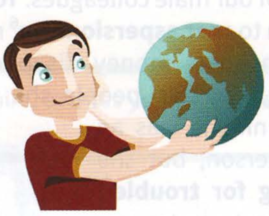

3

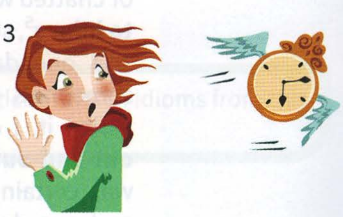

Over to you

Think of some statements that might prompt the conversational responses in this unit, and use them to learn the responses. For example, *Do you like heavy metal music?* ***I can take it or leave it.***

13 Praise and criticism

A Praise and positive comments

In these conversations, the second speaker uses an idiom to repeat and sum up what the first speaker says.

Mieko: That little village was the most wonderful, beautiful place I've ever seen.
Tania: Yes, it really was **out of this world**, wasn't it?

Nora: Professor Breen is the best lecturer I've ever heard.
Alec: Yes, he's **second to none**, isn't he?

Lucy: I'm not looking forward to being group leader after John. He's so popular and successful.
Fergus: Yes, he's **a hard act to follow**!

Jack: Oh, I do like our new sofa. It looks just perfect here.
Rosie: Yes, it's just **made for this room**, isn't it?

Kirsten: I admire William. He defended himself very well in the face of all the criticism and made some good points against his critics too.
Jamie: Yes, he **gave as good as he got**, didn't he?

Emilio: I don't think we'll get tickets for the cup final. They're all sold and we'd have to pay a huge sum of money to buy some on the black market.
Chris: Yes, they're **like gold dust**.

Mark: Dr Zasta's research is incredibly original and he has made some important new discoveries.
Nuria: Yes, he's done some really **ground-breaking work**.

B Criticising people

Read Alice's account of some problems she had with a colleague at work. Note the idioms.

... Well, when I started working with her, at first she was **all sweetness and light**[1], but after a while she started **getting on my nerves**[2], and we soon began to have arguments over stupid things. If I made even a small mistake with my work, she would **give me a hard time**[3], you know, and she would **poke fun at**[4] me if I smiled at or chatted with any of our male colleagues. **To add insult to injury**[5], she began to **cast aspersions on**[6] my honesty, and one day, when some money disappeared from someone's handbag, she told people she thought I'd stolen it. I don't think she was an **out-and-out**[7] evil person, but she was certainly **asking for trouble**[8], and one day I just lost my temper and, you know, told her exactly what I thought of her and how much I disliked her. She hasn't spoken to me since that day ...

[1] friendly and pleasant, but in a false way
[2] irritating/annoying me
[3] make me suffer / feel guilty
[4] tease/mock me (you can also say *make fun of* me)
[5] to make a bad situation even worse
[6] criticise my character; suggest that I was not honest (formal)
[7] completely/totally (for negative qualities of people)
[8] doing things that were certain to result in trouble (you can also say *asking for it*, which is more informal)

Exercises

13.1 Use an idiom in each sentence to repeat and sum up what the other person says.

1 A: Lydia was very friendly and smiling after our quarrel, but in a really false way.
B: Yes, I know. One minute she was angry, the next minute she was
....
2 A: I tried to buy the new England football shirt, but all the shops had sold out.
B: Yes, apparently they're ....
3 A: If he continues to behave the way he is behaving, he's going to have big problems.
B: Yes, I think he's just .... (Give two answers.)
4 A: Bridge Street College is the best school in the whole region.
B: Yes, it's ....
5 A: I enjoy being Chairperson, but I find it difficult coming after such a popular and successful Chairperson as Sarah.
B: Yes, she's certainly ....

13.2 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 She really gets in my nerve sometimes.
2 The last President was an in-and-out cruel monster, and the new one is not much better.
3 I don't think you should cast aspirations on him. He's not here to defend himself.
4 The scientists did some ground-making research on human genes.
5 She had already upset me, but to add injuries to insults she told me I was ugly.

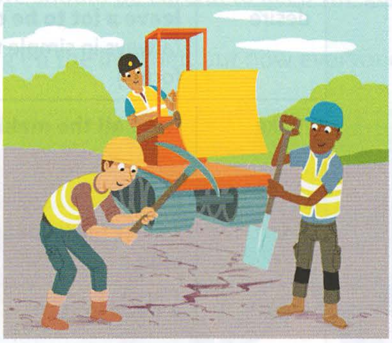

ground-breaking work

13.3 Answer these questions.

1 What verb and preposition can be used instead of *make* and *of* in the idiom *make fun of somebody*?
2 What verb can be used instead of *get* in the idiom *get on someone's nerves*?

13.4 Complete each of these idioms.

1 They criticised her very strongly, but she .... as good as she .... and made them shut up.
2 This dining table is just .... for this room. The wood matches the doors perfectly.
3 Why are you .... me such a .... time? I know I was wrong, but I said I'm sorry. I can't do any more.
4 We stayed at a luxurious five-star hotel. It was out of ....

Over to you

Think about people or things you admire, or ones you have reason to criticise. Which idioms from this unit can you use to talk about them?

14 Opinions on people and actions

A Evaluating people or things

It often helps to learn idioms by associating them with keywords.

keyword	idiom	example	meaning
answer	**have a lot to answer for**	Parents who don't control their children have a lot to answer for.	are the main cause of the problems
crack	something **is not all it's cracked up to be**	That restaurant is not all it's cracked up to be.	is not as good as people say it is
edge	someone/something **has the edge over** someone/something	This computer has the edge over other models because it has such a huge hard drive.	is slightly better than
desire	**leave a lot to be desired** (always in simple tense forms)	Her spoken English leaves a lot to be desired.	is not as good as it should be / as we might expect
make	**have all the makings of**	The recent events have all the makings of a big political scandal.	are likely to develop into
side	**on the big/expensive, etc. side**	This suitcase is a bit on the heavy side.	heavier than you want it to be
loss	**a dead loss**	This remote control's a dead loss.	completely useless
ready	**rough and ready**	The accommodation was a bit rough and ready.	crude and lacking sophistication

B Commenting on people and their actions

If someone ...	then they ...
throws the baby out with the bathwater	change things, but lose good things as well as bad
gets/jumps/leaps on the bandwagon	get involved in something already very successful
plays devil's advocate	pretend to be against an idea so that others discuss it
drives someone to distraction	make someone very angry or very bored
makes an exhibition of themselves	do things in public that make them look stupid
does something under false pretences	tell lies about who they are or what they're doing
never does anything by halves	always make a great effort and do things very well
is a laughing stock	are laughed at / mocked by everyone

Exercises

14.1 Which idioms on the left-hand page have these keywords?

	keyword	idiom
1	half	....
2	baby	....
3	desire	....
4	bandwagon	....
5	laugh	....

14.2 Use the idioms from exercise 14.1 to rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences.

1 The new documentary channel on TV is not as good as it should be.
2 My brother goes to enormous efforts to do everything perfectly; he designed and built his own house, and designed most of the furniture too!
3 He thinks everyone is afraid of him, but in fact everyone laughs at him in secret.
4 Yes, I think we should change the system, but I think we should be careful to keep the good things about the old system.
5 Five years ago, there were not many companies selling on the Internet, but now everyone has joined in because it's so successful.

14.3 Answer these questions.

1 During the discussion, Kelly played devil's advocate. Did she agree or disagree with everyone else? In what way?
2 The buses that go from the airport to the city are a bit rough and ready. Are they nice to ride in? Does the idiom mean they are usually ready to go when you arrive?
3 Matt was acting under false pretences when he worked as an electrician. What did Matt do which was wrong?
4 Camford University is not all it's cracked up to be. Would you want to study there? Why? / Why not?
5 Your friend has driven you to distraction. Do you say 'Thanks for the lift'? Are you happy with him/her? Why? / Why not?

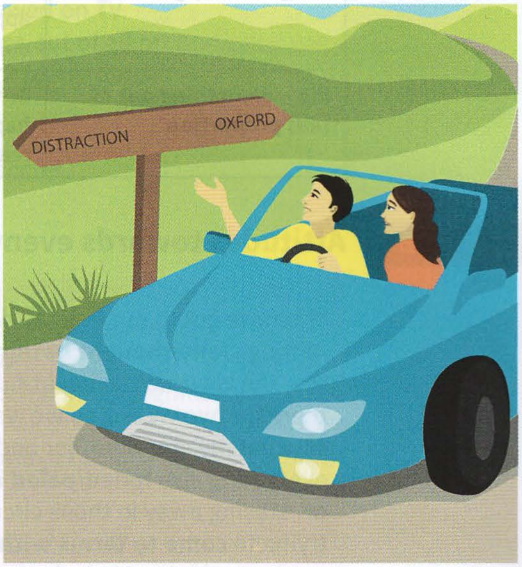

14.4 Complete each of these idioms. Use the clues in brackets.

1 That new motorway project has .... the .... of a disaster for the environment. It will go through the middle of a wildlife area. (is likely to become)
2 Zara .... a real .... of .... in class the other day. It was so embarrassing! (behaved in a way that made her look stupid)
3 The Krona Hotel is a bit .... expensive .... Couldn't we stay somewhere cheaper? (more than I want to pay)
4 This old camera is a .... The batteries run out after about ten photos. (useless, no good)
5 I think Paris .... the .... over other European cities as a place for a holiday. (slightly better)
6 The government has got a .... to .... for with regard to unemployment. (has caused a lot of problems)

15 Behaviour and attitudes

A Behaviour to yourself and others

idiom	meaning	example
look right/straight through someone	behave as if you do not see someone either because you do not notice them or because you are ignoring them	Ann often looks straight through you, but I think it may be because she's short-sighted.
leave someone in the lurch	leave someone at a time when they need you to stay and help them	I'm sorry I'm leaving you in the lurch, but I've got to get to a meeting by 10 a.m.
give someone a hard/ rough/tough time	make things difficult for someone	The teacher will give you a rough time if you don't finish the book.
keep a lid on something	control the level of something in order to stop it increasing	Rolf's been trying to keep a lid on his emotions, but every now and then his anger erupts.
let (yourself) go	either take less care of your appearance or relax completely and enjoy yourself	Sophie used to be so elegant, but now she's really let herself go.
blow something out of (all) proportion	behave as if something that has happened is much worse than it really is	The newspapers have blown the dispute out of all proportion.

B Attitudes towards events

When we got to our holiday destination, it was a very long climb up to the cottage that we were renting. John **thought nothing of**[1] it, but I found it quite difficult. However, when we got to the top, the view was so beautiful that it **brought a lump to my throat**[2]. We were only going to be there for two weeks, so we were determined to **make the most of**[3] it. Then my mother rang to say that my grandmother had been taken ill and her life was **hanging in the balance**[4]. Of course, everything else **faded/paled into insignificance**[5] then and we agreed that we **wouldn't dream of**[6] staying away in those circumstances. We caught the next plane home and spent the flight trying to **come to terms with**[7] the thought that she might die. However, thank goodness, when we got to the hospital, she was sitting up completely recovered and very apologetic that she had spoiled our holiday.

[1] did something that other people found difficult very easily

[2] moved me so much that I wanted to cry

[3] take full advantage of something because it may not last long

[4] no one knows what will happen to it in the future

[5] did not seem at all important when compared to something else

[6] would never do something because we think it is wrong

[7] start to accept emotionally and to deal with a difficult situation

Tip

Idioms are frequently used for commenting on your own or others' behaviour and attitudes. Try to notice how idioms are used in this way when you are reading or listening to English. Note the context as well as the idiom in your vocabulary notebook.

Exercises

15.1 Which of these sentences describe basically positive behaviour or attitudes and which describe behaviour or attitudes that are negative (at least from the speaker's point of view)?

1 Mark looked straight through me when I walked into the hall.
2 Rachel left me in the lurch as she usually does.
3 Sam has really let himself go since his wife died.
4 Let's make the most of this beautiful weather.
5 The boy's soprano ringing through the church brought a lump to my throat.
6 Rita's husband has blown the argument out of all proportion.
7 It'll be great to be able to let ourselves go once term ends.
8 They are gradually coming to terms with their loss.

15.2 Complete each of these idioms with one word.

1 The government has been quite successful at keeping a .... on inflation.
2 Her boss is still giving her a .... time for forgetting to circulate his report. (Give three answers.)
3 In the light of what has happened since, our problems then have paled into ....
4 Jack thinks nothing .... being interviewed on TV.
5 The newspapers often .... minor stories out of all proportion.
6 The beauty of the sunset brought a .... to my throat.
7 The fate of my application is hanging in the .... until my exam results come through.
8 I wouldn't .... of telling anyone your secret.

15.3 Answer these questions.

1 Have you ever been left in the lurch? If so, when?
2 Has anyone ever given you a rough time? If so, why?
3 Is there anything difficult that you think nothing of doing? If so, what?
4 What do you think it is important to make the most of?
5 What was once a big problem for you that has now paled into insignificance?
6 What sorts of things bring a lump to your throat?
7 Can you think of something that you have had to come to terms with? If so, what?
8 What would you never dream of doing?

15.4 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1

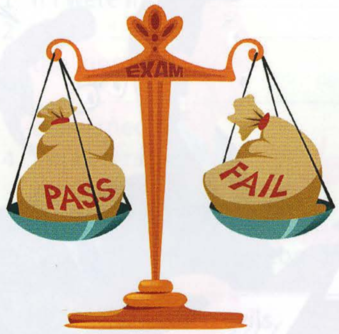

2

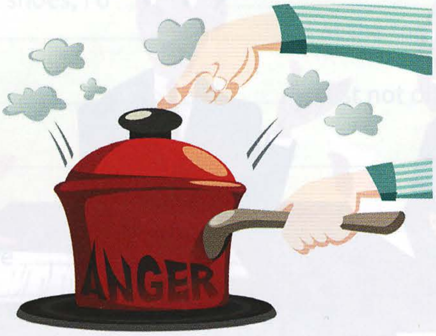

3

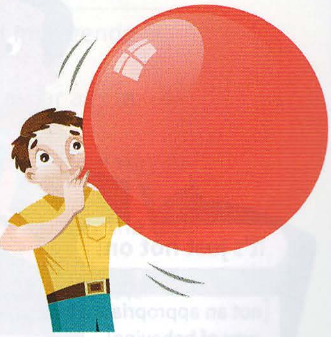

16 Reacting to what others say

A Complete phrases

possible stimulus	response	meaning of response
I understood everything he said to me in French. I was just pretending not to.	Really? **You could've fooled me**!	You do not believe what someone says about something that you saw or experienced yourself.
Josh adores cowboy films!	**There's no accounting for taste(s)**!	You can't understand why someone likes or doesn't like something.
Are you prepared to hand in your notice to stop them going ahead with their plans?	Yes, **if all else fails**!	If all other plans do not work.
What do you think of the Labour candidate in the election?	**The lesser of two evils**, I suppose.	It is the less unpleasant of two bad options.
How did we get into this terrible position?	**One thing just led to another**.	A series of events happened, each caused by the previous one.
It was such a stupid thing to say to her.	I know. **I'll never live it down**!	You think that you have done something bad or embarrassing that people will never forget.
My boss just congratulated me on my report. Should I ask him for a pay rise now?	Yes, go on. **Strike while the iron is hot**.	Do something immediately while you have a good chance of success.
How are you going to live on such a small salary?	I don't know – **one way or another**.	You are not sure exactly how yet, but it will happen.

B Prepositional phrases

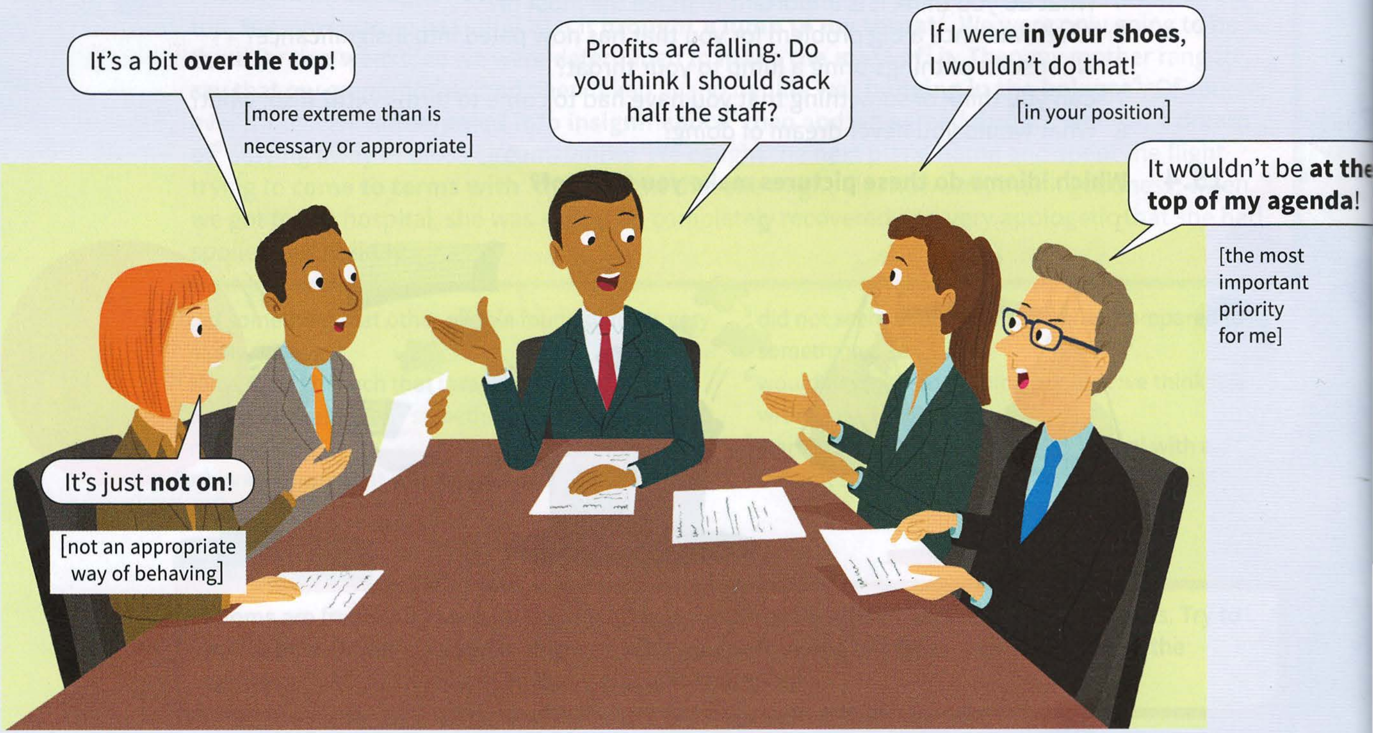
It's a bit **over the top**!
[more extreme than is necessary or appropriate]
Profits are falling. Do you think I should sack half the staff?
If I were **in your shoes**, I wouldn't do that!
[in your position]
It wouldn't be **at the top of my agenda**!
[the most important priority for me]
It's just **not on**!
[not an appropriate way of behaving]

Exercises

16.1 Match each idiom on the left with its definition on the right.

1 not on	☐	a somehow
2 one way or another	☐	b as a last resort
3 at the top of your agenda	☐	c exaggerated
4 over the top	☐	d now
5 if all else fails	☐	e important
6 strike while the iron is hot	☐	f inappropriate

16.2 Which of the idioms from A opposite might the second speaker use in these situations?

1 A: I love to put a bit of sugar on my lettuce.
B: ....
2 A: I really didn't mind at all that I didn't win the prize!
B: ....
3 A: Do you think I should go and speak to her now?
B: Yes, ...
4 A: Would you rather have George or Sophie as your boss?
B: I suppose George is ....
5 A: Will you walk to work if your car won't start tomorrow?
B: ....

16.3 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 If I were in your boots, I'd take the job in New York.
2 Asking the Managing Director for his ID was a really stupid mistake to make. I'm sure my colleagues will never let me live it off.
3 Improving office morale is said to be high on the new boss's calendar.
4 We hadn't intended to stay there so long, but one thing took to another.
5 Take your chance now. Strike while the flame is hot.
6 I can't understand what people see in the exhibition. There's no accounting for likes.
7 If all else falls, I suppose I'll have to go and live somewhere else.
8 Given the choice between watching football or golf, I suppose football is the less of two evils.

16.4 Complete these sentences in any way you like.

1 If I were in .... shoes, I'd ....
2 .... is at the top of my agenda at the moment.
3 .... is just not on, as far as I'm concerned.
4 I'm determined to ...., one way or another.
5 I think that .... is/was over the top.
6 In my opinion, if you compare .... and ...., then .... is the lesser of two evils.

17 Danger

A Getting into danger

The soldiers **were caught napping** by the sudden attack. [got into trouble because they were not paying enough attention (napping = sleeping)]

The Health Minister risked his job by **going out on a limb** and criticising the proposals put forward by the Prime Minister. [stating an opinion or doing something different from anyone else. You can also be **out on a limb**, which means you are alone and lacking support from anyone else (limb = large branch of a tree)]

Oscar is quite weak and is easily **led astray** by others. [influenced so that he does bad things (astray = away from the main path)]

I'd **leave well alone** if I were you; Jack hates people tidying his papers. [try not to change or improve something because this might make things worse]

Although it's always **panic stations** before the performance, everything goes smoothly as soon as the curtain goes up. [a time or situation where you feel very anxious and have to act quickly (informal)]

Taxes are **a necessary evil**. [something you do not like, but you agree that it must exist or happen]

Thank goodness, you're **safe and sound**. I was so worried about you when I heard the accident. [this phrase simply emphasises the word *safe*]

B Being close to danger

idiom	meaning	example
have a narrow escape	just manage to avoid danger or trouble	The crew had a narrow escape when the pilot made a crash landing.
do something by the skin of your teeth	only just succeed in doing something	We won the match by the skin of our teeth.
rather/too close for comfort	so close in distance or similar in amount that you are worried or frightened	We won the election, but the results were rather close for comfort.
cut things fine	leave yourself only just enough time to do something	I prefer getting to the station early, but Lee always cuts things fine.
something sets alarm bells ringing	something worries you because it is a sign that there may be a problem	The strange look she gave me set alarm bells ringing.
take your life in(to) your hands	do something very risky	You're taking your life into your hands crossing the road here.
your life is in someone's hands	that person can affect whether you live or die	When you go into hospital, you put your life in the hands of strangers.
hanging by a thread	likely to fail in the near future	The economy is hanging by a thread.
on a knife-edge	in a very difficult situation and there are worries about the future	The business is on a financial knife-edge and may go bankrupt.

Exercises

17.1 Match the beginning of each idiom on the left with its ending on the right.

1 be caught ☐
2 have a narrow ☐
3 safe and ☐
4 be led ☐
5 by the skin of your ☐
6 be panic ☐
7 leave well ☐
8 go out on a ☐

a limb
b sound
c alone
d escape
e stations
f astray
g napping
h teeth

17.2 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 When David suggested they should come and stay for a weekend, it set alarm clocks ringing in my mind.
2 The patient's life is hanging by a string.
3 Having to go to work is an evil necessity.
4 Why do some people always cut a thing fine?
5 They are on a knife-blade waiting for the results of Brian's medical tests.
6 As the building was on fire, he had no choice but to put his life in the firemen's hand and climb out of the window and onto their ladder.
7 You'll be taking the life in your hands if you make a speech like that to such an audience.
8 I think it would be more sensible to leave good alone.

17.3 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1
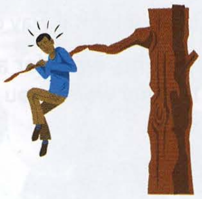

3
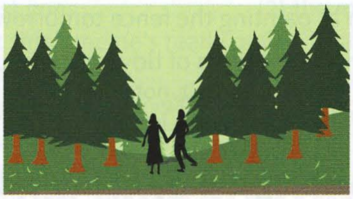

5
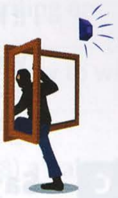

2
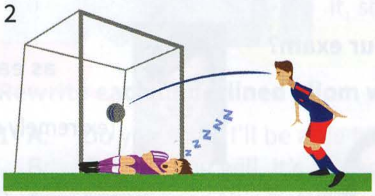

4
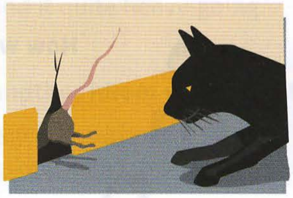

6
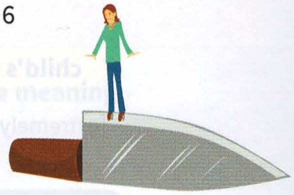

17.4 Rewrite each sentence with an idiom. Use the keyword in brackets.

1 I suppose that exams are just something that you have to do. (EVIL)
2 It was such a relief when Ralph arrived back from his Arctic expedition fit and healthy. (SOUND)
3 You took an enormous risk by agreeing to go up in a helicopter with such an inexperienced pilot. (LIFE)
4 The hurricane seems to be getting a bit too near to our town and I'm beginning to feel rather nervous. (COMFORT)
5 If I were you, I wouldn't attempt to change things. (WELL)
6 We were in a state of chaos before the important visitors arrived, but we managed to get everything under control in time for their visit. (STATIONS)
7 We almost missed the train. (TEETH)
8 I hope the other students won't distract our son from his studies. (LEAD)

18 Effort

A Making an effort

idiom	meaning	example
give something your all	use all your energy and effort to do something	I gave it my all, but only managed to come second in the race.
go all out	use a lot of energy and effort to do something	Jack is going all out to win the contract – I hope he'll succeed.
go out of your way to do something	try very hard to do something, usually something nice	Tara always goes out of her way to put new employees at their ease.
pull your weight	work as hard as other people in a group	If Sarah pulled her weight, we would easily be able to complete the project on time.
by hook or by crook	using whatever methods are necessary	Our football team is determined to win the championship, by hook or by crook.
pull your finger out	make more of an effort (very informal)	If you don't pull your finger out, you'll get the sack.
at a push	probably possible, but it will be difficult	I could finish the report by Wednesday – at a push, Tuesday.

B Trying

You're not having much luck getting to the next level of the game, are you? Let me **have a go**. [try to do something]

I'll **have a bash** at painting the fence tomorrow if you like. [more informal way of saying *have a go*]

I **went through the motions** of tidying the house, but my thoughts were far away. [did something because you are expected to do it, not because you want to do it. In other words, you do it but without putting much effort or enthusiasm into it]

C Saying something is easy or difficult

child's play

[extremely easy]

How was your exam?

as easy as pie

[extremely easy (informal)]

a piece of cake

[extremely easy (informal)]

as easy as taking candy from a baby

[extremely easy]

a doddle

[extremely easy (informal)]

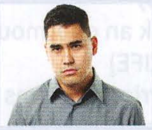

heavy-going

[difficult and needed a lot of effort]

Exercises

18.1 Match each idiom on the left with its definition on the right.

1 go all out ☐
2 be a doddle ☐
3 go through the motions ☐
4 be heavy-going ☐
5 pull your weight ☐
6 have a bash ☐

a make an attempt
b be difficult or tiresome to do
c do your fair share
d do something without enthusiasm or effort
e make a lot of effort
f be very easy to do

18.2 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 I wish you'd pull your hand out and help me move the furniture.
2 Sam didn't like the exam, but I thought it was a slice of cake.
3 I'm going to get the job somehow, by hook and by crook.
4 Hattie could, in a push, take over the project for you.
5 The test was as easy as pudding.
6 Don't worry if you don't win the game – just as long as you give that your all.
7 Why don't you have the go at repairing the washing machine yourself?
8 Persuading him to do what I wanted was like taking candy from a child.
9 Max will always go out of his road to help others.
10 I had no problems using the public transport system there – it was a child's play.

18.3 Complete the idioms in this paragraph with prepositions.

The students in my class have to hand in an assignment on Friday. Masako is going all .... (1) to get a good mark. Marc usually just goes .... (2) the motions of writing an essay, but this time he's really pulled his finger .... (3) and is going .... (4) .... (5) his way to write something good. He says that he wants to get an A .... (6) hook or .... (7) crook. Paul says he found the assignment as easy as taking candy .... (8) a baby, but Sandra says that, although she had a good go .... (9) it, she found it quite heavy-going.

18.4 Rewrite each underlined idiom with another idiom which has the same meaning.

1 A: Do you think I'll be able to manage a snowboard?
B: Course, you will. It's as easy as taking candy from a baby.

2 A: I can't open this bottle.
B: Let me have a bash.

3 A: How's John getting on with his new boss?
B: He is going all out to make a good impression on her.

4 A: Did you find it easy to make that dress?
B: It was child's play.

18.5 Which of the two speakers in each case is speaking in a more informal way?

1 Matt: I think I'll have a bash at making some bread this weekend.
Alex: I think I'll have a go at making some bread this weekend.

2 Leah: I wish you'd pull your weight more with the project.
Sam: I wish you'd pull your finger out and help more with the project.

3 Tom: Getting him to do what I want is child's play.
Sonya: Getting him to do what I want is a piece of cake.

19 Necessity and desirability

A Necessity

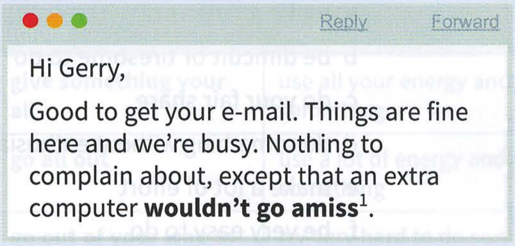

Hi Gerry,

Good to get your e-mail. Things are fine here and we're busy. Nothing to complain about, except that an extra computer **wouldn't go amiss**[1].

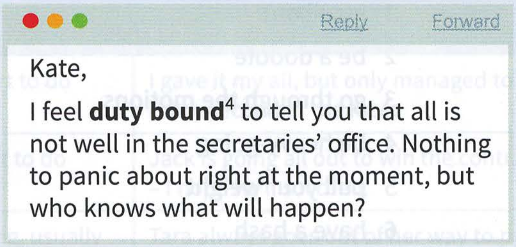

Kate,

I feel **duty bound**[4] to tell you that all is not well in the secretaries' office. Nothing to panic about right at the moment, but who knows what will happen?

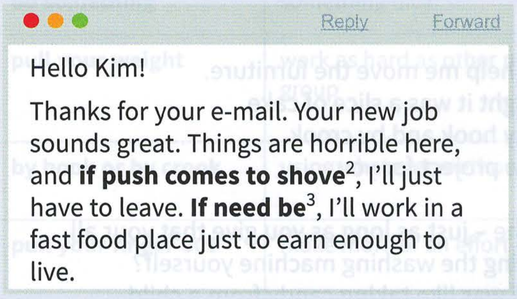

Hello Kim!

Thanks for your e-mail. Your new job sounds great. Things are horrible here, and **if push comes to shove**[2], I'll just have to leave. **If need be**[3], I'll work in a fast food place just to earn enough to live.

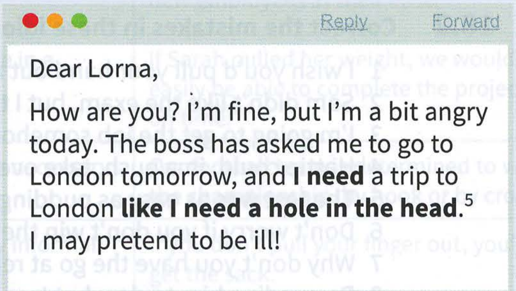

Dear Lorna,

How are you? I'm fine, but I'm a bit angry today. The boss has asked me to go to London tomorrow, and **I need** a trip to London **like I need a hole in the head.**[5] I may pretend to be ill!

[1] would be very useful/good; we need them

[2] if the situation becomes very bad, this is what I can do

[3] if it is really necessary / if I have no choice

[4] I feel that it is my duty / that I really ought to

[5] I don't need it at all, and don't want it

B Wanting and desirability

In these pairs of sentences, the second sentence means more or less the same as the first.

I'm really really looking forward to meeting your cousin. I'**m dying to** meet her.
(Note: always continuous tense form)

Nothing would persuade me to ride a motorbike. I **wouldn't be seen dead** riding one.
(Note the *-ing* form when a verb follows)

I left home because I wanted to be independent. I just wanted to **do my own thing**.

I'd do anything for a chance to meet the President. **I'd give anything** to shake his hand.

His comments were just not appropriate. They were not **in keeping with** the tone of things.

I would never ever consider a job like that. I **wouldn't touch it with a barge pole**.
(barge pole = a long pole used to push forward a barge, which is a canal boat)

C Other useful related expressions

Customer: Have you got a copy of *Advanced English Grammar*?

Bookseller: You'**re in luck**. We have just one copy left. [said when you get something good that you were not expecting]

It's **not worth my while** buying a new car this month. They're always cheaper later in the year. [I will not benefit from doing it]

You need a dictionary? **Take your pick**. There are three different ones over there on the bookshelf. [choose whichever you want]

Exercises

19.1 Complete each of these idioms.

1 I wouldn't be …………………… …………………… working in a fast food restaurant. All my friends would laugh at me. I just couldn't do it.
2 I feel duty …………………… to go home and see my parents at least once a month.
3 I've had enough coffee, thanks, but another one of those lovely cakes wouldn't go …………………… .
4 I think that laptop he's trying to sell is stolen. If I were you, I wouldn't …………………… it with a …………………… …………………… .
5 It's not …………………… my …………………… trying the exam again. I failed the first time, and I'll probably fail again.

19.2 Complete the crossword.

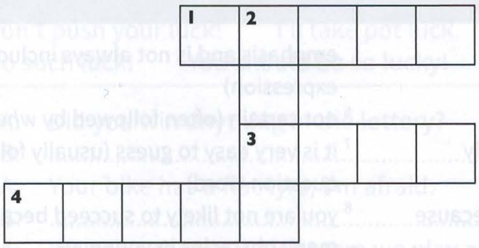

Across
1 I want to do my own …………………… .
3 You're in …………………… ! She's just arrived.
4 If push comes to …………………… .

Down
2 I don't want one in my head.

19.3 Now use the idioms from the crossword to rewrite these sentences.

1 You are very fortunate. We have just one room left for tonight.
2 If the situation really becomes bad enough, we'll just have to sell the apartment.
3 I don't want to go with a big group of people. I want to be independent.
4 I got a bill today for £700 for repairs to my car. I'm telling you, the last thing I need in this world is a bill for £700 right at this moment.

19.4 Answer these questions.

1 Which idiom containing the word *need* means 'if it is really necessary' / 'if we are forced to act'?
2 What is another way of saying 'choose what you want from the available selection'?
3 What should you remember about the grammar of the idiom with *die* that means 'want very much' / 'really look forward to'?
4 What idiom is based on the verb *keep*, and means 'suitable for' / 'in line with'?

19.5 Answer these questions for yourself.

1 Is there anyone that you would give anything to meet?
2 Is there something that you're dying to do in the next few days?

Over to you

Idioms are usually most common in informal texts – like the e-mails in A opposite. Try to read as many informal English texts as you can, for example, letters to popular magazines from readers, Internet chat and newsgroup texts, tabloid newspaper editorials, etc., and note any idioms you find. If you would occasionally like to try out some of the idioms you have learnt in this book, then informal e-mails are a good, natural context for using them.

20 Probability and luck

A Probability

YOUR WEEK IN THE STARS

You try something **on the off-chance**[1] at work this week and achieve success **against all the odds**[2]. At home you must be careful not to **take someone** close to you **for granted**[3] as, if you do, it **is a foregone conclusion**[4] that you will regret it sooner rather than later. Others **have seen** changes in your love life **coming a mile off**[5] and it is **touch-and-go**[6] whether your current relationship will survive this week. **No prizes for guessing**[7] who is to blame for the problems. However, you may still be able to get back together. Do not listen to others when they say that **the cards are stacked against**[8] you. It is always worth **chancing your arm**[9]. Whether you succeed or not **is in the lap of the gods**[10].

[1] because you hope you will do or find something or someone even if you do not think success is very likely

[2] despite a lot of problems making it unlikely that you will succeed

[3] not to show you're grateful to someone because they are with you so often

[4] the result is obvious to everyone even before it happens

[5] have seen that something, usually something bad, is likely to happen (*a mile off* adds emphasis and is not always included in the expression)

[6] not certain (often followed by *whether*)

[7] it is very easy to guess (usually followed by a question word)

[8] you are not likely to succeed because there are so many obstacles in your way

[9] taking a risk to achieve what you want (informal)

[10] is not something that you can control yourself

B Luck

possible stimulus	you say	you mean
I got away with missing afternoon school last Friday, so I'm going to try taking all of Friday off next week.	**Don't push your luck!**	Don't try too hard to get what you want and risk losing what you have achieved.
Would you like to choose which hotel room you want?	**We'll take pot luck.**	We'll take whatever is available without knowing if it will be good or not.
Do you always get a good horse at the riding stables you go to?	**It's the luck of the draw.** (draw = competition where winners are chosen at random)	It's a matter of chance and you have no control over it.
You're playing against the best player in the competition!	**Just my luck!**	You say this, usually humorously, to mean that you are always unlucky.
Did you manage to persuade Laura to come on holiday with you?	**No such luck!**	You are disappointed you weren't able to do what you would have liked to do.
I dreamt that Justin Timberlake invited me to one of his parties last night!	**You should be so lucky!**	What someone wants to happen is unlikely to happen.

Exercises

20.1 Comment on each of these sentences. How likely or unlikely is it that the action referred to will happen?

1 Against all the odds Jack is attempting to climb the mountain without oxygen.
2 Will Molly get the job she wants? It's in the lap of the gods.
3 No prizes for guessing which role Tom's got in the play.
4 The cards are stacked against her completing her course.
5 It's a foregone conclusion that Beth will come top in the exam.
6 I think it's touch-and-go whether Rob will pass his driving test.
7 Let's go to the library on the off-chance that they'll have the book we need.
8 The minister will lose his job in the Cabinet reshuffle – you can see it coming a mile off.

20.2 Match each response from the box with a statement.

Don't push your luck! I'll take pot luck. It's the luck of the draw. Just my luck!
No such luck! You should be so lucky!

1 A: Did you win anything in the lottery?
B: ....
2 A: Your bike has a flat tyre, I'm afraid.
B: ....
3 A: We can't choose which team we play against first in the tournament.
B: I know. ....
4 A: I've been getting the best sales results of anyone on the team. I'm going to ask the boss for more pay.
B: ....
5 A: You're welcome to come for dinner, but I don't know what we're having.
B: Don't worry. ....
6 A: I feel sure Dad's going to give me a car for my birthday.
B: ....

20.3 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 They've been married for so long that they take each other as granted.
2 We've done all we can. Now the results of the election are in the lap of gods.
3 Alex is chancing the arm a bit only applying to one university.
4 No prizes for guess who got the job in the end!
5 The cards were stacked on Jake being able to persuade him.
6 It was touch-or-go who would win the match.
7 We could all see Helena's collapse come.
8 Let's go down to the theatre off the on-chance that we can get some tickets that have been returned.

20.4 Choose six expressions that you would particularly like to learn – three from A and three from B opposite. Write sentences using the idioms in relation to a situation that is significant to you personally.

21 Social status

A Social status and how people see it

example	meaning
He's very nice and friendly, but his brother is very **toffee-nosed**.	thinks he is of a high social class and looks down on people of lower class (negative)
Don't try **putting on / giving yourself airs and graces**. Remember, I know that you come from a very ordinary family.	acting as if you were someone of a higher social class than you really are
Everyone was shocked to hear he was involved in crime. He was such **a pillar of society**.	a solid, respectable and respected member of society
Her new boyfriend's a bit of **a rough diamond**, but he's very nice really.	a person who seems impolite / of low education at first, but who is usually of good character
She's always giving money to **down-and-outs** and anyone who begs in the street.	people who have no home, no money and no job, who live on the streets
We can't really afford new furniture, but we have to **keep up appearances**, so we'll buy some.	continue to live at the same social standard we have lived at, even though we have money problems

B Social status and job/career

These clips from a magazine with stories about people in the news contain idioms that refer to success or status in their careers.

He was a **high-flyer**[1] in the world of computers in the 1990s, and went on to become a dot.com millionaire.

He first **made a name for himself**[2] in the world of classical music.

Edward Briggs is definitely **on his way up**[3] in the financial world.

She is one of several **up-and-coming**[4] actresses who have appeared in the new TV drama.

The company needed **new blood**[5] and she provided it. Within months, sales had risen dramatically.

[1] rose very quickly to a successful position
[2] became well-known
[3] rising to better and better positions
[4] becoming more and more popular/famous
[5] a new person from outside the company

C Other useful idioms connected with social status/situation

I prefer to **keep a low profile** at work. I'm not interested in promotion. [not draw attention to myself; be unnoticed]

Oh, you must come to the party! **Anybody who is anybody** will be there. [all the important people]

Harriet always seems to be **the odd one out**. She never seems to fit in socially. [different from everyone else]

You can't call someone 'unemployed' any more. The **politically correct** name is 'unwaged'. [acceptable and non-offensive way of talking about particular social groups; usually used in a slightly negative way to suggest that it is slightly ridiculous to be so careful about choosing words that do not offend anyone]

Exercises

21.1 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 He is always the odd out one. If all his friends do one sport, he does a different one.
2 When he lost all his money, he still tried to keep appearances even though he could not afford his lifestyle.
3 Sometimes it's better to give a low profile at work. In that way, nobody asks you to do difficult jobs.
4 She became a name for herself by being the first woman to climb Mount Everest.
5 He's always putting on air and grace, but everyone knows he's just an ordinary person with a very ordinary background.

21.2 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.

1 All the most important people will be at the concert on Friday, so don't miss it.
2 It's not socially acceptable to refer to 'underdeveloped' countries any more. If you don't want to offend people, you should say 'developing nations'.
3 He was voted 'Best actor who is quickly becoming well-known' of 2016.
4 They employed a lot of young people as they felt they needed new people with fresh ideas.
5 A lot of the people who live in those huge houses near the beach think they're a better social class than other people and look down on them.
6 My boss gives the impression of being rather rude and uneducated, but he's a very nice guy in fact.
7 She was a very respectable member of society, but then it turned out she was involved in the illegal drug trade.

21.3 In your own words, say what it means if …

1 … you're on your way up in your profession.
2 … someone is down and out.
3 … someone is a high-flyer in the computer industry.
4 … someone is toffee-nosed.

21.4 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1

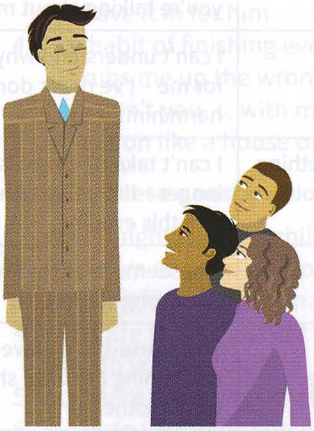

2

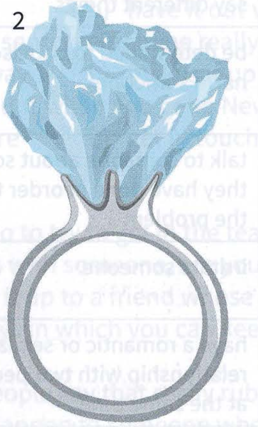

3

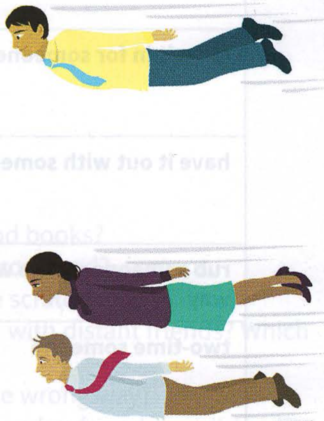

Over to you

Look in your vocabulary notebook or in other units in this book where there are no pictures and see how many idioms you could draw a picture of. Draw simple pictures that might help you to remember three idioms.

22 Human relationships

A Good relationships

idiom	meaning	example
be in someone's good books	that person is pleased with you – possibly only temporarily	I'm in the teacher's good books – I helped her tidy the classroom.
get on like a house on fire	get on extremely well with someone	Fortunately, we got on like a house on fire from the start.
keep/get/be/stay in touch with someone	keep/get/be/stay in contact with someone	We must all keep in touch after our course is over.
make it up to someone	do something good for someone you have done something bad to in the past	I'm sorry I forgot your birthday. I promise I'll make it up to you.
take a shine to someone	like someone immediately (informal)	I could see from her smile that she had taken a shine to him.
have a soft spot for someone	feel a lot of affection for one particular person, often without knowing why	Nick was a naughty little boy, but I couldn't help having a soft spot for him.

B Difficult relationships

idiom	meaning	example
be at loggerheads (of two people or groups)	disagree strongly with each other	The council and local residents are at loggerheads over the plans for a new car park.
be (talking) at cross-purposes (of two people or groups)	not understand each other because they are trying to do or say different things	We're talking at cross-purposes. I was referring to my brother and you're talking about my father.
have it in for someone	be determined to criticise or harm someone	I can't understand why he has it in for me – I've never done anything to harm him.
have it out with someone	talk to someone about something they have done in order to solve the problem	I can't take Ben's selfishness any longer – I'm going to have it out with him this evening.
rub someone up the wrong way	irritate someone	She seems to always rub her boss up the wrong way.
two-time someone	have a romantic or sexual relationship with two people at the same time	She refused to believe he was two-timing her until she saw him with another girl.
keep someone/something at bay	prevent someone/something from coming near or harming you	So far this year, I've managed to keep the flu at bay.
keep yourself to yourself	prefer to be on your own and avoid talking with or doing things with other people	Julia seems nice. But she keeps herself to herself, so I don't know much about her.

Exercises

22.1 Which of the neighbours referred to does the speaker have a good relationship with and which does he have a bad relationship with?

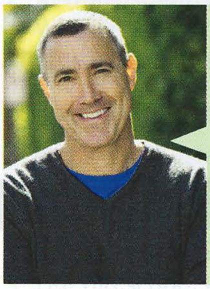

I get on well with some of my neighbours but not with others. I get on like a house on fire with Anna who lives next door, but Rob on the other side has it in for me for some reason. I'm always at cross-purposes with Emma from over the road, but I'm in her husband Ed's good books. I used to be at loggerheads with the Browns, but we had it out and now things are OK. I prefer to keep the dog from number 22 at bay and its owner, Jack, and I always seem to rub each other up the wrong way. However, I've got a soft spot for his son, Noah.

22.2 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 I would immediately drop any boyfriend that tried to two-times me.
2 Ela has taken the shine to her new teacher.
3 Please stay into touch with me once you go home.
4 Nita's boyfriend promised to make up it to her for forgetting her birthday.
5 There's something about him that always rubs me down the wrong way.
6 We try to be friendly, but the Smith family prefer to keep them to themselves.
7 If you want to leave early, you'd better try and stay in the boss's good book.
8 Rana really seems to have it out for me today – I don't know how I've upset him.

22.3 Choose the correct answer.

1 The neighbour's pet rat is supposed to be friendly, but I'd rather ... .
a) not keep in touch with him b) keep him at bay
2 The union and management have been ... ever since management proposed issuing new contracts.
a) at loggerheads b) at cross-purposes
3 If you feel so strongly that he is wrong, wouldn't it be better to ... ?
a) have it in for him b) have it out with him
4 Her habit of finishing every sentence of mine really ... .
a) rubs me up the wrong way b) makes it up to me
5 Why don't you ... with my aunt when you go to New York?
a) get on like a house on fire b) get in touch

22.4 Answer these questions.

1 What might a young child do to try to get in the teacher's good books?
2 If you are at cross-purposes with someone, are you angry or confused?
3 How might you try to make it up to a friend whose car you've scratched?
4 What are three different ways in which you can keep in touch with distant friends? Which way do you like best?
5 Are there any things that people say that really rub you up the wrong way?
6 What do you think should happen to someone who two-times a boyfriend or girlfriend?
7 If you keep yourself to yourself, are you lonely?
8 If you take a shine to someone or have a soft spot for them, is the feeling mutual?

23 Size and position

A Big and large

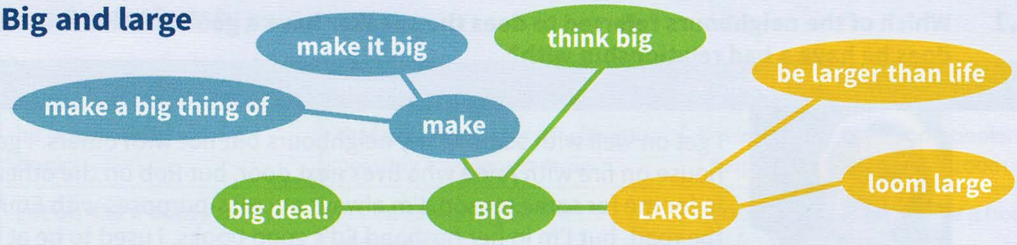

example	meaning
She's a great singer. She'll **make it big** one day.	succeed; become famous
It's my birthday on Saturday, but I don't want to **make a big thing of** it, so don't tell anyone.	make it a special occasion; have a big celebration
If you're going to invest your money, you should **think big**. Put twenty thousand into oil shares.	have ambitious plans and ideas, and be keen to achieve a lot
So? You won ten pounds on the lottery. **Big deal!**	said when something happens but you are not impressed/excited, even if others are
The characters in his films are always **larger than life**.	much more exciting and interesting than average people
The threat of an earthquake **looms large** in the lives of the city's inhabitants.	said of something which could happen and which is a huge worry for people

B *Inch*, *mile* and distance

Inch and *mile* are measurements of distance that are used in the US and are often used in the UK instead of *centimetres* or *kilometres*. An inch is 2.54 centimetres, a mile is 1.6 kilometres. Both words are used in many expressions.

Mia: Is she willing to change her mind?
Jordan: No, she refuses to **budge an inch**.
[change her position even a little bit]

Tom: It's obvious Ruth really likes Jack.
Noel: Yes, you can **see/spot** that **a mile off**! Or It **sticks/stands out a mile**.
[it's very easy to see / obvious]

Luke: Are you listening to me?
Anne: Sorry, I was **miles away**!
[not concentrating, but thinking about something else]

Dave: It's a very ugly hotel and the food's awful.
Fran: Yes, it's **a far cry from** that lovely hotel we stayed in last year.
[very different from]

C Other related expressions

Relatives are nice **in small doses**, but can be very boring if they stay a long time. [you like them only for short periods]

His new house cost **a small fortune**. [a huge amount of money]

You can buy sunglasses in **all shapes and sizes** these days. [a wide variety of types/sizes, etc.]

Joss is **an unknown quantity**. We'll have to be careful with him. [we know very little about him]

Tip

Networks can sometimes help you to visualise and remember a lot of information more easily than memorising a list. Try making networks for groups of idioms from different units in this book.

Exercises

23.1 Answer these questions.

1 In which idiom does *small* mean big/huge? (clue: money)
2 In which idiom does *big* really mean small/insignificant? (clue: not impressed)
3 Which idiom means someone is more exciting/interesting than the average human being?
4 Which idiom with *big* means to become famous?

23.2 Use an idiom in each sentence to summarise the situation.

1 Maria is not listening to what Eddie is saying. Her mind is on something else.
Maria is ....
2 There are big chairs and small chairs, armchairs, garden chairs and office chairs.
Chairs are sold in ....
3 Our old school was dark and depressing. Our new school is light and pleasant.
The new school is a ....
4 Dan looks at Eva with a romantic look in his eyes. He always wants to sit next to her, and always wants to talk about her.
You can see he's in love. It ....
Or: He's in love. You can see/spot it ....

23.3 Complete each of these idioms.

1 She's 40 next week, but she doesn't want to .... She'd prefer just to go out for a meal with her husband rather than have a big party with lots of people.
2 For any person in a temporary job, the possibility of unemployment .... , especially in a time of economic recession.
3 The unions are prepared to discuss the problem, but the employers will not .... They say they have made their final offer, and that's that.
4 We have a new boss starting next week. He's a bit of .... – nobody has met him or knows much about him.
5 I like having friends to stay in my flat, but only for a couple of days. In general, friends are nice .... ; if they stay too long, they always irritate me.
6 We should think .... when we come to plan the new website. There's no point in having one single, dull page; we should have lots of links and video clips, and as many colour pictures as possible, and sound.

23.4 Use a dictionary to check the meaning of these idioms and then write a sentence for each one.

the middle ground	the middle of nowhere	be caught in the middle

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

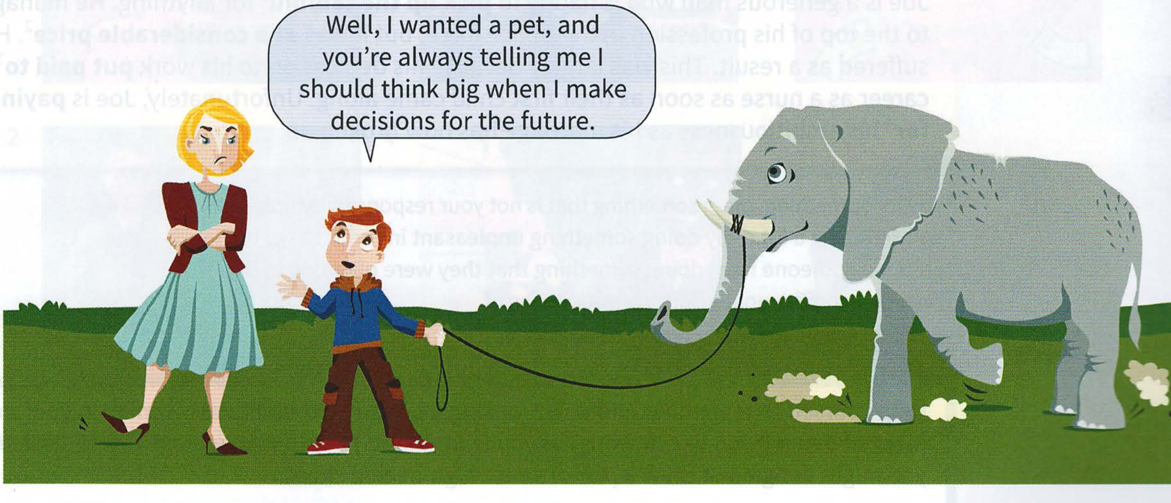
Well, I wanted a pet, and you're always telling me I should think big when I make decisions for the future.

24 Money

A People's financial circumstances

idiom	meaning	example
be on the breadline	be very poor	More people in Britain are on the breadline now than thirty years ago.
live in the lap of luxury	live an extremely comfortable life, because you have a lot of money	We live simply during the year, but enjoy living in the lap of luxury in a nice hotel for our summer holiday.
well off / well-to-do / well-heeled	having plenty of money	Most of the people living here are clearly very well-to-do, but there are a few poorer families.
spend money like water	spend too much, often without thinking about it	He spends money like water – I wonder where he gets it all from.
tighten your belt	spend less than you did before, because you have less money	I'm afraid we'll have to tighten our belts now there's another mouth to feed.
make a killing	earn a lot of money very easily	The new Internet companies have made an instant killing.
be a money spinner	be a successful way of making money	My dog-walking business was quite a money spinner when I was at college.

B Costs

We had to **pay through the nose** to get our car repaired, but at least it's working now. [pay a lot of money]

If you say that something **is a rip-off** (informal), you mean that it is not worth the money that you paid for it.

We had to spend **a small fortune** on getting everything we needed for our holiday. [a lot of money. (You can also say that something **cost a small fortune**.)]

Someone can also **make a small fortune** out of a business or they can **lose a small fortune**.

C Idioms based on the money metaphor

Joe is a generous man who is happy to **pick up the tab/bill**[1] for anything. He managed to rise to the top of his profession in the police force, but it was **at a considerable price**[2]. His marriage suffered as a result. This was largely because his dedication to his work **put paid to**[3] his wife's career as a nurse as soon as their first child came along. Unfortunately, Joe is **paying the price for**[4] his ambitiousness as his marriage has now broken up.

[1] pay for something, often something that is not your responsibility (informal)
[2] by sacrificing a lot or by doing something unpleasant in order to get it
[3] stopped someone from doing something that they were planning to do
[4] experiencing the unpleasant consequences of

Language help

Help yourself to remember idioms by making a picture of their literal meaning in your mind (or on a piece of paper if you like drawing) as you learn them. To help you remember *well-heeled*, for instance, you might imagine or draw a pair of smart high-heeled shoes..

Exercises

24.1 Put these expressions describing how much money someone has on a scale from poor on the left to rich on the right.

living in the lap of luxury | on the breadline | well-to-do | well-heeled

24.2 Which person in each pair of speakers is probably more satisfied?

1 Anne: Our new business venture means we're going to have to tighten our belts.
Bob: We're making a killing with our new business venture.

2 Matt: Our new car cost a small fortune.
Daisy: Our new car was a rip-off.

3 Ed: My daughter spends money like water.
George: My daughter's quite well off.

4 Dora: This business venture has put paid to our hopes of success.
Harry: This business venture has brought success, but at a considerable price.

24.3 Complete each of these idioms with one word.

1 Gina is .... a killing in her new job.
2 I was put in the position where I had no choice but to .... up the tab.
3 We spent a weekend at the hotel living in the .... of luxury.
4 Our neighbours spent a small .... on their new conservatory.
5 The first book Marvin wrote turned out to be more of a .... spinner than anything he has written since then.
6 As Zak has lost his job, we're going to have to .... our belts for a while.
7 We had to pay through the .... to get tickets for the match.
8 If you don't study now, you'll .... the price later on in the year.
9 Another expression that means *spend money like* .... is *spend money like there was no tomorrow*.
10 He started his own business after .... a small fortune on the stock exchange and deciding that he should put his luck to good use.

24.4 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1
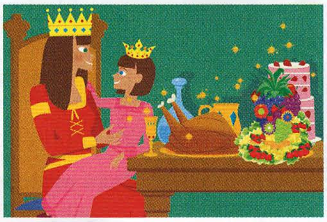

3
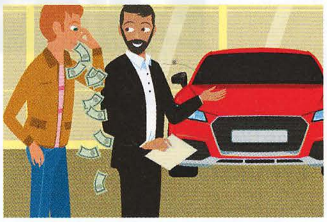

5
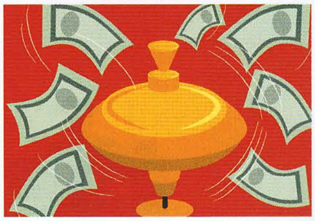

2
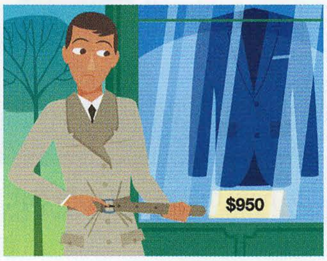

4
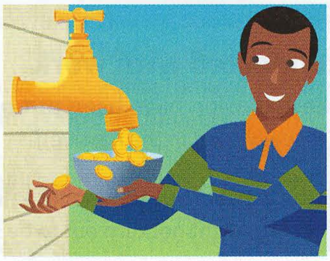

6
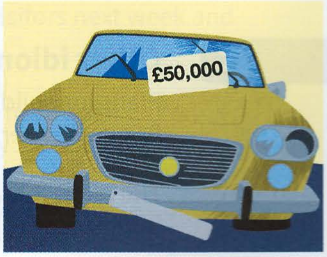

25 Work

A One man's career

When Jacob started work, he was at the very **bottom of the career ladder**[1]. He had quite a **dead-end job**[2] doing **run-of-the-mill**[3] tasks. He stayed there for a couple of years, but then decided he had to **get out of a rut**[4]. He **pulled out all the stops**[5] and managed to persuade his manager that he should be given more responsibility. The deputy manager **got the sack**[6] for incompetence and Jacob **stepped into his shoes**[7]. For several months he was **rushed off his feet**[8] and he **had his work cut out**[9] to keep on top of things. But he was soon recognised as an **up-and-coming**[10] young businessman and he was **headhunted**[11] by a rival company for one of their top jobs. Jacob had **climbed to the top of the career ladder**[12].

[1] in a low position in a work organisation or hierarchy
[2] job without a good future
[3] boring, routine
[4] escape from a monotonous, boring situation (see picture of horse)
[5] made a great effort to do something well (see picture of organ; stops increase the sound of an organ)
[6] was dismissed from his job (also *be given the sack*)
[7] took over his job
[8] very busy
[9] had something very difficult to do
[10] becoming more and more successful
[11] invited to join a new workplace which had noticed his talents
[12] got to a top position in a work organisation or hierarchy

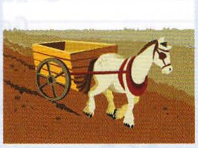

This is a rut.

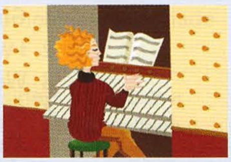

These are called stops.

B Being busy

To be **rushed off your feet** is just one way of saying that you are very busy at work. Here are some other idioms which give the same idea.

Are you very busy at work at the moment?

Yes, I'm **snowed under**.

Yes, I've certainly **got my hands full**.

Yes, I'm **up to my eyes/ears** in work.

Yes, I'm **on the go** all the time.

C Other idioms connected with work

Plans for building the extension have been **put on hold** until our finances are in a better state. [left until a later date (usually used in the passive)]

The plans look great **on paper**, but you never know quite how things will turn out, of course. [when you read about it, but might not turn out to be so]

A lot of preparation has gone on **behind the scenes** for the opening ceremony for the Olympics. [out of sight, hidden, or in a way that people are not aware of, often when something else is happening publicly]

Please don't **talk shop**. It's too boring for the rest of us. [talk about work when you are not at work]

Exercises

25.1 Complete each of these idioms with one word.

1 The job looks good on .... , but the reality is quite different.
2 I'd hate to work in a run-of-the-.............................. job.
3 Tara has been up to .... eyes in work all day.
4 When John retires, his son will .... into his shoes.
5 My cousin's an up-and-.............................. musician.
6 I must try to get out of a .... at work.
7 I've been on the .... all day.
8 Why did Kirsty's boss give her the .... ?
9 I wish you wouldn't talk .... all the time!
10 Rosie was very thrilled to be ....hunted for her new job.

25.2 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1
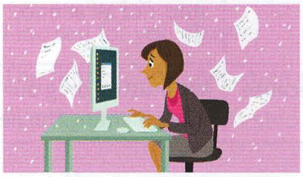

2
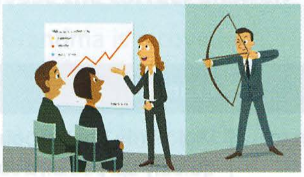

3
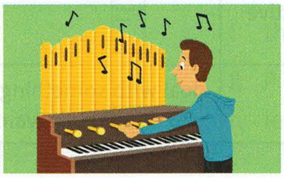

4
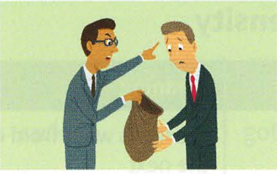

5
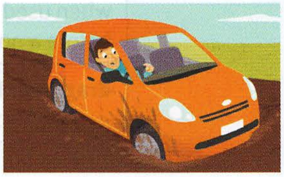

6
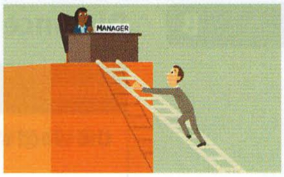

25.3 Match each idiom on the left with its definition on the right.

1 behind the scenes ☐ a very busy
2 dead-end ☐ b be dismissed
3 get the sack ☐ c make an effort
4 off the record ☐ d promising
5 on hold ☐ e hidden
6 pull out all the stops ☐ f unofficially
7 rushed off your feet ☐ g delayed
8 up-and-coming ☐ h without prospects

25.4 Complete each of these idioms.

We had a difficult day at work today. We were all (1) .... under because we are having some important visitors next week and management has decided to pull out all the (2) .... to impress them. We are going to have our work (3) .... out to get everything done in time. Long-term tasks have been put on (4) .... so that everything is ready for our visitors. Anyone who objects has been told that they will (5) .... the sack and everyone who wants to (6) .... the career ladder will have their (7) .... full until the week is over. The visitors would be horrified if they knew what was going on (8) .... the scenes!

25.5 Write sentences using six of the idioms from the left-hand page about your own work at present and your hopes and plans for work in the future.

26 Speed, distance and intensity

A Speed

idiom	meaning	example
by/in leaps and bounds	very quickly	Club membership has grown by leaps and bounds this year.
get a move on	hurry (often used as an order)	Get a move on! You'll be late for school.
be on the run	try to avoid being caught (especially by the police)	The bank robbers are still on the run ten years after the crime.
fast and furious	full of speed and excitement	The car chase at the end of the film was fast and furious.
step by step (**step-by-step** when used as an adjective before a noun)	slowly; gradually	Changes need to be introduced step by step, not all at once.
drag your feet/heels	deal with something slowly because you don't really want to do it	We mustn't drag our heels over implementing the new legislation.

B Distance and intensity

idiom	meaning	example
the word spread	the news went from one person to the next	I told only Rosie about it, but the word quickly spread and soon everyone seemed to know.
keep track	continue to know what is happening to someone or something	The college likes to keep track of its former students.
get off to a flying start	start well	The evening got off to a flying start as everyone was very impressed by the restaurant.
on the spot (**on-the-spot** when used as an adjective before a noun)	immediately or in the place where something is happening or has just happened	The police can impose on-the-spot fines on people found drunk in the street.
all over the place	in or to many places	I looked for you all over the place.
left, right and centre	happening in a lot of places or to a lot of people	People have been coming down with flu left, right and centre.
reach / be at fever pitch	(used of emotions) to get so strong that people can't control them	By the end of the match, feelings had reached fever pitch.
be in full swing	to have been happening for a long time and there is a lot of activity	The party was in full swing by the time we arrived.
get/go beyond a joke	be/become extremely serious and worrying	The children's behaviour has gone beyond a joke this time.

Exercises

26.1 **Put the idioms in the box into two groups: those focusing on time and those focusing on place. You can use one idiom for both.**

all over the place by leaps and bounds drag your feet fast and furious
get a move on left, right and centre on the spot step by step the word spread

26.2 **Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.**

1 Juan is making progress by ☐ a a joke.
2 Excitement is at ☐ b step.
3 Within minutes the fire brigade was on ☐ c the run.
4 The situation has gone beyond ☐ d the place.
5 The holiday got off to ☐ e fever pitch.
6 I looked for you all over ☐ f the spot.
7 The film is about two men on ☐ g a flying start.
8 I'll take you through it step by ☐ h leaps and bounds.

26.3 **Choose the correct answer.**

1 Grandma is recovering … .
a) left, right and centre b) step by step c) all over the place
2 My first day at work … .
a) was at fever pitch b) kept track c) got off to a flying start
3 Why are you … ?
a) dragging your heels b) getting a move on c) going beyond a joke
4 When I arrived at Freya's house, preparations for the party were … .
a) in full swing b) getting a move on c) dragging their heels
5 The football match was … .
a) fast and furious b) on the spot c) in leaps and bounds

26.4 **Answer these questions.**

1 Would you be pleased if your English teacher said you were making progress by leaps and bounds?
2 Would you be pleased if you were told that your behaviour at work had gone beyond a joke?
3 What would you be expected to do if you were told to get a move on?
4 Is it athletes who spend life on the run?
5 Do you drag your feet when you are ill?
6 What kind of films tend to be fast and furious?
7 Would you be pleased if a party of yours got off to a flying start?
8 What can you do to help yourself keep track of all your appointments and other commitments?
9 If things are all over the place in a room, what does the room look like?
10 If feelings reach fever pitch, how are people probably feeling?

27 Communication 1: words and language

A Commenting on things people say

In these remarks, the speaker uses an idiom to repeat or sum up the underlined part of what he/she has just said.

I knew everything Tess said was completely untrue. It was all **a pack of lies**.

I find it very hard to believe he was just hugging her because he thought she was feeling sad. **That's a likely story**!

I didn't say it seriously or even think about it. It was just an **off-the-cuff** remark.

I'm sorry. I said 'Iceland', but I meant 'Ireland'. It was just **a slip of the tongue**.

We didn't talk about any serious topics, you know, just the weather, holidays, that sort of thing. It was just **small talk** really.

He just said two completely opposite things. He said he wanted to marry me and live with me, and **in the same breath** he said he wanted to go off travelling on his own.

They asked me to make a speech, but I was so overwhelmed by the presents they gave me I couldn't think of anything to say. I **was** completely **lost for words**.

I have a feeling inside me that what she said was a lie. It just **didn't ring true**.

I couldn't understand what he was trying to tell me. I just didn't know what he **was on about**. (very informal)

B Commenting on the words you are using

You ask if I think we should help him. **In a word**, no. [said when you are about to give your opinion in a short, direct way]

I think he's behaved very stupidly. He's an idiot, **for want of a better word**. [not quite the exact or best word, but good enough for the situation]

I was, **to coin a phrase**, as sick as a parrot. [said when you use a phrase that sounds a bit silly]

C Joking and being serious

joking	meaning	serious	meaning
People are always **taking the mick/ mickey out of** him.	laughing at him, by copying funny things he does or says	Hiccups are funny when other people have them, but they're **no laughing matter** when you get them yourself.	not something to laugh at, quite serious
We shouldn't **make light of** her troubles; she's very upset.	treat as a joke something that is serious	I have to do the work of three people. **It's no joke.**	used about serious or difficult situations

Exercises

27.1 Answer these questions.

1 If someone says 'Swedish' instead of 'Swiss' then quickly corrects themselves, what can we call this?
2 If someone makes people laugh by copying the way someone else talks, what are they doing to that person?
3 If someone can't find words to express their feelings, what are they?
4 If two people talk about the weather, or about hair styles, just to pass the time, what kind of a conversation is it?
5 If someone tells stories or relates a series of events which are all deliberately untrue, what can we call it?

27.2 Use the idioms from exercise 27.1 to rewrite these sentences.

1 I didn't know what to say. …………………………………… .
2 Not one word of his story was true. It …………………………………… .
3 I didn't mean to say it; it …………………………………… .
4 I didn't mean to offend her. I was just …………………………………… .
5 It wasn't a very serious conversation, just …………………………………… .

27.3 Rewrite each sentence with an idiom that means the opposite of the underlined words. Make any other changes necessary.

1 She's had a big personal problem. We should have a good laugh at it.
2 He told me he had studied maths at Harvard, and it sounded as if he was telling the truth.
3 She said she was a princess who had lost all her money and position in a revolution. That's a story anyone can believe!
4 She has to get up at 5 a.m. and drive 50 miles to work every day. It's great fun.
5 I said I thought she should get herself a boyfriend. It was a carefully prepared remark.

27.4 Complete the crossword.

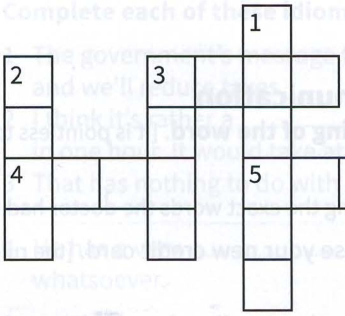

Across
3 Do I want to be a millionaire? In a …………………, no.
4 You can do this to a phrase.
5 I don't know what you're on …………………… .

Down
1 She said it in the same …………………… .
2 Stop taking the …………………… !
3 For …………………… of a better word.

28 Communication 2: expressing yourself

A Ways of expressing yourself

example	meaning
The message from doctors and researchers has come through **loud and clear**: smoking harms your health.	clearly and very definitely
You mustn't be afraid to **speak your mind**; it's important that everyone hears your views.	state your opinion very clearly and openly
She told me the bad news in a very **matter-of-fact** way.	without any feeling or emotion

B Problems with communication

In these conversations, the second person repeats or sums up what the first person says using an idiom.

Sam: I told Henry a dozen times not to use that computer, but he still keeps asking if he can.
Beth: Yes, he just **won't take no for an answer**.

Anna: Toby just never stops! You try to tell him something and he goes on talking while you're talking.
Olivia: I know, it's impossible to **get a word in edgeways**.

Rita: I was trying to tell Liam that I know who stole the key, but he just kept talking about how expensive new locks are, which is a different question altogether.
Steve: I know. It's completely **beside the point**.

Gina: I think Emma completely misunderstood the main thing we were trying to say.
Jo: Yes, she completely **missed the point**.

C Other useful idioms connected with communication

Don't ask Nathan to relax. He **doesn't know the meaning of the word**. [it is pointless to talk to him about relaxing; it's not in his character to do so]

She repeated what the doctor said **word for word**. [using the exact words the doctor had used]

If I were you, I'd read **the small/fine print** before you use your new credit card. [the rules, restrictions and conditions, which are often written in very small letters]

To ask me to look after her three children for a week is rather **a tall order**, don't you think? [a task, request or favour which is not reasonable / too big to ask someone to do]

Whether she is cleverer than her brother is **a matter of opinion**. [something different people will have different opinions about – it usually means you don't agree with the idea]

There's **a question mark (hanging) over** the future of the tennis club. [nobody knows if it will continue to exist or not]

English is **a lingua franca** in a lot of countries nowadays. [/ˌlɪŋɡwə ˈfræŋkə/ a language used for day-to-day public communication, which is not the speakers' own language]

Exercises

28.1 Match each idiom on the left with the situation in which it could be used on the right.

1 get a word in edgeways ☐ a She keeps on asking, even though we said no.

2 miss the point ☐ b She told me exactly what her friend said.

3 speak your mind ☐ c It's impossible to interrupt her, she talks non-stop.

4 won't take no for an answer ☐ d She didn't really understand what I wanted to say.

5 (repeat) word for word ☐ e He doesn't hide his personal opinions at all.

28.2 Use the idioms from exercise 28.1 to rewrite these sentences.

1 Sofia will never just accept a refusal.
2 Joss always states his opinions quite openly.
3 Sara never seems to understand what we're trying to say to her.
4 She told us everything the teacher said to her in every detail.
5 I tried to tell her, but it was impossible to interrupt her.

28.3 Answer these questions.

1 There's a question mark hanging over the whole wildlife area project.
In your own words, what's the problem?
2 It's no good asking her to help. She doesn't know the meaning of the word.
Does she usually help people? Explain.
3 If you read the small print, you'll see you can't get your money back.
Where do we usually find *small print*? What is another way of saying this idiom?
4 Tom: Miranda's a brilliant musician.
Amy: That's a matter of opinion.
Does Amy think Miranda's a brilliant musician? Explain.
5 English is a lingua franca in several Asian countries.
Is English the official language in these countries? Explain.

28.4 Complete each of these idioms.

1 The government's message to the voters is ………………………… and clear: vote for us and we'll reduce taxes.
2 I think it's rather a ………………………… to ask students to write a 500-word composition in one hour. It would take at least two hours.
3 That has nothing to do with what we are talking about; it's completely ………………………… the point.
4 He has a very ………………………… way of telling you things: no emotion or feelings whatsoever.

Over to you

Try to collect more idioms connected with speaking, writing and communicating in general. Look up keywords connected with these topics in a good general dictionary or in an idiom dictionary and see what idioms you find, for example, words like *talk*, *speak*, *hear*, *word*, etc.

29 Life and experience: proverbs

A Proverbs

A proverb is a short statement usually known by many people. It states something that is common experience or gives advice. Here are some examples.

you say	you mean
Absence makes the heart grow fonder.	Being apart from someone you love makes you love them more.
Actions speak louder than words.	What people do is more important than what they say.
There's no point / It's no good crying over spilt milk.	There's no point in getting upset over something bad that's happened when you can't change it.
Don't put all your eggs in one basket.	It is not a good idea to put all your efforts or all your money into one project as, if it fails, you may lose everything.
Many hands make light work.	A job is done quickly and easily if plenty of people help.
Blood is thicker than water.	Family relationships are stronger than any other relationships.

B Half proverbs

There are a number of proverbs which we often use only half of. The endings are so familiar that it isn't necessary to say them. Here are some examples.

you say	ending of proverb	you mean
Too many cooks	spoil the broth.	If too many people work on something, they will spoil it.
People who live in glass houses	shouldn't throw stones.	People shouldn't criticise other people for faults that they have themselves.
It's the last straw	that breaks the camel's back.	Something is the last in a series of unpleasant events, and which finally makes you feel that the situation cannot continue.
While the cat's away,	the mice will play.	When the person in authority is not there, other people will not do what they should do.
Take care of the pennies	and the pounds will take care of themselves.	If you don't waste small sums of money, you'll end up with plenty of money.
Birds of a feather	flock together.	People who have similar characters or interests will often choose to spend time together.
A bird in the hand	is worth two in the bush.	It's better to keep what you have rather than to risk losing it by trying to get more.
The grass is always greener	on the other side of the fence.	Other people always seem to be in a better situation than you.
All work and no play	makes Jack a dull boy.	Someone who spends all their time working becomes a boring person.

Exercises

29.1 Which proverbs do these pictures make you think of?

1

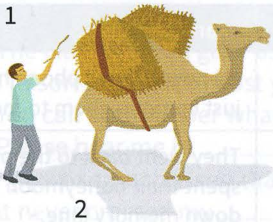

2

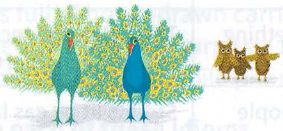

3

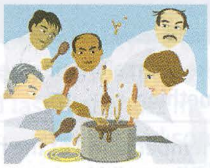

4

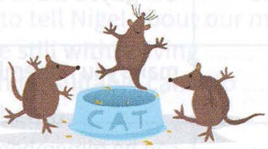

5

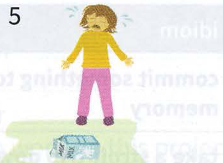

6

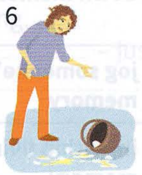

29.2 Can you find a proverb on the page opposite that contradicts each of these proverbs?

1 Too many cooks spoil the broth.
3 Out of sight, out of mind.
2 Opposites attract.

29.3 Write the first bits of these proverbs – the bits that we usually use.

1 .... and the pounds will take care of themselves.
2 .... on the other side of the fence.
3 .... makes Jack a dull boy.
4 .... shouldn't throw stones.
5 .... is worth two in the bush.
6 .... flock together.
7 .... the mice will play.
8 .... that breaks the camel's back.

29.4 What proverbs could you use in these situations?

1 Your brother's girlfriend is going abroad for six months. He is afraid that she will lose interest in him while she's away. You could say: 'Don't worry. .... '

2 A friend thinks that he will not get a job because the boss's nephew is interested in the same position. You agree: ' .... ,'

3 Three friends offer to help you build a new shed. You say: 'Thanks! ....'

4 You are discussing two friends: Bob who is full of grand promises and Ben who says little, but is always very willing to help. You could say: 'I prefer Ben. ....'

5 A friend of yours is very upset that he has scratched his new car. You could say: 'Don't make such a fuss. .... '

6 Your brother is thinking about resigning from a not very well-paid job in order to spend time looking for something better. You think he would be better to find a new job first. You say: ' .... '

30 Memory

A Idioms based on the word *memory*

idiom	meaning	example
commit something to memory	make yourself remember something	He never writes phone numbers down – he just commits them to memory.
take a stroll/trip down down memory lane	remember some of the happy things you did in the past	They went back to the place where they'd spent their honeymoon and took a stroll down memory lane.
jog someone's memory	make you remember something	The police are reconstructing the crime to try to jog the memory of possible witnesses.
in/within living memory	can be remembered by people still alive	Streets lit by gas lamps are still within living memory.

B Idioms containing the word *mind*

idiom	meaning	example
come/spring to mind	immediately think of something	I'd like to get him a special birthday present, but nothing springs to mind.
slip your mind	forget about something	I was going to ring her to wish her happy birthday, but it slipped my mind.
bear/keep something in mind	remember information when making a decision or thinking about a matter	Bearing in mind that it was your first attempt, I think you did very well.
your mind goes blank	you can't think of anything to say	When I looked at the exam questions, my mind went blank.
cross your mind	think about something for a short time	Of course, I don't think you broke the window. The thought never even crossed my mind.
Out of sight, out of mind.	something you say which means that, if you do not see someone, you forget about them	Annie hasn't thought of her boyfriend since he went abroad. Out of sight, out of mind!

C Other idioms relating to the topic of memory

idiom	meaning	example
something is on the tip of your tongue	you know it, but can't quite remember it	Her name is on the tip of my tongue – what is it?
ring a bell	think you've heard something before	His name rings a bell, but I don't think we've ever met.
a train of thought	a series of consecutive thoughts	Oh no! I've lost my train of thought.
rack your brains	think very hard	I racked my brains, but couldn't think where I'd left the book.

Exercises

30.1 Complete each of these idioms with *memory* or *mind*.

1 Out of sight, out of ....
2 The class reunion gave us a great opportunity for a trip down .... lane.
3 I'm sorry I forgot to post your letters. It just slipped my ....
4 You can't remember what you did last night? Let me jog your ....
5 Please bear me in .... if you need someone to work on this project.
6 I was so embarrassed that my .... just went blank.
7 It never crossed my .... to tell Nigel about our meeting.
8 Streets full of horse-drawn carriages are still within living .... – just!
9 I wanted to give her a surprise, but nothing suitable came to ....
10 Try to commit your mobile phone number to ....

30.2 Complete each of these idioms.

1 I don't think I know him, but his name rings ....
2 What is the word for it? I can't remember it. Oh dear, it's on ....
3 If I try, I should be able to remember the recipe for you. Let me rack ....
4 Try not to interrupt his train ....
5 My son is much more adventurous than I was. At his age the thought of travelling abroad alone would never ....

30.3 Answer these questions.

1 Which idiom could also be included in the Proverbs unit (Unit 29) of this book?
2 Find two idioms that mention parts of the body other than *mind* or *memory*.
3 What is the literal meaning of *jog* in the idiom *jog someone's memory*?
4 *Rack* is the name of a medieval instrument of torture on which people lay and were stretched. How does it fit the idiom *rack your brains*?
5 What is the literal meaning of *stroll* in the idiom *take a stroll down memory lane*?
6 What is the literal meaning of *spring* in the idiom *spring to mind*?
7 What is the literal meaning of the word *bear* in the idiom *bear in mind*?
8 Which of the idioms is based on a metaphor of hearing something?

30.4 Complete each of these idioms with the correct form of a verb.

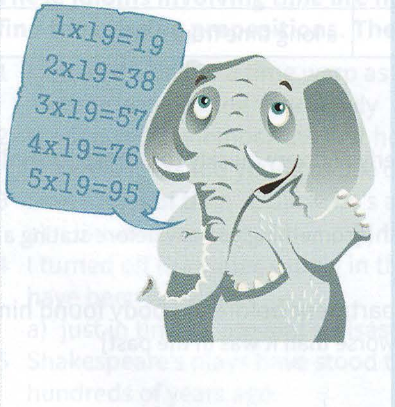

I was told to speak for five minutes on the subject of elephants. A few ideas .... (1) to mind and I reminded people how it is a well-known fact that elephants have a very good memory. Then, after a minute or so, my mind .... (2) blank. I knew I'd read an article about elephants recently, but everything I'd read had .... (3) my mind. I .... (4) my brains, but nothing .... (5) to mind. A friend .... (6) my memory by calling out 'ears' from the back of the room, but soon I had completely dried up. If only my memory were as good as an elephant's!

31 Time 1: the past and the future

A Looking back, looking forward

One of the major divisions in idioms involving time is between those that look back from now into the past and those that look forward into the future.

Looking back

example	meaning
This camera **has seen better days.**	is old and not working so well
My computer is **out of date.**	old and not useful or correct any more
She didn't study when she was young, but she's **making up for lost time** now.	doing now what she did not have the opportunity to do previously
People have fallen in love with one another **since/from the year dot.**	from the beginning of time

Looking forward

example	meaning
E-commerce seems to be **the shape of things to come.**	an indication of what is likely to become popular in the future
Use this room **for the time being** until your new office is ready.	temporarily; instead of something else
We are **on the threshold of** exciting new developments in medicine.	something is likely to happen very soon
The economy looks healthy **in the short/medium/long term.**	for a short/medium/long time in the future
It's **only a matter of time** before we start to colonise other planets.	it will definitely happen, even though we cannot say exactly when
I can't say if I like the job or not. **It's early days yet.**	it's too soon to say/decide
In the long run you'll see it was the right decision.	a long time from now

B Other related time idioms

He spends money **like there's no tomorrow.** [eagerly and very quickly (or, more formally, **as if there was/were no tomorrow**)]

At the end of the day, you have to be a little selfish. [something you say before stating a very important fact or idea]

The fact that he had been dead for a week in his apartment before anybody found him is **a sign of the times.** [something that shows that society now is worse than it was in the past]

Language help

Although the idioms on this page do not all contain the word *time*, their meanings are all related to time in some way. Grouping idioms by meaning is another way of learning them, in addition to grouping them by keywords.

Exercises

31.1 Match each idiom on the left with the situation in which it could be used on the right.

1 it's early days yet ☐
2 since the year dot ☐
3 the shape of things to come ☐
4 on the threshold of ☐
5 like there's no tomorrow ☐

a Someone shows you a car which is driven by solar energy.
b You tell someone about a very ancient tradition.
c A scientist claims to be on the point of discovering a cure for cancer.
d Someone asks you if you like an English course after only one day.
e Someone is spending all their savings carelessly.

31.2 Write an appropriate comment for each of the situations in exercise 31.1 using the idiom you chose.

1 This car really is ....
2 People have been doing this every spring ....
3 A scientist is ....
4 I've only been to a couple of lessons. ....
5 Max is spending money ....

31.3 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.

1 Some time soon we will inevitably discover life on other planets.
2 I think the main point is that you can never trust a politician.
3 I never learnt the piano as a child, so I'm solving that problem now by taking lessons.
4 Looking at just the next few years, the economic situation looks good, but looking at the next 30 to 40 years, the outlook is not so good.
5 This bicycle is a bit old and broken down now. I should really get a new one.
6 Could you use this computer just temporarily till the new one arrives?
7 It's a typical thing about the time we live in that you can't speak to a real human being when you telephone the bank. All you get is an automatic voice.
8 This milk has an old date on it. I'll throw it away and open a new carton.
9 It costs a lot of money now, but over a longer period it will be a good investment, I'm sure.

31.4 These idioms involving *time* are not in this unit. Using a dictionary if necessary, see if you can find the missing prepositions. Then choose the most suitable paraphrase.

1 I felt as if I was … a time warp as I sat in the ancient cottage talking to the old man.
a) time was passing very slowly b) I felt as if I had gone back in time to a different era
2 My dad can remember the first home computers, but that was … my time.
a) when I was too young to use one b) before I was born
3 I have a lot of time … Jack; he's a very interesting and intelligent person.
a) I like and respect him b) I spend a lot of time with him
4 I turned off the water supply in the nick … time. Five minutes later and the whole house would have been flooded!
a) just in time to prevent a disaster b) very quickly indeed
5 Shakespeare's plays have stood the test … time. They are as powerful today as they were hundreds of years ago.
a) have never been changed b) have not been weakened by the passing of time

32 Time 2: clocks and frequency

A Clocks / time passing

If you ...	then you ...
work against the clock to get something done/finished	work fast because you only have limited time
do something **in no time at all**	do it very quickly
call it a day	decide to finish (usually finish working)
don't have a minute to call your own	are very busy indeed
do something **there and then** (or **then and there**)	do it immediately, right at that moment
get up / start **at the crack of dawn**	start very early in the morning

Jake **worked against the clock** to get the report finished before the meeting.

The homework is very easy. You'll be able to do it **in no time at all**.

I'm really tired. Let's **call it a day** now and come back to it next week.

Ever since the twins were born, I **haven't had a minute to call my own**.

If a new idea is suggested, Allan is always keen to try it out **there and then**.

As our plane was leaving at 8 a.m., we had to get up **at the crack of dawn** to be at the airport on time.

B Frequency

These idioms refer to how often (or how rarely) something happens.

idiom	meaning
once in a lifetime	never likely to happen again
once in a blue moon	very rarely
once and for all	finally and definitely
off and on / on and off	sometimes, but not regularly or continuously
from time to time	sometimes, but not regularly
nine times out of ten	almost always

RARELY
↓
MORE FREQUENTLY
↓
FREQUENTLY

C Other time idioms

If something **goes/works/runs like clockwork**, it happens exactly as planned and without problems.

If you do something / start **from scratch**, you go right back to the beginning and start again.

Tip

Wherever possible, put groups of idioms onto a scale, like the frequency scale in B above. You could use scales for idioms connected with size, feelings, difficulties, etc.

Exercises

32.1 **Complete each of these idioms.**

1 It runs like ....
2 We set off at the crack ....
3 We were working against ....
4 I've had enough. Let's call ....
5 It happens this way nine ....

32.2 **Match each idiom on the left with the sentence on the right which best reflects its meaning.**

1 there and then ☐
2 once in a blue moon ☐
3 in no time at all ☐
4 off and on ☐
5 doesn't have a minute to call her own ☐

a Rob plays golf occasionally, but not often.
b Paula looks after three kids and has a full-time job.
c The doctor examined me immediately.
d I only see Patrick very rarely.
e The new house was built very quickly.

32.3 **Complete these idioms with prepositions.**

1 .... scratch
2 once .... a lifetime
3 once and .... all
4 .... time .... time
5 work .... the clock
6 nine times .... ten

32.4 **Choose four of the idioms from exercise 32.3 and write a sentence for each one to illustrate its meaning.**

32.5 **Rewrite the underlined part of each dialogue with an idiom.**

1 A: Do you go and see your mother and father very often?
B: Well, occasionally, but not on a regular basis.
2 A: Should we wait and do it as and when we need to?
B: No, I think we should do it now, so that we never need to do it again.
3 A: Shall we try and speak to Mr Sanders about it?
B: Well, we can try, but on almost every occasion he's too busy to meet anyone.
4 A: The boss wants this report by Friday!
B: Well, we'll just have to work very fast to get it finished by then.
5 A: Do you want to go on working a bit longer?
B: No, I've had enough. Let's finish now.

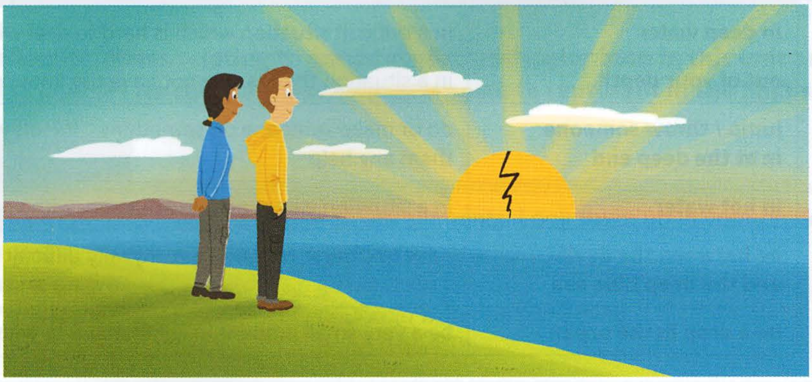

'It must be the crack of dawn.'

33 The elements

A Earth

idiom	meaning
He's the **salt of the earth**.	a very good and honest person
She'd **go to the ends of the earth** to save her child.	do anything possible
The royal couple were **run to ground** in Wales.	discovered after a lot of searching
All my warnings **fell on stony ground**.	were ignored

B Air

If you **pluck a number out of the air**, you choose one at random.

If someone **blows hot and cold**, they sometimes seem to like someone or something and sometimes don't so that others are confused about how they really feel.

If you **get wind of something**, you hear information that others hoped to keep secret.

If you **see how / which way the wind is blowing**, you decide to see how a situation develops before making up your mind about it.

C Fire

Tanya is **playing with fire**[1], agreeing to go out with Rick. Rumours about his violent temper have been **spreading like wildfire**[2] ever since he moved to the area. Of course, most people sometimes say things **in the heat of the moment**[3] that they do not really mean and I don't know how much truth there is in the rumours. However, you can't help thinking that **there's no smoke without fire**[4]. Anyhow, don't **add fuel to the flames/fire**[5] by criticising Rick in front of Tanya as you'll only make her keener on him.

[1] doing something that could be dangerous (*play* in this idiom is normally used in continuous tenses)

[2] going round very quickly

[3] without thinking because they are angry or excited

[4] if people are saying something is true and you don't know whether it is true or not, it probably is true

[5] do something to make a bad situation worse

D Water

idiom	meaning
in deep water	in a difficult situation which is hard to deal with
out of your depth	in a situation that you do not have the knowledge or skills to deal with
jump / throw someone in at the deep end	do or make someone do something difficult without being given or giving them any help
in hot water	in a situation where people are angry with you
be between the devil and the deep blue sea	have to choose between two equally difficult options
be a drop in the ocean	be a very small amount in comparison to what is needed

Exercises

33.1 Match each idiom on the left with its definition on the right.

1 get wind of something	☐	a move very fast
2 go to the ends of the earth	☐	b be an insignificant part of something
3 spread like wildfire	☐	c observe how a situation is developing
4 be in deep water	☐	d make a difficult situation worse
5 be a drop in the ocean	☐	e be in a difficult situation
6 blow hot and cold	☐	f hear about something secret
7 see how the wind is blowing	☐	g react in different, unpredictable ways
8 add fuel to the flames	☐	h do everything you can

33.2 Rewrite each sentence with an idiom. Use the keyword in brackets.

1 You'll be fine working for someone like that – he's a very decent man. (EARTH)
2 Unfortunately, no one paid any attention to my advice. (GROUND)
3 Unfortunately, her angry words have only made the situation worse. (FUEL)
4 I think Rosie must be in trouble – the boss has asked to see her at once. (WATER)
5 Noah doesn't really have the experience to cope with his new job. (DEPTH)
6 Spreading rumours like that is a risky thing to do. (FIRE)
7 Choose a number at random and multiply it by 3. (AIR)
8 The police were unable to find where the escaped convicts were hiding. (GROUND)

33.3 Put the words in order and make sentences.

1 like / The / of / news / wildfire / spread / their / divorce
2 the / the / sea / devil / blue / between / I'm / deep / and
3 no / fire / There / smoke / is / without
4 heat / the / of / Don't / anything / moment / in / say / the
5 and / I / the / cold / hot / he / way / blows / hate
6 the / thrown / when / I / I / university / end / was / in / deep / started / at

33.4 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1
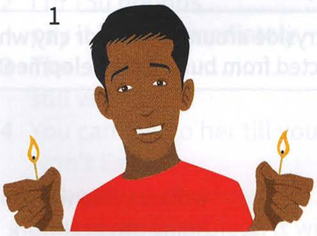

2
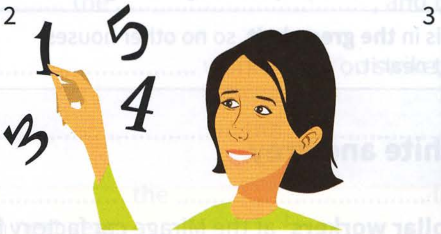

3
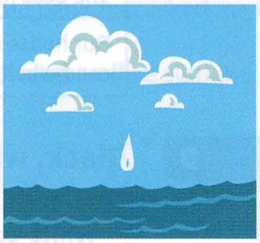

33.5 Look at the different idioms relating to earth, air, fire and water both in this unit and in Unit 43. Which abstract concepts do each of these elements seem to represent in the English mind?

Over to you

Here are some more idioms connected with the elements. Look them up in your dictionary. Write a definition and then write the idioms in sentences of your own.

not set the world on fire
it's all water under the bridge
the tide is turning
go up in smoke
pour cold water on something
make waves

34 Colour

A Red

idiom	meaning	example
red tape	official rules and bureaucracy that make it difficult to do something	There's a great deal of red tape involved in getting a work permit.
be in the red	have a negative amount in your bank balance	I can't afford a holiday this year. I'm 500 pounds in the red.
catch someone red-handed	catch someone at the moment they are doing something wrong	He was caught red-handed stealing money from the cash register.
a red herring	something unimportant that takes attention away from the main subject	Then he started talking about the cost of a new computer, which was a red herring, because we've got plenty of computers.

B Blue

I argued with Tim **till** I **was blue in the face**, but he wouldn't listen. [say the same thing many times, but someone refuses to listen]

I think there's **blue blood** in her family; her great-grandmother was a Russian princess. [belonging to the highest social class / aristocratic]

Blue-collar workers at the local car factory were on strike for six weeks. [workers who do physical work especially in factories] (See *white-collar* in D below.)

C Green

example	meaning
I was **green with envy** when she got the job.	very envious
My mother's **got green fingers**. Everything she plants in the garden grows well.	is a very good gardener
The boss has **given** the project **the green light**.	given permission for something to start
Our house is in **the green belt**, so no other houses can be built near it.	countryside around a town or city which is protected from building development

D Black, white and grey

White-collar workers[1] at the Mirage car factory have gone on strike over pay and conditions. The union says management has broken an agreement, and it wants a new one **in black and white**[2]. The management says that the agreement is a **grey area**[3] that must be made clear in proper discussions. Meanwhile, the factory owners, the Merschott Company of Germany, consider that the plant is a **black hole**[4], into which more and more money is disappearing. They are threatening to close the factory altogether.

[1] workers who work in offices, not doing physical work

[2] written, not just a spoken agreement

[3] something that is a problem, and is not very clear because there are no rules

[4] something which has no bottom, and everything put into it just disappears

Exercises

34.1 Match each newspaper headline with its text.

1 Health service budget just a black hole, says minister

2 Government promises to deal with grey area of Internet law

3 Green belt round Liverpool extended

4 Children with blue blood no more intelligent than others, say scientists

A There was a real need to protect the environment from further damage, the Director of Planning said.

B It was not at all clear what the situation was, and it was now time for governments to co-operate to clarify things.

C Any claim to the contrary simply could not be proved, said Doctor Wills, one of the team who investigated twenty upper-class families.

D Every year, more and more money simply disappears, without any real results in terms of improvements, she said.

34.2 Answer these questions.

1 Which kind of workers work in offices and which ones do physical work?
2 What colour are you if you wish you had something someone else has?
3 What colour are you if you repeat something, but the other person pays no attention?
4 What colour is your bank balance when you have spent more money than there was in it?
5 What colour light do you see when someone gives you permission to do something?

34.3 Use the idioms from exercise 34.2 to complete these sentences.

1 I was absolutely .... with .... when she won a trip to Los Angeles.
2 I'm 750 pounds .... the .... , and the bank has asked me to pay it back immediately.
3 The ....-................................ workers are on strike, but the office staff are still working.
4 You can talk to her till you're .... in the ....; she won't listen.
5 If the city authorities .... the .... light to the new conservation project, it will begin next year.

34.4 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.

1 I want to see a contract in written form, not just an informal agreement.
2 I wanted to apply for a visa, but a friend told me there are so many forms to fill in and complicated rules, so I've decided to forget it.
3 My new house has a big garden, but I'm no good with plants, so I'll probably never do any gardening.
4 She was caught just as she was stealing food from the school kitchen.
5 He's always introducing unimportant points into the discussion which distract everybody from the main argument.

35 Clothes

A Talking about work

We have a lot of work to finish today. So **roll up your sleeves**[1] and let's get busy!

Our teacher **wears lots of different hats**[4]. He teaches, coordinates classes, and writes exams.

Clara was a great boss. The new manager will **have big shoes to fill**[3].

If you need her help, just call. She will come **at the drop of a hat**[2] and help you.

The job interview went very well. I'm sure I **have it in the bag**[5].

1 to get ready to work hard
2 without any delay
3 to try to do your job as well as the person who did it before you; especially when that person was very successful
4 to do many different roles or tasks
5 to be in a situation where you are certain to succeed

B Describing behaviour

example	meaning
The professor **bored the pants off** everyone in the hall. Some students even fell asleep.	was extremely boring
My dad likes to think that he's in charge, but really my mum **wears the trousers** in our family!	is the person who makes decisions
Keep your shirt on! He didn't mean to scratch your car. It was an accident.	don't be angry
Laura is an amazing person. She has two jobs and still manages to volunteer at the soup kitchen. I **take my hat off to her**.	admire what she is doing
You can ask Tom for anything; he**'d give you the shirt off his back**.	is willing to do anything to help another person

C Pocket

We just sold my flat for three times what we paid for it, leaving us £200,000 **in pocket!**

[having more money than when you started]

I tried to make some money selling cupcakes, but only sold about half of them. After the cost of ingredients and transport, I actually ended up £35 **out of pocket**.

[having less money than when you started]

pocket

Simon sold my old video games online. He told me that he got £50 for them, but I found out later that he actually sold them for £60 and **pocketed** £10!

[to take money from someone in a dishonest way]

David had to **dig deep into his pockets** to pay for his children's education.

[to spend a lot of money, or give a lot of money away]

Exercises

35.1 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1
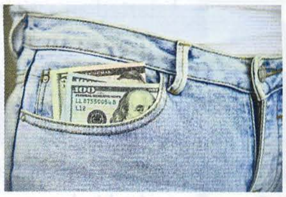

2
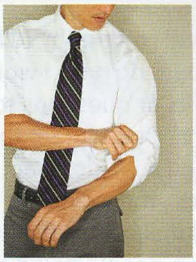

3
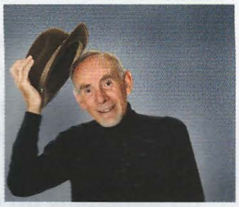

4
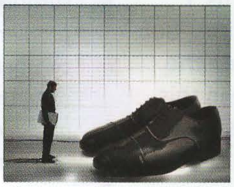

5
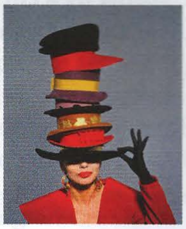

35.2 Match each idiom on the left with the situation in which it could be used on the right.

1	have it in the bag	☐	a Tina is the head of the student council, the class president, and a football coach at her sister's primary school.
2	wear the trousers	☐	b You sold a sofa for £30 more than you originally paid for it.
3	wear lots of different hats	☐	c Sarah is very generous; she is always willing to help her friends no matter what they need.
4	in pocket	☐	d Mark only needs to score 50% in the exam to pass the course, and he'll find that easy.
5	give someone the shirt off your back	☐	e Your friend is very angry because his football team lost.
6	keep your shirt on	☐	f Martin makes all the decisions in his relationship.

35.3 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 Paul's speech was really long and not very interesting. He really bored the trousers off everyone!
2 The exam is tomorrow? You'd better roll up your shirt and start studying right now.
3 Gary promised to pay me back for the hotel room, but he never did. Now I'm £80 outside the pocket.
4 I just hope I can be as good a teacher as Mr Roberts. I have some big shoes to walk in.
5 Julia is training for a marathon at the same time as writing a book. I really take my cap off to her.

35.4 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom from the left-hand page.

1 Anna told me that she sold our parents' car for £500, but now I find out that she was paid £700 and kept the difference.
2 Even after paying all of our expenses, we have an extra £75.
3 My sister thought she was definitely going to pass her driving test, but then she hit another car!
4 The charity asked people to donate generously to help build a new hospital.
5 I called Beth and she came straight away. She didn't even ask what the problem was.

36 Games and sport

A Ball games

Right then, I've **started the ball rolling**[1] by telling you what I think our company should do now. I would like anyone who has any comments or questions to speak now. **The ball is in your court**[2]. Don't forget that our rival companies are **on the ball**[3] and if we don't act quickly and do something **off our own bat**[4], they will. And they'd love to **throw us a curveball**[5] and make life difficult for us. I know my proposals will involve people doing overtime, but I hope that the workers may agree to **play ball**[6] given the circumstances we are all in. It's not our fault we are in this situation. Different rates of tax in different countries mean that we are not competing **on a level playing field**[7].

[1] started an activity and encouraged others to join in
[2] you have to do something now before any progress can be made
[3] quick to understand and react
[4] on our own initiative, without being asked to by anyone else
[5] surprise us with an unexpected problem
[6] co-operate in order to achieve something (usually used in a negative context)
[7] in a fair situation

B Cards

If you **play your cards right**, you behave in the right way to achieve what you want. It is informal and is often used in the expression *If (you) play (your) cards right, ...*

If you **put/lay your cards on the table**, you tell someone honestly what you think or what you plan to do.

If you **pass the buck**, you blame someone or make them responsible for something that must be done next (from an object used in the card game poker).

If you **follow suit**, you do the same as everyone else has just done. (This is a reference to playing the same suit, i.e. hearts, diamonds, spades or clubs, in cards.)

If you **call someone's bluff**, you make someone prove that what they are saying is true or prove that they will really do what they say they will do, because you don't believe them. To call someone's bluff in a card game is to force them to show you their cards.

C Miscellaneous sports and games

sport or game	idiom	meaning
swimming	**take the plunge**	do something important or difficult that you've been thinking of doing for a long time
board games	**go back to square one**	go back to the beginning of a project, because previous attempts have failed
archery	**be wide of the mark**	be wrong or miss what you were trying to hit
horse-riding	**do something on the spur of the moment** (spur = metal on boot which makes horse go faster)	do something suddenly, without planning
tarot cards (used for fortune-telling)	**be on the cards**	be likely to happen
gambling	**your best bet**	the best thing you can do to achieve the result you want
roulette	**when the chips are down** (chips = gambling pieces)	when you are in a difficult situation, especially one which tests whether you can trust people

Exercises

36.1 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1
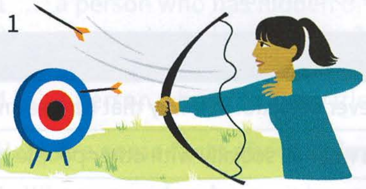

3
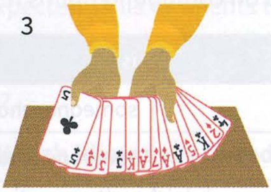

5
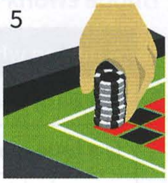

2
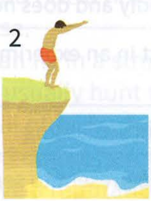

4
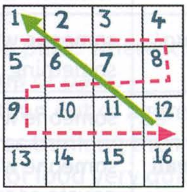

6
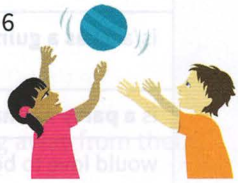

36.2 Match the beginning of each sentence on the left with its ending on the right.

1 If you play your cards right,	☐	a off their own bat.
2 When the chips are down,	☐	b would be your best bet.
3 The ball is in their court,	☐	c others will soon follow suit.
4 If you sign the contract,	☐	d we decided to go away for the weekend.
5 On the spur of the moment	☐	e so we'll have to wait and see what they do.
6 The children picked me some flowers	☐	f you learn who your real friends are.
7 Going by train rather than bus or car	☐	g you should get an invitation to her party.

36.3 Complete each sentence with an idiom from the box.

a level playing field   put his cards on the table   follow suit   call his bluff   off his own bat
on the ball   on the cards   pass the buck   start the ball rolling   threw us a curveball

1 Let's ask Pete for advice – he's usually ....
2 The government always tries to .... when there are economic problems, saying the previous regime is to blame.
3 I'd like you each to tell us why you have decided to do a creative writing course; Marie, would you .... , please?
4 Applicants all have to agree to the same conditions for the interview in order to ensure ....
5 No one asked him to help – he did it ....
6 If you keep your things tidy, the others may ....
7 It is still .... that I'll get a contract for the job.
8 He's been very frank and has .... ; now we'll have to do the same.
9 He claims he can speak fluent Japanese; let's .... and invite him to dinner with our Japanese guests.
10 The manager .... when he told us that our budget would be cut next year.

Over to you

Can you find any idioms related to your favourite sport or game? You might be able to find some by looking up keywords relating to that sport or game in a good English-English dictionary or a dictionary of idioms. For example, if you are interested in horse-riding, you might look up *horse*, *saddle*, *reins*.

37 Animals 1: describing people

A Animal names

These idioms are based on compound nouns related to animals.

A person who ...	is ...
is **a dark horse**	someone who is clever or skilful in a way that no one knew or expected
is **a lone wolf**	someone who does not mix socially with other people
is **a cold fish**	someone who is not very friendly and does not show their feelings
is/acts **as a guinea pig** /ˈgɪnɪ pɪg/	someone who acts as a subject in an experiment or trial of something
is **a party animal**	someone who loves parties and socialising
would love to be **a fly on the wall**	someone who would love to be present to see an important private or secret event

Note also:

There was a **fly-on-the-wall** documentary on TV last night about hospital waiting-rooms. [programme filmed in a real-life situation, sometimes with hidden cameras]

B People's characters and their actions

John**'s bark is worse than his bite**. [he may seem fierce/tough, but he is not really]

You don't need to be afraid of him. He **wouldn't hurt a fly**. [is totally harmless and would never hurt anyone]

Harry's really got **the travel bug** ever since he won that holiday in the Caribbean. [a strong desire to travel (*bug* here means virus; the original meaning of *bug* is a small insect)]

She's working very hard for her exams. She's really **got/taken the bit between her teeth**. [started to work/act in a very determined way (a *bit* is a piece of metal put between a horse's teeth to control it)]

They've **given me free rein** to do what I like in this new job. [given me complete freedom (*reins* are what you hold in your hands to control a horse when riding)]

Josh: How did you know I was getting married?

Leanne: **A little bird told me.** [said when someone has told you a secret, but you do not want to say who]

As soon as the meeting was over, we all **made a beeline for** the food. We were so hungry! [went quickly and directly to]

I always **have butterflies in my stomach** just before an exam. [feel very nervous]

I **made a real pig of myself** last night, so I'm not going to eat any lunch today. [ate too much]

I have so much work to do these days. I'm just **chasing my tail** trying to catch up. [doing a lot, but it is all pointless / without effect]

Exercises

37.1 Which idiom can be used to describe ...

1 ... a person who has hidden or unexpected skills or talents that no one knows about?
2 ... a person who loves parties?
3 ... a person who is the subject of an experiment or trial of something new?
4 ... a person who is not very friendly?

37.2 Here are some facts about animals. Which idioms are based on them?

1 When you ride a horse, it has a *bit* in its mouth, which is a metal bar that helps you control the horse.
2 A bee can fly in a straight line back to a place where it found food.
3 Wolves usually hunt together in a group or pack.
4 Dogs will often bark more out of fear than out of aggression.
5 Cats and dogs often run round in circles thinking their tail is running away from them.
6 Pigs have a reputation for eating a lot of food very quickly.

37.3 Use the idioms from exercise 37.2 to repeat or sum up what the first speaker says.

1 Jack: Harry never seems to want to go out with other people.
Lucy: No, he's a bit of ....
2 Liam: Are you busy these days?
Chris: Busy! It's ridiculous! I try to keep up with things, but I'm just
....
3 Marcus: Dan is in the boss's office again today. That's the third time this week he's gone to complain about the computers.
Mike: Yes, he won't give up. He's really got ....
4 Orla: You seemed to be enjoying your lunch today!
Emma: Yes, I .... I feel so full now!
5 Kallum: Philip scared everyone yesterday. He looked really angry.
Eve: Oh, don't worry about him. His ....
6 Alan: Look at Charles! He's already talking to a gorgeous girl over there!
Joe: Oh yeah, he always .... for the prettiest girl in the room.

37.4 Complete each of these idioms.

1 Big Joe is quite harmless really, although he looks tough. He wouldn't ....
a ....
2 I already know about Kate getting divorced. A .... told me.
3 I hate making a speech to a big audience. I always get .... in my ....
4 It's a very unusual school. The pupils are .... free .... to do just what they like.
5 I really got the travel .... after I went on a trekking holiday to Nepal. I can't wait to go away again.
6 I'd love to be a .... on the .... when Nick tells the boss he's resigning.

38 Animals 2: describing situations

A Cats and dogs

In the 'situation' box, note how the 'if-clause' tells you whether the idiom is normally used with things (something), people (you) or with an impersonal construction such as *there is*.

situation	idiom	meaning
If something	**goes to the dogs**	it goes from a good situation/condition to a bad one
If you	**let the cat out of the bag**	you accidentally tell people a secret / something you should not tell them
If you	**put the cat among the pigeons**	you create a crisis or a problematic situation
If there is	**not (enough) room to swing a cat**	there is very little room or space somewhere

The country **has gone to the dogs** since the new government took over.

We didn't tell anyone the news, but she **let the cat out of the bag** and now everyone knows.

Kim's report really **put the cat among the pigeons**. Now everyone's in a state of crisis.

There's not enough room to swing a cat in our flat, so I don't think a party is a good idea.

B Other animal-related expressions

In these dialogues, the second speaker uses an idiom to repeat and sum up the situation described by the first speaker.

Ryan: Everyone is so selfish. They would sell their own mothers to get what they want, and they don't care how much other people suffer.

Tania: Yes, it really is **the law of the jungle**. It's very depressing.

Becky: We shouldn't even think of discussing the voting system for the committee. It's very complicated and unfair in many respects, and could raise huge problems.

Ricky: I agree. It's **a** real **can of worms**. I think we should avoid discussing it.

Iris: If you ask me, it's a waste of time complaining to Robert. He doesn't take any notice, no matter how often you do it or no matter how angry you get.

Harry: Yes, it's **like water off a duck's back**.

Edward: We're all overworked and in a panic. We're trying to solve too many problems, and ending up not achieving anything!

Nancy: Yes, I agree. We're all just **running round like headless chickens**.

Note also:

I don't use **snail mail** these days. E-mail's easier. [the post, often said humorously when contrasting with e-mail]

I don't know if anyone would really want a job like this one, but we could **put out feelers** and see if anyone is interested. [make informal enquiries; talk to people unofficially]

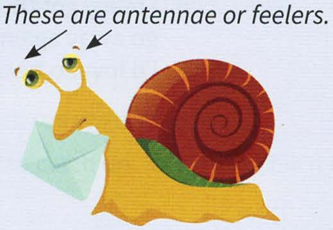

These are antennae or feelers.

Language help

When recording idioms in your vocabulary notebook, make notes of typical situations in which they can be used. For example: *go to the dogs* – typical situation: a restaurant that was very good before is very bad now.

Exercises

38.1 Rewrite each sentence with an idiom that means the opposite of the underlined words.

1 There's plenty of room at my house.
2 I'll let you know by e-mail.
3 Peter has not told anybody the secret news.
4 The economy is getting better and better.
5 The office staff were working very calmly and efficiently.

38.2 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1

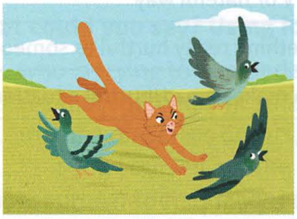

2

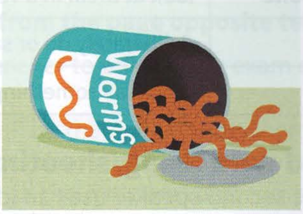

3

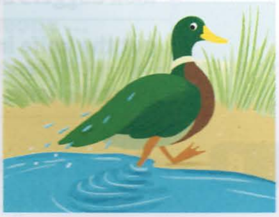

38.3 Match each of the idioms from exercise 38.2 with one of these sentences.

a) What she said has raised some horrible problems which we'd all prefer to forget.
b) Oh dear! That is really going to cause huge problems and upset absolutely everybody!
c) You can insult him and be really awful to him, but he just never seems to care or even notice.

38.4 Answer these questions.

1 If you tell someone a secret, what do you let the cat out of?
2 What can you put out in order to test whether people are interested in an idea?
3 What kind of law do wild animals obey?

38.5 Use a dictionary to find the missing words in these animal idioms if you do not know them. If you think you know the idioms, write your answers and then check them in a dictionary. Make a note of the meaning of the idioms in your vocabulary notebook.

Cambridge Dictionary
ry.cambridge.org

1 take the bull by the ....
2 kill two birds with one ....
3 at a snail's ....
4 like a bear with a sore ....
5 a ....'s breakfast.

38.6 Use the five idioms from exercise 38.5 to rewrite the underlined parts of this paragraph.

I was trying to finish my essay for my English class by the end of the week, but it all seemed to be going very slowly and I was not very motivated. So I decided to face the situation and act positively. I stayed up until after midnight every day for four days and worked on my essay. I was tired in the mornings, and went round feeling very bad-tempered and irritable all day, but, in the end I managed to do two useful things in one go: I finished the essay and I read a number of important books I should have read weeks ago. My last essay was a bit of a mess, but I'm hoping this one will get a better grade.

Over to you

Think of two animals which have idioms connected with them in your language. Then use a dictionary to see if there are any idioms connected with these animals in English.

39 Weapons and war

A Idioms based on guns and knives

If you ...	then you ...
bite the bullet	face a difficult situation and act decisively / do not avoid it
jump the gun	do something too soon, before you should do it
stick to your guns	don't let other people change your mind/ideas/principles
look daggers at someone	look at them in a very angry or hateful way
put the knife in	deliberately do or say something really hurtful to someone
twist the knife	do or say something which makes a bad/hurtful situation even worse

B Idioms connected with firing/shooting

In these dialogues, the second speaker uses an idiom to repeat part of the question.

Henry: Have you ever tried snowboarding?

Oscar: No, but I'd like to **have a shot at** it one day.

Hannah: Now that you're the Head of Department, do you find people always blame you immediately for any problems that arise?

Grace: Oh yes, I'm **in the firing line** all the time.

Mick: So it's Peter Smith who makes all the important decisions and has all the power?

Rita: Oh yes, Peter Smith **calls the shots** these days.

Lily: It must have been awful for you, being in the middle of such a terrible argument between Roz and Barbara?

Abbie: Yes, I was really **caught in the crossfire**; I found it very difficult.

Aaron: So you think we should wait and not ask for the funds yet?

Beth: Yes, I think we should **hold fire** till the future is more certain.

C War and fighting in general

The village people are **up in arms** over the plan to build a motorway very near their homes. [angry and protesting loudly]

Oliver's **his own worst enemy** when it comes to getting promotion at work. He's just so negative about everything. [his own attitude/behaviour will prevent him from reaching his goal]

I think you're **fighting a losing battle** trying to get a pay rise. The boss never listens to anyone. [trying to achieve something that you will probably fail to achieve]

I wouldn't give up this job till you're absolutely sure you've got the new one if I were you. You don't want to **burn your bridges**. [do something that makes it impossible to go back to a situation you were in before]

Joe can be very boring sometimes. He always seems to **have an axe to grind**. [have a strong view or opinion and want to persuade everyone he is correct; normally used critically]

When it comes to the crunch, I won't let you down. [when a situation becomes serious or difficult]

I think we've found **a chink in his armour**. [a weak point that we can exploit / take advantage of]

Exercises

39.1 **Complete each of these idioms.**

1 She was looking .... at me last night. I wonder what I've done to upset her?
2 Her last remark was so hurtful, especially as I was already upset. I think she was just trying to .... the .... even further.
3 I really think you should .... the bullet, and go and speak to him.
4 She .... to her .... and didn't sign the contract. So they've changed it.
5 You're .... the gun. Wait till we know whose fault it was before you complain.
6 Freddy really puts the .... in sometimes. He is capable of saying such cruel things.

39.2 **What could you say? Using idioms from the page opposite tell someone ...**

1 ... who is trying to persuade the teacher to tell you the exam questions before the exam takes place that they will not succeed.
2 ... that if a real crisis occurs, you will be there to support them.
3 ... that you yourself are the main problem when it comes to trying to save money.
4 ... that they will be the one to face all the criticisms and complaints in their new job.
5 ... that you'd like to try bungee-jumping one day if you ever get the chance.
6 ... that they should wait before they send a very angry letter they've written.

39.3 **Horoscopes often use idioms. Read these horoscopes and then say or write exactly what you would tell a friend with that birth-sign about their future, without using the idioms.**

TAURUS	GEMINI	CAPRICORN	VIRGO
Someone you thought was a good friend will say something very hurtful today, and later on will twist the knife even further. Stay calm and don't lose your temper.	**Two people you like and respect will quarrel today, and you'll be caught in the crossfire. Try to stay neutral, or you'll risk losing a good friend.**	**Someone close to you will try to tell you what to do, but it's time you called the shots, so don't be afraid to make your own decisions.**	**You've always thought of yourself as a strong, determined person, but someone discovers a chink in your armour and makes life difficult for you.**

39.4 **Choose the correct answer.**

1 If you were up in arms, you'd be ... .
a) holding someone you love
b) protesting strongly
c) feeling much stronger than before

2 If someone puts the knife in, they ... .
a) make an important point
b) test the situation before acting
c) do or say something very damaging

3 If you burn your bridges, you ... .
a) make it impossible to return to a former situation
b) get extremely angry and violent
c) destroy a good friendship

4 If you have an axe to grind, you have ... .
a) a serious quarrel with someone
b) a desire to hurt someone
c) a strong opinion and you want to persuade people you're right

Over to you

If you can, look at a popular English-language magazine or tabloid newspaper and see if the horoscopes contain idioms. Make a note of any idioms you find, especially for your own star sign.

40 Food

A Appetite

If something **makes your mouth water**, it makes you want to eat it:

One look at those cakes **makes my mouth water**.

If you say that someone **has a sweet tooth**, you mean that they particularly like sweet things.

The word *appetite* can be used to refer to a desire for food or for something other than food. In the same way, **whet your appetite** can be used to mean awaken a desire:

Cinemas use trailers to **whet viewers' appetites** and make them want to see the whole film.

B Sweet and sour

Sweet things are generally considered to be particularly pleasant and luxurious. **The icing on the cake**, for example, refers not only to the sugar coating on a cake but also to something that makes a good situation even better:
This trophy is **the icing on the cake** for Eva, who has had a great year as a tennis player.

The expression **you can't have your cake and eat it** or **you want to have your cake and eat it** is used to refer to the fact that two good things are impossible to do or have at the same time:
He **wants to have his cake and eat it**: he wants a well-paid secure job, but he doesn't want to have to work evenings or weekends.

Sour and *bitter* generally have unpleasant associations in idioms. If an experience **leaves a sour taste in your mouth**, you have an unpleasant memory of it. If you do something **to the bitter end**, you see it through to the end even though it takes a long time and is difficult.

C Specific foods

idiom	meaning	example
have egg on your face	be left feeling stupid or embarrassed because of something you did	You'll have egg on your face if your plan doesn't work!
be the best/greatest thing since sliced bread	be fantastic (informal)	Some people see contactless payments as the best thing since sliced bread, while others are more wary.
be your bread and butter	be an activity or job you do to get the money you need	Taxi-driving is his bread and butter though he also writes music.
bear fruit	produce a positive result	At last our work is bearing fruit.

D In the supermarket

If you say something or someone is **flavour of the month**, it means that that thing or person is very popular. This is a reference to supermarkets' practice of putting a particular flavour of something – strawberry ice cream, for example – on special offer for a month:
Flavour-of-the-month actress, Becci Carr, stars in tonight's TV drama.

The phrase **be past** or **pass your sell-by date** is often used humorously to refer to a person or thing that is not wanted or used any more because they are too old. It refers to the way supermarket food is marked with a *sell-by date* after which the product must be removed from the shelves before it goes bad:
I think she's **passed her sell-by date** as an actress.

Exercises

40.1 **What might Jo say in each situation? Match the remarks in the box with the situations.**

You can't have your cake and eat it.
He had egg on his face!
I was left with a sour taste in my mouth!
It's the best thing since sliced bread!
It provides the bread and butter.

1 Jo's husband asks her what she thinks of some exciting new computer software she's using.
2 Jo asks her brother how he likes his new, rather boring job.
3 Jo's husband asks her how she felt after a meeting at work where people said some very unpleasant things to each other.
4 Jo tells her husband about her boss – whom she doesn't like – who made a mistake in some basic figures at a meeting where all the main company managers were present.
5 Jo's son tells her that he's going to spend his (not very large) savings on an expensive new guitar as well as going on a trip to Australia.

40.2 **Circle the correct word to complete each sentence.**

1 Although it was too slow-moving for my taste, I sat through the film to the bitter / sour / sweet end.
2 Watching that cookery programme on TV has really watered / wetted / whetted my appetite for trying some new recipes.
3 All the effort Lucia has put into training is beginning to bear food / fruit / vegetables.
4 Although the pop group DK1 is bargain / flavour / taste of the month at the moment, their popularity is unlikely to last.
5 Grandad was exhausted after his long walk and said he had passed his sell-by day / time / date.
6 Staying in a hotel room that Leonardo di Caprio had once used was really the icing on the biscuit / cake / sugar.
7 Having such a sweet mouth / tongue / tooth makes it very difficult for her to lose weight.
8 The wonderful smells from the kitchen are really making my eyes / mouth / nose water.

40.3 **Match an idiom from the page opposite with each of these definitions.**

1 love chocolates and cakes
2 be absolutely fantastic
3 be too old to be useful
4 be in an embarrassing position
5 bring about good results
6 make you want something (Give two answers.)

40.4 **Complete these sentences in any way you like.**

1 .... is her bread and butter though she still hopes to succeed as an actress.
2 .... always makes my mouth water.
3 .... seems to be flavour of the month in the pop music world at the moment.
4 Kate had egg on her face when ....
5 For me .... is the best thing since sliced bread.
6 I hope that .... will bear fruit.

Over to you

Look up these food words in a good dictionary: *apple, cheese, jam, tea*. Find an idiom for each of them and write it in a sentence.

41 Roads

A People: character, emotions and relationships

example	meaning
Goodbye. I hope **our paths cross** again soon.	we meet
I'm really **stuck in a rut** in this job. I think I'll look for something new. (rut = deep track or mark made by a vehicle on the surface of a road)	in a boring situation, with no hope of excitement, or future prospects
This computer's **driving me round the bend**! It keeps crashing each time I try to save my work.	making me angry and frustrated
This book is **right up your street/alley**. It's called 'How to make a million in a year'. (alley = narrow street or lane with buildings on either side)	perfect for you; exactly what interests you
Josh is very **middle-of-the-road** politically.	neither left-wing nor right-wing, has no radical views

B Road idioms that comment on situations

I think the government is **on the right/wrong track** these days. [thinking or acting rightly/wrongly]

It's **an uphill battle/fight/struggle** trying to persuade Joe to get a job. [a very difficult task]

That restaurant'**s** really **gone downhill** lately. [it was good, but is not any longer]

She lives right **off the beaten track**, but she loves the peace and quiet. [in a very isolated place]

The Conservative Party is **at a crossroads**. [at a decisive moment in its history]

This job I have now is **a** complete **dead end**. [it has no future / no prospects]

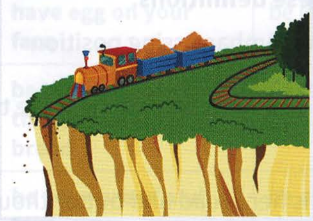

be on the right/wrong track

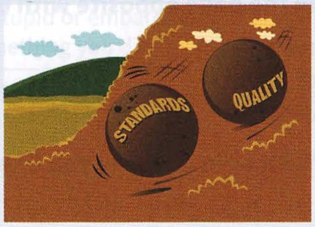

go downhill

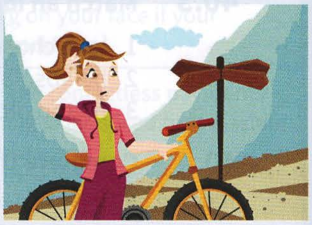

at a crossroads

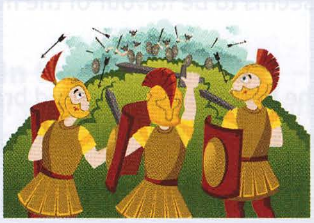

an uphill battle/fight/struggle

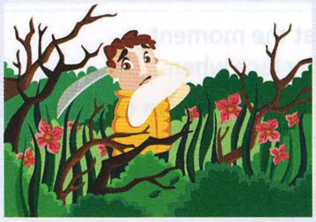

off the beaten track

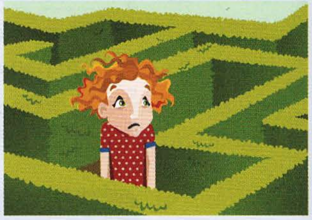

a dead end

I use a bicycle these days **to go/get from A to B.** [to make simple/typical journeys]

The new hotel has really **put** the village **on the map**. [now everybody has heard of the village]

Well, it's almost midnight. We should **hit the road**. [start our journey (home)]

Road rage is increasing in many countries. [violent incidents resulting from traffic disputes]

Exercises

41.1 **Complete each of these idioms from A opposite.**

1 Airlines .... me round the .... ! You can never get simple information from them when you phone them up.
2 I don't have any extreme views about anything. I'm quite ....-.................................... -the.................................... .
3 I didn't like her at all, and I hope our .... never .... again, to be honest.
4 It's a good idea to change your job every few years. It's very easy to get stuck .... a .... if you're not careful.
5 This video's .... up your .... It's all about how violins are made.

41.2 **Use the idioms from exercise 41.1 to rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences.**

1 Well, it's been nice talking to you. Maybe we'll see each other again somewhere.
2 That TV programme about birds is just right for you. You should watch it.
3 Liam is fairly neutral when it comes to environmental issues.
4 The photocopier makes me absolutely crazy. It always breaks down just when you need it most.
5 I gave up my job and went round the world. I felt I had got into a boring routine with no prospects for the future.

41.3 **True or false? Tick (✓) the correct box.**

	True	False
1 If someone lives off the beaten track, they live in the middle of a city.	☐	☐
2 If a street is a dead end, you can't drive down it and out the other end.	☐	☐
3 Road rage is when people get angry and violent because of problems and arguments while driving.	☐	☐
4 If something is an uphill struggle, it's like the pleasant feeling of travelling up a beautiful hill.	☐	☐
5 If someone is on the wrong track, they are dialling a wrong number on a telephone.	☐	☐

41.4 **Use idioms from this unit to ...**

1 ... tell someone it's time to start a journey.
2 ... tell someone that the bus is the easiest way to travel round in your area.
3 ... tell someone not to go to the Imperial Hotel as it's not as good as it used to be.
4 ... tell someone that you think what they are going to do is the right course of action.
5 ... tell someone that a new rock music festival has really made your town famous.
6 ... tell someone that you think your country is at an important and decisive point in its history.

Over to you

Think of idioms connected with roads, paths and tracks in your language. Do any of them match the idioms in this unit? If they don't, try to find out the equivalent expression in English. Use a dictionary of idioms or another good dictionary.

42 Houses and household objects

A Home

Home is the place where people feel comfortable and safe. If you **are/feel at home** somewhere, you are/feel comfortable there. If you **make yourself at home**, you relax and make yourself comfortable. Similarly, if something is **as safe as houses**, it is extremely safe.

The implications of what she had said didn't **come home to me** until some days later. [I didn't understand it fully]

Her news reports have really **brought home to me** the horrors of war. [made me understand, usually something unpleasant]

B Doors and fences

Doors give you access to somewhere new.

They don't pay me very well for the work I do there at the moment, but at least I've **got my foot in the door**. [started working at a low level in an organisation because you want to get a better job in the same organisation later on]

Doors have keys and handles.

Female voters **hold the key to** the party's success in the election. [provide the explanation for something you could not previously understand]

Her father **flew off the handle** when she said she wasn't going to return to university. [reacted in a very angry way (informal)]

A fence marks the boundary between two areas of land.

If you **sit on the fence**, you delay making a decision or fail to choose between two alternatives. Usually in the end, though, you have to **come down on one side or the other**. [make a choice]

C Household objects

Alf **hit the ceiling/roof**[1] this morning for no reason at all. I thought he'd just **got out of bed on the wrong side**[2], but then his girlfriend explained that he's been **burning the candle at both ends**[3] because of his exams. I'm glad she **put me in the picture**[4] because now I can understand why he reacted so crossly. However, I wish he'd **take a leaf out of his girlfriend's book**[5] and go to bed at a reasonable time.

[1] reacted angrily

[2] got up in a bad mood and stayed in a bad mood all day

[3] staying up late and getting up early

[4] explained the situation to me – *picture* also means *situation* in **get the picture** [understand the situation (informal)] and **keep someone in the picture** [keep someone informed]

[5] copy something someone else does, often in order to gain an advantage that they have

Exercises

42.1 **Match the beginning of each idiom on the left with its ending on the right.**

1 sitting on the ☐
2 getting your foot in the ☐
3 getting out of bed on the wrong ☐
4 flying off the ☐
5 putting someone in the ☐
6 feeling at ☐
7 burning the candle at both ☐

a home
b handle
c fence
d picture
e ends
f door
g side

42.2 **Answer these questions.**

1 Is a decisive person likely to sit on the fence or come down on one side or the other?
2 If a student takes a holiday job in a big company in order to get a foot in the door, what does that suggest about the student's plans?
3 In what circumstances do people often burn the candle at both ends?
4 Are you more likely to say that something important or something trivial is brought home to you?
5 Do you think someone would be pleased or displeased if you took a leaf out of their book?
6 If you keep someone in the picture, are you being honest to them or not?
7 How do you feel if you get out of bed on the wrong side?
8 If someone hits the roof, what sort of mood are they in?

42.3 **Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1
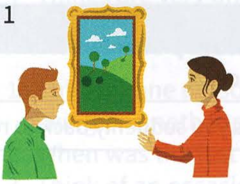

2
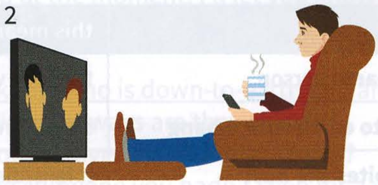

3
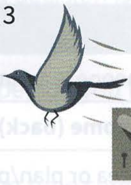

4
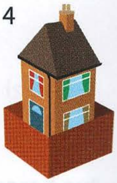

42.4 **Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.**

1 It will take some time before the impact of the new legislation is fully felt by the person in the street.
2 Sophie will make herself ill if she goes on allowing herself so little sleep.
3 Before you take over the project, I'll let you know exactly what the situation with it is.
4 The police think that DNA testing will provide the evidence necessary for proving who the murderer must have been.
5 Jim's been in a really bad mood all day.
6 The government can't postpone making a decision for ever.
7 Rob gets really angry at the slightest provocation these days. (Give two answers.)
8 If you want to get fit, why don't you do as Katie has done and join a gym?

42.5 **Write sentences using six of the idioms from this unit about your own life or experiences.**

43 Nature

In this unit we look at idioms connected with the earth, the planets and the air, and other basic elements.

A The air

The air (or sky) is often seen as something associated with feelings and emotions, or is in some way connected with unknown or future events. Look at these newspaper clips.

There was a sense of relief **in the air**[1] when the 'not guilty' verdict was announced.

Whether the government will change the law on football hooliganism is **up in the air**[3] at the moment.

The discussions have not solved the problem, but they have helped to **clear the air**[5] to a certain extent.

The news has come as a **breath of fresh air**[2] for students worried about the high level of fees.

Mr Watson said the news had come **out of the blue**[4] and it had shocked everyone.

[1] everyone could feel it
[2] something new / more exciting
[3] undecided
[4] completely unexpectedly (*the blue* = the sky)
[5] make bad feelings between people disappear

B The earth, planets, ground

Idioms about the earth often refer to the ground beneath our feet and to being practical/realistic.

If …	this means …
someone is a **down-to-earth** person	they are very practical
you **come (back) down to earth with a bang**	something brings you suddenly back to reality
an idea or plan/project **bites the dust**	it fails/dies
someone is **(living) on another planet**	they have no awareness of the real world
you are **over the moon** about something	you are extremely happy
something **is/hits rock bottom**	it is as low as it can possibly be/go
you **find out how the land lies**	you see how the situation is before you get involved
a person is **upper-crust***	they belong to a very high social class

* The *crust* is the top surface of the earth; under it are other layers of very hot rocks.

Note also:

If you are **in the dark** or someone **keeps you in the dark**, you are not told important things that other people know.

If you are **in your element**, you are happy/relaxed in the situation because you are good at the things it involves.

If you are **out of your element**, you feel unhappy/uncomfortable because you are not good at the tasks involved. (*element* here refers to the four basic natural elements: earth, water, fire and air)

Exercises

43.1 Complete each of these idioms.

1 The news .... out of the blue. No one was expecting it.
2 What a crazy idea! I think she's living .... another planet.
3 The price of computers has .... rock bottom this year.
4 I think we should .... out how the land lies before we decide.
5 They've .... me in the dark about their future plans. I wish they'd tell me.

43.2 Match each question on the left with the most likely response on the right.

1	Is Anna Conda really a princess?	☐	a Yes, it bit the dust.
2	I guess he was delighted with the news?	☐	b Yes, he was in his element.
3	So your new project failed after all?	☐	c No, he's very down-to-earth.
4	Did your long talk with David help at all?	☐	d I don't know, but she's very upper-crust.
5	Did your dad enjoy his golfing holiday?	☐	e Yes, he was over the moon.
6	Is Jack a very romantic type of person?	☐	f Well, it did help to clear the air a bit.

43.3 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom.

1 You could feel a sense of fear in everyone when the planes came overhead.
2 It really is something new and exciting for us that the company has decided to move to London. We are all bored with working in a small town.
3 Sara was brought suddenly back to reality when the bank manager told her she had spent all her money.
4 Things are very undecided at the moment. I'll let you know when a decision is made.

43.4 Answer these questions.

1 Think of one person you know who is down-to-earth and another person you know who is just living on another planet. In what ways are they so?
2 When was the last time you felt over the moon, and why?
3 Think of an occasion when someone you hadn't seen for a very long time suddenly appeared out of the blue.
4 Think of one situation where you could personally say 'I'm in my element here!'

43.5 The underlined idioms below are not in this unit. Try to work out the meaning of the idioms from context. If you can't, then check their meaning in a good general dictionary or in a dictionary of idioms.

Cambridge
Dictionary
ry.cambridge.org

1 I was shaking like a leaf as I waited to hear if I had passed the exam.
2 I slept like a log last night. It was so quiet and the bed was very comfortable.
3 I hate making big decisions. I usually prefer to just go with the flow.
4 It goes against the grain for him ever to say he was wrong. It is not in his character to admit that he has made a mistake.

Over to you

Look up *sun*, *star(s)*, *moon*, *rock(s)*, *sea* and *mountains* in a good dictionary or a dictionary of idioms. What idioms do you find? Write the idioms in sentences which illustrate their meaning.

44 Boats and sailing

A Boats

idiom	meaning	example
push the boat out	spend a lot of money, usually because you are celebrating	Bill was happy to push the boat out for his daughter's wedding.
rock the boat	do or say something that causes problems, usually when you try to change a situation that other people do not want to change	Party members were told firmly not to rock the boat by publicly criticising the government just before the election.
miss the boat	be too late to get something you want	Can I still get tickets for the concert or have I already missed the boat?
burn your boats/bridges	do something that makes it impossible for you to go back to the situation you were in before	Don't sell your house to finance your business – that would be burning your boats.
be in the same boat	be in the same, usually difficult, situation	It's a pity you can't use a dictionary in your exam, but at least everyone's in the same boat.

B Sailing

idiom	meaning	example
steer clear of	avoid someone or something because it is dangerous for you	I'd try to steer clear of Emma if I were you – she's trouble!
sail close to the wind	take risks that could cause problems or danger (usually used in the continuous)	You're sailing a bit close to the wind by speaking to the boss like that!
be plain sailing	be very easy	I was a bit apprehensive about doing so much in just one day, but it was all plain sailing.
be in the doldrums (doldrums = area of sea with no wind)	(of a business) be not very successful; (of a person) feel sad and without energy	His business has been in the doldrums for several years now.
put/stick your oar in (oar = long piece of wood used for rowing a boat)	join a discussion when the other participants do not want you to (informal)	I hope John has the sense not to stick his oar in at tomorrow's meeting.
show someone the ropes	show someone how to do a job or activity	As it's your first day at work, Sue will show you the ropes.
be a nervous wreck (wreck = boat that's been destroyed, e.g. by hitting rocks)	be mentally and physically exhausted	I'm a nervous wreck after a day with those terrible children.
clear the decks (deck = flat open area on boat)	get ready for action	We'd better clear the decks before we paint the room.
be (all) at sea	be confused	I'm all at sea with this computer.

Exercises

44.1 **Answer these questions.**

1 If you miss the boat, have you lost a means of transport or an opportunity?
2 If you say that a project was plain sailing, are you happy with how it went or not?
3 If you burn your boats, are you taking a risk or not?
4 If a friend is in the doldrums, would you try to calm them down or cheer them up?
5 Are you more likely to be a nervous wreck if you're bored or if you're overworked?
6 If you are all at sea in a new job, do you need someone to show you the ropes or to stick their oar in?
7 If you rock the boat, will people be pleased with you or annoyed with you?
8 If you show someone the ropes, are you helping them or threatening them?

44.2 **Complete each of these idioms with one word.**

1 Things here are very difficult, but at least we're all in the .... boat.
2 It'll be hard climbing the mountain, but should be .... sailing on the way down.
3 Everyone would like to dance, so let's clear the .... and make as much space as we can in the middle of the floor.
4 Speaking to the press about what's going on is .... a bit close to the wind.
5 I know the party is costing a lot, but you have to .... the boat out occasionally.
6 Joe's been in the .... ever since he lost his job.
7 Trust George to stick his .... in – he never knows when it's better to say nothing.
8 I don't trust Paul – I'd steer .... of him if I were you.

44.3 **Here are some more idioms based on sailing concepts. Match each idiom on the left with its explanation on the right. (Note that *tack* = direction taken in sailing in order to catch the wind.)**

1	change tack	☐	a	be familiar with how things are done
2	know the ropes	☐	b	be in a weak mental or physical condition
3	try a different tack	☐	c	act in a way that is not extreme
4	learn the ropes	☐	d	take a different course of action
5	be a quivering wreck	☐	e	get to know how to do things
6	steer a middle course	☐	f	attempt to do something in a different way

44.4 **Complete each sentence with an idiom from the left-hand page or from exercise 44.3.**

1 Leave things as they are – it's better not to .... (Give two answers.)
2 Everything must seem strange at first, but you'll soon ....
3 Finish your course before you go travelling – there's no point in ....
4 Parents usually try to .... between leniency and strictness.
5 Sara's very miserable – do you know why she's .... ?
6 The new boy is bound to be feeling .... on his first day at school – perhaps you can help.
7 Things are not working out – let's .... (Give two answers.)
8 I hate job interviews – I'm always .... before them.

45 Science, technology and machines

A Engines and cars

Look at these conversations. The second speaker uses an idiom to agree with the first speaker.

Eva: We'll have to get ready to start work on the new system.

Lars: Yes, we'll have to **get into gear,** I suppose. (like putting a car into gear before driving)

Rob: I hate having Lisa in my car. She always tells you what you're doing wrong, or when the lights have gone red, and so on.

Peter: Yes, she's a real **back-seat driver**, isn't she?

Olga: I think we've spent over the budget these last three months. We'll have to be more careful.

Mick: Yes, we'll have to **put the brakes on** our spending; we've paid out some large sums.

Hugh: Things are going well these days, aren't they? Everything's working quietly and smoothly.

Ben: Yes, things are **ticking over** nicely. (A car engine *ticks over* when it is running quietly, but the car is not moving.)

Will: Well, it was quite an angry meeting, but I think it was good that people could just say exactly what they were thinking and get angry if they wanted to.

Mia: Yes, I think it was good that they were able to **let off steam**. (a steam engine lets off steam to reduce pressure)

Theo: Do you want to borrow my alarm clock?

Ross: No, it's OK. I think I'm **programmed** to wake up at seven o'clock. (like a computer, i.e. always doing the same thing)

B Electricity, phones and radio

If you …	this means …
get your lines/wires crossed	there is a misunderstanding between you and someone
are on the same wavelength as someone (wavelength = fixed position on a radio band, e.g. FM/AM)	you view the world or think in the same way as them
blow a fuse/gasket (gasket = kind of seal in an engine)	you lose your temper and react very angrily to an event
give someone a buzz	you phone them (informal)

C Other idioms from the world of technology and machines

The government is **back-pedalling** over its plans to lower taxes. [beginning to say the opposite of what it said before, like pushing the pedals of a bicycle backwards]

His comments really **put/threw a spanner in the works**. [spoilt something, e.g. a plan, or prevented it from succeeding]

There are now fears of a financial **meltdown** [a complete failure; a meltdown in a nuclear reactor is a situation in which the nuclear fuel becomes too hot and melts through its container]

Plans for a new bridge across the river are **in the pipeline**. [being discussed/prepared but not public yet]

Exercises

45.1 **Advertisements often use idioms to sell products. Match each slogan with its text.**

1 Want to let off steam tonight?
2 We're on your wavelength
3 State-of-the-art digital technology in your home
4 Give us a buzz for lower bills

A **Local Radio is changing, and here at City Radio FM we believe you'll want to listen to us with our new programmes for the autumn.**

B **Are you paying too much for your mobile phone? Call us on 07965 34352 and find out how you can pay less.**

C **By 2020, most TV channels will no longer broadcast in the traditional way. Buy a new TV set now and you will be ready for the changes.**

D **Chatrooms are a great place for saying exactly what you think. If you've got things on your mind, join us at We-chat for great, lively debate.**

45.2 **Agree with what A says. Complete each response with an idiom from the left-hand page.**

1 A: Her e-mail caused real problems for our plans, didn't it?
B: Yes, it really …………………………………………………………………………… .
2 A: I think George is beginning to change his mind about joining our committee.
B: Yes, he seems to be …………………………………………………………………… .
3 A: Wow! Matt really lost his temper last night, didn't he?
B: Yes, he absolutely ………………………………………………………………………… .
4 A: Good. Things seem to be nice and quiet and working smoothly.
B: Yes, everything seems to be just quietly ……………………………………………… .
5 A: It seems there was a misunderstanding between us.
B: Yes, I think we …………………………………………………………………………… .
6 A: I think we should give her a call this evening.
B: Yes, it's probably a good idea to ……………………………………………………… .

45.3 **Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1
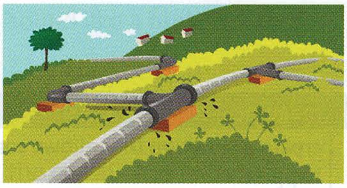

2
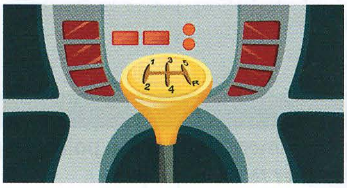

3
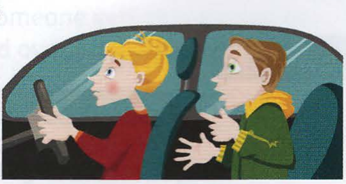

45.4 **Rewrite each sentence with an idiom from exercise 45.3.**

1 It took us a long time to really start to do our work properly and efficiently.
2 Mark is one of those people who always knows the road better than the person driving.
3 There are plans for a new railway, but it will be some years before the project starts.

45.5 **Complete each sentence with a preposition or particle.**

1 We're ………………………… the same wavelength.
2 Everyone needs to let ………………………… steam occasionally.
3 You've really put a spanner ………………………… the works.
4 Business is ticking ………………………… nicely these days.
5 We'll have to put the brakes ………………………… with regard to how much we spend.

46 Music and theatre

A Music

Hannah: This dress is so boring but I have nothing else to wear tonight.

Amy: You could **jazz it up** with a red scarf and some nice jewellery.

Mark: Did you see the music awards last night? That last performer had everyone in tears.

Lars: Yes, I saw her. She really **sang her heart out**.

Terry: I should be paid for all the extra hours I put in on this job.

John: Stop complaining all the time. You **sound like a broken record.**

Nancy: Did you hear? Sam and Debbie just got engaged!

Harry: Oh, fantastic! That's **music to my ears**.

Rob: What do you think of the government's plan to provide free nursery school places for kids under three?

Lucy: I think it really **struck a chord** with single parents. Paying for childcare is a real problem for us.

Mike: Didn't Luke say he was going to buy a new car?

Chris: He was thinking about it, but he soon **changed his tune** when he realised how much it would cost!

Tim: Are you still preparing your presentation?

David: Yes, I've been **fine-tuning** it today. I think it's ready now.

George: I heard people shouting in the meeting! What's going on?

Celia: They're **making a song and dance about** the price of coffee in the canteen, but it's only gone up by 10 pence!

B Theatre

example	meaning
The changes in the government's education policy helped **to set the stage** for further reforms.	create a situation that allows something else to happen
Stop screaming and shouting – everyone is looking at us. You're **making a spectacle of yourself**.	behaving in a way that attracts other people's attention, usually because you are doing something stupid or silly
The Police Commissioner has **been in the spotlight** since the press found out about his unpaid traffic fines.	been the centre of attention, often in public media
After 20 years, **the curtain has fallen on** his professional golf career, but people will remember his achievements for years to come.	(his career) has finished
I'm not feeling very well today, but I have to go to work. **The show must go on.**	I must continue what I am doing

Exercises

46.1 **Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1
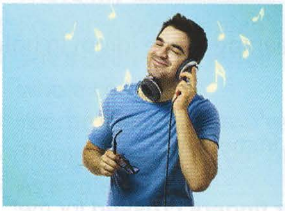

2
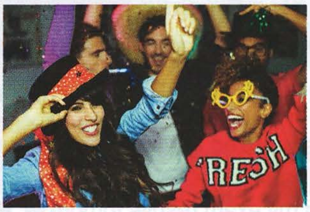

3
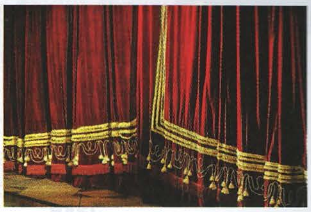

4
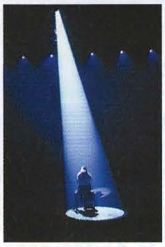

5
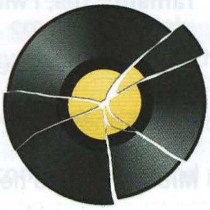

46.2 **Complete these sentences with an idiom from A opposite.**

1 The bedroom looks a bit dull; maybe we could .... with some colourful wallpaper.
2 Katy didn't want to work at the market at first, but she soon .... when she realised there would be free food.
3 The ideas are good, but you may need to spend a little bit more time .... all the details.
4 The news that the government had decided to lower property taxes was ....

46.3 **Match each idiom on the left with the situation in which it could be used on the right.**

1 make a song and dance about something	☐	a When you approve of something, or are interested in it because it affects you.
2 sing your heart out	☐	b When something is finished.
3 sound like a broken record	☐	c When someone gets very excited or annoyed over a small issue.
4 strike a chord	☐	d When someone should continue despite problems.
5 the curtain has fallen on	☐	e When someone always talks about the same thing.
6 the show must go on	☐	f When someone sings with a lot of emotion.

46.4 **Use idioms from B opposite to rewrite the underlined parts of the sentences.**

1 My daughter started crying on the bus. She really embarrassed me and herself.
2 After the latest scandal, the new Prime Minister is constantly on TV and in newspapers.
3 After her successful film career finished, she decided to start teaching drama at university.
4 We hope that this new timetable will prepare everyone for a positive start to the school year!

47 Finger, thumb, hand

Idioms connected with the hand can refer to ownership, control, acting and exercising skills.

A Idioms based on the fingers

In these conversations, the second speaker repeats the meaning of the idiom in bold.

Abbie: Rosa had all the statistics **at her fingertips.**
Tom: Yes, I was amazed she was able to quote them immediately.

Jake: I'm getting my exam results tomorrow. **Keep your fingers crossed** for me!
Tamsin: Yes, I will. I'll be wishing you good luck all day and hoping you do well.

Ben: I think he's **put his finger on** the problem.
Rosie: Yes, I think he's identified exactly what's wrong.

Mick: Maria never **lifts a finger** at home.
Nancy: I know. She never helps out. She's so lazy.

Ben: He **got his fingers burnt** in a financial deal in 2016.
Lily: Yes, I know. He suffered badly and lost a lot of money at the time.

Oscar: Paula **has** really **got green fingers**, hasn't she?
Ruth: Yes, everything she plants in her garden seems to grow beautifully.

B Idioms based on the thumb and the whole hand

example	meaning
The plan has been **given the thumbs up/down.**	approved (up) or rejected (down)
That office block **sticks/stands out like a sore thumb** next to such a beautiful park.	looks different from everything else in its environment (in a negative sense)
As **a rule of thumb**, always write down the code.	a general, useful rule
The boss has **given me a free hand** at work.	allows me to take whatever action I want to
Ed can **turn his hand to** any job round the house.	has the skill/ability to do unfamiliar jobs without any previous experience
Things **got out of hand** and the police arrived.	got out of control
I don't really have any **first-hand** knowledge of nature conservation.	direct / from experience
That restaurant has **changed hands** twice.	been sold to a new owner
I **have my hands full** with three children.	am very busy / have a lot of things to do
I'd like to **try my hand at** scuba-diving one day.	try it for the first time
I play golf occasionally just **to keep my hand in.**	in order not to lose my skill/knowledge
I always like to have a dictionary **to hand** when I'm reading English newspapers.	available; nearby
Give me a hand with this big box, will you?	help me, e.g. to carry/lift it
I've **washed my hands of** the whole project as it caused so many problems.	stopped being involved in

Exercises

47.1 Complete these idioms with *hand(s), finger(s)* or *thumb(s)*.

1 I have my .... full at the office these days. I'm doing two people's jobs.
2 I'm sorry, but the plan's been given the .... down by the committee.
3 She's been given a free .... to change the entire computer system for the whole company.
4 Yes, he's just lazy. You're right. You've put your .... on it.
5 Things are getting out of .... ; we need someone to organise things properly.
6 As a rule of .... you should never use the present perfect in English with words like *yesterday* or *last year*, but journalists do it sometimes.
7 If you need help with your garden, ask Liz – she's got green ....
8 I get my exam results tomorrow. Keep your .... crossed for me!
9 Their teenage kids never lift a .... at home; they just leave everything to the parents.
10 That shop has changed .... again. It's owned by someone from Hong Kong now.

47.2 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom from the left-hand page.

1 I think it would be good if you got some direct experience of working in a poor country before working for an aid organisation at home.
2 Jake has withdrawn completely from the club committee. He was so disgusted that he just quit, and never wants to see any of them again.
3 That new power station on the coast is such an ugly sight! You'd think they would have built it to blend in with the landscape.
4 Have you ever had a go at water-skiing? My sister's got a boat if you would like to try.
5 I always have to have the cookbook right next to me when I'm trying out a new recipe.
6 I'm too busy to play football every week now, but I really should play occasionally, just to keep my skills alive.
7 She lost out badly on the stock exchange. She bought shares in an Internet company that went bankrupt.

47.3 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 Do you think you could bring me a hand this weekend? I have to move some furniture to our summer cottage.
2 If you're the sort of person who is prepared to make your hand to anything, you'll be able to earn a lot of money; people are always looking for willing workers.
3 I was very pleased when they told me my project had been given the up-thumb.
4 I decided to wash my hands with the whole idea and to have no involvement whatsoever in it.
5 If you want to make a good impression at a business meeting, it is a good idea to have all the facts and figures in your fingertip.
6 To build a horrible concrete bridge over such a beautiful river is terrible. It stands out like a sick thumb!

Over to you

Look again at the idioms in this unit and see if you can see any further pattern of meanings for the different sets of idioms connected with hands, fingers and thumbs. What do fingers do? Are the thumb idioms different? Make a few notes in your vocabulary notebook and see if your ideas are still valid as and when you add new idioms connected with the keywords.

48 Foot, heel, toe

A Foot

Several idioms involving the word *foot* refer to someone's personal situation.

example	meaning
You're an adult now; you have to learn to **stand on your own two feet**.	be independent; look after yourself
I'm **rushed off my feet** at work.	extremely busy/hectic
He's famous, but he's always **kept both feet on the ground**.	remained normal and realistic
I accepted the job, but then **got cold feet**.	became afraid to do it
Don't worry. It will take you a while to **find your feet**. It's always like this in a new job.	get used to things; feel you can cope
Nancy and I **got off on the wrong foot**.	our relationship started badly
The children are always **under my feet** when I'm trying to do the housework.	in my way, disturbing my activities
He really seems to have **landed/fallen on his feet**. He got a new job and found a flat within a week of arriving in the city.	been very lucky or successful in a difficult situation (The idiom is based on the notion that cats always land on their feet when they fall.)
She lived at home for a while, but **got itchy feet** again and went off travelling for a year.	got a desire to travel

Other idioms with *foot* refer more to actions.

I really **put my foot in it** when I told Mario I hated Italian food; he's Italian! [accidentally said/did something very embarrassing]

I think you should **put your foot down** and say no. [assert your authority or independence]

He **followed in** his father's **footsteps** and became a doctor. [took the same course of action as somebody else]

B Heel and toe

These two idioms with *heel* refer to preventing or slowing down movement.

I don't think Sara wants to join us; she's **dragging her heels** a bit. [deliberately being slow]

They're **digging their heels in** and refusing to compromise. [refusing to change their position]

The boss always **keeps us on our toes**. [keeps us busy; makes us give our full energy to our work]

Language help

Whenever you find idioms that seem to have something in common in their meaning (as with the two *heel* idioms or the *foot* idioms referring to situations), group them together on one page in your vocabulary notebook. Add any new idioms that have similar meanings as you meet them.

Exercises

48.1 **Match each idiom on the left with its definition on the right.**

1 have itchy feet	☐	a be very busy
2 find your feet	☐	b start off in a bad way
3 be under someone's feet	☐	c feel familiar with something
4 land/fall on your feet	☐	d be restless / want to travel
5 get off on the wrong foot	☐	e regret a decision
6 be rushed off your feet	☐	f remain connected to the real world
7 get cold feet	☐	g be constantly in the way
8 stand on your own two feet	☐	h be lucky/successful
9 keep both feet on the ground	☐	i be independent

48.2 **Write sentences which relate to your life with any five of the idioms in exercise 48.1.**

EXAMPLE *I applied for a place at an American university and was accepted, but then I got cold feet.*

48.3 **Rewrite these sentences with five of the idioms from exercise 48.1.**

1 I said I would join Tom on the protest march, but then regretted it and didn't go at all.

2 She was very busy in the shop last month, but she's pleased that the business is doing well.

3 He'll have to learn to make his own decisions now that he's at college and not living at home any more.

4 Rosie and I started off rather badly when she first joined the company, but now we're working very well together.

5 I'm feeling restless these days. I'd love to go off on a backpacking holiday somewhere.

48.4 **Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?**

1

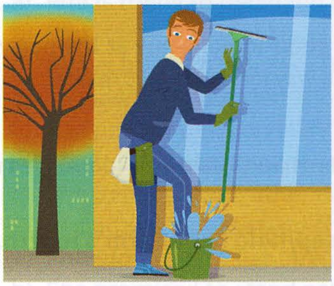

2

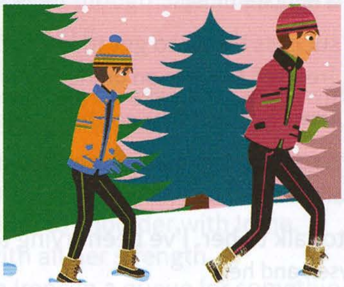

3

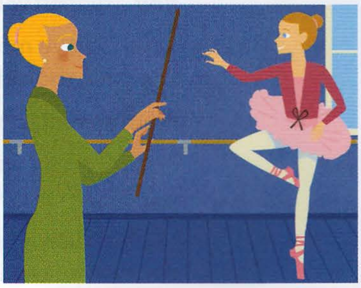

48.5 **True or false? Tick (✓) the correct box.**

	True	False
1 If you drag your heels, you deliberately act slowly or delay something.	☐	☐
2 If you put your foot down, you tell someone very firmly to act in a particular way.	☐	☐
3 If someone keeps you on your toes, they keep you very excited.	☐	☐
4 If you follow in someone's footsteps, they are your boss and you are below them.	☐	☐
5 If you dig your heels in, you are very determined not to be persuaded to do something you don't want to do.	☐	☐

Over to you

Use a good dictionary to find the meanings of these idioms if you do not already know them.

foot the bill
toe the line
hard/hot on the heels of

49 Bones, shoulder, arm, leg

A Idioms and meaning associations

Sometimes groups of idioms have some aspect of meaning in common. For example, our *bones* are inside our body, they have flesh/meat on them and they form our skeleton. Note how some basic associations of the word *bone(s)* play a part in this meaning of these idioms.

example	meaning	association
I **have a bone to pick with you**.	You have done something that has annoyed me, and we must discuss it.	Animals pick the flesh off bones when they eat their prey.
She's going to get that job; **I can feel it in my bones**.	I have a feeling deep inside me / an instinct.	Bones are deep inside us.
How best to use the money we raised has become **a bone of contention**.	People are arguing and disagreeing over it.	Animals fight over bones/food.
Let's try and get to **the bare bones** of the problem.	the heart / the most basic aspects of the problem	The bones are our skeleton, our basic form.

B Shoulder and arm

Main association: Shoulders support or carry things.

She **has a chip on her shoulder** about the fact that she was not promoted in her job years ago. [blames other people for something negative that has happened to her and goes on carrying these feelings for ever]

Beth, can I talk to you? I'm having a horrible time and I need **a shoulder to cry on**. [sympathy or support in time of trouble]

You are not alone in your fight against the authorities. We will **stand shoulder to shoulder with you**. [support you in a difficult time]

I didn't have much success trying to get to know that good-looking guy at the party. He **gave me the cold shoulder**. [reacted to me in an unfriendly or cold way for no obvious reason]

Main association: Arms hold and/or control things.

I didn't really want to do the job, but he **twisted my arm** and I said yes. [persuaded me to do something I didn't really want to do]

I don't really want to talk to her. I've been trying to **keep/hold her at arm's length**. [keep a distance between myself and her]

C Leg

I haven't really won the lottery. I was only **pulling your leg**. [joking / trying to fool you]

He'll find it difficult to convince the police that he's innocent. He **hasn't (got) a leg to stand on** really. [has nothing to support his claim or position]

Language help

There are ten units in this book that deal with idioms connected with the body. Try to build a picture in your mind of a human body as you work through the units and remember which parts of the body are most strongly associated with idioms, e.g the hand.

Exercises

49.1 **Use idioms to complete the network.**

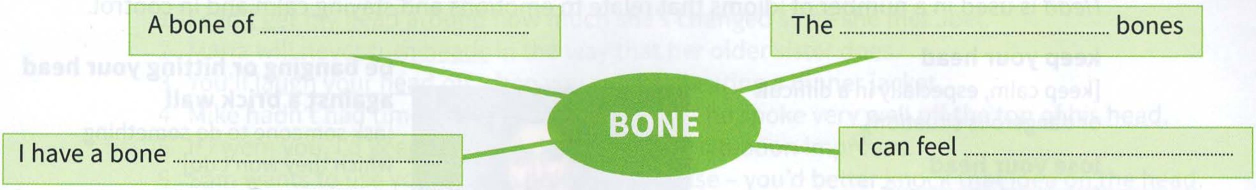
A bone of ....
The .... bones
BONE
I have a bone ....
I can feel ....

49.2 **Use the idioms from exercise 49.1 to rewrite these sentences in as brief a way as possible.**

1 I want to talk to you about something very annoying that you have done.
2 This book will give you the most basic information, but it doesn't go into great detail.
3 I don't think we should allow the cost to become a matter that we argue about.
4 There's going to be trouble at work. I can really sense it in a subconscious way.

49.3 **Choose the correct answer.**

1 Charlotte has a chip on her shoulder because she never got a chance to go to university.
  a) She is disadvantaged in trying to find a job.
  b) She has an ambition she has not yet fulfilled.
  c) She carries a negative feeling about it throughout her life.
2 Dan is pulling Helen's leg.
  a) He is annoying her. b) He is trying to fool her about something.
  c) He is attacking her.
3 Louise needs a shoulder to cry on.
  a) She needs to cry publicly. b) She needs a friend to listen to her troubles.
  c) She needs something to cry about.
4 Rita is trying to twist Sara's arm because she wants to borrow Sara's car.
  a) Rita is trying to persuade Sara even though Sara doesn't want to do it.
  b) Rita is trying to blackmail Sara to do it.
  c) Rita is trying to pay Sara to lend her car.
5 Laura gave Mark the cold shoulder when he asked her to go with him to the school party.
  a) She put her head on Mark's shoulder in a romantic way.
  b) She rubbed her shoulder against Mark's as a way of saying 'yes'.
  c) She behaved in a rather distant way and said 'no'.
6 Clare said she would stand shoulder to shoulder with Irene.
  a) She promised to fight Irene with all her strength.
  b) She promised to stand next to Irene in a queue for something.
  c) She promised to support Irene in a difficult situation.

49.4 **Write a sentence or a couple of sentences for each of these idioms to show their meaning.**

hold/keep someone at arm's length not have a leg to stand on

49.5 **Here are two more idioms using *arm* which are not on the page opposite. Using a dictionary if necessary, complete each idiom.**

Cambridge Dictionary
ry.cambridge.org

1 The tickets for the festival cost us an arm and a .... ; they were the most expensive I have ever bought.
2 I think I'll .... my arm and apply for that job. I know I'm not at all qualified, but I've got nothing to lose by applying.

50 Head

A Emotions

Head is used in a number of idioms that relate to emotions and staying calm and in control.

keep your head
[keep calm, especially in a difficult or dangerous situation]

lose your head
[panic or lose control]

laugh/scream/shout your head off
[laugh/scream/shout very much and very loudly (informal)]

be banging or hitting your head against a brick wall
[ask someone to do something which they won't do]

bring something to a head / something comes to a head
[an unpleasant situation is so bad that it has to be dealt with]

If you can **keep your head** when all around are losing theirs, you'll be a man, my son. (written by 19th century poet Kipling)

They were **shouting their heads off** until late at night and I just couldn't fall asleep.

Trying to get the boys to tidy their bedroom is just **banging your head against a brick wall.**

Andy and Jill had been upset with each other for some time, but things eventually **came to a head** last night when they had a terrible row.

B Thought

Sometimes *head* is used in idioms to mean the place where ideas or thoughts are produced.

idiom	meaning	example
put ideas into someone's head	make someone want to do something they had not wanted to do before (usually something stupid)	Louisa was always quite happy in the village until Rex started putting ideas into her head.
get your head (a)round (usually – **can't get (my) head (a)round**)	come to fully accept or understand something (informal)	I just can't get my head around what's happened. It's been such a shock!
off the top of your head	without thinking about it for very long or looking at something that has been written about it	Off the top of my head, I couldn't tell you where they live, but I could soon find out.

C Other head idioms

Rebecca is so beautiful; she always **turns heads**[1] whenever she walks into a room. My brother Leon is beginning to fall in love with her, but our parents would like to **knock that on the head**[2]. This is a very busy year for Leon and he is going to have to work very hard to **keep his head above water**[3]. However, he **bites/snaps their heads off**[4] if they tell him to ignore her. I'm taking care not to get involved – it's safer to **keep my head down**[5].

[1] people notice that person because they look interesting or attractive
[2] put a stop to it (informal)
[3] deal with a difficult situation when he has too much work and not enough time, or when he has just enough money in order to live or keep a business going (an image from swimming)
[4] speaks to them angrily
[5] say as little as possible in order to avoid arguments

Exercises

50.1 What do these underlined idioms mean?

1 I can't get my head around how much she's changed since she met Joel.
2 Maria will never turn heads in the way that her older sister does.
3 You'll laugh your head off when you see Bill wearing a dinner jacket.
4 Mike hadn't had time to prepare a speech, but he spoke very well off the top of his head.
5 If I were you, I'd keep my head down until the situation improves.
6 Sam wants to use your saw to build a treehouse – you'd better knock that idea on the head.
7 My boss snapped my head off just because I asked for an extra day off.
8 It was the first time that Joanna had talked about wanting to work abroad and her father blamed her new boyfriend for putting ideas into her head.

50.2 Complete each sentence with an idiom from the box. Make any other necessary changes.

bang your head against a brick wall
bring things to a head
come to a head
keep your head
lose your head
scream your head off
snap someone's head off

1 Amy .... when she saw a rat under the table.
2 When the pilot announced that the plane was having engine problems, all the passengers behaved calmly and no one ....
3 I'm trying to get him to give up smoking, but I ....
4 You'll easily pass your driving test as long as you ....
5 I wish he wouldn't .... when I ask him about his work.
6 Jack and Lucy have not been getting on well for some time now, but Jack's rudeness to her last night .... and they had a blazing row.
7 The disagreement over pay .... at a meeting yesterday.

50.3 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1
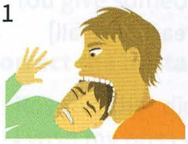
2
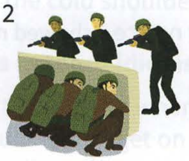
3
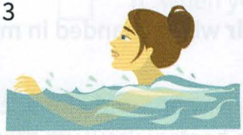
4
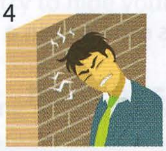
5
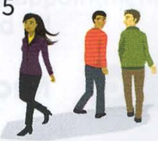

50.4 Answer these questions.

1 Has anyone ever bitten your head off? Why did they do this?
2 Under what circumstances would you find it hard to keep your head?
3 When was the last time you laughed your head off?
4 What kind of person would turn your head in the street?
5 Can you think of someone who has been criticised for putting ideas into people's heads?
6 Would a business be pleased if it were keeping its head above water? Why (not)?

Over to you

This unit includes just some of the idioms based on the word *head*. Look in a good dictionary, find three more idioms and write them down in example sentences.

51 Face, hair, neck, chest

A Face

Our face presents the image we show people and that is reflected in most of the idioms with *face*.

idiom	meaning	example
make/pull a face	show that you do not like something by making an unpleasant expression	Emma pulled a face when she heard that Jim was coming to the party.
keep a straight face	not laugh or change your expression even though you want to laugh	It was all I could do to keep a straight face when I saw Jim in his new suit.
put a brave face on something	pretend you are happy about something when you are not happy	Chris was disappointed about not getting the job, but he's put a brave face on it.
take something at face value	accept something as it looks without thinking about whether it might, in fact, not be quite what it appears	I decided to take his words at face value although my brother told me I was being naive.
on the face of it	according to the appearance of something	On the face of it, it's a generous offer. But I feel there might be a trick in it.
face to face	with another person in their presence rather than, say, by phone or letter	You should really discuss this with her face to face.

B Hair

Hair in idioms often has associations with being calm and in control.

If you say to someone **Keep your hair on!** (informal) you mean Calm down!

Her boyfriend has disappeared again. She's **tearing/pulling her hair out**! [getting very anxious (usually used with continuous verb forms)]

My boss **didn't turn a hair** when I handed in my notice. [showed no reaction at all]

C Neck and chest

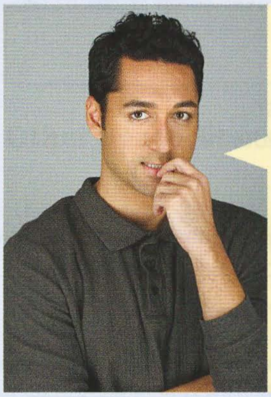

It's uncomfortable at home at the moment because my two flatmates, Tom and Ali, are **at each other's throats** [1] all the time. It started when Tom used Ali's computer and managed to destroy some files. Tom decided to **make a clean breast of it** [2]. Now Ali won't let him use the computer without **breathing down his neck** [3] all the time and he's always going on about how stupid Tom was. Tom finds this **a real pain in the neck** [4] and he wishes he had never **got it off his chest** [5], but had just let Ali think it was a computer virus that had destroyed his files. Tom knows he is in the wrong, but he wishes Ali wouldn't keep **ramming it down his throat** [6] all the time and would just show his annoyance by **giving him the cold shoulder** [7].

[1] arguing in a very angry way

[2] tell the truth about what he had done so that he did not feel guilty any more

[3] paying close attention to what he is doing in an annoying or threatening way

[4] really annoying

[5] told him what he was feeling guilty about

[6] forcing him to listen to his opinions

[7] ignoring him in a deliberate way

Note how idioms with *throat* or *neck* often describe someone behaving in a way that the speaker finds aggressive or intrusive. Note also how the idea of a guilty secret being a weight on your chest is reflected in two idioms – **make a clean breast of** and **get it off your chest**.

Exercises

51.1 Complete each idiom with a word from the box. Use some of the words more than once.

chest face hair neck shoulder throat(s)

I haven't been enjoying my job recently. On the ....^{1} of it, it's a good job, but my colleagues don't get on with each other. They are either at each other's ....^{2} or giving each other the cold ....^{3} and I don't know which is worse. My boss is always breathing down my ....^{4} and ramming his reactionary views down my ....^{5}. I find him a terrible pain in the ....^{6}. I had to get my feelings off my ....^{7} and, today, I decided to unburden myself to his secretary. Suddenly, I realised that my boss was standing behind me. 'You should have told me this ....^{8} to ....^{9},' he said and, without turning a ....^{10}, he added 'You're fired!' I was so angry that I pulled a ....^{11} at him and stormed out of the office.

51.2 Match the beginning of each sentence on the left with its ending on the right.

1 You try to keep a straight face ☐
2 You put a brave face on something ☐
3 You are pulling your hair out ☐
4 You make a clean breast of something ☐
5 You may make a face ☐
6 You take something at face value ☐
7 You may be told to keep your hair on ☐
8 You give someone the cold shoulder ☐

a when you get very upset about something.
b when you admit to doing something wrong.
c when you accept it in a straightforward way.
d when you are showing your anger.
e when you want to control your laughter.
f when you deliberately ignore them.
g when you are not pleased about something.
h when you try to hide your disappointment.

51.3 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 Rose's father didn't pull a hair when she told him she was going to get married.
2 I wish my boss would let me get on with my work instead of breathing down the neck.
3 You should tell him directly how you feel rather than just giving him the cold shoulders.
4 Nina is very worried about her husband's illness, but she's putting her brave face on it.
5 Keep your hair up!
6 If you take what they say with face value, you'll soon get disappointed.
7 Having to do homework is such an ache in the neck!
8 I have to tell you a terrible secret. I'll go mad if I don't get it on my chest soon.

51.4 Which idioms do these pictures make you think of?

1

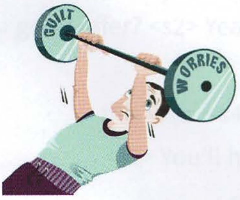

3

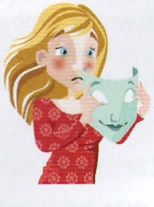

5

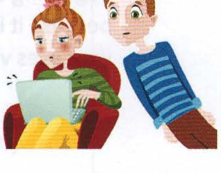

2

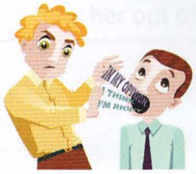

4

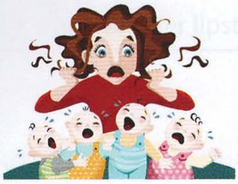

6

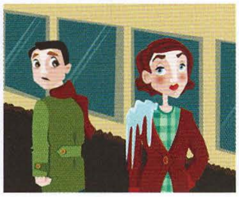

52 Eyes

The eyes are the basis of a large number of idioms. Note the idioms and their meanings in these paragraphs.

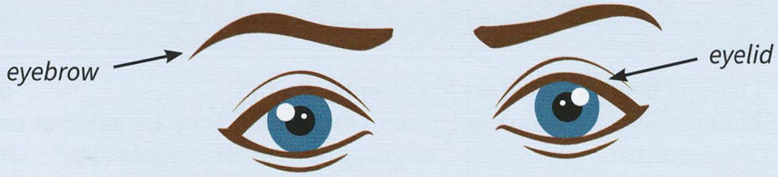

I **couldn't believe my eyes**[1] when I first saw her. She was so beautiful, I just **couldn't keep my eyes off**[2] her. I tried to **catch her eye**[3] to say hello.

As a teacher myself, I know that teaching is not easy. You always have to **keep an eye on**[4] the students, but sometimes you just have to **turn a blind eye**[5] if they behave badly. If you want to be a teacher, you have to go into the profession **with your eyes open**[6].

Mia and I were good friends at first, but now we don't **see eye to eye**[7]. I know the fact that we stopped being friends **raised a few eyebrows**[8] at the time.

Could you **run/cast your eye over**[9] this report and see if there are any spelling mistakes? My computer's **on the blink**[10] and the spell-checker refuses to work. These reports are important, and I always have to **have/keep one eye on**[11] how the boss will react to them if they look untidy.

It all happened in the **blink of an eye**[12] and no one could do anything to prevent it. It was horrible. But the police officer standing nearby **didn't bat an eyelid**[13]. Then something **caught my eye**[14] which shocked me even more.

Working in such a poor country **opened my eyes to**[15] how unjust the world is. It was indeed **a real eye-opener**[16].

[1] couldn't believe what I was seeing
[2] couldn't stop looking at her
[3] get her attention; make her look at me
[4] keep your attention on
[5] ignore behaviour which you know is wrong
[6] aware of all the problems there could be
[7] agree with each other
[8] surprised/shocked people
[9] have a quick look at
[10] beginning to break down and go wrong, probably because it is old (*to blink* means to close and open your eyes very quickly)
[11] observe carefully
[12] extremely short time
[13] didn't react at all
[14] made me look
[15] made me understand for the first time
[16] an event or situation that I unexpectedly learnt something from

Exercises

52.1 Write a suitable response to each of these remarks with an idiom. Use the keyword in brackets.

1 A: Oh! We're doing 58 and the speed limit is 50. There's a police car there!
B: Don't worry, if it's just over the limit, they usually .... (BLIND)
2 A: There's Petra over there. I wonder if she's seen us?
B: I don't know. Let's wave and see if we can .... (CATCH)
3 A: Are you and Sara not friends any more?
B: No, not really, we just don't .... (SEE)
4 A: Is there something wrong with this photocopier?
B: Yes, it's been .... for a while now. (BLINK)
5 A: Was it an interesting experience working for Social Services?
B: Yes, I learnt a lot of things. It was a real .... (OPEN)
6 A: Did she react in any way when you told her the awful news?
B: No, she didn't .... (BAT)

52.2 Circle the correct word to complete each sentence.

1 If you want to be a professional athlete, you have to go into it with your eye / eyes open.
2 Will you cast your eye / eyes over this report? I have to hand it in tomorrow.
3 Erik is so crazy about Amina. Look at him! He can't keep his eye / eyes off her!
4 The events of last night really opened my eye / eyes to just how arrogant he really is.
5 I couldn't believe my eye / eyes when I saw what a mess they had made of the room.

52.3 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence with an eye idiom.

1 An accident can happen so quickly you can't stop it.
2 His behaviour at the meeting surprised a few people.
3 You should take into consideration your chances of promotion when taking up a new job.
4 A very strange sight forced me to look as I was driving along the motorway yesterday.

52.4 Here are some random examples from a computer database containing lines from real conversations. The figures in diamond brackets, e.g. <s1>, <s2>, mean 'first speaker', 'second speaker', etc. How many of the examples use *eye* as an idiom, and how many use the word *eye* in its literal sense as 'the organ we see with'? Use a dictionary if necessary.

Cambridge
Dictionary
ry.cambridge.org

1 go into town and get erm an **eye** test. <s1> Mm. <s2 > In town.
2 you er keep an **eye** out for tramps, do you then?
3 In your mind's **eye** how are you going to do that?
4 <s1> So I'll keep a general **eye** on it. And er <s3> Yeah
5 <s1> There's something in my **eye**. There's that thing floating
6 difficult to put that to your **eye**. You also have to have one eye
7 good offer? <s2> Yeah it caught my **eye** <s1> Yeah it's
8 I'm casting my **eye** over this form and I think
9 this year. <s4> Just keep an **eye** out for it. <s4> Yeah.
10 <s2> You'll have to keep an **eye** on her. <s1> Yeah. <s2> Oh my
11 so you're about **eye** level with the monitor.
12 saw her out of the corner of my **eye**. <s3> Her lipstick is all over

53 Ear, lips, mouth, nose, teeth, tongue

A Ear

The association of *ear* with hearing/listening is prominent in most of these idioms.

example	meaning
In my opinion, you should just **play it by ear**.	respond to the situation as it occurs, don't decide what to do beforehand
Do you **play** the guitar from music or **by ear**?	play without music; just by sensing the right notes
I **couldn't believe my ears** when she told me.	couldn't believe what I was hearing
Bill never listens when you tell him important things. It just **goes in one ear and out the other**.	said when someone doesn't listen or pay attention, or forgets things immediately
Go on! Tell me the gossip. **I'm all ears**!	I'm very keen to hear what you have to tell me.

B Other face idioms: lips, mouth, nose, teeth, tongue

Some literal associations remain strong in these idioms. But remember, these are only guidelines, and some idioms may be less transparent in their meanings.

Main association: Lips are associated with saying/talking.
The company **pays lip service to** the principle of equal rights for women. [says it believes in, but does not carry out]
I promise I won't tell anyone. **My lips are sealed.** [I shall keep the secret / tell no one]

Main association: Mouths are associated with speaking or eating.
I heard about the school **by word of mouth**. Everyone said it was good. [by being told directly]
Those cream cakes are really **mouth-watering / making my mouth water**. Take them away before I eat them all! [making me want to eat them]

Main association: Noses are associated with feelings/reactions and involvement.
Stop **poking/sticking your nose into** other people's business! [interfering in]
You shouldn't **turn your nose up at** 200 pounds a week. It's better than nothing. [refuse]
That new secretary **gets right up everybody's nose**. Someone will have to talk to the boss about it before it's too late. [annoys/irritates everyone]

Main association: Teeth are associated with hard work / determination / struggles.
He achieved it **in the teeth of** serious opposition. [despite]
I escaped disaster **by the skin of my teeth**. [I only just escaped a disaster]
We can't change what's happened. We'll just have to **grit our teeth** and do our best to carry on as before. [accept the situation and handle it with determination]
Joe is **lying through his teeth**. I never said any such thing! [telling a deliberate lie]

Main association: Tongues are associated with speaking.
I was upset by her remarks, but I **bit my tongue**. [remained silent; didn't react]
Her name's **on the tip of my tongue**, but I just can't remember it. [I know it and will be able to remember it very soon]

Tip

Where idioms do carry indirect associations with their literal meanings, try to group them in some way, e.g. 'lips and tongue are associated with speaking', as this may help you to remember them.

Exercises

53.1 True or false? Tick (✓) the correct box for these statements.

	True	False
1 If someone plays a musical instrument by ear, they can read the notes directly from a sheet of music.	☐	☐
2 If your lips are sealed, you refuse to tell other people a secret you know.	☐	☐
3 If you escaped by the skin of your teeth, you only just escaped and came close to disaster.	☐	☐
4 If a person gets up your nose, you are crazy about them and can't stop thinking of them.	☐	☐
5 If you achieve something in the teeth of opposition, you do it in spite of that opposition.	☐	☐
6 If information spreads by word of mouth, it is kept as a secret known only to a small number of people.	☐	☐

53.2 Rewrite each underlined idiom with a literal expression that has the same meaning.

1 She said some very hurtful things to me, but I just bit my tongue, because I didn't want to show her I was upset.
2 I can't really advise you on how to behave at the interview. Just play it by ear, and I'm sure you'll be great.
3 The government pays lip service to low taxes, but then puts up indirect taxes without people realising it.
4 We offered him a holiday at our house near the beach, but he turned his nose up at it.
5 He said, 'Do you want to hear some gossip about Tom and Lily?' I said, 'Oh yes! Tell me. I'm all ears.'
6 I wish you wouldn't poke your nose into other people's affairs.
7 The table was piled high with mouth-watering desserts.

53.3 Correct the mistakes in these idioms.

1 There's no point talking to her. Everything just enters one ear and leaves the other.
2 I just didn't believe in my ear when they told me I had won first prize.
3 When I knew how bad the situation was, I just ground my teeth and continued fighting.
4 The name of the village where he lives is on the top of my tongue. Give me a few minutes and I'll remember it.
5 What she said is simply not true. She's lying with her tooth.
6 The sight of all those delicious pizzas is watering my mouth, but I'm on a diet, so I shouldn't really have any.

53.4 Here are four more idioms which are not on the page opposite. Using a dictionary if necessary, choose the correct answer.

Cambridge
Dictionary
ry.cambridge.org

1 My heart was in my mouth.
a) I was feeling ill. b) I was feeling anxious/nervous.
c) I was falling in love.
2 Could I have a word in your ear?
a) Could you tell me the facts? b) Could I tell you a secret?
c) Could I speak to you privately?
3 These people just live from hand to mouth.
a) They steal food. b) They just earn enough money to survive.
c) They eat with their hands.
4 The boss was foaming at the mouth when it emerged how much money had been lost.
a) He was feeling sick. b) He was spitting at people.
c) He was very angry.

54 Heart

A Feelings

idiom	meaning	example
open your heart	share your deepest feelings	Tony opened his heart to me.
bare your heart/soul	share secret (often dramatic) feelings with someone else	I find it rather painful to bare my heart to anyone else.
pour your heart out	share secret worries with someone else	Imelda poured her heart out to me – I wished I could help her.
your heart misses/skips a beat	you suddenly feel so excited or frightened that your heart beats faster	When I first saw Pat, my heart missed a beat. I knew he would be important to me.
someone's heart is in the right place	someone is good even if they sometimes behave the wrong way	He is a bit rude sometimes, but his heart is in the right place.
have a change of heart	change your opinion or the way you feel	Ben wants to buy the boat before his wife has a change of heart.
break someone's heart	make someone very sad (often someone who loves you)	It breaks my heart to see the refugees on the news.
your heart sinks	you start to feel sad or worried	My heart sank as Bob approached.
a man/woman after my own heart	someone who you admire because they do or believe the same as you	He loves dogs – he's a man after my own heart!
talk to someone heart-to-heart / have a heart-to-heart	have a serious conversation and express your feelings openly	They had a heart-to-heart and sorted out their differences.
take something to heart	take something (usually criticism) seriously	Don't take it to heart. He really didn't mean to upset you.

B Determination

lose heart
[stop believing that you can succeed]

to your heart's content
[you do it as much as you want to because you enjoy it]

put your heart and soul into something
[put a great deal of effort and determination into something]

set your heart on something / have your heart set on something
[be determined to achieve something]

know something by heart / learn something off by heart
[memorise something so that you can recite it perfectly]

Paul **didn't lose heart** even though he had failed his driving test six times.

Jess **put her heart and soul into** a project aimed at helping blind children.

Tom **set his heart on / had his heart set on** emigrating to Australia.

When you've done your homework, you can play computer games **to your heart's content**.

Actors get very good at **learning things by heart**.

Exercises

54.1 Match each remark on the left with the person who the remark might be addressed to on the right.

1 Don't lose heart! ☐
2 Don't take it to heart! ☐
3 You're a man after my own heart! ☐
4 Don't set your heart on it! ☐
5 Learn it by heart! ☐
6 You're breaking my heart! ☐
7 Your heart is in the right place! ☐
8 You can open your heart to me! ☐

a Someone who has an unrealistic ambition.
b A loved one who is causing you grief.
c Someone who has to give a speech.
d Someone with the same tastes.
e Someone who is feeling discouraged.
f Someone with a secret to share.
g Someone who is upset after being criticised.
h A kind person who tries to do the right thing (but doesn't always succeed).

54.2 Complete each sentence with an idiom.

1 My .... when the handsome man smiled at me.
2 When we are on holiday, the children can build sandcastles .... while we lie on the beach and read.
3 Jake used to support the Green Party, but he's ....
4 If you ask Rob to help you, I'm sure he'll .... and the job will be finished in no time.
5 It's not a good idea to .... to a journalist unless you want your secrets to become public knowledge. (Give three answers.)
6 Your dissertation is nearly finished, so don't .... now.
7 It .... to see my brother making such a fool of himself. (Give two answers.)
8 My .... when I realised pay day was still a week away.

54.3 Rewrite each underlined idiom with a literal expression that means the same.

Emily (1) had set her heart on getting a promotion. She had been (2) putting her heart and soul into her work, but had not yet been offered a better position. So she decided to (3) have a heart-to-heart with her boss. Over several cups of coffee she (4) poured her heart out to him, telling him all about her achievements and her ambitions. Her boss listened (5) with a sinking heart. When she had finished (6) baring her heart, he said: 'You're a great worker, Emily, and (7) your heart is certainly in the right place. In many ways, (8) you're a woman after my own heart. But you do need to improve on your people skills before we can consider promoting you. (9) Don't lose heart, though. I'm sure you will make it one day.' Emily (10) took his words to heart and was at first very upset. But then she bought a book called *People Skills and How to Get Them* and decided she'd (11) learn it by heart.

54.4 Answer these questions.

1 What might a boy who is very good at playing the guitar set his heart on doing?
2 If you do something to your heart's content, do you do it very well or do it a lot?
3 If you say that someone is a woman after your own heart, do you mean that she likes you or that she is like you?
4 If you say that someone's heart is in the right place, are you praising them?
5 If your heart misses a beat, which of these might you be: sick, excited, afraid, in love?
6 Who does a teenage girl often open her heart to?
7 Why might a woman have a change of heart about getting married and what would she then do?
8 What sort of thing might break a young lover's heart?

55 Brain, mind, blood and guts

A Brain

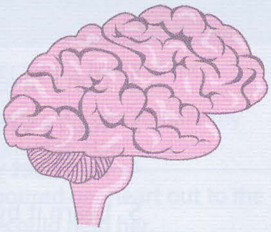

If you **have something on the brain** (informal), you can't stop thinking or talking about one particular thing.

If you **pick someone's brains**, you ask for information or advice from a person who knows more about something than you do.

The phrase **the brain drain** is used to refer to the movement of highly skilled and educated people from their own country to another one where they are paid more.

B Mind

idiom	meaning	example
be a load/weight off your mind	feel relieved because a worry is removed	Knowing he was safe was a load off my mind.
have/keep an open mind	wait until you have all the facts before forming an opinion	The PM is keeping an open mind until the report is ready.
have a mind of its own	(of a machine) it doesn't work the way you want it to	My word processor seems to have a mind of its own.
make up your mind	decide	I made up my mind to leave. My mind's made up! I'm leaving.
put/set someone's mind at rest	help someone to stop worrying	If it'll put your mind at rest, I'll phone home every day.
at the back of your mind	always in your mind although you don't spend too much time thinking about it	The thought of having to make a decision soon is always at the back of my mind.
in your mind's eye	in your imagination or memory	In my mind's eye I can still see the house I grew up in.

C Blood and guts

If a film is said to be full of **blood and guts*** (informal), it means that it is very violent.

If something is done **in cold blood**, or in a **cold-blooded** way, it is done in a cruelly planned and unemotional way. It is strongly associated with the verbs *kill* and *murder*.

If making someone tell or give you something is **like getting blood out of a stone**, it is very difficult to do.

If you say you have **a gut feeling/reaction**, you mean that feeling or reaction is instinctive.

If you **slog/sweat/work your guts out** (informal), you work extremely hard.

* *Guts* is an informal word for intestines.

Exercises

55.1 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 Getting him to agree to spend money is like ☐ a his mind at rest.
2 He's exhausted because he's been slogging ☐ b at the back of his mind.
3 I'm sure the doctor will set ☐ c pick his brains.
4 I've got that computer game ☐ d in his mind's eye.
5 He can still see her quite clearly ☐ e getting blood out of a stone.
6 He tries not to think about it, but it's always ☐ f cold-blooded.
7 If you can't do it alone, you could try to ☐ g his guts out.
8 Crimes of passions are less horrific than murders which are ☐ h on the brain.

55.2 Complete each of these idioms with *brain(s), mind, blood* or *gut(s)*.

1 There was a large …………………… drain from the UK to the US in the second half of the 20th century.
2 Knowing that you're going to take responsibility for the job is a major weight off my …………………… .
3 My …………………… reaction is to trust him.
4 This horrible car has a …………………… of its own.
5 There is too much blood and …………………… on TV these days.
6 I can't finish this crossword. Can pick your …………………… ?
7 The man was murdered in cold …………………… .
8 I can see my grandmother's face now in my ……………………'s eye.

55.3 Complete each sentence with a suitable idiom.

1 The government are rather worried about …………………… .
2 I like both the shirts. I can't …………………… which one to buy.
3 Don't think too long about the question. Just tell me your …………………… .
4 Why do people enjoy films that are full of …………………… ?
5 Don't decide until you know all the facts. It's best to …………………… until then.
6 I know you must be worried, but I'm sure we can …………………… .
7 I've had that awful song …………………… ever since hearing it on the radio this morning.
8 Getting him to tell me anything about his work is like …………………… .

55.4 What do you think is the main metaphorical or non-literal meaning of these words as shown by the idioms in this unit?

1 mind 2 blood 3 brain 4 guts

Over to you

Look up *brain(s), mind, blood* and *gut(s)* in a good dictionary. Can you find any other examples of idioms using these words? If so, do they have the same metaphorical meanings as those you suggested in exercise 55.4?

56 Back

A The body

idiom	meaning	example
be on someone's back (informal)	constantly ask someone to do something or criticise them in an annoying way	My parents are always on my back about doing my homework on time.
you wouldn't be sorry / you'd be pleased/glad/ happy to see the back of someone/something	you'd be glad when someone leaves or something ends because you don't like that person or thing	I'll be glad to see the back of this government. They've been a bit of a disappointment.
could do something with one arm/hand tied behind your back	could do something very easily	The test was easy. I could've done it with one hand tied behind my back!
get/put someone's back up	offend someone	I put her back up when I criticised Americans – I didn't know she came from New York.
stab someone in the back	do something harmful to a person who trusted you	Although she's friendly to my face, I suspect she'd happily stab me in the back.
do something when/while someone's back is turned	do something while someone can't see what you are doing (usually something that person would not approve of)	As soon as the teacher's back was turned, the children started passing notes to each other.
you scratch my back and I'll scratch yours	if you help me, I'll help you	We can help each other – you scratch my back and I'll scratch yours.
know a place/person/thing like the back of your hand	know a place/person/thing extremely well	He's a great guide as he knows the town like the back of his hand.

B Position

In these idioms *back* has the sense either of being distant or not taking the main route.

If a plan **is on the back burner**, it isn't being dealt with now but hasn't been totally forgotten.

If somewhere is **at/in the back of beyond**, it means that it is far from any town.

If you **take** or an activity **takes a back seat**, something else becomes more important.

If you say that something **came/fell off the back of a lorry**, you think it has been stolen.

If something comes **by/through the back door**, it comes in a way that is not honest or official.

C Backward(s)

I had **leant/bent over backwards** to please her [tried very hard]. However, she **left without a backward glance** [left with no regrets or sad feelings].

Exercises

56.1 Answer these questions.

1 If your boss is always on your back about tidying your desk, is your desk usually tidy and how does your boss feel about this?
2 If you put someone's back up, has your relationship with that person improved?
3 What sort of thing might children do when the teacher's back is turned?
4 If someone says *You scratch my back and I'll scratch yours*, what do they want you to do?
5 If someone leaves home without a backward glance, are they happy to leave?
6 If doing housework takes a back seat while you are revising for your exams, which is more important – housework or revision?

56.2 Complete each of these idioms with one word.

1 My aunt loves living miles from anywhere, but I'd hate to live in the back of …………………………… .
2 You must have known that a new TV for that price could only have come off the back of a …………………………… .
3 You won't get lost if you keep with Tom. He knows the mountains like the back of his …………………………… .
4 Although my hosts …………………………… over backwards to give us a good time, we didn't really enjoy our holiday.
5 I wouldn't trust Mr Girton. He's charming to your face, but he'll …………………………… you in the back as soon as he gets the chance.
6 We'd better put our discussion of plans for the new building on the back …………………………… and get on with trying to deal with the current crisis.
7 Smiths must have got the contract through the back …………………………… – I'm sure at least one other company put in a cheaper offer.
8 Amelia is retiring this week and I certainly shan't be sorry to …………………………… the back of her. She's always stirring up trouble.

56.3 Match each question on the left with the most likely response on the right.

1 Do you know the area well?	☐	a Somewhere in the back of beyond.
2 Was the test difficult?	☐	b By the back door, I'm sure.
3 Where is the castle?	☐	c She's always on my back about it.
4 Where did they get the computer?	☐	d I'll be glad to see the back of it.
5 How on earth did she get that position?	☐	e Like the back of my hand.
6 Do you like this hot weather?	☐	f It's taking a back seat at the moment.
7 Does your girlfriend like your motorbike?	☐	g It fell off the back of a lorry.
8 How's your Japanese project going?	☐	h I could have done it with my hands tied behind my back.

56.4 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom from the left-hand page.

1 Matt offended Kelly by telling her she was too young to go out with the others.
2 If you do me a favour now, I'll do one for you too.
3 Vineeta tried hard to give her grandmother an enjoyable holiday.
4 The teacher is always complaining about my handwriting.
5 Let's postpone any discussion of the merger until after next week's meeting.
6 My dream is to go off to a cottage in the middle of nowhere and work on a novel.
7 Joe went off to join the navy without any regrets.
8 Quick! We can leave now while Sasha isn't looking.

57 Long

A Idioms with *long* used frequently in conversation

Ben: Hi Jill! I haven't seen you for ages.

Lucy: Yeah, **long time no see!** [I haven't seen you for a long time]

Nancy: Hey, what happened to your plan to go on holiday with Ken?

Rita: Oh, **it's a long story**. I'll tell you next time I see you.

Josh: How long do we normally have to wait till they give us an answer?

Ryan: (laughing) **How long is a piece of string?** It could be three days or three months! [That's an impossible question to answer.]

Nick: Did you write down the names of everyone who complained?

Elsa: Yes, I've got **a list as long as your arm!** [a very long list indeed]

Kate: But how did it happen? I don't understand.

Laura: Well, **to cut a long story short**, Peter fell in love with the restaurant owner, married her and now he's the manager. [to only tell the main points]

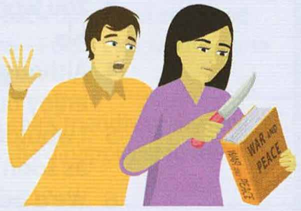

A: *What are you doing?*

B: *I think it's time to cut a long story short.*

B Compound idioms

If ...	then ...
a story/lecture/speech is **long-winded** /ˈwɪndɪd/	it's too long and boring
a task or a process is going to be **a long haul** /hɔːl/	it's not going to be easy and it will take a long time
someone has **a long face**	they look sad and depressed/gloomy

C Idioms with *go/come* and *long/length*

She always **goes to great lengths** to make us feel welcome. [makes a very big effort]

He would **go to any lengths** to avoid meeting Eva; he hates her. [do anything he could]

I think Heloise will **go a long way**; she's very clever and she studies hard. [be very successful; rise to the top of her profession]

Helen and I **go back a long way**. [have known each other for many years]

Kyoko has really **come a long way** since she first started learning English; she's quite fluent now. [made great progress]

Note also: I think we should **take a long, hard look** at the cost of all this. [consider carefully]

Exercises

57.1 Complete each of these idioms.

1 My parents always go .... to make any new friend of mine feel welcome if I bring them home.

2 You've come .... since the last time we played tennis. You must have been practising hard.

3 Georgina and I go .... I've known her since 2002.

4 My teacher at school always told me I would go .... , but she was wrong; I'm stuck in a very boring job and don't earn much.

5 I'd be prepared to go .... to get that job. I've never wanted anything so much in all my life.

6 It's time to take .... at our personal finances. I think we're spending too much.

57.2 Use the idioms from exercise 57.1 to make sentences of your own, based on these outlines.

1 Tell a young person just leaving high school who has done well in their exams that you think they have an excellent career ahead of them.

2 Tell someone that you and your best friend have known each other for years and years.

3 Tell someone that the family you stayed with when you were learning a new language did everything possible to make you feel at home.

4 Tell someone who plays the violin for you that you think they've made great progress since the last time you heard them play.

5 Tell someone that you think you should reconsider very seriously a plan you have made with them to start a business together.

6 Tell someone you would be prepared to do absolutely anything to persuade the owner of a beautiful flat to sell it to you.

57.3 Which idioms with *long* could you use to answer someone who said to you ... ?

1 Hi! Wow, it's been ages, hasn't it?

2 How long does it take to get a computer repaired?

3 Hey, what happened to you and Ruth? I thought you were going to get married.

4 What happened at the meeting last night? Don't tell me all the details, just the main points.

57.4 What is the opposite of ... ? Use an idiom from the left-hand page in each answer.

1 a short, interesting lecture

2 a happy-looking face

3 a quick, easy process

4 a short list

Over to you

During the next week, each time the word *long* comes up in your reading or when you are speaking English, note whether it is being used with its ordinary meanings or in an idiom. If any of the idioms you hear/read are not in this unit, make a note of them in your vocabulary notebook.

58 Line

A Line as track

Imran knew he was **in line for**[1] promotion last year. However, foolishly, he said something **out of line**[2] at a meeting and that was the end of his hopes for a while. I'm not sure what he said exactly, but it was something **along the lines of**[3] the problems of the company being down to inefficient management. Anyhow, he's learnt that it is not a good idea to **step out of line**[4] – at least not in his **line of work**[5] – and he seems to **be going along/on the right lines**[6] now. As long as he doesn't say anything **along/on the same lines**[7] again – at least not until he's got his promotion, when he can be one of the inefficient managers himself.

[1] likely to get (used about something good)

[2] not suitable, that should not have been said (or sometimes done)

[3] similar to

[4] behave in a way that is not what is expected of you

[5] profession

[6] be doing something in a way that will bring good results

[7] of a similar kind (sometimes in a similar way)

B Lines as limits

idiom	meaning	example
draw the line	think of or treat one thing as different from another	At what point does a child stop being a minor? You have to draw the line somewhere.
draw the line at something	not do something because you think it is wrong or too extreme	I quite like modern fashions, but I draw the line at body-piercing!
draw a line under something	decide that something is finished and you are not going to think about it again	Let's draw a line under this episode and try to make a fresh start.
there is a fine/thin line between one thing and another	two things are very similar, although the second thing is bad while the first is not	There is a fine line between determination and pig-headedness.

C Lines of writing

Drop me a line when you have a spare moment. [send me a short letter, postcard or e-mail]

Reading between the lines, I think he's feeling a little lonely. [I am trying to understand his real feelings from what he says]

It is foolish to **sign on the dotted line** until you have checked all the details. [formally agree to something by signing a legal document]

The bottom line is that children must be protected. [the most important fact]

Exercises

58.1 Complete these idioms with prepositions.

1 I hope I'm .... line .... a pay rise this year.
2 You must read .... the lines of her letter to understand what she's saying.
3 I'd like to design a house .... the lines of a place I read about.
4 I'll help with the play, but I draw the line .... taking a speaking role.
5 There's a fine line .... generosity and extravagance.
6 It's uncanny how we always seem to be thinking .... the same lines.
7 You were quite .... line. Don't do it again!
8 When our house purchase is agreed, we'll sign .... the dotted line.
9 It's time to draw a line .... this sad occurrence and to make a fresh start.
10 Would you mind having a look at my essay plan and telling me whether you think I'm going .... the right lines or not?

58.2 Explain the difference in meaning between the sentences in each pair.

1 A: Lisa drew a line under her relationship with Rob.
B: Lisa drew the line at a relationship with Rob.
2 A: David's actions were quite out of line.
B: David's actions were along the right lines.
3 A: Rebecca said she'd try to drop me a line.
B: Rebecca said she'd try to read between the lines.
4 A: Accountancy is Matt's line of work.
B: Matt's in line for the accountancy job at our company.

58.3 Match each statement on the left with the most likely response on the right.

1 Drop me a line soon. ☐
2 You're absolutely out of line. ☐
3 I'm in line for promotion. ☐
4 What's Jack's line of work? ☐
5 Shall we draw a line under our past problems? ☐
6 Nick doesn't dare step out of line. ☐
7 I draw the line at going on strike. ☐
8 Was my talk along the right lines? ☐

a Why ever not?
b It was great.
c So do I.
d I'm sorry.
e Of course, I will.
f He's in computer programming.
g That's fine by me.
h Congratulations.

58.4 Rewrite the underlined part(s) of each sentence with an idiom from this unit.

1 Please write to me as often as you can.
2 What's Natasha's job?
3 What Paul did was totally inappropriate.
4 My dream is to open a school similar to the one I attended myself as a child.
5 Genius is in some ways very close to insanity.
6 Doing enough exercise is of course essential, but too much might be harmful. Where does enough become too much?
7 Let's now try to forget our previous disagreements.
8 Marcus should be getting a new company car this year.
9 We'd like to visit you in Australia, but the key problem is that we just can't afford it.

58.5 Write sentences using six of the idioms from this unit about yourself or people that you know.

59 Act, action, activity

Idioms with *act* have two main meanings, one connected simply with doing things, the other with acting as in a theatre or drama. Idioms with *action* can refer to what is happening or to whether something/someone is working/functioning normally.

A Act

Here, the second speaker uses an idiom to repeat or sum up what the first speaker says.

Josh: The boss saw Rory and Emma kissing in the office yesterday. He was furious.

Jack: Yes, I heard about it. They were **caught in the act**. Amazing!

Kim: Lisa should fill out her application for university or she'll be too late.

Erica: Yes, it's time she **got her act together**.

Paul: Keith wants to join us now that we're doing well.

Oscar: Yes, now that we're successful he wants to **get in on the act**!

Edith: Brian is crying and saying he's ill. I don't believe him.

Georgie: I don't either. I think he's just **putting on an act** because he doesn't want to work.

Note these other idioms with *act*:

It's always **a** difficult **balancing act** to please the younger people and the older ones at the same time. [a situation where you try to treat the two groups of people equally]

A lot of people think the tabloid newspapers should **clean up their act** and stop destroying famous people's lives. [stop doing something a lot of people don't like or agree with]

Stop behaving like a child! You're over 18 now. **Act your age**! [don't behave in a childish way]

Stop **acting the fool/goat**! This is a serious matter. [playing around / not taking things seriously]

B Action and activity

Note that it would normally be very unusual to find all these similar idioms together in one text.

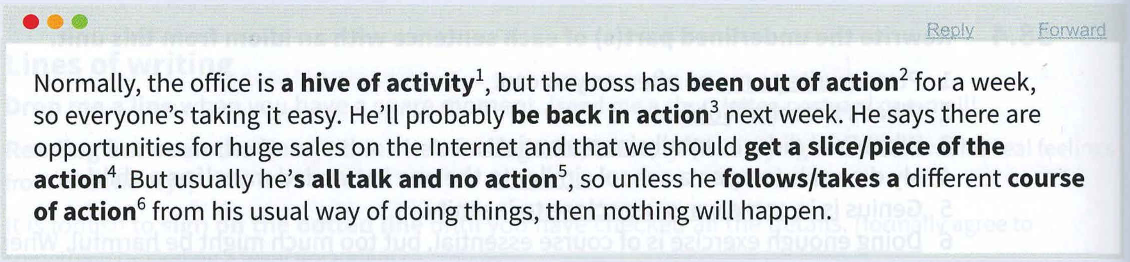

Normally, the office is **a hive of activity**[1], but the boss has **been out of action**[2] for a week, so everyone's taking it easy. He'll probably **be back in action**[3] next week. He says there are opportunities for huge sales on the Internet and that we should **get a slice/piece of the action**[4]. But usually he'**s all talk and no action**[5], so unless he **follows/takes a** different **course of action**[6] from his usual way of doing things, then nothing will happen.

[1] a very busy place (like a beehive) with people working hard all the time

[2] not been working in the normal way, perhaps because he's ill

[3] be back at work again

[4] take part in something exciting, profit from it

[5] be someone who promises/says they will do a lot of exciting things, but doesn't do them

[6] acts in a particular way (rather formal)

Exercises

59.1 Use an idiom to repeat or sum up what the other person says.

1 A: James has been off work for a couple of weeks, hasn't he?
B: Yes, he's been …………………………………………… for a while now.

2 A: Lucy is so silly. She's 31, but she acts like a teenager sometimes.
B: Yes, I agree. She should learn to …………………………………………… .

3 A: Eva is always saying what fantastic plans she has to travel round the world, but she never actually does it.
B: Yes, she's …………………………………………… .

4 A: Bob should go and get a job. He finished university over a year ago and has never had a job.
B: Yes, it's time …………………………………………… .

5 A: I think we always have to try to give the kids a lot of fun, but at the same time show their parents we're giving them a serious education.
B: Yes, it's a very delicate …………………………………………… .

59.2 Complete the crossword.

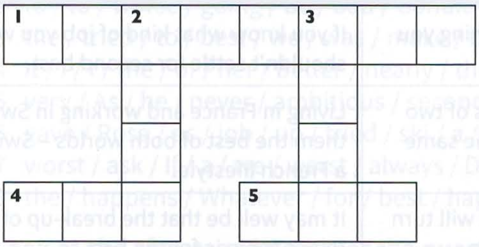

Across
1 Time to get your act …………………… .
4 Don't …………………… on an act!
5 I want to …………………… in on the act.

Down
2 Don't act like this animal.
3 Bees are busy there.

59.3 Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom from this unit.

1 He was stealing a car, and the police caught him just at the moment when he was getting into it.
2 I was out of the team for three weeks with a knee problem, but now I'm playing again.
3 I think it's time we acted in a different way.
4 The film industry should change its present wrong way of doing things and stop making violent films.
5 Everyone wants to be part of the exciting situation now that we are making a lot of money. (Give two answers.)
6 Our office is a very busy place these days as we prepare for the launch of our new products.

Over to you

Try to follow a particular theme and learn as many idioms as you can connected with it. For instance, *act* gives us idioms connected with the theatre. Look up other theatre words (*stage*, *curtain*, *scene*) and see if you can find any new idioms.

60 Good and bad

A Good and better

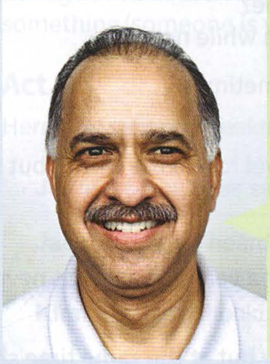

Our daughter, Tamsin, wanted to be an actress. I used to be involved in amateur theatre and I think Tamsin wanted to **go one better**[1]. **Against our better judgement**[2], we agreed that she could go to drama school. However, we managed to persuade her to do a secretarial course first – she agreed that this would always **stand her in good stead**[3]. After completing the course and rather to our relief, she **thought better of**[4] a life on the stage and decided to go for a job in theatre management instead.

[1] do more or do something better than it has been done before

[2] although we did not think it was a sensible thing to do

[3] be useful in the future

[4] decided not to do what she had intended to do

B Best

idiom	meaning	example
second best	not as good as the thing you really want	If you know what kind of job you want, you really shouldn't settle for second best.
get the best of both worlds	have the advantages of two different things at the same time	Living in France and working in Switzerland gives them the best of both worlds – Swiss salaries and a French lifestyle.
for the best	unpleasant now but will turn out well in the future	It may well be that the break-up of their relationship is for the best.
make the best of a bad job	be positive about a situation that you do not like but cannot change	It was difficult for her to move to such an isolated place, but she made the best of a bad job and slowly began to enjoy it.
be on your best behaviour	make an effort to behave as well as possible	Jack hates formal parties, but he has promised to be on his best behaviour at the reception tonight.

C Bad, worse and worst

The company has been **in a bad way** ever since it lost a major order last July. [in a poor condition]

The situation at school was dreadful last Christmas when a number of teachers were fired and it has **gone from bad to worse** since then. [got even worse than it was before]

I was learning the piano, but I've **given it up as a bad job**. I couldn't find time to practise. [stopped because I felt it was not worth continuing]

If the worst comes to the worst, we'll sell the house and move back to my parents. [if the situation becomes very difficult or serious]

Tip

Use the example sentences on this page as models, but alter them a little if possible so that they describe something in your own life.

Exercises

60.1 Complete each of these idioms with *good, bad, better, best, worse* or *worst.*

1 Learning a little Japanese should stand you in .... stead when you visit Japan.
2 Chris has been in quite a .... way ever since he had flu in January.
3 I didn't want to have a karaoke machine at our party, but, against my .... judgement, I agreed.
4 People who live here enjoy the .... of both worlds: the peace of the countryside, and fast and frequent rail connections with the city.
5 If the .... comes to the ...., we can always walk home.
6 The headmaster warned the children to be on their .... behaviour while the inspectors were in the school.
7 When Elliot was made redundant, he decided to make the .... of a .... job and use his extra time by taking a computer course.
8 The situation at the scene of the disaster seems to be going from .... to ....

60.2 Put the words in order and make sentences.

1 else / to / better / Sarah / has / one / go / everyone / always / than
2 to / to / worse / going / be / bad / Conditions / seem / from
3 the / tried / to / best / we / was / make / bad / a / job / weather / The / of / bad / but
4 it / I / I / the / of / her / better / nearly / thought / told / but / truth
5 very / As / he / never / ambitious / second / Mark / settle / is / for / will / best
6 gave / Rose / as / job / up / tried / ski / a / it / learn / soon / but / bad / to / to
7 worst / ask / If / a / we / worst / always / Dad / comes / the / to / can / loan / for / the
8 the / happens / Whatever / for / best / happens

60.3 Look at the pictures and answer the questions.

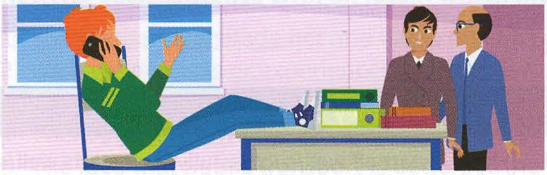

1 Is the boy on his best behaviour?
2 What might happen if things go from bad to worse?

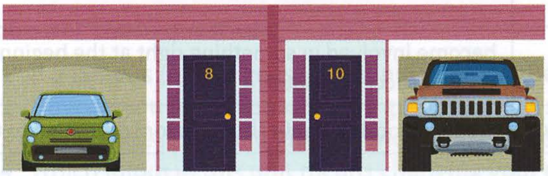

3 How are the people at number 10 trying to go one better than their neighbours?

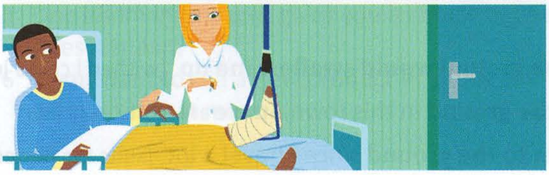

4 In what sense is Mike in a bad way?
5 How might he make the best of a bad job?

60.4 Choose two idioms from each of the three sections on the page opposite. Then write sentences about your own personal experiences.

example: I'm studying English because I'm sure it will stand me in good stead in the future.

61 Ground

The ground, meaning the earth under our feet, is associated with a number of idioms which refer to positions people occupy in giving arguments and opinions. The ground is also seen as a starting point from which plans, actions, etc. can take off, like a plane.

A Attitudes, arguments, positions

Agreeing / accepting ideas

We share a lot of **common ground**, so I think we'll work well together. [things we agree on; similar opinions and experience]

The idea that organic food is better for people as well as the environment is **gaining ground**. [becoming more popular/accepted]

Disagreeing/opposing

The Prime Minister's speech has **cut the ground from under the feet of** the Opposition. [made their position weaker by saying something better]

She was determined to **hold/stand her ground** and not to be persuaded by the others. [refuse to change her opinion/behaviour]

I think you'**re on dangerous ground** if you try to insist that they change the financial system. [hold a view/opinion that will probably offend/upset people]

Changing your opinion/argument

For a long time, neither side would **give ground**, but now it seems they are ready to consider each other's position. [change their opinion or accept the other side's position]

It's very difficult to argue with Rosa; she keeps **shifting her ground**. [changing her opinion/argument]

B The ground as starting point

If someone ...	this means they ...
gets a project/idea **off the ground** (or if a project/idea **gets off the ground**)	help it start off well/successfully (or it starts well/successfully)
gets in on the ground floor	become involved in something right at the beginning (and which is often successful later)
prepares the ground (for some activity)	create a good/suitable situation for something to take place

C Other useful *ground* idioms

I felt so embarrassed I just **wished the ground would swallow me up**. [wished I could just disappear]

Good restaurants **are thick/thin on the ground** in this town. [there are a lot / very few]

Living near the airport **suits me down to the ground** since I travel a lot. [suits me perfectly]

As a result of the media attention, she has **gone to ground**. [hidden, not appeared in public]

This part of town was my old **stamping/stomping ground** when I was a student here ten years ago. [place where I spent a lot of time]

Exercises

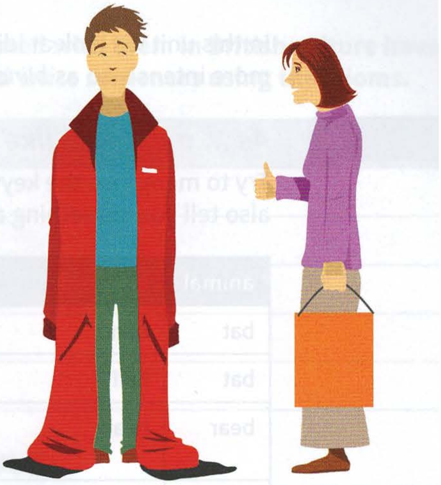

'Well I think it suits you down to the ground.'

61.1 Complete these idioms with prepositions.

1 The Minister cleverly cut the ground .... her opponents' feet by announcing new tax cuts.
2 He got .... the ground floor with e-commerce and became a millionaire when it took off.
3 Good hotels are thin .... the ground in the smaller cities; you have to go to the capital to get hotels of international standard.
4 The project has got .... the ground quicker and more smoothly than we expected.
5 Part-time work suits me .... the ground at the moment as I'm trying to study at the same time.

61.2 Use the idioms from exercise 61.1 to rewrite these sentences. Make any other necessary changes.

1 I'm afraid there aren't many good cafés in the town centre.
2 Working from home is perfect for me as I can look after our small child at the same time.
3 If you join our company now, I promise you are coming into it at the beginning of some really exciting developments.
4 Reducing the price now will enable us to get a big advantage over our competitors, because they will not be able to do the same.
5 It's a good idea, but I don't know if it will ever become popular.

61.3 Rewrite each sentence with an idiom which means the opposite of the underlined words.

1 She let them persuade her and had a meeting with the boss to tell her everything.
2 We have no ideas or experiences we can share, so we need to discuss how we can work together.
3 I think you can quite safely raise the subject of longer holidays at the staff meeting.
4 There are very few English Language schools in the capital city.
5 The idea that public transport is better for the environment is becoming less popular.

61.4 Answer these questions.

1 If a famous person goes to ground, what do they do?
2 How do you feel if you wish the ground would swallow you up?
3 If someone refuses to give ground, what do they refuse to do?
4 Which idiom in this unit means changing your position in an argument?
5 One idiom in this unit gives you a choice between *stamping* and *stomping*. What is it and what does it mean?
6 If you want to sell a new product in a new country and someone has prepared the ground for you, what does that mean?

62 Similes and idioms with *like* and *as*

In this unit we look at idioms with *as … as …* and *like*. *As … as …* idioms make an adjective stronger / more intense, so as *blind as a bat* means very blind / with very poor sight indeed.

A *As … as …* and *like* idioms involving animals/birds

Try to memorise the keywords. They may help you to remember the whole idiom more easily. They also tell you something about what the animals are associated with in British culture.

animal	keyword	example	meaning
bat	blind	I'm **as blind as a bat** without my glasses!	very blind
bat	hell	It must be urgent. She left **like a bat out of hell**.	moving very fast indeed
bear	head	He's **like a bear with a sore head**.	very bad-tempered/ irritable
bird	free	When I set off round the world, felt **as free as a bird**.	very free
bull	the colour red	Telling him not to smoke in here is **like a red rag to a bull**.	will make him extremely angry
cat	bring/drag things into the house	He arrived looking **like something the cat brought/ dragged in**.	very scruffy/untidy/messy
eel	slippery	Be careful. He's **as slippery as an eel**.	changes his attitude/ position; constantly escapes control
fish	water	As the only football enthusiast in the group, I felt **like a fish out of water**.	uncomfortable because you are different from other people
fox	sly/cunning	I wouldn't trust her. She's **as sly/cunning as a fox**.	very sly/cunning
hawk	eyes	Janet will see you if you use the computer without permission. She **has eyes like a hawk**.	sees everything; never misses anything
ox	strong	My father was a big man, and **as strong as an ox**.	very strong

B Other common similes

There were tents **as far as the eye could see** at the rock festival. [covering the landscape]

It's **as plain as the nose on your face** that she's in love with him. [very easy to see]

Looks are not everything. It doesn't matter if you marry someone who is **as ugly as sin** as long as you love each other. [very ugly indeed]

Your suitcase is **as light as a feather**. [very light] Mine's **as heavy as lead**. [/led/ very heavy]

C Other common *like* idioms

I've always tried to **avoid** exams **like the plague**. [/pleɪg/ avoid / have no contact with something unpleasant (*the plague* is a serious disease which kills many people)]

I'm sorry, I forgot to get your newspaper. I have **a memory like a sieve**! [/sɪv/ a very bad memory (a *sieve* is a kitchen tool with a plastic net which separates liquids from solids)]

He'll be here **like greased lightning** if he hears there are free tickets. [very quickly indeed]

Exercises

62.1 **This list of animals and the adjectives traditionally associated with them in British culture have got mixed up. Put the adjectives into the correct boxes and write sentences using the idioms.**

	animal	wrong adjective	right adjective	example sentence
1	bat	free		
2	ox	slippery		
3	eel	sly		
4	bird	blind		
5	fox	strong		

62.2 **Rewrite these sentences with idioms from the page opposite.**

1 I don't mind carrying this box. It's extremely light. The other one was very very heavy.
2 If I were you, I would avoid that restaurant in every possible way. The food is awful.
3 Millie never misses anything you do in the office. She sees absolutely everything.
4 I felt completely out of place with my electric guitar among all those classical musicians.
5 There are hotels completely covering the landscape all along the coast.
6 She got up late and came down to breakfast looking scruffy and messy.

62.3 **Answer these questions.**

1 Which animal has a sore head?
2 Which animal doesn't like red things?
3 Which animal lives in hell?

62.4 **Use an idiom from exercise 62.3 to complete each sentence.**

1 He was very bad-tempered, like ………………………………………………………… .
2 Her comments were like ………………………………………………………… .
3 He ran off like ………………………………………………………… .

62.5 **Complete each of these idioms.**

1 She drove home like ………………………… lightning the moment she heard Patrick had arrived.
2 Don't ask Robert to post a letter. He has a memory like a ………………………… .
3 Everyone could see what was happening. It was as ………………………… as the nose on your face.
4 Even if a person is as ………………………… as sin, that doesn't mean that they are not good human beings. We should not judge people by their external appearance.

62.6 **Use a dictionary of idioms or another good dictionary to find out which *as* … *as* … similes are associated with these things.**

Cambridge Dictionary
ry.cambridge.org

1 a pancake
2 a brush
3 gold
4 brass
5 a bone

Key

Unit 1

1.1 1 **by hook or by crook**

	YES	NO	DON'T KNOW/ CAN'T TELL
means using illegal methods if necessary	☐	☐	✓
means nothing will stop me	✓	☐	☐
means I was very determined	✓	☐	☐

2 **at loggerheads**

	YES	NO	DON'T KNOW/ CAN'T TELL
means have a good relationship	☐	✓	☐
means hate each other	☐	☐	✓
means disagree very strongly	✓	☐	☐

3 **pay through the nose**

	YES	NO	DON'T KNOW/ CAN'T TELL
means suffer in some way	☐	✓	☐
means pay a small sum of money	☐	✓	☐
means pay a large sum of money	✓	☐	☐

1.2 1 E 2 A 3 D 4 F 5 C 6 B

1.3
1 My father **put his foot down** when I said I wanted a car for my seventeenth birthday. He said I was too young.
2 Her words put the cat among the **pigeons**; Sam is furious.
3 You'll be pleased to hear we arrived **safe and sound** in Peru.
4 He was lying **through** his teeth when he said he had got a first-class grade in his exam; the truth is he failed.

Unit 2

2.1 In CIDI and CALD these idioms are to be found under the following headwords:
1 pick (both)
2 earth (both)
3 ground (CIDI); stand (CALD)
4 knife (both)
5 head (both)
6 daylight (both)

2.2
1 *back* and *with a bump* can be omitted
2 either *all* or *the* could be omitted
3 *most* can be omitted
4 *living* could be omitted

2.3
1 *bill* could be replaced by *tab*
2 *bump* could be replaced by *bang* or *jolt*
3 *stand* could be replaced by *hold*
4 *sticking* could be replaced by *putting*
5 *banging* could be replaced by *hitting*
6 *scared* could be replaced by *frightened*

2.4 *Possible answers:*

1 **look a gift horse in the mouth** – always used in a negative sentence
You shouldn't look a gift horse in the mouth!
2 **be banging your head against a brick wall** – always used in a continuous form
Trying to reason with him was like banging my head against a brick wall.
3 **be on the brink of** – always followed by a noun or an *-ing* form
Newspaper reports say that the company is on the brink of financial disaster.
4 **tie yourself up in knots** – always used reflexively
She tied herself up in knots trying to explain why she had written to him like that.
5 **be man enough** – always followed by an infinitive with *to*
Are you man enough to accept the challenge?

2.5 1 informal 2 humorous 3 literary 4 old-fashioned 5 very informal
6 formal

Unit 3

3.1 in seventh heaven on cloud nine on top of the world over the moon
thrilled to bits

3.2
1 jump for joy
2 grin and bear it
3 be floating on air
4 do something for kicks / get a kick out of something
5 sour grapes
6 be on top of the world

3.3
1 The child was thrilled **to** bits to have her photo in the paper.
2 I felt as if I was floating **on** air as I ran down the hill into his arms.
3 Why does Marti look so out of **sorts** today?
4 Don't make such a fuss. It's not the **end** of the world!
5 Your telephone call has really **made** my day!
6 Jill said she was on cloud **nine** and Jack agreed that he was in **seventh** heaven.
7 Why does Mark always have to be such a **misery** guts?
8 Stereotypically, happy footballers say that they are over the **moon**.

3.4
1 Good news – if something makes your day, it makes you feel happy.
2 No – down in the dumps means miserable.
3 Hot-air ballooning – boot cleaning is not something that many people find exciting.
4 Unhappy – when you grin and bear it, you try to make the best of a situation that you are not happy with.
5 News of the illness of a close friend. A heavy shower of rain might make you damp (wet), but it wouldn't put a damper on the event.
6 No one enjoys the company of a misery guts – being with a miserable person can make you feel miserable too.
7 'Of course, that model is very unreliable!' is the sort of unpleasant remark that someone might make out of sour grapes.
8 Just as a damper makes a piano quieter, so something that puts a damper on an event quietens it down, makes it less fun.
9 Quite a lot of the images are based on the concept of happiness making you feel as if you are not on the ground but up in the air.

Unit 4

4.1 These pairs of idioms mean more or less the same thing:
went off the deep end / did his nut
gave him an earful / gave him a piece of her mind
drove him up the wall / sent him round the bend
put his back up / rubbed him up the wrong way

4.2 1 here 2 terms 3 cat 4 went 5 after 6 out 7 fit 8 wits'

4.3 Yesterday I had terrible toothache. It hurt a lot and I guess that's why I was in a bad temper all day. Everything anyone said seemed to put **my** back up and, in the end, I **blew** a fuse with the person I share my office with. Even when I'm in a good mood, she sends me **round** the twist with her constant chatter and yesterday I had had it **up** to here with her after only ten minutes. I really gave her an **earful** and the result is that we are no longer **on** speaking terms. I know I'll have to apologise for doing my **nut** like that, but perhaps I'll wait a while. It's much easier to work when she isn't talking to me! Perhaps I should give her a **piece** of my mind more often.

4.4 *Possible answers:*

The answers to the questions with even numbers here are fairly fixed, but those with odd numbers are more open. (The answers given below to the odd-numbered questions are those of one of the authors.) Check your answers with your teacher or another good speaker of English if you are not sure whether they are correct or not.

1 People sniffing drives me up the wall.
2 put/set the cat among the pigeons; ruffle someone's feathers
3 Yes, a teacher once went off the deep end when someone flew a paper aeroplane in the classroom.
4 fed up to the back teeth; your blood is up; after your blood; out for blood; get/put someone's back up; give someone an earful; give someone a piece of your mind
5 A friend recently rubbed me up the wrong way when he told me something I didn't want to hear.
6 *I've had it up to here* is usually accompanied by the speaker's hand indicating the top of his/her head.
7 I sometimes give people who make unsolicited phone calls selling things a piece of my mind – yes, I know they're only doing their job, but it can be extremely annoying.
8 blow a fuse

Unit 5

5.1 1 I don't have **the faintest** idea where he is today; you'll have to ask somebody else.
2 The title of the book has **a familiar ring** to it, but I don't think I've ever read it.
3 My cousin knows the tax laws **inside out**, so if you want advice on your tax, he'll help you.
4 I can't for **the life of me** think what it was I came into the kitchen for.
5 I saw Tom and Lily together in a restaurant looking adoringly into each other's eyes. I **put two and two together**, and decided they must be madly in love.

5.2 I always thought I knew my computer **inside out**, but the other day it started to crash every time I opened a certain program. I could not **for the life of me** understand why it was doing this, and I didn't have **the faintest idea / the foggiest (idea) / a clue** about what to do to fix it.
I rang the helpline which I had used in the past, and after about 20 minutes I spoke to someone who said his name was Patrick, and that he was there to help me. He gave me some advice which **had a familiar ring to it** from previous calls I had made to the same helpline. I **put two and two together**, and concluded that they give the same advice to everybody, and that it's just a way of getting rid of you. The computer still crashes every time I open the program.

5.3 1 No, that name doesn't ring any bells with me. I don't think I've met her.
2 I'm (really) out of touch with TV soap operas these days. I never watch them.
3 She knows her stuff when it comes to the history of this area. / She knows the history of the area inside out.
4 I got (hold of) the wrong end of the stick and it caused (a lot of) problems.
5 Her name rings a bell. I may have met her.

5.4 1 I **haven't (got) / don't have a clue** how to use the photocopier. Do you think you could help me?
2 I **haven't (got) / don't have the faintest idea** where I left that letter I brought for you. I'm really sorry.
3 I **haven't (got) / don't have the foggiest (idea)** what she's talking about. She's crazy!

Unit 6

6.1 1 Philip: Yes, I think he's **got the message**.
2 Ross: Yes, that should definitely **teach her a lesson**.
3 Brad: Yes, they've certainly given us **food for thought**.
4 Nick: Yes, I'm sure the whole thing is a **figment of his imagination**.
5 Steve: Yes, it was important to **set/put the record straight**.

6.2

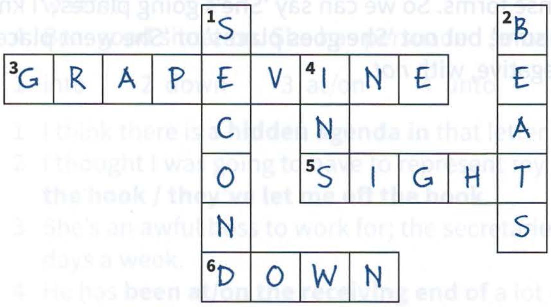

6.3 1 I want to know **where** I **stand**. One day you say you love me, the next day you say I'm just a friend. It's driving me crazy.
2 He spent £500 of my money. I'll never lend him my credit card again. I've **learnt** my **lesson**.
3 I don't know all the **ins** and **outs** of the situation, but I think one of the directors is going to resign. There must be a big problem.
4 I can understand that she needed help, but **what beats** me is that she should ask someone as stupid as Leon to help her!

6.4 *Possible answers:*

Check your answers with your teacher or another good speaker of English if you are not sure whether they are correct or not.
1 I bought a cheap brush to wash the dishes from someone who came to the door selling things. I learnt my lesson – it fell to pieces after a week!
2 I flew with a very bad airline once, just because the ticket was cheap. The flight was delayed and very uncomfortable. I decided not to complain and just put it down to experience.
3 I wanted to be a diplomat when I was about 18. I got some information about the job, then had second thoughts when I realised what it involved.
4 I heard on the grapevine that someone I know has decided to take early retirement from his job.
5 Many years ago I wasn't sure if someone loved me or just wanted me to be a friend, so I asked that person directly to tell me where I stood.

Unit 7

7.1 1 His company has gone **from** strength **to** strength in the last six months. He's making a lot of money now.
2 The flood ruined our old kitchen, but it was a blessing **in** disguise, because the insurance company paid for a completely new one.

3 This new model is not the be-all-and-end-all **of** digital cameras, but it certainly has many technical features that others do not have.
4 Your offer to drive us to the airport makes all the difference **to** our travel plans.
5 Your plan to persuade Lela to join the committee worked **like** magic.

7.2 1 At first we thought the new road would spoil our village, but in fact it **was a blessing in disguise** and the village shops are doing more business.
2 I sprayed the stain remover onto my jacket and it **worked like magic / did the trick**.
3 This is not **the be-all-and-end-all of** cookery **books**, but it does have recipes from 100 different countries.
4 The school **has gone from strength to strength** since the new head teacher took over.
5 Getting new curtains has **made all the difference to** my flat. It feels like a new one.

7.3 1 b) 2 c) 3 a) 4 b)

7.4 1 The photocopier has completely **given up** the ghost. We need a new one.
2 I didn't think I **had the** ghost of a **chance** of passing the exam, but I did.
3 My new motorbike **works/goes/runs like** a dream; it's fast, but so smooth and quiet.

7.5 1 You succeed.
2 We don't use it with the simple tense forms. So we can say 'She's going places', 'I knew she would go places' or 'She'll go places, I'm sure', but not 'She goes places' or 'She went places'.
3 That it most often occurs in the negative, with *not*.

Unit 8

8.1 1 d
2 a
3 b
4 f
5 g
6 e
7 c

8.2 1 Easier said than done.
2 Try not to spread yourself too thin.
3 I wish I hadn't put my foot in it.
4 Getting older is a fact of life.
5 The company is in dire straits.
6 Children are taught the facts of life in primary school.

8.3 1 dig yourself into a hole
2 be left holding the baby
3 a stumbling block
4 clutch at straws
5 come up against a brick wall
6 face the music

8.4 1 hole 2 blank 3 thin 4 straits 5 wall 6 block 7 barrel

Unit 9

9.1 1 e
2 h
3 b
4 a
5 g
6 d
7 c
8 f

9.2 1 tunnel 2 wave 3 loose 4 prayers 5 it 6 bag 7 light
8 fall

9.3 1 I'd like to try that new bowling alley. Let's **give it a whirl** this evening.
2 I'm finding it quite hard **to get to grips with** my new role at work.
3 When the business failed, Paul vanished, leaving his partner **to pick up the pieces**.

4 Some important new evidence **has come / has been brought to light** in the last few days.
5 I hope that we'll be able **to get to the bottom of** what's been going on.
6 New medical research **has shed / is shedding light on** the causes of heart attacks.
7 As soon as I met Joshua's family, everything **fell into place**.
8 In the investigation into their accounts, a number of errors **have been brought / have come to light**.

9.4
1 c
2 d
3 e
4 a
5 f
6 b

9.5
1 light at the end of the tunnel
2 pick up the pieces
3 wave a magic wand

Unit 10

10.1
1 Jack: good situation. He has been freed from some unpleasant task or responsibility.
2 Lily: bad situation. She has had to take the blame instead of other people.
3 Carmen: bad situation. She has to do what everyone else tells her to do, whenever they want it.
4 Bea: good situation. She has persuaded someone to let her do what she wants.

10.2
1 into 2 down 3 at/on 4 unto 5 to

10.3
1 I think there is **a hidden agenda in** that letter she sent to the boss.
2 I thought I was going to have to represent my class at the staff–student meeting, but **I've got off the hook / they've let me off the hook**.
3 She's an awful boss to work for; the secretaries **are at her beck and call**, eight hours a day, seven days a week.
4 He has **been at/on the receiving end of** a lot of criticism from the press in recent weeks.
5 They cause all the trouble, and I always have to **carry the can**.
6 I don't want someone telling me what to do all the time. I'd rather be **left to my own devices**.

10.4 *Possible answers:*

Check your answers with your teacher or another good speaker of English if you are not sure whether they are correct or not.
1 I think there is a hidden agenda in the proposal to reduce the staff in order to make the company more efficient. I think they want us to do more work for the same pay.
2 The Prime Minister's spin doctors immediately tried to make the bad situation sound positive when they spoke to reporters.
3 The school bent the rules and let him join the course even though he was under 18.
4 In my country we are due to go to the polls next year. I hope we get a new government.

Unit 11

11.1
1 g
2 i
3 a
4 c
5 b
6 d
7 h
8 f
9 j
10 e

11.2
1 the acid test
2 tying yourself up in knots
3 the pros and cons of a situation
4 putting it in a nutshell
5 going round in circles
6 a vicious circle

11.3 1 In some ways it's glamorous being a pop star. But **the other side of the coin** is that you no longer have any privacy.
2 It's time these petty criminals were **called to account** for their irresponsible actions.
3 I know Bill's a nice friendly person, but, **be that as it may**, he still has to pull his weight in the office.
4 **On the one hand**, I think Janna might have the best personality for the job, but, on the other, Mina has more experience.
5 If he's apologised, I think you should **give him the benefit of the doubt**.
6 It would be opening **a can of worms** to inquire about his finances.

11.4 1 I **tied myself up in knots** trying to explain to Karl how I felt about him.
2 I'd like you to write an essay on **the pros and cons** of working abroad.
3 To put it **in a nutshell**, James needs to produce better homework.
4 Natasha was prepared to compromise, but Alex wouldn't **budge/give an inch**.
5 You need more money so you work more. You earn more so you spend more. So you need to work more. **It's a vicious circle**.

Unit 12

12.1 1 It's a small world.
2 The more, the merrier.
3 It's six of one and half a dozen of the other.
4 How time flies!
5 No such luck!
6 I can take it or leave it.
7 Don't make me laugh!
8 No way!

12.2 1 Get a life!
2 You haven't lived!
3 It's/That's the story of my life!
4 Such is / That's life!
5 This is the life!

12.3 1 It's a lovely present. Thanks a **million**.
2 You won't find it difficult to learn to ski. There's really nothing to **it**.
3 It's **neither** here **nor** there which hotel you decide to stay in – they're both excellent.
4 Let's have a really big wedding. The more, the **merrier**.
5 You **can** say that again! I couldn't agree with you more!
6 He's travelled a lot. You **name** it, he's been there.

12.4 1 It's six of one and half a dozen of the other.
2 It's a small world.
3 How time flies!

Unit 13

13.1 1 B: Yes, I know. One minute she was angry, the next minute she was **all sweetness and light**.
2 B: Yes, apparently they're **like gold dust**.
3 B: Yes, I think he's just **asking for trouble / asking for it** (*asking for it* is more informal).
4 B: Yes, it's **second to none**.
5 B: Yes, she's certainly **a hard act to follow**.

13.2 1 She really gets **on** my **nerves** sometimes.
2 The last President was an **out**-and-out cruel monster, and the new one is not much better.
3 I don't think you should cast **aspersions** on him. He's not here to defend himself.
4 The scientists did some ground-**breaking** research on human genes.
5 She had already upset me, but to add **insult** to **injury** she told me I was ugly.

13.3 1 poke fun at
2 grate

13.4 1 They criticised her very strongly, but she **gave** as good as she **got** and made them shut up.
2 This dining table is just **made** for this room. The wood matches the doors perfectly.
3 Why are you **giving** me such a **hard** time? I know I was wrong, but I said I'm sorry. I can't do any more.
4 We stayed at a luxurious five-star hotel. It was out of **this world**.

Unit 14

14.1 1 never do anything by halves
2 throw the baby out with the bathwater
3 leave a lot to be desired
4 get/jump/leap on the bandwagon
5 a laughing stock

14.2 1 The new documentary channel on TV **leaves a lot to be desired**.
2 My brother **never does anything by halves**; he designed and built his own house, and designed most of the furniture too!
3 He thinks everyone is afraid of him, but in fact **he is a laughing stock**.
4 Yes, I think we should change the system, but I think we should **not throw the baby out with the bathwater**.
5 Five years ago, there were not many companies selling on the Internet, but now everyone **has got/jumped/leapt on the bandwagon**.

14.3 1 She pretended to disagree with everyone else in order to make them discuss / think about things more deeply.
2 No, not nice to ride in. *Rough and ready* does not refer to time, but means of low or poor quality.
3 He claimed he was a trained electrician, but he was lying.
4 Probably not, since it is not as good as people say it is.
5 No. You'd be rather unhappy, since you would be very irritated or exasperated with your friend.

14.4 1 That new motorway project has **all** the **makings** of a disaster for the environment. It will go through the middle of a wildlife area.
2 Zara **made** a real **exhibition** of **herself** in class the other day. It was so embarrassing!
3 The Krona Hotel is a bit **on the** expensive **side**. Couldn't we stay somewhere cheaper?
4 This old camera is a **dead loss**. The batteries run out after about ten photos.
5 I think Paris **has** the **edge** over other European cities as a place for a holiday.
6 The government has got a **lot** to **answer** for with regard to unemployment.

Unit 15

15.1 Sentences 1, 2, 3 and 6 are basically negative whereas the others are positive. Notice that the context of sentence 3 suggests the *take less care of your appearance* meaning of *let yourself go* whereas the context of sentence 7 suggests the meaning of *relax completely*.

15.2 1 lid 2 hard/rough/tough 3 insignificance 4 of 5 blow 6 lump
7 balance 8 dream

15.3 *Possible answers:*

Check your answers with your teacher or another good English speaker if you are not sure whether they are correct or not.

1 Yes, I was once left in the lurch when I was preparing food for a big party and all my flatmates went out and left me on my own preparing food for fifty people.
2 A boss once gave me a bit of a rough time when he wanted a lot of work done very quickly.
3 I think nothing of giving a talk in front of a lot of people.
4 I think it is important to make the most of every day you live.

5 Writing a thesis was a big problem at the time, but has now paled into insignificance.
6 Beautiful music or poetry or children's innocence can bring a lump to my throat.
7 I've had to come to terms with the death of family members.
8 I would never dream of betraying a friend.

15.4 1 is/hangs in the balance
2 keep a lid on
3 blow out of (all) proportion

Unit 16

16.1

1	f	4	c
2	a	5	b
3	e	6	d

16.2 1 There's no accounting for taste(s)!
2 You could've fooled me!
3 (Yes,) strike while the iron is hot.
4 (I suppose George is) the lesser of two evils.
5 If all else fails.

16.3 1 If I were in your **shoes**, I'd take the job in New York.
2 Asking the Managing Director for his ID was a really stupid mistake to make. I'm sure my colleagues will never let me live it **down**.
3 Improving office morale is said to be high on the new boss's **agenda**.
4 We hadn't intended to stay there so long, but one thing **led** to another.
5 Take your chance now. Strike while the **iron** is hot.
6 I can't understand what people see in the exhibition. There's no accounting for **tastes**.
7 If all else **fails**, I suppose I'll have to go and live somewhere else.
8 Given the choice between watching football or golf, I suppose football is the **lesser** of two evils.

16.4 Check your answers with your teacher or another good speaker of English if you are not sure whether they are correct or not.
1 If I were in **the Prime Minister's** shoes, I'd **listen to what the people are saying**.
2 **Sorting out my study** is at the top of my agenda at the moment.
3 **Speaking to his mother like that** is just not on, as far as I'm concerned.
4 I'm determined to **visit my nephew in Australia**, one way or another.
5 I think that **Sue's furious reaction to my saying she'd put on a bit of weight** was over the top.
6 In my opinion, if you compare **smoking a pipe** and **smoking cigarettes**, then **smoking a pipe** is the lesser of two evils.

Unit 17

17.1

1	g	5	h
2	d	6	e
3	b	7	c
4	f	8	a

17.2 1 When David suggested they should come and stay for a weekend, it set alarm **bells** ringing in my mind.
2 The patient's life is hanging by a **thread**.
3 Having to go to work is **a necessary evil**.
4 Why do some people always cut **things** fine?
5 They are on a knife-**edge** waiting for the results of Brian's medical tests.
6 As the building was on fire, he had no choice but to put his life in the firemen's **hands** and climb out of the window and onto their ladder.
7 You'll be taking **your** life in your hands if you make a speech like that to such an audience.
8 I think it would be more sensible to leave **well** alone.

17.3
1 be/go out on a limb
2 be caught napping
3 lead someone astray
4 have a narrow escape
5 set alarm bells ringing
6 on a knife-edge

17.4
1 I suppose that exams are **a necessary evil**.
2 It was such a relief when Ralph arrived back from his Arctic expedition **safe and sound**.
3 You took **your life in your hands** by agreeing to go up in a helicopter with such an inexperienced pilot.
4 The hurricane seems to be getting a bit too **close** to our town **for comfort**.
5 If I were you, I **would leave well alone**.
6 **It was panic stations** before the important visitors arrived, but we managed to get everything under control in time for their visit.
7 We **caught** the train **by the skin of our teeth**.
8 I hope the other students won't **lead** our son **astray**.

Unit 18

18.1
1 e
2 f
3 d
4 b
5 c
6 a

18.2
1 I wish you'd pull your **finger** out and help me move the furniture.
2 Sam didn't like the exam, but I thought it was a **piece** of cake.
3 I'm going to get the job somehow, by hook **or** by crook.
4 Hattie could, **at** a push, take over the project for you.
5 The test was as easy as **pie**.
6 Don't worry if you don't win the game – just as long as you give **it** your all.
7 Why don't you have **a** go at repairing the washing machine yourself?
8 Persuading him to do what I wanted was like taking candy from a **baby**.
9 Max will always go out of his **way** to help others.
10 I had no problems using the public transport system there – it was child's play. (i.e. no article used in this idiom)

18.3
1 out 2 through 3 out 4 out 5 of 6 by 7 by 8 from
9 at

18.4
1 Course, you will. It's **as easy as pie**.
2 Let me **have a go**.
3 He is going **out of his way** to make a good impression on her.
4 It was **a piece of cake**.

18.5 Matt, Sam and Sonya are speaking in a more informal way.

Unit 19

19.1
1 I wouldn't be **seen dead** working in a fast food restaurant. All my friends would laugh at me. I just couldn't do it.
2 I feel duty **bound** to go home and see my parents at least once a month.
3 I've had enough coffee, thanks, but another one of those lovely cakes wouldn't go **amiss**.
4 I think that laptop he's trying to sell is stolen. If I were you, I wouldn't **touch** it with a **barge pole**.
5 It's not **worth** my **while** trying the exam again. I failed the first time, and I'll probably fail again.

19.2

			1 T	2 H	I	N	G
				O			
				3 L	U	C	K
4 S	H	O	V	E			

19.3 1 You're **in luck**. We have just one room left for tonight.
2 **If push comes to shove**, we'll just have to sell the apartment.
3 I don't want to go with a big group of people. I want to **do my own thing**.
4 I got a bill today for £700 for repairs to my car. I'm telling you, **I need a bill for £700 like I need a hole in the head** right at this moment.

19.4 1 if need be
2 take your pick
3 *be dying to* is always in the continuous form (so we don't say 'I always die to meet him.')
4 in keeping with

19.5 *Possible answers:*

Check your answers with your teacher or another good speaker of English if you are not sure whether they are correct or not.
1 I'd give anything to meet Bruno Mars.
2 I'm dying to see my friend from Spain who is coming to stay at my house.

Unit 20

20.1 1 It's unlikely he'll manage to climb the mountain without oxygen.
2 It's neither likely nor unlikely – all that is clear is that Molly herself now has no control over what might happen.
3 It's extremely likely you'll guess his role correctly.
4 It's unlikely that she'll be able to complete her course.
5 It's extremely likely, it even seems certain, that Beth will come top.
6 It's neither likely nor unlikely that Rob will pass – either result seems to be equally possible.
7 It sounds unlikely that the library will have the required book.
8 It is extremely likely, the speaker is in fact certain, that the minister will lose his job.

20.2 1 No such luck!
2 Just my luck!
3 It's the luck of the draw.
4 Don't push your luck!
5 I'll take pot luck.
6 You should be so lucky!

20.3 1 They've been married for so long that they take each other **for** granted.
2 We've done all we can. Now the results of the election are in the lap of **the** gods.
3 Alex is chancing **his** arm a bit only applying to one university.
4 No prizes for **guessing** who got the job in the end!
5 The cards were stacked **against** Jake being able to persuade him.
6 It was touch-**and**-go who would win the match.
7 We could all see Helena's collapse **coming**.
8 Let's go down to the theatre **on** the **off**-chance that we can get some tickets that have been returned.

20.4 *Possible answers:*

Check your answers with your teacher or another good speaker of English if you are not sure whether they are correct or not.

I went to the theatre on the off-chance and managed to get a ticket.
I knew who would win the prize – it was a foregone conclusion.
I did as much work as I could for the exam. Now it's in the lap of the gods.
I ran all the way to the station, but still missed the train. Just my luck!
I went to the newsagent's to ask if they still had yesterday's newspapers. No such luck!
I haven't seen the cinema programme this week, so I'll take pot luck when I go this evening.

Unit 21

21.1
1 He is always the odd **one out**. If all his friends do one sport, he does a different one.
2 When he lost all his money, he still tried to keep **up** appearances even though he could not afford his lifestyle.
3 Sometimes it's better to **keep** a low profile at work. In that way, nobody asks you to do difficult jobs.
4 She **made** a name for herself by being the first woman to climb Mount Everest.
5 He's always putting on **airs** and **graces**, but everyone knows he's just an ordinary person with a very ordinary background.

21.2
1 **Anybody who is anybody** will be at the concert on Friday, so don't miss it.
2 It's not **politically correct** to refer to 'underdeveloped' countries any more. If you don't want to offend people, you should say 'developing nations'.
3 He was voted 'Best **up-and-coming** actor' of 2016.
4 They employed a lot of young people as they felt they needed **new blood.**
5 A lot of the people who live in those huge houses near the beach **are (rather /a bit / very) toffee-nosed**.
6 My boss **is a rough diamond**, but he's a very nice guy in fact.
7 She was **a pillar of society**, but then it turned out she was involved in the illegal drug trade.

21.3
1 You are rising to better positions; you are becoming very successful.
2 They have no home, no money and no job.
3 They are rising very rapidly in the industry and probably making a lot of money.
4 They think they are better than other people, especially people of a lower social class.

21.4
1 a pillar of society
2 a rough diamond
3 a high-flyer

Unit 22

22.1 The speaker has a good relationship with Anna, Ed, the Browns and Noah, but has a bad relationship with Rob, Emma, the dog and Jack.

22.2
1 I would immediately drop any boyfriend that tried to **two-time** me.
2 Ela has taken **a** shine to her new teacher.
3 Please stay **in** touch with me once you go home.
4 Nita's boyfriend promised to make **it up** to her for forgetting her birthday.
5 There's something about him that always rubs me **up** the wrong way.
6 We try to be friendly, but the Smith family prefer to keep **themselves** to themselves.
7 If you want to leave early, you'd better try and stay in the boss's good **books**.
8 Rana really seems to have it **in** for me today – I don't know how I've upset him.

22.3 1 b) 2 a) 3 b) 4 a) 5 b)

22.4 *Possible answers:*

Check your answers with your teacher or another good speaker of English if you are not sure whether they are correct or not.

1 Traditionally the child will bring an apple for the teacher, but they might try all sorts of other things like helping to tidy up, behaving well in the classroom, and so on.
2 You are confused – although you may not yet realise it.
3 You might pay for the repair and/or buy them flowers or chocolates, or do something nice for them.
4 You can keep in touch by phone, letter or e-mail. I like e-mail best because it is so quick and easy.
5 It rubs me up the wrong way when people say *Have a nice day* when you know they don't particularly mean it.
6 They should be dropped by both of the people that they were going out with.
7 You may be alone, but you are not necessarily lonely (i.e. unhappy) – you just prefer to be on your own.
8 Not necessarily – not in the way that it is if you get on like a house on fire, for example.

Unit 23

23.1 1 a small fortune
2 Big deal!
3 larger than life
4 make it big

23.2 1 Maria is **miles away**.
2 Chairs are sold in **all shapes and sizes**.
3 The new school is a **far cry from the old one**.
4 You can see he's in love. It **sticks/stands out a mile**.
Or: He's in love. You can see/spot it **a mile off**.

23.3 1 She's 40 next week, but she doesn't want to **make a big thing of it**. She'd prefer just to go out for a meal with her husband rather than have a big party with lots of people.
2 For any person in a temporary job, the possibility of unemployment **looms large**, especially in a time of economic recession.
3 The unions are prepared to discuss the problem, but the employers will not **budge an inch**. They say they have made their final offer, and that's that.
4 We have a new boss starting next week. He's a bit of **an unknown quantity** – nobody has met him or knows much about him.
5 I like having friends to stay in my flat, but only for a couple of days. In general, friends are nice **in small doses**; if they stay too long, they always irritate me.
6 We should think **big** when we come to plan the new website. There's no point in having one single, dull page; we should have lots of links and video clips, and as many colour pictures as possible, and sound.

23.4 *Meanings and possible sentences:*

the middle ground: something which two people who are arguing or who disagree can agree on
He is very good at finding the middle ground in meetings when people are disagreeing.

the middle of nowhere: a place which is remote and isolated, and very far away from cities or big towns
He owns a lovely summer cottage in the middle of nowhere, a perfect escape from the stresses of city life.

be caught in the middle: find yourself trapped between two people who are arguing or disagreeing
Jim and Mary were having a terrible argument and I was caught in the middle. I felt very embarrassed and uncomfortable.

Unit 24

24.1 on the breadline well-to-do / well-heeled living in the lap of luxury

24.2
1 Bob (So far Anne's business venture has been costly rather than profitable.)
2 Matt (Both cars cost a lot, but Daisy clearly feels that it was not money well spent.)
3 George (Ed's daughter is extravagant even though she may have plenty of money.)
4 Harry (Dora has lost hope of success.)

24.3
1 making 2 pick 3 lap 4 fortune 5 money 6 tighten 7 nose
8 pay 9 water 10 making

24.4
1 live in the lap of luxury
2 tighten your belt
3 pay through the nose
4 spend money like water
5 a money-spinner
6 a rip-off

Unit 25

25.1
1 paper 2 mill 3 her 4 step 5 coming 6 rut 7 go 8 sack
9 shop 10 head

25.2
1 snowed under with work
2 be headhunted
3 pull out all the stops
4 be given the sack
5 in a rut / get out of a rut
6 (at the bottom/top of) the career ladder

25.3
1 e
2 h
3 b
4 f
5 g
6 c
7 a
8 d

25.4
1 snowed 2 stops 3 cut 4 hold 5 get 6 climb 7 hands
8 behind

25.5 *Possible answers:*

Check your answers with your teacher or another good speaker of English if you are not sure whether they are correct or not.
There isn't much of a career ladder in my profession.
Several people got the sack from my workplace last year.
The staff that are left are now up to their ears in work.
They certainly have their work cut out for them.
The shake-up has offered management opportunities for some up-and-coming workers.
My working day is very rarely run-of-the-mill.

Unit 26

26.1

Time	**Place**
by leaps and bounds	all over the place
drag your feet	left, right and centre
fast and furious	on the spot (when it means *in the same place*)
get a move on	the word spread
step by step	
on the spot (when it means *immediately*)	

26.2 1 h 5 g
2 e 6 d
3 f 7 c
4 a 8 b

26.3 1 b) 2 c) 3 a) 4 a) 5 a)

26.4
1 Yes, because she would be complimenting you on your rapid progress.
2 No, because the speaker finds your behaviour seriously worrying.
3 To hurry.
4 No, it is criminals.
5 You may drag your feet when you are tired (in the literal meaning of the phrase) but, as an idiom, you drag your feet when you are reluctant to do something.
6 Thrillers tend to be fast and furious whereas love stories tend to be much more slow-moving.
7 Yes, because it suggests that it is successful from the very beginning.
8 You can keep a diary.
9 Very untidy.
10 Very excited or angry.

Unit 27

27.1
1 a slip of the tongue
2 taking the mick/mickey
3 lost for words
4 small talk
5 a pack of lies

27.2
1 I didn't know what to say. I **was (completely) lost for words.**
2 Not one word of his story was true. It **was (all) a pack of lies.**
3 I didn't mean to say it; it **was a slip of the tongue.**
4 I didn't men to offend her. I was just **taking the mick/mickey.**
5 It wasn't a very serious conversation, just **small talk.**

27.3
1 She's had a big personal problem. We **should not make light of** it.
2 He told me he had studied maths at Harvard, **but it (just) didn't ring true.**
3 She said she was a princess who had lost all her money and position in a revolution. **That's a likely story!**
4 She has to get up at 5 a.m. and drive 50 miles to work every day. **It's no joke / laughing matter.**
5 I said thought she should get herself a boyfriend. It was **an off-the-cuff** remark.

27.4

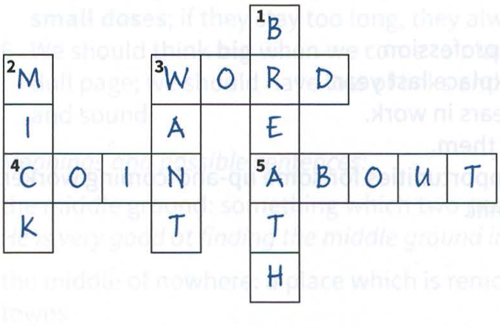

Unit 28

28.1 1 c 4 a
2 d 5 b
3 e

28.2 1 Sofia will never **take no for an answer**.
2 Joss always **speaks his mind**.
3 Sara **always seems to miss the point** (**of** what we're trying to say to her).
4 She **repeated word for word** everything the teacher said to her.
5 I tried to tell her, but it was impossible to **get a word in edgeways**.

28.3 1 The future of the project is very uncertain. No one knows if it will continue.
2 Probably not. The sentence means it is not in her character / not typical of her to help.
3 Small print is usually found at the bottom of contracts, insurance policies, advertisements, etc. We can also say *fine print*.
4 Probably not. If you reply 'That's a matter of opinion', you usually do not agree with the other person.
5 Not necessarily an official language, but a language that people use in everyday business and for communication between groups who have different first languages.

28.4 1 loud 2 tall order 3 beside 4 matter-of-fact

Unit 29

29.1 1 It's the last straw (that breaks the camel's back).
2 Birds of a feather (flock together).
3 Too many cooks (spoil the broth).
4 While the cat's away, (the mice will play).
5 There's no point / It's no good crying over spilt milk.
6 Don't put all your eggs in one basket.

29.2 1 Many hands make light work.
2 Birds of a feather (flock together).
3 Absence makes the heart grow fonder.

29.3 1 **Take care of the pennies/pence** and the pounds will take care of themselves.
2 **The grass is always greener** on the other side of the fence.
3 **All work and no play** makes Jack a dull boy.
4 **People who live in glass houses** shouldn't throw stones.
5 **A bird in the hand** is worth two in the bush.
6 **Birds of a feather** flock together.
7 **While the cat's away**, the mice will play.
8 **It's the last straw** that breaks the camel's back.

29.4 1 Absence makes the heart grow fonder.
2 Blood is thicker than water.
3 Many hands make light work.
4 Actions speak louder than words.
5 There's no point / It's no good crying over spilt milk.
6 A bird in the hand (is worth two in the bush).

Unit 30

30.1 1 mind 2 memory 3 mind 4 memory 5 mind 6 mind
7 mind 8 memory 9 mind 10 memory

30.2 1 I don't think I know him, but his name rings **a bell**.
2 What is the word for it? I can't remember it. Oh dear, it's on **the tip of my tongue**.
3 If I try, I should be able to remember the recipe for you. Let me rack **my brains**.
4 Try not to interrupt his train **of thought**.
5 My son is much more adventurous than I was. At his age the thought of travelling abroad alone would never **have crossed my mind**.

30.3
1 Out of sight, out of mind.
2 rack your brains, on the tip of your tongue
3 push
4 Thinking hard feels like stretching your brain, making it do something that is difficult for it to do.
5 leisurely walk
6 jump
7 carry
8 ring a bell

30.4
1 came/sprang
2 went
3 slipped
4 racked
5 came/sprang
6 jogged

Unit 31

31.1
1 d
2 b
3 a
4 c
5 e

31.2
1 This car really is **the shape of things to come**.
2 People have been doing this every spring **since the year dot**.
3 A scientist is **on the threshold of** discovering a cure for cancer.
4 I've only been to a couple of lessons. **It's early days yet**.
5 Max is spending money **like there's no tomorrow**.

31.3
1 **It's only a matter of time before we** discover life on other planets.
2 **At the end of the day**, you can never trust a politician.
3 I never learnt the piano as a child, so I'm **making up for lost time** by taking lessons.
4 **In the short term**, the economic situation looks good, but **in the long term**, the outlook is not so good.
5 This bicycle **has seen better days**. I should really get a new one.
6 Could you use this computer **for the time being** till the new one arrives?
7 It's **a sign of the times** that you can't speak to a real human being when you telephone the bank. All you get is an automatic voice.
8 This milk **is out of date**. I'll throw it away and open a new carton.
9 It costs a lot of money now, but **in the long run** it will be a good investment, I'm sure.

31.4
1 in, b) 2 before, b) 3 for, a) 4 of, a) 5 of, b)

Unit 32

32.1
1 It runs like **clockwork**.
2 We set off at the crack **of dawn**.
3 We were working against **the clock**.
4 I've had enough. Let's call **it a day**.
5 It happens this way nine **times out of ten**.

32.2
1 c
2 d
3 e
4 a
5 b

32.3

1 **from** scratch
2 once **in** a lifetime
3 once and **for** all
4 **from** time **to** time
5 work **against** the clock
6 nine times **out of** ten

32.4 *Possible answers:*

Check your answers with your teacher or another good speaker of English if you are not sure whether they are correct or not.

1 I'd lost the notes for my essay, so I had to start **from scratch**.
2 When I was offered the chance to study in the USA, I knew such an opportunity would come along only **once in a lifetime**.
3 The government should do something to solve the problem of illegal drugs **once and for all**.
4 I see my cousins **from time to time**, but not regularly.
5 Rescue teams are working **against the clock** to search for survivors of the earthquake.
6 **Nine times out of ten** if I buy something one day, I'll see the same thing cheaper in another shop the very next day.

32.5

1 B: Well, **off and on**. (Or, slightly more formally, **from time to time**.)
2 B: No, I think we should do it now, **once and for all**.
3 B: Well, we can try, but **nine times out of ten** he's too busy to meet anyone.
4 B: Well, we'll just have to work **against the clock** to get it finished by then.
5 B: No, I've had enough. Let's **call it a day**.

Unit 33

33.1

1 f
2 h
3 a
4 e
5 b
6 g
7 c
8 d

33.2

1 You'll be fine working for someone like that – he's **the salt of the earth**.
2 Unfortunately, **my advice fell on stony ground.**
3 Unfortunately, her angry words have only **added fuel to the fire/flames**.
4 I think Rosie must be in **hot water** – the boss has asked to see her at once.
5 Noah **is** really **out of his depth in** his new job.
6 Spreading rumours like that is **playing with fire**.
7 **Pluck a number out of the air** and multiply it by 3.
8 The police were unable to **run the escaped convicts to ground**.

33.3

1 The news of their divorce spread like wildfire.
2 I'm between the devil and the deep blue sea.
3 There is no smoke without fire.
4 Don't say anything in the heat of the moment.
5 I hate the way he blows hot and cold.
6 I was thrown in at the deep end when I started university.

33.4

1 play with fire
2 pluck a number out of the air
3 a drop in the ocean

33.5 You may give slightly different answers here, but basically earth seems to represent being practical and natural, air seems to represent vagueness and uncertainty, water seems to represent difficulty and fire seems to represent anger or passion.

Unit 34

34.1 1 D 2 B 3 A 4 C

34.2
1 *White*-collar workers work in offices and *blue*-collar workers do physical work, usually in factories.
2 You are *green* with envy.
3 You are *blue* in the face.
4 It is / You are in the *red*.
5 You are given the *green* light.

34.3
1 I was absolutely **green** with **envy** when she won a trip to Los Angeles.
2 I'm 750 pounds **in** the **red**, and the bank has asked me to pay it back immediately.
3 The **blue-collar** workers are on strike, but the office staff are still working.
4 You can talk to her till you're **blue** in the **face**; she won't listen.
5 If the city authorities **give** the **green** light to the new conservation project, it will begin next year.

34.4
1 I want to see a contract **in black and white**, not just an informal agreement.
2 I wanted to apply for a visa, but a friend told me there **is a lot of / too much red tape**, so I've decided to forget it.
3 My new house has a big garden, but I **don't have / haven't got green fingers**, so I'll probably never do any gardening.
4 She was **caught red-handed** stealing food from the school kitchen.
5 He's always introducing **red herrings** into the discussion.

Unit 35

35.1
1 in pocket
2 roll up your sleeves
3 take your hat off to someone
4 have big shoes to fill
5 wear lots of different hats

35.2
1 d
2 f
3 a
4 b
5 c
6 e

35.3
1 Paul's speech was really long and not very interesting. He really bored the **pants** off everyone!
2 The exam is tomorrow? You'd better roll up your **sleeves** and start studying right now.
3 Gary promised to pay me back for the hotel room, but he never did. Now I'm £80 **out of** pocket.
4 I just hope I can be as good a teacher as Mr Roberts. I have some big shoes to **fill**.
5 Julia is training for a marathon at the same time as writing a book. I really take my **hat** off to her.

35.4
1 Anna told me that she sold our parents' car for £500, but now I find out **that she was paid £700 and pocketed the difference.** *Or* ... **that she pocketed £200.**
2 Even after paying all of our expenses, **we're £75 in pocket**.
3 My sister thought she **had her driving test in the bag**, but then she hit another car!
4 The charity asked people to **dig deep into their pockets** to help build a new hospital.
5 I called Beth and she came **at the drop of a hat**. She didn't even ask what the problem was.

Unit 36

36.1
1 wide of the mark
2 take the plunge
3 lay/put your cards on the table
4 back to square one
5 when the chips are down
6 play ball

36.2
1 g
2 f
3 e
4 c
5 d
6 a
7 b

36.3
1 Let's ask Pete for advice – he's usually **on the ball**.
2 The government always tries to **pass the buck** when there are economic problems, saying the previous regime is to blame.
3 I'd like you each to tell us why you have decided to do a creative writing course; Marie, would you **start the ball rolling**, please?
4 Applicants all have to agree to the same conditions for the interview in order to ensure **a level playing field**.
5 No one asked him to help – he did it **off his own bat**.
6 If you keep your things tidy, the others may **follow suit**.
7 It is still **on the cards** that I'll get a contract for the job.
8 He's been very frank and has **put his cards on the table**; now we'll have to do the same.
9 He claims he can speak fluent Japanese; let's **call his bluff** and invite him to dinner with our Japanese guests.
10 The manager **threw us a curveball** when he told us that our budget would be cut next year.

Unit 37

37.1
1 a dark horse
2 a party animal
3 a guinea pig
4 a cold fish

37.2
1 get/have/take the bit between your teeth
2 make a beeline for
3 a lone wolf
4 your bark is worse than your bite
5 chase your tail
6 make a (real) pig of yourself

37.3
1 Lucy: No, he's a bit of **a lone wolf**.
2 Chris: Busy! It's ridiculous! I try to keep up with things, but I'm just **chasing my tail**.
3 Mike: Yes, he won't give up. He's really got **the bit between his teeth**.
4 Emma: Yes, I **made a (real) pig of myself**. I feel so full now!
5 Eve: Oh, don't worry about him. His **bark is worse than his bite**.
6 Joe: Oh yeah, he always **makes a beeline** for the prettiest girl in the room.

37.4
1 Big Joe is quite harmless really, although he looks tough. He wouldn't **hurt a fly**.
2 I already know about Kate getting divorced. A **little bird** told me.
3 I hate making a speech to a big audience. I always get **butterflies** in my **stomach**.
4 It's a very unusual school. The pupils are **given** free **rein** to do just what they like.
5 I really got the travel **bug** after I went on a trekking holiday to Nepal. I can't wait to go away again.
6 I'd love to be a **fly** on the **wall** when Nick tells the boss he's resigning.

Unit 38

38.1
1 There's **not (enough) room to swing a cat** at my house.
2 I'll let you know by **snail mail**.
3 Peter **has let the cat out of the bag**.
4 The economy is **going to the dogs**.
5 The office staff were **running round like headless chickens**.

38.2
1 put the cat among the pigeons
2 a can of worms
3 like water off a duck's back

38.3
1 b) 2 a) 3 c)

38.4
1 the bag 2 feelers 3 the law of the jungle

38.5 1 take the bull by the **horns**
(meaning: act decisively, and face a difficult or challenging situation in a confident way)
2 kill two birds with one **stone**
(meaning: produce two useful results by just doing one action)
3 at a snail's **pace**
(meaning: incredibly slowly)
4 like a bear with a sore **head**
(meaning: someone is behaving in a very bad-tempered or irritable way)
5 a **dog**'s breakfast
(meaning: a mess; something that has been done very badly)

38.6 I was trying to finish my essay for my English class by the end of the week, but it all seemed to be going **at a snail's pace** and I was not very motivated. So I decided to **take the bull by the horns**. I stayed up until after midnight every day for four days and worked on my essay. I was tired in the mornings, and went round **like a bear with a sore head** all day, but, in the end I managed to **kill two birds with one stone**: I finished the essay and I read a number of important books I should have read weeks ago. My last essay was a bit of **a dog's breakfast**, but I'm hoping this one will get a better grade.

Unit 39

39.1 1 She was looking **daggers** at me last night. I wonder what I've done to upset her?
2 Her last remark was so hurtful, especially as I was already upset. I think she was just trying to **twist** the **knife** even further.
3 I really think you should **bite** the bullet, and go and speak to him.
4 She **stuck** to her **guns** and didn't sign the contract. So they've changed it.
5 You're **jumping** the gun. Wait till we know whose fault it was before you complain.
6 Freddy really puts the **knife** in sometimes. He is capable of saying such cruel things.

39.2 1 You're fighting a losing battle trying to persuade the teacher to tell you the exam questions before the exam takes place.
2 When it comes to the crunch, I'll be there to support you.
3 I'm my own worst enemy when it comes to trying to save money.
4 You'll be in the firing line in your new job.
5 I'd like to have a shot at bungee-jumping one day if I ever get the chance.
6 (If I were you, I'd / I think you should) hold fire before you send that letter.

39.3 Taurus: Someone you thought was a good friend will say something very hurtful today, and later on will make it even worse / say something even more hurtful. Stay calm and don't lose your temper.

Gemini: Two people you like and respect will quarrel today, and you'll be caught in the middle / between the two of them. Try to stay neutral, or you'll risk losing a good friend.

Capricorn: Someone close to you will try to tell you what to do, but it's time you acted independently / took control of your own life, so don't be afraid to make your own decisions.

Virgo: You've always thought of yourself as a strong, determined person, but someone discovers a weakness of yours / your weak point and makes life difficult for you.

39.4 1 b) 2 c) 3 a) 4 c)

Unit 40

40.1 1 It's the best thing since sliced bread!
2 It provides the bread and butter.
3 I was left with a sour taste in my mouth!
4 He had egg on his face!
5 You can't have your cake and eat it.

40.2 1 bitter 2 whetted 3 fruit 4 flavour 5 date 6 cake
7 tooth 8 mouth

40.3
1 have a sweet tooth
2 be the best/greatest thing since sliced bread
3 pass / be past your sell-by date
4 have egg on your face
5 bear fruit
6 make your mouth water / whet your appetite

40.4 *Possible answers:*

1 **Piano teaching** is her bread and butter though she still hopes to succeed as an actress.
2 **The smell of fresh strawberries** always makes my mouth water.
3 **Taylor Swift** seems to be flavour of the month in the pop music world at the moment.
4 Kate had egg on her face when **she failed to recognise the managing director of her company**.
5 For me **e-mail** is the best thing since sliced bread.
6 I hope that **all our work on this project** will bear fruit.

Unit 41

41.1
1 Airlines **drive** me round the **bend**! You can never get simple information from them when you phone them up.
2 I don't have any extreme views about anything. I'm quite **middle-of**-the-**road**.
3 I didn't like her at all, and I hope our **paths** never **cross** again, to be honest.
4 It's a good idea to change your job every few years. It's very easy to get stuck **in a rut** if you're not careful.
5 This video's **right** up your **street/alley**. It's all about how violins are made.

41.2
1 Well, it's been nice talking to you. Maybe **our paths will cross again somewhere**.
2 That TV programme about birds is **right up your street/alley**. You should watch it.
3 Liam is fairly **middle-of-the-road** when it comes to environmental issues.
4 The photocopier **drives me round the bend**. It always breaks down just when you need it most.
5 I gave up my job and went round the world. I felt I had **got stuck in a rut**.

41.3
1 False. It means they live in a remote/isolated place.
2 True.
3 True.
4 False. It means something is very difficult and problematic.
5 False. It means they are following a wrong or misguided idea or course of action.

41.4
1 It's time to hit the road.
2 The bus is the easiest way to get from A to B round here / in this/my area.
3 The Imperial Hotel has (really) gone downhill. Don't go there.
4 I think you're on the right track.
5 The new rock music festival has really put my/our town on the map.
6 I think my country is at a crossroads.

Unit 42

42.1
1 c 5 d
2 f 6 a
3 g 7 e
4 b

42.2
1 A decisive person will come down on one side or the other.
2 The student wants to work there in the future, and perhaps would like a full-time job in that company after graduating.
3 People often burn the candle at both ends before an exam when they are studying hard.

4 You're more likely to say that something important, something which has significant consequences, is brought home to you.
5 Probably pleased because imitation is said to be 'the sincerest form of flattery' – though in some circumstances people can be annoyed by being copied.
6 You are being honest because you are keeping them informed.
7 You feel irritable all day.
8 They are in an angry mood.

42.3
1 get / put me in the picture
2 make yourself at home
3 fly off the handle
4 as safe as houses

42.4
1 It will take some time before the impact of the new legislation **comes home to / is brought home to** the person in the street.
2 Sophie will make herself ill if she goes on **burning the candle at both ends**.
3 Before you take over the project, I'll **put you (fully) in the picture**.
4 The police think that DNA testing **will hold the key to** proving who the murderer must have been.
5 Jim **got out of bed on the wrong side this morning**.
6 The government can't **sit on the fence** for ever.
7 Rob **flies off the handle / hits the roof/ceiling** at the slightest provocation these days.
8 If you want to get fit, why don't you **take a leaf out of Katie's book** and join a gym?

42.5 *Possible sentences:*

Check your answers with your teacher or another good speaker of English if you are not sure whether they are correct or not.

What's the matter with Melanie? She seems to have got out of bed on the wrong side.
Please make yourself at home while I go and get ready.
My sister's burning the candle at both ends at the moment – she's got exams soon.
I wasn't at work last week. Can you put me in the picture, please?
I love being at my brother's. I really feel at home there.
Why don't you take a leaf out of Sandra's book and get a weekend job?

Unit 43

43.1 1 came 2 on 3 hit 4 find 5 kept

43.2

1 d	4 f
2 e	5 b
3 a	6 c

43.3
1 You could feel a sense of fear **in the air** when the planes came overhead.
2 It really is **a breath of fresh air** for us that the company has decided to move to London. We are all bored with working in a small town.
3 Sara **came (back) down to earth with a bang** when the bank manager told her she had spent all her money.
4 Things are **up in the air** at the moment. I'll let you know when a decision is made.

43.4 *Possible answers:*

Check your answers with your teacher or another good speaker of English if you are not sure whether they are correct or not.
1 My father was a very down-to-earth person. He always had a practical solution to problems. Sometimes I think our political leaders are living on another planet! They really do not know how ordinary people live, and what their day-to-day problems are.
2 I felt over the moon when I heard that one of my books was a best-seller.
3 An old friend I had not seen for 15 years was on a cycling holiday and she passed through the village where I live, and called in to say hello without any warning.
4 I'm in my element when I'm playing music on my guitar or on my fiddle (violin) with friends.

43.5
1 If you are **shaking like a leaf,** it means you are trembling because you are afraid or nervous. (Leaves often tremble in the breeze or wind.)
2 I **slept like a log** means I slept very well/deeply. (A *log* is a very solid, heavy piece of wood.)
3 If you **go with the flow**, you let events carry you along, without making any decisions yourself. (The *flow* here suggests a river flowing along and carrying things with it.)
4 If it **goes against the grain** for you to say or do something, it means it is not in your character, or it is against your basic beliefs and principles to say/do it. (The *grain* means the natural lines you see in wood. If you want to cut wood with a saw, it is more difficult to cut it against the grain than along the grain.)

Unit 44

44.1
1 It could be both, but the phrase is more likely to be used idiomatically meaning an opportunity.
2 Probably happy because it was easy.
3 Yes, you are, because you won't be able to go back to how things were.
4 Cheer them up because they are miserable.
5 If you're overworked.
6 To show you the ropes.
7 They'll probably be annoyed with you – unless they also want change.
8 Helping them.

44.2
1 same   2 plain   3 decks   4 sailing   5 push   6 doldrums
7 oar   8 clear

44.3
1 d   4 e
2 a   5 b
3 f   6 c

44.4
1 Leave things as they are – it's better not to **put/stick your oar in / rock the boat**.
2 Everything must seem strange at first, but you'll soon **learn the ropes**.
3 Finish your course before you go travelling – there's no point in **burning your boats/bridges**.
4 Parents usually try to **steer a middle course** between leniency and strictness.
5 Sara's very miserable – do you know why she's **in the doldrums**?
6 The new boy is bound to be feeling **(all) at sea** on his first day at school – perhaps you can help.
7 Things are not working out – let's **change tack / try a different tack**.
8 I hate job interviews – I'm always **a quivering/nervous wreck** before them.

Unit 45

45.1
1 D   2 A   3 C   4 B

45.2
1 B: Yes, it really **put/threw a spanner in the works**.
2 B: Yes, he seems to be **back-pedalling**.
3 B: Yes, he absolutely **blew a fuse/gasket**.
4 B: Yes, everything seems to be just quietly **ticking over**.
5 B: Yes, I think we **got our wires/lines crossed**.
6 B: Yes, it's probably a good idea to **give her a buzz**.

45.3
1 in the pipeline
2 get into gear
3 a back-seat driver

45.4
1 It took us a long time to get into gear.
2 Mark is a back-seat driver.
3 There are plans in the pipeline for a new railway.

45.5
1 on   2 off   3 in   4 over   5 on

Unit 46

46.1
1 be music to my ears
2 make a song and dance about something
3 the curtain has fallen on
4 be in the spotlight
5 sound like a broken record

46.2
1 The bedroom looks a bit dull; maybe we could **jazz it up** with some colourful wallpaper.
2 Katy didn't want to work at the market at first, but she soon **changed her tune** when she realised there would be free food.
3 The ideas are good, but you may need to spend a little bit more time **fine-tuning** all the details.
4 The news that the government had decided to lower property taxes was **music to my ears**.

46.3
1 c 4 a
2 f 5 b
3 e 6 d

46.4
1 My daughter started crying on the bus. She really **made a spectacle of herself**.
2 After the latest scandal, the new Prime Minister is constantly **in the spotlight**.
3 **After the curtain fell / had fallen on her successful film career**, she decided to start teaching drama at university.
4 We hope that this new timetable will **set the stage for** a positive start to the school year!

Unit 47

47.1
1 hands 2 thumbs 3 hand 4 finger 5 hand 6 thumb 7 fingers
8 fingers 9 finger 10 hands

47.2
1 I think it would be good if you got some **first-hand** experience of working in a poor country before working for an aid organisation at home.
2 Jake has **washed his hands (completely) of** the club committee. He was so disgusted that he just quit, and never wants to see any of them again.
3 That new power station on the coast **sticks/stands out like a sore thumb**! You'd think they would have built it to blend in with the landscape.
4 Have you ever **tried your hand at** waterskiing? My sister's got a boat if you would like to try.
5 I always have to have the cookbook **to hand** when I'm trying out a new recipe.
6 I'm too busy to play football every week now, but I really should play occasionally, just to **keep my hand in**.
7 She **got her fingers (badly) burnt** on the stock exchange. She bought shares in an Internet company that went bankrupt.

47.3
1 Do you think you could **give** me a hand this weekend? I have to move some furniture to our summer cottage.
2 If you're the sort of person who is prepared to **turn** your hand to anything, you'll be able to earn a lot of money; people are always looking for willing workers.
3 I was very pleased when they told me my project had been given the **thumbs up**.
4 I decided to wash my hands **of** the whole idea and to have no involvement whatsoever in it.
5 If you want to make a good impression at a business meeting, it is a good idea to have all the facts and figures **at** your **fingertips**.
6 To build a horrible concrete bridge over such a beautiful river is terrible. It stands out like a **sore** thumb!

Over to you

We said at the beginning of the unit that hands in idioms often refer to ownership, control, acting and exercising skills. Idioms which follow those ideas include *have something to hand* (have it near you, immediately available), *be a dab hand at something* (be very good / very skilful at something). Fingers seem to touch things. Thumbs seem to be something noticeable, visible, as a signal of something, e.g. *thumb a lift* meaning to hitch-hike. But remember, these are just general guidelines to meaning, and individual idioms may suggest a different kind of meaning, e.g. *be under someone's thumb* meaning to be controlled by them.

Unit 48

48.1
1 d
2 c
3 g
4 h
5 b
6 a
7 e
8 i
9 f

48.2 *Possible answers:*

Check your answers with your teacher or another good speaker of English if you are not sure whether they are correct or not.

1 I usually get itchy feet when the summer holidays start, and long to go away and travel.
2 It took me a few weeks to find my feet in my new job.
3 The dog is always under my feet when I'm getting ready for work.
4 I landed on my feet when I met my friend Pat and he offered me a room in his house. It had been so difficult to find accommodation.
5 I got off on the wrong foot with my teacher and we've never liked each other since the first day.
6 I was rushed off my feet last week, but fortunately things are a bit quieter this week.
7 I often get cold feet after I've made a big decision.
8 I had to learn to stand on my own two feet when I left home and went to university.
9 If I became very rich and famous, I hope I'd always be able to keep both feet on the ground.

48.3
1 I said I would join Tom on the protest march, but then **got cold feet** and didn't go at all.
2 She was **rushed off her feet** in the shop last month, but she's pleased that the business is doing well.
3 He'll have to learn to **stand on his own two feet** now that he's at college and not living at home any more.
4 Rosie and I **got off on the wrong foot** when she first joined the company, but now we're working very well together.
5 **I've got itchy feet** these days. I'd love to go off on a backpacking holiday somewhere.

48.4
1 put your foot in it
2 follow in someone's footsteps
3 keep someone on their toes

48.5
1 True.
2 True.
3 False. They keep you busy / working with all your energy.
4 False. You follow the same course of action as them, for example, you take up the same profession as your mother/father.
5 True.

Unit 49

49.1

A bone of contention

The bare bones

BONE

I have a bone to pick with you

I can feel it in my bones

49.2
1 I **have a bone to pick with you.**
2 This book will give you the **bare bones**, but it doesn't go into great detail.
3 I don't think we should allow the cost to become a **bone of contention (between us)**.
4 There's going to be trouble at work. I can **feel it in my bones**.

49.3 1 c) 2 b) 3 b) 4 a) 5 c) 6 c)

49.4 *Possible answers:*

I think you should **keep Harry at arm's length**, as he can be a very difficult person.
I had to admit I was wrong. I **didn't really have a leg to stand on**, so it was pointless trying to defend my actions.

49.5
1 leg: the idiom means that something is very expensive
2 chance: if you *chance your arm*, you take a risk in order to get something you want

Unit 50

50.1
1 I **can't understand/accept** how much she's changed since she met Joel.
2 Maria will never **attract admiring gazes** in the way that her older sister does.
3 You'll **find it extremely funny** when you see Bill wearing a dinner jacket.
4 Mike hadn't had time to prepare a speech, but he spoke very well **without having made any preparations.**
5 If I were you, I'd **keep a low profile / be as inconspicuous as possible** until the situation improves.
6 Sam wants to use your saw to build a treehouse – you'd better **put a stop to that plan**.
7 My boss **reacted very angrily** just because I asked for an extra day off.
8 It was the first time that Joanna had talked about wanting to work abroad and her father blamed her new boyfriend for **giving her ideas**.

50.2
1 Amy **screamed her head off** when she saw a rat under the table.
2 When the pilot announced that the plane was having engine problems, all the passengers behaved calmly and no one **lost their head**.
3 I'm trying to get him to give up smoking, but I **am / have been banging my head against a brick wall.**
4 You'll easily pass your driving test as long as you **keep your head**.
5 I wish he wouldn't **snap my head off** when I ask him about his work.
6 Jack and Lucy have not been getting on well for some time now, but Jack's rudeness to her last night **brought things to a head** and they had a blazing row.
7 The disagreement over pay **came to a head** at a meeting yesterday.

50.3
1 bite someone's head off
2 keep your head down
3 keep your head above water
4 be banging your head against a brick wall
5 turn heads

50.4 *Possible answers:*

Check your answers with your teacher or another good speaker of English if you are not sure whether they are correct or not.
1 I had my head bitten off by an ex-boss once. It wasn't, I think, because of anything serious that I had done, but was simply because he was having some problems at home at the time.
2 I'd find it hard to keep my head if I was in an emergency situation in an aeroplane.
3 Perhaps the last time I laughed my head off was watching the comedy TV quiz show *Have I got news for you*.
4 Someone tall, dark and handsome might turn my head in the street or someone wearing very striking clothes.
5 Various writers, political figures and pop stars have all, at different times, been criticised for putting ideas into young people's heads.
6 It would depend what its expectations were. It might be pleased that it was not making a loss; on the other hand, it might not be pleased that it was not making a significant profit.

Unit 51

51.1 1 face 2 throat(s) 3 shoulder 4 neck 5 throat 6 neck 7 chest
8 face 9 face 10 hair 11 face

51.2
1 e 5 g
2 h 6 c
3 a 7 d
4 b 8 f

51.3
1 Rose's father didn't **turn** a hair when she told him she was going to get married.
2 I wish my boss would let me get on with my work instead of breathing down **my** neck.
3 You should tell him directly how you feel rather than just giving him the cold **shoulder**.
4 Nina is very worried about her husband's illness, but she's putting **a** brave face on it.
5 Keep your hair **on**!
6 If you take what they say **at** face value, you'll soon get disappointed.
7 Having to do homework is such **a pain** in the neck!
8 I have to tell you a terrible secret. I'll go mad if I don't get it **off** my chest soon.

51.4
1 get it off your chest
2 ram something down someone's throat
3 put a brave face on something
4 tear/pull your hair out
5 breathe down someone's neck
6 give someone the cold shoulder

Unit 52

52.1
1 B: Don't worry, if it's just over the limit, they usually **turn a blind eye**.
2 B: I don't know. Let's wave and see if we can **catch her eye**.
3 B: No, not really, we just don't **see eye to eye**.
4 B: Yes, it's been **on the blink** for a while now.
5 B: Yes, I learnt a lot of things. It was a real **eye-opener**.
6 B: No, she didn't **bat an eyelid**.

52.2 1 eyes 2 eye 3 eyes 4 eyes 5 eyes

52.3
1 An accident can happen **in the blink of an eye**.
2 His behaviour at the meeting **raised a few eyebrows**.
3 You should always **have/keep one eye** on your chances of promotion when you take up a new job.
4 A very strange sight **caught my eye** as I was driving along the motorway yesterday.

52.4 Lines 1, 5, 6 and 11 use the word *eye* in its literal sense, meaning 'the organ we see with'. The rest of the lines use *eye* in idioms, many of which are on the left-hand page. But note the following:

keep an eye out for (lines 2 and 9): be careful and watch for something/someone
in your mind's eye (line 3): in your imagination
see someone (or something) out of the corner of your eye (line 12): see them without looking straight in their direction
If you do not know this last group of idioms, make a note of them in your vocabulary notebook.

Unit 53

53.1
1 False. It means they can play without music.
2 True.
3 True.
4 False. It means they annoy or irritate you.
5 True.
6 False. It means people tell one another. The idiom is often used to contrast with reading about something or seeing an advertisement for something.

53.2
1 She said some very hurtful things to me, but I just **did not respond/react**, because I didn't want to show her I was upset.
2 I can't really advise you on how to behave at the interview. Just **respond to the situation / act according to your intuition**, and I'm sure you'll be great.
3 The government **says/claims it believes in** low taxes, but then puts up indirect taxes without people realising it.
4 We offered him a holiday at our house near the beach, but he **refused/rejected it**.
5 He said, 'Do you want to hear some gossip about Tom and Lily?' I said, 'Oh yes! Tell me. I'm **very eager/keen to hear**.'
6 I wish you wouldn't **interfere in** other people's affairs.
7 The table was piled high with **delicious-looking** desserts.

53.3
1 There's no point talking to her. Everything just **goes in** one ear and **out** the other.
2 I just **couldn't believe my ears** when they told me I had won first prize.
3 When I knew how bad the situation was I just **gritted** my teeth and decided to continue fighting.
4 The name of the village where he lives is on the **tip** of my tongue. Give me a few minutes and I'll remember it.
5 What she said is simply not true. She's lying **through** her **teeth**.
6 The sight of all those delicious pizzas is **making my mouth water**, but I'm on a diet, so I shouldn't really have any.

53.4
1 b) 2 c) 3 b) 4 c)

Unit 54

54.1
1 e
2 g
3 d
4 a
5 c
6 b
7 h
8 f

54.2
1 My **heart missed/skipped a beat** when the handsome man smiled at me.
2 When we are on holiday, the children can build sandcastles **to their hearts' content** while we lie on the beach and read.
3 Jake used to support the Green Party, but he's **had a change of heart**.
4 If you ask Rob to help you, I'm sure he'll **put his heart and soul into it** and the job will be finished in no time.
5 It's not a good idea to **bare your heart/soul / pour your heart out / open your heart** to a journalist unless you want your secrets to become public knowledge.
6 Your dissertation is nearly finished, so don't **lose heart** now.
7 It **breaks my heart / makes my heart sink** to see my brother making such a fool of himself.
8 My **heart sank** when I realised pay day was still a week away.

54.3
1 was determined to get
2 working with great energy and enthusiasm
3 have a frank interview
4 told him exactly how she felt
5 with increasing discomfort
6 telling him all her secret hopes
7 you certainly have very good intentions
8 we are similar people
9 Don't despair
10 took what he said very seriously
11 memorise it

54.4
1 He might set his heart on setting up his own guitar group, seeing a famous guitarist in concert, etc.
2 You do it a lot.
3 She is like you.
4 You are praising them a little, although you are also implying that you think their behaviour is not totally appropriate.

5 If your heart misses a beat, you might be all of these except sick.
6 She opens her heart to her best friend, her diary, etc.
7 She might have fallen in love with someone else and she might then cancel the wedding.
8 The break-up of a relationship might break a young lover's heart.

Unit 55

55.1
1 e
2 g
3 a
4 h
5 d
6 b
7 c
8 f

55.2 1 brain 2 mind 3 gut 4 mind 5 guts 6 brains 7 blood 8 mind

55.3
1 The government are rather worried about **the brain drain**.
2 I like both shirts. I can't **make up my mind** which one to buy.
3 Don't think too long about the question. Just tell me your **gut feeling/reaction**.
4 Why do people enjoy films that are full of **blood and guts**?
5 Don't decide until you know all the facts. It's best to **have/keep an open mind** until then.
6 I know you must be worried, but I'm sure we can **put/set your mind at rest**.
7 I've had that awful song **on the brain** ever since hearing it on the radio this morning.
8 Getting him to tell me anything about his work is like **getting blood out of a stone**.

55.4 These seem to be the basic meanings of these parts of the body in idioms – although some of the idioms have moved quite a long way from these concepts and indeed blood in particular may have several different sets of associations for the English speaker.

mind – thinking
blood – emotion (though is also used in idioms with the physical meaning of blood)
brain – intelligence
guts – intestines or your insides

Unit 56

56.1
1 It almost certainly isn't tidy and your boss doesn't like this because he/she is always nagging you to tidy it up.
2 No, it's got worse because you've offended that person.
3 They do naughty things that they don't want the teacher to see.
4 They want you to do them a favour of some kind.
5 Yes, they are.
6 Revision is more important.

56.2 1 beyond 2 lorry 3 hand 4 leant/leaned/bent 5 stab 6 burner 7 door 8 see

56.3
1 e
2 h
3 a
4 g
5 b
6 d
7 c
8 f

56.4
1 Matt **put/got Kelly's back up** by telling her she was too young to go out with the others.
2 **You scratch my back and I'll scratch yours.**
3 Vineeta **leant/bent over backwards** to give her grandmother an enjoyable holiday.
4 The teacher **is always on my back** about my handwriting.
5 Let's **put any discussion of the merger on the back burner** until after next week's meeting.
6 My dream is to go off to a cottage **in the back of beyond** and work on a novel.
7 Joe went off to join the navy **without a backward glance**.
8 Quick! We can leave now **while Sasha's back is turned**.

Unit 57

57.1 1 My parents always go **to great lengths** to make any new friend of mine feel welcome if I bring them home.
2 You've come **a long way** since the last time we played tennis. You must have been practising hard.
3 Georgina and I go **back a long way**. I've known her since 2002.
4 My teacher at school always told me I would go **a long way**, but she was wrong; I'm stuck in a very boring job and don't earn much.
5 I'd be prepared to go **to any lengths** to get that job. I've never wanted anything so much in all my life.
6 It's time to take **a long, hard look** at our personal finances. I think we're spending too much.

57.2 *Possible answers:*
1 (You've done very well.) I think you'll go a long way.
2 My best friend (name) and I go back a long way.
3 The family I stayed with when I was learning (name of language) went to great lengths to make me feel at home.
4 You've come a long way since the last time I heard you play.
5 I think we should take a long, hard look at our plan to start a business.
6 I'd go to any lengths to persuade the owner to sell me that beautiful flat.

57.3 1 Yes, long time no see.
2 How long is a piece of string?
3 It's a long story.
4 All right, to cut a long story short, none of the members agreed with any of the committee's proposals.

57.4 1 a long-winded lecture
2 a long face
3 a long haul
4 a list as long as your arm

Unit 58

58.1 1 I hope I'm **in** line **for** a pay rise this year.
2 You must read **between** the lines of her letter to understand what she's saying.
3 I'd like to design a house **along/on** the lines of a place I read about.
4 I'll help with the play, but I draw the line **at** taking a speaking role.
5 There's a fine line **between** generosity and extravagance.
6 It's uncanny how we always seem to be thinking **along/on** the same lines.
7 You were quite **out of** line. Don't do it again!
8 When our house purchase is agreed, we'll sign **on** the dotted line.
9 It's time to draw a line **under** this sad occurrence and to make a fresh start.
10 Would you mind having a look at my essay plan and telling me whether you think I'm going **along/on** the right lines or not?

58.2 1 A: Lisa considered that her previous relationship with Rob was now totally over.
B: Lisa would not consider starting a relationship with Rob.
2 A: David's actions were quite inappropriate.
B: David's actions were appropriate.
3 A: Rebecca said she'd try to write to me.
B: Rebecca said she'd try to think more deeply about what was meant by the words that had been written.
4 A: Accountancy is Matt's profession.
B: Matt is likely to get the accountancy job at our company.

58.3 1 e
2 d
3 h
4 f

5 g 7 c
6 a 8 b

58.4
1 Please **drop me a line** as often as you can.
2 What's Natasha's **line of work**?
3 What Paul did was totally **out of line**.
4 My dream is to open a school **along the lines of** the one I attended myself as a child.
5 **(In some ways) there is a very fine/thin line between** genius **and** insanity.
6 **There's a fine/thin line between doing enough exercise and doing too much.** Where **would you draw the line**?
7 Let's now try to **draw a line under** our previous disagreements.
8 Marcus **is in line for** a new company car this year.
9 We'd like to visit you in Australia, but the **bottom line** is that we just can't afford it.

58.5 *Possible sentences:*

Check your answers with your teacher or another good speaker of English if you are not sure whether they are correct or not.

My colleague isn't speaking to me – I think I said something out of line.
I asked Isobel to drop me a line while she was away.
The bottom line is that we must get rid of hooliganism from football.
I work for an insurance company. What's your line of work?
Reading between the lines, I think my mum's pleased my brother has left home.
I read through the document before I signed on the dotted line.

Unit 59

59.1
1 B: Yes, he's been **out of action** for a while now.
2 B: Yes, I agree. She should learn to **act her age**.
3 B: Yes, she's **all talk and no action**.
4 B: Yes, it's time **he got his act together**.
5 B: Yes, it's a very delicate **balancing act**.

59.2

1 T	O	2 G	E	T	3 H	E	R
		O			I		
		A			V		
4 P	U	T		5 G	E	T	

59.3
1 He was stealing a car, and the police caught him **in the act (just as he was getting into it)**.
2 I was out of the team for three weeks with a knee problem, but now **I'm back in action (again)**.
3 I think it's time we **followed/took a different course of action.**
4 The film industry should **clean up its act** and stop making violent films.
5 Everyone wants **to get in on the act / get a slice/piece of the action** now that we are making a lot of money.
6 Our office is **a hive of activity** these days as we prepare for the launch of our new products.

Unit 60

60.1
1 good 2 bad 3 better 4 best 5 worst, worst 6 best
7 best, bad 8 bad, worse

60.2
1 Sarah always has to go one better than everyone else.
2 Conditions seem to be going from bad to worse.
3 The weather was bad, but we tried to make the best of a bad job.
4 I nearly told her the truth, but I thought better of it.

5 As Mark is very ambitious, he will never settle for second best.
6 Rose tried to learn to ski, but soon gave it up as a bad job.
7 If the worst comes to the worst, we can always ask Dad for a loan.
8 Whatever happens, happens for the best.

60.3
1 No, he isn't.
2 The boy might, for example, be rude to the important visitors.
3 They are trying to have a bigger and more impressive car.
4 He's broken his leg.
5 He might find he can enjoy the sympathy of his friends and the attentions of the nurses as well as the chance to relax and watch TV.

60.4 *Possible answers:*

Check your answers with your teacher or another good speaker of English if you are not sure whether they are correct or not.

I wanted to tell my boss what I thought of him, but fortunately I thought better of it.
I did a course in teaching English because I thought it would stand me in good stead if I needed to work when I was abroad.
I didn't really want to leave the school I had taught in for years, but it certainly all turned out for the best.
I admire the way my friend decided to make the best of a bad job when she was made to take early retirement – she decided to take up painting and also began to write the novel she had always been planning.
The situation wasn't easy in January, but it has certainly gone from bad to worse throughout the year.
Anna has been in a bad way ever since her children grew up and left home.

Unit 61

61.1
1 The Minister cleverly cut the ground **from under** her opponents' feet by announcing new tax cuts.
2 He got **in on** the ground floor with e-commerce and became a millionaire when it took off.
3 Good hotels are thin **on** the ground in the smaller cities; you have to go to the capital to get hotels of international standard.
4 The project has got **off** the ground quicker and more smoothly than we expected.
5 Part-time work suits me **down to** the ground at the moment as I'm trying to study at the same time.

61.2
1 I'm afraid **good cafés are thin on the ground** in the town centre.
2 Working from home **suits me down to the ground** as I can look after our small child at the same time.
3 If you join our company now, I promise **you are getting in on the ground floor** of some really exciting developments.
4 Reducing the price now will **cut the ground from under the feet of** our competitors, because they will not be able to do the same.
5 It's a good idea, but I don't know if it will ever **get off the ground**.

61.3
1 She **held/stood her ground** and had a meeting with the boss to tell her everything.
2 We **have a lot of common ground**, so we need to discuss how we can work together.
3 I think **you are on dangerous ground if you** raise the subject of longer holidays at the staff meeting.
4 English Language schools **are thick on the ground** in the capital city.
5 The idea that public transport is better for the environment is **gaining ground**.

61.4 *Possible answers:*
1 They do not appear in public and hide from the media.
2 So embarrassed you wish you could disappear / were invisible.
3 They refuse to change their position or opinion in a dispute/argument.

4 To shift your ground.
5 (My) stamping/stomping ground. It means a place where you spend a lot of time.
6 It means that they have probably been to that country and made useful contacts for you or informed people about your company, so that it will be easier for you to launch your product.

Unit 62

62.1

	animal	right adjective	example sentence
1	bat	blind	I'm as blind as a bat without my glasses.
2	ox	strong	My brother is as strong as an ox.
3	eel	slippery	She's as slippery as an eel. You'll never get a direct answer from her.
4	bird	free	I felt as free as a bird when I left university.
5	fox	sly	He's as sly as a fox. Don't trust him. He'll find a way of getting what he wants.

62.2
1 I don't mind carrying this box. It's **as light as a feather**. The other one was **as heavy as lead**.
2 If I were you, I would avoid that restaurant **like the plague**. The food is awful.
3 Millie never misses anything you do in the office. She **has eyes like a hawk**.
4 I felt **like a fish out of water** with my electric guitar among all those classical musicians.
5 There are hotels **as far as the eye can see** all along the coast.
6 She got up late and came down to breakfast looking **like something the cat brought/dragged in**.

62.3 1 a bear 2 a bull 3 a bat

62.4
1 He was very bad-tempered, like **a bear with a sore head**.
2 Her comments were like **a red rag to a bull**.
3 He ran off like **a bat out of hell**.

62.5 1 greased 2 sieve 3 plain 4 ugly

62.6
1 as flat as a pancake, e.g. *The landscape is as flat as a pancake.*
2 as daft as a brush (*daft* means silly; used of people)
3 as good as gold (*good* here refers to someone's behaviour)
4 as bold as brass (*bold* here means cheeky/without any inhibitions)
5 as dry as a bone, e.g. *I must water my plant. The soil's as dry as a bone.*

Phonemic symbols

Vowel sounds

Symbol	Examples		
/iː/	sleep	me	
/i/	happy	recipe	
/ɪ/	pin	dinner	
/ʊ/	foot	could	pull
/uː/	do	shoe	through
/e/	red	head	said
/ə/	arrive	father	colour
/ɜː/	turn	bird	work
/ɔː/	sort	thought	walk
/æ/	cat	black	
/ʌ/	sun	enough	wonder
/ɒ/	got	watch	sock
/ɑː/	part	heart	laugh
/eɪ/	name	late	aim
/aɪ/	my	idea	time
/ɔɪ/	boy	noise	
/eə/	pair	where	bear
/ɪə/	hear	beer	
/əʊ/	go	home	show
/aʊ/	out	cow	
/ʊə/	pure	poor	

Consonant sounds

Symbol	Examples		
/p/	put		
/b/	book		
/t/	take		
/d/	dog		
/k/	car	kick	
/g/	go	guarantee	
/tʃ/	catch	church	
/dʒ/	age	lounge	
/f/	for	cough	
/v/	love	vehicle	
/θ/	thick	path	
/ð/	this	mother	
/s/	since	rice	
/z/	zoo	houses	
/ʃ/	shop	sugar	machine
/ʒ/	pleasure	usual	vision
/h/	hear	hotel	
/m/	make		
/n/	name	now	
/ŋ/	bring		
/l/	look	while	
/r/	road		
/j/	young		
/w/	wear		

Index

The numbers in the index are ***Unit*** *numbers not page numbers.*

get/go from **A** to B 41
be on **about** 27
Absence makes the heart grow fonder 29
be brought/called to **account** 11
There's no **accounting** for taste(s)! 16
an **acid** test 11
clean up your **act** 59
act the fool 59
act your age 59
a balancing **act** 59
be a hard/tough **act** to follow 13
catch sb in the **act** 59
get in on the **act** 59
get your **act** together 59
put on an **act** 59
a piece/slice of the **action** 59
be back in **action** 59
be out of **action** 59
follow/take a course of **action** 59
Actions speak louder than words. 29
a hive of **activity** 59
add fuel to the fire/flames 33
add insult to injury 13
play devil's **advocate** 14
be **after** sb's blood 4
You can say that **again**! 12
against (all) (the) odds 2, 20
act your **age** 59
a hidden **agenda** 10
at the top of sb's/the **agenda** 16
a breath of fresh **air** 43
be floating/walking on **air** 3
be in the **air** 43
be up in the **air** 43
clear the **air** 43
pluck a number out of the **air** 33
airs and graces 21
set **alarm** bells ringing 17
all ears 53
all over the place 26
all work and no play 29
be **all** at sea 44
be **all** sweetness and light 13
be **all** talk (and no action) 59
give sth your **all** 18
go **all** out 18
have **all** the makings of 14
if **all** else fails 16
make **all** the difference 7
not be **all** it's cracked up to be 14
once and for **all** 32
be (right) up your **alley**/street 41
leave well **alone** 17
along the lines of sth 58
not go **amiss** 19
a party **animal** 37
one way or **another** 16
have a lot to **answer** for 14
not take no for an **answer** 28
the **answer** to sb's prayers 9
(not) ring **any** bells / a bell (with me) 5
anybody who is **anybody** 21
never/not do **anything**/things by halves 14
keep up **appearances** 21
whet your **appetite** 40
An **apple** a day keeps the doctor away. 2
a grey **area** 34
a list as long as your **arm** 57
chance your **arm** 20
could do sth with one **arm**/hand tied behind your back 56
twist sb's **arm** 49
hold/keep sb at **arm's** length 49
a chink in your **armour** 39
be up in **arms** 39
be **asking** for it/trouble 13
cast **aspersions** on 13
lead sb **astray** 17
at a (considerable) price 24
at a push 18
at the end of the day 31
be **at** each other's throat 51
be **at** loggerheads 1, 22
be/feel **at** home 42
make yourself **at** home 42
avoid sth like the plague 62
have an **axe** to grind 39
get/go from A to **B** 41
be as easy as taking candy from a **baby** 18
be left holding the **baby** 8
throw the **baby** out with the bathwater 14
back-pedal 45
You scratch my **back** and I'll scratch yours. 56
at the **back** of your mind 55
at/in the **back** of beyond 56
be glad/happy/pleased/not sorry to see the **back** of sth 56
be (like) water off a duck's **back** 38
be **back** in action 59
be on sb's **back** 56
be on the **back** burner 56
by/through the **back** door 56
come/fall off the **back** of a lorry 56
could do sth with one arm/hand tied behind your **back** 56
fed up (to the **back** teeth) 4
get/put sb's **back** up 4, 56
go **back** a long way 57
go **back** to square one 36
know sth like the **back** of your hand 56
off the **back** of a lorry 56
stab sb in the **back** 56
take a **back** seat 56
when/while sb's **back** is turned 56
would give you the shirt off their **back** 35
a **back-seat** driver 45
without a **backward** glance 56
bend/lean over **backwards** 56
be in a **bad** way 60
give sth up as a **bad** job 60
go from **bad** to worse 60
make the best of a **bad** job 60
in the **bag** 9, 35
let the cat out of the **bag** 2, 38
be/hang in the **balance** 15
a **balancing** act 59
a slime **ball** 2
be on the **ball** 36
play **ball** 36
start the **ball** rolling 36
the **ball** is in your court 36
get/jump/leap on the **bandwagon** 14
come (back) down to earth with a **bang**/bump/jolt 2, 43
be **banging**/hitting your head against a brick wall 2, 50
bare your heart/soul 54
the **bare** bones 49
I wouldn't touch sb/sth with a **barge** pole. 19
sb's **bark** is worse than their bite 37
have sb over a **barrel** 8
have a **bash** 18
Don't put all your eggs in one **basket**. 29
be as blind as a **bat** 62
like a **bat** out of hell 62
not **bat** an eyelid 52
off your own **bat** 36
throw the baby out with the **bathwater** 14
an uphill **battle**/fight/struggle 41
fight a losing **battle** 39
keep sb/sth at **bay** 22
be that as it may 11
the **be**-all-and-end-all 7
bear fruit 40
bear/keep in mind 30
be like a **bear** with a sore head 62
grin and **bear** it 3

sb's heart misses/skips a **beat** 54
be off the **beaten** track 41
(it) **beats** me 6
be at sb's **beck** and call 10
get out of **bed** on the wrong side 42
be as busy as a **bee** 62
make a **beeline** for sb/sth 37
be on your best **behaviour** 60
behind the scenes 25
for the time **being** 31
couldn't **believe** your ears 53
couldn't **believe** your eyes 52
ring a **bell** 30
(not) ring a **bell** / any **bells** (with me) 5
set alarm **bells** ringing 17
green **belt** 34
tighten your **belt** 24
bend the rules 10
bend/lean over backwards 56
drive/send sb round the **bend**/twist 1, 2, 4, 41
give sb the **benefit** of the doubt 11
be **beside** the point 28
be for the **best** 60
be on your **best** behaviour 60
make the **best** of a bad job 60
second **best** 60
the **best** of both worlds 60
the **best**/greatest thing since sliced bread 40
your **best bet** 36
against your **better** judgement 60
for want of a **better** word 27
go one **better** 60
have seen **better** days 31
think **better** of sth 60
at/in the back of **beyond** 56
get/go **beyond** a joke 26
Big deal! 23
hit the **big** time 7
make a **big** thing of 23
make it **big** 23
think **big** 23
foot the **bill** 48
pick up the **bill**/tab 2, 24
A little **bird** told me. 37
a **bird** in the hand 29
as free as a **bird** 1, 62
birds of a feather 29
kill two **birds** with one stone 1, 2, 38
get/have/take the **bit** between your teeth 37
bite sb's head off 50
bite the bullet 39
bite the dust 43
bite your tongue 53
sb's bark is worse than their **bite** 37
be thrilled to **bits** 3
to the **bitter** end 40
a **black** hole 34
in **black** and white 34
draw a **blank** 8
your mind goes **blank** 30
be a **blessing** in disguise 7
be as **blind** as a bat 62
turn a **blind** eye 52
in the **blink** of an eye 1, 52
on the **blink** 52
a stumbling **block** 8
Blood is thicker than water. 29
blood and guts 55
be after sb's **blood** 4
be out for **blood** 4
blue **blood** 34
get **blood** out of a stone 55
in cold **blood** 55
new **blood** 21
sb's **blood** is up 4
blow a fuse/gasket 4, 45
blow hot and cold 33
blow sth out of (all) proportion 15
see how / which way the wind is **blowing** 33
blue blood 34
blue-collar 34
between the devil and the deep **blue** sea 33
once in a **blue** moon 32
out of the **blue** 1, 43
until you are **blue** in the face 34
call sb's **bluff** 36
be in the same **boat** 44
miss the **boat** 44
push the **boat** out 44
rock the **boat** 44
burn your **boats**/bridges 39, 44
as **bold** as brass 62
a **bone** of contention 1, 49
be as dry as a **bone** 1
have a **bone** to pick with sb 49
I (can) feel it in my **bones** 2, 49
the bare **bones** 49
take a leaf out of sb's **book** 42
be in sb's good **books** 22
bore the pants off someone 35
burn the candle at **both** ends 42
the best of **both** worlds 60
at the **bottom** of the (career) ladder 25
be/hit rock **bottom** 43
get to the **bottom** of 9
the **bottom** line 58
be duty **bound** to do sth 19
by/in leaps and **bounds** 26
a **brain** drain 55
have sth on the **brain** 55
pick sb's **brains** 55
rack your **brains** 30
put the **brakes** on 45
as bold as **brass** 62
put a **brave** face on sth 51
sb's **bread** and butter 40
the best/greatest thing since sliced **bread** 40
be/live on the **breadline** 24
break sb's heart 54
a dog's **breakfast** 38
make a clean **breast** of it 51
a **breath** of fresh air 43
in the same **breath** 27
breathe down sb's neck 51
be banging/hitting your head against a **brick** wall 2, 50
come up against a **brick** wall 8
burn your **bridges**/boats 39, 44
bring a lump to your throat 15
bring sth home to sb 42
bring sth to a head 50
bring sth to light 9
be on the **brink** of sth 2
be **brought**/called to account 11
look like something the cat **brought**/dragged in 62
pass the **buck** 1, 36
not **budge**/give an inch 11, 23
the travel **bug** 37
be like a red rag to a **bull** 62
take the **bull** by the horns 38
bite the **bullet** 39
come (back) down to earth with a **bump**/bang/jolt 2, 43
burn the candle at both ends 42
burn your boats/bridges 39, 44
be on the back **burner** 56
get/have your fingers **burned**/**burnt** 47
sb's bread and **butter** 40
have **butterflies** in your stomach 37
give sb a **buzz** 45
be a piece of **cake** 18
have your **cake** and eat it 40
the icing on the **cake** 40
call it a day 32
call sb's bluff 36
call the shots 39
be at sb's beck and **call** 10
not have a minute to **call** your own 32
be **called**/brought to account 11
cool, **calm** and collected 1
a **can** of worms 11, 38
carry the **can** 10
can't for the life of me 5
burn the **candle** at both ends 42
be as easy as taking **candy** from a baby 18

be on the **cards** 36
lay/put your **cards** on the table 36
play your **cards** right 36
the **cards** are stacked against you 20
take **care** of the pence/pennies 29
career ladder 25
at the bottom of the (**career**) ladder 25
at the top of the (**career**) ladder 25
climb to the top of the **career** ladder 25
carry the can 10
cast aspersions on 13
cast/run your eye over 52
let the **cat** out of the bag 2, 38
look like something the **cat** brought/dragged in 62
not (enough) room to swing a **cat** 38
put/set the **cat** among the pigeons 4, 38
While the **cat’s** away, the mice will play. 29
catch sb in the act 59
catch sb red-handed 34
catch sb’s eye 52
caught in the middle 23
be **caught** in the crossfire 39
be **caught** napping 17
hit the **ceiling**/roof 42
left, right and **centre** 26
chance your arm 20, 49
not have the ghost of a **chance** 7
change hands 47
change tack 44
a **change** of heart 54
change your tune 46
chase your tail 37
get it off your **chest** 51
run round like a headless **chicken** 38
child’s play 18
a **chink** in your armour 39
have a **chip** on your shoulder 49
when the **chips** are down 36
strike a **chord** 46
a vicious **circle** 11
go round in **circles** 11
clean up your act 59
make a **clean** breast of it 51
clear the air 43
clear the decks 44
loud and **clear** 28
steer **clear** of 44
climb to the top of the career ladder 25
work against the **clock** 32
go/run/work like **clockwork** 32
be too **close** for comfort 17
sail **close** to the wind 44
be on **cloud** nine 3
not have a **clue** 5
clutch at straws 8
the other side of the **coin** 11
to **coin** a phrase 27
cold-blooded 55
a **cold** fish 37
blow hot and **cold** 33
get **cold** feet 48
give sb the **cold** shoulder 49, 51
in **cold** blood 55
pour **cold** water on sth 33
cool, calm and **collected** 1
come to light 9
come (back) down to earth with a bang/bump/jolt 2, 43
come a long way 57
come down on one side or the other 42
come home to you 42
come to a head 50
come to terms with 15
come up against a brick wall 8
come/spring to mind 30
the shape of things to **come** 31
if push **comes** to shove 19
if the worst **comes** to the worst 60
if/when it **comes** to the crunch 39
be too close for **comfort** 17
see sth **coming** (a mile off) 20
commit sth to memory 30
common ground 61
a foregone **conclusion** 20
the pros and **cons** 1, 11
to your heart’s **content** 54
a bone of **contention** 1, 49
too many **cooks** 29
cool, calm and collected 1
see sth out of the **corner** of your eye 52
politically **correct** 21
cost (sb) an arm and a leg 49
follow/take a **course** of action 59
steer a middle **course** 44
the ball is in your **court** 36
at the **crack** of dawn 32
not be all it’s **cracked** up to be 14
by hook or by **crook** 1, 18
cross your fingers 47
cross your mind 30
at **cross**-purposes 22
sb’s paths **cross** 41
get your lines/wires **crossed** 45
keep your fingers **crossed** 47
be caught in the **crossfire** 39
at a **crossroads** 41
when it comes to the **crunch** 39
a shoulder to **cry** on 49
be a far **cry** from sth 23
It’s no good / There’s no point **crying** over spilt milk. 29
as **cunning**/sly as a fox 62
the **curtain** has fallen (on) 46
throw a **curveball** 36
cut a long story short 1, 57
cut the ground from under sb’s feet 61
cut things fine 17
have your work **cut** out 25
look **daggers** at 39
put a **dampener/damper** on 3
on **dangerous** ground 61
a **dark** horse 37
be in the **dark** 43
keep sb in the **dark** 43
be past / pass your sell-by **date** 40
at the crack of **dawn** 32
An apple a **day** keeps the doctor away. 2
at the end of the **day** 31
call it a **day** 32
make your **day** 2
frighten/scare the (living) **daylights** out of 2
have seen better **days** 31
it’s early **days** (yet) 31
a **dead** end 41
be a **dead** loss 14
would not be seen **dead** 19
dead-end job 25
Big **deal**! 23
clear the **decks** 44
be in **deep** water 33
between the devil and the **deep** blue sea 33
go off the **deep** end 4
jump in the **deep** end 33
throw sb in the **deep** end 33
be out of your **depth** 33
leave a lot to be **desired** 14
leave sb to their own **devices** 10
between the **devil** and the deep blue sea 33
play **devil’s** advocate 14
a rough **diamond** 21
make all the **difference** 7
try a **different** tack 44
dig your heels in 48
dig yourself into a hole 8
be in **dire** straits 8
be a blessing in **disguise** 7
drive sb to **distraction** 14
do your own thing 19
make **do** 9
a spin **doctor** 10
An apple a day keeps the **doctor** away. 2
a **doddle** 18

a **dog's** breakfast 38
go to the **dogs** 38
be in the **doldrums** 44
easier said than **done** 8
by/through the back **door** 56
get your foot in the **door** 42
in small **doses** 23
from/since the year **dot** 31
sign on the **dotted** line 58
give sb the benefit of the **doubt** 11
down-and-out 21
down to earth 43
down in the dumps 3
keep your head **down** 50
never live sth **down** 16
go **downhill** 41
six of one and half a **dozen** of the other 12
drag your feet/heels 26, 48
look like something the cat **dragged**/brought in 62
a brain **drain** 55
draw a blank 8
draw a line under sth 58
draw the line (at sth) 58
the luck of the **draw** 20
go/work like a **dream** 7
wouldn't **dream** of 15
drive/send sb round the bend/twist 1, 2, 4, 41
drive sb to distraction 14
drive sb up the wall 4
a back-seat **driver** 45
drop sb a line 58
a **drop** in the ocean 33
be as **dry** as a bone 1, 62
be (like) water off a **duck's** back 38
be down in the **dumps** 3
bite the **dust** 43
like gold **dust** 13
be **duty** bound to do sth 19
be **dying** for/to 19
play it by **ear** 53
go in one **ear** and out the other 53
have a word in sb's **ear** 53
give sb an **earful** 4
it's **early** days (yet) 31
all **ears** 53
be up to your **ears**/eyes (in work) 25
couldn't believe your **ears** 53
music to your **ears** 46
be the salt of the **earth** 33
come (back) down to **earth** with a bang/bump/jolt 2, 43
go to the ends of the **earth** 33
easier said than done 8
be as **easy** as pie 18
be as **easy** as taking candy from a baby 18
have your cake and **eat** it 40
have the **edge** over 14
get a word in **edgeways** 28
be as slippery as an **eel** 62
have **egg** on your face 40
Don't put all your **eggs** in one basket. 29
be in your **element** 43
be out of your **element** 43
if all **else** fails 16
a dead **end** 41
at the **end** of the day 31
be at your wits' **end** 4
be at/on the receiving **end** 10
get (hold of) the wrong **end** of the stick 5
go off the deep **end** 4
jump in the deep **end** 33
light at the **end** of the tunnel 9
not be the **end** of the world 3
throw sb in the deep **end** 33
to the bitter **end** 40
burn the candle at both **ends** 42
go to the **ends** of the earth 33
tie up loose **ends** 9
be your own worst **enemy** 39
be man **enough** to do sth 2
be green with **envy** 34
a narrow **escape** 17
a necessary **evil** 17
the lesser of two **evils** 16
make an **exhibition** of yourself 14
put sth down to **experience** 6
an **eye**-opener 52
as far as the **eye** can see 62
cast/run your **eye** over 52
catch sb's **eye** 52
have/keep one **eye** on 52
in the blink of an **eye** 1, 52
in your mind's **eye** 52, 55
keep an **eye** on 52
keep an **eye** out for sb/sth 52
see sth out of the corner of your **eye** 52
turn a blind **eye** 52
see **eye** to **eye** 52
raise (a few) **eyebrows** 52
not bat an **eyelid** 52
be up to your **eyes**/ears (in work) 25
can't keep your **eyes** off 52
couldn't believe your **eyes** 52
have **eyes** like a hawk 62
open sb's **eyes** to sth 52
with your **eyes** open 52
face the music 8
a long **face** 57
be as plain as the nose on your **face** 62
have egg on your **face** 40
keep a straight **face** 51
make/pull a **face** 51
on the **face** of it 51
put a brave **face** on sth 51
stuff your **face** 2
take sth at **face** value 51
until you are blue in the **face** 34
face to **face** 51
a **fact** of life 8
the **facts** of life 8
fade/pale into insignificance 15
if all else **fails** 16
not have the **faintest** idea 5
fall into place 9
fall/come off the back of a lorry 56
fall on stony ground 33
fall/land on your feet 48
under **false** pretences 14
have a **familiar** ring (to it) 5
as **far** as the eye can see 62
be a **far** cry from sth 23
fast and furious 26
be as light as a **feather** 62
birds of a **feather** 29
ruffle sb's **feathers** 4
fed up (to the back teeth) 4
I (can) **feel** it in my bones 2, 49
feel/be at home 42
put out **feelers** 38
a gut **feeling**/reaction 55
rushed off your **feet** 25, 48
be under your **feet** 48
cut the ground from under sb's **feet** 61
drag your **feet**/heels 26, 48
fall/land on your **feet** 48
find your **feet** 48
get cold **feet** 48
get/have itchy **feet** 48
have/keep both/your **feet** on the ground 48
stand on your own two **feet** 48
sit on the **fence** 42
fever pitch 26
a level playing **field** 36
fight a losing battle 39
an uphill **fight**/battle/struggle 41
be a **figment** of your imagination 6
have big shoes to **fill** 35
find out how the land lies 43
find your feet 48
a **fine**/thin line 58
cut things **fine** 17
the **fine**/small print 28

fine-tune 46
not lift a **finger** 47
pull your **finger** out 18
put your **finger** on sth 47
cross your **fingers** 47
get/have your **fingers** burned/burnt 47
have green **fingers** 34, 47
keep your **fingers** crossed 47
at your **fingertips** 47
There's no smoke without **fire**. 33
add fuel to the **fire**/flames 33
get on like a house on **fire** 22
hold **fire** 39
not set the world on **fire** 33
play with **fire** 33
be in the **firing** line 39
first hand 47
a cold **fish** 37
be like a **fish** out of water 62
have/throw a **fit** 4
add fuel to the **flames**/fire 33
be as **flat** as a pancake 62
flavour of the month 40
How time **flies**! 12
be **floating**/walking on air 3
get in on the ground **floor** 61
go with the **flow** 43
fly off the handle 42
a **fly** on the wall 37
wouldn't hurt a **fly** 37
get off to a **flying** start 26
foaming at the mouth 53
not have the **foggiest** (idea) 5
follow in sb's footsteps 48
follow suit 36
follow/take a course of action 59
be a hard/tough act to **follow** 13
Absence makes the heart grow **fonder**. 29
give sb **food** for thought 6
act the **fool** 59
You could've **fooled** me! 16
foot the bill 48
get your **foot** in the door 42
get/start off on the wrong **foot** 48
put your **foot** down 1, 48
put your **foot** in it 8, 48
follow in sb's **footsteps** 48
a **foregone** conclusion 20
a small **fortune** 23, 24
lose a small **fortune** 24
make a small **fortune** 24
as cunning/sly as a **fox** 62
lingua **franca** 28
as **free** as a bird 1, 62
give sb **free** rein 37
give sb a **free** hand 47
a breath of **fresh** air 43
frighten/scare the (living) daylights out of 2
bear **fruit** 40
add **fuel** to the fire/flames 33
be in **full** swing 26
have your hands **full** 25, 47
poke **fun** at 13
fast and **furious** 26
blow a **fuse**/gasket 4, 45
gain ground 61
blow a **gasket**/fuse 4, 45
get into **gear** 45
Get a life! 12
get (hold of) the wrong end of the stick 5
get (sth) off the ground 61
get / be given the sack 25
get a (real) kick out of sth 3
get a move on 26
get a word in edgeways 28
get blood out of a stone 55
get cold feet 48
get in on the act 59
get in on the ground floor 61
get into gear 45
get it off your chest 51
get off to a flying start 26
get on like a house on fire 22
get on sb's nerves 13
get out of a rut 25
get out of bed on the wrong side 42
get out of hand 47
get right up sb's nose 53
get the message 6
get the picture 42
get to grips with 9
get to the bottom of 9
get wind of sth 33
get your act together 59
get your foot in the door 42
get your head (a)round 50
get your lines/wires crossed 45
get your own way 10
get/go beyond a joke 26
get/go from A to B 41
get/have itchy feet 48
get/have your fingers burned/burnt 47
get/jump/leap on the bandwagon 14
get/let sb off the hook 10
get/put sb's back up 4, 56
get/start off on the wrong foot 48
get/be/stay in touch with sb 22
get/have/take the bit between your teeth 37
give as good as you **get** 13
give up the **ghost** 7
not have the **ghost** of a chance 7
not look a **gift** horse in the mouth 2
give anything 19
give as good as you get 13
give ground 61
give it a shot/whirl 9
give sb a buzz 45
give sb a free hand 47
give sb a hand 47
give sb a hard/rough/tough time 1, 13, 15
give sb / get the sack 25
give sb a piece of your mind 4
give sb an earful 4
give sb food for thought 6
give sb free rein 37
give sb the benefit of the doubt 11
give sb the cold shoulder 49, 51
give sth the green light 34
give sth the thumbs down/up 47
give sth up as a bad job 60
give sth your all 18
give up the ghost 7
give you pause for thought 2
not **give**/budge an inch 11, 23
without a backward **glance** 56
people who live in **glass** houses 29
go a long way 57
go against the grain 43
go all out 18
go back a long way 57
go back to square one 36
go downhill 41
go from bad to worse 60
go from strength to strength 7
go in one ear and out the other 53
go off the deep end 4
go one better 60
go out of your way to do sth 18
go out on a limb 17
go places 7
go round in circles 11
go spare 4
go through the motions 18
go to any/great lengths 57
go to ground 61
go to the dogs 38
go to the ends of the earth 33
go to the polls 10
go under your own steam 45
go up in smoke 33
go with the flow 43
go/get beyond a joke 26
go/get from A to B 41
go/work like a dream 7
go/run/work like clockwork 32

be on the **go** 25
have a **go** at 18
let yourself **go** 15
make a **go** of 7
not **go** amiss 19
be in the lap of the **gods** 20
your mind **goes** blank 30
be as good as **gold** 62
like **gold** dust 13
It's no **good** / There's no point crying over spilt milk. 29
be as **good** as gold 62
be in sb's **good** books 22
give as **good** as you get 13
stand sb in **good** stead 60
airs and **graces** 21
go against the **grain** 43
take sb/sth for **granted** 20
sour **grapes** 3
hear sth on/through the **grapevine** 6
the **grass** is always greener 29
like **greased** lightning 62
the **greatest**/best thing since sliced bread 40
green belt 34
be **green** with envy 34
give sth the **green** light 34
have **green** fingers 34, 47
the grass is always **greener** 29
a **grey** area 34
grin and bear it 3
have an axe to **grind** 39
get to **grips** with 9
grit your teeth 53
ground-breaking 13
be thick/thin on the **ground** 61
common **ground** 61
cut the **ground** from under sb's feet 61
fall on stony **ground** 33
gain **ground** 61
get (sth) off the **ground** 61
get in on the **ground** floor 61
give **ground** 61
go to **ground** 61
have/keep both/your feet on the **ground** 48
hold/stand your **ground** 2, 61
on dangerous **ground** 61
prepare the **ground** 61
run to **ground** 33
sb's stamping/stomping **ground** 61
shift your **ground** 61
suit sb down to the **ground** 61
the middle **ground** 23
wish the **ground** would swallow you up 61
Absence makes the heart **grow** fonder. 29
no prizes for **guessing** sth 20
a **guinea** pig 37
jump the **gun** 39
stick to your **guns** 39
a **gut** feeling/reaction 55
a misery **guts** 3
blood and **guts** 55
slog/sweat/work your **guts** out 55
have **had** it up to here 4
Keep your **hair** on! 51
not turn a **hair** 51
pull/tear your **hair** out 51
six of one and **half** a dozen of the other 12
never/not do anything/things by **halves** 14
give sb a **hand** 47
a bird in the **hand** 29
be a dab **hand** 47
could do sth with one **hand**/arm tied behind your back 56
first **hand** 47
get out of **hand** 47
give sb a free **hand** 47
keep your **hand** in 47
know sth like the back of your **hand** 56
live (from) **hand** to mouth 53
on the one **hand** 11
on the other **hand** 11
to **hand** 47
try your **hand** at sth 47
turn your **hand** to sth 47
fly off the **handle** 42
Many **hands** make light work. 29
change **hands** 47
have your **hands** full 25, 47
take the law into your own **hands** 10
take your life into your **hands** 17
wash your **hands** of sb/sth 47
your life is in sb's **hands** 17
hang by a thread 17
hang/be in the balance 15
a question mark (**hanging**) over 28
hard/hot on the heels of sth 48
be a **hard**/tough act to follow 13
give sb a **hard**/rough/tough time 1, 13, 15
take a long, **hard** look at sth 57
at the drop of a **hat** 35
take your **hat** off to someone 35
wear lots of different **hats** 35
a long **haul** 57
have a bash 18
have a bone to pick with sb 49
have a chip on your shoulder 49
have a familiar ring (to it) 5
have a go at 18
have a lot of time for sb 31
have a lot to answer for 14
have a mind of its own 55
have a shot at 39
have a soft spot for sb 22
have a sweet tooth 40
have a word in sb's ear 53
have all the makings of 14
have an axe to grind 39
have big shoes to fill 35
have butterflies in your stomach 37
have egg on your face 40
have eyes like a hawk 62
have green fingers 34, 47
have had it up to here 4
have it in for sb 22
have it out with sb 22
have sb over a barrel 8
have second thoughts 1, 6
have seen better days 31
have something in the bag 35
have sth on the brain 55
have the edge over 14
have your cake and eat it 40
have your hands full 25, 47
have your heart set on sth 54
have your work cut out 25
have/get itchy feet 48
have/get your fingers burned/burnt 47
have/get/take the bit between your teeth 37
have/keep an open mind 55
have/keep one eye on 52
have/keep both/your feet on the ground 48
have/throw a fit 4
not **have** a clue 5
not **have** a leg to stand on 49
not **have** the faintest idea 5
not **have** the foggiest (idea) 5
not **have** the ghost of a chance 7
have eyes like a **hawk** 62
be **head**hunted 25
be banging/hitting your **head** against a brick wall 2, 50
be like a bear with a sore **head** 62
bite sb's **head** off 50
bring sth to a **head** 50
come to a **head** 50
get your **head** (a)round 50
keep your **head** 50
keep your **head** above water 50
keep your **head** down 50
knock sth on the **head** 50
laugh your **head** off 50
lose your **head** 50
need sth like you need a hole in the **head** 19
off the top of your **head** 50

put ideas into sb's **head** 50
scream your **head** off 50
shout your **head** off 50
run round like a **headless** chicken 38
turn **heads** 50
hear sth on/through the grapevine 7
Absence makes the **heart** grow fonder. 29
a change of **heart** 54
a man/woman after your own **heart** 54
bare your **heart**/soul 54
break sb's **heart** 54
have your **heart** set on sth 54
know/learn sth off by **heart** 54
lose **heart** 54
open your **heart** 54
pour your **heart** out 54
put your **heart** and soul into sth 54
sing your **heart** out 46
sb's **heart** is in the right place 54
sb's **heart** is in their mouth 53
sb's **heart** misses/skips a beat 54
sb's **heart** sinks 54
set your **heart** on sth 54
take sth to **heart** 54
to your **heart's** content 54
heart-to-**heart** 54
in the **heat** of the moment 33
be in seventh **heaven** 3
heavy-going 18
as **heavy** as lead 62
dig your **heels** in 48
drag your **heels**/feet 26, 48
hard/hot on the **heels** of sth 48
like a bat out of **hell** 62
have had it up to **here** 4
a red **herring** 34
a **hidden** agenda 10
a **high**-flyer 21
hit the big time 7
hit the ceiling/roof 42
hit the road 41
hit/be rock bottom 43
be **hitting**/banging your head against a brick wall 2, 50
a **hive** of activity 59
hold fire 39
hold the key to sth 42
hold/keep sb at arm's length 49
hold/stand your ground 2, 61
get (**hold** of) the wrong end of the stick 5
put sth on **hold** 25
be left **holding** the baby 8
a black **hole** 34
dig yourself into a **hole** 8
need sth like you need a **hole** in the head 19
be/feel at **home** 42
bring sth **home** to sb 42
come **home** to you 42
make yourself at **home** 42
by **hook** or by crook 1, 18
get/let sb off the **hook** 10
take the bull by the **horns** 38
a dark **horse** 37
not look a gift **horse** in the mouth 2
hot/hard on the heels of sth 48
be in **hot** water 33
blow **hot** and cold 33
strike while the iron is **hot** 16
get on like a **house** on fire 22
be as safe as **houses** 42
people who live in glass **houses** 29
wouldn't **hurt** a fly 37
the **icing** on the cake 40
not have the faintest **idea** 5
not have the foggiest **(idea)** 5
put **ideas** into sb's head 50
if need be 19
be a figment of your **imagination** 6
from time **immemorial** 2
in a nutshell 11
in cold blood 55
in keeping with sth 19
in the bag 9
be **in** line for sth 58
be **in** the air 43
be **in** the dark 43
be **in** the doldrums 44
be **in** the red 34
be **in** your element 43
be/get/stay **in** touch with sb 22
have it **in** for sb 22
keep **in** touch with sb 22
keep sb **in** the picture 42
put sb **in** the picture 42
not budge/give an **inch** 11, 23
add insult to **injury** 13
the **ins** and outs 6
know sth **inside** out 5
fade/pale into **insignificance** 15
add **insult** to injury 13
strike while the **iron** is hot 16
get/have **itchy** feet 48
jazz something up 46
give sth up as a bad **job** 60
make the best of a bad **job** 60
jog sb's memory 30
be no **joke** 27
come (back) down to earth with a **jolt**/bang/bump 2, 43
jump for **joy** 3
against your better **judgement** 60
jump for joy 3
jump in the deep end 33
jump the gun 39
jump/get/leap on the bandwagon 14
the law of the **jungle** 38
Just my luck! 20
keep a lid on sth 15
keep a low profile 21
keep a straight face 51
keep an eye on 52
keep an eye out for sb/sth 52
keep an open mind 55
keep in touch with sb 22
keep sb in the dark 43
keep sb in the picture 42
keep sb on their toes 48
keep sb/sth at bay 22
keep track 26
keep up appearances 21
keep your fingers crossed 47
Keep your hair on! 51
keep your hand in 47
keep your head 50
keep your head above water 50
keep your head down 50
keep yourself to yourself 22
keep your shirt on 35
keep/bear in mind 30
keep/have an open mind 55
keep/have one eye on 52
keep/have both/your feet on the ground 48
keep/hold sb at arm's length 49
can't **keep** your eyes off 52
in **keeping** with sth 19
hold the **key** to sth 42
get a (real) **kick** out of sth 3
do sth for **kicks** 3
kill two birds with one stone 1, 2, 38
make a **killing** 24
on a **knife**-edge 17
put/stick the **knife** in 2, 39
twist the **knife** 39
knock sth on the head 50
tie yourself (up) in **knots** 2, 11
know sth inside out 5
know sth like the back of your hand 56
know the ropes 44
know where you stand 6
know your stuff 5
know/learn sth off by heart 54
not **know** the meaning of the word 28
at the bottom of the (career) **ladder** 25
at the top of the (career) **ladder** 25

career **ladder** 25
climb to the top of the career **ladder** 25
land/fall on your feet 48
find out how the **land** lies 43
take a stroll/trip down memory **lane** 30
be in the **lap** of the gods 20
in the **lap** of luxury 24
loom **large** 23
be **larger** than life 23
it's the **last** straw 29
laugh your head off 50
Don't make me **laugh**! 12
a **laughing** stock 14
be no **laughing** matter 27
become a **law** unto yourself 10
lay down the **law** 10
take the **law** into your own hands 10
the **law** of the jungle 38
lay/put your cards on the table 36
lead sb astray 17
as heavy as **lead** 62
one thing **leads** to another 16
shake like a **leaf** 43
take a **leaf** out of sb's book 42
lean/bend over backwards 56
leap/get/jump on the bandwagon 14
by/in **leaps** and bounds 26
learn the ropes 44
learn your lesson 6
learn/know sth off by heart 54
leave a lot to be desired 14
leave a sour taste in the mouth 40
leave sb in the lurch 15
leave sb to their own devices 10
leave well alone 17
leave your mark 7
I can take it or **leave** it. 12
left, right and centre 26
be **left** holding the baby 8
cost (sb) an arm and a **leg** 49
not have a **leg** to stand on 49
pull sb's **leg** 49
hold/keep sb at arm's **length** 49
go to any/great **lengths** 57
the **lesser** of two evils 16
learn your **lesson** 6
teach sb a **lesson** 6
let off steam 45
let the cat out of the bag 2, 38
let yourself go 15
let/get sb off the hook 10
a **level** playing field 36
keep a **lid** on sth 15
lie through your teeth 1, 53
a pack of **lies** 27
find out how the land **lies** 43
a fact of **life** 8
be larger than **life** 23
can't for the **life** of me 5
Get a **life**! 12
Such is **life**! 12
take your **life** into your hands 17
That's **life**! 12
It's/That's the story of my **life**! 12
the facts of **life** 8
This is the **life**! 12
your **life** is in sb's hands 17
once in a **lifetime** 32
not **lift** a finger 47
light at the end of the tunnel 9
be all sweetness and **light** 13
be as **light** as a feather 62
bring sth to **light** 9
come to **light** 9
give sth the green **light** 34
make **light** of 27
Many hands make **light** work. 29
shed/throw **light** on 9
like greased **lightning** 62
like gold dust 13
a **likely** story 27
be out on a **limb** 17
go out on a **limb** 17
line of work 58
a fine/thin **line** 58
be in **line** for sth 58
be in the firing **line** 39
be out of **line** 58
draw a **line** under sth 58
draw the **line** (at sth) 58
drop sb a **line** 58
sign on the dotted **line** 58
step out of **line** 58
the bottom **line** 58
toe the **line** 48
along the **lines** of sth 58
along/on the right **lines** 58
along/on the same **lines** 58
get your **lines**/wires crossed 45
read between the **lines** 58
lingua franca 28
pay **lip** service to 53
My **lips** are sealed. 53
a **list** as long as your arm 57
A **little** bird told me. 37
live (from) hand to mouth 53
live on another planet 43
live/be on the breadline 24
never **live** sth down 16
people who **live** in glass houses 29
you haven't **lived**! 12
in/within **living** memory 30
be a **load**/weight off your mind 55
sleep like a **log** 43
be at **loggerheads** 1, 22
a **lone** wolf 37
a **long** face 57
a **long** haul 57
a list as **long** as your arm 57
come a **long** way 57
cut a **long** story short 1, 57
go a **long** way 57
go back a **long** way 57
How **long** is a piece of string? 57
in the **long** run 31
in the **long**/medium/short term 31
It's a **long** story. 57
Long time no see. 57
long-winded 57
take a **long**, hard look at sth 57
look daggers at 39
look like something the cat brought/dragged in 62
look right/straight through sb 15
not **look** a gift horse in the mouth 2
take a long, hard **look** at sth 57
loom large 23
tie up **loose** ends 9
come/fall off the back of a **lorry** 56
lose a small fortune 24
lose heart 54
lose sight of 6
lose your head 50
fight a **losing** battle 40
be a dead **loss** 14
be **lost** for words 27
make up for **lost** time 31
have a **lot** of time for sb 31
have a **lot** to answer for 14
leave a **lot** to be desired 14
loud and clear 28
Actions speak **louder** than words. 29
keep a **low** profile 21
be in **luck** 19
Just my **luck**! 20
No such **luck**! 12, 20
push your **luck** 20
take pot **luck** 20
the **luck** of the draw 20
You should be so **lucky**! 20
bring a **lump** to your throat 15
leave sb in the **lurch** 15
in the lap of **luxury** 24
be **made** for 13
wave a **magic** wand 9
work like **magic** 7
snail **mail** 38
make a beeline for sb/sth 37
make a big thing of 23

make a clean breast of it 51
make a go of 7
make a killing 24
make a name for yourself 21
make a real pig of yourself 37
make a small fortune 24
make all the difference 7
make an exhibition of yourself 14
make do 9
make it big 23
make it up to sb 22
make light of 27
make the best of a bad job 60
make the most of 15
make up for lost time 31
make up your mind 55
make waves 33
make your day 3
make sb's mouth water 40, 53
make yourself at home 42
make/pull a face 51
Don't **make** me laugh. 12
have all the **makings** of 14
a **man**/woman after your own heart 54
be **man** enough to do sth 2
Many hands make light work. 29
put sth on the **map** 41
a question **mark** (hanging) over 28
be wide of the **mark** 36
leave your **mark** 7
matter-of-fact 28
be a **matter** of opinion 28
be no laughing **matter** 27
be only a **matter** of time 31
be that as it **may** 11
not know the **meaning** of the word 28
in the **medium**/long/short term 31
commit sth to **memory** 30
have a **memory** like a sieve 62
in/within living **memory** 30
jog sb's **memory** 30
take a stroll/trip down **memory** lane 30
The more, the **merrier**. 12
get the **message** 6
While the cat's away, the **mice** will play. 29
take the **mick/mickey** 27
middle-of-the-road 41
caught in the **middle** 23
in the **middle** of nowhere 23
steer a **middle** course 44
the **middle** ground 23
see/spot sth a **mile** off 20, 23
stand/stick out a **mile** 23
be **miles** away 23
It's no good / There's no point crying over spilt **milk**. 29
Thanks a **million**! 12
Out of sight, out of **mind**. 30
at the back of your **mind** 55
be a load/weight off your **mind** 55
bear/keep in **mind** 30
come/spring to **mind** 30
cross your **mind** 30
give sb a piece of your **mind** 4
have a **mind** of its own 55
have/keep an open **mind** 55
make up your **mind** 55
put/set sb's **mind** at rest 55
slip your **mind** 30
speak your **mind** 28
your **mind** goes blank 30
in your **mind's** eye 52, 55
not have a **minute** to call your own 32
a **misery** guts 3
miss the boat 44
miss the point 28
sb's heart **misses**/skips a beat 54
in the heat of the **moment** 33
on the spur of the **moment** 36
a **money**-spinner 24
spend **money** like water 24
flavour of the **month** 40
be over the **moon** 3, 43
once in a blue **moon** 32
The **more**, the merrier. 12
make the **most** of 15
go through the **motions** 18
by word of **mouth** 53
foaming at the **mouth** 53
leave a sour taste in the **mouth** 40
live (from) hand to **mouth** 53
make sb's **mouth** water 40, 53
mouth-watering 53
not look a gift horse in the **mouth** 2
sb's heart is in their **mouth** 53
get a **move** on 26
face the **music** 8
music to your ears 46
make a **name** for yourself 21
you **name** it 12
be caught **napping** 17
a **narrow** escape 17
a **necessary** evil 17
be a pain in the **neck** 51
breathe down sb's **neck** 51
if **need** be 19
need sth like you **need** a hole in the head 19
neither here nor there 12
get on sb's **nerves** 13
a **nervous**/quivering wreck 44
never live sth down 16
new blood 21
in the **nick** of time 31
nine times out of ten 32
be on cloud **nine** 3
in **no** time at all 32
be second to **none** 13
neither here **nor** there 12
be as plain as the **nose** on your face 62
get right up sb's **nose** 53
No such luck! 12, 20
No way! 12
pay through the **nose** for sth 1, 24
poke/stick your **nose** into 53
turn your **nose** up 53
be **not** on 16
There's **nothing** to it! 12
think **nothing** of 15
in the middle of **nowhere** 23
pluck a **number** out of the air 33
do your **nut** 4
in a **nutshell** 11
put/stick your **oar** in 44
a drop in the **ocean** 33
the **odd** one out 21
against (all) (the) **odds** 2, 20
be **off** the beaten track 41
go **off** the deep end 4
off and on 32
off the top of your head 50
off your own bat 36
off-the-cuff 27
on and **off** 32
on the **off**-chance 20
be **on** about 27
be **on** sb's back 56
be **on** the ball 36
be **on** the cards 36
be **on** the go 25
be **on** the right track 41
be **on** the run 26
be **on** the threshold of sth 31
be **on** the wrong track 41
be not **on** 16
off and **on** 32
on a knife-edge 17
on and off 32
on paper 25
on the big/expensive, etc. side 14
on the blink 52
on the face of it 51
on the one hand 11
on the other hand 11, 47
on the spot 26
to be **on** the safe side 9

once and for all 32
once in a blue moon 32
once in a lifetime 32
come down on **one** side or the other 42
could do sth with **one** arm/hand tied behind your back 56
Don't put all your eggs in **one** basket. 29
go **one** better 60
go back to square **one** 36
go in **one** ear and out the other 53
have/keep **one** eye on 52
kill two birds with **one** stone 1, 2, 38
on the **one** hand 11
one thing leads to another 16
one way or another 16
six of **one** and half a dozen of the other 12
the odd **one** out 21
open sb's eyes to sth 52
open your heart 54
have/keep an **open** mind 55
with your eyes **open** 52
be a matter of **opinion** 28
be a tall **order** 28
on the **other** hand 11
six of one and half a dozen of the **other** 12
the **other** side of the coin 11
out of the blue 1, 43
out-of-date 31
be **out** for blood 4
be **out** of action 59
be **out** of line 58
be **out** of sorts 3
be **out** of this world 13
be **out** of touch with 5
be **out** of your depth 33
be **out** of your element 43
be **out** on a limb 17
get **out** of hand 47
go **out** of your way to do sth 18
go **out** on a limb 17
go all **out** 18
have it **out** with sb 22
out-and-**out** 13
Out of sight, **out** of mind. 30
the odd one **out** 21
the ins and **outs** 6
be **over** the moon 3, 43
be **over** the top 16
do your **own** thing 19
have a mind of its **own** 55
be as strong as an **ox** 62
at a snail's **pace** 38
a **pack** of lies 27
put **paid** to 24
be a **pain** in the neck 51
pale/fade into insignificance 15
be as flat as a **pancake** 62
panic stations 17
bore the **pants** off someone 35
on **paper** 25
a **party** animal 37
pass your sell-by date 40
pass the buck 1, 36
be **past** your sell-by date 40
sb's **paths** cross 41
give you **pause** for thought 2
pay lip service to 53
pay the price for 24
pay through the nose for sth 1, 24
There's no **peace**/rest for the wicked! 2
take care of the **pence**/pennies 29
people who live in glass houses 29
to coin a **phrase** 27
pick sb's brains 55
pick up the bill/tab 2, 24
pick up the pieces 9
have a bone to **pick** with sb 49
take your **pick** 19
get the **picture** 42
keep sb in the **picture** 42
put sb in the **picture** 42
be as easy as **pie** 18
a **piece**/slice of the action 59
be a **piece** of cake 18
give sb a **piece** of your mind 4
How long is a **piece** of string? 57
pick up the **pieces** 9
a guinea **pig** 37
make a real **pig** of yourself 37
put/set the cat among the **pigeons** 4, 38
a **pillar** of society 21
be in the **pipeline** 45
fever **pitch** 26
all over the **place** 26
fall into **place** 9
sb's heart in the right **place** 54
go **places** 7
avoid sth like the **plague** 62
be **plain** sailing 44
be as **plain** as the nose on your face 62
live on another **planet** 43
all work and no **play** 29
be child's **play** 18
play ball 36
play devil's advocate 14
play it by ear 53
play with fire 33
play your cards right 36
While the cat's away, the mice will **play**. 29
a level **playing** field 36
pluck a number out of the air 33
take the **plunge** 36
in **pocket** 35
out of **pocket** 35
to **pocket** 35
dig deep into your **pockets** 35
There's no **point** / It's no good crying over spilt milk. 29
be beside the **point** 28
miss the **point** 28
poke fun at 13
poke/stick your nose into 53
I wouldn't touch sb/sth with a barge **pole**. 19
politically correct 21
go to the **polls** 10
take **pot** luck 20
pour cold water on sth 33
pour your heart out 54
the answer to sb's **prayers** 9
prepare the ground 61
under false **pretences** 14
at a (considerable) **price** 24
pay the **price** for 24
the fine/small **print** 28
no **prizes** for guessing sth 20
keep a low **profile** 21
blow sth out of (all) **proportion** 15
the **pros** and cons 1, 11
pull out (all) the stops 25
pull sb's leg 49
pull your finger out 18
pull your weight 18
pull/make a face 51
pull/tear your hair out 51
push the boat out 44
push your luck 20
at a **push** 18
if **push** comes to shove 19
Don't **put** all your eggs in one basket. 29
put a brave face on sth 51
put ideas into sb's head 50
put on an act 59
put out feelers 38
put paid to 24
put sb in the picture 42
put sth down to experience 6
put sth on hold 25
put sth on the map 41
put the brakes on 45
put two and two together 5
put your finger on sth 47

put your foot down 1, 48
put your foot in it 8, 48
put your heart and soul into sth 54
put/get sb's back up 4, 56
put/lay your cards on the table 36
put/set the cat among the pigeons 4, 38
put/set sb's mind at rest 55
put/set the record straight 6
put/stick the knife in 2, 39
put/stick your oar in 44
put/throw a spanner in the works 45
an unknown **quantity** 23
a **question** mark (hanging) over 28
a **quivering**/nervous wreck 44
rack your brains 30
be like a red **rag** to a bull 62
road **rage** 41
raise (a few) eyebrows 52
ram sth down sb's throat 51
a gut **reaction**/feeling 55
read between the lines 58
rough and **ready** 1, 14
get a (**real**) kick out of sth 3
be at/on the **receiving** end 10
sound like a broken **record** 46
put/set the **record** straight 6
red tape 34
a **red** herring 34 be in the **red** 34
be like a **red** rag to a bull 62
catch sb **red**-handed 34
give sb free **rein** 37
put/set sb's mind at **rest** 55
There's no **rest**/peace for the wicked! 2
along/on the **right** lines 58
be on the **right** track 41
left, **right** and centre 26
look **right**/straight through sb 15
play your cards **right** 36
sb's heart is in the **right** place 54
ring a bell 30
have a familiar **ring** (to it) 5
(not) **ring** a bell / any bells (with me) 5
(not) **ring** true 27
set alarm bells **ringing** 17
a **rip**-off 24
road rage 41
hit the **road** 41
be/hit **rock** bottom 43
rock the boat 44
roll up your sleeves 35
start the ball **rolling** 36
hit the **roof**/ceiling 42
not (enough) **room** to swing a cat 38
know the **ropes** 44
learn the **ropes** 44
show sb the **ropes** 44
rough and ready 1, 14
a **rough** diamond 21
give sb a **rough**/hard/tough time 1, 13, 15
rub sb up the wrong way 4, 22
ruffle sb's feathers 4
a **rule** of thumb 47
bend the **rules** 10
be on the **run** 26
in the long **run** 31
run round like a headless chicken 38
run to ground 33
run-of-the-mill 25
run/cast your eye over 52
run/go/work like clockwork 32
rushed off your feet 25, 48
be stuck in a **rut** 41
get out of a **rut** 25
get / be given the **sack** 25
safe and sound 1, 17
be as **safe** as houses 42
to be on the **safe** side 9
easier **said** than done 8
sail close to the wind 44
be plain **sailing** 44
be the **salt** of the earth 33
along/on the **same** lines 58
be in the **same** boat 44
be on the **same** wavelength 45
in the **same** breath 27
You can **say** that again! 12
scare/frighten the (living) daylights out of 2
behind the **scenes** 25
from **scratch** 32
You **scratch** my back and I'll **scratch** yours. 56
scream your head off 50
be all at **sea** 44
between the devil and the deep blue **sea** 33
My lips are **sealed**. 53
take a back **seat** 56
second best 60
be **second** to none 13
have **second** thoughts 1, 6
as far as the eye can **see** 62
be glad/happy/pleased/not sorry to **see** the back of sth 56
Long time no **see**. 57
see eye to eye 52
see how / which way the wind is blowing 33
see sth coming (a mile off) 20
see sth out of the corner of your eye 52
see/spot sth a mile off 23
would not be **seen** dead 19
be past / pass your **sell**-by date 40
send/drive sb round the bend/twist 1, 2, 4, 41
send/put the cat among the pigeons 4, 38
pay lip **service** to 53
have your heart **set** on sth 54
not **set** the world on fire 33
set alarm bells ringing 17
set the stage for 46
set your heart on sth 54
set/put sb's mind at rest 55
set/put the record straight 6
be in **seventh** heaven 3
shake like a leaf 43
the **shape** of things to come 31
all **shapes** and sizes 23
shed/throw light on 9
shift your ground 61
take a **shine** to sb 22
keep your **shirt** on 35
would give you the **shirt** off their back 35
be in sb's **shoes** 16
have big **shoes** to fill 35
step into sb's **shoes** 25
talk **shop** 25
cut a long story **short** 1, 57
in the **short**/medium/long term 31
give it a **shot**/whirl 9
have a **shot** at 39
call the **shots** 39
a **shoulder** to cry on 49
give sb the cold **shoulder** 49, 51
have a chip on your **shoulder** 49
stand **shoulder** to **shoulder** 49
shout your head off 50
if push comes to **shove** 19
the **show** must go on 46
show sb the ropes 44
come down on one **side** or the other 42
get out of bed on the wrong **side** 42
on the big/expensive, etc. **side** 14
the other **side** of the coin 11
to be on the safe **side** 9
have a memory like a **sieve** 62
lose **sight** of 6
Out of **sight**, out of mind. 30
be a **sign** of the times 31
sign on the dotted line 58
be as ugly as **sin** 62
sing your heart out 46
sb's heart **sinks** 54
sit on the fence 42
six of one and half a dozen of the other 12
all shapes and **sizes** 23

by the **skin** of your teeth 17, 53
sb's heart **skips**/misses a beat 54
sleep like a log 43
roll up your **sleeves** 35
a **slice**/piece of the action 59
the best/greatest thing since **sliced** bread 40
a **slime** ball 2
a **slip** of the tongue 27
slip your mind 30
be as **slippery** as an eel 62
slog/sweat/work your guts out 55
as **sly**/cunning as a fox 62
a **small** fortune 23, 24
in **small** doses 23
It's a **small** world. 12
lose a **small** fortune 24
make a **small** fortune 24
small talk 27
the **small**/fine print 28
There's no **smoke** without fire. 33
go up in **smoke** 33
at a **snail's** pace 38
snail mail 38
be **snowed** under 25
a pillar of **society** 21
have a **soft** spot for sb 22
make a **song** and dance about 46
be like a bear with a **sore** head 62
stand/stick out like a **sore** thumb 47
be out of **sorts** 3
bare your **soul**/heart 54
put your heart and **soul** into sth 54
safe and **sound** 1, 17
sound like a broken record 46
leave a **sour** taste in the mouth 40
sour grapes 3
put/throw a **spanner** in the works 45
go **spare** 4
Actions **speak** louder than words. 29
speak your mind 28
not be on **speaking** terms 4
make a **spectacle** of yourself 46
spend money like water 24
It's no good / There's no point crying over **spilt** milk. 29
a **spin** doctor 10
have a soft **spot** for sb 22
on the **spot** 26
be in the **spotlight** 46
spot/see sth a mile off 23
spread like wildfire 33
spread yourself too thin 8
the word **spread** 26
spring/come to mind 30
on the **spur** of the moment 36
go back to **square** one 36
stab sb in the back 56
the cards are **stacked** against you 20
set the **stage** for 46
sb's **stamping**/stomping ground 61
know where you **stand** 6
not have a leg to **stand** on 49
stand on your own two feet 48
stand sb in good stead 60
stand shoulder to shoulder 49
stand the test of time 31
stand your ground 2
stand/hold your ground 61
stand/stick out a mile 23
stand/stick out like a sore thumb 47
get off to a flying **start** 26
start the ball rolling 36
start/get off on the wrong foot 48
state-of-the-art 45
panic **stations** 17
stay/be/get in touch with sb 22
stand sb in good **stead** 60
go under your own **steam** 45
let off **steam** 45
steer a middle course 44
steer clear of 44
step into sb's shoes 25
step out of line 58
step by **step** 26
get (hold of) the wrong end of the **stick** 5
stick to your guns 39
stick/poke your nose into 53
stick/put the knife in 2, 39
stick/put your oar in 44
stick/stand out a mile 23
stick/stand out like a sore thumb 47
a laughing **stock** 14
have butterflies in your **stomach** 37
sb's **stomping**/stamping ground 61
get blood out of a **stone** 55
kill two birds with one **stone** 1, 2, 38
fall on **stony** ground 33
pull out (all) the **stops** 25
a likely **story** 27
It's a long **story**. 57
It's/That's the **story** of my life! 12
cut a long **story** short 1, 57
keep a **straight** face 51
look **straight**/right through sb 15
put/set the record **straight** 6
be in dire **straits** 8
it's the last **straw** 29
clutch at **straws** 8
be (right) up your **street**/alley 41
go from **strength** to **strength** 7
strike a chord 46
strike while the iron is hot 16
How long is a piece of **string**? 57
take a **stroll**/trip down memory lane 30
be as **strong** as an ox 62
an uphill **struggle**/battle/fight 41
be **stuck** in a rut 41
stuff your face 2
know your **stuff** 5
a **stumbling** block 8
sb/sth is a victim of their/its own **success** 7
Such is life! 12
follow **suit** 36
suit sb down to the ground 61
wish the ground would **swallow** you up 61
sweat/slog/work your guts out 55
have a **sweet** tooth 40
be all **sweetness** and light 13
be in full **swing** 26
not (enough) room to **swing** a cat 38
pick up the **tab**/bill 2, 24
lay/put your cards on the **table** 36
change **tack** 44
try a different **tack** 44
chase your **tail** 37
take/get/have the bit between your teeth 37
I can **take** it or leave it 12
not **take** no for an answer 28
take a back seat 56
take a leaf out of sb's book 42
take a long, hard look at sth 57
take a shine to sb 22
take a stroll/trip down memory lane 30
take care of the pence/pennies 29
take pot luck 20
take sb/sth for granted 20
take sth at face value 51
take sth to heart 54
take the bull by the horns 38
take the law into your own hands 10
take the mick/mickey 27
take the plunge 36
take your life into your hands 17
take your hat off to someone 35
take your pick 19
take/follow a course of action 59
take/get/have the bit between your teeth 37
be all **talk** (and no action) 59
small **talk** 27
talk shop 25
be a **tall** order 28
red **tape** 34
leave a sour **taste** in the mouth 40
There's no accounting for **taste(s)**! 16
teach sb a lesson 6
tear/pull your hair out 51

by the skin of your **teeth** 17, 53
fed up (to the back **teeth**) 4
get/have/take the bit between your **teeth** 37
grit your **teeth** 53
in the **teeth** of sth 53
lie through your **teeth** 1, 53
nine times out of **ten** 32
in the short/medium/long **term** 31
come to **terms** with 15
not be on speaking **terms** 4
an acid **test** 11
stand the **test** of time 31
Thanks a million! 12
That's life! 12
then and there 32
there and then 32
There's nothing to it! 12
be **thick** on the ground 61
Blood is **thicker** than water. 29
a **thin**/fine line 58
be **thin** on the ground 61
spread yourself too **thin** 8
do your own **thing** 19
make a big **thing** of 23
one **thing** leads to another 16
the best/greatest **thing** since sliced bread 40
never/not do **things**/anything by halves 14
the shape of **things** to come 31
think better of sth 60
think big 23
think nothing of 15
This is the life! 12
a train of **thought** 30
give sb food for **thought** 6
give you pause for **thought** 2
have second **thoughts** 1, 6
hang by a **thread** 17
be on the **threshold** of sth 31
be **thrilled** to bits 3
be at each other's **throat** 51
bring a lump to your **throat** 15
ram sth down sb's **throat** 51
throw a curveball 36
throw sb in the deep end 33
throw the baby out with the bathwater 14
throw/have a fit 4
throw/put a spanner in the works 45
throw/shed light on 9
a rule of **thumb** 47
be under sb's **thumb** 47
give sth the **thumbs** down/up 47
stand/stick out like a sore **thumb** 47
tick over 45
the **tide** turns 33
tie up loose ends 9
tie yourself (up) in knots 2, 11
could do sth with one arm/hand **tied** behind your back 56
tighten your belt 24
How **time** flies! 12
be only a matter of **time** 31
before your **time** 31
for the **time** being 31
from **time** immemorial 2
give sb a hard/rough/tough **time** 13, 15
have a lot of **time** for sb 31
hit the big **time** 7
in a **time** warp 31
in no **time** at all 32
in the nick of **time** 31
Long **time** no see. 57
make up for lost **time** 31
stand the test of **time** 31
from **time** to **time** 32
be a sign of the **times** 31
nine **times** out of ten 32
(be) on the **tip** of your tongue 30, 53
to hand 47
toe the line 48
keep sb on their **toes** 48
toffee-nosed 21
get your act **together** 59
put two and two **together** 5
as if there was/were no **tomorrow** 31
like there's no **tomorrow** 31
a slip of the **tongue** 27
(be) on the tip of your **tongue** 30, 53
bite your **tongue** 53
too many cooks 29
have a sweet **tooth** 40
at the **top** of sb's/the agenda 16
at the **top** of the (career) ladder 25
be on **top** of the world 3
be over the **top** 16
climb to the **top** of the career ladder 25
off the **top** of your head 50
be **touch**-and-go 20
be out of **touch** with 5
be/get/stay in **touch** with sb 22
I wouldn't **touch** sb/sth with a barge pole. 19
be a **tough**/hard act to follow 13
give sb a **tough**/hard/rough time 1, 13, 15
be off the beaten **track** 41
be on the right **track** 41
be on the wrong **track** 41
keep **track** 26
a **train** of thought 30
the **travel** bug 37
do the **trick** 7
take a **trip**/stroll down memory lane 30
be asking for **trouble**/it 13
wear the **trousers** 35
(not) ring **true** 27
try a different tack 44
try your hand at sth 47
change your **tune** 46
light at the end of the **tunnel** 9
not **turn** a hair 51
turn a blind eye 52
turn heads 50
turn your hand to sth 47
turn your nose up 53
when/while sb's back is **turned** 56
the tide **turns** 33
drive/send sb round the **twist**/bend 1, 2, 4, 41
twist sb's arm 49
twist the knife 39
two-time sb 22
kill **two** birds with one stone 1, 2, 38
stand on your own **two** feet 48
the lesser of **two** evils 16
put **two** and **two** together 5
be as **ugly** as sin 62
be **under** sb's thumb 47
be **under** your feet 48
go **under** your own steam 45
an **unknown** quantity 23
up-and-coming 21, 25
an **uphill** battle/fight/struggle 41
be (right) **up** your alley/street 41
be **up** in arms 39
be **up** in the air 43
make it **up** to sb 22
on your way **up** 21
upper-crust 43
take sth at face **value** 51
a **vicious** circle 11
sb/sth is a **victim** of their/its own success 7
be **walking**/floating on air 3
a fly on the **wall** 37
be banging/hitting your head against a brick **wall** 2, 50
come up against a brick **wall** 8
drive sb up the **wall** 4
wave a magic **wand** 9
for **want** of a better word 27
in a time **warp** 31
wash your hands of sb/sth 47
be (like) **water** off a duck's back 1, 38
be in deep **water** 33
be in hot **water** 33
be like a fish out of **water** 62
Blood is thicker than **water**. 29

keep your head above **water** 50
make sb's mouth **water** 40, 53
pour cold **water** on sth 33
spend money like **water** 24
wave a magic wand 9
be on the same **wavelength** 45
make **waves** 33
be in a bad **way** 60
come a long **way** 57
get your own **way** 10
go a long **way** 57
go back a long **way** 57
go out of your **way** to do sth 18
No **way**! 12
on your **way** up 21
one **way** or another 16
rub sb up the wrong **way** 4, 22
see how/which **way** the wind is blowing 33
wear lots of different hats 35
wear the trousers 35
be a **weight**/load off your mind 55
pull your **weight** 18
leave **well** alone 17
well-heeled 24
well-off 24
well-to-do 1, 24
when the chips are down 36
know **where** you stand 6
whet your appetite 40
(not) be worth your **while** 19
give it a **whirl**/shot 9
in black and **white** 34
white-collar 34
There's no peace/rest for the **wicked**! 2
be **wide** of the mark 36
spread like **wildfire** 33
get **wind** of sth 33
sail close to the **wind** 44
see how / which way the **wind** is blowing 33
get your **wires**/lines crossed 45
wish the ground would swallow you up 61
be at your **wits'** end 4
a lone **wolf** 37
a **woman**/man after your own heart 54
by **word** of mouth 53
for want of a better **word** 27
get a **word** in edgeways 28
have a **word** in sb's ear 53
in a **word** 27
not know the meaning of the **word** 28
the **word** spread 26
word for **word** 28
Actions speak louder than **words**. 29
be lost for **words** 27
all **work** and no play 29
be up to your ears/eyes (in **work**) 25
have your **work** cut out 25
line of **work** 58
Many hands make light **work**. 29
work against the clock 32
work like magic 7
work/go like a dream 7
work/go/run like clockwork 32
work/slog/sweat your guts out 55
put/throw a spanner in the **works** 45
be on top of the **world** 3
be out of this **world** 13
It's a small **world**. 12
not be the end of the **world** 3
not set the **world** on fire 33
the best of both **worlds** 60
a can of **worms** 11, 38
go from bad to **worse** 60
sb's bark is **worse** than their bite 37
be your own **worst** enemy 39
if the **worst** comes to the **worst** 60
(not) be **worth** your while 19
wouldn't dream of 15
a nervous/quivering **wreck** 44
be on the **wrong** track 41
get (hold of) the **wrong** end of the stick 5
get out of bed on the **wrong** side 42
get/start off on the **wrong** foot 48
rub sb up the **wrong** way 4, 22
from/since the **year** dot 31
keep **yourself** to **yourself** 22

ENGLISH IDIOMS IN USE

Intermediate

Improve your understanding of idioms in English.

Explanations and practice of English idioms, written for intermediate-level (B1-B2) learners of English. Perfect for both self-study and classroom activities.

- Increase your knowledge of idioms and how to use them, with easy to understand explanations and practice exercises.
- Learn idioms in context, with lots of different topics, including 'Clothes', 'Music and theatre' and 'Work'.
- Be confident about what you are learning, thanks to Cambridge research into how English is really spoken and written.
- Get better at studying by yourself, with study tips, follow-up tasks and an easy to use answer key.

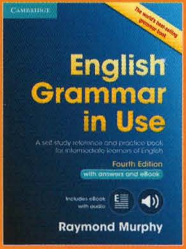
Cambridge
English Grammar in Use
Fourth Edition
Raymond Murphy

ISBN 978 1 107 53933 4

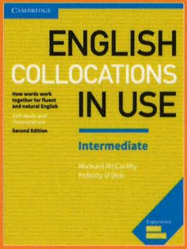
Cambridge
ENGLISH COLLOCATIONS IN USE
Intermediate
Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

ISBN 978 1 31662975 8

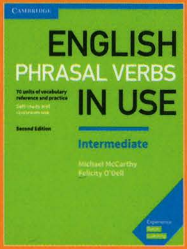
Cambridge
ENGLISH PHRASAL VERBS IN USE
Intermediate
Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

ISBN 978 1 316 62815 7

Also available:

ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE
ENGLISH COLLOCATIONS IN USE INTERMEDIATE
ENGLISH PHRASAL VERBS IN USE INTERMEDIATE

Better Learning is our simple approach where deeper insights help shape richer content that drives stronger results.

Discover more:

cambridge.org/betterlearning

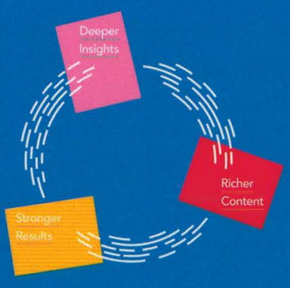

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org

ISBN 978-1-316-62988-8

CAMBRIDGE

ENGLISH PHRASAL VERBS IN USE

60 units of vocabulary reference and practice

Self-study and classroom use

Second Edition

Advanced

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

Experience
Better
Learning

ENGLISH PHRASAL VERBS IN USE

60 units of vocabulary reference and practice
Self-study and classroom use

Second Edition

Advanced

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom

One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA

477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia

4843/24, 2nd Floor, Ansari Road, Daryaganj, Delhi – 110002, India

79 Anson Road, #06–04/06, Singapore 079906

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9781316628096

© Cambridge University Press 2017

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2007
Second Edition 2017
20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Printed in Dubai by Oriental Press

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-1-316-62809-6

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party Internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

Acknowledgements 3

Using this book 4

Learning about phrasal verbs

1 Phrasal verbs: what are they and how are they used? 6
2 Grammar of phrasal verbs 8
3 Phrasal nouns 10
4 Phrasal adjectives 12

Interesting aspects of phrasal verbs

5 Collocation and phrasal verbs 14
6 Register 16
7 Meaning and metaphor 18
8 Idioms using phrasal verbs 20

Key particles

9 Around and about 22
10 Down 24
11 In 26
12 Off 28
13 On 30
14 Out 32
15 Up 34

Concepts

16 Time 36
17 Cause and effect 38
18 Memory 40
19 Making progress 42
20 Conflict and violence 44
21 Sound 46

Functions

22 Supporting and opposing people or views 48
23 Agreeing 50
24 Understanding and having ideas 52
25 Arranging things 54
26 Talking about size and number 56
27 Talking about success and failure 58
28 Discussing problems 60
29 Deciding and influencing 62
30 Exclamations and warnings 64

Work, study and finance

31 Work 66
32 Study 68
33 Lectures and seminars 70
34 Writing essays 72
35 Business 74
36 Money 76

Personal life

37 At home 78
38 Clothing and appearance 80
39 Relationships 82
40 Character and personal qualities 84
41 Feelings 86
42 Social life 88
43 Health and symptoms 90
44 The body 92
45 How people speak 94
46 How people move 96

The world around us

47 Nature **98**
48 Weather **100**
49 Places **102**
50 Transport **104**
51 The news **106**
52 Secrets and lies **108**
53 Rules and laws **110**
54 Technology **112**
55 Food and drink **114**

Key verbs

56 Come **116**
57 Get **118**
58 Go **120**
59 Keep **122**
60 Take **124**

Key **126**

Mini dictionary **162**

Acknowledgements English Phrasal Verbs in Use Advanced

Joy Godwin wrote two new units for the Second Edition: Unit 23, *Agreeing*, and Unit 33, *Lectures and seminars*. The publishers would like to thank Joy for her contribution to this edition.

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting and in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable.

Key: T = Top, B = Below, C = Centre, TL = Top Left, TR = Top Right, CL = Centre Left, CR = Centre Right, BR = Below Right, BL = Below Left.

Photographs

All the photographs are sourced from Getty Images.

p. 12 (TR): Plume Creative; p. 12 (CL): Jim Craigmyle/First Light; p. 12 (BR): diego_cervo/iStock; p. 13 (TL): DonNichols/iStock; p. 13 (TR): Colin Anderson/Blend Images; p. 13 (BL): Camilo Morales/Blend Images; p. 13 (BR): View Pictures; p. 26: Thomas Barwick/Digital Vision; p. 32 (T): Robert Harding; p. 32 (B): iStock; p. 40 (T): ivanastar/iStock; p. 40 (C): Wolfgang Ehn/LOOK-foto; p. 40 (B): michaeljung/iStock; p. 43 (TL): fstop123/E+; p. 43 (BR): Hill Street Studios/Blend Images; p. 45: Maskot; p. 50: Ezra Bailey/Taxi; p. 52 (TR): Phil Boorman/Cultura; p. 52 (BR) & p. 66 (photo 3): Hero Images; p. 55 (TR): PhotoAlto/Frederic Cirou; p. 55 (BL): Image Source; p. 56: gilaxia/E+; p. 58 (TR): Chris Ryan/The Image Bank; p. 58 (CR): omersukrugoksu/iStock; p. 58 (BR): Dougal Waters/DigitalVision; p. 60: Ezra Bailey/Iconica; p. 66 (photo 1): Sam Diephuis/Blend Images; p. 66 (photo 2): Colin Hawkins/Stone; p. 66 (photo 4): Blend Images/Trinette Reed; p. 66 (photo 5): Indeed; p. 66 (photo 6): Peter Dazeley/Photographer's Choice; p. 70 (TR): skynesher/E+; p. 70 (BR): monkeybusinessimages/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 76 (T): DmitriyOsipov/iStock; p. 76 (BR): RoBeDeRo/E+; p. 90 (TR): Chris Parker/Perspectives; p. 90 (BR): Betsie Van Der Meer/Taxi; p. 98 (photo 1): Thorsten Milse/robertharding; p. 98 (photo 2): ClaraNila/iStock; p. 98 (photo 3): EcoPic/iStock; p. 99: WLDavies/iStock; p. 101 (photo 1): Apriori1/iStock; p. 101 (photo 2): Walter Zerla/Blend Images; p. 101 (photo 3): Slava Bowman/EyeEm; p. 101 (photo 4): Anke Wittkowski/EyeEm; p. 101 (photo 5): Edwin Remsberg/The Image Bank; p. 101 (photo 6): mshch/iStock; p. 102: Robin Bush/Oxford Scientific; p. 109: Di_Studio/iStock; p. 110 (TR): tunart/E+; p. 110 (BR): Image Source/DigitalVision; p. 114 (fruits): 109508Liane Riss; p. 114 (vegetables): Teubner/StockFood Creative; p. 114 (pizza): Ed Nano/StockFood Creative; p. 114 (salad): Doram/E+; p. 120: StudioCampo; p. 121: Kirillica/iStock; p. 124: Yuri_Arcurs/DigitalVision.

Illustrations

Ludmila (KJA Artists), Katie Mac (NB Illustration), Martina (KJA Artists), Gavin Reece (New Division) and Miguel Diaz Rivas (Advocate Art).

Cambridge Dictionaries

Cambridge Dictionaries are the world's most widely used dictionaries for learners of English. The dictionaries are available in print and online at dictionary.cambridge.org. Copyright © Cambridge University Press, reproduced with permission.

Using this book

Why was this book written?

It was written to help you take your knowledge of phrasal verbs to a more advanced level. It is intended for students who already have at least an upper intermediate level of English. Many of you will have already worked with *English Phrasal Verbs in Use Intermediate* and this book builds on the work done there. However, it does not matter if you have gained your knowledge of phrasal verbs in a different way. We do not assume that you have used *English Phrasal Verbs in Use Intermediate*, although we do present and practise either different phrasal verbs in this book or, occasionally, more advanced uses of verbs that were presented in the lower level book.

How were the phrasal verbs in this book selected?

The approximately 1,000 phrasal verbs and related nouns and adjectives which are presented in this book were mainly selected from those identified as significant by the CANCODE corpus of spoken English developed at the University of Nottingham in association with Cambridge University Press, and the Cambridge International Corpus (now known as the Cambridge English Corpus) of written and spoken English. The phrasal verbs selected are accordingly also to be found in the *Cambridge Dictionary* online by going to the following website: http://dictionary.cambridge.org

How is the book organised?

The book has 60 two-page units. The left-hand page explains the phrasal verbs that are presented in the unit. You will usually find an explanation of the meaning of the phrasal verb, an example of it in use and, where appropriate, some comments on when and how it is used. The exercises on the right-hand page check that you have understood the information on the left-hand page and give you practice in using the material presented.

The units are organised into different sections.

First we start with important information about phrasal verbs in general (Units 1–4): what they are, how their grammar works and so on. We strongly recommend that you do these units first.

The next section looks at some interesting aspects of more advanced phrasal verbs, dealing with such important issues as collocation, register and metaphor. As these are themes that are returned to throughout the book, it is a good idea to work through these units before progressing to other more specific units.

After these two introductory sections, there is a section dealing with some of the most common particles used in forming phrasal verbs. Working on these units will help you to gain a feeling for the force of these particles and will help you have a feeling for the meaning of a phrasal verb you are meeting for the first time.

The next two sections deal with Concepts (e.g. Time) and Functions (e.g. Arranging things). These sections are followed by a large number of topic-based units focusing on different aspects of Work, Personal life and The world around us.

The final section looks at some of the most common verbs which are used to form phrasal verbs.

The book has a key to all the exercises so that you can check your answers. At the back of the book you will also find a useful Mini dictionary. This provides clear definitions of all the phrasal verbs and related noun and adjective forms that appear in this book. The Mini dictionary also indicates the unit number where you can find a particular phrasal verb.

How should I use this book?

It is strongly recommended that you work through Units 1–4 first so that you become familiar with the way phrasal verbs (and their associated nouns and adjectives) operate and with the terminology that is used in the rest of the book. Then we suggest that you move on to Units 5–8 and after that you may work on the units in any order that suits you.

What else do I need in order to work with this book?

You need a notebook or file so that you can write down the phrasal verbs that you study in the book as well as any others that you come across elsewhere.

You also need to have access to a good dictionary. We strongly recommend the *Cambridge Phrasal Verbs Dictionary* as this gives you exactly the kind of information that you need to have about phrasal verbs. Your teacher, however, may also be able to recommend other dictionaries that you may find useful.

So all that remains is to say **Go for it!** (Unit 30). We hope you'll find this an enjoyable as well as a useful way to keep up and extend your knowledge of English phrasal verbs in use.

1 Phrasal verbs: what are they and how are they used?

A What are phrasal verbs?

Phrasal verbs are verbs that consist of a verb and a particle (a preposition or adverb) or a verb and two particles (an adverb *and* a preposition, as in **get on with** or **look forward to**). They are identified by their grammar (more about that in Unit 2), but it is probably best to think of them as individual vocabulary items, to be learnt in phrases or chunks. They often – but not always – have a one-word equivalent. For example, you can **come across** a new phrasal verb or you can **encounter** it. You can **pick up** a language or you can **acquire** it. **Come across** and **pick up** sound less literary or formal than **encounter** or **acquire**.

B Why are phrasal verbs important?

Phrasal verbs are extremely common in English. They are found in a wide variety of contexts. You may have noticed them in songs, for example the Beatles' *I'll get by with a little help from my friends* or *Roll over Beethoven*, Bob Marley's *Get up, stand up* and Red Hot Chili Peppers' *Knock me down*. You find them in film titles such as *The Empire Strikes Back*, *Spirited Away*, *Along Came Polly* or *Cast Away*. They are very frequent in newspaper headlines. Here are just a few examples:

Country's misplaced pride **holds back** its democracy

Cricket: England **holds out** for a draw

Inquiry points to a **cover-up**

Turner **adds up** likely cost of pensions

Phrasal verbs are common in less formal English, but you will also hear or see and need to use them in more formal contexts. Register is discussed in more detail in Unit 6.

C Which phrasal verbs does this book deal with?

This book is based on information gained from the Cambridge International Corpus (a huge computerised database of present-day English) about phrasal verbs and how they are used in contemporary English. It focuses on phrasal verbs more advanced students need to know – but in general does not deal with the verbs in the lower level *English Phrasal Verbs in Use Intermediate*. It includes phrasal nouns such as **standby** or **onset** (see Unit 3) and phrasal adjectives such as **outgoing** or **worn out** (see Unit 4).

D What can I do to help myself master phrasal verbs?

Try to think positively about them! And, now you are at a more advanced level, try not just to understand them but also to use them in your own speaking and writing.

Keep an eye open for them whenever you are reading anything in English and make a note of any interesting ones you find. Write them down in a complete phrase or a sentence to fix in your mind how they are used.

Be aware that one of the special features of phrasal verbs is that some of them have many different meanings – for example, you can **pick** something **up** from the floor, you can **pick up** a language or bad habits, the weather can **pick up**, you can **pick up** a bargain, a radio can **pick up** a signal, the economy can **pick up**, you can **pick up** a story where you left it, you can **pick** someone **up** in your car. Sometimes the meanings are clearly related, some being more literal and some more metaphorical. Unit 7 deals with this in more detail.

In this book we may not present all the meanings of the verbs that are included. You may find others in *English Phrasal Verbs in Use Intermediate* and there are still more in the *Cambridge Phrasal Verbs Dictionary*.

Exercises

1.1 Underline the phrasal verbs in these texts. Remember the particle or preposition may not be immediately next to the verb.

1 I decided to take up gardening, so I took out a subscription to a gardening magazine and read up on the subject. I found out so many interesting things, such as the best time to plant flowers out for the summer and how to grow vegetables. I've really got into it now and spend hours in the garden every weekend.

2 The other day we went off on a hike in the mountains. We put our wet-weather gear on as the weather forecast wasn't good. We set off early to avoid the rush hour and soon reached the starting point for our walk. The whole walk took about four hours, and when we got back we were exhausted.

3 I have to catch up on my coursework this weekend as I've fallen behind a bit. I worked on it till midnight last night, but I still have loads to do. I have to hand one essay in on Tuesday and another one on Friday. I'm not sure whether I'll make it, but I'll try.

1.2 Choose the correct particle to finish these song titles.

1 Can't get you *off from* / *out of* / *away from* my head (Kylie Minogue)
2 Hold you *against* / *down* / *at* (Jennifer Lopez)
3 We can work it *with* / *across* / *out* (The Beatles)
4 Send *from* / *in* / *with* the clowns (Barbra Streisand)

1.3 Complete the sentences in the right-hand column with a phrasal noun or adjective based on the phrasal verbs in the left-hand column. Use a dictionary if necessary, and remember that the particle may come at the beginning or end of the noun or adjective.

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

1	The school took in some outstanding students last year.	Last year's .... included some outstanding students.
2	Some prisoners broke out of the local prison last night.	There was a(n) .... at the local prison last night.
3	It was an experience that put everyone off.	It was a(n) .... experience.
4	She always speaks out and gives her opinion.	She is very ....
5	A lorry which had broken down was blocking the road.	A .... lorry was blocking the road.

1.4 Match the headlines with the sentences from the stories.

1 BIG SHAKE-UP EXPECTED IN EDUCATION

2 MINISTER DENIES COVER-UP

3 **LOCKOUT CONTINUES AT AVIATION PLANT**

4 BREAKAWAY GROUP TO FORM NEW PARTY

5 POWER PLANT SHUTDOWN LEAVES 5,000 HOMES IN DARKNESS

a) The dispute is now in its fifth week.
b) Unity was no longer possible, a spokesperson said.
c) The event happened at 7.45 p.m. with no warning.
d) There will be major changes at all levels.
e) There was no attempt to hide the truth, claimed Pamela Harding.

2

Grammar of phrasal verbs

A

Phrasal verbs with and without objects

Some phrasal verbs take an object (transitive); others do not take an object (intransitive).

with object (transitive)	no object (intransitive)
They're **knocking down** the old hotel.	The path **branched off**[1] to the river.
The plumber soon **sorted out** the shower problem.	The noise of the train **died away**.
She **tied** her hair **back** so she could swim faster.	In the winter the lake **froze over**.

[1] if a road or path branches off, it goes in another direction

Some verbs can be used both with and without an object, but the meaning may change. Use the context to decide if the verb has a different meaning from the one you are familiar with.

Polly and Beth were so clever the teacher **moved** them **up** to a higher class. (with object)
Polly and Beth **moved up** to a higher class. (no object = same meaning)
I can **drop** you **off** at the station. (with object = drive you somewhere and leave you there)
I was sitting in the armchair and I **dropped off**. (no object = fell asleep, different meaning)

Some verbs must have two objects, one after the verb and one after the particle.

I always **associate** that song **with** our holiday in Jamaica.
Playing tennis for three hours every evening after school **deprived** her **of** her youth.

B

Position of the object

In many cases, the particle may come before or after the object.

The teacher **marked** the student **down** / **marked down** the student because her bibliography wasn't up to standard.

Very long objects usually come after the particle.

The accident **cut off** domestic and industrial water and electricity supplies.

When the object is a personal pronoun, the pronoun always comes before the particle.

noun object	personal pronoun object
I **picked** my parents **up** / **picked up** my parents and drove them to the airport.	I'll **pick** you **up** at 5.30. (Not: ~~I'll **pick up** you at 5.30~~.)

Some verbs (sometimes called prepositional verbs) must have the object after the particle, even if it is a pronoun. A good dictionary will tell you if this is so.

We've had to **contend with** a lot of problems lately. (Not: ~~**contend**~~ a lot of problems ~~**with**~~) [deal with a difficult or unpleasant situation]

You probably already know some of these verbs (**look for**, **look after**, **cope with**).

C

Three-part verbs

Some phrasal verbs have three parts – the verb and two particles. The object comes last.

I will not **put up with** such bad behaviour. [tolerate]

Other examples include **look forward to**, **look down on**, **get on with**, **catch up on** [do something you did not have time to do earlier], **face up to** [accept that a difficult or unpleasant situation exists].

Exercises

2.1 Look at A. Do these sentences need an object? If they do, add an appropriate one in the correct place.

EXAMPLE Last summer we knocked down.

Yes. *Knock down* is transitive; it needs an object.
Last summer we knocked down the old shed in our garden.

1 The sound of the violin slowly died away.
2 If you're ready to leave now, I can drop off at your office.
3 The river in St Petersburg freezes over for several months each year.
4 My son is so good at English that I think the teacher should move up to the advanced class.
5 I associate with that evening we spent together in Rome.
6 I was so tired that I dropped off in front of the TV.

2.2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences. If you can do it in two different ways, then do so.

1 pick / off / you / work / the / I / and / can / at / you / from / airport / up / drop / then
2 from / that / put / teacher / she / The / not / would / said / with / such / up / class / rudeness / her
3 villages / The / off / several / have / mountains / in / cut / the / floods
4 your / doesn't / the / improve / down / If / will / spelling / mark / examiners / you
5 always / Margot / to / with / all / seems / her / cheerfully / problems / cope

2.3 Rewrite each sentence using the verb in brackets in an appropriate form.

1 I'll have to ask my daughter to get my Internet connection working. (SORT)
2 I was so tired after work that I fell asleep in the train on the way home. (DROP)
3 I was given a lower mark because my essay was over the word limit. (MARK)
4 Jason has no right to despise me – he's no better than I am. (LOOK)
5 Lara doesn't have a good relationship with one of her flatmates. (GET)
6 You have to accept the fact that you will probably never see each other again. (FACE)
7 Maria has got a new job taking care of an old lady. (LOOK)
8 If you don't let the children get enough sleep, they won't be able to concentrate at school. (DEPRIVE)
9 In Lapland we had to manage in some difficult driving conditions. (CONTEND)
10 The road to our house leaves the main road just after the service station. (BRANCH)

2.4 Write answers to these questions using the phrasal verb in brackets.

1 What are your plans for the summer holidays? (LOOK FORWARD TO)
2 What homework have you got to do this weekend? (CATCH UP ON)
3 If you've been away somewhere by train and arrive back late, how do you usually get home from the station? (PICK UP)
4 What is your favourite album and why do you like it? (ASSOCIATE WITH)
5 What sorts of things make you feel stressed? (CONTEND WITH)
6 How easy do you find it to fall asleep at night? (DROP OFF)

Over to you

Look up these verbs in your dictionary: *associate with, deprive of, contend with* and *face up to*. How does your dictionary give information about the structures that these verbs require? What nouns do these verbs typically combine with according to the examples in your dictionary?

3 Phrasal nouns

A What are phrasal nouns?

Like phrasal verbs, phrasal nouns consist of a verb combined with a particle. The particle may come before or after the verb.

phrasal noun	meaning	example
standby	ready to be used if necessary	My wife's a pilot and she's on **standby** over the weekend. We're keeping the old equipment as a **standby**, in case of emergencies.
letdown	disappointment	I had been looking forward to the concert for weeks, but it turned out to be a terrible **letdown**.
back-up	support	Nicholas can provide technical **back-up** if you need it.
warm-up	preparation	The comedian who did the **warm-up** for the studio audience before the TV programme started was excellent.
onset	start (of something unpleasant)	The match was halted by the **onset** of torrential rain.
input	contribution	Try to come to the meeting – we'd value your **input**.
overkill	more of something than is needed	Shall I add some more decorations to the cake or would that be **overkill**?

Some such nouns have a corresponding phrasal verb, but some don't. For example, there is no phrasal verb ~~to kill over~~. The phrasal verb **set on** exists but it means attack. The verb related to **onset** is **set in**: We couldn't continue playing after the rain **set in**.

If the particle is in first place, then the phrasal noun is never written with a hyphen. If the particle comes second, then there is sometimes a hyphen between the two parts of the phrasal noun, particularly if that particle is *in* or *up* or if the phrasal noun is relatively infrequent, e.g. **walk-on** [small part, with no words, in a play], **stand-off**.

B When are phrasal nouns used?

Phrasal nouns are used frequently in newspapers and informal conversation.

STOWAWAY[1] FOUND ON PLANE

STAND-OFF[2] IN TRADE TALKS

WALKOUT[3] AT CAR FACTORY

SINGER STAGES A **COMEBACK**

BREAKDOWN IN STRIKE TALKS

MANAGEMENT **BUYOUT** FOR HIGH STREET CHAIN

HELP FOR BUSINESS **START-UPS**

MILITARY **BUILD-UP**[4] CONTINUES

[1] person hiding in order to travel
[2] failure to reach agreement
[3] strike
[4] increase in size or strength

Annie	Who do you think will get the job – Paul or Elsa?
Finn	I don't know. It's a **toss-up**. [(informal) both seem equally likely]

Lily	Did you have a good time at football last night?
David	Yes, but we didn't have a real game, just a **knockabout**.

Tip

The stress is on the first syllable in these nouns regardless of whether this is the verb or the particle.

Exercises

3.1 Complete these sentences using a phrasal noun from A opposite.

1 The .... of winter meant that there was less food for the animals and birds.
2 I thought having a 45-piece orchestra at their wedding really was .... , personally.
3 The police officer radioed for .... before entering the bank.
4 Let's ask Joel what he thinks. I always find his .... very useful in these matters.
5 TV producers find that studio audiences react better if they have a .... to watch before a live programme.
6 Our holiday in the Mediterranean was a bit of a .... The hotel was second-rate and the food was awful.
7 Although Cameron usually rides his new road bike to school now, he's kept his old bike as a ....

3.2 Rewrite these sentences, starting with the cues given, using phrasal nouns from the opposite page instead of the underlined words.

1 Two men who had stowed away in the container were arrested when police opened it.
The police opened the container and ....
2 Negotiations with union members broke down after a couple of hours.
There was a ....
3 The management bought out the company in 2014.
There was a ....
4 Last night all the workers walked out and the factory was forced to close.
There was a ....
5 Military forces are continuing to build up on both sides of the border.
The military ....

3.3 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal nouns in these sentences.

1 There has been a stand-up for several days now in the talks between the government and the rebels. Neither side will make any concessions.
2 Last year there were 15,000 new Internet business start-offs, most of which only survived for a few months.
3 After years without releasing an album, Madeleine Flame has staged a comeagain with her new collection of love songs.
4 **Holly** Have you decided where you're going this summer?
Flora Not really. It's a toss-over whether it'll be Italy or Greece.
5 I met Nasser and we just had a knockover on the college football pitch for half an hour.

3.4 Choose the correct phrasal noun in each sentence. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

1 *Putout / Output* has increased this year and the factory is doing well.
2 One of the robbers acted as *lookout / outlook* while the others robbed the bank.
3 There was a sudden *pourdown / downpour* and we all got very wet.
4 The *breakout / outbreak* of war in 1914 changed Europe for ever.
5 *Lift-off / Off-lift* is scheduled for 07.00 on Friday and the astronauts will arrive at the space station later that day.
6 There was *a break-in / an in-break* at our office last night. Two computers were stolen.

4 Phrasal adjectives

Some phrasal verbs have related adjectives. Make a note of these as you meet them.

phrasal verb	adjective	meaning	example
go on	**ongoing**	one which continues	We've had an **ongoing** problem with the computer system.
wear out	**worn out**	weak, damaged through much use	She was wearing old, **worn-out** shoes.
break down	**broken-down**	one that has stopped working	In our garage we've got an old **broken-down** fridge.

However, this is not the case for all such adjectives. We can say 'that way of thinking is very **outdated**', but there is no related verb ~~to date out~~; we can say 'the restaurant was really **overpriced**', but there is no phrasal verb ~~to price over~~ (the verb is 'to overprice').

Note the phrasal adjectives in these extracts from people talking about their dreams and ambitions.

I'm an **outgoing** sort of person, so I want a career where I mix with people. To be honest, I find the idea of a desk job quite **off-putting**[1]; I just don't think I'd like it at all. I'd love to do something new, something completely different.

[1] makes you not like it or not want to do it

I've always been very **outspoken**. I'm never afraid to express my opinion, so I think a job campaigning for an environmental organisation would suit me. I would never accept any **watered-down**[2] proposals and would make some very direct demands of our political leaders.

[2] made less strong in order to make more people agree with them

I always feel completely **tired out** at the end of the day in my present job and just want to sleep. Instead of feeling cheerful after a good weekend, I always feel quite **downcast**[3] every Monday when the new week starts, so I want something new and more stimulating, preferably with a more **go-ahead** company which will bring interest and excitement into my work.

[3] sad and depressed

Here are some more examples in small advertisements and announcements.

Forthcoming[4] events at the City Stadium

Live-in nanny wanted for 3-year-old.

Caravan for sale: **built-in** fridge, freezer and satellite TV

[4] happening in the near future

Fold-up picnic chair for sale. As new.

For rent, cosy one-room flat with **foldaway** bed. Ideal for student.

Tip

When you come across a phrasal adjective, check to see whether it has a 'matching' verb and, if so, learn the two together.

Exercises

4.1 **Replace the adjective in each sentence with a phrasal adjective with the opposite meaning.**

1 There was a new carpet on the stairs.
2 The newsletter has a list of recent activities at the tennis club.
3 What's happened? You're looking very cheerful!
4 Unlike her sister, Emily is very introverted.
5 I find the cover of this novel very attractive, don't you?
6 It doesn't matter what time of day it is, Polina always looks fresh.
7 We are not in the habit of going to such cheap restaurants.
8 When you meet my boss I think you'll find her surprisingly uncommunicative.

4.2 **What do these pictures show?**

1 a .... chair
2 a .... car
3 a .... oven
4 a .... bed

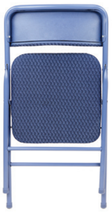
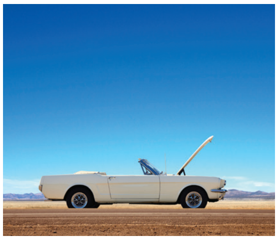
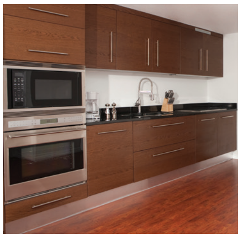
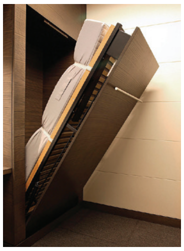

4.3 **Answer these questions about the words on the opposite page.**

1 Can you think of one advantage and one disadvantage for parents of having a live-in nanny?
2 In what kind of room might it be particularly useful to have a foldaway bed?
3 What kind of job would not be suitable for a very outspoken person?
4 When might you want to give a watered-down version of something that happened to you?
5 What kind of job requires you to be outgoing?
6 What kind of problem tends to be ongoing?
7 What might you find off-putting if you are having a meal in a restaurant?
8 What sorts of things do you think are often overpriced?

4.4 **Match the pairs of synonyms in the box below.**

broken-down	candid	continuing	diluted	downcast	dynamic
exhausted	extrovert	forthcoming	future	go-ahead	miserable
not working	obsolete	off-putting	ongoing	outdated	outgoing
outspoken	repellent	shabby	tired-out	watered-down	worn out

4.5 **Here are some more phrasal adjectives. Work out from the context what they mean and rewrite the sentences replacing the underlined words with a word or phrase that means the same.**

1 If the union doesn't accept our terms, what should we have as our fallback position?
2 Clara always feels left out when her brother's friends come round to play.
3 Julian is usually chatty but his sister is not very forthcoming.
4 You shouldn't get so worked up about every little thing.
5 Zack met me at the airport with outstretched arms.

5

Collocation and phrasal verbs

A

Why is collocation important?

Collocation means the way words combine with one another. When learning a phrasal verb, it is important to note what kinds of words the verb is typically used with. For example, can it be used for both people and things, or only for people, or only for things? Is it typically used with negative things or can it be used for both positive and negative things?

Look at this chart for the verb **pore over** [study or look carefully at something] and note how the objects it is used with refer especially to books or documents.

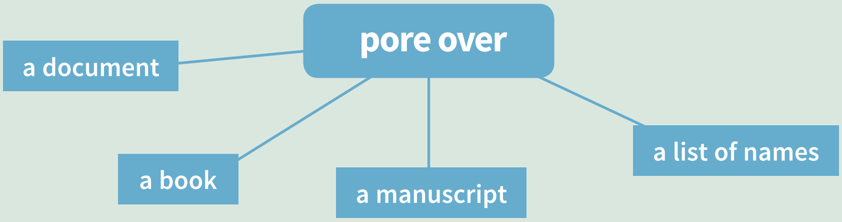

Making a note of collocations in this way will help you remember the meaning of the phrasal verb. It is a good idea to learn the verb and its typical collocations as chunks of language. This will help you to speak and write more fluently.

B

Collocations with positive or negative/problematic things

Make a note if a phrasal verb collocates especially with positive or negative things.

☑ typical/correct collocation ☒ untypical/wrong collocation

The plan was **riddled with** problems ☑ good ideas ☒.
The rain ☑ The traffic ☑ The fine weather ☒ has **eased off/up** now.
After hours of discussion, we **hit on** a good idea ☑ the solution ☑ a stupid plan ☒.

C

Collocations with objects denoting people or things

Make a note if a phrasal verb collocates especially with objects denoting people or things, or both.

I've really **gone off** Sienna ☑ cheese ☑ recently.
I'd advise you to **keep in with** the boss ☑ Andrew ☑ the exam system ☒.

D

Collocations with subjects denoting people or things

Make a note if a phrasal verb collocates especially with subjects denoting people or things, or both.

As we opened the door, **water streamed into** the room. ☑
People were streaming into the meeting. ☑
I have to dash off. I have a meeting in ten minutes. ☑
The car dashed off along the motorway. ☒ [**headed off / drove off at high speed** would be more typical]

E

Collocations with particular situations

Make a note of particular situations a phrasal verb typically refers to.

He just **sailed through** his exams ☑ the interview ☑ his breakfast ☒. [**sail through** is used with challenging things and situations]
I was always **hankering after** an easier life ☑ sweet food while I was on a diet ☑ passing my exams ☒. [**hanker after** is most often used with things we cannot or should not have]

Exercises

5.1 Answer the following questions.

1 What does the word *collocation* mean?
2 Which of these are correct collocations?
  a) pore over a book
  b) pore over a view
  c) pore over a manuscript
  d) pore over a flower
  e) pore over a list of names
3 What do the nouns that collocate with *pore over* have in common?
4 Why is it helpful to learn phrasal verbs in collocations?
5 What sorts of things might you note down about what a phrasal verb collocates with?

5.2 Do the sentences below show appropriate collocations or not?

1 When we took our old dog to the vet, she discovered he was riddled with disease.
2 The pain in his leg seems to be beginning to ease off now.
3 You can always rely on Joseph to hit on an idea that will never work.
4 I used to enjoy that TV series but I've gone off it a bit now.
5 It's usually a good idea to keep in with your bank account.

5.3 Complete these sentences using the correct particles.

1 There is no point in hankering .... your lost youth.
2 When her housemate rang to say that water was streaming .... the basement, Maria dashed .... to the station to catch a train home.
3 I always find job interviews really difficult, but my brother seems to sail .... them.
4 We'll have to cut down that tree – it's riddled .... disease.
5 When my sister was pregnant she drank a lot of milk, but she completely went .... tea and coffee.
6 Liam was bullied a bit when he started school, but it seems to have eased .... now.
7 You should apologise to Juliette's mother. It's sensible to keep .... your future in-laws.

5.4 Rewrite each sentence using the verb in brackets in an appropriate form.

1 Helena easily passed her driving test. (SAIL)
2 I really don't like coffee any more. (GO)
3 The wind is less strong than it was now. (EASE)
4 If I have a problem, I find a walk by the sea often helps me to find a solution. (HIT)
5 Masses of people entered the shop as soon as it opened, hoping to find a bargain in the sale. (STREAM)
6 There are a lot of holes in his argument. (RIDDLE)

Over to you

Look back at any other phrasal verbs you have recently written in your vocabulary notebooks. Write them down in some typical collocations. You will find these in the example sentences of a good dictionary, e.g. the *Cambridge Phrasal Verbs Dictionary*.

6 Register

A Phrasal verbs in the English lexicon

The word *register* is often used to refer to whether a word is formal or informal. It can also be used to refer to the language associated with a particular job or interest.

English vocabulary is particularly rich because it combines a large vocabulary originating from Anglo-Saxon roots with a large vocabulary originating from Latin or French. This means that English often has words with very similar meanings from each of these sources. To give a phrasal verb example, you can **put forward** or **propose** an idea, where **put forward** (like the majority of phrasal verbs) has a typical Anglo-Saxon etymology, whereas **propose** is of Latin origin. It is interesting to note that **propose** comes from the Latin prefix *pro-* [= forward] added to the Latin root *-pose* [= put]; there are many other examples of where the Latin etymology parallels the etymology of its phrasal verb equivalent. Words of Latin or French origin tend to be more formal and so ‘proposing an idea’ is found more frequently in formal written English than in informal spoken English.

Although phrasal verbs are typical of more informal English, many – like **put forward**, for example – will also be found in neutral or formal as well as informal contexts. Most phrasal verbs are like this. Some phrasal verbs, however, are only used in either informal or formal situations. We indicate throughout the book when this is the case.

B Informal phrasal verbs

Serge How’s things, Jessie? Is work OK these days?

Jessica Not really. Sophie’s **gunning for**[1] me. I think she’s after my job. I **mucked up**[2] an important deal yesterday and she was so thrilled!

Serge Don’t pay any attention to her.

Jessica I know, but the trouble is Tim’s **ganged up with**[3] her now too. So it’s got much worse. They **hang around**[4] together in every break and after work too. If Sophie doesn’t **shoot down**[5] one of my ideas, Tim does.

Serge Well, they’re **asking for**[6] trouble, aren’t they? You know your boss respects you, don’t you?

Jessica Yes, I **couldn’t ask for**[7] a better boss, that’s for sure. But she’s got more important things on her plate than sorting out petty office squabbles.

[1] (only used in continuous) trying to cause trouble for somebody
[2] did very badly with
[3] formed a group to act against me
[4] spend a lot of time (with)
[5] criticise strongly
[6] (only used in continuous) behaving in a way that is sure to create problems for them
[7] couldn’t ever find, because this person (or thing) is the best of their kind

C Formal phrasal verbs

In the first five examples below, the base verb is in itself formal. The base verb here is of Latin rather than Anglo-Saxon origin. In the final three examples, it is the specific usage rather than the base verb which is formal.

The authorities finally **acceded to** his request for a work permit. [agreed to]
We will **attend to** your request in due course. [deal with]
He **ascribes** his success **to** hard work in his youth. [explains]
The presence of the gene may **predispose** a person **to** heart disease. [make more likely]
James Hansen is to **preside over** the government inquiry. [be in charge of]
Some new facts have emerged which **bear on** the Smith case. [are connected to]
The castaways had to **call on** all their strength to survive. [use]
All her life the princess had never **wanted for** anything. [needed]

Exercises

6.1 Replace the phrasal verbs in the letter with verbs from the box to make it more formal.

meet
continue
complain
respond
remedy
investigate
achieve

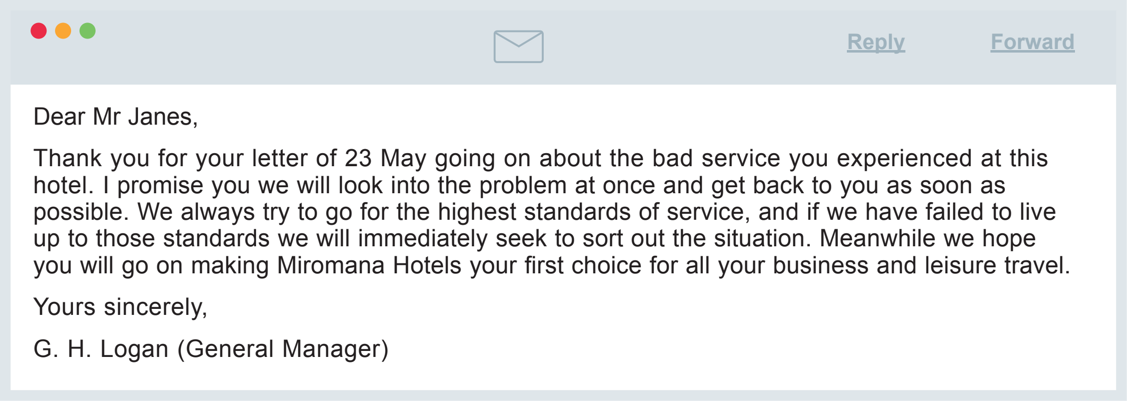

Dear Mr Janes,

Thank you for your letter of 23 May going on about the bad service you experienced at this hotel. I promise you we will look into the problem at once and get back to you as soon as possible. We always try to go for the highest standards of service, and if we have failed to live up to those standards we will immediately seek to sort out the situation. Meanwhile we hope you will go on making Miromana Hotels your first choice for all your business and leisure travel.

Yours sincerely,

G. H. Logan (General Manager)

6.2 Now do the opposite with these sentences. Use phrasal verbs from the box to make the sentences less formal. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

go into
call in on
fall through
buy up
put out
get by
go over to
take on
look after
ask out

1 Will you attend to Aunt Elsie while I go and get the children's supper ready?
2 He explored the subject in great detail in his lecture.
3 When the president died his son assumed the title of Great Leader.
4 I like her. Do you think I should invite her to go out with me?
5 During the war he defected to the enemy side and was killed in action.
6 She purchased all the shares in the company last year.
7 The local newspaper published a story about a strange animal seen in the city park.
8 I think I'll visit my grandfather on the way home from work.
9 The deal collapsed at the last minute.
10 I managed to survive on about €70 a day when I was travelling.

6.3 Which professional registers are these phrasal verbs associated with? Put each of them into one of the three categories below. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

sell up
back up
turn over
sum up
gloss over
bail out
log in
scroll down/up
carry forward
take over
base on
square up
put forward
hack into
print off

computers and technology	academic lectures/writing	money and business

6.4 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets in an appropriate form.

1 Despite his family's poverty, Alfie always has everything he needs. (WANT)
2 You must inform the police if you have evidence relating to the case. (BEAR)
3 Jack will have to use all his ingenuity to resolve the situation. (CALL)
4 The president believes his party's victory is due to his leadership. (ASCRIBE)
5 The manager will deal with your enquiry without delay. (ATTEND)

7 Meaning and metaphor

A Multiple meanings

Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning. Often, the basic meaning relates to some physical action, while other meanings are metaphorical (i.e. they are figurative, not literal). For example, the meanings in the grey boxes below are literal and the others are figurative.

phrasal verb	definition of phrasal verb	example
run over	hit sth/sb with a moving vehicle and injure or kill them	I **ran over** a rabbit as I was driving home. It really upset me.
	go on after its expected time	The meeting **ran over** so I missed my train.
	read quickly to make sure something is correct	Could we just **run over** the schedule again to make sure it's all going to work?
brush sth/sb **off**	use a brush (or hand) to remove something	I **brushed off** the dust from my shoes.
	refuse to listen to what someone says, or refuse to think about something seriously	The boss just **brushed** him **off** and told him to get back to work.

B Examples of metaphors based on quick or violent actions

The price of petrol has **shot up** this year. [gone up rapidly and sharply]

I don't want to just **dive into** a new job without carefully considering it. [start doing something suddenly and energetically without thinking about it]

The leader of the opposition party has **hit out at** the government's new proposals on tax. [strongly criticised, typical of journalism]

My success in the exam **spurred** me **on** to study even harder. [spurs are worn on the ankle and are used to make a horse go faster; here the meaning is 'encouraged me']

C Metaphors and context

The context will usually tell you that a verb is being used in a metaphorical way. Look at these extracts from the advice column of a magazine which use phrasal verbs metaphorically rather than literally.

Don't just **stand by** and let others have all the fun. It's time to **strike out** on your own and do something completely different. **Sweep aside** all your inhibitions and start living life to the full. It all **boils down to** whether you are prepared to take control of life or let life control you.

You must find the strength to **drag** yourself **away** from your domestic responsibilities for a short while and stop feeling **sandwiched between** your family and your career. Doing everything single-handed is **eating into** all your free time and you need time to think. You can't be expected to **soldier on** on your own any longer.

D More examples of phrasal verbs used metaphorically

She searched in her bag and **fished out** an old photograph.
We wandered round the old market, just **drinking in** the atmosphere.
He spends hours **glued to** his computer every evening.
We found this vase when we were just **nosing around** in an antique shop.
People were **flooding into** the stadium two hours before the concert.

Exercises

7.1 Look at A and B opposite. Read the email and then answer the questions below using your own words rather than the phrasal verbs in the email.

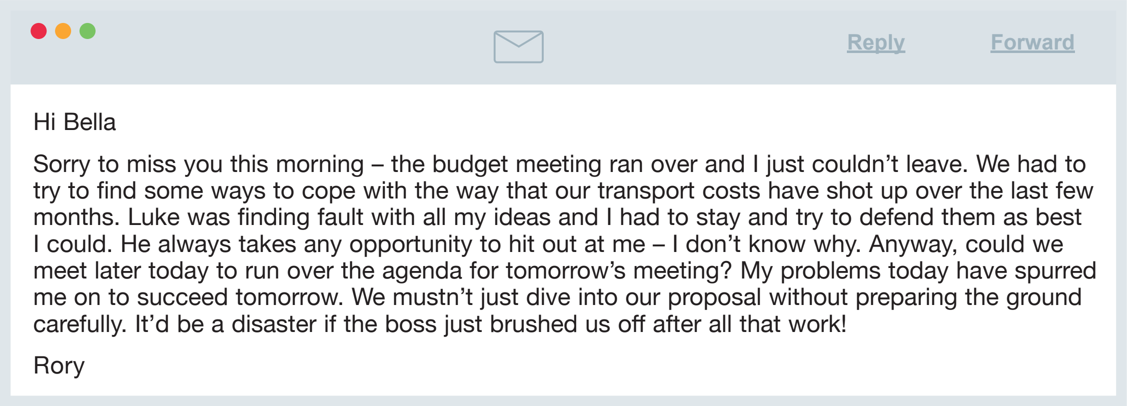

Hi Bella

Sorry to miss you this morning – the budget meeting ran over and I just couldn't leave. We had to try to find some ways to cope with the way that our transport costs have shot up over the last few months. Luke was finding fault with all my ideas and I had to stay and try to defend them as best I could. He always takes any opportunity to hit out at me – I don't know why. Anyway, could we meet later today to run over the agenda for tomorrow's meeting? My problems today have spurred me on to succeed tomorrow. We mustn't just dive into our proposal without preparing the ground carefully. It'd be a disaster if the boss just brushed us off after all that work!

Rory

1 When did the budget meeting end?
2 What has happened to transport costs recently?
3 How does Luke usually behave towards Rory?
4 What does Rory want to do with Bella this afternoon regarding tomorrow's agenda?
5 Has today's meeting made Rory more or less determined about tomorrow's meeting?
6 What does Rory not want to do with their proposal at tomorrow's meeting?
7 What is he afraid that the boss might do to them?

7.2 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences using a phrasal verb from C or D opposite.

1 It's not good for children to spend too much time just watching a screen.
2 Choosing a university course is a matter of deciding what you want to do with your life.
3 I arrived at the stadium early and watched the other spectators entering in large numbers.
4 Laura reluctantly left the window and returned to her desk.
5 Sam was staring at Megan, listening intently to every word she said.
6 George dismissed all objections to his plan, saying they were unimportant.

7.3 Complete these sentences with a phrasal verb from the opposite page.

1 It is terrible how the world just .... and lets such terrible things happen!
2 Despite all his difficulties, Douglas does his best to bravely ....
3 William reached into his pocket and .... his passport.
4 When I go to a new town I love .... the back streets.
5 You mustn't let your social life .... your study time.
6 The politician simply .... the allegations being made against him.
7 When he was 30 Mario left his uncle's business and .... on his own.
8 Our little house is .... a bank and a supermarket.

7.4 Here are some more phrasal verbs which can be used metaphorically. How are their literal and metaphorical meanings connected? Use a dictionary if necessary.

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

1 I've left you some soup which you can **warm up** when you get home.
A fantastic singer **warmed up** the audience before the main programme started.
2 The boy wasn't looking where he was going and **fell into** a hole in the ground.
Alexander **fell into** his first job as soon as he had left university.
3 The cat got up the tree but didn't seem able to **climb down**.
Molly always wants to win an argument – you'll never get her to **climb down**.

8 Idioms using phrasal verbs

A Problems at work and home

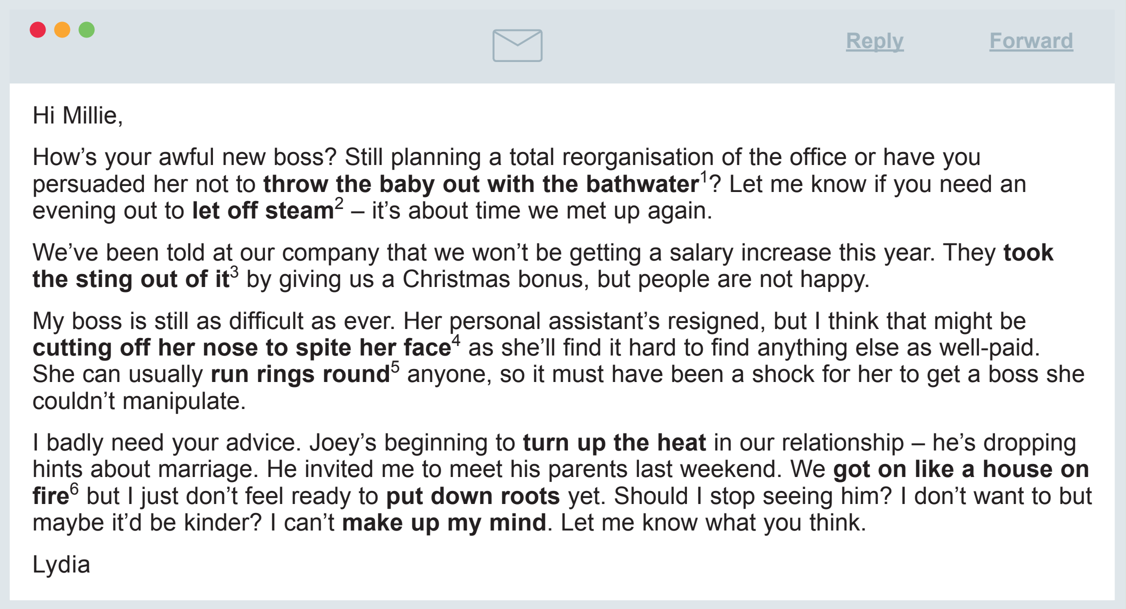

Hi Millie,

How's your awful new boss? Still planning a total reorganisation of the office or have you persuaded her not to **throw the baby out with the bathwater**[1]? Let me know if you need an evening out to **let off steam**[2] – it's about time we met up again.

We've been told at our company that we won't be getting a salary increase this year. They **took the sting out of it**[3] by giving us a Christmas bonus, but people are not happy.

My boss is still as difficult as ever. Her personal assistant's resigned, but I think that might be **cutting off her nose to spite her face**[4] as she'll find it hard to find anything else as well-paid. She can usually **run rings round**[5] anyone, so it must have been a shock for her to get a boss she couldn't manipulate.

I badly need your advice. Joey's beginning to **turn up the heat** in our relationship – he's dropping hints about marriage. He invited me to meet his parents last weekend. We **got on like a house on fire**[6] but I just don't feel ready to **put down roots** yet. Should I stop seeing him? I don't want to but maybe it'd be kinder? I can't **make up my mind**. Let me know what you think.

Lydia

[1] get rid of the good parts of something as well as the bad parts
[2] talk or act in a way that helps get rid of strong feelings
[3] make something that is unpleasant less so
[4] doing something because you are angry though it may cause you more problems
[5] outwit, be cleverer than
[6] immediately liked each other

B Progress meeting

Oscar Well, Anna, you've been here for a month now and it's time we had a little chat.

Anna OK. Well, I know I **got off on the wrong foot**[1] by deleting all last year's client information, but I hope you'll agree I've **got my act together**[2] now?

Oscar Erm, not exactly. I've tried my best to show you where you're going wrong, but I just appear to **be going round in circles**[3]. Nothing ever seems to get any better. You **dig your heels in**[4] and don't make any effort to change.

Anna Oh, I don't think that's fair. I'm sure Stan would **put in a good word for me**[5]. I've helped him out with one of his projects.

Oscar Hmm, well Stan needs to **clean up his act**[6] too. If you don't start **making up for lost time**[7] soon, we're going to have to let you go.

Anna Oh, no, please. Just give me a bit more authority and I'll **come into my own**[8].

Oscar Oh, Anna. **Wake up to the fact**[9] that you won't get any more authority unless you **pull out all the stops**[10] and your work improves significantly.

[1] started badly
[2] (informal) organised myself more effectively
[3] using a lot of time and effort with no results
[4] refuse to do what others try to persuade you to do
[5] say good things about me to someone in authority
[6] (informal) start to behave better
[7] doing something to compensate for not doing it previously
[8] be very successful
[9] be realistic
[10] do all you can

Exercises

8.1 Answer these questions.

1 What should you not throw out with the bathwater?
2 What expression uses a burning house as a metaphor for a good relationship?
3 What expression uses steam as a metaphor for strong feelings?
4 According to the idiom, why might people cut off their own nose?
5 What idiom means 'ease an unpleasant situation' and refers to what bees can do?
6 Which two phrasal verb idioms refer to circular motion?

8.2 Complete these sentences using expressions from 8.1.

1 Refusing that job offer just because you're annoyed about the interview would be cutting .... your .... to .... your ....
2 When she came back to the UK, Harriet decided it was time she .... down .... and she bought a little cottage not far from here.
3 The robbers .... round the police. It took two years to catch them.
4 The extra day's holiday we offered should take the .... out .... the pay cut.
5 I felt as if I was just going .... in .... and getting nowhere.
6 We should keep the better parts of the old system when we move over to the new system. We don't want to .... the .... out with the bathwater.
7 Isaac and Matthew .... on like a .... on fire; they're great friends.
8 I don't think she was really angry with you; she was just .... steam.

8.3 Cross out the five mistakes in this text and write the correct form in the box next to that line.

After a year of travelling, I decided to ~~put~~ my act together and get a job. A friend who worked for a bank put in some good words for me. In fact he pushed in all the stops and arranged for me to have lunch with the CEO. I got on the wrong feet by saying I wasn't ready to plant down roots yet; I think they were looking for someone to make a long-term commitment. I should have kept quiet!

1 ....get...............
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....

8.4 Complete these dialogues using phrasal verbs from the opposite page so that the second speaker agrees with and repeats more or less what the first speaker says.

1 **Michael** Alice seems determined not to agree to the new plan.
Juan Yes, she really seems to be digging ....

2 **Sarah** Wow, my Uncle Joshua is 75 and he's getting married for the first time!
Amelia Really? He's obviously trying to make up ....!

3 **Luis** Charles lives in a fantasy world. He thinks he can make a living writing poetry.
Ava That's crazy! He should wake up .... that poets never make any money!

4 **Eva** Teddy has been very successful in his new career.
Gabriel Yes, he really seems to have come into ....

5 **Robert** The boss seems to be getting very serious about the new sales campaign lately.
Dan Yes, he's really turning up ....

6 **Franck** I think it's time I made a decision.
Daisy Yes, it's time for you to make up ....

9 Around and about

Around and *about* are often (but not always) interchangeable in phrasal verbs. A good dictionary will tell you whether they can both be used. The only verbs on this page where both are not possible are marked *.

A Basic meaning of *around* and *about* in phrasal verbs

Around and *about* keep a lot of their basic meaning in many phrasal verbs. They often indicate activities and situations taking place in various locations, often without having a clear direction or order.

> There were books **lying around** everywhere in the room.
> The children were **running about** in the garden.

Phrasal verbs with *around* and *about* are often informal. Look at this conversation between two teachers.

Holly Rumours have been **flying around** the staffroom lately that you're leaving. Is it true?

Jake It amazes me how news **gets around** in this place! I did say to one or two people that I was tired of being **bossed around** by you-know-who, and, I have **asked around*** here and there to see if they need any full-time teachers, but I haven't made a decision yet.

Holly Oh, right. I heard the other day that Eleanor is sick of **running around* after** you-know-who sorting out problems he's caused. So she might leave too. By the way, do you have a copy of that new grammar book? I want to show it to my students. My copy's **floating about** here somewhere but I just can't find it.

Jake Yes, I think I have a copy **lying around** here somewhere … Yes, here you are.

Holly Thanks very much. So, what are you up to this weekened?

Jake Nothing much, just **pottering about** at home, really. Oh goodness! Is that the time? I have a class now.

Holly OK, see you later. Don't forget that we **switched** our classrooms **around** this afternoon. You're in Room 2.

Note that in **boss around**, *around* emphasises the fact that the person is *frequently* being bossed by someone else, not the fact that this occurs in different places.

B Other uses of *around* and *about*

Here are some other phrasal verbs which use *around* and *about*.

> Children! Stop **playing around**! Sit politely. [behaving stupidly]
>
> The neighbours have been **banging about** next door all morning. I wonder what they're doing. [making loud noises, for example hammering or moving heavy objects]
>
> Theo was **clowning around** at the party last night. It got very irritating. [acting in a silly way]
>
> Politicians often **skirt around*** the truth and don't give direct answers to questions. [avoid discussing a difficult subject or problem]
>
> It's a problem, but I'm sure we can **work around*** it in some way. [organise our activities to ensure that the problem does not prevent us from doing what we want to do]

Exercises

9.1 Choose the correct word to complete these sentences.

1 I couldn't get to sleep because of Owen .... around upstairs.
a) banging b) lying c) switching
2 Wait a moment – the document you need is .... about here somewhere.
a) flying b) floating c) running
3 I think we should stop the car and let the children .... around for a bit.
a) get b) lie c) run
4 The room looks different. Have you .... the furniture around?
a) pottered b) switched c) banged
5 If you .... around, you might be able to find someone with a car for sale.
a) ask b) boss c) play
6 I hate the way rumours .... around the office.
a) run b) fly c) lie
7 You really shouldn't leave such important papers .... about.
a) clowning b) lying c) playing
8 Yanis made the children laugh by .... around with pieces of fruit.
a) banging b) getting c) clowning

9.2 Complete each dialogue using a verb from the box with *around* or *about*.

boss get ask clown lie

1 **Isla** I need to find a flat to rent in London. Do you know of anything available?
Katie No, but I'll ....

2 **Sara** Do you know where the extension lead is?
Milo Yes, I think it might be .... in my study somewhere.

3 **Adam** How did Hugo know we're getting married?
Zara Well, news like that .... very quickly.

4 **Ava** Do you get on well with your sister?
Ella Yes, on the whole, though she .... me .... a bit too much.

5 **Amber** What do you think of Freddie?
Louis I find the way he always .... a bit childish.

9.3 Complete these sentences with phrasal verbs from the opposite page. Put the verb in the correct form. Sometimes more than one verb is possible.

1 I thought Alex was just .... in his bedroom today, but in fact he's been really busy. He's tidied up all the books and papers that were .... on the floor. He's also .... his bed and his desk, which makes the room feel bigger.
2 When I was a child I used to hate visiting Great Uncle Edward. He wouldn't allow us children to .... in case we broke anything, and he was always .... us .... , getting us to .... after him, doing odd jobs for him.
3 Do you think we could find a way to .... the problem of having to get written permission from everyone to use the photographs in our book?
4 I think we should be honest with everyone and not try to .... the issue.
5 We hear people .... every night in the flat upstairs. All sorts of rumours have been .... among the neighbours as to what is going on up there.

Over to you

Look up these words in your dictionary: *crowd around, knock* sth *about/around, knock* sb *about/around, turn around, turn* sth *around, roll about/around, blunder about/around*. Make a note of the meanings of these words and record them with an example sentence.

10 Down

A *Down* meaning lower

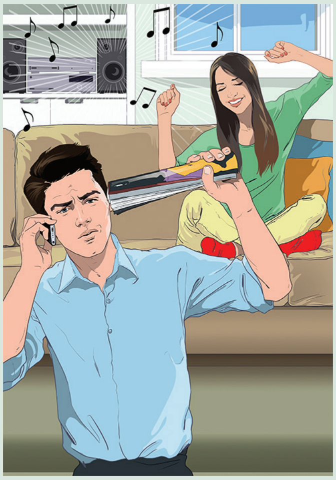

Lottie	Well, did he **come down**[1] on the price?
Tom	I **knocked** him **down**[2] by £100 but he wouldn't go any lower.
Lottie	Oh, so that's why you **slammed** the catalogue **down**[3] when you finished?
Tom	No, that was because I was distracted by the music and annoyed. Why didn't you **turn** the volume **down**[4]? I could hardly hear a word he was saying!

[1] suggest or agree to a lower price
[2] persuaded him to reduce the price
[3] put down with a lot of force
[4] reduce the amount of sound

B *Down* suggesting preventing or restraining

phrasal verb	definition of phrasal verb	example
shout down sb or **shout** sb **down**	shout in order to prevent someone who you disagree with from being heard	I couldn't hear what the prime minister was saying because some people at the front were **shouting** him **down**.
pin down sb or **pin** sb **down**	force someone to stay in a horizontal position by holding them	Two police officers **pinned** the robber **down** while the third handcuffed him.
tie down sth/sb or **tie** sth/sb **down**	use ropes to fasten someone or something in a particular position	The tent is secure, but make sure you **tie down** anything else that might blow away in the storm.
tie sb **down**	(metaphorical meaning of the previous verb) prevent someone from having the freedom to do what they want to do	My brother prefers to take temporary work because he hates the idea of being **tied down**.

C Other meanings of *down*

Not working

The computer system is always **going down**. We need a new one. [stopping working]
Don't forget to save your documents before you **shut** the computer **down**. [turn off]

Depressed or sad

This rain is **getting** me **down**. [making me feel depressed]

On a list

Freya asked me to **put** her **down** for a copy of the report when it's published. [put on a list to arrange for her to have something]
You can **put** me **down** to organise the refreshments. [put on a list to arrange for me to do something]

Killed/injured

The terrorists mercilessly **gunned down** their victims. [shot and killed or seriously injured]
We had to have our poor old dog **put down** last week; she was very sick. [put to death]

Surviving through time

The legend has **come down** to us from the ancient records of the Quilhoa people. [passed from generation to generation]

Be considered or remembered

This will **go down** in history as the most important event of the century. [be remembered]
My workshop **went down** really well. [was well-received]

Exercises

10.1 Read these sentences and then answer the questions below by writing the correct name in the box.

Harry Irving felt he had lost his freedom when he and Antonia had their first baby.
Oliver Reece was forced to the ground and held there by two security guards.
People protested so loudly that no one could hear what Heidi Knight had to say.
Mia Calvo persuaded the man to reduce the price by £500.
Lucas Hind was shot dead yesterday by terrorists.

1 Who was shouted down?
2 Who was gunned down?
3 Who felt tied down?
4 Who was pinned down?
5 Who managed to knock someone down?

10.2 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences using a phrasal verb from the opposite page. Make any other necessary changes.

1 The computer system suddenly stopped working this morning, so we're doing everything manually at the moment.
2 I'm sorry I'm so irritable. Things have been depressing me lately.
3 Shall I write your name on my list to sponsor me for the charity walk?
4 This event will be remembered in history as the worst catastrophe this country has ever suffered.
5 The company had to stop all their machines during the 24-hour strike at the factory.
6 The salesman agreed to a lower price, and after that we even managed to persuade him to reduce the price by a further 10%.
7 Many everyday remedies for minor ailments have reached us over time from our ancestors.

10.3 Answer the following questions using a phrasal verb from the opposite page.

1 What might someone do if they get very angry during a phone call?
2 What might you do to a very old and sick dog or cat?
3 What would you do to stop a tent from blowing away?
4 If work is making you depressed, what is it doing to you emotionally?
5 If your radio was too loud, what would you do?

10.4 Which of the meanings given are possible or likely interpretations of the phrasal verbs in these sentences? More than one interpretation may be possible. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 I think you should take this down.
  a) write it
  b) drink it
  c) dismantle it
2 The house has come down.
  a) has been rebuilt
  b) is for sale at a lower price
  c) has been demolished
3 She turned it down.
  a) reduced the heat
  b) refused the offer
  c) put the collar of her coat in its normal position
4 They watered it down.
  a) extinguished a fire using water
  b) added water to make a liquid less strong
  c) made an idea, opinion or argument less strong

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

11 In

The particle *in*, when used with phrasal verbs, keeps a lot of its basic meaning, often referring to things which move towards being, or are already, 'within something' or are 'included in something'.

Look at this transcript of a meeting at a computer software company. Dominic, the Chief Executive, who chairs the meeting, speaks first. Note the phrasal verbs with *in*.

Chair Well, I think we should begin. One of our colleagues from Manchester has been delayed, but I've asked David to **show** her **in** when she gets here, so she'll join us later, I hope. Now, first item is the Musicmatch software suite, which, I like to think, has helped to **usher in**[1] a new era in music production. It's been **bringing in** good profits, and we've certainly been able to **cash in on** the recent crash of one of our major rivals, as we all know, but with an economic recession **setting in** now, we may want to rethink our pricing so that it **fits in** better **with** the rest of our range. We also need to **factor in**[2] the loss of a major client – we lost the *Popmaster* **contract this year.**

Grace Can I **come in** here, Dominic? Ben and I are already looking at this and we'll have something to report next week. Basically we hope to **build in** an automatic upgrade system so that customers will find it easier to stay with us. Ben's looking at the cost. I said I'd **pitch in**[3] so that we can get it moving faster.

Chair OK, well, maybe we can leave that. But I'd just like to say, remember, we need flexibility – we don't want to become **boxed in**[4] by our own systems. We'll come back to it.

David Sorry to **cut in**, Dominic. Amy Peckham is here.

Chair Ah, good. Our colleague from Manchester has arrived. Hello, Amy. You're very welcome. Can you **squash in** there somewhere? Sorry the room is a bit small. Amy Peckham, everyone. Some of you know her already. Right, I suggest we move to Chloe's presentation. I believe you're going to use the projector, Chloe?

Chloe Yes. Could we close those blinds? Thanks. Oh dear, they're still **letting** a lot of light **in**. Never mind. I'll begin. I'd like to use this presentation as a **lead-in**[5] to our general discussion about the future.

---

[1] (formal) begin or cause a period in which new things or changes happen
[2] include something when making a calculation or when trying to understand something
[3] (informal) help with work that needs to be done
[4] restricted
[5] something that introduces something else

Tip

Take note of the context when you meet new phrasal verbs. For example, the context on this page is a fairly informal business meeting. Spoken business English is often less formal than the spoken language of business in some other languages and cultures. The same is often true for other contexts, such as spoken academic language.

Exercises

11.1 Find phrasal verbs or phrasal adjectives from the opposite page which mean the following:

1 benefit from
2 interrupt (two answers)
3 help
4 introduce
5 unable to act freely
6 introduction
7 take into consideration
8 find a space
9 include
10 start

11.2 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.

1 My new curtains are excellent – they don't bring any light in.
2 Alba, can you pitch Mr Hill in as soon as he arrives, please?
3 Having the meeting on the 28th would squash in better with our plans than the 30th.
4 Our office in Buenos Aires has cashed in a lot of new business this year.
5 When you are planning the course, make sure you set in enough free time.
6 It's rude to factor in when someone else is in the middle of speaking.
7 If everyone shows in, we'll soon get the job done.
8 If I move up, then Rachel should be able to box in at the end of the bench.

11.3 Complete this paragraph with verbs from the opposite page.

My ten-year-old daughter Rosie had some friends to sleep over last night. Eight of them managed to sleep on her bedroom floor. I don't know how they .... (1) themselves in as it is a very small room. Rosie's birthday had been the previous week, but we had her party yesterday as that .... (2) in better with other plans. In the evening we had a barbecue and we made lots of different salads and puddings. Rosie and her friends all .... (3) in, and they enjoyed helping as much as eating. Later in the evening rain .... (4) in, so they went indoors and watched a film. I was afraid the girls would wake up ridiculously early, but we've had new blinds fitted and they don't .... (5) any light in, so no one stirred till half past eight.

HAPPY BIRTHDAY

11.4 Cross out the item which does not normally collocate with the phrasal expression in bold. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

1 **bring in** customers / profits / a loss / business
2 a **lead-in** to a discussion / a bargain / a lesson
3 a recession / rain / a new product **sets in**
4 **usher in** a price increase / a new era / changes

Over to you

What other phrasal verbs with *in* do you have in your vocabulary notebook? Do they also have a connection with the basic meaning of *in*? As you learn other new ones, think about how the idea conveyed by *in* might help you remember the meaning of the phrasal verb.

12 Off

A *Off* suggesting get rid of

My feet were hot, so I **kicked off** my shoes. [removed with my feet]
The robbers drove faster and faster to try and **shake off** the police car. [lose]
I went for a long walk to **work off** my frustation. [get rid of a feeling (often unpleasant) by doing something energetic]
Archie doesn't worry about anything – he'll **shrug off** any problem. [treat something as unimportant]

B *Off* suggesting separation

phrasal verb	definition of phrasal verb	example
be cut off	be unable to see many other people	My office is in a different building from my colleagues, so I am quite **cut off**.
cut off sth/sb or **cut** sth/sb **off**	stop providing something, e.g. aid, electricity, supplies	They **cut off** our electricity / **cut** us **off** because we hadn't paid the bill.
split off	form a separate group	Two of the climbers **split off** from the group and went off on their own.
back off	(slightly informal) stop being involved in a situation, especially in order to allow other people to deal with it themselves	She was interfering, so I told her to **back off** and let me deal with it on my own.
have sth **off**	spend time away from work	I **had** a week **off** last June.
cordon off sth or **cordon** sth **off**	put something, e.g. a rope, a barrier, around an area in order to stop people from entering it	The police have **cordoned off** the area the president will be visiting.

C *Off* suggesting starting or finishing

I'll fill in the first line of this spreadsheet to **start** you **off**, and then you can do the rest yourself. [help you to start]

The weekly meeting usually **kicks off** around 2 p.m. [(informal) starts]

We **rounded off** the meal with freshly brewed coffee. [finished]

That boring meeting just **finished** me **off**. I think I'll go home; I've had enough for one day. [made me feel so weak, tired or unhappy that I couldn't continue]

It's nice to just **switch off** at the weekend and forget about work. [stop giving your attention to someone or something]

D Other verbs with *off*

Ben told his little brother to **leave off** playing his new guitar. [(informal) stop]

William told his younger sister to **shove off** out of his room. [(informal) something that you say when you are angry to tell someone to go away.]

Layla wanted to **show** her new bike **off** to her friends. [show someone or something that you are proud of to a group of people]

The boss gave the receptionist a **ticking off** for making private calls to friends. [telling someone that you are angry with them because they have done something wrong]

Exercises

12.1 **Replace the underlined words in these statements with a phrasal verb from the opposite page.**

1 Eliza's father to Eliza's mother: Eliza's 18 now and should make her own decisions. I think we should stop getting involved and let her run her own life.
2 Newsreader: The prime minister has treated as unimportant leadership threats from within his party, saying that they are only rumours.
3 Mother to father: I think we should let the kids run round in the garden for a bit and get rid of some of their energy so that they sleep tonight.
4 Mother to Imogen: Imogen, you MUST pay your electricity bill. If you don't, they'll stop providing it and you won't have any heating.
5 Louis to Callum: Oh no! Seth wants to come back with us to Nikita's house. He's such a drag! How can we get away from him?
6 Chairperson: I'd like to just conclude the meeting by giving a vote of thanks to the committee for all their work this year.
7 The last 100 metres to the top of the hill just made me so tired I couldn't continue. I had to sit down and rest for an hour.
8 I don't want you in my room any more, so just leave!

12.2 **Cross out the five mistakes in this text and write the correct form in the box next to that line.**

When I come home from work, I love to just kick ~~away~~ my shoes and relax for the evening. It's great to let off worrying about work and round up the day with a nice meal. If I have off a couple of days it's even better. I usually go off to our country cottage. I can just light off completely. I love it. I never stay there long because after a while I feel a bit stood off from all my friends and social life back in the city.

..............off..............
1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....

12.3 **Complete the word puzzle.**

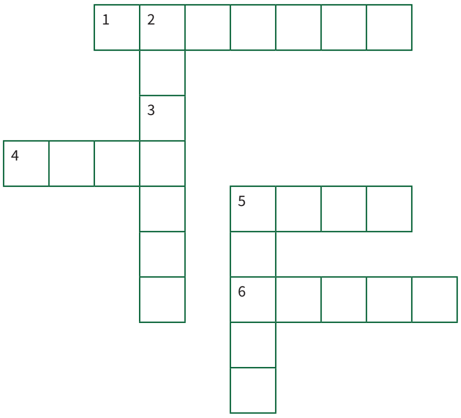

Across
1 The boss .... me off with a simple task to get me used to the job.
3 The police decided to .... off the scene of the crime.
4 What time does the meeting .... off?
5 She always loves to .... off her latest technological gadget.
6 Look, just .... off playing with my phone, will you? You're getting on my nerves.

Down
2 The director gave him a .... off for arriving late at the meeting.
5 A group of youths .... off from the rest of the demonstrators and started causing trouble.

13 On

Some phrasal verbs with *on* share a meaning of dependence/reliance, e.g. **depend on***, **rely on***, **count on***, **hinge on***, **hang on***, **ride on**.

REFERENDUM RESULT CRUCIAL, SAYS PM

The prime minister said, 'Everything **hinges on** the result of next week's referendum. The future prosperity of the nation **hangs on** this crucial day of decision.' Politicians of all parties agree that everything **rides on** the government securing a Yes vote.

On can also convey the idea of continuing in an irritating or boring way, for example, **harp on** [talk repeatedly about something in a way that others find boring or irritating], **keep on**, **go on (and on)**, **ramble on** [talk or write for a very long time in a boring way] and **drone on** [talk for a long time in a very boring way and in a monotonous voice].

Don't **keep on** about the garden! I'll mow the lawn tomorrow.
We had a tedious lecture from the boss. She just **went on and on** about punctuality.
He **droned on** for hours about ancient civilisations; everyone fell asleep.

Read on, **press on**, **live on** and **dwell on*** [think or talk about a particular subject for too long] also emphasise continuation over time.

HOUSING MINISTER HONOURS CHAMPION OF THE POOR

'Her death is a great loss to society, but her memory will **live on**', said the minister.

Grouping verbs in this way can help you to remember them.

Now look at these news items which contain some of these and other examples of phrasal verbs with *on*.

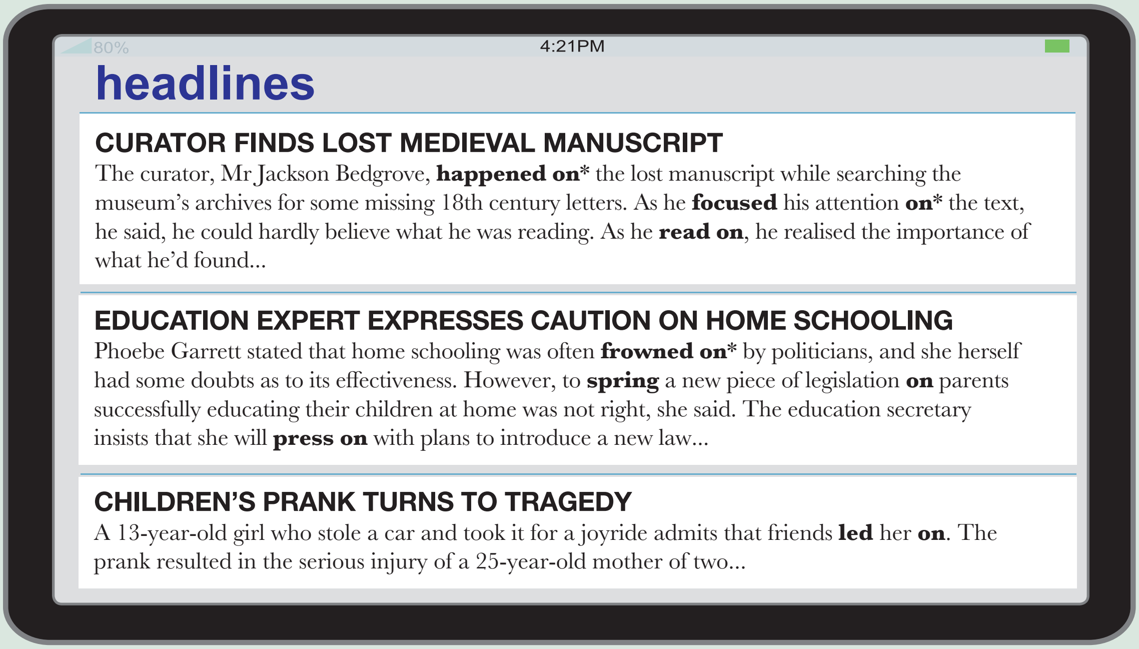

headlines

CURATOR FINDS LOST MEDIEVAL MANUSCRIPT

The curator, Mr Jackson Bedgrove, **happened on*** the lost manuscript while searching the museum's archives for some missing 18th century letters. As he **focused** his attention **on*** the text, he said, he could hardly believe what he was reading. As he **read on**, he realised the importance of what he'd found...

EDUCATION EXPERT EXPRESSES CAUTION ON HOME SCHOOLING

Phoebe Garrett stated that home schooling was often **frowned on*** by politicians, and she herself had some doubts as to its effectiveness. However, to **spring** a new piece of legislation **on** parents successfully educating their children at home was not right, she said. The education secretary insists that she will **press on** with plans to introduce a new law...

CHILDREN'S PRANK TURNS TO TRAGEDY

A 13-year-old girl who stole a car and took it for a joyride admits that friends **led** her **on**. The prank resulted in the serious injury of a 25-year-old mother of two...

The verbs marked with * on this page are all transitive.

Exercises

13.1

In the following sentences, mark each phrasal verb according to whether it has predominantly a dramatic feeling (write D), a negative feeling (N), a feeling of boredom (B), or a feeling of irritation (I).

1 Professor Taylor was droning on about the Ancient Greeks in his lecture this morning.
2 The success of the peace talks hinges on both sides maintaining the present truce.
3 Uncle Alex goes on and on about his broken chair. I've told him a hundred times I'll mend it.
4 Dwelling on the past all the time is no way to live your life. Think of your future.
5 If you ask Beatrice about beekeeping she'll ramble on for hours.
6 I wish you wouldn't keep on about money. Let's just enjoy life.
7 The championship now rides on Saturday's crucial game against Real Madrid.

13.2

Choose the correct word to complete these sentences. Sometimes there is more than one possible answer.

1 You can always .... on Daniel. He's totally dependable.
  a) rely b) count c) hinge d) hang
2 I wish Georgia would stop .... on about Kian. It's so tedious!
  a) riding b) droning c) going d) harping
3 Do make up your mind soon. So much .... on what you decide.
  a) hinges b) presses c) rides d) hangs

13.3

Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences. There is one mistake in each sentence.

1 Try to focus what is really important on and to ignore what is not essential.
2 Now we've had a bit of a rest, it's time to spring on again.
3 I'm hingeing on you to let me know when my talk has gone on for long enough.
4 Your grandmother will always happen on in your memory.
5 This is a quiet neighbourhood where noisy behaviour is counted on.
6 After the first few pages of the book, I decided I couldn't be bothered to ride on.
7 Please stop focusing on about Lena. Your relationship is over, so just forget her.
8 I am worried about my son's behaviour. He is so easily relied on by his friends.

13.4

Complete each sentence with a verb from the opposite page.

1 Don't try to remember every sentence of the text. Just .... on the main points.
2 Elizabeth is going to .... the news on her parents over lunch. I hope they'll be happy for her.
3 Try to look to the future rather than .... on the past.
4 We've got a lot of work to finish today so we'd better .... on.
5 Julia's not usually naughty herself, but her brothers tend to .... her on.
6 In most schools, wearing big, colourful jewellery and dyeing your hair bright colours would be .... on or even forbidden outright.
7 Whether we go for a picnic tomorrow or not will .... on the weather.
8 I wish he'd stop .... on and on about his ex-wife.

13.5

Rewrite these sentences using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1 James is a reliable person.
2 Dad will talk monotonously for hours about European history.
3 Many political reputations are about to be crucially affected by the outcome of next week's election.
4 Josh never stops complaining about the litter in the office car park. It irritates me.
5 While tidying my room, I found an old diary of mine from 2001.

14 Out

A Basic meanings of *out* in phrasal verbs

A very frequent meaning of *out* is the opposite of *in*.

I don't want to leave my job but I suppose they may **kick** me **out**. [(informal) force me to leave]

I've had enough of working for such a difficult organisation and I **want out**. [want to leave]

Count me **out**! I'm far too tired to join the skiing trip today. [don't include me]

Another meaning is when something or part of something extends from its surroundings.

The chalet roof **juts out** (over its walls) to help prevent snow from blocking the doors. [sticks out beyond the edge]

The rocky peninsula **juts out** into the bay.

Another meaning is separate.

The woman **picked out** a kitten to take home. [chose one from a large group]

We **spread** our wet clothes **out** on the grass so they could dry in the sunshine.

Another meaning is distribute.

Don't eat all the sweets yourself, Ollie. **Share** them **out** among all the children. [give one to each person in the group]

B Other meanings of *out* in phrasal verbs

phrasal verb	definition of phrasal verb	example
go out	(of a fire) stop burning	When we woke up in the morning, the campfire still hadn't **gone out**.
clean out sb or **clean** sb **out**	steal or take everything from a person	The burglars completely **cleaned** us **out**.
test out sth or **test** sth **out**	see how it works in a practical situation or find out what other people think of it (the *out* stresses testing something in the environment in which it is intended to be used, not, for example, in a laboratory)	We need to **test** the product **out** in the market before launching it.
drop out	not do something that you were going to do, or stop doing something	The runner **dropped out** halfway through the marathon.
lash out (usually + **at** sth)	criticise someone or something in an angry way	Sofia **lashed out at** me yesterday for wasting her time.
yell out sth or **yell** sth **out**	suddenly shout something in a loud voice, especially to get someone's attention	As I walked past the room, I heard someone **yell out**.
draw out sth or **draw** sth **out**	make something continue for longer than is usual or necessary	I wish Thomas wouldn't always **draw** meetings **out** by talking so much.
sort out sth or **sort** sth **out**	solve a problem or restore order to something which has become disordered	A management consultant was hired to **sort out** the personnel problems in the company.

Exercises

14.1 **Answer the questions using phrasal verbs with *out*.**

1 Naomi gave two apples to each of the four children. What did she do with the apples?
....
2 Clément took control of the situation and soon everything was OK and back to normal. What did Clément do? ....
3 Evie looked at all the oranges on the stall and put the best ones in her basket. What did she do with the oranges? ....
4 The manager forced Sam to leave the restaurant because he was behaving badly. What did the manager do? ....
5 The roof extends over the terrace and provides a bit of shade from the midday sun. What does the roof do? ....

14.2 **The verb in each of these sentences sounds a little formal in the context. Find a phrasal verb from the opposite page to replace the one-word equivalent in each sentence.**

1 I don't have any money so you can exclude me from the shopping trip.
2 I distributed the mints among my friends in the car.
3 We need to resolve this mess about the misprinted tickets pretty soon.
4 He really criticised me when I suggested he'd got it wrong.
5 Look at those big rocks protruding from the sea.
6 Select the good strawberries and leave the rotten ones in the box.

14.3 **Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences using a phrasal verb with *out* that means the opposite of the underlined words.**

1 I opened the door and heard somebody whisper from the staircase below.
2 My position as regards the committee is that I would like to continue as a member.
3 He always shortens the discussion with arguments about political ideology.
4 When we got back to our campsite, the campfire had started burning.
5 Put the leaflets together in one place on the table.
6 The burglars stole absolutely nothing at all from us.

14.4 **Match the headlines 1–4 with the stories a–d below.**

1 **RECORD NUMBERS OF STUDENTS DROP OUT**

2 **DAVID BLAKE LASHES OUT AT CRITICS**

3 **GOVERNMENT TO TEST OUT NEW SPEED CAMERAS**

4 **WILSON SAYS COUNT ME OUT OF OLYMPIC TEAM**

a) After a trial period of six months, a decision will be made as to whether they will be installed throughout the country.
b) She said she did not wish to take part as she had found the pressure too great in the last Games.
c) More than 6,000 withdrew from a range of programmes, almost 1,000 more than last year, according to the minister.
d) He said he was sick of the hypocrisy of people who had never done anything themselves to help the poor.

15 Up

A Basic meanings of *up* in phrasal verbs

You are probably familiar with verbs such as **eat up** and **write up**, which carry a meaning of completion. Here are some more examples:

> Come on, children, **finish up** your breakfast. It's time to go.
> Well, let's **wrap up** the discussion now and vote. [(informal) finish an activity]

Up can also carry the meaning of upward movement or relating to an upper position.

> Could you **lift** the table **up** while I put the rug under it?
> Teddy, **pick** all your toys **up** from the floor and put them in your toy box.

Another meaning of *up* in phrasal verbs is maintain in an upright position or strengthen, prevent from falling down or failing.

> Victoria was lying **propped up** on a pillow. [supporting herself in an upright position]
> The minister announced new measures to **shore up** the economy. [strengthen or improve an organisation or system that is not working effectively or that is likely to fail]

Up can also mean increase or improve.

> This sauce is tasteless. I'll add some garlic to **pep** it **up** a bit. [(informal) make something more interesting, lively or energetic]
> We **jazzed up** our all-white kitchen by adding red tiles and doorknobs here and there. [(informal) make something more attractive or interesting]

B Other phrasal verbs with *up*

Read these TV programme previews and note the phrasal verbs with *up*.

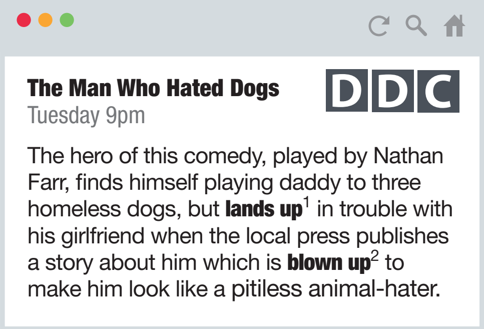

The Man Who Hated Dogs
Tuesday 9pm

The hero of this comedy, played by Nathan Farr, finds himself playing daddy to three homeless dogs, but **lands up**[1] in trouble with his girlfriend when the local press publishes a story about him which is **blown up**[2] to make him look like a pitiless animal-hater.

[1] (informal) finally does something, especially without having planned to
[2] made to seem much worse than it is

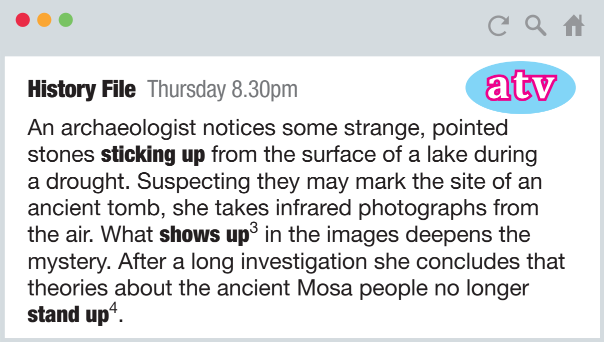

History File Thursday 8.30pm

An archaeologist notices some strange, pointed stones **sticking up** from the surface of a lake during a drought. Suspecting they may mark the site of an ancient tomb, she takes infrared photographs from the air. What **shows up**[3] in the images deepens the mystery. After a long investigation she concludes that theories about the ancient Mosa people no longer **stand up**[4].

[3] becomes visible
[4] appear correct when examined

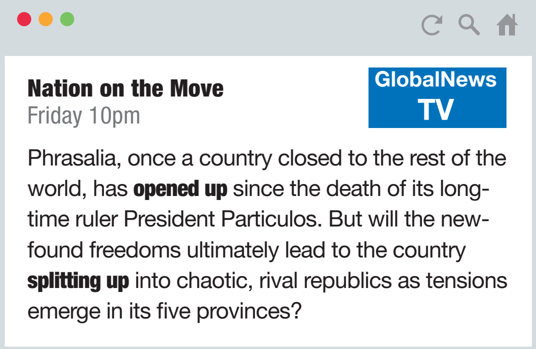

Nation on the Move
Friday 10pm

Phrasalia, once a country closed to the rest of the world, has **opened up** since the death of its long-time ruler President Particulos. But will the new-found freedoms ultimately lead to the country **splitting up** into chaotic, rival republics as tensions emerge in its five provinces?

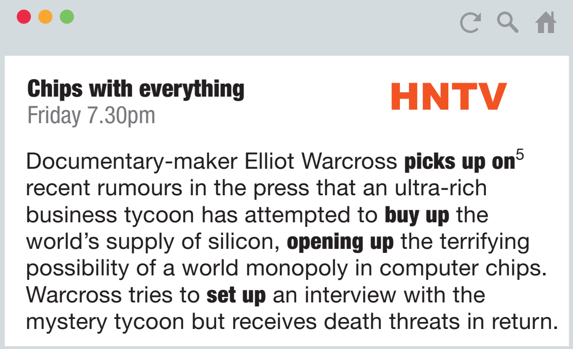

Chips with everything
Friday 7.30pm

Documentary-maker Elliot Warcross **picks up on**[5] recent rumours in the press that an ultra-rich business tycoon has attempted to **buy up** the world's supply of silicon, **opening up** the terrifying possibility of a world monopoly in computer chips. Warcross tries to **set up** an interview with the mystery tycoon but receives death threats in return.

[5] reacts to something that he has noticed

Error warning

We say 'I went into the garden and **picked** some flowers.' Don't say 'picked up some flowers'; **pick up** is used for things which are on or have fallen to the ground.

Exercises

15.1 Complete these sentences using a phrasal verb from A opposite. Put it in the correct form and, if necessary, add a pronoun as object.

1 Zoe, if you don't .... your spinach, you can't have any pudding.
2 We can .... the asparagus with a nice oil and vinegar dressing.
3 The prime minister appointed three new ministers in an attempt to .... his failing administration.
4 You've just dropped some of your papers. Let me .... for you.
5 I noticed Tim's bicycle .... against a wall outside Hannah's apartment.
6 Your black dress is a little plain – why don't you .... a bit with a colourful scarf?
7 I think we should try and .... the meeting by 4 p.m.
8 Can you .... that plant pot? I need to put a saucer under it to catch the water.

15.2 Complete these dialogues using phrasal verbs from the opposite page so that the second speaker agrees with and repeats more or less what the first speaker says.

1 **Aaron** I just don't think his theory is correct when you look at it very carefully.
Leo No, I agree. It just doesn't .... up when you examine it closely.

2 **Salima** I think we should ask the students to form small groups.
Martha Yes, we should .... them up into groups of two or three.

3 **Keira** I think we should try to arrange a meeting with the whole team.
Zac You're right. We should try to .... one up.

4 **Nazir** I just knew Patrick's son would get into trouble with the police one day.
Anna Yes, it was inevitable he'd .... up in serious trouble.

5 **Jake** She said they'd sold all the tickets for the concert in one go.
Ruby Yes, apparently some mystery person .... them all up over the Internet.

6 **Sam** Oh look, Sebastian freckles are really visible in this photo, aren't they?
Tyler Yes, they really .... up, don't they?

7 **Harvey** I think the newspapers have greatly exaggerated the story.
Aisha Yes, they've .... it up out of all proportion.

8 **Megan** There's a big nail protruding from that floorboard; be careful.
Fellix Yes, I noticed one .... up the other day but forgot to mention it.

15.3 Which phrasal verb fits into each of these sets of collocations?

1 to .... a photo / a balloon / a story

2 to .... a political system / an ailing economy / the foundations of a building

3 to .... a business / an interview / a meeting

4 to .... unlimited possibilities / an opportunity / a new line of investigation

16 Time

A How time passes

Diana The sales conference will be **coming around**[1] soon. We'd better start **hurrying** those sales reports **along**[2].

Paul I can't believe that the conference is **coming up**[3] again already. This last year seems to have **slipped away**[4]!

Diana I know! There's an awful lot to do **leading up to**[5] the conference, especially as it's going to be held in our branch this year.

Paul Oh well, at least it **breaks things up**[6] and makes life a bit more interesting, I suppose.

Diana It hasn't been that bad a year, surely. There was all the excitement over the new marketing campaign.

Paul Oh, that completely **passed me by**[7]. It didn't really affect me in my department.

Diana OK, Paul. Time's **getting on**[8] a bit now. I need to head home. Let's talk about what we need to do tomorrow.

[1] (of a regular event) happening at its usual time
[2] making someone do something more quickly, making something happen more quickly
[3] will be happening soon
[4] passed very quickly
[5] preparing in the period before an event begins
[6] makes a period of time more interesting by being different from what you are doing for the rest of the time
[7] went unnoticed
[8] (mainly British and Australian informal) it's getting late

B Spending time

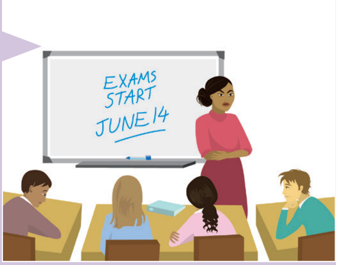

Right, I'm not going to **spin** this **out**[1]. I just have one thing to say. You only have two weeks now till the exams start and you're going to have to **pull your socks up**[2] if you want to pass. We're going to **set aside**[3] the next fortnight just for revision. In other words, we're going to **free up**[4] some time by cancelling all non-exam lessons like sport. All school sports matches will be **held over**[5] until the exams are finished. We felt that would be better than trying to **fit** revision **in**[6] around sport commitments. The sports staff agree that **putting back**[7] these matches won't cause any major problems, but we mustn't **set** schedules **back**[8] by more than two weeks or we won't be able to fit in all the matches before the end of term. So now, put everything else out of your minds and concentrate on your revision. No more **frittering** time **away**[9] – get down to some serious work.

[1] make something continue for longer than necessary
[2] make an effort to improve, an idiom using a phrasal verb (see Unit 8 for more)
[3] use time for one purpose and no other purpose
[4] make time or money available for a particular use by not using it another way
[5] delayed and arranged for a later date
[6] do it between other activities
[7] causing something to happen later than it should happen
[8] make something happen more slowly, or make something happen later than it should
[9] wasting time by using it for unimportant things

Tip

The following verbs can be used about money as well as time – *free up* and *fritter away*.

Exercises

16.1 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 There was a lot of excitement
2 My birthday seems to be
3 The annual meeting will be
4 I'd better go as it's
5 It's getting late – can you start

a) getting on now.
b) hurrying people along?
c) leading up to the final match.
d) coming up some time next month.
e) coming around more quickly every year.

16.2 Read these remarks by different people and then answer the questions below.

Mary I'm 63 and I've never had an interesting job or done anything exciting.

Jack I feel I'm wasting a lot of time on useless and unimportant things.

Leah I'm trying to improve my performance. I know I've been lazy and inefficient.

Jude I feel the days are passing very quickly and we need to solve the problem now.

Adriana I'm cancelling my meetings next week so I can take time off to decorate my flat.

1 Who is trying to free up some time?
2 Who feels that time is slipping away?
3 Who feels life is passing them by?
4 Who is trying to pull their socks up?
5 Who feels they are frittering away their time?

16.3 Complete this text with the correct particles.

My staff often spin things .... (1) much longer than they need to so that they don't get asked to do any more work. As a result they sometimes set the schedules .... (2) by days or even weeks, and then I have to hurry them .... (3) so that the work gets done on time. And not only do I have to keep an eye on the staff, I also have to find time to fit .... (4) consultations with management and the unions, and inevitably meetings have to be put .... (5) because of some unexpected emergency, or important tasks have to be held .... (6) till the more immediate problems can be sorted out. I try to set .... (7) at least one hour every day for planning, but it's not easy. I like to take a proper lunch break and get out of the office. I find that breaks the day .... (8) nicely.

16.4 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.

1 You'd get far more done if you didn't fritter out so much time.
2 The children tried to spin their game off so they didn't have to go to bed.
3 Cameron might lose his job if he doesn't pull his collar up.
4 We must discuss what we need to do leading up the opening of the new branch.
5 Let's try to make some time apart next month to discuss progress on the project.

16.5 Rewrite each sentence using a phrasal verb from the box in an appropriate form. Make any other necessary changes. You may need to use a dictionary to help you.

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

eke out drag out bring forward space out creep up on

1 We've had to reschedule the meeting for this Tuesday as Austin will be away next week.
2 Francesca always makes any discussion last longer than necessary.
3 I think we should have longer intervals between our meetings.
4 I thought I had ages to prepare for my exams, but they have arrived in no time at all.
5 I think we should try to make the printing paper last as long as possible.

17 Cause and effect

Many of the phrasal verbs in this unit are usually used in quite formal contexts. Using these phrasal verbs will help you to improve your style when writing formal correspondence, giving presentations and writing reports and essays.

Look at these formal letters to the editor of a newspaper and note the phrasal verbs connected with cause and effect.

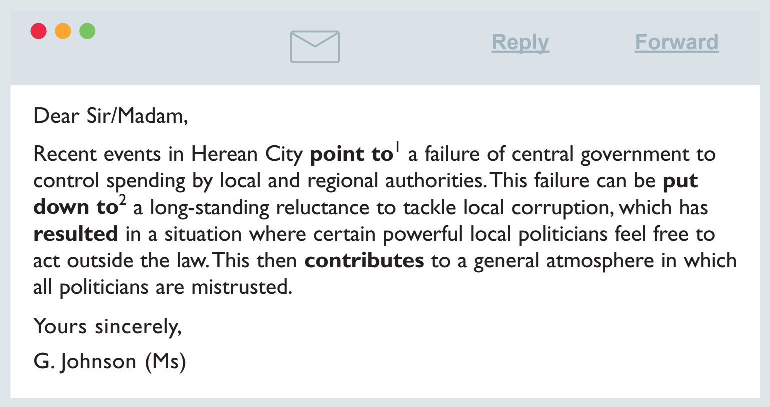

Dear Sir/Madam,

Recent events in Herean City **point to**[1] a failure of central government to control spending by local and regional authorities. This failure can be **put down to**[2] a long-standing reluctance to tackle local corruption, which has **resulted** in a situation where certain powerful local politicians feel free to act outside the law. This then **contributes** to a general atmosphere in which all politicians are mistrusted.

Yours sincerely,

G. Johnson (Ms)

[1] make it seem likely that something is true

[2] thought to be caused by (used for problems and bad experiences)

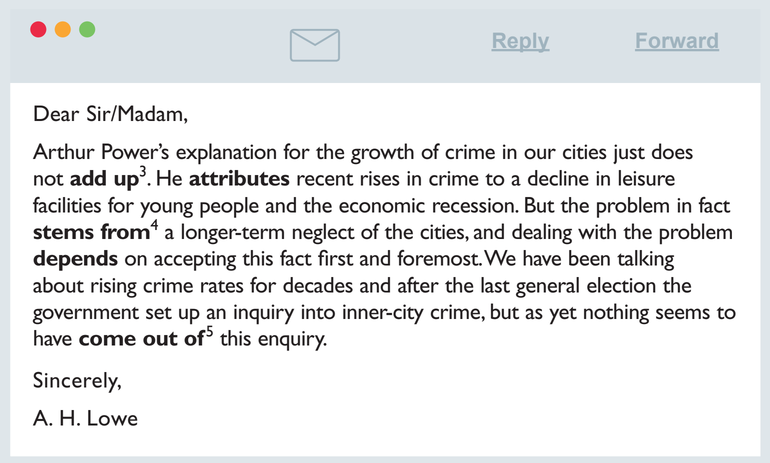

Dear Sir/Madam,

Arthur Power's explanation for the growth of crime in our cities just does not **add up**[3]. He **attributes** recent rises in crime to a decline in leisure facilities for young people and the economic recession. But the problem in fact **stems from**[4] a longer-term neglect of the cities, and dealing with the problem **depends** on accepting this fact first and foremost. We have been talking about rising crime rates for decades and after the last general election the government set up an inquiry into inner-city crime, but as yet nothing seems to have **come out of**[5] this enquiry.

Sincerely,

A. H. Lowe

[3] (slightly informal) constitute a reasonable or likely explanation for something

[4] is caused by

[5] if something comes out of a process or an event, it is one of the results

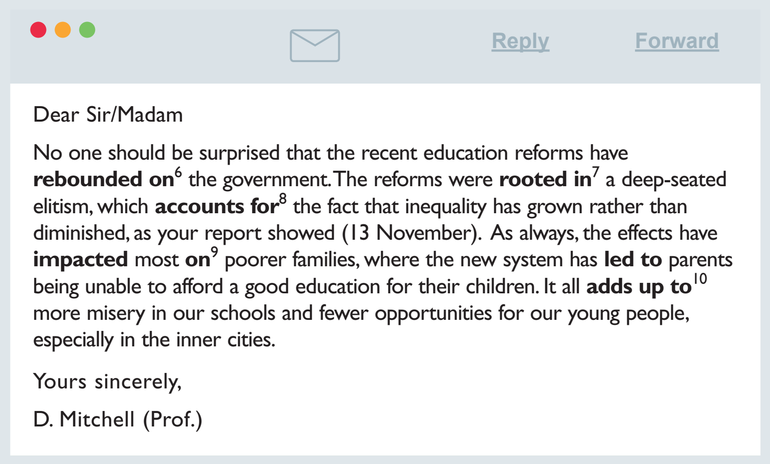

Dear Sir/Madam

No one should be surprised that the recent education reforms have **rebounded on**[6] the government. The reforms were **rooted in**[7] a deep-seated elitism, which **accounts for**[8] the fact that inequality has grown rather than diminished, as your report showed (13 November). As always, the effects have **impacted** most **on**[9] poorer families, where the new system has **led to** parents being unable to afford a good education for their children. It all **adds up to**[10] more misery in our schools and fewer opportunities for our young people, especially in the inner cities.

Yours sincerely,

D. Mitchell (Prof.)

[6] had a bad effect on the person who did it with the result that they did not achieve what they were trying to achieve

[7] based on, or caused by

[8] explains the reason for

[9] had a noticeable effect on

[10] results in

Tip

Always make a note in your notebook if a phrasal verb is formal or informal.

Exercises

17.1 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 Aidan's new job will undoubtedly impact
2 How the situation develops will depend
3 Isabelle's behaviour may well rebound
4 Freddie's interest in botany stems
5 Her attitude to foreigners is rooted
6 It is impossible to point
7 The new education reform should result
8 Professor Bukowsky attributes the crisis
9 The situation in the country may lead

a) to one clear cause of the crisis.
b) from a childhood spent in the rainforest.
c) in ignorance.
d) in significant social change.
e) to the changes in the country's leadership.
f) on the reaction from the USA.
g) to a civil war.
h) on his family.
i) on her if she is not careful.

17.2 Correct the mistakes with the particles in these sentences. There is one mistake in each sentence.

1 Theodore puts the problems down to the government, but I attribute them for the general world economic situation.
2 To a large extent, how a person accounts for the problems in their lives seems to depend largely of their own parents' attitudes to difficult situations.
3 I believe the new legislation will contribute to a general improvement in the standard of living, but Ben thinks it will result from increased poverty for most people.
4 The desire for reform has come off a general desire to improve the situation, but I suspect the proposed changes may rebound on the government.
5 The proposals are rooted in an appropriate awareness of the problems that exist, but I do not feel that what is proposed adds up a coherent programme of action.

17.3 Rewrite each sentence replacing the verb with a phrasal verb expression based on the word in brackets.

1 The school's rituals and traditions have originated from its long history. (ROOT)
2 My mother attributes the problem to a decline in moral values. (PUT)
3 How do you think the changes will affect your business? (IMPACT)
4 The economic recession inevitably led to increased unemployment. (RESULT)
5 How would you explain the recent increase in violent crime? (ACCOUNT)
6 Joel's criticism of Erica may have a bad effect on him now that she's his boss! (REBOUND)
7 I do not feel that the writer's analysis of the problem makes sense. (ADD)
8 Some unforeseen problems have resulted from the change in legislation. (COME)

17.4 Answer these questions using full sentences.

1 What would you put global warming down to?
2 What do you think has led to the current increase in violent crime in most societies?
3 How would you account for the fact that teenage girls tend to do better at school than teenage boys?
4 What would you attribute the success of social media sites to?
5 What would you point to as the main cause of social problems today?
6 What would you say your own interest in English stems from?
7 Do you think that mobile phones have resulted in more or less communication between people?
8 What do you think is the main thing that contributes to the difficulty of phrasal verbs?

18 Memory

In this unit, some phrasal verbs can be grouped by the meaning given by the particle. For example, *up* means uppermost in your mind in **summon up**, **conjure up**, **call up** and **stir up**. *Up* in **store up** memories carries a different meaning in that it means gather or collect. *Back* in **come back**, **flood back** and **flashback** carries a sense of a returning memory. *Behind* and *out* occur with verbs which describe things we don't want to remember (**put** something **behind** somebody, **block** something **out** / **block out** something). Grouping the verbs by the meaning carried by the particle will help you to remember them.

Look at this conversation on social media between Bethany and her two cousins about old family photos.

Bethany Wells

When I look at these old photographs I've just found in our grandmother's desk, memories come **flooding back**[1]. This one here, of Granny's mother just before she died, **stirs up**[2] sad memories of how she suffered. It **reminds** me **of** how different life was then. But we can't let bad memories **eat away at**[3] us; we should **put** bad experiences **behind**[4] us. It's important to live in the present and live for the future.

[1] one suddenly remembers very clearly a lot of things about an experience or period in the past

[2] makes one remember events in the past, usually ones that make you feel sad

[3] make us unhappy because we think about them too much

[4] not think about them any more so that they do not affect our life

George Wells

We **store up** so many memories over the years, good ones and bad ones. I **associate** this photo that you found **with** our early childhood. Looking at the picture, it **came back** to me how we used to feed the animals on our grandparents' farm. It **summons up**[5] lots of happy memories, and some sad ones, too, like when my favourite old pony died. We tend to **block out**[6] sad memories, but sometimes you might get a **flashback**[7] to an unpleasant experience. The happy ones can **stick with**[8] you forever. I still remember the picnic we had on the farm for my sixth birthday.

[5] makes you remember something or think about something

[6] stop yourself from thinking about something unpleasant because it upsets you

[7] an occasion when you suddenly remember something vividly that happened to you in the past

[8] you remember them

Toby Wells

For me this photo you sent me that Granny took **conjures up**[9] a series of crazy events. I got this diploma, then fell down the steps as I left the stage. As I fell, I grabbed the curtain and all the curtains came down on top of me and the professor! Then all the lights went out! It's amazing how one picture can **call up**[10] an event in such detail. When I look at it, my thoughts always **flash back**[11] immediately to that moment.

[9] makes a picture, image, memory, etc. appear in my mind

[10] make one remember or think about a particular memory or idea

[11] get a sudden vivid memory of something

Exercises

18.1 Choose the best word to complete each sentence.

1 I was sitting in a train looking out of the window, when my mind suddenly .... back to that amazing trip we made to India.
a) put b) flashed c) stirred d) associated
2 Close your eyes and try to .... up a picture of a place where you feel at peace.
a) store b) eat c) conjure d) stick
3 Ivan has an excellent memory – he can .... up precise details of things that happened when he was a small child.
a) come b) flood c) flash d) call
4 Please don't talk about that day – I want to .... it all behind me.
a) put b) stir c) block d) summon
5 Pablo should try not to let his regrets for what he has done .... away at him.
a) come b) eat c) stick d) flood

18.2 Complete this dialogue with phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

Maya I've just found this old dress at the back of my wardrobe. It .... (1) me of that party at Anna's. Do you remember? It must be at least 20 years ago!

Rory Goodness me! That certainly does .... (2) up some memories. I hadn't thought of it for years, but it's all .... (3) back now! Do you remember all those roses she had everywhere?

Maya That's right. I always .... (4) the smell of roses with Anna.

Rory We spent all evening dancing together. We had such a lovely evening.

Maya Actually, I don't know if we did. It's all .... (5) back to me now. Don't you remember, as we were leaving the party, Anna's brother came running out accusing you of stealing his wallet? He got really violent and started pushing you.

Rory Oh yes! That was awful. I'd just completely .... (6) the memory out.

Maya Well, I'm glad you did. If you hadn't .... (7) it behind you, then we wouldn't be friends with him now.

Rory That's right. Anyway, it's the good memories that you want to .... (8) with you. Those are the ones to .... (9) up for the future.

Maya Well, we've got plenty of those we can .... (10) up when we need them.

18.3 Explain the play on words in these titles of newspaper articles.

1 COOK STIRS UP MEMORIES OF 1950s SCHOOL DINNERS

2 MAGICIAN CONJURES UP MEMORIES OF VICTORIAN ENGLAND

3 FILM CALLS UP OLD SOLDIERS' MEMORIES OF CONSCRIPTION

4 HAPPY MEMORIES OF LIFE AT GLUE FACTORY STICK WITH WORKERS

5 MEMORIES OF 1963 BURST PIPES COME FLOODING BACK

18.4 Answer these questions using full sentences.

1 What colour do you associate with your childhood and why?
2 Is there any particular smell that reminds you of your childhood?
3 What music conjures up memories of your youth?
4 Is there any particular memory of your schooldays that you would like to block out?
5 Which makes memories come back to you more powerfully – music or smells?

19 Making progress

A Beginning and ending

phrasal verb with collocations	definition of phrasal verb	example
new businesses / political movements / buildings **spring up**	suddenly appear or begin to exist	At the turn of the century, new left-wing political movements **sprang up**.
new buildings / factories / cafés **sprout up**	suddenly appear or begin to exist	Pavement cafés have suddenly **sprouted up** all over the town.
open up opportunities/ possibilities or opportunities/ possibilities **open up**	make possible or become possible	The new shopping centre will **open up** all sorts of job opportunities.
break up a meeting/party or a meeting/party **breaks up**	end, people start to leave	I'm sorry to **break up** the party, but it's getting very late.
finish with magazine/ scissors/salt	no longer need	Can you let me have the magazine when you've **finished with** it?
trend/business/price **bottoms out**	reach a low level and stay there	The share price fell steadily last year but has now **bottomed out**.
game/match/anger/protest/ conflict **peters out**[1]	gradually become less strong and then stop completely	The crowd started shouting and protesting, but the protests soon **petered out** when they saw the armed police.
wind up a business/interview/ meeting	end	Jack intends to **wind up** his business soon.

[1] an interesting phrasal verb in that, unusually, *to peter* does not exist as a verb on its own

B Helping and hindering progress

How's progress with your business?

We couldn't continue when our cheap supply of materials **dried up**[1].

We had some staffing problems but the new HR person has **magicked** them **away**[4].

Things've been **falling apart**[2] since the new manager arrived.

We **got up to** the third stage of our plan but haven't made much progress since.

We can't do anything at the moment because the money's **run out**.

My PA has really improved things recently, so I hope we can **hang on to**[5] her.

We're **pressing on**[3] though we've had lots of problems. We can't do anything at the moment because the money's **run out**.

The CEO's **whittling away (at)**[6] the authority of middle managers.

[1] came to an end
[2] not working well
[3] continuing in a determined way
[4] made them disappear, as if by magic
[5] keep
[6] gradually reducing

Exercises

19.1 Answer these questions.

1 Would you be happy or unhappy if the exchange rate between your currency and the US dollar bottomed out?
2 Which two verbs from the opposite page could you use to complete this sentence?
Wind farms seem to be .... / .... up all over the countryside these days.
3 *Open up* and *break up* can both be used with or without an object. True or false?
4 If someone whittles away your confidence, do you feel more or less confident?
5 If your anger peters out, does it become more or less strong?

19.2 Complete the film blurbs below, using the correct verb or particle from the opposite page.

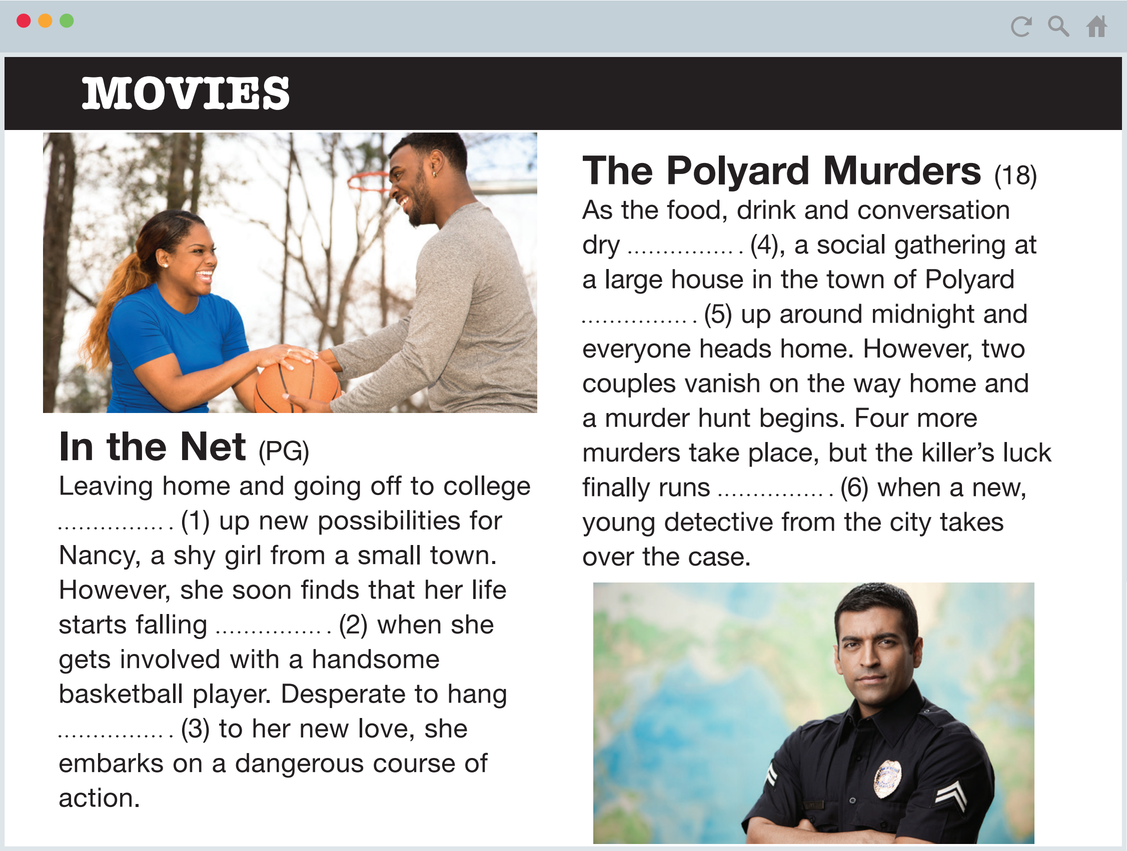

MOVIES

In the Net (PG)

Leaving home and going off to college .... (1) up new possibilities for Nancy, a shy girl from a small town. However, she soon finds that her life starts falling .... (2) when she gets involved with a handsome basketball player. Desperate to hang .... (3) to her new love, she embarks on a dangerous course of action.

The Polyard Murders (18)

As the food, drink and conversation dry .... (4), a social gathering at a large house in the town of Polyard .... (5) up around midnight and everyone heads home. However, two couples vanish on the way home and a murder hunt begins. Four more murders take place, but the killer's luck finally runs .... (6) when a new, young detective from the city takes over the case.

19.3 Rewrite these sentences to make them sound less formal using phrasal verbs instead of the underlined words.

1 When you no longer need the scissors, could you pass them to me?
2 They terminated the business in 2014 after a year of low sales.
3 OK, so who's made the bottle opener vanish? It was here a minute ago!
4 We've had some setbacks but we'll continue undeterred.
5 I only reached page 12 of the book before I got bored and stopped reading it.

19.4 Explain the play on words with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.

1 Mr Bellamy decided to wind up his clock-making business after 35 years.
2 Three new greengrocers' shops have sprouted up in the town centre recently.
3 Even though the dry cleaner's was not getting much business, the owners decided to press on.
4 A new trampoline factory has sprung up on the outskirts of the town.
5 The *Speedyheels* training shoe company has run out of money.

20 Conflict and violence

A Particles in phrasal verbs connected with conflict and violence

Some of the phrasal verbs in this unit have the particle *up* (**smash up**, **flare up**) where *up* suggests extreme or complete. In **come at** and **fly at** *at* indicates the direction of the violent action. *Off* suggests remove in **bump off** [(informal), kill] and **fight off**, and *out* suggests remove completely in **wipe out** [completely destroy]. Thinking about the meaning the particle adds will help you learn the verbs in groups and remember them better.

B Talking about conflict and violence

Faisal Why couldn't you buy a ticket?

Emma **The ticket office was closed and vandals had smashed up the machine on the platform.**

Fatima What happened to you? Are you hurt?

Alex A man **pushed** me **over** and tried to steal my bag. He **came at** me from behind.

Fatima Oh, that's dreadful! Did he take your bag?

Alex No, I managed to **fight** him **off**, then some people came and he ran off.

Camille What did the boss say when you all complained?

Albert Well, he just **flew at**[1] me and said I was irresponsible, then he **rounded on**[2] the others and ordered them to get back to work. I've never seen him **flare up**[3] like that before, you know, he just **flew into**[4] a rage as soon as I opened my mouth.

Camille So relations are not good now?

Albert No. It's the biggest **bust-up**[5] we've ever had with him. But we're not going to let him **push** us **around**[6].

[1] suddenly spoke to me very angrily

[2] suddenly turned and attacked them or shouted at them angrily

[3] suddenly become very angry

[4] if someone flies into a particular state (e.g. rage, panic), they are suddenly in that state

[5] (informal) an angry argument

[6] tell someone what to do in a rude or threatening way

Jade I hear your neighbours have been fighting one another!

Ben Yes, Luke said Arthur had stolen some plants from his garden, so he **set** his dog **on**[7] him. Arthur kicked the dog, then punched Joss and almost **knocked** him **out**. The police had to come and **break** it **up**!

[7] attack someone, or make a person or animal attack someone

Eloise What happened at the end of the film?

Maisie Well, they caught the man who'd been **bumping** everyone **off**, of course.

C Metaphorical uses of phrasal verbs to suggest conflict or violence

The verbs in this group are particularly typical of newspaper language because they have metaphorical meanings, which is good for word play.

The government promised to **wipe out** poverty. [make it disappear completely]

The minister is **fighting off** calls for her resignation.

Some newspapers are trying to **drag** the prime minister **into** the scandal. [talk about or bring someone or something into a difficult or unpleasant situation, especially when that person or thing is not seen as being connected with the situation]

He published an article in a national newspaper as a way of **striking back at** his critics. [attacking someone who has attacked you (the literal meaning of striking is hitting)]

Exercises

20.1 Complete these sentences by adding one word to the end of each one.

1 I couldn't get anything from the vending machine because some hooligans had smashed it ....
2 When Charlotte told her mother she had scratched her car, she flew into a ....
3 He's terribly bossy, so make sure you don't let yourself be pushed ....
4 Tom hit the man so hard that he knocked him ....
5 Don't interfere in the fight yourself – wait for the police to come and break it ....
6 Robyn did her best, but she didn't manage to fight her attacker ....
7 If someone criticises you unfairly, it is better to ignore them than to strike ....
8 My neighbour went to jail for trying to bump her boss ....

20.2 Correct the six mistakes with phrasal verbs in this paragraph.

There was a terrible bust-off at work today. The departmental manager came into the office in a terrible temper. She flew on her PA and when people tried to calm her down, she rounded at them. I don't know what had got into her. She pushes everyone over a lot, but she's not normally quite so aggressive. I tried not to get dragged onto it at first, but she started shouting really loudly at Jessica, so I stepped in to try to break things out.

20.3 Do the phrasal verbs in these sentences need an object? If so, add an appropriate object in an appropriate place.

1 When I tried to enter the house, the dog flew at.
2 Ellis can seem quite happy one moment and then the next he'll flare up.
3 They threatened to bump off if he told anyone about the robbery.
4 Because she had learned some judo as a child, Lauren found it much easier to fight off.
5 I was completely taken by surprise when someone suddenly came at from behind.
6 After only ten seconds in the ring, Henry's opponent had knocked out.

20.4 Rewrite these sentences using the word in brackets.

1 Paul tried to involve me in the argument, but I managed to stay out of it. (DRAG)
2 The old man thought the boys were trying to break into his house, so he told his dog to attack them. (SET)
3 The aim of the organisation is to completely abolish cruelty to children. (WIPE)
4 Although he is small, James is strong and he quickly managed to hit his attacker so hard that he became unconscious. (KNOCK)
5 Uncle Ronnie can lose his temper very quickly if you say the wrong thing. (FLARE)
6 The witness saw the thief attack the woman just as she was opening her car door. (COME)
7 The robbers came running out of the bank, knocking down an old lady who was in their path. (PUSH)
8 Older people often find it harder to get rid of colds and other infections than younger people do. (FIGHT)

Over to you

Find a story in a newspaper dealing with conflict or violence in some way. Note down any phrasal verbs that it contains in their context.

21 Sound

A Loud or unpleasant sounds

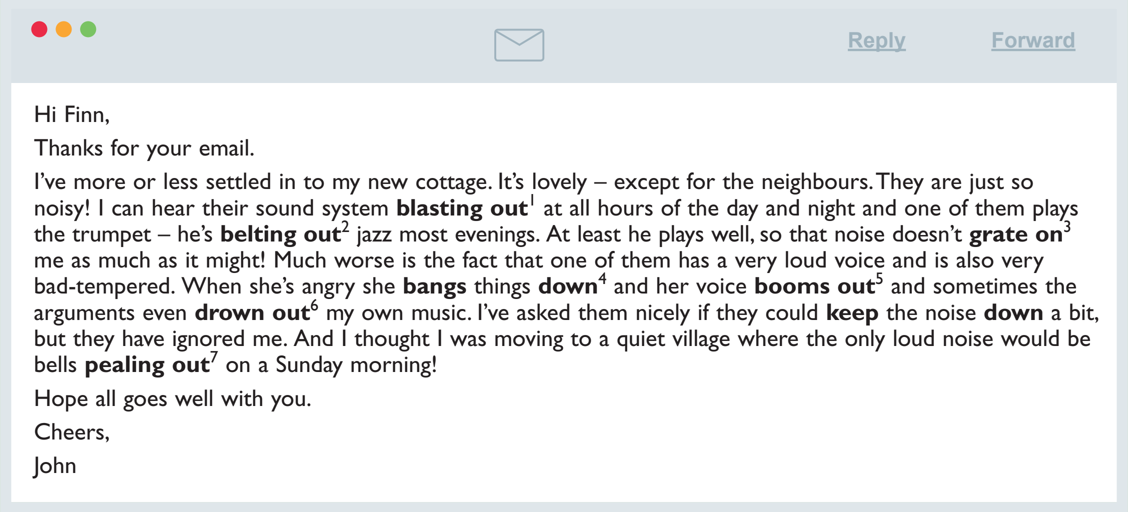

Hi Finn,

Thanks for your email.

I've more or less settled in to my new cottage. It's lovely – except for the neighbours. They are just so noisy! I can hear their sound system **blasting out**[1] at all hours of the day and night and one of them plays the trumpet – he's **belting out**[2] jazz most evenings. At least he plays well, so that noise doesn't **grate on**[3] me as much as it might! Much worse is the fact that one of them has a very loud voice and is also very bad-tempered. When she's angry she **bangs** things **down**[4] and her voice **booms out**[5] and sometimes the arguments even **drown out**[6] my own music. I've asked them nicely if they could **keep** the noise **down** a bit, but they have ignored me. And I thought I was moving to a quiet village where the only loud noise would be bells **pealing out**[7] on a Sunday morning!

Hope all goes well with you.

Cheers,

John

[1] producing a lot of noise, especially loud music
[2] (informal) playing a musical instrument or singing very loudly
[3] (of sound or behaviour) annoy
[4] puts down with force because she is angry
[5] makes a very loud noise
[6] prevent from being heard
[7] ringing loudly (of bells)

B Sounds starting and finishing

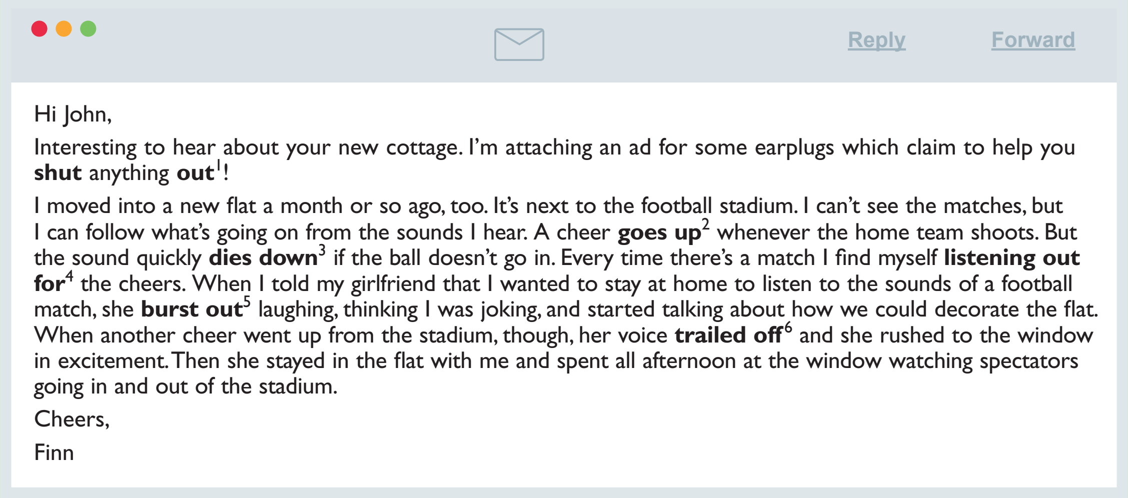

Hi John,

Interesting to hear about your new cottage. I'm attaching an ad for some earplugs which claim to help you **shut** anything **out**[1]!

I moved into a new flat a month or so ago, too. It's next to the football stadium. I can't see the matches, but I can follow what's going on from the sounds I hear. A cheer **goes up**[2] whenever the home team shoots. But the sound quickly **dies down**[3] if the ball doesn't go in. Every time there's a match I find myself **listening out for**[4] the cheers. When I told my girlfriend that I wanted to stay at home to listen to the sounds of a football match, she **burst out**[5] laughing, thinking I was joking, and started talking about how we could decorate the flat. When another cheer went up from the stadium, though, her voice **trailed off**[6] and she rushed to the window in excitement. Then she stayed in the flat with me and spent all afternoon at the window watching spectators going in and out of the stadium.

Cheers,

Finn

[1] prevent a sound from being heard (can also be used about preventing a sight from being seen)
[2] if a shout (e.g. cheer, cry, groan) goes up, a lot of people make that noise at the same time
[3] becomes less loud or strong and then stops
[4] making an effort to hear a noise which you are expecting
[5] (of a sound) suddenly started (collocates with *laughing, crying, with a comment/remark)*
[6] gradually became quieter and then stopped

Exercises

21.1 Put these phrasal verbs into two groups, a 'noisy' group (making noise) and a 'not noisy' group (reducing noise).

belt out   boom out   die down   trail off   keep down   blast out

making noise	reducing noise

21.2 Complete these sentences with phrasal verbs from 21.1. Use each verb only once.

1 She was telling us about how angry Simon had made her, but her voice .... off when he entered the room.
2 As we entered the club, the singer was .... out his latest song.
3 Rock music was .... out from an open window as I passed the house.
4 Children, please .... the noise down – Grandpa's having a rest.
5 Major Frogshort's voice .... out across the square as he issued orders to his men.
6 At 6 p.m. the noise of the machines .... down and the workers went home.

21.3 Choose the correct particle to complete these sentences.

1 Suddenly a cheer went .... as the president appeared on the balcony.
a) out b) up c) on
2 I'll listen .... for your call and come down to the street so you don't have to park.
a) with b) to c) out
3 Faye was so angry she banged her phone ....
a) down b) on c) away
4 These ear defenders shut .... 90% of external noise.
a) down b) away c) out
5 When she heard how the story ended, she burst .... laughing.
a) into b) out c) in
6 I love to hear the bells pealing .... at New Year.
a) out b) on c) off
7 The noise of a plane passing overhead drowned .... the radio and I missed the news.
a) down b) off c) out
8 She has such an awful voice; it just grates .... me every time she sings.
a) to b) at c) on

21.4 Answer these questions. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

1 If someone's voice drones on, are you likely to enjoy listening to them or not?
2 If birds are chirping away and if a person is chattering away, *away* suggests a continuing sound. True or false?
3 What particle would be best here?
The cheers of the crowd built .... to a roar as the runners approached the finish line.
4 What particle would be best here?
The noise of the train died .... as it headed towards the distant coast.
5 What phrasal verb with *ring* can be used for all of these things?
church bells   a cry   a shot   a shout   applause
6 What phrasal verb with *come* would fit in this sentence?
Suddenly an announcement .... the public address system warning everyone to evacuate the building.

22 Supporting and opposing people or views

A

In these television interviews, Members of Parliament (MPs) are defending their positions.

Interviewer Recently you seem to have **come out against**[1] those in your party who want stronger anti-terrorist laws. Why?

MP I haven't changed my position at all, and I **stick by** what I've always said. Those who **side with**[2] the terrorists or support them in any way must be opposed. But we need a mature debate about the causes of terrorism.

[1] stated publicly that you opposed an issue (opposite: **come out in favour of**)
[2] support a person or group in an argument

Interviewer You said you were determined to introduce higher fuel charges, but after the opposition from the trucking companies you seem to have **caved in**[3]. Why?

MP We are a listening party and we always **defer to**[4] expert opinion. We were advised that higher charges would have a negative economic effect in the long term, so we have decided to **go with**[5] that advice.

[3] agreed to something that you were against before, because of persuasion or threats
[4] (formal) accept someone else's opinion because they know more or are more important
[5] accept a plan or an idea

Interviewer You seem to be **leaning** increasingly **towards**[6] more conservative policies. Is there any truth in the rumour that you are about to **cross over**[7] to the Conservative Party?

MP No. The values I **stand for**[8] are liberal values, but I see no point in **siding against**[9] the Conservative Party on those issues where I agree with them.

[6] support or begin to support a particular set of ideas or a particular political party
[7] start to support a different, often opposing, person or group
[8] support
[9] opposing a person or group in an argument

B

Note the phrasal verbs for supporting and opposing people or views in these newspaper extracts.

17-year-old boy claims he was **egged on**[1] by his friends to steal cars.

[1] encouraged to do something, often something that is wrong, stupid or dangerous

Cheered on[2] by her supporters, Sadie Hinds beat the world record.

[2] received encouraging shouts

Mrs Gilmore, who celebrated her 104th birthday, when asked what her secret was, said she **swears by**[3] a glass of hot milk with a little sugar every night before bed.

[3] believes that something is very effective and that it will always work well

Mr West said the club would **not hear of**[4] letting children attend the event.

[4] not allow something, or not allow someone to do something (always in the negative)

The peace campaign was **buoyed up**[5] recently by a donation of €1,000,000.

[5] supported and made more successful

He was someone who always **stuck up for**[6] the rights of the poor and the homeless.

[6] (informal) defended or fought for something important

Exercises

22.1 Look at A opposite. Complete these statements from a political manifesto.

This party .... for equality for all.

We do not hesitate to .... out strongly against any case of injustice.

We .... by our principles at all times and never .... in to threats or pressure from the opposition.

We .... with the underdog and do not .... to those who are wealthy and powerful.

22.2 Look at B opposite. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1 runners / The / cheered / line / on / the / were / as / they / spectators / for / the / by / finishing / headed
2 rely / sister / Tim / You / to / on / stick / little / can / his / for / up
3 grandfather / by / My / garlic / a / of / raw / himself / as / way / from / colds / protecting / swears / catching
4 bungee / My / have / mother / would / tried / we / never / hadn't / her / jumping / on / egged / if
5 all-night / to / wanted / to / go / mother / party / an / it / her / wouldn't / but / of / She / hear
6 of / discovery / the / years / British / gas / the / North / The / up / buoyed / in / economy / Sea / some / for

22.3 Which word from the opposite page could fit into all the sentences in each set? Note any new meanings of the word which you come across.

1 If a politician doesn't .... by what he has said, he will lose the voters' trust.
Don't forget to .... a stamp on each of your postcards.
It is not always easy to .... up for what you believe in if others are attacking you.

2 I cannot believe that you would .... with the government on the issue of the war.
Peter was warned not to .... against the minister if he wanted to have a successful career in politics.
You will find a lot of interesting phrasal verbs on the left-hand .... of the page.

3 Please come and .... me on in the tennis match.
Josie is a bit miserable, so we really should go round and try to .... her up.
A .... went up as the prince entered the stadium.

4 Harry Carr's investment should help to .... up the company.
We always try to .... each other up before giving important presentations.
You must try to sail the yacht round that red ....

22.4 Are these sentences correct? If not, correct them.

1 My preferred course of action would be to get with what Ivan has recommended.
2 He began his political life as a Conservative but crossed across to the Labour Party when he realised that he would be more likely to get a seat in Parliament that way.
3 Many people start to lean more towards right-wing ideas as they become middle-aged.
4 Either side with the prime minister or against him – don't abstain from voting.
5 I shall have to defer on your superior knowledge of the situation.
6 My mother promises by a daily spoonful of honey to keep healthy all year long.
7 Josh is not usually naughty himself but he is quick to egg others off.
8 The headteacher said she would not hear of pupils coming to school with hair dyed a bright colour.

23 Agreeing

A Coming to an agreement

Toby So the first thing on the agenda today is **nailing down**[1] the plan for next month's launch party.

Magda Well, what happened at the senior management meeting? Did our budget request **go through**[2]?

Toby Yes, it did. A couple of them didn't want to **agree to** it at first, so I had to explain about the plans to invite local business leaders and other influential people. I had to leave before the end, but apparently they arrived at a unanimous decision and approved the budget.

Kate Great. Well, Jon and I have already **hammered out**[3] a deal with a venue just down the road. The boss at the Olive Bistro can give us a great price.

Magda Shouldn't it be somewhere a little more upmarket?

Kate I don't think you should **rule** it **out**[4] until you see it. It doesn't look like much from the outside, but they have done a great job with the recent refurbishment.

Toby We don't have to **settle on**[5] the venue right now. We just need to **come to** an agreement by the end of the week. Maybe a couple of us should go and have a look at the Olive Bistro tomorrow morning. Magda, can I **count** you **in**[6]?

Magda Yes, OK. And what about entertainment? At the last meeting Nigel was very keen on having a DJ. Do we all want to **go along with**[7] that?

[1] making a decision about all the details of something
[2] be approved by an official authority
[3] reached an agreement after a long discussion
[4] say no to something
[5] agree on
[6] include a person in a plan or activity (opposite: **count** someone **out**)
[7] agree with someone's idea or opinion

B Agreeing after disagreeing

At first only Tania and I liked the blue design best, but we gradually **won** the others **round**[1].

Ben wasn't sure about joining the special project team at the beginning, but I managed to **talk** him **round**[2] in the end.

It took a while to persuade my line manager to send me on the business management course, but she **gave in**[3] eventually!

When we first moved to an open-plan office, I didn't really like it. But I've **come round to**[4] it now, as it has improved communication in the team.

The Board have finally **backed down**[5] over their proposals to restructure the department.

The management had to **bow to**[6] pressure from the unions and give the pay rise they promised.

She wanted to work in London originally, but in the end she had to **settle for**[7] the regional office.

Two of the team had a big disagreement and weren't talking to each other for a few days. Fortunately, they seem to have **smoothed** things **over**[8] this morning.

[1] persuaded (can also be **win over**)
[2] persuade
[3] agree after initially refusing
[4] changed my opinion
[5] admitted they were wrong and changed their minds
[6] do something you don't want to do (another way to say this is **bend to**)
[7] agree to something which isn't your first choice
[8] made a problem less serious

Tip

If we persuade someone not to do something, we **talk** them **out of** something. *He wanted to have a party while his parents were away, but I **talked** him **out of** it.*

Exercises

23.1 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 The Marketing Director refused to go
2 Although it's very unlikely that we'll get the contract, I wouldn't rule it
3 I'd like to settle
4 I really want to smooth things
5 The application for my credit card went
6 Lucy was very resistant at first, but we eventually managed to win her
7 After a very difficult meeting with the shareholders, the Board finally bowed
8 Dominic's very good at talking people

a) through last week, and it arrived in the post this morning.
b) to pressure and agreed to increase the annual dividend.
c) along with our suggestions about the new product design.
d) round to his way of thinking. That's why he's such a good negotiator.
e) on a date for the interviews as soon as possible.
f) over with Roger, as we have to work together every day.
g) out completely.
h) over. Now she loves the idea!

23.2 Choose the correct particle to complete these sentences.

1 We've booked the venue and the caterers. Now we just need to nail *down / up / round* the rest of the details.
2 I've explained why we should update the website, but he just refuses to give *up / in / back* and let me do it.
3 We spent ages discussing the new logo, and we eventually came *to / through / up against* an agreement.
4 Can we settle *on / for / down* a paint colour for the walls first, and then start looking at furniture?
5 Polly agreed *to / out / up* the new schedule initially, but then realised that it didn't give her enough time to finish her work.
6 Despite the fact that Mark was clearly in the wrong, he refused to back *up / round / down* and apologise.
7 We need some volunteers to help organise the charity fundraiser. Can we count you *on / in / into*?

23.3 Rewrite each sentence using a phrasal verb based on the word in brackets in an appropriate form.

1 After two weeks of strikes, the company finally changed their mind and increased the overtime rate. (GIVE)
2 Our application for planning permission was approved without any problems, so we can start building next month. (GO)
3 We've got a general agreement, but it will take some time to work out the details. (HAMMER)
4 Chris always just agrees with what the manager says. He never thinks for himself. (GO)
5 It's going to be difficult to finalise all the details of the training day until we've chosen a date. (NAIL)
6 Charlie said he didn't like the new website design, but I think he'll change his opinion about it when he sees the latest version. (COME)

23.4 Answer these questions.

1 If someone says they'll go along with you when you make a suggestion, do they mean a) they agree b) they have changed their mind c) they disagree with you?
2 If someone gives in too easily to their children, are they a) very strict b) easily persuaded c) always arguing with them?
3 If your boss rules out an idea you suggest, does that mean she a) wants to do it b) isn't sure whether to do it c) definitely doesn't want to do it?
4 If you hear on the news that a government is bowing to international pressure, does it mean a) they are keeping the same opinion b) they agree with other countries c) they are changing their mind?
5 If someone says they want to smooth things over after an argument, does it mean a) they don't want to talk to you again b) they want to make a problem less serious c) they want to agree with you?

24 Understanding and having ideas

A Understanding

As a maths teacher I find it interesting to see how pupils cope with my subject. Some **pick up** every new topic very quickly, while others take rather longer to **catch on**[1]. Some have to **grapple with**[2] the topic for a long time but eventually understand it very well. Some find it **goes in** better if they are presented with the whole picture right from the beginning, whereas others like me to **break** a topic **down** into small bite-sized chunks. Then they gradually **piece** it all **together** for themselves. Although some find it harder than others to **keep up**[3] with what I tell them, everyone usually **cottons on**[4] in the end.

[1] (informal) understand
[2] try hard to deal with
[3] be able to understand something that is happening or changing fast
[4] (informal) begins to understand

B Having ideas

phrasal verb	definition of phrasal verb	example
occur to sb	come into your mind	It suddenly **occurred to** me that he hadn't told me his name.
hit on (an idea)	have a good idea (especially one that solves a problem)	We weren't sure how to celebrate our anniversary until James **hit on** the idea of spending the weekend in Paris.
rough out	write or draw the outline of an idea without going into details	The novelist said he always **roughs out** several plots before he decides which one to use.
reflect on	(slightly formal) think very hard about something	We all need to take some time to **reflect on** what has happened.
think up sth or **think** sth **up**	create an idea or plan using your imagination and intelligence	Can you help me **think up** an idea for my presentation?
play with (an idea)	consider an idea but usually do not do it	The headteacher **played with** the idea of introducing compulsory lessons in good manners.
leap out at	be immediately obvious	I couldn't solve the crossword clue last night, but this morning the answer **leapt out at** me.

C Discussing ideas

I have some great colleagues. Whenever I have a problem at work, I **talk** it **through**[1] with my supervisor. She always **comes at**[2] problems from a slightly different angle, and **thrashing** an issue **out**[3] with her helps me to see the problem more clearly and to find a solution. Then there is my marketing team. I am very proud of them. In our regular meetings to discuss new promotional activities, we **bounce** our ideas **off**[4] each other until we find something that we all like. We find that **batting** our ideas **around**[5] like this is really productive and results in great campaigns.

[1] discuss something in order to understand it better
[2] approaches
[3] discussing something in order to find a solution
[4] (informal) tell someone about an idea to find out what they think of it
[5] (slightly informal) discussing different ways of dealing with an issue

Exercises

24.1 Complete this conversation using verbs from the box.

reflect break rough cotton thrash hit grapple occur piece bounce talk

Student I've been .... (1) with this idea you talked about in your lecture, that written language is becoming more like spoken language these days, but I'm finding it difficult. I've been trying to .... (2) out some chapters for my dissertation and I like this topic, but I think I need to .... (3) it through with you first.

Lecturer Well, why don't I .... (4) a few ideas off you? Then you can see if they make sense. When you write emails to your friends, how formal are they?

Student Pretty informal usually.

Lecturer Let's just .... (5) on that for a moment. What makes them informal?

Student I suppose it's grammar for one thing. I use contractions like 'I'm' or 'it's' instead of 'I am' or 'it is'. And slang words and so on.

Lecturer Yes, and hasn't it .... (6) to you that what you're doing is sort of talking to people rather than writing to them?

Student Ah. I see. I think I've .... (7) on now. Things like email and text messages and chat rooms and so on are changing the way we write, is that it?

Lecturer Exactly. Go away and think about it a bit more and I'm sure you'll .... (8) on a few more ideas. Look at a few newspapers and magazines. Try and .... (9) the topic down into different themes, like grammar and vocabulary.

Student OK, thanks. I'll probably be able to .... (10) it all together now.

Lecturer Yes, and come back if you need more help and we can .... (11) it out together and try and clarify it more. OK? Bye.

24.2 Choose the correct particle to complete these sentences.

1 I've been trying to think *about* / *up* / *over* a plan for a surprise birthday party for Theodore, but I haven't hit *on* / *out* / *up* the right idea yet.
2 I thought about the problem for ages, but then the solution just leapt *over* / *away* / *out* at me.
3 Some of the trainees are very good at picking *on* / *over* / *up* new techniques, while others take a long time to catch *on* / *across* / *in*.
4 It's hard to keep up *to* / *with* / *for* all the reading for my literature course.
5 We formed a committee to bat a few ideas *over* / *up* / *around* for the college open day.
6 For a while we played *with* / *on* / *at* the idea of making all the courses compulsory, but we dropped it because it would be so unpopular.
7 I think we should try and come *into* / *on* / *at* the problem from a different angle.
8 I tried to explain it to him, but new information takes a long time to go *on* / *in* / *off* sometimes!

24.3 Find phrasal verbs from the opposite page which seem to treat ideas as if they are:

1 balls that can be played with
2 parts of a puzzle
3 things that you need physical strength to deal with

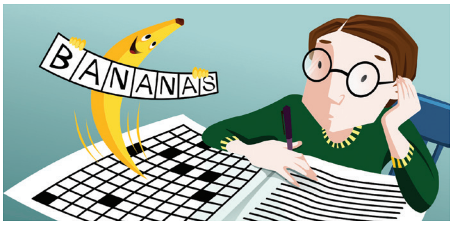

Max stared at the crossword for ages, but then the answer suddenly leapt out at him.

25

Arranging things

A

A group of students are organising things for a college open day. Note how they use phrasal verbs to talk about arranging things.

Ben We need something to **prop up**[1] the video camera. Maybe we could use that big box?

Anna Or we could rest it on the bookcase. That could **double up as**[2] a camera support.

[1] make something stay in a particular position by putting something underneath or against it
[2] also be used as

Tim Let's **gather up** all those brochures and **stack** them **up** in one pile over here.

Elodie OK, then I'll have to **see about**[3] an extra table; we've got too much stuff.

[3] deal with something, or arrange for something to be done

Sacha We need to **space out** the tables a bit; they're too close together at the moment.

Lizzie Yes, and we should **line** them **up** a bit better too so that it all looks neat.

Paul Why don't we **separate off**[4] all the student work displays and put them all together in the other room?

Jake Yes, OK. I'll **round up**[5] some more helpers; it's going to be quite a big job.

Paul Yes, and then **separate out**[6] the first-year students' work, the second-year students' work and the third- and fourth-year students' work and make a special display of it. That would be nice.

Jake OK, but how will I **know** the first-year stuff **from** the rest?

Paul The name and the year are on the back of each piece of work.

[4] remove something from a large group of things
[5] find and gather together a group of people or animals
[6] divide a group of people or things into smaller groups

Kelly Hey everyone, if you could **pile up** all your rubbish in the corner there, I'll get someone to take it all away at once.

Paul OK, but I think we should **sift through**[7] everything before we throw it away in case we're throwing away things we should keep.

[7] examine a large collection of something, especially papers, usually in order to discover something or to decide what is important

B

Other verbs connected with organising and arranging things

We **hoarded away** dozens of bottles of water as we knew there would be a shortage in the hot weather. [put a supply of something in a safe place so that it can be used in the future]

I've been trying to **fix up** a meeting with our local MP so we can get to know her better. [(informal) arrange]

He **folded up** the scarf, wrapped it in gold wrapping paper and **did** it **up** with a red bow, ready to give to his grandfather on his birthday. [fasten or tie something]

The headteacher **geared** his speech more **towards** the parents than the pupils. [designed something so that it was suitable for a particular purpose, situation, or group of people]

Norton College **ranks among** the best in the country. [has a particular position in a list arranged in order of quality]

Exercises

25.1 **Answer these questions about the verbs in A.**

1 What other things can someone round up, apart from people?
2 What might you prop your head up with if you're reading on the sofa?
3 Which other verb in A is close in meaning to *stack up*?
4 If you sift through papers, what are you doing?
5 Does the particle *up* seem to have any similar meanings in the verbs in A?

25.2 **Choose the correct phrasal verb to complete these sentences.**

1 We had to *stick up* / *stock up* / *stack up* the chairs after the meeting and lock the hall.
2 Could you *round in* / *round up* / *round off* some people to help move the furniture?
3 Let's *separate off* / *separate away* / *separate out* the blue forms, the green forms and the white forms so that they don't all get mixed up together.

25.3 **Complete the gaps in the texts with a particle from B opposite.**

My nine-year-old son is so untidy. I'm tired of trying to get him to fold his clothes .... (1) and put them neatly into drawers. The trouble is, his drawers are full of other things – toys and games, stones and pieces of wood that he has hoarded .... (2) for some reason or another.

I've just done a presentation of our company's products with a major firm we'd like to do business with. It's ranked .... (3) the biggest in the country, so we could make a lot of money if they agree to let us supply them with our boxes. I geared my presentation .... (4) the quality of our boxes, and at the end of it I presented their team with one of our boxes done .... (5) in specially-designed paper in their company colours and filled with information about our company. I think they may be interested. They've certainly agreed to fix .... (6) another meeting.

25.4 **Answer these questions using a phrasal verb based on the verb in brackets in your answer.**

1 What would you do if you wanted to discuss a business idea face-to-face with your bank manager? (FIX)
2 If students are taking an important written exam, what are schools usually required to do with the desks where they sit to write their exams? (SPACE)
3 If one leg of a table is shorter than the others, how might you use a book? (PROP)
4 If you recycle your rubbish, why might you need several different containers? (SEPARATE)
5 For a school photo, how does the photographer typically arrange the pupils? (LINE)
6 If you are a student living in one room and you often have friends and family to stay with you, why might it be useful to have a large sofa? (DOUBLE)
7 If you have a lot of papers on the floor and you want to tidy your room, what do you do with the papers? (GATHER)
8 If you are going to meet someone who you've never met before at a crowded café, why might you each agree to wear something distinctive? (KNOW)
9 You are arranging a party and want to ask an artistic friend to deal with decorating the room where the party is to be held. What could you say to your friend? (SEE)
10 You have a pile of papers that you think it may be all right to throw away, but what is it a good idea to do with them first? (SIFT)

26 Talking about size and number

A Increasing and totalling

phrasal verb	definition of phrasal verb	example
build up (sth) / **build** (sth) **up**	increase in amount, size or strength, or make something increase	Paula has been doing a lot of long-distance running to try to **build up** her stamina.
bump up sth / **bump** sth **up**	(informal) increase the size or amount of something, e.g. price, by a large amount	Hotels in this town always **bump** their prices **up** when the film festival is on.
round up sth / **round** sth **up**[1]	increase a number to the nearest whole number	The taxi fare came to £29.25, but we **rounded** it **up** and gave the driver £30.
push up sth / **push** sth **up**	increase the amount, number or value of something	The TV series about Caitlin Cliff's pottery **pushed up** the value of her work.
put on sth / **put** sth **on**	if a person or animal puts on weight, they become heavier	Bobby's **put on** six kilos since he stopped playing football.
amount to sth	become a particular amount	When we added living costs to the fees, the cost of the course **amounted to** £34,000.
add up	(informal) increase and become a large number or amount	Bringing up children is an expensive business. Clothes, shoes, food, toys, – it all **adds up**!

[1] (opposite: **round down** sth / **round** sth **down** = reduce to nearest whole number)

B Decreasing

Ice cream sales are high in summer but **tail off** as winter approaches. [decrease in amount]

Since they employed a new chef, the quality of the food has really **fallen off**. [become smaller or lower]

We'll never be able to get out of the car park now. Let's wait till the football crowds **thin out** a bit. [become fewer in number]

Laura was so keen to get rid of her old car that I was able to get her to **knock** the price **down** a bit. [(informal) reduce]

I'm afraid we have no choice but to **slim** the business **down** and some redundancies will be announced next week. [make it smaller in size, often by employing fewer people]

C Staying the same

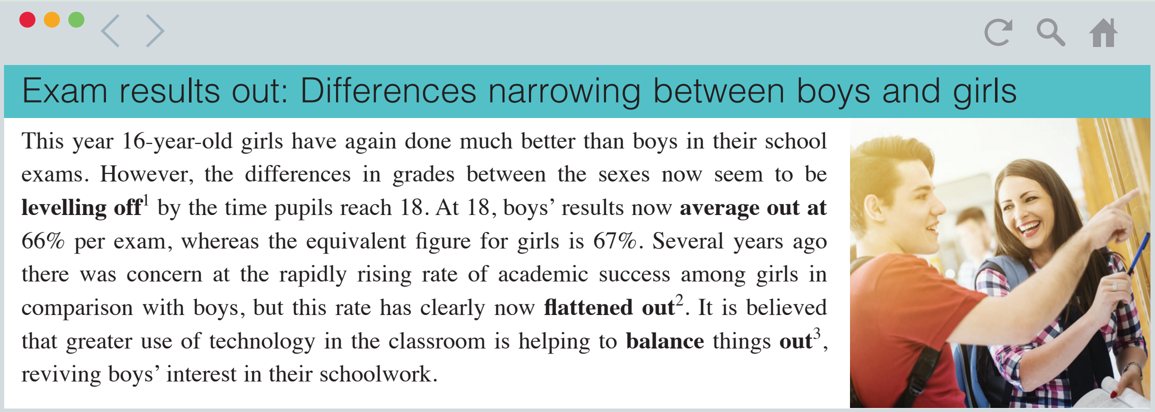

Exam results out: Differences narrowing between boys and girls

This year 16-year-old girls have again done much better than boys in their school exams. However, the differences in grades between the sexes now seem to be **levelling off**[1] by the time pupils reach 18. At 18, boys' results now **average out at** 66% per exam, whereas the equivalent figure for girls is 67%. Several years ago there was concern at the rapidly rising rate of academic success among girls in comparison with boys, but this rate has clearly now **flattened out**[2]. It is believed that greater use of technology in the classroom is helping to **balance** things **out**[3], reviving boys' interest in their schoolwork.

[1] becoming more similar (can also be **level out**)
[2] stopped increasing or decreasing and begun to stay at the same level
[3] make things equal

Exercises

26.1 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.

1 The total cost of our holiday amounted at nearly £500.
2 The bill came to £22.20 each, so we rounded it over to £25 to include a tip.
3 Helena has pushed on a lot of weight recently.
4 It will take Joe some time to build on his strength again after such a long illness.
5 The college hoped that the advert would push off enrolments for its new course.
6 The new fertiliser claims to dump up agricultural yields considerably.

26.2 Match the statements 1–6 with the illustrations a–f.

a
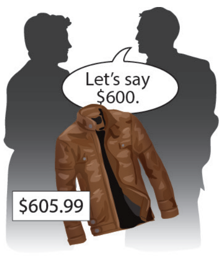

b
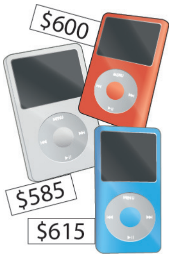

c
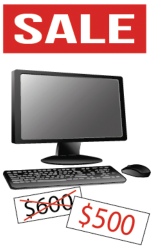

d
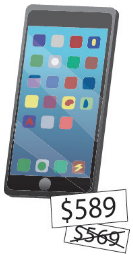

e
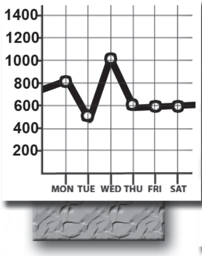

f
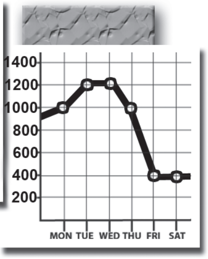

1 Sales levelled out at £600.
2 The prices averaged out at £600.
3 The price was rounded down.
4 They knocked the price down.
5 Sales tailed off later in the week.
6 The price was bumped up.

26.3 Answer the questions.

1 The new manager has decided to slim the business down.
What does the new manager intend to do?
2 We picnicked in the forest in a place where the trees were beginning to thin out.
Why might this have been a good place for a picnic?
3 The graph showing hits on our website begins to flatten out in May.
How many hits did the website get in June?
4 Interest in politics seems to be falling off now, particularly among young people.
Are young people more or less interested in politics than they used to be?
5 Joseph's lack of interest in housework is balanced out by his love of gardening.
How does the speaker probably feel about Joseph and what he does at home?

26.4 Complete this email with phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

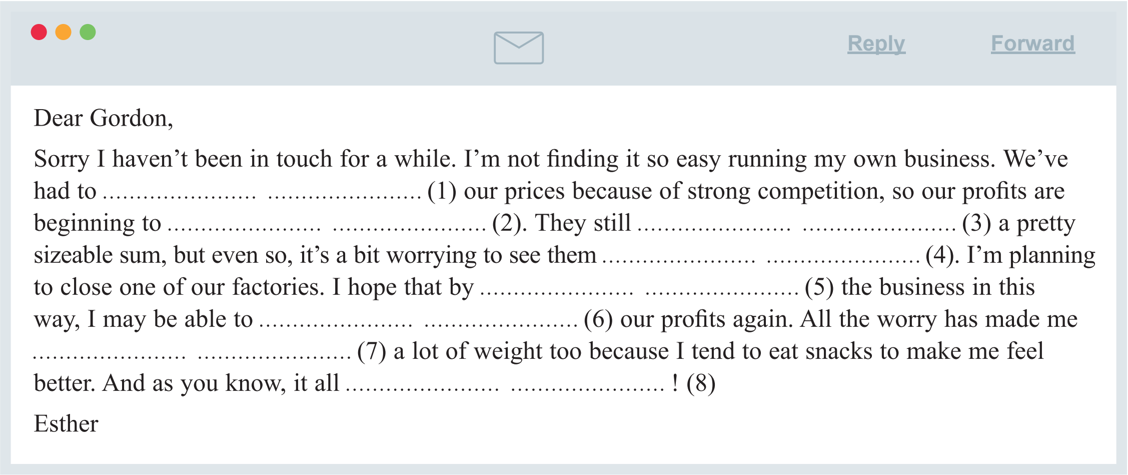

Dear Gordon,

Sorry I haven't been in touch for a while. I'm not finding it so easy running my own business. We've had to .... (1) our prices because of strong competition, so our profits are beginning to .... (2). They still .... (3) a pretty sizeable sum, but even so, it's a bit worrying to see them .... (4). I'm planning to close one of our factories. I hope that by .... (5) the business in this way, I may be able to .... (6) our profits again. All the worry has made me .... (7) a lot of weight too because I tend to eat snacks to make me feel better. And as you know, it all .... ! (8)

Esther

27 Talking about success and failure

A

The chief executive of a company is making a speech to the staff. Note the phrasal verbs connected with success and failure.

> This year has been an eventful one. We've been able to **capitalise on**[1] the publicity we got in the new year with the launch of our new lines, and we've **come out** stronger than ever, despite strong competition. We've **succeeded in** reversing the downward trend we were suffering last year. What's more, we've managed to **win back** customers from the competition. We had been **losing out to**[2] international players, but now we can **pride** ourselves **on**[3] being able to offer better quality products at lower prices. In the middle of the year, we faced a hostile takeover bid from *Diotecnics*. We fought hard against it and finally **won through**[4], as I knew we would. That bid **fell through**[5] and we are now stronger than ever. So I want to thank you all.

[1] use a situation in order to achieve something good for yourself
[2] being less successful than
[3] be proud of
[4] succeeded after trying hard to achieve something
[5] failed to happen

B

Two students are talking on the phone about studying for exams.

Harry I don't think I'll **get through**[1] the end-of-term exam this time.

Libby Oh, really? Why?

Harry Well, I've been really busy with the drama club, that's the problem. I wish I could be one of those people who **sail through**[2] exams and still manage to **pack in**[3] a huge amount in their spare time.

Libby Yes, me too. But never mind, you did your presentation the other day and you managed to **carry** that **off**[4] quite well.

Harry I managed to fool everyone, you mean! I **got by**[5] only because I found some useful stuff on the Internet the night before.

Libby Well, that's OK. That's what the Internet's for. As long as you didn't just copy it!

[1] pass
[2] easily pass
[3] (informal) manage to do a lot of activities in a period of time
[4] succeed in doing or achieving something difficult
[5] (informal) had just enough or knew just enough of something to deal with a difficult situation

C

Other verbs connected with succeeding and failing

I couldn't really afford the time to go to a lecture on bees, but my curiosity **won out** and I went. [(informal) was stronger than other, competing emotions]

The general lack of enthusiasm **doomed** the plan **to** failure. [made it sure to fail]

The support of my friends and family helped to **pull** me **through** a very difficult time. [succeed in dealing with a difficult period of your life, or to help someone else to do this]

You have to learn to **rise above** negative criticism if you want to succeed. [not allow something bad that is happening or being done to you to upset you or to affect your behaviour]

Did you see the match on Saturday? We've **fallen behind** Liverpool by three points now. [failed to score as many points as another team or player in a competition]

Exercises

27.1 Rewrite each sentence using a phrasal verb based on the word in brackets in an appropriate form.

1 Some people were going to buy our flat, but at the last moment the sale failed to happen. (FALL)
2 Steve is very proud of his organisational skills. (PRIDE)
3 The company was able to take advantage of the unusually wet weather by promoting its inexpensive umbrellas. (CAPITALISE)
4 The England team lost the trophy in 2014 but regained it the following year. (WIN)
5 It's been a difficult year for us, but we have emerged from it with renewed vigour. (COME)
6 Leila managed to pass her driving test at her first attempt. (SUCCEED)
7 Hassan was beaten by his brother in the finals of the tennis tournament. (LOSE)
8 They had a long battle in court to prove their innocence, but finally they succeeded. (WIN)

27.2 Complete the text below using the correct verbs.

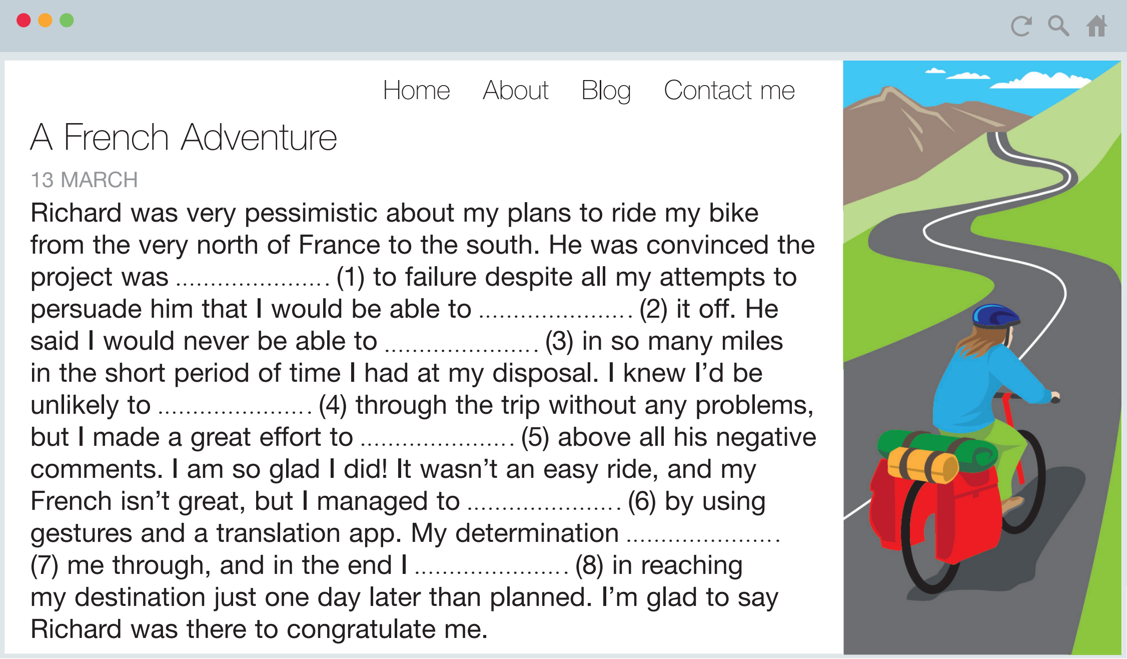

A French Adventure

13 MARCH

Richard was very pessimistic about my plans to ride my bike from the very north of France to the south. He was convinced the project was .... (1) to failure despite all my attempts to persuade him that I would be able to .... (2) it off. He said I would never be able to .... (3) in so many miles in the short period of time I had at my disposal. I knew I'd be unlikely to .... (4) through the trip without any problems, but I made a great effort to .... (5) above all his negative comments. I am so glad I did! It wasn't an easy ride, and my French isn't great, but I managed to .... (6) by using gestures and a translation app. My determination .... (7) me through, and in the end I .... (8) in reaching my destination just one day later than planned. I'm glad to say Richard was there to congratulate me.

27.3 Say whether the people in these sentences (a) succeeded in doing something, (b) succeeded in doing something but only in the face of difficulty or (c) failed to do something.

1 He was so nervous when he stood up to sing, but I think he carried it off rather well.
2 She sailed through the interview and was offered the job immediately.
3 I lost out in the job interview to another woman who had more experience than me.
4 I'd hoped to go to Peru in March but the trip fell through.
5 We packed in such a lot on our trip to Korea – we saw all the main cities and sights.
6 The college authorities ignored our protests at first, but we won through in the end.

27.4 Correct the ten mistakes with phrasal verbs in this paragraph.

Oliver has always wanted to become an engineer, but it was quite difficult for him to get a place at college. He didn't get in at his first attempt, losing off to applicants with better exam grades. However, at his second try he succeeded to win a place. He then sailed over all his first-year exams but failed some of his exams in the second year, as he started spending a lot of time on the rugby pitch, playing for the college first team, rather than in the library. Then his team fell back in the college league after three games, so he wasn't too happy and did even less work, and as a result he failed three exams. However, he's always prided himself for being able to revise very efficiently when he's really under pressure, and in the third year he did enough to pull himself across. His friends were amazed that he managed to carry it out, as they were sure he could not have packed up enough study in such a short time to get by the exams. But Oliver knew that he had only just got over and he resolved to organise his life much better after leaving college.

28 Discussing problems

A Describing problems

Rosie How's life with you, Kate? Is everything going OK?

Kate Not really. They're threatening to make some redundancies at work, so that's **hanging over**[1] me. All because senior management **botched up**[2] and lost the company millions of pounds last year! My daughter's relationship with her boyfriend of five years has **broken down**[3] because pressures they were both having at work began to **spill over**[4] into their private lives and they just couldn't cope. Then my son, the journalist, was in Phrasalia and got **caught up in**[5] the revolution there – he **ran into**[6] difficulties when he was trying to leave and we don't know when he'll get home. He even **landed in**[7] prison for a few days.

Rosie Oh dear! And how are you **bearing up**[8]?

Kate Oh, it's hard, but I'm OK. But how about you, what's going on in your life?

Rosie It's quite stressful, too, as we've just learned Leo's sister is **riddled with**[9] cancer …

[1] making us worry about what is going to happen
[2] (informal) spoiled something by doing it badly
[3] failed
[4] have an unpleasant effect on another situation
[5] involved in an activity or situation which prevented him from moving
[6] began to experience
[7] found himself in a difficult situation or unpleasant place
[8] dealing with a sad or difficult situation
[9] full of something unpleasant or bad

B Dealing with problems

We must all **resign ourselves to**[1] the fact that we will encounter problems throughout our lives. We cannot **safeguard against**[2] all unpleasant events. Nor can we **walk away**[3] from every difficult situation that comes along. We have to find ways of **living with**[4] the bad situations that we inevitably face from time to time and find ways of **ironing out**[5] difficulties. We should not be too proud to **fall back on**[6] our parents for advice – we may be surprised at how helpful they can be. If the problem is a disagreement, then we may be able to **smooth things over**[7]. Explaining how we feel will sometimes be all that is needed to **clear up**[8] a misunderstanding. If we have behaved badly, then we should apologise and find a way to **make up for**[9] our actions. The important thing is not to **resort to**[10] behaviour that we know is wrong even if it seems to offer a temporary solution. Don't just **grasp at**[11] the first chance of an easy way out – it may not be the right thing to do.

Annette Berg, Therapist and agony aunt

[1] accept that something we do not want to happen will happen
[2] do things to stop something unpleasant happening
[3] stop being involved in a situation that is difficult to deal with
[4] accepting a difficult situation and continuing with our life while it exists
[5] doing something to resolve a problem
[6] use something when other things have failed, or when there are no other choices
[7] make a disagreement or problem seem less serious or easier to deal with, especially by talking to the people involved in it
[8] give or find an explanation for, or deal with, a problem or disagreement
[9] do something good so that the bad thing seems less important and does not cause a problem any more
[10] do something that you do not really want to because you cannot find any other way of achieving something
[11] quickly use or accept an opportunity to do or have something, especially because you are unhappy with the present situation

Exercises

28.1 **Complete these emails between Isabella and Nicole using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.**

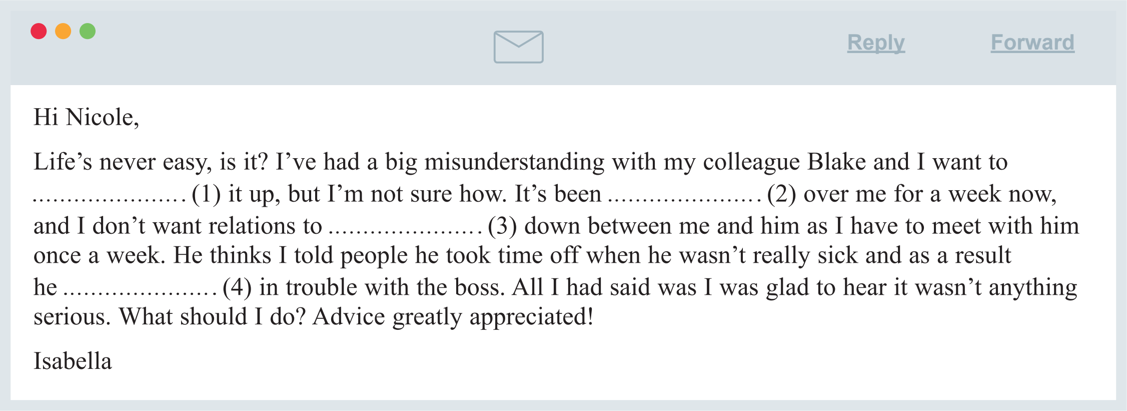

Hi Nicole,

Life's never easy, is it? I've had a big misunderstanding with my colleague Blake and I want to .... (1) it up, but I'm not sure how. It's been .... (2) over me for a week now, and I don't want relations to .... (3) down between me and him as I have to meet with him once a week. He thinks I told people he took time off when he wasn't really sick and as a result he .... (4) in trouble with the boss. All I had said was I was glad to hear it wasn't anything serious. What should I do? Advice greatly appreciated!

Isabella

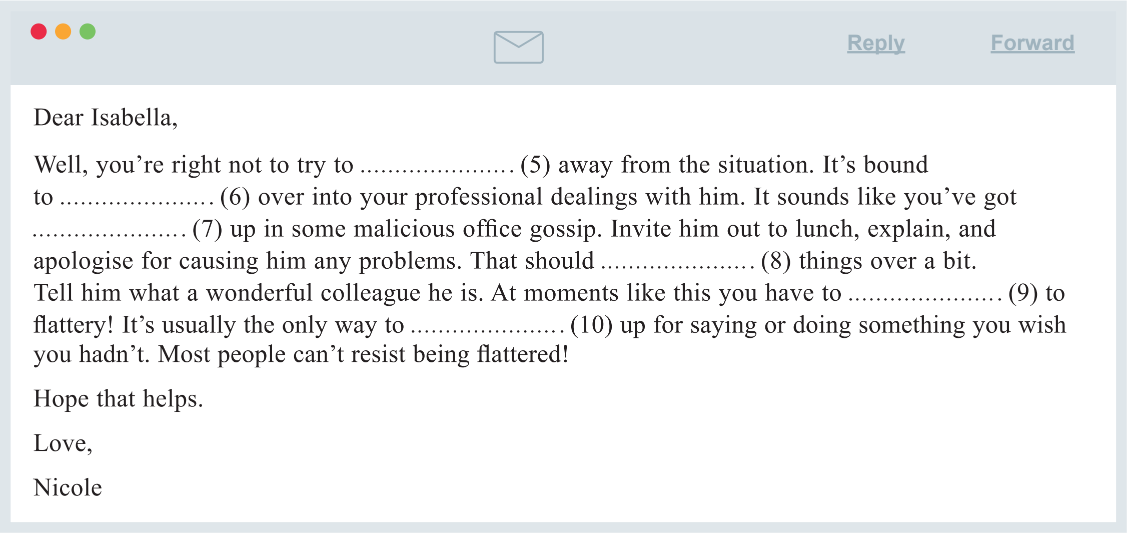

Dear Isabella,

Well, you're right not to try to .... (5) away from the situation. It's bound to .... (6) over into your professional dealings with him. It sounds like you've got .... (7) up in some malicious office gossip. Invite him out to lunch, explain, and apologise for causing him any problems. That should .... (8) things over a bit. Tell him what a wonderful colleague he is. At moments like this you have to .... (9) to flattery! It's usually the only way to .... (10) up for saying or doing something you wish you hadn't. Most people can't resist being flattered!

Hope that helps.

Love,

Nicole

28.2 **Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences using a phrasal verb from the opposite page. Make any other necessary changes.**

1 When the doctors examined the dead man, they found his body was full of disease.
2 I just quickly accepted the first opportunity to get out of my boring job and do something more exciting. I wasn't prepared to just continue to accept it; I had to make a change.
3 I was forced to use my knowledge of map reading from my days as a scout to help us find a way out of the valley.
4 I'm sorry, I've done things the wrong way and caused a lot of problems for everyone.
5 A healthy diet and plenty of exercise is the best way to protect yourself from heart disease.
6 His life is difficult. His parents died last year when he was only 16. Now he just has to be brave and determined and try to carry on as best he can.
7 I'm afraid we just have to reluctantly accept the fact that we are going to have to sell the house.
8 She tried very hard to resolve the misunderstandings between the two groups.

Over to you

Look at the problem page of any English language magazine or newspaper and see how many phrasal verbs are used to talk about problems. Make a note of any you find, especially any not practised in this unit. There are also many problem pages in English on the Internet. Try doing a search for 'problem page'.

29 Deciding and influencing

A

Note the phrasal verbs for making decisions and influencing people and events.

It's time for me to **decide on** that interesting offer I had last week. I've **mulled it over**[1], but I still don't know whether to say yes or no and the deadline is tomorrow. I just want to be careful not to **tie myself down**[2] to something I might regret later.

[1] thought carefully about something for a long time
[2] stop yourself from being free to do what you want to do

For a long time I've been **toying with**[3] the idea of doing something completely different with my life. The opportunity has finally come, but I need to **size up**[4] the situation before I make my decision.

[3] considering (doing) something, but not very seriously and without making a decision
[4] carefully examine a situation or person in order to make a judgement

Have you heard the rumours about the changes that are going to be **pushed through**[5] at work? I know you've been **singled out**[6] for praise recently, but so has your rival for promotion and I get the feeling that management are trying to **play you off against**[7] each other. I'm worried that the changes may result in her **doing you out of**[8] the promotion you deserve.

[5] made officially accepted
[6] chosen from a large group of people or things, usually in order to criticise or praise them
[7] encourage you to compete/argue with another to get some advantage from this situation
[8] (informal) stopping you from getting or keeping something, in a dishonest or unfair way

I'm sorry to hear about your disagreement with your colleague. It's clear that it's very difficult to **reason with** her, but don't let her **play on**[9] your good nature and don't give in. Do your best to try and **work things out**[10] with her, but if you can't, I think you should consult your boss.

[9] use your fears/weaknesses to make you do what they want, often in an unfair way
[10] think carefully about how you are going to do something and make a plan or decision

B

In these dialogues the second speaker uses a phrasal verb to paraphrase what the first speaker says.

Ahmed I might say no to the Berlin trip and go to Moscow instead, but I'm not sure.
Julian So you're **tending towards** the Moscow trip? I thought you might.

Lucy I think I now agree with you that we should postpone the new product launch.
Stan Ah-ha! So you've finally **come round** to my way of thinking.

Ryan That's it. I've decided. I'm going to take the job in Madrid.
Daniela Good! I'm glad you've **arrived at** a decision at last. You won't regret it.

Dan So who's going to have the extra ticket? I've got a coin, if you like.
Evan OK, let's **toss for**[1] it. 'Heads' – you get it, 'tails' – I get it.

[1] throw a coin into the air to see which side lands facing upwards. For British coins, 'heads' means the side with the Queen's head on it; 'tails' is the other side.

Manon We need to encourage people to join the campaign and work with us.
Charles Yes, we need to **drum up** more support.

Tip

Do sb **out of** sth is not the only informal phrasal verb with *do*. We also find it in **do in** sb [kill], **do out** sth [decorate], **do** yourself **up** [make yourself look more attractive] and **do without** [manage without something]. Where verbs form groups like this, record them together.

Exercises

29.1 Find phrasal verbs in A that match these definitions.

1 play with an idea, consider it but not very deeply ....
2 try to discuss something rationally with someone ....
3 consider something carefully over a period of time ....
4 make up your mind about something ....
5 unfairly deprive someone of something ....
6 evaluate someone or something ....
7 restrict or limit someone ....
8 select one person from a large group ....

29.2 Answer these questions about the verbs in B.

1 What do you need if you and a friend agree to make a decision by tossing for it?
2 If someone is tending towards something, have they made a definite decision?
3 What is a *drum* and why do you think it is used metaphorically in collocations like *drum up support* or *drum up business*?
4 If someone comes round to a decision, how quickly did they arrive at that decision?

29.3 Complete these sentences with a phrasal verb from the opposite page.

1 If we talk about the problems between us properly, I'm sure we'll be able to .... things ....
2 I thought it was very unfair of Mrs King to .... you .... for criticism in front of everyone else like that.
3 Although the redevelopment plans are unpopular, the government is determined to .... them ....
4 Clara is very keen that her daughters should not .... themselves .... by getting married too young.
5 I hope it won't take you too long to .... a decision.
6 If we don't manage to .... some more business soon, we may have to close down.
7 Sometimes children seem to be able to sense a new teacher's weakness and they .... it to their own advantage.
8 If you can't agree on which film to go and see, we'll have to .... it.
9 You don't need to made a decision immediately – take time to .... it ....
10 Saif is only two, but he is already very good at .... his father .... his mother.

29.4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences. If there are no mistakes, put a tick at the end of the sentence.

1 Everyone is trying to dissuade me from taking the job, but I'm tending for accepting it.
2 You'll need to take time to shape up the situation before you decide what to do.
3 Wicked Uncle Fred succeeded in making his brother out of his rightful inheritance.
4 Erica is toying with the idea of going to live in Australia, but I don't think she'll do it.
5 It took Lily ages to get her father to go round to the idea of her training as a bus driver.
6 The careers teacher helps pupils in their final year decide on a career.
7 The advert plays off people's desire to appear young and attractive.
8 I don't want to do the washing-up either. Get a coin and we'll throw about it.

30 Exclamations and warnings

The exclamations on this page are all informal. Be careful with the ones marked * as you risk insulting the person you are speaking to.

A Encouraging others

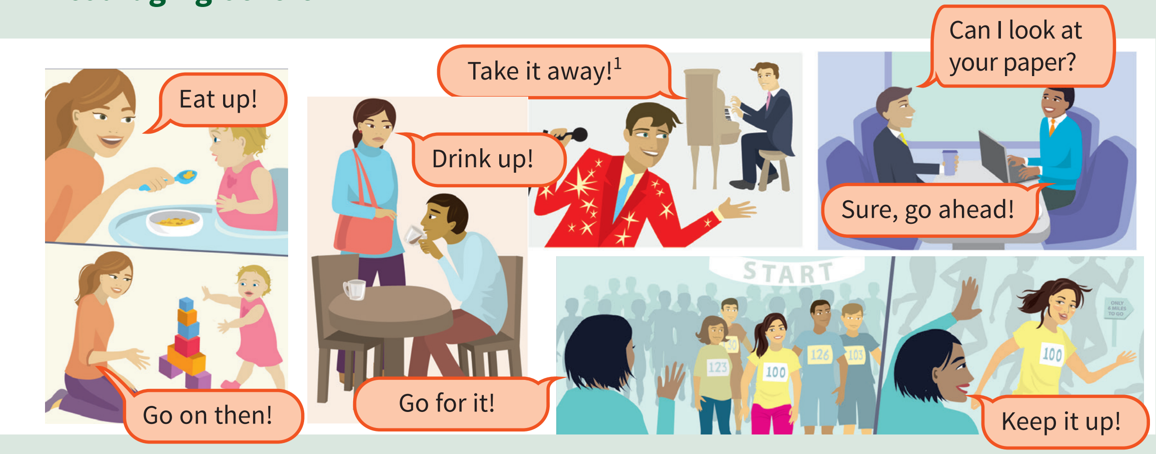
Eat up!
Go on then!
Drink up!
Go for it!
Take it away!1
Can I look at your paper?
Sure, go ahead!
START
Keep it up!

[1] a command used in musical contexts, meaning ‘Start playing/singing!’

B Expressing impatience

expression	possible context	you say this in order to …
Roll on (Friday)!	You are in the middle of a very busy week at work.	show that you are looking forward to a time or event
Dream on!	A not very musical friend is telling you about their plans to become a famous rock star.	tell someone that what they hope for is not possible and will not happen
Grow up!*	A member of your family refuses to speak to you.	tell an older child or an adult to stop acting like a small child
Hang on! **Hang about!**	A friend is telling you about a problem when you suddenly think of something that might solve their problem.	tell someone to stop doing or saying something, to wait a minute
Go on!	A friend has just told you that he’s been invited to appear in a Hollywood film.	tell someone that you do not believe what they just said (Note: spoken with a falling intonation)
Come on! **Come off it!**	A friend is claiming he plays better chess than you – and you pride yourself on your play.	tell someone you don’t believe them or disagree or are angry with them
Wake up!	You are telling someone how to do something but they are clearly daydreaming.	tell someone not paying attention to listen to what you say
Shut up!*	Your two brothers are arguing when you are trying to concentrate.	tell someone to stop talking

Exercises

30.1 Using exclamations from the opposite page, what could you say to a family member who ...

1 was about to start a race in the hope of breaking a record?
2 was acting in a childish way which was annoying you very much?
3 told you a very surprising bit of news?
4 told you he/she had just seen a flying saucer? (give two possible answers)
5 was in a long-distance race and who was looking very tired and about to give up?
6 was daydreaming and had not listened to something important you just said?
7 said he/she intended to be an astronaut?

30.2 Complete these sentences with a verb from the opposite page.

1 .... on the end of term! I'm sick of studying.
2 Oh, ... on! I've just found her number; we can ring her straightaway.
3 .... up, everyone! Your glasses are still half-full. We have to leave now if we're to catch the film!
4 **Tim** Can I print something out on your printer?
Mariam Of course, go .... ! You don't need to ask!
5 (Older brother to younger brother) .... up Tom, will you! I'm trying to work out this maths problem.
6 (Emma is standing at the side of the pool)
Emma Mum, watch me dive in!
Mum OK, ... on then, but be careful, darling!
7 Come on, ... up, children! Grandma has cooked us a delicious meal.
8 (Singer to guitarist) OK, ... it away! One, two, three!

30.3 Which exclamations from the list would fit these situations? Use a dictionary if necessary.

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

Get off! Hurry up! Watch out! Calm down! Hold on! Go easy on them!

1 You think a teacher should treat some students less severely. What might you say?
2 Someone is starting to lose their temper. What might you say?
3 A child is pulling at the clothing of another child, who is getting annoyed. What might the second child say?
4 Someone is about to cross a busy road without looking. What might you say?
5 You are waiting for a friend to arrive to go to the cinema, but he calls you to say he is running late. What might you say?
6 A friend calls with some important information that you need to write down, but you don't have a pen. What might you say to the caller while you find one?

31

Work

Read these statements by different people talking about their jobs.

I'll be retiring next year. I already find that I can **farm out**[1] tasks I used to do myself. I'm slowly **easing off**[2] now so that I can **step aside**[3] next year knowing I've left everything in good hands.

The boss

[1] give work to other people instead of doing it yourself
[2] starting to work less or do things with less energy
[3] leave a job or position, especially so that someone else can do it

We never like to **call** people **out**[4] on strike, but when we do, we have to be determined to **see** it **through**[5] to the end. We have to keep talking constructively and try not to get **bogged down**[6] in lengthy negotiations which only prolong the strike.

The union representative

[4] order workers to strike
[5] continue doing a job until it is finished, especially when it is difficult
[6] (informal) become so involved in the details of something that you cannot achieve anything

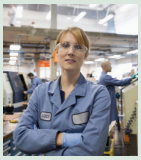

My job is monotonous. I just **slog away**[7] day after day. People like me **get passed over**[8] for promotion, so we're not motivated. I often feel like **packing** this job **in**[9] and finding something else. One day I'll just **hand in** my notice and go.

The assembly-line worker

[7] (informal) keep working very hard, usually for a long time
[8] are not given a higher position because it is given to someone else
[9] (informal) stopping doing something, especially a job

In this job you just have to **fling** yourself **into**[10] your work and **beaver away**[11] to get things done each day. I spend a lot of time **running round** helping other people. It's not a bad job, and sometimes I'm allowed to **get off**[12] early if I've stayed late the day before.

The administrative assistant

[10] start to spend a lot of your time and energy doing something
[11] (informal) work hard at something for a long time, especially something you are writing
[12] leave the place where you work, usually at the end of the day

I decided to **go in to** research, as I wanted to do something exciting. I don't think I'm **cut out for**[13] teaching. University was fun, but now I've got to **knuckle down**[14] and build my career.

The scientist

[13] have the right qualities for something, especially a job
[14] start to work or study hard, especially if you have not been working very hard before canlt find 'buckle down'

Well, in this job you just **plug away**[15] and hope the day will pass quickly. If I have to write a report, I do what I can to **cobble** something **together**[16], but I don't ever feel that I achieve anything worthwhile. Most people in my position just **coast along**[17] and dream of the summer holidays.

The office worker

[15] (informal) work hard at something for a long time
[16] make something quickly and not very carefully
[17] do only the things that you have to do without trying to go faster or be more successful

Exercises

31.1 **Answer these questions about the phrasal verbs in this unit.**

1 Which verb focuses on working with enthusiasm?
2 Which three verbs focus on stopping work?
3 Which two verbs focus on working without using too much energy?
4 Which four verbs focus on working hard?
5 Which verb is based on an animal metaphor?
6 Which two verbs are based on metaphors connected with the land?

31.2 **Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences using the word in brackets in an appropriate form. Make any other necessary changes.**

1 Louise always approaches her work with great enthusiasm. (FLING)
2 I really think that it is time you applied yourself much more seriously to your studies. (KNUCKLE)
3 As a research scientist, you just have to keep working hard at your experiments over a long period of time and eventually you'll get results. (PLUG)
4 If this morning's meeting goes smoothly, I should be able to leave work by 1 p.m. (GET)
5 The meeting was going well until we got really involved with the details of the sales conference party. (BOG)
6 I'm not sure exactly what I'm going to say in my speech, but I'm sure I'll be able to get something ready by tomorrow morning. (COBBLE)
7 There comes a time when it is best for an older manager to withdraw and let a younger person take over. (STEP)
8 I always say that if you start a job, you should make sure you finish it. (SEE)

31.3 **Correct the six mistakes with particles in this paragraph.**

I'd hate a job where I could just coast about without needing to think about what I was doing. I'd far rather keep busy and really don't mind how much I have to slog off each day. I'd soon pack off any job that didn't keep me working hard. I fling myself onto everything I do. Even when I was at school, I used to beaver up at my homework as soon as I got home from school. My sister certainly never used to knuckle into work in the way I did.

31.4 **Complete these sentences using verbs from the box and the correct particles. Put the verbs in the correct form and make any other necessary changes.**

call	cut	ease	farm	go	hand	pass	run

1 I can't stand the sight of blood, so I'm not really .... nursing.
2 If you hate your job so much, why don't you just .... your notice?
3 When several workers were unfairly dismissed, the trade union official decided it was time to .... on strike.
4 As a PA I spend most of my time .... after my boss.
5 We've had a very busy few months at work, but things are beginning to .... now.
6 Liam is very good at his job, so I can't understand why he always gets .... while less able people get promoted.
7 Our company has started doing a lot of outsourcing, which means that we .... jobs that we previously used to do ourselves.
8 Ever since she was a child she has wanted to .... medicine.

32

Study

A

Going through college

Sam and Ben are twin brothers. They have a very rich grandfather who offered to **put** them **through**[1] university. Sam **sailed through**[2] his exams at school and easily **got into**[3] a good university. Ben wanted to go to the same university, but it was harder for him to **get in**. However, in his last few months at school, he managed to **get through**[4] all the necessary exams. Both brothers wanted to **major in**[5] law. Sam had worked in a law firm in several summer holidays and this experience was able to **count towards**[6] his degree. Ben spent his holidays playing sport. Sam continued to study hard and soon **left** most of the other students in his group **behind**[7]. At the end of six months, the professor **creamed off**[8] the best students and **moved** them **up** to the next class. Sam was in this group but Ben was not. The professor felt he was more interested in rugby than law and this **counted against**[9] him. He was **marked down**[10] for careless mistakes in a number of his essays and by the end of the year he had **fallen behind**[11] the rest of his year. His tutor says he'll be lucky if he even **scrapes through**[12] his exams. His grandfather has arranged to come and visit him and Ben is feeling a little nervous.

[1] pay for them to study at university

[2] easily passed

[3] succeeded in getting a place (at a school, college or organisation)

[4] succeed (in an examination or competition)

[5] (US, Aus) study something as their main subject at university

[6] be part of what was needed in order to complete something

[7] made much faster progress than others

[8] separated the cleverest or most skilful people from a group and treated them differently

[9] contributed to his bad marks

[10] given a lower mark

[11] failed to remain level with a group of people that was moving forwards

[12] (informal) passes but only just

B

In the library

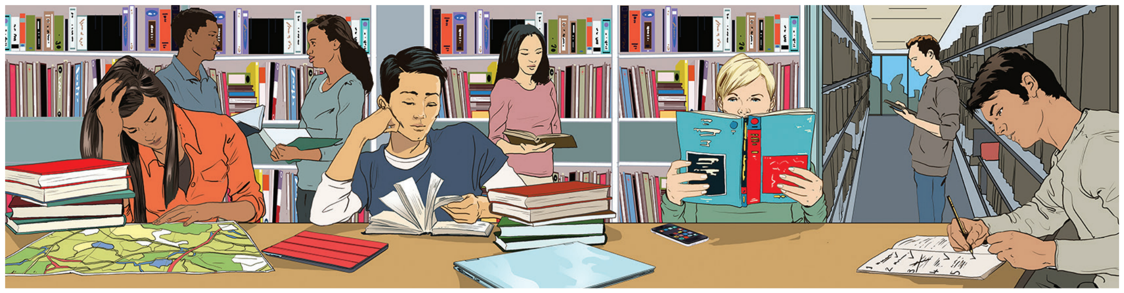

Let me try to describe this scene in a university library. A girl with long hair is **poring over**[1] a map. Next to her a boy is **skimming through**[2] some books, looking for some information on wind energy for his thesis. At the same table is a girl with short hair, who has **buried** herself **in**[3] a journal. Next to her a boy is **ticking/checking off**[4] names on a list – he's **crossed off**[5] one of them. There is a busy and studious atmosphere in this library and I hope this has **come across**[6] in my description.

[1] studying carefully

[2] reading quickly without studying the details

[3] given all her attention to

[4] writing something next to each item on a list in order to make sure that everything or everyone on it is correct, present, or has been dealt with

[5] removed a word (e.g. name) from a list by drawing a line through it

[6] been expressed clearly enough for the reader to understand it

Exercises

32.1 **Match each sentence on the left with a sentence which follows logically on the right.**

1 He took three weeks off in the middle of term.
2 He didn't read the book thoroughly.
3 He searched the manuscript carefully.
4 He was very successful at college.
5 He didn't keep to the set topic for his essay.

a) He got through all the exams.
b) He was marked down.
c) He just skimmed through it.
d) He fell behind with his work.
e) He pored over it for hours.

32.2 **Complete these sentences using the correct particles.**

1 It cost Oscar and Nina a huge amount of money to put three children .... college.
2 Artem sailed .... all his exams at school but found things much harder at university and only scraped .... his final accountancy exams.
3 I'm afraid you'll have to cross my name .... the list for the trip next Saturday.
4 The college basketball team always seems to cream .... the best athletes and other sports suffer as a result.
5 She was so brilliant, she left all the other students ....
6 The end-of-semester marks in each year all count .... your final degree.
7 I like Professor Watson's lectures; they're so clear. His ideas don't come .... nearly as well in his books.
8 He was on the borderline between pass and fail, but his poor attendance on the course counted .... him and they failed him in the end.

32.3 **Rewrite each sentence using a phrasal verb based on the word in brackets.**

1 As each person arrived she asked their name and put a tick on her list. (check)
2 She picked up her favourite novel and became completely absorbed in it. (bury)
3 He decided to take economics as the main subject for his degree. (major)
4 His tutor transferred him to a higher class. (move)
5 What sort of grades do you need to be given a university place in your country? (get)
6 I applied to Oxford University but I wasn't accepted. (get)

32.4 **Make suitable questions which could come before these answers. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

1 I'd like to go on to university.
2 I just wanted to take up a new subject; that's why I gave it up.
3 No, she dropped out at the end of the first year.
4 I can't – I'm snowed under. I've got two essays to do for tomorrow.

32.5 **Answer these questions about your own experience of study.**

1 At school did you usually sail through or scrape through your exams?
2 Have you ever fallen behind with your work?
3 Do you think a teacher has ever marked down your work unfairly?
4 What other things apart from exam results can count towards getting into a good university in your country?

33 Lectures and seminars

A In a lecture

In today's lecture, I'd like to **look at**[1] Sonda's explanation of this phenomenon.

To **start with**[2], I think we need to consider the importance of geographical location.

Hanes has an interesting theory about the relationship between culture and language which **draws on**[3] the results of Kaminsky's research.

Traynor **set out**[4] to test the theory using a range of new technologies which were not previously available.

Because the results are based on a very small sample, we have to **allow for**[5] a significant margin of error.

A study was **carried out**[6] with 152 diabetic patients over a three–year period.

I want to **round off**[7] my talk by returning to the question I asked at the beginning.

To **finish off**[8] today, I'd like to spend some time looking at a couple of previous exam questions.

Finally, I want to **point out**[9] that there is a list of additional sources on this topic on the second page of your handout.

If you didn't **get down**[10] all that information, don't worry. I'll be emailing the list of assignments to you later today.

[1] focus on
[2] begin
[3] uses information from
[4] intended to
[5] take into consideration
[6] done
[7] finish in a satisfactory way
[8] end, complete
[9] highlight
[10] manage to write down

B Seminars

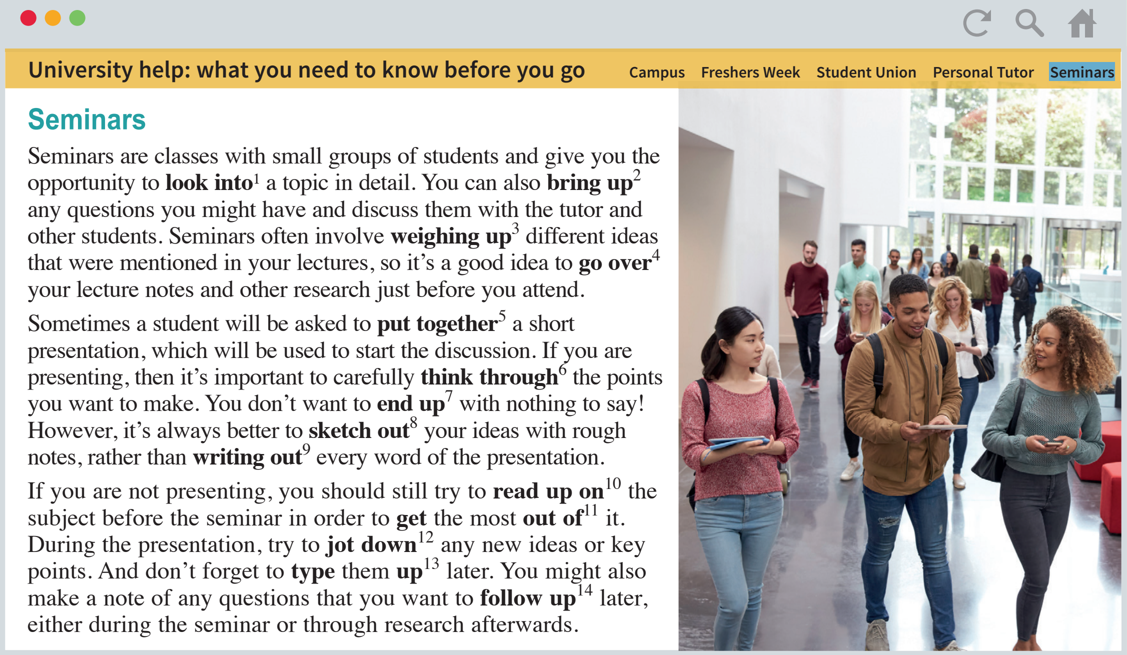

University help: what you need to know before you go

Seminars

Seminars are classes with small groups of students and give you the opportunity to **look into**[1] a topic in detail. You can also **bring up**[2] any questions you might have and discuss them with the tutor and other students. Seminars often involve **weighing up**[3] different ideas that were mentioned in your lectures, so it's a good idea to **go over**[4] your lecture notes and other research just before you attend.

Sometimes a student will be asked to **put together**[5] a short presentation, which will be used to start the discussion. If you are presenting, then it's important to carefully **think through**[6] the points you want to make. You don't want to **end up**[7] with nothing to say! However, it's always better to **sketch out**[8] your ideas with rough notes, rather than **writing out**[9] every word of the presentation.

If you are not presenting, you should still try to **read up on**[10] the subject before the seminar in order to **get** the most **out of**[11] it. During the presentation, try to **jot down**[12] any new ideas or key points. And don't forget to **type** them **up**[13] later. You might also make a note of any questions that you want to **follow up**[14] later, either during the seminar or through research afterwards.

[1] investigate
[2] start to talk about
[3] thinking about something carefully, comparing
[4] study again
[5] prepare (by collecting together different elements)
[6] plan carefully
[7] be in a situation (at the end)
[8] roughly plan
[9] write (or rewrite) in full
[10] do background reading on
[11] take benefit from
[12] make a note of
[13] rewrite in full (on a computer)
[14] find out more

Exercises

33.1 Look at A opposite. Complete the sentences using the verbs from the box and the correct particles. Put the verbs in the correct form.

allow carry draw finish point set start

1 Zeyneb's experiments were mostly .... in the 19th century using much less sophisticated equipment than is available today.
2 This theory .... research from several well-known scientists.
3 I thought we could read Hayder's research for the seminar tomorrow, but my tutor .... that the original research paper is over 700 pages long!
4 Alexander Fleming didn't .... to discover penicillin when he started experimenting with bacteria, but it was one of the most important discoveries of its time.
5 He spoke for 50 minutes and then .... the lecture with a question and answer session.
6 Firstly, I'd like to .... an introduction to the subject of quantum physics, before moving on to some key definitions.
7 If we .... variations caused by weather conditions, the results are broadly in line with our predictions.

33.2 Choose the correct alternative to complete these sentences.

1 Our tutor asked us to put *away / together / off* a report based on what we'd discussed in the seminar.
2 The handout had a list of references so we could read *to / along / up* on the topic before the next lecture.
3 I always *jot down / type up / write out* the key points during a lecture even if there's a handout.
4 When I *sketch out / jot down / type up* my notes later, it helps me remember what I learned.
5 I'm just going to *sketch out / bring up / follow up* my initial ideas for the essay tonight, and then I can work on it in more detail next week.
6 *Think through / Get out of / Follow up* the essay question carefully and identify the issues you need to talk about.
7 It's really important to *end up / follow up / weigh up* all the evidence before presenting your final argument.
8 After a long discussion, we *got out of / ended up / went over* agreeing that the character of Becky Sharp was not likeable, but very interesting.
9 We're going to *end up / go over / get out of* the solutions to the problems in last week's exam and discuss any questions.
10 If you want to *think through / go over / follow up* on the question Jemma asked about game theory, I can recommend a couple of interesting books on the subject.

33.3 Rewrite each sentence using a phrasal verb based on the word in brackets in an appropriate form.

1 This morning we're going to focus on Maslow's 'Hierarchy of Needs'. (LOOK)
2 The lecturer highlighted the fact that this research is still in its very early stages. (POINT)
3 To begin, I want to talk about the background to the research. (START)
4 In order to make the most of the seminar, it's a good idea to do the suggested reading beforehand. (GET)
5 Can I borrow your lecture notes? I didn't manage to write down the last few points. (GET)
6 Don't worry about writing every word; just make a note of the key points. (JOT)
7 For next week's seminar, I'd like you all to research one aspect of this theory. (LOOK)
8 I'd like to finish the lecture today with a short video. (ROUND)

33.4 Correct the mistakes with the particles in these sentences.

1 The biology department needs undergraduates to help carry through research on plant cells over the summer, and I'm going to apply.
2 The department has just received some funding to look through the links between diet and certain types of cancer.
3 He spent most of the summer working on his thesis but ended out having to change it when some new research came out.
4 The discussion we had last week brought into some very interesting questions about US foreign policy in the 1950s.
5 As you read for on the subject for your essay, don't forget to make a note of useful sources as you go.
6 A group of engineering students from Bristol have set off to prove the strength of plastic by building the largest Lego structure in the world.

34 Writing essays

This unit contains phrasal verbs which are all suitable for use in formal essays.

A

Read Rebecca's notes for an essay she is going to write on the subject of 'Globalisation'. Her notes contain useful phrasal verbs for essay-writing.

Plan:

Devote a paragraph each **to** opposing arguments

Mention how globalisation often **deprives** workers **of** their rights

But also mention how poorer countries can **profit from** global markets

Relate globalisation **to** other changes (mobility, Internet, etc.)

Refer to recent international gatherings (G8 etc.)

Cater for non-technical readers as well as specialists

What best **sums up**[1] the present situation – give examples/quotes

Things to remember!

- **Aim at** being neutral
- **Base** opinions **on** sound evidence
- Don't let irrelevant details **detract from**[2] the main argument

[1] represents the most typical qualities of something (Note that this is the only verb on this page where the particle can come either before or after the object.)

[2] make something seem less good than it really is or than it was thought to be

B

Look at these extracts from essays where phrasal verbs have been used successfully, helping to create a good written style.

Furthermore, it is a quiet village and basically **consists of** families with very young children.

Democracy is **founded on** the ideal of equality for all citizens. [(always passive) based on a particular idea or belief]

The people have many difficulties to **contend with**: poor soil, inadequate roads and lack of investment. [have to deal with a difficult or unpleasant situation]

Government economic policies have **resulted in** an improved standard of living in the region.

We need to find ways to **improve on** the current system of distribution of goods. [do something in a better way or with better results than when it was done before]

Efforts to **interest** young people **in** the political process often fail. We need to **invest** more thought **in** finding ways of involving young people in politics.

Many people **object to** their leaders treating them as if they were not capable of running their own lives. (Note the *-ing* form of the verb after **object to**.)

The university has always **insisted on** a high standard of teaching and research.

Exercises

34.1 **Look at A. Complete this paragraph with the correct particles.**

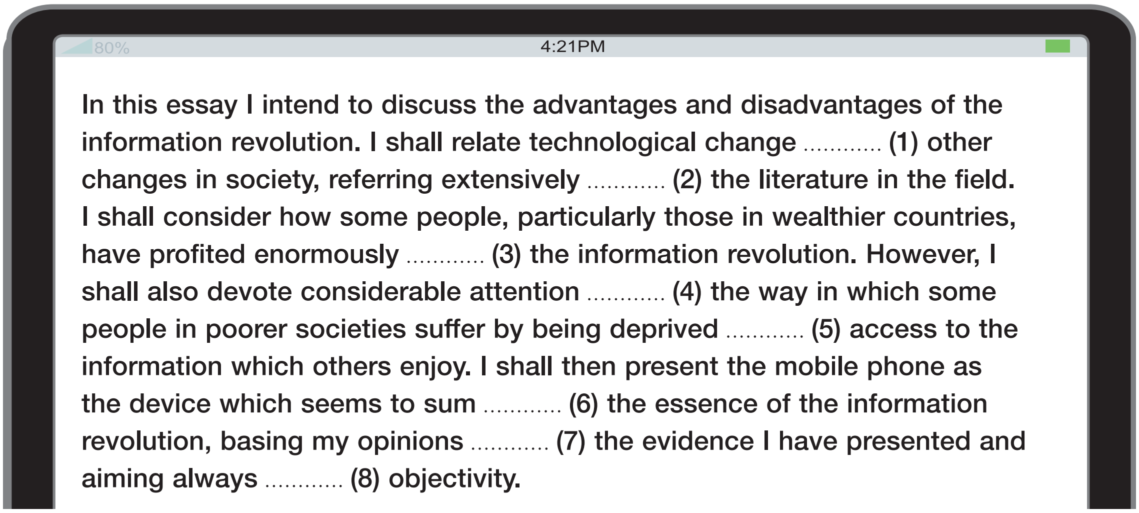

In this essay I intend to discuss the advantages and disadvantages of the information revolution. I shall relate technological change .... (1) other changes in society, referring extensively .... (2) the literature in the field. I shall consider how some people, particularly those in wealthier countries, have profited enormously .... (3) the information revolution. However, I shall also devote considerable attention .... (4) the way in which some people in poorer societies suffer by being deprived .... (5) access to the information which others enjoy. I shall then present the mobile phone as the device which seems to sum .... (6) the essence of the information revolution, basing my opinions .... (7) the evidence I have presented and aiming always .... (8) objectivity.

34.2 **Complete these sentences using the correct particle and an appropriate ending.**

1 The research team consists ....
2 Immigrants to the UK have to contend ....
3 The headteacher would like to interest more pupils ....
4 The examinations board insists ....
5 It is essential that society should invest ....
6 The change in the law resulted ....
7 The government is keen to improve ....
8 The writer's philosophy is founded ....
9 Some critics have objected ....

34.3 **Find the only example sentence on the opposite page where the particle could be in a different place. Rewrite that example sentence putting the particle in the alternative position.**

34.4 **Rewrite each sentence using a word from the box so that it keeps the same meaning. Use each word only once.**

aimed cater consists deprived detract devoted objected refers resulted sum

1 The teaching materials will bear historians as well as economists in mind.
2 The recent problems in the company are bound to make its reputation less favourable.
3 The policy of clearing the hillsides of trees appears to have led to an increased danger of flooding.
4 There are three players from France, one from Sweden and two from Russia in the football team.
5 Many people did not like being moved from their houses to high-rise flats.
6 Having your freedom taken away from you is a very difficult punishment to endure.
7 In her article, the writer frequently quotes a research study carried out in Canada in 2015.
8 The book has been written for undergraduate students who have little previous knowledge of the subject.
9 For me, this song captures the atmosphere in rural England in the 1980s.
10 Much of the book deals with the writer's experiences in the United States.

Over to you

Choose a subject that you specialise in or are particularly interested in and write a paragraph relating to that subject. Use as many of the phrasal verbs from this unit as you can in your paragraph.

35 Business

A Structuring a business

Business News in Brief

- Howard Green of M and Q is moving to Paris to **head up**[1] the company's new French operations. Green will also be **looking after**[2] M and Q's interests in Francophone Africa.
- There are growing rumours, as yet unconfirmed, that Scottish Mobiles is planning to **buy out**[3] its rival Celtic Telecom.
- 20-year-old pop star Anastasia is reported to have **set** her parents **up**[4] with the restaurant business they have always dreamed of.

[1] be in charge of (or, simply, head)
[2] responsible for
[3] buy a company (or part of a company) so that you own all of it
[4] given them the money they need to start a business

B Doing business

Here are some useful business collocations or common word combinations using phrasal verbs.

phrasal verb	collocating words	definition of phrasal verb
aim sth **at** sb	a product / programme / magazine at women / young people / students	intend something to influence someone, or be noticed or bought by someone
break into sth	a new market / work in the media / Hollywood	become involved in a type of business or activity that is difficult to become involved in
bring in sb/sth or **bring** sb/sth **in**	customers / clients / new business	attract people, encouraging them to buy products or services
bring out sth or **bring** sth **out**	a new product / a book	produce something to sell to the public
deal in sth	art / shares / drugs	buy and sell particular goods as a business
firm up sth or **firm** sth **up**	arrangements / prices / details	make something more definite or precise or less likely to change
sign up sb or **sign** sb **up**	a new employee / a model / a film star / a basketball player	get someone to sign a document stating they will work for you
turn out sth or **turn** sth **out**	cars / films / computers	make or produce something for sale
turn over sth or **turn** sth **over**	$6 million / £100,000	generate a specific amount of money in a particular period of time

Tip

When you come across a new phrasal verb in a business context – or indeed in any context – it can be useful to note it down with two or three collocating nouns.

Exercises

35.1

Complete this radio interview using words from the box. Use each verb in the correct form only once, unless otherwise indicated.

aim deal firm set break head turn (use twice) look bring (use twice) buy

Interviewer Welcome to our weekly spot 'The two-minute interview'. My guest this week is Gordon Flockheart, chairman and CEO of the Kiros group. Gordon Flockheart, you've .... (1) up several major companies during your long career, most recently the Kiros empire, which .... (2) over more than £500 million last year. What's the secret of your success?

Flockheart Well, first and foremost, I owe a huge debt of gratitude to my grandfather, who .... (3) me up in business at the young age of 24. Since then I have been very fortunate in getting the right people to .... (4) after my interests. Secondly, we .... (5) in high-value, luxury personal goods and we've succeeded in .... (6) into markets where other companies thought they had a monopoly. We've .... (7) out new products at the right time and at the right price, and we've .... (8) them at the higher end of the market.

Interviewer There are rumours that you would like to .... (9) out one of your main rivals, Lasaque. Any truth in that?

Flockheart We are in negotiations with Lasaque, there's no secret about that, but nothing has been .... (10) up yet. The markets will just have to wait and see.

Interviewer There have also been rumours that you are considering selling off your clothing range and focusing on accessories and electronics. Is that true?

Flockheart No, that's just a silly rumour! We're actually .... (11) out more clothing items than ever and have .... (12) in a lot of new customers thanks to our latest range of menswear.

Interviewer There we must leave it. Gordon Flockheart, thank you.

35.2

Complete each of the sentences below with an object from the box. Put it in the correct place or places in the sentence.

10,000 pairs of shoes a new sports car modern art the USA arrangements
the new department a young Brazilian footballer the lower end of the market

1 Our business has had lots of success in Europe, but now we'd like to break into.
2 Have you heard? Latifa has been asked to head up.
3 Arsenal has signed up.
4 Her father made his fortune by dealing in.
5 Get your people to call my people to firm up.
6 The new factory is already turning out a week.
7 The Alpha model is aimed at.
8 The company is planning to bring out soon.

35.3

Many phrasal verbs can have different meanings in other contexts. Write two sentences illustrating two different ways in which each of these phrasal verbs can be used. Use a dictionary if necessary.

set up break into bring in bring out turn out

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

36 Money

A Coping with money

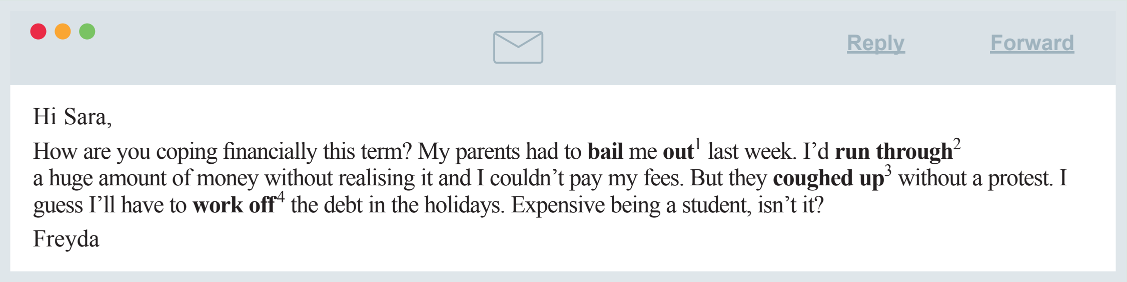

Hi Sara,

How are you coping financially this term? My parents had to **bail** me **out**[1] last week. I'd **run through**[2] a huge amount of money without realising it and I couldn't pay my fees. But they **coughed up**[3] without a protest. I guess I'll have to **work off**[4] the debt in the holidays. Expensive being a student, isn't it?

Freyda

[1] help a person or organisation to get out of difficulty by giving them money
[2] spent a lot very quickly
[3] (informal) provided money, often unwillingly
[4] reduce the size of a debt by earning money to pay for it

I can't believe my mobile phone bill. It **gobbles up**[5] a large part of my salary every month. And I've had so many other bills! I've had to **break into**[6] my savings and use money I'd **put by**[7] for the holidays.

[5] (informal) uses a lot of something, especially money
[6] start to use an amount of money that you have been saving
[7] saved in order to use it later

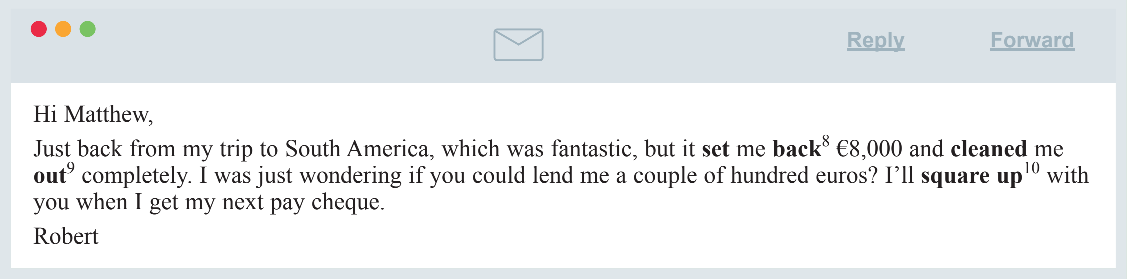

Hi Matthew,

Just back from my trip to South America, which was fantastic, but it **set** me **back**[8] €8,000 and **cleaned** me **out**[9] completely. I was just wondering if you could lend me a couple of hundred euros? I'll **square up**[10] with you when I get my next pay cheque.

Robert

[8] (informal) cost a particular amount of money, usually a large amount
[9] (informal) you used all the money you had on it
[10] (informal) pay somebody the money that you owe them

I **came into**[11] some money recently. My great aunt died and left me a very generous sum and I got a big bonus at work last month, too, so the money's been **rolling in**! [12] I'm seriously considering buying a flat and **renting** it **out**.

[11] got money from someone who died
[12] (informal) arriving in large amounts

B Financial services

If you are unable to pay everything in the same month, we'll arrange for your payments to be **carried forward** to the next month.

What are the best ways of **ploughing back**[1] profits into a small business? Call us for advice.

[1] putting money that you have earned into a business in order to make the business bigger or better

If your aim is to **put aside**[2] money regularly, our monthly savings plan enables you to **pay** a regular sum **into** your bank account each month.

[2] save money for a particular purpose

Exercises

36.1 Answer these questions about the verbs on the opposite page.

1 Which five verbs in A suggest that a large amount of money is being spent or received?
2 Which three verbs suggest that someone is putting money into a bank account or saving it in some other way?
3 Which two verbs in A suggest that someone is paying back a debt in some way?
4 Which verbs are more informal ways of saying:
a) settle a debt
b) give someone money to help them
c) make someone spend all their money
d) use a lot of money rapidly
5 Which verb relates to earning money from property?

36.2 Complete these sentences using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1 My parents told me not to rely on them to .... me out if I got into debt.
2 I couldn't pay everything this month, but I've been allowed to carry the remainder .... to next month.
3 The burglars took everything I had; they totally .... me out.
4 Have you managed to .... any money by for the holidays?
5 My car is terribly expensive – it seems to gobble .... all the money I earn.
6 If you can lend me £100, I'll .... up with you when I get paid.
7 Buying property and then .... it out is supposed to be a very good investment.
8 Every birthday, Grandpa gives me some money to .... into my savings account.
9 For the first couple of years, we ploughed our profits .... into the business.

36.3 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending, completing each sentence with the correct particle.

1 It is going to take me ages to work
2 For the first few years, we ploughed
3 Do try to put a little bit of money
4 I'm grateful to my mum for coughing
5 You will certainly come
6 Buying a car unfortunately set me
7 I want to put off breaking
8 Chris started gambling and he ran

a) .... more than I had anticipated.
b) .... some money on your gran's death.
c) .... my student debts.
d) .... my savings for as long as I can.
e) .... enormous sums of money.
f) .... enough money for me to buy a car.
g) .... all our profits into the business.
h) .... each month for a rainy day.

36.4 Here are some more phrasal verbs relating to money. Work out from the context what they mean and rewrite the sentences replacing the underlined verbs with a word or phrase that means the same.

1 I never had much money when I was a student but I managed to scrape by somehow.
2 If everyone chips in, then we should be able to afford a nice leaving present for Beth.
3 Rashid's been raking in money ever since he had that brilliant idea for a website.
4 At the bakery it was Amanda's job to cash up at the end of every day.
5 Jason staked a ridiculous amount on a horse race and, needless to say, he lost it all.

36.5 Answer these questions.

1 How much did your last holiday set you back?
2 What kinds of things do people usually put money aside for?
3 What, apart from a flat, might gobble up your money?
4 What do you think it is worth breaking into savings for?
5 Who would you ask to bail you out if you had financial problems?

37 At home

A Moving house

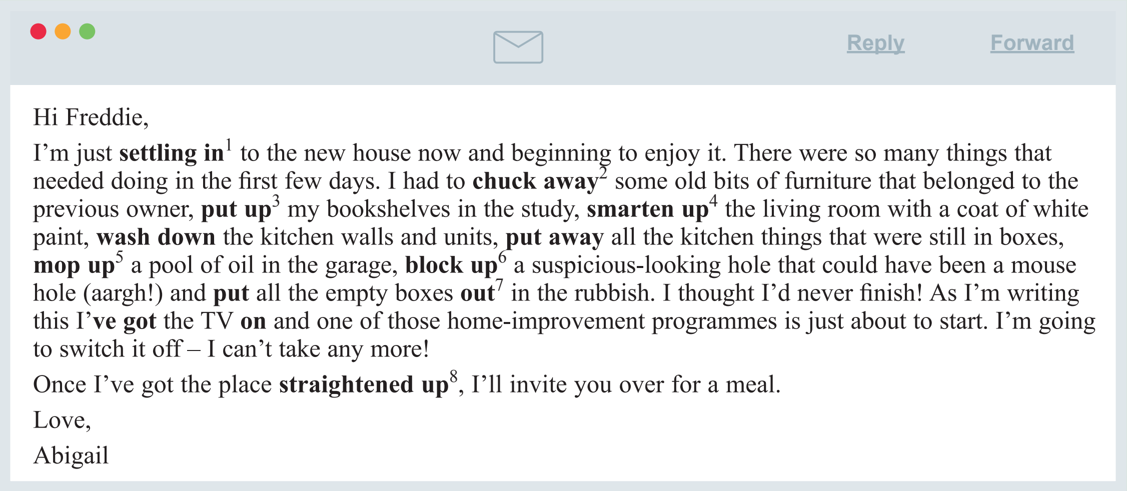

Hi Freddie,

I'm just **settling in**[1] to the new house now and beginning to enjoy it. There were so many things that needed doing in the first few days. I had to **chuck away**[2] some old bits of furniture that belonged to the previous owner, **put up**[3] my bookshelves in the study, **smarten up**[4] the living room with a coat of white paint, **wash down** the kitchen walls and units, **put away** all the kitchen things that were still in boxes, **mop up**[5] a pool of oil in the garage, **block up**[6] a suspicious-looking hole that could have been a mouse hole (aargh!) and **put** all the empty boxes **out**[7] in the rubbish. I thought I'd never finish! As I'm writing this I'**ve got** the TV **on** and one of those home-improvement programmes is just about to start. I'm going to switch it off – I can't take any more!

Once I've got the place **straightened up**[8], I'll invite you over for a meal.

Love,

Abigail

[1] becoming relaxed and happy in new surroundings

[2] (informal) get rid of something that is not needed any more (also **chuck out**)

[3] fasten a piece of furniture (e.g. shelves, cupboard) to a wall or assemble something

[4] make a place (or a person) look tidier

[5] use a cloth or a mop to remove a liquid that has been dropped or that has spread

[6] fill a hole so that nothing can pass through it

[7] (common collocation: put the rubbish out)

[8] made tidy

B At home

Pull up a chair and come and sit next to me. I want to show you something. [move a piece of furniture (especially a chair) near to something or someone]

The last person to leave has to **lock up**. [lock all the doors and windows of a building when you leave it]

We were sorry to **part with** our old sofa, but our son needed one for his flat. [give something away, usually when you do not want to]

Pull/push the door **to**, will you? It's cold in here. [only used of doors and windows: close or almost close a door or window by pulling it towards you / pushing it]

Here, let me **plump up** this cushion; then you can rest your head on it and relax. [make something (e.g. cushion, pillow) rounder and softer, especially by shaking it]

We'll have to move those bags and shoes; they're just **cluttering up** the hallway. [fill something in an untidy or badly organised way]

We've had the bedroom **done out** in pale green. It's a nice relaxing colour. [decorated (also **done up**)]

This morning I forgot to **clear away** the breakfast things before leaving the house. [remove in order to make a place tidy]

I'm fed up with having to **clean up after** / **clear up after** my flatmates. [remove dirt someone has made / make the place tidy by putting things back where they belong]

Tip

Associating a set of phrasal verbs with a place or a situation (e.g. your house or flat) will help you remember them better.

Exercises

37.1 Look at the pictures and complete the descriptions below with verbs from the opposite page.

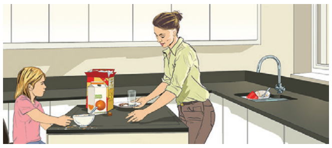

1 She's .... the breakfast things.

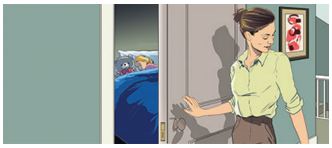

2 She's .... the door ....

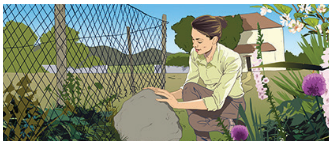

3 She's .... a hole.

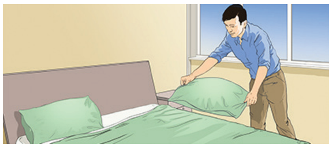

4 He's .... the pillow.

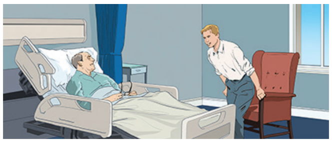

5 He's .... a chair.

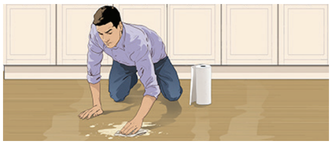

6 He's .... some spilt milk.

37.2 Answer the questions using one of the verbs from A opposite.

1 What do you do with the cups and plates after you have washed them up?
2 What do you do if a child has put greasy fingerprints all over your walls?
3 What do you do if someone spills some juice on your kitchen floor?
4 What should you do with your old newspapers? (give two possible answers)
5 What might you do if you want to display your favourite ornaments in your room?
6 What would you do if you noticed a small hole at the bottom of the wall?

37.3 Match the phrasal verbs on the left with their definitions on the right.

1 settle in
2 do out
3 pull to
4 chuck away
5 stop up
6 clutter up
7 pull up
8 smarten up

a) move something nearer
b) discard
c) improve the appearance of something
d) close
e) feel at home
f) fill
g) decorate
h) make a mess somewhere

37.4 Complete these sentences in an appropriate way. Use one of the phrasal verbs from the opposite page and any other words that you need.

1 I didn't hear you come in because I'd .... rather loud.
2 My flatmate tends to make a mess when she's cooking and leaves me to .... her.
3 When you go to bed, please don't forget to ....
4 The bookcase was too big for our new flat, so we had to ....
5 Erica is untidy. There are always lots of things .... her room.
6 Our hall hasn't been decorated for years – it's time we ....
7 Living in a student hostel was odd for Khalifa at first, but he soon ....
8 If I lay the table, you can .... after the meal.
9 You'll make the sofa look more comfortable if you ....
10 It took me all day to .... those wild, crazy kids and get the place .... again. (Use two phrasal verbs.)

38 Clothing and appearance

A Actions connected with clothing and appearance

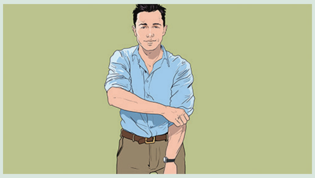
roll up one's sleeves

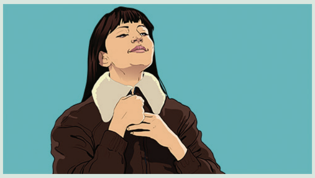
zip up a jacket

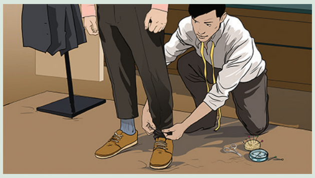
The trousers are too short, so **let** them **down**.

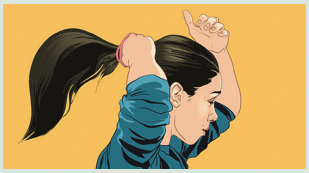
tie back your hair

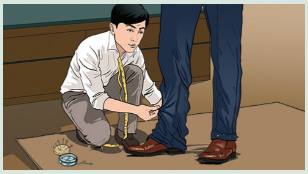
The trousers are too long, so **take** them **up**.

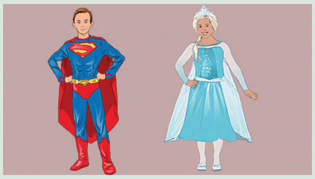
The children love **dressing up**.

B Dressing up to go out

Lottie is telling Alice about a party she went to.

Lottie Most people looked really smart – there were some amazing designer outfits – but there was one man in a weird **getup**[1] with a red wig. It looked as if he thought it was a fancy-dress party!

Alice (laughs) What did you wear?

Lottie Well, to tell you the truth, it was rather a disaster. I wanted to wear my little black dress, but I had trouble **getting into**[2] it. I didn't realise how much weight I've put on over the past few months. I'll have to **let** it **out**[3] or else lose some weight! When I'd finally squeezed into it, I looked so awful in the mirror I just took it straight off again and **pulled on**[4] my boring old brown dress. You know, the wool one with the full skirt that I've worn a million times.

Alice Oh, I like that dress.

Lottie Well, so do I, but it was all creased and I didn't have time to iron it, so I just **smoothed it down**[5] with my hands and hoped for the best. I was so late by this time, I didn't realise till I got to the party that I **had** the wrong colour shoes **on**. I was still wearing my sister's **cast-offs**[6], which go perfectly with my black dress but not with my brown one! But it didn't really matter because when the music started, I **flung** my shoes **off**[7] to dance anyway.

[1] the particular clothing, especially when strange or unusual, that someone is wearing

[2] be thin enough to be able to put your clothes on

[3] make a piece of clothing wider by removing the sewing from the side edges and then sewing closer to the edge of the material

[4] put on clothes quickly

[5] press with your hands in order to make something flat

[6] clothes which have been given to somebody else because the first owner cannot use them any more

[7] removed very quickly

Tip

Remembering a story and the verbs used to describe the events is a good way of learning a series of verbs at the same time.

Exercises

38.1 Answer these questions.

1 What other item of clothing can you roll up apart from your sleeves?
2 What else can you zip up apart from a jacket?
3 Do you know the opposite of zip up? (Clue: it is not a phrasal verb.)
4 Can you think of anything else you might tie back apart from hair? (Clue: don't think of clothing – think of something that might hang down or grow too much.)
5 What other things apart from trousers can be let down or taken up?
6 What do you think you are doing to trousers if you (a) let them out or (b) take them in?
7 What sort of clothes do people put on when they dress up, for example as a famous person, or as someone from another historical age?

38.2 Choose the correct word to complete these sentences.

1 I had no time to think about what I looked like, so I .... on my old jeans.
a) rolled b) pulled c) let d) took
2 Come on – time to .... up your sleeves and get down to work.
a) pull b) zip c) roll d) tie
3 Sienna stood up, ... down her skirt and began to address the audience.
a) smoothed b) got c) tied d) zipped
4 To my embarrassment I suddenly realised that I .... my T-shirt on backwards.
a) took b) had c) got d) let
5 I ate so much on holiday that I had difficulty .... into my suit today.
a) pulling b) dressing c) getting d) zipping
6 Do we need to .... up for the party tomorrow?
a) zip b) fling c) tie d) dress
7 I was so tired that I just .... off my clothes and fell into bed.
a) rolled b) got c) flung d) let
8 When I was a child I always hated wearing my older brother's ....-offs.
a) let b) cast c) get d) zip

38.3 Complete these sentences with the correct phrasal verb expression from the opposite page.

1 We were surprised when we arrived at the party because the host was wearing a kind of Superman .... with a mask, cape and blue bodysuit.
2 My ten-year-old daughter loves getting .... in my dresses and high-heeled shoes.
3 Now that I'm pregnant I can't .... any of my clothes.
4 Those trousers look a little tight around the waist. Shall I .... a bit for you?
5 (Father to young child) You'd better .... your jacket .... It's cold outside.

38.4 Answer these questions.

1 Who do children often get cast-offs from?
2 Have you ever gone out with the wrong shoes on?
3 Have you ever had difficulty getting into something you haven't worn for a long time?
4 Do you think a lot about what to put on or do you just pull on the first thing you find?
5 If your jeans needed to be taken up, would you do it yourself or get it done for you?
6 Have you ever had to dress up in fancy dress for a party? If so, who or what did you dress up as?

39 Relationships

A Getting to know someone

Daisy You and Lucas have been **going out together**[1] for ages now, haven't you?

Isabelle Yes, we have. Longer than I'd ever have imagined when we first met.

Daisy Why, didn't you like him much at first?

Isabelle No, I **warmed to**[2] him at once – it was just the odd way we met.

Daisy Oh, how was that? At a club or at work?

Isabelle No, we got stuck together in a lift that broke down. That's what **brought** us **together**[3]! We were the only people there, so we soon **struck up**[4] a conversation. We discovered we'd got a mutual friend – Martha Gordon. You know her, don't you?

Daisy I **know of**[5] her. I've **heard of**[6] her because my brother used to talk about her a lot, but I've never actually met her. She went to work in Australia, didn't she?

Isabelle That's right. Lucas had just **heard from** her, so he told me all her news and then we got on to all sorts of other things. Anyway, I thought he was really nice.

Daisy So, you **flirted with**[7] him, no doubt!

Isabelle Just a little, perhaps. Anyway, by the time they'd repaired the lift he'd asked me to **go out with** him. And that was six months ago!

[1] having a romantic relationship
[2] started to like
[3] caused us to be friendly with each other
[4] started (collocates with *conversation*, *friendship*)
[5] have heard of her but don't know her personally
[6] know a little about her because of being told about her
[7] talked and behaved in a way which shows someone that you are sexually attracted to them

B Relationship problems

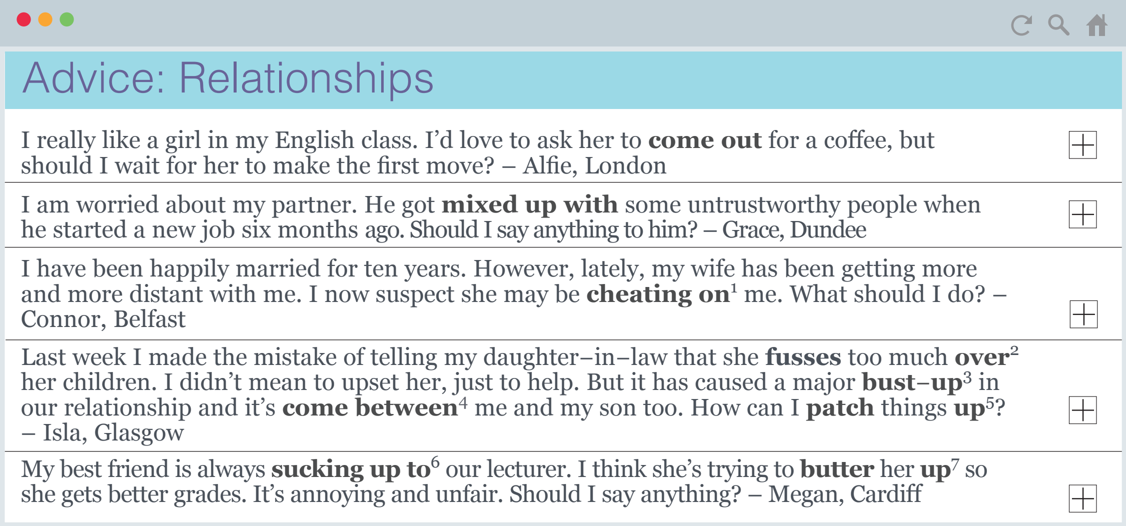

Advice: Relationships

I really like a girl in my English class. I'd love to ask her to **come out** for a coffee, but should I wait for her to make the first move? – Alfie, London

I am worried about my partner. He got **mixed up with** some untrustworthy people when he started a new job six months ago. Should I say anything to him? – Grace, Dundee

I have been happily married for ten years. However, lately, my wife has been getting more and more distant with me. I now suspect she may be **cheating on**[1] me. What should I do? – Connor, Belfast

Last week I made the mistake of telling my daughter–in–law that she **fusses** too much **over**[2] her children. I didn't mean to upset her, just to help. But it has caused a major **bust–up**[3] in our relationship and it's **come between**[4] me and my son too. How can I **patch** things **up**[5]? – Isla, Glasgow

My best friend is always **sucking up to**[6] our lecturer. I think she's trying to **butter** her **up**[7] so she gets better grades. It's annoying and unfair. Should I say anything? – Megan, Cardiff

[1] (informal) having a sexual relationship with someone else
[2] pays too much attention to
[3] (informal) break (in a relationship)
[4] spoilt the relationship
[5] improve the situation
[6] (informal) trying to make the lecturer like her by doing and saying things that will please her
[7] (informal) be very nice to someone so they will do what you want

Exercises

39.1 **Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence using a phrasal verb from A opposite. Make any other necessary changes.**

1 **Marwa** Do you know the novelist Madeleine Parker?
Alex No, but I know a bit about her from what one or two people have told me.

2 **Robert** I was surprised to hear Nick and Polly have got engaged.
Anna I wasn't. They've been having a romantic relationship for two years.

3 **Max** Did you see Tim talking to that American girl at the party?
Will Yeah, he was chatting to her and behaving in a way which showed he was attracted to her all evening.

4 **Harriet** Did you have any success getting to know that dark-haired guy?
Katie No. I tried to start a conversation with him, but he wasn't very friendly.

5 **Jason** You seem to like the new boss, anyway.
Andrew Yes, I started to like him straight away in fact. He's very nice.

6 **Sara** Did you and Liam first meet at the tennis club?
Amber Yes, you could say it was tennis that caused us to be friendly with each other.

39.2 **Correct the mistakes with the particles in these sentences.**

1 I've never met Antonia Goff, but I know with her because Charles works with her.
2 I had an email last month from Dominic, but I haven't heard to him since then.
3 I think Joe is cheating to me. Somebody saw him out with another girl.
4 Mrs Butler fusses ever so much on her two sons, even though they're adults.
5 Daria spent all evening flirting to her friend's brother.
6 I'm afraid my son is getting mixed up of some bad company at university.
7 Majid struck off a conversation with the person sitting next to him, and the flight passed quickly.
8 Rosa told me about your bust-out with Sebastian.

39.3 **Answer these questions.**

1 Michael and Ella are trying to patch things up. Are things good or bad between them at the moment?
2 If you warm to somebody, do you feel (a) anger towards them, (b) in love with them, (c) a liking for them?
3 If a discussion about money comes between two people, what does it do to them?
4 If you suck up to your teacher, do you (a) say things to annoy him/her, (b) say things to please him/her, (c) respect him/her?
5 If you want someone to do something for you, what could you do to encourage them?
6 If you have a bust-up with someone, do you have (a) a big party to celebrate something, (b) a match or competition to see who's best, (c) an argument causing a break in your relationship?
7 If someone says 'Mary got mixed up with some guy from London', do they think Mary was in a good relationship or an undesirable one?
8 Which is correct in this sentence, *go* or *come*, or both?
I really like Josh; I wish I had the courage to ask him to ……….. out with me.

Over to you

Find an example of an article about relationships in a magazine. Make a note of any phrasal verbs that you find in the article and write them down in their context.

40 Character and personal qualities

A Talking about negative qualities

Leah What do you make of Natasha's new boyfriend? He's **getting on**[1] a bit, isn't he?!

Naomi Yes. He must be at least 20 years older than her. I must say I didn't like him very much. His eyes were **boring into**[2] me and it made me feel uncomfortable.

Leah I'm glad you felt like that too. He really scared me.

Naomi Scared you? You need to **toughen up**[3] a bit! You shouldn't let anyone scare you. It's not just his eyes, though, is it? He's so **outspoken**[4]! In fact, he's rude.

Leah He swore at me the other day. I didn't answer back though. I wouldn't **descend to**[5] his level. And how about the way he speaks about his sister?

Naomi No wonder she's a bit odd. Having a brother like that would **screw** me **up**[6]!

Leah I'm amazed Natasha's so keen on him. I **had** her **down as**[7] a sensible person.

Naomi You know, sometimes I think she's like a teenage girl who needs to **grow out of**[8] needing a father figure. I mean, she's 30, not 13!

[1] (informal, always continuous) becoming old
[2] looking very hard at
[3] become stronger and more able to deal with problems (also transitive: **toughen** sb **up**)
[4] having a tendency to express opinions even though they may offend people
[5] behave so badly
[6] (informal) make someone feel confused and unhappy about their life
[7] (informal) thought that they were a particular type of person (especially when they are not in fact like that)
[8] stop doing something as you get older

B Talking about positive qualities

Look at this speech by a company manager at a party for a colleague who is retiring.

Jack is leaving us today and I want to wish him a happy retirement. Having worked closely with him, I can personally **vouch for**[1] his unswerving loyalty to the company over the last 21 years and his extraordinary skills as a personnel manager. Right from the beginning, his ability to handle people **shone through**[2]. He **prided** himself **on**[3] the good relations he enjoyed with junior staff; he knew that good relationships mean everything in the workplace. It was always such a pleasure to see how his face would **light up**[4] whenever he managed to solve a tricky personnel issue; for him, resolving a difficult situation was its own reward. Jack was also excellent at **drawing out**[5] younger, less experienced members of staff, and he showed that rare talent for **bringing out**[6] the best in all his colleagues. I'm sure everyone would agree that he always **came across**[7] as calm, professional and committed to his staff. His departure will be a great loss to the company.

[1] say that you know someone and that you can promise that they have a good character or good skills
[2] became apparent
[3] took pride in
[4] look very happy
[5] helping people to feel more confident
[6] making qualities more noticeable
[7] appeared to be

Tip

Note how the meaning of a phrasal verb can sometimes vary depending on whether it is used with an object or not. For example, **come across** (see above), when it is used with an object means 'find or meet something/somebody by chance': *I **came across** an old photo of us when we were at university the other night*. Make a note of any verbs whose meanings change in this way.

Exercises

40.1 **Look at these pages from Georgia's private diary, where she writes about people she knows and works with. Complete the text using phrasal verbs or adjectives from A opposite.**

MON 17

The affair with Chloe seems to have .... (1) Hugo up quite badly – he seems so unhappy and confused. He'll have to .... (2) up if he's to cope with life and all the horrible things that can happen when you're in love. Poor man.

TUE 18

Spent the evening with Victoria and her new partner. I don't know how old Simon is, but he's definitely .... (3) on a bit and his hair's going grey.

Bad day at the office – some documents got lost. The boss suspected me and Evie. His eyes just .... (4) into us in a very accusing way and he questioned us for a long time.

WED 19

Funny, I .... (5) Ava down as a fairly .... (6) person, but she's actually the complete opposite, quite shy and quiet when you get to know her better. The good thing is she seems to have .... (7) out of her girlish infatuation with that stupid man Henry at last. I guess she's more mature now she's turned 30!

THU 20

Lydia and I almost had a serious row last night. She insulted me a couple of times and I felt furious, but I refuse to .... (8) to her level, even though it would be easy enough!

40.2 **Complete these annual appraisal summaries, written by a personnel manager, with the correct particles.**

1 Zoe sometimes comes .... as a little aggressive, but in general she has good relations with her colleagues and seems to bring .... the best in the staff she manages.

2 Elizabeth has had to overcome a great deal due to her physical disability, but her determination and will to succeed always shine .... despite the difficulties.

3 Luke prides himself .... his ability to cope with huge amounts of stress and to meet deadlines. He has always met deadlines, though I can't personally vouch .... his ability to deal with a major crisis.

4 It's always so nice to see how Cameron's face lights .... whenever he is praised for his achievements, and he has had some notable successes in the last 12 months. Let's hope it continues that way.

5 Louis is very good at drawing .... the shyer and less confident members of staff. He seems like an excellent candidate for promotion in the next round.

Over to you

Try and find some job advertisements in English. Job descriptions often refer to personal qualities needed for the job. Note any phrasal verbs you find.

41 Feelings

A

Note the phrasal verbs connected with feelings.

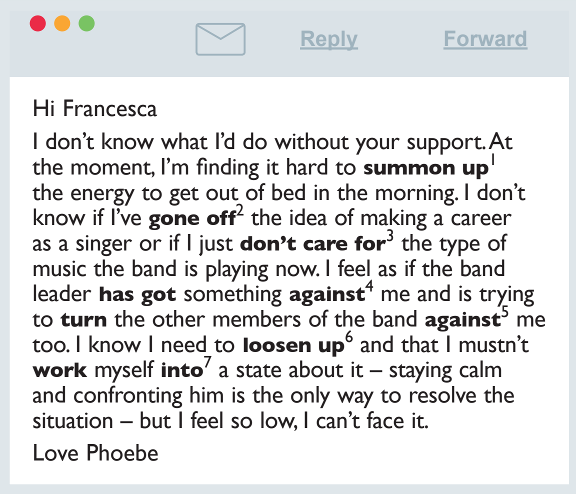

Hi Francesca

I don't know what I'd do without your support. At the moment, I'm finding it hard to **summon up**[1] the energy to get out of bed in the morning. I don't know if I've **gone off**[2] the idea of making a career as a singer or if I just **don't care for**[3] the type of music the band is playing now. I feel as if the band leader **has got** something **against**[4] me and is trying to **turn** the other members of the band **against**[5] me too. I know I need to **loosen up**[6] and that I mustn't **work** myself **into**[7] a state about it – staying calm and confronting him is the only way to resolve the situation – but I feel so low, I can't face it.

Love Phoebe

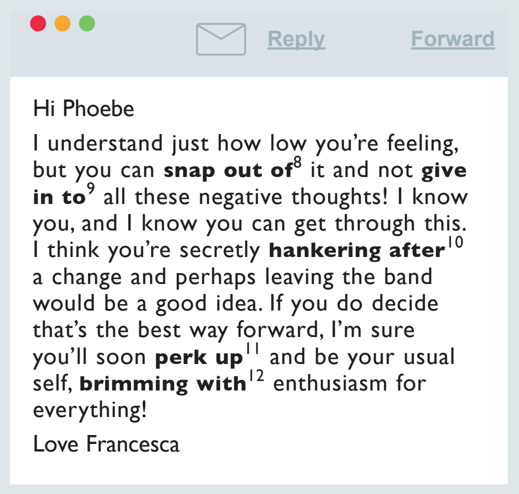

Hi Phoebe

I understand just how low you're feeling, but you can **snap out of**[8] it and not **give in to**[9] all these negative thoughts! I know you, and I know you can get through this. I think you're secretly **hankering after**[10] a change and perhaps leaving the band would be a good idea. If you do decide that's the best way forward, I'm sure you'll soon **perk up**[11] and be your usual self, **brimming with**[12] enthusiasm for everything!

Love Francesca

[1] find (used about someone trying hard to find a quality that is needed)
[2] (UK, Aus) stopped liking
[3] don't like
[4] dislikes for some reason
[5] make others dislike
[6] relax mentally
[7] make myself feel very upset

[8] (informal) force yourself to stop feeling sad or upset
[9] if you give in to an emotion, you stop trying not to feel it and you allow your actions to be controlled by that emotion
[10] wanting very much
[11] become happier or more energetic
[12] filled to capacity with

B

Note how the second speaker uses a phrasal verb to paraphrase the first.

Erica Bella was very angry. She was almost crying.

Julian Yes, it was obvious she was **choking back**[1] her anger and **fighting back**[2] the tears.

[1] forcing herself not to show her feelings
[2] trying hard not to show an emotion

Will Armand looked so surprised when he received his leaving gift, didn't he?

Paula Yes, I think he was **bowled over** by everyone's generosity.

Zara Molly suddenly started talking uncontrollably about her emotions.

Luke Yes, she let it all **spill out**, didn't she?

Ellie You didn't look physically and mentally able to tolerate such a long meeting.

Rosie No, I wasn't **feeling up to** it. I'd had a cold and was feeling tired and weak.

Aisha I was very sorry to hear that Isaac's mother has died.

Natalie Yes, poor man. My sympathies **go out** to him and his family.

Salim I think the news shocked Imogen and really upset her.

Ollie Yes, it obviously **shook** her **up** a lot.

Ruby I felt so sad as I stood at the War Memorial.

Evelyn Yes, an overwhelming feeling of sadness **came over** everyone.

Emma We should stay calm and not do or say anything stupid.

Jack Yes, we mustn't let our emotions **run away with us**.

Exercises

41.1 Complete these sentences with a verb from A.

1 When you came for the job interview, you were .... with self-confidence.
2 I just couldn't .... up the courage to tell my boss I wanted a pay rise.
3 Please try to .... up and look a bit more cheerful before our visitors arrive.
4 Mia has a nervous disposition but usually manages not to .... in to her fears.
5 She's .... after a major career change, so she might go back to university.
6 Try not to .... yourself into a state about everything; calm down.
7 I've really .... off football recently. I used to love it, but now it just bores me.
8 Stop being so bad-tempered. Just .... out of it!
9 He was very nervous at the beginning of his presentation, but he .... up after a minute or two.

41.2 Which verb in B matches each definition?

1 force yourself not to show some feeling ....
2 begin to affect ....
3 surprise or please a lot ....
4 make someone feel shocked or upset ....
5 encourage us to do foolish things ....
6 feel physically and mentally strong enough to do something ....

41.3 Which phrasal verb from the opposite page fits each set of collocations?

1
to .... anger / tears / disappointment

2
to be .... by someone's charm / beauty / generosity

3
to .... an easy life / (a) change / a fast car

4
to .... excitement / enthusiasm / self-confidence

41.4 Read the remarks about different people and then answer the questions below.

Keira doesn't care for her boss.

Joel was quite bowled over by the news.

Harvey ought to perk up a bit.

Poppy is brimming with anticipation.

Felix can't snap out of his bad mood.

Hannah tried her best to choke back her tears.

Sofia is turning people against the boss.

Aaron has something against his teacher.

1 Who is feeling down?
2 Who is finding it hard to change how he feels?
3 Who is feeling dislike?
4 Who is making people dislike someone?
5 Who wanted to cry?
6 Who dislikes someone for a reason that is not apparent?
7 Who was very surprised about something?
8 Who is really looking forward to something?

41.5 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 Layla let her feelings become very obvious. (SPILL)
2 Grandma doesn't think she could manage a long flight. (FEEL)
3 We must not allow our feelings to make us do something we'll regret. (RUN)
4 You mustn't let those feelings of insecurity take over. (GIVE)
5 Everyone suddenly felt very tired. (CAME)
6 We extend our sympathies to all the victims of the disaster. (GO)

42 Social life

A Social and emotional commitments

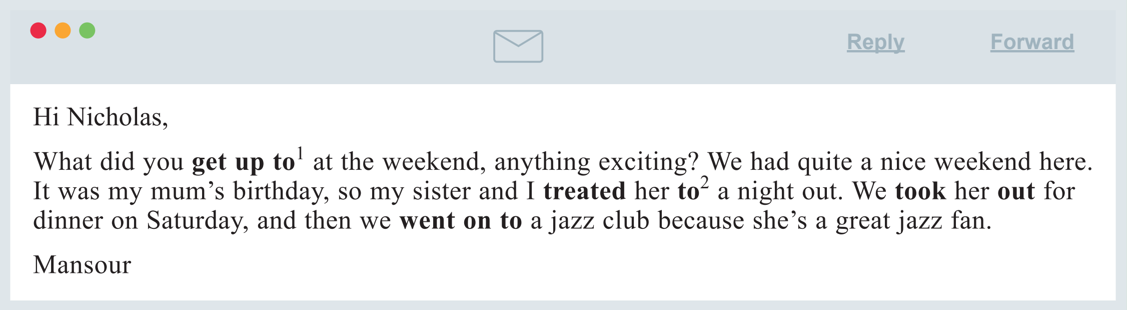

Hi Nicholas,

What did you **get up to**[1] at the weekend, anything exciting? We had quite a nice weekend here. It was my mum's birthday, so my sister and I **treated** her **to**[2] a night out. We **took** her **out** for dinner on Saturday, and then we **went on to** a jazz club because she's a great jazz fan.

Mansour

[1] (informal) do

[2] paid for her to do something pleasant

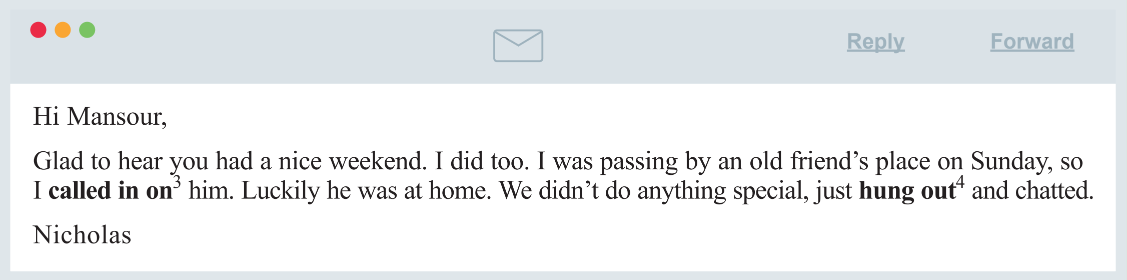

Hi Mansour,

Glad to hear you had a nice weekend. I did too. I was passing by an old friend's place on Sunday, so I **called in on**[3] him. Luckily he was at home. We didn't do anything special, just **hung out**[4] and chatted.

Nicholas

[3] visited for a short time, usually on your way to somewhere else

[4] spent time together not doing anything special

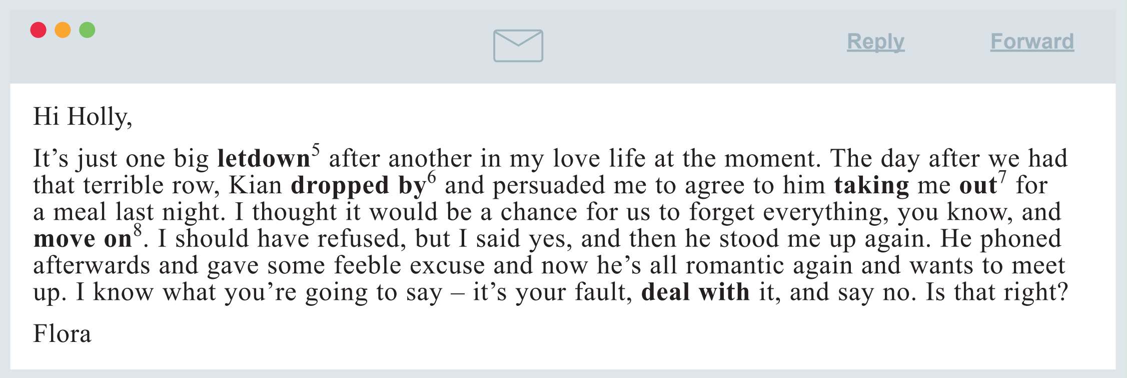

Hi Holly,

It's just one big **letdown**[5] after another in my love life at the moment. The day after we had that terrible row, Kian **dropped by**[6] and persuaded me to agree to him **taking** me **out**[7] for a meal last night. I thought it would be a chance for us to forget everything, you know, and **move on**[8]. I should have refused, but I said yes, and then he stood me up again. He phoned afterwards and gave some feeble excuse and now he's all romantic again and wants to meet up. I know what you're going to say – it's your fault, **deal with** it, and say no. Is that right?

Flora

[5] disappointment

[6] made a short visit to someone, usually without arranging it

[7] going somewhere and doing something with someone, usually something you have planned or paid for

[8] go forward in one's life and not look back to the past

B Other aspects of social life

We're having a small **get-together** at our place on Saturday night. Would you like to come? [informal social gathering]

Shall I call Amelia and see if we can **hook up with** her and Nancy and go clubbing? [(informal) meet someone for a particular purpose]

It's six o'clock. I'd better **shoot off** or I'll be late for dinner. [(informal) leave]

Wow, that was a fantastic meal. I'll need a couple of days to **sleep** it **off** now, though! [sleep until you feel better, especially after too much alcohol or food]

Loads of people **rolled up** to see Theo's band at Zino's last night. [arrived at a particular place or event – when people **roll up** somewhere, they often arrive late] They had to **turn** people **away** as there wasn't enough room. [refuse to allow them to enter]

I'm really **getting into** snowboarding. It's amazing. [becoming involved in an activity]

Let's invite Dan too. We mustn't forget him just because he's **moved away** from the village.

Exercises

42.1 Complete the phrasal verbs or phrasal expressions in the second speaker's answers.

1 **Mark** Do you still find it difficult living on your own?

Jules Well, I've just got to .... with it and .... on. It's no good living in the past.

2 **Hamza** Was the concert as good as you expected?

Steve No, it was a big .... Very poor. A complete disappointment.

3 **Maksim** Can't you stay for dinner? We've got loads of food.

Archie No, I'd better .... off now; I've got a report to do for tomorrow morning.

4 **Eliza** Seth, how nice to see you! I wasn't expecting a visit!

Seth Well, I was just .... by so I thought I'd come and say hello.

5 **David** How was Henry's birthday celebration?

Rachel Well, we all .... up expecting a big party, but there were only a few members of his family there.

42.2 Answer these questions.

1 If someone says they've been getting seriously into bird-watching, what do they mean?
2 If someone asks you what you got up to over the summer, what do they want to know?
3 If someone said they were having a family get-together, what would be happening?
4 If someone says to you, 'Let's just hang out', what do they want to do?
5 If someone said they wanted to take you out, is it likely they want to (a) kill you, (b) go out with you and pay for you, (c) go with you to show you the way out of a building?

42.3 Read these remarks by different people and then answer the questions below.

Hessa Alexander dropped by the other day.

Lara It would be nice to hook up with Jake and Liam.

Amy Mum and Dad treated me to a wonderful weekend in Paris.

Callum I'll need a week to sleep off that dinner!

Ivy I got turned away from that restaurant once.

Thomas I moved away from Hobblethorpe because I needed a change.

Jessica It'd be nice to call in on Alejandro when we're in town.

Ronnie After the meal we went on to a really great club.

1 Who had far too much of something?
2 Who was not allowed to enter somewhere?
3 Who wants to visit someone?
4 Who went to live in a different place?
5 Who was visited by someone?
6 Who was already out somewhere and then went somewhere else?
7 Who wants to meet someone?
8 Who had a nice time and didn't have to pay?

43 Health and symptoms

A Talking about how you are

Mrs Smith How are you these days? Have you managed to **throw off**[1] that cold you had when we last met?

Mr Jones Well, yes, it **cleared up** after a couple of days, but I'd no sooner **got over** that than I **picked up** another one. It's horrible. I keep **breaking out in**[2] a sweat and my nose is completely **bunged-up**[3].

Mrs Smith Well, I hope you don't **pass** it **on** to me. I'm feeling bad enough as it is. My arthritis has **flared up**[4] again. And you know I fell and cut my hand a week ago? It's only just started to **heal up**[5] and the swelling hasn't **gone down**[6] yet.

Mr Jones I think we should both go to the doctor's again, don't you?

[1] (informal) get rid of a slight illness
[2] (of sweat, spots, rash) suddenly appears on the skin
[3] (informal) blocked
[4] (of illness) returned
[5] become covered by new skin
[6] returned to its normal size

B Feeling tired

There are a lot of phrasal verbs in English relating to the idea of sleep and feeling tired. For example, **drop off** and **nod off** are both informal and both mean fall asleep, but **nod off** is used particularly about situations when you did not intend to fall asleep.

Here are some more phrasal verbs relating to being very tired.

phrasal verb	phrasal adjective/noun	definition of phrasal verb	example
wear out sb or **wear** sb **out**	**worn out**	make someone very tired	Going round the shops all day has **worn**/**tired**/**wiped** me **out** / **done** me **in**. What a day I've had! I am **worn out** / **tired out** / **done in** / **wiped out!**
tire out sb or **tire** sb **out**	**tired out**		
do in sb or **do** sb **in** (informal)	**done in** (informal)		
wipe out sb or **wipe** sb **out** (informal)	**wiped out** (informal)		
burn out	**burnt-out** (noun = **burnout**)	become so ill or tired that you can't work creatively, because of overwork	Don't work too hard – or you'll **burn out** before you're 30!
	washed out	tired, pale and ill	What's the matter with Kay? She looks **washed out**.

C At the doctor's

Don't worry. There's a lot of it **going around**[1]. I'll put you on some tablets to help you sleep. They should **knock** you **out**[2]. Keep taking them for at least a fortnight – you shouldn't **come off** them until I say so. This particular bug **takes** a lot **out of**[3] you, so when you begin to feel better, make sure you eat lots of fruit and vegetables to **build** yourself **up**[4].

[1] a lot of people are complaining of this
[2] make you sleep heavily
[3] makes you feel very weak
[4] make yourself stronger

Exercises

43.1 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences using a phrasal verb or phrasal expression from the opposite page. Make any other necessary changes.

1 **Doctor** So, how can I help you today?
Patient I think I've caught a chest infection. I'm coughing and wheezing a lot.

2 **Doctor** When did you first notice the problem?
Patient Well, a rash suddenly appeared on my neck about a week ago.

3 **Doctor** And what's troubling you, Mrs James?
Patient Well, I had an ear infection about a month ago. It seemed to disappear when I took the antibiotics you gave me but now it's returned again.

4 **Doctor** Mr Kelly, hello, how are things?
Patient Well, OK, but my nose is blocked all the time. Can you give me something for it?

5 **Doctor** Miss Peters, what can I do for you?
Patient Well, I sprained my ankle a week ago, but the swelling hasn't diminished and it's still painful.

6 **Doctor** Right, Mr Troy, what's troubling you?
Patient Well, I just feel absolutely exhausted all the time. I have no energy at all.

43.2 Read the remarks about different people and then answer the questions below.

Bethany I just can't seem to throw off this cold.
Teddy I hope Bethany doesn't pass on her cold to me.
Grace I'm getting over the flu now.
William My scar is healing over nicely now.
Natasha This bronchitis is taking a lot out of me.
Elliot I know I look really washed out.
Harry I feel totally burnt out.
Daniel I keep nodding off and missing parts of the TV show.

1 Who is feeling weak because of an illness?
2 Who is ill but getting better?
3 Who is feeling sleepy?
4 Who is finding it difficult to get better?
5 Who is completely exhausted from overwork?
6 Who is pale, ill and tired?
7 Whose skin is looking better?
8 Who is keen not to catch someone else's illness?

43.3 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 The doctor put me
2 I've come
3 The tablet knocked me
4 I found it difficult to
5 There's a lot of flu going
6 I'm quite weak, so I need to build
7 I feel worn

a) out and I slept deeply.
b) out from all that work.
c) off the antibiotics.
d) myself up a bit.
e) on a course of antibiotics.
f) drop off last night.
g) around right now.

Over to you

Find a magazine article on a health issue and make a note of any phrasal verbs that are used in it.

44 The body

A Phrasal verbs referring to actions or positions of the body

It was very cold and we **huddled up** together to keep warm.

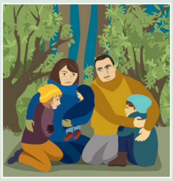

Dylan **stuck** his head **out** of the window to see what was happening in the street below.

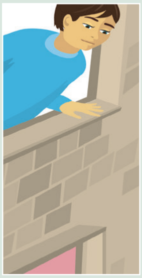

During the dance we had to **spread** our arms **out** and go round in a circle.

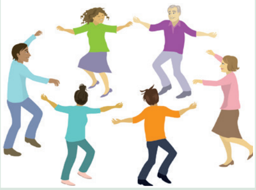

She **stretched out** her hand to try to reach the fruit.

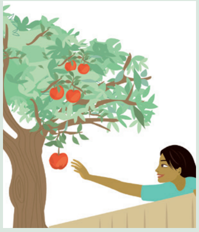

The cat **curled up** on the sofa and went to sleep.

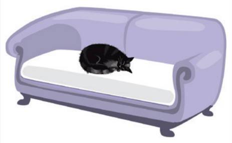

Molly **bent down** to pick up the puppy.

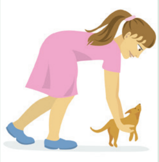

B More phrasal verbs connected with the body

phrasal verb	definition of phrasal verb	example
loosen up / **warm up**	prepare your muscles for a physical activity by stretching and doing simple exercises	We always do exercises to **loosen up** / **warm up** before playing tennis.
swing around/ **round**	suddenly turn around so that you can see someone or something behind you	I **swung round** when I heard my name and saw Jude running towards me.
tense up	if you tense up, your muscles stiffen because you are not relaxed	'Relax! Don't **tense up** and you'll float!' said the swimming instructor.
thaw out	(slightly informal, metaphorical) become warmer after getting very cold	'Oooh! It was freezing outside! Turn the heater on! I need to **thaw out**.'
waste away	gradually get thinner and weaker, usually because of illness	Poor old Mrs Jones is just **wasting away**. She's been so ill, poor woman.
pick yourself **up**	stand up again after you have fallen	(Parent to child who has just fallen) 'Come on, **pick** yourself **up**! Don't cry! You're OK.'
double up **double over**	suddenly bend your body forwards because you are laughing a lot or in a lot of pain	When she told me, it was so funny I just **doubled up** laughing.
turn around/ **round** (sb/sth) or **turn** (sb/sth) **around**/**round**	turn so that you are facing the opposite direction, or make someone or something do this	(to somebody who is trying on a skirt) '**Turn around**, let me see it from behind.' He **turned** the car **around** and drove back home.

Exercises

44.1 Look at A. Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 If you all huddle up together
2 If you stretch out your arm
3 Spread out your arms
4 Now bend down
5 If you stick your head out of the window
6 You can curl up in the armchair

a) the horse will take the carrot from your hand.
b) you'll be able to see our car.
c) and go to sleep if you like.
d) you'll feel a bit warmer.
e) and move them in circles.
f) and touch your toes.

44.2 Answer these questions using one of the phrasal verbs from B.

1 What do you normally need to do before starting on an exercise routine?
2 If you have been outside for a long time on a very cold day, what may it take you some time to do when you go indoors again?
3 What do you have to do if you fall over?
4 What do you do if you hear a sudden noise behind you?
5 What happens to your muscles if you are feeling very anxious?
6 What happens if someone doesn't eat enough over a long period of time?
7 If you suddenly have an excruciating pain, what may you do?

44.3 Correct the five particle mistakes in this paragraph.

I'm rather worried about my neighbour. I saw her the other day in the garden and she was doubled out in pain. She also looks as if she is wasting off. I asked her about it and she said she was just trying to lose some weight, but she clearly didn't like my talking about it and I could sense her tensing in. I think she's probably been doing far too much exercise. She spends hours outside bending away to touch the ground or spreading off her arms and swinging them in circles. I can see that she's in pain and I long to tell her to relax a bit.

44.4 Rewrite each sentence using the verb in brackets in an appropriate form.

1 You must be freezing – do come inside and get warm. (THAW)
2 Look at me – now face in the opposite direction. (TURN)
3 Their daughter was lying in a little ball on her bed with her thumb in her mouth. (CURL)
4 He put his arm out of the window and waved at us. (STICK)
5 If you don't eat more, you'll get far too skinny. (WASTE)
6 The stand-up comic was so good that we spent the evening in fits of laughter. (DOUBLE)

44.5 Explain the play on words in these sentences.

1 The twins doubled up laughing.
2 The rubbish collectors were wasting away.
3 The grammar teacher tensed up when Maria said 'writed' instead of 'wrote'.
4 The taxi driver picked himself up after he tripped over the suitcase.

45 How people speak

A

In these dialogues, the second speaker uses a phrasal verb in their response.

Parent Go and study! You haven't done any revision yet this week! Did you hear me?

Child OK, OK! Don't **go on at**[1] me! I'll do some work after supper.

[1] criticise someone continuously

Jackson Can you explain to me what we have to do at the meeting?

Paul OK, I'll just **run through**[2] the main points.

[2] explain or read something to someone quickly

Austin You can have two hours for your presentation.

Maya Two hours is far too long! I'd bore everyone stupid. I wouldn't want to listen to anyone **holding forth**[3] for that long.

[3] talking about a particular subject for a long time, often in a way that other people find boring

Archie How do you think we should present our case to the committee?

Eloise I think we should emphasise the good things and perhaps just **gloss over**[4] the difficult bits.

[4] avoid discussing something, or discuss something without talking about the details in order to make it seem unimportant

Albert How can we distract Richard while I bring in his present?

Lauren Well, I'll **engage** him **in conversation**[5] and you can leave the room discreetly.

[5] try to start a conversation with him

B

Look at these sentences with more phrasal verbs connected with speaking.

Mr Holroyd **reeled off** a list of names. [(informal) said a long list of things quickly and without stopping]

The detectives tried to **wring** the truth **out of** the suspect. [force or persuade someone to give you money or information]

The reporters **bombarded** the minister **with** questions. [directed a lot of something at one person]

Somebody raised their hand to **put** a question **to** the speaker.

I didn't really have a conversation with her. She just **talked at** me for an hour. [talked to someone without listening to them or allowing them to speak]

Without thinking, he **blurted out** the name of the hotel where the star was staying. [said something suddenly and without thinking, especially because you are excited or nervous]

I'll introduce the plan in general and then you can **expand on** it.

In the middle of my welcome speech I just **dried up**. [stopped speaking, especially because you suddenly forget what to say next]

The teacher kept asking him questions but he was nervous and he just **clammed up**. [(informal) became silent or refused to speak, usually because of shyness or fear]

I'd like to get a flat of my own but I'll have to **sound** my parents **out** first. [talk to someone to discover what they think about an idea or plan]

We were talking about the Olympics and that **led into** a discussion about drugs.

Are you going to tell the truth or do I have to **drag** it **out of** you? [make someone tell you something that they do not want to tell you]

Exercises

45.1 **Rewrite the underlined part of each sentence, using one of the phrasal verbs in A.**

1 It's so boring listening to Uncle Ed lecturing us about the problem with the youth of today.
2 I'll try to get into a conversation with your father so he won't notice you leaving.
3 I wish my parents would stop criticising me all the time.
4 OK, before everyone starts working, I'd like to quickly remind you of the instructions.
5 The personnel manager said very little about salary progression during our interview.

45.2 **Read the sentences and then answer the questions.**

1 After Josie got back from the party, her flatmates bombarded her with questions.
Did Josie's flatmates ask her a lot of questions or a few questions?
2 Towards the end of the play, one of the main actors suddenly dried up.
Would the actor have been pleased with his performance or not?
3 Nathan reeled off the names of all 50 states of the USA.
Did Nathan have to pause and think of the name of each state?
4 Jensen clammed up as soon as Bobby came in the room.
Did Jensen speak more or less after Bobby arrived?
5 The detective eventually managed to wring his attacker's name out of the boy.
How easy was it for the detective to get the boy to tell her the truth?
6 Matt decided to sound out the editor before he started to write the article.
What do you think Matt talked to the editor about?
7 Blake has a dreadful habit of talking at people.
Why is this habit of Blake's dreadful?
8 Daniela glossed over the accident when she was telling her parents about her trip.
What did Daniela tell her parents about the accident?

45.3 **Complete these sentences using a phrasal verb from the opposite page.**

1 Now, who'd like to .... the first question to our guest speaker?
2 In this essay I shall first outline three key issues. I shall then expand .... each of these in turn.
3 Our discussion of modern education soon .... into an argument about whether schools are better now than they used to be.
4 I'd love to join your expedition to the North Pole, but I should .... my boss out first.
5 My son doesn't tell us much about school. We have to drag things .... of him.
6 The children were so interested in the topic that they .... their teacher with questions.
7 Sadie just .... up whenever I tried to get her to talk about her work.
8 During the press conference, she was nervous and unintentionally .... out the name of the secret agent.

45.4 **Here are some more phrasal verbs connected with ways of speaking. Can you work out what they mean and rewrite the sentences, replacing the underlined verbs with your own words?**

1 Finn was so rude – he cut in on the conversation I was having with Faye about her new job and started to ask her questions about her daughter.
2 I don't know how you'll manage to explain away the scratch on your mother's car.
3 I wish he'd stop wittering on about the weather – it's so boring.

Over to you

Look up the verbs from exercise 45.4 in a good dictionary. Write down some more examples of how they are used.

46 How people move

A Coming and going

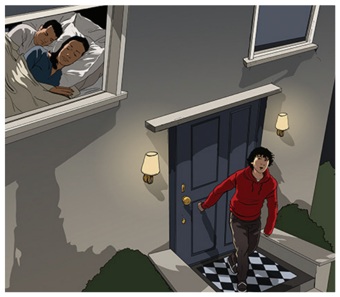

The boy **stole away** while his parents were sleeping. [left quietly without anyone knowing]

I'm sorry! I only **crept up on** you for a joke. I didn't mean to frighten you. [approached someone so quietly they did not know you were there till the last moment]

My landlord told us that if we didn't **clear out** of the flat by the end of the week, he'd contact his lawyer. [(informal) leave]

I'm terribly sorry for **walking in on** your private meeting! [going into a room and seeing what someone is doing when they do not want to be seen]

B Moving with other people

phrasal verb	definition of phrasal verb	example
drop back	move to a position nearer the back	Joseph started out in the lead in the race but soon **dropped back** to fifth place.
hang back	not move forwards with other people, usually because you are shy or afraid	The others rushed forward to see the tiger but I **hung back**.
pile into / **out of**	(informal) enter/leave a place or vehicle quickly and not in an organised way	The schoolchildren **piled into** / **out of** the bus.
squash up	(informal) move closer together in order to make space for someone else	If you **squash up**, there'll be room for Tim on the sofa too.
gain on sb/sth	get nearer to someone or something that you are chasing	The helicopter could see that the police car was **gaining on** the robbers' car.

C A long walk

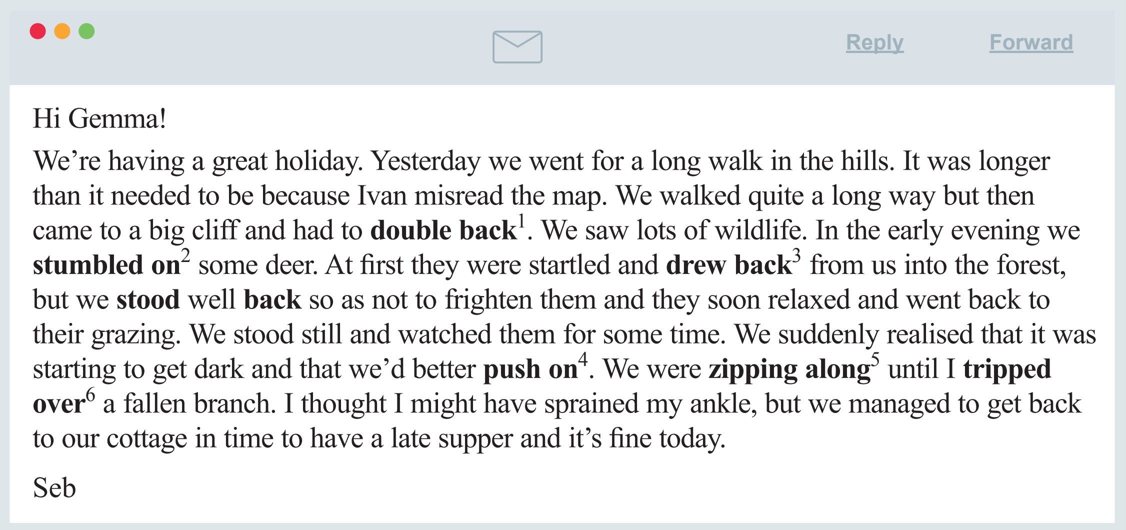

Hi Gemma!

We're having a great holiday. Yesterday we went for a long walk in the hills. It was longer than it needed to be because Ivan misread the map. We walked quite a long way but then came to a big cliff and had to **double back**[1]. We saw lots of wildlife. In the early evening we **stumbled on**[2] some deer. At first they were startled and **drew back**[3] from us into the forest, but we **stood** well **back** so as not to frighten them and they soon relaxed and went back to their grazing. We stood still and watched them for some time. We suddenly realised that it was starting to get dark and that we'd better **push on**[4]. We were **zipping along**[5] until I **tripped over**[6] a fallen branch. I thought I might have sprained my ankle, but we managed to get back to our cottage in time to have a late supper and it's fine today.

Seb

[1] go back in the direction we'd come from
[2] found/met by chance
[3] moved away because they were surprised or afraid
[4] continue on our walk
[5] (informal) moving very quickly
[6] fell because I accidentally hit my foot against something while walking

Exercises

46.1 Complete these sentences using the correct particles.

1 I accidentally walked .... Max and Isla the other day at the office, and they were having a terrible row about something!
2 They stole .... in the middle of the night; nobody knew they had left.
3 I looked in the rear-view mirror and saw that the mysterious motorcyclist was gaining .... me.
4 We all piled .... the car, but we had to squash..................... as it was only small and there were five of us.
5 Oh! I didn't realise you were there! You shouldn't creep .... me like that!

46.2 Complete these sentences with a verb from the opposite page.

1 We all .... into the taxi and headed off to a club to end our perfect night out.
2 Old Mrs Gifford .... over the edge of the carpet and fell and hurt her ankle.
3 I don't think we have time to stop for lunch; we'd better .... on if we want to get there before it gets dark.
4 The fire chief told everyone to .... well back as there was the risk of an explosion.
5 The message warned them to .... everyone out of the building as quickly as possible.
6 When I was putting some books in the attic, I .... on an old picture I hadn't noticed before.
7 Crossing the valley, we were .... along, but then the car suddenly broke down as we went up a hill.
8 I suddenly realised I'd left my wallet in the café where we'd stopped for breakfast, so we had to .... back.

46.3 Explain the play on words in these sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 When he had finished his painting, the artist drew back to see his work from a distance.
2 The children's jackets were all undone as they stood in a row waiting for the photographer, so she zipped along the line to fasten them.
3 Squash up, kids, and when you're all sitting down, I'll give you some juice.
4 The twins set off in one direction but then doubled back to try to lose their pursuers.
5 The robbers stole away as soon as they heard the police car outside the bank.

46.4 Complete the chart with four verbs which can be used with *back* to match the meanings in brackets. Then make four sentences using one of the verbs in each.

BACK

1 .... (not move forwards with other people)
2 .... (move nearer the back)
3 .... (move away if afraid or surprised)
4 .... (go back in the direction you came from)

47 Nature

A Animals and plants

Elephants **feed on** plants. By **pulling down** trees to eat leaves, **breaking off** branches and **pulling up** plants, they create clearings in which new vegetation can grow to provide nutrition in the future. However, their destructive habits have meant that a number of plants are in danger of **dying out**[1].

The cherry laurel requires consistently moist soil; do not allow it to **dry out**. In favourable areas it is very invasive; if you **cut** the tree **down**, it will still **send out** limbs from the root and **offshoots**[2] from the bottom of the stem. Very hard to **dig up**. The cherry laurel has small flowers which **come out** in late spring.

The South African secretary bird **preys on**[3] insects, snakes, tortoises and rats. Small prey are **picked up** in the bill and swallowed. Larger prey are first stamped to death and then eaten. The secretary bird also stamps its feet on the ground to **flush out**[4] prey.

---

[1] becoming more and more rare and eventually disappearing completely
[2] plants which have developed from a larger plant
[3] catches for food
[4] force an animal to come out of its hiding place

B Water and sky

phrasal verb	definition of phrasal verb	example
dry up	disappear (used about water)	The river is in flood now – it's hard to believe it completely **dried up** six months ago.
freeze over	become covered with ice	In the far north, the sea **freezes over** for several months each year.
go out / **come in**	move further away from the beach / nearer the beach	When the tide **goes out**, we can look for shellfish. But we'll have to be careful as the tide **comes in** quickly here.
come out	appear in the sky (used of the sun, moon or stars)	It is spectacular here at night when the stars **come out**.
go in	become hidden by a cloud	Let's go indoors now – the sun has **gone in** and it's getting chilly.
overcast	grey, covered in cloud (used about the sky)	I don't want to go to the beach today as it is so **overcast**.
wash away	carry away by water	An old boat abandoned on the beach was **washed away** by the unusually high tide.
eat away at	gradually destroy by taking little bits at a time	The sea is **eating away at** the cliff, and houses close to the edge are at risk.

Exercises

47.1 **Complete these commentaries from television nature documentaries with the correct phrasal verbs. You are given the first letter each time.**

Here in this cold landscape of cliffs and stony beaches, these birds f................ .... (1) the many fish which are found offshore. Seals also p................ .... (2) the abundant fish stocks. It is hard to imagine that if global warming increases, these wonderful creatures may d................ .... (3) and never be seen again at this latitude. Sea levels will rise and e................ .... (4) the cliffs and rocky shores, w................ .... (5) their natural habitats forever. And, paradoxically, as the temperature and sea levels rise, some of the inland lakes may d................ .... (6) altogether, leaving an arid landscape.

These elegant creatures p................ .... (7) the higher branches of trees and eat the succulent leaves. In the course of their feeding, they often b................ the branches .... (8) causing damage to the trees, and even more so by p................ .... (9) the youngest saplings altogether. Fortunately, nature always revives, and the destroyed and damaged trees s................ .... (10) new o................ (11) so that, in time, the forest renews itself. Only humans are the real enemy, c................ .... (12) the trees and d................ .... (13) the most precious plants to collect specimens, denuding the forest forever, and all for commercial gain.

47.2 **Answer these questions using phrasal verbs or phrasal adjectives from the opposite page.**

1 What would happen to a pond if the temperature dropped to –10°C?
2 What might happen to a shallow lake if the weather is very hot and there is no rain for a long time?
3 What adjective can describe the sky when it is grey and covered in cloud?
4 Why is the sea not always at the same place on a beach?
5 If the police suspect that bank robbers are hiding in a forest, what might dogs help them to do?

47.3 **Rewrite these sentences using phrasal verbs or phrasal adjectives from the opposite page.**

1 As night fell, the stars appeared.
2 The sun became hidden by a cloud and the temperature fell suddenly.
3 Cats (both large and small) lift their young with their teeth to move them around.
4 It was lovely and sunny this morning but now the sky is grey.
5 Many wild animals and plants are on the verge of becoming extinct.

47.4 **Complete these encyclopaedia entries using phrasal verbs from the box in the correct form. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

watch over | take over | move in | bring up | fend for | chase out

In many places, grey squirrels have .... (1) and .... the native red squirrels .... (2). They have then .... (3) their territory.

Many animals .... (4) their young in a similar way to human parents, ... (5) them till they are mature; others leave their young to .... (6) themselves shortly after birth.

48

Weather

A

Rain and snow

phrasal verb	definition of phrasal verb	example
beat down	come down in large amounts with force	Lying in bed, I could hear the rain **beating down**.
pelt down	(informal) fall very heavily	The rain was **pelting down** by the time we got to the top of the mountain.
hold off	not start, although you expect it to	Fortunately the snow **held off** until we had got safely home.
freeze up	become blocked with ice and stop working	It was a very hard winter last year and many people had problems with pipes **freezing up**.

B

Sun and clouds

If the sun **breaks through** (the clouds), it starts to appear from behind the clouds.

If the sun **beats down**, it shines very strongly and makes the air hot.

If some kind of bad weather such as clouds or fog **rolls in**, it appears in a large amount.

If cloud or smoke **blots out** the sun, it covers it and prevents it from being seen.

If windows or glasses **fog**/**mist**/**steam up**, they become covered with small drops of water and you can't see through them.

C

Metaphors

I suspected there would be trouble at the office as soon as the new boss **breezed in**[1] on his first day. He was very competent and he'd **breezed through**[2] the job interview, but he had no patience at all for anyone less able and he had a very sharp tongue. I noticed that as soon as he spoke to his PA, her face **clouded over**[3] in anger. He asked the sales manager to explain some contradictory figures in such an aggressive manner that she **froze up**[4] and couldn't say a word. I could see her eyes **misting over**[5]. By the end of that first day, his PA had **stormed out**[6], saying she would never return. The rest of us got together after work and decided that we had no choice but to try to **freeze** him **out**[7]. We agreed only to speak to him if we absolutely had to.

[1] walked in quickly and confidently (breeze = light wind)

[2] (slightly informal) succeeded very easily

[3] suddenly looked unhappy

[4] became so afraid she couldn't do or say anything

[5] filling with tears

[6] left in an angry way

[7] make him feel that he is not welcome by being unfriendly

Exercises

48.1 Complete the text below using the correct particles from A opposite.

The weather forecast said that there would be rain later on, but we were all hoping that it would hold .... (1) until Julia's birthday barbecue was over. When we first arrived, the sun was beating .... (2) and some people were too hot. But then grey clouds appeared and the rain started. At first it was quite light but then it began to pelt .... (3). We had to cook indoors but Julia wasn't too disappointed.

48.2 Mark these sentences with a ☺ if you are happy in this situation or a ☹ if you are not happy in this situation. Explain your answers.

1 Your pipes at home freeze up while you are on a skiing holiday.
2 You receive a letter that makes your face cloud over.
3 You are walking by the sea when fog rolls in.
4 You can hear the rain beating down outside as you sit by a big log fire.
5 You are on a long country walk and the rain holds off.
6 You have to give a speech at a friend's wedding and you freeze up.
7 You breeze through an important exam.
8 You storm out of a meeting.
9 A group of friends start to freeze you out.
10 You are sitting on the beach and the sun is beating down.

48.3 Write a sentence about each picture using a phrasal verb from the opposite page.

1

4

2

5

3

6

1 ....
....

2 ....
....

3 ....
....

4 ....
....

5 ....
....

6 ....
....

48.4 Complete these sentences using a phrasal verb from the opposite page in an appropriate form. Add any other words that are needed.

1 Ellis arrived an hour late but he didn't seem worried; he just ....
2 It was such a sad film. When the hero died I could feel my eyes ....
3 Whenever I go from a cold street into a heated shop, my glasses ....
4 I can see a little bit of blue sky. I think the sun is trying to ....
5 We're going to an open air concert tonight. I hope the rain ....
6 I think the weather's changing for the worse. Look at those clouds ....
7 Don't worry about your driving test. I'm sure you'll ....
8 I always get really nervous before oral exams. I'm afraid I'll ....

49 Places

A Travel websites

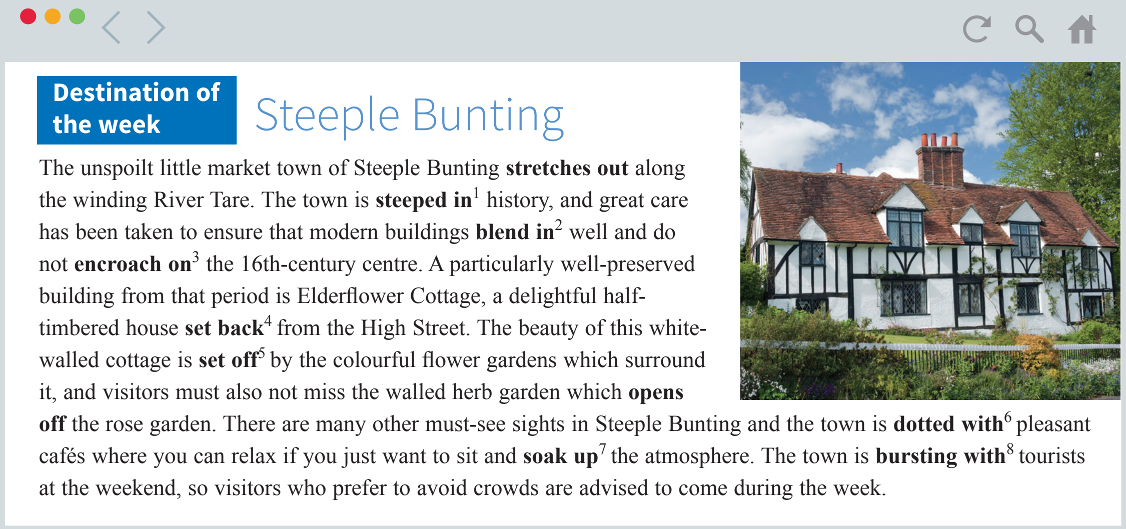

Destination of the week Steeple Bunting

The unspoilt little market town of Steeple Bunting **stretches out** along the winding River Tare. The town is **steeped in**[1] history, and great care has been taken to ensure that modern buildings **blend in**[2] well and do not **encroach on**[3] the 16th-century centre. A particularly well-preserved building from that period is Elderflower Cottage, a delightful half-timbered house **set back**[4] from the High Street. The beauty of this white-walled cottage is **set off**[5] by the colourful flower gardens which surround it, and visitors must also not miss the walled herb garden which **opens off** the rose garden. There are many other must-see sights in Steeple Bunting and the town is **dotted with**[6] pleasant cafés where you can relax if you just want to sit and **soak up**[7] the atmosphere. The town is **bursting with**[8] tourists at the weekend, so visitors who prefer to avoid crowds are advised to come during the week.

[1] has a lot of (collocates strongly with *history*, also with *tradition*)
[2] look similar, do not seem very different
[3] advance beyond proper limits
[4] a little distance from
[5] made to look even more attractive
[6] has many, all over the place
[7] enjoy an experience
[8] very full with (only used in continuous form)

B Improving houses and towns

Kingsmill renovations to begin next week

The **run-down**[1] Kingsmill area near the city's football ground is at last about to be **done up**[2]. Signs have **gone up**[3] around the area indicating that work will start next Monday. The first stage of the the work will affect the buildings which **back onto** the football ground, and Stadium Road will be **closed off** from Monday morning while the area is **reduced to rubble**[4]. Drivers wishing to access the stadium car park will need to approach it by Grant Lane, which **branches off** Rampart Street just after the petrol station.

Local resident Maisie James (74) told us, 'I'll be glad to see the back of the **boarded-up**[5] windows in the area. It's very dangerous – a ceiling **fell in** once when some children got into one of the abandoned buildings.'

Local architects Taylor and Summers have been employed to design the reconstruction, and readers can visit their office or look online to see the plans showing how the area will be **laid out**[6] and a large-scale **mock-up**[7]. Richard Taylor commented, 'The renovations will inevitably be expensive, but we hope that the costs will to some extent be **offset**[8] by the use of reclaimed sandstone and slate, and also the reclaimed rubble.'

[1] shabby, in disrepair
[2] repaired, improved
[3] been fixed into position
[4] made into a pile of bricks and stones (a strong collocation but note also: Toby was **reduced to tears** = Toby started crying)
[5] covered with pieces of wood
[6] arranged, structured
[7] model showing how something will look when it is built
[8] compensated for

Tip

If you notice a phrasal verb in a text, it may be useful to copy out the whole sentence. This can help you to be able to use it as well as understand it.

Exercises

49.1 **Complete these two emails using phrasal verbs or adjectives from the opposite page.**

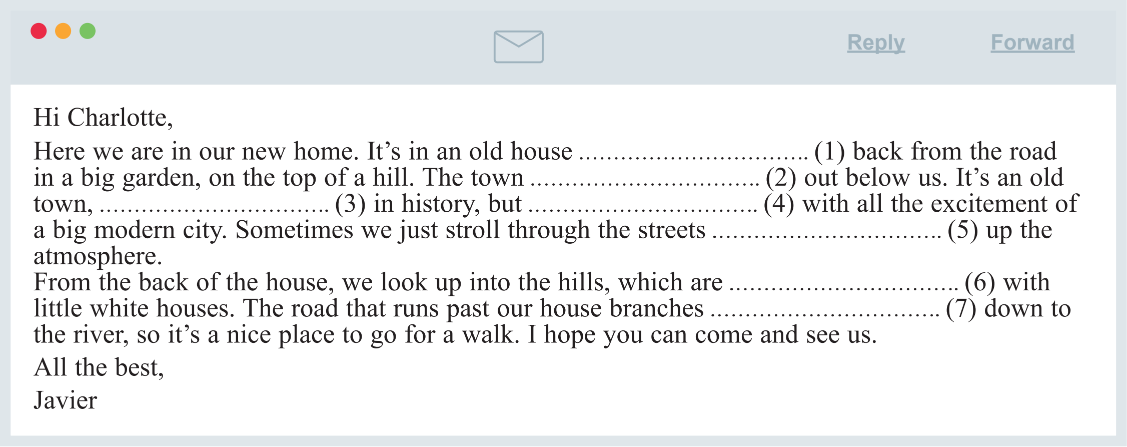

Hi Charlotte,

Here we are in our new home. It's in an old house .... (1) back from the road in a big garden, on the top of a hill. The town .... (2) out below us. It's an old town, ... (3) in history, but .... (4) with all the excitement of a big modern city. Sometimes we just stroll through the streets .... (5) up the atmosphere.

From the back of the house, we look up into the hills, which are .... (6) with little white houses. The road that runs past our house branches .... (7) down to the river, so it's a nice place to go for a walk. I hope you can come and see us.

All the best,

Javier

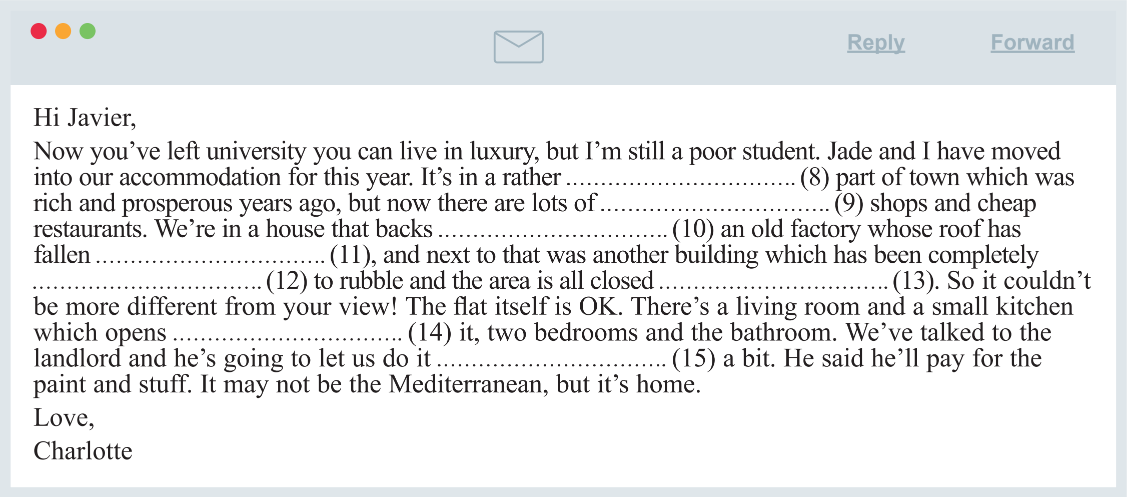

Hi Javier,

Now you've left university you can live in luxury, but I'm still a poor student. Jade and I have moved into our accommodation for this year. It's in a rather .... (8) part of town which was rich and prosperous years ago, but now there are lots of .... (9) shops and cheap restaurants. We're in a house that backs .... (10) an old factory whose roof has fallen .... (11), and next to that was another building which has been completely .... (12) to rubble and the area is all closed .... (13). So it couldn't be more different from your view! The flat itself is OK. There's a living room and a small kitchen which opens .... (14) it, two bedrooms and the bathroom. We've talked to the landlord and he's going to let us do it .... (15) a bit. He said he'll pay for the paint and stuff. It may not be the Mediterranean, but it's home.

Love,

Charlotte

49.2 **Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.**

1 New housing developments are encroaching against the countryside on the edge of town.
2 Those climbing red roses really set that old white cottage out, don't they?
3 The architects made a large-scale mock-on of the new shopping centre.
4 The plain lines of the marble walls are upset by the ornate windows; together they produce a harmonious building.
5 This plan shows how the area will be lied out when it is redeveloped.
6 Signs have gone out round the area to be demolished warning the public to keep away.
7 The 1990s buildings do not blend on very well with the older houses around them.
8 The whole area is steeped with history.

49.3 **Answer these questions.**

1 Can you name a modern building that blends in well with older surroundings?
2 What is the nearest place to you that is sometimes bursting with tourists?
3 To what extent do you think that the place you live in is steeped in tradition?
4 What does your own home back onto?

Over to you

Look at tourist brochures or websites written in English for any city or town you are interested in. Note any phrasal verbs you find.

50 Transport

A Driving

Read about Freddie's nightmare car journey and note the phrasal verbs.

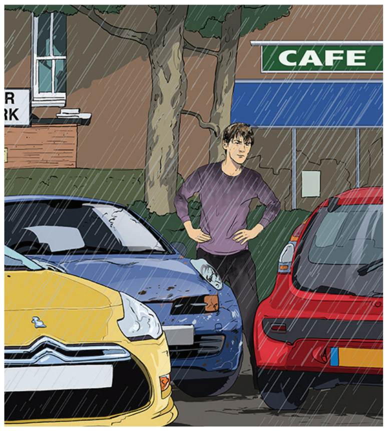

The whole journey was a complete nightmare. I'd only been going five minutes on the motorway when somebody **cut in**[1] on me and I had to brake really quickly to avoid an accident, but that was only the start of it. A bit further on I **pulled out**[2] to overtake a big lorry, but as I did, my engine just died. I tried revving the engine and after a couple of seconds it started again, but I had to **change down**[3] and get back into the slow lane and go very slowly indeed. Because I was so slow, I was **flagged down**[4] by a police officer who checked the car and told me that one of my tyres was worn. He said it wasn't illegal and let me continue but warned me to get it changed. The car started again without any problems, so I set off again, **picked up speed**[5] and drove a couple of miles before, guess what, the worn tyre **blew out**[6]! So I changed the tyre, which was another half hour wasted. Then I **picked up**[7] a hitchhiker – I felt sorry for him. After a while we **branched off**[8] the motorway, and I left him where he wanted to be and went to a nearby café for a cup of tea. When I came out, the rain was pelting down and someone had **blocked** me **in**[9]. Then to cap it all, I realised the hitchhiker had taken my waterproof jacket from the back seat!

[1] suddenly drove in front of me, not leaving enough space between the two vehicles
[2] drove onto a road or onto a part of the road where the traffic is moving faster
[3] put a vehicle into a lower gear, usually in order to go slower
[4] made to stop by waving at the driver
[5] started to go faster
[6] suddenly burst
[7] to let someone get in your car with the purpose of taking them somewhere
[8] turned onto a smaller road
[9] put a car or other vehicle so close to another vehicle that it cannot drive away

B Other phrasal verbs connected with transport

Five planes were **stacked up** over the airport waiting for permission to land. [flying over an airport at different heights waiting to be told they can land]

Two young men had **stowed away** on the ferry, hoping to enter the country illegally. Police said they had already arrested more than 20 **stowaways** at the port this year. [hidden on a ship, aircraft or other vehicle in order to travel secretly or without paying; person who does this]

There's a popular programme where celebrities pretend they have been **cast away** on a desert island and have to survive. [left on an island with no other people after swimming from a ship that is sinking]

She was **knocked over** by a cyclist and broke her arm. [hit by a vehicle and injured or killed]

A police car **pulled** us **over** to the side of the road and two police officers searched the car.

The traffic lights were very slow to change and all around me impatient drivers were **revving up**. [make a car's engine work faster while the car is not moving]

Exercises

50.1 Look at A. Choose the correct word to complete these sentences.

1 The train started slowly but soon *revved* / *picked* / *pulled* up speed.
2 I hate drivers who *cut* / *block* / *flag* in on you when you're driving on a motorway.
3 You *pull* / *blow* / *change* down when you want to reduce your speed.
4 I wish my neighbour wouldn't *rev* / *blow* / *change* up outside my window early in the morning.
5 Take care when you *blow* / *change* / *pull* out to overtake.

50.2 Look at these pictures, and then complete the sentences about them below using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1
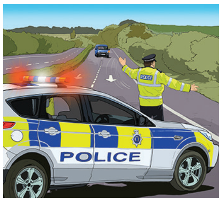

2
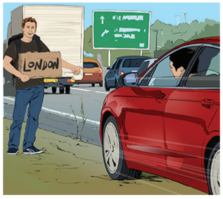

3
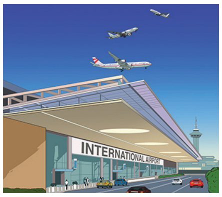

4
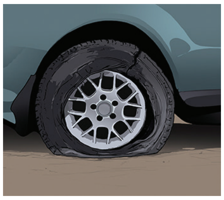

5
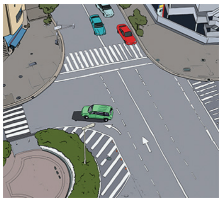

6
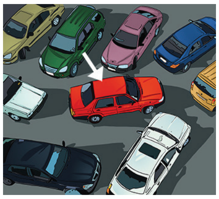

1 The police officer is ....
2 The driver is ....
3 The aeroplanes are ....
4 The tyre has ....
5 The car is ....
6 The car has been ....

50.3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1 down / The / flagged / on / a / police / ten / found / lorry / board / stowaways / and
2 bedroom / car / was / a / I / woken / revving / by / window / up / outside / my
3 car / on / caused / cutting / an / by / nearly / accident / in / us / That
4 very / blew / motorway / out / when / I / was / frightened / the / tyre / my / on

50.4 Complete these sentences using a phrasal verb from the opposite page.

1 The boy managed to .... on a plane to Australia and was only discovered when he arrived in Sydney.
2 The old man was .... by a car that was speeding away from a burglary.
3 I couldn't get out of the car park – someone had .... me ....
4 A police officer .... Elodie .... and fined her for driving too fast.
5 *Robinson Crusoe* is about someone who was .... on a desert island.
6 Take that narrow road that .... the main road just after the railway bridge.
7 I'm taking my car to work tomorrow so I can .... you .... on the way.
8 I hate it when your plane has to spend ages .... waiting to land.

Over to you

People often talk about journeys they have made. Write sentences about your journey to work or college or about any other interesting journeys you have made using some of the phrasal verbs on this page, together with any other phrasal verbs connected with travel that you know.

51 The news

A How journalists get the news

Some news comes from press releases that are **put out** by companies or organisations. However, journalists also **pick up**[1] stories from their contacts. Occasionally a story **gets out**[2] when a politician or film star **confides in**[3] someone who is not discreet. Sometimes a rumour starts and journalists **sound out**[4] people in the know to check its truth. It may sometimes be difficult for them to **root out**[5] the information they want, but journalists get very good at **worming** stories **out of**[6] people who don't want to talk to them. Sometimes they may **stake out**[7] their potential subject's house until they get the story they want. In fact, the ability to **ferret out**[8] a story may be as important for a journalist as the ability to **write** it **up** well.

[1] learn by chance
[2] becomes known (of something secret)
[3] tells something private or secret to someone
[4] get an opinion from
[5] search for and find something that is difficult to find
[6] getting information from someone who does not want to give it
[7] watch continuously
[8] find out something after searching for it

B Political news

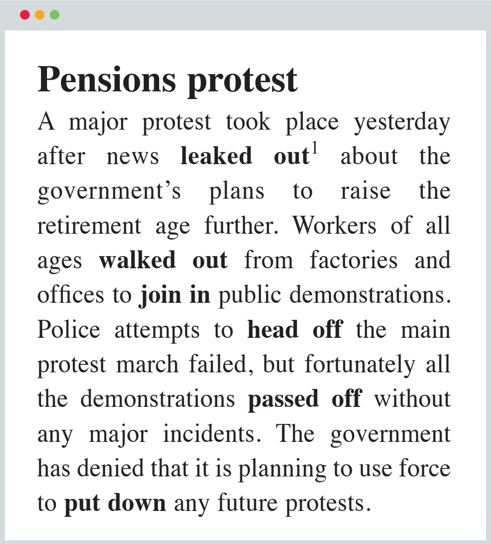

Pensions protest

A major protest took place yesterday after news **leaked out**[1] about the government's plans to raise the retirement age further. Workers of all ages **walked out** from factories and offices to **join in** public demonstrations. Police attempts to **head off** the main protest march failed, but fortunately all the demonstrations **passed off** without any major incidents. The government has denied that it is planning to use force to **put down** any future protests.

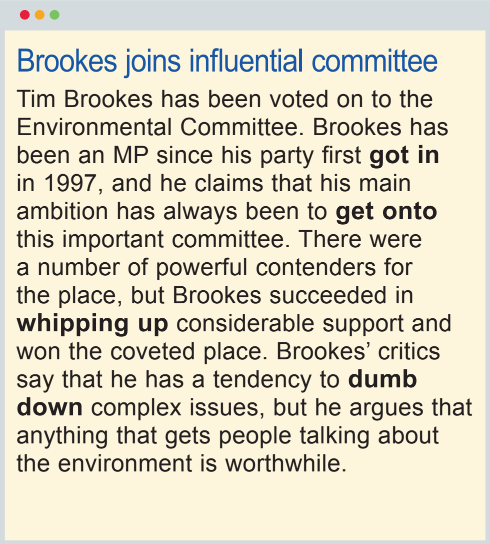

Brookes joins influential committee

Tim Brookes has been voted on to the Environmental Committee. Brookes has been an MP since his party first **got in** in 1997, and he claims that his main ambition has always been to **get onto** this important committee. There were a number of powerful contenders for the place, but Brookes succeeded in **whipping up** considerable support and won the coveted place. Brookes' critics say that he has a tendency to **dumb down** complex issues, but he argues that anything that gets people talking about the environment is worthwhile.

[1] became known

C The police and the army in the news

sentences from newspapers	meaning of phrasal verb
If there are not enough volunteer recruits, the government will have to **call** people **up**.	order people to join the armed forces
The new general **joined up** when he was 21.	joined the army
The enemy continues to **hold out** in the south.	defend itself against attack
The army is to be **sent in** to help earthquake victims.	(of people with special skills) sent to an area
Troops are expected to **pull out** before May.	move out of an area
Two planes were **shot down** last night.	destroyed by enemy fire
The kidnapper **gave** himself **up** last night.	allowed the police to catch him
The police will **move in** if the situation escalates.	go to a place to deal with a difficult situation

Exercises

51.1 An experienced journalist is talking to a new young reporter. Complete his advice below using phrasal verbs from A. You are given the first letter of each phrasal verb.

A lot of your time will be spent trying to r............... .... (1) information, and that can be boring – going to record offices, surfing the Internet, reading press releases p............... .... (2) by government departments, and that sort of thing. It's also important to hang out with other journalists and see what you can p............... .... (3) from them. You might discover a story that has l............... .... (4). The secret with celebrities is to get them to c............... .... (5) you. If they just think you're trying to w............... private information .... (6) them to create a scandal, they won't give you anything. And they hate it when journalists s............... .... (7) their homes. With politicians, it's best to s............... them .... (8) about various topics to find out what they want to talk about; don't be aggressive – that won't get you anywhere. Just like celebrities, if they think you're trying to f............... .... (9) a story that's going to g............... .... (10) and cause them embarrassment, they'll keep quiet and you'll get nothing. And take your time w............... your stories .... (11). Don't rush the process.

51.2 Match each headline 1–7 with an extract from the article a–g.

1 OIL PROTEST PASSES OFF PEACEFULLY
2 UN TROOPS TO PULL OUT OF PHRASALIA
3 ARMY MOVES IN TO QUELL DISTURBANCES IN NORTHERN PROVINCE
4 RESERVISTS CALLED UP AS SITUATION WORSENS
5 PAINTSHOP WORKERS WALK OUT AT AUTO PLANT
6 **SPECIAL FORCES ATTEMPT TO HEAD OFF REBELS IN QUESA REGION**
7 UNIVERSITIES ACCUSED OF DUMBING DOWN ENTRANCE EXAMS

a) 5,000 men have been ordered to report to local bases for immediate posting to the front.
b) The aim is to push back the advance and to restore government control.
c) 2,000 people assembled calmly outside the ministry and chanted slogans.
d) The riots had reached a level which could no longer be tolerated, the defence minister said.
e) Their work was now complete and had been a success, a spokesperson said.
f) Pass rates have increased by a huge 50% this year.
g) 250 downed tools and started an unofficial strike this morning.

51.3 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences, using a phrasal verb from the opposite page. Make any other necessary changes.

1 The conservatives won the election in 2015.
2 A helicopter was destroyed by enemy fire whilst in flight yesterday.
3 My great-great-grandfather became a soldier when he was only 16.
4 The kidnappers surrendered to the police just after midday.
5 The rebels successfully defended themselves for six weeks.
6 The government has ordered a group of experts to go to assess the flood damage.
7 The government crushed the rebellion using massive force.
8 Mr Fleet is trying to arouse some enthusiasm for the concert he is trying to organise.
9 Hundreds of people participated in the celebrations outside the palace.
10 Theodore got a place on the party's national committee.

Over to you

Phrasal verbs are very common in newspaper headlines – perhaps because they are often short and dramatic words. See how many you can find in any one copy of a newspaper. Make a note of any interesting ones.

52

Secrets and lies

A News headlines

INVESTIGATION **BEARS OUT**[1] FRAUD CLAIM

[1] proves that something that someone has said or written is true, or say that someone is telling the truth

COMPANY **HUSHED UP**[2] FINANCIAL SCANDAL

[2] stopped the public from finding out about something bad that had happened

GOVERNMENT URGED TO **LEVEL WITH**[3] PUBLIC OVER HEALTH RISKS

[3] (informal) tell the truth about something

PRIME MINISTER ACCUSED OF **PAPERING OVER**[4] CABINET DISAGREEMENT

[4] hiding a difficulty to try to make people believe that there is no problem

MINISTERS TRIED TO **COVER UP**[5] ARMS SCANDAL, SAYS OFFICIAL REPORT

[5] stop people from discovering the truth about something bad

AGENTS **SPIED ON**[6] UN DIPLOMATS: FORMER SPY BREAKS SILENCE

[6] watched secretly in order to discover information about them

B Email gossip

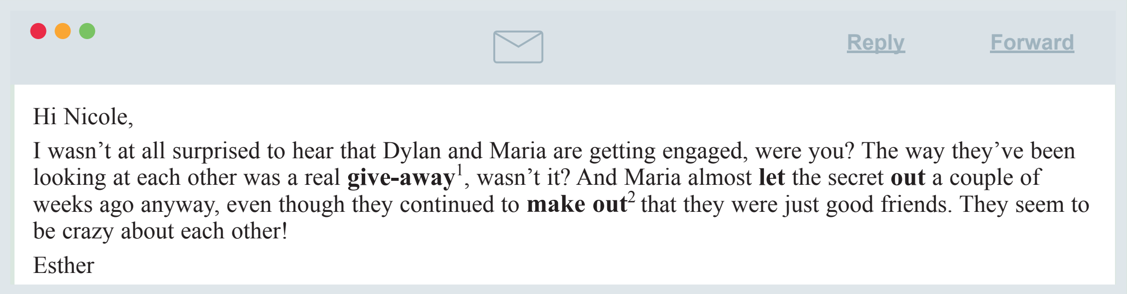

Hi Nicole,

I wasn't at all surprised to hear that Dylan and Maria are getting engaged, were you? The way they've been looking at each other was a real **give-away**[1], wasn't it? And Maria almost **let** the secret **out** a couple of weeks ago anyway, even though they continued to **make out**[2] that they were just good friends. They seem to be crazy about each other!

Esther

[1] (informal) something that makes you aware of a fact that someone else was trying to keep secret

[2] claim falsely that something is true

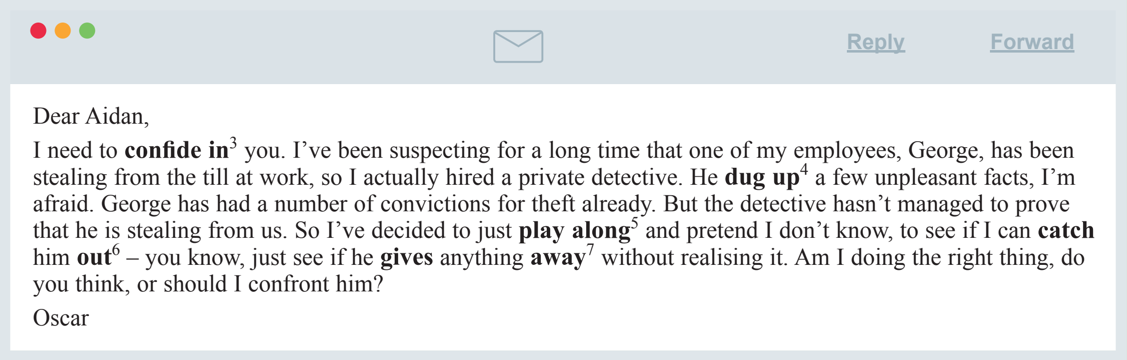

Dear Aidan,

I need to **confide in**[3] you. I've been suspecting for a long time that one of my employees, George, has been stealing from the till at work, so I actually hired a private detective. He **dug up**[4] a few unpleasant facts, I'm afraid. George has had a number of convictions for theft already. But the detective hasn't managed to prove that he is stealing from us. So I've decided to just **play along**[5] and pretend I don't know, to see if I can **catch** him **out**[6] – you know, just see if he **gives** anything **away**[7] without realising it. Am I doing the right thing, do you think, or should I confront him?

Oscar

[3] tell someone things that you keep secret from other people

[4] discovered new facts about a person or situation after a lot of searching

[5] (informal) pretend to agree with someone, or to do what someone wants for a short time, in order to get something from them or to avoid making them angry

[6] discover that someone is lying or doing something wrong

[7] lets someone know something that should be kept secret, often by mistake

Exercises

52.1 **Answer these questions about the headlines in A opposite.**

1 What was the aim of the investigation and what did it discover?
2 Why might the company have wanted to hush up the scandal?
3 What is the third headline implying about the government?
4 Why might the Prime Minister want to paper over what was happening in the Cabinet?
5 Does it sound as if the report supports or condemns the ministers' behaviour?
6 What has the former spy just admitted?

52.2 **Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.**

1 Fortunately, my research bore
2 Please just play
3 I wish I could confide
4 Journalists love to dig
5 I'm so sorry I let
6 We did all we could to hush
7 My friend begged me to level
8 Libby accused Charles of spying

a) in someone.
b) up a good scandal.
c) out your secret.
d) on her.
e) with her.
f) out my original hypothesis.
g) along with the story I tell Mary.
h) up the scandal in the company.

52.3 **Correct the ten mistakes with particles in this paragraph.**

As journalists, it is our job to try to dig off stories that dishonest people are trying to cover over. Sometimes we are accused of spying at innocent people, but surely it is our duty not to allow people to paper up their scandals. Often it is not at all difficult to learn secrets. People are often eager to confide with someone who is willing to lend a sympathetic ear. Or they let off a secret without realising it. Little things like a blush or a quick glance at someone else can be a real give-out to an experienced reporter. Of course, sometimes people try to make over that they have nothing to hide, and then it can be a good idea to play on with them up to a certain point. Then you suddenly take them by surprise with an unexpected question and in this way you can often catch them across.

52.4 **Which word could fit into all the sentences in each set? Look in your dictionary for any new meanings.**

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

1 The lawyer tried to .... the accused out in a lie.
Be aware of exam questions designed to .... you out.
Every year unexpected snowstorms .... people out.

2 Isabella likes to .... out that she has a very important job.
Can you .... out that small yacht on the horizon?
Who should I .... this cheque out to?

3 Please take care not to .... my secret out.
This skirt is too tight – I'll have to .... it out.
Don't forget to .... the cat out before you go to bed.

4 The way his hands were shaking .... away his nervousness.
The company .... away six new cars as part of their advertising campaign.
It was meant as a surprise but Kate .... the game away.

53 Rules and laws

A Obeying rules and laws

Police officer Well, Mr Smith. I am pleased to say we have **caught up with**[1] you at last.

Mr Smith But, I'm innocent, sir. Breaking the law would be **going against** my principles.

Police officer Well, several of your fellow criminals have **informed on**[2] you.

Mr Smith Just wait till I see them!

Police officer They say you make a habit of persuading old ladies to **sign over**[3] their property to you.

Mr Smith But they did it of their own free will.

Police officer The court is going to have to **impose** a substantial sentence **on**[4] you this time.

Mr Smith But what if I promise to **abide by**[5] the law in the future?

Police officer Well, you will certainly need to do that, and who knows, if you **adhere to**[6] the rules in prison, you might be **let out** early, but I'm certain the judge will give you a prison sentence – you won't be **let off** again.

[1] managed to catch
[2] given information to the police about someone who has done something wrong
[3] give someone else legal rights to something
[4] give someone a punishment
[5] (formal) obey
[6] (formal) obey

B Describing rules and laws

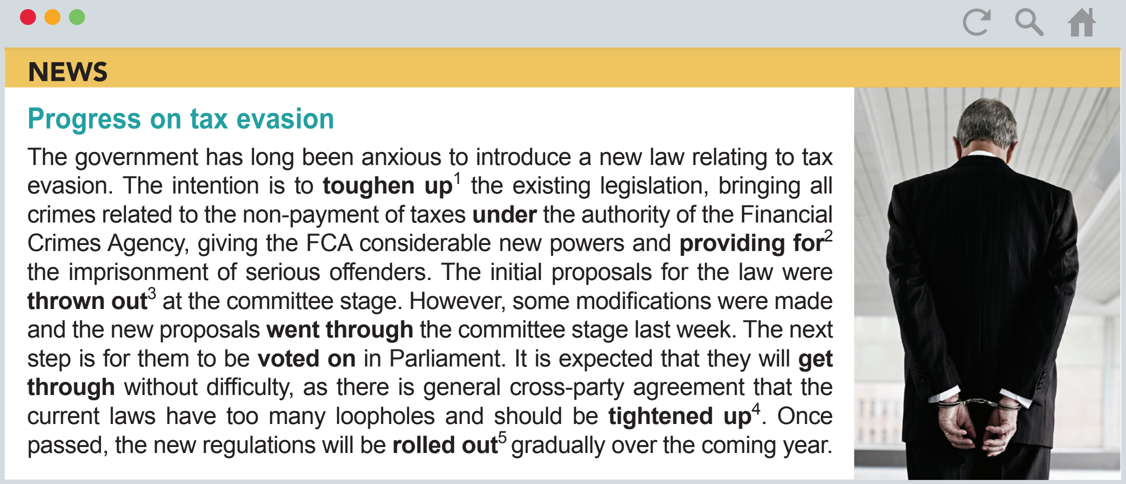

NEWS

Progress on tax evasion

The government has long been anxious to introduce a new law relating to tax evasion. The intention is to **toughen up**[1] the existing legislation, bringing all crimes related to the non-payment of taxes **under** the authority of the Financial Crimes Agency, giving the FCA considerable new powers and **providing for**[2] the imprisonment of serious offenders. The initial proposals for the law were **thrown out**[3] at the committee stage. However, some modifications were made and the new proposals **went through** the committee stage last week. The next step is for them to be **voted on** in Parliament. It is expected that they will **get through** without difficulty, as there is general cross-party agreement that the current laws have too many loopholes and should be **tightened up**[4]. Once passed, the new regulations will be **rolled out**[5] gradually over the coming year.

[1] make more limiting and difficult to avoid
[2] (formal) allowing to happen
[3] rejected
[4] made stricter
[5] introduced

Tip

Write sentences using phrasal verbs on small cards, missing out the preposition or particle. Write the missing word on the back of the card. Test yourself regularly using the cards.

Exercises

53.1 Are you a good citizen? Complete this questionnaire and then answer the questions.

HOW LAW-ABIDING ARE YOU?

Work out your score and then turn to page 157 to find out if you are a good citizen.

1 Have the police or a court ever .... (1) a fine on you?
Yes: 0 No: 2
2 Do you .... (2) to speed limits?
Rarely or never: 0 Mostly: 1 Always: 2
3 Would it go .... (3) your principles to take items from your place of work for your own private use?
No: 0 Yes: 2 Depends on value: 1
4 Do you abide .... (4) parking laws?
Rarely or never: 0 Mostly: 1 Always: 2
5 If you knew that a friend or family member had committed a crime, would you .... (5) on them?
No: 0 Depends on how serious: 1 Yes: 2
6 If you park illegally in a foreign country because you genuinely don't understand the rules, do you think you should be .... (6) off or punished?
Not punished: 0 Punished: 1

53.2 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.

1 The new act went across Parliament last week and will become law on 1 January.
2 The anti-litter laws should be tightened in; as it is now, nobody is ever prosecuted.
3 He went on a two-year crime spree before the police finally caught up to him.
4 She avoided tax by signing out her property to her two sons.
5 The new law provides with jail sentences of up to ten years for repeat offenders.
6 Building regulations come by local government rather than national or European law.
7 The bill was passed by the Lower Chamber but was thrown away by the Senate and never became law.
8 The bill will be voted to in Parliament next week, and the government hopes it will get across without too much opposition. [two mistakes]
9 If trials prove successful, the government intends to roll in the scheme across the whole country next year.
10 He was sentenced to three years in prison, but he'll probably be let off in 18 months.

53.3 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences using a phrasal verb from the opposite page. Make any other necessary changes.

1 The former CEO of Wilson & Wallace has been released from prison after serving a ten-year sentence.
2 If you don't follow the health and safety regulations, you will be punished.
3 The government plans to make the existing laws more strict.
4 The law reforming the Health Service was passed by Parliament with a large majority.
5 Evan's criminal activity was discovered when his neighbours told the police about him.

53.4 Here are some more phrasal verbs connected with rules and laws. Work out from the context what they mean (or look them up in a dictionary) and rewrite the sentences, replacing the underlined phrasal expressions with a word or phrase that means the same.

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

1 He was tried last week, found guilty and sent down for five years.
2 This government has brought in more new laws than any other in the last 50 years.
3 The new law will come into force in March.
4 The military authorities put out an order banning demonstrations in the area around the parliament buildings.

54 Technology

A Computers

Several verbs related to computers are based on the verb *go*, meaning access or use something.

You can **go on** a computer, the Internet, a website.

You can **go to** a menu, an item on a menu, a particular web page or part of a page, or a link.

Note how phrasal verbs are used in these extracts from an online computer helpline.

Query 17:02
How do I stop **pop-up adverts**[1] from **coming up** every time I **go on** the Internet?

Answer 17:03
Go to the tools menu on your browser and click 'disable pop-ups'.

Query 19:35
When I try to **print off** more than one copy of a document, a warning light **comes on** on the printer or the printer just **goes off** altogether and I have to switch it on again.

Answer 19:40
Try re-installing the printer driver. You can **call up** the information you need for your printer by opening the control panel, **going to** 'printers' and then clicking 'help'.

Query 9:18
I want to **set up** a **drop-down menu**[2] on my website. How do I do it?

Answer 9:25
Go to our tutorial page, **type in** your query and follow the instructions.

Query 11:57
How can I get my photos to **fade in** and **fade out**[3] when I show them on my computer?

Answer 11:59
Just right-click on the folder and choose 'Slide show'. They'll fade in and out automatically.

Query 14:10
There was a power cut the other day while I was working on my computer and a whole load of data got **wiped off**[4] the hard drive. How can I avoid this in future?

Answer 14:14
You can buy a piece of equipment which will automatically provide **back-up** power.

[1] unwanted advertisements which suddenly appear on the screen when you are online
[2] a list of choices which appears on a computer screen
[3] become gradually louder or brighter (fade in) or quieter or darker (fade out)
[4] removed

B Other technical equipment

When the battery is low, simply **plug** the unit **into the mains supply to recharge.**

Tune into any radio station anywhere in the world with our free app. You can **pick up** hundreds of thousands of stations 24 hours a day.

Spending hours **wiring** everything **up**[1] is a distant memory. All you have to do is switch on and connect!

[1] connecting something to a piece of electrical equipment by using electrical wires

Developments in technology mean that scanners no longer need to **warm up**[2].

[2] start working so that it becomes warm enough to work well

Looking for a printer that never **seizes up**[3]? The new Jentra 850 has a unique paper feed.

[3] stop moving or working in the normal way

Exercises

54.1 Complete these sentences with phrasal verbs from A opposite.

1 At the end of a scene in a radio play, the actors' voices often ....
2 When you bought your new laptop, did you find it easy to .... ?
3 Could you .... three copies of the document, please?
4 The network crashed and the information I'd just added got .... the system.
5 When using this program, you can instantly .... the figures you need.
6 If you click on the icon, a .... menu appears on your screen.
7 All you have to do to get an instant answer is .... your question.

54.2 Choose the correct word to complete these sentences.

1 With my new radio I can .... far more stations than I used to be able to get.
a) tune in b) pick up c) set up
2 If a machine stops moving or working normally, you can say that it has ....
a) cut off b) wiped off c) seized up
3 OK, If you want to create a template, go .... the Tools menu.
a) on b) in c) to
4 I'm going to have to get my printer repaired – it keeps going .... for no apparent reason.
a) on b) off c) out
5 Please could you help me .... my new computer?
a) set up b) tune in c) pick up
6 Whenever Mohammed is abroad, he .... the BBC World Service to listen to the news.
a) seizes up b) tunes into c) calls up

54.3 Are these sentences true or false about the computer that you usually work on?

1 Pop-ups come up every time you go on the Internet.
2 You create bullet points by going to the Format menu and clicking on 'Bullets' and 'Numbering'.
3 Your printer plugs into the back of your monitor.
4 You can pick up radio stations from all over the world.
5 It takes less than a minute for your machine to warm up.
6 It makes an automatic back-up of files on a regular basis.

54.4 Complete each sentence in an appropriate way using one of the phrasal verbs from the opposite page and any other words that you need.

1 The advantage of a wireless connection is that you don't ....
....
2 You can print a document by selecting the print icon or by ....
....
3 It's quite easy to .... a website with these step-by-step instructions.
4 Whenever I switch on my computer, it takes time ....
....
5 I can use this cable to listen to my MP3 player in the car by ....
....
6 If the printer is beginning to run out of ink, a warning light ....
....

Over to you

Find an article online about a computer, camera, mobile phone, MP3 player or other piece of technology that you are interested in. Does it contain any examples of phrasal verbs? If so, note them down in their context.

55 Food and drink

A Eating

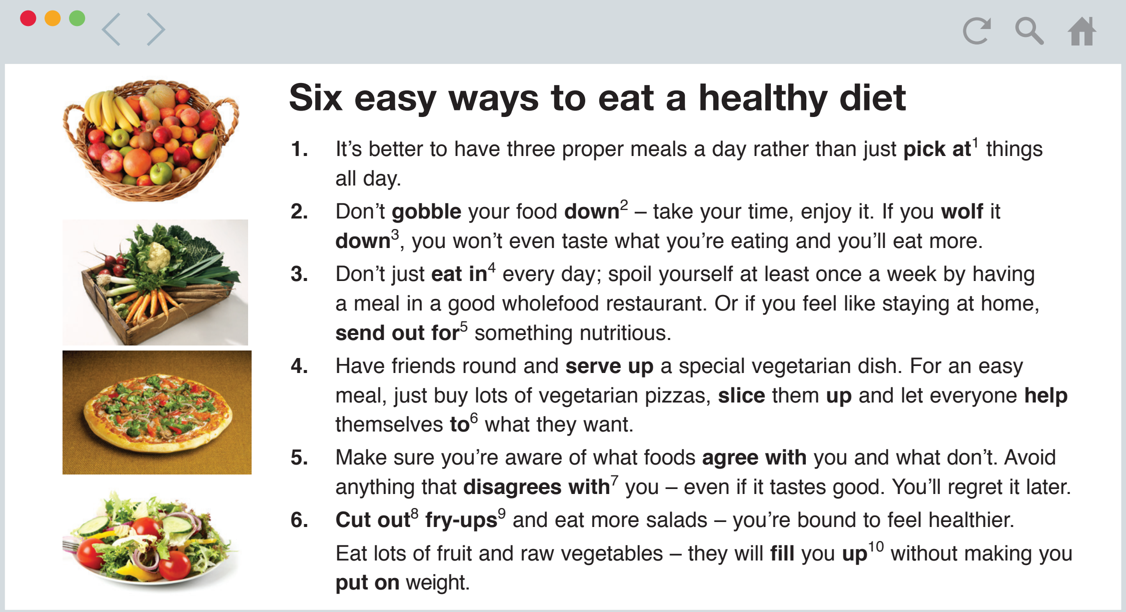

Six easy ways to eat a healthy diet

1. It's better to have three proper meals a day rather than just **pick at**[1] things all day.
2. Don't **gobble** your food **down**[2] – take your time, enjoy it. If you **wolf** it **down**[3], you won't even taste what you're eating and you'll eat more.
3. Don't just **eat in**[4] every day; spoil yourself at least once a week by having a meal in a good wholefood restaurant. Or if you feel like staying at home, **send out for**[5] something nutritious.
4. Have friends round and **serve up** a special vegetarian dish. For an easy meal, just buy lots of vegetarian pizzas, **slice** them **up** and let everyone **help** themselves **to**[6] what they want.
5. Make sure you're aware of what foods **agree with** you and what don't. Avoid anything that **disagrees with**[7] you – even if it tastes good. You'll regret it later.
6. **Cut out**[8] **fry-ups**[9] and eat more salads – you're bound to feel healthier. Eat lots of fruit and raw vegetables – they will **fill** you **up**[10] without making you **put on** weight.

[1] eat small amounts

[2] (informal) eat very fast

[3] (informal) eat very fast

[4] eat at home

[5] phone a restaurant and ask for food to be delivered to you

[6] put on a plate for oneself

[7] makes you feel slightly ill or uncomfortable

[8] stop eating

[9] (UK, informal) quick meal made of fried food

[10] make you feel that you've eaten enough

B Drinking

phrasal verb	definition of phrasal verb	example
wash down sth or **wash** sth **down**	help you swallow it	Have a drink of milk to **wash down** the tablet.
drink to sb/sth	hold up your glass before drinking from it in order to wish someone success or happiness	Let's raise a glass and **drink to** the happy couple!
dip sth **in** (sth)	quickly put it in and take it out again	She loves **dipping** carrot sticks **in** soft blue cheese.
soak up	absorb	Cook the lentils until they **soak up** half the liquid.
water down sth or **water** sth **down**	make it less strong by adding water or other liquid	You should **water down** fruit juice for your child until he or she is five years old.
spill over	flow over the edge	Alfie, hold your juice properly. It's **spilling over** the edge of your glass.

Tip

A number of the words in B can also be used metaphorically. Anger can *spill over*, you can *soak up* an atmosphere and plans or suggestions can be *watered down*. Learning the literal and metaphorical uses together may help you to remember these expressions.

Exercises

55.1 Complete these dialogues using phrasal verbs from the opposite page so that the second speaker agrees with and repeats more or less what the first speaker says.

1 **Mariam** The kids eat so fast! I'm sure it can't be good for them.

Ronnie Yes, they do tend to .... / .... their food .... (Give two possible answers.)

2 **Clara** Polly just eats tiny amounts – no wonder she's so thin.

Ed Yes, she just .... her food like a bird.

3 **Julian** Those prawns made me feel a bit sick.

Rebecca Yes, they .... me too. I don't feel too good either.

4 **Arthur** I think we should stop eating burgers; they're not good for us.

Pippa You're right. We should .... them .... and eat more salads.

5 **Michael** These trousers don't fit me any more. They must have shrunk.

Louise No, I'm afraid you've .... a bit of weight.

6 **Tim** Shall we eat at home tonight? We could order something from a takeaway.

Harriet Yes, let's .... We can .... for a pizza or something.

55.2 Read the remarks by different people and then answer the questions below.

Rory I enjoyed it, but I couldn't eat one bit more.

Lizzie We toasted Matthew and wished him well in his new job.

Grace The smoked salmon made me feel unwell. I shouldn't have eaten it.

Oliver She gave me some raw fish. It was the first time I'd ever tasted it.

Khadijah I took a big slice of cake.

1 Who ate something that didn't agree with them?
2 Who helped themselves to something?
3 Who ate something that filled them up?
4 Who was served up something new?
5 Who drank to someone?

55.3 Complete the word puzzle.

Across
2 Do you ever .... your biscuits in tea?
3 We .... the meal down with lemonade.
6 She's put .... a lot of weight.
7 .... the cake up and give everyone a piece.

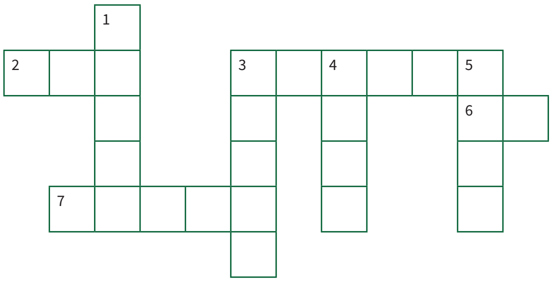

Down
1 Stop pouring! The water's going to .... over the top of the jug!
3 This juice is too strong. I'll .... it down.
4 Have some bread to .... up the rest of the sauce.
5 Particle that goes with *water* and *wash*.

55.4 Name a food or drink that …

1 often disagrees with people.
2 can be sliced up.
3 you often serve up.
4 fills you up.
5 you should cut down on.
6 people often send out for.

56 Come

A Typical meanings of *come* in phrasal verbs

You may have already met some phrasal verbs with *come* in this book or elsewhere. For example, **come in** [start speaking during a discussion (Unit 11) or, for the sea, come nearer to the beach or coast (Unit 47)], **come at** somebody [move towards someone in order to attack them (Unit 22)], **come at** something [think about something in a particular way (Unit 24)], **come down** [pass from one generation to another so that it continues (Unit 10) or, for a price or level, become lower (Unit 10)].

Come typically expresses movement and the particle shows the direction of the movement. **Come in** above suggests a person 'entering' a discussion. **Come at** someone suggests directing oneself at/towards someone and **come at** something suggests directing one's thoughts to a particular subject. **Come down** suggests moving through time (from the more distant past towards the present).

B More phrasal verbs with *come*

Look at these extracts from two interviews for *Policy and Finance* magazine.

Interviewer You are often seen as a survivor. How did you survive your difficult second term in government? Was it just luck?

Politician Luck? No, luck doesn't **come into it**[1]. You have to work in politics. As you know, the party **came in for**[2] a lot of criticism on its tax policy and was also **coming under**[3] attack from pensioners' groups. We were **coming across**[4] as insensitive to ordinary people's needs and problems, so we needed new ideas. I **came up against**[5] critics in my own party, and it was a difficult period, but we **came through**[6] it because we were strong and determined to succeed.

[1] (usually negative) have an influence
[2] received (collocates with *criticism* or *praise*)
[3] getting a lot of
[4] being seen by others
[5] faced
[6] managed to get to the end of a difficult situation

Interviewer You once **came out with**[1] a famous remark that surprised everyone: 'Capitalism is dead.' Do you still believe that?

Economist I was misquoted. What I said was that in a period when new technology was **coming in** and replacing traditional employment patterns in the workplace, we needed to rethink our basic economics. Other economies which have combined capitalism with a caring social framework have **come off**[2] better in the long term. If our standards of employment and social care are to **come up to**[3] those of our neighbours, then we need something other than a traditional form of capitalism. And this is where a more cooperative approach **comes in**[4]. Our workers' general life skills have **come on**[5] a long way since the days of mass manual labour, and we have to involve them and their skills in a more democratic way. A new era has to **come into**[6] being or we will simply be left behind.

[1] suddenly said
[2] ended up in a good position (**come off better**) or bad position (**come off worse**) because of an argument or some kind of struggle
[3] reach
[4] is involved
[5] improved
[6] begin

Tip

Look at the units which deal with the meanings conveyed by the particles (Units 9–15). These may help you learn the meanings of the phrasal verbs in Units 56–60.

Exercises

56.1 Complete these sentences with phrasal verbs from A opposite.

1 Originally stories .... from one generation to the next through the spoken word rather than in writing.
2 The tide .... and goes out twice a day.
3 Prices tend to .... when the economy is experiencing a recession.
4 Surrealist artists .... their work very differently from artists of previous generations.
5 In a formal meeting you should wait until you catch the eye of the chairperson before .... to join a discussion.
6 The Russian revolutionary Trotsky died when someone .... him with an ice axe.

56.2 Complete these sentences with the correct particles.

1 Any original idea is bound to come .... a certain amount of opposition at first.
2 I prefer not to argue with Caitlin because she usually comes .... best.
3 The new licensing laws will come .... force on 1 January.
4 The Chancellor is bound to come .... attack for putting forward such a controversial proposal.
5 Small children say the funniest things – you never know what they are going to come .... next.
6 Sometimes your brother comes .... as being a bit unfriendly.
7 I gave up football because I wanted a change. Age doesn't come .... it.
8 Now I'd like to discuss the next stage of the project and this is where your plans come ....

56.3 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences using a phrasal verb from the opposite page. Make any other necessary changes.

1 Álvaro's English has improved a lot since he met Flora.
2 Most people think Hugo is confident and extrovert.
3 The Prime Minister has received a considerable amount of criticism lately.
4 Ellen makes some very strange comments sometimes.
5 This history homework does not meet the standards we expect from our students.
6 We've had a difficult year but we've survived and are looking forward to the future now.
7 At this point I should like to invite Anastasia Snow to enter the discussion.
8 I was afraid the dog was going to attack me.

56.4 Which phrasal verb with come fits each set of collocations? Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

1
to not .... standard
expectations
scratch

2
to .... competition
a problem
prejudice

3
to .... scrutiny
attack
pressure

4
to .... effect
being
force

57 Get

A Phrasal verbs with *get*

There are many phrasal verbs with *get*, some of which you may have already met in this book or elsewhere. For example, **get your act together** [become more organised (Unit 8)], **get around** [travel, of news or rumours (Unit 9)], **get by** [have just enough money to pay for the things you need but no more (Unit 6)], **get** someone **down** [make someone depressed (Unit 10)] and **get off** [finish work (Unit 31)].

B Phrasal verb collocations with *get*

collocation	meaning
The children are very quiet. I hope they're not **getting up to mischief**.	doing something naughty
Now we're all here, let's **get down to business**.	start our work
I wish my parents would **get off my back**! I'm studying as hard as I need to.	stop nagging me
The football coach decided it was time for his team to **get back to basics**.	start again at the beginning
The business was a little slow to **get off the ground**, but it's doing very well now.	get started
I just can't **get** the situation with Tom **out of my mind**.	stop thinking about
Doctors try to **get the message across** that too much salt is bad for you.	make people understand
You are far too soft on Holly. You let her **get away with murder**.	behave badly and not be criticised or punished
What happened between Kian and Daisy? We must try to **get to the bottom of** it.	understand properly, not superficially
They've seen how popular the product is and now other companies want to **get in on the act**.	become involved

C Getting down to a good gossip

Alice Hi, Beth! Haven't seen you for ages. What have you been **getting up to**[1] recently? Anything interesting?

Beth Well, I've been **getting around**[2] quite a lot actually, mainly for work. I've been to Italy a couple of times and Ireland, visiting our offices. But I've also been **getting into**[3] golf recently and I managed to **get in**[4] a few rounds between meetings.

Alice That's great. It's good if you can **get** something **out of**[5] the trips for yourself as well as for work.

Beth That's right. In fact, I'm finding it quite hard to **get back into**[6] the ordinary office routine now.

Alice Well, let's **get together** one evening soon and catch up properly on all the news.

[1] doing
[2] travelling to different places
[3] becoming keen on
[4] find time for
[5] get benefit from
[6] return to (after some time)

Tip

Many phrasal verbs have a whole range of different meanings. If you come across a phrasal verb and it doesn't make sense with any meaning that you know, look it up online at http://dictionary.cambridge.org to see if it has a different meaning in that context.

Exercises

57.1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1 she got / together / her act / It's time / a job / found / and
2 not looking / always / to mischief / The children / when / get up / I'm
3 the bottom / of that / I must / strange letter / get to / I received
4 down / We / business / to / got / immediately
5 is too / Modern / complicated / life / to basics / should / get / We / back (two sentences)

57.2 Complete these dialogues using phrasal verbs from the opposite page so that the second speaker agrees with and repeats more or less what the first speaker says.

1 **Anna** Sienna always wants to be part of anything that involves publicity.
Ella Oh yes, if publicity's involved she always wants to ....

2 **Alex** We'll just have to survive on less money now that I've lost my job.
Ameena Yes, don't worry I'm sure we'll ....

3 **Zara** Everyone soon found out about Harry's divorce. I'm amazed.
Victoria Oh yes, the story soon ....

4 **Lily** It's often difficult to make people understand how important it is to protect the environment.
Callum Yes, it's hard to ....

5 **Adam** Sarah always seems to behave badly and never get criticised by anyone.
Antonia Yes, she seems to be able to ....

6 **Emma** I just can't stop thinking about Lucía.
Sergio I know. It's the same for me. I just can't ....

57.3 Complete these sentences using the correct particles.

1 Studying so hard really got me .... so I took a break to cheer myself up.
2 Look, just get .... my back, will you! I'm sick of you finding fault with me.
3 The project took a long time to get .... the ground, but we're moving now.
4 I hope I get something .... that summer course I've registered for; it's quite a lot of money to pay.
5 I'd like to get .... a game of tennis later today. Are you free around five?
6 Hi there. What have you been getting .... since I last saw you?
7 Ryan has got .... photography recently; he spends all his time editing pictures on his computer.
8 Let's get .... for lunch one day. I've got loads to tell you.

57.4 Rewrite these questions, replacing the phrasal verbs with a word or phrase that means the same.

1 When do you normally get off work?
2 Do you get around a lot?
3 Is there any time of the year when you find it hard to get back into the routine of your daily life?
4 What have you been getting up to recently?
5 What sorts of things get you down?
6 Where do you usually get together with your friends?

57.5 Now answer the questions in 57.4.

58 Go

A Typical meanings of *go* in phrasal verbs

Look at these meanings of *go down* which you may have already met. Note that what they have in common is change from a bigger or more positive state to a smaller or more negative state.

phrasal verb	meaning	unit
go down	if a computer system **goes down**, it stops working	10
	become worse in quality	58
	if part of your body that is bigger than usual because of an illness or injury **goes down**, it starts to return to its usual size	43

As these examples show, *go* typically carries meanings connected with movement, change or things happening. Here are some more examples:

We should **go back over** these figures. I think there's a mistake somewhere. [examine again]

The house **went for** €900,000, which was more than we expected. [was sold for]

The festival will **go ahead** despite the bad weather. [happen]

I've been **going over** in my mind what happened the other day. I think we have a big problem. [thinking about something that happened or that was said]

Lucas has decided to **go into** politics. I'm not sure I would vote for him! [become involved in]

Who would want to **go after**/**for** such a boring job? [try to get]

B Other phrasal verbs with *go*

Look at the verbs with *go* in these short news clips.

The event **went off**[1] as planned and £5,000 was raised for charity.

Mr Drake said he had decided to **go over to**[2] the Green Party as he was disillusioned with his own party's policies on the environment.

Youths who **go around**[3] vandalising property should be forced to repair the things they have damaged.

The young parents **went through**[4] agony before their missing child was found.

Going by[5] the government's own statistics, they have failed to stop the rise in drug addiction

Three candidates will **go forward** to the next round in the election for party leader.

The newspapers are really **going for**[6] Ben Rone. They seem determined to **go after**[7] him and destroy his career.

[1] happened in a particular way

[2] leave one group or organisation and join another competing group or organisation

[3] spend time (used about doing something that is unpleasant for other people)

[4] experienced (used about an unpleasant or difficult situation or event)

[5] using as a reference

[6] attacking

[7] to chase or follow someone in order to catch them

Exercises

58.1 Look at A. Complete the text below using particles from the box.

after ahead down for into over

It's been a terrible week. As you know, I'm planning to go .... (1) teaching. On Monday I went .... (2) a trainee teacher position that was advertised at a school in town, but I didn't get it. I'm not sure why. I've been going .... (3) the interview in my mind, but I don't think I said anything too stupid. Then on Tuesday I fell off my bike and managed to twist my ankle. It was terribly swollen for a day or two, but it's beginning to go .... (4) now. It's my birthday party tomorrow. I hope you can come. Plans are still going .... (5) for that, of course, although I don't suppose I'll be able to dance very much. I'm probably going to sell my bike, though. I hope it'll go .... (6) at least £300, which will help me out till I manage to find a job.

58.2 Match the beginning of each question with its ending.

1 Are you planning to go after
2 Is the end-of-term concert going ahead
3 Why did you decide to go over
4 How much did their house go for
5 Did your anniversary party go off
6 Could you help me go back
7 Has the swelling on your knee gone down
8 Which teams are going forward

a) when they finally managed to sell it?
b) over our business accounts?
c) yet?
d) in the school hall as usual this year?
e) to the semi-final?
f) to a different political party?
g) the boss's job when he leaves?
h) as well as you'd hoped?

58.3 Correct the mistakes with particles in these sentences.

1 Lara has been promised that her name will go over for a place on the board of directors next year.
2 Going for the weather forecast, there'll be snow tomorrow.
3 They went on a terrible time during their daughter's illness.
4 You really mustn't go across telling such terrible lies.
5 Cameron has always wanted to go on law.
6 The journalists went into her wherever she went.

58.4 Which particle fits in each of these sets of sentences? Use a dictionary if necessary.

Cambridge Dictionary
dictionary.cambridge.org

1 Elsa really went .... me in the office today.
They are selling their old car but don't expect it to go .... much.
Please be quiet, children – and that goes .... you too, Seth.
2 The standard of school-leavers' English is going ....
The office computer system has gone .... again.
The bump on the boy's head looked alarming, but it quickly went ....
3 Let's go .... our plan of action for tomorrow again.
I keep going .... what I said to him, wishing I could take my words back.
He started his political life as a Republican but later on went .... to the Democrats.
4 I was nervous about playing in the concert, but everything went .... very well.
I didn't wake up when my alarm clock went .... this morning.
Don't drink this milk – I think it's gone ....

59 Keep

A Phrasal verbs with *keep*

In this book or elsewhere, you may have already met **keep in with** someone [be friendly with someone because they can help you (Unit 5)], **keep up** with something [be able to understand or deal with something that is developing very fast (Unit 24)] and **keep it up** [don't stop doing (Unit 30)]. This unit presents more of the many other phrasal verbs with *keep*.

B Describing problems

After our son had to be **kept in**[1] hospital overnight after suspected appendicitis several months ago, the doctors explained that they thought his stomach pain was stress related. His school have always kept us informed about any concerns they have, and until recently, everything seemed to be going really well. But now I'm sure our son is **keeping** something **to**[2] himself. He normally tells us about all his worries and doesn't **keep** anything **back**. We've asked him what the problem is, but he won't tell us anything. We've got a meeting with his teacher next week, so should I **keep out of**[3] it until then and not make a fuss?

I'm a medical student and up till now I've managed to **keep ahead** of the other students in my year. I really want to do well in my exams. However, now I have a problem with my flatmate. She always wants to spend hours discussing her problems with me and this is **keeping** me **from** my studies. On top of that, she **keeps on**[4] inviting her friends to come and stay. We've only got two small bedrooms so they have to sleep on the sofa and they **keep** me **up**[5] chatting until the early hours of the morning. It's not so bad at the weekend, but they often come during the week when I've got nine o'clock lectures. I really need to speak to her about everything that is annoying me, but I don't want to add to her problems. What should I put first – work or friendship?

[1] made to stay somewhere
[2] keep something secret
[3] not become involved
[4] continues doing something repeatedly
[5] made to stay up late

C Some advice

- **Keep off** sugary drinks if you want to stay slim.
- If you are on a diet, or on a budget, a bowl of homemade soup is a good and inexpensive way to **keep** your strength **up**[1].
- **Keep** your music **down** late at night or you'll annoy your neighbours.
- When answering an exam question, you will get better marks if you **keep to**[2] the point.
- When you buy a house, remember to budget for its **upkeep**[3] as this can be very costly.

[1] not allow something that is at a high level to fall to a lower level
[2] don't start writing about other topics
[3] keeping a building in good condition

COME ON
GET OFF
FLAG DOWN
BLOW OUT
WRAP UP
nose about
DUMB DOWN
roll out
keep up
spill over
TAKE OFF
block in
freeze up
HANG BACK
BELT OUT
play along

Keep at it *and you'll get on top of those phrasal verbs.*

Exercises

59.1 **Complete these emails using the correct particles.**

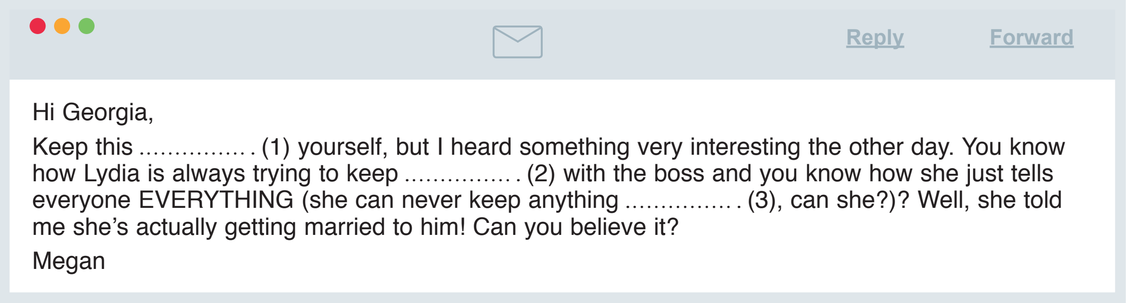

Hi Georgia,

Keep this .... (1) yourself, but I heard something very interesting the other day. You know how Lydia is always trying to keep .... (2) with the boss and you know how she just tells everyone EVERYTHING (she can never keep anything .... (3), can she?)? Well, she told me she's actually getting married to him! Can you believe it?

Megan

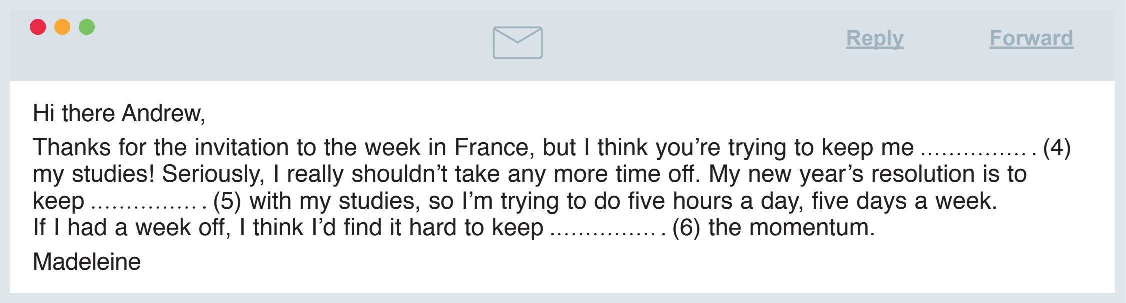

Hi there Andrew,

Thanks for the invitation to the week in France, but I think you're trying to keep me .... (4) my studies! Seriously, I really shouldn't take any more time off. My new year's resolution is to keep .... (5) with my studies, so I'm trying to do five hours a day, five days a week. If I had a week off, I think I'd find it hard to keep .... (6) the momentum.

Madeleine

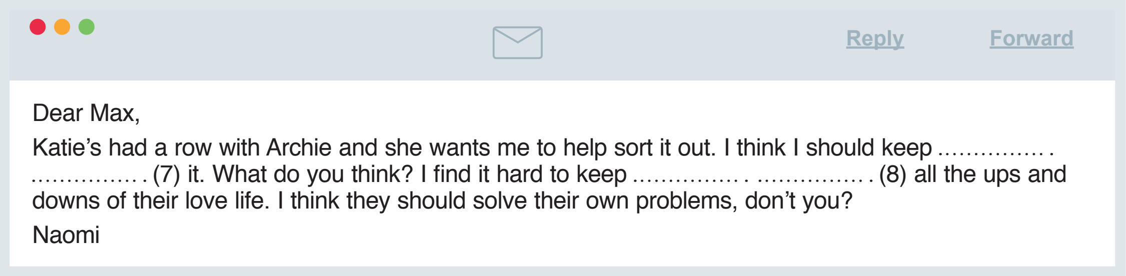

Dear Max,

Katie's had a row with Archie and she wants me to help sort it out. I think I should keep .... (7) it. What do you think? I find it hard to keep .... (8) all the ups and downs of their love life. I think they should solve their own problems, don't you?

Naomi

59.2 **Look at these brief notes giving people advice or warnings. Rewrite the underlined parts of the sentences using a phrasal verb from the opposite page. Make any other necessary changes.**

1 Please play your music, TVs and radios at a minimum volume during the exam period.
2 Every household will be asked to contribute £10 a month towards the maintenance of the village recreation ground.
3 All team members are strongly advised to refrain from eating fatty foods during the training period. It is important to maintain your fitness to the highest level.

59.3 **Which particle could fit into all the sentences in each set?**

1 There is one rule which we ask all club members to keep ....
I wish the lecturer would stop digressing and keep .... the point.
Before your exams, make a revision timetable and try to keep .... it.

2 I wish my parents wouldn't keep .... at me about getting my hair cut.
Keep .... going until you reach the T-junction and then turn left.
My grandma kept .... working until she was in her 80s.

3 Why don't you go to bed now? I really don't want to keep you ....
At university Jack did a course on ornithology, but I don't think he's kept .... his interest in birds.
Things change so quickly in Faye's life – it's hard to keep .... with what's going on.

59.4 **Answer the following questions.**

1 What sort of thing has kept you up late at night?
2 Have you ever been kept in hospital overnight? If so, why?
3 What are you going to do to keep up your knowledge of phrasal verbs?

60 Take

A Typical meanings of *take* in phrasal verbs

Take often carries a meaning of 'remove', as in:

We hope you will **take** many happy memories **away** from your stay here.

Phil's boss has agreed to **take** him **off** the night shift.

Helena **took** her parents **out** for a meal. (Unit 42)

Take also sometimes carries a meaning of doing something quickly or something happening quickly or abruptly, for example **Take it away**! (Unit 30), **take aback** [surprise], **take off** (of a plane) and **take out** [kill or destroy in a military battle].

B Organising a charity concert

I must say I was **taken aback**[1] when I saw the cost involved, but I wanted it to be a memorable experience for people. A huge amount of time was **taken up**[2] with phone calls persuading sponsors to be involved. The **uptake**[3] was slow at first, but bit by bit we managed to persuade local companies and individuals to support us. The work didn't end when the concert was over. We spent a whole day **taking down**[4] the stage set and lighting and so on, but none of that **took away from**[5] the pleasure we got from organising it. And I think the audience **took away**[6] something that will stay with them for a long time. Overall it was worth it – a great experience for all involved.

[1] very surprised
[2] used
[3] number of people who committed themselves
[4] removing by separating into pieces and taking the pieces away
[5] made it seem less good or successful
[6] remembered [used about e.g. a memory, an impression, a message]

C Other phrasal verbs with *take*

phrasal verb/noun	definition of phrasal verb/ noun	example
take sb **away**	take to a different place	He **took** his mum **away** for a week to the coast.
take sb **off** sth	remove from a job	He was put in charge of security, but he was **taken off** the job after a week as he was not strict enough.
	stop giving someone a particular type of medicine	The doctor **took** her **off** the pills as they were making her sick.
take up sth or **take** sth **up**	discuss something or deal with something	The tutor promised to **take** the problem **up** with the Head of Department.
take along sb/sth or **take** sb/sth **along**	take with you	I'd advise you to **take along** an umbrella.
intake	number of people that are accepted at a particular time by an organisation, especially a college or university	This year's **intake** have higher exam grades than last year's.
take-off	imitation	She does a brilliant **take-off** of Adele.

Exercises

60.1 Which of the phrasal verbs on the opposite page can have the following meanings?

1 surprise someone ....
2 detract from something ....
3 leave an airport (of a plane) ....
4 destroy a military target ....

60.2 Complete these sentences with the correct particles.

1 My Spanish cousin is coming to stay next week, so I plan to take her .... when I visit my daughter at university.
2 Personally, I took .... a very good impression of France when I went there.
3 Joel was quite taken .... to learn that his application had been unsuccessful.
4 Much of Jason's time is taken .... with dealing with customer complaints.
5 Grandma asked the doctor to take her .... those tablets as she thought they were making her feel sick.

60.3 Rewrite the sentences using a phrasal verb or noun based on *take*. Remember to make all the changes to the sentences that are necessary.

1 Martin does the best imitation of the Prime Minister that I have ever seen.
2 A ridiculous amount of my time is occupied by dealing with emails.
3 Even the rain could not detract from the beauty of the scene.
4 I was very surprised when I was told that I was no longer allowed to park in front of my own house.
5 Would you like me to raise your concerns with the manager?
6 We are expecting a particularly large group of students to arrive next week.
7 We decided it would be nicer to invite our aunt for a weekend in a hotel with us rather than having her stay with us.
8 The number of people wanting a place at the weekend seminar has been rather disappointing.

60.4 Rewrite these sentences so that the underlined words have the opposite meaning. Make any other changes that are necessary.

1 Let's put up the decorations tomorrow.
2 The doctor has agreed to put my elderly uncle on some pills for his arthritis.
3 Her parents brought her back to their holiday home.
4 My favourite part of a flight is when the plane lands.
5 Robert's being there added to our enjoyment of the evening.
6 After Stan had been working in the kitchens for a week, he was put on washing-up duties.

Over to you

If you have now finished all the units in this book, congratulations! Remember to regularly revise the new phrasal verbs you have studied and try to use them in your own speaking and writing of English.

Key

Unit 1

1.1

1 I decided to take up gardening, so I took out a subscription to a gardening magazine and read up on the subject. I found out so many interesting things, such as the best time to plant flowers out for the summer and how to grow vegetables. I've really got into it now and spend hours in the garden every weekend.

2 The other day we went off on a hike in the mountains. We put our wet-weather gear on as the weather forecast wasn't good. We set off early to avoid the rush hour and soon reached the starting point for our walk. The whole walk took about four hours and when we got back we were exhausted.

3 I have to catch up on my coursework this weekend as I've fallen behind a bit. I worked on it till midnight last night, but I still have loads to do. I have to hand one essay in on Tuesday and another one on Friday. I'm not sure whether I'll make it, but I'll try.

1.2 1 out of 2 down 3 out 4 in

1.3

1 intake
2 breakout
3 off-putting
4 outspoken
5 broken-down

1.4 1 d 2 e 3 a 4 b 5 c

Unit 2

2.1

1 no object needed
2 object needed: If you're ready to leave now, I can drop **you** off at your office. Remember, without an object, *drop off* means 'fall asleep'.
3 no object needed
4 object needed: My son is so good at English that I think the teacher should move **him** up to the advanced class.
5 object needed: I associate **this music / that perfume / Juliet** with that evening we spent together in Rome.
6 no object needed

2.2

1 I can pick you up from work and then drop you off at the airport. *Or* I can pick you up from the airport and then drop you off at work.
2 The teacher said that she would not put up with such rudeness from her class.
3 The floods have cut off several villages in the mountains. *Or* (but less likely as it is quite a long object) The floods have cut several villages in the mountains off.
4 If your spelling doesn't improve, the examiners will mark you down.
5 Margot always seems to cope cheerfully with all her problems. *Or* Margot always seems to cope with all her problems cheerfully.

2.3

1 I'll have to ask my daughter to **sort** my Internet connection **out**. *Or* … to **sort out** my Internet connection.
2 I was so tired after work that I **dropped off** in the train on the way home.
3 I was **marked down** because my essay was over the word limit.
4 Jason has no right to **look down on** me – he's no better than I am.
5 Lara doesn't **get on** (well) with one of her flatmates.
6 You have to **face up to** the fact that you will probably never see each other again.
7 Maria has got a new job **looking after** an old lady.
8 If you **deprive** the children **of** sleep, they won't be able to concentrate at school.
9 In Lapland we had to **contend with** some difficult driving conditions.
10 The road to our house **branches off** (the main road) just after the service station.

2.4

Possible answers:

1 I'm **looking forward to** visiting my aunt in New York for a couple of weeks.
2 I've got to **catch up on** some maths I missed when I was off school on Monday.
3 My mother **picks** me **up**.
4 My favourite album is *Sergeant Pepper's Lonely Hearts Club Band*, and I like it because I **associate** it **with** being a student.
5 I feel stressed when I have too many different things to **contend with** at the same time.
6 I usually **drop off** as soon as my head touches the pillow.

Over to you

This is how the *Cambridge Advanced Learners' Dictionary* deals with these verbs:
associate *sth* with *sth* phrasal verb
deprive of verb [T] [T = transitive]
contend with *sth* phrasal verb
face up to *sth* phrasal verb

Collocations highlighted by examples in *Cambridge Advanced Learners' Dictionary*:
risks **associated with** smoking
deprive someone **of** freedom/rights/sleep
contend with problems / someone's death
face up to the fact that

Unit 3

3.1

1 onset
2 overkill
3 back-up
4 input
5 warm-up
6 letdown
7 standby

3.2

1 The police opened the container and arrested two **stowaways**.
2 There was a **breakdown** in negotiations with union members (after a couple of hours).
3 There was a management **buyout** of the company in 2014.
4 There was a **walkout** (by the workers) last night and the factory was forced to close.
5 The military **build-up** is continuing on both sides of the border.

3.3
1 There has been a stand-**off** for several days now in the talks between the government and the rebels. Neither side will make any concessions.
2 Last year there were 15,000 new Internet business start-**ups**, most of which only survived for a few months.
3 After years without releasing an album, Madeleine Flame has staged a come**back** with her new collection of love songs.
4 Holly: Have you decided where you're going this summer?
Flora: Not really. It's a toss-**up** whether it'll be Italy or Greece.
5 I met Nasser and we just had a knock**about** on the college football pitch for half an hour.

3.4
1 Output
2 lookout
3 downpour
4 outbreak
5 Lift-off
6 a break-in

Unit 4

4.1
1 There was a **worn-out** carpet on the stairs.
2 The newsletter has a list of **forthcoming** activities at the tennis club.
3 What's happened? You're looking very **downcast**!
4 Unlike her sister, Emily is very **outgoing**.
5 I find the cover of this novel very **off-putting**, don't you?
6 It doesn't matter what time of day it is, Polina always looks **tired out**. *Or* ... **worn out**.
7 We are not in the habit of going to such **overpriced** restaurants.
8 When you meet my boss I think you'll find her surprisingly **outspoken**. *Or* ... **outgoing**.

4.2 1 a **fold-up** chair 2 a **broken-down** car 3 a **built-in** oven 4 a **foldaway** bed

4.3 *Possible answers:*
1 An advantage of having a live-in nanny might be that the children look on her as one of the family; a disadvantage might be that the parents do not get much privacy.
2 A foldaway bed would be particularly useful in a small room, especially one that is also used for entertaining visitors.
3 A job requiring tact might not be suitable for a very outspoken person – a diplomat, for example, or a beautician.
4 You might want to give a watered-down version of something that happened to you to your parents if you think they might not like the whole truth.
5 A job in show business requires you to be outgoing – an actor, singer or TV presenter, for example.
6 A difficult social problem would tend to be ongoing – for example, the problem of poverty or of discrimination.
7 If you are having a meal in a restaurant, you might find it off-putting if someone at the next table talks very loudly.
8 You might think that meals, clothes or cosmetics are often overpriced.

4.4

broken-down	not working
candid	**outspoken**
continuing	**ongoing**
diluted	**watered-down**
downcast	miserable
dynamic	**go-ahead**
exhausted	**tired out**
extrovert	**outgoing**
forthcoming	future
obsolete	**outdated**
off-putting	repellent
shabby	**worn out**

Note that *worn out* can also mean exhausted.

4.5 *Possible answers:*

1 If the union doesn't accept our terms, what should we have as the position **that we will agree to if we cannot get our main aim**?
2 Clara always feels **ignored** / **lonely** when her brother's friends come round to play.
3 Julian is usually chatty but his sister is not very **talkative** / **communicative**.
4 You shouldn't get **so upset** / **in such a state** about every little thing.
5 Zack met me at the airport with arms **open wide ready to embrace** me.

Unit 5

5.1

1 *Collocation* means the way words combine with each other.
2 a, c and e
3 They are things that are written.
4 Because it will help you to be able to use them appropriately in your own speaking and writing.
5 You might want to note down:
whether it collocates with positive or negative things or both
whether it collocates with people or things as objects
whether it collocates with people or things as subjects
whether it collocates with particular types of situation

5.2

1 appropriate
2 appropriate
3 not appropriate – *hit on* is used about good ideas; in this context it would be better to say 'You can always rely on Joseph to **come up with an idea** that will never work.'
4 appropriate
5 not appropriate – though it would be appropriate to talk about the need to **keep in with your bank manager**

5.3

1 after
2 into; off
3 through
4 with
5 off
6 off / up
7 in with

5.4
1 Helena **sailed through** her driving test.
2 I've really **gone off** coffee.
3 The wind is **easing off/up** now. *Or* The wind has **eased off/up** now.
4 If I have a problem, I find a walk by the sea often helps me to **hit on** a solution.
5 Masses of people **streamed into** the shop as soon as it opened, hoping to find a bargain in the sale.
6 His argument is **riddled with** holes.

Unit 6

6.1

Dear Mr Janes,

Thank you for your letter of 23 May **complaining** about the bad service you experienced at this hotel. I promise you we will **investigate** the problem at once and **respond** to you as soon as possible. We always try to **achieve/meet** the highest standards of service, and if we have failed to **meet/achieve** those standards we will immediately seek to **remedy** the situation. Meanwhile we hope you will **continue** making Miromana Hotels your first choice for all your business and leisure travel.

Yours sincerely,

G. H. Logan (General Manager)

6.2
1 Will you **look after** Aunt Jessie while I go and get the children's supper ready?
2 He **went into** the subject in great detail in his lecture.
3 When the president died his son **took on** the title of Great Leader.
4 I like her. Do you think I should **ask her out**?
5 During the war he **went over to** the enemy side and was killed in action.
6 She **bought up** all the shares in the company last year.
7 The local newspaper **put out** a story about a strange animal seen in the city park.
8 I think I'll **call in on** my grandfather on the way home from work.
9 The deal **fell through** at the last minute.
10 I managed to **get by** on about €70 a day when I was travelling.

6.3

computers and technology	academic lectures/writing	money and business
back up, hack into, log in, print off, scroll down	base on, gloss over, put forward, sum up	bail out, carry forward, sell up, square up, take over, turn over

6.4
1 Despite his family's poverty, Alfie never **wants for anything**.
2 You must inform the police if you have evidence **which bears on** the case.
3 Jack will have to **call on** all his ingenuity to resolve the situation.
4 The president **ascribes** his party's victory **to** his leadership.
5 The manager will **attend to** your enquiry without delay.

Unit 7

7.1

Possible answers:

1. later than expected
2. They've risen.
3. aggressively
4. He wants to read the agenda and make sure it is correct. Perhaps also prepare what they are going to say.
5. more
6. go straight into the proposal without any planning
7. not pay any attention to them, not consider their proposal

7.2

1. It's not good for children to spend too much time **glued to** a screen.
2. Choosing a university course **boils down to** deciding what you want to do with your life.
3. I arrived at the stadium early and watched the other spectators **flooding in**.
4. Laura **dragged herself away from** the window and returned to her desk.
5. Sam was staring at Megan, **drinking in** every word she said.
6. George **brushed off** / **swept aside** all objections to his plan, saying they were unimportant.

7.3

1. stands by
2. soldier on
3. fished out
4. nosing around
5. eat into
6. brushed off or swept aside
7. struck out
8. sandwiched between

7.4

Possible answers:

1. If someone warms up an audience, they make it more receptive and friendly, more relaxed (perhaps by telling some jokes). Coldness in English equates with unfriendliness and warmth with friendliness. Warming up people and warming up food both have the idea of making something pleasanter.
2. If someone falls into a job, they get it very easily and without making any effort. So both falling into a hole and falling into a job have the idea of something happening by chance.
3. If you climb down in an argument, you admit that you were wrong. So both uses of climb down suggest moving back to the level of other people from a position in which you were separated from others.

Unit 8

8.1

1. the baby
2. get on like a house on fire
3. let off steam
4. to spite their face
5. take the sting out of something
6. run rings round somebody; go round in circles

8.2

1. off; nose; spite; face
2. put; roots
3. ran rings
4. sting; of
5. round; circles
6. throw; baby
7. get; house
8. letting off

8.3 After a year of travelling, I decided to ~~put~~ my act together and get a job. A friend who worked for a bank put in ~~some good words~~ for me. In fact he ~~pushed in~~ all the stops and arranged for me to have lunch with the CEO. I got ~~on the wrong feet~~ by saying I wasn't ready to ~~plant~~ down roots yet; I think they were looking for someone to make a long-term commitment. I should have kept quiet!

1 get
2 a good word
3 pulled out
4 off on the wrong foot
5 put

8.4
1 her heels in
2 for lost time
3 to the fact
4 his own
5 the heat
6 your mind

Unit 9

9.1
1 banging
2 floating
3 run
4 switched
5 ask
6 fly
7 lying
8 clowning

9.2
1 ask around
2 lying around/about
3 gets around/about
4 bosses; about/around
5 clowns around/about

9.3
1 lying/pottering/playing/clowning around/about; lying around/about; switched around
2 play/clown/run around/about; bossing us around/about; run around/about
3 work around
4 skirt around (Note that **skirt around** can also be used to describe physical movement, e.g. *We decided to **skirt around** the city centre to avoid the rush-hour traffic*.)
5 banging around/about; flying around/about. (Note that it would also be possible to say that *all sorts of rumours have been going around/about among the neighbours*.)

Over to you

Possible answers:

phrasal verb	meaning	example
crowd around	surround someone or something, standing close together	Please don't **crowd around** the desk. Stand in an orderly queue.
knock sth **about/around** / **knock about/around**	if people knock a ball about, they hit or kick it to each other for fun	We knocked a ball about in the park after work.
turn around	turn so that you are facing the opposite direction	I saw him walk up to the door, but then he hesitated, **turned around** and walked away again.
turn sth **around**	make something unsuccessful (e.g. a business) become successful	Paul has made a very successful career out of **turning** failing businesses **around**.
roll about/around	laugh a lot	Kathy is very funny. Her stories had us all **rolling around**.
blunder about/around	move in an awkward way (often because you can't see where you're going)	When the lights went off, we were all **blundering around** in the darkness.

Unit 10

10.1 1 Heidi Knight 2 Lucas Hind 3 Harry Irving 4 Oliver Reece 5 Mia Calvo

10.2 *Suggested answers:*

1 The computer system suddenly **went down** this morning, so we're doing everything manually at the moment.
2 I'm sorry I'm so irritable. Things have been **getting me down** lately.
3 Shall I **put you down (**on my list**)** to sponsor me for the charity walk?
4 This event will **go down** in history as the worst catastrophe this country has ever suffered.
5 The company had to **shut down** all their machines during the 24-hour strike at the factory.
6 The salesman **came down on the price**, and after that we even managed to **knock him down** by a further 10%.
7 Many everyday remedies for minor ailments have **come down to us** from our ancestors.

10.3

1 slam the phone down
2 have it put down (rather than *put it down*, since you would probably not do it yourself)
3 tie it down
4 getting you down
5 turn it down

10.4 1 a and c 2 b and c 3 a, b and c 4 b and c

Unit 11

11.1

1 cash in on
2 come in / cut in
3 pitch in
4 usher in
5 boxed in
6 lead-in
7 factor in
8 squash in
9 build in
10 set in

11.2

1 My new curtains are excellent – they don't **let** any light in.
2 Alba, can you **show** Mr Hill in as soon as he arrives, please?
3 Having the meeting on the 28th would **fit** in better with our plans than the 30th.
4 Our office in Buenos Aires has **brought** in a lot of new business this year.
5 When you are planning the course, make sure you **build** in enough free time.
6 It's rude to **cut** in when someone else is in the middle of speaking. (Note that come in does not fit as well in this context as it does not sound so abrupt and potentially rude as cut in.)
7 If everyone **pitches** in, we'll soon get the job done.
8 If I move up, then Rachel should be able to **squash** (**fit** is also possible here) in at the end of the bench.

11.3 1 squashed 2 fitted 3 pitched 4 set 5 let

11.4

1 **bring in** customers / profits / ~~a loss~~ / business
2 a **lead-in** to a discussion / ~~a bargain~~ / a lesson
3 a recession / rain / ~~a new product~~ **sets in**
4 **usher in** ~~a price increase~~ / a new era / changes

Unit 12

12.1
1 Eliza's father to Eliza's mother: Eliza's 18 now and should make her own decisions. I think we should **back off** and let her run her own life.
2 Newsreader: The prime minister has **shrugged off** leadership threats from within his party, saying that they are only rumours.
3 Mother to father: I think we should let the kids run round in the garden for a bit and **work off** some of their energy so that they sleep tonight.
4 Mother to Imogen: Imogen, you MUST pay your electricity bill. If you don't, they'll **cut you off** and you won't have any heating.
5 Louis to Callum: Oh no! Seth wants to come back with us to Nikita's house. He's such a drag! How can we **shake him off**?
6 Chairperson: I'd like to just **round off** the meeting by giving a vote of thanks to the committee for all their work this year.
7 The last 100 metres to the top of the hill just **finished me off**. I had to sit down and rest for an hour.
8 I don't want you in my room any more, so just **shove off**!

12.2 When I come home from work, I love to just kick ~~away~~ my shoes and relax for the evening. It's great to ~~let~~ off worrying about work and round ~~up~~ the day with a nice meal. If I ~~have off a couple of days~~ it's even better. I usually go off to our country cottage. I can just ~~light~~ off completely. I love it. I never stay there long, because after a while I feel a bit ~~stood~~ off from all my friends and social life back in the city.

off
1 leave
2 off
3 have a couple of days off
4 switch
5 cut

12.3

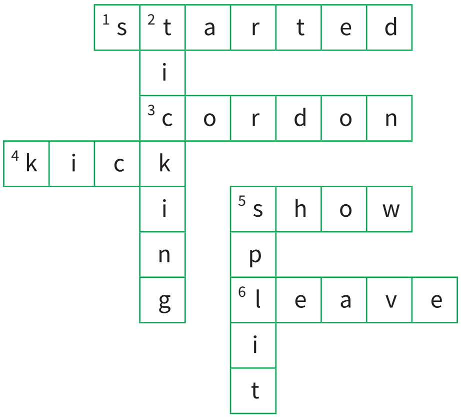

Unit 13

13.1 1 B 2 D 3 I 4 N 5 B 6 I 7 D

13.2 1 a or b 2 b, c or d 3 a, c or d

13.3
1 Try to **focus on** what is really important and to ignore what is not essential.
2 Now we've had a bit of a rest, it's time to **press on** again.
3 I'm **counting**/**depending**/**relying on** you to let me know when my talk has gone on for long enough.
4 Your grandmother will always **live on** in your memory.
5 This is a quiet neighbourhood where noisy behaviour is **frowned (up)on**.
6 After the first few pages of the book, I decided I couldn't be bothered to **read on**.
7 Please stop **harping/going/droning on** about Lena. Your relationship is over, so just forget her.
8 I am worried about my son's behaviour. He is so easily **led on** by his friends.

13.4
1 focus
2 spring
3 dwell
4 press
5 lead (Note that **egg on** has a similar meaning.)
6 frowned
7 depend
8 going/droning/harping

13.5 *Suggested answers:*
1 You can count/rely/depend on James.
2 Dad will ramble/drone on for hours about European history.
3 Many political reputations are hanging on / riding on the outcome of next week's election.
4 Josh never stops going on (and on) / harping on about the litter in the office car park. It irritates me.
5 While tidying my room, I happened on an old diary of mine from 2001.

Unit 14

14.1
1 She shared the apples out / shared out the apples among the four children.
2 He sorted things / the situation out. *Or* He sorted out the situation.
3 She picked out the best ones / picked the best ones out.
4 He kicked Sam out of the restaurant. (Note that **He threw Sam out of the restaurant** is also possible.)
5 It juts out over the terrace.

14.2
1 I don't have any money so you can **count** me **out** from the shopping trip.
2 I **shared** the mints **out** / **shared out** the mints among my friends in the car.
3 We need to **sort out** this mess about the misprinted tickets pretty soon.
4 He really **lashed out at** me when I suggested he'd got it wrong.
5 Look at those big rocks **jutting out** from the sea.
6 **Pick out** the good strawberries and leave the rotten ones in the box.

14.3
1 I opened the door and heard somebody **yell out** from the staircase below. (Note that (**shout out** / **cry out** / **scream out** are also possible.)
2 My position as regards the committee is that I **want out**.
3 He always **draws out** the discussion / **draws** the discussion **out** with arguments about political ideology.
4 When we got back to our campsite, the campfire had **gone out**.
5 **Spread** the leaflets **out** on the table.
6 The burglars **cleaned us out** (completely).

14.4 1 c 2 d 3 a 4 b

Unit 15

15.1
1 finish up or eat up
2 pep up/jazz up
3 shore up
4 pick them up
5 propped up
6 jazz it up
7 wrap up
8 lift up

15.2
1 stand
2 split
3 set
4 land
5 bought
6 show
7 blown
8 sticking

15.3 1 blow up 2 shore up 3 set up (Note that **fix up** is also possible.) 4 open up

Unit 16

16.1 1 c 2 e 3 d 4 a 5 b

16.2 1 Adriana 2 Jude 3 Mary 4 Leah 5 Jack

16.3
1 out
2 back
3 along (Note that **up** is also possible.)
4 in
5 back (Note that **off** is also possible.)
6 over
7 aside
8 up

16.4
1 You'd get far more done if you didn't fritter **away** so much time.
2 The children tried to spin their game **out** so they didn't have to go to bed.
3 Cameron might lose his job if he doesn't pull his **socks** up.
4 We must discuss what we need to do leading up **to** the opening of the new branch.
5 Let's try to **set** some time apart next month to discuss progress on the project.

16.5
1 We've had to **bring** the meeting **forward** to this Tuesday as Austin will be away next week.
2 Francesca always **drags out** any discussion. *Or* Francesca always **drags** any discussion **out**. (Note **draw out** is also possible.)
3 I think we should **space** our meetings **out** a bit more. *Or* I think we should **space out** our meetings a bit more.
4 I thought I had ages to prepare for my exams, but they have **crept up on** me in no time at all.
5 I think we should try to **eke out** the printing paper. Or I think we should try to **eke** the printing paper **out**.

Unit 17

17.1 1 h 2 f 3 i 4 b 5 c 6 a 7 d 8 e 9 g

17.2

1 Theodore puts the problems down to the government, but I attribute them **to** the general world economic situation.
2 To a large extent, how a person accounts for the problems in their lives seems to depend largely **on** their own parents' attitudes to difficult situations.
3 I believe the new legislation will contribute to a general improvement in the standard of living, but Ben thinks it will result **in** increased poverty for most people.
4 The desire for reform has come **out of** a general desire to improve the situation, but I suspect the proposed changes may rebound on the government.
5 The proposals are rooted in an appropriate awareness of the problems that exist, but I do not feel that what is proposed adds up **to** a coherent programme of action.

17.3

1 The school's rituals and traditions are **rooted in** its long history.
2 My mother **puts** the problem **down to** a decline in moral values.
3 How do you think the changes will **impact on** your business?
4 The economic recession inevitably **resulted in** increased unemployment.
5 How would you **account for** the recent increase in violent crime?
6 Joel's criticism of Erica may **rebound on** him now that she's his boss!
7 I do not feel that the writer's analysis of the problem **adds up**.
8 Some unforeseen problems have **come out of** the change in legislation.

17.4 *Author's answers:*

1 I'd put global warming largely down to increased air and road travel.
2 I think a dramatic change in social values has led to the current increase in violent crime in most societies.
3 I'd account for it by saying that teenage girls tend to be more inclined to work harder at school than teenage boys – though of course there are plenty of exceptions.
4 I'd attribute the success of social media sites to the fact that they are convenient, fast and efficient.
5 I'd point to the prevalence of materialistic attitudes as one main cause of social problems today.
6 My own interest in English stems from the fact that I had very good English teachers when I was at school.
7 I think that mobile phones have resulted in more communication between people – it's so much easier to keep in touch with friends and family.
8 For me the main thing that contributes to the difficulty of phrasal verbs is the fact that one verb – like, say, *make out* – can have so many different meanings.

Unit 18

18.1 1 b 2 c 3 d 4 a 5 b

18.2

1 reminds
2 conjure/stir/summon/call
3 flooding/coming
4 associate
5 coming/flooding
6 blocked
7 put
8 stick (Note that **stay** is also possible.)
9 store
10 conjure/summon/call

18.3 In each case the play on words depends on the literal meaning of the basic verb in the phrasal verb.

1 To stir up memories means to make memories, often unpleasant ones, appear in your mind. A cook stirs ingredients, e.g. the ingredients for a cake or batter for pancakes.
2 To conjure up memories means to make you remember things from the past. A magician traditionally conjures a rabbit out of a hat.
3 To call up memories means to evoke memories or make someone remember something. Another meaning of call up is to require young men to become soldiers.
4 If a memory sticks with you, then you don't forget it. Glue is used to stick something to something else. The first meaning of stick here is metaphorical and the second is literal.
5 If memories come flooding back, you suddenly remember a lot of things very clearly. When pipes burst – this typically happens if they freeze and then the ice melts – then there will be a flood.

18.4 *Author's answers:*

1 I associate my childhood with the colour green because I spent so much time playing in the garden at home.
2 The smell of lavender reminds me of my childhood because we had a lot of lavender growing in our garden.
3 The pop music of the 1970s always conjures up memories of my youth.
4 I would like to block out the memory of school dinners, particularly of the awful macaroni cheese we were forced to eat.
5 I think that music makes memories come back to me more powerfully, although smells can also be very potent.

Unit 19

19.1

1 If your currency bottoms out, then it will become expensive to buy things in dollars, or to travel to the USA. But more tourists might come to your country because it's cheaper for them. So you might be happy or unhappy depending on your circumstances.
2 sprouting or springing
3 True. See the left-hand page, section A.
4 You begin to feel less confident.
5 It becomes less strong.

19.2 1 opens 2 apart 3 on 4 up 5 breaks 6 out

19.3

1 When you**'ve finished with** the scissors, could you pass them to me? (Note the change to present perfect tense.)
2 They **wound up** the business in 2014 after a year of low sales.
3 OK, so who's **magicked** the bottle opener **away** / **magicked away** the bottle opener? It was here a minute ago!
4 We've had some setbacks but we'll **press on**.
5 I only **got up to** page 12 of the book before I got bored and stopped reading it.

19.4

1 Wind up means to finish/terminate something. It is also what you do to a non-electric clock or watch to make it work.
2 Sprout up means to suddenly appear. A Brussels sprout is also a vegetable.
3 Press on means to continue in a determined way. Dry cleaners also press clothes (remove creases by using an iron or a pressing machine).
4 Spring up means to appear suddenly. A trampoline has springs, which contract and expand, making it possible for a person to bounce up and down on it.
5 Training shoes are worn by athletes when running. To run out of money means to have no money left.

Unit 20

20.1

1 up
2 rage
3 around
4 out (Note **over** is also possible.)
5 up
6 off
7 back
8 off

20.2 There was a terrible bust-**up** at work today. The departmental manager came into the office in a terrible temper. She flew **at** her PA and when people tried to calm her down, she rounded **on** them. I don't know what had got into her. She pushes everyone **around*** a lot, but she's not normally quite so aggressive. I tried not to get dragged **into** it at first, but she started shouting really loudly at Jessica, so I stepped in to try to break things **up**.

* push over would mean literally push people onto the floor

Possible answers:

20.3

1 When I tried to enter the house, the dog flew at **me**.
2 No object required
3 They threatened to bump **him** off if he told anyone about the robbery.
4 Because she had learned some judo as a child, Lauren found it much easier to fight off **her attacker** / to fight **her attacker** off.
5 I was completely taken by surprise when someone suddenly came at **me** from behind.
6 After only ten seconds in the ring, Henry's opponent had knocked **him** out.

20.4

1 Paul tried to **drag me into** the argument, but I managed to stay out of it.
2 The old man thought the boys were trying to break into his house, so he **set his dog on them**.
3 The aim of the organisation is to **wipe out** cruelty to children.
4 Although he is small, James is strong and he quickly managed to **knock his attacker out**.
5 Uncle Ronnie can **flare up** (very quickly) if you say the wrong thing.
6 The witness saw the thief **come at** the woman just as she was opening her car door.
7 The robbers came running out of the bank, **pushing over** an old lady who was in their path.
8 Older people often find it harder to **fight off** colds and other infections than younger people do.

Unit 21

21.1

making noise	reducing noise
belt out	die down
boom out	trail off
blast out	keep down

21.2 1 trailed 2 belting 3 blasting 4 keep 5 boomed 6 died

21.3 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 c 8 c

21.4

1 You would not enjoy it: droning on means continuing for a long time in a boring, monotonous way.
2 True
3 up
4 away
5 ring out
6 came over

Unit 22

22.1 This party **stands** for equality for all.
We do not hesitate to **come** out strongly against any case of injustice.
We **stick** by our principles at all times and never **cave** in to threats or pressure from the opposition.
We **side** with the underdog and do not **defer** to those who are wealthy and powerful.

22.2
1 The runners were cheered on by the spectators as they headed for the finishing line.
2 You can rely on Tim to stick up for his little sister. *Or* You can rely on little Tim to stick up for his sister.
3 My grandfather swears by raw garlic as a way of protecting himself from catching colds.
4 My mother would never have tried bungee jumping if we hadn't egged her on.
5 She wanted to go to an all-night party but her mother wouldn't hear of it.
6 The discovery of gas in the North Sea buoyed up the British economy for some years. *Or* The discovery of gas in the North Sea for some years buoyed up the British economy.

22.3
1 stick
2 side
3 cheer
4 buoy

22.4
1 My preferred course of action would be to **go** with what Ivan has recommended.
2 He began his political life as a Conservative but crossed **over** to the Labour Party when he realised that he would be more likely to get a seat in Parliament that way.
3 correct
4 correct
5 I shall have to defer **to** your superior knowledge of the situation.
6 My mother **swears** by a daily spoonful of honey to keep healthy all year long.
7 Josh is not usually naughty himself but he is quick to egg others **on**.
8 correct

Unit 23

23.1
1 c
2 g
3 e
4 f
5 a
6 h
7 b
8 d

23.2
1 down
2 in
3 to
4 on
5 to
6 down
7 in

23.3
1 After two weeks of strikes, the company finally **gave in** and increased the overtime rate.
2 Our application for planning permission **went through** without any problems and so we can start building next month.
3 We've got a general agreement, but it will take some time to **hammer out** the details.
4 Chris always just **goes along with** what the manager says. He never thinks for himself.
5 It's going to be difficult to **nail down** all the details of the training day until we've chosen a date.
6 Charlie said he didn't like the new website design, but I think he'll **come round** when he sees the latest version.

23.4
1 a
2 b
3 c
4 c
5 b

Unit 24

24.1
1 grappling
2 rough
3 talk
4 bounce
5 reflect
6 occurred
7 cottoned
8 hit
9 break
10 piece
11 thrash

24.2
1 up; on
2 out
3 up; on
4 with
5 around
6 with
7 at
8 in

24.3 *Possible answers:*
1 bounce off, bat around, play with, hit on an idea
2 piece together
3 thrash something out, grapple with, break something down

Unit 25

25.1
1 The basic meaning is collecting up animals who have ranged over a wide area of land, e.g. a sheepdog rounds up sheep or a cowboy rounds up cattle. With a different meaning, round up (a number / a total) also refers to raising a number or total to the nearest whole number, e.g. The bill was £9.20, so we rounded it up to £10 and gave the waiter a £10 note. See Unit 26.
2 a cushion
3 pile up
4 looking for something important among things which are not so important
5 Some of the uses of 'up' do have similar meanings. In *prop up*, *pile up* and *stack up* the particle suggests up rather than down. In *gather up*, *round up* and *line up*, the particle suggests 'together'.

25.2 1 stack up 2 round up 3 separate out

25.3
1 up
2 away
3 among
4 towards
5 up
6 up

25.4 *Possible answers:*
1 You would **fix up** a meeting.
2 They are required to **space out** the desks.
3 You might put a book under the short leg to **prop up** the table.
4 You might need to **separate out** paper, glass, food waste, etc. into different containers.
5 The photographer usually **lines** the pupils **up** before taking a school photo.
6 A sofa could **double up as** a bed if someone stays over.
7 You **gather** all the papers **up** and then throw or tidy them away.
8 You might agree to wear something distinctive so you will **know** each other **from** all the other people in the café.
9 Could you **see about** decorating the room, perhaps, while I get the food prepared?
10 It might be sensible to **sift through** the papers first to ensure that nothing important is thrown away.

Unit 26

26.1
1 The total cost of our holiday amounted **to** nearly £500.
2 The bill came to £22.20 each, so we rounded it **up** to £25 to include a tip.
3 Helena has **put** on a lot of weight recently.
4 It will take Joe some time to build **up** his strength again after such a long illness.
5 The college hoped that the advert would push **up** enrolments for its new course.
6 The new fertiliser claims to **bump** up agricultural yields considerably.

26.2 1 e 2 b 3 a 4 c 5 f 6 d

26.3
1 The new manager intends to cut costs by making the business smaller in some way – very possibly by sacking some staff.
2 It was a good place for a picnic because there were fewer trees there, so there might have been a bit of sunlight, more space to sit down, etc.
3 The number of hits on the website in June must have been much the same as the number of hits in May.

4 Young people are now clearly less interested in politics than they used to be.
5 The speaker seems reasonably happy about Joseph and what he does at home in that Joseph seems to do more than his share of the gardening even if he does less than his share of the housework.

26.4
1 knock down
2 fall off / tail off
3 amount to
4 tail(ing) off / fall(ing) off
5 slimming down
6 push up / build up
7 put on
8 adds up

Unit 27

27.1
1 Some people were going to buy our flat, but at the last moment the sale **fell through**.
2 Steve **prides** himself **on** his organisational skills.
3 The company was able to **capitalise on** the unusually wet weather by promoting its inexpensive umbrellas.
4 The England team lost the trophy in 2014 but **won** it **back** the following year.
5 It's been a difficult year for us, but we have **come out** of it with renewed vigour.
6 Leila **succeeded in** passing her driving test at her first attempt.
7 Hassan **lost out** to his brother in the finals of the tennis tournament.
8 They had a long battle in court to prove their innocence, but finally they **won through**.

27.2
1 doomed
2 carry
3 pack
4 sail
5 rise
6 get
7 pulled
8 succeeded

27.3 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 b

27.4 Oliver has always wanted to become an engineer, but it was quite difficult for him to get a place at college. He didn't get in at his first attempt, losing **out** to applicants with better exam grades. However, at his second try he succeeded **in winning** a place. He then sailed **through** all his first-year exams but failed some of his exams in the second year, as he started spending a lot of time on the rugby pitch, playing for the college first team, rather than in the library. Then his team fell **behind** in the college league after three games, so he wasn't too happy and did even less work, and as a result he failed three exams. However, he's always prided himself **on** being able to revise very efficiently when he's really under pressure, and in the third year he did enough to pull himself **through**. His friends were amazed that he managed to carry it **off**, as they were sure he could not have packed **in** enough study in such a short time to get **through** the exams. But Oliver knew that he had only just got **by**/**through** and he resolved to organise his life much better after leaving college.

Unit 28

28.1
1 clear
2 hanging
3 break
4 landed
5 walk
6 spill
7 caught
8 smooth
9 resort
10 make

28.2
1 When the doctors examined the dead man, they found his body was **riddled with** disease.
2 I just **grasped at** the first opportunity to get out of my boring job and do something more exciting. I wasn't prepared to just **live with** it / **resign myself to** it; I had to make a change.
3 I **fell back on** / **had to resort to** my knowledge of map reading from my days as a scout to help us find a way out of the valley.
4 I'm sorry, I've **botched things up** and caused a lot of problems for everyone.
5 A healthy diet and plenty of exercise is the best way to **safeguard against** heart disease.
6 His life is difficult. His parents died last year when he was only 16. Now he just has to **bear up** and try to carry on as best he can.
7 I'm afraid we just have to **resign ourselves to** the fact that we are going to have to sell the house.
8 She tried very hard to **clear up** / **iron out** the misunderstandings between the two groups.

Unit 29

29.1
1 toy with something
2 reason with someone
3 mull something over
4 decide on something / work something out
5 do someone out of something
6 size up someone or something
7 tie someone down
8 single someone out

29.2
1 You need a coin.
2 No, they haven't.
3 A drum is a musical instrument that is beaten. In the past the drummer in an army used to play rousing military music to encourage soldiers to fight, and this may be the origin of drum up meaning attract support or business.
4 It took them some time to arrive at that decision – often they were originally against the idea and/or they had to be persuaded to it.

29.3
1 work; out
2 single; out
3 push; through
4 tie; down
5 arrive at
6 drum up
7 play on
8 toss for
9 mull; over
10 playing; off against

29.4
1 Everyone is trying to dissuade me from taking the job, but I'm tending **towards** accepting it.
2 You'll need to take time to **size** up the situation before you decide what to do.

3 Wicked Uncle Fred succeeded in **doing** his brother out of his rightful inheritance.
4 correct
5 It took Lily ages to get her father to **come** round to the idea of her training as a bus driver.
6 correct
7 The advert plays **on** people's desire to appear young and attractive.
8 I don't want to do the washing-up either. Get a coin and we'll **toss for** it.

Unit 30

30.1
1 Go for it!
2 Grow up!
3 Go on!
4 Come off it! / Come on!
5 Keep it up!
6 Wake up!
7 Dream on!

30.2
1 Roll
2 hang
3 Drink
4 ahead
5 Shut
6 go
7 eat
8 take

30.3
1 Go easy on them!
2 Calm down!
3 Get off!
4 Watch out!
5 Hurry up!
6 Hold on!

Unit 31

31.1
1 fling yourself into something
2 step aside, pack something in, get off
3 ease off, coast along
4 slog away, beaver away, plug away, knuckle down
5 beaver away (a beaver is an animal with sharp teeth and a large flat tail – it lives in a dam which it builds across a river)
6 farm out and get bogged down (a bog is a piece of very wet land – if you step in a bog, it can be easy to get stuck there so that you cannot move out)

31.2
1 Louise always **flings herself into** her work.
2 I really think that it is time you **knuckled down** to your studies.
3 As a research scientist, you just have to keep **plugging away** at your experiments and eventually you'll get results.
4 If this morning's meeting goes smoothly, I should be able to **get off** by 1 p.m.
5 The meeting was going well until we got **bogged down in** the details of the sales conference party.
6 I'm not sure exactly what I'm going to say in my speech, but I'm sure I'll be able to **cobble something together** by tomorrow morning.
7 There comes a time when it is best for an older manager to **step aside** and let a younger person take over.
8 I always say that if you start a job, you should **see it through**.

31.3 I'd hate a job where I could just coast **along** without needing to think about what I was doing. I'd far rather keep busy and really don't mind how much I have to slog **away** each day. I'd soon pack **in** any job that didn't keep me working hard. I fling myself **into** everything I do. Even when I was at school, I used to beaver **away** at my homework as soon as I got home from school. My sister certainly never used to knuckle **down to** work in the way I did.

31.4
1 I can't stand the sight of blood, so I'm not really **cut out for** nursing.
2 If you hate your job so much, why don't you just **hand in** your notice?
3 When several workers were unfairly dismissed, the trade union official decided it was time to **call everyone**/**people out** on strike.
4 As a PA I spend most of my time **running round** after my boss.
5 We've had a very busy few months at work but things are beginning to **ease off** now.
6 Liam is very good at his job, so I can't understand why he always gets **passed over (for promotion)** while less able people get promoted.
7 Our company has started doing a lot of outsourcing, which means that we **farm out** jobs that we previously used to do ourselves.
8 Ever since she was a child she has wanted to **go in** to medicine.

Unit 32

32.1 1 d 2 c 3 e 4 a 5 b

32.2
1 through
2 through; through
3 off
4 off
5 behind
6 towards
7 across
8 against

32.3 *Suggested answers:*
1 As each person arrived she (asked their name and) **ticked**/**checked them off** on her list.
2 She picked up her favourite novel and **buried herself in** it.
3 He decided to **major in** economics (for his degree).
4 His tutor **moved him up** to a higher class.
5 What sort of grades do you need to **get into** university in your country?
6 I applied to Oxford University but I didn't **get in**.

32.4 *Possible answers:*
1 What would you like to do when you leave/finish school?
2 Why did you give up / stop studying French/law (or the name of any other subject)?
3 Did your sister finish/complete her degree/course?
4 Do you fancy going to see a film this evening? (Or anything else suggesting a leisure activity. Note that **snowed under** is an informal way of saying that you have a huge amount of work to do.)

32.5 *Possible answers:*
1 I usually sailed through my exams – apart from maths!
2 I fell behind with my work in my final year at school when I broke my leg badly playing football.

3 Yes, teachers often used to mark me down for bad handwriting. I used to think this was really unfair and that they should just think about the content of my work. However, now I am a teacher and have to mark badly written work, I understand why they marked me down!

4 In the UK, taking part in extra-curricular activities, such as sport or music, having work experience and good references, showing you have good organisational or leadership skills, possibly also having good contacts can count towards getting into some universities.

Unit 33

33.1

1 Zeyneb's experiments were mostly **carried out** in the 19th century using much less sophisticated equipment than is available today.

2 This theory **draws on** research from several well-known scientists.

3 I thought we could read Hayder's research for the seminar tomorrow, but my tutor **pointed out** that the original research paper is over 700 pages long!

4 Alexander Fleming didn't **set out** to discover penicillin when he started experimenting with bacteria, but it was one of the most important discoveries of its time.

5 He spoke for 50 minutes and then **finished off** the lecture with a question and answer session.

6 Firstly, I'd like to **start with** an introduction to the subject of quantum physics, before moving on to some key definitions.

7 If we **allow for** variations caused by weather conditions, the results are broadly in line with our predictions.

33.2

1 together
2 up
3 jot down
4 type up
5 sketch out
6 Think through
7 weigh up
8 ended up
9 go over
10 follow up

33.3

Suggested answers:

1 This morning we're going to **look at** Maslow's 'Hierarchy of Needs'.

2 The lecturer **pointed out** that this research is still in its very early stages.

3 **To start with**, I want to talk about the background to the research.

4 In order to **get the most out of** the seminar, it's a good idea to do the suggested reading beforehand.

5 Can I borrow your lecture notes? I didn't **get down** the last few points.

6 Don't worry about writing every word; just **jot down** the key points.

7 For next week's seminar, I'd like you all to **look into** one aspect of this theory.

8 I'd like to **round off** the lecture today with a short video.

33.4

1 The biology department needs undergraduates to help carry **out** research on plant cells over the summer, and I'm going to apply.

2 The department has just received some funding to look **at/into** the links between diet and certain types of cancer.

3 He spent most of the summer working on his thesis but ended **up** having to change it when some new research came out.

4 The discussion we had last week brought **up** some very interesting questions about US foreign policy in the 1950s.

5 As you read **up** on the subject for your essay, don't forget to make a note of useful sources as you go.

6 A group of engineering students from Bristol have set **out** to prove the strength of plastic by building the largest Lego structure in the world.

Unit 34

34.1 1 to 2 to 3 from 4 to 5 of 6 up 7 on 8 at

34.2 *Possible answers:*

1 The research team **consists of** two Americans, two Russians and a Swede.
2 Immigrants to the UK have to **contend with** a whole range of problems.
3 The headteacher would like to **interest** more pupils **in** studying maths at university.
4 The examinations board i**nsists on** its instructions being followed to the letter.
5 It is essential that society should **invest in** the education of its future citizens.
6 The change in the law **resulted in** a more efficient welfare system.
7 The government is keen to **improve on** the country's system of transportation. (Note that it is also possible to say to improve the country's system of transportation without any preposition. Adding *on* makes the writing a little more formal and also suggests that the system of transportation is already reasonably good.)
8 The writer's philosophy is **founded on** a firm belief in socialist principles.
9 Some critics have **objected to** the poet's occasionally coarse use of English.

34.3 What best **sums the present situation up** – give examples / quotes.

34.4

1 The teaching materials will **cater for** historians as well as economists.
2 The recent problems in the company are bound to **detract from** its reputation.
3 The policy of clearing the hillsides of trees appears to have **resulted in** an increased danger of flooding.
4 The football team **consists of** three players from France, one from Sweden and two from Russia.
5 Many people **objected to** being moved from their houses to high-rise flats.
6 Being **deprived of** your freedom is a very difficult punishment to endure.
7 In her article, the writer frequently **refers to** a research study carried out in Canada in 2015.
8 The book is **aimed at** undergraduate students who have little previous knowledge of the subject.
9 For me, this song **sums up** the atmosphere in rural England in the 1980s. (Note that *up* would not be put after the object in a sentence like this becuse the object is very long.)
10 Much of the book is **devoted to** the writer's experiences in the United States.

Over to you

Possible answer:

Soviet education was **founded on** the belief that all children could succeed given the right support. The school system was **based on** the teachings of Marx and Lenin, and it **aimed at** providing the best education possible for all pupils regardless of their social background. It must be remembered that, at the beginning, Soviet education had many problems to **contend with**. As well as widespread illiteracy and a low level of resources, there were plenty of people who **objected to** the new Soviet regime, saying that citizens were being **deprived of** basic freedoms. Although many people are critical of other aspects of Soviet society, it cannot be denied, however, that the authorities **invested** a great deal **in** the education system. This **catered** well **for** Soviet youth, most of whom **profited from** the education they received. Teachers were respected professionals who **devoted** themselves **to** their pupils, doing all they could to **interest** them **in** their lessons and **insisting on** high standards in the classroom. To summarise, if we **refer to** most contemporary accounts of the Soviet education process, we find that it **resulted in** a well-educated population.

Unit 35

35.1

1 headed
2 turned
3 set
4 look
5 deal
6 breaking
7 brought
8 aimed
9 buy
10 firmed
11 turning
12 brought

35.2

1 Our business has had lots of success in Europe, but now we'd like to break into **the USA**.
2 Have you heard? Latifa has been asked to head up **the new department**.
3 Arsenal has signed up **a young Brazilian footballer**. *Or* Arsenal has signed **a young Brazilian footballer** up.
4 Her father made his fortune by dealing in **modern art**.
5 Get your people to call my people to firm up **arrangements**. (Note that 'Get your people to call my people to firm arrangements up' is also possible, though less frequent. We are more likely to use this structure when we are saying a time afterwards, e.g. We'll firm the arrangements up next week.)
6 The new factory is already turning out **10,000 pairs of shoes** a week. *Or* The new factory is already turning **10,000 pairs of shoes** out a week.
7 The Alpha model is aimed at **the lower end of the market**.
8 The company is planning to bring out **a new sports car** soon. *Or* The company is planning to bring **a new sports car** out soon.

(Note that when the object phrase is quite long, e.g. in 3 and 6, the phrasal verb is more likely to be kept together rather than separated.)

35.3

Possible answers:

We must **set up** a meeting early in the New Year. [make arrangements for]
Can you help me **set up** the apparatus for the experiment? [get the equipment ready]
A good breakfast **sets** you **up** for the whole day. [prepares you]

Someone **broke into** my car last night and stole the radio. [forcibly entered]
When James caught sight of the bus approaching, he b**roke into** a run. [started]
I don't want to **break into** my savings unless I really have to. [start using]

The government is hoping to **bring in** some new legislation relating to education. [introduce]
When you're writing your essay, try to **bring in** some good phrasal verbs. [include]
They **brought in** a consultancy firm to help sort out the business. [hired/involved]

That blue dress **brings out** the colour of your eyes. [makes more noticeable]
Her new friends have certainly succeeded in **bringing** her **out** of herself. [helping her to behave in a more confident, less shy way]
I think my new face wash is **bringing** me **out** in spots. [causing spots to appear on my skin]

A lot of people **turned out** to the concert. [came to]
It **turned out** that he had known the truth all the time. [happened]
His father **turned** him **out** when he heard what he'd done. [made him leave home]

Unit 36

36.1

1 run through, gobble up, set back, clean out, roll in
2 put by, put aside, pay in
3 work off, square up
4 a) square up b) bail out c) clean out/cough up d) gobble up
5 rent out

36.2

1 bail
2 forward
3 cleaned
4 put
5 up
6 square
7 renting
8 pay
9 back

36.3

1 c – **off** my student debts.
2 g – **back** all our profits into the business.
3 h – **aside**/**by** each month for a rainy day.
4 f – **up** enough money for me to buy a car.
5 b – **into** some money on your gran's death.
6 a – **back** more than I had anticipated.
7 d – **into** my savings for as long as I can.
8 e – **through** enormous sums of money.

36.4

Possible answers:

1 I never had much money when I was a student but I managed to **live (spending as little as possible)** somehow.
2 If everyone **contributes**, then we should be able to afford a nice leaving present for Beth.
3 Rashid's **been receiving large quantities of** money ever since he had that brilliant idea for a website.
4 At the bakery it was Amanda's job to **count the money taken by the shop** at the end of every day.
5 Jason **risked**/**gambled** a ridiculous amount **of money on** a horse race and, needless to say, he lost it all.

36.5

Possible answers:

1 It probably set me back about €1,000.
2 They put money aside for a big expense such as a car, a house, a holiday or for a rainy day, i.e. when they might need money unexpectedly.
3 A car typically gobbles up money because you have to pay for petrol, repairs, taxes, etc.
4 I think it's worth breaking into savings for a really good holiday.
5 I'd probably ask my parents or my brother to bail me out if I had financial problems.

Unit 37

37.1

1 clearing away
2 pushing; to
3 blocking up
4 plumping up
5 pulling up
6 mopping up

37.2

1 You put them away.
2 You wash them down.
3 You mop it up.
4 You should chuck them away or put them out in the rubbish (in the recycling bin, of course).
5 You might put a shelf up / put up a shelf / put some shelves up / put up some shelves.
6 You'd block up the hole / block the hole up.

37.3

1 e 2 g 3 d 4 b 5 f 6 h 7 a 8 c

37.4

Possible answers:

1 I didn't hear you come in because I'd **got the TV** / **radio** / **my music on** rather loud.
2 My flatmate tends to make a mess when she's cooking and leaves me to **clean** / **clear up after** her.

3 When you go to bed, please don't forget to **lock up** / **put the rubbish out**.
4 The bookcase was too big for our new flat, so we had to **part with it** / **chuck it away**.
5 Erica is untidy. There are always lots of things **cluttering up** her room.
6 Our hall hasn't been decorated for years – it's time we **did**/**smartened it up**.
7 Living in a student hostel was odd for Khalifa at first, but he soon **settled in**.
8 If I lay the table, you can **clear away**/**clear up** after the meal.
9 You'll make the sofa look more comfortable if you **plump up the cushions**.
10 It took me all day to **clear up after** those wild, crazy kids and get the place **straightened up** again.

Unit 38

38.1
1 trousers
2 trousers, a dress, a skirt
3 unzip
4 a plant, perhaps
5 a coat, a skirt, a dress
6 a) making them looser b) making them tighter
7 fancy dress

38.2 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 d 7 c 8 b

38.3
1 We were surprised when we arrived at the party because the host was wearing a kind of Superman **getup** with a mask, cape and blue bodysuit.
2 My ten-year-old daughter loves getting **dressed up** in my dresses and high-heeled shoes.
3 Now that I'm pregnant I can't **get into** any of my clothes.
4 Those trousers look a little tight around the waist. Shall I **let them out** a bit for you?
5 (Father to child) You'd better **zip** your jacket **up**. It's cold outside. *Or* You'd better **zip up** your jacket ...

38.4 *Possible answers:*
1 from older brothers or sisters or cousins
2 Once I went out with one black shoe on and one brown shoe on.
3 I'm afraid I have, especially in the spring as I often seem to put on weight in the winter.
4 It depends, but I'm probably more inclined to pull on the first thing I find.
5 I'd get them taken up because I'm not much good at sewing myself.
6 Yes, I have. Once I dressed up as a woman from the Middle Ages and once I dressed up as a character from a Chekhov play.

Unit 39

39.1
1 Alex: No, but I'**ve heard of her**.
2 Anna: I wasn't. They've been **going out together** for two years.
3 Will: Yeah, he was **flirting with her** all evening.
4 Katie: No. I tried to **strike up** a conversation with him, but he wasn't very friendly.
5 Andrew: Yes, I **warmed to him** straight away in fact. He's very nice.
6 Amber: Yes, you could say it was tennis that **brought us together**.

39.2
1 I've never met Antonia Goff, but I know **of** her because Charles works with her.
2 I had an email last month from Doninic, but I haven't heard **from** him since then.
3 I think Joe is cheating **on** me. Somebody saw him out with another girl.
4 Mrs Butler fusses ever so much **over** her two sons, even though they're adults.
5 Daria spent all evening flirting **with** her friend's brother.

6 I’m afraid my son is getting mixed up **with** some bad company at university.
7 Majid struck **up** a conversation with the person sitting next to him, and the flight passed quickly.
8 Rosa told me about your bust-**up** with Sebastian.

39.3
1 bad
2 c
3 It spoils or damages their relationship.
4 b
5 butter them up
6 c
7 an undesirable one
8 Both are possible.

Unit 40

40.1
1 screwed
2 toughen
3 getting
4 bored
5 had
6 outspoken
7 grown
8 descend

40.2
1 across; out
2 through
3 on; for
4 up
5 out

Unit 41

41.1
1 brimming
2 summon
3 perk
4 give
5 hankering
6 work
7 gone
8 snap
9 loosened

41.2
1 choke back or fight back
2 come over
3 bowl over
4 shake up
5 run away with
6 feel up to

41.3
1 choke back or fight back
2 bowled over
3 hanker after/for
4 brim with

41.4
1 Harvey
2 Felix
3 Keira
4 Sofia
5 Hannah
6 Aaron
7 Joel
8 Poppy

41.5
1 Layla let it all **spill out** / her feelings **spill out**.
2 Grandma isn’t **feeling up to** a long flight.
3 We must not allow our feelings to **run away with us**.
4 You mustn’t **give in to** those feelings of insecurity.
5 A feeling of tiredness suddenly **came over everyone**.
6 Our sympathies **go out** to all the victims of the disaster.

Unit 42

42.1
1 deal; move
2 letdown
3 shoot
4 passing
5 rolled

42.2
1 That they have become very involved in bird-watching and do it a lot.
2 What you did.
3 Members of the family would all come to one place and meet each other socially.
4 Just spend time together doing nothing special.
5 (b) go out with you and pay for you. *Take someone out* can mean to kill them in a military context, of war etc. If you go with someone to show them the way out of a building, *you show them out*.

1 Callum
2 Ivy
3 Jessica
4 Thomas
5 Hessa
6 Ronnie
7 Lara
8 Amy

Unit 43

43.1
1 Patient: I I think I've **picked up** a chest infection. I'm coughing and wheezing a lot.
2 Patient: Well, **I broke out in a rash** on my neck about a week ago.
3 Patient: Well, I had an ear infection about a month ago. It seemed to **clear up** when I took the antibiotics you gave me but now it's **flared up** again.
4 Patient: Well, OK, but my nose is **bunged-up** all the time. Can you give me something for it?
5 Patient: Well, I sprained my ankle a week ago, but the swelling hasn't **gone down** and it's still painful.
6 Patient: Well, I just feel absolutely **tired out** / **worn out** / **wiped out** / **done in** all the time. I have no energy at all.

43.2
1 Natasha
2 Grace
3 Daniel
4 Bethany
5 Harry
6 Elliot
7 William
8 Teddy

43.3 1 e 2 c 3 a 4 f 5 g 6 d 7 b

Unit 44

44.1 1 d 2 a 3 e 4 f 5 b 6 c

44.2 *Possible answers:*
1 You need to loosen up / warm up.
2 It may take you some time to thaw out.
3 You have to pick yourself up.
4 You turn around (or **swing around** perhaps if you do it very quickly).
5 They tense up.
6 They waste away.
7 You may double up (in pain).

44.3 I'm rather worried about my neighbour. I saw her the other day in the garden and she was doubled **up** in pain. She also looks as if she is wasting **away**. I asked her about it and she said she was just trying to lose some weight, but she clearly didn't like my talking about it and I could sense her tensing **up**. I think she's probably been doing far too much exercise. She spends hours outside bending **down** to touch the ground or spreading **out** her arms and swinging them in circles. I can see that she's in pain and I long to tell her to relax a bit.

44.4
1 You must be freezing – do come inside and **thaw out**.
2 Look at me – now **turn round/around**.
3 Their daughter was (lying) **curled up** on her bed with her thumb in her mouth.
4 He **stuck** his arm **out** of the window and waved at us.
5 If you don't eat more, you'll **waste away**.
6 The stand-up comic was so good that we spent the evening **doubled up** (laughing).

44.5 In each case the play on words depends on another meaning of the base verb.
1 Double means two or twice and obviously there are two twins.
2 The noun waste means rubbish.
3 Tense is a grammatical term which you are certainly familiar with as a student of English.
4 A taxi driver picks people up to drive them somewhere.

Unit 45

45.1
1 It's so boring listening to Uncle Ed **holding forth/going on at us** about the problem with the youth of today.
2 I'll try to **engage** your father **in** conversation so he won't notice you leaving.
3 I wish my parents would stop **going on at** me all the time.
4 OK, before everyone starts working, I'd like to quickly **run through** the instructions (again).
5 The personnel manager **glossed over** salary progression during our interview.

45.2
1 They asked her a lot of questions.
2 He would not have been pleased with his performance.
3 He didn't have to stop and think. He spoke very quickly, almost without pausing for breath.
4 He spoke less after Bobby arrived.
5 It was difficult for the detective to get the boy to tell her the truth.
6 He wanted to find out if the editor thought it would be a good idea to write the kind of article he had in mind.
7 It's dreadful because he just talks without listening to others or even giving them much chance to speak.
8 She told them a little about it but did not give them too many details, probably in case it worried them.

45.3
1 put
2 on
3 led
4 sound
5 out
6 bombarded
7 clammed
8 blurted

45.4
1 Finn was so rude – he **interrupted** the conversation I was having with Faye about her new job and started to ask her questions about her daughter.
2 I don't know how you'll manage to **give a reason for (make it appear that it was not your fault)** the scratch on your mother's car.
3 I wish he'd stop **talking endlessly about** the weather – it's so boring.

Unit 46

46.1
1 in on
2 away
3 on
4 into; up
5 up on

46.2
1 piled
2 tripped
3 push
4 stand
5 clear
6 stumbled
7 zipping
8 double

46.3
1 Draw back means to move away because you are surprised or afraid, and artists 'draw' pictures.
2 Zip along means to move very quickly, and the phrasal verb for fastening a jacket which has a zip is 'zip up'.
3 Squash up means to move closer together in order to make space for someone else, and 'squash' can also be a kind of juice drink.
4 Double back means to turn and go back in the direction you came from; identical twins could be called 'doubles'.
5 Stole is also the past tense of 'steal' meaning to take something without the owner's permission. The robbers were probably stealing money from the bank.

46.4
1 hang 2 drop 3 draw 4 double

Possible sentences:
1 I think we should **hang back** and let the family guests go into the reception first.
2 I was walking with my sister and chatting to her, but then I **dropped back** to talk with my grandfather, who was a bit behind everyone else.
3 We approached the man to help him but then **drew back** as he looked very aggressive.
4 As the mist came down, we decided it would be best to **double back** and abandon the walk.

Unit 47

47.1
1 feed on
2 prey on
3 die out
4 eat away at
5 washing away
6 dry up
7 pull down
8 break; off
9 pulling up
10 send out
11 offshoots
12 cutting down (Note **chopping down** is also possible.)
13 digging up

47.2
1 It would freeze over.
2 It might dry up.
3 overcast
4 Because the tide comes in and goes out.
5 Dogs might help them to flush the robbers out.

47.3
1 As night fell, the stars **came out**.
2 The sun **went in** and the temperature fell suddenly.
3 Cats (both large and small) **pick up** their young with their teeth to move them around.
4 It was lovely and sunny this morning but now the sky is **overcast** / it is **overcast**.
5 Many wild animals and plants are on the verge of **dying out**.

47.4
1 moved in
2 chased; out
3 taken over
4 bring up
5 watching over
6 fend for

Unit 48

48.1 1 off 2 down 3 down

48.2 How you mark these sentences will in some cases be a matter of personal preference.

1 Your pipes at home freeze up while you are on a skiing holiday.
☹ You are likely to be unhappy about this as pipes that freeze up will probably later burst and cause a lot of damage.
2 You receive a letter that makes your face cloud over.
☹ You are likely to be unhappy.
3 You are walking by the sea when fog rolls in.
☹ Most people probably don't like it when it becomes foggy because it spoils the view, but some people may enjoy it.
4 You can hear the rain beating down outside as you sit by a big log fire.
☺ You are probably happy because you are warm and cosy when it is wet outside, but you may feel unhappy if – say – you know you have to go out later on.
5 You are on a long country walk and the rain holds off.
☺ You are probably happy – unless you are the kind of person who enjoys rain.
6 You have to give a speech at a friend's wedding and you freeze up.
☹ You are unhappy because you have become too nervous or anxious to give your speech.
7 You breeze through an important exam.
☺ You are happy because you very easily manage to do well in the exam.
8 You storm out of a meeting.
☹ You are likely to be unhappy because you left the meeting in an angry manner.
9 A group of friends start to freeze you out.
☹ You are likely to be unhappy because your friends seem to want to exclude you from their group.
10 You are sitting on the beach and the sun is beating down.
☺ Most people probably like this, but I for one don't like sitting in very hot direct sunshine.

48.3 *Possible answers:*
1 The sun is breaking through the clouds.
2 The rain is pelting down (and that person will get very wet).
3 The windscreen has fogged/misted up.
4 The lock has frozen up.
5 The sun is beating down.
6 The smoke from the chimney is blotting out the sun.

48.4 *Possible answers:*
1 breezed in (as if nothing had happened)
2 misting over
3 mist/fog/steam up

4 break through (the clouds)
5 holds off
6 rolling in (from the sea/hills/moors)
7 breeze through (it)
8 freeze up

Unit 49

49.1
1 set
2 stretches/is stretched
3 steeped
4 bursting
5 soaking
6 dotted
7 off
8 run-down
9 boarded-up
10 onto
11 in
12 reduced
13 off
14 off
15 up

49.2
1 New housing developments are encroaching **on** the countryside on the edge of town.
2 Those climbing red roses really set that old white cottage **off**, don’t they? *Or* ... set **off** that old white cottage, don't they?
3 The architects made a large-scale mock-**up** of the new shopping centre.
4 The plain lines of the marble walls are **off**set by the ornate windows; together they produce a harmonious building.
5 This plan shows how the area will be **laid** out when it is redeveloped.
6 Signs have gone **up** round the area to be demolished warning the public to keep away.
7 The 1990s buildings do not blend **in** very well with the older houses around them.
8 The whole area is steeped **in** history.

49.3
Possible answers:
1 I think the Palace of Congresses in the Kremlin in Moscow blends in very well with the cathedrals and other old buildings there.
2 I live in Cambridge and the old city centre is often bursting with tourists, particularly in summer.
3 Cambridge, particularly the ancient university there, could certainly be said to be steeped in tradition.
4 My house backs onto a primary school.

Unit 50

50.1
1 picked 2 cut 3 change 4 rev 5 pull

50.2
Possible answers:
1 The police officer is **flagging a car down / flagging down a car**.
2 The driver is **picking up a hitchhiker / picking a hitchhiker up**.
3 The aeroplanes are **stacked up over an airport**.
4 The tyre has **blown out**.
5 The car is **branching off the main road**.
6 The car has been **blocked in**.

50.3
1 The police flagged down a lorry and found ten stowaways on board.
2 I was woken by a car revving up outside my bedroom window.
3 That car nearly caused an accident by cutting in on us.
4 I was very frightened when my tyre blew out on the motorway.

50.4
1 stow away
2 knocked over
5 cast away
6 branches off

3 blocked; in
4 pulled; over / flagged; down
7 pick; up
8 stacked up

Over to you

Author's answer:

I had a wonderful holiday once driving down the Rhone Valley with a friend and her husband. We **set off** from Switzerland, where they were living at the time, in their British car which had the steering wheel on the right-hand side. The problem was that her husband, the only driver among us, couldn't stand having another car in front of him. If a car **picked up** enough speed to pass us, he insisted on immediately **pulling out** to overtake it. Yet, because he was on the right-hand side of the car, he didn't have a clear view of the road ahead, so he'd **cut in** ahead of the car he'd overtaken in an alarming way to avoid crashing into the oncoming traffic. In the end we were **flagged down** by a policeman, who **told** him **off** for driving in such a dangerous way. Although we saw some great places, I was quite relieved when we **got back** to Switzerland without having had any serious accidents.

Unit 51

51.1
1 root out
2 put out
3 pick up
4 leaked out
5 confide in
6 worm; out of
7 stake out
8 sound; out
9 ferret out
10 get out
11 writing; up

51.2 1 c 2 e 3 d 4 a 5 g 6 b 7 f

51.3
1 The conservatives **got in** in 2015.
2 A helicopter was **shot down** yesterday.
3 My great-great-grandfather **joined up** when he was only 16.
4 The kidnappers **gave themselves up** just after midday.
5 The rebels **held out** for six weeks.
6 The government has **sent in** a group of experts to assess the flood damage.
7 The government **put down** the rebellion using massive force.
8 Mr Fleet is trying to **whip up** some enthusiasm for the concert he is trying to organise.
9 Hundreds of people **joined in** the celebrations outside the palace.
10 Theodore **got onto** the party's national committee.

Unit 52

52.1 *Possible answers:*

1 Its aim was to find out whether claims of fraud were correct or not – and it discovered that the claims were justified.
2 By hushing up a scandal, the company is trying to keep it secret – which suggests that it is a scandal which might harm the reputation of the company in some way.
3 It is implying that the government is not being entirely honest with the public about possible health risks.
4 Because he/she does not want knowledge of the internal disagreements to become public in case the government loses public support. In other words, he/she is trying to hide this information in the same way in which wallpaper is sometimes used to paper over cracks in a wall.
5 It sounds as if it condemns their behaviour – this is suggested by 'cover up'.
6 The spy has given information about the way in which secret agents spied on diplomats.

52.2 1 f 2 g 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 h 7 e 8 d

52.3 As journalists it is our job to try to dig **up** stories that dishonest people are trying to cover **up**. Sometimes we are accused of spying **on** innocent people, but surely it is our duty not to allow people to paper **over** their scandals. Often it is not at all difficult to learn secrets. People are often eager to confide **in** someone who is willing to lend a sympathetic ear. Or they let **out** a secret without realising it. Little things like a blush or a quick glance at someone else can be a real give-**away** to an experienced reporter. Of course, sometimes people try to make **out** that they have nothing to hide, and then it can be a good idea to play **along** with them up to a certain point. Then you suddenly take them by surprise with an unexpected question and in this way you can often catch them **out**.

52.4
1 catch
2 make
3 let
4 gave

(Note that *give the game away* (= tell someone something that should be kept secret) is slightly different from the other examples in this set in that it is a fixed expression or an idiom.)

Unit 53

53.1
1 imposed
2 adhere
3 against
4 by
5 inform
6 let

[You may be curious to know how the scores were judged in the original magazine article: 0 – 3 Call yourself an outlaw!; 3 – 6 You're good, but not very good; 7 – 10 You're a model citizen. Congratulations!]

53.2
1 The new act went **through** Parliament last week and will become law on 1 January.
2 The anti-litter laws should be tightened **up**; as it is now, nobody is ever prosecuted.
3 He went on a two-year crime spree before the police finally caught up **with** him.
4 She avoided tax by signing **over** her property to her two sons.
5 The new law provides **for** jail sentences of up to ten years for repeat offenders.
6 Building regulations come **under** local government rather than national or European law.
7 The bill was passed by the Lower Chamber but was thrown **out** by the Senate and never became law.
8 The bill will be voted **on** in Parliament next week, and the government hopes it will get **through** without too much opposition.
9 If trials prove successful, the government intends to roll **out** the scheme across the whole country next year.
10 He was sentenced to three years in prison, but he'll probably be let **out** in 18 months.

53.3
1 The former CEO of Wilson & Wallace has been **let out** after serving a ten-year sentence.
2 If you don't **abide by** / **adhere to** the health and safety regulations, you will be punished.
3 The government plans to **toughen up** / **tighten up** the existing laws.
4 The law reforming the Health Service **got through** Parliament with a large majority.
5 Evan's criminal activity was discovered when his neighbours **informed on** him.

53.4 *Suggested answers:*
1 He was tried last week, found guilty and **sent to prison** for five years.
2 This government has **introduced** / **made** more new laws than any other in the last 50 years.

3 The new law will **become official** / **take effect** in March.
4 The military authorities **issued** / **made public** an order banning demonstrations in the area around the parliament buildings.

Unit 54

54.1
1 fade out
2 set up
3 print off
4 wiped off
5 call up
6 drop-down
7 type in

54.2 1 b 2 c 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 b

54.3 These statements are all true for the writer, but whether they are for you will depend on your own computer – and on how you have set it up.

54.4 *Possible answers:*
1 The advantage of a wireless connection is that you don't **have to wire everything up**.
2 You can print a document by selecting the print icon or by **going to the File menu and choosing Print**.
3 It's quite easy to **set up** a website with these step-by-step instructions.
4 Whenever I switch on my computer, it takes time **to warm up**.
5 I can use this cable to listen to my MP3 player in the car by **plugging it into the car radio**.
6 If the printer is beginning to run out of ink, a warning light **usually comes on**.

Unit 55

55.1
1 gobble/wolf; down
2 picks at
3 disagreed with
4 cut; out
5 put on
6 eat in; send out

55.2 1 Grace 2 Khadijah 3 Rory 4 Oliver 5 Lizzie

55.3

		1 s									
2 d	i	p			3 w	a	4 s	h	e	5 d	
		i			a		o			6 o	n
		l			t		a			w	
	7 s	l	i	c	e		k			n	
					r						

55.4 *Possible answers:*
1 Shellfish often disagree with people.
2 A tart can be sliced up.
3 I often serve up roast chicken at the weekend.
4 Rice or potatoes fill you up.
5 I should cut down on cakes and biscuits.
6 In Britain people often send out for a curry or for a pizza.

Unit 56

56.1
1 came down
2 comes in
3 come down
4 came at
5 coming in
6 came at

56.2
1 up against
2 off
3 into
4 under
5 out with
6 across
7 into
8 in

56.3
1 Álvaro’s English has **come on** a lot since he met Flora.
2 Hugo **comes across as** confident and extrovert.
3 The Prime Minister has **come in for** a considerable amount of criticism lately.
4 Ellen **comes out with** some very strange comments sometimes.
5 This history homework does not **come up to** the standards we expect from our students.
6 We’ve had a difficult year, but we’ve **come through (it)** and are looking forward to the future now.
7 At this point I should like to invite Anastasia Snow to **come in**.
8 I was afraid the dog was going to **come at** me.

56.4
1 come up to 2 come up against 3 come under 4 come into

Unit 57

57.1
1 It’s time she got her act together and found a job.
2 The children always get up to mischief when I’m not looking.
3 I must get to the bottom of that strange letter I received.
4 We got down to business immediately. / We immediately got down to business.
5 Modern life is too complicated. We should get back to basics.

57.2
1 get in on the act
2 get by
3 got around
4 get the message across
5 get away with murder
6 get her out of my mind

57.3
1 down
2 off
3 off
4 out of
5 in
6 up to
7 into
8 together

57.4
Possible answers:
1 When do you normally **finish** work?
2 Do you **travel** a lot and **do things away from home or from your normal place of work**?
3 Is there any time of the year when you find it hard to **return to** the routine of your daily life?
4 What have you been **doing** recently?
5 What sort of things **make** you **feel depressed**?
6 Where do you usually **meet** your friends **socially**?

57.5
Possible answers:
1 I normally get off work at about 5 o’clock in the evening.
2 I get around quite a bit – particularly in the summer months.
3 I find it hard to get back into the routine of my daily life after my summer holiday.
4 I’ve been away on a trip to the Czech Republic.
5 Grey, damp days get me down.
6 My friends and I usually get together at a café in town.

Unit 58

58.1
1 into
2 after/for
3 over
4 down
5 ahead
6 for

58.2
1 g 2 d 3 f 4 a 5 h 6 b 7 c 8 e

58.3
1 Lara has been promised that her name will go **forward** for a place on the board of directors next year.
2 Going **by** the weather forecast, there'll be snow tomorrow.
3 They went **through** a terrible time during their daughter's illness.
4 You really mustn't go **around** telling such terrible lies.
5 Cameron has always wanted to go **into** law.
6 The journalists went **after** her wherever she went.

58.4
1 for 2 down 3 over 4 off

Unit 59

59.1
1 to
2 in
3 back
4 from
5 ahead
6 up
7 out of
8 up with

59.2
1 Please **keep your** music, TVs and radios **down** during the exam period.
2 Every household will be asked to contribute £10 a month towards the **upkeep** of the village recreation ground.
3 All team members are strongly advised to **keep off** fatty foods during the training period. It is important to **keep** your fitness **up** to the highest level.

59.3
1 to 2 on 3 up

59.1
Possible answers:
1 Noisy neighbours have occasionally kept me up.
2 I was once kept in hospital after being hit on the head by a football.
3 I'm going to regularly revise the units in this book and am also going to make a point of noting down any examples of phrasal verbs I find when I'm reading English.

Unit 60

60.1
1 take someone aback
2 take away from
3 take off
4 take out

60.2
1 along
2 away
3 aback
4 up
5 off

60.3
1 Martin does the best **take-off** of the Prime Minister that I have ever seen.
2 A ridiculous amount of my time is **taken up** with dealing with emails.
3 Even the rain could not **take away from** the beauty of the scene.
4 I was **taken aback** when I was told that I was no longer allowed to park in front of my own house.
5 Would you like me to **take up** your concerns **with** the manager? *Or* Would you like me to **take** your concerns **up** with the manager?
6 We are expecting a particularly large **intake** of students next week.
7 We decided it would be nicer to **take** our aunt **away** for the weekend rather than having her stay with us.
8 The **uptake** of places for the weekend seminar has been rather disappointing.

60.4
1 Let's **take down** the decorations tomorrow.
2 The doctor has agreed to **take** my elderly uncle **off those** pills for his arthritis.
3 Her parents **took** her **away** to their holiday home.
4 My favourite part of a flight is when the plane **takes off**.
5 Robert's being there **took away from** our enjoyment of the evening.
6 After Stan had been working in the kitchens for a week, he was **taken off** washing-up duties.

Mini dictionary

This Mini dictionary includes the definitions of the phrasal verbs and related noun and adjective forms that are practised in this book. Note that many of the phrasal verbs have other meanings which do not appear here. Refer to a good dictionary such as the *Cambridge Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs* for a full list of English phrasal verbs.

The numbers in the Mini dictionary are ***Unit*** *numbers not page numbers.*

abide by sth to accept or obey an agreement, rule, or decision *53*

accede to sth *formal* to agree to something that someone has asked for [e.g. request, demand], often after disagreeing with it *6*

account for sth to explain the reason for something or the cause of something *17*

add up to be a reasonable or likely explanation for something *17*

add up to increase and become a large number or amount *26*

add up (sth) *or* add (sth) up to calculate the total of two or more numbers *1*

add up to sth to have a particular result or effect *17*

adhere to sth *formal* to obey a rule or principle *53*

agree to both sides accept something *23*

(not) agree with sb if a type of food or drink does not agree with you, it makes you feel slightly ill *55*

aim at sth/doing sth to intend to achieve something, or to be intended to achieve something *34*

aim sth at sb to intend something to influence someone, or to be noticed or bought by someone *35*

allow for sth to take something into consideration *33*

amount to sth to become a particular amount *26*

arrive at sth to achieve an agreement or decision, especially after thinking about it or discussing it for a long time *29*

ascribe sth to sth *formal* to believe or say that something is caused by something else *6*

ask around to ask several people in order to try to get information or help *9*

be asking for sth *informal* to behave stupidly in a way that is likely to cause problems for you *6*

couldn't ask for sb/sth if you say that you couldn't ask for someone or something better, you mean that that person or thing is the best of their kind *6*

ask out sb *or* ask sb out to invite someone to come with you to a place such as the cinema or a restaurant, especially as a way of starting a romantic relationship *6*

associate sth with sth to connect someone or something in your mind with someone or something else *2, 18*

attend to sb/sth to deal with a situation or problem *6*

attribute sth to sth *slightly formal* to believe or say that something is the result of something else *17*

average out at sth to have as the average number *26*

back off to stop being involved in a situation, especially in order to allow other people to deal with it themselves *12*

back onto sth if a building backs onto something, its back faces that thing *49*

back up (sth) *or* back (sth) up to make a copy of computer information so that you do not lose it *6*

back-up *n* support, help or something that you have arranged in case your main plans or equipment go wrong *3, 54*

bail out sb/sth *or* bail sb/sth out to help a person or organisation by giving them money *6, 36*

balance out to make things equal *26*

bang about/around to move around a place, making a lot of noise *9*

bang down sth *or* bang sth down to put something down with force, often because you are angry *21*

base sth on sth if you base something on particular facts or ideas, you use those facts or ideas to develop that thing *6, 34*

bat around sth *or* bat sth around to talk about a plan or idea and to discuss different ways of dealing with it *24*

bear on sth *formal* to be directly connected to something *6*

bear out sth/sb *or* bear sth/sb out to prove that something that someone has said or written [e.g. claim, theory] is true, or to say that someone is telling the truth *52*

bear up to deal with a very sad or difficult situation in a brave and determined way *28*

beat down if the sun beats down, it shines strongly and makes the air very hot *48*

beat down if the rain beats down, it comes down in large amounts with force *48*

beaver away *informal* to work hard at something for a long time, especially something you are writing *31*

belt out sth *or* belt sth out *informal* to sing or to play a musical instrument very loudly *21*

bend down to move the top part of your body towards the ground *44*

bend to sb/sth to do something you don't want to do *23*

blast out (sth) *or* blast (sth) out to produce a lot of noise, especially loud music *21*

blend in/into sth if something or someone blends in, they look or seem the same as the things or people around them and so you do not notice them *49*

block in sb/sth *or* block sb/sth in to put a car or other vehicle so close to another vehicle that it cannot drive away *50*

block out sth *or* block sth out to stop yourself from thinking about something unpleasant because it upsets you *18*

block up sth *or* block sth up to fill a hole so that nothing can pass through it *37*

blot out sth *or* blot sth out if smoke or a cloud blots out the sun, it covers it and prevents it from being seen *48*

blow out if a car tyre blows out, it suddenly bursts *50*

blow up sth *or* blow sth up to make something seem much worse or much better than it really is *15*

blunder about/around to move in an awkward way, usually because you cannot see where you are going *9*

blurt out sth *or* blurt sth out to say something suddenly and without thinking, especially because you are excited or nervous *45*

boarded-up *adj* covered with pieces of wood *49*

be bogged down to become so involved in the details of something that you cannot achieve anything *31*

boil down to sth *slightly informal* if a situation or problem boils down to a particular thing, that is the main reason for it *7*

bombard sb with sth to direct a lot of something [e.g. questions, letters] at one person *45*

boom out (sth) to speak in a loud voice, or to make a loud noise *21*

bore into sb if someone's eyes bore into you, they look at you very hard and make you feel nervous *40*

boss about/around sb *or* boss sb about/around to tell people what they should do all the time *9*

botch up sth *or* botch sth up *informal* to spoil a piece of work by doing it badly *28*

bottom out if a situation, level, or rate that is getting worse bottoms out, it reaches the lowest point and remains at that level or amount, usually before improving *19*

bounce sth off sb *informal* to tell someone about an idea or plan in order to find out what they think of it *24*

bow to sb/sth to do something you don't want to do *23*

bowl over sb *or* bowl sb over to surprise or please someone a lot *41*

box in sb *or* box sb in to prevent someone from doing what they want to do *11*

branch off if a road or path branches off, it goes in another direction *2, 49*

branch off to leave a main road by turning onto a smaller road *50*

breakaway *adj* a breakaway group is a group of people that stop being part of another group, often because they disagree with them *1*

break down if a machine or vehicle breaks down, it stops working *4*

break down if a discussion, system or relationship breaks down, it fails because of a disagreement or problem *28*

break down sth *or* break sth down to divide information or a piece of work into smaller parts so that it is easier to understand or deal with *24*

breakdown *n* when talks between two groups of people fail because of a disagreement or problem *3*

break-in *n* when someone manages to get in a building by using force, usually in order to steal something *3*

break into sth to become involved in a type of business or activity that is difficult to become involved in *35*

break into sth to start to use an amount of money or food that you have been saving *36*

break off sth *or* break sth off to separate a part from a larger piece *47*

break out in/into sth if you break out in a sweat, it suddenly appears on your skin *43*

breakout *n* when someone escapes from prison *1*

breakout *n* when something dangerous and unpleasant, like war, disease or fire, suddenly starts *3*

break through (sth) if the suns breaks through or breaks through the clouds, it starts to appear from behind the clouds *48*

break up sth *or* break sth up if an event breaks up a period of time, it makes it more interesting by being different to what you are doing for the rest of the time *16*

break up (sth) *or* break (sth) up if an occasion when people meet [e.g. meeting, party] breaks up, or if someone breaks it up, it ends and people start to leave *19*

break up (sth) *or* break (sth) up if a fight breaks up, or if someone breaks it up, the people in it stop fighting or are made to stop fighting *20*

breeze in/into swh to walk in quickly and confidently *48*

breeze through sth *slightly informal* to succeed in something [e.g. exam] very easily *48*

brim with sth to have or show a lot of a good emotion or good quality *41*

bring forward sth *or* bring sth forward to change the date or time of an event so that it happens earlier than planned *16*

bring in sb/sth *or* bring sb/sth in if something, for example a company, brings people or business in, it attracts people, often encouraging them to buy products or services *35*

bring in sth *or* bring sth in to earn or make a particular amount of money *11*

bring in sth *or* bring sth in if a government or organisation brings in something new [e.g. law, rule], they make it exist for the first time *53*

bring out sth *or* bring sth out to produce something to sell to the public *35*

bring out sth *or* bring sth out to make a particular quality more noticeable *40*

bring together sb *or* bring sb together to cause people to be friendly with each other, especially people who have argued with each other or who would not usually be friendly with each other *39*

bring up sb *or* bring sb up to look after a child and educate them until they are old enough to look after themselves *47*

bring up sth *or* bring sth up to start to talk about something *33*

broken down *adj* if a machine or vehicle is broken-down it no longer works *4*

brush down/off sb/sth *or* brush sb/sth down to use a brush or your hand to remove something *7*

brush off sb/sth *or* brush sb/sth off to refuse to listen to what someone says, or to refuse to think about something seriously *7*

build in sth *or* build sth in to include something as part of a system *11*

build up (sth) *or* build (sth) up to increase in amount, size, or strength, or to make something increase in amount, size, or strength *3, 26*

build up sb *or* build sb up to make someone healthier and stronger after an illness, especially by making sure that they eat a lot *43*

build-up *n* when something increases in amount, size or strength *3*

built-in *adj* if something is built-in, it is made so that it fits into part of a wall or room *4*

bump sb off *or* bump off sb *informal* to kill someone *20*

bump up sth *or* bump sth up *informal* to increase the size or amount of something [e.g. price] by a large amount *26*

bunged-up *adj slightly informal* blocked nose *43*

buoy up sth *or* buoy sth up to support something and help to make it more successful *22*

burn out *or* burn yourself out *informal* to have to stop working because you have become ill or very tired from working too hard *43*

burst out sth if you burst out laughing or crying, you suddenly start to laugh or cry *21*

be bursting with sth to be very full with something *49*

bury yourself in sth to give all your attention to something *32*

bust-up *n* *informal* an angry argument *20*

bust-up *n informal* a break in a relationship *39*

butter up sb *or* butter sb up *informal* to be very nice to someone so that they will do what you want them to do *39*

buy out sb/sth *or* buy sb/sth out to buy part of a company or building that belonged to someone else so that you own all of it *3, 35*

buyout *n* the buying of a company, especially by the people who previously managed it or worked for it *3*

buy up sth *or* buy sth up to quickly buy a lot of something, often all that is available *6, 15*

call in (on) *British & Australian* to visit a place or person for a short time, usually while you are going somewhere else *6, 42*

call on sth *formal* to use something, especially a quality that you have, in order to achieve something *6*

call out sb *or* call sb out to order workers to strike (= to refuse to work because of an argument with an employer) *31*

call up sb *or* call sb up to order someone to join the army, navy, or airforce *51*

call up sth *or* call sth up if something calls up a memory or an idea, it makes you remember or think about it *18*

call up sth *or* call sth up to find and show information on a computer screen *54*

calm down (sb) *or* calm (sb) down to stop feeling upset, angry, or excited, or to make someone stop feeling this way *30*

capitalise on sth to use a situation in order to achieve something good for yourself *27*

not care for sth/sb *formal* to not like something or someone *41*

carry forward sth *or* carry sth forward to include an amount of money in a later set of calculations *6, 36*

carry off sth *or* carry sth off to succeed in doing or achieving something difficult *27*

carry out sth *or* carry sth out to complete a task *33*

cash in on sth to make money from an event or situation, or to get some other advantage from it, often in an unfair way *11*

cash up *British & Australian* to count all the money taken by a shop or business at the end of the day *36*

be cast away to be on an island with no other people after swimming from a ship that is sinking *1, 50*

cast-offs *n* clothes which have been given to somebody else because the first owner cannot use them any more *38*

catch on *slightly informal* to understand something, especially after a long time *24*

catch out sb *or* catch sb out to discover that someone is lying or doing something wrong *52*

catch up on/with sth to do something you did not have time to do earlier *2*

catch up with sb if someone in authority [e.g. police, tax officials] catches up with you, they discover that you have been doing something wrong and often punish you for it *53*

be caught up in sth to become involved in an activity or situation which prevents you from moving or making progress *28*

cater for sb/sth to provide all the things that people need or want in a particular situation *34*

cave in to agree to something that you were against before, after someone has persuaded you or threatened you *22, 23*

change down *British and Australian* to put a vehicle into a lower gear (= part of a machine that controls the speed of a vehicle), usually in order to go slower *50*

chase sb/sth off/out *or* chase off/out sb/sth to run after a person or an animal in a threatening way in order to make them leave 47

chatter away to talk continuously *21*

cheat on sb *informal* to behave in a dishonest way towards your husband, wife, or usual sexual partner by having a sexual relationship with someone else *39*

check off sth *or* check sth off to look at each item on a list, or to write something next to each item on a list, in order to make sure that everything or everyone on it is correct, present, or has been dealt with *32*

cheer on sb *or* cheer sb on to shout encouraging words at someone, especially a person or team in a race or competition, or to receive encouraging words or shouts *22*

chip in (sth) *or* chip (sth) in *slightly informal* to give an amount of money, especially when a group of people are giving money to pay for something together *36*

chirp away if a bird chirps away, it sings continuously *21*

choke back/down sth *or* choke sth back/down to force yourself not to show your feelings *41*

chuck away/out sth *or* chuck sth away/out *informal* to get rid of something that is not needed anymore *37*

clam up *informal* to become silent or to refuse to speak about something, usually because you are shy or afraid *45*

clean out sb *or* clean sb out *informal* if someone cleans you out, they take or use all the money you have, or if something expensive cleans you out, you spend all the money you have on it *36*

clean out sth *or* clean sth out to steal everything from a place *14*

clean up after sb to remove dirt someone has made, or to make a place tidy by putting things back where they belong *37*

clean up your act to start to behave better *8*

clear sth away *or* clear away sth to remove things in order to make a place tidy *37*

clear out informal to leave a place *46*

clear up if an illness clears up, or if medicine clears an illness up, the illness goes away *43*

clear up sth *or* clear sth up to give or find an explanation for something, or to deal with a problem or disagreement *28*

clear up after sb to remove dirt someone has made, or to make a place tidy by putting things back where they belong *37*

climb down to admit that you are wrong *7*

climb down if you climb down from a tree, you go back down to the ground *7*

close off sth *or* close sth off to put something across the entrance to something, in order to prevent people from entering it *49*

cloud over if someone's face clouds over, they suddenly look unhappy or worried *48*

clown about/around to act in a silly way *9*

clutter up sth *or* clutter sth up to fill something in an untidy or badly organised way *37*

coast along to do only the things that you have to do without trying to go faster or be more successful *31*

cobble together sth *or* cobble sth together to make something quickly and not very carefully *31*

come across if an idea or an emotion comes across in writing, film, music, or when someone is speaking, it is expressed clearly and people understand it or notice it *32*

come across to behave in a way which makes people believe that you have a particular characteristic *40, 56*

come across sth/sb to discover something by chance, or to meet someone by chance *1*

come along to start to exist, happen, or be available *1*

come around/round if a regular event comes around, it happens at its usual time *16*

come around/round to agree to a plan or idea that you were against, or to stop having a bad opinion about something, after thinking about it for a long time or being persuaded by other people that it is good *29*

come at sb to move towards someone in order to attack them *20, 56*

come at sth to think about something in a particular way *24, 56*

come back if something comes back to you, you remember it *18*

come between sb if an argument or other problem comes between two or more people, it spoils their relationship *39*

come down if you come down when you are suggesting a price for something, you suggest or agree to a lower price *10*

come down if a story or tradition comes down, it is passed from older people to younger people so that it continues *10, 56*

come down if a price or level comes down, it becomes lower *56*

come in to start speaking during a discussion *11, 56*

come in if the tide (= the regular change in the level of the sea) comes in, the sea comes higher up the beach *47, 56*

come in for sth if someone comes in for criticism or praise, they are criticised or praised for something they have done *56*

come into sth to get money from someone who has died *36*

come into sth to begin to exist or happen, or to begin to be fashionable *53*

come into (being) to begin *56*

come into it if you say that a particular emotion or quality [e.g. pride, love, luck] comes into it when you are describing a situation, you mean that it influences the situation *56*

come into one's own to be very successful *8*

come off sth to stop using medicine or drugs *43*

come off better/worse to end up in a good or bad position because of an argument or some kind of struggle *56*

Come off it! something that you say in order to tell someone that you do not believe them or that you disagree with them or are angry with them *30*

come on if something [e.g. lights, heating] or a supply of something [e.g. water, electricity] comes on, it starts working *54*

come on to improve in a skill, or to make progress *56*

Come on! something that you say in order to tell someone that you do not believe them or that you disagree with them or are angry with them *30*

come out if you describe how something or someone comes out at the end of a process or activity, you describe what condition they are in or what they have achieved *27*

come out to go somewhere with someone for a social event *39*

come out if the sun, the moon, or a star comes out, it appears in the sky; also applies to flowers and leaves which appear on plants in spring *47*

come out against to state publicly that you are opposed to an issue *22*

come out in favour of to state publicly that you support an issue *22*

come out of sth if something comes out of a process or an event, it is one of the results *17*

come out with sth to say something suddenly *56*

come over sb if a feeling comes over you, you suddenly experience it *41*

come over sth if an announcement comes over a public address system, people can hear the announcement *21*

come round to to agree with somebody else's idea or opinion after a long time thinking about it or discussing it *23, 29*

come through sth to manage to get to the end of a difficult situation *56*

come to (an agreement) to agree on something after discussion *23*

come under sth to be controlled or dealt with by a particular authority *53*

come under sth if something or someone comes under a particular action by other people [e.g. attack, criticism, scrutiny, review, pressure], that thing is done to them *56*

come up if an event is coming up, it will happen soon *16*

come up if information comes up on a computer screen, it appears there *54*

come up against sth/sb to have to deal with a difficult situation or someone who disagrees with you or tries to stop you doing what you want to do *56*

come up to sth to reach an acceptable or expected standard *56*

comeback *n* when a performer gives a performance he hopes will make him popular again *3*

confide in sb to tell someone things that you keep secret from other people *51, 52*

conjure up sth *or* conjure sth up to make something [e.g. picture, image, memory] appear in someone's mind *18*

consist of sth to be formed from two or more things *34*

contend with sth to have to deal with a difficult or unpleasant situation *2, 34*

contribute to sth to be one of the causes of an event or situation *17*

cope with sth to deal successfully with a problem or difficult situation *2*

cordon off sth *or* cordon sth off if people in authority [e.g. police] cordon off an area, they put something around it in order to stop people from entering it *12*

cotton on *informal* to begin to understand a situation or fact *24*

cough up (sth) *or* cough (sth) up *informal* to provide money for something, especially when you are not very willing to do this *36*

count against sb/sth to make someone or something more likely to fail *32*

count sb in to include a person in a plan or activity *23*

count on sth to expect something to happen, and make plans which depend on this thing happening *13*

count out sb *or* count sb out *informal* to not include someone in an activity *14, 23*

count towards sth to be part of what is needed in order to complete something or achieve something *32*

cover up (sth) *or* cover (sth) up to stop people from discovering the truth about something bad *52*

cover-up *n* if someone stops people from discovering the truth about something bad *1*

cream off sb *or* cream sb off to separate the cleverest or most skilful people from a group and treat them differently *32*

creep up on sb if a date or an event creeps up on someone, it seems to come or happen sooner than they were expecting *16*

creep up on sb to move closer to someone, usually from behind, without being seen by them *46*

cross off sth *or* cross sth off (sth) to remove a word from a list by drawing a line through it *32*

cross over to start to support a different, often opposing, person or group *22*

crowd around/round (sth/sb) to surround something or someone, standing very close to them *9*

cry out (sth) or cry (sth) out to suddenly shout something in a loud voice, especially to get someone's attention *14*

curl up to lie or sit with your back curved and your knees close to your stomach *44*

cut down sth *or* cut sth down if you cut down a tree or bush, you make it fall to the ground by cutting it near the bottom *47*

cut in to suddenly drive in front of someone, not leaving enough space between the two vehicles *50*

cut in (on) (sth) to interrupt what someone is saying by saying something yourself *11, 45*

cut off sth *or* cut sth off to stop the supply of something such as electricity, gas or water *2, 12*

cut off (from) swh to be in a separate space or area and unable to communicate with people in a different space or area *12*

cut off your nose to spite your face to do something because you are angry, though it may cause you more problems *8*

cut out sth *or* cut sth out to stop eating or drinking something, usually in order to improve your health *55*

be cut out for sth to have the right qualities for something, especially a job *31*

dash off *informal* to leave a place quickly *5*

deal in sth to buy and sell particular goods as a business *35*

deal with sth to take action in order to achieve something, or in order to solve a problem *42*

decide on sth/sb to choose something or someone after thinking carefully *29*

defer to sb/sth *formal* to accept someone else's opinion because they know more than you or are more important than you *22, 23*

depend on sth/sb to need the help or support of something or someone in order to survive or continue as before *13*

depend on sth/sb if something depends on a particular situation, condition, or person, it is influenced by them or cannot change without them *17*

deprive sb/sth of sth to take something important away from someone *2, 34*

descend to sth/doing sth to behave badly in a way that other people would not expect you to *40*

detract from sth to make something seem less good than it really is or than it was thought to be *34*

devote sth to sth/doing sth to use all of something, for example your life or your time, for a particular purpose *34*

die away if something, especially a sound, dies away, it gradually becomes less strong or clear and then stops *2*

die down if something, especially noise or excitement, dies down, it gradually becomes less loud or strong until it stops *21*

die out to become more and more rare and then disappear completely *47*

dig up sth *or* dig sth up to take something out of the ground by digging *47*

dig up sth *or* dig sth up to discover new facts about a person or situation after a lot of searching *52*

dig your heels in to refuse to do what others try to persuade you to do *8*

dip sth in (sth) to quickly put something into something else and then take it out again, especially biscuits in tea or coffee *55*

disagree with sb if a type of food disagrees with you, it makes you feel slightly ill or uncomfortable *55*

dive in/into sth to start doing something suddenly without thinking about it *7*

do in sb *or* do sb in *informal* to attack or kill someone *29*

do in sb *or* do sb in *informal* to make someone extremely tired *43*

do out sth *or* do sth out *British & Australian* to decorate or clean a room *37*

do sb out of sth *informal* to stop someone from getting or keeping something, in a dishonest or unfair way *29*

do up sth *or* do sth up to wrap something [esp. present] in paper *25*

do up sth *or* do sth up to repair something, or to improve the appearance of something, especially a building *49*

do yourself up to make yourself look more attractive *29*

do without (sth/sb) to manage without something or someone *29*

doom (sb/sth) to sth to make someone or something sure to fail or suffer in a particular way *27*

dot sth with sth if a place is dotted with something, it has many of them, all over the place *49*

double back to turn and go back in the direction that you have come from *46*

double (sb) over/up to suddenly bend your body forwards because you are laughing a lot or you are in pain *44*

double up as sth if something designed for one purpose can double up as something else, it can also be used for something else *25*

downcast *adj* sad and depressed *4*

downpour *n* a sudden, heavy fall of rain *3*

drag sb away from *informal* to make somebody stop doing something, so that they can do something else *7*

drag sb/sth into sth to talk about or bring someone or something into a difficult or unpleasant situation, especially when that person or thing is seen as being connected with the situation *20*

drag out (sth) *or* drag (sth) out to continue for longer than is necessary, or to make something do this *16*

drag sth out of sb to make someone tell you something that they do not want to tell you *45*

draw back to move away from someone or something, usually because you are surprised or afraid *46*

draw on sth to use information from somewhere *33*

draw out sb *or* draw sb out to help someone who is shy to feel more confident *40*

draw out sth *or* draw sth out to make something continue for longer than is usual or necessary *14*

Dream on! something that you say in order to tell someone that what they are hoping for is not possible and will not happen *30*

dress up (sb) *or* dress (sb) up to put on someone else's clothes to make yourself look like someone else, or to make someone do this, usually as a game *38*

drink in to look at, listen to, or experience something with all your attention and to enjoy it very much *7*

drink to sb/sth to hold up your glass before drinking from it in order to celebrate something or to wish someone success or happiness *55*

drink up (sth) *or* drink (sth) up to completely finish your drink *30*

drive off to leave in a vehicle *5*

drone on to talk for a long time in a very boring way *13, 21*

drop back if you are moving forward in a group of people and you drop back, you move to a position nearer the back *46*

drop by *British & Australian* informal to make a short visit to someone in their home, usually without arranging it before *42*

drop-down menu a list of choices which appears on a computer screen *54*

drop off to fall asleep *2, 43*

drop off sb/sth *or* drop sb/sth off to take someone to a place that they want to go to, or to deliver something to a place, usually in a car, often when you are going somewhere else *2*

drop out to not do something that you were going to do, or to stop doing something *14*

drop out if a student drops out, they stop going to classes before they have finished their course *32*

drown out sth *or* drown sth out if a loud noise drowns out another noise, it prevents it from being heard *21*

drum up sth to increase interest in something or support for something *29*

dry out (sth) *or* dry (sth) out to make something dry, or to become dry *47*

dry up if a supply of something dries up, it ends *19*

dry up to stop speaking when you are acting or making a speech, especially because you suddenly forget what to say next *45*

dry up if an area of water [esp. river, lake] dries up, the water in it disappears *47*

dumb down sth *or* dumb sth down to make something [e.g. textbook, curriculum] simpler and easier to understand *51*

dwell on sth to think or talk about a particular subject for too long *13*

ease off/up to gradually stop or become less *5*

ease off/up to start to work less or to do things with less energy *31*

eat away at sb if a memory or bad emotion [e.g. bitterness, shame] eats away at someone, they think about it a lot and it makes them very unhappy *18*

eat away at sth to gradually destroy something by continuously damaging it or taking little parts of it away *47*

eat in to have a meal at home, not in a restaurant *55*

eat into sth to use or take away a large part of something valuable [e.g. savings, profits, leisure time, business] *7*

eat up sth *or* eat sth up to eat all the food you have been given *15*

Eat up! something that you say to someone, especially a child, in order to tell them to eat their food *30*

egg on sb *or* egg sb on to encourage someone to do something, often something that is wrong, stupid, or dangerous, or to be encouraged to do something *22*

eke out sth *or* eke sth out to use something slowly or carefully because you only have a small supply of it *16*

encroach on sth to gradually cover more and more of an area of land *49*

end up to finally be in a situation *33*

engage sb in conversation if you engage someone in conversation, you try to start a conversation with them *45*

expand on sth to give more details about something you have said or written *45*

explain away sth *or* explain sth away to give a reason for something bad happening which makes other people think that it is not so bad or that it is not your fault *45*

face up to sth to accept that a difficult or unpleasant situation exists *2*

factor in sth *or* factor sth in to include something when making a calculation or when trying to understand something *11*

fade in if the sound or picture of a film or recording fades in, or if you fade it in, it becomes gradually louder or brighter so that you can hear it or see it clearly *54*

fade out if the sound or picture of a film or recording fades out, or if you fade it out, it gradually becomes quieter or less clear until you cannot hear or see it any more *54*

fall apart if an organisation, system, or agreement falls apart, it fails or stops working effectively *19*

fallback *adj* a fallback position is something you use when other things have failed, or when there are no other choices *4*

fall back on sth to use something when other things have failed, or when there are no other choices *28*

fall behind (sb) to fail to remain level with a group of people that is moving forwards *32*

fall behind (sb) to fail to score as many points as another team or player in a competition *27*

fall in if a structure [e.g. roof, ceiling] falls in, it drops to the ground because it is weak or damaged *49*

fall off if the amount, rate, or quality of something falls off, it becomes smaller or lower *26*

fall through if a plan or agreement falls through, it fails to happen *6, 27*

farm out sth *or* farm sth out to give work to other people instead of doing it yourself *31*

feed on sth if an animal feeds on a particular type of food, it usually eats that food *47*

feel up to sth/doing sth to feel physically and mentally strong enough to do something *41*

fend for yourself to take care of yourself without needing help from other people *47*

ferret out sth *or* ferret sth out to find something after searching for it *51*

fight back sth *or* fight sth back to try hard not to show an emotion, or to try hard not to let your emotions control what you do *41*

fight off sb/sth *or* fight sb/sth off to use violence so that something or someone goes away *20*

fill up sb *or* fill sb up if food fills someone up, it makes them feel as if they have eaten enough *55*

finish off sb *or* finish sb off to make someone so tired, weak, or unhappy that they are unable to continue what they were doing *12*

finish up (sth) *or* finish (sth) up to eat or drink all of what you are eating or drinking *15*

finish with sth to stop using or needing something *19*

firm up sth *or* firm sth up to make something [e.g. agreement, details, prices] more definite or less likely to change *35*

finish off to end or complete something *33*

fish out sth *or* fish sth out *informal* to pull or take something out of a bag or pocket, especially after searching *7*

fit in to be able to be done between other activities *16*

fit in with sth if one activity or event fits in with another, they exist or happen together in a way which is convenient *11*

fix up sth *or* fix sth up to arrange something [esp. meeting] *25*

flag down sth *or* flag sth down to make a vehicle stop by waving at the driver *50*

flare up if someone flares up, they suddenly become very angry *20*

flare up if a disease that you had before flares up, you suddenly get it again *43*

flash back if your mind or thoughts flash back to something that happened to you in the past, you suddenly remember that thing *18*

flashback *n* an occasion when you suddenly remember something vividly that happened to you in the past *18*

flatten out if the rate of something flattens out, or if something flattens it out, it stops increasing and decreasing and begins to stay at the same level *26*

fling off sth *or* fling sth off to remove very quickly *38*

fling yourself into to start to spend a lot of your time and energy doing something *31*

flirt with sb to talk and behave towards someone in a way that is sexually attractive and which shows that person that you are sexually attracted to them *39*

be floating about/around if you say something is floating around, you mean that you have seen it somewhere but you do not know exactly where it is *9*

flood back if memories flood back, you suddenly remember very clearly a lot of things about an experience or period in the past *18*

flood in/into sth to arrive or enter somewhere in very large numbers or amounts *7*

flush out sb/sth *or* flush sb/sth out to force a person or animal to come out of the place they are hiding in *47*

fly about/around (swh) if rumours fly around, they are made in a way which makes people excited *9*

fly at sb to attack someone suddenly and violently *20*

fly into sth if someone flies into a particular state [e.g. rage, temper, panic] they are suddenly in that state *20*

focus (sth) on sth to give a lot of attention to one particular activity, situation or idea *13*

fog up if something made of glass [e.g. windscreen, glasses] fogs up, or if something fogs it up, it becomes covered with small drops of water and you cannot see through it any more *48*

foldaway *adj* a foldaway bed has parts that can be folded so that it is smaller and can be stored somewhere *4*

fold up (sth) *or* fold (sth) up to make something [e.g. cloth, paper, chair] into a smaller, neater and usually flatter shape by folding it, or to be able to be folded in this way *25*

fold-up *adj* a fold-up chair can be made into a smaller, neater and flatter shape by folding it *4*

follow up sth *or* follow sth up to find out more about something *33*

forthcoming *adj* a forthcoming event, action, or product is one which will happen or become available soon *4*

be founded on sth to be based on a particular idea or belief *34*

free up sth *or* free sth up to make time or money available for a particular use by not using it in another way *16*

freeze out sb *or* freeze sb out to make someone feel that they are not part of a group by being unfriendly towards them, or to stop someone from being included in an arrangement or activity *48*

freeze over if water freezes over, it becomes covered with ice *2, 47*

freeze up become so afraid you cannot move or do anything *48*

freeze up if something [e.g. pipe, lock] freezes up, it becomes blocked with ice and stops working *48*

fritter away sth *or* fritter sth away to waste something [esp. money, time] by using it in a careless way for unimportant things *16*

frown on sth to believe that something is wrong and that you should not do it *13*

fry-up *n* a quick meal made of fried food *55*

fuss over sb/sth to pay too much attention to someone or something, especially because you want to show that you like them *39*

gain on sb/sth to get nearer to someone or something that you are chasing *46*

gang up *informal* to form a group to act against someone else *6*

gather up sth *or* gather sth up to collect several things, especially from different places, and put them together *25*

gear sth to/towards sth/sb to design something so that it is suitable for a particular purpose, situation, or group of people *25*

get across sth *or* get sth across to successfully communicate an idea to other people *57*

get around if news or information gets around, a lot of people hear about it *9, 57*

get around to travel to a lot of different places *57*

get away with sth/doing sth to succeed in not being criticised or punished for something wrong that you have done *57*

get away with murder to succeed in not being criticised or punished for something wrong that you have done *57*

get back into sth to begin doing something again after not doing it for a period of time *57*

get back to basics to start again at the beginning *57*

get by to have or know just enough of something to be able to deal with a particular situation but not have or know as much as you would like *1, 27*

get by to have just enough money to pay for the things that you need, but nothing more *6, 57*

get down *or* get sth down to manage to write down a series of spoken points *33*

get down to sth/doing sth to start doing something seriously and with a lot of your attention and effort *57*

get sb down to make someone feel unhappy *10, 57*

get in to succeed in getting a place at a school, college, or organisation *32*

get in if a political party or a politician gets in, they are elected *51*

get in sth *or* get sth in to manage to do something even though you do not have much time because you are busy doing other things *57*

get in on sth *informal* to start to become involved in an activity that other people are already doing, often without being invited to *57*

get into sth to succeed in getting a place at a school, college, or organisation *32*

get into sth *informal* to be thin enough to be able to put your clothes on *38*

get into sth to become interested in an activity or subject, or to start being involved in an activity *42, 57*

get off to leave the place where you work, usually at the end of the day *31, 57*

Get off (sb/sth)! something that you say in order to tell someone to stop touching someone or something *30*

get off on the wrong foot to start something badly *8*

get off sb's back to stop nagging someone *57*

get off the ground to get started *57*

be getting on *mainly British & Australian informal* when time is getting on, it is getting late *16*

be getting on *informal* if someone is getting on, they are old *40*

get on like a house on fire to immediately like each other *8*

get on to/onto sth to be elected as a member of an organisation *51*

get on (with sb) to like someone, and enjoy spending time with them *1, 2*

get out if news or information gets out, people hear about it even though someone is trying to keep it secret *51*

get sth out of sth/doing sth to enjoy something or think that something is useful *57*

get sth out of your mind to stop thinking about something *57*

get over sth to feel better after having an illness *43*

get (sb) through sth to succeed in an examination or competition, or to help someone or something do this *27, 32*

get (sth) through (sth) if a law or proposal gets through, or if someone gets a law or proposal through, it is officially accepted by a government or organisation *53*

get the most out of sb/sth to take maximum benefit from something *33*

get to the bottom of sth to understand something properly, not superficially *57*

get together if two or more people get together, or if someone gets two or more people together, they meet in order to do something or spend time together *57*

get-together *n* an informal meeting or party *42*

get up to stand up *1*

get up to sth to do something, especially something that other people think is wrong *42, 57*

get up to sth to reach a particular place in something that you are doing and to stop there *19*

getup *n informal* the particular clothing, especially when strange or unusual, that someone is wearing *38*

get your act together to organise yourself more efficiently *8, 57*

give away sth *or* give sth away to let someone know something that should be kept secret, often by mistake *52*

give-away *n* something that makes you aware of a fact that someone else was trying to keep secret *52*

give in to sth if you give in to an emotion or desire, you stop trying not to feel it and you allow your actions to be controlled by that emotion or desire *41*

give in to sth iwhen someone spends a long time trying to persuade you to do or agree to something, and you finally agree to it *23*

give up (sth /doing sth) *or* give (sth) up to stop doing an activity or piece of work before you have completed it, usually because it is too difficult *32*

give yourself up to allow the police to catch you *51*

gloss over sth to avoid discussing something, or to discuss something without talking about the details in order to make it seem unimportant *6, 45*

be glued to sth to be watching something [esp. television] with all your attention *7*

go after sb to chase or follow someone in order to catch them *58*

go after / for sth to try to get something that you want [e.g. job] *58*

go against sth if something goes against a rule or something you believe in, it does not obey it or agree with it *53*

go ahead *slightly informal* something that you say to someone to give them permission to start to do something *30*

go ahead if an event goes ahead, it happens *58*

go-ahead *adj* using new methods and ideas to succeed *4*

go along with sth/sb to agree with someone's idea or opinion *23*

go around (swh) if an illness goes around, a lot of people get it *43*

go around doing sth if someone goes around doing something, they spend their time behaving badly or doing something that is unpleasant for other people *58*

go back over sth to examine or think about something again or after it has happened *58*

go back to sth if a situation goes back to a particular state, it returns to that state *20*

go by sth to use information or experience that you have of someone or something in order to help you decide what to do or what to think about that person or thing *58*

go down if a computer system goes down, it stops working *10, 58*

go down to become worse in quality *58*

go down if part of your body that is bigger than usual because of an illness or injury goes down, it starts to return to its usual size *43, 58*

go down to be remembered as part of something *10*

go down well-received *10*

go easy on sb to treat someone in a gentle way, especially when you want to be or should be more severe *30*

go for sb to attack someone *58*

go for sth if something goes for a particular amount of money, it is sold for that amount *58*

Go for it! something that you say to encourage someone to try and achieve something *30*

go forward if someone's name goes forward, it is suggested that that person should compete for an elected position or a job *58*

go in *informal* if a fact or piece of information goes in, you understand it and remember it *24*

go in if the sun or moon goes in, it becomes hidden behind a cloud *47*

go in to sth to choose a particular type of work as your job *31*

go into sth to describe, discuss, or examine something in a detailed way *6*

go into sth to start an activity, or start to be in a particular state or condition *58*

go off if a light or machine goes off, it stops working *54*

go off to happen in a particular way *58*

go off sb/sth to stop liking someone or something *5, 41*

go on to continue to exist or happen *4*

go on to talk in an annoying way about something for a long time *13*

Go on! something that you say to tell someone that you do not believe what they have just told you *30*

go on sth to use a computer or the Internet, or to visit a website *54*

go on at sb to criticise someone continuously *45*

Go on then! something that you say to encourage someone to do something *30*

go on to sth to start to do something after you have finished something else *32*

go on to swh to go to a particular place after going somewhere else *42*

go out if something which is burning [e.g. fire] goes out, it stops burning *14*

go out if the sea or the tide (= movement of the sea in and out) goes out, it moves away from the beach *47*

go out to sb if your thoughts or sympathies go out to someone, you feel very sorry for them when they are in a difficult situation *41*

go out together to have a romantic relationship *39*

go out with sb to have a romantic relationship *39*

go over sth to think about something that has happened or something that was said *33, 58*

go over to sth to leave one group or organisation and join a group or organisation that is competing against them *6, 58*

be going round in circles to use a lot of time and effort with no results *8*

go through if a law, plan, or deal goes through, it is officially accepted or approved *23, 53*

go through sth to experience an unpleasant or difficult situation or event *58*

go to (swh) to click on a menu, a menu item, a particular web page or part of a page, or a link when using a computer *54*

go up if a shout [e.g. cheer, cry, groan] goes up, a lot of people make that noise at the same time *21*

go up if a building or sign goes up, it is built or it is fixed into position *49*

go with sth to accept a plan or an idea, or to support the person whose ideas you agree with *22, 23*

gobble down/up sth *or* gobble sth down/up *informal* to eat very quickly *55*

gobble up sth *or* gobble sth up *informal* to use a lot of something, especially money *36*

grapple with sth to try to deal with or understand a difficult problem or subject *24*

grasp at sth to quickly use or accept an opportunity to do or have something, especially because you are unhappy with the present situation *28*

grate on sb/sth if something, especially someone's voice or way of behaving, grates on you, it annoys you *21*

grow out of sth if a child grows out of an interest, way of behaving, or illness, they stop having or doing it because they have become older *40*

Grow up! *informal* something that you say to an adult in order to tell them to stop behaving stupidly *30*

gun down sb *or* gun sb down to shoot someone and kill or seriously injure them, often when they cannot defend themselves *10*

be gunning for sb informal to try to harm someone or cause trouble for them *6*

hack into sth to get into someone else's computer system without permission in order to look at information or do something illegal *6*

hammer out sth *or* hammer sth out to reach an agreement after a lot of argument or discussion *23*

hand in sth *or* hand sth in to tell your boss officially that you do not want to do your job anymore *31*

Hang about/on! something that you say to tell someone to stop doing or saying something *30*

hang about/around/round with sb *informal* to spend time with someone *6*

hang back to not move forwards, usually because you are shy or afraid *46*

hang on sth to depend on something *13*

hang on to/onto sth/sb to keep someone or something *19*

hang out *informal* to spend a lot of time in a particular place, or to spend a lot of time with someone *42*

hang over sb/sth if a problem or threat hangs over a person or situation, it exists and makes people worry about what is going to happen *28*

hanker after/for sth to want something very much, especially something you know you should not want *5, 41*

happen on sb/sth to find something or meet someone without planning to *13*

harp on to talk continually about something in a way that other people find boring or annoying *13*

have sth against sb/sth to dislike or disagree with someone or something for a particular reason *41*

have sb down as sth to think that someone is a particular type of person, especially when they are not in fact like that *40*

have off sth *or* have sth off to spend time away from work *12*

have on sth *or* have sth on if you have an electrical device [e.g. television, radio, iron] on, it is operating so that you can use it *37*

have on sth *or* have sth on if you have clothes or shoes on, you are wearing them *38*

head off swh to begin a journey or to leave *5*

head off sth *or* head sth off to prevent a difficult or unpleasant situation from happening *51*

head up sth *or* head sth up to be in charge of an organisation *35*

heal up if a wound heals over, new skin grows over it *43*

hear from sb to receive news or information from someone, usually by letter or telephone *39*

have/had heard of sb/sth to know a little about someone or something because you have read, seen, or been told something about them before *39*

not hear of sth *or* not hear of sb doing sth to not allow something, or not allow someone to do something *22*

help sb to sth to put food onto a plate for yourself *55*

hinge on sth to depend on something or be very influenced by it *13*

hit on sth to have a good idea, especially one that solves a problem *5, 24*

hit out to strongly criticise something or someone *7*

hoard away sth *or* hoard sth away to put a supply of something in a safe place so that you can use it in the future *25*

hold back sb/sth *or* hold sb/sth back to prevent something from working effectively, or to prevent someone or something from making progress *1*

hold down sb *or* hold sb down to limit the freedom of a group of people *1*

hold forth to talk about a particular subject for a long time, often in a way that other people find boring *45*

hold off to not start, although you expect it to *48*

Hold on! to tell someone to stop doing something for a very short while *30*

hold out to continue to defend yourself against an enemy or attack *51*

hold out for sth to wait until you get what you want and to refuse to accept anything less *1*

hold over sth *or* hold sth over to delay something and to arrange to do it at a later time *16*

hook up US informal to meet someone for a particular purpose *42*

huddle up to move closer to other people, or to hold your arms and legs close to your body, usually because you are cold or frightened *44*

hurry along to make someone do something more quickly, or to make something happen more quickly *16*

Hurry up! *informal* to tell someone to move more quickly or do a task more quickly *30*

hush up sth *or* hush sth up to stop the public from finding out about something bad that has happened *52*

impact on sth/sb *slightly* formal to have a noticeable effect on *17*

impose sth on sb *formal* to force a group of people to accept something, or to give someone a punishment [e.g. fine, ban] *53*

improve on sth to do something in a better way or with better results than when it was done before *34*

inform on sb to give information about someone who has done something wrong to a person in authority, especially the police *53*

input *n* contribution to a system to help it operate *3*

insist on sth/doing sth to demand something and to make it clear that you will not accept anything else *34*

intake *n* the number of people who begin to study at a school, or who join an organisation at a particular time *60*

interest sb in sth to try to persuade someone that they want something *34*

invest sth in sth to use a lot of time or effort trying to achieve something or trying to make something successful *34*

iron out sth *or* iron sth out to find a way of solving small difficulties or problems, or to find a way of ending a disagreement *28*

jazz up sth *or* jazz sth up to make something more attractive or interesting *15*

join in (sth) to become involved in an activity with other people *51*

join up to join the army, navy, or airforce *51*

jot down sth *or* jot sth down to write something down quickly (so that you remember it) *33*

jut out to stick out from a surface or beyond the edge of something *14*

keep (sb) ahead to continue to be more advanced and successful than other people, or to make sure that someone is more advanced or successful than other people *59*

keep at sth to continue to do something (until it is finished) *59*

keep back sth *or* keep sth back to not tell someone everything you know about a situation or an event that has happened *59*

keep down sth *or* keep sth down if you keep the noise of something [e.g. music, voice] down, you stop it from becoming too loud *21, 59*

keep sb/sth from doing sth to prevent someone from doing something, especially work, by spending time with them *59*

keep sb in to make a child stay at school or at home, especially as a punishment *59*

keep in with sb *British & Australian* to continue to be friendly with someone, especially because they can help you *5, 59*

keep (sb) off sth to not eat, drink or use something that can harm you *59*

keep on *slightly* informal to talk in an annoying way about something for a long time *13*

keep on doing sth to continue to do something, or to do something again and again *59*

keep out of sth to not become involved in something *59*

keep to sth if you keep to the point, you do not write or talk about other topics *59*

keep sth to yourself to keep something secret *59*

keep up to be able to understand or deal with something that is happening or changing very fast *24, 59*

keep it up to continue to do something, especially to work hard or to do good work *30, 59*

keep sb up to make someone go to bed later than they usually do *59*

keep up sth *or* keep sth up to not allow something that is at a high level to fall to a lower level *59*

kick off (sth) *informal* to start *12*

kick off sth *or* kick sth off to remove your shoes by shaking your feet *12*

kick out sb *or* kick sb out to force someone to leave a place or an organisation *14*

knock sb about/around *informal* to hit or kick someone several times *9*

knock sth about/around *informal* to consider an idea *9*

knockabout *n British informal* when two or more people kick or hit a ball to each other for pleasure but not in a serious way, sometimes to warm up before a game *3*

knock down sb *or* knock sb down to cause someone to fall to the ground by pushing or hitting them *2*

knock down sb/sth *or* knock sb/sth down *informal* to reduce a price, or to persuade someone to reduce the price of something that they are selling *10, 26*

knock down sth *or* knock sth down to destroy and remove a building or part of a building [esp. wall] *2*

knock out sb *or* knock sb out to make someone become unconscious or to make someone fall asleep *20, 43*

knock over sb *or* knock sb over to hit someone with a vehicle and injure or kill them *50*

know sth from sth to know the difference between something and something else, so that you can recognise either of them *25*

know of sb/sth to have heard of someone or something and to be able to give some information about them, but not very much *39*

knuckle down to start to work or study hard, especially if you have not been working very hard before *31*

land (sb) in sth to be in a difficult situation, or to cause someone to be in a difficult situation or an unpleasant place [e.g. prison] *28*

land up *informal* to finally be in a particular place, state, or situation, especially without having planned it *15*

lash out to criticise someone or something in an angry way *14*

lay out sth *or* lay sth out to design the way in which a house, city, or garden is built or created *49*

lead into sth if a subject you are talking about or a discussion leads into another subject or discussion, it is the reason why you start talking about the second subject or start the second discussion *45*

lead-in something that introduces something else *11*

lead on sb *or* lead sb on to make someone do something bad by encouraging them or annoying them until they do it *13*

lead to sth if an action or event leads to something, it causes that thing to happen or exist *17*

lead up to sth if a period of time or a series of events leads up to an event or activity, it happens until that event or activity begins *16*

leak out if secret information leaks out, people who should not know this information find out about it *51*

lean towards sth/doing sth to support, or begin to support, a particular set of ideas or a particular political party *22*

leap out at sb if something leaps out at you, you notice it immediately *24*

leave behind sb *or* leave sb behind to make progress much faster than someone else *32*

leave off (sth/doing sth) to stop, or to stop doing something *12*

left out *adj* if someone feels left out, they are unhappy because they have not been included in an activity or conversation *4*

let in if something lets in water, air, or light, it allows water, air, or light to enter it through a hole or opening *11*

let off sb *or* let sb off to not punish someone who has committed a crime or done something wrong, or to not punish someone severely *53*

let off steam to talk or act in a way that helps get rid of strong feelings *8*

let out sb/sth *or* let sb/sth out to allow a person or animal to leave somewhere, especially by opening a locked or closed door *53*

let out sth *or* let sth out to make a piece of clothing wider by removing the sewing from the side edges and then sewing closer to the edge of the material *38*

let out sth *or* let sth out to tell someone about something which was supposed to be a secret *52*

let down sth *or* let sth down to make a piece of clothing longer by removing the sewing from the bottom folded edge and then sewing closer to the edge of the material *38*

letdown *n* something which is not as good as you thought it would be *3, 42*

level off/out if a rate or amount levels off, it stops rising or falling and it stays at the same level *26*

level with sb *informal* to tell the truth about something *52*

lie about/around (swh) if things are lying around, they are untidily left in places where they should not be *9*

lift-off *n* the moment when a spacecraft leaves the ground *3*

lift up sth *or* lift sth up to move something from a lower to a higher position *15*

light up (sth) *or* light (sth) up if your face or eyes light up, or if something [e.g. smile] lights them up, you suddenly look very happy or excited *40*

line up sth *or* line sth up to move something in order to make it straight or level with something else *25*

listen out for sth to make an effort to hear a noise which you are expecting *21*

live-in *adj* a live-in nanny lives at the home of the children she cares for *4*

live on to continue to exist *13*

live with sth to accept a difficult or unpleasant situation and continue with your life while it exists *28*

lockout *n* when workers are prevented from entering their place of work until they agree to particular conditions given by the employer *1*

lock up (sth) *or* lock (sth) up to lock all the doors and windows of a building when you leave it *37*

log in/into sth to connect a computer to a system of computers by typing your name or password, usually so that you can start working *6*

look after sb/sth to take care of someone or something by doing what is needed to keep them well or in good condition *2*, 6

look after sth to be responsible for dealing with something *35*

look at sb/sth to focus on somebody/something *33*

look down on sb/sth to think that someone is less important than you, or to think that something is not good enough quality for you to use *2*

look for sth/sb to try to find something or someone, either because you have lost them or because you need them *2*

look forward to sth/doing sth to feel pleased and excited about something that is going to happen *1*, 2

look into sth to investigate or find out about something *33*

lookout *n* a person who looks at what is happening in the area around them, especially in order to watch for any danger *3*

loosen up to relax mentally *41*

loosen up (sth) *or* loosen (sth) up to prepare your body muscles for a physical activity by stretching and doing simple exercises *44*

lose out to to be less successful than *27*

magic away sth *or* magic sth away to make something disappear so quickly that it seems as if you have used magic *19*

major in sth *US & Australia* to study something as your main subject at university *32*

make out sth to claim falsely that something is true; to pretend *52*

make up for sth if someone makes up for something bad that they have done, they do something good so that the bad thing does not cause a problem any more *28*

make up for lost time to do something to compensate for not doing it previously *8*

make up your mind to make a decision about something *8*

mark down sb *or* mark sb down to give someone a lower result in an exam or competition because they have made a mistake or done something wrong *2, 32*

mist over if your eyes mist over, they become filled with tears which stop you from seeing clearly *48*

mist over/up if something made of glass [e.g. windscreen, glasses] mists up, or if something mists it up, it becomes covered with small drops of water and you cannot see through it any more *48*

be mixed up with sb to be involved with someone who has a bad influence on you *39*

mock-up *n* a model showing how something will look when it is built *49*

mop up (sth) *or* mop (sth) up to use a cloth or a mop to remove a liquid that has been dropped or that has spread *37*

move away to leave the place or area where you live and go and live in another place *42*

move in to begin living in a new house or area *47*

move (sb) in/into (swh) to go to a place to deal with a difficult situation *51*

move on to move forward in one's life and not look back to the past *42*

move up (sb) *or* move (sb) up if a student moves up, or if a teacher moves them up, they are put in a higher level or class *2, 32*

muck up sth *or* muck sth up *informal* to do something very badly *6*

mull over sth *or* mull sth over to think carefully about something for a long time, often before making a decision *29*

nail down *informal* to make a decision about all the details of something *23*

nod off *informal* to fall asleep when you do not intend to go to sleep *43*

nose about/around (swh) *informal* to look around a place, often in order to find something *7*

object to sb/sth/doing sth to feel or say that you oppose or dislike something or someone *34*

occur to sb if a thought or idea occurs to you, it comes into your mind *24*

off-putting *adj* slightly unpleasant or worrying so that you are discouraged from getting involved in any way *4*

offset *adj* if something is offset by something else it is compensated for *49*

offshoot *n* plant which has developed from a larger plant *47*

ongoing *adj* if a problem is ongoing, it continues to be a problem *4*

onset *n* the moment at which something unpleasant starts *1*, 3

open off sth if an area opens off another area, you can enter one from the other directly *49*

open up (sth) *or* open (sth) up if a country or area opens up, or is opened up, it becomes easier to travel around it or sell things to it *15*

open up (sth) *or* open (sth) up to create a new opportunity or possibility *15, 19*

outbreak *n* a sudden beginning of something, especially something unpleasant *3*

outdated *adj* old-fashioned and therefore not as good or as fashionable as something that is modern *4*

outgoing *adj* if someone is outgoing, they are friendly and energetic and find it easy and enjoyable to be with others *1*, 4

outlook *n* the likely future situation *3*

output *n* an amount of something, produced by a person, machine, factory or country *3*

outspoken *adj* if someone is outspoken, they express their opinions even though other people might be offended by them *4, 40*

outstretched *adj* if someone's arms are outstretched they are held out in front of the person's body, often in order to greet someone *4*

overcast *adj* if the sky is overcast, it is grey and covered in cloud *47*

overkill *n* when there is more of something than is needed *3*

overpriced *adj* too expensive *4*

pack in sth *or* pack sth in *informal* to manage to do a lot of activities in a period of time *27*

pack in sth *or* pack sth in *informal* to stop doing something, especially a job *31*

paper over sth to hide a disagreement or difficulty and try to make people believe that there is no problem *52*

part with sth to give something away, usually when you do not want to *37*

pass by (swh) *British* to visit somewhere for a short time, usually while you are going somewhere else *42*

pass sb by if an event or opportunity passes you by, you do not notice it or you do not get any advantage from it *16*

pass off *British & Australian* if an event passes off in a good way, it happens in that way *51*

pass on sth *or* pass sth on to give a disease to another person or animal *43*

pass over sb *or* pass sb over to not give someone a job or a higher position and give it to someone else who is younger or less experienced *31*

patch up sth *or* patch sth up to try to improve your relationship with someone after an argument *39*

pay sth into sth to put money into a bank account, often to save money for a particular purpose *36*

peal out when bells ring loudly, they peal out *21*

pelt down *informal* to rain very heavily *48*

pep up sth/sb *or* pep sth/sb up informal to make something more interesting or attractive, or to make someone feel more active or energetic *15*

perk up (sb) *or* perk (sb) up to suddenly become happier or more energetic, or to make someone feel this way *41*

peter out if an energetic activity or a strong emotion peters out, it gradually becomes less energetic or strong until it stops completely *19*

pick at sth to eat only a small amount of a meal because you are not hungry or because you are feeling ill *55*

pick out sth/sb *or* pick sth/sb out to choose one thing or person or several things or people from a large group *14*

pick up if the wind picks up, it becomes stronger *1*

pick up if something [e.g. business, economy, trade] picks up, it improves or increases after a bad period *1*

pick up to lift something by using a bill (birds) *47*

pick up (sth) ***or*** **pick (sth) up** to start something again [e.g. story, relationship] from the point where you had stopped *1*

pick up sth if you pick up speed, you suddenly start to go faster *50*

pick up sth ***or*** **pick sth up** to buy something cheaply *1*

pick up sth ***or*** **pick sth up** to learn a new skill or language by practising it rather than being taught it *1*

pick up sth ***or*** **pick sth up** if a device picks up a signal or programmes broadcast by a radio station, it receives them *1, 54*

pick up sth ***or*** **pick sth up** to learn interesting or useful information [e.g. idea, tip, gossip] from someone or something *24, 51*

pick up sth ***or*** **pick sth up** to get an infectious illness from someone or something *43*

pick up sth/sb ***or*** **pick sth/sb up** to collect someone who is waiting for you, or to collect something that you have left somewhere or that you have bought *1*, 2, 50

pick up sth/sb ***or*** **pick sth/sb up** to lift something or someone by using your hands *1, 15*

pick up on sth to react to something that you have noticed or something that has happened *15*

pick yourself up to stand up again after you have fallen *44*

piece together sth ***or*** **piece sth together** to try to understand a situation or to try to discover the truth about something by collecting different pieces of information and considering them at the same time *24*

pile into swh to enter a place or vehicle quickly and not in an organised way *46*

pile out (of) to leave a place or vehicle quickly and not in an organised way *46*

pile up (sth) ***or*** **pile (sth) up** to become a pile, or to make a lot of things into a pile by putting them on top of each other *25*

pin down sb ***or*** **pin sb down** to force someone to stay in a horizontal position by holding them *10*

pitch in to help with work that needs to be done *11*

play along to pretend to agree with someone, or to do what someone wants for a short time, in order to get something from them or to avoid making them angry *52*

play about/around to behave in a stupid way *9*

play sb off against sb to encourage one person or group to compete against or argue with another, hoping that you can get some advantage from this situation *29*

play on sth if someone plays on your fears or weaknesses, they use them to try and make you do what they want, often in a way that is unfair *29*

play with sth if you play with the idea of doing something, you consider it, but usually do not do it *24*

plough back sth ***or*** **plough sth back** to put money that you have earned into a business, in order to make the business bigger or better *36*

plug away *informal* to work hard at something for a long time *31*

plug into sth if a piece of electrical equipment plugs into a supply of electricity or another piece of electrical equipment, it works by being connected to that supply of electricity or that piece of equipment *54*

plump up sth ***or*** **plump sth up** to make something [e.g. cushion, pillow] rounder and softer, especially by shaking it *37*

point to/towards sth if one thing points to something else, it makes it seem likely that it is true *17*

point out sb/sth ***or*** **point sb/sth out** to highlight *33*

pop-up adverts *n* advertisements that open quickly on a computer screen in front of what you are working on *54*

pore over sth to study or look carefully at something, especially a book or a document *5, 32*

potter about/around (swh) *British & Australian* to spend time in a pleasant, relaxed way, often doing small jobs in or around the house *9*

predispose sb to/towards sth formal predisposing someone to something makes it more likely that that thing will happen *6*

preside over sth *formal* to be in charge of an event or situation and have official responsibility for it *6*

press on to continue doing something in a determined way *13, 19*

prey on sth to catch for food *47*

pride yourself on sth/doing sth (always reflexive) to be proud of a quality you have or of something you do *27, 40*

print off sth *or* print sth off to print a particular number of copies of something *6, 54*

profit from sth/doing sth to get an advantage from something *34*

prop up sth *or* prop sth up to make something stay in a particular position by putting something underneath or against it *25*

prop yourself up to support yourself by leaning on or against something *15*

provide for sth *formal* if a law or agreement provides for something, it allows it to happen or exist *53*

pull down sth *or* pull sth down to destroy a structure because it is not wanted anymore *47*

pull on sth to put on clothes quickly *38*

pull out to drive to a different part of the road, usually a part where the vehicles are travelling faster *50*

pull out all the stops to do everything you can *8*

pull out to move military troops to a different area *51*

pull over sb/sth *or* pull sb/sth over if the police pull someone who is driving a car over, they order them to drive the car to the side of the road and stop *50*

pull (sb) through (sth) to succeed in dealing with a difficult period of your life, or to help someone else to do this *27*

pull sth to to close a door or window by pulling it towards you *37*

pull up to move a piece of furniture [esp. chair] near to something or someone *37*

pull up sth *or* pull sth up to remove something from the ground *47*

pull your socks up to make an effort to improve *16*

push sb about/around/round to tell someone what to do in a rude or threatening way *20*

push on to continue travelling somewhere *46*

push over sb/sth *or* push sb/sth over to push someone or something so that they fall to the ground *20*

push through sth *or* push sth through to make a plan or suggestion be officially accepted *29*

push sth to to close a door or window by pushing it *37*

push up sth *or* push sth up to increase the amount, number, or value of something *26*

put aside sth/sb *or* push sth/sb to save money for a particular purpose *36*

put away sth *or* put sth away to put something in the place where it is usually kept *37*

put back sth *or* put sth back to change the date or time of an event so that it happens later than planned *16*

put sth behind sb if you put an unpleasant experience behind you, you forget it so that it does not affect your life *18*

put by sth *or* put sth by to save an amount of money in order to use it later *36*

put down sb *or* put sb down to put someone's name on a list or document, usually in order to arrange for them to do something *10*

put down sth *or* put sth down to kill an animal because it is very old or very ill *10*

put down sth *or* put sth down to use force to stop people opposing the government *51*

put down roots to settle down and make a relationship more permanent *8*

put sth down to sth to think that a problem or bad experience is caused by something else *17*

put forward sth *or* put sth forward to state an idea or opinion, or to suggest a plan, so that it can be considered or discussed *6*

put in a good word for someone to say good things about someone to people in authority *8*

put on sth *or* put sth on if a person or animal puts on weight, they become heavier *26, 55*

put sb on sth to give someone a particular type of medical treatment or food *43*

put out sth *or* put sth out to produce information [e.g. statement, warning, press release] and make it available for everyone to read or hear *6, 51*, 53

put out sth *or* put sth out to put something outside the house, especially so that it can be collected *37*

put sb through sth to pay for someone to study at college or university *32*

put sth to sb to ask someone a question, or to state an opinion to someone which they are likely to disagree with *45*

put together sth *or* put sth together to prepare, or organise something *33*

put up sth *or* put sth up to fasten a piece of furniture [e.g. shelves, cupboard] to a wall or assemble something *37*

put up with sb/sth to tolerate unpleasant behaviour or an unpleasant situation *2*

ramble on to talk or write for a long time about things that are not interesting to other people *13*

rank (sth) among sth to have a particular position in a list that has been arranged in order of quality *25*

read on to continue reading and read the next part of something *13*

read up on sb/sth to do background reading on *33*

reason with sb to try to persuade someone not to do something stupid by giving them good reasons not to *29*

rebound on sb if a negative action rebounds on someone, it has a bad effect on the person who did it and they do not achieve what they were trying to achieve *17*

reduce sth to sth to destroy something that has been built [e.g. building, city] *49*

reel off sth *or* reel sth off to say a long list of things quickly and without stopping *45*

refer to sb/sth if writing or information refers to someone or something, it describes or is about that person or thing *34*

reflect on sth *slightly* formal to think very hard about something, or to express your thoughts about something in what you say or write *24*

relate to sth to be connected to a particular subject, or to be about a particular subject *34*

rely on sth/sb to need something or someone in order to survive, be successful, or work correctly *13*

remind sb of sb/sth to cause someone to think of someone or something *18*

rent out sth *or* rent sth out if you rent out something that you own [e.g. house], you allow someone to pay you money so that they can use it *36*

resign yourself to sth to accept that something we do not want to happen will happen *28*

resort to sth/doing sth to do something bad in order to achieve what you want, often because it is the only thing you can do to achieve it *28*

result in sth to cause something to happen, or to make a situation exist *17, 34*

rev up sth *or* rev sth up to make a vehicle's engine work faster while the vehicle is not moving *50*

be riddled with sth be full of something, especially something bad or unpleasant *5, 28*

ride on sth if something important [e.g. reputation, money] rides on something else, it depends on it *13*

rise above sth to not allow something bad that is happening or being done to you to upset you or to affect your behaviour *27*

roll about/around *informal* to laugh a lot about something *9*

roll in if money or requests for money [e.g. bills] roll in, they arrive in large numbers *36*

roll in if bad weather [e.g. clouds, fog] rolls in, it appears in large amounts *48*

Roll on sth! *British informal* something that you say in order to show that you are looking forward to a time or event *30*

roll out sth *or* roll sth out to make a new product, service or system available for the first time *53*

roll (sb/sth) over to turn from lying on one side of your body to the other side, or to make someone or something turn from one side to the other *1*

roll up to arrive at a particular place or event, usually late *42*

roll up sth *or* roll sth up to fold the edges of a piece of clothing that you are wearing [e.g. sleeves, trousers] in order to make them shorter *38*

be rooted in sth to be based on, or caused by *17*

root out sth/sb *or* root sth/sb out *informal* to search and find something or someone that is difficult to find *51*

rough out sth *or* rough sth out if you rough out a drawing or an idea, you draw or write the main parts of it without showing the details *24*

round down sth *or* round sth down to decrease a number to the nearest whole amount *26*

round off sth *or* round sth off to do something as a way of finishing an event or activity in a satisfactory way *12, 33*

round on sb to suddenly turn and attack someone, or shout at them angrily *20*

round up sb/sth *or* round sb/sth up to find and gather together a group of people or animals *25*

round up sth *or* round sth up to increase a number to the nearest whole amount *26*

rule out sth *or* rule sth out to say no to something *23*

run about/around to run and play *9*

run around/round after sb *informal* to do a lot of things for someone else, especially when they should be able to do more for themselves *9, 31*

run away with sb if something [e.g. emotions, imagination, enthusiasm] runs away with someone, it makes them do or think stupid things *41*

run-down *adj* shabby, in disrepair *49*

run into sth if you run into difficulties or problems, you begin to experience them *28*

run out if a supply of something runs out, there is none left because it has all been used *19*

run over to continue past the expected finishing time *7*

run over sb/sth *or* run sb/sth over to hit someone or something with a vehicle and drive over them, injuring or killing them *7*

run over sth to quickly read something or repeat something in order to remember it or to make sure that it is correct *7*

run rings round to outwit and be cleverer than people *8*

run through sth if you run through money, you spend a lot of it very quickly *36*

run through sth to explain or read something to someone quickly *45*

safeguard against sth to do things that you hope will stop something unpleasant happening *28*

sail through (sth) to succeed very easily, especially in a test, examination etc. *5, 27*, 32

be sandwiched between sb/sth *informal* to be in a small space in the middle of two people or things *7*

scrape by to manage to live when you do not have much money *36*

scrape through (sth) to manage with a lot of difficulty to succeed in something [e.g. exam] *32*

scream out (sth) *or* scream (sth) out to suddenly shout something in a loud voice, especially to get someone's attention *14*

screw up sb *or* screw sb up *informal* to make someone feel confused or unhappy about themselves and their life *40*

scroll down/up to move text or other information on a computer screen, in order to view a different part of it *6*

see about sth to deal with something, or to arrange for something to be done *25*

see sth through to continue doing a job or activity until it is finished, especially when it is difficult *31*

seize up if part of your body or a machine seizes up, it stops moving or working in the normal way *54*

sell up (sth) *or* sell (sth) up *British & Australian* to sell your house or business in order to go somewhere else or do something else *6*

send in sb *or* send sb in to send a group of people with special skills [e.g. police, troops] to deal with a difficult situation *1, 51*

send out sth *or* send sth out if a plant sends out something [e.g. roots, shoots], it grows *47*

send out for sth to telephone a restaurant and ask for food to be delivered to your home *55*

separate off sth *or* separate sth off to remove something from a large group of things *25*

separate out sb/sth *or* separate sb/sth out to divide a group of people or things into smaller groups *25*

serve up sth *or* serve sth up to put food on plates and in dishes for people to eat *55*

set aside sth *or* set sth aside to use something, especially time, for one purpose and no other purpose *16*

set back sb/sth *or* set sb/sth back to make something happen more slowly, or to make something happen later than it should happen *16*

set sb back (sth) *informal* to cost someone a particular amount of money, usually a large amount of money *36*

be set back if a building is set back, it is a little distance from the road *49*

set in if something unpleasant sets in, it begins and seems likely to continue *3, 11*

set off sth *or* set sth off to make something look attractive, usually by providing a very different colour *49*

set (sth/sb) on sb to attack someone, or to make a person or animal attack someone *3, 20*

set out to begin something with a specific aim *33*

set up (sth) *or* set (sth) up to get all the necessary equipment ready for a particular activity *54*

set up sth *or* set sth up to make arrangements so that something can happen or exist *15*

set up sb *or* set sb up to give someone the money that they need to start a business *35*

settle in (sth/swh) *or* settle (sb) in to begin to feel relaxed and happy in new surroundings *37*

settle for to agree to something which isn't your first choice *23*

settle on sth to agree on something *23*

shake off sb *or* shake sb off to succeed in escaping from someone who is following you *12*

shake up sb *or* shake sb up if an unpleasant experience shakes someone up, it makes them feel shocked and upset *41*

shake-up *n* when big changes are made to an organisation in order to improve it *1*

share out sth *or* share sth out to divide something into smaller amounts and give one amount to each person or thing in a group *14*

shine through (sth) if a quality that someone has shines through or shines through something, that quality is very easily noticed *40*

shoot down sb/sth *or* shoot sb/sth down *informal* to criticise someone's ideas or suggestions and refuse to consider them *6*

shoot down sb/sth *or* shoot sb/sth down to destroy an aircraft or make it fall to the ground by firing bullets or weapons at it *51*

shoot off *British & Australian* informal to leave somewhere very quickly *42*

shoot up if the number, amount, or rate of something shoots up, it increases very quickly *7*

shore up sth *or* shore sth up to strengthen or improve an organisation, agreement, or system that is not working effectively or that is likely to fail *15*

shout down sb *or* shout sb down to shout in order to prevent someone who is saying something that you disagree with from being heard *10*

shout out (sth) *or* shout (sth) out to suddenly shout something in a loud voice, especially to get someone's attention *14*

Shove off! something that you say when you are angry to tell someone to go away *12*

show in sb *or* show sb in to lead a visitor into a room where they have arranged to meet or wait for someone *11*

show off to show someone or something that you are proud of to a group of people *12*

show up if something shows up, it can be seen clearly or easily *15*

shrug off sth *or* shrug sth off to not worry about something and treat it as unimportant *12*

shut down (sth) *or* shut (sth) down if a machine shuts down or someone shuts it down, it stops operating *10*

shutdown *n* when a factory or business closes and stops working *1*

shut out sth *or* shut sth out to prevent a sound or light from being heard or seen *21*

shut (sb) up to stop talking or making a noise, or to make someone do this *30*

Shut up! to tell someone to stop talking *30*

side against sb to oppose a person or group in an argument *22*

side with sb to support a person or group in an argument *22*

sift through sth to examine a large collection of something, especially papers, usually in order to discover something or to decide what is important *25*

sign over sth *or* sign sth over to give someone else your property or legal rights to something by signing an official document *53*

sign up sb *or* sign sb up to arrange for someone to sign a document stating that they will work for you *35*

single out sb/sth *or* single sb/sth out to choose one person or thing from a large group in order to criticise or praise them *29*

size up sb/sth *or* size sb/sth up to carefully examine a situation or person in order to make a judgement *29*

sketch out sth *or* sketch sth out to roughly plan something *33*

skim through sth to read quickly without studying the details *32*

skirt around/round sth to avoid discussing a difficult subject or problem *9*

slam down sth *or* slam sth down to put something down with a lot of force *10*

sleep off sth *or* sleep sth off to sleep until you feel better, especially after too much alcohol *42*

slice up sth *or* slice sth up to cut or divide something into parts *55*

slim down (sth) *or* slim (sth) down to become smaller in size, often by employing fewer people, or to make something smaller *26*

slip away if a period of time slips away, it seems to pass quickly *16*

slog away *informal* to keep working very hard, usually for a long time *31*

smarten up (sb/sth) *or* smarten sb/sth up to make a person or a place look tidier *37*

smash up sth *or* smash sth up to badly damage or destroy something by hitting it many times *20*

smooth down sth *or* smooth sth down to press your hair or your clothes with your hands in order to make them flat *38*

smooth over sth *or* smooth sth over to settle a disagreement so that it's no longer a problem *23*

smooth over sth *or* smooth sth over to make a disagreement or problem seem less serious or more easy to deal with, especially by talking to the people involved in it *28*

snap out of sth *informal* to force yourself to stop feeling sad and upset *41*

be snowed under *informal* to have so much work that you have problems dealing with it *32*

oak up sth *or* soak sth up to enjoy the effects of an experience *49*

soak up sth *or* soak sth up if a dry substance soaks up a liquid, it absorbs it *55*

soldier on to continue doing something, although it is difficult or unpleasant *7*

sort out sth *or* sort sth out to successfully deal with a problem or difficult situation *2, 14*

sort out sth *or* sort sth out to arrange or organise things which are untidy *14*

sound out sb/sth *or* sound sb/sth out to talk to someone in order to discover what they think about an idea or plan *45, 51*

space out sth *or* space sth out to arrange things so that there is enough space or time between them *16, 25*

spill out (sth) *or* spill (sth) out if you spill out an emotion or if emotion spills out, you express it, usually by talking in an uncontrolled way *41*

spill over if a bad situation or problem spills over, it begins to have an unpleasant effect on another situation or group of people *28*

spill over (sth) if the liquid in a container spills over, it flows over the edge of the container *55*

spin out sth *or* spin sth out to make something continue for as long as possible *16*

split off to stop belonging to a particular group or political party and form a separate one *12*

split up (sth) *or* split (sth) up to divide into smaller parts or groups, or to divide something into smaller parts or groups *15*

spread out sth *or* spread sth out to open something that is folded [e.g. map, towel] and put it down flat on a surface *14*

spread out sth *or* spread sth out if you spread out your arms, legs, or fingers, you stretch them so that there are wide spaces between them *44*

spring sth on sb to tell someone some news that surprises them *13*

spring up if something springs up, it suddenly appears or begins to exist *19*

sprout up if a large number of things sprout up, they suddenly appear or begin to exist *19*

spur on sb *or* spur sb on to encourage someone to try harder in order to achieve something *7*

spy on sb/sth to watch secretly in order to discover information about them *52*

square up *informal* to pay someone the money you owe them *6, 36*

squash (sb) in to manage to get yourself or someone else into a very small space, or place that is full of people *11*

squash up if people who are sitting or standing together squash up, they move closer together in order to make space for someone else *46*

stack up if aircraft stack up, they fly over an airport at different heights waiting to be told they can land *50*

stack up sth *or* stack sth up to arrange things in a tall pile *25*

stake sth on sth/doing sth to risk losing money or harming something important [e.g. reputation] if a plan does not succeed *36*

stake out sth *or* stake sth out if the police or reporters stake out a building where someone is living or hiding, they watch the building continuously in order to see who is leaving or entering it *51*

stand back to move a short distance away from something or someone *46*

stand by to do nothing to prevent something unpleasant from happening *7*

standby *n* a person or thing that can be used if someone or something else is not available or cannot be used *1*, 3

stand for sth if a group of people stand for a set of ideas, they support those ideas, or if something stands for a particular idea, it represents that idea *22*

stand-off *n* when two groups fail to reach an agreement in talks *3*

stand up to rise from a sitting or lying position to a standing position *1*

stand up if an idea or claim stands up, it is proved to be correct when it is examined carefully *15*

start sb off to help someone to start an activity, especially a piece of work *12*

to start with to begin *33*

start-up *n* when a business or organisation is created and starts to operate *3*

steal away to leave a place quietly without anyone knowing *46*

steam up (sth) *or* steam (sth) up if a glass surface steams up, or if something steams it up, it becomes covered with very small drops of water *48*

be steeped in sth to have a lot of (particularly tradition or history) *49*

stem from sth if a problem or difficult situation stems from something, it is caused by it *17*

step aside to leave a job or position, especially so that someone else can do it *31*

stick by sth to continue to support or use a decision, opinion, or plan *22*

stick out sth *or* stick sth out to push part of your body forward or out from the rest of your body *44*

stick up if part of something sticks up, it comes up above the surface of something, or it points upwards *15*

stick up for sth to defend or fight for something important [e.g. rights] *22*

stick with sb if something sticks with you, you remember it *18*

stir up sth *or* stir sth up if something stirs up memories, it makes you remember events in the past, usually ones that make you feel sad *18*

store up sth *or* store sth up to remember things, usually so that you can tell people about them later *18*

storm out to leave a place in an angry way *48*

stow away to hide on a ship, aircraft, or other vehicle, in order to travel secretly or without paying *3, 50*

stowaway *n* a person who stows away *3, 50*

straighten up sth *or* straighten sth up to make a place tidy *37*

stream into swh to move continuously in one direction, especially if a lot of people do this at the same time *5*

stretch out if an area of land stretches out, it continues over a long distance *49*

stretch out sth *or* stretch sth out to hold a part of your body straight out in front of you *44*

strike back (at) to attack someone who has attacked you *1, 20*

strike out to start doing something that you have not done before *7*

strike up sth to start a conversation or relationship with someone *39*

stumble on sth/sb to find or meet by chance *46*

succeed in sth/doing sth to achieve something that you have been trying to get or do *27*

suck up to sb *informal* to try to make someone who is in a position of authority like you by doing and saying things that will please them *39*

sum up (sth/sb) *or* sum (sth/sb) up to describe briefly the most important facts or characteristics of something or someone *6*

sum up sb/sth *or* sum sth/sb up if something sums up someone or something, it represents the most typical qualities of that person or thing *34*

summon up sth *or* summon sth up if something summons up a memory or an image, it makes you remember something or think about something *18*

summon up sth *or* summon sth up to try hard to find a particular quality [e.g. courage, energy] in yourself because you need it in order to do something *41*

swear by sth to believe that something is very effective and that it will always work well *22*

sweep aside sth *or* sweep sth aside to refuse to think about something or let it affect your performance *7*

swing around/round to suddenly turn around so that you can see someone or something behind you *44*

switch around/round to move two or more things, so that each of them is now in the place that one of the others was in before *9*

switch off to stop giving your attention to something or someone *12*

tail off to decrease in amount or level *26*

take sb aback if something takes you aback, you are very surprised by it *60*

take along sb/sth *or* take sb/sth along to take someone or something with you when you go somewhere *60*

take away sb *or* take sb away to take someone with you when you stay somewhere for a short time *60*

take away sth *or* take sth away if you take away something [e.g. memory, impression, message] from an event or performance, you remember or think about that thing after the event or performance has finished *60*

take away from sth to make something seem less good or successful *60*

Take it away! something that you say in musical contexts to tell someone to start playing or singing *30, 60*

take down sth *or* take sth down to remove a large temporary structure from a place by separating it into pieces and taking the pieces away *60*

take down sth *or* take sth down to write something, especially something that someone says *10*

take off if an aircraft, bird, or insect takes off, it moves from the ground and begins to fly *60*

take off sth *or* take sth off to spend time away from your work *60*

take sb off sth to stop giving someone a particular type of medical treatment or food *60*

take sb off sth to stop someone doing a particular task *60*

take-off *n* imitation *60*

take on sth *or* take sth on to accept a particular job or responsibility and begin to do what is needed *6*

take out sb *or* take sb out to go somewhere and do something with someone, usually something that you have planned or paid for *42, 60*

take out sb/sth *or* take sb/sth out to kill someone, or to destroy something *60*

take sth out of sb *informal* to make someone feel very tired *43*

take over sth *or* take sth over to get control of a company by buying most of its shares (= the equal parts into which the ownership of the company is divided) *6*

take over sth *or* take sth over to get control of an area of land or a political organisation, usually by using force *47*

take the sting out of something to make something that is unpleasant less so *8*

take up sth *or* take sth up to start doing a particular job or activity *32*

take up sth *or* take sth up to shorten a piece of clothing [e.g. skirt, trousers] *38*

take up sth (with) *or* take sth up (with) to discuss something or deal with something *60*

take up sth *or* take sth up to use a particular amount of time, space or effort *60*

talk at sb to talk to someone without listening to them or allowing them to speak *45*

talk sb out of sth to persuade someone not to do something *23*

talk round sb *or* talk sb round to convince somebody to agree to your idea or opinion through a long discussion *23*

talk through sth *or* talk sth through to discuss all the details of something so that you can understand it or make a decision about it *24*

tend towards sth to be likely to choose a particular thing *29*

tense up if you tense up or your muscles tense up, your muscles stiffen because you are not relaxed *44*

test out sth *or* test sth out to test a theory or new idea by seeing how it works in a practical situation or by finding out what other people think of it *14*

thaw out if someone thaws out, they become warmer after they have been outside and have got very cold *44*

thin out if a large number of people or things thin out, they become fewer in number *26*

think through sth *or* think sth through to plan carefully *33*

think up sth *or* think sth up to create an idea or plan by using your imagination and intelligence *24*

thrash out sth *or* thrash sth out to discuss a problem, idea, or plan in detail until you find a solution, reach an agreement, or make a decision *24*

throw off sth *or* throw sth off to succeed in getting rid of a slight illness *43*

throw out sth *or* throw sth out if people in authority throw out a plan or idea [e.g. bill, proposal] they refuse to accept or use it *53*

throw the baby out with the bathwater to get rid of the good parts of something as well as the bad parts *8*

tick off sb *or* tick sb off *British & Australian* to tell someone that they have done something wrong and that you are angry about it *12*

tick off sth *or* tick sth off to mark something with a tick *32*

tie back sth *or* tie sth back to fasten something that usually hangs down [esp. hair] so that it is fixed in position and not hanging down *2, 38*

tie down sth/sb *or* tie sth/sb down to fasten something or someone in a particular position, especially by using ropes *10*

tie sb down to stop someone from being free to do what they want to do *10, 29*

tighten up sth *or* tighten sth up to make rules more limiting and more difficult to avoid *53*

tire out sb *or* tire sb out to make someone very tired *43*

tired out *adj* completely exhausted *4*

toss (sb) for sth to decide which person or team can do something or have something by throwing a coin in the air and guessing which side of the coin will be on top when it lands *29*

toss-up *n informal* a situation in which two people or things seem equally likely to be chosen or two possible results seem equally likely to happen *3*

toughen up to become stronger and more able to deal with problems, or to make someone become this way *40*

toughen up sth *or* toughen sth up to make rules more limiting and more difficult to avoid *53*

toy with sth to consider something or doing something, but not in a very serious way and without making a decision *29*

trail off to gradually become quieter and then stop *21*

treat sb to sth to buy or pay for something for someone else *42*

trip over (sth) to fall or almost fall because you have accidentally hit your foot against something while walking or running *46*

tune into sth to turn on the radio or television in order to listen to or watch a particular programme *54*

turn (sb) against sth/sb to decide not to like or agree with someone or something, or to make someone do this *41*

turn around/round (sb/sth) *or* turn (sth/sb) around/round to turn so that you are facing the opposite direction, or to make someone or something do this *9, 44*

turn around/round sth *or* turn sth around change an unsuccessful business, plan or system so that it becomes successful *9*

turn away sb *or* turn sb away to refuse to allow someone to enter a place, usually because there is no more space *42*

turn down sth *or* turn sth down to reduce the amount of sound or heat that is produced by a device [e.g. television, radio, oven] *10*

turn out sth *or* turn sth out if a company or business turns out something, they make or produce it *35*

turn over sth *or* turn sth over if a business or a company turns over an amount of money, it makes that amount in a particular period of time *6, 35*

turn up the heat to make a relationship more intense *8*

type in to write something using a computer *54*

type up sth *or* type sth up to rewrite in full using a computer *33*

upkeep *n* keeping a building in good condition, usually by providing money to repair it *59*

uptake *n* the number of people who have committed themselves to something *60*

usher in sth *formal* if an event ushers in a period of time in which new things or changes happen, it is at the beginning of that period or it causes those things to happen *11*

vote on sth to make a decision about something [e.g. proposal, motion] by counting the number of people for and against it *53*

vouch for sb to say that you know someone and that you can promise that they have a good character or good skills *40*

Wake up! *informal* something you say to tell someone to listen to what you are saying when they have not been listening *30*

wake up to the fact to be realistic *8*

walk away to stop being involved in a situation that is difficult to deal with or that does not give you any advantages *28*

walk in on sb to go into a room and see what someone is doing when they did not want anyone to see them *46*

walk-on *adj* a walk-on part in a play is a very small part with no words for the actor to speak *3*

walk out to stop working because of a disagreement with your employer *3, 51*

walkout *n* when workers stop working because of a disagreement with their employer *3*

want for *formal* if someone does not want for anything, they have everything they need in order to have a satisfactory life *6*

want out *informal* to want to leave a place *14*

warm to sb to start to like someone *39*

warm up to prepare your body muscles for a physical activity by stretching and doing simple exercises *44*

warm up (sth) ***or*** **warm (sth) up** if an engine or machine warms up, or if you warm it up, it starts working so that it becomes warm enough to work well *54*

warm up sb ***or*** **warm sb up** to make a group of people who are going to watch a performance start to enjoy themselves by entertaining them for a short time before the performance *7*

warm up sth ***or*** **warm sth up** to heat food that has already been cooked *7*

warm-up *n* when a performer makes a group of people who are going to watch a performance start to enjoy themselves by entertaining them for a short time before the performance *3*

wash away sth ***or*** **wash sth away** if water [e.g. rain, flood] washes something away, it carries it away *47*

wash down sth ***or*** **wash sth down** to clean a large object or surface [e.g. floor, walls] with a liquid *37*

wash down sth ***or*** **wash sth down** to drink something while you are eating food or taking medicine in order to help you swallow it *55*

washed out *adj* if someone looks washed out, they look tired, pale and ill *43*

waste away to gradually get thinner and weaker, usually because of illness *44*

Watch out! something you say to tell someone to be careful so that they can avoid danger or an accident *30*

watch over sb/sth to protect or take care of a person or animal *47*

water down sth ***or*** **water sth down** to add water to a drink, especially an alcoholic drink *10, 55*

water down sth ***or*** **water sth down** to make an idea or opinion less strong in order to make more people agree with it, or to make a plan or suggestion more acceptable *10, 55*

watered-down *adj* when something is made less strong in order to make people agree with it *4*

wear out (sth) ***or*** **wear (sth) out** to use something so much that it becomes weak or damaged and cannot be used any more, or to become weak and damaged in this way *4*

wear out sb ***or*** **wear sb out** to make someone very tired *1, 43*

weigh up sth ***or*** **weigh sth up** to thinking about something carefully, comparing *33*

whip up sth to try to make people feel strongly about something *51*

whittle away sth ***or*** **whittle sth away** ***or*** **whittle away at sth** to gradually reduce the size or importance of something until it does not exist any more *19*

win back sb/sth ***or*** **win sb/sth back** to persuade customers to return to using your company rather than competing companies because your company has improved *27*

win out if a particular emotion or type of behaviour wins out, it is stronger than other emotions or types of behaviour *27*

win round sb *or* win sb round to get other people to agree with your idea after a long discussion or argument *23*

win through to finally succeed after trying hard to achieve something *27*

wind up (sth) *or* wind (sth) up to finish an activity *19*

wipe off sth *or* wipe sth off to remove information stored on part of a computer [esp. memory, hard drive] *54*

wipe out sb *or* wipe sb out *informal* to make someone extremely tired *43*

wipe out sth *or* wipe sth out to destroy or get rid of something *20*

wire up sth/sb *or* wire sth/sb up to connect something or someone to a piece of electrical equipment by using electrical wires *54*

witter on *British informal* to talk for a long time about unimportant things *45*

wolf down sth *or* wolf sth down to eat something very quickly because you are very hungry *55*

work around/round sth to organise activities to ensure that a problem does not prevent you from doing what you want to do *9*

work yourself into sth to make yourself become very angry or upset *41*

work off sth *or* work sth off to do something energetic to stop yourself becoming fat after eating a lot of food *12*

work off sth *or* work sth off to reduce the size of a debt, either by earning money to pay for it or by working for the person you owe money to *36*

work out sth *or* work sth out to think carefully about how you are going to do something and to make a plan or decision *1, 29*

worked up *adj* if you are worked-up, you feel very upset, nervous or excited about something *4*

worm sth out of sb to manage to get information from someone which they are trying to keep secret *51*

worn-out *adj* weak and damaged through much use *1*, 4

wrap up sth *or* wrap sth up to complete an activity, especially successfully *15*

wring sth out of sb to force or persuade someone to give you money or information *45*

write out sth *or* write sth out to write (or rewrite) in full *33*

write up sth *or* write sth up to write something on paper or on a computer in a complete or final form, often using notes you have made *15, 51*

yell out (sth) *or* yell (sth) out to suddenly shout something in a loud voice, especially to get someone's attention *14*

zip along (sth) *informal* to move very quickly *46*

zip up sth *or* zip sth up to fasten a piece of clothing by using its zip (= a long metal or plastic fastener), or to help someone close the zip on a piece of clothing they are wearing *38*

CAMBRIDGE

English Phrasal Verbs in Use

70 units of vocabulary reference and practice

Self-study and classroom use

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

English Phrasal Verbs in Use

70 units of
vocabulary
reference and
practice

Self-study and
classroom use

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

Books in English.
KEL
M.T. de Alvear 1369 - Capital
Av. La Plata 63 - Caballito
Conde 1990 - Belgrano R.
Emilio Frers 2228 - Martínez
Italia 172 - Lomas de Zamora

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

PUBLISHED BY THE PRESS SYNDICATE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE
The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge, United Kingdom

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, UK
40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011–4211, USA
477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia
Ruiz de Alarcón 13, 28014 Madrid, Spain
Dock House, The Waterfront, Cape Town 8001, South Africa

http://www.cambridge.org

© Cambridge University Press 2004

This book is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without
the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2004
Third printing 2004

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

Typeface Sabon 10/12pt.   *System* QuarkXPress® [OD&I]

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN 0 521 52727 9 paperback

Contents

Acknowledgements 3
Using this book 4

Learning about phrasal verbs

1 Phrasal verbs: the basics
2 Phrasal verbs: what they mean
3 Particles in phrasal verbs
4 Nouns and adjectives based on phrasal verbs
5 Metaphor and register

Key verbs

6 Come
7 Get
8 Go
9 Look
10 Make
11 Put
12 Take

Key particles

13 Up
14 Out
15 Off
16 On and in
17 Down and over
18 Around and about
19 For and with
20 Through and back
21 Into and away

Concepts

22 Time: spending time
23 Time: passing of time
24 Location
25 Cause and effect
26 Change
27 Success and failure
28 Starting and finishing
29 Actions and movement
30 Destroying and reacting to destruction
31 Communication

Functions

32 Describing people and places
33 Describing public events
34 Describing situations
35 Giving and getting information
36 Solving problems

37 Decisions and plans
38 Disagreeing
39 Persuading
40 Praising and criticising
41 Exclamations and warnings

Work, study and finance

42 The classroom and learning
43 Student life: courses and exams
44 Student life: reading and writing
45 Work: jobs and career
46 Work: being busy
47 Money: salaries, bills, payments
48 Money: buying and selling
49 Business
50 Telephoning

Personal life

51 Feelings
52 Relationships
53 Relationships: problems
54 Secrets and conversations
55 Stages through life
56 Health
57 Sport
58 Homes and daily toutines
59 Socialising
60 Food and drink

The world around us

61 Weather
62 Travel
63 Driving
64 Technology
65 Computers
66 News
67 Crime
68 Power and authority
69 American and Australian phrasal verbs
70 New phrasal verbs

Key 146

Mini dictionary 183

Acknowledgements

This book, like all our other books in the *In Use* series, is the result of the work of many people. Cambridge University Press editors, reviewers, designers, marketing staff, sales and publicity staff have all contributed their advice and expertise, and there are just too many to name individually here. Particular thanks must, however, go to the following two people at Cambridge University Press: Nóirín Burke, whose expertise and vision have guided us throughout the writing of this book, and Martine Walsh, who has steered the project from its beginnings through to publication with consistent insight and thoroughness. We are very grateful to them both. We also owe a great deal to the Cambridge University Press lexicographers who worked with the Cambridge International Corpus to produce the *Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs*. We drew heavily on the database of this dictionary when selecting verbs to include in this book and when compiling the Mini dictionary at the back of this book.

We have also received invaluable feedback from both teacher and student reviewers. Their comments have had a great influence on the final manuscript and we are very grateful to them. In particular we would like to thank the following teachers, students and institutions from all over the world who reviewed and piloted the material throughout its development:

Kristi Alcouffe, Bonelles, France
Margarida Busatto, Sao Paulo, Brazil
Philippa Dralet, Paris, France
Gill Hamilton, Valencia, Spain
Olga Vinogradova, Moscow, Russia
Marilyn Woolff, London, UK
Kevin Rutherford, Warsaw, Poland
Julie Moore, Cambridge, UK
Eilwen David, Munich, Germany
Ewa Modrzejewska, Gdynia, Poland
Yuri Hara, Tokyo, Japan

Finally, as always, we would like to thank our domestic partners and loved ones for their unfailing support while we were taken up with this project.

Michael McCarthy and Felicity O'Dell

Development of this publication has made use of the Cambridge International Corpus (CIC). The CIC is a computerised database of contemporary spoken and written English, which currently stands at 600 million words. It includes British English, American English and other varieties of English. It also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, developed in collaboration with the University of Cambridge ESOL Examinations. Cambridge University Press has built up the CIC to provide evidence about language use that helps to produce better language teaching materials.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher has no reponsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content is or will remain appropriate.

Using this book

Why was this book written?

It was written to help you improve your knowledge of phrasal verbs in English. Phrasal verbs are verbs which have a main verb and a particle which, together, create one meaning (e.g. a plane *takes off* from the airport; an adult *looks after* a child). You will come across a great many phrasal verbs when you listen to and read English, and so it is important that you learn about their meanings and about how they are used. You can use this book either with a teacher or for self-study.

There are more than 5,000 phrasal verbs and related noun and adjective forms in use in English. This book focuses just on those phrasal verbs which you need to know for everyday spoken and written communication in English, and it aims to provide the information and practice which will help you understand and use them correctly.

How were the phrasal verbs in the book selected?

The approximately 1,000 phrasal verbs and related noun and adjective forms which are presented in this book were all selected from those identified as significant by the CANCODE corpus of spoken English, developed at the University of Nottingham in association with Cambridge University Press and the Cambridge International Corpus of written and spoken English. The phrasal verbs selected are also to be found in the *Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs,* where additional example sentences and usage notes will also be found. You can search this dictionary online by going to the following website: dictionary.cambridge.org

How is the book organised?

The book has 70 two-page units. The left-hand page explains the phrasal verbs that are presented in the unit. You will usually find an explanation of the meaning of each phrasal verb, an example of it in use and, where appropriate, any special notes about its usage. The right-hand page checks that you have understood the information on the left-hand page by giving you a series of exercises that practise the material just presented. The exercises pay particular attention to checking understanding of the phrasal verbs and how they are used, so that you will be able to use them accurately and appropriately.

The units are organised into different sections:

First we start with important information about phrasal verbs in general (Units 1–5): what they are, how their grammar works, and so on. This is an important training section, and we recommend you do these units first.

After the introductory units, there are units on the most common verbs which are used to form phrasal verbs (Units 6–12) and units on the most common particles found in phrasal verbs (Units 13–21).

The rest of the book teaches you the phrasal verbs which are associated with particular concepts (e.g. time), functions (e.g. giving and getting information) and topics (e.g. business, feelings, student life).

The book also has a key to all the exercises so that you can check your answers. At the back of this book you will find a useful Mini dictionary. This provides clear definitions of all the phrasal verbs and related noun and adjective forms that appear in this book. The Mini dictionary also indicates the unit number where you can find a particular phrasal verb.

How should I use this book?

It is strongly recommended that you work through Units 1–5 first so that you become familiar with the way phrasal verbs operate and with the terminology that is used in the rest of the book. After that, you may work on the units in any order that suits you.

What else do I need in order to work with this book?

You need a notebook or file in which you can write down the phrasal verbs that you study in this book as well as any others that you come across elsewhere.

You also need to have access to a good dictionary. We strongly recommend the *Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs* as this gives exactly the kind of information that you need to have about phrasal verbs. Your teacher, however, may also be able to recommend other dictionaries that you will find useful.

So, we hope that this book will help you understand and use new or difficult phrasal verbs that **crop up** (see Unit 44 – Student life: reading and writing) in your reading and listening in English and that, by the time you finish the units, you'll be saying: 'English phrasal verbs? Show me a new one and I'll **figure out** what it means in seconds!' (see Unit 69 American and Australian phrasal verbs).

1 Phrasal verbs: the basics

A What are phrasal verbs?

Phrasal verbs are verbs that consist of a verb and a particle.

verb	*particle*	*example*	*meaning*
look	**up**	You can **look up** any new words in your dictionary.	You can find the meaning of any new words in your dictionary.
get	**through**	I tried to phone her but I couldn't **get through**.	I tried to phone her but I couldn't get a connection.
make	**out**	I just can't **make** Jim **out** at all.	I just can't understand Jim's behaviour.

Particles are small words which you already know as prepositions or adverbs. Here are some of the most common phrasal verb particles: about (a)round at away back down for in into off on out over through to up

B What do I need to know about phrasal verbs?

First you need to know the meaning of the whole phrasal verb as a unit. The Mini dictionary in this book will help you. For example, look means to use your eyes and **up** means the opposite of down, but the phrasal verb look **up** can have several different meanings:

Look the word **up** in the dictionary. [look up = search for information in a book/computer]

I'll look you **up** nexr time I'm in London. [look up = visit someone you have not seen for a long time] Things are looking **up**. [look **up** = improve]

Next you need to know the grammar patterns of phrasal verbs, e.g. whether the verb takes an object. The table shows the way the grammar patterns are shown in this book and in many dictionaries. Note that sth means something; sb means someone.

grammar pattern	*comment*	*example*
eat out	the verb is used without an object	We were too tired to cook at home so we decided to **eat out**. [eat in a restaurant] Not: We decided to eat out ~~a meal.~~
bring back sth or **bring** sth **back**	the verb must have a non-human object	This photograph **brings back** happy memories. [makes me remember or think about something from the past] Not: This photograph brings back ~~my sister.~~
ask out sb or **ask** sb **out**	the verb must have a human object	I'd love to **ask** Sally **out**. [invite Sally to go to a place like a cinema or a restaurant] Not: I'd love to ask ~~my dog~~ out.
look after sb/sth	the object can be either human or non-human	I'll **look after** the baby while you're cooking. Will you **look after** my bike while I'm away?
ring sb **back**	the object must come before the particle	I'll **ring** you **back** later. [phone you again] Not: I'll ~~ring back you.~~
look after sb/sth	the object must come after the particle	Can you **look after** the dog while I'm away? Not: Can you ~~look the dog after~~ while I'm away?
drop off sb/sth or **drop** sb/sth **off**	the object can be before or after the particle	I **dropped off** the package at her house. [delivered/left] I **dropped** the package **off** at her house.

Exercises

1.1 **Underline the twelve phrasal verbs in these sentences.**

1 I sent off the order last week but the goods haven't turned up yet.
2 I came across an interesting book in the library. I took down the title. Here it is.
3 We asked some friends around to watch a film, but the video was playing up and it eventually broke down.
4 I brought up this problem at the last meeting. It's really time to sort out the problem.
5 I wish he'd stop messing us about! He's put the meeting off three times and now he wants to call it off altogether.

1.2 **Match the twelve phrasal verbs from sentences 1–5 in exercise 1.1 above with their meanings from the box below.**

cause inconvenience deal with stop working find invite home arrive
post cancel write postpone not work properly mention

1.3 **Decide which of these sentences contain errors. Explain why they are wrong and suggest a correct answer. Use the table in B to help you.**

1 That song you just sang brings back memories of my days at college.
2 She looked the children after when their mother was in hospital.
3 I promised to ring my brother back. He called earlier when I was busy.
4 We ate out a wonderful dinner last night.
5 It was a beautiful summer evening so I asked the cat out for a drink.

1.4 **Sometimes phrasal verbs are followed by a particular preposition to make three-part verbs. Try to learn these prepositions with the phrasal verbs. Look at these examples of three-part verbs, then complete the sentences below with a preposition from the box. Use a dictionary or the Mini dictionary at the back of this book if necessary.**

EXAMPLES I'm looking forward to the weekend.
She's been going out with him for six months now.

with against with on with

1 She seems to look down .... people who are less intelligent than her.
2 The school decided to **do away** .... the language lab as no-one was using it.
3 I **came up** .... a serious problem when I tried to save my work onto a disk.
4 How can some students **get away** .... doing no work and yet pass the exams?
5 Her son is so horrible. I don't know how she **puts up** .... him.

That's not what I meant when I said, 'Can you drop me off at the beach, please'!
TAXI

2 Phrasal verbs: what they mean

A The most common verbs

Here are the most common verbs that form part of phrasal verbs:

break bring call come cut get give go keep knock

look make pass pick pull put run set take turn

Units 6–12 deal with a selection of these verbs which form a large number of useful, everyday phrasal verbs.

B Meanings

The basic meanings of the verbs in A refer to concrete actions (e.g. *break* means separate into pieces), but when they are part of phrasal verbs, they often have abstract meanings too. Sometimes the concrete meaning can help you guess the abstract meaning, for example, you can **look back** to wave goodbye to someone as you leave in a car (concrete meaning – look behind you), or you can **look back** on your past life (abstract meaning – remember or recall).

verb	*concrete meaning*	*abstract meaning*
give	I **gave** my essay **in** yesterday. [handed it to the teacher]	Her parents finally **gave in** and let her go to the party. [agreed to something they had refused before]
get	She **got on** the bus. [entered]	Jim and Mary don't **get on**. [don't like each other and are not friendly to each other]
come	Would you like to **come round** this evening? [come to my home]	He was unconscious for three hours but **came round** in hospital. [became conscious again]

C Synonyms of phrasal verbs

A phrasal verb can often be replaced by a single verb with more or less the same meaning. The single-verb synonyms are often, but not always, more formal (see Unit 5, section C).

phrasal verb	*single-verb synonym*
put off	postpone
take off	remove
turn up	arrive

less formal	*more formal*
Let's **put off** the meeting until Friday.	Let's **postpone** the meeting until Friday.
Please **take off** your shoes when you enter the temple.	Please **remove** your shoes when you enter the temple.
Everyone **turned up** on time for the meeting.	Everyone **arrived** on time for the meeting.

TIP If you know a single-verb synonym of a phrasal verb, write it in your vocabulary notebook, and note whether or not the phrasal verb is more informal.

Exercises

2.1 Complete these sentences using verbs from the list in A opposite.

1 The car b.................................. down on the way to the airport.
2 The heavy snow blocked the roads and c.................................. the farm off completely.
3 It took him a long time to g.................................. over his illness.
4 It isn't easy to learn German but you must k.................................. on trying.
5 If you'd like a lift to the station tomorrow, I can p.................................. you up at 9 a.m.
6 This is a really stupid programme. Please t.................................. the TV off.

2.2 In which of the sentences in exercise 2.1 above could you put the particle in a different position?

2.3 Decide whether the phrasal verbs in these sentences are concrete or abstract in meaning, by writing C for concrete or A for abstract in the brackets.

EXAMPLE He looked up (C) and saw a hot-air balloon in the sky.

1 I would never go against ( ) my parents' wishes.
2 Shall I cut out ( ) this ad for the new CD player? We might want to buy one.
3 About five miles into our journey the engine cut out ( ) and we broke down ( ) completely. It was over an hour before the rescue service turned up ( ).
4 Do we need to dress up ( ) tonight or is it informal?
5 I shall never really appreciate what my grandparents went through ( ) during the war.

2.4 Replace the underlined verbs in these sentences with phrasal verbs made using the verbs and particles from the boxes below. If necessary, use the Mini dictionary at the end of this book.

make chase brush leave fall

up for out aside out

1 They just ignored my complaints; it made me very angry.
2 I believed his story about having lost all his money. How stupid I was!
3 I couldn't understand what he was saying with all the noise.
4 Could you pursue Janet's report? She promised it last week but I haven't seen it yet.
5 If you are phoning from outside the country, omit the first zero in the city code.

2.5 Use more formal equivalents from the box instead of the phrasal verbs in these sentences. Write the formal verbs in the correct form.

decline issue organise cancel escape

1 The government have put out a statement condemning the recent protests.
2 The union accepted the new pay deal and called off the strike.
3 The number of people not owning a TV set nowadays has gone down dramatically.
4 There was a disturbance in Blackmoor Prison yesterday and three prisoners got away.
5 Could you see to lunch for our visitors? There will be four of them.

3

Particles in phrasal verbs

This unit looks at the role of particles in phrasal verbs. A particle is either a preposition (e.g. from, to, with) or an adverb (e.g. out, up, about). You can create phrasal verbs by adding different particles to a basic verb.

A What do particles mean?

In some phrasal verbs the particle has a clear basic meaning. Look at the examples of different particles used with the verb *invite*. On the right, in speech bubbles, you can see what the original speaker probably said.

Jack **invited** me **out**.	Let's go out together.
Rosie **invited** me **in**.	Please come in!
Jill **invited** me **over**.	Come to our place.
Paul **invited** me **round**.	Come to my house for dinner or a drink.
Mark **invited** me **up**.	Come upstairs to my flat.
Susie **invited** me **along**.	Come with us!
Bill **invited** me **back**.	Come back home with me.

B What other meanings can particles have?

Most particles convey a number of different senses. For example, *over* can have various meanings, including:

(a) changing position, e.g. in **fall over** [fall to the ground] or **move over** [change the place where you are sitting or standing to make room for someone else].

(b) an idea of thoroughness, e.g. in **read over** [read throughly] or **talk over** [discuss something thoroughly before making a decision].

The meanings of particles are looked at in more detail in Units 13–21.

C Where does the particle go?

With verbs that have an object:

- Sometimes the particle has to go *before* the object of the verb, e.g. I'm **looking for** my keys (not: ~~I'm looking my keys for~~).
- Sometimes it must go *after* the object, e.g. I have a lot of work **on** (not: ~~I have on a lot of work~~).
- Sometimes the particle may go either *before* or *after* the object, e.g. The thunder **woke up** the children *or* The thunder woke the children **up**.

Note that if the object is a pronoun (e.g. him, them), then the particle must go *after* it, e.g. The thunder woke them up (not: ~~The thunder woke up them~~).

Exercises

3.1 Look at section A and then answer the questions about these sentences.

1 My brothers were going to the circus and they asked me along.
Did the speaker go the circus on her own, with her brothers or do we not know for sure?
2 When I took Di a birthday present, she asked me in but I had to get to my lecture.
Did the speaker go into Di's house?
3 When I saw Mark on the balcony, he asked me up.
Who was in a higher position, Mark or the speaker?
4 When the Richardsons asked me back after the concert I was happy to accept.
Where did the speaker go after the concert?
5 My cousin has asked me to go over to his flat this evening.
What word could replace *over* with no change in meaning?

3.2 Look at B opposite. Are the phrasal verbs underlined in the sentences below examples of the (a) or the (b) meanings of *over*?

1 Think it over before you make up your mind what to do next.
2 You may turn over the page now and read the exam questions.
3 It's raining too hard to drive. Pull over to the edge of the road.
4 Look over your answers before the end of the exam.

3.3 Look at C opposite. Then read these definitions and decide whether the sentences below are correct or incorrect. If necessary, correct them.

> **have on** has, having, had
>
> **have sth on** to have an arrangement to do something (never in continuous tenses)
>
> **have sb on** to persuade someone that something is true when it is not, usually as a joke
>
> **have on sth** *or* **have sth on** if you have clothes or shoes on, you are wearing them (never in continuous tenses; never passive)

1 I have on three important meetings tomorrow.
2 John has an amazing tie on.
3 Sue was only having on her sisters when she told them she was planning to become a model.
4 I'm having a lot of work on today.
5 I don't believe you! I'm sure you're having me on.
6 Ruth was wearing her new jeans this morning and she had on them yesterday.

3.4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1 to / you / for / make room / Can / move / over / your sister?
2 finished / she / over. / Harry / it / to read / When / her essay, / asked / Jill
3 his house / tomorrow. / Jim / back / me / has invited / to
4 when he / Paul / his driving test. / his parents / he'd failed / only having / was / told them / on
5 tomorrow? / What / you / on / do / have
6 the light / in her bedroom, / was / she / at home. / Sue / had / I knew / on / so

4 Nouns and adjectives based on phrasal verbs

A Nouns made from verb + particle

In English we often create nouns from verbs, e.g. *to invite / an invitation*. In the same way it is sometimes possible to create a noun from a phrasal verb. Look at these examples.

Tom: I got **ripped off** when I phoned that 0877 number [informal: was charged too much]. The call cost five pounds a minute!
Lily: Yes, those numbers are a big **rip-off**.

Mona: Her son **dropped out** of college last year. [gave up his course]
Ed: Mm. There were a lot of **dropouts** that year. I wonder why?

Mick: Somebody **broke in** last night and stole a computer from the school. [entered by force to steal something]
Pat: Really? That's the second **break-in** this year!

Rules for the use of verb + particle noun forms

- The plural is formed by adding *–s* to the particle, not the verb, e.g. **break-ins**, **dropouts**, **rip-offs** (not: ~~breaks-in~~, ~~dropsout~~, ~~rips-off~~)
  An exception is **goings-on** [strange or amusing events], which is always plural.
  There was a lot of gossip about the goings-on at the office party.
- Verb + particle noun forms are sometimes written with a hyphen, e.g. **break-in**, **check-in**, **cover-up**; and sometimes without, e.g. **dropout**, **checkout**, **crackdown**.
  Nouns with *–out* and *–over* are usually written as one word, e.g. **dropout**, **lookout**, **checkout**, **handout**, **changeover**, **leftovers**.
  Nouns with *–in*, *–up* and less common particles usually have a hyphen, e.g. **lie-in**, **mix-up**, **put-down**, **run-through**.
- In pronunciation, the stress is on the verb, not the particle.
  a BREAK-in at the office   college DROPouts

B Nouns made from particle + verb

Some phrasal verbs have noun forms where the particle is first. The stress in pronunciation is usually on the particle.

phrasal verb	*particle + verb noun*	*example*
set out	outset	I knew from the **outset** that there would be problems. [beginning]
fall down	downfall	The economic crisis caused the **downfall** of the government. [sudden failure or end]
look on	onlooker	Crowds of **onlookers** watched as the police arrested the man. [someone who watches an event but doesn't take part]

C Adjectives

There are also adjectives which are based on phrasal verbs. Make a note of any you meet.
e.g. a **broken-down** vehicle [vehicle whose engine had stopped working]   a **breakdown** truck [truck which helps drivers who have broken down]   **blocked-up** drains [drains where the water cannot flow properly]

Exercises

4.1 Complete the following table. If a noun form does not exist, write 'none' in the table. Use a dictionary if necessary. Decide whether the noun is written with a hyphen or as one word.

phrasal verb	*verb + particle noun*
show off	show-off
warm up	
hold on	
hide out	
turn over	
tear down	

4.2 Circle the correct noun form in these sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 There was a big pile-up / up-pile on the motorway involving five vehicles.
2 The government has announced a series of backcuts / cutbacks in funding for universities in order to save money.
3 When the higher taxes were announced there was a public outcry / cryout.
4 Several standerbys / bystanders did nothing while the thieves robbed him of his cash.
5 The new drug marks a throughbreak / breakthrough in the treatment of cancer.

4.3 Complete these sentences with adjective forms of phrasal verbs from the box below.

throwaway outgoing bygone getaway off-putting

1 The robbers abandoned their .... car in a car park near the airport.
2 I find his manner very .... He's so unfriendly.
3 They decided to use .... paper plates and cups for their party.
4 Let's invite Sally – she's very .... and loves parties.
5 The pictures of the steam trains were like something from a .... era.

4.4 Write down the infinitive form of the phrasal verbs from which the adjectives in exercise 4.3 above are formed.

4.5 Match the sentences on the left with a suitable response on the right.

1 I was looking for a way to turn off the photocopier.
2 Have you heard about the scandal in the office?
3 The economy is not doing so well these days.
4 A database can organise all the information you type into it.
5 You have to consider how much you spend each month.

I know, I need to watch my outgoings.
Yes, but I don't understand the input.
There's the on/off switch.
Yes, there's been a downturn.
Mm, amazing goings-on!

5 Metaphor and register

A Multiple meanings of phrasal verbs

A phrasal verb can have a number of different meanings, e.g.

get on

He got **on** the bus.
[entered the bus]

Jim and Ian get **on** really well.
[like each other and are friendly]

Shh! I'm trying to get **on** with my work.
[continue doing my work]

Often there is no direct connection between the various meanings and you just have to learn each different meaning of the phrasal verb. The best way to do this is by trying to remember a sentence using the phrasal verb.

B Literal and metaphorical meaning

Sometimes the basic meanings of a phrasal verb and the additional meanings are clearly linked. This is because some additional meanings are based on a metaphor or image which has a direct connection with its literal or basic meaning. A metaphor is a way of expressing something by comparing it with something else that has similar characteristics. Here is an example:

LITERAL (BASIC) MEANING				METAPHORICAL MEANING
blow up a balloon	→	**blow up** a building	→	someone **blows up**
inflate or fill with air		make it explode		suddenly becomes very angry

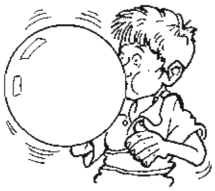

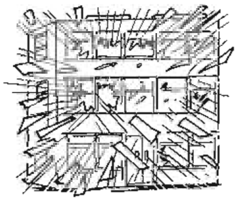

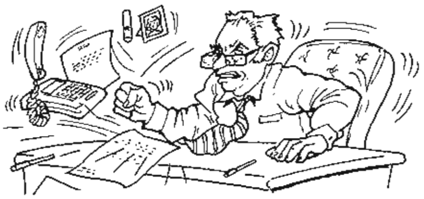

Sometimes a phrasal verb only exists as a phrasal verb in the metaphorical meaning, but you can guess what it means from the meaning of the basic verb without the particle. For example:

These statistics look strange. Have we **slipped up** somewhere?

Here **slip up** [make a mistake] clearly comes from **slip** [fall usually because the floor is wet or the ground is icy].

C Register

Another important aspect of phrasal verbs is register. Phrasal verbs are typical of spoken English or informal writing, e.g. letters to friends and articles in popular journalism. There are often one-word equivalents, or synonyms, for use in a more formal spoken or written style. For example: **miss out** a question *or* **omit** a question. See section 2C in Unit 2 for other examples.

As with all English vocabulary, there are some different uses from one geographical area to another. For example, British, American and Australian users of English all talk of **clearing up** a room [putting things away tidily], but only British and Australian speakers would use **tidy up** as a synonym.

See Unit 69 for more examples of how phrasal verbs differ in North America and Australia.

Exercises

5.1 Match the different meanings a–f of *take in* with the appropriate sentences 1–6 below.

a) make smaller
b) allow in through a hole
c) deceive
d) give a bed to
e) include
f) understand the meaning or importance

1 Because so many passengers were stranded at the airport, some local families offered to take them in overnight.
2 The news is so shocking – I still can't take it in.
3 The excursion will take in two of the most beautiful castles in the region.
4 Marie has lost weight – she's going to have to take in a lot of her clothes.
5 Rob was totally dishonest but he was so charming that I was taken in by him.
6 We'd better return to the shore at once – the boat seems to be taking in water.

5.2 These pairs of sentences show phrasal verbs which can be used in both literal and metaphorical ways. Explain the two meanings and the connection between them.

1 a) I **stepped in** a puddle of water and my feet are soaking now.
  b) She **stepped in** to stop the argument from becoming more serious.
2 a) This programme is rubbish. I wish you'd **switch off** the TV.
  b) The lecture was so boring that I **switched off**.
3 a) There's a hole in my bag. I think my pen must have **dropped out**.
  b) He **dropped out** of college and became a mechanic.
4 a) We **tied** the boxes **down** on the roof of the car.
  b) Mark dreams of travelling but he feels **tied down** by his family and work responsibilities.

5.3 Use your knowledge of the basic verb in the underlined phrasal verbs as well as the context of the sentence in order to work out the meanings of the phrasal verbs.

1 What are you driving at? I wish you would say exactly what you mean!
2 The teacher did all she could to drum the vocabulary into her pupils before the exam.
3 The old education system used to cream off the best pupils and teach them in separate schools.
4 The noise of the children's music completely drowned out the television.

5.4 Write a one-word formal equivalent for each of the underlined phrasal verbs.

As the rain didn't let up, the football game was called off. So the team got down to discussing its strategy for the next match instead. We didn't get out of the clubhouse until the cleaners turned up in the evening.

FOLLOW UP

If you encounter a phrasal verb that you thought you knew but it does not seem to make sense, use other clues in the context to work out what the meaning might be. It may be quite different from the meaning that you already knew.

6 Come

A Come expressing an idea of movement or change of state

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
come along	arrive at a place	Not many people bought tickets for the concert in advance, but quite a few **came along** and bought tickets at the door.
come apart	separate into pieces	The antique picture frame just **came apart** in my hands.
come around or **come round**	become conscious again	A nurse was with me when I **came round** after the operation.
come out	disappear or become less strong (of dirt or colour on clothing/material)	Let your shirt soak overnight and the stain will probably **come out**.
come out	become public knowledge after it has been kept secret (of the truth)	If this story **comes out** about the Prime Minister, he'll have to resign.
come out	be given to people (of results or information)	When do your exam results **come out**?
come out	leave after a period in a place (of hospital/prison)	Jane's **coming out** of hospital at the weekend. She's much better now.

B Come expressing an idea of happen

I was planning to arrange a surprise holiday for her birthday, but I'm not sure it's going to **come off**. [happen successfully or as planned]

I've had to organise the school fair again this year – I'm not quite sure how that **came about**. [happened, especially something which is not planned]

Dennis: Will you tell your boss about your plans to stand for the local council?
Norma: Only if the subject **comes up**[1] in conversation. I nearly told him at work this morning, but then something **came up**[2] and we had to deal with it straightaway. Mind you, I don't know if a place on the council is going to **come up**[3] for a while yet, so perhaps I'll wait.

[1] is mentioned or discussed
[2] happened unexpectedly, usually a problem or difficult situation
[3] become available

C Other meanings of come

I am doing a research project for my degree on the psychology of ageing, but I've **come up against**[1] a few problems. I **came across**[2] someone who's done an almost identical study, so I've got to **come to**[3] a decision: do I want to continue with it or not? I guess in the end my decision will **come down to**[4] what my professor recommends.

[1] encountered or had to deal with (a difficult situation)
[2] discovered (or met) by chance
[3] make (a decision about something)
[4] depend mostly on or be influenced most by

Exercises

6.1 **Complete these sentences with a particle from A opposite.**

1 Do you have any glue? The cover of my address book is coming .... and I want to stick it together again.
2 I spilt some orange juice on the tablecloth. Do you think it will come .... if I put it in the washing machine?
3 The last thing I remember was feeling very dizzy. The next thing I knew, I came .... in hospital and a doctor was standing by my bed.
4 The government is going to release a report on traffic congestion. I wonder when it's coming ....
5 We were just chatting at the corner when Jim Gore came .... with his girlfriend.
6 I hear Bruce's operation was successful. When is he coming .... of the clinic?
7 Some very shocking facts have come .... about government corruption, thanks to an investigation by a national newspaper.

6.2 **Use a phrasal verb from the opposite page to complete these dialogues.**

1 Anne: We lost everybody's e-mail address and had to start all over again.
Ken: Really? How did that .... ?
Anne: Oh, it was some computer virus.
2 Rick: David keeps saying he's going to sail around the world.
Ivan: Huh! Do you think it will ever .... ?
Rick: Probably not. He's such a dreamer.
3 Brian: We'll let you know what we decide. We'll phone you.
Fran: When do you think you'll .... ?
Brian: Probably at the meeting on Friday.
4 Olga: I thought you were coming to the dinner party last night.
Ulla: Yes, I was intending to, but right at the last minute something ....
Olga: Oh, I see. Well, you must come next time.

6.3 **Rewrite the underlined words in these horoscopes, using phrasal verbs with *come*.**

SCORPIO ★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★

You may have to deal with a few problems at work today, but don't worry, they're only temporary, and a new job opportunity will arise which could change your life. The name of an old friend is mentioned in conversation, bringing back powerful memories.

TAURUS ★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★

You will meet someone by pure chance who seems to share the same world view as you, but be careful, they are not what they seem to be. Don't forget that, in the end, true love is mainly about finding someone you can trust.

FOLLOW UP Horoscopes are often good places to find everyday, informal phrasal verbs. Read your horoscope regularly in an English newspaper or magazine, even if you don't believe it, and note down any phrasal verbs.

7

Get

A Learning phrasal verbs in pairs associated with a context

phrasal verbs	*meaning*	*example*
get together (often + **with**)	If two or more people get together, they meet in order to do something or spend time together.	It's nice to **get together with** people you **get on with**.
get on (often + **with**)	If two or more people get on, they like each other and are friendly to each other.	
get on (often + **with**)	continue doing something, especially work	I must **get on with** my work. I **got behind** because I spent too much time on the Internet.
get behind (often + **with**)	If you get behind with work or with payments, you have not done as much work or paid as much as you should by a particular time.	
get sth **over with**	do and complete something difficult or unpleasant that must be done	Let's **get** this **meeting over with**, or else we'll never **get away** before the rush hour and it will take ages to get home.
get away	leave a place or person, often when the situation makes it difficult for you to do so	
can't/couldn't get over sth	be very surprised or shocked that something has happened or that something is true	I **can't get over** how she manages to **get away with** doing so little work. It's obvious to everyone, but the boss never seems to notice.
get away with sth/doing sth	succeed in not being criticised or punished for something wrong that you have done	

B More phrasal verbs with get

Gerry:	How do you manage to survive without a job?
Kimberly:	Oh, I get by with a bit of help from my parents. [have just enough money to pay for the things I need, but nothing more]
Lauren:	The problem is that the regulations don't allow us to use next year's budget.
Juliet:	Oh, don't worry. We'll **get around/round** it somehow. [find a way of dealing with or avoiding a problem]
Yanis:	Have you rung the travel agent's yet to confirm our bookings?
Ronan:	Sorry, I haven't got **around/round to** it yet, but I'll do it after lunch, I promise. [do something that you have intended to do for a long time]
Polly:	I really think you ought to apologise to you-know-who about you-know-what.
Ivan:	I'm sorry, I don't know what you're **getting at**. Who? What? [If you ask someone what they are getting at, you are asking them what they mean, usually because they have said something indirectly.]
Ellen:	Do you think I can **get away with** not using any handouts in my lecture? [do something successfully even though it is not the best way of doing it]
Lou:	Yes, the students just throw them away anyway.

Exercises

7.1 Choose the correct particle to complete these sentences.

1 Why don't you get your homework .... with so you can enjoy the rest of the evening?
a) around b) over c) by d) away
2 As soon as Sue and I met, we knew we were going to get .... well.
a) round b) at c) on d) up
3 I just can't come out with you tonight as I've got so .... with my work.
a) up b) over c) away d) behind
4 Why does Rita always get .... with arriving late? It doesn't seem fair.
a) by b) away c) on d) over
5 I'm going to have to get .... to filling in my tax form soon.
a) round b) over c) away d) behind
6 I hope you'll be able to get .... from work at a reasonable time tonight.
a) away b) behind c) at d) over
7 Your mother couldn't get .... the cost of restaurants in London.
a) up b) round c) by d) over

7.2 Match each question on the left with the most likely response on the right.

1 How do you and Joe get on?	I manage somehow, though it isn't easy.
2 What exactly are you getting at?	I just wasn't organised enough.
3 How do you get by on a student grant?	Sure, that would be nice.
4 How did you get so behind?	I certainly hope so.
5 When are you going to get round to it?	Let me put it another way for you.
6 Shall we get together this evening?	We're great friends.
7 Will you manage to get away soon?	Soon, I promise.

7.3 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences, using a phrasal verb from the opposite page. Make any other necessary changes.

1 I've been planning to sort out my files but I haven't found time to do it yet.
2 I can't believe how much money they spent on their New Year's party.
3 Don't try to travel without paying your train fare – an inspector might come on and want to see your ticket.
4 The teachers in the school often meet after work on Fridays in a café near the school.
5 They avoided the problem of offending anyone and just invited all their friends to the wedding.
6 I usually find it quite hard to understand what Professor Mactoft is trying to say in his lectures.
7 I hope no-one will mind if I don't send any Christmas cards this year.
8 Emily has not done nearly as much work on her thesis as she should have done by now.

FOLLOW UP Learning verbs in pairs associated with a particular context can help you remember them. Look again at all the phrasal verbs on the opposite page. Try to make different pairs and write them in sentences putting them in context, as in section A.

8 Go

A Amelia's story

Amelia has been going through[1] a difficult time at work, so she decided to cheer herself up by going in for[2] a competition. The prize was a luxury holiday in the Caribbean. Amelia has had to go without[3] a holiday for several years now, so she really wanted to win. The competition was to write a story beginning 'Suddenly the lights went out[4]...' The problem was that Amelia could not think of an idea for her story.

'How can I go about[5] getting a good idea?', she asked me. 'It must be something special so that the judges go for[6] my story over all the others.' I suggested she went to the library to go through[7] some books of short stories – she might get some ideas there. So she went off[8] to see what she could find.

She soon found some great stories. She read one and then another and she went on[9] reading all afternoon. Then she noticed a strange smell and suddenly the lights went out. She looked up and saw that the library was on fire. Of course, that gave her the idea for her story. I hope she wins.'

[1] experiencing an unpleasant or difficult situation

[2] doing or competing in

[3] not have something which you usually have

[4] stopped giving light

[5] start to do or deal with something

[6] choose

[7] examine the contents of something carefully

[8] left a place to go to somewhere else

[9] continued

B Some more phrasal verbs with go

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
go along with sth/sb	support an idea, or agree with someone's opinion	Whatever you say, Maggie will **go along with** you.
go on	continue to exist or happen	It **went on** raining all day.
go on	happen	There's a police car outside the shop. Do you know what's **going on**?
go through with	do something unpleasant or difficult which you planned or promised to do	I don't want to do the exam now but I'd better **go through with** it.
go together	if two types of thing or people go together, they are usually found with each other	A bad cough and a sore throat often **go together**.

TIP

Many of the very common English phrasal verbs, for example the ones in Units 6–12, have several different meanings when combined with one particle. There are a few different meanings on this page for *go on* and *go through*; however there are other possible meanings for both of these verb and particle combinations. Remember this if you meet a phrasal verb in a new or unusual context because it may have quite a different meaning there from one you are more familiar with.

Exercises

8.1 Complete the text below using the correct particles from the phrasal verbs in A opposite.

I was going .... (1) some old letters the other day when I found one from my friend Nancy. After high school she had gone .... (2) to train as a doctor and ended up in Africa. She had to go .... (3) years of very hard study before she qualified. Life in Africa was not as comfortable as it was in our hometown, and there were many things she had to go .... (4) which the rest of us think of as necessities in our daily lives. But despite all the hardships, she went .... (5) working and helping people less fortunate than herself. I admire her so much. I wondered how I might go .... (6) making contact with her again, as I have no idea where she is living now.

8.2 Rewrite these sentences using phrasal verbs with *go* so that they keep the same meaning.

1 I'm thinking of competing in the New York Marathon next year.
2 There were some difficult times in my father's life.
3 Unemployment and high crime levels often exist side by side.
4 He decided to undergo the operation even though there were risks.
5 I refused to support their decision to close the youth club.
6 I didn't realise how late it was and I didn't stop studying till after midnight.
7 We had to survive with no hot water for 24 hours while they were repairing the pipes.
8 Do you think I should try the advanced level exam? It might be too difficult.
9 She just left without saying goodbye. I wonder if I offended her?
10 What was happening in the staffroom at lunchtime? I heard someone shouting.

8.3 In these sentences, some of the phrasal verbs from the opposite page are used with new meanings. Choose the correct paraphrase. Use a dictionary if necessary.

A-Z

1 We had to throw the fish away as it had gone off.
  a) Someone had switched off the oven.
  b) The fish had become bad because we kept it too long.
  c) The fish had fallen off the table on to the floor.
2 I wish you wouldn't go on about your problems all the time! I have problems too, you know!
  a) I wish you wouldn't think obsessively.
  b) I wish you wouldn't be very secretive.
  c) I wish you wouldn't talk constantly.
3 She's been going about telling everyone I want to marry her.
  a) She's been thinking of telling everyone.
  b) She's on the point of telling everyone.
  c) She has told everyone.
4 Ask her to dance with you. Go on!
  a) Continue doing what you're doing.
  b) Step on to the dance floor.
  c) Do it now, don't hesitate.

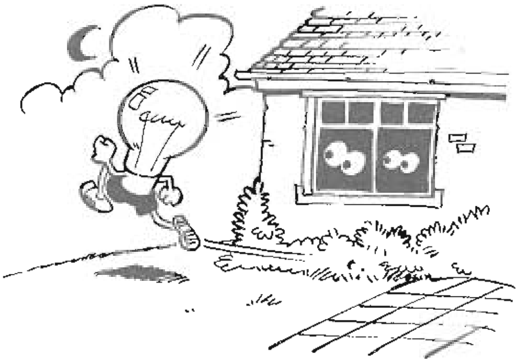

Suddenly the light went out leaving George and Mildred in complete darkness.

FOLLOW UP

The verb *go on* has a noun and an adjective associated with it: *goings-on* (noun) and *ongoing* (adjective). Look in a good dictionary to find out how they are used and make a sentence with each one in your vocabulary notebook.

9 Look

A Phrasal verbs where *look* keeps aspects of its basic meaning

The idea of seeing, observing or noticing something is included in many phrasal verbs with *look*.

Tim: Did you manage to read the report?
Iris: Well, I **looked at** it, but I haven't read it properly. [read it quickly and not very carefully]
Tim: I'd like you to read it if you could. We need to **look at** the conclusions and make some decisions. [examine or consider something carefully in order to make a decision about it]

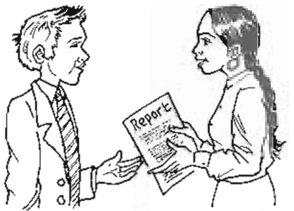

Rita: How do I get to your village coming from the city?
Bob: When you're on the motorway, **look out for** a sign saying 'Willowsdean'. That's where you turn off. [carefully watch the things around you so that you will notice a particular thing]

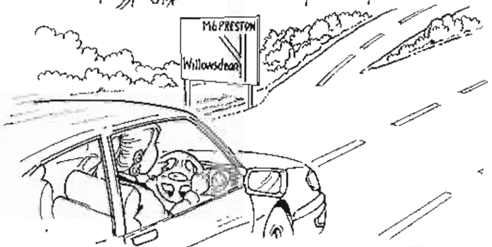

The bank robbers had a **lookout** standing at the street corner to warn them if the police came. [noun: a person who is watching for danger]

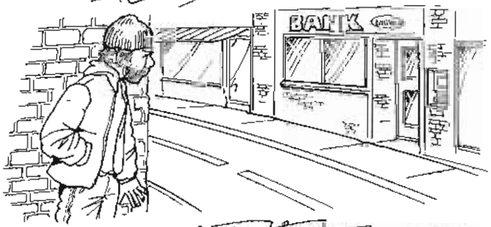

I wasn't in the demonstration. I was just an **onlooker**. [noun: someone who watches an activity or event without becoming involved in it; from the phrasal verb with the same meaning **look on**]

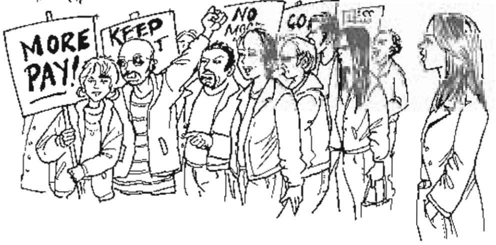

B Phrasal verbs where *look* has more abstract meanings

If you …	*then you …*
look up to sb	respect and admire them
look down on sb/sth	think that someone or something is less important than you, or that something is not good enough quality for you to use
look after sb/sth	take care of someone or something by doing what is needed to keep someone or something well or in good condition
look ahead	think about what will happen in the future and plan for those events
look around/round	try to find something you want (e.g. a job) by asking different people or by looking in different places
look forward to sth/doing sth	feel pleased and excited about something that is going to happen

Exercises

9.1 Choose the correct answer.

1 If you are looking around for a new job, you are ...
a) applying for a new job b) trying to find a new job
c) worried about your new job
2 If you look out for someone who is picking you up in their car, you ...
a) carefully avoid getting hit by their car b) watch the toad and warn them of danger
c) watch for their car so you will see them when they arrive
3 If you look down on cheap restaurants, you ...
a) consider them not good enough for you b) see them from the top windows of your house or flat c) always consider them before going to a dearer one
4 If you look after someone's cat while they are away, you ...
a) follow the cat everywhere b) search for it because it is lost
c) care for it and give it what it needs
5 If you look up to your English teacher, you ...
a) stand up when you speak to him or her h) admire and respect him or her
c) raise your head because he or she is taller than you

9.2 Complete these sentences with a suitable particle.

1 I'm really looking .... to seeing my cousins again next week.
2 She's looking .... for a new English course. She's not very satisfied with the one she's following at the moment.
3 She loves looking .... children, so she has decided to train as a nanny.
4 We have to look .... to the time when our child will be old enough to go to university.
5 Lord Muck is a terrible snob. He looks .... on most other people.
6 I didn't have time to read the newspaper yesterday. I only looked .... it very quickly.

9.3 Complete the diagram, using words from the opposite page.

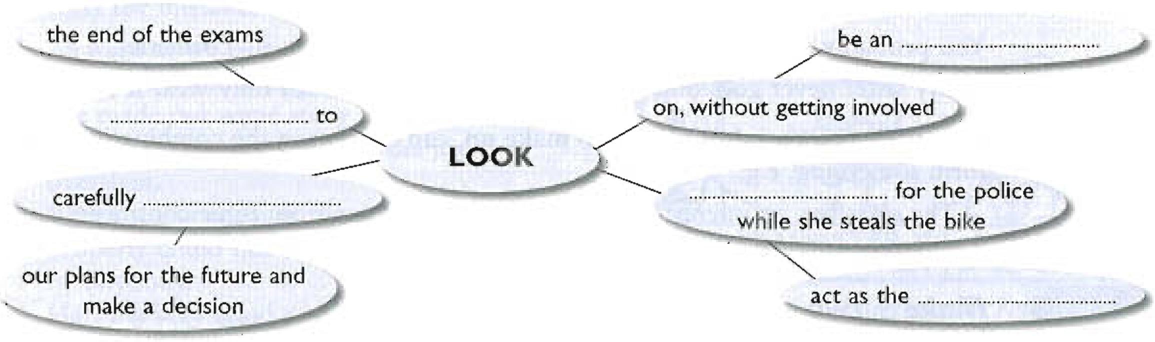
the end of the exams
.... to
LOOK
carefully ....
our plans for the future and make a decision
be an ....
on, without getting involved
.... for the police while she steals the bike
act as the ....

9.4 Here are some more phrasal verbs based on *look*. Read each sentence and try to guess the meaning of the phrasal verb. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 You could **look up** the new words in a dictionary.
2 When I was in Boston on business last week I **looked up** an old friend.
3 After a long recession the economic situation is **looking up**.
4 I **looked over** the report on the way to the meeting.
5 I **looked through** the report and scribbled down a few notes.
6 Detectives are **looking into** the murder.

10 Make

A *Make* + the particles *for*, *out* and *up*

MAKE

up something = form the whole of something

for somewhere = go in the direction of

out something/someone = be able to see or hear something or someone with difficulty

up something (or **make** something **up**) = invent something, e.g. a story or a game

out someone (or **make** someone **out**) = understand why someone behaves as they do

up something (or **make** something **up**) = say or write something that is not true in order to deceive

out something (or **make** something **out**) = understand something, especially why something has happened

Examples:

Can you **make out** the words of this song?

When we got to the park, the children **made for** the swings while I sat on a bench.

Sally didn't want to go to the concert, so she **made up** an excuse about being ill.

The children loved Uncle Bob because he was so good at **making up** new games.

Over 30% of the university population is **made up** of overseas students.

Notice how **make out** with the following three meanings is usually used with *can* or *could* in a negative sentence and is not usually used in the passive.

I couldn't **make out** a word he was saying.

Jack is behaving very strangely at the moment. I just can't **make** him **out**.

I can't **make out** why my computer won't let me save this document.

You probably already know that the noun **make-up** can mean cosmetics, e.g.

My sister never goes out without any **make-up** on, but I only wear it for special occasions.

However, **make-up**, from the verb **make up**, can also mean the combination of things which form something, e.g.

The class has an interesting **make-up**, with students from three continents and twelve different countries.

B *Make* + two particles

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
make up for sth	provide something good in order to make a bad situation better	The wonderful food in the restaurant **made up for** the rather uncomfortable seats.
make it up to sb	do something good for someone who you have done something bad to in the past, or to someone who has done something good for you	I forgot Teresa's birthday yesterday so I'll have to take her somewhere nice to **make it up to** her.

Exercises

10.1 Read these comments by different people and then answer the questions below by writing the correct name in the box.

Drew: I can't make out what she's saying, can you?

Melanie: I just can't make him out at all, can you?

Lars: I treated her a bit insensitively at the party so I gave her a present to make up for it.

Pete: I made up a story about losing my wallet, so he paid the drinks bill for me.

Jane: I loved the trip. The beautiful scenery made up for the awful roads.

1 Who invented something that was not true? ☐

2 Who said something good had made a bad experience less bad? ☐

3 Who has difficulty hearing something? ☐

4 Who wanted to restore a damaged relationship? ☐

5 Who can't understand someone's behaviour? ☐

10.2 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.

1 As soon as we had checked in at the hotel, we made straight at the beach.
2 She made out some story about the bus being late, but I'm sure she just overslept.
3 Why the camera was not working properly could not be made out by anybody.
4 Harry is very good at making over stories for the children; they love his tales.
5 Can you make what that white thing on the horizon is out?
6 The report is made of three sections up.

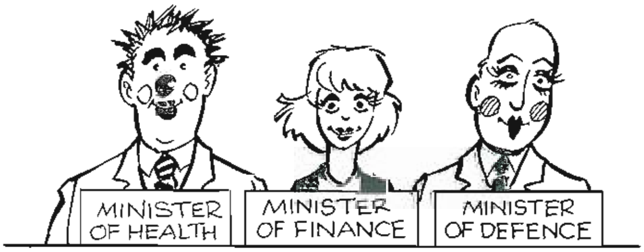

The make-up of the new cabinet clearly reflected the extreme wing of the party.

FOLLOW UP Use a good dictionary or search the *Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs* online at dictionary.cambridge.org to see how many more phrasal verbs with *make* you can find. Write down three that you particularly want to remember in example sentences.

11 Put

A *Put* verbs related to physical actions

With all these phrasal verbs the particle can come either before or after the object, e.g. to **put** on a CD or to **put** a CD on.

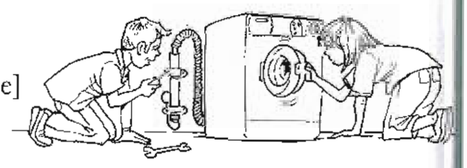

We spent yesterday **putting** in a new washing machine. [fixing new equipment or a new system in the correct place]

Could you **put** the air conditioning on, please? It's so hot in here. [make a device work by pressing a switch]

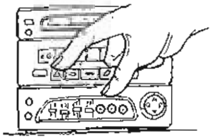

I don't think you've heard this CD. I'll **put** it **on**. [put something that sounds or pictures are recorded onto into a machine so that you can hear or see the recording]

Would you mind **putting** that light **out**? It's shining directly onto my computer screen. [making a light stop shining by pressing a switch]

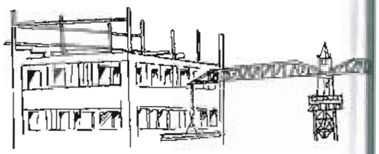

I see they're **putting up** a new block of flats near the park. [building a structure]

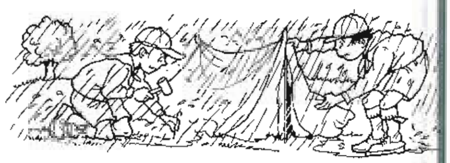

It poured with rain while we tried to **put** our tent **up**. [open something that is folded or rolled up so that it is ready to use]

B *Put* verbs and time

Dave: Jim, I'm sorry to have to **put** you **off** again, but I'm just too busy to see you today [tell someone you can't see them or do something for them till a later time]. Could we **put** our meeting **back** till next week? [change the date or time of an event so that it happens later than planned]

Jim: Sure. We can **put** it **off** until next Monday. [decide or arrange to do something at a later time]

Pilot: Ladies and gentlemen, we're now coming in to land at Mexico City. You may want to **put** your watches **forward**; the local time is 8.35 a.m. [make a watch or clock show an earlier time]

In Britain, around the last weekend in October, all clocks are **put back** one hour. [make a watch or clock show an earlier time]

C *Put* verbs and relations with other people

If you ...	*then ...*
are **put out**	you are annoyed, often because of something that someone has done or said to you
put up with sb/sth	you accept unpleasant behaviour or an unpleasant situation, even though you do not like it
put sb **on to/onto** sth/sb	you tell them about something or someone that could help them, often something or someone they did not know about before

Exercises

11.1 Correct any mistakes in these sentences. If there are no mistakes, write *correct* at the end of the sentence.

1 I like sleeping in tents but I don't like putting up them.
2 Put that CD on that you bought yesterday. I'd like to hear it.
3 We put last week in a new dishwasher. It's wonderful.
4 Will you put on the TV? I want to watch the tennis.
5 That light is too strong. Shall we put out it?

11.2 Complete the text using particles from the opposite page.

'I don't know how Harry puts .... (1) with his boss. He works so hard but his boss even gets him to put the lights .... (2) for him when it starts to get dark, and it's always Harry who has to put .... (3) new computer equipment. His boss never thinks twice about putting him .... (4) when they've arranged a meeting. I know Harry feels put .... (5), but he never complains. We should really do what we can to put him .... (6) some better jobs.

11.3 Rewrite these sentences so that the actions are the *opposite* of the ones underlined. Use phrasal verbs from the opposite page and make any other necessary changes so that the sentences make sense.

EXAMPLE Please turn the radio off now. I'm trying to sleep.

Please put the radio on now. There's a programme I'd like to listen to.

1 Could you switch the light on please. I can't see to read.
2 They're pulling down those old buildings near the railway station.
3 The Boy Scouts took their tent down very quickly and loaded it into their bus.
4 Could we possibly bring our meeting forward to 10 o'clock?
5 When we moved into our new house we decided to remove an old, rather ugly fireplace.
6 Can you turn that CD off, please. I can't concentrate on my work.

11.4 Here are some more phrasal verbs based on *put*. Match the phrasal verbs in the sentences 1–5 with the definitions a–e. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 Josie is very good at **putting** her ideas **across**.
2 Anyone who is smoking must **put** their cigarettes **out** immediately.
3 I'm not **putting** that **on**. I'd look ridiculous in it!
4 The secretary's **put up** some information about excursions. Have you seen it?
5 The plane was due to **put down** in Los Angeles at 3.50 a.m., but was diverted to San Francisco at the last minute.

a) stick or fasten a piece of paper to something, e.g. a wall, so that it can be seen
b) express in such a way that others can understand easily
c) land
d) put a piece of clothing on your body
e) extinguish or stop something burning

12 Take

A *Take* in a physical sense

If you **take apart** something or **take** something **apart** you separate it into its different parts.
Rod loves **taking** clocks **apart**, but he never manages to put them together again.

If you **take back** something or **take** something **back**, you return it to the person or organisation that you bought or borrowed it from.
When you go into town to **take back** your library books could you also **take** these trousers **back** to the shop for me – they're too small.

If you **take aside** somebody or **take** somebody **aside**, you separate someone from a group of people so that you can speak to them privately.
My boss **took** me **aside** at the Christmas party and told me he was going to give me a promotion in the New Year.

If you **take off**, you suddenly leave a place, without telling anyone where you are going.
Most people stayed at the party until quite late, but Rose **took off** early for some reason.

B *Take* in an abstract sense

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
take up sth or **take** sth **up**	start doing a particular job or activity	My son has recently **taken up** stamp collecting as a hobby.
take off sth or **take** sth **off** (sth)	subtract a particular amount from a total	The shop assistant **took off** ten per cent because the item was damaged.
take away sth or **take** sth **away**	subtract a first number from a second number	If you **take** 11 **away** from 33, you're left with 22.
take back sth or **take** sth **back**	admit that something you said was wrong	I shouldn't have called you lazy – I **take** it **back**.
take in sth or **take** sth **in**	look at something carefully noticing all the details	He showed us a photo of his house, but I was so tired that I didn't really **take** it **in**.

C Other senses of *take*

Lucy has started swimming regularly. She has **taken out**[1] a year's membership at a local sports club and has **taken to**[2] going to the swimming pool every lunch hour. She is so **taken up with**[3] her swimming that she wouldn't even **take** me **up on**[4] my offer to buy her lunch in the best restaurant in town. The exercise certainly **takes** it **out of**[5] her – she is too exhausted to go anywhere in the evenings.

[1] subscribed to or registered for something officially
[2] started to do something often
[3] very busy doing something
[4] accept
[5] makes her feel very tired

TIP Because the most common verbs, e.g. *take*, *get*, *make*, have so many different phrasal verbs with different meanings associated with them, it is useful to group the meanings, as in the sections of this unit. Try to do this for other common verbs and their phrasal verbs as you meet new ones and try to record an example sentence in your vocabulary notebook to help you remember them.

Exercises

12.1 **Each line of this text contains a phrasal verb with *take*, but some of them are used incorrectly. If a line has a correct phrasal verb, tick the box. If the line is incorrect, cross out the incorrect word and write the correct word in the box.**

EXAMPLE The watch was broken so I took it ~~off~~ to the shop.	back
I bought a new jacket but it had a mark on it so I took it back.	....
The shop assistant took me offside and told me that	....
if I was prepared to keep the jacket she would take away	....
ten per cent. I didn't really take in what she was saying at	....
first, but once I understood, I decided to take her over on the offer.	....

12.2 **Use a phrasal verb from the opposite page to complete these dialogues.**

1 Roy: I find it very offensive that you called Ciaran an idiot.
Kim: OK, OK. Sorry, I shouldn't have said it. I ....
2 Matt: Fiona seems really keen on her tennis these days.
Clare: Yes, she's really .... it. She's so .... with it that she's stopped going to the swimming pool.
3 Jim: I tried to clean the inside of my computer and I've put all the bits back but I have two bits left over.
Len: Well, I'm not surprised! I warned you not to .... in the first place.
4 Brian: I get so bored since I retired from my job.
Miriam: Well, why don't you .... golf?
5 Ali: What's this figure here, £30?
Paul: It's what you get when you .... £15 .... from £45.
6 Anoma: You look exhausted these days.
Terry: Yes, teaching 28 hours a week really .... me.
7 Hilary: Geoff left very suddenly, didn't he?
Kersty: Yes, he just .... without even saying goodbye.

To the surprise of everyone at the party, Geoff suddenly took off without saying goodbye.

13 Up

A

Read this text about someone complaining about having to do housework. Notice how the particle *up* sometimes expresses the idea of completing or totally finishing something.

> I spent all morning yesterday **clearing up**[1] my study. There were books and papers everywhere. Then I had to **sweep up**[2] the rubbish and dead leaves on the terrace. After that I tried to **tidy up**[3] my bedroom. There were dirty clothes all **jumbled up**[4] in a pile on the floor. I had to **hang up**[5] four jackets and several pairs of trousers I'd left lying on chairs. That took me an hour. Then I discovered the washbasin was **clogged up**[6] in the bathroom, so I had to clear that. By that time I'd **used up**[7] all my energy and I was too tired to do anything, so I just fell asleep on the sofa.

[1] making a place tidy and clean, especially by putting things where they usually belong

[2] remove rubbish or dirt, usually from the floor, using a brush

[3] make a room or a group of things tidy by putting things in the correct place

[4] (adjective) mixed together in an untidy way (from the verb jumble up)

[5] hang something, especially clothes, on a hook

[6] blocked

[7] finished a supply of something

Note how the particle *up* can be used for emphasis:
Eat up your vegetables, children! **Drink up** your juice! Paul's **used up** all the milk.
These three sentences could be written without *up*, but using *up* emphasises the meaning of 'finish it all or completely'.

B

Read this live Internet chat between Robert and Gemma.

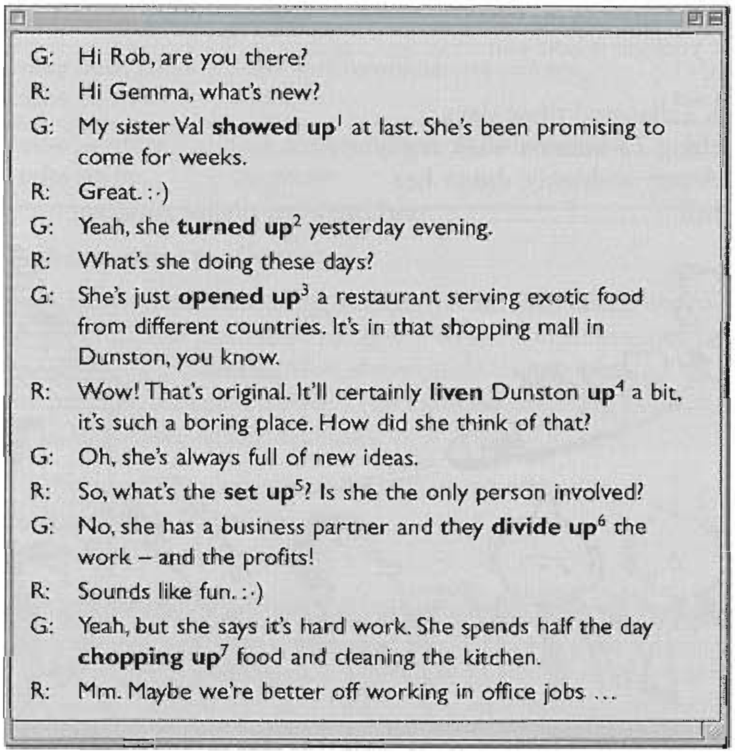

G: Hi Rob, are you there?
R: Hi Gemma, what's new?
G: My sister Val **showed up**[1] at last. She's been promising to come for weeks.
R: Great. :-)
G: Yeah, she **turned up**[2] yesterday evening.
R: What's she doing these days?
G: She's just **opened up**[3] a restaurant serving exotic food from different countries. It's in that shopping mall in Dunston, you know.
R: Wow! That's original. It'll certainly **liven** Dunston **up**[4] a bit, it's such a boring place. How did she think of that?
G: Oh, she's always full of new ideas.
R: So, what's the **set up**[5]? Is she the only person involved?
G: No, she has a business partner and they **divide up**[6] the work – and the profits!
R: Sounds like fun. :-)
G: Yeah, but she says it's hard work. She spends half the day **chopping up**[7] food and cleaning the kitchen.
R: Mm. Maybe we're better off working in office jobs ...

[1] arrived, especially at a place where people were expecting her

[2] arrived

[3] started a new shop or business

[4] make something more interesting and exciting

[5] (noun) the way that something is arranged (from the verb set up)

[6] separate something into smaller parts or groups

[7] cutting something, especially food, into small pieces

Exercises

13.1 Look at the picture and answer the questions.

1 What does the woman need to tidy up
2 What does she need to sweep up?
3 What must she hang up?
4 What are jumbled up on the floor?
5 How might she feel when she has cleared everything up?

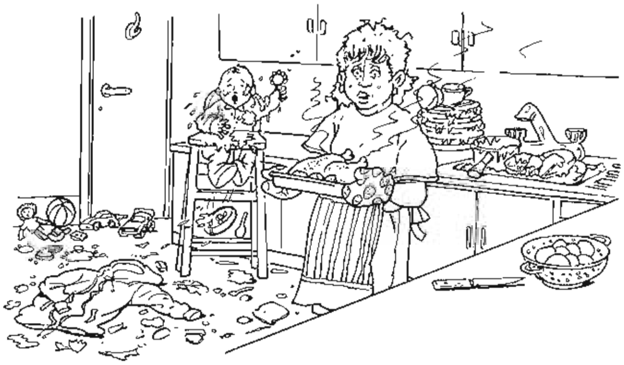

13.2 Choose the best verb from B to fill the gaps in this e-mail. Use a different verb in each gap and write it in the correct form.

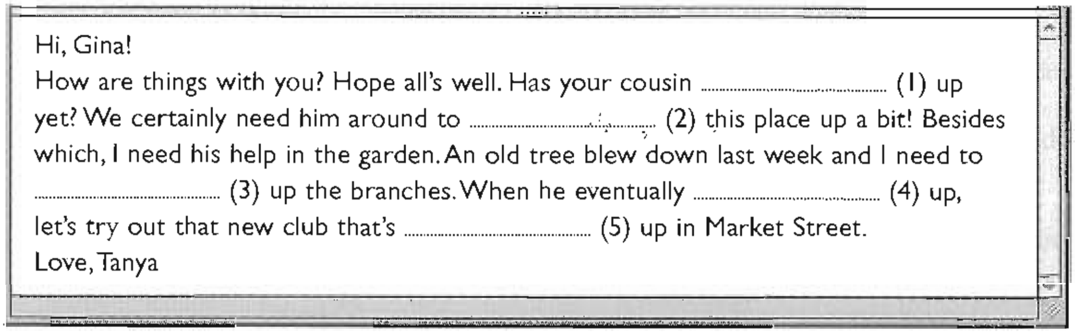

Hi, Gina!
How are things with you? Hope all's well. Has your cousin .... (1) up yet? We certainly need him around to .... (2) this place up a bit! Besides which, I need his help in the garden. An old tree blew down last week and I need to .... (3) up the branches. When he eventually .... (4) up, let's try out that new club that's .... (5) up in Market Street.
Love, Tanya

13.3 Choose the correct word to complete these sentences. Sometimes there is more than one possible answer.

1 Sam .... up too much time on the first exam question and didn't finish the paper.
a) clogged b) used c) divided d) showed
2 Guess who .... up at midnight last night!
a) showed b) livened c) hung d) turned
3 Please could you .... up these onions for me?
a) divide b) turn c) chop d) clog
4 Jill spent ages .... up the lounge.
a) clearing b) tidying c) hanging d) turning
5 A new supermarket is .... up near us next month.
a) turning b) showing c) opening d) hanging
6 The bath is .... up with hair. It's disgusting!
a) jumbled b) swept c) chopped d) clogged
7 Could you .... up the leaves on the front steps, please?
a) hang b) clear c) use d) sweep
8 When the old man died, his things were .... up among his children.
a) chopped b) divided c) cleared d) used

13.4 In some of the phrasal verbs in A and B opposite the verb can be used on its own without the particle *up* to make a grammatical sentence with more or less the same meaning.

1 In which cases could the *up* be left out?
2 In the sentences where the particle is not essential what extra meanings, if any, do you think the *up* adds?

14 Out

A *Out* meaning not in

Many phrasal verbs with *out* have an association with the basic meaning of *out*, i.e. not in.

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
leave out sth or **leave** sth **out**	not include something or someone	For homework do exercise 8 but **leave out** number 10.
cut out sth or **cut** sth **out**	remove by cutting, usually from paper or cloth	She **cut** some interesting articles **out** of the newspaper for us.
show out sb or **show** sb **out**	lead a visitor who is leaving to the door of a room or building	Let me **show** you **out** – it's quite hard to find the exit from here.
see out sb or **see** sb **out**	go with someone to the door of a room or building when they are leaving	Don't worry, I can **see** myself **out**.
let out sb/sth or **let** sb/sth **out**	allow a person or animal to leave, usually by opening a locked or closed door	The door will be locked but the receptionist will **let** you **out**.
lock out sb or **lock** sb **out**	prevent someone from entering a building by locking the door	I forgot my keys and was **locked out** of my own house!
lock yourself **out**	accidentally prevent yourself from getting into a building by leaving the keys inside when you shut the door	I've **locked** myself **out** so often that I've hidden a spare key in the garden now.

B *Out* meaning to the end or completely

Sometimes *out* in phrasal verbs gives an idea of completing or doing something to the end.

I sorted out my room on Sunday. [arranged things that were untidy]

I cleared out [made tidy by removing unwanted things] all my wardrobes and threw away all my worn out shoes [adjective: used so much that they had become damaged, from the verb wear out].

Unfortunately, I'd run out of furniture polish, so I couldn't do any polishing, but I'll do that next weekend. [there was none left because it had all been used]

C Other uses of *out*

Here are some other phrasal verbs which use *out*.

He spread out the pbotos on the table so everyone could see them. [arranged on a flat surface]

The band has a new album coming out next month. [available for people to buy]

Madam, would you like to try out the bike before deciding whether to buy it? [test to find out if it works or decide whether you like it]

My husband's business is so busy at the moment that I'm helping out in the office. [helping, especially by doing work or giving money]

I always feel I lost out because I never learnt a musical instrument as a child. [did not have an advantage that others had]

Exercises

14.1 Rewrite these sentences using phrasal verbs from A.

1 I'll take you down to the exit, if you like.
2 For some reason my name was omitted from the guest list.
3 My keys are inside the car and I can't get into it.
4 He can find his own way to the exit – there's no need to take him there.
5 She collected pictures of her pop idol from the music magazines.
6 The security guard opened the gate so we could leave the building site.

14.2 Complete these sentences using phrasal verbs. Write the verbs in the correct form.

1 I .... out by not learning a foreign language at school. I meet so many people I just can't communicate with.
2 Would you like to .... out my tennis racket? It's a new model.
3 Our business at the shop is growing so fast we need someone to .... out at weekends.
4 I got .... out yesterday. I left home without my keys and my flatmate had gone away for the day.
5 I .... out a job advertisement from the paper last night and now I don't know where I put it.
6 Rana: Right, Miles, I'm leaving now.
Miles: I'll come with you and .... you out. Our new office building is a bit complicated.
Rana: Oh, it's OK, I can .... myself out.
Miles: Well, actually you can't. They lock the street door at 6 p.m. so I'll have to come and .... you out.

14.3 Write a sentence about each picture using phrasal verbs from this unit.

1

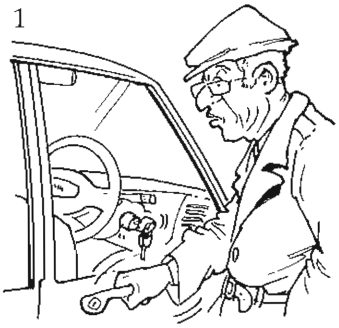

2

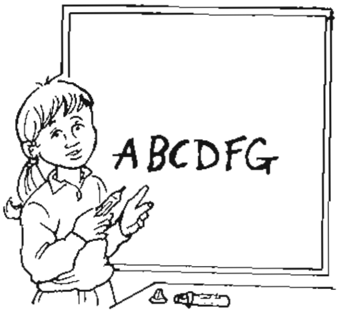

3

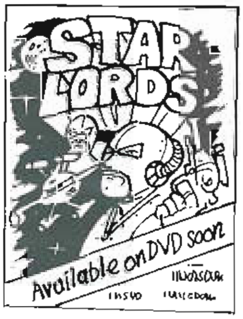

14.4 Choose which sentence from a–e below best fits the gaps 1–5 in the text.

I wanted to find out more about the history of my town for a college project. (1) So I decided to go to the local library. I got out some books, newspapers and some old maps which they had. (2) I decided to make a pile of things to photocopy. (3) There was a huge amount of material, too much in fact. (4) So I hurried and just chose the most important things to copy in the time I had left. (5) I will go back and do them some other time.

a) So I sorted out the most important items.
b) Unfortunately, I had to leave out the very big maps.
c) I'd cut out some articles from the local paper but I needed more information.
d) Time was running out; the library closed at 4 p.m.
e) I spread them all out on a big table.

15 Off

A Leaving places

Off sometimes combines with verbs to express the idea of something or someone leaving a place.

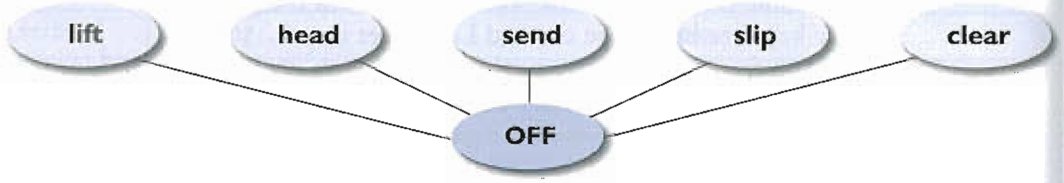

example	*meaning*
The space shuttle will **lift off** at 09.00 hours.	leave the ground (of a spacecraft or aircraft)
We should **head off** at about six tomorrow.	start a journey or leave a place
I've **sent off** that letter you wrote to the newspaper.	sent a letter, document, or parcel by post
Let's try and **slip off** before the meeting finishes and go for a drink.	leave a place quietly so that other people do not notice you going
Why did he just **clear off** without saying goodbye? **Clear off!** This is private property.	leave a place quickly (informal)

B Ending or changing state

Off sometimes expresses the idea of moving towards an ending or a change of state.

I'll come and see you off at the airport tomorrow. [go to the airport in order to say goodbye]
My cousin has sold **off** his share of the Internet company he started with a friend. [sold all or part of a business]
After lunch Grandpa **dozed off** on the sofa. [gradually started to sleep, especially during the day]
Mr Prosser suddenly looked very pale and **broke off** in the middle of his lecture. [suddenly stopped speaking]
She's so clever. She can **run** off a 1,000-word essay in an hour. It takes me all day! [quickly and easily write something that is usually difficult to write]

Note that **run** off with the meaning of leave somewhere quickly could also have been included in A above.

C Other expressions with *off*

What he said has **put** me **off** the idea of going to Blandville for a holiday altogether! [made me not like something]
His description of the hotel was very **off-putting**. [adjective: made something sound unattractive or unpleasant, from the verb **put** off]
Maybe we should **hold off** and go to Paris or somewhere in the spring? [delay doing something]
I think I've managed to **turn** him **off** the idea of building a model railway track in the back garden. [make someone decide that they are not interested in something]
She didn't get offended by the comment; she just **laughed** it **off**. [laughed about something unpleasant in order to make it seem less important or serious]

Exercises

15.1 Complete these sentences, using verbs from A or B. Write the verbs in the correct form.

1 The company is not doing very well – isn't it time you .... off your shares in it?
2 We were talking to Janice when she suddenly .... off in the middle of a sentence and ran out of the room.
3 I thought it was very rude of him just to .... off like that without saying goodbye.
4 Would you like me to come and .... you off at the station?
5 I thought I'd .... off fairly soon – I've got to get up early tomorrow, but thank you for a lovely party.
6 I was so tired that I just .... off in front of the television.
7 You mustn't forget to .... off that birthday card this afternoon.
8 A large crowd gathered to watch the rocket .... off.

15.2 Replace the underlined words in these sentences with phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1 It won't take her long to do the letters you asked her to do.
2 I often fall asleep in boring lectures.
3 Let's try and leave quietly before the others wake up.
4 In the middle of a long speech the actor suddenly stopped and ran off the stage.
5 I've put all the students' exam results in the post.
6 The school disco has given her quite negative feelings about discos in general.
7 Tell that boy in our front garden to leave at once – he's annoying the dog.
8 Fortunately, he didn't take the criticism of his acting seriously.

15.3 Answer these questions using full sentences.

1 If someone criticised your haitstyle would you laugh it off or get very upset?
2 What kind of programmes are most likely to make you doze off in front of the television?
3 If you go on a journey on your own, who usually sees you off?
4 Can you run off an English essay quickly or does it take you a long time to do?
5 Why might a lecturer break off in the middle of a talk?
6 If you plan to slip off during a party, how are you intending to go?
7 If someone tells some children to 'clear off', how do you think that person probably feels ahout the children?
8 Name something that might put you off eating your dinner.

15.4 Rewrite these sentences using a phrasal verb from the opposite page that means the opposite of the underlined verb. Make any other necessary changes so that the sentences make sense.

1 I'm going to meet James at the airport tomorrow.
2 I've just received a letter from Pauline.
3 The rocket is due to land tomorrow at noon.
4 I hope I've managed to interest him in the idea of redecorating the house.
5 I woke up when all the others went off to play tennis.
6 We're planning to arrive in the early evening.

16 On and in

A On

On in phrasal verbs sometimes has a clear link with the basic physical meaning of *on*.

Never buy shoes without **trying** them **on**! [putting on a piece of clothing to see whether it fits and whether you like it]

Ray: Do you think Dan's really feeling better or is he just **putting on** a brave face? [pretending to have a particular feeling or behave in a way that is not real or natural for you]
Joe: No, I think he's fine now. I don't think his cheerfulness is **put-on**. [adjective: pretend or not genuine, from the verb put on]

Sam: I've got something **weighing on*** my mind at the moment. Could you give me some advice? [worrying, upsetting]
Deb: No problem. Tell me all about it and I'll do what I can.

On is also used with verbs where there is an idea of dependence.

You can always **rely/depend/count on*** Jim! [be confident that someone will help you]
*In these four verbs *upon* may be used instead of *on*. *Upon* sounds slightly more formal.

On in phrasal verbs also often contains an idea of further.

Just because you've failed one driving test, you mustn't stop having lessons. You must **keep on** trying. [continue to do something]

When you've finished with the magazine, just **pass** it **on** to someone else. [give]

B In

Here are some of the many phrasal verbs that use *in*. In each case there is a link with the basic physical meaning of *in*.

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
call in	visit a place or person for a short time, usually when you are going somewhere else	Please **call in** and see us when you are next in town.
take sth **in** or **take in** sth	make a piece of clothing narrower	This skirt is too big for me now – I'll have to **take** it **in**.
rub sth **in** or **rub in** sth	put a substance on the surface of something and rub it so that it goes into the surface	**Rub** the cream **in** gently with the tips of your fingers.
lock sb **in** or **lock in** sb	prevent someone from leaving a room or building by locking the doors	Make sure you leave the office by 6.30 p.m. or you'll be **locked in**.
push in (informal)	rudely join a line of people who are waiting by going in front of some of the people who are already there	It's so annoying when people **push in** at the bus stop.
sink in	start to be believed (used about something unpleasant or surprising, which usually has implications)	Be patient with Jenny – it'll take a long time for the terrible news to **sink in.**

Exercises

16.1 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences, using phrasal verbs from A.

1 I read the gardening article you gave me then gave it to a friend who's also interested in plants.
2 Do you think she's really angry, or do you think she's just pretending?
3 He looks very pale and tired. Something is clearly worrying him.
4 It's a lovely jacket. See if it fits you and how it looks on you.
5 I'm not going to stop working until I've finished this report.
6 You can be sure that Brian will be there when you need him.

16.2 Look at these remarks by different people and then read the statements 1–5 below. If the statement is true, tick (✓) the box. If the statement is false, put a cross (✗) in the box and explain why it is false.

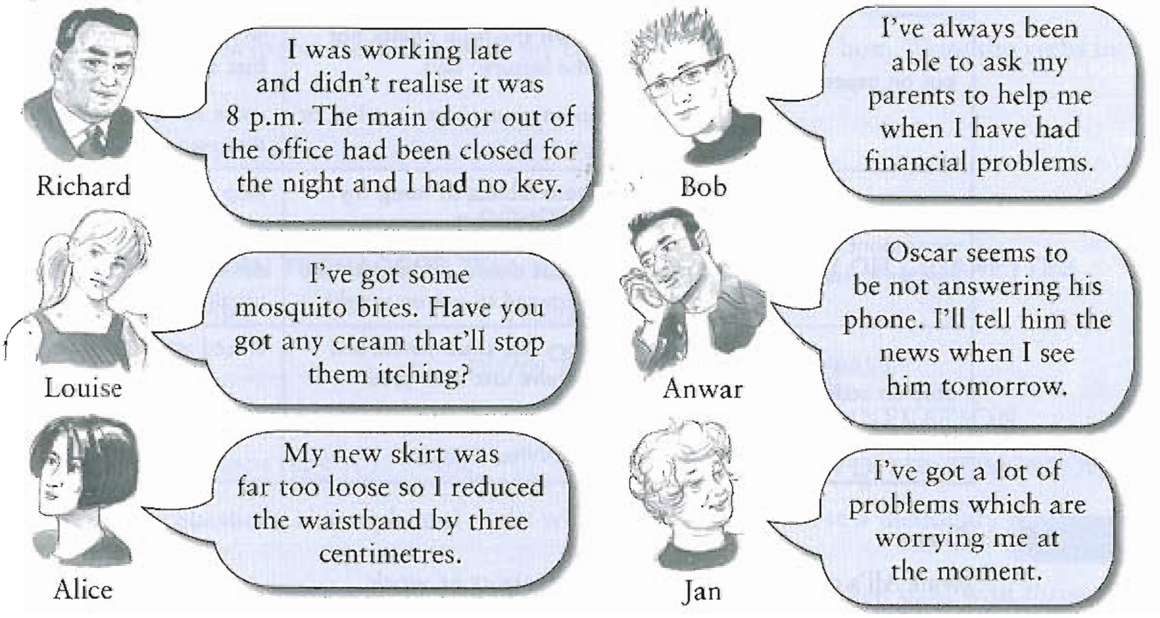
Richard
I was working late and didn't realise it was 8 p.m. The main door out of the office had been closed for the night and I had no key.
Bob
I've always been able to ask my parents to help me when I have had financial problems.
Louise
I've got some mosquito bites. Have you got any cream that'll stop them itching?
Anwar
Oscar seems to be not answering his phone. I'll tell him the news when I see him tomorrow.
Alice
My new skirt was far too loose so I reduced the waistband by three centimetres.
Jan
I've got a lot of problems which are worrying me at the moment.

1 Anwar has decided to keep on phoning Oscar. ☐
2 Alice decided not to take her skirt in. ☐
3 Jan has a number of things weighing on her mind. ☐
4 Louise wants to rub in some cream. ☐
5 Bob can't really count on his parents' support. ☐
6 Richard got locked in. ☐

16.3 Correct the mistakes in these sentences. There is one mistake in each sentence.

1 Hey, that man just pushed on – that taxi should have been ours!
2 Mary's bad news has been weighing my mind on all day.
3 I need time for to sink in the news.
4 I couldn't leave the room because someone had locked me out.
5 Phrasal verbs may seem hard but you must keep upon trying.
6 You'll never guess who called at the office in today!

FOLLOW UP Go to the Cambridge University Press dictionary website at dictionary.cambridge.org. Find one more meaning for each of these verbs and write an example sentence: *pass on*, *take in* and *rub in*. If you do not have Internet access, try looking in a good monolingual or bilingual dictionary.

17 Down and over

A Different meanings of *down*

general meaning of down	*example*	*meaning of phrasal verb in example*
move in the direction of the ground	We'll have to **chop/cut down** that old tree. It's dead.	cut through it so that it falls to the ground
heaviness which causes difficulty	We were **weighed down** with luggage, so we couldn't run to catch the train.	carrying too much
	I was **loaded down** with library books, so I took the bus home.	carrying too many things
put on paper	Just **take down** the main points, not everything the lecturer says.	write something, especially something that someone says
	I'll **write down** your phone number, or else I'll forget it.	write something on a piece of paper so that you do not forget it
reduce a number or amount, or not let it rise	I'm taking these tablets to **keep** my blood pressure **down**.	stop the number, level, or size of something from increasing
	I'm trying to **cut down** on burgers and chips as I've started to put on weight.	eat or drink less of a particular thing, usually in order to improve your health
stop an activity	The car factory has **shut down**, and 2,000 people have lost their jobs.	closed and stopped working
	That nice Italian restaurant in town has **closed down**. What a pity!	stopped doing business

B Over

Read Ali's e-mail to Karen about a report at work.

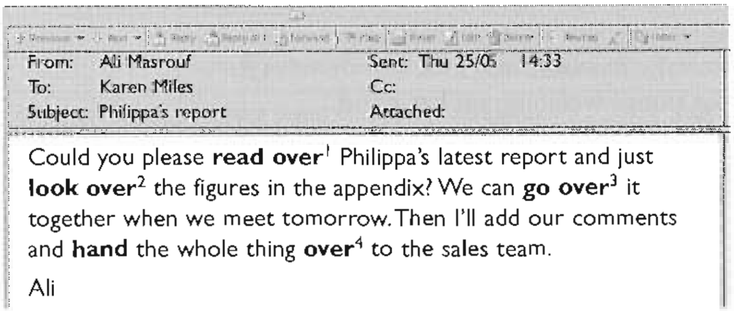

From: Ali Masrouf
Sent: Thu 25/05 14:33
To: Karen Miles
Cc:
Subject: Philippa's report
Attached:

Could you please **read over**[1] Philippa's latest report and just **look over**[2] the figures in the appendix? We can **go over**[3] it together when we meet tomorrow. Then I'll add our comments and **hand** the whole thing **over**[4] to the sales team.

Ali

[1] read something from the beginning to the end in order to find any mistakes or to understand it better

[2] quickly examine something

[3] talk or think about something in order to explain it or make sure that it is correct

[4] give something to someone else

Listen to this answerphone message.

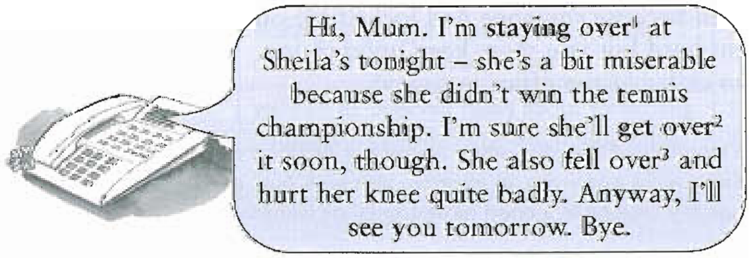

Hi, Mum. I'm staying over[1] at Sheila's tonight – she's a bit miserable because she didn't win the tennis championship. I'm sure she'll get over[2] it soon, though. She also fell over[3] and hurt her knee quite badly. Anyway, I'll see you tomorrow. Bye.

[1] spending the night somewhere else rather than going home (*staying* on its own would also be possible here)

[2] recover from an illness or disappointment

[3] fell to the ground (*fell* on its own would also be possible here)

Exercises

17.1 Read the sentences using phrasal verbs from A and answer the questions.

1 Jamie is weighed down with luggage.
What do we know about Jamie's luggage?
2 She's trying to cut down on chocolate.
Does she still eat chocolate?
3 Sid took down everything we said.
Did Sid tape or write what was said?
4 The garage has shut down.
Has the garage shut for the evening?
5 They chopped down the bushes in front of their house.
Why might they have decided to do this?

17.2 Complete these newspaper headlines with the correct verbs from the box. Write the verbs in the correct form.

chop cut go hand keep shut

1 **LOCAL CAFÉ .... DOWN BY HEALTH INSPECTORS**

2 **DOCTORS WARN TEENAGERS TO .... DOWN ON CIGARETTES**

3 **REBEL TROOPS .... OVER WEAPONS**

4 TWENTY OAKS .... DOWN TO MAKE WAY FOR BYPASS

5 GOVERNMENT PROMISES TO .... DOWN INFLATION

6 CABINET OF MINISTERS TO .... OVER REPORT IN DETAIL TOMORROW

17.3 Answer these questions about phrasal verbs with *down* and *over*. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 Which three phrasal verbs in the e-mail on the opposite page are often used with *through* instead of *over*? Does using *through* instead of *over* change the meaning at all?
2 Can you see any meaning for *over* that connects the three verbs in the answerphone message?
3 Match each of the phrasal verbs below with the correct general meaning of *down* from the table in A.
   a) I need a holiday. Stress and overwork are **wearing** me **down**.
   b) Let me **note down** your e-mail address on this slip of paper.
   c) A lot of fences **blew down** in the hurricane last night.
   d) The police are trying to **crack down** on street crime.
   e) The government is doing all it can to **hold** prices **down**.
4 Explain what these phrasal verbs with *over* mean in the sentences below.
   a) Sally is very good at **putting** her ideas **over** in meetings.
   b) I haven't got enough room. Can you **move over**, please?
   c) Can you **check over** these figures for me, please? It's important that there are no mistakes.
   d) Don't put your glass of wine on the floor. Someone is sure to **knock** it **over**.
   e) Make sure the milk does not **boil over**.

18 Around and about

Around and *about* are often interchangeable in phrasal verbs: both particles are equally possible with all the verbs in A below and with some of the verbs in B. Note also that *round* can sometimes replace *around*.

Phrasal verbs with *around* and *about* often express the idea of acting in a relaxed way, or without a particular purpose or without concentrating.

Most of the verbs in this unit are informal.

A Spending time

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
wait about/around	stay in one place without doing anything as you wait for something to happen	If you can **wait around** for about an hour, we should be able to tell you your results.
laze about/around	relax and enjoy yourself by doing very little	For the first week of our holiday we usually just **laze about** on the beach.
sit about/around (somewhere)	spend time sitting down and doing very little	Please let me help you. I don't like just **sitting about** all day.
hang about/around/ round (somewhere) (informal)	spend time somewhere without doing very much	There are always a lot of rather suspicious-looking men **hanging round** outside that bar.
mess about/around	spend time playing or doing things with no particular purpose behave stupidly, waste time doing unimportant things	Tim spends his weekends **messing around** in the garage repairing things. The pupils were given extra homework for **messing around** in class.
mess sb **about/ around** (informal)	treat someone badly or waste their time, e.g. by changing your mind or not doing what you promised	He's been **messing** her **around** for ages and just won't commit to the relationship.
lie about/around	spend time lying down doing very little	I hate the way he just **lies around** all day watching TV while I'm working.

B Being in a place

Fans were **milling about/around/round** the hotel lobby hoping to see the film star and get her autograph. [walking around a particular place or area, usually while waiting for something] Meanwhile photographers and journalists were **standing about/around/round** chatting to each other. [spending time standing in a place waiting for someone or doing very little]

Mick: Can you **stick around** this afternoon? [informal: stay somewhere for a period of time] If so, I'll **take** you **around/round** the office and introduce you to the other secretaries if you like. [visit a place with someone showing them the most interesting or important parts]

Anne: No, it's all right, thanks. The boss has already **shown** me **around/round**. [gone with someone to a place that they have not visited before and shown them the interesting parts]

Exercises

18.1 Draw lines to match the verbs in the left-hand column with the best definitions in the right-hand column.

1 mess
2 hang
3 lie
4 sit
5 laze

about/(a)round

lie down doing very little
spend time sitting down and doing very little
relax, enjoy yourself and do very little
behave stupidly or waste time
spend time somewhere not doing very much

18.2 Now use the verbs from exercise 18.1 to fill the gaps in these sentences. Write the verbs in the correct form and use each verb once only.

1 She just .... around on the sofa all day reading magazines. I wish she'd get a job.
2 We could be .... round here for hours waiting for a taxi. Let's walk.
3 After the meeting we were just .... around chatting for a while.
4 My idea of a perfect weekend is just .... around at home with a good book.
5 I wish the kids would stop .... about.

18.3 Rewrite the underlined words in these sentences, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1 Do you want to stay here after the meeting? I finish work at 5 p.m. and I could go with you and show you the most interesting places in the old town.
2 Nothing much happened at the demonstration. We just stood in one place not doing much and held our banners up.
3 They spend most weekends just doing things without much purpose in their boat; they don't really sail it seriously.
4 On my first day, the boss went with me through the workshop and introduced me to various people I'd be working with.
5 At the drinks party people were just wandering here and there hoping to find someone they knew.
6 Look, I'm sorry, I don't want to cause you problems and waste your time, but I wouder if we could postpone our meeting till next week?

18.4 Here are some other phrasal verbs with *about/around*. Read the sentences and try to explain in your own words what they mean. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 I've got to go now but I'll **see you around**.
2 Don't **order** me **about**! I'm not your servant, you know.
3 Shop assistant: Can I help you?
Customer: No thanks. I'm just **looking around**.
4 My suitcase got a bit **bashed about** on the plane.
5 He told the kids to stop **fooling around**.

19 For and with

Note that with all the verbs in this unit the particles *for* and *with* must go before the object of the verb.

A For

Each response in the dialogues below contains two phrasal verbs with *for*. Learning verbs in pairs associated with the same context can help you remember them.

Nina:	I've been given the chance to apply for that new post in Head Office. What do you think?
Gary:	I think you should **go for** it [try to get or achieve it]. We'll all be **rooting for** you [informal: showing support for you in a competition, or hoping that you will succeed].
Melanie:	How's your new babysitter?
Brad:	We **couldn't ask for** a better babysitter [the new babysitter is the best of her kind]. She just **lives for** our kids and they just adore her [believes that the kids are the most important people in her life].
Val:	I saw you going into Betty's flat with her this morning. Is anything wrong?
Irene:	Her washing machine had flooded the kitchen. She **sent for** a plumber and got it fixed but it left a terrible mess [send someone a message asking them to come to see you]. We had planned to go into town and I was **calling for** her on the way there, but in the end we stayed at home and tidied the mess in the kitchen [visiting her place in order to collect her].
Joe:	What does 'R' mean on that sign?
Ray:	I think it **stands for** 'restaurant' [is the first letter of a word or name and is used to represent it]. Let's stop. You must be **dying for** something to eat [informal: be wanting something very much, especially food or drink].

B With

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
could do with sth/sb	need or want something or someone (informal)	I **could do with** a cup of tea.
deal with sth	if something [e.g. book, film, article] deals with a particular subject or idea, it is about that subject or idea	His latest book **deals with** the civil war of 1984–1989.
stick with it	continue doing something even though it is difficult (informal)	I know studying for a PhD is hard, but I think you should **stick with** it.
go with sth	if one thing goes with another, they suit each other or they look or taste good together	That shirt **goes** really well **with** your blue jacket.
put up with sb/sth	accept unpleasant behaviour or an unpleasant situation, even though you do not like it	I don't know how she **puts up with** his bad temper.
catch up with sb	meet someone you know, after not seeing them for a period of time	I hope to **catch up with** Freda when I'm in Berlin. I haven't seen her for years.

Exercises

19.1 Look at the phrasal verbs in A. Then match the questions 1–6 with the appropriate answers a–f below.

1 Do you think I should buy these shoes – they're a bit expensive?
2 Oh dear, look at that accident.
3 What did you think of the restaurant?
4 Do you know what CV means?
5 Would you like to go to a café?
6 Who are you supporting in the league?

a) Couldn't have asked for anything better!
b) Yes, go for it!
c) Quick! Send for an ambulance!
d) Yes, I'm dying for an ice cream.
e) We're rooting for the Reds, as usual.
f) Sure! It stands for curriculum vitae.

19.2 Complete these sentences with an appropriate verb. Write the verb in the correct form.

1 He .... for a doctor as soon as he felt the pains in his chest.
2 Martha .... for her work so she's going to find it very hard when she has to retire.
3 These boots don't really .... with this skirt, but they're comfortable.
4 You .... for a nicer teacher. She's so patient and kind.
5 I'll have to have a word with Gina. I can't .... up with her rudeness any longer!
6 Your hair is too long – you .... with a haircut.
7 You should .... with the course. It would be a shame to give up now.
8 I love going back to my home town and .... up with all my old friends.

19.3 Use a phrasal verb from the opposite page to complete these dialogues.

1 Anne: This fish tastes delicious with your tomato sauce.
Jenny: Yes, they do .... well .... each other, don't they!
2 Bob: Shall we go to the concert together?
Tina: Good idea. I'll .... you on the way there.
3 Tessa: I'll go and put the kettle on.
Tony: Great, I'm .... a cup of tea.
4 Joan: I thought the film was great.
Ivan: Yes, I thought it .... the theme of love really sensitively.
5 Mark: Let's meet for a coffee and a chat next week.
Karen: Yes, I can't wait to .... you.

19.4 Rewrite these sentences, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1 I couldn't tolerate such noisy neighbours as yours.
2 It's been such a busy week. I can't wait for the weekend.
3 Jean's shoes match her handbag perfectly.
4 All the students at his university were hoping Kyle would win the golf championship.
5 I have the best job you could imagine.
6 Her grandson is the most important person in Stella's life.

20 Through and back

A Through

Through in phrasal verbs gives an idea of going from one side of something to the other, or from the beginning to the end of something. Note that with most of these phrasal verbs *through* must go before the object of the verb.

If you sleep **through** a loud noise or activity, it does not wake you.
I'm sorry I'm late. I'm afraid I **slept through** my alarm.

If you **live through** something, you experience a difficult situation or event.
People who have lived through a war often have rather a different outlook on life.

If you **flick/flip** through a magazine or book, you look briefly at its pages.
I usually flick/flip **through** a magazine before buying it.

If you **look through** something, you read it quickly and not very carefully.
If you go **through** something, you carefully read or discuss it to make sure that it is correct.
I'll **look through** the report tonight and then we can go **through** it properly tomorrow.

If you **take** someone **through** something, you explain it or show them how to do it.
Don't worry – Jack will **take** you **through** the job before we leave you on your own.

If you see **through** a person who is trying to trick you, you realise what they are really like or what they are trying to do.
He is so charming that few people see **through** him and realise that he is just a conman.

B Back

Back in phtasal verbs usually conveys the idea of returning.

If you want to return something you have bought by post, perhaps because it is the wrong size or is damaged, you send it **back**. If you go to the shop to exchange it in person you take it **back**. Shops usually have to agree to **take back** things they have sold you if you find they are not in good condition when you get home. If you **call/phone/ring** someone **back** or **e-mail** someone **back**, you are replying to a phone message or e-mail from them.

Note that with the verbs above, *back* can go before or after the object of the verb.

If someone, especially a child, **answers** (someone) **back**, they reply rudely to someone they should be polite to.
Mother: Say thank you to Mrs Brown.
Child: Say thank you yourself.
Mother: Don't **answer** me **back** like that.

An interesting use of *back* is in the expression: We go **back** ten years.
This is an informal way of saying: We have known each other for ten years.

If you **bite back**, you do something bad to someone because they did something bad to you.
However, if you **bite** something **back** or **bite back** something, you stop yourself from saying something that shows your true feelings or thoughts.
When Emma is criticised she doesn't hesitate to **bite back**.
When Karl asked me what I thought of his lime-green suit, I had to **bite back** my initial response.

Exercises

20.1 Write what you could say in these situations using phrasal verbs with *through*.

1 Your boss asks you to explain to a new member of staff how things are done in the office, step by step. What could you say to the new person?
2 A friend warns you that another person, Leo, is trying to trick you. Reassure the friend that you realised what Leo was really like the first moment you met him.
3 You arrive late for an important meeting. You set your alarm clock but didn't wake up when it rang. Apologise and explain what happened.
4 You have done some calculations at work, and there seems to be a mistake. Ask a colleague to read the figures carefully to see if they can see any mistakes.
5 A colleague offers to read in detail a 12-page report you have written. Tell them that that will not be necessary and that you'd be grateful if they just looked at it very briefly. (Give three possible answers.)
6 A friend asks you why a person you know always seems so sad. Explain that that person has experienced some terrible things over the last few years.

20.2 Complete these sentences using verbs from B.

1 This new jacket just doesn't look right on me; the colour is all wrong. If I .... it back to the shop, do you think they'd .... it back? I bought it over a week ago.
2 I had to .... back some angry words when they told me I had lost my job.
3 I bought this clock on the Internet, but it's not as nice as it looked on the computer screen. I think I'll .... it back.
4 I don't think she'll just accept his insults. She's the sort of person who will .... back if she's attacked.
5 We're old friends. We .... back to the 1980s when we were at college together.
6 Children nowadays seem to lack respect for their parents and won't hesitate to .... back.

20.3 Complete the sentences using an appropriate phrasal verb from the opposite page.

1 Joe rang while you were out. Please could you ....
2 I don't like these trousers I bought today. I think I ....
3 Harry missed his train this morning because he ....
4 Ellen isn't really reading the magazine; she's just ....
5 I wanted to tell her how upset I was but I managed to ....

Mr Trotsky was one of those people everyone could see through immediately.

21

Into and away

A Into

Read the entries in Diana's personal diary. Each entry has a phrasal verb with *into*.

APRIL		
7 Mon	**Ran into** Mary W in town today. Nice to see her again.	met someone I know when I did not expect to meet them
8 Tue	Car problems again today! Must **look into** getting a new one.	investigate and examine the facts about a problem or situation
9 Wed	Poor old Eileen! The boss told her he didn't like some work she'd done and she **burst into** tears.	suddenly started to make a noise, especially to start crying, laughing or singing
10 Thu	The boss wants to have lunch with me. Anne says I shouldn't **read** anything **into** it, but I'm suspicious of his motives.	believe that an action, remark, or situation has a particular importance or meaning, often when this is not true
11 Fri	Met Liam today. He **went into** his marriage problems in great detail. Felt sorry for him.	described and discussed something in a detailed way
12 Sat	Decided to **throw myself into** doing some gardening now that spring is here!	start doing something with a lot of enthusiasm and energy
13 Sun	Saw Liam again. Told him I was busy as I didn't want to **enter into** another discussion about his private life.	start to become involved in something, especially a discussion. (Note that you enter a room, not ~~enter into~~ a room.)

B Away

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
tidy away sth or **tidy** sth **away**	put things in cupboards and drawers, etc. after you have been using them	Mum told me to **tidy away** all my things before my aunt came to visit.
pack away sth or **pack** sth **away**	put something into a bag or container, or put something in the place where it is usually kept	The scouts **packed away** their tents and left the camping ground.
tear sb **away** (usually + **from**)	force someone to stop doing something they enjoy in order to do something else	I'm sorry to **tear** you **away from** your computer, but I need your help.
stay away from sth	avoid something that has a bad effect on you	I think I should **stay away from** desserts. I'm putting on weight.
send away for sth	write to an organisation to ask them to send you something	I've **sent away for** a brochure about holidays in New Zealand.
lock yourself **away**	go to a room or building where you can be alone, usually so that you can work	I decided to **lock** myself **away** in my room till I'd finished my essay.
run away (often + **from**)	secretly leave a place because you are unhappy there	Did you ever **run away** from home as a child?

Exercises

21.1 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 At the supermarket yesterday Julia ran
2 Kim is getting over his broken heart by throwing himself
3 When she saw me dressed up as a pirate she burst
4 He doesn't think before he speaks so don't read too much
5 In your essay you should have gone more fully
6 We were disagreeing about the film and then Jo entered
7 The police are doing all they can to look

into his words.
into Martin.
into the causes of the war.
into the argument.
into what happened.
into laughter.
into his studies.

21.2 Complete these sentences using a phrasal verb with *away*. Write the verb in the correct form and add, if necessary, a reflexive pronoun (e.g. myself, yourself).

1 I once terrified my parents by .... from home.
2 Please .... your games and books. It's time for dinner.
3 You really should .... Stanley. He's a bad influence on you.
4 She was so upset that she .... in her room until the next morning.
5 Adam has .... an application form for that job he saw.
6 Please could you .... from the TV, I need some help in the garden.

21.3 Complete these sentences in any way that makes sense using one of the phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1 I was very surprised when Helen burst ....
2 It makes sense to stay ....
3 My best friend always throws ....
4 Sometimes I'd really like to run ....
5 I find this job so stressful. I really should look ....
6 When I went to the town centre last week I ran ....
7 Before moving house I spent weeks packing ....
8 Whenever visitors are coming, I usually tidy ....

21.4 Here are some more phrasal verbs with *into* and *away*. Read the sentences 1–5 and match the phrasal verbs with the definitions a–e below. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 As soon as Joe saw me he **launched into** a long account of his travels.
2 Because it is so expensive in this country at the moment, tourists are **keeping away**.
3 Trying to cross the room in the dark, he **banged into** a small table and knocked it over.
4 It isn't a person in that field, it's a scarecrow – the farmer wants to **scare** the birds **away**.
5 I **bumped into** your sister in town this morning.

a) knock against something, usually by accident
b) meet someone you know when you have not planned to meet them
c) start doing or saying something (e.g. a speech or a story) in a very enthusiastic way
d) make a person or animal so frightened that they go away
e) not go to a place

21.5 Can you see any basic meanings for *into* and *away* in the phrasal verbs in this unit that might help you learn them?

22 Time: spending time

A At work

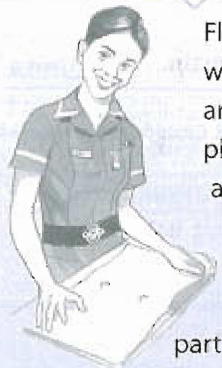

Florence works as a nurse. When she starts work she has to **clock on**[1] and when she leaves she **clocks off**[2]. If the machine shows that she has worked an extra long shift, then she is able to **take** time **off**[3] at a later date. She was planning to take a holiday in July this year but has had to **bring** it **forward**[4] as July is going to be a particularly busy time for her hospital this year. Florence loves her work but her hospital is understaffed and she hates to always **be pressed for**[5] time. She finds it almost impossible to **fit in**[6] time to talk to the patients although she feels that is an important part of her job. She can chat for a few minutes but then she has to **press on**[7] with her other duties. The hospital employs many nurses from overseas; but when their work permits **run out**[8] after two years they have to leave.

[1] record the time she arrives at work, usually at a machine with a clock (also clock in)
[2] record the time she leaves work (also clock out)
[3] spend time away from work
[4] change the date or time of something so that it happens earlier than expected
[5] not have enough of something, usually time or money
[6] find time to do something or see someone
[7] continue doing something in a determined way
[8] come to an end (of the period of time of a document or agreement); more formal equivalent is *expire*

B At leisure

When Florence does have spare time, she likes to relax. She usually **hangs out**[1] with friends she was at school with. They have **knocked around together**[2] for years and love **whiling away**[3] their days off, going round the shops or just chatting at one of their homes. Sometimes they go away for a weekend and **muck about**[4] at Florence's aunt's cottage in the countryside. Last time they did that, a colleague of Florence's **latched on to**[5] them. The others didn't really like her at first, especially as they always had to **hang on**[6] while she got ready, but now they all like her very much.

[1] spends a lot of time (informal)
[2] spent a lot of time with one another because they are good friends (informal)
[3] spending time in a relaxed way either because they are waiting for something or have nothing special to do
[4] waste time doing silly things (informal)
[5] spent time with them, especially when they did not want her with them
[6] wait, usually for a short time (informal)

Exercises

22.1 Complete these sentences with a verb from A.

1 I'm afraid I'm a bit .... for cash today. Could you lend me some?
2 Oh dear! My passport has .... out. I must renew it before our trip.
3 I usually .... on at 9 a.m. every day, but if my train is late it might be 9.15. I .... off at 5 p.m., but sometimes I can finish a bit earlier on Fridays.
4 Mr Chan wants to .... the meeting forward to this week as he's busy all next week. I'm not sure if we can .... it in this week as we're ever so busy too.
5 If we .... on after lunch we can probably finish the report by 5 p.m.
6 I'm going to .... some time off next month and go and stay with my parents.

22.2 Write an appropriate question to fit each answer.

1 ....?
Oh, I usually just hang out with friends, or sometimes I do some sport.
2 ....?
Well, he never studied; he just spent all his time mucking about, so it's no surprise.
3 ....?
Oh, about ten years. We used to knock around together as teenagers.
4 ....?
No, she's not a friend. She just latched on to our group and followed us.
5 ....?
Oh, it's great for whiling away the time if you're waiting for a plane or a train.
6 ....?
Let's just hang on for five minutes. I want to speak to someone.

22.3 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.

1 We had to wait an hour for the next train, so we went for a walk to while off the time.
2 A young French woman latched to me at the party last night. I think she wanted to practise her English.
3 I clock on work at 7.30 a.m. every morning.
4 We have to finish this job by six o'clock. We'd better press up with it.
5 I just don't know how we're going to fit three meetings on before the summer break.

Sometimes I get tired of just hanging out with other bats.

FOLLOW UP Write a description of how you spend your work and leisure time, using as many of the phrasal verbs in this unit as you can.

23 Time: passing of time

A The past

Journey into the past at the

Charnbury Folk Museum

If you're young, come on a journey into the past before you were born. If you're a senior, let us **take you back**[1] to your childhood. **Think back**[2] to what everyday life was like 50, 60, 100 years ago, before TV, before computers, before fridges and washing machines. Many of our exhibits **date back**[3] to the early 19th century.

Is that old vacuum cleaner in your attic just a **leftover**[4] from a **bygone**[5] era or is it a piece of industrial history? Come and find out.

Open: Monday–Friday, 10 a.m.–5 p.m.
Admission: Adults – £2.00
Concessions – £1.20
Address: Palmer Square, Charnbury
Tel: 0211 4684536

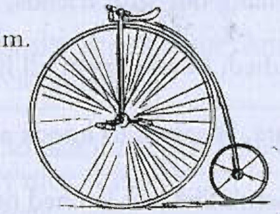

[1] make you remember a period or an event in the past

[2] think about things that happened in the past

[3] have existed since a particular time

[4] (noun) something which exists from an earlier time

[5] (adjective) from a time which does not exist any more

Leftover (noun) and **bygone** (adjective) are formed from the verbs **be left over** and **go by**.
We used some balloons that **were left over** from the Christmas party to decorate the house for her birthday. [still existed/were unused from an earlier time]
As time **goes by** you realise that your parents' advice was in your best interest. [passes]

Note that **bygone** also exists as a noun, but it is usually always in the plural **bygones**.

B Time moving

I'm sorry to **hold you up** but you must sign these forms before you go in. [delay you]

If there are no **hold-ups**, we should arrive by about seven o'clock. [noun: delays]

Jim, can you **hurry the kids up**. The coach is about to leave. [make them act more quickly]

Mum walks so fast. It's quite hard to **keep up with** her. [go at the same speed as someone]

The meeting **dragged on** and everyone got irritable. [continued for too long]

I'm sorry I'm late. My French lesson **ran on**, so I didn't leave school till 4.30 p.m. [continued for longer than expected]

Three weeks **passed by** before I got a reply to my letter of complaint. [went past]

It's difficult to plan for the future. Nobody knows what **lies ahead**. [will happen in the future]

TIP If a phrasal verb has a noun or adjective form associated with it, learn them together and record them together in your vocabulary notebook, e.g. *leftover* and *be left over*.

Exercises

23.1 Write the best phrasal verb expression from the options below to complete this text.

> The film is a time travel adventure and I found it very entertaining though my companion felt that it .... (1) a bit. At the beginning it .... (2) to the Iron Age where the hero is living an ordinary Iron-Age life. He eats a mysterious plant, however, and the years suddenly start .... (3) like minutes. Suddenly he is in the future and, as he is now a .... (4) from a .... (5) era, he finds it very hard to understand what is going on. This results in a number of amusing incidents. Although the plot is occasionally a little difficult to follow I would certainly recommend it.

1 a) passed by b) dragged on c) held up d) dated back
2 a) thinks back b) hurries you up c) takes you back d) holds you up
3 a) going by b) lying ahead c) hurrying up d) keeping up
4 a) bygone b) hold-up c) bygones d) leftover
5 a) bygone b) hold-up c) bygones d) leftover

23.2 Explain the difference in meaning between these pairs of sentences.

1 a) The lecture ran on.
b) The lecture dragged on.
2 a) John held us up.
b) John hurried us up.
3 a) This song takes me back to my childhood.
b) This song dates back to my childhood.
4 a) It was not easy to keep up with the children as we went through town.
b) It was not easy to hurry up tbe children as we went through town.

23.3 Here are some things people might say relating to time. What does the speaker mean in each sentence? Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 The older you get, the faster time goes by.
2 Music and smells have great powers to take you back.
3 Mr Jones is a leftover from a bygone age.
4 We should let bygones be bygones!
5 You never know what lies ahead.

23.4 Rewrite these sentences using the words in brackets. Write the words in the correct form.

1 The old oil lamps in my grandfather's house looked like things that had survived from a different era. (LEFTOVER, BYGONE)
2 The smell of chalk always reminds me of my schooldays. (TAKE BACK)
3 The traffic was delayed on the motorway because of an accident. (HOLD-UP)
4 Sometimes, if the textbook is boring, the lesson seems to last longer than it should. (DRAG ON)
5 We can never know what the futute will bring. (LIE AHEAD)
6 These pizzas were from the party. Nobody ate them. Would you like one? (LEFTOVER)

24 Location

A Describing where places are

example	*meaning*
We stayed in a lovely hotel which **was tucked away** in a little valley.	was in a quiet or hidden place that not many people see or go to (from **be tucked away**)
Our room **opened onto** a balcony with lovely views of the countryside.	opened in the direction of the countryside or had a view of it (from **open onto** sth)
Fields and woods **stretched away** to the horizon.	continued over a long distance (from **stretch away**)
We could see a few farmhouses which **were spread out** over the landscape.	were in different parts of a large area and not close together (from **be spread out**)
We felt we were completely **cut off** from the busy modern world!	very far away from other places and people (from **be cut off**)

B People in locations

Read this conversation between two students.

Deb: Come in, John.

John: What a great room!

Deb: Well, I like it. It was a bit dull when I moved in, but I bought these nice curtains which help to **brighten** it **up**[1]. In fact, I like it so much here that I'd rather stay **in**[2] than go out most evenings.

John: You're lucky! The room I rent is so miserable that I **stay out**[3] as long as I can! I even **stayed on**[4] in the library tonight until it closed! Anyhow, I've come to bring you your file – you left it **behind**[5] at the seminar this morning.

Deb: Oh, thanks. How silly of me. I'm glad you noticed it.

John: Well, I **stayed behind**[6] to ask the Prof some questions and then saw it lying there.

Deb: Thank you very much. Would you like a coffee now you're here?

John: Well, I can't stay now. But I'd love to **call back**[7] another time if that's OK?

Deb: Sure, that'd be nice.

[1] make more attractive, often by adding colours
[2] remain at home, especially in the evenings
[3] come home late or not come home at night
[4] stayed in a place longer than planned
[5] left a place without taking something with you
[6] did not leave a place when others left it
[7] go back to a place to visit someone

TIP

Notice how three of the phrasal verbs in A are used in the passive: *be tucked away*, *be spread out*, *be cut off*. Make a special note in your vocabulary notebook if any phrasal verb construction is used in a particular way, e.g. in the passive, as a noun or as an adjective, and write down a typical example sentence to help you remember it.

Exercises

24.1 Complete these sentences to describe these pictures using phrasal verbs based on the verbs in brackets.

1
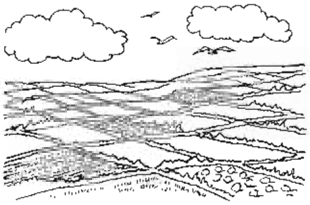
The fields (stretch) ...

3
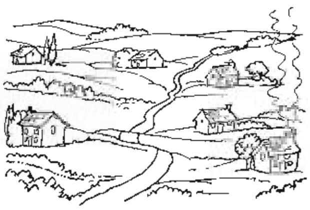
There are small houses (spread) ...

5
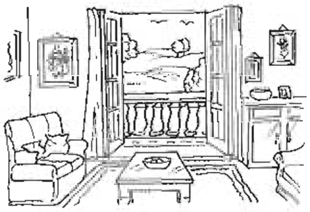
The room (open) ...

2
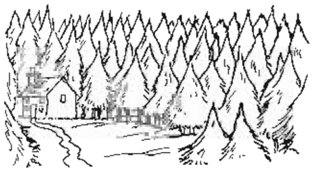
The house (tuck) ...

4
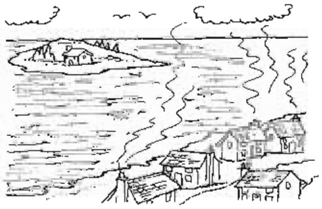
The house on the island (cut) ...

24.2 Which phrasal verb from B opposite means ...

1 the opposite of *go out*, as in meet friends or go to a restaurant?
2 not come home at night or come home late?
3 forget to take something with you when you go away from a place?
4 stay in a place when other people have left?
5 make something which is dull or boring more attractive or colourful?
6 stay somewhere longer than you planned?
7 go back to a place to see someone, often to visit someone briefly or to collect something?

24.3 Use the phrasal verbs from exercise 24.2 to complete these sentences. Write the verbs in the correct form.

1 I .... my floppy disk .... at the computer class. I'll have to go back and see if it's still in the machine.
2 When you were a teenager, did your parents allow you to .... late?
3 Shop assistant: I'm afraid your photographs aren't ready yet. It will be another couple of hours.
Customer: Okay. I'll .... tomorrow.
4 We've decided to paint the kitchen to .... it .... a bit. It's so gloomy and dull at the moment.
5 I'm really tired. I think I'll .... tonight and not go to the party after all, sorry.
6 The teacher asked the naughty boy to .... after the lesson.
7 We loved the resort so much we decided to .... another week, even though our friends had gone home.

FOLLOW UP

Go to the Cambridge University Press dictionaries website at dictionary.cambridge.org and select the *Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs*. In the search box, type *behind* and then search. From the list of phrasal verbs with *behind*, click on three that you are not familiar with and study the explanations.

25 Cause and effect

A Verbs with *off*

A number of phrasal verbs associated with cause and effect have the particle *off*.

set off something or **set something off**

spark off something

trigger off something

set someone off

OFF

The terrorists set the bomb **off** in the middle of the rush hour. [caused an explosion]

We accidentally set **off** the burglar alarm when we came into the house. [made the alarm ring]

The scandal set **off** a series of events which caused the collapse of the government and a general election. [caused a series of events or a lot of activity, often without intending to do so]

You shouldn't have mentioned flying saucers. You've set him **off** now. He'll talk for hours. [made him start to talk about something he often talks about]

The ending of the play really set her **off**. I didn't know whether she was laughing or crying. [made her start to laugh or cry]

The crisis **sparked off** a bitter civil war. [caused something to suddenly happen or exist]

The Prime Minister's speech **triggered off** violent protests in cities up and down the country. [made something suddenly begin, often a difficult or violent situation]

B Other cause and effect verbs

Read these spoken extracts.

The new airport has **brought about**[1] a lot of changes on this island.	[1] made something happen
I don't know what **lies behind**[2] Mr Wild's attack on me. Maybe he's trying to **pay** me **back**[3] for something I said about him. Or maybe he's just **stirring** things **up**[4].	[2] is the real reason for [3] do something unpleasant to me because have done something unpleasant to him [4] causing arguments or bad feeling between people, usually on purpose
This photograph **brings back**[5] memories of when we lived in Scotland, when I was a child.	[5] makes me remember or think about something from the past
The doctors still haven't **ruled out**[6] the possibility that he might have cancer.	[6] decided that something is impossible
I think most problems teenagers experience **spring from**[7] a feeling of insecurity.	[7] are caused by

Exercises

25.1 Choose the best phrasal verb from the box to complete each sentence. Write the verb in the correct form.

bring back lie behind stir up set off spark off spring from

1 That song always .... wonderful memories whenever I hear it.
2 I think my problems at work .... the fact that I never really wanted to go into accountancy as a career.
3 I wonder what really .... Maria's dislike of Paul.
4 I don't like the way Maxine is always trying to .... trouble between us.
5 The film .... a lively discussion in the class.
6 The tragic pictures of the earthquake victims .... her .... and she just couldn't stop crying.

25.2 Fill the gaps in the paragraph below, using the correct verb or particle.

There has been a lot of discussion in the newspapers about what triggered .... (1) the recent explosion in the city centre. Some people believe that a bomb was .... (2) off by a terrotist group who hope to .... (3) about the downfall of the government. Others believe that the explosion was probably sparked .... (4) by an electrical fault and have .... (5) out any criminal activity. But the question still remains: was it a deliberate explosion set .... (6) by a group who wanted to .... (7) things up in order to .... (8) the government back for some injustice?

25.3 Which word from the box provides the best ending for these sentences?

suspects fireworks memories feelings reforms violence

1 At midnight on New Year's Eve we usually set off some ....
2 The police used fingerprint tests to rule out some ....
3 The political demonstration triggered off ....
4 That music brings back ....
5 The government plans to bring about ....
6 Violet's comments stirred up a lot of bad ....

25.4 Complete these sentences using a phrasal verb from the opposite page. Write the verb in the correct form.

1 Take no notice of what he says. He's always trying to .... trouble.
2 She vowed that one day she'd .... for all the heartbreak he had caused her.
3 I wonder what .... the protests last week.
4 The decision to increase taxes .... demonstrations all across the country.
5 Detectives still haven't .... the possibility of murder.
6 His therapist thought that his unhappiness .... a traumatic experience in his childhood.

26 Change

A *Up* meaning more or better

When *up* is used in a phrasal verb with an idea of change, it often adds an idea of becoming more or better.

The number of students getting good marks in their exams is going **up**. [increasing]

I was afraid no-one would come to my lecture, but the room is **filling up** nicely now. [becoming fuller]

Things were bad last week but the situation is **looking up** now. [improving]

Business was down at the beginning of the year, but is **picking up** now. [improving after a bad period]

Would you like me to **heat up** the rice or will you have it cold? [make warmer]

Simon's been ignoring the situation for ages – it's time he **woke up to** what's happening. [became more aware of a situation or problem]

B Other phrasal verbs relating to change

When I look back over the last year I see an awful lot of changes in my life. For instance at work, there has been an almost total **changeover**[1] of staff in the office. Then during the year we have **phased out**[2] all the old computers and **phased in**[3] a completely new system of office administration. I wasn't sure how things would **pan out**[4] at first and there were a few problems to begin with. However, the arguments about the new system **blew over**[5] quite quickly.

[1] noun: a change from using or having one thing to using or having another (from *change over*)
[2] gradually stopped using
[3] gradually started using
[4] develop or happen
[5] became less important and were then forgotten

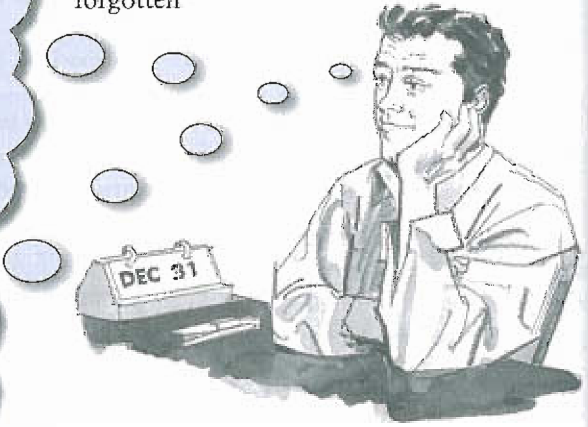

At the beginning of the year, my girlfriend left me and it took me a while to **get over**[1] that. But everything's fine with my personal life too now. Best of all, of course, is the fact that I've managed to **give up**[2] smoking this year. I didn't feel too good for the first few weeks but that's all **worn off**[3] now. I **stuck with**[4] my new regime and now I feel fitter than I have for ages.

[1] begin to feel better after an experience that has made you unhappy
[2] stop a habit or stop doing or having something unhealthy
[3] gradually disappeared
[4] did as I had planned and did not change to something else (informal)

TIP Sometimes it may help to learn phrasal verbs in pairs of opposites, e.g. *phase in* or *phase out* a new system; *heat up* or *cool down* food; *take up* or *give up* an activity; prices *go up* or *go down*.

Exercises

26.1 Look at these pictures and then complete the sentences about them below, using phrasal verbs from A.

1
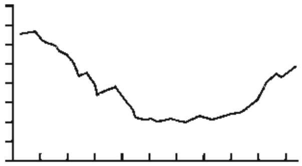
Sales by month

3
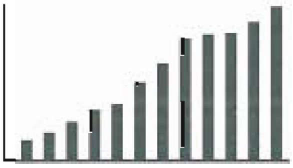
Mobile phone use

2
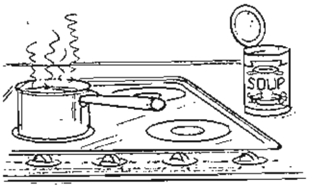

4
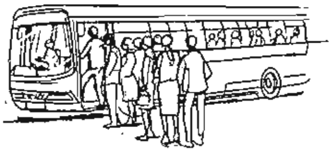

1 Sales have .... during the last few months.
2 I was in the kitchen .... some soup when I heard the phone.
3 Mobile phone use is .... all the time.
4 The bus isn't full yet, but it's ....

26.2 Complete these sentences using the two verbs from A opposite which you did not use in exercise 26.1.

1 It's time you .... to reality and went out and found a job!
2 The economic situation is definitely .... : exports have increased and unemployment is down.

26.3 Complete the word puzzle.

Across
1 change from one thing to another (noun)
2 We can't change it; we're .... with it.
3 I'm angry, but I'll .... over it.
4 The scaudal will .... over after a few months.

Down
5 The firm will .... in a new pension scheme.
6 I'm not sure how the situation will .... out.
7 I think I'll .... up soccer and start playing golf instead.
8 I had an injection at the dentist's and it hasn't .... off yet, so I can't eat properly.

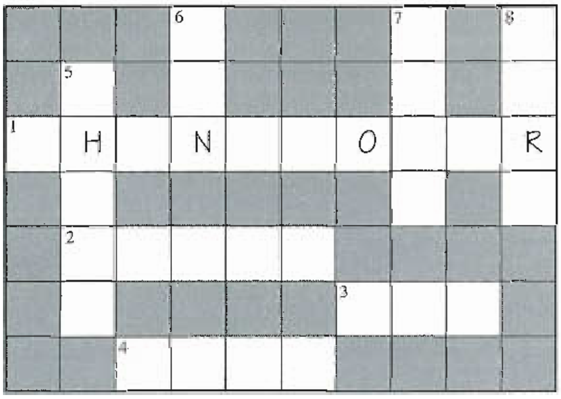

■	■	■	6	■	■	■	7	■	8
■	5	■		■	■	■		■	
1	H		N			O			R
■		■	■	■	■	■		■	
■	2					■	■	■	■
■		■	■	■	■	3			■
■	■	4				■	■	■	■

26.4 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verb expressions in these sentences.

1 The overchange to the new accounting system has caused endless prohlems.
2 There was a lot of trouble in the office last month, but it's all blown up now and things are back to normal.
3 Shall I hot up that pizza for you? I expect it's gone cold by now.
4 All these old telephones will be faced out over the next year and we'll get new, digital ones.

27 Success and failure

A

Read these extracts to understand the underlined phrasal verb expressions in the headlines.

NORTHCORP BRINGS OFF $10M DEAL

Northcorp Telecommunications announced last night that the company had secured a $10m dollar deal in the face of severe competition and despite many difficulties.

STARFINDER CD TAKES OFF

The first CD by the group which won the TV show 'Starfinder', where bands competed for a record contract, has become instantly popular one day after it was released, and is now number one.

TINA TAKES OVER AS NUMBER ONE POP IDOL

18-year-old singer Tina Hoogan has been voted number one female performer in a national pop poll, replacing last year's winner, Francie Moon as the country's most popular female artist.

MINI-BALLOON ATTEMPT COMES OFF DESPITE WEATHER

An attempt to fly a mini hot-air balloon under Tower Bridge in London has succeeded, despite fog and rain which threatened to prevent the event.

UMBRELLAS FAIL TO CATCH ON WITH TEENAGERS

An attempt by a Japanese company to market a new range of jazzy umbrellas to teenagers has failed. Sales show that they have not become as popular as the company hoped.

Druma pulls off record attempt

ZAFI DRUMA yesterday succeeded in winning the 100m, 400m and 800m all on the same day at the International Athletics Championships in Mexico City, despite fierce international competition.

DOWNFALL OF REBEL GROUP MARKS END OF CIVIL WAR

The failure of the rebel army to hold on to the western part of Kahuba and the rapid collapse of popular support for the rebels means the country's civil war is at an end.

PLAN TO BUILD NEW STADIUM FALLS THROUGH

The President of the Football Association announced last night that the plan to build a new £200m national stadium has failed and the stadium will not be built.

B

Read this speech by a headteacher to pupils who are leaving school.

When you leave this school, we hope you will **build on**[1] what you have learnt here. You must not expect to just **walk into**[2] a highly-paid job, but most of you will, with hard work and self-discipline, succeed and achieve great things. Never be content to just **muddle through**[3] as so many people do, always trying to **catch up**[4] and failing to do so. Hard work, dedication and commitment will, in the end, **pay off**[5]. To **keep up**[6] with the competition we all have to give 100%, so that our country can **stay ahead**[7] in business and industry. It will be your job to make this happen. Good luck.

[1] use a success or achievement as a base from which to achieve more success

[2] get very easily

[3] succeed in doing something even though you have difficulties because you do not really know how to do it

[4] reach the same quality or standard as someone

[5] be successful

[6] make progress at the same speed as something or someone else so that you stay at the same level as them

[7] continue to be more advanced and successful than other people

TIP Where phrasal verbs fall naturally into two groups with opposite meanings, e.g. success versus failure, increase versus decrease, make two columns in your vocabulary notebook and fill them in as you meet new verbs that fit either column. Try doing this with the verbs on this page.

Exercises

27.1 Find phrasal verb expressions from A on the opposite page that match these definitions.

1 fail to happen
2 replace someone in a position of success
3 the sudden failure of a person or organisation
4 suddenly become successful or popular
5 succeed in achieving something difficult
6 happen successfully or as planned

27.2 Decide whether these phrasal verbs are mainly associated with success or with failure, by writing S or F in the box.

1 bring off ☐
2 come off ☐
3 muddle through ☐
4 pay off ☐
5 catch up ☐
6 stay ahead ☐
7 take off ☐
8 fall through ☐
9 walk into ☐

27.3 Fill the gaps in this school report with phrasal verbs from B opposite.

SUBJECT	COMMENT
History	Tina's work in history is not very good but she does manage to .... somehow.
Maths	Tina has managed to successfully .... the work she did last year in order to make excellent progress this term.
English	Tina missed a lot of schoolwork through illness at the beginning of term, but she has managed to .... and is doing fine now.
Geography	Tina has always been top of the class in geography and she has managed to .... this year too.
Physics	Tina has never found physics easy but her hard work is beginning to ....

27.4 Rewrite these sentences using the words in brackets. Write the verb in the correct form.

1 Miranda immediately got a job in London. (WALK)

....

2 Jim's hard work eventually brought him success. (PAY)

....

3 The company is hoping to make an important deal this week. (PULL)

....

4 Rachel never expected her singing career to meet with such instant success. (TAKE)

....

5 The project may well not happen because of a lack of funds. (FALL)

....

6 Teri finds it hard to make as much progress as the other kids in her class. (KEEP)

....

7 The new design of mobile pbone has become successful almost overnight. (CATCH)

....

8 Top software companies are finding it increasingly difficult to remain in front of their competitors. (STAY)

....

28 Starting and finishing

A Starting

If you ...	*then you ...*	*example*
set about something/doing something	start doing something that uses a lot of time or energy	The kitchen looked as if it hadn't been cleaned or tidied for months but Jessica **set about** making it look as good as new.
set out	start a journey	We **set out** at 7 a.m. and didn't return until after dark.
start off or **start out**	begin life, existence or a profession in a particular way	Yvonne **started out** as a model but soon realised that it was not the career for her.

Note that the noun the **outset**, from the verb **set out**, means the beginning, e.g. There were problems from the **outset** and things became progressively worse.

B Finishing

Joe **called off**[1] the building work his team was doing on the new company offices because he had heard that the company was going bankrupt. He knew the money was going to **dry up**[2], so he was not prepared to continue. Most of the team immediately **broke off**[3] what they were doing but some of them first **finished off**[4] the task they were working on. Joe himself quickly **polished off**[5] the last of his paperwork and then **packed up**[6] too.

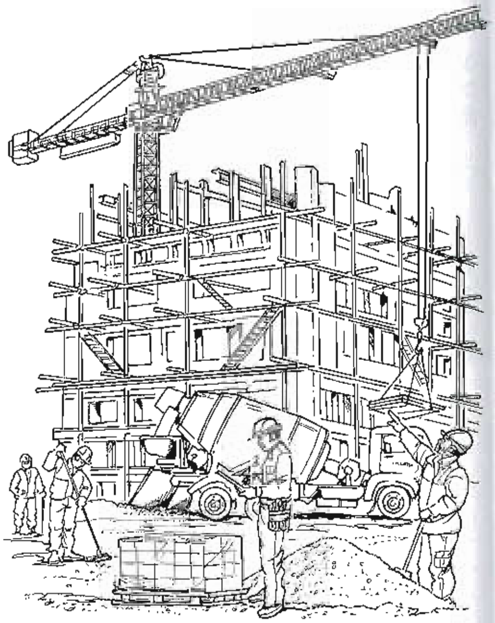

[1] decided to stop an activity that had already started
[2] end or stop coming
[3] stopped or interrupted
[4] completed the last part of what they were doing
[5] finished something quickly and easily
[6] collected his things together, usually after finishing doing something

Suzanna is trying to **give up**[1] smoking. At first she **cut down**[2] to five rather than fifteen a day, but she is finding it very hard. She says that a cigarette helps her to **wind down**[3] after a hard day at work. She hopes her determination won't **fizzle out**[4] after a few weeks as she is very anxious not to **give up**[5] this new regime.

[1] stop doing or having something
[2] reduced the amount or number
[3] gradually relax after something that has made you feel tired or worried
[4] gradually end or disappear, usually in a disappointing way
[5] stop doing something before you have completed it, usually because it is too difficult

Exercises

28.1 Complete these comments by various people with words from the box below. Write the words in the correct form.

set fizzle dry start give polish pack cut finish call break outset

1 I .... out as a chemist but I knew from the .... that it wasn't what I wanted to do. So I .... it in and joined the navy instead.

2 I had 50 exam papers to correct that day, so I .... about marking them. I managed to .... off about 20 by 12.30, so I .... off for lunch and decided to .... the job off later.

3 I was putting on weight, so I decided to .... up fatty foods. I .... down on sweet drinks too, but I'm afraid my efforts .... out after a couple of weeks and now I'm back where I started.

4 Our research project was getting nowhere, and our funds were .... up. We didn't really want to .... the whole thing off, but we had no choice. We're very disappointed.

28.2 Answer these questions about yourself, using full sentences with a phrasal verb.

1 What should you set about doing soon, even though you don't really want to?
2 Can you think of something you were planning to do but then were forced to call off?
3 What helps you to wind down when you are tired or stressed?
4 What do you eat or drink too much of which you think you should cut down on?
5 What did you once start off doing but later gave up?

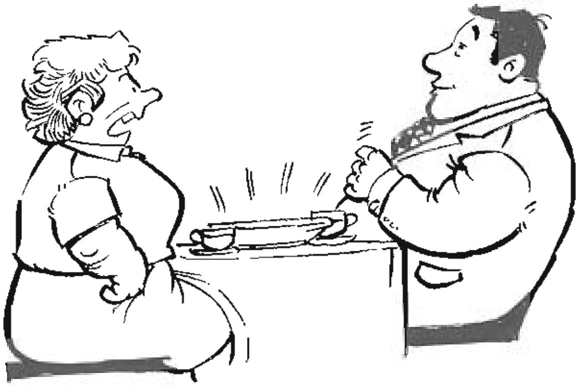

'You polished off all the cakes before I got here!'

FOLLOW UP

Go to the Cambridge University Press dictionaries online website at dictionary.cambridge.org and select the *Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs*. In the search box, enter the word *start*. If you do not have Internet access, look up the word *start* in a good monolingual or bilingual dictionary. How many more phrasal verbs can you find based on *start*?

29 Actions and movement

A Actions and movement with *down* and *up*

Down in phrasal verbs about actions can mean towards the ground, towards a lower level, or less intense.

high/intense → DOWN → lower / less intense

example	*meaning*
She **fell down** and broke her arm.	fell to the ground
Can you **reach** that book **down** for me, please? You're taller than me.	get something that is above your head by reaching with your hand
Slow down! There's a police car behind us.	drive slower

Up in phrasal verbs about actions can mean towards a higher level, in a complete way, or to a greater degree.

lower → UP → higher/complete

example	*meaning*
I must **wrap up** Stella's birthday present. Do you have any nice paper?	cover in paper, especially in order to give as a present
Can you help me to **tie up** this package? I don't want it to get damaged in the post.	put string or rope around something so that it is fastened together
Will you help me **blow up** these balloons for the party?	fill with air
Could you **pick up** that box and follow me, please? It has the exam papers in it.	lift using your hands
He felt very angry and **tore** her letter **up**.	tear into a lot of small pieces
Could you **move up** and let Christine sit next to you?	move slightly so that there is enough space for someone else
I have a bad leg. I don't want to **slow** you **up**, so go ahead and don't wait for me.	make someone or something slower

B Other action and movement verbs

Move over! I need to sit down. [change the place where you are sitting or standing so that there is space for someone else to sit or stand]

I'm just **popping out** for a newspaper. Do you want anything from the shop? [informal: leaving the place where I am to go somewhere for a short time]

I **reached out** for the light switch but couldn't find it in the dark. [stretched my arm in front of my body, usually in order to get or touch something]

Can you **help** me **on/off** with these boots, please? [help me put on / take off a piece of clothing]

Exercises

29.1 **Read these sentences and answer the questions.**

1 Could you reach down that saucepan for me, please?
Where do you think the saucepan is?
2 Emily has just popped out of the office.
Is Emily going home for the day?
3 If Charlie moves up a bit, there'll be room for all of us.
Where does Charlie have to move – a bit higher or closer to someone?
4 If Sonia moves over, then Natasha can sit next to Nicholas.
Does Sonia have to move more or less than Charlie in sentence 3?
5 Tear the cloth up into small pieces and soak them in the dye for a couple of hours.
Is it necessary to use scissors to make the cloth into small pieces?
6 Help your grandmother on with her coat, Julie.
Is Julie's grandmother about to go outside or inside?

29.2 **Rewrite these sentences using phrasal verbs from the opposite page which have the opposite meaning to the underlined verbs.**

1 The children helped me to unwrap the parcel.
2 Can you untie Billy's shoe laces for him?
3 Put down the ball at once.
4 Hurry up – it's beginning to snow and there's ice on the road.
5 Jill loves bursting balloons!

29.3 **Look at these pictures and write answers to the questions about them using a phrasal verb from the opposite page.**

1
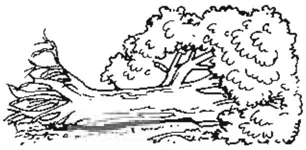

2
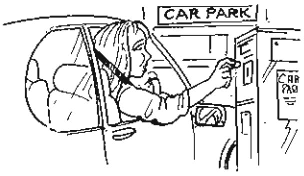

3
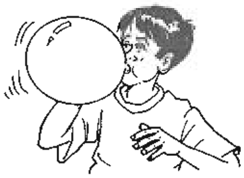

4
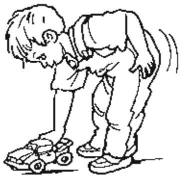

5
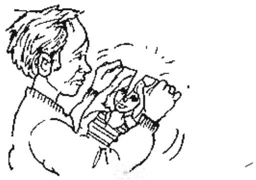

6
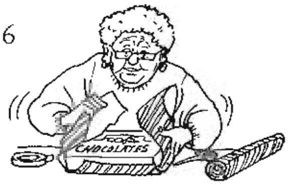

1 What has happened to the tree?
2 What's the woman doing?
3 What is the man doing?
4 What's the boy doing?
5 What's the man doing?
6 What's the woman doing?

29.4 Choose the correct verbs to complete these sentences.

1 Their heavy rucksacks .... the climbers up.
2 In the darkness of the cinema he .... out and took her hand.
3 I'm just going to .... out to the post office. I won't be long.
4 Your bike tyres are flat. Let me .... them up for you.

30 Destroying and reacting to destruction

A Destroying

Here are some phrasal verbs which relate to the concept of destruction.

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
fall apart	break into pieces because of being too old or too weak	Take care with this priceless old book. It's beginning to **fall apart**.
pull down sth or **pull** sth **down**	destroy a building or other structure because it is not wanted any more	They are planning to **pull down** the old police station and build a new one.
screw up sth or **screw** sth **up**	twist or crush paper or material with your hands	You can tell he's nervous – look how he's **screwing up** those scraps of paper.
tear apart sth or **tear** sth **apart**	pull something violently so that it breaks into two or more pieces	The customs officers **tore** the bag **apart** and found the hidden drugs.
tear down sth or **tear** sth **down**	violently destroy a building or other structure because it is not wanted	I can't bear to watch them **tearing down** the school we used to go to.
knock over sth/sb or **knock** sth/sb **over**	hit or push someone or something, usually accidentally, so that they fall to the ground or onto their side	As she was dusting the room she **knocked over** a vase and spilt water all over the table.
put out sth or **put** sth **out**	make something that is burning, e.g. a fire or cigarette, stop burning	We managed to **put** the fire **out** before the fire brigade arrived.
root out sth/sb or **root** sth/sb **out**	find and get rid of the thing or person that is causing a problem	The government says it will **root out** crime and the causes of crime.
stamp out sth or **stamp** sth **out**	get rid of something that is considered wrong or harmful	The government says it is doing all it can to **stamp out** the problem of drugs.

B Reacting to destruction and negative situations

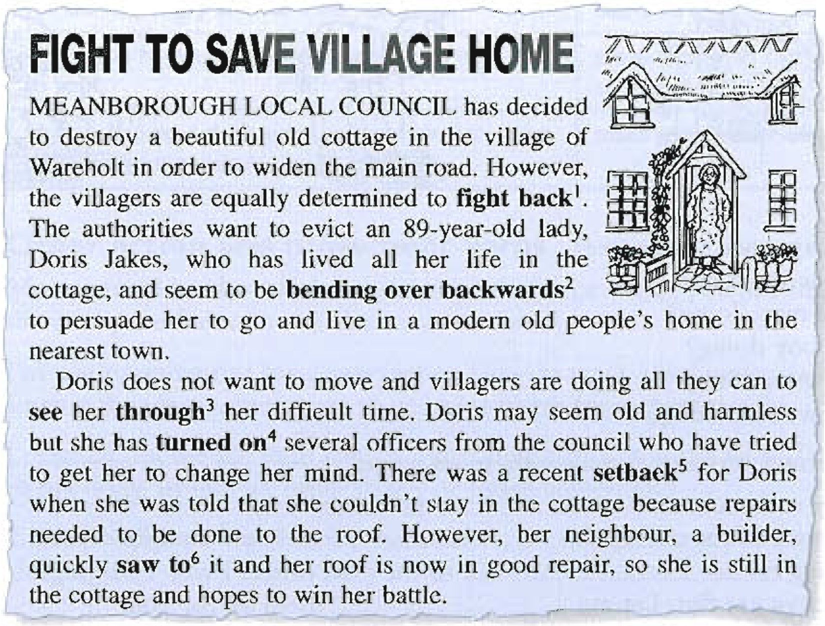

FIGHT TO SAVE VILLAGE HOME

MEANBOROUGH LOCAL COUNCIL has decided to destroy a beautiful old cottage in the village of Wareholt in order to widen the main road. However, the villagers are equally determined to **fight back**[1]. The authorities want to evict an 89-year-old lady, Doris Jakes, who has lived all her life in the cottage, and seem to be **bending over backwards**[2] to persuade her to go and live in a modern old people's home in the nearest town.

Doris does not want to move and villagers are doing all they can to **see** her **through**[3] her difficult time. Doris may seem old and harmless but she has **turned on**[4] several officers from the council who have tried to get her to change her mind. There was a recent **setback**[5] for Doris when she was told that she couldn't stay in the cottage because repairs needed to be done to the roof. However, her neighbour, a builder, quickly **saw to**[6] it and her roof is now in good repair, so she is still in the cottage and hopes to win her battle.

[1] defend themselves when something or someone attacks them

[2] trying extremely hard, often to help or please someone

[3] help or support someone during a difficult period in their life

[4] criticised them very strongly or attacked them

[5] noun: problem which caused time to be wasted

[6] did what needed to be done to solve the problem

Exercises

30.1 Complete these sentences using verbs from the table in A opposite.

1 The border police have tried unsuccessfully to .... out illegal immigration.
2 When the thefts at the school happened the headteacher promised to .... out the person or persons responsible.
3 We got a lovely old chair from my grandmother's house when she died but it was .... apart so we had it restored.
4 She read the letter then .... it up and threw it angrily into the wastepaper basket.
5 I got so excited I .... over my coffee cup and made a terrible stain on the tablecloth.

30.2 Which phrasal verbs do these pictures illustrate? Write a sentence to describe what the animals or people in each picture are doing, using the appropriate phrasal verb from the opposite page.

1

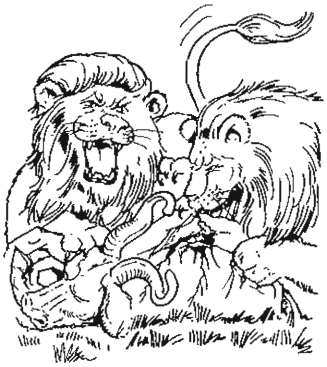

2

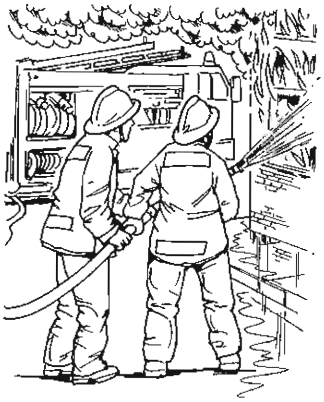

3

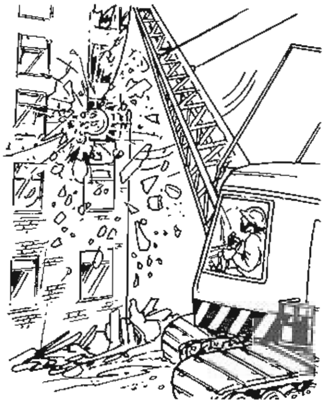

30.3 Rewrite the underlined parts of these conversations, using phrasal verbs from B opposite.

1 Pedro: I'm sorry you didn't get the funds you applied for to do your research.
Gisela: Yes, well, it was a bit of a disappointment and I did waste a bit of time because of it but I've applied for a different grant, and hope I'll get that.

2 Tony: Are you managing to survive without working?
Dan: Well, my parents have lent me some money to enable me to survive while I'm studying.

3 Connie: Teachers suffered very badly under the last government – their salaries fell and their conditions got worse.
Hilda: Yes, but they are not just reacting passively any more now and their union is much stronger.

4 Ruth: Did you get much support from Mr Crombie?
Bob: Oh yes, he did absolutely everything possible to help me.

5 Tom: I hear you experienced Lena's bad temper this morning!
Eric: Yes, I made an innocent comment and she just reacted really furiously.

6 Olive: The photocopier's not working again.
Gareth: OK, don't worry, I'll go and fix it.

31 Communication

A Managing subjects and topics

Kathryn Taylor is speaking to her colleagues at a weekly business meeting. She gives an outline of what she's going to say.

> Well, there are a couple of matters which I want to **bring up**[1] today for discussion. But before we **get on to**[2] those questions, I just want to **run through**[3] the schedule for next week's sales conference, which you all have copies of. Someone asked me if we could talk about the new computer system, but I'd prefer to **leave** that **aside**[4] for today and **come back to**[5] it another time. I'm sure I don't need to **spell out**[6] how important it is that we're all thoroughly prepared for next week's conference, so maybe we can **deal with**[7] that first. So, let's have a quick **run-through**[8] of the schedule and discuss each event in turn.

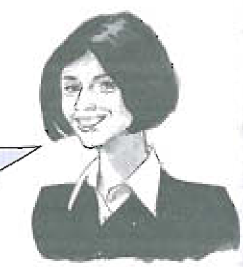

[1] start to talk about
[2] start talking about after discussing something else
[3] repeat something, usually quickly, to make sure it is correct
[4] not discuss it so that we can discuss something else
[5] return to discuss it at a future time
[6] explain in detail
[7] discuss or give our attention to
[8] noun: a practice or repetition to make sure something is correct (from the verb **run through**)

Note that some of the phrasal verbs above can have the object before or after the particle:

bring sth **up** or **bring up** sth
spell sth **out** or **spell out** sth
leave sth **aside** or **leave aside** sth

B Communicating and interacting with others

In these dialogues the second speaker uses a phrasal verb to repeat the first speaker's meaning.

Jim: I wish they had done what they said they would do.
Nan: Yes, they should have **kept to** what they promised and not changed their minds.

Freda: I don't know who to ask for help or advice on this matter. It's very delicate.
Lou: Yes, it's difficult to know who to **turn to**, isn't it?

Anne: Lucy was extremely enthusiastic and excited about coming to work for us.
Fiona: Yes, she was absolutely **bubbling over** with excitement when I spoke to her.

Paul: She acts as if she was the boss, telling everyone what to do.
Mia: Yes, she's always **ordering** people **about/around**.

Karen: I saw a sign saying that the car park will be closed tomorrow. Can you tell everybody else, please?
Tony: Yes, I'll **pass** the news **on***. I'll send an e-mail to everyone in the office.

Harry: I see Grace said no to the job.
Zoë: Yes, she **turned** the offer **down***.

*The object can also appear after the particle in these two phrasal verbs.

Exercises

31.1 **Look at the picture and answer the questions below.**

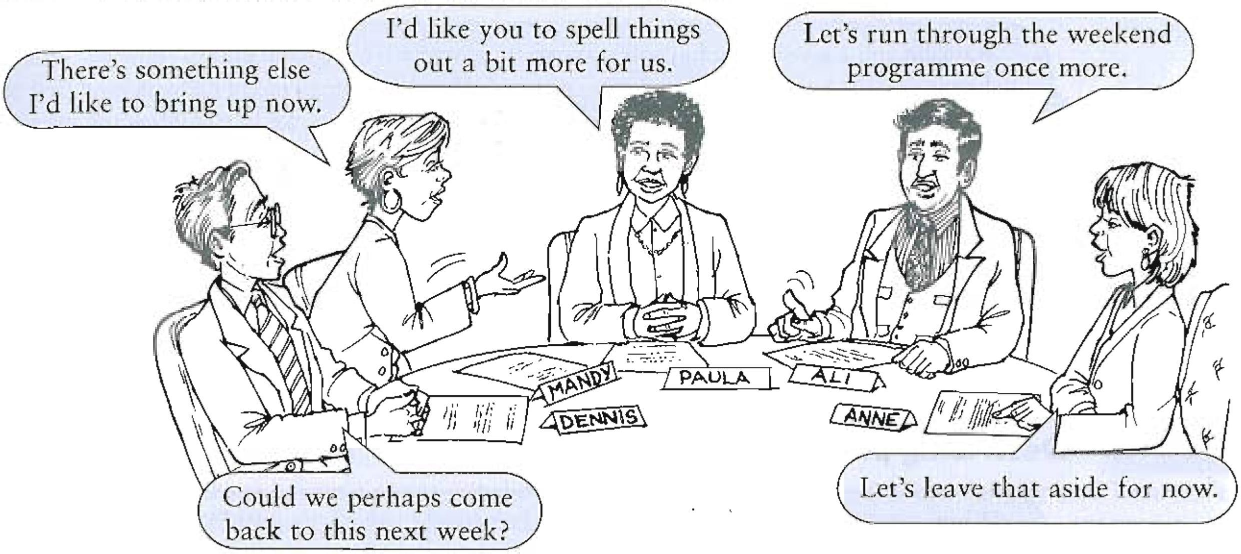
There's something else I'd like to bring up now.
I'd like you to spell things out a bit more for us.
Let's run through the weekend programme once more.
MANDY
DENNIS
PAULA
ALI
ANNE
Could we perhaps come back to this next week?
Let's leave that aside for now.

1 Which speaker wants to introduce a new topic now?
2 Which speaker would welcome a fuller explanation?
3 Which two speakers want to deal with a topic later on?
4 Which speaker would like to repeat something to make sure everyone understands it?

31.2 **Choose the best phrasal verbs from the opposite page to complete these sentences.**

1 I'm sorry, but I'm going to have to .... your invitation as I'll be away then.
2 Kate is such a bossy person, always .... people ....
3 Let's .... this question .... for now and return to it when we've all read the report.
4 How on earth did we .... such an extraordinary topic of conversation?
5 If she has a problem, she knows she can always .... her aunt for help.
6 Jill is thrilled with her new flat – she is .... with enthusiasm.
7 In this essay I plan to .... the causes of the French Revolution from a new perspective.
8 Let's try to .... the agenda and not get distracted.
9 Could you .... a message to Lee when you see him later?

31.3 **Here are some more phrasal verbs connected with communicating. Try to explain the meanings of the verbs in bold. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

1 They won't be able to hear you at the back of the hall. You'll have to **speak up**.
2 Class 2B seem to spend most of their time in my lessons looking out of the window – I just don't know if I am **getting through** to them or not.
3 Although I think most of the staff agree with me, no-one else is prepared to **speak up**.
4 The arrangements for the conference are rather complicated and I hope I'll be able to **get** the details **across** to everyone.
5 I'm sorry to **butt in** but I couldn't help hearing you mention that you come from Edinburgh.
6 Jack was halfway through his speech when he **dried up**.

32 Describing people and places

A Describing people

Natasha and I love going to posh restaurants where we have to **dress up**[1] though Natasha always finds it hard to decide what to **put on**[2]. Her favourite evening dress is long, red and tight-fitting and she has to get me to help her **do up**[3] the zip. As we live in Moscow we have to **wrap up**[4] well before going out in winter and she **puts** a long fur coat **on**[5] over her dress. As soon as we arrive anywhere, she goes straight to the ladies room to **freshen up**[6].

[1] put on formal or special clothes
[2] put a piece of clothing onto your body
[3] fasten
[4] dress in warm clothes
[5] see note 2
[6] brush your hair, refresh your make-up, or have a quick wash

B Describing places

When we arrived in the town, we were surprised to see how **rundown**[1] it looked. The streets **were littered with**[2] rubbish. However, one building in the town centre **stuck out**[3]. Its tidy window boxes and fresh paint **set** it **apart**[4]. There was a lovely little lamp **sticking out**[5] from one corner. When we went closer we found it was the Town Museum.

[1] (adjective) shabby, in a poor condition
[2] (always passive) contained a lot of something, usually something negative
[3] was noticeable because it was different
[4] made it different, usually better, than others of the same type
[5] coming out beyond the edge or surface

C Comparing and contrasting people and things

Jo: I can never **tell** one twin **from** the other, can you?
Mel: No, I can never **tell** them **apart**.

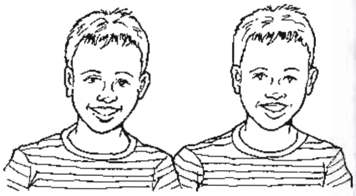

Her handbag and boots **go** very well **together**.

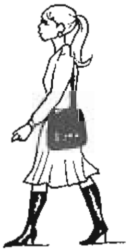

Lee: Joe will always **stand out** in a crowd.
[look different from others]

Vic: Yes, I'm sure he'll never **blend in**!
[look or seem the same as those around him so he is not noticed]

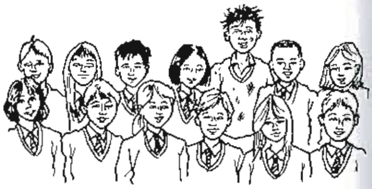

Exercises

32.1 Complete these sentences, using a phrasal verb from **A.**

1 You've had such a long journey. Would you like some time to .... before we go out to dinner?
2 It's a very informal party. You don't have to ....
3 Will you help me .... my dress? I can't reach the buttons at the back.
4 It's freezing cold today, so if you're going out, do .... well, and .... a scarf.

32.2 Correct the mistakes in these sentences. Think about the meaning as well as the grammar of the sentences.

1 I don't want to wear my new jacket tonight. You can put on it if you like.
2 Although the house looked rundown from the outside, it was very shabby inside.
3 If you're going out in the snow, make sure you wrap on well.
4 Do you think tbis scarf and coat get together OK?
5 He hates the way his ears stick off.
6 It takes me a long time to get the kids ready in the morning because Sammy and Lisa can't do on their own shoes yet.
7 Bill and his brother are so alike – I can't see one from the other.
8 It's a very formal party, so you don't need to dress up.

32.3 Complete this text using words from the opposite page.

> The city council are trying to improve some of the older, ... (1) parts of the city. They're trying to construct new buildings which will blend .... (2) with the existing architecture. There's one new building that .... (3) out, which I like very much. It has a beautiful decorated façade and little statues which .... (4) out from the roof, which .... (5) it apart from all the other buildings.

32.4 Some of the phrasal verbs from this unit can be used in a metaphorical way. Try to work out the metaphorical meaning of these phrasal verbs from their basic meaning by answering the questions below.

1 Military history is **littered with** examples of armies being destroyed because of generals or politicians making silly mistakes.
Are there many or few examples of silly mistakes in military history?
2 I thought Tom Hanks' performance in that film really **stood out**.
Did the speaker think that Tom Hanks' performance was ordinary or special?
3 The quality of Jan's descriptive writing really **sets** her work **apart** from that of the other students in the class.
Is Jan's writing better or worse than that of the other students?
4 I can't **tell** John's voice **from** his father's on the phone.
Does John's voice sound like his father's on the phone?
5 Bringing a new actor into the series might **freshen** things **up**.
Does the speaker think that the new actor will spoil or improve the series?

33 Describing public events

A A review of an event

Human Circus at the London Arts Centre

The show **was** fully **booked up**[1] for weeks, and when it opened last night, the public **poured in**[2] and very soon the London Arts Centre was **packed out**[3]. But why? What had they come to see? Human beings who **take off**[4] circus animals, with men in cat suits who **stand in**[5] for the real lions and tigers. The show was **put on**[6] by its creators to protest against traditional circuses and to send a message about cruelty to animals. The show was timed to **tie in with**[7] the National Protection of Animals Week. It was a good idea, but the standard of the performances was third-rate and an embarrassing number of people simply **walked out**[8] before it ended. There were some amusing moments when the performers **sent up**[9] typical circus folk, but overall it was a dismal show. Despite the large **turnout**[10] for the show's first night, I doubt it will attract many people during the rest of its seven-day run.

H. ACKDOFF

[1] if an event, person, or place is booked up, they have no space or time available for someone

[2] arrived or entered somewhere in very large numbers

[3] (adjective) very full

[4] copy the way a person or animal behaves, often in order to make people laugh

[5] play their role for a short period of time

[6] organised

[7] if one event ties in with another, it is planned so that both events happen at the same time

[8] left the performance before it had ended because they did not like it or were angry

[9] made someone or something seem stupid by copying them in a funny way

[10] (noun) the number of people who came to watch or take part in an event or activity

B Other verbs connected with events

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
call off sth or **call** sth **off**	cancel something, especially because it no longer seems possible or useful	We decided to **call off** the sports event as we'd only sold 20 tickets.
cram into/in somewhere	go into a place even though it is too small and becomes very full	The hall seated 200 but more than 300 **crammed into** it for the meeting.
pass off	happen, especially in a good way	The demonstration **passed off** peacefully, despite fears that there would be violence.
put off sth or **put** sth **off**	postpone to a later date	We had to **put off** the match because the rain was so heavy.
put forward/back sth or **put** sth **forward/back**	arrange something for an earlier/later time	We've **put** the time of the staff meeting **forward/back** so more people can come.

TIP It is often a good idea to learn a group of phrasal verbs connected together into a story, like the review in A above. Make up your own stories for verbs you have written down in your vocabulary notebook.

Exercises

33.1 **Answer the following questions about the phrasal verbs from A, using full sentences.**

1 If a performance is booked up, can you get tickets for it or not?
2 If people are said to pour in (a place), what do you know about the number of people?
3 If people cram into a room, what is the room then like?
4 What kind of events might be put on to tie in with National Poetry Week?
5 Is a comedian more likely to send up politicians or post office workers?
6 When would an actor need someone to stand in for them?

33.2 **Choose the correct word to complete these sentences.**

1 It was so cold in the hall that a few people .... out before the end of the concert.
a) turned b) walked c) poured d) packed
2 The class went to see the performance of Macbeth because it .... in well with the project they were doing on Scottish history.
a) crammed b) stood c) tied d) booked
3 We were delighted when we saw how many people had .... out for the meeting.
a) turned b) taken c) stood d) walked
4 The teacher was worried about the play her young class was putting on for the parents but, fortunately, everything .... off without any problems.
a) took b) passed c) walked d) called
5 Morag is very good at .... off the teachers in her school.
a) sending b) calling c) taking d) putting
6 The meeting had to be .... forward to 9 a.m.
a) made b) sent c) turned d) put

33.3 **Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb from the opposite page.**

1 The concert has been cancelled because the main performer is ill.
2 My aunt has a job going round different schools substituting for teachers who are sick.
3 This year the Drama Club is going to present a performance of Hamlet.
4 That actor is very good at imitating the Prime Minister.
5 The shops are usually very crowded during the sales.
6 My uncle has arranged his trip to this country to coincide with my parents' anniversary.

33.4 **Complete this e-mail, using the correct phrasal verbs from the opposite page.**

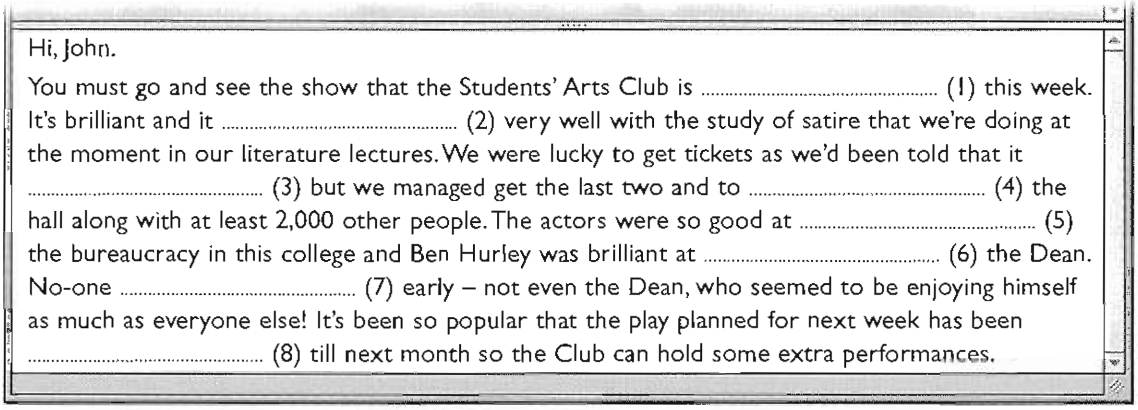

Hi, John.

You must go and see the show that the Students' Arts Club is .... (1) this week. It's brilliant and it .... (2) very well with the study of satire that we're doing at the moment in our literature lectures. We were lucky to get tickets as we'd been told that it .... (3) but we managed get the last two and to .... (4) the hall along with at least 2,000 other people. The actors were so good at .... (5) the bureaucracy in this college and Ben Hurley was brilliant at .... (6) the Dean. No-one .... (7) early – not even the Dean, who seemed to be enjoying himself as much as everyone else! It's been so popular that the play planned for next week has been .... (8) till next month so the Club can hold some extra performances.

34 Describing situations

A Dialogues commenting on situations

Mary: It's such a cold day. I wish I could **get out** of the bike ride Jack's planned. [avoid doing something that you should do, often by giving an excuse]

Bill: Why don't you suggest cancelling it? I'm sure the others would also prefet not to go in weather like this.

Sandy: I have identical twins, Flora and Florence, in my class – I always **mix** them **up**. [confuse two people or things by thinking that one person or thing is the other person or thing]

Mike: Yes, I **muddle** them **up** too. It doesn't help that their names are so similar. [confuse two people or things in your mind]

Meg: I really don't like sharing an office with Sue – she thinks the whole world **revolves around** her and her insignificant problems. [thinks she's more important than anyone else]

Anna: Yes, I know. I think she is one of the most self-centred people I've ever met.

John: We've been **running up against**[1] quite a lot of problems here recently.

Rita: I know. As soon as we deal with one problem, another immediately **crops up**[2] and I now feel I can't **bank on**[3] things **turning out**[4] well in the end.

[1] beginning to experience

[2] suddenly appears, usually when you are not expecting it

[3] depend on something happening

[4] happening in a particular way or having a particular result

Milly: The situation at work is so annoying at the moment! There's been a small **mix-up**[1] of orders and everyone is making a great drama out of it.

Tom: Oh come on! You can **rise above**[2] that. Just **back off**[3] and let others handle things.

[1] (noun) mistake caused by confusion

[2] not allow something bad that is happening or is being done to you to upset you or affect your behaviour

[3] stop being involved in a situation, expecially to let others deal with it themselves

B An island revolution

Holidaymakers who were **caught up**[1] last week in a revolution on the Caribbean island of St Maria have now returned home. The situation first **hotted up**[2] when rebels seized the Presidential Palace. The returning tourists report that they **were** all **thrown together**[3] in one of the largest hotels and were not allowed to leave until the situation **calmed down**[4].

[1] (always in passive) involved in a situation, often when you don't want to be

[2] (informal) became more exciting, with a lot more activity (compare with **heat up** which is used about food, see Units 26 and 60)

[3] forced to be together and get to know each other

[4] became more peaceful

Exercises

34.1 Match the statements on the left with a suitable response on the right.

1 I'm so worried about what Jim is doing.
2 All the pages are in the wrong order in this report.
3 Sometimes the printer will only print black and white.
4 I need you here next Monday.
5 I do hope the bus arrives on time.
6 I feel so angry about what's happened.

I've run up against that problem too.
I know, but I'm sure everything will turn out all right in the end.
I wouldn't bank on it.
I know, but try to rise above it.
I must have mixed/muddled them up. Sorry.
OK. I'll see if I can get out of my trip to London.

34.2 Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

1 When you're a teenager it's easy to think the whole world .... around you and your personal problems.
2 There was a .... with the reservation – our room had been double-booked.
3 I think you should .... off a little and let her do what she wants.
4 Problems at work tend to .... up when you're least expecting them.
5 I hope everything .... out well for you in your new job.

34.3 Replace the underlined words with phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1 I was in the capital city a month before the economic crisis exploded, but things were already beginning to become agitated and more intense, even then.
2 He went to the country as a news reporter, but became unintentionally involved in the civil war which started shortly after his arrival.
3 I might never have met Ken, but we had no choice but to live and work together during our military service and we've been friends ever since.
4 The situation in Lostrania has become more peaceful now, but it's still too dangerous to go there for a holiday.
5 Try not to get so involved. Let them sort it out.
6 You can't trust him to help you.

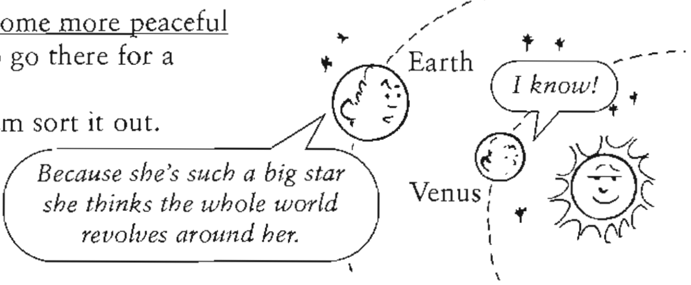
Earth
I know!
Because she's such a big star she thinks the whole world revolves around her.
Venus

FOLLOW UP

Choose five of the phrasal verbs from this unit and use them in sentences about situations you have been in recently.

35 Giving and getting information

A Referring to information in academic writing

This table shows phrasal verbs which are useful in academic writing.

phrasal verb	*example*	*meaning*
come under sth	be included in or may be found in	Sanderson (1985) studied mistakes involving prepositions, tenses and other items which **come under** the heading of grammatical errors in second language learning.
draw on/upon sth	use information or your knowledge or experience of something to help you do something	In designing the experiment, Fiona Farr **draws upon** earlier studies done in America and Asia.
point out sth (often + **that**)	present a new fact, especially one that is important in the present discussion or situation	Willis (1998) **points out** that economic statistics often show a sharp rise just before a serious recession.
turn to sth/sb	begin to think, speak or write about a subject	I should now like to **turn to** another issue which is often neglected: parental control.

B Noticing and understanding information

In these conversations, the second person repeats what the first person says, using a phrasal verb.

Pam: I didn't fully understand what he was saying for a few minutes.
Ed: Yes, it took me a few minutes to **latch on** to what he was talking about.

Rory: I found it difficult to understand the full importance of the decision.
Suraya: Yes, me too. I found it hard to **take in** its significance at first.

Briony: We must be careful to notice any difficulties that occur once we start the project.
Winston: Yes, we'll have to **watch out for** possible problems.

Pepe: Could you try and get some information about how to contact Keith Phelps?
Rana: Yes, I'll try and **find out** his contact details.

Olivia: Jill, will you make sure that Rita has sent those faxes for me?
Jill: Yes, I'll **check up on** her right away and see if she's done them.

Aine: Don, I can't find that market report we wrote about three years ago?
Don: OK, I'll try and **track it down**. I must have it on the computer somewhere.

C Other verbs connected with information

Sally: What's the capital of Ecuador?
Mick: Oh, Bogotá? No? Caracas? Oh, I don't know, I **give up**. [stop trying to think of the answer to a joke or question]
Sally: It's Quito.

I said something that upset Mo. I didn't mean to, it just **slipped out**. [I didn't intend to say it]

The total on the bill and the total on the credit card statement should **match up**, but don't [be the same]. There must be a mistake.

Exercises

35.1 Look at A and B. Then complete this book review using the phrasal verbs from the box below. Put the verbs into the most appropriate form.

check up on   come under   draw on/upon   point out   track down   turn to

Highland Tracks is an unusual book about the history of Scotland. The author has managed to .... (1) a number of previously unpublished sources. He has .... (2) these to argue that the current political situation in the United Kingdom owes a great deal to the separate histories of Scotland and England. After analysing the historical relationship between these two countries, the author then .... (3) the relationship between Scotland and France. He .... (4) that traditionally they had a much warmer relationship than either country had with England. The writer uses his imagination quite freely and the book should really .... (5) the heading of fiction rather than non-fiction. It is a very interesting work although anyone seriously wishing to investigate Scottish history should .... (6) many of the facts presented by this author.

35.2 Correct the errors in this paragraph. There are seven in total. Each error is a matter of either an extra word or wrong word order.

Hannah and Bill were playing a game. Hannah had thought of a football star and Bill was trying to find who it was out. He turned his mother to but she pointed it out that she knew absolutely nothing about football. He would have to try to track the answer himself down and to watch out any clues for that Hannah might deliberately give. After ten minutes Bill still hadn't latched up on so he gave himself up and Hannah told him the answer: Ronaldo.

35.3 Find three collocations for these verbs from the opposite page. Use a dictionary if necessary.

EXAMPLE Someone might watch out for ..problems.........., ..difficulties.... or ..danger............ .

1 You might check up on ...., ... or ....
2 You might point out ...., ... or ....
3 Someone might find out ...., ... or ....
4 You might take in ...., ... or ....
5 ...., ... or .... might slip out.

35.4 Some of the phrasal verbs on the opposite page are used in a metaphorical rather than a literal way. In the sentences below these verbs are used in a literal way. What do they mean?

1 As they drove through the town Gisela's father **pointed out** anything he thought might interest the children.
2 In the scene at the end of the film, **watch out for** the man sitting in the café behind Leonardo DiCaprio – that's my brother!
3 The dog quickly **tracked** the rabbit **down** to where it was hiding under the garden shed.
4 Marian managed to **slip out** of the house without anyone noticing.
5 Polly **turned to** the man on her left and started chatting to him about his work.

36 Solving problems

A Talking about problems

COFFEE HOUSE

Tom: What's the matter? Why are you looking so worried?

Emily: I've got a few problems at work and I don't know what to do about them.

Tom: Well, why don't we **talk** them **over**[1] together? That might help you to **sort** yourself **out**[2].

Emily: OK, thanks. Well, first of all, Julia was going to give a very important presentation tomorrow but she says she's ill and isn't going to be able to do it. I think she's just **bottled out**[3] as it's for such an important client. Feeling a bit ill was just the perfect **let-out**[4] for her. I'd do it myself but I'm busy with meetings all day.

Tom: Well, that **calls for**[5] quick action if the presentation is tomorrow. You'd better do it yourself if it's so important. Just cancel your other meetings.

Emily: I guess I'll have to. The next problem is that personal belongings have been going missing from people's desks during the day.

Tom: Oh dear. You should **deal with**[6] that problem as quickly as possible. Let's make a list of possible suspects ...

[1] discuss something before making a decision
[2] spend time dealing with your personal problems
[3] (informal) decided not to do something because she was afraid
[4] (noun) excuse or way of avoiding doing something she said she'd do
[5] needs or deserves a particular action or quality
[6] take action to achieve something

B Finding a solution

Now read what Emily did about her problems at work.

She **faced up to**[1] the fact that she would have to do the important presentation herself, so she immediately contacted her personal assistant to ask her to see **about**[2] postponing her meetings for the next day. As for the thefts, she realised that the solution to finding the office thief **lay in**[3] working out exactly who could have been in the office when each of the thefts took place. So she **came up with**[4] a plan that enabled her to check who had been there at each of the times concerned. That **narrowed down**[5] the suspects to two people. She questioned them both and the guilty one soon confessed.

[1] accepted that a difficult situation existed
[2] deal with something or arrange for something to be done
[3] would be found in (from the verb **lie in** something)
[4] thought of or suggested something that might solve a problem
[5] made something, usually a list or choice, smaller and clearer by removing what is irrelevant or less important

Exercises

36.1 Match the newspaper headlines with the stories a–e below.

1 NEW POLICE SQUAD TO DEAL WITH ILLEGAL IMMIGRANTS
2 ***Garcia bottles out of contest with Paterson***
3 POLICE NARROW DOWN SUSPECTS IN MURDER CASE
4 **Education Minister to talk over problem with teaching unions**
5 GOVERNMENT SEEKS LET-OUT ON ELECTION PROMISE

a) Three men are to be interviewed in the Oxford area, following new information. Up to now there has been no real …
b) If possible, ministers would like to be able to drop the pledge without angering the public …
c) The team will be stationed at ports of entry and will have the task of checking anyone suspected of having arrived …
d) The fight was arranged for September in Las Vegas, but now it will not take place. A spokesman for the 28-year-old …
e) The minister said she would go into the discussions with an open mind, and that all the issues …

36.2 A father is talking to his son who he thinks is very lazy. The underlined expressions have got mixed up. The particles are correct, but the verbs are incorrect. Put the correct verbs in.

> It's time you faced yourself out. You're 23 now and you still haven't got a job! You've got to come up to reality. It's about time you realised that the secret of success talks in taking positive action. Over the next couple of days, I will expect you to lie up with a few ideas about how you're going to improve your situation, or else you can go and live somewhere else. Why don't you go and sort about that job Uncle Herbert offered you at his factory? I've offered to help deal things over with you, but you never seem to want my help. Yet you don't see with things yourself. Sometimes I think you're just a waste of space!

36.3 This is how Tom and Emily's conversation in A continued. What do you think the five underlined phrasal verbs mean?

Emily: Well, it's just dawned on me that the thefts have always happened on the top floor. So it couldn't be anyone who never goes up there. That actually rules out quite a lot of people.

Tom: Think some more about exactly where and when things were stolen and you'll probably find that the answer jumps out at you.

Emily: Thanks, Tom. It's good to work through things with you! It really helps me to sort things out!

FOLLOW UP Choose five of the phrasal verbs from this unit that you would particularly like to learn. Look them up in a good dictionary, for example the *Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs*, and copy out any useful example sentences that you find there.

37 Decisions and plans

A Thinking about things and deciding

If ...	*you could ...*	*meaning*
someone offered you money for your bike but you weren't sure if you wanted to sell it or not	**sleep on** it	wait until the next day before you decide what to do about it
	decide to take the money and **do without** the bike	manage without it
you were offered a good job in a town far away from where you live	**weigh up** the pros and cons	think carefully about the advantages and disadvantages involved before making a decision
	run it **by** your parents or a good friend (informal)	tell your parents or a good friend, so that they can give their opinion
you were getting tired of paying rent to live in a flat	**plan ahead** and start saving money to buy a house	make decisions or plans about something you will do or might do in the future
	think ahead, and consider how you would like to live in 10 or 20 years from now	think carefully about what might happen in the future
someone offered you the chance to invest all the money you've saved in a company they were starting	**think** it **over** and tell them your decision at a later date	think carefully about the idea before making a decision
	think through the possible risks of giving all your savings away	think carefully about the risks and consider the possible consequences

B Other verbs connected with planning and deciding

We should **allow for** possible delays on the motorway and leave an hour earlier. [consider or include something when making plans or judging a situation]

Having to pay extra for all our meals at the hotel was something we didn't **bargain for**. [expect something to happen and be prepared for it]

I'm sure he'll **opt out** of doing the bungee jump at the last minute. [choose not to do something you have planned]

I'm sure he'll **chicken out** of doing the bungee jumpt at the last minue. [informal: decide not to do something you have planned because you are frightened]

I **have** so many things **on** in the evenings that it would be too much to be on the school committee too. [have arrangements to do things]

My wife seems to **be** completely set **against** moving to the country. [be opposed to]

I could do without having my family coming to stay this weekend. I just want a quiet weekend. [informal: something you say when something is annoying you or causing problems for you, because your situation at that time makes it difficult for you to deal with it]

Exercises

37.1 Complete this dialogue using verbs or particles from A.

Sarah: Do you think you're going to take that job in New York, Kenny?

Kenny: Well, I've been thinking it .... (1) and trying to .... (2) up all the positives and negatives, but I'm finding it really hard to come to a decision. I've run it .... (3) the family but they all have different views. My younger child is really keen on the idea but the older one isn't. My wife says we have to think .... (4) and imagine how things would be for the kids when they're a bit older.

Sarah: So how long do they give you to .... (5) through all the implications and come to a decision?

Kenny: Unfortunately, I have to make up my mind by next week.

Sarah: Well, why don't you .... (6) on it. Things might seem clearer in the morning.

37.2 Answer these questions about yourself, using full sentences.

1 When you have an important decision to make in your personal or your professional life who would you usually run it by first?
2 If you are worried about a situation at work, do you usually think it over immediately or decide to sleep on it first?
3 You have enough money for only one of these – a special holiday or a car. Which would you prefer to do without?
4 In what ways do people plan ahead for their retirement?
5 What sorts of things might people chicken out of doing?

37.3 Rewrite these sentences using the word in brackets, so that they keep the same meaning.

1 We should take into consideration the fact that he is still only young. (ALLOW)
2 I really can't help you as I have a lot of things to do today. (ON)
3 He wants to stop having art classes at school next year so he can do extra music. (OPT)
4 We didn't expect Mark to turn up at the party with a lot of his friends. (BARGAIN)
5 My son is determined not to go to university. (SET)
6 I would really prefer it if we didn't have people coming for dinner this evening. (WITHOUT)

37.4 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.

1 I was going to do the parachute jump but I chickened off in the end.
2 I have on a lot of things this weekend.
3 In judging her work, you should really allow her inexperience for.
4 If we buy the flat, we'll have to make without holidays for a few years.
5 Let's run our plan through Sarah before we make our final decision.
6 I could make without having to go to a conference this weekend.
7 In deciding how much holiday money we need, we should allow the fact for that food is very expensive there.

38 Disagreeing

A Disagreement at work

There was an **outcry**[1] at work today because the boss announced that he wanted us all to take a pay cut. We had a union meeting at lunchtime and we all agreed to **stick together**[2] and refuse to agree to his requests. Our union leader **spoke out**[3] very clearly to our boss and to the local press this afternoon. We're sure that the boss will have to **give in**[4] in the end. Although in some ways I'd rather **stay out of**[5] it myself, I have no choice but to support my fellow union members.

[1] (noun) public expression of anger and disapproval
[2] support each other, especially in a difficult situation
[3] publicly expressed an opinion, usually to oppose or criticise something or someone
[4] finally agree to what someone wants after a period of refusing to agree
[5] not become involved in an argument or discussion

B Private disagreements

Read Cilla's letter to an agony aunt, Esther.

Dear Esther,

Please can you help me. My big sister and I always used to be good friends, but we **fell out**[1] when I started going out with a new boyfriend. Now she is always trying to **put me down**[2] and it is really beginning to **get to**[3] me. My boyfriend usually tries to **stick up for**[4] me, but then she just laughs at him too. Two years ago my boyfriend used to go out with my sister, but surely she doesn't **hold this against**[5] us? What can we do?

Cilla

[1] argued with each other and stopped being friends
[2] make me feel stupid or unimportant by criticising me
[3] make me feel upset or angry
[4] defend me when I am being criticised
[5] like or respect them less because they have done something wrong or something that she does not like

C Back

The verb **back** is often used to refer to the position you take in an argument or decision.

BACK
up sb (or **back** sb **up**) = to say that someone is telling the truth
down = admit that you are wrong or have been defeated, often because you are forced to
out = decide not to do something that you were going to do or had agreed to do

Examples:

When I make my point at the meeting, please **back** me **up**.

The government **backed down** on its controversial plans to increase income tax.

Jill had agreed to come sailing with us tomorrow, but she's **backed out**.

Exercises

38.1 In this radio interview a protester is angry about a plan to build a new road through some beautiful woodland. Complete the interview using verbs from the opposite page.

Reporter: Now, Mr Humfry, you have .... (1) out recently against the new road plan. Do you think your protest campaign can change the decision?

Protester: Well, there are a number of different groups opposed to this plan, and if we .... (2) together we can force the authorities to rethink.

Reporter: But do you really think the authorities will be prepared to .... (3) down over this? The Minister has said the road plan must go ahead.

Protester: This isn't a small protest. There's been a massive public .... (4). People are not willing to see their environment destroyed by road building. The Highways Department must listen to us or face the consequences.

Reporter: The consequences? Do you mean violent protest as with the Knox Bridge?

Protester: Not violent protest, no. We have always emphasised to our members that if violence erupts they should .... (5) out of it and keep our protest peaceful. We condemn violence. No, I'm talking about a huge, non-violent wave of protest.

Reporter: And you think that, in this way, the government will be forced to .... (6) in?

Protester: Yes, I believe they will simply have to listen.

PRESS
STOP THE ROAD

38.2 Use a phrasal verb from the opposite page to complete these dialogues, so that Speaker B agrees with Speaker A's statement.

1 A: Apparently, Gary agreed with Liam's version of the events.
B: Yes, he ....
2 A: I hear Kim and Francis have had a serious argument.
B: Yes, it seems they've ....
3 A: Petra always defends Mia when people criticise her.
B: Yes, she ....
4 A: I think we should withdraw from the project.
B: Yes, I agree. I think we ....
5 A: Jo is always criticising Phil and making him look small.
B: Yes, she's always ....
6 A: We shouldn't feel negative towards Iris just because she acted stupidly.
B: No, we shouldn't ....
7 A: I think not getting the job is really beginning to upset Trisha.
B: Yes, I think it's really ....

38.3 Complete these sentences, using a phrasal verb from the opposite page.

1 Harry says he won't come to the fancy dress party with me but I'm sure he'll eventually ....
2 Why have Jana and Sarah .... ? They used to get on so well together.
3 I just don't have enough money for the holiday we were planning in Canada. I'm going to have to ....
4 My best friend and I have always .... , through good times and bad times.
5 The boss's constant criticisms are really .... me and I'm going to start looking for another job.

39 Persuading

A Verbs with *talk* and *put*

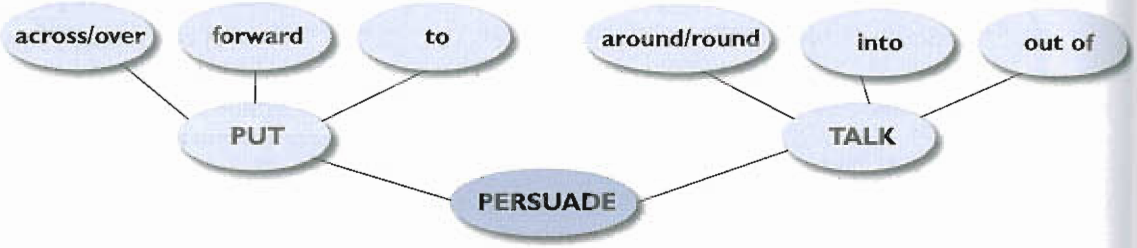

If you …	*then you …*	*example*
put across/over sth or **put** sth **across/over**	explain or express something clearly so that people understand it easily	He's an excellent teacher. He **puts** his subject **across/over** so well.
put forward sth or **put** sth **forward**	state an idea or opinion, or suggest a plan, so that it can be considered or discussed	The company has **put forward** a plan to build a new hotel in the city centre.
put sth **to** sb	suggest an idea or plan to someone so they can consider or discuss it	Your proposal is interesting. I'll **put** it **to** the committee tomorrow.
talk sb **around/round**	persuade someone to agree with you or to do what you want them to do	Dad won't let me go away with my friends, but Mum might be able to **talk** him **around/round**.
talk sb **into** sth/doing sth	persuade someone to do something which they may be unwilling to do at first	She **talked** me **into** going jogging every day before work.
talk sb **out** of sth/doing sth	persuade someone not to do something	My sister wants to leave college but my parents are trying to **talk** her **out of** it.

B Other verbs connected with persuading people

PRIME MINISTER **CALLS FOR**[1] WAR ON DRUGS

Minister **brushes aside**[2] opposition to new tax plan

UNION BOSS **BRINGS** EMPLOYER **ROUND**[3] TO PAY DEAL

Doctors **press for**[4] shorter working hours

CITY **ROPES IN**[5] LOCAL INDUSTRY TO SUPPORT ENVIRONMENT PLAN

"I was just **having** the media **on**[6], and they **fell for**[7] it," says star who faked his own death

[1] says he thinks a particular thing should be done, usually in order to change or improve a situatio

[2] refuses to listen to what someone says, or refuses to think about something seriously

[3] persuades someone to agree with you or to do what you want them to do

[4] try to persuade someone, usually someone in authority, to give you something or to allow something to happen

[5] (informal) persuades someone to help you with something, especially when they do not want to

[6] (informal) persuading someone that something is true when it is not, usually as a joke

[7] were tricked into believing something that is not true

Exercises

39.1 Choose the correct particle to complete each sentence.

1 The minister put the new proposal .... the Prime Minister.
a) forward b) to c) across/over
2 I was hoping to leave at 4 a.m., but my parents talked me .... it.
a) into b) round c) out of
3 Have you managed to talk your dad .... lending you the money to buy a car yet?
a) into b) round c) out of
4 The new manager has some interesting new proposals that he wants to put .... at the staff meeting tomorrow.
a) forward b) to c) across/over
5 The lecturer was no good at putting his ideas .... and I found it impossible to follow his talk.
a) forward b) to c) across/over
6 My husband doesn't want to go skiing but I think I'll be able to talk him ....
a) into b) around/round c) out of

39.2 Write the phrasal verbs presented on the opposite page into one of these categories.

presenting an opinion or trying to persuade	*successfully persuading*	*people's reactions to persuasion*

39.3 Read the sentences below and answer the questions about them.

1 The headmistress brushed aside the parents' criticism that the children were being given too much homework.
How did she take the parents' criticism?
2 Brenda was just having Derek on when she said she was going to work in the USA.
Where is Brenda going to work?
3 The parents were roped in to help organise the school sports' day.
Did the parents decide that they wanted to help organise the sports' day?
4 Harry fell for Sarah's story that all her money had been stolen.
What do we learn about Sarah?
5 The Party is calling for constitutional reform.
Does the Party want constitutional reform or not?

39.4 Complete the text using phrasal verbs from the opposite page. Sometimes there is more than one possible answer.

If you're a politician .... (1) change, you're trying to .... opponents .... (2) to your way of thinking. You will probably try to do this by .... (3) your plans as clearly as possible and you'll doubtless also try to use the media to .... (4) the changes that you want. Indeed, you will .... (5) all the supporters you can find to help you .... others .... (6) voting for your proposals.

40 Praising and criticising

A Praising and criticising

Max: Now that you've been in our company for a month, what do you think of the other people in your department?

David: Well, there is one **outstanding**[1] person and that's Jessica. She's a first-class personal assistant. She **stands out**[2] from the others.

Max: That's good to hear. What about Rick? What do you think of him?

David: He's very able, but I wish he wasn't such a **show-off**[3]! I don't know who he's trying to impress.

Max: It's the female staff, I think. He always **shows off**[4] more with women around.

David: Yes, I guess he's just a bit **screwed-up**[5]. But otherwise his performance is fine – his work certainly **measures up**[6].

Max: So there are no real problems then?

David: Well, I am very worried about Sally. She seems to be **screwing** everything **up**[7] at the moment. I'd had such good reports of her that it really surprised me. I tried asking her what she was **playing at**[8] but she just burst into tears.

Max: Why don't you have a word with Jessica? Perhaps she can find out what's wrong.

[1] (adjective) extremely good, or of a very high standard

[2] is much better than other people or things

[3] (noun) person who tries to impress in an annoying way

[4] tries to make people admire his abilities or achievements in a way other people find annoying

[5] (adjective, informal) confused, unhappy about himself and his life

[6] is good enough

[7] (informal) making a mistake with everything, or damaging or spoiling everything

[8] (always used in the continuous form; always used in questions) doing; when you ask what someone is playing at, you are surprised or angry about their behaviour

B Ways of criticising

If you **lay into** someone, you criticise or attack them in an angry way.

The headmaster really **laid into** the boys for arriving in school so late.

If you **pick on** someone, you choose one person from a group of people to criticise or treat unfairly, especially when they are smaller or weaker than you.

Mark was a quiet, studious child and the big boys in the class used to **pick on** him.

If you **run down** someone or something, or **run** someone or something **down**, you criticise that person or thing, often unfairly.

Pam's big sister is always **running** her **down** even though Pam is far cleverer than her.

If you **hit back**, you criticise or attack someone who has criticised or attacked you.

Jack is constantly criticising his sons – I'm sure they'll **hit back** eventually.

If you **take out** something on someone or **take** something **out** on someone, you treat someone badly because you are upset or angry, even though they have done nothing wrong.

Of course Mary is upset at losing her job but she shouldn't **take** it **out** on her family.

If you **rub** something **in** (informal), you talk to someone about something which they want to forget because they feel bad about it.

I know it was all my fault. I just wish everyone would stop **rubbing** it **in**!

Exercises

40.1 In the dialogue in A opposite there are three phrasal verbs which have related noun or adjective forms. Write down the phrasal verbs and their related forms and explain the connection between them.

40.2 Read these remarks by different people and then answer the questions below by writing the correct name in the box.

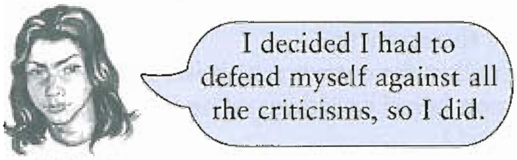
I decided I had to defend myself against all the criticisms, so I did.

Rana

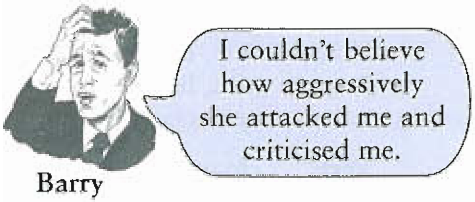
I couldn't believe how aggressively she attacked me and criticised me.

Barry

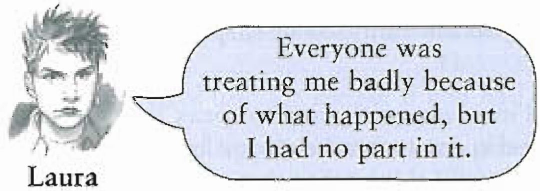
Everyone was treating me badly because of what happened, but I had no part in it.

Laura

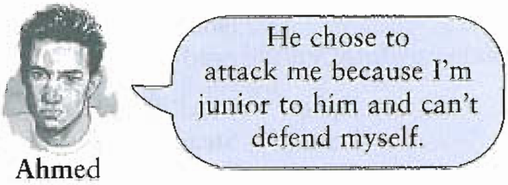
He chose to attack me because I'm junior to him and can't defend myself.

Ahmed

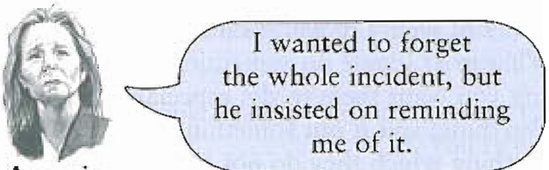
I wanted to forget the whole incident, but he insisted on reminding me of it.

Antonia

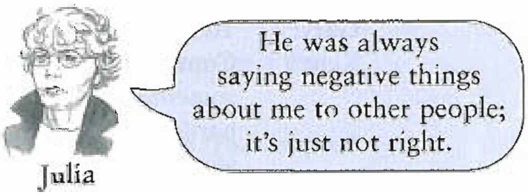
He was always saying negative things about me to other people; it's just not right.

Julia

1 Who felt that someone was rubbing it in?
2 Who felt that someone was always running them down?
3 Who felt that they had to hit back?
4 Who felt someone had picked on them?
5 Who felt that people were taking it out on them?
6 Who felt that someone laid into them?

40.3 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 Dan won the prize as his short story was clearly the best. (STOOD)
2 Molly got the sack because her work just wasn't good enough. (MEASURE)
3 What on earth does Gemma think she's doing – she's behaving so oddly? (PLAYING)
4 I wish Ed wouldn't try to impress all the time! (SHOW)
5 If you make such a stupid mistake again, you'll lose your job. (SCREW)
6 I know I was stupid but please don't remind me. (RUB)
7 Joe's father spoke very angrily to him for scratching his new car. (LAID)
8 Why does everyone always blame me for everything? (PICK)

41 Exclamations and warnings

The exclamations and warnings on this page are all typical of informal, spoken English.

A Reactions and responses

Ahmed: I just wanted to ask you a couple of questions.
Sara: Fine. No problem. **Fire away!** [something you say to tell someone you're ready for them to start asking you questions, or to start speaking]

Hilary: Oh, everything is so awful at the moment.
Petra: Oh, **lighten up**, will you! You'll make everyone as miserable as you! [something you say to tell someone to stop being so serious or annoyed]

Vera: Joanna wants you to give a talk to her students next Monday.
Dan: Joanna? Next week? **Hang on / hold on!** Who's Joanna? Is she someone I know? [something you say when you are confused or surprised by something and you need time to think]

Kylie: I feel like killing Roger! I'm never, ever going to speak to him again!
Lorna: **Steady on!** I know he acted stupidly, but he's not a bad person really. [something you say to tell someone that you think what they are saying is too extreme]

Gary: You see, what I want to say is, well, I mean, it's like, er, it's difficult to say it.
Ken: **Come on! Spit it out!** What is it? [**come on** something you say to encourage someone to do something you want them to do, especially to hurry up, to try harder, or to tell you something; **spit it out** something you say to encourage someone to tell you something which they do not want to tell you]

Lou: Some of the students are very poor, and can't afford textbooks.
Kate: Poor! **Come off it!** They have enough money for mobile phones. [something you say to tell someone that you do not believe them or that you disagree with them]

B Commands and warnings

example	*comment*
Step on it! We're late.	said to someone, especially someone who is driving, when you want them to go faster
Watch out! / Mind out! / Look out! There's a car coming!	said to tell someone to be careful so that they can avoid danger or an accident
Go on! / Hurry up! We've not got all day!	said to encourage someone to do something or to tell someone to do something more quickly
You're doing very well! **Keep it up!**	said to encourage someone to continue to do something, especially to continue to work hard or well
[On the phone] **Hold on.** I'll get Mike for you. It's best if you speak to him.	said to ask someone to wait a moment
Belt up! I'm trying to listen to the radio.	said angrily to someone to tell them to be quiet

TIP Many of the exclamations here are very direct and may be considered impolite if you say them to someone you don't know very well. Learn them so that you understand them when you hear or read them, but use them only with very great care.

Exercises

41.1 **Divide the exclamations and warnings on the opposite page into these groups:**

a) those that you could use to your boss or teacher
b) those that you could only use to close friends

41.2 **Choose the best response from those in the box to fit each of these dialogues.**

Come off it! Lighten up! Steady on! Mind out! Hold on! Come on! Spit it out!

1 Bart: What's the matter with you?
Candy: There's something I've got to tell you but, well, I don't know where to begin.
Bart: .... I haven't got all day.

2 Paul: I'm sorry, I just haven't had rime to finish my essay. It's taken me ages to get hold of the books I needed for it.
Teacher: .... There are plenty of copies in the library. And you could have told me sooner if you had really been having problems.

3 Tanya: Can I speak to your sister, please?
Matt: .... I'll just go and see if she's in yet.

4 Bella: I'm never going to get all this work done. I hate my job.
Sonya: .... It won't take long if you hurry up a bit.

5 Anna: Look at the picture on the side of that lorry!
Tom: .... You're going to hit the car in front of you!

6 Pat: That was a stupid thing to do. You're fired!
Mark: .... You know I'm one of your best workers.

7 Jim: Now I've been in the office for a month, I'd like to know if you are pleased with my work. How am I doing?
Rob: Very well! .... You'll soon be getting a promotion.

41.3 **Answer the following questions.**

1 Which exclamation on the opposite page is connected with the idea of shooting a gun?
2 Which exclamation is connected with the idea of pressing your foot down on the accelerator pedal of a car?
3 Which exclamation is connected with the idea of forcing out the liquid in your mouth?

41.4 **Divide the exclamations from the box below into pairs that have approximately the same meaning. What is the basic meaning for each pair? Describe a situation when each pair of expressions might be used.**

Watch out! Hold on! Mind out! Hurry up! Step on it! Hang on!

42

The classroom and learning

A

Things the teacher says

With all the verbs in these examples, the particle can either go before or after the object, e.g. give **in** your homework or give your homework **in**.

The teacher says ...	*The teacher wants:*
Give/Hand in your homework tomorrow, please.	... the students to give her their work the next day.
Rose, **give/hand out** these worksheets, please.	... Rose to give each student a worksheet*.
Jo, **rub out** what's written on the board, please.	... Jo to clean the board.
Work out the answers without using a calculator.	... the students to do some maths without using calculators.
Cross out any rough work when you have found the answer.	... the students to put a line through any rough work.
Take care not to **miss out** any of the exam questions.	... the students not to forget to answer any of the exam questions.

*Sheets of paper that everyone in a class or lecture receives a copy of are called **handouts**. These might be worksheets (i.e. have exercises on them) or they might contain a text or some reference material.

B

Other classroom phrasal verbs

Tamara was ill for a month and so she **fell behind** with her schoolwork. [failed to do her schoolwork by a particular time] She is going to find it difficult to **catch up**. [reach the same standard as the rest of the class]

Pupils often **play up** when a teacher is new or inexperienced. [behave badly]

Although Maggie had done good work throughout the year she **messed up** her exam. [did her exam badly]

The teacher cleared the books from the table and **spread out** the map. [opened out something that was folded]

TIP

Listen carefully to instructions in English from your teacher and note down any phrasal verbs they use. If you are not sure what they mean, ask them for an explanation.

Exercises

42.1 Look at these pictures and write a sentence to describe what the student is doing in each case.

1

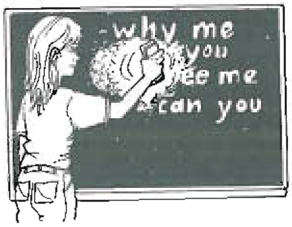

3

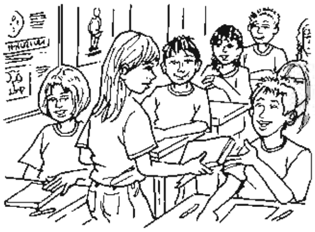

5

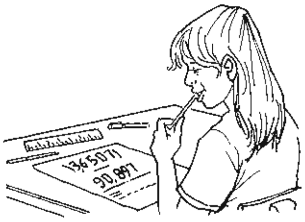

2

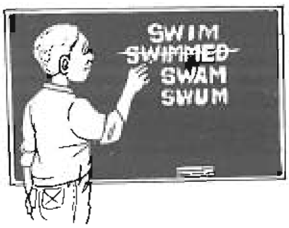

4

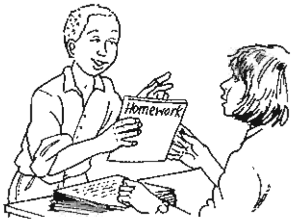

42.2 Would Tim's parents be pleased or not if their son's teacher told them the following?

1 Tim was playing up in class last week.
2 Tim messed up his homework.
3 Tim has been helping a classmate who has fallen behind.
4 Tim has caught up with the rest of the class.
5 Tim didn't hand in his homework.
6 Tim missed out some important work.

42.3 Complete this story, using appropriate phrasal verbs from the opposite page. Write the verbs in the correct tense.

Last term Cath missed three weeks of school and so she .... (1) with her studies. She did all she could to try to .... (2) with the other students but she couldn't manage. When it came to the maths test at the end of term she just couldn't .... (3) the answers. She spent all her time on half of the question paper and .... (4) the other half, so inevitably she failed. Because she had .... (5) the test, her parents decided she'd better have a maths tutor over the holidays. In this week's test she came top of the class.

42.4 Rewrite these sentences using more informal phrasal verbs instead of the underlined verbs.

1 Students often misbehave, when they are bored in class.
2 The teacher erased the new words from the board and then tested us.
3 We have to submit our registration forms for the exam on Friday.
4 I usually omit my middle name when I am filling in forms.
5 Some people were distributing leaflets about a demonstration in the town centre.

42.5 Answer these questions using full sentences.

1 Why are you often asked to cross out rough work in an exam?
2 If a teacher gives out a sheet listing all the kings and queens of Britain, is that a worksheet or a handout or both?
3 Why do most pupils carry an eraser in their pencil cases?
4 How easy would it be for you to work out how many euros are equal to 250 US dollars?
5 What do you think is the reason for pupils playing up in class?

43 Student life: courses and exams

A Enrolling on courses

Look at this information leaflet for students at Welney College. Then look at how David explains the system informally to a friend, using phrasal verbs. The numbers ([1,2] etc.) help you to match the phrasal verbs with their meanings.

Welney College

Promoting excellence

- Autumn term ends[1] on 18 December. Spring term begins[2] on 8 January.
- Students wishing to register for[3] spring term courses should do so before 12 December.
- Any student not completing a course[4] will not receive credits for that course.
- Course essays must be submitted in a final form[5] seven days before the end of a course.
- Students failing more than 30% of their total coursework will be expelled[6] from the college.

A. Jobsworth, Academic Administrator

David:

– We **break up**[1] on 18 December and go **back**[2] on 8 January, so we've got about a three-week break.

– But we've got to **sign up**[3] for courses for next term before 12 December.

– You have to go to all the lectures; if you **drop out**[4] before the end, you don't get the credits.

– And you have to **write up**[5] your course essay and submit it a week before the course ends.

– If you fail 30% or more of your courses, they **throw** you **out**[6] of the college.

B Before an exam

Six tips for exam success

- Keep your reading **up**[1] during the term so that you have less to read just before the exam.
- **Brush up on**[2] some of the things you learnt a long time ago; they may possibly **come up**[3] in the exam.
- Don't just **mug up**[4] on the key points you need for the exam and hope that you'll **scrape through**[5] with little effort.
- On the other hand, don't try to do everything. **Swotting up**[6] on everything you have done all term means you will have to revise a lot of useless things too.
- Concentrate on **polishing up**[7] the most important areas and your best skills.
- Don't fool yourself that you'll pass the exam on the basis of what you've **picked up**[8] during the lectures and classes. You will need to revise!

1 continue to do something

2 practise and improve your skills or your knowledge of something, usually something you learned in the past but have partly forgotten

3 if a question or a subject comes up in an exam, that question is asked or questions about that subject are asked in the exam

4 (informal) quickly try to learn the main facts about a subject, especially before an exam (often + on)

5 manage with a lot of difficulty to succeed in something

6 (informal) learning as much as you can about something, especially before an exam (often + on)

7 practising and improving your skills or your knowledge of something

8 learnt by absorbing it rather than studying it

Exercises

43.1 **Rewrite these sentences using the words in brackets, so that they keep the same meaning.**

1 I'm going to register for a course in statistics next year. (SIGN)
2 Several students did not complete the Moral Philosophy course. (DROP)
3 Our course finishes on 20 June. (BREAK)
4 He was forced to leave university after one term. He'd done no work at all. (THROW)
5 I can't come out tonight. I have to have my essay finished for tomorrow. (WRITE)
6 My next term at college starts on 12 September. (GO)

43.2 **Which of these would make most students happy and why?**

breaking up dropping out being thrown out
scraping through mugging up swotting up

43.3 **Choose the best phrasal verb from the opposite page to complete this letter.**

Cambridge, 20 June

Dear Auntie Meg,

At last my first year exams are over. It's such a relief. I feel as if I've done nothing but .... (1) for them for ages. Although I'd .... (2) with work quite well during the year, I still needed to .... (3) everything that we had covered, of course. Fortunately, everything that I hoped would .... (4) in the exam paper did. So I hope I've done OK and haven't just .... (5). Now all I have to do is .... (6) one course assignment, which I need to hand in by the end of term.

We don't .... (7) till the end of the month and so I won't be home till then. We don't .... (8) until the end of September, so it'll be a lovely long break. I look forward to seeing you soon.

Love,
Suzanna

43.4 **Correct the ten phrasal verb mistakes in this paragraph. Either the wrong particles or the wrong verbs have been used.**

Dick hardly worked up at all for his exams. He brushed over on the history of the French Revolution, but no questions on the French Revolution got up in the exam. He was afraid that he would be thrown off university for failing his exams. However, he did just manage to scratch through them and so he will be in college when we return back next term. He has promised to try to keep through with work next year as he is planning to sign in for a couple of quite difficult courses, including business studies. He'll have to polish over his French because the business studies course involves spending a term in France working in a business. He thinks he can just lift up the language when he gets there, but I think he should study it before he goes because he only has school French.

FOLLOW UP

Go to the Mini dictionary at the end of this book and find more phrasal verbs with *break*. Is there a common theme in their meaning? If so, what is it?

44 Student life: reading and writing

A Reading

Now, your homework for the weekend. Can you all please **read up on**[1] air pollution for next week. You'll find a good chapter in your textbook on page 40, but you don't need to read it all – just **dip into**[2] it. Now please **turn over**[3] the worksheet on your desk. Jane, will you please **read out**[4] the paragraph at the top of the sheet?

[1] read a lot about a particular subject in order to learn about it

[2] read small parts of a book or magazine

[3] turn a page so that you can see the other side

[4] read aloud

B Writing

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
write out sth or **write** sth **out**	– write something again in a better or more complete way – write something on a document, e.g. a cheque or a prescription, so that it can be used	Do your essay in rough first and then **write** it **out**. The doctor **wrote out** a prescription for some sleeping tablets.
note down sth or **note** sth **down**	write words or numbers, often so that you do not forget them	**Note down** your password somewhere safe.
jot down sth or **jot** sth **down**	write something quickly on a piece of paper so that you remember it	Jack **jotted down** Sue's address on a scrap of paper.
scribble down sth or **scribble** sth **down**	write something very quickly on a piece of paper	The lecturer spoke so fast that I could only **scribble down** a few notes.
make out sth or **make** sth **out**	write all the necessary information on an official document, e.g. a cheque, an application, a ticket	If you have time to wait, we could **make out** your airline ticket now.
fill in sth or **fill** sth **in**	write all the necessary information on an official document, e.g. a form	Please **fill in** this registration form and return it by 18 September.
fill out sth or **fill** sth **out**	write all the necessary information on an official document, e.g. a form	Let's **fill out** this questionnaire together.

C Improving a piece of writing

Dad: Your essay's good but I think it would be better if you **cut out**[1] this paragraph here. Also it'd be a good idea to add a paragraph **summing up**[2] your main points at the end. This paragraph here is a bit strong – why not **tone** it **down**[3] a bit? And your point about crime **crops up**[4] in several places – why not deal with it in just one paragraph? And you only **touch on**[5] the issue of government control. Surely that deserves a bit more space? In fact I really think you should try to **set** the whole thing **out**[6] better!

Son: Why don't you just write it then, Dad!

[1] removed

[2] describing briefly the most important points

[3] make it less critical or offensive

[4] appears

[5] mention briefly (also *touch upon*)

[6] give all the details or explain clearly, especially in writing

Exercises

44.1 Match the verbs on the left with an object from the right. There may be more than one answer.

1 scribble down
2 make out
3 fill in/out
4 jot down
5 note down
6 write out
7 read up on
8 dip into
9 read out
10 turn over

a) a subject
b) a book or an article
c) the page
d) a rough draft of an essay
e) the times of the trains to London
f) the answer you have written
g) a form or a questionnaire
h) a few very quick notes
i) someone's phone number on a piece of paper
j) a cheque for €250

44.2 Use the phrasal verbs from exercise 44.1 to complete these sentences. Write the verbs in the correct form. There may be more than one possible answer.

1 I get nervous when I have to .... what I've written in class.
2 I haven't read the book in detail. I just .... it.
3 The police officer just managed to quickly .... the registration number of the car before it drove away at high speed.
4 I've made some notes for my speech; now I'm going to .... in full.
5 Could you .... the cheque to 'Wilson and Co.' please?
6 There are three forms to .... for this visa application. (two answers)
7 We should .... the departure times for flights to Rio de Janeiro.
8 I'll have to .... international law for the exam.
9 Now .... and let's see what's on the next page.
10 Hang on, I'll just .... your address in case I forget it.

44.3 Look at this student essay, and the teacher's comments in the margin. Then complete what the teacher might say to the student using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1 Delete this sentence. 2 You only mention this very briefly, but it's an important issue. 3 This is too strong! 4 This point has already appeared once in your essay. 5 Summary needed!	The problems of pollution in the world cannot be solved overnight, since smoke from factories is a necessary evil, and cars and planes will always be noisy. Cleaning the environment is expensive. ~~Jumbo jets make more pollution and noise than other planes.~~① People's health is affected.② Governments are completely stupid on questions of the environment.③ It is very expensive to improve the environment.④ ....⑤

I've put a line through this sentence; you should .... (1). And you only .... (2) the question of health; you should have written more. Also you should .... (3) what you say about governments; it's too strong. Then this last point has already .... (4) once; you don't need to repeat it. And finally, the essay ends too suddenly. You should .... (5) your arguments.

45 Work: jobs and career

A Talking informally about your work or career

Well, to get **ahead**[1] in a job like mine you have to be prepared to **take on**[2] a lot of responsibility and work long hours.

[1] be successful in your job
[2] accept a particular job or responsibility

When the boss first **took me on**[3] he **filled me in**[4] on what the job involved, but he didn't tell me I would have to do so much travelling!

[3] began to employ me
[4] gave me the information I needed in order to do something

Well, I **stood down**[5] as Chairman in 1998, and Mary Wilmott **took over**[6]. As you all know, she has **carried out**[7] some important reforms in the company and has been very successful.

[5] left an important job or official position so that someone else can do it instead
[6] started doing a job or being responsible for something that someone else was doing or was responsible for before you
[7] done or completed something, especially something important

I'm 60 now, so I think it's time for me to **step down**[8] and **hand over**[9] to a younger person.

[8] leave your job, especially so that someone else can do it
[9] give someone else responsibility or control

B More work-related phrasal verbs

Ellen: Frances, do you think you could **fix up** a staff meeting for me? [provide or arrange something for someone]
Frances: Yes, I'll do that. When were you thinking of?
Ellen: Well, let's **pencil** it **in** for Friday morning and see whether everyone else is free then. [arrange for something to happen on a particular date, knowing the arrangement might be changed later]

Keith: Why are you back home already? Did you **knock off** early today? [informal: stop working, usually at the end of a day]
Bob: I wish I could say that. The truth is I've just been **laid off**. [lost your job because there is no work for you to do, from the verb **lay off** someone]
Keith: Oh, I'm sorry to hear that.

Veronica: Did you ever **follow up** that phone call you had with the oil company? [do something in order to make the effect of an earlier action or thing stronger or more certain]
Jim: No, I really should do something about it.

Mona: It's amazing how much we can get done when we all **pull together**, isn't it? [work as a group in order to achieve something]
Ricky: Yes, although sometimes it's also good if people just **leave** you **to it**. [informal: go away from someone so that they do something by themselves or so they can continue what they are doing]

Exercises

45.1 Write down phrasal verbs from the opposite page which are:

a) connected with finishing work (four answers)
b) connected with making arrangements (two answers)

45.2 Complete this text, using verbs or particles from the opposite page.

Jill has been .... (1) on more and more responsibility at work. She was only taken .... (2) two years ago but she has already managed to .... (3) out a very successful reorganisation of office procedures. Her boss just .... (4) her to it and Jill then filled him .... (5) when she had arranged everything. She has always been very good at getting people to .... (6) together and at motivating them. She's someone who will really get .... (7) and make a successful career. In fact I'm sure that when the boss eventually .... (8) down, he'll .... (9) over the running of the company to her. He can be sure it will be in safe hands!

45.3 Write suitable answers to the questions below, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1 Shall I tell you what's been going on while you were on holiday?
Yes, please ....
2 Could you deal with the letters we've had in response to our advert?
Certainly, I'll ....
3 Could you arrange an appointment for me with the bank manager?
Yes, I'll ....
4 Why did you stand down as Director?
Well, I've been doing it for years and I thought it was time to ....
5 Can we arrange a meeting for some time next week?
Sure, why don't we ....

45.4 Answer these questions about your own working life, using full sentences.

1 What kind of tasks do you have to carry out each day?
2 At what time do you knock off each day?
3 Do you know anyone who has ever been laid off?
4 What qualities do you think you need to get ahead in the job that you do?
5 What did you do to get taken on for the job that you now have?

46 Work: being busy

A Being busy

Nick: I haven't seen you for ages. Have you been a bit **tied up**[1] at work?
Tim: Yes, I've been incredibly busy. I was away for a conference and the work just **piled up**[2] while I was away. I've been **snowed under**[3] ever since. Although I **slave away**[4] till seven at night and even work at weekends, I still can't seem to **catch up with**[5] everything!
Nick: Sorry, I asked!

[1] been so busy that you are unable to see or speak to anyone else or go anywhere (informal)
[2] became more and more (used of something unpleasant, e.g. work, bills or debts)
[3] had so much work to do that I have problems dealing with it
[4] work very hard with little or no rest
[5] do something you did not have time to do earlier

B Working hard

Ray: How are things going for you at work at the moment, Stella?
Stella: Well, we're **branching out**[1] into a new product line – children's clothes – so I'm pretty busy. At the moment I'm **working on**[2] some new designs for leisurewear. We're **working towards**[3] having a complete range for children of all ages. It's quite difficult but I'm sure I'll develop some good designs if I **keep at**[4] it.
Ray: Well, you always were good at **sticking at**[5] things.
Stella: Well, I'd certainly rather do a project myself than have to **chase up**[6] other people to make sure they're doing what they promised to do. But sometimes you have to do that just to keep things **moving along**[7].
Ray: Do you think you could **squeeze in**[8] lunch with me sometime?
Stella: Mm, possibly, but not till next week.
Ray: That's fine. But don't try to **wriggle out of**[9] it at the last minute!

[1] starting to do something different from what you usually do
[2] spending time working in order to produce something
[3] trying hard to achieve
[4] continue working hard at something difficult or something which takes a long time
[5] continuing to work hard at something even though it is hard or takes a long time
[6] ask people to do something that they said they would do but have not done yet
[7] developing in a satisfactory way
[8] manage to see someone or do something when you are very busy and do not have much time available
[9] avoid doing something that other people think you should do, often in a dishonest way (informal)

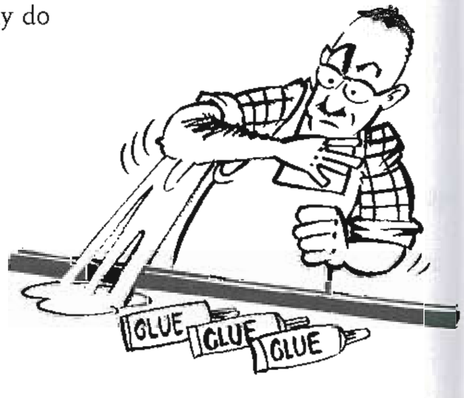

Mr Benbow stuck at his job in the glue factory for 25 years before retiring.

TIP When phrasal verbs have very strong visual images associated with the verbs they are made from, for example *squeeze in*, *stick at* and *wriggle out*, try to picture the meaning of the verb alone to help you remember the meaning of the verb and particle together.

Exercises

46.1 Which phrasal verbs in A opposite do these pictures make you think of? Write the correct phrasal verb under each one.

1
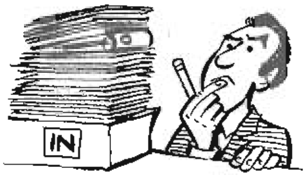

....

3
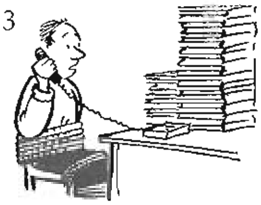

....

2
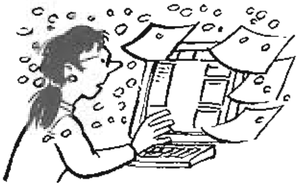

....

4
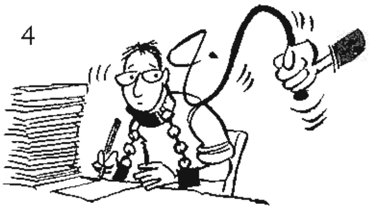

....

46.2 Use the phrasal verbs from exercise 46.1 to rewrite these sentences. Use each phrasal verb once only.

1 I've been working incredibly hard in a restaurant to pay for my studies.
2 Sorry, I was incredibly busy all last week, so I couldn't go to any of the meetings.
3 Paperwork has just increased and increased recently. I don't know where to start.
4 I'm sorry I can't do the report this week. I'm just so terribly busy.

46.3 Complete these sentences using the correct particles.

1 I've been working all day .... this essay and I still haven't finished it.
2 Whenever there's a difficult task to do she always tries to wriggle .... it.
3 Why should we slave .... till we're 65 and get nothing but a small pension?
4 Could we squeeze .... a quick meeting before lunch?
5 I must catch .... housework before my visitors arrive this weekend.

46.4 Each line of the text below contains one mistake with a phrasal verb. Cross out the incorrect word and write the correct word in the box next to that line.

I need to chase ~~out~~ Gerald's report so that we can	up
keep things moving away with the European sales	
campaign. I know he's been working in it and I	
know he's been working upwards the same goals	
as all of us to branch up into new markets in Europe,	
but he's not good at sticking for things and you	
need to keep in it with campaigns like this one.	

47 Money: salaries, bills, payments

A Formal and informal

Many phrasal verbs have more formal, non-phrasal equivalents.

phrasal verb	*more formal equivalent*	*meaning*	*example*
take out sth or **take** sth **out**	**withdraw**	get money from a bank	I **took** €100 **out** at the ATM yesterday. You may not **withdraw** more than €500 in 24 hours.
cut back sth or **cut** sth **back**	**reduce**	decrease the amount of money that is being spent on something	The government is **cutting back** on the education budget. The education budget is to be **reduced** next year.
pay back sth/sb or **pay** sth/sb **back**	**repay**	pay someone the money that you owe them	Lend me ten pounds and I'll **pay** you **back** tomorrow. Poor countries find it very difficult to **repay** their debts.
come to sth	**total**	be a particular total when amounts or numbers are added together	The bill for the meal **came to** $86 all together. Healthcare expenditure **totalled** $120 billion last year.

B Paying bills and debts

I won't **pay off** the mortgage on my house until 2024. [pay back all the money you owe]

My tax bill has arrived. I have to **pay up** by 30 December. [pay money that you owe, especially when you do not want to]

My kids **ran up** a phone bill of £400! [caused you to owe a large amount of money]

I know I already owe you €20. Can you lend me another 20 and I'll **settle up** with you when I get paid next week. [pay someone the money that you owe them]

C Other verbs connected with money

I've been offered a chance to go to New Zealand next year. So I've started **saving up**[1] already. I'm trying to **set aside**[2] a fixed amount each month so that I'll have enough.

It was a terrible holiday. Everything went wrong. And it cost us $900, but I guess we'll have to just **write** that **off**[3]. We won't get it **back**[4].

They were **giving away**[5] free tickets at the Concert Hall today and I got one. Then I was in a bookshop buying a magazine and I **picked up**[6] a book on Italian cookery at a **knockdown**[7] price. It had been reduced from $20 to $15.

1 keeping money so that I can buy something with it in the future
2 use money for one purpose and no other purpose
3 accept that an amount of money has been lost
4 it will not be returned
5 giving something to somebody without asking for payment
6 bought something when you have gone to a place to do something else
7 (adjective) very cheap

Exercises

47.1 Rewrite these sentences, using the word in brackets so that they keep the same meaning.

1 The suspected criminal withdrew all the money from his bank account and has not been seen since. (TAKE)
2 As his girlfriend is in Australia, he has a huge phone bill every month. (RUN)
3 The bill for the books we ordered totalled $40.85. (COME)
4 I lent him €100 a year ago and he still hasn't repaid me. (PAY)
5 Now that I've lost my job we're going to have to reduce what we spend on our weekly trip to the supermarket. (CUT)
6 If you pay the restaurant bill with your credit card, I'll give you my share later. (SETTLE)

47.2 Complete this e-mail using words from the box.

aside back down off up

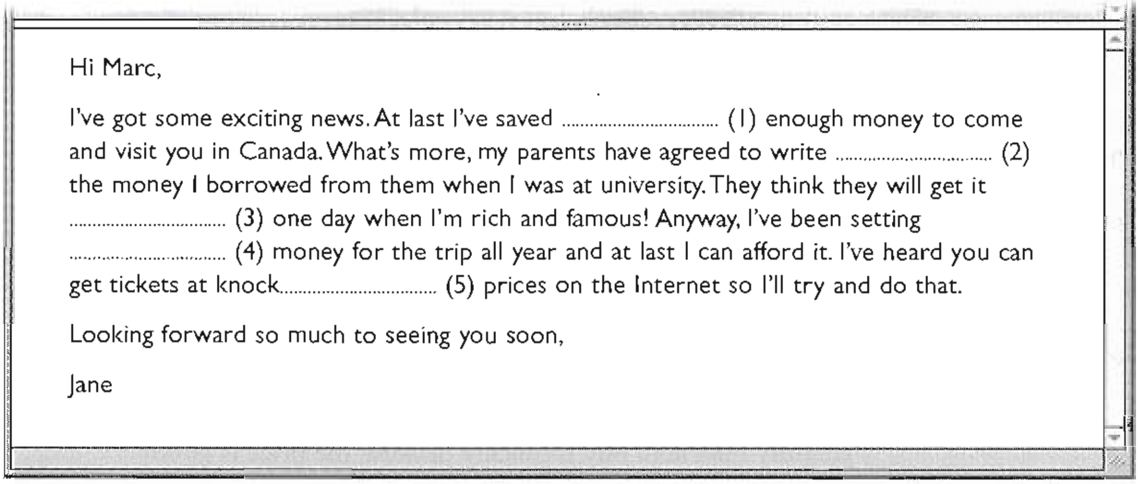

Hi Marc,

I've got some exciting news. At last I've saved .... (1) enough money to come and visit you in Canada. What's more, my parents have agreed to write .... (2) the money I borrowed from them when I was at university. They think they will get it .... (3) one day when I'm rich and famous! Anyway, I've been setting .... (4) money for the trip all year and at last I can afford it. I've heard you can get tickets at knock.............................. (5) prices on the Internet so I'll try and do that.

Looking forward so much to seeing you soon,

Jane

47.3 Choose the correct word from a–d to complete the text below.

My financial situation is in a bit of a bad way at the moment. First of all I owe my brother some money and he says I have to pay .... (1) before the end of the month. I've .... (2) up so many other bills that I don't know how I'm going to pay them .... (3). I wanted to sell my car, but it's so old and rusty that I can't even .... (4) it away. At work they're threatening to .... (5) back our opportunities for overtime. I don't know what I'll do then.

1 a) back b) up c) off d) out
2 a) cut b) saved c) run d) picked
3 a) back b) up c) off d) out
4 a) give b) settle c) take d) write
5 a) pay b) knock c) set d) cut

47.4 Answer these questions, using full sentences.

1 What, if anything, are you saving up for?
2 How much money do you usually take out at a cash machine?
3 What would you expect the bill for a night in a hotel in your country to come to?
4 Do you have any big debts and, if so, when do you hope to pay them off?
5 What sorts of things might you pick up at a flea market?

48 Money: buying and selling

A Shopping and buying goods

Tom: That leather bag's £120. Shall I see if he'll sell it cheaper?
Lily: Yes, why don't you try and **beat** him **down** to £100.
[make someone reduce the price of something]

Jill: Did you manage to get that car you wanted for a lower price?
Sandy: Yes, the dealer **knocked** 10% **off** the price because I offered to pay cash.
[reduced the price by a certain sum]

Nora: This is a nice old vase. Is it an antique?
Beryl: Yes it is, but I **picked** it **up** for €30. It was a real bargain.
[bought it at a cheap price]

Fran: It would be nice to buy something for our teacher now that the course is ending.
Paco: Yes, we should **club together** and get her some flowers or a nice gift.
[put our money together as a group]

Larry: I'm not going to buy stuff at those gift shops again. They really **ripped** me **off** last time.
[informal: cheated me by making me pay too much]
Sue: Yes, a lot of those tourist shops are a real **rip-off**. You can get the same things in ordinary shops for half the price.
[noun: from the verb rip off]

Martin: Shall we buy the TV set here? It's a big store.
Pilar: No, let's **shop around** a bit. They may be cheaper somewhere else.
[look at different shops and compare prices]

Aaron: Mick is selling Madonna's autograph for $20. Should I buy it?
Ritchie: If I were you I'd **snap** it **up**. It could become very valuable in the future.
[slightly informal: buy it quickly because the price is good]

Meg: The car failed its annual test yesterday. Two of the tyres are badly worn.
Simon: Oh no! Now we have to **fork out** for two new ones!
[informal: pay for something, especially when you do not want to]

B Other buying verbs

Learn these verbs in pairs to help you remember them.

We should **stock up** on fruit and vegetables and not buy so much junk food. [buy large quantities of]

We should never **skimp** on healthy foods. [spend too little money on or use too little of]

We **splashed out** [spent a lot of money on something we didn't really need] on lots of new furniture last month and **ran up** [caused ourselves to have to pay] a huge bill.

They're **selling off** printers at half price at the computer store. [selling to get rid of them] Shall we go and look at them right away in case they **sell out**? [have none left]

TIP

Sometimes you meet pairs of phrasal verbs which you can link together into one sentence or a pair of connected sentences, as in section B on this page. Try to learn as many pairs of phrasal verbs in this way because it will help you to remember them more easily.

Exercises

48.1 Fill the gaps with appropriate verbs from the opposite page.

1 He wanted $2000 for his old car but I managed to .... him down to $1800.
2 We're going to have to .... out a lot of money this year; the kitchen needs a new floor and the roof needs to be repaired.
3 We mustn't .... on the food and drink for the party. We don't want our friends to think we're poor!
4 I .... up a nice old book about my village in a second-hand bookshop. It was only two pounds.
5 The tickets for the rock concert are bound to .... out really quickly. I think we should go to the box office first thing in the morning.

48.2 Answer the questions below using phrasal verbs from the box.

splash out (on sth)   club together   stock up (on sth)   knock off   shop around

1 Most shops will be closing for about five days over the public holiday. What can you do to make sure you have enough food in the house?
2 Your sofa and armchairs are beginning to look very old. You have some money you'd like to spend. What could you do?
3 You want to buy your friend's bicycle but you think the price is too high. What could you ask your friend to do?
4 You want to buy a DVD player, but the prices seem to be very different for the same model in different shops. What should you do?
5 Your classmate Sara is ill in hospital and you think it would be nice to send her a bunch of flowers from the whole class. What could you suggest?

48.3 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences. There is one mistake in each sentence.

1 She became an Internet addict and ran into a huge telephone bill.
2 We were ripped out in that restaurant. They charged us for four desserts when we only had two.
3 He sold over his share in the business and went travelling round the world.
4 When he offered me his tennis racket for only $10 I snapped it off because it was still in excellent condition.
5 We had to fork for a new washing machine because our old one broke down.

48.4 Answer these questions about nouns formed from phrasal verbs. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 On the opposite page, you are shown the noun form of one of the phrasal verbs. Which one is it?
2 Look at the box below. Which of these phrasal verbs from the opposite page also have noun forms, and if so, what do the noun forms mean? Use a dictionary if necessary.

skimp on   pick up   sell off   sell out

49 Business

A Starting and doing business

Tim Benson **started up**[1] his own business in his first year at university. He **set up**[2] a small company **hiring out**[3] bicycles to other students. He was very successful and claims that his profits **ran into**[4] thousands of euros a month, a lot of money for a student. As a **spin-off**[5] he used to sell cycling clothes and equipment to the students and that also was a good earner for him. 'I was really happy with that **set-up**[6]', says Tim, 'as I loved cycling myself.'

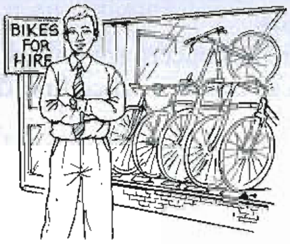

[1] created (a business or other organisation)
[2] started (a company or organisation)
[3] allowing people to use for a short time in exchange for money
[4] reached a particular level
[5] (noun) extra business in some way related to an earlier successful business
[6] (noun) business arrangement

B Ups and downs in business

Read this conversation about Ken's business activities.

Bob: Doesn't Ken own his computer business any more?
Rita: No, he **sold up**[1] and used the money to buy a small chain of clothing **outlets**[2].
Bob: Really? Has he done well?
Rita: Yes. His **turnover**[3] was so big he managed to **take over**[4] a jewellery company that had been a success but was **winding down**[5] because of bad management. They were no longer able to pay for the **upkeep**[6] of the stores.
Bob: Wow! How much did he have to pay of his own money?
Rita: Well, he **poured** a lot of money **into**[7] it – he **puts** it **at**[8] around a million – but he saved it from **going under**[9] and it's making a profit now. In fact he says the profit on wedding rings alone **runs to**[10] several millions. He says he's glad he decided to risk the **takeover**[11].
Bob: So he's a rich man now then?
Rita: He's very rich, but you know something? He still drives around town in that old car of his!

[1] sold a business (or house) in order to go and do something else (or live somewhere else)
[2] (noun) shops
[3] (noun) amount of money or business made by a company in a period of time
[4] get control of a company by buying most of its shares
[5] gradually reducing the amount of work being done until it closes completely
[6] (noun) cost or process of keeping a building or something in good condition
[7] provided a lot of money for something over a long period
[8] roughly calculates at a particular amount
[9] failing financially
[10] reaches a particular amount, usually a large amount
[11] (noun) act of gaining control of a company

TIP Business English uses a number of specific phrasal verbs that are either rarely used in other contexts, e.g. *to start up*, *to sell up*, or are used in other contexts with different meanings, e.g. *to turn over*. If you have a particular interest in Business English, make a special collection of these as you come across them.

Exercises

49.1 Match the stories 1–6 with the headlines a–e below.

1 The company has decided to wind down its operations in South America and to concentrate on its …
2 The company was concealing massive debts, but reached a point where it was bound to go under.
3 The takeover of Westin Engineering by Civic Technologies is to take place after all, it was announced today.
4 A company spokeswoman said profits were now running into six figures. She confirmed that …
5 Mr Donaldson has decided to sell up and retire to the south of France after 45 years in the business.
6 The lightweight clothes are a spin-off of space technology that sent men to the moon in the 1960s and 1970s.

a) COMPANY FOUNDER TO REALISE BIG PROFIT AFTER LONG CAREER
b) Company announces eight million euro profit
c) **Company benefits from decades-old science**
d) Company to close overseas factories
e) COMPANIES WILL JOIN TO MAKE HUGE CORPORATION
f) Company financial crash was inevitable

49.2 Complete these dialogues using phrasal verbs from the opposite page so that the second speaker agrees with and repeats more or less what the first speaker says.

1 Gus: The government has put huge sums of money into agriculture.
Henry: Yes, they've been ....

2 Lotta: I seem to remember Hugh Morris began his business about ten years ago.
Jan: Yes, you're right. He ....

3 Ruth: I would estimate that they've lost around five million euros this year.
Jamie: Yes, I'd ....

4 Pauline: I hear Macron are establishing a branch in Oslo.
Lianne: Yes, they're ....

5 Helen: All the repairs on the old building are incredibly expensive.
Fiona: Yes, the ....

49.3 Complete these sentences using words from the box.

hire out turnover take over outlet run to set-up

1 Big companies often .... small ones.
2 These shops .... power tools by the hour.
3 Last year their .... was $10 million.
4 A new sportswear .... has opened on the edge of town.
5 I couldn't work there; the .... didn't appeal to me at all.
6 The cost of rebuilding could .... a million pounds.

50 Telephoning

A Conversations on the telephone

Client: Can I speak to Mr Jones, please?
Secretary: I'm afraid Mr Jones is in a meeting.
Client: OK, I'll **call back**[1] later.

Client: Could you **put** me **through**[2] to Kathryn Parker, please?
Receptionist: May I ask who's calling?
Client: It's David Brown. We were talking a few minutes ago but got **cut off**[3].

Sarah: It's a very bad line, isn't it?
Paul: Do you think someone is **listening in**[4] on our conversation?
Sarah: I think one of the kids must have picked up the extension upstairs. Jan, are you there? **Put** the phone **down**[5] please.

[1] telephone someone for the second time, or ring someone who rang you earlier
[2] connect a telephone caller to the person they want to speak to
[3] were stopped from continuing the phone conversation because the connection broke
[4] secretly listening to a conversation
[5] put the part of the phone that you speak into hack into its usual position

B Conversations about telephoning

Husband: Have you found out about costs for repairing the central heating yet?
Wife: No, I **phoned around** a couple of companies. [telephoned several people, often in order to find out information]
Husband: And?
Wife: No-one was there so I left messages on the answering machines. But none of them have **got back to** me yet. [talked to someone, usually to give them information that you were not able to give them before]
Husband: Well, if they don't **ring back** [telephone someone who rang you earlier] soon, you'd better try **phoning up** [telephoning] a few more places.

Hotel guest: If I want to **dial out**, do I have to dial anything first? [use a telephone to call someone not in the same building]
Receptionist: Yes, dial 9 and wait for the tone. Then you can dial an outside number.

Luigi: Do you find it hard to **get through** to your parents in Tonga? [manage to talk to someone on the telephone]
Marie: Not usually, but it's very expensive so I don't call them often. My mum talks to me and then **puts** my dad **on** [give someone the telephone so that they can speak to the person who is on it], and he then puts me on to all my brothers and sisters. I can never get them to **hang up** [end a phone call by replacing the part of the phone that you are speaking into, usually suddenly] and I don't want to **ring off** [end a phone call by replacing the part of the phone that you are speaking into] either.

Husband: I don't feel very well today. I've got a terrible headache.
Wife: Oh dear. You'd better **ring in** sick then. [telephone someone at your place of work to explain why you are not there]

Exercises

50.1 Rewrite the underlined words using a phrasal verb from the opposite page.

1 Hotel operator: If you want to make a call outside of the hotel, you have to dial 9 firsr.
2 It's difficult to get a connection to the customer helpline in the mornings.
3 I'm sorry, he's out right now. Can you phone again at about five o'clock?
4 Carole telephoned the office to say she's not feeling well.
5 Joanne: Hi Uncle Jack, it's Jo. How's everything?
Uncle: Hi! Fine thanks. Just a minute, I'll give the phone to your aunt so you can tell her all the news.
6 I'll phone you with my response in a few days.

50.2 Complete the word puzzle.

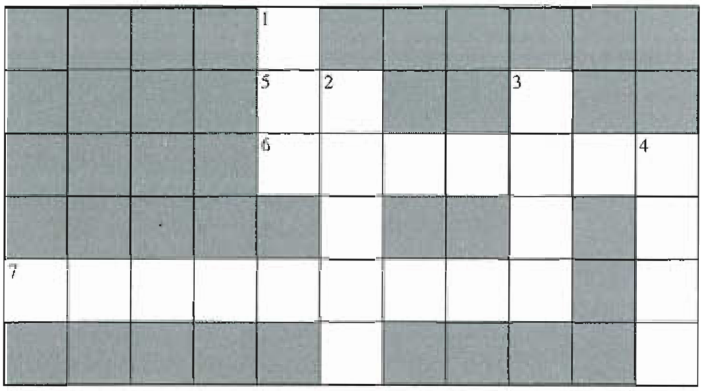

Down
1 Can I speak to Mr Walsh again please? I was speaking to him and we were .... off.
2 Hi, I've been meaning to .... you up for ages, but I couldn't find your number.
3 Hello, are you still there? Hello? I think she's just .... off.
4 Whoever it was, they just .... up; it must have been a wrong number.

Across
5 Why don't you phone Karen .... and invite her to the party.
6 Could you put me .... to the sales department please?
7 I can hear funny noises. Do you think someone's .... in on our call?

50.3 Here are some more phrasal verbs which you may need to use in connection with telephoning, especially when using a mobile phone. What do you think they mean? Use a dictionary if necessary.

speak up   hold on   break up   switch off   charge up

50.4 Use the phrasal verbs from exercise 50.3 to answer these questions. Use each verb once.

1 How could you explain to a friend why they couldn't reach you on your mobile phone when they tried to?
2 How could you tell someone you're speaking to on a mobile phone that the signal is very bad and you have difficulty understanding what they're saying?
3 How could you ask someone to speak louder because there's a lot of background noise?
4 How could you ask someone if they have enough electrical power in their mobile phone before they go off on a trip?
5 How could you ask someone to wait and not put the phone down while you have to interrupt the call for some reason?

51 Feelings

A Feelings go up and down

Up and *down* phrasal verbs connected with feelings often refer to positive (up↑) and negative (down↓) emotions and emotional events, or a more emotional intensity (up↑) or less emotional intensity (down↓).

UP	
example	*meaning*
Brighten up, will you! You're depressing everyone!	suddenly look or feel happier
The film **cheered** us **up** considerably.	made us start to feel happier
There's no point in **being hung up** about it; there's nothing we can do.	becoming very worried about something and spend a lot of time thinking about it (informal)

DOWN	
example	*meaning*
She **broke down** when she was told the bad news.	was unable to control her feelings and started to cry
Calm down! Losing your temper won't solve the problem.	stop feeling angry, upset, or excited
I need some time to **cool down** before I can see him again.	become calmer

B More verbs connected with feelings – examples from horoscopes

SCORPIO

There's something you need to tell someone that is making you very angry, so don't **bottle up**[1] your emotions. If you do, there is a danger that you will **tear** yourself **apart**[2].

[1] not allow yourself to show or talk about your feelings, especially feelings of anger and sadness (informal)

[2] make yourself feel very unhappy

VIRGO

A letter or e-mail will make your heart beat faster, but don't **get carried away**[3]; proceed carefully. At work things are getting better, and you should **jump at**[4] the chance of a new challenge which will be offered to you soon.

[3] become so excited about something that you do not control what you say or do and you forget about everything else

[4] eagerly accept a chance to do or have something

LEO

You may be unwilling at first to take part in an activity suggested by a close friend, but talk about it, and you may **warm to**[5] it a bit more. In fact, the idea could soon **grow on**[6] you and you'll find yourself doing something you never expected to do and **taking to**[7] it enthusiastically.

[5] become more enthusiastic about an idea

[6] you like something more and more, although you did not like it at first (informal)

[7] starting to like it

GEMINI

You **feel for**[8] a female colleague at work who seems to have so many problems and **hang-ups**[9], but be careful; you could soon become more involved than you want to. She will have to **pull herself together**[10] sooner or later; it's her life, not yours.

[8] feel sorry for someone who is unhappy or in a difficult situation

[9] feelings of embarrassment or fear about something, often when it is not necessary to feel that way (informal)

[10] become calm after being very upset or angry

Exercises

51.1 **Read the sentences below. Decide which people are experiencing positive feelings and which are experiencing negative feelings.**

1 Jill broke down when the doctor told her the results.
2 George is beginning to take to the idea of moving to Boston.
3 Sue has more hang-ups than anyone else I know.
4 Henry should calm down or he'll make himself ill.
5 Mike has cheered up a lot since I last saw him.
6 Mary doesn't seem to be able to pull herself together.
7 Ken is very inclined to bottle up his emotions.
8 Anna has brightened up considerably since this morning.

51.2 **Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.**

1 The news that I didn't have to do the exam after all made me feel happier.
2 Look, Joe. Try to be less angry! Getting angry won't solve the problem.
3 When she heard of her friend's death she lost control of her feelings and wept.
4 She worries so much about silly little problems at work.
5 I wish you'd be a bit more cheerful! You're making me feel depressed!

51.3 **Match the statements on the left with the most appropriate response on the right.**

1 That new quiz show is growing on me now.
2 Would you like to try snowboarding?
3 Tom's marriage problems are tearing him apart.
4 Sam is so hung up about failing his exam.
5 If I win the lottery, I'll buy a flat in New York and one in Rio and ...
6 I wish Sue would brighten up a bit.

What more can we do to cheer her up?
I know – I do feel for them both.
Yes, I'm beginning to warm to it too.
Don't get carried away!
Yes, I hope he pulls himself together before his next attempt.
Sure, I'd jump at the chance.

51.4 **Complete this letter, using verbs or particles from the opposite page.**

Dear Angela,

I hope things are OK with you.

We've been having quite a difficult time here. Jim lost his job. After 20 years there he .... (1) down when he was told. It seemed to .... (2) him apart and he has found it very hard to .... (3) himself together. However, thank goodness, he does seem to be brightening .... (4) a bit now. He's even beginning to take .... (5) the idea of doing a retraining course. Mary was very angry at the way her father had been treated – she .... (6) for him so much. She's cooled .... (7) a bit now as she realises there is no point in getting too .... (8) up about it. Silvia has been great at trying to .... (9) us all up through all this.

Hope to hear from you soon.

Jenny

FOLLOW UP Read an English horoscope page, either in an English magazine or on the Internet. Note down as many phrasal verbs as you can. Use a dictionary to help you understand the meanings and write down a sentence to help you remember the new expressions.

52 Relationships

A Talking about relationships

Dear Auntie Jo,

I think I've **fallen for**[1] the new guy who's just started work in our office. He **fitted in**[2] at once. He and I **get along**[3] really well, but he hasn't **asked** me **out**[4] yet. What should I do?

Miranda Buxton

[1] (informal) become very attracted to
[2] felt happy in a group of people because he was similar to them
[3] like each other and are friendly
[4] invited someone to go to a place like a cinema or a restaurant, usually to start a romantic relationship

Dear Auntie Jo,

I've been ***going out with***[1] *my boyfriend for ten months now and we're planning to get married next year. But last week we* ***fell out***[2] *over something really stupid. He heard a male friend of mine tell me my hair looked nice and he thought it was a* ***chat-up***[3] *line. He got so jealous and wouldn't speak to me. Do you think a minor* ***falling-out***[4] *like this is a bad sign for our future marriage, or am I worrying too much?*

Tanya Wilson

[1] having a romantic relationship with
[2] had an argument that damaged our relationship
[3] (noun, informal) a way of talking which suggests you are sexually attracted to someone and want them to be attracted to you (from the verb **chat up**)
[4] (noun) argument (from the verb **fall out**)

B Being attracted to someone

If you ...	*then you ...*
hit it off with someone	immediately like and become friendly with them (informal)
pair off with someone	start a romantic relationship with them
chat someone **up**	talk in a way that shows them that you are sexually attracted to them and you try to make them attracted to you
go for a particular type of person or thing	like that type of person or thing
turn someone **on**	make them interested, often sexually

TIP There are a lot of phrasal verbs which deal with relationships and how people get on with each other. Look occasionally at a problem page in a newspaper or magazine and note down any new ones that you find.

Exercises

52.1 Auntie Jo, the agony aunt, is replying to some of the letters she gets. Fill the gaps in her replies.

Dear Tanya,

You say you're worried because you and your fiancé have (1) .... out. Well, take my advice, a temporary (2) .... with someone you love is not the end of the world. And your boyfriend shouldn't worry even if another man does try a (3) ....-up line with you; if you love each other such silly things will never threaten your marriage.

Dear Lisa,

Your letter about your office party is typical of many I get. Everybody tries to (4) .... off with somebody and a lot of the evening is spent in (5) .... people up in the hope of starting something with them. But be careful. By accepting the first guy who asks you, you could end up with a reputation for always flirting and never being serious, and then the really nice guys won't go (6) .... you, and nothing you do or say will ever turn them (7) .... !

Dear Jody,

You say you've (8) .... for the new student on your course, but that you're afraid he won't (9) .... in with your gang of friends. I suggest you (10) .... him out and then meet up with your friends later in the evening. If they don't (11) .... , then the choice is simple: either you lose him and keep your friends, or you keep him and perhaps lose 'friends' who aren't really true friends.

52.2 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.

1 My friend and I fell away last week because she thinks I'm in love with her boyfriend.
2 The new student was finding it difficult to fit on, as he was older than the other students.
3 When George met his new colleague he really fell to her and now he talks about her all the time.
4 Barry and David hit it of immediately when they were introduced.
5 That horrible man over there was trying to talk me up. Ugh!

52.3 Rewrite the underlined parts of this private diary, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

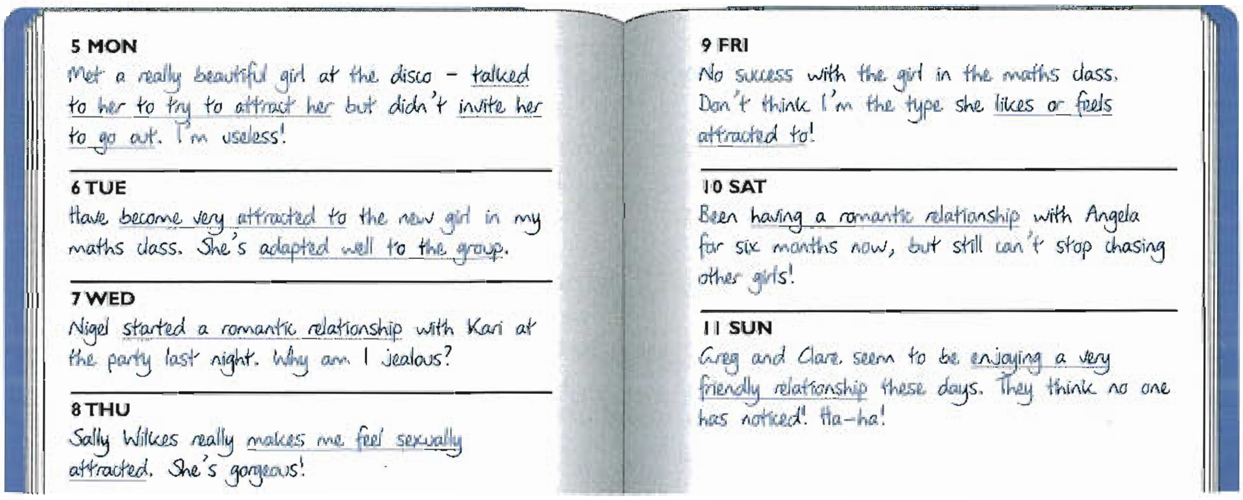

5 MON
Met a really beautiful girl at the disco – talked to her to try to attract her but didn't invite her to go out. I'm useless!

6 TUE
Have become very attracted to the new girl in my maths class. She's adapted well to the group.

7 WED
Nigel started a romantic relationship with Kari at the party last night. Why am I jealous?

8 THU
Sally Wilkes really makes me feel sexually attracted. She's gorgeous!

9 FRI
No success with the girl in the maths class. Don't think I'm the type she likes or feels attracted to!

10 SAT
Been having a romantic relationship with Angela for six months now, but still can't stop chasing other girls!

11 SUN
Greg and Clare seem to be enjoying a very friendly relationship these days. They think no one has noticed! Ha-ha!

53 Relationships: problems

Here are some more letters to Auntie Jo, the agony aunt from Unit 52. Read these letters from a popular young people's magazine along with Jo's replies on the right.

Dear Auntie Jo,

My boyfriend and I have just **split up**[1] after a year together. For the first six months everything was great, but then we just seemed to **drift apart**[2]. I didn't really want to **finish with**[3] him, but he wanted to **break off**[4] our relationship. Should I ask him if we can start again and try to rediscover the magic of those first six months?

Linda (aged 19)

When two people **grow apart**[5], it's usually because they are basically different. The fact that he **broke off with**[6] you means he recognises that you don't really have a lot in common. You're young. Let him go!

1 ended a relationship or marriage
2 gradually become less friendly and the relationship ends
3 end a romantic relationship (informal)
4 end a relationship
5 gradually become less friendly, often because you do not have the same interests and opinions any more
6 ended a romantic relationship with someone

Dear Auntie Jo,

My parents **broke up**[1] last year and I've been depressed ever since. I see each of them regularly, and I love them, but I feel they have **let** me **down**[2]. Is there anything I can do to persuade them to **make up**[3] and live together again so that my sister and I can have a normal life like other kids?

Brian (aged 16)

Brian, a marriage **break-up**[4] is always very sad, but there's not much you can do. They are adults and they have made their own choices. You feel you're **missing out**[5] on a normal young person's life, but you're not alone. A third of all marriages in Britain end in divorce. Be brave and talk to your friends about it.

1 their marriage or relationship ended
2 disappointed me by failing to do what they agreed or what I expected them to do
3 forgive each other and become friendly again
4 (noun) the act or event of breaking up
5 not doing or getting something you would enjoy or that would be good for you, or not having something other people have

Dear Auntie Jo,

A couple of years ago my uncle **ran off with**[1] another woman. She was much younger than him, in fact she was only 20 and he was 52. It ended in disaster. He left her last year and returned to his wife. But the neighbours all stare at him and laugh at him; it seems he'll never **live** it **down**[2]. He's doing his best to **settle down**[3] and be a good husband and uncle again, but I feel so unhappy for him. What can I do?

Iona (aged 17)

People can be very cruel, Iona, and your uncle may have to **settle for**[4] a lot more embarrassment before the neighbours forget what happened. The best thing you can do is to show your uncle that you love him and support him and show him that you accept him, and all his faults.

1 secretly left a place with someone in order to live with them or marry them, especially when other people think this is wrong
2 stop feeling embarrassed about something you did by waiting until people forget about it
3 start living in a place where you intend to stay for a long time
4 accept something, often something that is not exactly what you want, or is not the best

Exercises

53.1 **Match the problems 1–6 with the responses a–f.**

1 My husband and I are so busy at work that we seem to be drifting apart. What should I do?

2 How can I finish with my boyfriend without hurting his feelings too much?

3 What can I do to get over the break-up of my marriage? I still love my wife.

4 I always seem to pick boyfriends who let me down. What can I do?

5 I'm 35. Isn't it time I was thinking of settling down?

6 I've decided never to get married. Do you agree with my friends that I will be missing out on a lot?

a) Become friends first – then you should know what he is really like before you take things any further.
b) The right time can arrive at any age – when you meet the right person.
c) Why not take up some new hobby together?
d) Why make such a major decision about your future now? You may feel very differently in a few years' time.
e) Time should slowly make things better for you.
f) Could you try to make him want to split up with you first?

53.2 **Rewrite these sentences replacing the phrasal verbs with another phrasal verb from the opposite page, so that the sentences keep the same meanings.**

1 My sister and her husband broke up last year.
2 Milly was very upset when her boyfriend broke off with her.
3 We had been drifting apart for a long time, so it was better to separate properly.

53.3 **Complete these sentences using appropriate phrasal verbs from the opposite page.**

1 Whenever I quarrel with my girlfriend I can't wait to .... again.
2 We were all very shocked when Emily left her husband and .... her boss.
3 After leaving school my best friend got a glamorous job travelling all over the world, but now all she wants to do is get married and .... somewhere.
4 I am absolutely sure that I can trust him and that he will never .... me ....
5 It was so embarrassing when I spilt tomato soup all over my boss – I'm sure I'll never .... it ....
6 I think that children who are educated at home .... on the opportunity to make friends of their own age.
7 Sally is determined to marry someone who is both handsome and rich and she'll never .... less.
8 I can't understand why my girlfriend decided to .... our relationship.

FOLLOW UP Look at the problem pages in an English language magazine. Copy down any sentences that you find containing phrasal verbs.

54 Secrets and conversations

A Secrets

Angela: You're **keeping** something **from**[1] me, aren't you?

Steve: Well, sort of. Jill really **opened up**[2] to me last night. She **poured out**[3] a lot of things but made me promise not to tell anyone and I can't go **back on**[4] my word.

Angela: Go on. You can tell me, I won't **let on**[5] to Jill or anyone else.

Steve: No, I can't. In the course of her **outpouring**[6] she **owned up**[7] to something quite serious and I really can't tell you about it. You'd be far too shocked!

[1] not telling me about something

[2] started to talk more about herself and her feelings

[3] talked very honestly about what was making her unhappy

[4] not do something that you promised you would do

[5] tell someone about something that was supposed to be a secret

[6] (noun) long and emotional expression of what she was feeling

[7] admitted she had done something wrong

B Conversations

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
keep on at sb	talk to someone about something many times, usually to complain about something they have done or not done	I wish you wouldn't **keep on at** me about my handwriting! No-one else has problems reading it.
talk down to sb	talk to someone as if they were less clever than you	The best teachers don't **talk down to** pupils but speak to them as equals.
play down sth or **play** sth **down**	try to make people believe that something is not very important or is unlikely to happen	There is no point in trying to **play down** the incident – too many people saw exactly what happened.
pin down sb or **pin** sb **down**	make someone give you exact details or a decision about something	He's the most infuriating man – you can never **pin** him **down** to a date on anything.
have it out with sb (informal)	talk to someone about something they have said or done that has made you angry in order to improve the situation	Once Sally had **had it out with** Kim about the housework, things got much better.
wind up sb or **wind** sb **up** (informal)	tell someone something that is not true in order to make a joke or to annoy them	Stop pretending that you've lost your sister's new jacket. It's not fair to **wind** her **up** like that.
mouth off (informal)	talk about a subject as if you know more than everyone else or to complain a lot about something	Robert is always **mouthing off** about his boss behind his back, but he'd never say anything to his face.
shut (sb) up (informal)	stop talking or making a noise, or make someone else do this	Would you please **shut up** while I'm trying to concentrate on these papers.

TIP You can sometimes fix phrasal verbs in your mind by writing them in true sentences about a person you know or an experience you've had.

Exercises

54.1 Read these remarks by different people and then answer the questions below by writing the correct name in the box.

George: I'm determined to have it out with my parents. We can't go on in this way.
Dermot: My sister is always mouthing off about something. I wish she'd shut up.
Michael: I think they were trying to play down the whole affair.
Yolanda: The boss seems to have gone back on her word.
Yvette: Huh! My brother has owned up at last! It's about time!
Gina: I felt my roommate was trying to wind me up.

1 Who is annoyed because someone talks about subjects as if they know more than everyone else or someone complains a lot about something?
2 Who thought someone told them something that wasn't true in order to make a joke or to annoy them?
3 Who is going to talk to someone about something they have said or done that has made them angry, in order to solve the problem?
4 Who thinks someone is trying to make people believe that something is not very important or is not likely to happen?
5 Who is satisfied that someone has admitted they have done something wrong?
6 Who thinks someone has broken a promise to do something?

54.2 Complete these sentences using words from the opposite page.

1 I felt she was .... something from me. I asked her what it was, but she wouldn't .... on.
2 Oh, ... up, will you! Don't .... on at me all the time!
3 It's very difficult to .... him down. He never likes to make firm plans.
4 She's an excellent employer. She never .... down to her staff, however inadequate they seem.
5 Georgina .... out her life story to me late last night. She's never .... up to me in that way before, and in her .... of emotion she revealed to me that she'd been in prison years ago.

54.3 Read these sentences containing rather formal verbs and then write their more informal phrasal verb equivalents in the brackets. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 I promise I won't reveal (....................................) to Simon that you're moving out of the flat.
2 The government has reneged (....................................) on its promise to increase student grants.
3 I had a feeling she was concealing (....................................) something from me, something unpleasant.
4 She confessed (....................................) to having lied about the missing money.
5 I have finally decided to confront (....................................) Jamie. We simply can't continue with so much tension in the air.

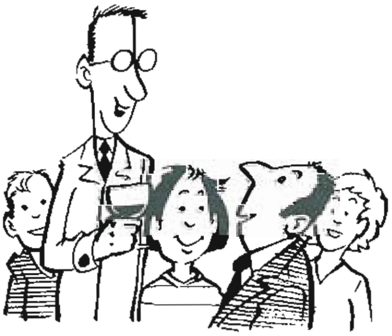

Mr Beanpole had a habit of talking down to people.

55 Stages through life

Cathy has just had a new baby and is e-mailing her friend, Dolores. Follow the correspondence between the two friends.

Hi Dolores,
You'll be pleased to hear the new baby's doing fine. We've decided to **name** him **after**[1] his grandfather, Patrick. He has blue eyes and quite fair hair, so he **takes after**[2] his father. I find it hard to imagine myself **bringing up**[3] a child. Wish me luck for the next 18 years!
Love, Cathy

[1] give him the same name as someone else
[2] has a similar appearance or character as an older member of his family
[3] looking after a child and educating them until they are an adult

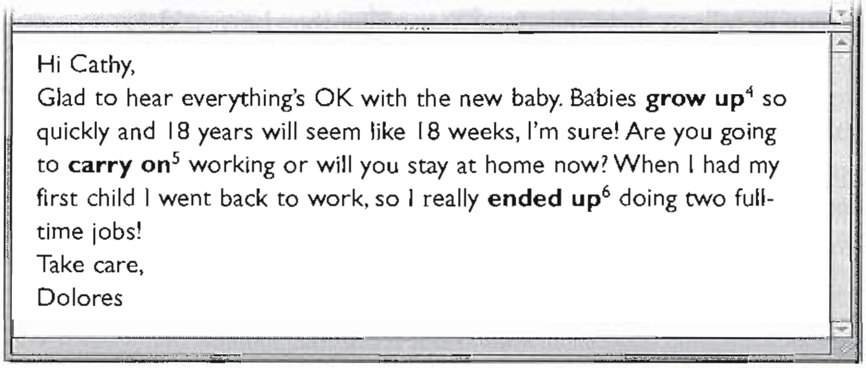

Hi Cathy,
Glad to hear everything's OK with the new baby. Babies **grow up**[4] so quickly and 18 years will seem like 18 weeks, I'm sure! Are you going to **carry on**[5] working or will you stay at home now? When I had my first child I went back to work, so I really **ended up**[6] doing two full-time jobs!
Take care,
Dolores

[4] change from being a child to being an adult
[5] continue
[6] finally did something, especially without having planned to

Hi again,
Thanks for the encouraging words! I don't know what will **become of**[7] my career. At the moment all I care about is that little Patrick will be a nice kid, that he won't **drop out**[8] of school or college, that he won't **turn to**[9] crime or drugs and **wind up**[10] in prison, and that he'll be healthy and happy, just like your kids.
Talk to you soon,
Cathy

[7] happen to
[8] stop going to classes before completing a course
[9] start to do or take something bad, usually because you are unhappy
[10] finally do something, especially without having planned to (like the verb end up)

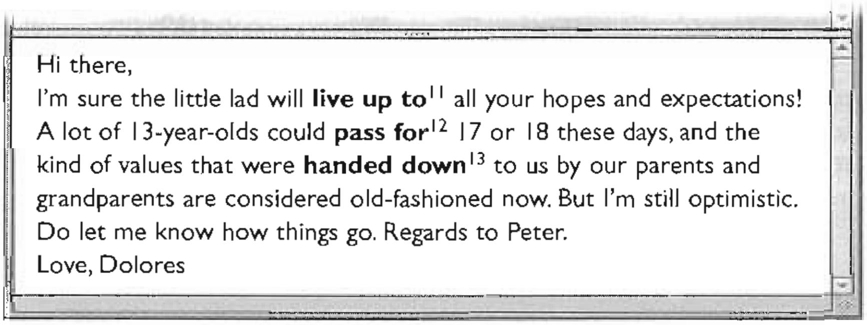

Hi there,
I'm sure the little lad will **live up to**[11] all your hopes and expectations! A lot of 13-year-olds could **pass for**[12] 17 or 18 these days, and the kind of values that were **handed down**[13] to us by our parents and grandparents are considered old-fashioned now. But I'm still optimistic. Do let me know how things go. Regards to Peter.
Love, Dolores

[11] be as good as he is expected to be
[12] appear to be
[13] given or taught, by an older person to a younger person

Exercises

55.1 Which phrasal verbs in the e-mails on the opposite page could be replaced by the following synonyms? Write the phrasal verbs next to their synonym.

1 continue ....
2 looks like ....
3 not complete ....
4 transmitted ....
5 be as good as ....
6 happen to ....
7 raising ....
8 look as if they are ....

55.2 Answer these questions in full sentences, using phrasal verbs.

1 Were you named after anyone? If so, who were you named after?
2 Who, if anyone, do you take after in appearance?
3 Who, if anyone, do you take after in character?
4 Do you think that boys and girls grow up at the same speed?
5 What reason might someone have for dropping out of university?
6 What reason might someone have for turning to crime?
7 Describe someone you know who could pass for a different age than they really are.
8 Do you possess anything that has been handed down from your great-grandparents?
9 Do you think that mothers and fathers have an equally important role to play in bringing up their children?
10 Until what age would you like to carry on working?

55.3 Complete this short biography, using verbs from the opposite page.

RICHARD POTTS WAS BORN 100 years ago today in the same small town in Wales that he lives in now. He was (1) .... after his maternal grandfather, Richard Jones, the distinguished sculptor, whom he was later said to (2) .... after in both character and appearance. The young Richard was orphaned at an early age and was (3) .... up by an aunt. He failed to (4) .... up to his relatives' hopes for him by (5) .... out of school at the age of 15. They were very concerned about what would (6) .... of him and, although there must have been plenty of temptations encouraging the young boy to (7) .... to gambling and drink, he resisted them all and (8) .... up taking a job in a coal mine. He impressed the managers so much that he eventually (9) .... up as a member of the board. He (10) .... on working until five years ago, when ill health forced him to retire, but he is still a familiar figure around the streets of his home town.

FOLLOW UP

Read an obituary or article about the death of someone famous from any English language newspaper and note down any phrasal verbs that you find in it.

56 Health

A Symptoms

These speakers all have health problems that can be described using phrasal verbs or in the case of *blocked-up*, an adjective based on a phrasal verb.

I keep throwing up[1].

I think I'm coming down with[2] flu.

I'm going down with[3] flu too.

I'm fighting off[4] a sore throat.

I've put my shoulder out[5].

I can't shake off[6] this cold.

My ankle has swollen up[7].

My nose is blocked-up[8].

I've passed out[9] a couple of times recently.

[1] (informal) vomiting
[2] becoming ill, usually with a disease that is not very serious, e.g. flu, a cold
[3] (informal) see note 2
[4] trying hard to get rid of
[5] dislocated or injured by making a bone move from its usual place
[6] get rid of
[7] become larger or rounder than usual
[8] (adjective) filled so that you are unable to breathe normally
[9] become unconscious; fainted

B One medical story

Maggie has had a hard time recently. Firstly, her sister **broke down**[1] after her divorce and was sick for several months. Maggie was still **caring for**[2] her when her brother was hit on the head by a tile that fell from a roof. He was unconscious for a couple of days. Fortunately, he **pulled through**[3] and has now more or less fully recovered although he does seem to have **slowed down**[4] a lot. No sooner were they both better than their grandfather **passed away**[5] and then just a few weeks later their grandmother **passed on**[6] too.

[1] became mentally or physically ill because of an unpleasant experience
[2] looking after someone who is too ill, too young, or old to look after themselves
[3] recovered from a serious illness
[4] become less physically active than before
[5] died
[6] died

TIP Try to learn phrasal verbs in chunks or longer phrases, e.g. *I'm coming down with flu; She's fighting off a cold; My nose is blocked-up.*

Exercises

56.1 Complete this text, using particles from **A**.

I feel as if I'm coming .... (1) with flu. I'm fighting .... (2) a sore throat and my nose is constantly blocked-................................ (3). My glands have swollen .... (4) and, if I try to eat anything, I feel as if I'm going to throw .... (5). I wish I could shake it .... (6) as I have so much work to do. I can't afford to be absent.

56.2 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences, using a phrasal verb from the opposite page.

1 I've had a sore throat for a week now – I just can't get rid of it.
2 Meg hadn't eaten anything for 48 hours and so it wasn't surprising that she fainted in the middle of her gym lesson.
3 The doctors were afraid that the old man wouldn't survive the attack of pneumonia, but amazingly he recovered and was soon on his feet again.
4 I think I'm just about to get a cold – I feel a bit shivery.
5 My thumb became bigger after I accidentally hit it with a hammer.
6 The sea was so rough that many people were vomiting over the side of the ship.
7 People usually write letters of condolence to the relatives of someone who has died.
8 The old lady is in great pain because she has dislocated her hip.
9 After the operation, her sister nursed her until she was completely recovered.
10 How do you think you contracted chicken pox?

56.3 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 Jim's uncle passed	for her elderly mother.
2 Sonya is fighting	down a bit as they get older.
3 Rita is kept very busy caring	down with flu.
4 Mary's ankles swelled	off a bout of flu.
5 Most people usually slow	up during the long flight.
6 I think Joe is going	away last year.

56.4 Complete these sentences in any way that makes sense.

1 When her great-aunt passed away Mary felt very ....
2 Jack broke down when ....
3 The last time I threw up was ....
4 You can get a blocked-up nose if ....
5 Kate's finger swelled up after ....
6 The best way to fight off a cold is to ....

FOLLOW UP Look at a health advice page of an English language newspaper or magazine. Write down any phrasal verbs that you find there. Write them down in sentences to help you remember them.

57 Sport

A Sports items from newspapers

WEATHER DELAYS CUP FINAL

The **kick-off**[1] of the Cup Final between Arsenal and Liverpool was delayed yesterday due to bad weather.

[1] (noun) start of a game of football

ARCHERY: *England defeated*

ENGLAND were **knocked out**[2] of the European Archery Championship this afternoon in a surprise win by Sweden.

[2] forced to leave the competition because they were defeated

JOHNSON TO ATTEMPT RECORD

Welsh swimmer Peri Johnson says he is **going for**[3] the world record in tomorrow's 100 metres freestyle event.

[3] will try to achieve something difficult [e.g. break a record, win a medal]

DORNTON TO PLAY HARSFIELD

With both teams on 28 points, Dornton will meet Harsfield in a **play-off**[4] this Saturday at Dornton's home ground to decide who goes up to the first division.

[4] (noun) game to decide the winner, especially when the teams or competitors have the same number of points

B People talking about their sporting activities

I **work out**[1] at the gym three times a week to try to **burn off**[2] the calories and stay slim. I find it also helps me to **work off**[3] the stress of work.

[1] exercise in order to improve the strength or appearance of your body
[2] use or get rid of energy, calories or fat by doing a lot of physical exercise
[3] get rid of an unpleasant feeling, e.g. aggression or anger, by doing something energetic

Before I start a match I always do a **warm-up**[4]. Then after the match I make sure I **cool down**[5] and stretch properly.

[4] (noun) gentle exercises which prepare you for more serious exercise (from the verb **warm up**)
[5] become cooler

World-class marathon running can be very hard. You need great mental stamina, and you must never **give in**[6]. It's a great feeling when you **pull ahead**[7] of the rest of the field and know you're winning.

[6] accept that you have been defeated and agree to stop competing or fighting
[7] suddenly get in front of another person who was previously running at the same speed as you

Table tennis is a great sport. Anyone can **join in**[8]. We have a **knockout**[9] competition at work every month, just for fun.

[8] become involved in an activity with other people
[9] (noun) a competition in which only the winners of each stage play in the next stage, until one person or team is the final winner

Exercises

57.1 Match the phrasal verb on the left with its more formal equivalent on the right.

1 join in	attempt to achieve
2 give in	defeat
3 go for	surrender
4 pull ahead	participate
5 knock out	overtake

57.2 Choose phrasal verb expressions from the opposite page to complete each of these notices from a sports club noticeboard.

1 Always do a .... before doing any strenuous exercise.
2 ***Sign below if you would like to take part in next month's .... squash tournament.***
3 Eat healthily. Remember you have to exercise for at least two hours to .... the calories from one cream cake!
4 **Regular exercise helps to .... stress.**
5 Don't forget to .... before running round the track.
6 Remember it's just as important to .... properly as it is to warm up.

57.3 Answer these questions, using full sentences.

1 How often do you work out each month and what do you do when you work out?
2 How might you warm up before running a marathon?
3 Why would you be pleased if you pulled ahead of the other runners in a race?
4 Which sport is better for burning off calories and why – tennis or table tennis?
5 Would you prefer to join in a snooker game or a football game after work?
6 What kind of medal would a top athlete go for?

57.4 Describe what is happening in these pictures, using one of the nouns or verbs from the opposite page.

1
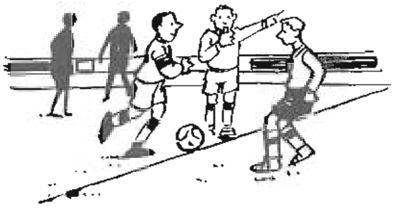

2
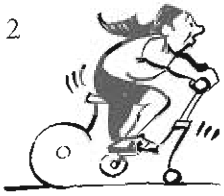

3
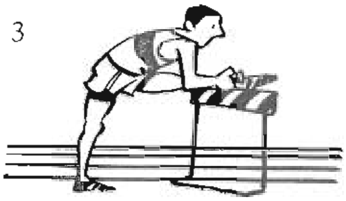

57.5 Here are three more phrasal verbs with sporting connections that were not on the opposite page. Can you choose the correct definition from the box for each of them?

was defeated by   progressed   told to leave

1 If a footballer gets a red card, he is sent **off** the pitch.
2 England **went out** to Germany in the semi-finals.
3 Our team won the game and so they **went forward** to the next round.

58 Homes and daily routines

A Homes

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
move out	stop living in a particular house or flat	Jack **moved out** of his college room last Monday.
move in	begin living in a new house or flat	A new family has **moved in** to the flat next door.
move in together	start living in the same house as someone	Sam and I have always been good friends so when we both got jobs in Rio, we decided to **move in together**.
live on sth	have an amount of money in order to buy the things you need	I earn just enough to **live on**.
live off sth	have enough money for the things you need by taking it from a supply of money or another person	While Sue was unemployed she had to **live off** her savings.
put up sb or **put** sb **up**	let someone stay in your home for a short time	Would you be able to **put** me **up** when I'm in London next week?
sleep over	sleep in someone else's home for a night (noun) a sleepover	My daughter loves it when a school friend **sleeps over**. The kids **had a sleepover**.

Note: Do not confuse to sleep over with to oversleep. The verb to oversleep means to sleep longer than you should have done, e.g.

If I oversleep and am late for work again, I'll lose my job.

B Daily routines

I've got a new job at the airport and have moved into a flat with a couple of friends. During the week I have to **get up**[1] early as I have to be at the airport by 6.30 a.m. I try to be very quiet in the mornings so I don't **wake up**[2] my flatmates. At the weekends I love **sleeping in**[3]. On Saturdays I sometimes **lie in**[4] till 11. I can't have a **lie-in**[5] if I'm playing football though, which I sometimes do on Saturday mornings. On weekday evenings I **turn in**[6] quite early, about 10.30 p.m. usually, but I **stay up**[7] at weekends, of course. If I get home on Saturday night before my flatmates, I **wait up**[8] until they arrive and we have a drink and a chat before going to bed.

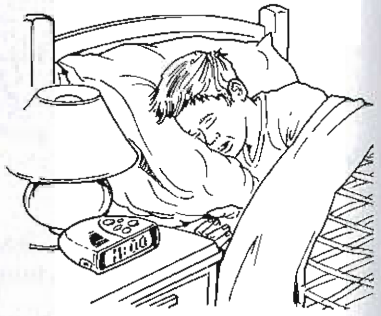

I love sleeping in at weekends.

[1] get out of bed
[2] make them become conscious
[3] sleeping later in the morning than usual
[4] stay in bed later in the morning than usual
[5] (noun) longer time in bed in the morning than usual
[6] go to bed
[7] go to bed later than usual
[8] stay awake because you are waiting for someone to arrive

Exercises

58.1 Look at these notices a–f on a college noticeboard and answer the questions below.

a) Final-year students moving out after graduation have furniture to sell.
Tel. Steve and Nick on 276544.

b) Living off your parents or off your savings? Earn extra cash by working at weekends. Call 896774.

c) *Room available in house for female graduate student. Five minutes from campus. Must be able to move in immediately. Ring 655491, ask for Julie.*

d) **Student grants are not enough to live on! Join our protest outside the Senate Building, Friday 2 p.m. Bring your friends!**

e) Time to move on? If you've just graduated and want careers advice, come to the careers workshop at 3 p.m., Thursday 25 May, room 12A, Hughes Building.

f) *Female postgrad, 24, looking for like-minded, non-smoking female to move in next month. If you think we could enjoy living together, call me on 733208! Nicola.*

Which notice would you respond to if ...

1 ... your income was not sufficient to meet your needs and you were angry about it?
2 ... you felt you needed to take on a new challenge or start a new phase in your life?
3 ... you were looking for bargain items because you're going into an unfurnished flat?
4 ... you were female and about to leave your accommodation and had nowhere to live?
5 ... you were dependent on others for your income and wanted to earn your own?
6 ... you were a female wanting to share a house with a girl who might become a friend?

58.2 Are you a sleep lover? Fill the gaps in the magazine questionnaire and then answer the questions by ticking the boxes.

The sleep lover survey

1	What time do you normally wake .... ?	☐ 6–7 a.m. ☐ 7–8 a.m. ☐ 8–9 a.m ☐ later
2	Do you feel sleepy if you .... up after midnight?	☐ yes ☐ no
3	Do you have a ....-in at weekends?	☐ always ☐ sometimes ☐ never
4	Would you wait .... if a friend or relative you were putting .... was arriving very late?	☐ yes ☐ no
5	Do you enjoy .... in if you don't have to get up?	☐ yes ☐ no
6	What time do you usually turn .... ?	☐ 9–10 p.m. ☐ 10 p.m.–12 a.m. ☐ later
7	How often do you sleep .... at a friend's house?	☐ often ☐ occasionally ☐ never
8	How often do you not hear your alarm and .... ?	☐ every day ☐ sometimes ☐ never

58.3 Complete these sentences using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1 I'll be late back tonight so please don't bother ....
2 Kate can't afford a hotel so she's asked a friend to ....
3 I need an alarm clock to stop me from ....
4 The removal firm helped us to .... of our old house.
5 I'm really tired. I think I'm going to .... soon.
6 Gordon and Martin already knew each other well before they ....

59

Socialising

A Arranging social gatherings

Read the picture story below and note the phrasal verbs.

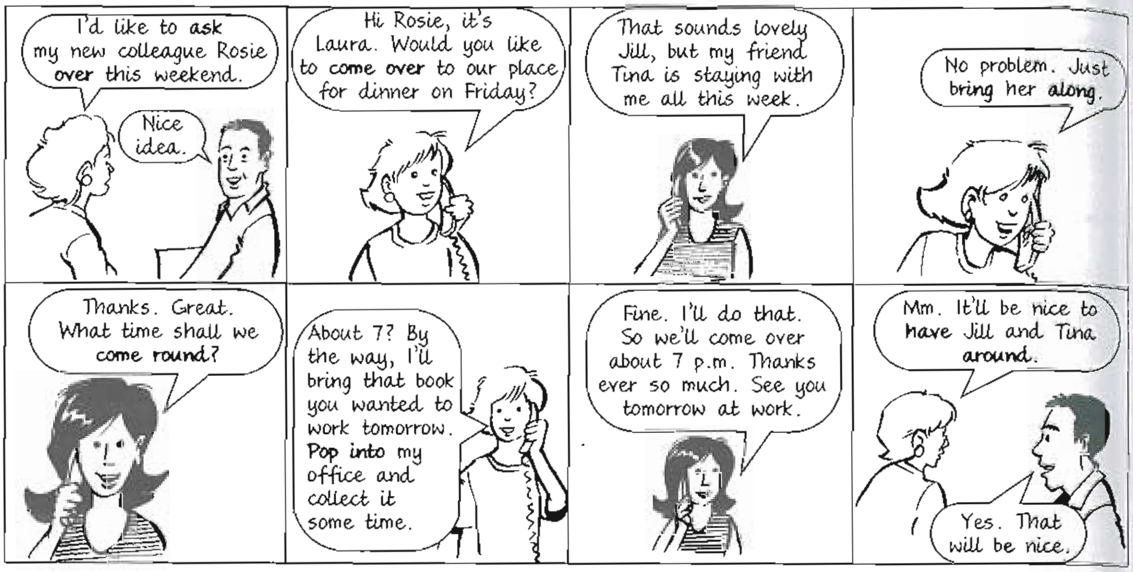
I'd like to ask my new colleague Rosie over this weekend.
Nice idea.
Hi Rosie, it's Laura. Would you like to come over to our place for dinner on Friday?
That sounds lovely Jill, but my friend Tina is staying with me all this week.
No problem. Just bring her along.
Thanks. Great. What time shall we come round?
About 7? By the way, I'll bring that book you wanted to work tomorrow. Pop into my office and collect it some time.
Fine. I'll do that. So we'll come over about 7 p.m. Thanks ever so much. See you tomorrow at work.
Mm. It'll be nice to have Jill and Tina around.
Yes. That will be nice.

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*alternative phrasal verb*
ask sb **over/round**	invite someone to come to your house	**invite** sb **around/ round/over**
come over	visit someone at their house	**come around/round**
bring along sb/sth or **bring** sb/sth **along**	bring someone or something somewhere	
pop in/into	go into a place just for a short time (informal)	
have sb **around/round**	if you have someone around, they come to your house for a social visit	**have** sb **over**

B Other socialising verbs

I met Peter the other day. He was **asking after** you. [ask for information about someone, especially about their health]

I'll **call round** and see Uncle Jim after work today. [visit someone who lives near to you for a short time]

Please **drop in/round** any time – I'm usually at home. [informal: make a short visit to someone in their home, usually without arranging it before]

The boss has **invited** me **out**. I wonder what she wants? [ask someone to go with you to a place, e.g. a restaurant or the cinema]

A: I'll **bring** that CD **round** for you to listen to tomorrow.
B: Great! Could you also **bring round** that book I lent you? [bring someone or something somewhere, especially to someone's house]

Exercises

59.1 Choose one of the phrasal verbs from A to report what Tim says in the sentences below.

EXAMPLE Tim: Would you like to come to the cinema?
He invited me out .

1 Tim: Jane can come with you if you like.
He said I could .... Jane .... if I liked.
2 Tim: You can both come to my place after the film.
He .... us .... after the film.
3 Tim: I'll quickly go to the shop and get some biscuits on the way home.
He said he would .... the shop for some biscuits on the way home.
4 Tim: I love it when people come to visit me.
He said he loved .... people ....
5 Tim: You can borrow that CD I was telling you about if my friend returns it.
He said I could borrow the CD if his friend .... it .... before my party.

59.2 Correct the errors with the particles in these sentences.

1 My parents are always asking over you so I'll tell them your news next time I see them.
2 Do drop out some time when you're passing our house and have a cup of tea.
3 My uncle has invited me and a friend in to a smart restaurant to celebrate my birthday.
4 Of course you can bring your brother with when you come to our place tomorrow.
5 I often call about and see my grandmother on my way home from work.
6 I hope I'm not in trouble. The boss has just asked me to pop about to his office.

59.3 Explain the difference in meaning between these pairs of sentences.

1 a) I've got to pop up and see Bill in his office.
b) I've got to pop down and see Bill in his office.
2 a) It's time I invited Andy and Becky over for a meal.
b) It's time I invited Andy and Becky out for a meal.
3 a) Shall we call round and see Peggy this afternoon?
b) Shall we drop round and see Peggy this afternoon?
4 a) I'll bring my niece round at the weekend.
b) I'll bring my niece along at the weekend.

59.4 Write down four different ways in which you could invite someone to visit you at your place. Use a different phrasal verb each time.

59.5 Here are some more phrasal verbs connected with the theme of socialising. What do you think the phrasal verbs in bold mean? Use a dictionary if necessary.

Kath: Did you enjoy your date with Paul?
Anne: Don't talk to me about Paul! He **stood me up**! I waited there for at least half an hour and then I decided just to go to the cinema on my own. It was really annoying because my sister had wanted to **tag along** but I wouldn't let her and in the end I was all alone. I thought we were going to have this lovely romantic evening! If you **run across** him, you can tell him I'm very annoyed with him!

60 Food and drink

A Preparing food and drink

Martha was having a dinner party for some friends. A few days earlier she had prepared a chicken casserole and put it in the freezer to make sure it did not **go off**[1]. On the morning of the dinner party she removed it from the freezer and **thawed** it **out**[2]. Then before her friends arrived she **put** the chicken **on**[3] and she made a salad. She **heated up**[4] the casserole, making sure that it did not **boil over**[5].

OLIVE OIL ORESSA

[1] become not good to eat because it is too old
[2] let it gradually become warmer so that it was not frozen any more
[3] began to cook food
[4] made it hot
[5] flow over the side of the pan

B Serving food and drink

When her friends arrived, Martha **handed round**[1] olives and other snacks and her boyfriend **poured out**[2] drinks. He went round the room **topping up**[3] glasses whenever he noticed that anyone needed a **top-up**[4]. Then they sat at the table and had the chicken casserole. Everyone said how well it **went with**[5] the salad and nothing **was left over**[6] at the end of the meal.

[1] offered something, especially food and drink, to each person in a group
[2] filled glasses or cups with a drink
[3] putting more drink into someone's glass or cup
[4] (noun) more drink poured into a glass or cup (from the verb top up)
[5] combined or tasted good with
[6] remained or was not eaten

C Styles of eating and drinking

As there were no **leftovers**[1] the next day, Martha decided to get a **takeaway**[2]. She ordered a curry to **take away**[3]. Martha's brother says that she **lives on/off**[4] curry because she eats it so often. Martha denies that, of course, but she admits that if ever she and her boyfriend **eat out**[5] they always go to a curry restaurant.

[1] (noun) food prepared for a previous meal but not eaten
[2] (noun) a meal that you buy and take somewhere else to eat. Takeaway is also the place where you buy a meal like this, e.g. a Chinese takeaway.
[3] buy prepared food in a shop or restaurant and take it somewhere else to eat
[4] only eats a particular type of food
[5] eat a meal in a restaurant not at home

TIP You will find quite a few more phrasal verbs on the food theme if you look at the instructions in a recipe book, e.g. *cut up* an onion, *take off* the skins of the tomatoes, etc. If possible look in an English language recipe book or search for some recipes on the Internet and make a note of any phrasal verbs that you find there.

Exercises

60.1 Look at A and B opposite. Then complete these sentences with an appropriate phrasal verb.

1 Your glass is half-empty. Let me .... it up for you.
2 The pizza's cold. I'll .... it up for you.
3 The chicken's frozen. I'll put it in the microwave to .... it out.
4 When all the guests are here, I'll .... out the champagne.
5 No-one's eating the nuts and crisps. Shall I .... them round?

60.2 Use phrasal verbs from the opposite page to complete the second person's responses.

1 Annie: This milk smells bad.
Philip: Yes, I think ....

2 Erica: We need something to accompany the fish.
Harry: Yes, we need something that will ....

3 Paul: It's time to start cooking the potatoes.
Jane: OK, I'll ....

4 Tanya: We'll have to keep the sauce on a very low heat.
Ricki: Yes, we'll have to make sure it ....

5 Freda: Let's go to a restaurant this evening.
Dave: Good idea. It's ages since we last ....

60.3 Answer the following questions.

1 Three phrasal verbs on the opposite page also have noun forms. What are the verbs and what are their noun forms?
2 In the question, 'Susie, would you pass the biscuits round for me, please?' which phrasal verb on the opposite page means the same as *pass round*?
3 Which two phrasal verbs mean that you regularly eat one type of food to the exclusion of others?

60.4 Complete these sentences with words from exercise 60.3.

1 We've got some nice .... from the party last night. Shall I heat them up?
2 Some people seem to .... junk food. It can't be good for them.
3 Could you .... these snacks to the guests? Thanks. [two answers]
4 Anne would you like a .... ? There's plenty more coffee in the pot.
5 Do you want to eat your food in the restaurant or .... ?
6 The food from the .... was as good as anything we could have cooked at home.
7 Nothing .... at the end of the meal.

60.5 In some of these sentences it is possible to separate the verb and the particle. Where possible, write the alternative sentence.

1 Would you hand round the peanuts, please?
2 I think my sister lives on fish and chips.
3 Don't forget to thaw out the gateau.
4 I don't think that chips go with caviar.

61 Weather

A The weather forecast

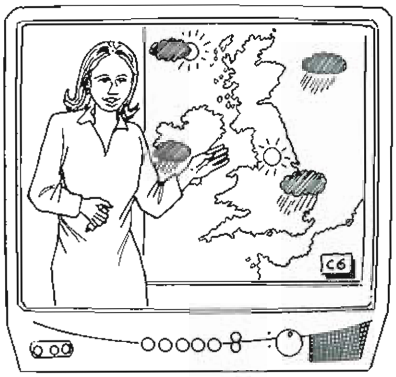

It will **brighten up**[1] in the north of England tomorrow morning, but the sun won't last long and the region will soon **cloud over**[2] again. Rain in the east will **clear up**[3] later. An area of high pressure means it should **warm up**[4] over the next few days in most regions, except in the far north, where it will actually **cool down**[5] a little because of strong north-easterly winds. On the south coast winds will **pick up**[6] during the afternoon, becoming strong by the evening.

[1] the sky will become lighter and the sun will start to shine
[2] the sky will become covered with clouds
[3] it will stop being rainy or cloudy
[4] become warmer
[5] become cooler
[6] become stronger

B Talking about the weather and its effects

Jim is talking about his camping trip to the Scottish mountains.

The weather was dreadful; we were there for a week and the storms just never **let up**[1]. We were **flooded out**[2] twice in our tent and ended up staying in a hostel. It just **poured down**[3] every day – one heavy **downpour**[4] after another. We **were rained off**[5] most days and couldn't do any serious walking. Then one day we thought the storms had **blown over**[6], so we climbed one of the highest peaks in the area. It started to snow. Luckily there was a cabin at the summit, so we took shelter there. We **were snowed in**[7] for two days before we could get out and go back down again. I shall never forget it as long as I live!

[1] stopped or improved
[2] had to leave a home or place because of a flood
[3] rained heavily
[4] (noun) a very heavy period of rain (from the verb **pour down**)
[5] if an outside activity is rained off, it cannot start or continue because it is raining
[6] become less strong and then ended
[7] were unable to leave that place because there was so much snow

TIP

Help yourself to learn phrasal verbs by drawing word diagrams based on one verb, e.g. *pick*, *blow*, or on one topic, e.g. *weather*.

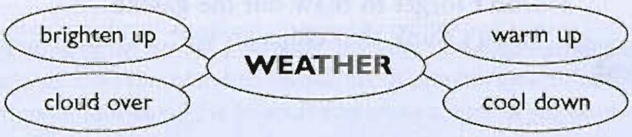

Exercises

61.1 Complete these sentences using one of the phrasal verbs from A. Write the verbs in an appropriate form.

1 There's a lovely blue sky now but unfortunately the forecast says that it's going .... later in the day.
2 I hate it when it's so hot – I wish it would ....
3 Let's go and fly the kite – it'll be fun now the wind ....
4 The sea is quite cool in the mornings but by midday it has usually ....
5 Let's go for a walk this afternoon if the rain ....
6 We could have a picnic this afternoon if the weather ....

61.2 Match the weather situation on the left with the most logical consequence on the right.

1 We were snowed in.	Some trees got blown down.
2 We were flooded out.	The teams were very disappointed.
3 The rain didn't let up.	All our carpets were ruined.
4 It cleared up later on.	We couldn't even open the front door.
5 A strong wind picked up.	We ate our picnic in the car.
6 The match was rained off.	We went for a walk in the evening.

61.3 Complete these sentences with a noun or phrasal verb from the opposite page.

1 It rained heavily all day. I've never seen such a ....
2 It's been pouring down all day. I wish it would ....
3 If the river breaks its banks the villagers will be ....
4 No-one left their homes until the hurricane ....
5 Because of the storms, a number of football matches ....
6 It's too gloomy to take good photos now. Why don't you wait until it .... ?
7 It's very hot there in summer – even at night it doesn't ....
8 It's been terribly cold but they have promised that it will .... next week.

61.4 Some of the phrasal verbs on the opposite page can be used in a metaphorical way. Try to work out the metaphorical meanings and answer these questions.

1 If Joan is brightening up a bit, is her mood getting more or less cheerful?
2 Would you suggest that someone should cool down if they are angry or if they are sad?
3 If an argument or scandal blows over, does it start or finish?
4 If an illness clears up, does it get better or worse?
5 If a party warms up, does it get more or less enjoyable?
6 If someone's face clouds over, do they start to look worried or happy?

FOLLOW UP

Write a paragraph about the weather you have experienced recently. Use as many as possible of the words presented on the opposite page.

62 Travel

A Going on a journey

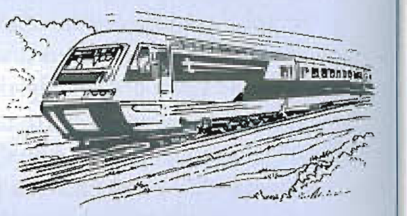

Matthew had had a busy time at work so he was glad to get away[1] from London for a month's holiday. He set off/out[2] last Saturday. His journey really started off[3] at Waterloo Station when he got on[4] the Eurostar train to Paris. He was heading for a villa in the south of France but was planning to stop off[5] in Paris for a couple of days before continuing south.

[1] go somewhere for a holiday, especially when you need a rest
[2] started his journey
[3] began
[4] boarded
[5] visit for a short time when on the way somewhere else

B Travel in general

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
check in	arrive at a hotel, say who you are and be given a key for your room	You go to reception and **check in** while I park the car.
check out	leave a hotel after paying and giving back the key of your room	I went to the hotel hoping to meet Sam but he had already **checked out**.
get in	(of a train, bus, plane, etc.) arrive at a particular time	My train **got in** at 6.30 p.m.
pull in	(of a train) arrive in a station	The train **pulled in** exactly on time.
pull out	(of a train) leave a station	Unfortunately, the train I'd hoped to catch was **pulling out** just as I arrived on the platform.

C Air travel

Louise was lucky enough to get a **standby**[1] to New Zealand last week. There weren't many people on the flight so she **checked in**[2] quickly. The flight **took off**[3] on time and **touched down**[4] half an hour early. On her way home she is hoping to be able to **stop over**[5] in Hong Kong for a day or two.

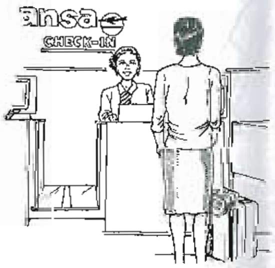

[1] (noun) cheap ticket for a flight which you buy just before the flight if seats are available
[2] showed her ticket at the official desk (the check-in) so she could be given a boarding card
[3] began to fly
[4] landed on the ground
[5] stop somewhere for a period of time when you are on a long journey

Exercises

62.1 Write sentences that mean the opposite of the sentences below, using verbs from A.

1 Jack arrived home last Sunday.
2 Jill got off the plane in Dubai.
3 My journey ended in a very exciting way.

62.2 Fill the gaps in this Internet chat session between Charlie and her friend Lin.

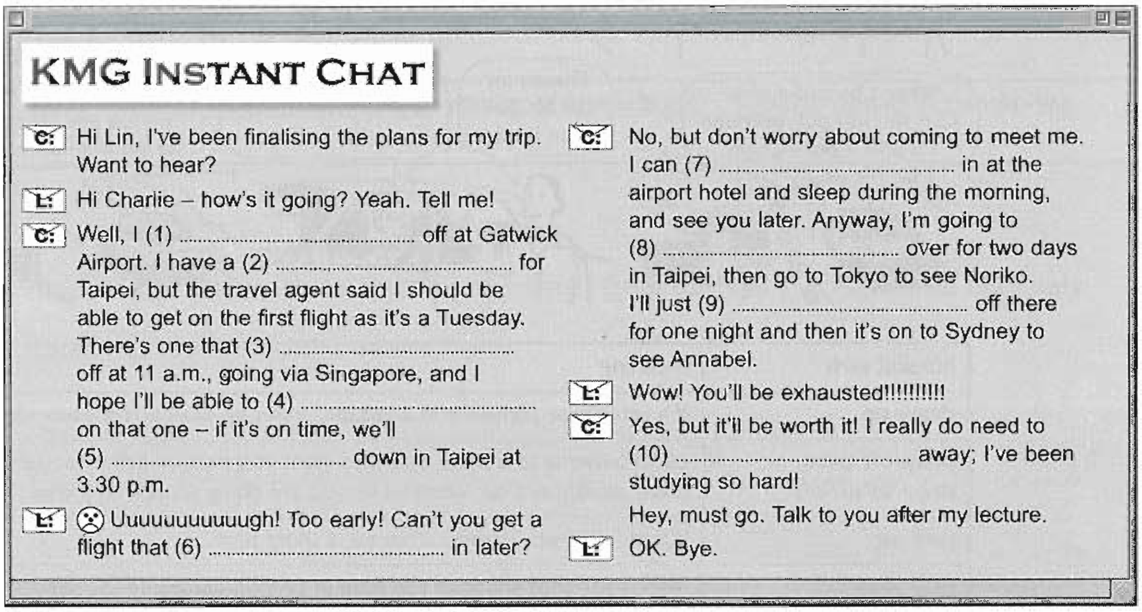

KMG INSTANT CHAT

C: Hi Lin, I've been finalising the plans for my trip. Want to hear?

L: Hi Charlie – how's it going? Yeah. Tell me!

C: Well, I (1) .... off at Gatwick Airport. I have a (2) .... for Taipei, but the travel agent said I should be able to get on the first flight as it's a Tuesday. There's one that (3) .... off at 11 a.m., going via Singapore, and I hope I'll be able to (4) .... on that one – if it's on time, we'll (5) .... down in Taipei at 3.30 p.m.

L: ☹ Uuuuuuuuuuugh! Too early! Can't you get a flight that (6) .... in later?

C: No, but don't worry about coming to meet me. I can (7) .... in at the airport hotel and sleep during the morning, and see you later. Anyway, I'm going to (8) .... over for two days in Taipei, then go to Tokyo to see Noriko. I'll just (9) .... off there for one night and then it's on to Sydney to see Annabel.

L: Wow! You'll be exhausted!!!!!!!!!

C: Yes, but it'll be worth it! I really do need to (10) .... away; I've been studying so hard! Hey, must go. Talk to you after my lecture.

L: OK. Bye.

62.3 The phrasal verbs below have noun or adjective forms. Complete the table and write an example sentence for each noun or adjective form. Use a dictionary if necessary.

phrasal verb	*noun/adjective form*	*example*
touch down		
check in		
get away		
take off		
stop over		

62.4 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in this text. There are six mistakes in total.

I went off for Waterloo Station at 11 a.m. and there I got up the midday Eurostar train to Paris. It pulled off exactly on time and soon we were in the Channel Tunnel. After a couple of hours we pulled over at Paris Gare du Nord station. Next day I checked off from my hotel and flew back. We touched in at Heathrow Airport at 11 a.m.

63 Driving

A Stopping to do things

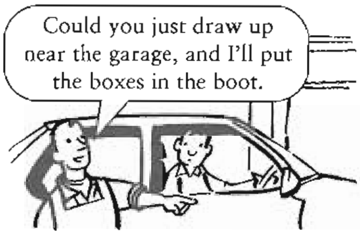
Could you just draw up near the garage, and I'll put the boxes in the boot.

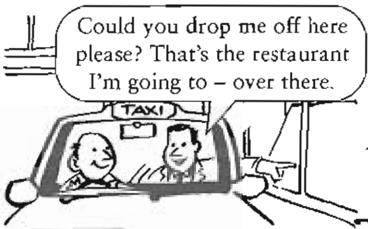
Could you drop me off here please? That's the restaurant I'm going to – over there.
TAXI

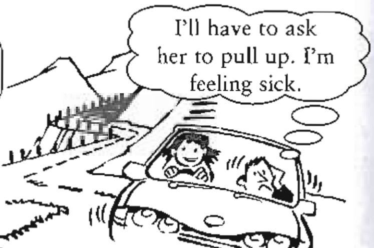
I'll have to ask her to pull up. I'm feeling sick.

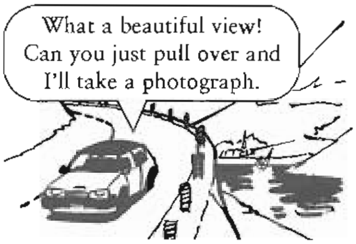
What a beautiful view! Can you just pull over and I'll take a photograph.

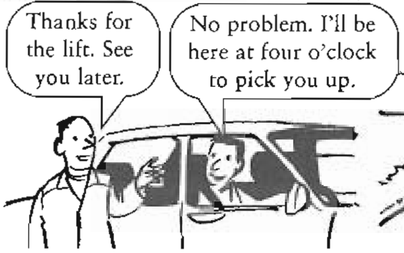
Thanks for the lift. See you later.
No problem. I'll be here at four o'clock to pick you up.

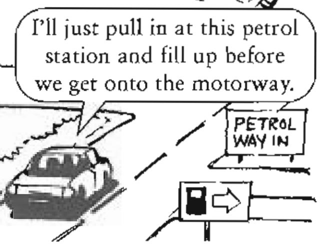
I'll just pull in at this petrol station and fill up before we get onto the motorway.
PETROL WAY IN

phrasal verb	*meaning*
draw up	If a vehicle, or someone in a vehicle, draws up, they arrive somewhere and stop.
drop off sb/sth or **drop** sb/sth **off**	take someone to a place that they want to go to, or deliver something to a place, usually in a car, often when you are going somewhere else
pull up	If a car pulls up, it stops, often for a short time.
pull over	drive a car to the side of the road in order to stop
pick up sth/sb or **pick** sth/sb **up**	to collect someone who is waiting for you, or to collect something you have left somewhere or that you have bought
pull in or **pull into** somewhere	If a car pulls in or pulls into a place, it moves to the side of the road or to another place where it can stop.

B Driving problems

Police said the van had **pulled out**[1] to overtake a lorry when the van driver lost control and crashed into the central barrier of the motorway.

[1] driven out of the traffic lane it was in and entered a faster lane or the other side of the road

An elderly man was **run over**[3] at the corner of Pierce Street and Welbourne Avenue. He was taken to Hughes Hospital suffering from head injuries.

[3] hit by a vehicle and driven over, injuring or killing him

Two children were **knocked down**[2] by a drunken driver. Both children were seriously injured and police have arrested the driver.

[2] hit by a vehicle and injured or killed

A **pile-up**[4] involving twenty vehicles caused a 10-mile **tailback**[5] on the M12 motorway today. Police blamed fog and black ice.

[4] (noun) crash involving several vehicles

[5] (noun) long line of traffic that is moving very slowly

Exercises

63.1 **Complete these sentences using phrasal verbs from A. Write the verbs in the appropriate form.**

1 If you .... in the next lay-by, we can have a short break.
2 If you'd like a lift to the party I could .... on my way there and then I can easily .... on my way home afterwards.
3 I had been waiting for at least half an hour before a bus eventually ....
4 I was looking out of the window when Rose's taxi .... outside our gate.

63.2 **Write the phrasal verb expressions presented on the opposite page into one of these categories.**

words relating to moving and stopping the car	*words relating to accidents and traffic problems*	*words relating to transporting other people*

63.3 **Complete this letter with an appropriate particle from the box. Use each word once only.**

back in off out over up

Dear Diana,

Thank you for the lovely day we had with you. It was so kind of you to let us bring Anne's friend, Gina. Unfortunately, the only problem was the journey home. There had been a terrible pile-................................ (1) on the motorway and, as a result, there was a tail................................ (2) for at least six miles. In the end, we pulled .... (3) at a service station and waited there until it cleared. In the car park there Gina nearly got knocked .... (4) as a car pulled .... (5) far too quickly from behind a parked lorry. We were very relieved when we finally dropped Gina .... (6) at her parents' and made our own way home.

Much love,

Fiona

63.4 **Here are some more phrasal verbs and nouns connected with driving. Match the words in bold 1–6 with the definitions a–f.**

1 To get to the farm take the second **turn-off** on the left after the crossroads.
2 The car left the main road and **turned off** down a narrow track.
3 The car was **written off** in the accident.
4 The insurance company agreed that the car was a **write-off**.
5 You **get out of** the car here and I'll find a parking spot and then meet you in the café.
6 Ian broke his arm when he fell off his bike after **running into** a lamp post.

a) leave a vehicle
b) damage a vehicle so badly that it cannot be repaired
c) accidentally hit something while driving a vehicle
d) leave the road you are on to travel along another one
e) road that goes off another road
f) vehicle that is not worth repairing after an accident

64 Technology

A Electricity

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
switch/turn on sth or **switch/turn** sth **on**	touch a switch to make a machine or electrical device start working	When I tried to **switch/turn on** my computer in the morning, nothing happened.
switch/turn off sth or **switch/turn** sth **off**	touch a switch to make an electrical device stop working	Would the last person to leave the room please **switch/turn off** the lights.
plug in sth or **plug** sth **in** or **plug** sth **into** sth	connect to an electricity supply	The computer isn't working because you haven't **plugged** it **in**! You can **plug** it **into** the wall there.
turn up sth or **turn** sth **up**	make louder or stronger	Can you **turn up** the TV – I can hardly hear what the actors are saying.
charge up sth or **charge** sth **up**	put electricity into a piece of equipment	My mobile phone isn't working – I need to **charge** it **up**.
go off	make a loud noise, e.g. an alarm clock or a burglar alarm	The car alarm **went off** in the middle of the night, waking all the neighbours.
cut out	suddenly stop working, e.g. a machine or engine	The pilot's radio **cut out** as the plane was flying over the Himalayas.

B Doing technical things

All the following verbs may have their object either before or after the particle, e.g. *pump tyres up* or *pump up tyres*.

Joe's **pumping up** his tyres.

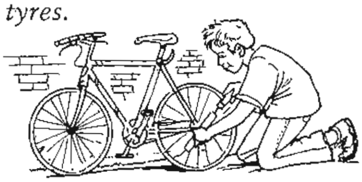

Len is at the photocopier **running off** twenty copies of the agenda for the meeting.

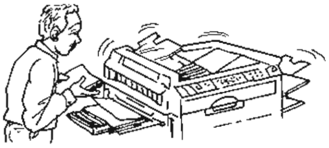

Emma is **loading up** the washing machine.

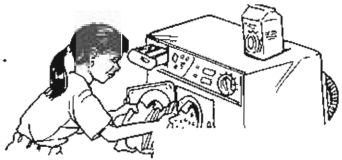

Marco videoed a film last night and is now **playing** it **back**.

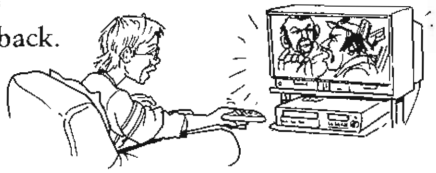

Paula is **measuring out** 100 grams of sugar.

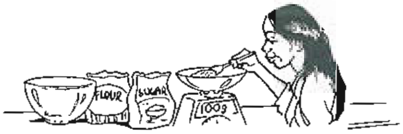

Exercises

64.1 Look at these instructions for using a personal digital organiser. Complete the instructions, using phrasal verbs from A.

1 Remove computer from packaging. Do not .... the computer on at this point.

2 Insert the power cable as shown and .... the unit into an electrical supply.

3 If the screen illuminates, ... off the computer using the 'on/off' button.

4 Allow the battery to .... up for at least 12 hours.

5 The screen brightness can be controlled using the screen button. .... up the brightness by pressing the button till the desired level is reached.

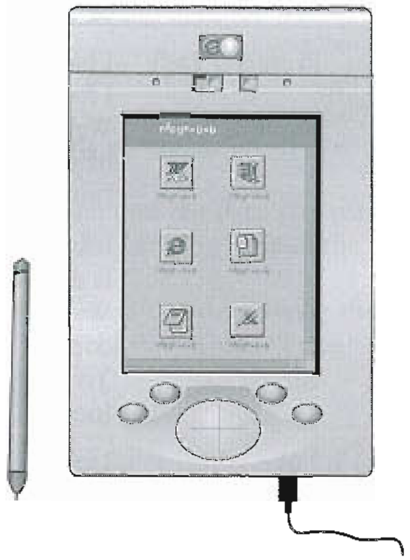

64.2 Rewrite the underlined words, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1 I'll put all the things to be washed up in the dishwasher for you.
2 Press the 'play' button so we can listen to that tape you recorded at the concert.
3 The mechanic put some air into the tyres while he was servicing the car.
4 The security alarm began to ring accidentally when we opened the door to the office.
5 I was driving up a steep hill when the engine suddenly stopped working.
6 Could you produce thirty copies of this report for the meeting, please?
7 We've just bought a breadmaking machine. All you do is weigh and pour the exact amounts of all the ingredients, put them in the machine and switch it on.
8 Don't switch on the vacuum cleaner until it is connected to the electricity supply.

64.3 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.

1 I couldn't hear what they were saying on the radio so I turned it down.
2 What must we do when goes the alarm bell off?
3 My mobile is low. Can I charge up it here?
4 Could you help me, please, by filling up the washing machine?
5 It's very dark in here – do switch off the light.
6 Mel asked him to measure off 250 grams of butter.

FOLLOW UP Look at the instructions for any electrical device you have, e.g. a mobile phone, a DVD player. If there is an instruction section in English, compare it with the section in your own language and make sure you understand any phrasal verbs you find.

65 Computers

A Working with files or documents

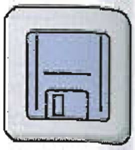

Ron: It would be a disaster if I lost all this work I've done.
Martin: Well, you should **back** your work **up** every day [make a copy of computer information so that you do not lose it]. I keep a **back**-up of important files on floppies or a CD-ROM [noun: extra copy for safety].

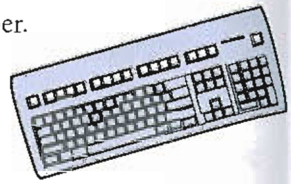

Professor Dell: I have to put all these statistics into my research paper. I hate typing figures; I'm so slow.
Rana: Well, why don't you save time and pay one of your students to **type/key** them **in**? [put information into a computer using a keyboard]

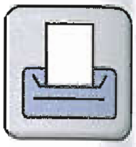

Kirsty: I find it difficult to read my work on screen. It doesn't seem real somehow.
Trevor: Well, why don't you **print** it **out**? [produce a printed copy of a document that has been written on a computer]
Kirsty: Yes, I always find it easier to read a **printout** myself. [noun: printed copy of an electronic document]

Luke: I can't see the detail on this picture file, it's too small.
Anne: No problem. You can just **zoom in** by clicking on this icon here [show a clear and detailed picture of something]. And then you can just **zoom out** [show something in less detail] by clicking on this little icon here.

Note that with the verbs *back up*, *type in*, *key in* and *print out*, the object can go either before or after the particle, e.g. *back a file up* or *back up a file*.

B Using a network and the Internet

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
log in/on	put your name into a computer so that you can start using it	You can **log on/in** using my password if you want to use the computer.
log off/out	finish using a computer system	Don't forget to **log off/out** when you've finished.
hack into sth	get into someone else's computer system without permission in order to look at information or do something illegal	Someone **hacked into** the computers at work and destroyed important data.
pick up sth or **pick** sth **up**	connect to the Internet and access e-mails	I'll take my laptop so I should be able to **pick up** my e-mails while I'm away.
scroll across/down/up (sth)	move across/down/up a web page or other document on a computer screen	**Scroll up** to the top of the page.

TIP

Many websites are in English. Next time you visit a website, note down any phrasal verbs that are used on the web pages, e.g. ***check out** our new products*.

Exercises

65.1 Imagine that you are writing a report on a computer in your office or college. Write the things from the box below in the order in which you would do them.

back up your work   log off   key in your report   log on   print out your work

65.2 Complete each of these sentences, using a phrasal verb expression from the opposite page.

1 If you find it hard to see the detail in the picture, ... so you can see more. Then click on the same icon again to .... and the picture will go back to normal size.
2 Although I'll be working away from the office for a couple of weeks, I'll still be .... my e-mails every day.
3 If you .... to the bottom of the page, you'll find the data you want.
4 I .... to this brilliant new website last night. Let me give you the address so that you can check it out.
5 On these disks you'll find a .... of all the data connected with the project.
6 Do you think you could let me have a .... of that screen? I don't have the time to write down all the details.

65.3 Choose the correct word to complete these sentences.

1 Joe was very upset when he realised that someone had hacked .... his computer.
a) off   b) on   c) into   d) out
2 For security reasons, always log .... when you leave your computer unattended for any period of time.
a) on   b) in   c) out   d) up
3 My secretary is very quick at keying .... data.
a) onto   b) on   c) into   d) in
4 It took ages to print the whole report ....
a) out   b) down   c) up   d) in
5 The ability to zoom .... is particularly useful when you are working on detailed diagrams.
a) out   b) in   c) up   d) on
6 Larry went into a cybercafé in Bangkok to pick .... his e-mails.
a) out   b) on   c) off   d) up

65.4 Explain when you would want to click on these icons.

1
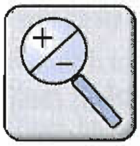
2
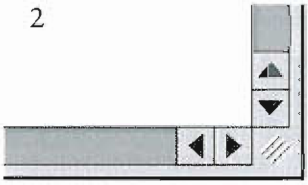
3
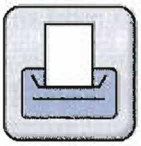
4
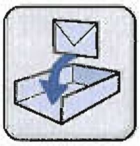

66 News

A

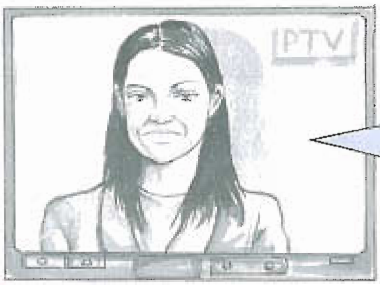

Violence **flared up**[1] again today in the troubled mountainous state of Phrasalia when several bombs **went off**[2] in the centre of the capital, Verbosa. Support for the rebels is growing and it is expected that the rebels will succeed in **bringing down**[3] a government that is increasingly unpopular. There are fears that a full-scale civil war may **break out**[4].

[1] suddenly happened and became serious (used about something negative like violence, anger or an argument)

[2] exploded

[3] causing people in power to lose their position

[4] suddenly start, usually used about something dangerous and unpleasant like war, fire or disease (noun = **outbreak**)

B

Slimming **breakthrough**[1]

NEWS **leaked out**[2] yesterday that a major US pharmaceutical laboratory is about to launch a dramatic new slimming drug. The lab was in discussions last year with a British company about the manufacture of the drug, but the British company **pulled out**[3] after a disagreement about safety procedures. A French company also **broke off**[4] talks with the lab last month.

[1] (noun) an important discovery or success that enables you to achieve or deal with something

[2] became public so that people who should not have known about something learn of it

[3] stopped being involved

[4] ended suddenly before they had been completed

C

A SURVEY published today reveals that the number of accidents caused by cars driving too fast has **shot up**[1] in the last couple of years. A government spokesperson said that they are determined to **crack down**[2] on any driver caught exceeding the speed limit. Police have been promised financial support to enable them to **step up**[3] all possible measures to make motorists reduce their speed.

[1] increased very quickly

[2] treat people more strictly in order to try to stop them doing things they should not do (noun = **crackdown**)

[3] do more of something, usually in order to improve a situation

D

JAIL **BREAKOUT**[1] ALARMS VILLAGERS

A DANGEROUS prisoner who escaped from Kenton Prison last night is causing alarm among local residents. It is thought that the escaped convict may have found a **hideaway**[2] not far from the prison and police have encouraged the inhabitants of nearby villages to **look out for**[3] anything suspicious.

[1] (noun) escape (from the verb **break out**)

[2] (noun) secret place where someone goes to be alone

[3] carefully watch people or things around you so that you will notice a particular person or thing

Exercises

66.1 Look at these news headlines then answer the questions below by ticking the correct box.

TOP SECRET DEFENCE REPORT LEAKS OUT

PHRASALIAN GOVERNMENT BROUGHT DOWN BY ARMS SCANDAL

POLICE TO CRACK DOWN ON MOBILE PHONE THIEVES

Violence flares up in Hirada

SWEDEN PULLS OUT OF TRADE AGREEMENT

TERRORIST HIDEAWAY RAIDED BY SPECIAL FORCES

1 There has been a huge fire in the city of Hirada. true ☐ false ☐
2 A terrorist hiding place has been attacked by troops. true ☐ false ☐
3 A government has collapsed because of a scandal. true ☐ false ☐
4 A top secret report has been published. true ☐ false ☐
5 Sweden has gained huge benefits from a trade agreement. true ☐ false ☐
6 The police will take a hard attitude to mobile phone thieves. true ☐ false ☐

66.2 In this unit there are a number of phrasal verbs which have noun forms. Complete the table below. Use a dictionary if necessary.

phrasal verb	*noun form*
	crackdown
break out (from prison)	
break out (war, disease, etc.)	
break through	
	hideaway
flare up	
look out for	

66.3 Here are some short extracts from newspapers. Complete what you would tell a friend who has not read the extract, using phrasal verb expressions from the opposite page.

1 A bomb exploded in the capital last night, injuring six people.
You: Hey did you read that? A bomb ....
2 Riots have erupted between the Northern tribes and the Southern League.
You: Did you read that? Riots ....
3 The Phrasalian rebels are beginning to increase their attacks on military bases.
You: Did you see that? The Phrasalian ....
4 The teachers' union has suddenly ended talks with local government officials.
You: Have you heard? The teachers' ....
5 Villagers have been advised by police to keep their eyes open for anything suspicious.
You: The police are advising villagers to ....
6 Five prisoners have escaped from Gilston High Security Prison.
You: Wow! There's been a ....

67 Crime

A Crime reports in newspapers

Here are some people telling others about things they have just read in the newspaper. Look at the phrasal verbs they use to explain what happened.

SECURITY GUARD ATTACKED

A security guard at an electronics factory was attacked and badly injured by thieves last night. They punched him and kicked him …

Gosh! A security guard was **beaten up** at that electronics factory last night. Terrible!

£30K JEWEL ROBBERY

Thieves entered a town-centre jewellery store by force last night and stole £30,000 worth of jewels and watches …

Did you hear? Somebody **broke into** that jewellery shop in the town centre last night and stole £30,000 worth of stuff.

PRISONERS ESCAPE

Three prisoners escaped from the Holton Maximum Security Prison this morning. Police are searching a wide …

Hey! Three prisoners have **broken out of** Holton Jail. We'd better lock all our doors tonight!

SCHOOL COMPUTERS STOLEN

Two men persuaded a teacher at Stanbridge School yesterday that they were collecting six computers for repair and maintenance. They took them away, but it later became clear they were thieves.

Wow! Did you hear that? Two guys **walked off with** six computers from a school yesterday in broad daylight!

B Other verbs connected with crime

If you …	*then you …*
hold up sth/sb or **hold** sth/sb **up**	steal money from a building, person or vehicle, by using violence or by threatening to use it
tip off sb or **tip** sb **off**	warn someone secretly about something that will happen so that they can take action or prevent it from happening
put sb **up to** sth	encourage someone to do something stupid or wrong
take in sb or **take** sb **in**	deceive someone or make them believe something that is not true
lead on sb or **lead** sb **on**	make someone believe something that is not true, especially to make them do something they don't really want to do
let off sb or **let** sb **off**	do not punish someone who has committed a crime or done something wrong, or do not punish someone severely
lean on sb	try to make someone do something by threatening or persuading them (informal)
are or **get mixed up in** sth	are or become involved in an illegal or bad activity

Exercises

67.1 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 An old man was beaten
2 The thieves walked
3 The burglars broke
4 The prisoner managed to break
5 The thieves held

into the house by a side window.
up a local bank yesterday.
off with some priceless antique silver.
up in his own home yesterday.
out in broad daylight.

67.2 Describe what each speaker is doing, using one of the phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1
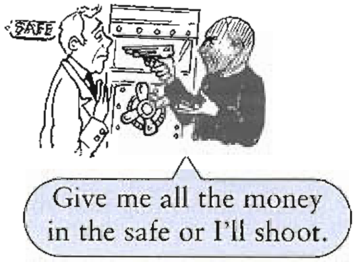
SAFE
Give me all the money in the safe or I'll shoot.

3
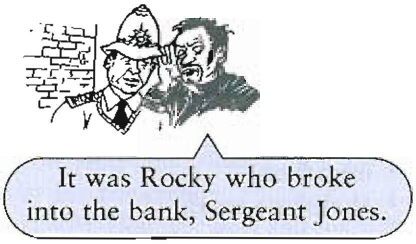
It was Rocky who broke into the bank, Sergeant Jones.

2
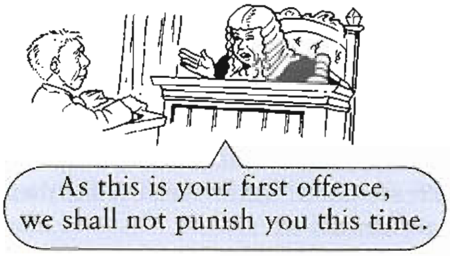
As this is your first offence, we shall not punish you this time.

4
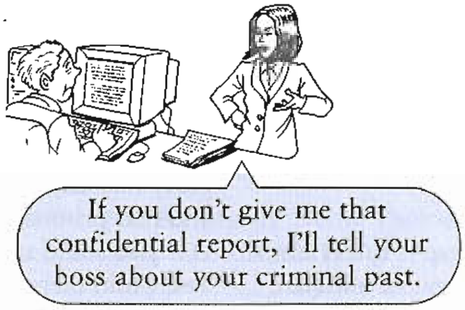
If you don't give me that confidential report, I'll tell your boss about your criminal past.

67.3 Complete these dialogues using phrasal verbs.

Mandy: I suspect that young neighbour of ours has got (1) .... in something illegal.

Rose: Yes, I was beginning to think that too. He spends a lot of time with rather suspicious-looking people and I think they may be (2) .... to doing some dishonest things.

Mandy: Well, I suppose they could (3) .... him by threatening him if he refuses to help them.

Rose: Or he might just not realise what's happening. He was always very easily (4) .... by people.

Mandy: Well, if he does end up in court, I suppose they might (5) .... lightly as he's never been involved in crime before.

67.4 Here are some newspaper headlines using noun forms of phrasal verbs presented on the opposite page. Match each headline 1–4 to the first sentence of its article a–d.

1 HOLD-UP AT BANK – $10,000 STOLEN
2 **TIP-OFF LEADS TO ARREST**
3 **TEN BREAK-INS IN ONE NIGHT**
4 THIRD BREAKOUT THIS YEAR

a) Oddways Prison is clearly not as secure as it is supposed to be.
b) Police are extremely grateful to an anonymous caller who rang them last night.
c) Terrified staff were held at gunpoint at the National Bank on Brown Street yesterday.
d) A series of burglaries was reported in Brook Street and adjoining roads last night.

68 Power and authority

A The start of a political career

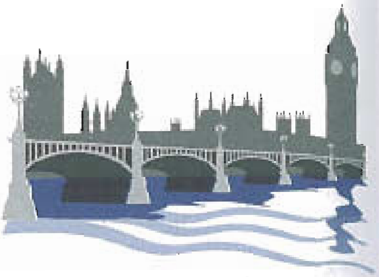

Interviewer: Why did you decide to **stand for**[1] Parliament?

Politician: Well, I'd been a social worker for a number of years and that had opened my eyes to the huge social divisions in this country. I firmly believed that these were wrong. I wanted to help **bring in**[2] laws that would lessen the divisions between the rich and the poor. I wanted to **do away with**[3] taxes for the poorest members of society and to **clamp down**[4] on rich people who were attempting to avoid paying tax. In short, I wanted to do everything I could to **stand up for**[5] the principles that I believed in.

[1] compete in an election for an official position

[2] introduce

[3] abolish or get rid of

[4] do something to stop or limit a particular activity (noun = **clampdown**)

[5] defend something that you believe is important

B Life in Parliament

Interviewer: So, once you were elected, how did you **go ahead**[1] with your plans for social change?

Politician: Well, although some other Members of Parliament from my party **backed** me **up**[2], the more influential ones told me not to be too hasty. I learnt then that our party had **entered into**[3] an agreement with the country's top business leaders and had promised not to increase taxes for the wealthy for the time being.

Interviewer: Did you **stand up to**[4] those influential MPs?

Politician: Yes, I told them I was not in Parliament to **carry out**[5] the wishes of big business.

[1] start to do something (noun = **go-ahead**: permission for something to start)

[2] supported

[3] officially agreed to do something

[4] state opinions forcefully and refuse to change your mind or do what others want

[5] do something you have been told to do

C Forming a new party

Interviewer: Did other MPs in your party still **stand by**[1] you at this point?

Politician: Not all of them, but a few very good people did **stick by**[2] me and we eventually decided to **break away**[3] and form our own new party.

Interviewer: So, what happened next?

Politician: Unfortunately, none of us were re-elected at the next election but we have been continuing with our campaigns and hope that at some point in the not too distant future we may be able to **carry out**[4] our plans to make society a better and fairer place.

[1] continue to support

[2] continue to support

[3] stop being part of a group because you disagree with them or do not want to be controlled by them

[4] do something that you have said you will do

TIP See if you can find any more phrasal verbs relating to this theme by looking at newspaper articles about political issues.

Exercises

68.1 Look at these entries from *Who's Who in Politics?*, a book that gives biographical details about politicians. Complete the entries, using verbs from the box. Write the verbs in the correct form.

break enter stand carry stick clamp bring stand

1 **Drummond, Patricia** First .... for Parliament in 1992 election but was defeated. Elected in 1996 as MP for Sandford East. In 2002, introduced a bill in Parliament to .... down on street crime. Hobbies: badminton and judo.

2 **Dursland, Roger** Elected to Parliament in 1988. MP for Hosely West. In 1991, with five other conservatives, he .... away from his party and formed the New Progressive Conservative Party (NPCP). In 2001, NPCP, under his leadership .... into discussions to merge with the Family Values Party (FVP). Hobbies: golf and fox-hunting.

3 **Eadland, Randolph-Quincy-Brough** Elected to Parliament in 1983. MP for Chingwhale and Mudslappe. Member of the group which .... out the 1997 rebellion against party leader Hngh Nonwit. Has attempted three times to .... in legislation banning pigeon-racing. Hobbies: sailing and poetry.

4 **Entwhistle, Lorna-May** Elected to Parliament in 1992. MP for Mickly North. Famous for publicly .... up to party leader Kenneth Drake in 1997 and being suspended from the Labour Party for six months. Known for .... by her colleagues, whatever the price. Hobbies: rambling, painting and theatre.

68.2 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these political interviews.

1 Interviewer: Will your party now change its mind about its tax plans?
Politician: No, we are determined to go towards with our proposals.
2 Interviewer: So, what will happen to the present committee structure?
Politician: We intend to do up with out-of-date committees and to modernise the whole committee structure to make it more efficient.
3 Interviewer: Do you think Ms Reiner should now resign?
Politician: No, I do not. I and her many supporters are determined to stick on her in the face of these appalling and unfair attacks from the press.
4 Interviewer: Did Mr Carson's remarks yesterday represent party policy?
Politician: Yes, the party fully backs Mr Carson across.

68.3 Rewrite each sentence, replacing the underlined word with a phrasal verb expression based on the word in brackets.

1 The People's Purple Party believes that the monarchy should be abolished. (DO)
2 The PPP aims to introduce legislation banning fox hunting. (BRING)
3 The PPP is determined to restrict smoking in public places. (CLAMP)
4 The leader of the PPP says nothing will stop the Party fulfilling its aims (CARRY)
5 He swears he will do all he can to defend the principles the PPP supports. (STAND)
6 The PPP has got the permission to hold a demonstration next week. (GO)

69 American and Australian phrasal verbs

Most phrasal verbs are used in all the countries where English is the main language. However as English has developed in different countries some phrasal verbs have emerged with regional meanings. The distinctions between regional varieties of phrasal verbs are not clear-cut. In some parts of North America or Australia, UK phrasal verb equivalents are heard as frequently as their regional variations. Similarly, many phrasal verbs originating in the US or Australia are spreading to the UK through films and TV programmes.

A North America

Here are some phrasal verbs more frequently used in North American varieties of English.

US verb	*UK equivalent*	*meaning*	*example*
bawl out	tell off	speak angrily to someone	The boss **bawled** Jack **out** for for losing the deal.
call around	phone/ring round	telephone several people, often in order to find out information (in UK English *call around* usually means to visit someone)	I'll **call around** and see if I can get a good price.
figure out	suss out or work out	find the solution to a problem or the answer to something	Let's try to **figure out** how much I owe you.
goof off	mess about/ around	behave stupidly or to waste time doing unimportant things	Tom spent too much time **goofing off** and failed his exams.
wash up	freshen up	clean your hands and face with soap and water (in UK English *wash up* means to wash the dishes)	I'm sure you'd like to **wash up** after your journey.

US English sometimes adds a particle where UK English would use the verb on its own. For example, an American might say **Wait up!** or **Listen up!** rather than **Wait!** or **Listen!** These are used mainly as imperatives and the *up* emphasises the idea that the speaker is giving a command. Americans can also **visit with** friends or **meet with** colleagues, whereas a British speaker would just **visit** or meet them.

B Australia

Here are some phrasal verbs which are typical of Australian English.

Australian verb	*UK equivalent*	*meaning*	*example*
barrack for	cheer for	give support to a team or person	I'll be **barracking for** you in the competition tomorrow.
belt into	throw yourself into	begin to do something quickly and with a lot of effort	We just **belted into** the job and got it finished in an hour.
get into	lay into	criticise	She really **got into** me. I didn't think I deserved so much criticism.
shoot through	do a runner	leave a place suddenly and often secretly	He's not here any more. He **shot through** a couple of days ago.

Exercises

69.1 **Match the questions on the left with the most likely American English replies on the right.**

1 Would you like to wash up?	Dunno. I can't figure out why it's not working.
2 What's wrong with the TV?	To visit with some friends.
3 Why is she so upset?	Dunno. I'll call around a few places.
4 Where will you buy your new TV?	Because I goofed off so much.
5 Where's Jo gone?	Her parents have just bawled her out.
6 Why d'you think you failed the test?	Sure. Where's the restroom?

69.2 **Complete these things an Australian might say, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.**

1 Cheryl is very upset because Lance has .... just before their wedding.
2 Joeline really .... Mel for leaving the flat in such a mess.
3 Bruce tends to .... a job without thinking it through first.
4 Have you decided who you're going to .... in the game tomorrow?

69.3 **Here are some things that British people might say. Write what an American or an Australian might say instead.**

1 I expect your grandmother will want to freshen up when she arrives.
American: ....
2 The teacher laid into me for doing such a bad essay.
Australian: ....
3 Will lost his job for skiving off to go to a concert.
American: ....
4 Suzie threw herself into the spring cleaning and the house was soon transformed.
Australian: ....
5 Could you phone around to find the cheapest place to rent a car?
American: ....
6 I can't work out why he's behaving so oddly.
American: ....
7 He did a runner last month and the police have been looking for him ever since.
Australian: ....
8 I'll be ready soon. Wait!
American: ....
9 I'm visiting my aunt at the weekend. Would you like to come too?
American: ....

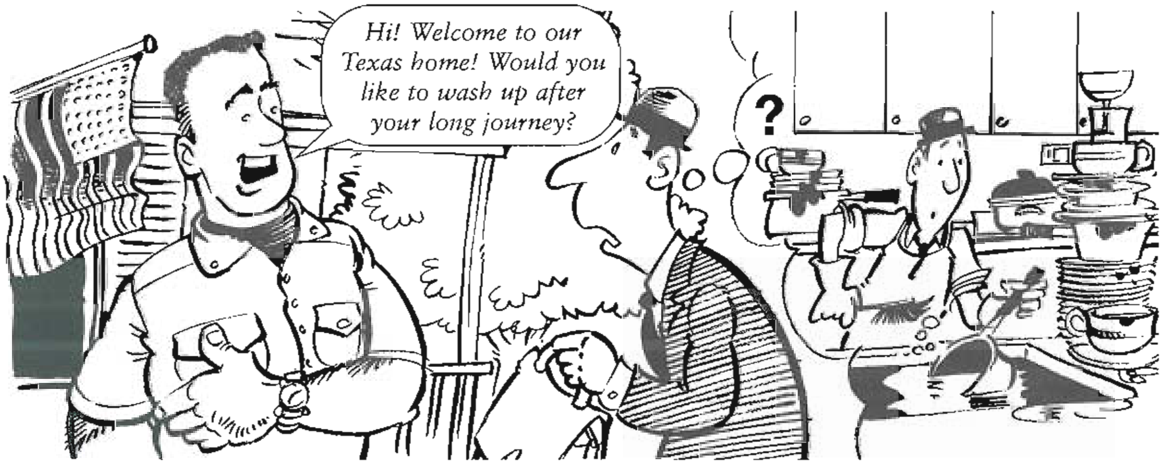
Hi! Welcome to our Texas home! Would you like to wash up after your long journey?
?

70 New phrasal verbs

Many new phrasal verbs are invented in English every year. Some are invented because of social change and the need to develop words to describe new phenomena. These new phrasal verbs are particularly common in informal language and are frequently used by the media and young people so as to sound up-to-date and lively.

A New phrasal verbs particularly used by the media and young people

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
be partied out	have had enough of parties because you have been to so many	After a whole week of birthday celebrations, I feel totally **partied out**!
big up sth or **big** sth **up**	praise something very highly	He **bigged up** that new film but when I went to see it I was really disappointed.
bliss out (often + **on**)	become or make someone become totally happy and relaxed	They **blissed out** on music.
buy into sth	completely believe in a set of ideas	I don't really **buy into** all that homeopathic medicine stuff.
chill out	relax completely, or not allow things to upset you	**Chill out**! Life's too short to get so stressed!
sex up sth or **sex** sth **up**	make something seem more exciting than it really is	Sports promoters are trying to **sex up** cricket for the younger generation.
text back sb or **text** sb **back**	send a text message in reply	I'll **text** you **back** when my meeting finishes.

B More examples of new phrasal verb expressions

Hi, Tanya

How are things with you? Better than with me, I hope. I feel totally **stressed-out**[1].

Things started badly when I was late for work today – I needed some money and stopped at a shop where I bought a load of things I didn't really need but they still refused me **cashback**[2].

Then when I got to work I discovered that today wasn't a **dress-down**[3] day as I'd thought – and everyone else was looking smart while I'd come in my jeans. Then I discovered that all the e-mails I sent yesterday have **bounced back**[4] to me. I feel like screaming! I've been working soooo hard for soooo long – I think I'm suffering from **burnout**[5]!

I wish I had loads of money – I'd go and **veg out**[6] in the Caribbean.

Penny

[1] (adjective) very worried and anxious

[2] (noun) money from your bank account that you can get from a shop when you buy goods with a debit card

[3] (adjective) used about a day for dressing in less formal clothes than normal

[4] didn't get to their destination and have been sent back

[5] (noun) the condition of being ill or tired because you have been working too hard

[6] relax by doing nothing (informal)

TIP Listen and look out for new phrasal verbs when you are watching a film or TV or reading a newspaper or magazine.

Exercises

70.1 Complete these sentences with words from the opposite page.

1 This hotel is so awesome, man. I could just .... out on this view for the whole weekend.
2 I want to stay at home this evening – I'm partied ....
3 The government has been accused of .... up a report on economic growth.
4 I don't .... into her theories about global corruption, do you?
5 Sophie had .... up her new boyfriend so much that we were all surprised at how ordinary he seemed when we finally met him.
6 I haven't got any money. Let's see if we can get some .... when we're at the supermarket.
7 Let's rent a video and just veg .... at home this evening.
8 Nearly one in six teachers suffers from .... at some point in their career.

70.2 Answer these questions using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

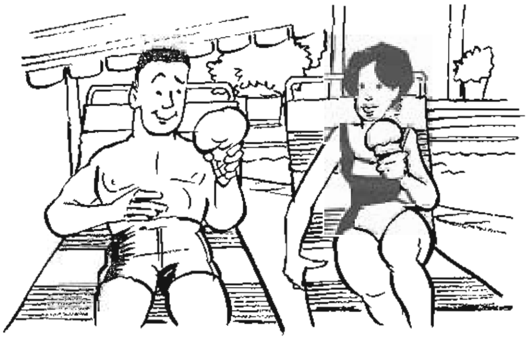

Peter and Claire were chilling out beside the pool.

1 What will probably happen if you get an e-mail address wrong?
2 What phrasal verb connects vegetables and relaxation?
3 What phrasal verb connects cold weather and relaxation?
4 What might the result be if you work too hard for too long?
5 What is the money called which you can get in a supermarket by paying for more than the cost of the goods you're buying?
6 Which common adjective has combined with *up* to form a new phrasal verb?
7 What phrasal verb is based on a noun meaning ecstasy or complete happiness?
8 What do you call a day at work when everyone comes in informal clothes?
9 What could you do if someone texted you?
10 Find three phrasal verbs from the opposite page that are connected with relaxation.
11 Find three words from the opposite page that are connected with modern technology.
12 Find two words from the opposite page that are connected with being tense.

70.3 Write responses to these statements, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

EXAMPLE Have you got any money with you? No, I'll get some cashback.

1 Let's just have a really relaxing holiday, doing nothing much at all!
2 Can you let me know when you get my text message?
3 What do you think about his idea of using aromatherapy in the office?
4 Don't you want to come to Joe's birthday party with me?
5 I thought you were going to e-mail me some information about that company?
6 Jane is so tense at work. She really shouldn't take things so seriously.
7 Why are you wearing jeans to go to work?
8 What did the reviews say about the concert?

Key

Unit 1

1.1
1 I sent off the order last week but the goods haven't turned up yet.
2 I came across an interesting book in the library. I took down the title. Here it is.
3 We asked some friends around to watch a film, but the video was playing up and it eventually broke down.
4 I brought up this problem at the last meeting. It's really time to sort out the problem.
5 I wish he'd stop messing us about! He's put the meeting off three times and now he wants to call it off altogether.

1.2
1 send off = post turn up = arrive
2 come across = find take down = write
3 ask around = invite home play up = not work properly break down = stop working
4 bring up = mention sort out = deal with
5 mess about = cause inconvenience put off = postpone call off = cancel

1.3
1 Correct
2 Incorrect: the object must come after the particle.
She looked after the children when their mother was in hospital.
3 Correct
4 Incorrect: this verb is used without an object.
We ate out and had a wonderful meal last night.
5 Incorrect: the object must be human.
It was a beautiful summer evening so I asked my new colleague out for a drink.

1.4 1 on 2 with 3 against 4 with 5 with

Unit 2

2.1 1 broke 2 cut 3 get 4 keep 5 pick 6 turn

2.2 The particle could be put in a different position in sentences 2 and 6:
2 The heavy snow blocked the roads and cut off the farm completely.
6 This is a really stupid programme. Please turn off the TV.

2.3
1 Abstract *Go against* here means oppose or defy.
2 Concrete *Cut out* here means use scissors to remove the ad from the paper or magazine.
3 Abstract *Cut out* here means stopped running.
Abstract *Broke down* here means stopped working altogether.
Abstract *Turned up* here means arrived.
4 Concrete *Dress up* here means dress in formal clothes or your best clothes.
5 Abstract *Went through* here means experienced

2.4
1 They just **brushed aside** my complaints; it made me very angry. *Or* They just **brushed** my complaints **aside**.
2 I **fell for** his story about having lost all his money. How stupid I was!
3 I couldn't **make out** what he was saying with all the noise.
4 Could you **chase up** Janet's report? She promised it last week but I haven't seen it yet. *Or* Could you **chase** Janet's report **up**?
5 If you are phoning from outside the country, **leave out** the first zero in the city code. *Or* … **leave** the first zero in the city code **out**.

2.5
1 The government have issued a statement condemning the recent protests.
2 The union accepted the new pay deal and cancelled the strike.
3 The number of people not owning a TV set nowadays has declined dramatically.
4 There was a disturbance in Blackmoor Prison yesterday and three prisoners escaped.
5 Could you organise lunch for our visitors? There will be four of them.

Unit 3

3.1
1 The speaker went with her brothers.
2 No, she didn't go into Di's house.
3 Mark was in a higher position.
4 The speaker went to the Richardson's house.
5 round

3.2 1 b 2 a 3 a 4 h

3.3
1 Incorrect. The object must come between the verb and the particle:
I have three important meetings on tomorrow.
2 Correct
3 Incorrect. The object must come between the verb and the particle:
Sue was only **having** her sisters **on** when she told them she was planning to become a model.
4 Incorrect. This meaning of the phrasal verb *have on* is never used in the continuous form:
I **have** a lot of work **on** today.
5 Correct
6 Incorrect. The object must come before the particle because it is a pronoun:
Ruth was wearing new jeans this morning and she **had** them **on** yesterday.

3.4
1 Can you move over to make room for your sister?
2 When Jill finished her essay, she asked Harry to read it over.
3 Jim has invited me back to his house tomorrow.
4 Paul was only having his parents on when he told them he'd failed his driving test.
5 What do you have on tomorrow?
6 Sue had the light on in her bedroom, so I knew she was at home.
Or Sue had on the light in her bedroom, so I knew she was at home.

Unit 4

4.1

phrasal verb	*verb + particle noun*
show off	show-off
warm up	warm-up
hold on	none
hide out	hideout
turn over	turnover
tear down	none

4.2 1 pile-up 2 cutbacks 3 outcry 4 bystanders
5 breakthrough

4.3 1 getaway 2 off-putting 3 throwaway 4 outgoing
5 bygone

4.4 1 get away 2 put off 3 throw away 4 go out 5 go by

4.5
1 I was looking for a way to turn off the photocopier – There's the on/off switch.
2 Have your heard about the scandal in the office? – Mm, amazing goings-on!
3 The economy's not doing so well these days. – Yes, there's been a downturn.
4 A database can organise all the information you type into it. – Yes, but I don't understand the input.
5 You have to consider how much you spend each month. – I know, I need to watch my outgoings.

Unit 5

5.1 1 d 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 c 6 b

5.2
1 a) I put my feet in a puddle of water and my feet are very wet now.
  b) She intervened or hecame involved to stop the argument from becoming more serious.
  The connection between the meanings is the sense of going into the middle of something.
2 a) This programme is rubbish. I wish you'd turn off the TV.
  b) The lecture so boring that I stopped paying attention.
  The connection between the meanings is the sense of a break in continuity.
3 a) There's a hole in my bag. I think my pen must have fallen from the bag onto the ground or floor.
  b) He stopped going to college before the end of his course and became a mechanic.
  The connection between the meanings is the sense of leaving a place or environment.
4 a) We fixed the boxes to the roof of the car by using ropes.
  b) Mark dreams of travelling but he doesn't feel free to do it because he is trapped by his family and work responsibilities.
  The connection between the meanings is the sense of being unable to move or being restricted.

5.3
1 What are you really trying to say? I wish you would say exactly what you mean!
2 The teacher did all she could to repeat the vocabulary so frequently that her pupils knew it well before the exam.
3 The old education system used to remove the best pupils and teach them in separate schools.
4 The noise of the children's music made it impossible for me to hear the television.

5.4 *Suggested answer:*

As the rain didn't stop, the football game was cancelled. So the team began discussing its strategy for the next match instead. We didn't leave the clubhouse until the cleaners arrived in the evening.

Unit 6

6.1
1 apart
2 out
3 around/round
4 out
5 along
6 out
7 out

6.2 *Suggested answers:*

1 Ken: Really? How did that come about?
2 Ivan: Huh! Do you think it will ever come off?
3 Fran: When do you think you'll come to a decision?
4 Ulla: Yes, I was intending to, but right at the last minute something came up.

6.3

SCORPIO ★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★

You may **come up against** a few problems at work today, but don't worry, they're only temporary, and a new job opportunity will **come** up which could change your life. The name of an old friend **comes up** in conversation, bringing back powerful memories.

TAURUS ★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★

You will **come across someone** who seems to share the same world view as you, but be careful, they are not what they seem to be. Don't forget that, in the end, true love **comes down to** finding someone you can trust.

Unit 7

7.1 1 b 2 c 3 d 4 b 5 a 6 a 7 d

7.2 *Suggested answers:*

1 How do you and Joe get on? – We're great friends.
2 What exactly are you getting at? – Let me put it another way for you.
3 How do you get by on a student grant? – I manage somehow, though it isn't easy.
4 How did you get so behind? – I just wasn't organised enough.
5 When are you going to get round to it? – Soon, I promise.
6 Shall we get together this evening? – Sure, that would be nice.
7 Will you manage to get away soon? – I certainly hope so.

7.3

1 I've been planning to sort out my files but I haven't got around/round to it yet.
2 I can't get over how much money they spent on their New Year's party.
3 Don't try to get away with not paying your train fare – an inspector might come on and want to see your ticket.
4 The teachers in the school often get together after work on Fridays in a café near the school.
5 They got around/round the problem of offending anyone and just invited all their friends to the wedding.
6 I usually find it quite hard to understand what Professor Mactoft is getting at in his lectures.
7 I hope I can get away with not sending any Christmas cards this year.
8 Emily has got terribly/very behind with her thesis.

Unit 8

8.1 1 through 2 off 3 through 4 without 5 on 6 about

8.2 *Suggested answers:*

1 I'm thinking of going in for the New York Marathon next year.
2 My father went through some difficult times in his life.
3 Unemployment and high crime levels often go together.
4 He decided to go through with the operation even though there were risks.
5 I refused to go along with their decision to close the youth club.
6 I didn't realise how late it was and I went on studying till after midnight.
7 We had to go without hot water for 24 hours while they were repairing the pipes.
8 Do you think I should go in for the advanced level exam? It might be too difficult.
9 She just went off without saying goodbye. I wonder if I offended her?
10 What was going on in the staffroom at lunchtime? I heard someone shouting.

8.3 1 b 2 c 3 c 4 c

Unit 9

9.1 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 b

9.2
1 forward
2 around/round (*out* is also possible here)
3 after
4 ahead or forward
5 down
6 at (*over* is also possible here)

9.3

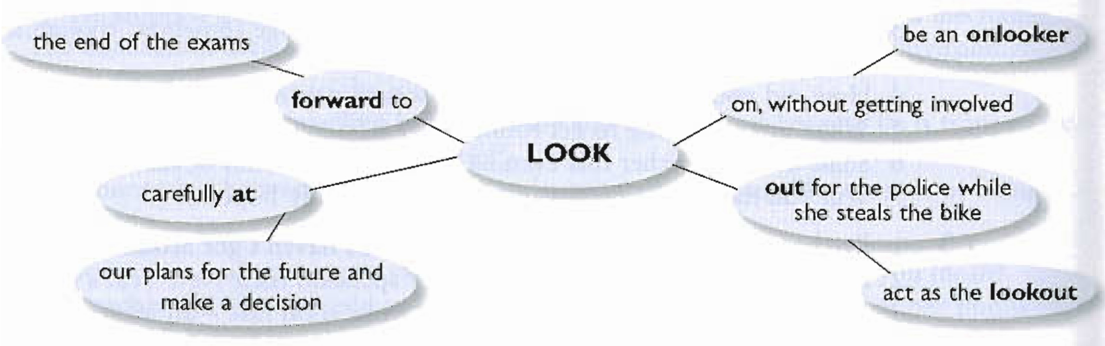

the end of the exams
forward to
carefully **at**
our plans for the future and make a decision
LOOK
be an **onlooker**
on, without getting involved
out for the police while she steals the bike
act as the **lookout**

9.4
1 find the new words in a dictionary
2 visited an old friend who I hadn't seen for a long time (when you go to the town or country where that person lives)
3 the situation is improving
4 quickly examined the report
5 examined the report (rather more carefully than *looking over* it)
6 investigating the murder

Unit 10

10.1 1 Pete 2 Jane 3 Drew 4 Lars 5 Melanie

10.2
1 As soon as we had checked in at the hotel, we made straight for the beach.
2 She made up some story about the bus being late, but I'm sure she just overslept.

3 Nobody could make out why the camera was not working properly. (The sentence is now in the active voice because *make out* cannot be used in the passive.)
4 Harry is very good at making up stories for the children; they love his tales.
5 Can you make out what that white thing on the horizon is? (Verb and particle cannot be separated.)
6 The report is made up of three sentences. (In this sense of *make up* the verb and particle cannot be separated.)

Unit 11

11.1 1 I like sleeping in tents but I don't like putting them up. (When the object is a pronoun, it must go before the particle.)
2 Correct
3 We put a new dishwasher in last week. It's wonderful. *Or* We put in a new dishwasher last week. It's wonderful.
4 Correct
5 That light is too strong. Shall we put it out? (When the object is a pronoun, it must go before the particle.)

11.2 1 up 2 on 3 in 4 off 5 out 6 onto *or* on to

11.3 *Suggested answers:*
1 Could you **put** the light **out** please. You don't need them on. *Or* Could you **put out** the light ...
2 They're **putting up** some new buildings near the railway station. *Or* They're **putting** some new buildings **up** ...
3 The Boy Scouts **put** their tent up very quickly and then started unpacking their things. *Or* The Boy Scouts **put** their tent **up** ...
4 Could we possibly put our meeting back to 10 o'clock? *Or* Could we possibly **put back** our meeting ...
5 When we moved into our new house we decided to **put in** a new, more attractive fireplace. *Or* ... we decided to **put** a new, more attractive fireplace **in.**
6 Can you put that CD on, please. I work better with music in the background.

11.4 1 b 2 e 3 d 4 a 5 c

Unit 12

12.1

I bought a new jacket but it had a mark on it so I took it back.	✓
The shop assistant took me ~~offside~~ and told me that	aside
if I was prepared to keep the jacket she would take ~~away~~	off
ten per cent. I didn't really take in what she was saying at	✓
first, but once I understood, I decided to take her ~~over~~ on the offer.	up

12.2 1 Kim: OK, OK. Sorry, I shouldn't have said it. I **take it back**. *Or* I **take back** what I said.
2 Clare: Yes, she's really **taken to** it. She's so **taken up** with it that she's stopped going to the swimming pool.
3 Len: Well, I'm not surprised! I warned you not to **take it apart** in the first place. not ~~take apart it~~)

4 Miriam: Well, why don't you **take up** golf? *Or* ... take golf **up**?
5 Paul: It's what you get when you take £15 away from £45. *Or* It's what you get when you take away £15 from £45.
6 Terry: Yes, teaching 28 hours a week really takes it out of me.
7 Kersty: Yes, he just **took off** without even saying goodbye.

Unit 13

13.1 *Possible answers:*

1 She needs to tidy up the kitchen.
2 She needs to sweep up the food the child has dropped on the floor. *Or* She needs to sweep up the rubbish from the floor.
3 She must hang up the coat.
4 Toys are jumbled up on the floor.
5 When she has cleared everything up, she might feel tired but happy.

13.2
1 turned *or* showed
2 liven
3 chop
4 shows *or* turns
5 opened

13.3 1 b 2 a *or* d 3 c 4 a *or* b 5 c 6 d 7 b *or* d 8 b

13.4 1 The *up* can be left out of the following sentences:

I spent all morning yesterday **clearing (up)** my study.
After that I tried to **tidy (up)** my bedroom.
There were dirty clothes all **jumbled (up)** in a pile on the floor.
Then I discovered the washbasin was **clogged (up)** in the bathroom, so I had to clear that.
By that time I'd **used (up)** all my energy ...
Eat (up) your vegetables, children!
Drink (up) your juice!
Paul's used (up) all the milk.
She's just **opened (up)** a restaurant serving exotic food from different countries.
No, she has a business partner and they **divide (up)** the work – and the profits!
She spends half the day **chopping (up)** food and cleaning the kitchen.

In the other example sentences on the opposite page the *up* is essential.

2 In the sentences where the word *up* is not essential, using it seems to add a meaning of:
– either something being done completely (tidy up, clear up, jumble up, clog up, eat up, drink up, use up).
– or something being made into lots of small pieces (divide up, chop up). This meaning can be seen in verbs such as smash up, cut up, tear up.

Unit 14

14.1
1 I'll show you out, if you like.
2 For some reason my name was left out of the guest list.
3 I've locked myself out of my car.
4 He can see/show himself out – there's no need to take him there.
5 She cut out pictures of her pop idol from the music magazines.
6 The security guard let us out of the building site.

14.2
1 lost
2 try
3 help
4 locked
5 cut
6 show *or* see, see, let

14.3
1 He's locked himself out of his car.
2 She's left out the letter E. *Or* She's left the letter E out.
3 The DVD of *Star Lords* video is coming out soon. *Or* *Star Lords* is coming out on DVD soon.

14.4
1 c 2 e 3 a 4 d 5 b

Unit 15

15.1
1 sold
2 broke
3 clear *or* slip *or* run (*Clear* suggests that the speaker is more annoyed.)
4 see
5 head *or* slip (*Slip* emphasises the idea of leaving discreetly. *Clear* would sound too abrupt and informal in this context.)
6 dozed
7 send
8 lift *or* lifting

15.2
1 It won't take her long to **run off** the letters you asked her to do.
2 I often doze off in boring lectures.
3 Let's try and **slip off** before the others wake up.
4 In the middle of a long speech the actor suddenly **broke** off and ran off the stage.
5 I've sent all the students' exam results **off**. *Or* I've sent **off** all the students' exam results.
6 The school disco has **put** her **off** discos in general. *Or* The school disco has **turned** her **off** discos in general.
7 Tell that boy in our front garden to clear **off** – he's annoying the dog.
8 Fortunately, he **laughed off** the criticism of his acting. *Or* He **laughed** the criticism of his acting off.

15.3
Author's answers:
1 I think I'd probably just laugh it off.
2 I'd be most likely to doze off in front of a political discussion.
3 My husband, son and dog usually see me off if I go on a journey on my own.
4 I can usually run off an English essay quickly as long as the subject is not too difficult.
5 A lecturer might break off in the middle of a talk if someone raised their hand to ask a question.
6 If you plan to slip off during a party, you're intending to go quietly without letting anyone know that you have gone.
7 If someone tells some children to 'clear off', they probably feel cross or annoyed with them.
8 I might be put off eating my dinner if I saw a hair on the plate.

15.4 1 I'm going to see James off at the airport tomorrow. *Or* I'm going to see off James at the airport tomorrow.
2 I've just **sent** off a letter to Pauline. *Or* I've sent a letter to Pauline off.
3 The rocket is due to **lift off** tomorrow at noon. (Note that there is also a noun **lift-off**: The **lift-off** is due at noon tomorrow.)
4 I hope I've managed to **turn** him off the idea of redecorating the house. *Or* I hope I've managed to **put** him off the idea of redecorating the house.
5 I dozed off when all the others went off to play tennis.
6 We're planning to **head off** in the early evening.

Unit 16

16.1 1 I read the gardening article you gave me then passed it **on** to a friend who's also interested in plants.
2 Do you think she's really angry, or do you think she's just **putting it** on?
3 He looks very pale and tired. Something is clearly weighing **on/upon** him.
Or Something is clearly weighing **on/upon** his mind.
4 It's a lovely jacket. Try **it on.**
5 I'm going to **keep on** working until I've finished this report.
6 You can **rely/depend/count** on/upon Brian.

16.2 1 False, because *keep on* means to continue to do something, and Anwar has decided to tell Oscar the new tomorrow.
2 False, because *take in* means to reduce the width of a piece of clothing, and Alice's skirt was too loose.
3 True
4 True
5 False, because *count on* means rely on, and Bob has been able to rely on his parents' support.
6 True

16.3 1 Hey, that man just pushed **in** – that taxi should have been ours!
2 Mary's bad news has been weighing on my **mind** all day.
3 I need time for the news to sink in.
4 I couldn't leave the room because someone had locked me **in**. (You are locked *out* of a room if you cannot get in.)
5 Phrasal verbs may seem hard but you must keep on trying.
6 You'll never guess who called in at the office today!

Follow **up**
Possible answers:

pass on = to die
e.g. I'm so sorry to hear that your dad has passed on.

take in = to let someone stay in your house
e.g. She took me in for a month while the building work was done on my house.

rub sth in (informal) = to talk to someone about something which you know they want to forget because they feel bad about it
e.g. I know I shouldn't have failed the exams, but there's no need to keep rubbing it in.

Unit 17

17.1
1 We know that Jamie's luggage is heavy and/or that there is a lot of it.
2 Yes, but she's trying to eat less chocolate than she used to. Though she would probably be quite happy if she could cut it out totally. [stop eating it completely]
3 He wrote it rather than taped it.
4 No, it has closed permanently, not just for the evening.
5 Perhaps they did it because the bushes were so big that they were blocking the light or blocking the path.

17.2 1 shut 2 cut 3 hand 4 chopped 5 keep 6 go

17.3
1 *Read through, look through* and *go through* are all possible. Using *through* perhaps suggests more thoroughness than *over* which can be quite superficial. However, the difference is very slight.
2 They all share an idea of change or of moving from one state or time to another:
stay over = staying from one day to the next
get over = change from feeling bad to feeling better
fall over = change from a vertical to a horizontal position
3 a) heaviness which causes difficulty
b) put on paper
c) move in the direction of the ground
d) stop an activity
e) reduce a number or amount, or not let it rise
4 a) communicating or expressing clearly
b) move to make more room for someone else
c) examine to make sure they are correct
d) hit it with their foot so that it spills
e) flow over the side of the pan

Unit 18

18.1

1	mess about/(a)round	behave stupidly or waste time
2	hang about/(a)round	spend time somewhere not doing very much
3	lie about/(a)round	lie down doing very little
4	sit about/(a)round	spend time sitting down and doing very little
5	laze about/(a)round	relax, enjoy yourself and do very little

18.2 1 lies *or* lazes 2 hanging 3 sitting 4 lazing *or* lying 5 messing

18.3 *Suggested answers:*
1 Do you want to **wait/stick around** after the meeting? I finish work at 5 p.m. and I could **show/take you (a)round** the old town.
2 Nothing much happened at the demonstration. We just stood **about/(a)round** and held our banners up.
3 They spend most weekends just **hanging/messing about/(a)round** in their boat; they don't really sail it seriously.
4 On my first day, the boss **showed/took me (a)round** the workshop and introduced me to various people I'd be working with.
5 At the drinks party people were just **milling about/(a)round** hoping to find someone they knew.
6 Look, I'm sorry, I don't want to **mess you about/around**, but I wonder if we could postpone our meeting till next week?

18.4

1 I've got to leave now, but I'll see you somewhere or other.
2 Don't tell me what to do.
3 I'm just looking to see what you have.
4 My suitcase got a bit damaged on the plane.
5 He told the kids to stop behaving so badly.

Unit 19

19.1 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 f 5 d 6 e

19.2

1 sent
2 lives
3 go
4 couldn't ask
5 put
6 could do
7 stick
8 catching

19.3

1 go, with
2 call for
3 dying for
4 dealt with
5 catch up with

19.4

1 I couldn't **put up** with such noisy neighbours as yours.
2 It's been such a busy week. I'm **dying for** the weekend.
3 Jean's shoes go perfectly **with** her handbag.
4 All the students at his university were **rooting for** Kyle in the golf championship.
5 I **couldn't** ask for a better job.
6 Stella **lives** for her grandson.

Unit 20

20.1 *Possible answers:*

1 Let me take you through the way we do things here.
2 Don't worry, I saw through Leo the first moment I met him.
3 I'm so sorry. I set my alarm but slept through it.
4 Could you go through these figures and see if you can find any mistakes?
5 You don't need to read it in detail. Just flick/flip/look through it.
6 Well, she has lived through some terrible things over the last few years.

20.2

1 take *or* took, take
2 bite
3 send
4 bite
5 go
6 answer

20.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 Joe rang while you were out. Please could you call/phone/ring him back. (not ~~call/phone/ring back him~~)
2 I don't like these trousers I bought today. I think I'll take them back. (not ~~take back them~~)
3 Harry missed his train this morning because he slept through his alarm. (not ~~he slept his alarm through~~)
4 Ellen isn't really reading the magazine; she's just flicking/flipping through it. (not ~~flicking/flipping it through~~)
5 I wanted to tell her how upset I was but I managed to bite it back. (not ~~bite back it~~)

Unit 21

21.1
1 At the supermarket yesterday Julia ran into Martin.
2 Kim is getting over his broken heart by throwing himself into his studies.
3 When she saw me dressed up as a pirate she burst into laughter.
4 He doesn't think before he speaks so don't read too much into his words.
5 In your essay you should have gone more fully into the causes of the war.
6 We were disagreeing about the film and then Jo entered into the argument.
7 The police are doing all they can to look into what happened.

21.2
1 running away
2 tidy away *or* pack away
3 stay away from
4 locked herself away
5 sent away for
6 tear yourself away

21.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 I was very surprised when Helen burst into tears/laughter/song.
2 It makes sense to stay away from dangerous parts of town at night.
3 My best friend always throws himself into everything he does.
4 Sometimes I'd really like to run away from all my problems and go and live on an island.
5 I find this job so stressful. I really should look into other possible careers.
6 When I went to the town centre last week I ran into my old headmistress.
7 Before moving house I spent weeks packing away all my personal belongings.
8 Whenever visitors are coming, I usually tidy away anything that is lying around.

21.4 1 c 2 e 3 a 4 d 5 b

21.5 *Suggested answers:*

A number of the phrasal verbs with *into* are connected with going into something in detail: look into sth, read sth into sth, go into sth, throw yourself into sth.

Other phrasal verbs with *into* are connected with starting something: burst into sth, enter into sth, launch into sth.

Others are connected with meeting someone or something: run into sth/sb, bump into sth/sb, bang into sth.

The phrasal verbs with *away* are all connected with separation, keeping something at a distance or putting something in a separate place.

Unit 22

22.1
1 pressed
2 run
3 clock, clock
4 bring, fit
5 press
6 take

22.2 *Suggested questions:*

1 What do you usually do at weekends? *Or* How do you spend your evenings?
2 How did he fail the exam? *Or* Why did he drop out of the course?
3 How long have you known him/her?

4 Is that girl a friend of yours?
5 Why do you always carry a personal stereo? *Or* Why have you got your portable chess game with you?
6 Shall we leave now?

22.3 1 We had to wait an hour for the next train, so we went for a walk to **while away** the time.
2 A young French woman latched on to me at the party last night. I think she wanted to practise her English.
3 I clock on at 7.30 a.m. every morning. *Or* I clock on at work at 7.30 a.m. every morning.
4 We have to finish this job by six o'clock. We'd better press on with it.
5 I just don't know how we're going to fit three meetings in before the summer bteak. *Or* I just don't know how we're going to fit in three meetings before the summer break.

Unit 23

23.1 1 b   2 c   3 a   4 d   5 a

23.2 1 In (a) the lecture simply went on for longer than expected. In (b) the person found it slow and boring.
2 In (a) John delayed us whereas in (b) he made us move or work faster.
3 In (a) the song reminds the speaker of their childhood whereas in (b) the speaker simply says that the song was written when he was a child.
4 In (a) the children were walking much more quickly than the speaker whereas in (b) the speaker was trying to make the children walk faster.

23.3 1 Time seems to pass more quickly as you get older.
2 Music and smells have great powers to remind you of the past.
3 Mr Jones looks or behaves like people used to look or behave in the past; in other words, he is very old-fashioned in some way.
4 We should forget what happened in the past. (The implication is that there have been problems, arguments or conflicts in the past, but that you now want to make peace.)
5 You never know what the future holds for you.

23.4 *Suggested answers:*
1 The old oil lamps in my grandfather's house looked like leftovers from a bygone era.
2 The smell of chalk always takes me back to my schooldays.
3 There was a hold-up on the motorway because of an accident.
4 Sometimes, if the textbook is boring, the lesson seems to drag on.
5 We can never know what lies ahead.
6 There are some leftover pizzas from the party. Would you like one?

Unit 24

24.1 *Suggested answers:*
1 The fields stretch away to the horizon.
2 The house is tucked away in the forest.
3 There are small houses spread out over the landscape.
4 The house on the island is cut off from the mainland.
5 The room opens onto a balcony.

24.2
1 stay in
2 stay out
3 leave something behind
4 stay behind *or* stay on
5 brighten up
6 stay on
7 call back

24.3
1 I left my floppy disk **behind** at the computer class. I'll have to go back and see if it's still in the machine.
2 When you were a teenager, did your parents allow you to **stay out** late?
3 Shop assistant: I'm afraid your photographs aren't ready yet. It will be another couple of hours.
Customer: Okay. I'll **call back** tomorrow.
4 We've decided to paint the kitchen to **brighten** it **up** a bit. It's so gloomy and dull at the moment.
5 I'm really tired. I think I'll **stay in** tonight and not go to the party after all, sorry.
6 The teacher asked the naughty boy to **stay behind** after the lesson.
7 We loved the resort so much we decided to **stay on** another week, even though our friends had gone home.

Unit 25

25.1
1 brings back
2 spring from
3 lies behind
4 stir up
5 sparked off
6 set, off

25.2
1 off
2 set
3 bring
4 off
5 ruled
6 off
7 stir
8 pay

25.3
1 fireworks
2 suspects
3 violence
4 memories
5 reforms
6 feelings

25.4
1 stir up
2 pay him back
3 triggered off *or* sparked off
5 sparked off *or* triggered off
5 ruled out
6 sprang from

Unit 26

26.1
1 picked up *or* gone up
2 heating up
3 going up
4 filling up

26.2
1 woke up
2 looking up

26.3

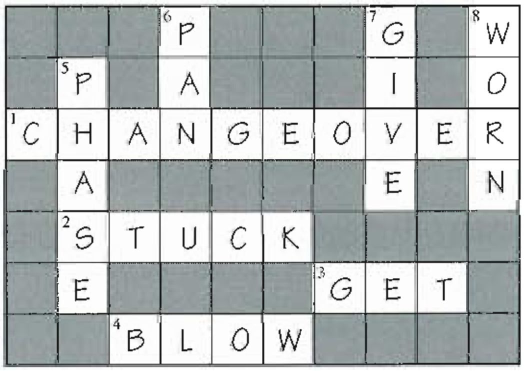

			6 P				7 G		8 W
	5 P		A				I		O
1 C	H	A	N	G	E	O	V	E	R
	A						E		N
	2 S	T	U	C	K				
	E					3 G	E	T	
		4 B	L	O	W				

26.4 1 The changeover to the new accounting system has caused endless problems.
2 There was a lot of trouble in the office last month, but it's all **blown over** now and things are back to normal.
3 Shall I heat up that pizza for you? I expect it's gone cold by now.
4 All these old telephones will be phased **out** over the next year and we'll get new, digital ones.

Unit 27

27.1 1 fall through
2 take over
3 downfall
4 take off *or* catch on
5 bring off *or* pull off
6 come off

27.2 1 S
2 S
3 F *or* S*
4 S
5 S
6 S
7 S
8 F
9 S

*If you are muddling through, you are managing, even if not very well, so it could be S as well as F.

27.3

History	muddle through
Maths	build on
English	catch up
Geography	stay ahead
Physics	pay off

27.4 *Suggested answers:*

1 Miranda walked into a job in London.
2 Jim's hard work eventually paid off.
3 The company is hoping to pull off an important deal this week.
4 Rachel never expected her singing career to take off so quickly.
5 The project may well fall through because of a lack of funds.
6 Teri finds it hard to keep up with the other kids in her class.
7 The new design of mobile phone has caught on almost overnight.
8 Top software companies are finding it increasingly difficult to stay ahead (of their competitors).

Unit 28

28.1 1 started, outset, packed
2 set, polish *or* finish, broke, finish *or* polish
3 give, cut, fizzled
4 drying, call

28.2 *Author's answers:*

1 I should set about filling in my annual tax forms.
2 I was planning on going to Spain at New Year, but had to call off the trip because I was ill.
3 Playing the guitar helps me to wind down.
4 I eat too much chocolate and should cut down on that.
5 I once started tennis lessons but gave them up after a few weeks.

Follow up
Possible answers:

start on sth = to begin to deal with something

start over (American English) = to start doing something from the beginning because you did not do it well the first time

start up = to start to work (of a vehicle or engine)

Unit 29

29.1
1 It is probably on a high shelf or in a high cupboard.
2 No, she's only gone for a short time, or at least that is what the speaker is implying.
3 He has to move closer to someone.
4 Sonia has to move more because she has to actually change seats rather than just move a little bit further along.
5 No, the speaker expects you to use your hands to tear it.
6 She's probably about to go outside because she is putting her coat on.

29.2
1 The children helped me to wrap **up** the parcel. *Or* The children helped me to wrap the parcel up.
2 Can you tie **up** Billy's shoe laces for him? *Or* Can you tie Billy's shoe laces **up** for him?
3 **Pick up** the ball at once. *Or* **Pick** the ball **up** at once.
4 Slow down – it's beginning to snow.
5 Jill loves **blowing up** balloons! *Or* Jill loves **blowing** balloons up.

29.3 *Suggested answers:*
1 The tree has fallen down.
2 She's reaching out to put money in the machine.
3 He's blowing up a balloon. *Or* He's blowing a balloon up.
4 He's picking up a toy car. *Or* He's picking a toy car up.
5 He's tearing up a photo. *Or* He's tearing a photo up.
6 She's wrapping up a present. *Or* She's wrapping a present up.

29.4 1 slowed 2 reached 3 pop 4 blow

Unit 30

30.1 1 stamp 2 root 3 falling 4 screwed *or* tore 5 knocked

30.2
1 tear apart The lions are tearing a dead animal apart. *Or* The lions are tearing apart a dead animal.
2 put out The firefighters are putting out a fire. *Or* The firefighters are putting a fire out.
3 pull down or tear down He is pulling/tearing the building down. *Or* He is pulling/tearing down the building.

30.3
1 Gisela: Yes, well, it was a bit of **a setback** but I've **applied** for a different grant, and hope I'll get that.
2 Dan: Well, my parents have lent me some money to see **me through** while I'm studying.
Note that: 'see through me' is not possible here. 'See through somebody' means to become aware that they are deceiving you; see Unit 20.
3 Hilda: Yes, but they are **fighting back** now and their union is much stronger.
4 Bob: Oh yes, he **bent over backwards** to help me.

5 Eric: Yes, I made an innocent comment and she just **turned on me**.
Note that 'turned me on' is not possible here. 'Turn somebody on' means to excite them; see Unit 52.
6 Gareth: OK, don't worry, I'll see to it.

Unit 31

31.1 1 Mandy 2 Paula 3 Dennis and Anne 4 Ali

31.2
1 turn down
2 ordering, about *or* around
3 leave, aside
4 get on to
5 turn to
6 bubbling over
7 deal with
8 keep to
9 pass on

31.3
1 speak up = to speak more loudly
2 get through to someone = to make someone understand
3 speak up = to publicly express your opinions about something or someone, especially in order to support them
4 get across something or get something across = to successfully communicate an idea to other people
5 butt in (informal) = to interrupt a conversation or discussion, often stopping someone who is talking
6 dry up = to stop speaking because you forget what to say next

Unit 32

32.1
1 freshen up
2 dress up
3 (to) do up *or* (to) do my dress up
4 wrap up, put on *or* put a scarf on

32.2
1 I don't want to wear my new jacket tonight. You can **put it on** if you like.
Note that pronouns always go before the particle.
2 Although the house looked rundown from the outside, it was very **smart/clean/ well-maintained** inside.
3 If you're going out in the snow, make sure you **wrap up** well.
4 Do you think this scarf and coat go together OK?
5 He hates the way his ears stick **out**.
6 It takes me a long time to get the kids ready in the morning because Sammy and Lisa can't **do up** their own shoes yet.
7 Bill and his brother are so alike – I can't **tell** one from the other.
8 It's a very formal party, so **you need to / you should** dress up.

32.3 1 rundown 2 in 3 stands* 4 stick 5 set

**sticks* is also possible but sounds less formal.

32.4
1 There are many examples.
2 The speaker thinks the performance was special, and probably better than the performances of the other actors in the film.
3 Jan's writing is better.
4 Yes, it does.
5 The speaker thinks this will improve the series.

Unit 33

33.1
1 If a performance is booked up, you can't get tickets for it.
2 If people are said to pour in (a place), you know that there are a lot of people.
3 If people cram into a room, the room is then very crowded.
4 Events like poetry readings or poetry competitions might be put on to tie in with National Poetry Week.
5 A comedian is more likely to send up politicians than post office workers.
6 An actor would need someone to stand in for them if they lost their voice or were sick.

33.2 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 d

33.3
1 called off
2 standing in
3 put on
4 taking off *or* sending up*
5 packed out
6 tie in

*If the imitation is very humorous, then *send up* is more appropriate.

33.4
1 putting on
2 ties in
3 was booked up
4 cram into
5 sending up
6 taking off *or* sending up
7 walked out
8 put off

Unit 34

34.1
1 I know, but I'm sure everything will turn out all right in the end.
2 I must have mixed/muddled them up. Sorry.
3 I've run up against that problem too.
4 OK. I'll see if I can get out of my trip to London.
5 I wouldn't bank on it.
6 I know, but try to rise above it.

34.2 1 revolves 2 mix-up 3 back 4 crop 5 turns

34.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 hot up
2 caught up
3 were thrown together
4 calmed down
5 to back off
6 bank on his help

Unit 35

35.1
1 track down
2 drawn on/upon
3 turns to
4 points out
5 come under
6 check up on

35.2 Hannah and Bill were playing a game. Hannah had thought of a football star and Bill was trying to find out who it was. He **turned to** his mother but she **pointed out** that she knew absolutely nothing about football. He would have to try to **track the answer down himself** (*or* **track down the answer himself**) and to **watch out** for any clues that Hannah might deliberately give. After ten minutes Bill still hadn't **latched on** so he **gave up** and Hannah told him the answer: Ronaldo.

35.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 You might check up on a person, facts or something you've been told.
2 You might point out an important fact, a mistake or a connection between two things.
3 Someone might find out some information, a secret or someone's date of birth.

4 You might take in something you're told, good or bad news, or the implications of a situation.
5 A secret, a rude remark or a taboo word might slip out.

35.4 1 make someone notice something by showing it with your finger
2 try to see
3 find by using physical senses
4 leave quickly and quietly
5 turn your body to face

Unit 36

36.1 1 c 2 d 3 a 4 e 5 b

36.2 It's time you **sorted** yourself **out**. You're 23 now and you still haven't got a job! You've got to **face up to** reality. It's about time you realised that the secret of success **lies in** taking positive action. Over the next couple of days, I will expect you to **come up with** a few ideas about how you're going to improve your situation, or else you can go and live somewhere else. Why don't you go and **see about** that job Uncle Herbert offered you at his factory? I've offered to help **talk** things **over** with you, but you never seem to want my help. Yet you don't **deal with** things yourself. Sometimes I think you're just a waste of space!

36.3 it's just dawned on me: I've suddenly realised or understood something

rules out: makes something impossible or unsuitable

the answer jumps out at you: the answer can immediately be seen

work through things: deal with a problem by talking about it in detail

sort things out: make a decision by discussing it with someone else or thinking about it carefully

Unit 37

37.1 1 over *or* through 2 weigh 3 by 4 ahead 5 think 6 sleep

37.2 *Possible answers:*

1 I probably would run an important decision by my parents first, especially one concerning my professional life.
2 I usually try to make myself sleep on it first as things often seem better after a good night's sleep.
3 I'd prefer to do without a car. My holidays are really important to me.
4 When planning ahead for their retirement, people might contribute to a pension or they might try to save money regularly.
5 People might chicken out of giving a speech, or going paragliding, or asking someone to go out with them on a date.

37.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 We should allow for the fact that he is still only young. (not ~~We should allow the fact for that he is still young~~.)
2 I really can't help you as I have a lot of things on today. (not ~~I have on a lot of things today.~~)
3 He wants to opt out of art classes at school next year so he can do extra music. (not ~~He wants to opt of art classes out~~ ...)

4 We didn't bargain for Mark turning up at the party with a lot of his friends. (not ~~We didn't bargain Mark for turning up~~ ...)
5 My son is set against going to university. (not ~~My son is set going to university against~~.)
6 I could do without people coming for dinner this evening. (not ~~I could do people without~~ ...)

37.4 1 I was going to do the parachute jump but I chickened out in the end.
2 I have a lot of things on this weekend.
3 In judging her work, you should really allow for her inexperience.
4 If we buy the flat, we'll have to do without holidays for a few years.
5 Let's run our plan by Sarah before we make our final decision.
6 I could do without having to go to a conference this weekend.
7 In deciding how much holiday money we need, we should allow for the fact that food is very expensive there.

Unit 38

38.1 1 spoken 2 stick 3 back 4 outcry 5 stay 6 give

38.2 *Suggested answers:*
1 Yes, he backed him up. (not ~~He backed up him~~.)
2 Yes, it seems they've fallen out.
3 Yes, she always sticks up for her. (not ~~Yes, she always sticks her up for~~.)
4 Yes, I agree. I think we should back out.
5 Yes, she's always putting him down. (not ~~Yes, she's always putting down him~~.)
6 No, we shouldn't hold it/that against her. (not ~~No, we shouldn't hold against her it/that~~.)
7 Yes, I think it's really getting to her. (not ~~Yes, I think it's really getting her to~~.)
Or Yes, I think it's really beginning to get to her.

38.3
1 give in *or* back down
2 fallen out
3 back out
4 stuck together
5 getting to

Unit 39

39.1 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 a 5 c 6 b

39.2

presenting an opinion or trying to persuade	*successfully persuading*	*people's reactions to persuasion*
put across/over put forward put sth to sb call for press for	talk around/round bring round rope in have on talk into talk out of	fall for brush aside

39.3
1 She didn't take it seriously and refused to think about it seriously.
2 We don't know, but we know that it's not the USA because she was just teasing Derek.
3 No, they didn't have much choice in the matter.
4 We know she wasn't robbed and that she isn't always truthful because she was trying to trick Harry by inventing the story.
5 Yes, it does want reform.

39.4
1 pressing for *or* calling for
2 bring; around/round *or* talk; around/round
3 putting forward
4 call for *or* press for
5 rope in
6 talk; into

Unit 40

40.1
stand out and outstanding
An outstanding person is someone who stands out or is noticeable because of special, positive characteristics.

show off and a show-off
A show-off is a person who shows off or tries to impress others in an annoying way.

screw up and screwed-up
If a person is screwed-up, then in some way their experiences in life have screwed up or damaged their personality or their state of mind, making them unhappy or confused.

40.2
1 Antonia 2 Julia 3 Rana 4 Ahmed 5 Laura 6 Barry

40.3 *Suggested answers:*
1 Dan won the prize as his short story stood out (as the best). *Or* Dan won the prize as his short story stood out from all the others.
2 Molly got the sack because her work just didn't measure up.
3 What on earth does Gemma think she's playing at – she's behaving so oddly?
4 I wish Ed wouldn't show off all the time! *Or* I wish Ed wasn't/weren't such a show-off.
5 If you screw up again, you'll lose your job.
6 I know I was stupid but please don't rub it in.
7 Joe's father laid into him for scratching his new car.
8 Why does everyone always pick on me?

Unit 41

41.1 *Suggested answers:*

a) Mind out! Hold on! Hang on!
Watch out! Look out! Keep it up!

b) Lighten up! Steady on! Come off it! Spit it out! Step on it!
Come on! Go on! Hurry up! Belt up! Fire away!

Depending on the situation and your relationship with your boss or teacher you might feel it is appropriate to use these expressions: Steady on! Hurry up! Go on! Come on!

41.2
1 Come on! Spit it out!
2 Come off it!
3 Hold on!
4 Lighten up!
5 Mind out!
6 Steady on!
7 Keep it up!

41.3 1 Fire away! 2 Step on it! 3 Spit it out!

41.4 *Hang on!* and *Hold on!* both mean wait a minute.
Possible situation: Someone is talking at great length and you want to interrupt to ask something.

Mind out! and *Watch out!* both mean be careful.
Possible situation: Someone is about to step in front of a car.

Hurry up! and *Step on it!* both mean go faster or do something faster.
Possible situation: Someone is in a taxi and wants to get to the station in time to catch a train.

Unit 42

42.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 She's rubbing out what was written on the blackboard.
2 He's crossing a word out.
3 She's giving/handing out some books to the class.
4 He's giving/handing in some homework.
5 She's working out the sum/answer.

42.2 1 not pleased 2 not pleased 3 pleased 4 pleased 5 not pleased
6 not pleased

42.3 1 fell behind 2 catch up 3 work out 4 missed out 5 messed up

42.4

1 Students often **play up** when they are bored in class.
2 The teacher **rubbed out** the new words from the board and then tested us. *Or* The teacher **rubbed** the new words **out** ...
3 We have to **hand in** our registration forms for the exam on Friday. *Or* We have to **hand** our registration forms **in** ...
4 I usually **leave out** my middle name when I am filling in forms. *Or* I usually **leave** my middle name **out** ...
5 Some people were **handing out** leaflets about a demonstration in the town centre. *Or* Some people were **handing** leaflets **out** ...

42.5 *Possible answers:*

1 You are often asked to cross out rough work in an exam so that the examiner knows which work needs to be marked.
2 If a teacher gives out a sheet listing all the kings and queens of Britain it is a handout. It would only be a worksheet if it also included some exercises or activities relating to the information.
3 Most pupils carry an eraser in their pencil cases in order to rub out mistakes that they make.
4 It would be quite easy for me to work out how many euros are equal to 250 US dollars if I had a calculator.
5 I think some pupils may play up in class if they find the class too easy, too difficult or too dull for them.

Unit 43

43.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 I'm going to sign up for a course in statistics next year. (not ~~I'm going to sign for a course up~~ ...)

2 Several students dropped out of the Moral Philosophy course.
3 We break up on 20 June. (not ~~We break on 20 June up.~~)
4 He was thrown out of university after one term. He'd done no work at all.
5 I can't come out tonight. I have to write up my essay for tomorrow.
Or I can't come out tonight. I have to write my essay up for tomorrow.
6 I go back to college on 12 September. (not ~~I go on 12 September back to college.~~)

43.2 Only *breaking up* would make most students happy.
Swotting up and *mugging up* both involve hard work.
Scraping through means only just passing an exam (but perhaps a student who had not worked hard would be happy!).
Being thrown out and *dropping out* show that you have not made a success of student life.

43.3
1 mug up *or* swot up
2 kept up
3 brush up on *or* mug up on *or* swot up on *or* polish up (on)
4 come up
5 scraped through
6 write up
7 break up
8 go back

43.4 Dick hardly swotted/mugged up at all for his exams. He brushed up on the history of the French Revolution, but no questions on the French Revolution came up in the exam. He was afraid that he would be thrown out of university for failing his exams. However, he did just manage to scrape through them and so he will be in college when we go back next term. He has promised to try to keep up with work next year as he is planning to sign up for a couple of quite difficult courses, including business studies. He'll have to polish up* his French because the business studies course involves spending a term in France working in a business. He thinks he can just pick up** the language when he gets there, but I think he should study it before he goes because he only has school French.

* We can also say: He'll have to polish his French up ...
** We can also say: He thinks he can just pick the language up when he gets there, ...

Follow up
Included in the Mini dictionary are:
break away   break down   break in(to)   break off   break out

While they each have different meanings, *break* seems to suggest a sudden, sometimes violent or negative, event which changes a situation, for example, a marriage *breaks up*, a disease/epidemic *breaks out*, a group of people *break away* from another group.

Unit 44

44.1 1 e, h, i 2 j 3 g 4 e, h, i 5 e, i 6 d 7 a 8 b 9 f
10 c

44.2
1 read out
2 dipped into
3 scribble down *or* jot down *or* note down
4 write it out
5 make out
6 fill in *or* fill out

7 note down (*or*, if you are in a hurry, jot down *or* scribble down)
8 read up on
9 turn over
10 jot down *or* note down *or* scribble down

44.3 1 cut it out 2 touch on/upon 3 tone down 4 cropped up 5 sum up

Unit 45

45.1 a) stand down, step down, knock off, lay off
b) fix up, pencil in

45.2
1 taking
2 on
3 carry
4 left
5 in
6 pull
7 ahead
8 stands *or* steps
9 hand

45.3 *Possible answers:*

1 Yes, please fill me in. (not ~~Yes, please fill in me~~.)
2 Certainly, I'll follow them up later today. (not ~~Certainly, I'll follow up them later today~~.)
3 Yes, I'll fix something up for you for next week. *Or* Yes, I'll fix up something for next week.
Note that 'pencil in something' *or* 'pencil something in for next week' is also possible, but means that the arrangement is not yet definite.
4 Well, I've been doing it for years and I thought it was time to hand over to someone else. *Or* ... I thought it was time to step/stand down.
5 Sure, why don't we pencil it in for next Tuesday afternoon. (not ~~Sure, why don't we pencil in it for next Tuesday afternoon~~.)

45.4 *Author's answers:*

1 These are some of the tasks I have to carry out each day – reading and answering e-mails, filing and making phone calls.
2 I usually knock off at about 5 p.m.
3 Yes, most of the teachers at the language school where I used to work were laid off a few years ago.
4 I think you have to be well organised and good at getting on with other people in order to get ahead.
5 I filled in an application form and then had an interview with my current boss.

Unit 46

46.1 1 pile up 2 be snowed under 3 be tied up 4 slave away

46.2 *Suggested answers:*

1 I've been slaving away in a restaurant to pay for my studies.
2 Sorry, I was tied up all last week, so I couldn't go to any of the meetings.
3 Paperwork has just piled up recently. I don't know where to start.
4 I'm sorry I can't do the report this week. I'm just snowed under.

46.3 1 on 2 out of 3 away 4 in 5 up with

46.4

I need to chase ~~out~~ Gerald's report so that we can	up
keep things moving ~~away~~ with the European sales	along
campaign. I know he's been working ~~in~~ it and I	on
know he's been working ~~upwards~~ the same goals	towards
as all of us to branch ~~up~~ into new markets in Eutope,	out
but he's not good at sticking ~~for~~ things and you	at
need to keep ~~in~~ it with campaigns like this one.	at

Unit 47

47.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 The suspected criminal took out all the money from his bank account and has not been seen since.
2 As his girlfriend is in Australia, he runs up a huge phone bill every month.
3 The bill for the books we ordered came to $40.85.
4 I lent him €100 a year ago and he still hasn't paid me back. (not ... ~~paid back me~~.)
5 Now that I've lost my job we're going to have to cut back (on) what we spend on our weekly trip to the supermarket.
6 If you pay the restaurant bill with your credit card, I'll settle up with you later.

47.2 1 up 2 off 3 back 4 aside 5 down (Note that knockdown is written as one word.)

47.3 1 b 2 c 3 c 4 a 5 d

47.4 *Author's answers:*

1 I'm saving up for a new mounrain bike.
2 I usually take €200 out.
3 I'd expect it to come to about €150.
4 My mortgage is my biggest debt and I won't pay that off for years.
5 I might pick up second-hand books and CDs.

Unit 48

48.1 1 beat 2 fork 3 skimp 4 picked *or* snapped 5 sell

48.2 *Suggested answers:*

1 I could stock up on important foods such as bread, milk, fruit, vegetables and meat.
2 I could splash out on some new furniture.
3 I could ask him/her to knock something off the price.
4 I should shop around to find the best price.
5 I could suggest that we club together to buy her some flowers.

48.3
1 She became an Internet addict and ran **up** a huge telephone bill.
2 We were ripped off in that restaurant. They charged us for four desserts when we only had two.
3 He sold **off** his share in the business and went travelling round the world.
4 When he offered me his tennis racket for only $10 I snapped it **up** because it was still in excellent condition.
5 We had to fork **out** for a new washing machine because our old one broke down.

48.4
1 rip off someone or rip someone off: a rip-off
2 These verbs have noun forms:

pick up something/someone or pick something/someone up: a pick-up
Examples: It's an 8.30 a.m. pick-up tomorrow, so we'll have to get up at seven. [a car/taxi/bus will be coming to collect us]
He drives an old pickup and wears a cowboy hat. [small truck with an open back]
Economists are expecting a pick-up in house sales later this year. [an increase or improvement]
I thought she was just being friendly, then I realised it was a pick-up. [informal: attempt to form a sexual relationship with me]

sell off something or sell something off: a sell-off
Example: The company sell-off raised millions of pounds. [a sale of all or part of a business]

sell out something: a sell-out
Examples: The concert was a sell-out. [all the tickets were sold]
The workers were disappointed that the union had agreed to end the strike, and they called it a sell-out. [a betrayal of principles]

Unit 49

49.1 1 d 2 f 3 e 4 b 5 a 6 c

49.2 *Suggested answers:*
1 Henry: Yes, they've been pouring money into farming.
2 Jan: Yes, you're right. He started up around ten years ago. *Or* He set up his business about ten years ago.
3 Jamie: Yes, I'd put it at five million (euros). *Or* Yes, I'd say it runs to five ... *Or* Yes, I'd say their losses run into five ...
4 Lianne: Yes, they're setting up a branch there. *Or* Yes, they're starting up a branch there. (Note that set up sounds better than start up.)
5 Fiona: Yes, the upkeep is very expensive.

49.3 1 take over 2 hire out 3 turnover 4 outlet 5 set-up 6 run to

Unit 50

50.1
1 Hotel operator: If you want to **dial out**, you have to dial 9 first.
2 It's difficult to **get through** to the customer helpline in the mornings.
3 I'm sorry, he's out right now. Can you **ring back** (*or* **phone/call back**) at about five o'clock?
4 Carole **rang in** to say she's not feeling well.
5 Uncle: Hi! Fine thanks. Just a minute, I'll **put you** on to your **aunt** so you can tell her all the news. (*or* I'll **put your aunt** on so you ...)
6 I'll **get back to** you in a few days.

50.2

				1 C						
				5 U	2 P			3 R		
				6 T	H	R	O	U	G	4 H
					O			N		U
7 L	I	S	T	E	N	I	N	G		N
					E					G

50.3 speak up = speak more loudly

hold on = wait a moment

break up = If someone who is talking on a mobile phone is breaking up, their voice cannot fully be heard.

switch off = turn an electrical device off

charge up = put electricity into a device

50.4 *Suggested answers:*

1 Sorry, my mobile phone was switched off. *Or* Sorry, I'd switched off my mobile phone.
2 Sorry, the signal's breaking up and I can't hear what you're saying. *Or* Sorry, you're breaking up and I can't hear what you're saying.
3 Sorry, could you speak up? There's a lot of background noise.
4 Have you charged up your mobile phone?
5 Sorry, can you hold on just a minute?

Unit 51

51.1 Positive feelings – George, Mike and Anna
Negative feelings – Jill, Sue, Henry, Mary and Ken

51.2
1 The news that I didn't have to do the exam after all **cheered me up.**
2 Look, Joe. **Calm/cool down!** Getting angry won't solve the problem.
3 When she heard of her friend's death she **broke down** and wept.
4 She's (so) **hung up** about silly little problems at work.
5 I wish you'd **brighten up!** You're making me feel depressed! (You can also say: I wish you'd **cheer up**! using *cheer up* without an object.)

51.3
1 Yes, I'm beginning to warm to it too.
2 Sure, I'd jump at the chance.
3 I know – I do feel for them both.
4 Yes, I hope he pulls himself together before his next attempt.
5 Don't get carried away!
6 What more can we do to cheer her up?

51.4 1 broke 2 tear 3 pull 4 up 5 to
6 felt 7 down 8 hung 9 cheer

Unit 52

52.1 1 fallen 2 falling-out 3 chat 4 hit it *or* pair 5 chatting 6 for
7 on 8 fallen 9 fit 10 ask 11 hit it off *or* get along

52.2
1 My friend and I fell out last week because she thinks I'm in love with her boyfriend.
2 The new student was finding it difficult to fit in, as he was older than the other students.
3 When George met his new colleague he really fell for her and now he talks about her all the time.
4 Barry and David hit it off immediately when they were introduced.
5 That horrible man over there was trying to chat me up. Ugh!

52.3

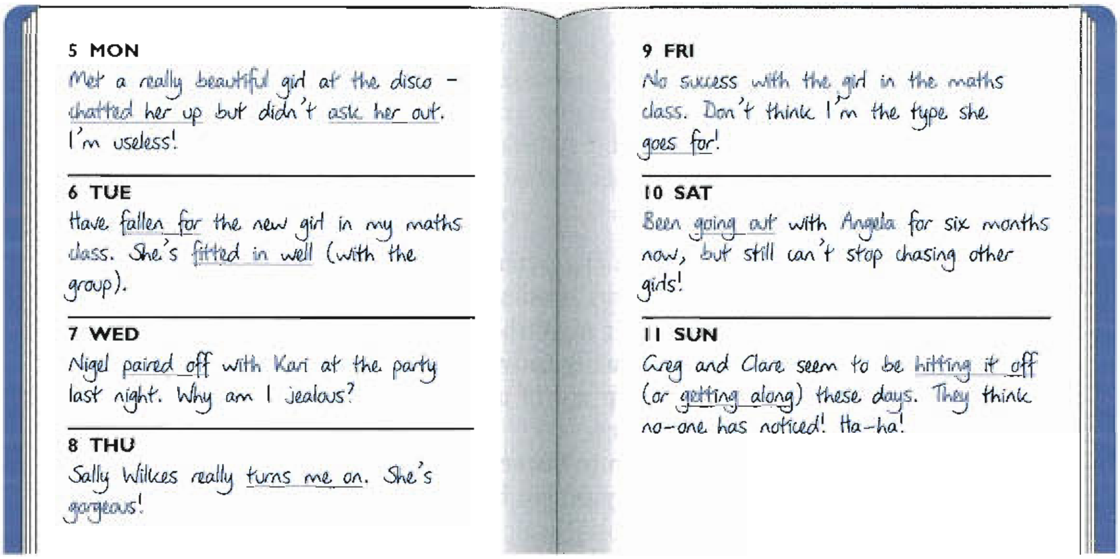

5 MON
Met a really beautiful girl at the disco – chatted her up but didn't ask her out. I'm useless!

6 TUE
Have fallen for the new girl in my maths class. She's fitted in well (with the group).

7 WED
Nigel paired off with Kari at the party last night. Why am I jealous?

8 THU
Sally Wilkes really turns me on. She's gorgeous!

9 FRI
No success with the girl in the maths class. Don't think I'm the type she goes for!

10 SAT
Been going out with Angela for six months now, but still can't stop chasing other girls!

11 SUN
Greg and Clare seem to be hitting it off (or getting along) these days. They think no-one has noticed! Ha-ha!

Unit 53

53.1 1 c 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 b 6 d

53.2
1 My sister and her husband **split up** last year.
2 Milly was very upset when her boyfriend **finished with her**. *Or* Milly was very upset when her boyfriend **broke up** with her.
3 We had been **growing apart** for a long time, so it was better to separate properly.

53.3
1 make up
2 ran off with
3 settle down
4 let, down
5 live, down
6 miss out
7 settle for
8 break off

Unit 54

54.1 1 Dermot 2 Gina 3 Geotge 4 Michael 5 Yvette 6 Yolanda

54.2
1 keeping, let
2 shut, keep
3 pin
4 talks
5 poured, opened, outpouring

54.3 1 let on 2 gone back 3 keeping 4 owned up 5 have it out with

Unit 55

55.1
1 carry on
2 takes after
3 drop out
4 handed down
5 live up to
6 become of
7 bringing up
8 pass for

55.2 *Author's answers:*

1 I was named after a character in a book.
2 I think I take after my mother in appearance.
3 I probably take after my father in character.
4 I think that girls usually grow up much faster than boys.
5 Someone might drop out of university because of ill health or because they were not enjoying their studies.
6 Someone might turn to crime if they need money to pay debts or buy drugs.
7 A girl I know is only fifteen but she could easily pass for twenty in both appearance and behaviour.
8 I have a tea service that has been handed down from my great-grandparents.
9 I think that mothers and fathers have equally important but different roles to play in bringing up their children.
10 I would like to carry on working for as long as possible as I enjoy working.

55.3
1 named
2 take
3 brought
4 live
5 dropping
6 become
7 turn
8 ended *or* wound
9 ended *or* wound
10 carried

Unit 56

56.1 1 down 2 off 3 up 4 up 5 up 6 off

56.2
1 I've had a sore throat for a week now – I just can't shake it off.
2 Meg hadn't eaten anything for 48 hours and so it wasn't surprising that she passed out in the middle of her gym lesson.
3 The doctors were afraid that the old man wouldn't survive the attack of pneumonia, but amazingly he pulled through and was soon on his feet again.
4 I think I'm coming down with a cold – I feel a bit shivery.

5 My thumb swelled up after I accidentally hit it with a hammer.
6 The sea was so rough that many people were throwing up over the side of the ship.
7 People usually write letters of condolence to the relatives of someone who has passed away/on.
8 The old lady is in great pain because she has put her hip out.
9 After the operation, her sister cared for her until she was completely recovered.
10 How do you think you came down with (*or* went down with) chicken pox?

56.3
1 Jim's uncle passed away last year.
2 Sonya is fighting off a bout of flu.
3 Rita is kept very busy caring for her elderly mother.
4 Mary's ankles swelled up during the long flight.
5 Most people usually slow down a bit as they get older.
6 I think Joe is going down with flu.

56.4 *Possible answers:*

1 When her great-aunt passed away Mary felt very sad.
2 Jack broke down when he failed his final exams.
3 The last time I threw up was after a party where I'd eaten too much.
4 You can get a blocked-up nose if you have a cold or an allergy.
5 Kate's finger swelled up after it was hit by a hockey ball.
6 The best way to fight off a cold is to stay in bed and drink a lot.

Unit 57

57.1
1 join in = participate
2 give in = surrender
3 go for = attempt to achieve
4 pull ahead = overtake
5 knock out = defeat

57.2
1 warm-up
2 knockout
3 burn off (*Work off* would also be possible in this context.)
4 work off
5 warm up
6 cool down

57.3 *Author's answers:*

1 I work out about four times a month. Usually I go to an aerobics class.
2 I might warm up by doing some gentle stretches and by running on the spot.
3 I'd be pleased because if I pulled ahead of the other runners it means that I am winning.
4 Tennis is better than table tennis at burning off calories because it is more energetic than table tennis.
5 I'd prefer to join in a snooker game as I'm not very good at football.
6 A top athlete would go for the gold medal.

57.4 *Suggested answers:*

1 The player or the team is kicking off. *Or* It is the kick-off.
2 The woman is burning off calories. *Or* The woman is working out on an exercise bike.
3 The athlete is warming up or is doing a warm-up. *Or* (if he has just done some sport) The athlete is cooling down.

57.5 1 told to leave 2 was defeated by 3 progressed

Unit 58

58.1 1 d 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 f

58.2
1 up
2 stay
3 lie
4 up, up
5 sleeping *or* lying
6 in
7 over
8 oversleep

58.3
1 waiting up *or* staying up
2 put her up *or* let her sleep over
3 oversleeping *or* sleeping in
4 move out
5 turn in
6 moved in together

Unit 59

59.1
1 He said I could **bring** Jane along if I liked.
2 He **asked** us **over/round** after the film. *Or* He invited us **around/round/over** after the film.
3 He said he would **pop in/**into the shop for some biscuits on the way home.
4 He said he loved **having** people **around/round/over**.
5 He said I could borrow the CD if his friend **brought** it **round** before my party.

59.2
1 My parents are always asking **after** you so I'll tell them your news next time I see them.
2 Do drop **in/round** some time when you're passing our house and have a cup of tea.
3 My uncle has invited me and a friend **out** to a smart restaurant to celebrate my birthday.
4 Of course you can bring your brother **along** when you come to our place tomorrow.
5 I often call **round** and see my grandmother on my way home from work.
6 I hope I'm not in trouble. The boss has just asked me to pop **in** to his office (*or* pop **into** his office).

59.3
1 a) The speaker has to go upstairs to Bill's office.
  b) The speaker has to go downstairs to Bill's office.
2 a) The speaker plans to invite Andy and Becky to a meal at his or her home.
  b) The speaker plans to take Andy and Becky for a meal in a restaurant.
3 a) This visit sounds a little more formal than the visit in (b) and the visitors may ring Peggy first to check that the time is convenient.
  b) This visit sounds more informal than the one suggested in (a) and Peggy is unlikely to know about it in advance.
4 a) The speaker is going to bring their niece to visit someone and may not stay during the visit.
  b) The speaker's niece is going to accompany the speaker on a visit.

59.4 *Possible answers:*

Do call round and see me any time you are in the area.
Pop in and have some supper with me one evening.
Please come over and have dinner with me next weekend.
Do come round this weekend. It'd be great to see you.

59.5 stand someone up = fail to meet someone on purpose, especially someone with whom you were starting to have a romantic relationship

tag along = go somewhere with a person, especially when they have not asked you to go with them

run across someone = meet someone you know when you are not expecting to meet them

Unit 60

60.1 1 top 2 heat 3 thaw 4 pour 5 hand

60.2 *Suggested answers:*

1 Philip: Yes, I think it's gone off.
2 Harry: Yes, we need something that will go (nicely) with it.
3 Jane: OK, I'll put them on.
4 Rickie: Yes, we'll have to make sure it doesn't boil over.
5 Dave: Good idea. It's ages since we last ate out.

60.3 1 be left over; noun: leftovers (Note that this noun is always plural.)
take away; noun: takeaway
top up; noun: top-up
2 hand round
3 live on *or* live off

60.4 1 leftovers 2 live on *or* live off 3 hand round *or* pass round 4 top-up
5 take it away 6 takeaway 7 was left over

60.5 *You can separate the verb and particle in the following sentences:*

1 Would you hand the peanuts round, please?
3 Don't forget to thaw the gateau out.

Unit 61

61.1
1 to cloud over
2 cool down
3 has picked up *or* is picking up
4 warmed up
5 clears up
6 brightens up *or* clears up

61.2
1 We were snowed in. We couldn't even open the front door.
2 We were flooded out. All our carpets were ruined.
3 The rain didn't let up. We ate our picnic in the car.
4 It cleared up later on. We went for a walk in the evening.
5 A strong wind picked up. Some trees got blown down.
6 The match was rained off. The teams were very disappointed.

61.3
1 downpour
2 let up *or* clear up *or* brighten up
3 flooded out
4 had blown over
5 were rained off
6 brightens up *or* clears up
7 cool down
8 warm up

61.4
1 more cheerful
2 angry
3 finish
4 better
5 more enjoyable
6 worried

Unit 62

62.1
1 Jack set off last Sunday. *Or* Jack set out last Sunday.
2 Jill got on the plane in Dubai.
3 My journey started off in a very exciting way.

62.2
1 start *or* set
2 standby
3 takes
4 get
5 touch
6 gets
7 check
8 stop
9 stop
10 get

62.3

phrasal verb	*noun/adjective form*	*example*
touch down	touchdown	The plane burst into flames on touchdown.
check in	check-in	There was a long queue at the check-in.
get away	getaway	Police are trying to trace the getaway car.
take off	take-off	Please fasten your seatbelts for take-off
stop over	stopover	We had a stopover in New York.

62.4 I set off for Waterloo Station at 11 a.m. and there I got on the midday Eurostar train to Paris. It **pulled out** exactly on time and soon we were in the Channel Tunnel. After a couple of hours we **pulled in** at Paris Gare du Nord station. Next day I **checked** out of my hotel and flew back. We **touched down** at Heathrow Airport at 11 a.m.

Unit 63

63.1
1 pull up *or* pull over
2 pick you up, drop you off
3 drew up *or* pulled up *or* pulled in
4 pulled up *or* drew up

63.2

words relating to moving and stopping the car	*words relating to accidents and traffic problems*	*words relating to transporting other people*
draw up	knock down	drop off
pull up	run over	pick up
pull over	pile-up	
pull in	tailback	
pull into		
pull out		

63.3 1 up 2 back 3 in 4 over 5 out 6 off

63.4 1 e 2 d 3 b 4 f 5 a 6 c

Unit 64

64.1 1 turn *or* switch 2 plug 3 turn *or* switch 4 charge 5 Turn

64.2 *Suggested answers:*

1 I'll **load up** the dishwasher for you. *Or* I'll **load** the dishwasher **up** for you.
2 **Play back** that tape you recorded at the concert. *Or* **Play** that tape you recorded at the concert **back**.
3 The mechanic **pumped up** the tyres while he was servicing the car. *Or* The mechanic **pumped** the tyres **up** while he was servicing the car.
4 The security alarm **went off** when we opened the door to the office.
5 I was driving up a steep hill when the engine **cut out**.
6 Could you **run off** thirty copies of this report for the meeting, please? *Or* Could you **run** thirty copies of this report **off** for the meeting, please?
7 We've just bought a breadmaking machine. All you do is **measure out** all the ingredients, put them in the machine and switch it on. *Or* All you do is **measure** all the ingredients **out**, put them in the machine and switch it on.
8 Don't switch on the vacuum cleaner until it is **plugged in**.

64.3 1 I couldn't hear what they were saying on the radio so I turned it **up**.
Note that you would *turn* it *down* if it was too loud rather than too quiet.
2 What must we do when the alarm bell **goes off**?
3 My mobile is low. Can I **charge it up** here?
4 Could you help me, please, by **loading up** the washing machine?
Note that a washing machine *fills up* with water, but it does this automatically.
5 It's very dark in here – do switch **on** the light.
Note that you would *switch off* the light if the room was very light rather than very dark.
6 Mel asked him to **measure out** 250 grams of butter.

Unit 65

65.1 *Suggested answers:*

log on
key in your report
back up your work (Note that some people may choose to print out their work before they back it up.)
print out your work
log off

65.2 1 zoom in, zoom out
2 picking up
3 scroll down
4 logged in/on
5 back-up
6 printout

65.3 1 c 2 c 3 d 4 a 5 b 6 d

65.4 You'd click on these icons when you want to:

1 zoom in or zoom out of a document
2 scroll across/up/down a document
3 print out a document
4 pick up e-mails

Unit 66

66.1 1 False. Although to *flare up* can be used of fires or violence, here the context clearly means it is violence which has suddenly occurred.
2 True
3 True
4 False. It has not been published, but people have discovered what the report contains because someone has unofficially or illegally released the information.
5 False. They have withdrawn from the trade agreement.
6 True

66.2

phrasal verb	*noun form*
crack down	crackdown
break out (from prison)	breakout
break out (war, disease, etc.)	outbreak
break through	breakthrough
hide away	hideaway
flare up	flare-up
look out for	lookout*

*A lookout can be either a person or a place.
There is also a noun *outlook*, which means prospect or view, but it comes from a different sense of the phrasal verb *look out*, namely have a view over, e.g.
Our hotel room looked out over a park.
The outlook for the economy is very bad.

66.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 Hey did you read that? A bomb **went off** in the capital last night, injuring six people.
2 Did you read that? Riots have broken **out** between the Northern tribes and the Southern League.
3 Did you see that? The Phrasalian rebels are beginning to **step up** their attacks on military bases.
Or The Phrasalian rebels are beginning to **step** their attacks on military bases **up**. (Note that this sounds more awkward than the first version.)
4 Have you beard? The teachers' union has **broken off** talks with local government officials.
Or The teachers' union has **broken** talks off with local government officials. (Note that this sounds more awkward than the first version.)
5 The police are advising villagers to **look out** for anything suspicious.
6 Wow! There's been a **breakout** at (*or* from) Gilston High Security Prison.

Unit 67

67.1 1 An old man was beaten up in his own home yesterday.
2 The thieves walked off with some priceless antique silver.
3 The burglars broke into the house by a side window.
4 The prisoner managed to break out in broad daylight.
5 The thieves held up a local bank yesterday.

67.2 1 The man is holding up a bank or shop.
2 The judge is letting a criminal off. *Or* The judge is letting off a criminal.
3 He's ripping off the police. *Or* He's tipping the police off.
4 She's leaning on someone. *Or* She's putting someone up to something.

67.3 1 mixed up
2 putting him up
3 lean on *or* be leaning on
4 taken in *or* led on
5 let him off

67.4 1 c 2 b 3 d 4 a

Unit 68

68.1 1 stood, clamp
2 broke, entered
3 carried, bring
4 standing, sticking

68.2 1 Politician: No, we are determined to **go ahead** with our proposals.
2 Politician: We intend to **do away** with out-of-date committees and to modernise the whole committee structure to make it more efficient.
3 Politician: No, I do not. I and her many supporters are determined to **stick by** her in the face of these appalling and unfair attacks from the press.
4 Politician: Yes, the party fully backs Mr Carson **up**.

68.3 1 The People's Purple Party believes that the monarchy should be **done away** with.
2 The PPP aims to **bring in** legislation banning fox hunting.
Or The PPP aims to **bring** legislation **in** banning fox hunting.
3 The PPP is determined to **clamp down on** smoking in public places.
4 The leader of the PPP says nothing will stop the Party **carrying out** its aims.
Or The leader of the PPP says nothing will stop the Party **carrying** its aims **out**.
5 He swears he will do all he can to **stand up** for the principles the PPP supports.
6 The PPP has got the **go-ahead** to hold a demonstration next week.

Unit 69

69.1 1 Would you like to wash up? Sure. Where's the restroom?
2 What's wrong with the TV? Dunno. I can't figure out why it's not working.
3 Why is she so upset? Her parents have just bawled her out.
4 Where will you buy your new TV? Dunno. I'll call around a few places.
5 Where's Jo gone? To visit with some friends.
6 Why d'you think you failed the test? Because I goofed off so much.

69.2 1 shot through 2 got into 3 belt into 4 barrack for

69.3 1 I expect your grandmother will want to wash up when she arrives.
2 The teacher got into me for doing such a bad essay.
3 Will lost his job for goofing off to go to a concert.
4 Suzie belted into the spring cleaning and the house was soon transformed.
5 Could you call around to find the cheapest place to rent a car?
6 I can't figure out why he's behaving so oddly.
7 He shot through last month and the police have been looking for him ever since.

8 I'll be ready soon. Wait up!
9 I'm visiting with my aunt at the weekend. Would you like to come too?

Unit 70

70.1

1 bliss
2 out
3 sexing
4 buy
5 bigged
6 cashback
7 out
8 burnout

70.2 *Suggested answers:*

1 The e-mail will probably bounce back (to you).
2 veg out
3 chill out
4 You might feel stressed-out and you might suffer from burnout.
5 cashback
6 big
7 bliss out
8 a dress-down day
9 You could text them back.
10 veg out, chill out, bliss out
11 bounce back, text back, cashback
12 stressed-out, burnout

70.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 Yes, it'll be great to just veg out! *Or* Yes, it'll be great to just chill out.
2 Sure, I'll text you back.
3 I don't buy into it at all. *Or* It might help us to chill out more.
4 No, I'm (all) partied out.
5 I did but it bounced back to me.
6 I know! She should learn to chill out. *Or* Yes, she's far too stressed-out.
7 It's a dress-down day!
8 Oh, they really bigged it up.

Mini dictionary

The numbers in the Mini dictionary are ***Unit*** *numbers not page numbers.*

allow for sth to consider or include something when you are making plans or judging a situation *37*

answer (sb) back if someone, especially a child, answers back, or answers someone back, they reply rudely to someone they should be polite to *20*

ask after sb/sth to ask for information about someone, especially about their health *59*

ask out sb ***or*** **ask sb out** to invite someone to come with you to a place such as the cinema or a restaurant, especially as a way of starting a romantic relationship *1, 52*

ask sb over/round to invite someone to come to your house *1, 59*

back down to admit that you are wrong or that you have been defeated, often because you are forced to *38*

back off to stop being involved in a situation, especially in order to allow other people to deal with it themselves *34*

back onto sth if a building backs onto something, its back faces that thing *24*

back out to decide not to do something that you were going to do or that you had agreed to do *38*

back up (sth) ***or*** **back (sth) up** to make a copy of computer information so that you do not lose it *65*

back up sb ***or*** **back sb up** to say that someone is telling the truth *38*

back up sb ***or*** **back sb up** to support or help someone *68*

back-up *n* an extra copy of computer information *65*

bang into sth to knock against something, usually by accident *21*

bank on sth to depend on something happening *34*

bargain for/on sth to expect something to happen and be prepared for it *37*

barrack for sb *informal, American & Australian* to shout encouragement to the players in a football team *69*

bash sth/sb about to treat something or someone in a rough way *18*

bawl out sb ***or*** **bawl sb out** *informal, American &Australian* to tell someone angrily that something they have done is wrong *69*

be booked up if an event, person, or place is booked up, they have no space or time available for someone *33*

be caught up in sth to be involved in a situation, often when you do not want to be *34*

be cut off to be a long way from other places and people *24*

be dying for sth *informal* to want something very much, especially food or drink *19*

be getting at sth *informal* if you ask someone what they are getting at, you are asking them what they mean, usually because they have expressed something indirectly *7*

be hung up *informal* to be very worried about something and spend a lot of time thinking about it *51*

be left over if an amount of money or food is left over, it remains when the rest has been used or eaten *60*

be left over to exist from an earlier time *23*

be littered with sth if something is littered with a particular type of thing, it has or contains a lot of that thing *32*

be mixed up in sth *informal* to be involved in an illegal or unpleasant activity *67*

be partied out *informal* to have had enough of parties because you have been to so many *70*

be playing at sth if you ask what someone is playing at, you ask what they are doing, in a way which shows that you are surprised and angry *40*

be pressed for sth to have very little or not enough of something, especially time or money *22*

be put out to be annoyed, often because of something that someone has done or said to you *11*

be rained off if a sport or other outside activity is rained off, it cannot start or continue because it is raining *61*

be set against sth/doing sth to be opposed to doing or having something *37*

be snowed in if a person or place is snowed in, there is so much snow that it is impossible to travel anywhere or leave that place *61*

be snowed under *informal* to have so much work that you have problems dealing with it *46*

be spread out if people or things are spread out, they are in different parts of a large area and are not close together *24*

be taken up with sth to be very busy doing something *12*

be thrown together if people are thrown together in a situation, that situation causes them to meet each other and to get to know each other *34*

be tied up *informal* to be busy so that you are unable to see or speak to anyone else or go anywhere *46*

be tucked away to be in a quiet or hidden place which not many people see or go to *24*

beat down sb/sth ***or*** **beat sb/sth down** to force someone to reduce the price of something *48*

beat up sb *or* **beat sb up** to hurt someone badly by hitting or kicking them again and again *67*

become of sb/sth if you ask what became of someone or something, you want to know where they are and what happened to them *55*

belt into sth *Australian* to begin to do something quickly and with a lot of effort *69*

Belt up! *informal, British & Australian* something that you say angrily to someone in order to tell them to be quiet *41*

bend over backwards to do sth to try extremely hard to do something to help or please someone *30*

big up sb/sth *informal* to talk a lot about how excellent someone or something is, sometimes praising them more than is deserved *70*

bite back to do something bad to someone because they have done something bad to you *20*

bite back sth *or* **back sth back** to stop yourself from saying something that shows your real feelings or thoughts *20*

blend in *or* **blend into sth** if something or someone blends in, they look or seem the same as the things or people around them and so you do not notice them *32*

bliss (sb) out *informal* to become or make someone become totally happy and relaxed *70*

blocked-up *adj* filled with something so that nothing can pass through [used of a narrow space] *4, 56*

blow down (sth) *or* **blow (sth) down** if something blows down, or if the wind blows something down, that thing falls to the ground because the wind blows it *17*

blow over if a storm blows over, it becomes less strong and then ends *61*

blow over if an unpleasant situation [e.g. argument] blows over, it gradually becomes less important and is then forgotten *26*

blow up (sth/sb) *or* **blow (sth/sb) up** to destroy something or kill someone with a bomb, or to be destroyed or killed with a bomb *5*

blow up sth *or* **blow sth up** to fill something [e.g. balloon, tyre] with air *5, 29*

blow up *informal* to suddenly become very angry *5*

boil over if a liquid that is being heated boils over, it flows over the side of the pan *17, 60*

booked up if an event, person, or place is booked up, they have no space or time available for someone *33*

bottle out *informal, British* to suddenly decide not to do something because you are afraid *36*

bottle up sth *or* **bottle sth up** *informal* to not allow yourself to show or talk about your feelings, especially feelings of anger and sadness *51*

bounce back if an e-mail bounces back, it comes back to you because the address is wrong or there is a computer problem *70*

branch out to start to do something different from what you usually do, especially in your job *46*

break away to stop being part of a group because you disagree with them or because you do not want to be controlled by them *68*

break down if a machine or vehicle breaks down, it stops working *1, 2*

break down to be unable to control your feelings and to start to cry *51*

break down to become mentally or physically ill because of an unpleasant experience *56*

break in to get into a building or car by using force, usually in order to steal something *4*

break into sth to get into a building or car by using force, usually in order to steal something *67*

break-in *n* when someone forces their way into a building or car, usually to steal something *4, 67*

break off (sth) *or* **break (sth) off** to stop doing something *28*

break off (sth) *or* **break (sth) off** if discussions between two groups of people break off, or if someone breaks them off, they end suddenly, before they have been completed *66*

break off to suddenly stop speaking *15*

break off sth *or* **break sth off** to end a relationship *53*

break off with sb to end a romantic relationship with someone *53*

break out if something dangerous and unpleasant [e.g. war, disease, fire] breaks out, it suddenly starts *66* **outbreak** *n* when something unpleasant or difficult to control starts, such as war or disease *66*

break out to escape from prison *67*

breakout *n* an escape *66, 67*

break through sth to succeed in dealing with a problem or difficult situation *66*

breakthrough *n* an important discovery or success that helps you achieve or deal with something *4, 66*

break up if a marriage breaks up, or if two people who have a romantic relationship break up, their marriage or relationship ends *53*

break-up *n* the act or event of breaking up *53*

break up if schools or universities, or the people who study or work in them break up, classes end and the holidays start *43*

break up if someone who is talking on a mobile phone is breaking up, their voice cannot be heard *50*

brighten up if the weather brightens up, the sky becomes lighter and the sun starts to shine *61*

brighten up to suddenly look or feel happier *51*

brighten up sth *or* **brighten sth up** to make somewhere more attractive, often by adding colours *24*

bring about sth *or* **bring sth about** to make something happen *25*

bring along sb/sth *or* **bring sb/sth along** to bring someone or something somewhere *59*

bring around/round sb/sth *or* **bring sb/sth around/round** to bring someone or something somewhere, especially to someone's house *59*

bring sb around/round to persuade someone to agree with you or to do what you want them to do *39*

bring back sth *or* **bring sth back** to make someone remember or think about something from the past *1, 25*

bring down sb *or* **bring sb down** to cause people in positions of power [e.g. government, president] to lose their position *66*

bring forward sth *or* **bring sth forward** to change the date or time of an event so that it happens earlier than planned *22*

bring in sth *or* **bring sth in** if a government or organisation brings in something new [e.g. law, rule], they make it exist for the first time *68*

bring off sth *or* **bring sth off** to succeed in doing something difficult *27*

bring round/around sb/sth *or* **bring sb/sth round/around** see **bring around/round**

bring up sb *or* **bring sb up** to look after a child and educate them until they are old enough to look after themselves *55*

bring up sth *or* **bring sth up** to start to talk about a particular subject *1, 31*

brush aside sb/sth *or* **brush sb/sth aside** to refuse to listen to what someone says, or to refuse to think about something seriously *2, 39*

brush up (on) sth to practise and improve your skills or your knowledge of something that you learned in the past but have partly forgotten *43*

bubble over to be very excited and enthusiastic *31*

build on sth to use a success or achievement as a base from which to achieve more success *27*

bump into sb to meet someone you know when you had not planned to meet them *21*

burn off sth *or* **burn sth off** to use or get rid of energy or something which provides energy [e.g. calories, fat], by doing a lot of physical exercise *57*

burnout *n* illness or extreme tiredness because you have been working too hard *70*

burst into sth to suddenly start to make a noise, especially to start crying, laughing or singing *21*

butt in to interrupt a conversation or discussion or someone who is talking *31*

buy into sth *informal* to completely believe in a set of ideas *70*

bygone *adj* from the past *23*

bystander *n* a person who sees something happening but who is not involved *4*

call around *American* to telephone several people, often in order to find out information *69*

call back to go back to a place in order to visit someone or collect something that you were unable to visit or collect earlier *24*

call back (sb) *or* **call (sb) back** to telephone someone for the second time or to telephone someone who rang you earlier *20, 50*

call for sth to need or deserve a particular action or quality *36*

call for sth to say that you think a particular thing should be done, usually in order to change or improve a situation *39*

call for sb to visit a place in order to collect someone *19*

call in *British & American* to visit a place or person for a short time, usually while you are going somewhere else *16*

call off sth *or* **call sth off** to decide that a planned event or activity will not happen, especially because it is no longer possible or useful *1, 2, 33*

call off sth *or* **call sth off** to decide to stop an activity that has already started *5, 28*

call round *British & American* to visit someone who lives near to you for a short time *59*

calm down (sb) *or* **calm (sb) down** to stop feeling upset, angry, or excited, or to make someone stop feeling this way *51*

calm down (sth) *or* **calm (sth) down** if a situation calms down, or if you calm it down, it becomes more peaceful *34*

can't/couldn't get over sth if someone can't get over something, they are very surprised or shocked that something has happened or that something is true *7*

care for sb to look after someone who is too young, too old, or too ill to look after themselves *56*

carried away to become so excited about something that you do not control what you say or do and you forget about everything else *51*

carry on to continue doing something *55*

carry out sth *or* **carry sth out** to do or complete something, especially something important *45*

carry out sth *or* **carry sth out** if you carry out something that you said you would do, or that you have been told to do [e.g. instructions, order, threat], you do it *68*

cashback *n* money from your bank account that you can get from a shop when you buy goods with a debit card *70*

catch on to become popular *27*

catch up to reach someone in front of you by going faster than them *27*

catch up to reach the same quality or standard as someone or something else *42*

catch up on/with sth to do something you did not have time to do earlier *46*

catch up with sb to meet someone you know, after not seeing them for a period of time *19*

caught up in sth to be involved in a situation, often when you do not want to be *34*

changeover *n* a complete change from one system or method to another *4, 26*

charge up sth *or* charge sth up if you charge up a piece of electrical equipment, you put electricity into it *50, 64*

chase up sb *or* chase sb up to ask someone to do something that they said they would do but that they have not done yet *46*

chase up sth *or* chase sth up to try to get something that belongs to you or that you need, or to try to discover more information about something *2*

chat up sb *or* chat sb up *informal, British & Australian* to talk to someone in a way that shows them that you are sexually attracted to them and to try to make them attracted to you *52*

chat-up *n informal* a way of talking which suggests you are sexually attracted to someone and want them to be attracted to you *52*

check in to show your ticket at an airport so that you can be told where you are sitting and so that your bags can be put on the aircraft *62*

check-in *n* the place at an airport where you go to say that you have arrived for your flight *4, 62*

check in *or* check into sth to arrive at a hotel and say who you are so that you can be given a key for your room *62*

check out to leave a hotel after paying and giving back the key of your room *62*

checkout *n* the place where you pay for things in a big shop *4*

check over sth/sb *or* check sth/sb over to examine something or someone to make sure that they are correct, healthy or working properly *17*

check up on sb to discover what someone is doing in order to be certain that they are doing what they should be doing or what they said they would do *35*

cheer up (sb) *or* cheer (sb) up if someone cheers up, or if someone or something cheers them up, they start to feel happier *51*

chicken out *informal* to decide not to do something you had planned to do because you are too frightened *37*

chill out *informal* to relax completely, or not allow things to upset you *70*

chop down sth *or* chop sth down to cut through a tree or a group of trees so that they fall to the ground *17*

chop up sth *or* chop sth up to cut something, especially food, into small pieces *13*

clamp down if someone in authority clamps down, they do something in order to stop or limit a particular activity *68*

clampdown *n* a sudden action taken by a government or people in authority to stop or limit a particular activity *68*

clear off *informal* to leave a place quickly *15*

clear out sth *or* clear sth out to make a place tidy by removing things that are unwanted *14*

clear up (sth) *or* clear (sth) up to make a place tidy and clean, especially by putting things where they usually belong *5, 13*

clear up if the weather clears up, it improves *61*

clock in/on to record the time you arrive at work, usually on a machine with a clock *22*

clock off/out to record the time you leave work, usually on a machine with a clock *22*

clog up (sth) *or* clog (sth) up if something [e.g. road, pipe] clogs up, or if something clogs it up, it becomes blocked and nothing in it is able to move *13*

close down (sth) *or* close (sth) down if a business or organisation closes down, or if someone or something closes it down, it stops doing business *17*

cloud over if the sky clouds over, it becomes covered with clouds *61*

club together if a group of people club together, they share the cost of something between them *48*

come about when you say how or why something comes about, especially something which is not planned, you explain how or why it happens *6*

come across sth/sb to discover something by chance, or to meet someone by chance *1, 6*

come along to arrive at a place *6*

come apart if something comes apart, it separates into pieces *6*

come around/round to visit someone at their house *2, 59*

come around/round to become conscious again *2, 6*

come back to sth to start talking about a particular subject again *31*

come down to sth if a situation or decision comes down to something, that is the thing that will influence it most *6*

come down with sth to become ill, usually with a disease that is not very serious *56*

come off to happen successfully or as planned *6, 27*

Come off it! *informal* something that you say in order to tell someone that you do not believe them or that you disagree with them *41*

Come on! something that you say to someone in order to encourage them to do something you want them to do, especially to hurry up, to try harder, or to tell you something *41*

come out if dirt or colour comes out of something, especially clothing or cloth, it disappears or becomes less strong after being in water *6*

come out if someone who has been in prison or hospital comes out, they leave *6*

come out if something that is published [e.g. book, newspaper], a musical recording [e.g. single, album], or a film comes out, it becomes available for people to buy or see it *14*

come out if the truth about something comes out, it becomes known publicly after it has been kept secret *6*

come out if results or information come out, they are given to people *6*

come over to visit someone at their house *59*

come round/around see **come around/round**

come to sth to be a particular total when amounts or numbers are added together *47*

come to sth if you come to a decision or a conclusion, you make a decision about something, or you decide what you think about something *6*

come under sth if a piece of information comes under a particular part of a list, book, or collection of things, you can find it in that part *35*

come up if a subject [e.g. issue, name] comes up in a conversation, it is discussed or mentioned *6*

come up if a job or opportunity comes up, it becomes available *6*

come up if a problem or difficult situation comes up, it happens when you do not expect it *6*

come up if a question or a subject comes up in an exam, that question is asked or questions about that subject are asked in the exam *43*

come up against sth/sb to have to deal with a difficult situation or someone who disagrees with you or tries to stop you doing what you want to do *1, 6*

come up with sth to think of or to suggest a plan or idea, a solution to a problem, or an answer to a question *36*

cool down (sb/sth) *or* **cool (sb/sth) down** to become cooler, or to make someone or something become cooler *57, 61*

cool down/off (sb/sth) *or* **cool (sb/sth) down/off** to become calmer, or to make someone or something become calmer *51, 61*

could do with sth/sb to need or want something or someone *19*

I could do without sth *informal* something you say when something is annoying you or causing problems for you, because your situation at that time makes it difficult for you to deal with it *37*

couldn't ask for sb/sth if you say that you couldn't ask for someone or something better, you mean that that person or thing is the best of their kind *19*

count on/upon sb to have confidence in someone because you know that they will do what you want *16*

cover-up *n* an attempt to stop people discovering the truth about something bad *4*

crack down if someone in authority [e.g. police, government] cracks down, they start treating people much more strictly in order to try to stop them from doing things they should not do *17, 66*

crackdown *n* when bad or illegal behaviour is dealt with in a very severe way, in order to stop it happening *66*

cram in/into if a lot of people or animals cram in or cram into a place, they all go into it even though it is too small for all of them and becomes very full *33*

crop up if a problem crops up, it suddenly happens, often when it is not expected *34*

crop up if something, especially a word, crops up, it appears, often in something that you read, hear, or see *44*

cross out sth *or* **cross sth out** to draw a line through something that you have written, usually because it is wrong *42*

cut back (sth) *or* **cut (sth) back** to reduce the amount of money that is being spent on something *47*

cutback *n* a reduction in the amount of money that is being spent on something *4*

cut down sth *or* **cut sth down** if you cut down a tree or a bush, you make it fall to the ground by cutting it near the bottom *17*

cut down to eat or drink less of a particular thing, usually in order to improve your health *17*

cut down sth *or* **cut sth down** to reduce the amount or number of something *28*

cut off sb *or* **cut sb off** to stop people from continuing a telephone conversation by breaking the telephone connection *50*

cut off sb/sth *or* **cut sb/sth off** to prevent people from reaching a place or leaving a place *2*

cut off to be a long way from other places and people *24*

cut out sth *or* **cut sth out** to remove something by cutting, especially something made of paper or cloth *2, 14*

cut out sth *or* **cut sth out** to remove part of a piece of writing *44*

cut out if an engine, machine, or piece of equipment cuts out, it suddenly stops working *2, 64*

date back to have existed since a particular time *23*

dawn on/upon sb if a fact dawns on you, you realise or understand something after a period of time when you did not realise or understand it *36*

deal with sth to take action in order to achieve something, or in order to solve a problem *31, 36*

deal with sth if something [e.g. book, film, article] deals with a particular subject or idea, it is about that subject or idea *19*

depend on/upon sth/sb to trust someone or something and know that they will help you or do what you expect them to do *16*

dial out to use a telephone in order to call someone in another building *50*

die for sth *informal* see **be dying for sth** *19*

dip into sth to read small parts of a book or magazine *44*

divide up (sth) *or* **divide (sth) up** to separate something into smaller parts or groups, or to form smaller parts or groups *13*

do away with sth to get rid of something, or to stop using something *1, 68*

do up sth *or* **do sth up** to fasten something *32*

do with → could do with sth/sb to need or want something or someone *19*

do without (sth/sb) to manage without something or someone *37* see **I could do without sth/sb**

downfall *n* the sudden failure of a person or organisation, or something that causes this *4, 27*

downpour *n* a sudden, heavy fall of rain *61*

doze off *informal* to gradually start to sleep, especially during the day *15*

drag on if an unpleasant or difficult situation or process drags on, it continues for too long *23*

draw on/upon sth to use information or your knowledge or experience of something to help you do something *35*

draw up if a vehicle, or someone in a vehicle, draws up, they arrive somewhere and stop *63*

dress up (sb) *or* **dress (sb) up** to put on formal or special clothes for a special occasion, or to put them on someone else *2, 32*

dress-down *adj* used about an occasion when you wear less formal clothes than normal *70*

drift apart if two friends drift apart, they gradually become less friendly and their relationship ends *53*

drink up (sth) *or* **drink (sth) up** to completely finish your drink *13*

drop around/round *informal* to make a short visit to someone in their home, usually without arranging it before *59*

drop around/round sth *or* **drop sth around/round** *informal* to deliver something, usually something small *59*

drop in to make a short visit to someone in their home, usually without arranging it before *59*

drop off sb/sth *or* **drop sb/sth off** to take someone to a place that they want to go to, or to deliver something to a place, usually in a car, often when you are going somewhere else *63*

drop off sth *or* **drop sth off** to take someone to a place that they want to go to, or to deliver something to a place, usually in a car, often when you are going somewhere else *1*

drop out if a student drops out, they stop going to classes before they have finished their course *4, 43, 55*

dropout *n* a person who leaves school or college before finishing a course *4*

drop round/around see **drop around/round**

dry up if a supply of something dries up, it ends *28*

dry up to stop speaking when you are acting or making a speech, especially because you suddenly forget what to say next *31*

dying for sth *informal* to want something very much, especially food or drink *19*

eat out to eat a meal in a restaurant, not at home *1, 60*

eat up sth *or* **eat sth up** to eat all the food you have been given *13*

e-mail back (sb) *or* **e-mail (sb) back** to send a reply to someone by e-mail, usually a reply to an e-mail someone has sent you *20*

end up to finally be in a particular place, state, or situation, especially without having planned it *55*

end up doing sth to finally do something, especially without having planned to *55*

enter into sth to start to become involved in something, especially a discussion *21*

enter into sth if you enter into an agreement, you officially agree to something *68*

face up to sth to accept that a difficult or unpleasant situation exists *36*

fall apart if something falls apart, it breaks or breaks into pieces because it is old or weak *30*

fall behind (sth/sb) to fail to develop at the same rate as something else, or to fail to achieve a standard reached by other people *42*

fall down to fall to the ground *29*

fall down to fail because of not being satisfactory for a particular purpose *4* **downfall** *n* the sudden failure of a person or organisation, or something that causes this *4, 27*

fall for sb/sth *informal* to be attracted to someone or something *52*

fall for sth to be tricked into believing something that is not true *2, 39*

fall out to argue with someone and stop being friendly with them *38, 52*

falling-out *n informal* an argument *52*

fall over if someone falls over, they fall to the ground *3, 17*

fall through if a plan or agreement falls through, it fails to happen *27*

feel for sb to feel sorry for someone because they are very unhappy or in a difficult situation *51*

fight back to defend yourself when someone or something attacks you or causes problems for you *30*

fight off sth *or* fight sth off to try hard to get rid of something unpleasant or unwanted, especially an illness or bad emotions *56*

figure out sth *or* figure sth out *American* to understand something or someone, or to find the answer to something by thinking carefully *69*

fill in sth *or* fill sth in to write the necessary information on an official document [e.g. form, questionnaire] *44*

fill in sb *or* fill sb in to tell someone about the things that have happened while they have not been there, or to give someone the information they need in order to do something *45*

fill out sth *or* fill sth out to write the necessary information on an official document [e.g. form, questionnaire] *44*

fill up (sth) *or* fill (sth) up to become full, or to make something become full *26*

find out (sth) *or* find (sth) out to get information about something because you want to know more about it, or to learn a fact or piece of information for the first time *35*

finish off sth *or* finish sth off to complete the last part of something that you are doing *28*

finish with sb *informal, British & Australian* to end a romantic relationship with someone *53*

Fire away! *informal* something that you say in order to tell someone that you are ready for them to start asking you questions, or to start speaking *41*

fit in to feel happy in a group of people because you are similar to them *52*

fit in sb/sth *or* fit sb/sth in to find time to do something or see someone *22*

fix up sb/sth *or* fix sb/sth up to provide or arrange something for someone *45*

fizzle out to gradually end or disappear, especially in a disappointing way *28*

flare up if something [e.g. violence, argument, anger] flares up, it suddenly happens and becomes very serious *66*

flick through sth to look briefly at the pages of something [e.g. book, magazine] *20*

flip through sth to look briefly at the pages of something [e.g. book, magazine] *20*

flood out sb *or* flood sb out to force someone to leave their home because of floods *61*

follow up sth *or* follow sth up to do something in order to make the effect of an earlier action or thing stronger or more certain *45*

fool around to spend time having fun or behaving in a silly way *18*

fork out sth *or* fork sth out *informal* to pay or give money for something, especially when you do not want to *48*

freshen up to quickly wash yourself so that you feel clean *32, 69*

get across sth *or* get sth across to successfully communicate an idea to other people *31*

get ahead to be successful in the work that you do *45*

get along if two or more people get along, they like each other and are friendly to each other *52*

get around/round sth to find a way of dealing with or avoiding a problem *7*

get around/round to sth/doing sth to do something that you have intended to do for a long time *7*

get at sth see **be getting at sth** *7*

get away to leave a place or person, often when the situation makes it difficult for you to do this *2, 7*

get away to go somewhere to have a holiday, especially because you need to rest *62*

getaway *adj* used to escape something or someone *62*

get away with sth/doing sth to succeed in not being criticised or punished for something wrong that you have done *7*

get away with sth/doing sth to do something successfully even though it is not the best way of doing it *1, 7*

get sth back *or* get back sth if you get something back, something that you had before is given to you again *47*

get back to sb if you get back to someone, you talk to them, usually on the telephone, in order to give them some information that they have asked you for, or because you were not able to speak to them before *50*

get behind if you get behind with work or with payments, you have not done as much work or paid as much money as you should by a particular time *7*

get by to have just enough money to pay for the things that you need, but nothing more *7*

get carried away to become so excited about something that you do not control what you say or do and you forget about everything else *51*

get down to sth/doing sth to start doing something seriously and with a lot of your attention and effort *5*

get in if a train, plane, or other vehicle gets in at a particular time, that is when it arrives *62*
get into sb *informal, Australian* to criticise someone *69*
get mixed up in sth to become involved in an illegal or bad activity *67*
get off (sth) to leave a bus, train, aircraft, or boat *62*
get on (sth) to go onto a bus, train, aircraft, or boat *2, 5, 62*
get on if two or more people get on, they like each other and are friendly to each other *2, 5, 7*
get on to continue doing something, especially work *5, 7*
get on to/onto sth to start talking about a subject after discussing something else *31*
get out to move out of a vehicle *63*
get out of sth/doing sth to avoid doing something that you should do, often by giving an excuse *34*
get over sth to begin to feel better after an experience that has made you unhappy *17, 26*
get over see **can't/couldn't get over sth**
get sth over with to do and complete something difficult or unpleasant that must be done *7*
get round/around see **get around/round**
get through to manage to talk to someone on the telephone *1, 50*
get through to sb to succeed in making someone understand or believe something *31*
get to sb *informal* to make someone feel upset or angry *38*
get together (sb) or get (sb) together if two or more people get together, or if someone gets two or more people together, they meet in order to do something or spend time together *7*
get (sb) up to wake up and get out of bed, or to make someone do this *58*
getting at sth *informal* if you ask someone what they are getting at, you are asking them what they mean, usually because they have expressed something indirectly *7*
give away sth or give sth away to give something to someone without asking for payment *47*
give in to finally agree to what someone wants after a period when you refuse to agree *2, 38*
give in to accept that you have been defeated and agree to stop competing or fighting *57*
give in sth or give sth in to give a piece of written work or a document to someone for them to read, judge, or deal with *2, 42*
give out sth or give sth out to give something to a large number of people *42*
give up (sth) or give (sth) up if you give up a habit [e.g. smoking, drinking] or give up something unhealthy [e.g. cigarettes, alcohol], you stop doing it or having it *26*
give up sth or give sth up to stop doing a regular activity or a job *28*
give up (sth/doing sth) or give (sth) up to stop doing an activity or piece of work before you have completed it, usually because it is too difficult *28*
give up to stop trying to think of the answer to a joke or question *35*
go about sth/doing sth to start to do something or deal with something *8*
go about doing sth if someone goes about doing something for a long time, they spend their time behaving badly or doing something that is unpleasant for other people *8*
go against sth/sb to do the opposite of what someone has asked or advised you to do *2*
go ahead to start to do something *68*
go-ahead *n* permission for something to start *68*
go along with sth/sb to support an idea, or to agree with someone's opinion *8*
go back if schools or students go back, the schools are open and the students start going to lessons again after the holidays *43*
go back sth *informal* if people go back a number of years, they have been friends for that many years or since that time *20*
go back on sth to not do something that you promised or said you would do *54*
go by if time goes by, it passes *23* **bygone** *adj* from the past *23*
go down to become lower in level *2*
go down with sth *informal, British* to become ill, usually with a disease that is not very serious *56*
go for sth to choose something *8*
go for sth to try to get or achieve something *19, 57*
go for sb/sth to like a particular type of thing or person *52*
go forward to win one stage of a competition and compete in another stage *57*
go in for sth to compete in a competition, or to do an exam *8*
go into sth to describe, discuss, or examine something in a detailed way *21*
go off to leave a place and go somewhere else *8*
go off if food or drink goes off, it is not good to eat or drink any more because it is too old *8, 60*
go off if a warning device [e.g. alarm] goes off, it suddenly makes a loud noise *64*
go off if a bomb or gun goes off, it explodes or fires *66*
go on to continue to exist or happen *8*
go on to continue doing something *8*
go on to happen *8*
goings-on *n* strange or amusing events *4*
go on to talk in an annoying way about something for a long time *8*

Go on! *informal* something that you say to encourage someone to do something *8, 41*

go out if a light goes out, it stops giving light *8*

go out *British* to lose when you are playing in a sports competition, so that you must stop playing in the competition *57*

go out with sb to have a romantic relationship with someone *52*

go over sth to talk or think about something in order to explain it or make sure that it is correct *17*

go through sth to experience an unpleasant or difficult situation or event *2, 8*

go through sth to carefully examine the contents of something or a collection of things in order to find something *8*

go through sth to carefully read or discuss every part of something in order to make sure that it is correct or acceptable *17, 20*

go through with sth to do something unpleasant or difficult which you have planned or promised to do *8*

go together if two types of thing or people go together, they are usually found with each other *8*

go together if two pieces of clothing or two types of food go together, they look or taste good when you wear or eat them at the same time *32*

go under if a company or business goes under, it fails financially *49*

go up if an amount, rate, or standard goes up, it rises *26*

go with sth if one thing goes with another, they suit each other or they look or taste good together *19, 60*

go without (sth) to not have something which you usually have *8*

goings-on *n* strange or amusing events *4*

goof off *informal, American* to avoid doing any work *69*

grow apart if people who are good friends grow apart, they gradually become less friendly, often because they do not have the same interests and opinions any more *53*

grow on sb *informal* if something or someone grows on you, you like them more and more, although you did not like them at first *51*

grow up to gradually change from being a child to being an adult *55*

hack into sth to get into someone else's computer system without permission in order to look at information or do something illegal *65*

hand down sth or hand sth down to give or teach something to someone who will be alive after you have died *55*

hand in sth or hand sth in to give a piece of written work [e.g. essay] to a teacher *42*

hand out sth or hand sth out to give something to each person in a group of people *42*

handout *n* a piece of paper that is given to people who go to a talk or class and which has information on it about the subject dealt with in the talk or class *4, 42*

hand over sth or hand sth over to give something to someone else *17*

hand over (sth/sb) or hand (sth/sb) over to give someone else responsibility for or control of something or someone *45*

hand round sth or hand sth round to offer something, especially food or drink, to each person in a group of people *60*

hang about/around/round (swh) *informal* to spend time somewhere, usually without doing very much *18*

hang on *informal* to wait, especially for a short time *22*

Hang on! *informal* something that you say when you are confused or surprised by something and you need to think *41*

hang out *informal* to spend a lot of time in a particular place, or to spend a lot of time with someone *22*

hang up to end a telephone conversation, often suddenly, by putting the part of the telephone that you speak into back into its usual position *50*

hang up sth or hang sth up to hang something, especially clothes, on a hook *13*

hang up *informal* see **hung up** *51*

hang-up *n informal* a feeling of embarrassment or fear about something, often when it is not necessary to feel that way *51*

have it out with sb *informal* to talk to someone about something that they have said or done that has made you angry in order to improve the situation *54*

have sb around/round if you have someone around, they come to your house for a social visit *59*

have sb on to persuade someone that something is true when it is not, usually as a joke *39*

have sth on to have an arrangement to do something *37*

have sb over if you have someone over, they come to your house to visit you *59*

head off to start a journey or leave a place *15*

heat up sth or heat sth up to make food hot so that it can be eaten *60*

heat up (sth) or heat (sth) up to become warm or hot, or to make something warmer or hotter *26*

help out (sb) or help (sb) out to help someone, especially by giving them money or by doing work for them *14*

help sb off with sth to help someone remove a piece of outer clothing [e.g. coat] *29*

help sb on with sth to help someone to put on a piece of clothing *29*

hide away to go to a place where other people will not find you *66*

hideaway *n* a place where someone goes to be alone *66*

hire out sth or hire sth out *British & Australian* to allow someone to use something for a short period of time after they have paid you money *49*

hit back to criticise or attack someone who has criticised or attacked you *40*

hit it off if two or more people hit it off, they like each other and become friendly immediately *52*

hold sth against sb to like or respect someone less because they have done something wrong or behaved badly *38*

hold down sth or hold sth down to control the level of something [e.g. prices, costs, inflation] and to prevent it from increasing *17*

hold off (sth/doing sth) to delay something or doing something *15*

hold on to wait for a short time *50*

Hold on! something you say to show that you are surprised or confused about something and that you need time to think about it for a short time *41*

hold up sth/sb or hold sth/sb up to delay something or someone *23*

hold up sth/sb or hold sth/sb up to steal money from a building [e.g. bank], a person, or a vehicle, by using violence or by threatening to use violence *67*

hold-up *n* a delay *23*

hold-up *n* when someone steals from someone else using violence or the threat of violence *67*

hot up *informal* if an event or situation hots up, it becomes more exciting and there is a lot more activity *34*

hung up *informal* to be very worried about something and spend a lot of time thinking about it *51*

hurry up to do something more quickly *41*

hurry up sb/sth or hurry sb/sth up to make someone do something more quickly, or to make something happen sooner *23*

I could do without sth something that you say when something is annoying you or causing problems for you, because your situation at that time makes it difficult for you to deal with it *37*

invite along sb or invite sb along to ask someone if they would like to go with you to an event or activity *3*

invite around/round sb or invite sb around/round to ask someone to come to your home *3, 59*

invite back sb or invite sb back to ask someone to come to your home after you have been out somewhere together *3*

invite in sb or invite sb in to ask someone if they would like to come into your house *3*

invite out sb or invite sb out to ask someone to go with you to a place, for example a restaurant or the cinema *3, 59*

invite over sb or invite sb over to ask someone to come to your home *3, 59*

invite up sb or invite sb up to ask someone if they would like to come upstairs *3*

join in (sth) to become involved in an activity with other people *57*

jot down sth or jot sth down to write something quickly on a piece of paper so that you remember it *44*

jumble up sth or jumble sth up to mix things together in an untidy way *13*

jump at sth to eagerly accept a chance to do or have something *51*

jump out at sb if something jumps out at you, you notice it immediately *36*

keep (sb) at sth to continue working hard at something difficult or something which takes a long time, or to make someone continue to work hard *46*

keep away (sb/sth) or keep (sb/sth) away to not go somewhere or near something, or to prevent someone or something from going somewhere or near something *21*

keep down sth or keep sth down to stop the number, level, or size of something from increasing *17*

keep on at sb to talk to someone about something many times, usually because you want to complain about something they have done or not done *54*

keep on doing sth to continue to do something, or to do something again and again *2, 16*

keep sth from sb to not tell someone about something *54*

keep to sth to do what you have promised or planned to do *31*

keep up to go at the same speed as someone or something that is moving forward, so that you stay level with them *23*

keep up to increase or to make progress at the same speed as something or someone else so that you stay at the same level as them *27*

keep up sth or keep sth up to practise a skill that you learned in the past so that you continue to be good at it *43*

keep it up to continue to do something, especially to work hard or to do good work *41*

key in sth or key sth in to put information into a computer using a keyboard *65*

kick-off *n* the time when a football match begins *57*

knock about/around together *informal* to spend a lot of time with someone, either because they are your friend or because you are having a romantic relationship with them *22*

knock down sb *or* knock sb down to hit someone with a vehicle and injure or kill them *63*

knockdown *adj* very low (in price) *47*

knock off (sth) *informal* to stop working, usually at the end of a day *45*

knock off sth *or* knock sth off (sth) to take a particular amount away from something, especially a price *48*

knock out to defeat a person or team in a competition so that they have to stop taking part in it *57*

knockout *n* a competition in which only the winners of each stage play in the next stage, until one person or team is the final winner *57*

knock over sth/sb *or* knock sth/sb over to hit or push something or someone, especially accidentally, so that they fall to the ground or onto their side *17, 30*

latch on *informal, British & Australian* to understand something *35*

latch on to/onto sb to spend time with someone, especially when they do not want you with them *22*

laugh off sth *or* laugh sth off to laugh about something unpleasant in order to make it seem less important or serious *15*

launch into sth to start doing or saying something [e.g. speech, story] in a very enthusiastic way *21*

lay into sb to attack or criticise someone in an angry way *40, 69*

lay off sb *or* lay sb off to stop employing someone because there is no work for them to do *45*

laze about/around to relax and enjoy yourself by doing very little *18*

lead on sb *or* lead sb on to make someone believe something that is not true *67*

leak out if secret information leaks out, people who should not know this information find out about it *66*

lean on sb *informal* to try to make someone do what you want by threatening or persuading them *67*

leave aside sth *or* leave sth aside to not discuss or consider a particular subject so that you can discuss a different subject *31*

leave behind sth/sb *or* leave sth/sb behind to leave a place without taking something or someone with you, either because you have forgotten them or because you cannot take them with you *24*

leave out sb/sth *or* leave sb/sth out to not include someone or something *2, 14*

leave sb to sth *informal* to go away from someone so that they do something by themselves or so they can continue what they are doing *45*

left over if an amount of money or food is left over, it remains when the rest has been used or eaten *4, 60*

left over to exist from an earlier time *23*

leftover *adj* existing from an earlier time *23*

leftovers *n* food that was prepared for a meal but not eaten *4, 60*

let down sb *or* let sb down to disappoint someone by failing to do what you agreed to do or what you were expected to do *53*

let off sb *or* let sb off to not punish someone who has committed a crime or done something wrong, or to not punish someone severely *67*

let on to tell someone about something which was supposed to be a secret *54*

let out sb/sth *or* let sb/sth out to allow a person or animal to leave somewhere, especially by opening a locked or closed door *14*

let-out *n* an excuse or way of avoiding doing something you agreed to do *36*

let up *informal* if bad weather or an unpleasant situation lets up, it stops or improves *5, 61*

lie about/around *informal* to spend time lying down and doing very little *18*

lie ahead if an event or situation that will cause problems lies ahead, it will happen in the future *23*

lie behind sth to be the real reason for something *25*

lie in *British & Australian* to stay in bed in the morning later than you usually do *58*

lie-in *n British & Australian* when you stay in bed in the morning longer than usual *58*

lie in sth to exist or be found in something *36*

lift off if a spacecraft or aircraft lifts off, it leaves the ground *15*

lift-off *n* the moment when a spacecraft leaves the ground *15*

lighten up to become more relaxed and less serious *70*

Lighten up! *informal* something you say to tell someone to stop being so serious or annoyed *41*

listen in to secretly listen to a conversation, especially a telephone conversation *50*

Listen up! *informal, American* something you say to tell people to listen to what you are going to say *69*

littered with sth if something is littered with a particular type of thing, it has or contains a lot of that thing *32*

live down sth or live sth down to stop feeling embarrassed about something you have done by waiting until people forget about it *53*

live for sth/sb to believe that something or someone is the most important thing or person in your life *19*

live off sth/sb to have enough money for the things you need by taking it from a supply of money or from another person *58*

live off sth to only eat a particular type of food *60*

live on sth to have a particular amount of money in order to buy the things you need *58*

live on sth to only eat a particular type of food *60*

live through sth to experience a difficult situation or event *20*

live up to sth if someone or something lives up to people's expectations or a particular standard, they are as good as they were expected to be *55*

liven up (sth) or liven (sth) up to become more interesting and exciting, or to make something become like this *13*

load down sb or load sb down to give someone too many things to carry *17*

load up (sth) or load (sth) up to put a lot of things into a vehicle or machine *64*

lock yourself away to go to a room or building where you can be alone, usually so that you can work *21*

lock in sb or lock sb in to prevent someone from leaving a room or building by locking the door *16*

lock out sb or lock sb out to prevent someone from entering a building by locking the door *14*

lock yourself out to accidentally prevent yourself from getting into a building or vehicle by leaving the keys inside when you shut the door *14*

log in to connect a computer to a system of computers by typing your name, usually so that you can start working *65*

log off (sth) to stop a computer being connected to a computer system, usually when you want to stop working *65*

log on to connect a computer to a system of computers by typing your name, usually so that you can start working *65*

log out to stop a computer being connected to a computer system, usually when you want to stop working *65*

look after sb/sth to take care of someone or something by doing what is needed to keep them well or in good condition *1, 9*

look ahead to think about what will happen in the future and plan for these events *9*

look around/round (swh) to walk through a building or around a place and look at the things in it *18*

look around/round to try to find something you want [e.g. job] by asking different people or by looking in different places *9*

look at sth to consider a subject carefully in order to make a decision about it *9*

look at sth to read something quickly and not very carefully *9*

look back to think about or remember something that happened in the past *2*

look down on sb/sth to think that someone is less important than you, or to think that something is not good enough quality for you to use *1, 9*

look for sth/sb to try to find something or someone, either because you have lost them or because you need them *3*

look forward to sth/doing sth to feel pleased and excited about something that is going to happen *1, 9*

look into sth to discover and examine the facts about a problem or situation *9, 21*

look on to watch an activity or event without becoming involved in it *4, 9* **onlooker** *n* a person who watches an activity or event without becoming involved in it *4, 9*

look out for sb/sth to carefully watch the people or things around you so that you will notice a particular person or thing *9, 66*

lookout *n* a person who is watching for danger *9, 66*

Look out! something you say or shout in order to tell someone that they are in danger *41*

look over sth/sb or look sth/sb over to quickly examine something or someone *3, 9, 17*

look round/around see **look around/round**

look through sth to read something quickly and not very carefully *9, 17, 20*

look up if a situation is looking up, it is improving *1, 9, 26*

look up sb or look sb up to visit someone who you have not seen for a long time when you are visiting the place where they live *1, 9*

look up sth or look sth up to look at a book or computer in order to find a piece of information *1, 9*

look up to sb to respect and admire someone *9*

lose out to not have an advantage that other people have *14*

make for swh to go in the direction of a place *10*

make out sth/sb or make sth/sb out to be able to see or hear something or someone, usually with difficulty *2, 10*

make out sth or make sth out to understand something, especially the reason why something has happened *10*

make out sth or make sth out to write all the necessary information on an official document [e.g. cheque, application, ticket] *44*

make out sb or make sb out to understand why someone behaves in the way that they do *1, 10*

make up sth or make sth up to say or write something that is not true [e.g. excuse, report, story] in order to deceive someone *10*

make up sth or make sth up to invent something [e.g. story, game] *10*

make up sth to form the whole of something *10*

make-up *n* the combination of things which form something *10*

make up to forgive someone who you have argued with and to become friendly with them again *53*

make up for sth to replace something that has been lost, or to provide something good in order to make a bad situation better *10*

make it up to sb to do something good for someone who you have done something bad to in the past, or to someone who has done something good for you *10*

match up if two pieces of information match up, they are the same and this shows that the information is likely to be correct *35*

measure out sth or measure sth out to take a small amount of something from a larger amount, first weighing or measuring it in order to make sure that it is the right amount *64*

measure up to be good enough *40*

meet with sb *American* to have a meeting with someone in order to discuss or arrange something *69*

mess about/around to spend time playing or doing things with no particular purpose *18*

mess about/around to behave stupidly or to waste time doing unimportant things *18, 69*

mess sb about/around *informal* to treat someone badly, especially by changing your mind a lot or not doing what you have promised *1, 18*

mess up (sth) or mess (sth) up to spoil or damage something, or to do something badly *42*

mill about/around (swh) to walk around a particular place or area, usually while waiting for something *18*

Mind out! *British & American* something that you say in order to tell someone to be careful or to warn someone of a danger *41*

miss out to not do or get something that you would enjoy or that would be good for you, or to not have something that other people have *53*

miss out sb/sth or miss sb/sth out *British & American* to fail to include someone or something *42*

mix up sth/sb or mix sth/sb up to confuse two people or things by thinking that one person or thing is the other person or thing *34*

mix-up *n* a mistake caused by confusion which prevents something from being done or causes something to be done incorrectly *4, 34*

mixed up in sth *informal* to be involved in an illegal or unpleasant activity *67*

mouth off *informal* to talk about a subject as if you know more than everyone else, or to complain a lot about something *54*

move (sth) along if a process moves along, or if you move a process along, it develops in a satisfactory way *46*

move in to begin living in a new house or area *58*

move in together to start living in the same house as someone you are having a romantic relationship with *58*

move out to stop living in a particular house *58*

move over to change the place where you are sitting or standing so that there is space for someone else to sit or stand *3, 17, 29*

move up *British & Australian* to move slightly so that there is enough space for someone else *29*

muck about/around *informal* to waste time doing silly things *22*

muddle through to succeed in doing something even though you have difficulties because you do not really know how to do it *27*

muddle up sb/sth or muddle sb/sth up to confuse two people or things in your mind *34*

mug up (sth) or mug (sth) up *informal, British* to quickly try to learn the main facts about a subject, especially before an exam *43*

name sb/sth after sb/sth to give someone or something the same name as someone or something else *55*

narrow down sth or narrow sth down to make something [e.g. list, choice, option] smaller and clearer by removing the things that are less important *36*

note down sth or note sth down to write words or numbers, often so that you do not forget them *17, 44*

off-putting *adj* unattractive or unpleasant *15*

onlooker *n* a person who watches an activity or event without becoming involved in it *9*

open onto sth if a room, window, or door opens onto a place, it opens in the direction of that place or has a view of it *24*

open up (sth) or open (sth) up to start a new shop or business *13*

open up to start to talk more about yourself and your feelings *54*

opt out to choose not to be part of an activity or arrangement, or to stop being involved with it *37*

order sb about/around to tell someone what they should do all the time *18, 31*

outbreak *n* when something unpleasant or difficult to control starts, such as war or disease *66*

outcry *n* a public expression of anger or disapproval *4, 38*

outlet *n* a shop that is one of many owned by a particular company and that sells the company's goods 49

outpouring *n* a strong expression of emotion 54

outset *n* the beginning of something 4, 28

outstanding *adj* extremely good, or of a very high standard 40

oversleep to sleep longer than you had intended 58

own up to admit that you have done something wrong, especially something that is not important 54

pack away sth *or* **pack sth away** to put something into a bag or container, or to put something in the place where it is usually kept 21

packed out *adj* very full of people 33

pack up (sth) *or* **pack (sth) up** to collect your things together and put them into bags or boxes, especially when you have finished doing something 28

pair off if two people pair off, they start a romantic relationship 52

pan out to develop or happen in a particular way 26

partied out *informal* to have had enough of parties because you have been to so many 70

pass away to die 56

pass by if time or a period of time [e.g. week] passes by, it goes past 23

pass for sb/sth if someone or something passes for someone or something else, they appear like that person or thing 55

pass off *British & American* if an event passes off in a good way, it happens in that way 33

pass on sth *or* **pass sth on** to give something to someone else 16

pass on sth *or* **pass sth on** to tell someone something that someone else has told you 31

pass on to die 56

pass round sth *or* **pass sth round** to offer something to each person in a group of people 60

pass out to become unconscious 56

pay back sb/sth *or* **pay sb/sth back** to pay someone the money that you owe them 47

pay back sb *or* **pay sb back** to do something unpleasant to someone because they have done something unpleasant to you 25

pay off sth *or* **pay sth off** if you pay off a debt [e.g. loan, mortgage, overdraft], you pay back all the money you owe 47

pay off if something that you have done to try to achieve something pays off, it is successful 27

pay up *informal* to give someone the money that you owe them, especially when you do not want to 47

pencil in sth/sb *or* **pencil sth/sb in** to arrange for something to happen or for someone to do something on a particular date, knowing that the arrangement might be changed later 45

phase in sth *or* **phase sth in** to make a new system, process, or law gradually begin to happen or exist 26

phase out sth *or* **phase sth out** to gradually stop using or supplying something 26

phone around/round (sb) to telephone several people, often in order to find out information 50, 69

phone (sb) back to telephone someone for the second time or to telephone someone who rang you earlier 20

phone up (sb) *or* **phone (sb) up** to telephone someone 50

pick on sb to choose one person from a group of people to criticise or treat unfairly, especially when they are smaller or weaker than you 40

pick up sth/sb *or* **pick sth/sb up** to lift something or someone by using your hands 29

pick up sth/sb *or* **pick sth/sb up** to collect someone who is waiting for you, or to collect something that you have left somewhere or that you have bought 2, 63

pick-up *n* when a car, taxi, etc. collects you 48

pickup *n* small truck with an open back 48

pick up sth *or* **pick sth up** to collect something you have left somewhere 65

pick up sth *or* **pick sth up** to get or buy something when you have gone to a place to do something else 47

pick up sth *or* **pick sth up** to buy something cheaply 48

pick up sth *or* **pick sth up** to learn a new skill or language by practising it rather than being taught it 43

pick up if something [e.g. business, economy, trade] picks up, it improves or increases after a bad period 26

pick-up *n* an increase or improvement 48

pick up if the wind picks up, it becomes stronger 61

pick-up *n informal* when you start talking to someone you do not know because you want to have a sexual relationship with them 48

pile up (sth) *or* **pile (sth) up** if something unpleasant [e.g. work, bills, losses] piles up, or if you pile it up, you get more and more of it 46

pile-up *n* an accident involving several cars 4, 63

pin down sb *or* **pin sb down** to make someone give you exact details or a decision about something 54

plan ahead to make decisions or plans about something you will do or something that might happen in the future 37

play back sth *or* **play sth back** to listen to sounds or watch pictures that you have just recorded *64*

play down sth *or* **play sth down** to try to make people believe that something is not very important, or that it is unlikely to happen *54*

playing at sth if you ask what someone is playing at, you ask what they are doing, in a way which shows that you are surprised and angry *40*

play-off *n* a game between two teams that have equal points in order to decide which is the winner *57*

play up *British & American* if someone, especially a child, plays up, they behave badly *42*

play up *British & Australian* if a machine or part of a machine plays up, it does not work as it should *1*

plug in sth *or* **plug sth in** *or* **plug sth into sth** to connect a piece of electrical equipment to a supply of electricity or to another piece of electrical equipment *64*

point out sb/sth *or* **point sb/sth out** to make a person notice someone or something, usually by telling them where they are or by holding up one of your fingers towards them *35*

point out sth *or* **point sth out** to tell someone a fact that they did not already know, especially one that is important in the present discussion or situation *35*

polish off sth *or* **polish sth off** *informal* to finish something quickly and easily, especially a large amount of food or a piece of work *28*

polish up sth *or* **polish sth up** to practise and improve your skills or your knowledge of something that you learned in the past but have partly forgotten *43*

pop in/into *informal* to go into a place, especially a friend's house, just for a short time *59*

pop out *informal* to leave the place where you are and go somewhere for a short time *29*

pour down to rain heavily *61* **downpour** *n* a sudden, heavy fall of rain *61*

pour in to arrive or enter somewhere in very large numbers *33*

pour sth into sth to provide a lot of money for something over a long period *49*

pour out sth *or* **pour sth out** to fill a glass, cup etc. with a drink *60*

pour out to leave a place in large numbers *33*

pour out sth *or* **pour sth out** if you pour out your feelings or thoughts, you talk very honestly about what is making you sad *54* **outpouring** *n* a strong expression of emotion *54*

press (sb) for sth to try to persuade someone, usually someone in authority, to give you something or to allow something to happen *39*

pressed for sth to have very little or not enough of something, especially time or money *22*

press on to continue doing something in a determined way *22*

print out (sth) *or* **print (sth) out** to produce a printed copy of a document that has been written on a computer *65*

printout *n* information or a document that is printed from a computer *65*

pull ahead to suddenly get in front of another car or person that was previously driving or running at the same speed as you *57*

pull down sth *or* **pull sth down** to destroy a building or other structure because it is not being used or it is not wanted any more *30*

pull in if a train pulls in or pulls into a station, it arrives there *62*

pull in *or* **pull into swh** if a car pulls in or pulls into a place, it moves to the side of the road or to another place where it can stop *63*

pull off sth *or* **pull sth off** to succeed in doing or achieving something difficult *27*

pull out if a train pulls out, it starts to leave a station *62*

pull out to drive onto a road, either from another road or from the side of the road where you have stopped *63*

pull out (sth/sb) *or* **pull (sb/sth) out** to stop being involved in an activity or agreement *66*

pull over to drive a car to the side of the road in order to stop *3, 63*

pull (sb) through to recover from a serious illness, or to help someone to do this *56*

pull together to work as a group in order to achieve something *45*

pull yourself together to become calm after being so angry or upset that you were unable to behave in a sensible way *51*

pull up if a car pulls up, it stops, often for a short time *63*

pump up sth *or* **pump sth up** to fill something with air by using a pump *64*

push in *informal, British & American* to rudely join a line of people who are waiting for something by moving in front of some of the people who are already there *16*

put across sth *or* **put sth across** to explain or express something clearly so that people understand it easily *11, 39*

put sth at sth to roughly calculate that something will cost a particular amount or that something is a particular size or amount *49*

put back sth *or* **put sth back** to change the date or time of an event so that it happens later than planned *11, 33*

put back sth *or* **put sth back** if you put a watch or clock back, you make it show an earlier time *11*

put down (sth) *or* put (sth) down to land in an aircraft, or to make an aircraft land *11*

put down sth *or* put sth down if you put the phone down, you put the part of the telephone that you speak into back into its usual position after your conversation has ended *50*

put down sb *or* put sb down to make someone feel stupid or unimportant by criticising them *38*

put-down *n* an unkind remark that makes someone seem foolish *4*

put forward sth *or* put sth forward to state an idea or opinion, or to suggest a plan, so that it can be considered or discussed *39*

put forward to change the date or time of an event so that it happens earlier than planned *33*

put forward sth *or* put sth forward if you put forward a clock or watch, you make it show a later time *11*

put in sth *or* put sth in to fix new equipment or a new system in the correct place in a room or building *11*

put off sth/doing sth *or* put sth off to decide or arrange to do something at a later time *1, 2, 11, 33*

put off sb *or* put sb off to tell someone that you cannot see them or do something for them until a later time *11*

put off sb *or* put sb off (sb/sth/doing sth) to make someone not like someone or something, or not want to do something *15* **off-putting** *adj* unattractive or unpleasant *15*

put on sth *or* put sth on to put a piece of clothing onto your body *11, 32*

put on sth *or* put sth on to make a device [e.g. light, fire] work by pressing a switch *11*

put on sth *or* put sth on to pretend to have a particular feeling, or to behave in a way which is not real or natural for you *16*

put-on *adj* pretend or not genuine *16*

put on sth *or* put sth on to organise a play, show, or competition *33*

put on sth *or* put sth on to begin to cook food *60*

put on sth *or* put sth on to put something that sounds or pictures are recorded onto [e.g. CD, video] into a machine which makes you able to hear or see the recording *11*

put on sb *or* put sb on (sth) to give someone the telephone so that they can speak to the person who is on it *50*

put sb on to/onto sth to tell someone about something or someone that could help them, often something or someone they did not know about before *11*

put out sth *or* put sth out to make a light stop shining by pressing a switch *11*

put out sth *or* put sth out to make something that is burning [e.g. fire, cigarette] stop burning *11, 30*

put out sth *or* put sth out to produce information [e.g. statement, warning, press release] and make it available for everyone to read or hear *2*

put out sth *or* put sth out to injure a part of your body [e.g. back, shoulder] by making a bone move from its usual place *56*

put out to be annoyed, often because of something that someone has done or said to you *11*

put over sth *or* put sth over to express an idea clearly so that people understand it *17, 39*

put through sb *or* put sb through to connect a telephone caller to the person they want to speak to *50*

put sth to sb to suggest an idea or plan to someone so that they can consider it or discuss it *39*

put up sth *or* put sth up to build a structure [e.g. wall, building, statue] *11*

put up sth *or* put sth up to stick or fasten a piece of paper [e.g. notice, poster] to a wall so that it can be seen *11*

put up sth *or* put sth up to open something that is folded or rolled up [e.g. tent, umbrella] so that it is ready to be used *11*

put up sb *or* put sb up to let someone stay in your home for a short period *58*

put sb up to sth to encourage someone to do something stupid or wrong *67*

put up with sth/sb to accept unpleasant behaviour or an unpleasant situation, even though you do not like it *1, 11, 19*

rained off if a sport or other outside activity is rained off, it cannot start or continue because it is raining *61*

reach down sth *or* reach sth down to get something that is above your head by reaching with your hand *29*

reach out (sth) *or* reach (sth) out to stretch your arm in front of your body, usually in order to get or touch something *29*

read sth into sth to believe that an action, remark, or situation has a particular importance or meaning, often when this is not true *21*

read out sth *or* read sth out to read something and say the words aloud so that other people can hear *44*

read over/through sth *or* read sth over/through to read something from the beginning to the end in order to find any mistakes or to understand it better *3, 17*

read through to read something from the beginning to the end in order to find any mistakes or to understand it better *17*

read up on sth to read a lot about a particular subject in order to learn about it *44*

rely on/upon sb/sth to trust someone or something to do what you need them to do *16*

revolve around/round sth/sb if an activity or conversation revolves around something or someone, that thing or person is the main reason for the activity, or the main subject of the conversation *34*

ring (sb) back to telephone someone for the second time, or to telephone someone who rang you earlier *1, 20, 50*

ring in *British & Australian* to telephone someone at your place of work, usually to explain why you are not there *50*

ring off *British & Australian* to end a telephone call by putting down the part of the telephone that you speak into *50*

rip off sb or rip sb off *informal* to cheat someone by making them pay too much money for something *4, 48*

rip-off *n informal* something that costs far too much money *4, 48*

rise above sth to not allow something bad that is happening or being done to you to upset you or to affect your behaviour *34*

root for sb *informal* to show support for someone in a competition, or to hope that someone will succeed in doing something difficult *19*

root out sth/sb or root sth/sb out to find and get rid of the thing or person that is causing a problem *30*

rope in sb or rope sb in *informal* to persuade someone to help you with something, especially when they do not want to *39*

rub in sth or rub sth in to put a substance [e.g. ointment] onto the surface of something and to rub it so that it goes into the surface *16*

rub sth in *informal* to talk to someone about something which you know they want to forget because they feel bad about it *40*

rub out sth or rub sth out to remove writing from something by rubbing it with a piece of rubber or with a cloth *42*

rule out sb/sth or rule sb/sth out to decide that something or someone is not suitable for a particular purpose, or to decide that something is impossible *25, 36*

run across sb to meet someone you know when you are not expecting to meet them *59*

run away to secretly leave a place because you are unhappy there *21*

run sth by sb *informal* to repeat something, or to tell someone about something, so that they can give their opinion of it or hear it again *37*

run down sb/sth or run sb/sth down *informal* to criticise someone or something, often unfairly *40*

rundown *adj* in poor condition or shabby *32*

run into sth to accidentally hit something while you are driving a vehicle *63*

run into sb to meet someone that you know when you did not expect to meet them *21*

run into sth if the amount or cost of something runs into thousands, millions etc., it reaches that level *49*

run off sth or run sth off to print several copies of something *64*

run off sth or run sth off to quickly and easily write something that is usually difficult to write [e.g. poem, speech] *15*

run off with sb to secretly leave a place with someone in order to live with them or marry them, especially when other people think this is wrong *53*

run on to continue for longer than expected *23*

run out to use all of something so that there is none left *14*

run out if a document or official agreement runs out, the period of time it lasts for comes to an end *22*

run over sb/sth or run sb/sth over to hit someone or something with a vehicle and drive over them, injuring or killing them *63*

run through sth to repeat something in order to practise it or to make sure that it is correct *31*

run-through *n* a practice or rehearsal *4, 31*

run to sth to reach a particular amount, usually a large amount *49*

run up against sth if you run up against problems or difficulties, you begin to experience them *34*

run up sth or run sth up if you run up a debt [e.g. bill, deficit], you do things which cause you to owe a large amount of money *47, 48*

save up (sth) or save (sth) up to keep money so that you can buy something with it in the future *47*

scare away sb/sth or scare sb/sth away to make a person or animal so frightened that they go away *21*

scrape through (sth) to manage with a lot of difficulty to succeed in something [e.g. exam] *43*

screw up sth or screw sth up to twist and crush paper or material with your hands *30*

screw up (sth) or screw (sth) up *informal* to make a mistake, or to damage or spoil something *40*

screwed-up *adj informal* unhappy and anxious because of bad experiences *40*

scribble down sth or scribble sth down to write something very quickly on a piece of paper *44*

scroll across/down/up (sth) to move text or other information across/down/up a computer screen in order to view a different part of it *65*

see about sth to deal with something, or to arrange for something to be done *36*

see sb about/around to see someone in the places you usually see them *18*

see off sb or see sb off to go to the place that someone is leaving from in order to say goodbye *15*

see out sb or see sb out to go with someone to the door of a room or building when they are leaving *14*

see through sb/sth if you see through someone who is trying to deceive you, or if you see through someone's behaviour, you realise what they are really like and what they are trying to do *20*

see sb through (sth) to help or support someone during a difficult period in their life *30*

see to sth/sb to deal with something that needs doing or to help someone who needs your help *2, 30*

sell off sth or sell sth off to sell something at a low price because you do not want it or because you need some money *48*

sell off sth or sell sth off to sell all or part of a business *15*

sell-off *n* a sale of all or part of a business *48*

sell out if a shop sells out, it has no more of a particular product available to buy *48*

sell-out *n* when all the tickets for an event have been sold *48*

sell up (sth) or sell (sth) up to sell your house or business in order to go somewhere else or do something else *49*

send away for sth to write to an organisation to ask them to send you something *21*

send back sth or send sth back to return something to the company you bought it from because it is unsuitable or damaged *20*

send for sb to send someone a message asking them to come to see you *19*

send off sth or send sth off to send a letter, document, or parcel by post *1, 15*

send off sb or send sb off *British & Australian* to order a sports player to leave the playing area during a game because they have done something wrong *57*

send up sb/sth or send sb/sth up *informal* to make someone or something seem stupid by copying them in a funny way *33*

set about sth/doing sth to start doing something, especially something that uses a lot of time or energy *28*

set against sth/doing sth to be opposed to doing or having something *37*

set apart sb/sth or set sb/sth apart if a quality sets someone or something apart, it makes them different from and usually better than others of the same type *32*

set aside sth or set sth aside to use something, especially time or money, for one purpose and no other purpose *47*

setback *n* a problem that makes something happen later or more slowly than it should *30*

set off to start a journey *62*

set off sth or set sth off to cause a loud noise or explosion [e.g. bomb, firework, alarm] to begin or happen *25*

set off sth or set sth off to cause a series of events or a lot of activity, often without intending to do this *25*

set out to start a journey *28, 62*

set out to start an activity, especially when you have already decided what you want to achieve *4*

outset *n* the beginning of something *4, 28*

set out sth or set sth out to give all the details of something, or to explain something clearly, especially in writing *44*

set sb off (doing sth) to make someone start to laugh, cry, or talk about something that they often talk about *25*

set up sth or set sth up to start a company or organisation *13, 49*

set-up *n* the way in which things are organised or arranged *13, 49*

settle down to start living in a place where you intend to stay for a long time, usually with the same partner, especially after a period in which you have travelled a lot or changed partners *53*

settle for sth to accept something, often something that is not exactly what you want, or is not the best *53*

settle up to pay someone the money that you owe them *47*

sex up sth or sex sth up to make something more exciting than it really is *70*

shake off sth or shake sth off to get rid of an illness or something that is causing you problems *56*

shoot through *informal, Australian* to leave a place suddenly and often secretly, especially to avoid something *69*

shoot up if the number, amount, or rate of something shoots up, it increases very quickly *66*

shop around to compare the price and quality of the same item or service from different shops or companies before deciding which one to buy *48*

show sb around/round (swh) to go with someone to a place that they have not visited before and show them the interesting parts *18*

show off to try to make people admire your abilities or achievements in a way which other people find annoying *40*

show-off *n* someone who tries to make people admire them in a way other people find annoying *4, 40*

show out sb or show sb out to lead a visitor who is leaving to the door of a room or building *14*

show up to arrive, especially at a place where people are expecting you *13*

shut down (sth) *or* shut (sth) down if a factory or business shuts down, or if someone shuts it down, it closes and stops working *17*

shut down (sth) *or* shut (sth) down if a factory or business shuts down, or if someone shuts it down, it closes and stops working *17*

shut (sb) up to stop talking or making a noise, or to make someone do this *54*

sign up to arrange to take part in an activity *43*

sink in if a fact or idea, especially a surprising or unpleasant one, sinks in, you gradually start to believe it or realise what effect it will have on you *16*

sit about/around (swh) to spend time sitting down and doing very little *18*

skimp on sth to not spend enough time or money on something, or not use enough of something *48*

slave away to work very hard with little or no rest *46*

sleep in to sleep longer in the morning than you normally do *58*

sleep on sth if someone sleeps on a decision or problem, they wait until the next day before they decide what to do about it *37*

sleep over *informal* to sleep in someone else's home for a night *58*

sleepover *n* a party at which several young people sleep at a friend's house for a night *58*

sleep through sth if someone sleeps through a noise or an activity, the noise or activity does not wake them *20*

slip off to leave a place quietly so that other people do not notice you going *15*

slip out if a piece of information slips out while you are talking to someone, you tell it to them without intending to *35*

slip out to leave a place quietly so that other people do not notice you going *35*

slip up *informal* to make a mistake *5*

slow down to become less physically active than you were before *56*

slow down (sb/sth) *or* slow (sb/sth) down to become slower, or to make something or someone slower *29*

slow up (sth/sb) *or* slow (sth/sb) up to become slower, or to make something or someone slower *29*

snap up sth *or* snap sth up to buy or get something quickly because it is very cheap or because it is exactly what you want *48*

snowed in if a person or place is snowed in, there is so much snow that it is impossible to travel anywhere or leave that place *61*

snowed under *informal* to have so much work that you have problems dealing with it *46*

sort out sth *or* sort sth out to arrange or organise things which are untidy *14*

sort out sth *or* sort sth out to make a decision about something by discussing it with someone else or by considering it carefully *1, 36*

sort yourself out *informal, British & Australian* to spend time dealing with your personal problems or organising your things *36*

spark off sth *or* spark sth off if something sparks off an activity [e.g. fighting, violence] or a state, it causes it to suddenly happen or exist *25*

speak out to publicly express your opinions, especially in order to criticise or oppose someone or something *38*

speak up to begin to speak more loudly *31, 50*

speak up to publicly express your opinions about something or someone, especially in order to support them *31*

spell out sth *or* spell sth out to explain something in detail and in a clear way *31*

spin-off *n* a product that develops from another more important product *49*

Spit it out! *informal* something you say to encourage someone to tell you something which they do not want to tell you *41*

splash out *informal* to spend a lot of money on something which is very pleasant but which you do not need *48*

split up if two people who are married or who have a romantic relationship split up, they end their marriage or relationship *53*

spread out if a group of people spread out, they move away from each other so that there is a wide space between them *14*

spread out sth *or* spread sth out to open something that is folded [e.g. map, towel] and put it down flat on a surface *42*

spread out if people or things are spread out, they are in different parts of a large area and are not close together *24*

spring from sth to be caused by something *25*

squeeze in sth/sb *or* squeeze sth/sb in to manage to do something or see someone when you are very busy and do not have much time available *46*

stamp out sth *or* stamp sth out to get rid of something that is considered wrong or harmful *30*

stand about/around/round to spend time standing in a place waiting for someone or doing very little *18*

stand by sb to continue to support or help someone when they are in a difficult situation *68*

standby *n* a cheap ticket for a flight or performance which is sold just before the flight or performance if there are any seats available *62*

stand down *British & Australian* to leave an important job or official position so that someone else can do it instead *45*

stand for sth if a letter stands for a word or name, it is the first letter of that word or name and it is used to represent it *19*

stand for sth *British & Australian* to compete in an election for an official position, or to try to be elected as a member of an organisation [e.g. parliament] *68*

stand in to do someone else's job for a short period of time, or to take someone else's place at an event, because that person cannot be there *33*

stand out to be much better than other similar things or people *40* **outstanding** *adj* extremely good, or of a very high standard *40*

stand out if someone or something stands out, they are very noticeable because they look different or behave differently from other people or things *32*

stand round see **stand about**

stand up sb or stand sb up to fail to meet someone on purpose, especially someone with whom you were starting to have a romantic relationship *59*

stand up for sth/sb to defend something that you believe is important [e.g. principle, right], or to defend a person who is being criticised *68*

stand up to sb if you stand up to a powerful person or organisation, you state your opinions forcefully and refuse to agree with them or do what they want *68*

start off to start a life, existence, or profession in a particular way *28*

start off to start a journey *62*

start out to start a life, existence, or profession in a particular way *28*

start up (sth) or start (sth) up if a business or other organisation starts up, or if someone starts one up, it is created and starts to operate *49*

stay ahead to continue to be more advanced and successful than other people *27*

stay away from sth to avoid something that has a bad effect on you *21*

stay behind to not leave a place when other people leave it *24*

stay in to remain at home, especially in the evening *24*

stay on to stay in a place longer than you planned or after other people have left it *24*

stay out to not come home at night, or to come home late *24*

stay out of sth to not become involved in a discussion or an argument *38*

stay over to spend the night somewhere instead of returning to your home or continuing your journey *17*

stay up to go to bed later than usual *58*

Steady on! *British & Australian* something that you say in order to tell someone that you think what they are saying is too extreme *41*

step down to leave your job, especially so that someone else can do it *45*

Step on it! *informal* something that you say to someone, especially someone who is driving, when you want them to hurry *41*

step up sth or step sth up to do more of an activity or to increase the speed of a process, usually in order to improve a situation *66*

stick around *informal* to stay somewhere for a period of time *18*

stick at sth to continue to work hard at something even though it is difficult or tiring *46*

stick by sb to continue to support someone when they are having problems *68*

stick out if part of something sticks out, it comes out beyond the edge or surface of something *32*

stick out if a quality or characteristic of someone or something sticks out, it is very easy to notice *32*

stick together *informal* if two or more people stick together, they support each other, especially when they are in a difficult situation *38*

stick up for sb *informal* to defend a person when they are being criticised *38*

stick with sth to do or use something as you had planned and not change to something else, or to continue doing something even though it is difficult *26*

stick with it *informal* to continue doing something even though it is difficult *19*

stir up sth or stir sth up to cause arguments or bad feeling between people, usually on purpose *25*

stock up to buy a lot of something, often food or drink *48*

stop off to visit a place for a short time when you are going somewhere else *62*

stop over to stop somewhere for a period of time when you are on a long journey *62*

stopover *n* a short stay in a place that you make while you are on a longer journey somewhere else *62*

stressed-out *adj* very worried and anxious *70*

stretch away if an area of land stretches away, it continues over a long distance *24*

sum up (sth/sb) or sum (sth/sb) up to describe briefly the most important facts or characteristics of something or someone *44*

suss out sb/sth or suss sb/sth out *informal, British & Australian* to discover what someone or something is really like, or to find out how a machine or piece of equipment works *69*

sweep up (sth) or sweep (sth) up to remove rubbish or dirt, usually from the floor, using a brush *13*

swell up if a part of your body swells up, it becomes larger or rounder than usual, often because of an illness or injury *56*

switch off (sth) ***or*** **switch (sth) off** to turn off an electrical device [e.g. light, radio] or an engine by using a switch *50, 64*

switch on (sth) ***or*** **switch (sth) on** to turn on an electrical device [e.g. light, radio] or an engine by using a switch *64*

swot up (sth) ***or*** **swot (sth) up** *informal, British & Australian* to learn as much as you can about something, especially before an exam *43*

tag along to go somewhere with a person, especially when they have not asked you to go with them *59*

tailback *n* a long line of traffic that is moving very slowly *63*

take after sb to have a similar appearance or character as an older member of your family *55*

take apart sth ***or*** **take sth apart** to separate something into its different parts *12*

take around/round sb ***or*** **take sb around/round (swh)** to walk through a building or to visit a place with someone, showing them the most interesting or important parts *18*

take aside sb ***or*** **take sb aside** to separate someone from a group of people so that you can speak to them privately *12*

take away sth ***or*** **take sth away** if you take one number away from another one, you subtract the first number from the second *12*

take away sth ***or*** **take sth away** *British & Australian* to buy food in a shop or restaurant and eat it somewhere else *60*

takeaway *n* a meal that you can buy and take somewhere else to eat, or a shop where you can buy this food *60*

take back sth ***or*** **take sth back** to return something to the person or organisation that you borrowed or bought it from *12*

take back sth ***or*** **take sth back** if a shop takes back goods that it has sold to you, it agrees to give you money or goods for them because they are damaged or unsuitable *20*

take back sth ***or*** **take sth back** to admit that something you said was wrong *12*

take back sb ***or*** **take sb back** if something takes you back, it makes you remember a period or an event in the past *23*

take down sth ***or*** **take sth down** to write something, especially something that someone says *1, 17*

take in sb ***or*** **take sb in** to let someone stay in your house *5*

take in sb ***or*** **take sb in** to deceive someone, or to make someone believe something that is not true *5, 67*

take in sth ***or*** **take sth in** to look at something carefully, noticing all the details *5, 12*

take in sth ***or*** **take sth in** to understand the meaning or importance of news or information, or to understand and remember facts *5, 35*

take in sth ***or*** **take sth in** if a boat takes in water, water enters the boat through a hole *5*

take in sth ***or*** **take sth in** to make a piece of clothing narrower by removing the sewing from the edges and sewing closer to the middle of the material *5, 16*

take off sth ***or*** **take sth off** to remove something, especially something that you are wearing *2*

take off sth ***or*** **take sth off** to spend time away from your work *22*

take off if an aircraft, bird, or insect takes off, it moves from the ground and begins to fly *62*

take-off *n* when an aircraft leaves the ground and begins to fly *62*

take off to suddenly become successful or popular *27*

take off to suddenly leave somewhere, especially without telling anyone that you are going *12*

take off sth ***or*** **take sth off (sth)** to subtract a particular amount from a total *12*

take off sb/sth ***or*** **take sb/sth off** to copy the way a person behaves, or to copy the way something is done, often in order to make people laugh *33*

take on sb ***or*** **take sb on** to begin to employ someone *45*

take on sth ***or*** **take sth on** to accept a particular job or responsibility and begin to do what is needed *45*

take out sth ***or*** **take sth out** to get money from a bank *47*

take out sth ***or*** **take sth out** to arrange to get an official document [e.g. insurance policy] from an organisation or court of law *12*

take out sth on sb ***or*** **take sth out on sb** to treat someone badly because you are upset or angry, even though they have done nothing wrong *40*

take sth out of sb to make someone feel very tired *12*

take over (sth) ***or*** **take (sth) over** to start doing a job or being responsible for something that someone else was doing or was responsible for before you *45*

take over sth ***or*** **take sth over** to get control of a company by buying most of its shares (= the equal parts into which the ownership of the company is divided) *49*

takeover *n* an act of gaining control of a company *49*

take over to become more successful or powerful than something or someone else that is involved in the same type of activity *27*

take round see **take around**

take sb through sth to explain something to someone, or to show someone how to do something *20*

take to sb/sth to start to like someone or something *51*

take to sth/doing sth to start to do something often *12*

take up sth *or* **take sth up** to start doing a particular job or activity *12*

take sb up on sth to accept an offer that someone has made *12*

taken up with sth to be very busy doing something *12*

talk sb around/round to persuade someone to agree with you or to do what you want them to do *39*

talk down to sb to talk to someone as if they were less clever than you *54*

talk over sth *or* **talk sth over** to discuss a problem or situation, especially before making a decision about it *3, 36*

talk sb into sth/doing sth to persuade someone to do something *39*

talk sb out of sth/doing sth to persuade someone not to do something *39*

tear apart sth *or* **tear sth apart** to pull something violently so that it breaks into two or more pieces *30*

tear sb apart to make someone feel very unhappy *51*

tear sb away to force someone to stop doing something that they enjoy in order to do something else *21*

tear down sth *or* **tear sth down** to destroy a building or other structure because it is not being used or it is not wanted any more *4, 30*

tear up sth *or* **tear sth up** to tear something, especially paper or cloth, into a lot of small pieces *29*

tell sb/sth apart to be able to see the differences between two similar things or people and judge which is which *32*

tell sth/sb from sth/sb if you can tell one person or thing from a similar person or thing, you are able to say which of them is which because you can see the differences between them *32*

tell off sb *or* **tell sb off** to speak angrily to someone because they have done something wrong *69*

text back sb *or* **text sb back** to send a text message in reply to someone *70*

thaw out (sth) *or* **thaw (sth) out** if frozen food thaws out, or if you thaw it out, it is taken out of a freezer so that it gradually becomes warmer and is not frozen any more *60*

think ahead to think carefully about what might happen in the future, or to make plans for things you want to do in the future *37*

think back to think about things that happened in the past *23*

think over sth *or* **think sth over** to think carefully about an idea or plan before making a decision *3, 37*

think through sth *or* **think sth through** to think carefully about something you are planning to do and to consider the possible results of it *3, 37*

throw yourself into sth to start doing something with a lot of enthusiasm and energy *21, 69*

throw out sb *or* **throw sb out** to force someone to leave a college, school, house or organisation *43*

throw up (sth) *or* **throw (sth) up** to vomit *56*

thrown together if people are thrown together in a situation, that situation causes them to meet each other and to get to know each other *34*

tidy away sth *or* **tidy sth away** *British & Australian* to put things in cupboards and drawers, etc. after you have been using them *21*

tidy up (sth) *or* **tidy (sth) up** to make a room or a group of things tidy by putting things in the correct place *5, 13*

tie in with sth if one event ties in with another, it is planned so that both events happen at the same time *33*

tie up sth *or* **tie sth up** to put string or rope around something so that it is fastened together *29*

tied up *informal* to be busy so that you are unable to see or speak to anyone else or go anywhere *46*

tip off sb *or* **tip sb off** to warn someone secretly about something that will happen so that they can take action or prevent it from happening *67*

tip-off *n* a secret warning or piece of secret information *67*

tone down sth *or* **tone sth down** to make a piece of writing, a speech, or a performance less offensive or less critical *44*

top up sb *or* **top sb up** to put more drink into someone's glass or cup *60*

top-up *n* more drink poured into a glass or cup *60*

touch down when an aircraft touches down, it lands on the ground *62*

touchdown *n* when an aircraft lands *62*

touch on/upon sth to mention a subject briefly when speaking or writing about something *44*

track down sb/sth *or* **track sb/sth down** to find someone or something after searching for them in many different places *35*

trigger off sth *or* **trigger sth off** to make something suddenly begin, often a difficult or violent situation *25*

try on sth or try sth on to put on a piece of clothing to find out whether it fits you or whether you like it, especially before buying it 16

try out sth or try sth out to test something in order to find out if it works or to decide whether you like it 14

tucked away to be in a quiet or hidden place which not many people see or go to 24

turn down sb/sth or turn sb/sth down to refuse an offer or request 31

turn in *informal* to go to bed 58

turn off sth or turn sth off to touch a switch so that a machine or a piece of electrical equipment stops working, or to stop the flow or supply of something [e.g. water, electricity] 2, 64

turn off (sth) to leave the road you are travelling on and travel along another one 63

turn-off *n* a place where you can leave a main road and go onto another road 63

turn off sb or turn sb off (sth) to make someone decide that they are not interested in something 15

turn on sth or turn sth on to touch a switch so that a machine or a piece of electrical equipment starts to work, or to start a flow or supply of something [e.g. water, electricity] 64

turn on sb or turn sb on to make someone interested in something 52

turn on/upon sb to attack someone or criticise someone very strongly 30

turn out to happen in a particular way or to have a particular result 34

turn over (sth) or turn (sth) over to turn a page in a book so that the side which was facing down is now facing up 3, 44

turn to sb to ask someone for help, sympathy or advice 31

turn to sth to start to do or take something bad [e.g. crime, drugs, drink], usually because you are unhappy 55

turn (sth) to sth if someone turns to a particular subject, or if they turn their thoughts or attention to it, they begin to think, speak or write about it 35

turn up sth or turn sth up to increase the amount of something, especially sound or heat, that is produced by a machine [e.g. television, oven] 64

turn up if someone or something turns up somewhere, they arrive at that place 1, 2, 5, 13

turnout *n* the number of people who come to watch or take part in an event or activity 33

turnover *n* the total amount of money made by a company or business in a particular period of time 4, 49

type in sth or type sth in to put information into a computer using a keyboard 65

upkeep *n* the cost or process of keeping something, such as a building, in good condition 49

use up sth or use sth up to finish a supply of something 13

veg out *informal* to relax and spend time doing very little 70

visit with sb *American* to spend time talking with someone that you know 69

wait about/around to stay in one place without doing anything while you are waiting for something to happen 18

wait up to stay awake because you are expecting someone to arrive 58

Wait up! *American* something you say to tell someone to stop so that you can talk to them or go somewhere with them 69

wake up (sb) or wake (sb) up to become conscious after sleeping, or to make someone do this 3, 58

wake up to sth to become aware of a situation or problem 26

walk into sth to get a job very easily 27

walk off with sth *informal* to steal something, or to take something without the owner's permission 67

walk out to leave a performance or meeting before it has ended because you do not like it or because you are angry 33

warm to sth to become more enthusiastic about an idea 51

warm up (sth) or warm (sth) up to prepare yourself for a physical activity by doing some gentle exercise 4, 57

warm up (sth/sb) or warm (sth/sb) up to become warmer, or to make something or someone warmer 61

warm-up *n* a preparation for physical activity 4, 57

wash up (sth) or wash (sth) up *British & Australian* to clean the plates, pans and other things you have used for cooking and eating a meal 69

wash up *American* to clean your hands and face with soap and water 69

Watch out! something you say to tell someone to be careful so that they can avoid danger or an accident 41

watch out for sb/sth to be careful to notice someone or something interesting 35

watch out for sth to be careful to notice something, especially something that might cause you problems 35

wear down (sth) or wear (sth) down to make someone feel tired and less able to deal with a situation 17

wear off if a feeling or the effect of something [e.g. anaesthetic, alcohol] wears off, it gradually disappears 26

wear out (sth) or wear (sth) out use something so much that it becomes weak or damaged and cannot be used any more, or to become weak and damaged in this way *14*

weigh down sb or weigh sb down if you are weighed down with something, you are carrying too much of it *17*

weigh on/upon sb/sth if a problem or responsibility weighs on you, it makes you worried or unhappy *16*

weigh up sth or weigh sth up to think carefully about the advantages and disadvantages involved in a situation before making a decision *37*

while away sth or while sth away to spend time in a relaxed way because you are waiting for something or because you have nothing else to do *22*

wind down (sth) or wind (sth) down if a business or organisation winds down, or if someone winds it down, the amount of work it does is gradually reduced until it closes completely *49*

wind down to gradually relax after doing something that has made you feel tired or worried *28*

wind up to finally be in a particular place, state, or situation, especially without having planned it *55*

wind up doing sth to finally do something, especially without having planned to *55*

wind up sb or wind sb up *informal, British* to tell someone something that is not true in order to make a joke *54*

work at sth/doing sth to try hard to achieve something or improve something *46*

work off sth or work sth off to get rid of an unpleasant feeling [e.g. aggression, anger] by doing something energetic *57*

work on/upon sth to spend time working in order to produce or repair something *46*

work out sth or work sth out to do a calculation to get an answer to a mathematical question *42*

work out sth or work sth out to understand something or to find the answer to something by thinking about it *69*

work out to exercise in order to improve the strength or appearance of your body *57*

work through sth or work sth through to deal with a problem or difficulty by talking about it in detail *36*

work towards sth to try hard to achieve something *46*

wrap up sth or wrap sth up to cover something in paper, cloth, or other material, especially in order to give it to someone as a present or in order to protect it *29*

wrap up (sb) or wrap (sb) up to dress in warm clothes, or to dress someone in warm clothes or cover them with material that protects them from the cold *32*

wriggle out of sth *informal* to avoid doing something that other people think you should do, often in a dishonest way *46*

write down sth or write sth down to write something on a piece of paper so that you do not forget it *17*

write off sth or write sth off to accept that an amount of money [e.g. debt, investment] has been lost or will never be paid *47*

write off sth or write sth off to damage a vehicle so badly that it cannot be repaired *63*

write-off *n* a vehicle that is too badly damaged to be repaired *63*

write out sth or write sth out to write something [e.g. report, list] on paper, often in order to write it in a better or more complete way *44*

write out sth or write sth out to write information on a document [e.g. cheque, prescription] so that it can be used *44*

write up sth or or write sth up to write something on paper or on a computer in a complete or final form, often using notes you have made *43*

zoom in if a camera zooms in, it starts to show a clear and detailed picture of something, as if the camera was moving closer to that thing *65*

zoom out if a camera zooms out, it starts to show someone or something in less detail, as if the camera was moving away from that person or thing *65*

English Phrasal Verbs in Use

English Phrasal Verbs in Use is a vocabulary book for good intermediate level learners and above. It is primarily designed as a self-study reference and practice text but it can also be used for classroom work.

English Phrasal Verbs in Use

- 70 easy-to-use two-page units: phrasal verbs are presented and explained on left-hand pages with a range of practice exercises on right-hand pages.
- Presents and explains approximately 1,000 phrasal verbs in typical contexts using tables, charts, short texts and dialogues.
- Contains a Mini dictionary with easy-to-understand definitions and cross references to units in the book.
- Provides valuable information about appropriate usage.
- Promotes good learning habits with study tips and follow-up tasks.
- Contains a comprehensive, student-friendly answer key.
- Includes the most frequently used phrasal verbs from a corpus of written and spoken English and from the *Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs*.

CAMBRIDGE INTERNATIONAL CORPUS

The Cambridge International Corpus (CIC) is a collection of over 700 million words of real spoken and written English. The texts are stored in a database that can be searched to see how English is used. The CIC also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, a unique collection of over 50,000 exam papers from Cambridge ESOL. It shows real mistakes students make and highlights the parts of English which cause problems for students.

www.cambridge.org/corpus

REAL ENGLISH GUARANTEE

Also available: **English Idioms in Use**
Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs
English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate

in Use

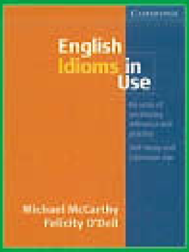
English
Idioms in
Use
Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

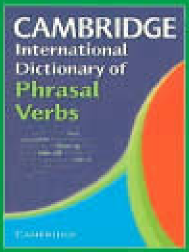
CAMBRIDGE
International
Dictionary of
Phrasal
Verbs

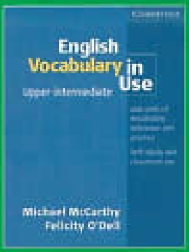
English
Vocabulary in
Use
Upper-intermediate
Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org
ISBN 0-521-52727-9
9 780521 527279

CAMBRIDGE

ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN USE

Vocabulary reference and practice

Third Edition

Advanced

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

Includes ebook with audio

Experience
Better
Learning

ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN USE

Vocabulary reference and practice

with answers and ebook

Third Edition

Advanced

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom

One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA

477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia

4843/24, 2nd Floor, Ansari Road, Daryaganj, Delhi – 110002, India

79 Anson Road, #06–04/06, Singapore 079906

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/elt

© Cambridge University Press 2017

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2002
Third Edition 2017
20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Printed in Dubai by Oriental Press

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-131663006-8 Edition with answers and ebook
ISBN 978-131663117-1 Edition with answers
ISBN 978-131663118-8 ebook

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

Thanks 5
Introduction 6

Work and study

1 Cramming for success: study and academic work 8
2 Education: debates and issues 10
3 Applying for a job 12
4 Job interviews 14
5 At work: colleagues and routines 16
6 At work: job satisfaction 18
7 At work: careers 20

People and relationships

8 Describing people: positive and negative qualities 22
9 Describing people: appearance and mannerisms 24
10 Describing people: personality and character traits 26
11 Relationships: friends forever 28
12 Relationships: ups and downs 30
13 Emotions and reactions 32
14 Negative feelings 34
15 Birth and death: from cradle to grave 36

Leisure and lifestyle

16 Free time: relaxation and leisure 38
17 All the rage: clothes and fashion 40
18 Home styles, lifestyles 42
19 Socialising and networking 44
20 The performance arts: reviews and critiques 46
21 The visual arts 48
22 Talking about books 50
23 Food: a recipe for disaster 52
24 Dinner's on me: entertaining and eating out 54

Travel

25 On the road: traffic and driving 56
26 Travel and accommodation 58
27 Attracting tourists 60

The environment

28 Describing the world 62
29 Weather and climate 64
30 Brick walls and glass ceilings 66
31 Taking root and reaping rewards 68
32 The animal kingdom 70
33 Our endangered world 72

Society and institutions

34 Here to help: customer service 74
35 Authorities: customs and police 76
36 Beliefs 78
37 Festivals in their cultural context 80
38 Talking about language 82
39 History: since the dawn of civilisation 84
40 The haves and the have-nots 86
41 British politics 88
42 International politics 90
43 The letter of the law 92
44 War and peace 94
45 Economy and finance 96
46 Personal finance: making ends meet 98

The media

47 The media: in print 100
48 The media: internet and email 102
49 Advertising 104
50 The news: gathering and delivering 106

Health

51 Healthcare 108
52 Illness: feeling under the weather 110
53 Medical language 112
54 Diet, sport and fitness 114

Technology

55 Industries: from manufacturing to service 116
56 Technology and its impact 118
57 Technology of the future 120
58 Energy: from fossil fuels to windmills 122

Basic concepts

59 Space: no room to swing a cat 124
60 Time: once in a blue moon 126
61 Motion: taking steps 128
62 Manner: behaviour and body language 130
63 Sounds: listen up! 132
64 Weight and density 134
65 All the colours of the rainbow 136
66 Speed: fast and slow 138
67 Cause and effect 140
68 Spot the difference: making comparisons 142
69 Difficulties and dilemmas 144
70 Modality: expressing facts, opinions, desires 146
71 Number: statistics and quantity 148

Functional vocabulary

72 Permission: getting the go-ahead 150
73 Complaining and protesting 152
74 Apology, regret and reconciliation 154
75 A pat on the back: complimenting and praising 156
76 Promises and bets 158
77 Reminiscences and regrets 160
78 Agreement, disagreement and compromise 162
79 Academic writing: making sense 164
80 Academic writing: text structure 166
81 Writing: style and format 168
82 Whatchamacallit: being indirect 170
83 Give or take: more vague expressions 172
84 The way you say it 174

Words and meanings

85 Abbreviations and acronyms 176
86 Prefixes: creating new meanings 178
87 Suffixes: forming new words 180
88 Word-building and word-blending 182
89 English: a global language 184
90 Easily confused words 186
91 One word, many meanings 188

Fixed expressions and figurative language

92 Collocation: which words go together 190
93 Metaphor: seeing the light 192
94 Idioms for everyday situations and feelings 194
95 Brushing up on phrasal verbs 196
96 Connotation: making associations 198

Language variation

97 Register: degrees of formality 200
98 Divided by a common language 202
99 Language and gender 204
100 In the headlines 206
101 Red tape 208
Answer key 210
Phonemic symbols 276
Index 277
Acknowledgements 299
Enhanced ebook 301

Thanks

Joy Godwin wrote two units for the Third Edition: Unit 3, *Applying for a job*, and Unit 4, *Job interviews*. The publishers would like to thank Joy for her contribution to this edition.

Introduction

To the student

This book has been written to help you expand your vocabulary at the advanced level. You already know thousands of English words, but to express yourself fully and in a sophisticated way at the advanced level, you will ideally need between 6,000 and 8,000 words, so increasing your vocabulary is very important for your general progress in English, as well as for any academic, professional or vocational needs you may have where English plays an important role. At the advanced level, as well as learning new words, you will need to learn more about the subtle connotations of words, aspects of register and style and how words combine into collocations, compounds and fixed phrases. In this book, there are over 3,000 new words and expressions for you to learn. You will find them on the left-hand page of each unit. Every new word or phrase is used in a sentence, or in a conversation, or is in a table, or has a picture with it, or has some explanation of what it means. On the right-hand page there are exercises and other activities to help you practise using the words and to help you to remember them. Where our research shows that learners frequently make errors, we give you advice on how to avoid the most common ones, as well as other useful language tips. The book has been written so that you can use it yourself, without a teacher. You can do the units in any order you like, but we have grouped them into themes, so you might wish to work through several units on a particular area of vocabulary before moving to a new one.

The Answer key at the end of the book is for you to check your answers to the exercises after you do them. The key sometimes has more than one answer. This is because often there is not just one correct way of saying something. Where you are asked to talk about yourself, in the *Over to you* activities, we do not provide answers, since this is your opportunity to work completely independently and in a very personal way, so everyone's answer will be very different.

The Index at the end of the book has all the important words and phrases from the left-hand pages. The Index also tells you how to pronounce words. There is a table of phonemic symbols to help you understand the pronunciation on page 276.

You should also have a dictionary with you when you use the book. You can use a paper dictionary, an electronic one, or you can go to Cambridge Dictionaries Online at http://dictionary.cambridge.org. Access to a dictionary is useful because sometimes you may want to check the meaning of something or find a word in your own language to help you remember the English word. Sometimes, you will also need a dictionary for the exercises; we tell you when this is so.

To learn a lot of vocabulary, you have to do two things:

1 Study each unit of the book carefully and do all the exercises. Check your answers in the key. Repeat the units after a month, and then again after three months, and see how much you have learnt and how much you have forgotten. Repeating work is very important.

2 Develop ways of your own to study and learn new words and phrases which are not in this book. For example, every time you see or hear an interesting phrase, write it in a notebook, and write who said it or wrote it, and in what situation, as well as what it means. Making notes of the situations words are used in will help you to remember them and to use them at the right moment.

We hope you like this book. You can also go to the other books in the series which have more specialised titles: *English Idioms in Use*, *English Phrasal Verbs in Use* and *English Collocations in Use*, which are available at advanced level, as well as *Academic Vocabulary in Use*. Find out more at the Vocabulary in Use website: www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse.

To the teacher

This book can be used in class or as a self-study book. It is intended to take learners from an upper-intermediate level of vocabulary to an advanced level. The vocabulary has been chosen for its usefulness in everyday situations, and we consulted the Cambridge English Corpus, a billion-word-plus written and spoken corpus of present-day English which includes a huge learner corpus, to help us decide on the words and phrases to be included and to help us understand the typical problems learners encounter at the advanced level. We also consulted the English Vocabulary Profile to make sure that the words in the book are a representative sample of vocabulary that is typical of the Common European Framework levels C1 and C2. Visit the English Vocabulary Profile at www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse.

At the advanced level, as well as learning a large number of new words and expressions, learners are often directing their efforts towards academic, professional or vocational needs, and so we have tried to offer a modern, sophisticated vocabulary that will underpin their work in other areas. The new vocabulary (on average 40 items per unit) is presented with explanations on the left-hand page, and there are exercises and activities on the right-hand page. There is an Answer key and an Index with pronunciation for all the target vocabulary. The key at the end of the book is for students to check their answers to the exercises after they do them. The key sometimes has more than one answer. This is because often there is not just one correct way of saying something. Where students are asked to talk about themselves, in the *Over to you* activities, we do not provide answers, since this gives learners the opportunity to work completely independently and in a very personal way, so everyone's answer will be very different.

The book focuses not just on single words, but on useful phrases and collocations, and the vocabulary is illustrated in natural contexts. The book is organised around everyday topics, but also has units devoted to basic concepts such as time, modality, manner and varieties and style. Typical errors are indicated where appropriate, based on information from the Cambridge Learner Corpus, and the most typical meanings and uses are focused on for each key item.

The right-hand pages offer a variety of different types of activities, some traditional ones such as gap-filling, but also more open-ended ones and personalised activities which enable learners to talk about their own lives. Although the activities and exercises are designed for self-study, they can be easily adapted for pairwork, groupwork or whole-class activities in the usual way.

When the learners have worked through a group of units, it is a good idea to repeat some of the work (for example, the exercises) and to expand on the meaning and use of key words and phrases by extra discussion in class, and find other examples of the key items in other texts and situations. This can be done at intervals of one to three months after first working on a unit. This is important, since it is usually the case that a learner needs five to seven exposures to a word or phrase before they can really begin to know it, and no single book can do enough to ensure that words are always learnt first time. It is especially important at the advanced level to discuss in detail the meanings and uses of words and phrases and how they combine and collocate with one another.

Your students can also consult the more specialised higher level books in this series: the advanced levels of *English Idioms in Use*, *English Phrasal Verbs in Use* and *English Collocations in Use*, or they may wish to work on academic vocabulary by using *Academic Vocabulary in Use*, all by the same authors as this book. They can also test themselves on the knowledge they have gained from this and the other books in the series by using the separate books of tests that accompany the series. You can find out more at the Vocabulary in Use website: www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse.

We hope you enjoy using the book.

1 Cramming for success: study and academic work

A Study and exams

Before an exam, some students **cram**[1] for it. Even if you're a **genius**[2], you'll have to **do some revision**. If the exam happens every year, you can **revise** by looking at **past papers**[3]. Some things can be **memorised** or **learnt (off) by heart**. But **rote-learning**[4] is not sufficient for most subjects. It is also possible to use **mnemonics**[5]. However, all things considered, the best idea is to **bury yourself in your books**[6] and to study **intensively**[7] until you **know the subject inside out**[8].

[1] study in a very concentrated way for a short time

[2] an exceptionally clever person

[3] exam papers from previous years

[4] learning purely by repetition

[5] /niˈmɒnɪks/ tricks that help you remember something, for example: 'i' before 'e' except after 'c' is a mnemonic for English spelling (e.g. fr**ie**nd, but rec**ei**ve)

[6] spend the maximum time studying

[7] in a very focused way

[8] know it completely

B Academic writing

composition could be just 50–100 words, often used for school work
essay longer than a composition, more serious, hundreds or thousands of words
assignment a long essay, often part of a course, usually thousands of words
project like an assignment, but emphasis on student's own material and topic
portfolio a collection of individual pieces of work; may include drawings and other examples of creative work as well as writing
dissertation a long, research-based work, perhaps 10–15,000 words, for a degree or diploma
thesis a very long, original, research-based work, perhaps 80–100,000 words, for a higher degree (e.g. PhD)

It's a good idea to start with a **mind map**[1] when preparing an essay. Always write a **first draft**[2] before **writing up** the final version. Your essay should be all your own work; **plagiarism**[3] is a very serious offence in colleges and universities. It is an increasing problem because it is so easy to cut and paste from materials available on the internet, and students have to sign a **plagiarism form** to say that the work they are handing in is all their own and that they **acknowledge**[4] any sources they have used. There is usually a **deadline**[5]. After the essay is **submitted**[6], it will be **assessed**[7] and usually you can get **feedback**[8].

[1] diagram that lays out ideas for a topic and how they are connected to one another [2] first, rough version [3] /ˈpleɪdʒərɪzəm/ using other people's work as if it was yours [4] give details of [5] date by which you must hand in the work [6] handed in; *formal* [7] evaluated and given a grade [8] comments from the teacher/tutor

C Aspects of higher academic study

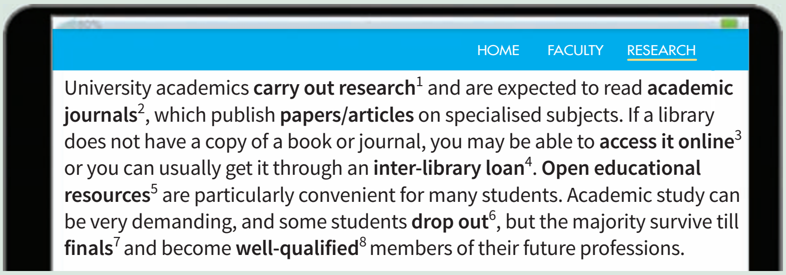

University academics **carry out research**[1] and are expected to read **academic journals**[2], which publish **papers/articles** on specialised subjects. If a library does not have a copy of a book or journal, you may be able to **access it online**[3] or you can usually get it through an **inter-library loan**[4]. **Open educational resources**[5] are particularly convenient for many students. Academic study can be very demanding, and some students **drop out**[6], but the majority survive till **finals**[7] and become **well-qualified**[8] members of their future professions.

[1] less formal is **do research**

[2] magazines with academic articles (we do not use the word *magazine* to talk about this kind of academic publication)

[3] get hold of (it) on the internet

[4] system where libraries exchange books/journals with one another

[5] online materials that can be freely used by teachers and students anywhere [6] leave the course before the end [7] last exams before the end of a college or university course [8] with the right formal qualifications

Exercises

1.1 **Correct the wrong usage of words to do with written work in these sentences.**

1 His PhD assignment was 90,000 words long and was on the history of US place names.
2 Little Martha did her first dissertation in school today. It was called 'My family'.
3 We have to hand in an essay at the end of the course. It can consist of up to five different pieces of work.
4 The teacher gave us the title of this week's project today. We have to write 1,000 words on the topic of 'If I ruled the world' and hand it in next Monday.
5 At the end of this course, you have to do a 5,000-word thesis which will be assessed, and the grade will contribute to your final degree.
6 I think I'll do a study of people's personal banking habits for my MSc composition. It has to be about 12,000 words.
7 I've chosen to do the portfolio instead of the two exams, because I like to do one single piece of work where I can research something that interests me personally.

1.2 **Rewrite this text using words and phrases from the opposite page instead of the underlined words.**

When I'm studying in a very focused way because I'm preparing hard for an exam, I don't see any point in looking up exam papers from previous years, nor is there any point in just learning things by memory. I know some people develop very clever memory tricks to help them remember the material, but there's no real substitute for rereading and going over the term's work. It's a good idea to have some sort of diagram showing different ideas to organise your thoughts, and memory-learning is useful, but in a limited way. At the end of the day, you just have to read a huge amount until you feel you know the subject 100%.

1.3 **Answer these questions.**

1 What do we call the first attempt at writing something, e.g. an essay?
2 What word means 'the date by which you must do something'?
3 What word means 'using someone else's ideas as if they were yours'?
4 What are more formal words for 'to hand in' and for 'to mark'?
5 What phrasal verb do we use when someone doesn't complete their course?
6 What is another word for an academic article? Where can you read them?
7 What is the name of the system for getting books from other libraries?
8 What word means 'the comments you get back from the teacher about your work'?
9 What word can you use for a person who is extraordinarily intelligent?
10 What is a more formal way of saying 'do research'?

1.4 **Choose the best word from the opposite page to complete these sentences.**

1 If you quote an article in an essay, you must .... your source, giving details of author and title.
2 Open educational .... can be particularly useful for students who do not have easy access to a university library.
3 How much .... have you done for tomorrow's maths exam?
4 Don't forget to sign the .... form and hand it in with your dissertation.
5 Some people take a long time to find suitable work even though they are very ....
6 Orla has had a .... published in the *British Medical Journal*.
7 All students need a username and password to be able to .... journals online.
8 Caspar is bound to do well in his mechanics exam – he knows the subject .... out.

2

Education: debates and issues

A

Opportunity and equality

All education systems may ultimately be judged in terms of **equality of opportunity**[1]. This is often referred to in the debates over **selective**[2] versus **comprehensive**[3] **schooling**[4]. The main issue is whether everyone has the same opportunities for educational achievement or whether **elitism**[5] of one sort or another is **inherent in**[6] the system.

League tables[7] for schools and colleges may actually help unintentionally to **perpetuate**[8] inequalities, while claiming to promote the raising of standards. Inevitably, league tables divide educational institutions into good and bad, success and failure, resulting in a **two-tier system**[9], or at least that is how the public **perceives**[10] it. The ability of **better-off**[11] parents and **well-endowed**[12] schools to push children towards the institutions at the top of the league may, in the long term, have the effect of **depressing**[13] opportunity for the **less well-off**[14] or for children from home environments that do not provide the push and motivation to **excel**[15].

Financial support of different kinds can help to make educational opportunity more equal. There are, for example, **scholarships**[16] or **bursaries**[17] that make it possible for less privileged youngsters to afford **tertiary**[18] education. **Student loans**[19] allow **undergraduates**[20] to pay for their **tuition fees**[21] and living expenses while they are studying. But few would claim that real equality of opportunity has been achieved.

[1] when everyone has the same chances

[2] pupils are chosen for entry, usually for academic reasons, though, in the case of some private schools, parents' ability to pay school fees may be a factor in selection

[3] everyone enters without exams and education is free, paid for by the government

[4] education received at school

[5] when you favour a small, privileged group

[6] existing as a basic part of something

[7] lists of schools or colleges, from the best down to the worst, based on exam results and, sometimes, other criteria

[8] make something continue

[9] a system with two separate levels, one of which is better than the other

[10] sees, considers

[11] richer

[12] receiving a lot of money in grants, gifts from rich people, etc. [= **endowments**]

[13] reducing

[14] poorer

[15] achieve an excellent standard

[16] money given to pay for studies, usually provided on the basis of academic merit

[17] money given to pay for studies, usually provided on the basis of need

[18] education at university or college level

[19] money that students can borrow from a bank while studying and then pay back once they are in work

[20] students doing a first degree [**postgraduates =** students doing a further degree]

[21] money paid to receive teaching

B

Other debates and issues

Some people think we should return to an emphasis on **the three Rs**, the traditional, basic skills. [reading, writing and arithmetic]

Literacy and **numeracy** are skills no one can afford to be without. [the ability to read] [the ability to count / do basic maths]

Curriculum reform is often done for political reasons rather than for good educational ones. [changes to what is covered in the national **syllabus** = plan of what is to be studied]

Nowadays, **lifelong**/**continuing education** is an issue, and creating opportunities for **mature students** is important. [education for all ages] [adult students older than the average student]

Special needs education is expensive because class sizes need to be small or **one-to-one**. [education for children who cannot learn in the normal way, because they have some disability] [one teacher and one pupil, not a group]

Children are unhappy at school if there is a lot of **bullying**. [threatening behaviour]

Some headteachers complain that getting to grips with constant new government **guidelines** on what schools should be doing is a **distraction** from what they ought to be focusing on. [advice (often official) on how something should be done] [takes attention away]

Language help

Notice how compound adjectives like *well-off*, *well-endowed*, *high-achieving*, *badly-performing* can be used in comparative and superlative forms, e.g. ***better-off***, ***best-endowed***, ***higher-achieving***, ***worst-performing***.

Exercises

2.1 Complete the collocations by filling in the missing words according to the meaning given in brackets.

1 .... tables (lists of schools from best to worst)
2 .... education (entry to schools is decided by exam results)
3 equality of .... (when everyone has the same chances)
4 .... inequalities (make inequalities continue)
5 .... education (at university or college level)

2.2 Rewrite these sentences so they are more formal by using words and phrases from the opposite page instead of the underlined words. Make any other changes that are necessary.

1 Inequality is built into the education system.
2 Giving access only to privileged groups is bad for the country in the long term.
3 Education where everyone gets into the same type of school without exams is a basic political ideal in many countries.
4 A system where there are two levels of schools reduces the opportunities for children from poorer families and favours those from richer families.
5 Some private schools have lots of wealth and receive gifts of money, and this means they can have better resources.
6 All parents want their children to achieve the best possible results at school.
7 Emphasis on the three Rs is considered by parents to be the key to success.
8 The government is increasing its provision for education that young people can enter after finishing secondary school.

2.3 Correct these statements about words or expressions from the opposite page. Correct each of them twice – once by changing the definition and once by changing the word being defined.

1 One-to-one education is another way of saying continuing education.
One-to-one education means a situation where there is one teacher and one student.
Lifelong education is another way of saying continuing education.
2 Numeracy refers to the ability to read.
3 A student who is doing a doctorate is an undergraduate.
4 Excelling is when a pupil uses frightening or threatening behaviour towards another child who is smaller or less powerful in some way.
5 Tertiary education is the stage that follows primary education.
6 Comprehensive schools choose the best students to study there.
7 Guidelines list schools from good to bad according to their exam results.

2.4 Complete each sentence with a word from the opposite page.

1 Matt won a .... because of his excellent academic record.
2 Zara's parents said that starting a rock band with her friends would be too much of a .... from her studies.
3 The report contains some interesting .... on how best to prepare for exams.
4 There were two .... students in my class at university, but most of us were just 19.
5 Katia wouldn't have been able to go to university if her grandparents hadn't paid her tuition .... for her.
6 Most undergraduates need to take out a student .... to cover their costs while they study for a degree.
7 Primary schools usually spend a lot of time on the .... Rs.
8 At university I was lucky enough to have a lot of .... tutorials, just me and the tutor!

3 Applying for a job

A A job ad

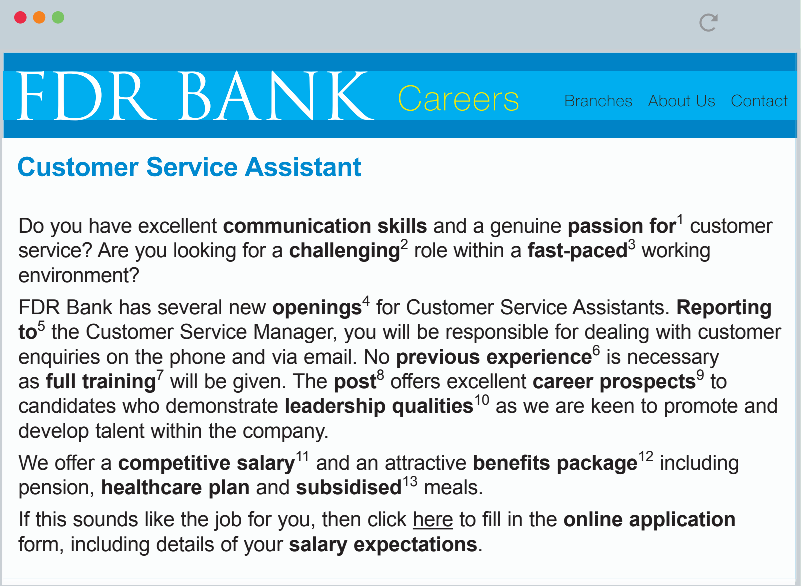

Customer Service Assistant

Do you have excellent **communication skills** and a genuine **passion for**[1] customer service? Are you looking for a **challenging**[2] role within a **fast-paced**[3] working environment?

FDR Bank has several new **openings**[4] for Customer Service Assistants. **Reporting to**[5] the Customer Service Manager, you will be responsible for dealing with customer enquiries on the phone and via email. No **previous experience**[6] is necessary as **full training**[7] will be given. The **post**[8] offers excellent **career prospects**[9] to candidates who demonstrate **leadership qualities**[10] as we are keen to promote and develop talent within the company.

We offer a **competitive salary**[11] and an attractive **benefits package**[12] including pension, **healthcare plan** and **subsidised**[13] meals.

If this sounds like the job for you, then click here to fill in the **online application** form, including details of your **salary expectations**.

[1] if you have a passion for something, you like it very much

[2] a positive word for something which is exciting and difficult

[3] if an environment is fast-paced, things happen quickly there

[4] available jobs

[5] if you report to someone, he/she is your boss

[6] experience of this type of job from before

[7] all the training you need

[8] job

[9] opportunities for promotion and career development

[10] the ability to lead a group

[11] as good as, or better than, other salaries for similar jobs

[12] all the extra benefits that a company offers (as well as a salary)

[13] partly paid for by the company

B A cover letter

You want your application to **stand out** [be better than others], so you should include a clear, well-written **cover letter**[1] which highlights key points from your CV. Here is a letter sent with the application for the job in A above.

Dear **Sir or Madam**[2]

Please find attached my CV **in support of** my application for the **position** of Customer Service Assistant. I have just completed my degree in Business Studies and am keen to gain **hands-on**[3] experience in this area.

During my course I chose to study several modules on banking and finance, as I have always been interested in working in this **field**[4]. In addition, I have worked as a part-time sales assistant in a large department store for the last two years. This has given me valuable **customer-facing**[5] experience, as well as developing good communication skills both with customers and the rest of the team. I am a **team player**[6] and I am keen to develop my career and gain **managerial experience**[7] in the future.

Thank you for taking the time to consider this application and I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully[8]

Rebecca White

Mention any studies or training courses you have done which are **relevant to** [connected to] the role.

If you have previous managerial experience, you can say 'In **my previous role as** (Sales Manager), I **led a team of** (four people).'

Be sure to specify the job you are applying for at the beginning of the letter.

It is important to mention any relevant experience you have, to show your **suitability for** the role. If you can, provide examples of specific projects you have **carried out**. [done]

[1] a letter sent with a job application (also called a **covering letter**)

[2] how you start a letter when you do not know the name of the person you are writing to

[3] practical, direct (not theoretical)

[4] area of business or activity

[5] dealing directly with customers

[6] a person who is good at working with others

[7] experience of managing other people

[8] how you finish a letter when you do not know the name of the person you are writing to

Exercises

3.1 Match the two parts of these business collocations from A and B.

1 healthcare	☐	a faithfully
2 team	☐	b prospects
3 Yours	☐	c plan
4 competitive	☐	d a team
5 challenging	☐	e application
6 communication	☐	f role
7 online	☐	g letter
8 lead	☐	h player
9 career	☐	i skills
10 cover	☐	j salary

3.2 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase from A or B with a similar meaning.

1 You don't need to have done this job before.
2 As part of my new job, I get meals partly paid for by the company.
3 It's really important to make your application look different from all the others.
4 Working in the factory over the summer gave me some direct experience of manufacturing.
5 I'm hoping to work in the area of automotive manufacturing.
6 Prism Consulting has a number of positions available for graduates.
7 The ad said the company will provide all the training you need.
8 You should only apply for the job if you have led a team before.
9 The salary isn't great, but they offer an attractive set of other advantages.

3.3 Look at A and B. Fill the gaps in these sentences, using a word from the box and a suitable preposition.

carried	passion	relevant	reported	role	suitable	support

1 I am sending my CV in .... my application for the position of sales team leader.
2 I have a .... sales.
3 Jakob's experience is more .... the job than Sylvana's.
4 In my previous .... Sales Representative, I .... the Sales Manager.
5 While working as a Customer Service Assistant, I also .... some research projects for the marketing department.
6 He only has 6 months' experience as a trainee. I don't think that makes him .... the job of quality manager.

3.4 Answer these questions.

1 What do we call a job which deals directly with the customers?
2 How can we describe someone who works well with other people?
3 How should you start a letter to someone whose name you don't know?
4 What four other words can be used instead of 'job' in an advertisement?
5 How can we describe a working environment which is busy and rapidly changing?

3.5 Over to you

Find a job ad that you are interested in and write an example cover letter in English.

4 Job interviews

A Preparing for interviews

When companies are **recruiting**[1], they often have a set of **criteria**[2] (e.g. three years of experience in the field, or a degree in a relevant area) which they use to find the most suitable candidates. If you are **shortlisted**[3] for an interview, make sure you **do your homework** first: find out as much as you can about the company, its products, markets, competitors, etc. If you can, ask a friend to do a **trial run**[4] with you. This will help **boost**[5] **your confidence**. The interview may be conducted by a **panel** [a group of people], probably including your future **line manager**[6]. Don't forget to **make eye contact** with all the interviewers while you are talking. As you arrive for the interview, **body language**[7] is important. Give a **firm handshake** and **speak up**[8]. This will help to create a good **first impression**.

[1] hiring (new staff) [2] requirements you use to make a decision [3] selected from a larger group [4] a practice of something new [5] improve or increase [6] the person who is directly responsible for your work [7] physical movements which show how you are feeling [8] speak (more) loudly and clearly

B During an interview

These are examples of things that might be said at a job interview.

A: So, can you **talk us through**[1] your CV?

B: Well, I studied Engineering and then took a job as a **trainee**[2] at F3 Telecom.

A: I'd like to ask about opportunities for **professional development**[3].

B: We have a very good **in-house**[4] training programme for **new recruits**[5].

Can you give us an example of how you've worked well **under pressure**?

How would your colleagues / your **supervisor**[6] describe you?

I'm keen to **take on**[7] more responsibility.

A: We're looking to **fill the post**[8] fairly quickly. If you are successful, how soon could you start?

B: The **notice period**[9] on my present job is just two weeks, so I could start very soon.

[1] tell us about in more detail [2] a person who is learning a new job [3] training given to employees to increase their knowledge or skills [4] within the company [5] people who have just joined (the company) [6] the person who checks your work [7] start to have [8] find someone to do the job [9] time you need to work in your job after you have officially told the company you are leaving

C A job offer

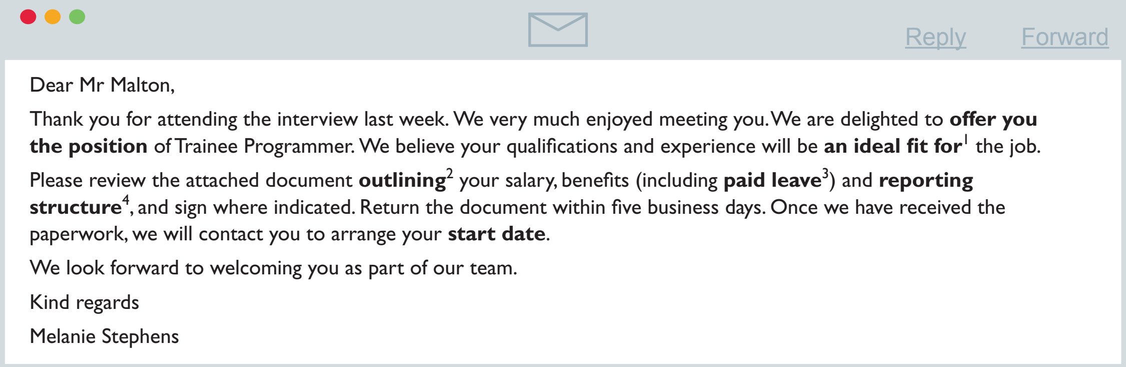
Reply
Forward

Dear Mr Malton,

Thank you for attending the interview last week. We very much enjoyed meeting you. We are delighted to **offer you the position** of Trainee Programmer. We believe your qualifications and experience will be **an ideal fit for**[1] the job.

Please review the attached document **outlining**[2] your salary, benefits (including **paid leave**[3]) and **reporting structure**[4], and sign where indicated. Return the document within five business days. Once we have received the paperwork, we will contact you to arrange your **start date**.

We look forward to welcoming you as part of our team.

Kind regards

Melanie Stephens

[1] very suitable for

[2] giving an overview of

[3] time off you are paid for, such as holiday or parental leave

[4] company structure and who you report to

Exercises

4.1 **Look at A and fill in the tips for a successful interview.**

1 Before the interview, ... your .... : find out as much as you can about the company and prepare answers to common interview questions.
2 If you can, do a .... to practise how you will answer the interview questions.
3 You need to create a good .... with the interviewers. Dress smartly and professionally.
4 Remember that your .... also plays an important part. Don't forget to smile! This will make you seem more friendly, and might actually .... your confidence too.
5 Make sure you greet your interviewer with a .... Make .... when you talk to them – look at them directly.
6 During the interview, describe all your relevant education and experience to show how you fulfil all the .... for the job.

4.2 **Choose the correct word from A and B to complete the sentences.**

1 I'm afraid you'll have to *speak up* / *eye up* / *head up*. I can hardly hear what you're saying.
2 We are *taking* / *recruiting* / *searching* people for our new branch in the city centre.
3 If we can't *fill* / *fulfil* / *supply* the post internally, we'll have to advertise externally.
4 If I get the new job, I will have to take *up* / *over* / *on* more responsibility, but I will get a salary increase.
5 I don't like working *under pressure* / *under stress* / *by force*. I end up making mistakes.
6 As part of the programme of *reporting structure* / *professional development* / *notice period*, we would like to invite you to a session on project management.

4.3 **Rewrite the following sentences using expressions from A, B and C.**

1 Could you tell us about your previous experience in this field?
2 I think we should give the job to Ruth. She seems perfectly suited to the team.
3 Employees are entitled to 30 days' holiday.
4 The group of interviewers will include your future line manager.
5 They just called me to say I have been chosen (as one of the best candidates) for an interview.

4.4 **Look at B and C opposite. There is one mistake in each of these sentences. Correct the mistakes.**

1 Please find attached a document overviewing your working conditions.
2 In some companies the leaving period can be as much as six months.
3 I'm going to be working as a superior, in charge of a team of 4 people.
4 The company doesn't do any in-office training. It's all done externally.
5 My begin date for the new job is 1 July.
6 I'm a trainer accountant. I haven't passed my qualifying exams yet.

4.5 **Over to you**

- What do you do before a stressful situation to boost your confidence?
- Would you rather have a lot of paid leave or a higher salary?
- Do you work better under pressure? Or do you prefer to have more time?
- Do you enjoy taking on extra responsibility? Or do you find it stressful?

5

At work: colleagues and routines

A

Colleagues

Philip is my **opposite number**[1] in the company's New York office. We have a good **working relationship**[2] and there's a lot of day-to-day **collaboration**[3]. Having a **counterpart**[4] like Philip in another branch is a great support. Last month we got a new boss, who quickly established a good **rapport**[5] with everyone. She likes us to **take the initiative**[6]. The company is very **hierarchical**[7]; there's a **pecking order**[8] for everything. I do a **job-share**[9] with a woman called Rose, which suits us as we each have childcare responsibilities. My office uses a **hot-desking**[10] system, so I sit in a different place every day. I socialise with my **workmates**[11] outside of work, but we try not to **talk shop**[12] on those occasions.

[1] has the same position / does the same job as me
[2] way of communicating and working together
[3] working together to achieve shared goals
[4] more formal equivalent of *opposite number*
[5] /ræˈpɔː/ communication/relationship
[6] make decisions without being told what to do
[7] /ˌhaɪəˈrɑːkɪkəl/ has a structure with important and less important people
[8] a system where some people have the right to get benefits/promotions before others
[9] an agreement where two people each share the same job
[10] a policy of sharing desks in an office, so people sit at whichever desk is free on a particular day
[11] colleagues you are friendly with (especially in non-professional occupations); *informal*
[12] talk about work; *informal*

B

During the day (different work patterns)

I do fairly **mundane**[1] tasks. Occasionally I have to **meet a deadline**[2] or they need someone to **volunteer**[3] for something. Then the job is more **rewarding**[4] and **stimulating**[5]. Sometimes I have a heavy **workload**[6] but at other times it can be quite light.

[1] ordinary, not interesting
[2] have something finished by a fixed day or time
[3] offer to do something without being asked or told to do it
[4] making you feel satisfied that you have done something important or useful, or done something well
[5] encouraging new ideas or new thinking
[6] amount of work I have to do

I start work at my machine at seven o'clock when I'm on the **day shift**. The job's **mechanical**[1] and **repetitive**[2]. All I ever think about is **knocking off**[3] at three o'clock. The shift I hate most is the **night shift**. I start at ten and work till six in the morning. It's a bit **monotonous**[4]. It's not a **satisfying**[5] job – I feel I need something a bit more **challenging**[6].

[1] you don't have to think about what you are doing
[2] the same thing is repeated every day
[3] finishing work; *informal*
[4] boring because it never changes
[5] (does not) make me feel pleased by providing what I need or want
[6] that tests my ability or determination

I have a pretty **glamorous**[1] job. I'm a pilot. But the hours are **irregular** and **anti-social**[2]. I'm not **stuck behind a desk**[3], but long-haul flights can be a bit **mind-numbing**[4]; most of the time the plane just flies itself. We work to very **tight schedules**[5]. But I shouldn't complain. I feel sorry for people who are **stuck in a rut**[6] or who are in **dead-end**[7] jobs.

[1] very exciting, which everyone admires
[2] do not enable one to have a normal social life
[3] sitting at a desk all day; *informal*
[4] extremely boring
[5] very strict or severely limited timetables
[6] stuck/trapped in a job they can't escape from
[7] with no prospects of promotion

I started off as a **technician**[1]. After retraining, I worked for a software company, and later I **went in with**[2] a friend and we formed our own software company as a **start-up**[3] in 2009, so now I'm **self-employed**. My husband is **freelance**[4]: he works for several different companies as and when they need work done – he's a computer **programmer**[5].

[1] person whose job involves practical work with scientific or electrical equipment
[2] formed a business partnership with
[3] a small business that has just started
[4] or works freelance
[5] someone who writes computer programs

Exercises

5.1 Correct seven mistakes in this paragraph.

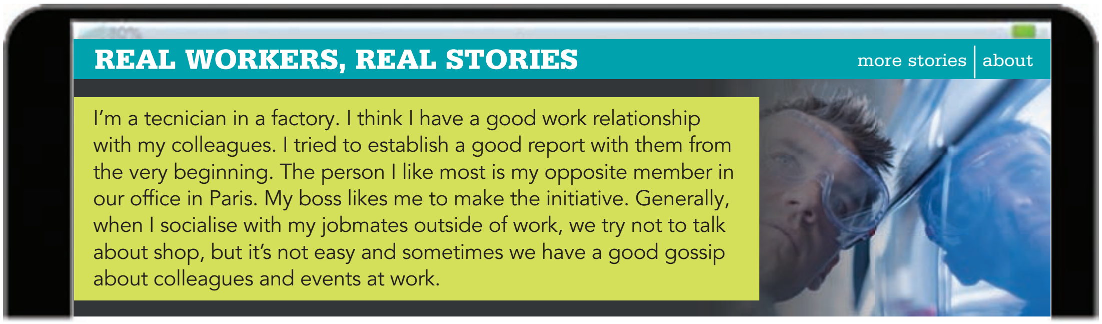

REAL WORKERS, REAL STORIES

I'm a tecnician in a factory. I think I have a good work relationship with my colleagues. I tried to establish a good report with them from the very beginning. The person I like most is my opposite member in our office in Paris. My boss likes me to make the initiative. Generally, when I socialise with my jobmates outside of work, we try not to talk about shop, but it's not easy and sometimes we have a good gossip about colleagues and events at work.

5.2 Match the left and right-hand columns to make pairs of sentences.

1 We often work together. ☐ a There are several levels of management.
2 The firm's rather hierarchical. ☐ b Deadlines have to be met.
3 Peter's my counterpart. ☐ c It's a job-share.
4 We work to a tight schedule. ☐ d Collaboration is a good thing.
5 I don't think I'll be promoted before her. ☐ e We do the same job but he's based in Rome.
6 Jess and I work half-and-half. ☐ f There's a strict pecking order in the company.

5.3 Use words and phrases from the opposite page to complete these sentences.

1 A good friend suggested we set up a small company together, so I .... her and we formed a .... in 2012.
2 I'm really tired; I've had a very heavy .... recently.
3 I don't want an office job. I don't want to spend all day stuck ....
4 I'd hate to feel trapped in my job and to be stuck in ....
5 I work for different companies at different times as it suits me. I'm ....
6 I used to work for someone else, but now I'm my own boss; I'm ....
7 I stopped working in the hamburger restaurant. It was such a dead ....
8 When I was working in the factory, all I could think of all day was the moment when I could knock ....
9 Being a hospital nurse is a good job, but you can't go out much with friends. The hours are a bit .... (*two possible answers*)
10 I find .... annoying, because it means I don't have my own desk where I can keep things at work.

5.4 Choose adjectives from the box to describe the jobs below. You can use more than one for each job. Add other adjectives of your own.

glamorous stimulating repetitive stressful monotonous varied mechanical
mundane challenging mind-numbing rewarding

1 assembly-line worker in a car factory
2 supermarket shelf stacker
3 public relations officer in a multinational company
4 bodyguard to a celebrity
5 surgeon
6 lifeguard on a beach
7 receptionist at a dentist's
8 private detective
9 refuse collector in a city
10 night-security guard

5.5 Over to you

Write down words from this unit that relate to your job, or to a job you would like to do in the future.

6 At work: job satisfaction

A Aspects of job satisfaction

What does **job satisfaction** mean? [a feeling that your job is worth doing and fulfils you] Is it just having a pleasant **workplace** or is it more than that? [the place where you work] Can a **run-of-the-mill** job be satisfying? [ordinary, not special or exciting]

Some people are prepared to put up with a stressful or unpleasant job if it means **short-term financial reward**. [immediate; *opp.* = **long-term**] [money gained]

Staff **morale** has been very low since the company announced a freeze on pay rises. [amount of confidence felt by a person or group]

Our new manager is very keen to encourage **teamwork** to help us solve problems. [working together for a common purpose]

Is **job stability** more motivating than an exciting, high-risk career? [not likely to change]

After working in the **fast-moving** fashion industry for six years, Sam has decided to look for a career with a better **work–life balance**. [developing or changing very quickly] [the amount of time spent working compared to the amount of time spent doing things you enjoy]

Daniel's job in a **dynamic** new company is often challenging but exciting. [continuously developing]

Chloe is **demotivated** in her current job following recent changes in the finance sector. [feeling less enthusiastic about work] She is **looking to work in / seeking a career in** something more creative, like marketing.

Language help

The text has some words with similar meanings connected to work. It is a good idea to learn them in pairs, e.g. ***fast-moving*** and ***dynamic*** (industry/profession), ***seeking a career in …*** and ***looking to work in …*** . (Note: we say *look* ***to***, meaning consider or plan, NOT look ~~for~~.)

B Expressions connected with working life

In many countries, women are allowed **maternity leave**, and men **paternity leave**, if they're having a baby. If they adopt a child, they may have a right to **adoption leave**. [time away from work to prepare for and look after a new baby / adopted child]

What **perks** (*informal*) / (**extra**) **benefits** (*formal*) do you get in your job? [extra things apart from salary, e.g. a car, **health insurance**]

What's your **holiday entitlement**? I get four weeks a year. [number of days you have the right to take as holiday]

Do you get regular salary **increments** each year? [increases/rises; *formal*] Do you get **performance-related** pay rises? [depending on how well you do your job] Do you get an **annual bonus**? [extra money paid once a year, usually based on good performance]

Most people think they are **overworked and underpaid**. (often said together as an informal, humorous fixed expression)

Because of the recession, the company announced that there would have to be **voluntary/ compulsory redundancies**. [people losing their jobs, by offering to do so / having no choice]

During the strike, the airport managed to continue running with a **skeleton staff** of volunteers. [the minimum number of workers needed to keep operating]

The people on the **interview panel** at the last job I applied for were so unfriendly that I got very nervous. [the group of people interviewing someone for a job]

Exercises

6.1 **Rewrite these sentences by using words and phrases from the opposite page instead of the underlined words.**

1 Do you enjoy working as part of a team?
2 I don't think that earning a lot of money is the key to job satisfaction.
3 Would you feel nervous giving a presentation to a group of people at interview?
4 Sales staff are often paid extra money each year when they perform well.

6.2 **Find expressions on the opposite page which mean the opposite of the underlined words or phrases.**

1 a very unusual, exciting job
2 a person who is highly motivated
3 a rather static and slow-moving profession
4 a drop in salary
5 compulsory redundancy
6 a full staff of workers
7 someone who has a light workload and is paid a lot
8 an automatic pay rise each year

6.3 **Choose the best word or phrase to complete each sentence.**

1 Rafael has done the same job for the last fifteen years and his job will be secure until he retires. For Rafael, *job stability* / *job satisfaction* is very important.
2 Kate has a good *workplace* / *work–life balance*. She never works late and she often finds time to relax with her family or go to the cinema in the evening.
3 After graduating from Manchester University, Dan started work in the *run-of-the-mill* / *fast-moving* film industry.
4 Amy joined the law firm for the *bonus* / *long-term* career prospects they offered. It would be hard work for the first few years, but she could later become a senior partner.

6.4 **Each sentence in these pairs of sentences contains a mistake. Correct them.**

1 She was on mother leave for three months after the birth of her baby. Then her husband took father leave for three months.
2 Sarah has been on adapted leave since she and Brian welcomed their new two-year old child into their family. Brian took volunteer redundancy from his job, which means he is at home too.
3 My holiday titlement is four weeks a year. The atmosphere in my place for work is very pleasant, so I'm happy.
4 When I applied for the job, I was looking for join a dynamic team. However, the interview jury gave an impression of complete boredom and lack of interest.
5 The factory had to operate with a skeletal staff during the economic crisis. There had been a large number of compulsive redundancies.
6 I get some good parks in my new job. I get a company car and free health security.

6.5 **Over to you**

- What does job satisfaction mean to you?
- Do you think financial reward is more important than job stability or work–life balance?

7

At work: careers

A

A career in sales

When Carl left school, he took the first job he was offered – in **telesales**[1]. He thought **telemarketing**[2] sounded quite glamorous but soon found that most of the people he phoned hated **cold calling**[3] and put the phone down when he tried the **hard sell**[4]. However, he persevered and found he became quite skilled at persuading customers to **part with their money**[5]. He then moved into a job on a **TV shopping channel**[6], where he specialised in selling **merchandise**[7] for the leisure market. He did so well at this that he set up his own sportswear company and **hasn't looked back**[8] since.

[1] + [2] selling or marketing goods and services by phone

[3] phoning people who have not requested a call in order to try to sell them something

[4] attempt to sell something by being very forceful or persuasive

[5] spend money

[6] a TV channel devoted to selling products

[7] products that are bought and sold

[8] has moved forward successfully

B

Buying and selling

A person's **purchasing power** is the ability they have to buy goods, i.e. the amount of money they have available.

If you **shop around**, you try different companies or shops to see which offers best value.

If you want to buy something, you need to find a shop that **stocks** it. [keeps a supply of it = **keeps it in stock**]

If you **trade something up**, usually a car or a house, you buy one that is of higher value than the one you had before. (*opp*. = **trade down**)

People sometimes make a purchasing decision based on **brand loyalty**. [confidence in that particular make and a tendency always to choose it]

Supermarkets sometimes sell an item for less than it costs them in order to attract a lot of people into the shop, where they will also buy more profitable items – the item being sold at a low price is called a **loss leader**.

For a company to sell its products, it has to **price** them appropriately. [give them a price]

If a company finds a **niche market**, it finds a specialised group of customers with particular interests that that company can meet.

If an item is said to **come**/**go under the hammer**, it is sold at an **auction**. [sale of goods or property where people make gradually increasing **bids** and the item is then sold to the highest **bidder**]

C

A career in business

A few years ago Tina started her own software development business, which turned out to be very **lucrative**[1]. However, she got increasingly irritated by all the **red tape**[2] involved in the **administration**[3] of a business and when a larger company contacted her with a **proposition**[4], suggesting a **takeover**[5], she was interested. At first, the two companies could not agree on all the details of the agreement but they managed to **reach a compromise**[6] and **hammer out a deal**[7] without too much delay. In many ways Tina was sad that her company had been **swallowed up**[8] but she has used the money raised by the sale of her **capital assets**[9] to **invest in**[10] a business **start-up**[11]: an online **holiday property letting agency**[12].

[1] producing a lot of money

[2] bureaucracy (negative)

[3] organisation and arrangement of operations

[4] formal offer

[5] agreement in which one company takes control of another one (compare with **merger**, in which two companies join together to become one company)

[6] come to an agreement in which both sides reduce their demands a little

[7] talk in detail until a business agreement is made

[8] taken over by a larger company

[9] buildings and machines owned by a company

[10] put money into

[11] new company

[12] a business organising the rental of holiday houses and flats

Exercises

7.1 Match the two parts of these business collocations from the opposite page.

1 loss ☐ a agency
2 capital ☐ b channel
3 purchasing ☐ c leader
4 shopping ☐ d tape
5 hard ☐ e power
6 letting ☐ f loyalty
7 brand ☐ g assets
8 niche ☐ h sell
9 red ☐ i market

7.2 Look at A and B opposite. Fill the gaps in these sentences.

1 A world-famous painting will go .... the hammer in London tomorrow.
2 It's a sensible idea to shop .... a bit before buying a computer.
3 Sally made the right decision when she quit her old job and set up her own business – she hasn't looked .... since the day it opened.
4 I don't mind trying a hard sell on a person who has already expressed an interest in our products, but I hate .... calling.
5 It can be quite hard to persuade my dad to .... with his money.
6 I'm going to make a .... for the dining table that is up for auction tomorrow.
7 My current job is in .... I spend all the day on the phone.
8 They produce special clothes for people who practise yoga and have really cornered this .... market.
9 The shop I went to didn't .... the printer I wanted so I'm going to order it online.

7.3 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase from C with a similar meaning.

1 As their business interests were quite different, it took them a long time to come to an agreement.
2 If you want to go into the import and export business, you had better be prepared for a lot of bureaucracy.
3 At the moment they are discussing the possibility of buying up another company.
4 Sportswear is a very profitable business to be in at the moment.
5 Banks will only lend a new business money if they have a realistic business plan.
6 A number of small companies have been taken over by that huge multinational in the last six months.
7 Hassan has made a rather interesting suggestion about setting up a business together.
8 Chloe is much better at the creative side of business than the organisation involved in running a company.

7.4 Choose the best word to complete each sentence.

1 I hope we'll be able to *keep* / *reach* a compromise when we meet tomorrow.
2 I think those new games consoles are *priced* / *purchased* too high at the moment.
3 The shops are hoping to sell a lot of *capital assets* / *merchandise* connected with the royal wedding.
4 My sports car was so expensive to run that I decided to trade it *down* / *up* for something much cheaper.
5 Helga has never looked *back* / *out* since she started her own business ten years ago.
6 There's a lot of *loss leader* / *red tape* involved in setting up a new business.

8 Describing people: positive and negative qualities

A Character and personality

Chinese astrology organises years into cycles of 12, and asserts that the year you are born in affects your character. Each year is named after an animal.

animal	year	characteristics
RAT	1972, 1984, 1996, 2008	imaginative, charming, generous, quick-tempered, **opportunistic**[1]
BUFFALO	1973, 1985, 1997, 2009	conservative, **methodical**[2], conscientious, **chauvinistic**[3], a born leader
TIGER	1974, 1986, 1998, 2010	sensitive, emotional, tends to **get carried away**[4], stubborn, rebellious, courageous
RABBIT	1975, 1987, 1999, 2011	affectionate, **obliging**[5], sentimental, **superficial**[6], often **insecure**[7]
DRAGON	1976, 1988, 2000, 2012	fun-loving, popular, a **perfectionist**[8], gifted, may sometimes be **tactless**[9]
SNAKE	1977, 1989, 2001, 2013	charming, **intuitive**[10], stingy
HORSE	1978, 1990, 2002, 2014	**diligent**[11], independent, **placid**[12], outgoing, can be selfish and cunning
GOAT	1979, 1991, 2003, 2015	elegant, artistic, always ready to complain, over-anxious
MONKEY	1980, 1992, 2004, 2016	witty, **magnetic personality**[13], good company, can be **distrustful**[14]
ROOSTER	1981, 1993, 2005, 2017	industrious, **shrewd**[15], **supportive**[16], decisive, **extravagant**[17]
DOG	1982, 1994, 2006, 2018	**down-to-earth**[18], **altruistic**[19], **morose**[20], **sharp-tongued**[21]
PIG 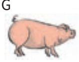	1983, 1995, 2007, 2019	intellectual, tolerant, **naive**[22], often materialistic

[1] using situations for own benefit
[2] systematic, careful
[3] too patriotic
[4] become too excited and lose control
[5] ready to help
[6] not caring about serious things
[7] not confident, uncertain about your own abilities
[8] someone who is not satisfied if things are not 100% perfect
[9] inclined to say things that upset or offend people
[10] understanding instinctively
[11] hard-working
[12] calm, does not easily become excited or angry
[13] personality that attracts people to you
[14] not trusting, suspicious of others
[15] having good judgement
[16] gives help or encouragement
[17] spends too much money or uses too much of something
[18] practical and sensible
[19] thinking of others rather than yourself
[20] gloomy
[21] inclined to speak in a severe and critical way
[22] without enough experience of life, trusting too easily

B Positive and negative associations

Charming, generous – is that how you think of yourself? Selfish, cunning – that can't be me!
Some words in the chart above have positive associations, others negative ones. Here are some words from the chart, together with other words that share some aspects of their meaning. The table shows which have positive and which have negative associations.

positive	negative	positive	negative
generous, unstinting	extravagant, immoderate	shrewd, astute	cunning, sly
resolute, dogged	stubborn, obstinate	sober, serious	morose, sullen
thrifty, frugal	stingy, parsimonious	witty, pithy	brusque, terse
diligent, industrious	work-obsessed, (a) workaholic (noun)	tolerant, open-minded	unprincipled, unscrupulous
idealistic, principled	dogmatic, inflexible	chatty, talkative	verbose, garrulous

Exercises

8.1 Read the comments and then answer the questions.

I wish Tatyana would calm down and not get so over-excited about things.

Tom thinks his country is better than any other country and doesn't listen to reason.

Alice can always be relied upon to make the right decision.

Sophie is always so calm.

Harry is such a practical and sensible person.

Andrey has a tendency to say things that upset people.

1 Who is placid?
2 Who is down-to-earth?
3 Who tends to get carried away?
4 Who is often tactless?
5 Who is shrewd?
6 Who is chauvinistic?

8.2 Which colleagues does the speaker have a positive opinion of and which a negative one?

'Ellie, my boss, is very astute and she can be very witty, but I find her assistant, David, a bit sullen and obstinate. Julia, who I sit next to, is a bit stingy and extremely work-obsessed. I do a lot of work with Marco, who's very obliging, supportive and tolerant.'

8.3 Fill the gaps with words from the opposite page. You are given the first letter(s) and clues to the meaning in brackets.

1 He's rather o.......................... . He always tries to use situations to his own advantage. (devious)
2 She has an i.......................... approach to life rather than a rational one. (instinctive)
3 My father was a somewhat quick-tempered and m.......................... sort of person. (gloomy)
4 He was a very altruistic person, almost to the point of being n.......................... . (too trusting)
5 Aisha has a m.......................... personality. Everyone is drawn to her. (attractive)
6 Rob is a very conscientious and m.......................... worker. (careful, systematic)
7 I find Eva a bit b.......................... and rude. (speaks in a quick and rude way)
8 She's fun-loving but she can be a bit s.......................... at times. (doesn't care about serious things)
9 I think Max is i.......................... . (doesn't have much confidence, not really sure of himself)
10 I'm always happy to go out for a meal with Kerstin. She's such g.......................... c.......................... . (pleasant and entertaining to spend time with)
11 She was very c.......................... in speaking out against corruption. (brave, unafraid to speak or act)
12 Owen's a p.......................... . He's never happy if he doesn't get an A-grade in every test.

8.4 Find adjectives on the opposite page related to these abstract nouns.

1 altruism
2 parsimony
3 diligence
4 placidity
5 industriousness
6 rebellion
7 distrust
8 terseness
9 naivety
10 unscrupulousness

8.5 The adjectives you found in the exercise above are more common in formal contexts. Give a synonym for each word that would be more likely to be used in informal situations (e.g. a friendly, informal conversation). Use a dictionary if necessary.

8.6 Over to you

Which adjectives from this unit could you use to describe you, your friends and your family members?

9

Describing people: appearance and mannerisms

A Adjectives connected with size, weight and general appearance

She introduced me to a tall, **slender** woman who looked very serious. [thin in an attractive way]
He was too **scrawny** to be a football player. [unattractively thin and bony-looking]
A **lanky** teenager walked in. [very tall and thin, and usually moving awkwardly]
A **gangling**/**gangly** youth approached him. [tall, with long, thin arms and legs and rather awkward movements; often used of men and boys]
Recent studies show that an increasing number of children are **obese**. [very fat, in an unhealthy way]
She's the rather **stout** woman wearing glasses over there. [with a quite large, solid body; used of men and women]
My grandfather was a **stocky** man with big hands and broad shoulders. [short and with a body that is wide across the shoulders and chest]

B Aspects of appearance and complexion

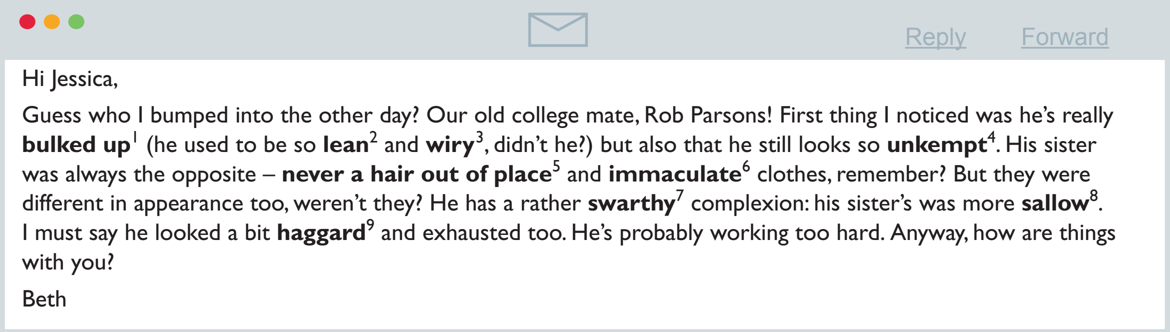

Hi Jessica,

Guess who I bumped into the other day? Our old college mate, Rob Parsons! First thing I noticed was he's really **bulked up**[1] (he used to be so **lean**[2] and **wiry**[3], didn't he?) but also that he still looks so **unkempt**[4]. His sister was always the opposite – **never a hair out of place**[5] and **immaculate**[6] clothes, remember? But they were different in appearance too, weren't they? He has a rather **swarthy**[7] complexion: his sister's was more **sallow**[8]. I must say he looked a bit **haggard**[9] and exhausted too. He's probably working too hard. Anyway, how are things with you?

Beth

[1] increased in body size, especially by gaining more muscle
[2] thin and healthy
[3] thin but strong
[4] untidy, scruffy (the opposite would be *smart* or *neat*; 'kempt' does not exist)
[5] always well-dressed, neat and smart-looking
[6] in perfect condition, smart
[7] dark-coloured, used about skin
[8] yellowish
[9] his face looked ill and tired

C Facial expression

A: What are you **grinning** at? [giving a big smile]
B: You've got ice cream on your nose – it looks so funny!
Look at those models **pouting** for the photographers! [positioning their lips in an attractive way]
She said if her daughter doesn't get what she wants, she **pouts** for the rest of the day. [positions her lips in a look of annoyance]
You don't have to **grimace** every time I eat raw garlic. I happen to think it's delicious. [make an expression of pain or strong dislike]
I arrived late and she just **scowled** at me. [gave a bad-tempered, angry look]
He was **leering** at us. I felt very uncomfortable and wanted to leave. [looking in an unpleasant, sexually interested way]

D Mannerisms and actions

I asked him for advice but he just **shrugged his shoulders**. [lifted his shoulders up and down to show he didn't know or couldn't answer]
He **folded his arms** and **crossed his legs** and waited for me to speak. [crossed one arm over the other close to his body] [crossed one leg over the other while sitting]
He sat there **twitching** nervously as he waited for his interview. [suddenly making small movements]
She **bites her nails** all the time. It drives me crazy!
She **clenched her fist** and told him to get out of the room at once. [closed her hand tightly because of anger]
He just kept **tapping**/**drumming his fingers** on the table, looking impatient. [made quick, light hitting movements]

Exercises

9.1 **Rewrite these sentences using words from A opposite instead of the underlined words.**

1 She looks as if she needs a good meal; her body is so thin and bony.
2 Martha and David are both rather tall and thin individuals.
3 Being extremely fat can have health risks.
4 A very tall, thin, bony, awkward-looking boy carried our bags for us.
5 Her new silk dress suited her thin frame.
6 A short man with broad shoulders offered to lift the stone so we could look underneath.
7 That solid-looking woman on the left of the photo is Charlie's wife.

9.2 **Fill in the gaps in the sentences using words from B opposite.**

1 Finn looked really .... after two weeks of camping – his clothes were dirty and his hair was a mess!
2 Leah always looks amazing – she never has a .... out of place!
3 Alex has .... a lot – must be all that time he spends at the gym lifting weights!
4 Dan hasn't slept for three days – he looks really tired and .... !

9.3 **What are these people doing?**

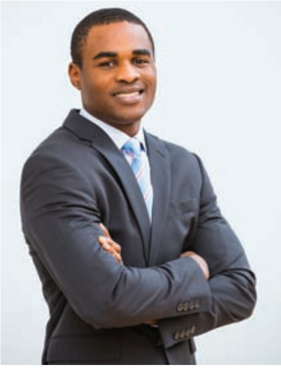

1 ......*He's folding his arms.*.......

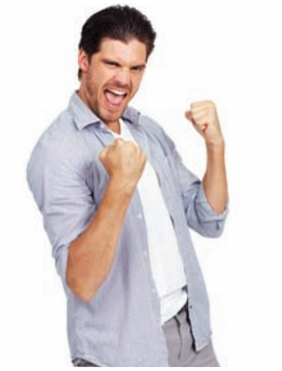

2 ....

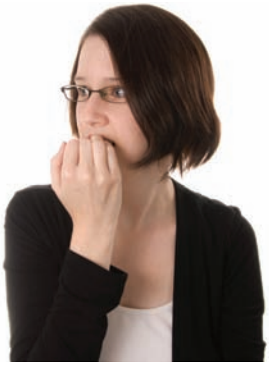

3 ....

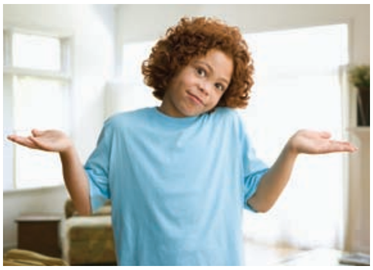

4 ....

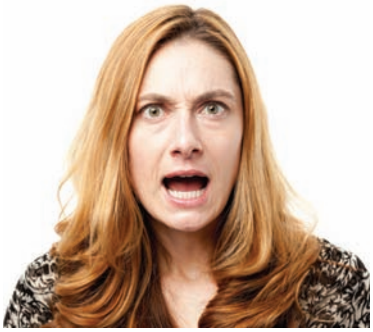

5 ....

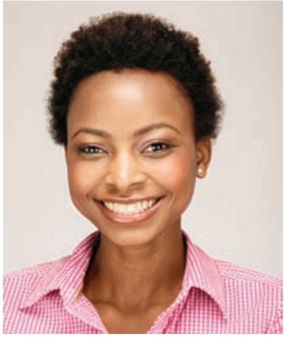

6 ....

9.4 **Answer these questions. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

1 The verb *to pout* has two meanings on the opposite page. What are they?
2 If someone scowls at you, how are they probably feeling?
3 What is the difference between a *swarthy* complexion and a *sallow* complexion?
4 When would you clench your fist?
5 When do people normally shrug their shoulders?
6 What might you do with your fingers on a table if you were nervous or impatient?
7 In what situations do people typically (a) fold their arms, (b) cross their legs?
8 If someone is 'lean and wiry', which of these adjectives are true of them: *thin*, *fat*, *healthy*, *weak*, *ill-looking*, *strong*?

10 Describing people: personality and character traits

A Adjectives to describe people's personality or behaviour

word	meaning	example
impetuous	acts on a sudden idea without thinking first (often negative)	She's so **impetuous**; I wish she would consider things before acting.
impulsive	similar to *impetuous*, but can be used in a more positive way	His **impulsive** generosity led him to give money to anyone who asked for help.
effusive	gives exaggerated expression of pleasure, praise or gratitude	She always gives me such an **effusive** welcome when I visit her.
excitable	easily excited by things	He's a very **excitable** child; he needs to calm down.
pushy	always selfishly promoting your own position or interests; *informal*	She's so **pushy**; it's typical of her to demand a pay rise for herself and not care about the rest of us.
self-conscious	nervous or uncomfortable because you know what people think about you or your actions	Freddie seemed **self-conscious** and uncomfortable when he had to make the announcement at the party.
well-balanced	calm and reasonable and showing good judgement	The teacher said Maddy was a **well-balanced** child who got on well at school.
taciturn /'tæsɪtɜːn/	reserved or says very little (generally negative)	He was a bit **taciturn** when I first met him. He hardly said a word.

B Sociability

Chloe's such an **introvert**. Her brother Mark is so **outgoing** and is such an **extrovert**. Strange, isn't it? [inward-looking and quiet] [energetic and friendly, finds it easy to be with others] [outward-looking, energetic and sociable]

Mr Rogers is such a **diffident** man. He seems to have quite low **self-esteem**. [lacks confidence] [has a low opinion of himself]

English people are traditionally thought of as rather **reserved**. [not immediately sociable]

Eva tends to be rather **aloof**. I don't know if she's just shy. [unfriendly and not sociable]

My aunt Annie can be very **haughty** and **disdainful** at times, but she's lovely really. [unfriendly and thinks herself better than others] [does not believe others deserve respect]

I've always found Professor Mactoft very **unapproachable**, but his colleague Dr O'Daly is very **approachable**. [not easy to be sociable with or start a conversation with] [the opposite]

Natasha is very **conceited** and **self-important**, but Rachel is such a **modest** person. [thinks herself wonderful] [has an exaggerated sense of her importance] [prefers not to exaggerate her own qualities]

Joe is always so polite and **respectful**. I wish he would be more informal and just treat me as his equal. [treating someone well and politely, often with admiration]

C Character traits

Arjen is a somewhat **naive** person; he thinks love can solve all the world's problems. [/naɪ'iːv/ willing to believe simple things, perhaps because of inexperience]

Telephone salespeople often take advantage of **gullible** people. [easily deceived]

My father was a very **conscientious** man; he never took time off work unless he was really sick. [/ˌkɒntʃi'entʃəs/ always took his work very seriously]

She's a **restless** individual. I don't think she'll ever settle down in a job. [not satisfied with what she is doing now and wanting something new]

You are so **obstinate** and **pig-headed**! Why don't you listen when people give you advice? [unwilling to change, despite persuasion] [similar to *obstinate* but stronger; *informal*]

Exercises

10.1 Answer these questions.

1 Why would people rather have an approachable teacher or boss than an unapproachable one?
2 What is a stronger and less formal way of saying *obstinate*?
3 If someone is *diffident*, do they have little or lots of self-confidence?
4 How could you describe a greeting from someone that showed exaggerated pleasure?
5 Do you think it would be easy or difficult to have a friendly conversation with a taciturn person?
6 Which tends to be more negative, *impetuous* or *impulsive*?
7 Which would most people rather be described as, *conscientious* or *self-conscious*?
8 If you're *outgoing*, are you more likely to be seen as an introvert or an extrovert?

10.2 Rewrite the underlined parts of the sentences using the words in the box, making any other changes necessary.

restless well-balanced aloof conceited haughty excitable naive self-esteem pushy outgoing

1 Don't be so over-proud of your achievements! You're not the only one to get an A-grade!
2 People who have a poor opinion of themselves can find it difficult to achieve their goals.
3 He's generally a happy, sociable sort of person.
4 She is a person who is generally quite reasonable and who shows good judgement overall.
5 You always seem unable to settle down. What's the problem?
6 He's so easily excited. He should try to calm down more.
7 She believes rather simple things when it comes to politics.
8 He's just pursuing his own interests and cares little what happens to others.
9 Frances was very unfriendly and would not take part in things at the party.
10 At times, Joel is quite cold and unfriendly and acts as if he's better than the rest of us.

10.3 Complete the table. Some of the words are not on the opposite page.

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
excitable		reserved	
gullible			diffidence
	disdain	pig-headed	
impetuous			respect
obstinate		self-important	
approachable		modest	

10.4 These sentences contain words from the table in 10.3. Rewrite the sentences using the other form of the word. For example, use a noun instead of an adjective and vice versa.

1 One of her main character traits is that she is impetuous.
2 It's difficult to get him to change his ways. He displays a high level of obstinacy.
3 Luke shows a lot of reserve, but his wife is known more for her approachability.
4 One of her nicest characteristics is that she is modest.
5 She shows a lot of respect for her elders. It's important in her culture.
6 Being pig-headed seems to be a family trait among my relatives.
7 She is so full of self-importance; it irritates everyone.
8 Online identity thieves prey on people being gullible.

10.5 Over to you

Choose five words from the opposite page that you feel describe you. Be honest!

11 Relationships: friends forever

A Love and romance

When Tom met Lily, it was **love at first sight**. [love began the first time they saw each other]
She **fell head over heels in love** with him. [fell deeply and madly in love]
Nick **only has eyes for** Sophie. He's not interested in other girls. [is only attracted to]
Lauren was more than **infatuated with** Dave; she was completely **besotted with** him. [romantically obsessed with] [almost stupidly or blindly in love with]
I've often seen Matt and Ellie at the cinema together, but it's purely a **platonic relationship**. [affectionate relationship between people of the opposite sex that is not sexual]

B Friendships and other positive relationships

Anona and I **hit it off** immediately; we're true **soulmates**. [liked each other the moment we met] [people who feel close in spirit and understand each other deeply]
The moment I met Rob, I could see he was **a man after my own heart**. [someone you admire because they do or think the same as you; also **woman after your own heart**]
Charlie and I **get on like a house on fire**. [have a very good, enjoyable relationship]
Rob and Jamie have been **bosom friends**/**buddies**/**pals** for years. [very close, good friends]
Marta and Carmen are **inseparable**. [always want to be together, very close]
There's a close **bond** between Rushda and her aunt. [relationship or feeling of togetherness]

C General social relationships: collocations

The replies in these conversations are another way of saying what the first speaker says.

A: You seem to be very similar to Ben – the way you think and look at life.
B: Yes, we've always been **kindred spirits**.

A: What a nice wedding! Nathan and Amelia seem to be perfect for each other.
B: Yes, such a **well-matched** couple!

A: Our Spanish friends are always phoning their brothers and sisters.
B: Yes, well, I think **family ties** in Spain are much stronger than here.

A: I've never met Rosie, but I know several people she knows.
B: Yes, she said you have a number of **mutual acquaintances**.

A: Gareth has a lot of respect for Clare.
B: Yes, he **holds her in high regard**.

A: Sarah and Anna are very close these days. I'm sure they share all their secrets.
B: Yes, they're **as thick as thieves**.

D Nouns and adjectives

adjective	noun	example
adoring	**adoration**	The parents gazed at their new-born baby with a look of tender **adoration**.
affectionate	**affection**	He never shows much **affection** for his children.
amiable	**amiability**	She always treats us with great **amiability**.
considerate	**consideration**	'Have some **consideration** for the other students!' she said angrily.
faithful	**faithfulness**	**Faithfulness** is the key to a good marriage.
fond	**fondness**	Over the years she developed a **fondness** for Mario that went beyond a purely business relationship.
loyal	**loyalty**	He was a great team captain who inspired **loyalty** in the players.

Exercises

11.1

Match up the words on the left with words on the right to make expressions. Then use the expressions to complete the sentences below.

1 love ☐ a pals
2 head ☐ b it off
3 bosom ☐ c acquaintances
4 hit ☐ d spirits
5 kindred ☐ e at first sight
6 mutual ☐ f over heels in love

1 When Josh met Emma, it was ....
2 Phil and Toby look at life in the same way. They're ....
3 Ever since they worked together, Lucy and Olivia have been ....
4 I was introduced to Zoe by some ....
5 They just looked at each other and fell ....
6 When Ross and I met, we immediately ....

11.2

Fill the gaps in these sentences.

1 Rachel only has .... for Mark these days. She's crazy over him.
2 They look such a .... couple. I wonder if they will get married?
3 Tara and I have always got .... like a house ....
4 He's completely .... with her. I've never known him to be so much in love before. He's like a teenager. (*two possible answers*)
5 Matt would do anything for his boss – he holds her in very high ....
6 I think she was quite right to say what she did – she's a woman after my own ....
7 The children must be planning something – they look as .... as thieves.
8 They spend most of their holidays in the south of Italy because of their .... ties there.

11.3

Complete the table. Some of the words are not on the opposite page.

noun	adjective	noun	adjective
	loyal	respect	
consideration		affection	
passion			romantic
	devoted	support	
	fond		amiable
	faithful	trust	
adoration			infatuated

11.4

Now complete these sentences, which include words from the table above, using the correct preposition. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 She's absolutely devoted .... her mother and visits her every day.
2 I've always had a lot of respect .... my boss, and I do enjoy my job a lot.
3 She's been so loyal .... me all these years, I can't let her down now.
4 He's very supportive .... his colleagues; they're very lucky.
5 I'm quite fond .... Simon, but that doesn't mean I want to marry him.
6 He puts a lot of trust .... me, and I feel I can trust him too.
7 I feel very affectionate .... him but I'm not in love with him.
8 Sophie and Dan are as passionate .... each other as they were ten years ago.

11.5

Over to you

Name someone in your life who:

- you feel a close bond with.
- is a real soulmate for you.
- is a person after your own heart.

12 Relationships: ups and downs

A Friendship

FRIENDSHIP

Friends are people who are much more than mere **casual acquaintances**[1]. **True friends** are always there when you need them, as you are for them. We expect **loyalty**[2] from our friends, despite our faults, and should give it in return, never speaking ill of them **behind their backs**[3]. As well as having friends and casual acquaintances, we have relationships with **colleagues**, **allies** and **partners.**

[1] people you know, but not very well [2] support in good or bad times [3] when they are not there

Here are some qualities of friendship and their opposites:

quality	opposite
loyal (adj.), **loyalty** (noun)	**disloyal** (adj.), **disloyalty** (noun)
supportive [always supports you]	**unsupportive**, **critical**
honest, **truthful**	**dishonest**, **untruthful**
respectful (adj.), **respect** (noun)	**disrespectful** (adj.), **disrespect** (noun)

B Good and bad relationships

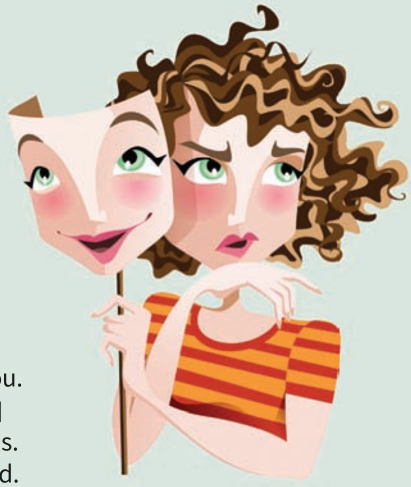

I used to think of Kate as a friend but I now realise she has been **two-faced towards** me. [insincere; pleasant with someone and then unpleasant about them behind their back]

Russia and America were **allies** in the war. [countries or people who join together to fight for a common cause]

We were **business partners** but now we're **bitter**/**arch rivals**. [people who own a business together] [people in competition with each other in a negative, aggressive way] Indeed, I could say we are now **sworn enemies**. [people who will always hate each other]

Fergus has been **disloyal to** me on a number of occasions.

OK, I was **dishonest with** you. I'm sorry, but I didn't want to hurt you.

Sam has been very **distant towards** me recently. [not friendly, cold]

Jamie has always been **scrupulously honest** in his dealings with us.

I would expect **complete and unswerving loyalty** from a true friend.

Monica has always been my **staunchest ally** at work. I can always rely on her to support me.

I was amazed that someone who called herself my friend could be so **deeply critical of** me.

C Breakdowns: expressions and collocations

Unfortunately, relationships sometimes **break down** because of **genuine misunderstandings**. [collapse] [not understanding something correctly]

A **rift** can **develop** between two people or groups. [serious disagreement that divides people]

There's been a lot of **discord** in the office lately. [disagreement and discontent]

My father and I **don't see eye to eye** on most things. [have different opinions]

Jack and his sister have **been on bad terms** for a long time. [have a poor relationship]

His love affair with Anna has **turned sour**. I think they'll **split up**. [become bad] [separate]

Our marriage **has had its ups and downs**, but basically we're OK. [had good and bad times]

a **bumpy relationship** [up and down like a car on a road with bumps]

a **broken home** [family split up by divorce]

a **family feud** [/fjuːd/ quarrel in a family causing bad feeling for many years]

Exercises

12.1 Give the opposites of these adjectives.

1 loyal
2 truthful
3 honest
4 supportive
5 distant
6 respectful

12.2 Some words in these sentences have been used incorrectly. Rewrite the sentences using the correct word from A.

1 We both own the company: we're business rivals.
2 I've made several casual colleagues since moving to London, but no close friends yet.
3 Were Britain and the USA colleagues in the First World War?
4 The two companies hate each other: they're acquaintances.

12.3 Fill the gaps with suitable adjectives or adverbs from the opposite page.

1 You need .... allies at work who won't let you down.
2 His .... honesty is a quality I greatly admire.
3 I don't know why she was so .... critical of him; it seemed very unfair.
4 Her .... and .... loyalty to him was a mistake. He betrayed her in the end.
5 Tom and Amy were .... rivals at work, but seemed to get on well outside the office.
6 When all my other so-called friends drifted away, Jack always remained a .... friend to me.

12.4 Fill the gaps with a suitable preposition.

1 I know I'm not perfect, but I've never been dishonest .... you.
2 She's very critical .... her colleagues.
3 Why are you always so disloyal .... me?
4 A true friend would never talk .... your back.
5 I hate being .... bad terms .... people.
6 I realise that people can often be two-faced .... their boss.

12.5 Rewrite the underlined phrases to give the *opposite* meaning.

1 Mia and her sister shared the same opinion on a lot of things.
2 Carla's affection for Andrew has grown stronger lately. I expect they'll get engaged.
3 Our relationship stayed firm because we were truthful to each other.
4 Henry's brothers are close friends.

12.6 Use expressions from the opposite page to describe these situations.

1 Harry has phoned – he's still at the station. He thought I was picking him up and I thought he was getting a taxi. It was a ....
2 The kids have been unhappy since their parents divorced. They come from a ....
3 Her marriage has been both good and bad at different times. It has ....
4 The two union leaders have had a serious disagreement which has split them. A serious ....
5 Two of the brothers have not spoken to their other brother for 20 years because of something bad that happened. I think it's a ....

13 Emotions and reactions

A Strong desires

Pregnant women **crave** / **have a craving for** strange things like tuna and banana pizza! [want very strongly]
Young children often seem to **thirst** / **have a thirst for** knowledge. [feel very strongly that you want]
Sometimes my cousin just **yearns to** be on her own with no family responsibilities. [if you **yearn to do** / **yearn for** / **have a yearning for** something, it means that you want something that you do not have and, often, can never have]
An Olympic gold medal is probably the most **coveted** sporting prize. [**to covet** something means to want to possess it very much]

B Reacting to other people's emotions

Lottie tried to **defuse** the tension by changing the subject. [make a dangerous or tense situation calmer]
Tim was very angry with his daughter and it took her a long time to **placate** him. [stop someone feeling angry]
An independent advisor has been brought in to **conciliate** between the unions and the employer. [end a disagreement between two people or groups by acting in a friendly way towards both sides; *formal*]
Although **appeasing** the enemy postponed the war for another year, it did not ultimately prevent it from happening. [end a disagreement by giving the other side an advantage that they are demanding (normally used in a disapproving way); *formal*]

Language help

A useful adjective from *placate* is *implacable*. It is used about someone's opinions and feelings and means that they cannot be changed, e.g. *I cannot understand the* ***implacable hatred*** *that he still feels for his old rival*. (Note: *placable* doesn't exist.)

C Being extremely happy

exultant: feeling great pleasure and happiness, usually because of a success (more formal than **ecstatic**) Sarah was in an **exultant** mood / was **ecstatic** after her great exam results.
to rejoice: be extremely happy; *formal* Everyone **rejoiced** at the news of her recovery.
jubilant: expressing great happiness, especially at a victory; *formal* There were **jubilant** shouts as the results of the referendum were announced.
bliss: perfect happiness (often collocates with **utter** and **sheer**; adjective = **blissful**; the adverb **blissfully** often collocates with **happy**, **ignorant** and **unaware**) We had a fabulous holiday on a beautiful island – seven days of **utter**/**sheer bliss**. They are **blissfully happy** even though they're poor.

There are a number of informal expressions which mean to be very happy:
You look **full of the joys of spring** today. Why are you smiling all the time?
My daughter's just had a baby girl. We're **thrilled to bits** at the news.
I feel on top of the world. It's great to have a job again.
I've been **floating**/**walking on air** ever since I heard I got into drama school.
A: How did you feel when you scored the winning goal?
B: I was **over the moon**!

Exercises

13.1 Choose one of the words below each sentence to fill the gaps.

1 I often find I .... sweet things when I'm studying, but I try to resist!
A thirst B crave C hunger
2 Martha is very good at .... difficult situations.
A placating B appeasing C defusing
3 Everyone is .... to bits that Karim was so successful in the competition.
A blissful B thrilled C exultant
4 If he has a tantrum, you mustn't try to .... him. Don't give in!
A conciliate B appease C defuse
5 When Jess retires, there will probably be a lot of internal applicants for what must be the most .... job in the company.
A yearned B craved C coveted
6 Fortunately, her parents were .... ignorant of what was going on.
A jubilantly B blissfully C exultantly

13.2 Read the comments. Then answer the questions.

Rowan

I just want to learn more and more about science, history, everything.

Katie

I'm just longing to return to my homeland again. But I don't think I ever will.

William

I'd give anything to own that motorbike of Nick's. It's so fantastic!

Ashley

Calm down, there's no need to be so cross.

1 Who is yearning to do something?
2 Who is placating someone?
3 Who has a thirst for something?
4 Who covets something?

13.3 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

1 Lucy has been walking ☐
2 Beth is full ☐
3 Eva seems to be blissfully ☐
4 Everyone rejoiced ☐
5 Sam is feeling ☐
6 His parents were thrilled ☐

a on top of the world since he got his PhD.
b unaware of all the problems.
c to bits when he won the medal.
d on air since she got her promotion.
e when they heard that the war had ended.
f of the joys of spring.

13.4 Answer these questions.

1 If a politician talks about someone appeasing someone else, is he/she expressing approval?
2 Would fans be more likely to be called jubilant or blissful if their team won the World Cup?
3 If someone tried to conciliate between two neighbours who each claimed the other was too noisy, what would that person be trying to do?
4 If you are trying to placate someone, is it likely that they are (a) angry or (b) over-excited?
5 If, after a conflict, someone is thirsting for revenge, is it likely they are ready to forget the conflict or not?

13.5 Over to you

Think of an occasion (a) when you felt ecstatic about something, (b) when you had to defuse a difficult situation, and (c) when you had to placate someone.

14 Negative feelings

A Antipathies and aversions

Antipathy is a feeling of strong, often active, dislike or opposition towards something or someone, e.g. **Antipathy** towards the government increased during the economic crisis. **Aversion** is a feeling of intense dislike or an unwillingness to do something. It can also refer to the person or thing which causes that feeling. It is often used in the phrase **have**/**feel an aversion to**, e.g. I **felt an instant aversion to** the new manager. Arrogance has always been my **pet aversion**. [the thing I dislike most of all]
Averse to means opposed to, usually used with **not**, e.g. I'm **not averse to** a good night out. [I enjoy a good night out]

Language help

* Remember, the *-ing* form refers to the person or thing that causes a feeling; the *-ed* form refers to the person experiencing the feeling, e.g. *The news was **distressing**. I felt **distressed**.*

B Negative feelings

noun	meaning	adjective	verb	examples
loathing	intense hatred	**loathsome**	**loathe**	I just loathe people who tell lies.
abhorrence	intense disgust	**abhorrent**	**abhor**	We all find her behaviour abhorrent.
scorn	lack of respect for something	**scornful**	**scorn**	There was a scornful note in his voice.
irritation	a feeling of being annoyed	**irritating** **irritated***	**irritate**	Her comments gave me an intense feeling of irritation.
distress	a feeling of being extremely upset or worried	**distressing** **distressed***	**distress**	Being told that my best friend was seriously ill was very distressing.
alarm	a feeling of being very worried or frightened	**alarming** **alarmed***	**alarm**	The advance of the enemy troops across the river was an alarming development.

C Adjectives with negative connotations

She was very **offhand** with everyone. [showed a rude lack of interest in others]
The Director's personal assistant can be very **officious**. [too eager to tell others what to do]
He makes very **ostentatious** displays of his wealth, with big, flashy cars, designer clothes, etc. [displaying wealth or possessions in a vulgar way]
She's become very **pompous** since she was elected to Parliament. [too formal and showing that you think that you are more important than other people]
She boasts about reading philosophy books – she's so **pretentious**. [tries to appear more serious or important than she is]
What **puerile** behaviour! Grow up! [silly and childish]
Because I rushed it, my essay was a bit **sloppy**. [not taking care in the way you work; *informal*]
Jo can be very **fickle**. [changes her feelings suddenly without reason]
Oh, stop being so **nit-picking**! [too concerned about unimportant details; *informal*]
The customs officer was such an **obnoxious** man. [unpleasant and rude]

D Being extremely unhappy

I felt utterly **dejected** when I didn't get the job. [unhappy and disappointed]
She looked **forlorn**, gazing into the distance. [sad, alone and not cared for]
I was **devastated** when I heard of the death of a good friend of mine. [very shocked and upset]
The missing child's parents were **distraught**. The neighbours tried to calm them. [extremely worried and upset]
You're looking a bit **down** today. Anything wrong? [unhappy; *informal*]
He always looks so **miserable** and never seems to smile! [very unhappy]

Exercises

14.1 Rewrite the sentences using the form of the word in bold indicated in brackets. Make any other necessary changes.

1 I am strongly **averse** to people who always want to be the centre of attention. (noun)
2 He's always **scornful** of our amateur theatrical productions. (verb)
3 She has an **abhorrence** of injustice, wherever it occurs. (verb)
4 I do not have an **aversion** to a vegetarian diet. I've just never tried it. (adjective)
5 His attitude **irritated** me very much. (adjective) (*two possible answers*)
6 The news was **alarming** to us all. (adjective ending in *-ed*)

14.2 Answer the questions.

1 If you are distressed by a piece of news, are you (a) angry, (b) upset, or (c) depressed?
2 If you find something loathsome, what emotion do you feel towards it?
3 If someone feels antipathy towards another person, do they (a) just not like them, (b) feel annoyed by them, or (c) actively and strongly dislike them?
4 If someone irritates you, do you feel (a) deep anger, (b) annoyance, or (c) hatred towards them?

14.3 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

1 We were distraught ☐
2 She felt dejected ☐
3 He was looking a bit down ☐
4 They were utterly devastated ☐
5 She was quite a miserable person ☐

a so I offered to buy him a coffee.
b by the death of so many good friends.
c who rarely laughed or enjoyed herself.
d when our cat went missing.
e because she failed the exam.

14.4 Add words to complete the sentences.

1 The palace was very .... , with gold ceilings and marble statues everywhere.
2 One of my friends is a bit .... ; he has a new girlfriend every week!
3 She thinks I'm .... because I like opera, but I think that's unfair. I like pop music too.
4 The lawyers were very .... - .... when they were dealing with old Mrs Carson's complicated will.
5 The decorators were very .... and didn't paint the kitchen properly.
6 He's an .... person; absolutely nobody thinks he's nice.
7 The receptionist was very .... with me, and didn't seem to take me seriously.
8 The Minister made a very .... speech, and seemed full of his own importance.
9 Their behaviour was silly and .... I wish they would act more maturely.
10 The man at the museum was very .... , telling us to be quiet and not to touch the exhibits.
11 She looked a bit .... because all her friends had gone to a party and she was not invited.
12 We were .... when our friends didn't arrive and we heard there'd been an accident on the motorway.

14.5 Over to you

- Name three things that you loathe doing.
- Are there any ideas that you find abhorrent? Why?
- Have you ever felt an instant antipathy to someone?
- Do you have a pet aversion? If so, what is it?

15 Birth and death: from cradle to grave

A At the beginning

Pregnancy[1] is the nine-month period when a woman is expecting a baby. It begins with **conception**[2], when the mother's egg is **fertilised**[3] and an **embryo**[4] **implants**[5] in the mother's **womb**, or **uterus**[6]. Most mothers **conceive**[7] naturally but some are helped by **fertility drugs**[8] or other procedures such as **IVF**[9]. As the **foetus**[10] grows, it is fed through the mother's **placenta**[11]. After 40 weeks, the mother usually **goes into labour**[12]. If this doesn't happen naturally, she may **be induced**[13]. Usually, a mother is helped to **give birth**[14] by a **midwife**[15]. Sometimes a surgeon is needed to **deliver**[16] the baby by **caesarean section**[17].

[1] (adj. = **pregnant**)
[2] time when sperm and egg meet and a baby starts to form
[3] made to start developing into new life
[4] developing baby
[5] fixes itself
[6] organ inside the mother where the fertilised egg develops into a baby; uterus is a more medical word than womb
[7] become pregnant
[8] drugs that help a woman to become pregnant
[9] **in vitro fertilisation**: process that fertilises a woman's egg in a laboratory; babies born this way are sometimes referred to as **test tube babies**
[10] what the embryo developing in the uterus is known as from eight weeks onward
[11] organ connecting the developing baby to the mother and giving it food
[12] goes into the last stage of pregnancy, where the womb starts the process of pushing the baby out of the body
[13] be helped medically to start the process of labour (noun = **induction**)
[14] have her baby
[15] person medically trained to help women when they are giving birth
[16] help the mother to give birth (noun = **delivery**)
[17] operation in which the mother's abdomen and womb are cut open to allow the baby to be removed

Language help

Expect when it means 'expect a baby' is only used in the continuous form, e.g. *Helena and her sister are both* ***expecting*** (NOT ~~expect~~).

B At the end

More and more people these days are living to a **ripe old age**[1]. My aunt, for example, that's my **late**[2] father's sister, is 93. She's been a **pensioner**[3] for more years than she worked. She lives in **sheltered accommodation**[4] but she's not at all **doddery**[5] or **gaga**[6]. She's lucky still to **have all her wits about her**[7] because a lot of elderly people develop **dementia**[8]. Funerals are changing a lot too. I went to one recently where there was a **coffin**[9] in the colours of the dead man's football team. And at the **wake**,[10] his sister told me she'd put it in her **will**[11] that her own **ashes**[12] are to be sent up in a rocket! Funerals now are often more about celebrating a person's life rather than just about **mourning**[13]. As for me, I think I'd prefer an ordinary **cremation**[14]. But then I'd quite like to have my ashes **scattered**[15] at sea, as I love sailing.

[1] living well into old age; usually used in the phrase **to live to a ripe old age**
[2] now dead
[3] elderly person, receiving an old age pension from the state
[4] special housing, usually for old people, where care staff also live
[5] weak and unable to walk well, usually because of old age; *informal*
[6] unable to think clearly because of old age; *informal* and offensive
[7] is still able to think and react quickly
[8] an illness that causes problems with memory loss
[9] box where the dead person is put
[10] gathering of family and friends after a funeral
[11] legal document saying what is to happen to your possessions after your death
[12] remains of a body after cremation (see 14)
[13] expressing sadness after someone's death (the mourners have been **bereaved**)
[14] service at a place called a **crematorium**, where a dead body is burnt (as opposed to a **burial**, where the body is buried in the ground)
[15] spread around

C Death in different registers

expressions of sympathy: Please accept my **condolences**. (*formal*) I was so sorry to hear/learn of your **loss**. (*informal*)

euphemisms for 'to die': **to pass away**, **to pass on**, **to pass over**

very informal expressions for being close to death: **to be at death's door**, **to be on your last legs** (often used about machines, e.g. My laptop's on its last legs)

newspaper words: **fatalities** [dead people], **perished** [died], **slaughtered** [violently killed]

legal words: **the deceased** [the dead person], **to bequeath** [to leave something in a will; noun = **a bequest**], **to inherit** [to receive something from someone who has died; noun = **an inheritance**], to die **intestate** [without having made a will]

Exercises

15.1 Complete these sentences with words from A opposite.

1 If Liz doesn't .... soon, she's going to ask her doctor for a fertility test.
2 Karen went into .... at midnight and gave .... only four hours later.
3 Did Amy have a natural .... or a .... section?
4 The .... provides the baby growing in the mother's .... with all the food it needs.
5 The first test .... baby was born in 1978.
6 As well as helping with the birth, a trained .... usually visits the mother before and after the birth to check that everything is going well.
7 Laila's .... a baby – it's due in the middle of October.
8 During the nine months of .... , the baby developing inside the mother is often referred to as a ....

15.2 Correct these sentences, which use the vocabulary in B and C.

1 The whole country is in morning after the President's death.
2 I'd like my dust scattered in my favourite forest.
3 My extinct grandfather was a shepherd all his life.
4 I'm afraid her elderly step-mother has just passed off.
5 My car is on its last leg.
6 My father inherited me his gold watch in his will.
7 Mrs Wilson seems to have been at death's window for years.
8 Over 2,000 people were perished in the earthquake.
9 It was amazing there were no fertilities when the bridge collapsed.
10 My aunt left me a request of £500 in her will.

15.3 Write sentences with the same meanings, using the word in brackets and making any appropriate changes.

1 Both my sisters are pregnant at the moment. (EXPECT)
2 Twins were born to Shona Harrison last Monday. (BIRTH)
3 She has been taking medication to help her conceive. (FERTILITY)
4 All my grandparents lived to their 80s or 90s. (RIPE)
5 My neighbour is 90 but she is still very mentally alert. (WITS)
6 Unfortunately, the deceased died intestate. (WILL)
7 John bequeathed £1,000 to each of his three nephews. (INHERIT)
8 I was so sorry to hear of your loss. (CONDOLENCES)

15.4 Choose words or expressions from the box to complete these texts.

deceased
inherited
perished
bequest
slaughtered
passed away
bequeathed
pensioner
fatalities

THE DAY IN REVIEW
NEWS

Yesterday was indeed a black day for our country. Twenty-five people ^{1}.......................... in an earthquake. Five more people were ^{2}.......................... in a terrorist bomb attack and there were ten road accident ^{3}.......................... . Among the ^{4}.......................... was one of our most popular young politicians.

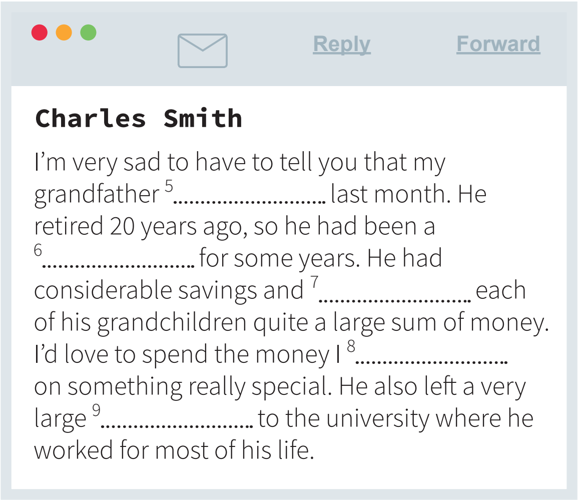

Charles Smith

I'm very sad to have to tell you that my grandfather ^{5}.......................... last month. He retired 20 years ago, so he had been a ^{6}.......................... for some years. He had considerable savings and ^{7}.......................... each of his grandchildren quite a large sum of money. I'd love to spend the money I ^{8}.......................... on something really special. He also left a very large ^{9}.......................... to the university where he worked for most of his life.

16 Free time: relaxation and leisure

A Adjectives describing free-time activities

adjective	meaning	possible examples
rewarding	gives you a lot of positive experiences	doing voluntary work, helping charities
fruitful	produces good results	collaborating/cooperating with someone in an activity
lucrative	makes a lot of money	selling designer jewellery, writing apps for smartphones
therapeutic /θerə'pjuːtɪk/	makes you healthy in body and/or mind	gardening, yoga, jogging
relaxing/**calming**	reduces stress, gives a peaceful feeling	reading, listening to music, meditation
time-consuming	takes a long time to do	being president of a club, being a member of a committee

I enjoyed being secretary of the sports club but it was very **time-consuming**. I had to give up two evenings a week to do it.
The conservation work I do is very **rewarding**. I feel I'm doing something good and useful.
Photography has been a **lucrative** pursuit for her. She often sells her pictures to magazines.
Painting is such a **therapeutic** activity. It makes me feel good, and teaches me patience.

B Informal expressions: how people spend their leisure

Rob's a real **culture vulture**; he goes to the theatre regularly and to every art gallery he can find. [big fan of anything cultural]
I'm a bit of a **couch potato**; I spend hours every day just watching TV. [physically very inactive person]
Lucy loves playing tennis but only as an **amateur** – she'd never want to be a professional. [someone who does something as a hobby, not a job]
Fatima's a bit of a **dabbler**; she takes up a hobby for a couple of weeks, then she gets bored and starts something different. [person who never keeps doing one activity for long]
Matt does a lot of **chores** at the weekend – things like shopping and mowing the **lawn**. [boring tasks that have to be done] [grass]
Laura's a **shopaholic**. She buys all sorts of things she doesn't need. [person addicted to shopping; compare **alcoholic**: addicted to alcohol]
Joe **is** heavily **into** downhill skiing these days. [is very involved in]
I **went off** football and I took up golf instead. [stopped liking, lost interest in]
She **locks herself away** for hours in her room and listens to music. [isolates herself from the world]
He's totally **hooked on** motor racing these days. [is addicted to]
What do you **get up to** at weekends, Mariana? [do]
Do you have a hectic social life? I have a pretty **full diary**. [a lot of activities]
Mark is a **keen participant** in all the community activities in his town. [takes part enthusiastically]

Language help

Words like *shopaholic*, *workaholic* and *chocaholic* are used in a light-hearted way and are different from *alcoholic*, which is a serious and medically recognised condition.

Exercises

16.1 Fill the gaps with a suitable adjective from A opposite. There may be more than one possible answer.

1 I find writing poetry very.......................... . It helps me to get a truer understanding of myself and gives me a good feeling inside.
2 I enjoy selling the pictures I paint, but it's not very .... I only made £300 last year.
3 Gardening is very .... It reduces stress levels and calms you down.
4 I've had a .... partnership with Jane for several years: she plays the piano and I play the violin. It's been very good for both of us.
5 Doing unpaid work at the hospital has been a .... experience for me.
6 I would like to be on the club committee, but I've heard it's very .... , and I don't have a lot of free time.

16.2 Solve these riddles, based on words in B opposite.

1 I am a vegetable that sits where humans sit. What am I?
2 I enjoy shopping a bit too much. What am I?
3 I am a bird that eats the flesh of art. What am I?
4 I do some of this and some of that, but never all of this or all of that. What am I?

16.3 Answer the questions.

1 Which of these is your least favourite chore – washing your clothes or tidying your room?
2 How often is it usually necessary to mow a lawn?
3 Does an amateur footballer get paid for playing a match?
4 If you say that someone 'dabbles in photography', are they a serious photographer?
5 When it comes to sport, do you prefer to be a spectator or a participant?

16.4 Give alternatives for the underlined words.

1 My daughter's extremely interested in folk music. She downloads a lot of traditional folk songs.
2 He isolates himself in the attic and plays with his model railway for hours on end.
3 She's totally addicted to football these days. She watches every match on TV.
4 I have a long list of social appointments for the rest of the month.
5 What do you engage in when you aren't working, Nigel?
6 Martine performed with enthusiasm in the end-of-term concert.

16.5 Complete the dialogues with a word or expression from the opposite page. B agrees with A by saying the same thing in a different way.

1 A: Going for a swim helps you forget your everyday worries, doesn't it?
B: Yes, it's very ....
2 A: Dan spends every evening watching rubbish TV.
B: That's true. He's a terrible ....
3 A: I'm not so keen on playing in the school orchestra as I used to be.
B: Yes, I've .... it too.
4 A: I'd like to join a drama group but it would mean giving up lots of evenings and weekends.
B: Yes, it can be a very .... activity.
5 A: I don't think I can fit in a tennis match with you for another couple of weeks.
B: No problem. I've got a very .... too.
6 A: Someone said I could make some money out of those necklaces I make in my spare time.
B: I agree. I think it could prove very .... for you.

17 All the rage: clothes and fashion

A

Dressing for work

Many students, both male and female, would agree that they often look **scruffy**[1] in their T-shirts and jeans. However, those who go into the world of business have to make a rapid transition and learn about **dress codes**[2] in the workplace. Business **attire**[3] needs to project a professional image, and clothing that **reveals**[4] too much **cleavage**[5] (for women), or your back, your chest or your **midriff**[6] is not appropriate, even in a casual business setting. For women, see-through **fabrics**[7] should be avoided, and skirts should not be too tight or too short, though nobody wants to look **frumpy**[8]. For men, trousers should not be too tight, or shirts too open. Women often need a good choice of **outfits**[9] and men find a good range of **suits**[10], ties and casual trousers and jackets **invaluable**[11]. **Accessories**[12], e.g. jewellery, shoes and **cufflinks**[13], can also enhance the professional look. Some offices have **dress-down days**[14], often Fridays, when staff can wear more casual clothes. In other jobs, of course, people are required to wear **uniforms**, or **protective clothing** such as **overalls**[15] and **safety helmets**[16].

[1] untidy [noun: **scruff** = person who dresses in an untidy way]
[2] accepted way of dressing in a particular social group
[3] clothing; *formal*
[4] shows
[5] space between a woman's breasts
[6] part of the body between the chest and the waist
[7] materials
[8] old-fashioned and boring
[9] set of clothes for a particular occasion
[10] jacket and trousers in the same material
[11] extremely useful
[12] extra items added to clothing for useful or decorative purposes
[13] decorative objects used to fasten the cuffs on men's shirts
[14] days when people wear less formal clothes
[15] (plural noun) piece of clothing covering all the body, usually worn over other clothing to protect it when working
[16] hat to protect the head

Language help

Invaluable means extremely valuable. The opposite of *valuable* is *valueless* or *without value*.

B

Words and expressions about clothes

Clothes can be described as **revealing**[1], **skimpy**[2], **baggy**[3], **clingy**[4], or **chic**[5]. Sometimes an invitation to a more formal party will ask people to dress in **smart-casual**[6] clothes. To be **dolled (up)** / **dressed up** / **done up to the nines** means to be dressed in a very fashionable or very formal way. Some people choose to buy **designer (label) clothes** but most people prefer to buy clothes more cheaply **on the High Street**[7]. People who can afford to sometimes have clothes **made-to-measure**[8], but more often people buy their clothes **off the peg/rack**[9].

[1] showing a lot of flesh
[2] short, using little material
[3] loose, e.g. a sweater
[4] close-fitting
[5] /ʃiːk/ modern, stylish
[6] clothes that are informal but clean, tidy and stylish
[7] from ordinary, much less expensive shops
[8] made especially for them
[9] ready-made

C

Being in fashion

These jackets are **all the rage**. [very fashionable] The woman was dressed in **the very latest fashion**. [an extremely fashionable way] Dresses like this are **the height of fashion**. [very fashionable] The magazine has **up-to-the-minute** fashion articles. [dealing with the most recent trends] The film has **set a new trend** for the silk top the star wore. [started a new fashion] A **trend-setter** is a person whose style is followed by others. High heels are **on trend** this year. [fashionable] Large handbags are this year's **must-have item**. [thing that everyone wants] If a fashion/trend **catches on**, it becomes popular. A **slave to fashion** is someone who is strongly influenced by fashion. [used in a disapproving way] Your new outfit really **suits** you. [looks good on you]

D

Clothes in metaphors

to speak **off the cuff** [without having prepared anything] **to be hand in glove with someone** [to have a close working relationship with someone] to do something **on a shoestring** [spending as little as possible] **no frills** [simple and plain] **to put someone in a straitjacket** [restrict someone's freedom] **to draw a veil over** something [not to talk about something] **to have something up your sleeve** [to have a secret plan or idea]

Exercises

17.1 **Answer these questions.**

1 What do you mean if you call someone 'scruffy'?
2 What is the dress code in a workplace you are familiar with?
3 What kinds of clothes are not appropriate for a job interview?
4 What might be appropriate clothes to wear for a job interview for a man and for a woman?
5 What is your favourite outfit?
6 And what accessories would be required for this outfit?
7 What would you put on if you had a dress-down day at work?
8 What sorts of work require staff to wear a uniform?
9 What kind of jobs need protective clothing to be worn?
10 If a woman says she finds a particular outfit 'invaluable', does she mean it's very expensive, extremely useful or absolutely useless?

17.2 **Fill the gaps with words or phrases from B or C opposite.**

1 Wow, you're done up to .... ! Where on earth are you going?
2 The sign outside the bar said: 'Dress code: .... – no jeans or trainers.'
3 I'm surprised to see girls wearing such .... dresses in this cold weather.
4 I can't afford .... clothes. I buy most of my outfits on the ....
5 Lucy is always dressed in the .... of fashion – she always looks very .... !
6 As soon as Amy gets home from work, she changes from her smart suit into tracksuit bottoms and a comfortable, ... , old jumper.
7 Very high heels remain .... trend this season.
8 These bracelets were last year's ....-have item.

17.3 **Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences using phrases from D opposite.**

1 I'm no good at speaking if I haven't had time to prepare what I want to say.
2 Simon is bound to have some plan in readiness for tomorrow's meeting.
3 I think we should keep quiet about what happened on Monday, don't you?
4 Be careful what you say to Helen – she works very closely with the boss.
5 The new legislation means we are not able to act as we wish.
6 We'll still have a great party even if we have to do it as cheaply as possible.

17.4 **Here are more metaphorical uses of clothes words. Explain the literal and metaphorical meanings of the underlined words and expressions. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

1 We'll have to tighten our belts if you stop working full-time.
2 We wanted to leave but were hemmed in by the crowd and couldn't escape.
3 Phil's got so many books – his room is bursting at the seams.
4 The negotiations have been cloaked in secrecy ever since they began.
5 If she wins the prize again this year, it'll be a real feather in her cap.

17.5 **Over to you**

- What is all the rage in your country at the moment?
- When was the last time you got dressed up to the nines?
- What do you think about people who are a slave to fashion?
- What would you wear on a dress-down Friday at work?
- What sort of people start new fashion trends?
- What item of clothing would you most like to have made-to-measure?

18 Home styles, lifestyles

A Home styles

A **squat** /skwɒt/ is an empty building where people start living without the owner's permission.
A **hovel** /ˈhɒvəl/ is a very small, dirty house or flat in a bad (or **run down**) condition.
Rented accommodation can be either **furnished** or **unfurnished**. [with or without furniture]
A **penthouse** is a luxury flat at the top of a building.
Council or **social housing** is rented accommodation provided by the state for people who have low incomes. A **council estate** is a large group of such housing.
High-rise (flats) or **tower blocks** are flats in a tall, modern building with a lot of floors.
A **granny flat** is a set of rooms for an elderly person, connected to a relative's house.

B Idioms and expressions relating to *house* and *home*

expression	meaning	example
get on like a house on fire	get on very well with someone	Happily, my mother-in-law and I have always **got on like a house on fire**.
a household word/name	something/someone everyone knows	Nike has become a **household name**.
on the house	free of charge	The restaurant owner offered us coffees **on the house**.
home truths	information that is true but not pleasant or welcome	It's time he was told some **home truths** about the way he's been behaving!
nothing to write home about	nothing special	The town is OK but **nothing to write home about**.
hit home	become fully understood or fully felt	The difficulty of managing without a regular salary is **hitting home** now.
make yourself at home	make yourself feel comfortable in someone else's home	Please just **make yourself at home** while I get dinner ready.

C Idioms and metaphors relating to *life*

expression	meaning	example
life in the fast lane	a way of life that is full of activity and excitement	As a rock star, Joe lived **life in the fast lane**.
have the time of your life	have a wonderful time	Paula's **having the time of her life** in Canada.
get a new lease of life	become more energetic and active than before	When Georgie moved jobs, she seemed to **get a new lease of life**.
a dog's life	a very unhappy and difficult life	Ryan had **a dog's life** in the army.
lead a sheltered life	have a life that is protected from unpleasantness (also **lead a busy**/**quiet**/**normal**, etc. **life**)	Kyoko has **led a very sheltered life** and may find it hard to adapt to the big city.
(not) be a matter of life and death	(not) be very serious	If we miss the last train, **it's not a matter of life and death**.
take your life in your hands	do something very dangerous	**You're taking your life in your hands** if you cross the road here – go to the zebra crossing!
breathe new life into	bring new ideas and energy to something	When Orla joined the staff, she **breathed new life into** the school.

Exercises

18.1 Complete the following table about the types of accommodation in A opposite.

accommodation	What kind of person lives there?	Would you like to live there? Why/ Why not?
squat	Example: *a homeless person, or someone who wants to make a political statement about property ownership*	Example: *I wouldn't like it because you never know when you might be evicted.*
furnished accommodation		
social housing		
granny flat		
high-rise		
hovel		
penthouse		

18.2 Fill the gaps in these sentences with words and phrases from B and C opposite.

1 From the moment we met, we got on like a house ....
2 Jenna's so selfish, she deserves to be told a few ....
3 The new restaurant is OK but nothing really to ....
4 So what that you didn't get the promotion – it's not a matter of ....
5 I'm not sure I'd like to have a celebrity lifestyle, living life in the ....
6 As a child, the writer .... a sheltered life in a small village in the back of beyond.
7 We need someone to come and .... some new life into the project.
8 We soon managed to .... ourselves at home in our holiday cottage.

18.3 Choose expressions from B and C opposite to replace the underlined words in these sentences.

1 We had the most marvellous time on holiday this year.
2 As soon as spring comes, I feel as if I'm becoming energetic and active again.
3 The problems caused by the floods are only making themselves fully felt now.
4 I imagine that being a servant in the past must have been very hard and tedious.
5 All over the world, everybody knows about McDonald's.
6 He's taking a big risk if he gets in a car with Ben at the wheel!
7 Because we were such frequent customers, the restaurant gave us a meal free.
8 Our holiday apartment was quite adequate but not particularly special in any way.

18.4 Here are some more expressions with *home* and *life*. Use the context to work out what the underlined expressions mean.

1 The poet said that he had had a period of depression but that he had never considered taking his own life.
2 The comedy duo's superb performance brought the house down.
3 Our customers come from many different walks of life – we have doctors, shop assistants, computer programmers, you name it!
4 The system turned out to be a house of cards – it didn't take much to bring it down.
5 Whenever my nephews arrive for a visit, they eat us out of house and home.
6 I love having George around – you can rely on him to be the life and soul of the party.

19 Socialising and networking

A Nouns for social events

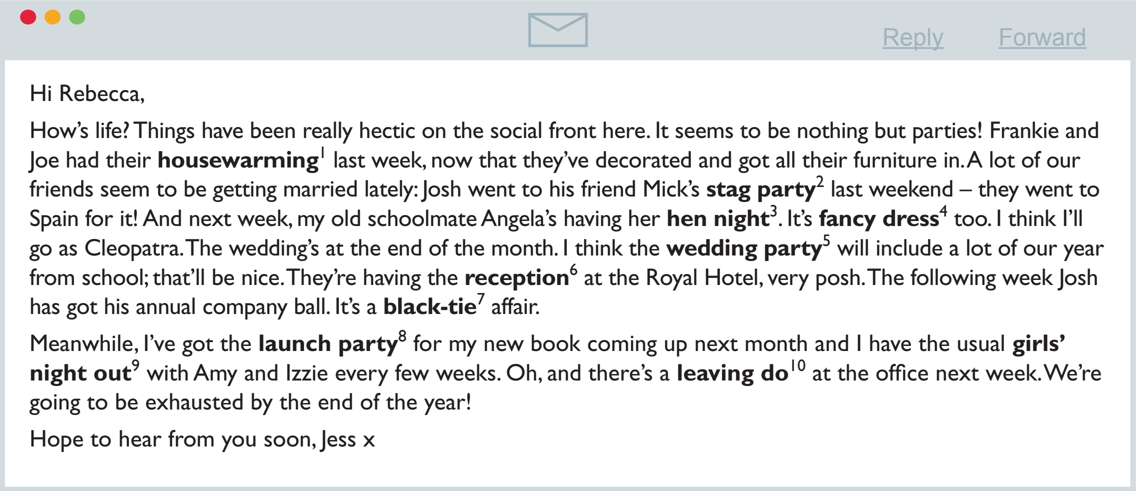

Hi Rebecca,

How's life? Things have been really hectic on the social front here. It seems to be nothing but parties! Frankie and Joe had their **housewarming**[1] last week, now that they've decorated and got all their furniture in. A lot of our friends seem to be getting married lately: Josh went to his friend Mick's **stag party**[2] last weekend – they went to Spain for it! And next week, my old schoolmate Angela's having her **hen night**[3]. It's **fancy dress**[4] too. I think I'll go as Cleopatra. The wedding's at the end of the month. I think the **wedding party**[5] will include a lot of our year from school; that'll be nice. They're having the **reception**[6] at the Royal Hotel, very posh. The following week Josh has got his annual company ball. It's a **black-tie**[7] affair.

Meanwhile, I've got the **launch party**[8] for my new book coming up next month and I have the usual **girls' night out**[9] with Amy and Izzie every few weeks. Oh, and there's a **leaving do**[10] at the office next week. We're going to be exhausted by the end of the year!

Hope to hear from you soon, Jess x

[1] a party to celebrate moving to a new house or flat
[2] a party before a wedding for the future husband and his male friends
[3] a party night out before a wedding for the future wife and her female friends
[4] everyone dresses up in costume
[5] the main group of close family and friends at a wedding, rather than to the reception after the wedding
[6] a formal party, e.g. after a wedding or to meet an important visitor
[7] a formal event at which men have to wear dinner jackets and black bow ties and women wear evening dresses
[8] a party to celebrate the publication of a new book or product
[9] an evening out just for female friends
[10] a party to celebrate somebody leaving a job or institution (**do** is an informal noun)

B Networking

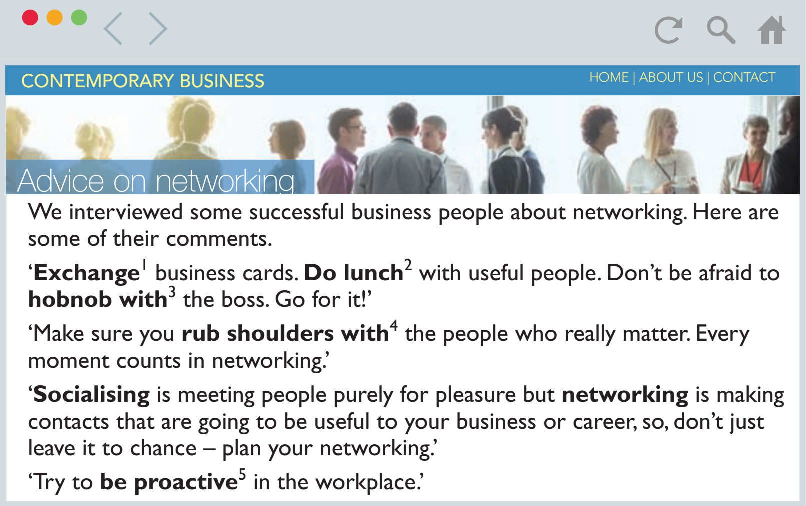

We interviewed some successful business people about networking. Here are some of their comments.

'**Exchange**[1] business cards. **Do lunch**[2] with useful people. Don't be afraid to **hobnob with**[3] the boss. Go for it!'

'Make sure you **rub shoulders with**[4] the people who really matter. Every moment counts in networking.'

'**Socialising** is meeting people purely for pleasure but **networking** is making contacts that are going to be useful to your business or career, so, don't just leave it to chance – plan your networking.'

'Try to **be proactive**[5] in the workplace.'

[1] give each other
[2] have lunch; *informal*
[3] be friendly with someone who is important or famous, sometimes with negative associations
[4] mix socially with people; *informal*
[5] taking action yourself rather than waiting for something to happen

C Expressions for social activity

I don't like the people Chris **hangs out with** / **knocks around with**. [spends social time with; *informal*]
(*Said to your host*) I hope I'm not **outstaying my welcome**. [staying too long]
Jamie's a real **party animal**. [someone who loves going to parties]
I hate it at my new job – everyone's so **cliquey**. [a **clique** is a disapproving word for a small group of people who spend time together and do not allow others to join them]
It was good at the club last night. Pete Esterhaus was there with his **crowd**. [his group of friends / the people he socialises with; *informal*]
Lizzy and Rob are always together. Are they **an item**? [having a romantic relationship; *informal*]
Joel isn't very happy because Molly **stood him up** last night. [didn't arrive for a date they had made]

Exercises

19.1 **Look at A opposite and decide what kind of party you might be invited to if:**

1 a friend of yours is about to get married and is having a party before the wedding (depending on whether you are male or female).
2 you are going to help a friend celebrate on the day of their wedding.
3 some friends have just moved into a new flat.
4 a friend has just had a book published.
5 your local council is arranging for important people in the area to meet a visiting dignitary.
6 you have friends who love dressing up as characters from famous films.

19.2 **Rewrite these sentences by replacing the underlined words with an expression from the opposite page that means the same thing. There may be more than one possible answer.**

1 It's always good to see Theo, but somehow he always manages to stay too long.
2 I'm going to a dinner at the Royal Plaza Hotel tonight. It's an event where you have to wear a dinner jacket and bow tie.
3 Don't forget your old friends when your film becomes a hit and you're socialising with the rich and famous.
4 We're going to have a night out just for us girls on Friday.
5 We must invite Jasmine to our do. She's a real lover of parties!
6 Don't always wait for people to do things for you. You should be more prepared to take action yourself.
7 It's good to see you! We must have lunch together sometime and discuss business.
8 It irritates me the way he's always being so friendly with the managers.

19.3 **There is one mistake in each of these sentences. Correct the mistakes.**

1 He usually hangs over with his college friends at the weekend and they go to football matches and things.
2 Nella and her friends are very clique. They don't mix with anyone else.
3 I'd better go home now. You've been very kind, but I don't want to stay out my welcome.
4 She said she wanted to go out with me, then she stood me down!
5 Rita and Nick are an article. They've been together for months. Didn't you know?
6 Laurie's crowds are really fun people. I often meet up with them in town.

19.4 **Over to you**

- Which of the types of party listed in A have you had personal experience of? How did you enjoy them?
- Who do you mostly knock around with? Are any of your friends party animals?
- Have you ever rubbed shoulders with anyone famous? If not, who would you most like to rub shoulders with?

20

The performance arts: reviews and critiques

A

Useful adjectives for describing works and performances

That TV series is **overrated**. [not as good as people say]

The plot was so **hackneyed**! [done so often it is boring]

The play was **disjointed** and difficult to follow. [unconnected and not in a clear order]

The film *Green Aliens from Mars* was a bit **far-fetched**. [impossible to believe]

The play was a bit **risqué**, and some religious leaders criticised it. [/rɪ'skeɪ/ against accepted social standards and likely to shock some people]

It was a **gripping** film from start to finish. [exciting and keeping your attention the whole time]

It was a **harrowing** documentary about war and refugee camps. [extremely upsetting]

It's a **moving** story about a child whose mother dies. [making you feel pity or sadness]

What a truly **memorable**/**unforgettable** performance. [you remember it long after]

The ballerina's performance was **understated**. [done or expressed in a simple but attractive style]

The play was long and **tedious**. [boring]

That new stand-up comedian is **hilarious**. [extremely funny]

Language help

The adjectives above can also be used about writing, e.g. *The plot of the novel is* ***far-fetched/hilarious/gripping***, etc.

B

Success and failure

The audience clearly loved the play – the **applause** was deafening. [clapping to show enjoyment] So it's not surprising that it got **glowing reviews**. [excellent reviews]

The audience called for several **encores** after his concert. [/'ɒŋkɔːz/ calls from the audience to perform some more]

She got a **standing ovation** as Juliet in *Romeo and Juliet*. [the audience stood up and applauded at the end of the performance]

Her latest album has already won three **awards**. [prizes/honours, e.g. 'Best album of the Year']

Sam Dell won the award for 'Best **up-and-coming** actor'. [likely to become very successful]

The critics generally agree that her new symphony is a **masterpiece**. [very great work of art]

She has become **typecast** as a middle-aged mother in TV drama series. [always associated with that type of role]

His latest opera was **panned**/**slated** by the critics, which is strange, since all his previous works have been universally **lauded**. [very negatively criticised] [highly praised]

The play **bombed** in London's West End, although it had been really successful in New York. [was a failure]

The show was **booed** on the first night. [got disapproving noises from the audience]

The new TV soap has turned out to be a **total flop**. [complete failure]

Novak **was** definitely **miscast** as the father in that film; he was very **unconvincing**. [was the wrong person for the role] [not seeming real or true]

C

Nouns relating to performing

Megan did well in the **audition** and is now busy going to **rehearsals** for the play. [short performance where actors show what they can do, hoping to get a role] [practice performances]

I liked her **interpretation** of the song 'Yesterday'. [way of understanding and performing it]

I prefer the original **version** by the Beatles. [one of several performances that exist] None of the **covers** are as good, in my opinion. [versions of songs that are not the original]

The actor's **portrayal** of the mother in the film was very tender. [the picture she created]

Exercises

20.1 **Give an adjective from A which is *opposite* in meaning to the following words.**

1 credible, believable ....
2 original, innovative ....
3 underrated ....
4 exaggerated ....
5 coherent, smooth-flowing ....
6 fascinating ....

20.2 **Now use other adjectives from A instead of the underlined words in these sentences. Make any other changes that are necessary.**

1 The musical shocked some people because they thought it was immoral and was attacked by several politicians and religious figures.
2 Her dance performance was one of those you will never forget, simply marvellous.
3 I can't remember the last time I saw such a film that keeps you in suspense and totally absorbed all the time.
4 It was a play that aroused very deep emotions in me.
5 It's a film that is difficult to watch without getting very upset.
6 His first stand-up routine had the audience falling off their seats with laughter.

20.3 **Fill the gaps in this paragraph with words from the opposite page. The first letter is given to help you.**

Two new musicals opened last week. The first, Dogs, turned out to be a total ^{1}f.......................... . It was loudly ^{2}b.......................... by the audience and ^{3}p.......................... by critics, who had praise only for the male lead's ^{4}i.......................... of his role. The other show, Danger, has, however, received ^{5}g.......................... reviews and has been given a standing ^{6}o.......................... at every performance so far.

20.4 **Read the text and underline the words or phrases that match the eight definitions. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

1 the way an actor creates a picture of a person
2 he/she is the wrong actor for that part
3 a film/book/play that keeps you in suspense
4 keep you in suspense / constantly excited
5 up-and-coming
6 a film which huge numbers of people will go and see
7 a police or crime theme
8 a very great work of art

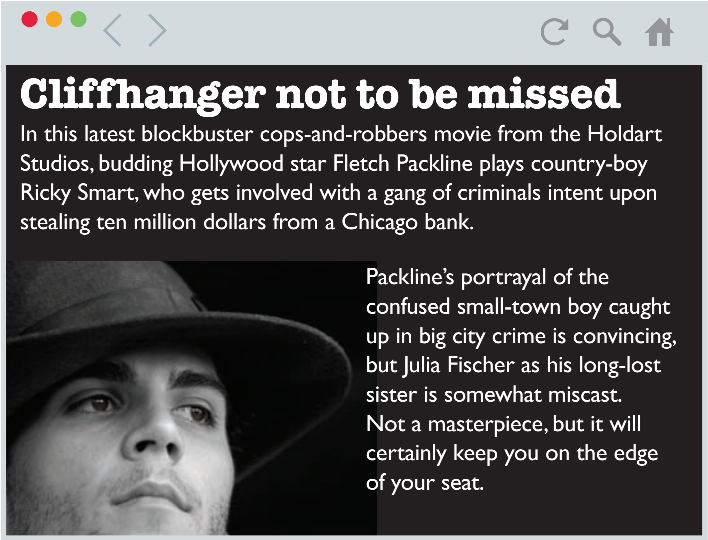

Cliffhanger not to be missed

In this latest blockbuster cops-and-robbers movie from the Holdart Studios, budding Hollywood star Fletch Packline plays country-boy Ricky Smart, who gets involved with a gang of criminals intent upon stealing ten million dollars from a Chicago bank.

Packline's portrayal of the confused small-town boy caught up in big city crime is convincing, but Julia Fischer as his long-lost sister is somewhat miscast. Not a masterpiece, but it will certainly keep you on the edge of your seat.

20.5

Over to you

Think about performances that you have seen. What words from this unit could you use to describe them or to talk about them?

21 The visual arts

A Changing tastes

Throughout the centuries, people have tended to be suspicious of the new art movements of their period. At the end of the 19th century, for example, people were shocked by **Impressionism**[1], criticising its practitioners as careless **daubers**[2]. Later, when faced with **Cubist**[3] paintings, the public were puzzled by those too. The **Surrealists**[4] were initially **deemed**[5] crazy. **Op-art**[6] was criticised because its **subject matter**[7] was said to consist of nothing of significance. However, nowadays, liking **Surrealism**[8] or Op-art is considered perfectly acceptable, and images from these **schools of art**[9] appear everywhere, from posters to advertising campaigns. Perhaps because of the ubiquity of advertising, people tend to be more **visually literate**[10] than they used to be, and so are perhaps **inured to**[11] surprises. Perhaps new movements in art will meet with less hostility in future.

[1, 3, 4, 6, 8] types of artist and schools of art of the last 150 years [2] someone who paints quickly and carelessly (disapproving) [5] considered; *formal* [7] content [9] art movement [10] educated with regard to art [11] not affected by

B Words for commenting on art

original: new in a special and interesting way (*opp.* = **predictable**)
highbrow: intended for educated, intelligent people (often disapproving) (*opp.* = **lowbrow**)
impenetrable: extremely difficult to understand (*opp.* = **transparent**)
sophisticated: showing advanced skills and understanding (*opp.* = **primitive**)
challenging: demanding considerable effort to be understood (*opp.* = **undemanding**)
dazzling: inspiring great admiration because it is brilliant in some way (*opp.* = **pedestrian**)
evocative: calling up images and memories (*opp.* = **uninspiring**)
thought-provoking: making people think (*opp.* = **unstimulating**)
exquisite: having rare beauty or delicacy (*opp.* = **clumsy**)
intriguing: interesting because it is strange or mysterious (*opp.* = **dreary**)
peerless: better than any other (*opp.* = **run-of-the-mill**)
tongue-in-cheek: not intended to be taken seriously, despite appearing serious (*opp.* = **earnest**)
priceless: extremely valuable (*opp.* = **worthless**)
skilful: clever, masterly, done well (*opp.* = **poorly done**)

C Art and metaphor

Notice how words connected with art can be used when talking about literature.

The writer **paints** his hero in a fascinating **light**. Minor characters are more **shadowy** or **sketchy** but they are also **depicted** quite powerfully, even though the focus is, inevitably, on the two central characters. These are **portrayed** with great sensitivity. The heroine is particularly **colourful** and we see how her character is **shaped** and **moulded** by events. Some say the author **illustrates** his **motifs** in a black-and-white fashion, but the **image** he creates to **illuminate** the evils of slavery will remain with me for ever.

Exercises

21.1 **Choose a word from the text in A opposite to answer the questions.**

1 What is the early 20th century school of art which shows unusual or impossible things happening?
2 What is the mid 20th century school of art which has its origins in optical illusions?
3 What is the early 20th century school of art which depicts people or objects as a set of geometric shapes?
4 What is the late 19th century school of art whose aim was to represent the effects of light on people or scenes?
5 What phrase can be used to mean the content of a painting or other work of art?
6 What phrase can be used to describe someone with an educated understanding of art?

21.2 **Read the sentences and answer the questions.**

1 Finn enjoys painting but he's a dauber not an artist.
Does the speaker have a high or low opinion of Finn's work?
2 Curious as it now seems, the artist's work was deemed morally dangerous.
Is this sentence more likely to come from a formal or informal source?
3 The sculptor is now inured to criticism.
How is the sculptor affected by criticism?
4 While at art school, Matilda was particularly interested in the Cubist school of art.
What is the difference between art school and school of art?

21.3 **Look at the adjectives in B opposite. Divide them into these categories:**

usually positive associations **usually negative associations** **negative or positive associations**

21.4 **Choose one of the words from each pair of opposites in B and think of a work of art (of any kind) that you could apply it to. Write a sentence explaining why it applies.**

EXAMPLE *I think that the paintings by Salvador Dali could be called intriguing, because he uses such curious and surprising images.*

21.5 **Choose the correct word to complete these sentences.**

1 I think that the artist's cartoons are usually rather *highbrow* / *dreary* / *lowbrow* as they are intended to appeal to a mass audience.
2 When an artist sent in an ordinary red brick to an exhibition, no one was sure whether it was *impenetrable* / *run-of-the-mill* / *tongue-in-cheek* or intended as a serious statement.
3 Although the artist's early work is very sophisticated, some of his later pieces are surprisingly *primitive* / *thought-provoking* / *original* in style.
4 I find pictures of dull grey street scenes rather *dreary* / *peerless* / *dazzling*.
5 The design on that china plate is *earnest* / *exquisite* / *transparent* – however did they manage to paint such fine detail?
6 Although his photographs are quite *challenging* / *evocative* / *intriguing*, it is worth making the effort to understand them.

21.6 **Make a verb–noun–adjective word formation table with these words from C opposite.**

paint sketch depict portray colour shape illustrate illuminate

21.7 **Over to you**

Visit the websites of well-known museums and art galleries and look at some of the works of art in them. Use words from this unit to describe the works you see.

22 Talking about books

A Blurbs

A **blurb** is a short text, usually printed on the back cover of a book, describing what the book is about and sometimes including quotes from critics. Here are some examples.

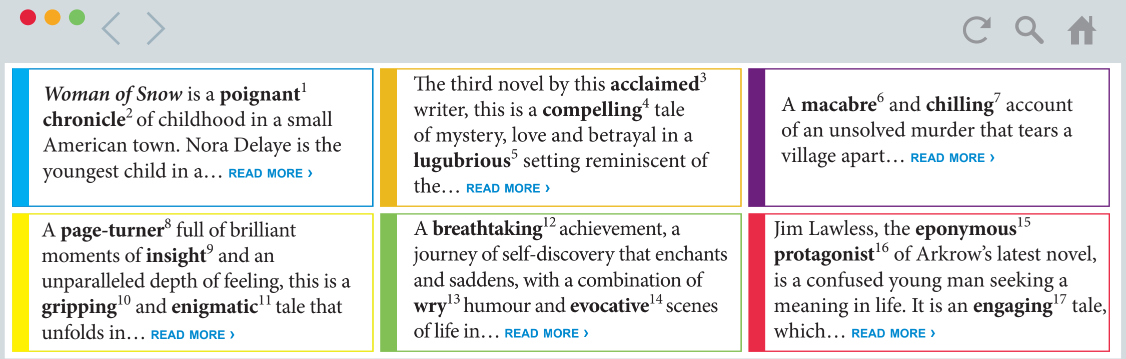

Woman of Snow is a **poignant**[1] **chronicle**[2] of childhood in a small American town. Nora Delaye is the youngest child in a… READ MORE ›

The third novel by this **acclaimed**[3] writer, this is a **compelling**[4] tale of mystery, love and betrayal in a **lugubrious**[5] setting reminiscent of the… READ MORE ›

A **macabre**[6] and **chilling**[7] account of an unsolved murder that tears a village apart… READ MORE ›

A **page-turner**[8] full of brilliant moments of **insight**[9] and an unparalleled depth of feeling, this is a **gripping**[10] and **enigmatic**[11] tale that unfolds in… READ MORE ›

A **breathtaking**[12] achievement, a journey of self-discovery that enchants and saddens, with a combination of **wry**[13] humour and **evocative**[14] scenes of life in… READ MORE ›

Jim Lawless, the **eponymous**[15] **protagonist**[16] of Arkrow's latest novel, is a confused young man seeking a meaning in life. It is an **engaging**[17] tale, which… READ MORE ›

[1] /ˈpɔɪnjənt/ moving and sad

[2] description of a sequence of events

[3] praised by the public

[4] very interesting and engaging

[5] rather dark, mournful and gloomy (**lugubrious** is often used of people too)

[6] /məˈkɑːbrə/ often cruel or disgusting, concerned with death

[7] causing great fear

[8] powerful story that keeps you interested

[9] the ability to understand what something is really like

[10] so interesting or exciting that it holds your attention totally

[11] mysterious

[12] amazing

[13] in the face of a bad situation

[14] which arouse memories or images

[15] who has the same name as the title of the book

[16] main character

[17] pleasant and interesting

B Some other types of books

A **journal** is a written record of what you have done each day, e.g. a learning journal. It is also a publication containing academic articles, published at regular intervals, e.g. every three months.

Memoirs /ˈmemwɑːz/ are a written record of a person's own life, typically by a politician or military figure.

An **encyclopedia** is a book or set of books containing articles arranged in alphabetical order, dealing with the whole of human knowledge or part of it.

An **anthology** is a collection of, for example, poems or short stories by different authors.

A **manual** is usually a technical book with instructions, for example, a car manual.

A **logbook** is a book that records events, times, etc., for example, all the journeys made by a lorry or ship.

C Other expressions for talking about books

I'm reading a book about the history of Ireland. It's **compulsive reading**. [difficult to stop once you've started; *formal*] *Or* It's one of those books you just **can't put down**. [*informal*] It's very **informative**. [gives a lot of useful information]

Nancy Riley's novel about mental breakdown, published in 1950, was **ahead of its time**. [contained ideas that no one else had yet thought of or discussed at that time] Her 1955 book *Exciting Careers for Women* was **a product of its time**, though the ideas seem tame and old-fashioned, even gender-biased, now. [a reflection of that time]

Bertram's latest novel is not a difficult book; in fact it's rather **lightweight**. [not complex; slightly negative connotation] It's good **bedtime reading**. [nice to read in bed] His last one was **heavy going** and I just couldn't **get into** it. [difficult to read] [become involved/engage with] Nonetheless, his books always attract a wide **readership**. [number of people who read them]

Common mistakes

An academic publication containing articles by different authors that is issued periodically (e.g. three times a year) is normally called a *journal* (NOT ~~magazine~~).

Exercises

22.1 **Which names for types of books or other reading material from B opposite would best fit these statements?**

1 It's by General Rogers, who led the allied forces during the recent war.
2 It's so badly written I don't know how anyone could learn how to use the machine by reading it.
3 I recommend it. If you want to read a typical selection of modern poets, it's excellent.
4 The latest issue contains a paper by Professor Susan Frith, in which she presents a new theory of the human mind.

22.2 **Rewrite these sentences using words or phrases from the opposite page to describe the experience of reading particular books.**

1 I just could not seem to become involved in the story, so I stopped reading it.
2 It's not very serious, and it's easy to read.
3 It's dense and very difficult to read.
4 Take it to bed with you; it's just right when you're settling down at night. All the time I was reading it, I just couldn't wait to get to the next page.
5 You find yourself wanting to read more, it's so fascinating.
6 The book is full of useful information.
7 Her second novel did not attract a large number of readers.
8 This book contains some great moments of true understanding of how things are.
9 It is a pleasantly interesting tale about a boy who nurses an injured bird.
10 Mena Harrap's self-help book was a reflection of the time it was written, but what was true in the 1980s doesn't necessarily apply nowadays.

22.3 **Fill the gaps in these sentences with appropriate adjectives from the opposite page, based on the meaning in brackets.**

1 The story takes place against a rather .... background in 18th-century London. (mournful and gloomy)
2 It's full of .... comedy and satire. (humour despite a bad situation)
3 The book is a .... documentation of abuse in a prison. (frightening)
4 The novel is full of .... passages depicting life in Australia at the turn of the 19th century. (arousing memories or images)
5 It's a very .... novel; you never really know what is happening until right at the end. (mysterious, puzzling)
6 The novel is a .... portrayal of life in a coal-mining community during the last economic recession. (moving and very sad)
7 John Farr's latest novel is a .... masterpiece. (very impressive, great)
8 *House of the Dead* is a .... story of torture and death in a medieval castle. (cruel and dark)
9 The novel's .... heroine, Maria Selune, leaves home at the age of 18 and travels through Asia. (who has the same name as the book's title)
10 Laisha and Asoka are the .... in this unusual tale of rural family life. (main characters)

22.4 **Match the things you might find in particular kinds of books with an appropriate type of book.**

1 a section on 'troubleshooting' / problem-solving ☐ a encyclopedia
2 an article about waterfalls, with pictures ☐ b journal
3 a record of a recent examination or test of a lorry ☐ c manual
4 a day-to-day record of life during a war in 1776 ☐ d logbook

22.5 **Over to you**

Think of a book you read and enjoyed recently. Which words from this unit describe it best?

23 Food: a recipe for disaster

A Describing food products

Food production has become increasingly industrialised and globalised, and so knowing what our food contains has become more and more important. Labels do not always help. Adjectives such as ‘**wholesome**[1]’, ‘farm fresh’ and ‘homemade’ can be rather vague and meaningless, while the international numbering system for **additives**[2] is often incomprehensible to people. Some familiar descriptions, however, do have a clear official meaning, for example ‘**wholefoods**[3]’, ‘**free-range**[4] eggs’, ‘**gluten-free**[5] bread’ or ‘contains no artificial colours or **preservatives**[6]’. Clear and scientifically accurate descriptions can be vital for people who suffer from food **allergies**[7] and for vegetarians or **vegans**[8] who want to know exactly what is in a product, as well as being important for consumers looking for natural or **unprocessed**[9] foods, or those concerned about **animal welfare**[10] who may wish to avoid food produced by **battery-farming**[11] methods and so on. With the growth in popularity of **convenience foods**[12], alongside public health concerns over bad diet and obesity, simple and unambiguous **nutrition labels**[13] are more important than ever. An example of a simple system is **traffic-light labelling**[14], which indicates high (red), medium (amber) or low (green) levels of such things as fat, sugar and salt. Finally, good labelling tells us where the food was produced and under what conditions, for example **fair trade**[15] products.

[1] good for you
[2] substance added to food to improve its taste or appearance or to preserve it
[3] foods that have not had any of their natural features taken away or any artificial substances added
[4] produced by farm animals that are allowed to move around outside and are not kept in cages or stalls
[5] not containing a protein which is contained in wheat and some other grains
[6] chemicals used to stop food from decaying
[7] condition that makes a person become ill or develop skin or breathing problems because they have eaten certain foods or been near certain substances. The related adjective is **allergic (to)**.
[8] person who does not eat or use any animal products, such as meat, fish, eggs or cheese
[9] which have not been treated with chemicals that preserve them or give them extra taste or colour
[10] taking care of animals
[11] system of producing a large quantity of eggs or meat cheaply by keeping a lot of birds in rows of small cages
[12] foods that are almost ready to eat or are quick to prepare
[13] labels that indicate how the food influences your health
[14] labels with colours like traffic lights that give information on nutrition
[15] a way of buying and selling products that makes certain that the original producer receives a fair price

B Food metaphors

Inviting Sophie and her ex-husband to the same party was a **recipe for** disaster. [situation sure to lead to]
When asked why he didn’t turn up to the exam, he **cooked up a story** about his kitchen being flooded. [made up, invented]
The film has **all the ingredients of** a box office hit. [all the necessary characteristics]
I’m not going to call him. I’m going to let him **stew** for another few days at least. [worry or suffer, especially about something you think is that person’s fault; you can also say **stew in your own juice**]
It’s kind of you to invite me, but ballet isn’t really **my cup of tea**. [not the type of thing that I like]
The police **grilled** the suspect for hours, but eventually let him go. [asked a lot of questions]
I’m sure this is going to be another of his **half-baked** schemes that will never come to anything. [unrealistic or not thought through properly]
Let’s hire a karaoke machine – that’ll **spice up** the office party. [make more lively]
Rick has started hanging around with some **unsavoury** characters. [unpleasant, morally offensive]
They started their business with high hopes but things soon **turned sour**. [went wrong]
Let’s go for a coffee and you can tell me all the **juicy** gossip. [exciting and interesting]

Exercises

23.1

Read the comments and then answer the questions.

Carlos

I never buy eggs that come from battery farms. They have no flavour.

Beth

I can't be bothered cooking. I just buy ready-made meals and tins of stuff.

Rowan

It worries me that farm animals are sometimes treated so badly.

Hannah

I can't eat curry. It makes me come out in red spots.

Thomas

I want my food to be 100% natural.

Atsuko

I always buy coffee that gives growers in developing countries a decent price.

1 Who is concerned about animal welfare?
2 Who wants food without additives?
3 Who uses a fair trade product?
4 Who has a food allergy?
5 Who uses convenience foods?
6 Who prefers a free-range product?

23.2

Complete the sentences. The first letter of the missing word is given.

1 The label gave no n.......................... information, so I didn't know if it was good for me.
2 The t.......................... - .... system of labelling is easy to understand with just three familiar colours.
3 I try to make my diet as w.......................... as possible and not eat things which I know are bad for me.
4 It's sometimes difficult to find u.......................... foods – everything seems to contain chemicals or preservatives of some kind.
5 My sister has to have a g.......................... - .... diet as wheat makes her ill.
6 The laws governing b.......................... f.......................... were changed recently and birds must have larger cages now.
7 I'm a vegetarian but I don't think I could ever become a v.......................... . I would find the diet too restrictive.
8 My diet is mostly natural foods because I buy a lot of w.......................... .

23.3

Rewrite these sentences using the metaphors from B opposite. You are given a clue in brackets.

1 My mother asked me a lot of very searching questions about where I had been last night. (grill)
2 I feel I need something more exciting to make my life more interesting. (spice)
3 What's been happening recently? You must fill me in on all the interesting gossip. (juice)
4 Don't tell her that her phone has been found. Let her suffer for a bit longer – perhaps she'll be more careful with it in future. (stew)
5 He wanted me to go to the match with him, but rugby just isn't something I like. (tea)
6 They lived together happily for many years, but things changed for the worse when his mother came to live with them. (sour)
7 Patience combined with interest in your pupils is bound to lead to success for a teacher. (recipe)
8 Jake's ideas are never thought through properly. (bake)
9 There were some very unpleasant and offensive characters at that party. (savoury)
10 He has invented a crazy scheme for making money on the internet. It has all the necessary characteristics of a complete disaster. (cook, ingredient)

24 Dinner's on me: entertaining and eating out

A Paying the bill

We'll **split the bill**, shall we? [either each person will pay for himself/herself, or the bill will be divided equally between all the participants]
Lunch **is on me** today. [I am paying for you; *informal*]
Would you like to **join us** for dinner at the City Plaza hotel? [come with us]
We'd like you to **be our guest**. [we will pay; *formal*]
Let me **get this**. [pay the bill; *informal*]
I was **wined and dined** every night by the New York office. [invited out to restaurants]

B Describing service

A new Italian restaurant called Bella Roma has just opened in the High Street, and we went there the other night to try it. I couldn't help comparing it to the Casa Italia, where we ate last week. In the Bella Roma, the service was **impeccable**[1] and quick; at the Casa Italia it's always a bit **sluggish**[2]. In the new place the waiters are **courteous**[3] and friendly without being **overbearing**[4]. In the other place they tend to be **sullen**[5] and the service is rather **brusque**[6], which I find very **off-putting**[7]. But at Bella Roma they'll **go out of their way**[8] to give you what you want.

[1] perfect, cannot be faulted
[2] rather slow
[3] polite
[4] too confident, too inclined to tell people what to do
[5] bad-tempered, unwilling to smile
[6] quick and rude
[7] makes you feel you do not want to go there again
[8] do everything possible

C Food preferences

I **have a sweet tooth** and can never say no to cakes or biscuits. [love sweet things]
I won't have dessert, thanks. You're lucky being so slim, but I'm afraid I have to **count the calories** / I have to be a bit **calorie-conscious** these days. [be careful how many calories I eat]
I'll just have a small **portion** of dessert, please. [amount of a particular food that is served to one person]
I like to end the meal with something **savoury**, like cheese. [salty in flavour, or with herbs]
Ben's a bit of a **fussy eater**. [person who has very particular demands when eating]
No, thanks, I won't have wine. I'm **teetotal**. [never drink alcohol]
Before I book the restaurant, do you have any particular **dietary requirements**? [special needs or things someone cannot eat; *formal*]
I won't have any more wine, thanks. I don't want to **overdo it**. [eat or drink too much]

D Entertaining at home

A: Why not come home and eat with us? You'll have to **take pot luck**, though. [eat what we're eating, nothing special]
B: Thank you. Shall I **bring a bottle**? [usually means a bottle of wine]

A: Should I wear a suit on Friday?
B: No, no, it isn't a **dinner party**, it's just an **informal get-together**. [rather formal dinner with guests] [informal group of people meeting for a meal/drinks, etc.]

A: Does anyone want **seconds**? [a second helping/serving of a dish]
B: Oh, yes please. It was delicious.

A: Can I pour you some juice? **Say when**. [tell me when I have served enough]
B: **When**! ['That's enough, thanks']

A: Help yourself to some **nibbles**. [things like nuts, crisps, etc., before a meal]

A: We have to leave at six. We can **grab a bite to eat** on the way. [have a quick meal]
B: Or we could get a **takeaway** when we get there. [ready-cooked meal bought to take home]

Exercises

24.1 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences using expressions from A opposite.

1 When we eat out as a group, each person usually pays for their own food and drink. (*Use a shorter expression meaning the same*.)
2 Let me pay for this one. You can pay next time. (*Use an informal expression*.)
3 Visitors to the company's head office in London are always taken out to the best restaurants. (*Use a phrase with two words which rhyme with each other*.)
4 Fancy coming with us for lunch tomorrow? (*Use a more formal expression*.)
5 No, please. Put your credit card away. I'm inviting you for dinner. (*Use an informal expression*.)
6 I'd like to pay for you at the theatre tomorrow night. (*Use a formal expression*.)

24.2 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences using expressions from the opposite page to describe food and drink preferences.

1 I never drink alcohol. (*Use an adjective*.)
2 I don't really like sweet things. (*Use an idiom*.)
3 Are there things you can't or mustn't eat? (*Use a formal/polite expression*.)
4 Just a small amount of food (*use one word*) for me, please. I don't want to eat too much. (*Use an expression that means the same*.)
5 She's become very careful about how many calories she's eating. (*Give two different ways of saying the same thing*.)
6 Sasha is such a choosy person when it comes to food. It's difficult to find things she likes. (*Use an expression that means the same*.)

24.3 Give words from the opposite page which contrast with or are the opposite of these phrases.

1 a sweet dish
2 a friendly waiter
3 a formal gathering
4 rude staff
5 quick service
6 dreadful service

24.4 Which expressions on the opposite page mean:

1 eat whatever your hosts are eating at home, not a special dish for you?
2 tell me when I've poured enough in your glass?
3 get a quick meal or some other food that does not take a long time?
4 small items you eat before a meal, or perhaps at a reception?
5 another portion of what you have just eaten?
6 a semi-formal party in someone's house, probably not a meal?

25 On the road: traffic and driving

A Driving and traffic regulations

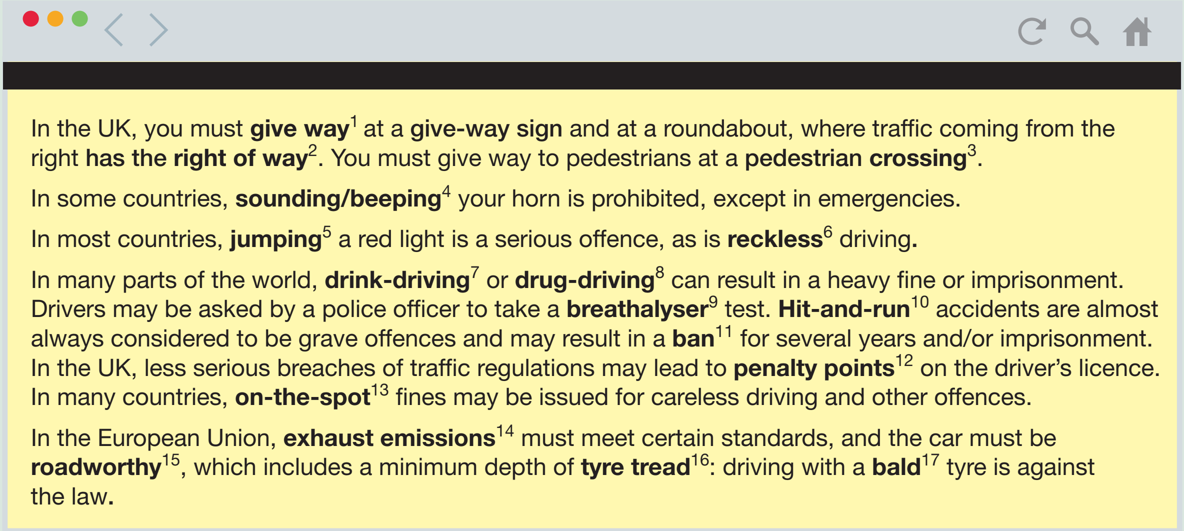

In the UK, you must **give way**[1] at a **give-way sign** and at a roundabout, where traffic coming from the right **has the right of way**[2]. You must give way to pedestrians at a **pedestrian crossing**[3].

In some countries, **sounding/beeping**[4] your horn is prohibited, except in emergencies.

In most countries, **jumping**[5] a red light is a serious offence, as is **reckless**[6] driving.

In many parts of the world, **drink-driving**[7] or **drug-driving**[8] can result in a heavy fine or imprisonment. Drivers may be asked by a police officer to take a **breathalyser**[9] test. **Hit-and-run**[10] accidents are almost always considered to be grave offences and may result in a **ban**[11] for several years and/or imprisonment. In the UK, less serious breaches of traffic regulations may lead to **penalty points**[12] on the driver's licence. In many countries, **on-the-spot**[13] fines may be issued for careless driving and other offences.

In the European Union, **exhaust emissions**[14] must meet certain standards, and the car must be **roadworthy**[15], which includes a minimum depth of **tyre tread**[16]: driving with a **bald**[17] tyre is against the law.

[1] stop at a junction before entering a bigger road [2] is allowed to go before other traffic [3] often called a *zebra crossing* when it has black and white stripes [4] *beeping* is less formal than *sounding* [5] not stopping at [6] very dangerous, without any care for others [7] driving after consuming alcohol above the official limit [8] driving after taking illegal drugs [9] instrument you breathe into to measure alcohol level [10] running into someone and not stopping [11] removal of your driving licence [12] negative points which are added up over time and which can result in the loss of your licence [13] given at the scene of the offence [14] waste gases produced by the vehicle [15] in a condition that it can be driven safely [16] the depth of the grooves in the tyre rubber [17] one which has lost its tread

B Traffic problems

It was the rush hour, and there was a long **tailback**. [line of slow or stopped traffic]
There's always **congestion** in the city centre. [situation in which there is a lot of traffic that can't move. In some cities, cars have to pay a **congestion charge** to go into the city centre.]
You have to pay a **toll** on the new motorway. [a charge you have to pay to use the road]
There was a **pile-up** involving ten cars, because of the fog, so the road was closed and we were **diverted** onto a narrow country lane. [crash between several or many cars] [directed away from our road]
Overnight snow caused **disruption** this morning on many roads, but it has cleared now. [when a system, process or event is prevented from continuing as usual or as expected]
I had stupidly parked in a **tow-away zone** and came back to find my car had gone! [area where your car may be taken away if you park illegally]
I only parked for a few minutes outside the station, but when I came out my car had been **clamped**. [fitted with a metal device on the wheel to prevent it from moving]
I saw two men fighting next to their cars. I think it was a case of **road rage**. [anger or violence between drivers because of difficult driving conditions]
The road was wet and I **skidded** on a bend and almost crashed. [lost control of the steering so that the car slid across the road]
There was a **head-on collision** on the main road between here and the next village last night. [two vehicles hitting each other directly in the front]

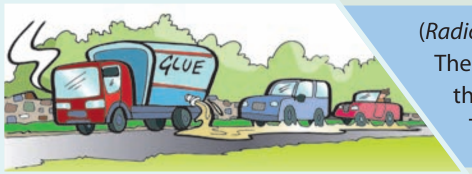

(*Radio announcement*)
There was an accident at the junction between the A476 and the A53 this morning involving a lorry carrying a load of glue. Traffic has been stuck there for the last three hours.

Exercises

25.1 Fill the gaps in these sentences using words and phrases from the opposite page.

1 We can't park here; it's a .... zone.
2 There was a five-mile .... on the motorway because of road works.
3 Fog caused a number of .... , one of which involved 15 cars.
4 If it's a .... sign, you don't have to stop if the road is clear, but if it's a stop sign, then you must always stop.
5 Who has the .... at a pedestrian crossing in your country? Cars or pedestrians?
6 It was a .... accident, but the police have a description of the car.
7 The permitted level of .... is to be lowered in an attempt to reduce air pollution in big cities.
8 He was given a .... test and it was discovered he had consumed a huge amount of alcohol. He was charged with .... , fined and given three .... on his licence.
9 In some countries, drivers .... their .... just because they get frustrated. As a result, the city streets are incredibly noisy.
10 The bad weather caused a lot of .... to traffic all over the country.
11 People are being encouraged to leave their cars at home in an effort to reduce .... in the city centre.

25.2 Respond to these comments as in the example, so that your response explains the meaning of the underlined words. Use words from the opposite page.

1 A: I came out and saw a big metal thing on my wheels.
B: *Oh, so your car had been clamped!*
A: Yes. I had to pay a lot of money to get it released.
2 A: As I drove round the corner, there was some ice on the road and I lost control of the steering.
B: Oh, so you ....
3 A: The two women were obviously having an argument about the way one of them had been driving. Then suddenly they started hitting each other!
B: Oh, I guess it was a case of ....
4 A: The police officer looked at two of my tyres and said they were illegal.
B: Oh, so your tyres were .... , were they?
5 A: The road was closed. Two lorries had come straight at each other and crashed.
B: Oh, so it was a ....
6 A: The police officer fined me there and then. I have to pay up within seven days.
B: Oh, really? I didn't know they could give ....
A: Yes. You have no choice. They just give it to you and you can't dispute it at the time.
7 A: The man at the garage said my car wasn't in a fit condition to be driven legally.
B: Oh, so it's not ....
8 A: They charge a lot to drive across the new bridge!
B: Oh, really? Do you have to pay a .... ? I didn't know that.

25.3 What do you think the underlined expressions mean? Write their meaning in your own words. Use a dictionary if you can't work out the meaning from the context.

1 There were three separate accidents in the city centre during the rush hour and soon there was total gridlock. It took about two hours to clear.
2 The police car made me pull over and they checked my lights.
3 I had a minor bump yesterday. It wasn't serious, but one of my lights got smashed.
4 My car conked out on the motorway and I had to ring for assistance. It cost me £100.
5 He's a bit of a back-seat driver, so don't be surprised if he criticises your driving.

26 Travel and accommodation

A Booking travel and holidays

Here are some choices you may make when booking travel or holidays.

- By air
  - **scheduled flight**
    - **first**, **business** or **economy** class
    - **route** (e.g. via /vaɪə/ Amsterdam)
    - **airline** (e.g. **low-cost/budget** such as easyJet or **national carrier** such as Emirates)
  - **charter flight**
    - **package/all-inclusive** holiday
    - **flight only**
    - **extras** (e.g. airport taxes, insurance)

A **scheduled flight** is a normal, regular flight; a **charter flight** is a special flight taking a group of people, usually to the same holiday destination. Some airline tickets may have **restrictions** (e.g. you can only travel on certain days). Such tickets can offer good **value for money** but, if you cancel, they are **non-refundable**[1] or you may have to pay a **cancellation fee**. Some tickets allow a **stopover**[2]. **A package** holiday normally includes accommodation and **transfers**, e.g. a coach or a **shuttle bus** to and from your hotel. An **all-inclusive** holiday includes your flight, accommodation and all meals, drinks and snacks in the hotel.

[1] you can't get your money back [2] you may stay somewhere overnight before continuing to your destination

Sea travel is normally on a **ferry**, and the journey is called a **crossing**, but you can have a holiday on the sea if you **go on a cruise**. For some people, a luxury cruise is the **holiday of a lifetime**[1]. You may decide to book a **berth** in a **shared cabin**[2], or to have a single or double cabin. For more money, you can often get a **deluxe** cabin, perhaps on the **upper deck**[3]. Cruises often go to **exotic**[4] islands where you can **get away from it all**[5].

[1] one you will always remember [2] a bed in a cabin with other people [3] the higher part of the ship, which is often bigger and more comfortable [4] unusual or exciting [5] escape your daily life and routines

Train travel allows you to relax as you travel and look at the countryside through the windows of your **carriage**. Railways link major towns but you may have to **change trains**[1] if you are not able to get a **through train**[2].

[1] get off one train and on to another [2] or **direct train**, one which takes you directly to your destination

Car hire is another way of **getting around**[1]. When you book it, you may have to choose whether you want **unlimited mileage**[2]. There may also be **extras** to pay, such as accident insurance. If you hire a car, it gives you the freedom to **come and go as you please**[3].

[1] travelling to different places; *informal* [2] /ˈmaɪlɪdʒ/ you can travel as many miles as you like for the same price [3] go where you want when you want

B Accommodation when travelling

Some people like **camping**[1] while others prefer hotels. Or you can have a **self-catering**[2] holiday, such as staying in an apartment or **chalet**[3]. You can also choose to stay in a **guest house**[4] or an **inn**[5]. Some types of accommodation offer **half board**[6] or **full board**[7].

[1] sleeping in a tent or a caravan [2] where you do your own cooking [3] /ˈʃæleɪ/ small cottage or cabin specially built for holiday-makers [4] small, relatively cheap hotel [5] similar to a pub, but also offering accommodation; sometimes in an attractive old building [6] usually breakfast and one other meal [7] all meals

Exercises

26.1 Use vocabulary from A opposite to express these sentences more briefly.

1 It was a regular flight which the airline runs every day.
It was a scheduled flight.
2 I hate those special flights where everyone is booked to the same holiday destination.
3 The ticket allowed us to spend up to three nights in Singapore on the journey from London to Sydney.
4 You can get a bed on the ferry in a little room with three other beds.
5 Our seats were in the part of the train that was nearest to the engine.
6 The bus or taxi to your hotel is included in the cost of the holiday.
7 It was a cheap fare, but there were some things you were not allowed to do.
8 The ticket is relatively cheap, but you can't get your money back if you have to cancel.
9 The price of the holiday includes the flight, hotel and all your food and drink.

26.2 Match the words on the left with their collocations on the right.

1	holiday	☐	**a**	catering
2	full	☐	**b**	for money
3	self-	☐	**c**	mileage
4	unlimited	☐	**d**	bus
5	exotic	☐	**e**	of a lifetime
6	value	☐	**f**	board
7	shuttle	☐	**g**	train
8	through	☐	**h**	airline
9	low-cost	☐	**i**	class
10	economy	☐	**j**	island

26.3 Which expressions in the box do you associate with each of the holidays below? Use a dictionary if necessary. Each expression may go with more than one type of holiday.

to rough it
an exhilarating experience
to be out in the wilds
to lounge around
to keep on the move
to sleep under the stars
a real learning experience
to be your own boss
to just drift along
a cosy atmosphere
to come and go as you please
to spend a fortune on entrance fees

1 self-catering holiday
2 camping at a beach resort
3 staying in an inn or a guest house
4 skiing holiday, staying in a chalet
5 trekking holiday, camping in the mountains
6 cruise
7 sightseeing holiday, staying in a hotel in a historic city
8 touring holiday, in a hire car

26.4 Complete these sentences with expressions from 25.3.

1 It was a lovely cruise; we just .... all day.
2 I prefer self-catering because I like to ....
3 Camping is OK if you don't mind ....
4 Skiing is always such ....
5 Sightseeing's great but it's easy ....
6 The guided tour of the ancient ruins was ....
7 Inns and guest houses usually have quite ....
8 I'd hate to stay in just one place on my holiday – I much prefer ....

27 Attracting tourists

A Describing tourist destinations

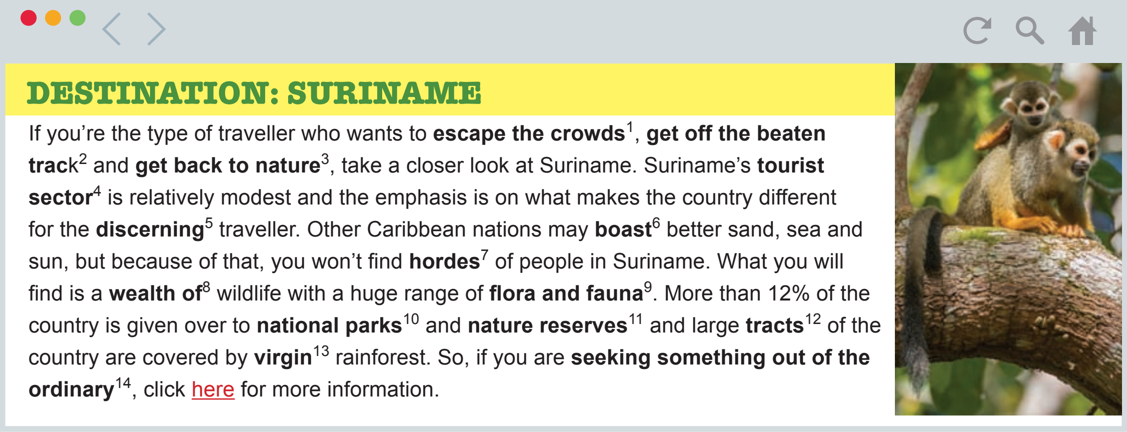

DESTINATION: SURINAME

If you're the type of traveller who wants to **escape the crowds**[1], **get off the beaten track**[2] and **get back to nature**[3], take a closer look at Suriname. Suriname's **tourist sector**[4] is relatively modest and the emphasis is on what makes the country different for the **discerning**[5] traveller. Other Caribbean nations may **boast**[6] better sand, sea and sun, but because of that, you won't find **hordes**[7] of people in Suriname. What you will find is a **wealth of**[8] wildlife with a huge range of **flora and fauna**[9]. More than 12% of the country is given over to **national parks**[10] and **nature reserves**[11] and large **tracts**[12] of the country are covered by **virgin**[13] rainforest. So, if you are **seeking something out of the ordinary**[14], click here for more information.

[1] go where there are not many people [2] go to places tourists don't normally go, somewhere different/unusual [3] live a natural, rural style of life [4] tourist industry; *formal* [5] showing good judgement, especially about style and quality [6] this use of *boast* is for listing the good qualities of a place; *formal* [7] crowds, in a negative sense [8] large amount of; *formal* [9] plants and animals; a fixed phrase (Latin) [10] areas of a country that are protected by the government because of their natural beauty or because they have a special history [11] areas of land protected in order to keep safe the animals and plants that live there, often because they are rare [12] areas of land; collocates with *large*, *vast*, *huge* [13] original and natural [14] looking for something different (*seek* is rather formal)

B Travel advertisements

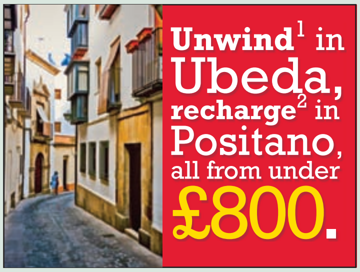

Unwind[1] in Ubeda, **recharge**[2] in Positano, all from under £800.

Taste of the bush[3]

All travel in air-conditioned **4x4**[4] vehicles

Waterfront[5] villas, self-catering, sleep up to six. **Stunning**[6] locations, **unbeatable**[7] prices.

Phone now!

Awe-inspiring[8] national parks

Rambles, hikes and **treks**[9]

Unrivalled[10] programme

Send for our brochure.

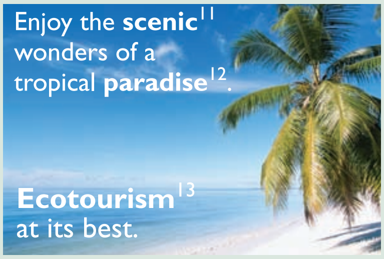

Enjoy the **scenic**[11] wonders of a tropical **paradise**[12].

Ecotourism[13] at its best.

Savour[14] the renowned landscapes in our **heartland**[15].

[1] /ʌn'waɪnd/ relax, reduce your general level of stress [2] get back your energy (like recharging a battery) [3] wild, areas covered in grass, bushes or trees (especially in Africa and Australia) [4] pronounced *four by four*; vehicles with driving power on all four wheels [5] on the edge of the sea or of a river [6] extremely beautiful [7] no other company can offer cheaper ones for the same service [8] it fills you with a sense of the power and beauty of what you are looking at [9] these words represent a scale of length and difficulty: a **ramble** is a long, pleasant walk, not too demanding; a **hike** is more demanding, suggesting more difficult terrain; a **trek** is usually of several days over wild country [10] no other holiday programme can match this [11] having views of the attractive, natural things in the countryside [12] a perfect place or situation (often collocated with *tropical* when describing somewhere hot and sunny) [13] the business of organising holidays in a way which helps local people and does not damage the environment [14] enjoy or taste (often used in advertisements) [15] the inland areas furthest away from the sea or from borders with other countries

Exercises

27.1 **Complete the expressions and collocations in these sentences, using words from A.**

1 Malaysia .... some of the loveliest beaches in Asia.
2 The tourism .... is very important to the economies of many developing countries.
3 It is vital that tourism should not damage the flora and .... of beautiful areas of this spectacular landscape.
4 Most tourists like to feel free to .... off the .... track.
5 Most people don't like to travel to places where there will be .... of other tourists.
6 People who spend all their time in big cities often like to .... back to .... when they go away for a holiday.
7 If you're .... something out of the .... , why not try a snowboarding holiday? It's certainly different!
8 When I travel, I always try to .... the crowds and find somewhere quiet.
9 There are vast .... of unspoilt land in the north of the country, with .... rainforests and a .... of wildlife.
10 The country has fabulous national .... and nature .... where you can camp or stay in basic accommodation.

27.2 **Use words from B opposite to fill the gaps, based on the words given in brackets.**

1 This company is excellent and their prices are .... (RIVAL)
2 The .... beauty of the coastline is unforgettable. (SCENE)
3 There are some absolutely .... beaches in the north. (STUN)
4 I think SunTravel Vacations is .... when it comes to value-for-money holidays. (BEAT)
5 The mountains were so .... Some were over 5,000 metres high. (AWE)
6 We rented a .... villa. It was nice to be so near the beach. (WATER)
7 I just want somewhere quiet and relaxing to .... for a week. (WIND)
8 Everyone needs to .... their batteries now and again. (CHARGE)

27.3 **Answer the questions.**

1 Order these words from the most physically demanding to the least physically demanding: ramble, trek, hike.
2 What verb might you find in travel advertisements meaning enjoy?
3 What adjective can be used with *traveller* to mean one who knows exactly what he or she wants in terms of quality and style?
4 Where would you find the bush?
5 How do you say this and what does it mean: 4x4?
6 If somewhere was described as a 'paradise', would that be positive or negative?

27.4 **Over to you**

Think about holidays you have had. How would you describe them? Then think about your perfect holiday. What words from this unit can you use to describe it?

28 Describing the world

A Climate

Travelling from north to south in Nigeria, you pass through a fascinating series of landscapes. **Rainfall**[1] in the south-east can be extremely high in the wet season, whereas the northern part of the country is **arid**[2] and **prone to**[3] **drought**[4] during the dry season.

[1] the amount of rain that falls, for example in a month or in a year [2] dry [3] tending to have a particular negative characteristic [4] long period without rain

B Vegetation

More than 30% of the landscape of Canada lies inside the Arctic Circle, where the land can stay frozen for up to nine months of the year. In these regions, known as the **tundra**[1], **vegetation**[2] is limited. Further south, dense, **coniferous**[3] forests known as taiga cover large areas of land. Towards the border with the United States are the grasslands of the **prairies**[4] and the mixed, temperate forests.

[1] area in the north with no trees and permanently frozen ground [2] plant life [3] trees that are **evergreen** [in leaf all year round] and produce cones, unlike **deciduous** trees, which lose their leaves in winter [4] flat grasslands in Canada and northern USA (similar to steppes in Asia or pampas in South America)

C Agriculture

Rice is the main crop grown in the south of China, along with tea, cotton, fruit and vegetables. The rice is planted in flooded **paddy fields**[1]. A good year can see two crops of rice and one of vegetables harvested. In the drier, hillier north and west, farmers generally harvest a single crop of **cereals**[2] and, in addition, **tend**[3] sheep and cattle.

[1] fields planted with rice growing in water [2] type of grass cultivated to produce a grain, e.g. a food plant like rice, wheat or maize [3] take care of

D Industry

France is one of the world's leading **developed**[1] nations. It is home to large **manufacturing**[2], steel and chemical industries. The country is an important and major producer of aircraft and cars and is **at the forefront**[3] of technology and engineering. Its sizeable nuclear industry **generates**[4] a significant proportion of the nation's electrical power. Like many developed countries, France provides a lot of help and aid to **developing**[5] countries.

[1] with a modern, industrial economy [2] producing goods in large numbers [3] in an important position [4] produces/creates [5] describes a country that is poor and does not have a modern, industrial economy

E Population

Brazil is a vibrant mixture of peoples. Some **are descended from**[1] **indigenous**[2] tribes, others from the Portuguese, who were the colonial power in Brazil for 300 years. Many Brazilians have African **ancestors**[3] brought over in the 17th century as slaves to work on sugar plantations. During the 20th century, large numbers of European **migrants**[4] **settled**[5] in the south.

[1] are related to someone who lived in the past [2] existing naturally in that place [3] relatives from earlier times: we are our ancestors' **descendants** [4] people who move to live in another country or another part of their own country (often for reasons of economic need; an **emigrant** is someone who leaves a country, an **immigrant** is someone who moves to live in a country) [5] made their homes

Exercises

28.1

Match the two parts of the collocations from the opposite page. Note the words are not all in bold.

1 coniferous ☐
2 developed ☐
3 paddy ☐
4 chemical ☐
5 sugar ☐

a plantation
b industry
c forest
d field
e nation

28.2

Here are some other words which collocate with the words in the right-hand column in the exercise above. There are three for each of the five words. Can you match them?

coffee deciduous dense developing manufacturing oil pharmaceutical
rain magnetic rubber tea textile wheat independent sovereign

28.3

Complete the sentences using a word from the box. There may be more than one possible answer.

descendants ancestors migrants emigrants immigrants

1 I believe my .... came to Britain from France in the 17th century.
2 Many .... left Russia for France after the Revolution in 1917.
3 The USA has traditionally welcomed .... from all over the world.
4 Our largest cities are full of .... looking for work and a better life.
5 Some Scots are said to be the .... of 16th century Spanish sailors shipwrecked off the Scottish coast.

28.4

Rewrite the underlined words using words and expressions from the opposite page.

1 Recently, the country's economy has suffered a decline in industry concerned with making things.
2 The university has long been in a very important position in agricultural science.
3 The river delta tends to suffer catastrophic flooding on a regular basis.
4 One can often see local shepherds looking after large flocks of sheep on the hillsides.
5 In the late 18th century, migrants made their home in the uncultivated lands towards the north of the country.
6 In the extremely dry southern provinces, plant life is sparse.
7 In the cold northern regions, the landscape consists mostly of permanently frozen ground with no trees.
8 The tribes that have always existed naturally in the eastern jungles are now facing threats to their way of life.
9 The farmlands are dotted with woods that lose their leaves in winter, while the large forests of trees that are always in leaf provide the country with much-needed timber.
10 The flat grasslands of the northern USA experienced a severe long period with no rain last year.

28.5

Over to you

If your country is not one of the ones on the opposite page, write a short paragraph about it in the same style, or else choose another country and do the same.

29 Weather and climate

A Weather conversations

Here are some less common but nonetheless useful words about weather, so that you can have typical weather conversations where you agree with someone by using a near-synonym. In these examples, B replies using more informal language.

A: Bit **cold** today, isn't it?
B: Yes, it's **chilly**/**freezing**/**nippy**, isn't it?

A: It's **hot**, isn't it?
B: Yes, it's **boiling**/**sweltering**/**roasting**!

A: It's a bit **windy** today!
B: Yes, really **blowy**/**breezy**, isn't it?

A: What **oppressive**/**sultry** weather!
B: Yes, isn't it **stifling**/**heavy**/**close**?

A: What a **downpour**/**deluge**!
B: Yes, it's **chucking it down** / **it's pouring!**

A: Isn't it **humid** today?
B: Yes, horrible **muggy**/**clammy**/**sticky** weather!

B Climate and metaphors

Climate metaphors are often used, particularly in written English.
The word **climate** can refer to the general atmosphere or situation in society.
His secrecy and dishonesty created a **climate of distrust**.
The government reforms have contributed to a **climate of change**.
The words **cultural**, **current**, **economic**, **financial**, **moral**, **political**, **social** and **prevailing** all collocate strongly with **climate** in this social sense.
She has a very **sunny disposition** – she's hardly ever miserable.
Though they won the championship last year, the outlook for the team is less **sunny** this year.
Unfortunately, our plans met with a **frosty** reception.
I'm **snowed under** with work – I'll never get through it all in time.
After the company accounts were examined, the manager left **under a cloud**.
Don't let your love for him **cloud your judgement**.
The soldiers were hit with a **hail of bullets**.
The Prime Minister was greeted with a **hail**/**storm of abuse**.
I've only a **hazy memory** of my first day at school.
The truth is hidden **in the mists of history**.
The article sparked a **whirlwind** of speculation.
They had a **whirlwind romance** and got married just a month after they met.
The horses **thundered** down the racetrack.
Thunderous applause followed his speech.
(Note that **thundery** is used to describe stormy weather while **thunderous** describes a loud, deep noise.)
The **winds of change**/**discontent**/**democracy** are blowing across the country.

Exercises

29.1 **Respond to these statements about the weather. Agree using slightly more formal language like that of speaker A in the conversations on the opposite page.**

1 It's a bit nippy outside, isn't it?
2 What a sweltering day!
3 Isn't it muggy here?
4 It's blowy, isn't it?
5 Close today, isn't it?
6 It's chucking it down!
7 It's clammy today, isn't it?
8 What a sticky day!

29.2 **What are the metaphorical meanings of these words from B opposite?**

1 sunny – *pleasant and positive*
2 frosty
3 to cloud
4 snowed under
5 whirlwind
6 hail
7 climate
8 hazy
9 to thunder

29.3 **Find collocations for these words. You will find some on the opposite page, but use a dictionary to find more if necessary.**

1 climate
....
....
....

2 prevailing
....
....
....

3 to cloud
....
....
....

4 the winds of
....
....
....

5 a frosty
....
....
....

6 a hail of
....
....
....

29.4 **Read the text below and find words in it which mean the following.**

1 average
2 dry
3 height above sea level
4 distance from the equator
5 rain and snow
6 rays from the sun
7 make less extreme
8 situated very far from the sea
9 differing weather conditions at different times of the year

Schemes for dividing the Earth into climatic regions are based on a combination of indices of mean annual temperature, mean monthly temperature, annual precipitation totals and seasonality. The climate of a place is affected by several factors. Latitude affects the amount of solar radiation received, with the greatest in equatorial regions and the least in polar regions. Elevation affects both temperature and precipitation; mountainous areas are generally cooler and wetter. Location close to the sea or to large bodies of water moderates temperature; continental areas are generally more arid and more affected by extremes of temperature.

29.5 **Over to you**

- What words can you use to describe the climate in your country?
- How would you describe the economic climate?

30 Brick walls and glass ceilings

A Buildings

To **build something**/**someone up** can be used metaphorically to mean to praise someone or something in a way that will increase expectations of them: The press has **built up** the young footballer so much that it must be extra pressure on him.

Note how **cement** is used to fix bricks firmly in place and to make relationships more solid. It can be used in this way both as a noun and a verb: Let's have a drink together **to cement** our partnership.

To come up against a brick wall is used metaphorically, meaning to meet a barrier: When I tried to find out who had opened my letters, I **came up against a brick wall**.

Ceiling can be used to suggest a limit to something: They put a **ceiling** on the number of planned redundancies.

The **glass ceiling** is a phrase used to refer to an invisible barrier that stops people, especially women, from rising to top positions at work.

Roof is used in a number of common metaphors: The **roof fell in** on my world on the day he died. [My world collapsed …]

Conversely, the **floor** can **give way** metaphorically when you faint.

The informal phrase **go through the roof** is used about prices, meaning to increase in a rapid, uncontrolled fashion.

Hit the roof means get very angry: My mother will **hit the roof** when she sees what we've done.

Window, both literally and metaphorically, means an opening.

A **window of opportunity** is a chance to do something special: If you see a **window of opportunity**, then take advantage of it.

If a quality or idea **goes out (of) the window**, it means it departs: Once the boys started going around together, common sense **went out of the window**.

As a very tall building, **tower** conveys an idea of distance from ordinary people. If someone lives in an **ivory tower**, he/she does not know about the unpleasant and ordinary things that happen in life: Academics are often criticised for living in their **ivory towers**.

If a person is a **tower of strength**, they are extremely strong (in an emotional rather than a physical sense): Our friends were a **tower of strength** when our house burnt down.

If a person or thing **towers above** something or someone, they are either outstandingly tall or outstanding in some other positive way: Lauren **towers above** all her classmates, although she is actually one of the youngest students.

B Entrances

Gateway is used metaphorically in the phrase **be a gateway to**, meaning give an opportunity to get somewhere: A degree in law is a **gateway to** a well-paid job.

Door can also be used in a similar way to gateway above, but it is also used in many other metaphorical phrases as well: Failing his final exams **closed**/**shut** a lot of **doors** for him. Knowing several languages **opens doors** when it comes to finding work. The new year gives us the opportunity to **close the door on** the past and make a fresh start. Doing something **through**/**by the back door** suggests doing it unofficially: Jack came into the business **by the back door** – the manager knew him from university. Doing something **behind closed doors** suggests secrecy: Unfortunately, the decision was taken **behind closed doors** and no one knows exactly why it was made.

Key can be used as a noun to suggest the importance of something: This research may **provide**/**hold the key to** developing a cure for cancer. Knowing the right people is **the key to success** in that country.

Exercises

30.1 **Match up the words to make metaphors. Explain what each metaphor means.**

1 glass ☐ a strength
2 ivory ☐ b opportunity
3 brick ☐ c ceiling
4 back ☐ d tower
5 window of ☐ e wall
6 tower of ☐ f door

30.2 **Complete these sentences with the appropriate verb.**

1 The price of fuel has .... through the roof.
2 We hope that this scientist's work may .... the key to solving the problem.
3 A degree in economics .... the door to a number of interesting job opportunities.
4 Whenever you try to initiate something in this company you find that, sooner or later, you .... up against a brick wall.
5 Lucy's father .... the roof when he saw that she'd dyed her hair purple.
6 Ben .... over all the other lawyers in his firm. He is by far the most able.
7 Her argument with the board last year has, unfortunately, ... a lot of doors for her in this company.
8 The roof .... in on their world the day that war was declared.

30.3 **Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences using one of the expressions on the opposite page.**

1 My brother is always enormously supportive whenever I have a problem.
2 We'll never know what the US and Russian Presidents said to each other when they met in private.
3 The fee for this work will depend on the time it takes, but cannot be more than $20,000.
4 The cost of petrol has risen dramatically in the last six months.
5 Having children often makes a marriage stronger.
6 Winning an Olympic medal can provide an opportunity to develop a career in the media.
7 The most important decision we have to take now is where to locate our business.
8 The professor has spent all his life in one university or another and really finds it very difficult to cope in the real world.
9 Lena has always said what an incredible person Max is – I hope I won't be disappointed when I meet him.

30.4 **Here are some more metaphors based on aspects of buildings. Can you guess what the underlined expressions mean and rewrite them?**

1 He earns very little, barely enough to keep the wolf from the door.
2 The speaker's request for questions was met with a wall of silence.
3 Working on this project together should help to lay the foundations for a good relationship in the future.
4 Nathan's prolonged illness left his business in ruins.
5 This government should clean up its own backyard before criticising other countries.

30.5

Over to you

Which of the metaphors in this unit also work as metaphors when translated literally into your own language? Look at exercise 30.4 as well as the opposite page.

31 Taking root and reaping rewards

A Parts of a plant

Here are some metaphors based on parts of trees and plants:

Seed(s) is often used to talk about the start of an idea or feeling: **the seeds of success**, **the seeds of discontent**, **the seeds of revolution**.

Root(s) is used to suggest the origins of something. You can talk about **going back to your roots**, for example, meaning going back to the place where your family came from. You can also talk about **the root of a problem** or **the roots of a tradition**. **Putting down roots** means settling down and making your home in one place: After travelling the world for a couple of years, I was ready to go home and **put down some roots**.

When an idea becomes known or accepted, it can be said to **take root**. The **grassroots supporters** of an organisation or society are the ordinary people in it, not the leaders.

Deeply and **firmly** collocate with **rooted**: Its origins are **firmly**/**deeply rooted** in the 19th century.

Stem is used as a verb to signify that something originates in something else: Her discontent **stems** from a traumatic experience she had last year.

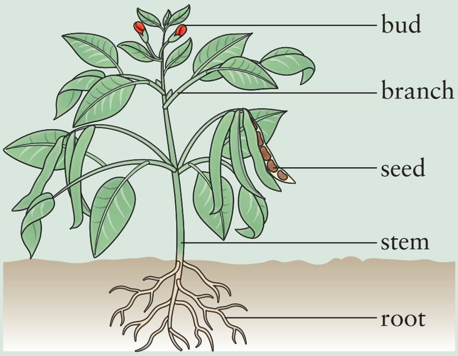

Bud is used in the expression **nipped in the bud** [flower before it opens] [stopped before it develops into something]: He's showing signs of neglecting his work – we'd better **nip that in the bud**.

The adjective **budding** can also mean showing promise of future development: She's a **budding** young actor.

A branch is something that grows off or **branches out** from a main organisation. We talk about **branches of a shop** or a **business branching out into new directions**: We don't have the blue sweater in your size here, but you could try our Oxford Street **branch**.

B Metaphorical verbs connected with plant growth and gardening

The new boss is planning to **weed out** older or less experienced staff. [get rid of]

The government will probably have to **prune back** its proposals. [cut/limit]

At last she **is reaping the rewards of** all her years of study. [is getting results from]

Because we didn't protest about the change, we are now **reaping what we sowed**. [experiencing the logical results of our actions – usually used in negative contexts]

The journalists **have dug up** some interesting facts. [have discovered]

The idea **was germinating** while we were on holiday. [was beginning to develop]

Out-of-town shopping centres **have been sprouting up** all over the country. [have been appearing quickly in large numbers]

Our business **is flourishing**. [is doing very well]

We are beginning to see the **green shoots** of economic recovery. [first signs that the economy is improving]

A deciduous tree **sheds** its leaves. [loses] Companies can **shed employees**/**jobs**. People can **shed worries**/**inhibitions**/**weight**.

Plants can **thrive**; so can people and things [grow/develop well and successfully]: The language school is **thriving** – student numbers are up from last year. She loves her high-powered job and seems to **thrive on** stress and crises!

Plants **fade**, **wither**, **shrivel** and **wilt** when they die. These verbs can be used metaphorically: Hopes of finding survivors are **fading**. [becoming smaller] Revenues/Donations/Profits have **shrivelled** in recent years. [become less] It was so hot in the classroom that the students were starting to **wilt**. [lose energy] A **glance**/**look**/**remark** can **wither** or **be withering** [make the recipient feel scorned]: She gave him a **withering look**.

Exercises

31.1 **Match up the pairs to make collocations.**

1 nipped ☐
2 a budding ☐
3 grass ☐
4 the root ☐

5 to reap ☐
6 to take ☐
7 the seeds ☐

a of the problem
b root
c Olympic athlete
d of discontent

e roots
f in the bud
g rewards

31.2 **Fill the gaps in these sentences.**

1 Alec has spent most of his life in London, but he is keen to get back to his .... when he retires. His family came from Scotland, so he'll move there.
2 The business is firmly .... in Western Australia.
3 The idea took some time to .... root, but it's very fashionable now.
4 His grandfather sowed the .... of the business's success.
5 The US bookshop chain is opening a number of .... in the UK.
6 It's about time she .... down some roots.
7 The idea for her novel .... from her interest in mountain climbing.
8 The West Side Drama College turns out a hundred .... actors every year.

31.3 **Divide the verbs in the box into two groups: verbs associated with growth and health and verbs associated with decline and death.**

fade flourish germinate shrivel sprout wilt thrive wither

31.4 **Suggest three nouns that each of these adjectives could describe.**

1 budding ....
2 flourishing ....
3 withering ....
4 fading ....
5 deeply rooted ....
6 thriving ....

31.5 **Rewrite the sentences using plant metaphors instead of the underlined words.**

1 My hopes of getting a job are disappearing. Unemployment is at an all-time record.
2 The firm is cutting the labour force in order to reduce costs.
3 She got rid of her inhibitions at the party and danced with everyone!
4 He and his wife are now receiving the rewards of many years of hard work building up their business.
5 The party is trying hard to get rid of the extremists and create for itself a more moderate political image. They want to reflect the views of their ordinary supporters.
6 Some people seem to grow and develop on difficult challenges.
7 A blogger found out some alarming facts about government spending.
8 Well, if you won't study for your exams, don't be surprised if you suffer the negative consequences of your actions.
9 After three years of recession, we are beginning to see the first signs of an economic recovery.

31.6 **Over to you**

- Do you have any responsibilities that you would prefer to shed at the moment?
- Can you think of a situation where you reaped the rewards of something you did?
- What in your life is flourishing at the moment?
- Where are your family's roots?

32 The animal kingdom

A Describing animals and birds

mammal: animal that gives birth to live babies, not eggs, and feeds them on its own milk (e.g. cat, cow, kangaroo); a kangaroo is a special kind of mammal called a **marsupial** [its young grow in a **pouch** in front of the mother]
rodent: e.g. mouse, rat **reptile**: e.g. snake, lizard
carnivore: animal that eats a diet that is mainly or exclusively meat (e.g. lion, tiger, hyena)
herbivore: animal that eats a diet that is mainly or exclusively grass/vegetation (e.g. deer, cow)
predator: animal that hunts/eats other animals (e.g. eagle, lion, shark)
scavenger: animal that feeds on dead animals which it has not killed itself
warm/cold-blooded: warm-blooded animals (e.g. mammals) have temperatures that stay the same; cold-blooded animals (e.g. reptiles) have to control their temperature by taking in heat from outside or by being very active

B Describing typical animal behaviour

Our old cat is a very **docile** creature. [behaves very gently]
These birds are so **tame**, they will sit on your hand. [not afraid of humans, usually because of training or long involvement with humans]
Dogs and horses became **domesticated** thousands of years ago. [live with or are used by humans]
There are **wild** cats in the mountains. [opposite of domesticated]
A **savage** wolf killed three of the farmer's sheep. [extremely violent or wild]
A **fierce** dog guarded the gates. [behaves aggressively]

C Life of animals and birds

As more buildings and roads are constructed, the **natural habitat** for many species is shrinking. [preferred natural place for living and breeding]
The arctic tern is a bird which **migrates** from the Arctic to the Antarctic, a round trip of over 70,000 km. **Migration** is when animals travel long distances to get to a different habitat.
The **dodo** was a large flightless bird which was found on one island in the Indian Ocean but **became extinct** in the 17th century. [died out]
You can see lots of animals in the big **game reserves** / **game parks** in Africa. [areas of land where animals are protected from hunting, etc.; **game** can be used to mean animals or birds that are hunted]
There is a **bird sanctuary** near here. [protected natural area where birds can live and breed]
We went to the local **animal (rescue) shelter** to see if we could get a dog there. [place where **stray** cats, dogs, etc., i.e. pets that have lost their home, are given food and a place to live]

Language help

A *dodo* is now used to mean someone or something out of touch or obsolete.

D Human exploitation of animals and birds

Many people are opposed to **blood sports** such as foxhunting and bullfighting. [sports whose purpose is to kill or injure animals]
Some people refuse to wear clothing made of natural animal fur, since they are opposed to **the fur trade**. [the selling of animal furs for coats, jackets, etc.]
Poachers kill hundreds of elephants every year to supply **the ivory trade**. [people who hunt animals illegally] [the buying and selling of ivory from elephants' tusks]
Animal rights activists often demonstrate outside research laboratories where animals are used in experiments. [people who actively campaign for the protection and rights of animals]
Rhinos are hunted for their **horn**, which is said to have healing powers. [hard, pointed, often curved part growing from the head of an animal]

Exercises

32.1 **Rewrite the underlined phrases in these sentences using words from the opposite page.**

1 There are a lot of different types of squirrels, rats, mice and things like that living in the woods.
2 A whale isn't a fish, as it doesn't lay eggs. It's actually an animal that gives birth directly.
3 There are some interesting turtles and crocodiles and that sort of thing near the river.
4 Everyone thinks these animals eat meat, but in fact they only feed on certain kinds of leaves.
5 The mother bird protects her eggs from animals that attack them.
6 Many different species have died out because their habitat has been destroyed.

32.2 **Fill the gaps in these sentences using adjectives from B on the opposite page to describe gentle or aggressive behaviour, or the relationship between animals and humans.**

1 Sheep are generally rather .... animals, but the other day a ram attacked our dog.
2 Lions can look very .... with their huge teeth and large heads.
3 Horses were probably first .... many thousands of years ago.
4 Some dolphins are very .... and will swim along with human beings.
5 I don't think .... birds should ever be hunted. They should be left in peace in their natural surroundings.

32.3 **Here are the beginnings of some words related to animals and birds. Can you fill in the missing letters? You are given a clue as to the meaning.**

1 h.......................... (natural home)
2 s.......................... (protected place)
3 r.......................... (protected area, often for big game)
4 s.......................... (creature that eats flesh of, e.g., birds killed by other animals)
5 s.......................... (pet that has wandered away from home)
6 m.......................... (animal that carries its young in a pouch until the young are fully developed)
7 m.......................... (travelling a long way to live somewhere else for a while)
8 d.......................... (an extinct bird or an out-of-touch person or idea)

32.4 **Answer these questions.**

1 What do we call sports that deliberately injure or kill animals for pleasure?
2 What name is given to the activity of buying and selling elephants' tusks?
3 What do we call people who illegally hunt or catch animals or fish?
4 What arguments would animal rights activists have against the fur trade?
5 What is the most valuable part of the rhino and the reason why it is hunted?
6 Where might you go to get a pet if you want to give a home to one that no longer has one?
7 Where might you go in Africa to see wild animals?
8 What do you call creatures like mammals that always have approximately the same temperature?
9 What is used to describe creatures like reptiles and is the opposite of the answer to 8?

32.5 **Complete the following table. Do not fill the shaded boxes. Use a dictionary if necessary. In the noun and adjective columns, mark which part of the word is stressed.**

noun	verb	adjective
carnivore	▨	
herbivore	▨	
predator		
poacher		▨
migration		
domestication		

33 Our endangered world

You probably already know a lot of words for talking about the environment, pollution, and so on. In this unit we focus particularly on collocations (words that are often used together). Try to learn these and use them in your writing.

A Threats and potential threats to the environment

Shrinking habitats[1] are a threat to **biodiversity**[2], in terms of both plants and animals, and **endangered species**[3] need legal protection if they are to survive. Although some **climate change sceptics**[4] disagree, most scientists believe that **global warming**[5] will increase. This will encourage **polar ice** to melt, resulting in **rising sea levels** and **climatic changes**. **Carbon (dioxide) emissions**[6] from the burning of **fossil fuels**[7] are contributing to the **greenhouse effect**[8]. In addition, population growth **exerts severe pressure on**[9] **finite resources**[10], and the **ecological balance**[11] may be upset by **uncontrolled deforestation**[12]. **Demographic projections**[13] suggest the world population will continue to **grow exponentially**[14], putting extra pressure on **depleting resources**[15]. **Waste disposal**[16] is an increasing problem and **toxic waste**[17] is **contaminating**[18] many rivers and seas. Safe water may become an increasingly **precious commodity**[19], leading to issues of **water security**[20]. One of **the worst-case scenarios**[21] is that there will be no tropical rainforests left by the year 2050. Our only hope is that **pristine environments**[22] such as Antarctica can be protected from development and **damage**, so that at least these habitats are preserved.

[1] places where animals live and breed which are decreasing in size [2] variety of different types of biological species [3] types of animals/plants which are in danger of no longer existing [4] people who do not believe that climate change is a serious issue [5] steady rise in average world temperatures [6] carbon dioxide gas from factories, cars, etc. [7] coal, oil, etc. [8] warming of the Earth's surface caused by pollution, where gases trap and redirect heat back down to the Earth's surface [9] puts great pressure on; *formal* [10] limited resources that will eventually run out / be exhausted [11] balance of natural relationships in the environment [12] unrestricted destruction/clearing of forests [13] forecasts about the population [14] grow extremely rapidly [15] resources that are reducing [16] getting rid of waste [17] poisonous waste materials [18] poisoning (something) [19] very valuable substance [20] ability to ensure that a population has safe drinking water [21] the worst possibilities for the future [22] perfectly clean/untouched/unspoilt areas

B Responses to environmental issues and problems

Look at these newspaper headlines and note the useful phrases.

GOVERNING PARTY IN BID TO IMPROVE **GREEN CREDENTIALS**[1]

PROPHETS OF DOOM AND GLOOM[2] SHOULD LISTEN TO SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE, SAYS PRIME MINISTER

SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT[3] THE ONLY ANSWER FOR EMERGING COUNTRIES, SAYS UN COMMISSION

RENEWABLE ENERGY[4] – GOVERNMENT DEVELOPS NEW STRATEGY

[1] reputation for positive support of the environment and for making policies that reflect this

[2] people who always make the most depressing or pessimistic predictions about the future

[3] development of industry, etc. which does not damage the environment or social and economic stability, and which can continue over a period of time

[4] energy produced using sun, wind or crops rather than coal or other fuels which cannot be replaced once used

Common mistakes

People cause *damage* to the environment (NOT ~~damages~~).

Exercises

33.1

Make these sentences formal by using words and phrases from A opposite instead of the underlined words, making any other necessary changes.

1 All that carbon-what's-it-called gas put out by cars and factories is a major problem.
2 These flowers here are a type there's not many left of, so it's illegal to pick them.
3 A lot of wild animals have to survive in smaller and smaller areas where they can live.
4 A lot of Patagonia is a completely spotless area that's never been touched.
5 We have to look after the things we use on this planet because they won't last for ever.
6 If the cutting down of trees continues, there will be no forest left ten years from now.
7 Burning coal and oil and stuff like that causes a lot of pollution.
8 The sea will get higher if this heating up of the world continues.
9 Increasing population puts really big pressure on economic resources.
10 The way things all balance one another in nature is very delicate.

33.2

Complete the following table, using a dictionary if necessary. Do not fill the shaded boxes.

noun	verb	adjective	adverb
climate			
demography			
	project		
	sustain		
	contaminate		
		toxic	
	deplete		

33.3

Correct the mistakes in this paragraph.

Profits of boom and gloom are always saying that we are heading for an environmental catastrophe, and that unless we adopt a policy of attainable development, we will cause irreparable damages to the planet. The worst-place scenery is of a world choked by overpopulation, the greenhouse affect and traffic gridlock. Much of what is claimed is exaggerated, but politicians are influenced by such voices and are always trying to improve their green potentials in the eyes of the voters.

33.4

Match words on the left with words on the right to make collocations about the environment.

1 renewable ☐
2 demographic ☐
3 precious ☐
4 polar ☐
5 waste ☐
6 greenhouse ☐
7 worst-case ☐
8 climate change ☐

a scenario
b sceptic
c effect
d energy
e projections
f disposal
g commodity
h ice

33.5

Over to you

To find more vocabulary connected with environment and conservation issues, visit the websites of major conservation organisations such as the World Wildlife Fund (WWF) (www.worldwildlife.org) or Friends of the Earth International (www.foei.org).

34 Here to help: customer service

A Good service

Read these comments by someone about a company they recently used.

They're a good company. They always make sure you get a **prompt**[1] reply to any **query**[2] and they're very **responsive to**[3] complaints. When I rang to ask if I could change the delivery date, they were very **accommodating**[4] and **got back to**[5] me within ten minutes with a new date. Whenever I ring, I get **impeccable**[6] service; they're always very helpful and **obliging**[7], whatever the problem is.

[1] quick, without delay
[2] /ˈkwɪəri/ question or enquiry
[3] they listen, take things seriously and act
[4] willing to understand and help
[5] called (or wrote) with an answer
[6] 100% perfect
[7] willing and happy to do things for someone

B Adjectives connected with bad service

adjective	meaning	example
incompetent	failing through insufficient skill, knowledge or training	It wasn't just bad service; they were completely **incompetent**.
impersonal	lacking a personal element or feeling of human warmth	I find some big shops so **impersonal**.
shoddy	poor quality (of service or of goods)	They repaired my car but the work was very **shoddy**.
substandard	below the standard expected (often used about actions)	It was a **substandard** performance altogether for such a big company.
uncooperative	not supportive, unwilling to work together	The secretary was very **uncooperative**, so I ended up doing it myself.

There's a huge **backlog** of orders and they can't deliver for three weeks. [number which are waiting to be dealt with]
They never seem to have any **sense of urgency** when you ring them. It's exasperating. [feeling that your request is important or urgent]
They have a **helpline**, but it's useless; they always **put you on hold** every time you ring. [telephone number where you can get help if you have problems] [make you wait]
The home button on my tablet stopped working but it was still **under guarantee**/**warranty** so I didn't have to pay to get it repaired. [having a written promise by a company to repair or replace a faulty product]

C Service encounters on the internet

Most big companies offer a **secure site** where you can **set up an account**, and they have a **privacy policy** guaranteeing **secure transactions**. [web address where no outside person can read your details] [enter all the details necessary to open an account] [set of rules to make sure your account is private] [business exchanges which protect, e.g., your credit card from use by someone else]
The hotel website lets you check **availability** and has all the information you need on its **home page**. [whether they can supply something, e.g. a room for when you want it] [main or first page of a website]
This site has a very good **FAQ** link where you can find answers to the most important questions. [**f**requently **a**sked **q**uestions (pronounced as initials)]
This online bookshop is excellent: you can **browse** and it has a very good **site index**. [look at the list of goods/services offered before buying] [alphabetical list of contents of website]
Most large online stores offer **immediate dispatch** and a **nationwide** service. [goods will be sent at once] [covering the whole country] You can also **track** your order so you know when it will be delivered. [follow]
Do you buy clothes online or do you prefer to buy them **in-store**? [in a real shop]

Exercises

34.1 Fill the gaps with appropriate words or phrases from the opposite page. There may be more than one possible answer.

1 I rang to complain and they put me .... for about 15 minutes. Then I spoke to someone who promised to ring me again, but they never got .... me. I'll have to call them again.
2 They promised immediate .... of the goods I ordered, but I've been waiting over a week now, and nothing has arrived.
3 I've always found the company very .... to complaints and enquiries.
4 I was expecting a .... reply to my email, but I've been waiting two weeks now, and still haven't had an answer.
5 I asked why they hadn't dealt with my order yet and they said there was a .... of orders which had built up over the New Year's holiday.
6 In my opinion, the goods and the service were both pretty .... I would have expected better quality from such a famous firm.
7 Staff in that shop are so .... ; they are genuinely helpful.
8 I rang the .... , but they couldn't solve my problem.
9 I think you need to try a musical instrument before you buy it, so I would recommend you buy your guitar .... rather than online.
10 Most online stores ask you to .... an account before you can buy things.

34.2 Here are some links from internet sites. Match them with the list of functions.

1 Track your order
2 Returns policy
3 FAQ
4 Check availability ✓
5 Browse our categories
6 Gallery
7 At a glance site map
8 Your basket
9 Privacy and cookies

a look through the range before buying
b the most commonly asked questions
c rules for protecting your personal details and whether the site may leave tracking and other software on your computer
d with one look you can see what the website contains
e goods you have chosen but not yet paid for
f see if the goods you want can be supplied
g look at pictures of something or someone
h rules for sending back goods you are not satisfied with
i follow the progress of your order

34.3 Replace the underlined words with words from the opposite page.

1 The plumber we got lacked the necessary skills and he caused a flood in our kitchen.
2 If you have any questions about the service, there's a helpline you can ring.
3 The new TV came with a two-year promise to repair or replace a faulty item.
4 The service has no feeling of human warmth about it; they just treat you as a number.
5 Do they offer a service that covers the whole country?
6 The service they gave me couldn't have been better.
7 It's a website which safely protects all your personal details.
8 It didn't feel like a business exchange that was safe, so I cancelled it and logged off.

34.4

Over to you

To find more vocabulary connected with customer service on the internet, visit the websites of online stores and read their terms and conditions, privacy policy, etc. Note down useful words that you find.

35 Authorities: customs and police

A Entering a country

On arrival in most countries, you have to show your passport or national identity card, possibly a **landing card**[1] and often a **customs declaration form**[2]. You may need a visa and a **vaccination certificate**[3], depending on **entry regulations**[4]. Alternatively, some passengers can use e-passport gates which make use of **facial recognition technology**[5]. Customs officers carry out **spot checks**[6] on people's baggage to find **banned or restricted goods**[7] and to check that you haven't gone over your **allowance**[8]. They may use **sniffer/detector dogs**[9] to **detect**[10] drugs, tobacco, cash or explosives. In most cases, you have to **clear customs**[11] at the **port of entry**[12]. Some passengers may wish to be recognised as **refugees**[13] and **claim asylum**[14]. People who claim asylum in this way are sometimes called **asylum-seekers**.

[1] form with your personal details and date of arrival
[2] form showing how much money and what goods you are carrying
[3] paper proving you have had the necessary health injections
[4] rules about who can enter a country and for how long
[5] computer application that can automatically identify a person from a visual image
[6] checks done as a sample, rather than checking everyone or everything
[7] items that are forbidden or only permitted in specified quantities
[8] amount permitted by law
[9] specially trained dogs who locate specific items using their sense of smell
[10] find something hidden
[11] successfully get through baggage checking
[12] the port or airport where you first enter a country
[13] people who have escaped from their own country for political reasons
[14] /ə'saɪləm/ to request permission to stay in another country to avoid **persecution** back home [cruel treatment because of race, religion or political beliefs]

B Policing the streets

The police **enforce** the law. [make people obey]

A police officer can **stop and search** you if there is a **suspicion** you are carrying drugs, weapons or stolen property. [belief that something may be the case]

The police cannot normally enter your home against your wishes without a **search warrant**. [official permission from a judge or magistrate to search a home]

Many roads have **safety/speed cameras** to ensure people aren't **exceeding the speed limit**. [going faster than the permitted speed]

Traffic wardens issue **parking tickets**, with fines for illegal parking. [people whose job it is to make sure drivers do not leave their cars where it is not allowed]

The police also use **surveillance** /sə'veɪləns/ techniques, including **CCTV** (**closed-circuit television**) to monitor public areas such as town centres and airports. [television system sending signals to a limited number of screens]

C Other types of policing

security forces: often a name for the army and police working together
plain-clothes police: police who do not wear uniform
undercover police: police who are working secretly, using a false identity
drug squad: police specially trained to fight the illegal drug trade
anti-corruption squad: police specially trained to discover and fight **bribery**/**corruption** [dishonest behaviour usually involving using money illegally to gain favours]
cybercrime: computer crime (there are many types, including **cyberterrorism**, **cyberwarfare**, **phishing** = tricking people on the internet to give up personal information, particularly bank account details)

Common mistakes

Police is a plural word: *The police **are** trying to combat crime.*

Exercises

35.1 Rewrite these sentences using phrases and collocations from A opposite instead of the underlined words.

1 You'll have to show a paper proving that you have had injections for infectious diseases when you enter the country.
2 People entering from war-torn countries often ask for permission to stay to avoid political oppression in their own country.
3 You have to take your baggage through customs if you arrive on an international flight at San Francisco airport, even if you are flying on within the USA.
4 You may have to fill in a paper saying how much money you're bringing into the country before going through customs control.
5 At the airport now, they use a system that checks that the photo in the passport is actually of the person using the passport.
6 *Passenger to airline cabin attendant:* Could you give me one of those papers for filling in my passport number and personal details before we arrive, please?
7 At the airport, the security guards had those special dogs that can smell drugs.
8 You'll need a visa; the rules about who can enter the country are very strict.
9 You have to fill in the city where you first entered the country in this box here.

35.2 Match the words to form collocations.

1 detector ☐
2 landing ☐
3 cyber ☐
4 speed ☐
5 search ☐

6 spot ☐
7 closed-circuit ☐
8 drug ☐
9 parking ☐
10 restricted ☐

a squad
b television
c goods
d check
e camera

f ticket
g dogs
h crime
i warrant
j card

35.3 What do we call:

1 a police officer who does not wear uniform?
2 a person whose job it is to check that no one is parked illegally?
3 police officers engaged in combating dishonest use of public funds?
4 the official paper you sometimes find stuck on your windscreen when you park illegally?
5 the type of police officer who might try to infiltrate a group suspected of terrorism?
6 the police and army considered as a single body?

35.4 Choose a word from the box to complete each sentence. Put it in the correct form.

detect	suspicion	exceed	search	enforce	refugee	persecution	allowance

1 An official stopped the man because a sniffer dog had .... something in his suitcase.
2 During the Civil War many .... crossed the border into neighbouring countries.
3 Throughout the centuries many people have suffered .... for their religious beliefs.
4 Ella was fined for .... the speed limit.
5 It is a police officer's duty to do all he or she can to .... the law.
6 When you come into this country, the tobacco .... is 200 cigarettes per person.
7 There are restrictions on the powers the police have to stop and .... people.
8 The police have had .... about the activities at that address for some time now.

35.5

Over to you

If you have internet access, look up information concerning entry and immigration formalities for different countries, which are often available in English, and note any new vocabulary. For example, for regulations about the UK, see www.ukba.homeoffice.gov.uk or for Australia, see www.immi.gov.au.

36 Beliefs

A People and their beliefs

person	definition	related words
adherent (of)	a person who supports a particular idea or party	**adherence**, **to adhere to**
convert (to)	someone who has taken on a new set of beliefs	**conversion**, **to convert**
fanatic	(disapproving) someone with a very strong belief that something is great	**fanaticism**, **fanatical**
radical	someone who believes there should be extreme change, often political	**radicalism**, **to radicalise**
reactionary	(disapproving) someone opposed to change or new ideas	**reaction**, **to react**

B A definition of one belief

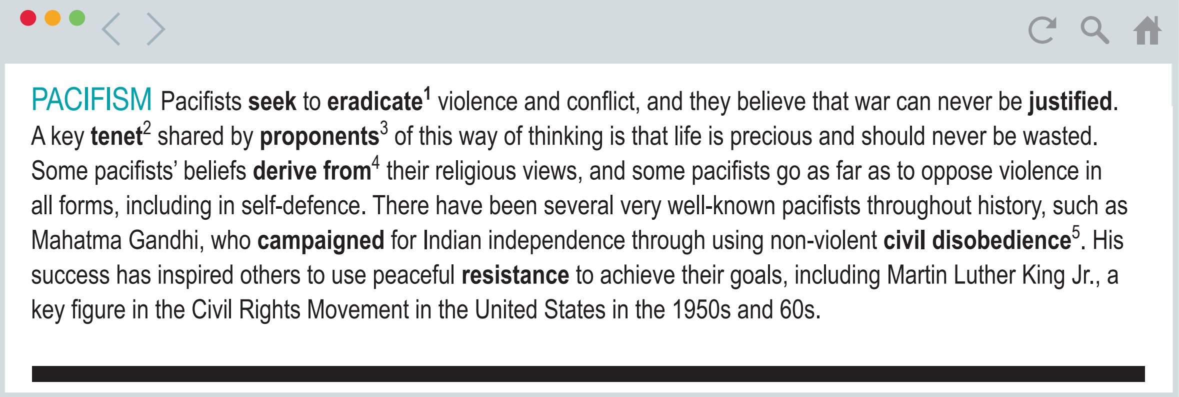

PACIFISM Pacifists **seek** to **eradicate**[1] violence and conflict, and they believe that war can never be **justified**. A key **tenet**[2] shared by **proponents**[3] of this way of thinking is that life is precious and should never be wasted. Some pacifists' beliefs **derive from**[4] their religious views, and some pacifists go as far as to oppose violence in all forms, including in self-defence. There have been several very well-known pacifists throughout history, such as Mahatma Gandhi, who **campaigned** for Indian independence through using non-violent **civil disobedience**[5]. His success has inspired others to use peaceful **resistance** to achieve their goals, including Martin Luther King Jr., a key figure in the Civil Rights Movement in the United States in the 1950s and 60s.

[1] abolish or get rid of
[2] a principle on which a belief is based
[3] person who publicly supports an opinion
[4] have their origins in
[5] when a group of people express disapproval of laws by refusing to obey them

C Other words and expressions relating to believing

Emma's **viewpoint** / **point of view** is that we should just wait and see what happens next. [way of thinking about a situation]

The boy produced a barely **credible** excuse for arriving late. [believable; *opp.* = **incredible**]

I was **incredulous** when she told me she was quitting her job to go to New Zealand. [not wanting or able to believe something]

He's very **gullible** – he believes anything you tell him. [easily tricked into believing things that may not be true]

You should try to be less **subjective** about the situation. [influenced by beliefs or feelings rather than facts; *opp.* = **objective**]

Can't you find a more **plausible** excuse than that? [convincing; *opp.* = **implausible**]

Many scholars **attribute** this anonymous poem **to** Dante. [consider something to be caused or created by]

I **presume** that Meena told you what happened. [believe something to be true although you are not totally certain]

We should **give her the benefit of the doubt**. [accept that someone is telling the truth even though it is not certain]

You should **take** what he says **with a pinch of salt** – he's inclined to exaggerate. [do not totally believe what you are told]

Exercises

36.1 Complete the word table. Do not fill the shaded boxes.

noun – person	noun – abstract	verb	adjective
adherent			
convert			
radical			
			reactionary
fanatic			

36.2 Find words and expressions in the text in B with the following meanings.

1 want to achieve ....
2 have their roots in ....
3 completely get rid of ....
4 supporters ....
5 organised activities to try to achieve something ....
6 principle ....
7 campaign of protest ....

36.3 Choose the correct word in the sentences below.

1 A gullible person believes everything even if it is *plausible* / *implausible*.
2 I don't find his story at all *credible* / *incredulous*.
3 When marking exams, try to give candidates the *advantage* / *benefit* of the doubt.
4 A fanatic is someone with a very *objective* / *subjective* point of view.
5 The law says that you must be *derived* / *presumed* innocent until proven otherwise.
6 It is better to take her promises with a pinch of *salt* / *pepper*.
7 In the essay you must summarise the economic problems of this area and conclude by giving your own *point of view* / *tenet* about what the government should do to solve them.
8 The play has been *presumed* / *attributed* to Shakespeare.

36.4 Choose words from the box to complete the sentences below.

adherents attribute converts eradicate justified objective pinch resistance subjective

1 The charity aims to .... poverty in this region within five years.
2 It has been said that .... to a religion can often be much more active supporters of the religion than people who were born into it.
3 The group felt their protest against the unfair laws was completely ....
4 The criteria for judging the Poem of the Year competition are, inevitably, to some extent ....
5 Many of the self-professed .... of this philosophy have never even read its basic texts.
6 Historians .... the origins of this philosophy to Ancient Greece.
7 A judge must try to remain .... and not let personal values influence his or her decisions.
8 The Government troops offered no .... to the rebel takeover.
9 I take anything said by an election candidate with a .... of salt.

36.5 Over to you

If you have internet access, look up a world view that interests you, e.g. feminism, Marxism, humanism, Buddhism or any -ism that you want to research. Make notes about (a) the origins of the -ism, (b) what its basic beliefs are, and (c) what differences there are between its different branches (if it has them).

37 Festivals in their cultural context

A Describing festivals

Read this short text about a Kenyan cultural festival.

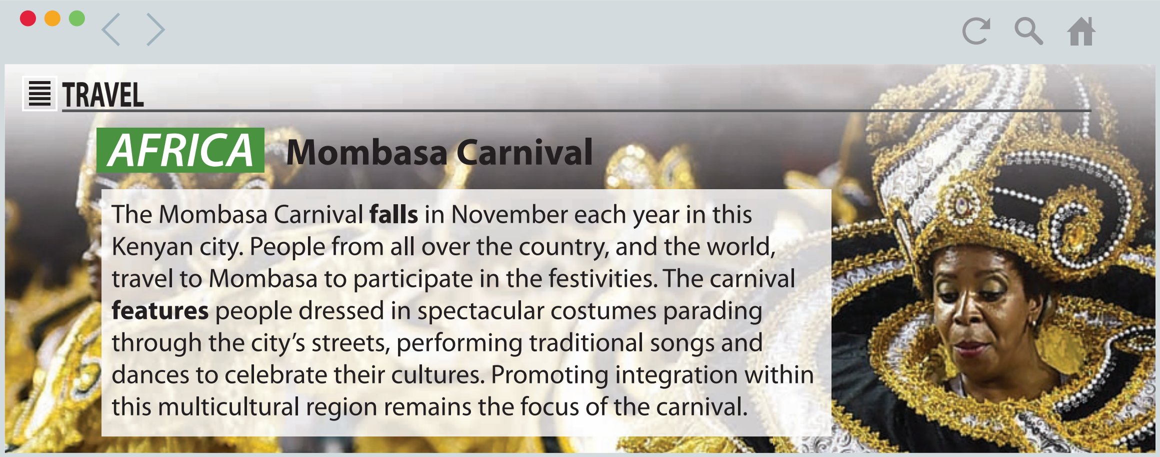

TRAVEL

AFRICA Mombasa Carnival

The Mombasa Carnival **falls** in November each year in this Kenyan city. People from all over the country, and the world, travel to Mombasa to participate in the festivities. The carnival **features** people dressed in spectacular costumes parading through the city's streets, performing traditional songs and dances to celebrate their cultures. Promoting integration within this multicultural region remains the focus of the carnival.

noun	verb	adjective
There are big **celebrations** on New Year's Day.	New Year's Day **is celebrated** in many ways. The festival **celebrates** the New Year.	It was a public holiday and everyone was in a **celebratory** mood.
The **festival** is held in March. [special day(s)/event] The **festivities** go on for days. [enjoyable activities]		There was a **festive** mood in the village during the spring holiday.
The **parade** in the town square was a very colourful **spectacle**.	On the anniversary of the battle, soldiers **paraded** through the streets. *	The parade is always very **spectacular**. *
Everyone in the village attends a big **feast** in the evening [big meal to celebrate something].	During the national holiday, there is a whole week of **feasting** and celebrations.	
Many of the customs have their origin in ancient **ceremonies**.		A **ceremonial** procession goes through the streets of the city.
The festival is a time of **renewal**.	Each year, the festival **renews** the national spirit of the people.	The celebrations at the end of the war brought **renewed** hope to the people.

* There is no verb for *spectacle* and no adjective for *parade*.

B Other words and phrases connected with festivals

A lot of people are very **superstitious**, especially about numbers and colours. [have illogical beliefs about hidden forces in nature]

The festival celebrated the **centenary**/**bi-centenary** of the country's independence. [100th anniversary / 200th anniversary]

The Rio de Janeiro Carnival is always a very **flamboyant** and **raucous** event. [extremely colourful and exaggerated] [very noisy]

The Festival of the Dead is very **sombre** and **atmospheric**. [serious, heavy and sad] [has a special feeling or atmosphere] It can be **traced back to pagan times**. [its origin may be found in] [the times when people believed that nature had special powers]

The annual holiday **commemorates** all those who died in the country's civil war. [respects and remembers officially; *formal*]

Exercises

37.1 **Use words and phrases from A opposite to rewrite the underlined words. Use the word class indicated and make any other necessary changes.**

1 For Christians, Christmas is a celebration of the birth of Jesus Christ. (verb)
2 The festival events included parades, sports and musical gatherings. (noun, plural)
3 There was a feeling of celebration about the whole weekend. (adjective)
4 For people who live in the country, the spring festival renews the fertility of the land. (noun)
5 There was an atmosphere of ceremony as the military bands took part in a parade around the main square. (adjective, verb)
6 People were in a mood for a festival when the harvest was successfully completed and a huge meal was held in the village. (adjective, noun)
7 You should go and see the lantern festival. It's always spectacular. (noun)
8 The festival is always on the first Monday in July. It is in memory of a famous battle. (verb, verb)
9 It was the 100th anniversary of the founding of the university and the 200th anniversary of the city itself. (noun, noun)
10 The gymnastic display involving 300 children was a real spectacle. (adjective)

37.2 **Here is an extract of someone talking about a festival using rather informal language. Write it as a more formal description, using words and expressions from the box instead of the underlined words. Make any other necessary changes.**

parade atmospheric focus associate trace back to raucous pagan symbolise
sombre superstitious flamboyant renewal

Well, it was called the Festival of Flowers, and it was to do with the coming of spring, after the dark, serious winter months. It was a time of everything being new again. Its origin can be seen in the religious tradition of taking flowers to offer them to the gods. Spring flowers were the main thing in the festival, and there was always a big group of people marching through the streets. It was all very lively and extremely colourful and probably rather noisy, and there was a great atmosphere. The flowers meant new life, and people thought they would be guaranteed a good harvest later in the year if they were offered to the gods. Nowadays, most people don't have such funny beliefs about nature, but there are still some festivals that are all about nature's special powers celebrated every year.

37.3 **Over to you**

- Which of these important days are celebrated in your country? What happens on them?

  Mother's Day Independence Day May Day Valentine's Day

- What is the most important day of the year in your country? What does it symbolise or commemorate? What does it feature? What are its origins? What sort of atmosphere does it have?

38 Talking about language

A Specialist terms for talking about language

Syntax: the grammar and word order
Different languages express **modality** in different ways. [meanings such as possibility and necessity] English does it with **modal verbs** like *must*, *could* and *should*.
Phonology: the sound system, i.e. pronunciation and intonation
All languages have **phonemes**, such as /b/ and /v/. [different sounds that distinguish meanings] English has ten **diphthongs**. [sounds made by combining vowels, such as /eɪ/ and /aʊ/]
Lexicon: specialised term for vocabulary
Orthography: specialised term for writing systems and spelling
The English alphabet has 26 **characters**. [letters or symbols] Some writing systems, such as Chinese, are not alphabetic but have **pictograms** or **ideograms**. [characters representing pictures] [characters representing ideas/concepts]
Morphology: how words are formed
In English, there are three **morphemes** in *unthinkable*: *un*, *think* and *able*. [units of meaning]

B Other useful words for talking about language

Many words in English are **polysemous**. [they have a number of different meanings] The meaning will usually be clear from its **context**. [the language or situation around it]
Words are often used in a **metaphorical** way – a way that is not **literal**, e.g. *to see the light*, meaning 'to understand something' rather than literally to see a light.
Language **usage** inevitably changes with time. [the way words are used] Some words become **obsolete** while new words are **coined**. [fall out of use] [of words, created]
Any language has a number of different **registers**. [style of language used in a particular situation, e.g. formal, informal] **Jargon** is used to describe a specific type of language that is used by a particular group of people sharing a job or interest, e.g. **military jargon**, **computer jargon**.

C Using language well or badly

Someone who uses language well can be described as **articulate** [able to express their ideas clearly in words] or **eloquent**. [able to express ideas or opinions clearly, in a way that may influence others] They may express something in a **succinct** way [clearly and using few words], and they may always be able to think of the **mot juste**. [French for 'correct word' – exactly the right word or phrase for a particular situation]
Someone who does not use language well can be described as **inarticulate**. [unable to express their ideas clearly in words] If you are **speechless** or **lost for words**, you are so surprised that you are unable to say anything. If you **put your foot in it**, you say something without thinking carefully and may upset or embarrass someone.

Exercises

38.1 **Rewrite these sentences using more appropriate technical terms from A opposite instead of the underlined words.**

1 The writing system of Burmese is quite difficult for a foreign learner.
2 Japanese uses several different writing systems, with hundreds of letters and symbols.
3 The vocabulary of a language like English is constantly changing.
4 Unlike English, some world languages have very few vowel sounds and no combinations of vowels.
5 This ancient and beautiful alphabet uses characters that symbolise pictures to express meaning.
6 Meanings connected with probability and obligation are expressed in different forms in different languages.

38.2 **Complete the word formation table below. Use a dictionary if necessary. If your dictionary gives pronunciations, mark any differences in stress between the noun form and the adjective form.**

noun	adjective	change in stress?
orthography		
lexicon		
modality		
metaphor		
polysemy		

38.3 **The sentences below are examples of the different types of language in the box. What is each an example of?**

obsolete language   computer jargon   metaphor   polysemy

1 Life is a journey and sometimes your path will be rocky.
2 Marry, thou are roinish, forsooth.
3 It's not fair that boy with the fair hair won all the prizes at the fair.
4 What kind of external storage device do you have access to?

38.4 **Complete the sentences with the words in the box.**

eloquent   foot   inarticulate   mot juste   speechless   succinct   words

1 Sam is so good with words – he can always find the ....
2 I love listening to her – she's such an .... speaker.
3 I couldn't believe it when she said she'd lost all my money – I was completely .... !
4 We don't have much time, so I'll be as .... as possible.
5 I think I put my .... in it when I asked Sara how Tom was. I didn't realise they'd split up!
6 I was completely lost for .... when Adam told me he'd quit his job.
7 I couldn't understand a word of what he was saying – he was completely ....

38.5 **Over to you**

- How is your language written – in letters, pictograms or ideograms?
- Do learners of your language find the syntax difficult? Why?
- Does your language have diphthongs?
- Does your language have modal verbs? If not, how does it express modality?
- Do you know anyone who is very eloquent?
- Have you ever been lost for words? When?

39 History: since the dawn of civilisation

A History – the great and the ordinary

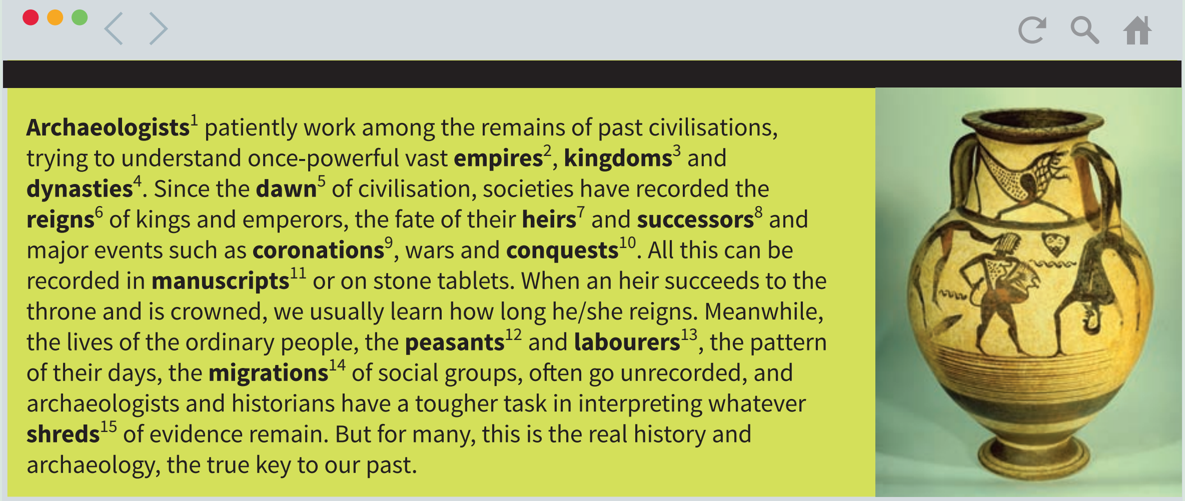

Archaeologists[1] patiently work among the remains of past civilisations, trying to understand once-powerful vast **empires**[2], **kingdoms**[3] and **dynasties**[4]. Since the **dawn**[5] of civilisation, societies have recorded the **reigns**[6] of kings and emperors, the fate of their **heirs**[7] and **successors**[8] and major events such as **coronations**[9], wars and **conquests**[10]. All this can be recorded in **manuscripts**[11] or on stone tablets. When an heir succeeds to the throne and is crowned, we usually learn how long he/she reigns. Meanwhile, the lives of the ordinary people, the **peasants**[12] and **labourers**[13], the pattern of their days, the **migrations**[14] of social groups, often go unrecorded, and archaeologists and historians have a tougher task in interpreting whatever **shreds**[15] of evidence remain. But for many, this is the real history and archaeology, the true key to our past.

[1] person who studies the material evidence of past societies
[2] group of countries ruled by a single person
[3] individual countries ruled by a king or queen
[4] different rulers who are all from the same family, or a period of time that a country is controlled by them
[5] beginning
[6] period that a king, queen or emperor rules
[7] person who is legally entitled to continue the work of someone important who has died or who has the same position as they had
[8] person who takes over from another person
[9] event when a king or queen receives his/her crown
[10] when someone or an army defeats and takes over another country
[11] texts written by hand
[12] person who works on the land and earns little, usually having a low social status
[13] person who does unskilled manual work
[14] moving from one place to another in large numbers
[15] very small amounts

B Historical eras

In ancient Egypt, the **Bronze Age** began about 5,000 years ago. [period when the metals copper and tin began to be used to make weapons, tools, etc.; we also talk of the Stone Age, the Iron Age]
Life in **medieval** times was hard. [of or from the European Middle Ages, i.e. 1000–1500 AD]
I love the great **Renaissance** art of Italy. [period of new growth of interest and activity in the arts especially in Europe in the 14th to 16th centuries]
Magnificent architecture and works of art were created in Central America in the **pre-colonial** era. [period before Europeans arrived in large numbers and took power; *opp*. = **post-colonial**]

C Military history

infantry: soldiers on foot (uncountable)
cavalry: soldiers on horseback (uncountable)
(suit of) armour: metal protective clothing worn by soldiers
chariot: two-wheeled vehicle pulled by a horse and used in ancient times for racing and war
galleon: large sailing ship with three or four masts, used in the 15th to 18th centuries

D People

warlord: a military leader who controls a country or, more often, an area within a country
slave: person legally owned by someone else and who has to work for them (noun = **slavery**)
ruler: leader of a country
explorer: someone who travels to places that no one is thought ever to have visited, in order to find out what is there
merchant: someone who buys and sells things in large amounts, especially by trading with other countries
monarch: neutral term for a king or queen (a country with a king or queen at its head can also be called a **monarchy**)
the nobility: collective term for people of the highest social rank in a society

Exercises

39.1 Which words on the opposite page are these definitions of?

1 The period during which someone is king or queen ....
2 A family that rules during different generations ....
3 Someone who is legally entitled to take power or control when someone dies ....
4 A text written by hand ....
5 The event when a king or queen receives a crown ....
6 Several different countries ruled by one person ....
7 A metaphorical expression meaning 'the beginning' of something ....
8 A small amount ....
9 A historical era when the use of copper and tin to make weapons and implements began ....
10 The period in the history of many countries before European conquerors arrived ....

39.2 Complete the table, using a dictionary if necessary. Do not fill the shaded boxes.

person	noun	verb
	kingdom	▨
emperor		▨
successor		
▨		crown
	conquest	
archaeologist		▨
▨	reign	
	labour	
	migration	
ruler		
monarch		▨

39.3 Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

1 The sailors ☐
2 The emperor drove ☐
3 The infantry ☐
4 The nobility ☐
5 The cavalry ☐
6 The warlord ☐
7 The merchant ☐
8 The explorer ☐

a marched for three days.
b led his army into battle.
c drew a map of the island.
d boarded the galleon.
e traded with the local tribespeople.
f lived in large, expensive houses.
g a chariot with two black horses.
h galloped across the field.

39.4 Here are some of the words from the opposite page used in a metaphorical way. Read the sentences and answer the questions about the underlined phrases.

1 The princess swept into the room like a galleon in full sail. Was the princess (a) small and awkward or (b) large and stately?
2 He doesn't mind criticism and it's often hard to penetrate his armour. Is the person described likely to be (a) thick-skinned or (b) physically strong?
3 There has been a renaissance of interest in the harp. Has interest (a) increased or (b) decreased?
4 No one should be a slave to tradition. Does the writer think people should (a) always follow tradition or (b) not always follow tradition?
5 Mike has a positively medieval attitude towards the role of women in society. Does Mike have (a) a liberal, open-minded attitude or (b) a very old-fashioned, conservative attitude?

40 The haves and the have-nots

A Definitions of poverty

United Nations definition: '**Fundamentally**[1], poverty is a **denial**[2] of choices and opportunities, a **violation**[3] of human **dignity**[4]…'

[1] in a basic and important way [2] not allowing people to have [3] act that spoils or destroys something [4] worth

type and aspect of poverty	definition	comments
absolute poverty	being poor according to a fixed minimum standard; sometimes called the **poverty line**	In 2015, people with less than $1.90 to live on a day were defined as being **below the poverty line**. This sum does, of course, regularly change.
relative poverty	being poor in relation to others around you	This kind of poverty depends on a person's **social context**[1]. It takes into account that there is no **income equality** between countries.
extreme poverty	living below the poverty line	People living in extreme poverty will be lacking in material possessions and money. Another word for extreme poverty is **penury**.
human poverty	being poor in a range of ways, not only financial	This kind of poverty takes into account such social factors as **shelter**[2], **nutrition**[3] (people living in poverty are more likely to be **malnourished**[4]), **literacy**[5] levels (people living in poverty are more likely to be **illiterate**), **sanitation**[6], access to education and healthcare. People lacking these basic aspects of life are said to be **deprived**[7].

[1] situation [2] having a place to live that is protected from the weather [3] food that people take into their body [4] suffering from ill health because of poor food (noun = **malnourishment**/**malnutrition**) [5] ability to read and write [6] systems for taking dirty water and waste from homes to ensure good hygiene [7] noun = **deprivation** [lacking in things considered necessary for a pleasant life]

B Other expressions relating to wealth and poverty

Most of the world's population can be **classed** as poor. [categorised]

Only a small minority of people in the world enjoy **affluence** / are **affluent**. [wealth; wealthy]

The **super-rich** are people who are exceptionally rich.

It's a very poor country – over 60% of the population live **on** or **below the breadline**. [having the level of income of an extremely poor person]

When your income is low, it is hard to **make ends meet**. [have enough money to buy all you need]

Many people left the **poverty-stricken** countryside to go to the city. [affected by poverty]

The charity's main aim is to improve healthcare in **impoverished** areas of the world. [poor, without much money to live on]

Everywhere in the city you see **destitute** people living in shop doorways or under bridges. [without money, food, home or possessions; noun = **destitution**]

When we were first married, we were **living from hand to mouth**, so it's nice to be able to spend a bit more now. [having just enough money to live without suffering]

Ever since I lost my job, **money has been tight**. [there has not been much money]

We'll have to **tighten our belts** now that Mum has lost her job. [spend less than before]

Many of the people in this area are in the lowest **income bracket**. [range of income with upper and lower levels]

Common mistakes

We say *the rich* and *the poor*, meaning rich people and poor people (NOT ~~the riches~~ and ~~the poors~~).

Exercises

40.1 **Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first one.**

1 The number of deprived children is increasing.
The number of children facing .... is increasing.
2 There is much less illiteracy in the world than there used to be.
There are far fewer .... people in the world than there used to be.
3 Our family enjoyed relative affluence at that time.
Our family enjoyed a relatively .... lifestyle at that time.
4 It is wrong to deny people their basic human freedoms.
.... of people's basic human freedoms is wrong.
5 There are more destitute people in the city than before.
The problem of .... in the city is increasing.
6 Poverty could be said to violate human dignity.
Poverty could be said to be a .... of human dignity.

40.2 **Choose one of the words in the box to complete each of the sentences below.**

absolute	impoverished	line	relative	fundamental	shelter	super

1 Some people in a middle income bracket claim that they are living in .... poverty simply because they have fewer material possessions than their neighbours.
2 Millions of people still live below the poverty ....
3 Food and .... are two of the most important human needs.
4 There is a .... difference between not having a lot of money and being destitute.
5 It is not very meaningful to talk in terms of .... poverty when you compare people who live in very different contexts.
6 His family were once quite affluent, but in the last few years they have become increasingly ....
7 The ....-rich control much of the world's wealth.

40.3 **Complete the sentences.**

1 An increasingly large number of families are living on the bread ....
2 Most of the people who live in this street are in a higher income ....
3 It all depends on your social .... whether you feel poor or not because you don't own a car.
4 It can be hard for students to make .... meet.
5 If we all tighten our .... , we should be able to manage all right.
6 I was surprised how poverty-.......................... the villages looked given the richness of the surrounding farmland.

40.4 **Choose the best word to complete each of these sentences.**

1 A person who sleeps in a cardboard box on the street and begs for money can best be described as *impoverished* / *destitute*.
2 Without my husband's income, we were very much living from hand to *mouth* / *foot*.
3 When we were children, money was always *small* / *tight*.
4 Even children with rich parents can be *deprived* / *destitute* in terms of love and affection.
5 An increasing number of people live below the *penury* / *poverty line*.
6 The table shows the proportion of people in each income *section* / *bracket*.
7 Many of the children here are *classed* / *grouped* as living in poverty.
8 The country has great extremes of poverty and *influence* / *affluence*.
9 Children who don't get enough food will suffer ill health as a result of *nutrition* / *malnourishment*.
10 Inadequate *sanitation* / *deprivation* can have serious health consequences.

41 British politics

A Influencing political decisions

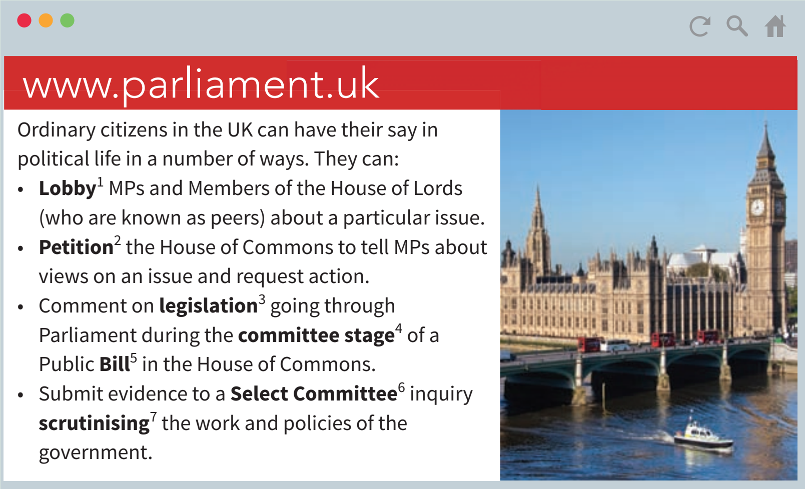

www.parliament.uk

Ordinary citizens in the UK can have their say in political life in a number of ways. They can:

- **Lobby**[1] MPs and Members of the House of Lords (who are known as peers) about a particular issue.
- **Petition**[2] the House of Commons to tell MPs about views on an issue and request action.
- Comment on **legislation**[3] going through Parliament during the **committee stage**[4] of a Public **Bill**[5] in the House of Commons.
- Submit evidence to a **Select Committee**[6] inquiry **scrutinising**[7] the work and policies of the government.

[1] try to influence the opinions of MPs and Lords

[2] formal process involving sending a written appeal to an MP, following a set format, which is then presented to the Commons by the MP

[3] possible future laws

[4] period after a proposed law has been discussed by Parliament when it is looked at in detail by a group of people

[5] proposal for a law currently under discussion

[6] committee that checks and reports on some aspect of government work

[7] looking very closely at

B Lobbying and petitioning

Methods of lobbying vary and can range from sending letters and making presentations to providing **briefing**[1] material to Members and organising **rallies**[2]. Often the result lobbyists are seeking is for the MP or peer to vote a certain way on a specific issue. However, this decision will **ultimately**[3] be **down to**[4] the MP or peer's own judgement and the influence (if any) that existing party policy will have on them.

[1] informational [2] large political meetings or demonstrations [3] in the end [4] the responsibility of

The public can petition the House of Commons to make MPs aware of their opinion on an issue and to request action. All that's needed is that the petition is properly **set out**[1] and has the signature and address of at least one person. A petition can also be created and submitted online, as an e-petition. The text of the petition is published in **Hansard**[2]. There is a procedure for petitions in the Lords, but it is very rarely used. Generally, MPs will **present**[3] all petitions they receive from their **constituents**[4]. MPs present petitions by either giving a short statement in the debating chamber of the House of Commons or by simply placing the petition in the Petition Bag (which hangs behind the **Speaker's**[5] Chair). If a petition gets 100,000 signatures, the government will respond and it will be considered for debate. A copy of the petition is sent to the appropriate government department. Government departments are expected to offer **observations**[6] on all **substantive**[7] petitions.

[1] in the correct format [2] the official record of parliamentary business [3] make something known [4] people who voted for them, people in their **constituency** [political region] [5] MP with responsibility for controlling the way parliamentary business is done [6] comments [7] of significance

C Select Committees

There is a Commons Select Committee for each government department, examining three aspects: spending, **policies**[1] and administration. Some Select Committees have a role that **crosses departmental boundaries**[2], such as the **Environmental Audit**[3] Committee. Other Commons Committees are involved in a range of ongoing investigations, such as **allegations**[4] about the **conduct**[5] of individual MPs. Lords Select Committees do not **shadow**[6] the work of government departments. Their investigations look into specialist subjects, taking advantage of the **wide-ranging**[7] **expertise**[8] of the Lords and the greater amount of time (compared to MPs) available to them to examine issues. Committees in the House of Lords concentrate on six main areas: international relations, the European Union, science and technology, economic affairs, communications and the UK **constitution**[9].

[1] official plans of action [2] deals with different departments [3] closely examines environmental consequences of government decisions [4] complaints that have not been proven [5] behaviour [6] follow closely to see how a job is done [7] covering many subjects, diverse [8] high level of knowledge or skill [9] full set of laws of a country

Exercises

41.1

Are these statements about the texts true or false? Explain why.

1 A lobbied MP has to do what his or her constituents request.
2 MPs make a statement in the Commons about all the petitions they receive.
3 You can read Hansard to find out what has been happening in Parliament.
4 Government departments should comment on all the petitions they receive.
5 The Environmental Audit Select Committee shadows a specific department.
6 Select Committees do not look at how individual MPs behave – that is up to the law courts.
7 Lords are felt to have more time to give to committees than MPs.
8 Lords Select Committees focus on the same key areas as those of the Commons.

41.2

Match up the words to make collocations. Note that not all the nouns are in bold on the opposite page.

1 debating ☐
2 select ☐
3 committee ☐
4 government ☐

5 wide-ranging ☐
6 Speaker's ☐
7 party ☐
8 briefing ☐

a chair
b department
c material
d chamber

e stage
f policy
g expertise
h committee

41.3

Now choose one of the expressions from 41.2 to complete each sentence.

1 MPs discuss proposed legislation in the .... of the House of Commons.
2 Before Question Time in Parliament, Ministers have to read a lot of .... provided by their advisers.
3 She was elected to the House of Lords because of her ....
4 Many journalists gave evidence to a .... investigating the behaviour of the press.
5 I am not quite sure what .... is on renewable energy.
6 The bill has had two readings in the House of Commons and is now going through the .... of procedures.
7 The .... is situated between the two sets of benches in the Commons so that its occupant can more easily control the debates.
8 The Treasury in the UK is the .... which deals with the country's finances.

41.4

Complete these sentences with words from the opposite page.

1 The .... of individual MPs may be investigated if it is thought they have not behaved honestly.
2 There have been a number of .... claiming that the Speaker is not doing his or her job properly.
3 On this particular issues, it is .... to the individual MP how he or she votes.
4 It is the role of the Health Select Committee to .... the work done in the Department of Health and to deal with any relevant issues arising from that.
5 A petition to Parliament has to be .... out in accordance with strict rules.
6 The work of this committee is complex because it .... departmental boundaries.
7 There is a lot of .... in the House of Lords because of the very different professional backgrounds among its members.
8 This committee .... the decisions made by the Department of Transport.

41.5

Over to you

Answer these questions about politics in your own country.

- How easy is it for ordinary citizens to lobby MPs?
- How easy is it for ordinary citizens to petition MPs?
- Does the legislative process have a committee stage?
- Do ordinary citizens play any part in committee decisions in relation to government?

42 International politics

A United Nations

The UN is an international organisation **constituted**[1] in 1945 to make the world a better place for **humanity**[2]. From its **foundation**[3], it has **pursued**[4] these key aims:

- To keep peace throughout the world.
- To **establish**[5] friendly relations between countries.
- To work together to improve people's lives by **conquering**[6] poverty, disease, **illiteracy**[7] and environmental destruction, and to encourage respect for each other's rights and freedoms.
- To be a centre for supporting nations in achieving these goals.

In other words, the UN stresses the importance of **negotiation**[8] when there are disagreements between countries. It is opposed to **injustice**[9] and **upholds**[10] the rights of **minorities**[11] but it will only support military **intervention**[12] if its Security Council agrees that this is **justified**[13].

[1] formed (used about an official organisation) [2] all people [3] time when it was **established** [founded] [4] try to achieve (*pursue* with this meaning collocates with words like *aim*, *goal*, *career*, *strategy*) [5] set up, put in place [6] beating, getting rid of [7] inability to read or write [8] discussions in an attempt to reach an agreement [9] unfairness [10] supports [11] groups of people who differ racially or in some other way from most of the people in the place where they live (*minority* collocates with adjectives like *ethnic*, *religious*, *oppressed*) [12] involvement in a difficult situation in order to improve it [13] caused by a good reason

B Political movements

A political **movement** is a group of people with the same beliefs who work together in the attempt to achieve something. They often make use of a **slogan**, a short phrase that catches people's attention and is easy to remember. The aim of a political movement might be the **liberation** of a minority, perhaps, or the **integration** of one particular social group into the society from which it is, or feels itself to be, excluded. Members of a political movement sometimes go on a **march**, a walk where they can demonstrate their **solidarity** with others sharing the same attitudes and aims.

C International conferences

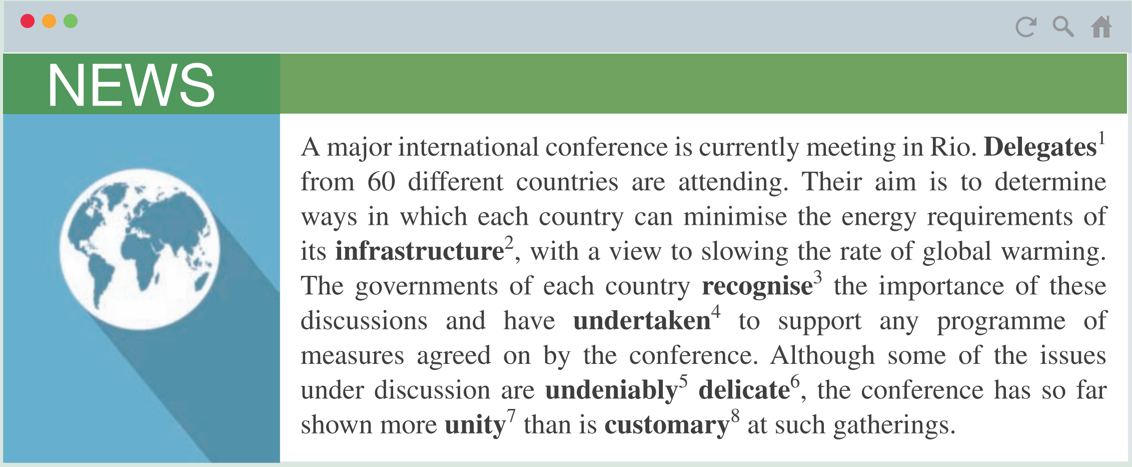

A major international conference is currently meeting in Rio. **Delegates**[1] from 60 different countries are attending. Their aim is to determine ways in which each country can minimise the energy requirements of its **infrastructure**[2], with a view to slowing the rate of global warming. The governments of each country **recognise**[3] the importance of these discussions and have **undertaken**[4] to support any programme of measures agreed on by the conference. Although some of the issues under discussion are **undeniably**[5] **delicate**[6], the conference has so far shown more **unity**[7] than is **customary**[8] at such gatherings.

[1] representatives [2] basic systems and services such as transport [3] accept [4] promise [5] certainly [6] needing to be handled with great skill [7] being together as one [8] usual

Exercises

42.1 Choose a word from the box to complete each sentence.

pursue	humanity	justify	conquer	negotiations	injustice	establish	minorities

1 The organisation's aim is to .... illiteracy throughout the continent.
2 There is still too much .... in the world today.
3 The rights of ethnic .... are sometimes neglected by national governments.
4 The government wants to .... a committee to work on reducing poverty.
5 It is hoped that the current .... will lead to a positive outcome.
6 The best hope for all of .... is that nations should get better at respecting each other.
7 It is impossible to .... the use of force in such a situation.
8 Lesley is determined to .... her goal of becoming a barrister.

42.2 Complete the word formation table. There are two nouns for five of the verbs.

verb	noun
constitute	
	foundation
undertake	
	negotiation
justify	
	conquest
	liberation
	unity
	delegate
recognise	

42.3 Choose the correct word to complete each sentence.

1 Are you planning to go on the protest .... tomorrow?
A slogan B march C unity D movement
2 It's quite a .... subject, so take care how you bring it up.
A customary B deniable C delicate D justified
3 The country's economy can only develop once it has a good ....
A humanity B liberation C solidarity D infrastructure
4 The party .... not to reduce spending on international aid.
A integrated B undertook C conquered D recognised
5 It is now nearly 100 years since the .... of the organisation.
A foundation B negotiation C infrastructure D movement
6 Chris is going to the conference as our ....
A humanity B solidarity C slogan D delegate

42.4 Complete each sentence with a word from the same root as the word in brackets.

1 It is .... true that the project is likely to meet with some opposition. (DENY)
2 Is it .... in your country to take a gift if you visit someone's house? (CUSTOM)
3 It is wrong that there is still so much .... in the world. (JUST)
4 The workers expressed their .... by organising a huge demonstration. (SOLID)
5 Left-wing political .... were particularly powerful in the early 20th century. (MOVE)
6 On the whole this society is very well .... (INTEGRATE)

43 The letter of the law

A Legal verbs

to bend the law/rules: to break the law/rules in a way that is considered not to be very harmful
to contravene a law: to break a law (noun = **contravention**)
to infringe a law/rule: to break a law/rule (noun = **infringement**)
to impeach a president/governor: to make a formal statement saying that a person in public office has committed a serious offence (noun = **impeachment**)
to lodge an appeal: to make an official request that a previous judgement should be changed
to uphold/overturn a verdict: to say that a previous decision in court was correct/incorrect
to pervert the course of justice: to make it difficult for justice to be done (noun = **perversion**)
to quash a conviction: to change a previous official decision that someone was guilty
to set a precedent: to establish a decision which must usually, in English law, be taken into account in future decisions
to award/grant custody to: to give one parent or adult the main responsibility for a child, especially after separation or divorce
to annul a(n) agreement/marriage/law: to declare that it no longer exists and never existed (noun = **annulment**)
to sue someone: to take legal action against someone
to allege: /əˈledʒ/ to say that someone has done something illegal without giving proof (noun = **allegation**)
to **amend** a law: to make changes to a law (noun = **amendment**)

B Crimes

crime	meaning	verb	criminal
discrimination	unfair treatment on grounds of sex, race or nationality	**discriminate (against)**	
embezzlement	stealing money that belongs to an organisation that you work for	**embezzle**	**embezzler**
harassment	putting undue pressure on someone, e.g. for sexual reasons or to get a debt repaid	**harass**	
insider trading/ dealing	illegal buying and selling of shares by someone who has specialist knowledge of a company	**do/practise insider trading/ dealing**	**insider trader/ dealer**
money laundering	moving money obtained illegally so that its origin cannot be traced	**launder money**	**money launderer**
perjury	lying when under oath	**commit perjury**	**perjurer**
stalking	following someone or giving them unwanted or obsessive attention	**stalk**	**stalker**
trespass/ trespassing	go onto someone else's land without permission	**trespass**	**trespasser**

C Words and expressions with *law*

A **law-abiding** person is someone who always obeys the law.
A **law-breaker** is someone who – often and deliberately – does not obey the law.
If you **take the law into your own hands**, you do something illegal to punish someone because you feel the legal system will not punish that person.
If you **lay down the law**, you say with great force what you think should happen.
If someone is **a law unto himself/herself**, he or she behaves in a way which is independent and not the way in which most other people behave.

Exercises

43.1 Choose the correct verbs from A to fill the gaps. Put the verb in the correct form.

1 The governor on the province was .... for wrongful use of state money.
2 The prisoner decided to .... an appeal against the court's decision.
3 The appeal court .... the verdict of the lower court and the prisoner was released.
4 In English law, a previous legal decision usually .... a precedent for future decisions.
5 Judges often .... custody to the mother rather than the father.
6 I'm not asking you to break the rules, just to .... them a little.
7 You .... my legal rights by not allowing me to vote.
8 Witnesses charged with perjury are accused of .... the course of justice.
9 The marriage was .... because the man had never properly divorced his first wife.
10 The Supreme Court .... the murder conviction and the man was freed.

43.2 Which of the crimes in B might each of these people be charged with?

1 A camper who spent a night on a farmer's land without asking permission.
2 A businessman who diverted funds from the account of the company he worked for into his own personal account.
3 An employer who gave a job to a man although he was less suitable for the post than a woman applicant.
4 A witness who gave false evidence in court.
5 A person who kept making inappropriate comments about a colleague's personal appearance.
6 A board member who took advantage of what they knew about the business's plans to make a profit on the stock market.
7 A person who follows someone or calls them every day and buys them gifts even though they are not in a relationship.

43.3 Choose a noun from each of these verbs to complete each sentence.

impeach allege contravene annul harass infringe pervert amend

1 Parliament is currently discussing a number of .... to the current laws on citizenship.
2 Amy took her employer to court for .... in the workplace.
3 Some people consider .... of others' rights as being as serious a crime as theft.
4 By taking on work for a competitor Nathan was in .... of the terms of his contract.
5 The trial was criticised by many as a .... of justice.
6 To suggest that Leah took the money is a very serious ....
7 The circumstances are such that I think the judge may agree to a(n) .... of their marriage.
8 The .... of a president has only taken place a couple of times in US history.

43.4 Choose an expression from C to complete each sentence.

1 You should let the police deal with the situation – it's far too risky to ....
2 Sam started getting into trouble when he got in with a gang of habitual ....
3 You shouldn't start .... on your first day in a new job.
4 Masha will never be able to get Vadim to conform – he's ....
5 Isabelle is far too .... to agree to bring extra cigarettes into the country.

43.5 Over to you

Look at the website www.britishlaw.org.uk to find out more about the law in the UK. Note down at least ten more useful legal words and expressions.

44

War and peace

A

War and violence

War is often seen as **a last resort**[1] when relations between states break down totally and **diplomacy**[2] and such measures as economic **sanctions**[3] have failed. The decision to take military action is rarely made lightly, since even the best-planned military operations, carried out with the benefit of the latest hi-tech **weaponry**[4], inevitably result in **civilian casualties**[5]. Military **intervention**[6] may be carried out with the goal of **regime change**[7], but it is often the leaders of **tyrannical**[8] regimes who are the most difficult to **overthrow**[9]. Even more tragic than wars between states is **civil war**[10], which often begins with civil **unrest**[11] and **clashes**[12] between **rival**[13] **ethnic**[14] religious or political groups, and may **escalate**[15] into **all-out**[16] war and end in the **brutal suppression**[17] of one group by another or, in extreme cases, **ethnic cleansing**[18] and **massacres**[19]. **Conflict resolution**[20] may take years to bring into effect, and **mistrust**[21] and **hatred**[22] between groups within the same country may continue for many years.

[1] something you do when everything else has failed [2] activities concerning the relationships between governments [3] official orders, such as the stopping of trade, taken against a country to make it obey international law [4] weapons in general / of different types [5] people injured or killed who are not members of the military or the police [6] intentionally becoming involved in a difficult situation to improve it or stop it from getting worse [7] changing the government or leader of a country, especially by force [8] using power in a cruel way over people in a country or group [9] remove somebody from power using force [10] war between groups who live in the same country [11] disagreement or fighting between groups [12] fights or arguments [13] who compete against one another [14] national or racial [15] become greater or more serious [16] complete and total [17] violent and cruel ending of the right or freedom to do something [18] organised attempt by one racial or political group to completely remove from a country or area anyone who belongs to another particular racial group, using violence to achieve this [19] the killing of large numbers of people [20] finding a way to end conflict and the negative feelings between groups [21] lack or absence of trust [22] feeling of intense dislike

B

Other words and expressions relating to war and peace

Powerful West African rulers **waged war on** their neighbours in the 19th century. [fought a war against]

Hostilities finally ceased after five years of bloodshed. [acts of war]

The invading army **besieged** the city. [attacked by surrounding it for a period of time (noun = **siege**)]

The patrol was **ambushed** on a remote highway. [attacked unexpectedly from secret positions (noun = **ambush**)]

The two armies signed a **truce** in 2016. [agreement during a war to stop fighting for a time]

A **ceasefire** was declared in 2015. [agreement between two armies or groups to stop fighting]

A **peacekeeping force** entered the country in 2016. [neutral soldiers who keep the peace in a divided society]

International observers monitored the ceasefire. [outside, neutral people or body]

The rebels fought a long **campaign** against the dictatorship. The **rebellion** lasted ten years before the dictator was defeated. [planned group of military activities] [people fighting against their government]

A **suicide bomber** killed 25 people at a military base yesterday. [person who lets off explosives, deliberately killing themselves in the process]

C

Metaphors of warfare

The government is **waging war on** drink-driving.

Paparazzi are **besieging** the star's Hollywood home.

A major advertising **campaign** was planned to launch the new cosmetics range.

Several companies are **battling** to win market supremacy in sales of smartphones.

We have a major **fight on our hands** if we are to save the company from bankruptcy.

A **fleet** of bullet-proof cars followed the President's limousine. [a fleet normally consists of a large number of ships]

Exercises

44.1 Fill the gaps with words from A opposite.

1 When .... and economic .... had failed, the Cabinet voted to take military action.
2 Occasional violence between the two groups eventually .... into all-.......................... civil war.
3 The government forces were accused of carrying out ethnic .... by executing members of the rival tribe.
4 During the war, a .... occurred in a village near the border. Some 150 women and children were shot by enemy troops.
5 The war brought about .... change. The former dictator was .... and forced to flee from the country.
6 The process of conflict .... was successful and the country has now been at peace for ten years.
7 War should always be a last .... when all other avenues have been explored.
8 There were many civilian .... as a result of the bombing raid.
9 There were violent .... between police and demonstrators in the capital city.
10 The armed forces moved a large amount of .... to the battlefront, including tanks, artillery and missile launchers.

44.2 Replace the underlined words using an appropriate form of the word in brackets.

1 The irrational dislike of people of other ethnic groups is one of the root causes of conflict. (HATE)
2 The involvement of the United Nations in the situation helped to restore peace. (INTERVENE)
3 The political groups that opposed one another finally negotiated a peace agreement. (RIVAL)
4 The general was a cruel and violent dictator who ruled for 18 years. (BRUTE)
5 There had been a longstanding feeling of not trusting each other between the two tribes. (TRUST)
6 The fight against the government began in 2010. (REBEL)

44.3 Choose a word from the box to complete the sentences below, using an appropriate form.

ambush observers truce suicide wage siege peacekeeping campaign ceasefire

1 A .... bomber disguised as a police officer killed 15 people in an attack today.
2 The UN sent in a .... force to keep the two sides in the civil war apart.
3 A convoy of lorries was .... by enemy soldiers in a remote valley yesterday.
4 International .... monitored the election and concluded that it had been fair.
5 The government has .... war on the drug cartels for the last ten years.
6 The .... of the city lasted six months before the enemy troops were pushed back.
7 After a year of fighting, the two sides agreed to a .... to enable peace negotiations to start. (*two possible answers*)
8 The army fought a long .... to free the country from the enemy forces.

44.4 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

1 The President was besieged	☐	a advertising campaign to launch the new phone.
2 Our team is battling	☐	b war on child poverty.
3 He had a fight on	☐	c fleet of white limousines.
4 The company planned a major	☐	d by reporters as she stepped out of her car.
5 The government set out to wage	☐	e to reach the semi-finals.
6 The band arrived in a	☐	f his hands to convince everyone he was right.

45 Economy and finance

In this unit we focus particularly on collocations (words that are often used together).

A International aid and development

European countries have, in recent years, turned their attention to supporting real and **sustainable development**[1] in Africa. There are many **encouraging signs** that such projects have **taken root**[2]. In the five years up to 2015, a score of African countries **achieved economic growth** of more than 4% per year. Foreign direct investment also rose. Africa's share in world trade now shows real signs of **recovering from a long decline**. From Ghana in the west to Ethiopia in the east and Mozambique in the south, Africa's economies have consistently grown more rapidly than those of almost any other region of the world. A dozen countries' economies have expanded by more than 6% a year over a period of six or more years. But many millions of people in Africa still live in **deep poverty**[3] and more **determined efforts** are needed to tackle the problem. The European Union is committed to supporting and **allocating**[4] **funds** and **development grants**[5] to those African governments which are **pursuing**[6] **policies** to reduce and **eradicate**[7] **poverty** and **improve access to** healthcare, education and clean water supplies.

[1] development which can continue over a long time [2] started to be accepted [3] *abject poverty* is also a collocation [4] giving to be used for a particular purpose [5] money to help development [6] *following policies* is also a collocation [7] completely get rid of something bad

B Collocations related to the noun *debt*

Countries often find it impossible to **repay debt**; the **debt burden** is too great. **Easing the debt burden** or **cancelling debt** helps **debtor countries**/**nations** free themselves from the problem of **incurring** more and more **debt**. **Alleviating debt** / **Debt relief** for poor countries should be a priority.

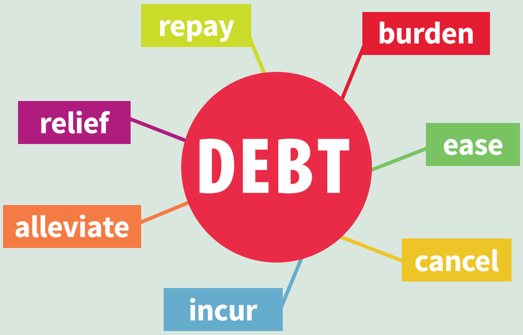

C Trade and cooperation

Free trade agreements often cause disputes between countries, especially when one country thinks the other is engaged in **restrictive practices**[1]. Occasionally, **trade wars** erupt, and **sanctions**[2] or **embargoes**[3] are **imposed** on countries that may not be **lifted** for long periods. On the other hand, countries closely related economically and enjoying good relations have the possibility of entering into **monetary union** and having a **single currency**.

[1] the placing of unfair restrictions, e.g. limiting imports [2] restrictions on what a country may import/export [3] total prohibitions on importing/exporting certain goods

D Economic difficulties

If an economy is badly affected by war, we may refer to it as a **war-torn** economy. Economies in a bad state are often referred to as **ailing** economies. **Devaluation**/**Revaluation** of the currency may be necessary. [reduction/increase in value against other currencies] Economies may **go into recession** and not **come out of** / **emerge from recession** for several years. Indeed, countries may even suffer a **double-dip**[1] recession. A country may suffer from a **slump in prices**[2] for its goods. **Lower taxes** may be introduced to **boost the economy**[3] when it is in recession.

Common mistakes

The verb meaning to reduce the value of a currency is to *devalue* (NOT ~~devaluate~~).

[1] recession which ends and then begins again after a short time [2] serious fall/collapse in prices [3] give the economy a lift

Exercises

45.1 Try to remember the collocations in A opposite. Fill the gaps in these sentences.

1 Development is important, but it should be .... development, not the kind that only lasts a short time.
2 The government is .... a policy of giving aid only where it is used to .... poverty. (*Give two answers for the first one*.)
3 There have been some .... signs that development projects are .... root in many countries.
4 Millions of people still live in .... poverty. (*Give two answers*.)
5 The economy has .... from its decline and is now doing well.
6 The struggle to .... economic growth in developing countries is a constant one.
7 Governments often .... funds for specific overseas development projects.
8 The goal should be to improve .... to better healthcare and education for the poor.

45.2 Rewrite these sentences about debt using more appropriate language from the opposite page to replace the underlined words.

1 Over a period of five years, the country got huge debts which it could not pay back.
2 Countries in debt are completely at the mercy of wealthier nations.
3 The weight of debt is so great in some countries that their economies are collapsing.
4 Wealthier countries could do a lot to make the debt of poor countries less heavy, and indeed, in some cases, could forget the debt altogether. (*Give two answers for the first one*.)
5 Over a period of three years, the country suffered a two-stage recession.
6 The following year, there was a severe collapse in the price of crude oil.
7 While some countries lowered the value of their currencies, one country alone increased the value of its currency due to its strong economy.
8 Urgent measures were needed to improve the economy.

45.3 Answer the questions using vocabulary from the opposite page.

1 What kind of war can break out between countries concerning imports and exports?
2 Which two verbs are used with *sanctions* and *embargoes* to mean (a) 'placing' and (b) 'removing'?
3 What is the name for activities which make free trade difficult or impossible between countries?
4 What kind of agreement is it when two or more countries decide to share a single currency?
5 What do we call sums of money given to poor regions to assist their economic growth?
6 What can we call an economy that is devastated by armed conflict?
7 What adjective beginning with the letter 'a' can be used to describe an economy in a bad state?
8 What noun can follow 'debt' to create a phrase meaning 'removing debt'?

45.4 Now use the answers from 45.3 to rewrite the words in bold.

1 **Sharing the same currency** was agreed between the five countries in 2003.
2 The government introduced a package of measures to rescue the economy, **which was in a bad state**.
3 The two Trade Ministers got together to try to abolish **activities that made trade difficult**.
4 A **major dispute concerning exports and imports** broke out between the two countries in 1999.
5 The economy, **which has been seriously affected by the war**, is slowly recovering now that peace has come.
6 The United Nations **placed** sanctions on the country in 1995 and did not **remove** them until 2008.
7 The region received a **large amount of money to help it grow economically** from the World Bank.
8 **Removing debt** has been crucial for some developing nations.

46

Personal finance: making ends meet

A

Cash, cheques and cards

I **was broke**/**skint** at the end of last month. [had no money left] (broke = informal; skint = very informal)

I'**m rolling in it** this month; I got a payment of £3,000 for some work I did. [have a lot of money; *informal*]

It's sometimes difficult **to make ends meet** with three children and only one parent working. [to survive financially]

Things are a bit tight at the moment. [my finances are not good; *informal*]

I was **strapped for cash** and had to borrow money from my parents. [needed cash and had very little; *informal*]

She gave me a cheque for what she owed me but it **bounced**. [the bank refused to pay it]

Who shall I **make** this cheque **out to** / **payable to**? [What name shall I put on it?] (payable to = slightly more formal)

The easiest way to pay your household bills is by **direct debit** or by **electronic transfer**. [a regular automatic payment, e.g. every month] [movement of money online between two bank accounts]

Shall we **put**/**stick** this meal **on** my credit card? Then we can forget it. (*informal*)

Could you **charge** it **to** my credit card, please? (*formal*)

The **APR** for this credit card is 23%, which is 2% lower than my other card. [**a**nnual **p**ercentage **r**ate of interest]

My card **expires in** 05/19. The **expiry date** is 05/19. [is not valid after]

Credit card fraud has increased in recent years. [illegal use of someone's card or account]

A: Is this a credit card or a **debit card**? [card where the money is taken directly from your bank account]

B: Actually, it's a **store card**. [credit card issued by a store/shop for that store]

I went to **withdraw** some money / **get** some money **out** but I forgot my **PIN** and the **ATM** swallowed my card after three wrong attempts. [take money from my account; get money out = informal] [**p**ersonal **i**dentification **n**umber] [**a**utomated **t**eller **m**achine, often just called a 'cash machine' or 'cashpoint']

A lot of people don't like using **contactless cards** because they think they are more vulnerable to fraud. They prefer to use their phones to make **contactless payments**.

B

Savings, pensions, etc.

Victims of last year's rail crash will receive **lump sum**[1] compensation payments, following a High Court decision today.

A **golden handshake**[2] of ten million pounds was paid to the boss of one of Britain's biggest companies today. This was in addition to an annual **bonus** of two million pounds.

People with well-managed **share portfolios**[3] have done better on the **stock market**[4] than individuals who buy **stocks and shares**[5] privately.

The thieves stole Mr and Mrs Bateson's **life savings**[6], which they kept under their bed in a metal box.

Johan Carslow left only a very small sum to his family in his **will**[7]. It was hardly enough to **cover**[8] the cost of his funeral.

Ms Rafstedt had **borrowed**[9] heavily to finance the building of a new house and found herself deeply in debt, which led her to commit the robbery.

[1] single, large payment

[2] large payment to someone on leaving a job

[3] combination of investments of different kinds

[4] organisation which controls the buying or selling of parts of the ownership of companies

[5] parts of the ownership of companies which people buy as investments in the hope of making a profit

[6] money saved over many years

[7] official statement of what a person has decided should be done with their money and property after their death

[8] be enough money to pay for it

[9] borrow money, e.g. from a bank (used without an object)

Exercises

46.1 Complete these sentences using words from the opposite page.

1 This is a credit card. If you want one that takes the money directly from your bank account, then you need a ....
2 She never used her card on 9 April, but someone did and bought hundreds of pounds' worth of goods. It was a case of ....
3 I haven't got enough cash to pay for this meal; shall I just .... on my card? (*Give two answers*.)
4 I pay my rent by .... every month, so I don't have to do anything.
5 When I ran out of money in Thailand, my parents made an .... from their bank account to mine.
6 I'm sorry, I can't lend you anything at all. I'm absolutely .... (*Give two answers*.)
7 I couldn't pay for it last month as I was a bit .... for cash.
8 I have to be very careful how I spend my money because things are a bit .... right now.
9 You can now use your phone to make .... payments on the bus and underground system in the city.

46.2 Correct the mistakes in these sentences using vocabulary from the opposite page.

1 She got a huge golden hand when she left the company.
2 My old aunt Jessie is rich in it. Every time I go to see her she gives me £100.
3 My father got a bump sum when he retired, so he bought a weekend cottage.
4 She put her living savings into an online company and lost everything when it collapsed.
5 The bank tried to persuade me to put my money into a share folio, with stocks and shares in different companies.
6 If you need a very large sum of money, it's not a good idea to lend from friends or neighbours.

46.3 Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

1 Students often find it difficult to make ☐ a in her will.
2 She invested a lot of money on the ☐ b PIN, as that's when I was born.
3 If you need cash, there's a ☐ c to cover the cost of the holiday.
4 I use 1-9-8-7 as my ☐ d ends meet.
5 She left a million euros ☐ e cashpoint in the supermarket.
6 The money was not enough ☐ f stock market and lost it all.

46.4 Over to you

- Look in your wallet or purse. What different types of card do you have?
- Give the date on which one of your cards expires.
- Approximately what is the current APR on your credit card?
- What can you do to prevent credit card fraud?

47 The media: in print

A Typical sections found in newspapers and magazines

One thing I always read in the paper is the **obituaries**[1] page; it's so interesting to read about other people's lives. I also read the **editorial**[2] (or **leader**); it helps me form my opinion on things. Although national papers **cover**[3] all the important news, I find that if you just want to sell your car or something, the **classified ads**[4] (or **classifieds**) in a local paper is the best place. I love the Sunday papers, especially the **supplements**[5] with articles on travel, food, fashion and so on. Last week there was a fascinating **feature**[6] on new technology in one of them. My daughter prefers magazines, especially the **agony columns**[7]. I just can't imagine writing to an **agony aunt**[8]. It amazes me how people are prepared to discuss their intimate problems publicly, but I know this sort of article really increases a publication's **circulation**[9].

[1] descriptions of the lives of people who have just died
[2] an article giving the newspaper editor's opinion
[3] deal with (noun = **coverage**)
[4] pages of advertisements in different categories
[5] separate magazines included with the newspaper
[6] an article or set of articles devoted to a particular topic
[7] sections in a paper or magazine that deal with readers' private emotional problems
[8] person, typically a woman, who answers letters in the agony column
[9] number of copies sold by a newspaper or magazine

B Some types of printed material

name	description/definition	example sentence
journal	a magazine containing articles about a particular academic subject	Part of John's doctoral research was published in an international chemistry **journal**.
	a book where you write about what happened to you each day	I kept a **journal** while I was working in Zambia.
newsletter	a regular report with information for people belonging to a particular group	Laura is in charge of producing a monthly **newsletter** for her tennis club.
pamphlet	small book with a soft cover, dealing with a specific topic, often political	The Conservative Party published a **pamphlet** on the future of private education.
press release	official written statement with information for the public	The company is going to issue a **press release** about its takeover plans later today.
leaflet	single sheet or folded sheets of paper giving information about something	I picked up a **leaflet** about the museum when I was in town.
brochure	small, thin book like a magazine, which gives information, often about travel, or a company, etc.	Do you have any **brochures** about Caribbean holidays?
prospectus	small, thin book like a magazine, which gives information about a school, college or university, or a company	Before you choose a university, you should send away for some **prospectuses**.
flyer	single sheet giving information about some event, special offer, etc., often given out in the street	I was given a **flyer** about a new nightclub which is opening next month.
booklet	small thin book with a soft cover, often giving information about something	The tourist office has a free **booklet** of local walks.
manual	book of detailed instructions about how to use something	This computer **manual** is impossible to understand!

Exercises

47.1 Without looking at A opposite, test your memory for words that mean:

1 the small advertisements in different categories found in newspapers ....
2 a person you write to at a magazine to discuss intimate emotional problems ....
3 the section of a newspaper which pays respect to people who have just died ....
4 an article in a newspaper which gives the editor's opinion ....
5 a separate magazine that comes free with a newspaper ....
6 an article or set of articles devoted to a special theme ....
7 the number of people buying a magazine ....
8 the way a newspaper deals with a particular subject ....

47.2 Fill the gaps in these sentences with appropriate words from B opposite.

1 I've decided to do my own car maintenance, so I've bought the .... for my particular model.
2 Someone was giving out .... in the town centre today about a festival that's going to take place on Saturday.
3 I love looking through holiday .... and dreaming about flying off to exotic places.
4 I never read political .... ; they're so boring.
5 I wish I'd kept a .... when I first started teaching.
6 The Central Bank has issued a .... announcing some changes in personnel.
7 I've read the .... and I like that university; I think I'll apply.
8 My son's school publishes a termly .... for parents, which reports on the previous term and tells us about upcoming events.

47.3 Sort this group of vocabulary items into those connected with *books* and those with *magazines*. Use a dictionary if necessary.

spine blurb subscription foreword issue index edition quarterly

47.4 From the context, guess the most likely meaning of the expressions in bold.

1 There's a new autobiography of the footballer Troy Sutton, but it was written by a **ghost writer**.
   A someone who didn't have Sutton's permission
   B someone who wrote it on his behalf
   C Sutton wrote it but he used a different name
2 It makes sense to use **desktop publishing** for any sports club's newsletter.
   A published by a school or college
   B published only on the internet
   C published using a home computer to design it
3 This book is a **facsimile** of an original edition published in 1693.
   A an exact reproduction in every detail
   B a modernised edition
   C a copy made on a fax machine or photocopier

47.5 Here are some expressions in bold not on the opposite page, which refer to how different types of printed material present their information. Match the sentences with the type of printed material. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 It **lists** entry requirements. ☐
2 It **exposes** serious problems in the industry. ☐
3 It **draws attention to** the fundamental issues. ☐
4 It **tells you all you need to know about** main sights. ☐
5 It's **packed with** useful tips. ☐
6 It contains a lot of **small print**. ☐

a a political pamphlet on poverty
b a guarantee leaflet with a new camera
c a university prospectus
d a newspaper article
e a tourist brochure
f a booklet about buying a house

48

The media: internet and email

A

The pros and cons of internet use

Here are some possible advantages (pros) and disadvantages (cons) of the internet.

pros
email, **instant messaging**[1], **chat rooms**[2], **newsgroups**[3], **social networking sites**[4], **webinars**[5]
e-commerce[6] (e.g. internet banking, travel booking), **e-books**, **e-learning**
accessing vast amounts of useful information, fun of just **browsing**[7] and **surfing the web**[8]
ability to transfer **graphic images**[9] and sound files
ability to send files as **attachments**[10], usefulness of **file-sharing**[11]
gaming – you can play video games with anyone in the world

[1] a kind of email where both people are online at the same time

[2] an online conversation between a group of people on topics chosen by them, where you can enter or leave the 'room' at any time

[3] a website where people with shared interests can get news and information

[4] websites that enable you to connect with other people, make new friends, exchange photographs, keep up with people's personal news, etc.

[5] online seminars

[6] all kinds of business done on the internet

[7] looking at different websites, with no particular goal

[8] moving from one website or web page to another, usually looking for something

[9] technical term for pictures, icons, diagrams, etc.

[10] files you send with email messages

[11] the practice of sharing computer data or space on a network

cons
ISP[12] charges can be high for heavy users, people you've never met may get your **contact details**, your account may be **hacked**[13]
download[14] and **upload**[15] times can be slow, e-books don't feel the same as real books, e-learners may miss a 'live' teacher
spam[16] and **junk mail**[17] can be annoying
can become **addictive**[18]
cookies[19] track your activities on the web
many sites contain **offensive material**[20], **parental control**[21] may be necessary for children

[12] (pronounced I-S-P) **I**nternet **S**ervice **P**rovider: a company that offers users access to the internet and services such as news, email, shopping sites, etc., usually for a monthly fee

[13] someone may access it illegally

[14] bringing files to your computer from the internet

[15] sending files from your computer to the internet or to another internet user

[16] unwanted advertisements and other material sent to you by email from companies

[17] another term for spam

[18] something you cannot stop doing, which has become out of your control

[19] pieces of software that are sent from the internet to your computer, which can follow and record what you do, which websites you visit, etc.

[20] material such as pornography, or extreme political views, or material that encourages hate and violence against people

[21] ability of parents to control which websites their children can visit

B

Email and internet communications

I've **bookmarked** the CNN home page, as I use it regularly to get the latest news. [put it in a list of websites I can access immediately]

If you **subscribe to** newsgroups, you often get hundreds of messages. [become a member of]

Some ISPs allow you to **screen out** / **filter out** unwanted mail. [prevent from reaching you]

Our **server** at work was **down** yesterday, so I didn't get your message till today. [central computer that distributes email and other services to a group of users] [not working]

Do you have good **anti-virus software**? It's worth updating it frequently. [protection against computer viruses]

She must have changed her email address – the email I sent her **bounced**. [came back to me]

She often **posts** ridiculous details about her life on social networking sites. [adds them]

See also Unit 56.

Exercises

48.1 **Match the words in the box with the explanations.**

attachment cookie spam chat room ISP webinar

1 website where people with common interests can email each other online
2 a sort of class held live on the web
3 company that gives you access to the internet and offers news pages, shopping, etc.
4 program sent to your computer from the internet, used to follow your activities
5 file sent at the same time as an email message
6 unwanted material (e.g. advertisements) sent to you via the internet

48.2 **Some of these pairs of opposites exist in the language of internet/computer communications, others do not. Tick the box for 'exists' or 'doesn't exist'. Use a search engine to find the answer on the web if you're not sure.**

word	opposite	exists	doesn't exist
delete	undelete		
download	upload		
update	downdate		
inbox	outbox		
online	offline		
install	uninstall		

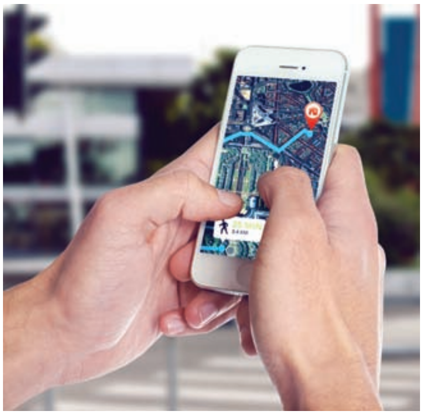

48.3 **Use the correct words from the table above to fill the gaps in these sentences. You are given a paraphrase of the meaning in brackets.**

1 I sent a photo of my house by email to a friend in Canada, but it took ages to .... (transfer from here to there) and I spent nearly five minutes .... (connected to the internet) just waiting for it to go.
2 I've had your message in my .... (a place where unread emails are stored) for two days, but haven't had time to read it yet.
3 I had a lot of trouble trying to .... (add to the programs already on my computer) that new software I bought.
4 How do I .... (restore something accidentally erased) on this computer?
5 I edit my pictures .... (while disconnected from the internet) and then connect to send them.
6 This is an old version of the software. You can .... (get a new version) it online for free.

48.4 **In your own words, say what the words in bold mean in these sentences.**

1 A new law has given **e-signatures** the same legal status as handwritten ones.
2 **E-learning** will become more and more common as an alternative to traditional learning.
3 We have **e-enabled** everything you need to study on the internet.
4 **E-books** are selling faster than traditional books.
5 The **dotcom** economy has attracted hundreds of new businesses hoping to make a fortune.
6 With this smartphone, you'll never need a **tablet** or a laptop!
7 **Parental controls** provided by ISPs are vital these days.
8 I send about 40 texts per day. It's very **addictive**.

49 Advertising

A Promoting quality

Advertisers like language that suggests their product is of *especially high quality*.
Check out our latest smartphone – you'll love its **innovative** features. [original and interesting]
The design of our beds is **unsurpassed**. [the best there is]
Our dishwashers **leave other** dishwashers **standing**. [are much better than other dishwashers]
Sign up for exam courses that **put**/**leave** other courses **in the shade**. [make other courses seem insignificant]

B Promoting value for money

Advertisers like language that suggests things give you *good value for money*.
Rock-bottom prices in our sale! [extremely low]
Prices **slashed**! [dramatically reduced]
Bargains galore! [a huge number of products on sale at ridiculously low prices]
Order now and get a 10% **discount**. [reduction in the price]

C Promoting luxury and comfort

Advertisers like language that suggests *luxury and comfort*.
Pamper yourself with a full-body massage. [treat yourself to something luxurious]
Indulge yourself with our smooth, rich, perfectly blended coffee. [let yourself do or have something that you enjoy but which may be bad for you]
Enjoy a **sumptuous** meal in **opulent** surroundings. [both adjectives mean rich and special: sumptuous collocates most strongly with words relating to food and furnishings, and opulent with words relating to lifestyle]
Live **in the lap of luxury** for two weeks. [in a very luxurious way]

D Promoting scientific backing

Advertisers like language that suggests *scientific backing* for their product.
This **ergonomically designed** reading lamp provides the perfect light. [designed by studying people and their working or living conditions, especially in order to improve effectiveness]
Our health drink is medically **proven** to boost energy levels. [shown by research]
All our computers are **state-of-the-art**. [use the very latest technology]

E Promoting attractiveness

Advertisers like language that suggests their products *make us more attractive*.
Ties that will make you **stand out in the crowd**. [be noticed]
In our new styles, you're **guaranteed to turn heads**. [be noticed]
Our new lipsticks are **tantalisingly** appealing. [temptingly]
Use our range of hair and skin products for **glossy** hair and **radiant** skin. [both adjectives mean attractive and healthy-looking]

F Common ways of advertising

Magazine and newspaper advertisements/adverts; classified ads; TV and radio commercials; posters; **billboards**[1]; **flyers**[2]; **trailers**[3]; sports sponsorship; banners; **sky-writing**[4]; **sandwich boards**[5]; brochures; carrier bags; **logos** on clothing and other products; **pop-ups**[6] on websites. In addition, personalities often use TV interviews to **plug**[7] a new book or film.

[1] very large boards
[2] sheets of printed information
[3] brief excerpts from a film, TV or radio programme
[4] words written in the sky using smoke from a plane
[5] advertising posters hung at the back and front of a person, who then walks around a busy area
[6] advertisements that appear on your screen suddenly
[7] advertise

Exercises

49.1 Complete each of these sentences with one missing word from the opposite page.

1 Enjoy a weekend in the .... of luxury.
2 Don't just follow the herd – take the chance to stand out in the ....
3 Don't miss the ....-bottom prices in our special May Day sale.
4 For the best in state-of-.......................... laptops and tablets, visit our website.
5 Why not .... yourself this Christmas with our new foam bath?
6 Take a look at our .... new fabric designs.
7 Our cosmetics .... all others in the shade.
8 You'll find bargains .... in our new discount superstore.
9 Why not .... yourself with our delectable chocolate desserts?
10 We're .... our prices this week for one week only! Huge reductions!

49.2 Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

1 The armchair is ergonomically ☐ a to boost the immune system.
2 She was distributing ☐ b for the new James Bond film?
3 He was wearing a sandwich ☐ c pop-up ads.
4 There was a huge billboard ☐ d designed to ease back pain and provide comfort.
5 It contains a herb proven ☐ e her new book.
6 Did you see that trailer ☐ f advertising a new soft drink.
7 My software is good at blocking ☐ g board advertising a clothing store.
8 She went on TV to plug ☐ h flyers for a charity concert.

49.3 Here are some phrases typical of advertising language. Which of the categories A to E opposite do they fit into? Some of them may fit into more than one category.

1 colossal discounts
2 fit for a king
3 tantalisingly elegant
4 go on – spoil yourself
5 developed by a team of international experts
6 we outshine the best of the rest
7 glossy hair and a radiant, youthful look
8 outstanding value

49.4 Look at F opposite. What are these examples of?

1
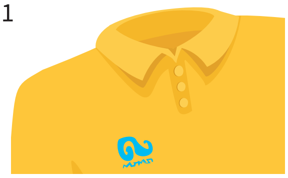

2
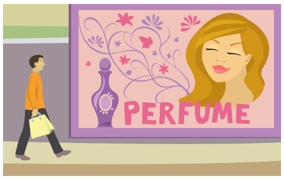

3
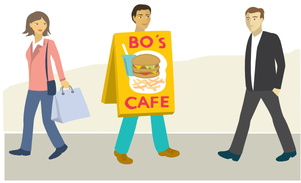

4
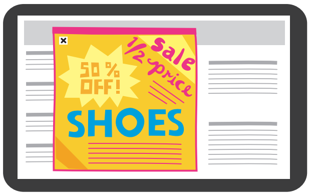

5
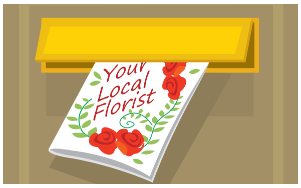

6
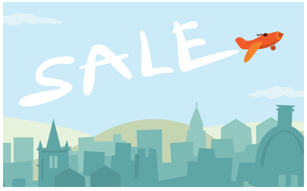

49.5 Over to you

For more examples of language used in advertising, visit the websites of companies, restaurants, etc. and see how they describe their products. Match the language to the categories in A to E opposite.

50 The news: gathering and delivering

A Gathering the news

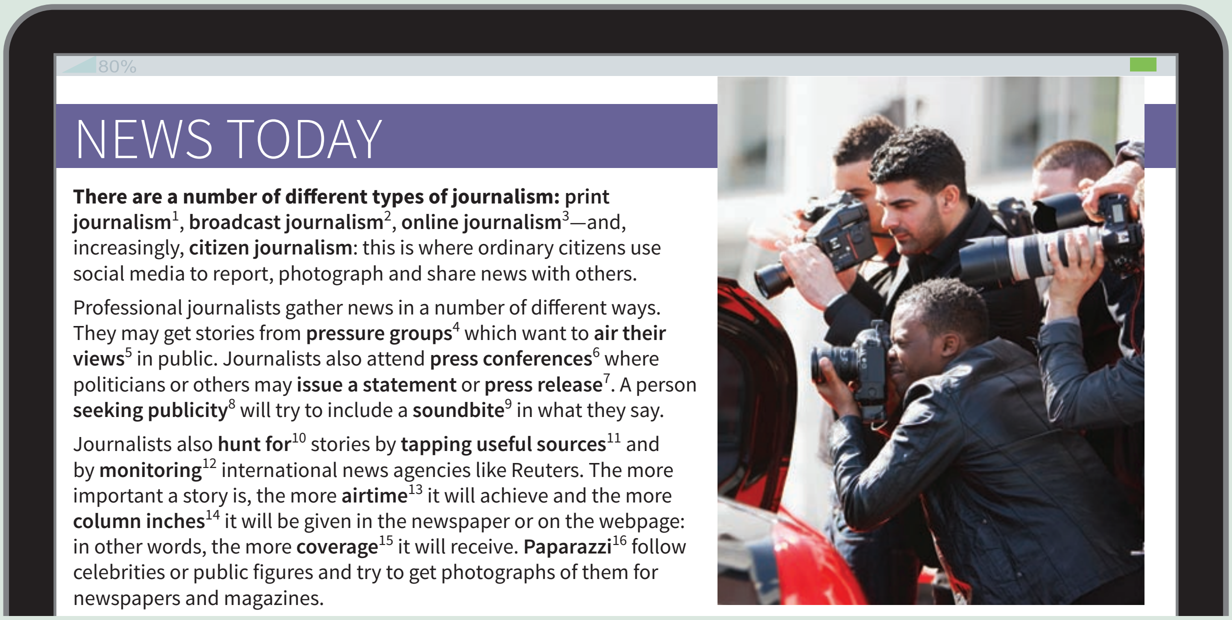

NEWS TODAY

There are a number of different types of journalism: print journalism[1], **broadcast journalism**[2], **online journalism**[3]—and, increasingly, **citizen journalism**: this is where ordinary citizens use social media to report, photograph and share news with others.

Professional journalists gather news in a number of different ways. They may get stories from **pressure groups**[4] which want to **air their views**[5] in public. Journalists also attend **press conferences**[6] where politicians or others may **issue a statement** or **press release**[7]. A person **seeking publicity**[8] will try to include a **soundbite**[9] in what they say.

Journalists also **hunt for**[10] stories by **tapping useful sources**[11] and by **monitoring**[12] international news agencies like Reuters. The more important a story is, the more **airtime**[13] it will achieve and the more **column inches**[14] it will be given in the newspaper or on the webpage: in other words, the more **coverage**[15] it will receive. **Paparazzi**[16] follow celebrities or public figures and try to get photographs of them for newspapers and magazines.

[1] newspapers and magazines
[2] radio and TV
[3] news websites
[4] people trying to influence what other people think about a particular issue
[5] express their opinions
[6] meetings to give information to and answer questions from the press
[7] give a formal announcement to the press
[8] wanting to reach a wider audience
[9] short memorable sentence or phrase that will be repeated in news bulletins and articles
[10] look for
[11] making use of people or organisations which regularly provide news
[12] regularly checking
[13] minutes given to it on radio or TV
[14] space
[15] media attention
[16] an informal and sometimes disapproving word for press photographers

B Delivering the news

A **rag** is an informal word for a newspaper and it suggests that it is not of very high quality. The **gutter press** is a disapproving term used about the kind of newspapers and magazines that are more interested in crime and sex than serious news.

Journalists produce **copy**, which has to be ready for a **deadline**. With printed newspapers, when everything is ready, the newspaper **goes to press**.

Previous issues of a paper are known as **back copies**. These are usually accessible in an online **archive**.

A story that is only to be found in one newspaper is an **exclusive** or **scoop**. All newspapers or TV news channels hope to **run a story** that no one else has discovered. A major story can be said to **hit the headlines** on the day it is published. At that time, the story **breaks** or becomes public knowledge.

A newspaper may be taken to court for **libel** or **defamation of character** if it publishes an untrue story that, for example, **wrongly** accuses someone of something.

Journalists of different political persuasions will **put their own gloss**/**spin on** a story. [present it in their own way]

Some journalists gather stories by **muck-raking**. [collecting scandal]

Generally, newspapers like to make stories sound more dramatic by using words like **heroic** and **triumph**, even for some **occurrence** that is quite ordinary. [happening, event]

Language help

Media is a plural noun and should be used with a plural verb, e.g. ***The media are** blamed for a number of social problems*. However, some people treat it as if it were a singular word, e.g. ***Social media has** had a huge impact on our lives*. Media is often used as an adjective in phrases like **media reports/coverage/attention/interest/hype**.

Exercises

50.1 Match the two parts of the collocations from the opposite page.

1 air	☐	a groups
2 issue	☐	b conference
3 muck	☐	c bite
4 press	☐	d journalism
5 pressure	☐	e raking
6 citizen	☐	f sources
7 sound	☐	g a statement
8 tap	☐	h your views

50.2 Fill the gaps with words from the opposite page.

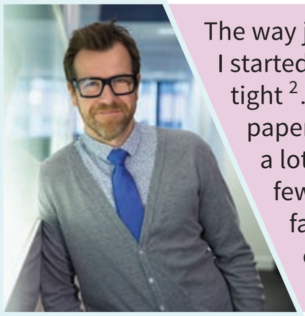

The way journalists work has changed a lot over the last twenty years. When I started out as a junior reporter, we had to produce all our [1]................ to very tight [2]................, because we had to make sure it was all in place before the paper [3]................ to press, ready to be in the shops the next morning. Now a lot of what we do is online, which means we can publish a story only a few minutes after it [4]................ It's much easier to find old articles to check facts, too, because most newspapers have an online [5]................ that you can access. People expect a lot more photos these days, though, which is why we rely on the [6]................ so much.

50.3 Answer these questions about the words and expressions in B opposite.

1 Would you write to a chief editor asking for a job on his or her 'rag'? Why / Why not?
2 What do you think about newspapers if you refer to them as the gutter press?
3 What is it very important for journalists not to miss?
4 What two words might describe the kind of story that a journalist dreams of getting?
5 What two expressions refer to the moment of publication of a big story?
6 Which two crimes are mentioned in B and what do they consist of?

50.4 Rewrite these sentences so that they mean the same thing, using the word in brackets.

1 Every news report inevitably gives its own particular view of events. (SPIN)
2 I have to find some articles from some previous editions of *The Times*. (BACK)
3 The TV news yesterday broadcast something about my favourite singer. (RAN)
4 The floods took up more space in the papers than any other story this week. (COLUMN)
5 Politicians are always ready and willing to give their opinions to the press. (AIR)
6 The story about the scandal surrounding her uncle broke on her wedding day. (HIT)
7 Any newspaper does all it can to prevent being sued for libel. (CHARACTER)
8 Muck-raking is a characteristic activity of an inferior kind of newspaper. (PRESS)

50.5 Choose the best word to complete each sentence.

1 The President will be holding a press *release* / *conference* this afternoon.
2 The story *broke* / *hit* last night when it was the first item on the TV news.
3 Politicians are usually not slow to seek *coverage* / *publicity*.
4 The story has had a lot of *print* / *media* attention.
5 The story received a lot of *airtime* / *soundbite* on the radio.
6 *Social* / *Print* media have encouraged the development of citizen journalism.
7 Ricky deserves to be called a *hero* / *rag* – he acted with great courage.
8 Unfortunately, muggings are an everyday *occurrence* / *triumph* in this part of town.

51 Healthcare

A Healthcare professionals

Many professionals are trained to help people stay healthy and to treat health problems. **Primary care** is provided by the doctors (also known as **physicians**) or nurses who the patient goes to first when they have a problem. This may happen at the doctor's surgery or, sometimes, during a **home visit**. A **locum** is a doctor who does the job of another doctor who is ill or on holiday. Most medical care, whether it is for an **acute condition**[1] or a **chronic** condition, is provided through the primary care system. **Secondary care** is provided by specialists in special clinics or hospitals. Patients are **referred to** a specialist by their doctor. These may specialise, for example, in a particular **organ**[2] or a specific age group. Specialists (what they specialise in is in brackets) include, among many others: **ophthalmologists** (eyes), **cardiologists** (heart), **psychiatrists** (the mind), **dermatologists** (skin), **gynaecologists** (women's reproductive systems), **obstetricians** (pregnancy and childbirth), **paediatricians** (children), and **anaesthetists** (**anaesthesia** or stopping people from feeling pain during surgery). There are also healthcare workers who focus on what is sometimes referred to as **alternative medicine** or **complementary medicine**[3], including: **acupuncturists**[4], **chiropractors**[5], **homeopathic doctors**[6] and **aromatherapists**[7].

[1] one that is severe and sudden in onset
[2] part of the body, e.g. stomach, liver
[3] approaches that differ from conventional western approaches
[4] /'ækjʊpʌŋktʃərɪsts/ people who treat patients by using needles at special points around the skin
[5] /'kaɪrəʊpræktəz/ people who treat patients by pressing joints in places where two joints are connected, e.g. the **spine**, or backbone
[6] /ˌhəʊmiəʊ'pæθɪk/ doctors who use tiny amounts of natural substances to treat an illness
[7] /əˌrəʊmə'θerəpɪsts/ therapists who use aromatic oils and massage

B Health systems

In Britain, **healthcare**[1] is paid for through taxes and **national insurance**[2] payments taken directly from wages and salaries. The government decides how much will be spent on the **National Health Service**[3], but a lot of people feel they do not spend enough. Hospital treatment and visits to a **family doctor** (or **GP**[4]) at a **surgery**[5] or **clinic**[6] are free, but there is often a **prescription charge**[7]. Private healthcare is available and a large number of **insurance schemes** exist to enable people to '**go private**'[8].

[1] general expression for all of the services offered by hospitals, clinics, dentists, opticians, etc.
[2] tax paid by most working adults which covers the costs of healthcare for everyone
[3] British name for the state-funded service that covers hospitals, clinics, dentists, etc. (often abbreviated to **the NHS**)
[4] doctor who looks after people's general health (GP = **general practitioner**)
[5] small centre offering primary care, run by a single GP or a group of GPs (*surgery* can of course also mean the branch of medicine that involves carrying out operations)
[6] centre which specialises in treating a particular condition or group of conditions
[7] charge for the medication the doctor prescribes, which you pay at a pharmacy
[8] choose private healthcare

Exercises

51.1 What kind of medical specialist is each of these people?

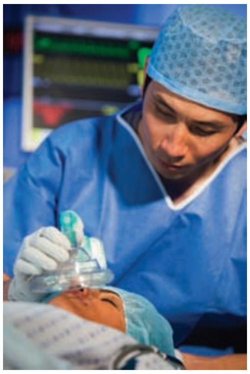

1 ....

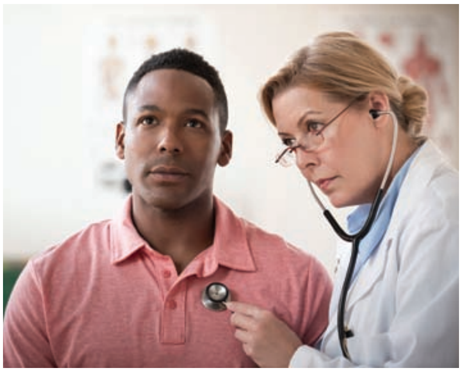

2 ....

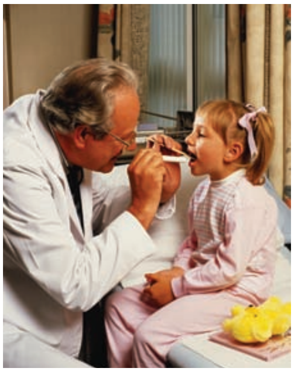

3 ....

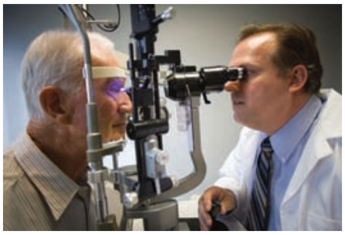

4 ....

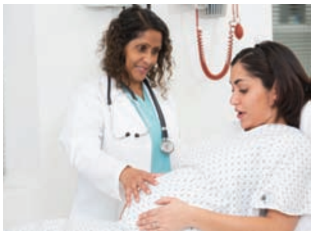

5 ....

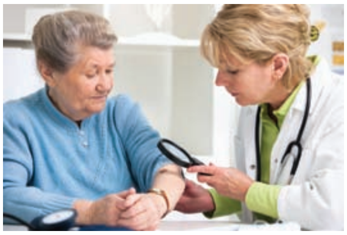

6 ....

51.2 Choose a word from the box to complete each sentence.

acute	chronic	condition	locum	organ	prescription	refer	surgery

1 I need to phone the .... to make an appointment for a blood test.
2 He suffers from .... bronchitis – it comes back year after year.
3 The doctor wrote me a .... for some painkillers.
4 The GP decided to .... Alex to a specialist.
5 Chris has a skin .... which is taking a long time to clear up.
6 I saw a very nice .... today because our normal GP was on leave.
7 The heart is the .... which pumps blood around our bodies.
8 Lydia had her appendix removed after an .... attack of appendicitis.

51.3 Correct the mistakes in the collocations in these questions about healthcare.

1 What is the name of your familiar doctor?
2 Is there a prescription price in your country?
3 In your country is there a similar structure of primary care and second care?
4 Do doctors often do home visitors in your country?
5 Are there insurance societies for private healthcare in your country?
6 When it comes to healthcare, do many people in your country make private?
7 How popular is complimentary medicine in your country?
8 Have you ever been to a specialist who practises some kind of alternating medicine?

51.4 Over to you

Answer the questions in 51.3 about yourself and the healthcare in your country.

52 Illness: feeling under the weather

A Feeling unwell

Some informal expressions that mean 'not well, but not seriously ill'.
A: You look a bit **off-colour** today. Are you all right?
B: I'm just feeling a bit **out of sorts**, it's nothing to worry about.
I was feeling a bit **under the weather**, so I stayed at home yesterday.
Katy's been **feeling poorly** for a while.
I'm **fighting off** a cold at the moment. [trying to get rid of]
Rani isn't in today; she's **gone down with** flu. [has caught, usually a non-serious illness]
I'm not going to work today. I've **come down with** a dreadful cold. (we usually say *come down*, not *go down* with, when talking about ourselves)
Harry **suffers from** hay fever and sneezes a lot if he's near grass or flowers. [used for more long-term problems]

B Minor health problems

Language help

You can call a physical pain *a dull/nagging/throbbing ache* but the noun *hurt* refers to emotional pain, e.g. *The break-up of their relationship caused them both deep* ***hurt***.

Note that **hurt** is different from **ache**:
My arm **hurts** where I banged it against the car door. [gives pain caused by an injury]
My back **aches** after all that digging yesterday. [persistent low-level pain]
The fixed expression **(the usual) aches and pains** is often used to refer in a non-serious way to minor problems: Mum's feeling fine, apart from the usual **aches and pains** (NOT ~~pains and aches~~).
The fixed expression **cuts and bruises** can refer to minor injuries: Jason had a few **cuts and bruises** when he fell off his bike, nothing serious (NOT ~~bruises and cuts~~).
Some other kinds of physical discomfort:
My hand's been **stinging** ever since I touched that plant. [sudden, burning pain]
My head is **throbbing**. [beating with pain]
I have a **stiff neck** from sitting in a draught yesterday. [pain and difficulty in moving your neck round]
She tripped on the uneven pavement and **twisted her ankle**. [injured by turning it suddenly]
I feel a bit **dizzy**. I think I should sit down. [a feeling that you are spinning round and can't balance]
She was a bit **feverish** this morning, so I told her to stay in bed. [with a high temperature/fever]
I feel quite **shivery** / **hot and cold**. I think I must have a temperature. [shaking slightly, usually because of a fever]
I've had a lot of **sleepless** nights recently. [without sleeping much]
I had a terrible **nauseous** feeling after taking the medicine, but it passed. [/ˈnɔːziəs/ feeling that you want to vomit]
He was **trembling** all over; I knew it must be something serious. [shaking]
My nose is all **bunged up** today with this horrible cold. [blocked; *informal*]

C Getting better

I had a virus last week, but I **got over** it quite quickly. [got better, recovered]
Jo's **recovering from** a major operation. [getting better: used for more serious illnesses]
Dan felt terrible last week, but he's **on the mend** now. [getting better]
It's taking Hania some time to recover from her accident, but she's **over the worst** now. [past the most difficult period]
She'll **be back on her feet** again soon. [fully healthy again]

Exercises

52.1 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1 She was feeling out of the weather and a bit fevering, so she took the day off.
2 I felt really off my colour yesterday and my head was throwing, so I took a painkiller.
3 I felt a bit off the sorts and seemed to have more pains and aches than usual.
4 Maria has back hurt after carrying that heavy suitcase of yours.
5 Freddie has been fighting out cold for the last few days.
6 I'm sorry I won't make it to your party because I've gone down with flu.
7 Do you suffer of any allergies?
8 How did you get all those bruises and cuts?

52.2 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences using words and phrases from B opposite.

1 I was feeling quite as if I had a high temperature.
2 The smell of paint always made her feel that she wanted to vomit.
3 I felt as if my head was spinning, so I went and lay down for an hour.
4 My nose was blocked, so I got a spray from the chemist.
5 I got a pain in my neck from driving for a long time in an awkward position.
6 Laura was feeling hot and cold and looked unwell, so I told her to go to bed.
7 My knee hurts today because I moved it awkwardly getting out of Andrei's sports car yesterday.
8 I didn't sleep at all last night.

52.3 Sort these everyday phrasal verbs and expressions connected with health and illness into two groups, depending on whether they have *positive* or *negative* meanings with regard to health.

suffer from be over the worst fight off be on the mend be back on your feet again
get over come down with under the weather

positive	negative

52.4 Now fill the gaps using expressions from 52.3.

1 (*Someone speaking to a colleague just returned to work after an illness*) Hello, Dan, good to see you ....
2 (*Person ringing their place of work*) Nadja, I won't be in today, I've .... a cold.
3 (*Person in hospital, just beginning to get better, talking to a visitor*) Oh, I'm OK. I'm .... now. I still feel bad, but I should be out within a week or so.
4 (*Parent to a child with a cold*) Don't worry, darling. Everyone has a cold now and then. You'll .... it.
5 (*Someone ringing a workmate*) I'm trying to .... the flu, but nothing seems to help. I don't think I'll be at work tomorrow.
6 Lily was quite ill last week, but she's .... now and should be back at work on Monday.
7 I feel a bit .... today, but I'm sure I'll be fine tomorrow.
8 I used to .... a dust allergy, but I don't think I do any more.

53 Medical language

A Medical information leaflets

Read this extract from a leaflet included in a packet of painkillers.

Before taking this medicine, talk to your doctor or pharmacist if you:

- are taking **low-dose**[1] aspirin (up to 75 mg daily)
- suffer from **asthma**[2], or have a **past history**[3] of asthma
- have a connective tissue **disorder**[4]
- have a history of **gastrointestinal disease**[5] or suffer from **bowel**[6] problems
- are elderly, as it increases the risk of **adverse reactions**[7]
- have heart problems, have had a previous **stroke**[8] or think you might be at risk of these **conditions**[9]

*Do not **exceed**[10] the stated dose or **duration**[11] of treatment*

Like all medicines, these tablets may sometimes cause **side effects**,[12] though not everybody gets them.
Stop taking this medicine and seek medical help if you suffer from any of the following:

- **allergic reactions**[13]
- are sick and it contains blood or dark **particles**[14] that look like coffee grounds
- pass blood in your **stools**[15]
- stiff neck, headache, feeling sick (**nausea**), being sick (**vomiting**), fever and **disorientation** (not knowing where you are).

[1] measured amount of medicine that is relatively small
[2] medical condition in which breathing becomes difficult because air passages have narrowed
[3] record of medical conditions a person has experienced
[4] illness of the body or mind
[5] illness of the stomach or digestive passages
[6] tube that carries solid waste out of the body
[7] unwanted results
[8] sudden change in blood supply to the brain causing loss of function of part of the body
[9] illnesses or physical problems
[10] take more than
[11] length
[12] unwanted effects in addition to the intended one
[13] conditions affecting skin or breathing because of eating or coming into contact with certain substances
[14] small pieces
[15] medical term for **excrement** (formal) or **poo** (informal, childish)

B Medical metaphors

Social and other problems are often talked about as if they were illnesses: The current spate of car thefts is a **symptom** of a deeper underlying problem. [medical meaning = problem indicating an illness]
This behaviour is **symptomatic** of his general lack of self-confidence.
The causes of a problem can be **diagnosed** and the outlook for a situation can also be referred to as the **prognosis**. [medical meaning = identify what illness a patient has] [medical meaning = how experts expect an illness to develop]
The medical meaning of the key word is given in brackets before the examples below:
[**ailing** = unwell, sickly] an **ailing** organisation [one that has a lot of problems] The economy has been **ailing** for some time, but there are hopes of a recovery soon.
[**rash** = a lot of small red spots on the skin] **a rash of** burglaries [a number of similar things happening at the same time]
[**fever** = high temperature] World Cup **fever**, election **fever** [great excitement]
at **fever pitch**, to reach **fever pitch** [a point of very high intensity] With a week to go before Anne's wedding, preparations had reached **fever pitch**.
[**jaundiced** = yellow-looking skin because of a liver problem] Experts in the history of the area take a rather **jaundiced** view of the likely success of the peace talks. [unenthusiastic or sceptical because of previous bad experiences]
[**scar** = mark left on skin after an injury such as a cut] **carry the scars of** / **be scarred by** [be permanently affected by a negative experience] I'm afraid that children will always **be scarred by** experiencing war at a young age.
[**infect** = pass on an illness] I hope Helen's enthusiasm will **infect** everyone else. [pass on to]
[**pulse** = regular beating of heart, e.g. as felt on wrist] That journalist really **has his finger on the pulse** of public opinion. [understands how things are changing]

Exercises

53.1 Choose the best word to complete each sentence.

1 Anorexia is a serious eating *effect* / *disorder* in which a person tries to eat as little as possible.
2 The doctor asked me a lot of questions about my medical *history* / *story*.
3 Far more children these days are *asthmatic* / *allergic* to nuts than ever before.
4 It is important not to *overtake* / *exceed* the number of pills the doctor tells you to take.
5 Talk to your pharmacist if you suffer any *side* / *adverse* reactions to the tablets.
6 My grandfather had a *bowel* / *stroke* last year.
7 Doctors use the word stools but children talk about *poo* / *excrement*.
8 If you vomit, you *feel* / *are* sick.
9 *Disorientation* / *Disease* can be the result of a bang on the head.
10 Maria is not allowed to drive for the *duration* / *dose* of her treatment.

53.2 Replace the underlined expressions with one of the metaphors from B. Make any other necessary changes.

1 Excitement grew extremely strong as the day of the final match dawned.
2 Although industry is doing well in the north of the country, in the south it is weak.
3 The manager said that there had been a sudden large number of complaints about the hotel.
4 Unfortunately, she is still affected in a negative way by her divorce.
5 The problems we have experienced in our neighbourhood are evidence of wider problems in society.
6 What do you think the prospects are for the peace talks?
7 I voted for the Green Party because they seem to be in touch with what's happening.
8 The business has been having problems for some time now.
9 I'm afraid I have rather a sceptical view of the banking industry.

53.3 The medical words in the box below are used metaphorically in the following text. Fill the gaps using these words. Use a dictionary if necessary.

ailing fatal disease rash paralysed prognosis fever contagious

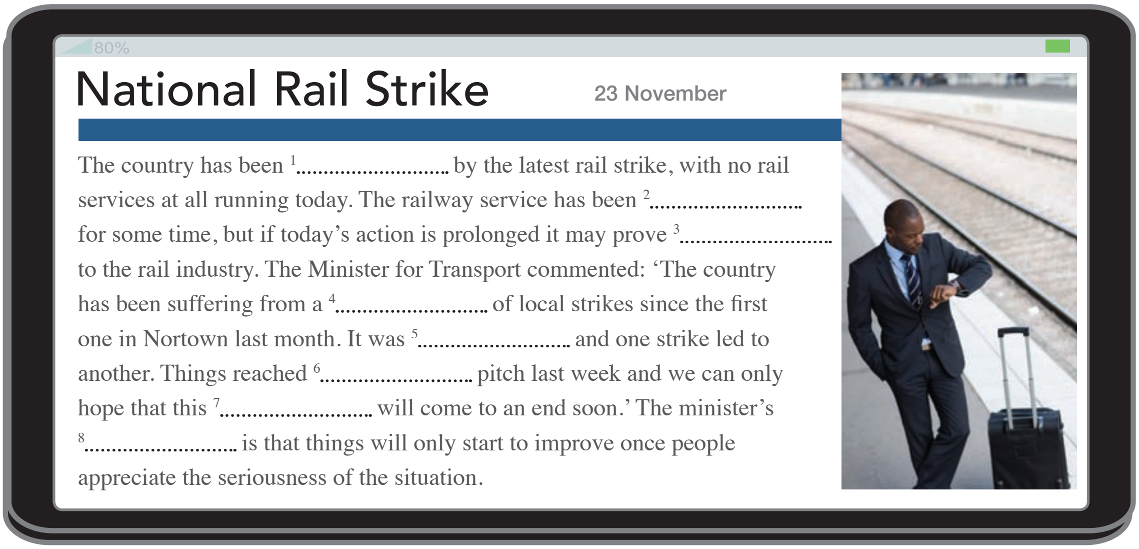

National Rail Strike

23 November

The country has been ^{1}.......................... by the latest rail strike, with no rail services at all running today. The railway service has been ^{2}.......................... for some time, but if today's action is prolonged it may prove ^{3}.......................... to the rail industry. The Minister for Transport commented: 'The country has been suffering from a ^{4}.......................... of local strikes since the first one in Nortown last month. It was ^{5}.......................... and one strike led to another. Things reached ^{6}.......................... pitch last week and we can only hope that this ^{7}.......................... will come to an end soon.' The minister's ^{8}.......................... is that things will only start to improve once people appreciate the seriousness of the situation.

53.4 Over to you

Learn more medical vocabulary by going to the following website, which provides information for people who want to learn more about a medical condition: www.nhs.uk.

54 Diet, sport and fitness

A A healthy heart

Our arteries circulate blood around the body and are essential to good health, but the blood flow can be **impeded**[1] by fatty **plaque**[2] that can **clog**[3] them. The production of plaque is associated with high levels of **cholesterol**[4] and clogged blood vessels can lead to a heart attack or a **stroke**[5]. Some foods, such as eggs and shellfish, while **nutritious**[6], are also **cholesterol-rich**, but, if eaten in moderation, do not significantly raise cholesterol levels or **pose a danger**[7]. 'Bad cholesterol' is counteracted by **fibre**[8] in our diet, and a **high-fibre** diet is often recommended by health experts. Fibre causes less fat to be absorbed by the blood vessels. Fibre-rich foods include fruit, vegetables, **lentils**[9], **oatmeal**[10], potatoes and wholemeal bread.

[1] slowed down or made difficult

[2] unwanted substance that forms on the surface of the arteries

[3] cause something to become blocked

[4] fatty substance found in the body tissue and blood of all animals

[5] sudden change in the blood supply to the brain causing loss of function of part of the body

[6] containing substances that your body needs to stay healthy (noun = **nutrition**)

[7] cause a problem

[8] substance in foods such as fruit, vegetables and brown bread, which travels through the body as waste

[9] very small dried beans that are cooked and eaten

[10] type of flour made from oats or a grain used to make **porridge** [a cooked breakfast cereal]

B Exercise and calories

One of the most efficient forms of **cardiovascular**[1] exercise is running or fast walking, which have been proved to have a positive effect in reducing cholesterol levels. This type of exercise lowers your blood pressure and can help **diabetics**[2] too, by helping their **insulin**[3] work more effectively. Running or jogging is also a great way to **burn calories**, and you don't have to be excessively **sporty**[4] to do it. Based on a calculation of your body weight in relation to the time you devote to an activity, a person who weighs 63 kilos can burn 148 calories by jogging for 20 minutes. The same person doing half an hour of cycling at 25 kph could burn more than 330 calories. Exercise can also speed up your **metabolism**[5], which helps you to burn calories more quickly. This can help to lower your **BMI**[6] to a healthy level. If you're **intent on**[7] losing weight, running, **brisk**[8] walking and fast cycling are excellent ways of doing so!

[1] relating to the heart and blood

[2,3] people suffering from **diabetes**, an illness in which the body cannot cope with **glucose** [sugar] because it does not produce enough **insulin** [hormone that controls the level of sugar in the body]

[4] good at or keen on sports

[5] the rate at which your body digests food

[6] Body Mass Index – the amount of fat in your body, as a proportion of your weight

[7] determined to

[8] quick and energetic

C Sport and fitness metaphors

I **scored an own goal** when I told my boss it had only taken me a day to write the report. Now she wants me to write several a week. [tried to gain an advantage, but made things worse for myself rather than better]

My boss always seems to be **moving the goalposts**, which makes it very difficult to know what he wants. [changing the rules]

The new EU laws aim to provide a **level playing field** for all member states. [fair situation]

He's too young to be **in the running** for such a job. [seriously considered]

The two main parties in the election are still **neck and neck** in the opinion polls. [level with each other and equally likely to win]

Politicians often **skate around** a subject. [don't talk directly about]

The students all **sailed through** their exams. [passed very easily]

Exercises

54.1 **Rewrite the underlined parts of the sentences using words and expressions from A and B opposite.**

1 Eggs and shellfish are full of substances that keep our bodies healthy.
2 Foods with a lot of cholesterol are fine if eaten in moderation.
3 These foods do not necessarily cause a danger to health.
4 The most important thing is not to slow down or prevent the flow of blood.
5 Fatty plaque can block the arteries.
6 Scientists recommend a diet with lots of fibre.
7 Running is a good form of exercise that affects the heart and blood circulation.
8 Fast walking is also good for you.
9 Jogging is a great way to use calories.
10 To do enough of this kind of exercise, you don't have to be a lover of sport or good at it.

54.2 **Answer the questions.**

1 What two serious illnesses can result from clogged blood vessels?
2 What word could you connect to these words before the hyphen to mean 'with a lot of'?
...........................-fibre ....-energy ....-calorie
3 What word could you connect to these words after the hyphen to mean 'with a lot of'?
protein- .... vitamin- ....
4 Why are lentils and oatmeal good for our diet?
5 What is another way of saying 'He is determined to do more exercise'?
6 Which people might be interested in helping their insulin to work more effectively?
7 What abbreviation is used to talk about the amount of fat in someone's body?
8 What can you increase or speed up by exercising?

54.3 **What sports do each of the metaphors in C come from?**

54.4 **Rewrite these sentences using metaphors from C.**

1 Elsa passed her exams without any difficulty at all.
2 I wish he'd get directly to the point.
3 I've been told that they are seriously considering me for the job of supervisor.
4 I didn't do myself any favours when I offered to help with the washing-up so I could borrow Dad's car. Now my parents expect me to do it every night!
5 The situation is hardly fair when 18-year-olds take the same exam as 15-year-olds.
6 It's hard to know what to do when the regulations seem to be constantly changing.
7 The two candidates are in exactly the same position in the race to become President.

54.5 **Over to you**

- How much exercise do you do every week?
- What type(s) of exercise do you do?
- Do you know how many calories you burn? (There are websites that tell you how to calculate this for the activities you do.)
- What about diet? Do you think you could improve your diet? How?

55 Industries: from manufacturing to service

A Industries and industrial practices

expression	explanation	opposite expression	explanation
heavy industry	e.g. steel works, shipbuilding	**light industry**	e.g. manufacturing car parts, TV sets
manufacturing industry	making things, e.g. consumer goods	**service industry**	serving people, e.g. tourism, banking
high-technology (high-tech; *informal*)	involving computers, e.g. software industry	**low-technology (low-tech**; *informal*)	involving little or no computer technology
cutting-edge technology	involving new and innovative technology	**conventional technology**	using standard, proven technology
privatisation	e.g. selling off state railways to private companies	**nationalisation** / **state ownership**	when industry is owned by the government

Many big industries are run as **public-private partnerships**. [partly state-owned, partly owned by private industries or businesses]
The nuclear industry receives a huge **subsidy** from the government. [money/grants which enable it to stay in profit]
The government tries to encourage **inward investment**. [investment from foreign companies]

B Industrial practices

example	explanation
Most of the factory workers are **on piecework**.	they are only paid for the amount they produce
Many people now work on **zero hours contracts**, which means they have no job security.	they are employed by a company, but the number of hours they work each week may vary, and some weeks there may be no work for them, so they receive no pay
Child labour is a serious problem in some countries.	the employment of children to do adult jobs
In many countries, the right to **trade union representation** has only come after long struggles.	a union that negotiates wages and conditions for the people it represents
Many cheap electrical goods are produced in **sweatshops** in poorer countries.	factories where people work very long hours for low wages
Retraining and **reskilling** are necessary when an economy is modernised.	training people for new jobs and teaching them new skills

The big **multinationals**[1] often close factories as a **cost-cutting exercise**[2] and **relocate**[3] and **switch production**[4] to countries where labour and costs are cheaper.
In many cases, **components**[5] for cars are imported and then **assembled**[6], rather than manufactured in the country.

[1] big companies with operations in many different countries

[2] effort to reduce their costs

[3] move the company's offices (or, less commonly, production) to a different place

[4] move the centre of manufacturing to a different place

[5] parts

[6] put together

Exercises

55.1 **Use expressions from the table in A opposite to rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences with more appropriate vocabulary.**

1 The economy cannot depend only on businesses like restaurants and hotels. We need to encourage industries that make things we can sell.
2 In this area, there are a lot of industries that use computers and things, while in the north, they depend more on industries that don't use such up-to-date technology.
3 The latest, innovative technology is very expensive, so the company has to rely on existing, standard technology.
4 The idea that industries should be owned by the government is less popular than it was, but the trend towards selling off these industries has slowed down.
5 Industry with big factories producing things like steel and so on has declined, and now we're more dependent on industry that makes things like radios and furniture.

55.2 **Give words or expressions which mean:**

1 a combination of state ownership and private ownership
2 payment or grant from the government which enables a loss-making industry to continue
3 investment in a country by foreign companies
4 system of paying employees only for the amount they produce
5 an economy that depends on factories producing large quantities of cheap goods based on long hours and low wages
6 to change the location where goods are produced (*Give two answers*.)
7 to train people for new jobs and teach them new skills (*Give two answers*.)
8 a big company with operations in many different countries
9 an effort to reduce costs
10 using children to do adult jobs
11 an employment contract which does not guarantee you work or pay every week

55.3 **Here are some more expressions relating to problems in industry. Make sure you know what they mean, then use them to fill the gaps in the sentences below. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

black market   copyright infringement   industrial piracy   industrial espionage
money laundering

1 .... is a serious problem in many parts of the world, with factories producing illegal copies of top brand names.
2 It was a serious case of .... The designs for the new aircraft were photographed illegally and sold to a rival company.
3 .... is a problem for people who make a living writing books. Illegal editions mean that the author receives no payment.
4 .... is a huge international problem, as police and banks try to trace money from the illegal drugs trade and terrorism.
5 There is a big .... in the importation of untaxed luxury cars in some countries.

55.4 Over to you

- What kinds of industries have you worked in? Which would you like to work in? Why?
- Would you buy an item if you believed child labour was involved in its manufacture? Why / Why not?
- Would you buy illegal imitations of famous designer brands? Why / Why not?

56 Technology and its impact

A Technological advances affecting daily life

technology	examples of uses/applications	example sentences with associated key words
digital technology	digital photography, digital video and audio recording; digital broadcasting	The sound quality of a **digital** voice recorder is superior to that of an **analogue** one. [non-digital]
wi-fi	a system for connecting electronic devices to the internet without using wires	The hotel has **wi-fi** in every room.
satellite communications	satellite navigation [SATNAV] systems; mobile phones	She doesn't use a road map now because her new car has **GPS** (**g**lobal **p**ositioning **s**ystem) built in, so she gave me her old plug-in **SATNAV**.
biotechnology	genetic modification of plants	**Biotechnology** companies are experimenting with new, **disease-resistant** crops for farmers. [with a high level of protection against diseases]
artificial intelligence (AI)	automatic translation; identification systems	Scientists working in **AI** are hoping to create computers that will be more and more like the human brain.
ergonomics	design of environments so people can work efficiently and comfortably	This car has **ergonomically designed** seats. [designed to give maximum comfort and efficiency]
Bluetooth™	connecting electronic devices to each other with no wires	My car has **Bluetooth**, so I can connect my phone to the speakers.

B How much of a techie* are you?

[* person who loves acquiring all the new technology]
Today we are all to some degree dependent on technology. How many of these things do you own or use?

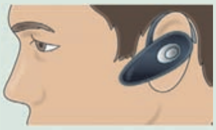

a **smartphone** [a mobile phone that can be used as a small computer]
a **hands-free** earpiece and microphone for your mobile
a **smart ID card** for entering your workplace or college
a **laptop (computer)** or **notebook**
a **desktop** computer for the home or office
an **MP3 player**
a **games console**
a **tablet** using a **touchscreen**, such as an iPad
an **e-reader**, such as a Kindle
an **interactive flat-screen TV**
a **router** to let you connect to the internet from different devices

RANK 2
SCORE 62765
NAME A2B
START

Language help

Technical (adverb = *technically*) means relating to the knowledge, machines and materials used in science and industry, e.g. *Removing the salt from sea water is a **technically** complex process*. *Technological* (adverb = *technologically*) means relating to or involving technology, e.g. ***Technologically**, their company is a long way behind ours*. Note that *technically* – NOT ~~technologically~~ – can also be used to mean according to an exact understanding of the facts, e.g. *The recession is **technically** over but things are still difficult for many people*.

See also Unit 48.

Exercises

56.1 **Based on A opposite, what types of technology would you associate with the following?**

1 a round-the-world yachtsman/woman trying to establish his/her exact position
2 a designer creating a new type of computer keyboard which would be more efficient and comfortable to use
3 a scientist producing a new type of wheat which does not need to be sprayed against insects
4 a camera that produces photos that you can store on a computer or your phone
5 a computer that can make decisions for itself
6 a music player in your car that you can connect your phone to with no wires

56.2 **Which type of device in B opposite is the speaker talking about?**

1 I prefer it to my mobile because it's much bigger, but it's still not too heavy to carry around. I can Skype on it and take photos with it. I can access my emails wherever I am. I just can't make ordinary phone calls. ....
2 The picture is really good quality and it's fun being able to send in comments at the same time as you're watching a programme. ....
3 It's pretty small and light, but the screen and keyboard are not very big and I find the trackpad more awkward to use than a mouse. ....
4 I always use this rather than my laptop when I'm at home; I have it on a special table in my room next to my printer. ....
5 I used to have to take so many books when I went on holiday but now I don't need to. I just have to remember my charger! ....
6 I changed its position and now I can get online from any room in the house. ....

56.3 **Here are some other words and phrases connected with computers. Not all of them are on the opposite page. Fill the gaps in the sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

computer nerd   app   thumbnail   icon   screensaver   trackpad   techie   footprint

1 There are some good pictures of the Olympic Games on that sports website. You can look at .... pictures and then click on them to see the full-size version.
2 My younger brother's a real .... He never goes out, and all he ever thinks about is computers, computers, computers.
3 I'm a bit of a .... really; I love getting the latest mobile phone or digital camera.
4 I've downloaded a great new gaming .... onto my phone.
5 His .... on his laptop is a really cool picture of the night sky.
6 This new printer's got a smaller .... than the one I had before, which is good, since my desk is not very big.
7 Just click on that .... there to open the program.
8 I don't really like this .... on my laptop; I'd prefer a proper mouse.

56.4 **Complete the word beginning with 'techn…' in each sentence. Not all the words you need are on the opposite page.**

1 Karl got a good job as a lab techn.......................... in the university.
2 In this country, young people techn.......................... become adults at the age of 18.
3 Computer techn.......................... makes huge advances every year.
4 Andrea has a very interesting techn.......................... for remembering vocabulary.
5 Publicity photos of celebrities have usually been techn.......................... enhanced.

56.5 **Over to you**

The language and terminology connected with computers changes very quickly. If you want to keep up with it, read computer advertisements in newspapers and magazines, or else visit the websites of well-known hardware and software manufacturers, and note any new vocabulary and how it is used.

57 Technology of the future

A Technology

Here are some things we are likely to see more of in the future.

smart buildings/homes	computer-controlled buildings and homes where things like lighting, heating, security, etc. are completely automatic; the adjective **smart** can be used for anything that uses computers or information stored in electronic form (e.g. a smartphone, smart TV, smart car)
interplanetary travel and space tourism	travel to planets in outer space, either for exploration or for tourism
nanotechnology	science of developing and producing extremely small tools and machines by controlling the arrangement of atoms and molecules
keyhole surgery	medical operation in which a very small hole is made in a person's body to reach the organ or tissue inside

B The environment and nature

A **doomsday scenario** for the environment sees our **destiny** as a world choked with pollution, where many plants and animals have become extinct. [the worst possible prediction, what will happen in the future] [the things that will happen to us in the future]

Many experts **foresee** a situation where traffic in **mega-cities** becomes completely **gridlocked**. [think that something will occur in the future] [cities of more than 10 million people] [unable to move at all]

The **population explosion** may lead to widespread food and water shortages. [rapid increase in population]

Genetic modification/**engineering** is already used to change fruit and vegetables so that they grow better. However, many people object to the idea of **genetically modified** (or **GM**) **food**/**crops**. [changing genes] [food/crops created by changing the genes of the ingredients]

Gene therapy will be used to eradicate some diseases, thanks to our knowledge of **the human genome**. [changing genes in order to prevent disease or disability] [the 'map' or index of all the genes in a human being]

Some people **envisage** a world in which **designer babies** will be popular. [see a possible or probable situation in the future] [babies whose genetic characteristics are artificially created]

Cloning of animals, and even human beings, may become common. [making a genetically identical copy]

C Society and people

The breakdown of the traditional family structure has already occurred in some countries. In future, the **nuclear family**[1] may no longer be the main type of family unit, and more loosely defined relationships will develop. **Globalisation**[2] will increase, affecting how things are produced and sold, what we buy and how we communicate. The world has become a **global village**[3] and we will have more and more contact with other people in it. We may even make contact with **extraterrestrial beings**[4]. The **gulf**[5] between rich and poor nations will widen if we do not take **drastic measures**[6] now to improve the situation.

[1] family with father, mother and one or two children

[2] increase of trade around the world, with companies producing and trading goods in many different countries or the spread of similar social and cultural behaviour around the world

[3] a single community covering the whole world

[4] creatures from other planets

[5] gap/difference

[6] severe actions that have noticeable effects

Exercises

57.1 Match the words to make collocations.

1 gridlocked ☐ a explosion
2 genetic ☐ b village
3 human ☐ c traffic
4 population ☐ d genome
5 global ☐ e modification

57.2 Use the collocations in 57.1 to rewrite the underlined parts of the sentences.

1 Asia underwent a dramatic increase in the population in the latter part of the 20th century.
2 The crop had been subject to having its genes altered.
3 Since the advent of the internet, the world has become one single community.
4 Times when the traffic cannot move can cost the economy millions of pounds.
5 Scientists now understand how the human genes are composed.

57.3 What do we call:

1 a huge city with more than 10 million people? ....
2 medical operations where a very small hole is made in someone's body? ....
3 the science of making very small tools and machines by controlling atoms and molecules? ....
4 making an exact genetic copy of something? ....
5 creatures from other planets? ....
6 the process of altering human and animal genes? ....
7 the things that will happen to us in the future? ....
8 a baby whose genetic features have been chosen by its parents? ....

57.4 Rewrite the underlined words in these sentences using expressions from the opposite page.

1 The worst possible prediction is that we will destroy the world with nuclear weapons.
2 Travelling to other planets for scientific exploration will become normal in the coming centuries.
3 He belongs to a team of scientists who are trying to improve our understanding of the index of all the genes in a human being.
4 Governments need to do things that will have a great impact to save the planet.
5 Many people see in their imagination a world in which the poor simply get poorer. (*Give two answers*.)

57.5 Which words or phrases from the opposite page are associated with these sentences?

1 These tomatoes will stay fresh for several months. ....
2 A typical family is often said to consist of a husband, wife and 2.4 children. ....
3 This sheep is identical in absolutely every respect to the sheep standing next to it. ....
4 Thanks to this, doctors may be able to cure some genetic diseases. ....
5 The world is becoming a very small place in terms of economics and communication. ....
6 The company is planning to market two-week holidays on the Moon. ....

57.6 Over to you

Write five sentences about how you envisage the future. Consider the future in terms of technology, the environment and society.

58 Energy: from fossil fuels to windmills

A Fossil fuels

Fossil fuels are sources of energy which were formed underground from plant and animal remains millions of years ago.
Several new **oil wells**[1] were constructed in the desert last year.
Offshore[2] drilling platforms explore the ocean bed for oil and gas.
Older, **coal-fired**[3] power stations generally cause high levels of pollution.
The **coal mines**[4] in the north of the country are no longer profitable.
A new gas **pipeline**[5] was built to bring cheaper energy to the capital city.

[1] hole made in the ground for the removal of oil
[2] away from or at a distance from the coast
[3] using coal as a fuel
[4] deep hole or system of holes under the ground from which coal is removed
[5] very large tube through which liquid or gas can flow for long distances

B Renewable energy

Renewable energy is energy that can be produced again as quickly as it is used.

Onshore[1] **wind farms**[2] to get new government subsidies

Solar panels[3] to be installed on all government buildings

Hydroelectric[4] power station to be closed down

Biomass[5] not the answer, claims Energy Minister

Tidal power[6] and **wave power**[7] may meet future energy needs

Government to focus on **renewables**[8], Minister announces

Three new **nuclear**[9] power stations to be built

Geothermal[10] energy will last 1,000 years, says scientist

[1] on the land (*opp.* = **offshore**) [2] group of wind turbines that are used for producing electricity [3] devices that change energy from the sun into electricity [4] producing electricity by the force of fast-moving water such as rivers or waterfalls [5] dead plant and animal material suitable for using as fuel [6] using the force of the sea tide to produce energy [7] using the force of waves in the sea to produce energy [8] note that **renewable** can also be used as a countable noun [9] using the power produced when the nucleus of an atom is divided or joined to another nucleus
[10] using the heat inside the earth

Common mistakes

Take care with the spelling of *energy* (NOT ~~energie~~ or ~~energi~~).

C Using energy

What can ordinary citizens do to reduce energy **consumption**[1]? Some simple things include using fewer **power-hungry**[2] **appliances**[3] around the home, **monitoring**[4] your use of electricity and **consuming**[5] less energy by switching off unnecessary lights and entertainment systems that use power while on standby. Is your car a **gas-guzzler**[6]? Think about changing to a more **energy-efficient**[7] model. Think more about **food miles**[8] and buy local products, so that fuel consumption in the transporting of goods is reduced. We can also reduce our **carbon footprint**[9] by planning travel more carefully and cutting out unnecessary journeys. Remember, the world's coal, oil and gas **deposits**[10] are **finite**[11]; one day they will run out, so think now about what you can do to consume less.

[1] how much is used of something
[2] using a great amount of energy
[3] equipment, especially electrical equipment, used in the home, e.g. washing machines, fridges
[4] regularly watching and checking something over a period of time
[5] using (e.g. energy, time), especially in large amounts
[6] one that uses a lot of fuel; *informal*
[7] using only a little electricity, gas, etc.
[8] distance food is transported from where it is produced to when it reaches the consumer
[9] measurement of the amount of carbon dioxide that your activities create
[10] layer formed under the ground, especially over a very long period
[11] having an end or lasting a limited time

Exercises

58.1 Choose words from the box to write labels for these pictures.

solar panels	wind farm	pipeline	offshore drilling platform	coal mine

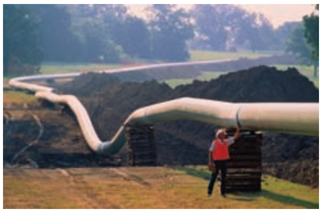
1 ....

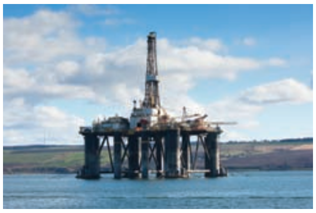
2 ....

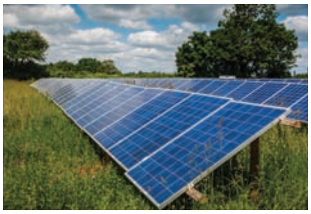
3 ....

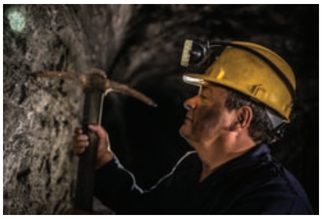
4 ....

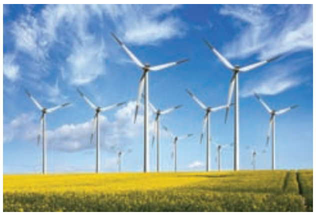
5 ....

58.2 Rewrite the underlined parts of the sentences using words from A and B opposite. Make any other changes necessary.

1 A new 100-kilometre metal tube has been built to bring oil from the holes in the ground for extracting oil in the north of the country to a refinery on the coast.
2 The power station is one that uses coal, but it will soon be replaced by a plant that uses atomic science.
3 Fire has broken out on a drilling platform in the sea.
4 Power from the tide or from waves could solve the energy problems of countries with extensive coastlines. Other parts of the world may be able to use energy from the heat inside the earth.
5 'Energy sources that can be renewed are important,' the Prime Minister said. 'We intend to give grants for people to install devices that turn the heat of the sun into electricity, as well as developing groups of turbines based on the land that use wind.'
6 The country is developing two main energy sources: the use of dead plant material and power stations that use the force of rivers. At the same time, inefficient deep holes for extracting coal will gradually be closed.

58.3 Complete the sentences with words from C opposite.

1 We should consider the issue of .... when shopping for fruit and vegetables and try to buy local produce.
2 Most recent models of washing machines and other domestic .... use less power than older comparable models and are quite ....-.......................... .
3 The company is trying to reduce its .... by allowing fewer foreign trips and encouraging the use of video-conferencing.
4 This car is a real ....-.......................... . It has a very high fuel ....
5 We're .... our energy use at home and trying to .... less power.
6 The planet only contains a .... amount of oil and coal. One day the .... will run out.

58.4 Over to you

Write a short composition of about 75–100 words on the present and future energy sources your country uses now and is likely to develop in the future. Use words and expressions from this unit.

59 Space: no room to swing a cat

A Things occupying a lot of space

word	typical contexts of use	
extensive	Edinburgh has **extensive** traffic-free routes. The building contains **extensive** educational facilities.	
spacious	a **spacious** garden	The city of Washington is **spacious** and green.
roomy	a **roomy** car	The house was **roomy**.
rambling	a large, **rambling** building	a **rambling** mansion

I like Canada because I love **wide open spaces**. [large areas without buildings or trees]
Little white cottages were **scattered** across the landscape. [randomly across a wide area]
The problem with this university is that the buildings are rather **spread out** and it takes a long time to get from one place to another. [not close to one another]
Jack's bedroom is large, with **ample room** for all his things. [more than enough space]

Language help

Room can be used as an uncountable noun to mean space, e.g. *Can you make **room/space** for me? There's plenty of **room/space** here. The sofa takes up a lot of **room/space**.*

B Insufficient space or things occupying too small a space

word	typical contexts of use	
cramped	**cramped** hotel rooms	living in small, **cramped** apartments
poky; *informal*	two **poky** little rooms	a **poky** little flat
congested	tanker traffic on the **congested** waterway the **congested** streets [full of traffic, people, etc.]	
compact*	a tiny, **compact** refrigerator	a **compact**, low, white villa

**compact* has positive connotations, whereas the other words in the table suggest negative connotations.

C Other words and expressions

I saw her at the carnival, but I couldn't get to her because I was **hemmed in** by the crowds. [surrounded by people and not able to move]
The city centre is always **bustling** with tourists at this time of year. [lots of people busily moving around]
There **isn't enough room to swing a cat** in his flat. [the flat is very small; *informal*]
We were **packed in like sardines** on the bus. [too many people in a small space; *informal*]
The government offices are an absolute **labyrinth**. [/ˈlæbərɪnθ/ vast and complex]
The river marks the **boundary** of the estate. [the edge of a large space]
We created more space by building an extension at the **rear** of our property. [back]

In these conversations, speaker B paraphrases what speaker A says. Note the verbs in bold.

A: There were 16 of us in a minibus that seated 10, and it was a long journey.
B: Yes, we were all **crammed into** that tiny space for over five hours!

A: There's not much room, is there? Can I sit between you and Mark?
B: Yes, you can **squeeze in** between us.

A: You've invited a lot of people to your party and it's only a small room.
B: Yes, it might be a bit of a **squash**!

A: Shall I put all those old papers into this rubbish bag?
B: Yes, just **stuff** them all **in** and we'll take it away later. (it suggests doing something quickly and without much care)

Exercises

59.1 **Choose the most likely word from the box to fill the gaps, based on the typical contexts given in A and B opposite.**

compact	cramped	spacious	poky	extensive	roomy

1 You'd never get me to live in that .... little flat!
2 I'd prefer a .... car on a long journey.
3 This camera is nice and .... You can hide it in your pocket and not look like a tourist.
4 Her mother lived in a rather .... one-room apartment near the park.
5 The city centre is beautifully .... with many wide open squares.
6 The capital city has a(n) .... underground railway network.

59.2 **Imagine you are an estate agent writing a description of a house for sale. Decide which of the words in italics is most suitable to persuade someone to buy the house. Use a dictionary for any words you are not sure of.**

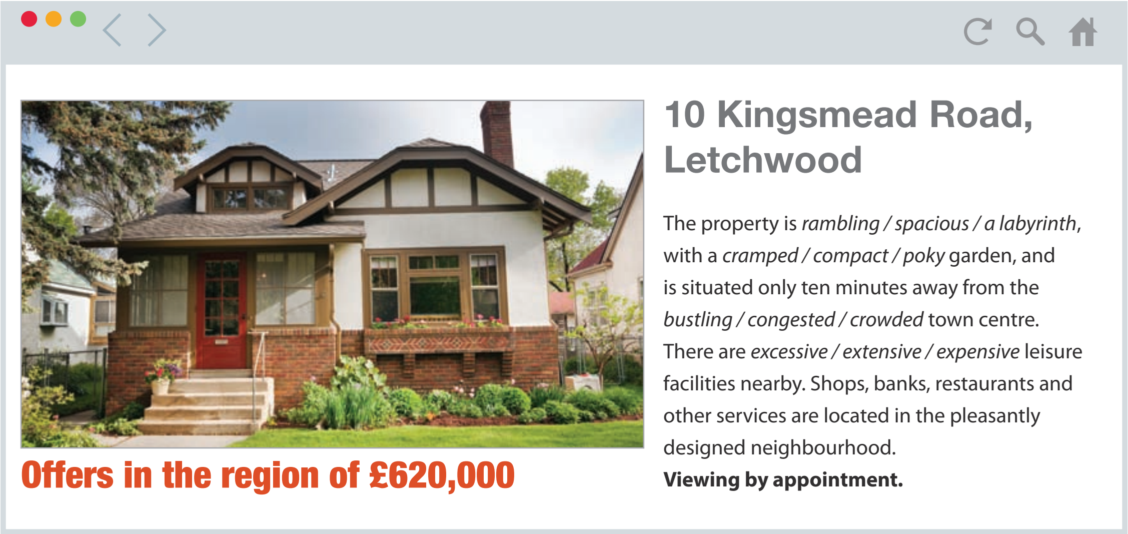

10 Kingsmead Road, Letchwood

The property is *rambling / spacious / a labyrinth*, with a *cramped / compact / poky* garden, and is situated only ten minutes away from the *bustling / congested / crowded* town centre. There are *excessive / extensive / expensive* leisure facilities nearby. Shops, banks, restaurants and other services are located in the pleasantly designed neighbourhood.

Viewing by appointment.

Offers in the region of £620,000

59.3 **Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets.**

1 The kitchen is so small you can hardly move in it. (CAT)
2 There's plenty of space for your clothes in this wardrobe. (AMPLE)
3 I couldn't get out of my space in the office car park the other day. (HEMMED)
4 Holidays in Australia are great if you love vast landscapes without any towns. (OPEN)
5 I hate the London underground during rush hour. Everyone is pressing against one another in the trains. (SARDINES)
6 I dropped a glass and tiny pieces went all over the floor. (SCATTER)
7 The buildings in the holiday complex cover a wide area. (SPREAD)
8 The train was very full but I just managed to get on before the doors closed. (SQUEEZE)

59.4 **Using words from B and C opposite, rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences.**

1 There might be a lot of people on the bus at this time of day – I hope you don't mind.
2 I quickly put a few clothes and a couple of books in a rucksack and set off at once.
3 The Urals Mountains are what separates Europe from Asia.
4 We'll all have to try and fit into my little car; Larry hasn't got his with him today.
5 Your room is at the back of the hotel, so you won't hear any traffic.
6 I don't think we should try and fit everything into one suitcase. Let's take two.

60 Time: once in a blue moon

A Informal expressions relating to time

We only meet **once in a blue moon**. [very infrequently]
He's spent **all his born days** in the village. [all his life]
I'll be with you **in a mo** / **in a sec** / **in a tick** / **in less than no time** / **in a jiffy**. [very soon] (**mo** and **sec** are short for 'moment' and 'second')
Clive's been working here **for donkey's years** / **since the year dot**. [for a long time]
We can talk about this **till the cows come home**, but I'm not going to change my mind. [for ever]
Are you sure she gave you the book **for keeps** / **for good**? [to keep for ever]
She turned up just **in the nick of time** – she very nearly missed the train. [only just in time]
He was a famous athlete but now he's **over the hill** / **past it**. [too old]
She was a child film star but was already a **has-been** by the age of 20. [person who is no longer famous]
Sue did her homework **in a flash** / **at a rate of knots**. [very quickly]

B Adjectives relating to the passing of time

adjective	meaning	common collocations
fleeting	brief or quick	glimpse, visit, smile, moment, appearance
lengthy	continuing for a long time	process, investigation, discussions, negotiations, delays
transient	lasting for only a short time; *formal*	effect, population, feeling, pleasure
persistent	lasting for a long time or hard to stop or get rid of	cough, problems, rumour, smell, accusations, critic, offender, failure, gossip
inexorable	continuing without hope of being stopped; *formal*	rise, slide, decline, pressure, advance of time
incipient	just beginning; *formal*	panic, rage, rebellion, stages, wrinkles, dementia
protracted	lasting for a long time or made to last longer; *formal*	negotiations, discussions, argument
lingering	taking a long time to leave or disappear	perfume, kiss, smile

C Other useful time words

Terrorists carried out **simultaneous** attacks on three places in the capital. [happening at the same time]
Schools were closed for the **duration** of the President's visit. [amount of time that it lasted]
We shouldn't **prolong** the meeting; we've already discussed the matter for an hour. [make it last longer]
I'm sorry, I can't change the date **at such short notice**. [just a short time before it is due to happen]
The teacher **repeatedly** warned the student that she would fail her exam. [many times]

Exercises

60.1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1 since / they've / same / living / the / house / year / the / been / in / dot
2 you / sec / I'll / with / a / in / be
3 to / keeps / Magda / it / John / for / gave
4 no / we / time / in / together / get / less / can / done / it / than
5 never / all / he's / his / been / than / nearest / born / town / further / days / in / the
6 nick / we / hospital / got / in / to / time / the / of / the

60.2 Which of the adjectives in B would you be most likely to use to describe the following?

1 a scent that remains in the room after its wearer has left
2 a feeling of joy that is short-lived
3 criticism that seems to go on and on
4 a headache that is beginning
5 a process that takes a long time
6 the never-ending ageing process – you can't stop its progress
7 a grin that lasts only for a moment
8 an investigation that takes a long time to complete

60.3 Match the adjectives on the left with the words on the right to make collocations.

1 lingering ☐
2 fleeting ☐
3 incipient ☐
4 inexorable ☐
5 persistent ☐
6 simultaneous ☐
7 protracted ☐
8 transient ☐

a events
b population
c glimpse
d smile
e peace negotiations
f refusal
g stages
h advance of time

60.4 Rewrite these sentences so that they keep the same meaning, using a form of the word in brackets.

1 We'll be ready to leave in a mo. (less)
2 Most of the members of the band may be in their sixties, but they're certainly not past it. (hill)
3 You can argue with him for ever, but he'll never see sense. (cow)
4 Harry promised he'd get here at a rate of knots and he kept his word. (flash)
5 I've told her many times not to phone me at work. (repeat)
6 The two events happened at the same moment. (simultaneous)
7 The hotel staff were very good; they let me cancel the reservation just a short time before. (notice)
8 I didn't want to make the meeting last longer. (long)
9 He had his moment of fame. Now he's no longer famous. (be)
10 The press were excluded during the delicate negotiations. (duration)

60.5

Over to you

- Would you like to work for the same company for donkey's years?
- What could you personally do happily till the cows come home?
- Do you think it's a good thing to spend all your born days in one place?
- Can you think of something that you do once in a blue moon?

61 Motion: taking steps

A Verbs of movement

verb	type of movement	reasons for type of movement
limp	uneven	one leg hurts
hop	on one foot, quickly	not using one foot
stagger	unsteady	drunk, ill
stumble	nearly falling	uneven surface
lurch	sudden or irregular	drunk, ill, walking on moving ship, etc.
tiptoe	quiet and on toes	not to be heard
amble	easy, gentle	pleasure or relaxation, no special aim
stride	long steps	purposeful
strut	proud, chest held out	to look important
tramp	firm, heavy steps	walking for a long time
trample	pressing repeatedly with feet	often, wishing to destroy
stamp	pushing foot down heavily	anger, or just heavy-footed
trudge	heavy, slow, with difficulty	tired
chase	quickly	wanting to catch something or someone

B Metaphorical examples of motion

The maths lesson **limped** to a conclusion and everyone thankfully left the room.
Let's **hop** off the bus at the next stop. [quickly get off]
Miguel's business **staggered** on for a few years and then finally collapsed.
Lisa did **staggeringly** well in her exams. [amazingly]
The government has **lurched** from one economic crisis to the next.
Maria **takes** everything that life throws at her **in her stride**. [takes … calmly]
Parents and teachers should try not to **trample** on children's dreams.
If the Campbells don't pay their bill this week, you'll have to **chase** them.
After several **stumbling** attempts at writing, Theo finally had a poem published.

C People and water move in similar ways

Crowds of tourists **flowed** across the square all day long.
As soon as the school doors opened, children **spilled** out into the playground.
People **streamed** into the lecture hall and soon there was standing room only.
People have been **pouring** into the exhibition all day.
A **trickle** of people appeared outside and by midday a crowd had gathered.
We **meandered** round the town, window shopping to our hearts' content.
Refugees have been **flooding** across the border since the start of the war.

D Taking steps

When you walk you **take (foot)steps**. Here are some adjectives often used with **taking (a) step(s)** in a metaphorical context:

backward big critical decisive first giant
major significant **unprecedented** [never having happened before]

Common mistakes

When talking metaphorically, people take *backward/decisive,* etc. ***steps*** (NOT ~~footsteps~~).

Exercises

61.1

The walking verb in each of these sentences is incorrect. Which verb would be a better choice for each sentence? Look at A to help you.

1 The old man strutted wearily homeward, his shoulders hunched in the rain.
2 The mother trudged across the bedroom, doing her best not to wake the baby.
3 Look at all those baby rabbits stamping across the field!
4 Ever since he had an accident last year, he has stamped a bit.
5 The drunken men strode unsteadily out of the pub at closing time.
6 Please try not to stumble on the daisies – they look so pretty in the grass.
7 The small dog tramped after the postman and caught his trouser leg in his teeth.
8 The sea was so rough that even the sailors were tiptoeing around the decks.

61.2

Answer these questions about the sentences in B opposite.

1 How successful and enjoyable was the maths lesson?
2 Did Miguel's business come to a sudden end?
3 Did people expect Lisa to do so well in her exams?
4 Does the government seem to take each crisis smoothly and purposefully?
5 What kind of person do you think Maria is?
6 What do parents and teachers do to children's dreams if they trample on them?
7 How exactly might this person chase the Campbells?
8 How confident were Theo's first attempts at writing?

61.3

Look at the water words in each of the example sentences in C. What does the word suggest about the way the people in those sentences are moving?

61.4

Complete these sentences with a word from C, using the appropriate form.

1 The new traffic system allows vehicles to .... across the city without major disruptions.
2 There were such a lot of people at the talk that some were .... out into the corridor.
3 When I have a day off, I like to .... around town without a care in the world.
4 We expected to be very busy during the sale, but there was just a .... of people throughout the day.
5 As soon as the gates opened, people started .... into the football stadium. (*Give two answers*.)

61.5

Here are some more verbs of movement. Complete a table for them like the one in A opposite. Use a dictionary if necessary.

verb	type of movement	reason for type of movement
file		
saunter		
sidle		
glide		
mill around		

61.6

Which of the verbs in exercise 61.5 would these people probably do?

1 graceful dancers ....
2 guests at a cocktail party ....
3 schoolchildren going into a classroom ....
4 someone who is irritatingly anxious to make you like them ....
5 tourists exploring a city in a relaxed way ....

62 Manner: behaviour and body language

A Manners

Courtesy is still important nowadays. [politeness and respect]

The teacher said her students were always very **courteous**. [polite and respectful]

She addressed the customer in a very **discourteous** manner. [impolite and lacking respect]

I hope I didn't appear **offhand** with her – it's just that I was in such a hurry. [showing a rude lack of interest in others]

The boy had an **insolent** expression on his face which irritated me. [rude and not showing respect (much stronger than discourteous)]

What's the **etiquette** at a traditional Chinese wedding? Do you know? I've had an invitation to one. [set of rules or customs for accepted behaviour in particular social groups or social situations]

Here, have a seat. Relax – there's no need to **stand on ceremony**. [behave in a formal way]

My elderly uncle and aunt are both rather **straitlaced**. [having old-fashioned and fixed morals]

Asking for more food at a formal dinner party is just not **the done thing**. [what you are expected to do in a social situation]

When taking part in online discussions, always follow **netiquette** and keep your comments brief. [code of behaviour when using the internet]

Language help

Manners, meaning the way we behave with one another socially, is plural, e.g. *We need to employ staff with **good manners*** (NOT ~~good manner~~). *Manner* (singular) is a more formal alternative to 'way (of doing something)', e.g. *He greeted everyone in a friendly **manner**.*

B Body language and non-verbal language

Research shows that we communicate more through body language and non-verbal noises than we are aware. Here are some examples of how we indicate emotion through our non-verbal behaviour:

verb/expression	what it indicates	comment
raise your eyebrows	surprise or shock (either showing or causing)	either a person or behaviour can raise eyebrows
twitch	nervousness	repeated small movements with part of the body
flinch	pain or fear	sudden small movement
squirm	embarrassment or nervousness	move from side to side in an awkward way
smirk	self-satisfaction	smile (negative associations)
beam	happiness	broad smile (positive associations)
sniff at something	disapproval	breathe air in through your nose in a way that makes a noise
snort	disgust or great amusement	make an explosive sound by forcing air quickly up or down your nose
titter	nervousness or embarrassment	small laugh

Exercises

62.1 Complete the sentences with words from A opposite.

1 A light kiss on each cheek is the .... thing in some cultures when you meet someone you know.
2 Some people don't seem to follow any kind of .... when posting messages on social network sites and often post offensive or bullying material.
3 She was very .... and hardly looked at me when she replied.
4 Joanna and David always taught their children to have good ....
5 We don't stand on .... in this house – just help yourself to anything you want from the fridge.
6 I'm sick of your .... comments. It's time you learnt to speak politely to people. You're so rude!
7 For a young person, she's very .... and old-fashioned in her ideas and behaviour.
8 The school considers it important that students should always address their teachers in a .... manner. Anyone who behaves in a .... way will be reported to the Director.

62.2 Answer these questions.

1 *Jamie was twitching all evening*. Do you think he was relaxed?
2 *Kate sniffed at every comment I made at the meeting*. How did Kate feel about my comments?
3 *Jack flinched when I touched his arm*. Why do you think he flinched?
4 *The teenagers' behaviour on the bus raised a few of the other passengers' eyebrows*. What must the teenagers' behaviour have been like?
5 *Look at the photo; Meg's smirking and Tanya's beaming*. Who does the speaker think looks nicer – Meg or Tanya?
6 *There was an occasional titter at the comedian's jokes*. Do you think the comedian was pleased at how his jokes were received?
7 *Ritva squirmed in her chair when Karl said her photo was in the paper*. How do you think Ritva felt?
8 *Their children had dreadful table manners*. How do you think the children behaved during meals? What sorts of things did they probably do?

62.3 Choose the best word to complete each of these sentences.

1 Brendan *sniffed* / *snorted* with laughter all through the play.
2 Whenever I'm tired or nervous, my eyelid starts to *twitch* / *flinch*.
3 Don't keep *squirming* / *smirking* in your chair like that – sit still and behave yourself.
4 The students *twitched* / *tittered* when the teacher tripped over the wastepaper basket.
5 The dentist stopped drilling as soon as he felt me *flinch* / *snort*.
6 She *twitched* / *beamed* with happiness all through the wedding ceremony.

62.4 Draw lines connecting the words and expressions on the right with the parts of the body mostly involved in the behaviour.

eyes
mouth
nose
no specific part of the body

smirk
twitch
titter
snort
raise your eyebrows
sniff
flinch
squirm

62.5

Over to you

Imagine that someone who is going to live and work in your country asks you about what is considered to be good/bad manners and about codes of etiquette in your culture. What things would you consider important to tell them?

63 Sounds: listen up!

A Adjectives indicating lack of sound and their collocations

word	definition/explanation	example
silent	without noise or not talking; used for people and things that are perhaps unexpectedly or surprisingly quiet	They asked him several questions but he remained **silent**. The house was completely **silent**. **silent films**/**movies** [films made before sound was introduced]
quiet	without much noise or activity, or not talking much	It's very **quiet** here at night. [no noise] I had a **quiet** day at work. [not much activity] My dad was a **quiet** man. [didn't speak a lot]
noiseless	without noise (usually used as an adverb in formal or literary style)	He closed the door **noiselessly** behind him. [with no sound at all]
soundless	without sound (usually used as an adverb in formal or literary style to indicate an unexpected lack of sound)	The object vanished **soundlessly** into the night sky. Was it an alien spacecraft?

B Verbs for describing specific noises

The door **slammed** in the strong wind. [closed with a loud bang]
My bike wheel is **squeaking**. I need to get some oil. [high, irritating noise]
We could hear our neighbours' favourite rock music **pounding** through the walls. [dull, beating sound]
The old wooden door **creaked** as I opened it. [noise of friction of wood and/or metal]
The sausages **sizzled** in the frying pan and smelt delicious. [sound made by frying]
A shot **rang out** and the bird fell from the sky. [typically used for the sound of a gunshot]
From our cottage, we could hear the waves **crashing** on the beach below. [loud, heavy noise, typically used for waves]
He always **hoots**/**toots** his horn to let us know he's arrived. [sound made by a car horn]
I could hear police car sirens **wailing** all last night. [making a rising and falling sound]
She **hammered** at the door but nobody answered. [knocked very loudly and repeatedly]

C Some adjectives for noise and silence

There was an **eerie** silence in the old church. [rather scary]
The noise of the aircraft engines was **deafening**. [extremely and painfully loud]
He has one of those **grating** voices that gets on my nerves. [unpleasant, irritating]
She let out a **piercing** scream and fled as fast as she could. [high noise that hurts the ears]
Zara has a very **high-pitched** voice; it can be a bit irritating at times. [higher than most voices, like a whistle]
The recording was very faint, almost **inaudible**. [impossible to hear]

D Some fixed expressions connected with noise and silence

Everyone was so shocked and silent, **you could have heard a pin drop**. [there was total silence]
Hey, you kids! Be quiet! **I can't hear myself think**! [said when people are making too much noise]
I need **peace and quiet** after a busy day at work. [calm and quiet period, after a noisy time]
You're **as quiet as a mouse**! I didn't hear you come in at all. [very quiet indeed]

Exercises

63.1 **Fill the gaps with appropriate forms, adjectives or adverbs, of the words *silent*, *quiet*, *noiseless* or *soundless*. Only *silent* may be used more than once.**

1 This luxury car prides itself on its almost .... engine.
2 It's very difficult to find a .... place to live nowadays, even in the countryside.
3 Charlie Chaplin's .... films are as funny today as they were in the 1920s.
4 The great bird flapped its wings and rose .... into the evening sky.
5 The women kept up a .... protest in front of the laboratories.

63.2 **Write a sentence which could come immediately before the following sentences, using verbs from the box and the word(s) in brackets, as shown.**

~~slam~~ pound creak crash sizzle ring out toot squeak wail

1 (door) ......*The door slammed loudly.*..
The wind must have blown it shut.
2 (shot) ....
Somebody was firing at the birds on the lake.
3 (door) ....
It was very old, made of oak and difficult to open.
4 (music, walls) ....
It was as if the musicians were playing in our bedroom.
5 (chicken, frying pan) ....
The sound and the smell made me even more hungry.
6 (rusty door hinges) ....
I think they need some oil.
7 (horn) ....
I looked out of the window and saw her car parked outside.
8 (waves) ....
It was wonderful to be so near the sea.
9 (police sirens) ....
There must have been an accident, or perhaps a robbery.

63.3 **Which adjective can describe the following? The first letter is given.**

1	An extremely loud noise, e.g. very loud music	d..........................
2	A strange, almost scary silence	e..........................
3	A high noise that hurts your ears	p..........................
4	A harsh, irritating kind of voice	g..........................
5	A voice that has a similar tone to a whistle	h..........................-p..........................
6	A whisper that is almost impossible to hear	i..........................

63.4 **Complete these expressions.**

1 It was so quiet you could have ....
2 I've had some noisy, hectic days with all those kids, now I'm looking forward to some
....
3 Turn that music down! I can't .... !
4 I don't even notice that Will is in the flat sometimes. He's ....

64 Weight and density

A Synonyms for *heavy*

There are a number of adjectives similar in meaning to *heavy*. Note their typical contexts.

adjective	typical contexts	example
weighty	abstract and physical things; usually includes the idea of 'seriousness'	a **weighty** tome [large book] discuss **weighty** issues
unwieldy	abstract and physical things; usually includes the idea of 'difficult to handle'	**unwieldy** system/bureaucracy an **unwieldy** object, e.g. a big box
cumbersome	often used for machines and equipment that are difficult to handle; also used for systems, structures, etc.	a **cumbersome** weapon a **cumbersome** process
burdensome	usually used of abstract things	a **burdensome** duty
ponderous	slow and clumsy because of weight, but usually used for dull and excessively serious abstract things	a **ponderous** style, e.g. way of writing or speaking a **ponderous** thesis
lumbering	usually used of physical things; often suggesting 'heavy movement'	a **lumbering** truck a **lumbering** bear

B Phrasal verbs with *weigh*

I hate being **weighed down** with heavy suitcases when I travel. [carrying very heavy things]
She looked tired and **weighed down** with problems.
We'll have to **weigh up** the alternatives before deciding. [consider and compare]
She **weighed out** a kilo of nuts and put them in a bag. [weighed a quantity of loose goods]
I have to confess something to you. It's been **weighing on me** for ages. [troubling my mind]
The discussion was getting heated, and then Kate **weighed in** with some uncomfortable financial arguments. [added more points to the argument]

C Making things more/less dense

You can put some flour in to **thicken** the soup, but you should **sift** it first, or it will go **lumpy**.
[make thicker] [shake it in a sieve to separate the grains] [have solid pieces in it]
The soup has been in the fridge so long it's all **congealed**. [become thick and solid]
This curry powder is years old. It has completely **solidified** in the packet. [become solid]
Do you have some white spirit? I need to **thin** this paint. [make thinner]
As the rush hour ended, the traffic began to **thin out**. [become less dense]
The hairdresser **thinned** my hair **out** and it feels much lighter now. [made it less thick]
This fruit juice is very strong. Let's **dilute it** / **water it down** a bit. [add water]

D Adjectives connected with density

Many of the words above can be used both literally and metaphorically. More examples:

word	meaning	literal use	metaphorical use
impenetrable	impossible to move through	an **impenetrable** jungle/ forest	**impenetrable** jargon
impervious (to)	liquid cannot pass through	an **impervious** material, e.g. glass	a person who is **impervious** to criticism

Exercises

64.1 Based on the typical contexts in A opposite, use the words in the box below to fill the gaps in the sentences. There may be more than one possible answer.

lumbering cumbersome weighty unwieldy burdensome ponderous

1 Applying for a visa is often a rather .... process and can mean filling in long, difficult forms.
2 He gave a very .... lecture on economic history that just bored everyone.
3 It is a really .... historical novel of over 1,000 pages, but it manages to instruct and entertain.
4 Seeing a great .... herd of elephants was the highlight for the tourists on safari.
5 She had so many .... obligations; her life was not her own.
6 The exam system was being increasingly criticised for becoming .... and overly bureaucratic.

64.2 Fill the gaps with a word from A that could collocate with all three nouns.

1 .... dinosaur / vehicle / goods train

2 .... equipment / procedure / suitcase

3 .... encyclopedia / topic / issue

4 .... tone of voice / sermon / narrative

64.3 Correct the wrong uses of phrasal verbs with *weigh* in these sentences.

1 I weighed on a kilo of flour and then added water to it.
2 He's very irritating. When you're trying to have a rational discussion, he always has to weigh through with his own selfish point of view.
3 I owe Gina £250; it's been weighing over my mind for weeks. I must pay her back.
4 We were weighed up with huge suitcases and bags, and the airport was terribly crowded; it was a nightmare.
5 I have to weigh in the various options before I decide which job to accept.

64.4 Answer these questions.

1 What does a hairdresser use thinning-out scissors for?
2 If there is dense fog, then it gets even denser, what verb could you use to describe the change?
3 What happens if you leave some coffee in the bottom of your cup for about a week?
4 What does 'Do not drink undiluted' mean on the instructions on a bottle of juice? What must you do before drinking it?
5 What might you sift when you are cooking?
6 If someone is impervious to insults, is it easy to upset them by calling them stupid?
7 If something is 'unwieldy', is it likely to be large or small?
8 If someone says a book is 'impenetrable', what do they mean?
9 What do you think it means to say that someone's philosophy is 'rather lightweight'?
10 Which verb can be used to describe a situation where heavy traffic is becoming less heavy?

65 All the colours of the rainbow

A Words and expressions for specific colours

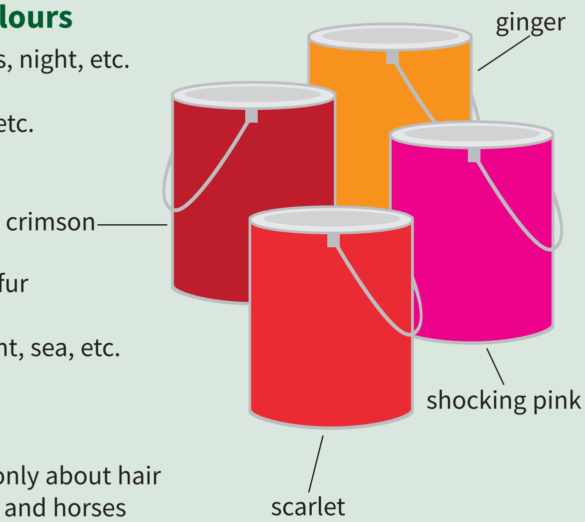

pitch black: intensely black, used about darkness, night, etc. (**pitch** is an old word for tar)
jet black: intensely black, used about hair, eyes, etc. (**jet** is a black semi-precious gemstone)
scarlet: very bright red
crimson: strong deep red
shocking pink: an extremely bright pink
ginger: orangey red, used about hair and animal fur
navy: dark blue, used about clothes, not eyes
turquoise: greenish blue, used about fabrics, paint, sea, etc. but not usually eyes
lime: a bright yellowish green
beige: a light creamy brown
mousy: a light, not very interesting brown, used only about hair
chestnut: a deep reddish brown, used about hair and horses
auburn: a red-brown colour, usually used about hair

A number of words for gemstones are also used as colour adjectives, e.g. **ruby** [deep red], **emerald** [bright green], **amber** [yellowy orange], **coral** [orangey pink], **sapphire** [deep blue], **jade** [dark green].

B Words for talking about colour

Red, blue and yellow are **primary colours**; by mixing them together you can make other colours. **Pastel colours** are pale shades of colour – pink, **mauve** [pale purple] and pale yellow, for example. **Strong colours** are the opposite of pastels. **Harsh colours** are colours that are unpleasantly strong. **Vivid colours** are strong, bright colours like scarlet or turquoise. **Fluorescent** colours are very bright colours which seem to glow in the dark. **Electric** blues or greens are extremely bright blues or greens. If white has a **tinge** of green, there is a very slight shade of green in it. If something is **monochrome**, it uses only one (or shades of one) colour, e.g. black, white and grey. The suffixes **-y** and **-ish** show that a colour is partly present, e.g. **bluey green**, **reddish brown**.

C Colour metaphors

blue = depression (to **feel blue**); physical or unskilled (**blue-collar workers**)
red = anger (to **see red** = to be very angry); danger (**red alert**, a **red flag**); special importance (All the competitors were given the **red-carpet treatment**. The day we met will always be **a red-letter day** for me.); communist or very left-wing in politics (People's views sometimes become less **red** as they get older.)
green = nausea (to **look green**) (People who are seasick often **turn**/**go green** and sometimes vomit.); envy (She turned **green with envy** when she saw her friend's new car.); care for the environment (**green tourism**; the **Green Party**)
black = depressing or without hope (a **black future**); anger (to look **as black as thunder**); illegality or incorrectness (**black market**, **black sheep of the family**, **black mark**) (During the war people bought many goods illegally on the **black market**. If I don't finish this report in time, that'll be another **black mark** against my name. My brother was the **black sheep** of the family, leaving school and home at the earliest opportunity.)
grey = lack of clarity (a **grey area**); brains (**grey matter**, **grey cells**)
white = purity (**white as snow, whiter than white**); being pale (She was so shocked that she went **white as a sheet**.); a **white-knuckle** [terrifying] ride at an amusement park such as Disneyland; office workers (**white-collar workers**)

Exercises

65.1 Match the colour to the picture it is most likely to be used about.

navy scarlet ginger pitch black turquoise chestnut

1
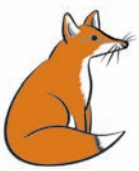

2
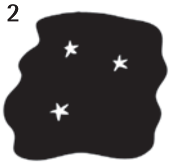

3
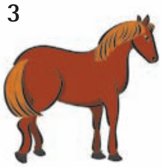

4
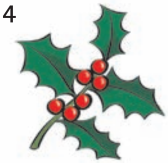

5
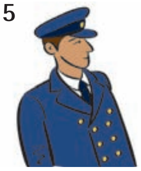

6
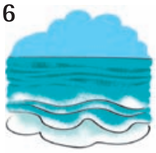

65.2 Put the words in the box under the best heading.

ruby emerald coral sapphire lime scarlet navy jade crimson turquoise

red	blue	green

65.3 Answer these questions about the words in B.

1 Which of the following is not a pastel colour?
A mauve B pink C scarlet
2 Which of the following colours can't be described as electric?
A black B green C blue
3 Which of the following colours is a primary colour?
A green B orange C yellow
4 If a speaker comments that a lipstick is rather a harsh red, what does the speaker think of the lipstick?
A She likes it. B She doesn't like it.
C We don't know – she's stating a fact not giving an opinion.
5 Which is the closest synonym of a bright pink material?
A a material with a tinge of pink B a vivid pink material C a pinkish material

65.4 Look at C opposite. Match the situations on the left with the responses on the right.

1 That child looks a bit green.	☐	a No, they make me feel sick.
2 He seems to have the blues most days.	☐	b Yes, it's not at all clear what we should do.
3 That TV programme always makes him see red.	☐	c Yes, but they need qualifications.
4 It's a bit of a grey area, isn't it?	☐	d I think he's going to be sick.
5 They seem to be trying to blacken his name.	☐	e Yes, they want to do their bit for the environment.
6 Do you like white-knuckle rides?	☐	f Yes, he can't stand the presenter.
7 White-collar workers earn more.	☐	g Yes, ever since his wife left him.
8 They're going to vote for the Green Party.	☐	h I wonder what they've got against him?

65.5 Over to you

Look up the colours below in a dictionary. Write down any new and useful expressions in example sentences of your own, e.g. *That sharp corner is a terrible black spot for road accidents*.

black white red blue yellow green

66 Speed: fast and slow

A Going fast

These verbs suggest going somewhere very quickly on foot or in a vehicle: **dash, fly, race**, **tear**. I **dashed** into the classroom to pick up my books. She came **flying** out of her house. I **raced/tore** to the station and just made it in time for the last train.

The verbs **nip** and **pop** suggest going a short distance quickly, on foot or in a vehicle: I **nipped/ popped** into a near by shop to buy a bottle of water.

The verb **dart** suggests a quick, sudden movement, often by an animal: A dragonfly **darted** past. I **darted** behind the door to hide.

The verbs **zip** and **whizz** are often used about vehicles going quickly: The bus **whizzed/zipped** past me just as I got to the bus stop.

The verb **bolt** also suggests fast movement over a short distance but it also has the added association of running away from something: The thieves **bolted** when the alarm went off.

The verb **career** suggests that something is moving rapidly and is out of control: The car skidded and **careered** down a bank. The company seems to be **careering** into financial ruin.

The verbs **scamper**, **scurry**, **scuttle** suggest small rapid steps, often used to describe the way a small animal runs: As we went into the dark shed, we saw mice **scampering** away and spiders **scurrying** into corners. Cockroaches **scuttled** into a crack in the floor.

These verbs emphasise the fact that speed is increasing: **speed up**, **accelerate**. **Accelerate** is used only about transport, whereas **speed up** can also refer to movement on foot. Both verbs can be used figuratively: We'd better **speed up** if we're going to get there on time. The growth of the company has **accelerated** since it started exporting.

B Going up or down fast

These verbs suggest a downward movement, as well as speed: **plunge**, **plummet**: He put on a lifejacket and **plunged** into the icy water. Notice that they are mainly used metaphorically: When export sales began to decline, our hopes of business success **plummeted**. After the death of his father, he was **plunged** into despair.

These verbs suggest a fast upward movement: **rocket**, **soar**. Notice that they are mainly used metaphorically and have strong associations with financial matters such as prices and share values: When our export sales **rocketed**, our hopes **soared**.

The primary association of **soar** is with birds, and when it is used about people's feelings it provides associations of happiness and being carefree: My heart **soared** when I heard that he was coming home.

The opposite of **soar** and **rocket** in a financial context would be **slump** or **tumble**. Both suggest a rapid downward movement: Share prices **slumped** (or **plummeted**) on the stock market yesterday, with telecommunications companies **tumbling** most dramatically of all.

C Going slowly

These intransitive verbs emphasise that the movement is slow: **crawl, creep**. They are often used metaphorically: Prices have been **creeping** up since May. It was rush hour and the traffic was **crawling** along.

Totter also suggests a fairly slow movement, but it is one that is particularly unsteady as well: Mina **tottered** down the road, laden with parcels and bags.

Sidle means to walk anxiously and nervously: Sam **sidled up** to the boss's desk and coughed to attract his attention.

Dawdle means to move more slowly than is necessary, or to waste time: Don't **dawdle** on the way home.

Exercises

66.1 Answer these questions.

1 Would you be more likely to dash to the shops if you had plenty of time or if you were in a hurry?
2 If a car accelerates, does it speed up or slow down?
3 If you stop to look in shop windows, are you scampering or dawdling?
4 If traffic is said to be crawling, is it moving freely or is there a traffic jam?
5 If you plan to sell some shares, would you prefer their price to rocket or to tumble?
6 If a woman is wearing particularly high heels, is she more likely to scurry or to totter?
7 If a car slips on ice, is it more likely to be said to career or to dart across the road?
8 Who do you think is feeling more confident – a person who races up to greet you or someone who sidles up to greet you?
9 If you are thinking of buying your first flat, would you prefer the price of accommodation to be creeping up or to be soaring?
10 We sometimes say that people bolt their food. Does this mean that they eat fast or slowly?

66.2 Would you be pleased or not to read the following headlines in your newspaper?

1 Taxes rocket in new budget

2 Shares plunge in uncertainty over US presidency

3 Economic growth tumbles to new low

4 Hopes soar for more Olympic medals

5 Profits plummet

6 Jobless figures creep up

66.3 Which do you think is the best verb to fill each of these gaps?

1 When the car suddenly swerved to avoid hitting the dog, it .... out of control and crashed into a tree.
A popped B bolted C careered D dashed
2 When she switched the bathroom light on, she was horrified to catch a glimpse of cockroaches .... away into cracks in the tiles.
A plummeting B scuttling C creeping D nipping
3 I'm going to .... into town in my lunch hour. Can I get you anything?
A bolt B plunge C totter D nip
4 If you don't .... , you'll miss the bus and be late for school.
A accelerate B rocket C speed up D crawl
5 Meena's spirits .... when she learnt that she had won first prize.
A plunged B soared C zipped D tore
6 When the boy saw the fierce dog, he .... into the house.
A dawdled B careered C tottered D bolted
7 I'm just going to .... to the letter box to post these letters.
A scurry B totter C plunge D pop
8 Richard .... into the house, trying hard not to wake his parents.
A soared B crept C scampered D accelerated
9 The dog suddenly .... out into the road.
A tottered B darted C plunged D soared
10 We watched the cars .... past on the motorway.
A whizzing B tumbling C popping D darting

67 Cause and effect

A ‘Cause’ verbs and their collocations

The differences between these verbs are best learnt by observing their typical collocations.

Cause usually collocates with negative results and situations.

The new computer system has **caused** us a lot of problems.

His stomach cancer was **caused** by exposure to radiation.

cause
- sadness/unhappiness
- (a lot of) trouble/problems
- an illness, e.g. pneumonia
- a disaster / an accident

Produce is more neutral, and deals with more concrete results. It is used in formal contexts.

Scientists can **produce** statistics and figures that can prove almost anything.

Cooking the dish for a long time at a very low heat **produces** the best results.

produce
- a report
- statistics/figures
- good results / evidence

While *cause* usually collocates with negative situations, *give* can be used for positive or negative ones. *Give* is less formal than *cause*.

Our dog has **given** us a lot of pleasure over the years.

This car is **giving** me so much trouble, I’m going to get rid of it.

give
- (a lot of) pleasure/happiness
- a reason/motivation for something
- (a lot of) trouble
- good results

Generate is often used in contexts where people are forced to do more than usual, and in computer contexts. It sometimes has a rather negative feel. It is used in formal contexts.

It’s going to be difficult to **generate** sufficient interest in the project.

The government will have to **generate** the extra funds somehow or other.

generate
- revenue/income/money
- complaints / extra work / controversy
- graphics/documents
- interest/enthusiasm/publicity

Language help

Cause and *give* are often used for things happening without people doing anything, e.g. *The hurricane **caused** terrible damage.*

Produce and *generate* usually suggest some sort of intervention by people, e.g. *His presentation **generated** a lot of interest in the project.*

B Other ‘cause’ words

The news **provoked** a feeling of despair in everyone.
The events **precipitated** / **sparked** a political crisis. [quickly, suddenly caused]
The invention of the car **brought about** great changes in society. [gradually produced]
Your action has **resulted in** a formal complaint from a member of the public. [produced]
His problems **stem from** his difficult childhood. [be a result of]
Have you any **grounds for** suspecting him? [cause, reason]
The proposal **has implications for** traffic in the area. [is likely to cause certain results]
My argument **is based on** the available data. [has been developed as a result of = the available data provide the **basis** for my argument]

Exercises

67.1 **Decide which verb from the opposite page best fits each gap. There may be more than one possible answer.**

1 The decision by the government to relax the regulations has .... a lot of investment in the poorer regions.
2 We need to .... a list of names and addresses by six o'clock tonight.
3 Her death was .... by a sign falling from a shop front in the heavy winds.
4 The Governor's remarks almost .... a full-scale war between the two regions.
5 His stupidity .... in none of us being able to get home that night.
6 Your letters have .... me so much pleasure. Please don't stop writing them.
7 The book .... a lot of anger amongst female readers.
8 I don't necessarily want to .... a crisis, but I have some bad news to tell you all.

67.2 **A preposition is missing from each of these sentences. Add it in the correct place.**

1 I have good grounds believing that he is lying.
2 My suspicions are based what I saw with my own eyes.
3 The government's decision has serious implications the economy.
4 His fear of flying stems a film he once saw.
5 I'm glad to say that all her hard work has resulted success.
6 The riots will probably bring a change of government.
7 A considerable amount of damage was caused the tornado.

67.3 **Rewrite these sentences using the word in brackets.**

1 Because of the crash on the motorway, all traffic is being severely delayed. (CAUSED)
2 Thanks to your advice, we got there on time. (RESULTED)
3 There is a lot of interest in the minister's comments about tax law. (GENERATED)
4 She has many problems now as a consequence of her previous poor decisions. (STEM)
5 There were many flight cancellations because of bad weather. (BROUGHT)

67.4 **Use any of the words and expressions from the opposite page to connect the events in the left-hand column with those in the right-hand column, as shown.**

EXAMPLE *Scientists have produced statistics showing a direct link between smoking and cancer.*

1 scientists	stunning images and graphics
2 the higher taxes	statistics showing a direct link between smoking and cancer
3 icy roads	the break-up of his marriage
4 my old car	endless problems and involved me in a lot of expense
5 this software	riots in three cities
6 jealousy	a number of serious accidents this week

67.5 **Over to you**

Write sentences about something in your life which has:

- caused you a lot of problems.
- given you a lot of happiness.
- provoked a feeling of anger in you.
- resulted in embarrassment for you.
- brought about a change in your life.

68 Spot the difference: making comparisons

A Talking about similarity

collocation	meaning
I often feel there is a cultural **affinity between** London **and** New York. I **felt an affinity with** the writer as I read this novel.	closeness, similarity; feeling that different things/people have much in common
Her singing is more **akin to** that of Rihanna than Adele.	similar in spirit/feel
To **use** a sporting **analogy**, middle age is like half-time at a football match.	see similarities that help us understand something
The picture this news article paints **does not correspond to** the truth.	is not equal to / does not match
It's a mistake to **equate** the price of something with its true value.	consider as the same
She knew that to apologise would be **tantamount to** admitting she had failed.	the equivalent of (normally used in negative contexts)
The goals of the two sides in the war have become almost **interchangeable**.	so similar that they could be exchanged one for the other
Mrs Burton's house was **indistinguishable from** all the others in the street.	so similar you cannot see the difference

B Talking about difference: adjectives beginning with *di-*

example	contexts/comments
The **diverse** ethnic groups living in Malaysia give the country its cultural richness.	used to show a group is made up of different types of something
The **disparate** regions of Spain all have unique customs and cultures.	used for different types within a group, but emphasises separation and difference
This house is not **dissimilar** to the one I was born in.	very often used with *not*
They have widely **divergent** opinions.	often used to show contrasting opinions or ideas within a group
The Swedish and Norwegian languages are quite **distinct** from one another, even though they look similar when written.	used to describe differences where one might be deceived by similarities
It's easy to find our car in a car park because of its **distinctive** colour.	used to describe something that is easy to recognise because it is different
There are several **discrete** categories of verbs in English.	different and separate, not overlapping

Note the verbs associated with some of the adjectives above: to **differentiate** [to find a difference between], to **diversify** [to become or make more varied], to **diverge** [to move away, become more different from something], to **distinguish** [to notice the difference between two things].

Language help

Comparable (*to*) means similar in some way to something else, e.g. *The two girls are a* ***comparable*** *size*. [about the same size]

Comparative means when comparing different things. These collocations are common: **comparative silence/freedom/comfort**.

Exercises

68.1 One of these words is followed by a different preposition from the rest. Which word is it and which preposition does it need?

akin	correspond	dissimilar	distinct	tantamount

Now use the words above and their prepositions in these sentences.

1 The state of Maine in the USA is not .... parts of Scandinavia. They both have lakes and forests.
2 To pretend I didn't want to be with her would be .... telling a lie.
3 What you say .... what I've heard too. I'm sure it's correct.
4 His life story is more .... a novel by Charles Dickens than a James Bond film.
5 The culture of the north of the country is quite .... that of the south, and it's a mistake to think they are the same.

68.2 Fill in the missing words.

1 There is a close affinity .... Singapore .... Hong Kong; both are crowded, vibrant cities existing in a confined space.
2 I just cannot feel any affinity .... his poetry; it's too dark and cruel.
3 This version of her essay is indistinguishable .... the first version. I can't see any changes.
4 It would be a great mistake to equate his shyness .... coldness or unfriendliness.
5 His ideas are not that dissimilar .... mine.
6 The temperatures in Moscow are currently comparable .... those in New York.

68.3 Choose the appropriate word in these sentences.

1 Spanish and Portuguese cultures are quite *diverse* / *distinct*, even though, to the outsider, they may sometimes appear similar.
2 The way they weave carpets in this region is not *dissimilar* / *divergent* to the way they are made in neighbouring countries.
3 English verbs do not always fit very easily into *distinctive* / *discrete* categories. For instance, is the verb *used to* an ordinary verb or a modal verb like *would*?
4 Seen from the widely *disparate* / *divergent* viewpoints of left and right, the problem either originates in too much freedom or in too much state control.
5 It would be very difficult to unite the *disparate* / *discrete* tribes and ethnic groups to form one coherent political force.
6 Her CD collection contains quite a *divergent* / *diverse* selection of music, with everything from classical to heavy metal.
7 The two suits I liked are a *comparable* / *comparative* price.
8 We walked part of the way home together and then our paths *differentiated* / *diverged*.
9 As he'd been to a boarding school, John loved the *comparable* / *comparative* freedom he had at university.
10 The business used only to make bicycles, but they've now *diversified* / *distinguished* into a range of other cycling products.

69 Difficulties and dilemmas

A Nouns relating to difficulties

Fairly small difficulties: **a snag**, **a hitch**, **a glitch**. **Glitch** usually refers to a technical problem of some kind; the other two words are more general.
More important difficulties:
A **setback** means that progress has been stopped by something.
A **stumbling block** is something that prevents action or agreement.
A **pitfall** is an unexpected difficulty (often used in the plural).
An **obstacle** is anything that stops progress, either literally or metaphorically.
An **impediment** is something that prevents free action, progress or movement.
A **dilemma** is a situation where a difficult choice has to be made between two, sometimes unpleasant, alternatives.
An **ordeal** is a severe experience, which is very difficult, painful or tiring.

B Adjectives relating to difficulty

adjective	meaning	collocations
problematic	full of problems or difficulties	relationship, situation, concept
abstruse	difficult to understand	theory, argument, philosopher
arduous	difficult, tiring, needing much effort	climb, task, journey
complex	difficult to understand as it has many parts	issue, problem, theory, process
convoluted	unreasonably long and hard to follow	explanation, sentences, theory
gruelling	extremely tiring and difficult	journey, work, match, expedition
insufferable	difficult to bear, as it is annoying or uncomfortable	behaviour, heat, boredom, pain, person
obstructive	causing deliberate difficulties	person, measure, behaviour
tough	difficult to deal with or do	time, job, climate, decision
traumatic	shocking and upsetting	experience, past, childhood
wayward	changeable, selfish and/or hard to control	behaviour, child, person

Common mistakes

Difficulty is used in the singular in the expression *to have difficulty in doing something*: *I had great **difficulty in finding** a job at first* (NOT ~~great difficulties~~).

C Informal expressions relating to difficulties

Oh dear, more homework! **What a pain!** / **What a drag!** [What a nuisance!]
The software is good for editing still images, but editing video is a real **chore**. [boring job that has to be done]
What's eating him? / **What's got into him?** / **What's bugging him?** / **What's (up) with him?** [What's the matter with him?]
I can't face the **hassle** of moving house again. [situation causing trouble or difficulty]
My daughter keeps **hassling** me for a new bike. [asking again and again]
Having to listen to him singing is sheer **torture**! [used figuratively to refer to an unpleasant experience]
to slog (your guts out) / **to grind** / **to graft** / **to flog yourself to death** [to work hard]
in a fix / **in a spot** / **in a hole** / **up against it** / **up to your neck** [in a difficult situation]
The company's in a **sticky**/**tricky** situation now the workers are going to strike. [difficult]
I think I'm **off the hook** / **in the clear** / **out of the wood(s)** now. [freed from a difficult situation]
The **downside** of living here is the traffic thundering by. [the disadvantage of a situation]

Exercises

69.1 **Choose the best word from the box to complete the sentences. Put the word in the plural if necessary.**

glitch chore impediment dilemma ordeal pitfall snag stumbling block

1 Shona is caught in a terrible .... – should she move abroad with the man she loves or take the promotion she has been offered at work?
2 At first there were some .... with the software, but it's OK now.
3 Removing old files from my hard drive was a real .... – I spent four boring hours doing it!
4 The hostage is writing a book about his six-month ....
5 The proposal is very good. The only .... is that it is a little expensive.
6 Mark used to have a speech .... , but he's overcome it and is now an actor.
7 The leaflet gives new businesses information about typical .... to avoid.
8 Negotiations were going well until the issue of sick pay became a major ....

69.2 **Which of the adjectives in B opposite might you use to describe:**

1 a pupil who deliberately makes it hard for his teacher to continue with the lesson ....
2 an accident which affects the victim psychologically ....
3 a book that deals with very difficult ideas without simplifying them ....
4 a child who is very disobedient and self-willed ....
5 pain that is almost impossible to put up with ....
6 a speech that is very difficult to follow because the line of argument is very complex ....
7 an exhausting Arctic expedition ....
8 a decision that is not easy to make ....

69.3 **Fill the gaps in this conversation using words from the opposite page.**

A: What's got ^{1}.......................... you, Dan? You look really fed up!
B: Oh, I don't know. I've been slogging my ^{2}.......................... out at work and it's all getting too much. My wife says I should leave rather than go on flogging myself to ^{3}.......................... . But I really can't face the ^{4}.......................... of looking for something else at the moment.
A: What a ^{5}.......................... ! I'm also in a bit of a ^{6}.......................... .
B: Why? What's up ^{7}.......................... you then?
A: I'm in a ^{8}.......................... situation with my flat. The landlord's threatening to put the rent up. We've had quite a ^{9}.......................... relationship for some time now, and I'm having great ^{10}.......................... in finding somewhere else to live. That's the ^{11}.......................... of living in Cambridge – it's beautiful but accommodation is so expensive. Still, at least my economics exam is over.
B: Great! How did that go?
A: Well, studying for it was sheer ^{12}.......................... , but the exam itself wasn't too bad. It's a great relief it's over. Anyway, I hope you soon get through all your work and begin to feel off the ^{13}.......................... soon.
B: Thanks. I think I'll feel out of the ^{14}.......................... when this project is over.

69.4

Over to you

Answer these questions about difficulties you may have experienced in your life.

- When have you been in a dilemma? What were the choices that were facing you?
- Give an example of a project you were involved in that suffered a setback.
- Are there any downsides to living where you do at the moment?
- What obstacles have you had to overcome in your life so far?

70 Modality: expressing facts, opinions, desires

A Expressions based on modal verbs

I must admit/**confess**/**say** that I didn't enjoy the film.
You want me to lend you £1,000! **You must be joking!**
You **must have been frightened**/**worried**/**nervous**/**delighted**/**overjoyed** when you heard the news!
Don't look so miserable – **it may**/**might (well) never happen!**
What, may/**might I ask**, was the point of throwing your pen on the floor like that? (rather formal)
I was just strolling through the park when **who should I see** / **meet** / **bump into but** my boss.
Don't worry about spilling the wine. **Accidents will happen!** [accidents are inevitable]
The car **won't start**. What can I do?
That'll be Sean making that noise. He always plays his music very loudly.
A: Why are you so gloomy? The interview didn't go badly. **You might well** be offered the job, you never know.
B: **I should be so lucky**! [That is not likely!] All the other candidates were better qualified.

Common mistakes

Remember the apostrophe in *won't*: *The window* ***won't*** *open* (NOT ~~wont~~).

B Ways of expressing probability

The odds are he'll get the job. [it is likely that]
The odds are against her passing the exam. [it is unlikely that]
They **are bound to** get married in the end. [almost certain to]
She's **unquestionably** the best student in the class. [there is no doubt at all]
It was **apparent** that the negotiations were going badly. [obvious]
She'll be here by five o'clock, **for sure**. [I am sure] (usually comes at the end)
In all probability we'll get the job finished on time. [it is very likely]
If you are not highly disciplined when you go on a diet, **the chances are** you won't succeed. [it is probable that]
There's every likelihood that the price of petrol will rise soon. [it is very probable]

C Ways of expressing obligation and lack of obligation

It is **essential** that you (should) take strong footwear with you.
Wearing a safety helmet is **obligatory** in this area.
The road was blocked. We **had no option** but to turn back.
We **have an obligation to** preserve the school's good name.
Some courses are **optional** but Maths and English are **compulsory**.

D Ways of expressing a desire to do something

I am **determined**/**anxious**/**eager**/**keen**/**resolved** to do whatever I can to help.
He **wishes**/**desires**/**yearns**/**longs** to return home. (all rather formal except *long*)
She has **ambitions**/**aspirations** to become Prime Minister.

Exercises

70.1 Look at A opposite. Match the situations on the left with the responses on the right.

1 Are you going clubbing tonight? ☐
2 I painted my house bright green last week. ☐
3 The car won't start. ☐
4 You might win the lottery. ☐
5 I'm afraid I've broken a cup. ☐
6 Erica and Matt have just had twins. ☐
7 Someone's at the door. ☐
8 I only just managed to escape. ☐

a Shall I have a look at it?
b They must be overjoyed.
c You must have been terrified.
d It'll be the Patels.
e What, may I ask, was the point of that?
f I should be so lucky! Do you know what the odds are?
g You must be joking! I'm much too old.
h Don't worry. Accidents will happen!

70.2 Rewrite these sentences using the words in brackets.

1 Anna'll probably get the job. (LIKELIHOOD) *In all likelihood Anna'll get the job.*
2 You must put on a life jacket. (OBLIGATORY)
3 I expect that Karl will take over his father's job. (ODDS)
4 You must do what the police officer says. (OPTION)
5 I'm sure they'll settle down eventually. (BOUND)
6 It's likely we'll meet someone we know at the party. (CHANCES)
7 We could see that there was going to be trouble. (APPARENT)
8 It's possible you'll end up with no job at all if you don't try. (WELL)
9 There's no doubt that this is the most serious problem we've encountered. (UNQUESTIONABLY)
10 With all this snow, the train will be late, definitely. (SURE)
11 I was in the park today, and I saw Beth. (SHOULD)
12 She really wants to get into university next year. (EAGER)

70.3 Write down three rules for a school using the words in brackets.

1 (ESSENTIAL) ....
2 (COMPULSORY) ....
3 (OPTIONAL) ....

70.4 Complete these sentences using the appropriate form of the words in brackets. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 The town council expressed their .... to do what they could to help ease the traffic problems in the city. (DETERMINE)
2 The poem is about the poet's .... for his lost innocence. (YEARN)
3 Did you make any New Year's .... this year? (RESOLVE)
4 The President is .... that you attend her in her office immediately. (DESIRE)
5 Her .... to please is very touching. (EAGER)
6 She would have enjoyed her year abroad more had it not been for her .... for her boyfriend at home. (LONG)
7 Amy is a very .... person. (AMBITION)
8 Liam has .... to be a great athlete. (ASPIRE)

70.5 Answer the questions.

1 Which verb from the opposite page could you use to make this sentence a little less formal?
It was a hard day. I was just yearning to get home and go to bed early.
2 *With his qualifications, he's bound to get a good job in the oil industry.* Does this sentence mean (a) he may work in the oil industry, (b) he has no choice but to work in the oil industry, or (c) he's almost certain to work in the oil industry?
3 Find four pairs of synonyms in this list of words. Which word is the odd one out?

resolved eager desire likelihood determined obligation keen wish probability

71 Number: statistics and quantity

A Changes in numbers and quantities

During the five years 2010–2015, internet use across the world was estimated to have increased **twofold**[1], while in China, it **quadrupled**[2]. In the developing world, internet use grew **by a factor of**[3] three.

The **drastic**[4] changes in interest rates resulted in a **threefold**[5] increase in the number of people unable to keep up their mortgage repayments.

The estimated number of stars in the Milky Way has been **revised upwards**[6] in light of recent discoveries.

The weather patterns have **deviated from the norm**[7] in recent years.

Sales **fluctuate**[8] from month to month.

Interest rates have **seesawed**[9] all year.

Share prices have been **erratic**[10] this last month.

[1] the suffix *-fold* means 'multiplied by that number'
[2] increased by four times
[3] multiplied by
[4] severe and sudden
[5] twofold, threefold, etc. can be used as an adverb or adjective
[6] changed to a higher number (you can revise something downwards to a lower number)
[7] moved away from the standard or accepted pattern
[8] keep going up and down
[9] gone up and down at regular intervals
[10] not regular and often changing suddenly

B More expressions for describing statistics and numbers

When the different amounts were added up, the **aggregate** was £600,000. [total]

I've **aggregated** all the figures. [added up all the different amounts]

The Finance Minister said the July rise in inflation was only a **blip**. [temporary change]

There seems to be a **correlation between** mathematical and musical ability. [connection between facts or things which cause or affect each other]

The percentage of **GDP expenditure** which goes on education varies considerably from country to country. [**G**ross **D**omestic **P**roduct: the total amount that a country produces] [the amount of money spent on something]

There's a **discrepancy between** our figures and yours. [difference between two things that should be the same]

The **ratio** of men to women in the Engineering Faculty was 3 to 1. [the relationship between two amounts, which expresses how much bigger one is than the other]

The company's figures were found to be **flawed** and the accountant was fired. [inaccurate]

She suffered **multiple** injuries in the accident. [very many of the same type, or of different types]

Our data are **inconsistent with** yours. [not in agreement with]

C Assessing quantity

Let me give you a **ballpark figure**[1] of how much money we expect to make this year. If I **tot everything up**[2], we begin to **run into six figures**[3]. There are a lot of **variables**[4] and our **projected figures**[5] may not be all that accurate. So I've **erred on the side of caution**[6] and I've **rounded things down**[7] rather than up, in order to give you a **conservative**[8] estimate.

[1] guess believed to be accurate
[2] add everything up (less formal)
[3] get a figure over 100,000
[4] different factors that may change
[5] planned figures
[6] been cautious
[7] make, say, 2.5 into 2 rather than 3
[8] cautious

Exercises

71.1 Use words from the opposite page to fill the gaps.

1 The chain has increased its number of restaurants .... in the last ten years. There were 20; now there are 80.
2 Many teachers were worried after the government announced it was going to cut its .... on schools.
3 The number of students enrolling for the course has increased by a .... of three, from 50 to 150 in just two years.
4 There was a sudden and .... rise in the number of serious road accidents during the extreme bad weather last winter.
5 We need to .... the estimate downwards from 3,000 to about 2,500.
6 There seems to be a .... between the two sets of data which suggests that the experiment was successful.
7 International trade is important to the country and makes up one third of its ....
8 The company .... its number of overseas branches from three to 12 in the space of five years.

71.2 Rewrite these sentences using the words in brackets so that they keep the same meaning.

1 The two reports of the accident appear to be inconsistent. (DISCREPANCY)
2 Oil prices were up one moment and down the next last year. (SEESAW)
3 Monthly average temperatures have been different from what we usually see this year. (DEVIATE, NORM)
4 The water levels didn't go up and down as much as we'd expected last year. (FLUCTUATE)
5 I don't need to know all the individual figures – just give me the total. (AGGREGATE)
6 His moods change – one minute he's happy, the next he's depressed. (ERRATIC)

71.3 Answer these questions.

1 If you give someone a ballpark figure, is it (a) precise or (b) rough?
2 If you round up 68.7, does it become (a) 69 or (b) 68?
3 If you want to give a conservative estimate when forecasting profits, would you prefer to (a) underestimate or (b) overestimate your figures?
4 If your weekly wage (in dollars) has just run into four figures, how much do you earn?
5 If you tot up all the numbers between 1 and 10, what do you get?
6 Name two variables that might affect a soft drinks company's projected profits.
7 If the ratio of girls to boys in a school is 1.5 to 1, are there more girls or boys?
8 If you err on the side of caution, do you (a) take care not to make any mistakes, (b) adopt a cautious attitude, or (c) make errors through lack of caution?

71.4 Complete the word formation table below. Use a dictionary if necessary. Do not fill the shaded boxes.

verb	noun	adjective
deviate		
▨	discrepancy	
		flawed
▨		inconsistent
err		
		multiple

72 Permission: getting the go-ahead

A Permitting and agreeing that something may happen: verbs

All these verbs are formal and many are typically found in newspapers.

verb	meaning	example
accede	accept, but often associated with initial unwillingness	The factory owner **acceded to** the workers' demands.
acquiesce /ˌækwi'es/	permit something to happen, but often associated with a degree of secrecy or conspiracy	The Foreign Minister **acquiesced in** the plan to restrict imports from certain countries.
assent	agree to something, often associated with plans, proposals, ideas, etc.	The shareholders **assented to** the takeover.
authorise	give official permission	Only **authorised** people are allowed entry.
condone	approve or allow something which most people consider to be wrong	The judge **condoned** the use of reasonable force by police officers.
countenance	consider giving assent or permission, often used in negative contexts	No government would ever **countenance** abolishing taxes altogether.
endorse	give official approval to something	The cabinet has **endorsed** a proposal to change the way universities are funded.

B Permitting: phrasal expressions

The committee have been **given carte blanche** to investigate the problem and come up with a solution. [/ˌkɑː(r)t 'blɑːntʃ/ complete freedom to do whatever they think necessary; *formal*]

The city has **given the go-ahead for** / **given the green light to** the new car park. [given permission for the building to start; *informal*]

C Prohibiting and disapproving: verbs

verb	meaning	example
bar	officially exclude, forbid someone access to something	Three students were **barred from** using the library because they had damaged books.
clamp down	use your full power to prevent or limit something	The government has decided to **clamp down** on illegal immigration.
outlaw	make something illegal	Parliament has passed a bill **outlawing** smoking while driving.
veto /'viːtəʊ/	use your official power to forbid	The President has **vetoed** the plan to open membership of the club to the public.

Common mistakes

Regardless is not an adjective but an adverb. It means *in spite of something*. It can be used on its own: *Her parents said she couldn't go to the party but she went to it* ***regardless***.

Or it can be followed by a phrase with *of*: *They built the extension to their house* ***regardless of*** *the fact that they had not received formal planning permission*.

Exercises

72.1 Fill the gaps with a suitable verb which expresses the meaning in brackets. There may be more than one possible answer.

1 The committee were in favour of the proposal, but the President .... it. (used his/her official power to forbid it)
2 I would never .... the use of capital punishment, no matter how serious the crime. (approve or refuse to condemn)
3 The newspaper revealed that the Prime Minister had .... in the secret decision to sell arms to the dictator. (agreed to it, without openly admitting it)
4 The new bill going through Parliament will .... the use of unlicensed drugs by doctors. (make illegal)
5 The manager has .... the wearing of casual clothes to work on Friday. (used their official power to permit)
6 She has been .... from lectures because she disrupted one last term. (forbidden to enter/attend)
7 The President finally had to .... to demands for his resignation. (agree after being initially unwilling)
8 The police have announced that they are to begin to .... on motorists who exceed the speed limit. (take serious action to reduce the number of)

72.2 Find and correct the preposition errors in these sentences.

1 Alex parked his car outside the shop regardless to the No Parking sign.
2 The Minister said he would never accede for the union's demands.
3 It's time the police clamped down to cyclists going through red lights.
4 The President has assented at the latest world environment plan.
5 The Minister is likely to acquiesce with the proposal.
6 The college principal has given the green light on the students' proposal for an end-of-term festival.
7 The company has been given the go-ahead at a new factory in the city.
8 The inspector had carte blanche for investigate every aspect of the business.

72.3 Look at these headlines containing further words and expressions connected with permission and prohibition. Match them with the news clips. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 GOVERNMENT TO LIFT EMBARGO ON COMPUTER IMPORTS

2 Railway franchise extended for five years

3 POLICE TO ADOPT ZERO-TOLERANCE OF HOOLIGANISM

4 NEW TRADE SANCTIONS ANNOUNCED

a The company will be allowed to run services for the additional period, provided all conditions …

b The hope is that firms will benefit from less severe competition in domestic markets if imports are subject to …

c … at present, chips and processors must be home-produced or else …

d … anyone displaying threatening behaviour will be liable to immediate arrest …

73 Complaining and protesting

A Expressions connected with complaining

It is important to use these expressions in appropriate situations. Some examples are given here. The expressions in each group go more or less from weaker to stronger, but much depends on who you are speaking to and what the situation is.

More common in informal situations
You've got to do something about that window of yours. It rattles in the wind and keeps me awake.
For goodness' sake! **I'm fed up with** / **sick of** all your moaning and grumbling. Cheer up!
Look here! **I've just about had enough of** your stupid comments.
Look, **this is just not on**! You promised to be here by two o'clock and it's almost three! [not acceptable]
Enough is enough! Please, no more arguments – be nice to each other!

More neutral in tone
I'm not at all satisfied with the service I've received.
Something will have to be done about that pile of rubbish. It can't be left in front of the house.
I wish you would turn your radio down. **I wish you wouldn't** play your music so loudly.
You never help around the house. **It just won't do**! You're going to have to change your ways.

More common in formal situations (typically in connection with bad service or behaviour)
I wish to complain about the delay in delivering my order.
The carpet in my room is stained and dirty. **This is most unsatisfactory**.
I take great exception to your unfair comments about our committee.
I really must object to being made to wait so long before seeing the manager.
The water pipe you have repaired three times in our kitchen is leaking again. **This is (simply) unacceptable**.
Your bus driver left the children by the roadside in pouring rain with no adult in attendance. **This is shameful.** [should make you feel embarrassed and guilty]

B Verbs and nouns relating to complaining and protesting

verb	meaning	noun
complain (about)	express dissatisfaction or annoyance	**complaint**
protest (about) /prəˈtest/	strongly express complaint, disapproval or disagreement	**protest** /ˈprəʊtest/
object (to)	be against something or someone	**objection**
remonstrate with somebody / **remonstrate about something**	complain to someone / complain about something; *formal*	**remonstrance** (very formal and not common)
find fault (with)	criticise or complain about even small mistakes	**fault-finding**
grumble (about)	complain in a quiet but angry way	**grumble**
gripe (about)	to complain continuously; *informal*	**gripe**
grouse (about)	to complain, usually often; *informal*	**grouse**
whinge (about)	complain persistently; *informal*	**whinge**, **whingeing**

Common mistakes

The verb *object to* is followed by a noun, a pronoun or an *-ing* form of a verb. Don't use the base form of a verb: *I **object to being** made to wait here for an hour before seeing the Principal* (NOT ~~object to be~~ made).

Exercises

73.1 Where would you be more likely to hear these statements, in informal or more formal situations? Mark them I or F. How might the same idea be conveyed at the other end of the scale of formality?

1 Look here! I've just about had enough of your rudeness! ....
2 I am writing to remonstrate against some injustices in your regulations. ....
3 You've got to do something about the state of your desk. ....
4 I wish to complain about the poor facilities at the station. ....
5 You can't possibly come here not wearing a tie. ....
6 This behaviour is most unsatisfactory. ....
7 The lack of toilet facilities for disabled people is shameful. ....
8 The delay in completing my order is simply unacceptable. ....

73.2 Complete each of these sentences with one word.

1 What's Jodie whingeing .... now?
2 We .... great exception to the proposed plans.
3 They objected loudly to .... forced to sit on the floor because there were no chairs.
4 He's always writing letters to the newspaper, finding fault .... something or other.
5 Something will have to be .... about traffic problems in the city.
6 I wish people .... talk loudly on their phones when I'm on the train.
7 This standard of work just won't .... !
8 You would be .... advised to start looking for another job.
9 I heard her remonstrating .... a police officer about the road being closed.
10 I'm tired of hearing you constantly moaning. Enough is .... !

73.3 How might you complain in the following situations?

1 You are complaining to your flatmate about your noisy neighbours; they've been having wild parties every weekend for several months now.
2 You're complaining in a fairly neutral way to your neighbours about a tree of theirs that has grown so high it blocks out the sun.
3 You're writing a formal email to the local newspaper about the problem of noise at night from a factory in your neighbourhood.
4 You're complaining to your boss, with whom you have a fairly informal relationship, about new and longer working hours.
5 You're complaining to a close friend about having to work longer hours.
6 You're writing an official, formal letter of complaint to the top level of management about a lack of safety procedures at work.

73.4 The people below are all complaining indirectly. What do they really mean in each case?

1 (*walking into a room*) 'It doesn't smell very nice in here!'
2 (*on a school report*) 'Jorge tends to complete his work rather too quickly.'
3 (*in a reference letter*) 'Punctuality is not Simone's highest priority.'
4 (*at a work appraisal*) 'You'd be well advised to reassess your long-term plans.'
5 (*commenting on a room*) 'It would benefit from a lick of paint.'
6 (*coming into a room*) 'The TV seems to be a bit loud.'

74 Apology, regret and reconciliation

A Apologies and excuses: collocations

adjective collocations	noun
sincere, heartfelt	**apology**
good, perfect, lame, flimsy, weak convincing, detailed, phoney	**excuse** **explanation**
cast-iron, convincing, perfect, phoney	**alibi**
flimsy, false	**pretext** [pretended reason for doing something rather than real reason]

He offered his most **heartfelt apology** for having offended everyone. [most sincere apology]
It was a rather **lame excuse**, and nobody really believed it. [weak excuse]
The police were convinced the suspect's **explanation** was **phoney**, but could not prove it. [false]
The police questioned her about the murder, but she had a **cast-iron alibi**: she had spent the whole day teaching at the local primary school. [firm reason why she was innocent]
He got an interview with her on the rather **flimsy pretext** of being interested in her research. [weak and not very believable excuse]

B Regretfulness in legal contexts

CRIME WATCH

When he was pronounced guilty of fraud, Jack Mosley showed no **remorse**[1] whatsoever. He was sentenced to ten years in prison. All three of his companions who were on trial with him were **acquitted**[2] of the crime and walked out of the courtroom free. Mosley later **repented**[3] whilst in prison and his sentence was reduced by one year.

[1] feeling of guilt or regret

[2] declared not guilty (noun = **acquittal**)

[3] said he was sorry and asked for forgiveness (noun = **repentance**)

The President issued a **posthumous pardon** to the man, who, it seems, had been wrongly accused of treason. [official forgiveness after someone's death for crimes they were unjustly convicted for]
The Committee of Inquiry **exonerated** the Minister from all responsibility for the disaster. [declared someone to be free of blame]
The condemned man received a last-minute **reprieve** the day before he was due to be executed. [official order stopping or delaying punishment]
It is hard for the victims of crime to **forgive and forget**. (these two verbs are always in this order)

C Peace and reconciliation

type of agreement	explanation and example
treaty	written agreement between two or more countries: The two nations signed a **peace treaty** in 2014.
armistice	agreement to stop war while peace discussions take place: The generals from the opposing armies **declared**/**signed an armistice**.
truce	agreement between two enemies to stop fighting for a period of time: The two fighting politicians **called a truce**, agreeing to put their differences behind them for the good of the country.
accord	official agreement, especially between countries: There are fears that the current period of **accord** between the two sides in the civil war is at risk of collapsing.
ceasefire	agreement to stop fighting in order to allow discussions about peace: Both sides have agreed to a **ceasefire** while talks are underway.

Exercises

74.1 Fill the gaps with suitable adjectives. There may be more than one possible answer.

1 She had a .... excuse for not mowing the lawn: she was allergic to grass.
2 I thought he gave rather a .... excuse and I'm not convinced at all.
3 He went around to her flat on the .... pretext of wanting to borrow a book.
4 The police had to let her go free, since she had a .... alibi.
5 I want to offer you all my most .... apology for the trouble I've caused.

74.2 Choose the correct adjective to complete each sentence.

1 I persuaded him to come on the rather *false* / *flimsy* pretext that I needed some help repairing my bike.
2 The police have struck George off their list of suspects as he has a *cast-iron* / *sincere* alibi.
3 Lauren's excuse for not coming to my party was pretty *convincing* / *lame* – you'd have thought she could have come up with something better than that.
4 Kate sends *heartfelt* / *perfect* apologies for not coming with me this evening – she's got a bad dose of flu.
5 The police officer asked us for a *detailed* / *phoney* explanation of the events leading up to the incident.
6 I hope you've got a *weak* / *good* excuse for forgetting it's my birthday today.

74.3 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first, using the word in capitals. Do not change the form of the word in capitals.

1 'I'm sorry I broke your vase, Gina,' Matt said. (APOLOGISED)
Matt .... her vase.
2 He had acted in a very inhumane way, but the criminal did not seem to repent. (REPENTANCE)
The criminal did not .... the inhumane way in which he had acted.
3 At the end of the trial, the accused was acquitted. (ACQUITTAL)
The trial ....
4 Sam did not offer any explanation for his strange behaviour. (EXPLAIN)
Sam .... he had behaved so strangely.

74.4 Correct the errors in these sentences.

1 The President granted him a repentance just an hour before he was due to be executed.
2 He was exonerated of murder in 2014, but two years later was convicted of armed robbery in the same courtroom.
3 She showed a complete lack of reprieve for her evil deeds and just laughed when the judge sentenced her.
4 The Public Inquiry pardoned him from all blame for the accident at the factory.
5 Just before he died, the old man said he remorsed all the bad things he had done in his life.
6 Ten years after his death, Daniel Taylor was given a humorous pardon by the government when another man confessed to the crime he had been hanged for.
7 He treated her badly and she says she simply cannot forget and forgive.
8 The ceasefiring is due to start at 9 pm.

74.5 Rewrite the underlined parts of the sentences using words from C on the opposite page and fill the gaps with a suitable verb. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 The two armies .... a period without fighting during the religious holiday.
2 Both governments .... to the terms of the document ending the war permanently and it was signed on 15 August 1954.
3 The long-standing agreement to work together between the government and the unions is in danger of ....
4 The generals .... the agreement to end fighting while peace terms were worked out at midday on 25 February 1996.

75 A pat on the back: complimenting and praising

A Collocations with *compliment* and *praise*

The boss would get better results if she **paid** her staff **compliments** occasionally.

He asked us what we thought of his suit, but he was really only **fishing for compliments**.

Take it as a compliment that he feels relaxed enough to fall asleep at your dinner party!

A **back-handed compliment** and a **double-edged compliment** are ones that appear to be both positive and negative. Back-handed compliments tend to have a malicious intent, whereas double-edged ones are usually made innocently.

I took it as a **back-handed compliment** when he said I was looking good for my age.

She **paid** me the **double-edged compliment** of saying my driving was pretty good for a beginner.

The phrase **give praise to** is usually used only (though not exclusively) for a god. An action or person that deserves praise is **praiseworthy** and people are **praised for** their actions.

Other common collocations are **widely**/**highly praised**, **praised to the skies**, **to sing someone's**/**something's praises**, **to shower**/**heap praise on someone**/**something**. To **damn someone with faint praise** is to praise with such a lack of enthusiasm that you give the impression of actually having rather negative feelings.

Common mistakes

The verb *to compliment* is followed by *on*:
He complimented me ***on*** *my guitar playing*
(NOT ~~He complimented me my guitar playing~~).

B Other expressions relating to praising

expression	meaning	example
pay tribute to	praise; *formal*	At the memorial service, I **paid tribute to** his kindness.
give someone a standing ovation	stand up and clap loudly for a long time	At the end of the concert, the audience **gave** the young pianist **a standing ovation**.
extol the virtues/**benefits of**	praise highly; *formal*	At the conference, the Prime Minister **extolled the virtues** of the new trade treaty.
be the toast of	be admired for some recent achievement (often used about artists and celebrities)	A few months ago, hardly anyone had heard of her but now **she's the toast of** Hollywood.
pat someone on the back / **give someone a pat on the back**	praise, often children (used mostly metaphorically)	My teacher **patted me on the back** / **gave me a pat on the back** for my good marks in the maths test.
earn/**win plaudits**	get positive comments; *formal*	The exhibition **earned plaudits** from all the major reviewers.
laud (adj. = **laudable** (of behaviour), **laudatory** (of comments or remarks))	praise highly in official situations; *formal*	The Prime Minister has **lauded** the new peace initiative.

These mostly informal expressions imply praising someone for your own benefit: **to flatter**, **to make up to**, **to crawl**, **to suck up to**, **to lick someone's boots**. Someone who behaves like this can be called **smarmy**, **slimy** or **a crawler** (all informal), a **flatterer** (neutral) or **servile**, **obsequious** (more formal).

Flatter can also be used more positively. That dress **flatters** her figure. [makes her figure look better than it really is]

The noun **flattery** is often used in the phrase **Flattery will get you nowhere!** [insincere praise will not achieve anything]

Exercises

75.1 Look at A opposite and fill the gaps in these sentences with one word.

1 A: Do you like my new hairstyle? B: Don't .... for compliments.
2 At the meeting everyone was .... your praises.
3 He's not very good at .... people compliments.
4 Mrs Carrington is always praising her pupils .... the skies.
5 It may sound a bit double-edged, but I think you should .... what she says .... a compliment.
6 He never knows what to say when fans .... praise on him.
7 I didn't enjoy the film but it has been very .... praised by the critics.
8 Look at this reference. It's really .... the candidate with faint praise.

75.2 Look at the table in B opposite. Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 The performers were given ☐
2 In the speech, the new manager paid ☐
3 They're always extolling ☐
4 Matt's design earned him ☐
5 The teacher gave Becky ☐
6 The new young Czech player was ☐

a tribute to her predecessor.
b a pat on the back for her drawings.
c the toast of the tennis world.
d a standing ovation.
e the virtues of living in the country.
f the highest plaudits from the judges.

75.3 Look at the words below the table in B. Write each of the following sentences in four different ways. Indicate which of your sentences are particularly formal or informal.

1 He's always sucking up to the boss.
2 I wish she wasn't so smarmy.

75.4 Complete this word formation table. Do not fill the shaded boxes. Give two answers for some of the words. Use a dictionary if necessary.

verb	noun	adjective
compliment		
praise		
laud	▨	
flatter		
crawl		
smarm	▨	

75.5 Choose one of the words from the table in 75.4 to complete these sentences.

1 Although she didn't win a prize, the judges were very .... about her efforts.
2 Jake's a real .... , so I never take much notice of his compliments.
3 When he discovered the size of his mistake, he had to .... to the boss.
4 Her actions were foolish but her motives were ....
5 There's no point saying how good I am. .... will get you nowhere!
6 Whilst we cannot but .... the skill of their actions, we must express a certain disapproval of the risks they took.

76 Promises and bets

A Promises

If you **promise someone the earth**/**moon**, you promise them a great deal. It is usually implied that such a promise is unrealistic: The afternoon **promises** to be interesting! [the speaker expects it will be interesting = We **anticipate** that the afternoon will be interesting] To **anticipate** something is to expect it before it happens.

Promise can also be used to indicate positive future development: The child already shows great **promise** as a violinist. She's a **promising** artist although her style is still rather immature.

An **oath** / **to swear** is a formal promise. In court, witnesses are **put on**/**under oath** when they have to swear to tell the truth.

Notice how **swear** is often used in informal spoken English in expressions:

I **could have sworn** I left my purse on the table. [was absolutely certain]

I think she lives on Rose Street but I **couldn't swear to** it. [am not totally sure]

My mother **swears by** these vitamin pills. [uses them and thinks they are wonderful]

Tom often uses **swear words** / **bad language**. [taboo expressions]

To **pledge** (**a pledge**) means to promise something, often friendship or money: Mayor Williams has **pledged** millions of dollars to improve the city centre.

To **vow** (**a vow**) is to make a determined decision or promise to do something: He **vowed** to discover who had killed his father. At a marriage ceremony, the couple **exchange vows**. Both **vow** and **pledge** are found more in written than spoken English.

New Year's resolutions are special promises **to turn over a new leaf** at the beginning of a new year. [to change your behaviour for the better]

Resolutions and **vows**, like **promises** or **pledges**, can be **made**, **kept** or **broken**.

If you **go back on your word**, you break a promise.

Language help

Swear can mean either to make a solemn promise or to use taboo language.

B Bets

To **bet** (**a bet**) is to risk something, usually money, on the unknown result of something, in the hope of winning more money; people spend (and lose) a lot of money **betting** on horse racing or football matches, for example. Putting money on the results of a game of some kind is called **gambling**.

The amount of money that you risk is your **stake**. You can **stake** a sum of money on something happening. If something is **at stake**, then it is at risk: Many lives will be **at stake** if the flood barrier is not built. A more formal word for **bet** is **wager**: She put a **wager** of £10 on a horse. Both words can be used in a non-literal sense: I'd **wager** that he will come to a bad end.

There are a number of informal expressions connected with betting.

Your best bet would be to look for a part-time job. [the best decision or choice]

You think Stuart'll win? **Don't bet on it!** [I think what you've just said is unlikely to happen]

My granny enjoys **having a flutter** on the horses. [having a small bet]

I'd **put (good) money** / **bet my life on** James getting the job. [I'm sure that James will get the job]

Do you feel like coming to the beach with us? **You bet!** [I certainly do!]

You can also **hedge your bets** by investing in several companies. [protect yourself from the results of making a single wrong choice]

The **odds** are the statistical or betting chances of something happening.

What are **the odds of** Olivia finishing her course, do you think?

The odds are against her getting that promotion.

Exercises

76.1 Which sentence in each pair sounds more formal?

1 A: Ricky promised to love her always.
B: Ricky pledged to love her always.
2 A: Tom swore he would take revenge.
B: Tom vowed he would take revenge.
3 A: Lou wagered a lot of money on the result of the elections.
B: Lou bet a lot of money on the result of the elections.
4 A: Lina made a resolution at New Year to give up smoking.
B: Lina made a vow at New Year to give up smoking.

76.2 Fill the gaps in these sentences with one word.

1 He .... her the moon but they ended up in a tiny flat in the least attractive part of town.
2 At the trial, the witnesses were all under .... to tell the truth.
3 When you're revising, your .... bet would be to focus on Shakespeare. There are always lots of questions about him!
4 My mother's not a real gambler, but she does like to have the occasional .... on the horses.
5 Rob promised to give me his old car, but he's gone .... on his word and sold it to his neighbour.
6 Marina's bound to pass her driving test first time. I'd bet my .... on it!

76.3 Rewrite these sentences using the word in brackets, so meaning is the same.

1 I think you should stay overnight in a hotel near the airport. (BET)
2 My father drinks these herbal teas and believes they are wonderful. (SWEARS)
3 John's been rather lazy with his homework, but he has promised to try harder next year. (LEAF)
4 I was sure I locked the door when I went out. (SWORN)
5 The writer's new play sounds as if it is likely to be as good as his last one. (PROMISES)
6 I'm sure that the Democratic Party will win the next election. (MONEY)
7 Do you ever buy national lottery tickets? (FLUTTER)
8 Her mother disliked the film because it contained so much bad language. (SWEAR)
9 The documentary promises to be controversial. (ANTICIPATE)
10 I minimised my risk by buying shares in both of the companies that had a serious chance of winning the contract. (HEDGE)

76.4 Over to you

- 'Promises and piecrusts are made to be broken, they say.' (*Jonathan Swift*, Irish writer, 1667–1745)
  What point is Jonathan Swift making, in your opinion, and how is his use of language effective?
- 'To promise not to do a thing is the surest way in the world to make a body want to go and do that very thing.' (*Mark Twain*, American novelist, 1835–1910)
  Do you agree with him?
- Look at what some people promise one another during a wedding service:
  '… to have and to hold from this day forward, for better for worse, for richer for poorer, in sickness and in health; to love and to cherish, till death us do part.' (*part of Church of England wedding vows*)
  What wedding vows do people make in your country? Can you translate them?
- In the UK and the US, witnesses in law courts swear that the evidence they give will be 'the truth, the whole truth and nothing but the truth'.
  What oath do witnesses have to swear in your country?

77 Reminiscences and regrets

A Looking back: sharing memories

A: It's great to see you again. Gosh, it's ten years since we were at school together! Any idea what the school is like these days?

B: No, I've been a bit **out of touch**[1] with things ever since I moved away from London.

A: I wonder **what became of**[2] that maths teacher. I think his name, **if I recall**[3], was Mr Sanderson. When I **think back**[4], I realise now how difficult things must have been for him, having to teach the likes of us! And do you ever **hear anything of**[5] James?

B: No, I haven't heard a thing.

A: And I often wonder what Sanjay ended up doing. I've lost touch with him too. **Thinking back**, we **had some great times**, didn't we?

B: Yeah. Seeing your phone there **reminds me of** how we used to text under our desks, right under the teacher's nose.

A: Yeah, that **takes me back to**[6] the day my phone rang when a school inspector was observing our class and I got into big trouble.

B: Yes, I have **a vague memory**[7] of that. Actually, **it's all coming back to me now**[8]. They confiscated your phone and you stormed out of the classroom!

A: Yeah. But I must say that **what stands out in my mind**[9] is the amazing freedom we used to have.

B: Me too. When **I look back**, I realise how much things have changed.

A: Yes, I often find myself **reminiscing about**[10] my teenage years and wonder if our children will have the same happy memories when they grow up.

B: Yes, we all tend to **look** at the past **through rose-tinted spectacles**[11], don't we? But I guess a bit of **nostalgia**[12] does nobody any harm!

[1] not knowing what has happened recently

[2] where he is and what happened to him

[3] if I remember correctly

[4] think about the past

[5] receive any news about

[6] makes me remember

[7] not a very clear memory

[8] I'm beginning to remember it more clearly

[9] what I remember more than other things (you can also say **sticks out in my mind**)

[10] thinking about pleasant things that happened in the past

[11] see only the pleasant things about a situation and not notice the things that are unpleasant (you can also say **rose-coloured spectacles**)

[12] a feeling of pleasure and sometimes slight sadness at the same time as you think about things that happened in the past

B Expressing regret

I **regret** not spending more time with my aunt when she was ill.
He showed no sign of **remorse** for what he had done.
She said she felt great **shame** for what had happened and apologised to us all. [embarrassment and guilt about something bad that happened]
I felt great **pangs** of guilt and remorse thinking of all the bad things that had happened and my part in them. [sudden sharp feelings, especially of painful emotion; collocates frequently with **guilt**, regret, **conscience**, remorse]

Some formal, rather literary ways of expressing regret:
I **rue** the day we ever met. [I regret very much that we ever met; collocates strongly with 'the day' and 'the fact that']
I **lament** the passing of time. [I feel sad that time passes]
I **mourn** my lost opportunities. [I feel sad about opportunities I had but did not take up]

Common mistakes

Don't confuse *remind* and *remember*: *Seeing the class photo again* ***reminded*** *me of my unhappy schooldays* (NOT ~~remembered~~ me).

Exercises

77.1 Fill the gaps with one word.

1 .... back, I can't believe how I survived the first day in my old job. It was horrendous.
2 What .... in my mind when I think of my schooldays was our class trip to Edinburgh.
3 What .... of that friend of yours who wanted to be a pilot? Did he ever get to be one?
4 Do you ever hear .... your old college friend Martine these days?
5 When I .... , we had quite a hard life; my parents were poor.
6 When I get together with my old schoolmates, we often .... about the fun times we had.
7 I'm a bit .... of .... with what's happening with our old hockey team since I stopped playing, but someone said they're doing quite well these days.
8 I got a sudden feeling of .... as we drove past our old house. We'd had some happy times there.
9 When I saw the photo, it all .... back to me just what a wonderful holiday we had had.
10 You're always looking at the past through rose- .... spectacles. It wasn't all wonderful, you know.
11 I have only a very .... memory of my early childhood in Canada. It was all so long ago!
12 What happened to your sister? If I .... , she wanted to study chemistry, didn't she? Did she ever do that?

77.2 Look at C opposite. Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1 I felt some pangs ☐
2 I rue the day ☐
3 I feel a certain remorse ☐
4 I regret ☐
5 I mourn ☐
6 I felt no shame ☐

a my lost youth.
b because I'd done nothing wrong.
c not contacting her earlier.
d I agreed to go into business with him.
e of guilt about what happened.
f about what happened. It was my fault.

77.3 Write these sentences in more formal language. Use the word in brackets.

1 I'm sorry that I didn't buy her a birthday present. (REGRET)
2 They didn't seem the least bit concerned about what they had done. (REMORSE)
3 I now greatly regret the fact that I discontinued my studies. (RUE)
4 I wish our relationship hadn't broken down. (LAMENT)
5 The whole village felt sad about the loss of the beautiful trees. (MOURN)

77.4 Over to you

- What stands out in your mind when you think about your own childhood?
- Do you ever think 'I wonder what became of …?' When this happens, who or what do you think about?
- Is there any aspect or time of your life that you only have vague memories of?

78 Agreement, disagreement and compromise

A Agreement: sharing views

verb + preposition	meaning
Her complaints **tally with** the comments we have received from other people.	match or agree with
His opinion **concurs with** the general opinion of the experts on this matter.	share/agree with an idea/opinion
The President **found** herself **in** full **accord with** the opposition.	be in complete agreement with
Your views **coincide with** mine on the question of crime and punishment.	be the same as
His behaviour doesn't **conform to** the school's expectations.	fit in with
My parents **approve of** my choice of profession and support me fully.	think something is right or good

The noun from **approve** is **approval**; an action can **meet with someone's approval**. [be liked by that person]

Note the expression **to agree to differ**, which is used when people continue to hold different opinions but see no point in continuing to argue about them: We couldn't reach a consensus at the meeting, so we just **agreed to differ**.

B Political and social disagreement

noun	meaning
There is **dissent** in the party on the issue.	opposition to the accepted way of thinking
The general **discord** between the committee members had a negative impact on the club.	lack of agreement or harmony (suggests arguments and rows)
The growing **rift** in the Democratic Party over defence policy is now public.	disagreement (with different groups/factions forming)
A major **split** in the Labour Party resulted in several ministers taking the decision to form a new party of their own.	when a larger group breaks up into two or more smaller groups because they disagree about something
There is (a) major **division** in the Socialist Party over economic policy.	similar to split but more abstract and formal (can be countable or uncountable)
Government plans to build a new airport in this area are bound to cause **controversy**.	a lot of disagreement about a subject, usually because it affects a lot of people

C Compromise

The two sides have **reached a compromise** over the plan to build the new road across a nature reserve.

The Minister was not prepared to **compromise on** the issue of raising university fees.

The government **made** several **concessions to** the protesters. [accepted some of the demands of]

The management and the union **reached a settlement** and the strike ended. [reached a decision/agreement]

In this particular case, we should **exercise** some **discretion** and not say anything that would cause more conflict. [be sensitive, use our judgement]

Language help

A good way to agree with what someone has said is to say either **Absolutely**! or **Precisely**!

A: *It would be risky to leave your job without getting another one first.*

B: ***Precisely!/Absolutely!***

Exercises

78.1 **Add the prepositions which normally accompany the verbs to the table. Then use these expressions to fill the gaps in the sentences below. Use each item once only.**

verb	preposition	verb	preposition
approve		concur	
conform		compromise	
tally		(be in) accord	
coincide			

1 The list of principles .... to the normal idea of what a set of rules should be trying to achieve.
2 My views .... completely with yours. We think on exactly the same lines.
3 This plan is in .... with the proposal made by the committee in 2011.
4 Her latest statement simply does not .... with her earlier ones. She is contradicting herself.
5 I .... of all the changes suggested, and hope they can be made to work.
6 For once all the committee members .... with one another.
7 Even though I disagree, I'm willing to .... on your proposal to increase our expenditure.

78.2 **Match these newspaper headlines with the most suitable extract below.**

1 RIFT OVER PENSIONS POLICY GROWS
2 DISSENT MUST BE KEPT WITHIN LIMITS, MINISTER SAYS
3 PARTY SPLIT OVER TAX CUTS NO LONGER A SECRET
4 DIVISION IN EUROPE OVER RESPONSE TO AFRICAN CRISIS
5 RELIGIOUS DISCORD THREATENS SOCIAL HARMONY

a Approximately 50% of members now think it would have been better to leave things as they were.

b Intolerance towards others' beliefs seems to be increasing and there have been isolated outbreaks of violence.

c There is increasing pressure on the Minister to consider a change to her Party's approach to social welfare.

d Several different national approaches have emerged which could weaken unity.

e He made the point that to disagree is everyone's right, but a sense of responsibility is also important.

78.3 **Rewrite the sentences using a noun from the same root as the underlined word. Make any other changes necessary.**

1 The President conceded that the opposition party should be allowed a place on the committee.
2 I think you should always be as discreet as possible when it is a question of people's private lives.
3 The landowners settled their dispute with the authorities over the proposed factory site.
4 The negotiating team were able to compromise and put an end to the labour dispute.
5 The decision to close the railway line has proved very controversial.
6 There are a number of dissenting views among the Board members.
7 The forthcoming leadership election has divided the Green Party.
8 Javier's parents approved of his decision.

79 Academic writing: making sense

A Presenting arguments and commenting on others' work

If you **advocate** something, you argue in favour of it: He **advocated** capital punishment.
If you **deduce** something, you reach a conclusion by thinking carefully about the known facts: Look at these sentences and see if you can **deduce** how the imperfect tense is used.
If you **infer** something, you reach a conclusion indirectly: From contemporary accounts of his research, we can **infer** that results were slower to come than he had anticipated.
If someone's work **complements** someone else's, it combines well with it so that each piece of work becomes more effective: Elswick's (2016) research **complements** that of Johnson (2012).
If someone's work **overlaps** with someone else's work, it partially covers the same material.
You might call someone's work: **empirical** [based on what is observed rather than theory], **ambiguous** [open to different interpretations], **coherent** [logically structured], **comprehensive** [covering all that is relevant], **authoritative** [thorough and expert].

B Talking about figures and processes

If figures are referred to as **arbitrary**, they are based on chance or personal choice rather than a system or data that supports them.
Figures that **deviate from the norm** are different from what is typical.
If statistics **distort** the picture, they give a false impression.
If you refer to the **incidence** of something, e.g. a disease, you are talking about how often it occurs.
If something, e.g. the incidence of brown eyes, is **predominant**, it is the largest in number.
If things, e.g. stages in a process, happen **in sequence**, they happen in a particular order.
If you want to say that something happens in many places or with many people, you can say that it is **widespread**, e.g. widespread outbreaks of an illness, widespread alarm.

C Words typically used in academic contexts

academic verb	everyday verb
append	add (at the end)
conceive	think up
contradict	go against
demonstrate/indicate	show
denote	be a sign of, stand for
negate	make useless, wipe out
perceive	see
reflect upon	think about
reside	lie, live
trigger	cause
utilise	use
academic expression	everyday expression
an instance of something	an example of something
the converse	the opposite
crucial	very important
notwithstanding	despite this
somewhat	rather
thereby	in this way
whereby	by which (method)

Exercises

79.1 Which of the five verbs in A opposite best fits in each sentence?

1 The French and Swedish teams work in similar areas, but their research, fortunately, does not .... However, the French data .... the Swedish data very well.
2 Look at the complete set of graphs and see if you can .... the rules governing the data from them.
3 This article .... a different approach to the problem.
4 A great deal can be .... about the artist's state of mind from his later works.

79.2 Which of the five adjectives in A best describes each of these things?

1 a textbook written by the most highly regarded expert in the field
2 research based on a survey of the population
3 a poem which can be understood in two quite different ways
4 an argument which is well-expressed and easy to follow
5 a textbook which gives a broad overview of an entire discipline

79.3 Answer these questions which use vocabulary from B opposite.

1 If the incidence of asthma in children is increasing, what is actually going up: (a) the seriousness of asthma attacks or (b) the number of asthmatic children?
2 What are the next two numbers in this sequence: 1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36?
3 If the average mark in a maths test was 68% and Ulla's mark deviated noticeably from that average, what do we know about Ulla's mark?
4 If facts are distorted, are they presented (a) accurately, (b) clearly or (c) in a misleading fashion?
5 If sociologists choose the subjects of their research in an arbitrary fashion, do they take care to get people from an appropriate balance of backgrounds?

79.4 Use items from C to rewrite the underlined parts of the sentences in a more formal academic style.

1 The information lies in archives that must not be opened until 2050.
2 He thought up his theory while still a young man.
3 Each of the symbols in the phonetic alphabet stands for a sound.
4 This study went against what was previously held to be true, and so started a great deal of discussion amongst specialists in the field.
5 Details of the experiment have been added at the end of the report.
6 Jelowski's book thinks about the rise and fall of great Empires over two millennia. She sees the Roman Empire as an example of a pattern that has repeated itself in other times and other parts of the world.

79.5 Rewrite this paragraph. Change the bold words and use words from C opposite to make it sound more academic.

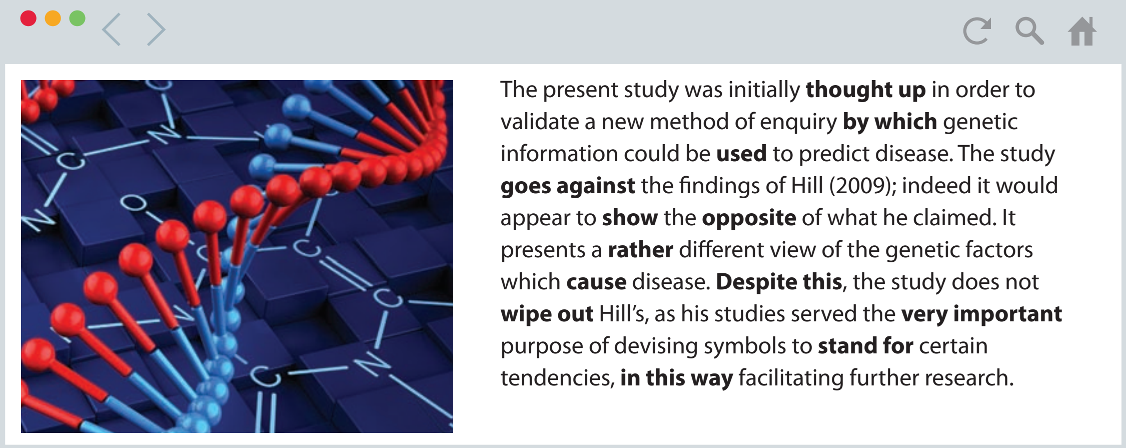

The present study was initially **thought up** in order to validate a new method of enquiry **by which** genetic information could be **used** to predict disease. The study **goes against** the findings of Hill (2009); indeed it would appear to **show** the **opposite** of what he claimed. It presents a **rather** different view of the genetic factors which **cause** disease. **Despite this**, the study does not **wipe out** Hill's, as his studies served the **very important** purpose of devising symbols to **stand for** certain tendencies, **in this way** facilitating further research.

80 Academic writing: text structure

A Explaining, reinforcing, exemplifying

Look at these extracts and note the contexts in which the words in bold occur.

The Prime Minister **reiterated**[1] her concern that the debate should not be dominated by personal attacks. She **summarised**[2] the new policy as being progressive and radical …

Peter Burnett's comments **epitomise**[3] the attitude of many parents nowadays in **asserting**[4] that schools are to blame for anti-social behaviour among children and that …

It was a philosophy first **expounded**[5] by John Ruskin in the 19th century. If human …

The recent events **underscore**[6] the need for a better understanding of the environmental impact of biotechnology. If this phase in the …

Several scientists have **posited**[7] a link between climate change and bird migration patterns …

In an attempt to **account for**[8] the lack of interest, political analysts have looked at past voting patterns. On the basis of …

[1] repeated, restated

[2] described briefly the main facts or ideas

[3] are a perfect example of

[4] saying that something is certainly true

[5] developed, proposed

[6] emphasise

[7] suggested as a basic fact or principle

[8] explain, find the cause of

B Categorising and including

Chinese visitors **comprised** / **made up** 70% of the hotel's guests last year. [consisted of]
The course **is comprised of** two elements: reading and writing. [is composed of]
These two approaches can be **subsumed** under one heading. [brought together, united]
The book **embraces** a number of issues, from economic to religious ones. [covers, includes]
Her philosophy is difficult to **categorise**. [label as belonging to a particular type or class]

Common mistakes

Consist is followed by *of* when we refer to the elements which compose something: *The country **consists of** five major regions* (NOT ~~consists on/in~~ or ~~consists five~~).

C Structuring the text

Here are some words and expressions for ordering and arranging the parts of an essay.

function in the text	example
beginning	I should like to **preface** my argument with a true story. /ˈprefɪs/
mapping out the text	I shall **return** to this point later in my essay.
connecting points	This **brings me**/**us** to my next area of discussion, which is finance.
focusing	I should now like to **address** the question of the arms race.
ordering points	The arguments are presented **in ascending**/**descending order** of importance.
quoting/referring	The ideas of several writers will be **cited** in support of the argument. The text **alludes to** several themes that need closer examination.
including/excluding material	There will only be space to **touch upon*** the big question of political responsibility. It is impossible to **deal with** all the issues in this short essay. Discussion of the roots of the problem is **beyond the scope of** this essay.
drawing conclusions	We are **forced to conclude** that unemployment will always be with us.

**touch upon* means to include something only briefly

Exercises

80.1 Look at these extracts from essays and use words from A opposite to improve their style, making the underlined words more formal.

1 The response from the public really shows us the importance of having a full investigation of the facts.
2 This view of the world was originally laid out by the Ancient Greek philosophers.
3 It is not easy to find the reason for the fall in population of these birds.
4 Economists have said there might be a link between exchange rates and a general lack of confidence in the European Union.
5 I should like to say again here that the issue is not one that can be easily resolved.
6 The recent events are the best example of the dilemma faced by politicians the world over.
7 In a 2010 article, Charles Plestow said with great certainty that the whole European Medieval era had been misinterpreted.
8 The lecturer briefly repeated the main arguments of her talk at the end.

80.2 Rewrite these sentences using the verb in brackets and making any other necessary changes.

1 70% of the landmass is mountain ranges. (COMPRISE)
2 A wide variety of subjects are dealt with in the book. (EMBRACE)
3 I think these three sections can all come under one heading. (SUBSUME)
4 The poems in this book have been divided up into different sections by topic. (CATEGORISE)
5 The course has five modules, from which students must choose three. (CONSIST)

80.3 Fill the gaps with words from C that express the meaning in brackets.

1 I shall .... to this line of argument later in the book. (come back to)
2 The question of monetary union .... us to our next topic: the idea of a federal Europe. (means we've arrived at)
3 Smithies just .... upon the subject of internet policing, but does not go into it in depth. (mentions only briefly)
4 I shall attempt to .... the problem of censorship later in this discussion. (attend to, consider)
5 Psychological factors in learning foreign languages are .... this article. (outside of the topic area)
6 I shall discuss the poets in .... order, that is to say I shall comment on the least important ones first. (going up)
7 In the final analysis, we are .... that there is little hope of stamping out illegal drugs altogether. (have no choice but to believe)
8 This unit has attempted to .... a range of useful vocabulary for formal writing. (give all the necessary information about)

80.4 Over to you

Choose six words or expressions from this unit which you could use in your special subject(s) of study. For each word or expression, write a sentence relevant to your subject(s).

81 Writing: style and format

A Aspects of writing

If you're in a hurry, you can **scribble** a note to someone. [write quickly, without much care] A note is likely to be in a more **chatty** style than, say, a business letter. [when used about writing; *informal*]
I'll just **jot down** (informal) / **make a note of** (more formal) your phone number before I forget it. [write something down to remember it]
She got so bored at the meeting she spent the whole time **doodling**. [drawing and writing irrelevant things on the paper in front of her]
I'll **copy out** the information on hotels for you. [copy in writing]
I'm just **drafting** an application letter for that job I told you about. [making a first attempt at writing something] (noun = **draft**: the first **draft** of an essay)
Some students **write down** everything the lecturer says. [copy in writing what is spoken]
She's **writing up** her dissertation at the moment, so she's very tired and stressed. [making a proper final written text based on previous drafts]
She bought the **manuscript** of a famous poem at the sale. [original version produced by the author]

B Type and print

Learning to **touch-type** was one of the most useful things I've ever done. [type, using all your fingers without looking at the keyboard]
I've finished my book. I'll email the **typescript** to the publisher tomorrow. [an author's text that has not yet been published]
I'll **run** you **off** a copy at the same time. [print out]
I've done the text, but I want to **format** it properly before printing it. [create the page as it will appear when printed]
I usually **cut and paste** or **copy and paste** bits of material from my notes when I'm writing an essay, then link them all together. [move text from one place to another electronically]

The letters and numbers on a keyboard can all be called **characters** – a password often needs to be at least eight **characters**, for example.

These words are in bold and *these words are **italicised*** / ***in italics***.

These words are in a **shaded box**.

These words are in a different **font** size from the rest and *these words are in a different **font*** *or* ***typeface***.

"This sentence is in **double inverted commas** / **double quotation marks**." 'This one is in **single quotation marks** / **single quotes**.'

This sentence **is indented**. [begins away from the normal margin]

** This sentence has two **asterisks** in front of it.

- This sentence has a **bullet** (point) in front of it.

Types of **brackets**: ( ) **round** brackets
< > **diamond**/**angle** brackets
[ ] **square** brackets
{ } **curly** brackets

CAPITALS or **UPPER CASE** (more technical) is the opposite of **small letters** or **lower case**. This person has written her name in **block capitals**: *MONICA KEEBLE*

This is part of the first page of an academic book. Look at the structure and the names of the different elements. The numbers on the extract are in **superscript**. [written above the normal line]

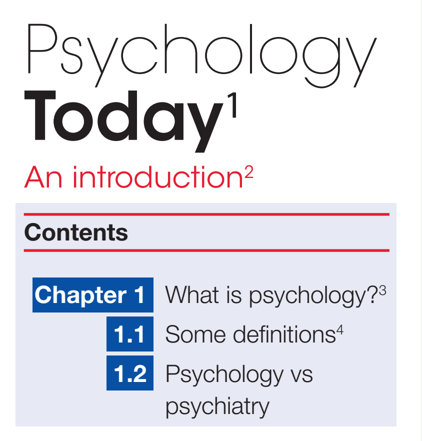

Psychology
Today[1]
An introduction[2]

Contents

Chapter 1 What is psychology?[3]
1.1 Some definitions[4]
1.2 Psychology vs psychiatry

[1] title [2] subtitle [3] chapter heading
[4] sub-heading (within a chapter)

Exercises

81.1 Complete these sentences. The first letter of the missing word or phrase is given.

1 Let me just j.......................... .... your email address, or I'll forget it.
2 I'll just s.......................... a note for Preeti to tell her where we've gone.
3 I spent the whole lesson just d.......................... in the margin of my exercise book, I was so bored.
4 She's been w.......................... .... her PhD thesis for the last three months, that's why no one has seen her.
5 I'll email you a d.......................... of the letter, so you can suggest any changes before we send it.
6 In a bibliography, it is normal practice to put book titles in i.......................... rather than inverted commas, as some students do at first.
7 If you use even a sentence from someone else's work in your essay, then you must put it in q.......................... and acknowledge where it came from.
8 Your computer password should consist of at least eight c.......................... , with at least one number.
9 Please r.......................... .... a copy of the agenda for everyone coming to the meeting.
10 Writers sometimes use an a.......................... to indicate that there is a footnote.

81.2 Circle the correct answer to describe these sentences.

1	**I love the summer.**	upper case	bold	italics
2	WILL YOU BE QUIET!	upper case	bold	italics
3	*This is crazy*.	upper case	bold	italics
4	Can you read this?	new typeface	new font size	
5	I've missed you.	new typeface	new font size	
6	so i wrote to mr smith.	upper case	lower case	block capitals
7	*ANNE TAYLOR*	small letters	lower case	block capitals
8	{See next page}	diamond brackets	curly brackets	square brackets
9	[Not suitable for children]	round brackets	curly brackets	square brackets
10	<johnjo@speedmail.com>	diamond brackets	curly brackets	square brackets

81.3 Match up the words to make compound nouns.

1	bullet	☐	6	quotation	☐	a	marks	f	commas
2	type	☐	7	block	☐	b	typing	g	case
3	inverted	☐	8	lower	☐	c	point	h	brackets
4	square	☐	9	touch	☐	d	heading	i	face
5	font	☐	10	chapter	☐	e	capitals	j	size

81.4 Fill the gaps in these sentences with a word from the opposite page.

1 It's better to be more formal when you write an academic essay and not use such a .... style.
2 I think you should .... your CV differently if you want it to look good when it's printed out.
3 She works in the museum, conserving ancient ....
4 Dima got into trouble with the teacher because his essay was a cut-and- .... job straight from the internet.
5 You waste so much time typing with just two fingers – you really should learn to ....
6 I'll .... a letter of complaint to the restaurant, but I'd like you to check it before I finalise it.
7 Mrs Ward taught the children to .... the first line of each paragraph when they wrote stories.
8 My PhD thesis was called *Socialisation through children's literature* and its .... was *The Soviet example*.

82 Whatchamacallit: being indirect

A Vague and general words

In informal speech, we make frequent use of rather vague words and words with many different or rather general meanings, like **thing** or **get**.

That's **one of the things** I want to talk to him about. [thing = subject]
Laura **has got a thing about** mice. [she either really likes or dislikes them]
Don't **make such a big thing of it**! [Don't make so much fuss about it!]
There **wasn't a thing** we could do about it. [a thing = anything]
For one thing, I haven't got time. **For another thing**, I can't afford it. [Firstly …, secondly …]
The thing is, I have to take my car for a service tomorrow morning. [used to introduce a topic or a problem, or to provide an explanation]
As things are at present, … [as the situation is]
I don't **get** what you're saying. [understand]
We must **get** that parcel in the post today. [send]
She had big plans to travel the world but she just never **got it together**. [took positive action or organised herself]
Jill will **get things sorted (out)** today. [organise things so that the problem is solved]
I hope I can **get her to myself** this evening. [be alone with her]

B When you can't think of the word

When we can't remember a word or name, we often replace it with a vague word.
For objects: **thingy**, **thingummy** /ˈθɪŋəmi/, **thingumijig** /ˈθɪŋəmədʒɪg/, **thingamibob** /ˈθɪŋəməbɒb/, **whatsit**, **whatchamacallit** /ˈwɒtʃəməˌkɔːlɪt/, **whatnot**
Have you seen the **thingy** we use for keeping the door open?
For people: **whatsisname** /ˈwɒtsɪzneɪm/ (for a man); **whatsername** /ˈwɒtsəneɪm/ (for a woman)
Did you see **whatsisname** today?
Note that these words can be written in different ways. It is also possible to use **thingy** for either a man or a woman: I was talking to **thingy** about that yesterday.

C Quantifiers

Some quantifiers are common in informal speaking but are rare in formal writing. For example, the following expressions mean *a lot of*:

bags of **a load of** **loads of** **a mass of** **masses of** **dozens of** **tons of** **umpteen**

I can help you – I've got **bags of** time.
They can afford to go on expensive holidays as they've got **loads of** money.
I've tried phoning her **umpteen** times but she never seems to answer her mobile.
These expressions mean a little or some: **a bit of**, **a scrap of**.
I've got **a bit of** a headache.
You've been sitting there all day but you haven't done **a scrap of** work.

D Being indirect and less threatening

Here are some expressions which we can use in speech to make what we are saying sound less threatening and potentially offensive to the person we are talking to.
It's **not the most** practical/sensible/intelligent/appropriate thing you've ever done. [it's impractical / not very sensible / rather unintelligent / inappropriate]
It's not the most practical idea – and **I mean that in the nicest possible way**.
No offence intended, but I think you've misunderstood the basic problem.
If you don't mind me/my saying so, I think that you could have handled that better.
I gather you feel upset by the recent changes in the office. [I've heard it from someone]
Incidentally, have you paid your money for the club outing yet? [often used to introduce a new subject into the conversation in an indirect way]
What a load of idiots – **present company excepted**, of course. [not including you or me]
The staff here, **myself included**, have not been working quite as hard as we should.

Exercises

82.1 **Look at A opposite. Explain what the underlined expressions with *thing* and *get* mean in the following sentences.**

1 Don't make such a big thing about it. I'm only going for a few days.
2 Jess has got a thing about wanting straight hair, but her natural frizz suits her much better.
3 The thing is, I don't know when we'll be at home.
4 Unless things change, we won't be able to get away for a holiday.
5 We have a number of things to get through before lunchtime.
6 I don't get on with them very well. For one thing, we like different things. For another, I find them quite rude.
7 Did you get what the lecturer was saying? I didn't get a thing.
8 I hope we can get everything sorted out today. It's time we got it together!

82.2 **What words do you think the speaker is looking for in each of these sentences? Choose from the words in the box.**

colander hammer rolling pin protractor sieve Daniel Craig

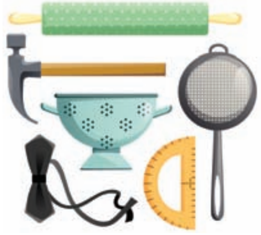

1 Where's the thingummy for sifting the flour so there aren't any lumps in it?
2 Look, isn't that whatsisname? The actor who was in the latest *James Bond*?
3 I can't find the thingumibob for measuring angles.
4 Have you got a whatsit, you know, for bashing in nails?
5 Where's the thingy for draining potatoes?
6 I need a whatchamacallit – you know, one of those things for flattening pastry.

82.3 **Look at the sentences in 82.2 again and find a different vague word from the one used in the exercise, e.g. *Where's the whatchamacallit for sifting the flour so there aren't any lumps in it?***

82.4 **Look at C. Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences in a more informal style.**

1 The garden had great numbers of pink and yellow flowers.
2 I've asked her out a great many times, but she's always got some excuse.
3 He hasn't done any useful work here since he first got the job.
4 I've got a large number of papers I want to get rid of.
5 Alice invited a great many people to her party at the weekend.
6 Yasmin's got a great deal of energy – I don't know where she gets it all from!
7 A great many people were turned away because the lecture room was full.
8 She was told many times not to leave any valuables on her desk.

82.5 **Look at D, and then fill the gaps in this text.**

This is a very boring party, present [1]......................... excepted, of course. No one, myself [2]......................... , seems to be making much of an effort to chat. I [3]......................... a lot of people couldn't come. [4]......................... , no [5]......................... intended, but don't you think you could have dressed a bit more smartly? If you don't [6]......................... me saying so, I think you should have changed out of your gardening clothes. I mean that in the nicest [7]......................... way, of course!

82.6 **Over to you**

- Have you got a thing about anything?
- Is there anything you need to get sorted out this week?

83 Give or take: more vague expressions

The words and phrases in this unit are mostly for informal conversation, except where indicated, and may sound inappropriate in more formal contexts.

A Vague expressions for numbers and quantities

He left a sum **in excess of** $1 million when he died. [more than; used in more formal contexts]
It'll cost you **somewhere in the region of** £900 a month to rent a flat. [less formal = around/about £900]
It'll take five hours, **give or take** half an hour, to drive there. [could take 4.5 or 5.5 hours; *informal*]
The second meeting is **approximately** two and a half months after the first one. [could be between 9 and 11 weeks.; *rather formal*]
It'll take a week **or so** to get the computer repaired. [more than a week, but unclear how much more; *informal*]
Quite a few students hadn't registered. [a surprisingly or undesirably *large* number]
There was only a **smattering** of women authors among the prize winners. [small proportion]
Would you like a **dash**/**smidgen** of chilli sauce with your kebab? [very small quantity]
I'd like a **dollop** of ice cream with my fruit salad. [usually a small amount; however, we can also say a large dollop]
I used to have **stacks of** CDs with my files on, but now I have them all on one memory stick. [a large number or quantity of; *informal*]

B Making things less precise in informal conversation

More or less is often used with verbs and adverbs to make things more vague:
I think we've **more or less** solved the problem with the computer now.
My English is **more or less** the same level as the other students in the class.
A bit and **a bit of a** are used with adjectives and nouns to soften the meaning:
I'm **a bit** fed up with all the complaints I'm getting.
We were in **a bit of a** panic when we heard there was a strike at the airport.
Or whatever, **or something**, **things like that** and **that kind of thing** are useful expressions for referring vaguely to things and actions:
You could work on Saturday, then spend Sunday going to museums or galleries **or whatever**. [or similar activities]
If you don't want tea, have a lemonade **or something**. [any other kind of drink you want]
In the evenings we played board games **and things like that** / **and that kind of thing**. [different kinds of entertaining activities]
We need a big container made of plastic; a dustbin or **something along those lines** would do. [something fitting that description]
He said he was fed up with all the attacks and criticisms, **or words to that effect**. [or similar words expressing the same meaning]

Common mistakes

We do not usually use *more or less* with people's ages: *He's **about** 35* (NOT He's ~~more or less~~ 35).

Exercises

83.1 Make the numbers in these sentences less precise, using expressions from A opposite. Follow the instructions in brackets.

1 The company will invest £10.3 million in new technology over the next five years. (formal, meaning 'more than')
2 It will cost you £10,000 to have the whole house redecorated. (less formal, approximately)
3 It could take six, seven or eight hours to drive to Aberdeen, depending on the traffic. (an informal *and* a more formal version)
4 Twenty-seven students failed the exam. I was rather surprised and disappointed. (a surprisingly large number)

83.2 These sentences contain some more vague language items used in conversation which are not presented on the opposite page. Underline the items that make the meaning less precise. Make a note of the grammar (i.e. is the item used with nouns, adjectives, etc.?).

1 Her hair's a sort of reddish colour, and I'd say she's, well, forty, forty-fourish.
2 The garden was a bit on the big side, but it was very pretty.
3 There was a kind of elasticky thing that held the two parts together, and I've lost it.
4 They're good shoes. They're comfortable on long walks and that.
5 I've been to the doctor's and had treatments and suchlike, and I'm sure it helps in one way or another.

83.3 Fill the gaps in these sentences with suitable words from A opposite.

1 I had a large slice of chocolate gateau with .... of cream.
2 Just a .... of milk in my coffee, please. I like it quite dark.
3 He put .... of hair gel on before going out to the party.
4 Most of the people in the class were Spanish, with just a .... of other nationalities.
5 She put a .... of mayonnaise on her salad and mixed it all up.

83.4 Put an appropriate adjective or noun in the gap. There will usually be more than one possible answer. Then underline the vague expressions in each sentence.

1 It's a bit .... that she hasn't rung. I hope she's not ill.
2 The computer keeps crashing; it's a bit of a ....
3 It was a bit .... ; I couldn't remember his name. I'll apologise next time I see him.
4 If you don't want a big meal, you could have a .... or something.
5 Make yourself at home. There are some magazines there, or you can just .... or whatever.
6 It's a sort of craft shop; they sell .... and things like that.
7 When you go on business trips, do you have time to go .... and that?
8 There were six of us working, so we'd more or less .... by 5 pm.

83.5 Over to you

Which expressions from the opposite page could you use to talk about:

- the amount of rent you pay for your accommodation or the amount you spend on food each week?
- how long it takes you to get from home to your workplace or place of study?
- any favourite items you like to add to your food, e.g. salt, cream, milk, ketchup?

84 The way you say it

A Verbs denoting volume: from quiet to loud

Mumble and **mutter** are both usually negative: Stop **mumbling**! I can't hear what you're saying.
He was **muttering** something under his breath – probably complaining, as usual.
Murmur can be more positive: They **murmured** their approval when he told them the plan.
The phrase **without a murmur** means without any protest, complaint or comment:
They accepted it all **without a murmur**. I was surprised; normally they argue about everything.
Raise your voice can be used in positive or negative contexts:
You'll have to **raise your voice** a bit. She's a little hard of hearing. [speak louder]
Don't you **raise your voice at** me! [Do not speak in that loud, angry tone.]
Shout, **yell**, **scream**, **roar** and **shriek** are all followed by **at**: Don't **shout at** me!
Yell often conveys urgency, anger, frustration; it is also used when there is much surrounding noise:
He **yelled at** the children to stop messing around with his computer.
'Stay where you are!' he **yelled** above the noise of the traffic.
Shriek means loud and very high-pitched. It can be used in positive and negative contexts:
'Oh, wow! That's fantastic!' she **shrieked**.
Roar suggests very loud volume, but deeper-pitched, like a lion. It is used in positive and negative contexts:
The crowd **roared** as he kicked the ball into the back of the net.
'How dare you come in here!' he **roared** angrily.

B Verbs describing speech and styles of conversation

Tom and Lily are always **nagging (at)** each other. [criticising faults or duties not done]
Stop **bickering over** who sits by the window, you two! [arguing in an irritated way usually about something petty; synonym = **squabble**]
They spent all evening **slagging off** their colleagues. [criticising in an insulting way; *very informal*]
Jessie is always **whining** and **whingeing**. [complaining in an annoying way; *informal*, negative]
He's been **chatting away** on the phone all morning. [suggests light, non-serious talk; note how *away* is used to emphasise continuous/extended talk]
We always **gossip about** work when we go out together. [talk about people, rumours, etc.]
It took him a long time to realise they were **winding him up**. [/ˈwaɪndɪŋ/ teasing, fooling him; *informal*; noun = **wind-up**, often used in phrase, a **complete wind-up**]
I realised she was **buttering me up**. [saying nice things because she wanted something from me; negative]
Rick tends to **exaggerate** his problems, so don't take him too literally. [make something seem greater than it really is; noun = **exaggeration**]
Meg is inclined to **generalise** on the basis of her very limited experience. [make general statements about something; noun = **generalisation**]

C Speech and articulation problems

example	meaning
She speaks with a **lisp**. She **lisps**: she says 'thing' instead of 'sing'.	difficulty in making an 's' sound and making a 'th' sound instead
He hates speaking in front of people because he's got a really bad **stammer**.	speak with abnormal pauses and repetitions
'I want to t-t-t-tell you something,' she **stuttered** nervously.	repeat sounds at the beginning of words
He was **slurring** his words because he had drunk far too much alcohol.	his words had a slow, lazy sound, difficult to understand
I want to tell her I love her, but I **get tongue-tied**.	cannot say what I want to say because of nerves, i.e. emotional rather than physical problem affecting speech

Exercises

84.1 Without looking at the opposite page, can you remember the following?

1 a verb meaning 'to argue in an irritated manner' ....
2 a phrase meaning 'without complaining' ....
3 a verb meaning that someone often makes a 'th' sound instead of a 's' or 'z' sound ....
4 three verbs meaning 'speak very loudly' that are followed by *at* ....
5 how the verb *roar* is different from the verb *shriek* ....
6 a verb meaning talking about people, usually when they are not present, often about their private affairs ....
7 a verb meaning to tease someone or fool them to make them look silly ....
8 a noun meaning making something sound more important or worse than it really is ....

84.2 Fill the gaps with one word.

1 'I want to c-c-c-c-come with you,' she .... nervously.
2 Lara got .... , perhaps because of the famous people present, and didn't say a word all evening.
3 I wish you'd speak up and stop .... I can't hear a word you're saying.
4 I had to .... at him to be heard, the noise of the plane was so loud.
5 'I love you,' he .... softly.
6 I hate people who .... about their workmates. I never talk about other people.
7 The drugs had made her speech very incoherent. She was .... all her words.
8 She speaks with a .... – she says whithper, instead of whisper.
9 I know Ben is a little strange but you can't .... about all Canadians just because of him.

84.3 Choose the correct word to complete these sentences.

1 They're always *wining* / *whining* and whingeing about everything. Take no notice of them.
2 I don't believe you. I think you're winding me *up* / *down*.
3 Do you think Peggy was trying to *bicker* / *butter* me up for some reason? I wonder why she was saying all those nice things about me?
4 You're always *nagging* / *slagging* me! Just leave me alone and let me watch TV!

84.4 Complete the crossword.

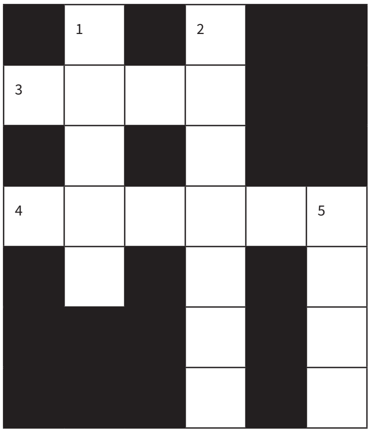

Across
3 people often do this on the phone for hours
4 speak in a soft voice

Down
1 speak loudly
2 another word for stutter
5 make a loud, deep sound like a lion

85

Abbreviations and acronyms

A

Abbreviations pronounced as individual letters

e.g.	for example, from *exempli gratia* (Latin)
i.e.	that is, from *id est* (Latin)
AD	the year of our Lord, from *Anno Domini* (Latin), used in the Christian calendar to count years since the birth of Christ; many people prefer **CE** as an alternative [Common Era]
BC	before Christ, used to count the years before the birth of Christ; many people prefer **BCE** [before the Common Era]
EU	European Union
ID	identity document
NB	note well, from *nota bene* (Latin), used as a warning or to point out something important
IQ	intelligence quotient: a way of measuring people's intelligence using a system of numbers
PTO	please turn over
USB	Universal Serial Bus: a type of connection between a computer and an electronic device
FAQ	frequently asked questions
ASAP	as soon as possible
VIP	very important person
RSVP	please reply (used on invitations, from French, *répondez s'il vous plaît*)
UFO	/juːef'əʊ/ unidentified flying object; often used to talk about an alien spaceship

B

Shortened and blended words

bedsit	a flat with only one room which is a **bed**room and a **sit**ting room
sitcom	short for **sit**uational **com**edy: a kind of humorous TV programme
sci-fi	/'saɪfaɪ/ **sci**ence **fi**ction
info	**info**rmation
biodata	/'baɪəʊ deɪtə/ **bio**graphical **data**: details about someone's life, job and achievements
biopic	/'baɪəʊpɪk/ **bio**graphical **pic**ture: a film about the life of a real person
wi-fi	/'waɪfaɪ/ **wi**reless **fi**delity: wireless connection for computers and electronic communications

C

Acronyms

Some abbreviations are **acronyms**, i.e. they are formed from the first letters (or occasionally syllables) of a word or series of words and are pronounced as a word.

AIDS	/eɪdz/ **a**cquired **i**mmune **d**eficiency **s**yndrome
NATO	/'neɪtəʊ/ **N**orth **A**tlantic **T**reaty **O**rganisation
PIN	**p**ersonal **i**dentification **n**umber (used on credit cards, bank cards, etc.)
VAT	**v**alue-**a**dded **t**ax (a kind of tax on goods), pronounced /væt/ or /ˌviːeɪ'tiː/

D

Abbreviations used in academic writing and bibliographies

fig.	figure (a picture or drawing, often with a number, in a book or other document). Example: See **fig**. 2.
ed. (plural **eds.**)	editor/editors (often used in bibliographical references)
p. (plural **pp.**)	page/pages. Examples: see **p**. 26, see **pp**. 58–61 (from page 58 to page 61).
cf.	compare. Example: Carter (1997) investigated core vocabulary (**cf**. Lee 1987).
et al.	and others (used in bibliographical references to refer to a book or article with several authors, usually three or more). Example: O'Keeffe **et al**. (2010) discuss this problem.

Exercises

85.1 Insert the correct Latin abbreviations from A opposite into the gaps.

1 This helmet dates from 500 .... It's over 1,500 years old.
2 The file extension, ... the letters that follow its name, such as .docx, .jpg, .mp3, tells you what type of file it is.
3 Type your message here. ...., press 'save' before pressing 'send', or you may lose your message.
4 Fruits, ... lemons, pears or grapes, are sometimes added when cooking poultry.

85.2 How are the abbreviations and shortened expressions in these sentences pronounced? What do they stand for?

1 NATO is an alliance of North American and European countries.
2 Their FAQ page is completely useless. You can never find what you're looking for.
3 She's very fond of sci-fi films. I prefer biopics.
4 I forgot my PIN and couldn't get into my bank account online.
5 Do you believe in UFOs?
6 Write back asap.
7 Most of the cafés in town have free wi-fi.
8 The VAT rate is different in different countries of the EU.
9 A lot of people now prefer to use BCE instead of BC.
10 AIDS spread rapidly in the 1980s.
11 He manages to get into the VIP lounge at most airports. I don't know how he does it.
12 Where's the USB connection on this laptop? I can't find it.

85.3 Answer the questions.

1 If someone asks you to send them your biodata, what will you send them?
2 Which is likely to be cheaper to rent in the same street in a city, a two-bedroom flat or a bedsit?
3 If someone asks you for ID, what do they want?
4 If you're watching a sitcom on TV, are you more likely to want to cry or to laugh?
5 If a party invitation says RSVP, what should you do?
6 If someone asks you to take an IQ test, what do they want to find out?
7 If you see PTO on a document, what should you do next?
8 What would you expect to find if you clicked on 'live traffic info' on a website?

85.4 Correct these false statements about academic abbreviations.

1 *Smedley and Jones (eds.)* means Smedley and Jones wrote the book or article referred to.
2 *See fig. 7* means look at number 7 in a list.
3 *Markov et al.* means Markov wrote a book or article with another person.
4 *See pp. 33–37* means see the information on page 33 and on page 37.
5 *Cf. Oswald (1987)* means 'read Oswald (1987)'.

86

Prefixes: creating new meanings

A Common prefixes

in- (and its variations **im-**, **il-**, **ir**-) can make a word negative, as in **inappropriate**, **incapable**, **inaccuracy**, **inability** and **imperfect**.
mis- means wrongly or badly, e.g. **misbehave** and **misuse**. [use in the wrong way or for the wrong purpose]
out- suggests being greater or better than something, e.g. **outnumber** [to be larger in number than another group] and **outweigh**. [be greater or more important than something else]
re- has the meaning of 'do again' as in **reconsider** [think again about a decision or opinion], **redevelop** and **rethink**. [change what you think about something or what you plan to do]
e- has the meaning of 'electronic' as in **e-commerce** [buying and selling goods online], **e-reader** [an electronic device for reading books] and **e-cigarettes**. [cigarettes that use water vapour rather than tobacco]
eco- has the meaning of 'good for the environment', as in **eco-friendly** cleaning products, an **eco-city** [using energy efficiently and producing very little pollution] and an **eco-warrior**. [an informal word for someone who campaigns to protect the environment]

B Preposition-based prefixes

over- may indicate (a) an excess of something, (b) being above something, or (c) going across something.

(a) EXCESS That film was **overrated** in my view. [people said it was better than it really was] It was a bad restaurant, with an **overpriced** menu. [too high prices]
(b) ABOVE Several of our neighbour's large trees **overhang** our garden. [their branches go over our garden]
Our garden is **overshadowed by** the block of flats next door. [the flats cast a shadow over our garden]
She always felt **overshadowed by** her older, more successful, sister. [metaphorical use, felt less important than]
(c) ACROSS He **overstepped the mark** when he said that. [crossed a barrier into offensive/ unacceptable behaviour]
Will you be staying **overnight**? [cross from one day to the next]

under- may indicate (a) less than the desired amount, (b) something below another thing, or (c) some kind of negative behaviour.

(a) LESS Don't **underestimate** the time it will take. [think it will be less than it really is]
The company is seriously **understaffed**. [lacking staff]
(b) BELOW It's quite wet **underfoot**. Did it rain last night? [on the ground, beneath your feet]
The **underlying** question is a very difficult one. [the deeper question]
(c) NEGATIVE I wish you would not **undermine** everything I do. [attack, weaken]
He did it in a very **underhand** way. [secretly and possibly dishonestly]

up- can suggest a change of some kind, often positive.
The airline **upgraded** me to business class. [changed my ticket to a better class]
There has been an **upturn** in the economy. [change for the better]

C Less frequent prefixes

con-/**com-** often suggests mixing things together (often in verbs of communication).
converse **commiserate** **condolences** **congeal** **contaminate**
pro- can often suggest pushing something forward or increasing it.
promote **proliferate** **procrastinate** **procreate**
e- can give the idea of something coming out of something.
They were **ejected** from the restaurant for bad behaviour. [thrown out; *formal*]
The machine **emitted** a loud noise and then stopped working. [gave out; *formal*]

Exercises

86.1 Choose a word from A opposite to complete each sentence.

1 They are planning to .... the area around the old bus station.
2 It is .... to use informal language in a formal essay.
3 The yes votes .... the no votes by two to one.
4 Ivan's English is excellent but he still tends to .... idioms occasionally.
5 We all hope you will .... your decision to turn down our offer of a job.
6 I'm afraid I only have an .... understanding of the situation myself.
7 These pupils do not usually .... in class.
8 An .... to drive is a serious problem for anyone in this line of business.
9 Lance seems to be .... of understanding even the simplest instructions.
10 Paula lost marks in her science test because of the .... of her measurements.
11 More and more businesses use the internet in order to sell their products, so .... is becoming more and more important to the economy.
12 More farmers are now choosing to use .... fertilisers that don't harm the environment or wildlife.

86.2 Decide which of the meanings of *over*- and *under*- are most obvious in the words in bold. Use the labels (a), (b) or (c), as in B opposite. Circle the correct letter. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 I really think she **overstated** her case, and lost a lot of sympathy. a b c
2 The plane's **undercarriage** failed to open and it crashed. a b c
3 A detailed list of awards is given **overleaf**. a b c
4 He has a very **overbearing** personality. a b c
5 The project was **underfunded** from the outset. a b c
6 During the cruise, a child fell **overboard** and drowned. a b c
7 Priya's contribution to the project has sometimes been **underrated**. a b c
8 Phil always gets an **underling** to do the tasks he doesn't enjoy. a b c

86.3 Rewrite these sentences using words from the opposite page.

1 There are more women than men on my course. *Women outnumber men on my course.*
2 The hotel gave me a luxury room instead of the ordinary one I'd booked.
3 Would you like to spend the night there or come back the same day?
4 The problem that lies under the surface is a very serious one.
5 For me, the advantages of air travel are more significant than the disadvantages.
6 I think this hotel charges too much.
7 It's slippery walking just here. Be careful.
8 The company experienced a rise in popularity after it changed its name.
9 I felt that what she said was critical of my position and weakened it somewhat.
10 It would be a mistake to think Frances was less intelligent than she really is.

86.4 Match these definitions to a word in C opposite. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 to keep delaying something that must be done ....
2 to make something poisonous or less pure ....
3 to throw out with force ....
4 suddenly to increase a lot in number ....
5 to sympathise with someone's unhappiness ....
6 to change from a liquid or soft state to a solid or hard state ....
7 to produce young (formal) ....
8 to chat (formal) ....
9 to send out (a beam, noise, smell or gas) ....
10 to encourage people to buy or use something ....

87 Suffixes: forming new words

A Productive suffixes

Many suffixes (and prefixes too) are **productive**. [still used to create new words] You might feel adventurous enough to try **coining** some words of your own! [creating] The meaning of the example words below is clear from the meanings of the root and the suffix.

-**able** can be used productively, whereas **-ible** never is. It combines with verbs to form adjectives. Note that **-able** means 'can be': a **washable** jacket [one that can be washed] **disposable** nappies **predictable** results **avoidable** problems a **manageable** situation

-conscious combines with nouns to form adjectives that describe people who consider one aspect of their lives especially important: **health-conscious** person **class-conscious** society **safety-conscious** company **time-conscious** workforce

-free combines with nouns describing something undesirable to form adjectives to describe nouns without that undesirable aspect: **stress-free** life **tax-free** shop **additive-free** food

-rich combines with nouns (often chemical or organic substances) to form adjectives to describe nouns with a lot of that substance: **fibre-rich** diet **calcium-rich** foods

-led combines with nouns and nationality adjectives to form adjectives describing things that are controlled or influenced by the original noun or nationality: **community-led** initiative **student-led** protest **worker-led** uprising

-minded combines with adjectives or nouns to form new adjectives describing people with particular characters, opinions or attitudes: **like-minded** friends [with similar interests] **career-minded** young women **money-minded** managers **high-minded** [having high moral standards]

-proof combines with nouns to form adjectives describing things that can resist the damage or difficulty caused by that noun: **ovenproof** dish **waterproof** jacket **soundproof** room **idiot-proof** instructions

-related combines with nouns to form adjectives to describe one thing as connected with another: **stress-related** absence from work **age-related** illness

-ridden combines with nouns to form adjectives describing people or things with a lot of that noun: **guilt-ridden** person **crime-ridden** city **bedridden** [a person who has to stay in bed because they are ill]

-worthy combines with nouns to form adjectives that describe people or things that merit whatever the original noun refers to: **newsworthy** incident [worth reporting in the news] **praiseworthy** action/pupil [deserving praise]

Language help

The first part of words with *-ed*, *-related*, *-conscious*, etc. is usually a singular rather than a plural noun, e.g. ***university-led***, ***crime-related***, ***age-conscious*** (NOT ~~universities-led, crimes-related, ages-conscious~~).

B Suffixes in different word classes

-ly is not only an adverb ending, it also forms quite a few adjectives: **lively** children [full of energy] **costly** holiday [expensive] **leisurely** walk [relaxed] **miserly** man [mean with money]

-ant is most familiar as an adjective ending (**relevant** information, **distant** hills) but it can also make nouns from verbs to describe a person: an **applicant** for a job an insurance **claimant** a police **informant** a quiz **contestant** an **occupant** of a house

-en makes adjectives from nouns (**woollen** jumper, **golden** hair) but it also makes verbs from adjectives: **to moisten** your lips **to sweeten** tea a situation **worsens** a face **reddens**

Exercises

87.1 Complete the table below with the correct phrases.

suffix	new example in phrase	meaning
-able	*a debatable issue*	an issue that can be debated
-conscious		employers who are very aware of money
-free		a city centre without any cars
-rich		a drink which provides a lot of energy
-led		fashion that is dictated by the French
-minded		friends who are very focused on sports
-proof		a car with protection against bullets
-related		crime that is connected in some way with drugs
-ridden		a society where there is a lot of poverty
-worthy		a person who deserves others' trust

87.2 Match each adjective with the two nouns it best collocates with in the box.

EXAMPLE student-led: *rebellion, demonstration*

1 additive-free
2 avoidable
3 disposable
4 guilt-ridden
5 high-minded
6 newsworthy
7 oil-rich
8 ovenproof
9 soundproof
10 stress-related

knives and forks income drinks mistake
~~rebellion~~ delay foods room criminal
expression glove story booth illness
speech personality dish country
~~demonstration~~ principles problems economy

87.3 Which of the suffixes in A opposite could combine with the words in the box below to make new words? Note that there is more than one possibility for each word.

child dust calorie work

87.4 Rewrite the sentences using the suffix given in brackets.

1 The weather can't be predicted. (-able) *The weather is unpredictable.*
2 Poisonous mushrooms can be easily identified. (-able)
3 He thinks so much about his career that he has no time for his family. (-minded)
4 The new speed cameras are supposed to be indestructible by vandals. (-proof)
5 During the Civil War, the country was totally overcome by terror. (-ridden)
6 The soil on that farm contains a lot of nutrients. (-rich)
7 The bank decided that he did not have enough income to allow him credit. (-worthy)

87.5 Using a suffix from A, make up words with the following meanings.

1 food for vegetarians must be this
2 connected with class
3 containing a lot of vitamins
4 can be dry-cleaned
5 very aware of people's clothes
6 initiated by the government

87.6 Are the following words adverbs, adjectives or verbs? Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 dampen
2 friendly
3 dearly
4 silken
5 roughen
6 masterly
7 kindly
8 darken

88 Word-building and word-blending

A Common well-established word parts

Many literary or academic words in English are formed using Latin and ancient Greek prefixes and roots. Many English speakers are not aware of the meanings of the word parts listed here, but knowing them can help you to understand and remember new words.

word part	meaning	example
auto-	self	an **autonomous** region [self-ruling]
bio-	life, living things	**biodegradable** packaging [able to decay naturally]
cyber-	relating to computers and robots	a **cybercafé** [café where customers can use computers and the internet]
de-	opposite action	**demotivate** [make someone feel less interested and enthusiastic about something]
mono-	single, one	**monocycle** [cycle with just one wheel]
-graph-	writing	a **monograph** [long article or short book on a single subject that the writer has studied for a long time]
-gress-	step, walk, go	a **congress** [a conference, i.e. a meeting where people come together]
-ics	an area of study or knowledge	**obstetrics** [the study of pregnancy and childbirth]
-phon-	sound	**phonetics** [the study of human speech sounds]
-ology	study	**criminology** [the study of crime and criminals]
pre- (*opp.* = **post-**)	before	**prepaid** tickets [tickets paid for in advance]
retro-	back, backwards	**retroactive** law [taking effect from a date in the past]
techno-	relating to advanced machines	**technophobia** [fear of using technology such as computers]
tele-	over a distance	**telepathic** experience [feeling something from a distance]

Language help

Although the word parts above will help you to understand words, you cannot use them as freely to form new words as the prefixes and suffixes in Units 86 and 87.

B Blends

An interesting, if much less common, way of forming words is by combining two well-established words, e.g. **brunch** = a meal that is a combination of breakfast and lunch.
heliport: a place where helicopters can land and take off (helicopter + airport)
smog: polluted fog (smoke + fog)
motel: a roadside hotel for people travelling by car (motor + hotel)
webinar: a seminar delivered over the internet via a designated website (web + seminar)
guesstimate: an approximate calculation (guess + estimate; verb = **to guesstimate**)
docudrama: TV programme that dramatises real historical events (documentary + drama)
breathalyser: a device to find out how much alcohol a person has drunk (breath + analyse)

Exercises

88.1 **Using information from the table in A, explain the basic meanings of these words.**

1 biography = *writing about a life*
2 monologue
3 telephone
4 autobiography
5 phonology
6 to retrogress
7 graphology
8 to destabilise
9 autograph

88.2 **Look at the following word parts. Use a dictionary to find two new words beginning with these and write them in your vocabulary notebook. Choose only words that use the meanings studied in this unit. *Postman*, for example, clearly has not been formed using the prefix *post*- meaning 'after'.**

1 mono
2 techno
3 retro
4 tele
5 auto
6 pre
7 post
8 bio

88.3 **Rewrite these sentences, replacing the underlined words with a word that includes the word part given. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

1 I had to put off my trip to Japan. (POST)
I had to postpone my trip to Japan.
2 She asked the singer for his signature on the back of her table napkin. (GRAPH)
3 She took a degree in the science of crime at Stockholm University. (OLOGY)
4 The novel is largely based on the writer's own life. (BIO)
5 It's an exhibition looking back at the painter's life and work. (RETRO)
6 He believes in the idea that you can cure yourself by suggesting to yourself that you are cured. (AUTO)
7 Working at home and keeping in contact with the office by phone, text-messaging and email is now quite common. (TELE)
8 Some English philosophers in the 19th century believed in the abolition of industry. (DE)
9 Crime committed through the internet is a huge cause for concern. (CYBER)

88.4 **Rewrite these sentences, replacing the underlined word with an explanatory phrase.**

1 Most of the time, planes fly on autopilot.
Most of the time planes fly automatically, controlled by a computer rather than the pilot.
2 The firm makes job applicants do a graphology test.
3 The school always takes very seriously any case of cyberbullying.
4 Matt's a bit of a technophobe.
5 He's giving a paper at a pre-conference event in Spain.
6 She did a course in informatics.

88.5 **What words have been combined to make these blends? What do you think they mean?**

1 infomercial
2 podcast
3 camcorder
4 veggieburger
5 swimathon
6 freeware

89 English: a global language

A The origins of English vocabulary

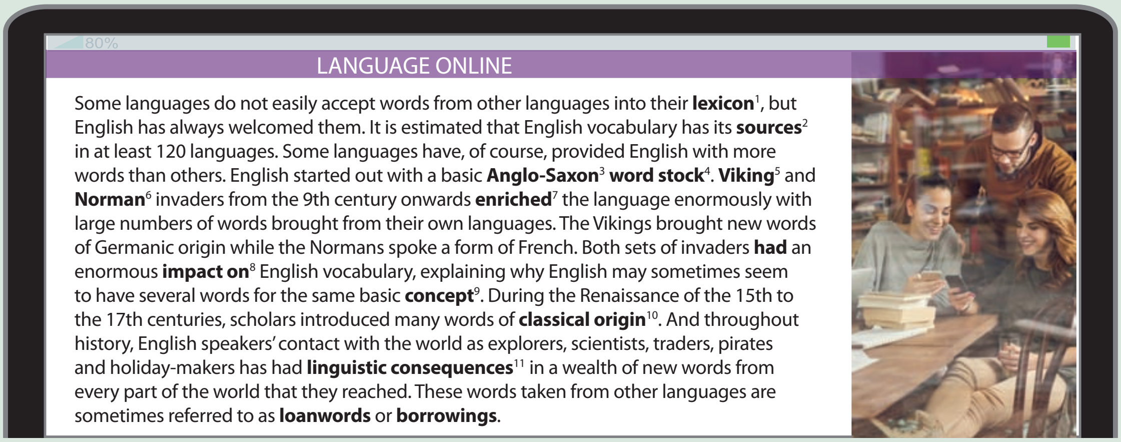

LANGUAGE ONLINE

Some languages do not easily accept words from other languages into their **lexicon**[1], but English has always welcomed them. It is estimated that English vocabulary has its **sources**[2] in at least 120 languages. Some languages have, of course, provided English with more words than others. English started out with a basic **Anglo-Saxon**[3] **word stock**[4]. **Viking**[5] and **Norman**[6] invaders from the 9th century onwards **enriched**[7] the language enormously with large numbers of words brought from their own languages. The Vikings brought new words of Germanic origin while the Normans spoke a form of French. Both sets of invaders **had** an enormous **impact on**[8] English vocabulary, explaining why English may sometimes seem to have several words for the same basic **concept**[9]. During the Renaissance of the 15th to the 17th centuries, scholars introduced many words of **classical origin**[10]. And throughout history, English speakers' contact with the world as explorers, scientists, traders, pirates and holiday-makers has had **linguistic consequences**[11] in a wealth of new words from every part of the world that they reached. These words taken from other languages are sometimes referred to as **loanwords** or **borrowings**.

[1] vocabulary (specialist term)
[2] where something comes from
[3] Old English
[4] set of words
[5] Norse, from the north of Europe, e.g. Denmark or Norway
[6] from Normandy, a region in the north of France
[7] made richer
[8] influenced, had an effect on
[9] idea
[10] from Latin or Ancient Greek
[11] results affecting language

B English words from other languages

language	word	meaning	phrase
Arabic	**amber**	yellowy-orange substance originating from tree resin and used in jewellery	an **amber** necklace
Dutch	**roster**	list of people's turns for jobs	the cooking **roster**
Farsi	**tabby**	grey and brown stripy cat	our old **tabby**
German	**gimmick**	an amusing or unusual way of attracting attention	advertising **gimmicks**
Greek	**tonic**	medicine to make you feel stronger and better	take a **tonic**
Hindi	**cot**	child's bed with high vertical sides	sleep in a **cot**
Icelandic	**mumps**	a childhood illness	have **mumps**
Japanese	**karaoke**	type of entertainment where ordinary people sing to popular music	a **karaoke** machine
Portuguese	**palaver**	unnecessary trouble	What a **palaver**!
Russian	**intelligentsia**	social class of intellectuals	19th-century **intelligentsia**
Spanish	**hammock**	net hung and used as a bed	sleep in a **hammock**
Turkish	**turban**	type of men's headwear, made from a long piece of cloth	wear a **turban**

C False friends

Some English words may look like words in your language but have a different meaning. Such words are known as **false friends**, e.g. the German word *Gift* looks like the English word **gift** [present] but actually means *poison* in German. The English word **sympathetic** resembles a word meaning, simply, *nice* in many other European languages, but in English **sympathetic** has a much narrower meaning [understanding and caring about someone else's suffering]. Note also that the pronunciation of a word borrowed into English may be quite different from its pronunciation in its language of origin.

Exercises

89.1 Complete the sentences with a word from A opposite.

1 A linguist may talk about a language's vocabulary as its ....
2 Old English is also known as ....
3 Ancient Greek and Latin are referred to as .... languages.
4 A loanword can also be termed a ....
5 Where something originates from can be called its ....
6 A word for something that happens as a result of something else is ....
7 A synonym for effect or influence is ....
8 The opposite of impoverish or make poorer is ....

89.2 Which of the words in B opposite do these pictures illustrate?

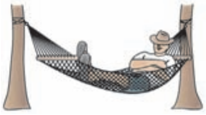
1 ....

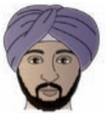
2 ....

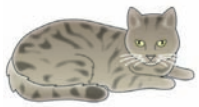
3 ....

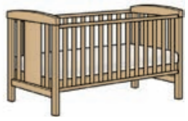
4 ....

89.3 Fill the gaps with one of the words from B.

1 We're having a .... evening at school tonight – it should be great fun.
2 Most babies these days have an injection to protect them from getting ....
3 I have some lovely.......................... earrings. They match my orange scarf perfectly.
4 Have a refreshing drink of lemon and honey every morning – it'll be just the .... you need to make you feel better again.
5 Who's on the .... for the cleaning this week?
6 The clowns went out into the street as a .... to advertise their circus.

89.4 Think of words that have come from your own language into English. Try to find words from these topic areas, which are particularly rich in loanwords in English.

- food and drink
- animals, flowers and landscape features
- industrial products and inventions
- clothing and the home
- politics and society
- the arts, sports and leisure activities

89.5 Make a list of false friends for English and your own first language. Here is a list begun by a Spanish speaker.

English word	similar word in my language + meaning	meaning in English
complexion	complexión = person's physical build	appearance of skin on a person's face (a clear complexion)
destitute	destituido = removed from job	without money, food, home or possessions

89.6 These words are said to have moved from English into a number of other languages. Which of them exist in your language?

thematic fields	English source words
food and drink	beefsteak, jam, pudding, sandwich
animals	bulldog, dog, skunk
clothing	blazer, cardigan, pullover, sweater
political and social life	parliament, Tory, boycott, budget, inflation, strike
industry and inventions	car ferry, container, freight, computer chip, cable TV
arts, sports and leisure	ace [1 in playing cards], boxer, football, break-dance

90 Easily confused words

A Words similar in form and close in meaning

The United Nations should **intervene** to stop the civil war. [step in; neutral in meaning]
She shouldn't **interfere** in things that don't concern her. [involve herself; negative and critical]
The phone's been ringing **continually**. It's driving me crazy. [very frequently; often negative]
Stir the mixture **continuously** until it boils. [without stopping; from a recipe]
There's a new **series** on TV about space exploration. [set of related programmes]
I don't want to miss this week's episode of *Oliver Twist*. It's a **serial** – if I miss one, I'll lose track of the story. [set of programmes where the story continues over different episodes]
We sat **in the shade of** a big oak tree. [out of the sun; pleasant connotation]
The evening sun cast long **shadows**. [dark areas or shapes]
They lived **in the shadow of** a chemical factory. [in a place dominated by; negative connotation]
She **complimented** me on my performance at the concert. [praised, expressed admiration for]
I took a course in programming to **complement** my other IT skills. [make them seem better, more complete or more attractive in combination]

B Words of different form but from the same area of meaning

The cake mixture should be **moist** but not sticky. [slightly wet; from a recipe]
The climate in the north is **damp** and rather cold. [slightly wet in an unpleasant way]
The **theme** of the festival was '1,000 years of culture'. [the main idea that everything followed]
The **topic** of conversation soon changed to the news. [what the people talked about]
The **security** officer noticed a broken window. [concerned with protection of property, etc.]
The **safety** officer told him that he must wear a helmet. [concerned with prevention of accidents, etc.]
We took a smaller road in order to **avoid** the roadworks on the motorway. [stay away from]
The escaped prisoner **evaded** capture for three months. [escaped from; more formal]

C Phrasal combinations

Phrasal verbs may have noun forms with different meanings.

verb	noun
Six men **broke out** of the prison.	There was a **breakout** at the prison.
The disease has **broken out** in several villages in the north of the country.	There has been an **outbreak** of the disease in several villages in the north of the country.
Economists are **looking out** for signs of an end to the recession.	The **outlook** is not good. The economy seems to be stagnant.
He stood at the corner, **looking out** for police cars.	He was the **lookout** while the others robbed the bank.
The Swimming Club decided to **set up** a committee to look into the club rules.	The company **setup** is quite complex, with branches in 30 different countries.

In some cases, two verb forms have the same words in a different order and different meanings.

verb 1: particle first	verb 2: particle second
upend [move into a vertical position]	**end up** [finish]
uphold [confirm, support]	**hold up** [delay]
outdo [do better than]	**do out** [decorate]
outrun [run faster than]	**run out** [use something so there is none left]
upset [make someone worried, unhappy or angry]	**set up** [organise or arrange something]

Language help

Common prepositions often occur as prefixes, e.g. *up* and *out* in the table above. Other examples include *over* (*overcook*, *overcome*), *in* (*input*, *income*). Make a note of new examples as you meet them.

See also Unit 86.

Exercises

90.1 Choose the correct word in these sentences.

1 I have always tried not to *intervene* / *interfere* in things that are not my business.
2 *Security* / *Safety* at the factory is not good. There have been several accidents involving machinery recently.
3 There are some *themes* / *topics* I don't like to talk about with my friends, such as politics and religion.
4 He was dozing happily in the *shade* / *shadows* of an old beech tree.
5 The *theme* / *topic* of her latest novel is growing up as an only child in the 1970s.
6 The teacher *intervened* / *interfered* to stop the argument between the two students.
7 The receptionist called the *safety* / *security* officer once it became clear that there had been a burglary.
8 He was *continually* / *continuously* complaining about something or other.
9 The moon sometimes casts wonderful *shadows* / *shade* on the sea.
10 You have to press the button *continually* / *continuously* until the green light comes on. Don't take your finger off it, or it won't work.

90.2 Decide whether the particle should go *before* or *after* the verb in these sentences.

1 The cheetah is so fast it can .... run .... a fast-moving vehicle. (OUT)
2 The police .... held .... the traffic while the President's car passed. (UP)
3 Sean made an insensitive comment and didn't realise how much he'd .... set .... Wendy. (UP)
4 The committee .... held .... her complaint, and she was awarded compensation. (UP)
5 We decided to .... do .... the living room and went online to choose paint colours. (OUT)
6 We .... ended .... eating in a dingy café on the edge of town. (UP)
7 The radio's not working. The batteries have .... run .... (OUT)
8 We .... ended .... the sofa and used it to block the doorway. (UP)

90.3 Choose a noun from the box that can be associated with the following sentences.

lookout outbreak breakout upset outlook setup

1 There has been violence in the capital city.
2 My stomach was bad so I couldn't go to work.
3 The prospects for the economy are good over the coming years.
4 I wanted to learn more about how the business was organised.
5 She made sure nobody was looking, and her husband did the shoplifting.
6 Four prisoners have escaped from a maximum security prison.

91 One word, many meanings

A Polysemy

A great many words in English have more than one meaning. Linguists call this aspect of vocabulary polysemy.
Look at these sentences and think about how you would translate the words in italics into your own language.

fair	It's only *fair* that we should share the housework. The Frankfurt Book *Fair* is a very important event for most publishers. The forecast is for the weather to stay *fair* for the next week. I've got *fair* skin and burn easily in the sun. His marks in his final exams ranged from excellent to *fair*.
flat	The firefighters managed to save the children from the burning third-floor *flat*. The countryside round here is terribly *flat* and boring. To join the Fitness Club, you pay a *flat* fee of £500. The sonata is in B *flat* minor. She finished the exercise in five minutes *flat*.
capital	Fill in the form in *capital* letters. Wellington is the *capital* of New Zealand. You need plenty of *capital* to open a restaurant. *Capital* punishment has been abolished in many countries.
mean	What does 'coagulate' *mean*? I didn't *mean* to hurt you. He's far too *mean* to buy her flowers. The *mean* temperature for July is 25°C. You shouldn't be so *mean* to your little sister.

You probably need a different word to translate *fair*, *flat*, *capital* and *mean* in each sentence. Sometimes the meanings are clearly related – *flat* as in *countryside* has a connection with *flat* as in *apartment* in that they both include an idea of being on one level. Sometimes, however, there is no connection at all. For example, the meaning of *fair* as in Book *Fair* has no obvious connection with any of the other meanings of *fair*. Words like this can be called **homographs** (words with the same spellings but different meanings).

B Being aware of polysemy

It is useful to be aware of polysemy in English for several reasons.

- You need to remember that the meaning you first learnt for a word may not be the one that it has in a new context.
- You need to be aware that in English, words can sometimes be used as different parts of speech. *Flat* with its *apartment* meaning, for instance, can become an adjective, e.g. a set of *flat keys*.
- Learning about the range of meanings that a word can have can help you to learn several meanings for the price of one.
- It will also help you to understand jokes in English, as these are often based on polysemous words.

Language help

The context of a word with multiple meanings will usually make it absolutely clear which of the word's possible meanings is intended. So you can understand what, for example, the noun *drill* probably means in (a) a dental context, (b) an army context, (c) a road-building context, or (d) a language-learning context.

Exercises

91.1 **Find the example sentence in A opposite in which *fair*, *flat*, *capital* or *mean* has the following meaning.**

1 intend
2 exactly
3 proper, just
4 city with the seat of government
5 light in colour
6 unkind
7 fixed
8 neither very good nor very bad
9 money
10 unwilling to spend money

91.2 **What part of speech is the italicised word in each of the example sentences in A? Write a synonym or explanation for each of the examples not used in 91.1.**

91.3 **Here are some more examples of polysemous words in English. Which word can fill all the gaps in each group of sentences?**

1 He struck a .... and we slowly began to look around the dark cave.
The teenage cooks in the competition were a .... for any of the adults.
Their marriage has been called a .... made in heaven.
2 That bird has an unusually long ....
Don't forget to keep the receipt when you pay your hotel ....
Parliament is currently discussing a .... proposing changes to copyright legislation.
3 Hannah gave us a lovely .... of glasses as a wedding present.
Let's now try and .... a date for our meeting next week.
My father has very .... opinions about how people should behave.
4 I've applied for a .... in our company's Paris office.
The end of the race is indicated by a .... with a flag on it.
Why not .... your query on an online forum? You're bound to get a quick response.
5 I didn't get my assignment back because the teacher hadn't had time to .... it.
Sales have already passed the million ....
You've got a red .... on your cheek. It looks like lipstick.
6 You need to be a special kind of person to .... a successful business.
Do you fancy going for a .... this evening?
Thanks to the hot weather, our shop has had a .... on ice cream.

91.4 **Look at the Language help box. What does *drill* mean in each of the four contexts suggested?**

91.5 **What would the given word be most likely to mean in each of the contexts suggested? Use a dictionary if necessary.**

1 register:	a a primary school	b a post office
2 interest:	a people planning a festival	b a bank
3 dice:	a a kitchen	b people playing a board game
4 service:	a people playing tennis	b in a restaurant
5 case:	a in a lawyer's office	b at an airport
6 cue:	a people playing snooker	b in the theatre

91.6 **Explain these one-line jokes. They are all based on polysemy.**

1 I wondered why the tennis ball was getting bigger. Then it hit me!
2 Smaller babies may be delivered by a stork but the heavier ones need a crane.
3 Time flies like an arrow. Fruit flies like a banana.
4 You know prices are rising when you buy a winter jacket and even down is up.

92

Collocation: which words go together

A Adjective + noun collocations

Nouns often have typical adjectives which go with them. Here are some examples.

Compare **thing** and **article**:

we say	we don't usually say
the **real thing**	the genuine thing
the **genuine article**	the real article

I don't like five-a-side football; I prefer the **real thing**. [i.e. real football, with 11 players in each team]
These trainers are the **genuine article**. Those others are just cheap imported copies.

You can give a **broad summary** of something (NOT ~~a wide summary~~).
You can describe something **in great detail** (NOT ~~in big detail~~).

Some adjectives go with a restricted range of nouns. For example:
a **formidable opponent**/**reputation**/**task**/**challenge**

B Verb + adverb collocations

Often, verbs have typical adverbs that collocate with them. The lines here show which collocations are normal:

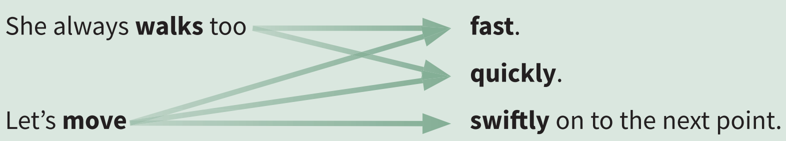

It's something I **feel strongly** about (NOT I ~~feel powerfully about~~).
If I **remember rightly**, it happened at about 6.30 (NOT If I ~~remember perfectly~~).

C Adverb + adjective collocations

It is useful to learn which adverbs most typically modify particular types of adjectives. For example, the adverb **utterly**, which means *totally* or *completely*, very frequently occurs before adjectives with negative connotations, although it can also be used with neutral or positive words. Typical examples are: **appalling**, **dismal**, **depressed**, **disgusting**, **distasteful**, **exhausted**, **false**, **fatuous**, **impossible**, **lost**, **ludicrous**, **naive**, **pointless**, **ridiculous**, **unacceptable**, **useless, wrong**. Try to notice this kind of regularity when learning words.

D Verb + object collocations

Verbs and their objects often form collocations.
You **raise your hand** to ask a question (NOT ~~lift your hand~~).
You can **raise a family**. [bring up children] (NOT ~~lift a family~~)
You can **visit** / **go to** / **click on** / **check out a website**.

Language help

Collocation is concerned with the way words regularly occur together, often in unpredictable ways. It is a very good idea when learning new words to learn any typical collocations that go with them.

Exercises

92.1

Is the correct word *real* or *genuine* in these sentences? Choose the more normal collocation. If both are acceptable, choose them both.

1 The photos of the pyramids are wonderful. One day I'd love to see the *real* / *genuine* thing.
2 He just doesn't live in the *real* / *genuine* world. He lives in a fantasy world all the time.
3 This handbag is made of *real* / *genuine* leather.
4 She is a very *real* / *genuine* person. If she promises something, she'll do it.
5 This home-made champagne is nice, but it's not as good as the *real* / *genuine* article.

92.2

Choose one of the words below each sentence to fill the gaps. In each case only one of them is the normal collocation for the underlined word. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 After his death, she went to the hospital to collect his personal ....
A affairs B objects C effects D extras
2 He made a rather .... attempt at an apology, but it didn't convince anyone.
A faint B frail C fragile D feeble
3 George was a .... opponent, and I respected him for that.
A formidable B dreadful C forbidding D threatening
4 I began to feel .... anxious when she didn't arrive.
A totally B pretty C utterly D blatantly
5 She seemed to be .... bewildered by the answer they gave her.
A vividly B strongly C utterly D heavily

92.3

Choose the most suitable collocation in these sentences. The word you choose should have the approximate meaning given in brackets. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 A *brisk* / *brusque* / *brash* walk before breakfast helps to *enforce* / *sharpen* / *grow* the appetite. (quick and energetic; increase, make stronger)
2 The death *tally* / *tale* / *toll* in the earthquake has now risen to 20,000. (number or total)
3 Let's take a *sluggish* / *plodding* / *leisurely* stroll along the beach, shall we? (slow and not energetic)
4 If you want to stay at home tonight, that's *utterly* / *perfectly* / *blatantly* OK with me. (completely, 100%)
5 My aunt *bequeathed* / *bequested* / *bereaved* £20,000 in her will to cancer research. (gave after her death)
6 If I remember *rightly* / *keenly* / *fairly*, she had two brothers, both older than her. (correctly)
7 If you want information about the publisher of this book, you can *accede* / *call* / *visit* their website at www.cambridge.org. (consult, look at)
8 Eating all those peanuts has *spoilt* / *attacked* / *lowered* my appetite. I don't feel like dinner now. (destroyed, decreased)

92.4

Which collocation is more likely? Choose the correct answer.

1 a strong car / a powerful car
2 strong tea / powerful tea
3 auburn hair / an auburn carpet
4 a doleful party / a doleful expression
5 a lengthy room / a lengthy meeting

92.5

Over to you

During the next week, try to find one new collocation that you were not aware of before for each of these categories:

ADJECTIVE + NOUN VERB + OBJECT ADVERB + ADJECTIVE

93 Metaphor: seeing the light

A What are metaphors?

Metaphor is concerned with using words in abstract rather than literal ways. It is a way of expressing something by comparing it indirectly with something else that has similar characteristics.

If we call a city a **jungle**, for example, we are using a metaphor. We are suggesting that a city is like a jungle, in that it is wild and full of dangers.

If we say that someone **lights up our life**, we are using a metaphor. We are suggesting that person is like a light in our life, in that they make our life brighter and happier.

B Idioms and metaphors

Many idioms are metaphorical expressions which are in common use.

be on the ball [be very aware of things and ready to act – like a good footballer]

to **keep someone**/**something on a tight rein** [have a lot of control over someone/something – like a rider having control over a horse]

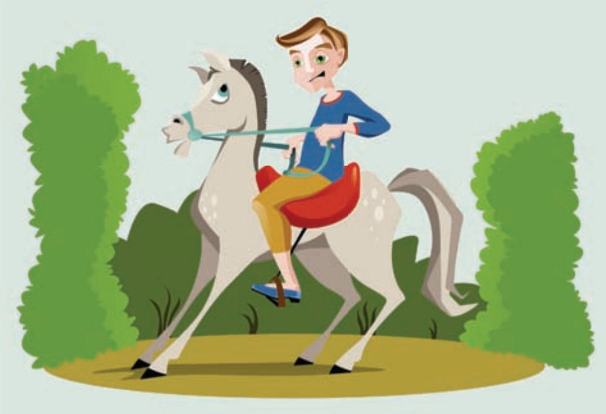

Some of the most common idiom-metaphors are based on parts of the body. So we might say that a building is in the **heart** of the city. [centre] We can call the place where a river joins the sea its **mouth**, and the person in charge of an organisation its **head**. If you say that someone **has an eye for** a bargain, you mean they are good at finding a bargain. If you **keep a (close) eye on** someone/something, you watch them carefully. If you say that something is **in safe hands**, you mean that the person in charge is capable. If you say that something **goes hand in hand with** something else, you mean that they exist together and are interconnected: Rights **go hand in hand with** responsibilities. If you talk about doing something using a **rule of thumb**, you mean you are calculating something in a way that is not exact but will allow you to be accurate enough.

C Common metaphorical concepts in English

Many words in English are so frequently used in a metaphorical way that English speakers may no longer notice that they are metaphors. Here are some examples:

- Intelligence and understanding are equated with light; for example, a clever person is called **bright** and a less intelligent person **dim**. If you **see the light**, you understand something. To **cast light on** something means making it easier to understand: The discovery of the poet's letters **has cast light on** his troubled relationship with his brother.
- Intensity of feeling or passion is equated with temperature; someone who is enthusiastic at one time and not at another is said to **blow hot and cold**. If someone is **hotheaded**, then they react quickly on the basis of their feelings without thinking first. If you call someone **cold-hearted**, then you think they are without feeling.
- The movement of people or traffic is equated with the movement of water; we can, for example, talk of people **flooding** or **trickling** out of a hall, or say there was a constant **stream** of traffic past the window.
- Time is likened to money; both are seen as commodities that can be **spent** or **wasted** or **used profitably**. You can also talk about **investing** time, using it in a way that you think will **pay dividends** in future. [bring you advantages]
- Business is likened to a military operation; **strategies**, **tactics** and **campaigns** are used in both contexts. So a company might **launch an advertising campaign**, for example, or work on its **marketing strategy**.

Exercises

93.1 Choose a word from the box that can be used metaphorically to complete the sentence.

ball	eye	hands	head	heart	jungle	mouth	light	rein	thumb

1 Helen asked me to keep a close .... on her little boy while the children were playing in the garden.
2 You don't need to worry about your grandfather – he's in safe .... in the hospital.
3 Our hotel offers excellent facilities in the .... of the old city centre.
4 When the writer refers to the urban .... , he is suggesting that the city is a dangerous and unpleasant place.
5 As a rule of .... , you can expect to deal with about 20 orders a day.
6 Joe is always on the .... ; he always knows what's going on.
7 Can you see that small boat at the .... of the river?
8 It is up to the .... of the school how the budget is spent.
9 I'm afraid we need to keep a tight .... on our spending this year.
10 I never used to understand opera, but an excellent TV series helped me to see the ....

93.2 Here are some more idioms which are based on metaphors. What is the idiom in each sentence and what does it mean? What aspect of life does it draw its image from?

1 Oscar's going to be holding the reins while the boss is on holiday.
2 It's hard to know what to do when management keeps moving the goalposts.
3 Starting his own dry-cleaning business was just another of his half-baked ideas.
4 We've had to tighten our belts since Sam lost his job.
5 The company needs to take its customers' criticisms on board.
6 Are you still on track to finish your essay by this evening?
7 Jana worked around the clock to finish decorating the room before her parents came home.
8 I'm sure you can take him at face value – he seems perfectly honest to me.

93.3 Here are some more examples of the five metaphorical concepts in C opposite. Underline the metaphor and say which concept it exemplifies and what it suggests.

1 This book throws a great deal of fresh light on the history of the period.
2 We could save half an hour at least if we went through the wood.
3 Try to keep cool even if he argues with you.
4 We spent months trying to achieve our sales targets.
5 Police tried to control the flow of the fans as they left the concert.

93.4 More unusual and original metaphors are used a great deal in literature. Here are some famous metaphors from Shakespeare. Underline the metaphors in each case and explain what they suggest.

1 All the world's a stage and all the men and women merely players.
2 We are such stuff as dreams are made on, and our little life is rounded with a sleep.
3 There is a tide in the affairs of men, which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune.

94 Idioms for everyday situations and feelings

A When things go right

If something …	this means …
worked like a dream	a plan succeeded absolutely perfectly
went/ran like clockwork	it went smoothly, with no difficulties
is up and running	it has begun to work as planned
is falling into place	it is on the point of starting to work well
is looking up	it is looking very positive

B When things go wrong: reacting in conversation

Oh no! That's all we need/needed! [in response to news that makes current problems even worse]
That's the last thing I wanted to hear! [in response to news that fulfils your worst fears]
This is like a bad dream! [when one bad thing after another happens in quick succession]
It's a real nightmare / **my worst nightmare.** [used very generally, e.g. about traffic jams, computers going wrong]
What a pain! [used very generally, in response to any situation that causes you difficulty]

C Confusing situations or situations you don't understand

Her sudden question **threw me completely**. [I didn't know how to respond]
The meeting was **a complete shambles**. [a totally disorganised and chaotic event]
It's a mystery to me how people know about my private life. [it's something I cannot understand]
I'm sorry, we must have **got our wires crossed**. I thought the meeting was at 11, not 10.30. [there must have been a miscommunication/misunderstanding]
I'm not with you. / **You've lost me there**. [what you have said has confused me]

D Happiness and sadness

expression	meaning
to be on top of the world / **on cloud nine** / **over the moon**	to be extremely happy
to be in (your) element / **to be made for**	to be ideally suited for
to be fed up to the back teeth	to be extremely unhappy, disappointed
to be down in the dumps / **down in the mouth**	to be depressed

Exercises

94.1 Rewrite the underlined words using an idiom based on the word in brackets.

1 The system is now working as planned, so we should be able to get some useful data soon. (RUN)
2 Things are becoming very positive now that we've increased our online sales. (LOOK)
3 The whole project was 100% successful. (DREAM)
4 After a problematic start, things are beginning to work well now. (FALL)
5 The school open day ran very smoothly without difficulties or problems. (CLOCK)

94.2 Fill in B's missing words in these conversations.

1 A: 'I'm afraid your insurance policy expired a month ago, so you can't claim for the fire damage.'
B: 'Oh no! This is like a bad .... !'
2 A: 'I'm afraid the boss is away this week so we'll have to wait to sort this out till next week.'
B: 'Oh, what a .... ! Ah well, I suppose there's nothing we can do.'
3 A: 'Tarek is ill and can't come. Now Sheena's phoned in to say she's sick too!'
B: 'Oh no! Two people sick! That's all we .... !'
4 A: 'Wow! Look at this traffic jam. We'll be stuck here for hours!'
B: 'I know. It's a real .... !'
5 A: 'The lawyers have said we can't hold the festival because we haven't done a proper risk assessment.'
B: 'Oh no! That's the last thing we wanted to .... !'

94.3 Read the comments and then answer the questions.

Alex

It's a mystery to me how those papers just disappeared.

Sabina

Sorry, I'm not with you. You've lost me there.

Ricardo

That shop is a complete shambles these days.

Monica

The news threw me completely.

Michelle

Sorry, I think we got our wires crossed yesterday.

	name
1 Who is talking about something disorganised and chaotic?	
2 Who thinks there's been a misunderstanding?	
3 Who can't follow what someone has said?	
4 Who can't find an explanation for something?	
5 Who didn't know how to respond to something?	

94.4 Correct the mistakes in the idioms in these sentences.

1 Jessica's on cloud seven now she's at university.
2 She's on her element now she's got a job in an architect's office.
3 You look a bit down in the damp. What's the matter?
4 Just look at him! He looks fed up to the front teeth!
5 I was above the moon when they told me I'd got the job.

94.5 Look up these idioms in a dictionary. Do they fit best into A, B, C or D opposite? Circle the correct letter.

1 Oh no! That's the last straw! A B C D
2 I can't get my head round it. A B C D
3 You look as miserable as sin. A B C D
4 It worked like a charm. A B C D
5 I was walking on air. A B C D

95 Brushing up on phrasal verbs

A Learning phrasal verbs

There are a great many phrasal verbs in English and many learners find them particularly difficult to master. The best way to learn them is in context. When you **come across** [meet] one, write it down in an example sentence.

There are a couple of important points to remember about phrasal verbs. Firstly, a verb + preposition/particle combination may have more than one meaning. **Come across**, for example, can also mean *give an impression of being*, as in: He can **come across** as unfriendly when you first meet him. **Come over** can also be used with the same meaning, as in: He can **come over** as unfriendly. Secondly, it is sensible to concentrate first on understanding phrasal verbs rather than using them. There is usually an alternative way in which you can say the same thing using a single verb. So, for example, instead of **put forward** a plan you can *propose* a plan, and instead of **rush into** a decision you can *make a hasty* decision.

B The verb

A very large number of phrasal verbs are formed using common verbs such as *come*, *do*, *get* or *go*, for instance. Here are some more examples with **come**.

I hope our plans to visit Russia **come off**. [happen successfully]
Sandro's family **came over** from Italy for the wedding. [travel to one place from another]
I wouldn't usually say something like that. I don't know what **came over** me. [influence someone to behave in a particular way]
The proposal has **come under** a lot of criticism. [experience something (usually unpleasant)]
If the opportunity to work in the US **comes up**, you must take it. [occur unexpectedly]
Our plan has **come up against** some obstacles. [have to deal with a problem or difficulty]

C The preposition/particle

The second part of a phrasal verb is a preposition or particle. This can sometimes help you understand the meaning of the phrasal verb. For example, **on** can often convey an idea of continuing over a period of time.

Selina decided to **stay on** at university and do a Master's degree. [remain]
Try not to **dwell on** the past. [keep thinking about, usually something unpleasant]
I didn't expect platform shoes to **catch on**. [become popular]
I wish she'd stop **going on** about her new car. [talking at length]
The crowd was **urging** the runners **on**. [encouraging]
The weather was terrible but the climbers **pressed on** regardless. [continued in a determined way]

D Phrasal verbs in topics

It can be useful to learn phrasal verbs in sets connected with a topic. Here, for example, are some from the context of work:

I need to **brush up on** my computer skills for my new job. [improve knowledge of something already learnt but partly forgotten]
The company **laid off** half its staff during the recession. [stopped employing]
Tomorrow's meeting has been **called off** because Jack is ill. [cancelled]
Sasha has **thrown himself into** his new job. [start doing something with great energy]
It took me a few weeks to **settle in** at my new office. [feel relaxed and happy]
It took me ages to **put together** the report. [prepare by collecting information from several sources]

Language help

When you learn a phrasal verb, note down the positions of the preposition/particle and the object, if there is one. For example, you can say *put a report together* or *put together a report*, but you can only say *rush into a decision* (NOT ~~rush a decision into~~).

Exercises

95.1 Reword these sentences using a phrasal verb with *come*.

1 Meena can seem a little arrogant at times, but she's just shy.
2 Charlie was quick to take advantage of a chance for promotion that arose at his workplace.
3 The project was going well until we encountered some legal problems.
4 I found some lovely old photos when I was sorting some boxes yesterday.
5 I'm afraid it looks as if our plans to move to a new flat may not happen.
6 Something strange happened to me and I shouted at him angrily.

95.2 Complete the sentences with a verb, using the appropriate form.

1 Dan is always .... on about how rich he is.
2 You can't change what happened, so don't .... on it.
3 We'd better .... on if we're going to get to the hostel before dark.
4 I'm going to .... on after work to finish the report.
5 Taekwondo has really .... on – all my friends are learning it.
6 Hugo's family tried their best to .... him on to complete his novel.

95.3 Do these sentences have the correct preposition or particle? If not, correct them.

1 Do you think the company will have to lay any staff out?
2 I learnt Spanish at school but need to brush it on before I go to Spain.
3 I'm putting a presentation together for the board to consider.
4 If you rush for a decision, you may regret it later.
5 We'll have to call out tomorrow's picnic if the weather is bad.
6 The family soon settled on to their new flat in the city.
7 I love the way Katie always throws herself onto everything she does.
8 Nita put forward some very interesting ideas at the meeting.

95.4 Which of the phrasal verbs on the opposite page can have the preposition or particle either before or after the object? Write the verbs in phrases both ways using one of these objects.

~~team~~	skill	report	staff	meeting	plan

EXAMPLE *urge a team on – urge on a team*

95.5 These sentences use some other phrasal verbs. Can you work out what the verbs mean from the context? Match the phrasal verbs in the sentences with the definitions in the box.

delay	explode	abolish	waste time	not tell	criticise	occur	start to work

1 Most of the students say they would like to **do away with** school uniform.
2 The new arrangements won't **kick in** till next month.
3 Stop **messing around** – go and tidy your room.
4 Problems always seem to **crop up** at the most inconvenient times.
5 These complications will **set** the building work **back** by several weeks.
6 However hard he tries, his teacher always seems to **run** him **down**.
7 I heard the bomb **go off** at midday.
8 It's foolish to **hold** something so important **back** from your partner.

96 Connotation: making associations

A Different kinds of associations

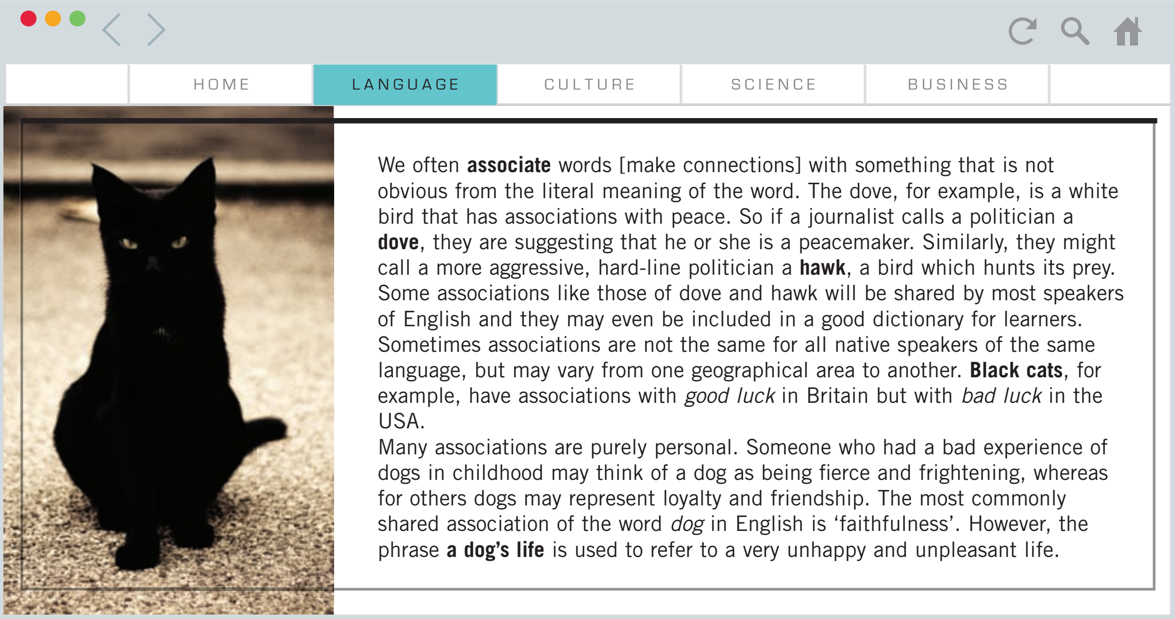

We often **associate** words [make connections] with something that is not obvious from the literal meaning of the word. The dove, for example, is a white bird that has associations with peace. So if a journalist calls a politician a **dove**, they are suggesting that he or she is a peacemaker. Similarly, they might call a more aggressive, hard-line politician a **hawk**, a bird which hunts its prey. Some associations like those of dove and hawk will be shared by most speakers of English and they may even be included in a good dictionary for learners. Sometimes associations are not the same for all native speakers of the same language, but may vary from one geographical area to another. **Black cats**, for example, have associations with *good luck* in Britain but with *bad luck* in the USA.

Many associations are purely personal. Someone who had a bad experience of dogs in childhood may think of a dog as being fierce and frightening, whereas for others dogs may represent loyalty and friendship. The most commonly shared association of the word *dog* in English is 'faithfulness'. However, the phrase **a dog's life** is used to refer to a very unhappy and unpleasant life.

B Understanding associations

Journalists, advertisers and other writers or speakers who want to interest and entertain their audience often make use of word associations. A fashion advert might ask, for example, 'Would you like to have that **Paris** look?', which draws on the associations of Paris with glamour and style. Or someone might refer to **cowboy builders**, meaning builders who are not careful or trustworthy.

It might seem difficult at first to understand this kind of language, but your knowledge both of the world and of the primary meanings of words will help you. Paris, for example, is known throughout the world as a centre of high fashion and it is quite possible that the name Paris is associated with glamour in your own language too. If you have seen a Western, you will have seen how cowboys often behave in a careless and dishonest way.

Think, for example, about the words **shark**, **scar** and **diamond**. You probably know their literal meanings – a large sea creature with sharp teeth, a mark left on the skin after a cut has healed, and a precious stone, respectively – but what associations do you think they have for English speakers in general? What might someone mean if they said the following?

'They're all **sharks** in that garage.'
'I think that new office block is a **scar** on the landscape.'
'Emma's a real **diamond**.'

The idea of sharks as sharp-toothed creatures with an aggressive reputation should help you to understand that the speaker does not like the garage. The fact that a scar is a mark of a wound on something that was once unspoilt should help you to appreciate that the speaker does not like the new office block. The beauty and high value of a diamond as a precious stone should help you to see that the speaker has a high opinion of Emma.

Language help

Research into language learning shows that words are better remembered if you have personal associations in mind as you learn them. Remember to think about what your associations with a word are as you learn it.

Exercises

96.1 **Answer these questions about the associations discussed on the opposite page.**

1 Would you recommend a cowboy plumber to a friend?
2 Would a politician be more likely to be called a dove if they were a peacemaker or if they argued for military action?
3 What is more likely to be a scar on the landscape – a waterfall or a factory chimney?
4 Would you be pleased to be called a diamond?
5 Would you be pleased to be called a hawk?
6 In Britain would you be likely to see a black cat on a good luck card or not?
7 What characteristic is a dog most typically said to have in English?
8 Would you be likely to call a business Supersharks?

96.2 **Match the colours with their associations in English. Are any of these the same in your language? (See Unit 65 for more about the associations of colour in English.)**

1 purple ☐
2 green ☐
3 yellow ☐
4 red ☐
5 white ☐
6 black ☐

a purity
b evil
c royalty
d inexperienced
e danger
f a coward

96.3 **Are these statements about the associations of animals in English correct? When a statement is wrong, correct it.**

1 If you say someone has a dog's life, you think they have an easy life.
2 If you call a businessman a snake, you trust him.
3 If you say someone's hair is mousy, you mean it is dark brown and strikingly attractive.
4 If you say someone is being ratty, you mean they are irritable.
5 If you say someone can be catty, you mean they tend to be lazy.
6 If you say something is fishy, you mean it is suspicious.
7 If you call someone a sheep, you mean they are very independent-minded.
8 If you say that someone is hawk-eyed, you mean that they have very big eyes.

96.4 **Can you make any associations between the colours in 96.2 and the animals and their associations in 96.3 that will help you to understand why these associations have been made?**

96.5 **Some of these have associations of good luck in English and some have associations of bad luck. Decide whether each picture represents good luck or bad luck.**

Friday 13th

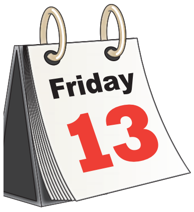

1 ....

a horseshoe

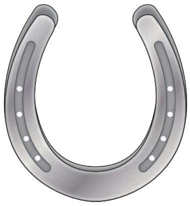

2 ....

walking under a ladder

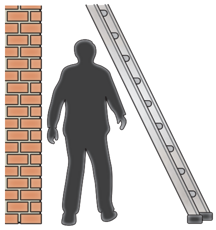

3 ....

a four-leaved clover

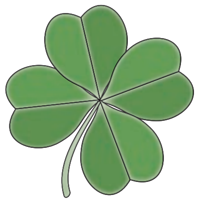

4 ....

96.6 **Over to you**

Write down five colours and five animals. What are your own associations for these words?

97 Register: degrees of formality

A Formal and informal words

Some words are formal or informal, and others are quite neutral.
Is your **partner** (neutral) / **other half** (informal) not with you today? [husband/wife]
Rick's a really nice **bloke**/**guy**. [man; *informal*]
She is able to **converse** with everyone, which is a great gift. [have a conversation; *formal*]

Sometimes it is possible to arrange words into sets of neutral, formal and informal words.

neutral	formal	informal
TV/television		**the box** / **(the) telly**
glasses	**spectacles**	**specs**
clothes	**clothing**/**garments**	**gear**
use	**employ**/**utilise**	
try	**endeavour**/**attempt**	**have a go**/**stab**/**bash**/**crack**/**shot at**

Language help

Register is concerned with the overall tone of a text or conversation, and the relationship that is built between the speaker and listener, or reader and writer. It is important to speak and write in the appropriate register for the situation.

B Speech and writing

Some words are more associated with *either* spoken *or* written language. It is worth noting if a word has a particularly strong association with speech (S) or writing (W).

word/phrase	S/W	comment and example
subsequently	W	Linking adverb: (in speech, more likely to be 'later' or 'afterwards') e.g. The police found some important clues. **Subsequently**, three people were arrested.
in sum	W	Linking expression: means 'to sum up', e.g. **In sum**, we may say that most, but not all, English adverbs end in *-ly*.
whatsisname/**whatsername**	S	vague word: used when we cannot remember the name of a person, e.g. I met **whatsername** at the party, you know, the woman who works at the university.
thingy	S	vague word: used as a noun, of people and things whose name one cannot remember, e.g. Give me that **thingy** there, yes, that bottle opener.
mind you	S	discourse marker: used to bring attention to an important point, e.g. He's a good actor. **Mind you**, he should be – he went to the best drama college.
now then	S	discourse marker: used to get people's attention when you want to ask or tell them something, e.g. **Now then**, is everybody's luggage here?

C Outdated words

Some words and expressions may be correct, but may sound archaic (outdated) or old-fashioned, e.g. **asylum** [hospital for the mentally ill], **frock** [dress], **wireless** [radio], **consumption** [tuberculosis/TB], **eyeglasses** [glasses].

Exercises

97.1 **Make the underlined words in these sentences formal or informal, as instructed.**

1 She works in a shop that sells women's clothes. (formal)
2 I've got some new spectacles. Do you like them? (informal)
3 Did you see that documentary about Wales on TV last night? (informal)
4 Gerry's a decent man. I wouldn't want to upset him. (informal)
5 I spent the morning talking with the Director. (formal)
6 Molly was there with her other half. He's a nice guy. (neutral; neutral)

97.2 **Complete the table using the words from the box. Do not fill the shaded boxes.**

shades kids endeavour cop really useful ensure umbrella employ children

neutral	formal	informal
	offspring	
sunglasses		
policeman/woman	police officer	
		brolly
	invaluable	
make sure		
try		
use		

97.3 **Decide whether these words are more likely to be associated with everyday spoken or everyday written English. Write S or W next to the word.**

1 frequently 2 start 3 begin 4 maybe 5 moreover

97.4 **What do you think are the present-day equivalents of these now-outdated English words? Use a dictionary if necessary.**

1 apothecary 2 damsel 3 poesy 4 whither

97.5 **Look at these text extracts and decide which register types you would classify them in. Underline key words which help you decide the register. For example, if you think the text is 'written, formal, poetic and archaic', which word(s) make you think that?**

Some register types: literary / poetic / non-literary academic / non-academic archaic / modern technical / non-technical spoken / written formal / informal

1 When you have created a file that is to be stored in a shared folder, or one that is located on a server, you can use the tools in the client software to restrict access to the file.

2 Views are certainly divided on the answers to the questions listed above; even whether it matters that pluralism and different paradigms reign in SLA is a matter of heated debate.

3
Sweetest love, I do not go,
For weariness of thee,
Nor in hope the world can show
A fitter love for me;
But since that I
Must die at last, 'tis best,
To use myself in jest
Thus by feigned deaths to die.

4 And so, my fellow Americans: ask not what your country can do for you – ask what you can do for your country. My fellow citizens of the world: ask not what America will do for you, but what together we can do for the freedom of man.

5 Mind you there was a lot of rain in Germany over Christmas wasn't there, cos I saw the river in Bonn on the news on telly, the Rhine. Yeah, the river in Bonn.

98 Divided by a common language

Very few words and expressions are used exclusively in either British or American English, and you are likely to hear and read words from both varieties.

A Streets and roads

Street has a wider range of meaning in American English.
American speaker: Let's cross the **street** here; there's more traffic further down.
However, a British speaker would normally say cross the **road**, especially in a busy city.
Here are some more examples of American English words and expressions not used in British English. The British English expressions are given in square brackets.
Go two blocks down and the car rental office is **kitty-corner** to the **gas station**. [diagonally opposite; *informal*] [petrol station]
You should always use the **crosswalk** to cross the street. [pedestrian crossing / zebra crossing]
There's a **trail** that leads down to the **creek**. [path] [stream, small river]
Take a left here and you'll come to the **Interstate** after about three miles. [turn left] [major motorway in the US connecting different states]
After the **intersection**, look for a sign saying 'International Airport'. [junction]
I hit a shopping **cart** in the **parking lot** when I was **backing up**. [trolley] [car park] [reversing]
Look for the **overpass** and then take the next exit for downtown Chicago. [flyover, i.e. bridge that carries one road over another]

Language help

In British English road numbers use *the*; in American English no article is used.
British English: *Take **the M4** as far as Newbury, then turn off on to **the A34** for Oxford.*
American English: *Take **I-45** north for about 20 miles, then take **25** west.*

B Educational terminology

American	British
My older brother never went to **college**.	My older brother never went to **university**. (**college** in Britain usually means a place for specialised education for people over 16)
What **courses** are you taking next semester?	What **modules** are you taking next semester/term?
Are you a **freshman**? No, I'm a **sophomore**.	Are you a **fresher** / **first year (student)**? No, I'm (a) **second year**.
Most of my friends are **juniors**.	Most of my friends are **third years** / **third year students**.
She's **majoring** in French.	She's **doing honours** in French. / She's doing a French **honours** degree.
My **professors** are all very friendly. (used as a general term for university teachers)	My **lecturers** are all very friendly. (used as a general term for university teachers – a **professor** is a person with the highest academic rank)
I want to be an **elementary** school teacher.	I want to be a **primary** school teacher.
My years in **high school** were not very happy.	My years in **secondary school** were not very happy.

C Around the home

This cable is the **ground** (US) / **earth** (UK). [cable that takes electricity safely into the ground]
We need a **dumpster** (US) / **skip** (UK) to put all this old stuff in. [large metal container for rubbish]
The **faucet** (US) / **tap** (UK) in the kitchen never stops dripping!
I have to cook for five people, so we need a big **stove** (US) / **cooker** (UK). [piece of kitchen equipment to cook food]
I fried the fish in a **skillet** (US) / **frying pan** (UK).

Exercises

98.1

Who do you think is most likely to be speaking, an American or a British person? What would someone who speaks the *other* variety probably have said instead?

1 I lost my way at the big intersection just south of the city.
2 Why are there always so many shopping trolleys left in the car park?
3 Cross the road at the pedestrian crossing, then turn left.
4 You can't drive any further; you'll have to back up, the street is very narrow.
5 You'll see the petrol station just after the flyover on the A34.
6 Once you get on to the Interstate, it will only take you two hours to get there.
7 The office is kitty-corner to the Chinese restaurant.
8 There's a creek at the end of the trail. It's about three miles from here.

98.2

Match the words on the left with their equivalent on the right, and write US for American English and UK for British English in the boxes.

1 dumpster		a skillet	
2 ground		b tap	
3 frying pan		c stove	
4 cooker		d earth	
5 faucet		e skip	

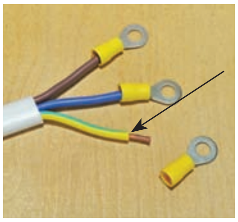

98.3

Answer the questions.

1 Who do you think is more likely to get homesick, a fresher or a junior?
2 Does a primary school teacher teach at more or less the same level as an elementary school teacher or at a different level?
3 How might calling someone 'Professor' in the US mean something different from calling someone 'Professor' in Britain?
4 Where are you more likely to register for a module, the US or Britain?
5 What year of study are you in if you are a sophomore?
6 If someone says they are majoring in psychology, what do they mean?
7 If an American says they're going to college next year, does that necessarily mean the same as if a British person said it?
8 If someone says they're a secondary school teacher, are they more likely to be British or American?

99 Language and gender

A Gender awareness and vocabulary

In professional contexts and elsewhere, we often take care to use gender-neutral language in English. David Crystal, in *The Cambridge Encyclopedia of the English Language*, writes:

> Attention has been focused on the replacement of 'male' words with a generic meaning by neutral items – *chairman*, for example, becoming *chair* or *chairperson* (though not without controversy) or *salesman* becoming *sales assistant*. In certain cases, such as job descriptions, the use of sexually neutral language has become a legal requirement. There is continuing debate between extremists and moderates as to how far such revisions should go – whether they should affect traditional idioms such as *man in the street*[1] and *Neanderthal Man*[2], or apply to parts of words where the male meaning of man is no longer dominant, such as *manhandle*[3] and *woman*. The vocabulary of marital status has also been affected, notably in the introduction of *Ms* as a neutral alternative to *Miss* or *Mrs*.

[1] a typical person (could be replaced by *person in the street*) [2] a now-extinct species that were the ancestors of present-day humans [3] handle roughly, using force

Here are some examples of gender-neutral variations of vocabulary.

older usage	current usage
spokesman	**spokesperson**
fireman, policeman	**firefighter**, **police officer**
air hostess	**flight attendant**
cleaning lady	**cleaner**
foreman	**supervisor**
man-made	**artificial**
mankind	**the human race** / **human beings**
to man (a machine or place of work)	**to staff**

B Words referring to men and women

words	meaning/comment	example
male, **female**	used for gender classification in biology	**male** and **female** bees
masculine, **feminine**	having qualities traditionally felt to be typically male or female	**masculine** pride, **feminine** charm
guy, bloke	informal words for a man	Jack's a really nice **guy.**
guys	an informal word for men and women, especially in the phrase **you guys**, as a way of addressing people directly	Do any of you **guys** fancy going out for a pizza tonight?
girlfriend	used by women to refer to a female friend	I'm meeting up with a few **girlfriends** this evening.
girlie/girly	used to describe things that girls and young women often enjoy without men, especially involving clothes, make-up, etc.	They're having a **girlie** evening at home.
lad	informal word for a boy or young man	He's having a night out with some of the **lads** tonight.
laddish	used to describe unpleasant behaviour thought to be typical of young men in a group, especially drinking alcohol	I can't stand that kind of **laddish** behaviour!
macho	used to describe a man who likes to appear strong and doesn't show his feelings	He refuses to cry – it would spoil his **macho** image!

Exercises

99.1 Answer these questions about the text opposite.

1 Why do you think there have been attempts to introduce gender-neutral language of the kind described by David Crystal?
2 How would you explain this expression: 'male' words with a generic meaning?
3 Why do you think there might have been controversy about attempts to change the word *chairman*?
4 What do more extreme advocates of making English gender-neutral want to do that is unacceptable to the moderates?
5 Why was *Ms* introduced and why is it useful?

99.2 Change these sentences so they reflect modern usage.

1 Three firemen helped put out a fire at a disused warehouse last night.
2 A spokesman for the Department of Education provided us with a statement.
3 Cleaning lady wanted for house in Priory Street.
4 The helpline is continuously manned even during holiday periods.
5 All our air hostesses are fluent in at least three languages.
6 The fibres in this garment are man-made.
7 Policemen today spend more time in cars than on the beat.
8 This was a great step for mankind.
9 The man in the street has little time for such issues.
10 Salesmen are often well trained and can be very persuasive.

99.3 Choose the correct word to complete each sentence.

1 She always dresses in a very *feminine* / *female* way.
2 The *masculine* / *male* cat is less aggressive than his sister.
3 Do you *girlfriends* / *guys* fancy meeting up later?
4 The bar was full of loud, *lad* / *laddish* young men.
5 Ross likes to see himself as a tough *male* / *macho* man!
6 Anna's going away for the weekend with a few *girlfriends* / *females*.

99.4 Answer these questions.

1 Do you think that using gender-specific language affects people's attitudes to men and women's roles in society?
2 Does your language ever use male words generically? If so, give examples of words you use to avoid gender stereotyping.
3 How do you feel about imposing language changes of the different kinds that David Crystal describes?
4 Do terms of address (i.e. Mr, Mrs, etc.) in your language indicate whether people are married?
5 Do you think it is better if terms of address indicate marital status or not? Why?
6 A grammatical problem in this area is the use of *he*/*his* to refer to a person of either gender. In the sentence 'A government minister may have to neglect his family', the minister could be a man or a woman. However, the use of 'his' assumes, perhaps wrongly, that it is a man. How could you rewrite this sentence to avoid this problem?

100 In the headlines

A Features of headline language

If a story **hits the headlines** it suddenly receives a lot of attention in the news.
Here are two typical examples of headlines from **tabloid newspapers** with comments on their use of language. [popular papers with small pages and short simple reports]

EXPERT REVEALS NEW CLOUD DANGERS

- Articles, prepositions and auxiliary verbs are often omitted from headlines.
- This use of the present simple instead of the past tense makes the story sound more immediate.
- The use of language is often ambiguous. It is not entirely clear, for example, what **cloud** refers to here. It is actually about the dangers of storing electronic information on a 'cloud' [hosted services on the internet for storing personal data], but it could have referred to dangers relating to the weather. Readers have to look at the story in order to find out.
- Words with dramatic associations such as **danger** are often used.

TV STAR TRAGIC TARGET FOR CRAZED GUNMAN

This story is about how a well-known television actor was shot by a mentally unstable killer.

- In order to attract readers' attention, tabloid newspapers often feature celebrities, e.g. film/pop stars and sports personalities.
- Alliteration such as **T**V Star **T**ragic **T**arget is often used to attract the eye in headlines and to make them sound more memorable.
- Newspapers tend to use strong, simple words such as 'gunman' in order to express an idea or image as briefly and as vividly as possible.
- Strongly emotional words like **crazed** are often used to attract attention. [behaving in a wild or strange way, especially because of strong emotion]

B Violent words

Violent and militaristic words are often used in headlines, especially in tabloid newspapers, in order to make stories seem more dramatic. For example, people who cause trouble may be referred to as **thugs**, **yobs** or **louts**.

EU acts to **crush**[1] **terror** of **thugs**

Crackdown[2] on soccer **louts**

Palace **besieged**[3] by journalists

Typhoon **rips**[4] through town

[1] destroy
[2] taking serious measures to deal with a problem
[3] surrounded, as if by army
[4] moves in a destructive way

Language help

The kind of language that is common in headlines may sound strange in other contexts. So the vocabulary in this unit is more likely to be useful to you when you are reading rather than when you are speaking or writing.

C Playing with words

Many newspaper headlines attract readers' attention by playing on words in an entertaining way. For example, a story about a very heavy rainstorm which caused a landslide on a narrow mountain road was headlined **Rain of terror**. This headline was a play on words based on the expression **reign of terror**, an expression used about a period in which a country's ruler controls people in a particularly cruel way.

Another example is the use of the headline **Moon becomes shooting star** to describe a football match where a player called John Moon shot [scored] the winning goal. **Shooting star** is an informal expression for a meteor. Here it is used to play on the expression **shoot a goal**, and also to link to the player's name, Moon (another astronomical body). The headline is particularly effective because of the association between star and moon in the sky.

Exercises

100.1 **Read these headlines. What do you think the stories might be about?**

1 BLAST TERROR IN CAPITAL
2 PM TO REVEAL SOCCER LOUT PLANS
3 TOP PLAYERS DEFEND COACH
4 CRACKDOWN ON DISSENT
5 THUGS BESIEGE TEEN STAR
6 COPS TARGET YOBS

100.2 **Look at these headlines from a fictitious tabloid newspaper about Ancient Greece. Match them with the subjects of their stories and comment on the features of headline language they contain.**

1 NUDE SCIENTIST IN BATHTUB SCANDAL
2 KING PHIL'S MACEDONIAN MASSACRE
3 MARATHON MAN IN DROP-DEAD DASH
4 QUADRUPLE ROYAL MURDER SENSATION
5 IT'S CURTAINS FOR CORINTH

a Four members of the royal family die in mysterious circumstances.
b Philip of Macedonia wins a battle against the city states of Athens and Thebes.
c Archimedes discovers the law governing the displacement of water.
d The city of Corinth is burnt to the ground by the Romans.
e A long-distance runner brings news of a battle victory to Athens and then dies.

100.3 **Match the headline to its story and explain the play on words in each case.**

1 Bad blood
2 Happy days?
3 *Shell-shocked*
4 False impressions
5 Happy haunting
6 *Hopping mad*
7 Flushed with success
8 Highly embarrassed
9 **Round-up**

a A grandfather's breathing problems were solved when doctors found four false teeth at the entrance to his lungs. They had been forced down his windpipe in a car crash eight years before.
b A 25-year-old terrapin is being treated for a fractured shell after surviving a 200-foot drop.
c A Shetland teacher has suggested sheepdogs could be used to control pupils in playgrounds.
d A ghost society has been told not to scare off a friendly female apparition at a hotel.
e An unusual travel company is offering adults the chance to experience going back to school again – they will spend a week wearing school uniform, sitting through lessons and eating school dinners.
f An ex-public loo in Hackney, East London, is to be sold for £276,000.
g A Whitby vicar has attacked the resort's attempts to profit on its connections with Dracula: 'a pale-faced man with a bad sense of fashion, severe dental problems and an eating disorder'.
h A toad triggered a police alert when it set off a new hi-tech alarm system.
i Firefighters had to scale a 30-foot tree to rescue a man who was trying to capture his pet iguana.

101 Red tape

A Characteristics of bureaucratic language

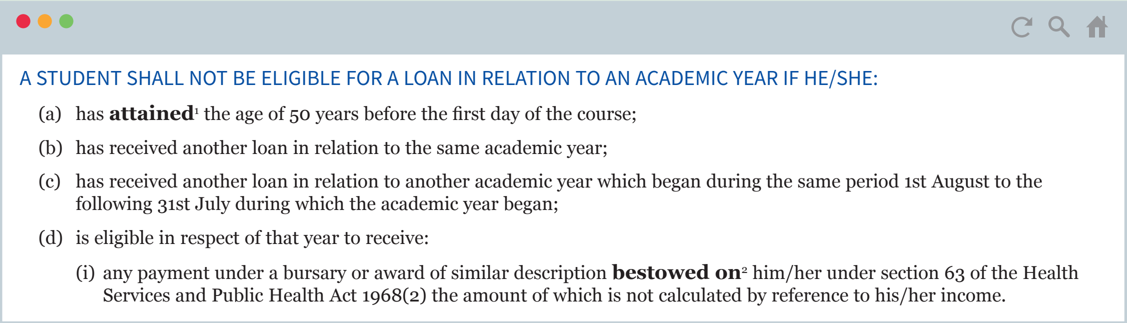

A STUDENT SHALL NOT BE ELIGIBLE FOR A LOAN IN RELATION TO AN ACADEMIC YEAR IF HE/SHE:

(a) has **attained**[1] the age of 50 years before the first day of the course;

(b) has received another loan in relation to the same academic year;

(c) has received another loan in relation to another academic year which began during the same period 1st August to the following 31st July during which the academic year began;

(d) is eligible in respect of that year to receive:

(i) any payment under a bursary or award of similar description **bestowed on**[2] him/her under section 63 of the Health Services and Public Health Act 1968(2) the amount of which is not calculated by reference to his/her income.

[1] reached [2] given to

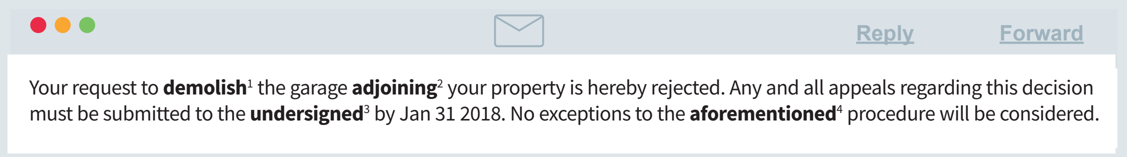

Your request to **demolish**[1] the garage **adjoining**[2] your property is hereby rejected. Any and all appeals regarding this decision must be submitted to the **undersigned**[3] by Jan 31 2018. No exceptions to the **aforementioned**[4] procedure will be considered.

[1] knock down [2] next to [3] the person who wrote this letter [4] mentioned earlier

Some publications produced by companies or government departments are difficult to understand because they use language that is very different from everyday English.

- They frequently use words that are longer and 'grander' than their ordinary equivalents.
- They often use a passive form instead of an active one, e.g. 'Normal service will be resumed as soon as possible' instead of 'We will resume normal service as soon as possible.'
- They use nouns as the subject of the sentence when they are not necessary, e.g. 'Achievement of this module is dependent upon candidates meeting the assessment outcomes' instead of 'To achieve this module, candidates must meet the assessment outcomes.'
- They use a noun instead of You, e.g. Customers will be informed of …' instead of 'You will be informed of …' or even 'We will tell you about …'

These words are more frequent in a bureaucratic context:
Work will **commence** in May. [start] (noun = **commencement)**
The company **ceased operations** last year. [stopped functioning] (noun = **cessation)**
Property belonging to the **deceased** will be returned to the **next of kin**. [dead person] [closest relative]
In the event of an emergency, call 121. [if there is]
In the event of fire, the building **must be evacuated** immediately. [people must leave]
Tenants must **endeavour** to keep communal areas tidy at all times. [try]
The developments will **facilitate** movement of traffic in the area. [make possible, easier]
Residents **will be instructed** what to do in the event of an emergency. [will be told]
The project will **proceed** to the next phase in June. [move]
We are currently attempting to **rectify** the situation. [put right]
Normal service **will be resumed** as soon as possible. [start again]

B Bureaucratic correspondence

There is some specific vocabulary that characterises bureaucratic letters:
Please **acknowledge receipt of** payment. [inform us that you have received]
With the compliments of Smith and Co. [written on a slip of paper sent with an item from a company]
Please **notify** us immediately of any change of address. [inform]
I would be grateful for a reply **at your earliest convenience**. [as soon as possible]
Contact us if **further clarification is required**. [you need more of an explanation]
I enclose payment **in respect of** your invoice. [relating to, for]
I am writing **with regard to** your advertisement. [about]

Exercises

101.1 **Look at the two texts in A opposite. Find an example in the texts of each of the four characteristics of bureaucratic language listed in the bullets in A.**

101.2 **Read each sentence. Choose the word in the second sentence which gives the same meaning in simpler language.**

1 Roadworks will commence on 1 June.
Roadworks will *begin* / *end* on 1 June.
2 (*on a form*) Contact details for next of kin.
Write the name and address of your *neighbour* / *nearest* relative.
3 With the compliments of Jane Bramwell.
With *best wishes* / *love* from Jane Bramwell.
4 Call me at your earliest convenience.
Call me early *in the morning* / *as soon as you can*.
5 In the event of fire, lifts should not be used.
If there is a fire / *At the start of a fire*, don't use the lifts.
6 Passengers should await instruction from the captain before proceeding to the car deck.
Passengers should not *go to* / *leave* the car deck until the captain tells them to.
7 I am writing with regard to the editorial in today's paper.
I am writing *for* / *about* the editorial in today's paper.
8 I am writing in respect of your letter of 6th June.
I am writing *in connection with* / *in favour of* your letter of 6th June.

101.3 **Match the words with their synonyms. Which word or phrase in each pair exemplifies bureaucratic language?**

deceased acknowledge end make easier rectify let us know
start clarification put right start again commencement dead
endeavour try facilitate cessation explanation resume

101.4 **Complete the word formation table below. Note that not all the words are on the opposite page. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

verb	noun	adjective
	clarification	
facilitate		
instruct		
		notifiable
rectify		

101.5 **Rewrite the sentences using everyday, non-bureaucratic English to replace the underlined words and phrases. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

1 Clients must comply with the following regulations.
2 Insert coins into the slot below.
3 Your complaints have been investigated and are considered to be without foundation.
4 Passengers are requested to refrain from smoking.
5 Tick your country of residence.

Answer key

Unit 1

1.1
1 His PhD **thesis** …
2 Little Martha did her first **composition** …
3 We have to hand in a **portfolio** …
4 The teacher gave us the title of this week's **essay** …
5 At the end of this course you have to do a 5,000-word **assignment** …
6 I think I'll do a study of people's personal banking habits for my MSc **dissertation** …
7 I've chosen to do the **project** …

1.2 When I'm studying **intensively** because I'm **cramming** for an exam, I don't see any point in looking up **past papers**, nor is there any point in just learning things **(off) by heart**. I know some people develop very clever **mnemonics** to help them remember the material, but there's no real substitute for **revising** the term's work. It's a good idea to have some sort of **mind map** to organise your thoughts, and **rote-learning** / **memorising** is useful, but in a limited way. At the end of the day, you just have to **bury yourself in your books** until you feel you know the subject **inside out**.

1.3
1 a first draft
2 a deadline
3 plagiarism
4 submit; assess
5 drop out
6 a paper; in (academic) journals
7 inter-library loan
8 feedback
9 a genius
10 carry out research

1.4
1 acknowledge
2 resources
3 revision
4 plagiarism
5 well-qualified
6 paper
7 access
8 inside

Unit 2

2.1
1 league tables
2 selective education
3 equality of opportunity
4 perpetuate inequalities
5 tertiary education

2.2
1 Inequality is **inherent in** the education system.
2 **Elitism** is bad for the country in the long term.
3 **Comprehensive education** is a basic political ideal in many countries.
4 A **two-tier system** of schools **depresses** the opportunities for children from **less well-off** families and favours those from **better-off** families.
5 Some private schools **are well-endowed** / **have endowments**, and this means they can have better resources.
6 All parents want their children to **excel** at school.
7 Emphasis on the three Rs is **perceived** by parents to be the key to success.
8 The government is increasing its provision for **tertiary education**.

2.3
2 Literacy refers to the ability to read.
Numeracy refers to the ability to count and do maths.
3 A student who is doing a doctorate is a postgraduate.
A student who is doing a first degree is an undergraduate.
4 Bullying is when a pupil uses frightening or threatening behaviour towards another child who is smaller or less powerful in some way.
Excelling is when a student does exceptionally well.
5 Secondary education is the stage that follows primary education.
Tertiary education is the stage that follows secondary education.
6 Selective schools choose the best students to study there.
Comprehensive schools take all students regardless of their academic ability.
7 League tables list schools from good to bad according to their exam results.
Guidelines offer advice on how to do something.

2.4
1 scholarship
2 distraction
3 guidelines
4 mature
5 fees
6 loan
7 three
8 one-to-one

Unit 3

3.1 1 c 2 h 3 a 4 j 5 f 6 i 7 e 8 d 9 b 10 g

3.2
1 previous experience
2 subsidised meals
3 stand out
4 hands-on
5 field
6 openings (or posts or roles)
7 full training
8 managerial experience
9 benefits package

3.3
1 support of
2 passion for
3 relevant to
4 role as; reported to
5 carried out
6 suitable for

3.4
1 customer-facing
2 team player
3 Dear Sir or Madam
4 post, opening, role, position
5 fast-paced

Unit 4

4.1
1 do … homework
2 trial run
3 first impression
4 body language; boost
5 firm handshake; eye contact
6 criteria

4.2
1 speak up
2 recruiting
3 fill
4 on
5 under pressure
6 professional development

4.3
1 talk us through
2 offer the position; an ideal fit
3 (paid) leave
4 panel
5 shortlisted

4.4
1 ~~overviewing~~ outlining
2 ~~leaving~~ notice
3 ~~superior~~ supervisor
4 ~~in-office~~ in-house
5 ~~begin~~ start
6 ~~trainer~~ trainee

Unit 5

5.1 I'm a **technician** in a factory. I think I have a good **working** relationship with my colleagues. I tried to establish a good **rapport** with them from the very beginning. The person I like most is my opposite **number** in our office in Paris. My boss likes me to **take** the initiative. Generally, when I socialise with my **workmates** outside of work, we try not to talk **~~about~~** shop, but it's not easy and sometimes we have a good gossip about colleagues and events at work.

5.2 1 d 2 a 3 e 4 b 5 f 6 c

5.3
1 went in with, start-up
2 workload
3 behind a desk
4 a rut
5 freelance
6 self-employed
7 (dead-)end job
8 off
9 antisocial / irregular
10 hot-desking

5.4 *Possible answers:*
1 repetitive, mechanical, challenging
2 mundane, monotonous, mind-numbing
3 varied, challenging, glamorous
4 glamorous, stressful, varied
5 stressful, challenging, rewarding
6 stressful, monotonous, glamorous
7 varied, repetitive, monotonous
8 stressful, stimulating, challenging
9 repetitive, monotonous, mundane
10 monotonous, challenging, stressful

Unit 6

6.1
1 Do you enjoy **teamwork**?
2 I don't think that **financial reward** is the key to job satisfaction.
3 Would you feel nervous giving a presentation to **an interview panel**?
4 Sales staff are often paid **an annual bonus** when they perform well.

6.2
1 a **run-of-the-mill** job
2 a person who is **demotivated**
3 a **dynamic** profession
4 a salary **increment**
5 **voluntary** redundancy
6 a **skeleton** staff of workers
7 someone who is **overworked and underpaid**
8 a **performance-related** pay rise

6.3
1 Rafael has done the same job for the last fifteen years and his job will be secure until he retires. For Rafael, **job stability** is very important.
2 Kate has a good **work–life balance**. She never works late and she often finds time to relax with her family or go to the cinema in the evening.
3 After graduating from Manchester University, Dan started work in the **fast-moving** film industry.
4 Amy joined the law firm for the **long-term** career prospects they offered. It would be hard work for the first few years, but she could later become a senior partner.

6.4
1 She was on **maternity** leave for three months after the birth of her baby. Then her husband took **paternity** leave for three months. (You can also combine the two terms and refer to **parental leave**.)
2 Sarah has been on **adoption** leave since she and Brian welcomed their new two-year old child into their family. Brian took **voluntary** redundancy from his job, which means he is at home too.
3 My holiday **entitlement** is four weeks a year. The atmosphere in my **workplace** is very pleasant, so I'm happy.
4 When I applied for the job, I was looking **to** join a dynamic team. However, the interview **panel** gave an impression of complete boredom and lack of interest.
5 The factory had to operate with a **skeleton** staff during the economic crisis. There had been a large number of **compulsory** redundancies.
6 I get some good **perks** in my new job. I get a company car and free health **insurance**.

Unit 7

7.1 1 c 2 g 3 e 4 b 5 h 6 a 7 f 8 i 9 d

7.2 1 under 2 around 3 back 4 cold 5 part 6 bid 7 telesales
8 niche 9 stock

7.3
1 hammer out a deal / hammer out an agreement
2 red tape 3 a takeover 4 lucrative
5 start-up 6 swallowed up
7 proposition 8 administration

7.4
1 reach
2 priced
3 merchandise
4 down
5 back
6 red tape

Unit 8

8.1 **1** Sophie **2** Harry **3** Tatyana **4** Andrey **5** Alice **6** Tom

8.2 Positive: Ellie and Marco
Negative: David and Julia

8.3
1 opportunistic
2 intuitive
3 morose
4 naive
5 magnetic
6 methodical
7 brusque
8 superficial
9 insecure
10 good company
11 courageous
12 perfectionist

8.4
1 altruistic
2 parsimonious
3 diligent
4 placid
5 industrious
6 rebellious
7 distrustful
8 terse
9 naive
10 unscrupulous

8.5 *Possible answers:*
1 altruistic: unselfish
2 parsimonious: thrifty
3 diligent: hard-working
4 placid: calm, easy-going
5 industrious: hard-working, energetic
6 rebellious: disobedient, defiant, unruly
7 distrustful: suspicious, wary
8 terse: abrupt, short
9 naive: green, trusting
10 unscrupulous: dishonest, dodgy

Unit 9

9.1
1 She looks as if she needs a good meal; her body is so **scrawny**.
2 Martha and David are both rather **lanky** individuals.
3 Being **obese** can have health risks.
4 A **gangly**/**gangling** boy carried our bags for us.
5 Her new silk dress suited her **slender** frame.
6 A **stocky** man offered to lift the stone so we could look underneath.
7 That **stout** woman on the left of the photo is Charlie's wife.

9.2 *Possible answers:*

1. unkempt
2. hair
3. bulked up
4. haggard

9.3

1. He's folding his arms.
2. He's clenching his fists.
3. She's biting her nails.
4. She's shrugging her shoulders.
5. She's scowling.
6. She's grinning.

9.4

1. The two meanings: positioning your lips in an attractive way; positioning your lips in a look of annoyance.
2. They are probably angry or annoyed.
3. A swarthy complexion is dark, a sallow one is rather yellowish and unhealthy-looking.
4. When you feel really angry or frustrated.
5. When they want to show that they don't understand or know something, or that they don't care about something.
6. You might tap or drum them.
7. People often fold their arms when they are listening to a lecture or to the teacher in class, or when sitting for a photograph. Folding your arms can also express a refusal to respond, confrontation or hearing something you don't like. People often cross their legs when sitting and waiting for something.
8. A 'lean and wiry' person is thin, healthy and strong.

Unit 10

10.1

1. An approachable teacher or boss is one that you can easily talk to.
2. pig-headed
3. little
4. an effusive greeting
5. difficult
6. impetuous
7. conscientious
8. extrovert

10.2

1. Don't be so **conceited**! You're not the only one to get an A-grade!
2. People **with** / **who have low self-esteem** can find it difficult to achieve their goals.
3. He's generally **an outgoing** sort of person.
4. She is a **well-balanced** person overall.
5. You always seem **restless**. What's the problem?
6. He's so **excitable**. He should try to calm down more.
7. She **is rather naive** when it comes to politics.
8. He's **pushy** and cares little what happens to others.
9. Frances was very **aloof** at the party.
10. At times, Joel is quite **haughty**.

10.3

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
excitable	excitability	reserved	reserve
gullible	gullibility	diffident	diffidence
disdainful	disdain	pig-headed	pig-headedness
impetuous	impetuosity (or, much less commonly, impetuousness)	respectful	respect
obstinate	obstinacy	self-important	self-importance
approachable	approachability	modest	modesty

10.4

1 One of her main character traits is **impetuosity/impetuousness**.
2 It's difficult to get him to change his ways. He **is very obstinate**.
3 Luke **is very reserved**, but his wife is **more approachable**.
4 One of her nicest characteristics is **(her) modesty**.
5 She **is very respectful towards/to** her elders. It's important in her culture.
6 **Pig-headedness** seems to be a family trait among my relatives.
7 She is so **self-important**; it irritates everyone.
8 Online identity thieves prey on **people's gullibility**.

Unit 11

11.1

1 e 2 f 3 a 4 b 5 d 6 c
1 … love at first sight.
2 … kindred spirits.
3 … bosom pals.
4 … mutual acquaintances.
5 … head over heels in love.
6 … hit it off.

11.2

1 eyes
2 well-matched
3 on, on fire
4 infatuated / besotted
5 regard
6 heart
7 thick
8 family

11.3

noun	adjective	noun	adjective
loyalty	loyal	respect	respectful
consideration	considerate	affection	affectionate
passion	passionate	romance	romantic
devotion	devoted	support	supportive
fondness	fond	amiability	amiable
faithfulness/faith*	faithful	trust	trusting/trustworthy†
adoration	adoring	infatuation	infatuated

**Faithfulness* is when you are completely loyal to someone; *faith* is the complete trust or confidence that you have in someone or something.

† If someone is very *trusting*, they trust you (or other people); if they are *trustworthy*, you (or other people) can trust them.

11.4
1 to
2 for
3 to
4 of
5 of
6 in
7 towards
8 about

Unit 12

12.1
1 disloyal
2 untruthful
3 dishonest
4 unsupportive
5 friendly
6 disrespectful

12.2
1 We both own the company: we're business **partners**.
2 I've made several casual **acquaintances** since moving to London, but no close friends yet.
3 Were Britain and the USA **allies** in the First World War?
4 The two companies hate each other: they're (**bitter**/**arch) rivals**.

12.3
1 close / staunch
2 scrupulous
3 deeply
4 complete, unswerving
5 bitter / arch
6 true / loyal

12.4
1 with
2 of
3 to
4 behind
5 on, with
6 towards

12.5
1 Mia and her sister **didn't see eye to eye** on a lot of things.
2 Carla's affection for Andrew has **turned sour** lately. I expect they'll **split up**.
3 Our relationship **broke down** because we were **untruthful** to each other.
4 Henry's brothers are **sworn enemies**.

12.6
1 It was a **genuine misunderstanding**.
2 They come from a **broken home**.
3 It has **had its ups and downs**.
4 A serious **rift** has **developed** between the two union leaders.
5 I think it's a **family feud**.

Unit 13

13.1 1 B crave 2 C defusing 3 B thrilled 4 B appease 5 C coveted 6 B blissfully

13.2 1 Katie 2 Ashley 3 Rowan 4 William

13.3 1 d 2 f 3 b 4 e 5 a 6 c

13.4
1 No. Appease(ment) is usually associated with disapproval.
2 Jubilant.
3 They would probably be trying to find a compromise or a solution that would be acceptable to both neighbours.
4 Angry.
5 They are probably not ready to forget the conflict because they very much want revenge.

Unit 14

14.1
1 I have a strong **aversion** to people who always want to be the centre of attention.
2 He always **scorns** our amateur theatrical productions.
3 She **abhors** injustice, wherever it occurs.
4 I am **not averse to** a vegetarian diet. I've just never tried it.
5 His attitude was very **irritating**. / I was very **irritated** by his attitude.
6 We were all **alarmed** when we heard the news.

14.2
1 b upset
2 very strong dislike / intense hatred
3 c actively and strongly dislike them
4 b annoyance

14.3 1 d 2 e 3 a 4 b 5 c

14.4
1 ostentatious
2 fickle
3 pretentious
4 nit-picking
5 sloppy
6 obnoxious
7 offhand
8 pompous
9 puerile
10 officious
11 forlorn
12 distraught

Unit 15

15.1
1 conceive
2 labour, birth
3 delivery, caesarean
4 placenta, uterus/womb
5 tube
6 midwife
7 expecting
8 pregnancy, foetus

15.2
1 The whole country is in **mourning** after the President's death.
2 I'd like my **ashes** scattered in my favourite forest.
3 My **late** grandfather was a shepherd all his life.
4 I'm afraid her elderly step-mother has just passed **away**.
5 My car is on its last **legs**.
6 My father **bequeathed** me his gold watch in his will.
7 Mrs Wilson seems to have been at death's **door** for years.
8 Over 2,000 people **perished** in the earthquake.
9 It was amazing there were no **fatalities** when the bridge collapsed.
10 My aunt left me a **bequest** of £500 in her will.

15.3
1 Both my sisters **are expecting** at the moment.
2 Shona Harrison **gave birth** to twins last Monday.
3 She has been taking **fertility drugs** (to help her conceive).
4 All my grandparents lived to **a ripe old age**.
5 My neighbour is 90 but she still **has all her wits about her**.
6 Unfortunately, the deceased died **without leaving a will**.
7 **John's three nephews each inherited £1,000 from him**.
8 **Please accept my condolences**.

15.4
1 perished
2 slaughtered
3 fatalities
4 deceased
5 passed away
6 pensioner
7 bequeathed
8 inherited
9 bequest

Unit 16

16.1
1 therapeutic
2 lucrative
3 relaxing / calming / therapeutic
4 fruitful
5 rewarding
6 time-consuming

16.2
1 a couch potato
2 a shopaholic
3 a culture vulture
4 a dabbler

16.3
Possible answers:
1 It's a matter of personal choice but, for me, tidying is more of a chore than washing my clothes.
2 It depends, of course, but once a week in the grass-growing season is normal in England.
3 No, he/she doesn't.
4 No, they do a bit of photography but are not seriously into it.
5 Again, it's a matter of personal choice but, for me, being a participant is more appealing than being a spectator.

16.4
1 My daughter's **into** folk music. She downloads a lot of traditional folk songs.
2 He **locks** himself **away** in the attic and plays with his model railway for hours on end.
3 She's (**totally**) **hooked on** football these days. She watches every match on TV.
4 I have a **full diary** for the rest of the month.
5 What do you **get up to** when you aren't working, Nigel?
6 Martine **was a keen participant** in the end-of-term concert.

16.5
1 therapeutic
2 couch potato
3 gone off
4 time-consuming
5 full diary
6 lucrative

Unit 17

17.1 *Possible answers:*

1 You mean that they tend to dress in an untidy, careless way.
2 Smart but fairly casual clothes.
3 Revealing, skimpy, clingy, baggy or frumpy clothes would not be appropriate for a job interview.
4 It would be appropriate for both men and women to wear a smart suit to a job interview.
5 Jeans and a baggy shirt.
6 A nice belt, with boots and simple jewellery.
7 Trousers and a T-shirt.
8 Nurses, police officers, firemen, airline staff, the military.
9 Jobs involving risk, e.g. construction workers, miners.
10 She means it's extremely useful.

17.2

1 the nines
2 smart-casual
3 skimpy / revealing
4 designer (label), High Street
5 height, chic
6 baggy
7 on
8 must

17.3

1 I'm no good at speaking **off the cuff**.
2 Simon is bound to have **something up his sleeve** for tomorrow's meeting.
3 I think we should **draw a veil** over what happened on Monday, don't you?
4 Be careful what you say to Helen – she's **hand in glove** with the boss.
5 The new legislation **has put us in a straitjacket**.
6 We'll still have a great party even if we have to do it **on a shoestring**.

17.4

1 The literal meaning of *belt* is a piece of cloth or leather that you wear round your waist. You need to tighten it if you lose weight. The metaphorical meaning of *tighten your belt* is to start living in a more economical way.
2 The literal meaning of the verb *hem* is to sew up the bottom edge of, e.g. a dress so that it does not develop loose threads. *Hemmed in* means completely surrounded.
3 A *seam* is a line of sewing joining two pieces of material so that if, say, a bag is *bursting at the seams*, it is almost splitting open. The metaphorical meaning of *bursting at the seams* is very, very full.
4 Literally, *to cloak* is to cover with a cloak. The metaphorical meaning of *cloaked* is kept secret.
5 Literally *a feather in someone's cap* is simply a feather decorating their cap or hat. The metaphorical meaning of the expression is an achievement to be proud of.

Unit 18

18.1 *Possible answers:*

accommodation	What kind of person lives there?	Would you like to live there? Why/Why not?
furnished accommodation	someone who does not have their own furniture, perhaps a young person or someone living in a place for a short period of time	I wouldn't want to live in this kind of accommodation now because I have too many pieces of furniture of my own now.
social housing	people who do not have enough money to buy a house of their own	It would depend on the area – some social housing is very nice and there is a friendly atmosphere. But in other areas, the social housing is rather run-down and depressing.
granny flat	an elderly relative of the people who live in the main house	When I'm old, I would like to live close to my family but with at least a degree of independence.
high-rise	any type of person might live in one of these, though it would probably be someone in a large city	I wouldn't like to live very high up, as it would mean using a lift or lots of stairs to get down to the bottom and go outside.
hovel	someone who is not good at or interested in looking after themselves	I should hate to live somewhere dirty and in a bad condition.
penthouse	someone with a lot of money	I'd like to live in a spacious modern penthouse with the very latest in design and technology, and a fantastic view over a city.

18.2
1 on fire
2 home truths
3 write home about
4 life and death
5 fast lane
6 led
7 breathe
8 make

18.3
1 We had **the time of our life**/**lives** on holiday this year.
2 As soon as spring comes, I feel as if I'm **getting a new lease of life**.
3 The problems caused by the floods are only **hitting home** now.
4 I imagine that being a servant in the past must have been **a dog's life**.
5 All over the world, McDonald's **is a household name**.
6 He's **taking his life in his hands** if he gets in a car with Ben at the wheel!
7 Because we were such frequent customers, the restaurant gave us a meal **on the house**.
8 Our holiday apartment was quite adequate but **nothing to write home about**.

18.4
1 committing suicide
2 was extremely popular with the audience
3 occupations
4 very unstable
5 eat an enormous amount
6 be energetic and funny at a social occasion

Unit 19

19.1
1 male: a stag party or stag night; female: a hen party or hen night
2 the wedding reception and/or an evening party
3 a housewarming (party)
4 a launch party / a book launch
5 a reception / an official reception
6 a fancy-dress party

19.2
1 It's always good to see Theo, but somehow he always manages to **outstay his welcome**.
2 I'm going to a dinner at the Royal Plaza Hotel tonight. It's a **black-tie** event.
3 Don't forget your old friends when your film becomes a hit and you're **rubbing shoulders** / **hobnobbing** / **hanging out** with the rich and famous.
4 We're going to have **a girls' night out** on Friday.
5 We must invite Jasmine to our do. She's a real **party animal**!
6 Don't always wait for people to do things for you. You should be more **proactive**.
7 It's good to see you! We must **do lunch** sometime and discuss business.
8 It irritates me the way he's always **hobnobbing** with the managers.

19.3
1 He usually hangs **out** with his college friends at the weekend and they go to football matches and things.
2 Nella and her friends are very **cliquey**. They don't mix with anyone else.
3 I'd better go home now. You've been very kind, but I don't want to **outstay** my welcome.
4 She said she wanted to go out with me, then she stood me **up**!
5 Rita and Nick are an **item**. They've been together for months. Didn't you know?
6 Laurie's **crowd** are really fun people. I often meet up with them in town.

Unit 20

20.1
1 far-fetched
2 hackneyed
3 overrated
4 understated
5 disjointed
6 tedious

20.2 *Suggested answers:*
1 The musical **was (rather/a bit) risqué** and was attacked by several politicians and religious figures. (*Risqué* is often used with a modifier such as *rather*, *very*, *a bit*, etc.)
2 Her dance performance was **memorable**/**unforgettable**, simply marvellous.
3 I can't remember the last time I saw such a **gripping film**.
4 It was a **very**/**deeply moving** play.
5 It's a **harrowing** film.
6 His first stand-up routine **was hilarious**.

20.3
1 flop
2 booed
3 panned
4 interpretation
5 glowing
6 ovation

20.4
1 portrayal
2 miscast
3 cliffhanger
4 keep you on the edge of your seat
5 budding (like the buds of a flower, which will open up and grow)
6 blockbuster (film/movie)
7 cops-and-robbers
8 masterpiece

Unit 21

21.1

1 Surrealism
2 Op-art
3 Cubism
4 Impressionism
5 subject matter
6 visually literate

21.2

1 Low – as is made clear by the use of the word *dauber*, which suggests speed and lack of care.
2 Formal – because *deem* is typical of more formal speech or writing.
3 Not affected at all – the use of the word *inured* suggests that the sculptor has developed a hard skin when it comes to criticism.
4 An art school is a place where students study art, while a school of art is an artistic movement.

21.3

usually positive associations: dazzling, evocative, exquisite, intriguing, original, peerless, priceless, skilful, thought-provoking
usually negative associations: predictable, highbrow, lowbrow, impenetrable, undemanding, pedestrian, uninspiring, unstimulating, clumsy, dreary, run-of-the-mill, worthless, poorly done
negative or positive associations: transparent, challenging, tongue-in-cheek, earnest, sophisticated, primitive

21.4

Possible answers:
I think Picasso's painting called *Guernica* is very original because he treated his subject matter in such an unusual and powerful way.
I think the pictures on chocolate boxes could be called rather lowbrow as they are intended to appeal to a mass audience.
I find some modern sculpture rather impenetrable as I don't know what it is meant to represent and I don't find it beautiful in any way.
I think you could call some classical paintings sophisticated in that you appreciate them more if you have had some artistic education.
I find paintings by the surrealist artist Salvador Dali rather challenging as they contain so many curious and unexpected images.
I went to an exhibition of a new art school graduate which I thought was rather pedestrian because it contained nothing original.
I find paintings by Toulouse-Lautrec very evocative because they make me feel as if I am there myself.
I find the sculptures by Anish Kapoor very thought-provoking in that you want to look at them for a long time to work out what he intended to convey.
In my opinion, the designs on ancient Chinese porcelain are often exquisite as they are so delicate and so carefully executed.
I found a recent work that won a prestigious art prize – an unmade, rather grubby bed – extraordinarily dreary as it made me feel miserable rather than uplifted, as I believe art should.
I believe that Turner's paintings of the sea are peerless as no other painter seems to capture the colour and light of the sea so effectively.
Most political cartoons in newspapers are tongue-in-cheek as they do not take anything too seriously.
The beautiful paintings of Leonardo da Vinci are, of course, priceless.
I can see that the works of the modern British painter Tracey Emin are skilful, but personally I don't like them very much.

21.5

1 lowbrow
2 tongue-in-cheek
3 primitive
4 dreary
5 exquisite
6 challenging

21.6

verb	noun	adjective
paint	painting, painter	painted
sketch	sketch	sketchy
depict	depiction	depicted
portray	portrayal, portrait	portrayed
colour	colour	colourful, colourless
shape	shape	shapely
illustrate	illustration, illustrator	illustrative
illuminate	illumination	illuminating

Unit 22

22.1

1 memoir/memoirs
2 manual
3 anthology
4 journal

22.2

Suggested answers:

1 I just could not **get into** the story, so I stopped reading it.
2 It's **lightweight**.
3 It's **heavy going**.
4 It's **good bedtime reading**; it's just right when you're settling down at night. All the time I was reading it, I just couldn't **put it down**.
5 It's **compulsive reading**, it's so fascinating. / It's a **gripping story**.
6 The book is **very informative**.
7 Her second novel did not attract a large **readership**.
8 This book contains some great moments of **insight**.
9 It is an **engaging tale** about a boy who nurses an injured bird.
10 Mena Harrap's self-help book was a **product of its time**, but what was true in the 1980s doesn't necessarily apply nowadays.

22.3

1 The story takes place against a rather **lugubrious** background in 18th-century London.
2 It's full of **wry** comedy and satire.
3 The book is a **chilling** documentation of abuse in a prison.
4 The novel is full of **evocative** passages depicting life in Australia at the turn of the 19th century.
5 It's a very **enigmatic** novel; you never really know what is happening until right at the end.
6 The novel is a **poignant** portrayal of life in a coal-mining community during the last economic recession.
7 John Farr's latest novel is a **breathtaking** masterpiece.
8 *House of the Dead* is a **macabre** story of torture and death in a medieval castle.
9 The novel's **eponymous** heroine, Maria Selune, leaves home at the age of 18 and travels through Asia.
10 Laisha and Asoka are the **protagonists** in this unusual tale of rural family life.

22.4 1 c 2 a 3 d 4 b

Unit 23

23.1

1 Rowan
2 Thomas
3 Atsuko
4 Hannah
5 Beth
6 Carlos

23.2

1 nutrition (or you could use the adjective *nutritional*)
2 traffic-light
3 wholesome
4 unprocessed
5 gluten-free
6 battery farming
7 vegan
8 wholefoods

23.3

1 My mother **grilled** me about where I had been last night.
2 I feel I need something more exciting to **spice up** my life.
3 What's been happening recently? You must fill me in on all the **juicy** gossip.
4 Don't tell her that her phone has been found. Let her **stew (in her own juice)** – perhaps she'll be more careful with it in future.
5 He wanted me to go to the match with him, but rugby just isn't **my cup of tea**.
6 They lived together happily for many years, but things **turned sour** when his mother came to live with them.
7 Patience combined with interest in your pupils is **a recipe for** success for a teacher.
8 Jake's ideas are always **half-baked**.
9 There were some **unsavoury** characters at that party.
10 He has **cooked up** a crazy scheme for making money on the internet. It has all the **ingredients** of a complete disaster.

Unit 24

24.1

Suggested answers:

1 When we eat out as a group, **we usually split the bill**.
2 Let me **get this (one)**. You can pay next time.
3 Visitors to the company's head office in London are always **wined and dined in/at** the best restaurants.
4 **Would you like to join us** for lunch tomorrow?
5 No, please. Put your credit card away. **Dinner's on me**.
6 **I'd like you to be my guest** at the theatre tomorrow night.

24.2

1 I**'m teetotal**.
2 I **haven't got a sweet tooth**.
3 **Do you have any special/particular dietary requirements?**
4 Just a small **portion** for me, please. I don't want to **overdo it**.
5 She's become **very calorie-conscious**. / She's **counting the calories**.
6 Sasha is such a **fussy eater**. It's difficult to find things she likes.

24.3

1 a savoury dish
2 a sullen/overbearing waiter
3 an informal get-together
4 courteous staff
5 sluggish service
6 impeccable service

24.4

1 take pot luck
2 say when
3 grab a bite to eat
4 nibbles
5 seconds (note plural)
6 an informal get-together

Unit 25

25.1
1 tow-away
2 tailback
3 pile-ups
4 give-way
5 right of way
6 hit-and-run
7 (exhaust) emissions
8 breathalyser, drink-driving, penalty points
9 sound/beep, horns
10 disruption
11 congestion

25.2 *Suggested answers:*
2 B: Oh, so you **skidded**.
3 B: Oh, I guess it was a case of **road rage**.
4 B: Oh, so your tyres were **bald**, were they?
5 B: Oh, so it was a **head-on collision**.
6 B: Oh, really? I didn't know they could give **on-the-spot fines**.
7 B: Oh, so it's not **roadworthy**.
8 B: Oh, really? Do you have to pay a **toll**? I didn't know that.

25.3 *Suggested answers:*
1 All the traffic in all directions was unable to move.
2 The police car made me stop at the side of the road.
3 I had a small accident where I hit something or another car, but without serious damage. (*Bump* is an informal alternative to *collision*.)
4 My car broke down. (*Conk out* is very informal.)
5 He's an irritating person who sits in the passenger seat and thinks he can tell the driver how to drive.

Unit 26

26.1 *Suggested answers:*
2 I hate **charter flights**.
3 The ticket allowed us a three-night **stopover** in Singapore on the journey from London to Sydney.
4 You can get a **shared cabin** on the ferry. / You can get a **four-berth cabin** on the ferry.
5 Our seats were in the **front/first carriage**.
6 When you arrive, the **transfers** are included in the cost of the holiday. / The cost of the holiday is inclusive of **transfers**.
7 It was a cheap fare, but there were (some) **restrictions**.
8 The ticket is relatively cheap, but it's **non-refundable**.
9 It's an **all-inclusive holiday**.

26.2 1 e 2 f 3 a 4 c 5 j 6 b 7 d 8 g 9 h 10 i

26.3 *Suggested answers:*
1 self-catering holiday: to be your own boss
2 camping at a beach resort: to rough it (i.e. to live in very basic conditions, without any extra comforts), to sleep under the stars (i.e. out in the open, without a roof over your head)
3 staying in an inn or a guest house: a cosy atmosphere
4 skiing holiday, staying in a chalet: an exhilarating experience, perhaps also a real learning experience
5 trekking holiday, camping in the mountains: to keep on the move, to be out in the wilds (i.e. away from civilisation), to sleep under the stars, an exhilarating experience
6 cruise: to lounge around (i.e. to sit or lie and relax for long periods), to just drift along (to go along with the pace and rhythm of the ship)
7 sightseeing holiday, staying in a hotel in a historic city: to spend a fortune on entrance fees, a real learning experience
8 touring holiday, in a hire car: to come and go as you please, to just drift along (i.e. not drive fast, no particular plan), to keep on the move

26.4 *Suggested answers:*

1 lounged around / drifted along
2 be my own boss
3 roughing it / sleeping under the stars / being out in the wilds
4 an exhilarating experience
5 to spend a fortune on entrance fees
6 a real learning experience
7 a cosy atmosphere
8 to keep on the move

Unit 27

27.1

1 boasts
2 sector
3 fauna
4 get, beaten
5 hordes
6 get, nature
7 seeking, ordinary
8 escape
9 tracts, virgin, wealth
10 parks, reserves

27.2

1 unrivalled
2 scenic
3 stunning
4 unbeatable
5 awe-inspiring
6 waterfront
7 unwind
8 recharge

27.3

1 trek, hike, ramble
2 savour
3 discerning
4 outside of the cities in wild areas, covered with grass, bushes and trees, especially in Africa and Australia
5 four by four: the vehicle has driving power on all four wheels (often used to cross rough terrain or snow and ice)
6 positive

Unit 28

28.1 1 c 2 e 3 d 4 b 5 a

Less strong but also possible is *coniferous plantation*. Note that some other matches could be made although they do not appear in the text. However, *paddy* cannot collocate with anything else and it is not possible to talk about 'crop fields'.

28.2 *Suggested answers:*

plantation: tea, coffee, rubber
industry: manufacturing, pharmaceutical, textile
forest: deciduous, rain, dense
field: oil, wheat, magnetic
nation: developing, independent, sovereign
Note that *oil*, *cotton* and *rubber* could also collocate with 'industry'.

28.3
1 ancestors
2 emigrants
3 immigrants/migrants
4 migrants/immigrants
5 descendants

28.4
1 Recently, the country's economy has suffered a decline in **manufacturing industry**.
2 The university has long been **at the forefront of** agricultural science.
3 The river delta **is prone to** catastrophic flooding on a regular basis.
4 One can often see local shepherds **tending** large flocks of sheep on the hillsides.
5 In the late 18th century, migrants **settled** in the uncultivated lands towards the north of the country.
6 In the **arid** southern provinces, **vegetation** is sparse.
7 In the cold northern regions, the landscape consists mostly of **tundra**.
8 The **indigenous tribes** in the eastern jungles are now facing threats to their way of life.
9 The farmlands are dotted with **deciduous woods**, while the large **evergreen forests** provide the country with much-needed timber.
10 The **prairies** of the northern USA experienced a severe **drought** last year.

Unit 29

29.1 *Possible answers:*
1 Yes, extremely chilly / cold.
2 Mm. Isn't it hot!
3 Yes, terribly humid.
4 Very windy!
5 Yes, it's very oppressive / sultry.
6 Yes, what a deluge / downpour!
7 Yes, it's very humid.
8 Yes, isn't it oppressive / sultry!

29.2 *Suggested answers:*
2 unfriendly, unwelcoming
3 to confuse
4 having too much of something
5 rapid, moving quickly
6 lots of hard, unpleasant things that one can't stop or escape from
7 general atmosphere or situation
8 unclear
9 to move, making a loud, deep noise

29.3 *Possible answers:*
1 moral, social, economic, current, mild, harsh **climate**
2 **prevailing** winds, view, climate, opinion, mood
3 **to cloud** the issue, the horizon, someone's judgement, someone's thinking, someone's vision
4 **the winds of** change, democracy, discontent
5 **a frosty** reception, look, glance, response
6 **a hail of** bullets, gunfire, abuse, missiles, insults

29.4
1 mean
2 arid
3 elevation
4 latitude
5 precipitation
6 solar radiation
7 moderates
8 continental
9 seasonality

Unit 30

30.1

1 c glass ceiling = invisible barrier
2 d ivory tower = life away from unpleasant realities
3 e brick wall = barrier
4 f back door = unofficial way in
5 b window of opportunity = time when there is the chance to do something
6 a tower of strength = very supportive person

30.2

1 gone
2 hold / provide
3 opens
4 come
5 hit
6 towers
7 shut / closed
8 fell

30.3

1 My brother is always **a tower of strength** whenever I have a problem.
2 We'll never know what the US and Russian Presidents said to each other **behind closed doors**.
3 The fee for this work will depend on the time it takes but **there is** / **it has a ceiling** of $20,000 / **the ceiling is** $20,000.
4 The cost of petrol **has gone through the roof** in the last six months.
5 Having children often **cements a marriage**.
6 Winning an Olympic medal can be **the gateway to** a career in the media.
7 The **key** decision we have to take now is where to locate our business.
8 The professor has spent all his life **in an ivory tower** and really finds it very difficult to cope in the real world.
9 Lena **has built Max up** so much – I hope I won't be disappointed when I meet him.

30.4

Suggested answers:

1 He earns very little, barely enough to **survive on**.
2 The speaker's request for questions was met with **total silence**.
3 Working on this project together should help to **provide the starting point** for a good relationship in the future.
4 Nathan's prolonged illness **led to the collapse of his business**.
5 This government should **put things right in its own immediate sphere of influence** / **close to home** / **here** before criticising other countries.

Unit 31

31.1

1 f **2** c **3** e **4** a **5** g **6** b **7** d

31.2

1 roots
2 rooted
3 take
4 seeds
5 branches
6 put
7 stemmed
8 budding

31.3

Verbs associated with growth and health: flourish, germinate, sprout, thrive
Verbs associated with decline and death: fade, shrivel, wilt, wither

31.4 *Possible answers:*

1 budding: pop star, novelist, politician
2 flourishing: business, campaign, enterprise
3 withering: glance, expression, remark
4 fading: optimism, ambitions, dream
5 deeply rooted: prejudice, hatred, tradition
6 thriving: industry, business, agriculture

31.5

1 My hopes of getting a job are **fading**. Unemployment is at an all-time record.
2 The firm is **pruning back** the labour force in order to reduce costs.
3 She **shed** her inhibitions at the party and danced with everyone!
4 He and his wife are now **reaping the rewards** of many years of hard work building up their business.
5 The party is trying hard to **weed out** the extremists and create for itself a more moderate political image. They want to reflect the views of **the grassroots** supporters.
6 Some people seem to **thrive** on difficult challenges.
7 A blogger **dug up** some alarming facts about government spending.
8 Well, if you won't study for your exams, don't be surprised if you **reap what you sow**.
9 After three years of recession, we are beginning to see the **green shoots** of an economic recovery.

Unit 32

32.1

1 There are a lot of different types of **rodent** living in the woods.
2 A whale isn't a fish, as it doesn't lay eggs. It's actually **a mammal**.
3 There are some interesting **reptiles** near the river.
4 Everyone thinks these animals **are carnivores**, but in fact they **are herbivores**.
5 The mother bird protects her eggs from **predators**.
6 Many different species **have become extinct** because their habitat has been destroyed.

32.2

1 docile
2 fierce/savage
3 domesticated
4 tame
5 wild

32.3

1 habitat
2 sanctuary
3 reserve
4 scavenger
5 stray
6 marsupial
7 migration
8 dodo

32.4

1 blood sports
2 the ivory trade
3 poachers
4 They would say that it is cruel to kill animals just to provide people with luxury clothes.
5 its horn
6 animal (rescue) shelter
7 game park / game reserve
8 warm-blooded
9 cold-blooded

32.5 Stressed syllables are in bold for comparison.

noun	verb	adjective
carnivore		car**ni**vorous
herbivore		her**bi**vorous
predator	prey (on)	**pre**datory
poacher	poach	
mig**ra**tion	migrate	mig**rat**ory
domesti**ca**tion	domesticate	do**mest**icated

Unit 33

33.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 **Carbon (dioxide) emissions from** cars and factories **are** a major problem.
2 These flowers here are **an endangered species**, so it's illegal to pick them.
3 A lot of wild animals have to survive in **shrinking habitats**.
4 A lot of Patagonia is a **pristine environment**.
5 We have to look after **the finite resources of the planet**.
6 If **deforestation** continues, there will be no forest left ten years from now.
7 Burning **fossil fuels** causes a lot of pollution.
8 **Sea levels will rise** / **There will be rising sea levels** if **global warming** continues.
9 Increasing population **exerts severe pressure on** economic resources.
10 The **ecological balance** is very delicate.

33.2

noun	verb	adjective	adverb
climate		climatic	
demography		demographic	demographically
projection	project	projected	
sustainability	sustain	sustainable	sustainably
contamination	contaminate	contaminated	
toxin		toxic	toxically
depletion	deplete	depleted, depleting	

33.3 Prophets of doom and gloom are always saying that we are heading for an environmental catastrophe, and that unless we adopt a policy of sustainable development, we will cause irreparable damage to the planet. The worst-case scenario is of a world choked by overpopulation, the greenhouse effect and traffic gridlock. Much of what is claimed is exaggerated, but politicians are influenced by such voices and are always trying to improve their green credentials in the eyes of the voters.

33.4 1 d 2 e 3 g 4 h 5 f 6 c 7 a 8 b

Unit 34

34.1

1 on hold, back to
2 dispatch
3 responsive
4 prompt
5 backlog
6 substandard / shoddy
7 accommodating / obliging
8 helpline
9 in-store
10 set up

34.2 1 i 2 h 3 b 4 f 5 a 6 g 7 d 8 e 9 c

34.3
1 The plumber we got **was incompetent** and he caused a flood in our kitchen.
2 If you have any **queries** about the service, there's a helpline you can ring.
3 The new TV came with a two-year **guarantee** / **warranty**.
4 The service **is** (**very**) **impersonal**; they just treat you as a number.
5 Do they offer a **nationwide** service?
6 The service they gave me **was impeccable**.
7 It's a **secure site**.
8 It didn't feel like a **secure transaction**, so I cancelled it and logged off.

Unit 35

35.1
1 You'll have to show a **vaccination certificate** for infectious diseases when you enter the country.
2 People entering from war-torn countries often **claim asylum**.
3 You have to **clear customs** if you arrive on an international flight at San Francisco airport, even if you are flying on within the USA.
4 You may have to fill in a **customs declaration (form)** before going through customs control.
5 At the airport now, they use **facial recognition technology**.
6 *Passenger to airline cabin attendant:* Could you give me **a landing card** before we arrive, please?
7 At the airport, the security guards had **sniffer**/**detector dogs**.
8 You'll need a visa; the **entry regulations** are very strict.
9 You have to fill in the **port of entry** in this box here.

35.2 1 g 2 j 3 h 4 e 5 i 6 d 7 b 8 a 9 f 10 c

35.3
1 a plain-clothes (police) officer
2 a traffic warden
3 the anti-corruption squad
4 a parking ticket
5 an undercover police officer
6 the security forces

35.4
1 detected
2 refugees
3 persecution
4 exceeding
5 enforce
6 allowance
7 search
8 suspicions / a suspicion

Unit 36

36.1

noun – person	noun –abstract	verb	adjective
adherent	adherence	adhere	
convert*	conversion	convert*	converted
radical	radicalism	radicalise	radical
reactionary	reaction		reactionary
fanatic	fanaticism		fanatical

* Note the change in stress.

36.2
1 seek
2 derive from
3 eradicate
4 proponents
5 campaigned
6 tenet
7 civil disobedience

36.3
1 implausible
2 credible
3 benefit
4 subjective
5 presumed
6 salt
7 point of view
8 attributed

36.4
1 eradicate
2 converts
3 justified
4 subjective
5 adherents
6 attribute
7 objective
8 resistance
9 pinch

Unit 37

37.1
1 For Christians, Christmas **celebrates** the birth of Jesus Christ.
2 The **festivities** included parades, sports and musical gatherings.
3 There was a **celebratory feeling** about the whole weekend.
4 For people who live in the country, the spring festival **is a renewal of** the fertility of the land.
5 There was **a ceremonial atmosphere** as the military bands **paraded** around the main square.
6 People were **in a festive mood** when the harvest was successfully completed and a huge **feast** was held in the village.
7 You should go and see the lantern festival. It's always **a spectacle**.
8 The festival **always falls** on the first Monday in July. It **commemorates** a famous battle.
9 It was the **centenary** of the founding of the university and the **bi-centenary** of the city itself.
10 The gymnastic display involving 300 children was **really spectacular**.

37.2 Well, it was called the Festival of Flowers, and it was **associated** with the coming of spring, after the **sombre** winter months. It was a time of **renewal**. Its origin can **be traced back to** the religious tradition of taking flowers to offer them to the gods. Spring flowers were the main **focus of** the festival, and there was always a big **parade** through the streets. It was all very lively and **flamboyant** and probably rather **raucous**, and **it was very atmospheric**. The flowers **symbolised** new life, and people thought they would be guaranteed a good harvest later in the year if they were offered to the gods. Nowadays, most people **are not (so) superstitious**, but there are still some **pagan festivals** celebrated every year.

Unit 38

38.1 *Suggested answers:*
1 The **orthography** of Burmese / Burmese **orthography** is quite difficult for a foreign learner.
2 Japanese uses several different writing systems, with hundreds of **characters**.
3 The **lexicon** of a language like English is constantly changing.
4 Unlike English, some world languages have very few vowel **phonemes** and no **diphthongs**.
5 This ancient and beautiful alphabet uses **pictograms** to express meaning.
6 **Modality is** expressed in different forms in different languages.

38.2 *Stressed syllables are shown in bold*:

noun	adjective	change in stress?
or**thog**raphy	ortho**gra**phic	yes
lexicon	**lex**ical	no
mo**da**lity	**mo**dal	yes
metaphor	meta**phor**ical	yes
po**lys**emy	po**lys**emous	no

38.3
1 metaphor
2 obsolete language
3 polysemy
4 computer jargon

38.4
1 mot juste
2 eloquent
3 speechless
4 succinct
5 foot
6 words
7 inarticulate

Unit 39

39.1
1 reign
2 dynasty
3 heir (the heir has a legal right to take over, for example, by birth; the successor is any person who actually takes over, for example, by being elected)
4 manuscript
5 coronation
6 empire
7 dawn
8 shred
9 the Bronze Age
10 the pre-colonial era

39.2

person	noun	verb
king	kingdom	
emperor	empire	
successor	succession	succeed
	coronation	crown
conqueror	conquest	conquer
archaeologist	archaeology	
	reign	reign
labourer	labour	labour
migrant	migration	migrate
ruler	rule	rule
monarch	monarchy	

39.3 1 d 2 g 3 a 4 f 5 h 6 b 7 e 8 c

39.4 1 b 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 b

Unit 40

40.1
1 deprivation
2 illiterate
3 affluent
4 Denial
5 destitution
6 violation

40.2
1 relative
2 line
3 shelter
4 fundamental
5 absolute
6 impoverished
7 super

40.3
1 line
2 bracket
3 context
4 ends
5 belts
6 stricken

40.4
1 destitute
2 mouth
3 tight
4 deprived
5 poverty line
6 bracket
7 classed
8 affluence
9 malnourishment
10 sanitation

Unit 41

41.1
1 False. It is down to the MP to make up his or her own mind.
2 False. They only make a statement about some of them. Others are simply placed in the Petitions Bag.
3 True.
4 False. Only on the substantive ones.
5 False. It is an example of a Select Committee that crosses departmental barriers.
6 False. They do investigate the conduct of individual MPs.
7 True. (Presumably because they do not have the same constituency work to do.)
8 False. They don't. They focus on six key areas, whereas Commons Select Committees focus on shadowing government departments (as well as some other things).

41.2 1 d 2 h 3 e 4 b 5 g 6 a 7 f 8 c

41.3
1 debating chamber
2 briefing material
3 wide-ranging expertise
4 select committee
5 party policy
6 committee stage
7 Speaker's chair
8 government department

41.4

1 conduct
2 allegations
3 down / up
4 shadow
5 set
6 crosses
7 expertise
8 scrutinises

Unit 42

42.1

1 conquer
2 injustice
3 minorities
4 establish
5 negotiations
6 humanity
7 justify
8 pursue

42.2

verb	noun
constitute	constitution
found	foundation, founder
undertake	undertaking
negotiate	negotiation, negotiator
justify	justification
conquer	conquest, conqueror
liberate	liberation, liberator
unite	unity
delegate	delegate, delegation
recognise	recognition

42.3

1 B march
2 C delicate
3 D infrastructure
4 B undertook
5 A foundation
6 D delegate

42.4

1 undeniably
2 customary
3 injustice
4 solidarity
5 movements
6 integrated

Unit 43

43.1

1 impeached
2 lodge
3 overturned
4 sets
5 award/grant
6 bend
7 are infringing / infringed
8 perverting
9 annulled
10 quashed

43.2
1 trespass / trespassing
2 embezzlement
3 discrimination
4 perjury
5 harassment
6 insider trading / dealing
7 stalking

43.3
1 amendments
2 harassment
3 infringement
4 contravention
5 perversion
6 allegation
7 annulment
8 impeachment

43.4
1 You should let the police deal with the situation – it's far too risky to **take the law into your own hands**.
2 Sam started getting into trouble when he got in with a gang of habitual **law-breakers**.
3 You shouldn't start **laying down the law** on your first day in a new job.
4 Masha will never be able to get Vadim to conform – he's **a law unto himself**.
5 Isabelle is far too **law-abiding** to agree to bring extra cigarettes into the country.

Unit 44

44.1
1 diplomacy, sanctions
2 escalated, out
3 cleansing
4 massacre
5 regime, overthrown
6 resolution
7 resort
8 casualties
9 clashes
10 weaponry

44.2
1 **Irrational hatred** of people of other ethnic groups is one of the root causes of conflict.
2 The **intervention** of the United Nations in the situation helped to restore peace.
3 The **rival** political groups finally negotiated a peace agreement.
4 The general was a **brutal** dictator who ruled for 18 years.
5 There had been a longstanding **mistrust** between the two tribes.
6 The **rebellion** began in 2010.

44.3
1 suicide
2 peacekeeping
3 ambushed
4 observers
5 waged
6 siege
7 truce / ceasefire
8 campaign

44.4 1 d 2 e 3 f 4 a 5 b 6 c

Unit 45

45.1
1 sustainable
2 following / pursuing, eradicate
3 encouraging, taking
4 deep / abject
5 recovered
6 achieve
7 allocate
8 access

45.2
1 Over a period of five years, the country **incurred** huge debts which it could not **repay**.
2 **Debtor countries** are completely at the mercy of wealthier nations.
3 **The debt burden** is so great in some countries that their economies are collapsing.
4 Wealthier countries could do a lot to **ease** / **alleviate** the debt of poor countries, and indeed, in some cases, could **cancel** the debt altogether.
5 Over a period of three years, the country suffered a **double-dip** recession.
6 The following year, there was a **slump** in the price of crude oil.
7 While some countries **devalued** their currencies, one country alone **revalued** its currency due to its strong economy.
8 Urgent measures were needed to **boost** the economy.

45.3
1 a trade war
2 impose sanctions, lift embargoes
3 restrictive practices
4 monetary union
5 development grants
6 a war-torn economy
7 ailing
8 relief

45.4
1 **Monetary union** was agreed between the five countries in 2003.
2 The government introduced a package of measures to rescue the **ailing** economy.
3 The two Trade Ministers got together to try to abolish **restrictive practices**.
4 A **trade war** broke out between the two countries in 1999.
5 The **war-torn** economy is slowly recovering now that peace has come.
6 The United Nations **imposed** sanctions on the country in 1995 and did not **lift** them until 2008.
7 The region received a **development grant** from the World Bank.
8 **Debt relief** has been crucial for some developing nations.

Unit 46

46.1
1 debit card
2 credit card fraud (you can also say *identity theft*)
3 put it / stick it
4 direct debit
5 electronic transfer
6 broke / skint
7 strapped
8 tight
9 contactless

46.2
1 She got a huge golden **handshake** when she left the company.
2 My old aunt Jessie is **rolling** in it. Every time I go to see her, she gives me £100.
3 My father got a **lump** sum when he retired, so he bought a weekend cottage.
4 She put her **life** savings into an online company and lost everything when it collapsed.

5 The bank tried to persuade me to put my money into a share **portfolio**, with stocks and shares in different companies.
6 If you need a very large sum of money, it's not a good idea to **borrow** from friends or neighbours.

46.3 1 d 2 f 3 e 4 b 5 a 6 c

Unit 47

47.1
1 classified ads (or adverts/advertisements) / classifieds
2 an agony aunt
3 the obituaries (or obituary column)
4 an editorial / a leader (or leading article)
5 a supplement
6 a feature
7 circulation
8 coverage

47.2
1 manual
2 flyers / leaflets
3 brochures
4 pamphlets
5 journal
6 press release
7 prospectus
8 newsletter

47.3 edition is used about both books and magazines (a book, magazine, etc. that is one of a large number that are the same and were produced at the same time)
Books
spine (the vertical edge of the book which usually has the title on it)
blurb (short description usually on back cover, written to encourage people to read the book)
foreword (a piece of text before the main text of the book begins)
index (alphabetical list of subjects or names at the end of a book, showing on what page they are found in the text)
edition – see above
Magazines
subscription (a payment that buys you a certain number of issues in advance, e.g. for one year)
issue (publication printed for a particular day/week/month)
edition – see above
quarterly (a magazine issued every three months)

47.4 1 B 2 C 3 A

47.5
1 c
2 d
3 a
4 e If something **tells you all you need to know about something** (informal), it gives all the most important information.
5 f
6 b **Small print** refers to the details, rules and restrictions that often accompany legal documents such as guarantees, contracts, insurance policies, etc., which are often written in very small letters.

Unit 48

48.1
1 chat room
2 webinar
3 ISP
4 cookie
5 attachment
6 spam

48.2

word	opposite	exists	doesn't exist
delete	undelete	✓	
download	upload	✓	
update	downdate		✓
inbox	outbox	✓	
online	offline	✓	
install	uninstall	✓	

48.3
1 upload, online
2 inbox
3 install
4 undelete
5 offline
6 update

48.4 *Suggested answers:*
1 E-signatures are a way of identifying yourself on the internet with a unique code or name, which you can use, for example, to agree to pay for goods.
2 E-learning means taking courses over the internet instead of going to a school or college to do your studies.
3 E-enabled here means that all the study materials can be accessed and worked with through the internet.
4 E-books are books which you buy from the internet, and which you then read on your computer, tablet, e-reader or smartphone.
5 The dotcom economy refers to internet companies, whose web addresses typically end in '.com', e.g. a company that sells bicycles over the internet might call itself *newbikes*.*com*, which would be read aloud as 'new bikes dot com'.
6 A tablet is a very thin (and often quite small) portable computer used mostly for email and online activities.
7 Parental controls are controls on the computer which allow parents to decide which websites their children can visit and to restrict certain activities.
8 I can't stop doing this activity; I want to do it all the time and can't stop myself.

Unit 49

49.1
1 lap
2 crowd
3 rock
4 the art
5 pamper
6 sumptuous
7 leave/put
8 galore
9 indulge
10 slashing

49.2 1 d 2 h 3 g 4 f 5 a 6 b 7 c 8 e

49.3
1 B
2 A / C
3 E
4 C
5 D
6 A / C / E
7 E
8 B

49.4
1 a logo (on clothing)
2 a billboard
3 a sandwich board
4 a pop-up ad (on a website)
5 a flyer
6 sky-writing

Unit 50

50.1 **1** h **2** g **3** e **4** b **5** a **6** d **7** c **8** f

50.2
1 copy
2 deadlines
3 went
4 breaks
5 archive
6 paparazzi

50.3
1 No, because rag is too informal a word for this context and also it implies that you think the newspaper is not of good quality.
2 You have a low opinion of them.
3 Deadlines.
4 'Exclusive' and 'scoop'.
5 The story breaks and the story hits the headlines.
6 Libel and defamation of character: these both involve saying things that lower a person's reputation. (Defamation is broader than libel in that it covers slander as well as libel. Slander is spoken defamation of character and libel is written defamation of character.)

50.4
1 Every news report inevitably **puts its own spin on** events.
2 I have to find some articles from some **back copies** of *The Times*.
3 The TV news yesterday **ran a story** about my favourite singer.
4 The floods took up more **column inches** in the papers than any other story this week.
5 Politicians are always ready and willing to **air their views to/in** the press.
6 The story about the scandal surrounding her uncle **hit the headlines** on her wedding day.
7 Any newspaper does all it can to prevent being sued for **defamation of character**.
8 Muck-raking is a characteristic activity of **the gutter press**.

50.5
1 conference
2 broke
3 publicity
4 media
5 airtime
6 Social
7 hero
8 occurrence

Unit 51

51.1
1 anaesthetist
2 cardiologist
3 paediatrician
4 ophthalmologist
5 obstetrician
6 dermatologist

51.2
1 surgery
2 chronic
3 prescription
4 refer
5 condition
6 locum
7 organ
8 acute

51.3
1 What is the name of your **family doctor**?
2 Is there a **prescription charge** in your country?
3 In your country is there a similar structure of primary care and **secondary care**?
4 Do doctors often do **home visits** in your country?
5 Are there **insurance schemes** for private healthcare in your country?
6 When it comes to healthcare, do many people in your country **go private**?
7 How popular is **complementary medicine** in your country?
8 Have you ever been to a specialist who practises some kind of **alternative medicine**?

Unit 52

52.1

1 She was feeling **under** the weather and a bit **feverish**, so she took the day off.
2 I felt really **off-colour** yesterday and my head was **throbbing**, so I took a painkiller.
3 I felt a bit **out of sorts** and seemed to have more **aches and pains** than usual.
4 Maria has **backache** after carrying that heavy suitcase of yours.
5 Freddie has been **fighting off a cold** for the last few days.
6 I'm sorry I won't make it to your party because I've **come** down with flu.
7 Do you suffer **from** any allergies?
8 How did you get all those **cuts and bruises**?

52.2

1 I was feeling quite **feverish**.
2 The smell of paint always made her feel **nauseous**.
3 I felt **dizzy**, so I went and lay down for an hour.
4 My nose was **bunged up**, so I got a spray from the chemist.
5 I got **a stiff neck** from driving for a long time in an awkward position.
6 Laura was **shivery** and looked unwell, so I told her to go to bed.
7 My knee hurts today because **I twisted it** getting out of Andrei's sports car yesterday.
8 I **had a sleepless night** last night.

52.3

Positive meanings: be over the worst, fight off*, be on the mend, be back on your feet again, get over
Negative meanings: suffer from, fight off*, come down with, under the weather
*Whether you consider *fight off* to be positive or negative depends on whether you feel that 'fighting something off' is always used in a negative situation, or whether you are succeeding in 'fighting off' your cold/flu/headache, etc., in which case you might see it as positive.

52.4

1 Hello, Dan, good to see you **back on your feet again**.
2 Nadja, I won't be in today, I've **come down with** a cold.
3 Oh, I'm OK. I'm **over the worst** now. I still feel bad, but I should be out within a week or so. (*over the worst* suggests getting better, but that you are still quite ill; *on the mend* (see 6 below) suggests the person is getting back to normal health)
4 Don't worry, darling. Everyone has a cold now and then. You'll **get over** it.
5 I'm trying to **fight off** the flu, but nothing seems to help. I don't think I'll be at work tomorrow.
6 Lily was quite ill last week, but she's **on the mend** / **back on her feet again** now and should be back at work on Monday.
7 I feel a bit **under the weather** today, but I'm sure I'll be fine tomorrow.
8 I used to **suffer from** a dust allergy, but I don't think I do any more.

Unit 53

53.1

1 disorder
2 history
3 allergic
4 exceed
5 adverse
6 stroke
7 poo
8 are
9 Disorientation
10 duration

53.2

1 Excitement **reached fever pitch** as the day of the final match dawned.
2 Although industry is doing well in the north of the country, in the south it is **ailing**.
3 The manager said that there had been a **rash of** complaints about the hotel.
4 Unfortunately, she **still carries the scars of** / **is still scarred by** her divorce.
5 The problems we have experienced in our neighbourhood are **symptomatic of** wider problems in society.
6 What do you think the **prognosis is** for the peace talks?
7 I voted for the Green Party because they seem to **have their finger on the pulse**.
8 The business has been **ailing** for some time now.
9 I'm afraid I have rather a **jaundiced** view of the banking industry.

53.3
1 paralysed
2 ailing
3 fatal
4 rash
5 contagious
6 fever
7 disease
8 prognosis

Unit 54

54.1
1 Eggs and shellfish are **nutritious**.
2 **Cholesterol-rich foods** are fine if eaten in moderation.
3 These foods do not necessarily **pose** a danger to health.
4 The most important thing is not to **impede** the flow of blood.
5 Fatty plaque can **clog** the arteries.
6 Scientists recommend a **high-fibre diet**.
7 Running is a good form of **cardiovascular exercise**.
8 **Brisk** walking is also good for you.
9 Jogging is a great way to **burn** calories.
10 To do enough of this kind of exercise, you don't have to be **sporty**.

54.2
1 heart attack and stroke
2 high
3 rich
4 they contain a lot of fibre / they are fibre-rich
5 He is intent on doing more exercise.
6 diabetics
7 BMI
8 your metabolism

54.3
football: score an own goal, move the goalposts, level playing field
horse racing: in the running, neck and neck
skating: skate around
sailing: sail through

54.4
1 Elsa **sailed through** her exams.
2 I wish he'd **stop skating around** the point.
3 I've been told that **I'm in the running** for the job of supervisor.
4 I **scored an own goal** when I offered to help with the washing-up so I could borrow Dad's car. Now my parents expect me to do it every night!
5 **It's hardly a level playing field** when 18-year-olds take the same exam as 15-year-olds.
6 It's hard to know what to do when the **goalposts are constantly being moved**.
7 The two candidates are **neck and neck** in the race to become President.

Unit 55

55.1
Suggested answers:
1 The economy cannot depend only on **service industries**. We need to encourage **manufacturing industries**.
2 In this area, there are a lot of **high-technology** / **high-tech industries**, while in the north, they depend more on **low-technology** / **low-tech industries**.
3 **Cutting-edge** technology is very expensive, so the company has to rely on **conventional** technology.
4 **State ownership** / **Nationalisation** is less popular than it was, but the trend towards **privatisation** has slowed down.
5 **Heavy industry** has declined, and now we're more dependent on **light industry**.

55.2
1 a public-private partnership
2 subsidy
3 inward investment
4 piecework
5 a sweatshop economy
6 to switch production, to relocate
7 retraining, reskilling
8 a multinational (company)
9 a cost-cutting exercise
10 child labour
11 zero hours contract

55.3
1 Industrial piracy (illegal production of goods using another company's brand name)
2 industrial espionage (stealing or destroying a rival company's plans or secrets)
3 Copyright infringement (publishing or copying a book or work of art without the author's permission)
4 Money laundering (passing money illegally earned through the normal banking system without being caught)
5 black market (secret, illegal trade)

Unit 56

56.1
1 satellite communications
2 ergonomics
3 biotechnology
4 digital technology
5 artificial intelligence
6 Bluetooth™

56.2
1 tablet / iPad
2 interactive TV
3 laptop
4 desktop computer
5 e-reader / Kindle
6 router

56.3
1 thumbnail (small pictures you can make bigger before downloading them)
2 computer nerd (a rather negative term for a person obsessed with computers and who devotes most of their time to them at the expense of a normal social life)
3 techie (this has none of the negative associations that nerd has)
4 app (short for application = special software)
5 screensaver (image that appears on your computer screen if you do not use the computer for a certain period of time)
6 footprint
7 icon (small symbol representing the program)
8 trackpad

56.4
1 technician
2 technically
3 technology
4 technique
5 technologically

Unit 57

57.1
1 c gridlocked traffic
2 e genetic modification
3 d human genome
4 a population explosion
5 b global village

57.2
1 population explosion
2 genetic modification
3 a global village
4 Gridlocked traffic
5 the human genome

57.3
1 a mega-city
2 keyhole surgery
3 nanotechnology
4 cloning
5 extraterrestrial beings
6 genetic engineering / modification
7 (our) destiny
8 a designer baby

57.4
1 The **doomsday scenario** is that we will destroy the world with nuclear weapons.
2 **Interplanetary travel** for scientific exploration will become normal in the coming centuries.
3 He belongs to a team of scientists who are trying to improve our understanding of the **human genome**.
4 Governments need to **take drastic measures** to save the planet.
5 Many people **envisage / foresee** a world in which the poor simply get poorer.

57.5
1 genetically modified (GM) food
2 the nuclear family
3 cloning
4 gene therapy
5 the global village / globalisation
6 space tourism

Unit 58

58.1
1 pipeline
2 offshore drilling platform
3 solar panels
4 coal mine
5 wind farm

58.2
1 A new 100-kilometre **pipeline** has been built to bring oil from **wells** in the north of the country to a refinery on the coast.
2 The power station is **coal-fired**, but it will soon be replaced by a **nuclear plant**.
3 Fire has broken out on **an offshore** drilling platform.
4 **Tidal power or wave power** could solve the energy problems of countries with extensive coastlines. Other parts of the world may be able to use **geothermal** energy.
5 '**Renewables** are important,' the Prime Minister said. 'We intend to give grants for people to install **solar panels**, as well as developing **wind farms**.'
6 The country is developing two main energy sources: **biomass** and **hydroelectric** power stations. At the same time, inefficient **coal mines** will gradually be closed.

58.3
1 food miles
2 appliances, energy-efficient
3 carbon footprint
4 gas-guzzler, consumption
5 monitoring, consume
6 finite, deposits

Unit 59

59.1
1 poky (suitable in this informal context)
2 roomy (often used for cars)
3 compact (in fact, a whole class of small cameras is referred to as 'compact cameras' by manufacturers and advertisers)
4 cramped (suitable in this slightly more formal context – compare with 1)
5 spacious
6 extensive

59.2 The property is **spacious**, with a **compact** garden, and is situated only ten minutes away from the **bustling** town centre. There are **extensive** leisure facilities nearby.

Notes on the incorrect choices:
Rambling usually suggests a rather chaotic collection of rooms. A *labyrinth* suggests they are confusingly laid out.
Cramped and *poky* suggest that somewhere is too small to be comfortable.
Congested and *crowded* are negative. *Bustling* suggests that somewhere is busy, interesting and full of life.
Excessive means too many. No one wants *expensive* facilities.

59.3
1 The kitchen is so small you **can't** / **couldn't swing a cat** / **there isn't enough room to swing a cat** in it.
2 There's **ample space** / **room** for your clothes in this wardrobe.
3 I **got** / **was hemmed in** in the office car park the other day.
4 Holidays in Australia are great if you love **wide open spaces**.
5 I hate the London underground during rush hour. Everyone is **packed in like sardines** in the trains.
6 I dropped a glass and tiny pieces **(were) scattered** all over the floor.
7 The buildings in the holiday complex are **(quite** / **rather) spread out**.
8 The train was very full but I just managed to **squeeze in** before the doors closed.

59.4
1 **It might be a bit of a squash** on the bus at this time of day – I hope you don't mind.
2 I quickly **stuffed** a few clothes and a couple of books in a rucksack and set off at once.
3 The Ural Mountains **mark the boundary** between Europe and Asia.
4 We'll all have to try and **squeeze** into my little car; Larry hasn't got his with him today.
5 Your room is at the **rear** of the hotel, so you won't hear any traffic.
6 I don't think we should try and **cram** / **squeeze** / **stuff** everything into one suitcase. Let's take two.

Unit 60

60.1
1 They've been living in the same house since the year dot.
2 I'll be with you in a sec.
3 John gave it to Magda for keeps. / Magda gave it to John for keeps.
4 Together we can get it done in less than no time. / We can get it done together in less than no time.
5 He's never been further than the nearest town in all his born days.
6 We got to the hospital in the nick of time.

60.2
1 a lingering scent
2 a transient (feeling of) joy
3 persistent criticism
4 an incipient headache
5 a lengthy process / a protracted process
6 the inexorable ageing process
7 a fleeting grin
8 a protracted investigation / a lengthy investigation

60.3 1 d 2 c 3 g 4 h 5 f 6 a 7 e 8 b

60.4

1 We'll be ready to leave **in less than no time**.
2 Most of the members of the band may be in their sixties, but they're certainly not **over the hill**.
3 You can argue with him **till the cows come home**, but he'll never see sense.
4 Harry promised he'd get here **in a flash** and he kept his word.
5 I've told her **repeatedly** not to phone me at work.
6 The two events happened **simultaneously**. / The two events **were simultaneous**.
7 The hotel staff were very good; they let me cancel the reservation **at short notice**.
8 I didn't want to **prolong** the meeting.
9 He had his moment of fame. Now he's (just) **a has-been**.
10 The press were excluded **for the duration** of the delicate negotiations.

Unit 61

61.1

1 trudged (If you strut, you can't have your shoulders hunched. You are also unlikely to be weary.)
2 tiptoed (If you trudge, you are tired and weary and your steps are heavy, so you might well wake someone who is sleeping lightly. A bedroom is also a very small place for someone to trudge across.)
3 hopping (Rabbits move quickly with feet all off the ground at the same time, so, as with birds, their movement is described as hopping. Stamping is too heavy a movement for a small animal.)
4 limped (Stamping is something which you usually do when you are angry and there is no obvious connection between having an accident and stamping.)
5 staggered / lurched (Striding cannot be unsteady.)
6 trample (Daisies are too small to be stumbled on.)
7 chased (Tramped suggests moving slowly and so the dog would then be unlikely to catch the postman. Tramped also suggests too heavy a movement to be appropriate for a small dog as opposed to a big, heavy dog.)
8 lurching / staggering (It would be extremely difficult to tiptoe if the sea is rough and the ship is moving violently.)

61.2

Possible answers:

1 It was not at all successful or enjoyable – the verb limped makes that clear.
2 No, it was clearly in difficulties for a few years before it failed totally.
3 People didn't expect her to do as well as she did.
4 No, the government gives the impression of being out of control.
5 She is probably calm, easy-going and relaxed.
6 They destroy or spoil them, for example, by laughing at them.
7 He or she might send them emails or letters reminding them to pay, or they might phone them.
8 Not at all confident. They were hesitant and uneven in quality.

61.3

flowed: moved smoothly, without ceasing
spilled: fell out, in an uncontrolled fashion, starting suddenly and moving in all directions
streamed: a lot of people moving at a fairly constant pace from one direction
pouring: coming all the time, in large numbers, possibly from all directions
trickle: a few people, here and there
meandered: not going in a straight line, no definite purpose
flooding: coming in large numbers, spreading in all directions

61.4

1 flow
2 spilling
3 meander
4 trickle
5 pouring / streaming (flooding is less likely to be used about people moving into a relatively restricted area like a football stadium)

61.5

verb	type of movement	reason for type of movement
file	lots of people moving in a straight line, one after the other	to control large numbers of people
saunter	relaxed, confident	pleasure
sidle	approaching someone in a slightly sneaky way	intending to do something dishonest or unpleasant in some way
glide	smooth, as if not moving your feet	to make effortless movement or to make movement seem effortless
mill around	lots of people all moving in different directions	to meet or to talk to different people

61.6
1 Graceful dancers glide.
2 Guests at a cocktail party mill around.
3 Schoolchildren file into a classroom.
4 Someone who is irritatingly anxious to make you like them might sidle up to you.
5 Tourists exploring in a relaxed way might saunter round a city.

Unit 62

62.1
1 done
2 netiquette
3 offhand
4 manners
5 ceremony
6 insolent
7 straitlaced
8 courteous, discourteous

62.2 *Suggested answers:*
1 No, he was probably feeling nervous.
2 She didn't like them.
3 He probably flinched because his arm hurt.
4 It must have been rather surprising or shocking in some way; maybe they were being very rowdy or swearing a lot.
5 Tanya, because a smirk is not a pleasant smile.
6 No, he was probably not pleased. A titter is rather a weak laugh and more from embarrassment than amusement.
7 She probably felt embarrassed or nervous.
8 Badly. Perhaps they leant across the table and grabbed food, didn't say 'thank you' or didn't use the cutlery properly.

62.3
1 snorted
2 twitch
3 squirming
4 tittered
5 flinch
6 beamed

62.4
eyes: raise your eyebrows
mouth: titter, smirk, beam
nose: snort, sniff
no specific part of the body: twitch, squirm, flinch

Unit 63

63.1 *Suggested answers:*
1 noiseless
2 quiet
3 silent
4 soundlessly (we might normally expect some sound from its wings)
5 silent

63.2 *Possible answers:*

2 Suddenly, a shot **rang out**. Somebody was firing at the birds on the lake.
3 The door **creaked**. It was very old, made of oak and difficult to open.
4 The music **was pounding** through the walls. It was as if the musicians were playing in our bedroom.
5 The chicken **sizzled** in the frying pan. The sound and the smell made me even more hungry.
6 The rusty door hinges **are squeaking**. I think they need some oil.
7 She **tooted** her horn. I looked out of the window and saw her car parked outside.
8 I could hear the waves **crashing**. It was wonderful to be so near the sea.
9 We heard police sirens **wailing**. There must have been an accident, or perhaps a robbery.

63.3

1 deafening
2 eerie
3 piercing
4 grating
5 high-pitched
6 inaudible

63.4

1 It was so quiet you could have **heard a pin drop**.
2 I've had some noisy, hectic days with all those kids, now I'm looking forward to some **peace and quiet**.
3 Turn that music down! I can't **hear myself think**!
4 I don't even notice that Will is in the flat sometimes. He's **as quiet as a mouse**.

Unit 64

64.1

1 cumbersome / unwieldy
2 ponderous
3 weighty
4 lumbering
5 burdensome
6 cumbersome / unwieldy

64.2

1 lumbering
2 cumbersome
3 weighty
4 ponderous

64.3

1 I weighed **out** a kilo of flour and then added water to it.
2 He's very irritating. When you're trying to have a rational discussion, he always has to weigh **in** with his own selfish point of view.
3 I owe Gina £250; it's been weighing **on** my mind for weeks. I must pay her back.
4 We were weighed **down** with huge suitcases and bags, and the airport was terribly crowded; it was a nightmare.
5 I have to weigh **up** the various options before I decide which job to accept.

64.4 *Suggested answers:*

1 To thin out the customer's hair.
2 thicken, e.g. The fog has thickened.
3 It will probably congeal and be difficult to wash out.
4 It means you must add water. You have to dilute it / water it down before using it.
5 You might sift flour (in a sieve) when you are cooking, so there are no lumps.
6 No, because insults do not worry them.
7 It is likely to be large and difficult to handle.
8 The story or argument is so dense, you cannot begin to understand it.
9 It lacks complexity and seriousness.
10 thin out, e.g. The traffic is thinning out.

Unit 65

65.1
1 ginger
2 pitch black
3 chestnut
4 scarlet
5 navy
6 turquoise

65.2
red: ruby, coral, scarlet, crimson
blue: sapphire, navy, turquoise
green: emerald, lime, jade

65.3 1 C 2 A 3 C 4 B 5 B

65.4 1 d 2 g 3 f 4 b 5 h 6 a 7 c 8 e

65.5 *Possible answers:*
There are some great **black and white** films on TV on Sunday afternoons (NOT ~~white and black~~).
He gave me such **a black look** that I stopped talking immediately.
At last I have received the cheque I was waiting for and our account is **in the black** again.
It was only **a white lie** when I told her I loved her new hairdo.
I'd love to go **white-water rafting**, though I know it's quite dangerous.
That shop sells mainly **white goods** – fridges, cookers and the like.
I wouldn't pay any attention to what they're suggesting – it's only **a red herring**.
I hate it when my bank account is **in the red** – they charge so much interest.
Don't talk to him about the present government – it's like **a red rag to a bull**.
Come and sit next to the fire – you look quite **blue with cold**.
We were driving along when, **out of the blue**, another car turned out of a side street and stopped just in front of us.
I'm not very keen on **blue cheese**.
He likes to imply that he's **blue-blooded**, but really most of his ancestors were farm labourers.
You can't park there – there are **double yellow lines**.
If you want to find a plumber, look in the **Yellow Pages**.
Her garden is wonderful – she has **green fingers**.
It's almost impossible to get permission to build houses in the **green belt**.
The government has recently published a **green paper** on the Health Service.

Unit 66

66.1
1 in a hurry
2 speed up
3 dawdling
4 a traffic jam
5 rocket
6 totter
7 career
8 person who races
9 to be creeping up
10 fast

66.2
1 not pleased
2 not pleased
3 not pleased
4 pleased
5 not pleased
6 not pleased

66.3

1 C
2 B
3 D
4 C (accelerate is not normally used for people)
5 B
6 D
7 D
8 B
9 B
10 A

Unit 67

67.1

1 generated (*produced* is also quite acceptable here, with little difference in meaning, except perhaps that it focuses more on the result, while *generated* focuses more on the process of getting the result)
2 produce (*produce* is the most frequent collocation for *list*, but in more formal, technical contexts, *generate* can also be used)
3 caused (*brought about* is also possible here)
4 sparked / precipitated (*caused*, *produced* and *provoked* would all also be possible here, but *spark* and *precipitate* are ideal for things which explode suddenly and violently)
5 resulted (no other possibilities: *result* collocates with *in*)
6 given (*brought* or *provided me with* could also be used with the same meaning here)
7 provoked (*caused*, *produced* and *generated* are also possible, but *provoke* is ideal for negative responses and emotions)
8 precipitate (*cause* or *bring about* are also possible here, but would be less dramatic)

67.2

1 I have good grounds **for** believing that he is lying.
2 My suspicions are based **on** what I saw with my own eyes.
3 The government's decision has serious implications **for** the economy.
4 His fear of flying stems **from** a film he once saw.
5 I'm glad to say that all her hard work has resulted **in** success.
6 The riots will probably bring **about** a change of government.
7 A considerable amount of damage was caused **by** the tornado.

67.3

Suggested answers:

1 The crash on the motorway has caused all traffic to be severely delayed.
2 Your advice resulted in our getting there on time.
3 The minister's comments about tax law have generated a lot of interest.
4 Her many problems stem from her previous poor decisions.
5 The bad weather brought about many flight cancellations.

67.4

Possible answers:

2 The higher taxes **have sparked off** riots in three cities.
3 Icy roads **have caused** a number of serious accidents this week.
4 My old car **has caused me** / **given me** endless problems and involved me in a lot of expense.
5 This software **can generate** stunning images and graphics.
6 Jealousy **caused** the break-up of his marriage.

Unit 68

68.1

Distinct is followed by **from**. All the others are followed by **to**.

1 dissimilar to
2 tantamount to
3 corresponds to
4 akin to
5 distinct from

68.2
1 between, and
2 with
3 from
4 with
5 to
6 with

68.3
1 distinct
2 dissimilar
3 discrete
4 divergent
5 disparate
6 diverse
7 comparable
8 diverged
9 comparative
10 diversified

Unit 69

69.1
1 dilemma
2 glitches
3 chore
4 ordeal
5 snag
6 impediment
7 pitfalls
8 stumbling block

69.2
1 obstructive
2 traumatic
3 abstruse
4 wayward
5 insufferable
6 convoluted / abstruse
7 gruelling / arduous / tough
8 tough

69.3
1 into
2 guts
3 death
4 hassle
5 drag / pain
6 fix / spot / hole
7 with
8 sticky / tricky
9 problematic
10 difficulty
11 downside
12 torture
13 hook
14 woods

Unit 70

70.1 1 g 2 e 3 a 4 f 5 h 6 b 7 d 8 c

70.2
2 It is **obligatory** to put on a life jacket.
3 The **odds are** (that) Karl will take over his father's job.
4 You **have no option but to** do what the police officer says.
5 They**'re bound to** settle down eventually.
6 **The chances are** we'll meet someone we know at the party.
7 **It was apparent** that there was going to be trouble.
8 You **might well** / **may well** end up with no job at all if you don't try.
9 **This is unquestionably** the most serious problem we've encountered.
10 With all this snow, the train will be late, **for sure** / **I'm sure**.
11 I was in the park today, and **who should I see** / **meet** / **bump into but** Beth.
12 She **is** really **eager** to get into university next year.

70.3
Possible answers:
1 It is **essential** to arrive at school on time every day.
2 Attendance at all lessons is **compulsory**.
3 Wearing uniform is **optional**.

70.4
1 determination
2 yearning
3 resolutions
4 desirous
5 eagerness
6 longing
7 ambitious
8 aspirations

70.5
1 It was a hard day. I was just **longing** to get home and go to bed early.
2 c – he's almost certain to work in the oil industry
3 synonyms: resolved – determined, eager – keen, desire – wish, likelihood – probability
odd one out: obligation

Unit 71

71.1
1 fourfold
2 expenditure
3 factor
4 drastic
5 revise
6 correlation
7 GDP / Gross Domestic Product
8 quadrupled

71.2
Suggested answers:
1 **There seems to be a discrepancy between** the two reports of the accident.
2 Oil prices **seesawed** last year.
3 Monthly average temperatures **have deviated from the norm** this year.
4 The water levels didn't **fluctuate** as much as we'd expected last year.
5 I don't need to know all the individual figures – just give me the **aggregate**.
6 His moods **are erratic** – one minute he's happy, the next he's depressed.

71.3
1 b
2 a
3 a
4 at least $1,000
5 55
6 the weather forecast, competing companies' advertising campaigns
7 girls
8 b

71.4

verb	noun	adjective
deviate	deviation	deviant
	discrepancy	discrepant
flaw	flaw	flawed
	inconsistency	inconsistent
err	error	erratic
multiply	multiplication	multiple

Unit 72

72.1
1 vetoed
2 condone / countenance
3 acquiesced
4 outlaw / ban
5 authorised / endorsed
6 barred / banned
7 accede
8 clamp down

72.2
1 Alex parked his car outside the shop regardless **of** the No Parking sign.
2 The Minister said he would never accede **to** the union's demands.
3 It's time the police clamped down **on** cyclists going through red lights.
4 The President has assented **to** the latest world environment plan.
5 The Minister is likely to acquiesce **in** / **to** the proposal.
6 The college principal has given the green light **to** the students' proposal for an end-of-term festival.
7 The company has been given the go-ahead **for** a new factory in the city.
8 The inspector had carte blanche **to** investigate every aspect of the business.

72.3
1 c An **embargo** means an official prohibition on something. If the prohibition is cancelled, the embargo is **lifted**.
2 a A **franchise** is permission to operate some sort of service or commercial activity, usually for a set period of time.
3 d **Zero-tolerance** means that not even the smallest crime or misbehaviour will be allowed.
4 b **Sanctions** are restrictions on some activity.

Unit 73

73.1 *Possible answers:*
1 Informal
A more formal version: I take great exception to your rudeness!
2 Formal
A more informal version: You've got to do something about your unfair rules.
3 Informal
A more formal version: The state of your desk is most unsatisfactory!
4 Formal
A more informal version: I've just about had enough of the awful station facilities!
5 Informal
A more formal version: I really must object to your coming here not wearing a tie.
6 Formal
A more informal version: I'm fed up with this behaviour!
7 Formal
A more informal version: The lack of toilet facilities for disabled people is disgusting / pretty awful.
8 Formal
A more informal version: The delay with my order is just/simply not on.

73.2

1 about
2 take / took
3 being
4 with
5 done
6 wouldn't
7 do
8 well
9 with
10 enough

73.3 *Possible answers:*

1 Honestly! I'm fed up with / sick of their noisy parties week after week!
2 I wish you/we could do something about that big tree that blocks out the sun. (we is more indirect)
3 Most people take considerable exception to being awoken by loud noise from the factory when they are trying to sleep.
4 I'm not at all satisfied about the changes to our working hours.
5 I've just about had enough of working longer hours.
6 I wish to complain about the lack of safety procedures on the company's premises.

73.4 *Possible answers:*

1 We must open the window / clean the room / spray some air-freshener.
2 Jorge's work is very careless.
3 Simone is often late for work.
4 You're not suited to this job.
5 This room really needs decorating.
6 The TV must be turned down.

Unit 74

74.1

1 perfect
2 lame / flimsy / weak
3 flimsy
4 cast-iron / perfect
5 sincere / heartfelt

74.2

1 flimsy
2 cast-iron
3 lame
4 heartfelt
5 detailed
6 good

74.3

1 Matt **apologised to Gina for breaking** her vase.
2 The criminal did not **show any (sign of) repentance for** the inhumane way in which he had acted.
3 The trial **ended in acquittal**.
4 Sam **did not explain why** he had behaved so strangely.

74.4

1 The President granted him a **reprieve** just an hour before he was due to be executed.
2 He was **acquitted** of murder in 2014, but two years later was convicted of armed robbery in the same courtroom.
3 She showed a complete lack of **remorse** / **repentance** for her evil deeds and just laughed when the judge sentenced her.
4 The Public Inquiry **exonerated** him from all blame for the accident at the factory.
5 Just before he died, the old man said he **repented of** all the bad things he had done in his life.
6 Ten years after his death, Daniel Taylor was given a **posthumous** pardon by the government when another man confessed to the crime he had been hanged for.
7 He treated her badly and she says she simply cannot **forgive and forget**.
8 The **ceasefire** is due to start at 9 pm.

74.5 *Suggested answers:*

1 The two armies **declared / announced / agreed a truce / ceasefire** during the religious holiday.
2 Both governments **agreed / assented** to the terms of **the peace treaty** and it was signed on 15 August 1954.
3 The long-standing **accord** between the government and the unions is in danger of **collapsing / collapse**.
4 The generals **signed the armistice** at midday on 25 February 1996.

Unit 75

75.1

1 fish
2 singing
3 paying
4 to
5 take, as
6 shower / heap
7 widely / highly
8 damning

75.2 1 d 2 a 3 e 4 f 5 b 6 c

75.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 He's always **flattering** the boss. (neutral)
He's always **licking the boss's boots**. (informal)
He's always **making up to** the boss. (informal)
He's always **crawling to** the boss. (informal)
2 I wish she wasn't so **slimy**. (informal)
I wish she wasn't **such a crawler**. (informal)
I wish she wasn't so **servile**. (formal)
I wish she wasn't so **obsequious**. (formal)

75.4

verb	noun	adjective
compliment	compliment	complimentary
praise	praise	praiseworthy
laud		laudable, laudatory
flatter	flattery, flatterer	flattering
crawl	crawler	crawling
smarm		smarmy

75.5

1 complimentary
2 flatterer
3 crawl
4 laudable / praiseworthy (laudable is a little more formal)
5 Flattery
6 laud / praise (laud is a little more formal)

Unit 76

76.1

1 B
2 B (*swore*, possibly because of its close associations with taboo language, sounds much less formal than *vowed*)
3 A
4 B (because *New Year's resolutions* is the standard phrase and such resolutions are perhaps best known for being quickly broken, *vow* sounds much more formal)

76.2

1 promised
2 oath
3 best
4 flutter
5 back
6 life

76.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 **Your best bet** would be to stay overnight in a hotel near the airport.
2 My father **swears by** these herbal teas.
3 John's been rather lazy with his homework, but he has promised to **turn over a new leaf** next year.
4 I **could have sworn** I locked the door when I went out.
5 The writer's new play **promises** to be as good as his last one.
6 **I'd put money on** the Democratic Party winning the next election.
7 Do you ever **have a flutter** on the national lottery?
8 Her mother disliked the film because it contained **so many swear words** / **so much swearing**.
9 **I/We anticipate** that the documentary will be controversial.
10 I **hedged my bets** by buying shares in both of the companies that had a serious chance of winning the contract.

76.4 *Suggested answers:*

- Swift is making the point that many people don't take promises seriously. His point is effective because of the comparison of a solemn thing like a promise with such an everyday thing as a piecrust, which is of course intended to be broken; it has to be broken for the pie to be eaten.
- Most people probably do agree with Twain that making someone promise not to do something may often serve to put the idea of doing it actually into their head!

Unit 77

77.1

1 Looking / Thinking
2 stands / sticks, out
3 became
4 anything of
5 look / think, back
6 reminisce
7 out, touch
8 nostalgia
9 came
10 tinted / coloured
11 vague
12 recall

77.2 1 e 2 d 3 f 4 c 5 a 6 b

77.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 **I regret not buying** her a birthday present.
2 They **showed no remorse for** what they had done.
3 I now **rue** the fact that I discontinued my studies.
4 I **lament the fact that** our relationship has broken down.
5 The whole village **mourned** the loss of the beautiful trees.

Unit 78

78.1

verb	preposition
approve	of
conform	to
tally	with
coincide	with
concur	with
compromise	on
be in accord	with

1 conforms
2 tally / coincide
3 accord
4 tally / concur
5 approve
6 concur / concurred
7 compromise

78.2 1 c 2 e 3 a 4 d 5 b

78.3 *Suggested answers:*

1 The President **made a/the concession** that the opposition party should be allowed a place on the committee.
2 I think you should always **exercise/use** as much **discretion** as possible when it is a question of people's private lives.
3 The landowners **reached a settlement in** their dispute with the authorities over the proposed factory site.
4 The negotiating team were able to **reach a compromise** and put an end to the labour dispute.
5 The decision to close the railway line has **caused a lot of controversy**.
6 There is **some dissent** among the Board members.
7 The forthcoming leadership election has **caused division(s) in/within** the Green Party.
8 Javier's decision **met with his parents' approval**.

Unit 79

79.1
1 overlap, complement(s)
2 deduce
3 advocates
4 inferred

79.2
1 authoritative
2 empirical
3 ambiguous
4 coherent
5 comprehensive

79.3
1 b
2 49, 64 (they are square numbers: 7 squared and 8 squared)
3 Ulla's mark was either much higher or lower than 68%.
4 c
5 No, they select their subjects in a random fashion.

79.4
1 The information **resides** in archives that must not be opened until 2050.
2 He **conceived** his theory while still a young man.
3 Each of the symbols in the phonetic alphabet **denotes** a sound.
4 This study **contradicted** what was previously held to be true, and so **triggered** a great deal of discussion amongst specialists in the field.
5 Details of the experiment have been **appended to** the report.
6 Jelowski's book **reflects upon** the rise and fall of great Empires over two millennia. She **perceives** the Roman Empire as an **instance** of a pattern that has repeated itself in other times and other parts of the world.

79.5 The present study was initially **conceived** in order to validate a new method of enquiry **whereby** genetic information could be **utilised** to predict disease. The study **contradicts** the findings of Hill (2009); indeed it would appear to **demonstrate/indicate** the **converse** of what he claimed. It presents a **somewhat** different view of the genetic factors which **trigger** disease. **Notwithstanding**, the study does not **negate** Hill's, as his studies served the **crucial** purpose of devising symbols to **denote** certain tendencies, **thereby** facilitating further research.

Unit 80

80.1

1. The response from the public **underscores** the importance of having a full investigation of the facts.
2. This view of the world was originally **expounded** by the Ancient Greek philosophers.
3. It is not easy to **account for** the fall in population of these birds.
4. Economists have **posited** a link between exchange rates and a general lack of confidence in the European Union.
5. I should like to **reiterate** here that the issue is not one that can be easily resolved.
6. The recent events **epitomise** the dilemma faced by politicians the world over.
7. In a 2010 article, Charles Plestow **asserted** that the whole European Medieval era had been misinterpreted.
8. The lecturer **summarised** the main arguments of her talk at the end.

80.2

Suggested answers:

1. 70% of the landmass is **comprised of** mountain ranges. / Mountain ranges **comprise** 70% of the landmass.
2. The book **embraces** a wide variety of subjects. (*embrace* is usually used in the active voice)
3. I think these three sections can all **be subsumed** under one heading.
4. The poems in this book have been **categorised** by topic.
5. The course **consists of** five modules, from which students must choose three.

80.3

1. return
2. brings
3. touches
4. address
5. beyond the scope of
6. ascending
7. forced to conclude
8. deal with

Unit 81

81.1

1. jot down
2. scribble
3. doodling
4. writing up
5. draft
6. italics
7. quotes
8. characters
9. run off
10. asterisk

81.2

1. bold
2. upper case
3. italics
4. new font size
5. new typeface
6. lower case
7. block capitals
8. curly brackets
9. square brackets
10. diamond brackets

81.3

1 c 2 i 3 f 4 h 5 j 6 a 7 e 8 g 9 b 10 d

81.4

1. chatty
2. format
3. manuscripts
4. paste
5. touch-type
6. draft
7. indent
8. subtitle

Unit 82

82.1
1 make such a big thing = make such a fuss
2 has got a thing about = is obsessed with
3 The thing is = the problem is
4 things = the situation; get away for a holiday = go on holiday
5 things = subjects, items; get through = deal with
6 get on with = have a good relationship with; For one thing = firstly; like different things = have different tastes; For another (thing) = in addition, secondly
7 get = understand; I didn't get a thing = I didn't understand anything
8 get everything sorted out = solve all our problems; got it together = organised things

82.2 **1** sieve **2** Daniel Craig **3** protractor **4** hammer **5** colander **6** rolling pin

82.3 *Possible answers:*
2 Look, isn't that **thingy**? The actor who was in the latest *James Bond*?
3 I can't find the **thingumijig** for measuring angles.
4 Have you got a **whatchamacallit**, you know, for bashing in nails?
5 Where's the **thingummy** for draining potatoes?
6 I need a **whatsit** – you know, one of those things for flattening pastry.

82.4 *Possible answers:*
1 The garden had **masses of / a mass of / loads of / a load of / dozens of** pink and yellow flowers.
2 I've asked her out **umpteen / loads of / masses of** times, but she's always got some excuse.
3 He hasn't done **a scrap of** useful work here since he first got the job.
4 I've got **loads of / masses of / dozens of** papers I want to get rid of.
5 Alice invited **masses of** / **dozens of** / **tons of** people to her party at the weekend.
6 Yasmin's got **bags of** / **loads of** / **tons of** energy – I don't know where she gets it all from!
7 **Loads of** / **Dozens of** / **Masses of** people were turned away because the lecture room was full.
8 She was told **dozens of / masses of / umpteen** times not to leave any valuables on her desk.

82.5
1 company
2 included
3 gather
4 Incidentally
5 offence
6 mind
7 possible

Unit 83

83.1 *Suggested answers:*
1 The company will invest **in excess of** £10 million in new technology over the next five years.
2 It will cost you **in the region of** / **around** / **about** £10,000 to have the whole house redecorated.
3 Informal: It could take **seven hours**, **give or take an hour** / **or so**, to drive to Aberdeen, depending on the traffic.
Formal: It could take **approximately seven hours** to drive to Aberdeen, depending on the traffic.
4 **Quite a few** students failed the exam. I was rather surprised and disappointed.

83.2
1 Her hair's a sort of reddish colour, and I'd say she's, well, forty, forty-fourish.
Sort of is used here with an adjective, but it can be used with almost any type of word. The *-ish* suffix is used here with a descriptive adjective and a number denoting age, but it is also often used with clock times, e.g. We arrived around half-past sevenish. *Well* is often used to make things less direct.
2 The garden was a bit on the big side, but it was very pretty.
The expression *a bit on the … side* is used with adjectives to denote a quality that is not what we want or hope for, e.g. The living room was a bit on the dark side, but we bought some new lamps and then it was OK.

3 There was a kind of elasticky thing that held the two parts together, and I've lost it.
Kind of and *sort of* can both be used with adjectives and with almost any other word class. Putting the *-y* suffix on a noun or adjective to make it indirect or less precise occurs in informal conversation, e.g. It was a browny colour with a kind of acidy taste.
4 They're good shoes. They're comfortable on long walks and that.
And that just means 'and similar things'. It is very informal. Here it is used with a noun, but people often use it with verbs too, e.g. They were singing and that at the party last night.
5 I've been to the doctor's and had treatments and suchlike, and I'm sure it helps in one way or another.
And suchlike normally follows a plural noun, but it could also be used with an uncountable one, e.g. It'll be useful for your work and suchlike.

83.3
1 stacks / a (large) dollop / dollops
2 dash / smidgen
3 stacks
4 smattering
5 dollop

83.4
Possible answers:
1 worrying / strange / odd
2 nuisance / pain / problem
3 embarrassing
4 sandwich / snack
5 relax / watch TV / have a sleep
6 souvenirs / pots / jewellery / pictures
7 sightseeing
8 finished / done everything / completed the job

Expressions to underline:
1 a bit
2 (it's) a bit of a
3 a bit
4 or something
5 or whatever
6 a sort of, and things like that
7 and that
8 more or less

Unit 84

84.1
1 to bicker
2 without a murmur
3 to lisp / to speak with a lisp / to have a lisp
4 shout, yell, scream (*also* roar, shriek)
5 *roar* is a deeper sound, like a lion; *shriek* is a very high-pitched sound
6 to gossip / to slag (someone) off
7 to wind (someone) up
8 exaggeration

84.2
1 stuttered / stammered
2 tongue-tied
3 mumbling / muttering
4 yell / shout
5 murmured
6 gossip
7 slurring
8 lisp
9 generalise

84.3

1 whining
2 up
3 butter
4 nagging

84.4

■	1 S	■	2 S	■	■
3 C	H	A	T	■	■
■	O	■	A	■	■
4 M	U	R	M	U	5 R
■	T	■	M	■	O
■	■	■	E	■	A
■	■	■	R	■	R

Unit 85

85.1

1 AD / CE
2 i.e.
3 NB
4 e.g.

85.2

1 /ˈneɪtəʊ/ North Atlantic Treaty Organisation
2 F – A – Q frequently asked questions
3 /ˈsaɪfaɪ/ science fiction, /ˈbaɪəʊpɪk/ biographical picture (a film about the life of a real person)
4 /pɪn/ personal identification number
5 U – F – Os unidentified flying objects
6 A – S – A – P as soon as possible
7 /ˈwaɪfaɪ/ wireless connection for computers or smartphones (wireless fidelity)
8 V – A – T / /væt/ value added tax
9 B – C – E before the Common Era, B – C before Christ
10 aids acquired immune deficiency syndrome
11 V – I – P very important person
12 U – S – B universal serial bus

85.3

1 a short account of your life and achievements
2 a bedsit
3 proof of identity, e.g. a passport or driving licence
4 laugh
5 you should reply
6 your level of intelligence according to the Intelligence Quotient system
7 turn the page
8 information on the state of the traffic in a particular area that is continuously updated as the situation changes

85.4

1 Smedley and Jones **edited** the book or article (they oversaw the contents and structure of the book but did not write it).
2 This means see the figure (picture or illustration) which is marked as number 7.
3 Et al. normally refers to three or more co-authors. If there are just two, both names are normally given.
4 This means all the information from page 33 to (and including) page 37.
5 This means **compare** a work already being discussed or referred to with Oswald's 1987 work.

Unit 86

86.1
1 redevelop
2 inappropriate
3 outnumber / outnumbered
4 misuse
5 reconsider
6 imperfect
7 misbehave
8 inability
9 incapable
10 inaccuracy
11 e-commerce
12 eco-friendly

86.2 *Suggested answers:*
1 a 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 c 7 a 8 b

86.3 *Suggested answers:*
2 The hotel **upgraded** me to a luxury room instead of the ordinary one I'd booked.
3 Would you like to stay there **overnight** or come back the same day?
4 The **underlying** problem is a very serious one.
5 For me, the advantages of air travel **outweigh** the disadvantages.
6 I think this hotel is **overpriced**.
7 It's slippery **underfoot** just here. Be careful.
8 The company experienced an **upturn** in popularity after it changed its name.
9 I felt that what she said **undermined** my position and weakened it somewhat.
10 It would be a mistake to **underestimate** how intelligent Frances is / to **underestimate** Frances's intelligence.

86.4
1 procrastinate
2 contaminate
3 eject
4 proliferate
5 commiserate
6 congeal
7 procreate
8 converse
9 emit
10 promote

Unit 87

87.1

-conscious	money-conscious employers
-free	car-free city centre
-rich	energy-rich drink
-led	French-led fashion
-minded	sport(s)-minded friends
-proof	bullet-proof car
-related	drug(s)-related crime
-ridden	poverty-ridden society
-worthy	trustworthy person

87.2 Here are the most likely adjective + noun combinations. You may find others that also work.
1 additive-free drinks, foods
2 avoidable mistake, delay, problems
3 disposable knives and forks, income, glove
4 guilt-ridden expression, speech, personality
5 high-minded speech, principles
6 newsworthy story, speech, mistake
7 oil-rich country, economy
8 ovenproof glove, dish
9 soundproof room, booth
10 stress-related illness, problems

87.3 *Suggested answers:*
child-led, child-minded, childproof, child-related
dust-free, dustproof, dust-related
calorie-conscious, calorie-rich, calorie-related
workable, work-conscious, work-free, work-rich, work-led, work-minded, work-related

87.4 2 Poisonous mushrooms are easily **identifiable**.
3 He is so **career-minded** that he has no time for his family.
4 The new speed cameras are supposed to be **vandal-proof**.
5 During the Civil War, the country was **terror-ridden**.
6 The soil on that farm is **nutrient-rich**.
7 The bank decided that he was not **creditworthy**.

87.5 1 meat-free
2 class-related
3 vitamin-rich
4 dry-cleanable
5 clothes-conscious
6 government-led

87.6 1 verb
2 adjective
3 adverb
4 adjective
5 verb
6 adjective
7 adverb and adjective
8 verb

Unit 88

88.1 2 a long speech by one person (e.g. in a film or play)
3 sound carried from a distance
4 something written by yourself about your own life
5 study of sound
6 to go back to an earlier, worse state
7 study of writing
8 to make something unstable
9 something written to represent yourself

88.2 *Possible answers:*
1 monotonous, mono-culture
2 technocrat, technology
3 retrograde, retroactive
4 telescope, telecommunications
5 automatic, automobile
6 pre-war, pre-flight
7 postnatal, postpone
8 biological, biodiversity

88.3 *Suggested answers:*

2 She asked the singer for his **autograph** on the back of her table napkin.
3 She took a degree in **criminology** at Stockholm University.
4 The novel is largely **autobiographical**.
5 It's **a retrospective** exhibition of the painter's life and work.
6 He believes in **auto-suggestion** to cure yourself.
7 **Teleworking** is now quite common.
8 Some English philosophers in the 19th century believed in **de-industrialisation**.
9 **Cybercrime** is a huge cause for concern.

88.4 *Suggested answers:*

2 The firm makes job applicants do a test that analyses their handwriting for what it reveals about their personality.
3 The school always takes very seriously any case of bullying carried out over the internet or by phone.
4 Matt has a fear of anything technical.
5 He's giving a paper at a special event taking place just before a conference in Spain.
6 She did a course in information science.

88.5

1 information + commercial, i.e. a television advert that gives information instead of selling something (e.g. explaining new social welfare regulations)
2 iPod + broadcast, i.e. radio programmes that you can download after they are broadcast and listen to on a personal audio player such as an iPod or smartphone.
3 camera + recorder, usually a small, portable video camera
4 vegetable + hamburger, i.e. a vegetarian hamburger
5 swimming + marathon, i.e. an event in which people attempt to swim a very long distance (probably done in order to raise money for charity)
6 free + software, i.e. software you can download without charge from the internet

Unit 89

89.1

1 lexicon
2 Anglo-Saxon
3 classical
4 borrowing
5 source
6 consequence
7 impact
8 enrich

89.2

1 hammock
2 turban
3 tabby
4 cot

89.3

1 karaoke
2 mumps
3 amber
4 tonic
5 roster
6 gimmick

89.4 *Here are some possible answers for speakers of Spanish:*

- food and drink – paella, tapas, rioja
- animals, flowers and landscape features – mosquito, cork, banana
- industrial products and inventions – fumidor, lasso
- clothing and the home – sombrero, mantilla, hammock
- politics and society – junta, guerrilla, embargo, mañana, macho
- the arts, sports and leisure activities – flamenco, guitar, toreador

89.5 If possible, compare your answers with those of other speakers of your language.

89.6 Notice that these words may not all have originated in English. *Pudding* originates from an old French word, for instance, but it seems to have moved into some other languages from English rather than going directly from French.

Unit 90

90.1
1 interfere
2 Safety
3 topics
4 shade
5 theme
6 intervened
7 security
8 continually
9 shadows
10 continuously

90.2
1 outrun
2 held up
3 upset
4 upheld
5 do out
6 ended up
7 run out
8 upended

90.3
1 outbreak, e.g. There has been an **outbreak** of violence.
2 upset, e.g. I had a stomach **upset** and couldn't go to work.
3 outlook, e.g. The **outlook** for small businesses is bleak because of the economic crisis.
4 setup, e.g. After the merger, the **setup** of the company was radically changed.
5 a lookout, e.g. Thieves or robbers often have one person as a **lookout**, watching for police, etc.
6 a breakout, e.g. There were three **breakouts** from this prison last year.

Unit 91

91.1
1 intend: I didn't **mean** to hurt you.
2 exactly: She finished the exercise in five minutes **flat**.
3 proper, just: It's only **fair** that we should share the housework.
4 city with the seat of government: Wellington is the **capital** of New Zealand.
5 light in colour: I've got **fair** hair and burn easily in the sun.
6 unkind: You shouldn't be so **mean** to your little sister.
7 fixed: To join the Fitness Club you pay a **flat** fee of £500.
8 neither very good nor very bad: His marks in his final exams ranged from excellent to **fair**.
9 money: You need plenty of **capital** to open a restaurant.
10 unwilling to spend money: He's far too **mean** to buy her flowers.

91.2
It's only *fair*: adjective (right)
The Frankfurt Book *Fair*: noun (large show)
the weather to stay *fair*: adjective (pleasant)
I've got *fair* skin: adjective (light)
ranged from excellent to *fair*: adjective (satisfactory)
the burning third-floor *flat*: noun (apartment)
terribly *flat* and boring: adjective (level)
a *flat* fee of £500: adjective (fixed)
B *flat* minor: noun (♭ = a note that is a semitone lower than B itself)

in five minutes *flat*: adverb (only; emphasises how quick a time is)
in *capital* letters: adjective (upper case)
the *capital* of New Zealand: noun (city where the country's government sits)
capital to open a restaurant: noun (money)
Capital punishment: adjective (punishable by death)
'coagulate' *mean*: verb (convey a meaning, express an idea)
mean to hurt you: verb (intend)
too *mean* to buy her flowers: adjective (opposite of generous)
be so *mean*: adjective (unkind)

91.3
1 match
2 bill
3 set
4 post
5 mark
6 run

91.4
a an instrument a dentist uses to make holes in your teeth
b training for marching
c a powerful tool used for making holes in a road
d an exercise practising grammar in a fairly mechanical way

91.5
1 a the list on which students are marked present or absent every day
  b to send a letter or parcel in a special way so it has protection against being lost
2 a how much performers might appeal to the public
  b money earned on an investment or paid for a loan
3 a to cut up into small cubes (usually vegetables)
  b a cube with a number from one to six on each side
4 a throwing the ball into the air and hitting it at the start of a turn
  b the attention given to customers by staff
5 a specific problem being dealt with by lawyers
  b a piece of luggage
6 a the long stick that players use in snooker or billiards
  b the words or actions that tell an actor that it is his or her turn to speak

91.6
1 Then it hit me! This means 'then I suddenly understood and then the ball suddenly struck my body.'
2 This is based on the traditional saying that babies are delivered to a home by a big bird called a stork. A crane is another kind of large bird rather like a stork. But a crane can also be a piece of heavy machinery used to lift heavy objects.
3 In the first sentence, *flies* is a verb and *like* is a preposition – the sentence is comparing the flight of time with that of an arrow. In the second sentence, *flies* is a noun and *like* is a verb and the sentence says that fruit flies [very small insects] enjoy bananas.
4 As well as being a preposition, *down* is the word for very soft feathers used to stuff, for example, pillows or winter jackets. If prices are *up*, they have risen and if they are *down* they have fallen.

Unit 92

92.1
1 real
2 real
3 real / genuine
4 genuine
5 genuine

92.2 1 C 2 D 3 A 4 B 5 C

92.3
1 brisk, sharpen
2 toll
3 leisurely
4 perfectly
5 bequeathed
6 rightly
7 visit
8 spoilt

92.4

1. a powerful car
2. strong tea
3. auburn hair
4. a doleful expression
5. a lengthy meeting

Unit 93

93.1

1. eye
2. hands
3. heart
4. jungle
5. thumb
6. ball
7. mouth
8. head
9. rein
10. light

93.2

1. holding the reins = in charge; idiom taken from horse riding
2. moving the goalposts = changing the rules; idiom from football
3. a half-baked idea = an idea that is not fully thought through or developed; idiom from cookery
4. to tighten our belts = to reduce our spending; idiom from dressing
5. to take (something) on board = to understand and accept; idiom from loading a ship
6. on track = likely to complete a planned course of action; idiom from travel (e.g. along railway tracks)
7. around the clock = day and night; idiom based on the movement of the hands of a clock
8. take something/someone at face value = to accept something/someone as how they appear at first, without thinking they could be something else; idiom based on the image of a coin or stamp where the value is stated on its 'face'

93.3

1. This book throws a great deal of fresh light on the history of the period. = This books tells us a great deal that is new about the history …; from the concept of intelligence as light
2. We could save half an hour at least if we went through the wood. = We could gain half an hour …; from the concept of time as money
3. Try to keep cool even if he argues with you. = Try to keep calm …; from the concept of intense feeling as temperature
4. We spent months trying to achieve our sales targets. = (two metaphors) We devoted a long time to trying hard to sell as many of our products as we were aiming for; from the concepts of time as money and business as a military operation
5. Police tried to control the flow of the fans as they left the concert. = Police tried to control the movement of the fans …; from the concept of movement of people as water

93.4

1. All the world's a stage and all the men and women merely players.

   The line suggests that life is like a theatre and that possibly the roles are written in advance, with people being like actors in that they all have different parts to play. (from *As You Like It*)
2. We are such stuff as dreams are made on; and our little life is rounded with a sleep.

   The line suggests that people's lives have as little substance as a dream. Death is likened to sleep at the end of the short day that is all that life is. (from *The Tempest*)
3. There is a tide in the affairs of men, which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune.

   The line suggests that our lives have tides like the sea and we must take advantage of lucky opportunities, metaphorical flood tides, in order to be transported to good times. (from *Julius Caesar*)

Unit 94

94.1

1 The system is now **up and running** so we should be able to get some useful data soon.
2 Things are **looking up** now that we've increased our online sales.
3 The whole project **worked like a dream**.
4 After a problematic start, things are **falling into place** now.
5 The school open day **went / ran like clockwork**.

94.2

1 dream
2 pain
3 need / needed
4 nightmare
5 hear

94.3

1 Ricardo
2 Michelle
3 Sabina
4 Alex
5 Monica

94.4

1 Jessica's on cloud **nine** now she's at university.
2 She's **in** her element now she's got a job in an architect's office.
3 You look a bit down in the **dumps** / **mouth**. What's the matter?
4 Just look at him! He looks fed up to the **back** teeth!
5 I was **over** the moon when they told me I'd got the job.

94.5

1 B (the last straw means a final, very damaging event in a series of bad events)
2 C (I can't understand it because it is too complex/complicated)
3 D (you look very unhappy indeed)
4 A (it worked perfectly, as if by magic)
5 D (I was feeling very happy/elated)

Unit 95

95.1

1 Meena can **come across**/**over** as a little arrogant, but she's just shy.
2 Charlie was quick to take advantage of a chance for promotion that **came up** at his workplace.
3 The project was going well until we **came up against** some legal problems.
4 I **came across** some lovely old photos when I was sorting some boxes yesterday.
5 I'm afraid it looks as if our plans to move to a new flat may not **come off**.
6 Something strange **came over** me and I shouted at him angrily.

95.2

1 going
2 dwell
3 press
4 stay
5 caught
6 urge

95.3

1 Do you think the company will have to lay any staff **off**?
2 I learnt Spanish at school but need to brush it **up** before I go to Spain.
3 Correct
4 If you rush **into** a decision, you may regret it later.
5 We'll have to call **off** tomorrow's picnic if the weather is bad.
6 The family soon settled **in** to their new flat in the city.
7 I love the way Katie always throws herself **into** everything she does.
8 Correct

95.4 These verbs can have the particle before or after the object:
to brush up a skill – brush a skill up
to put together a report – put a report together
to lay off staff – lay staff off
to call off a meeting – call a meeting off
to put a plan forward – put forward a plan

95.5
1 abolish
2 start to work
3 waste time
4 occur
5 delay
6 criticise
7 explode
8 not tell

Unit 96

96.1
1 No, you wouldn't.
2 a peacemaker
3 a factory chimney
4 Yes, it's a compliment.
5 No, you wouldn't.
6 Yes, as it's a symbol of good luck.
7 faithfulness
8 No, you wouldn't. Although super suggests something extra good, shark has a negative meaning in a business context.

96.2
1 c
2 d (also associated with growth, fertility)
3 f (also associated with cheerfulness)
4 e (also associated with fierceness)
5 a (also associated with birth)
6 b (also associated with death, nothingness)

Note that these are not the only associations which these colours have. Blue, green and red, for instance, can also be used to refer to different political parties.

96.3
1 No. If you say someone has a dog's life, you think they have a difficult life.
2 No. If you call a businessman a snake, you don't trust him.
3 No. If you say someone's hair is mousy, you mean it is light brown and not especially striking or attractive.
4 Correct.
5 No. If you say someone can be catty, you mean they tend to say unkind things about people.
6 Correct.
7 No. If you call someone a sheep, you mean they just follow others and are not independent at all.
8 No. If you say that someone is hawk-eyed, you mean that they have very sharp eyes.

96.4 *Possible answers:* (but you may have some better ones!)

Colours

Purple is often the colour of royal robes (and was the colour of the most important Romans' togas, because it was made from an expensive dye).
Green is the colour of new growth and this may suggest inexperience.
Yellow might be seen as the colour white people's skin goes when they are afraid.
Red is the colour of fire, so may suggest danger.
White is the absence of colour, which suggests purity, a blank sheet.
Black is dark, and seems to suggest things that are hidden and frightening, hence evil.

Animals
'A dog's life' may come from the idea that a dog is totally under the thumb of its master.
A snake is a creature that many people are afraid of. They know that snakes can be dangerous.
A mouse is usually light brown or grey in colour and it is not generally a popular animal, so it is not surprising that 'mousy' has negative and dull associations as a hair colour.
Rats generally have very unpleasant associations for most English speakers, so it is not surprising that rattiness is a negative quality.
Cats have sharp claws which can scratch and hurt people.
Fish can have a rather unpleasant smell, one that can hang around for a long time, so this may suggest something suspicious, i.e. what is causing that unpleasant smell?
Sheep tend to follow one another rather than all acting in an independent way.
As a bird of prey, the hawk needs very sharp eyes.

96.5

1 bad luck
2 good luck
3 bad luck
4 good luck

Unit 97

97.1

1 She works in a shop that sells women's **clothing**. (Ladies' **garments** might be an even more formal equivalent.)
2 I've got some new **specs**. Do you like them?
3 Did you see that documentary about Wales **on the telly / on the box** last night?
4 Gerry's a decent **bloke / guy**. I wouldn't want to upset him.
5 I spent the morning **conversing** with the Director.
6 Molly was there with her **husband / partner**. He's a nice **man**.

97.2

neutral	formal	informal
children	offspring	kids
sunglasses		shades
policeman/woman	police officer	cop (*bobby* can also be used, but it is becoming increasingly rare nowadays)
umbrella		brolly
	invaluable	really useful
make sure	ensure (or guarantee)	
try	endeavour	
use	employ	

97.3

In a database from the Cambridge International Corpus totalling ten million words of everyday spoken and written English texts, the words in the list occurred approximately in the ratios given in the second column (for example, *frequently* is 11 times more frequent in written English than in spoken).

word	ratio spoken : written
1 frequently W	1 : 11
2 start S	2 : 1
3 begin W	1 : 5
4 maybe S	5 : 1
5 moreover W	1 : 60

97.4

1 pharmacist / chemist
2 girl (or young unmarried woman)
3 poetry / poem
4 to where / where to

97.5

1 This computer text could be called written, modern, technical. Terms such as *shared folder* and *server* are technical. The style is typically written, especially with the use of passive voice verbs and the word *located*; in non-technical spoken language, we would probably just say 'one that is on a server'.
2 This is typical modern, written academic text; *above* indicates it is written. Typical academic words are *paradigm* (which means a dominant set of beliefs or methods in an academic field) and the initials *SLA* (which mean Second Language Acquisition).
3 This is rather archaic poetry (by the English poet John Donne, 1572–1631). *Thee* is an archaic form of singular *you*; *'tis* is an archaic form of *it is*; *in jest* is rather formal and/or literary and means 'as a joke / not serious'. Other rather formal or literary words are *weariness* and *feigned* (pretended).
4 This is formal spoken language. It is from a speech by US President John F. Kennedy (1917–1963). Key items are the formal *ask not* instead of 'don't ask', *my fellow*, and *the freedom of man* instead of human freedom or freedom for everyone. Formal speeches and lectures are often very close to formal written texts, and this text could possibly also have been a written text (e.g. a political pamphlet or electioneering literature).
5 This is informal, modern conversation. Key items are *mind you* (rare in written language), *telly* instead of television, *cos* instead of because, and *yeah* instead of yes. The text is quite fragmented too (*the Rhine*. *Yeah*, *the river in Bonn*). Written registers tend to be more integrated (e.g. *the River Rhine in Bonn*).

Unit 98

98.1

1 American. British version: I lost my way at the big **junction** just south of the city.
2 British. American version: Why are there always so many shopping **carts** left in the **parking lot**?
3 British. American version: Cross the **street** at the **crosswalk**, then **take a left**.
4 American. British version: You can't drive any further; you'll have to **reverse**, the **road** is very narrow.
5 British. American version: You'll see the **gas station** just after the **overpass** on **I-34**.
6 American. British version: Once you get on to the **motorway**, it will only take you two hours to get there.
7 American. British version: The office is **diagonally opposite** the Chinese restaurant.
8 American. British version: There's a **stream** at the end of the **(foot)path**. It's about three miles from here.

98.2

1 e dumpster US = skip UK
2 d ground US = earth UK
3 a frying pan UK = skillet US
4 c cooker UK = stove US
5 b faucet US = tap UK

98.3

1 A fresher, as they are younger.
2 At more or less the same level.
3 'Professor' is an appropriate form of address for any university teacher in the US. In Britain it is a title given only to those of the highest academic rank.
4 Britain
5 The second year.
6 They mean psychology is their main subject of study.
7 No. In Britain it is likely to mean going to an institution for 16+ students to learn some special knowledge or skill (e.g. a teacher-training college). In the USA, it usually means going to university.
8 British

Unit 99

99.1
1 To try to make the language less stereotyped with regard to gender and also perhaps to try to alter gender-biased attitudes in this way.
2 The expression means words that have male connotations but are referring to people in general.
3 There might have been controversy perhaps because some people felt it was an unnecessary change or that it was impossible to try to impose language change artificially.
4 They want to get rid of 'male' words in traditional idioms like *man in the street* by using such phrases as the *person in the street* or the *average person* instead. They even want to get rid of *man* in words like *manhandle* and *woman* where the male idea has really been lost.
5 It was introduced as a title which does not focus on whether a woman is married or not. It is useful if you do not know what a woman's marital status is or if a woman does not want people to know her marital status.

99.2
1 Three **firefighters** helped put out a fire at a disused warehouse last night.
2 A **spokesperson** for the Department of Education provided us with a statement.
3 **Cleaner** wanted for house in Priory Street.
4 The helpline is continuously **staffed** even during holiday periods.
5 All our **flight attendants** are fluent in at least three languages.
6 The fibres in this garment are **artificial**.
7 **Police officers** today spend more time in cars than on the beat.
8 This was a great step for the **human race**.
9 The **average person** has little time for such issues.
10 **Sales assistants** are often well trained and can be very persuasive.

99.3
1 feminine
2 male
3 guys
4 laddish
5 macho
6 girlfriends

99.4
1–5 *Personal answers*
6 The sentence can be altered by either using *his* or *her*: A government minister may have to neglect **his or her** family.
Or by making it plural: **Government ministers** may have to neglect **their families**.
It is also becoming increasingly common and acceptable for *their* to be used as a generic pronoun to refer to one person, e.g. A government minister may have to neglect **their family**. Note that some people consider this to be incorrect. Note also that some writers use the pronoun *s/he* instead of *he* or *she*.

Unit 100

100.1
Suggested answers:
1 A bomb explosion in a capital city terrorises the population there.
2 The Prime Minister is going to announce plans for dealing with football hooligans.
3 Some highly successful footballers are speaking up for their coach after he has been criticised.
4 A strong campaign against people who disagree with a government has been launched.
5 Violent men surround a teenage star.
6 The police decide to focus on dealing with badly behaved and offensive young men.

100.2
1 c It uses nudity and the dramatic word 'scandal' to attract attention.
2 b It uses a familiar name for the King, which shows either lack of respect or friendly familiarity, and the dramatic word 'massacre' for battle, with alliteration on 'Macedonian' and 'massacre'.
3 e It uses alliteration in 'Marathon man' and 'drop-dead dash', with a dramatic image and words.
4 a It is about royalty and scandal, which are favourite topics for tabloids.
5 d It uses the informal expression 'It's curtains for …' [It's the end for …], and alliteration in 'curtains' and 'Corinth'.

100.3
1 g Dracula was a blood-drinking vampire in a famous 19th-century novel of the same name, who comes to Whitby in north-east England from Transylvania. 'Bad blood' is also an expression used to mean bad feelings between people. There will probably be bad blood between the vicar of Whitby and the people who are making a profit from the Dracula connections of the town.
2 e School days are often referred to as the 'happiest days of your life'.
3 b 'Shell-shocked' means traumatised or in a state of great shock. It describes how soldiers in the trenches in World War I felt after they had been subjected to shells or bombs for a long time. Terrapins and tortoises have shells and they would certainly be shocked (in the medical sense) by falling from such a height.
4 a Dentists make impressions of teeth and 'false impressions' is a common collocation used to mean incorrect impressions created by a person.
5 d This is meant to recall the phrase 'happy hunting'. 'Haunting', however, is what a ghost does. An 'apparition' is a kind of ghost.
6 h 'Hopping mad' is a collocation meaning extremely cross. It is appropriate here as toads and frogs hop along the ground. Hopping mad is also no doubt how the police felt when they discovered they had been called out by a toad.
7 f Toilets 'flush' [water passes through them]. 'Flushed' also means to be red in the face. It collocates strongly with the phrase 'with success'; the people who have sold the toilet for such a large sum of money are likely to feel successful.
8 i 'Highly embarrassed' means extremely embarrassed. It is doubly appropriate here as the man is so high up the tree that he has to be rescued by the fire brigade – certainly an embarrassing situation.
9 c Sheepdogs 'round up' sheep. They are a kind of dog and it is suggested that they should round up the children.

Unit 101

101.1
Possible answers:
Use of 'longer' and 'grand' vocabulary: *attained* instead of reached; *bestowed on* instead of given to; *adjoining* instead of next to; *property* instead of home
Use of passive when active would do: *Your request … is hereby rejected* instead of We hereby reject your request to … ; *No exceptions … will be considered* instead of We will not consider any exceptions
Use of noun as the subject of the sentence: *No exceptions to the aforementioned procedure will be considered* instead of We will not consider any exceptions …
Avoidance of 'you': *Any and all appeals regarding this decision must be submitted* instead of You must submit any appeal

101.2
1 Roadworks will **begin** on 1 June.
2 Write the name and address of your **nearest** relative.
3 With **best wishes** from Jane Bramwell.
4 Call me **as soon as you can**.
5 **If there is a fire**, don't use the lifts.
6 Passengers should not **go to** the car deck until the captain tells them to.
7 I am writing **about** the editorial in today's paper.
8 I am writing **in connection with** your letter of 6th June.

101.3

bureaucratic word	more everyday equivalent
acknowledge	let us know
cessation	end
clarification	explanation
commencement	start
deceased	dead
endeavour	try
facilitate	make easier
rectify	put right
resume	start again

101.4

verb	noun	adjective
clarify	clarification	clarifiable
facilitate	facilitation	facilitating
instruct	instruction	instructive
notify	notification	notifiable
rectify	rectification	rectifiable

101.5

1 Clients must **obey** the following **rules**.
2 **Put** coins into the slot below.
3 Your complaints have been investigated and are considered to be **unjustified**.
4 Passengers are **asked not to smoke**.
5 Tick **the country where you live**.

Phonemic symbols

Vowel sounds

Symbol	*Examples*		
/iː/	sleep	me	
/i/	happy	recipe	
/ɪ/	pin	dinner	
/ʊ/	foot	could	pull
/uː/	do	shoe	through
/e/	red	head	said
/ə/	arrive	father	colour
/ɜː/	turn	bird	work
/ɔː/	sort	thought	walk
/æ/	cat	black	
/ʌ/	sun	enough	wonder
/ɒ/	got	watch	sock
/ɑː/	part	heart	laugh
/eɪ/	name	late	aim
/aɪ/	my	idea	time
/ɔɪ/	boy	noise	
/eə/	pair	where	bear
/ɪə/	hear	cheers	
/əʊ/	go	home	show
/aʊ/	out	cow	
/ʊə/	pure	fewer	

Consonant sounds

Symbol	*Examples*		
/p/	put		
/b/	book		
/t/	take		
/d/	dog		
/k/	car	kick	
/g/	go	guarantee	
/tʃ/	catch	church	
/dʒ/	age	lounge	
/f/	for	cough	photograph
/v/	love	vehicle	
/θ/	thick	path	
/ð/	this	mother	
/s/	since	rice	
/z/	zoo	surprise	
/ʃ/	shop	sugar	machine
/ʒ/	pleasure	usual	vision
/h/	hear	hotel	
/m/	make		
/n/	name	now	know
/ŋ/	bring		
/l/	look	while	
/r/	road		
/j/	young		
/w/	wear		

ˈ This shows that the next syllable is the one with the stress.

ˌ This is used when some longer words have a second stress, less strong than on the main stressed syllable.

Index

*The numbers in the Index are **Unit** numbers, not page numbers.*

4x4 /ˌfɔːbaɪ'fɔː/ 27
abhor /əb'hɔː/ 14
abhorrence /əb'hɒrəns/ 14
abhorrent /əb'hɒrənt/ 14
abject poverty 45
-able /əbəl/ 87
absolute poverty 40
absolutely /ˌæbsə'luːtli/ 78
abstruse /æb'struːs/ 69
academic journal 1
accede /ək'siːd/ 72
accelerate /ək'seləreɪt/ 66
access (v.) /'ækses/ 48
access online 1
accessory /ək'sesəri/ 17
Accidents will happen! 70
acclaimed /ə'kleɪmd/ 22
accommodating /ə'kɒmədeɪtɪŋ/ 34
accord /ə'kɔːd/ 74
account for 80
ache /eɪk/ 52
aches and pains 52
achieve economic growth 45
acknowledge /ək'nɒlɪdʒ/ 1, 101
acquaintance /ə'kweɪntəns/ 12
acquiesce /ˌækwi'es/ 72
acquit /ə'kwɪt/ 74
acquittal /ə'kwɪtl/ 74
acronym /'ækrənɪm/ 85
acupuncturist /'ækjʊpʌŋktʃərɪst/ 51
acute /ə'kjuːt/ 51
AD /eɪdiː/ 85
addictive /ə'dɪktɪv/ 48
additive /'ædətɪv/ 23
additive-free 87
address /ə'dres/ 80
adhere /əd'hɪə/ 36
adherence /əd'hɪərəns/ 36
adherent /əd'hɪərənt/ 36
adjoining /ə'dʒɔɪnɪŋ/ 101
administration /ədˌmɪnɪ'streɪʃən/ 7
admit /əd'mɪt/ 70
adoption leave 6
adoration /ˌædə'reɪʃən/ 11
adoring /ə'dɔːrɪŋ/ 11
adverse /'ædvɜːs/ 53
advocate /'ædvəkeɪt/ 79
affection /ə'fekʃən/ 11
affectionate /ə'fekʃənət/ 11
affinity /ə'fɪnəti/ 7, 68
affluence /'æfluəns/ 40
affluent /'æfluənt/ 40
aforementioned /ə'fɔːmentʃənd/ 101
age-conscious 87
age-related 87
aggregate (n.) /'ægrɪgət/ 71
aggregate (v.) /'ægrɪgeɪt/ 71
agony aunt /'ægəni ˌɑːnt/ 47
agony column /'ægəni ˌkɒləm/ 47
agree to differ 78
ahead of its time 22
AI /ˌeɪ'aɪ/ 56
AIDS /eɪdz/ 85
ailing /eɪlɪŋ/ 45, 53
air views 50
airline /'eəlaɪn/ 26
airtime /'eətaɪm/ 50
akin /ə'kɪn/ 68
alarm /ə'lɑːm/ 14
alarmed /ə'lɑːmd/ 14
alarming /ə'lɑːmɪŋ/ 14
alcoholic /ˌælkə'hɒlɪk/ 16
alibi /'ælɪbaɪ/ 74
all the ingredients of 23
all the rage 17
all your born days 60
allegation /ˌælɪ'geɪʃən/ 41, 43
allege /ə'ledʒ/ 43
allergic /ə'lɜːdʒɪk/ 23, 53
allergy /'ælədʒi/ 23
alleviate debt 45
all-inclusive holiday 26
allocate funds 45
all-out /ˌɔːl'aʊt/ 44
allowance /ə'laʊəns/ 35
allude /ə'luːd/ 80
ally /'ælaɪ/ 12
aloof /ə'luːf/ 10
alternative medicine /ɔːlˌtɜːnətɪv 'medsən/ 51
altruistic /ˌæltru'ɪstɪk/ 8
amateur /'æmətə/ 16
amber /'æmbə/ 65, 89
ambiguous /æm'bɪgjuəs/ 79
ambition /æm'bɪʃən/ 70
amble /'æmbəl/ 61
ambush (n. and v.) /'æmbʊʃ/ 44
amend /ə'mend/ 43
amendment /ə'mendmənt/ 43
amiability /ˌeɪmiə'bɪləti/ 11
amiable /'eɪmiəbəl/ 11
ample /'æmpl/ 59
an item 19
anaesthesia /ˌænəs'θiːziə/ 51
anaesthetist /ə'niːsθətɪst/ 51
analogue /'ænəlɒg/ 56
analogy /ə'nælədʒi/ 68
ancestor /'ænsestə/ 28
angle bracket /'æŋgəl ˌbrækɪt/ 81
Anglo-Saxon /ˌæŋgləʊ'sæksən/ 89
animal (rescue) shelter 32
animal rights activist 32
animal welfare 23
annual bonus 6
annul /ə'nʌl/ 43
annulment /ə'nʌlmənt/ 43
-ant /ənt/ 87
anthology /æn'θɒlədʒi/ 22
anticipate /æn'tɪsɪpeɪt/ 76
anti-corruption squad 35
antipathy /æn'tɪpəθi/ 14
anti-social /ˌænti'səʊʃəl/ 5
anti-virus software 48
anxious /'æŋkʃəs/ 70
apology /ə'pɒlədʒi/ 74
appalling /ə'pɔːlɪŋ/ 92
apparent /ə'pærənt/ 70
appeal /ə'piːl/ 43
appease /ə'piːz/ 13
append /ə'pend/ 79
applause /ə'plɔːz/ 20, 29
appliance /ə'plaɪəns/ 58
applicant /'æplɪkənt/ 87
approachable /ə'prəʊtʃəbəl/ 10
approval /ə'pruːvəl/ 78
approve of 78
approximately /ə'prɒksɪmətli/ 83
APR /ˌeɪpiː'ɑː/ 46
arbitrary /'ɑːbɪtrəri/ 79
arch rival 12
archaeologist /ˌɑːki'ɒlədʒɪst/ 39
archive /'ɑːkaɪv/ 50
arduous /'ɑːdʒuəs/ 69
arid /'ærɪd/ 28
armistice /'ɑːmɪstɪs/ 74
armour /'ɑːmə/ 39
aromatherapist /əˌrəʊmə'θerəpɪst/ 51
article /'ɑːtɪkl/ 1
articulate (adj.) /ɑː'tɪkjələt/ 38
artificial /ˌɑːtɪ'fɪʃəl/ 99
artificial intelligence /ˌɑːtɪˌfɪʃəl ɪn'telɪdʒəns/ 56
as quiet as a mouse 63
as thick as thieves 11
as things are 82
ASAP /ˌeɪeseɪ'piː/ 85

ashes /æʃɪz/ 15
aspiration /ˌæspərˈeɪʃən/ 70
assemble /əˈsembəl/ 55
assent /əˈsent/ 72
assert /əˈsɜːt/ 80
assess /əˈses/ 1
assessment of risk 7
assignment /əˈsaɪnmənt/ 1
association /əˌsəʊʃiˈeɪʃən/ 96
asterisk /ˈæstərɪsk/ 81
asthma /ˈæsθmə/ 53
astute /əˈstjuːt/ 8
asylum /əˈsaɪləm/ 35, 97
asylum-seeker 35
at a rate of knots 60
at short notice 60
at stake 76
at your earliest convenience 101
ATM /ˌeɪtiːˈem/ 46
atmospheric /ˌætməsˈferɪk/ 37
attachment /əˈtætʃmənt/ 48
attain /əˈteɪn/ 101
attempt /əˈtempt/ 97
attire /əˈtaɪə/ 17
attribute (to) /əˈtrɪbjuːt/ 36
auburn /ˈɔːbən/ 65
auction /ˈɔːkʃən/ 7
audition /ɔːˈdɪʃən/ 20
authorise /ˈɔːθəraɪz/ 72
authoritative /ɔːˈθɒrɪtətɪv/ 79
auto- /ˈɔːtəʊ/ 88
availability /əˌveɪləˈbɪləti/ 34
averse /əˈvɜːs/ 14
aversion /əˈvɜːʃən/ 14
avoid /əˈvɔɪd/ 90
avoidable /əˈvɔɪdəbəl/ 87
award /əˈwɔːd/ 20
award custody to 43
awe-inspiring /ˈɔːɪnspaɪərɪŋ/ 27
back copy /ˈbæk ˌkɒpi/ 50
back door 30
back on your feet 52
back up 98
back-handed /ˌbækˈhændɪd/ 75
backlog /ˈbæklɒg/ 34
backward steps 61
bad language /ˌbæd ˈlæŋgwɪdʒ/ 76
baggy /ˈbægi/ 17
bags of 82
bald /bɔːld/ 25
ballpark figure 71
ban /bæn/ 25
banned /bænd/ 35
banned goods 35
bar /bɑː/ 72
bargains galore /ˈbɑːgɪnz gəˈlɔː/ 49
based on 67
basis /ˈbeɪsɪs/ 67
battery farming 23
battle /ˈbætl/ 44
BC /ˌbiːˈsiː/ 85
BCE /ˌbiːsiːˈiː/ 85
be a law unto oneself 43
be at death's door 15
be down in the dumps 94
be down in the mouth 94
be fed up with 73
be forced to conclude 80
be in accord with 78
be in your element 94
be into 16
be looking up 94
be made for 94
be most unsatisfactory 73
be not at all satisfied about something 73
be on bad terms 12
be on cloud nine 94
be on the ball 93
be on top of the world 94
be on your last legs 15
be over the moon 94
be proactive 19
be sick of 73
be somebody's guest 24
be the toast of 75
be up and running 94
beam /biːm/ 62
bedridden /ˈbedˌrɪdən/ 87
bedsit /ˈbedsɪt/ 85
bedtime reading 22
beep your horn 25
behind closed doors 30
behind someone's back 12
beige /beɪʒ/ 65
bend the law 43
bend the rules 43
benefit /ˈbenɪfɪt/ 6
benefits package 3
bequeath /bɪˈkwiːð/ 15
bequest /bɪˈkwest/ 15
bereaved /bɪˈriːvd/ 15
berth /bɜːθ/ 26
besiege /bɪˈsiːdʒ/ 44, 100
besotted (with) /bɪˈsɒtɪd/ 11
bestow /bɪˈstəʊ/ 101
bet /bet/ 76
bet your life 76
better off 2
beyond the scope of 80
bi-centenary /ˌbaɪsenˈtiːnəri/ 37
bicker /ˈbɪkə/ 84
bid /bɪd/ 7
bidder /ˈbɪdə/ 7
bill /bɪl/ 41
billboard /ˈbɪlbɔːd/ 49
bio- /ˈbaɪəʊ/ 88
biodata /ˈbaɪəʊˌdeɪtə/ 85
biodiversity /ˌbaɪəʊdaɪˈvɜːsəti/ 33
biomass /ˈbaɪəʊˌmæs/ 58
biopic /ˈbaɪəʊpɪk/ 85
biotechnology /ˌbaɪəʊtekˈnɒlədʒi/ 56
bird sanctuary 32
a bit (of a) 83
a bit of 82
bite your nails 9
bitter rival 12
black /blæk/ 65
black as thunder 65
black cat 96
black future 65
black mark /ˌblæk ˈmɑːk/ 65
black market /ˌblæk ˈmɑːkɪt/ 65
black sheep of the family 65
black-tie /ˌblæk ˈtaɪ/ 19
black-and-white 21
blip /blɪp/ 71
bliss /blɪs/ 13
blissful /ˈblɪsfəl/ 13
blissfully /ˈblɪsfəli/ 13
blissfully happy 13
blissfully ignorant 13
blissfully unaware 13
block capitals /ˌblɒk ˈkæpɪtlz/ 81
bloke /bləʊk/ 97
blood sport /ˈblʌd ˌspɔːt/ 32
blow hot and cold 93
blowy /ˈbləʊi/ 29
blue /bluː/ 65
blue-collar worker 65
Bluetooth™ 56
bluey green 65
blurb /blɜːb/ 22
BMI 54
boast /bəʊst/ 27
body language 4
boiling /bɔɪlɪŋ/ 29
bold /bəʊld/ 81
bolt (v.) /bəʊlt/ 66
bomb /bɒm/ 20

bond /bɒnd/ 11
bonus /ˈbəʊnəs/ 6, 46
boo /buː/ 20
booklet /ˈbʊklət/ 47
bookmark /ˈbʊkmɑːk/ 48
boost the economy 45
boost your confidence 4
borrow /ˈbɒrəʊ/ 46
borrowing /ˈbɒrəʊɪŋ/ 89
bosom buddies 11
bosom friends 11
bosom pals 11
bounce /baʊns/ 46, 48
bound to 70
boundary /ˈbaʊndəri/ 59
bowel /ˈbaʊəl/ 53
the box /bɒks/ 97
bracket /ˈbrækɪt/ 81
branch /brɑːntʃ/ 31
branch of a shop 31
branch out 31
branch out into new directions 31
brand loyalty /ˌbrænd ˈlɔɪəlti/ 7
breadline /ˈbredlaɪn/ 40
break /breɪk/ 50
break a pledge 76
break a promise 76
break a resolution 76
break a vow 76
break down 12
break out 90
breakout /ˈbreɪkaʊt/ 90
breathalyser /ˈbreθəlaɪzə/ 25, 88
breathe new life into 18
breathtaking /ˈbreθˌteɪkɪŋ/ 22
breezy /ˈbriːzi/ 29
bribery /ˈbraɪbəri/ 35
briefing /briːfɪŋ/ 41
bright /braɪt/ 93
bring /brɪŋ/ 80
bring a bottle 24
bring about 67
brisk /brɪsk/ 54
broad summary 92
broadcast journalism 50
brochure /ˈbrəʊʃə/ 47
broke /brəʊk/ 46
broken home 12
Bronze Age /brɒnz ˌeɪdʒ/ 39
browse /braʊz/ 34, 48
bruise /bruːz/ 52
brunch /brʌntʃ/ 88
brush up on 95
brusque /bruːsk/ 8, 24
brutal suppression 44
bud /bʌd/ 31
budding /bʌdɪŋ/ 31
budget airline 26
build (something/someone) up 30
bulk up 9
bullet point /ˈbʊlɪt ˌpɔɪnt/ 81
bullying /ˈbʊliɪŋ/ 2
bump into 70
bumpy relationship 12
bunged up 52
burdensome /ˈbɜːdənsəm/ 64
bureaucratic /ˌbjʊərəʊˈkrætɪk/ 101
burial /ˈberiəl/ 15
burn calories 54
bursary /ˈbɜːsəri/ 2
bury yourself in your books 1
the bush /bʊʃ/ 27
business class /ˈbɪznɪs ˌklɑːs/ 26
business partner 12
bustling /ˈbʌslɪŋ/ 59
butter up 84
by a factor of 71
by the back door 30
cabin /ˈkæbɪn/ 26
caesarean (section) /sɪˈzeəriən/ 15
calcium-rich 87
call off 95
calming /kɑːmɪŋ/ 16
calorie-conscious 24
campaign /kæmˈpeɪn/ 36, 44, 93
camping /kæmpɪŋ/ 26
can’t hear yourself think 63
can’t put (book) down 22
cancel debt 45
cancellation fee 26
capital (adj.) /ˈkæpɪtl/ 91
capital (n.) /ˈkæpɪtl/ 91
capital asset 7
capitals /ˈkæpɪtlz/ 81
carbon (dioxide) emissions 33
carbon footprint /ˌkɑːbən ˈfʊtprɪnt/ 58
cardiologist /ˌkɑːdiˈɒlədʒɪst/ 51
cardiovascular /ˌkɑːdiəʊˈvæskjələ/ 54
career (n.) /kəˈrɪə/ 6
career (v.) /kəˈrɪə/ 66
career-minded 87
career prospects 3
carnivore /ˈkɑːnɪvɔː/ 32
carriage /ˈkærɪdʒ/ 26
carry out 3
carry out research 1
carry the scars of 53
cart /kɑːt/ 98
carte blanche /ˌkɑː(r)t ˈblaːntʃ/ 72
cast light on 93
cast-iron /kɑːst aɪən/ 74
casual acquaintance 12
catch on 17, 95
categorise /ˈkætəgəraɪz/ 80
cause /kɔːz/ 67
cavalry /ˈkævəlri/ 39
CCTV /ˌsiːsiːtiːˈviː/ 35
CE /ˌsiːˈiː/ 85
cease /siːs/ 101
ceasefire /ˈsiːsfaɪə/ 44, 74
ceiling /ˈsiːlɪŋ/ 30
celebrate /ˈseləbreɪt/ 37
celebration /ˌseləˈbreɪʃən/ 37
celebratory /ˌseləˈbreɪtəri/ 37
cement /sɪˈment/ 30
centenary /senˈtiːnəri/ 37
cereal /ˈsɪəriəl/ 28
ceremonial /ˌserɪˈməʊniəl/ 37
ceremony /ˈserɪməni/ 37
cessation /sesˈeɪʃən/ 101
cf. /siːef/ 85
chain brackets 81
chalet /ˈʃæleɪ/ 26
challenge /ˈtʃælɪndʒ/ 92
challenging /ˈtʃælɪndʒɪŋ/ 3, 5, 21
the chances are 70
change trains 26
chapter heading 81
character /ˈkærəktə/ 38, 81
charge to (a credit card) 46
chariot /ˈtʃæriət/ 39
charter flight 26
chase /tʃeɪs/ 61
chat (away) /tʃæt/ 84
chat room /ˈtʃæt ˌruːm/ 48
chatty /ˈtʃæti/ 8, 81
chauvinistic /ˌʃəʊvɪˈnɪstɪk/ 8
check out a website 92
chestnut /ˈtʃesnʌt/ 65
chic /ʃiːk/ 17
child labour 55
chilling /tʃɪlɪŋ/ 22
chilly /ˈtʃɪli/ 29
chiropractor /ˈkaɪərəʊpræktə/ 51
chocaholic /ˌtʃɒkəˈhɒlɪk/ 16
cholesterol /kəˈlestərɒl/ 54
cholesterol-rich 54
chore /tʃɔː/ 16, 69
chronic /ˈkrɒnɪk/ 51

chronicle /ˈkrɒnɪkl/ 22
chuck it down 29
circulation /ˌsɜːkjəˈleɪʃən/ 47
cite /saɪt/ 80
citizen journalism 50
civil disobedience 36
civil war /ˌsɪvəl ˈwɔː/ 44
civilian casualties 44
claim asylum 35
claimant /ˈkleɪmənt/ 87
clammy /ˈklæmi/ 29
clamp /klæmp/ 25
clamp down 72
clarifiable /ˈklærɪfaɪəbəl/ 101
clarification /ˌklærɪfɪˈkeʃən/ 101
clarify /ˈklærɪfaɪ/ 101
clash (n.) /klæʃ/ 44
class /klɑːs/ 40
class-conscious /ˈklɑːsˌkɒntʃəs/ 87
classical origin 89
classified ad /ˌklæsɪfaɪd ˈæd/ 47
classifieds /ˈklæsɪfaɪdz/ 47
cleaner /ˈkliːnə/ 99
clear customs 35
cleavage /ˈkliːvɪdʒ/ 17
clench your fist 9
click on a website 92
climate /ˈklaɪmət/ 29
climate change sceptic 33
climate of change 29
climate of distrust 29
climatic change 33
clingy /ˈklɪŋi/ 17
clinic /ˈklɪnɪk/ 51
clique /kliːk/ 19
cliquey /kliːki/ 19
clog /klɒg/ 54
cloning /kləʊnɪŋ/ 57
close /kləʊs/ 29
close doors 30
close the door on 30
closed-circuit television /ˌkləʊzdˌsɜːkɪt ˈtelɪvɪʒən/ 35
clothing /kləʊðɪŋ/ 97
cloud /klaʊd/ 100
cloud your judgement 29
clumsy /ˈklʌmzi/ 21
coal mine /ˈkəʊl ˌmaɪn/ 58
coal-fired /kəʊl faɪəd/ 58
coffin /ˈkɒfɪn/ 15
coherent /kəʊˈhɪərənt/ 79
coin (v.) /kɔɪn/ 38, 87
coincide /ˌkəʊɪnˈsaɪd/ 78
cold /kəʊld/ 29
cold-blooded /ˌkəʊldˈblʌdɪd/ 32
cold calling /ˈkəʊldˌkɔːlɪŋ/ 7
cold-hearted /ˌkəʊldˈhɑːtɪd/ 93
collaboration /kəˌlæbəˈreɪʃən/ 5
colleague /ˈkɒliːg/ 12
college /ˈkɒlɪdʒ/ 98
collocation /ˌkɒləʊˈkeɪʃən/ 92
colourful /ˈkʌləfəl/ 21
column inches 50
com- /ˈkɒm/ 86
come across 95
come and go as you please 26
come down with 52
come off 95
come out of recession 45
come over 95
come under 95
come under the hammer 7
come up 95
come up against 95
come up against a brick wall 30
commemorate /kəˈmeməreɪt/ 37
commence /kəˈmens/ 101
commencement /kəˈmensmənt/ 101
commiserate /kəˈmɪzəreɪt/ 86
commit perjury 43
committee /kəˈmɪti/ 41
committee stage 41
communication skills 3
community-led 87
compact /kəmˈpækt/ 59
comparable /ˈkɒmpərəbəl/ 68
comparative /kəmˈpærətɪv/ 68
compelling /kəmˈpelɪŋ/ 22
competitive salary 3
complain /kəmˈpleɪn/ 73
complaint /kəmˈpleɪnt/ 73
complement /ˈkɒmplɪment/ 79, 90
complementary medicine /ˌkɒmplɪˌmentəri ˈmedsən/ 51
complete loyalty 12
complete wind-up 84
complex /ˈkɒmpleks/ 69
compliment /ˈkɒmplɪment/ 75, 90
component /kəmˈpəʊnənt/ 55
composition /ˌkɒmpəˈzɪʃən/ 1
comprehensive /ˌkɒmprɪˈhensɪv/ 2, 79
comprise /kəmˈpraɪz/ 80
compromise /ˈkɒmprəmaɪz/ 78
compulsive reading 22
compulsory /kəmˈpʌlsəri/ 70
compulsory redundancy 6
computer jargon 38
con- /kɒn/ 86
conceited /kənˈsiːtɪd/ 10
conceive /kənˈsiːv/ 15, 79
concept /ˈkɒnsept/ 89
conception /kənˈsepʃən/ 15
concession /kənˈseʃən/ 78
conciliate /kənˈsɪlieɪt/ 13
concur /kənˈkɜː/ 78
condition /kənˈdɪʃən/ 51, 53
condolence /kənˈdəʊləns/ 15, 86
condone /kənˈdəʊn/ 72
conduct (n.) /ˈkɒndʌkt/ 41
confess /kənˈfes/ 70
conflict resolution 44
conform /kənˈfɔːm/ 78
congeal /kənˈdʒiːl/ 86
congealed /kənˈdʒiːld/ 64
congested /kənˈdʒestɪd/ 59
congestion 25
congestion charge 25
coniferous /kəʊˈnɪfərəs/ 28
connotation /ˌkɒnəʊˈteɪʃən/ 96
conquer /ˈkɒŋkə/ 42
conquest /ˈkɒŋkwest/ 39
conscience /ˈkɒnʃəns/ 77
conscientious /ˌkɒnʃiˈenʃəs/ 10
-conscious /ˈkɒnʃəs/ 87
consequence /ˈkɒnsɪkwəns/ 89
conservative /kənˈsɜːvətɪv/ 71
considerate /kənˈsɪdərət/ 11
consideration /kənˌsɪdərˈeɪʃən/ 11
consist /kənˈsɪst/ 80
constituency /kənˈstɪtʃuənsi/ 41
constituent /kənˈstɪtʃuənt/ 41
constitute /ˈkɒnstɪtʃuːt/ 42
constitution /ˌkɒnstɪˈtʃuːʃən/ 41
consume /kənˈsjuːm/ 58
consumption /kənˈsʌmpʃən/ 58, 97
contact details 48
contactless 46
contaminate /kənˈtæmɪneɪt/ 33, 86
contestant /kənˈtestənt/ 87
context /ˈkɒntekst/ 38, 40
continually /kənˈtɪnjuəli/ 90
continuing education 2
continuously /kənˈtɪnjuəsli/ 90
contradict /ˌkɒntrəˈdɪkt/ 79
contravene /ˌkɒntrəˈviːn/ 43
contravention /ˌkɒntrəˈventʃən/ 43
controversy /ˈkɒntrəvɜːsi/ 78
convenience food /kənˈviːniəns ˌfuːd/ 23
conventional /kənˈventʃənəl/ 55

converse /ˈkɒnvɜːs/ 79, 86, 97
conversion /kənˈvɜːʃən/ 36
convert (to) (n.) /ˈkɒnvɜːt/ 36
convert (v.) /kənˈvɜːt/ 36
conviction /kənˈvɪkʃən/ 43
convoluted /ˈkɒnvəluːtɪd/ 69
cook up a story 23
cooker /ˈkʊkə/ 98
cookie /ˈkʊki/ 48
copy /ˈkɒpi/ 50
copy and paste 81
copy out 81
coral /ˈkɒrəl/ 65
coronation /ˌkɒrəˈneɪʃən/ 39
correlation /ˌkɒrəˈleɪʃən/ 71
correspond /ˌkɒrɪˈspɒnd/ 68
corruption /kəˈrʌpʃən/ 35
cost-cutting exercise 55
costly /ˈkɒstli/ 87
cot /kɒt/ 89
couch potato /ˌkaʊtʃ pəˈteɪtəʊ/ 16
could hear a pin drop 63
council estate /ˈkaʊnsəl ɪˌsteɪt/ 18
council housing /ˈkaʊnsəl ˌhaʊzɪŋ/ 18
count the calories 24
countenance /ˈkaʊntənəns/ 72
counterpart /ˈkaʊntəpɑːt/ 5
course /kɔːs/ 98
courteous /ˈkɜːtiəs/ 24, 62
courtesy /ˈkɜːtəsi/ 62
cover (n.) /ˈkʌvə/ 20
cover (v.) /ˈkʌvə/ 46, 47
cover/covering letter 3
coverage /ˈkʌvərɪdʒ/ 47, 50
covet /ˈkʌvɪt/ 13
cowboy /ˈkaʊbɔɪ/ 96
cowboy builder 96
crackdown /ˈkrækdaʊn/ 100
cram /kræm/ 1, 59
cramped /kræmpt/ 59
crash /kræʃ/ 63
crave /kreɪv/ 13
crawl /krɔːl/ 66, 75
crawler /krɔːlə/ 75
crazed /kreɪzd/ 100
creak /kriːk/ 63
credible /ˈkredəbəl/ 36
credit card fraud 46
creek /kriːk/ 98
creep /kriːp/ 66
cremation /krɪˈmeɪʃən/ 15
crematorium /ˌkreməˈtɔːriəm/ 15
crime-related 87
crime-ridden 87
crimson /ˈkrɪmzən/ 65
criteria /kraɪˈtɪəriə/ 4
critical /ˈkrɪtɪkl/ 12
cross /krɒs/ 41
cross departmental boundary 41
cross your legs 9
crossing /krɒsɪŋ/ 26
crosswalk /ˈkrɒswɔːk/ 98
crowd /kraʊd/ 19
crucial /ˈkruːʃəl/ 79
cruise /kruːz/ 26
crush /krʌʃ/ 100
Cubist /ˈkjuːbɪst/ 21
cufflink /ˈkʌflɪŋk/ 17
cultural /ˈkʌltʃərəl/ 29
culture vulture /ˈkʌltʃə ˌvʌltʃə/ 16
cumbersome /ˈkʌmbəsəm/ 64
cunning /ˈkʌnɪŋ/ 8
curly brackets 81
current /ˈkʌrənt/ 29
curriculum /kəˈrɪkjələm/ 2
curriculum reform 2
custody /ˈkʌstədi/ 43
customary /ˈkʌstəməri/ 42
customer-facing 3
customs declaration form 35
cut and paste /ˌkʌt ənd ˈpeɪst/ 81
cuts and bruises 52
cutting-edge /kʌtɪŋ edʒ/ 55
cyber- /saɪbə/ 88
cybercrime /ˈsaɪbəkraɪm/ 35
cyberterrorism /ˌsaɪbəˈterərɪzəm/ 35
cyberwarfare /ˌsaɪbəˈwɔːfeə/ 35
dabbler /ˈdæblə/ 16
damage /ˈdæmɪdʒ/ 33
damn someone with faint praise 75
damp /dæmp/ 90
danger /ˈdeɪndʒə/ 100
dart (v.) /dɑːt/ 66
dash (n.) /dæʃ/ 83
dash (v.) /dæʃ/ 66
dauber /ˈdɔːbə/ 21
dawdle /ˈdɔːdəl/ 66
dawn /dɔːn/ 39
day shift 5
dazzling /ˈdæzlɪŋ/ 21
de- /ˌdiː/ 88
dead-end /ˌdedˈend/ 5
deadline /ˈdedlaɪn/ 1, 5, 50
deafening /ˈdefnɪŋ/ 63
deal with 80
debit card /ˈdebɪt ˌkɑːd/ 46
debt /det/ 45
debt burden 45
debt relief 45
debtor country 45
debtor nation 45
deceased /dɪˈsiːst/ 15, 101
deciduous /dɪˈsɪdjuəs/ 28
decisive steps 61
deduce /dɪˈdʒuːs/ 79
deem /diːm/ 21
deep poverty 45
deeply critical 12
deeply rooted 31
defamation of character 50
deforestation /diːˌfɒrɪˈsteɪʃən/ 33
defuse /ˌdiːˈfjuːz/ 13
dejected /dɪˈdʒektɪd/ 14
delegate /ˈdelɪgeɪt/ 42
delicate /ˈdelɪkət/ 42
delighted /dɪˈlaɪtɪd/ 70
deliver /dɪˈlɪvə/ 15
delivery /dɪˈlɪvəri/ 15
deluge /ˈdeljuːdʒ/ 29
deluxe /dɪˈlʌks/ 26
dementia /dɪˈmenʃə/ 15
demographic projections 33
demolish /dɪˈmɒlɪʃ/ 101
demonstrate /ˈdemənstreɪt/ 79
demotivated /ˌdiːˈməʊtɪveɪtɪd/ 6
denial /dɪˈnaɪəl/ 40
denote /dɪˈnəʊt/ 79
depict /dɪˈpɪkt/ 21
deplete /dɪˈpliːt/ 33
depleting resources 33
deposit /dɪˈpɒzɪt/ 58
depress /dɪˈpres/ 2
depressed /dɪˈprest/ 92
deprivation /ˌdeprɪˈveɪʃən/ 40
deprived /dɪˈpraɪvd/ 40
derive (from) /dɪˈraɪv/ 36
dermatologist /ˌdɜːməˈtɒlədʒɪst/ 51
descend (from) /dɪˈsend/ 28
descendant /dɪˈsendənt/ 28
designer (label) clothes 17
designer baby 57
desire /dɪˈzaɪə/ 70
desktop /ˈdesktɒp/ 56
destiny /ˈdestɪni/ 57
destitute /ˈdestɪtʃuːt/ 40
destitution /ˌdestɪˈtʃuːʃən/ 40
detect /dɪˈtekt/ 35
detector dogs 35
determined /dɪˈtɜːmɪnd/ 70

determined effort 45
devaluation /ˌdiːvælju'eɪʃən/ 45
devalue /ˌdiː'væljuː/ 45
devastated /'devəsteɪtɪd/ 14
develop /dɪ'veləp/ 12
developed 28
developing 28
development grant 45
deviate from the norm 71, 79
diabetes /ˌdaɪə'biːtiːz/ 54
diabetic /ˌdaɪə'betɪk/ 54
diagnose /'daɪəgnəʊz/ 53
diamond /'daɪəmənd/ 96
diamond brackets 81
dietary requirements 24
differentiate /ˌdɪfə'rentʃieɪt/ 68
difficulty /'dɪfɪkəlti/ 69
diffident /'dɪfɪdənt/ 10
dig up 31
digital /'dɪdʒɪtl/ 56
digital technology 56
dignity /'dɪgnəti/ 40
dilemma /dɪ'lemə/ 69
diligent /'dɪlɪdʒənt/ 8
dilute /daɪ'luːt/ 64
dim /dɪm/ 93
dinner party /'dɪnə ˌpɑːti/ 24
diphthong /'dɪfθɒŋ/ 38
diplomacy /dɪ'pləʊməsi/ 44
direct debit /dɪˌrekt 'debɪt/ 46
direct train 26
discerning /dɪ'sɜːnɪŋ/ 27
discord /'dɪskɔːd/ 12, 78
discount /dɪ'skaʊnt/ 49
discourteous /dɪ'skɜːtiəs/ 62
discrepancy /dɪ'skrepənsi/ 71
discrete /dɪ'skriːt/ 68
discretion /dɪ'skreʃən/ 78
discriminate /dɪ'skrɪmɪneɪt/ 43
discrimination /dɪˌskrɪmɪ'neɪʃən/ 43
disdainful /dɪs'deɪnfəl/ 10
disease-resistant 56
disgusting /dɪs'gʌstɪŋ/ 92
dishonest /dɪ'sɒnɪst/ 12
disjointed /dɪs'dʒɔɪntɪd/ 20
disloyal /dɪ'slɔɪəl/ 12
disloyalty /dɪ'slɔɪəlti/ 12
dismal /'dɪzməl/ 92
disorder /dɪ'sɔːdə/ 53
disorientation /dɪˌsɔːriən'teɪʃən/ 53
disparate /'dɪspərət/ 68
dispatch /dɪ'spætʃ/ 34
disposable /dɪ'spəʊzəbəl/ 87
disrespect /ˌdɪsrɪ'spekt/ 12
disrespectful /ˌdɪsrɪ'spektfəl/ 12
disruption /dɪs'rʌpʃən/ 25
dissent /dɪ'sent/ 78
dissertation /ˌdɪsə'teɪʃən/ 1
dissimilar /ˌdɪs'sɪmɪlə/ 68
distant /'dɪstənt/ 12, 87
distasteful /dɪ'steɪstfəl/ 92
distinct /dɪ'stɪŋkt/ 68
distinctive /dɪ'stɪŋktɪv/ 68
distinguish /dɪ'stɪŋgwɪʃ/ 68
distort /dɪ'stɔːt/ 79
distraction /dɪ'strækʃən/ 2
distraught /dɪ'strɔːt/ 14
distress /dɪ'stres/ 14
distressed /dɪ'strest/ 14
distressing /dɪ'stresɪŋ/ 14
distrustful /dɪ'strʌstfəl/ 8
diverge /daɪ'vɜːdʒ/ 68
divergent /daɪ'vɜːdʒənt/ 68
diverse /daɪ'vɜːs/ 68
diversify /daɪ'vɜːsɪfaɪ/ 68
divert /daɪ'vɜːt/ 25
division /dɪ'vɪʒən/ 78
dizzy /'dɪzi/ 52
do honours 98
do lunch 19
do out 90
do research 1
do some revision 1
do something about something 73
do your homework 4
docile /'dəʊsaɪl/ 32
docudrama /'dɒkjuˌdrɑːmə/ 88
doddery /'dɒdəri/ 15
dodo /'dəʊdəʊ/ 32
dog's life 18, 96
dogged /dɒgɪd/ 8
dogmatic /dɒg'mætɪk/ 8
dolled up 17
dollop /'dɒləp/ 83
domesticated /də'mestɪkeɪtɪd/ 32
don't bet on it 76
the done thing 62
done up to the nines 17
doodle /'duːdəl/ 81
doomsday scenario 57
door /dɔː/ 30
double /'dʌbəl/ 81
double-dip /ˌdʌbəl'dɪp/ 45
double-edged /ˌdʌbəl'edʒd/ 75
dove /dʌv/ 96
down /daʊn/ 14, 48
down to 41
download /ˌdaʊn'ləʊd/ 48
downpour /'daʊnpɔː/ 29
downside /'daʊnsaɪd/ 69
down-to-earth /ˌdaʊntu'ɜːθ/ 8
dozens of 82
draft (n. and v.) /drɑːft/ 81
drastic /'dræstɪk/ 71
drastic measures 57
draw a veil over 17
dreary /'drɪəri/ 21
dress code /'dres ˌkəʊd/ 17
dress-down day 17
dressed up 17
drill (n.) /drɪl/ 91
drink-driving /ˌdrɪŋk'draɪvɪŋ/ 25
drop out 1
drought /draʊt/ 28
drug-driving 25
drug squad 35
drum your fingers 9
dull ache 52
dumpster /'dʌmpstə/ 98
duration /dʒʊə'reɪʃən/ 53, 60
dwell on 95
dynamic /daɪ'næmɪk/ 6
dynasty /'dɪnəsti/ 39
e- /iː/ 86
e.g. /ˌiː'dʒiː/ 85
eager /'iːgə/ 70
earnest /'ɜːnɪst/ 21
earth /ɜːθ/ 98
ease debt 45
e-book /'iːbʊk/ 48
e-cigarette 86
eco- /'iːkəʊ/ 86
eco-city 86
eco-friendly 86
ecological balance 33
e-commerce /'iːˌkɒmɜːs/ 48, 86
economic /ˌiːkə'nɒmɪk/ 29
economic growth 45
economy class /i'kɒnəmi ˌklɑːs/ 26
ecotourism /'iːkəʊˌtʊərɪzəm/ 27
eco-warrior 86
ecstatic /ɪk'stætɪk/ 13
ed./eds. 85
editorial /ˌedɪ'tɔːriəl/ 47
eerie /'ɪəri/ 63
effusive /ɪ'fjuːsɪv/ 10
eject /i'dʒekt/ 86
e-learning /iː lɜːnɪŋ/ 48
electric /i'lektrɪk/ 65

electronic transfer 46
elementary /ˌelɪˈmentəri/ 98
elitism /iˈliːtɪzəm/ 2
eloquent /ˈeləkwənt/ 38
embargo /ɪmˈbɑːgəʊ/ 45
embezzle /ɪmˈbezəl/ 43
embezzlement /ɪmˈbezəlmənt/ 43
embezzler /ɪmˈbezlə/ 43
embrace /ɪmˈbreɪs/ 80
embryo /ˈembriəʊ/ 15
emerald /ˈemərəld/ 65
emerge from recession 45
emigrant /ˈemɪgrənt/ 28
emit /iˈmɪt/ 86
empire /ˈempaɪə/ 39
empirical /ɪmˈpɪrɪkl/ 79
employ /ɪmˈplɔɪ/ 97
-en /ən/ 87
encore /ˈɒŋkɔː/ 20
encouraging sign 45
encyclopedia /ɪnˌsaɪkləˈpiːdiə/ 22
end up 90
endangered species 33
endeavour /ɪnˈdevə/ 97, 101
endorse /ɪnˈdɔːs/ 72
endowment /ɪnˈdaʊmənt/ 2
energy /ˈenədʒi/ 58
energy-efficient 58
enforce /ɪnˈfɔːs/ 35
engaging /ɪnˈgeɪdʒɪŋ/ 22
enigmatic /ˌenɪgˈmætɪk/ 22
enough is enough 73
enrich /ɪnˈrɪtʃ/ 89
entry regulations 35
environmental audit 41
envisage /ɪnˈvɪzɪdʒ/ 57
epitomise /ɪˈpɪtəmaɪz/ 80
eponymous /ɪˈpɒnɪməs/ 22
equality of opportunity 2
equate /ɪˈkweɪt/ 68
eradicate /ɪˈrædɪkeɪt/ 36
eradicate poverty 45
e-reader /iː ˈriːdə/ 56, 86
ergonomically designed 49, 56
ergonomics /ˌɜːgəˈnɒmɪks/ 56
err on the side of caution 71
erratic /ɪˈrætɪk/ 71
escalate /ˈeskəleɪt/ 44
escape the crowds 27
essay /ˈeseɪ/ 1
essential /ɪˈsentʃəl/ 70
establish /ɪˈstæblɪʃ/ 42
et al. 85
ethnic /ˈeθnɪk/ 44
ethnic cleansing /ˌeθnɪk ˈklenzɪŋ/ 44
etiquette /ˈetɪket/ 62
EU /ˌiːˈjuː/ 85
evacuate /ɪˈvækjueɪt/ 101
evade /ɪˈveɪd/ 90
evergreen /ˈevəgriːn/ 28
evocative /ɪˈvɒkətɪv/ 21, 22
exaggerate /ɪgˈzædʒəreɪt/ 84
exaggeration /ɪgˌzædʒərˈeɪʃən/ 84
exceed /ɪkˈsiːd/ 35, 53
exceed the speed limit 35
excel /ɪkˈsel/ 2
exchange /ɪksˈtʃeɪndʒ/ 19
exchange vows 76
excitable /ɪkˈsaɪtəbəl/ 10
exclusive /ɪksˈkluːsɪv/ 50
excrement /ˈekskrəmənt/ 53
excuse /ɪkˈskjuːs/ 74
exercise discretion 78
exert pressure on 33
exhaust emissions 25
exhausted /ɪgˈzɔːstɪd/ 92
exonerate /ɪgˈzɒnəreɪt/ 74
exotic /ɪgˈzɒtɪk/ 26
expecting /ɪkˈspektɪŋ/ 15
expenditure /ɪkˈspendɪtʃə/ 71
expertise /ˌekspɜːˈtiːz/ 41
expire /ɪkˈspaɪə/ 46
expiry date 46
explanation /ˌekspləˈneɪʃən/ 74
explorer /ɪkˈsplɔːrə/ 39
expound /ɪkˈspaʊnd/ 80
exquisite /ɪkˈskwɪzɪt/ 21
extensive /ɪkˈstensɪv/ 59
extinct /ɪkˈstɪŋkt/ 32
extol the benefits of something 75
extol the virtues of something 75
extras /ˈekstrəz/ 26
extraterrestrial being 57
extravagant /ɪkˈstrævəgənt/ 8
extreme poverty 40
extrovert /ˈekstrəvɜːt/ 10
exultant /ɪgˈzʌltənt/ 13
eyeglasses /ˈaɪglɑːsɪz/ 97
fabric /ˈfæbrɪk/ 17
facial recognition technology 35
facilitate /fəˈsɪlɪteɪt/ 101
facilitating /fəˈsɪlɪteɪtɪŋ/ 101
facilitation /fəˌsɪlɪˈteɪʃən/ 101
fade /feɪd/ 31
fair (adj. and n.) /feə/ 91
fair trade /ˌfeə ˈtreɪd/ 23
faithful /ˈfeɪθfəl/ 11
faithfulness /ˈfeɪθfəlnəs/ 11
fall /fɔːl/ 37
fall head over heels in love 11
fall into place 94
false /fɔːls/ 92
false friend /ˌfɔːls ˈfrend/ 89
family doctor /ˌfæməli ˈdɒktə/ 51
family feud 12
family ties 11
fanatic /fəˈnætɪk/ 36
fanatical /fəˈnætɪkl/ 36
fanaticism /fəˈnætɪsɪzəm/ 36
fancy dress /ˌfænsi ˈdres/ 19
FAQ /ˌefeɪˈkjuː/ 34, 85
far-fetched /ˌfɑːˈfetʃt/ 20
fast /fɑːst/ 92
fast-moving 6
fast-paced 3
fatality /fəˈtæləti/ 15
fatuous /ˈfætjuəs/ 92
faucet /ˈfɔːsɪt/ 98
fault-finding 73
feast /fiːst/ 37
feasting /fiːstɪŋ/ 37
feature /ˈfiːtʃə/ 47
features /ˈfiːtʃəz/ 37
feedback /ˈfiːdbæk/ 1
feel blue 65
feel on top of the world 13
feel strongly 92
female /ˈfiːmeɪl/ 99
feminine /ˈfemɪnɪn/ 99
ferry /ˈferi/ 26
fertilisation /ˌfɜːtɪlaɪˈzeɪʃən/ 15
fertilise /ˈfɜːtɪlaɪz/ 15
fertility drugs 15
festival /ˈfestɪvəl/ 37
festive /ˈfestɪv/ 37
festivity /fesˈtɪvəti/ 37
feud /fjuːd/ 12
fever /ˈfiːvə/ 53
fever pitch /ˈfiːvə ˌpɪtʃ/ 53
feverish /ˈfiːvərɪʃ/ 52
fibre /ˈfaɪbə/ 54
fibre-rich 87
fickle /ˈfɪkl/ 14
field /fiːld/ 3
fierce /fɪəs/ 32
fig. /fɪg/ 85
fight off 52
fight on your hands 44
file-sharing 48

fill the post 4
filter out 48
finals /ˈfaɪnəlz/ 1
financial /faɪˈnæntʃəl/ 29
financial reward 6
find fault 73
find yourself in accord with 78
finite /ˈfaɪnaɪt/ 58
finite resources 33
firefighter /ˈfaɪəfaɪtə/ 99
firm handshake 4
firmly rooted 31
first class /ˌfɜːst ˈklɑːs/ 26
first draft 1
first impression 4
first year (student) 98
fish for compliments 75
flamboyant /flæmˈbɔɪənt/ 37
flat (adj.) /flæt/ 91
flat (n.) /flæt/ 91
flat-screen TV 56
flatter /flætə/ 75
flatterer /ˈflætərə/ 75
flattery will get you nowhere! 75
flawed /flɔːd/ 71
fleet /fliːt/ 44
fleeting /fliːtɪŋ/ 60
flight attendant /ˈflaɪt əˌtendənt/ 99
flight only 26
flimsy /ˈflɪmzi/ 74
flinch /flɪntʃ/ 62
float on air 13
flog yourself to death 69
flood /flʌd/ 61, 93
floor gave way 30
flop /flɒp/ 20
flora and fauna /ˌflɔːrə ənd ˈfɔːnə/ 27
flourish /ˈflʌrɪʃ/ 31
flow /fləʊ/ 61
fluctuate /ˈflʌktʃueɪt/ 71
fluorescent /flɔːˈresənt/ 65
flutter /ˈflʌtə/ 76
fly (v.) 66
flyer /ˈflaɪə/ 47, 49
foetus /ˈfiːtəs/ 15
fold your arms 9
follow policies 45
fond /fɒnd/ 11
fondness /fɒndnəs/ 11
font /fɒnt/ 81
font size 81
food miles /ˌfuːd ˌmaɪlz/ 58
footstep /ˈfʊtstep/ 61
for another thing 82
for donkey's years 60
for good 60
for keeps 60
for one thing 82
for sure 70
forefront /ˈfɔːfrʌnt/ 28
foresee /fɔːˈsiː/ 57
forgive and forget 74
forlorn /fəˈlɔːn/ 14
format /ˈfɔːmæt/ 81
formidable /ˈfɔːmɪdəbəl/ 92
fossil fuel /ˌfɒsəl ˈfjuːəl/ 33, 58
foundation /faʊnˈdeɪʃən/ 42
-free /friː/ 87
free trade agreement 45
freelance /ˈfriːlɑːns/ 5
free-range /ˌfriːˈreɪndʒ/ 23
freezing /friːzɪŋ/ 29
fresher /freʃə/ 98
freshman /ˈfreʃmən/ 98
frightened /ˈfraɪtənd/ 70
frock /frɒk/ 97
frosty /ˈfrɒsti/ 29
frugal /ˈfruːgəl/ 8
fruitful /ˈfruːtfəl/ 16
frumpy /ˈfrʌmpi/ 17
frying pan /ˈfraɪɪŋ ˌpæn/ 98
full board /ˌfʊl ˈbɔːd/ 26
full diary 16
full of the joys of spring 13
full training 3
fundamentally /ˌfʌndəˈmentəli/ 40
fur trade 32
furnished /ˈfɜːnɪʃt/ 18
further clarification 101
fussy eater 24
gaga /ˈgɑːgɑː/ 15
galleon /ˈgæliən/ 39
gamble /ˈgæmbəl/ 76
game /geɪm/ 32
game park 32
game reserve 32
games console 56
gaming /geɪmɪŋ/ 48
gangling /ˈgæŋglɪŋ/ 9
gangly /ˈgæŋgli/ 9
garment /ˈgɑːmənt/ 97
garrulous /ˈgærələs/ 8
gas station /ˈgæs ˌsteɪʃən/ 98
gas-guzzler /ˈgæsˌgʌzlə/ 58
gastrointestinal disease 53
gateway /ˈgeɪtweɪ/ 30
gather /ˈgæðə/ 82
GDP /ˌdʒiːdiːˈpiː/ 71
gear /gɪə/ 97
gene therapy /ˈdʒiːn ˌθerəpi/ 57
general practitioner /ˌdʒenərəl prækˈtɪʃənə/ 51
generalisation /ˌdʒenərəlaɪˈzeɪʃən/ 84
generalise /ˈdʒenərəlaɪz/ 84
generate /ˈdʒenəreɪt/ 28, 67
generous /ˈdʒenərəs/ 8
genetic engineering /dʒəˌnetɪk ˌendʒɪˈnɪərɪŋ/ 57
genetic modification /dʒəˌnetɪk ˌmɒdɪfɪˈkeɪʃən/ 57
genetically modified food/crops 57
genius /ˈdʒiːniəs/ 1
the genuine article 92
genuine misunderstanding 12
geothermal /ˌdʒiːəʊˈθɜːməl/ 58
germinate /ˈdʒɜːmɪneɪt/ 31
get (money) out 46
get (the bill) 24
get /get/ 82
get a new lease of life 18
get around 26
get away from it all 26
get back to 34
get back to nature 27
get carried away 8
get into 22
get it together 82
get off the beaten track 27
get on like a house on fire 11, 18
get over 52
get somebody to yourself 82
get things sorted (out) 82
get up to 16
get your wires crossed 94
get-together /ˈget təgeðə/ 24
gift /gɪft/ 89
gimmick /ˈgɪmɪk/ 89
ginger /ˈdʒɪndʒə/ 65
girls' night out 19
give /gɪv/ 67
give birth 15
give carte blanche 72
give or take 83
give praise to 75
give someone a pat on the back 75
give someone the benefit of the doubt 36
give the go-ahead for 72
give the green light to 72
give way 25

give-way sign 25
glamorous /ˈɡlæmərəs/ 5
glass ceiling /ˌɡlɑːs ˈsiːlɪŋ/ 30
glitch /ɡlɪtʃ/ 69
global village /ˌɡləʊbəl ˈvɪlɪdʒ/ 57
global warming /ˌɡləʊbəl ˈwɔːmɪŋ/ 33
globalisation /ˌɡləʊbəlaɪˈzeɪʃən/ 57
glossy 49
glowing review 20
glucose /ˈɡluːkəʊs/ 54
gluten-free /ˌɡluːtənˈfriː/ 23
GM /ˌdʒiːˈem/ 57
go back on your word 76
go back to your roots 31
go down with 52
go green 65
go hand in hand with 93
go in with 5
go into labour 15
go into recession 45
go like clockwork 94
go off 16
go on 95
go on a cruise 26
go out (of) the window 30
go out of your way 24
go private 51
go through the roof 30
go to a website 92
go to press 50
go under the hammer 7
golden /ˈɡəʊldən/ 87
golden handshake /ˌɡəʊldən ˈhændʃeɪk/ 46
goods /ɡʊdz/ 35
gossip /ˈɡɒsɪp/ 84
GP /ˌdʒiːˈpiː/ 51
GPS /ˌdʒiːpiːˈes/ 56
grab a bite to eat 24
graft /ɡrɑːft/ 69
granny flat /ˈɡræni ˌflæt/ 18
grant custody to 43
-graph- /ɡrɑːf/ 88
graphic image 48
grassroots supporters 31
grating /ɡreɪtɪŋ/ 63
green /ɡriːn/ 65
green credentials 33
Green Party 65
green shoots 31
green tourism 65
green with envy 65
greenhouse effect /ˈɡriːnhaʊs ɪˌfekt/ 33
-gress- 88
grey /ɡreɪ/ 65
grey area /ˈɡreɪ ˌeəriə/ 65
grey cells 65
grey matter /ˈɡreɪ ˌmætə/ 65
gridlock /ˈɡrɪdlɒk/ 57
grill (v.) /ɡrɪl/ 23
grimace /ˈɡrɪməs/ 9
grin /ɡrɪn/ 9
grind /ɡraɪnd/ 69
gripe /ɡraɪp/ 73
gripping /ɡrɪpɪŋ/ 20, 22
ground /ɡraʊnd/ 98
grounds for 67
grouse /ɡraʊs/ 73
grow exponentially 33
gruelling /ˈɡrʊəlɪŋ/ 69
grumble /ˈɡrʌmbəl/ 73
guaranteed to turn heads 49
guesstimate /ˈɡestɪmeɪt/ 88
guest house /ˈɡesthaʊs/ 26
guideline /ˈɡaɪdlaɪn/ 2
guilt /ɡɪlt/ 77
guilt-ridden /ˈɡɪltˌrɪdən/ 87
gulf /ɡʌlf/ 57
gullible /ˈɡʌlɪbəl/ 10, 36
gunman /ˈɡʌnmən/ 100
gutter press /ˈɡʌtə ˌpres/ 50
guy /ɡaɪ/ 97
gynaecologist /ˌɡaɪnəˈkɒlədʒɪst/ 51
habitat /ˈhæbɪtæt/ 32
hack /hæk/ 48
hackneyed /ˈhæknid/ 20
haggard /ˈhæɡəd/ 9
hail of abuse 29
hail of bullets 29
half board /ˌhɑːf ˈbɔːd/ 26
half-baked /ˌhɑːfˈbeɪkt/ 23
hammer (v.) /ˈhæmə/ 63
hammer out a deal 7
hammock /ˈhæmək/ 89
hand in glove with 17
hands-free /hændz friː/ 56
hands-on 3
hang out with 19
Hansard /ˈhænsɑːd/ 41
harass /ˈhærəs/ 43
harassment /ˈhærəsmənt/ 43
hard sell /ˌhɑːd ˈsel/ 7
harrowing /ˈhærəʊɪŋ/ 20
harsh colours 65
has-been /ˈhæzbiːn/ 60
hassle /ˈhæsəl/ 69
hatred /ˈheɪtrɪd/ 13, 44
haughty /ˈhɔːti/ 10
have a bash at something 97
have a crack at something 97
have a craving for 13
have a go at something 97
have a shot at something 97
have a stab at something 97
have a sweet tooth 24
have a thing about 82
have a thirst for 13
have a yearning for 13
have all your wits about you 15
have an eye for 93
have an impact on 89
have its ups and downs 12
have some great times 77
have something up your sleeve 17
have the right of way 25
have the time of your life 18
have your finger on the pulse 53
hawk /hɔːk/ 96
hazy memory 29
head /hed/ 93
headline /ˈhedlaɪn/ 100
head-on collision 25
health insurance 6
healthcare /ˈhelθkeə/ 51
healthcare plan 3
health-conscious 87
heap praise on 75
hear of 77
heart /hɑːt/ 93
heartfelt /ˈhɑːtfelt/ 74
heartland /ˈhɑːtlænd/ 27
heavy /ˈhevi/ 29, 64
heavy going 22
heavy industry /ˌhevi ˈɪndəstri/ 55
hedge (your bets) /hedʒ/ 76
height of fashion 17
heir /eə/ 39
heliport /ˈhelɪpɔːt/ 88
helpline /ˈhelplaɪn/ 34
hemmed in 59
hen night /ˈhen ˌnaɪt/ 19
herbivore /ˈhɜːbɪvɔː/ 32
heroic /hɪˈrəʊɪk/ 50
hierarchical /ˌhaɪəˈrɑːkɪkl/ 5
high school /ˈhaɪ ˌskuːl/ 98
highbrow /ˈhaɪbraʊ/ 21
high-fibre 54
highly /haɪli/ 75
high-minded /ˌhaɪˈmaɪndɪd/ 87

high-pitched /ˌhaɪ'pɪtʃt/ 63
high-rise (flat) /ˌhaɪ'raɪz/ 18
high-tech /ˌhaɪ'tek/ 55
high-technology 55
hike /haɪk/ 27
hilarious /hɪ'leəriəs/ 20
history /'hɪstəri/ 53
hit home 18
hit it off 11
hit the headlines 50, 100
hit the roof 30
hit-and-run /ˌhɪtən'rʌn/ 25
hitch /hɪtʃ/ 69
hobnob /'hɒbnɒb/ 19
hold in high regard 11
hold the key to 30
hold up 90
holiday entitlement 6
holiday of a lifetime 26
holiday property 7
home page /'həʊm ˌpeɪdʒ/ 34
home truth /ˌhəʊm 'truːθ/ 18
home visit 51
homeopathic doctor 51
homograph /'hɒməgrɑːf/ 91
honest /'ɒnɪst/ 12
honours (degree) /'ɒnəz/ 98
hooked (on) /hʊkt/ 16
hoot /huːt/ 63
hop /hɒp/ 61
hordes /hɔːdz/ 27
horn /hɔːn/ 32
hostilities /hɒs'tɪlətiz/ 44
hot /hɒt/ 29
hot and cold 52
hot-desking 5
hotheaded /ˌhɒt'hedɪd/ 93
household word/name 18
housewarming /'haʊsˌwɔːmɪŋ/ 19
hovel /'hɒvəl/ 18
human being /ˌhjuːmən 'biːɪŋ/ 99
human genome 57
human poverty 40
the human race /ˌhjuːmən 'reɪs/ 99
humanity /hjuː'mænəti/ 42
humid /'hjuːmɪd/ 29
hunt /hʌnt/ 50
hurt (n. and v.) /hɜːt/ 52
hydroelectric /ˌhaɪdrəʊɪ'lektrɪk/ 58
I could have sworn 76
I couldn't swear to 76
I should be so lucky! 70
I wish you would/wouldn't 73
i.e. /ˌaɪ'iː/ 85
(an) ideal fit for 4
I'm not with you 94
I've just about had enough of 73
-ible /əbəl/ 87
-ics /ɪks/ 88
ID /ˌaɪ'diː/ 85
idealistic /aɪˌdɪə'lɪstɪk/ 8
ideogram /'ɪdiəʊgræm/ 38
idiot-proof /'ɪdiətˌpruːf/ 87
if I recall 77
if you don't mind me/my saying so 82
il- /ɪl/ 86
illiteracy /ɪ'lɪtərəsi/ 42
illiterate /ɪ'lɪtərət/ 40
illuminate /ɪ'luːmɪneɪt/ 21
illustrate /'ɪləstreɪt/ 21
im- /ɪm/ 86
image /'ɪmɪdʒ/ 21
immaculate /ɪ'mækjələt/ 9
immediate /ɪ'miːdiət/ 34
immediate dispatch 34
immigrant /'ɪmɪgrənt/ 28
immoderate /ɪ'mɒdərət/ 8
impact /ɪm'pækt/ 89
impeach /ɪm'piːtʃ/ 43
impeachment /ɪm'piːtʃmənt/ 43
impeccable /ɪm'pekəbəl/ 24, 34
impede /ɪm'piːd/ 54
impediment /ɪm'pedɪmənt/ 69
impenetrable /ɪm'penɪtrəbəl/ 21, 64
imperfect /ɪm'pɜːfɪkt/ 86
impersonal /ɪm'pɜːsənəl/ 34
impervious /ɪm'pɜːviəs/ 64
impetuous /ɪm'petʃuəs/ 10
implacable /ɪm'plækəbəl/ 13
implant /ɪm'plɑːnt/ 15
implausible /ɪm'plɔːzəbəl/ 36
implication /ˌɪmplɪ'keɪʃən/ 67
impose /ɪm'pəʊz/ 45
impossible /ɪm'pɒsəbəl/ 92
impoverished /ɪm'pɒvərɪʃt/ 40
Impressionism /ɪm'preʃənɪzəm/ 21
improve access to 45
impulsive /ɪm'pʌlsɪv/ 10
in- /ɪn/ 86, 90
in a fix 69
in a flash 60
in a hole 69
in a spot 69
in all probability 70
in ascending order 80
in descending order 80
in excess of 83
in great detail 92
in-house 4
in less than no time 60
in respect of 101
in safe hands 93
in sequence 79
in sum 97
in support of 3
in the clear 69
in the event of 101
in the lap of luxury 49
in the mists of history 29
in the nick of time 60
in the running 54
in the shade of 90
in the shadow of 90
in vitro fertilisation /ɪn ˌviːtrəʊ ˌfɜːtɪlaɪ'zeɪʃən/ 15
inability /ˌɪnə'bɪləti/ 86
inaccuracy /ɪn'ækjərəsi/ 86
inappropriate /ˌɪnə'prəʊpriət/ 86
inarticulate /ˌɪnɑː'tɪkjələt/ 38
inaudible /ɪ'nɔːdəbəl/ 63
incapable /ɪn'keɪpəbəl/ 86
incidence /'ɪnsɪdəns/ 79
incidentally /ˌɪnsɪ'dentəli/ 82
incipient /ɪn'sɪpiənt/ 60
inclusive /ɪn'kluːsɪv/ 26
income bracket 40
income equality 40
incompetent /ɪn'kɒmpɪtənt/ 34
inconsistent /ˌɪnkən'sɪstənt/ 71
incredible /ɪn'kredəbəl/ 36
incredulous /ɪn'kredʒələs/ 36
increment /'ɪŋkrəmənt/ 6
incur debt 45
indent /ɪn'dent/ 81
indicate /'ɪndɪkeɪt/ 79
indigenous /ɪn'dɪdʒɪnəs/ 28
indistinguishable /ˌɪndɪ'stɪŋgwɪʃəbəl/ 68
induce /ɪn'dʒuːs/ 15
induction /ɪn'dʌkʃən/ 15
indulge (yourself) /ɪn'dʌldʒ/ 49
industrious /ɪn'dʌstriəs/ 8
inexorable /ɪ'neksərəbəl/ 60
infantry /'ɪnfəntri/ 39
infatuated (with) /ɪn'fætjueɪtɪd/ 10
infect /ɪn'fekt/ 53
infer /ɪn'fɜː/ 79
inflexible /ɪn'fleksəbəl/ 8
info /'ɪnfəʊ/ 85
informal get-together 24

informant /ɪn'fɔːmənt/ 87
informative /ɪn'fɔːmətɪv/ 22
infrastructure /'ɪnfrəˌstrʌktʃə/ 42
infringe /ɪn'frɪndʒ/ 43
infringement /ɪn'frɪndʒmənt/ 43
inherent (in) /ɪn'herənt/ 2
inherit /ɪn'herɪt/ 15
inheritance /ɪn'herɪtəns/ 15
injustice /ɪn'dʒʌstɪs/ 42
inn /ɪn/ 26
innovative /'ɪnəvətɪv/ 49
insecure /ˌɪnsɪ'kjʊə/ 8
inseparable /ɪn'sepərəbəl/ 11
insider dealer 43
insider dealing 43
insider trader 43
insider trading 43
insight /'ɪnsaɪt/ 22
insolent /'ɪnsələnt/ 62
instance /'ɪnstəns/ 79
instant messaging /ˌɪnstənt 'mesɪdʒɪŋ/ 48
in-store /ˌɪn'stɔː/ 34
instruct /ɪn'strʌkt/ 101
instruction /ɪn'strʌkʃən/ 101
instructive /ɪn'strʌktɪv/ 101
insufferable /ɪn'sʌfərəbəl/ 69
insulin /'ɪnsjəlɪn/ 54
insurance scheme 51
integration /ˌɪntɪ'greɪʃən/ 42
intelligentsia /ɪnˌtelɪ'dʒentsiə/ 89
intensively /ɪn'tensɪvli/ 1
intent (on) /ɪn'tent/ 54
interactive /ˌɪntər'æktɪv/ 56
interchangeable /ˌɪntə'tʃeɪndʒəbəl/ 68
interfere /ˌɪntə'fɪə/ 90
inter-library loan 1
international observer 44
interplanetary travel 57
interpretation /ɪnˌtɜːprɪ'teɪʃən/ 20
intersection /ˌɪntə'sekʃən/ 98
Interstate /ˌɪntə'steɪt/ 98
intervene /ˌɪntə'viːn/ 90
intervention /ˌɪntə'ventʃən/ 42, 44
interview panel 6
intestate /ɪn'testeɪt/ 15
intriguing /ɪn'triːgɪŋ/ 21
introvert /'ɪntrəʊˌvɜːt/ 10
intuitive /ɪn'tʃuːɪtɪv/ 8
inured (to) /ɪ'njʊəd/ 21
invaluable /ɪn'væljuəbəl/ 17
inverted commas /ɪnˌvɜːtɪd 'kɒməz/ 81
invest /ɪn'vest/ 93
invest in 7
inward investment 55
IQ /ˌaɪ'kjuː/ 85
ir- /ɪr/ 86
irregular /ɪ'regjələ/ 5
irritate /'ɪrɪteɪt/ 14
irritated /'ɪrɪteɪtɪd/ 14
irritating /'ɪrɪteɪtɪŋ/ 14
irritation /ˌɪrɪ'teɪʃən/ 14
-ish /ɪʃ/ 65
ISP /ˌaɪes'piː/ 48
issue a press release 50
issue a press statement 50
It just won't do! 73
It's a mystery to me 94
It's a real nightmare 94
it's all coming back to me now 77
It's my worst nightmare 94
italicise /ɪ'tælɪsaɪz/ 81
italics /ɪ'tælɪks/ 81
IVF /ˌaɪviː'ef/ 15
ivory tower 30
ivory trade 32
jade /dʒeɪd/ 65
jargon /'dʒɑːgən/ 38
jaundiced /'dʒɔːndɪst/ 53
jet black /ˌdʒet blæk/ 65
(in a) jiffy /'dʒɪfi/ 60
job ad 3
job satisfaction 6
job-share /'dʒɒbʃeə/ 5
job stability 6
join /dʒɔɪn/ 24
jot down 81
journal /'dʒɜːnəl/ 22, 47
jubilant /'dʒuːbɪlənt/ 13
juicy /'dʒuːsi/ 23
jump a red light 25
jungle /'dʒʌŋgəl/ 93
junior /'dʒuːniə/ 98
junk mail /'dʒʌŋk ˌmeɪl/ 48
justify /'dʒʌstɪfaɪ/ 36, 42
karaoke /ˌkæri'əʊki/ 89
keen /kiːn/ 16, 70
keep a (close) eye on 93
keep a pledge 76
keep a promise 76
keep a resolution 76
keep a vow 76
keep in stock 7
keep on a tight rein 93
key /kiː/ 30
key to success 30
keyhole surgery /ˌkiːhəʊl 'sɜːdʒəri/ 57
kindred spirit /ˌkɪndrəd 'spɪrɪt/ 11
kingdom /'kɪŋdəm/ 39
kitty-corner /'kɪti ˌkɔːnə/ 98
knock around with 19
knock off 5
know a subject inside out 1
labourer /'leɪbərə/ 39
labyrinth /'læbərɪnθ/ 59
lame /leɪm/ 74
lament /lə'ment/ 77
landing card 35
lanky /'læŋki/ 9
laptop (computer) /'læptɒp/ 56
last resort 44
late /leɪt/ 15
latest fashion 17
laud /lɔːd/ 20, 75
laudable /'lɔːdəbəl/ 75
laudatory /'lɔːdətəri/ 75
launch a campaign 93
launch party 19
launder money 43
law unto himself/herself 43
law-abiding /'lɔːəˌbaɪdɪŋ/ 43
law-breaker /'lɔːˌbreɪkə/ 43
lawn /lɔːn/ 16
lay down the law 43
lay off 95
lead a sheltered life 18
lead a team 3
leader /'liːdə/ 47
leadership qualities 3
leaflet /'liːflət/ 47
league table 2
lean /liːn/ 9
learn by heart 1
leave other things standing 49
leave somebody/something in the shade 49
leaving do 19
lecturer /'lektʃərə/ 98
-led /led/ 87
leer /lɪə/ 9
legislation /ˌledʒɪ'sleɪʃən/ 41
leisurely /'leʒəli/ 87
lengthy /'leŋkθi/ 60
lentil /'lentəl/ 54
letting agency 7
level playing field 54
lexicon /'leksɪkən/ 38, 89
libel /'laɪbəl/ 50
liberation /ˌlɪbər'eɪʃən/ 42
lick someone's boots 75
life in the fast line 18

life savings 46
lifelong education 2
lift /lɪft/ 45
light /laɪt/ 21
light industry /ˌlaɪt ˈɪndəstri/ 55
light up your life 93
lightweight /ˈlaɪtweɪt/ 22
likelihood /ˈlaɪklihʊd/ 70
like-minded /ˌlaɪkˈmaɪndɪd/ 87
lime /laɪm/ 65
limp /lɪmp/ 61
line manager 4
lingering /ˈlɪŋgərɪŋ/ 60
linguistic /lɪŋˈgwɪstɪk/ 89
lisp /lɪsp/ 84
literacy /ˈlɪtərəsi/ 2, 40
literal /ˈlɪtərəl/ 38
live from hand to mouth 40
lively /ˈlaɪvli/ 87
a load of 82
loads of 82
loanword /ˈləʊnwɜːd/ 89
loathe /ləʊð/ 14
loathing /ˈləʊðɪŋ/ 14
loathsome /ˈləʊðsəm/ 14
lobby /ˈlɒbi/ 41
lock yourself away 16
locum /ˈləʊkəm/ 51
lodge /lɒdʒ/ 43
logbook /ˈlɒgbʊk/ 22
logo /ˈləʊgəʊ/ 49
long (v.) /lɒŋ/ 70
long-term /ˌlɒŋˈtɜːm/ 6
look back 7, 77
look green 65
look out 90
look through rose-tinted/-coloured spectacles 77
look to work in 6
lookout /ˈlʊkaʊt/ 90
loss /lɒs/ 15
loss leader /ˈlɒs ˌliːdə/ 7
lost /lɒst/ 92
lost for words 38
lout /laʊt/ 100
love at first sight 11
lowbrow /ˈləʊbraʊ/ 21
low-cost airline 26
low-dose 53
lower case /ˌləʊə ˈkeɪs/ 81
lower taxes 45
low-tech /ləʊ tek/ 55
low-technology 55
loyal /ˈlɔɪəl/ 11, 12
loyalty /ˈlɔɪəlti/ 11, 12
lucrative /ˈluːkrətɪv/ 7, 16
ludicrous /ˈluːdɪkrəs/ 92
lugubrious /luːˈguːbriəs/ 22
lumbering /ˈlʌmbərɪŋ/ 64
lump sum /ˌlʌmp ˈsʌm/ 46
lumpy /ˈlʌmpi/ 64
lurch /lɜːtʃ/ 61
-ly /li/ 87
macabre /məˈkɑːbrə/ 22
made-to-measure /ˌmeɪdtəˈmeʒə/ 17
magnetic personality 8
major /ˈmeɪdʒə/ 98
make (a cheque) out to 46
make (a cheque) payable to 46
make a big thing of 82
make a note of 81
make a pledge 76
make a promise 76
make a resolution 76
make a vow 76
make ends meet 40, 46
make eye contact 4
make up 80
make up to 75
make yourself at home 18
male /meɪl/ 99
malnourished /ˌmælˈnʌrɪʃt/ 40
malnourishment /ˌmælˈnʌrɪʃmənt/ 40
malnutrition /ˌmælnjuːˈtrɪʃən/ 40
mammal /ˈmæməl/ 32
man after your own heart 11
manageable /ˈmænɪdʒəbəl/ 87
managerial experience 3
manner /ˈmænə/ 62
manners /ˈmænəz/ 62
manual /ˈmænjuəl/ 22, 47
manufacturing /ˌmænjəˈfæktʃərɪŋ/ 28
manufacturing industry 55
manuscript /ˈmænjəskrɪpt/ 39, 81
march /mɑːtʃ/ 42
marketing strategy 93
marsupial /mɑːˈsuːpiəl/ 32
masculine /ˈmæskjəlɪn/ 99
a mass of 82
massacre (n.) /ˈmæsəkə/ 44
masses of 82
masterpiece /ˈmɑːstəpiːs/ 20
maternity leave /məˈtɜːnəti ˌliːv/ 6
matter of life and death 18
mature student /məˌtʃʊə ˈstjuːdənt/ 2
mauve /məʊv/ 65
mean (adj.) /miːn/ 91
mean (v.) /miːn/ 91
mean something in the nicest possible way 82
meander /miˈændə/ 61
mechanical /mɪˈkænɪkl/ 5
media /ˈmiːdiə/ 50
media attention 50
media coverage 50
media hype 50
media interest 50
media reports 50
medieval /ˌmediˈiːvəl/ 39
meet a deadline 5
meet with someone's approval 78
mega-city /ˈmegə ˌsɪti/ 57
memoir /ˈmemwɑː/ 22
memorable /ˈmemərəbəl/ 20
memorise /ˈmeməraɪz/ 1
merchandise /ˈmɜːtʃəndaɪz/ 7
merchant /ˈmɜːtʃənt/ 39
merger /ˈmɜːdʒə/ 7
metabolism 54
metaphor /ˈmetəfə/ 93
metaphorical /ˌmetəˈfɒrɪkl/ 38
methodical /məˈθɒdɪkl/ 8
midriff /ˈmɪdrɪf/ 17
midwife /ˈmɪdwaɪf/ 15
migrant /ˈmaɪgrənt/ 28
migrate /maɪˈgreɪt/ 32
migration /maɪˈgreɪʃən/ 32, 39
military jargon 38
mind map 1
mind you 97
-minded /maɪndɪd/ 87
mind-numbing /ˈmaɪndˌnʌmɪŋ/ 5
minority /maɪˈnɒrəti/ 42
mis- /mɪs/ 86
misbehave /ˌmɪsbɪˈheɪv/ 86
miscast /mɪˈskɑːst/ 20
miserable /ˈmɪzərəbəl/ 14
miserly /ˈmaɪzəli/ 87
mistrust /ˌmɪsˈtrʌst/ 44
misuse /ˌmɪsˈjuːz/ 86
mnemonic /nɪˈmɒnɪk/ 1
(in a) mo /məʊ/ 60
modal (verb) /ˈməʊdəl/ 38
modality /məʊˈdæləti/ 38
modest /ˈmɒdɪst/ 10
module /ˈmɒdjuːl/ 98
moist /mɔɪst/ 90
moisten /ˈmɔɪsən/ 87
monarch /ˈmɒnək/ 39

monarchy /'mɒnəki/ 39
monetary union 45
money launderer 43
money laundering 43
money-minded 87
monitor /'mɒnɪtə/ 50, 58
mono- /'mɒnəʊ/ 88
monochrome /'mɒnəkrəʊm/ 65
monotonous /mə'nɒtənəs/ 5
moral /'mɒrəl/ 29
morale /mə'rɑːl/ 6
more or less 83
morose /mə'rəʊs/ 8
morpheme /'mɔːfiːm/ 38
morphology /mɔː'fɒlədʒi/ 38
mot juste /ˌməʊ 'ʒuːst/ 38
motel /məʊ'tel/ 88
motif /məʊ'tiːf/ 21
mould /məʊld/ 21
mourn /mɔːn/ 77
mourning /'mɔːnɪŋ/ 15
mousy /'maʊsi/ 65
mouth /maʊθ/ 93
move the goalposts 54
movement /'muːvmənt/ 42
moving /'muːvɪŋ/ 20
MP3 player /ˌempiː'θriː ˌpleɪə/ 56
muck-raking /'mʌkreɪkɪŋ/ 50
muggy /'mʌgi/ 29
multinational /ˌmʌlti'næʃənəl/ 55
multiple /'mʌltɪpl/ 71
mumble /'mʌmbəl/ 84
mumps /mʌmps/ 89
mundane /mʌn'deɪn/ 5
murmur /'mɜːmə/ 84
must-have item 17
mutter /'mʌtə/ 84
mutual /'mjuːtʃuəl/ 11
mutual acquaintance 11
my cup of tea 23
myself included 82
nag /næg/ 84
nagging ache 52
naive /naɪ'iːv/ 8, 10, 92
nanotechnology /ˌnænəʊtek'nɒlədʒi/ 57
national carrier 26
National Health Service /ˌnæʃənəl 'helθ ˌsɜːvɪs/ 51
national insurance /ˌnæʃənəl ɪn'ʃʊərəns/ 51
national park /ˌnæʃənəl 'pɑːk/ 27
nationalisation /ˌnæʃənəlaɪ'zeɪʃən/ 55
nationwide /ˌneɪʃən'waɪd/ 34
NATO /'neɪtəʊ/ 85
natural habitat 32
nature reserve /'neɪtʃə rɪˌzɜːv/ 27
nausea /'nɔːsiə/ 53
nauseous /'nɔːziəs/ 52
navy /'neɪvi/ 65
NB /ˌen'biː/ 85
neck and neck 54
negate /nɪ'geɪt/ 79
negotiation /nɪˌgəʊʃi'eɪʃən/ 42
nervous /'nɜːvəs/ 70
netiquette /'netɪket/ 62
networking /'netwɜːkɪŋ/ 19
never a hair out of place 9
new recruit 4
New Year's resolution /ˌnjuː jɪəz ˌrezəl'uːʃən/ 76
newsgroup /'njuːzgruːp/ 48
newsletter /'njuːzˌletə/ 47
newsworthy /'njuːzˌwɜːði/ 87
next of kin /ˌnekst ɒv ˌkɪn/ 101
nibbles /'nɪbəlz/ 24
niche market /ˌniːʃ 'mɑːkɪt/ 7
night shift /'naɪt ˌʃɪft/ 5
nip /nɪp/ 66
nip in the bud 31
nippy /'nɪpi/ 29
nit-picking /'nɪtpɪkɪŋ/ 14
no offence intended 82
nobility /nəʊ'bɪləti/ 39
no frills /ˌnəʊ 'frɪlz/ 17
noiseless /'nɔɪzləs/ 63
noiselessly /'nɔɪzləsli/ 63
non-refundable /ˌnɒnrɪ'fʌndəbəl/ 26
Norman /'nɔːmən/ 89
nostalgia /nɒs'tældʒə/ 77
not enough room to swing a cat 59
not the most 82
notebook /'nəʊtbʊk/ 56
nothing to write home about 18
notice period 4
notifiable /'nəʊtɪfaɪəbəl/ 101
notification /ˌnəʊtɪfɪ'keɪʃən/ 101
notify /'nəʊtɪfaɪ/ 101
notwithstanding /ˌnɒtwɪθ'stændɪŋ/ 79
now then 97
nuclear /'njuːkliə/ 58
nuclear family /ˌnjuːkliə 'fæməli/ 57
numeracy /'njuːmərəsi/ 2
nutrition /njuː'trɪʃən/ 40, 54
nutrition label 23
nutritious /njuː'trɪʃəs/ 54
oath /əʊθ/ 76
oatmeal /'əʊtmiːl/ 54
obese /əʊ'biːs/ 9
obituary /əʊ'bɪtʃʊəri/ 47
object /əb'dʒekt/ 73
objection /əb'dʒekʃən/ 73
objective /əb'dʒektɪv/ 36
obligation /ˌɒblɪ'geɪʃən/ 70
obligatory /ə'blɪgətəri/ 70
obliging /ə'blaɪdʒɪŋ/ 8, 34
obnoxious /əb'nɒkʃəs/ 14
obsequious /əb'siːkwiəs/ 75
observation /ˌɒbzə'veɪʃən/ 41
obsolete /'ɒbsəliːt/ 38
obstacle /'ɒbstəkl/ 69
obstetrician /ˌɒbstə'trɪʃən/ 51
obstinate /'ɒbstɪnət/ 8, 10
obstructive /əb'strʌktɪv/ 69
occupant /'ɒkjəpənt/ 87
occurrence /ə'kʌrəns/ 50
odds /ɒdz/ 76
the odds are (against) 70, 76
off the cuff /ˌɒf ðə 'kʌf/ 17
off the hook 69
off the peg /ˌɒf ðə 'peg/ 17
off the rack /ˌɒf ðə 'ræk/ 17
off-colour /ˌɒf'kʌlə/ 52
offensive material 48
offer someone the position 4
offhand /ˌɒf'hænd/ 14, 62
officious /ə'fɪʃəs/ 14
off-putting /ˌɒf'pʊtɪŋ/ 24
offshore /ˌɒf'ʃɔː/ 58
oil well /'ɔɪl ˌwel/ 58
-ology /'ɒlədʒi/ 88
on a shoestring 17
on me 24
on the High Street 17
on the house 18
on the mend 52
on trend 17
once in a blue moon 60
one-to-one /ˌwʌntə'wʌn/ 2
online /ˌɒn'laɪn/ 1
online application 3
online journalism 50
only have eyes for 11
onshore /ˌɒn'ʃɔː/ 58
on-the-spot 25
Op-art /'ɒpˌɑːt/ 21
open doors 30
open educational resources 1
open-minded /ˌəʊpən'maɪndɪd/ 8
opening /'əʊpnɪŋ/ 3

ophthalmologist /ˌɒfθæl'mɒlədʒɪst/ 51
opponent /ə'pəʊnənt/ 92
opportunistic /ˌɒpətʃuː'nɪstɪk/ 8
opposite number /ˌɒpəzɪt 'nʌmbə/ 5
oppressive /ə'presɪv/ 29
option /'ɒpʃən/ 70
optional /'ɒpʃənəl/ 70
opulent /'ɒpjələnt/ 49
or so 83
or something 83
or whatever 83
or words to that effect 83
ordeal /ɔː'diːl/ 69
organ /'ɔːgən/ 51
original /ə'rɪdʒənəl/ 21
orthography /ɔː'θɒgrəfi/ 38
ostentatious /ˌɒsten'teɪʃəs/ 14
out- /aʊt/ 86
out of sorts 52
out of the wood(s) 69
out of touch 77
outbreak /'aʊtbreɪk/ 90
outdo /ˌaʊt'duː/ 90
outfit /'aʊtfɪt/ 17
outgoing /ˌaʊt'gəʊɪŋ/ 10
outlaw /'aʊtlɔː/ 72
outline (v.) /'aʊtlaɪn/ 4
outlook /'aʊtlʊk/ 90
outnumber /ˌaʊt'nʌmbə/ 86
outrun /ˌaʊt'rʌn/ 90
outstay your welcome 19
outweigh /ˌaʊt'weɪ/ 86
ovenproof /'ʌvənpruːf/ 87
over- /'əʊvə/ 86, 90
over the hill 60
over the moon 13
over the worst 52
overalls /'əʊvərɔːlz/ 17
overbearing /ˌəʊvə'beərɪŋ/ 24
overdo it 24
overhang /ˌəʊvə'hæŋ/ 86
overjoyed /ˌəʊvə'dʒɔɪd/ 70
overlap /ˌəʊvə'læp/ 79
overnight /ˌəʊvə'naɪt/ 86
overpass /'əʊvəpɑːs/ 98
overpriced /ˌəʊvə'praɪst/ 86
overrated /ˌəʊvə'reɪtɪd/ 20, 86
overshadow /ˌəʊvə'ʃædəʊ/ 86
overstep the mark 86
overthrow /ˌəʊvə'θrəʊ/ 44
overturn /ˌəʊvə'tɜːn/ 43
overworked and underpaid 6
p./pp. 85
package holiday 26
packed in like sardines 59
paddy field /'pædi ˌfiːld/ 28
paediatrician /ˌpiːdiə'trɪʃən/ 51
pagan times 37
page-turner /'peɪdʒˌtɜːnə/ 22
paid leave 4
pain /peɪn/ 52
paint /peɪnt/ 21
palaver /pə'lɑːvə/ 89
pamper (yourself) /'pæmpə/ 49
pamphlet /'pæmflɪt/ 47
pan (v.) /pæn/ 20
panel /'pænl/ 4
pang /pæŋ/ 77
paparazzi 50
paper /'peɪpə/ 1
parade (n. and v.) /pə'reɪd/ 37
paradise /'pærədaɪs/ 27
pardon /'pɑːdən/ 74
parental control 48
Paris /'pærɪs/ 96
parking lot /'pɑːkɪŋ ˌlɒt/ 98
parking ticket /'pɑːkɪŋ ˌtɪkɪt/ 35
parsimonious /ˌpɑːsɪ'məʊniəs/ 8
part with your money 7
participant /pɑː'tɪsɪpənt/ 16
particle /'pɑːtɪkl/ 53
partner /'pɑːtnə/ 12, 97
party animal /'pɑːti ˌænɪməl/ 19
pass away 15
pass on 15
pass over 15
passion (for) /'pæʃn/ 3
past history 53
past it 60
past papers 1
pastel /'pæstl/ 65
pat someone on the back 75
paternity leave /pə'tɜːnəti ˌliːv/ 6
pay dividends 93
pay someone a compliment 75
pay tribute to 75
peace and quiet 63
peace treaty 74
peacekeeping force 44
peasant /'pezənt/ 39
pecking order /'pekɪŋ ˌɔːdə/ 5
pedestrian (adj.) /pɪ'destriən/ 21
pedestrian crossing /pɪˌdestriən 'krɒsɪŋ/ 25
peerless /'pɪələs/ 21
penalty points 25
pensioner /'penʃənə/ 15
penthouse /'penthaʊs/ 18
penury /'penjəri/ 40
perceive /pə'siːv/ 2, 79
perfectionist /pə'fekʃənɪst/ 8
performance-related 6
perish /'perɪʃ/ 15
perjurer /'pɜːdʒərə/ 43
perjury /'pɜːdʒəri/ 43
perk /pɜːk/ 6
perpetuate /pə'petʃueɪt/ 2
persecution /ˌpɜːsɪ'kjuːʃən/ 35
persistent /pə'sɪstənt/ 60
perversion /pə'vɜːʃən/ 43
pervert the course of justice 43
pet aversion 14
petition /pə'tɪʃən/ 41
phishing /'fɪʃɪŋ/ 35
-phon- /fɒn/ 88
phoneme /'fəʊniːm/ 38
phoney /'fəʊni/ 74
phonology /fəʊ'nɒlədʒi/ 38
physician /fɪ'zɪʃən/ 51
pictogram /'pɪktəʊgræm/ 38
piecework /'piːswɜːk/ 55
piercing /pɪəsɪŋ/ 63
pig-headed /ˌpɪg'hedɪd/ 10
pile-up /'paɪlʌp/ 25
PIN /pɪn/ 46, 85
pipeline /'paɪplaɪn/ 58
pitch black /ˌpɪtʃ 'blæk/ 65
pitfall /'pɪtfɔːl/ 69
pithy /'pɪθi/ 8
placate /plə'keɪt/ 13
placenta /plə'sentə/ 15
placid /'plæsɪd/ 8
plagiarism /'pleɪdʒərɪzəm/ 1
plagiarism form 1
plain-clothes police 35
plaque /plɑːk/ 54
platonic /plə'tɒnɪk/ 11
plaudit /'plɔːdɪt/ 75
plausible /'plɔːzɪbəl/ 36
pledge /pledʒ/ 76
plug (v.) /plʌg/ 49
plummet /'plʌmɪt/ 66
plunge /plʌndʒ/ 66
poacher /pəʊtʃə/ 32
poignant /'pɔɪnjənt/ 22
point of view /ˌpɔɪnt ɒv 'vjuː/ 36
pointless /'pɔɪntləs/ 92
poky /'pəʊki/ 59
polar ice 33

police /pəˈliːs/ 35
policy /ˈpɒləsi/ 41
political /pəˈlɪtɪkl/ 29
polysemous /pəˈlɪsɪməs/ 38
polysemy /pəˈlɪsɪmi/ 91
pompous /ˈpɒmpəs/ 14
ponderous /ˈpɒndərəs/ 64
poo /puː/ 53
the poor /pɔː/ 40
poorly /pɔːli/ 52
poorly done 21
pop (v.) /pɒp/ 66
population explosion 57
pop-up /ˈpɒpʌp/ 49
porridge /ˈpɒrɪdʒ/ 54
port of entry 35
portfolio /ˌpɔːtˈfəʊliəʊ/ 1
portion /ˈpɔːʃən/ 24
portray /pɔːˈtreɪ/ 21
portrayal /pɔːˈtreɪəl/ 20
pose a danger 54
posit /ˈpɒzɪt/ 80
position 3
post (v.) /pəʊst/ 48
post (n.) 3
post- /pəʊst/ 88
post-colonial 39
postgraduate /ˌpəʊstˈɡrædʒuət/ 2
posthumous /ˈpɒstʃəməs/ 74
pouch /paʊtʃ/ 32
pound (v.) /paʊnd/ 63
pour /pɔː/ 29, 61
pout /paʊt/ 9
poverty /ˈpɒvəti/ 40
poverty line /ˈpɒvəti ˌlaɪn/ 40
poverty-stricken /ˈpɒvətiˌstrɪkən/ 40
power-hungry 58
prairie /ˈpreəri/ 28
praise /preɪz/ 75
praise to the skies 75
praiseworthy /ˈpreɪzˌwɜːði/ 75, 87
pre- /priː/ 88
precedent /ˈpresɪdənt/ 43
precious commodity 33
precipitate /prɪˈsɪpɪteɪt/ 67
precisely /prɪˈsaɪsli/ 78
pre-colonial 39
predator /ˈpredətə/ 32
predictable /prɪˈdɪktəbəl/ 21, 87
predominant /prɪˈdɒmɪnənt/ 79
preface /ˈprefɪs/ 80
pregnancy /ˈpreɡnənsi/ 15
pregnant /ˈpreɡnənt/ 15
prescription /prɪˈskrɪpʃən/ 51
prescription charge 51
present (v.) /prɪˈzent/ 41
present company excepted 82
preservative /prɪˈzɜːvətɪv/ 23
press conference /ˌpres ˈkɒnfərəns/ 50
press on 95
press release /ˈpres rɪˌliːs/ 47, 50
pressure group /ˈpreʃə ˌɡruːp/ 50
presume /prɪˈzjuːm/ 36
pretentious /prɪˈtenʃəs/ 14
pretext /ˈpriːtekst/ 74
prevailing /prɪˈveɪlɪŋ/ 29
previous experience 3
previous role 3
price /praɪs/ 7
priceless /ˈpraɪsləs/ 21
primary /ˈpraɪməri/ 98
primary care /ˌpraɪməri ˈkeə/ 51
primary colour /ˌpraɪməri ˈkʌlə/ 65
primitive 21
principled /ˈprɪnsəpld/ 8
print journalism 50
pristine environment 33
privacy policy 34
privatisation /ˌpraɪvɪtaɪˈzeɪʃən/ 55
pro- /prəʊ/ 86
problematic /ˌprɒbləˈmætɪk/ 69
proceed /prəʊˈsiːd/ 101
procrastinate /prəʊˈkræstɪneɪt/ 86
procreate /ˈprəʊkrieɪt/ 86
produce /prəˈdʒuːs/ 67
product of its time 22
productive /prəˈdʌktɪv/ 87
professional development 4
professor /prəˈfesə/ 98
profitably /ˈprɒfɪtəbli/ 93
prognosis /prɒɡˈnəʊsɪs/ 53
programmer /ˈprəʊɡræmə/ 5
project /ˈprɒdʒekt/ 1
projected figures 71
proliferate /prəʊˈlɪfəreɪt/ 86
prolong /prəʊˈlɒŋ/ 60
promise /ˈprɒmɪs/ 76
promise someone the earth 76
promise someone the moon 76
promising /ˈprɒmɪsɪŋ/ 76
promote /prəˈməʊt/ 86
prompt /prɒmpt/ 34
prone (to) /prəʊn/ 28
-proof /pruːf/ 87
prophets of doom and gloom 33
proponent /prəˈpəʊnənt/ 36
proposition /ˌprɒpəˈzɪʃən/ 7
prospectus /prəˈspektəs/ 47
protagonist /prəʊˈtæɡənɪst/ 22
protective clothing 17
protest (n.) /ˈprəʊtest/ 73
protest (v.) /prəˈtest/ 73
protracted /prəʊˈtræktɪd/ 60
proven /ˈpruːvən/ 49
provide the key to 30
provoke /prəˈvəʊk/ 67
prune back 31
psychiatrist /saɪˈkaɪətrɪst/ 51
PTO /ˌpiːtiːˈəʊ/ 85
public-private partnership 55
puerile /ˈpjʊəraɪl/ 14
pulse /pʌls/ 53
purchasing power 7
pursue /pəˈsjuː/ 42
pursue policies 45
pushy /ˈpʊʃi/ 10
put down roots 31
put forward 95
put good money on 76
put on oath 76
put somebody/something in the shade 49
put someone in a straitjacket 17
put something on (a credit card) 46
put together 95
put under oath 76
put you on hold 34
put your foot in it 38
put your own gloss on 50
put your own spin on 50
quadruple /ˈkwɒdrʊpl/ 71
quash /kwɒʃ/ 43
query /ˈkwɪəri/ 34
quickly /kwɪkli/ 92
quiet /kwaɪət/ 63
quite a few 83
quotation marks /kwəʊˈteɪʃən ˌmɑːks/ 81
quotes /kwəʊts/ 81
race (v.) /reɪs/ 66
radiant 49
radical /ˈrædɪkl/ 36
radicalise /ˈrædɪkəlaɪz/ 36
radicalism /ˈrædɪkəlɪzəm/ 36
rag /ræɡ/ 50
rainfall /ˈreɪnfɔːl/ 28
raise a family 92
raise your eyebrows 62
raise your hand 92
raise your voice 84
rally /ˈræli/ 41

ramble /ˈræmbəl/ 27
rambling /ˈræmblɪŋ/ 59
rapport /ræpˈɔː/ 5
rash /ræʃ/ 53
ratio /ˈreɪʃiəʊ/ 71
raucous /ˈrɔːkəs/ 37
re- /ˌriː/ 86
reach a compromise 7, 78
reach a settlement 78
react /riˈækt/ 36
reaction /riˈækʃən/ 36, 53
reactionary /riˈækʃənəri/ 36
readership /ˈriːdəʃɪp/ 22
really must object to 73
the real thing 92
reap the rewards 31
reap what you sowed 31
rear /rɪə/ 59
rebellion /rɪˈbeliən/ 44
receipt /rɪˈsiːt/ 101
reception /rɪˈsepʃən/ 19
recharge /ˌriːˈtʃɑːdʒ/ 27
recipe /ˈresɪpi/ 23
reckless /ˈrekləs/ 25
recognise /ˈrekəgnaɪz/ 42
reconsider /ˌriːkənˈsɪdə/ 86
recover /rɪˈkʌvə/ 45
recover from 52
recover from a long decline 45
recruit (v.) /rɪˈkruːt/ 4
rectifiable /ˈrektɪfaɪəbəl/ 101
rectification /ˌrektɪfɪˈkeɪʃən/ 101
rectify /ˈrektɪfaɪ/ 101
red /red/ 65
red alert /ˌred əˈlɜːt/ 65
red flag /ˌred ˈflæg/ 65
red tape /ˌred ˈteɪp/ 7, 101
red-carpet treatment 65
redden /ˈredən/ 87
reddish brown 65
redevelop /ˌriːdɪˈveləp/ 86
red-letter day /ˌredˈletə ˌdeɪ/ 65
refer /rɪˈfɜː/ 51
reflect upon 79
refugee /ˌrefjʊˈdʒiː/ 35
regard /rɪˈgɑːd/ 11
regardless /rɪˈgɑːdləs/ 72
regime change 44
register /ˈredʒɪstə/ 38
regret /rɪˈgret/ 77
rehearsal /rɪˈhɜːsəl/ 20
reign /reɪn/ 39
reign of terror 100
reiterate /riˈɪtəreɪt/ 80
rejoice /rɪˈdʒɔɪs/ 13
-related /rɪˈleɪtɪd/ 87
relationship /rɪˈleɪʃənʃɪp/ 11
relative poverty 40
relaxing /rɪˈlæksɪŋ/ 16
relevant (to) /ˈreləvənt/ 3, 87
relocate /ˌriːləʊˈkeɪt/ 55
remember rightly 92
remind /rɪˈmaɪnd/ 77
reminisce /ˌremɪˈnɪs/ 77
remonstrance /rɪˈmɒnstrəns/ 73
remonstrate /ˈremənstreɪt/ 73
remorse /rɪˈmɔːs/ 74, 77
Renaissance /rəˈneɪsəns/ 39
renew /rɪˈnjuː/ 37
renewable /rɪˈnjuːəbəl/ 58
renewable energy 33, 58
renewal /rɪˈnjuːəl/ 37
renewed /rɪˈnjuːd/ 37
repay debt 45
repeatedly /rɪˈpiːtɪdli/ 60
repent /rɪˈpent/ 74
repentance /rɪˈpentəns/ 74
repetitive /rɪˈpetətɪv/ 5
report (to) /rɪˈpɔːt/ 3
reporting structure 4
reprieve /rɪˈpriːv/ 74
reptile /ˈreptaɪl/ 32
reputation /ˌrepjəˈteɪʃən/ 92
research /rɪˈsɜːtʃ/ 1
reserved /rɪˈzɜːvd/ 10
reside /rɪˈzaɪd/ 79
resistance /rɪˈzɪstəns/ 36
reskill /ˌriːˈskɪl/ 55
resolute /ˈrezəluːt/ 8
resolution /ˌrezəlˈuːʃən/ 76
resolved /rɪˈzɒlvd/ 70
respect /rɪˈspekt/ 12
respectful /rɪˈspektfəl/ 10, 12
responsive /rɪˈspɒnsɪv/ 34
restless /ˈrestləs/ 10
restricted /rɪˈstrɪktɪd/ 35
restricted goods 35
restriction /rɪˈstrɪkʃən/ 26
restrictive practice 45
result in 67
resume /rɪˈzjuːm/ 101
rethink /ˌriːˈθɪŋk/ 86
retrain /ˌriːˈtreɪn/ 55
retro- /ˈretrəʊ/ 88
return /rɪˈtɜːn/ 80
revaluation /ˌriːvæljuˈeɪʃən/ 45
reveal /rɪˈviːl/ 17
revealing /rɪˈviːlɪŋ/ 17
revise /rɪˈvaɪz/ 1
revise upwards 71
revision /rɪˈvɪʒən/ 1
rewarding /rɪˈwɔːdɪŋ/ 5, 16
the rich /rɪtʃ/ 40
-rich /rɪtʃ/ 87
-ridden /ˈrɪdən/ 87
ridiculous /rɪˈdɪkjələs/ 92
rift /rɪft/ 12, 78
right of way /ˌraɪt əv ˈweɪ/ 25
ring out 63
rip /rɪp/ 100
ripe old age 15
rising sea levels 33
risqué /ˈrɪskeɪ/ 20
rival /ˈraɪvəl/ 12, 44
road /rəʊd/ 98
road rage /ˈrəʊd ˌreɪdʒ/ 25
roadworthy /ˈrəʊdˌwɜːði/ 25
roar /rɔː/ 84
roasting /rəʊstɪŋ/ 29
rock-bottom /ˌrɒkˈbɒtəm/ 49
rocket (v.) /ˈrɒkɪt/ 66
rodent /ˈrəʊdənt/ 32
roll in it 46
roof /ruːf/ 30
roof fell in 30
room /ruːm/ 59
roomy /ˈruːmi/ 59
root /ruːt/ 31
root of a problem 31
rooted /ruːtɪd/ 31
roots of a tradition 31
roster /ˈrɒstə/ 89
rote-learning /rəʊtˈlɜːnɪŋ/ 1
round brackets /ˈraʊnd ˌbrækɪts/ 81
round something down 71
route /ruːt/ 26
router /ˈruːtə/ 56
RSVP /ˌɑːresviːˈpiː/ 85
rub shoulders with 19
ruby /ˈruːbi/ 65
rue /ruː/ 77
rule of thumb 93
ruler /ruːlə/ 39
run a story 50
run down /ˌrʌn ˈdaʊn/ 18
run into six figures 71
run like clockwork 94
run off 81
run-of-the-mill /ˌrʌnəvðəˈmɪl/ 6, 21

run out 6, 90
rush into 95
safety /ˈseɪfti/ 90
safety camera 35
safety helmet 17
safety-conscious 87
sail through 54
salary expectations 3
sallow /ˈsæləʊ/ 9
sanction /ˈsæŋkʃən/ 44, 45
sandwich board /ˈsænwɪdʒ ˌbɔːd/ 49
sanitation /ˌsænɪˈteɪʃən/ 40
sapphire /ˈsæfaɪə/ 65
satellite communications 56
satisfying /ˈsætɪsfaɪɪŋ/ 5
SATNAV /ˈsætnæv/ 56
savage /ˈsævɪdʒ/ 32
savour /ˈseɪvə/ 27
savoury /ˈseɪvəri/ 24
say when 24
scamper /ˈskæmpə/ 66
scar /skɑː/ 53, 96
scarlet /ˈskɑːlət/ 65
scarred /skɑːd/ 53
scatter ashes 15
scattered /ˈskætəd/ 59
scavenger /ˈskævɪndʒə/ 32
scenic /ˈsiːnɪk/ 27
scheduled flight /ˈʃedʒuːld ˌflaɪt/ 26
scholarship /ˈskɒləʃɪp/ 2
school of art 21
schooling /ˈskuːlɪŋ/ 2
sci-fi /ˈsaɪˌfaɪ/ 85
scoop /skuːp/ 50
score an own goal 54
scorn /skɔːn/ 14
scornful /ˈskɔːnfəl/ 14
scowl /skaʊl/ 9
a scrap of 82
scrawny /ˈskrɔːni/ 9
scream /skriːm/ 84
screen out 48
scribble /ˈskrɪbəl/ 81
scruff /skrʌf/ 17
scruffy /ˈskrʌfi/ 17
scrupulously honest 12
scrutinise /ˈskruːtɪnaɪz/ 41
scurry /ˈskʌri/ 66
scuttle /ˈskʌtl/ 66
search warrant /ˈsɜːtʃ ˌwɒrənt/ 35
(in a) sec /sek/ 60
second year (student) 98
secondary care 51
secondary school /ˈsekəndəri ˌskuːl/ 98
seconds /ˈsekəndz/ 24
secure site 34
secure transactions 34
security /sɪˈkjʊərəti/ 90
security forces 35
see eye to eye 12
see red 65
see the light 93
seed /siːd/ 31
seeds of discontent 31
seeds of revolution 31
seeds of success 31
seek /siːk/ 6, 36
seek a career in 6
seek publicity 50
seek something out of the ordinary 27
seesaw /ˈsiːsɔː/ 71
Select Committee /sɪˌlekt kəˈmɪti/ 41
selective /sɪˈlektɪv/ 2
self-catering /ˌselfˈkeɪtərɪŋ/ 26
self-conscious /ˌselfˈkɒnʃəs/ 10
self-employed /ˌselfɪmˈplɔɪd/ 5
self-esteem /ˌselfɪˈstiːm/ 10
self-important 10
sense of urgency 34
serial /ˈsɪəriəl/ 90
series /ˈsɪəriːz/ 90
serious /ˈsɪəriəs/ 8
server /sɜːvə/ 48
service industry /ˈsɜːvɪs ˌɪndəstri/ 55
servile /ˈsɜːvaɪl/ 75
set a new trend 17
set a precedent 43
set out 41
set up 90
set up an account 34
setback /ˈsetbæk/ 69
settle /ˈsetl/ 28
settle in 95
settlement /ˈsetlmənt/ 78
setup /ˈsetʌp/ 90
shaded box 81
shadow (n.) /ˈʃædəʊ/ 90
shadow (v.) /ˈʃædəʊ/ 41
shadowy /ˈʃædəʊi/ 21
shambles /ˈʃæmbəlz/ 94
shame /ʃeɪm/ 77
shameful /ˈʃeɪmfəl/ 73
shape /ʃeɪp/ 21
share portfolio 46
shared cabin 26
shark /ʃɑːk/ 96
sharp-tongued 8
shed /ʃed/ 31
shed employees 31
shed inhibitions 31
shed jobs 31
shed weight 31
shed worries 31
sheer /ʃɪə/ 13
sheer bliss 13
shelter /ˈʃeltə/ 40
sheltered accommodation /ˌʃeltəd əˌkɒməˈdeɪʃən/ 15
shivery /ˈʃɪvəri/ 52
shocking pink /ˌʃɒkɪŋ ˈpɪŋk/ 65
shoddy /ˈʃɒdi/ 34
shoot a goal 100
shooting star /ˌʃuːtɪŋ ˈstɑː/ 100
shop around 7
shopaholic /ˌʃɒpəˈhɒlɪk/ 16
short-term /ˌʃɔːtˈtɜːm/ 6
shortlist (v.) /ˈʃɔːtɪst/ 4
shout /ʃaʊt/ 84
shower praise on 75
shred /ʃred/ 39
shrewd /ʃruːd/ 8
shriek /ʃriːk/ 84
shrinking habitat 33
shrivel /ˈʃrɪvəl/ 31
shrug your shoulders 9
shut doors 30
shuttle bus 26
side effect /ˈsaɪd ɪˌfekt/ 53
sidle /ˈsaɪdəl/ 66
siege /siːdʒ/ 44
sift /sɪft/ 64
silent /ˈsaɪlənt/ 63
silent film /ˌsaɪlənt ˌfɪlm/ 63
silent movie 63
simultaneous /ˌsɪməlˈteɪniəs/ 60
since the year dot 60
sing someone's/something's praises 75
single /ˈsɪŋgəl/ 81
single currency 45
Sir or Madam 3
sitcom /ˈsɪtkɒm/ 85
site index 34
sizzle /ˈsɪzəl/ 63
skate around 54
skeleton staff /ˈskelɪtən ˌstɑːf/ 6
sketchy /ˈsketʃi/ 21
skid /skɪd/ 25
skilful /ˈskɪlfəl/ 21
skillet /ˈskɪlɪt/ 98

skimpy /ˈskɪmpi/ 17
skint /skɪnt/ 46
skip /skɪp/ 98
sky-writing /ˈskaɪˌraɪtɪŋ/ 49
slag off 84
slam /slæm/ 63
slash /slæʃ/ 49
slate (v.) /sleɪt/ 20
slaughtered /ˈslɔːtəd/ 15
slave /sleɪv/ 39
slave to fashion 17
slavery /ˈsleɪvəri/ 39
sleepless /ˈsliːpləs/ 52
slender /ˈslendə/ 9
slimy /ˈslaɪmi/ 75
slog /slɒg/ 69
slog your guts out 69
slogan /ˈsləʊgən/ 42
sloppy /ˈslɒpi/ 14
sluggish /ˈslʌgɪʃ/ 24
slump (v.) /slʌmp/ 66
slump in prices 45
slur /slɜː/ 84
sly /slaɪ/ 8
small letters 81
smarmy /ˈsmɑːmi/ 75
smart /smɑːt/ 57
smart building 57
smart home 57
smart ID card 56
smart-casual 17
smartphone /ˈsmɑːtfəʊn/ 56
smattering /ˈsmætərɪŋ/ 83
smidgen /ˈsmɪdʒən/ 83
smirk /smɜːk/ 62
smog /smɒg/ 88
snag /snæg/ 69
sniff at something 62
sniffer dog /ˈsnɪfə ˌdɒg/ 35
snort /snɔːt/ 62
snowed under 29
soar /sɔː/ 66
sober /ˈsəʊbə/ 8
social /ˈsəʊʃəl/ 29
social context 40
social housing 18
social media /ˌsəʊʃəl ˈmiːdiə/ 50
social networking site 48
socialise /ˈsəʊʃəlaɪz/ 19
solar panel /ˌsəʊlə ˈpænəl/ 58
solidarity /ˌsɒlɪˈdærəti/ 42
solidify /səˈlɪdɪfaɪ/ 64
sombre /ˈsɒmbə/ 37
something along those lines 83
something will have to be done about something 73
somewhat /ˈsʌmwɒt/ 79
somewhere in the region of 83
sophisticated /səˈfɪstɪkeɪtɪd/ 21
sophomore /ˈsɒfəmɔː/ 98
soulmate /ˈsəʊlmeɪt/ 11
sound your horn 25
soundbite /ˈsaʊndbaɪt/ 50
soundless /ˈsaʊndləs/ 63
soundlessly /ˈsaʊndləsli/ 63
soundproof /ˈsaʊndpruːf/ 87
source /sɔːs/ 89
space /speɪs/ 59
space tourism 57
spacious /ˈspeɪʃəs/ 59
spam /spæm/ 48
spark /spɑːk/ 67
speak up 4
Speaker /ˈspiːkə/ 41
special needs education 2
specs /speks/ 97
spectacle /ˈspektəkl/ 37
spectacles /ˈspektəklz/ 97
spectacular /spekˈtækjələ/ 37
speechless /ˈspiːtʃləs/ 38
speed camera /ˈspiːd ˌkæmrə/ 35
speed limit /ˈspiːd ˌlɪmɪt/ 35
speed up 66
spend /spend/ 93
spice up 23
spill /spɪl/ 61
spine /spaɪn/ 51
split /splɪt/ 78
split the bill 24
split up 12
spokesperson /ˈspəʊksˌpɜːsən/ 99
sporty /ˈspɔːti/ 54
spot check /ˌspɒt ˈtʃek/ 35
spread out 59
sprout up 31
squabble /ˈskwɒbəl/ 84
square brackets /ˈskweə ˌbrækɪts/ 81
squash /skwɒʃ/ 59
squat /skwɒt/ 18
squeak /skwiːk/ 63
squeeze /skwiːz/ 59
squirm /skwɜːm/ 62
stacks /stæks/ 83
staff (v.) /stɑːf/ 99
stag party /ˈstæg ˌpɑːti/ 19
stagger /ˈstægə/ 61
staggeringly /ˈstægərɪŋli/ 61
stake /steɪk/ 76
stalking /ˈstɔːkɪŋ/ 43
stammer /ˈstæmə/ 84
stamp /stæmp/ 61
stand (somebody) up 19
stand on ceremony 62
stand out 3
stand out in the crowd 49
standing ovation /ˌstændɪŋ əʊˈveɪʃən/ 20, 75
star /stɑː/ 100
start date 4
start-up /ˈstɑːtʌp/ 5, 7
state ownership 55
state-of-the-art /ˌsteɪtəvðiˈɑːt/ 49
staunch ally 12
stay on 95
stem /stem/ 31
stem from 67
step /step/ 61
stew /stjuː/ 23
stew in your own juice 23
stick something on (a credit card) 46
sticky /ˈstɪki/ 29, 69
stiff neck 52
stifling /ˈstaɪflɪŋ/ 29
stimulating /ˈstɪmjəleɪtɪŋ/ 5
sting /stɪŋ/ 52
stingy /ˈstɪndʒi/ 8
stock /stɒk/ 7
stock market /ˈstɒk ˌmɑːkɪt/ 46
stocks and shares 46
stocky /ˈstɒki/ 9
stool /stuːl/ 53
stop and search 35
stopover /ˈstɒpˌəʊvə/ 26
store card /ˈstɔː ˌkɑːd/ 46
storm of abuse 29
story /ˈstɔːri/ 50
stout /staʊt/ 9
stove /stəʊv/ 98
straitlaced /ˌstreɪtˈleɪst/ 62
strapped for cash 46
strategy /ˈstrætədʒi/ 93
stray /streɪ/ 32
stream /striːm/ 61, 93
street /striːt/ 98
stress-free 87
stress-related 87
stride /straɪd/ 61
stroke /strəʊk/ 53, 54
strong colours 65

strut /strʌt/ 61
stubborn /'stʌbən/ 8
stuck behind a desk 5
stuck in a rut 5
student loan 2
student-led 87
stuff (v.) /stʌf/ 59
stumble /'stʌmbəl/ 61
stumbling block /'stʌmblɪŋ ˌblɒk/ 69
stunning /stʌnɪŋ/ 27
stutter /'stʌtə/ 84
sub-heading /'sʌbˌhedɪŋ/ 81
subject matter /'sʌbdʒɪkt ˌmætə/ 21
subjective /səb'dʒektɪv/ 36
submit /səb'mɪt/ 1
subscribe /səb'skraɪb/ 48
subsequently /'sʌbsɪkwəntli/ 97
subsidised /'sʌbsɪdaɪzd/ 3
subsidy /'sʌbsɪdi/ 55
substandard /sʌb'stændəd/ 34
substantive /'sʌbstəntɪv/ 41
subsume /səb'sjuːm/ 80
subtitle /'sʌbˌtaɪtl/ 81
successor /sək'sesə/ 39
succinct /sək'sɪŋkt/ 38
suck up to 75
sue /suː/ 43
suffer from 52
suicide bomber /'suːɪsaɪd ˌbɒmə/ 44
suit (n. and v.) /suːt/ 17
suit of armour /ˌsuːt ɒv 'ɑːmə/ 39
suitability (for) /ˌsuːtə'bɪləti/ 3
sullen /'sʌlən/ 8, 24
sultry /'sʌltri/ 29
summarise /'sʌməraɪz/ 80
sumptuous /'sʌmptʃuəs/ 49
sunny /'sʌni/ 29
sunny disposition 29
superficial /ˌsuːpə'fɪʃəl/ 8
super-rich 40
superscript /'suːpəskrɪpt/ 81
superstitious /ˌsuːpə'stɪʃəs/ 37
supervisor /'suːpəvaɪzə/ 4, 99
supplement /'sʌplɪment/ 47
supportive /sə'pɔːtɪv/ 7, 12
surf the web 48
surgery /'sɜːdʒəri/ 51
Surrealism /sə'rɪəlɪzəm/ 21
Surrealist /sə'rɪəlɪst/ 21
surveillance /sɜː'veɪləns/ 35
suspicion /sə'spɪʃən/ 35
sustainable development 33, 45
swallow up 7
swarthy /'swɔːði/ 9
swear /sweə/ 76
swear an oath 76
swear by 76
swear word /'sweə ˌwɜːd/ 76
sweatshop /'swetʃɒp/ 55
sweeten /'swiːtən/ 87
sweltering /'sweltərɪŋ/ 29
swiftly /swɪftli/ 92
switch production 55
sworn enemy 12
syllabus /'sɪləbəs/ 2
sympathetic /ˌsɪmpə'θetɪk/ 89
symptom /'sɪmptəm/ 53
symptomatic /ˌsɪmptə'mætɪk/ 53
syntax /'sɪntæks/ 38
tabby /'tæbi/ 89
tablet /'tæblət/ 56
tabloid (newspaper) /'tæblɔɪd/ 100
taciturn /'tæsɪtɜːn/ 10
tactic /'tæktɪk/ 93
tactless /'tæktləs/ 8
tailback /'teɪlbæk/ 25
take a left 98
take a step 61
take great exception to 73
take in your stride 61
take on 4
take pot luck 24
take root 31, 45
take something as a compliment 75
take something with a pinch of salt 36
take the initiative 5
take the law into your own hands 43
take you back to 77
take your life in your hands 18
takeaway /'teɪkəweɪ/ 24
takeover /'teɪkˌəʊvə/ 7
talk behind someone's back 12
talk shop 5
talk someone through 4
talkative /'tɔːkətɪv/ 8
tally /'tæli/ 78
tame /teɪm/ 32
tantalisingly /'tæntəlaɪzɪŋli/ 49
tantamount /'tæntəmaʊnt/ 68
tap /tæp/ 98
tap useful sources 50
tap your fingers 9
task /tɑːsk/ 92
tax-free /ˌtæks'friː/ 87
team player 3
teamwork /'tiːmwɜːk/ 6
tear (v.) /teə/ 66
techie /'teki/ 56
technical /'teknɪkl/ 56
technically /'teknɪkli/ 56
technician /tek'nɪʃən/ 5
techno- /'teknəʊ/ 88
technological /ˌteknə'lɒdʒɪkl/ 56
technologically /ˌteknə'lɒdʒɪkli/ 56
tedious /'tiːdiəs/ 20
teetotal /ˌtiː'təʊtl/ 24
tele- /'telɪ/ 88
telemarketing /'telɪˌmɑːkɪtɪŋ/ 7
telesales /'telɪseɪlz/ 7
telly /'teli/ 97
tend /tend/ 28
tenet /'tenɪt/ 36
terror /'terə/ 100
terse /tɜːs/ 8
tertiary /'tɜːʃəri/ 2
test tube baby /ˌtest tʃuːb 'beɪbi/ 15
that kind of thing 83
That's all we need! 94
That's all we needed! 94
That's the last thing I wanted to hear! 94
theme /θiːm/ 90
therapeutic /ˌθerə'pjuːtɪk/ 16
thereby /ˌðeə'baɪ/ 79
thesis /'θiːsɪs/ 1
thicken /'θɪkən/ 64
thin (v.) /θɪn/ 64
thin out 64
thing /θɪŋ/ 82
things are a bit tight 46
the thing is 82
things like that 83
thingumibob /'θɪŋəməbɒb/ 82
thingumijig /'θɪŋəmidʒɪg/ 82
thingummy /'θɪŋəmi/ 82
thingy /'θɪŋi/ 82, 97
think back 77
thinking back 77
third year (student) 98
thirst /θɜːst/ 13
This is just not on! 73
This is like a bad dream! 94
thought-provoking /'θɔːtprəˌvəʊkɪŋ/ 21
threefold /'θriːfəʊld/ 71
the three Rs /ˌθriː 'ɑːz/ 2
thrifty /'θrɪfti/ 8
thrilled to bits 13
thrive (on) /θraɪv/ 31
throb /θrɒb/ 52
throbbing ache 52

through the back door 30
through train 26
throw somebody completely 94
throw yourself into 95
thug /θʌg/ 100
thunder /'θʌndə/ 29
thunderous /'θʌndərəs/ 29
thunderous applause 29
thundery /'θʌndəri/ 29
(in a) tick /tɪk/ 60
tidal power 58
tight /taɪt/ 40
tight schedule 5
tighten your belt 40
till the cows come home 60
time-conscious 87
time-consuming /'taɪmkənˌsjuːmɪŋ/ 16
tinge /tɪndʒ/ 65
tiptoe /'tɪptəʊ/ 61
title /'taɪtl/ 81
titter /'tɪtə/ 62
to be fed up to the back teeth 94
tolerant /'tɒlərənt/ 8
toll /təʊl/ 25
tongue-in-cheek /ˌtʌŋɪn'tʃiːk/ 21
tongue-tied /'tʌŋtaɪd/ 84
tonic /'tɒnɪk/ 89
tons of 82
toot /tuːt/ 63
topic /'tɒpɪk/ 90
torture /'tɔːtʃə/ 69
tot things up 71
total flop 20
totter /'tɒtə/ 66
touch upon 80
touchscreen /'tʌtʃskriːn/ 56
touch-type /'tʌtʃtaɪp/ 81
tough /tʌf/ 69
tourist sector 27
tow-away zone 25
tower /'taʊə/ 30
tower above 30
tower block /'taʊə ˌblɒk/ 18
tower of strength 30
toxic waste 33
trace back to 37
track /træk/ 34
tract /trækt/ 27
trade down 7
trade union representation 55
trade up 7
trade war 45
traffic warden /'træfɪk ˌwɔːdən/ 35
traffic-light labelling 23
trail /treɪl/ 98
trailer /treɪlə/ 49
trainee /ˌtreɪ'niː/ 4
tramp /træmp/ 61
trample /'træmpl/ 61
transfer /'trænsfɜː/ 26
transient /'trænziənt/ 60
transparent /træn'spærənt/ 21
traumatic /trɔː'mætɪk/ 69
treaty /'triːti/ 74
trek /trek/ 27
tremble /'trembəl/ 52
trend-setter /'trendˌsetə/ 17
trespass (n. and v.) /'trespəs/ 43
trespasser /'trespəsə/ 43
trespassing /'trespəs/ 43
trial run 4
trickle /'trɪkl/ 61, 93
tricky /'trɪki/ 69
trigger /'trɪgə/ 79
triumph /'traɪəmf/ 50
truce /truːs/ 44, 74
trudge /trʌdʒ/ 61
true friend 12
truthful /'truːθfəl/ 12
tuition fees 2
tumble /'tʌmbəl/ 66
tundra /'tʌndrə/ 28
turban /'tɜːbən/ 89
turn green 65
turn over a new leaf 76
turn sour 12, 23
turquoise /'tɜːkwɑːz/ 65
TV shopping channel 7
twist your ankle 52
twitch /twɪtʃ/ 9, 62
two-faced /ˌtuː'feɪst/ 12
twofold /'tuːfəʊld/ 71
two-tier system 2
typecast /'taɪpkɑːst/ 20
typeface /'taɪpfeɪs/ 81
typescript /'taɪpskrɪpt/ 81
tyrannical /tɪ'rænɪkl/ 44
tyre tread 25
UFO /ˌjuːef'əʊ/ 85
ultimately /'ʌltɪmətli/ 41
umpteen /ʌmp'tiːn/ 82
unacceptable /ˌʌnək'septəbəl/ 73, 92
unapproachable /ˌʌnə'prəʊtʃəbəl/ 10
unbeatable /ʌn'biːtəbəl/ 27
uncontrolled /ˌʌnkən'trəʊld/ 33
unconvincing /ˌʌnkən'vɪnsɪŋ/ 20
uncooperative /ˌʌnkəʊ'ɒpərətɪv/ 34
undemanding /ˌʌndɪ'mɑːndɪŋ/ 21
undeniably /ˌʌndɪ'naɪəbli/ 42
under- /'ʌndə/ 86
under a cloud 29
under guarantee 34
under pressure 4
under the weather 52
under warranty 34
undercover police 35
underestimate /ˌʌndər'estɪmeɪt/ 86
underfoot /ˌʌndə'fʊt/ 86
undergraduate /ˌʌndə'grædʒuət/ 2
underhand /ˌʌndə'hænd/ 86
underlying /ˌʌndə'laɪɪŋ/ 86
undermine /ˌʌndə'maɪn/ 86
underscore /ˌʌndə'skɔː/ 80
undersigned /'ʌndəsaɪnd/ 101
understaffed /ˌʌndə'stɑːft/ 86
understated /ˌʌndə'steɪtɪd/ 20
undertake /ˌʌndə'teɪk/ 42
unforgettable /ˌʌnfə'getəbəl/ 20
unfurnished /ʌn'fɜːnɪʃt/ 18
uniform /'juːnɪfɔːm/ 17
uninspiring /ˌʌnɪn'spaɪərɪŋ/ 21
unity /'juːnəti/ 42
university /ˌjuːnɪ'vɜːsəti/ 98
university-led 87
unkempt /ʌn'kempt/ 9
unlimited mileage 26
unprecedented /ʌn'presɪdəntɪd/ 61
unprincipled /ʌn'prɪnsəpld/ 8
unprocessed /ˌʌn'prəʊsest/ 23
unquestionably /ʌn'kwestʃənəbli/ 70
unrest /ʌn'rest/ 44
unrivalled /ʌn'raɪvəld/ 27
unsavoury /ʌn'seɪvəri/ 23
unscrupulous /ʌn'skruːpjələs/ 8
unstimulating /ˌʌn'stɪmjʊleɪtɪŋ/ 21
unstinting /ʌn'stɪntɪŋ/ 8
unsupportive /ˌʌnsə'pɔːtɪv/ 12
unsurpassed /ˌʌnsə'pɑːst/ 49
unswerving loyalty 12
untruthful /ʌn'truːθfəl/ 12
unwieldy /ʌn'wiːldi/ 64
unwind /ʌn'waɪnd/ 27
up- /ʌp/ 86
up against it 69
up to your neck 69
up-and-coming /ˌʌpəŋ'kʌmɪŋ/ 20
upend /ʌp'end/ 90
upgrade /ʌp'greɪd/ 86
uphold /ʌp'həʊld/ 42, 43, 90

upload /ʌp'ləʊd/ 48
upper case /ˌʌpə 'keɪs/ 81
upper deck 26
upset /ʌp'set/ 90
up-to-the-minute /ˌʌptəðə'mɪnɪt/ 17
upturn /ʌp'tɜːn/ 86
urge on 95
usage /'juːsɪdʒ/ 38
USB /ˌjuːes'biː/ 85
useless /'juːsləs/ 92
usual aches and pains 52
uterus /'juːtərəs/ 15
utilise /'juːtɪlaɪz/ 79, 97
utter /'ʌtə/ 13
utter bliss 13
utterly /'ʌtəli/ 92
vaccination certificate 35
vague memory 77
value for money 26
valueless /'væljuːləs/ 17
variable /'veəriəbəl/ 71
VAT /væt/ /ˌviːeɪ'tiː/ 85
vegan /'viːgən/ 23
vegetation /ˌvedʒɪ'teɪʃən/ 28
verbose /vɜː'bəʊs/ 8
verdict /'vɜːdɪkt/ 43
version /'vɜːʃən/ 20
veto /'viːtəʊ/ 72
viewpoint /'vjuːpɔɪnt/ 36
Viking /'vaɪkɪŋ/ 89
violation /ˌvaɪə'leɪʃən/ 40
VIP /ˌviːaɪ'piː/ 85
virgin /'vɜːdʒɪn/ 27
visit a website 92
visually literate 21
vivid /'vɪvɪd/ 65
voluntary redundancy 6
volunteer /ˌvɒlən'tɪə/ 5
vomiting /'vɒmɪtɪŋ/ 53
vow /vaʊ/ 76
wage war on 44
wager /'weɪdʒə/ 76
wail /weɪl/ 63
wake /weɪk/ 15
walk on air 13
warlord /'wɔːlɔːd/ 39
warm-blooded /ˌwɔːm'blʌdɪd/ 32
war-torn /'wɔːtɔːn/ 45
washable /wɒʃəbəl/ 87
waste /weɪst/ 93
waste disposal /ˌweɪst dɪ'spəʊzəl/ 33
water down 64
water security 33
waterfront /'wɔːtəfrʌnt/ 27
waterproof /'wɔːtəpruːf/ 87
wave power 58
wayward /'weɪwəd/ 69
wealth of 27
weaponry /'wepənri/ 44
webinar /'webɪnɑː/ 48, 88
wedding party 19
weed out 31
weigh /weɪ/ 64
weigh in 64
weigh on 64
weigh out 64
weigh up 64
weighed down 64
weighty /'weɪti/ 64
well-endowed /ˌwelɪn'daʊd/ 2
well-matched 11
well-off /ˌwel'ɒf/ 2
well-qualified 1
well-balanced /ˌwel'bælənst/ 10
What a drag! 69
What a pain! 69, 94
what became of …? 77
what stands/sticks out in my mind 77
What's bugging him? 69
What's eating him? 69
What's got into him? 69
What's up with him? 69
whatchamacallit /'wɒtʃəməˌkɔːlɪt/ 82
whatnot /'wɒtnɒt/ 82
whatsername /'wɒtsəneɪm/ 82, 97
whatsisname /'wɒtsɪzneɪm/ 82, 97
whatsit /'wɒtsɪt/ 82
when! /wen/ 24
whereby /weə'baɪ/ 79
whine /waɪn/ 84
whinge /wɪndʒ/ 73, 84
whingeing /wɪndʒɪŋ/ 73
whirlwind /'wɜːlwɪnd/ 29
whirlwind romance 29
white /waɪt/ 65
white as a sheet 65
white as snow 65
white-collar worker 65
white-knuckle /ˌwaɪt'nʌkl/ 65
whiter than white 65
whizz /wɪz/ 66
wholefood /'həʊlfuːd/ 23
wholesome /'həʊlsəm/ 23
wide open spaces 59
widely /waɪdli/ 75
wide-ranging /ˌwaɪd'reɪndʒɪŋ/ 41
widespread /'waɪdspred/ 79
wi-fi /'waɪfaɪ/ 56, 85
wild /waɪld/ 32
will /wɪl/ 15, 46
wilt /wɪlt/ 31
wind farm /'wɪnd ˌfɑːm/ 58
wind up 84
window /'wɪndəʊ/ 30
window of opportunity 30
winds of change 29
winds of democracy 29
winds of discontent 29
wind-up /'waɪndʌp/ 84
windy /'wɪndi/ 29
wine and dine 24
wireless /'waɪələs/ 97
wiry /'waɪəri/ 9
wish /wɪʃ/ 70
wish to complain about 73
with regard to 101
with the compliments of 101
withdraw /wɪð'drɔː/ 46
wither /'wɪðə/ 31
withering /'wɪðərɪŋ/ 31
withering glance 31
withering look 31
withering remark 31
without a murmur 84
without value 17
witty /'wɪti/ 8
woman after your own heart 11
womb /wuːm/ 15
woollen /'wʊlən/ 87
word stock 89
work like a dream 94
workaholic /ˌwɜːkə'hɒlɪk/ 16
worker-led 87
working relationship 5
work–life balance 6
workload /'wɜːkləʊd/ 5
workmate /'wɜːkmeɪt/ 5
work-obsessed 8
workplace /'wɜːkpleɪs/ 6
worried /'wʌrid/ 70
worsen /'wɜːsən/ 87
worst-case scenario /'wɜːstˌkeɪs sɪ'nɑːriəʊ/ 33
worthless /'wɜːθləs/ 21
-worthy /'wɜːði/ 87
write down 81
write up 1, 81
wrong /rɒŋ/ 92
wrongly /rɒŋli/ 50

wry /raɪ/ 22
-y /waɪ/ 65
yearn /jɜːn/ 13, 70
yell /jel/ 84
yob /jɒb/ 100
You bet! 76
You must be joking! 70
You’ve lost me there 94
your best bet 76
your other half 97
Yours faithfully 3
zero hours contract 55
zip (v.) /zɪp/ 66

Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting & in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable.

Texts

Cambridge University Press for the text on p. 204 from *The Cambridge Encyclopaedia of the English Language 2nd Edition* by David Crystal, 2003. Copyright Cambridge University Press 1995, 2003. Reproduced with permission; Text on p. 86 from 'Indicators of Poverty & Hunger' by Dr David Gordon. Copyright © 1998 United Nations; Text on p. 88 Contains Parliamentary information licensed under the Open Parliament Licence v3.0.; Text on p. 207 adapted from 'Five headlines' by Paul Dowswell, *Greek Gazette*. Copyright © 1997 Usborne Publishing. Reproduced with permission; Text on p. 208 Contains public sector information licensed under the Open Government Licence v3.0.

Key: B = Below, BL = Below Left, BR = Below Right, BC = Below Centre, C = Centre, CL = Centre Left, CR = Centre Right, L = Left, R = Right, T = Top, TR = Top Right, TL = Top Left.

Photographs

All the photographs are sourced from GettyImages.

p. 8 & p. 33 (Rowan): Hill Street Studios/Blend Images; p. 9 & p. 123 (Ex 58.1.4): andresr/E+; p. 14: Robert Daly/Caiaimage; p. 16 (office worker): Thomas Barwick/Stone; p. 16 (factory worker) & p. 53 (Beth): Jetta Productions/Blend Images; p. 16 (airline pilot) & p. 154: Image Source; p. 16 (professional female): Morsa Images/DigitalVision; p. 16 (Ex 5.a): Nick Dolding/Iconica; p. 17: Sam Edwards/OJO Images; p. 23 (Tatyana) & p. 30: Tim Robberts/Taxi; p. 23 (Alice): Kelvin Murray/Taxi; p. 23 (Harry): Jetta Productions/Stone; p. 23 (Tom) & p. 195 (Ricardo): Juanmonino/E+; p. 23 (Sophie): Janet Rhodes/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 23 (Andrey): pixelfusion3d/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 25 (Ex 9.3.1): Mike Kemp/Blend Images; p. 25 (Ex 9.3.2): GlobalStock/E+; p. 25 (Ex 9.3.3): Lonnia/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 25 (Ex 9.3.4): Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/Blend ImagesGetty Images Plus; p. 25 (Ex 9.3.5): DRB Images LLC/E+; p. 25 (Ex 9.3.6): FangXiaNuo/E+; p. 32: omgimages/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 33 (William): RichVintage/E+; p. 33 (Katie): DreamPictures/Blend Imagesp. 33 (Asley): creacart/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 37: Ricardo Liberato/Moment; p. 38: Tetra Images/Brand X Pictures; p. 44: Caiaimage/Martin Barraud/OJO+; p. 45: Digital Vision/Photodisc; p. 46: Rich Legg/E+; p. 47: Lokibaho/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 48: g_muradin/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 53 (Carlos): Jamie Garbutt/DigitalVision; p. 53 (Thomas): Sam Diephuis/Blend Images; p. 53 (Rowan): Tim Robberts/The Image Bank; p. 53 (Hannah): Glow Images, Inc/Glow; p. 53 (Atsuko): Yagi Studio/DigitalVision; p. 54: PeopleImages/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 55 & p. 108: monkeybusinessimages/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 58 (plane): Chad Slattery/The Image Bank; p. 58 (ferry): KingWu/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 58 (train): Meinzahn/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 58 (car): DarthArt/Stock Editorial/Getty Images Plus; p. 59 (T): Chad Ehlers/Photographer's Choice; p. 59 (B): Peter Cade/The Image Bank; p. 60 (CL): Claude LeTien/Moment; p. 60 (C): Ryan Heffernan/Aurora; p. 60 (BL): franckreporter/E+; p. 60 (BC): David De Lossy/DigitalVision; p. 60 (BR): Jongcheol Park/EyeEm/EyeEm; p. 60 (CR): Gina Pricope/Moment Open; p. 60 (monkey): Ariadne Van Zandbergen/Lonely Planet Images; p. 61: Chad Riley/UpperCut Images; p. 62 (Ex 28.a): Irene Becker Photography/Moment Open; p. 62 (Ex 28.b): Dana Gerlitz/FOAP/foap; p. 62 (Ex 28.c): Photographer/Moment; p. 62 (Ex 28.d): Michele Tantussi/Stringer/Getty Images News; p. 62 (Ex 28.e): Creative WO LatinContent/gilaimages/LatinContent; p. 64 (T): Jack TaylorStringer/Getty Images News; p. 64 (B): Michael Blann/Stone; p. 66: DNY59/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 68: oluolu3/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 70: Jürgen & Christine Sohns/imageBROKER; p. 73 (B): Stephen Studdrobertharding/robertharding; p. 73 (T): acilo/E+; p. 74: laflor/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 76: Thawatchai Tumwapee/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 80: NELSON ALMEIDA/AFP; p. 81: Liam Norris/Taxi; p. 84: DEA PICTURE LIBRARY/De Agostini; p. 88: CALLE MONTES/Photononstop; p. 90: Stockbyte; p. 92: Peter Dazeley/Photographer's Choice RF; p. 99: Tommaso Tagliaferri/E+; p. 100: Eamonn McCabe/Hulton Archive; p. 103: Yuri_Arcurs/E+; p. 106: Paul Bradbury/OJO Images; p. 107: Hero Images; p. 109 (Ex 51.1.1): Science Photo

Library/Science Photo Library; p. 109 (Ex 51.1.2): Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/Blend Images; p. 109 (Ex 51.1.3): Julian Calder/The Image Bank; p. 109 (Ex 51.1.4): ERproductions Ltd/Blend Images; p. 109 (Ex 51.1.5): Ariel Skelley/Blend Images; p. 109 (Ex 51.1.6): AlexRaths/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 113: Plattform; p. 115: Westend61; p. 121: Thanatham PiriyakarnjanakulEyeEm/EyeEm; p. 122: Danita Delimont/Gallo Images; p. 123 (Ex 58.1.1): Keith Wood/The Image Bank; p. 123 (Ex 58.1.2): Iain Sarjeant/Photolibrary; p. 123 (Ex 58.1.3): Deborah Pendell/Moment; p. 123 (Ex 58.1.5): Maria Wachala/Moment; p. 125: YinYang/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 143: Yu Gao/Moment; p. 148: Klaus Tiedge/Blend Images/Getty Images Plus; p. 160: Plume Creative/DigitalVision; p. 165: D3Damon/E+; p. 183: franny-anne/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 184: BraunS/E+; p. 193: Andrea Pistolesi/The Image Bank; p. 194: moodboard/Cultura; p. 195 (Alex): izusek/E+; p. 195 (Sabina): Richard Drury/Stone; p. 195 (Monica): Jon Feingersh Photography; p. 195 (Michelle): drbimages/E+; p. 198: stockbart/Vetta; p. 203 (dumpster): Sam Burt Photography/E+; p. 203 (cooker): tatniz/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 203 (tap): hirun/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 203 (cable): MaksymGolovinov/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 203 (pan): Howard Shooter/Dorling Kindersley.

Illustrations

419 Ludmila (KJA artists), Katie Mac (NB Illustration), 302 Martina (KJA artists), Eric Smith (Beehive Illustration), Kathy Baxendale, Nigel Dobbyn and Celia Hart.

Designed and typeset by QBS.

Enhanced ebook

You can buy this book with or without an ebook. The ebook has the same vocabulary explanations as the book.

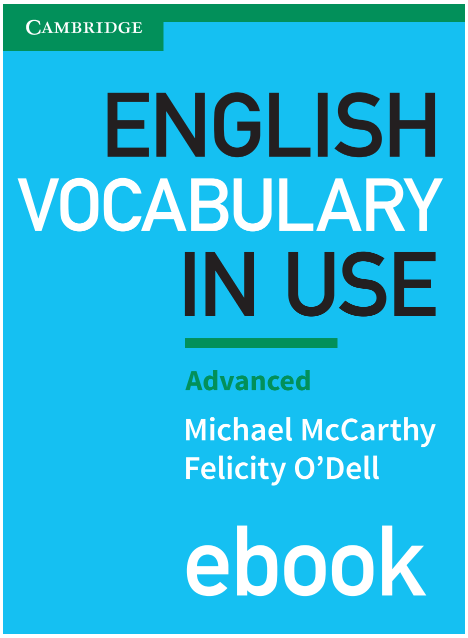
CAMBRIDGE
ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN USE
Advanced
Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell
ebook

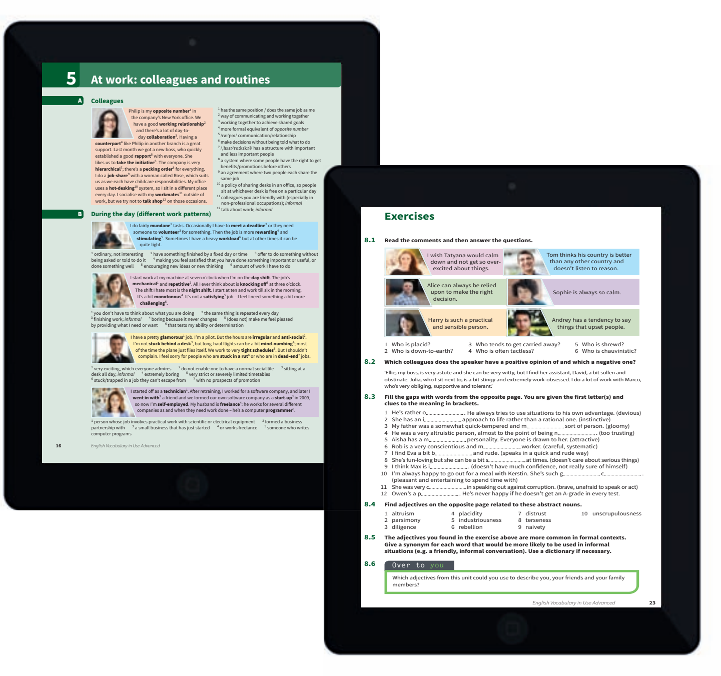
5 At work: colleagues and routines
Exercises

Using the ebook

You can use your ebook on an iPad, Android tablet, PC or Mac.

You can listen to the text on the left-hand page, to help you with your listening and pronunciation.

Using the ebook, you can:

Listen to examples

Highlight text

Make notes

Bookmark pages

How to get your ebook

Follow the instructions in the inside front cover of this book.

English Vocabulary in Use

upper-intermediate & advanced

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

100 units of vocabulary reference and practice

self-study and classroom use

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

English Vocabulary in Use

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

PUBLISHED BY THE PRESS SYNDICATE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE
The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge, United Kingdom

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, UK www.cup.cam.ac.uk
40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011–4211, USA www.cup.org
10 Stamford Road, Oakleigh, Melbourne 3166, Australia
Ruiz de Alarcón 13, 28014 Madrid, Spain

© Cambridge University Press 1994

This book is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without
the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1994
Ninth printing 1999

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN 0 521 423961

Contents

Acknowledgements vi
Using this book 1

Introduction

1 Learning vocabulary – general advice
2 Learning vocabulary – aids to learning
3 Organising a vocabulary notebook
4 The names of English language words
5 Using your dictionary
6 Revising vocabulary
7 Formal and informal words

Word formation

8 Suffixes (e.g. actor, permission, modernise)
9 Prefixes (e.g. over-worked, exhale)
10 Roots (e.g. impress, pressure, expression)
11 Abstract nouns (e.g. faith, hope and love)
12 Compound adjectives (e.g. well-dressed, time-consuming)
13 Compound nouns – combinations of two nouns (e.g. baby-sitter, youth hostel)
14 Compound nouns – combinations of verb + preposition (e.g. drawback, input)
15 Words with interesting origins – people and places (e.g. hooligan, denim)
16 Words with interesting origins – from other languages (e.g. bistro, rucksack)
17 Onomatopoeic words – words that sound like their meaning (e.g. grumble, smash)
18 Words commonly mispronounced (e.g. worry, cough)
19 Homonyms – words pronounced and/or spelt the same (e.g. row, row; bow, bough)

Connecting and linking

20 Time (e.g. as soon as, while, afterwards)
21 Condition (e.g. unless, provided that)
22 Cause, reason, purpose and result (e.g. owing to, with the aim of, as a result)
23 Concession and contrast (e.g. although, on the other hand)
24 Addition (e.g. in addition, furthermore, besides)
25 Text-referring words (e.g. issue, problem)

Countables and uncountables

26 Uncountable words (e.g. information, advice)
27 Words that only occur in the plural (e.g. scissors)
28 Countable and uncountable with different meanings (e.g. paper and a paper)
29 Collective nouns (e.g. a flock of sheep)
30 Making uncountable words countable (e.g. a loaf of bread)

Topics

31 Countries, nationalities and languages
32 The weather
33 Describing people – appearance
34 Describing people – character
35 Relationships
36 At home
37 Everyday problems
38 Global problems
39 Education
40 Work
41 Sport
42 The arts
43 Food
44 The environment
45 Towns
46 The natural world
47 Clothes
48 Health and medicine
49 Travel
50 Holidays
51 Numbers and shapes
52 Science and technology
53 The press and media
54 Politics and public institutions
55 Crime
56 Money – buying, selling and paying

Notional concepts

57 Number, quantity, degree and intensity
58 Time
59 Distances and dimensions
60 Obligation, need, possibility and probability
61 Sound and light
62 Possession, giving and lending
63 Movement and speed
64 Texture, brightness, weight and density
65 Success, failure and difficulty
66 Containers and contents (e.g. **box** of matches, **jar** of jam)

Feelings and actions

67 Belief and opinion
68 Pleasant and unpleasant feelings
69 Like, dislike and desire
70 Speaking
71 The six senses
72 What your body does
73 What animals do

Fixed expressions

74 Idioms and fixed expressions – general (different types; advice on their use)
75 Everyday expressions (e.g. as I was saying, that reminds me)
76 Similes – as...as... / like... (e.g as white as a sheet)
77 Binomials (e.g. odds and ends, spick and span)
78 Idioms describing people (e.g. to have a heart of gold)
79 Idioms describing feelings or mood (e.g. to be in a black mood, to shake in your shoes)
80 Idioms connected with problematic situations (e.g. to take the bull by the horns)
81 Idioms connected with praise and criticism (e.g. she's streets ahead of the other girls, the world's worst)
82 Idioms connected with using language (e.g. to talk behind somebody's back, to put in a nutshell)
83 Idioms – miscellaneous
84 Proverbs (e.g. Many hands make light work.)

Phrasal verbs and verb-based expressions

85 Expressions with **do** and **make**
86 Expressions with **bring** and **take**
87 Expressions with **get**
88 Expressions with **set** and **put**
89 Expressions with **come** and **go**
90 Expressions with **look**
91 Miscellaneous expressions (with **break**, **run**, **turn**, **let**, etc.)

Varieties of English

92 Headline English (e.g. boost, axe)
93 US English (e.g. elevator, downtown)
94 Other Englishes
95 Slang (e.g. copper, bread)
96 The language of notices (e.g. refrain, trespassers)
97 Words and gender (e.g. waiter/waitress, chairperson, headteacher)
98 Abbreviations (e.g. UN, OPEC, lab)
99 New words in English
100 Discourse markers (e.g. Right! Mind you!)

Key 202

List of phonetic symbols 270

Index 271

Acknowledgements

We are particularly grateful to Jeanne McCarten and Geraldine Mark at Cambridge University Press who provided us with so much clear-sighted help and creative guidance at all stages during the writing of this book. We should also like to thank Stuart Redman for his thorough and invaluable report on the initial manuscript. We are grateful to students and staff at various institutions who assisted in piloting the materials: Jon Butt and Elaine Smith, International House, London; Nick Kenny, International Language Academy, Cambridge; Brigitte Marrec, Université Paris X, France; Suzanne Pilot, Lycée Blaise Pascal, Longuenesse, France; Tony Robinson, Eurocentre, Cambridge; Ian Scott, Centre for English Language Education, University of Nottingham; Karen Thompson, International House, Toulouse, France; Clare West, English Language Centre, Hove. Lastly, we thank Nóirín Burke at CUP who took over the management of the manuscript in its final stages.

The authors and publishers would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce copyright material in *English Vocabulary in Use*. While every effort has been made, it has not been possible to identify the sources of all the material used and in such cases the publishers would welcome information from the copyright holders.

p.2: extract from *The English Language* by David Crystal (Penguin Books, 1988), copyright © David Crystal, reproduced by permission of Penguin Books Ltd.; p.10: definition of 'malignant' from the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English*, edited by A. S. Hornby (fourth edition 1989), reproduced by permission of Oxford University Press; p.10: definition of 'hairy' and p.11: definition of 'casual' both from *Collins COBUILD English Language Dictionary* (1987), reproduced by permission of HarperCollins Publishers; p.90: extract from *Fodor's Ireland*, Fodor's Travel Publication (1989); p.92: extract from *The Cambridge Encyclopedia* by David Crystal (1991), Cambridge University Press.

Illustrations by Amanda MacPhail, Kathy Baxendale and Ken Brooks.

Using this book

Why was this book written?

It was written to help you to improve your English vocabulary. It will help you to learn not only the meanings of words but also how they are used. You can use this book either with a teacher or for self-study.

How is the book organised?

The book has 100 two-page units. In most units, the left-hand page explains the words and expressions to be studied in that unit. Where appropriate, it gives information about how the words are used as well as their meaning. The right-hand page checks that you have understood the information on the left-hand page by giving you a series of exercises practising what you have just learnt. Occasionally the right-hand page will also teach you some more new words.

There is a key at the back of the book. The key does not always simply give you one right answer. It sometimes also comments on the answers and will help you learn more about the words studied in the unit.

There is an index at the back of the book. This lists all the words and phrases covered in the book and refers you to the units where these words or phrases are discussed. The index also tells you how difficult and unusual words are pronounced. It uses the International Phonetic Alphabet to do this and the symbols you need to know are listed at the beginning of the index.

How should I use this book?

The book is divided into a number of sections. Complete the seven introductory units first. These units not only teach you some useful new vocabulary but they also help you with useful techniques for vocabulary learning in general. After completing those units, you might want to work straight through the book or you might prefer to do the units in any order that suits you.

What else do I need in order to work with this book?

You need some kind of vocabulary notebook or file where you can write down the new words you are learning. (See Unit 3 for advice on how to do this.)

You also need to have access to a couple of good dictionaries. This book selects the words that are most important for you to learn at your level and it gives you the most important information about those words but you will sometimes need to refer to a dictionary as well for extra information about meaning and usage. Firstly, you need an English-English dictionary for foreign learners. Good ones are The *Cambridge International Dictionary of English*, the *Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English*, the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* and the *Collins Cobuild English Language Dictionary*, for example. Secondly, you will also find a good bilingual dictionary useful. Ask a teacher to recommend a good bilingual dictionary for you. (See Unit 5 for advice on using your dictionaries.)

1 Learning vocabulary – general advice

A What do you need to learn?

1 How many words are there in English? At least:
a) 10,000 b) 100,000 c) 250,000 d) 500,000

2 Winston Churchill was famous for his particularly large vocabulary. How many words did he use in his writing?
a) 10,000 b) 60,000 c) 100,000 d) 120,000

3 How many words does the average native English speaker use in his/her everyday speech?
a) 2,500 b) 5,000 c) 7,500 d) 10,000

4 How many words make up 45% of everything written in English?
a) 50 b) 250 c) 1,000 d) 2,500

To sum up, there are many words you don't need at all and there are other words that you simply need to understand when you read or hear them. Finally, there are words which you need to be able to use yourself. Clearly you need to spend most time learning this last group.

In the text below mark the words you'd like to be able to use.

> English vocabulary has a remarkable range, flexibility and adaptability. Thanks to the periods of contact with foreign languages and its readiness to coin new words out of old elements, English seems to have far more words in its core vocabulary than other languages. For example, alongside kingly (from Anglo-Saxon) we find royal (from French) and regal (from Latin). There are many such sets of words which add greatly to our opportunities to express subtle shades of meaning at various levels of style.

You probably marked many words that you would like to be able to use. Unless you are studying linguistics, however, you probably need only to understand, rather than to use, the verb 'coin' as used in the context above.

What does knowing a new word mean?

- It is not enough just to know the meaning of a word. You also need to know:
  a) what words it is usually associated with
  b) whether it has any particular grammatical characteristics
  c) how it is pronounced
- Try to learn new words not in isolation but in phrases.
- Write down adjectives together with nouns they are often associated with and vice versa, e.g. royal family; rich vocabulary.
- Write down verbs with the structure and nouns associated with them, e.g. to add to our knowledge of the subject; to express an opinion.
- Write down nouns in phrases, e.g. in contact with; a train set; shades of opinion.
- Write down words with their prepositions, e.g. at a high level; thanks to your help.
- Note any grammatical characteristics of the words you are studying. For example, note when a verb is irregular and when a noun is uncountable or is only used in the plural.
- Make a note of any special pronunciation problems with the words you're learning.

1 How could you record the following?
a) **chilly** b) **dissuade** c) **king** d) **up to the ears** e) **independent** f) **get married**

2 What would you record beside the following words?
a) scissors b) weather c) teach d) advice e) lose f) trousers

3 What might you note beside the following words?
a) comb b) catastrophe c) photograph/photographer

C Can you learn just by reading or listening to English?

You will certainly help yourself to learn English vocabulary not only by studying with this book but also by reading and listening to English. Give each of the items on the lists below a mark from 0 to 4 describing how important this way of learning vocabulary could be for you personally. *Example*: newspapers 3

newspapers TV (cable / subtitled) cinema magazines video
radio (e.g. BBC World Service) academic or professional literature fiction
simplified readers (with or without cassettes)
music or other cassettes talking to native speakers

D What should you do when you come across new words?

When you are reading something in English, don't look up every new word or expression or you will soon get fed up. Only look up something that is really important for understanding the text. When you have finished reading, look back at what you have read and then perhaps look up some extra words and write down new expressions that interest you.

Similarly when you listen to English don't panic when you hear some words or expressions that you don't know. Keep listening and the overall meaning will often become clear.

When you read or listen to English it is sometimes possible to guess the meaning of a word you don't know before you look up or ask its meaning. Decide first what part of speech the word is and then look for clues in its context or form.

Before you read the text below, check whether you know what the underlined words mean.

A tortoise is a shelled reptile famed for its slowness and longevity. The Giant Tortoise of the Galapagos may attain over 1.5 metres in length and have a lifespan of more than 150 years. Smaller tortoises from Southern Europe and North Africa make popular pets. They need to be tended carefully in cool climates and must have a warm place in which they can hibernate.

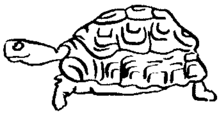

Which of the marked words can you perhaps guess from the context or from the way the word is formed? Guess and then check whether you were correct by using a dictionary. Some words are impossible to guess from context or the structure of the word. In such cases, ask someone or go to a dictionary for help.

E How are you going to plan your vocabulary learning?

1 How many words and expressions do you intend to learn each week?
a) 5 b) 10 c) 15 d) more than 15

2 Where and when are you going to learn them?
a) on your way to school or work b) before dinner c) in bed d) other

3 How often are you going to revise your work?
a) once a week b) once a month c) before a test d) once a year

2 Learning vocabulary – aids to learning

A Help yourself to learn by learning associated words together

Learn words with associated meanings together.

Learning words together that are associated in meaning is a popular and useful way of organising your vocabulary study.

1 Complete this network for the word CAT. Add as many other bubbles as you like.

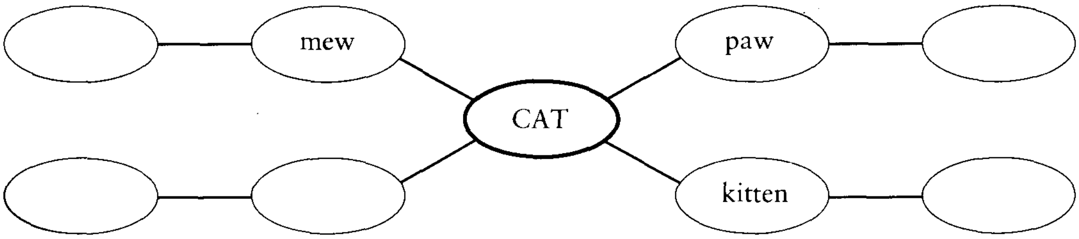

If possible, compare your network with those done by other students. Add any of their ideas that you like to your network.

Learn words with a grammatical association together.

2 Here are some groups of words, each of which has a grammatical connection. Can you see what the connection is? What other words could you add to these groups?

a) **child tooth ox** b) **cut split burst** c) **information furniture food**

Learn together words based on the same root.

3 Can you add any words or expressions to these two groups?

a) **price priceless overpriced**
b) **handy single-handed give me a hand**

B Pictures and diagrams can help you learn

Here are some ways in which pictures might help you to remember vocabulary.

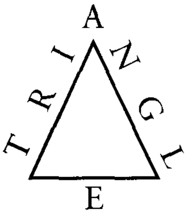

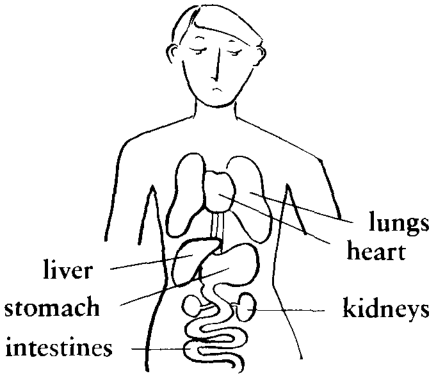

Can you draw any pictures that would help you remember the following vocabulary?

a circle **to look a gift horse in the mouth** **screwdriver**

Word trees can be useful.

1 Look at the word tree for **holiday**. Now complete a tree for **school**.

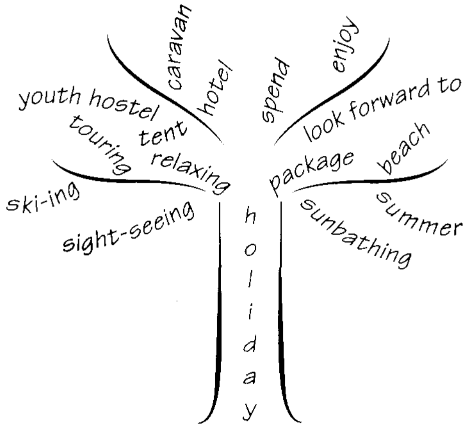
caravan
hotel
youth hostel
touring
tent
relaxing
ski-ing
sight-seeing
spend
enjoy
look forward to
package
beach
summer
sunbathing
holiday

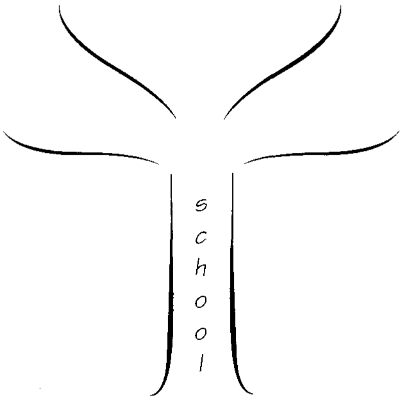

Word forks are good ways of learning adjectives and verbs.

2 Look at the complete word forks below. Finish the others.

original	
brilliant	
unusual	idea
great	
excellent	

shoot	
edit	
direct	a film
star in	
review	

magnificent	
breathtaking	
superb	view

kick	
hit	
bounce	a ball

Matrices can also clarify collocations.

This book will sometimes use matrices to help to clarify word associations. Look at the following example of a matrix:

	a car	a motorbike	a train	a horse	a plane
to fly					+
to drive	+		+		
to ride		+		+	

3 Now complete the following sentences.
a) She has always wanted to have the chance to .... a train.
b) Russian women are not allowed to .... passenger aircraft.
c) .... a motorbike can be very dangerous.

You will do more practice with these and other ways of writing down vocabulary in Unit 3.

3 Organising a vocabulary notebook

There is no one correct way to organise a vocabulary notebook, but it is a good idea to think about possible ways of doing so. Here are some possibilities and examples.

A Organising words by meaning

This book divides vocabulary into a large number of different topics, probably far too many for a notebook, but you could try dividing your book into different broad sections, with sections for **words for feelings, words to describe places, words for movement, words for thinking**, etc. In this way you can build families of words related in meaning.

B Using various types of diagrams

Words that can be grouped under a heading or a more general word can be drawn as a tree-diagram. (See also Unit 2.)

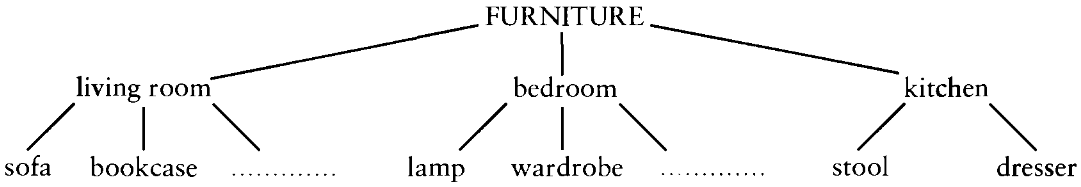
FURNITURE
living room
bedroom
kitchen
sofa
bookcase
....
lamp
wardrobe
....
stool
dresser

The dotted lines mean that you can add more words to the tree as you meet them.

A bubble-network is also useful, since you can make it grow in whatever direction you want it to. (See Unit 2.)

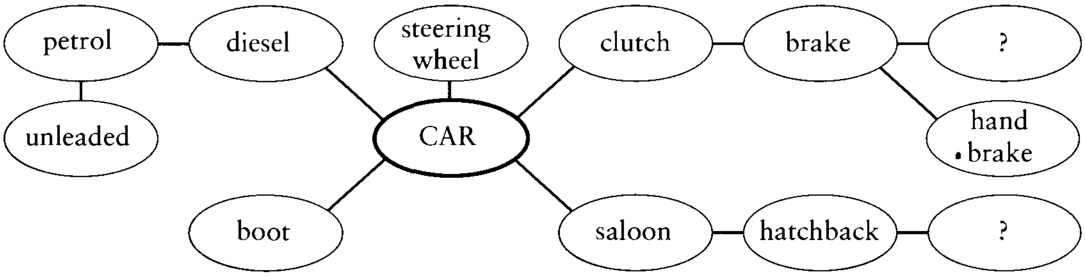
petrol
diesel
steering wheel
clutch
brake
?
unleaded
CAR
hand brake
boot
saloon
hatchback
?

C Organising by word-class

A Spanish learner of English, Angeles, gave us an interview on how she marks word-class in her personal notebook. This is what she said:

> 'What I have just started doing is to write them depending on if they are verbs or nouns or adjectives or phrases. If they are phrases I write them in red and also the definition. If they are verbs, in black, and blue if they are nouns...And if I write the Spanish translation I write it in another colour, so it's easy to see...I draw some pictures too.'

D

When you meet a synonym or an antonym of a word you already have in your book, enter it next to that word with a few notes:

urban ≠ rural   stop = cease (more formal)

Exercises

3.1 Here is a list of words a Spanish learner of English has made in her vocabulary notebook. How could she improve them and organise them better?

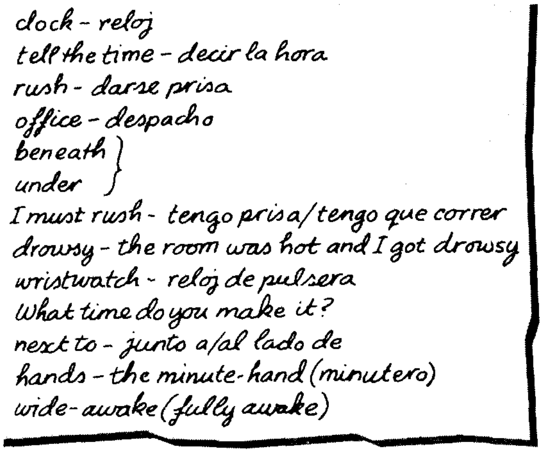

clock - reloj
tell the time - decir la hora
rush - darse prisa
office - despacho
beneath }
under }
I must rush - tengo prisa/tengo que correr
drowsy - the room was hot and I got drowsy
wristwatch - reloj de pulsera
What time do you make it?
next to - junto a/al lado de
hands - the minute-hand (minutero)
wide-awake (fully awake)

3.2 Here is a word-map, a variation on the bubble-network. What word do you think should go in the middle of the diagram?

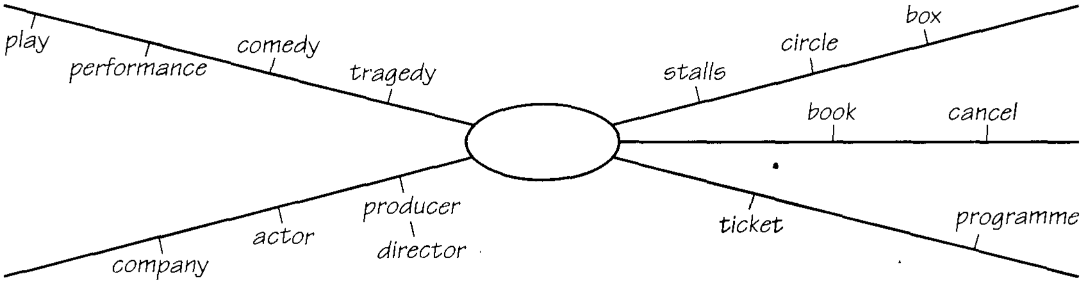

3.3 One learner we interviewed said he tested himself regularly with his notebook, covering up the word and trying to guess it from the translation he had written or from any other notes he had made. This was his system:

1 If the notes and/or translation were clear but he could not get the word, he made a small red mark in the margin. If any word got three red marks, then it needed extra attention and a special effort to learn it.

2 If the notes and/or translation could not help him guess what the word might be, then the word got a blue mark. A blue mark meant 'Write more information about this word!'

What is your testing system? Try to make one if you have not got one, or ask other people what they do. Try your system out and decide whether it needs improving.

3.4 Making tables for word-classes is a good idea, since you can fill in the gaps over time. What do you think this learner will put in the remaining gaps in the table?

noun	*verb*	*adjective*	*person*
production	produce	....	producer
industry	....	industrial	....
export	....	....	....

4 The names of English language words

A The names of basic parts of speech in English

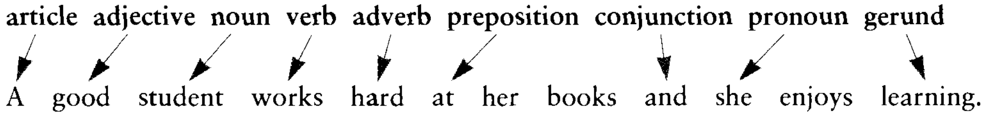

article adjective noun verb adverb preposition conjunction pronoun gerund

A good student works hard at her books and she enjoys learning.

B Words relating to nouns

Look at the sentence *An artist loves beauty*; *artist* is **countable**, i.e. it has a plural form (artists), but *beauty* is **uncountable**; *artist* is the **subject** of the verb as it describes who does the verb; *beauty* is the **object**, i.e. what is affected by the verb.

C Words relating to verbs

infinitive (to go) **-ing form** (going) **past participle** (gone)

Go (go, gone, went) is an **irregular** verb whereas *live* (live, lived, lived) is **regular**. *Go* is also **intransitive** because it does not need an **object**, e.g. *Has Luis gone? Make* is **transitive** because it is followed by an **object** – you make something.

D Words relating to the construction of words

In the word, *irregularity*, *ir-* is a **prefix**, *regular* is a **root** and *-ity* is a **suffix**. *Fat* is the **opposite** or **antonym** of *thin* and *plump* is a **synonym** of *fat*. A **word family** is a set of words based on one **root**, e.g. *word*, *wordy*, *to reword*. A **phrase** does not include a **main verb** – 'in a word' is an example of a **phrase**. A **sentence** has a **main verb**; it begins with a **capital letter** and ends with a **full stop**.

E Words relating to pronunciation

A **syllable** is the minimum sound unit of a language consisting of one vowel and any consonants on either side. There are three **syllables** in the word 'minimum' (the first is *mi*, the second is *ni* and the third is *mum*) and the **stress** is on the first **syllable**. **Onomatopoeia** means forming words that sound like their meaning, e.g. **moo, buzz**.

F Words and their associations

Register means a style of speaking or writing appropriate to a particular social situation. Thus, **slang** is an extremely informal **register** and is only used by people who know each other very well. **Colloquial** is an adjective referring to language that is suitable mainly for conversation, e.g. *He's a nice guy*. **Pejorative** describes words which have a negative association. *Pig-headed* is **pejorative** whereas *determined*, which is very close in meaning, is not. **Collocation** refers to words which frequently occur together, e.g. *torrential rain*, *auburn hair*.

G Words describing punctuation

.	**full stop**	,	**comma**	;	**semi-colon**	'	**apostrophe**
-	**hyphen**	–	**dash**	!	**exclamation mark**	?	**question mark**
( )	**brackets**	" "	**inverted commas**	ANNE	**block capitals**		

Exercises

4.1 **Look at the paragraph about register in F opposite. Find at least three examples of each of the following:**

1 nouns ....
2 verbs ....
3 adjectives ....
4 adverbs ....
5 prepositions ....

4.2 **Considering the words in their context in F opposite, mark the nouns you've written in 4.1 with a *C* (countable) or *UC* (uncountable). Mark the verbs *R* (regular) or *IR* (irregular) and *T* (transitive) or *IT* intransitive.**

4.3 **Complete the following table.**

verb	*infinitive*	*-ing form*	*past participle*
define	....	....	....
mean	....	....	....
write	....	....	....

4.4 **Think about the word *informal*.**

1 What is its root, its prefix and its suffix?
2 What is its opposite or antonym?
3 Has it got any synonyms?
4 What words are included in its word family?
5 Use it in (a) a phrase and (b) a sentence.

4.5 **Look at all the words in bold in sections E, F and G opposite. In each case mark which syllable is stressed.**

4.6 **Match the following colloquial words with their more formal equivalents below.**

1 chat (verb) 2 loo 3 chap 4 put up with 5 fiddle (noun)

man violin lavatory converse tolerate

4.7 **The following pairs of words are close in meaning but one word in each case is pejorative. Which?**

1 terrorist / freedom-fighter
2 slim / skinny
3 fluent / wordy
4 mean / thrifty
5 cunning / shrewd
6 generous / extravagant

4.8 **Give examples of collocations based on the words *noun*, *word* and *colloquial*.**

Example: uncountable noun

4.9 **Cover the left-hand page and write the names of the following punctuation marks.**

( ) ....
; ....
, ...
? ....
– ....
“ ” ....
’ ....
- ....

5 Using your dictionary

A

Good dictionaries can tell you a lot more about a word than just its meaning, including (among other things):

- Synonyms and their differences, e.g. **mislay** and lose
- Antonyms (opposites), e.g. **friend** ≠ enemy/foe
- Collocations (how words go together), e.g. **auburn** combines only with **hair** (or connected words, e.g. **curls**)
- Pronunciation: this will mean learning some symbols which are different from the letters of the English alphabet.

θ	th in thick	ð	th in then	tʃ	ch in **church**
ʃ	sh in she	dʒ	j in jam	ʒ	s in pleasure
ŋ	ng in ring	æ	a in bad	ɒ	o in top
ɔː	o in form	ʊ	u in put	ə	a in about
ʌ	u in up	ɜː	i in bird		

  Most other symbols look just like ordinary letters of the English alphabet and their pronunciation is not so hard to guess. But check the table given in the index.
- Word stress: often shown by a mark before the syllable to be stressed or by underlining, e.g. əd'ventʃə/, /wes tən/. Make sure you know how your dictionary marks stress.
- Usage: how a word is used and any special grammatical pattern that goes with it, e.g. **suggest** + clause (not an infinitive) – I suggest you ring her right away.
- Whether a word is used for people and/or things. For example, look at this entry for **malignant**:

ma·lig·nant /məˈlɪgnənt/ *adj* **1** (of people or their actions) feeling or showing great desire to harm others; malevolent: *a malignant slander, attack, thrust.* **2** (**a**) (of a tumour) growing uncontrollably, and likely to prove fatal: *The growth is not malignant.* (**b**) (of diseases) harmful to life.
▷ **ma·lig·nancy** /-nənsɪ/ *n* **1** [U] state of being malignant. **2** [C] malignant tumour.
ma·lig·nantly *adv*.

- Word-class (usually abbreviations **n:** noun, **adj:** adjective, etc.), whether a noun is countable or uncountable, and whether a verb is normally transitive (needs an object) or intransitive (doesn't need an object).

B

Don't forget that most words have more than one meaning. In this example, only the second meaning corresponds to the way **hairy** is used in this sentence:

It was a really **hairy** journey on the mountain road.

hairy /hɛəri^1/, **hairier, hairiest**. 1 Someone or something that is **hairy** is covered with hair. EG ...a *plump child with hairy legs... ...a big, hairy man... The function of a mammal's hairy coat is to insulate the body.*	ADJ QUALIT
2 If you describe a situation as **hairy**, you mean that it is exciting, worrying, and rather frightening; a very informal use. EG *It got a little hairy when we drove him to the station with less than two minutes to spare.*	ADJ QUALIT = nerve-racking, scary

Exercises

5.1 With a *bilingual* dictionary, try a double search: look up a word in your language; the dictionary may give several possibilities in English. Look up each of those possibilities in the English section of the dictionary to see how they translate back into your language. This may help you to separate synonyms.

If you own a dictionary, make a little mark in the margin each time you look a word up. If a word gets three or more marks, it is worth an extra effort to learn it. What other learning techniques are there for dictionaries?

5.2 Small, bilingual dictionaries often just give three or four translations for a word you look up, without any explanation. Here are some pictures with translations you might find in such a dictionary. Which ones fit in the sentences? You may need to use a monolingual dictionary.

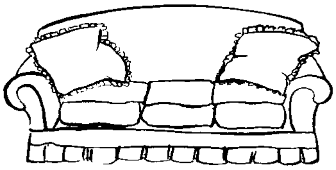

sofa divan
couch settee

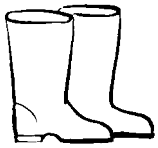

boots bootees
wellingtons

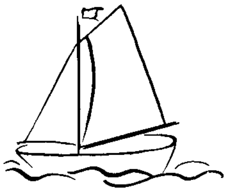

sailing boat ketch
dinghy yacht

1 Come and sit on the .... and relax a while.
2 She bought a huge, luxury .... and went off round the world.
3 If you're going to stand in the water you should take your ....
4 It's not a proper yacht; it's just a tiny little ....

5.3 Which definition of *casual* fits which sentence?

casual /kæʒjʊ°əl/, **casuals**. 1 Something that is **casual** 1.1 happens or is done by chance or without planning. EG *Her casual remark caused a political storm... ...a casual meeting.* ◊ **casually**. EG *...a casually acquired object.*	ADJ CLASSIF ⇑ accidental ◊ ADV WITH VB
1.2 is rather careless and done without much interest. EG *I had a casual glance at the papers... ...a casual friendship.* ◊ **casually**.	ADJ CLASSIF = superficial ◊ ADV WITH VB
2 If you are **casual**, you are, or you pretend to be, calm and not very interested in what is happening or what you are doing. EG *He tried to appear casual as he asked her to dance... ...a casual wave.* ◊ **casually**. EG *I walked casually into his room.* ◊ **casualness**. EG *With studied casualness he mentioned it to Hilary.*	ADJ QUALIT = nonchalant, unconcerned ◊ ADV WITH VB ◊ N UNCOUNT
3 **Casual** clothes are clothes that are suitable for when you are at home or doing things other than working, but are not suitable for work or formal occasions. EG *...a casual shirt.* ▸ used as a plural noun. EG *...smart casuals.* ◊ **casually**. EG *He was dressed casually.*	ADJ CLASSIF: ATTRIB ⇑ informal ▸ N PLURAL ◊ ADV WITH VB
4 **Casual** work is done for only a short time, and not on a permanent or regular basis. EG *They employ casual workers to pick the fruit... ...a casual job.*	ADJ CLASSIF: ATTRIB = temporary

1 It was quite a casual outfit, just right for such an informal occasion. (definition no. ....)
2 I only said it casually, but it shocked her. (.........)
3 I don't get a salary; I'm just a casual. (.........)
4 It was just a casual encounter, but it changed my life. (.........)

5.4 Pronunciation. What English words are these?

1 /edʒʊ'keɪʃən/ ....
2 /'pæspɔːt/ ....
3 /'leŋθ/ ....
4 /'lɪbətɪ/ ....
5 /rə'vɪʒən/ ....
6 /'brʌðə/ ....

5.5 In the dictionary entry for *hairy* opposite how many synonyms can you see for the different meanings?

6 Revising vocabulary

Here is an extract from a psychology book on the importance of revising in an active way.

> Probably the commonest fault among students is failure to realise that learning is essentially an active process. Too many students sit for hours passively reading and re-reading notes and textbooks, without ever attempting actively to recall what they have read. The fallacy of this method has been amply shown by experiments.
>
> The same principles apply to more advanced forms of learning: for effective memory, some form of active expression is essential. The student, therefore, should read through the material he wants to master with close attention and should then reproduce the main points aloud or produce a written summary...An hour's concentrated work of this kind is more effective than three hours' passive reading.
>
> (From *A Modern Introduction to Psychology*, Rex and Margaret Knight)

B Revising with this book

When you revise a unit, first read it through. Then look at anything you wrote in your vocabulary notebook connected with the unit.

Then, and most importantly, try to do something different with the new words and expressions in that unit in order to help fix them in your memory.

Here are some suggestions:

- Highlight (or underline) any words and expressions that you had forgotten or were not sure about.
- Look at the unit and choose ten words and expressions that you particularly want or need to learn. Write them down.
- Look up any words that you selected in an English-English dictionary. Do these words have any other uses or associations that might help you learn them? Looking up the verb, **wish**, for example, might lead you to **wishbone** or **wishful thinking**. Write anything that appeals to you in an appropriate phrase or sentence.
- Perhaps the dictionary can also help you find some other words based on the same root. Looking up the noun, **employment**, will lead you to the verb, **employ**, to the nouns, **employer** and **employee**, and, perhaps, to the adjectives **employable**, **unemployed** and **self-employed**.
- Write down the words and expressions you wish to learn in phonetic script. Use a dictionary to help you.
- Write down the words and phrases from a unit in your notebook in a different way – put them into a network or a table, perhaps.
- The next day, ask yourself again: How much can I remember?
- Test yourself. Cover part of a word or phrase. Can you remember the complete word or phrase?

When you have done all the steps above that you feel will be useful to you, close your book and notebook and remind yourself of what you have been studying. How much can you remember?

C Making the new words active

One of the great advantages of revising vocabulary is that it should help you to make the step from having something in your passive vocabulary to having it in your active vocabulary.

Encourage this process by:

- writing the words and expressions you are trying to learn in a sentence relating to your life and interests at the moment.
- making a point of using the new words and expressions in your next class or homework.
- keeping a learning diary in which you note down things that particularly interest you about the words you have learnt.
- watching out for the words and expressions you are trying to learn in your general reading of English. If you come across any of them in use, write them down in their context in your diary or notebook.
- writing a paragraph or story linking the words and expressions you want to learn.

D What can you remember?

1 What do you remember now from the first six units in this book? Answer without looking back at the units.

2 Now read through the units again.

3 How much do you remember about the units now?

4 Choose at least one word and expression from each unit and work through all the suggestions made in B and C above. It may not always be appropriate in your future study to do all the steps in B but try them now for practice.

E Some plans for your work with this book

1 How often are you going to revise what you have done? (Every week? Every five units?)

2 Which techniques are you going to use for revising?

3 Now write yourself some notes to remind yourself of when you are going to revise. You might like, for instance, to write *revise vocabulary* in your diary for the next eight Fridays, if you decided to revise every week. Alternatively you could write **REVISE** in capital letters after, say, every five units in the book.

7 Formal and informal words

Formality is all about your relationship with the person you're speaking or writing to. If you use formal language, it may be because you wish to show respect, politeness, or to put yourself at a distance (for example, 'official' language). Informal language can show friendliness, equality or a feeling of closeness and solidarity with someone. You should *never* use informal language just to sound fluent or clever.

A Scales of formality

Some groups of words can be put on a scale from (very) formal to (very) informal.

very formal	*neutral*	*very informal*
offspring	children	kids
abode/residence	house/flat	place
alcoholic beverages	drink	booze

B Short, monosyllabic informal words

Informal versions of words are often short and monosyllabic, as we can see in the right-hand column in the table in A. They include slang words. (Unit 95 has more examples.)

It cost me ten **quid**. [pounds]
I'll help you peel the **spuds**. [potatoes]
My **bike**'s been stolen. [bicycle]
I always go by **tube**. [word used for the London Underground]
Come and meet my **Mum** and **Dad**. [mother and father]
Hi! Can't stop; see you, **bye!** [hello; goodbye]
The milk's in the **fridge**. [refrigerator]

C Clippings

Shortening a word tends to make it less formal, as in **fridge** and **bye** in B.

I'll meet you in the **lab**(oratory). What's on **telly** tonight? [television]
We should put an **ad**(vertisement) / an **advert**(isement) in the (news)**paper**.
Shall I (tele)**phone** them?
Her sister's a **vet**(erinary surgeon).

D Formality in notices, instructions, etc.

You will often see rather formal words in notices and suchlike. Make sure you know the meaning of the words used so that you could tell someone what the notice says using less formal words.

THIS PUBLIC HOUSE IS CLOSED UNTIL FURTHER NOTICE

DO NOT ALIGHT WHILE THE BUS IS IN MOTION

DO NOT ADDRESS THE DRIVER UNLESS THE BUS IS STATIONARY

ARTICLES DEPOSITED MUST BE PAID FOR IN ADVANCE

We regret we cannot accept cheques

Tickets must be purchased before boarding the train

Exercises

7.1 **If you look up an informal word in a monolingual dictionary, you will often find a neutral equivalent as part of the definition or explanation. For example, the Collins COBUILD dictionary entry for *kid* says:** A *kid* is a *child*; an informal use.

Use a monolingual dictionary to find neutral or more formal words for these:

1 kip 2 a pal 3 a chap 4 cheerio 5 swot 6 ta! 7 brainy

7.2 **Make this conversation more *informal* by changing some of the words. Refer to the left-hand page if necessary.**

JIM: Annie, can you lend me five pounds?
ANNIE: What for?
JIM: Well, I have to go and visit my mother and father, and my bicycle's not working, so I'll have to take a taxi.
ANNIE: Can't you telephone them and say you can't come?
JIM: Well, I could, except I want to go because they always have lots of food, and the refrigerator at our flat is empty, as usual.
ANNIE: Can't you go by Underground?
JIM: Erm...
ANNIE: Anyway, the answer's no.

7.3 **Say whether you feel the following remarks/sentences are *okay, too formal* or *too informal* for each situation described. If the remark/sentence is unsuitable, suggest what the person might say instead.**

1 (*Teenage boy to teenage girl at disco*): D'you fancy an appointment one night next week?
2 (*Parent to another parent at a school parents meeting*): How many offspring do you have at the school?
3 (*Dinner-guest to host/hostess*): No thanks, I never consume alcoholic beverages when I'm driving.
4 (*Student to University Professor*): Will there be lab demonstrations next week?
5 (*Business letter to a newspaper office*): Dear Sir/Madam,
I should like to enquire about the current charges for ads in your paper. My company is considering... etc.

7.4 **Mini-quiz: Find words on the left-hand page for the following.**

1 The opposite of stationary.
2 The opposite of to board.
3 a) to be sorry b) to buy c) to speak to
4 Informal versions of Greetings! and Farewell!

7.5 **Express these notices in neutral or informal language.**

1

Children are requested not to deposit litter in the play-area

2

Expenses can only be reimbursed upon production of dated receipts

(See also Units 95 and 96 for other informal and formal words and expressions.)

8 Suffixes

Suffixes can change the word-class and the meaning of the word.

A Common noun suffixes

-er /ə/ is used for the person who does an activity, e.g. **writer, worker, shopper, teacher.**

You can use **-er** with a wide range of verbs to make them into nouns.

Sometimes, the /ə/ suffix is written as -or instead of **-er**. It is worth making a special list of these as you meet them, e.g. **actor, operator, sailor, supervisor.**

-er/-or are also used for things which do a particular job, e.g. **pencil-sharpener, bottle-opener, grater, projector.**

-er and -ee can contrast with each other meaning 'person who does something.' (**-er**) and 'person who receives or experiences the action' (-ee), e.g. **employer/employee, sender/addressee, payee** (e.g. of a cheque).

-(t)ion /ʃ(ə)n/ is used to make nouns from verbs.

complication   pollution   reduction   alteration   donation   admission

-ist [person] and -ism [activity or ideology]: used for people's politics, beliefs and ideologies, and sometimes their profession (compare with **-er/-or** professions above), e.g. **Marxism, Buddhism, journalism, anarchist, physicist, terrorist.**

-ist is also often used for people who play musical instruments, e.g. **pianist, violinist, cellist.**

-ness is used to make nouns from adjectives. Note what happens to adjectives that end in -y: **goodness, readiness, forgetfulness, happiness, sadness, weakness.**

B Adjective suffix

-able/-ible /əbl/ with verbs, means 'can be done'.

drinkable   washable   readable   recognizable   countable   forgivable

Examples with -ible: **edible** (can be eaten)   **flexible** (can be bent)

C Verbs

-ise (or -ize) makes verbs from adjectives, e.g. **modernise, commercialise, industrialise.**

Other suffixes that can help you recognise the word class

-ment: (nouns) excitement   enjoyment   replacement
-ity: (nouns) flexibility   productivity   scarcity
-hood: (abstract nouns especially family terms) childhood   motherhood
-ship: (abstract nouns especially status) friendship   partnership   membership
-ive: (adjectives) passive   productive   active
-al: (adjectives) brutal   legal   (nouns) refusal   arrival
-ous: (adjectives) delicious   outrageous   furious
-ful: (adjectives) forgetful   hopeful   useful
-less: (adjectives) useless   harmless   cloudless
-ify: (verbs) beautify   purify   terrify

Note: the informal suffix **-ish**, which can be added to most common adjectives, ages and times to make them less precise, e.g. She's **thirtyish**. He has **reddish** hair. Come about **eightish.**

Exercises

8.1 **The *-er/-or, -ee* and *-ist* suffixes. Use the suffixes to give the names of the following.**

Example: A person who plays jazz on the piano. *a jazz pianist*

1 The thing that wipes rain off your car windscreen.
2 A person who plays classical violin.
3 A person who takes professional photographs. (N.B. pronunciation)
4 A person who acts in amateur theatre.
5 The person to whom a cheque is made out.
6 A machine for washing dishes.
7 A person who donates their kidneys upon their death.
8 The person to whom a letter is addressed.

8.2 **Each picture is of an object ending in *-er*, Can you name them?**

1
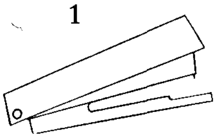

2
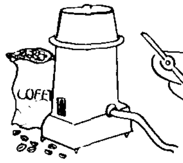

3
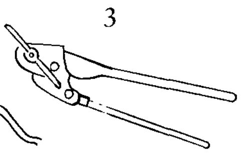

4
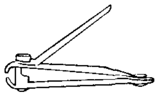

5
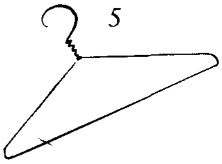

8.3 **List six jobs you would like to have in order of preference. How many different suffixes are there in your list? Do any of the job names not have a suffix? (e.g. pilot, film star)**

8.4 **Do these words mean a thing, a person, or both?**

1 a cooker
2 a typewriter
3 a ticket-holder
4 a record player
5 a cleaner b
6 a smoker
7 a drinker p

8.5 **Spelling changes. Rewrite each sentence by changing the underlined words, using a suffix from the left-hand page. Make any spelling changes needed.**

1 Most of his crimes can be forgiven.
Most of his crimes are ....

2 The Club refuses to admit anyone not wearing a tie.
The Club refuses .... to anyone not wearing a tie.

3 Her only fault is that she is lazy.
Her only fault is ....

4 This firm has produced a lot in recent years.
This firm has been very .... in recent years.

5 I found the book very easy and pleasant to read.
I found the book very ....

8.6 **Can you think of anything in your country which should be *nationalised* (e.g. banks, steel works), *standardised, modernised, computerised* or *centralised*?**

8.7 **Which word is the odd one out in each group and why?**

1 brotherhood neighbourhood manhood priesthood
2 hair-restorer plant-holder step-ladder oven-cleaner
3 appointment involvement compliment arrangement
4 tearful spiteful dreadful handful
5 worship kinship friendship partnership

9 Prefixes

A

Prefixes are often used to give adjectives a negative meaning. The opposite of 'comfortable' is '**un**comfortable', the opposite of 'convenient' is '**in**convenient' and the opposite of 'similar' is '**dis**similar'. Other examples are '**un**just', '**in**edible', '**dis**loyal'. Unfortunately, there is no easy way of knowing which prefix any adjective will use to form its opposite. When you learn a new adjective note down whether it has an opposite formed with a prefix and, if so, what it is.

Note:

- **in**- becomes **im**- before a root beginning with 'm' or 'p', e.g. **im**mature, **im**patient, **im**partial, **im**probable. Similarly **in**- becomes **ir**- before a word beginning with 'r', and **il**- before a word beginning with 'l', e.g. **ir**replaceable, **ir**reversible, **il**legal, **il**legible, **il**literate.
- The prefix **in**- does not always have a negative meaning – often it gives the idea of inside or into, e.g. **in**ternal, **im**port, **in**sert, **in**come.

B

Although it is mainly adjectives which are made negative by prefixes, **un**- and **dis**- can also form the opposites of verbs too, e.g. appear **dis**appear. The prefix is used here to reverse the action of the verb. Here are some more examples: **dis**agree, **dis**approve, **dis**believe, **dis**connect, **dis**credit, **dis**like, **dis**mount, **dis**prove, **dis**qualify, **un**bend, **un**do, **un**dress, **un**fold, **un**load, **un**lock, **un**veil, **un**wrap, **un**zip.

C

Many other prefixes are used in English. Here is a list of prefixes which are useful in helping you to understand unfamiliar words. Some of these words are used with a hyphen. Check in a dictionary if you're not sure.

prefix	*meaning*	*examples*
anti	against	anti-war antisocial antibiotic
auto	of or by oneself	autograph auto-pilot autobiography
bi	two, twice	bicycle bi-monthly biannual bilingual
ex	former	ex-wife ex-student ex-president
ex	out of	extract exhale excommunicate
micro	small	micro-computer microwave microscopic
mis	badly/wrongly	misunderstand mistranslate misinform
mono	one/single	monotonous monologue monogamous
multi	many	multi-national multi-purpose multi-racial
over	too much	overdo overtired oversleep overeat
post	after	postwar postgraduate post-revolutionary
pro	in favour of	pro-government pro-revolutionary
pseudo	false	pseudo-scientific pseudo-intellectual
re	again or back	retype reread replace rewind
semi	half	semicircular semi-final semi-detached
sub	under	subway submarine subdivision
under	not enough	underworked underused undercooked

Exercises

9.1 **Practise using words with negative prefixes. Contradict the following statements in the same way as the example. Not all the words you need are on the left-hand page.**

Example: He's a very honest man. *I don't agree. I think he's dishonest.*

1 I'm sure she's discreet.
2 I always find him very sensitive.
3 It's a convincing argument.
4 That's a very relevant point.
5 She's always obedient.
6 He's very efficient.
7 I always find her responsible.
8 He seems grateful for our help.
9 I'm sure she's loyal to the firm.
10 He's a tolerant person.

9.2 **Which negative adjective fits each of the following definitions?**

1 .... means not having a husband or wife.
2 .... means impossible to eat.
3 .... means unable to read or write.
4 .... means not having a job.
5 .... means fair in giving judgement, not favouring one side.
6 .... means unable to be replaced.

9.3 **Choose a negative verb from B to fit each of the sentences below. Put it in the correct form.**
Example: The runner was *disqualified* after a blood test.

1 Children (and adults) love .... parcels at Christmas time.
2 I almost always find that I .... with his opinion.
3 I'm sure he's lying but it's going to be hard to .... his story.
4 After a brief speech the Queen .... the new statue.
5 It took the removal men an hour .... our things from the van.
6 His phone was .... because he didn't pay his last bill.

9.4 **Answer the following questions. The answers are all in the table opposite.**

1 What kind of oven cooks things particularly fast?
2 What kind of drug can help somebody with an infection?
3 What kind of company has branches in many countries?
4 How does a passenger aeroplane normally fly?
5 What is a student who is studying for a second degree?
6 What means 'underground railway' in the US and 'underground passage' in the UK?

9.5 **Using the table opposite construct words or phrases to replace the underlined words.**

Example: He's in favour of the American approach. *He's pro-American.*

1 The BBC tries to avoid pronouncing foreign words incorrectly.
2 Most people say they have to work too hard but are paid too little.
3 He dated his cheque with a date that was later than the real date.
4 She's still on good terms with the man who used to be her husband.
5 He made so many mistakes in the letter that he had to write it again.

9.6 **Think of two more examples for each prefix in C opposite.**

10 Roots

A

Many words in English are formed from a set of Latin roots with different prefixes and suffixes. Knowing the roots of such words may help you to remember or guess their meaning when you see them in context. These words are usually fairly formal. In their formation, they can perhaps be seen as the Latinate, formal, equivalent of phrasal verbs.

B

Here are some examples of the more common Latin roots, with some of the verbs derived from them. In each case an example sentence is given with the meaning of the verb in brackets at the end. You'll find some easier to understand than others.

spect: see, look
You should **respect** your parents / the laws of a country. [look up to]
The police **suspected** he was guilty but they had no proof. [had a feeling]
Many pioneers travelled west in America to **prospect** for gold. [search]

vert: turn
I tried a word-processor but I soon **reverted** to my old typewriter. [went back]
Missionaries went to Africa to **convert** people to Christianity. [change beliefs]
The royal scandal **diverted** attention from the political crisis. [took attention away]

port: carry, take
How are you going to **transport** your things to the States? [send across]
Britain **imports** cotton and **exports** wool. [buys in, sells out]
The roof is **supported** by the old beams. [held up]

duc, duct: lead
She was **educated** abroad. [went to school]
He **conducted** the orchestra with great vigour. [led]
Japan **produces** a lot of electronic equipment. [makes]

press: press, push
She was **impressed** by his presentation. [full of admiration and respect]
This weather **depresses** me. [makes me feel miserable]
She always **expresses** herself very articulately. [puts her thoughts into words]

pose, pone: place, put
The meeting has been **postponed** until next week. [changed to a later date]
The king was **deposed** by his own son. [put off the throne]
I don't want to **impose** my views on you. [force]

C

Above you only have examples of verbs. Note that for all the verbs listed, there is usually at least one noun and at least one adjective as well. Here are some examples.

verb	*person noun*	*adjective*	*abstract noun*
inspect	inspector	inspecting	inspection
advertise	advertiser	advertising	advertisement
deport	deportee	deported	deportation
introduce	introducer	introductory	introduction
oppress	oppressor	oppressive	oppression
compose	composer	composite	composition

Exercises

10.1 **Complete as much as possible of the table with other forms of some of the words presented in B. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.**

verb	*person noun*	*adjective*	*abstract noun*
convert	....	....	....
produce	....	....	....
conduct	....	....	....
impress	....	....	....
support	....	....	....
impose	....	....	....

10.2 **Fill in the gaps in the sentences below using words from the table in C.**

1 We stayed in a town surrounded by high mountains. I found it very ....
2 He .... from the USA for having a forged passport.
3 The magazine seems to have nothing in it but .... for cosmetics.
4 May I .... you to my boss?
5 The tax .... decided I owed a lot of money.
6 The new take-away pizza service has a very good .... offer.
7 Business people always say that it pays ....
8 Tchaikovsky .... some wonderful ballet music.

10.3 **Can you work out the meanings of the underlined words in the sentences below? To help you, here are the meanings of the main Latin prefixes:**

intro: within, inward **o, ob:** against **in, im:** in, into **re:** again, back
de: down, from **ex:** out **sub:** under **trans:** across

1 She's a very introspective person and he's also very introverted.
2 He always seems to oppose everything I suggest.
3 They have a very good induction programme for new staff in that company.
4 I don't think it is healthy to repress one's emotions too much.
5 Perhaps you can deduce what the word means from the way it is formed.
6 The documentary exposed corruption in high places.
7 She tried hard to suppress a laugh.
8 She transposed the music for the flute.

10.4 **Think of three other words based on each of the roots listed in B opposite. Put each into an appropriate phrase.**

10.5 **Pair the formal verbs below with their phrasal verb equivalents.**

support put off oppose look at cut down deposit hold up
postpone turn away inspect go against divert reduce put down

11 Abstract nouns

A

An abstract noun is one which is used to mean an idea, experience or quality rather than an object. Thus **happiness**, **intention** and **shock** are abstract nouns whereas, for example, pen, bed and trousers are not.

There are a number of suffixes which are used particularly frequently in the formation of abstract nouns. Some of the most common are **-ment**, **-ion**, **-ness** and **-ity**.

Note: **-ment** and **-ion** are usually used to make verbs into abstract nouns whereas **-ness** and **-ity** are added to adjectives; **-ion** sometimes becomes **-tion**, **-sion**, **-ation** or **-ition**.

Here are some examples of abstract nouns using those suffixes.

achievement
adjustment
amazement
discouragement
improvement
investment
replacement
retirement

action
collection
combination
illusion
imagination
production
recognition
reduction

aggressiveness
attractiveness
bitterness
carelessness
consciousness
permissiveness
tenderness
ugliness

absurdity
anonymity
complexity
curiosity
generosity
hostility
prosperity
sensitivity

Less common suffixes associated with abstract nouns are **-ship**, **-dom**, **-th** and **-hood**.

Note: **-ship** and **-hood** are usually used in combination with other nouns whereas **-th** combines with an adjective to form an abstract noun and **-dom** can combine with either a noun or an adjective.

Here are some examples of abstract nouns using those suffixes.

apprenticeship
companionship
membership
ownership
partnership
relationship

boredom
freedom
kingdom
martyrdom
stardom
wisdom

breadth
depth
length
strength
warmth
width

adulthood
brotherhood
childhood
motherhood
neighbourhood
(wo)manhood

There are also a large number of abstract nouns which do not use any suffix at all. Here are some examples of these.

anger
faith
luck
sense

belief
fear
principle
sight

calm
humour
rage
speed

chance
idea
reason
thought

You will find more examples of the use of suffixes in Units 8 and 10 and of abstract nouns in Units 68 and 69.

Exercises

11.1 **What is the abstract noun related to each of the following adjectives? All the nouns are formed in ways described on the opposite page although not all are listed opposite.**

Example: affectionate *affection*

1 affectionate
2 excited
3 kind
4 secure
5 amused
6 graceful
7 original
8 stupid
9 attentive
10 happy
11 popular
12 weak
13 equal
14 hopeful
15 resentful
16 wise

11.2 **Find at least one more noun using each of the suffixes in B and C.**

11.3 **Which abstract noun on the opposite page is a synonym of each of the following?**

Example: animosity *hostility* or *aggressiveness*

1 animosity
2 astonishment
3 inquisitiveness
4 fraternity
5 substitution
6 fame
7 decrease
8 area
9 vision
10 liberty
11 fury
12 wealth

11.4 **Complete the following table.**

abstract noun	*adjective*	*verb*	*adverb*
contentment	content(ed)	to content	contentedly
argument	....	....	....
emptiness	....	....	....
intensity	....	....	....
satisfaction	....	....	....
sentiment	....	....	....
strength	....	....	....

11.5 **Which of the words in the list below is being described in the following quotations?**

love permanence hope jealousy happiness beauty

1 '................................ is no more than feeling alone among smiling enemies.'
2 '................................ is like coke; something you get as the by-product of making something else.'
3 '................................ is the power of being cheerful in circumstances which we know to be desperate.'
4 '................................ is a universal migraine.'
5 'The British love .... more than they love................................'.

11.6 **Write your own quotations to describe the following abstract nouns.**

1 freedom 2 friendship 3 life 4 curiosity 5 imagination

12 Compound adjectives

A A compound adjective is an adjective which is made up of two parts and is usually written with a hyphen, e.g. **well-dressed, never-ending** and **shocking-pink.** Its meaning is usually clear from the words it combines. The second part of the compound adjective is frequently a present or past participle.

B A large number of compound adjectives describe personal appearance.
Here is a rather **far-fetched** description of a person starting from the head down.

Tom was a ***curly-haired, sun-tanned, blue-eyed, rosy-cheeked, thin lipped, broad-shouldered, left-handed, slim-hipped, long-legged, flat-footed*** *young man, wearing an* ***open-necked*** *shirt,* ***brand-new, tight-fitting*** *jeans and* ***open-toed*** *sandals.*

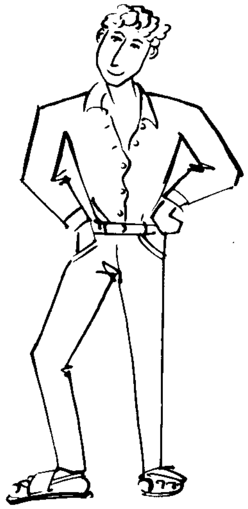

Another set of compound adjectives describes a person's character. Here is a rather **light-hearted** description of a girl. The meanings are explained in brackets.

> Melissa was **absent-minded** [forgetful], **easy-going** [relaxed], **good-tempered** [cheerful], **warm-hearted** [kind] and **quick-witted** [intelligent] if perhaps a little **big-headed** [proud of herself], **two-faced** [hypocritical], **self-centred** [egotistical] and **stuck-up** [snobbish (colloquial)] at times.

D Another special group of compound adjectives are those where the second part is a preposition. Some of these adjectives are listed below with a typical noun.

an **all-out** strike [total]
a **burnt-out** car [nothing left in it after a fire]
a **broken-down** bus [it won't work]
a **built-up** area [lots of buildings in it]
a **hard-up** student [poor]
cast-off clothes [no longer wanted by the owner]
worn-out shoes [can't be worn any more; of people – exhausted]
a **drive-in** movie [you watch from your car]
well-off bankers [wealthy]
a **run-down** area [in poor condition]

Here are some other useful compound adjectives.

air-conditioned
bullet-proof
cut-price
drip-dry
duty-free
hand-made
interest-free
last-minute
long-distance
long-standing
off-peak
part-time
record-breaking
remote-controlled
second-class
so-called
sugar-free
time-consuming
top-secret
world-famous

F You can vary the compound adjectives listed by changing one part of the adjective. For example, **curly-haired, long-haired, red-haired** and **straight-haired; first-hand** (knowledge), **first-class** (ticket) and **first-born** (child).

Exercises

12.1 **Fill each of the blanks to form a new compound adjective. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

1 ....
.... - eyed
....

2 ....
.... - proof
....

3 ....
.... - minded
....

4 ....
.... - necked
....

5 ....
.... - made
....

6 ....
.... - free
....

7 ....
.... - headed
....

8 ....
.... - hearted
....

12.2 **Put the words in E opposite into any categories which will help you learn them.**

12.3 **List as many compound adjectives beginning with *self*, as you can. Mark them *P* or *N for* positive or negative characteristics, or write *neutral.***

12.4 **Answer the questions by using a compound adjective which is opposite in meaning to the adjective in the question. Note that the answer may or may not have the same second element as the adjective in the question.**

Example: Is he working full-time? *No, part-time.*

1 Isn't she rather short-sighted?
2 Is your brother well-off?
3 Would you say the boy's well-behaved?
4 Are her shoes high-heeled?
5 Is this vase mass-produced?
6 Do they live in south-east England?

12.5 **Think of two nouns that would frequently be associated with any ten of the compound adjectives listed in E opposite.**

12.6 **Add a preposition from the list below to complete appropriate compound adjectives.**

back up out off on of

1 She's been doing the same low-paid job for so long that she's really fed-................ with it now.
2 The two cars were involved in a head-................ collision.
3 He has a very casual, laid-................ approach to life in general.
4 It'll never happen again. It's definitely a one-................ situation.
5 He's a smash hit here but he's unheard-................ in my country.
6 She bought a cut-................ paper pattern and made her own dress.

12.7 **Which of the adjectives from this unit could you use to describe yourself and other students in your class or members of your family?**

13 Compound nouns – combinations of two nouns

A compound noun is a fixed expression which is made up of more than one word and functions as a noun. Such expressions are frequently combinations of two nouns, e.g. **address book, human being, science fiction.** A number of compound nouns are related to phrasal verbs and these are dealt with in Unit 14.

B Compound nouns may be written as two words, e.g. **tin opener, bank account,** or they may be written with a hyphen instead of a space between the words, e.g. **pen-name, baby-sitter.** Some expressions are occasionally written with a hyphen and occasionally as two separate words. For instance, both **letter box** and **letter-box** are correct. Sometimes they may be written as one word, e.g. **earring.**

C Compound nouns may be countable, uncountable or only used in either the singular or the plural. There are examples of each of these types below. Check that you understand the meanings of each of the expressions listed. If you understand both elements of the expression, the meaning will usually be clear. If the meaning is not fairly obvious, then it is provided below.

D Usually the main stress is on the first part of the compound but sometimes it is on the second part. The word which contains the main stress is underlined in the compound nouns below.

Here are some examples of common countable compound nouns.

alarm clock
burglar alarm
heart attack
tea-bag
assembly line
contact lens
package holiday
windscreen
blood donor
credit card
pedestrian crossing
windscreen wiper
book token
handcuffs
shoe horn
youth hostel

Here are some examples of common uncountable compound nouns. These are never used with an article.

air-traffic control
data-processing
income tax
birth control
family planning
junk food
blood pressure
food poisoning
mail order
cotton wool
pocket money
hay fever
(allergy to pollen)

Here are some examples of common compound nouns used only in the singular.

arms race (countries wanting most powerful weapons)
generation gap
mother-tongue
greenhouse effect
brain drain (highly educated people leaving country to work abroad)
death penalty
labour force
sound barrier
welfare state

Here are some examples of common compound nouns used only in the plural.

grass roots
race relations
luxury goods
roadworks
human rights
sunglasses
kitchen scissors
traffic lights

Exercises

13.1 Complete these networks with any appropriate expressions from the opposite page. Add extra bubbles if you need them.

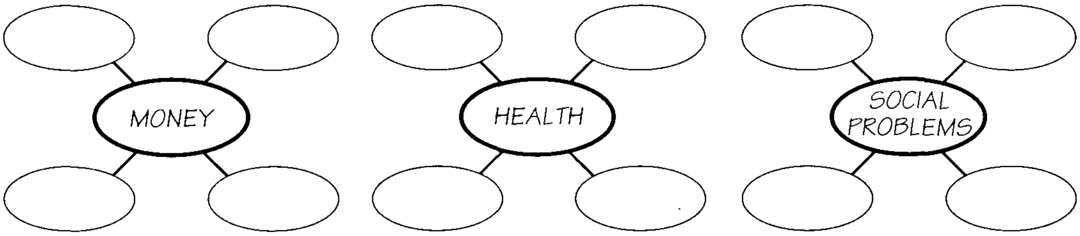

13.2 In some cases more than one compound noun can be formed from one particular element. What, for example, are the two expressions listed opposite with *blood* as an element and what are the two based on *control*? Complete the following compound nouns with a noun other than the one suggested opposite.

1 .... token
2 junk........................
3 sound.......................
4 blood.......................
5 tea..........................
6 mother.....................
7 ....tax
8 .... processing
9 ....crossing
10 ....lights
11 food........................
12 ....race

13.3 What are they talking about? In each case the answer is a compound noun opposite.

Example: 'I had it taken at the doctor's this morning and he said it was a little high for my age.' *blood pressure*

1 'You really shouldn't cross the road at any other place.'
2 'It's partly caused by such things as hair sprays and old fridges.'
3 'She always has terrible sneezing fits in the early summer.'
4 'I can't understand why they spend so much money on something so destructive.'
5 'Working there is supposed to be much more stressful than being a pilot.'
6 'The worst time was when I dropped one at the theatre and spent the interval scrabbling around on the floor.'
7 'I don't think it should ever be used under any circumstances.'
8 'It's much easier not to have to make your own arrangements.'
9 'He can't possibly run away from the policeman with those on!'

13.4 Now make up some sentences like those in exercise 13.3 relating to some of the new expressions you made in exercise 13.2.

13.5 Choose any article in a magazine or newspaper and write down all the compound nouns which you find.

13.6 Look at all the compound expressions you have worked with in this unit. Mark all those that you feel you need to be able to use yourself rather than just to understand when others use them.

14 Compound nouns – verb + preposition

A large number of compound nouns (see Unit 13) are based on phrasal verbs. In Sections B to E you will see a number of examples of such nouns in context. The meaning of the compound noun is indicated in brackets at the end of the sentence. To form the plural, 's' is added to the end, e.g. **pin-ups**.

B

Nouns based on phrasal verbs often have an informal feel to them and they are particularly common in newspaper reporting. Here are examples of such nouns in use.

In response to the pay offer, there was a **walk-out** at the factory. [strike]
There is going to be a **crack-down** on public spending. [action against]
There has been a **break-out** from the local prison. [escape]
Last month saw a tremendous **shake-up** in personnel. [change]
I never expected the **break-up** of the USSR. [collapse]

C

A number of these nouns have economic associations.

The **takeover** of one of our leading hotel chains has just been announced. [purchase by another company]
We're trying to find some new **outlets** for our products. [places to sell]
Take your things to the **check-out** to pay for them. [cash-desk]
Cutbacks will be essential until the recession is over. [reductions]
We made a profit of £1000 on a **turnover** of £10,000. [money passing through a company]

D

Some of these nouns are associated with technology and other aspects of contemporary life.

What the computer produces depends on the quality of the **input**. [information that is put in]
Output has increased thanks to new technology. [production]
We have a rather rapid staff **turnover**. [change]
Just after leaving school he went through the stage of being a **dropout**. [person who rejects society]
It will be a long time before the consequences of **fallout** from Chernobyl are no longer felt. [radio-active dust in the atmosphere]
I can easily get you a **printout** of the latest figures. [paper on which computer information has been printed]
A **breakthrough** has been made in AIDS research. [important discovery]

E

Some of the words can be used in more general circumstances.

Many of the problems were caused by a **breakdown** in communications. [failure]
The **outlook** for tomorrow is good – sunny in most places. [prospect]
There are **drawbacks** as well as advantages to every situation. [negative aspects]
The **outcome** of the situation was not very satisfactory. [conclusion]
TV companies always welcome **feedback** from viewers. [comments]
It was clear from the **outset** that the **set-up** would cause problems. [start; situation]
We parked in a **lay-by** on the **by-pass**. [parking space at the side of a road; road avoiding the centre of a town]
The **outbreak** of war surprised them. [start of something unpleasant, e.g. disease, violence]

Exercises

14.1 **Here are some more compound nouns based on phrasal verbs. Guess the meaning of the underlined word from its context.**

1 Because of the accident there was a three-mile tailback along the motorway.
2 Police are warning of an increased number of break-ins in this area.
3 The papers are claiming the Prime Minister organised a cover-up.
4 Unfortunately, our plans soon suffered a setback.
5 I'm sorry I'm late. There was a terrible hold-up on the bridge.
6 The robbers made their getaway in a stolen car.

14.2 **Which of the words studied on the opposite page would be most likely to follow the adjectives given below?**

1 radioactive............................
2 nervous................................
3 computer..............................
4 annual..................................
5 final.................................
6 sales................................
7 positive............................
8 drastic.............................

14.3 **Fill in the blanks with an appropriate word from those opposite.**

1 A and C Ltd. have made a .... bid for S and M plc.
2 The Prime Minister yesterday announced a .... in the Cabinet.
3 The negotiations aim to end the 10-day-old ....
4 She provided some very valuable .... to the discussion.
5 CIRCUS LION IN HORROR ....
6 There's a terrible queue at this .... Let's find another one.
7 There has been a disturbing .... of violence in prisons recently.
8 The office wall was covered in ....

14.4 **Here are some more words of this type. In each case the preposition element of the noun is given but the other part is missing. Choose from the list of possibilities.**

work hand hold clear write lie turn press

1 Their car was a ....-off after the accident.
2 The lecturer distributed ....-outs before she started speaking.
3 Jack does a daily ....-out at the gym, starting with 20 .... -ups.
4 There is an interesting ....-up of the match in today's paper.
5 I'm giving my office a major ....-out this week.
6 Did you read about the.........................-up at our bank?
7 There was a surprisingly large ....-out at the concert.
8 I love having a ....-in on Sundays.

14.5 **Can you explain the difference between these pairs? Use a dictionary if necessary.**

1 outlook/look-out 2 set-up/upset 3 outlet/let-out 4 outlay/layout

14.6 **Choose eight of the words in this unit which you particularly want to learn and write your own sentences using them.**

15 Words with interesting origins – people and places

A A number of words in English have originated from the names of people.

biro: [ball-point pen] named after Laszlo Biro, its Hungarian inventor
boycott: [refuse to deal with or a refusal to deal with] after a landlord in Ireland who made himself unpopular by his treatment of his tenants and was socially isolated
braille: [name of a raised writing system used by blind people] from the name of its French inventor, Louis Braille
chauvinist: [strong belief that your country or race is superior to others] after the Frenchman, Nicolas Chauvin, who was fanatically devoted to Napoleon
hooligan: [a rough, lawless youth] from the Irish family name, Hooligan
machiavellian: [cunning, deceitful, unscrupulous in the pursuit of a goal] from Niccolo Machiavelli, the Italian statesman who died in 1527
mentor: [loyal and wise adviser] from Mentor, friend to Odysseus
pamphlet: [a small leaflet] from a character Pamphilus, in a 12th century love poem
to pander: [to indulge someone's desires] from Pandaros, a procurer or pimp in Ancient Greek mythology
saxophone: [musical instrument] invented by the Belgian, Adolphe Sax
tawdry: [cheap and tasteless] from St Audrey, at whose annual fair in the town of Ely, near Cambridge, cheap gaudy scarves were sold
watt: [unit of power] from the 18th century Scottish inventor, James Watt

Quite a few names of types of clothing, particularly hats, originate from the people who invented them or made them popular.

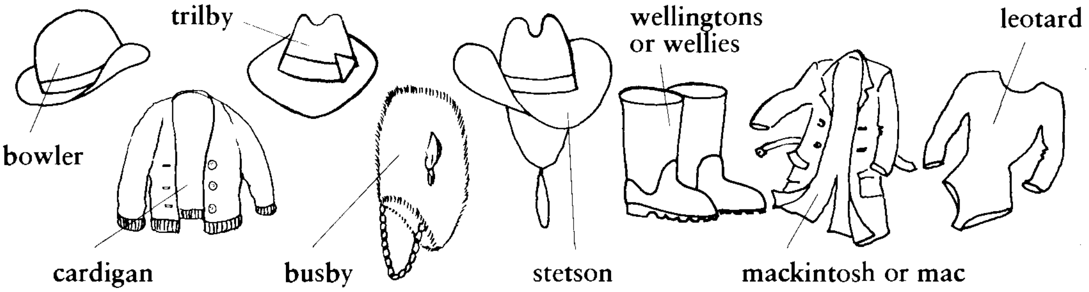

B A number of other words in English come from place names.

bedlam: [chaos] from the name of a famous London mental hospital once situated where Liverpool Street Station now stands
spartan: [severely simple] from the ancient Greek city of Sparta, famed for its austerity
canter: [movement of a horse, faster than a trot but slower than a gallop] a shortening of Canterbury, a town in south-east England
gypsy: [member of a particular group of travelling people] These people were once thought to have come from Egypt, hence the name.

A number of names of different kinds of cloth originate from place names. The place of origin is shown in brackets ( ).

angora (Ankara)
denim (Nimes, France)
satin (Qingjiang, China)
cashmere (Kashmir)
gauze (Gaza)
suede (Sweden)
damask (Damascus)
muslin (Mosul, Iraq)
tweed (River Tweed, Scotland)

Exercises

15.1 Which (if any) of the words listed on the opposite page are familiar to you because there are similar words in your own language?

15.2 Complete the networks below with as many other words as you can from the words listed on the opposite page.

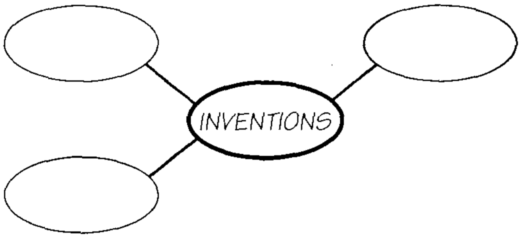

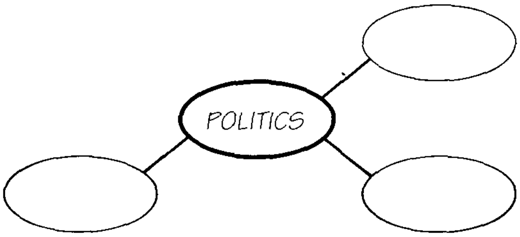

15.3 Complete the sentences with appropriate words.

1 It looks like rain. Don't forget your .... and your ....
2 I wish I could play the ....
3 It's .... in here. Let's go somewhere quieter.
4 The anarchist speaker urged all citizens to .... the elections.
5 What a beautiful .... sweater! Where did you get it?

15.4 Choose two adjectives to use with the following words.

Example: wellington *red, muddy*

1 hooligan
2 pamphlet
3 stetson
4 gypsy
5 leotard
6 biro

15.5 Now give two nouns that you might expect to follow each of these adjectives.

Example: denim *jeans, jacket*

1 suede
2 machiavellian
3 spartan
4 tawdry

15.6 And now suggest how the following sentences could end.

1 I can't stand the way he panders...
2 She buttoned up her cardigan because...
3 The horse cantered...
4 It has been agreed to boycott...
5 A busby must be...

15.7 Here are some more words of this type in English. Can you explain (a) their meaning and (b) their origin?

1 herculean effort
2 platonic friendship
3 teddy bear
4 jersey
5 Caesarean section
6 July
7 bottle of champagne
8 atlas
9 magnolia

16 Words with interesting origins – from other languages

A English has taken over words from most of the other languages with which it has had contact. It has taken many expressions from the ancient languages, Latin and Greek, and these borrowings usually have academic or literary associations. From French, English has taken lots of words to do with cooking, the arts, and a more sophisticated lifestyle in general. From Italian come words connected with music and the plastic arts. German expressions in English have been coined either by tourists bringing back words for new things they saw or by philosophers or historians describing German concepts or experiences. The borrowings from other languages usually relate to things which English speakers experienced for the first time abroad.

B There are borrowings from a wide range of languages. For example, from Japanese, **tycoon, karate, origami, judo, futon** and **bonsai.** From Arabic, **mattress, cipher, alcove, carafe, algebra, harem, mufti** and **yashmak.** From Turkish, **yoghurt, jackal, kiosk, bosh** [nonsense (colloquial)], **tulip** and **caftan;** from Farsi, **caravan, shawl, taffeta, bazaar** and **sherbet,** and from Eskimo, **kayak, igloo** and **anorak.**

C The map of Europe below shows the places of origin of some English words and expressions borrowed from some other European languages. Use a dictionary to check the meanings of any words you are not sure about.

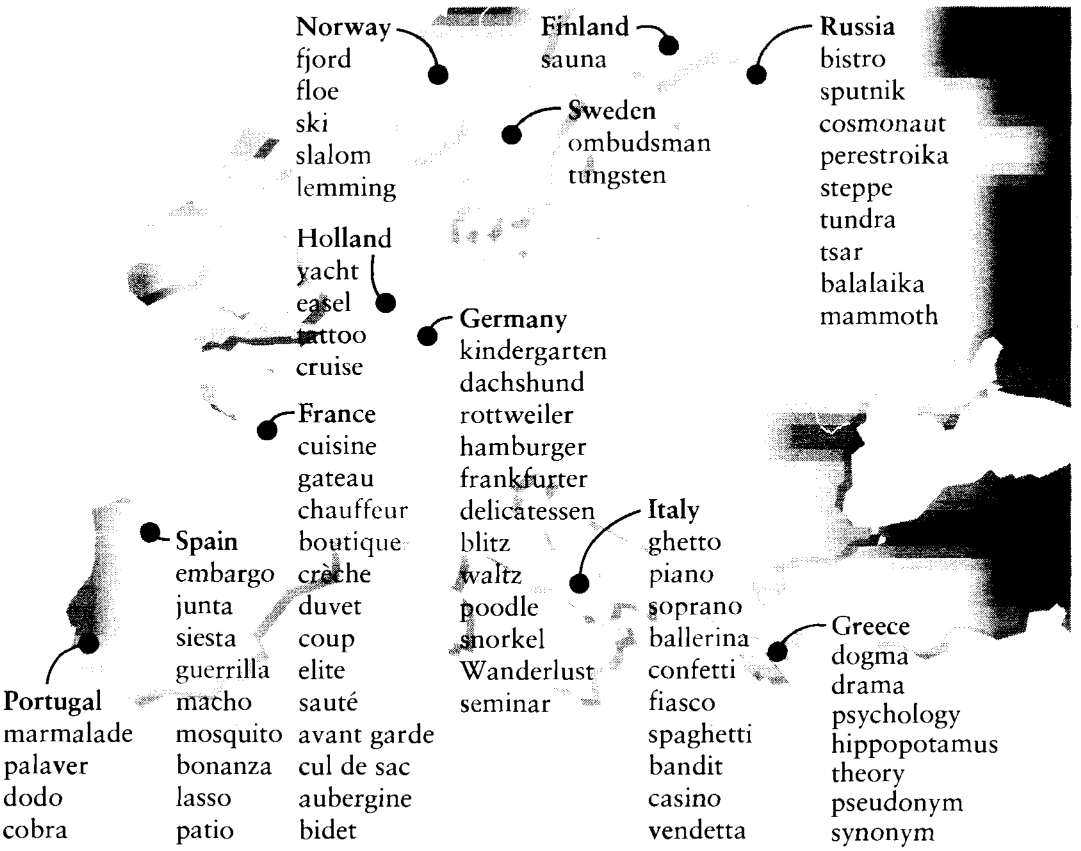
Norway
fjord
floe
ski
slalom
lemming
Finland
sauna
Sweden
ombudsman
tungsten
Russia
bistro
sputnik
cosmonaut
perestroika
steppe
tundra
tsar
balalaika
mammoth
Holland
yacht
easel
tattoo
cruise
Germany
kindergarten
dachshund
rottweiler
hamburger
frankfurter
delicatessen
blitz
waltz
poodle
snorkel
Wanderlust
seminar
France
cuisine
gateau
chauffeur
boutique
crèche
duvet
coup
elite
sauté
avant garde
cul de sac
aubergine
bidet
Spain
embargo
junta
siesta
guerrilla
macho
mosquito
bonanza
lasso
patio
Portugal
marmalade
palaver
dodo
cobra
Italy
ghetto
piano
soprano
ballerina
confetti
fiasco
spaghetti
bandit
casino
vendetta
Greece
dogma
drama
psychology
hippopotamus
theory
pseudonym
synonym

Exercises

16.1 Which of the words listed opposite are also used in your language?

16.2 Is your own language represented on the opposite page? If so, can you add any words to the lists opposite? If not, do you know of any words English has borrowed from your language? (There are almost sure to be some.) Do the words mean exactly the same in English as in your language? Are they pronounced in the same way?

16.3 Look at all the words opposite and complete the following networks.

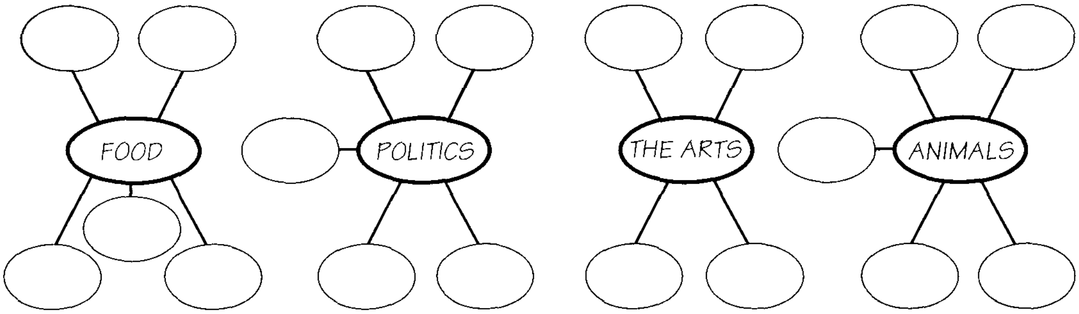

16.4 Make two or three other networks to help you to learn the words on the opposite page.

16.5 Match the adjectives on the left with the noun they are most likely to be associated with, on the right.

1 right-wing
2 prima
3 strawberry
4 ice
5 Chinese
6 long-sleeved
7 total
8 long-standing
9 noisy
10 cosy
11 all-night

kindergarten
casino
duvet
vendetta
ballerina
embargo
cuisine
floe
yoghurt
coup
caftan

16.6 What verbs collocate, in other words, are frequently used with the following nouns?

Example: *study* algebra

1 karate
2 kayak
3 mufti
4 embargo
5 guerrilla
6 cul de sac
7 coup
8 confetti
9 siesta
10 cruise
11 sauna
12 seminar

16.7 Give three nouns likely to follow *macho* and *avant-garde.*

16.8 Have some words or expressions been borrowed from English into your own language? Give some examples. Have they kept exactly the same meaning as they have in English?

17 Onomatopoeic words

A Onomatopoeic words are those which seem to sound like their meaning. The most obvious examples are verbs relating to the noises which animals make, e.g. cows **moo** and cats **mew** or **meow**. See Unit 73 for more about animal noises.

B If the vowel sound in a word is short, an onomatopoeic word usually signifies a short, sharp sound. If it is long (indicated in the International Phonetic Alphabet by ː) then the word usually signifies a longer, slower sound. Compare **pip** /pɪp/ which is a short sound with **peep** /piːp/ which is a long sound.

C Particular combinations of letters have particular sound associations in English.

gr- at the beginning of a word can suggest something unpleasant or miserable, e.g. **groan** [make a deep sound forced out by pain or despair], **grumble** [complain in a bad-tempered way], **grumpy** [bad-tempered], **grunt** [make a low, rough sound like pigs do, or people expressing disagreement or boredom], **growl** [make a low, threatening sound].

cl- at the beginning of a word can suggest something sharp and/or metallic, e.g. **click** [make a short sharp sound], **clang** [make a loud ringing noise], **clank** [make a dull metallic noise, not as loud as a clang], clash [make a loud, broken, confused noise as when metal objects strike together], **clink** [make the sound of small bits of metal or glass knocking together]. Horses go **clip-clop** on the road.

sp- at the beginning of a word can have an association with water or other liquids or powders, e.g. **splash** [cause a liquid to fly about in drops], **spit** [send liquid out from the mouth], **splutter** [make a series of spitting sounds], **spray** [liquid sent through the air in tiny drops either by the wind or some instrument], **sprinkle** [throw a shower of something onto a surface], **spurt** [come out in a sudden burst].

ash- at the end of a word can suggest something fast and violent, e.g. **smash** [break violently into small pieces], **dash** [move or be moved violently], **crash** [strike suddenly violently and noisily], **bash** [strike heavily so as to break or injure], **gash** [a long deep cut or wound].

wh- at the beginning of a word often suggests the movement of air, e.g. **whistle** [a high pitched noise made by forcing air or steam through a small opening], **whirr** [sound like a bird's wings moving rapidly], **whizz** [make the sound of something rushing through air], **wheeze** [breathe noisily especially with a whistling sound in the chest], **whip** [one of these or to hit with one of these].

-ckle, -ggle, or **-zzle** at the end of a word can suggest something light and repeated, e.g. **trickle** [to flow in a thin stream], **crackle** [make a series of short cracking sounds], **tinkle** [make a succession of light ringing sounds], **giggle** [laugh lightly in a nervous or silly way], **wriggle** [move with quick short twistings], **sizzle** [make a hissing sound like something cooking in fat], **drizzle** [small, fine rain].

Exercises

17.1 Which of the consonant combinations listed in C opposite exist in your language? Do they ever have similar associations?

17.2 Look in your dictionary. Can you find any other examples of words beginning with *gr-*, *cl-*, *sp-* or *wh-* with the associations described opposite?

17.3 Which of the words from C opposite fit best in the sentences below.

1 She heard his key .... as it turned in the lock.
2 The blades of the propeller .... noisily.
3 I love to hear sausages .... in the pan!
4 They .... glasses and drank to each other's health.
5 There was a terrible car .... on the motorway today.
6 Everyone .... with disappointment at the news.
7 The baby loves .... in its bath.
8 I can feel raindrops .... down the back of my neck.

17.4 Almost all the words in C opposite can be both nouns and regular verbs. There is, however, one irregular verb, one word which is only an adjective, one word which is both verb and noun but the noun has a rather different meaning from the verb. What are these words? Choose from the alternatives offered below.

1 The irregular verb: whip, grunt, spurt, spit or wriggle?
2 The word which is only an adjective: gash, grumpy, clip-clop, or whirr?
3 The word which is both a verb and a noun but the noun has a different meaning: trickle, spray, growl, splutter, spit, splash or crash?

17.5 Can you guess the meanings of the underlined words from their sounds?

1 The child sploshed through the puddles.
2 If you have a sore throat, try gargling with some salt water.
3 I couldn't concentrate on the play because of the rustle of sweet papers behind me.
4 Speak up. Don't mumble.
5 That step always creaks.
6 He whacked the ball into the air.

17.6 What words on the page opposite do these pictures represent?

1
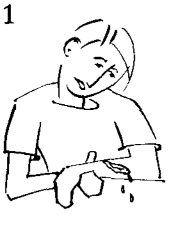
2
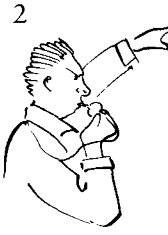
3
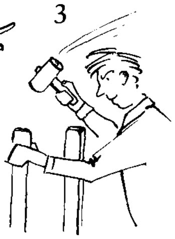
4
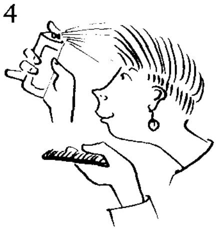
5
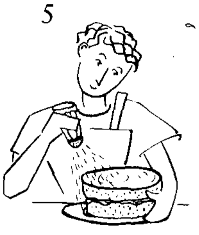
6
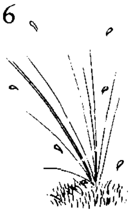

17.7 Pair the words below so that in each case there is a noun and a matching verb.

schoolchildren crackles tinkles a bad-tempered person or dog
the bell on a cat's collar a bored child clanks whistles a fire giggle
growls a churchbell a steam train clangs wheezes a prisoner's chain
wriggles someone with asthma

18 Words commonly mispronounced

English spelling is notoriously unphonetic. This page looks at some of the words which cause most pronunciation difficulties for learners of English. The phonetic transcription is provided for some of the words below. If you are not sure of the pronunciation of any of the other words, check in the index at the back of the book.

A To master English pronunciation you need to learn the 20 phonetic symbols for English vowel sounds. It is not really necessary to learn the consonant symbols as it is usually not difficult to know how consonants should be pronounced. Vowels are important because the vowel letters can be pronounced in many different ways.

a	about /ə/ wander /ɒ/ last /ɑː/ late /eɪ/
i	alive /aɪ/ give /ɪ/
u	put /ʊ/ cut /ʌ/ cupid /juː/
ie	fiend /iː/ friend /e/ science /aɪə/
ei	rein /eɪ/ receive /iː/ reinforce /iːɪ/
e	met /e/ meter /iː/ /ə/
o	sorry /ɒ/ go /əʊ/ love /ʌ/ to /uː/
ea	head /e/ team /iː/ react /iːæ/
ou	our /aʊ/ route /uː/ would /ʊ/
oo	cool /uː/ cook /ʊ/ coopt /əʊɒ/

B Silent letters can be a problem. The letters below in **bold** are silent in the following words:

p	psychic /saɪkɪk/ psychiatry pneumatic receipt pseudonym psychology
b	comb /kəʊm/ dumb numb tomb climb womb lamb
b	doubt /daʊt/ subtle debt debtor
l	could /kʊd/ should calm half talk palm walk salmon chalk
h	honour /ɒnə/ honourable honest hour hourly heir heiress
t	whistle /wɪsəl/ castle listen fasten soften Christmas
k	knee /niː/ knife know knob knowledge knot knit
r	card /kɑːd/ park farm burn work storm tart
r	(unless followed by a vowel) mother /mʌðə/ sister teacher water

In a number of two-syllable words in English, the stress is on the first syllable of the word when it is a noun and the second syllable if it is a verb, e.g. 'Wool is a major Scottish export.' 'Scotland exports a lot of wool.' Here are some other words like this.

conduct
desert
permit
record
conflict
import
present
reject
contest
increase
progress
reprint
decrease
insult
protest
subject
suspect
transfer
transport
upset

D Here are a number of other words which are often mispronounced.

apostrophe /ə'pɒstrəfi/
recipe /'resɪpi/
plough /plaʊ/
catastrophe /kə'tæstrəfi/
hiccough /'hɪkʌp/
muscle /'mʌsəl/
cupboard /'kʌbəd/
sword /sɔːd/
interesting /'ɪntrəstɪŋ/

Exercises

18.1 **Mark all the silent letters in each of the following sentences.**

1 They sang a psalm to honour the memory of the world-famous psychologist as she was laid to rest in the family tomb.
2 The psychiatrist was knifed in the knee as he was walking home.
3 He should have whistled as he fastened his sword to his belt.
4 You should have left me half the Christmas cake on Wednesday.

18.2 **Which word is the odd one out in each of these groups?**

1 worry sorry lorry
2 sword cord word
3 come some dome
4 head plead tread
5 doubt could shout
6 plough rough tough
7 land wand sand
8 soot root foot

18.3 **What word could a poet use to rhyme with each of the words below?**

1 hiccough *cup*...............................
2 bough ....
3 plough ....
4 through ....
5 cough ....
6 though ....

18.4 **Underline or highlight the stressed syllable in each of the words in bold.**

1 They paid a £1 million **transfer** fee for **transferring** the player to their team.
2 Although they **suspected** several people were partly involved, the police decided to concentrate on Jo as the main **suspect**.
3 There are **conflicting** views as to the cause of the **conflict**.
4 All this **upset** over the wedding has really **upset** them.
5 The cost of living has **increased** while there has been a decrease in wages.
6 A work **permit permits** you to work for a period of six months.
7 I wish I could **record** a hit **record**!
8 Despite the disgraceful **conduct** of the audience, James went on **conducting** the orchestra.

18.5 **Write out the words below using the normal English alphabet.**

1 /'mʌsəl/
2 /kə'tæstrəfi/
3 /'hæŋkətʃiːf/
4 /'kemɪkəl/
5 /'sʌtəl/
6 /rə'siːt/
7 /haɪt/
8 /'resɪpi/

18.6 **Underline the stressed syllable in each of the words below.**

1 photograph photography photographer photographically
2 telephone telephonist
3 zoology zoologist zoological
4 arithmetic arithmetical arithmetician
5 psychology psychologist psychological
6 psychiatry psychiatric psychiatrist

18.7 **Are there other words which you know you have particular problems pronouncing? You might like to ask a teacher to help you answer this question. Note any such words down with their phonetic transcription beside them.**

19 Homonyms

Homonyms can be subdivided into **homographs** and **homophones. Homographs** are words which are written in the same way but have different meanings. Compare **bow** in 'He took a **bow** /baʊ/ at the end of the concert' and 'He was wearing a **bow** /bəʊ/ tie'. **Homophones** are words which are pronounced in the same way but are spelt differently, e.g. **bow** as in 'He took a **bow**' and **bough**, 'the **bough** of a tree'.

B Here are some more examples of homographs.

I **live** in the north of England. /lɪv/
Your favourite pop star is singing **live** on TV tonight. /laɪv/

I **read** in bed each night. /riːd/
I **read** War and Peace last year. /red/

The **lead** singer in the group is great. /liːd/
Lead pipes are dangerous. /led/

The **wind** blew the tree down. /wɪnd/
Don't forget to **wind** your watch. /waɪnd/

I **wound** my watch last night. /waʊnd/
He suffered a terrible **wound** in the war. /wuːnd/

Some students at Oxford spend more time learning to **row** well than studying. /rəʊ/
They shared a flat for ages until they had a **row** over money and split up. /raʊ/

This book is called *English Vocabulary in Use*. /juːs/
You must know how to **use** words as well as their meaning. /juːz/

They lived in a large old **house**. /haʊs/
The buildings **house** a library and two concert halls as well as a theatre. /haʊz/

The **sow** has five piglets. /saʊ/
The farmers **sow** the seeds in the spring. /səʊ/

I **bathed** the baby this morning. /bɑːθt/
We **bathed** in the sea every day when we were on holiday. /beɪðd/

C Here are some of the many examples of homophones in English.

air/heir
aloud/allowed
dough/doe
fare/fair
faze/phase
floe/flow
flu/flew
grate/great
groan/grown
hoarse/horse
its/it's
lays/laze
might/mite
mown/moan
our/hour
pale/pail
pane/pain
peal/peel
place/plaice
practise/practice
pray/prey
raise/rays
read/reed
rein/rain
right/rite/write
rough/ruff
sale/sail
scene/seen
sent/scent
sight/site
sole/soul
sought/sort
steak/stake
tea/tee
there/their/they're
through/threw
tire/tyre
toe/tow
waist/waste
wait/weight
weather/whether
whine/wine

Exercises

19.1 **How would you pronounce each of the underlined words in the sentences below? Choose a word with a similar sound from the brackets.**

1 The girl I live with knows a good pub with live music. (dive/give)
2 The main house houses a collection of rare stamps. (mouse/rouse)
3 They bathed the children after they had bathed in the sea. (lathe/path)
4 You sow the seeds while I feed the sow. (cow/glow)
5 The violinist in the bow tie took a bow. (allow/flow)
6 He's the lead singer in the group 'Lead piping'. (head/deed)
7 What a row from the last house in the row! (plough/though)
8 Does he still suffer from his war wound? (found/mooned)
9 I wound the rope around the tree to strengthen it against the gale. (round/tuned)
10 It's quite hard to wind in the sails in this wind. (find/tinned)

19.2 **Write the word in phonetic script in the correct spelling for the context.**

Example: I really must do some more exercise or I'll never lose /weɪt/ *weight*.

1 Watching sport on TV is such a /weɪst/ of time.
2 There is a hole in the /səul/ of my shoe.
3 He broke a /peɪn/ of glass in the kitchen window.
4 The eldest son of the monarch is the /eə/ to the throne.
5 You are not /ə'laʊd/ to talk during the test.
6 Let's /'præktɪs/ our swimming together this evening?
7 He's going /θruː/ a rather difficult /feɪz/ at the moment.
8 Don't throw away that orange /piːl/. I need it for a recipe.

19.3 **Write one sentence using both of the words corresponding to the phonetic script.**

Example: /peɪl/ *She was quite pale after the exertion of carrying such a heavy pail of water.*

1 /ðeə/
2 /ɪts/
3 /'præktɪs/
4 /greɪt/
5 /waɪn/
6 /sɔːt/
7 /saɪt/
8 /preɪ/
9 /hɔːs/
10 /reɪz/

19.4 **Homophones and homographs are at the root of many jokes in English. Match the first part of each of these children's jokes with the second part and then explain the play on words involved in each.**

1 What did the big chimney say to the little chimney?	Because it's got a tender behind.
2 What did one lift say to the other lift?	A drum takes a lot of beating.
3 What did the south wind say to the north wind?	I think I'm going down with something.
4 Why did the man take his pencil to bed?	A nervous wreck.
5 Why is history the sweetest lesson?	He wanted to draw the curtains.
6 What's the best birthday present?	Because it's full of dates.
7 Why can't a steam engine sit down?	Let's play draughts.
8 What's pale and trembles at the bottom of the sea?	You're too young to smoke.

20 Time

A

One thing before another

Before I went to work I fed the cat. [or, more commonly in written English: **Before** going to work...]
I had written to her **prior** to meeting the committee. [formal/written style]
It was nice to be in Venice. **Previously** I'd only been to Rome. [fairly formal, more informal would be **before that,** I...]
I was in the office from 2.30. I was out **earlier on.** [**before then,** fairly informal]
The city is now called Thatcherville. **Formerly** it was Grabtown. [used when something has changed its name, state, etc.]

B

Things happening at the same time

While I waited, I read the newspaper. [or, more formal: **While waiting,** I read...; the waiting and reading happen together.]
As I was driving to work, I saw an accident. [**As** describes the background when something *happens* in the foreground.]
I saw her **just as** she was turning the corner. [precise moment]
During the war, I lived in Dublin. [does not specify how *long*]
Throughout the war, food was rationed. [from beginning to end]
She was entering **at the very time/the very moment** I was leaving. [These two are stronger and more precise than **as** or **just as.**]

C

One thing after another

After I'd locked up, I went to bed. [or, more formal: **After** locking up... ; we do not usually say 'After **having** locked up...'.]
We went to the castle. **Then** we caught a bus to the beach.
First we went to the theatre. **After that,** we had a meal.
He fell ill and was admitted to hospital. He died soon **afterwards.** [In these two examples, **after that** and **afterwards** are interchangeable.]
Following my visit to Peking, I bought lots of books about China. [fairly formal]

D

Time when

When I'm rich and famous, I'll buy a yacht. [*Note*: not 'When I will be rich...']
As soon as we've packed we can leave. [immediately after]
Once we've finished we can go and have a coffee. [less specific]
The moment/the minute I saw his face I knew I'd met him before.
I stayed in that hospital **the time** (that) I broke my leg.
I met Polly at Ken's wedding. **On that occasion** she was with a different man.

E

Connecting two periods or events

The meal will take about an hour. **In the meantime,** relax and have a drink. [between now and the meal]
The new whiteboards are arriving soon. **Till then,** we'll have to use the old ones.
I last met him in 1985. **Since then** I haven't set eyes on him.
By the time I retire, I will have worked here 26 years.

Exercises

20.1 Look at these pages from the personal diary of Laura, a businesswoman who travels a lot, then do the exercise.

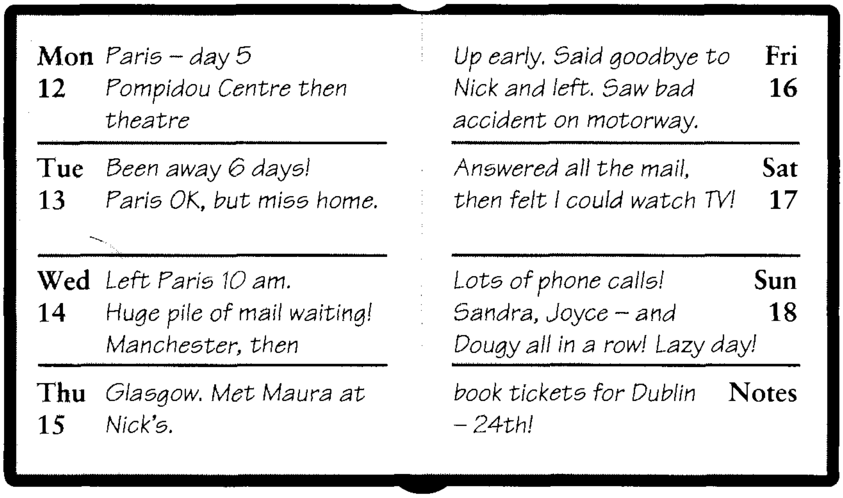

Mon 12	*Paris – day 5 Pompidou Centre then theatre*	*Up early. Said goodbye to Nick and left. Saw bad accident on motorway.*	**Fri 16**
Tue 13	*Been away 6 days! Paris OK, but miss home.*	*Answered all the mail, then felt I could watch TV!*	**Sat 17**
Wed 14	*Left Paris 10 am. Huge pile of mail waiting! Manchester, then*	*Lots of phone calls! Sandra, Joyce – and Dougy all in a row! Lazy day!*	**Sun 18**
Thu 15	*Glasgow. Met Maura at Nick's.*	*book tickets for Dublin – 24th!*	**Notes**

Fill in the blanks with connectors. An example is given.

1 *Prior* to going to Manchester, Laura was in Paris.
2 Her next trip after Glasgow is on 24th. .... she can have a quiet time at home.
3 She was in Paris for over a week. .... she got home there was a big pile of mail waiting for her.
4 ....she was at Nick's place on the 16th, she met Maura.
5 She went to the theatre in Paris on Monday. ...., she had been to the Pompidou Centre.
6 .... she had said goodbye to Nick, she left.
7 .... she had answered all her letters, she felt she could watch TV for a while.
8 .... she put the phone down it rang again. This time it was Dougy.

Make more sentences with connectors you haven't used, based on the diary information.

20.2 Think of things that are true for you in these situations and complete the sentences. Add more sentences if you can. An example has been done.

1 While I'm asleep, *I usually dream a lot.*
2 After I've eaten too much,...
3 The moment I wake up, I...
4 Throughout my childhood I...
5 I'm doing vocabulary right now. Earlier on, I was...
6 Once I've finished my language course, I'll...
7 Before I go on holiday, I always...
8 Following an argument with someone, I always feel

Follow-up: **If you can, get hold of a news report in English. Underline all the time connectors and see if there are any which you can add to those on the left-hand page. If there are, write a whole sentence in your notebook showing how the connector is used.**

21 Condition

A As well as **if**, there are a number of other words and phrases for expressing condition.

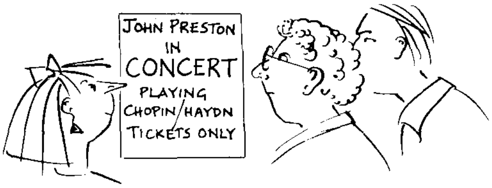

1 You can't come in **unless** you have a ticket.

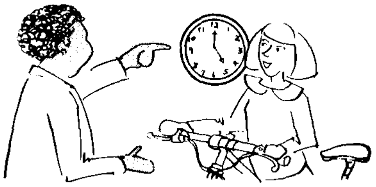

2 You can borrow the bike **on condition that** you return it by five o'clock.

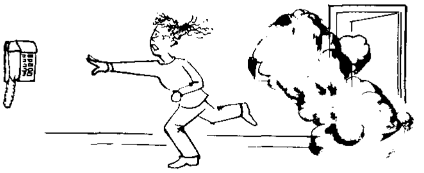

3 **In case of** fire, dial 999. [usually seen on notices (see Unit 96); it means 'when there is a fire'; don't confuse with 'take your mac **in case** it rains'; *not* it might rain.]

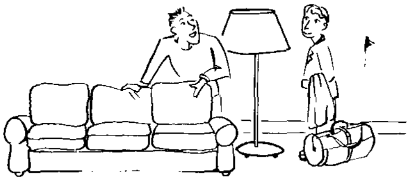

4 You can stay, **as long** as you don't mind sleeping on the sofa. [less formal than **so long as** and less formal and not so strong as **on condition that**]

Providing (that) or **provided (that)** can also be used in examples 2 and 4. They are less formal and not so strong as **on condition that** but stronger and more restricting than **as long as**, e.g. **Provided/Providing** you don't mind cats, you can stay with us. Note the use of **supposing** and **what if** (usually in spoken language) for possible situations in the future. **What if** is more direct, e.g. **Supposing/What if** he doesn't turn up; what shall we do then?

B Conditions with -ever

However you do it, it will cost a lot of money.
You'll get to the railway station, **whichever** bus you take.
Whoever wins the General Election, nothing will really change.
That box is so big it will be in the way **wherever** you leave it.

These four sentences can also be expressed using **no matter**.

No matter how you do it, it will cost a lot of money.
You'll get to the railway station, **no matter** which bus you take.

C Some nouns which express condition

Certain **conditions** must be **met** before the Peace Talks can begin.
A good standard of English is a **prerequisite** for studying at a British University.
[absolutely necessary; very formal word]
What are the entry **requirements** for doing a diploma in Management at your college?
[official conditions]
I would not move to London **under any circumstances**. It's awful!

> Notice in the examples in A and B how the present tense is used in the clause with the conditional word or phrase. Don't say: Take your umbrella in case it will rain.

Exercises

21.1 **Fill the gaps with a suitable word from A opposite.**

1 You can come to the party .... you don't bring that ghastly friend of yours.

2 .... emergency in the machine-room, sound the alarm and notify the supervisor at once.

3 .... I hear from you, I'll assume you are coming.

4 A person may take the driving test again .... they have not already taken a test within the previous fourteen days.

5 .... I lent you my car, would that help?

21.2 **The pictures show conditions that must be met to do certain things. Make different sentences using words and phrases from the opposite page.**

Example: *You can have a passenger on a motorbike provided they wear a helmet.* or *Unless you wear a helmet, you can't ride on a motorbike.*

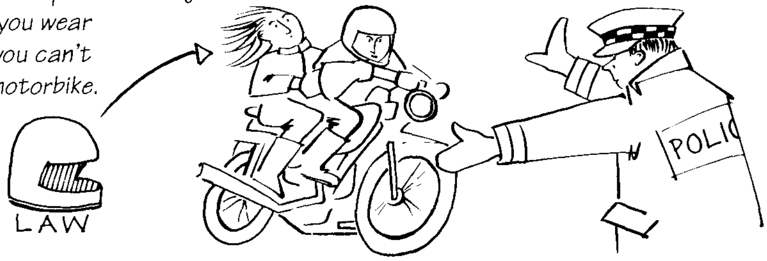

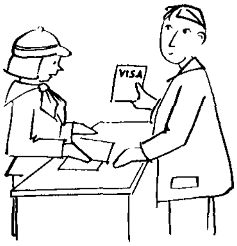

1

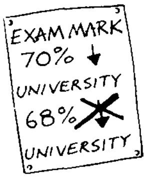

2

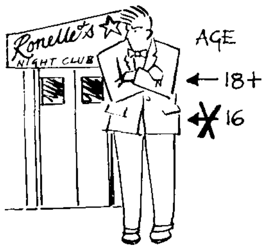

3

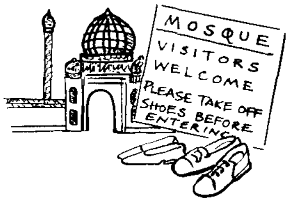
MOSQUE
VISITORS WELCOME
PLEASE TAKE OFF SHOES BEFORE ENTERING

4

21.3 **Change the sentences with *-ever* to *no matter*, and vice-versa.**

1 Wherever she goes, she always takes that dog of hers.

2 If anyone rings, I don't want to speak to them, no matter who it is.

3 No matter what I do, I always seem to do the wrong thing.

4 It'll probably have meat in it, whichever dish you choose. They don't cater for non-meat eaters here.

5 No matter how I do it, that recipe never seems to work.

21.4 **What would your answers be to these questions?**

1 Are there any prerequisites for the job you do or would like to do in the future?

2 Under what circumstances would you move from where you're living at the moment?

3 What are the normal entry requirements for university in your country?

4 On what condition would you lend a friend your house/flat?

22 Cause, reason, purpose and result

A Cause and reason

You probably know how to use words like **because, since** and **as** to refer to the **cause** of or **reason** for something. Here are some other ways of connecting clauses to express causes and reasons. Note how verbs and nouns can do the same job as conjunctions.

Look at the picture of an accident, on the right. Here are several ways of talking about it.

Owing to the icy conditions, the two lorries collided.
The collision was **due to** the icy conditions.
The collision **was caused by** ice on the road.
The cause of the collision was ice on the road.

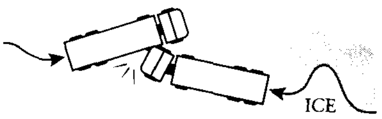

Here are some other 'cause' words and typical contexts they are used in.

The rise in prices **sparked off** a lot of political protest. [often used for very strong, perhaps violent, reactions to events]
The President's statement gave **rise to / provoked / generated** a lot of criticism. [slightly less strong than **spark off**]
The new law has **brought about / led to** great changes in education. [often used for political/social change]
This problem **stems from** the inflation of recent years. [explaining the direct origins of events and states]
The court-case **arose out of** allegations made in a newspaper. [the allegations started the process that led to the court-case]

B Reasons for and purposes of doing things

Her **reason** for not going with us was that she had no money. *or* **The reason** she didn't go with us was that... [less formal]
I wonder what his **motives** were **in** sending that letter? [purpose]
побудил
I wonder what **prompted** him to send that letter? [reason/cause]
She wrote to the press **with the aim** of exposing the scandal. [purpose]
I've invited you here **with a view to** resolving our differences. [sounds a bit more indirect than **with the aim** of]
He refused to answer **on the grounds that** his lawyer wasn't there. [reason]
The purpose of her visit was to inspect the equipment.

Results

He did no work. As a **result** / As a **consequence** / **Consequently**, he failed his exams.
The result/consequence of all these changes is that no-one is happy any more. [The examples with **consequence/consequently** sound more formal than **result**]
His remarks **resulted in** everyone getting angry. [as a verb + **in**]
The events had an **outcome** that no-one could have predicted. [result of a process or events, or of meetings, discussions, etc.]
The **upshot** of all these problems was that we had to start again. [less formal than **outcome**]
When the election results were announced, chaos **ensued**. [formal]

Exercises

22.1 **Make full sentences using 'cause' words from A opposite.**

Example: closure of 20 mines → strikes in coal industry *The closure of 20 mines sparked off a lot of strikes in the coal industry.*

1 announcement → strong attack from opposition
2 new Act of Parliament → great changes in industry
3 signalling fault → train crash
4 violent storm → wall collapsed
5 food shortages → riots in several cities
6 food shortages → poor management of the economy

22.2 **Make two sentences into one, using the 'reason and purpose' words in brackets. Look at B opposite if you aren't sure.**

Example: **There was a controversial decision. She wrote to the local newspaper to protest. (prompt)** *The controversial decision prompted her to write to the local newspaper to protest.*

1 I didn't contact you. I'd lost your phone number. (reason)
2 I will not sign. This contract is illegal. (grounds)
3 The government passed a new law. It was in order to control prices. (aim)
4 She sent everyone flowers. I wonder why? (motives)
5 The salary was high. She applied for the job. (prompt)

22.3 **The pictures show the *results* of events. Imagine what the *causes* might be and describe the events in different ways.**

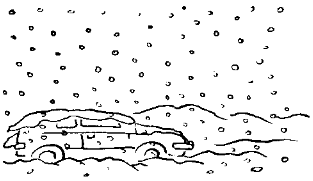

1 The road was blocked.

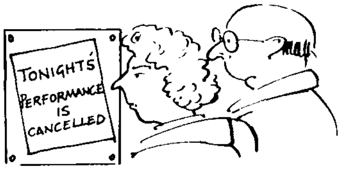

2 Everyone got a refund.

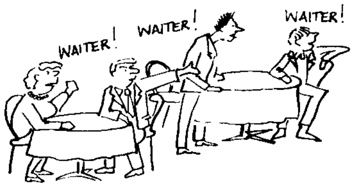
WAITER!
WAITER!
WAITER!

3 The customers got angry.

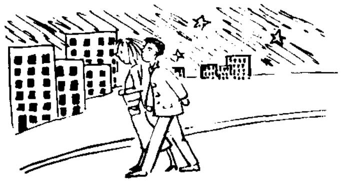

4 We had to walk home.

22.4 **Fill in the missing words.**

1 My reasons .... not joining the club are personal.
2 The purpose .... this pedal is to control the speed.
3 I came here .... the aim .... resolving our dispute.
4 His stupidity has resulted .... us having to do more work.
5 All this arose .... one small mistake we made.
6 It was done .... a view .... lowering inflation.
7 That press article has .... rise .... a lot of criticism.

23 Concession and contrast

Concession means accepting one part of a state of affairs but putting another argument or fact against it.

Although they were poor, they were independent.
He is a bit stupid. He's very kind, **nevertheless**.

A Verbs of concession

example		*paraphrase and comments*
I **acknowledge/accept** that he has worked hard but it isn't enough.	⟶	I agree but... [accept is less formal than **acknowledge**]
I **admit** I was wrong, but I still think we were right to doubt her.	⟶	I accept I'm guilty of what I'm accused of.
I **concede** that you are right about the goal, but not the method.	⟶	You have won this point in our argument. [formal]

B Adverbs and other phrases for concession

OK, you're sorry. **That's all well and good**, but how are you going to pay us back?
You shouldn't seem so surprised. **After all**, I did warn you.
It's all very well saying you love dogs, but who'll take it for walks if we *do* get one?
He *is* boring, and he *is* rather cold and unfriendly, but, **for all that**, he *is* your uncle and we should invite him.
Admittedly, she put a lot of effort in, but it was all wasted.

C Contrast

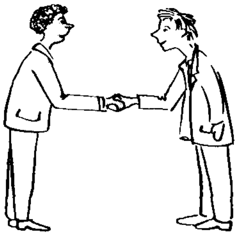

I expected Mr Widebody to be fat. **The reverse was true.**

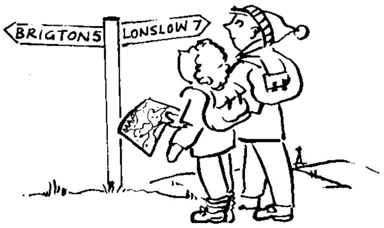

We're not almost there at all; **quite the opposite**. We've got five miles to go yet.

Everywhere in Europe they use metric measures. **In contrast**, Britain still uses non-metric.
It's not actually raining now. **On the other hand**, it may rain later, so take the umbrella.

Remember: **On the other hand** means 'that is true *and* this is true'; **On the contrary** means 'that is *not* true, but this *is* true', e.g. John, quiet? On the contrary, he's the noisiest person I know *or* John is rather arrogant. On the other hand, he can be very kind.

Note also these collocating phrases for contrast.

When it comes to politics, Jim and Ann are **poles apart**.
There's a **world of difference** between being a friend and a lover.
There's a **great divide** between left and right wing in general.
A **yawning gap** divides rich and poor in many countries.
There's a **huge discrepancy** between his ideals and his actions.

Exercises

23.1 **Rewrite these sentences using the most likely verb from A opposite (there is usually more than one possibility).**

1 I know that you weren't solely to blame, but you must take *some* responsibility.
2 Okay, I was wrong, you were right; he *is* a nice guy.
3 The company is prepared to say that you have suffered some delay, but we do not accept liability.
4 She didn't deny that we had done all we could, but she was still not content.

23.2 **Write a *beginning* for these sentences, as in the example.**

1 *I expected Mary to be tall and dark.* The reverse was true; she was short, with fair hair.
2 .... On the other hand, it does have a big garden, so I think we should rent it.
3 *Jim*: ....? *Mary*: On the contrary, it's one of the cheapest hotels in town.
4 .... In contrast, the traffic in Britain drives on the left.
5 ....; quite the opposite. I feel quite full. I had a huge breakfast.

23.3 **Try to do this word puzzle from memory. If you can't, look at C opposite.**

Across

1 a .... gap
3 a .... of difference
5 a .... discrepancy
7 .... apart

Down

2 poles ....
4 a great ....
6 a yawning ....

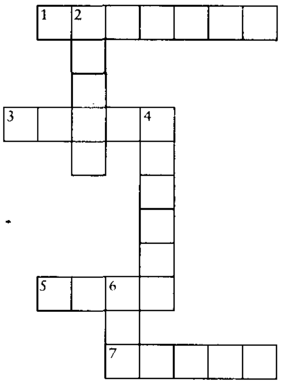

Now use the phrases from the word puzzle to make comments on these statements.

1 Some people believe in the nuclear deterrent, some in world disarmament.
2 She says one thing. She does quite the opposite.
3 Jim believes in God. Sandra's a total atheist.
4 Being a student's one thing; being a teacher's quite another.

23.4 **Complete the sentences with phrases from B opposite.**

1 Okay, you've cleaned the kitchen, ..., but what about the mess in the dining-room.
2 No need to panic. ...., it doesn't start till six.
3 She's bossy and sly, but ...., she *is* a friend.
4 .... saying you'll pay me back soon; *when* is what *I* want to know!

23.5 **Choose between *on the other hand* and *on the contrary*.**

1 I'm not worried; ...., I feel quite calm.
2 It's expensive, but ...., we do need it.

24 Addition

There are a number of ways of adding one idea to another in English. You probably already know words like **and**, **also** and **too**.

A Words for linking sentences/clauses

sentence/clause 1	*and*	*sentence/clause 2*
For this job you need a degree.	**In addition**	you need some experience.
Video cameras are becoming easier to use.	**Furthermore** **Moreover** **What's more***	they're becoming cheaper.
It'll take ages to get there and it'll cost a fortune.	**Besides****	we'll have to change trains three times at least.
Children should respect their parents.	**Equally** **Likewise**	they should respect their teachers.
We'll have all the stress of going to court and giving evidence.	**On top of (all) that*****	we'll have to pay the lawyers' bills.

* **furthermore** and **moreover** are normally interchangeable; **what's more** is informal; **what is more** is more formal.

** a more emphatic way of adding; similar in meaning to **anyway**.

*** even more emphatic; used mostly in informal spoken English.

Note also: To keep fit you need a good diet **plus** regular exercise. [normally used to connect noun phrases, but can connect clauses in informal speech]

B Adding words at the end of clauses/sentences

They sell chairs, tables, beds, **and so on** / etc. /et'setrə/

It'll go to the committee, then to the board, then to another committee, **and so on and so forth**. [suggests a long continuation]

He was a good sportsman and an excellent musician **into the bargain** / **to boot**. [emphasises the combination of items]

C Adding words that begin or come in the middle of clauses/sentences

Further to my letter of 18/9/92, I am writing to... [formal opening for a letter]
In addition to his BA in History he has a Ph.D. in Sociology.
He's on the school board, **as well** as being a local councillor.
Besides / **Apart from** having a salary, he also has a private income.
Alongside her many other hobbies she restores old racing cars.
Jo Evans was there, **along with** a few other people who I didn't know.

Note: This last group are followed by nouns or by -ing. Do *not* say: As well as she speaks French, she also speaks Japanese. (You can say: As well as **speaking** French, she...)

Exercises

24.1 **Fill the gaps in this letter with suitable adding words and phrases. Try to do it without looking at the opposite page.**

Dear Mr Stoneheart

.... (1) my letter of 16.3.94, I should like to give you more information concerning my qualifications and experience. .... (2) holding a Diploma in Catering, I also have an Advanced Certificate in Hotel Management. The course covered the usual areas: finance, front services, publicity, space allocation, ... (3) I also wish to point out that, ... (4) holding these qualifications, I have now been working in the hotel trade for five years. .... (5), my experience prior to that was also connected with tourism and hospitality.

I hope you will give my application due consideration.

Yours sincerely

Nora Hope

Nora Hope

24.2 **Rewrite the sentences using the word or phrase in brackets at the end.**

1 Physical labour can exhaust the body very quickly. Excessive study can rapidly reduce mental powers too. (equally)
2 My cousin turned up and some schoolmates of his came with him. (along with)
3 He owns a big chemical factory and he runs a massive oil business in the USA. (as well as)
4 She was my teacher and she was a good friend. (into the bargain)
5 I'm their scientific adviser and act as consultant to the Managing Director. (in addition to)

24.3 **Correct the mistakes in the use of addition words and phrases in these sentences.**

1 I work part-time as well as I am a student, so I have a busy life.
2 Besides to have a good job, my ambition is to meet someone nice to share my life with.
3 Alongside I have many other responsibilities, I now have to be in charge of staff training.
4 In addition has a degree, she also has a diploma.
5 Likewise my father won't agree, my mother's sure to find something to object to.
6 To boot she is a good footballer, she's a good athlete.
7 He said he'd have to first consider the organisation, then the system, then the finance and so forth so on.

24.4 **What adding words/phrases can you associate with these pictures?**

1

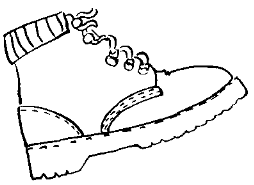

2

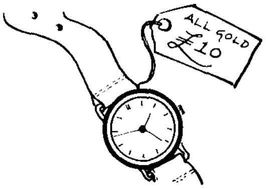

3

$2+2=4$

4

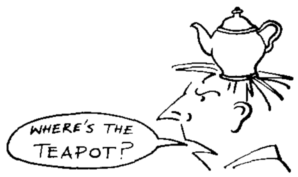
WHERE'S THE TEAPOT?

25 Text-referring words

A

Text-referring words are ones that pick up their content from the surrounding text. This sentence in isolation does not mean much:

> We decided to look at the problem again and try to find a solution.

What problem? We need to refer to some other sentence or to the context to find out. **Problem** and **solution** help organise the argument of the text, but they do not tell us the topic of the text. They refer to something somewhere else.

Here are some examples. What the word in bold refers to is underlined.

> Pollution is increasing. The **problem** is getting worse each day.
> Should taxes be raised or lowered? This was the biggest **issue** in the election. [topic causing great argument and controversy]
> Whether the war could have been avoided is a **question** that continues to interest historians.
> Let's discuss crime. It's always an interesting **topic**. [subject to argue about or discuss, e.g. in a debate or in an essay]
> Punishment is only one **aspect** of crime. [part of the topic]

Problem-solution words

Text-referring words are often associated with common patterns in text, such as the 'problem-solution' type of text. Note the words in bold connected with problems and solutions here and try to learn them as a family.

> The **situation** in our cities with regard to traffic is going from bad to worse. Congestion is a daily feature of urban life. The **problem** is now beginning to affect our national economies. Unless a new **approach** is found to controlling the number of cars, we will never find a **solution** to the **dilemma**.

In this dialogue, two politicians are arguing on the radio. Note how the words in bold refer to parts of the argument.

A: **Your claim** that we are doing nothing to invest in industry is false. We invested £10 billion last year. You have ignored **this fact**.
B: But the investment has all gone to service industries. **The real point** is that we need to invest in manufacturing.
A: **That argument** is out of date in a modern technological society. **Our position** has always been that we should encourage technology.
B: But **that view** will not help to reduce unemployment.
A: Rubbish. Utter rubbish.

Here are some more words associated with problem-solution texts. They are grouped in families associated with the key-words in bold. The prepositions which are normally used with these words are given in brackets.

> **situation:** state of affairs position (with regard to)
> **problem:** difficulty [more formal] crisis matter
> **response:** reaction (to) attitude (to)
> **solution:** answer (to) resolution (to) key (to) way out (of)
> **evaluation** [of the solution]**:** assessment judgement

Exercises

25.1 **Draw lines from the left-hand column to the right-hand column joining each sentence with a suitable label, as in the example.**

1 The earth is in orbit around the sun.
2 World poverty and overpopulation.
3 God exists and loves everybody.
4 I've run out of cash.
5 It has proved to be most efficient.
6 They should get married, to my mind.

problem
evaluation
fact
belief
view
issue

25.2 **Fill the gaps with an appropriate word to refer to the underlined parts of the sentences.**

1 So you were talking about animal rights? That's quite a big .... in Britain nowadays.
2 We are running short of funds. How do you propose we should deal with the ....?
3 Is there life on other planets? This is a .... nobody has yet been able to answer.
4 (Teacher to the class) You can write your essay on 'My best holiday ever'. If you don't like that ...., I'll give you another one.
5 She thinks we should all fly around in tiny little helicopters. This .... to the traffic problem in cities is rather new and unusual. I wonder if it is viable?

25.3 **These newspaper headlines have got separated from their texts. Put each one with a suitable text.**

NEW APPROACH TO CANCER TREATMENT

NEW ARGUMENT OVER ECONOMIC RECESSION

SCIENTIST REJECTS CLAIMS OVER FAST FOOD

PRIME MINISTER SETS OUT VIEWS ON EUROPEAN UNION

SOLUTION TO AGE-OLD MYSTERY IN KENYA

SITUATION IN SAHEL WORSENING DAILY

1
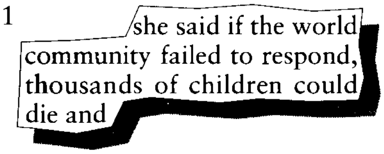
she said if the world community failed to respond, thousands of children could die and

2
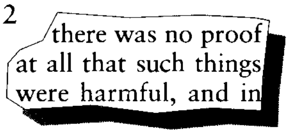
there was no proof at all that such things were harmful, and in

3
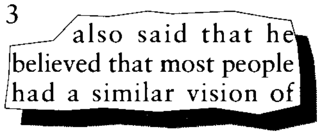
also said that he believed that most people had a similar vision of

4
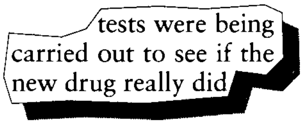
tests were being carried out to see if the new drug really did

5
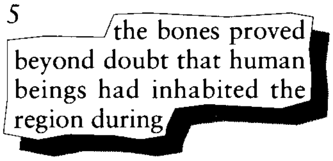
the bones proved beyond doubt that human beings had inhabited the region during

6
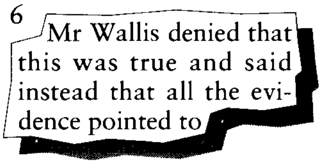
Mr Wallis denied that this was true and said instead that all the evidence pointed to

25.4 **Answer these questions with regard to yourself.**

1 What's your approach to learning vocabulary?
2 What aspect of your work/studies do you find most interesting?
3 Which topics in this book are most useful?

26 Uncountable words

Uncountable nouns are not normally used with a(n) or the plural, e.g. **information,** *not* an information, or some informations. It is a good idea to learn uncountable nouns in groups associated with the same subject or area. Here are some possible headings.

A Travel

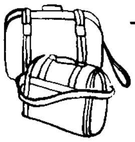
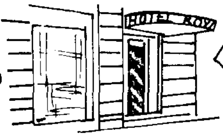
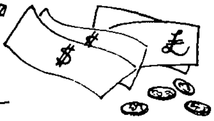
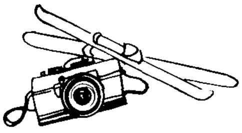
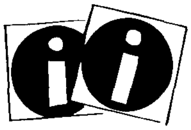

luggage **baggage** (Am. Eng.)	**accommodation**	**money** **currency**	**equipment** (e.g. for skiing)	**information**

Travel is also an uncountable noun, e.g. Travel broadens the mind.

B Day-to-day household items

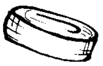
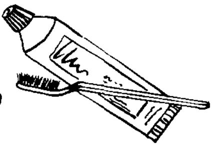
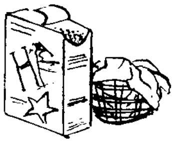
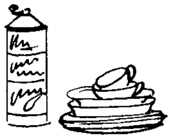
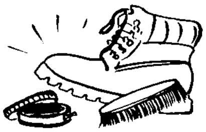
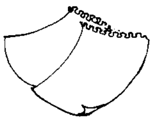

soap **toothpaste** **washing powder** **washing-up liquid** **polish** **paper**

C Food

The word **food** is uncountable. Try adding more uncountable words to this list.

sugar **rice** **spaghetti** **butter** **flour** *soup* ....

D Some rather abstract words are uncountable

She gave me some **advice** on how to study for the exam.
I picked up some interesting **knowledge** on that course.
She's made a lot of **progress** in a very short time.
She has done some **research** on marine life.
They've done a lot of **work** on the project.

E Materials and resources

For **making clothes, etc.:** cloth (e.g. cotton, silk) leather wool
For **buildings:** stone brick plastic wood/timber concrete
For **energy:** coal oil petrol gas

F Typical mistakes

Don't say: What a terrible weather! She has long hairs. I have a news for you. We bought some new furnitures. *Say*: What terrible weather! She has long hair. I have some news for you. We bought some new furniture. (See also Unit 27.)

> *Tip*: always mark an uncountable noun with (U) in your vocabulary notebook, or write 'some...' or 'a lot of...' before it.

Exercises

26.1 Say whether these sentences need *a(n)* or not. Some of the nouns are not on the left-hand page. Use a dictionary that tells you whether the nouns are uncountable.

1 He gave us all .... advice on what to take with us.
2 I'm sorry. I can't come. I have .... homework to do.
3 She's doing .... investigation of teenage slang in English for her university project.
4 You'll need .... rice if you want to make a Chinese meal.
5 Paula getting divorced? That's .... interesting news!
6 I have to buy .... film for the holiday. I think I'll get about five rolls.
7 We saw .... beautiful silk and .... cotton in Thailand.

26.2 Sort these words into two columns side by side, one for *uncountables* and one for *countables.* Then join the words which have similar meaning.

tip clothing case information job advice travel garment
trip work baggage fact

26.3 Imagine you are going away for a week's holiday and you pack a suitcase with a number of things. Make a list of what you would pack and consider how many of the items on your list are *uncountable* nouns in English.

26.4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1 We had such a terrible weather that we left the camp-site and got an accommodation in town instead.
2 In the North of England, most houses are made of stones, but in the South, bricks are more common.
3 I love antique furnitures, but I would need an advice from a specialist before I bought any. My knowledges in that area are very poor.
4 Her researches are definitely making great progresses these days. She has done a lot of original works recently.

26.5 Another area that has a number of uncountable words is personal qualities and skills. For example, we might say that a secretary should have *intelligence, reliability, charm* and *enthusiasm.* These are all uncountable nouns. Choose from the list and say what qualities these people should have. Say whether they need *some, a lot* or *a bit* of the quality. Use a dictionary for any difficult words.

Jobs: soldier nurse teacher explorer actor athlete writer surgeon receptionist

Qualities: patience courage determination goodwill charm stamina reliability loyalty energy experience commitment talent creativity intelligence training

26.6 Could I have...? Practise asking for these everyday items and decide whether you must say *a* or *some.*

vinegar duster needle thread sellotape tea-bag polish

27 Words that only occur in the plural

A Tools, instruments, pieces of equipment

Some of these are always plural.

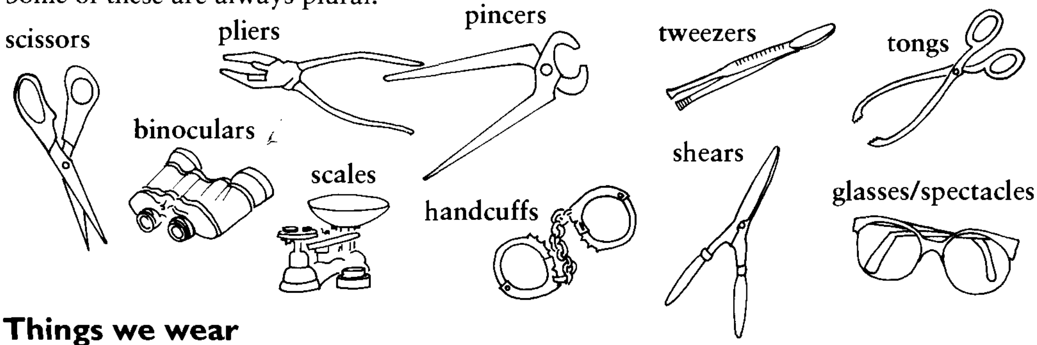
scissors
pliers
pincers
tweezers
tongs
binoculars
scales
handcuffs
shears
glasses/spectacles

Things we wear

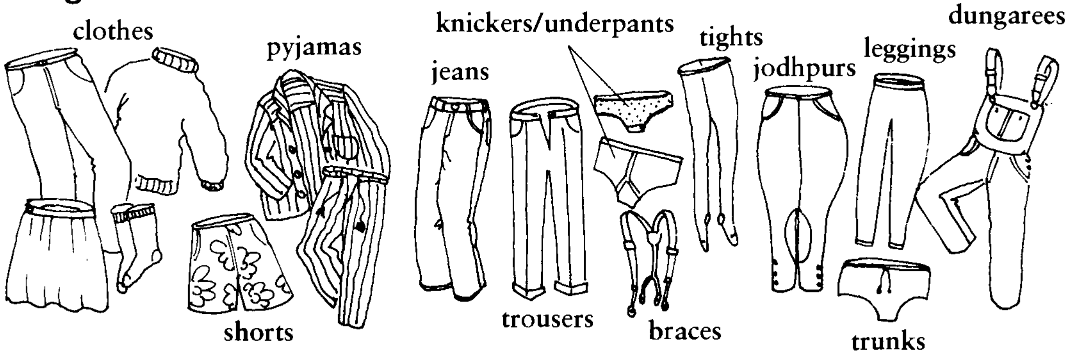
clothes
pyjamas
knickers/underpants
tights
dungarees
leggings
jeans
jodhpurs
shorts
trousers
braces
trunks

Some other useful words

When I move to London, I'll have to find **lodgings**. [e.g. a room]
When will the **goods** be delivered? [articles/items]
The architect inspected the **foundations** before declaring that the **premises** were safe.
The military **authorities** have established their **headquarters** in the old Town Hall.
The **acoustics** in the new opera-house are near-perfect.
The **contents** of the house were sold after her death.
Looks are less important than personality in a partner.
As you come to the **outskirts** of the village, there are **traffic-lights**. Turn left there.
The **stairs** are a bit dangerous; be careful.
The **proceeds** of the concert are going to the children's fund.
A terrorist has escaped from prison. Her **whereabouts** are unknown.

Words with plural form but used mostly with singular verbs

Names of some games: billiards dominoes draughts darts bowls
Names of subjects/activities: physics economics classics gymnastics aerobics athletics maths

Note: some words look plural but are not, e.g. series, means, news, spaghetti

There was a **series** of programmes on TV about Japan.
Is there a cheap **means** of transport I could use to get there?

Exercises

27.1 Make a list of (a) subjects you studied at school or elsewhere, and (b) your leisure interests. How many of the words are plural? Check the left-hand page or in a dictionary.

27.2 What things which are always plural can be used to:

1 cut a hedge? *shears*
2 weigh something?
3 cut paper?
4 hold your trousers up?
5 get a splinter out of your skin?
6 look at distant objects?
7 get a nail out of a piece of wood?
8 keep a prisoner's hands together?

27.3 How many articles on the clothes line are plural nouns?

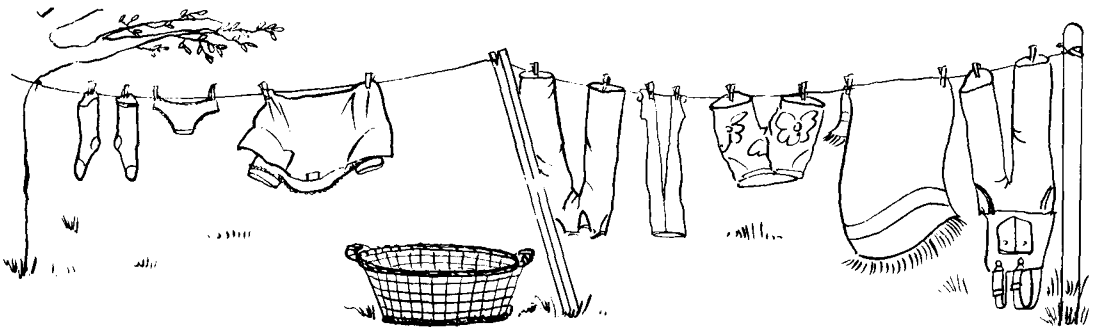

27.4 Fill the gaps with an appropriate plural-form noun.

1 (To a child) Come on! Get your .... on! It's time to go to bed.
2 The .... of the rock concert are going to the international 'Save the Children fund'.
3 The .... in the new concert hall are superb. I've never heard such clear sound.
4 The escaped prisoner is tall, dark and has a beard. His .... are unknown, but the search is continuing.
5 You don't have to wear .... to ride, but it's much more comfortable.
6 The .... have forbidden the import of all foreign ....

27.5 Odd one out. In each of these groups, one of the nouns is always used in the plural. Which one?

1 wellington trouser slipper
2 billiard squash archery
3 knife scissor razor
4 tracksuit costume dungaree

27.6 In this little story, there are some nouns that should be plural but are not. Change the text where appropriate.

I decided that if I wanted to be a pop star I'd have to leave home and get lodging in London. I finally got a room, but it was on the outskirt of the city. The owner didn't live on the premise, so I could make as much noise as I liked. The acoustic in the bathroom was fantastic, so I practised there. I made so much noise I almost shook the foundation! I went to the headquarter of the Musicians' Union, but a guy there said I just didn't have a good enough look to be famous. Oh well, never mind!

28 Countable and uncountable with different meanings

A

When we use a noun countably we are thinking of specific **things**; when we use it uncountably we are thinking of **stuff** or **material** or the idea **of a thing in general**.

stuff/materials		*things*	
glass	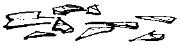	**a glass / glasses**	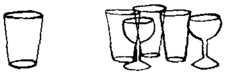
cloth	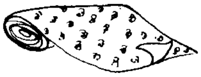	**a cloth**	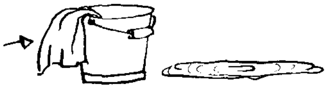
fish	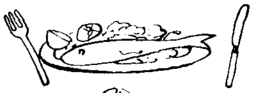	**a fish**	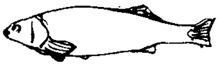
work	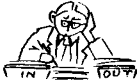	**a work**	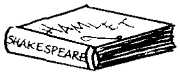

Be careful! there's broken **glass** on the road. I need **a cloth** to wipe the table.
We had **fish** for dinner. Hamlet is one of Shakespeare's most famous **works**.

Here are some more nouns used in both ways. Make sure you know the difference between the uncountable and the countable meaning.

drink / a drink **hair / a hair** **paper / a paper** **land / a land**
people / a people **home / a home** **policy / a policy** **trade /a trade**

Drink was the cause of all his problems. [alcohol]
There's **a hair** in my sandwich, a dark one; it must be yours.
Did you buy **a paper** this morning? [a newspaper]
I love meeting **people** from different countries. [individuals]
The different **peoples** of Asia. [races / national groups]
Her grandmother lives in **a home.** [an institution]
I've lost my car **insurance policy**. [a document]
Trade with China has increased. [imports and exports]

B

The names of food items often have a different shade of meaning when used countably and uncountably (see **fish** above).

coffee/tea	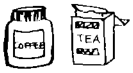	⟶	a coffee and two teas	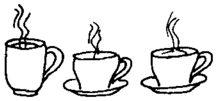
potato	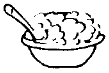	⟶	just two **potatoes**, please!	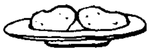
would you like some **chocolate**?	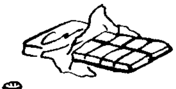	⟶	would you like **a chocolate**?	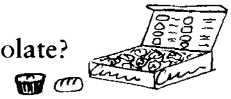
salt and **pepper**	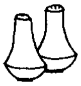	⟶	**a pepper**	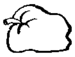
a hot dog with **onion**	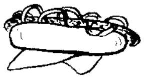	⟶	**an onion**	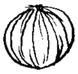

Exercises

28.1 **Would you normally expect to find the following things in most people's houses/flats or garages/gardens? Where in those places would you expect to find them?**

Example: an iron *Yes, most people have an iron to iron their clothes; they might keep it in the kitchen somewhere.*

1 a cloth
2 a wood
3 iron
4 a fish
5 pepper
6 glass
7 paper
8 a tape
9 drink
10 a rubber

28.2 **Which question would you ask? *Can I have/borrow a...?* or *Can I have/borrow some...?***

Example: cake *Can I have some cake?*

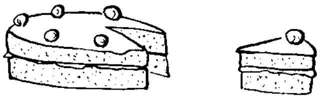

1 iron

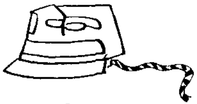

2 pepper

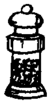

3 chocolate

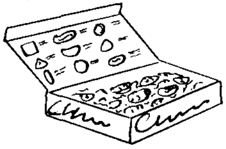

4 paper

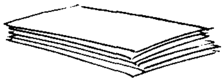

5 rubber

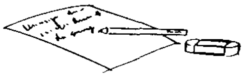

6 glass

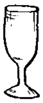

28.3 **Answer these remarks using the word in brackets, as in the example. Use *a(n)* if the meaning is countable.**

Example: Oh dear! I've spilt water on the floor! (cloth) *Never mind. Here's a cloth; just wipe it up.*

1 How did you get that puncture in your tyre? (glass)
2 I was surprised to hear that old Mrs Jones doesn't live with her family any more. (home)
3 What do you think my son should do? He's just left school and he's not really academic. He needs a job. (trade)
4 Why did you choose this house in the end? (land)
5 Mum, what's the *Mona Lisa*? (work)
6 How can I find out what the restrictions are on this car insurance? (policy)

28.4 **What is the difference between (a) and (b) in each pair?**

1 a) Have some sauce with your hot dog.
  b) Shall I make a sauce with the fish?

2 a) PLANT AND HEAVY MACHINERY CROSSING (road sign)
  b) I've bought you a house plant.

3 a) Can I have some light?
  b) Can I have a light?

29 Collective nouns

Collective nouns are used to describe a **group** of the same things.

A People

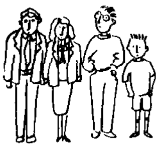

a **group** of people
(small group)

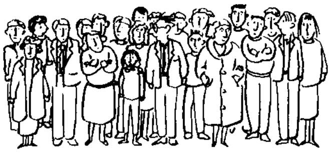

a **crowd** of people
(large number)

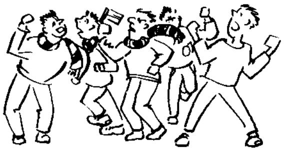

a **gang** of football fans
(rather negative)

B Words associated with certain animals

A **flock** of sheep or birds, e.g. geese/pigeons; a **herd** of cows, deer, goats; a **shoal** of fish (or any particular fish, e.g. a shoal of herring/mackerel – note the use of singular here); a **swarm** of insects (or any particular insect, most typically flying ones, e.g. a **swarm** of bees/gnats)

Note: a **pack** of... can be used for dogs or hyenas, wolves, etc. as well as for (playing) cards.

People involved in the same job/activity

A **team** of surgeons/doctors/experts/reporters/scientists/rescue-workers/detectives arrived at the scene of the disaster.
The **crew** were all saved when the ship sank. [workers on a ship]
The **company** are rehearsing a new production. [group of actors]
The **cast** were all amateurs. [actors in a particular production]
The **staff** are on strike. [general word for groups who share a place of work, e.g. teachers in a school, people in an office]

D Physical features of landscapes

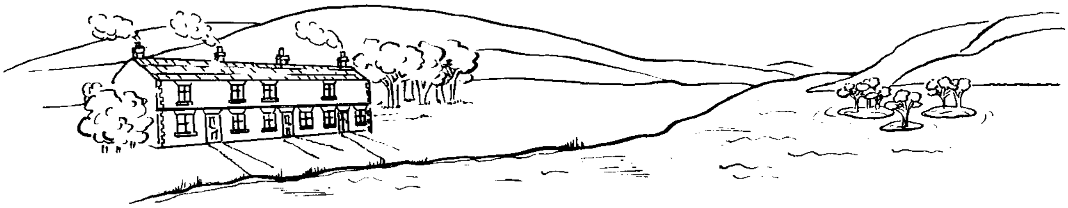

In the picture we can see a **row** of cottages near a clump of trees with a **range** of hills in the background. Out on the lake there is a small **group** of islands.

Things in general

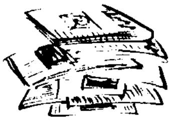

a **pile/heap** of papers (or clothes, dishes,toys, etc.)

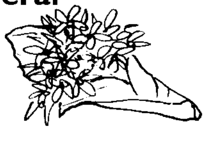

a **bunch** of flowers (or grapes, bananas, berries, etc.)

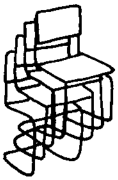

a **stack** of chairs (or tables, boxes, logs, etc.)

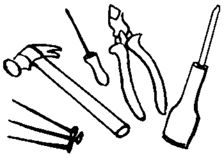

a **set** of tools (or pots and pans, etc.)

Exercises

29.1 **Fill each gap with a suitable collective noun.**

1 There are .... of mosquitoes in the forests in Scandinavia in the summer.
2 As we looked over the side of the boat, we saw a .... of brightly coloured fish swimming just below the surface.
3 There was a .... of youths standing on the corner; they didn't look at all friendly.
4 You'll see a .... of cards on the bookshelf. Will you fetch them for me, please?
5 The government has appointed a .... of biologists to look into the problem.

29.2 **In each case, one of the examples is wrong. Which one?**

1 Company is often used for: actors opera singers swimmers
2 Cast is often used for people in: a play a book a film
3 Crew is often used for the staff of: an ambulance a plane a hospital
4 Pack is often used for: cats hyenas wolves
5 Flock is often used for: sheep starlings pigs

29.3 **Draw a line from the left-hand column to the right-hand column joining collective words with appropriate nouns, as in the example.**

1 a clump of	houses
2 a range of	midges
3 a gang of	fir-trees
4 a swarm of	elephants
5 a row of	bed-linen
6 a heap of	mountains
7 a herd of	schoolkids

29.4 **Rewrite these sentences using collective words. Don't forget to make the verb singular where necessary.**

1 There are some tables on top of one another in the next room.
2 There are a large number of people waiting outside.
3 The people who work there are very well-paid.
4 A large number of sheep had escaped from a field.
5 She gave me six identical sherry glasses.
6 She gave me five or six beautiful roses.

29.5 **Some collective nouns are associated with words about using language. Underline any you can see in this news text and make a note of them in your vocabulary notebook.**

THE JOURNALISTS raised a whole host of questions about the actions of the police during the demonstration. There had been a barrage of complaints about police violence. The Chief of Police replied that he was not prepared to listen to a string of wild allegations without any evidence. In the end, he just gave a series of short answers that left everyone dissatisfied.

30 Making uncountable words countable

A You can make many uncountable nouns singular by adding a **bit of** or a **piece of**. Similarly you can make such nouns plural with **bits of** or **pieces of**. (**Bit** is less formal than **piece**.)

She bought an attractive old **piece of** furniture at the auction sale.
How many **pieces of** luggage have you got with you?
I heard a really useful **bit of** information yesterday.
Chopin wrote some wonderful **pieces of** music.
Before you go to England I should give you two **bits of** advice...
He spends all his money buying new **bits of** computer equipment.

B Although **bit** and **piece** can be used with the majority of uncountable nouns there are also a number of other words which can be used with specific uncountable nouns.

Weather

We have certainly had a good **spell of** summer weather this year.
Did you hear that **rumble of** thunder?
Yes, I did. It came almost immediately after the **flash of** lightning.
I heard a sharp **clap of** thunder, then a few rumbles in the distance.
A sudden **gust of** wind turned my umbrella inside out.
There was a sudden **shower of** rain this morning.
Did you feel a **spot of** rain?

Groceries

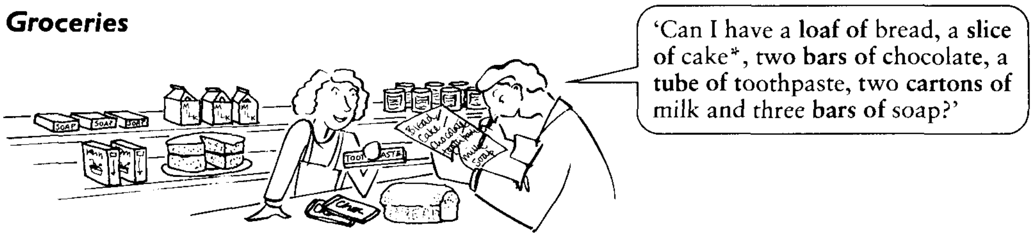
'Can I have a **loaf of** bread, a **slice of** cake*, two **bars of** chocolate, a **tube of** toothpaste, two **cartons of** milk and three **bars of** soap?'
SOAP
SOAP
SOAP
TOOTHPASTE
Bread
Cake
Chocolate
Toothpaste
Milk
Soap

*Slice can also be used with toast, bread, meat and cheese.

Nature

Look at the ladybird on that **blade of** grass!
What's happened? Look at that **cloud of** smoke hanging over the town!
She blew little **puffs of** smoke out of her cigarette straight into my face.
Let's go out and get a **breath of** fresh air.
Put another **lump of** coal on the fire, please. [**lump** can also be used with 'sugar']

Other

I had an amazing **stroke** of luck this morning.
I've never seen him do a **stroke of** work. [only in negative sentences]
I've never seen him in such a **fit of** temper before.
The donkey is the basic **means of** transport on the island.
Tights must be the most useful **article/item of** clothing ever invented.
There was an interesting **item of** news about France on TV last night.

The phrase a **state of** can serve to make uncountable nouns singular. The nouns used with **state** are usually abstract and include chaos, emergency, tension, confusion, health, disorder, uncertainty, poverty, agitation, disrepair and flux, e.g. **a state of** emergency.

Exercises

30.1 **Match the words in the list on the left with their partner on the right.**

1 a stroke
2 a shower
3 an article
4 a lump
5 a flash
6 a blade
7 an item
8 a rumble

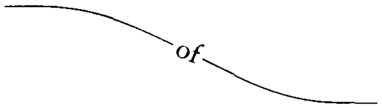

lightning
coal
grass
news
rain
clothing
thunder
luck

30.2 **Change the uncountable nouns to countable nouns in the following sentences by using either a *bit/piece of* or one of the more specific words listed in B opposite.**

Example: Could you buy me some bread, please? *Could you buy me a loaf of bread, please?*

1 My mother gave me some advice which I have always remembered.
2 Suddenly the wind almost blew him off his feet.
3 We had some terribly windy weather last winter.
4 Would you like some more toast?
5 He never does any work at all in the house.
6 Let's go into the garden – I need some fresh air.
7 I can give you some important information about that.
8 We could see smoke hovering over the city from a long way away.
9 There is some interesting new equipment in that catalogue.
10 I need to get some furniture for my flat.

30.3 **Use words from C opposite to fit the clues for the puzzle below.**

1 The government announced a state of .... after the earthquake.
2 My granny wouldn't be in such a bad state of .... now if she hadn't smoked all her life.
3 We fell in love with the house although it was in a dreadful state of ....
4 We are still in a state of .... as to who has won the election.
5 Although this is supposed to be an affluent society, more people are living in a state of .... here now than for the last 50 years.

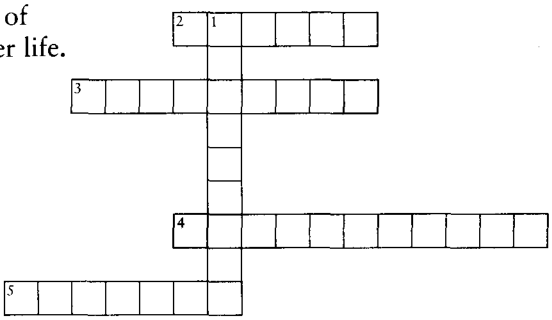

30.4 **Make up a puzzle of your own like the one above using the language practised in this unit. If possible, test a friend.**

30.5 **Now decide who or what might be in the following states and write your own sentences using these expressions.**

1 chaos 2 flux 3 confusion 4 tension

(See also Unit 32 for more weather words.)

31 Countries, nationalities and languages

A Using 'the'

Most names of countries are used without 'the', but some countries and other names have 'the' before them, e.g. **The USA, The United Kingdom / UK, The Commonwealth.**

Some countries may be referred to with or without 'the' (the) **Lebanon,** (the) **Gambia,** (the) Ukraine, (the) **Sudan.**

Adjectives referring to countries and languages

With -ish: British Irish Flemish Danish Turkish Spanish
With -(i)an: Canadian Brazilian American Russian Australian
With -ese: Japanese Chinese Guyanese Burmese Maltese Taiwanese
With -i: Israeli Iraqi Kuwaiti Pakistani Yemeni Bangladeshi
With -ic: Icelandic Arabic

Some, adjectives are worth learning separately e.g. **Swiss, Thai, Greek, Dutch, Cypriot.**

Nationalities

Some nationalities have nouns for referring to people, e.g. a Finn, a Swede, a Turk, a Spaniard, a Dane, a Briton, an Arab. For most nationalities we can use the adjective as a noun, e.g. a German, an Italian, a Belgian, a Catalan, a Greek, an African. Some need woman/man/person added to them (you can't say 'a Dutch'), so if in doubt, use them, e.g. a Dutch man, a French woman, an Irish person, an Icelandic man.

World regions

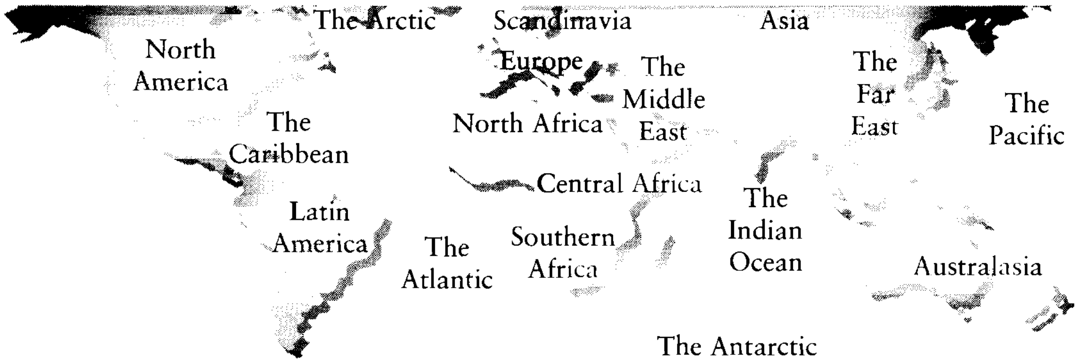
The Arctic
Scandinavia
Asia
North America
Europe
The Middle East
The Far East
The Pacific
The Caribbean
North Africa
Central Africa
The Indian Ocean
Latin America
The Atlantic
Southern Africa
Australasia
The Antarctic

E Peoples and races

People belong to **ethnic groups** and **regional groups** such as **Afro-Caribbeans, Asians** and **Orientals** and **Latin Americans.** What are you? (e.g. **North African, Southern African, European, Melanesian**)

They speak **dialects** as well as languages. Everyone has a **mother tongue** or **first language;** many have **second** and **third languages.** Some people are perfect in more than one language and are **bilingual** or **multilingual.**

name: Wanija Krishnamurthan
nationality: Malaysian
mother tongue: Tamil (S. India)
second/third languages: English, Malay
type or dialect of English: Malaysian
ethnic group: Asian (Tamil Indian)

Exercises

31.1 Ways of learning nationality and language adjectives. Some adjectives can form regiona groups, e.g. Latin American countries are almost all described by *-(i)an* adjectives.

1 Complete this list of Latin American adjectives. Look at a world map if you have t Brazilian, Chilean,...

2 The same applies to former European socialist countries and parts of the former So Union. Complete the list. Hungarian, Armenian,...

3 What other regional groupings can you see on the left-hand page? (e.g. many *-ish* adjectives are European)

31.2 Famous names. Can you name a famous...

Example: Argentinian sportsman or woman? *Diego Maradonna*

1 Chinese politician?
2 Black Southern African political figure?
3 Polish person who became a world religious leader?
4 Italian opera singer?
5 Irish rock-music group?

31.3 All these nationality adjectives have a change in stress and/or pronunciation from the ıe of the country. Make sure you can pronounce them. Use a dictionary for any you don know. Use phonetic script if possible (see Unit 5).

Example: Iran → Iranian /ɪ'reɪnɪən/ (US = /ɪ'rænɪən/)

1 Panama	→	Panamanian	4 Jordan	→	Jordanian
2 Cyprus	→	Cypriot	5 Egypt	→	Egyptian
3 Ghana	→	Ghanaian	6 Fiji	→	Fijian

31.4 Correct the mistakes in these newspaper headlines.

1 Madonna to marry a French? Hollywood sensation!

2 Britains have highest tax rate in EC

3 Vietnamian refugees leave Hong Kong camps

4 POLICE ARREST DANISH SMUGGLING CHARGE

5 Iraqian delegation me Pakistanian Presiden

31.5 World quiz

1 What are the main ethnic groups in Malaysia?
2 Which countries, strictly speaking, are in Scandinavia?
3 What are the five countries with the highest population?
4 How many languages are there in the world?
5 Where is Kiribati?
6 Where do people speak Inuit?
7 What are the five most widely spoken languages?

Follow-up: Make sure you can describe your nationality, country, region, ethnic group, language(s), etc. in English.

32 The weather

A Cold weather

In Scandinavia, the **chilly** (1) days of autumn soon change to the cold days of winter. The first **frosts** (2) arrive and the roads become icy. Rain becomes **sleet** (3) and then snow, at first turning to **slush** (4) in the streets, but soon **settling** (5), with severe **blizzards** (6) and **snowdrifts** (7) in the far north. Freezing weather often continues in the far north until May or even June, when the ground starts to **thaw** (8) and the ice **melts** (9) again.

(1) cold, but not very (2) thin white coat of ice on everything (3) rain and snow mixed (4) dirty, brownish, half-snow, half-water (5) staying as a white covering (6) snow blown by high winds (7) deep banks of snow against walls, etc. (8) change from hard, frozen state to normal (9) change from solid to liquid under heat

Warm/hot weather

close /kləʊs/ [warm and uncomfortable] **stifling** [hot, uncomfortable, you can hardly breathe] **humid** [hot and damp, makes you sweat a lot] **scorching** [very hot, often used in positive contexts] **boiling** [very hot, often used in negative contexts] **mild** [warm at a time when it is normally cold] *Note also*: We had a **heatwave** last month. [very hot, dry period]

Wet weather

This wet weather scale gets stronger from left to right.

damp → **drizzle** → **pour down / downpour** → **torrential rain** → **flood**

Autumn in London is usually **chilly** and **damp** with **rain** and **drizzle**.
It was absolutely **pouring down**. *or* There was a real **downpour**.
In the Tropics there is usually **torrential rain** most days, and the roads often get **flooded**. *or* There are **floods** on the roads.

This rain won't last long; it's only a **shower**. [short duration]
The **storm** damaged several houses. [high winds and rain together]
We got very wet in the **thunderstorm**. [thunder and heavy rain]
Hailstones were battering the roof of our car. [small balls of ice falling from the sky]. Note also **hail** (uncountable).
The sky's a bit **overcast**; I think it's going to rain. [very cloudy]
We had a **drought** /draʊt/ last summer. It didn't rain for six weeks.

D Mist and fog

Nouns and adjectives: **haze/hazy** [light mist, usually caused by heat] **mist/misty** [light fog, often on the sea, or caused by drizzle] **fog/foggy** [quite thick, associated with cold weather] **smog** [mixture of fog and pollution (**smoke** + **fog**)]

E Wind

There was a gentle **breeze** on the beach, just enough to cool us.
There's a good **wind** today; fancy going sailing?
It's a very **blustery** day; the umbrella will just blow away.
There's been a **gale** warning; it would be crazy to go sailing.
People boarded up their windows when they heard there was a **hurricane** on the way.

Exercises

32.1 **Match each word with a word from the box.**

1 thunder 2 torrential 3 down 4 heat 5 hail 6 snow 7 gale

stones drift storm warning rain wave pour

32.2 **Fill the gaps with words from the left-hand page.**

My first experience of real winter weather was when I went to Northern Canada. I was used to the sort of snow that falls in London, which quickly turns into brown .... (1) with all the people walking on it. In fact, most of the time I was in London, it didn't really snow properly, it was mostly .... (2). Apart from that, British winters meant a bit of white .... (3) on my garden and occasionally having to drive very carefully on icy roads early in the morning. I had never experienced the .... (4) and .... (5) that can paralyse a whole city in less than an hour and close roads completely. However, when the earth finally .... (6) and all the snow .... (7) away in spring, everything comes to life again and looks more beautiful than ever.

32.3 **What kinds of weather do you think caused the following to happen? Write a sentence which could go *before* each of these.**

1 We had to sit in the shade every afternoon.
2 The sweat was pouring out of us.
3 I can hardly breathe; I wish it would rain to cool us down.
4 Cars were skidding out of control.
5 Even the postman had to use a boat to get around.
6 They had to close the airport; the snow was a metre deep.
7 We were able to sit in the garden in the middle of winter.
8 The earth became rock-hard and a lot of plants died.
9 It blew the newspaper clean out of my hands.
10 A row of big trees had been uprooted like matchsticks.
11 I could hardly see my hand in front of my face.

32.4 **What types of weather are bad and good for doing these things?**

Example: Skiing *bad: mild weather which makes the snow melt; good: cold, clear days*

1 Planting flowers in a garden
2 Having an evening barbecue
3 Going out in a small sailing boat
4 A day of sightseeing in a big city
5 Camping out in a tent
6 Looking at ships through binoculars

32.5 **This chart shows anyone who wants to visit the West of Ireland what weather to expect at different times of the year. Make a similar chart for your country or home region.**

Dec–Mar	*April–June*	*July–Aug*	*Sep–Nov*
coldest months; usually quite wet; snow on high ground	generally cool, often wet and windy but improving	warmest months; bright with showers; cool sea breezes	often mild becoming cold; mist and fog

33 Describing people – appearance

A Hair, face, skin and complexion

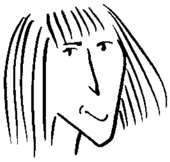

straight hair
and **thin-faced**

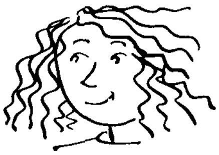

wavy hair
and **round-faced**

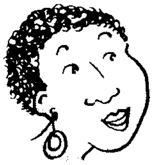

curly hair
and **dark-skinned**

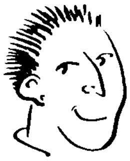

a **crew-cut**

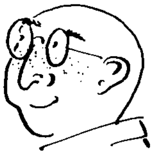

bald
with **freckles**

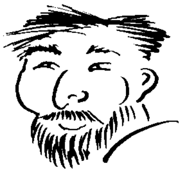

beard and **moustache**
with a **chubby** face

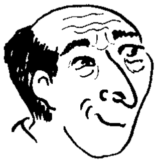

receding hair
and a few **wrinkles**

He used to have **black** hair but now it's gone **grey**, almost **white**.
What sort of person would you like to go out with? **Blonde**, **fair**, **dark** or **ginger-haired** / **red-haired**?
She has such beautiful **auburn** hair. [red-brown]

Fair and **dark** can be used for hair, complexion or skin.

B Height and build

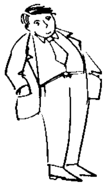

a rather **plump** or
stout man

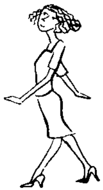

a **slim** woman
[positive]

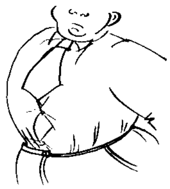

an **obese** person
[negative, very fat]

Fat may sound impolite. Instead we often say a **bit overweight**. If someone is broad and solid, we can say they are **stocky**. A person with good muscles can be **well-built or muscular**. If someone is terribly thin and refuses to eat, they may be **anorexic**.

C General appearance

She's a very **smart** and **elegant** woman, always **well-dressed**; her husband is quite the opposite, very **scruffy** and **untidy-looking**.
He's very **good-looking**, but his friend's rather **unattractive**.
Do you think **beautiful** women are always attracted to **handsome** men? I don't. I think **first impressions** matter most.

Tip: The suffix -ish is useful for describing people: (see Unit 8)
She's **tallish**. He has **brownish** hair. He must be **thirtyish**.

Exercises

33.1 **Answer these remarks with the *opposite* description.**

Example: A: I thought you said he was the short, chubby one.
B: No, quite the opposite, *he's the tall, thin-faced one*

1 A: Was that his brother, the dark-skinned, wavy-haired one?
B: No, quite the opposite, his brother's...
2 A: She's always quite well-dressed, so I've heard.
B: What! Who told you that? Every time I see her, she's...
3 A: So Charlene's that rather plump fair-haired woman, is she?
B: No, you're looking at the wrong one. Charlene's...
4 A: So, tell us about the new boss; good looking?
B: No, I'm afraid not; rather...
5 A: I don't know why, but I expected the tour-guide to be middle-aged or elderly.
B: No, apparently she's only...

33.2 **Write one sentence to describe each of these people, giving information about their hair and face, their height and build and general appearance.**

1 you yourself
2 your best friend
3 a neighbour
4 your ideal of a handsome man/a beautiful woman

Now, in the same way, describe somebody very famous, give some extra clues about them, e.g. *pop star/politician*, and see if someone else can guess who you are describing.

33.3 **From these jumbled words, find combinations for describing people, as in the example. Not all of the words are on the left-hand page. Some of the combinations are hyphenated. Use a dictionary if necessary. *Example*:** *good-looking*

looking long haired good aged dressed legged
stocky round faced complexion build race
middle over- well mixed red weight tanned

33.4 WANTED! MISSING! Complete the gaps in these police posters.

WANTED FOR MURDER

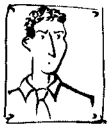

Ian Prowse,
height 6ft,
.... -faced,
.... hair,
.... skin

Wanted for Robbery

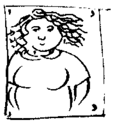

Sandra King
height 5ft 4,
.... hair,
.... build,
..........................-faced

Missing

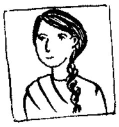

Louise Fox
age 7, Asian
..........................,
....
hair.

Wanted
dead or alive

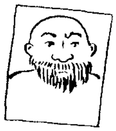

Jake 'Dagger' Flagstone, 6ft
.........................., with
.... and ....;
.... build.

33.5 Make a collection of descriptions of people from newspapers and magazines. Court/crime reports, celebrity and gossip pages of magazines, and the 'personal' columns where people are seeking partners are good places to start.

34 Describing people – character

Intellectual ability

Ability: intelligent bright clever smart shrewd able gifted talented brainy (colloquial)
Lacking ability: stupid foolish half-witted simple silly brainless daft dumb dim (the last four are predominantly colloquial words)
Clever, in a negative way, using brains to trick or deceive: cunning crafty sly

Attitudes towards life

Looking on either the bright or the black side of things: optimistic pessimistic
Outward-looking or inward-looking (i.e. to the world around one or to one's own inner world): extroverted introverted
Calm or not calm with regard to attitude to life: relaxed tense
Practical, not dreamy in approach to life: sensible down-to-earth
Feeling things very intensely: sensitive

C Attitudes towards other people

Enjoying others' company: sociable gregarious
Disagreeing with others: quarrelsome argumentative
Taking pleasure in others' pain: cruel sadistic
Relaxed in attitude to self and others: easy-going even-tempered
Not polite to others: impolite rude ill-mannered discourteous
Telling the truth to others: honest trustworthy reliable sincere
Unhappy if others have what one does not have oneself: jealous envious

D One person's meat is another person's poison

Some characteristics can be either positive or negative depending on your point of view. The words in the right-hand column mean roughly the same as the words in the left-hand column except that they have negative rather than positive connotations.

determined	⟶	obstinate stubborn pig-headed
thrifty/economical	⟶	miserly mean tight-fisted
self-assured	⟶	self-important arrogant full of oneself (colloquial)
assertive	⟶	aggressive bossy (colloquial)
original	⟶	peculiar weird eccentric odd
frank/direct/open	⟶	blunt abrupt brusque curt
broad-minded	⟶	unprincipled permissive
inquiring	⟶	inquisitive nosy (colloquial)
generous	⟶	extravagant
innocent	⟶	naive
ambitious	⟶	pushy (colloquial)

(See also Units 12, 73 and 78.)

Exercises

34.1 Match these words with their opposites.

1 clever
2 extroverted
3 rude
4 cruel
5 generous
6 unsociable

introverted
tight-fisted
courteous
gregarious
kind-hearted
half-witted

34.2 Do you think that the speaker likes or dislikes the people s/he is talking about?

1 Di's very thrifty.
2 Molly's usually frank.
3 Liz's quite broad-minded
4 Sam can be aggressive.
5 Dick's quite bossy.
6 I find Dave self-important.
7 Don't you think Jim's nosy?
8 Jill is very original.

34.3 Reword the sentences above to give the opposite impression. *Example*: Di's very stingy.

34.4 Magazines often publish questionnaires which are supposed to analyse your character for you. Look at the words below and then match them to the question which aims to decide whether a person is like that.

Example: If you arrange to meet at 7 p.m., do you arrive at 7 p.m.? Reliable

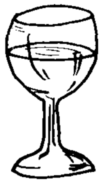

pessimistic argumentative sensitive sociable
extravagant assertive inquisitive

1 Do you prefer to be in the company of other people?
2 Look at the picture. Do you think 'my glass is half empty'?
3 Do you find it easy to tell your boss if you feel he or she has treated you badly?
4 Do you always look out of the window if you hear a car draw up?
5 Do you often buy your friends presents for no particular reason?
6 Do you frequently disagree with what other people say?
7 Do you lie awake at night if someone has said something unkind to you?

34.5 What questions like those in 34.4 could you ask to try to find out whether a person is the following:

1 thrifty
2 blunt
3 sensible
4 intelligent
5 even-tempered
6 original
7 obstinate

34.6 Can you complete each of these word forks?

1 self- ....
....
....

2 .... -tempered
....
....

3 .... -minded
....
....

Write a sentence to illustrate the meanings of each of your words.

34.7 Choose five or six adjectives from the opposite page which you think best describe either your own or a friend's character. How do you or your friend demonstrate these characteristics? *Example*: Sociable – I am sociable because I love being with other people.

35 Relationships

A Types of relationships

Here is a scale showing **closeness** and **distance** in relationships in different contexts.

	CLOSER ◄	————	►	MORE DISTANT
friendship:	best friend	good friend	friend	acquaintance
work:	close colleague		colleague/workmate	
love/romance:	lover	steady boy/girlfriend		ex-*
marriage:	wife/husband/partner			ex-*

* ex- can be used with or without (informally) another word: She's my **ex**. (girlfriend, etc.)

Mate is a colloquial word for a good friend. It can also be used in compounds to describe a person you share something with, e.g. **classmate, shipmate, workmate, flatmate**.

Workmate is usual in non-professional contexts; **colleague** is more common among professional people.

Fiancé/ée can still be used for someone you are engaged to, but a lot of people feel it is dated nowadays. You will sometimes see **husband-/wife-to-be** in journalistic style.

English has no universally accepted word for 'person I live with but am not married to', but **partner** is probably the commonest.

B Liking and not liking someone

core verb	*positive*	*negative*
like	love adore worship idolise	dislike hate can't stand loathe
respect	look up to admire	look down on despise
attract	turn s.b. on	repel turn s.b. off
be attracted to	fancy	

She doesn't just like Bob she **idolises** him! I **can't stand** him.
I really **fancy** Lisa, but her friend just **turns me off**.

Fancy and **turn off** are informal. **Repel** is very strong and rather formal.

C Phrases and idioms for relationships

Jo and I **get on** well **with each other**. [have a good relationship]
Adrian and Liz **don't see eye to eye**. [often argue/disagree]
I've **fallen out with** my parents again. [had arguments]
Tony and Jane have **broken up / split up**. [ended their relationship]
George is **having an affair** with his boss. [a sexual relationship, usually secret]
Children should respect their **elders**. [adults/parents, etc.]
Let's try and **make it up**. [be friends again after a row]
She's **my junior** / I'm **her senior** / **I'm senior to her**, so she does what she's told. [refers to position/length of service at work]

(See Unit 69 for more words relating to likes and dislikes.)

Exercises

35.1 **Use words with the suffix *-mate* to resay or rewrite these sentences.**

1 This is Jack. He and I share a flat.
2 My grandad still writes to his old friends he was at sea with.
3 We were in the same class together in 1978, weren't we?
4 She's not really a friend, she's just someone I work with.

35.2 **How many relationships can you find between the people in column A and column B, using words from the left-hand page?**

Example: *John Silver and Lorna Fitt were once colleagues.*

A	B
John Silver: owns a language school for business people in Bath. Worked at the Sun School, Oxford, 1984–5.	**Nora Costa:** was in UK Olympic swimming team in 1982. Was in same class at school as Ada Brigg.
Josh Yates: politician, was married to Eve Cobb 1973–1980. Met Bill Nash a couple of times.	**Bill Nash:** works every day with John Silver. Shared a flat years ago with Eve Cobb.
Ada Brigg: was married to Bill Nash 1981–4. Swam for Britain in 1982 Olympics.	**Fred Parks:** politician. Knew Ada Brigg years ago, but not very well.
Ana Wood: has lived as a couple (unmarried) with Bill Nash for the last five years.	**Lorna Fitt:** taught at Sun School Oxford 1980–7. Lives with Josh Yates.

35.3 **Liking and disliking. Using the verbs, phrases and idioms opposite, what sort of relations do you think the people on the left might have with the people on the right?**

1 teenage music fan	parents pop star strict teacher mate
2 secretary	another secretary boss very attractive workmate
3 45-year-old	teenagers ex-husband/wife

35.4 **The person who typed this book has got some of the phrases and idioms opposite mixed up with one another. Correct them.**

1 Jo and Phil don't get on eye to eye with each other.
2 I fell up with my parents last night. It wasn't my fault.
3 We had a quarrel but now we've made it well.
4 Do you think Jim and Nora are making an affair? I do.
5 I see very well with all my colleagues at work.
6 She should learn to respect her olders.
7 Jo's attractive, but her mate just turns me up completely.

36 At home

A Places in the home

You probably already know the names of most rooms and locations in a typical home. Here are some less common ones and what they are for.

utility room: usually just for washing machine, freezer, etc.
shed: small building separated from the house usually for storing garden tools
attic: room in the roof space of a house (could be lived in)
loft: space in the roof of a house usually used only for storage
cellar: room below ground level, no windows, used for storage
basement: room below ground level, windows, for living/working
landing: flat area at the top of a staircase
hall: open area as you come into a house
porch: covered area before an entrance-door
pantry or **larder:** large cupboard (usually big enough to walk into) for storing food
terrace or **patio:** paved area between house and garden for sitting and eating, etc.
study: a room for reading/writing/studying in

B Small objects about the home

Ordinary, everyday objects are often difficult to name and are often not listed in dictionaries. Here is just a sample of such words.

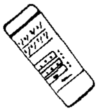
remote control

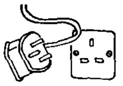
power-point and plug

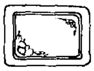
table-mat

coaster

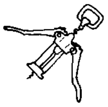
corkscrew

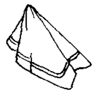
tea-towel

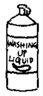
washing-up liquid

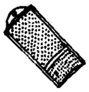
grater

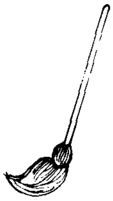
mop

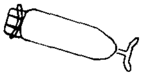
ironing-board

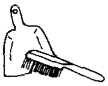
dust-pan and brush

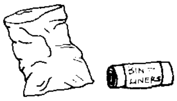
bin-liners

Types of house/places people live

detached house: not joined to any other house
semi-detached house (informal: **semi-**): joined to one other house
terraced house: joined to several houses to form a row
cottage: small house in the country or in a village
bungalow: house with only one storey (no upstairs)
bedsit: bedroom and living room all in one
villa: large house with big gardens or a rented house in a holiday resort/tourist area
time-share: holiday flat or house where you have the right to live one or two weeks a year

Tip: If you visit an English-speaking country, go to a supermarket and look at the names of ordinary, everyday things for the home. This is often a good way of getting vocabulary that just does not appear in dictionaries.

Exercises

36.1 **Where in a typical house would you look for the following things?**

1 a rake
2 cutlery
3 dental floss
4 a coat-hanger
5 suitcases
6 a tumble-dryer
7 a power point
8 a porch
9 a grater
10 old empty boxes

36.2 **Fill in the room and place labels on the plan of the house.**

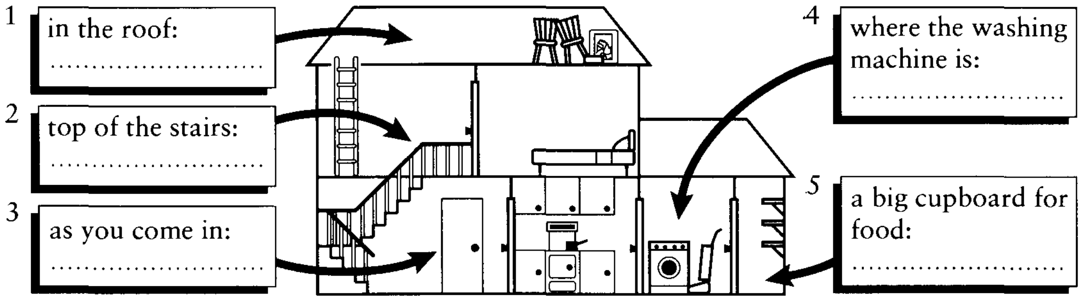
1
in the roof: ....
2
top of the stairs: ....
3
as you come in: ....
4
where the washing machine is: ....
5
a big cupboard for food: ....

36.3 **Fill the gaps with a suitable word.**

1 I've got a darkroom in the .... where I develop films. It's perfect because there are no windows down there.
2 Is there a .... where I can plug in this radio?
3 You'd better have a .... under your drink in case you mark that side-table. It's an antique.
4 The waste-bin's full again. I'll empty it. Are there any more ....? Where are they?
5 We keep our skis up in the .... during the summer. They're out of the way up there.
6 You'll find the garden-chairs in the .... at the bottom of the garden. Bring them up and we'll have a drink on the .... and watch the sunset.
7 The light-switch for the stairs is on the .... as you come out of your bedroom.
8 I've moved to a .... now as I found I couldn't manage the stairs any more at my age.

36.4 **Answer these questions about yourself and, if possible, find out how someone else would answer them.**

1 Is your house detached? What sort is it if not?
2 Are time-shares common in any part of your country?
3 Do houses still have pantries in your country?
4 Is it common to rent bedsits in your country? If so, what sorts of people do so?

36.5 **Everyday objects.**

1 How can you make very small pieces of cheese to sprinkle on a dish?
2 What might you fetch if someone dropped a saucer and it broke into small pieces on the floor?
3 What could you put under a dinner plate to prevent it marking the table?
4 How can you switch off the TV without leaving your chair?

37 Everyday problems

Things that go wrong in houses and flats

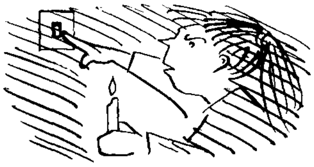

The lights are not **working** there must be a **power-cut**.

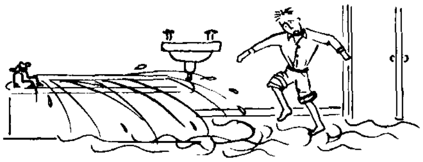

Oh no! The bathroom's **flooded**! Get a mop, quick!

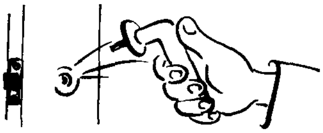

The kitchen door-handle's **come off**.

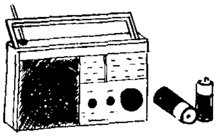

The batteries have **run out**. I'll have to get some more.

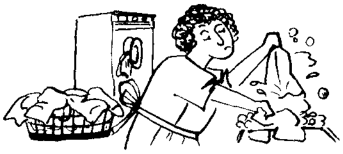

The washing machine **broke down** the other day. I'll have to wash by hand.

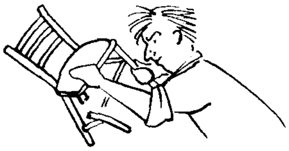

Oh dear! This chair's **broken**. I wonder how that happened?

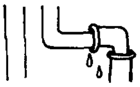

This pipe's **leaking**.

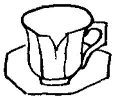

I'm sorry, your cup's **chipped**.

B Everyday minor injuries

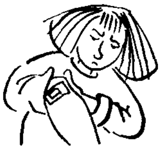

Sharon **fell down** and **cut** her knee this morning.

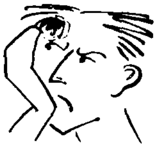

I **bumped/banged** my head against the cupboard door and got **a bruise**.

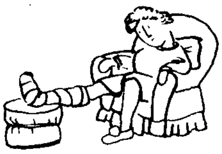

She **twisted** her **ankle** coming down the stairs.

C Other everyday problems

I've **mislaid** Bob's letter. Have you seen it anywhere? [put it somewhere and can't find it]
She **spilt** some coffee on the carpet. I hope it doesn't **stain**. [leave a permanent mark]
I **overslept** this morning and was half an hour late for work.
I've **locked myself out**. Can I use your phone to ring my wife?
The **car won't start**. I hope it's nothing serious.
The kitchen clock's **slow/fast/stopped**. What time d'you make it?

Exercises

37.1 **What do you think happened to make these people do/say what they did?**

Example: We had to send for a plumber. *Maybe a pipe was leaking/the lavatory was flooded.*

1 I had to call out our local mechanic.
2 Our neighbours let us use their washing machine.
3 Don't worry, it often does that; I'll screw it back on.
4 Come here and I'll put a plaster on it.
5 How many batteries does it take? I'll get some for you.
6 I don't know where you've put them. Try the bedside table.

37.2 **Odd one out. Which of the three words is the odd one out in each case?**

Example: spill flood chip *chip – the other two involve liquids.*

1 break down smash break
2 run out stain stop
3 leak come off chip
4 cut bruise flood

37.3 **What would you do if...**

1 you mislaid your credit card?
2 you noticed your guest's glass was chipped?
3 one of your coat-buttons came off?
4 your TV set broke down?
5 you bruised your forehead?
6 your watch was slow?

37.4 **Here is a matrix. There are the names of things and things that can go wrong with them. Not all of the words are on the left-hand page. Use a dictionary for any you are not sure of. Put just one tick (✓) along each horizontal line, for things that most typically go together, as in the example.**

	cake-tin	*vase*	*elbow*	*clock*	*moped*	*sink*
banged						
cracked						
broken down						
dented						
stopped				✓		
blocked						

37.5 **Complete these sentences using words and phrases from the opposite page.**

Example: There was a power-cut so we... *had to sit in the dark / light candles.*

1 I was so tired when I finally went to bed that next morning I...
2 The wind blew the door shut and I realised I'd...
3 I would ring her but I'm afraid I've...
4 I can't take a photo, my camera's...
5 I tried to run over the rocks but I...

38 Global problems

Disasters/tragedies

earthquakes [the earth moves/trembles]

hurricanes / tornadoes / typhoons [violent winds/storms]

volcanoes [hot rock and gases pour from a mountain]

explosions [e.g. a bomb]

war / civil war

major accidents [e.g. a plane crash]

floods [too much rain]
drought [no rain]
famine [no food]

epidemics [diseases affecting large numbers of people]

Verbs connected with these words

A volcano has **erupted** in Indonesia. Hundreds are feared dead.
The flu epidemic spread rapidly throughout the country.
Millions are **starving** as a result of the famine.
A big earthquake **shook** the city at noon today.
The area is **suffering** its worst drought for many years.
Civil war has **broken out** in the north of the country.
A tornado **swept** through the islands yesterday.

Remember: **injure** [people], **damage** [things]:
200 people were **injured** and dozens of buildings were **damaged** in the hurricane.

Words for people involved in disasters/tragedies

The explosion resulted in 300 **casualties**. [dead and injured people]
The real **victims** of the civil war are the children left without parents. [those who suffer the results of the disaster]
There were only three **survivors**. All the other passengers died instantly. [people who live through a disaster]
Thousands of **refugees** have crossed the border looking for food and shelter.
During the battle, the **dead** and **wounded** were flown out in helicopters. [**wounded**: injured in a battle/by a weapon]

Headlines

Here are some headlines from newspapers all connected with diseases and epidemics. Explanations are given.

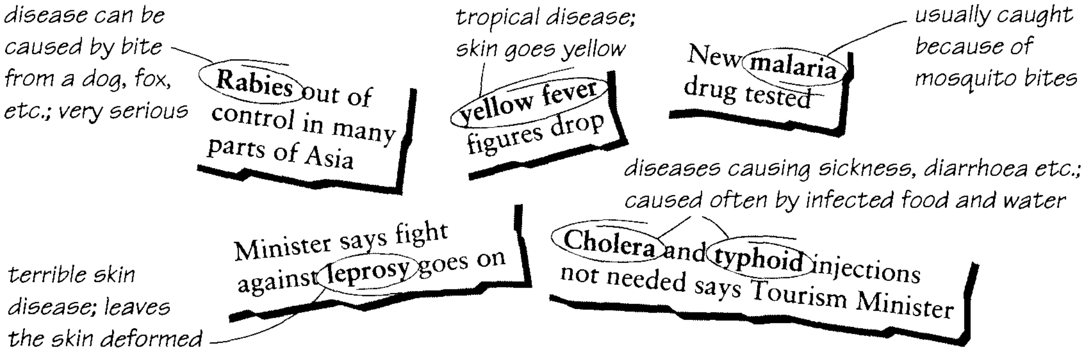

disease can be caused by bite from a dog, fox, etc.; very serious

Rabies out of control in many parts of Asia

tropical disease; skin goes yellow

yellow fever figures drop

New malaria drug tested

usually caught because of mosquito bites

diseases causing sickness, diarrhoea etc.; caused often by infected food and water

Minister says fight against leprosy goes on

terrible skin disease; leaves the skin deformed

Cholera and typhoid injections not needed says Tourism Minister

Exercises

38.1 What type of disaster from the list at A opposite are these sentences about? Why?

Example: The lava flow destroyed three villages. *volcano; lava is the hot rocks and metal*

1 The earth is cracked and vegetation has withered.
2 The tremor struck at 3.35 p.m. local time.
3 People had boarded up shops and houses during the day before, and stayed indoors.
4 Shelling and mortar fire could be heard all over the town.
5 Witnesses said they saw a fire-ball fall out of the sky.
6 People were stranded in the upper floors and sometimes on the roofs of their homes, unable to move about.

38.2 Complete the missing items in this word-class table, using a dictionary if necessary. Where there is a dash (–), you do not need to write anything.

verb	*noun: thing or idea*	*noun: person*
....	explosion	–
....	....	survivor
injure	....	....
starve	....	....
erupt	....	–

38.3 In these headlines, say whether the situation seems to be getting *worse* or *better*, or whether a disaster has *happened* or has been *avoided/prevented.*

1
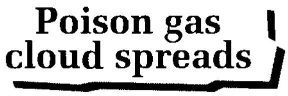
Poison gas cloud spreads

2
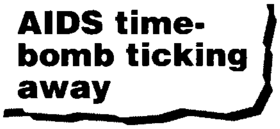
AIDS time-bomb ticking away

3
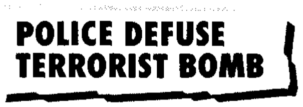
POLICE DEFUSE TERRORIST BOMB

4
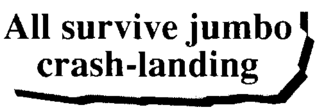
All survive jumbo crash-landing

5
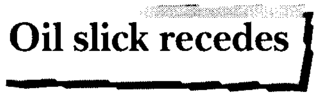
Oil slick recedes

6
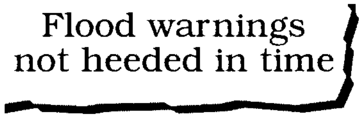
Flood warnings not heeded in time

38.4 Fill the gaps with a suitable word from B opposite. Try to work from memory.

1 Another 50 people died today, yet more .... of this terrible famine.
2 The government has agreed to allow 3,000 .... trying to escape the civil war to enter the country.
3 It was the worst road accident the country has ever seen, with over 120 ....
4 A: Were there any .... when the ship sank? B: I'm afraid not.
5 The .... and .... were simply left lying on the battlefield; it was a disgrace.

38.5 Which diseases are we talking about? Try to do this from memory.

1 One that can be caused by a mosquito bite.
2 One that leaves the skin badly deformed.
3 One you can get by drinking infected water.
4 One you can get from an animal bite.
5 One that makes the skin go yellow.

39 Education

Stages in a person's education

Here are some names that are used to describe the different types of education in Britain.

play-school nursery school	pre-school (2–5 years old)	mostly play with some early learning
infant school junior school	primary (5/6–12/13)	basic reading, writing, arithmetic, art, etc.
comprehensive school or grammar school	secondary (12/13–16/18)	wide range of subjects in arts and sciences and technical areas
college or polytechnic or university	further/higher (18+)	degrees/diplomas in specialised academic areas

Note: **Comprehensive schools** in the UK are for all abilities, but **grammar schools** are usually by competitive entry. **Public schools** in the UK are very famous private schools. **Polytechnics** are similar to **universities**, but the courses tend to be more practically-oriented. **Colleges** include **teacher-training colleges**, **technical colleges** and general **colleges of further education**.

B Exams and qualifications

take/do/sit/resit an exam

pass / do well in an exam

fail / do badly in an exam

Before an exam it's a good idea to **revise** for it.
If you **skip classes/lectures**, you'll probably do badly in the exam. [informal; miss deliberately]

Some schools give pupils **tests** every week or month to see if they are **making progress**. The **school-leaving exams** are held in May/June. In some schools, colleges and universities, instead of tests and exams there is **continuous assessment**, with **marks**, e.g. 65%, or **grades**, e.g. A, B+, for essays and projects during the term. If you pass your university exams, you **graduate** /ˈgrædjueɪt/ (get a degree), then you're a **graduate** /ˈgrædjuət/.

C Talking about education

Asking somebody about their country's education system.

What age do children **start school** at?
What's the **school-leaving age**?
Are there **evening classes** for adults?
Do you have **state** and **private universities**?
Do students get **grants** for **further education**?

Note: A **professor** is a senior university academic, not an ordinary teacher. University and college teachers are usually called **lecturers** or **tutors**.

Exercises

39.1 Make a table for the various stages and types of education in your country, like the table at A opposite. How does it compare with the UK system and with the system in other countries represented in your class or that you know of? Is it possible to find satisfactory English translations for all the different aspects of education in your country?

39.2 Fill the gaps in this life story of a British woman.

At 5, Nelly Dawes went straight to .... (1) school, because there were very few .... (2) schools for younger children in those days. When she was ready to go on to secondary school, she passed an exam and so got into her local .... (3) school. Nowadays her own children don't do that exam, since most children go to a .... (4) school. She left school at 16 and did not go on to .... (5) education, but she goes to .... (6) once a week to learn French. She would like to take up her education again more seriously, if she could get a .... (7) or scholarship from the government. Her ambition is to go to a .... (8) and become a school-teacher.

39.3 Correct the mis-collocations in these sentences.

1 I can't come out. I'm studying. I'm passing an examination tomorrow.
2 Congratulations! I hear you succeeded your examination!
3 You can study a lot of different careers at this university.
4 I got some good notes in my continuous assessment this term.
5 She's a professor in a primary school.
6 He gave an interesting 45-minute conference on Goethe.
7 She got a degree in personnel management from a private college.

39.4 What questions could you ask to get these answers?

1 No, they have to finance their own studies.
2 There isn't much difference; it's just that the courses are more practical in a polytechnic instead of being very academic.
3 Well, they learn one or two things, like recognising a few numbers, but most of the time they play around.
4 Because I wanted to be a teacher, no other reason.
5 It's sixteen, but a lot of kids stay on until eighteen.
6 Well, I've been up all night revising for an exam.
7 No, ours are given in grades, you know, B+, A, that sort of thing.
8 No, I was ill. I didn't miss it deliberately.

Follow-up: The education system in the USA is a bit different from in the UK. How could you find out what the following terms mean in the US education system?

high-school college sophomore graduate school

41 Sport

A Common sports

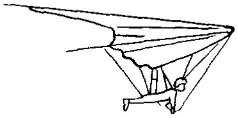
hang-gliding

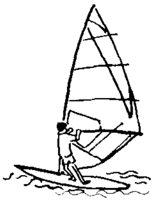
windsurfing

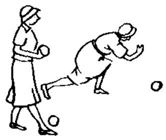
bowls

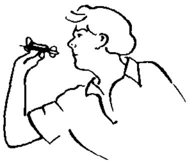
darts

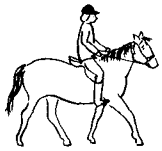
riding

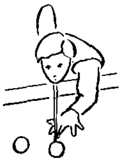
snooker/pool/billiards

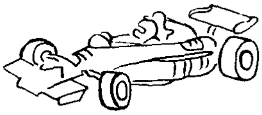
motor-racing

B Equipment – what you hold in your hand

golf – **club** squash/tennis/badminton – **racket** darts – **dart** archery – **bow**
cricket/table-tennis/baseball – **bat** hockey – **stick** snooker/pool/billiards – **cue**
canoeing – **paddle** rowing – **oar** fishing – **rod/line**

C Athletics – some field events

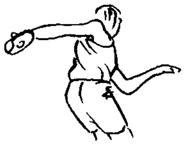
discus

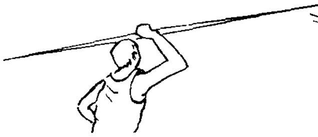
javelin

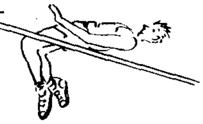
high-jump

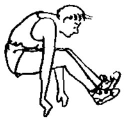
long-jump

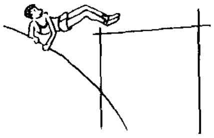
pole-vault

She's a good **sprinter**. [fast over short distances]
He's a great **long-distance** runner. [e.g. 5000 metres, marathon]
Jogging round the park every Saturday's enough for me.

D Verbs and their collocations in the context of sport

Our team **won/lost** by three **goals/points**.
She **broke the** Olympic **record** last year.
He **holds the record** for the 100 metres breast-stroke.
Liverpool **beat** Hamburg 4–2 yesterday.
The team have never been **defeated**. [more formal than **beat**]
How many **goals/points** have you scored this season?
I think I'll **take up** bowls next spring and **give up** golf.

E People who do particular sports

-er can be used for many sports, e.g. footballer, swimmer, windsurfer, high-jumper, cricketer, golfer, etc. Player is often necessary, e.g. tennis-player, snooker-player, darts-player; we can also say football-player, cricket-player. Some names must be learnt separately, e.g. canoeist, cyclist, mountaineer, jockey, archer (not archerer), gymnast.

Exercises

41.1 **Which of the sports opposite are these people probably talking about?**

1 'The ball has a natural curve on it so it doesn't go in a straight line on the grass.'
2 'Provided it's not too windy at the top, there's no problem.'
3 'It is incredibly noisy, fast and dangerous, but it's really exciting to watch.'
4 'You get sore at first and can hardly sit down, but you get used to it after a while.'
5 'It's all a matter of balance really.'
6 'You need a good eye and a lot of concentration.'

41.2 **Look at the sports page of one or two newspapers (either in English or in your own language). Are there any sports mentioned not listed at A opposite? If so, what are their English names? Use a bilingual dictionary if necessary.**

41.3 **Name one *other* piece of equipment necessary to play these sports apart from the item given, as in the example. What special *clothing*, if any, is worn for each sport?**

Example: golf: clubs, *balls*

1 archery: bow, ...
2 badminton: racket, ...
3 hockey: stick, ...
4 baseball: bat, ...
5 darts: darts, ...

41.4 **Collocations. Fill the gaps with suitable verbs.**

1 Were many records .... at the Olympics?
2 We've been .... so many times we deserve to be bottom of the league!
3 Congratulations! How many points did you .... by?
4 You should .... jogging. That would help you lose weight.
5 Who .... the world record for the 1000 metres? Is it a Russian?
6 I only ever once .... a goal, and that was sheer luck.

41.5 **What do you call a person who...?**

1 does the long-jump? *a long-jumper*
2 rides horses in races?
3 drives cars in races?
4 throws the discus/javelin?
5 does gymnastics?
6 plays hockey?
7 plays football?
8 does the pole-vault?

41.6 **Make sure you know which sports these places are associated with, as in the example. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

1 court *tennis, squash, etc.*
2 course
3 ring
4 pitch
5 rink
6 alley
7 piste

42 The arts

Things which generally come under the heading of 'the arts'

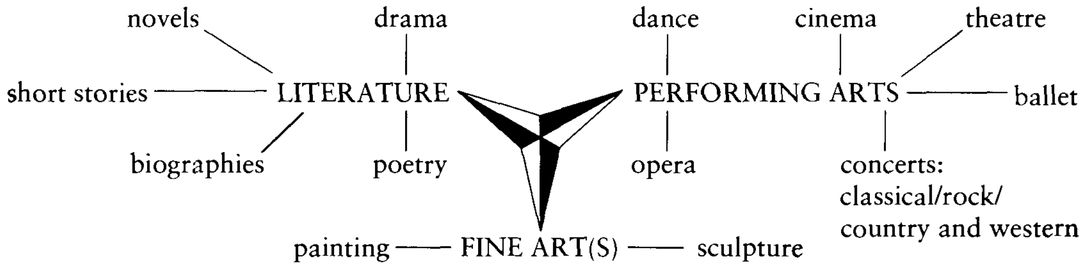

We often also include **architecture** and **ceramics** within the arts.

The **arts** (plural) covers everything in the network. **Art** (singular, uncountable) usually means **fine art**, but can also refer to technique and creativity.

Have you read the **arts page** in *The Times* today? [that part of the paper that deals with all the things in the network]
She's a great **art lover**. [loves painting and sculpture]
Shakespeare was skilled in the **art of** poetry. [creative ability]

Dance usually refers to modern artistic dance forms; **ballet** usually has a more traditional feel, unless we say **modern ballet**. *Remember*: a **novel** is a long story, e.g. 200–300 pages; a short prose fiction, e.g. 10 pages, is a **short story**.

Use of the definite article

When we refer to a performing art in general, we can leave out the article.

Are you interested in (the) **cinema/ballet/opera/theatre**?
Would you like to come to **the cinema/ballet/opera/theatre** with us next week. [particular performance]

Describing a performance

We went to see a new production of *Hamlet* last night. The **sets** (1) were incredibly realistic and the **costumes** (2) were wonderful. It was a good **cast** (3) and I thought the **direction** (4) was excellent. Anthony O'Donnell **gave** a marvellous **performance** (5). It **got rave reviews** (6) in the papers today.

(1) scenery, buildings, furniture on the stage or in a studio
(2) clothes the actors wear on stage
(3) all the actors in it
(4) the way the director had organised the performance
(5) and (6) note these typical collocations; (6) means 'got very enthusiastic comments'

C Words connected with events in the arts

There's an **exhibition** (Am. Eng.: **exhibit**) of paintings by Manet on in London.
They're going to **publish** a new **edition** of the **works** of Cervantes next year.
The Opera Society are doing a **performance** of *Don Giovanni*.
Our local cinema's **showing** Bergman's *Persona* next week.

Note: What's **on** at the cinema/theatre, etc. next week?

Exercises

42.1 **Which branch of the arts do you think these people are talking about?**

Example: 'It was a strong cast but the play itself is weak.' *Theatre*

1 'It's called *Peace*. It stands in the main square.'
2 'Animation doesn't have to be just *Disney*, you know.'
3 'It was just pure movement, with very exciting rhythms.'
4 'It doesn't have to rhyme to be good.'
5 'Oils to me don't have the delicacy of water-colours.'
6 'Her design for the new shopping centre won an award.'
7 'I read them and imagine what they'd be like on stage.'
8 'The first chapter was boring but it got better later.'
9 'I was falling asleep by the second act.'

42.2 **Definite article or not? Fill the gap with *the* if necessary.**

1 The government doesn't give enough money to .... arts.
2 She's got a diploma in .... dance from the Performing Arts Academy.
3 I've got some tickets for .... ballet. Interested?
4 .... art of writing a short story is to interest the reader from the very first line.
5 I can't stand .... modern poetry; it's so pretentious.
6 I was no good at .... art at school. What about you?

42.3 **Each one of these sentences contains a mistake of usage of words connected with the arts. Find the mistake and correct it. You may need a dictionary.**

Example: The scene at this theatre projects right out into the audience.
not 'scene' but 'stage' (the place where the actors perform)

1 What's the name of the editorial of that book you recommended? Was it Cambridge University Press?
2 'I wandered lonely as a cloud' is my favourite verse of English poetry.
3 He's a very famous sculpture; he did that statue in the park, you know, the one with the soldiers.
4 Most of the novels in this collection are only five or six pages long. They're great for reading on short journeys.
5 There's an exposition of ceramic at the museum next week.
6 The sceneries are excellent in that new production of *Macbeth*, so dark and mysterious.
7 What's in the Opera House next week? Anything interesting?

42.4 **Ask *questions* for which these remarks would be suitable answers.**

Example: It's an oil on canvas. *What sort of painting is it?*

1 Yes, it got rave reviews.
2 No, I'm not really a concert-goer, but thanks anyway.
3 Oh, some beautiful old buildings and some ugly new ones.
4 The cast were fine, but the direction was weak.
5 A new Hungarian film; fancy going to see it?

Follow-up: **Make sure you can name all the parts of a typical theatre in English. A picture-dictionary might help you.**

43 Food

A

vegetables: cabbage cauliflower broccoli spinach cucumber courgettes (Am. Eng: zucchini) aubergines (Am. Eng: egg plants) leeks
meat: venison liver kidneys veal
fish: cod hake plaice whiting mackerel herring sardine trout salmon /'sæmən/
seafood: prawns shrimps crab lobster crayfish squid cockles mussels oysters
herbs: parsley rosemary thyme chives oregano tarragon sage
spices: curry cinnamon ginger nutmeg

Flavours and tastes – adjectives and some opposites (≠)

sweet ≠ **bitter** [sharp/unpleasant] **sour** [e.g. unripe fruit]
hot, spicy [e.g. curry] ≠ **mild** **bland** [rather negative]
salty [a lot of salt] **sugary** [a lot of sugar] **sickly** [too much sugar]
savoury [pleasant, slightly salty or with herbs]
tasty [has a good taste/flavour] ≠ **tasteless** [no flavour at all]

General appearance, presentation and quality

These chips are terribly greasy. [too much oil/fat]
This meat is **over-cooked/overdone / under-cooked/underdone.**
British cooking can be very **stodgy**. [heavy, hard to digest]
Mm, this chicken's **done to a turn**. [just perfect, not overdone]
These pistachio nuts are terribly **more-ish**. [informal; you want to eat more]

Ways of cooking food – verbs

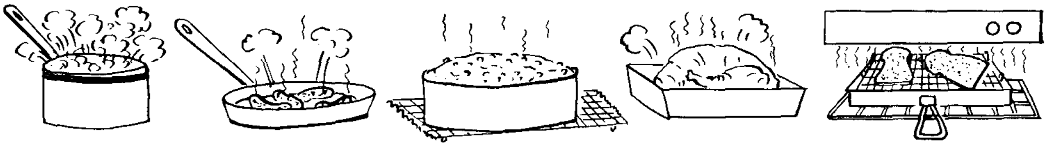

Shall I **stew** the beef? [boiled with vegetables in the same pot], or would you prefer it as a **casserole**? [similar, but in the *oven*]
These lamb chops would be nice **barbecued**. [done over hot coals, usually outdoors]
Have you **seasoned** the stew? [added herbs/spices/salt/pepper]

Courses and dishes – a typical menu

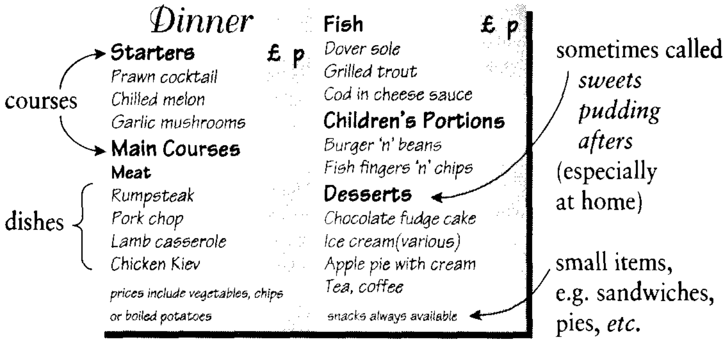

Dinner

Starters £ p
Prawn cocktail
Chilled melon
Garlic mushrooms

Main Courses
Meat
Rumpsteak
Pork chop
Lamb casserole
Chicken Kiev
prices include vegetables, chips or boiled potatoes

Fish £ p
Dover sole
Grilled trout
Cod in cheese sauce

Children's Portions
Burger 'n' beans
Fish fingers 'n' chips

Desserts
Chocolate fudge cake
Ice cream(various)
Apple pie with cream
Tea, coffee

snacks always available

sometimes called *sweets* *pudding* *afters* (especially at home)

small items, e.g. sandwiches, pies, *etc.*

Exercises

43.1 To learn long lists of words, it is sometimes helpful to divide them up into groups. Try dividing these vegetable names into groups, in any way you like, e.g. 'vegetables which grow underground' (potatoes, carrots etc.). If possible, compare your answers with someone else's. There are some words not given opposite.

aubergine leek cucumber spinach carrot potato cauliflower
green/red pepper courgette sweetcorn lettuce onion rice pea
cabbage garlic radish bean shallot turnip asparagus
beetroot celery

43.2 Use the taste and flavour words opposite to describe the following.

1 Indian curry
2 pizza
3 sea water
4 an unripe apple
5 a cup of tea with five spoonfuls of sugar
6 strong black coffee with no sugar
7 factory-made white bread

43.3 Sort these dishes out under the headings *starters, main courses* or *desserts.*

chicken casserole coffee gateau fresh fruit salad sorbet Irish stew
paté and toast prawn cocktail rump steak chocolate fudge cake
grilled trout shrimps in garlic

43.4 What might you say to the person/people with you in a restaurant if...

1 your chips had too much oil/fat on them?
2 your dish had obviously been cooked too much/too long?
3 your piece of meat was absolutely perfectly cooked?
4 your dish seemed to have no flavour at all?

43.5 How do you like the following foods prepared? Use words from D opposite and look up others if necessary. What do you like to put on the foods from the list in the box?

a leg of chicken eggs potatoes cheese sausages
a fillet of cod prawns mushrooms

salt pepper vinegar mustard brown sauce ketchup
salad-dressing oil mayonnaise lemon juice

43.6 1 Which are *fish* and which are usually called *seafood*?

prawns sardines squid oysters mackerel mussels hake crab
plaice trout lobster cod sole whiting

2 What do we call the *meat* of these animals?

calf deer sheep (two names) pig (three names)

3 Which of these fruit grow in your country/region? Are there others not listed here?

peach plum grapefruit grape nectarine star-fruit blackcurrant
raspberry melon lime kiwi-fruit mango

44 The environment

A

There are many different words referring to features of the environment. Here are some arranged on small to large scales.

brook → stream → river   hillock → hill → mountain   cove → bay → gulf
copse → wood → forest   puddle → pond → lake   footpath → lane → road

B

You have to be careful about the use of 'the' with features of the environment.

	use with the?	*example*
countries	no	France
countries which are in a plural form	yes	The USA
countries when limited by time	yes	The Spain of today
individual mountains	no	Mount Everest
mountains in the Bernese Oberland	yes	The Jungfrau
mountain chains	yes	The Rockies
islands	no	Sicily
groups of islands	yes	The West Indies
rivers	yes	The Volga
oceans	yes	The Pacific
seas	yes	The Mediterranean
gulfs, bays and straits	yes	The Gulf of Mexico The Bay of Biscay
lakes	no	Lake Erie
current	yes	The Gulf Stream

C

Look at this encyclopaedia entry about Iceland and note any words that refer to particular features of the environment.

Iceland An island republic in the North Atlantic. The landscape consists largely of barren plains and mountains, with large ice fields particularly in the south west. The island has active volcanoes and is known for its thermal springs and geysers. With less than 1% of the land suitable for growing crops, the nation's economy is based on fishing, and fish products account for 80% of the exports. Area: 103,000 km^2. Population: 227,000. Capital: Reykjavik.

D

Here are some other nouns which are useful when talking about the environment. Check their meanings with a dictionary if necessary.

Where land meets sea: coast shore beach estuary cliff cape peninsula
Words connected with rivers: source tributary waterfall mouth valley gorge
Words connected with mountains: foot ridge peak summit glacier

There are many environmental problems in the world today. Check with a dictionary if you do not know any of the terms below.

air, river and sea pollution   overfishing   the greenhouse effect
the destruction of the ozone layer   destruction of the rainforests
battery farming   waste disposal   overpopulation

Exercises

44.1 Label the pictures below.

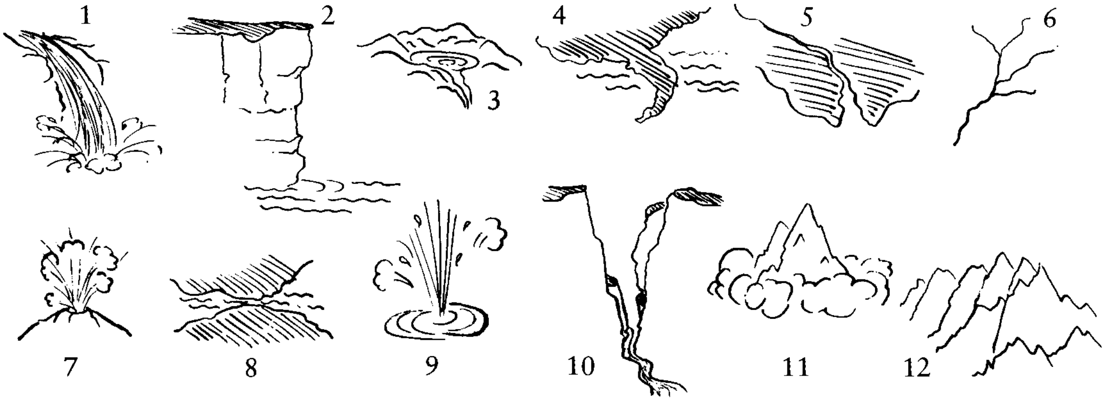

44.2 In the paragraph below all the instances of *the* have been omitted. Insert them wherever they are necessary.

Brazil is fifth largest country in world. In north densely forested basin of River Amazon covers half country. In east country is washed by Atlantic. Highest mountain chain in South America, Andes, does not lie in Brazil. Brazil's most famous city is Rio de Janeiro, former capital. Capital of Brazil today is Brasilia.

44.3 Can you answer the following general knowledge questions about the environment?

1 What is the highest mountain in Africa?
2 What is the longest river in Europe?
3 Where is the highest waterfall in the world?
4 Name another country, apart from Iceland, which has geysers and hot springs.
5 What is a delta and which famous river has one?
6 Where are the Straits of Gibraltar and the Cape of Good Hope?

44.4 Complete the paragraph below about your own country, or any other country that interests you. Remember to use 'the' whenever it is necessary.

................................(1) is a ....(2) in ....(3). The countryside is ....(4) in the north and ....(5) in the south. The country's economy is based on ....(6). The best-known river in ....(7) is ....(8). The most famous chain of mountains is ....(9) and the highest mountain in that chain is ....(10). ....(11) is a major environmental problem in ....(12) today.

44.5 Give two nouns from the opposite page to go with the adjectives below. Try not to repeat any of the nouns you choose.

Example: sandy beach/shore

1 sandy 2 steep 3 shallow 4 rocky 5 turbulent 6 dangerous

44.6 Why do environmentalists say we should avoid spray cans, practise organic farming and use unleaded petrol, recycled paper and bottle banks? What else are they in favour of?

45 Towns

A

Look at this description of Cork, one of Ireland's main towns. Underline any words or phrases that might be useful for describing your own or any other town.

Cork city is the major metropolis of the south; indeed with a population of about 135,000 it is the second largest city in the Republic. The main business and shopping centre of the town lies on the island created by two channels of the River Lee, with most places within walking distance of the centre. (The buses tend to be overcrowded and the one-way traffic system is fiendishly complicated.) In the hilly area of the city is the famous Shandon Steeple, the bell-tower of St Anne's Church, built on the site of a church destroyed when the city was besieged by the Duke of Marlborough. Back across the River Lee lies the city's cathedral, an imposing 19th century building in the French Gothic style. Cork has two markets. Neither caters specifically for tourists but those who enjoy the atmosphere of a real working market will appreciate their charm. The Crawford Art Gallery is well worth a visit. It regularly mounts adventurous exhibitions by contemporary artists. The fashionable residential districts of Cork city overlook the harbour. There are other residential areas on the outskirts.

Towns can be convenient places to live in because they have many facilities. Check with a teacher or a dictionary if you are not sure what anything means.

Sports: swimming pool   sports centre   golf course   tennis courts   football pitch   skating rink
Cultural: theatre   opera house   concert hall   radio station   art gallery
Educational: school   college   university   library   evening classes   museum
Catering and night-life: restaurant   cafe   nightclub   take-away   hotel   B and B (bed and breakfast)   youth hostel   dance-hall   disco
Transport: bus service   taxi rank   car hire agency   car park   parking meters
Other: health centre   law courts   registry office   citizens' advice bureau   job centre   bottle bank   department store   chemist's   estate agent   garden centre   police station   Town or City Hall   suburbs   housing estate   industrial estate   pedestrian precinct

C

Towns also have their own special problems. Here are some to be found in London now.

Traffic jams: every day, particularly in the rush-hour, the streets get so packed with traffic that travel is very slow or even comes to a standstill. This is particularly stressful for commuters, people who travel to work in the town
Slums: certain parts of the city which are poor and in a very bad condition
Vandalism: pointless destruction of other people's property
Overcrowding: too many people live in too small a place
Pollution: the air and the water are no longer as pure as they were
Crime: see Unit 55

Here are some useful adjectives for describing towns.

picturesque   historic   spacious   elegant   magnificent   atmospheric
quaint   lively   hectic   deserted (e.g. at night)   bustling   crowded
packed   filthy   run-down   shabby

Exercises

45.1 **Check that you understand the text about Cork by answering the following questions.**

1 Where is Cork?
2 Where is the shopping and business centre of Cork?
3 What is Cork's traffic system like?
4 What is special about the site of St Anne's Church?
5 In what style is the architecture of Cork Cathedral?
6 Can you buy souvenirs at the markets?
7 Is the Crawford Gallery worth visiting and why?
8 Where do Cork people live?

45.2 **The description of Cork comes from a guidebook for tourists. Write sentences about a town of your choice, using the following expressions from the text.**

the second/third/fourth ...est
within walking distance of
built on the site
cater for
to overlook
well worth a visit / visiting
a working market/museum/steam railway/model
the main ... area of the town lies
in the Victorian/Georgian/Classical/Baroque/French Gothic style
tend to be
whether or not it merits
those who enjoy
on the outskirts
to mount an exhibition
to appreciate the charm

45.3 **Look at the list of facilities listed in B opposite. Tick all those which your town, or any town you know well, has.**

45.4 **Suggest three words which would collocate well with each of the nouns below, as in the examples.**

1 ....
.... museum
....

2 leisure..........
.... centre
....

3 ....
.... college
....

4 ....
.... court
....

5 night....................
.... club
....

6 ....
.... agency
....

45.5 **What facilities would your ideal town have? Name the three most important facilities for you in each of the categories listed in B opposite. You may choose facilities other than those listed opposite if you wish.**

45.6 **Are any of the problems mentioned in C opposite to be found in your city or a city you know well? Could you suggest a solution for these problems?**

45.7 **Write sentences about any towns you know, using each of the adjectives in D.**

Example: The most picturesque part of my town is the old market-place.

46 The natural world

A Animals

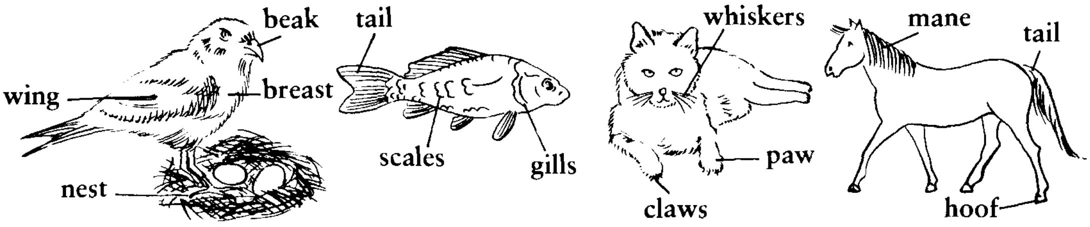
beak
tail
wing
breast
nest
scales
gills
whiskers
paw
claws
mane
tail
hoof

B Flowers and trees

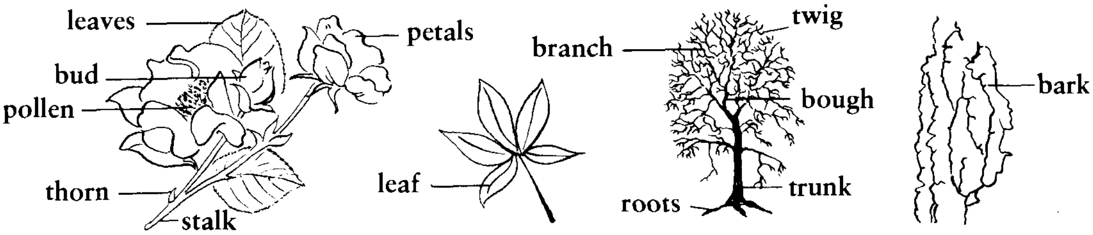
leaves
bud
pollen
thorn
stalk
petals
leaf
branch
twig
bough
roots
trunk
bark

C Specific animals

Here are the English names of some more unusual creatures.

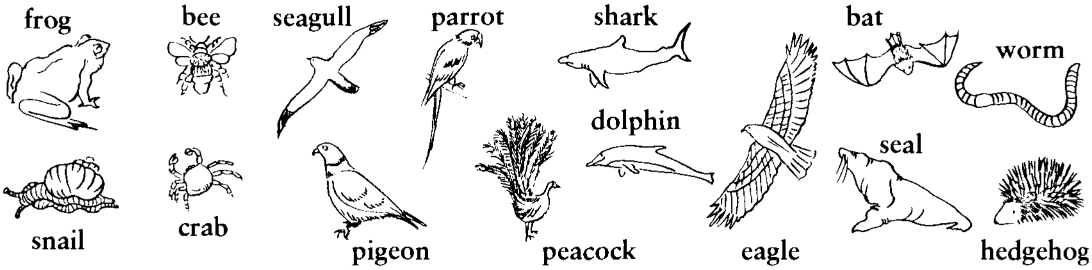
frog
bee
seagull
parrot
shark
bat
worm
dolphin
seal
snail
crab
pigeon
peacock
eagle
hedgehog

D Names of trees

Here are the names of some of the commonest British trees. You are likely to meet these words if you read fiction or poetry in English.

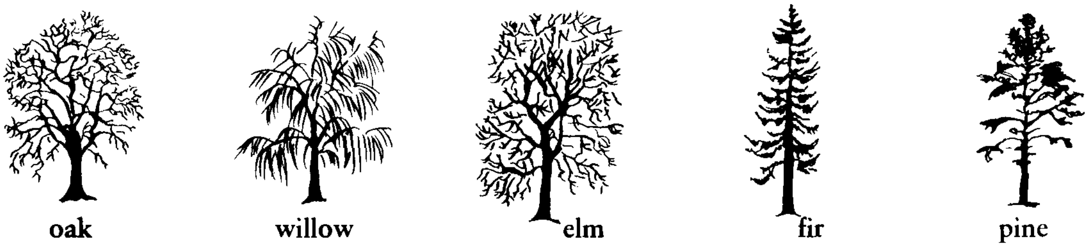
oak
willow
elm
fir
pine

E Some verbs for talking about the natural world

Our apple tree **flowers/blossoms** in April. Our garden is **thriving** after the rain. Let's **pick** some flowers (*not* pick up). Farmers **plant, fertilise** and **harvest** their crops.

Exercises

46.1 **Can you answer the following general knowledge questions about the natural world?**

1 Is the whale a fish or a mammal?
2 Which reptile alive today is a descendant of the dinosaurs?
3 Are the following trees deciduous or evergreen – poplar, yew, birch?
4 What does the bee take from flowers to make honey?
5 Name three animals that hibernate in winter.
6 What does a British boy or girl traditionally say while pulling the petals off a daisy one by one?
7 Which is the fastest of all land animals?
8 Which bird symbolises peace?
9 What plants or animals are the symbols of England, Scotland, Canada and New Zealand?
10 What do fish use their gills for?
11 Can you name an endangered species of plant or animal?
12 Which of these creatures is extinct – emu, dinosaur, phoenix?
13 Name three white flowers and three birds of any colour.
14 What plant or animal is the symbol of your country?

46.2 **Write an appropriate adjective to go with each of the following nouns:**

hedgehog mane petals eagle oak willow worm bark

46.3 **Fill in the blanks in the sentences below using words from the opposite page.**

1 A tree's .... go a long way under ground.
2 A cat sharpens its .... against the .... of a tree.
3 Most fruit trees .... in spring.
4 Plants will not .... unless they get enough water and light.
5 The horse is limping. It must have hurt its ....
6 Flowers last longer in a vase if you crush the end of their ....
7 A flower that is just about to open is called a ....
8 Take care not to prick yourself. That plant has sharp ....
9 If we pick up those ...., we can use them to start the fire.
10 Jim's as blind as a ....
11 Anne's as busy as a .... while Jo works at a ....'s pace.
12 Most crops in the UK are .... in the autumn.

46.4 **Look at this description of a camel from an encyclopaedia. Underline any words which you think would frequently be found in such descriptions of animals.**

> **camel** A mammal of the family Camelidae, (2 species): the **Bactrian**, from cold deserts in Central Asia and domesticated elsewhere, and the **dromedary**; eats any vegetation; drinks salt water if necessary; closes slit-like nostrils to exclude sand; humps are stores of energy-rich fats. The two species may interbreed; the offspring has one hump; the males are usually sterile while the females are fertile.

46.5 **Write a similar description for an encyclopaedia of an elephant, or any other animal of your own choice. Use reference books to help you if necessary.**

47 Clothes

At this level you probably already know most of the everyday words for clothes. Here are some items of clothing or parts of them which are perhaps less familiar.

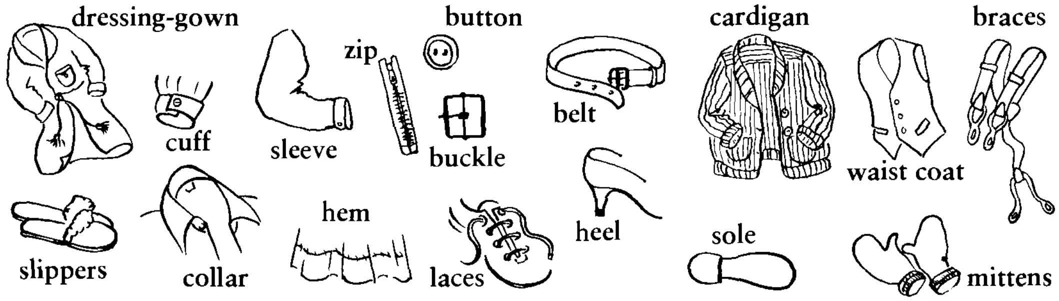
dressing-gown
button
cardigan
braces
zip
cuff
sleeve
buckle
belt
waist coat
hem
heel
sole
slippers
collar
laces
mittens

Notice that most items of clothing covering the legs are plural words only and, if you wish to count them, you need to say, e.g. 'Six pairs of trousers'. (See Unit 24.)

C

Here are some words used to describe materials which clothes are often made of. These words can be either nouns or adjectives.

silk cotton velvet corduroy denim leather wool/woollen suede

Here are some adjectives used to describe the patterns on materials.

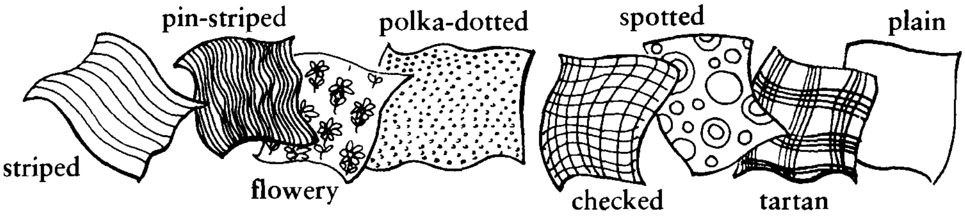
pin-striped
polka-dotted
spotted
plain
striped
flowery
checked
tartan

E

Here are some verbs associated with clothing.

He **undressed / got undressed**, throwing all his clothes on the floor.
She quickly **dressed** the child.
I love **dressing up** for parties as I normally wear jeans.
Can I **try on** those grey shoes in the window?
The skirt is too tight and too short – it needs **letting out** and **letting down.**
The dress is too loose and too long – it needs **taking in** and **taking up**.
She **took off** her shoes and **put on** her slippers.
He **changed out** of his weekend clothes **into** his uniform.
Red usually doesn't **suit** people with ginger hair.
Her black bag **matches** her shoes.
Those shoes don't **fit** the boy any more. He's **grown out** of them.

F

Here are some adjectives for describing people's clothing.

How things fit: baggy loose tight close-fitting
Style: long-sleeved V-neck round-neck
General: elegant smart scruffy chic trendy with-it
Appearance: well-dressed badly-dressed old-fashioned fashionable

See Unit 33 for more useful vocabulary for describing someone's appearance.

Exercises

47.1 **Which of the words illustrated in A fit best in the following sentences?**

1 I must get my black shoes repaired. One .... is broken and both the .... have holes in them.
2 Do up your .... or you'll fall over.
3 There's someone at the door. You'd better put your .... on before you open it.
4 Put your .... on – this floor is very cold.
5 I've eaten too much – I'll have to loosen my ....
6 I've almost finished making my dress for the party but I've still got to sew up the .... and sew on some ....

47.2 **Complete these sentences with any appropriate word. Use 'pair' where it is necessary.**

1 Many women wear nighties in bed whereas most men and children wear ....
2 Blue .... are a kind of international uniform for young people.
3 People with ugly knees shouldn't wear ....
4 I need some new underwear. I'm going to buy three new .... today.
5 Bother! I've got a hole in my tights. I'll have to get a new ....
6 Bother! I've got a hole in my tights. I'll have to get some new ....

47.3 **Match the following materials with the item which they are most likely to be associated with from the box.**

Example: velvet ribbon

1 silk 2 cashmere 3 leather 4 corduroy 5 velvet 6 cotton

sweater trousers T-shirt ribbon evening blouse boots

47.4 **Describe in as much detail as possible what the people in the pictures are wearing.**

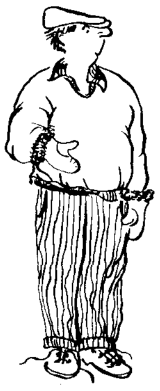

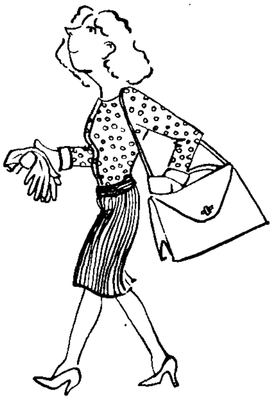

47.5 **Put the right verb, *match*, *suit* or *fit*, into each of these sentences.**

1 The blue dress .... her properly now she's lost some weight.
2 The blue of her dress .... the blue of her eyes.
3 That blue dress .... the girl with the blonde hair.

47.6 **Describe in as much detail as you can how (a) you and (b) someone else you can see are dressed.**

48 Health and medicine

A What are your symptoms?

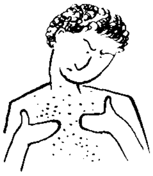
rash

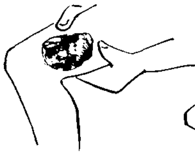
bruise

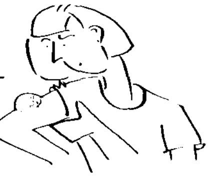
lump

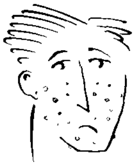
spots

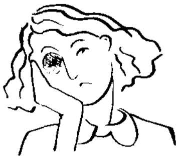
a black eye

I've got a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a temperature / a stomach ache / chest pains / earache / a pain in my side / a rash on my chest / spots / a bruise on my leg / a black eye / a lump on my arm / indigestion / diarrhoea / painful joints / blisters / sunburn.

I feel sick / dizzy / breathless / shivery / faint / particularly bad at night.

I am depressed / constipated / tired all the time.

I've lost my appetite / voice; I can't sleep, my nose itches and my leg hurts.

B What do doctors do?

They take your temperature, listen to your chest, look in your ears, examine you, take your blood pressure, ask you some questions and weigh and measure you before sending you to the hospital for further tests.

What's the diagnosis?

You've got flu / chickenpox / mumps / pneumonia / rheumatism / an ulcer / a virus / a bug something that's going round.

You've broken your wrist and sprained / dislocated your ankle.

You're pregnant / a hypochondriac.

He died of lung cancer / a heart attack / a brain haemorrhage / AIDS.

What does the doctor prescribe?

a) Take one three times a day after meals.
b) Take a teaspoonful last thing at night.
c) Rub a little on before going to bed each night.
d) We'll get the nurse to put a bandage on.
e) You'll need to have some injections before you go.
f) I'll ask the surgeon when he can fit you in for an operation.
g) You'll have to have your leg put in plaster.
h) I think you should have total bed rest for a week.

E What might the doctor ask you?

What would you say if the doctor asked you the following questions?

Do you have health insurance?
Have you ever had any operations?
Are you taking any medication?
Are you allergic to anything?

Exercises

48.1 Match the diseases with their symptoms.

1 flu
2 pneumonia
3 rheumatism
4 chickenpox
5 mumps
6 an ulcer

swollen glands in front of ear, earache or pain on eating
burning pain in abdomen, pain or nausea after eating
rash starting on body, slightly raised temperature
dry cough, high fever, chest pain, rapid breathing
headache, aching muscles, fever, cough, sneezing
swollen, painful joints, stiffness, limited movement

48.2 What does the doctor or nurse use the following things for?

Example: stethoscope For listening to a patient's chest.

1 thermometer 2 scales 3 tape measure 4 scalpel

48.3 Look at statements (a) to (g) in D opposite. Which do you think the doctor said to each of the following patients?

1 Anne with bad sunburn.
2 Jo who's broken her leg.
3 John who's off to the Tropics.
4 Paul with flu.
5 Liz with a bad cough.
6 Sam who needs his appendix out.
7 Rose suffering from exhaustion.
8 Alf who's sprained his wrist.

48.4 Complete the following table.

noun	*adjective*	*verb*
....	breathless	....
....	faint	....
....	shivery	....
....	dislocated	....
ache	....	....
treatment	–	....
....	swollen	....

48.5 What medical problems might you have if...

1 you wear shoes that rub?
2 you eat too fast?
3 you smoke a lot?
4 you play football?
5 you go ski-ing?
6 you stay too long in the sun?
7 you eat food you're allergic to?
8 you run unusually fast for a bus?
9 you eat food that is bad?
10 a mosquito bites you?
11 you get wet on a cold day?
12 you think you're ill all the time?

48.6 Think of some of the illnesses you (or members of your family or friends) have had. What were the symptoms and what did the doctor prescribe?

Follow-up: Look at the health page of a magazine or newspaper. Make a note of any new vocabulary on the theme that you find there. Look in your medicine cabinet at home, at school or work. Can you name everything that you find there?

49 Travel

A

Look at the table of some basic travel vocabulary. Highlight any of the words that you are not sure about and look them up in your dictionary.

transport type	*different kinds of vehicle*	*parts of vehicle*	*people working with it*	*associated facilities*
road	sports car, estate car, bus, coach, tram, van, lorry	boot, engine, gears, steering-wheel, brakes, tyres	driver, mechanic, chauffeur, bus-conductor	petrol station, garage, service station
rail	passenger train, freight train, local train, express	sleeping-car, buffet, restaurant-car, compartment	engine-driver, ticket collector, guard, porter	waiting-room, ticket office, signal-box
sea	yacht, rowing-boat, fishing-boat, liner, ferry, trawler	engine-room, deck, bridge, gangplank, companionway	captain, skipper, purser, docker, steward(ess)	port, buoy, quay, customs shed, light-house, docks
air	aeroplane, jet, helicopter, supersonic aircraft	cockpit, nose, tail, wings, fuselage, joystick	pilot, ground staff, steward, air traffic controller	duty-free shop, departure lounge, hangar, runway

B

Words at sea

Traditionally sailors use different words at sea – a bedroom is a **cabin**, a bed is a **bunk**, the kitchen on a ship is a **galley**, right is **starboard** and left is **port** and the group of people who work on the ship is called the **crew**. These terms are also now used in the context of an aircraft. Sailors also refer to their vessels as 'she' rather than 'it'.

C

Some international road signs

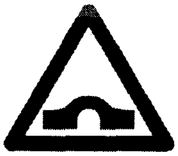

There's a hump bridge ahead.

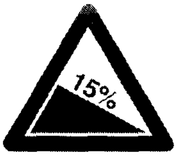

There's going to be a steep hill downwards.

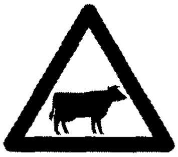

There may be cattle on the road ahead.

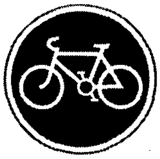

There's a cycle route ahead.

D

Some words connected with travel

Last week he **flew** to New York. It was an early-morning **flight**. The **plane** was to **take off** at 6 a.m. and **land** at 7 a.m. **local time**. He was **stranded** at the **airport** overnight. The **plane** was **delayed** by fog. Air **passengers** often suffer such delays.
Trains always **run on time** here. You have to **change** trains at Crewe.
We are **sailing** on the QE2. It **sets sail** at noon. It will **dock** in New York at 6 p.m. and we shall **disembark** as soon as we can.
The **ship** was **wrecked**. The passengers were **marooned** on a desert island.
Our **car does 10 km to the litre**. It **goes quite fast**. We can usually **overtake** other cars.
The car **swerved** into the middle of the **road** to avoid the **cyclist**.
He **backed** the car into the **drive** and **parked** in front of the house.

Exercises

49.1 Label the diagrams below. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

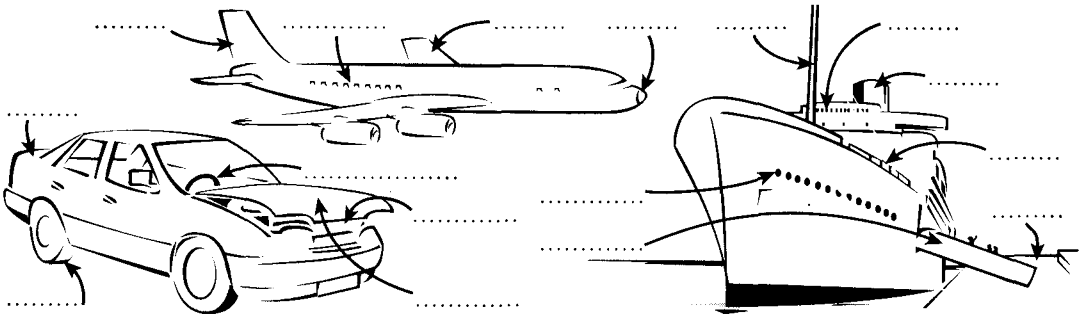

49.2 Here are some more words which could have been included in the table in A opposite. Where would they fit into the table?

bonnet
mast
glider
check-in desk
balloon
petrol pump
oar
control tower
deck-chair
bus driver
rudder
canoe
guard's van
anchor
left luggage lockers
dual carriageway

49.3 Here are some more road signs. Write an explanation of their meaning similar to the explanations given in C opposite.

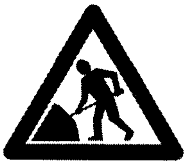
1

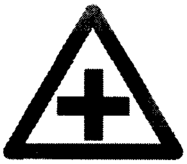
2

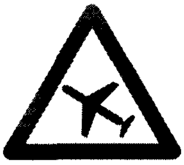
3

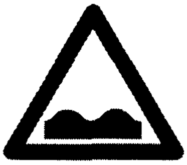
4

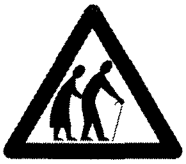
5

49.4 Fill in the blanks. Most of the words you need can be found opposite.

Yesterday John was supposed to take a ....(1) from London to Paris. He got up very early, put his luggage in the ....(2) of his car and tried to start the engine. It wouldn't start. John lifted the ....(3) but he couldn't see what the matter could be. He immediately called his local ....(4) to ask them to send a ....(5) at once. Fortunately, the garage had a man free and he was with John within ten minutes. He quickly saw what the matter was. 'You've ....(6) of petrol', he said. John felt very foolish. 'Why didn't I ....(7) everything last night?' he wondered. Despite all this, he got to the airport, checked in quite early and then went straight through to the ....(8) to read a newspaper while he waited. Soon he heard an announcement. 'Passengers on flight BA 282 to Paris are informed that all flights to and from Paris are ....(9) because of a heavy snowfall last night.' 'If only I had decided to go by ....(10)', John thought. 'It would probably have been quicker in the end and even if I sometimes feel sick on the ....(11) across the Channel, it can be quite pleasant sitting in a ....(12) on the deck, watching the seagulls and the other ....(13). The ....(14) on a ship seem to produce much better food than those on an aircraft too.'

49.5 Write two advantages and two disadvantages for each of the four forms of travel opposite.

50 Holidays

A

Here are a number of different places where you can spend a holiday.

camp site: a place where you can pitch a tent or park a caravan
self-catering flat: flat which you rent, you cook for yourself
guesthouse: accommodation like a hotel but cheaper and with fewer services
youth hostel: cheap accommodation, mainly for young people, with, perhaps, ten or more people sleeping in bunk beds in one room
holiday camp: a place providing holiday accommodation in little chalets or flats, with restaurants, bars, swimming pools and lots of other facilities and entertainment
time-share apartment: accommodation which one owns, say, a 26th part of and so has the right to stay there for 2 weeks every year

B

Here are a number of different things which people like to do on holiday.

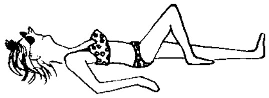
sunbathe

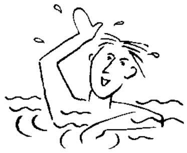
swim *or* **go swimming**

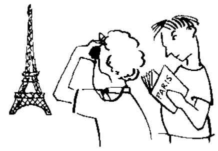

do some *or* **go sightseeing**

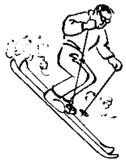
ski *or* **go skiing**

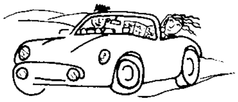
go for a drive

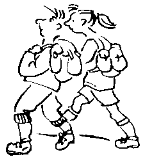
hike *or* **go hiking**

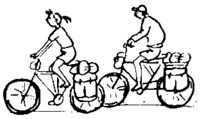
tour *or* **go touring**

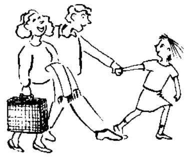
go on an excursion

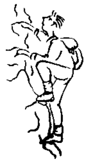
climb *or* **go climbing/mountaineering**

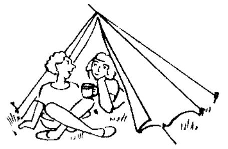
camp *or* **go camping**

Note: You usually ask 'Have you ever been skiing/hang-gliding?' rather than 'Have you ever gone...?' 'He's been wind-surfing' means that at some point in his life he has done this.

C

Here is some useful language for when you are staying in a hotel.

I'd like to book a single/double room with a cot.
I'd like a room with a shower, a colour TV, and a view of the sea.
What time do you serve breakfast?
Am I too late for dinner/to get something to eat?
Is service included?
Could I have a call at 7.30, please?
Could we have dinner in our room, please?
The teasmade [tea-making machine] in my room isn't working.
I'd like an extra pillow, please.
I'd like to make a call to New Zealand, please.
What time do you like rooms to be vacated by?
Sorry to bother you, but...
I'm afraid there's something wrong with the..., could you have a look at it?

Exercises

50.1 Which of the holiday places in A have you or any of your friends stayed at? What are the advantages and disadvantages of each? Try and note down at least one advantage and one disadvantage for each even if you have no direct personal experience of them.

50.2 List the ten activities shown in B opposite according to your personal preferences.

50.3 Look at B opposite again. Note the way you can say either '*We camped* in Spain this year' or 'We *went camping* in Spain this year'. Write the sentences below in an alternative form, either with or without *go* or *be.*

1 They went canoeing in the Dordogne last year.
2 Have you ever been windsurfing?
3 I love going sailing.
4 He spends too much time fishing.
5 It's quite expensive to shop in Rome.
6 I enjoy cycling at weekends.

50.4 What would you say in a hotel when...

1 you want to reserve a room for a couple with a small baby?
2 you have to wake up early for an important meeting?
3 your TV screen suddenly goes blank?
4 it's midnight, you've just arrived and you're very hungry?
5 you'd rather not go to the dining-room for breakfast?
6 you are not sure whether to leave a tip or not?

50.5 There are six typical language mistakes in the paragraph below. Underline them and then write the corrections.

> *The Smiths stayed at a camping last summer because all other kinds of holiday accommodations are too expensive for them. Every day Mrs Smith had a sunbath, Mr Smith made a sight-seeing and the children made a travel around the island. One day they made an excursion to a local castle.*

50.6 To find more useful language relating to holidays, get some holiday brochures or other tourist information written in English. You could either try the embassies of those countries or a travel agency. Remember to make it clear that you want the information in English. When you receive the information, make a point of noting down any useful new words and expressions that you learn.

50.7 Find a tourist brochure in your own language about your own town or region. Try to translate it for English-speaking visitors.

50.8 Where would you spend your ideal holiday? What kind of accommodation would you stay in? How would you spend your time? Write a paragraph.

51 Numbers and shapes

A

Anyone who works with any branch of science or technology needs to be able to talk about figures. Notice how the following are said in English.

28%	twenty-eight per cent	10 m × 12 m	ten metres by twelve metres
10.3	ten point three	$1\frac{2}{3}$	one and two thirds
$\frac{4}{9}$	four ninths	$\frac{9}{13}$	nine thirteenths or nine over thirteen
4^2	four squared	7^3	seven cubed
8^4	eight to the power of four		

32° C or F thirty-two degrees centigrade/celsius or fahrenheit

1,623,457 one million, six hundred and twenty-three thousand, four hundred and fifty-seven

B

All scientists and technologists also need to be able to talk about shapes. Note the names of the shapes below.

Two-dimensional shapes

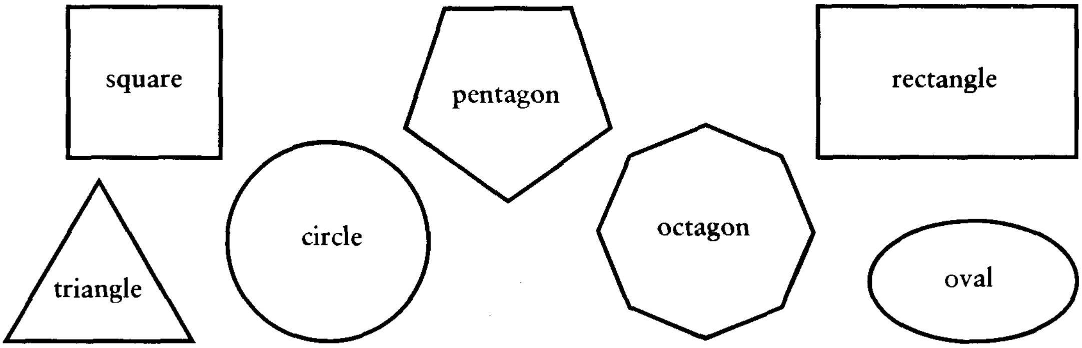

A rectangle has four **right angles**.
A circle is cut in half by its **diameter**. Its two halves can be called **semi-circles**.
The radius of a circle is the distance from its centre to the **circumference**.

Three-dimensional shapes

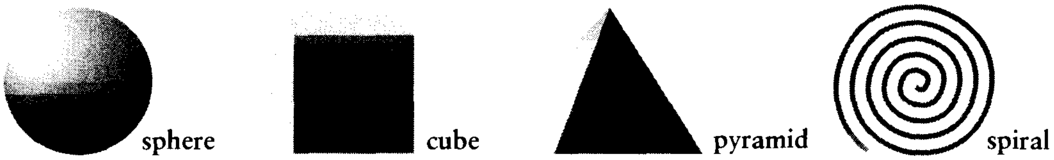

The two halves of a sphere can be called **hemispheres**.

C

Here are the four basic processes of arithmetic.

+ **addition** − **subtraction** × **multiplication** ÷ **division**

Notice how these formulae would be read aloud.

$2x+3y-z=\frac{3z}{4x}$ Two *x* plus three *y* minus *z* equals three *z* divided by four *x*. *or* Three *z* over four *x*.

6 × 7 = 42 Six times seven is forty two. *or* Six sevens are forty two.

Exercises

51.1 **How numerate are you? Try this numbers quiz.**

1 Name the first four odd numbers.
2 Name the first four even numbers.
3 Name the first four prime numbers.
4 Give an example of a decimal fraction.
5 Give an example of a vulgar fraction.
6 How do you read this formula and what does it represent: $e=mc^2$?
7 How do you read this and what does it represent: $2\pi r$?

51.2 **Write the following in words rather than in figures or symbols.**

1 2% of the British population owned 90% of the country's wealth in 1992.
2 0° C = 32° F
3 62.3% of adults have false teeth.
4 $\frac{2}{3} + \frac{1}{4} \times 4^2 = 14\frac{2}{3}$.
5 2,769,425 people live here.

51.3 **Look at the figures in B opposite. What is the adjective relating to each of the shapes illustrated? Use a dictionary if necessary.**

51.4 **Read the following records aloud.**

1 Oxygen accounts for 46.6% of the earth's crust.
2 The nearest star to earth is Proxima Centauri. It is 33,923,310,000,000 km from earth.
3 The highest waterfall in the world is Angel Falls in Venezuela with a drop of 979 m.
4 The top coffee-drinking country in the world is Finland where 1,892 cups per annum are consumed per head of the population.
5 The tallest church in the world is the Chicago Methodist Temple which is 173 m or 568 ft high.
6 The commonest item of lost property on London transport is the umbrella. 23,250 umbrellas were handed in to London transport lost property offices in 1987/8.
7 The country with the most telephones in the world is Monaco. It has 733 telephones per 1,000 population.
8 The smallest country in the world is the Vatican City with an area of 0.4 sq km.

51.5 **Draw the following figures.**

1 A right-angled triangle with two equal sides of about two centimetres in length. Draw a small circle at the centre of the triangle and then draw lines from the centre of the circle to each of the angles of the triangle.
2 A rectangle with diagonal lines joining opposite angles.
3 An octagon with equal sides. Draw an oval in the middle of the octagon.
4 A three-dimensional rectangular shape of roughly 6 cm by 3 cm by 2 cm.

52 Science and technology

You are probably familiar with the traditional branches of science e.g. chemistry, physics, botany and zoology. But what about these newer fields?

genetic engineering: the study of the artificial manipulation of the make-up of living things
molecular biology: the study of the structure and function of the organic molecules associated with living organisms
cybernetics: the study of the way information is moved and controlled by the brain or by machinery
information technology: the study of technology related to the transfer of information (computers, digital electronics, telecommunications)
bioclimatology: the study of climate as it affects humans
geopolitics: study of the way geographical factors help to explain the basis of the power of nation states
nuclear engineering: the study of the way nuclear power can be made useful
cryogenics: the study of physical systems at temperatures less than 183° C
astrophysics: the application of physical laws and theories to stars and galaxies

B Here are some of the modern inventions which we are now becoming quite used to.

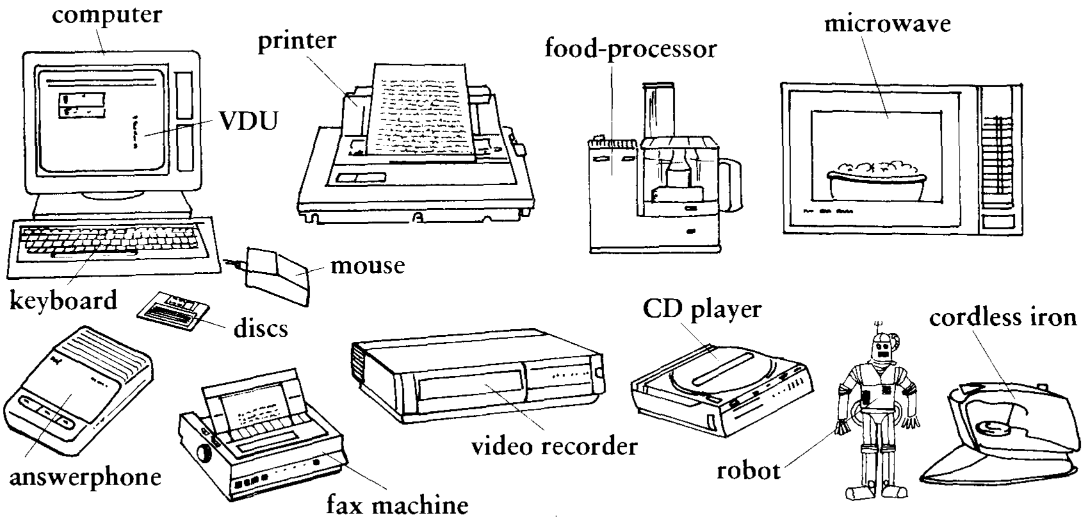

C The verbs in the sentences below are all useful in scientific contexts.

He **experimented** with a number of different materials before **finding** the right one.
The technician **pressed** a button and lights started **flashing**.
When she **pulled** a lever, the wheel began to **rotate**.
The zoologist **dissected** the animal.
When they were **combined**, the two chemicals **reacted** violently with each other.
After **analysing** the problem, the physicist **concluded** that there was a flaw in his initial hypothesis.
James Watt **invented** the steam engine and Alexander Fleming, another Scot, **discovered** penicillin.
After **switching on** the computer, **insert** a floppy disc into the disc drive.
You must **patent** your invention as quickly as possible.

Exercises

52.1 Complete the following list with the name of the specialists in the particular fields.

science	*scientist*
chemistry	....
physics	....
zoology	....
genetics	....
information technology	....
cybernetics	....
civil engineering	....

52.2 Below you have some of the amazing achievements of modern technology. Match the names on the left with the definitions on the right.

1 video recorder	a kind of sophisticated typewriter using a computer
2 photocopier	a machine which records and plays back sound
3 fax machine	a machine which records and plays back sound and pictures
4 tape recorder	a camera which records moving pictures and sound
5 modem	a machine for chopping up, slicing, mashing, blending etc.
6 camcorder	a machine which makes copies of documents
7 robot	a machine which makes copies of documents and sends them down telephone lines to another place
8 word-processor	a machine which acts like a person
9 food-processor	a piece of equipment allowing you to send information from one computer down telephone lines to another computer

52.3 Write descriptions like those in exercise 52.2, for the following objects.

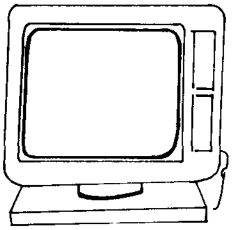
1

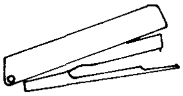
2

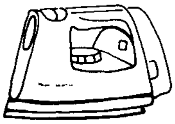
3

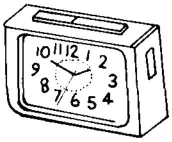

4

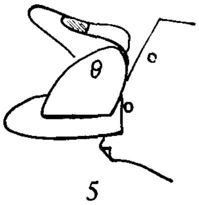
5

52.4 What are the nouns connected with the following verbs?

1 discover　3 rotate　5 patent　7 dissect　9 combine
2 invent　4 conclude　6 analyse　8 experiment

52.5 Give each of the sciences in A opposite a number from 0 to 5 depending on whether it doesn't interest you at all (0) or interests you enormously (5). Similarly mark each of the inventions in B, 0 to 5, depending on how important they are to you in your life.

Follow-up: Increase your knowledge of scientific vocabulary by reading articles of general scientific interest in English language newspapers or magazines. If possible, get a textbook in English for schoolchildren studying a branch of science that you have studied. Choose a book where the science is relatively easy for you so that you can concentrate on the English used.

53 The press and media

The term **the mass media** in English refers basically to TV, radio and newspapers: means of communication which reach very large numbers of people. This page looks at some useful words for talking about the **mass media** and about **publishing** in general.

B Radio and television

Types of TV programmes: documentaries news broadcasts current affairs programmes soap operas quizzes sitcoms drama chat shows detective stories sports programmes weather forecasts music programmes game shows variety shows commercials

A **serial** is a story that continues from one **programme** or **episode** to the next. A **series** is about the same **characters** or has the same format each week but each programme is complete in itself.

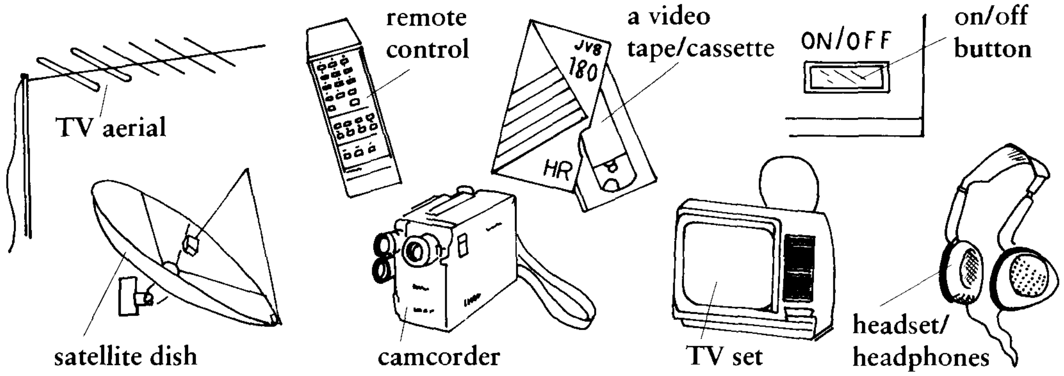

Newspapers and publishing

Parts of the newspaper: headlines news reports the editorial feature articles, e.g. about fashion or social trends horoscope cartoons crossword small ads business news sports reports scandal the letters page

A **popular** or **tabloid newspaper** focuses more on sensation than **real** news whereas **a quality newspaper** professes to be more interested in real news than in sensation. A **tabloid** usually has a smaller format than a **quality paper**, it has larger **headlines** and shorter stories and, in Britain, it prefers stories about film stars, violent crimes and the royal family.

A **journal** is the name usually given to an academic **magazine**. A **colour supplement** is a **magazine** which comes out once a week (often on Sundays) as an addition to a newspaper. A **comic** is a **magazine**, usually for children or teenagers, with lots of picture stories and/or cartoons.

D Make sure you know the verbs in these sentences.

The BBC World Service **broadcasts** throughout the world.
I can **receive / pick up** broadcasts from Moscow on my radio.
They're **showing** a good film on TV tonight.
This book was **published** by CUP but it was **printed** in Hong Kong.
The film was **shot / made on location** in Spain.
They **cut / censored** the film before showing it on TV.
This article / programme has been badly **edited**.

See Unit 92 for the language of newspaper headlines.

Exercises

53.1 **What sort of TV programmes do you think these would be?**

1 Murder at the Match
2 The Amazing Underwater World
3 World Cup Special
4 The $10,000 Question
5 Last Week in Parliament
6 Hamlet from Stratford

53.2 **Give the name of one programme you know in your country of each type listed in B.**

53.3 **Write definitions explaining what jobs each of these people involved in the media do?**

Example: A make-up artist makes up the faces of people who are to appear on TV.

1 a foreign correspondent
2 a sub-editor
3 a continuity person
4 an editor
5 a librarian
6 a bookseller
7 a publisher
8 a columnist
9 a camera operator
10 a critic

53.4 **Fill in the gaps in the sentences below with the most appropriate word from the opposite page.**

1 He doesn't even get up from the sofa to change channels; he just presses the .... on the ....
2 You can hear BBC news .... all over the world.
3 A short wave or a VHF radio can .... many interesting stations.
4 Although our .... was expensive, we've taken some priceless film of our children.
5 Children often prefer looking at .... to reading books.

53.5 **Choose any newspaper (it could be in your own language if you can't find an English one) and complete the following sentences.**

1 The main story today is about ....
2 The editorial is about ....
3 There are readers' letters on page .... and they deal with the following topics:
....
4 The most interesting feature is about ....
5 There is some scandal on page ...., a crossword on page ...., a cartoon on page .... and some small ads on page ....
6 The most interesting business story is about .... and the largest sports article is about ....
7 The most striking photograph shows ....
8 There are advertisements for ....,
.... and ....
9 An article about .... on page .... made me feel
....

53.6 **Look at the TV page of an English language paper and/or listen to the News on the BBC World Service. Make a note of any other useful vocabulary on this theme.**

54 Politics and public institutions

Look at the definitions below taken from a dictionary of politics. Make sure you understand not only the words listed but the words used in the definitions too.

A Types of government

republic: a state governed by representatives and, usually, a president
monarchy: a state ruled by a king or queen
democracy: government of, by and for the people
dictatorship: system of government run by a dictator
independence: freedom from outside control; self-governing

The British Isles

⛆ The United Kingdom
▨ The Republic of Ireland

B People and bodies involved in politics

Member of Parliament (MP): a representative of the people in Parliament
politician: someone for whom politics is a career
statesman/woman: someone who uses an important political position wisely and well
Prime Minister: the head of government or leading minister in many countries
chamber: hall used by a group of legislators; many countries have two chambers
cabinet: a committee of the most important ministers in the government
President and Vice-President: the head of state in many modern states
Mayor: head of a town or city council
ambassador: top diplomat representing his/her country abroad
embassy: the building where an ambassador and his/her staff are based
ministry: a department of state headed by a minister.

C Elections

constituency: a political area whose inhabitants are represented by one MP
candidate: someone who stands in an election
policy: the programme of action of a particular party or government
majority: the number of votes by which a person wins an election
referendum: a direct vote by the population on some important public issue
by(e)-election: an election in one constituency in contrast to a General Election
marginal seat: a parliamentary seat held by a very small majority of votes
the opposition: members of parliament who do not belong to the party in power
stand/run for Parliament: to be a candidate in an election
vote: to choose in a formal way, e.g. by marking a ballot paper
elect: to choose someone or something by voting

You will find words dealing with types of political belief in Unit 67.

Exercises

54.1 **Choose the correct word from the choices offered.**

1 India gained republic/independence/democracy from the UK in 1948.
2 Our MP's just died and so we'll soon need to have a vote/referendum/bye-election.
3 She's running/sitting/walking for Parliament in the next election.
4 His father was voted/stood/elected MP for Cambridge City.
5 What is your country's economic politics/policy/politician?
6 Do you think Bush deserved to be referred to as a politician/statesman/President?

54.2 **Look at this text about politics in the UK. Fill in the missing words.**

Parliament in the UK consists of two ....(1): the House of Commons and the House of Lords. In the House of Commons there are 650 ....(2), each representing one ....(3). The ruling party in the Commons is the one which gains a ....(4) of seats. The main figure in that party is called the ....(5). The Commons is elected for a maximum period of 5 years although the Prime Minister may call a general ....(6) at any time within that period.

54.3 **Make some more words based on those you studied opposite.**

abstract noun	*person noun*	*verb*	*adjective*
revolution	revolutionary	revolutionise	revolutionary
representation	....	....	....
election	....	....	....
dictatorship	....	....	....
presidency	....	....	....

54.4 **Try this political quiz.**

1 Name three monarchies.
2 Which is the oldest parliament in the world?
3 Name the President and the Vice-President of the USA.
4 Who is the Mayor of the place where you live?
5 What politicians represent you in local and national government?
6 What are the main political parties in the country where you now are?
7 What are the main political issues in that country and what are the policies of the different parties on those issues?
8 What do these political abbreviations stand for – MP, PM, UN, EU, NATO, OPEC?

54.5 **Write a paragraph about the political system in your country, using as much of the vocabulary on the opposite page as you can.**

55 Crime

Make sure you know the difference between the verbs: **steal** and **rob**. The object of the verb '**steal**' is the thing which is taken away, e.g. they stole my bike, whereas the object of the verb '**rob**' is the person or place from which things are stolen, e.g. I was robbed last night. A masked man robbed the bank. 'Steal' is irregular: steal, stole, stolen.

B

The table below gives the names of some other types of crimes together with their associated verbs and the name of the person who commits the crimes.

crime	*definition*	*criminal*	*verb*
murder	killing someone	murderer	murder
shoplifting	stealing something from a shop	shoplifter	shoplift
burglary	stealing from someone's home	burglar	burgle
smuggling	taking something illegally into another country	smuggler	smuggle
arson	setting fire to something in a criminal way	arsonist	to set fire to
kidnapping	taking a person hostage in exchange for money or other favours, etc.	kidnapper	kidnap

All the verbs in the table above on the right are regular apart from set (set, set, set).

Here are some more useful verbs connected with crime and law. Note that many of them have particular prepositions associated with them.

to **commit** a crime or an offence: to do something illegal
to **accuse** someone **of** a crime: to say someone is guilty
to **charge** someone **with** (murder): to bring someone to court
to **plead guilty** or **not guilty**: to swear in court that one is guilty or otherwise.
to **defend/prosecute** someone in court: to argue for or against someone in a trial
to pass **verdict on** an accused person: to decide whether they are guilty or not
to **sentence** someone to a punishment: what the judge does after a verdict of guilty
to **acquit** an accused person **of** a charge: to decide in court that someone is not guilty (the opposite of to **convict** someone)
to **fine** someone a sum of money: to punish someone by making them pay
to **send** someone **to prison**: to punish someone by putting them in prison
to **release** someone **from prison/jail**: to set someone free after a prison sentence
to **be tried**: to have a case judged in court.

Here are some useful nouns.

trial: the legal process in court whereby an accused person is investigated, or tried, and then found guilty or not guilty
case: a crime that is being investigated
evidence: information used in a court of law to decide whether the accused is guilty or not
proof: evidence that shows conclusively whether something is a fact or not
verdict: the decision: guilty or not guilty
judge: the person who leads a trial and decides on the sentence
jury: group of twelve citizens who decide whether the accused is guilty or not

Exercises

55.1 Put the right form of either rob or steal in the sentences below.

1 Last night an armed gang .... the post office. They .... £2000.
2 My handbag .... at the theatre yesterday.
3 Every year large numbers of banks ....
4 Jane .... of the opportunity to stand for president.

55.2 Here are some more crimes. Complete a table like the one in B opposite.

crime	*criminal*	*verb*	*definition*
terrorism	....	....	....
blackmail	....	....	....
drug-trafficking	....	....	....
forgery	....	....	....
assault	....	assault	....
pickpocketing	....	....	....
mugging	....	....	....

55.3 Fill the blanks in the paragraph below with one of the verbs from C opposite.

One of the two accused men ....(1) at yesterday's trial. Although his lawyer ....(2) him very well, he was still found guilty by the jury. The judge ....(3) him to two years in prison. He'll probably ....(4) after eighteen months. The other accused man was luckier. He ....(5) and left the courtroom smiling broadly.

55.4 Here are some words connected with law and crime. If necessary, use a dictionary to help you check that you understand what they all mean. Then divide them into three groups, in what seems to you to be the most logical way.

theft
witness
detective
probation
drunken driving
member of a jury
prison
hi-jacking
traffic warden
lawyer
judge
fine
flogging
death penalty
smuggling
bribery
community service
rape

55.5 Look at all the crimes named in this unit. Look both at the left-hand page and at exercises 55.2 and 55.4. Which do you think are the three most serious and the three least serious?

55.6 Write a paragraph to fit this newspaper headline. Give some details about the crime and the court case, using as many words from this unit as is appropriate.

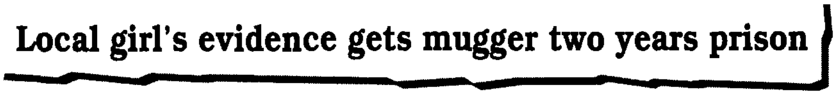

Local girl's evidence gets mugger two years prison

Follow up: If possible look at an English language newspaper. List all the words connected with crime and the law which you can find in it.

56 Money – buying, selling and paying

A Personal finance

Sometimes in a shop they ask you: 'How do you want to pay?'
You can answer: '**Cash / By cheque / By credit card.**'

In a **bank** you usually have a **current account**, which is one where you **pay in your** salary and then **withdraw** money to **pay your everyday bills**. The bank sends you a regular **bank statement** telling you how much money is in your account. You may also have a **savings account** where you **deposit** any extra money that you have and only **take money out** when you want to **spend** it **on** something special. You usually try to avoid having an **overdraft** or you end up paying a lot of **interest**. If your account is **overdrawn**, you can be said to be **in the red** (as opposed to **in the black** or **in credit**).

Sometimes the bank may **lend** you money – this is called a **bank loan**. If the bank (or **building society**) lends you money to buy a house, that money is called a **mortgage**.

When you **buy** (or, more formally, **purchase**) something in a shop, you usually **pay** for it **outright** but sometimes you buy **on credit**. Sometimes you may be offered a **discount** or a **reduction** on something you buy at a shop. This means that you **get**, say, **£10 off** perhaps because you are a student. You are often offered a discount if you buy **in bulk**. It is not usual to **haggle** about prices in a British shop, as it is in, say, a Turkish market. If you want to return something which you have bought to a shop, you may be given a **refund**, i.e. your money will be returned, provided you have a **receipt**.

The money that you pay for services, e.g. to a school or a lawyer, is usually called a **fee or fees**; the money paid for a journey is a **fare**.

If you buy something that you feel was very **good value**, it's a **bargain**. If you feel that it is definitely **not worth** what you paid for it, then you can call it a **rip-off** (very colloquial).

B Public finance

The government collects money from citizens through **taxes**. **Income tax** is the tax collected on **wages** and **salaries**. **Inheritance tax** is collected on what people inherit from others. **Customs** or **excise duties** have to be paid on goods imported from other countries. **VAT** or **value added tax** is a tax paid on most goods and services when they are bought or purchased. Companies pay **corporation tax** on their profits. If you pay too much tax, you should be given some money back, a **tax rebate**.

The government also sometimes pays out money to people in need, e.g. **unemployment benefit** (also known informally as the dole) **disability allowances** and **student grants** (to help pay for studying). Recipients **draw a pension / unemployment benefit** or are **on the dole** or **on social security**.

Every country has its own special **currency**. Every day the **rates of exchange** are published and you can discover, for example, how many dollars there are currently to the pound sterling.

A company may sell **shares** to members of the public who are then said to have **invested** in that company. They should be paid a regular **dividend** on their **investment**, depending on the **profit** or **loss** made by the company.

Exercises

56.1 **Answer the following money quiz.**

1 What currencies are used in Japan, Australia, India and Russia?
2 What does the expression, 'hard currency', mean?
3 Name two credit cards which are usable world-wide.
4 Give two examples of imports that most countries impose customs duties on.
5 Give three examples of kinds of income that would be classed as unearned.
6 What is the Dow Jones index and what are its equivalents in London and Japan?
7 Give an example of something that is priceless and something that is valueless.
8 Name the coins and banknotes used in your country and one other country.

56.2 **Match the words on the left with their definitions on the right.**

1 interest	a bank account with minus money in it
2 mortgage	money paid towards the cost of raising a family
3 an overdrawn account	money given by the government for education, welfare, etc.
4 savings account	an account that is used mainly for keeping money
5 current account	money paid to people after a certain age
6 pension	an account that cheques are drawn on for day-to-day use
7 disability allowance	money chargeable on a loan
8 child benefit	money paid to people with a handicap
9 grant	a loan to purchase property

56.3 **Is the ordinary 'person-in-the-street' pleased to see these newspaper headlines or not?**

Mortgage rate goes up

Wages to be frozen

Pension age raised

Interest rates down

VAT to be reduced

NUMBER ON DOLE RISES

56.4 **Complete the sentences with words from the opposite page.**

1 Money which has to be paid on what you inherit is known as ....
2 If the bank lends you money, you have a bank ....
3 If you have some money in your account you are in the ....
4 I paid too much tax last year so I should get a .... soon.
5 If it's no good, take it back to the shop and ask for a ....

56.5 **Fill in the table below for your own, or any other, country.**

Rate of inflation	....
Exchange rate (against the US dollar)	....
Interest rate	....
Basic level of income tax	....
Rate of VAT	....
Monthly state pension	....

Follow-up: **To improve your financial vocabulary, read articles on business in any English magazine or newspaper. Write down any new words or expressions that you come across.**

57 Number, quantity, degree and intensity

Number and quantity

Number is used for countable nouns, **amount** for uncountables.

Scale of adjectives useful for expressing number and quantity:

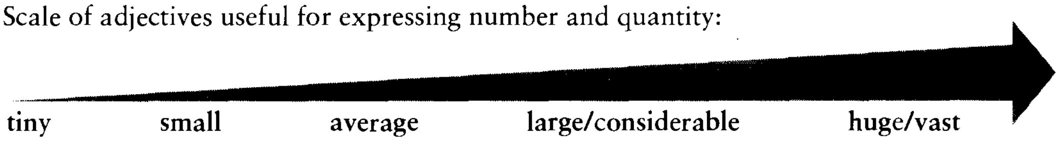

Add just a **tiny amount** of chilli pepper, or else it may get too hot.
A **considerable number** of people failed to get tickets. [formal]
Vast amounts of money have been wasted on this project.
Were there many people at the airport? Oh, about average, I'd say. [fairly informal]

Much/many, a lot, lots, plenty, a good/great deal

example	*comments*
Is there **much** work to do? No, not **much**.	mostly used in questions and negatives with uncountable nouns
There are **lots of** nice shops in this street.	mostly for affirmatives; has a rather positive feeling; informal
Don't worry, there's **plenty of** time.	mostly affirmatives, used in positive contexts
You were making **a lot of** noise last night.	used in all structures; neutral, better than **lots** in negative contexts
There's a **great deal of** hard work still to do.	+ uncountables, more formal

Much and **many** do occur in affirmatives, but they sound formal and are probably best kept for formal written contexts.

Much criticism has been levelled at the government's policy.
Many people are afraid of investing in stocks and shares.

B Informal and colloquial words for number/quantity

I've got **dozens of** nails in my tool-box. Why buy more? [especially good for countables]
There's **heaps/bags/loads of** time yet, slow down! [countable or uncountable and informal]
There was absolutely **tons of** food at the party; far too much. [especially good for things, not so good for abstract nouns]
There are **tons of** apples on this tree this year; last year there were hardly any. [note how the verb here is plural because of 'apples', but singular in the example before with 'food' – number depends on the *noun* following, not on **tons/lots/loads**]
Just a **drop of** wine for me, please. [tiny amount of any liquid]

Degree and intensity

Typical collocations of adverbs: a bit/quite/rather/fairly/very/really/awfully/extremely combine with 'scale' adjectives such as tired, worried, weak, hot.

Totally/absolutely/completely/utterly combine with '**limit**' adjectives such as ruined, exhausted, destroyed, wrong.

Exercises

57.1 **Comment on the following numbers and quantities using adjective-noun combinations from A opposite.**

Example: The Government will only give us a grant of £20.
But that's a tiny sum of money. How mean!

1 £5 billion was wasted on developing the new rocket.
2 Over 50 people came to Sally's lecture yesterday. We were pleasantly surprised.
3 We have 120 students most years, and we'll probably have about that this year, too.
4 There was only five pounds in my purse when it was stolen.
5 We've wasted over 100 hours in meetings and got nowhere.

57.2 **Here are some more adjectives which can combine with *amount.* Divide them into two groups, *small* and *large* and fill in the bubbles. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

miniscule gigantic overwhelming minute /maɪˈnjuːt/ meagre
excessive insignificant sizeable

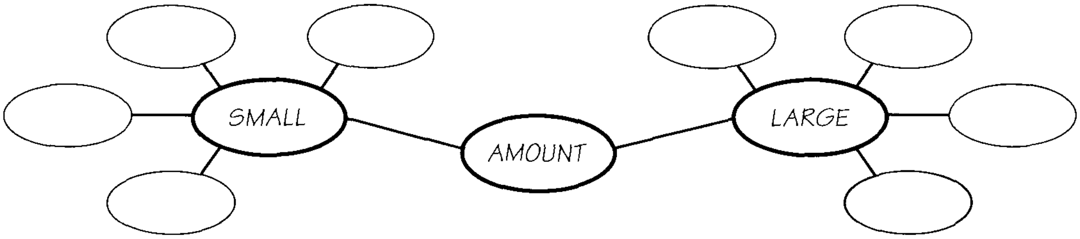

Now try using them to fill in the gaps below. More than one answer may be possible.

1 Even a .... amount of sand can jam a camera.
2 I've had an absolutely .... amount of work lately.
3 Oh, you've given me a .... amount of food here!
4 It takes a .... amount of money to start a business.
5 An .... amount of fat in your diet is dangerous.

57.3 **Fill in the gaps with *much/many, a lot/lots of, plenty of, a good/great deal of.***

1 There's .... dust on these books. Fetch me a duster.
2 Please eat up; there's .... food.
3 There wasn't .... we could do, so we went home.
4 We've put .... energy into this plan. I hope it works.
5 .... people seem unable to cope with computers.

57.4 **Using intensifiers from C opposite, say how you might feel if the following happened.**

1 You heard that a friend was in trouble with the police.
2 A close friend coming to stay did not turn up and sent no message to say why.
3 Three people gave you different directions to get to the same place.
4 You passed an exam you expected to fail.
5 Your best friend was going abroad for two years.
6 You had been working non-stop for 18 hours.

57.5 **Make four sentences of your own using the informal words from B opposite. Write about yourself / where you live, etc.**

58 Time

A Periods of time – words and typical contexts

The Ice Age The Stone Age The Middle Ages The **age** of the computer. [major historical/geological periods]

After the war, a new **era** of peace began. [long period, perhaps several decades]

The doctor said I needed a **period** of rest and relaxation, so I'm taking three months' unpaid leave. [very general word]

A **spell** of hot weather. He's had a couple of **spells** in hospital in the last two or three years. [indefinite but short]

During the 1950s I lived in Cork for a **time**. [vague, indefinite]

D'you want to borrow this book for a **while**? [indefinite but not too long]

B Useful phrases with time

TIME

The doctor says you should stay in bed **for the time being**. [not specific]

One **at a time**, please! I can't serve you all together.

He can get a bit bad-tempered **at times**.

We got there **just in time** for dinner.

By the time we get home this pizza will be cold!

I expected you to be late, the trains are never **on time**.

I've told you **time and time again** not to ring me at the office!

C Verbs associated with time passing

1980 ⟶ 1990 Ten years have **passed/elapsed** since I last heard from her.

Elapse is more formal and is normally used in the perfect or past, without adverbs. **Pass** can be used in any tense and with adverbs.
Don't worry. The time will pass quickly. Time **passes** very slowly when you're lonely.

London —— ⟶ Singapore It **takes** 12 hours to fly to Singapore.

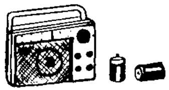

The batteries in this radio usually **last** about three or four months.

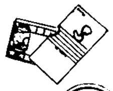

This videotape **lasts/runs** for three hours.

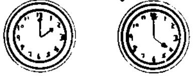

The meeting **went on** for two hours. [suggests longer than expected or desired]

Note also: **Take your time**, you don't need to hurry.

D Adjectives describing duration (how long something lasts)

He's a **temporary** lecturer; the **permanent** one's on leave.
Could we make a **provisional** booking now and confirm it later?
Venice has a **timeless** beauty.
Christians believe in **eternal** life after death.

Exercises

58.1 Age, era, period, spell, time. Fill the gaps as appropriate.

1 The Minister said that before the new law came into force there would be a .... of six months when people could hand in firearms without being prosecuted.
2 The twentieth century will be seen by historians as the .... of the motor car.
3 These factories mark the beginning of a new .... of industrial development for the country.
4 For a .... I thought I would never find a job, but then I was lucky.
5 We had a very cold .... in February when all the pipes froze up.

58.2 Which phrases from B opposite could you use in the following situations? Write exactly what you might say, as in the example.

1 To a child who repeatedly leaves the fridge door open despite being told off often.
'I've told you time and time again not to leave that fridge door open!'

2 To someone you're happy to see who arrives just as you are serving tea/coffee.

3 On a postcard you expect will arrive at someone's house after you do.

4 A large group of people want to talk to you but you'd prefer to see them individually.

5 Ask someone to use an old photocopier while the new one is being repaired.

6 Explain to someone that the weather occasionally gets very cold in your country.

7 Tell someone you'll do your best to arrive punctually at a meeting.

58.3 Complete the sentences using verbs from C opposite.

1 The ferry crossing...
2 Use this cassette to record, it will...
3 These shoes have been great, they've...
4 Everyone got bored because the speeches...
5 The disaster occurred in 1932. Many years...
6 I'll miss you terribly. I only hope the weeks...
7 There's no hurry at all, just...

58.4 Match the queries with suitable responses.

1 So, she's been promoted?	Well, provisionally.
2 A lovely, quiet place?	Yes, she's permanent now.
3 So she's agreed to do it?	It's a temporary measure.
4 So, after death, life goes on?	Yes, absolutely timeless.
5 Language classes in the gym?	Yes, I believe it's eternal.

59 Distances and dimensions

You probably know all the common words for distances and dimensions. In this unit we shall concentrate on derived words and compounds and other connected words/phrases you may not know or be unsure of how to use accurately.

Broad and wide and tall and high

Wide is more common than broad, e.g. It's a very wide road/garden/room.

Make a note of typical collocations for broad as you meet them, e.g. Economics is a very broad subject; We came to a broad expanse of grassland. [big area]

Note the word order for talking about dimensions, e.g. The room's **five metres long and four wide.**

Don't forget that **tall** is for people but can be used for things such as buildings and trees when they are **high** and **thin** in some way. Otherwise, use **high** for things.

She's very **tall** for a five-year-old.
Her office is in that **tall** building in the square.
There are some **high** mountains in the North.

Deep ≠ shallow

The **deep** and **shallow** ends of a swimming pool.

C Derived words, phrases and compounds

long:	Let's measure the **length** of this rope. I swam 20 **lengths** (of the swimming pool). I've **lengthened** her skirt for her. [shorten, see below] Getting a visa's a **lengthy** process. [usually refers to time; rather negative] Can I make a **long-distance** phone call?
short:	The new road will **shorten** our journey by ten minutes. There's a **short-cut** to the station. [quick way]
wide:	Let's measure the **width** of the room. They're **widening** the road.
broad:	I want to **broaden** my experience. [usually more abstract contexts]
high:	The **height** of the wall is two metres. The fog **heightened** the feeling of mystery. [usually used only for feelings and emotions]
low:	You can **lower** that table if it is too high.
far:	He loves travelling to **faraway** places.
deep:	the **depth** of the river here is about 3 metres. His death so soon after hers **deepened** our sadness even further. [often with feelings]

E Other verbs for dimensions and for changing them.

Our garden **stretches** all the way to the river, so we have plenty of room to **extend** the house if we want to.
The cities are **spreading** and the countryside is **shrinking**.

Exercises

59.1 Complete B's replies using a suitable form of the dimension/distance words opposite.

1 A: These trousers I've bought are too long.
B: Well, why not get...

2 A: He's a big boy, isn't he? 1.90 metres!
B: Yes, he's...

3 A: Why are we going across the field?
B: Just to get there that bit quicker; it's...

4 A: We'll have to measure how high the room is.
B: That's not necessary; we already know the...

5 A: The traffic seems to move far quicker on this road since I was last here.
B: Yes, well, they...

6 A: Why do they have to have music on TV news programmes? It seems totally unnecessary!
B: Well, I think they want to create a feeling of drama, and the music is supposed to...

59.2 Give opposites for:

1 a length of the pool
2 to shorten
3 a very broad range of goods
4 a local call
5 deep water
6 nearby places

59.3 Match the left- and right-hand columns.

1 The city's spread a lot;	for miles along the river.
2 It takes ten weeks;	you should broaden it.
3 We extended the house	it's much bigger now.
4 You can choose;	there's a wide range.
5 Your experience is too narrow;	it's a lengthy business
6 The forest stretches	to give us more room.

59.4 Prepositions with distance. Fill in the prepositions. If you are unsure, try looking up the word *distance* in a good dictionary.

1 The car was parked .... a distance .... about 150 metres from the scene of the robbery.
2 I saw you .... the distance yesterday but I didn't call out as I could see you were with someone.
3 She's a great shot. She can hit an empty can .... a distance of about 100 feet, which I can't.
4 What's the total distance .... here .... Paris?

59.5 Use these verbs to fill the gaps. Check their usage in a dictionary if necessary.

expand extend spread shrink grow contract

1 AIDS .... rapidly during the 1980s.
2 The steel industry .... when the economy was strong, but now it has .... and only employs 8,000 people.
3 This sweater of mine has .... in the wash!
4 Our land .... as far as those trees there.
5 Our problems have .... since that new boss came.

60 Obligation, need, possibility and probability

A Obligation

Must is an instruction or command; that is why we see it on notices, e.g. Dogs **must** be kept on a lead. Cars **must** not be parked here.
Have (got) to says that circumstances oblige you to do something. Often, the two meanings overlap and there will be a choice of how to express the obligation, but not always.

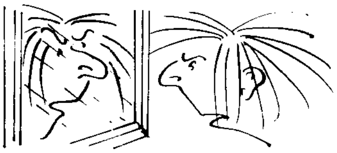

I **must** get my hair cut! [command to yourself]

I've **got** to get my hair cut. I've got an interview tomorrow. [circumstances]

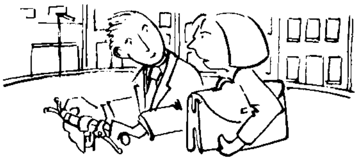

There's no bus service, so I **have to** walk to work. [circumstances]

I really **must** get a bicycle. [instruction to yourself]

The company **is obliged to** give a refund if the tour is cancelled.
You will **be liable** to pay tax if you work. [formal/legalistic]
The bank robbers **forced** him at gunpoint to open the safe.
We had **no choice/alternative but** to sell our house; we owed the bank £100,000.
The death sentence is **mandatory** for drug-smuggling in some countries. [automatic; there is no alternative]
Was sport **compulsory/obligatory** at your school? No, it was **optional** at mine. [**optional**: you can choose]
I am **exempt** from tax as I'm a student. [free from obligation]

The negative of **must** and **have (got) to** are formed with **need** and **have to**, when we mean something is not necessary/not obligatory.

You **don't need to/don't have to/needn't** wash up; we've got a dishwasher.

B Need

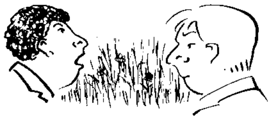

The grass needs cutting (badly). [or '**wants** cutting' – informal]

This plant is **in need** of water. [more formal than 'needs/wants']

The miners died through a **lack of** oxygen. [there was none]
There is a **shortage of** doctors. [there are not enough]
There's a **need for** more discussion on the matter. [we feel a need]

C Scale of probability: 'cannot happen' to 'has to happen'

impossible → unlikely → possible → probable → certain → inevitable

Note: I've been given **an opportunity** to go to Bonn. [a real chance] *but,* Is there any **chance/possibility** you'll be free next week? [**chance** is less formal than **possibility**]

Exercises

60.1 **Continue the sentences using 'obligation' words and phrases from A opposite, and using the words in brackets.**

1 They were losing £1 million a year, so the company... (close down)
2 You don't have to buy travel insurance... (optional)
3 You can hire a video camera, but you... (pay a deposit)
4 We'll have to sell the house, I'm afraid we have... (otherwise, bankrupt)
5 This jacket's got curry stains on it; I really... (the cleaners)
6 He didn't want to give them the money, but they had guns; they... (hand it over)
7 No, he couldn't choose to pay a fine; the prison sentence is... (for dangerous driving)
8 I didn't want to do maths, but I had to. It's... (in all secondary schools)
9 How kind of you! You really... (buy us a present)
10 If you're over 50, you're... (military service)

60.2 **List something in your world which...**

1 regularly needs cutting. *my hair, the lawn*
2 there is a lack of.
3 is obligatory once a year.
4 you are in need of.
5 is inevitable.
6 you no longer have to do.
7 was compulsory when you were at school.

60.3 **Collocations with 'possibility/probability' words. Use a dictionary to try to fill in the rest of this matrix. One line has already been done for you. If you cannot find out the collocations at all, use the key to this unit.**

✔ = typical collocation ✗ = not a typical collocation

	highly	*quite*	*very*	*absolutely*
possible	✗	✔	✔	✗
impossible				
probable				
(un)likely				
inevitable				
certain				

60.4 **Use the collocations in 60.3 to say how probable/possible these are.**

1 Most people will have a videophone in their homes by 2025.
2 There will be rain in the Amazon forest within the next 8 days.
3 A human being will live to be 250.
4 We will all be dead by the year 2250.
5 A flying saucer will land in Hong Kong.
6 You'll be given an opportunity to meet the US President.
7 There will be a third world war.

61 Sound and light

A General words to describe sound

I could hear the **sound** of voices/music coming from the next room. [neutral]
Our neighbours had a party last night. The **noise** went on till 3 a.m. [loud, unpleasant sounds]
I tried hard to hear what she was saying above the **din** of the traffic. [very loud, irritating noise]
The children are making a terrible **racket** upstairs. Could you go and tell them to be quiet? [very loud, unbearable noise, often of human activity]

Racket and **din** are quite informal words. **Noise** can be countable or uncountable. When it means sounds of short duration, it is countable, when it means a lot of continual or continuous sounds, it is uncountable.
Their lawnmower makes **a lot of noise**, doesn't it? [uncountable]
I heard some strange **noises** in the night. [countable]

Sound words and things that typically make them

The words can be used as nouns or verbs
I could hear the rain **pattering** on the roof. We heard the **patter** of a little child's feet.

verb/noun	*example of what makes the sound*
bang	a door closing in the wind, someone bursting a balloon
rustle	opening a paper/plastic bag, dry leaves underfoot
thud	a heavy object falling on to a carpeted floor
crash	a big, solid, heavy object falling on to a hard floor
clang	a big bell ringing, a hollow metal object being struck
clatter	a metal pan falling on to a concrete floor
hiss	gas/steam escaping through a small hole
rumble	distant noise of thunder, noise of traffic far away
roar	noise of heavy traffic, noise of a huge waterfall

C Darkness

Some adjectives for **dark** conditions. (For adjectives describing brightness, see Unit 64.)
These brown walls are a bit **gloomy**. We should paint them white.
This torch gives a **dim** light. I think it needs new batteries.
It was a **sombre** room, with dark, heavy curtains. [serious, imposing]

Types of light

The sun **shines** and gives out **rays** of light.
A torch gives out a **beam** of light.
A camera gives a **flash** of light.
Stars **twinkle**.
A candle-flame **flickers** in the breeze.
White-hot coal on a fire **glows**.
A diamond necklace **sparkles**.
A gold object **glitters**.

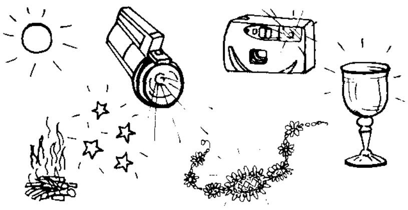

Exercises

61.1 **Choose *sound, noise(s), din* or *racket* to fill the gaps.**

1 There was a terrible .... outside the pub last night; it was a fight involving about six people.
2 I could sit and listen to the .... of the river all day.
3 My car's making some strange .... I'll have to get it looked at.
4 Gosh! What an awful ....! I think you should take up a different instrument; the violin's just not for you!
5 I can't sleep if there's .... of any kind, so I use these ear-plugs.

61.2 **Using the table opposite at B, what sound do you think each of these might make?**

1 A bottle of fizzy mineral water being opened.
2 A typewriter being dropped down an iron staircase.
3 A mouse or a hedgehog moving among dead grass and leaves.
4 A rather overweight person falling on to a wooden floor.
5 A starting-pistol for a sporting event.
6 A train passing at high speed a few feet away from you.
7 A slow train passing, heard through the walls of a house.

61.3 **As in the table at B opposite, make a note of something that might make the sound.**

verb/noun	*typical source(s) of the sound*
hum	....
rattle	....
bleep	....
screech	....
chime	....

61.4 **Join up the left-hand sentences with the right-hand ones so that they make sense.**

1 I saw a beam of light coming towards me.	Then it died, leaving us in complete darkness.
2 It sparkled in the morning sunlight.	It was a police officer holding a flashlamp.
3 It began to flicker uncertainly.	It was clearly time to get up and move out.
4 The first rays shone into the room.	I'd never seen such a beautiful bracelet.

61.5 **What do you think the *figurative* meanings of the underlined words are? Choose from the alternatives.**

1 She beamed at him.
a) smiled b) shouted c) attacked
2 After the day's skiing, our faces glowed.
a) were frozen b) were dried up c) were full of colour
3 He has a twinkle in his eyes.
a) a piece of grit b) a sign of humour/enjoyment c) a sign of anger

62 Possession, giving and lending

Possession

All his **possessions** were destroyed in the terrible fire. [everything he owned; always plural in this meaning]

Don't leave any of your **belongings** here; we've had a few thefts recently. [smaller things, e.g. bag, camera, coat; always plural]

Estate in the singular can mean a big area of private land and the buildings on it, or all of someone's wealth upon death.

She owns a huge **estate** in Scotland. [land, etc.]

After his death, his **estate** was calculated at £3 million. [all his wealth]

Property (uncountable) is used in a general sense for houses, land, etc.

He's only fourteen; he's too young to own **property**.

A **property** (countable) is a building, e.g. house, office-block.

She's just bought a very nice **property** near the town-centre.

B Words for people connected with ownership

The **proprietor** of this restaurant is a friend of mine. [used for shops, businesses etc. The **owner** would be less formal]

The **landlord/lady's** put the rent up. [owner of rented property]

Do you own this house? No we're just **tenants**. [we rent it]

Giving

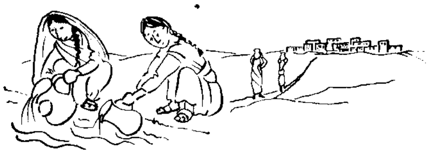

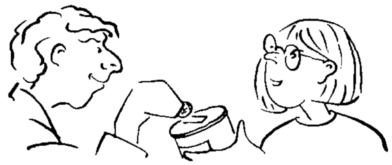

The river **provides** the village **with** water / **provides** water **for** the village. (or **supplies**)

Would you like to **contribute** / **donate** something to the children's hospital fund?

Jakes Ltd. **supplies** our school **with** paper and other items. [often for 'selling' contexts]

It gives me pleasure to **present** you **with** this clock from us all.

The school restaurant **caters for** 500 people every day.

That uncle of mine that died **left** £3,000 to a dogs' home.

When she died she **donated** all her books to the library. [for large gifts to institutions]

You've been **allocated** room 24. Here's your key.

D Lending, etc.

We've decided to **hire/rent** a car. Can you recommend a good **car-hire/car-rental** firm? [**rent** and **hire** are both commonly used]

We'd like to **rent** a flat in Oxford for six months. [not hire]

We've **hired** the lecture-room for a day. [not **rent**; short, temporary arrangements]

Remember: when you **lend**, you give, when you **borrow**, you receive.

That step-ladder you **lent** me last week, could I **borrow** it again?

I'm trying to get **a loan** from the bank to buy a boat.

Exercises

62.1 **What questions do you think were asked to get these answers?**

1 Oh no, we own it. Most houses here are owner-occupied.
2 Well, sorry, no; I need it to take photos myself.
3 You will be in Room 44B. It's quite a big office.
4 No, you have to buy exercise books and pens yourself.
5 Actually, I've already given something. Sorry.
6 Oh, just a small house with a garden, you know, typical.
7 Yes, the charge is £50 for one that seats 30 people.

62.2 **The verbs in the middle column have been jumbled. Put them in their right sentences.**

1 A millionaire	provided	a swimming pool to the school.
2 The Director was	presented	the best parking-place.
3 My mother's cousin	donated	me £5,000 in her will.
4 A farmer nearby	catered	us with logs for the fire.
5 When I retired they	left	me with a camcorder.
6 The restaurant	allocated	for vegetarians.

62.3 **Some phrasal verbs connected with 'giving'. Check their meaning in a dictionary and then fill the gaps below.**

hand over give out let go of give away hand down

1 That bed has been .... in the family. It was my great-grandmother's originally.
2 Would you help us .... some leaflets in the shopping-centre?
3 I don't want to .... that old painting. It might be valuable one day.
4 When Tim's bike got too small for him we .... it ....; it wasn't worth trying to sell it, too much bother.
5 The landlord will .... the keys as soon as you pay the deposit and the first month's rent.

62.4 **Think of something that...**

1 you would hand over to a mugger if threatened.
2 has been handed down in your family.
3 you have given away at some time in your life.
4 is often given out in classrooms.
5 you value and would not want to let go of.

62.5 **The rise and fall of Mr Fatcatt – a sad story. Fill the gaps with suitable words.**

Horace Fatcatt began his career by buying up old ....(1) in London when prices were low. He got ....(2) from several banks to finance his deals, and soon he was one of the biggest private ....(3) in the city, with some 3,000 ....(4) renting houses and flats from him. He was also the ....(5) of many shops and businesses. He became very rich and bought himself a huge................................(6) in Scotland, but he ....(7) more and more money from the banks and soon the bubble burst. Recession came and he had to sell all his ....(8) and ....(9), everything. He was left with just a few personal ....(10) and finally died penniless.

63 Movement and speed

A Move is the basic verb for all movement, but do not forget it also means 'to move to a new house/flat', e.g. We've **moved**. Do you want our new address?

Particular types of movement

Cars, lorries, etc. **travel/drive** along roads.
Trains **travel** along rails.
Boats/ships **sail** on rivers / across the sea.
Rivers/streams **flow/run** through towns/villages.

Things often have particular verbs associated with their types of movement. You should learn these as collocations as you meet them, and record them with a phrase or sentence.

White clouds **drifted** across the sky.
The flag **fluttered** in the wind.
The leaves **stirred** in the light breeze.
The trees **swayed** back and forth as the gale grew fiercer.
The car **swerved** to avoid a dog which had run into the road.

B Useful verbs to describe fast and slow movement

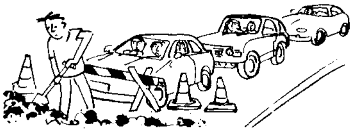

The traffic was **crawling along** because of the roadworks.

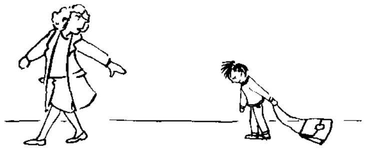

We'll be late! Stop **dawdling**!

Suddenly a car came round the bend and **tore** along the road at high speed. Seconds later, a police car **shot past** after it.

Everyone was **hurrying/rushing** to get their shopping done before closing time.

The train was just **trundling/plodding** along at about 30 miles per hour. I knew we'd be late.

C Nouns describing speed and their typical contexts

speed	general word: used for vehicles, developments, changes, etc., e.g. We were travelling at high **speed**.
rate	often used in statistical contexts; the rate of increase/decrease, e.g. The birth **rate** is going down.
pace	how you experience something as happening fast or slow, e.g. The lesson was going at a very slow **pace**.
velocity	for technical/scientific contexts, e.g. The **velocity** of a bullet.

Exercises

63.1 Write sentences which could come immediately *before* each of these sentences so that they make sense together.

1 It was moving so much I thought it would break altogether.
2 It sails at dawn.
3 It flows through the capital city.
4 I had to swerve hard and nearly ended up in the river.
5 It was travelling at 80 miles per hour when it happened.

63.2 What other things do you think could be described by each verb apart from the contexts given on the left-hand page. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 sway: a tree, a person dancing / someone drunk / a boat
2 crawl: traffic, ...
3 shoot: a car, ...
4 flutter: a flag, ...
5 drift: a cloud, ...

63.3 Fill the gap with *speed, rate, pace* or *velocity*. Use the guidelines on the left-hand page to help you.

1 The .... of decline in this species is alarming.
2 I just couldn't stand the .... of life in the city, so I moved to a small village.
3 The police scientist said the bullet had come from a high- .... rifle.
4 A: What .... were you doing at the time? B: Oh, about 60, I'd say.

63.4 Use a dictionary to make notes to help you learn the difference between these near-synonyms. Make notes under the headings *usage* and *grammar*, as in the example.

	usage	*grammar*
fast	*e.g. fast car/fast train – refers to speed*	*adjective and adverb – 'she drove fast'*
quick		
rapid		
swift		

63.5 In what situations might you...

1 tear out of the house?
2 deliberately dawdle?
3 plod along at a steady pace?
4 not even dare to stir?
5 shoot past somebody's office/room?

63.6 People and verbs of motion. What sorts of people do you think these are? Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 a slowcoach 2 a streaker 3 a plodder 4 a stirrer

64 Texture, brightness, weight and density

Texture – how something feels when you touch it

adjective	*typical examples*
smooth	the paper in this book
polished	varnished wood / a shiny metal surface
silky	silk itself / fine, expensive tights or stockings
sleek	highly polished, streamlined new car bodywork
downy	new-born baby's hair
slippery	a fish just out of the water
furry	a thick sheepskin rug
rough	new, unwashed denim jeans / bark of a tree
coarse	sand
jagged	sharp, irregular edges of broken glass or metal
prickly	a thistle, a hedgehog, thorns on a rose
gnarled	twisted, dead wood from an old tree

Your hair has a silky feel.
The table had a beautiful polished **surface.**
This cotton is very smooth **to the touch.**
The ground was rough **underfoot.**

Brightness – some adjectives

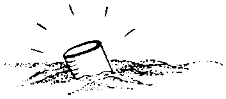

A **shiny** object lying in the sand

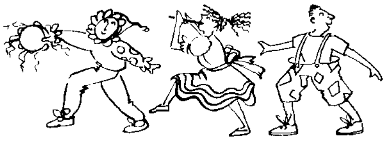

a carnival full of **vivid** colours

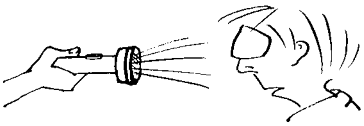

a **dazzling** light

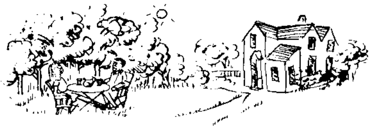

a **shady** corner of the garden

You wear such **dull** colours: why not get some **brighter** clothes?
This torch is getting a bit **dim**; it needs new batteries.
I wear sun-glasses because of the **glare** of the sun on the sand.

Density and weight

A **solid** ≠ **hollow** object   She has **thick** ≠ **thin/fine** hair
An area with **dense** ≠ **sparse** vegetation.
These boxes are rather **weighty.** [heavier than expected]
Your bag's as **light as a feather!** Have you brought enough?
Your bag's as **heavy** as **lead!** What's in it, bricks?
This suitcase is very **cumbersome.** [difficult, big and heavy]

Exercises

64.1 **How would you personally expect the following things to feel?**

1 The cover of a well-produced brochure.
2 The feathers in a pillow or duvet.
3 A wet bar of soap.
4 The branches of a rose-bush.
5 A gravel pathway.
6 The inside of a pair of sheepskin gloves.
7 The edge of a piece of broken, rusty metal.
8 Heavy, stone-ground wholemeal flour.
9 The surface of a mirror.
10 An old, dead log on the forest floor.

Look round your own house/flat and find:

1 something sleek to the touch
2 something rough underfoot
3 something with a polished surface
4 something furry
5 something smooth

64.2 **Here are the commonest British weights with their metric equivalents. Try and answer the questions that follow.**

weight	*written as*	*approximate metric equivalent*	
ounce	oz	28 grams	used for goods in shops, etc.
pounds	lb	454 grams	
stone	st	6.3 kilos	used for personal weight

1 A friend tells you her new baby weighed seven pounds at birth. Is this a huge, tiny or more or less average baby?
2 Someone tells you their cousin weighs 20 stone. What would you expect the cousin to look like?
3 You ask someone to get you a piece of cheese at the market, enough for you personally for a week. They ask if 8 ounces will do. What would you say?
4 Make a note (a private one if you wish!) of your approximate weight in British terms.

64.3 **Quiz. Name the following.**

1 A creature with a sleek coat.
2 A slippery creature.
3 A prickly creature.
4 A creature with a furry coat.
5 A creature with a downy coat.

64.4 **Pair-puzzles. Each word has a letter in it that is part of a *related* word from the left-hand page. Fill in the letters, as in the example.**

					C	D
P			D	S	O	A
O	SHADY		E	H	A	Z
OUNCE	U		N	VI _ _ _	RO _ _ _	Z
N	_	S _ _ _	SE	N	S	GL _ _ _
D	_		E	Y	E	E

Can you make pair-puzzles with *cumbersome, lead* and *feather*?

65 Success, failure and difficulty

Succeeding

I **managed** to contact him just before he left his office.
I don't think I can **manage** the whole walk. I think I'll turn back. [**manage**, but not succeed, may have a direct object in this meaning]
We **succeeded in** persuading a lot of people to join our protest. [in + -ing]
We've **achieved/accomplished** a great deal in the last three years. [both are used with quantity phrases such as 'a lot'/'a little']
The company has **achieved** all its **goals/aims/targets** for this year [achieve is more common than **accomplish** with nouns expressing **goals** and **ambitions**]
D'you think his plan will **come off**? [succeed; informal]

Matrix for some typical collocations with 'succeeding' verbs

	reach	*attain*	*secure*	*realise*	*fulfil*	*achieve*
an ambition		✓		✓	✓	✓
a dream				✓		✓
an agreement	✓		✓			
an obligation					✓	
a target	✓	✓				✓
a compromise	✓					✓

B Failing

Plans and projects often go wrong or **misfire**. [don't turn out as intended]
Companies, clubs and societies often **fold** through lack of success. [close down]
A plan or project may **falter**, even if it finally succeeds. [go through ups and downs]
All your plans and hard work/efforts may **come to nothing.**

C Difficulty

I have great **difficulty in** getting up in the morning. I **find it difficult** to remember the names of everybody in the class. [hard can be used here; it is more informal]
It's hard/difficult to hear what she's saying.
I often have **trouble** starting the car on cold mornings.
We've **had a lot of bother with** the neighbours lately.
Can you **cope with** three more students? They've just arrived.
I've no money, my girl-friend's left me; I need help; I just can't **cope** any more.

Word-classes

verb	*noun*	*adjective*	*adverb*
succeed	success	successful	successfully
accomplish	accomplishment	accomplished	–
achieve	achievement	achievable	–
attain	attainment	attainable	–
fulfil	fulfilment	fulfilling	–
–	–	hard	hard

Exercises

65.1 **Using the collocation matrix opposite, choose a suitable verb to fill the gap. If the exact word in the sentence is not in the vertical column of the matrix, look for something that is close in meaning.**

1 The management have .... an agreement with the union which will guarantee no strikes for the next three years.
2 Now that I've .... all my responsibilities to my family, I feel I can retire and go round the world.
3 The church building-fund has failed to .... its target of £250,000.
4 I never thought I would .... my ambition, but now I have.
5 Very few people .... all their hopes and dreams in life, very few indeed, I can tell you.
6 We hope the two sides .... a compromise and avoid war.
7 I'm afraid that little scheme of mine didn't .... off.

65.2 **Fill in the missing word forms where they exist.**

verb	*noun*	*adjective*	*adverb*
realise	....	....	....
....	difficulty	....	....
....	target	....	....
....	ambition	....	....
fail	....	....	....
....	trouble	....	....

65.3 **Correct the mistakes in these sentences.**

1 I find very difficult to understand English idioms.
2 She succeeded to rise to the top in her profession.
3 Do you ever have any trouble to use this photocopier? I always seem to.
4 I've accomplished to work quite hard this last month.
5 I'm amazed that you can cope all the work they give you.

65.4 **What might happen if... / What would you do if...**

1 a plan misfired? *Abandon it. / Look for an alternative.*
2 you were having a lot of bother with your car?
3 a club had only two members left out of fifty?
4 a student faltered in one exam out of six, but did well in all the rest?
5 you started a small business but it came to nothing?
6 you couldn't cope with your English studies?

65.5 **In what sorts of situations would you hear the following remarks? Check any new words/phrases if you are not sure.**

1 We'll have to get an au pair. I just can't cope.
2 £5,000 and I've got nothing to show for it!
3 It collapsed, I'm afraid, and he's bankrupt now.
4 Yes, she pulled it off despite the competition.

66 Containers and contents

A There are a number of special words in English which are used to describe different kinds of containers. Look at the following pictures.

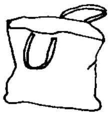
bag

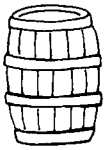
barrel

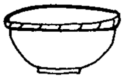
basin

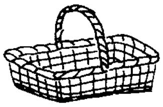
basket

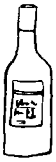
bottle

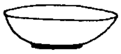
bowl

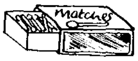
box

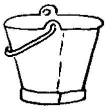
bucket

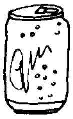
can

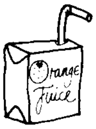
carton

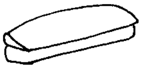
case (e.g. for spectacles)

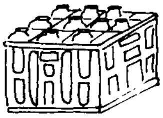
crate

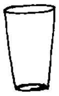
glass

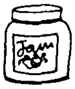
jar

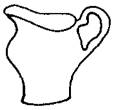
jug

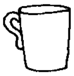
mug

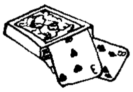
pack

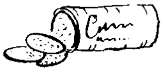
packet

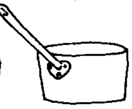
pan

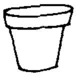
pot

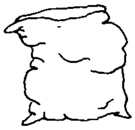
sack

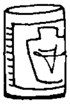
tin

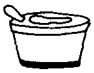
tub

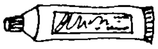
tube

Here is some additional information about each of these types of containers.

container	*usually made of*	*typical contents*
bag	cloth, paper, plastic	sweets, shopping, letters
barrel	wood and metal	wine, beer
basin	pottery, metal	ingredients for making a cake
basket	canes, rushes	shopping, clothes, waste paper
bottle	glass, plastic	milk, lemonade, wine
bowl	china, glass, wood	fruit, soup, sugar
box	cardboard, wood	matches, tools, toys, chocolates
bucket	metal, plastic	sand, water
can	tin	coca cola, beer
carton	card	milk, yoghurt, 20 packets of cigarettes
case	leather, wood	jewellery, spectacles
crate	wood, plastic	bottles
glass	glass	milk, lemonade, wine
jar	glass, pottery	jam, honey, olives, instant coffee
jug	pottery	milk, cream, water
mug	pottery	tea, coffee, cocoa
pack	card	cards, eight cans of coca cola
packet	card, paper	cigarettes, tea, biscuits, juice, cereal
pan	metal	food that is being cooked
pot	metal, pottery	food, plant
sack	cloth, plastic	coal, rubbish
tin	tin	peas, baked beans, fruit
tub	wood, zinc, card	flowers, rainwater, ice-cream
tube	soft metal, plastic	toothpaste, paint, ointment

Exercises

66.1 **Try to complete the blanks in the shopping list without looking at the opposite page.**

2 .... of milk
4 .... of coke
a .... of condensed milk
a .... of chocolate biscuits
a .... of cigarettes
a large .... of matches
a .... of honey
6 .... of crisps

66.2 **Try the following quiz about the words on the opposite page.**

1 Which two of the containers listed would you be most likely to find holding flowers in a garden?
2 Which three are you most likely to find in a cellar?
3 Which six would you be likely to find in an off-licence (a shop which sells drink)?
4 Which five would you be most likely to see on the breakfast table?
5 Which ones does a postman carry with him?
6 Which two are often used for carrying shopping?
7 How many cigarettes would you expect to find in (a) a carton (b) a packet?

66.3 **Name the containers and their contents.**

1
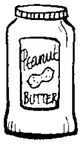

2
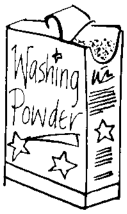

3
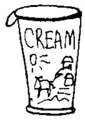

4
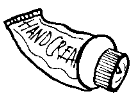

5
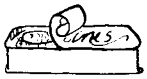

6
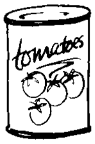

7
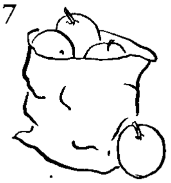

8
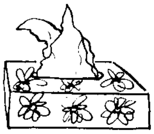

9
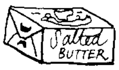

10
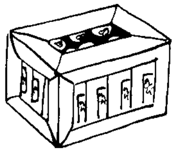

11
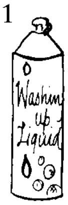

66.4 **Think of three words which are often used with the following containers.**

Example: shopping, wastepaper, linen basket

1 .... box
2 .... bottle
3 .... bag
4 .... jug
5 .... glass
6 .... pot

66.5 **Look in a kitchen cupboard or a supermarket. Can you name everything that you see there? You will find more useful vocabulary for this exercise in Unit 43.**

67 Belief and opinion

A Verbs connected with beliefs and opinions

You probably already know **think** and **believe**; here are more.

I'm **convinced** we've met before. [very strong feeling that you're right]
I've always **held** that compulsory education is a waste of time. [used for very firm beliefs; **maintain** could be used here]
She **maintains** that we're related, but I'm not convinced. [insist on believing, often against the evidence; **hold** could not be used here]
I **feel** she shouldn't be forced to do the job. [strong personal opinion]
I **reckon** they'll get married soon. [informal, usually an opinion about what is likely to happen / to be true]
I **doubt** we'll ever see total world peace. [don't believe]
I **suspect** a lot of people never even think about pollution when they're driving their own car. [have a strong feeling about something negative]

Phrases for expressing opinion

In my view / in my opinion, we haven't made any progress.
She's made a big mistake, **to my mind**. [fairly informal]
If you ask me, he ought to change his job. [informal]
Note how **point of view**, is used in English:
From a teacher's **point of view**, the new examinations are a disaster. [how teachers see things, or are affected]

Prepositions used with belief and opinion words

Do you **believe in** God? What are your **views on** divorce?
What do you **think of** the new boss? I'm **in favour of** long prison sentences.
Are you **for** or **against** long prison sentences? I **have my doubts about** this plan.

Beliefs, ideologies, philosophies, convictions

If you would rather organise this word tree differently or can add more examples, do so; it will probably help you to remember the words better.

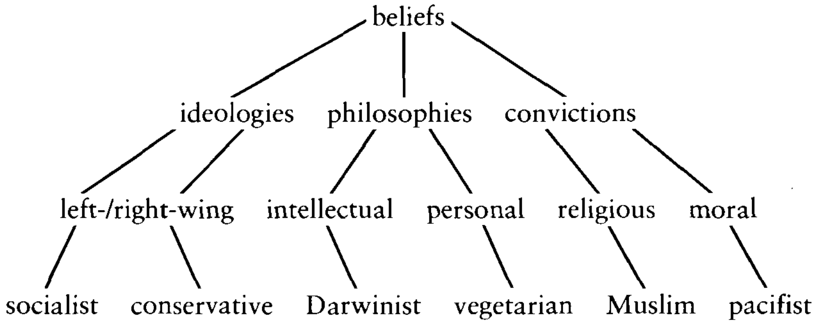

Some adjectives for describing people's beliefs and views, in pairs of similar, but not the same, meaning.

fanatical/obsessive eccentric/odd conservative/traditional
middle-of-the-road/moderate dedicated/committed firm/strong

Exercises

67.1 **Draw lines connecting the left and right, as in the example, adding the appropriate preposition.**

1 I have strong views
2 Most people believe
3 I was in favour
4 What does she think
5 This is absurd
6 He's quite wrong
7 Well, that's just silly

of

my opinion.
the proposed changes.
marriage.
my mind.
life after death.
the new teacher?
our point of view.

67.2 **Use adjectives from E opposite which fit the phrases describing the beliefs and views of these people, as in the example.**

1 A person who insists that the earth is flat. (An *eccentric* belief.)
2 A person who believes absolutely in the power of love to solve world problems. (A .... believer in the power of love.)
3 A socialist neither on the left or the right of the party. (A .... socialist.)
4 A vegetarian who refuses even to be in the same room as people who like meat. (A(n) .... vegetarian.)
5 Someone who is always suspicious of change. (A rather .... view of the world.)

67.3 **Rewrite these sentences using the verbs in brackets.**

1 I've always suspected that ghosts don't really exist. (doubt)
2 My view has always been that people should rely on themselves more. (hold)
3 Claudia is convinced that the teacher has been unfair to her. (maintain)
4 I felt a very strong feeling that I had been in that room before. (convince)
5 In his view, we should have tried again. (feel)

67.4 **Are you...? Consider how many of these words apply to you, and in what situations. Some ideas for situations are given in the box, but you can add your own. Look up any words you don't know in a dictionary.**

a perfectionist left-wing a moralist an intellectual a traditionalist
a philosopher middle-of-the-road a radical thinker narrow-minded
open-minded dedicated dogmatic

food preferences politics learning English sport
sexual relations life and existence religion work

68 Pleasant and unpleasant feelings

A Happiness and unhappiness

You feel:

ecstatic when you are madly in love or are spiritually uplifted for some reason.
content(ed) when you are peaceful and satisfied with what you have. Notice that **content** is not used before a noun. You can say 'She is content' or 'She is contented' but only 'a contented person'.
cheerful when life is looking quite bright and positive.
grateful when someone has done you a favour.
delighted when something has happened that gives you great pleasure, when you hear news of someone's good fortune, for instance.
miserable when everything seems wrong in your life.
discontented when your life is not giving you satisfaction.
fed-up / sick and tired when you have had enough of something disagreeable. You could be **fed up with** someone's rudeness, for instance, or **sick and tired** of someone's behaviour.
depressed when you are miserable over a long period of time. Depression is considered an illness in some severe cases.
frustrated when you are unable to do something that you want to do.
confused / mixed up when you cannot make sense of different conflicting feelings or ideas; **mixed up** is more colloquial.

B Excitement, anger and anxiety

You feel:

excited when you are expecting something special to happen, e.g. before a party or before a meeting with someone special.
inspired when you are stimulated to creative deeds or words. You might feel **inspired** after listening to some very powerful music, perhaps, or you might be **inspired** to action by a friend.
enthusiastic when you have very positive feelings about something, e.g. a new project.
thrilled when something extremely exciting and pleasing happens – quite a colloquial word. She was **thrilled** when the film star kissed her.
cross when you are angry or bad-tempered. It is ofen, though not exclusively, used about small children; quite a colloquial word.
furious/livid/seething when you are extremely angry; **livid** and **seething** are more informal; **in a rage/fury** are other ways of saying furious or violently angry.
anxious when you are afraid and uncertain about the future. I am so **anxious** about the results of my exams that I can't sleep.
nervous when you are afraid or anxious about something that is about to or may be about to happen. I always feel nervous when I have to go to the dentist. Feeling nervous is a little bit like feeling excited but it is a negative feeling whereas excitement is positive.
apprehensive when you are slightly nervous or anxious about something in the future.
worried when anxious thoughts are constantly going through your head.
upset when something unpleasant has happened to disturb you. It often combines feelings of both sadness and anger.

Exercises

68.1 Complete the following table.

adjective	*abstract noun*	*adjective*	*abstract noun*
furious	....	frustrated	....
....	anxiety	....	cheerfulness
grateful	....	enthusiastic	....
....	ecstasy	....	apprehension
inspired	....	excited	....

68.2 **Choose the best word from those given to complete each of the sentences which follow.**

enthusiastic confused cross thrilled depressed
upset fed-up frustrated discontented

1 I didn't know who was telling the truth. I felt totally ....
2 Some mothers are .... for several months after the birth of a baby.
3 I think she is bad-tempered because she is .... She wanted to be an actress and not a school-teacher.
4 Although he seems to have everything anyone could possibly want, he is still ....
5 He went skiing for the first time last month, but now he is so .... about it that he can talk of little else.
6 My baby brother gets very .... by the evening if he doesn't have an afternoon sleep.
7 This rainy weather has gone on for so long. I feel really .... with it.
8 He was terribly .... when he heard the news of his friend's accident.
9 She was .... when she learnt that she had won the first prize.

68.3 **Write sentences about when you have experienced the following feelings.**

Example: anxious *I felt anxious until we heard the results of my mother's medical tests.*

1 anxious
2 apprehensive
3 grateful
4 in a rage
5 miserable
6 inspired
7 enthusiastic

68.4 **The words opposite ending in -ed (apart from contented and delighted) also have -ing forms e.g. interested/interesting and bored/boring. Add the correct ending -ed or -ing.**

Example: She was thrill*ed* by her present.

1 I found the film very excit...............
2 The poet was inspir............... by the sunset.
3 This weather is terribly depress...............
4 It is very frustrat............... when the phones aren't working.
5 She was confus............... by the ambiguous remarks he made to her.

68.5 **You, of course, know the basic expressions: 'I'm hungry/thirsty/hot/cold/tired/cross'. Colloquially, we often say the same things using a much stronger expression. What do you think people mean when they say:**

1 I'm boiling
2 I'm dying for a drink
3 I'm seething
4 I'm freezing
5 I'm starving
6 I'm worn out

69 Like, dislike and desire

A Words and expressions relating to liking

I **quite liked** Tom when we first met. However, although lots of my friends said they found him attractive, I didn't **fancy** him at all. He invited me out and I must admit that I was more **tempted** by his sports car than by him at first. However, I really **enjoyed** spending time with him. He **fascinated** me with his stories of his travels around the world and something mysterious about his past also **attracted** me. Moreover, we were both very **keen on** sailing. Soon I realised I had **fallen in love** with him. His sense of humour really **appealed to** me and I was also **captivated by** his gift for poetry. Now, three years later I absolutely **adore** him and I cannot understand why I didn't **fall for** him the moment we first set eyes on each other. He is a very **caring** person, **fond of** animals and small children. He is always **affectionate** and **loving** towards me and **passionate about** the causes he believes in and the people he **cares for**. I hope we shall always **worship** each other as much and be as **devoted** to our life together as we are now.

B Words and expressions relating to desiring

Desire is used either as a formal verb to express a sexual wish for someone or else it is quite a formal word for wish.

He **desired** her the moment he saw her.
I have a strong **desire** to see the Himalayas before I die.

Looking forward to means thinking about something in the future with pleasant anticipation. The opposite of **look forward to** is **dread**.

I am **looking forward** to going to Fiji but I'm **dreading** the flight.

Note: 'to' is a preposition here and not part of the infinitive and is followed by a noun or an -ing form.

Long for means to wish for something very much.

As soon as I get back from one holiday, I'm **longing for** the next.

Yearn for is a more poetic way of saying **long for**.

He will never stop **yearning for** his country although he knows he can never return.

C Words and expressions relating to disliking.

Loathe, detest, hate, cannot stand and **cannot bear** are all stronger ways of saying dislike and they are all followed by a noun or an -ing form.

I **loathe / detest / hate / cannot stand / cannot bear** bad-mannered people.

Repel, revolt and **disgust** are all strong words used to describe the effect which something detested has on the person affected.

His paintings **disgust** me. I was **revolted** by the way he spoke. His behaviour **repels** me.

D Ways of addressing loved ones

dearest sweetheart darling love dear pet

Pet is used mainly to children. Note that the last three words in the list are not confined to use with people who are really loved. It is not uncommon for a London bus conductor, for example, to address any girl or woman as '**love**'. (His Glasgow equivalent calls his female passengers '**hen**'.) It's best for you, however, to keep such words for people you have a close relationship with!

Exercises

69.1 **Complete the following table.**

verb	*noun*	*adjective*	*adverb*
–	passion	....	....
tempt	....	....	....
attract	....	....	....
appeal	....	....	....
disgust	....	....	....
hate	....	....	....
repel	....	....	....
–	affection	....	....
adore	....	....	....

69.2 **Complete the following sentences.**

1 Misogynists hate ....
2 Ornithologists are fascinated by ....
3 People who suffer from arachnophobia find .... repulsive.
4 Kleptomaniacs are constantly tempted to ....
5 Masochists enjoy ....
6 Optimists look forward to ....

69.3 **Reword the sentences without changing the meaning. Use the word in brackets.**

Example: I very much enjoy his novels. (love) *I love his novels.*

1 I strongly dislike jazz. (stand)
2 Beer makes me feel sick. (revolt)
3 I don't really care for tea. (keen)
4 His art attracts me. (appeal)
5 She has totally charmed him. (captivate)
6 Do you fancy a pizza tonight? (like)
7 She likes rowing and golf. (keen)
8 I'm dreading the exam. (look)

69.4 **In each pair of sentences which person probably feels more strongly?**

1 a Dear Louise, How are things? b Darling Louise, How are things?
2 a He's devoted to his sister. b He's very fond of his sister.
3 a I dislike his poetry. b I loathe his poetry.
4 a She's yearning to see him. b She's longing to see him.
5 a He worships her. b He loves her very much.

69.5 **Complete the sentences or answer the questions in any way that is true for you.**

1 What kind of food do you like? I like .... and I adore .... but I can't stand ....
2 I'm longing for ....
3 I'm fascinated by ....
4 What attracts you most in a person of the opposite sex?
5 What do you enjoy most about your job?
6 If you were on a diet, what food or drink would tempt you most to break the diet?
7 What characteristics in people do you most detest?
8 What do you dread most about getting old?
9 What do you fancy doing this evening?

70 Speaking

The verbs in the table below describe how loudly or quietly a person is speaking and also, often, indicate mood. These verbs are all followed by clauses beginning with 'that'.

verb	*loudness*	*most likely mood*
whisper	soft	–
murmur	soft	romantic *or* complaining
mumble	soft (and unclear)	nervous *or* insecure
mutter	soft	irritated
shout	loud	angry *or* excited
scream	loud (usually without words)	frightened *or* excited
shriek	loud (and shrill)	frightened *or* amused
stutter, stammer	neutral	nervous *or* excited

B

The following verbs all indicate something about how the speaker feels. What they usually indicate is given in the *feeling* column. (*Note:* s.b. = somebody s.t. = something)

verb	*patterns*	*feeling*	*verb*	*patterns*	*feeling*
boast	to s.b. about s.t. / that...	proud of oneself	complain	to s.b. about s.t. / that...	displeased
insist	on s.t. / that...	determined	maintain	that...	confident
object	that... / to + ing	unhappy	confess	that... / to + ing	repentant
threaten	that... / to do s.t.	aggressive	urge	s.b. to do s.t.	encouraging
argue	with s.b. about s.t. / that...	not in agreement	beg	s.b. to do s.t./ for s.t.	desperate
groan	that...	despair, pain	grumble	about s.t/	displeased

C

It is also possible to give an idea of the way someone speaks by using a speaking verb, plus an adverb. For example, 'He said **proudly**'. 'She spoke **angrily**'. This is most common in written style.

Some useful adverbs describing the way someone is feeling while they are speaking.

If someone feels angry: angrily crossly furiously bitterly
If someone feels unhappy: unhappily gloomily miserably uneasily sadly
If someone feels happy: happily cheerfully gladly hopefully eagerly
If someone feels worried: anxiously nervously desperately hopelessly

Other useful adverbs are boldly, excitedly, gratefully, impatiently, passionately, reluctantly, shyly, sincerely.

Exercises

70.1 **Choose the verb which best fits the meaning of the sentences.**

Example: 'I love you,' he *murmured.*

1 'It was I who broke the vase,' he ....
2 'I am the cleverest person in the class,' the little boy ....
3 'Look, there's a mouse over there!' he ....
4 'I'll stop your pocket money if you don't behave,' she ....
5 'I d-d-d-did it,' he ....
6 'Please, please, help me,' he ....
7 'This hotel is filthy,' she ....
8 'Go on, Jim, try harder,' he ....

70.2 **Change the sentences above into reported speech using the same verbs.**

Example: He murmured that he loved her.

70.3 **Add the appropriate adjectives and nouns to the table below.**

adverb	*adjective*	*noun*
angrily	....	....
furiously	....	....
bitterly	....	....
miserably	....	....
cheerfully	....	....
gratefully	....	....
anxiously	....	....

70.4 **The answers to the following questions are all words which are from the same root as the verbs on the page opposite.**

Example: How do you describe a person who boasts a lot? *boastful*

What do you call:

1 what you make when you threaten?
2 what you make when you complain?
3 what you make when you object?
4 a person who asks for money on the streets?

How do you describe:

5 someone who insists a lot?
6 someone who argues a lot?

70.5 **Look at the verbs in the table in B and answer the following quiz.**

1 Which verbs could replace ask in the sentence 'She asked me to dance with her' without changing the grammar of the sentence?
2 Which prepositions usually follow a) object b) insist c) complain?
3 Which verb could grammatically replace promise in 'He promised to do it'?
4 Which of the verbs can be followed by 'that' and a clause?
5 Find a synonym for each of the six verbs in the fourth column of the table.

70.6 **Write a sentence to match each of the eight adverbs listed at the end of C.**

Example: Excitedly. *'Let's go at once,' she said excitedly.*

71 The six senses

A

Our basic five senses are **sight, hearing, taste, touch** and **smell**. What is sometimes referred to as a 'sixth sense' is a power to be aware of things independently of the five physical senses, a kind of supernatural sense. The five basic verbs referring to the senses are modified by an adjective rather than an adverb.

He **looks** dreadful. The trip **sounds** marvellous. The cake **tastes** good.
It **felt** strange. The soup **smelt** delicious.

B Sight

Look at the verbs of seeing in the text below.

> Yesterday I **glanced** out of the window and **noticed** a man **observing** a house opposite through a telescope. I thought I **glimpsed** a woman inside the house. Then I saw someone else **peering** into the window of the same house. I **gazed** at them wondering what they were doing. Suddenly the first man stopped **staring** through his telescope. He went and hit the other one on the head with the telescope and I realised that I had **witnessed** a crime.

C Hearing

The following scale relates to the sense of hearing and how loud things are.

noiseless → **silent** → **quiet** → **noisy** → **loud** → **deafening**

D Taste

Some different tastes with an example of a typical food. (See also Unit 43.)

sweet (honey) **salty** (crisps) **bitter** (strong coffee) **sour** (vinegar) **spicy** (Indian food)

If you say something tastes **hot** it may mean **spicy** rather than **not cold**. Food can be **tasty**, but **tasteful** is used to refer to furnishings, architecture or a style of dressing or behaviour. The opposite of both is **tasteless**.

E Touch

Some good verbs for describing different ways of touching.

She nervously **fingered** her collar. He **stroked** the cat and **patted** the dog.
She **tapped** him on the shoulder. He **grasped** my hand and we ran.
She **grabbed** her bag and ran. It's rude to **snatch**. **Press** the button.
Please **handle** the goods with great care.
The secretaries complained that their boss was always **pawing** them.

Smell

These adjectives describe how something smells.

stinking **evil-smelling** **smelly** **aromatic** **scented**
fragrant **sweet-smelling** **perfumed**

G Sixth sense

Different phenomena which a person with sixth sense may experience:

telepathy **ghosts** **UFOs** **premonitions** **intuition** **déjà vu**

Exercises

71.1 Make a sentence using any of these verbs, *look, sound, taste, touch* and *smell,* plus an adjective about the situations.

Example: You see a film about the Rocky Mountains. *They look magnificent.*

1 You come downstairs in the morning and smell fresh coffee.
2 A friend has just had her hair cut.
3 You hear the record that is top of the pops.
4 A friend, an excellent cook, tries a new soup recipe.
5 A friend asks how you feel today.
6 A little boy asks you to listen to his first attempts at the piano.
7 You see a friend of yours with a very worried look on her face.
8 Someone you are working with smells strongly of cigarettes.

71.2 Which of the verbs in the text in B suggests looking:

1 on as a crime or accident occurs?
2 closely, finding it hard to make things out?
3 in a scientific kind of way?
4 quickly?
5 fixedly?

71.3 Replace the underlined words with a more interesting and precise verb from the opposite page.

1 I saw a crime.
2 He looked fixedly at me.
3 She took my hand firmly.
4 Touch the button to start.
5 He touched the cat affectionately.
6 The zoologist looked at the lion's behaviour.
7 The robber took the money and ran.
8 I quickly looked at my watch.

71.4 Are the following best described as *sweet, salty, bitter, sour, spicy* or *hot*?

1 unsweetened coffee
2 pineapple
3 chilli
4 lime
5 Chinese cooking
6 sea water

71.5 Match the verbs used in E with these definitions.

1 to take something very quickly
2 to move between the fingers
3 to touch with the hands
4 to touch in an offensive way

71.6 Which of the adjectives in F describes best for you the smell of the following?

1 herbs in a kitchen
2 old socks
3 rotten eggs
4 roses
5 a baby's bottom
6 a hairdresser's

71.7 Which of the phenomena mentioned in G have you experienced if you:

1 see a flying saucer?
2 suddenly think of someone two minutes before they phone you?
3 see someone in white disappearing into a wall?
4 feel certain someone cannot be trusted although you have no real reason to believe so?
5 walk into a strange room and feel you have been there before?
6 refuse to travel on a plane because you feel something bad is going to happen?

71.8 Write a sentence about the most remarkable experience each of your six senses has had.

72 What your body does

This unit deals with some interesting words used to describe things your body does.

Note: All the verbs on this page (except **shake** and **bite**) are regular verbs; almost all the words have an identical noun form: to **yawn/a yawn**, to **cough/a cough** etc. (except for **breathe** and **perspire**; the nouns are **breath** and **perspiration**).

A Verbs connected with the mouth and breathing

breathe: A nurse gave the old man the kiss of life and he started **breathing** again.
yawn: If one person **yawns** everyone else seems to start too.
cough: It was so smoky in the room that he couldn't stop **coughing**.
sneeze: Dust often makes me **sneeze**.
sigh: She **sighed** with relief when she heard his plane had landed safely.
hiccough: Some people say that drinking out of the wrong side of a cup can help to stop you **hiccoughing**. (*Note:* pronunciation = /ˈhɪkʌpɪŋ/)
snore: She **snored** all night with her mouth wide open.

Verbs connected with eating and the digestion

burp: He patted the baby's back to make it **burp** after its feed.
chew: My granny used to say you should **chew** every mouthful ten times.
rumble: It's embarrassing if your stomach **rumbles** during an interview.
swallow: Take a drink of water to help you **swallow** the pills.
suck: You're too old to **suck** your thumb!
lick: After having a meal, the cat **licked** herself clean.
bite: He always **bites** his nails when he's nervous.

C Verbs connected with the eyes and face

blink: She **blinked** several times to try and get the dust out of her eye.
wink: He **winked** at me across the room to try and make me laugh.
frown: Why are you **frowning**? What's the problem?
grin: She was so delighted with the present that she **grinned** from ear to ear.
blush: He **blushed** with embarrassment when she smiled at him.

D Verbs connected with the whole body

perspire/sweat: When it's hot you **sweat/perspire**. [**perspire** is more formal]
tremble: My hands **tremble** when I've been drinking too much coffee.
shiver: Look at him! He's so cold that he's **shivering**!
shake: She laughed so much that her whole body **shook**.

The pronunciation of some of the words in this unit is unusual. The index will tell you how to pronounce them.

Exercises

72.1 **Find the word to match the dictionary definitions given below.**

Example: to draw the eyebrows together to express displeasure or puzzlement *to frown*

1 to go pink from embarrassment
2 to tremble especially from cold or fear
3 to hold something in the mouth and lick it, roll it about, squeeze it etc. with the tongue and teeth
4 to shut and open both eyes quickly
5 to deliberately shut and open one eye

72.2 **Say what must be happening in each of the situations below.**

Example: (Parent to child) Take your thumb out of your mouth! *The child is sucking its thumb.*

1 Listen to that! I can't sleep in the same room as him.
2 Am I boring you?
3 If you have a drink of water, it might stop!
4 I'd have a honey and lemon drink if I were you!
5 Are you hungry?
6 You shouldn't eat so much so quickly!

72.3 **Which of the words on the opposite page do these pictures illustrate?**

Example: 1 *blink*

1
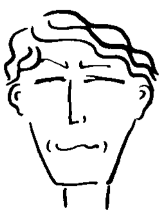

2
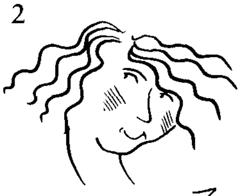

3
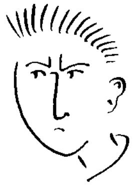

4
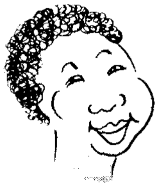

5
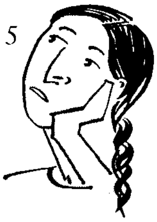

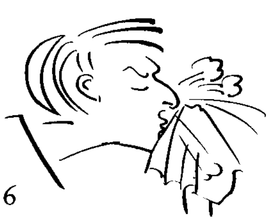
6

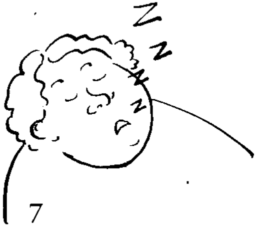

7

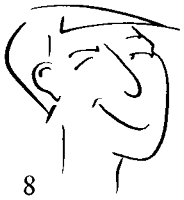
8

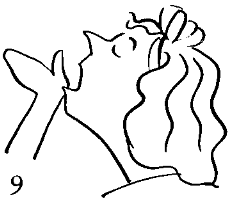
9

72.4 **Complete the puzzle. If you answer correctly, the central letters going downwards will form a word from the left-hand page.**

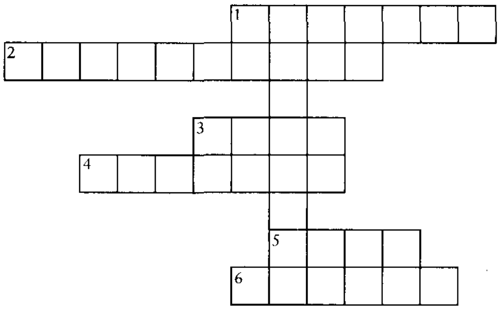

1 a special kind of gum
2 a more formal word for sweating
3 what you need to do to a stamp
4 try to do this quickly with pills
5 smile broadly
6 James Bond liked to have his drinks .... not stirred.

72.5 **Organise the words on the opposite page into one or more bubble networks. Add any other words that you wish to the networks.**

73 What animals do

Noises animals make

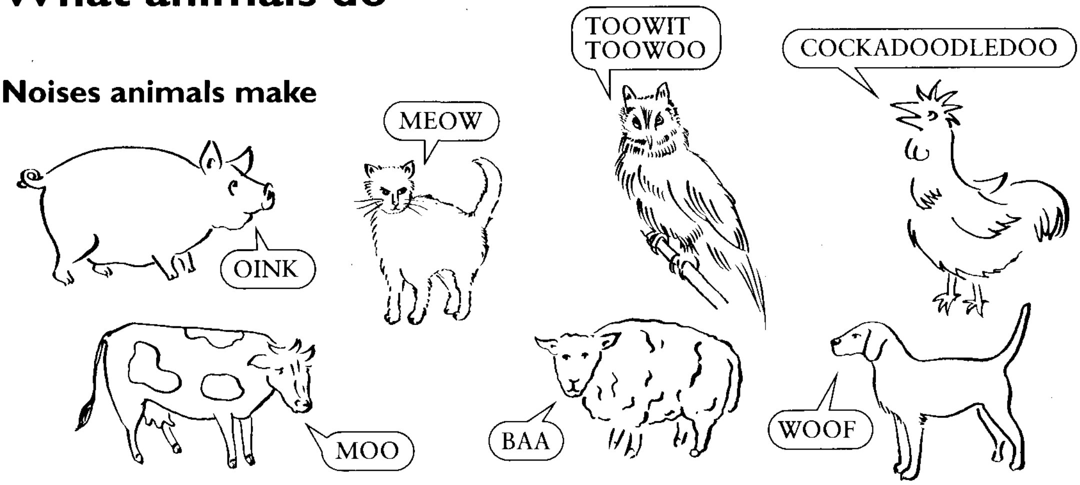

Cats **mew** when they're hungry, **purr** when they're happy and **caterwaul** when they're on the roof at midnight.
Dogs **bark**. They also **growl** when they're angry. Lions **roar**.
Sheep and goats **bleat**, horses **neigh** and pigs **grunt**. Cows moo.
Frogs **croak** and ducks **quack**. Cocks **crow**, hens **cluck** and owls **hoot**.

N.B. All these verbs are regular verbs.

B Movements animals make

Birds **fly** and fish **swim**.
Butterflies **flutter**.
Kangaroos **hop**.
Snakes **slither**.
Horses **trot** and **gallop** (**galloping** is faster than **trotting**).
Lambs **skip** in the spring.

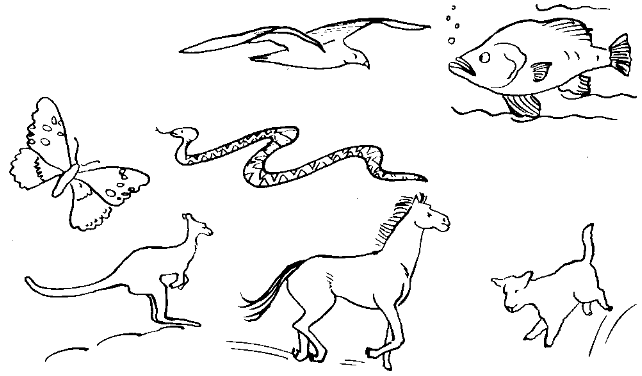

N.B. **Fly** (flew, flown) and **swim** (swam, swum) are the only irregular verbs here.

Babies animals have

Cats have **kittens** and **dogs** have **puppies**. Horses have **foals**. Sheep have **lambs**.
Cows have **calves**. Pigs have **piglets**. **Bears, wolves** and **lions** have **cubs**.
Ducks have **ducklings**. Hens lay eggs from which **chickens** hatch.
Tadpoles turn into **frogs**. **Caterpillars** turn into **butterflies**.

D People and animals

People are often compared to animals. The following adjectives can be used about people. A more formal translation is given.

catty or **bitchy**: malicious-tongued
mousy: dull, uninteresting, shy, quiet
sheepish: awkwardly self-conscious
ratty: bad-tempered
dogged: stubborn
cocky: arrogant

Exercises

73.1 **Match the verb with the sound. The first example has been done.**

1 hoot
2 bleat
3 bark
4 grunt
5 mew
6 crow

meow
toowit toowoo
oink
cockadoodledoo
woof
baa

73.2 **Complete the following text, putting the appropriate missing verbs into the correct form.**

It is not really all that peaceful out in the country. Yesterday I was woken at dawn when the cock started .... (1). The calves soon began .... (2) and this woke the dogs who .... (3) until the horses started .... (4). Lots of hens .... (5) right outside my window and so I got up. I tripped over the cat who was lying in the sun at the front door but she didn't even stop .... (6).

73.3 **Which of the adjectives in D would you be pleased to be called?**

73.4 **Most of the sound verbs in A and all the movement verbs in B can also be used to describe sounds and movements made by humans. Mark the following statements true or false.**

1 If someone growls at you, they are probably in a bad mood.
2 If someone croaks, they probably have a sore throat.
3 If someone hoots, they are probably very unhappy.
4 If someone is caterwauling, they are singing very sweetly.
5 If someone barks at you, they sound rather angry or abrupt.
6 If someone grunts when you ask something, they are showing a lot of interest in what you have said.

73.5 **Illustrate the meaning of the words below by writing sentences (about people rather than animals).**

Example: 1 skip *The little girl loves skipping with her new rope.*

2 fly 3 swim 4 slither 5 hop 6 trot 7 gallop

73.6 **Look at the following examples of notices and fill in the names of the appropriate young animal in each case. Which words help you decide?**

1 New-born .... for sale. Pedigree spaniel.
2 Good home wanted for six .... All toms. Already house-trained. Part-Siamese. Very intelligent.
3 Come and see the brand-new polar bear .... at the zoo.
4 Hadley Farm open this weekend. All children will enjoy the chance to hold the baby .... and to stroke their soft wool.
5 Spend the weekend at Sun Park. Hundreds of new .... Just hatched but already able to swim happily behind their mums.

74 Idioms and fixed expressions – general

Idioms are fixed expressions with meanings that are usually not clear or obvious. The individual words often give you no help in deciding the meaning. The expression to feel **under the weather**, which means 'to feel unwell' is a typical idiom. The words do not tell us what it means, but the context usually helps.

A Tips for dealing with idioms

Think of idioms as being just like single words; always record the whole phrase in your notebook, along with information on grammar and collocation.

This tin-opener **has seen better days.** [it is rather old and broken down; usually of things, always perfect tense form]

Idioms are usually rather informal and include an element of personal comment on the situation. They are sometimes humorous or ironic. As with any informal 'commenting' single word, be careful how you use them. Never use them just to sound 'fluent' or 'good at English'. In a formal situation with a person you do not know, don't say,

'How do you do, Mrs Watson. Do **take the weight off your feet.**' [sit down].
Instead say 'Do sit down' or 'Have a seat'.

Idioms can be grouped in a variety of ways. Use whichever way you find most useful to help you remember them. Here are some possible types of grouping.

Grammatical

get the wrong end of the stick [misunderstand] **pull a fast one** [trick/deceive somebody] **poke your nose in(to)** [interfere]	verb + object
be over the moon [extremely happy/elated] **feel down in the dumps** [depressed/low] **be in the red** [have a negative bank balance]	verb + preposition phrase

By meaning e.g. idioms describing people's character/intellect
He's **as daft as a brush.** [very stupid/silly]
He **takes the biscuit.** [is the extreme / the worst of all]
You're **a pain in the neck.** [a nuisance / difficult person]

By verb or other key word e.g. idioms with **make**
I don't see why you have to **make a meal out of** everything.
[exaggerate the importance of everything]
I think we should **make a move.** It's gone ten o'clock. [go/leave]
Most politicians are **on the make.** I don't trust any of them.
[wanting money/power for oneself]

B Grammar of idioms

It is important when using idioms to know just how flexible their grammar is. Some are more fixed than others. For instance, **barking up the wrong tree** [be mistaken] is always used in continuous, not simple form, e.g. I think you're **barking up** the **wrong** tree.

A good dictionary may help but it is best to observe the grammar in real examples.

Note how Units 76–91 group idioms in different ways.

Exercises

74.1 **Complete the idioms in these sentences with one of the key words given, as in the example. If you are not sure, try looking up the key word in a good dictionary.**

clanger shot ocean plate block handle pie

1 All the promises these politicians make! It's just pie in the sky. (big promises that will never materialise)
2 The small amount of money donated is just a drop in the .... compared with the vast sum we need. (tiny contribution compared with what is needed)
3 You really dropped a .... when you criticised the Americans last night; that man opposite you was from New York! (said something inappropriate/embarrassing)
4 I can't do that job as well; I've got enough on my .... as it is. (have more than enough work)
5 When I told her she just flew off the .... and shouted at me. (lost her temper)
6 His father was a gambler too. He's a real chip off the old .... (just like one's parents/grandparents)
7 I wasn't really sure; I guessed it; it was just a .... in the dark. (a wild guess)

74.2 **Use a good general dictionary or a dictionary of idioms to see if it can help you decide which version of these sentences is in the normal grammatical form for the idiom concerned, as in the example. Check the meaning too, if you are not sure.**

Example: You bark / [✓ are barking] up the wrong tree if you think I did it. (see B opposite)

1 Holland is springing / springs to mind as the best place to go for a cycling holiday; it's very flat.
2 That remark is flying / flies in the face of everything you've ever said before on the subject.
3 He was innocent after all. It just goes / is just going to show that you shouldn't believe what you read in the papers.
4 You sit / 're sitting pretty! Look at you, an easy job, a fantastic salary, a free car!
5 His attitude is leaving / leaves a lot to be desired. I do wish he would try to improve a little.

74.3 **How would you organise this selection of idioms into different groups? Use some of the ways suggested on the opposite page, plus any other ways you can think of.**

be in a fix child's play rough and ready be up to it hold your tongue
be out of sorts hold your horses a fool's errand odds and ends
stay mum give or take

74.4 **Without using a dictionary, try to guess the meaning of these idioms from the context.**

1 It's midnight. Time to hit the sack.
2 This is just kid's stuff. I want something challenging!
3 He was down and out for two years, but then he got a job and found a home for himself.

75 Everyday expressions

Everyday spoken language is full of fixed expressions that are not necessarily difficult to understand (their meaning may be quite 'transparent') but which have a fixed form which does not change. These have to be learnt as whole expressions. These expressions are often hard to find in dictionaries, so listen out for them.

A Conversation-building expressions

These are some common expressions that help to modify or organise what we are saying. There are many more expressions like these. (See also Unit 100.)

expression		*meaning/function*
As I was saying, I haven't seen her for years.	→	takes the conversation back to an earlier point
As I/you say, we'll have to get there early to get a seat.	→	repeats and confirms something someone has already said
Talking of skiing, whatever happened to Bill Jakes?	→	starting a new topic but linking it to the present one
If you ask me, she's heading for trouble.	→	if you want my opinion (even if no-one has asked for it)
That reminds me, I haven't rung George yet.	→	something in the conversation reminds you of something important
Come to think of it, did he give me his number after all? I think he may have forgotten.	→	something in the conversation makes you realise there may be a problem/query about something

B Key words

Some everyday expressions can be grouped around key words. **This** and **that**, for example, occur in several expressions:

This is it. [this is an important point]

We talked about **this and that,** or **this, that and the other.** [various unimportant matters]

THIS/THAT

That's it. [that's the last thing, we've finished]

So, **that's that,** then. [that is agreed, settled, finalised]

Common expressions for modifying statements

If the worst comes to the worst, we'll have to cancel the holiday. [if the situation gets very bad indeed]

If all else fails, we could fax them. [if nothing else succeeds]

What with one thing and another, I haven't had time to reply to her letter. [because of a lot of different circumstances]

When it comes to restaurants, this town's not that good. [in the matter of restaurants]

As far as I'm concerned, we can eat at any time. [as far as it affects me / from my point of view]

As luck would have it, she was out when we called. [as a result of bad luck]

Exercises

75.1 Complete the fixed expressions in these sentences, as far as possible without looking at the left-hand page.

1 Come ...., I don't remember giving her the key. I'd better ring her and check, just in case.
2 If you ...., the economy's going to get much worse before it gets any better.
3 .... holidays, have you got any plans for next year?
4 A: It's going to be expensive.
B: Yes, it'll be fun, and a great opportunity, but, as ...., it will be expensive.
5 That ...., I have a message for you from Sid.
6 As ...., before the postwoman interrupted us, we plan to extend the house next spring.

75.2 Which of the expressions with *this/that* opposite would be most suitable for the second parts of these mini-dialogues?

1 A: What were you and Lindsay talking about?
B: Oh, ...

2 A: How many more?
B: No more, actually, ...

3 A: The most important thing is that nobody's happy.
B: Yes, well, ...

4 A: Okay, I'll take our decisions to the committee.
B: Right, so ...., then. Thanks.

75.3 See if you can complete this network of everyday expressions with *now*, as with the *this/that* network opposite. Use a dictionary if necessary.

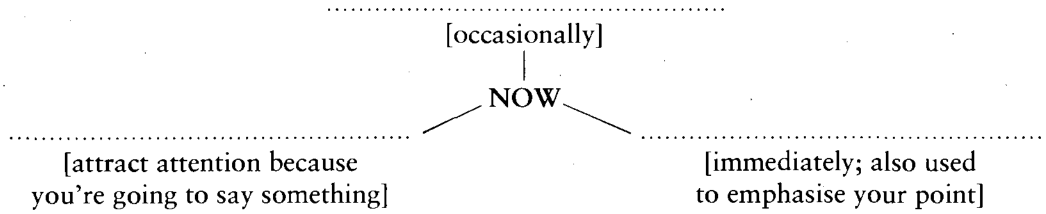

Use the expressions with *now* to rewrite these sentences.

1 Do you want me to do it straight away, or can it wait?
2 So, everybody, listen carefully. I have news for you.
3 I bump into her in town occasionally, but not that often.

75.4 Which expressions contain the following key words?

1 comes 2 luck 3 fails 4 worst 5 far 6 thing

Follow-up: Make a list of common expressions like the ones in this unit in your language. How do you say them in English?

76 Similes – as...as... / like...

A

As...as... similes are easy to understand. If you see the phrase **as dead as a doornail**, you don't need to know what a **doornail** is, simply that the whole phrase means 'totally dead'. But, remember, fixed similes are not 'neutral'; they are usually informal/colloquial and often humorous. So, use them with care, and keep them generally as part of your receptive vocabulary.

Creating a picture in your mind can often help you remember the simile:

as blind as a **bat**

as thin as a **rake**

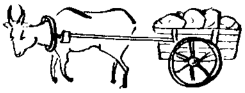

as strong as an **ox**

as quiet as a **mouse**

Some can be remembered as pairs of opposites.

as **heavy** as **lead** ≠ as **light** as a **feather** as **drunk** as a **lord** ≠ as **sober** as a **judge**
as **black** as **night** ≠ as white as **snow**

Some can be remembered by sound patterns.

As **brown** as a berry as **good** as **gold** as cool as a cucumber

Some other useful as...as... phrases.

The bed was **as hard as iron** and I couldn't sleep.
I'll give this plant some water. The soil's **as dry as a bone.**
He's **as mad as a hatter.** He crossed the Atlantic in a bathtub.
She told the teacher, **as bold as brass,** that his lessons were boring.
You'll have to speak up; he's **as deaf as a post.**
Don't worry. Using the computer's **as easy as falling off a log.**
She knew the answer **as quick as a flash.**
When I told him, his face went **as red as a beetroot.**

Sometimes the second part can change the meaning of the first.

The Princess's skin was **as white as snow.** [beautifully white]
When he saw it, his face went **as white as a sheet.** [pale with fear/horror]
The fish was bad and I was **as sick as a dog.** [vomiting]
She ran off with my money; I felt **as sick as a parrot.** [bad feeling of disillusionment/frustration]

B Like...

My plan **worked like a dream,** and the problem was soon solved.
Be careful the boss doesn't see you; she has eyes **like a hawk.**
No wonder he's fat. He **eats like a horse** and **drinks like a fish.**
Did you **sleep** well? Yes, thanks, **like a log.**
Sorry, I forgot to ring him again. I've got a **head like a sieve!**
The boss is **like a bear with a sore head** today. [in a very bad temper]
She goes around **like a bull in a china shop.** [behaving in a very clumsy, insensitive way]
Criticising the government in his presence is **like a red rag to a bull.** [certain to make him very angry]

Exercises

76.1 Complete the as...as... similes.

1 Rose is as mad as a ....; you wouldn't believe the crazy things she does.
2 You're not eating enough; you're as thin as a ....
3 He never says a thing; he's as quiet as a ....
4 You'll have to shout; she's as deaf as a ....
5 I'm afraid I can't read this small print; I'm as blind as a .... without my glasses.

76.2 Different similes contain the same word. Fill the gap with the appropriate words.

1 I feel great now. I .... like a log.
2 No! It's as easy as .... off a log.
3 After eating that bad cheese I was as sick as a ....
4 I knew she had swindled me. I felt as sick as a ....
5 The old man's hair was as white as ....
6 Her face suddenly went as white as ....

76.3 Put the correct number in the right-hand boxes to complete the similes, as in the example. There are two that are not on the left-hand page. Try and guess them.

	1	quick		☐	daisy
	2	red		5	ox
as	3	flat	as a(n)	☐	flash
	4	fresh		☐	beetroot
	5	strong		☐	pancake

76.4 Simile word puzzle. Fill in the answers, as in the example.

Across
1 bold
2 mad
4 white
5 fresh
7 quiet
9 dry

Down
1 blind
2 iron
3 log
6 cold
8 cool
10 light

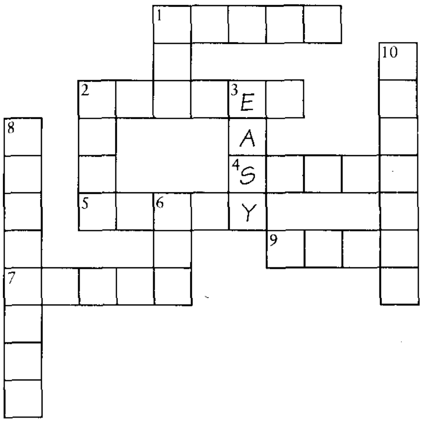

76.5 What can you say about...

1 a person who sees everything and never misses a thing?
2 a plan or course of action that works very well?
3 someone who eats and drinks a great deal?
4 someone with a very bad memory?

> *Tip:* You can always make a simile using as...as **can be**, for example, I need a drink; I'm **as thirsty as can be!**

77 Binomials

Binomials are expressions (often idiomatic) where two words are joined by a conjunction (usually 'and'). The order of the words is usually fixed. It is best to use them only in informal situations, with one or two exceptions.

odds and ends: small, unimportant things, e.g. Let's get the main things packed; we can do the **odds and ends** later.
give and take: a spirit of compromise, e.g. Every relationship needs a bit of **give and take** to be successful.

You can often tell something is a binomial because of the sound pattern.
Tears are **part and parcel** of growing up. [part of / belong to]
The boss was **ranting and raving** at us. [shouting / very angry]
The old cottage has gone to **rack and ruin**. [ruined/decayed]
He's so **prim and proper** at work. [rather formal and fussy]
The hotel was a bit **rough and ready**. [poor standard]
She has to **wine and dine** important clients. [entertain]

B

Other times, the clue is that the words are near-synonyms.
You can **pick and choose**; it's up to you. [have a wide choice]
My English is progressing in **leaps and bounds**. [big jumps]
It's nice to have some **peace and quiet**. [peace/calm]
The doctor recommended some **rest and recreation**. [relaxation]
First and foremost, you must work hard. [first / most importantly]

Many grammar words combine to form binomials.
There are cafés **here and there**. [scattered round]
We've had meetings **on and off**. [occasionally]
I've been running **back and forth** all day. [to and from somewhere]
To and fro can be used just like **back and forth**.
He is unemployed and **down and out**. [without a home or money]
She's better now, and **out and about** again. [going out]
She ran **up and down** the street. [in both directions]

Your language probably has many binomials. Make sure those which look similar in English have the same word order as your language. These four are very neutral binomials and can be used in formal or informal situations. Try translating them.
A **black and white** film, please. **Ladies and gentlemen**, your attention, please!
She ran **back and forth**. There was **hot and cold** water in every room.

E

Binomials linked by words other than **and**.
You've got your sweater on **back to front**. [the wrong way]
He won't help her; she'll have to **sink or swim**. [survive or fail]
Slowly but surely, I realised the boat was sinking. [gradually]
Sooner or later, you'll learn your lesson. [some time/day]
She didn't want to be just friends; it had to be **all or nothing**.
Well I'm sorry, that's all I can offer you; **take it or leave it**.
It's about the same distance as from here to Dublin, **give or take** a few miles. [perhaps a mile or two more, or a mile or two less]

Exercises

77.1 **Here are some jumbled binomials (some are from the left-hand page and some are new). Using similarities in sound, join them with *and*. Then check opposite or in a dictionary that you have the word order right, and that you know the meaning.**

prim dine high ruin rough dry
rack ready proper sound safe wine

Now use them to fill the gaps in these sentences.

1 I was left .... and ...., with no-one to help me.
2 The room's a bit .... and ...., but you're welcome to stay as long as you like.
3 I'm glad you're .... and .... after such a dangerous journey.
4 My hosts .... and .... me at the best restaurants.
5 Our old house in the country has just gone to .... and ....; nobody looks after it now.
6 The secretary is always so terribly .... and ....; the whole atmosphere always seems so very formal.

77.2 **In the left-hand box below are the *first* words of some binomials. On the right are a selection of words, some of which you will need, and some you will not. Your task is to find a word on the right which can form a binomial with the left-hand word, as in the example *law and order*. Look for words that are either near-synonyms or antonyms (opposites) of the left-hand word.**

[✓ law]		money	tidy	drop
now		tired	soon	snow
hit		pay	bounds	terrible
clean	and	clocks	after	whisper
pick		[✓ order]	then	dogs
sick		scratch	heart	choose
leaps		flowers	miss	chase

Now use them to make informal sentences by re-writing these.

1 There are lots of courses. You can make your own selection.
2 The flat looks all neat and spotless now for our visitors.
3 I have had enough of traffic jams. I'm going to start using the train.
4 Finding the right people was rather difficult; sometimes we succeeded, sometimes we failed.
5 My knowledge of English has progressed rapidly since I've been using this book.
6 The new Prime Minister promised that efficient policing would be the most important priority.
7 I've seen her occasionally, taking her dog for a walk.

77.3 **These binomials do not have *and* in the middle. What do they have? Check opposite or in a dictionary if you are not sure.**

1 Sooner .... later
2 All .... nothing
3 Back .... front
4 Sink .... swim
5 Slowly...........surely
6 Make .... break

78 Idioms describing people

A Positive and negative qualities

positive	*negative*
She has a **heart of gold**. [very kind, generous]	She's **as hard as nails**. [no sympathy for others]
He's **as good as gold**. [generous, helpful, well-behaved used generally for children]	He's rather **a cold fish**. [distant, unfriendly]

Note also:

He's such **an awkward customer**. [difficult person to deal with]
She's **a pain in the neck**. Nobody likes her. [nuisance, difficult]
He **gets on everyone's nerves**. [irritates everybody]

B People's 'fast' and 'slow' qualities

fast	*slow*
He's very **quick off the mark**; he always gets things before everybody else.	I was a bit **slow off the mark**; the job had been filled by the time I got the forms.
You've asked him to marry you! You're **a fast worker**! You only met him three weeks ago!	Come on! Hurry up! You're such **a slow-coach**!

How people relate to the social norm

She's a bit of **an odd-ball**; very strange. [peculiar, strange]
He's really **over the top**. [very exaggerated in behaviour]
He's **round the bend**, if you ask me. [absolutely crazy/mad]
My politics are very **middle-of-the-road**. [very normal; no radical ideas; neither left- nor right-wing]

Who's who in the class? Idioms for 'people in the classroom'

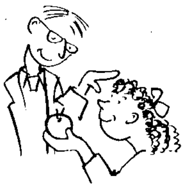

teacher's pet

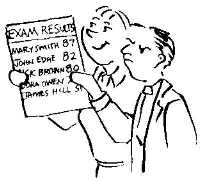

Mary's **top of the class**

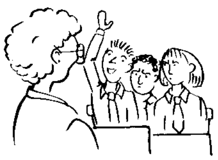

a real **know-all**

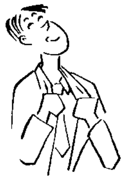

a bit of a **big-head**

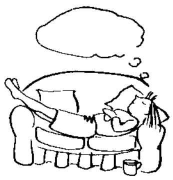

a **lazy-bones**

The last three idioms are used of people outside of the class, too.

Exercises

78.1 **Try to complete these idioms from memory if possible.**

1 She does a lot of voluntary work; she has a heart...
2 Don't expect any sympathy from the boss; she's as hard...
3 I'm sure Gerry will help you; he's as good...
4 I was too late to get on that course; I was a bit slow...
5 You won't find him very friendly; he's rather a cold...
6 Tell him to hurry up! He's such a...

78.2 **What do we call...**

1 an irritating person who knows everything?
2 the person who is the teacher's favourite?
3 someone who thinks they are the best and says so?
4 the one who gets the best marks?
5 a person who is very lazy?

78.3 **You can also learn idioms by associating them with a key word or words. For example, two idioms on the left-hand page had *gold* in them and two had *mark*. Which were they? Here is a work-fork based on *to have* + *head*. Use the expressions to finish the sentences below.**

to have
- one's head screwed on [be sensible]
- a head for heights [not suffer from vertigo]
- a head like a sieve [bad memory; see Unit 76]
- a good head for figures [be good at maths]
- one's head in the clouds [unaware of reality]

1 I'd better write it in my notebook. I have...
2 Ask Martha to check those sums. She has...
3 Don't ask me to go up that tower. I'm afraid I don't...
4 She's very sensible and knows what she's doing. She...
5 He's quite out of touch with reality. He really...

Look out for other sets of idioms based on key words.

78.4 **Mini-quiz. Which parts of your body might a difficult person (a) *get on* (b) *be a pain in*?**

78.5 **Which idioms do you think these drawings represent?**

1

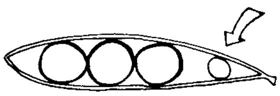

2

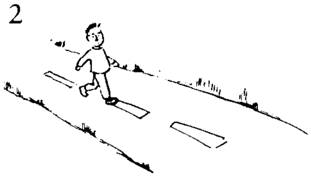

3

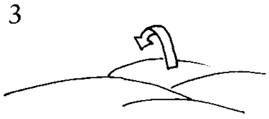

78.6 **Try guessing from the context what the underlined idioms mean.**

1 Don't get angry with him. His heart's in the right place.
2 Joe's a bit of a square peg in a round hole here. I think he should get a job which suits his character better.
3 A: Hey! I'm talking to you! B: Sorry, I was miles away.

79 Idioms describing feelings or mood

Positive feelings, moods and states

Jo's **as happy as the day is long.** [extremely content]
Mary seems to be **on cloud nine** these days. [extremely pleased/happy]
Everyone seemed to be **in high spirits.** [lively, enjoying things]
She seems to be **keeping her chin up.** [happy despite bad things]

B Negative feelings, moods and states

He had **a face as long as a fiddle.** [looked very depressed/sad]
She certainly looked **down in the dumps.** [looked depressed/sad]
Gerry is **in a (black) mood.** [a bad mood/temper]
Mark was **like a bear with a sore head.** [extremely irritable] (See Unit 76.)

C Physical feelings and states

I could eat a horse! [very hungry]
I'm feeling **all in.** [exhausted]
You're looking a **bit under the weather.** [not very well / ill]
She looked, and felt, **on top form.** [in good physical condition]
I suddenly **felt as if my head was going round.** [dizzy]
I was almost **at death's door** last week! [very sick or ill]
Old Nora's **as fit as a fiddle.** [very fit indeed]

Fear/fright

She was scared **stiff.** [very scared]
She **frightened the life out of him.** [frightened him a lot]
We were all **shaking in our shoes.** [trembling with fear]
The poor lad was scared **out of his wits.** [very scared indeed]
I **jumped out of my skin** when I heard the bang. [gave a big jump]

Remember: there is an element of exaggeration in these idioms; they make comments on the situation and lighten the tone of what you are saying. So use them only informally.

E

Horoscopes in English language newspapers and magazines are often a good place to find idioms about moods and states, since the horoscope usually tries to tell you how you are going to feel during the coming day/week/month. Look at these horoscopes and note the idioms in italics. Each one is given a literal paraphrase below the text. Collect more idioms from horoscopes if you can.

Capricorn (21.12–19.1)

Don't *get carried away* (1) by promises that won't be kept. *Keep a cool head* (2) and take everything as it comes. On the work front, things are looking better.

Taurus (21.4–20.5)

Someone will say something that will *make you swell with pride* (3) and you may *feel on top of the world* (4) for a while, but the evening will not be so easy.

(1) be fooled (2) stay calm (3) feel very proud (4) very happy indeed

Exercises

79.1 Here are some more idioms that can be grouped as expressing either ***positive*** or ***negative*** feelings. Try to group them using a dictionary if necessary.

to be over the moon   to feel/be a bit down
to feel/be as pleased as Punch   to feel/be browned off

79.2 Using the idioms from 79.1 and from A opposite, say how you would probably feel if...

1 you were told you had just won a vast sum of money. *I'd be over the moon!*
2 your boss said you had to do again a piece of work you'd already done three times.
3 you were told you'd got a very high mark in an exam.
4 you had a bad toothache and your neighbour was making a lot of noise late at night.
5 nothing seemed to have gone right for you that day.
6 someone you were secretly in love with told you they were in love with you.

79.3 Complete the idioms in these sentences.

1 Don't creep up behind me like that! You frightened the...
2 I don't need a doctor, I just feel a bit under...
3 As long as he has his car to work on, he's as happy...
4 Last year, when I won that medal, I really was on...
5 I wasn't expecting such a loud bang; I nearly jumped...
6 I've had nothing since lunch; I could...
7 I feel a bit down this week; last week I felt on top...

79.4 Spot idioms to do with feelings, moods and states in these horoscopes. Underline them, then check the meaning if necessary in a dictionary.

Scorpio (23.10–22.11)

You may get itchy feet today, but be patient, this is not a good time to travel. Events at work will keep you on the edge of your seat for most of the day. Altogether an anxious time for Scorpians.

Leo (21.7–21.8)

You'll be up in arms over something someone close to you says rather thoughtlessly today, but don't let it spoil things. You may be in two minds over an invitation, but think positively.

Now use the idioms to rewrite these sentences.

1 I can't decide about that job in Paris.
2 I've been in suspense all day. What's happened? Tell me!
3 Her son became restless to travel and went off to Uruguay.
4 Everyone protested loudly when they cancelled the outing.

79.5 Which idioms opposite include the words *head, wits, swell, black* and *carried*? Write a sentence using each one.

80 Idioms connected with problematic situations

A Problems and difficulties

idiom		*literal phrase*
to be in a fix	=	be in difficulty
to be in a **tight corner**	=	be in a situation that is hard to get out of
to be in a **muddle**	=	be confused/mixed up

(these three go together as all having **be + in + a**)

Reacting in situations

Three pairs of more or less opposite idioms.

to **take a back seat** [not do anything; let others act instead]	≠	to **take the bull by the horns** [act positively to face and attack the problem]
to **stir things up** [do/say things that make matters worse]	≠	to **pour oil on troubled waters** [do/say things that calm the situation down]
to **keep one's cards close to one's chest** [hold back information]	≠	to **lay one's cards on the table** [be very open, state exactly what your position is]

B Idioms related to situations based on get

This has to be done by next week; we must **get our act together** before it's too late. [organise ourselves to respond; informal]

We need a proper investigation to **get to the bottom of things**. [find the true explanation for the state of affairs]

It's quite difficult to **get** people **to sit up and take notice**. [make them pay attention]

I'm trying to **get a grasp of** what's happening; it's not easy. [find out / understand]

C Changes and stages in situations

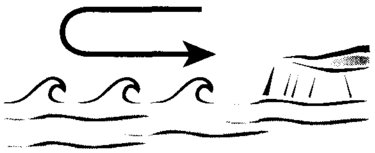

The tide has turned for us; better days are ahead.

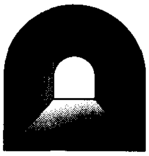

We can **see light at the end of the tunnel** at last.

I'm afraid we've just **come to a dead end** with our plans.

I think I've **reached a turning-point** in my career.

D Some idioms connected with easing the situation

The government and the unions have **buried the hatchet** for the time being. [made peace / stopped fighting each other]

All that trouble last year was just **swept under the carpet** in the end. [ignored / deliberately forgotten, without solving it]

You should say sorry. **It would go a long way.** [would help a lot]

Exercises

80.1 When looking up idioms (or any type of words) in your dictionary, it is often a good idea to look at what is just before and just after the information you are looking for. In this way you can pick up some related words and/or expressions which you can record together.

For example, if you look up *take the bull by the horns* in a dictionary, you will probably also find these idioms:

(to be/act) like a bull in a china shop [be very clumsy]
(to talk) a load of bull [talk nonsense]

Look up these idioms using the words underlined as your key word and see what other idioms or useful phrases you can find around them in the dictionary.

1 let the cat out of the bag
2 be in a fix
3 to pour oil on troubled waters
4 to stir things up

80.2 Choose a suitable idiom from the opposite page to fill the gaps.

1 I think I'll just .... and let everyone else get on with sorting matters out.
2 No, please, don't say anything; you'll only ....
3 It's been a long, hard struggle, but I think at last we can see ....
4 The police are trying their best to get to ...., but it's a real mystery at the moment.
5 I'm sorry, I'm in ....; could you explain that again?
6 At last I've managed to get him to sit ....; he's done nothing at all for us so far.
7 I find it difficult to get a .... this global warming business, don't you?
8 I think we should take the bull .... and sort it out. I don't think it should be just swept ....

80.3 Here are some more idioms connected with situations. From the context, can you paraphrase their meaning, as in the example?

1 It's not working; we'll have to go back to square one. *go back to the beginning again*
2 The teachers want one thing, the students want the exact opposite. I'm sure we can find a happy medium.
3 We were on tenterhooks all night waiting for news from the hospital. They finally rang us at 6.30 a.m.
4 Poverty and crime go hand in hand in this part of town.
5 You've been in a lot of trouble lately; you'd better toe the line from now on.

80.4 What *questions* could be asked to get these answers?

1 Well, we've buried the hatchet for the moment, but I'm sure it's not for good.
2 Yes, it's been a real turning-point in my career.
3 Yes, I think it would go a long way. You know how sensitive he is, and how he appreciates little gestures.

81 Idioms connected with praise and criticism

A Idioms connected with praise

Saying people/things are better than the rest

Mary is **head and shoulders above** the rest of the girls. *or* She's **miles better** than the other girls. [used usually of people]

When it comes to technology, Japan is **streets ahead** of most other countries. [can be used of people or things]

When it comes to exam passes, St John's school usually **knocks spots off** the other schools. [used of people or things]

That meal was just **out of this world.** [outstanding/superb; usually used of things]

Saying people are good at something

Some expressions with idiomatic compound nouns, noun-phrases and compound adjectives.

She's **a dab-hand at** carpentry, just like her father. [usually for manual skills]

She's a really **first-rate / top notch** administrator, the very best.

When it comes to grammar, she's **really on the ball.** [knows a lot]

Bill **has a way with** foreign students. The other teachers envy him. [good at establishing good relations / motivating them, etc.]

Marjorie really **has green fingers**; look at those flowers! [good at gardening]

Let him do the talking; he's **got the gift of the gab.** [good at talking]

B Idioms connected with criticism

Note: There are far more of these in common use than ones connected with praise!

You can group some according to form; for example, 's idioms include several connected with criticising people and things.

She thinks she's **the cat's whiskers / the bee's knees.** [thinks she's wonderful]

He was dressed up like **a dog's dinner** [over-dressed in a showy way]

When it comes to time-keeping, he's **the world's worst.** [no-one is worse]

I'm sorry, this essay of yours is **a dog's breakfast.** [a mess / very badly done]

This group could be learned in association with 'food' words.

When it comes to unreliability, he really **takes the biscuit.** [is the epitome / most striking example of some negative quality] (See Unit 74.)

Mary **wants to have her cake and eat it!** [wants everything without any contribution from her side]

I think he's just trying to **butter me up.** [give false praise in order to get something]

A pay-rise and a company car! You **want jam on it**, you do! [have totally unreasonable expectations/demands]

Note these idiomatic synonyms of the verb **to criticise:**

You shouldn't **run down** your own country when you're abroad.

Why do you always have to **pick holes** in everything I say?

Exercises

81.1 **Using idioms from A opposite, rewrite these sentences without changing the basic meaning.**

1 The hotel we were staying in was absolutely superb.
2 Joe is a long way above the other kids when it comes to doing hard sums.
3 This restaurant is much, much better than all the other restaurants in town.
4 You're a long way ahead of me in understanding all this new technology; I'm impressed.

81.2 **Which idioms opposite might these pictures help you to remember?**

1

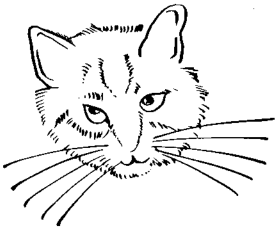

2

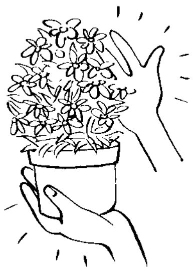

3

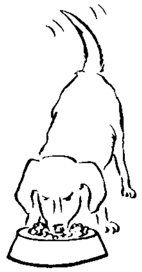

4

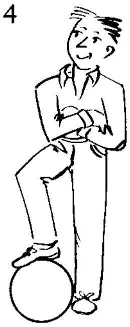

81.3 **Which of the expressions in 81.2 is most suitable for:**

1 praising someone's knowledge/ability in their profession?
2 saying that something is a real mess?
3 saying someone has a very high opinion of themselves?
4 praising someone's gardening skills?

81.4 **Express the *opposite* meaning to these sentences using idioms from the left-hand page.**

Example: He's a third-rate athlete. *He's a first-rate (or top-notch) athlete.*

1 She was dressed beautifully, just right for the occasion.
2 Penny has such an inferiority complex.
3 She's hopeless at DIY; just look at those bookshelves she made.
4 He is no good at talking to people at all.
5 Mick doesn't get on with the secretaries; just look at how they react when he wants something done.
6 He wants a new office, a secretary and a new computer. But compared to what Geoff wants he isn't expecting much!
7 She said I was the best boss they'd ever had. It was obvious she was praising me sincerely. I wonder what she wants?
8 He often says how wonderful his school is.
9 She always praises everything I say.

81.5 **Using a good general dictionary or a special dictionary of idioms, see what further idioms you can find that include the 'food' words listed below and which are used in contexts of praising or criticising people/things/actions. Make sentences with the expressions.**

1 ham 2 tea 3 icing 4 nut 5 onion 6 cream

82 Idioms connected with using language

Idioms connected with communication problems

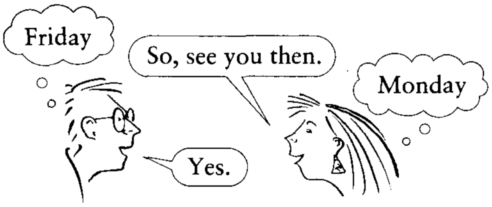
Friday
So, see you then.
Monday
Yes.

They're **talking at cross-purposes.**

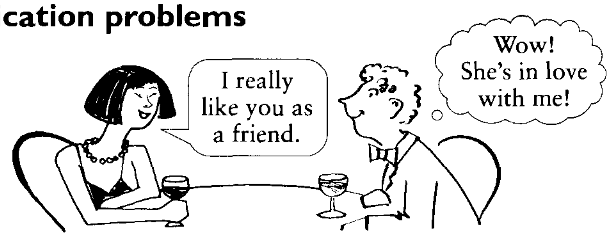
I really like you as a friend.
Wow! She's in love with me!

He's **got the wrong end of the stick.**

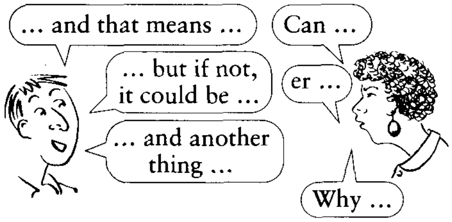
... and that means ...
Can ...
... but if not, it could be ...
er ...
... and another thing ...
Why ...

She **can't get a word in edgeways.**

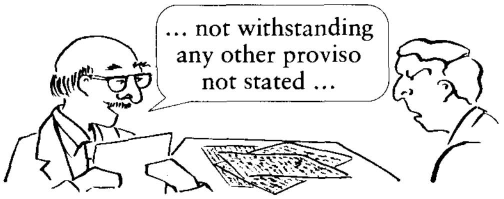
... not withstanding any other proviso not stated ...

I **can't make head or tail of what he's saying.**

Good talk, bad talk

The boss always **talks down** to us. [talks as if we were inferior]

My work-mates are always **talking behind my back.** [saying negative things about me when I'm not there]

It was just **small talk**, nothing more, I promise. [purely social talk, nothing serious]

Let's sit somewhere else; they always **talk shop** over lunch, and it bores me rigid. [talk about work]

Hey! Your new friend's become a real **talking-point** among the staff! Did you know? [subject that everyone wants to talk about]

It's gone too far this time. I shall have to **give him a talking to.** [reproach/scold him]

Talk in discussions, meetings, etc.

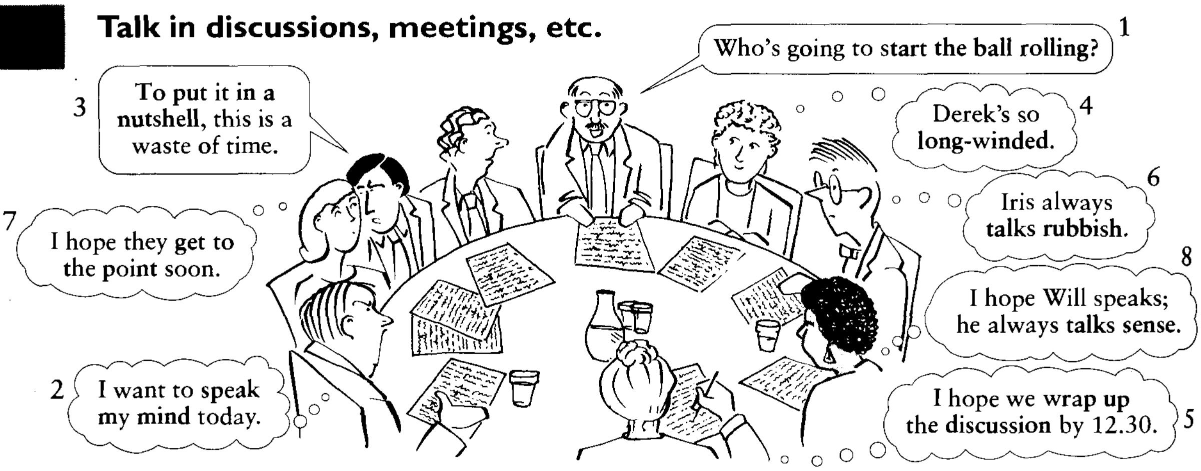
Who's going to **start the ball rolling?** 1
3 To put it in a **nutshell**, this is a waste of time.
Derek's so **long-winded.** 4
Iris always **talks rubbish.** 6
7 I hope they **get to the point** soon.
I hope Will speaks; he always **talks sense.** 8
2 I want to **speak my mind** today.
I hope we **wrap up** the discussion by 12.30. 5

1 start the discussion
2 say exactly what I think
3 say it in few words
4 say things in a long, indirect way
5 finish the discussion
6 say stupid things
7 come to the important part of the matter
8 say intelligent, reasonable things

Exercises

82.1 **Look at these dialogues and comment on them, as in the example.**

Example: A: £98 for a meal! that's outrageous!
B: Not the meal, you twit! The room!
They seem to be talking at cross-purposes.

1 JOE: So that's what I'm going to do, take it all away.
ANN: What about –
JOE: And if they don't like it they can just go and do what they like.
ANN: If she –
JOE: Not that I have to consult them, anyway, I'm in charge round here.
ANN: I wonder whether it –
JOE: You see, I'm the kind of person who can take a hard decision when it's needed.
It seems that Ann can't get ....

2 MICK: I got very upset when you said I was childish.
GRACE: I didn't, honestly! All I said was that you seemed to get on very well with the children. Honestly.
MICK: Oh, I see. Oh, sorry.
It seems that Mick got the ....

3 DAN: So, area-wise the down-matching sales profile commitment would seem to be high-staked on double-par.
REG: Eh? Could you say that again? You've got me there.
It seems that Reg can't make ....

4 MADGE: I don't expect someone with your intelligence to understand this document.
ERIC: Thank you.
Madge seems to be talking ....

82.2 **What idioms opposite do these drawings represent?**

1 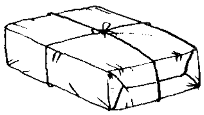 the discussion

2 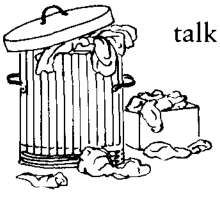 talk

3 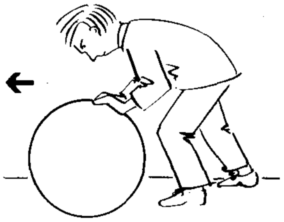 start

4 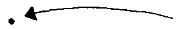 get to / come to

82.3 **Fill the gaps to complete the collocations.**

1 She is very direct and always .... her mind.
2 I get bored with small ....; let's get down to serious matters. I'm in love with you.
3 The boss gave me a real .... to after that stupid mistake I made. Still, I was in the wrong.
4 You're behind the times! Darren's girlfriend was *last* week's ....-point.

83 Idioms – miscellaneous

A Idioms connected with paying, buying and selling

He **bought a real pig in a poke** when he got that car. [buy something without examining it properly first]

We'll probably have to pay **over the odds** for a hotel room during the week of the festival. [pay more than the usual rate]

He did £600 worth of damage to the car and his parents had to **foot the bill.** [pay up, usually a large amount]

That restaurant was **a real rip-off.** *or* That taxi-driver really **ripped us off.** [made us pay much too much; very informal]

If I were you I'd **drive a hard bargain.** She's desperate to buy a flat and wants yours. [ask a lot and resist lowering the price]

See also **nose** on the human body below.

B Idioms based on names of the parts of the body

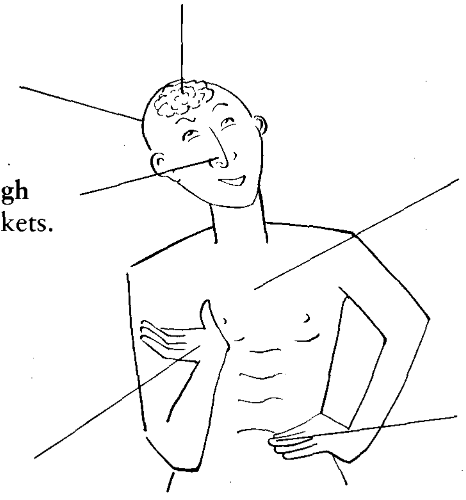

I've got **that song on the brain!** [just can't stop myself singing it]

He's **made quite a bit of headway** with his maths lately. [make progress]

We **had to pay through the nose** for those tickets. [pay a huge amount]

You've got to **hand it to her**; she's a great singer. [acknowledge/admit]

I hope you didn't mind me telling you. I just had to **get it off my chest.** [tell something that's been bothering you a lot]

Oh, he's got a **finger in every pie.** [is involved in many different things]

C Idioms connected with daily routine

Come on! **Rise and shine!** We've got to leave! [a command to someone to get up, often said to someone who doesn't want to and at a very early hour]. There's no time for breakfast. We can **get a bite to eat** on the motorway [have a snack or meal]. I'll drive and you can **have a nap** in the back seat [a short sleep]. When we get there, there'll just be time to **freshen up** before the meeting. [wash and tidy oneself]. It's going to be a long day; I'll **be ready to crash out** about 8 o'clock, I should think [be very tired/ready to sleep almost anywhere]. Still, we can stay home the following evening and **put our feet up** [relax], and just **watch the box** [watch television].

Exercises

83.1 **Look at these mini-dialogues and decide which idiom from the opposite page you could use to answer the questions.**

1 A: I'll give you $85.
B: No, $100 or nothing.
A: Oh, come on. Look, $90, there.
B: No, I said $100 and I mean $100.

What's B doing?

2 A: I'm president of the squash club, I'm on the teacher-parent committee and I run three youth clubs.
B: Really?
A: Yes, oh, and I'm on that working party at the Social Centre, and there's the Union...

What sort of person could A be described as?

3 A: 'Lady in red, la-da-da-di-da...'
B: I wish you'd stop singing that blasted song!
A: What? Oh, sorry... 'Lady in red, la-la ...'

What's A's problem?

4 A: Oh, no! You know that box of wine glasses I bought from that guy in the street? Half of them are cracked!
B: Well, you should have looked at them first. It's your stupid fault.

What has A done?

83.2 **Rewrite these sentences using an idiom instead of the underlined bits.**

1 Can I tell you about a problem I have? I just have to tell somebody. It's been bothering me for a while now.
2 They charged us £100 for a tiny room without a bath. It was just robbery!
3 There'll just be time to have a quick meal before the show.
4 I must admit, Maria coped with the situation brilliantly.
5 I think I'll just go upstairs and have a sleep for a while, if nobody objects.
6 Well, I was very tired and fell asleep on the sofa at about two o'clock, and the party was still in full swing.

83.3 **Can you think of a situation where you might...**

1 have to get a bite to eat on the way?
2 have to pay over the odds for a hotel room?
3 find it hard to make any headway?
4 be willing to pay through the nose for tickets?

83.4 **Which idioms do these drawings suggest?**

1
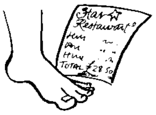

2
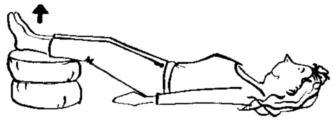

3
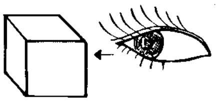

Follow-up: **Look up idioms under further parts of the body, for example, *tongue, heels, toe, back*, and make a note of examples.**

84 Proverbs

Speakers tend to use proverbs to comment on a situation, often at the end of a true story someone has told, or in response to some event. As with all idiomatic expressions, they are useful and enjoyable to know and understand, but should be used with care.

A Warnings/advice/morals – do's and don'ts

proverb		*paraphrase*
Don't count your chickens before they're hatched.	⟶	Don't anticipate the future too much.
Don't put all your eggs in one basket.	⟶	Don't invest all your efforts. or attention in just one thing.
Never judge a book by its cover.	⟶	Don't judge people/things by their outward appearance.
Never look a gift horse in the mouth.	⟶	Never refuse good fortune when it is there in front of you.
Take care of the pence and the pounds will take care of themselves.	⟶	Take care of small sums of money and they will become large sums.

B Key elements

Proverbs can also be grouped by some key elements, for example, animals and birds.

When the **cat**'s away, the **mice** will play. [people will take advantage of someone else's absence to behave more freely]

You can lead a **horse** to water but you can't make it drink. [you can try to persuade someone, but you can't force them]

One **swallow** doesn't make a summer. [one positive sign does not mean all will be well]

C Visualising

As with learning all vocabulary, visualising some element often helps.

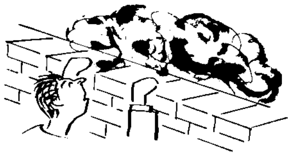

There's no smoke without fire. [rumours are usually based on some degree of truth]

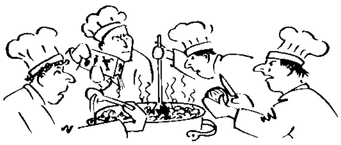

Too many cooks spoil the broth. [too many people interfering is a bad way of doing things]

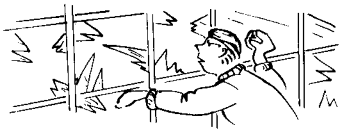

People who live in glass houses shouldn't throw stones. [don't criticise others' faults if you suffer from them yourself]

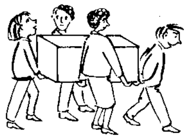

Many hands make light work. [a lot of people helping makes a job easier]

Exercises

84.1 **Find proverbs on the left-hand page which would be suitable for these situations.**

Example: Someone says they have just been offered a free two-week holiday, but are hesitating whether to take up the offer. *Never look a gift-horse in the mouth.*

1 Someone thanks you and your friends for helping to load heavy boxes into a van.

2 Someone says they can't be bothered applying to different universities and will just apply to one.

3 Three different people have made different arrangements for the same meeting, and so everyone comes at different times and the result is total confusion.

84.2 **Some proverbs are similar in meaning to one another. Which proverbs on the left go with which on the right, and what do they have in common in terms of meaning?**

1 A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.	Never judge a book by its cover.
2 Don't count your chickens before they are hatched.	Familiarity breeds contempt.
3 All that glitters is not gold.	Never look a gift-horse in the mouth.
4 Absence makes the heart grow fonder.	Don't cross your bridges before you come to them.

84.3 **In spoken language, people often refer to proverbs by only saying half of them and leaving the rest for the listener to 'fill in'. Complete the proverbs in these dialogues.**

1 A: 'Joel's always criticising people who are selfish, yet he's terribly selfish himself.
B: Yes, well, people who live in glass houses...
C: Exactly.

2 A: The people in the office have been playing computer games all day since the boss fell ill.
B: Well, you know what they say: when the cat's away...
A: Right, and they're certainly doing that.

3 A: I didn't believe those rumours about Nick and Gill, but apparently they are seeing each other.
B: You shouldn't be so naive, you know what they say, no smoke..., eh?
A: Mm, I suppose you're right.

4 A: Amazing, he's made a fortune from just one little shop!
B: Well, I think it's a case of take care of the pence...
A: Sure, he's always been very careful with his money.

Follow-up: **Try translating some proverbs from your language, word for word into English, and then, if you can, ask a native speaker if they recognise any English proverb as having the same or similar meaning.**

85 Expressions with do and make

A

The next seven units deal with phrasal verbs and other expressions based on common verbs. Phrasal verbs are basic verbs which can combine with different prepositions (or particles) to make verbs with completely new – and often unguessable – meanings. Phrasal verbs are used more in speaking than in writing. There is almost always a more formal way of conveying the same idea. In this unit we look at phrasal verbs formed from do and **make**.

B

Here are some of the most useful phrasal verbs based on do and **make**.

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
do with	need, want	I could do with something to eat.
do without	manage without	We'll have to do without a holiday this year as money is so short.
do away with	abolish	Slavery was not done away with until last century.
do out of	prevent from having (by deceit)	He did me out of my rightful inheritance.
make for	move in the direction of	Let's make for the city centre and find a restaurant on the way.
make of	think (opinion)	What do you make of him?
make off	leave hurriedly	He made off as soon as he heard their car turn into the drive.
make up for	compensate for	The superb food at the hotel made up for the uncomfortable rooms.
make up to	be nice to in order to get s.t.	He made up to her until she agreed to help.

C

Some phrasal verbs have a number of different meanings; do **up** can mean not only 'fasten' but also 'renovate' and 'put into a bundle'. Similarly, **make out** can mean 'claim', 'manage to see' and 'understand' as well as 'write' or 'complete'; **make up** can mean 'compose' or 'invent'; it can also mean 'constitute' or 'form', 'put cosmetics on', 'prepare by mixing together various ingredients' and 'make something more numerous or complete'.

D

There are a lot of other common expressions based on do and **make**.

You do: the housework / some gardening / the washing-up / homework / your best / the shopping / the cooking / business with..., and so on.

You **make**: arrangements / an agreement / a suggestion / a decision / a cup of tea / war / an attempt / a phone call / the best of... / an effort / an excuse / a mistake / a bed / a profit / a loss / love / the most of / a noise / a good or bad impression / a success of... / a point of... / allowances for... / a gesture / a face / fun of... / a fuss of... / a go (a success) of..., and so on.

The more collocations with do and **make** you learn, the more you will get a 'feel' for the difference between the two verbs.

Exercises

85.1 **Here are some different ways in which *do up, make up* and *make out* can be used. What is the meaning of the phrasal verb in each case?**

1 Take this prescription to the chemist and she'll make it up for you.
2 Can you make out the little grey house on the shore?
3 A human being is made up of many, often conflicting, desires.
4 If you do up the newspapers, I'll take them to be recycled.
5 I find it impossible to make Jo out.
6 Let's advertise the talk in the hope of making up the numbers a bit.
7 He made out that he had never loved anyone else.
8 We're planning to do up our bathroom at the weekend.

85.2 **Add the necessary prepositions or particles to complete this story.**

Last weekend we decided to start doing ....(1) our bedroom. We agreed that we could do ....(2) the old fireplace in the corner. As we began to remove it from the wall we found some old pictures done ....(3) in a bundle behind a loose brick. At first we could not make ....(4) what was in the pictures but we wiped them clean and realised they all depicted the same young man. We spent an enjoyable evening making ....(5) stories to explain why the pictures had been hidden.

85.3 **Correct the mistakes in the sentences below. Either the wrong preposition has been used or the word order is wrong.**

1 This weekend we are planning to make the seaside for.
2 Vast amounts of money do not always make of happiness.
3 He makes up for anyone he thinks can help him.
4 Your shoelaces are untied. Do up them or you'll trip.
5 They like to make away that they have important connections.

85.4 **Write word forks (see Unit 2) to help you learn the meanings of *make up, make out, do with* and *do up*.**

85.5 **Divide the expressions in D opposite into any groups which will help you to learn them.**

85.6 **Complete the following sentences using an appropriate expression from D.**

1 Pacifist posters in the 1960s used to say 'MAKE LOVE NOT ....!'
2 It doesn't matter if you pass or not as long as you do ....
3 Though many companies are going bankrupt, ours made a huge ....
4 Mrs Thatcher said she could do .... Mr Gorbachev.
5 You must make .... the fact that he's only seven years old.
6 Dressing smartly for an interview helps you to make ....

85.7 **Choose ten phrasal verbs and other expressions from the opposite page that you particularly want to learn and write a paragraph using them.**

86 Expressions with bring and take

A

Here are some common phrasal verbs with **bring**. Each is exemplified in a typical spoken sentence and a more formal equivalent is provided in brackets.

I was **brought up** in the country. [raise]
Don't give up. I'm sure you'll **bring** it **off**. [succeed]
Cold winds always **bring on** her cough. [cause to start]
The strike **brought about** a change of government. [cause to happen]
I hope they don't **bring back** capital punishment. [re-introduce]
They promised to **bring down** taxes but have they? [lower]
Inflation will **bring down** the government. [destroy, remove from power]
Ford are **bringing out** an interesting new model in the spring. [introduce]
Keep at it and you'll **bring** him **round** to your point of view. [persuade]

B

Here are some common phrasal verbs with **take**.

Doesn't he **take after** his father! [resemble]
I wish I could **take back** what I said to her. [withdraw]
I find it very hard to **take in** his lectures. [absorb, understand]
She was completely **taken in** by him. [deceive]
Sales have really **taken off** now. [start to improve]
The plane **took off** two hours late. [left the ground]
She's very good at **taking off** her teacher. [imitate]
We'll have to **take on** more staff if we're to **take on** more work. [employ; undertake]
She **took to** him at once. [form an immediate liking for]
When did you **take up** golf? [start (a hobby)]

C

Here are some other common idioms with **bring** and **take**.

The new regulations will **be brought into force** in May... [become law]
His research **brought** some very interesting facts **to light**. [revealed]
Matters **were brought to a head** when Pat was sacked. [reached a point where changes had to be made]
It's better that everything should be **brought into the open**. [made public]
His new girlfriend has really **brought out the best in him**. [been good for him]
Don't let him **take advantage of** you. [unfairly use superiority]
After 20 years of marriage they **take** each other **for granted**. [don't appreciate each other's qualities]
I took it for granted you'd come. [assumed]
She immediately **took control** of the situation. [started organising]
His words **took my breath away**. [surprised]
She loves **taking care of** small children. [looking after, caring for]
We **took part in** a demonstration last Saturday. [participated]
The story **takes place** in Mexico. [happens]
He doesn't seem to **take pride in** his work. [draw satisfaction from]
Mother always **takes** everything **in her stride**. [copes calmly]

Exercises

86.1 Complete these sentences with the appropriate preposition.

1 The new school reforms which plan to bring .... regular exams for young children are generally unpopular.
2 The long journey brought .... labour and the baby was born on the bus.
3 I think the strikes will bring .... some changes in management.
4 If anyone can bring it ...., he can.
5 He won't agree to it for me but she can always bring him ....
6 She brought .... six children all on her own.

86.2 The diagram below can be called a ripple diagram. Can you complete it?

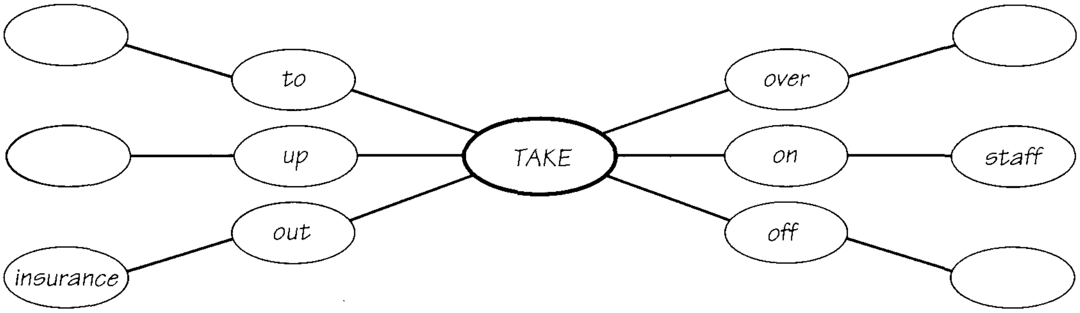

86.3 Reword these sentences using expressions from C opposite.

1 The story of the film happens in Casablanca during the war.
2 Today's newspaper has revealed some fascinating information about the Prime Minister.
3 The situation reached crisis point when the union called for a strike.
4 How does she always manage to be so calm about things?
5 The view from the place was astonishing.
6 He capitalised on her weakness at the time and she sold it to him.
7 The main function of a nurse is to look after the sick.
8 You shouldn't assume that anyone or anything will always be the same.

86.4 Reply to these questions using one of the phrasal verbs in A or B opposite.

1 What is the Conservative Party promising in its manifesto?
2 How did you like her?
3 What causes your rash?
4 Who does your little boy resemble?
5 Have you any special hobbies?
6 How's your new business doing?
7 What is a mimic?
8 Do you think you'll manage to persuade him to let you come?

86.5 Make up a ripple diagram like the one in 86.2, based on phrasal verbs with *bring*.

86.6 Which of the expressions in C mean the opposite of:

1 to keep quiet
2 to look on
3 to disregard
4 to drop an old law
5 to be careless about
6 to be subordinate to

87 Expressions with get

Get seems to be used all the time in spoken English. It has the following basic meanings:

- receive, obtain or buy something, e.g. Please **get** me a newspaper when you're in town; I **got** a letter from John today; She **got** top marks in her exam.
- show a change in position – move or be moved, e.g. How are you **getting** home tonight?
- show a change in state – become or make, e.g. We are all **getting** older if not wiser.

Get also has a number of other more specific meanings.

It's my turn to **get dinner** tonight. [prepare a meal]
I don't **get** it. Why did he speak like that? [understand]
His behaviour really **gets** me at times. [annoy]

C The table below shows just some of the phrasal verbs based on **get**.

phrasal verb	*meaning*	*example*
get at	reach, find	I hope the enquiry will get at the truth.
get away with	do something wrong without being caught	The robbers got away with several thousand pounds.
get behind	fail to produce something at the right time	I've got terribly behind with my work.
get by	manage (financially)	We could never get by on my salary alone.
get down	depress	This weather is really getting me down.
get down to	begin to give serious attention to	It's time you got down to some work.
get on	manage	However will we get on without you?
get on	advance, develop	Jo is getting on very well at school now.
get out of	avoid a responsibility	I'll try and get out of my lesson tomorrow.
get over	recover from	She's getting over a bad attack of flu.
get round	spread	The rumour soon got round the whole village.
get through	come to a successful end	What a relief that she got through all her exams!
get through	use up all of	He got through his month's salary in just one weekend.
get up to	to do (especially something bad)	They're very quiet. I wonder what they're getting up to?

D Here are some other expressions based on get.

You seem to have **got out of bed on the wrong side** today. [be in a bad mood]
The meeting **got off to a good/bad start** with JR's speech. [started well/badly]
I'm organising a little **get-together**. I hope you can come. [informal meeting/party]
When their relationship ended he **got rid** of everything that reminded him of her. [threw away, destroyed]
I'm going to **get my own back** on her somehow. [take my revenge]

Exercises

87.1 **There are a lot of instances of *get* in this text. Replace them all with another way of conveying the same idea. Notice that by doing this you are changing the text from something very informal to something slightly more formal.**

I don't often get interesting advertising circulars these days. However, quite an unusual one came this morning. It was headed 'Are you worried about getting out of touch?' And it went on, 'If so, get some of our special tablets today. Taking just one in the morning will help you get on well at work and at home. It will stop little problems from getting you down and will ensure that you get rich and successful with the minimum of effort on your behalf. Send just $25 today and you will get your tablets and your key to success within ten days.'

87.2 **Fill in the blanks in the sentences below in the most appropriate way.**

1 Although they had only told their parents about their engagement, the news soon got .... the village.
2 She must have made a good impression last week because she has got .... to the second round of interviews for the post.
3 I love watching TV cookery programmes but when they describe a recipe, it can be hard to get .... all the details in time.
4 We get .... only because we live very economically.
5 What have you been getting .... since we last met?
6 Surely you haven't got .... all the biscuits already?

87.3 **Match the situations in list A with the appropriate expressions in list B.**

A 1 Someone has been very impolite to one of your friends. 5
2 Someone is about to throw something away.
3 Someone is being very bad-tempered. 4
4 Someone has done something very unkind to you. 2
5 A good friend is leaving.

B 1 I don't know how we'll get by without you!
2 You wait! I'll get my own back on you one day!
3 Don't get rid of that yet!
4 You got out of bed on the wrong side this morning!
5 Your rudeness really gets me!

87.4 **Complete the following sentences in any appropriate way.**

1 I should hate to get rid of...
2 The dinner got off to a bad start when...
3 I find it very hard to get down to...
4 I wish I could get out of...
5 I don't think she has got over...
6 ...is really getting me down.

87.5 **There are a number of other common phrasal verbs and expressions based on *get* not listed on the opposite page. Write example sentences using any that you can think of.**

88 Expressions with set and put

Look at the examples of following phrasal verbs based on set.

You should **set aside** some money for a rainy day. [reserve]
He tried to **set aside** his dislike of his daughter's fiancé. [ignore (not think about)]
We should **set off** before dawn to get there on time. [begin a journey]
The redundancies **set off** strikes throughout the area. [cause]
The bank helps people wanting to **set up** business. [establish]
He **set out** to climb Everest. [begin work with a particular aim in mind]

Here are some of the many phrasal verbs with **put**.

He **put** his own name **forward** to the committee. [propose]
He's good at **putting** his ideas **across**. [communicate to others]
Please **put** away all your toys at once. [tidy]
He is always **putting** her **down**. [make someone look small]
We had central heating **put** in last year. [install]
I'm going to **put in** an application for that job. [submit]
Every now and then she would **put in** a remark. [interject]
They've **put off** making their decision for another week. [postpone]
Her sniffing really **puts** me **off** my dinner. [discourage]
The school is **putting** Hamlet **on** next year. [present]
He's good at **putting on** all sorts of accents. [pretend to have]
The fireman quickly **put out** the fire. [extinguish]
Please don't let me **put** you **out**. [inconvenience]
You're not allowed to **put up** posters here. [fix]
I can **put** you **up** for the weekend. [give accommodation to]
The government is sure to **put up** taxes soon. [raise]
How do you **put up with** such rudeness? [tolerate]

C

Here are some more expressions with set.

He has **set his heart/sights on** becoming a ballet dancer. [longs to become (an important aim/goal)]
They sat up till the small hours **setting the world to rights**. [discussing important problems]
Did someone **set fire to the house** deliberately? [put a match to] [illegible]
The house was **set on fire** by a match thrown onto some old newspapers. [ignited]
Di had never **set foot** in Italy before. [been to]
Jill is very **set in her ways**. [fixed in her habits]
Try to **set a good example**. [be a good example for others]

D

Notice also the following common expressions with **put**.

to put your foot down: to be firm about something
to put all your eggs in one basket: to risk all you have on a single venture
to put your mind to: to direct all your thoughts towards
to put two and two together: to draw an obvious conclusion
to put something in a nutshell: to state something accurately and in a few words only
to put someone's **back up**: to irritate someone
a put-up job: something arranged to give a false impression

Exercises

88.1 **Put the following sentences into slightly more formal English by replacing the phrasal verbs with their formal equivalents.**

1 They have recently set up a committee on teenage smoking.
2 We try to set aside some money for our holiday every week.
3 Set aside all your negative feelings and listen with an open mind.
4 If we hadn't set off so late, we would have arrived on time.
5 The government's unpopular proposals set off a wave of protests.

88.2 **Write down three nouns which could follow each of the verbs. Remember that their meanings might be different depending on the noun which follows.**

Example: put in money / a comment / a telephone system

1 put out
2 put forward
3 put off
4 put across
5 put up
6 put on
7 put away
8 put up with

88.3 **Complete the responses to the following statements or questions using any appropriate phrasal verb from A or B opposite.**

Example: He's always so rude. I wouldn't put up with it if I were you.

1 How should we publicise our play?
2 This room is in a terrible mess.
3 What time do we have to leave for the airport tomorrow?
4 Any chance of a bed on your floor this weekend?
5 Why have you suddenly lost interest in the project?
6 What is Geoff planning to do when he gets his business degree?

88.4 **Using the expressions in C and D opposite, reword the following sentences without changing their meaning.**

1 He never wants to do anything in a new or different way.
2 He's bound to draw the obvious conclusion if you keep on behaving like that.
3 Her aim is to become Prime Minister.
4 I find her terribly irritating.
5 It's sound business advice not to risk everything at once.
6 Please concentrate on the problem in hand.
7 She is determined to get a seat in Parliament.
8 She threw petrol on the rubbish and put a match to it.
9 She's very good at stating things succinctly.
10 The building started burning because of terrorist action.
11 This is the first time I've ever been to the southern hemisphere.
12 We spent most of our evenings discussing the problems of the world rather than studying.
13 You really should be firm with him or there'll be trouble later.
14 If the teacher doesn't behave properly, the children certainly won't.

88.5 **Choose ten of the phrasal verbs and other expressions with *set* and *put* which you particularly want to learn and write them down in example sentences of your own.**

89 Expressions with come and go

A

Here are some phrasal verbs based on **come**.

Did the meeting you were planning ever **come off**? [take place]
I don't think his jokes ever quite **come off**. [succeed]
When do the exam results **come out**? [be published, made public]
The mark on the carpet won't **come out**. [be removed]
An important point came **up** at the meeting. [was raised]
Please **come round** and see me sometime. [pay an informal visit]
Nothing can come **between** him and football. [separate; be a barrier between]
I came across a lovely old vase in that junk shop. [found by chance]
How did you **come by** that bruise / that car? [receive, obtain]

B

Notice the large number of expressions with **come to** (usually with an idea of arriving at) and **come into** (often with an idea of starting). Where the meaning isn't obvious, help is given in brackets.

come to: an agreement / a conclusion / a standstill [stop] / an end / a decision / blows [to start fighting] / to terms with [acknowledge and accept psychologically] / one's senses [to become conscious after fainting or to become sensible after behaving foolishly]

come into: bloom / flower / contact / a fortune / money / a legacy / operation [start working] / sight / view / power [of a political party] / existence / fashion / use

C

Here are some phrasal verbs based on **go**. Some have a number of different meanings.

Go on: What is **going on** next door? [happening]; They **went on** working despite the noise. [continued]; As the weeks **went on**, things improved. [passed]; You **go on**, we'll catch you up later. [go in advance]; The oven should **go on** at six. [start operating]; He's always **going on** at me about my hair. [complaining].

Go through: I wouldn't like to **go through** that again. [experience, endure]; Let's **go through** the plans once more. [check]; Unfortunately, the business deal we were hoping for did not **go through** in the end. [was not completed or approved]; He **went through** a fortune in one weekend. [spent, used]

Go for: He really **went for** her when she dared to criticise him. [attack]; He **goes for** older women. [is attracted by]; Which course have you decided to **go for**? [choose]

Those shoes don't **go with** that dress. [suit, match]
The alarm **went off** when the burglars tried to open the door. [rang]
He would never **go back on** his word. [break a promise]

D

Here are some expressions based on **go**.

Let me have **a go**! [Let me have a turn or try!]
I hope they'll **make a go of** the business. [make a success of]
He's been **on the go** all day and he's exhausted. [very busy, on the move]
It **goes without saying** that we'll all support you. [clear without being said]
Your work is good, **as far as it goes**. [but is limited or insufficient]
The story goes that they were once very close friends. [It is said that...]
I'm sure she'll **go far**. [be very successful]
They **went to great lengths** to keep it a secret. [took a lot of trouble]
The business has **gone bankrupt**. [not got enough money to pay debts]

Exercises

89.1 **Which of their several meanings do these underlined verbs have?**

1 He went on composing music till his eighties. *continued*
2 She was so suspicious that she used to go through his pockets every night.
3 The dog went for the postman.
4 The actor's interpretation of Hamlet was interesting but it didn't quite come off.
5 He has a new book coming out in June.
6 I wish you'd stop going on at me!
7 I was sure he'd go for a sports car.
8 I went through three pairs of tights this weekend.

89.2 **Choose one of the expressions in B to complete each of the sentences.**

1 I found it really hard to make up my mind but in the end I came ....
2 When his grandmother dies, he'll come ....
3 I love it in spring when my cherry tree comes ....
4 Halfway up the hill, the bus came ....
5 They say that long skirts are coming .... again.
6 The telephone first came .... over a hundred years ago.
7 They disagreed so strongly that I was afraid they'd come ....
8 As we rounded the corner the house came ....

89.3 **Replace the underlined expressions with one of the expressions in D.**

1 I don't need to say that we wish you all the best in the future.
2 They took great pains to avoid meeting each other.
3 I've been moving around all day and I'm longing for a shower now.
4 His school-teachers always said that he would be a success in life.
5 I don't think you'll be able to push the car on your own. Let me try.
6 The film is quite good up to a point but it doesn't tackle the problem deeply enough.

89.4 **Which answer on the right fits each question on the left?**

1 Why is she looking so miserable?
2 Did anything new come up at the meeting?
3 When does your alarm clock usually go off?
4 What's the worst pain you've ever gone through?
5 How did he come by so much money?
6 When should I come round to your place?
7 What's going on over there?

Any time after eight.
The firm went bankrupt.
A bit of a fight, I think.
From a doting aunt.
Seven thirty, normally.
Only Jack's proposal.
When I pulled a ligament.

89.5 **Complete the following sentences in any appropriate way.**

1 I'm sure they'll make a go of their new clothes boutique because...
2 The stain won't come out unless you...
3 Those shoes don't go with...
4 I never want to go through...
5 As the party went on...
6 It is not easy to come to terms with...
7 The interview committee came to the conclusion that...
8 I came across not only some old letters in the attic...

90 Expressions with look

This diagram illustrates some of the most useful phrasal verbs formed with **look**. The meaning of the phrasal verb is given in brackets.

look	**up to**	He has always **looked up to** his elder brother. [respect]
	into	The police are **looking into** the case. [investigate]
	for	Could you help me **look for** my keys, please? [try to find]
	back on	I **look back on** my schooldays with great pleasure. [recall]
	up	**Look** her town **up** in the atlas. [find information in a book]
	after	She is very good at **looking after** her sister. [take care of]
	forward to	I'm **looking forward to** starting work. [expect with pleasure]
	on	**Look on** this day off as a reward for your hard work. [consider]
	out	If you don't **look out** he'll take your job from you. [take care]

B

Here are a few more useful phrasal verbs based on **look**. All of them are illustrated below in a business context but they can also, of course, be used in other situations.

Please **look through** the proposal and let me know what you think. [examine]
I've **looked over** your proposal but I still need to read the fine print. [examined quickly]
Business is **looking up** at last. [starting to improve]
When you go to New York, be sure to **look up** our representative there. [find and visit]
We are **looking to** the Far East for an increase in sales. [depending on]
The company seems to be **looking ahead** to a bright future. [planning for the future]

C

Here are some other useful expressions based on **look**.

Try to **look on the bright side of things**. [be cheerful in spite of difficulties]
He's beginning to **look his age**. [appear as old as he really is]
They're always **on the lookout for** new talent. [searching for]
I **don't like the look of** those black clouds. [what I see suggests trouble ahead]
There's going to be a heavy thunderstorm, **by the look(s) of it**. [It appears probable. (This expression usually comes at the end of the sentence.)]
I know she's hiding something when she won't **look me in the eye**. [look directly at someone without fear or guilt]
The officer **looked** the men **up and down** and then started to tell them what he thought of them in no uncertain terms. [inspect closely in order to judge]
Everyone hates being made to **look small**. [appear unimportant or silly]
She **looks down her nose at** anyone who is no good at sport. [regards as unimportant or socially inferior]
It's **not much to look at** but it's comfortable. [not attractive in appearance]
The office has been given **a new look** over the weekend. [a fresh and more up-to-date appearance]
Look before you leap. [Think before you act boldly.]

Exercises

90.1 **What words do you need to complete the sentences below?**

1 I look .... that summer with some regrets.
2 He has a great respect for his colleagues but he doesn't really look .... his boss.
3 You're going to London? Do look .... my sister when you're there.
4 A government inquiry is looking .... the cause of the accident.
5 We are looking .... you to bring the company successfully out of the recession.
6 I'm sorry to hear you lost your job. I do hope that things will look .... for you soon.
7 Six nurses look .... the patients in this ward.

90.2 **Match the statements or questions on the left with the responses to them on the right. The first one has been done.**

1 Try to look on the bright side of things.	Why, what do you expect to happen?
2 Look out!	I thought it was time I had a new look.
3 Why don't you think she's honest?	You'd never think she was a grandmother.
4 She certainly doesn't look her age.	Why, what's the...
5 I don't like the look of the situation.	She'll be lucky at the moment.
6 She's on the lookout for a new job.	She never looks you in the eye.
7 What have you done to your hair?	It's rather hard in the circumstances.

90.3 **Complete the sentences below in any logical way.**

Example: I must look up *their number in the phone book.*

1 I'm really looking forward to...
2 It's wrong to look down on...
3 The book looks back on...
4 When I look ahead...
5 If you have time tonight, please look over...
6 Look us up when...

90.4 **Replace the more formal underlined expressions with one of the phrasal verbs or other expressions based on *look* from the opposite page.**

1 He appears to be in need of a good night's sleep.
2 The headteacher inspected the children and then nodded her approval.
3 No-one likes being made to appear foolish.
4 The garden isn't very attractive now but it's lovely in summer.
5 The expression on his face seems rather ominous.
6 Try to remain optimistic if you possibly can.

90.5 **Write three nouns that are likely to be found after each of the phrasal verbs below.**

1 look for 2 look after 3 look through 4 look to

91 Miscellaneous expressions

A The units which deal with phrasal verbs and other expressions present only a small number of the expressions that exist. There are many others based on both the basic verbs focused on in Units 84–90 and on a whole range of other verbs. This unit looks at some other verbs, giving examples of a few of the phrasal verbs and expressions connected with them.

B See

I must see **about/to** arrangements for the conference. [deal with]
They've gone to see Jim **off** at the airport. [go with someone about to set off on a journey]
It's easy to see **through** his behaviour. [not be deceived by]
It's sometimes hard **to** see **the wood for the trees**. [get a clear view of the whole of something because of distracting details]
Do you think you could see **your way to** lending me a fiver? [feel it was possible to]
I must be **seeing** things. [having hallucinations]

C Run

I **ran into** an old friend yesterday. [met unexpectedly]
Her patience has **run out**. [come to an end]
Let's **run** over the plans again. [review]
The children have **run me off** my feet today. [kept me so busy that I'm exhausted]
She **runs** the business while he looks after the children. [manages / has overall responsibility for]
How often do the trains **run**? [go]

D Turn

There was a very large **turnout** at the concert. [number of people who came]
She **turned down** their offer of promotion. [refused]
Who do you think **turned up** last night? [made an appearance, often unexpectedly]
I'm going to **turn over a new leaf** this year. [make a fresh start]
It's your turn to do the washing-up. [It's your duty this time because I did it last time.]
He did me a **good turn.** [a favour]

Let

He has been **let down** so many times in the past. [disappointed]
He won't **let us into** the secret. [tell us]
I hope the rain **lets up** soon. [becomes less strong]
Let **go** of the rope. [stop holding] Please **let me** be. [stop bothering me]
She **let it slip** that she had been given a pay rise. [mentioned accidentally or casually]

Break

The car **broke down** again this morning. [stopped working]
There isn't going to be a wedding – they have **broken off** their engagement. [ended]
Burglars broke **into** our house while we were on holiday. [forcibly entered]
I'm dreading **breaking the news to** him. [telling him the news]
He has **broken her** heart. [made her deeply unhappy]
The athlete **broke the record** for the 1000 metres. [created a new record]

Exercises

91.1 **Use the expressions on the opposite page to help you fill in the gaps in the text below. Use one word only in each gap.**

Let's run ....(1) the plans for tomorrow's disco just once more. First, I must see ....(2) the food arrangements while you make sure that none of the equipment is likely to break ....(3). I don't imagine that many people will turn ....(4) until later but Nick and Jill have promised to come early to help us and I'm sure they won't let us ....(5) even though Jill let it ....(6) the other day that they are thinking of breaking ....(7) their engagement.

91.2 **Rewrite the following using the words in brackets.**

1 Why does she let herself be deceived by him? (see)
2 I met Jack by chance at the station yesterday. (run)
3 I cooked the dinner yesterday. It's up to you to do it today. (turn)
4 I thought I was hallucinating when I saw a monkey in the garden. (see)
5 I wish you'd stop bothering me. (let)
6 He told us in secret that they were planning to break into the house. (let)
7 An enormous crowd came to hear the Prime Minister speak. (turn)

91.3 **Complete the sentences in an appropriate way.**

1 If the snow doesn't let up soon...
2 A person who cannot see the wood for the trees does not make a good...
3 Halfway up the mountain he let go...
4 Although the turnout for the meeting was not large...
5 He felt terribly let down when...
6 She didn't turn up...
7 I'm afraid we've run out...
8 He asked if I could see my way...

91.4 **Answer the questions below.**

1 Have you ever turned down an offer or invitation that you later regretted?
2 Have you ever had problems because of something (a vehicle or a piece of equipment, perhaps) breaking down at an inconvenient time? What happened?
3 Who really runs the country, in your opinion?
4 Have you done anyone a good turn today? If so, what did you do?
5 Which record would you most like to break?
6 Do you think it is possible for someone's heart to be broken?
7 Have you ever resolved to turn over a new leaf? In what way(s)?
8 Have you any particular jobs that you must see to today? If so, what?
9 Has your home ever been broken into? What happened?

91.5 **The expressions opposite are only some of many expressions using these five verbs. Can you think of two other phrasal verbs or other idiomatic expressions using each of the verbs? If you can't, try to find them in a dictionary.**

92 Headline English

A

Headline writers try to catch the reader's eye by using as few words as possible. The language headlines use is, consequently, unusual in a number of ways.

- Grammar words like articles or auxiliary verbs are often left out, e.g. EARLY CUT FORECAST IN INTEREST RATES
- A simple form of the verb is used, e.g. QUEEN OPENS HOSPITAL TODAY
- The infinitive is used to express the fact that something is going to happen in the future, e.g. PRESIDENT TO VISIT MINE

B

Newspaper headlines use a lot of distinctive vocabulary. They prefer words that are usually shorter and generally sound more dramatic than ordinary English words. The words marked * can be used either as nouns or verbs.

newspaper word	*meaning*	*newspaper word*	*meaning*
aid *	help	key	essential, vital
axe *	cut, remove	link *	connection
back	support	move *	step towards a desired end
bar *	exclude, forbid	ordeal	painful experience
bid *	attempt	oust	push out
blast *	explosion	plea	request
blaze *	fire	pledge *	promise
boost *	incentive, encourage	ploy	clever activity
boss *	manager, director	poll *	election / public opinion survey
head*		probe *	investigation
clash *	dispute	quit	leave, resign
curb *	restraint, limit	riddle	mystery
cut *	reduction	strife	conflict
drama	tense situation	talks	discussions
drive *	campaign, effort	threat	danger
gems	jewels	vow *	promise
go-ahead	approval	wed	marry
hit	affect badly		

Newspaper headlines often use abbreviations, e.g. PM for Prime Minister, MP for Member of Parliament. (See Unit 98 for more abbreviations.)

C

Some newspapers also enjoy making jokes in their headlines. They do this by playing with words or punning, e.g. a wet open air concert in London by the opera singer Luciano Pavarotti was described as:

TORRENTIAL RAIN IN MOST ARIAS ['most areas']

An announcement that a woman working at the Mars chocolate company had got an interesting new job was:

WOMAN FROM MARS TO BE FIRST BRITON IN SPACE

(Note that the word 'Briton' is almost exclusively found in newspapers.)

Exercises

92.1 On the left there is a list of headlines. On the right there is a list of news topics. Match the headlines with the appropriate topic as in the example.

1 PM BACKS PEACE PLAN
2 MP SPY DRAMA
3 SPACE PROBE FAILS
4 QUEEN'S GEMS RIDDLE
5 STAR WEDS
6 KEY WITNESS DEATH THREAT

marriage of famous actress
royal jewels are stolen
person who saw crime in danger
proposal to end war
satellite is not launched
politician sells secrets to enemy

92.2 Explain what the following headlines mean in ordinary English.

Example: SHOP BLAZE 5 DEAD *Five people died in a fire in a shop.*

1 MOVE TO CREATE MORE JOBS
2 GO-AHEAD FOR WATER CURBS
3 WOMAN QUITS AFTER JOB ORDEAL
4 POLL PROBES SPENDING HABITS
5 BID TO OUST PM
6 PRINCE VOWS TO BACK FAMILY

92.3 The words marked * in the table opposite can be either nouns or verbs. Note that the meaning given is usually in the form of a noun. In the headlines below you have examples of words from the table used as verbs. Look at the underlined verbs and explain what they mean. You may need to use more than one word.

Example: PM TO CURB SPENDING *limit*

1 BOOK LINKS MI5 WITH KGB
2 CHANCELLOR CUTS INTEREST RATES
3 BOMB BLASTS CENTRAL LONDON
4 PM PLEDGES BACKING FOR EUROPE
5 PRESIDENT HEADS PEACE MOVES

92.4 Would you be interested in the stories under the following headlines? Why (not)?

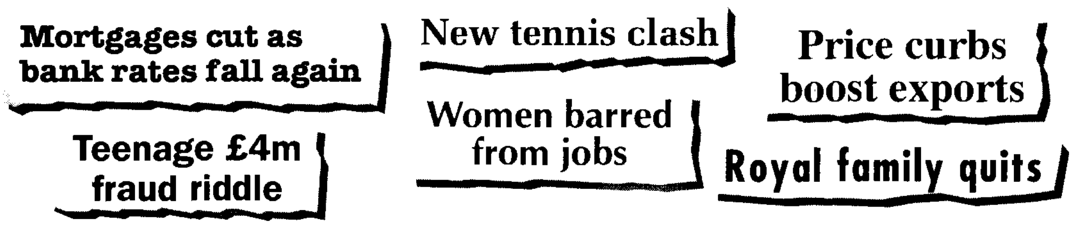

Mortgages cut as bank rates fall again

New tennis clash

Price curbs boost exports

Women barred from jobs

Teenage £4m fraud riddle

Royal family quits

92.5 Look through some English language newspapers and find some examples of headlines illustrating the points made on the opposite page. Beside each headline make a note of what the accompanying story is about. Try to find some examples of amusing headlines.

93 US English

A

English in the USA differs considerably from British English. Pronunciation is the most striking difference but there are also a number of differences in vocabulary and spelling as well as slight differences in grammar. On the whole, British people are exposed to a lot of American English on TV, in films and so on and so they will usually understand most American vocabulary.

American spelling is usually simpler. For example, British English words ending in -our and -re, end in -or and -er in American English, e.g. colour/color, centre/center. There are differences in individual words too, e.g. British 'plough' becomes 'plow'. The American spelling usually tries to correspond more closely to pronunciation.

C

Here are some common US words with their British equivalents.

Travel and on the street		In the home	
American English	*British English*	*American English*	*British English*
gasoline	petrol	antenna	aerial
truck	lorry	elevator	lift
baggage	luggage	eraser	rubber
blow-out	puncture	apartment	flat
sidewalk	pavement	closet	wardrobe
line	queue	drapes	curtains
vacation	holiday	faucet	tap
trunk (of car)	boot	kerosene	paraffin
hood (of car)	bonnet	Scotch tape	sellotape
cab	taxi	yard	garden
freeway	motorway	cookie	biscuit
round trip	return	candy	sweets
railway car	railway carriage	garbage	rubbish
engineer (on train)	engine driver	diaper	nappy
baby carriage	pram	panti-hose	tights

Note also: the fall = autumn   semester = term [semester is becoming common in Britain.]

D

Here are some words and phrases which can cause confusion when used by Brits and Americans talking together because they mean something different in each 'language'.

when they say:	*an American means what a Brit calls:*	*and a Brit means what an American calls:*
a bill	a (bank) note	a check (in a café)
the first floor	the ground floor	the second floor
pants	trousers	underpants
potato chips	potato crisps	french fries
purse	a handbag	a wallet
subway	an underground railway	an underpass
vest	a waistcoat	an undershirt
wash up	wash your hands	wash the dishes

Exercises

93.1 If you saw words spelt in the following way would you expect the writer in each case to be British or American? Why?

1 labor 2 centre 3 hospitalized 4 movie theater 5 favour 6 thru

93.2 What are (a) the American and (b) the British words for the following things?

1

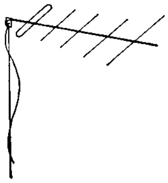

2

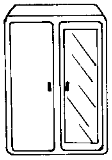

3

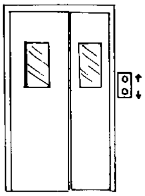

4

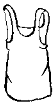

5

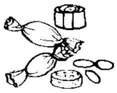

6

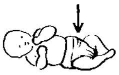

7

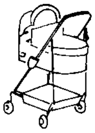

8

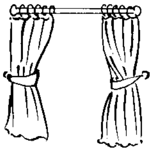

9

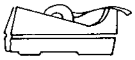

10

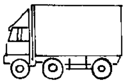

93.3 You are going on holiday to the States. Which of the words listed in B and C opposite do you think it would be most important for you to know? Which of the words would a person travelling with a baby might well need to know?

93.4 Translate the following into British English.

1 I had a blow-out.
2 Pass me the cookies.
3 It's in the closet.
4 Open the drapes.
5 We've run out of gas.
6 It's in the trunk.
7 One-way or round trip?
8 He left the faucet on.
9 We're leaving in the fall.
10 I hate waiting in line.

93.5 Can you avoid some of the most common confusions arising between British and American speakers? Try the following quiz.

1 Where would you take (a) an American visitor (b) a British visitor who said they wanted to wash up – the kitchen or the bathroom?
2 Would (a) an American (b) a Brit be expected to get something hot or something cold if they asked for some potato chips?
3 Which would surprise you more – an American or a British man telling you that he wanted to go and change his pants?
4 You have just come into an unknown office block. If (a) an American (b) a Brit says that the office you need is on the second floor, how many flights of stairs do you need to climb?
5 If (a) an American (b) a Brit asks for a bill, is he or she more likely to be in a bank or a café?

93.6 Do you know any other examples of American English? Make a list at an appropriate place in your vocabulary notebook or file.

94 Other Englishes

US or American English (see Unit 93) is not the only special variety of English. Each area of the English-speaking world has developed its own special characteristics. This is usually mainly a matter of vocabulary and pronunciation. This unit just gives you a small taste of some of the different varieties of English by drawing your attention to vocabulary used in various English-speaking regions. All the words covered in this unit would be understood by educated native speakers of British English although they might not choose to use them themselves. They are all words which you may come across in your own reading, listening or viewing.

Australian English is particularly interesting for its rich store of highly colloquial words and expressions. Australian colloquialisms often involve shortening a word. Sometimes the ending '-ie' or '-o' is then added, e.g. a **smoko** (from smoking), is a 'tea or coffee break' and a **milko** delivers the milk; **beaut**, short for 'beautiful' means 'great'. Because of the current popularity of Australian TV programmes and films, some of these words are now being used by British people too.

Indian English, on the other hand, is characterised by sounding more formal than British English. It has retained in everyday usage words that are found more in the classics of nineteenth century literature than in contemporary TV programmes from London, e.g. The **bereaved** are **condoled** and the Prime Minister is **felicitated** on his or her birthday. An Indian might complain of a pain in his **bosom** (rather than his chest) and an Indian bandit is referred to as a **miscreant**.

Scottish English uses a number of special dialect words. Some of the more common of these are worth learning.

aye: yes
ben: mountain
brae: bank (of river)
dram: drink (usually whisky)
glen: valley
kirk: church

loch: lake
to mind: to remember
bairn: child
bonny: beautiful
burn: stream
stay: live

dreich: dull
janitor: caretaker
lassie: girl
outwith: outside
wee: small
ken: know

E Black English is the term used to refer to the English which originated in the Caribbean islands and has now spread to many parts of the UK, Canada and the USA. Listed below are some words which are characteristic of Black English but are also now used in other varieties of English. Many are particularly associated with the music world.

dreadlocks: Rastafarian hairstyle
chick: girl
jam: improvise
rap: street-talk

beat: exhausted
dig: understand
pad: bed
square: dull

Exercises

94.1 **What do you think these examples of Australian colloquialisms mean? They are all formed by abbreviating an English word which you probably know.**

1 Where did you go when you were in Oz?
2 She wants to be a journo when she leaves uni.
3 We got terribly bitten by mozzies at yesterday's barbie.
4 He's planning to do a bit of farming bizzo while he's in the States.
5 What are you doing this arvo?
6 We decided to have a party as the oldies had gone away for the weekend.

94.2 **The words on the left are more common in Indian English than British English. The words on the right are the equivalent words more frequently used in British English. Match the Indian word with its British English equivalent.**

1 abscond	catch (e.g. by police)
2 nab	man who annoys girls
3 bag (i.e. a seat in an election)	plimsolls, sneakers
4 Eve-teaser	underwear
5 the common man	flee
6 fleetfoots	people awaiting trial
7 undertrials	the general public
8 wearunders	capture/obtain

94.3 **Below you have some statements made by a Scot. Answer the questions about them.**

1 Mary had a bonny wee lassie last night.
What happened to Mary yesterday?

2 They stay next to the kirk.
What noise is likely to wake them on Sunday mornings?

3 It's a bit dreich today.
Is it good weather for a picnic?

4 He's got a new job as janitor at the school.
What kind of duties will he have?

5 Would you like a wee dram?
If you say 'yes', what will you get?

6 'Are you coming, Jim?' 'Aye'.
Is Jim coming or isn't he?

7 They have a wonderful view of the loch from their window.
What can they see from the window?

94.4 **Answer the following questions relating to Black English.**

1 Would you be pleased to be called square?
2 What does hair that is in dreadlocks look like?
3 When might you feel dead beat?
4 If musicians have a jam session, what do they do?

95 Slang

A

Slang is a particular kind of colloquial language. It refers to words and expressions which are extremely informal. Slang helps to make speech vivid, colourful and interesting but it can easily be used inappropriately. Although slang is mainly used in speech, it is also often found in the popular press.

B

It can be risky for someone who is not a native speaker to use slang.

Firstly because some slang expressions may cause offence to some sections of the population. For example, most policemen are quite happy to be referred to as **coppers** but are offended by the term **pigs**. Similarly, you could probably use the word **sozzled** (meaning drunk) in front of anyone but using the words, **pissed** or **arseholed**, which also mean drunk, could upset some people.

Secondly, slang words date very quickly. Different generations, for instance, have used different slang expressions to say that something was 'wonderful'.

pre-war: **top-hole**
1940s: **wizard**
1960s: **fab, groovy**
1970s: **ace, cosmic**
1980s: **brill, wicked**

It can be possible to work out a native speaker's age from the expressions which they use, as people tend to stick with the slang expressions of their youth.

To sum up, you may find it interesting to learn about slang and you may come across slang expressions (particularly when you are watching films or reading popular newspapers or novels) but you might be well advised to avoid using slang yourself.

C

Here are some examples of some slang words and expressions which you may come across. The ones which are most likely to cause offence are underlined.

Expressions for money: dough, bread, dosh, loot, brass, spondulicks
Expressions for the police: pigs, fuzz, cop(per)s, bill
Expressions for drunk: pissed, sozzled, paralytic, legless, arseholed
Expressions for a stupid person: wally, prat, nerd, jerk, dickhead, plonker, pillock
Expressions for lavatory: loo, lav, bog, john
Expressions for drink: booze, plonk (wine), a snifter, a snort
Drug-related expressions: a fix, dope, grass, high, stoned, snow (heroin)
Prison-related expressions: nick (prison), nark (informer), screw (warder)

D

Slang is often used by one particular group and is unintelligible to other people. Here are some examples from American truck-drivers using CB radio to talk to each other.

grandma lane: slow lane
doughnuts: tyres
motion lotion: fuel
five finger discount: stolen goods
anklebiters: children
eyeballs: headlights
super cola: beer
affirmative: yes

Exercises

95.1 **Replace the slang words which are underlined in the sentences below with more formal equivalents. If the meaning is not given opposite, then it should be possible to guess what it is. Notice that some of the words have a slang meaning which is different from their everyday meaning.**

1 The newsreader on TV last night seemed to be pissed as he was reading the news.
2 He's quite a nice bloke really.
3 I've got a terrible belly ache – I think I'd better make an appointment with the quack.
4 Her dad was furious when he learnt he had to wear a penguin suit to the wedding.
5 Can you lend me some dosh till tomorrow?
6 I know there'll be plenty of nosh but do we need to take some booze to the party?
7 Have you got wheels or shall we call a taxi?
8 I'm dying for a cuppa. I haven't had one since breakfast.
9 Can I use your loo, please?
10 I was absolutely gobsmacked when she told me she was leaving.

95.2 **Match the statements on the left with the responses to them on the right.**

1 How was the party?
2 What does that guy over there do?
3 He's getting legless.
4 Keep a lookout for the pigs.
5 Where's the dough?
6 Where's her hubby?
7 What'll we do tomorrow?

Let's take him home.
Sure. I'll keep my eyes skinned.
He's in the nick.
It's in a drawer, over here.
He's a cop.
Let's go for a run in the motor.
Wicked!

95.3 **A particular well-known kind of slang is Cockney rhyming slang where an expression is used in place of something that it rhymes with.**

Example: trouble and strife = wife   apples and pears = stairs

How would you translate the Cockney rhyming slang expressions in the sentences below?

1 Let's have a butcher's (short for butcher's hook) at your homework.
2 Just look at those Gawd forbids playing football!
3 It's on the Cain and Abel next to the phone.
4 What a set of Hampstead Heath!
5 She'll get him to the lean and lurch by hook or by crook.
6 Have you seen my titfer? (short for tit for tat)

95.4 **Another common way of making slang words is by using short forms or loosely pronounced forms of ordinary words. Thus fab is a slang form of 'fabulous' and hubby is a slang form of 'husband'. Can you work out the meanings of the following underlined slang words?**

1 He's my fella.
2 Let's have brekkie.
3 It was a freebie.
4 He's a brickie.
5 I took a sickie.
6 Let's have a barbie.

96 The language of notices

A Notices in English often use words and expressions that are rarely seen in other contexts. Look at the notices below with their 'translations' into more everyday English.

Do not alight from
the bus whilst
it is in motion

1 Don't get off the bus while it's moving.

TRESPASSERS
WILL BE
PROSECUTED

2 People who walk on this private land will be taken to court.

KINDLY REFRAIN
FROM SMOKING
IN THE AUDITORIUM

3 Please don't smoke in the theatre/hall.

PENALTY FOR
DROPPING LITTER –
UP TO £100 FINE

4 You can be taken to court and made to pay £100 for dropping rubbish.

Lunches now
being served

5 You can buy lunch here now.

NO ADMISSION TO
UNACCOMPANIED
MINORS

6 Young people under 18 years old can only come in if they are with an adult.

FEEDING THE ANIMALS
STRICTLY PROHIBITED

7 You are not allowed to feed the animals.

No through road
for motor vehicles

8 There is no way out at the other end of this road for cars.

NO BILL-
STICKING

9 You mustn't put up any posters here.

Please place your
purchases here

10 Please put the things you are going to buy / have bought here.

This packet carries
a government
health warning

11 What is in this packet is officially considered bad for your health.

Reduce speed now

12 Start going more slowly now.

Pay and
display

13 Buy a ticket and put it in a place where it can easily be seen.

Cyclists
dismount
here

14 Cyclist should get off their bikes here.

FISHING: PERMIT
HOLDERS ONLY

15 Only people with special cards giving them permission are allowed to fish here.

B You will find more examples of a specific kind of notice, road signs, in Unit 49.

Exercises

96.1 Where would you expect to see each of the notices on the opposite page?

Example: 1 on a bus

96.2 Match each of the words on the left with their more everyday translations from the list on the right.

1	to prosecute	a young person under the age of 18
2	a penalty	to get off a bicycle or a horse
3	a purchase	to bring a legal case against
4	a trespasser	not to do something
5	to refrain	to forbid something
6	to alight from	a means of transport
7	to prohibit	a punishment
8	an auditorium	something which has been or is to be bought
9	to dismount	to get off a means of public transport
10	a minor	large place where an audience sits
11	a vehicle	someone who goes on private land without permission

96.3 Explain the notices below. Where might you see each of these notices?

1 **SHOP-LIFTERS WILL BE PROSECUTED**

2 *French spoken here*

3 **Nothing to declare**

4 ***Clearance sale starts today***

5 Admission to ticket holders only

6 *No vacancies*

7 **FISHING STRICTLY PROHIBITED**

8 *Cycles for hire or sale*

9 Flat to let

10 Dogs must be carried

11 These seats are appreciated by the old and infirm

96.4 What notice would a café-owner put up if they wanted to:

1 indicate that their café was now open for coffee?
2 let people know that the café staff can speak Spanish?
3 stop people from smoking in their café?
4 let people know that they can buy free-range eggs there too?
5 ask people not to fix notices onto their wall?
6 tell people that they could rent rooms there overnight?

96.5 If you are in or go to visit an English-speaking country, make a collection in your vocabulary book of any notices that you see.

97 Words and gender

In this unit we look at the problems of using words in a way that is not offensive to either gender. In English, a lot of words are marked as masculine or feminine by suffixes, but many other words have 'female' or 'male' associations and should be used carefully.

A Suffixes marking gender

-er(-or)/-ess: traditionally used to mark male (m) and female (f), e.g. actress (f) / actor (m); waitress (f) / waiter (m).

These two words are still often used in both forms, but forms such as **authoress, poetess, murderess** and **manageress** are considered old-fashioned. If you want to be neutral, you can use the **-er/-or** suffix for male or female.

Schoolmistress/master sound old-fashioned, use **teacher** instead; **air hostess** also sounds out of date, use **flight attendant** (neutral) or **stewardess.**

B -man, -woman and -person

Traditional social roles often meant that **-man** was used even for roles performed by women. Now many people prefer a neutral form for both sexes, if there is one available.

neutral	*traditional male*	*traditional female*
chair(person)	chairman	chairwoman
spokesperson	spokesman	spokeswoman
police officer	policeman	policewoman
—	postman	postwoman
—	fisherman	—
bartender	barman	barmaid
businessperson	businessman	businesswoman
firefighter	fireman	—
flight attendant	steward	stewardess / air hostess
head (teacher)	headmaster	headmistress

C 'Social' marking of words

Some words, particularly the names of jobs, are socially marked as belonging to one gender, even though the words are neutral in form, e.g. in English, **nurse** was considered so 'female' that if a man was a nurse, he was often referred to as a **male nurse.**

Just consider your own reaction to these words, and whether most people would tend to think of a man or a woman upon hearing them.

barber **hairdresser** **burglar** **secretary** **farmer** **butcher**

Note: **bachelor** and **spinster** can both have negative or undesirable associations. Use **unmarried** or **single (man/woman)** instead. Likewise, instead of fiancé(e), you can use **partner,** especially for someone you live with as a couple but are not married to.

Many women nowadays prefer the title **Ms** /məz/, rather than **Miss** or **Mrs.**

Exercises

97.1 Look at this rather sexist advertisement for an airline. Change the wording to make it more neutral.

Now! Eagle Airlines offers even more to the businessman who needs comfort.

Let us fly you to your destination in first-class comfort, looked after by the best-trained air hostesses in the world. Any businessman knows that he must arrive fresh and ready for work no matter how long the journey. With Eagle Diplomat-Class you can do just that. And, what's more, your wife can travel with you on all intercontinental flights for only 25% of the normal fare! Your secretary can book you on any flights 24 hours a day on 0557-465769. All she has to do is lift the phone.

97.2 Here are some more names of jobs and occupations. Are they marked for gender either in the form of the word itself, or 'socially' marked as typically male or female? How are they translated into your language, by neutral or by gender-marked words?

1 conductor
2 shepherd
3 cheerleader
4 typist
5 station master
6 dressmaker
7 general
8 detective
9 monk
10 milkman
11 tailor

97.3 These words include some that many people consider sexist. Put the words into appropriate pairs with their neutral alternatives.

cabin attendant man-hours unmanned air hostess unstaffed spinster
human beings single woman mankind person-hours

97.4 Change gender-marked words into neutral ones.

1 We shall have to elect a new chairman next month.
2 Several firemen and policemen were hurt in the riots.
3 A spokesman for the store said the manageress had decided to resign.
4 I wonder what time the postman comes every day.
5 I can't see a barman anywhere. Shall I press this bell and see if someone comes?
6 Her brother's a male nurse, and she's an authoress.

97.5 Make this letter more neutral.

The Manager
Frinstowe Engineering Ltd 22/11/92

Dear Sir,
I am a spinster aged 22 and am seeking employment. I saw your advertisement for part-time workers in *The Globe* last week. However, your 24-hour answering service seemed to be unmanned when I tried it. Could you please send me application forms by post? Thank you.

Yours sincerely,
Sally Hewings
Sally Hewings (Miss)

98 Abbreviations

Some abbreviations are read as individual letters:

WHO	(W-H-O) World Health Organisation	IRA	Irish Republican Army
PLO	Palestine Liberation Organisation	UN	United Nations
BBC	British Broadcasting Corporation	PM	Prime Minister
ANC	African National Congress	MP	Member of Parliament

In the following three cases, the name of each country and the name of its secret police are pronounced as individual letters/numbers.

CIA (USA)   MI5 (UK)   KGB (former USSR, now CIS)

Note: When these abbreviations are stressed words in the sentence, the stress falls on the last letter, e.g. She works for the CIA. I heard it on the BBC.

B

Some abbreviations are read as words; we call them **acronyms**.

NATO	/'neɪtəʊ/	North Atlantic Treaty Organisation
OPEC	/'əʊpek/	Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries
AIDS	/eɪdz/	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome

Some acronyms have become so normal as words that people do not think of them as abbreviations any longer, and so they are not written all in capital letters.

laser   radar   yuppy   Esso

C

Some abbreviations are only written forms; they are still pronounced as the full word.

Mr (Mister)   Dr (Doctor)   St (Saint or Street)

D

Abbreviations are used in the organisation of language.

etc. /et'setrə/ and so on [Latin: et cetera]
i.e. (I-E): that is to say [Latin: id est]
PTO (P-T-O) please turn over
NB (N-B) please note [Latin: nota bene]
RSVP (R-S-V-P) please reply [French: répondez s'il vous plaît]
e.g. (E-G) for example [Latin: exempli gratia]

E

Clippings: some words are normally used in an abbreviated form in informal situations. (See also Unit 7.)

lab (laboratory)   **phone** (telephone)   **fridge** (refrigerator)
TV or **telly** (television)   **board** (blackboard)   **bike** (bicycle)   **case** (suitcase)
exam (examination)   **plane** (aeroplane)   **rep** (business representative)
ad/advert (advertisement)   **fax** (telefax)

Some abbreviations you might see on a letter/fax/envelope.

c/o care of [e.g. T. Smith, c/o J. Brown; the letter goes to J. Brown's address]
enc. enclosed [e.g. enc. application form]
PS postscript [extra message after the letter has been ended]
asap as soon as possible [e.g. ring me asap]

Exercises

98.1 What things in these addresses are normally abbreviated? How is *Ms* pronounced in the second address?

1 Mister A. Carlton
Flat number 5
Hale Crescent
Borebridge

2 Ms P. Meldrum
care of T. Fox
6, Marl Avenue
Preston

3 N. Lowe and Company
7, Bridge Road
Freeminster
United Kingdom

98.2 Match these abbreviations with their meanings and then group them according to groups A to D opposite.

1 BSc
2 FBI
3 Fr
4 ext.
5 CD
6 asap
7 PIN
8 e.g.
9 Unesco

compact disc
for example
Federal Bureau of Investigation
personal identification number (usually on a bank card)
United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation
Bachelor of Science
extension
Father (title for a priest)
as soon as possible

98.3 'Translate' this note from the boss to a group of workers in an office, into full words.

Memo from: Mr Braneless (MD) To: All staff
Date: 3/5/91 Ref: 04056/DC
May I remind you that all new lab equipment should be registered with Stores & Supplies, Room 354 (ext 2683). NB: new items must be notified before 1700hrs on the last day of the month of purchase, i.e. within the current budgeting month. All a/c nos must be recorded. Braneless

98.4 Explain 1–5 and match them with the contexts on the right.

1 Students and OAPs: £1.50
2 WC Gents
3 US forces take 5,000 POWs
4 Ozone-friendly: CFC-free
5 Dep 1500 Arr 1742

on an aerosol can
in a newspaper headline
on a museum entrance
on an airline timetable
on a door in a pub

98.5 Across
3 Flying saucer
6 N, S, E or W?
8 Royal Navy
9 Rest in Peace
10 Short for biological
11 Type of record
12 &
13 Means 'especially'
15 British car-plate
17 American
19 Famous film alien
20 Short name for London Underground

Down
1 %
2 Same as 13 across
4 Refrigerators
5 Means 'or nearest offer'
7 Serious illness
10 'Please note' backwards
14 Place for a short drink?
16 British Telecom
18 South East

1	■	2	■	3	4	5
6	7			■	8	
9			■	10		
11		■	12			■
13		14	■	■	15	16
	■	17	18	■	19	
20				■		■

99 New words in English

A

No language stands still. New words and expressions are always being created, usually because something new is invented or sometimes just for fun. No government committee decides whether a new word is acceptable or not; if it is used frequently, and in a variety of contexts, it will find its way into the dictionary. Here are some of the words and expressions that have come into English since 1980.

B New science and technology

faxable: able to be sent by fax machine
junk fax: unsolicited material, such as adverts, sent by fax
tummytuck: a plastic surgery operation to remove fat from the stomach
sound bite: a brief excerpt from a speech or statement, broadcast on TV

C New sports and fashions

monoboarding: the sport of skiing downhill on a large single ski
snowsurfing: skiing downhill standing sideways on a large single ski
vogueing: a style of dancing to house music incorporating the movements and gestures of models displaying clothes

D Political and social trends

eco-friendly: not harming the environment
cardboard city: area occupied by cardboard boxes serving as homes for the homeless
teleworking: working from home communicating by computer and fax
advertocracy: pursuit of public policy by mass advertising campaigns
destatisation: withdrawal of the state from areas that were previously state-controlled as in the (former) Soviet bloc in the 80s and 90s
Gorbymania: extreme enthusiasm for the former Soviet President, Mikhail Gorbachev
newmannery: behaviour of the new man (gentle, caring, non-sexist)
couch potato: a lazy person who prefers watching TV to being active

E New words from other languages

fatwa: formal legal opinion delivered by an Islamic leader (Arabic)
karaoke: singing pop songs solo to recorded music in bars (Japanese)
glasnost: policy of openness or frankness (Russian)

F New forms or meanings for old words

ageism: prejudice against someone because of their age
nostalgise: to indulge in nostalgia
pre-schooler: a child not yet old enough for school
dark-green: holding radically green political beliefs
singlehood: the state of being single rather than married
clergyperson: a male or female member of the clergy (a typical development from clergyman. Compare: **chairperson**)

Exercises

99.1 **Here are some more new words. Match them with their definitions. Which of the five categories opposite does each fit best in?**

1 collectomania	a specially bred miniaturised form of vegetable
2 bio-house	a hypothetical miniaturised device capable of making its way through bodily passages and performing various tasks
3 bimbo	an irresistible urge to collect things
4 mini-vegetable	an indoor version of American football
5 arenaball	a house constructed solely from natural materials
6 microbot	a female of limited intelligence but high sex appeal

99.2 **Choose which word from those defined opposite fits into the following sentences.**

1 I always buy roll-on rather than aerosol deodorants ever since I learnt how much more .... they are.
2 .... was much more common in the West than the USSR just as Mrs Thatcher was probably more popular outside the UK.
3 Most of my married friends think there's a lot to be said for ....
4 I don't think I'd like to try .... It sounds too dangerous to me.
5 They think that in the next ten years more and more people will start .... It should certainly ease traffic in the rush hours.
6 The size of London's .... seems to grow every time I go there. It sometimes seems as if the country is going backwards.
7 He's such a .... His only activity is pressing the remote control.
8 Many politicians now try to ensure they write some effective .... into their speeches.

99.3 **Many of the words on the opposite page will have a very short life. Pick out three that you think may be widely used still in ten years.**

99.4 **If you meet a new word it is often possible to work out its meaning from its context. Practise by explaining what the underlined words in the following sentences must mean.**

1 I very much prefer restaurants where there is no microwavery.
2 They're building a new cineplex on the edge of the town so we should be able to choose from a variety of films on Saturday nights.
3 Upskiing, which uses small parachutes, is a rapidly developing sport in the USA.
4 World AIDS Day was inspired by the health globocrats of the World Health Organisation.
5 He is writing a thesis on humorology.
6 The boss is very much a hands-on manager who likes to be involved in all aspects of the company's work.
7 Many large shops now have their own store cards.
8 The post-war baby-boomers are now becoming grandparents.

100 Discourse markers

Discourse markers are small words and phrases whose job it is to organise, comment on or in some way frame what we are saying or writing. A common everyday example is the use of **well** in speech:

A: So you live in Boston? B: **Well**, near Boston.

Well here shows that the speaker is aware he/she is changing the direction of the conversation in some way (not giving the expected 'yes' answer). In other words, **well** is a comment on what is being said. Another example is how teachers use words like **right** and **okay** to organise what is happening in a classroom:

Teacher: **Right/okay**, let's have a look at exercise 3.

A

Common markers to organise different stages of talk (as in the teacher example).

Now, what shall we do next? **So**, would you like to come to the table now, please?
Good, I'll ring you on Thursday, then. **Well then**, what was it you wanted to talk about?
Now then, I want you to look at this picture. [said by someone in control of the conversation, e.g. a teacher]
Fine/Great, let's leave it at that, then, shall we?

B

In these mini-dialogues, the markers in bold *modify* or *comment* on what is being said.

A: It's cold, isn't it?
B: Yeah.
A: **Mind you**, it is November, so it's not surprising.
[an afterthought – however]

A: What's her number?
B: **Let me see**, I have it here somewhere...
[a hesitation – gaining time]

A: It's quite a problem...
B: **Listen/Look**, why don't you let me sort it out?
A: Would you? Thanks a lot.
[introducing a suggestion/point]

A: And he said he was go –
B: Well, that's typical!
A: **Hang on / Hold on**! Let me tell you what he said!
[preventing an interruption]

Here are some other similar markers.
I can't do that. **You see**, I'm only the secretary. [explaining]
He was, **you know**, sort of... just standing there. [hesitation]

C

Common markers in written English for organising a formal text.

First / Firstly / First of all, we must consider... } for lists
Next, it is important to remember that... }
Finally/Lastly, we should look at... [NB *not* 'at last']
In summary, we can say that... [summing up the main points]
In conclusion, I should like to say that... [finishing the text]

D

Markers for explaining, rephrasing, etc., in speech and writing.

Memorising words requires reinforcement; **in other words / that is to say**, you have to study the same words over and over again.
Some words are hard to say, **for example / for instance**, 'crisps'.
She is, **as it were / so to speak**, living in a world of her own.
[make what you are saying sound less definite/precise]

Exercises

100.1 **Underline all the discourse markers in this monologue. Not all of them are on the left-hand page.**

'Well, where shall I start? It was last summer and we were just sitting in the garden, sort of doing nothing much. Anyway, I looked up and...see we have this kind of long wall at the end of the garden, and it's...like...a motorway for cats, for instance, that big fat black one you saw, well, that one considers it has a right of way over our vegetable patch, so...where was I? Yes, I was looking at that wall, you know, day-dreaming as usual, and all of a sudden there was this new cat I'd never seen before, or rather, it wasn't an ordinary cat at all...I mean, you'll never believe what it was...'

100.2 **Here are some small dialogues where there are no markers used at all, which would be unusual in real informal talk. Add markers from A, B and D opposite and from exercise 1 above, where you think the speakers might use them.**

1 A: Are you a football fan?
B: I like it; I wouldn't say I was a fan.

2 A: I'll take care of these.
B: That's everything.
A: See you next week.
B: That was a very useful meeting.

3 A: It was last Monday. I was coming home from work. I saw this ragged old man approaching me. I stopped him –
B: Jim Dibble!
A: Let me tell you what happened first.

4 A: Which number is yours?
B: (*pause*)...it's that one here, yes, this one.

5 A: He's looking exhausted.
B: Yes, he is.
A: He has an awful lot of responsibility, so it's hardly surprising.

6 A: What do you mean 'cold'?
B: She's not friendly, very distant. Last week I gave her a jolly smile and she...scowled at me.
A: What do you expect? I've seen the way you smile at people, it puts them off.

100.3 **Fill the gaps with markers often found in written texts. You may need some which are not on the left-hand page. The first letter of each phrase/word is given.**

Crime and Punishment

F.............. .... (1), it is important to understand why people commit crimes, i....... .... (2), what are the motives which make people do things they would never normally do? F............ .... (3), a young man steals clothes from a shop; is it because he is unemployed? a drug addict? mentally disturbed? N..................... (4) it is essential to consider whether punishment makes any difference, or is it just, a .... (5), a kind of revenge? L......................... (6), how can we help victims of crime? I................. .... (7), how can we get to the roots of the problem, rather than just attacking the symptoms?

Follow-up: **If you can, make a recording of a natural conversation between native speakers (get their permission, but don't say why you need it). What markers do they use?**

Key

Many of your answers will depend on your own particular interests and needs. It is only possible for the key to suggest answers in some cases.

Unit 1

A 1 d 2 b 3 b 4 a

B 1 *Some possible answers:*
- a) a chilly day
- b) to dissuade someone from doing something
- c) a popular **king** / to crown a **king**
- d) **up** to the ears in work
- e) **independent** of someone / an **independent** country
- f) **get married** to someone

2 a) scissors – only used in plural; if you want to count scissors, you have to say, for example, 'two pairs of scissors'.
- b) weather – uncountable
- c) teach, taught, taught; teach someone to do something; teach someone French.
- d) advice – uncountable; a piece of advice; verb = to advise (regular).
- e) lose, lost, lost
- f) trousers – only used in plural; if you want to count **trousers** you have to say, for example, 'three pairs of **trousers**'.

3 a) The 'b' in **comb** is silent, as it is in **tomb** and **lamb** too.
- b) The final 'e' in **catastrophe** is pronounced as a syllable as it is in **apostrophe**. **Catastrophe**, has 4 syllables. (See Index for pronunciation)
- c) The stress is on the first syllable in **photograph**, and on the second syllable in **photographer**; it is on the third syllable in **photographical**. The 'rule' is that the stress in long words in English very frequently falls on the third syllable from the end of the word.

D The picture is a good clue to help you understand **tortoise**. You may recognise the word **shell** in shelled (as in **egg shell**, for example). Similarly, your knowledge of **life** and **long** together with the context should enable you to work out what **lifespan** and **longevity** mean. The whole context of the sentence should help you to work out the meaning of tended. Some of the underlined words may be similar to words in your own language which can be another useful way of working out the meaning of a word you have not seen before.

E Research into language learning can help you to prepare a sensible vocabulary learning plan. What you plan to do will, of course, depend very much on your own circumstances. You cannot realistically aim to learn as many new words a day if you are working a full day at something else as if you are doing a full-time English course. In general, however, 10 to 20 words a week is probably a reasonable aim.

It does not matter where you try to learn vocabulary but it seems to be better to do a little on a regular basis rather than a lot infrequently. Research also suggests that it is a good idea to revise your work on a very regular basis – once a week, perhaps, but do not revise only the words that you've learnt in that week. Look back over your work of the previous month(s).

Unit 2

A 1 *Possible words to add:* **purr, scratch, tomcat, tail** and **whiskers**

2 a) **Child, tooth** and **ox** are all words with irregular plurals (**children, teeth, oxen**). You could add more examples, e.g. **mouse (mice)**; **goose** (**geese**); **foot** (**feet**); **phenomenon** (**phenomena**).

b) **Cut**, **split** and **burst** are all irregular verbs whose three basic forms are identical to each other (i.e. **cut, cut, cut**; **split, split, split** and **burst, burst, burst**). You could add **put, hurt** and set to this group.

c) **Information**, **furniture** and **food** are all uncountable nouns – you could add **milk, money** and **work** to this group.

3 *Possible words and expressions to add:*
a) **pricey, underpriced, price tag** b) **to lend someone a hand**, a **handful**; a **handbag, underhand**, etc.

B 1 *Possible word tree for* school:

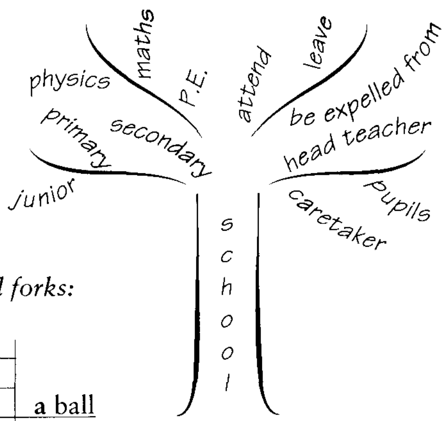

2 *Possible ways to complete the word forks:*

magnificent		kick	
breathtaking		hit	
superb	views	throw	a ball
stunning		catch	
splendid		bounce	

3 a) drive b) fly c) Riding

Unit 3

3.1 The list is probably connected to a lesson or lessons about time or a text about someone's relationship with time. A possible organisation might include bringing the **clock** words together in a word-map or bubble diagram (**clock, wristwatch, hands, minute-hand**); other words could then be added later (**hour-hand, face/dial, digital**, etc.)

Tell the time and **What time do you make it?** could form a separate list of 'time phrases', to which others could be added, e.g. **Have you got the time?**, **My watch is fast/slow**, etc. **Drowsy** and **wide awake** could be treated as antonyms, and some notes about the usage of **beneath** and **under** would be useful. The list could have information about word-class too.

3.2 **Theatre** seems the obvious word.

3.3 Other testing systems include re-entering any word you have difficulty remembering, so that it appears more than once in the notebook. Another useful discipline is to set yourself a small, fixed number of words to memorise each week, e.g. 20, and to tick them off in the book as you do them. You could also take out any ten words from your book and put them on individual slips of paper which you stick in prominent places around your room or house, e.g. on the fridge door, so that you are regularly looking at them.

3.4

noun	*verb*	*adjective*	*person*
production	produce	productive	producer
industry	industrialise	industrial	industrialist
export	export	export	exporter

Note the change in stress from **export** (noun) to **export** (verb); adjective: **export**, e.g. Our export figures have increased; person: **exporter**.

Unit 4

4.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 style situation people
2 mean be know
3 informal colloquial suitable
4 extremely mainly frequently
5 of by for

4.2 Obviously your answers here depend on how you answered 4.1. If you chose the same words as we did, then your answers to 4.2 will be as follows:

style *C* situation *C* people *U* (Remember that it needs a plural verb.)
mean *T, R* be *IT, IR* know *T, IR*

4.3

verb	*infinitive*	*-ing form*	*past participle*
define	define	defining	defined
mean	mean	meaning	meant
write	write	writing	written

4.4
1 root – *form* prefix – *in* suffix – *al*
2 formal
3 casual e.g. of dress
4 form, formality, formless, deform, reform, reformation and so on.
5 a) an informal occasion
b) We use a more informal kind of English when we speak than when we write.

4.5 syllable onomatopoeia register colloquial pejorative collocation comma semi-colon apostrophe (note that there are four syllables in **apostrophe**) hyphen exclamation mark question mark brackets inverted commas capitals

4.6 1 converse 2 lavatory 3 man 4 tolerate 5 violin

4.7 1 terrorist 2 skinny 3 wordy 4 mean 5 cunning 6 extravagant

4.8 *Some possible answers:*

countable *or* abstract noun; unfamiliar *or* polysyllabic word;
colloquial expression *or* colloquial language.

4.9

( )	brackets	?	question mark	’	apostrophe
;	semi-colon	–	dash	-	hyphen
,	comma	“ ”	inverted commas		

Unit 5

5.2
1 All the words are possible. Some people feel that **sofa and couch** are a bit ‘lower class’, and that settee is the so-called ‘refined, middle-class’ word. **Divan** could also be used, but its normal British English meaning is a kind of bed with a very thick base. It can also, less commonly, mean a kind of sofa with no back or arms.
2 **Luxury** most typically collocates with **yacht**, though **ketch** (a double-masted sailing ship) would also be possible. A **dinghy** is a very small, open boat, hardly suitable for going around the world. **Sailing boat** sounds just too general here, since it covers all types of boats with sails.

3 **Wellingtons** is the most likely word, since they are rubber boots designed to keep the water out. **Boots** are any kind of high-sided footwear. **Bootees** suggests a kind of ankle-length shoe, fairly lightweight, usually with fur inside for cold weather, often referring to what babies wear.

4 **Dinghy** would be a good word here (see 2 above), though **sailing boat** would also fit, as it's quite general.

5.3 1 3 2 **1.1** 3 4 4 **1.1**

5.4 1 education 2 passport 3 length 4 liberty 5 revision 6 brother

There is no key for Unit 6.

Unit 7

7.1
1 **kip** – to sleep / have a sleep
2 **a pal** – a friend; nowadays, **mate** is perhaps the most common informal word for 'friend' in British English
3 a **chap** – a man; **chap** does have associations of being a middle-class word and perhaps not used so much by young people
4 **cheerio** – goodbye; **bye** and **ta-ta** (pron: /tə tɑː/) are also common, **ta-ta** being the most informal
5 **swot** – study hard, e.g. for an exam; you can call someone a **swot** too
6 **ta** – thank you, or (slightly less formal) thanks
7 **brainy** – clever / intelligent; intelligent is the most formal.

7.2 *Suggested changes:*

JIM: Annie, can you lend me five **quid**?
ANNIE: What for?
JIM: Well, I'**ve got** to go and see my mum and dad, and my **bike**'s not working, so I'll have to **take/get a taxi.**
ANNIE: Can't you **phone/ring/call** them and say you can't come?
JIM: Well, I could, except I want to go because they always have lots of food, and the **fridge** at our flat (or 'our place', which is a common way of talking about your house/flat) is empty, as usual.
ANNIE: Can't you **get the / go by tube**?
JIM: Erm...
ANNIE: Anyway, the answer's no.

For the sake of practice, we have created here a dialogue that probably has more of a concentration of informal words than would occur in reality. Don't forget the advice given at the beginning of the unit about using too much informal language.

7.3
1 A teenage boy would probably say a **date** (or 'Fancy **going out**?'), not an **appointment** in this situation; **appointment** is for business contexts; too formal.
2 **Offspring**, if the parent used it, would be heard as humorous, certainly not the normal word for this situation; **children** or **kids** (informal) would be the normal words. **Offspring** would be suitable for legal contexts, religious language and serious history books/biographies; too formal.
3 As with 2, this would be heard as humorous/mock-serious. Most people would say 'I never drink' or 'I never touch alcohol' in this situation. **Alcoholic beverages** is very formal/legalistic and you might see it on, e.g. a notice prohibiting drinking in a particular place or the sale of drink at particular times; too formal.

4 Probably acceptable. People who work together or share an institutional context often develop a high degree of acceptable informality. Such is often the case in British universities and colleges. In such institutional settings, clippings and other short forms are widely used by everyone and operate as a sort of slang among the people involved, and are not heard as disrespectful.

5 The use of ads here sounds out of place compared with the formal tone of the rest of the letter ('Dear Sir/Madam... I should like to enquire... etc.'), so it is too informal. Over the phone, however, the same person might well say 'Could you tell me how much it'd cost to put an ad in your paper?' in order to create a friendly relationship with the person answering the call.

7.4
1 in motion
2 to alight
3 a) to regret b) to purchase c) to address
4 Hi! Bye!

7.5 *Suggested versions:*

1 Children shouldn't / are asked not to drop rubbish/litter in the play-area.
2 You can only get your expenses/money back if you've got / if you hand in receipts with the date on.

Unit 8

8.1
1 windscreen wiper(s)
2 classical violinist
3 professional photographer (pron: photographer)
4 amateur actor
5 payee
6 dishwasher (normally written as one word)
7 kidney donor
8 addressee

8.2
1 stapler
2 grinder
3 can-opener (or tin-opener)
4 nail-clipper
5 coat-hanger

8.4
1 a cooker – a thing (the stove on which you cook); the person who cooks is a **cook**.
2 a typewriter – a thing (machine for typing); the person is a typist.
3 a ticket-holder – person or thing; a person who has a ticket, e.g. for a concert, or a kind of wallet for holding tickets, e.g. a season ticket for the train/bus.
4 a record player – a thing (machine for playing records).
5 a cleaner – person or thing; person who cleans, e.g. in an office or other place of work; a substance or instrument for cleaning, e.g. 'this cleaner will get the grease off your oven'.
6 a smoker – person or thing; a person who smokes; a short name for a seat in the smoking area of a plane or train (or the whole smoking compartment on a train).
7 a drinker – person (someone who drinks alcohol, usually regularly or in large quantities).

8.5
1 forgivable
2 admission
3 laziness
4 productive
5 readable

8.7
1 neighbourhood – it is a place (an area); all the others refer to human relationships.
2 step-ladder – all the others means 'thing for doing x', e.g. hair-restorer restores your hair, a plant-holder holds a plant, etc.
3 compliment – all the others are verb + 'ment', e.g. appoint + ment. There is no verb 'compli'.
4 handful – all the others are adjectives; **handful** is a noun, meaning a pile of something about as big as you can hold in your hands, e.g. a handful of sand.
5 worship – all the others are kinds of human relationships; **Worship** refers to paying tribute to a God, or, figuratively, as a verb, to loving someone very very much, e.g. 'he worships his teacher'.

Unit 9

9.1
1 indiscreet
2 insensitive
3 unconvincing
4 irrelevant
5 disobedient
6 inefficient
7 irresponsible
8 ungrateful
9 disloyal
10 intolerant

9.2
1 unmarried
2 inedible
3 illiterate
4 unemployed
5 impartial
6 irreplaceable

9.3
1 unwrapping
2 disagree
3 disprove
4 unveiled
5 to unload
6 disconnected

9.4
1 microwave
2 antibiotic
3 multi-national
4 on auto-pilot
5 postgraduate
6 subway

9.5
1 mispronouncing
2 are overworked but underpaid
3 post-dated his cheque
4 her ex-husband
5 rewrite it

9.6 *Other examples:*

prefix	*examples*	*prefix*	*examples*
anti	anti-government antiseptic	over	overrun overcharge
auto	autocue automobile	post	post-colonial post-industrial
bi	bi-plane bi-focals	pro	pro-Iranian pro-nuclear
ex	ex-flatmate ex-partner	pseudo	pseudo-democracy pseudo-liberal
ex	express extort	re	rephrase redefine
micro	micro-chip microprocessor	semi	semi-literate semi-conscious
mis	misspell mislead	sub	sub-editor sub-human
mono	monorail monosyllable	under	underachieve underweight
multi	multi-cultural multi-faceted		

Unit 10

10.1 The stress is on the underlined syllable in each of the words in the table.

verb	*person noun*	*adjective*	*abstract noun*
convert	convert	converted	conversion
produce	producer	productive	production, produce, product, productivity
conduct	conductor	conducive	conduct, conduction
impress	–	impressive	impression
support	supporter	supportive	support
impose	–	imposing	imposition

10.2
1 oppressive
2 was deported
3 advertisements
4 introduce
5 inspector(s)
6 introductory
7 to advertise
8 composed

10.3 1 It isn't easy to find synonyms for these words; the meaning is as follows: 'She spends a lot of time thinking about her own thoughts and feelings and so does he; he's quite shy and not very talkative.'
2 argue against
3 training
4 hold back
5 work out
6 made public
7 hold down
8 put...into an appropriate form

10.4 *Some possibilities:*
spect – circumspect behaviour; a retrospective exhibition; a fresh perspective.
vert – an extroverted person; inverted commas; to pervert the innocent.
port – a railway porter; reported speech; transportation costs.
duc, duct – to reduce taxes, to induce labour; a railway viaduct.
press – blood pressure; compressed air; an original expression.
pose, pone – to pose for a photograph; to suppose something to be true; to repose peacefully.

10.5 support – hold up
reduce – cut down
postpone – put off
deposit – put down
oppose – go against
divert – turn away
inspect – look at

Unit 11

11.1
1 affection
2 excitement
3 kindness
4 security
5 amusement
6 grace
7 originality
8 stupidity
9 attentiveness
10 happiness
11 popularity
12 weakness
13 equality
14 hope
15 resentment
16 wisdom

11.2 *Some possible answers:*

There are many more possibilities for the B suffixes but not many for the C ones.

B *-ment* (un) employment entertainment involvement requirement
-ion diversion attraction direction rejection
-ness awkwardness foolishness loveliness madness
-ity brutality familiarity productivity superiority

C *- dom* dukedom earldom
-ship citizenship chairmanship sponsorship championship
-th growth wealth stealth
-hood babyhood nationhood

11.3
1 hostility or aggressiveness
2 amazement
3 curiosity
4 brotherhood
5 replacement
6 stardom
7 reduction
8 neighbourhood
9 sight
10 freedom
11 rage
12 prosperity

11.4

abstract noun	*adjective*	*verb*	*adverb*
contentment	content(ed)	to content	contentedly
argument	argumentative	to argue	arguably
emptiness	empty	to empty	emptily
intensity	intense	to intensify	intensely
satisfaction	satisfied, satisfactory	to satisfy	satisfactorily
sentiment	sentimental	to sentimentalise	sentimentally
strength	strong	to strengthen	strongly

11.5 1 Jealousy 2 Happiness 3 Hope 4 Love 5 permanence; beauty
('Coke' in question 2 means the fuel produced while taking gas from coal. A migraine is a very bad headache.)

11.6 How you answer this question is a matter of your own originality. Here are some 'real' quotations about these abstract nouns, however:

1 Freedom is an indivisible word. If we want to enjoy it, and to fight for it, we must be prepared to extend it to everyone.
2 Friendship is unnecessary, like philosophy, like art... It has no survival value; rather it is one of those things that gives value to survival.
3 Life is a foreign language; all men mispronounce it.
4 Four be the things I'd be better without:
Love, curiosity, freckles and doubt.
5 Where there is no imagination, there is no horror.

Unit 12

Note that when you are looking compound adjectives up in the dictionary, you may sometimes find the word listed under its second element rather than its first. Sometimes, in some dictionaries, the word will not be listed at all if the meaning is absolutely clear from an understanding of the two elements.

Notice that the descriptions of Tom and Melissa on the left-hand page are light-hearted and far-fetched! They are not examples of good style as such long lists of adjectives would be inappropriate in a normal composition.

12.1 *Some possible answers:*

1 brown
bright-eyed
wide
2 fool
dust-proof
fire
3 broad
narrow-minded
single
4 polo
low-necked
high
5 British
ready-made
home
6 tax
problem-free
care
7 hot
pig-headed
bald
8 kind
soft-hearted
hard

12.2 Here is one possible way of categorising the words. There will be many other ways of categorising them. What is important is not how you categorise them but the process of doing the exercise itself. The process should help you to learn the words.

Words connected with money: cut-price duty-free interest-free
Words connected with comfort, safety and convenience: air-conditioned drip-dry hand-made remote-controlled sugar-free bullet-proof
Words connected with time: last-minute long-standing off-peak part-time record-breaking time-consuming
Words often connected with travelling: long-distance second-class
Words often used to describe people: so-called world-famous
Odd man out: top-secret!

12.3 *Some examples:*

self-assured *P* self-satisfied *N* self-confident *P* self-conscious *N*
self-seeking *N* self-possessed *P* self-indulgent *N* self-employed *neutral*
self-evident *neutral* self-sufficient *neutral* self-willed *N* self-effacing *N*

12.4 1 No, she's long-sighted.
2 No, he's hard-up (or badly-off).
3 No, he's badly-behaved.
4 No, they're flat-heeled/low-heeled.
5 No, it's hand-made.
6 No, in the north-west.

12.5 *Some possible answers:*

air-conditioned car/room
bullet-proof car/vest
cut-price clothes/sale
drip-dry shirt/sheets
duty-free perfume/cigarettes
hand-made clothes/chocolates
interest-free credit/loan
last-minute preparations/arrival
long-distance train/runner
long-standing arrangement/relationship
off-peak travel/viewing
part-time work/job
record-breaking performance/jump
remote-controlled TV/toy
second-class ticket/citizen
so-called expert/specialist
sugar-free diet/coca cola
time-consuming work/preparations
top-secret information/file
world-famous film star/novelist

12.6 1 up 2 on 3 back 4 off 5 of 6 out

Unit 13

13.1 Here are words which would fit appropriately into the networks suggested.

money	*health*	*social problems*
luxury goods	blood donor	race relations
book token	heart attack	human rights
credit card	contact lens	arms race
burglar alarm	birth control	brain drain
income tax	blood pressure	death penalty
mail order	hay fever	generation gap
pocket money	food poisoning	greenhouse effect
	junk food	welfare state
		air traffic control

13.2 Blood pressure and blood donor; air traffic control and birth control.

Here are some possible answers for this question. There are some other possibilities also. Check with a dictionary or a teacher if you are not sure whether your answers are correct or not.

1 record token
2 junk mail
3 sound bite
4 blood ties
5 teapot
6 mother country
7 inheritance tax
8 word-processing
9 level-crossing
10 footlights
11 food-processor
12 rat-race

13.3

1 pedestrian crossing
2 the greenhouse effect
3 hay fever
4 the arms race
5 air traffic control
6 contact lens
7 the death penalty
8 package holiday
9 handcuffs

13.4 *Suggested sentences:*

1 'I always like getting one of these so that I can choose the music I like myself.' (a record token)
2 'I get an enormous amount through the post these days.' (junk mail)
3 'They say these are thicker than water.' (blood ties)
4 'I can't understand how people find sport in killing.' (blood sports)
5 'He couldn't stand it any longer and went to be self-sufficient on a Scottish island.' (the rat-race)
6 'They had a huge amount to pay after their father died.' (inheritance tax)
7 'It is so much more efficient than using a typewriter.' (word-processing)

Unit 14

14.1
1 queue of traffic
2 burglaries
3 attempt to conceal information
4 obstacle in the way of progress
5 delay to traffic
6 escape

14.2 *Some possible answers:*
1 radioactive fallout
2 nervous breakdown
3 computer printout
4 annual turnover
5 final output (or outcome)
6 sales outlets
7 positive feedback
8 drastic cutbacks

14.3
1 takeover
2 shake-up
3 walkout
4 input
5 BREAK-OUT
6 check-out
7 outbreak
8 pin-ups

14.4
1 write
2 hand
3 work; press
4 write
5 clear
6 hold
7 turn
8 lie

14.5
1 **Outlook** means prospect whereas a **look-out** is a person watching out for an enemy or danger.
2 **Set-up** means organisation whereas **upset** means disturbance.
3 **Outlet** means place where something is released whereas **let-out** means way of escaping from a difficult situation.
4 **Outlay** means amount of money spent on something whereas **layout** means the way something is arranged, e.g. the **layout** of a page or a room.

Unit 15

15.2 *Possible answers:*
inventions network: saxophone biro braille
(**watt** might also fit here as might some of the clothes illustrated)

politics network: machiavellian boycott pamphlet

15.3
1 wellingtons (wellies); mackintosh (mac)
2 saxophone
3 bedlam
4 boycott
5 cashmere or angora

15.4 *Some possible answers:*
1 rowdy, terrible
2 political, free
3 large, wide-brimmed
4 dark-eyed, wild
5 black, lycra
6 red, chewed

15.5
1 suede boots/jacket
2 machiavellian policy/plan
3 spartan furnishings/atmosphere
4 tawdry goods/clothes

15.6 *Some possible endings for the sentences:*
1 ...to her every whim.
2 ...the wind was getting cooler.
3 ...round the field.
4 ...the Olympic Games.
5 ...very hot to wear.

15.7
1 A **herculean effort** is a major effort, one that demands a lot of strength and the word **herculean** comes from the name of the mythical Greek hero, Hercules, who was famed for his strength.
2 A **platonic friendship** is one between a man and a woman based on affection but with no sexual element (from the name of the Greek philosopher, Plato).

3 A **teddy bear,** the name given to the soft stuffed bear which is a popular child's toy, comes from Theodore Roosevelt, the American president. A hunter of bears, Roosevelt was once said to have saved a young bear cub. The story was illustrated by a cartoon in the Washington Post and the toy bears drew their name from the pet form of Theodore.

4 A **jersey**, meaning sweater or jumper, comes from the name of one of the Channel Islands, Jersey, well-known for its knitting.

5 **Caesarean section** is a surgical operation to remove a baby from its mother's womb. The name originates from the name of the Roman Emperor, Julius Caesar, who was reputedly born in this way.

6 **July**, the month, is also named after Julius Caesar.

7 **A bottle of champagne** is named after Champagne, the region of France where this particular type of sparkling wine is made.

8 An **atlas** or book of maps is named after the Greek mythological Titan, Atlas, who as a punishment for attempting to overthrow Zeus was condemned to support the world on his shoulders. One of the first atlases, that produced by Mercator in the late 16th Century, had a picture of Atlas on its cover.

9 Like many other plants – camellia, dahlia, freesia, begonia and so on – **magnolia** takes its name from a person. **Magnolia** comes from the French botanist, Pierre Magnol, who devised a system of classifying plants.

Unit 16

16.3 *Some words which fit most obviously into the networks suggested:*

food	*politics*	*the arts*	*animals*
yoghurt	embargo	avant-garde	mosquito
cuisine	junta	piano	poodle
gateau	guerrilla	soprano	dachshund
spaghetti	coup	ballerina	rottweiler
frankfurter	ombudsman	easel	mammoth
hamburger	perestroika	balalaika	lemming
marmalade			dodo
delicatessen			lasso
bistro			jackal
aubergine			
sauté			
sherbet			

16.4 *Other networks could include:*

clothes: anorak yashmak caftan shawl
things in the house: futon mattress alcove carafe duvet bidet patio
sports and hobbies: origami judo karate caravan kayak ski slalom yacht easel waltz casino snorkel
geographical features: fjord floe tundra steppe

16.5
1 right-wing coup
2 prima ballerina
3 strawberry yoghurt
4 ice floe
5 Chinese cuisine
6 long-sleeved caftan
7 total embargo
8 long-standing vendetta
9 noisy kindergarten
10 cosy duvet
11 all-night casino

16.6
1 practise karate
2 paddle a kayak
3 wear mufti
4 place an embargo
5 be a guerrilla
6 live in a cul de sac
7 attempt a coup
8 throw confetti
9 have a siesta
10 go on / take a cruise
11 take/have a sauna
12 attend/give/hold a seminar

16.7 macho man/behaviour/clothes; avant-garde art/design/furniture

Unit 17

17.2 *Some possible answers:*

gr: **grizzle** and **grudge**, both have rather unpleasant meanings – **grizzle** is to cry because of bad temper rather than pain or discomfort and **grudge** is to be unwilling to give or do something.

cl: **clap** or **clatter**, both represent quite sharp sounds – **clap** is to applaud with your hands and **clatter** is to make a long, continuous resounding noise like hard metallic things falling on a hard surface.

sp: **spatter** or **spill** both have an association with liquid or powder – **spatter** means to splash or scatter in drips, **spill** means to knock over something liquid.

wh: **whirl** and **whisk** both have associations with the movement of air – **whirl** means to move quickly round and round and **whisk** means move or sweep quickly through the air.

17.3
1 click
2 whirred
3 sizzling
4 clinked
5 crash
6 groaned
7 splashing
8 trickling

17.4
1 spit (spat, spat)
2 grumpy
3 spit (a spit is a long, thin metal spike on which meat is put for roasting)

17.5
1 splosh – colloquial form of splash
2 gargle – wash the throat with liquid kept moving by a stream of breath
3 rustle – make a gentle light sound like dry leaves in the wind or silk clothes moving
4 mumble – speak softly and indistinctly
5 creaks – make a sound like that of an unoiled door hinge
6 whacked – hit hard

17.6
1 a gash in someone's arm
2 a referee whistling
3 someone bashing something
4 someone spraying their hair
5 someone sprinkling sugar on a cake
6 water spurting out of the ground

17.7
schoolchildren giggle fire crackles the bell on a cat's collar tinkles
a bad-tempered person or dog growls a bored child wriggles a churchbell clangs
a steam train whistles a prisoner's chain clanks someone with asthma wheezes

Unit 18

18.1
1 They sang a psalm to honour the memory of the world-famous psychologist as she was laid to rest in the family tomb. (Note that although the 'r' in 'world' is not really pronounced, in Standard British English, it affects the way the word is pronounced.)
2 The psychiatrist was knifed in the knee as he was walking home.
3 He should have whistled as he fastened his sword to his belt. (Note that the 'h' in 'have' is not really pronounced when following an auxiliary verb as in this sentence and the next one.)
4 You could have left me half the Christmas cake on Wednesday.

18.2 The odd one out appears first.

1 worry /ʌ/ sorry, lorry /ɒ/
2 word /ɜː/ sword, cord /ɔː/
3 dome /əʊ/ come, some /ʌ/
4 plead /iː/ head, tread /e/
5 could /ʊ/ doubt, shout /aʊ/
6 plough /aʊ/ rough, tough /ʌ/
7 wand /ɒ/ land, sand /æ/
8 root /uː/ soot, foot /ʊ/

18.3 1 cup 2 allow 3 now 4 threw 5 off 6 go

18.4
1 transfer; transferring
2 suspected; suspect
3 conflicting; conflict
4 upset; upset
5 increased; decrease
6 permit; permits
7 record; record
8 conduct; conducting

18.5
1 muscle
2 catastrophe
3 handkerchief
4 chemical
5 subtle
6 receipt
7 height
8 recipe

18.6
1 photograph, photography, photographer, photographically
2 telephone, telephonist
3 zoology, zoologist, zoological
4 arithmetic, arithmetical, arithmetician
5 psychology, psychologist, psychological
6 psychiatry, psychiatric, psychiatrist

18.7 Keep this question in mind as you continue with your English studies. Whenever you come across a word whose pronunciation seems strange, write it down with its phonetic transcription too.

Unit 19

19.1
1 The girl I live (give) with knows a good pub with live (dive) music.
2 The main house (mouse) houses (rouse) a collection of rare stamps.
3 They bathed (path) the children after they had bathed (lathe) in the sea.
4 You sow (glow) the seeds while I feed the sow. (cow)
5 The violinist in the bow (flow) tie made a bow. (allow)
6 He's the lead (deed) singer in the group 'Lead (head) piping'.
7 What a row (plough) from the last house in the row! (though)
8 Does he still suffer from his war wound? (mooned)
9 I wound (round) the rope around the tree to strengthen it against the gale.
10 It's quite hard to wind (find) in the sails in this wind. (tinned)

19.2
1 waste
2 sole
3 pane
4 heir
5 allowed
6 practise
7 through; phase
8 peel

19.3 *Possible answers:*

1 They're going to take **their** aunt to have dinner **there** this evening.
2 **It's** the first time the car has left **its** garage this year.
3 Let's **practise** with these grammar exercises first and then do some vocabulary **practice.**
4 It's **great** to see such a lovely fire burning in the **grate.**
5 Don't **whine** so much, just because the **wine's** finished.
6 He has **sought** a job of this **sort** for ages.
7 The archaeological **site** was a marvellous **sight** at sunset.
8 Let us **pray** that we may never be **prey** to evil thoughts.
9 Although she was a little **hoarse,** it did not put her off **horse** riding in the snow.
10 The beautiful sight of the moon's **rays** reflected in the lake did a great deal to **raise** her spirits.

Note: Most sentences in 'real' English avoid using homophones as they are confusing.

19.4 1 You're too young to smoke.
This is a play on words on the two meanings of **smoke** – to smoke a cigarette and a fire or chimney smokes (i.e give out smoke).

2 I think I'm going down with something.
This is a play on words on two meanings of **going down**. There is the literal meaning go down (descend) and then there is the expression, 'go down with an illness', which means be at the start of an attack of that illness.

3 Let's play draughts.
This is a play on words on the two meanings of **draughts**. One is the game played with round counters and a chess board and the other is a current of air as in 'There's a terrible draught coming from under the door'.

4 He wanted to draw the curtains.
This is a play on words on two meanings of **draw**. The first means make a picture and the second means pull.

5 Because it's full of dates.
This is a play on words on the two meanings of dates. One refers to 1066, 1892 and all that and the other to a sweet fruit coming from a kind of palm tree or to an evening spent together by two people (usually romantic).

6 A drum takes a lot of beating.
This is a play on words on two meanings of **beating**. A drummer beats a drum. There is also an expression, 'takes a lot of beating' which means 'is hard to improve on'.

7 Because it's got a tender behind.
This is a play on words on two meanings of two words – **tender** and **behind**. **Tender** can mean either susceptible to pain, or a wagon for fuel and water behind a steam locomotive. **Behind** is normally, of course, a preposition but it can also be an informal noun meaning 'bottom', as in the part of the body that a person sits on.

8 A nervous wreck.
A **wreck** is a boat or ship that, for example, hits a rock and sinks to the bottom of the sea. A **nervous wreck**, however, is an expression commonly used to describe someone who is extremely nervous.

Unit 20

20.1
1 Prior
2 Till then
3 By the time
4 While/When
5 Previously/Earlier
6 As soon as
7 When/Once/After
8 The moment/minute

Other possible sentences:

While she was in Paris, she missed home a lot.
She went to the theatre **after** she'd been to the Pompidou Centre.
While driving home from Glasgow, she saw a bad accident on the motorway.
Prior to going on to Glasgow, she was in Manchester.

20.2 *Possible answers:*
1 ... I usually dream a lot.
2 ... I usually feel guilty and go on a diet for a while.
3 ... look at the clock to see what time it is.
4 ... lived in the same house.
5 ... reading a story.
6 ... go back home and look for a job.
7 ... double-check that everything is booked.
8 ... upset and want to make it up as soon as possible.

Unit 21

21.1
1 **as long as / providing / provided that** are all okay; **on condition that** is fine too, and sounds a little stronger.
2 **In case of**; you can also say **In the event of**, which is often seen in notices and regulations.
3 **Unless**
4 Since this is legal/official language **on condition that** would be very suitable, or **providing / provided that**; **so long as** is also possible, but **as long as** sounds just a little too informal.
5 **Supposing** or **What if** (less tentative, more direct).

21.2 *Suggested sentences:*
1 You cannot enter unless you have an Entry Visa. *or* You may enter providing / provided that you have an Entry Visa.
2 You may go on to university as long as you get 70% or more in the exam. *or* Unless you get 70%, you cannot go on to university.
3 You can't come in unless you're over 18. *or* You may enter the club providing you are over 18.
4 Visitors may enter the mosque on condition that they remove their shoes. *or* You may go in as long as you take off your shoes.

21.3
1 No matter where she goes, she always takes that dog of hers.
2 If anyone rings, I don't want to speak to them, whoever it is.
3 Whatever I do, I always seem to do the wrong thing.
4 It'll probably have meat in it, no matter which dish you choose. They don't cater for non-meat eaters here.
5 However I do it, that recipe never seems to work.

21.4 *Some possible answers:*
1 For the authors of this book, who are teachers, the prerequisites are a degree and a teaching qualification.
2 Many people might move if they were offered a good job in another part of the country, or if a motorway was going to be built at the bottom of their garden!
3 In Britain, the normal entry requirements are A-level exam passes in relevant subjects. (A-levels are exams taken at 18 years old.)
4 For most people it would be a good idea to make the condition that the person should pay for any breakages, keep the place clean and perhaps pay coal/gas/oil/electricity and phone bills.

Unit 22

22.1 *Suggested answers:*
1 The announcement **provoked/generated** a strong attack from the opposition.
2 The new Act of Parliament has **brought about / led** to great changes in industry.
3 The train crash was **caused by / due** to a signalling fault.
4 A violent storm **caused** the wall to collapse. *or* **Owing** to a violent storm, the wall collapsed.
5 The food shortages **sparked** off riots in several cities.
6 The food shortages **stemmed from / arose out of** poor management of the economy.

22.2
1 The reason I didn't contact you was (because) I'd lost your phone number. *or* My reason for not contacting you was... (this is also acceptable, but sounds more formal).
2 I will not sign, on the grounds that this contract is illegal.
3 The aim of the new law the government passed was to control prices. *or* The government passed a new law with the aim of / with a view to controlling prices.
4 I wonder what her motives were in sending everyone flowers.
5 The high salary prompted her to apply for the job.

22.3 *Possible answers:*

1 There were awful blizzards, which caused the road to be blocked.
2 Owing to the fact that the performance was cancelled, everyone got a refund.
3 The service was terribly slow. Consequently, all the customers got angry.
4 We missed the last bus. As a result we had to walk home.

22.4 1 for 2 of 3 with; of 4 in 5 out of 6 with; to 7 given; to

Unit 23

23.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 I accept (or more formal: I acknowledge) that you weren't solely to blame, but you must take *some* responsibility. (**Accept** and **acknowledge** are most suitable here since the speaker is prepared to agree with one aspect but wants to go on to make another point to support his/her case.)

2 Okay, I admit I was wrong, you were right; he *is* a nice guy. (This seems to be a situation where somebody is accusing someone or trying to get them to say they were wrong. **Admit** is ideal in this case.)

3 The company acknowledges that you have suffered some delay, but we do not accept liability. (**Acknowledge** is perhaps best here; it is often used in formal, legalistic situations like this because it simply says 'We understand your message, but we do *not* necessarily accept any blame/responsibility'; **admit** might suggest the company *does* accept legal responsibility; **accept** is also possible though less formal.)

4 She accepted / conceded that we had done all we could, but she was still not content. (**Concede** usually suggests an argument or debate where people might 'give' small points to one another while still holding on to their basic position, and would seem to be a likely choice here; **concede** here suggests she did not really want to say it.)

23.2 *Possible answers:*

2 The house itself is rather small.
3 Jim: Isn't the *Plaza* rather expensive?
4 In most of the rest of Europe, the traffic drives on the right. (Ireland also drives on the left.)
5 I'm not at all hungry, thanks.

23.3

Across	Down
1 yawning	2 apart
3 world	4 divide
5 huge	6 gap
7 poles	

Possible comments using the phrases:

1 There's a great divide between those who believe in the nuclear deterrent, and those who believe in world disarmament.
2 There's a huge discrepancy between what she says and what she does.
3 Jim and Sandra are poles apart when it comes to believing in God.
4 There's a world of difference between being a student and being a teacher.

23.4 *Suggested answers:*

1 that's all well and good
2 After all
3 for all that
4 It's all very well

23.5 1 on the contrary (it's *not* true that I'm worried)
2 on the other hand (it *is* true that it's expensive)

Unit 24

24.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 Further to
2 In addition to / As well as / Apart from / Besides
3 etc. / and so on
4 in addition to / as well as / apart from / besides
5 Furthermore / Moreover / Likewise

Comments: In (2) and (4), the choice is quite wide, but, depending on which one she chooses for (2), the writer would probably then choose a different one, to avoid repeating herself, for (4).

In (5), if she wanted to use what's more, the writer would probably write it in full as **what is more**, so as not to sound too informal. However, **what's more / what is more** can often sound a little abrupt and argumentative (as if you're trying very hard to convince the reader) and might sound just a bit too strong here.

In (3), **etc.** is slightly more formal than **and so on**, and the writer may well wish to avoid sounding too informal.

In (5), **furthermore / moreover** add her previous experience on to the rest; **likewise** not only adds the information but suggests it is of quite equal value to the other experience she has mentioned. **Equally** would not be suitable here, as it is best used when arguing points (trying to convince someone of the equal value of a point added on to other points).

24.2
1 Physical labour can exhaust the body very quickly. Equally, excessive study can rapidly reduce mental powers.
2 My cousin turned up, along with some schoolmates of his.
3 As well as owning a big chemical factory, he runs a massive oil business in the USA. *or* He owns a big chemical factory as well as running a massive oil business in the USA.
4 She was my teacher and she was a good friend into the bargain.
5 In addition to being their scientific adviser, I also act as consultant to the Managing Director.

24.3
1 I work part-time as well as **being** a student, so I have a busy life.
2 Besides **having** a good job, my ambition is to meet someone nice to share my life with.
3 Alongside **my** many other responsibilities, I now have to be in charge of staff training.
4 In addition to a degree, *or* In addition to **having** a degree, she also has a diploma.
5 My father won't agree. **Likewise**, my mother's sure to find something to object to.
6 She is a good footballer and she's a good athlete to **boot**.
7 He said he'd have to first consider the organisation, then the system, then the finance **and so on and so forth.**

24.4 1 to boot 2 into the bargain 3 plus (+) 4 on top of (all) that

Unit 25

25.1 1 fact 2 issue 3 belief 4 problem 5 evaluation 6 view

25.2
1 issue (best here because it is something everyone is debating **and** disagreeing on, **question** and **problem** are also okay)
2 problem/matter; **crisis** if it is really serious.
3 question (**mystery** would also be possible)
4 topic
5 approach/response/solution/answer

25.3 1 Situation in Sahel worsening daily
2 Scientist rejects claims over fast food
3 Prime Minister sets out views on European union
4 New approach to cancer treatment
5 Solution to age-old mystery in Kenya
6 New argument over economic recession

Unit 26

26.1 1 no article 2 no article 3 an 4 no article 5 no article
6 no article; if you said **a film** here it would sound as if you mean one film, and then suddenly change your mind and decide to buy five rolls.
7 no article in both cases

26.2 *Uncountables:* clothing information advice travel work baggage
Countables: garment fact tip trip job case

26.3 *Some uncountable items you might put into your suitcase:*

soap toothpaste make-up underwear clothing writing-paper film medicine

26.4 1 We had such terrible weather that we left the camp-site and got accommodation in town instead.
2 In the North of England, most houses are made of stone, but in the South, brick is more common.
3 I love antique furniture, but I would need advice from a specialist before I bought any. My knowledge in that area is very poor.
4 Her research is definitely making great progress these days. She has done a lot of original work recently.

26.5 *Possible answers:*

A soldier needs a lot of courage, determination, stamina, loyalty and a lot of training.

A nurse needs a lot of patience and goodwill. A bit of charm also helps, and a lot of commitment and training is needed.

A teacher needs great patience, a lot of energy, a bit of creativity, intelligence and some training.

An explorer needs a lot of stamina, courage and determination, as well as energy.

An actor needs a lot of creativity and talent, and some training.

An athlete needs great stamina and determination, and a lot of commitment.

A writer needs a lot of creativity, talent and a bit of intelligence.

A surgeon needs experience, patience and a lot of training.

A receptionist needs charm, goodwill, reliability and energy.

26.6 Could I have **some** vinegar?
Could I have **a** duster?
Could I have **a** needle?
Could I have **some** thread?
Could I have **some** sellotape?
Could I have **a** tea-bag?
Could I have **some** polish?

Unit 27

27.2
1 shears
2 (weighing) scales
3 scissors
4 braces
5 tweezers
6 binoculars
7 pincers/pliers (pliers are usually best for electrical jobs, e.g. cutting wires/cables)
8 handcuffs

27.3 knickers trousers tights shorts dungarees

27.4
1 pyjamas
2 proceeds
3 acoustics
4 whereabouts
5 jodhpurs
6 authorities; goods

27.5 1 trousers 2 billiards 3 scissors 4 dungarees

27.6 I decided that if I wanted to be a pop star I'd have to leave home and get **lodgings** in London. I finally got a room, but it was on the **outskirts** of the city. The owner didn't live on the **premises**, so I could make as much noise as I liked. The **acoustics** in the bathroom were fantastic, so I practised there. I made so much noise I almost shook the **foundations**! I went to the **headquarters** of the Musicians' Union, but a guy there said I just didn't have good enough **looks** to be famous. Oh well, never mind!

Unit 28

28.1
1 Yes, most people have a **cloth** somewhere in the kitchen to wipe the work surfaces and in case somebody spills something.
2 It is not likely that most people will have a **wood**. A **wood** is a rather big area of land covered with trees (a small forest).
3 Most people do not keep **iron** (the material) in their homes, but they may have some things made of **iron**, such as a frying pan.
4 A lot of people have a **fish** (or several **fish**) swimming around in a tank in their living room.
5 Most people have **pepper** (together with salt) in their kitchen or dining room.
6 Most homes have glass somewhere, usually in the windows.
7 Most people have **paper** somewhere, for writing letters and notes, or for wrapping parcels.
8 You would have a **tape** if you have a tape recorder or a video recorder, and you'd probably keep it near the machine.
9 Only people who consume alcohol would have **drink** in their house; they'd probably keep it in a cocktail cabinet or a cupboard.
10 A **rubber** is quite common. It is used for rubbing out writing done in pencil, and would be kept with pens and pencils.

28.2 *Suggested answers:*
1 Can I borrow an iron?
2 Can I have some pepper?
3 Can I have a chocolate?
4 Can I borrow some paper?
5 Can I borrow a rubber?
6 Can I have a glass?

28.3 *Possible answers:*
1 I rode over some glass. *or* There was glass in the road.
2 No, she's living in a home now.
3 Perhaps he should get a trade, become a carpenter or something.
4 Well, it had a lot of land with it.
5 It's a very famous work of art, a painting.
6 Well, look at the policy; that should tell you everything.

28.4 1 **Some sauce** here means bottled sauce, such as tomato ketchup. **A sauce** means a specially prepared sauce to go with a particular dish, e.g. a white sauce, a cheese sauce.

2 **Plant** means very heavy equipment, e.g. heavy machinery for building. **A plant** means a botanical plant for cultivation. **A plant** can also mean a factory or large installation, e.g. a nuclear power plant – a place where electricity is generated.

3 **Light** (uncountable) usually means light to see by, e.g. electric light or a torch. Used countably in the request 'Can I have / can you give me **a light**?' it usually refers to a match or lighter to light a cigarette or pipe.

Unit 29

29.1 1 swarms 2 shoal 3 gang 4 pack 5 team

29.2 1 swimmers 2 a book 3 a hospital 4 cats 5 pigs

29.3
1 a clump of fir-trees
2 a range of mountains
3 a gang of schoolkids
4 a swarm of midges
5 a row of houses
6 a heap of bed-linen
7 a herd of elephants

29.4
1 There's a stack of tables in the next room.
2 There's a crowd of people waiting outside.
3 The staff are very well-paid.
4 A flock of sheep had escaped from a field.
5 She gave me a set of six sherry glasses.
6 She gave me a bunch of beautiful roses *or* a beautiful bunch of roses.

29.5 a whole host of a **barrage** of a string of a series of

Unit 30

30.1
1 a stroke of luck
2 a shower of rain
3 an article of clothing
4 a lump of coal
5 a flash of lightning
6 a blade of grass
7 an item of news
8 a rumble of thunder

30.2
1 My mother gave me a piece of advice which I have always remembered.
2 Suddenly a gust of wind almost blew him off his feet.
3 We had a spell of terribly windy weather last winter.
4 Would you like another slice of toast?
5 He never does a stroke of work in the house.
6 Let's go into the garden – I need a breath of fresh air.
7 I can give you an important bit of information about that.
8 We could see a cloud of smoke hovering over the city from a long way away.
9 There is an interesting new piece of equipment in that catalogue.
10 I need to get some pieces of furniture for my flat.

30.3 1 emergency 2 health 3 disrepair 4 uncertainty 5 poverty

30.5 *Possible sentences:*

1 We moved over a month ago but we are still in a state of chaos.
2 The company has been going through a state of flux for some months now as two chairmen have died in rapid succession.
3 Everything seems to be in an impossible state of confusion at the moment but I'm sure it'll all be sorted out before the wedding.
4 It is not unusual for job candidates to get themselves into a terrible state of tension before a final interview.

Unit 31

31.1

1 Argentinian Venezuelan Costa Rican Panamanian Mexican Peruvian (note the v) Ecuadorian Bolivian Uruguayan Paraguayan etc.
2 Ukrainian Serbian Croatian Slovenian Bulgarian Rumanian Albanian Mongolian Moldavian Hungarian etc.
3 *Other groupings:* -i adjectives seem to be Middle Eastern or Muslim countries (except Israeli); three of the -ese adjectives are oriental.

31.2 *Possible answers:*

1 Mao-Tse Tung
2 Nelson or Winnie Mandela
3 Pope John Paul II
4 Luciano Pavarotti
5 U2

31.3

1 Panama → Panamanian /pænə'meɪnɪən/
2 Cyprus → Cypriot /'sɪprɪət/
3 Ghana → Ghanaian /gɑː'neɪən/
4 Jordan → Jordanian /dʒɔː'deɪnɪən/
5 Egypt → Egyptian /ɪ'dʒɪpʃən/
6 Fiji → Fijian /fɪ'dʒiːən/

31.4

1 Madonna to marry a **Frenchman**? Hollywood sensation! (Note how Frenchman is normally written as one word. French woman is usually two words.)
2 **Britons** have highest tax rate in EC
3 **Vietnamese** refugees leave Hong Kong camps
4 Police arrest **Dane** on smuggling charge
5 **Iraqi** delegation meets **Pakistani** President

31.5

1 Malays, Chinese (or various ethnic sub-types), and Indians (many are Tamils and Sikhs).
2 If we take Scandinavia as strictly the geographical peninsula, then Sweden and Norway are the only countries completely in Scandinavia. If we consider it more as a language family, then Denmark and Iceland can be added, and if as a cultural family, then Finland can be added too.
3 Approximate populations are China: 975,000,000; India: 638,000,000; USA: 218,000,000; Indonesia: 141,000,000; Brazil: 116,000,000. The former Soviet Union used to be third, with 260,000,000 (source: *The Times Atlas*)
4 A difficult question! However, most linguists seem to agree on around 5,000 mutually incomprehensible tongues. There are, of course, many many more dialects.
5 Kiribati is an independent country in the middle of the Pacific Ocean. It has only about 57,000 people.
6 Inuit is an Eskimo language, and its speakers may be found in Northern Canada.
7 Languages most widely spoken, in the following order, are Chinese, English, Spanish, Hindi, Arabic (source: *The Cambridge Encyclopedia of Language* CUP)

Unit 32

32.1 Some of these combinations form one solid word and some remain as two words.

1 thunderstorm
2 torrential rain
3 downpour
4 heatwave
5 hailstones
6 snowdrift
7 gale warning

32.2 1 slush 2 sleet 3 frost 4 blizzards 5 snowdrifts 6 thaws 7 melts

32.3 *Possible answers:*

1 There was a heatwave in July. *or* It was scorching/boiling (hot) last month.
2 It was terribly muggy and humid as we worked.
3 It's absolutely stifling today.
4 There was ice/snow/slush on the roads this morning.
5 We had terrible floods that winter.
6 There was a heavy blizzard that night.
7 Do you remember how mild it was that year?
8 There was a very bad drought that summer.
9 Suddenly there was a very strong gust of wind.
10 After the hurricane/gale, the damage was unbelievable.
11 There was a very dense fog that morning.

32.4 1 *bad*: too dry, a drought, or frost *good*: mild weather just after rain
2 *bad*: cold weather or windy weather or wet weather
good: warm, mild, or even cool (if it has been a terribly hot day) and preferably dry
3 *bad*: gales, high winds, hurricanes, storms, wet weather, mist/fog
good: clear, sunny dry, breezy weather
4 *bad*: cold, wet and windy weather or humid, muggy weather *good*: fine, dry, but not too hot
5 *bad*: wet, windy, snowy weather *good*: dry, no wind, warm nights
6 *bad*: fog/mist, rain *good*: clear, dry, sunny weather

Unit 33

33.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 ... the fair, bald guy. *or* straight/curly-haired man.
2 ... scruffy and untidy.
3 ... that slim, dark-haired woman over there.
4 ... unattractive, in fact. (You could also say he/she was 'rather plain' or 'rather ordinary', if you felt they were neither attractive nor unattractive. 'Ugly' is a very strong word indeed, and could be offensive.)
5 ... a teenager/ in her twenties. (Another useful word is 'she's only a youngster', for a person who is a teenager or who is still very young.)

33.2 1 The author who wrote this exercise is tall, with brown hair which is going grey; he's white, in his forties and thinks he's good looking! What about you?

33.3 stocky build overweight middle-aged round-faced good-looking
long-haired long-legged (pronounced /ˈlegɪd/) well-dressed mixed race
tanned complexion (tanned = brown from the sun)

33.4 *Suggested answers:*

Ian Prowse, height 6ft, thin-faced, dark, curly hair, fair skin.
Sandra King, height 5'4, dark, wavy hair, stocky build, round-faced.
Louise Fox, age 7, Asian, straight, dark hair.
Jake 'Dagger' Flagstone, 6ft, bald, with beard and moustache; muscular build.

Unit 34

34.1 *Opposites:*

1 clever – half-witted
2 extroverted – introverted
3 rude – courteous
4 cruel – kind-hearted
5 generous – tight-fisted
6 unsociable – gregarious

34.2

1 likes
2 likes
3 likes
4 dislikes
5 dislikes
6 dislikes
7 dislikes
8 likes

34.3

1 Di's very stingy.
2 Molly's usually brusque.
3 Liz's quite unprincipled.
4 Sam can be assertive.
5 Dick's quite assertive.
6 I find Dave self-assured.
7 Don't you think Jim's inquiring?
8 Jill is peculiar.

34.4

1 sociable
2 pessimistic
3 assertive
4 inquisitive
5 extravagant
6 argumentative
7 sensitive

34.5 *Possible questions:*

1 thrifty – Do you always keep old pieces of string in case they come in handy (might be useful)?
2 blunt – If a friend asks you if you like her awful new dress, would you say 'No'?
3 sensible – If you won a lot of money, would you put it in the bank rather than spend it on a luxury you have always wanted?
4 intelligent – Can you give the next letter in this sequence S, M, T, W, T, F? (If you are not sure of the answer, think of the days of the week.)
5 even-tempered – If someone spills soup on some new clothes of yours, do you just sigh and say 'That's life'?
6 original – Do you never wear blue jeans?
7 obstinate – Do you become even more determined to do something, if people try to persuade you not to?

34.6 *Possible answers:*

1 self-confident – She's very-confident; speaking in public never bothers her at all.
self-centred – I've never met anyone as self-centred as he is; he thinks the world revolves around him alone.
self-indulgent – Buying a box of chocolates just for yourself is very self-indulgent.

2 bad-tempered – She's always bad-tempered first thing in the morning although she's very good-natured at other times.
good-tempered – The dog is far too good-tempered to be much use as a watchdog.
quick-tempered – She's very quick-tempered, she gets very angry at the slightest provocation.

3 narrow-minded – It's surprising how narrow-minded he is given the fact that he is so well-travelled.
single-minded – He's totally single-minded; he never thinks of anything but work.
open-minded – I'm sure she won't be shocked; she's far too open-minded.

Unit 35

35.1
1 This is Jack. He's my flatmate. *or* He and I are flatmates.
2 My grandad still writes to his old (*or* former) shipmates.
3 We were classmates in 1978, weren't we? *or* You were a classmate of mine...
4 She's not really a friend, she's just a workmate.

35.2 *Some possible answers:*

John Silver and Lorna Fitt were colleagues in 1984–5.
Josh Yates is Eve Cobb's ex-husband.
Eve Cobb is Josh Yates' ex-wife.
Eve Cobb used to be Bill Nash's flatmate.
Bill Nash and John Silver are colleagues.
Ada Brigg and Nora Costa were Olympic team-mates. (usually written with a hyphen because 'm' is written twice)
Ana Wood is Bill Nash's partner. (or vice-versa)
Nora Costa and Ada Brigg were classmates.
Bill Nash and Eve Cobb were flatmates.
Bill Nash is Eve Cobb's ex-flatmate. (or vice-versa)
Fred Parks and Ada Brigg were once acquaintances.

35.3
1 A teenage music fan might not see eye to eye with his/her parents, might worship or idolise a pop star, might dislike, but might (secretly!) respect a strict teacher, and probably likes or even loves his/her mates.

2 A secretary might like another secretary, might or might not get on well with them, might despise or hate their boss, or perhaps look up to him/her, and might fancy a very attractive workmate, because that person turns them on.

3 A 45-year-old may well dislike teenagers or look down on them, or fancy them if they are attractive; he/she might be repelled by their ex-husband/wife, or might still fancy them.

35.4
1 Jo and Phil don't see eye to eye. *or* ... don't get on with each other.
2 I fell out with my parents.
3 We had a quarrel but now we've made it up.
4 Do you think Jim and Nora are having an affair?
5 I get on very well with my colleagues at work.
6 She should learn to respect her elders.
7 Jo's attractive, but her mate just turns me off completely.

Unit 36

36.1
1 a garden shed or a garage
2 a kitchen or dining-room drawer
3 a bathroom cabinet (dental floss is a kind of thread for cleaning between your teeth)
4 a wardrobe
5 a cupboard, or perhaps an attic
6 a kitchen or utility room
7 usually in every room
8 in front of one of the entrance doors (front or back)
9 in the kitchen, probably in a drawer
10 in the loft or in the cellar, or in a shed

36.2
1 attic or loft; in this picture it looks more like a loft, where things are stored.
2 landing
3 the hall
4 utility room
5 pantry or larder

36.3

1 cellar (or perhaps **basement**, though they normally have windows)
2 power point (or you can also say **socket**)
3 coaster
4 bin-liners
5 loft (attic is also possible)
6 shed/garage; terrace/patio (or **balcony**; or **verandah**, if it is covered)
7 landing
8 bungalow

36.5 *Suggested answers:*

1 You could use a grater (or a food-processor).
2 A dust-pan and brush (perhaps followed by a vacuum-cleaner).
3 A table-mat.
4 Use the remote-control.

Unit 37

37.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 My car broke down / wouldn't start.
2 Our washing machine broke down / stopped working.
3 Maybe the door-handle has come off, or something that was held on with a screw or screws.
4 Oh dear! I've cut my finger. It's bleeding.
5 The batteries have run down on my radio/walkman.
6 I seem to have mislaid my glasses / false teeth / slippers, etc.

37.2

1 break down – this means to 'fail mechanically'; **break** and **smash** both mean to break physically.
2 stain – means to 'leave a mark'; **run out** and **stop** can both refer to things failing to work, e.g. the clock has stopped; the batteries have run out.
3 leak – refers to liquids; **come off** and **chip** can both refer to small pieces falling off an object.
4 flood – refers to an excess of water; **cut** and **bruise** are both types of injury.

37.3 *Possible answers:*

1 Contact the bank / credit agency and get them to cancel it at once.
2 Apologise and offer to get them a new one.
3 Sew it back on again.
4 Get it repaired.
5 Put an ice-cube on it. (There are lots of remedies for this, including rubbing good butter on it!)
6 Put it right by moving the hands forward.

37.4 *Things that typically go together:*

	cake-tin	*vase*	*elbow*	*clock*	*moped*	*sink*
banged			✓			
cracked		✓				
broken down					✓	
dented	✓					
stopped				✓		
blocked						✓

37.5
1 ... overslept.
2 ... locked myself out.
3 ... mislaid her number.
4 ... broken down. (It could also be **jammed** which means mechanically stuck, e.g. by some broken film.)
5 ... fell and twisted my ankle / cut my leg/knee, etc.

Unit 38

38.1
1 Drought; if the plants and trees are **withered**, they are probably dying because they have no water, and since the earth is cracked (hard, with a pattern of deep lines over it), it suggests it is very dry.
2 Earthquake; a **tremor** is a trembling movement of the earth. Note how disasters of various kinds can **strike**, e.g. The hurricane **struck** the coastline at noon.
3 A violent storm or wind, a hurricane/typhoon/tornado; if you **board up** your house you cover the windows and doors with wooden boards to protect them.
4 War/a battle of some kind; **shells** and **mortars** are projectiles which cause explosions when they strike.
5 Probably a plane crash; people who witness such crashes often describe the explosion as a **fire-ball**, or **ball of fire**.
6 Probably a flood, since if your house is flooded, the natural thing to do is to go to the upper floor(s) or the roof to escape the water.

38.2

verb	*noun: thing or idea*	*noun: person*
explode	explosion	–
survive	survival	survivor
injure	injury	the injured
starve	starvation	the starving
erupt	eruption	–

38.3
1 getting worse (**spreads**)
2 becoming more serious/heading for a major disaster (a **time-bomb** ticks like a clock and eventually explodes)
3 a disaster was avoided (the bomb was **defused** – made safe)
4 disaster avoided (a **crash-landing** is an emergency landing when the pilot has no proper control over the plane, e.g. without wheels if the undercarriage fails to drop.)
5 getting better (the oil is **receding** – going away from where it was heading, for example, towards a beach)
6 disaster has occurred/is occurring (if you **heed** a warning, you take note, and do something; here the warning was ignored)

38.4 1 victims 2 refugees 3 casualties 4 survivors 5 dead; wounded

38.5 1 malaria 2 leprosy 3 cholera or typhoid 4 rabies 5 yellow fever

Unit 39

39.2
1 primary
2 nursery
3 grammar
4 comprehensive
5 further/higher
6 evening classes
7 grant
8 teacher-training college

39.3
1 I'm **taking/doing/sitting** an exam tomorrow.
2 I hear you **passed/did well in** your examination.
3 You can **study** a lot of different **subjects** / **take** a lot of different **courses** at this university.
4 I got some good **marks/grades** in my continuous assessment this term.
5 She's a **teacher** in a primary school. (Professors are only in universities and are very senior teachers.)
6 He gave an interesting 45-minute **lecture** on Goethe. (A **conference** is a meeting of people with the same interests, usually lasting several days.)
7 She got a **diploma** in personnel management. (Only universities can give degrees.)

39.4 *Possible questions:*
1 Do students in your country get a grant?
2 What's the difference between a university and a polytechnic in Britain?
3 What goes on at play-schools and nursery schools?
4 Why did you choose a teacher-training college instead of a university?
5 What's the school-leaving age in Britain now?
6 You look terribly tired. What've you been doing?
7 Do you get marks/credits/points for your exams?
8 Did you skip yesterday's lecture?

39.5 You could look up these things in an encyclopaedia, or else write to your American Embassy and ask them to send you information about education in the USA. Broadly speaking a **high school** is like a British secondary school, **college** means further education, a **sophomore** is a second-year college student and **graduate school** is where you study for further degrees, e.g. MA/MSc, after graduating for your first degree.

Unit 40

40.1
1 union official 2 executive manager 3 director 4 unskilled worker 5 administrator
6 safety officer (not the security officer – the person who makes sure everything is locked and secure, that there are no burglaries or other crimes, etc.)
7 supervisor 8 labourer 9 personnel officer 10 public relations officer

40.3 *Suggested answers:*
1 This person's been **made redundant.**
2 He/She's **taken early retirement.**
3 This is a person who works **shifts** / is a **shift-worker.**
4 She's **been promoted.**
5 I **got the sack** (*or* **I was fired**; *or* **I was dismissed** – more formal).
6 He/She works **nine-to-five.** *or* He/She **has a nine-to-five job.**
7 You're a **workaholic.**

40.4
1 teacher
2 surgeon
3 secretary/typist/clerk
4 actor/broadcaster/performer of some kind
5 farmer
6 tailor/dressmaker

40.5
1 profession
2 a difficult one; it could be called a trade, but many chefs may prefer to be thought of as 'professionals'
3 trade
4 profession
5 trade
6 trade (though could be called a profession)
7 unskilled job
8 same as 'dressmaker'
9 unskilled job
10 profession

40.6 1 get/have 2 living 3 work 4 offered 5 take...on

Unit 41

41.1 *Probable answers:*

1 bowls (the bowls have a weight on one side which gives them a bias as they roll)
2 hang-gliding ('at the top' = at the top of the hill from which the hang-glider is launched)
3 motor-racing
4 riding (most people get a very sore seat/legs when they first try it)
5 windsurfing (being able to stay upright on the water)
6 snooker/pool/billiards/darts, but could, of course, apply to a number of other sports too (golf, shooting, etc.) (Snooker, pool and billiards are similar games but have different rules.)

41.3 *Equipment:* 1 arrows 2 shuttlecock 3 ball 4 ball 5 dartboard

Clothing:

1 Archers usually wear special gloves, and probably a cap to shade their eyes.
2 Usually sweat-shirt and shorts or tennis-skirt, with tennis-style shoes, possibly sweat-bands too.
3 Hockey-players usually wear shorts or a short tennis-skirt, but also protective gloves, shin-pads and possibly a safety-helmet.
4 Baseball players often wear caps, plus protective clothing (special gloves, shin-pads, etc.).
5 No special clothes, since the game is usually played informally in pubs and clubs.

41.4 1 broken 2 beaten/defeated 3 win 4 take up 5 holds 6 scored

41.5

1 a long jumper
2 a jockey
3 a racing driver
4 a discus/javelin thrower
5 a gymnast
6 a hockey player
7 a footballer or a football player
8 a pole-vaulter

41.6

1 tennis, squash etc.
2 could be golf (golf-course) or horse-racing (racecourse)
3 usually boxing or wrestling
4 used for football, rugby and cricket
5 ice-skating
6 ten-pin bowling or skittles (a traditional British game similar to ten-pin but with only nine pins)
7 a track where you ski

Unit 42

42.1 *Probable answers:*

1 Sculpture (The verb **stand** is often associated with statues; it could also be architecture, if 'Peace' is interpreted as the name of a building or huge monument.)
2 Cinema (Animated films are often associated with Walt Disney, e.g. the Mickey Mouse cartoons, but are also a serious art form.)
3 Dance (**Movement** and **rhythm** are the clues.)
4 Poetry (**Rhyme** – having the same sounds at the ends of consecutive lines – is often thought of as a necessary quality of good poetry.)
5 Painting (Oil-based and water-based paints are the two most popular types of paint used by artists.)
6 Architecture (We talk of the **design** of a building.)
7 Drama texts/plays in written form.
8 Perhaps a novel, but it could be any book divided into chapters, e.g. an academic textbook.
9 A play at the theatre (Plays are divided into **acts** – major divisions, and **scenes** – smaller divisions.)

42.2 1 article (The arts relates to all the things in the network on the left-hand page.)
2 no article (the subject in general)
3 article (a particular performance)
4 article (the technique/creative requirements)
5 no article (modern poetry in general – all of it)
6 no article (the speaker is talking about drawing and painting)

42.3 1 What's the name of the **publisher** of that book you recommended? Was it Cambridge University Press? (An **editorial** is an article in a newspaper or magazine giving the opinions of the editor on matters of interest/concern.)

2 'I wandered lonely as a cloud' is my favourite **line** of English poetry. (A verse is a collection of lines separated from the next verse by a space.)

3 He's a very famous **sculptor:** he did that statue in the park, you know, the one with the soldiers. (**Sculpture** is the name of the art form; **sculptor** is the person who does it.)

4 Most of the **(short)** stories in this collection are only five or six pages long. They're great for reading on short journeys. (A **novel** is a long work (usually more than 100 pages). Here **short** story or just story is clearly what the speaker is referring to.)

5 There's an **exhibition** of **ceramics** at the museum next week. (**Exposition** is only used in very formal academic texts to talk about how an argument is presented. **Ceramics** as the name of the art form is always plural.)

6 The sets are excellent in that new production of *Macbeth*, so dark and mysterious. (Scenery is uncountable and refers to natural beauty in the landscape, e.g. 'There's some wonderful scenery on the west coast of Ireland'. The attempt to represent a place on a theatre stage is called the set.)

7 **What's on at** the Opera House next week? Anything interesting? (When we want to know what events are taking place, what a cinema is showing, etc., we use the question **what's on**? We also need a preposition for **opera house**; in this case, **at** is the best one.)

42.4 *Suitable questions:*
1 Was the play a success?
2 Would you like a ticket for the Beethoven tonight?
3 What's the architecture like in your home-town?
4 Was it a good production?
5 What are they showing at the Arts Cinema at the moment? **or** What's on at the cinema?

Follow-up:

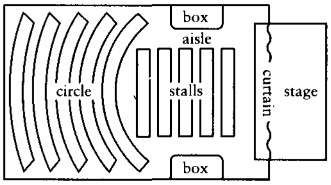

Unit 43

43.1 *Possible groupings:*

Found in salads: cucumber green/red pepper lettuce radish
'Onion-family' vegetables: leek shallot garlic onion
Grow underground: potato carrot turnip
Usually long-shaped: aubergine courgette sweetcorn

There are, of course, other possible groups too.

43.2
1 hot, spicy
2 savoury
3 salty
4 sour
5 sugary, sickly
6 bitter, strong
7 bland, tasteless

43.3
starters: pâté and toast prawn cocktail shrimps in garlic
main courses: chicken casserole Irish stew rump steak grilled trout
desserts: coffee gateau fresh fruit salad sorbet chocolate fudge cake

43.4
1 These chips are rather oily/greasy/fatty.
2 This dish is overcooked.
3 This meat is done to a turn.
4 This is just tasteless / very bland.

43.6
1 *Fish:* sardines mackerel hake plaice trout cod sole whiting
Seafood: prawns squid oysters mussels crab lobster
2 calf – veal deer – venison sheep – lamb (young animal), mutton (older animal)
pig – pork, ham, bacon

Unit 44

44.1
1 waterfall
2 cliff
3 glacier
4 peninsula
5 estuary
6 tributary
7 volcano
8 straits
9 geyser
10 gorge
11 summit or peak of a mountain
12 chain or mountains

44.2 Brazil is the fifth largest country in the world. In the north the densely forested basin of the River Amazon covers half the country. In the east the country is washed by the Atlantic. The highest mountain chain in South America, the Andes, does not lie in Brazil. Brazil's most famous city is Rio de Janeiro, the former capital. The capital of the Brazil of today is Brasilia.

44.3
1 Mount Kilimanjaro
2 The Volga
3 Venezuela (The Angel Falls)
4 New Zealand
5

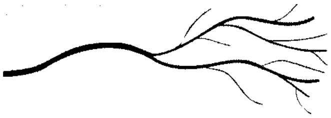

A delta is at the mouth of a river where the river divides and flows into the sea in a number of different channels. The River Nile has one.

6 The Straits of Gibraltar are at the western entrance to the Mediterranean and the Cape of Good Hope is at the southern tip of Africa.

44.4 *Possible answers:*
1 Scotland
2 country
3 the north of Britain
4 mountainous
5 flatter
6 agriculture
7 Scotland
8 the Clyde
9 the Western Highlands
10 Ben Nevis
11 Overfishing
12 Scotland

44.5
1 sandy beach/shore
2 steep gorge/hill
3 shallow brook/bay
4 rocky coast/mountain
5 turbulent river/sea
6 dangerous cliff/current

44.6 *Some possible answers:*

Spray cans destroy the ozone layer.

Organic farming means that fewer chemicals pollute the land – and our bodies.

Unleaded petrol causes less air pollution than leaded petrol.

Recycling paper means that fewer trees need to be cut down.

Using bottle banks means that glass is re-used rather than thrown away. There is, thus, less wastage of resources.

Environmentalists are also in favour of using solar or wind power, of using as little plastic as possible (because it is not bio-degradable) and of planting new trees instead of simply increasing the amount of land given over to agriculture.

Unit 45

45.1

1. Cork is in the south of the Republic of Ireland.
2. It lies on an island between two channels of the River Lee.
3. It has a desperately complex one-way traffic system. Moreover, its buses are terribly crowded.
4. St Anne's Church was built on a site where another church stood previously. That church was destroyed during a siege of the city.
5. In the French Gothic style.
6. Probably not as they do not cater specifically for tourists.
7. The Crawford Gallery is worth visiting because it regularly puts on interesting exhibitions of modern art.
8. Well-off people live in fashionable residential areas overlooking the harbour while others live in suburbs on the edge of the city.

45.2 *Some possible answers, based on the city of Cambridge in England:*

Cambridge has the second oldest university in England (after Oxford). The main tourist area of the town lies in the town centre, around the university colleges.

King's College Chapel is in the Perpendicular style.

Most of the main hotels in the town are within walking distance of the centre.

The town centre tends to be terribly crowded on Saturdays.

A number of the colleges are built on the site of former monasteries or convents.

Cambridge has been called the intellectual centre of the world. I am not sure whether or not it still merits this description.

There are plenty of sports facilities catering for both young and old.

Those who enjoy boating must not miss the opportunity to go for a punt on the River Cam.

Most of the more picturesque colleges overlook the River Cam.

An interesting new Science Park has been built on the outskirts of the town.

The Fitzwilliam Museum is well worth visiting

Kettle's Yard regularly mounts quite varied exhibitions.

Railway enthusiasts do not have to travel far from Cambridge to find a working steam railway open to the public.

Everyone who visits Cambridge is sure to appreciate its character.

45.4

1 natural history
science
folk

2 leisure
shopping
city

3 art
music
community

4 basket ball
squash
royal

5 night
tennis
social

6 employment
accommodation
press

45.7 *Some possible answers:*

The most picturesque parts of Cambridge are beside the river.
Cambridge is one of England's most historic towns.
The town could hardly be called spacious as most of its streets are very narrow.
Some of the eighteenth century buildings are particularly elegant.
The most magnificent building in the town, in my opinion, is the Pepys Library.
The town is at its most atmospheric on the day of a student graduation.
Tourists often find Cambridge's narrow lanes very quaint.
Cambridge is very lively at night because so many young people live there.
The city centre is quite hectic at weekends.
When the university is on vacation the town can suddenly seem quite deserted.
The market is particularly bustling on Saturdays.
The shops are always very crowded in the weeks before Christmas.
The shopping centre always seems to be packed with people.
We are lucky in that nowhere in the town is filthy; everywhere is quite clean.
Some of the suburbs have become quite run-down in recent years.
The old buildings in Cambridge are generally not allowed to become shabby but are kept in good repair.

Unit 46

46.1

1 mammal
2 crocodile
3 poplar and birch are deciduous; the yew is evergreen
4 pollen
5 hedgehog, tortoise and bear
6 s/he loves me, s/he loves me not
7 cheetah
8 dove
9 rose, thistle, maple leaf and kiwi bird
10 breathing
11 An endangered species is any species which is in danger of dying out or becoming extinct, e.g. some breeds of tiger or whale.
12 The dinosaur is extinct; the emu is still in existence and the phoenix was a mythical creature not a real one.
13 snowdrop, daisy and lily of the valley; parrot, pigeon and seagull.
14 Your answer to this question depends, of course, on where you come from.

46.2 *Possible answers:*

prickly hedgehog   flowing mane   sweet-smelling petals   noble eagle
sturdy oak   graceful willow   wriggly worm   rough bark

46.3

1 roots
2 claws; trunk/bark
3 blossom/flower
4 thrive/grow
5 hoof
6 stalks
7 bud
8 thorns
9 twigs
10 bat; fish
11 bee; snail
12 harvested

Notice how people are compared to animals in sentences 10 and 11. This is quite common.

46.4 The words underlined below are worth learning. You can use them when talking about other animals too.

camel A mammal of the family, Camelidae, (2 species): the **Bactrian**, from cold deserts in Central Asia and domesticated elsewhere, and the **dromedary**; eats any vegetation; drinks salt water if necessary; closes slit-like nostrils to exclude sand; humps are stores of energy-rich fats. The two species may interbreed: the offspring has one hump; the males are usually sterile while the females are fertile.

46.5 The description of an elephant from the same encyclopaedia is given below. While it is unlikely that you would need or want to write anything quite so technical, look at it carefully and pick out any vocabulary from it that could also be useful for you to learn.

> **elephant** A large mammal of the family, Elephantidae; almost naked grey skin; massive forehead; small eyes; upper incisor teeth form 'tusks'; snout elongated as a muscular, grasping 'trunk'; ears large and movable (used to radiate heat). There are two living species. The **African elephant** is the largest living land animal, with three sub-species. The **Asian elephant** has four sub-species. The African is larger with larger ears, a triangular tip on the top and bottom of the trunk tip (not just on the top) and obvious tusks in the female.

If you chose to write about another animal, compare your description if possible with one in an English-language encyclopaedia. If not ask a teacher to correct your work.

Unit 47

47.1
1 heel; soles
2 laces
3 dressing-gown
4 slippers
5 belt
6 hem; buttons

47.2
1 pyjamas
2 jeans
3 shorts
4 pairs of pants
5 pair (of tights)
6 tights (*or* new ones)

47.3
1 silk evening blouse
2 cashmere sweater
3 leather boots
4 corduroy trousers
5 velvet ribbon
6 cotton T-shirt

47.4 *Possible answers:*

The man is wearing baggy corduroy trousers with a shabby sweater. The collar of a tartan shirt is visible. He has lace-up shoes and one of the laces is undone. He has a pair of mitts on and a flat cap.

The woman is wearing a round-neck close-fitting spotted long-sleeved blouse with plain cuffs and a knee-length striped skirt. She has high-heeled shoes on and is carrying a large handbag and some gloves.

47.5 1 fits 2 matches 3 suits

Unit 48

48.1
1 flu – headache, aching muscles, fever, cough, sneezing
2 pneumonia – dry cough, high fever, chest pain, rapid breathing
3 rheumatism – swollen, painful joints, stiffness, limited movement
4 chickenpox – rash starting on body, slightly raised temperature
5 mumps – swollen glands in front of ear, earache or pain on eating
6 an ulcer – burning pain in abdomen, pain or nausea after eating

48.2
1 For measuring temperature.
2 For weighing people.
3 For measuring people.
4 For doing operations.

48.3 1 c 2 g 3 e 4 a 5 b 6 f 7 h 8 d

48.4

noun	*adjective*	*verb*
breathlessness, breath	breathless	breathe
faint	faint	faint
shiver, shivering	shivery	shiver
dislocation	dislocated	dislocate
ache	aching	ache
treatment	–	treat
swelling	swollen	swell

48.5 *Possible answers:*

1 blisters
2 indigestion
3 lung cancer
4 bruises
5 a broken leg
6 sunburn
7 a rash
8 breathlessness
9 sickness
10 an itch
11 a cold
12 hypochondria

Unit 49

49.1

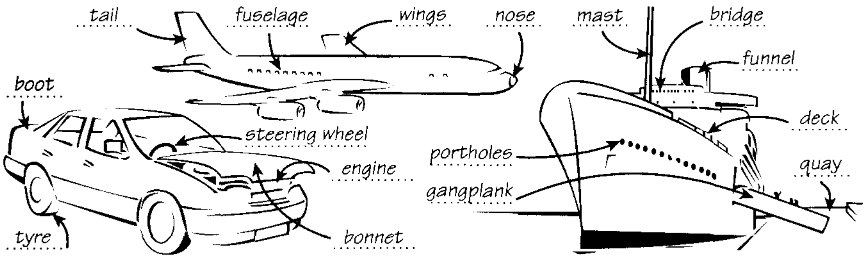

49.2 bonnet – part of car
balloon, glider – types of air transport
deck-chair – facilities used by ship's passenger
guard's van – part of train
mast, anchor, oar, rudder – part of boat (**rudder** can also be part of a plane)
petrol pump, dual carriageway – facilities used by road travellers
bus driver – person working in road transport
left luggage lockers – facilities used by rail or air travellers
check-in desk, control tower – facilities associated with air travel
canoe – type of boat

49.3

1 There are roadworks ahead.
2 There's a cross-roads ahead.
3 There may be low-flying aircraft overhead.
4 The road ahead has an uneven surface.
5 There is a crossing point for the elderly ahead.

49.4

1 flight
2 boot
3 bonnet
4 garage
5 mechanic
6 run out
7 check
8 departure lounge
9 delayed
10 train
11 ferry
12 deckchair
13 passengers
14 galleys

49.5

Type of transport	*advantages*	*disadvantages*
road	takes you door to door; easy with luggage	tiring for driver; slow for long distances
train	can enjoy scenery; can work on train	poor catering; frequent delays
sea	can move around; fresh sea air	slow; can feel seasick
air	quick; convenient	cramped; difficult to get to airports

Unit 50

50.1 *Possible advantages and disadvantages:*

place	*advantage*	*disadvantage*
camp-site	cheap	uncomfortable
self-catering flat	free to eat when you want	hard work
guest-house	meals cooked for you	not so free perhaps
youth hostel	cheap	no privacy
holiday camp	lots to do	noisy
time-share apartment	can be attractive accommodation	same place every year

50.3

1 They canoed in the Dordogne last year.
2 Have you ever windsurfed?
3 I love sailing.
4 He spends too much time going fishing.
5 It's quite expensive to go shopping in Rome.
6 I enjoy going cycling at weekends.

50.4 *Possible answers:*

1 Can I book a double room with a cot, please?
2 Could I have a call at 6 a.m., please?
3 The television in my room isn't working. Could you send someone up, please?
4 Am I too late to get something to eat?
5 Can I have breakfast in my room, please?
6 Is service included?

50.5

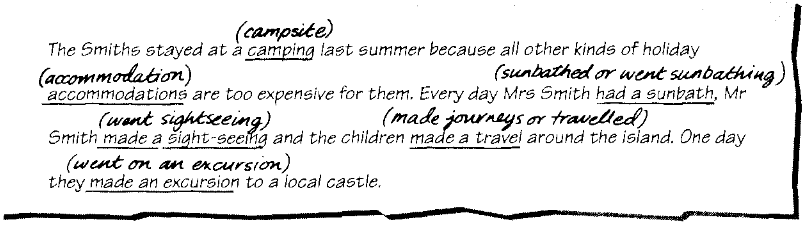

(campsite)
The Smiths stayed at a camping last summer because all other kinds of holiday
(accommodation) (sunbathed or went sunbathing)
accommodations are too expensive for them. Every day Mrs Smith had a sunbath, Mr
(went sightseeing) (made journeys or travelled)
Smith made a sight-seeing and the children made a travel around the island. One day
(went on an excursion)
they made an excursion to a local castle.

Unit 51

51.1
1 1, 3, 5, 7
2 2, 4, 6, 8
3 1, 2, 3, 5
4 10.6 (ten point six)
5 ⅜ (three eighths)
6 e equals m c squared; it is Einstein's relativity equation in which e = energy, m = mass and c = the speed of light.
7 two pi r; this is the formula for the circumference of a circle when r = the radius of the circle. π is the mathematical symbol for 3.14159...

51.2
1 Two per cent of the British population owned ninety per cent of the country's wealth in nineteen ninety two.
2 Nought degrees Centigrade equals thirty-two degrees Fahrenheit.
3 Sixty-two point three per cent of adults have false teeth.
4 Two thirds plus one quarter times four squared, equals fourteen and two thirds.
5 Two million, seven hundred and sixty nine thousand, four hundred and twenty five people live here.

51.3
square circular rectangular oval triangular pentagonal octagonal spherical cubic spiral pyramidal

51.4
1 forty six point six per cent
2 thirty three billion, nine hundred and twenty three thousand, three hundred and ten million kilometres
3 nine hundred and seventy nine metres
4 one thousand eight hundred and ninety two cups
5 one hundred and seventy three metres or five hundred and sixty eight feet high
6 twenty three thousand two hundred and fifty umbrellas; nineteen eighty seven to nineteen eighty eight
7 seven hundred and thirty three telephones per thousand population
8 nought point four square kilometres

51.5

1

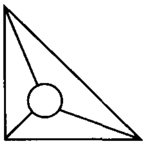

2

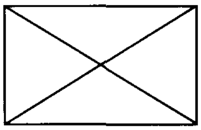

3

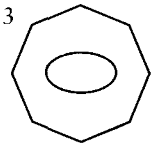

4

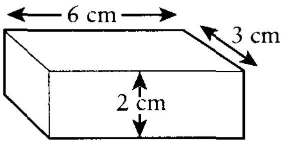

Unit 52

52.1

science	*scientist*
chemistry	chemist
physics	physicist
zoology	zoologist
genetics	geneticist
information technology	information technologist
cybernetics	cyberneticist
civil engineering	civil engineer

Note: a **physician** is a doctor. Check in the index for the pronunciation of these words as they are frequently mispronounced.

52.2
1 video recorder – a machine which records and plays back sound and pictures
2 photocopier – a machine which makes copies of documents
3 fax machine – a machine which makes copies of documents and sends them down telephone lines to another place
4 tape recorder – a machine which records and plays back sound
5 modem – a piece of equipment allowing you to send information from one computer down telephone lines to another computer
6 camcorder – a camera which records moving pictures and sound
7 robot – a machine which acts like a person
8 word-processor – a kind of sophisticated typewriter using a computer
9 food-processor – a machine for chopping up, slicing, mashing, blending, etc.

52.3 *Some possible definitions:*
1 **VDU** stands for **visual** display **unit** and it is the part of the computer which includes the screen or monitor, on which you look at your work as you do it.
2 A **stapler** is a useful piece of office equipment which allows you to join two or more pieces of paper together by bending a small bit of wire, called a staple, through the pages which you want to connect.
3 A **cordless iron** is an iron which gets its power from a base unit on which it stands when not in use. It is not connected to the base unit by a flex and so can be used freely and easily.
4 An **alarm clock** is useful for waking you up in the morning.
5 A **hole punch** is a useful piece of office equipment which allows you to make holes in sheets of paper so that they can then be inserted into a file.

52.4
1 discovery
2 invention
3 rotation
4 conclusion
5 patent
6 analysis
7 dissection
8 experiment
9 combination

52.6 *Time* and *Newsweek* often have articles on general scientific interest as does the newspaper, *The Times.*

Unit 53

53.1
1 detective story/film
2 documentary
3 sports programme
4 game show
5 current affairs programme
6 drama

53.3
1 A **foreign correspondent** is a journalist based abroad.
2 A **sub-editor** is someone who works in a newspaper office and decides on how the pages should be laid out, how stories need to be cut, what headlines should be used and so on.
3 A **continuity person** is responsible for seeing that the continuity between one scene and another in a film is correct – for making sure that people do not suddenly wear different earrings, for example.
4 An **editor** is the person responsible for the production of a newspaper or magazine.
5 A **librarian** is a person who works in a place which lends books.
6 A **bookseller** is someone who owns or works in a shop which sells books.
7 A **publisher** is a person or company responsible for having a book printed and organising its sale.
8 A **columnist** is a journalist who writes a regular column or feature for a newspaper/magazine.
9 A **camera operator** is the person who operates a camera filming a TV programme or a film.
10 A **critic** is a person who writes reviews of books, films or theatre plays.

53.4
1 buttons; remote control
2 broadcasts/programmes
3 pick up / receive
4 camcorder
5 comics

Unit 54

54.1 1 independence 2 bye-election 3 running 4 elected 5 policy 6 statesman

54.2
1 chambers
2 MPs (Members of Parliament)
3 constituency
4 majority
5 Prime Minister
6 election

54.3

abstract noun	*person-noun*	*verb*	*adjective*
revolution	revolutionary	revolutionise	revolutionary
representation	representative	represent	representative
election	elector	elect	elective
dictatorship	dictator	dictate	dictatorial
presidency	president	preside	presidential

54.4
1 UK Sweden Belgium
2 Iceland
8 Member of Parliament; Prime Minister; United Nations; European Union; North Atlantic Treaty Organisation; Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries

(You will find more work on abbreviations in Unit 98.)

Unit 55

55.1 1 robbed; stole 2 was stolen 3 are robbed 4 was robbed

55.2

crime	*criminal*	*verb*	*definition*
terrorism	terrorist	terrorise, commit acts of terrorism (the verb to terrorise is used more generally than in the criminal sense, e.g. The wild dogs terrorised the neighbourhood.)	using violence for political ends
blackmail	blackmailer	blackmail	threatening to make a dark secret public in order to get money
drug-trafficking	drug-trafficker	to traffic in drugs, to peddle drugs, to deal in drugs	buying and selling drugs
forgery	forger	forge	to try to pass off a copy as the real thing
assault	attacker, assailant	assault	physical attack on another person
pickpocketing	pickpocket	pickpocket	stealing from someone's pocket or handbag
mugging	mugger	mug	attacking someone, often on the street, generally to get money

55.3 1 was convicted 2 defended 3 sentenced 4 be released 5 was acquitted

55.4 *Possible groupings:*

Crimes: theft hi-jacking smuggling bribery drunken driving rape
Punishments: prison flogging death penalty probation community service fine
People connected with the law: witness detective traffic warden lawyer judge members of a jury

Unit 56

56.1
1 Japan – yen; Australia – dollar; India – rupee; Russia – rouble.
2 It is any currency which is reliable and stable.
3 American Express and Visa.
4 Alcohol and tobacco.
5 Rents from property; winnings from gambling; interest from investments.
6 It is an index used for calculating the value of shares on the Stock Exchange in New York. The FT (or Footsie) Index in London and the Nikkei in Japan.
7 An ancient Greek vase in perfect condition is priceless and an old biro that doesn't work is valueless.

56.2
1 interest – money chargeable on a loan
2 mortgage – a loan to purchase property
3 an overdrawn account – a bank account with minus money in it
4 savings account – an account that is used mainly for keeping money
5 current account – an account that cheques are drawn on for day-to-day use
6 pension – money paid to people after a certain age
7 disability allowance – money paid to people with a handicap
8 child benefit – money paid towards the cost of raising a family
9 grant – money given by the government for education, welfare, etc.

56.3 The only two headlines that most people would be pleased to see are 'Interest rates down' and 'VAT to be reduced'.

56.4 1 inheritance tax 2 loan 3 black 4 rebate 5 refund

Unit 57

57.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 That's a vast amount of money to be wasted like that!
2 That's a considerable number of people.
3 It seems it'll be about average again this year, then.
4 At least that's only a small amount of money.
5 You've wasted a huge amount of time.

57.2 *small:* miniscule minute meagre insignificant
large: gigantic overwhelming excessive sizeable

1 minute/miniscule
2 overwhelming/excessive/gigantic
3 a(n) excessive/gigantic
4 sizeable
5 excessive

57.3
1 a lot of (this gives a rather negative feel; lots of would sound too positive)
2 plenty of / lots of (a positive quantity)
3 much / a lot
4 a good / great deal of / a lot of
5 Many / A lot of (**Many** and **much** *are* sometimes used in affirmatives, but they do have a somewhat formal feel about them used in that way; the general rule of thumb is not to use **much** and **many** in simple affirmatives.)

57.4 *Possible answers:*

1 quite shocked / extremely anxious
2 slightly anxious / a bit surprised
3 rather/quite/totally confused
4 quite surprised
5 a bit / rather sad
6 absolutely/utterly/completely exhausted / extremely tired

57.5 *Possible sentences:*

1 There are dozens of empty jam-jars in this cupboard. What shall I do with them?
2 He's got heaps of money; he can pay for himself.
3 There's tons of rubbish in the garden; it'll take us months to clear it all.
4 I only ever take a tiny drop of milk in my tea, thank you.

Unit 58

58.1 1 period 2 age (era could also be used) 3 era 4 time 5 spell

58.2 *Possible answers:*

1 I've told you time and time again not to leave that fridge door open!
2 Hello! Nice to see you! You're just in time for tea/coffee!
3 By the time you get this card, I'll probably already be at your house.
4 I'd rather talk to you one at a time, if you don't mind.
5 Could you use the old photocopier for the time being? The new one's being repaired.
6 It can get extremely cold at times in...
7 I'll do my best to get there on time.

58.3 *Possible answers:*

1 ...takes about three hours.
2 ...run/last for about half an hour each side.
3 ...lasted me three winters.
4 ...went on for ages.
5 ...have elapsed/passed since then, but people still remember that day.
6 ...pass quickly.
7 ...take your time.

58.4
1 Yes, she's permanent now.
2 Yes, absolutely timeless.
3 Well, provisionally.
4 Yes, I believe it's eternal.
5 It's a temporary measure.

Unit 59

59.1
1 ...them shortened?
2 ...extremely tall.
3 ...a short cut.
4 ...height.
5 ...widened it /...'ve widened it.
6 ...heighten the feeling.

59.2
1 a width of the pool
2 to lengthen
3 a very narrow range of goods
4 a long-distance call
5 shallow water
6 faraway/distant places

59.3
1 it's much bigger now.
2 it's a lengthy business.
3 to give us more room.
4 there's a wide range.
5 you should broaden it.
6 for miles along the river.

59.4 1 at; of 2 in 3 from (or possibly at) 4 from; to

59.5 1 spread 2 expanded/grew; contracted 3 shrunk 4 stretches 5 grown

Unit 60

60.1
1 ...was obliged/forced to close down / had to close down / had no choice/alternative but to close down.
2 ...it's optional.
3 ...have to / 'll have to pay a deposit.
4 ...no choice/alternative, otherwise we'll go/be bankrupt.
5 ...must / ought to / should take it to the cleaners.
6 ...forced him to hand it over.
7 ...mandatory (or perhaps **obligatory**) for dangerous driving.
8 ...compulsory/obligatory in all secondary schools.
9 ...needn't have bought us a present / didn't have to buy us a present / shouldn't have bought us a present.
10 ... exempt from military service / not obliged to do military service.

60.2 *Possible answers:*
2 Most people usually suffer from a lack of time or of money.
3 Filling out a tax return is obligatory once a year in many countries.
4 Most people feel they are in need of more time and money, and millions of people in the world are in need of food and a decent home.
5 Death is certainly inevitable for all of us.
6 If you are an adult you probably no longer have to go to school or wear nappies!
7 When I was at school, sport, maths, English and French were compulsory.

60.3 *Suggested answers:*

	highly	*quite*	*very*	*absolutely*
possible	✗	✓	✓	✗
impossible	✗	✓	✗	✓
probable	✓	✓	✓	✗
(un)likely	✓	✓	✓	✗
inevitable	✗	✗	✗	✓
certain	✗	✓	✗	✓

60.4 *Suggested answers:*
1 A videophone in every home is quite possible by 2025.
2 Rain in the Amazon forest within eight days is highly likely!
3 A human being living to 250 is absolutely impossible.
4 We'll all be dead by 2250: absolutely inevitable.
5 A flying saucer in Hong Kong is highly unlikely.
6 An opportunity to meet the US President is highly unlikely for most people but quite possible for some.
7 A third world war? Very possible if we continue to build nuclear weapons.

Unit 61

61.1
1 **racket** would be an ideal word here
2 **sound**, since it is obviously pleasant
3 **noises** if you mean different sounds, but **noise** is also possible here if you interpret 'some' to mean not a plural number, but *one* sound of 'a certain, unidentifiable type', e.g. 'Some animal must have come into the garden last night; look at these footprints.' (it's not clear what sort of animal)
4 **din** or **racket**; **din** is often used for discordant music
5 **noise** is the only word in the group that can be used uncountably (without *a*)

61.2 *Suggested words:*

1 hiss 2 clatter *or* crash 3 rustle 4 thud 5 bang 6 roar 7 rumble

61.3

verb/noun	*typical source(s) of the sound*
hum	an electrical appliance when switched on, e.g. computer, freezer, record player
rattle	small stones in a tin being shaken
bleep	the alarm on a battery-driven clock
screech	a car's tyres when the brakes are applied very suddenly or when the car drives off with extremely high acceleration
chime	an old-fashioned pendulum clock or a big public clock on a building when they are sounding the hour or quarter-hour

61.4
1 It was a police officer holding a flashlamp.
2 I'd never seen such a beautiful bracelet.
3 Then it died, leaving us in complete darkness.
4 It was clearly time to get up and move out.

61.5 1 a 2 c 3 b

Unit 62

62.1 *Suggested questions:*

1 Do you rent this house?
2 Could I possibly borrow your camera? / Would you lend me your camera?
3 Which room have I been allocated?
4 Does the school provide exercise books and things?
5 Would you like to contribute to our collection for the disabled?
6 What sort of property do you have / live in / own?
7 Is it possible to hire a room for a meeting?

62.2
1 The millionaire donated a swimming pool to the school.
2 The Director was allocated the best parking-place.
3 My mother's cousin left me £5,000 in her will.
4 A farmer nearby provided us with logs for the fire.
5 When I retired they presented me with a camcorder.
6 The restaurant catered for vegetarians.

62.3 1 handed down 2 give out 3 let go of 4 gave...away 5 hand over

62.4
1 your wallet/handbag/money
2 jewellery/furniture
3 a book / a picture of someone
4 hand-out/tests
5 an antique / a set of books

62.5
1 properties
2 loans
3 landlords
4 tenants
5 owner/proprietor
6 estate
7 borrowed
8 properties
9 possessions
10 belongings/possessions

Unit 63

63.1 *Possible first sentences:*

1 That big tree was swaying back and forth in the wind.
2 The cruise-liner is leaving tomorrow.
3 The most famous river in France is the Seine.
4 A cat ran out in front of the car.
5 A train was derailed near London yesterday.

63.2

1 a person dancing; a person who is drunk trying to walk may sway from side to side; a boat or a bus can also sway from side to side.
2 an insect crawls; a baby does too before it can walk; there is a fast over-arm swimming style called 'crawl'.
3 anything moving extremely fast, e.g. a bird or animal can shoot by, a plane can shoot overhead, a fish can shoot through the water.
4 a bird's or butterfly's wings; a piece of washing on the line in the wind; a person's eyelashes; a curtain in the wind.
5 anything moving slowly on water, e.g. a boat, a piece of wood; a person can drift through life (moving without any sense of purpose or direction); your thoughts can drift to something or someone (it happens unintentionally).

63.3 1 rate 2 pace 3 velocity 4 speed

63.4 *Possible answers:*

	usage	*grammar*
quick	something that takes a short time, e.g. quick snack; quick loo visit	adjective only; can be used with 'to', e.g. she was quick to respond
rapid	more formal; used for things like 'rapid economic growth'; 'rapid increase/decline'	adjective only
swift	more restricted generally; used for things like 'swift-flowing stream'; swift response/decision/ reaction	adjective only; can be used with 'in', e.g. 'He was swift in pointing out how wrong I was.'

63.5 *Possible situations:*

1 If you are very late for something.
2 If you *want* to be late for something, e.g. something unpleasant.
3 If you aren't in a hurry. You can also say this about your studies, if you are not going either particularly fast or slow.
4 If you were hiding from someone, e.g. under a bed or behind a door.
5 If you really don't want to meet them or talk to them, or don't want them to see you.

63.6

1 A **slowcoach** is a person who does everything too slowly, who takes an unacceptably long time to do things.
2 A **streaker** is someone who takes off all their clothes in a public place and runs naked in front of everyone.
3 A **plodder** is a person who sticks at a task and completes it slowly and usually with great effort and difficulty, no matter how long it takes.
4 A **stirrer** is a person who deliberately 'stirs up' or causes trouble between people by saying things that set them against one another.

Unit 64

64.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 glossy	4 prickly	7 jagged	10 gnarled
2 downy/fluffy	5 rough/coarse	8 coarse	
3 slippery	6 fluffy	9 polished/smooth	

Things you might find in your house:

1 a pair of silk stockings; the metal surface of a hi-fi or television
2 a heavy-duty carpet; a garden path
3 a highly-varnished table-top; a mirror; a brass object
4 a cat or dog; a pet rabbit; a fur coat
5 bed-linen; the surface of a table

64.2 1 This is about average for a baby.
2 A 20-stone person is a huge, probably very overweight person.
3 8 ounces is half a pound, i.e. 227 grams. It's enough for many people; is it enough for you?
4 The person writing this weighs 11st 7lb.

64.3 *Possible answers:*

1 a big cat such as a panther or leopard
2 a fish; an eel
3 a hedgehog; a porcupine
4 a bear; a panda
5 a baby chick or duckling; the new-born of many animals

64.4

```
 P      SHADY       D     S      C        D
 O         U        E     H      O        A
OUNCE      L        N    VIVID   A        Z
 N         L    SPARSE    N      ROUGH    Z
 D                  E     Y      S       GLARE
                                 E        E
```

Possible pair-puzzles:

```
    H
CUMBERSOME
    A
    V
    Y
```

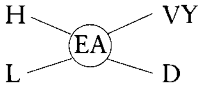

```
    L
    I
    G
FEATHER
    T
```

Unit 65

65.1
1 reached/secured
2 fulfilled
3 reach/attain/achieve
4 attain/realise/fulfill
5 realise/fulfill
6 reach/achieve
7 come

65.2

verb	*noun*	*adjective*	*adverb*
realise	realisation	realisable	–
–	difficulty	difficult	–
target	target	targeted	–
–	ambition	ambitious	ambitiously
fail	failure	failed	–
trouble	trouble	troubling troublesome troubled	–

Comments:

targeted is used in sentences such as 'The government has decided to give the extra funds to targeted groups in society.' (specifically chosen)

difficult has no adverb in English; we say 'We did it **with difficulty**'.

troubling: We have seen some very **troubling** developments recently. (worrying)

troublesome: They are a **troublesome** group of students. (cause trouble)

troubled: I've been feeling rather **troubled** lately about my daughter. (worried with problems)

unfailingly: 'failingly' doesn't exist, but unfailingly does, e.g. She is unfailingly honest; you can trust her completely.

failed: They have made three failed attempts to save the company.

65.3
1 I find **it** very difficult to understand English idioms.
2 She succeeded **in rising** to the top in her profession.
3 Do you ever have any trouble **using** this photocopier? I always seem to.
4 I've **managed** to work quite hard this last month. (**accomplish** usually has a direct object, e.g 'I've accomplished a lot this month.')
5 I'm amazed that you can cope **with** all the work they give you.

65.4 *Possible answers:*
2 I'd get it seen to / repaired.
3 It would probably fold eventually.
4 The marker(s) might take the overall performance into account and ignore the one bad result.
5 Perhaps try again, or abandon it.
6 Perhaps give up, or ask for help and advice from my teacher.

65.5 *Possible answers:*
1 Someone is finding their housework / family responsibilities impossible to manage.
2 Perhaps someone who invested £5,000 and lost it all.
3 It could be about a business someone started, or about a project, or something they were building!
4 Talking about someone's success, e.g. in getting a job / in sport; **pull it off** means to succeed, to win, when it is difficult or people are not expecting you to succeed.

Unit 66

66.1

2 bottles/cartons of milk
4 cans of coke
a tin of condensed milk
a packet/box of chocolate biscuits
a packet of cigarettes
a large box of matches
a jar of honey
6 packets of crisps

66.2

1 tub, pot
2 barrel, bottles, sack (of potatoes)
3 cans, bottles, barrels, packs, crates, cases
4 *any of these:* bottle/carton (of milk), jug (of milk), mug (of tea), packet (of cornflakes), jar (of marmalade), glass (of milk), bowl (of sugar, for cornflakes)
5 sack (or perhaps a bag)
6 bag and basket
7 (a) 200 (b) 20

66.3

1 a jar of peanut butter
2 a packet of washing powder
3 a carton of cream
4 a tube of skin cream
5 a tin of sardines
6 a tin of tomatoes
7 a bag of apples
8 a box of tissues
9 a packet of butter
10 a pack of 12 cans of beer
11 a bottle of washing-up liquid

66.4

1 chocolate/tool/match
2 wine/milk/water
3 carrier/shopping/mail
4 milk/cream/water
5 wine whisky hour
6 flower/tea/coffee

Unit 67

67.1

1 I have strong views on marriage.
2 Most people believe in life after death.
3 I was in favour of the proposed changes.
4 What does she think of the new teacher?
5 This is absurd from our point of view.
6 He's quite wrong in my opinion.
7 Well, that's just silly, to my mind.

67.2

Possible answers:

1 eccentric
2 firm/strong
3 moderate/middle-of-the-road
4 fanatical/obsessive
5 conservative/traditional

67.3

1 I've always doubted that ghosts exist.
2 I have always held that people should rely on themselves more.
3 Claudia maintains that the teacher has been unfair to her.
4 I was convinced (that) I had been in that room before.
5 He feels we should have tried again.

Unit 68

68.1

adjective	*abstract noun*	*adjective*	*abstract noun*
furious	fury	frustrated	frustration
anxious	anxiety	cheerful	cheerfulness
grateful	gratitude	enthusiastic	enthusiasm
ecstatic	ecstasy	apprehensive	apprehension
inspired	inspiration	excited	excitement

68.2

1 confused
2 depressed
3 frustrated
4 discontented
5 enthusiastic
6 cross
7 fed-up
8 upset
9 thrilled

68.3 *Possible answers:*

1 I felt anxious until we heard the results of my mother's medical tests.
2 I felt slightly apprehensive before my first trip to China.
3 I was very grateful to him for lending me his car.
4 I was in a terrible rage when I heard about the unkind things the teacher had said to my best friend.
5 I was miserable for days when I broke up with my boyfriend.
6 I was so inspired by the book, *The Story of San Michele*, that I decided I would become a doctor too.
7 I was initially very enthusiastic about skating but I soon lost interest.

68.4 1 exciting 2 inspired 3 depressing 4 frustrating 5 confused

68.5 1 I'm hot 2 I'm thirsty 3 I'm cross 4 I'm cold 5 I'm hungry 6 I'm tired

Unit 69

69.1

verb	*noun*	*adjective*	*adverb*
–	passion	passionate	passionately
tempt	temptation	tempting	temptingly
attract	attraction	attractive	attractively
appeal	appeal	appealing	appealingly
disgust	disgust	disgusting	disgustingly
hate	hatred	hateful	hatefully
repel	repulsion	repulsive/ repellent	repulsively
–	affection	affectionate	affectionately
adore	adoration	adoring	adoringly

69.2 1 women 2 birds 3 spiders 4 steal 5 pain 6 the future

69.3

1 I can't stand jazz.
2 Beer revolts me.
3 I'm not really keen on tea.
4 His art appeals to me.
5 She has totally captivated him.
6 Would you like a pizza tonight?
7 She is keen on rowing and golf.
8 I'm not looking forward to the exam.

69.4 1 b 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 a

69.5 *Suggested answers:*

1 I like all fruit and I adore curry but I can't stand tripe.
2 the holidays
3 language
4 Their eyes, probably.
5 I enjoy meeting people from all over the world.
6 A chocolate ice-cream.
7 Arrogance and a negative attitude to life.
8 Losing my health.
9 I rather fancy going to the theatre.

Unit 70

70.1 *Possible answers:*

1 confessed
2 boasted
3 shrieked
4 threatened
5 stammered/stuttered
6 begged
7 complained
8 urged

70.2

1 He confessed to breaking the vase (*or* that he had broken...).
2 The little boy boasted of being the cleverest person in the class (*or* that he was...).
3 She shrieked that there was a mouse over there.
4 She threatened to stop my pocket money if I did not behave.
5 He stammered/stuttered that he had done it.
6 He begged me to help him.
7 She complained that the hotel was filthy.
8 He urged Jim to try harder.

70.3

adverb	*adjective*	*noun*	*adverb*	*adjective*	*noun*
angrily	angry	anger	cheerfully	cheerful	cheerfulness
furiously	furious	fury	gratefully	grateful	gratitude
bitterly	bitter	bitterness	anxiously	anxious	anxiety
miserably	miserable	misery			

70.4

1 a threat
2 a complaint
3 an objection
4 a beggar
5 insistent
6 argumentative

70.5

1 urged/begged
2 a) to b) on c) about/of
3 threatened
4 all except **urge** and **beg**
5 complain – grumble; maintain – declare; confess – admit; urge – encourage; beg – plead; grumble – moan.

70.6 *Possible answers:*

1 'We can easily break into the bank,' she said **boldly.**
2 'Thank you so much,' he said **gratefully**.
3 'I wish you'd get a move on,' he said **impatiently**.
4 'I love you so much,' she said **passionately**.
5 'I'll do it if you really want me to,' he said **reluctantly**.
6 'I don't know anyone here,' she said **shyly**.
7 'Of course, I believe you,' he said **sincerely**.

Unit 71

71.1 *Some possible answers:*

1 That smells wonderful.
2 Your hair looks great.
3 It sounds brilliant.
4 This tastes delicious.
5 I feel great.
6 That sounds fantastic.
7 You look upset. What's the matter?
8 He smells disgusting.

71.2 1 witness 2 peer 3 observe 4 glance 5 stare

71.3
1 witnessed
2 gazed/stared
3 grasped
4 press
5 stroked
6 observed
7 grabbed/snatched
8 glanced

71.4 1 bitter 2 sweet 3 hot 4 sour 5 spicy 6 salty

71.5 1 snatch/grab 2 finger 3 handle 4 paw

71.6 *Possible answers:*

1 aromatic
2 smelly
3 evil-smelling
4 fragrant
5 sweet-smelling
6 scented

71.7 1 UFOs 2 telepathy 3 ghosts 4 intuition 5 déjà-vu 6 premonition

71.8 *Possible answers:*

1 *sight:* I climbed up to the top of a mountain and was above the level of some low clouds. I could not see the ground but could see the tops of half a dozen other mountains rising out of the clouds.
2 *hearing:* I heard my newborn baby crying for the first time.
3 *taste:* I tasted some wonderful soup after a long day's walking in the hills.
4 *smell:* I shall always remember smelling the sea after a long time away from it.
5 *touch:* I love the feel of fur against my skin.
6 *sixth sense:* I have often had the experience of not having written to an old friend for a long time and then our letters to each other suddenly cross in the post.

Unit 72

72.1 1 blush 2 shiver 3 chew 4 blink 5 wink

72.2
1 Someone is snoring.
2 Someone is yawning.
3 Someone is hiccoughing.
4 Someone is coughing and/or sneezing.
5 Someone's stomach is rumbling.
6 Someone has burped.

72.3
1 blink
2 blush
3 frown
4 grin
5 sigh
6 sneeze
7 snore
8 wink
9 yawn

72.4 1 chewing 2 perspiring 3 lick 4 swallow 5 grin 6 shaken
The central word is **hiccough**.

72.5 It is possible to draw bubble networks in any way that seems logical to you and that helps you to learn. You could group together words associated with **illness** – **sneeze, cough, shiver** and so on, or you could organise your networks around **parts of the body** – you could put yawn, **lick, bite,** etc. around the word **mouth**. Words that might be added to the networks include **hug, sip** and stare.

Unit 73

73.1 1 toowit toowoo 3 woof 5 meow
2 baa 4 oink 6 cockadoodledoo

73.2 1 crowing 2 mooing 3 barked 4 neighing 5 were clucking 6 purring

73.3 You would probably be unhappy to be called any of the adjectives in D except perhaps dogged.

73.4 1 *true*
2 *true*
3 *false* – **hoot**, when used about people, is normally followed by the phrase 'with laughter'.
4 *false* – if singing is called **caterwauling**, it must be very discordant and unpleasant to the ear.
5 *true*
6 *false* – **grunting** at someone suggests a lack of interest in that person.

73.5 *Possible sentences:*
2 As soon as she heard the phone, she flew across the room to answer it.
3 I learnt to swim when I was about seven years old.
4 The hillside was covered in loose stones and the walkers slithered uncertainly down the slope.
5 He hopped across the room to avoid putting any weight on his painful ankle.
6 The little children happily trotted off to school.
7 I'll have to gallop through my work if I'm going to get it done on time.

73.6 1 puppy or puppies (a spaniel is a kind of dog)
2 kittens (a **tom** is a male cat and a **Siamese** is a kind of cat)
3 cub(s) (polar bears like all other bears have cubs)
4 lambs (**wool** comes from sheep)
5 ducklings (the verb **hatched** makes it clear that the sentence is talking about a creature coming from an egg, and **swim** makes it clear that a water-bird is being described, rather than a hen, for example.)

Unit 74

74.1 1 pie 2 ocean 3 clanger 4 plate 5 handle 6 block 7 shot

74.2 1 springs to mind 3 just goes to show 5 leaves a lot to be desired
2 flies in the face of 4 're sitting pretty

74.3 *Possible groupings:*

be in a fix (be in trouble/have a serious problem), **be up to it** (be capable of something), **be out of sorts** (be unwell) all have in common the verb **be**, but also the fact that they are followed by prepositional phrases.

child's play (very easy) and **a fool's errand** (a wasted/pointless journey to get something) are both 's idioms. (See Unit 81 for more of these.)

hold your tongue (be silent), **hold your horses** (wait before acting/speaking) both of course contain hold, but **hold your tongue** could also go with **stay mum** (be silent) because they are very close in meaning. The difference is that **hold your tongue** is often used in aggressive commands, e.g. Hold your tongue, you! (shut up!).

rough and ready (basic / lacking in comfort), **odds and ends** (small items difficult to group along with others), **give or take** (as in 'It'll cost £700, give or take £50', meaning between £650 and £750 pounds approximately) are all **binomials** (phrases joined by **and**, **but**, **or**; see Unit 77).

74.4
1 go to bed
2 a stronger, more informal version of child's **play**, i.e. simple, too easy for me.
3 clearly means more than just 'unemployed', as he didn't have a home; it means totally without money or property, living and sleeping on the streets.

Unit 75

75.1
1 to think of it
2 ask me
3 Talking of
4 you say
5 reminds me
6 I was saying

75.2
1 this and that *or* this, that and the other 2 that's it 3 this is it 4 that's that

75.3
now and then *or* every now and then
(occasionally)

NOW

now then!
[attract attention because
you're going to say something]

here and now / right now
[immediately; also used
to emphasise your point]

1 Do you want me to do it here and now, or can it wait?
2 Now then, everybody, listen carefully. I have news for you.
3 I bump into her in town (every) now and then, but not that often.

75.4
1 When it comes to...
2 As luck would have it...
3 If all else fails...
4 If the worst comes to the worst...
5 As far as I'm concerned...
6 What with one thing and another...

Unit 76

76.1
1 hatter 2 rake 3 mouse 4 post 5 bat

76.2
1 slept 2 falling 3 dog 4 parrot 5 snow 6 a sheet

76.3
1 as quick as a flash
2 as red as a beetroot
3 as flat as a pancake
4 as fresh as a daisy
5 as strong as an ox

76.4
Across
1 brass 2 hatter 4 sheet 5 daisy 7 mouse 9 bone

Down
1 bat 2 hard 3 easy 6 ice 8 cucumber 10 feather

76.5
1 He/She has eyes like a hawk.
2 Our plan went like a dream.
3 She/He eats like a horse.
4 He/She has a head like a sieve.

Unit 77

77.1
1 high and dry
2 rough and ready
3 safe and sound
4 wined and dined
5 rack and ruin
6 prim and proper

77.2 law and order now and then hit and miss clean and tidy
pick and choose sick and tired leaps and bounds

Suggested sentences:

1 There are lots of courses. You can pick and choose.
2 The flat looks all clean and tidy now for our visitors.
3 I'm sick and tired of traffic jams. I'm going to start using the train.
4 Finding the right people was rather difficult; sometimes it was hit and miss.
5 My knowledge of English has progressed in leaps and bounds since I've been using this book.
6 The new Prime Minister promised that law and order would be the most important priority.
7 I've seen her now and then, taking her dog for a walk.

77.3 1 or 2 or 3 to 4 or 5 but 6 or

Unit 78

78.1
1 ... of gold
2 ... as nails
3 ... as gold
4 ... off the mark
5 ... fish
6 ... slow-coach

78.2
1 a know-all
2 the teacher's pet
3 a big-head
4 top of the class
5 a lazy-bones (or you could say this person is **bone-idle**)

78.3 *Idioms with gold:* to be as good as gold / to have a heart of gold
Idioms with mark: to be quick/slow off the mark

1 ... a head like a sieve.
2 ... a good head for figures.
3 ... have a head for heights.
4 ... has her head screwed on.
5 ... has his head in the clouds.

Another example of a key-word family might be eye:

He only has eyes for Mary. (he never looks at other girls)
He has eyes in the back of his head. / He has eyes like a hawk. (said of someone who never misses anything, especially when people are doing something wrong)
She has an eye for antiques. (she is good at spotting them)

Look up eye in a good dictionary and see how many more idioms there are using the word.

78.4 a) your nerves (always with possessive, my, our, John's, etc.) b) the neck (always used with the)

78.5 1 an odd-ball 2 middle-of-the-road 3 over the top

78.6
1 If you say that someone's **heart's in the right place**, you mean they have good intentions and want to do good things, but have actually done something wrong/stupid/irritating without intending to.
2 If a person is **a bit of a square peg in a round hole**, we mean they do not fit in naturally, they are out of place in the situation they find themselves in.
3 If you say **I was miles away**, you mean you were not concentrating on what was happening or what someone was saying, and were thinking about something else.

Unit 79

79.1 *positive:* to be over the moon to feel/be as pleased as Punch
negative: to feel/be a bit down to feel/be browned off

79.2 *Possible answers:*

2 Probably quite browned off, or even in a (black) mood.
3 Over the moon, as pleased as Punch, on cloud nine.
4 Probably like a bear with a sore head *and* in a (black) mood!
5 Down in the dumps, a bit down, browned off.
6 On cloud nine, over the moon.

79.3

1 ... life out of me.
2 ... the weather.
3 ... as the day is long.
4 ... cloud nine.
5 ... out of my skin.
6 ... eat a horse.
7 ... form. (You could also say **on top of the world.**)

79.4 *Scorpio:*

get itchy feet – get a desire to be travelling or moving around.
(to be) **on the edge of your seat** – to be impatient, excited, in suspense, waiting for something to happen.

Leo:

to be **up in arms** – to be very angry and protesting loudly.
to be **in two minds** – unable to decide or make your mind up about something.

1 I'm in two minds about that job in Paris.
2 I've been on the edge of my seat all day. What's happened? Tell me!
3 Her son got itchy feet and went off to Uruguay.
4 Everyone was up in arms when they cancelled the outing.

79.5

1 felt as if my **head** was going round
2 was scared out of his **wits**
3 **swell** with pride
4 to be in a black mood
5 get **carried** away

Example sentences:

1 So many people surrounded me all wanting to ask me questions. I felt as if my head was going round.
2 That programme about nuclear weapons scared me out of my wits.
3 Seeing her in the graduation procession made her parents swell with pride.
4 Careful! The boss is in a black mood today.
5 I know I shouldn't have listened to his lies, but I got carried away by his charming personality.

Unit 80

80.1 You might find the following idioms and expressions, depending on your dictionary:

1 let the **cat** out of the bag
to think you are the **cat**'s whiskers (think you're wonderful)
fight like **cat** and dog (fight furiously)
there's not enough room to swing a **cat** (very little room / cramped conditions)

2 be in a **fix**
get a **fix** on your position (find out exactly where you are)
something is **fixed** in your mind/brain (you remember it clearly)
you **fix** somebody up with something (provide them with something)

3 **pour** oil on troubled waters
pour cold water on an idea / a plan (criticise something so that people don't want to do it any more)
pour your heart out to somebody (tell them all your troubles)
it's **pouring** with rain (raining very heavily)

4 **stir** things up
cause a **stir** (cause great excitement or anger among everyone)
stir yourself (move yourself, get up, get moving)
stir-fry (vegetables, meat, etc. fried very quickly on a fierce heat)

80.2

1 take a back seat
2 stir things up
3 light at the end of the tunnel
4 the bottom of things
5 a muddle
6 up and take notice
7 grasp of
8 by the horns; under the carpet

80.3

1 go back to the beginning again
2 a compromise
3 in great suspense
4 are found together and in the same place and connected to one another
5 behave yourself / follow the rules

80.4 *Possible questions:*

1 Are you still quarrelling all the time with Mabel?
2 Has the new job been a success?
3 Should I ring Maurice? Or send him a little gift, perhaps?

Unit 81

81.1 *Suggested rewrites:*

1 The hotel we were staying in was out of this world.
2 Joe is head and shoulders above the other kids when it comes to doing hard sums.
3 This restaurant knocks spots off all the other restaurants in town.
4 You're streets ahead of me in understanding all this new technology; I'm impressed.

81.2

1 to think you are the cat's whiskers
2 to have green fingers
3 a dog's breakfast
4 to be on the ball

81.3 1 – 4   2 – 3   3 – 1   4 – 2

81.4 *Suggested answers:*

1 She was dressed up **like a dog's dinner.**
2 Penny thinks she's **the cat's whiskers/the bee's knees.** (these two are synonyms)
3 She's a **dab-hand** at DIY; just look at those bookshelves she made.
4 He has **the gift of the gab.**
5 Mick **has a way with** the secretaries; just look at how they react when he wants something done.
6 He wants a new office, a secretary and a new computer. But compared to what Geoff wants, he **wants jam on it!**
7 She said I was the best boss they'd ever had. It was obvious she was **buttering me up.** I wonder what she wants?
8 He often **runs down** his school.
9 She always **picks** holes in everything I say.

81.5

1 There is a verb **to ham it up**, which can be used to criticise an actor's performance if it is overdone and grossly exaggerated; we can call such an actor **a ham actor.**
2 If you don't like something or somebody you can say it/he/she **just isn't my cup of tea**, which means you do not feel attracted to it or to the person.
3 If you say something **is the icing on the cake** you are praising it as something extra good on something that is already good. 'Flying first class was wonderful, and being met at the other end by a limousine really was the icing on the cake.'
4 If you call a person **a real nutcase**, you mean they are mad/crazy.
5 If you say someone **knows his/her onions**, you are praising their knowledge of a particular subject.
6 If you say a group of people really **are the cream**, you are saying they are the best possible representatives of a larger group. If they are the absolute best, you can say they are **the cream of the cream.**

Unit 82

82.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 It seems that Ann can't get a word in edgeways.
2 It seems that Mick got the wrong end of the stick.
3 It seems that Reg can't make head nor tail of what Dan is saying.
4 Madge seems to be talking down to Eric.

82.2 1 wrap up the discussion 2 talk rubbish 3 start the ball rolling 4 come/get to the point

82.3 1 speaks 2 talk 3 talking 4 talking

Unit 83

83.1

1 B is **driving a hard bargain.**
2 A could be described as someone who **has a finger in every pie.**
3 A seems to have the song 'Lady in Red' **on the brain.**
4 A seems to have **bought a pig in a poke.**

83.2

1 Can I tell you about a problem I have? I just have to **get it off my chest.** It's been bothering me for a while now.
2 They charged us £100 for a tiny room without a bath. It was **a real rip-off!** *or* They **really ripped us off!**
3 There'll just be time to **have a bite to eat** before the show.
4 I've **got to hand it to her,** Maria coped with the situation brilliantly. *or* I've got to **hand it to Maria,** she coped with... etc.
5 I think I'll just go upstairs and **have a nap**, if nobody objects.
6 Well, I **crashed out** on the sofa at about two o'clock, and the party was still in full swing.

83.3 *Possible answers:*

1 You might have to get a bite to eat on the way if you had to set off on a journey and didn't really have time to eat before leaving, or couldn't get anything before leaving, perhaps because it was too early.
2 Typically, hotels charge over the odds during festival weeks or if there is an important event on, for example, the Olympic Games. In short, any time when demand is very high.
3 Some people find it hard to make any headway in learning languages, but if you have got this far with this book, you don't have that problem!
4 You might be willing to pay through the nose if it is a performer you like very much and/or a once-in-a-lifetime opportunity to see that person.

83.4 1 foot the bill 2 put your feet up 3 watch the box

Follow-up:

to have a word/name on the tip of your tongue: 'Oh dear, her name's on the tip of my tongue! What is it? Laura? Lona? Laurel? Something like that, anyway.'

to hold one's tongue: 'I'm going to hold my tongue. The last time I said anything it only caused trouble, so this time, I'll say nothing.'

to be head over heels for someone / head over heels in love with someone: 'Jim's absolutely head over heels for that new girl. He talks about her all day long and blushes every time her name's mentioned.'

to toe the line: 'The boss gave him a very hard time yesterday about his lazy attitude and all the absences he's had. He warned him he might lose his job. He's going to have to toe the line from now on.'

to tip-toe / to walk on tip-toes: 'We'll have to tip-toe past the children's bedroom. I don't want to wake them up.'

to get someone's back up: 'Sally won't get any sympathy from her workmates, in fact, quite the opposite, she seems to get everybody's back up with her selfish attitude.'

Unit 84

84.1
1 Many hands make light work.
2 Don't put all your eggs in one basket.
3 Too many cooks spoil the broth.

84.2
1 Never look a gift-horse in the mouth. (Both proverbs advise you to take advantage of good fortune when you have it in front of you.)
2 Don't cross your bridges before you come to them. (Both proverbs warn you not to anticipate future events.)
3 Never judge a book by its cover. (Both proverbs warn against trusting the external or superficial features of something.)
4 Familiarity breeds contempt. (**Absence makes the heart grow fonder** says that if you cannot be with someone or something you will love them/it more. **Familiarity breeds contempt** says that being with someone/something too much makes you hate them.)

84.3
1 People who live in glasshouses shouldn't throw stones.
2 When the cat's away, the mice will play.
3 There's no smoke without fire.
4 Take care of the pence and the pounds will take care of themselves.

Unit 85

85.1
1 prepare by mixing ingredients
2 manage to see
3 constitute (**make up** with this meaning is usually used in the passive)
4 put into bundles
5 understand (with this meaning **make out** is usually combined with 'can' or 'could' and 'not' or 'never')
6 making something more numerous or complete
7 claimed (**make out** implies that what is being claimed may well not be true)
8 renovate

85.2 1 up 2 without 3 up 4 out 5 up

85.3
1 ... make for the seaside.
2 ... make for happiness.
3 ... makes up to anyone...
4 Do them up...
5 ... make out...

85.4 *Possible word forks:*

make up	a story her face an excuse the prescription the sum to £50
make out	a cheque a case for her pardon some figures in the distance the outline of the coast a shopping list
do with	a cup of tea a cold drink some help some advice something to eat
do up	the bedroom your buttons her dress the house your coat

85.5 *Possible answers:*

Work: do the housework / some gardening / the washing-up / some shopping / the cooking / business with; make a bed / a profit/loss / a cup of tea

Trying, succeeding and failing: do your best; make an attempt / an effort / a mistake / the most of / a success of / a go of / a good/bad impression / a point of / allowances for.

Things you say: make arrangements / an agreement / a phone call / a suggestion / a decision / an excuse / fun of / a fuss of

Physical things: make war / love / a noise / a gesture / a face

85.6
1 WAR
2 your best
3 profit
4 business with
5 allowances for
6 a good impression

Unit 86

86.1 1 about/back 2 on 3 about 4 off 5 round 6 up

86.2 *Here is one way of completing the diagram:*

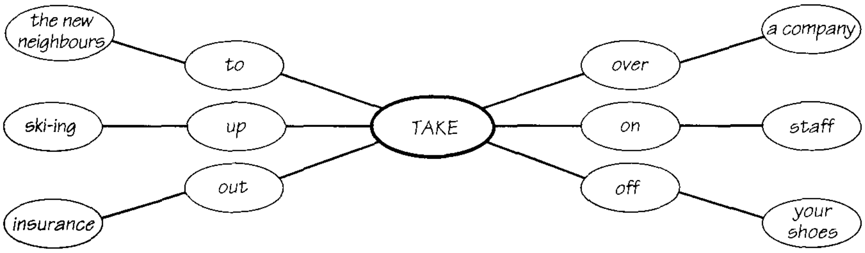

86.3
1 The story of the film takes place in Casablanca during the war.
2 Today's newspaper has brought to light some fascinating information about the Prime Minister.
3 The situation was brought to a head when the union called for a strike.
4 How does she always manage to take things in her stride?
5 The view from the place took my breath away.
6 He took advantage of her weakness at the time and she sold it to him.
7 The main function of a nurse is to take care of the sick.
8 You shouldn't take anyone or anything for granted.

86.4 *Possible answers:*

1 To bring down taxes, among other things.
2 I took to her at once.
3 It seems to be brought on by strong sunlight.
4 He really takes after his father.
5 I've taken up hang-gliding recently.
6 It really seems to have taken off now.
7 A person who takes off other people.
8 I'll bring him round somehow.

86.5 *Possible answer:*

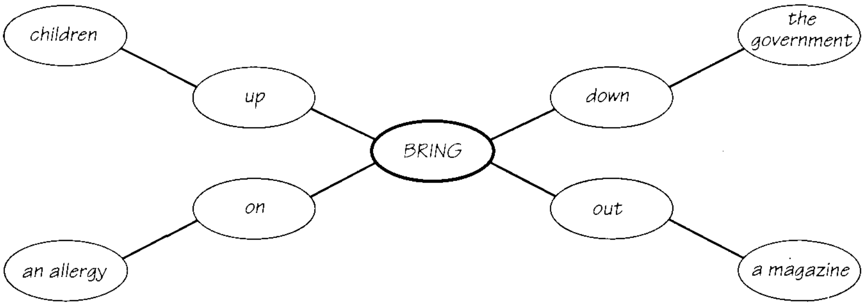

86.6 1 to bring into the open
2 to take part in
3 to take care of
4 to bring a law into force
5 to take pride in
6 to take control of

Unit 87

87.1 I don't often **receive** interesting advertising circulars these days. However, quite an unusual one came this morning. It was headed; 'Are you worried about **losing touch**?' And it went on, 'If so, **purchase** some of our special tablets today. Taking just one in the morning will help you **succeed** at work and at home. It will stop little problems from **depressing you** and will ensure that you **become** rich and successful with the minimum of effort on your behalf. Send just $25 today and you will **receive** your tablets and your key to success within ten days.'

87.2 1 round 2 through 3 down 4 by 5 up to 6 through

87.3 A1 – B5 A2 – B3 A3 – B4 A4 – B2 A5 – B1

87.4 *Possible answers:*

1 ... my old teddy bear.
2 ... Jack spilt tomato soup on Jill's dress.
3 ... study in weather like this.
4 ... going to the meeting.
5 ... her father's death yet.
6 Living in such a small place...

87.5 *Some example sentences:*

She was the first to **get off** the plane. (disembark from)
I don't understand what you are **getting at**. (trying to say)
They are due to **get back** at six. (return)
You **get ahead** in that company only if you are related to the boss. (succeed, are promoted)
Get lost! (colloquial) (Go away, stop bothering me!)

Unit 88

88.1 1 They have recently established a committee on teenage smoking.
2 We try to reserve some money for our holiday every week.
3 Ignore all your negative feelings and listen with an open mind.
4 If we hadn't left home so late, we would have arrived on time.
5 The government's unpopular proposals caused a wave of protests.

88.2
1 put out a bonfire / your host / the rubbish
2 put forward an idea / a proposal / a suggestion
3 put off a football match / an appointment / customers
4 put across your feelings/ideas/opinions
5 put up an umbrella / prices / a picture
6 put on a concert / a limp / clothes
7 put away papers/books/files
8 put up with someone's behaviour / bad manners / temper

88.3 *Some possible answers:*
1 Let's put up some posters.
2 I haven't had time to put things away yet.
3 We'd better set out/off at 7 a.m.
4 Yes, of course, I can put you up.
5 The likely cost of it all has put me off.
6 He is hoping to set up a travel business of his own.

88.4 *Possible answers:*
1 He is very set in his ways.
2 He's bound to put two and two together if you keep on behaving like that.
3 She has set her sights on becoming Prime Minister.
4 She really puts my back up.
5 It's sound business advice not to put all your eggs in one basket.
6 Please put your mind to the problem in hand.
7 She has set her heart on getting a seat in Parliament.
8 She threw petrol on the rubbish and set fire to it.
9 She's very good at putting things in a nutshell.
10 The building was set on fire by terrorist action.
11 This is the first time I've ever set foot in the southern hemisphere.
12 We spent most of our evenings setting the world to rights rather than studying.
13 You really should put your foot down (with him) or there'll be trouble later.
14 If the teacher doesn't set a good example, the children certainly won't behave properly.

Unit 89

89.1
1 continued
2 check
3 attacked
4 succeed
5 being published
6 complaining
7 choose
8 used

89.2
1 ...to a decision.
2 ...into a fortune / money / a legacy.
3 ...into bloom.
4 ...to a standstill.
5 ...into fashion...
6 ...into operation/existence...
7 ...to blows.
8 ...into view/sight.

89.3
1 It goes without saying
2 went to great lengths
3 on the go
4 go far
5 have a go
6 as far as it goes

89.4
1 The firm went bankrupt.
2 Only Jack's proposal.
3 Seven thirty, normally.
4 When I pulled a ligament.
5 From a doting aunt.
6 Any time after eight.
7 A bit of a fight, I think.

89.5 *Possible answers:*
1 ...their horoscope was very favourable.
2 ...put salt on it at once.
3 ...that skirt.
4 ...such a terrible experience again.
5 ...it began to get quite noisy.
6 ...having a boss who is younger than you.
7 ...Jack should be offered the job.
8 ...but also a box full of diaries.

Unit 90

90.1 1 back on 2 up to 3 up 4 into 5 to 6 up 7 after

90.2
1 It's rather hard in the circumstances.
2 Why, what's the...
3 She never looks you in the eye.
4 You'd never think she was a grandmother.
5 Why, what do you expect to happen?
6 She'll be lucky at the moment.
7 I thought it was time I had a new look.

90.3
1 ...the party.
2 ...anyone less fortunate than yourself.
3 ...the time the author spent in India.
4 ...I feel rather apprehensive.
5 ...the proposals made at the end of the report.
6 ...you next come to this country.

90.4
1 By the looks of him, he's...
2 looked...up and down
3 look small
4 much to look at
5 I don't like the look of
6 look on the bright side of things

90.5
1 look for your glasses / your purse / a new job / trouble / the meaning of life / love
2 look after a baby / a house / pets / yourself / number one (i.e. yourself in a selfish way, to the exclusion of others)
3 look through a report / a document / a magazine / the window
4 look to your parents / a friend / the boss

Unit 91

91.1 1 over 2 to 3 down 4 up 5 down 6 slip 7 off

91.2
1 Why doesn't she see through him?
2 I ran into Jack at the station yesterday.
3 I cooked the dinner yesterday. It's your turn (to do it) today.
4 I thought I was seeing things when I saw a monkey in the garden.
5 I wish you'd let me be.
6 He let us into the secret that they were planning to break into the house.
7 An enormous crowd turned out to hear the Prime Minister speak.

91.3 *Possible answers:*
1 ...the village will be cut off.
2 ...manager.
3 ...of the rope and fell into a crevasse.
4 ...those who came were very enthusiastic.
5 ...she refused to help him.
6 ...until the party was nearly over.
7 ...of sugar.
8 ...to letting him sleep on my floor.

91.4 *Some possible answers:*
1 I very much regret turning down an opportunity to work in Greece.
2 A train I was on once broke down making me terribly late for an important interview.
3 Big business runs the country as much as government, in my opinion.
4 I did an old lady a good turn when I helped her to get on the bus.
5 I'd like to break a ski-jumping record.
6 I'm sure it is possible for someone's heart to be broken.
7 Every New Year I resolve to turn over a new leaf – I decide to reply to all my letters promptly and to be generally much more organised.
8 I have to see to some shopping today.
9 My own home has never been broken into but a friend's house was once when I was staying with her.

91.5 *Here are two possibilities for each of the verbs in the unit:*

see
His parents have promised to see him through university.
It's hard to find your way round this building – I'll see you out.

run
Our dog was run over by a car.
She ran up an enormous bill at the dressmaker's.

turn
Please turn down your walkman – I can't concentrate.
I'm very tired. I'm going to turn in soon.

let
Let sleeping dogs lie.
This skirt is too tight – I'll have to let it out.

break
I'm broke – can you lend me five pounds for a few days?
Breaking in new shoes can be a painful experience.

Unit 92

92.1

1 proposal to end war
2 politician sells secrets to enemy
3 satellite is not launched
4 royal jewels are stolen
5 marriage of famous actress
6 person who saw crime in danger

92.2 *Suggested answers:*

1 Steps are being taken with the aim of providing more work for people.
2 Approval has been given to a plan to place restrictions on people's use of water.
3 A woman resigned from her job after undergoing some kind of unpleasant experience there.
4 A public opinion survey has looked into how people spend their money.
5 An attempt has been made to remove the Prime Minister from his/her position.
6 The Prince has promised to give support to his family.

92.3

1 makes a connection between
2 reduces
3 explodes in
4 promises
5 leads / is a major figure in

92.5 Make sure that you note down not only the headline but also a brief indication of what the story was about so that the headline makes sense when you revise your work later.

Unit 93

93.1

1 American; a Brit would write **labour**.
2 Brit; an American would write **center**.
3 American; a Brit would be much less likely to use a word of this type, probably preferring a phrase like 'taken into hospital'. If s/he did, s/he would probably spell it **hospitalised**; however, the ending **ize** instead of **ise** is becoming much more common in British English these days.
4 American; a Brit would spell it **theatre** (and would call it **cinema**.)
5 Brit; an American would write **favor**.
6 American, writing in an informal context; a Brit would write **through**.

93.2 *The pictures represent*

	for a Brit:	*for an American:*
1	TV aerial	TV antenna
2	wardrobe	closet
3	lift	elevator
4	vest	undershirt
5	sweets	candy
6	nappy	diaper
7	pram	baby carriage
8	curtains	drapes
9	sellotape	Scotch tape
10	lorry	truck

93.4
1 I had a puncture.
2 Pass me the biscuits.
3 It's in the wardrobe.
4 Open the curtains.
5 We've run out of petrol.
6 It's in the boot.
7 Single or return?
8 He left the tap on.
9 We're leaving in the autumn.
10 I hate standing in a queue.

93.5
1 You'd take the American to the bathroom and the Brit to the kitchen.
2 Cold for the American but hot for the Brit.
3 The Brit, because people do not usually talk about needing to change their underwear although you might well express the desire to change outer clothes.
4 One flight for the American but two for the Brit.
5 An American would be in a bank and a Brit in a café.

93.6 There are many other words you could add. Some might be: US eggplant (GB aubergine); US trashcan (GB rubbish bin); US German Shepherd (dog) (GB Alsatian).

Unit 94

94.1
1 Australia
2 journalist; university
3 mosquitoes; barbecue
4 business
5 afternoon
6 adults/parents

94.2
1 flee
2 catch (e.g. by police)
3 capture/obtain
4 man who annoys girls
5 the general public
6 plimsolls, sneakers
7 people awaiting trial
8 underwear

94.3
1 She gave birth to a baby girl.
2 Church-bells.
3 No, it isn't, it's too dreary.
4 Looking after the school buildings.
5 A glass of whisky (in theory, a small one).
6 Yes, he is.
7 A lake.

94.4
1 Probably not.
2 It is in lots of small very tight plaits.
3 When you have been working or exercising very hard, for instance.
4 They improvise. In other words, they just play whatever comes into their heads, they don't follow any music score.

Unit 95

95.1
1 drunk
2 man
3 stomach ache; doctor (note the colloquial or slang use of **belly** to mean **stomach** and **quack** to mean **doctor**)
4 dinner jacket
5 money
6 food; drink
7 a car
8 cup of tea
9 toilet
10 amazed

95.2
1 Wicked!
2 He's a cop.
3 Let's take him home.
4 Sure. I'll keep my eyes skinned.
5 It's in a drawer, over here.
6 He's in the nick.
7 Let's go for a run in the motor.

95.3
1 look
2 kids
3 table
4 teeth
5 church (by hook or by crook means by any method, fair or unfair)
6 hat

95.4
1 fellow (boyfriend)
2 breakfast
3 something given away free
4 bricklayer
5 a day off work claiming to be sick
6 barbecue

Unit 96

96.1
1 on a bus
2 in the country
3 in a theatre
4 in the street
5 outside a café
6 outside a cinema
7 at the zoo
8 at the beginning of a road
9 on a wall
10 at a supermarket check-out
11 on a packet of cigarettes
12 on a motorway
13 at the entrance to a car park
14 on a cycle path
15 on a river bank

96.2
1 to bring a legal case against
2 a punishment
3 something which has been or is to be bought
4 someone who goes on private land without permission
5 not to do something
6 to get off a means of public transport (bus, train)
7 to forbid something
8 large place where an audience sits
9 to get off a bicycle or a horse
10 a young person under the age of 18
11 a means of transport

96.3
1 You would see this notice in a shop and it lets people know that people who take things from the shop without paying will be taken to court.

2 You would see this in a shop and it lets people know that the staff there speak French as well as English.

3 You would see this at Customs and it lets people know that this is the way to go if they do not have any goods to pay duty on.

4 You would see this in a shop window and it tells people that things are going to be sold off cheaply because the shop wants to get rid of its stock, perhaps because the shop is about to close down.

5 You would see this outside an exhibition or a dance or concert hall perhaps and it lets people know that they need a ticket to get in.

6 You would see this in the window of a hotel or bed and breakfast and it tells people that there are no free rooms there.

7 You would see this on a river bank and it tells people that fishing is not allowed.

8 You would see this notice outside a bicycle shop and it tells people that they can either hire or buy bicycles there.

9 You would see this outside a block of flats and it tells people that one flat is vacant for renting.

10 You would see this notice at the end of an escalator and it tells people that if they have a dog with them, they must carry it.

11 You would see this notice on public transport, a bus or an underground train, and it asks passengers to leave these seats for people who are elderly or find it difficult to move easily.

96.4 1 Coffee now being served.

2 Spanish spoken here.

3 Kindly/Please refrain from smoking *or* Smoking (strictly) prohibited.

4 Free-range eggs for sale.

5 No bill-sticking.

6 Rooms to let.

Unit 97

97.1 *Suggested re-wording:*

Now! Eagle Airlines offers even more to the business traveller who needs comfort.

Let us fly you to your destination in first-class comfort, looked after by the best-trained cabin attendants (or cabin staff) in the world. Any business person knows that they must arrive fresh and ready for work no matter how long the journey. With Eagle Diplomat-Class you can do just that. And, what's more, your partner/spouse can travel with you on all intercontinental flights for only 25% of the normal fare! Your secretary can book you on any flights 24 hours a day on 0557-465769. All he or she has to do is lift the phone.

97.2 1 **conductor** is marked on the word (-or); **conductress** used to be common but is less so now

2 **shepherd** is socially marked as male, though **shepherdess** used to be common also

3 **cheerleader** is socially marked as a female role

4 **typist** is socially marked as female

5 **station master** is marked on the word (-er); there never were any '**station mistresses**', and nowadays they are called **station manager** in the UK, regardless of sex

6 **dressmaker** is marked on the word as male, but socially marked as female

7 **general** is socially marked as male

8 **detective** is socially marked as male

9 **monk** is linguistically marked as male (female = **nun**)

10 **milkman** is marked on the word as male; **milkwoman** is quite common in the UK

11 **tailor** is linguistically and socially marked as male

97.3 mankind – human beings spinster – single woman unmanned – unstaffed
air hostess – cabin attendant man-hours – person-hours

97.4 1 ...a new chair/chairperson...

2 Several fire-fighters and police officers were...

3 A spokesperson for the store said the manager had...

4 I wonder what time the post comes... (recently someone referred to **the postie** on a BBC programme, but, at the time of writing, this form has not become established)

5 I can't see the bartender anywhere...

6 Her brother's a nurse, and she's an author / a writer.

97.5 *Suggested answer:*

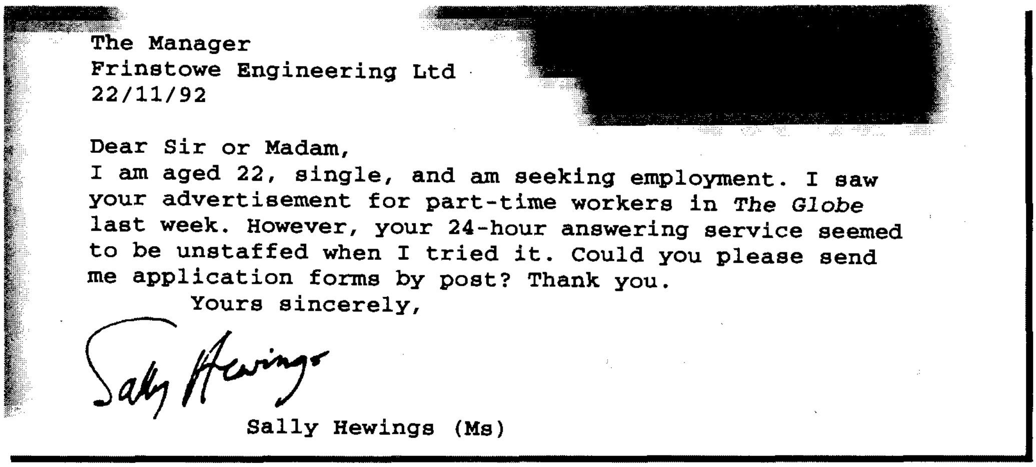

The Manager
Frinstowe Engineering Ltd
22/11/92

[redacted]

Dear Sir or Madam,
I am aged 22, single, and am seeking employment. I saw your advertisement for part-time workers in *The Globe* last week. However, your 24-hour answering service seemed to be unstaffed when I tried it. Could you please send me application forms by post? Thank you.
Yours sincerely,

Sally Hewings

Sally Hewings (Ms)

Note: In real life, the first sentence of this letter would be unnecessary. (However, the word 'single' is more neutral than 'spinster'.) Also, if Sally puts (Ms) at the end, she does not have to say she is female; it is obvious.

Unit 98

98.1

1 Mr A. Carlton
Flat no. 5
Hale Cresc.
Borebridge

2 Ms /məz/ P. Meldrum
c/o T. Fox
6, Marl Ave.
Preston

3 N. Lowe & Co.
7, Bridge Rd.
Freeminster
UK

Note: Flat could be abbreviated to F., though this is not so common. United Kingdom is abbreviated, but Great Britain is not normally abbreviated in addresses. Ms is unusual in that English words do not normally like to have a stressed /ə/ vowel. For this reason, many people say /mɪz/.

98.2

1 Bachelor of Science (A)
2 Federal Bureau of Investigation (A)
3 Father (could also be 'French' or 'Franc') (C)
4 extension (telephone) (C)
5 compact disc (A)
6 as soon as possible (A)
7 personal identification number (B)
8 for example (C/D)
9 United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (B)

98.3

Memorandum from Mister Braneless (Managing Director)
To: All staff
Date: The third of May, 1991 Reference: 04056/DC

May I remind you that all new laboratory equipment should be registered with Stores and Supplies, Room 354 (extension 2683). Please note: new items must be notified before five o'clock in the afternoon on the last day of the month of purchase, that is, within the current budgeting month. All account numbers must be recorded.

98.4

1 OAPs – British English for 'Old age pensioners': retired people or senior citizens; on a museum entrance.
2 **WC** – 'water closet': a lavatory; **Gents** – gentlemen; on a door in a pub.
3 **US** – United States of America; **POWs** – prisoners of war; newspaper headline.
4 **CFC** – Chloro-fluoro-carbons: nasty chemicals sometimes found in sprays, which can damage the ozone layer; on an aerosol can.
5 **Dep** – depart; **Arr** – arrive; on an airline timetable.

98.5

Across
3 UFO (pron. U-F-O) (Unidentified flying object of any kind)
6 EAST (N = north; S = south; W = west)
8 RN (Common abbreviation for the Navy in Great Britain)
9 RIP (usually put on gravestones or in newspaper announcements of deaths)
10 BIO (as in 'bio-degradable plastic')
11 CD (compact disc)
12 AND
13 ESP (this can also mean 'English for Special Purposes' or 'extra-sensory perception', a power some people say they have to see ghosts and spirits of the dead, or to see the future)
15 GB (each country has an abbreviation for car-plates when travelling in another country. What is your country's abbreviation?)
17 US (United States)
19 ET (Extra-terrestrial – a loveable creature from another planet in the film called 'ET')
20 TUBE

Down
1 PERCENT
2 See 13 across
4 FRIDGES
5 ONO (used in advertisements: eg 'Bicycle for sale: £25 o.n.o.' This means perhaps £23 or £24 would be accepted if nobody else offers £25.)
7 AIDS
10 BN (Please note = NB)
14 PUB (**pub** is a short form of 'public house')
16 BT (seen on phone boxes in Britain. The abbreviated name of the British Telecommunications company)
18 SE (NW = north-west, SW = south-west, NE = north-east)

Unit 99

99.1

1 an irresistible urge to collect things
2 a house constructed solely from natural materials
3 a female of limited intelligence but high sex appeal
4 a specially bred miniaturised form of vegetable
5 an indoor version of American football
6 a hypothetical miniaturised device capable of making its way through bodily passages and performing various tasks

These words can be classified as follows, relating to the sections on the left-hand page:

1 collectomania (F)
2 bio-house (D)
3 bimbo (D)
4 mini-vegetable (B)
5 arenaball (C)
6 microbot (B)

99.2

1 ozone-/eco-friendly
2 Gorbymania
3 singlehood
4 monoboarding (*or* snow-surfing)
5 teleworking
6 cardboard city
7 couch potato
8 sound-bites

99.3 There are many possible answers to this question and it is, of course hard to predict which words will stand the test of time. I would suggest **faxable, teleworking** and **singlehood** as they express concepts that are already useful and are likely to remain so, whereas **vogueing** and **Gorbymania** are likely to go out-of-date quickly.

99.4
1 cooking by microwave oven
2 a building which houses a number of different cinemas
3 skiing uphill
4 high-ranking, powerful members of international organisations
5 the study of humour
6 practically active
7 credit cards for use in a particular shop
8 babies born at a time when the birth-rate was particularly high

Unit 100

100.1

> 'Well, where shall I start? It was last summer and we were just sitting in the garden, sort of doing nothing much. Anyway, I looked up and...see we have this kind of long wall at the end of the garden, and it's...like...a motorway for cats, for instance, that big fat black one you saw, well, that one considers it has a right of way over our vegetable patch, so...where was I? Yes, I was looking at that wall, you know, day-dreaming as usual, and all of a sudden there was this new cat I'd never seen before, or rather, it wasn't an ordinary cat at all...I mean, you'll never believe what it was...'

Comments:

Where/How shall I start/begin? This is a very common marker at the beginning of a story or monologue while the speaker is composing his/her thoughts.

Anyway is probably the most common marker in spoken story-telling to divide up the story into its different stages (introduction/main plot/resolution, etc.)

See is often used in informal talk instead of **you** see, when someone is clarifying or explaining something.

Like is often used when the speaker hesitates, or to make something less precise, a little more vague.

Where was I? is used when we want to come back to the main subject we were talking about after an interruption or diversion into another point or topic.

Yes is often used when we resume what we were talking about; it does not have to be an answer to a question from someone. No is also used in exactly the same way and could have been used here instead of yes.

Or rather is used when you change to a different word or a better/more accurate way of saying what you want to say.

I **mean** is used when you want to explain something or expand or illustrate what you are saying.

This extract is typical of the number of markers found in everyday informal talk. The speaker is not a 'lazy' or 'bad' speaker; everyone uses markers, even if they are not conscious of it or do not want to admit it! Informal conversation *without* markers sounds rather odd and strained, and a little too formal.

100.2 *Possible answers:*

1 A: Are you a football fan?
B: **Well,** I like it; I wouldn't say I was a fan.

2 A: I'll take care of these.
B: **Right**, that's everything.
A: **Fine,** so see you next week.
B: **Good**. That was a very useful meeting.

3 A: It was last Monday I was coming home from work. I saw this ragged old man approaching me. Anyway, I stopped him...
B: Jim Dibble!
A: **Hang on!** Let me tell you what happened first.

4 A: Which number is yours?
B: **Let me** see... it's that one here, yes, this one.

5 A: He's looking exhausted.
B: Yes, he is.
A: **Mind you,** he has an awful lot of responsibility, so it's hardly surprising.

6 A: What do you mean 'cold'?
B: **Well,** she's not friendly, very distant, **so to speak**. Last week I gave her a jolly smile and she... **like**...scowled at me.
the way you smile at people,
A: **Well** what do you expect? **Look,** I've seen the way you smile at people it **sort of** puts them off.

100.3
1 First of all
2 in other words
3 For example / For instance
4 Next
5 as it were / so to speak
6 Lastly
7 In summary (**In conclusion** would not be suitable here, since it just means 'this is the end of the text', whereas this sentence provides a summing up of the arguments in the text.)

Follow-up:

If it is difficult or impossible for you to get hold of tape-recordings of natural conversation, you can find transcripts in D. Crystal and D. Davy's *Advanced Conversational English* (London: Longman, 1975), where you will find a wide range of markers in actual use.

Phonetic symbols

Vowel sounds

Symbol	*Examples*
/iː/	sleep me
/i/	happy recipe
/ɪ/	pin dinner
/ʊ/	foot could pull
/uː/	do shoe through
/e/	red head said
/ə/	arrive father colour
/ɜː/	turn bird work
/ɔː/	sort thought walk
/æ/	cat black
/ʌ/	sun enough wonder
/ɒ/	got watch sock
/ɑː/	part heart laugh
/eɪ/	name late aim
/aɪ/	my idea time
/ɔɪ/	boy noise
/eə/	pair where bear
/ɪə/	hear beer
/əʊ/	go home show
/aʊ/	out cow
/ʊə/	pure fewer

Consonant sounds

Symbol	*Examples*
/p/	put
/b/	book
/t/	take
/d/	dog
/k/	car kick
/g/	go guarantee
/tʃ/	catch church
/dʒ/	age lounge
/f/	for cough
/v/	love vehicle
/θ/	thick path
/ð/	this mother
/s/	since rice
/z/	zoo houses
/ʃ/	shop sugar machine
/ʒ/	pleasure usual vision
/h/	hear hotel
/m/	make
/n/	name now
/ŋ/	bring
/l/	look while
/r/	road
/j/	young
/w/	wear

Index

The numbers in the index are ***Unit*** *numbers not page numbers.*

able /'eɪbəl/ 34
abode /ə'bəʊd / 7
abolish /ə'bɒlɪʃ/ 85
abrupt /ə'brʌpt/ 34
abscond /əb'skɒnd/ 94
absent-minded 12
absolutely 57, 60
absorb /əb'zɔːb/ 86
abstract noun 11
absurdity /əb'sɜːdɪti/ 11
accept /ək'sept/ 7, 23
accident 38
accommodation 26, 50, 88 (~ agency) 45
accomplish /ə'kʌmplɪʃ/ (~ment) 65
accountant 40
accuse (~d) 55
ace /eɪs/ 95
achieve /ə'tʃiːv/ (~ment) 11, 65
aching /'eɪkɪŋ/ 48
acknowledge /ək'nɒlɪdʒ/ 23
acoustics /ə'kuːstɪks/ 27
acquaintance /ə'kweɪntəns/ 35
acquit /ə'kwɪt/ 55
act 42
action 11
active 8
actor/actress 8, 26, 29, 97
addition /ə'dɪʃən/ 51
address 7 (~ee) 8
adjective /'ædʒəktɪv/ 4
adjustment /ə'dʒʌsmənt/ 11
administrator 40
admire /əd'maɪə/ 35
admission 8, 96
admit (~tedly) 23
adore 35 (-ration) (-ring) 69
adulthood 11
advance 87
adverb 4
advert (ad) 7, 98
advertise (~r) (~ment) 10
advertocracy /ædvə'tɒkrəsi/ 99
advice /əd'vaɪs/ 1, 26, 30
adviser /əd'vaɪzə/ 40
aerial /'eərɪəl/ 53, 93
aerobics /eə'rəʊbɪks/ 27
aeroplane 49
affair /ə'feə/ 35
affection (~ate) 11, 69
affirmative 95
African 31
Afro-Caribbean 31
after all 23
afters 43
afterwards 20
against 67
ageism /'eɪdʒɪzəm/ 99
agency /'eɪdʒənsi/ 45
aggressive 34 (~ness) 11
agitation /ædʒɪ'teɪʃən/ 30
agreement 65, 85, 89
agriculture /'ægrɪkʌltʃə/ 44
aid /eɪd/ 92
aim /eɪm/ 65
air 19, 30, 49 (~-conditioned) 12, 13
air hostess 97
air traffic control 13 (~ler) 49
aircraft 49
alarm clock 13
Albanian /æl'beɪnɪən/ 31
alcoholic /ælkə'hɒlɪk/ 7
alcove /ælkəʊv/ 16
algebra /'ældʒəbrə/ 16
alight /ə'laɪt/ 7, 96
alive /ə'laɪv/ 18
all in 79
all or nothing 77
all-out 12
allergic /ə'lɜːdʒɪk/ 48
alley /'æli/ 41
allocate /'æləkeɪt/ 62
allowances 85
allowed 19
along with / alongside 24
Alsatian /æl'seɪʃən/ 93
alteration 8
alternative 60
although /ɔːl'ðəʊ/ 23
amazement /ə'meɪzmənt/ 11
ambassador 54
ambition (-ious) 34, 65
ambulance /'æmbjələns/ 29
American 31, 93
amount /ə'maʊnt/ 57
amuse /ə'mjuːz/ (~d) (~ment) 11
analyse /'ænəlaɪz/ (-lysis) 52
anarchist /'ænəkɪst/ 8
anchor /'æŋkə/ 49
and so on (and so forth) 24
anger /'æŋgə/ (-gry) (-grily) 11, 68, 70
angle /'æŋgəl/ 51
angora /æŋ'gɔːrə/ 15
animosity /ænɪ'mɒsɪti/ 11
ankle /'æŋkəl/ 48
anklebiters 95
annoy /ə'nɔɪ/ 87
anonymity /ænə'nɪmɪti/ 11
anorak /'ænəræk/ 16
anorexic /ænə'reksɪk/ 33
answerphone 52
antenna /æn'tenə/ 93
anti- 9
antonym /'æntənɪm/ 4
anxiety /æŋ'zaɪəti/ (-xious) /'æŋʃəs/ (-xiously) 68, 70
anyway 100
apart from 24
apartment 93
apostrophe /ə'pɒstrəfi/ 3, 18
appeal (~ing) 69
appear 90
appendix /ə'pendɪks/ 48
appetite /'æpɪtaɪt/ 48
apple pie 43
apples and pears 95
apply for 40
appointment 7, 8, 88
appreciate /ə'priːʃiːeɪt/ 45, 96
apprehension /æprɪ'henʃən/ (-sive) 68
apprenticeship /ə'prentɪʃɪp/ 11
approach /ə'prəʊtʃ/ 25
Arabic 31
arachnophobia /əræknə'fəʊbɪə/ 69
archer /'aːtʃə/ 27 (-y) 41
architect /'aːkɪtekt/ 40
architecture 45
area /'eərɪə/ 11, 44, 45
arenaball 99
Argentinian /ɑːdʒən'tɪnɪən/ 31
argue /ɑːgjuː/ (-guably) 11
argument (~ative) 11, 25, 34, 70
arise out of 22
arithmetic /ə'rɪθmətɪk/ (~al) (~ian) 18
Armenian /ɑː'miːnɪən/ 31
arms race 13
aromatic /ærə'mætɪk/ 71
arrangement /ə'reɪŋdʒmənt/ 8, 85

arrival 8
arrogant /'ærəgənt/ 34, 73
arrow /'ærəʊ/ 41
arseholed /'ɑːshəʊld/ 95
arson /ɑːsən/ (~ist) 55
art 42, 45
article 3, 7, 30, 53
arts centre 45
arvo /'ɑːvəʊ/ 94
as a result 22
as far as...goes 89
as far as I'm concerned 75
as you/I say (was saying) 75
as it were 100
as long as 21
as soon as 20
as well as 24
Asian /'eɪʒən/ 31
asparagus /əs'pærəgəs/ 43
aspect /'æspekt/ 25
assailant /ə'seɪlənt/ 55
assault /ə'sɒlt/ 55
assembly line 13
assertive /ə'sɜːtɪv/ 34
assessment /ə'sesmənt/ 25
astonishment /əs'tɒnɪʃmənt/ 11
astrophysics /æstrəʊ'fɪzɪks/ 52
at a time / at times 58
at death's door 79
at the very time 20
athlete /'æθliːt/ 26 (-tics) 27
atlas /'ætləs/ 15
atmosphere /'ætməsfɪə/ (-ric) 45
attack 89
attain /ə'teɪn/ (~able) (~ment) 65
attempt /ə'tempt/ 85
attend 2
attentive (~ness) 11
attic /'ætɪk/ 36
attitude /'ætɪtʃuːd/ 25
attract (~ion) (~iveness) 11, 69
aubergine /'əʊbəʒiːn/ 16, 43, 93
auburn /'ɔːbən/ 5, 33
auditorium /ɔːdɪ'tɔːrɪəm/ 96
Australian 31, 94
author/authoress /'ɔːθə/ 97
authorities /ɔː'θɒrɪtiːz/ 27
auto-pilot 9
autobiography 9
autocue 9
autograph 9
automobile 9
avant garde 16
average /'ævrɪdʒ/ 57
avoid /ə'vɔɪd/ 49, 87
awfully /'ɔːfli/ 57
awkward customer 78
awkwardness 11
axe /æks/ 92
aye /aɪ/ 94

baa /bɑː/ 73
baby carriage 93
baby-boomer 99
babysitter 13
babyhood 11
bachelor /'bætʃələ/ 97
back 49, 92
  (~ and forth) (~ to front) 77
back to square one 80
bad manners 88
bad-tempered 34
badly-dressed 47
badminton 41
baggage /'bægɪdʒ/ 26, 93
baggy /'bægi/ 47
bags of 57
bairn /beən/ 94
bake 43
baked beans 66
balalaika /bælə'laɪkə/ 16
balcony /'bælkəni/ 36
bald /bɔːld/ 33 (~-headed) 12
ball 2, 41 (on the ~) 81
ballerina 16
ballet /'bæleɪ/ 42
balloon /bə'luːn/ 49
ballot paper 54
bandage /'bændɪdʒ/ 48
bandit
bang 37, 61
Bangladeshi /bæŋglə'deʃi/ 31
bank (~loan/statement) 56
  (~ account) 13 (~note) 93
  (~rupt) 89
bar 30, 92
  (~maid/man/tender) 40, 97
barbecued /'bɑːbəkjuːd/ 43
barber /'bɑːbə/ 97
barbie /'bɑːbi/ 94
bargain /'bɑːgɪn/ 56
bark 46, 73
  (~ing up the wrong tree) 74
barn 40
baroque /bə'rɒk/ 45
barrage /'bærɑːʒ/ 29
barrel 66
barren 44
baseball bat 41
basement 36
bash 17
basin 44, 66
basket 66
basketball 45
bat 41, 46
bathed /beɪðd/ 19
battery farming 44
bay 44
bazaar /bə'zɑː/ 16
beach 44
beak 46
beam 61
bean 43
bear /beə/ 46 (~ with a sore head) 76, 79
beard /'bɪəd/ 33
beat 41, 94
beaut /bjuːt/ 94
beauty 11 (-tify) 8
bed linen 29
bed rest 48
bedlam /'bedləm/ 15
bedsit 36
beetroot /'biːtruːt/ 43
bee 46 (the ~'s knees) 81
beg (-ggar) 70
behaviour /bɪ'heɪvjə/ 88
Belgian /'beldʒən/ 31
belief /bɪ'liːf/ 11, 25, 67
belongings 62
belt 47
ben /ben/ 94
benefit /'benəfɪt/ 56
besides 24
best 85
beverage /'bevrɪdʒ/ 7
bi- 9
bid 92
bidet /'biːdeɪ/ 16
big-head 78 (~ed) 12
bike /baɪk/ 7, 98
bilingual /baɪ'lɪŋgwəl/ 9, 31
bill 56, 91, 93, 95
bill-sticking 96
billiards /'bɪljədz/ 27, 41
billion 51
bimbo /'bɪmbəʊ/ 99
bin-liner 36
binoculars /bɪ'nɒkjələz/ 27
bio- 98
bio-degradable 44
bio-house 99
bioclimatology /baɪəʊklaɪmə'tɒlədʒi/ 52
biography /baɪ'ɒgrəfi/ 42
birch /bɜːtʃ/ 46
biro /'baɪrəʊ/ 15

birth control 13
biscuit(s) 66, 93
  (take the ~) 74, 81
bistro /'biːstrəʊ/ 16
(a) bit 30, 57, 78
bitchy /bɪtʃi/ 72
bite /baɪt/ 72
bitter (~ly) (~ness) 11, 43, 70, 71
bizzo /'bɪzəʊ/ 94
black and white 77
(as) black as night 76
(in a) black mood 79
(in the) black 56
Black English 94
black eye 48
blackcurrant 43
blackmail (~er) 55
blade 30
bland /blænd/ 43
blast 92
blaze /bleɪz/ 92
bleat /bliːt/ 73
bleep 61
(as) blind as a bat 76
blink 72
blisters /'blɪstəz/ 48
blitz 16
blizzard /'blɪzəd/ 32
block 37
block capitals 4
bloke /bləʊk/ 95
blonde 33
blood donor/pressure/ties 13, 48
bloom /bluːm/ 89
blossom /'blɒsəm/ 46
blouse /blaʊz/ 47
blow-out /'bləʊwaʊt/ 93
blue-eyed 12
blunt /blʌnt/ 34
blush /blʌʃ/ 72
blustery /'blʌstəri/ 32
board 7, 40, 98
board up 38
boast (~ful) 70
bog 95
boil 43 (~ing) 32, 68
(as) bold as brass 76
boldly 70
Bolivian /bə'lɪvɪən/ 31
bonanza /bə'nænzə/ 16
bonfire 88
bonnet 49, 93
bonny /'bɒni/ 94
bonsai /'bɒnzaɪ/ 16
book 50 (~case) 3 (~ token) 13
  (~seller) 53
boost /buːst/ 92
boot(s) 47, 49, 93 (-tee) 5
booze /buːz/ 7, 95
boredom /'bɔːdəm/ 11
borrow 62
bosh /bɒʃ/ 16
bosom /'bʊzəm/ 94
boss 40, 92 (~y) 34
botany /'bɒtəni/ 52
bother /'bɒðə/ 50, 65
bottle bank 44, 45
  (~-opener) 8
bough /baʊ/ 18, 46
bounce /baʊns/ 2
boutique /buː'tiːk/ 16
bow /baʊ/ /bəʊ/ 19, 41
bowl /bəʊl/ 66
bowler 15
bowls 27, 41
box 36, 66, 83
boxing /'bɒksɪŋ/ 41
boycott /'bɔɪkɒt/ 15
braces /'breɪsɪz/ 27, 47
brackets 4
brae /breɪ/ 94
braille 15 /breɪl/
brain 48 (~y) 7, 34 (~less) 34
  (~ drain) 13
brakes /breɪks/ 49
branch /braːntʃ/ 46
brand-new /bræn'nju/·12
brass 95
Brazilian /brə'zɪlɪən/ 31
bread 30, 95
breadth /bredθ/ 11
break, *expressions with* 35, 37, 38, 41, 48, 91
break-in/-out/-up 14
breakdown/through 14
breast /brest/ 46
breath /breθ/,
  (~e) /briːð/ 30, 72
  (~less) 48 (~taking) 2
breeze (-zy) 32
brekkie /'breki/ 95
bribery /'braɪbəri/ 55
brick 26
brickie /'brɪki/ 95
bridge 49
bright (~ness) 34, 64
bright-eyed 12
brill 95
brilliant 2
bring, *expressions with* 22, 86
British-made 12
Briton /'brɪtən/ 31, 92
broad (~en) 59 (~-minded) 12, 34 (~-shouldered) 12
broadcast 53 (~er) 40
broccoli /'brɒkəli/ 43
broke /brəʊk/ 91
broken-down 12
brook /brʊk/ 44
brotherhood 8, 11
(as) brown as a berry 76
browned off 79
brown sauce 43
brown-eyed 12
bruise /bruːz/ 37, 48, 89
brush 36
brusque /brʊsk/ 34
brutal /'bruːtəl/ 8 (~ity) 11
bucket /'bʌkɪt/ 40, 66
buckle /'bʌkəl/ 47
bud /bʌd/ 46
Buddhism /'bʊdɪzm/ 8, 67
buffet /'bʌfeɪ/ 49
bug /bʌg/ 48
build /bɪld/ 33 (~er) 40
building society 56
built-up 12
Bulgarian 31
(in) bulk 56
bull by the horns, take the 80
bull in a china shop 76, 80
bullet-proof 12
bump /bʌmp/ 37
bunch /bʌntʃ/ 29
bungalow /'bʌŋgələʊ/ 36
bunk /bʌŋk/ 49
buoy /bɔɪ/ 49
burger 43
burglar /bɜːglə/ (~y) 55, 97
  (~ alarm) 13
burgle /bɜːgəl/ 55
Burmese 31
burn /bɜːn/ 18, 94
burnt-out 12
burp /bɜːp/ 72
burst /bɜːst/ 2
bury the hatchet 80
bus service/conductor 45, 49
busby /'bʌzbɪ/ 15
business /'bɪznɪs/ 85
  (~man/woman/person) 97
bustling /'bʌslɪŋ/ 45
butcher /'bʊtʃə/ 97
butter somebody up 81
butterfly 73
button /'bʌtən/ 47, 52
by the look(s) of it 90
by the time 20, 58

by(e)-election 54
by-pass 14

cab 93
cabbage /'kæbɪdʒ/ 43
cabin 49
cabin attendant 97
cabinet /'kæbɪnət/ 54
Caesarean /sə'zeərɪən/ 15
café /'kæfeɪ/ 45
caftan /'kæftæn/ 16
Cain and Abel 95
cake 28, 30 (~-tin) 37
calf /kɑːf/ 43, 73
call /kɔːl/ 7
calm /kɑːm/ 11, 18
camcorder /'kæmkɔːdə/ 52, 53
camel /'kæməl/ 46
camera operator 53
camp-site 50
can 66 (~ opener) 8
Canadian 31
cancer /'kænsə/ 48
candidate /'kændɪdeɪt/ 54
candy 93
canoe /kə'nuː/ (-noist) 41, 49
canter /'kæntə/ 15
cap /kæp/ 41
cape /keɪp/ 44
capital 44 (~ punishment) 86
captain /'kæptɪn/ 49
captivate 69
car hire/park/rental 45, 62
carafe /kə'ræf/ 16
caravan /'kærəvæn/ 2,16
card(s) 18, 66
cardboard city 99
cardigan /'kɑːdɪgən/ 15, 47
care for 69, 86
career /kə'rɪə/ 39
carefree /'keəfri/ 12
carelessness 11
caring /'keərɪŋ/ 69
carpenter 40
carrier bag 66
carrot 43
carton /'kɑːtən/ 30, 66
cartoon /kɑː'tuːn/ 53
case /keɪs/ 26, 55, 66, 98
cash /kæʃ/ 56
cashmere /'kæʃmɪə/ 15
casino /kə'siːnəʊ/ 16
casserole /'kæsərəʊl/ 43
cast 29, 42
cast-off 12
castle /'kɑːsəl/ /'kæsəl/ 18
casual /'kæʒʊəl/ 5
casualty /'kæʒʊəlti/ 38
(the) cat's whiskers 80, 81
(let the) cat out of the bag 80
Catalan 31
catastrophe /kə'tæstrəfi/ 1, 18
cater /'keɪtə/ 45, 62
caterpillar /'kætəpɪlə/ 73
caterwaul /kætəwɔːl/ 73
cathedral /kə'θiːdrəl/ 45
cattle /'kætəl/ 49
catty /kæti/ 73
cauliflower /'kɒlɪflaʊə/ 43
cause /kɔːz/ 22, 86, 88
  (~a stir) 80
caused by 33
CD /siːdiː/ (~ player) 52, 98
cease /siːs/ 3
celery /'seləri/ 43
cellar /'selə/ 36, 66
cellist /'tʃelɪst/ 8
censor /'sensə/ 53
centralise 8
ceramic /sə'ræmɪk/ 42
cereal /siːrɪəl/ 66
certain 60
chain 44
chair (person/man/woman) 97
chairmanship 11
chalk /tʃɔːk/ 18, 40
chamber /'tʃeɪmbə/ 54
champagne /ʃæmpeɪn/ 15
championship /'tʃæmpɪənʃɪp/ 11
chance 11, 60
change 47, 49, 87
chaos /'keɪɒs/ 30
chap /tʃæp/ 3, 7
chapter 42
charge /tʃɑːdʒ/ 55
charity 11
charm /tʃɑːm/ 26, 45
chat (~ show) 4, 53
chauffeur /'ʃəʊfə/ 16, 49
chauvinist /'ʃəʊvənɪst/ 15
check 89, 93
check-in 49
check-out 14
checked /tʃekt/ 47
cheerful (~ness) (~ly) 12, 68, 70
cheerio /'tʃiːrɪəʊ/ 7
cheerleader 97
chef /ʃef/ 40
chemical /'kemɪkəl/ 52
chemist (~ry) 52
cheque /tʃek/ 56
chest (~ pain) 48
chew /tʃuː/ 72
chic /ʃiːk/ 47, 94
chicken 73
chickenpox 48
child benefit 56
child's play 74
child-minder 40
childhood 8, 11
Chilean /'tʃɪlɪən/ 31
chilli /'tʃɪli/ 71
chilly /'tʃɪli/ 1, 32
chime /tʃaɪm/ 61
china /'tʃaɪnə/ 66
Chinese 31
chip 37
  (a ~ off the old block) 74
chives /tʃaɪvz/ 43
chocolate(s) /'tʃɒklət/ 28, 30, 66
choice /tʃɔɪs/ 60
cholera /'kɒlərə/ 38
chubby /'tʃʌbi/ 33
cigarettes 66
cinema /'sɪnəmə/ 42
cineplex /sɪnɪpleks/ 99
cinnamon /'sɪnəmən/ 43
cipher /'saɪfə/ 16
circle /'sɜːkəl/ (-cular) 2, 51
circumference /sə'kʌmfərəns/ 51
circumspect /'sɜːkəmspekt/ 10
circumstance /'sɜːkəmstæns/ 21
citizen /'sɪtɪzən/ 45 (~ship) 11
citizens' advice bureau, 45
City Hall 45
civil engineering /'sɪvəl/ 52
civil servant 40
civil war 38
claim /kleɪm/ 25, 85
clang /klæŋ/ 17, 61
clank /klæŋk/ 17
clap 17, 30
clash /klæʃ/ 17, 92
classical 42, 45
Classics 27
classmate 35
clatter /'klætə/ 17, 61
claw /klɔː/ 46
clean and tidy 77
cleaner 8, 40
clear-out 14
clearance sale 96
clergyperson /'klɜːdʒipɜːsən/ 99
clerk /klɑːk/ 40
clever 7, 34

click /klɪk/ 44
climb /klaɪm/ 18, 50
clink /klɪŋk/ 17
clip-clop 17
close /kləʊs/ 32
close-fitting 47
closet /klɒzɪt/ 93, 66
cloth /klɒθ/ 26, 28, 66
clothes /kləʊðʒ/ 27, 66, 88
clothing /'kləʊðɪŋ/ 26, 30
(on) cloud nine 79
cloudless 8
cluck /klʌk/ 73
clump /klʌmp/ 29
coach /kəʊtʃ/ 49
coal /kəʊl/ 26, 30, 66
coarse /kɔːs/ 64
coaster /'kəʊstə/ 36
coat-hanger 8, 36
cobra /'kəʊbrə/ 16
cock 73
cockadoodledoo 73
cockle /'kɒkəl/ 43
cockpit /'kɒkpɪt/ 49
cocky /'kɒki/ 73
cocoa /'kəʊkəʊ/ 66
cod 43
coffee (~pot) 28, 66
coin /kɔɪn/ 1
cold 48, 68 (a ~ fish) 78
collapse /kə'læps/ 65
collar 47
colleague /'kɒliːg/ 35
collection 11 (-tor) 40
collectomania /kəlektə'meɪnɪə/ 99
college /kɒlɪdʒ/ 39, 45
collocation /kɒlə'keɪʃən/ 4
colloquial /kə'ləʊkwɪəl/ 4
colonial /kə'ləʊnɪəl/ 54
colour supplement 53
columnist /'kɒləmɪst/ 53
comb /kəʊm/ 1, 18
combine (-nation) 11, 52
come, *expressions with* 18, 37, 45, 65, 80, 89
come to think of it 75
comic 53
comma /'kɒmə/ 4
commercial /kə'mɜːʃəl/ 53 (~ise) 8
commit 55 (~ment) 26 (~ted) 67
committee 54
common 51 (~ man) 94
communicate /kə'mjuːnɪkeɪt/ 88
community college 45
community service 55
commuter /kə'mjuːtə/ 45
companionship /kəm'pænjənʃɪp/ 11
companionway 49
company /'kʌmpəni/ 29
compartment /kəm'pɑːtment/ 49
compensate /'kɒmpənseɪt/ 85
complain /kəm'pleɪn/ (~t) 70, 89
completely 57
complexion /kəm'plekʃən/ 33
complexity /kəm'pleksɪti/ 11
complication /kɒmplɪ'keɪʃən/ 8
compliment /'kɒmplɪmənt/ 8
compose /kəm'pəʊz/ (~r) (-sition) 10, 85
composite /'kɒmpəzɪt/ 10
compound adjective 12 (~ noun) 4, 34
comprehensive /kɒmprɪ'hensɪv/ 39
compressed /kəm'prest/ 10
compromise /'kɒmprəmaɪz/ 65
compulsory /kəm'pʌlsəri/ 60
computer /kəm'pjuːtə/ 52 (~ise) 8
concede /kən'siːd/ 23
concert 42, 88 (~ hall) 45
concession /kən'seʃən/ 23
conclude /kən'kluːd/ (-clusion) 52, 89
concrete /'kɒnkriːt/ 26
condensed milk 66
condole /kən'dəʊl/ 94
conducive /kən'djuːsɪv/ 10
conduct /kən'dʌkt/ /'kɒndʌkt/ 10, 18
conduction /kən'dʌkʃən/ 10
conductor (-tress) 10, 97
cone /kəʊn/ 46
conference 39
confess /kən'fes/ 70
confetti /kən'feti/ 16
conflict /'kɒnflɪkt/ /kən'flɪkt/ 18
confusing 68 (-sion) /kən'fjuːʒən/ 30
conjunction /kən'dʒʌŋʃən/ 4
consciousness /'kɒnʃəsnəs/ 11
consequence /'kɒnsɪkwens/ (-ntly) 22
conservative 67
consider 90
considerable /kən'sɪdərəbəl/ 57
constipated /'kɒnstɪpeɪtɪd/ 48
constituency /kən'stɪtʃʊənsi/ 54
constitute /'kɒnstɪtʃuːt/ 85
contact 1, 89
contact lens 13
container 66
contemporary 45
content /kən'tent/ (~ed) (~ment) 11, 68
contents /'kɒntents/ 27
contest /kən'test/ /'kɒntest/ 18
continuity /kɒntɪ'njuːɪti/ person 53
continuous assessment 39
contract 59
(on the) contrary 23
(in) contrast 23
contribute /kən'trɪbjuːt/ 62
control system 52
control tower 49
converse 4
convert /'kɒnvɜːt/ /kən'vɜːt/ (-version) 10
conviction /kən'vɪkʃən/ 67
convince /kən'vɪns/ 9 (-cing) 67
cook (~er) (~ing) 8, 18, 85
cookie /'kʊki/ 93
cool 18 (as ~ as a cucumber) 76
co-opt /kəʊ'ɒpt/ 18
cop (coppers) 95
cope /kəʊp/ 65, 86
copse /kɒps/ 44
cord /kɔːd/ 18
cordless 52
corduroy /kɔːdə'rɔɪ/ 47
corkscrew /'kɔːkskruː/ 36
cosmic 95
cosmonaut /'kɒsmənɔːt/ 16
Costa Rican 31
costume /'kɒstjuːm/ 27, 42
cot 50
cottage /'kɒtɪdʒ/ 36
cotton 26, 47 (~ wool) 13
couch /kaʊtʃ/ 5 (~ potato) 99
cough /kɒf/ 18, 48, 72
countable 4, 8
country (~-side) 44
country-and-western 42
coup /kuː/ 16
courage /'kʌrɪdʒ/ 26
courgette /kɔː'ʒet/ 43
course /kɔːs/ 41, 43

court /kɔːt/ 41, 44, 55
cove /kəʊv/ 44
cover-up 14
crab 43, 46
crack /kræk/ 37, 38
crack-down 14
crackle /'krækəl/ 17
crafty /'krɑːfti/ /'kræfti/ 34
crash /kræʃ/ 17, 61
crash out 83
crash-landing 38
crate /kreɪt/ 66
crawl /krɔːl/ 63
crayfish /'kreɪfɪʃ/ 43
creak /kriːk/ 17
cream 48, 66
(the) cream (of the cream) 81
creativity 26
creche /kreʃ/ 16
(on/in) credit 56
credit card 13, 56
crew /kruː/ 29, 49
crew-cut 33
cricket 41
crime /kraɪm/ (-minal) 55
crisis /'kraɪsɪs/ 25
crisps 71
critic 53
croak /krəʊk/ 73
Croatian /krəʊ'eɪʃən/ 31
crocodile /'krɒkədaɪl/ 46
crop(s) 44, 46
cross 68
crosroads 49
cross-purposes, talk at 82
crossly 70
crossword 53
crow /krəʊ/ 73
crowd /kraʊd/ (~ed) 29, 45
cruel /'kruːəl/ 34
cruise /kruːz/ 16
cryogenics /kraɪə'dʒenɪks/ 52
cube /kjuːb/ 51
cucumber 43
cue /kjuː/ 41
cuff /kʌf/ 47
cuisine /kwɪ'ziːn/ 16
cul de sac 16
cumbersome /'kʌmbəsəm/ 64
cunning /kʌnɪŋ/ 4, 34
cup of tea 81, 85
cupid /'kjuːpɪd/ 18
cuppa /'kʌpə/ 95
curb /kɜːb/ 92
curiosity 11
curl /kɜːl/ (~y) 5, 33
curly-haired 12
currency /'kʌrənsi/ 26, 56
current /'kʌrənt/ 44
current affairs 53
curry /'kʌri/ 43, 71
curt /kɜːt/ 34
curtains /kɜːtənz/ 93
customs /'kʌstəmz/ 49, 56
cut 2, 18, 37, 53, 92
cut-out 12
cut-price 12
cutback 14
cutlery /'kʌtləri/ 36
cybernetics /saɪbə'netɪks/ 52
cycle route 49
cyclist /'saɪklɪst/ 41
Cypriot /'sɪprɪət/ 31

(a) dab-hand 81
(a) dog's breakfast/dinner 81
dachshund /'dæʃənd/ 16
dad 7
daft 34 (as ~ as a brush) 74
damage /'dæmɪdʒ/ 38
damp 32
dance 42 (~ hall) 45
Dane /deɪn/ (-nish) 31
dark-skinned 33
darling 69
darts 27, 41
Darwinist 67
dash /dæʃ/ 4, 17
data-processing 13
date /deɪt/ 7, 19
dawdle /dɔːdəl/ 63
dazzle /'dæzəl/ 64
(as) dead as a doornail 76
dead end, come to a 80
(as) deaf as a post 76
deafening /'defənɪŋ/ 71
deal /diːl/ 91
dear (~est) 69
death penalty 13, 55
debt (-or) /det/ 8, 18
decade /'dekeɪd/ 58
deceive 86 /dɪ'siːv/
deciduous /də'sɪdjʊəs/ 46
decimal /'desɪməl/ 51
decision /dɪ'sɪʒən/ 85, 89
deck (~ chair) 49
decrease /dɪ'kriːs/ /'diːkriːs/ 11, 18
dedicated 67
deduce /dɪ'dʒuːs/ 10
deep (~en) 59
deer /'dɪə/ 43
defeat /dɪ'fiːt/ 41
defend 55
define /dɪ'faɪn/ 3
defuse /dɪ'fjuːz/ 38
degree /dɪ'grɪː/ 39, 51
déjà-vu /deɪʒɑː 'vuː/ 71
delay /dɪ'leɪ/ 49
delicatessen /delɪkə'tesən/ 16
delicious /dɪ'lɪʃəs/ 8
delighted /dɪ'laɪtɪd/ 68
delta 44
democracy /dɪ'mɒkrəsi/ 54
denim /'denɪm/ 15, 47
dense (-sity) 64
dent 37
dental floss 36
dentist 40
department 54
department store 45
departure lounge 49
depend 90
deport (~ation) (~ee) 10
depose /dɪ'pəʊz/ 10
deposit 7, 56
depress /dɪ'pres/ 10, 87
depressed (-sing) 48, 68
depth /depθ/ 11, 59
descendant /dɪ'sendənt/ 46
desert /'dezət/ 18, 46
desert island 49
deserted /dɪ'zɜːtɪd/ 45
design /dɪ'zaɪn/ 42 (~er) 40
desire /dɪ'zaɪə/ 69
desperately 70
despise /dɪ'spaɪz/ 35
dessert /dɪ'zɜːt/ 43
destatisation /diːsteɪtaɪ'zeɪʃən/ 99
destroy /dɪ'strɔɪ/ 57, 87
destruction 44
detached /dɪ'tætʃt/ 36
detective 55, 97 (~ story) 53
determination 26
determined 3, 34
detest 69
develop 87
devoted 69
diagnosis /daɪəg'nəʊsɪs/ 48
diagonal /daɪ'ægənəl/ 51
dialect /'daɪəlekt/ 31
diameter /daɪ'æmɪtə/ 51
diaper /'daɪpə/ 93
diarrhoea /daɪə'riːə/ 48
dickhead /'dɪked/ 95
dictate (-tator) (-tatorial) 54
dictatorship 54
die /daɪ/ 48
difficult (~y) 25, 65
dig 94

digital /'dɪdʒɪtəl/ 3
  (~ electronics) 52
dilemma
  /daɪ'lemə/ /dɪ'lemə/ 25
dim 34, 61, 64
dimension 59
din 61
dinghy /'dɪŋi/ 5
dinosaur /'daɪnəsɔː/ 46
diploma /dɪ'pləʊmə/ 39
diplomat /dɪpləmæt/ 54
direct 2, 34 (~ion) 11, 42
director 40
disability allowance 56
disagree 9
disappear 9
disappoint 91
disapprove /dɪsə'pruːv/ 9
disaster /dɪ'zɑːstə/ 38
disbelieve 9
disc (~ drive) 52
disco 45
disconnect 9
discontented 68
discount /'dɪskaʊnt/ 56
discourage 88 (~ment) 11
discourteous /dɪs'kɜːtɪəs/ 34
discover (~y) 52
discredit 9
discreet /dɪs'kriːt/ 9
discrepancy /dɪs'krepənsi/ 23
discus /'dɪskəs/ 41
disembark 49, 87
disgust (~ing) 69
dish /dɪʃ/ 43
dishonest /dɪs'ɒnɪst/ 9
dishwasher 8
dislike 9, 35, 69
dislocate /'dɪsləkeɪt/ 48
disloyal /dɪs'lɔɪəl/ 9
dismiss /dɪs'mɪs/ 40
dismount 9, 96
disobedient 9
disorder 30
display 96
disprove 9
disqualify /dɪs'kwɒlɪfaɪ/ 9
disrepair /dɪsrə'peə/ 30
dissect /daɪ'sekt/ (~ion) 52
dissimilar 9
dissuade /dɪ'sweɪd/ 1
distant /'dɪstənt/ 59
district 45
divan /dɪ'væn/ 5
diversion /daɪ'vɜːʃən/ 11
divert 10
divide 23, 51
dividend /'dɪvɪdend/ 56
division 51
dizzy /'dɪzi/ 48
do, *expressions with*
  39, 40, 49, 85, 91
dock (~er) 49
document /'dɒkjumənt/ 53
documentary
  /dɒkju'mentri/ 90
dodo /'dəʊdəʊ/ 16
doe /dəʊ/ 19
dog (~ged) 73
dogmatic /dɒg'mætɪk/ 67
dole /dəʊl/ 56
dolphin /'dɒlfɪn/ 46
dome /dəʊm/ 18
domesticated 46
dominoes /'dɒmɪnəʊz/ 27
donate /dəʊ'neɪt/ 62 (-tion) 8
done to a turn 43
dope /dəʊp/ 95
dosh /dɒʃ/ 95
double 50
doubt /daʊt/ 18, 67
dough /dəʊ/ 19, 95
doughnuts /'dəʊnʌts/ 95
dove /dʌv/ 46
Dow Jones index
  /daʊ'dʒəʊnz/ 56
down 79
down and out 74, 77
down in the dumps 74, 79
down with 19
down-to-earth 34
downpour 32
downy /'daʊni/ 64
dozens of 57
dram 42, 53, 92 , 94
drapes /dreɪps/ 93
draughts /drɑːfts/ 19, 27
draw /drɔː/ 19, 56
drawback 14
dread /dred/ 69
dreadful 8
dreadlocks 94
dream 65
dreich /draɪk/ (Scots /driːx/) 94
dress 47
dresser 3
dressing-gown 47
dressmaker 40, 97
drift 63
drink (~er) (~able) 7, 8, 28, 95
drinks like a fish 76
drip-dry 12
drive 2, 49, 63, 92
drive a hard bargain 83
drive-in 12
drizzle /'drɪzəl/ 17, 32
drop 57
drop a clanger 74
(a) drop in the ocean 74
dropout 14
drought /draʊt/ 32, 38
drugs 55, 95
drum 19
drunk 95 (as ~ as a lord) 76
drunken driving 55
(as) dry as a bone 76
dual carriageway 49
duck (~ling) 73
due to 22
dukedom /'dʒuːkdəm/ 11
dull /dʌl/ 64
dumb /dʌm/ 18, 34
dungarees /dʌŋgə'riːz/ 27
dust-proof 12
duster /'dʌstə/ 26
dustpan /'dʌspæn/ 36
Dutch /dʌtʃ/ 31
duty-free 12, 49
duvet /'duːveɪ/ 16

eagerly 70
eagle /'iːgəl/ 46
earache /'ɪəreɪk/ 48
earldom /'ɜːldəm/ 11
earlier on 20
early retirement 40
earn a living 40
earthquake /'ɜːθkweɪk/ 38
easel /'iːzəl/ 16
(as) easy as falling off a log 76
easy-going 12, 34
eat like a horse 76
eccentric /ɪk'sentrɪk/ 34, 67
eco-friendly 99
economy /ɪ'kɒnəmi/ 44
  (-mics) 27 (-mist) 40
  (-mical) 34
ecstasy /'ekstəsi/ (-tatic) 68
Ecuadorian /ekwə'dɔːrɪən/ 31
edgeways /'edʒweɪz/ 82
edible /'edɪbəl/ 8
edit (~or) (~orial) 2, 42, 53
edition /ɪ'dɪʃən/ 42
educate (-tion) 5, 10, 39, 40
efficient /ɪ'fɪʃənt/ 9
effort 85
eggplant 43, 93
egotistical /iːgə'tɪstɪkəl/ 12
Egyptian /iː'dʒɪpʃən/ 31
eightish /'eɪtɪʃ/ 8
elapse /ɪ'læps/ 58

elbow /'elbəʊ/ 37
elderly 49
elders 35
elect (~ion) (~ive) (~or) 54
electrician /ɪlek'trɪʃən/ 40
elegant /'eləgənt/ 33, 45, 47
elephant 29, 46
elevator /'eləveɪtə/ 93
elite /ɪ'liːt/ 16
elm /elm/ 46
elongated /'iːlɒŋgeɪtɪd/ 46
embargo /ɪm'bɑːgəʊ/ 16
embassy 54
emergency /ɪ'mɜːdʒənsi/ 30
employ (~able) (~ee) (~er) (~ment) 6, 11, 86
empty (-tiness) 11
emu 46
encapsulate /ɪn'kæpsjuleɪt/ 45
endangered species 46
endure /ɪn'dʒʊə/ 89
enemy 5
energy 26
energy-rich 46
engine (~ driver) (~ room) 49, 93
engineer (~ing) 40, 52, 93
enjoy /ɪn'dʒɔɪ/ 2, 45, 69 (~ment) 8
enough on one's plate 74
ensue /ɪn'sjuː/ 22
entertainment /entə'teɪnmənt/ 11
enthusiasm /ɪn'θuːziæzəm/ (-stic) 26, 68
envy /'envi/ 11 (-vious) 34
environment /ɪn'vaɪrəmənt/ 44
epidemic /epə'demɪk/ 38
equal /'iːkwəl/ (~ity) 11, 51 (~ly) 24
equipment 26, 30
era /'ɪərə/ 58
eraser /ɪ'reɪzə/ 93
erupt /ɪ'rʌpt/ (~ion) 38
Esso 98
establish /ɪ'stæblɪʃ/ 88
estate 62 (~ agent) 45 (~ car) 49
estuary /'estʃərɪ/ 44
eternal 58
ethnic /'eθnɪk/ 31
European 31
evaluation /ɪvælju'eɪʃən/ 25
Eve-teaser 94
even number 51
even-tempered 34
evening class 29, 45
evergreen 46
every now and then 75
evidence /'evɪdəns/ 55
evil-smelling 71
ex- 9, 35
exam 98
examine 48, 90
excellent 2
excessive 57
excise duties /'eksaɪz/ 56
exciting (-tement) (-ted) (-tedly) 8, 11, 68, 70
exclamation mark 3
exclude /ɪks'kluːd/ 46
excommunicate 9
excursion /ɪk'skɜːʃən/ 50
excuse /ɪk'skjuːs/ 85
executive /ɪg'sekjətɪv/ 40
exempt /ɪg'zempt/ 60
exhale /eks'heɪl/ 9
exhausted /ɪg'zɔːstɪd/ 12 (-tion) 48
exhibit /ɪg'zɪbɪt/ (~ion) 42, 45
existence /ɪg'zɪstəns/ 89
expand (~nse) 59
expelled 2
experience 26, 89
experiment, 52
explode /ɪk'spləʊd/ (-osion) 38
explorer 26
export /'ekspɔːt/ /ɪk'spɔːt/ 3, 10
expose 10
express 9, 10, 49 (~ion) 10
extend 59
extinct /ɪk'stɪŋkt/ 46
extinguish /ɪk'stɪŋgwɪʃ/ 88
extort /ɪk'stɔːt/ 9
extract 9
extravagant /ɪk'strævəgənt/ 4, 34
extremely 57
extroverted /'ekstrəvɜːtɪd/ 10, 34
eye to eye 35
eyeballs 95
eyes in the back of one's head 78
eyes like a hawk 76, 78

fab /fæb/ 95
face 85
(a) face as long as a fiddle 79
fact 25, 26
fail /feɪl/ 39, 65, 87
faint /feɪnt/ 48
fair /feə/ 19, 33
fairly 57
faith /feɪθ/ 11
fall, *expressions with* 35, 37, 69
fall 93
fallout /'fɔːlaʊt/ 14
falter /'fɒltə/ 65
familiarity /fəmɪli'ærɪti/ 11
family 46 (~ planning) 13
famine /'fæmɪn/ 38
fanatical /fə'nætɪkəl/ 67
fancy /'fænsi/ 7, 35, 69
far (~away) 59
far-fetched 12
fare /feə/ 19, 56
farewell 7
farmer 40, 97
fascinate /'fæsɪneɪt/ 69
fashion /'fæʃən/ 53, 89 (~able) 47
fast 37, 63 (a ~ worker) 78
fasten /fɑːsən/ 18, 85
fats 46
fatty /'fæti/ 43
fatwa /'fætwə/ 99
faucet /'fɔːsət/ 93
favour /'feɪvə/ 91
fax 52, 98 (~able) 99
faze /feɪz/ 19
fear /fɪə/ 11
feature /'fiːtʃə/ 53
fed up 12, 68
fee 56
feedback 14
feel, *expressions with* 64, 67, 71, 79
feeling 68, 88
felicitate /fə'lɪsɪteɪt/ 94
fella /'felə/ 95
female 46
ferry /'feri/ 49
fertile /'fɜːtaɪl/ 46 (~lise)
fever /'fɪːvə/ 48
fiancé(e) /fɪ'ɒnseɪ/ 35, 97
fiasco /fi'æskəʊ/ 16
fiddle /'fɪdəl/ 4
fiend /fiːnd/ 18 (~ish) 45
fight like cat and dog 80
Fijian /fɪ'dʒɪən/ 31
file /faɪl/ 88
filing cabinet 40
film 2, 26, 29
filthy /'fɪlθi/ 45
finally 100
finance /'faɪnæns/ 56
find 40, 87, 89
fine art 42

fine /faɪn/ 55, 96, 100
finger 71 (a ~ in every pie) 83
Finn 31
fir tree 29, 46
fire /fɪə/ 40
fire-ball 38
fire-proof 12
firefighter 40, 97
fireman /'fɪəmən/ 97
firm 67
first (~ly) 100
first-born 12
first-class 12
first-hand 12
first-rate 81
first and foremost 77
first impression 33
first of all 100
fish /fɪʃ/ 28, 46
fish finger 43
fisherman 97
fishing 44 (~-boat) 49
fit 30, 47 (as ~ as a fiddle) 79
five finger discount 95
fix, *expressions with*
  80, 88, 95
(in a) fix 74, 80
fjord /'fiːjɔːd/ 16
flash /flæʃ/ 30, 52, 61
flat 7, 93, 98
  (as ~ as a pancake) 76
flat-footed 12
flatmate /'flætmeɪt/ 35
flaw /flɔː/ 52
fleetfoots /'flɪːtfʊts/ 94
Flemish /'flemɪʃ/ 31
flew /fluː/ 19
flexi-time /'fleksitaɪm/ 40
flexible /'fleksibəl/ (-bility) 8
flicker /'flɪkə/ 61
flight /flaɪt/ 49
flock 29
floe /fləʊ/ 16, 19
flogging /'flɒgɪŋ/ 55
flood /flʌd/ 32, 37, 38
floppy disc / flɒpi/ 52
flour /'flaʊə/ 26
flow /fləʊ/ 19, 63
flower /'flaʊə/ 46, 66, 89
  (~y) 47
flowing /'fləʊwɪŋ/ 46
flu /fluː/ 19, 48
fluent /'fluːənt/ 3
flutter /'flʌtə/ 63, 73
flux /flʌks/ 30
fly 49, 73
fly in the face of 74
fly off the handle 74
flying saucer 71
foal /fəʊl/ 73
foe /fəʊ/ 5
fog (~gy) 32
fold /fəʊld/ 65
following 20
fond /fɒnd/ 69
food 2, 26, 66
food poisoning 13
food processor 36, 52
  (-sing) 13
fool-proof 12
(a) fool's errand 74
foolish /'fuːlɪʃ/ 34 (~ness) 11
foot the bill 83
foot 2, 44
football player/pitch/match 41,
  45, 88
footballer 41
footlights 13
footpath 44
Footsie /'fʊtsi/ 56
for 67
for all that 23
for example/instance 100
for the time being 58
force /fɔːs/ 60
forceps /fɔːseps/ 40
forehead /fɔːhed/ 46
foreign correspondent 53
forest /'fɒrɪst/ (~ed) 44
forge /fɔːdʒ/ (~r) (~ry) 55
forgetful (~ness) 8, 12
forgivable /fə'gɪvəbəl/ 8
form 85
format 53
formation 52
formerly /'fɔːməli/ 20
formula /'fɔːmjələ/ 51
fortitude /'fɔːtɪtjuːd/ 11
fortune /'fɔːtjuːn/ 89
foundations /faʊn'deɪʃənz/ 27
fraction /'frækʃən/ 51
fragrant /'freɪgrənt/ 71
frank 34
frankfurter 16
fraternity /frə'tɜːnɪti/ 11
freckle /'frekəl/ 11, 33
freebie /'friːbiː/ 95
freedom 11, 54 (~-fighter) 4
freeway /'friːweɪ/ 93
freezing 68
freight train /freɪt/ 49
French /frentʃ/ 31, 98
french fries 93
(as) fresh as a daisy 76
freshen up 83
fridge /frɪdʒ/ 7, 98
friend /frend/ 7, 18, 35
  (~ship) 8, 11
frighten the life out of sb 79
frog 46, 73
frost 32
frown /fraʊn/ 72
fruit (~ salad/ juice) 43, 66
frustrated /frʌs'treɪtɪd/
  (-ting) (-tion) 68
fry /fraɪ/ 43
fudge cake 43
fuel /fjʊəl/ 95
fulfil /fʊl'fɪl/
  (~ling) (~ment) 65
full of oneself 34
full stop 4
function /'fʌŋkʃən/ 52
funnel /'fʌnəl/ 49
furious /'fjuːrɪəs/ 8, 68, 70
furniture /fɜːnɪtʃə/ 2, 3, 26, 30
furry /'fɜːri/ 64
further /'fɜːðə/ 39
further to/furthermore 24
fury /'fjuːri/ 11, 68, 70
fuselage /'fjuːzəlɑːʒ/ 49
fuss 85
futon /'fuːtɒn/ 16
fuzz /fʌz/ 95

gale /geɪl/ (~ warning) 32
gallery 45, 49
gallop /'gæləp/ 73
game show 53
gang 29
gangplank 49
gap
garage /'gærɑːdʒ/
  /'gærɪdʒ/ 49, 93
garden 66, 93 (~ing) 85
  (~ centre) 45
gargle /'gɑːgəl/ 17
garlic /'gɑːlɪk/ 43
garment 26
gas 26
gash /gæʃ/ 17
gasoline /'gæsəliːn/ 93
gateau /'gætəʊ/ 16, 43
gauze /gɔːz/ 15
Gawd forbids
  /gɔːd fə'bɪdz/ 95
gaze /geɪz/ 71
gears /'gɪəz/ 49
gems /dʒems/ 92
general 97
generate /'dʒenəreɪt/ 22

fine /faɪn/ 55, 96, 100
finger 71 (a ~ in every pie) 83
Finn 31
fir tree 29, 46
fire /fɪə/ 40
fire-ball 38
fire-proof 12
firefighter 40, 97
fireman /'fɪəmən/ 97
firm 67
first (~ly) 100
first-born 12
first-class 12
first-hand 12
first-rate 81
first and foremost 77
first impression 33
first of all 100
fish /fɪʃ/ 28, 46
fish finger 43
fisherman 97
fishing 44 (~-boat) 49
fit 30, 47 (as ~ as a fiddle) 79
five finger discount 95
fix, *expressions with*
80, 88, 95
(in a) fix 74, 80
fjord /'fiːjɔːd/ 16
flash /flæʃ/ 30, 52, 61
flat 7, 93, 98
(as ~ as a pancake) 76
flat-footed 12
flatmate /'flætmeɪt/ 35
flaw /flɔː/ 52
fleetfoots /'flɪːtfʊts/ 94
Flemish /'flemɪʃ/ 31
flew /fluː/ 19
flexi-time /'fleksitaɪm/ 40
flexible /'fleksibəl/ (-bility) 8
flicker /'flɪkə/ 61
flight /flaɪt/ 49
flock 29
floe /fləʊ/ 16, 19
flogging /'flɒgɪŋ/ 55
flood /flʌd/ 32, 37, 38
floppy disc / flɒpi/ 52
flour /'flaʊə/ 26
flow /fləʊ/ 19, 63
flower /'flaʊə/ 46, 66, 89
(~y) 47
flowing /'fləʊwɪŋ/ 46
flu /fluː/ 19, 48
fluent /'fluːənt/ 3
flutter /'flʌtə/ 63, 73
flux /flʌks/ 30
fly 49, 73
fly in the face of 74
fly off the handle 74
flying saucer 71
foal /fɔʊl/ 73
foe /fəʊ/ 5
fog (~gy) 32
fold /fəʊld/ 65
following 20
fond /fɒnd/ 69
food 2, 26, 66
food poisoning 13
food processor 36, 52
(-sing) 13
fool-proof 12
(a) fool's errand 74
foolish /'fuːlɪʃ/ 34 (~ness) 11
foot the bill 83
foot 2, 44
football player/pitch/match 41,
45, 88
footballer 41
footlights 13
footpath 44
Footsie /'fʊtsi/ 56
for 67
for all that 23
for example/instance 100
for the time being 58
force /fɔːs/ 60
forceps /fɔːseps/ 40
forehead /fɔːhed/ 46
foreign correspondent 53
forest /'fɒrɪst/ (~ed) 44
forge /fɔːdʒ/ (~r) (~ry) 55
forgetful (~ness) 8, 12
forgivable /fə'gɪvəbəl/ 8
form 85
format 53
formation 52
formerly /'fɔːməli/ 20
formula /'fɔːmjələ/ 51
fortitude /'fɔːtɪtjuːd/ 11
fortune /'fɔːtjuːn/ 89
foundations /faʊn'deɪʃənz/ 27
fraction /'frækʃən/ 51
fragrant /'freɪgrənt/ 71
frank 34
frankfurter 16
fraternity /frə'tɜːnɪti/ 11
freckle /'frekəl/ 11, 33
freebie /'friːbiː/ 95
freedom 11, 54 (~-fighter) 4
freeway /'friːweɪ/ 93
freezing 68
freight train /freɪt/ 49
French /frentʃ/ 31, 98
french fries 93
(as) fresh as a daisy 76
freshen up 83
fridge /frɪdʒ/ 7, 98
friend /frend/ 7, 18, 35
(~ship) 8, 11
frighten the life out of sb 79
frog 46, 73
frost 32
frown /fraʊn/ 72
fruit (~ salad/ juice) 43, 66
frustrated /frʌs'treɪtɪd/
(-ting) (-tion) 68
fry /fraɪ/ 43
fudge cake 43
fuel /fjʊəl/ 95
fulfil /fʊl'fɪl/
(~ling) (~ment) 65
full of oneself 34
full stop 4
function /'fʌŋkʃən/ 52
funnel /'fʌnəl/ 49
furious /'fjuːrɪəs/ 8, 68, 70
furniture /fɜːnɪtʃə/ 2, 3, 26, 30
furry /'fɜːri/ 64
further /'fɜːðə/ 39
further to/furthermore 24
fury /'fjuːri/ 11, 68, 70
fuselage /'fjuːzəlɑːʒ/ 49
fuss 85
futon /'fuːtɒn/ 16
fuzz /fʌz/ 95

gale /geɪl/ (~ warning) 32
gallery 45, 49
gallop /'gæləp/ 73
game show 53
gang 29
gangplank 49
gap
garage /'gærɑːdʒ/
/'gærɪdʒ/ 49, 93
garden 66, 93 (~ing) 85
(~ centre) 45
gargle /'gɑːgəl/ 17
garlic /'gɑːlɪk/ 43
garment 26
gas 26
gash /gæʃ/ 17
gasoline /'gæsəliːn/ 93
gateau /'gætəʊ/ 16, 43
gauze /gɔːz/ 15
Gawd forbids
/gɔːd fə'bɪdz/ 95
gaze /geɪz/ 71
gears /'gɪəz/ 49
gems /dʒems/ 92
general 97
generate /'dʒenəreɪt/ 22

generation gap 13
generous 4, 34 (-rosity) 11
genetic engineering 52
geopolitics /dʒiːəʊ'pɒlɪtɪks/ 52
Georgian /'dʒɔːdʒən/ 45
German 31 (~ shepherd) 93
gesture /'dʒestʃə/ 85
get, *expressions with* 40, 78, 79, 80, 83, 87
get-together 87
getaway 14
geyser /'giːzə/ 44
Ghanian /gɑː'neɪən/ 31
ghetto /'getəʊ/ 16
ghost /gəʊst/ 71
gift of the gab 81
gifted /'gɪftɪd/ 34
gigantic /dʒaɪ'gæntɪk/ 57
giggle /'gɪgəl/ 17
gills /gɪlz/ 46
ginger /'dʒɪndʒə/ 43
  (~-haired) 33
give, *expressions with* 2, 18, 22, 41, 42, 62, 82
give and take 74, 77
give or take 77
glacier /'gleɪsɪə/ 44
gladly 70
glance 71
gland 48
glare /gleə/ 64
glasnost /'glæznɒst/ 99
glass 28, 66
glasses 27
glen 94
glider /'glaɪdə/ 49
glimpse /glɪmps/ 71
glitter /'glɪtə/ 61
global /'gləʊbəl/ 38
globocrat /'gləʊbəkræt/ 99
gloomy /'gluːmi/ 61 (-mily) 70
glove(s) /glʌvs/ 41, 47
glow /gləʊ/ 61
gluttony /'glʌtəni/ 11
gnarled /nɑːld/ 64
go, *expressions with* 7, 18, 19, 40, 50, 70, 80, 85, 89, 91
(on the) go 89
go-ahead 92
goal /gəʊl/ 41, 65
gobsmacked /'gɒbsmækt/ 95
golf /gɒlf/ (~er) 41
  (~ course) 45
good 100 (as ~ as gold) 76, 78
good head for figures 78
good-looking 33
good-tempered 12, 34
goodbye 7
goodness 8
goods 27
goodwill 26
goose /guːs/ 2
Gorbymania /gɔːbi'meɪnɪə/ 99
gorge /gɔːʤ/ 44
Gothic /'gɒθɪk/ 45
government /'gʌvəmənt/ 54
  (~ health warning) 96
grab 71
grace /greɪs/ (~ful) 11, 46
grade /greɪd/ 39
graduate /'grædʒʊət/ /'grædʒueɪt/ 39
grandma lane 95
grant 39, 56
grape /greɪp/ 43
grapefruit 43
grasp 71
grass roots 13
grass 30, 95
grate /greɪt/ 19
grateful 9, 68, 70
grater 8, 36
gratitude /'grætɪtʃuːd/ 68, 70
greasy /'griːsi/ 43
great 2, 19, 23, 100
(a) great deal of 57
Greek 31
green fingers 81
greenhouse effect 13, 44
greetings 7
gregarious /grə'geərɪəs/ 34
grey /greɪ/ 33
grill 43
grin 72
grinder /'graɪndə/ 8
grizzle /'grɪzəl/ 17
groan /grəʊn/ 17, 19, 70
groovy /'gruːvɪ/ 95
(on the) grounds 22
group 29
grow /grəʊ/ 59 (~n) 19
  (~th) 11
growl /graʊl/ 17, 73
grudge /grʌdʒ/ 17
grumble /'grʌmbəl/ 17, 70
grumpy /'grʌmpi/ 17
grunt /grʌnt/ 17, 73
guard (~'s van) /gɑːd/ 49
guerrilla /gə'rɪlə/ 16
guesthouse /'gesthaʊs/ 50
guilty /'gɪlti/ 55
gulf /gʌlf/ 44
gust /gʌst/ 30
guy /gaɪ/ 4
Guyanese /gaɪjə'niːz/ 31
gymnast /'dʒɪmnæst/ 41
  (~ics) 27
gypsy /'dʒɪpsi/ 15

haemorrhage /'hemərɪdʒ/ 48
haggle /'hægəl/ 56
hail /heɪl/ (~stone) 32
hair /heə/ 5, 26, 28 (~y) 5
hair-restorer 8
hairdresser 40, 97
hairy /'heəri/ 5
hake /heɪk/ 43
half /hɑːf/ 18, 51
half-witted 34
hall /hɔːl/ 36
ham (~ it up/ ~ actor) 81
hamburger 16
Hampstead Heath 95
hand, *expressions with* 62, 83
hand-made 12
handbag /'hænbæg/ 2, 47, 93
handcuffs /'hæŋkʌfs/ 13, 27
handful 2, 8
handle /'hændəl/ 71
handout 14
hands 3
hands-on 99
handsome /'hænsəm/ 33
handy 2
hang on 100
hang-gliding 41, 50
hangar /'hæŋə/ 49
happen 86, 89
happy (-pily) (-piness) 8, 11, 68
  (as ~ as the day is long) 79
hard 65 (as ~ as iron) 76
  (as ~ as nails) 78
hard-hearted 12
hard-up 12
harem 16
harmless 8
harvest /'hɑːvɪst/ 46
hat 95
hatch /hætʃ/ 73
hate (~ful) 35, 69
hatred /'heɪtrəd/ 69
have, *expressions with* 7, 35, 40, 50, 60, 65, 67, 76, 78, 81, 83, 89, 95
have (got) to 60
have a butcher's 95
hay fever 13
haze /heɪz/ (-zy) 32
head and shoulders above 81

head in the clouds, have one's 78
head or tail of, can't make 82
head over heels (in love with) 83
head screwed on, have one's 78
head (~teacher/~mistress/ ~master) 97
head 18, 92
head for heights, have a 78
head like a sieve, have a 76, 78
head, bring to a 86
head-on 12
headlights 95
headline 53, 92
headphones/headset 53
headquarters 27
health centre 45
health /helθ/ 30
heap(s) /hiːps/ 29, 57
hearing /'hɪərɪŋ/ 11, 71
heart 2, 78, 91
heart attack 13, 48
heart of gold, have a 78
heat wave 32
(as) heavy as lead 64, 76
hectic /'hektɪk/ 45
hedgehog /'hedʒhɒg/ 46
heed 38
heel 47
height /haɪt/ (~en) 59
heir /eə/ (~ess) 18, 19
helicopter 49
hem 47
hen 69, 73
herbs /hɜːbz/ 43
herculean /hɜːkjə'lɪən/ 15
here and now 75
here and there 77
herring /'herɪŋ/ 43
hi /haɪ/ 7
hi-jacking /'haɪdʒækɪŋ/ 55
hibernate /'haɪbəneɪt/ 1, 46
hiccough /hɪkʌp/ 18, 72
high /haɪ/ 51, 59, 95
high and dry 77
high jump 41
(in) high spirits 79
high-heeled 12
high-jumper 41
high-necked 12
higher /haɪə/ 39
highly 60
hike /haɪk/ 50
hill (~ock) 44 (~y) 45
Hindi 31
hire /haɪə/ 62, 96
hiss 61
historic 45
hit 2, 92
hit and miss 77
hit the sack 74
hoarse /hɔːs/ 19
hockey player/stick 41
hold /həuld/ 67
hold one's tongue 74, 83
hold the record 41
hold your horses 74
hold-up 14
hole punch 52
holiday(s) 2, 85, 93 (~ camp) 50
hollow /'hɒləʊ/ 64
home 28
home-made 12
homework 26, 85
honest /'ɒnɪst/ 18, 34
honey /'hʌni/ 46, 66, 71
honour /'ɒnə/ (~able) 18
hood /hʊd/ 93
-hood 11
hoof /huːf/ 46
hooligan /'huːlɪgən/ 15
hoot 73
hop 73
hope 11 (~lessly) 70
hopeful 8, 11 (~ly) 70
horn 46
horoscope /'hɒrəskəʊp/ 53
horror /'hɒrə/ 11
horse 19, 73 (~-racing) 41
horse, I could eat a
hospital 29, 48
host /həʊst/ 29
hostage /'hɒstɪdʒ/ 55
hostility /hɒ'stɪlɪti/ 11
hot 43, 57, 68, 71
hot and cold 77
hot-headed 12
hour-glass 66
hourly 18
house 7, 19, 29, 36 (~work) 85
house-trained 73
housing estate 45
however 21
hubby /'hʌbi/ 95
huge /hjuːdʒ/ 23, 57
hum 61
human rights/ being 13, 97
humid /'hjuːmɪd/ 32
humorology /hjuːmə'rɒledʒi/ 99
humour /hjuːmə/ 11
hump 46
hump bridge 49
Hungarian /hʌŋ'geərɪən/ 31
hurricane /'hʌrɪkeɪn/ 32
hurry /'hʌri/ 63
hurt 2, 48
husband 35
hyena /haɪ'iːnə/ 29
hyphen /'haɪfən/ 4
hypochondriac /haɪpə'kɒndriːæk/ 48
hypocritical /hɪpə'krɪtɪkəl/ 12
hypothesis /haɪ'pɒθəsɪs/ 52

I mean 100
ice field /aɪs/ 44
ice-cream 66
ice-skating 41
Icelandic /aɪs'lændɪk/ 31
(the) icing on the cake 81
idea 2, 11, 88
ideology /aɪdi'ɒlədʒi/ 67
idolise /'aɪdəlaɪz/ 35
if all else fails 75
if the worst comes to the worst 75
if you ask me 67, 75
igloo /'ɪgluː/ 16
ill-mannered 34
illegal /ɪ'liːgəl/ 9, 55
illegible /ɪ'ledʒəbəl/ 9
illiterate /ɪ'lɪtərət/ 9
illusion /ɪ'luːʒən/ 11
imagination 11
immature /ɪmə'tʃʊə/ 9
impartial /ɪm'pɑːʃəl/ 9
impatient 9 (~ly) 70
imperial /ɪm'pɪərɪəl/ 54
impolite /ɪmpə'laɪt/ 34
import /ɪm'pɔːt/ /'ɪmpɔːt/ 9, 18
impose (-sing) (-sition) 10
impossible 60
impress (~ion) (~ive) 10
imprison 55
improve 90 (~ment) 11
in, *expressions with* 1, 7, 20, 21, 23, 24, 33, 56, 60, 68, 74, 79, 80,
in addition (to) 24
in advance 7
in case (of) 21
in conclusion 100
in favour of 67
in one's 20s/30s etc. 33
in other words 100

in summary 100
in the event of 21
in the meantime 20
incisor /ɪn'saɪzə/ 46
income /'ɪŋkʌm/ 9 (~tax) 13
inconvenient /ɪŋkən'viːnɪənt/ (-nce) 9, 88
increase /'ɪŋkriːs/ /ɪŋ'kriːs/ 18
independence 54
index 56
Indian 31, 94
indigestion /ɪndɪ'dʒestʃən/ 48
indiscreet /ɪndɪs'kriːt/ 9
induce /ɪn'dʒuːs/ (-ction) 10
industrial (~ise) (~ist) 3, 8, 10 (~ estate) 45
industry 3
inedible /ɪn'edɪbəl/ 9
inefficient /ɪnɪ'fɪʃənt/ 9
inevitable /ɪn'evɪtəbəl/ 60
infinitive 4
infirm 96
informal 4
information 2, 26, 30 (~ technology) 52
informer 95
inheritance tax 13, 56
injection /in'dʒekʃən/ 48
injure /'ɪndʒə/ (-ry) 38
innocent /'ɪnəsənt/ 34
input 14
inquiring /ɪŋ'kwaɪərɪŋ/ 34
inquisitive /ɪŋ'kwɪzɪtɪv/ (~ness) 11, 34
insensitive 9
insert /'ɪnsɜːt/ /ɪn'sɜːt/ 9, 52
insignificant /ɪnsɪg'nɪfɪkənt/ 57
insist (~ent) 70
inspect (~ion) (~or) 10, 90

inspired /ɪn'spaɪəd/ (-ration) (-ring) 68
install /ɪn'stɔːl/ 88
instant coffee 66
institution /ɪnstɪ'tʃuːʃən/ 54
instruct /ɪn'strʌkt/ 88
insult /'ɪnsʌlt/ /ɪn'sʌlt/ 18
insurance /ɪn'ʃɔːrəns/ 48
intellectual /ɪntə'lektʃʊəl/ 67
intelligent 7, 12, 34 (-nce) 26
intense (~ly) (-sify) (-sity) 11
intention /ɪn'tenʃən/ 11
interbreed /ɪntə'briːd/ 46
interest (~-free) 12, 56
interesting 18, 68
interject /ɪntə'dʒekt/ 88
internal 9
intestines /ɪn'testɪnz/ 2
into the bargain 24
intolerant /ɪn'tɒlərənt/ 9
intransitive /ɪn'trænsətɪv/ 4
introduce (~r) 10, 86
introduction (-tory) 10
introspective /ɪntrə'spektɪv/ 10
introverted /'ɪntrəvɜːtɪd/ 10, 34
intuition /ɪntʃuː'ɪʃən/ 71
Inuit /'ɪnjuɪt/ 31
invent (~ion) 52, 85
inverted 10
inverted commas 4
invest (~ment) 11, 56
investigate 55, 90 (-tion) 26
involvement 8, 11
Iranian /ɪ'reɪnɪən/ 31
Iraqi /ɪ'ræki/ 31
Irish /'aɪrɪʃ/ 31 (~ stew) 43
iron /'aɪən/ (~ing-board) 28, 36, 52
irregular /ɪ'regjʊlə/ 4
irrelevant 9
irreplaceable /ɪrə'pleɪsəbəl/ 9
irresponsible 9
irreversible 9
Israeli /ɪz'reɪli/ 31
issue /'ɪʃuː/ 25
itchy feet /ɪtʃi'fiːt/ 79
it's all very well 23
Italian 31
itch /ɪtʃ/ 48
item /'aɪtəm/ 30

jackal /'dʒækəl/ 16
jacuzzi /dʒə'kuːzi/ 52
jagged /'dʒægɪd/ 64
jail /dʒeɪəl/ 55
jam 37, 66, 94 (~ on it) 81
janitor /'dʒænɪtə/ 94
Japanese 31
jar /dʒɑː/ 66
javelin /'dʒævlɪn/ 41
jealous /'dʒeləs/ (~y) 11, 34
jeans /dʒiːnz/ 27, 47
jerk /dʒɜːk/ 95
jersey 15
jet 49
jewellery /'dʒuːəlri/ 66
job 26
job centre 45
jockey /'dʒɒki/ 41
jodhpurs /dʒɒdpəz/ 27
jog /'dʒɒg/ 41
john 95
joints /dʒɔɪnts/ 48
Jordanian /dʒɔː'deɪnɪən/ 31
journal /'dʒɜːnəl/ 53
journalism (-list) 8, 53
journo /'dʒɜːnəʊ/ 94
joystick /'dʒɔɪstɪk/ 49
judge /dʒʌdʒ/ 55
judgement /'dʒʌdʒmənt/ 25
judo 16 /'dʒuːdəʊ/
jug /dʒʌg/ 66
juice 66
July 15
jump out of one's skin 79
junior /'dʒuːnɪə/ 35
junk food/ mail 13
junta /'dʒʊntə/ 16
jury /'dʒʊəri/ 55
just as 20
justice /'dʒʌstɪs/ 11

kangaroo /kængə'ruː/ 73
karaoke /kæri'əʊki/ 99
karate /kə'rɑːti/ 16
kayak /'kaɪæk/ 16
keen 69, 80
keep a cool head 79
keep one's chin up 79
keep s.b. on the edge of their seat 79
ken 94
kerosene /'kerəsiːn/ 93
ketch /ketʃ/ 5
ketchup /'ketʃʌp/ 43
key 25, 92
keyboard 52
kick 2
kick off 82
kid 7, 95 (~'s stuff) 74
kidnap /'kɪdnæp/ (~per) (~ping) 55
kidney(s) /kɪdniːz/ (~ donor) 2, 8, 43
kind of 100
kind (~ness) (~-hearted) 2, 8, 11, 12, 43
kindergarten /'kɪndəgɑːtən/ 16
king (~ly) (~dom) 1, 11
kinship /'kɪnʃɪp/ 8
kiosk /'kiːɒsk/ 16
kip 7
Kiribati /kɪrɪ'bɑːti/ 31
kirk /kɜːk/ 94
kitten /'kɪtən/ 2, 73
kiwi bird/fruit /'kiːwiː/ 43, 46
kleptomaniac /kleptə'meɪnɪæk/ 69

knee /niː/ 18
knickers /ˈnɪkəz/ 27
knife /naɪf/ 18, 27
knit /nɪt/ 18
knob /nɒb/ 18
knock spots off 81
knot /nɒt/ 18
know your onions 81
know-all /ˈnəʊɔːl/ 78
knowledge /ˈnɒlɪdʒ/ 18, 26
Kuwaiti /kuˈweɪti/ 31

lab /læb/ 7, 98
labour force 13
labourer /ˈleɪbərə/ 40
laces /ˈleɪsɪz/ 47
lack of 60
ladder /ˈlædə/ 40
ladies and gentlemen 77
laid-back /leɪdˈbæk/ 12
lake 44
lamb /læm/ 18, 73
land 18, 28, 49
landing 36
landlady/lord 62
landscape /ˈlænskeɪp/ 44
lane 44
larder /ˈlɑːdə/ 36
large 57
laser /ˈleɪzə/ 98
lassie /ˈlæsi/ 94
lasso /læˈsuː/ 16
last 58
last-minute 12
lastly 100
late 18, 33
Latin (~ America) 31
lav (~atory) 4, 95
law /lɔː/ 55 (~yer) /ˈlɔɪə/ 40
(~ court) 45
(~ and order) 77
lay /leɪ/ 73
lay off 40
lay one's cards on the table 80
lay-by 14
lay-out /ˈleɪaʊt/ 14
laze /leɪz/ (-ziness) 8, 19
lazy-bones 78
lead /led/ /liːd/ 19
lead to 22
leak /liːk/ 37
lean and lurch 95
leaps and bounds 77
leather /ˈleðə/ 26, 40, 47, 66
leave a lot to be desired 74
leave 2, 46, 85
Lebanon 31
lechery /ˈletʃəri/ 11
lecture /ˈlektʃə/ (~r) 39
leek /liːk/ 43
left 62, 67
left luggage locker 49
left-handed 12
left-wing 67
legacy /ˈlegəsi/ 89
legal /ˈliːgəl/ 8
leggings /ˈlegɪŋz/ 27
legislator /ˈledʒɪsleɪtə/ 54
legless /ˈlegləs/ 95
lemming /ˈlemɪŋ/ 16
lemon juice 43
lemonade 66
lend 53, 56, 62
lend s.b. a hand 2
length /leŋθ/ (~en) (~y) 5, 11, 59
leotard /ˈliːətɑːd/ 15
leprosy /ˈleprəsi/ 38
let, *expressions with* 47, 62, 80, 91
let me see 100
let-out 14
lettuce /ˈletɪs/ 43
level 1
level-crossing 13
lever /ˈliːvə/ 52
liable /ˈlaɪəbəl/ 60
liberty 5, 11
library /ˈlaɪbrəri/ (-rian) /laɪˈbreərɪən/ 40, 45, 53
lick 72
lie-in /ˈlaɪɪn/ 14
life 11
lifespan 1
lift 93
light 28
(as ~ as a feather) 64, 76
light at the end of the tunnel 80
light-hearted 12
lighthouse /ˈlaɪthaʊs/ 49
lightning 30
like 69, 76, 79, 80, 100
like the look of 90
likewise /ˈlaɪkwaɪz/ 24
lime /laɪm/ 43, 71
limp /lɪmp/ 88
line 41, 42, 93
liner /ˈlaɪnə/ 49
link 92
listen /ˈlɪsən/ 18, 100
litter /ˈlɪtə/ 96
live /lɪv/ /laɪv/ 19
lively 45
liver /ˈlɪvə/ 2, 43
livid /ˈlɪvɪd/ 68
(a) load of bull 80
loads of /ˈləʊdzəv/ 57
loaf /ləʊf/ 30
loan /ləʊn/ 62
loathe /ləʊð/ 35, 69
lobster /ˈlɒbstə/ 43
local train 49
loch /lɒk/ (Scots /lɒx/) 94
lock oneself out 37
lodgings /ˈlɒdʒɪŋz/ 27
loft 36
long 59, 69 (~-haired/-legged/-sleeved) 12, 33, 47
long-distance 12, 41, 59
long-jump 41
long-standing 12
long-winded 82
longevity /lɒnˈgevəti/ 1
loo 4, 95
look, *expressions with* 2, 35, 40, 69, 71, 86, 90, 100
look-out 14
(on the) lookout 90
looks 27
loose /luːs/ 47
loot /luːt/ 95
lorry /ˈlɒri/ 18, 49, 93
lose /luːz/ 5
loss /lɒs/ 56, 85
lost 41
lost property office 51
(a) lot of (bother) 26, 57
lots of 7, 57
loud /laʊd/ 71
love (~r) (-ving) (~liness) 11, 18, 35, 69, 85
low-necked 12
low (~er) 59, 86
loyal /ˈlɔɪəl/ (~ty) 9, 26
luck 11, 30
(as) luck would have it 75
luggage /lʌgɪdʒ/ 26, 30, 93
lump 30, 48
lung(s) /lʌŋz/ 2, 48
luxury goods 13

machiavellian /mækɪəˈvelɪən/ 15
macho /ˈmætʃəʊ/ 16
mackerel /ˈmækrəl/ 43
mac (~kintosh) 15
(as) mad as a hatter 76
madness 11
magazine /mægəˈziːn/ 53
magnificent 29, 45

magnolia 15
mail order 13
main course 43
maintain 67, 70
majority /mə'dʒɒrəti/ 54
(on the) make 74
make, *expressions with*
  35, 40, 50, 74, 83, 85
make a meal (out) of 74
make or break 77
make-up 26, 40
malaria /mə'leərɪə/ 38
Malay /mə'leɪ/ (~sian) 31
male /meɪl/ 46, 97
malicious-tongued
  /mə'lɪʃəs/ 73
malignant /mə'lɪgnənt/ 5
Maltese /mɒl'tiːz/ 31
mammal /'mæməl/ 46
mammoth 16
man 4, 7, 97
manage (~r) (~ress) 40, 65, 85,
  87, 91, 97
mandatory /'mændətri/ 60
mane /meɪn/ 46
mango /'mæŋgəʊ/ 43
manhood /'mænhʊd/ 8, 11
mankind /mæn'kaɪnd/ 97
many 57
maple /'meɪpəl/ 46
marginal seat 54
mark 39
market 45
marmalade 16
maroon /mə'ruːn/ 49
marriage 35
martyrdom /'mɑːtədəm/ 11
Marxism /'mɑːksɪzm/ 8, 67
mask 40
masochist /'mæsəkɪst/ 69
mass-produced 12
massive /'mæsɪv/ 46
mast /mɑːst/ /mæst/ 49
match (~ box) 66
match /mætʃ/ 47, 89
mate /meɪt/ 7, 35
maternity leave 40
maths /mæθs/ 2, 27
matter 25
mattress /'mætrəs/ 16
mayonnaise /meɪə'neɪz/ 43
mayor /meə/ 54
meagre /'miːgə/ 57
mean /miːn/ 4, 34
means 27, 30
measure /'meʒə/ 48
mechanic /mə'kænɪk/ 40, 49
media /'miːdɪə/ 53
medication /medɪ'keɪʃən/ 48
medicine /'medsən/ 26, 48
meeting 87
Melanesian /melәniːzɪən/ 31
melon /'melən/ 43
melt /melt/ 32
member (~ship) 8, 11, 55
memo 98
mention /'menʃən/ 91
mentor /'mentɔː/ 15
merit 45
metal /'metəl/ 66
meter /'miːtə/ 18
metropolis /mə'trɒpəlɪs/ 45
mew /mjuː/ 2, 73
Mexican 31
meow /mi'aʊ/ 17, 73
micro- 9
microbot /'maɪkrəbɒt/ 99
microphone /'maɪkrəfəʊn/ 40
microwave (~ry) 9, 52, 99
mid- 33
middle-of-the-road 67, 78
midge /mɪdʒ/ 29
might /maɪt/ 19
mild /maɪld/ 32, 43
miles away 78
miles better 81
milk /mɪlk/ 2, 30, 66
milkman/woman 97
milko /'mɪlkəʊ/ 94
million /'mɪljən/ 51
mimic /'mɪmɪk/ 86
mind you /maɪnd 'juː/ 100
mind 94
mini-vegetable 99
minister (-try) 54
minor /'maɪnə/ 96
minus /'maɪnəs/ 51
minuscule /'mɪnɪskjuːl/ 57
minute /maɪ'njuːt/ 57
(the) minute/moment 20
miscreant /'mɪskrɪənt/ 94
miserable (-ably) 68, 70
miserly /'maɪzəli/ 34, 70
misfire 65
misinform 9
mislay 5, 37
mislead 9
misogynist /mɪs'ɒdʒənɪst/ 69
mispronounce
  /mɪsprə'naʊns/ 9
misspell 9
mist 32
mistake 85
mistranslate 9
misty 32
misunderstand 9
mite /maɪt/ 19
mitts /mɪts/ 47
mixed up 68
moan /məʊn/ 19
modem /'məʊdem/ 52
moderate 67
modernise 8
Moldavian /mɒl'deɪvɪən/ 31
molecule /'mɒləkjuːl/
  (-lar biology) 52
monarchy /'mɒnəki/ 54
money 2, 26, 56, 89, 95
Mongolian /mɒn'gəʊlɪən/ 31
monk /mʌnk/ 97
monoboarding 99
monogamous /mə'nɒgəməs/ 9
monologue /'mɒnəlɒg/ 9
monorail 9
monosyllable 9
monotonous /mə'nɒtənəs/ 9
moo /muː/ 17, 73
moped /'məʊped/ 37
moral (~ist) 67
more-ish /'mɔːrɪʃ/ 43
moreover /mɔː'rəʊvə/ 24
mortar /'mɔːtə/ 38
mortgage /'mɔːgɪdʒ/ 56
mosquito /mɒs'kiːtəʊ/ 16
mother country/tongue 13, 31
mother (~hood) 8, 11
motion /'məʊʃən/ 7, 96
motion lotion 95
motive 22
motor-racing 41
motorway 93
mount /maʊnt/ 45
mountain (~eer) (~eering) 41,
  44, 50
mouse /maʊs/ 2, 52
moustache /məs'tæʃ/ 33
mousy /'maʊsi/ 73
mouth 44
move 63, 92
movie 93
mown /məʊn/ 19
mozzie /'mɒzi/ 94
much 57
(in a) muddle /'mʌdəl/ 80
mufti /'mʌfti/ 16
mug 66
mug (~ger) (~ging) 55
multi- 9
multilingual 31
multiplication
  /mʌltɪplɪ'keɪʃən/ 51

mum 7, 74
mumble /'mʌmbəl/ 17, 70
mumps 48
murder (~er) (~eress) 55, 97
murmur /'mɜːmə/ 70
muscle /'mʌsəl/ 18
muscular /'mʌskjələ/ 33, 46
museum /mjuː'zɪəm/ 45
mushroom /'mʌʃruːm/ 43
music (~ college) 30, 45
Muslim /'mʊzlɪm/ 67
muslin /'mʌzlɪn/ 15
mussel /'mʌsəl/ 43
must 60
mustard /'mʌstəd/ 43
mutter /'mʌtə/ 70
mystery /'mɪstri/ 25
mythical /'mɪθɪkəl/ 46

nab 94
nail-clipper 8
naive /naɪ'iːv/ 34
nap 83
nappy /'næpi/ 93
nark /nɑːk/ 95
narrow-minded 12, 34, 67
nationhood 11
nausea /'nɔːzɪə/ 48
nearby 59
nectarine 43
(in) need (of) 60, 85
needle /'niːdəl/ 26
neigh /neɪ/ 73
neighbourhood 8, 11
nerd /nɜːd/ 95
nervous (~ly) (~ wreck) 19, 68, 70
nest 46
never-ending 12
nevertheless 23
new-born 73
new leaf, turn over a 91
newmannery /njuː'mænəri/ 99
news 26, 30, 53, 91
newspaper 53
next 100
nick 95
night club 45
nightie /'naɪti/ 47
Nikkei /'nɪkeɪ/ 56
nine-to-five 40
no 98
no matter 21
noble /'nəʊbəl/ 46
noise (-sy) (~less) 61, 71, 85
North African 31
nose 49
nosh /nɒʃ/ 95
nostalgise /nɒs'tældʒaɪz/ 99
nostrils /'nɒstrəlz/ 46
nosy /'nəʊzi/ 34
not much to look at 90
note /nəʊt/ 39
notice 7, 71
nought /nɔːt/ 51
noun /naʊn/ 3
novel /'nɒvəl/ 42
now 100
now and then 75, 77
now then 75, 100
nuclear engineering 52
numb /nʌm/ 18
number 51, 57
number one, look after 90
numerate /'njuːmərət/ 51
nun 97
nurse /nɜːs/ 26
nutcase 81
nutmeg /'nʌtmeg/ 43
nutshell /'nʌtʃel/ 82, 88

oak /əʊk/ 46
oar /ɔː/ 41, 49
obedient /ə'biːdɪənt/ 9
obese /əʊ'biːs/ 33
object /'ɒbdʒekt/ 4
object /əb'dʒekt/ (~ion) 70
obligatory /ə'blɪgətri/ 60 (-tion) /ɒblɪg'eɪʃən/ 65
obliged /ə'blaɪdʒd/ 60
observe 71
obsessive 67
obstinate /'ɒbstɪnət/ 34
obtain 87, 89
ocean / 'əʊʃən/ 44
octagon /'ɒktəgən/ 51
odd number 51
odd 34, 67 (~ball) 78
odds and ends 74, 77
off-licence 66
off-peak 12
offence /ə'fens/ 55
offer a job 40
offspring /'ɒfsprɪŋ/ 7, 46
oil /ɔɪl/ 26, 28, 42, 43, 49
oily 43
oink /ɔɪŋk/ 73
ointment /'ɔɪntmənt/ 48, 66
okay /əʊ'keɪ/ 100
old-fashioned 47
oldies /'əʊldiz/ 94
olive /'ɒlɪv/ 66
ombudsman /'ɒmbədzmən/ 16
on, *expressions with* 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 40, 56, 58, 74, 77, 79, 80, 81, 89, 90
on and off 77
on condition that 21
on that occasion 20
on/off button 53
once /wʌns/ 20
one at a time 58
one swallow doesn't... 84
one-off 12
onion /'ʌnjən/ 28, 43
only have eyes for 78
onomatopoeia /ɒnəmætə'peɪə/ /ɒnəmætə'piːə/ 4
open 34
open-minded 67
open-necked/-toed 12
opera 29, 42, 45
operation 48, 89
operator 8
opinion 67, 88
opportunity /ɒpə'tjuːnɪti/ 60
opposite 3
oppose /ə'pəʊz/ (-sition) /ɒpə'zɪʃən/ 10, 54
oppress (~or) (~ion) (~ive) 10
optimist /'ɒptəmɪst/ 34, 69
optional /'ɒpʃənəl/ 60
or rather 100
ordeal /ɔː'diːl/ 92
ordinary 33
oregano /ɒrə'gɑːnəʊ/ 43
organic /ɔː'gænɪk/ (~ farming) 44, 52
organism /'ɔːgənɪzəm/ 52
Oriental 31
origami /ɒrɪ'gɑːmi/ 16
original (~ity) 2, 11, 34
ornithologist /ɔːnɪ'θɒlədʒɪst/ 69
(on the) other hand 23
ounce /aʊns/ 64
our 18, 19
oust /aʊst/ 92
out and about 77
out of sorts 74
out of this world 81
outcome /'aʊtkʌm/ 14, 22
outlay /'aʊtleɪ/ 14
outlet /'aʊtlət/ 14
outlook /'aʊtlʊk/ 14
output /'aʊtpʊt/ 14
outrageous /aʊt'reɪdʒəs/ 8
outset 14
outskirts 27, 45
outwith /aʊt'wɪð/ 94

oval /'əʊvəl/ 51
oven-cleaner 8
over the moon 74, 79
over the top 78
overcast /'əʊvəkæst/ 32
overcharge /əʊvə'tʃɑːdʒ/ 9
overcooked 43
overcrowded (-ding) 45
overdo /əʊvə'duː/ 9, 43
overdraft /'əʊvədrɑːft/ 56
overdrawn /əʊvə'drɔːn/ 56
overeat 9
overlook 45
overpopulation 44
overpriced 2
overrun 9
oversleep 9, 37
overtake 49
overtired 9
overweight 33
overwhelming 57
overworked 9
owing to 22
owl /aʊl/ 73
owner /'əʊnə/ (~ship) 11, 62
ox /ɒks/ 2
oxygen /'ɒksɪdʒən/ 51
oyster /'ɔɪstə/ 43
Oz /ɒz/ 94
ozone layer /'əʊzəʊn / 44

pace /peɪs/ 63
pacifist /'pæsɪfɪst/ 67
pack (~et) 29, 66
package holiday 2, 13
packed /pækt/ 45
pad 94
paddle /'pædəl/ 41
pail /peɪl/ 19
pain (~ful) 19, 48
(a) pain in the neck 74, 78
paint 66
painting 42
pair /peə/ 47
Pakistani 31
pal 7
palaver /pə'lɑːvə/ 16
pale /peɪl/ 19
palm /pɑːm/ 18
pamphlet /'pæmflət/ 15
pan 66
Panamanian 31
pander /'pændə/ 15
pane /peɪn/ 19
panti-hose /'pæntihəʊz/ 93
pantry /pæntri/ 36
pants 93
paper 7, 26, 28, 66
paraffin /'pærəfɪn/ 93
Paraguayan 31
paralytic /pærə'lɪtɪk/ 95
park (~ing meter) 18, 45, 49
parliament /'pɑːləmənt/ 54
parrot 46
parsley /'pɑːsli/ 43
part and parcel 77
part-time 12
participate /pɑː'tɪsɪpeɪt/ 86
partner (~ship) 8, 11, 35, 97
pass 39, 58
passenger (~ train) 49
passion (~ate) (~ately) 69, 70
passive 8
passport 5
past participle 4
pastime /'pæstaɪm/ 86
pat 71
paté /'pæteɪ/ 43
patent /'peɪtənt/ 52
patience /'peɪʃəns/ 26
patio /'pætiəʊ/ 16, 36
patter 61
pavement 93
paw /pɔː/ 2, 46, 71
pay (~ee) 8, 56
pay attention 86
pay over the odds 83
pay through the nose 83
pea(s) 43, 66
peace and quiet 77
peach /piːtʃ/ 43
peacock /'piːkɒk/ 46
peak /piːk/ 44
peal /piːl/ 19
peanut butter 66
peculiar /pə'kjuːlɪə/ 34
peddle /'pedəl/ 55
pedestrian crossing/precinct
  13, 45
pedigree /'pedəgriː/ 73
peel /piːl/ 19
peer /pɪə/ 71
pejorative /pə'dʒɒrətɪv/ 3
pen-name 13
penalty /'penəlti/ 96
pencil-sharpener 8
penguin suit 95
penicillin /penə'sɪlɪn/ 52
peninsula /pə'nɪnsjʊlə/ 44
pension /'penʃən/ 56
pentagon 51
people 28
pepper 28, 43
per (~ annum/cent/head) 51
perestroika /perə'strɔɪkə/ 16
perfectionist 67
performer 40 (-mance) 42
performing arts 42
perfumed /'pɜːfjuːmd/ 71
period 58
permanent (-nce) 11, 58
permission 8
permit /'pɜːmɪt/ /pə'mɪt/ 18
permit holder 96
person (~-hour) 97
personal /'pɜːsənəl/ 67
personnel officer /pɜːsə'nel/ 40
perspective 10
perspire (-ration) 72
persuade /pə'sweɪd/ 86
Peruvian 31
pessimistic /pesə'mɪstɪk/ 34
pet 69
petal 46, 93
petrol (~ pump/station) 26, 49
phase /feɪz/ 19
phenomenon 2 /fə'nɒmənən/
philosophy /fɪ'lɒsəfi/
  (-pher) 67
phoenix /'fiːnɪks/ 46
phone /fəʊn/ 7, 98 (~ call) 85
photocopier /'fəʊtəʊkɒpiə/ 52
photograph (~er) (~ically) (~y)
  1, 8, 18
phrase /freɪz/ 3
physician /fɪ'zɪʃən/ 52
physics /'fɪzɪks/
  (-cist) /'fɪzɪsɪst/ 2, 8, 27, 52
physiotherapist
  /fɪzɪəʊ'θerəpɪst/ 40
pianist /'pɪənɪst/ 8
pick 46
pick and choose 77
pick holes in 81
pick up 53
pickpocket (~ing) 55
picture 88
picturesque /pɪktʃə'resk/ 45
pie in the sky 74
piece /piːs/ 30
pig(s) 29, 43, 95 (~let) 73
pig-headed 4, 12, 34
pig in a poke, buy a 83
pigeon /'pɪdʒɪn/ 46
pile /paɪl/ 29
pillock /'pɪlək/ 95
pillow /'pɪləʊ/ 50
pills 48
pilot /'paɪlət/ 2, 49
pin-striped 47
pin-up 14

pincers /'pɪnsəz/ 27
pine /paɪn/ 46
pineapple 71
pissed /pɪst/ 95
piste /piːst/ 41
place /pleɪs/ 7, 19
plaice /pleɪs/ 19, 43
plain /pleɪn/ 33, 44, 47
plane /pleɪn/ 29, 98
plant 28, 46 (~ holder) 8
planting 44
plaster 48
plastic 26, 66
platonic /plə'tɒnɪk/ 15
play 29
plea /pliː/ 55, 92
(as) pleased as Punch 79
pledge /pledʒ/ 92
plenty (of) 45, 57
pliers /'plaɪəz/ 27
plod (~der) 63
plonk (~er) 95
plough /plaʊ/ 18, 40
ploy /plɔɪ/ 92
plug /plʌg/ 36
plum /plʌm/ 43
plumber /'plʌmə/ 40
plump /plʌmp/ 33
plus 24, 51
pneumatic /njʊ'mætik/ 18
pneumonia /njʊ'məʊnɪə/ 48
pocket money 13
poetry /'pəʊətri/ 42 (-tess) 97
point 25, 41, 51, 85
point of view 67
poke one's nose in (to) 74
polar bear 73
pole-vault (~er) 41
poles apart 23
police 95 (~man/woman/officer) 40, 97 (~ station) 45
policy /'pɒlɪsi/ 28, 54
polish /'pɒlɪʃ/ 26 (~ed) 6
politics /'pɒlətɪks/ (-tician) (-tical) /pə'lɪtɪkəl/ (political party/issue) 54
polka-dotted /'pəʊlkədɒtɪd/ 47
poll /pəʊl/ 92
pollen /'pɒlən/ 46
pollution /pə'luːʃən/ 8, 44, 45
polo-necked /pəʊlə'nekt/ 12
polytechnic /pɒlɪ'teknɪk/ 39
pond 44
poodle /'puːdəl/ 16
pool /puːl/ 41
poplar /'pɒplə/ 46
popular /'pɒpjələ/ (~ity) 11, 51
population 44
porch /pɔːtʃ/ 36
pork chop 43
port 49
port-hole 49
porter 10, 49
portion /'pɔːʃən/ 43
pose /pəʊz/ 10
position /pə'zɪʃən/ 25
possessions /pə'zeʃənz/ 62
possible (-bility) 60
post- 9
postie /'pəʊsti/ 97
postman/postwoman 66, 97
postpone /pə'spəʊn/ 10, 88
postwar 9
pot 66
potato 28, 43 (~ chips/crisps) 93
pottery 66
pound /paʊnd/ 64
pour /pɔː/ 18
pour cold water on 80
pour down 32
pour oil on troubled waters 80
pour one's heart out to s.b. 80
pouring with rain 80
poverty /'pɒvəti/ 30
power 89 (~ cut) 37 (~ point) 36
practice (-tise) /'præktɪs/ 19
pram /præm/ 93
prat 95
prawn /prɔːn/ (~ cocktail) 43
pray /preɪ/ 19
pre-schooler 99
prefix /'priːfɪks/ 4
pregnant 48
prejudiced /'predʒədɪst/ 45
premises /'premɪsɪz/ 27
prepare 85, 87
preposition 4
prerequisite /priː'rekwɪzɪt/ 21
preschool 39
prescribe /prə'skraɪb/ 48
present /'prezənt/ /prə'zent/ 18, 62, 88
preside /prə'zaɪd/ 54
president /'prezɪdənt/ (~ial) (-dency) 54
press 52, 53, 71
press agency 45
press-up 14
pressure /'preʃə/ 10
pretend 88
previously 20
prey /preɪ/ 19
price (~less) (~y) (~ tag) 2, 56, 88
prickly /'prɪkli/ 46, 64
pride /praɪd/ 11
priest /priːst/ 40
priesthood /'priːsthʊd/ 8
prim and proper 77
primary 39
Prime Minister 54
prime number 51
principle /'prɪnsəpəl/ 11
print 53
printer 52
printout /'prɪntaʊt/ 14
prior to 20
prison 55, 95
pro-government 9
pro- 9
probable (-bly) 60
probation /prə'beɪʃən/ 55
probe /prəʊb/ 92
problem 25 (~-free) 12
proceeds /'prəʊsiːdz/ 27
produce /prə'dʒuːs/ /'prɒdʒuːs/ (~r) 3, 10
product /'prɒdʌkt/ (~ion) (~tive) (~tivity) 3, 10, 11
professor 39
profit 56, 85
programme 53
progress 18, 26
prohibited /prə'hɪbɪtɪd/ 96
projector /prə'dʒektə/ 8, 40
promote /prə'məʊt/ 40
prompt /prɒmpt/ 22
pronoun /'prəʊnaʊn/ 4
proof 55
property 62
propose /prə'pəʊz/ (-sal) 88
proprietor /prə'praɪətə/ 62
prosecute /'prɒsəkjuːt/ 96
prospect 10
prosperity 11
protest /'prəʊtest/ /prə'test/ 18
proudly /'praʊdli/ 70
provide 62
provided/providing (that) 21
provisional /prə'vɪʒənəl/ 58
provoke (~d) 22
prudence /'pruːdəns/ 11
psalm /sɑːm/ 18
pseudo- /'sjuːdəʊ/ /'suːdəʊ/ 9
pseudonym /'sjuːdənɪm/ /'suːdənɪm/ 18

psychiatry /saɪ'kaɪətri/ (-tric) (-trist) 18
psychic /'saɪkɪk/ 18
psychology /saɪ'kɒlədʒi/ (-gical) (-gist) 18
pub (~lic house) 98
public relations officer 40
publish /'pʌblɪʃ/ (~er) (~ing) 42, 53, 89
pudding /'pʊdɪŋ/ 43
puddle /'pʌdəl/ 44
puff /pʌf/ 30
pull /pʊl/ 52
pull a fast one 74
pull it off 65
punctuation /pʌŋtʃuː'eɪʃən/ 4
puncture /'pʌŋtʃə/ 93
punish /'pʌnɪʃ/ (~ment) 55
puppy 73
purchase /'pɜːtʃəs/ 7, 56, 96
purify /'pjʊrɪfaɪ/ 8
purpose /'pɜːpəs/ 22
purr /pɜː/ 2, 73
purse /pɜːs/ 93
purser /'pɜːsə/ 49
pushy /'pʊʃi/ 34
put, *expressions with* 2, 3,18, 82, 88
pyjamas /pə'dʒɑːməz/ 27, 47
pyramid /'pɪrəmɪd/ 51

quack /kwæk/ 73
quaint /kweɪnt/ 45
quarrelsome /'kwɒrəlsəm/ 34
quay /kiː/ 49
question /kwestʃən/ 25, 48 (~ mark) 3
queue /kjuː/ 93
quick 63 (as ~ as a flash) 76
quick off the mark 78
quick-tempered 34
quick-witted 12
quid /kwɪd/ 7
quiet /kwaɪət/ 71 (as ~ as a mouse) 76
quit /kwɪt/ 92
quite /kwaɪt/ 57, 60, 69
quite the opposite 23
quiz /kwɪz/ 53

rabies /reɪbiːz/ 38
race /reɪs/ 33 (~ relations) 13
racecourse /'reɪskɔːs/ 41
racing driver 41
rack and ruin 77
racket /'rækɪt/ 41, 61
radar /'reɪdɑː/ 98
radical /'rædɪkəl/ 67
radio station 45
radish /'rædɪʃ/ 43
radius /'reɪdiəs/ 51
rage /reɪdʒ/ 11, 68
rail /reɪl/ 49
railway car/carriage 45, 93
rain 19, 30 (~y) 32 (~forest) 44 (~water) 66
raise /reɪz/ 19, 86, 88
rake /reɪk/ 36
range /reɪndʒ/ 29
rant and rave 77
rap /ræp/ 94
rape /reɪp/ 55
rapid /'ræpɪd/ 63
rash /ræʃ/ 48
raspberry /'ræzbəri/ 43
rat-race /'ræt reɪs/ 13
rate /reɪt/ 63
rate of exchange 56
rather /'rɑːðə/ 57
rattle /'rætəl/ 61
ratty /'ræti/ 73
rave reviews 42
ray(s) /reɪz/ 19, 61
razor /'reɪzə/ 27
re-introduce 86
reach /riːtʃ/ 65, 80, 87
react /ri'ækt/ 18, 52
reaction /ri'ækʃən/ 25
readable /'riːdəbəl/ 8
readiness /'redɪnəs/ 8
ready-made 12
realise /'rɪəlaɪz/ (-sable) (-sation) 65
really 57
reason 11, 22
rebate /'riːbeɪt/ 56
recall /rɪ'kɔːl/ 90
recede /rə'siːd/ 38 (-ding) 33
receipt /rə'siːt/ 18, 56
receive /rə'siːv/ 18, 53, 87, 89
receptacle /rə'septɪkəl/ 66
receptionist 26, 40
recipe /'resɪpi/ 18
reckon /'rekən/ 67
recognition /rekəg'nɪʃən/ 11
recognizable /rekəg'naɪzəbəl/ 8
record /'rekɔːd/ /rɪ'kɔːd/ 18, 91
record player/token 8, 13
record-breaking 12
recover /rə'kʌvə/ 87
rectangle /'rektæŋgəl/ 51
recycled paper 44
(in the) red 56, 74
(as) red as a beetroot 76
(a) red rag to a bull 76
red-haired 12, 33
reddish /'redɪʃ/ 8
redefine 9
reduce /rɪ'djuːs/ 10, 96
reduction 11, 56
redundant /rɪ'dʌndənt/ 40
reed /riːd/ 19
referendum /refə'rendəm/ 54
refrain /rə'freɪn/ 96
refugee /refjuː'dʒiː/ 38
refund /'riːfʌnd/ 56
refusal /rə'fjuːzəl/ 8, 40
regal /'riːgəl/ 1
regional /'riːdʒənəl/ 31
register /'redʒɪstə/ 4
registry office 45
regret /rə'gret/ 7
regular 4
reimburse /riːɪm'bɜːs/ 7
rein /reɪn/ 18, 19
reinforce /riːɪn'fɔːs/ 18
reject /rɪ'dʒekt/ /'riːdʒekt/ (~ion) 11, 18
relationship 11
relaxed /rə'lækst/ 12, 34 (-xing) 2
release /rə'liːs/ 55
relevant 9
reliability 26
reliable /rə'laɪəbəl/ 34
religious /rə'lɪdʒəs/ 67
reluctantly 70
remote control 36, 53 (~led) 12
renovate /'renəveɪt/ 85
rent 62
rep 98
repel /rɪ'pel/ 35, 69
repellent /rɪ'pelənt/ 69
rephrase /'riːfreɪz/ 9
replace 9 (~ment) 8, 11
report 10, 53, 90
reported speech 10
repose 10
representation (-tative) 54
repress 10
reprint 18
reptile /'reptaɪl/ 1, 46
republic 54
repulsion (-sive) 69
request /rɪ'kwest/ 7
requirement /rɪ'kwaɪəmənt/ 11, 21

research /'riːsɜːtʃ/ 26
(~ worker) 40
resemble /rɪ'zembəl/ 86
resentful/resentment 11
reserve /rɪ'zɜːv/ 88
residence /'rezɪdəns/ 7
residential /rezɪ'denʃəl/ 45
resit /riː'sɪt/ 39
resolution /rezə'luːʃən/ 25
respect /rɪ'spekt/ 10, 90
response 25
responsible 9
rest and recreation 77
restaurant-car 49
result /rɪ'zʌlt/ 22
retirement /rɪ'taɪəmənt/ 11
retract 86
retrospective /retrə'spektɪv/ 10
return /rɪ'tɜːn/ 87, 93
retype 9
reveal 86
revenge /rɪ'vendʒ/ 87
reverse /rɪ'vɜːs/ 23
revert /rɪ'vɜːt/ 10
review /rɪ'vjuː/ 2, 53, 91
revision 5
revolt /rɪ'vɒlt/ 69
revolution (~ary) (~ise) 54
rewind 9
reword 4
rewrite 9
rheumatism /'ruːmətɪzəm/ 48
rhyme /raɪm/ 42
ribbon /'rɪbən/ 47
rice /raɪs/ 26, 43
riddle /'rɪdəl/ 92
ride 2
ridge /rɪdʒ/ 44
riding 41
right /raɪt/ 19, 100
right-angled 51
right-wing 67
ring 7, 41
rink /rɪŋk/ 41
rip somebody off 83
rip-off /'rɪpɒf/ 56, 83
rise and shine 83
rite /raɪt/ 19
river 44
road 44, 61, 73 (~ works) 13, 49
roast /rəʊst/ 43
rob 55
robot /'rəʊbɒt/ 52
rock 42 (~ y) 44
rod 41
romance /rə'mæns/ 35
room 50
root 4, 46
rosemary /'rəʊzməri/ 35
rosy-cheeked 12
rotate /rəʊ'teɪt/ 52
rotation, 52
rotten /'rɒtən/ 71
rottweiler /'rɒtvaɪlə/ 16
rough /rʌf/ 18, 19, 46, 64
rough and ready 74, 77
round the bend 78
round trip 93
round-faced 33
round-neck 47
route /ruːt/ 18
row /rəʊ/ /raʊ/ 19, 29
rowing-boat /'rəʊɪŋ/ 49
royal /rɔɪəl/ 1, 45
rub /rʌb/ 48
rubber /'rʌbə/ 28, 93
rubbish /'rʌbɪʃ/ 66, 88, 93
(~ bin) 93
rudder /'rʌdə/ 49
rude /ruːd/ 34
ruff /rʌf/ 19
rugby /'rʌgbi/ 41
ruined /'ruːɪnd/ 57
Rumanian 31
rumble /'rʌmbəl/ 30, 61, 72
rump steak 43
run, *expressions with* 49, 54, 58, 63, 81, 91
run out 37, 49, 91
run-down 12, 45
runway 49
rural /'ruːrəl/ 3
rushing 63
Russian 31
rustle /'rʌsəl/ 17, 61

sack 66 (get the ~) 40
sadistic /sə'dɪstɪk/ 34
sadly 70
sadness 8
safe and sound 77
safety helmet /'seɪfti/ 41
safety officer 40
sail /seɪl/ 19, 49, 63
(~ling boat) 5
sailor 8, 49
salad dressing 43
salary /'sæləri/ 56
sales assistant 40
salmon /'sæmən/ 18, 43
salt (~y) 28, 43, 71
salt water 46
sand 18, 66 (~y) 44
sardine(s) 29, 43
satellite dish /'sætəlaɪt/ 53
satin /'sætɪn/ 15
satisfaction (-torily) (-tory) 11
satisfy (-fied) 11
sauce /sɔːs/ 28
sauna /'sɔːnə/ 16
sauté /'səʊteɪ/ 16
savings account 56
savoury /'seɪvəri/ 43
saxophone /'sæksəfəʊn/ 15
scales /skeɪlz/ 27, 46, 48
scalpel /'skælpəl/ 40, 48
scandal 53
Scandanavia 31
scarcity /'skeəsɪti/ 8
scared out of one's wits 79
scared stiff 79
scene /siːn/ 19, 42, 53
scenery /'siːnəri/ 42
scent /sent/ 19 (~ed) 71
school /skuːl/ 2, 39, 45
(~kid) 29
schoolmaster/schoolmistress 97
science /saɪəns/ 18, 52
scientist 40
scissors /'sɪzəz/ 1, 13, 27
scorching /'skɔːtʃɪŋ/ 32
score /skɔː/ 41
Scotch tape 93
Scottish 94
scratch /skrætʃ/ 2
scream /skriːm/ 70
screech /skriːtʃ/ 61
screw /skruː/ 95
screwdriver /'skruːdraɪvə/ 2
script /skrɪpt/ 40
scruffy /'skrʌfɪ/ 33, 47
sculptor /'skʌlptə/
(-ture) /'skʌlptʃə/ 42
sea 44, 49
seafood 43
seagull /'siːgʌl/ 46
seal /siːl/ 46, 90
season /'siːzən/ 43
second-class 12
secondary /'sekəndri/ 39
secretary /'sekrətri/ 40, 97
secure /sə'kjʊə/ 11, 65
security /sə'kjurɪti/ 11
(~ officer) 40
see, *expressions with* 35, 71, 91, 100
seen better days 74
seething /'siːðɪŋ/ 68

self- 12
self-assured 12, 34
self-catering 50
self-centred 12, 34
self-confident 12, 34
self-employed 2, 6
self-important 34
self-indulgent 12, 34
sellotape /'seləteɪp/ 26, 93
semester /sə'mestə/ 93
semi- 9, 36
semi-colon /semi'kəʊlɒn/ 4
seminar /'semɪnɑː/ 16
sender 8
senior 35
sensation 53
sense 11
sensible 34
sensitive 9, 34 (-vity) 11
sent 19
sentence 4, 55
sentiment (~al) (~alise) (~ally) 11, 45
Serbian 31
serial /'siːrɪəl/ 53
series /'siːriːz/ 27, 53
serve 50
service 50 (~ station) 49
set, *expressions with* 1, 2, 29, 42, 55, 88
set-up 14
setback 14
settee 5
settle 32
shabby /'ʃæbi/ 45
shade /ʃeɪd/ 1, 28, 64
shake 72
shake-up 14
shake in one's shoes 79
shallot /ʃə'lɒt/ 43
shallow /'ʃæləʊ/ 44, 59
shape /ʃeɪp/ 51
shares /ʃeəz/ 56
shark /ʃɑːk/ 46
shawl /ʃɔːl/ 16
shears /ʃɪəz/ 27
shed 36
sheep 29, 43, 73
sheepish 73
shell 38 (~ed) 1
shepherd /'ʃepəd/ 97
shepherdess /ʃepə'des/ 97
sherbet /'ʃɜːbət/ 16
shift-work /'ʃɪftwɜːk/ 40
shin-pads 41
shine /ʃaɪn/ 61 (-ny) 64
shipmate 35
shiver /'ʃɪvə/ 72 (~y) 48
shoal /'ʃəʊl/ 29
shock 11
shocking-pink 12
shoe horn 13
shook /ʃʊk/ 38
shoot /ʃuːt/ 2, 41, 53
shop-lifter (~lifting) 55, 96
shopping 66, 85 (~ centre) 45 (-per) 8
shore /ʃɔː/ 44
short (~en) 59 (~age) 60
short cut 59
short story 42
short-sighted 12
shorts 27, 41, 47
(a) shot in the dark 74
shout /ʃaʊt/ 18, 70
show /ʃəʊ/ 42, 53
show, it all goes to 74
shower /'ʃaʊə/ 30, 32, 50
shrewd /ʃruːd/ 4, 34
shriek /ʃriːk/ 70
shrimp /ʃrɪmp/ 43
shrink /ʃrɪŋk/ 59
shuttlecock /'ʃʌtəlkɒk/ 41
shyly /'ʃaɪli/ 70
Siamese 73
sick and tired 68, 77
sick 48 (~ leave) 40
(as) sick as a dog/parrot 76
sickie /'sɪki/ 95
sickly 43
sidewalk /'saɪdwɔːk/ 93
siesta /siː'estə/ 16
sigh /saɪ/ 72
sight /saɪt/ 11, 19, 71, 89
sight-seeing 2, 50
signal-box 49
Sikhs /siːks/ 31
silent 71
silk /sɪlk/ 26, 47 (~y) 64
silly 34
simple /'sɪmpəl/ 34
since then 20
sincere /sɪn'sɪə/ 34 (~ly) 70
singer 8, 29
single 50, 97
single-handed 2
single-minded 12, 34
singlehood 99
sink 37
sink or swim 77
sit 39
sitcom /'sɪtkɒm/ 53
site /saɪt/ 19, 45
sitting pretty 74
situation /sɪtjʊ'eɪʃən/ 25
sixth sense 71
sizeable /'saɪzəbəl/ 57
sizzle /'sɪzəl/ 17
skating rink 45
ski /skiː/ 16, 41, 50
skilled worker 40
skin cream 66
skinny /skɪni/ 4
skip 39, 73
skipper 49
skittles /'skɪtəlz/ 41
slalom /'slɑːləm/ 16
slang /slæŋ/ 4, 95
sleek /sliːk/ 64
sleep like a log 76
sleeping-car 49
sleet 32
sleeve 47
slice /slaɪs/ 30
slim 4, 33
slim-hipped 12
slipper(s) 27, 47
slippery 64
slither /'slɪðə/ 73
sloth /sləʊθ/ 11
slow 37
slow lane 95
slow off the mark 78
slowcoach 63, 78
slowly but surely 77
slum /slʌm/ 45
slush /slʌʃ/ 23
sly /slaɪ/ 34
small ads 53
small talk 82
smart /smɑːt/ 33, 34, 47
smash /smæʃ/ 37
smell (~y) 11, 71
smog /smɒg/ 32
smoke /sməʊk/ 30
smoker 8
smoko /'sməʊkəʊ/ 94
smooth /smuːð/ 64
smuggle /'smʌgəl/ (~r) (-ling) 55
snack 43
snail /sneɪl/ 46
snake /sneɪk/ 73
snatch /snætʃ/ 71
sneeze 72
snifter /'snɪftə/ 95
snobbish /'snɒbɪʃ/ 12
snooker /'snuːkə/ 41
snore /snɔː/ 72
snorkel /'snɔːkəl/ 16
snort 95

snout /snaʊt/ 46
snow /snəʊ/ 95 (~drift) 32 (~surfing) 99 (~y) 32
so 100
so to speak 100
so-called 12
soap 26, 30
soap opera 53
(as) sober as a judge 76
sociable /'səʊʃəbəl/ 34
social club 45
social security 56
social trends 53
socialist 67
socket /'sɒkɪt/ 36
sofa 3, 5
soft-hearted 12
soften /'sɒfən/ 18
solar power /'səʊlə/ 44
soldier /'səʊldʒə/ 26
sole /səʊl/ 19, 43, 47
solid 64
solution 25
sombre /'sɒmbə/ 61
sooner or later 77
sophomore /'sɒfəmɔː/ 39
soprano /sə'prɑːnəʊ/ 16
sorbet /'sɔːbeɪ/ 43
sore throat 48
sorry 18
sort of 100
sort 19
sought /sɔːt/ 19
soul /səʊl/ 19
sound 61, 71, 89 (~ barrier) 13
sound bite 13, 99
soup 66
sour /saʊə/ 43, 71
source /sɔːs/ 44
Southern African 31
souvenir /suːvə'nɪə/ 45
sow /səʊ/ /saʊ/ 19
sozzled /'sɒzəld/ 95
spacious /'speɪʃəs/ 45
spaghetti /spə'geti/ 16, 26
Spaniard /'spænjəd/ Spanish 31
spaniel /'spænjəl/ 73
spark off 22
sparkle /'spɑːkəl/ 61
sparse /spɑːs/ 64
spartan /'spɑːtən/ 15
spatter /'spætə/ 17
speak one's mind 82
species /'spiːʃiːz/ 46
spectacles /'spektəkəlz/ 27, 66
speed 11, 63
spell /spel/ 30, 58
spend 2, 56, 89
sphere /sfɪə/ 51
spices /'spaɪsɪz/ (-cy) 43, 71
spill 17, 37
spinach /'spɪnɪtʃ/ 43
spinster /'spɪnstə/ 97
spiral /'spaɪrəl/ 51
spit 17
spiteful /'spaɪtfəl/ 8
splash /splæʃ/ 17
splendid 2
split 2 (~ up) 35
splosh /splɒʃ/ 17
splutter /'splʌtə/ 17
spokesman/person/woman 97
spondulicks /spɒn'duːlɪks/ 95
sponsorship 11
sports car 49 (~ centre) 45
spot 30 (~s) 48 (~ted) 47
sprain /spreɪn/ 48
spray 17 (~ can) 44
spread /spred/ 38, 87
spring to mind 74
sprinkle /'sprɪnkəl/ 17
sprinter 41
spud /spʌd/ 7
spurt /spɜːt/ 17
sputnik /'spʌtnɪk/ 16
square /skweə/ (~d) 51, 94
(a) square peg in a round hole 78
squash /skwɒʃ/ 27, 41, 45
squid /skwɪd/ 43
stack 29
staff /stɑːf/ /stæf/ 29, 49
stage /steɪdʒ/ 42
stain /steɪn/ 37
stairs /steəz/ 27
stake /steɪk/ 19
stalk /stɔːk/ 46
stamina /'stæmɪnə/ 26
stammer /'stæmə/ 70
stand 54
(can't) stand/bear 35, 69
standardise /'stændədaɪz/ (~d) 8
standstill /'stænstɪl/ 45, 89
stapler /'steɪplə/ 8, 40, 52
star 51
star fruit 43
star in 2
starboard /'stɑːbəd/ 49
stardom /'stɑːdəm/ 11
stare /steə/ 71
starling /'stɑːlɪŋ/ 29
start 37, 87
starter 43
starve (-vation) (-ving) 38
state of affairs 25
state 30, 54
statesman/woman 54
station manager/master 97
stationary /'steɪʃənri/ 7
stay 94
steady boy/girlfriend 35
steak /steɪk/ 19
steal /stiːl/ 55
stealth /stelθ/ 11
steam engine 19, 52
steep /stiːp/ 44, 49
steeple /'stiːpəl/ 45
steering-wheel 49
stem from 22
stepladder 8
steppe /step/ 16
sterile /'steraɪl/ 46
sterling /'stɜːlɪŋ/ 56
stetson /'stetsən/ 15
stew /stjuː/ 43
steward/stewardess /'stjuːəd/ /stjuːə'des/ 49, 97
stick 41
stiffness /'stɪfnəs/ 48
stifling /'staɪflɪŋ/ 32
stinking /'stɪnkɪŋ/ 71
stir /stɜː/ (~rer) 63
stir fry 80
stir yourself / things up 80
stocky /'stɒki/ 33
stodgy /'stɒdʒi/ 43
stolen goods 95
stomach ache /'stʌməkeɪk/ 48
stone /stəʊn/ 26, 64 (~d) 95
stool /stuːl/ 3
stop 3, 37, 89
store /stɔː/ 46
store card 99
storm 18, 32
straight-haired 12
streaker /'striːkə/ 63
stream 44
streets ahead 81
strength /streŋθ/ (~en) /streŋθən/ 11
stress 4 (~ful) 45
stretch /stretʃ/ 59
strife /straɪf/ 92
strike /straɪk/ 38, 40
string 29
striped /straɪpt/ 47
stroke /strəʊk/ 30, 71
strong 11, 67 (as ~ as an ox) 76

strongly 11
struck 45
structure /'strʌktʃə/ 52
stubborn /'stʌbən/ 34, 73
stuck-up 12
study 36
stunning /'stʌnɪŋ/ 2
stupid (~ity) 11, 34, 95
sturdy /'stɜːdi/ 46
stutter /'stʌtə/ 70
style /staɪl/ 45
sub-editor 9, 53
sub-human 9
sub-species 46
subdivision 9
subject /'sʌbdʒekt/ /səb'dʒekt/ 3, 18, 59
submarine /sʌbmə'riːn/ 9
submit 88
substitution /sʌbstɪ'tʃuːʃən/ 11
subtle /'sʌtəl/ 18
subtraction /sʌb'trækʃən/ 51
suburb /'sʌbɜːb/ 45
subway 9, 93
succeed /sək'siːd/ 39, 65, 86, 87, 89
success /sək'ses/ (~ful) 65, 85
suck /sʌk/ 72
Sudan 31
suede /sweɪd/ 15, 47
suffering /'sʌfrɪŋ/ 38
suffix 4
sugar 26, 66 (~y) 43
sugar-free 12
suggest /sə'dʒest/ 5 (~ion) 85, 88
suit /suːt/ 47, 89
suitcase 36
summit /'sʌmɪt/ 44
sun-tanned 12
sunbathe /'sʌnbeɪð/ 50 (-bathing) 2
sunburn 48
sunglasses 13
super cola 95
superb 2
superiority /supɪəri'ɒrəti/ 11
supernatural 71
supersonic 49
supervisor 8, 40
supply /sə'plaɪ/ 62
support (~er) (~ive) 10
suppose 10 (-sing) 21
suppress /sə'pres/ 10
surface /'sɜːfɪs/ 64
surgeon /'sɜːdʒən/ 26, 40, 48
survive /sə'vaɪv/ (-vor) (-val) 11, 38
suspect /sə'spekt/ /'sʌspekt/ 10, 18, 67
swallow /'swɒləʊ/ 72
swarm /swɔːm/ 29
sway /sweɪ/ 63
sweatband 41
sweater 47
sweatshirt 41
Swede /swiːd/ 31
sweep something under the carpet 80
sweet 43, 66, 71, 93
sweet-smelling 46, 71
sweetcorn /'swiːtkɔːn/ 43
sweetheart /'swiːthɑːt/ 69
swell with pride 79
swept /swept/ 38
swerve /swɜːv/ 49, 63
swift /swɪft/ 63
swim (~mer) 50, 59, 73
swimming pool 45
Swiss 31
switch on 52
swollen /'swəʊlən/ 48
sword /sɔːd/ 18
swot /swɒt/ 7
syllable /'sɪləbəl/ 4
synonym /'sɪnənɪm/ 4
syringe /sə'rɪndʒ/ 48

ta /tɑː/ 7
ta-ta /tə'tɑː/ 7, 95
tablemat 36
tablets /'tæbləts/ 48
tabloid /'tæblɔɪd/ 53
tadpole /'tædpəʊl/ 73
taffeta /'tæfətə/ 16
tail /teɪl/ 2, 46, 49
tailback 14
tailor /'teɪlə/ 40, 97
Taiwanese /taɪwə'nɪːz/ 31
take, *expressions with* 39, 40, 41, 47, 48, 49, 58, 74, 77, 80, 81, 86, 87, 89, 90
take-away /'teɪkəweɪ/ 45
takeover /'teɪkəʊvə/ 14
talent 26 (~ed) 34
talk, *expressions with* 82
talk(s) 18, 92
talking of... 75
talking-point 82
Tamil /'tæmɪl/ 31
tanned /tænd/ 33
tap 71, 93
tape /teɪp/ 28 (~ measure) 48 (~ recorder) 52
target 43
tarragon /'tærəgən/ 43
tart 18
tartan 47
taste /teɪst/ (-ty) (~ful) 71 (~less) 11, 43, 71
tattoo /tæ'tuː/ 16
tawdry /'tɔːdri/ 15
tax /tæks/ 13, 56
tax-free 12
taxi 93 (~ rank) 45
tea 19, 28, 66 (~ bag/pot/towel) 13, 26, 36, 66
teach 1 (~er) 8, 18, 26, 40, 97
teacher's pet 78
teacher-training college 39
team 18, 29 (~-mate) 33
tearful /'tɪəfəl/ 8
teasmade /'tiːzmeɪd/ 50
teaspoonful /'tiːspuːnfəl/ 48
technical college 39
technology /tek'nɒlədʒi/ (-gist) 52
teddy bear /'tedibeə/ 15
tee /tiː/ 19
teeth 95
telecommunications 52
telepathy /tə'lepəθi/ 71
telephone (-nist)18
teleworking /'teliwɜːkɪŋ/ 99
telly /'teli/ 7, 98
temper /'tempə/ 30, 88
temperance /'temprəns/ 11, 48
temporary /'tempəri/ 58
tempt (~ation) 69
ten-pin bowling 41
tenant 62
tend 1, 45
tender 19 (~ness) 11
tennis 41, 45
tense 34
tension /'tenʃən/ 30
tent 2
(on) tenterhooks /'tentəhʊks/ 80
term 93
terms 89
terrace /'terɪs/ (~d) 36
terrify /'terɪfaɪ/ 8
terrorist /'terərɪst/ (-ise) 4, 8, 55
test(s) 39, 48
texture /'tekstʃə/ 64
Thai /taɪ/ 31
thanks 1, 7

that is to say 100
that reminds me 75
that's all well and good 23
that's it/that 75
thaw /θɔː/ 32
theatre /'θɪətə/ 3, 42, 45
theft /θeft/ 55
then 20
thermal spring 44
thermometer /θə'mɒmɪtə/ 48
thick /θɪk/ 64
thin 64 (~-faced) 33 (~-lipped) 12 (as ~ as a rake 76
thinker 67
third /θɜːd/ 51
thirsty /'θɜːsti/ 68
thirtyish /'θɜːtiɪʃ/ 8
this and that 75
this is it 75
this, that and the other 75
thistle /'θɪsəl/ 46
thorn /θɔːn/ 46
though /ðəʊ/ 18
thought /θɔːt/ 11
thread /θred/ 26, 92
threaten /'θretən/ 70
three-dimensional 51
thrifty /'θrɪfti/ 4, 34
thrilled /θrɪld/ (-ling) 68
thrive /θraɪv/ 46
through /θruː/ 18, 19
through road 96
throughout /θruː'aut/ 20
throw /θrəʊ/ 2
throw away 87
thud /θʌd/ 61
thunder 30 (~storm) 32
thyme /taɪm/ 43
ticket collector/holder/office 8, 49
(the) tide has turned 80
tidy /'taɪdi/ 88
tight(s) /taɪt(s)/ 27, 47, 93
(in a) tight corner 80
tight-fisted 34
tight-fitting 12
till then 20
timber /'tɪmbə/ 26
time, *expressions with* 58
time and time again 58
(the) time (that) 20
time bomb 38
time-consuming 12
time share 36, 50
timeless /'taɪmləs/ 58
tin 66 (~ opener) 8, 13
tinkle / 'tɪŋkəl/ 17
tiny /'taɪni/ 57
tip 26
(on the) tip of one's tongue 83
tippex /'tɪpeks/ 40
tiptoe /'tɪptəʊ/ 83
tire /'taɪə/ 19 (~d) 48, 57, 68
tissues /'tɪʃuːz/ 66
titfer /'tɪtfə/ 95
to and fro 77
to boot 24
to my mind 67
to the touch 64
toe 19
toe the line 80, 83
tolerant 9
tolerate 4, 88
tom 73
tomb /tuːm/ 18
tomcat 2
tongs /tɒŋz/ 27
tons of 57
toowit toowoo /tə'wɪt tə'wuː/ 73
tool /tuːl/ (~ box) 66
tooth /tuːθ/ 2 (~ paste) 26, 30, 66
top 51
top-hole 95
top-secret 12
top of the class 78
(on) top form 79
(on) top of (all) that 24
(on) top of the world 79
topic /'tɒpɪk/ 25
topnotch /tɒp'nɒtʃ/ 81
tore /tɔː/ 63
torrential rain 32
tortoise /'tɔːtəs/ 1, 46
totally 57
touch /tʌtʃ/ 11, 71
tough /tʌf/ 18
tour /tɔː/ 50
touring /'tɔːrɪŋ/ 2
tow /təʊ/ 19
town council 54
Town Hall 45
toy /tɔɪ/ 66
tracksuit 27
tractor /'træktə/ 40
trade 28
traditional (~ist) 67
traffic (~ jam/lights/system/ warden) 13, 27, 45, 55
trafficking /'træfɪkɪŋ/ 55
tragedy /'trædʒədi/ 38
training 26
tram 49
transfer /træns'fɜː/ /'trænsfɜː/ 18
transitive 3
transport /'trænspɔːt/ /træn'spɔːt/ (~ation) 10, 18, 30, 49
transpose /træns'pəʊz/ 10
trashcan /'træʃkæn/ 93
travel 26, 50, 63
trawler /'trɔːlə/ 49
tread /tred/ 18
treatment 48
tree 46
tremble /'trembəl/ 72
tremor /'tremə/ 38
trendy /'trendi/ 47
trespasser /'trespəsə/ 96
trial /'traɪəl/ 55
triangle /'traɪæŋgəl/ 2, 51
triangular /traɪ'æŋgjələ/ 51
tributary /'trɪbjətri/ 44
trickle /'trɪkəl/ 17
trip 26
trot 73
trouble (~some) (-ling) 65, 90
trouble and strife 95
trousers 1, 27, 47, 93
trout /traʊt/ 43
truck 93
trunk 46, 93
trunks 27
trustworthy /'trʌstwɜːði/ 34
try 55
try on 47
tsar /sɑː/ /tsɑː/ 16
T-shirt 47
tub /tʌb/ 66
tube /tʃuːb/ 7, 30, 66
tulip /'tʃuːlɪp/ 16
tumble dryer 36
tummytuck /'tʌmitʌk/ 99
tundra /'tʌndrə/ 16
tungsten /'tʌŋstən/ 16
turbulent /'tɜːbjələnt/ 44
Turkish 31
turn, *expressions with* 35, 91
turn-out 14
turning point 80
turnip 43
turnout 91
turnover 14
tusk 46
tutor /'tʃuːtə/ 39
TV (set) 50, 53, 98
tweed /twiːd/ 15
tweezers /'twiːzəz/ 27
twig /twɪg/ 46
twinkle /'twɪŋkəl/ 61

twist one's ankle 37
(in) two minds 79
two and two together, put 88
two-dimensional 51
two-faced 12
tycoon /taɪ'kuːn/ 16
typewriter 8
typhoid /'taɪfɔɪd/ 38
typist /'taɪpɪst/ 8, 40, 97
tyre(s) /'taɪə(z)/ 19, 49, 95

ugly /'ʌgli/ (-liness) 11, 33
Ukrainian /juː'kreɪnɪən/ 31
ulcer /'ʌlsə/ 48
umbrella 88
unaccompanied 96
unattractive 33
unbend 9
uncertainty 30
uncomfortable 9
unconvincing 9
uncountable 4
under the weather 74, 79
underactive 9
undercooked 9, 43
underdone 43
underfoot 64
underground railway 93
underhand 2
underpaid 9
underpants 27, 93
underpass 93
underpriced 2
undershirt 93
understand 85, 86, 87
undertake 86
undertrials 94
underused 9
underwear 26, 47, 94
underweight 9
underworked 9
undo 9 /ʌn'duː/
undress 9, 47
uneasily 70
unemployed 6
unemployment 11
  (~ benefit) 56
Unesco /juː'neskəʊ/ 98
uneven 49
unfold 9
ungrateful 9
unhappiness 68 (-pily) 70
unheard-of 12
uni /'juːni/ 94
union official 40
university 39, 45
unjust 9
unleaded petrol 44
unless 21
unlikely 60
unload 9
unlock 9
unmanned 97
unmarried (~man /woman) 9,
  97
unprincipled 34
unskilled worker 40
unstaffed 97
untidy-looking 33
unusual 2
unveil 9
unwrap 9
unzip 9
up and down 77
up in arms 79
up to it 74
up to the ears 1
uplifted 68
upset 14, 18, 68
upshot /'ʌpʃɒt/ 22
upskiing 99
urban 3
urge /ɜːdʒ/ 70
Uruguayan /juːrə'gwaɪən/ 31
use 19, 89 (~ up) 87
useful/less 8
utility room 36
utterly /'ʌtəli/ 57
V-neck /'viːnek/ 47
vacancy /'veɪkənsi/ 96
vacate /veɪ'keɪt/ 50
vacation /veɪ'keɪʃən/ 93
vacuum cleaner /'vækjuːm/ 36
valley 44
valueless 56
van 49
vandalism 45
variety show 53
vase /vɑːz/ 37
vast 57
veal /viːl/ 43
vegetarian 67
vegetation 46
vehicle /'viːɪkəl/ 49, 96
velocity /və'lɒsɪti/ 63
velvet /'velvət/ 47
vendetta /ven'detə/ 16
Venezuelan /venəz'weɪlən/ 31
venison 43
verandah 36
verb 4
verdict /'vɜːdɪkt/ 55
verse 42
very 57, 60
vest 93
vet 7, 40, 95
viaduct /'vaɪədʌkt/ 10
vice-president 54
victim 38
Victorian 45
video camera/cassette
  /recorder/tape 52, 53
view 2, 25, 50, 67, 89
villa 36
vinegar /'vɪnɪgə/ 26, 43, 71
violin /vaɪə'lɪn/ (~ist) 3, 8
virus /'vaɪrəs/ 48
vision /'vɪʒən/ 11
vivid 64
vogueing /'vəʊgɪŋ/ 99
voice 48
volcano /vɒl'keɪnəʊ/ 38, 44
vote /vəʊt/ 54
vow /vaʊ/ 92
vulgar fraction 51

wage 56
waist /weɪst/ 19
waistcoat /'weɪskəʊt/ 47, 93
wait 19
waiter/waitress 97
waiting-room 49
walk-out 14
wallet /'wɒlət/ 93
wally /'wɒli/ 95
waltz /wɒlts/ 16
wand /wɒnd/ 18
wander /'wɒndə/ 18
Wanderlust /'wɒndəlʌst/ 16
want 60, 85
want to have your cake and
  eat it 81
war 38, 85
warder /'wɔːdə/ 95
wardrobe /'wɔːdrəʊb/ 3, 93
warm-hearted 12
warmth /wɔːmθ/ 11
wash up 93
washable /'wɒʃəbəl/ 8
washing powder 26
washing-up (liquid) 26, 36, 66,
  85
waste 19 (~ disposal) 44
  (~ paper) 66
water /wɔːtə/ 18, 66 (~fall) 44
watt /wɒt/ 15
wavy /'weɪvi/ 33
(a) way with 7
way out 25
weak (~ness) 8, 11, 57
wealth /welθ/ 11

wearunders /'weərʌndəz/ 94
weather 1, 19, 26, 30 (~ forecast) 53
wed 92
wee /wiː/ 94
weigh /weɪ/ 19, 48, 64 (~ty) 64
weird /wɪəd/ 34
welfare state 13
well (then) 100
well-behaved 12
well-built 33
well-dressed 12, 33, 47
well-off 12
well worth a... 45
wellingtons /'welɪŋtənz/ (wellies) 5, 15, 27
whacked /wækt/ 17
what if 21
what with one thing and another 75
what's more 24
what's on? 42
wheels /wiːlz/ 95
wheeze /wiːz/ 17
when it comes to... 75
where was I? 100
whereabouts /'weərəbaʊts/ 27
wherever /weə'revə/ 21
whether 19
whichever 21
while 20
whine /waɪn/ 19
whip /wɪp/ 17
whirl /wɜːl/ 17
whirr /wɜː/ 17
whisk /wɪsk/ 17
whiskers /'wɪskəz/ 2, 46
whisper /'wɪspə/ 70
whistle /'wɪsəl/ 17, 18
(as) white as snow / a sheet 76
whiting /'waɪtɪŋ/ 43
whizz /wɪz/ 17
whoever /huː'evə/ 21
wicked /'wɪkɪd/ 95
wide (~n) 59
wide-eyed 12
width /wɪdθ/ 11, 59
wife-to-be 35
willow /'wɪləʊ/ 46
wind 19, 30, 32
window cleaner 40
windscreen (~ wiper) 8, 13
windsurfing 41, 50
wine 19, 66 (~ and dine) 77
wings /wɪŋz/ 46, 49
wink /wɪŋk/ 72
wisdom 11
wishbone /'wɪʃbəʊn/ 6
wishful thinking 6
with a view to / the aim of 22
withdraw /wɪð'drɔː/ 56
wither /'wɪðə/ 38
within walking distance, 45
with-it 47
witness 55, 71
wizard /'wɪzəd/ 95
wolf /wʊlf/ 29
womanhood 11
won /wʌn/ 41
womb /wuːm/ 18
wood 26, 28, 44, 66 (can't see the ~ for the trees) 91
woof /wʊf/ 73
wool /wʊl/ (~len) 26, 47
word (~y) 3, 18
word-processing (-sor) 13, 52
work 18, 26, 28, 29, 30, 37, 40 (~s) 42
workaholic /wɜːkə'hɒlɪk/ 40
worker 8
workmate 35
workout /'wɜːkaʊt/ 14
work like a dream 76
world of difference 23
(the) world's worst 81
world-famous 12, 18
worm /wɜːm/ 46
worn out 12, 68
worried /'wʌrid/ 57, 68, 70
worship /'wɜːʃɪp/ 8, 35, 69
worth /wɜːθ/ 45, 56
wound /wuːnd/ /waʊnd/ 19, 38
wrap up the discussion /ræp/ 82
wreck /rek/ 19, 49
wrestling /'reslɪŋ/ 41
wriggle /'rɪgəl/ (-gly) 17, 46
wrinkle /'rɪŋkəl/ 33
wrist /rɪst/ 48
writer /'raɪtə/ 8, 26, 97
write-off /'raɪtɒf/ 14
write-up /'raɪtʌp/ 14
wrong /rɒŋ/ 50, 57 (get the ~ end of the stick) 74, 82

yacht /jɒt/ 5, 16, 49, 93
yashmak /'jæʃmæk/ 16
yawn /jɔːn/ 72 (~ing gap) 23
yearn /jɜːn/ 69
yellow fever 38
Yemeni /'jeməni/ 31
yes 95, 100
yew /juː/ 46
yoghurt /'jɒgət/ 16, 66
you know/see 100
youngster /'jʌŋstə/ 33
youth club 45
youth hostel 13, 29, 45, 50
yuppy /'jʌpi/ 98

zinc /zɪŋk/ 66
zip 47
zoology /zuː'ɒlədʒi/ (-gist) (-gical) 18, 52, 71
zucchini /zʊ'kiːni/ 43

Proverbs & Sayings

A bird in the hand... 84
Absence makes... 84
All that glitters... 84
Don't count your chickens... 84
Don't cross your bridges... 84
Don't put all your eggs... 84
Let sleeping dogs lie. 91
Look before you leap. 90
Many hands make... 84
Never judge a book... 84
Never look a gift horse... 2, 84
People who live in glass houses.. 84
Take care of the pence... 84
There's no smoke... 84
Too many cooks... 84
When the cat's away... 84
You can lead a horse to water ... 84

Abbreviations

& co. 98
a/c 98
AIDS 48, 98
ANC 98
Arr 98
asap 98
Ave. 98
B and B 45
BBC 98
BSc 98
BT 98
c/o 98
CD 52, 98
CFC 98
CIA 98
CIS 98
cresc 98
Dep 98
Dr 98
e.g. 98
enc. 98
ET 98
etc. 24, 33, 98
EU 54
ext. 98
FBI 98
Fr 98
GB 98
i.e. 98
IRA 98
KGB 98
MD 98
MI5 98
Miss 97
MP 54, 92, 98
Mr 98
Mrs 97
Ms 97, 98
NATO 54, 98
NB 98
NE 98
NW 98
OAPs 98
o.n.o 98
OPEC 54, 98
P.E. 2
PIN 98
PLO 98
PM 54, 92, 98
POWs 98
PS 98
PTO 98
ref 98
rep 98
RIP 98
RN 98
RSVP 98
SE 98
St 98
SW 98
TV 50, 53, 98
UFO 71, 98
UN 54, 98
USSR 98
VAT 56
VDU 52
WC 98
WHO 98

English Vocabulary in Use

upper-intermediate & advanced

Michael McCarthy & Felicity O'Dell

English Vocabulary in Use is a vocabulary book for upper-intermediate and advanced learners of English, primarily designed as a self-study reference and practice book, but which can also be used for classroom work.

English Vocabulary in Use

- 100 easy-to-use units: vocabulary items are presented and explained on left-hand pages with a variety of follow-up activities on right-hand pages.
- Presents and explains new words and shows students how to use them and how to work out rules for using them.
- Helps to build on and expand existing vocabulary.
- Suggests tips and techniques for good learning habits.
- Gives ideas for follow-up tasks.
- Designed to be flexible: can be used both for self-study and in class.
- Provides a comprehensive key with not only answers to the exercises but also more comments on how the language is used.
- Includes a detailed index with phonetic transcription.

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS
ISBN 0-521-42396-1
9 780521 423960

CAMBRIDGE

English Vocabulary in Use

Pre-intermediate & intermediate

100 units of vocabulary reference and practice

Self-study and classroom use

SECOND
EDITION

Stuart Redman

English Vocabulary in Use

Pre-intermediate & intermediate

100 units of
vocabulary
reference and
practice

Self-study and
classroom use

Stuart Redman

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

PUBLISHED BY THE PRESS SYNDICATE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE
The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge, United Kingdom

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, UK
40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011–4211, USA
477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia
Ruiz de Alarcón 13, 28014 Madrid, Spain
Dock House, The Waterfront, Cape Town 8001, South Africa

http://www.cambridge.org

© Cambridge University Press, 1997, 2003

This book is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without
the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1997
New edition 2003
Fourth printing 2004

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

Typeface Sabon 10/12pt *System* QuarkXPress® [OD&I]

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN 0 521 01171 X paperback

Contents

Introduction vi

Using this book 1

Learning

1 Learning and revising with this book *have a routine, revision, say the word aloud*

2 Keeping a vocabulary notebook *record, the most important thing is …*

3 Using a dictionary *look up a word, guess the meaning*

4 English language words *adjective, phrasal verb, question mark*

5 Classroom language *board pen, share a book, swap places*

Word formation

6 Prefixes *un-, in-, im-, dis-*

7 Noun suffixes *-ment, -ity, -ness, -tion*

8 Adjective suffixes *-able, -ive, -al, -y*

9 Nouns and verbs with the same form *guess/to guess, kiss/to kiss, rest/to rest*

10 Compound nouns *traffic light, tin opener, credit card, film star*

11 Compound adjectives *easy-going, well-known, part-time*

Phrase building

12 Collocation (word partners) *miss the bus, a soft drink, fast asleep*

13 Idioms and fixed expressions *never mind, go ahead, take it in turns*

14 Verb or adjective + preposition *depend on, belong to, interested in*

15 Preposition + noun *by train, on the radio, in a hurry*

16 Apologies, excuses and thanks *sorry I'm late, I got held up, thanks a lot*

17 Requests, invitations and suggestions *Could you …? How about …? if you like*

18 Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing *What do you think of …? a brilliant idea*

19 Likes, preferences and interests *I quite like, and that sort of thing, I'd rather*

20 Frequently asked questions *How's it going? What's the matter?*

21 Common responses *I hope so, that sounds great, what a shame*

22 Greetings, farewells and special expressions *Nice to meet you, see you soon, good luck*

23 Phrasal verbs (1): form and meaning *wake up, find out, run out of sth*

24 Phrasal verbs (2): grammar and style *take sth off, grow up, break down*

25 Have and have got *have a rest, I've got a headache, have a look*

26 Make, do and take *make a mistake, do homework, take a photo*

27 Give, keep, break, see *give sb a ring, break a record, I see*

28 Leave, catch and let *leave a message, catch a bus, let sb know*

29 Get: uses and expressions *get dressed, get married, get on with*

30 Go: uses and expressions *go for a drink, have a go, go deaf*

31 The senses *it looks nice, it feels like wool, don't touch*

32 Partitives: a bag of …, a bit of … *a cup of coffee, a bit of luck, a pair of shoes*

Parts of speech (special problems)

33 Uncountable nouns and plural nouns *information (U), trousers (pl)*

34 Verbs + *-ing* form or infinitive *enjoy + -ing, refuse + infinitive*

35 Verb patterns *advise him to go …, suggest (that) we leave*

36 Adjectives *boring or bored, big or enormous*

37 Prepositions: place *at the bus stop, on the floor, past the castle*
38 Adverbs: frequency and degree *I rarely go, I quite often drive, rather good*

Connecting and linking

39 Time and sequence *as soon as, while, eventually*
40 Addition and contrast *as well, although, however*
41 Similarities, differences, comparisons, exceptions *very similar, compared with, apart from*
42 Reason, purpose, result, condition *so, because of, so that, therefore, unless*

Topics

The world around us

43 The physical world *round the world, Sahara Desert, floods*
44 Weather *heavy rain, a strong wind, lightning*
45 Animals and insects *pets, elephants, in the wild, protect*
46 Countries, nationality and language *Poland, the Far East, the French, in general*

People

47 The body and what it can do *elbow, neck, breathe in, shake hands*
48 Describing people's appearance *good-looking, tall and slim, fair hair*
49 Describing character *shy, show your feelings, a sense of humour*
50 Human feelings and actions *angry, proud of, glance at, have a stroll*
51 Family and friends *mother-in-law, close friend, ex-husband*
52 Ages and stages *childhood, go to university, in your twenties*

Daily life

53 Daily routines *fall asleep, have a shower, get to work*
54 The place where you live *right in the centre, on the first floor, rent*
55 Around the home (1) *spare room, lamp, cupboard, turn on the TV*
56 Around the home (2) *pillows, have a wash, do the ironing*
57 Everyday problems *spill, out of order, run out of bread*
58 Money *£10 note, lend and borrow, can't afford*
59 Health: illness *I don't feel well, flu, I get backache*
60 Health: physical injuries *break an arm, go to hospital, painful*
61 Clothes *skirt, earrings, put on a coat, too small*
62 Shops and shopping *go shopping, department store, cash desk*
63 Food *peach, peel an orange, lamb, salad dressing*
64 Cooking and restaurants *fresh bread, medium-rare, main course*
65 City life *the rush hour, shopping centre, lively*
66 Life in the country *rural area, on a farm, the nearest village*
67 On the road *main road, turn left, break down*
68 Transport *get on the bus, go by car, platform two*

Work

69 Work: duties, pay and conditions *What do you do?, deal with, salary*
70 Jobs *surgeon, design buildings, in the army*
71 The career ladder *apply for a job, pay rise, work abroad*

72 In the office *send e-mail, do paperwork, it isn't working*
73 Business and finance *interest rate, profit and loss, rise sharply*

Leisure and entertainment

74 Sport: ball games *table tennis, pass the ball, win a game*
75 Sport and leisure *swimming, go to the gym, support a team*
76 Cinema and theatre *stage, third row, war film, violent, gripping*
77 Music *composer, lead singer, hit single, latest CD*

Communication and technology

78 Newspapers *daily paper, headline, according to ...*
79 Television *switch over, soap opera, What's on TV?*
80 On the phone *mobile phone, wrong number, Is that Mary?*
81 Computers and the Internet *hard disk, download, get online, browse*

Social concerns

82 Education: school *primary school, geography, pass an exam*
83 Education: university *engineering, do a degree, graduate, PhD*
84 Law and order *illegal, break the law, arrest someone, guilty*
85 Crime *shoplifting, robbery, late at night, valuables*
86 Politics *believe in democracy, left-wing, election*
87 Bureaucracy *identity card, fill in, signature, date of birth*
88 Global problems *pollution, destroy the planet, civil war*

Tourism

89 Air travel *check-in desk, land, a two-hour delay*
90 Hotels and restaurants *single room, pay the bill, Is dinner included?*
91 A sightseeing holiday in the city *have a look round, guidebook, nightlife*
92 Holidays by the sea *seaside resort, sunbathe, sandy beach*

Notional concepts

93 Time *on Monday, since May, it takes an hour*
94 Numbers *two million, one and a half, divide by three*
95 Distance, size and dimension *a long way, too far, How wide is it?*
96 Shapes, colours and patterns *a round table, a dark green skirt, yellowish*

Varieties of English

97 Notices and warnings *sold out, no exit, mind the step, no parking*
98 Vague language *a vague idea, things, stuff, a bit, roughly*
99 Formal and informal English *buy vs purchase, kids vs children*
100 Abbreviations and abbreviated words *CV, MP, e.g., etc., lab, fridge, bike*

Answer key 204
Phonemic symbols 242
Pronunciation problems 243
Index 244
Acknowledgements 263

Introduction

This new edition of *English Vocabulary in Use: pre-intermediate & intermediate* still retains the features that made the first edition so popular:

- The format of presentation on the left-hand page and practice on the right-hand page.
- Approaching vocabulary in a variety of ways: topics (e.g. Food), word formation (e.g. Prefixes), words and grammar (e.g. Uncountable and plural nouns), collocation and phrases (e.g. Make, do and take), functions (e.g. Apologies, excuses and thanks), concepts (e.g. Time), varieties of English (e.g. Formal and informal English), etc.
- A student-friendly Answer key, including not only correct answers to right/wrong exercises, but also possible answers for more open-ended exercises.
- Usage notes that are ideal for self-study learners.
- A complete Index at the back of the book, listing all the target words and phrases with a phonemic transcription to help you with pronunciation.

What is different about the new edition?

Colour

The first thing you will notice is that the new edition is in colour. This makes the text and the artwork more attractive, and it also makes the book easier for you to use: the different sections and headings are now clearer, and the usage notes are shown against their own colour background, so you can find them and read them more easily.

Use of the *Cambridge International Corpus*

This new edition has made extensive use of the *Cambridge International Corpus* of written and spoken English. This has been important in two ways:

- the frequency information in the *Corpus* has helped to guide the selection of words and phrases in the book and ensure that the vocabulary will be suitable for pre-intermediate and intermediate learners of English;
- example sentences are the same or similar to those in the *Corpus*. In other words, the examples show you words and phrases being used in their most typical contexts.

Collocation and phrases

The new edition concentrates even more on showing words in common collocations and phrases. For example, when you study different meanings of *see* (Unit 27), you will learn that it often appears in these phrases: *I see*, *I see what you mean*, *I'll see what (he says)*, etc. In a unit on physical appearance (Unit 48), you will meet these common collocations: *blonde hair*, *tall and slim*, *medium height*, etc.

New units

In response to suggestions from teachers and students, there are now six completely new units in the book:

Likes, preferences and interests (Unit 19)
Frequently asked questions (Unit 20)
Common responses (Unit 21)
Have and have got (Unit 25)
Leave, catch and let (Unit 28)
Global problems (Unit 88)

Many other units have been significantly revised, e.g. The place where you live (Unit 54), City life (Unit 65), Life in the country (Unit 66), In the office (Unit 72), Music (Unit 77), Computers and the Internet (Unit 81).

Better use of space

The usage notes are shown against a colour background and most have been placed in the left-hand margin; this makes them easier to see and read, and creates more space on the page. As a result, there are now more pictures in the new edition, more example sentences, and more new words and phrases to learn.

I very much hope you will enjoy working with this new edition of *English Vocabulary in Use: pre-intermediate and intermediate.*

Stuart Redman (London, 2002)

Using this book

Who is this book for?

English Vocabulary in Use: pre-intermediate and intermediate has been written to help learners at this level to improve their English. It has been designed for students who are studying on their own, but it can also be used by a teacher in the classroom with a group of students.

How is the book organised?

The book has 100 two-page units. The left-hand page explains the new words and phrases chosen for that unit. They are all highlighted in **bold** and most units contain approximately 25 new words or phrases. The right-hand page gives you a chance to check your understanding through a series of exercises which practise the new vocabulary.

There is an Answer key at the back of the book. This gives *correct* answers to exercises with 'right' or 'wrong' solutions, and also *possible answers* for exercises which do not have 'right' or 'wrong' solutions.

There is an Index at the back of the book. This lists all the words and phrases introduced in the book and refers you to the unit or units where these words/phrases appear. The Index also includes a phonemic transcription for most of the words, and on page 243 you are given special help with the pronunciation of approximately 200 words which present particular problems for many learners of English.

The left-hand page

This is the page that introduces the new vocabulary for each topic or area of language. First of all, the vocabulary is divided into a number of sections (A, B, C, etc.) with simple clear titles. Then, within each section, new words/phrases are explained using a number of different techniques:

1 A short definition.
e.g. **unemployed** (= without a job); **hang on** (= wait); **feel like** (= want or desire *infml*)
The abbreviations *fml* or *infml* tell you if a word is either 'formal' or 'informal'.

2 A short explanation.
e.g. He **admitted** stealing her money, but **denied** taking the computer (= he said 'yes' he took the money, but 'no' he didn't take the computer).

3 A synonym or opposite.
e.g. **dreadful** (= terrible); **dirty** (*opp* clean)

4 In a situation. With some words and phrases it is easier to see their meaning when they are in context, e.g. [This is from a text about a motoring accident] '... The driver of the Mercedes was OK, but the other driver was **badly injured**, and both cars were **badly damaged**.'

5 A picture or diagram. This seems the obvious way to explain a large number of concrete nouns and verbs.

e.g. **carrot** 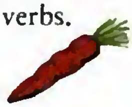

Go along here and **turn left**. 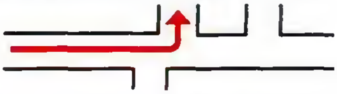

For many of the new words/phrases there are also sentence examples which show the words in context in order to consolidate the meaning and illustrate any special features.
e.g. My boyfriend gets very **jealous** when I talk to other boys.
The plane **appeared** in the sky, then suddenly **disappeared** behind a cloud.
Some people **can't stand** (= hate) working at the weekend. [can't stand + *-ing* form]

Finally, a big effort has been made to introduce new words alongside other words that often appear with them (this is called 'collocation').
e.g. **miss the bus**; **a strong accent**; **the car broke down**; **it's vitally important**; **fasten your seat belt**; **go on holiday**; **give someone a hand**; **to a certain extent**; **a terrible pain**, etc. There are many more examples of collocation in this new edition, and with the support of the Cambridge International Corpus you can now be sure that the examples included are some of the most important ones.

The right-hand page

This page contains the exercises to practise the new vocabulary presented on the left-hand page. In general, the first exercise practises the form of some of the new words, and then there are further exercises which focus on the meaning. In most units there is at least one exercise which gives learners a chance to think about and practise new vocabulary in relation to their own lives, and/or a task which invites learners to do something with the vocabulary outside of the book. In every unit there is a range of exercise types to help to maintain your interest.

How should I use the book?

The first four units teach you some important words and phrases, but they also give you information about vocabulary, plus ideas and techniques to help you learn vocabulary. Do these units first, then work through the book studying the units which interest you.

If you go to English lessons, you may also want to study Unit 5. This introduces vocabulary that is often used by teachers or needed by students in the classroom, e.g. *cassette recorder*, *clean the board*, *Could I borrow a pen?*, *What does that mean?*, etc.

Everything you need is in the book. The new vocabulary is explained on the left-hand page, and the exercises have an Answer key at the back of the book. But it is still important to have your own dictionary. A good bilingual dictionary will give you support in your first language, and a monolingual dictionary produced for intermediate learners will give you added practice in English. Use these to help you. (See Unit 3 for more information and ideas.)

Finally, you can visit the 'in Use' website at http://www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse/.

Good luck.

Summary of abbreviations used in the book

n	noun
v	verb
adj	adjective
opp	opposite
infml	informal word or expression
fml	formal word or expression
(U)	uncountable word
(C)	countable word
sb	somebody
sth	something
(NOT ~~I lost the bus~~)	indicates that a word or expression is wrong

1

Learning and revising with this book

Look at Exercise 1.1 on the next page before you read this page.

A Have a routine

A **routine** means doing certain things often and in the same way. If you are using this book for **self-study** (= to study alone), it helps to have a routine. So, **how much time can you spend** on the book each day or each week? Here are some ideas:

- if you are studying a new unit, spend **at least** (= a minimum of) half an hour or 45 minutes
- if you are **revising** (= studying a unit for a second or third time), five or ten minutes is very useful.

So, plan longer periods for new units and shorter periods for revision.

B Using the book

Do different things to **maintain your interest.** (= keep your interest high) For example:

1 Don't study the units in the same order as the book. **Choose** (= select) units that **interest you** (= are interesting for you).
2 When you do a unit, you can read **the whole** (= all) of the **left-hand page** (= page on the left), then **do the exercises**. Or, do the exercises first, then read the left-hand page if there is a problem.
3 Be active when you are learning. For example:
    - when you are reading the left-hand page, use a highlighter pen to mark new or interesting vocabulary;
    - practise **saying the words aloud** (= speaking them), so you can **pronounce them** (= say the pronunciation), and also **silently** (= without a noise) in your head to help you to remember them;
    - put new words in your own notebook using some of the ideas from Unit 2.

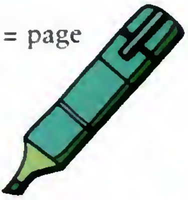

C Revision

It's easy to forget words that you learn, but if you revise for short periods, it helps you to remember words and make them part of your active vocabulary. Here are some ideas.

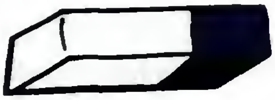

rubber

1 Do exercises in pencil. Check your answers when you finish, then **rub them out** (= remove them using a rubber). Later, come back and do the exercises again. Use the left-hand page if you have a problem.
2 When you read a left-hand page for a second time, have a **blank piece of paper** (= paper with no writing on it) with you. When you come to a new word **in bold** with a definition in (**brackets**), **cover** the definition (= put the paper over it) and try to **define** it (= give the meaning/definition).
3 Revise for short periods but do it often. **Five minutes a day** (NOT five minutes ~~per~~ day) is probably better than half an hour a week; but half an hour a week is probably better than two hours a month.
4 Be active when you revise, e.g. test yourself, practise the pronunciation, write down important words and phrases in your notebook with example sentences.

Exercises

1.1 Read these questions. What do you think? (Answers are on the opposite page.)

1 Is it better to plan regular self-study, or just study when you've got some free time?
2 Is it a good idea to study the units in the same order as they appear in the book?
3 Is it a good idea to write down new words in a notebook when you are studying a unit?
4 Is it necessary to revise vocabulary (= study it again for a second or third time)?
5 Is it better to revise vocabulary occasionally for long periods of time, or is it better to revise regularly for short periods of time?

1.2 Find your way round the book.

- Turn to the Topic units in the Contents on pages iv–v.
- Take a blank piece of paper and cover the right-hand side of the page with the examples.
- Read the list of unit titles, and write down your own examples – one or two for each unit.
- Are there any unit titles you don't understand? Are there any units where you can't think of examples? If so, turn to that unit and find out what it is about.

You could use similar titles in your own vocabulary notebook (see Unit 2).

1.3 Complete the table.

noun	*verb*
definition	define
revision	....
pronunciation	....
choice	....
interest	....

1.4 There is a mistake with the underlined words. Can you correct each one?

1 Did you make all of the exercises?
2 I studied for one half hour.
3 Do you always read the left page first?
4 I passed twenty minutes on the first exercise.
5 I read the all page.

1.5 True or False? If the sentence is false, rewrite it to make it true. Write in pencil.

1 In this book, most of the important new vocabulary is shown in **bold** print. True
2 Definitions/explanations of new words are often in **brackets** after the word.
3 A **routine** means doing certain things in a different way each time.
4 If you **maintain** something at a level, it means you keep it at the same level.
5 **At least** 50 people means a maximum of 50 people.
6 If you write something then **rub it out**, you remove it from the page.
7 If you do something **silently**, you do it without a noise.
8 **Revision** means studying something for the first time.
9 If you read a **whole** book, you read all of it.
10 A **blank** piece of paper is full of writing.

Check your answers. Look at any wrong answers carefully, then rub them out. Do the exercise again tomorrow.

2 Keeping a vocabulary notebook

A Organising your notebook

Give each page a title, e.g. sport, education, verbs followed by an *-ing* form, etc. When you learn new words and phrases, write them on a suitable page.

B What do I need to record?

what?	*how?*	*example*
Meaning	a translation	remember = lembrar [in Portuguese]
	b definition/explanation	A **pond** is an area of water smaller than a lake.
	c synonym or opposite	**awful** (= terrible); **ugly** (*opp* beautiful)
	d picture	**saucepan** 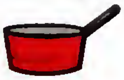
	e example sentence	My hands were cold, so I put on my **gloves**.
Pronunciation	phonemic symbols	**ache** /eɪk/
	or your own system	**ache** [like 'make']
Part of speech	noun (n), verb (v)	**gloves** (n); **remember** (v); **careful** (adj)
Grammar	make a note + example sentence	**enjoy** + *-ing* form; I enjoy going to parties. **weather** (uncountable); We had lovely weather in Italy.
Common partners	phrase or sentence	**make a mistake; on the phone; (a) black coffee** (= coffee without milk)
Special style	make a note	**purchase** (= buy: *formal*) **kids** (= children: *informal*)

You don't need to record all of these things for every word or phrase. The most important thing is to show the words in typical examples. Leave space in your notebook as well, then you can come back and add more information later if you learn something new.

C Organising words on the page

Don't just write lists of individual words. Put words together that appear together, e.g. **blonde hair** (*opp* black hair), **get off the bus** (= go out of the bus). Make the pages interesting with pictures, diagrams and example sentences.

1

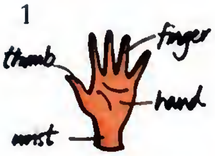

Don't pronounce the 'w' in wrist or the 'b' in thumb.

2

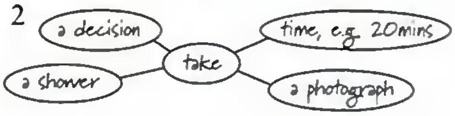

3 smile (v,n)

e.g. She smiled at me yesterday.
He gave me a big smile.
She's got a lovely smile.

4

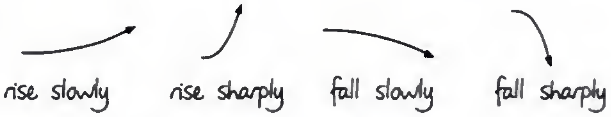

Note both verbs are irregular:
rise/rose/risen; fall/fell/fallen.

Exercises

2.1 Organise this list of words into three groups and give each one a title.

unfriendly
train
wear
put on
get on
late
platform
unable
unkind
gloves
size
tie
unhappy
jumper
passenger

Find the units in this book which may include these words. Add more to each group.

2.2 Fill the gaps with suitable words to form common partners with the nouns in bold.

1 She's .... the phone at the moment.
2 A: Do you want milk and sugar? B: No, just a .... coffee, please.
3 If you're cold, why don't you .... your coat?
4 I don't usually .... that mistake.
5 She .... me a big smile this morning.
6 It was the third .... of my left hand.

2.3 Underline the correct answer.

1 A pond is:
a bigger than a lake b smaller than a lake c the same size
2 I really enjoy:
a play tennis b to play tennis c playing tennis
3 When we were on holiday we had:
a lovely weathers b lovely weather c a lovely weather
4 The underlined letters in ache are pronounced the same as in:
a machine b catch c chemist
5 The past tense of 'fall' is:
a fell b felt c falled
6 You can 'get off':
a a bus b a kitchen c a noise
7 'Rise sharply' means:

a 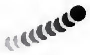

b 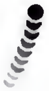

c 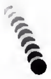

8 'Purchase' is:
a an informal word for 'buy' b a formal word for 'buy' c a formal word for 'child'

2.4 Look at the words below. What is the best way to record their meaning? What other information would be useful? Use a dictionary to help you.

Example You could record 'dream' with a translation, a picture (see Unit 9), or an explanation, e.g. things you imagine in your sleep. 'Dream' can be a verb or noun and is often followed by 'about', e.g. I dreamt about you.

dream concentrate beard nearly empty rescue knife

2.5 Write down three more nouns that often follow 'take'. Do the same for 'make' and 'do'.

take a shower.................... make .... do ....

3 Using a dictionary

A What dictionaries do I need?

Buy a good **bilingual** dictionary and a good **English–English** dictionary. The bilingual dictionary is easier for you to understand; but it's also good for you to work in English as much as possible.

large dictionaries	*medium-sized dictionaries*
Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary	Cambridge Learner's Dictionary
Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English	Longman Active Study Dictionary
Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary	Oxford Wordpower Dictionary

B What information does a dictionary give me?

Look up a word (= find a word in a dictionary) and you will get this information.

- the meaning, e.g. **homesick** = unhappy because you are away from home for a long period
- the pronunciation (using phonemic symbols), e.g. **island** /aɪlənd/, **lose** /luːz/, **tiny** /taɪni
- the part of speech, e.g. **dirty** *adj* (= adjective), **choose** *v* (= verb), **law** *n* (= noun)
- word grammar, e.g. **advice** (U) (= uncountable noun), **begin** (**began**, **begun**) (= the past tense and past participle)
- common collocations (see Unit 12), e.g. **do homework** (NOT ~~make~~); **It depends on you** (NOT ~~of~~)
- example phrases or sentences, e.g. The train leaves from **platform** seven.
- sometimes synonyms or opposites, e.g. **polite** (*syn* = **courteous**; *opp* = **impolite**)

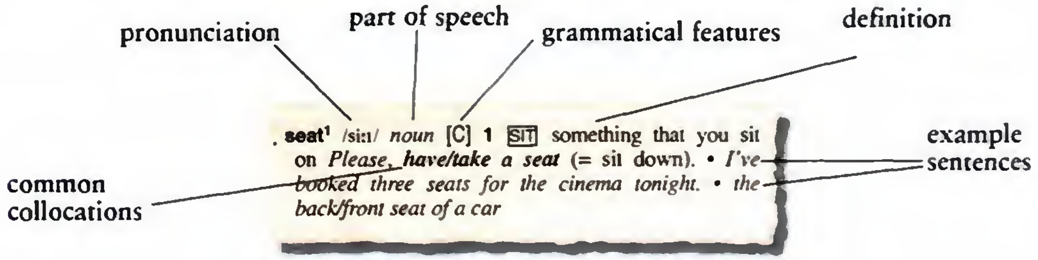

seat¹ /siːt/ *noun* [C] **1** SIT something that you sit on *Please,* ***have/take a seat*** (= sit down). • *I've booked three seats for the cinema tonight.* • *the back/front seat of a car*

C How can I use my dictionary?

When you look up a word, put a tick (✓) next to it. Each time you return to a page with a tick, look at it quickly to check you remember the word.

When you see a new word or phrase in a text, first try to **guess the meaning** (= try to think of the meaning from the context), then **carry on** (= continue) reading to **see** (= find out) if your guess is correct. Use your dictionary to **check the meaning**. (= find out if the meaning is correct)

Don't just read definitions. The example phrases and sentences show you how a word or phrase is used, and they often help you to understand the meaning more clearly.

If you look up a word in a bilingual dictionary and get several different translations, check in a monolingual dictionary to see which translation is the best one in the context.

Remember that many words have more than one meaning. The first meaning in the dictionary is not always the one you want. Read through the different meanings.

Exercises

3.1 Complete these sentences about dictionary use.

1 It's important to have a good English–English dictionary and also a .... dictionary, which is easier to understand.
2 Dictionaries show the .... using phonemic symbols.
3 Dictionaries will tell you if a noun is countable or ....
4 Dictionaries show synonyms and .... where they exist.
5 If you meet a word you don't know, you can try to .... the meaning from the context, or you can .... it .... in a dictionary.

3.2 Right or wrong? If the answer is wrong, correct it.

1 Advice is a countable noun. Wrong (advice is an uncountable noun)
2 Homesick means you are unhappy living at home and you want to leave.
3 You don't **make** homework, you **do** homework.
4 **Carry on** means the same as **continue**.
5 The opposite of **polite** is **unpolite**.
6 The past tense of **begin** is **begun**.
7 Dirty is an adjective.
8 If you **look up** a word, you find the meaning in a dictionary.
9 Trains arrive at and leave from **platforms**.
10 Depend is followed by the preposition **of**.

3.3 In the word 'island' /aɪlənd/, the letter 's' is silent (= not pronounced). Use your dictionary to find the silent letters in these words. (Do not include the letter 'e' at the end of a word.)

knife

comb

castle

salmon

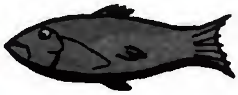

receipt

3.4 Use a dictionary to find the answers to these questions about words on the left-hand page.

1 What does **tiny** mean?
2 How do you pronounce **lose**? (Is it the same as 'choose' or 'chose'?)
3 What is the opposite of **lose a game**?
4 What are the past tense and past participle of the verb **choose**?
5 What noun is formed from the verb **choose**?
6 What part of speech is **homesick**?
7 What two verbs often go before **homesick**?
8 Can you complete this common phrase? **law and** ....

3.5 Match the sentences on the left with the different meanings of 'bar' on the right.

1 They've put bars in front of the window for extra security.
2 We went to a bar in the centre of town.
3 Could you get me a bar of chocolate?
4 You have to order drinks at the bar.

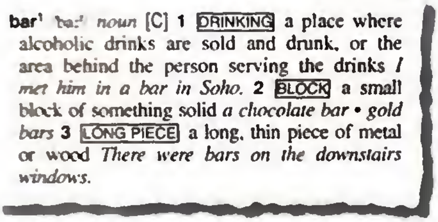

bar[1] /bɑː/ *noun* [C] **1** DRINKING a place where alcoholic drinks are sold and drunk, or the area behind the person serving the drinks *I met him in a bar in Soho.* **2** BLOCK a small block of something solid *a chocolate bar • gold bars* **3** LONG PIECE a long, thin piece of metal or wood *There were bars on the downstairs windows.*

4 English language words

A Parts of speech

nouns	e.g. chair, information, happiness
verbs	e.g. choose, tell, complain
adjectives	e.g. happy, tall, dangerous
adverbs	e.g. slowly, carefully, often
prepositions	e.g. in, at, on
articles	e.g. definite article (the); indefinite article (a/an)

B Special terms

Uncountable noun: (U) a noun which has no plural form and isn't used with the indefinite article, e.g. Can you send me some information? (NOT ~~an information~~ or ~~informations~~)
Plural noun: (pl) a noun which only has a plural form and isn't used with the indefinite article, e.g. He was wearing blue trousers and a white shirt. (NOT ~~a blue trouser~~)
Infinitive: the base form of a verb, e.g. We decided *to stop* for lunch.
Phrasal verb: a verb + adverb or preposition, e.g. wake up, turn sth on, look after sth/sb.
Idiom: a group of words with a meaning that is different from the individual words, e.g. never mind, keep an eye on sth, etc.
Transitive verb: a verb which needs a **direct object**, e.g. The police caught the man ['the man' is the direct object of the verb 'caught']. A verb which doesn't need a direct object is **intransitive**, e.g. Tim and his brother are always *arguing*.
Informal: a word or phrase which is informal is used mostly in spoken English. Formal English is more common in writing or with people you don't know very well.
Many words also have **synonyms**, which are words with the same meaning, e.g. 'big' and 'large' are synonyms in many contexts. The **opposite** is 'small'.

C Word building

In the word *uncomfortable*, *un-* is a **prefix**, *comfort* is a **root**, and *-able* is a **suffix**. Other common prefixes include: *re-*, *in-* and *dis-*. Suffixes include: *-ity*, *-ment* and *-ive*.

D Pronunciation

Dictionaries show the pronunciation of a word using **phonemic symbols**, e.g. book /bʊk/, before /bɪfɔː/, cinema /sɪnəmə/, and so on.
Every word has one or more **syllables**, e.g. 'book' has one syllable, 'before' has two syllables, 'cinema' has three syllables, and so on.
For pronunciation, it is important to know which syllable has the **main stress**, e.g. on 'before' it is the second syllable (before), and on 'cinema' it is the first syllable (cinema), and so on.

NOTE
Dictionaries usually show stress with a ' before the main syllable, e.g. re'turn.

E Punctuation

full stop . comma , brackets ( ) hyphen - question mark ?

Hyphens are used to connect certain words or parts of a word together, e.g. a ten-year-old child.

Exercises

4.1 There is one word missing in each line of the text. Where does the missing word go? What could it be? What part of speech is it?

Last year I went to → for my holiday. I spent the
first week Seville staying with a couple of friends,
and then I a train to Barcelona, where I spent
another ten days. It is beautiful city and I had a
marvellous time. I stayed in a very hotel right in the
centre, but I didn't mind spending a lot money
because it is a wonderful and very convenient. My
brother recommended it; he goes Spain a lot and
he stays anywhere else.

1 Spain (noun)........................
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....

4.2 In the dialogue below, find at least one example of the following: an uncountable noun, a plural noun, a phrasal verb, and an idiom.

A: It's 8 o'clock. We'd better get a move on if we're going to meet Sue at the airport.
B: That's OK. Her flight doesn't get in until 8.50.
A: Yes, but it'll take us an hour to get to the airport – you know what the traffic is like.
B: OK. I'll just go and get changed.
A: What's wrong with your shorts?
B: I don't like driving in shorts. I'm going to put some jeans on.

4.3 Look at the underlined verbs in these sentences. Which are transitive? Which are intransitive?

1 She broke her leg.
2 Take off your jacket.
3 I got up at 7.30.
4 She doesn't like Chinese food.
5 We arrived late.
6 He told me to sit down.

4.4 How many syllables are there in each of these words?

English (2)
before
preposition
noun
adjective
adverb
decide
education
understand
informal
opposite
pronunciation

Now mark the main stress on each of the words.

4.5 Look at these words and answer the questions below.

happy lucky dangerous cheap

1 What part of speech are these words?
2 Change each one into an adverb.
3 Write down a synonym for the first two words.
4 Which prefix do you need to form the opposite of the first two words?
5 Write down the opposite of the last two words.

5

Classroom language

A Equipment

These are some of the things you may use in your classroom or school.

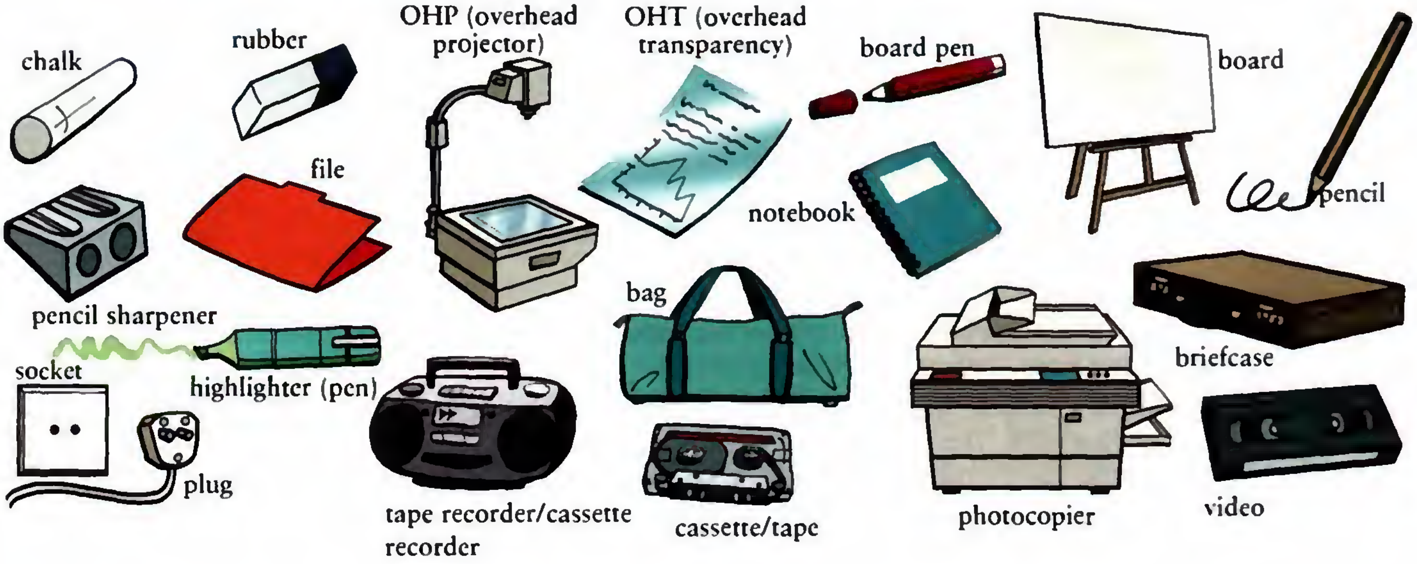
chalk
rubber
OHP (overhead projector)
OHT (overhead transparency)
board pen
board
pencil
file
notebook
pencil sharpener
bag
briefcase
socket
highlighter (pen)
plug
tape recorder/cassette recorder
cassette/tape
photocopier
video

We can use some of these nouns as verbs: **video a programme** (= record it on video); **photocopy an exercise**; **highlight new words**; **file some papers** (= put them in a file).

B Classroom activities

Things students or teachers do in the classroom:
Look up a word (= find the meaning of a word in a dictionary)
Borrow someone's dictionary or rubber (= use it and then return it)
Rub out mistakes in a notebook (= remove mistakes using a rubber)
Plug in the tape recorder (= put the plug in the electric socket)
Turn up the tape recorder if you can't hear it (= increase the volume) (*opp* **turn down**)
Rub things **off** the board (= remove writing from the board)
Correct students' English (= give the correct English if students make mistakes)

Things a teacher may ask students to do in the classroom:
Could you **clean the board**, Carlos? (= remove all the writing from the board)
Write these words **down**. (= write these words on a piece of paper/in a notebook)
Enrique, could you **swap places** (= change places) with Lorena?
Kim, could you **share** your book with Petra? (= use it together at the same time)
Repeat this sentence after me. (= say it again)

C Questions about vocabulary

What does 'plug' **mean**? (NOT ~~what means plug~~?)
How do you **pronounce** it?
How do you **spell** 'bicycle'?
How do you **use** 'anyway' **in a sentence**?
What's the difference between 'lend' **and** 'borrow'?

Exercises

5.1 Label these pictures, then check your answers on the opposite page.

1
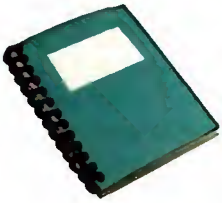

2
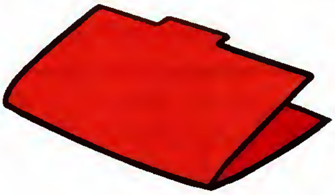

3
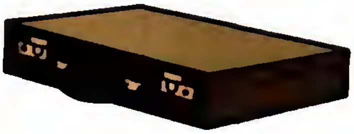

4
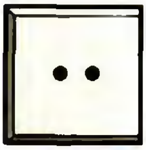

5
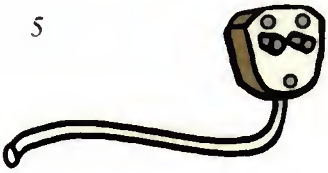

6
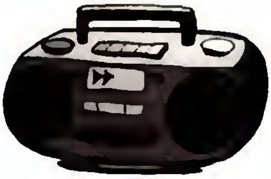

5.2 Answer these questions.

1 What do you rub off the board? writing
2 What do you put in a tape recorder?
3 What do you put on an OHP?
4 What do you keep in a file?
5 What do you put in a briefcase?
6 What do you put in a socket?
7 What do you use a rubber for?
8 What do you use a photocopier for?
9 Why do you turn up a tape recorder?
10 Why do you share a book with someone?

5.3 Match the verbs on the left with the nouns on the right.

1	correct	a	places
2	clean	b	a word
3	borrow	c	someone's mistakes
4	swap	d	the board
5	video	e	a dictionary
6	do	f	a programme
7	turn up	g	an exercise
8	look up	h	the tape recorder

5.4 Here are some answers. What are the possible questions?

1 A: .... ? B: It means to exchange places.
2 A: .... ? B: ...../swɒp/..... Like 'shop' or 'stop'.
3 A: .... ? B: S-W-A-P.

5.5 Think about your last lesson (in English or any other subject). Did you do any of these things?

Did you clean the board?
use a rubber?
borrow anything?
watch a video?
share a book with anyone?
look up any words?
make any mistakes?
write anything down in a notebook?

6 Prefixes

A With the meaning 'not'

Prefixes can be added to some words to give them a negative meaning.

happy	unhappy	like (v)	dislike (v)
possible	impossible	legal	illegal (= against the law/wrong)
correct	incorrect	regular	irregular, e.g. irregular verbs

un- is the most common, e.g. **unfriendly**, **unable**, **unusual**, **unnecessary**, **unemployed** (= without a job), **untidy** (= not in order; also, in a mess), **unkind**, **unpleasant** (= horrible).

in- is often used before words with a Latin origin, e.g. **invisible** (= cannot be seen), **informal**, **inadequate** (= not good enough, e.g. The car park is inadequate for a big supermarket like that).

im- is used before some words beginning with 'm' or 'p', e.g. **impolite**, **impossible**, **impatient** (someone who is 'impatient' wants things to happen now; they cannot wait for things), **immoral**.

il- can be used before 'l', e.g. **illegible** (= impossible to read because the writing is bad).

ir- is only used before a few words beginning with 'r', e.g. **irresponsible**.

dis- is used before some adjectives, e.g. **dishonest** (a 'dishonest' person is someone you cannot trust, and often does not tell the truth), and a few verbs, e.g. **dislike**, **disagree**.

NOTE

Word stress doesn't usually change, e.g. happy/unhappy; but it can to emphasise the negative:

A: Was he happy about the change?

B: No, he was very unhappy about it.

B Verb prefixes: *un-* and *dis-*

With some verbs, these prefixes can also mean 'the opposite of an action'.

The plane **appeared** in the sky, then suddenly **disappeared behind** a cloud.
I **locked** the door when I left, but then I lost the key and couldn't **unlock** it when I got back.
I **got dressed** (= put on my clothes) and had my breakfast.
I **got undressed** (= took off my clothes) and got into bed.
I had to **pack my suitcase/do my packing** (= put everything in it) very quickly, so when I **unpacked** (= took things out) at the hotel, most of my clothes looked terrible.

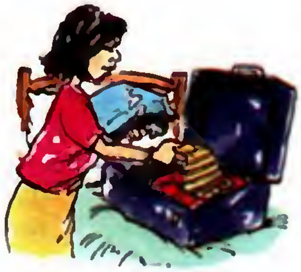

C Other verb prefixes with specific meanings

re- (= again)	The shop **closed down** but it'll **reopen** next month. I failed my **exam** but I can **retake/redo** it next year.
over- (= too much)	My boss is **overdoing** it at the moment. (= working too hard) I went to bed very late and I **overslept** (= slept too long) this morning. The shop assistant **overcharged** me. (= asked me for too much money)
mis- (= badly or incorrectly)	I'm afraid I **misunderstood** what he said. Two of the students **misread** the first question.

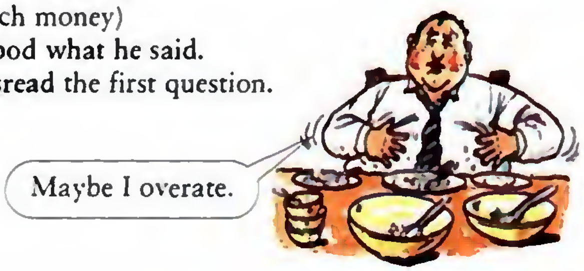
Maybe I overate.

Exercises

6.1 What's the opposite of these words? (The words in the last column are verbs, the rest are adjectives.)

1 un happy
2 ....correct
3 ....legible
4 ....possible
5 ....patient
6 ....regular
7 ....friendly
8 ....formal
9 ....polite
10 ....visible
11 ....employed
12 ....honest
13 ....lock
14 ....pack
15 ....agree
16 ....like

6.2 What's the reverse of these actions?

1 do one's packing unpack
2 lock the door
3 appear
4 get dressed

6.3 Agree with these sentences, using a synonym from the left-hand page for the underlined words.

1 It's against the law, isn't it?
Oh yes, it's illegal.
2 His room is always in a mess, isn't it?
Yes, it's very ....
3 He took off his clothes!
Yes, he got ....
4 This handwriting is impossible to read.
Yes I know, it's completely ....
5 She can never wait for five minutes, can she?
No, she's very ....
6 The conference centre wasn't good enough for 500 people, was it?
No, it was completely .... for that number.
7 She's horrible sometimes.
Yes, she can be very ....
8 I'm afraid they sometimes steal things and tell lies.
I know. They're both ....

6.4 Complete the verbs in these sentences.

1 I completely disagree........................ with him on this subject.
2 I'm sorry, I mis.. her message.
3 We un.. as soon as we got to the hotel, then went out for a walk.
4 She was here a minute ago, then she dis.. . I don't know where she is now.
5 My homework was so bad that I'll have to re.. it.
6 Her alarm clock didn't go off and she over..
7 She finally managed to un.. the door and we were able to go inside.
8 I dis.. the film, but the others enjoyed it.
9 I don't think I'll pass the exam, but I can always re.. it in September.
10 She's over.. things at the moment. She needs a complete break from her job.
11 The post office shuts for lunch but it should re.. at 2.00 pm.
12 I was very angry because they over.. me by about £5 in that shop.

6.5 Keep several pages in your notebook for verbs or adjectives which combine with these prefixes. You can add new words to your lists and test yourself at the same time.

7

Noun suffixes

A Verb + noun suffix

verb	*suffix*	*noun*
improve (= get better)	-ment	**improvement**
govern (= control affairs of a city or country)		**government**
manage (= direct or control a business)		**management**
elect (= choose somebody by voting)	-ion	**election**
discuss (= talk about something seriously)		**discussion**
inform (= tell someone something)	-ation	**information**
jog (= running to keep fit or for pleasure)	-ing	**jogging**
spell (e.g. S-P-E-L-L)		**spelling**

There has been a **big improvement** in the economy.
The problems are due to **bad management**.

Who do you think will **win the election**?
I'm not very **good at spelling**.

B Adjective + noun suffix

adjective	*suffix*	*noun*
weak (*opp* strong)	-ness	**weakness**
happy		**happiness**
ill (= sick/not well)		**illness**
stupid (*opp* intelligent, clever)	-ity	**stupidity**
active		**activity**
similar (= almost the same; *opp* different)		**similarity**

We have a **weak government**.
She was **ill** for a long time.
The two boys are **quite similar**.

What's her **main weakness** as a manager?
Hepatitis is a very **serious illness**.
There is a **similarity between** all three sons.

C Pronunciation

Adding a suffix to a verb or adjective may change the pronunciation.

verb	*noun*
educate	education
advertise	advertisement

adjective	*noun*
similar	similarity
stupid	stupidity

D -er/-or and -ist

These suffixes can be added to nouns or verbs. They often describe people and jobs.

-er	-er	-or	-ist
ballet dancer	bus driver	television actor	artist, e.g. Picasso
pop singer	shop manager	film director	economist
murderer (= person) who kills someone)	professional footballer	translator	psychologist
	employer	computer operator	journalist

Exercises

7.1 Complete the tables and mark the stress on each word. The last two in each column are not on the opposite page, but do you know or can you guess the noun formed from them?

verb	*noun*
educate	....
improve	....
jog	....
govern	....
spell	....
hesitate	....
arrange	....

adjective	*noun*
stupid	....
happy	....
weak	....
similar	....
active	....
sad	....
popular	....

7.2 Combine words on the left with the correct suffix on the right to complete the text.

improve televise weak govern
elect educate manage stupid

-ment -ity -ness
-ion -ation

In his first broadcast on (1) ...television.......... since he won the (2) .... last month, the Prime Minister promised to make health and (3) .... his top two priorities.

And in a strong attack on the previous (4) .... , he said that the present (5) .... of the British economy was caused by their (6) .... and bad (7) .... He said things were going to change, and he hoped the British people would be able to see a big (8) .... in the economy by the end of the year.

7.3 Write down the name of the person who does these things as a job.

1 drive ...driver..........
2 translate ....
3 act ....
4 psychology ....
5 economics ....
6 football ....

7.4 Match words from left and right to find the names of eight jobs.

pop
shop
film
computer

bus
child
ballet
professional

psychologist
singer
operator
footballer

dancer
manager
driver
director

7.5 Complete the definitions below.

1 An employer is a person or company that ...employs people..........................
2 A murderer is a person who ....
3 A bank manager is a person who ....
4 A television actor is a person who ....
5 A translator is a person who ....
6 A lorry driver is a person who ....
7 A journalist is a person who ....
8 An artist such as Picasso is a person who ....

8

Adjective suffixes

A

Noun or verb + suffix

noun or verb	*suffix*	*adjectives*
danger, fame	-ous	**dangerous**, **famous** (= known by lots of people)
music, politics, emotion, economics, industry	-al	**musical**, **political**, **emotional** (= have or show strong feelings), **economical** (= saves you money), **industrial** (= connected with industry and factories)
cloud, sun, fog, dirt	-y	**cloudy**, **sunny**, **foggy**, **dirty** (*opp* clean)
attract, create	-ive	**attractive** (= pretty, good-looking); **creative** (= ability to produce new ideas; with imagination)

The roads were **dangerous** this morning: it was **foggy** and I couldn't see far.
He was very **emotional** when he said 'goodbye'.
Did you buy a diesel car because it's more **economical** than petrol?
I'm afraid you'll have to clean the floor – it's very **dirty**.

B

-able

This common suffix creates adjectives from nouns and verbs:
an **enjoyable** evening a **comfortable** chair Jeans are still **fashionable**.
suitable (= right/correct for a situation), e.g. A grey suit is very **suitable** for a wedding.

Sometimes **-able** means 'can be done':
washable (= can be washed), e.g. Is this jacket **washable**?
reliable (= can be trusted), e.g. I've never had a problem with the car – it's very **reliable**.

Words ending **-able** quite often express the opposite meaning with the prefix **un-**:
unsuitable (= not right/correct for a situation), e.g. Jeans are **unsuitable** for weddings.
unbreakable (= cannot be broken), e.g. The glass in the shop window is **unbreakable**.

Words ending **-ible** sometimes add the prefix **in-** to form an opposite:
incomprehensible (= cannot be understood), e.g. This street map is **incomprehensible**.
invisible (= cannot be seen), e.g. Trees surround the house, so it's **invisible** from the road.

C

-ful and -less

-ful often means 'full of' or 'having the quality of the noun':
careful (= doing sth with care and attention), e.g. **careful** driver
helpful (= able to help), e.g. Her advice was very **helpful**.
painful (= giving pain), e.g. It was **painful** when I hit my hand.
useful (= has a lot of use), e.g. I found it a **useful** book.
thoughtful (= kind and thinks of others)

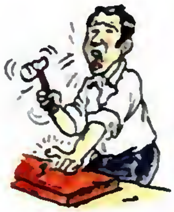
painful

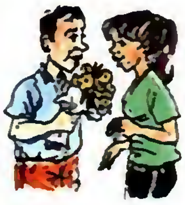
thoughtful

-less often means 'without':
careless (= without care, and causing mistakes), e.g. His work is full of **careless mistakes**.
useless (= without use and often terrible), e.g. This knife is **useless** – it won't cut anything.
homeless (= with nowhere to live), e.g. Many families are **homeless** because of the war.

Exercises

8.1 Write an adjective (or adjectives) formed from these nouns or verbs. Cover the opposite page first.

1 danger dangerous
2 attract
3 create
4 cloud
5 suit
6 use
7 care
8 thought
9 politics
10 enjoy
11 pain
12 dirt
13 sun
14 music
15 comfort
16 fame
17 rely
18 emotion

8.2 Fill the gaps with suitable adjectives from the opposite page.

1 You must be very careful.................. when you drive in wet weather.
2 Everyone in my country has heard of her; she's very ....
3 The tourist information office was very .... , and told us everything we needed to know.
4 This is a very .... road, you know. There were three serious accidents on it last year.
5 It was very .... when I hit my leg against the corner of that table.
6 This bag is very .... : I take it to work and when I go on holiday.
7 We've never had problems with our TV in ten years; it's been very ....
8 The factory is in the .... part of the city, and it's not very attractive.
9 A 100 gram bag is 80 pence, but the 200 gram bag is only £1.20, so it's more .... to buy the larger bag.
10 It's terrible that there are so many .... people in a country that is so rich.
11 Teenagers want to be ...., and wear all the latest styles.
12 I can't understand a word of these instructions – they're ....

8.3 How many of these words can form opposites with the suffix *-less*?

1 wonderful 2 useful 3 awful 4 careful 5 beautiful

What are the opposites of the other words (the ones without *-less*)?

8.4 Match adjectives from the left with the most suitable nouns from the right.

homeless
careless
comfortable
industrial
famous
useful
cloudy
enjoyable

actor
party
advice
family
bed
mistake
area
morning

8.5 From the adjectives on the opposite page, choose two or three which could describe each of these people or things. (You can use the same adjective more than once.)

1 Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart famous, creative, musical
2 the weather
3 someone's driving
4 an area of a city
5 a car
6 yourself

9 Nouns and verbs with the same form

Many words in English function as noun and verb, or verb and adjective, or noun and adjective, with the same form.

What's the answer? (noun) I must clean my room. (verb) I don't like the cold. (noun)
Answer the question. (verb) It's a clean room. (adj) I don't like cold weather. (adj)

The same word form can have different meanings, but this unit looks at examples where the meaning is the same or similar, and concentrates on nouns and verbs with the same form.

A Noun and verb

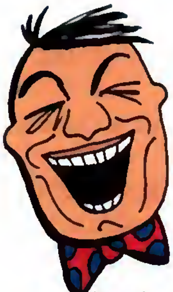
laugh

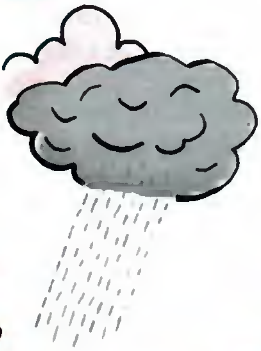
rain

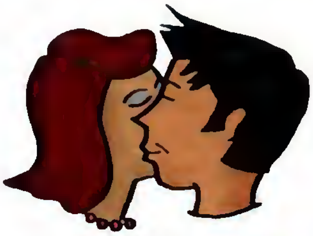
kiss

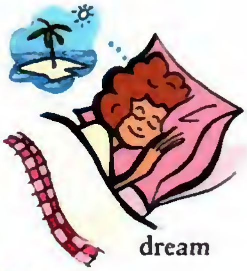
dream

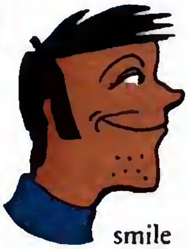
smile

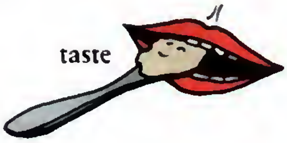
taste

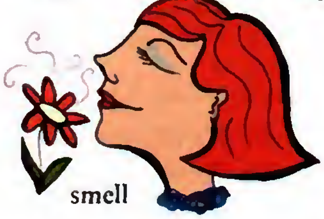
smell

brake (= stop a car using the brake on the floor)
diet (= eat less to lose weight)
guess (= give an answer without knowing the facts)
ring (= telephone)
queue (= wait in a line of people)
murder (= kill someone)

Many common words can function as noun and verb with the same form and meaning: *drink*, *rest*, *look*, *cost*, *swim*, *wash*, *push*, *pull*, *reply*, *kiss*, ***chat*** (= a casual conversation *infml*) [also *practise* (v) and *practice* (n)].

B Which verb?

It is often more natural in English to use the verb + noun structure (e.g. had a guess) and not the verb (e.g. guessed). You need to know which verbs to use with the nouns.

verb	*verb + noun*
I didn't know the answer, so I **guessed**.	I didn't know the answer, so I **had a guess**.
We **rested** for a while.	We **had a** short **rest**.
She **braked** suddenly.	She **put on the brakes** suddenly.
He needs to **diet**.	He needs to **go on a diet**.
I'm going to **ring** him.	I'm going to **give** him **a ring**.
I **looked** in the paper.	I **had a look** in the paper.
I **dreamt** about you last night.	I **had a dream** about you last night.
We had to **queue** for half an hour.	We had to **wait in a queue** for half an hour.

Exercises

9.1 What word is being defined? (The first letter has been given to you.)

1 Give an answer without knowing the facts g..............................
2 Eat less in order to lose weight d..............................
3 Wait in a line of people q..............................
4 Kill someone m..............................
5 Telephone r..............................
6 Press your lips against another person's lips k..............................
7 Have a casual conversation c..............................
8 Images in your mind when you are sleeping d..............................

9.2 Rewrite these sentences using the underlined nouns as verbs. Change or add words if necessary.

Example There was a lot of rain yesterday.
It rained a lot yesterday.

1 We had a long wait. We ....
2 This apple has got a strange taste. This ....
3 We waited in the queue for half an hour. We ....
4 The cost of the holiday was about £500. The ....
5 I wrote a reply to his letter yesterday. I ....
6 She gave me a smile this morning. She ....

9.3 Rewrite these sentences using the underlined verbs as nouns. The meaning must stay the same.

Example They want to rest for a bit
They want to have a rest for a bit.

1 I'll ring him this evening. I'll ....
2 I'll diet if necessary. I'll ....
3 If you don't know, just guess. If you don't know, just ....
4 I braked but I still couldn't stop in time. I ....
5 I dreamt about my mother. I ....
6 Did you look in the paper? Did you ....?

9.4 Sometimes the same word can be a verb and noun but the meaning changes. Read these pairs of sentences. Do the verb and noun have a similar meaning, or are they different in meaning?

1a We had a long wait for the bus.
b If we wait any longer, we may miss the train.
2a I gave him the book.
b Did you book the table in the restaurant?
3a They take a break after an hour's work.
b Did he break his arm skiing?
4a I go for a run most mornings.
b I was late so I had to run to get to school on time.

10

Compound nouns

A Formation

A compound noun is formed from two words, and occasionally three, to create a single new idea.

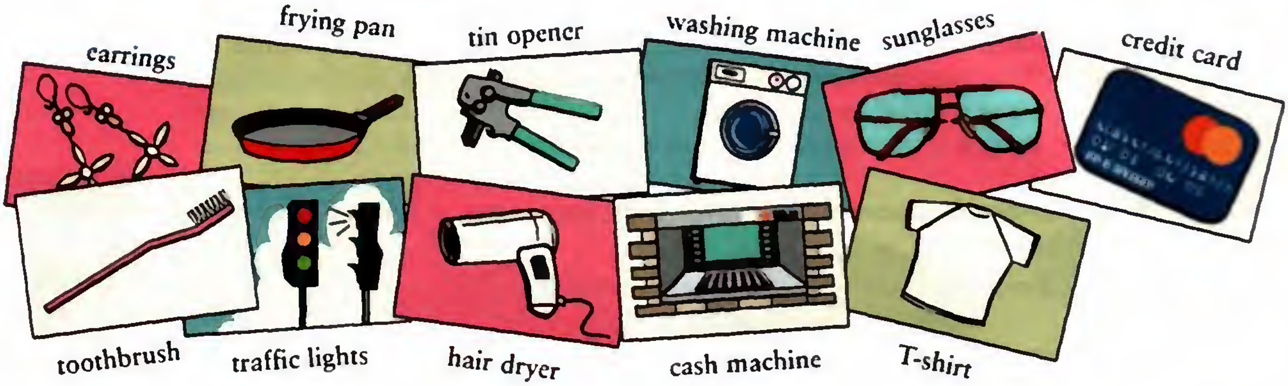

dining room (= room where you eat meals)
science fiction (= stories about the future)
writing paper (= paper for writing letters)
mother tongue (= your first language)
bus driver (= person who drives buses)
bus stop (= where buses stop for people to get on)
haircut (e.g. My hair's long; I need a haircut.)
traffic jam (= long line of cars moving very slowly)
babysitter (= person who looks after children when parents are out)
box office (= place where you buy cinema or theatre tickets)
travel agent (= job of a person who makes travel arrangements for us)

film star (e.g. Tom Cruise, Meg Ryan)
income tax (= tax you pay on your salary)
dishwasher (= machine for washing dishes)
brother-in-law (= your sister's husband *or* wife's brother)

B One word or two?

Some short common compound nouns are written as one word, e.g. **bedroom, postman**; a few are written with a hyphen, e.g. **T-shirt, make-up** (= stuff you put on the face, often on lips and around eyes, to be more attractive); but most are written as two words, e.g. **credit card, bus stop**. Use a dictionary to check if necessary.

C Pronunciation

The main stress is usually on the first part, e.g. post office, income tax, but sometimes it is on both parts, e.g. science fiction, mother tongue. Use a dictionary to check if necessary.

D Forming new compounds

One part of a compound often forms the basis for a number of compound nouns.

postman postbox post office	film star pop star rock star	toothbrush toothpaste toothache	living room waiting room chat room (= an area for communication on the internet)

Exercises

10.1 Find compound nouns on the opposite page connected with each of these topics.

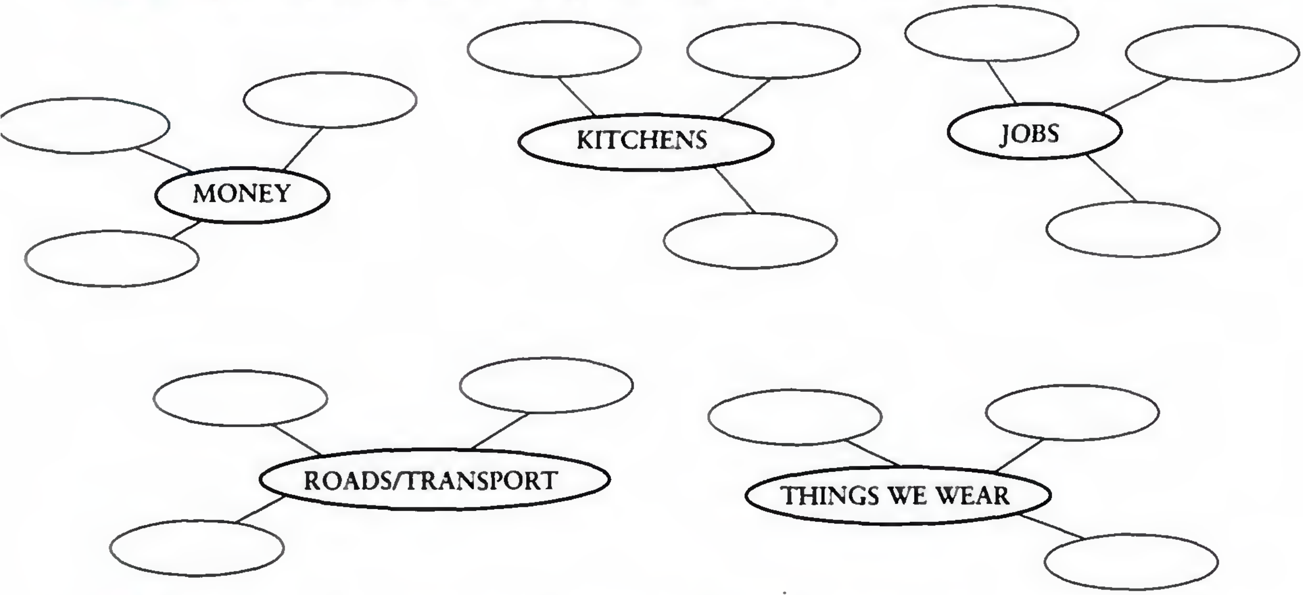

10.2 Complete each sentence with a suitable compound noun from the opposite page.

1 We booked our holiday through a ...travel agent.........
2 I'm sorry I'm late. There was a terrible .... on the motorway.
3 Humphrey Bogart was a famous .... in the 1940s and 50s.
4 The .... were red but he still didn't stop.
5 When I got to the dentist, I had to sit in the .... for 40 minutes.
6 Mary wanted to go out, but she couldn't find a .... for the children.
7 When I'm driving I always wear .... if it's very bright and sunny.
8 Most people have to pay .... on their salary; the more you earn, the more you pay.
9 I washed my hair; then I discovered that the .... wasn't working.
10 We waited at the .... for 20 minutes, then three arrived at the same time.
11 My brother loves ...., but I never read stuff like that about the future.
12 Your jeans were dirty so I put them in the .... with mine.

10.3 Take one word (the first part or the second part) from each compound and create a new compound. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

Examples brother-in-law mother-in-law
postbox post office

1 dining room ....
2 film star ....
3 credit card ....
4 toothpaste ....
5 traffic lights ....
6 sunglasses ....
7 hair dryer ....
8 boyfriend ....

Now mark the main stress on each of the compound nouns you have created.

11

Compound adjectives

A

Formation and pronunciation

A compound adjective is formed from two words, and occasionally three. The second part is often a present participle (e.g. *good-looking*) or a past participle (e.g. *well-known*). They usually have a hyphen before a noun, (e.g. a **well-known** actress, a **good-looking** man) and we usually pronounce both parts with equal stress.

B

Describing people

Many compound adjectives describe a person's appearance, character and situation.

This is Bill. He isn't **well known** (= famous), he isn't **well off** (= rich), and nobody says he's **good looking** (= very nice/attractive to look at). But he's a nice man – kind, friendly and **easy going** (= relaxed and easy to be with). Here he's wearing a **short-sleeved** shirt and a **brand-new** (= completely new) hat.

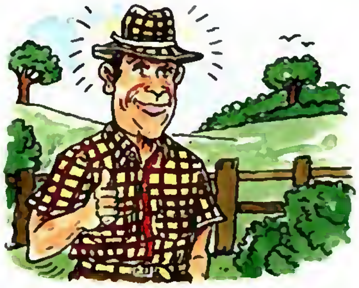

C

'Well' and 'badly'

These adverbs combine with many past participles to form compound adjectives. We can use both of them with most of these participles, e.g. *well-paid* or *badly-paid* (NOT ~~badly-known~~).

a **well-organised** team
a **well-equipped** computer room
a **well-written** story
a **well-known** writer (= famous)

a **well-paid** job (= good salary)
a **badly-behaved** child (= acting in a bad way)
a **badly-dressed** young man (= wearing old or dirty clothes)

D

A 'five-minute' walk

We often combine a number and a singular noun to form a compound adjective. The nouns in bold in these sentences, e.g. **walk**, **hotel** are often used with the particular adjectives.

It's a **ten-minute walk** to the shop. (= a walk of ten minutes)
He works in a **four-star hotel**. (= a hotel with a rating of four stars)
I gave her a **twenty-pound note**. (= a note with a value of twenty pounds)
Our flight finally left after a **two-hour delay**. (= the plane was two hours late)
The winner was a **ten-year-old girl**. (= a girl who is ten years old)
If you park your car there, you could get a **fifty-euro fine**. (= a penalty of €50 to pay for parking in the wrong place)

E

Common compounds

She used to have a **part-time** job – just mornings – but now she works **full time**.
Most people are **right handed**, but about 10% are **left handed**.
I went **first class** to Paris, but it was more expensive.
Mary bought a **second-hand** BMW. (= the car was not **brand new**, but new for her)

Exercises

11.1 Match words from the left-hand box with words from the right to form ten compounds.

Example first-class

first
easy
five
brand
part
well
good
short
second
left

new
class
looking
hand
going
known
time
sleeved
handed
star

11.2 Complete the compound adjective in these sentences.

1 They were both wearing short-.................................... shirts.
2 Goran Ivanisevic is probably the most famous left-.................................... tennis player.
3 He's just bought a brand-.................................... car.
4 One girl was very badly .... : she kept shouting and then threw food all over the floor
5 She's just got a ....-time job now. She works three hours a day, Monday to Thursday.
6 It was a very badly-.................................... article: terrible punctuation and lots of spelling mistakes.
7 They're very well .... , so they can go to expensive restaurants.
8 She's got a little shop near the market, where she sells second-.................................... things.
9 When I saw her, she was with a very good-.................................... man in a white suit.
10 Have you ever met a well-.................................... actor or politician?
11 I had a nice time with my cousin – he's good company and very easy ....
12 She has a seven-....................................-old son.

11.3 Find two examples to complete these compound adjectives.

1 well- known / ....
3 badly- .... / ....
2 .... / .... -time
4 .... / .... -handed

11.4 Choose the most suitable noun to follow the adjectives in these sentences.

1 I stayed in a five-star .... in London.
2 We didn't get to Malaga until midnight because we had a two-hour .... at Heathrow.
3 She bought a paper and paid for it with a twenty-pound ....
4 It's just over a kilometre, so it's only about a fifteen-minute ....
5 I had to pay a forty-pound .... for not having a parking ticket.

11.5 Write about yourself using ten different compound adjectives from the opposite page. You can describe yourself, your personality, your family, your clothes, the place where you live, the journeys you make, etc. Compare your answers with someone else, if possible.

12 Collocation (word partners)

A What is collocation?

If you want to use a word naturally, you need to learn the other words that often go with it. This can be different from language to language. For example, in English we say:

I **missed the bus**. (= I didn't catch the bus) (NOT I ~~lost~~ the bus)
He had to go to hospital; it's a **serious injury**. (= a bad injury) (NOT a ~~grave~~ injury)
She was **bitterly disappointed** (= very disappointed/unhappy) with her exam result.

B Verb + noun

The meaning of many of these examples may be clear, but did you know these verbs and nouns go together? Are they the same or different in your language?

start
- **a car** (= turn on the engine)
- **a family** (= think about having a first child)

tell
- **a story**
- **a joke** (= a funny story)
- **the truth** (*opp* **tell a lie**)

miss
- **a person** (= be unhappy because a particular person is not there)
- **a lesson** (= not go to a lesson)

get on a bus (*opp* **get off a bus**)

waste time/money (= use it badly)

C Adjective + noun

a soft
- **drink** (= non-alcoholic drink)
- **voice** (*opp* **a loud voice**)

dry
- **wine** (*opp* **sweet wine**)
- **weather** (*opp* **wet weather**)

a strong accent (*opp* **a slight accent**)
(a) strong coffee (*opp* **(a) weak coffee**)

heavy
- **traffic** (= a lot of cars on the road)
- **rain** (= raining a lot)
- **smoker** (= a person who smokes a lot)

hard work (= difficult physically or mentally)
a hard question (= difficult to answer)

a great
- **success** (= very successful)
- **time** (= an enjoyable time)

I can't understand his English because he has such a **strong accent**.
The conference was **hard work** but everyone said it was a **great success**.
There was **heavy traffic** in the city centre because of the **wet weather**.
We had a **great time** in Brazil – the beaches are fantastic.

D Adverb + adjective

The underlined adverbs in 1–3 mean *very*, the adverbs in 4–5 mean *fully/completely*. In each case, we often use these adverbs with the adjectives that follow them. Notice also the phrases in bold.

1 I'm **terribly sorry to bother you** (= to disturb you), but is Steven there?
2 She is **well aware of the problem**. (= she knows all about the problem)
3 It is **vitally important** to make a note of common collocations in your notebook.
4 He's **fast asleep**. (= in a deep sleep)
5 She was **wide awake** (= fully awake) a minute ago.

Exercises

12.1 You can keep a record of common collocations using diagrams. They are very clear on the page and you can add to them. Complete these.

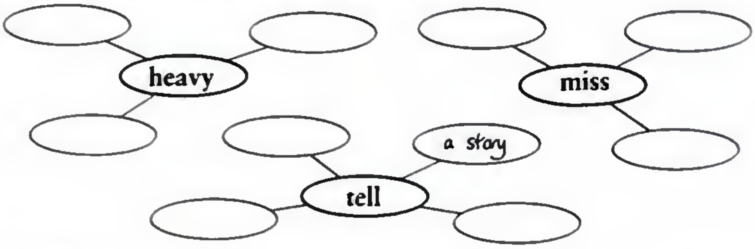

12.2 Write the opposite.

1 get on the bus *get off the bus*
2 a strong accent
3 strong coffee
4 a soft voice
5 an alcoholic drink
6 tell the truth
7 catch the bus
8 sweet wine

12.3 Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

1 I'm ......*terribly*...... sorry I'm late, but I .... the bus and had to wait ages for another one.
2 He .... everyone the same joke, and nobody laughed.
3 We had snow in the night and I couldn't .... the car this morning.
4 Everyone said the party was a .... success.
5 I think they want to get married and .... a family.
6 We carried the suitcases up to the fourth floor, and it was very .... work.
7 It's .... important that we finish this work by the end of the week.
8 If this .... rain continues, I don't think he'll come.
9 I don't drink .... coffee at night because it keeps me awake.
10 I really .... my family when I stayed in Australia on my own last year.
11 I'm sure she is .... aware of the problem.
12 I .... my time on that course; it was terrible.
13 When I went into the children's room, the boys were both .... asleep, but Angela was .... awake, reading a Harry Potter story.

12.4 The adjectives on the left can all mean 'very big', but we often use them with the nouns on the right. Use a dictionary to find the correct collocations, and then complete the sentences below. You will need to look at the example sentences in the dictionary, perhaps at the adjectives and the nouns.

wide	vast
large	broad

size	range
shoulders	majority

1 A: What .... do you take? B: Medium or ______________________
2 Fortunately the shop I go to has a .... ______________________ of shirts and jumpers to choose from.
3 I've got very .... , but my waist is quite small.
4 A few men can't find clothes to fit them, but the ______________________ .... are small, medium or large.

13 Idioms and fixed expressions

A What is an idiom?

An idiom is a group of words with a meaning that is different from the individual words. Sometimes the meaning is easy to understand; sometimes it is difficult to understand from the individual words. These examples move from 'easy to understand' to 'more difficult to understand'.

I've **changed my mind** about those shoes. (= changed my decision or opinion)
I'm tired today because I had **a late night**. (= went to bed later than usual) (*opp* **an early night**)
I'm trying to write an essay but I'm **getting nowhere**. (= not making progress)
You find fast food restaurants **all over the place**. (= everywhere)
My wife and I **take it in turns** to cook. (= I cook one day, she cooks the next, etc.)
I'm sorry but I don't think I can **make it** (= come) on Friday. I'm really busy.
They asked us to **keep an eye on** (= watch/look after) the house while they're away.
I **feel like** (= want) a drink; I **feel like** going out this evening. (= want to go out)
We should **get rid of** some of this stuff. (= remove it/throw it away)
That boy really **gets on my nerves**. (= is very annoying; makes me angry)
The answer's **on the tip of my tongue**. (= I know it, but can't remember it at this moment)

B Pairs of idioms

These pairs are related in meaning and sometimes they are used together.

On the one hand/on the other hand (= used to contrast opposite points of view)
I'm not sure about these new apartments. **On the one hand** they provide homes for people, which is good. But **on the other hand**, we have lost the only piece of open land in the area.

In the short term/in the long term (= a short or long period of time in the future)
In the short term we can manage here, but **in the long term** we will need a bigger place.
If we do this, it will be cheaper **in the long term**. (= over a long period of time)

In theory/in practice (used to contrast a general idea with reality)
In theory your plan looks very interesting; but **in practice**, it may be too expensive for us.

C Common idioms

Some common idioms are used in everyday questions and replies.

A: Are you coming?
B: Yes, **hang on**. (= wait a minute)

A: **What's up?** (= What's the matter?)
B: Nothing.

A: I've forgotten to bring your book.
B: **Never mind**. (= it's OK, no problem)

A: Shall we go out?
B: Yeah, **if you like**. (= I am happy to do that)

A: Can I borrow your dictionary?
B: Sure, **go ahead**. (= help yourself; take it; do it)

A: I don't know which one to choose.
B: Well, **make up your mind**. (= make a decision)

A: What's the answer?
B: **I haven't a clue**. (= I don't know)

A: Would you prefer to stay in?
B: **It's up to you**. (= it's your decision)

Exercises

13.1 Replace the underlined word(s) with an idiomatic phrase from the opposite page.

1 A: Is Rebecca here?
  B: Yes, wait a minute. I'll get her.
2 A: How long does it take?
  B: I've no idea.
3 A: Could I borrow this for a minute?
  B: Yes, take it.
4 A: I'm sorry I broke that glass.
  B: That's OK. It's not important.
5 A: Would you like to go to the cinema?
  B: Yes, I am happy to do that.
6 A: What's the matter?
  B: Nothing. Why?
7 A: Could you look after my things for a minute?
  B: Yeah, sure.
8 A: Is John coming this evening?
  B: No, I'm afraid he can't come.
9 A: You'll have to decide soon.
  B: Yes, I know, but it's very difficult.
10 A: What time shall we leave?
  B: I don't mind. It's your decision.

13.2 Complete the idioms in these sentences.

1 In the short .... we don't need any help from the bank.
2 We take it in .... to look after the dog.
3 Tell the children to be quiet – they're getting on my ....
4 The new traffic system sounds like a good idea in .... ; but will it work?
5 Nowadays you can find internet cafés all over the ....
6 I planned to go to Greece for my holiday but I've changed my ....
7 I had to get .... of all my magazines because they were taking up too much space.
8 What's in the fridge? I feel .... something to eat.
9 I'm very tired this evening. I think I'll have an .... night.
10 The answer was on the tip of my .... but I just couldn't remember it.
11 It'll take us the whole day to drive to Scotland – the train is much faster. On the other .... , it'll be very convenient to have the car when we get there.
12 I'm .... nowhere with this crossword; I just can't do any more.
13 I was going to invite my cousins, but I've .... my mind.
14 I can't take all my furniture with me: I'll have to .... rid of some of it.

13.3 It can be difficult to guess the meaning of an idiom, especially if you do not have the full context. Look at these examples (they are not presented on the opposite page).

1 The exam was a piece of cake.
2 They've gone for good.
3 I can make do with a small flat.

Here is a fuller context for the above idioms. Can you guess the meaning now?

1 A: Was the exam difficult?
  B: No, it was a piece of cake.
2 A: Do you think they'll ever come back to England?
  B: No, they've gone for good.
3 A: Do you really need a large flat?
  B: Well, it would be nice to have a big place, but I can probably make do with a small flat.

14 Verb or adjective + preposition

A Verb + preposition

Some verbs are often followed by a particular preposition. Pay special attention to any that are different in your language.

I often **listen to** the radio.
Paul doesn't like it and I **agree with** him. (= have the same opinion)
I may go but it **depends on** the weather.
He **suffers from** (= has the illness of) a type of diabetes.
He got **married to** a girl he met in France. I don't know her name.
I think we should **apologise for** (= say sorry for) being late.
She has **applied for** (= made a written request for) a new job.
They were **waiting for** me at the airport.
Don't **worry** (= be nervous) **about** your exam; it'll be OK.
His teachers were **satisfied** (= pleased) **with** his progress.
She **complained** (= said she wasn't satisfied) **to** the manager **about** the food.
He **spends** a lot of money **on** clothes.
That dictionary **belongs to** Rolf. (= it is Rolf's dictionary)
They are going to **translate** the book **into** Spanish.
I'm **thinking of** going to France. (= it's a future possibility) [Used mostly in the continuous form.]

B Prepositions that change the meaning

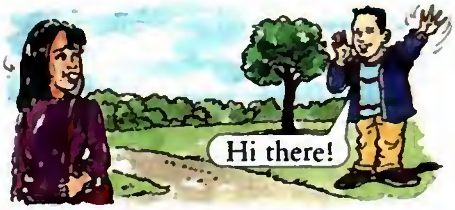

He **shouted to** me. (= to communicate from a distance)

He **threw** the ball **to** me. (= for me to catch it)

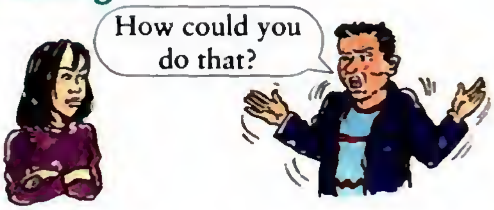
How could you do that?

He **shouted at** me. (= he was angry)

Someone in the crowd **threw** a bottle **at** the police. (= in order to hit them; he was angry)

C Adjective + preposition

I was never very **good at** mathematics. (*opp* **bad at**)
She is **afraid of** (= frightened of) flying.
I'm not very **keen on** fish. (= I don't like fish very much)
She is **similar to** (= in some ways the same as) her older sister, but very **different from** her brother.
He's very **interested in** photography.
I was **surprised at** (or **by**) the way he reacted – he's usually very calm.
I think she's **aware of** (= knows about) the problems in her class.
I'm **tired of** people telling me what to do. (= I've had enough and I want it to stop)
As it's the school holidays, the pool was **full of** children. (= lots of children in the pool)
There is something **wrong with** this TV. (= the TV is not working/functioning correctly)

Exercises

14.1

Finish these questions with the correct preposition, then write a short answer for each one.

1 A: What exactly is she worried ...about... ? B: ...her exams...
2 A: What subjects is she good .... ? B: ....
3 A: Who is she waiting ....? B: ....
4 A: What job is she applying .... ? B: ....
5 A: What programme is she listening .... ? B: ....
6 A: What did she complain .... ? B: ....
7 A: What did she apologise ....? B: ....
8 A: Who does this car belong .... ? B: ....
9 A: I know she's angry but who's she shouting .... ? B: ....
10 A: What kind of films is she interested ....? B: ....
11 A: What does the decision depend ....? B: ....
12 A: What is she afraid .... ? B: ....

14.2

Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

1	He's tired	a	at me, but it missed.
2	She wasn't aware	b	for a job in Australia.
3	He threw the book	c	of working at weekends.
4	She complained	d	to the man across the lake.
5	She said it was similar	e	for the mistake.
6	She applied	f	at his choice.
7	She shouted	g	of clothes.
8	He said it depends	h	to the one she has.
9	The suitcase was full	i	on that coat.
10	She spent over £200	j	of her mistakes.
11	She apologised	k	on the time they get there.
12	I was very surprised	l	about the bad service.

14.3

Complete the sentences in a logical way. If possible, compare with someone else.

1 My steak was overcooked, so I complained ...to the waiter about it....
2 When I was a child I sometimes wore clothes that belonged ....
3 Her teacher wasn't very satisfied ....
4 In the summer a lot of people suffer ....
5 I'm afraid there's something wrong ....
6 The book is very successful and has been translated ....
7 A lot of people are afraid ....
8 I've always been interested ....
9 I'm not very keen ....
10 People in my country are very different ....
11 For my next holiday, I'm thinking ....
12 In the summer, places like Spain and Greece are full ....

14.4

A good dictionary will tell you if a verb or adjective is usually followed by a special preposition. Use a dictionary to find the preposition that often follows these words.

fond (adj)   concentrate (v)   rely (v)

15

Preposition + noun

A Common patterns

Sometimes a preposition is used with a particular meaning in a number of expressions.

A book **by** Stephen King; a film **by** Steven Spielberg; a song **by** Elton John
I heard it **on the radio**; I saw it **on TV**; we spoke **on the phone** (but I read it **in the newspaper**)
You can go **for a walk**, **for a swim**, **for a drive**, **for a run**
You can visit **in the morning**, **in the afternoon**, **in the evening** (but **at night**)
You can travel **by car**, **by train**, **by plane**, **by bus** (but **on foot**)
The man **in the blue jumper**, **in the dark glasses** (= wearing the blue jumper/dark glasses)

B Fixed expressions

I took his pen **by mistake**. (= I thought it was my pen)
I did all the work **by myself**/**on my own**. (= without help from others)
The shoes are **made by hand**. (= not by machine)
The workers are **on strike**. (= they won't work because of a problem over pay, hours, etc.)
I met them **by chance**. (= it wasn't a planned meeting; it was luck)
The children are **on holiday**. (= they are having a holiday)
There are two million **out of work**. (= without a job)
I think Marianne's **in love with** him. (= she loves him)
The building's **on fire**. (= it is burning)
Why are they always **in a hurry**? (= need to do things or go somewhere very quickly)

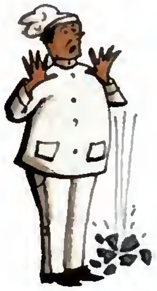

He broke the plate **by accident**. (= he did not want to do it; it was a mistake)

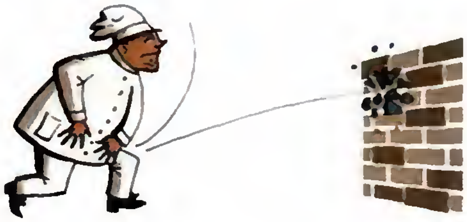

He broke the plate **on purpose**. (= he wanted to do it and intended to do it)

C 'In time' or 'on time'?

Sometimes two prepositions can be used with the same noun, but the meaning is different.

Lessons begin at 8.30 and the students are usually here **on time**. (= at 8.30)
If we hurry, we'll be there **in time**. (= before the time we need to be there; we won't be late)

We were tired of waiting, so **in the end** we went home. (= finally, after a long period)
At the end of the book they get married. (= in the last part)

The two men have been **in business** (= worked as businessmen) for many years.
They're both in Germany **on business**. (= they are there for work, not a holiday)

I'll see you **in a moment**. (= very soon)
I can't speak to you **at the moment**. (= right now/at this moment)

Exercises

15.1 Complete these sentences with the correct preposition. Cover the opposite page first.

1 I saw it .... TV.
2 They came .... car.
3 They are all .... strike.
4 He is here .... business.
5 I did it .... my own.
6 It was written .... Goethe.
7 We went .... a walk.
8 I read it .... a magazine.
9 He's .... holiday this week.
10 She took it .... mistake.
11 I went .... the afternoon.
12 He came .... foot.
13 The clothes are made .... hand.
14 She broke it .... accident.
15 He did it .... purpose.
16 I'll see you .... a moment.
17 She's always .... a hurry.
18 It's very quiet .... night.
19 We met .... chance.
20 I think they're .... love.

15.2 Replace the underlined words with a suitable phrase from the opposite page.

Example The meeting was planned for 11 and we got there at 11.
The meeting was planned for 11 and we got there on time .

1 I wrote the reports without help from anyone else.
2 Did you get to the cinema before the film started?
3 Most of the factory is burning.
4 She's making a phone call.
5 I saw the advertisement when I was watching TV last night.
6 He opened her letter because he thought it was addressed to him.
7 It was a very long journey but finally we got there.
8 He gets killed in the last scene of the film.
9 I'm afraid I'm very busy right now.
10 I saw her yesterday but we didn't plan to meet.

15.3 Respond to these questions using a suitable prepositional phrase. Look at the example first.

Example A: Was it the man wearing the blue shirt?
B: No, the one in the white shirt.

1 A: Did she hit him on purpose?
B: No, she did it ....
2 A: Did the others help him?
B: No, he did it ....
3 A: Did they go by car?
B: No, they went ....
4 A: Are they here on holiday?
B: No, they're here ....
5 A: Did you read about the accident in the newspaper?
B: No, I heard about it ....
6 A: Has he got a job at the moment?
B: No, I'm afraid he's ....
7 A: Did they fly?
B: No, they went ....
8 A: Do they really like each other that much?
B: Yes, they're .... Isn't that sweet?

16

Apologies, excuses and thanks

A Apologies (= saying sorry)

We can **apologise** (= say sorry) in different ways in different situations.

	situation
(I'm) sorry. I'm (very/terribly) sorry. I beg your pardon. (*fml*)	When you close the door in someone's face, or sit in someone's seat
I'm sorry to disturb you.	When you interrupt/speak to someone who is working
I'm sorry I'm late.	When you are late for an appointment
(I'm) sorry to keep you waiting.	Someone is waiting to see you and you are busy. You can also say: **I won't be long.** (= I will be free soon)

In formal situations we often use **apologise** and **apology**.

I must **apologise for** being late. I would like to **apologise for** the delay. Unfortunately, ...

Please accept our apologies for the delay in sending out your order.
[a common phrase in business letters]

B Excuses and promises

NOTE
Be/get delayed means to be late because of a problem that you cannot control.

If the situation is important we can give an explanation or **excuse** after the apology. An excuse is the reason for the apology – it may or may not be true.

I'm sorry I'm late, but I was **delayed/got held up** at the airport.
I'm sorry I'm late, but my train was **cancelled**. (= the train was on the timetable but did not run)

If you are responsible for a problem, you can offer or promise to do something about it.
I'm sorry about the mess in here – **I'll clear it up**. (= I will make everything tidy/in order)
I'm sorry about the confusion over the plans – **I'll sort it out**. (= I will solve the problems)

C Reassuring people

When people apologise to us, it is common to **reassure** them (= tell them that 'everything is OK'). Sometimes we use two expressions to emphasise that 'it's OK'.

A: I'm sorry I'm late.
B: **That's OK. Don't worry.**

A: I'm afraid I forgot to bring the books.
B: **Never mind. It doesn't matter.**

D Thanks and replies

These are the most common ways of thanking people in everyday situations, with typical replies.

A: Here are the books you wanted.
B: Oh, **thank you (very much)**.
A: **That's OK.**

A: I'll answer that.
B: Oh, **thanks (a lot)**.
A: **No problem.**

A: I'll post those letters for you.
B: Oh, thank you. **That's very kind of you.** [This is polite and a bit more formal.]

Exercises

16.1 Complete these dialogues with a suitable word. Contractions (e.g. I'm) count as one word.

1 A: I'm ....very.................... sorry.
B: That's OK.
2 A: I'm sorry .... late. The 7.30 train was .... and I had to catch the 7.50.
B: That's OK. No ....
3 A: Sorry to .... you waiting.
B: That's OK. Never ....
4 A: I think the boss has got a real problem with this contract.
B: Yes, but I'm sure he'll .... it out.
5 A: I've got your CDs.
B: Oh, thanks a ....
6 A: I must .... for missing the meeting.
B: That's OK. It doesn't ....
7 A: I'm busy right now but I won't be ....
B: That's OK. Don't ....
8 A: I'll carry your bags for you.
B: Thanks. That's very .... of you.
9 A: I .... your pardon.
B: That's OK. No ....
10 A: I'm sorry .... the room; it's very untidy.
B: That's OK. I'll clear it .... later.

16.2 What could you say in these situations? (If it is an apology, give an explanation.)

1 You get on a bus at the same time as another person and he/she almost falls over.
I'm terribly sorry. / I beg your pardon. I didn't see you there.
2 You arrange to meet friends in the centre of town but you are 20 minutes late.
....
3 Your car has broken down. You're pushing it to the side of the road and a stranger offers to help.
....
4 A friend borrows a pen, then loses it. When they apologise, you want to reassure them.
....
5 You need to see your boss, but she's busy. What do you say as you go into her office?
....
6 A colleague at work tells you that a number of files are in the wrong order and he doesn't know what to do. When he apologises, how can you reassure him, and what can you offer to do?
....
7 You were unable to go to a meeting with a client. Now you phone to explain.
....
8 Your company promised to send some information about new products to a customer last week. You still haven't sent the information and must now write to explain.
....

17 Requests, invitations and suggestions

A Requests and replies

Notice that the phrases get longer when the requests get bigger.

1 A: **Could you pass me the salt?**
B: **Yeah, sure.**

A: **Could I possibly borrow** your dictionary?
B: **Yes, help yourself.** (= yes, take it)

2 A: **Do you think you could (possibly) lend** me two or three pounds?
B: **Yeah, sure.** *or* **No, I'm afraid I can't.** / **No, I'm afraid not.** } I haven't got any money **on me**. (= with me)

3 A: **I was wondering if I could (possibly)** leave work half an hour early today?
B: **Yeah, no problem.** *or* **Well, it's a bit difficult (actually), because** …

B Invitations and replies

A: **Would you like to** go out this evening?

B: **Yeah, great/I'd love to.**

or **I'm sorry, I can't.**

A: We're going to a restaurant and **we were wondering if you'd like to** come with us?

B: **I'd love to, but I'm afraid I can't.**
I've got to write an essay.

C Suggestions and replies

Suggestions are ideas for things to do/say/make, etc.

Asking for suggestions
What shall we do tonight?
Where shall we go this evening?
What do you fancy doing (= want to do) this evening? (*infml*; notice the *-ing* form after fancy)

Making suggestions
How about (or **What about**) going to the cinema? (notice the *-ing* form)
Perhaps we could just get a pizza or something like that.
Why don't we try that new club in the main square?
Do you fancy going to that Italian restaurant? [This can be a suggestion or an invitation.]

Replies
Positive: **Yeah, great/fine/that's a good idea/that sounds great.**
Neutral: **Yeah, if you like.** (= if you want to go, then I am happy to go)
Yes, I don't mind. (= it's OK for me) (NOT ~~for me it's the same~~)
Negative: **I think I'd rather** (= I would prefer to) stay in and watch TV.

Exercises

17.1 **Correct the mistakes in this dialogue. There are six, including the example.**

A: ~~Do~~ Would you like to go out this evening?
B: I'm afraid but I haven't got any money.
A: That's OK, I'll pay. How about go to see a film?
B: No, I think I'd rather to stay in and do my homework.
A: Why you don't do your homework this afternoon?
B: I'm busy this afternoon.
A: OK. We could go tomorrow.
B: Yeah, great.
A: Right. What film shall we see?
B: For me it's the same.

17.2 **Complete the dialogues with a suitable word. Contractions (e.g. *isn't*) count as one word.**

1 A: Could you ...possibly................ open that window? It's very hot in here.
B: Yeah, ...
2 A: Clive and Sally are here at the moment and we were .... if you'd like to come over for a meal this evening?
B: Yes, I'd .... to.
3 A: What do you .... doing this evening?
B: I don't know really. Any ideas?
A: Why .... we go to the cinema? We haven't been for ages.
B: Yeah, that's a great ....
4 A: OK. Where .... we go on Saturday?
B: How .... going to the beach if the weather's nice?
A: Yeah. Or we .... try that new sports centre just outside town.
B: Mmm. I think I'd .... go to the beach.
A: Yeah, OK, if you ....
5 A: What .... you like to do this weekend?
B: I don't .... You decide.

17.3 **Respond to each of these requests, invitations and suggestions. If possible, do this activity with someone else: one of you asks the questions, the other answers.**

1 Could I borrow a pen for a minute?
2 Do you think you could post a letter for me?
3 I was wondering if you've got a suitcase you could lend me?
4 Would you like to go out this evening?
5 I've got some tickets for a concert. Do you fancy coming with me?
6 How about going to a football match at the weekend?
7 Why don't we meet this afternoon and practise our English for an hour?
8 We could invite some other people from our English class to meet us as well.
9 I know you're busy but could you help me with this essay?
10 Do you fancy going to the cinema?

18 Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing

A Asking someone for their opinion

What do you think of his new book/girlfriend? (= asking about a specific person/thing)
What do you think about cosmetic surgery? (= asking about a general topic)
How do you feel about working with the others?

B Introducing your own opinion

(Personally) I think Paula was probably right.
(Personally) I don't think it's a good idea. (NOT I ~~think it's not~~ a good idea)
In my opinion we need to change the direction of the company. [This is more formal.]

C Having strong opinions

These adjectives are common when we give opinions.

I thought it was a **brilliant** idea. (= a fantastic idea)
She thought the pictures were **disgusting**. (= terrible, very unpleasant, not acceptable)
His plan is just **ridiculous**. (= absurd and stupid)
I think it's a really **original** book. (= new and different from anything else)

D Giving the opinion of others

According to the newspaper (= in the opinion of the paper), she knew nothing about it.
The newspaper says the President knew weeks ago. (NOT It ~~is written~~ in the newspaper.)

E Agreeing with someone

If we want to show we agree with someone, we can do it like this:

A: I think we should put the money in the bank.
B: Yes, I agree (with you). *or* Yes, I think you're (absolutely) right.

F Disagreeing with someone

It is common to begin by agreeing before you give a different opinion.

	possibly,	but don't you think ...
Yes,	perhaps/maybe,	but I'm not sure that ...
	you could be right,	but don't forget ...

If we disagree but not completely, we often use these expressions:
Yes, I see what you mean, but ...
Yes, I take your point, but ...

G Strong disagreement

I totally disagree (with you).
I'm afraid I don't agree (with you) at all.

Exercises

18.1 **Complete these questions in three different ways to ask people their opinion.**

1 .... these shoes? Do they look OK?
2 .... the plan to change the examination system?
3 .... having more responsibility?

18.2 **Fill the gaps with a suitable word from the opposite page.**

1 A: What did you think .... the film?
B: Well, ... I didn't like it.
2 .... to the radio this morning, we won't know the result until tomorrow.
3 Yes, I take your .... , but I still think the book was too long.
4 I .... disagreed with her, which is unusual.
5 I know she has very strong .... on this subject – she talks about it all the time.

18.3 **Rewrite these sentences using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.**

1 I think you're right. AGREE
I agree with you.
2 I think the club needs new players. OPINION
....
3 I totally disagree with you. AT ALL
....
4 The newspaper says terrorists started the fire. ACCORDING
....
5 Yes, I take your point, but I'm not sure I agree. MEAN
Yes, I ....
6 How do you feel about giving children more freedom? THINK
....

18.4 **Match the words on the left with the correct definition on the right.**

1 disgusting
2 ridiculous
3 original
4 brilliant

a absurd and stupid
b fantastic
c terrible and very unpleasant
d new and different

18.5 **Continue these conversations. You can agree and add another reason, or disagree and add a different point of view. Remember, if you disagree, start with a short expression of agreement first. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.**

1 A: A lot of women are very happy to stay at home and be housewives.
B: ....
....
2 A: The state shouldn't give money to people who don't want to work.
B: ....
....
3 A: People from developing countries need all the help we can give them.
B: ....
....

19

Likes, preferences and interests

A What do you like?

NOTE
Most verbs and expressions on the left can also be followed by an *-ing* form:
I love driving;
I don't mind working at the weekend.

	agree	*disagree*
I love rock music.	So do I/me too.	Really? I don't.
I'm really into dance music. (*infml*)	So am I/me too.	Really? I'm not.
I like a lot of pop music.	So do I/me too.	Do you? I hate it.
I quite like salsa and samba.	So do I/me too.	Oh, I'm not very keen on it.
I don't mind jazz.	Yeah, it's OK.	Oh, I can't stand it.
I'm not very keen on folk music.	Neither am I/me neither.	Really? I love it.
I don't like reggae.	Neither do I/me neither.	Oh, I quite like it.
I can't stand opera.	Neither can I/me neither.	Really? I quite like it.
I hate classical music. (= I dislike it very much)	So do I/me too.	Oh, I really like it.

B And things like that

We can describe a list of things, e.g. likes or dislikes, with one or two examples, then finish with general phrases like these. We can also use them to ask about likes or dislikes.

She's very keen on poetry and drama **and that sort of thing**.
I try to eat healthy food – simple pasta and salads, **and stuff like that**.
My husband likes boxing and wrestling, but I hate **things like that**.
What kind of things/sort of stuff do you like?

C Look forward to

I'm **looking forward to** going home. (= pleased and excited about going home soon)
I always **look forward to** my birthday. (= pleased and excited when it is going to happen)
I'm not **looking forward to** the exams because I haven't done much work.
I **look forward to hearing from you**. [This is a common way to end a formal letter.]

D Which do you prefer?

In general
A: Which do you **prefer**, tea or coffee?
B: I **prefer** coffee **to** tea in the morning. But in the afternoon I usually drink tea.

Specific occasion
A: We can go to the cinema or the theatre – it doesn't matter. **Which would you prefer?**
B: **I'd prefer to** go to the cinema. *or* **I'd rather** go to the cinema.
'I'd rather' is the same as 'I'd prefer to', but is more common in spoken English.

E What are you interested in?

A: **Are you interested in** Latin American music?
B: Yes, very (much). *or* **No, not really.** *or* No, it **doesn't interest me** (at all).

Exercises

19.1 Correct the mistakes in these dialogues (one mistake in each).

1 A: I love modern art.
B: Yes, so I do.
2 A: Do you like this?
B: Yes, I like very much.
3 A: Would you like to go out?
B: No, I'd prefer stay here.
4 I'm looking forward to see you next week.
5 A: Do you like tea?
B: Yes, but I prefer coffee than tea.
6 A: Does he like football?
B: No, he's not interesting in sport.
7 A: I don't like his new CD.
B: No, so do I.
8 I don't mind to help them.

19.2 Complete the phrases in bold in these sentences.

1 My sister loves Robbie Williams, but **I can't** .... him.
2 He likes windsurfing and waterskiing and **that sort of** ....
3 They're not very **keen** .... sightseeing.
4 Do you really enjoy **things** .... **that**?
5 **Are you looking** .... **to** your holiday?
6 I love the cinema, but this particular film **doesn't** .... me at all.
7 Carole is **really** .... modern art at the moment. Personally, I hate it.
8 (*formal letter*) **We look forward to** .... **from you**.

19.3 Rewrite the sentences using the word on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

1 I hate these new shoes. STAND
I can't stand these new shoes.
2 I think they'd prefer to go home. RATHER
....
3 I don't find his books interesting. INTEREST
....
4 I don't really like that sort of thing. THINGS
....
5 I find archaeology very interesting. INTERESTED
....
6 I think the new building is OK. MIND
....

19.4 Agree with each of these sentences using 'so' or 'neither' and the correct verb.

1 I love this ice cream. So do I.
2 I like strawberries.
3 I don't like cold tea.
4 I can't work with music on.
5 I'm single.
6 I'm not married.

Now write 'me too' or 'me neither' next to each of your answers.

19.5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Compare with someone else if possible.

I really like .... and ....
and things like that.
I don't mind ....
I can't stand ....
I prefer .... to ....
I'm looking forward to ....
I'm not looking forward to ....
I'm interested in ....
.... doesn't interest me.

20 Frequently asked questions

It will help you to learn these common questions as fixed expressions.

A Personal questions

questions	*possible answers*
Where are you from? Where do you come from?	Italy.
What do you do? (= What's your job?)	I'm a film director.
What are you doing at the moment?	I'm making a film.
Are you married?	No, I'm single.
How old are you? (= What's your age?)	I'm 27.
What's your address/phone number?	It's ...

B Everyday questions

NOTE
The last two constructions are very similar in meaning. Often you can use either, but remember not to confuse the forms. (*How's ...? and What's ... like?* NOT ~~How's it like?~~)

questions	*typical answers*
How are you? *or* How's it going? (*infml*)	Fine, thanks. *or* Not bad. How about you?
What are you doing this evening?	Nothing special/much. (= I have no plans)
What's the matter? (= What's the problem?)	Nothing. Why?
Have you got the time? (= Do you know the time?)	Yeah, it's five past three.
How much is that (necklace)? (= what's the price?)	It's £35.99.
What sort/kind of (cheese do you like)?	I like most cheese – especially hard cheese.

How was (the party)? (= tell me your opinion of it)
What's (the flat) like? (= describe it to me and tell me what you think of it)

C Place and distance

A: I live in Italy. B: Whereabouts? (= where exactly in Italy)
A: How far is it? (= what distance is it?) B: About ten miles.
A: How do I get to the (railway station)? B: Sorry, I don't know.

D 'Time' questions

SITUATION: You are on holiday in Ireland for two weeks. On the evening of the fourth day you meet someone in a bar. These are typical questions they may ask you.

questions	*answers*
How long have you been here?	Four days.
How long are you staying? How long are you here for?	Two weeks. *or* Another ten days.
How much longer are you staying?	Ten days.
Is this the first time you've been to (Dublin)?	Yes, it is. *or* No, I've been before. I came ...

Exercises

20.1 Complete each dialogue with a suitable word.

1 A: What do you ....do.......................... ?
B: I make TV programmes.
2 A: Are you .... ?
B: No, I'm married, actually.
3 A: What are you doing this evening?
B: Nothing .... Why?
4 A: How do I .... to the Tourist Information Office from here?
B: I'm sorry, I don't know.
5 A: .... was the film like?
B: Brilliant.
6 A: They've been in the flat for a year now.
B: Yeah. And how much .... are they planning to stay?
7 A: .... was the lecture?
B: Very interesting.
8 A: What .... of car does he drive?
B: I don't know.

20.2 Here are some answers. What could the questions be?

1 I'm a doctor. What do you do?
2 Yes, it's almost four o'clock.
3 I'm 23 next month.
4 It's about five kilometres.
5 Usually French or Italian, but occasionally Chinese food.
6 Sorry, I don't know. I'm a stranger here myself.
7 It's very large – there are six bedrooms and the kitchen is fabulous.
8 I have no plans at all. I'll probably watch TV.
9 We arrived last Sunday.

20.3 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase of similar meaning.

1 A: How long are you staying? here for
B: Two weeks.
2 A: How are you?
B: Fine. And you?
3 A: Where exactly do you live in Italy?
B: In Rome.
4 A: How's your steak?
B: Oh, it's delicious.
5 A: Is this your first visit to Spain?
B: Yes, it is.
6 A: What's the problem?
B: Nothing.

20.4 You are on holiday in Prague. Complete this conversation with a person you meet on the third day.

A: How .... here?
B: Just a couple of days.
A: Really? And .... ?
B: Until next Friday.
A: Is this the .... ?
B: No, I came last year.

21 Common responses

A Short responses

questions	*short response*
Are you going to the party tonight?	I think so. *or* I don't think so./I doubt it.
Is Tom going to meet us?	Yes, I hope so. (= I don't know but I want it to happen)
Is it going to rain?	I hope not. (NOT I ~~don't hope so~~)
Are you working this weekend?	I'm afraid so. (= Unfortunately, I am)
Can you come to the match?	I'm afraid not. (= I'm sorry, but no I can't)

B Responding with interest and enthusiasm (= strong feeling of interest and enjoyment)

statements	*enthusiastic responses*
She finally got her visa to travel.	Really? That's great.
He's passed his driving test.	Oh, that's brilliant.
We're going camping in Greece.	Oh, that sounds wonderful.
I'm going to meet some actors.	Really? That sounds interesting.
They're having a baby.	Oh, how fantastic.
I've got a new job.	Wow! How exciting.

We can respond to bad news using the same constructions but different adjectives.

Really? That's dreadful. Oh, that sounds terrible. Oh, no. How awful.

C Responding with disappointment

I can't go to the party this evening.	Oh, what a pity/that's a pity.
Sam isn't feeling well, so he's staying here.	Oh, what a shame/that's a shame. (= what a pity)
I think it's going to rain for our picnic.	Oh, what a nuisance/pain. [We use this when we are angry about a situation.]

D Responses of agreement

These responses all agree to do something, or they permit the speaker to choose and make the decision. The way we say these phrases makes it clear if we are happy or unhappy.

What time shall we go?	Whenever you like. (= We can go when you want)
What do you want to do?	Whatever you like.
Where shall we put these chairs?	Wherever you like.
Do you want to go out?	I don't mind. (= I am happy to go out, or stay in)
Shall we take a taxi?	Yeah, if you like. (= that's OK with me)

E Remember to respond!

It is important to show you are listening. These are common ways we do it.

mmm uh huh yeah OK I know sure right/I see (= I understand)

Exercises

21.1 Check the pronunciation of the underlined words in the Index at the back of the book. Practise saying the phrases.

I doubt it. I'm afraid so. Oh, what a nuisance. That sounds dreadful.

21.2 Complete the last word of these dialogues. Practise them with a partner if possible.

1 A: Can we still get tickets?
B: I hope ....
2 A: Are you working tomorrow?
B: Yes, I'm afraid ....
3 A: Is the price going up?
B: Well, it's already expensive, so I hope ....
4 A: Are you going?
B: I doubt ....
5 A: Are there any left?
B: I don't think ....
6 A: Have you got any change for the coffee machine?
B: I'm afraid ....

21.3 Choose the best response on the right for each of the questions or statements on the left.

1 Tom can't come because he's working.
2 We're staying in a very expensive hotel.
3 Do you want to watch the end of the film?
4 Does he often get angry like this?
5 We can't get in – Joe's got the key.
6 What time do you want to start?

a Whenever you like.
b I'm afraid so.
c Oh, what a pity.
d Oh, that's a nuisance.
e Yeah, if you like.
f Oh, that sounds great.

21.4 Replace the underlined word or phrase with another word or phrase that has the same meaning.

1 A: She's ill.
B: Oh, what a pity.
2 A: Do you want to go?
B: I don't mind.
3 A: We're going on Concorde.
B: Oh that's exciting.
4 A: Is it still busy at this time of year?
B: No, I don't think so.
5 A: What do you want to do?
B: I don't mind.
6 A: He fell off his bike and broke his arm.
B: Oh, how awful.

21.5 Respond to these statements in a suitable way. Practise with someone else if possible.

1 I'm going to spend three weeks in Australia.
2 Alex has lost your watch.
3 Do you want to finish this later?
4 Where shall we go?
5 I've just won £1,000.
6 I can't go tomorrow. I have to work.
7 Peter has lost his wallet with all his credit cards.
8 I wanted to speak to Karen, but she's out all day.

22

Greetings, farewells and special expressions

A

Greetings: ‘hello’

How do you do? *or* Hello. Nice to meet you.	Used in formal situations when you meet someone for the first time. The reply can also be **How do you do?** or **Pleased/nice to meet you.**
Hi/Hello. How are you?	A common greeting when you meet someone you already know. (Also **How’s it going?** *infml*) The usual reply is: **Fine, thanks. And you?** Or possibly: **Not bad. How about you?**
Good morning, good afternoon, good evening	These expressions are used at different times of the day (most people say **Good morning** until lunchtime). British people do not usually say **Good day**, but Australians do.

B

Farewells: ‘goodbye’

Nice to meet you. *or* Nice to have met you.	In formal situations, when you say goodbye to someone you have just met for the first time.
See you later/tomorrow.	If you plan to see someone you know later the same day/ the next day.
Bye. See you soon.	You know you will see someone again, but have no plans to meet them.
Goodnight.	When you say goodbye to someone late at night, or if you (or they) are going to bed.
A: Have a nice weekend. B: Yes. Same to you.	When you say goodbye to a colleague/friend on Friday afternoon. You can also reply: **You too.**

C

Happy occasions and celebrations

Happy Birthday	To someone on his/her birthday. You can also say **Many happy returns.**
Happy/Merry Christmas	To someone just before or on Christmas Day (25 December).
Happy New Year	To someone at the beginning of the year.
Congratulations	To someone who has just achieved something, e.g. passed an exam, got a job, etc. We can also say **Well done.**

D

Expressions for special situations

Excuse me	a To get someone’s attention, e.g. **Excuse me. Is this your hat?** b When you want to get past other people (on a bus or in a crowded room). c To tell others you are going to leave the room.
Sorry	a To say sorry, e.g. you stand on someone’s foot. b When you want someone to repeat what they said. (With this meaning, the voice must rise at the end of the word.)
Cheers	Used to express good wishes when you have a drink with other people. Informally it can also mean ‘goodbye’ and ‘thank you’.
Good luck	To wish someone well before a difficult situation, e.g. exam or job interview.
Bless you	To someone when they sneeze. They can reply: **Thank you.**

NOTE

There is no special phrase when people start eating. In restaurants, waiters may say: **Enjoy your meal.**

Exercises

22.1 What message could you write in a card to these people?

1 A friend. Next week is 25 December. Happy Christmas
2 A friend who is 21 tomorrow.
3 A friend. It will be 1 January in three days' time.
4 A very good friend who has just passed some important exams.
5 A friend who is going to take his driving test in three days' time.
6 A friend you will visit when you return from your holiday, but you're not sure when.

22.2 Complete the conversations in a suitable way.

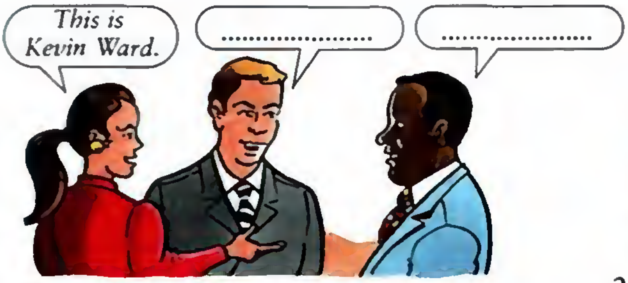

1

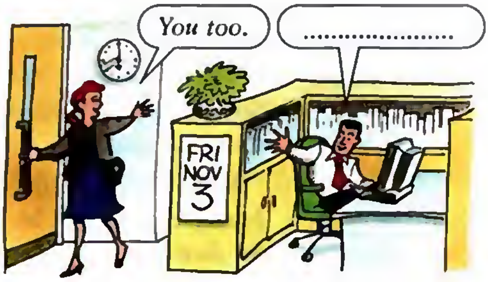

2

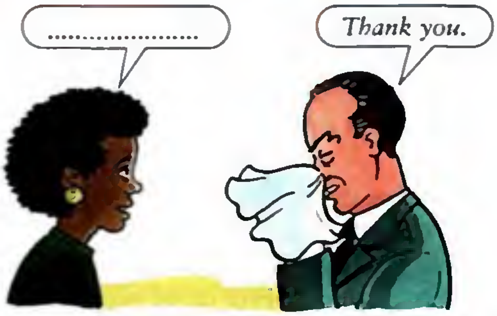

3

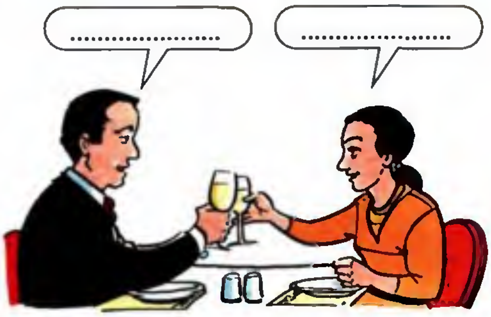

4

22.3 What could you say in these situations?

1 You are in a meeting. Someone enters the room and says you have an important telephone call. What do you say as you leave? Excuse me. I won't be long.
2 Someone says something to you but you didn't hear all of it. What do you say?
3 You met a new business client for the first time 15 minutes ago, and now you are leaving. What do you say?
4 You are in a crowded bus. It is your stop and you want to get off. What do you say to other passengers as you move past them?
5 You are staying with some English friends. What do you say to them when you leave the room in the evening to go to bed?
6 You are in the street. A woman walks past you and at the same time something falls out of her bag. She has her back to you. What do you say?
7 A friend tells you they have just won some money.
8 Another friend is going for a job interview this afternoon.

22.4 When do we use these expressions? Do you have similar ones in your language?

Hard luck. Say 'cheese'. Watch out! Keep your fingers crossed.

23

Phrasal verbs (1): form and meaning

A

Formation

A phrasal verb is a verb + adverb or preposition, and occasionally a verb + adverb and preposition.

The price of petrol is **going up** (= increasing) again.
He **fell over** (= fell to the ground) and hurt his knee.
She's trying to **find out** (= learn/discover) the name of that new hotel.
Who's going to **look after** (= take care of) the children when their mother is in hospital?
If you don't understand the meaning, **look it up**. (= find the meaning in a dictionary)
He doesn't **get on with** (= have a good relationship with) his parents. (verb + adv + prep)

B

Meaning

Sometimes the adverb or preposition doesn't change the meaning, but makes it sound more natural.

I didn't **wake up** until 7 o'clock.	I'm **saving up** for a new computer.
Hurry up or we'll be late.	She **stood up** and went over to the door.
Sit down and be quiet.	He told me to **lie down** on the bed.

Sometimes an adverb adds a particular meaning. For example, **back** can mean 'return'.
I'm going to take that jacket **back** to the shop; it's too small.
You can look at the books but remember to **put** them **back** on the shelf.

More often, the adverb or preposition changes the meaning of the verb: 'take off' doesn't mean the same as 'take', and 'get on' doesn't mean the same as 'get'. Here are some examples:

It took her a long time to **get over** (= get better/recover from) her illness.
We'll take a short break and then **carry on** (= continue) with the meeting.
My wife has decided to **give up** (= stop) smoking.
I can't make any sandwiches – we've **run out of** bread. (= no bread is left; it is finished)
I've told them we can't **put** the meeting **off**. (= change the time of the meeting to a later date)

C

Multiple meanings

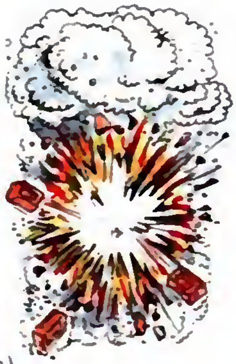

Be careful: many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning.

It was so hot I had to **take off** (= remove) my jacket.
I'm always nervous when the plane **takes off**. (= leaves the ground)

I've got a lot of work to **get through** (= finish) before Friday.
I tried phoning him, but I couldn't **get through**. (= make contact and talk to him)

My alarm clock didn't **go off** (= ring) this morning.
The bomb could **go off** (= explode) at any minute. [See picture.]
The fish will **go off** (= go bad) if you don't put it in the fridge.

I **picked up** most of the rubbish. (= took it from a place, using my hands)
I have to **pick** Jane **up** (= collect her in my car) from the station.

Exercises

23.1 Complete the phrasal verbs. Remember to put the verb into the correct form.

1 I don't think they ever ....found.................... out how the man escaped.
2 The children went round the school and .... up all the rubbish.
3 This milk smells horrible; I think it has .... off.
4 I rang the tourist information office but I couldn't .... through. It's engaged all the time.
5 The relationship was difficult at first, but I think she .... on with him quite well now.
6 If she's still ill tomorrow, we'll have to .... off the trip to France until later in the month.
7 I agreed to .... after my sister's cat when she goes to France.
8 We can .... on with this exercise while the others are in the library.
9 Our English teacher said we should .... through the textbook by the end of the course.
10 I'm afraid this photocopier has .... out of paper, but you can use the one in my office.

23.2 Complete these sentences in a logical way.

1 It will take her a long time to get over ....her illness.............................
2 The plane took off ....
3 He had to look it up ....
4 I don't really get on with ....
5 She came in and took off ....
6 I've decided to give up ....
7 Who is going to look after ....?
8 I went to the garage to pick up ....
9 I'm afraid we've run out of ....
10 My rent is going up ....

23.3 Look at the dictionary entry for 'go off', and match the meanings with the sentences below.

> **go off 1** LEAVE to leave a place and go somewhere else *She's gone off to the pub with Tony.* **2** FOOD *UK informal* If food goes off, it is not good to eat any more because it is too old. **3** STOP If a light or machine goes off, it stops working. *The heating goes off at 10 o'clock.* **4** EXPLODE If a bomb or gun goes off, it explodes or fires. **5** MAKE NOISE If something that makes a noise goes off, it suddenly starts making a noise. *His car alarm goes off every time it rains.*

1 When the light goes off, the machine has finished.
2 My alarm clock went off early this morning.
3 I think this meat has gone off.
4 The bomb went off without any warning.

23.4 Write two sentences for each of these phrasal verbs to show their different meanings.

pick up take off go off get through

24 Phrasal verbs (2): grammar and style

A Grammar: intransitive verbs

Some phrasal verbs are intransitive. They don't need an object after the verb, and we cannot put another word between different parts of the verb.

He **grew up** in a city. (= spent his childhood/developed into an adult) (NOT He grew ~~in a city up~~.)
Don't wait out there. Please **come in**. (= enter)
I'm going to **stay in** (= stay at home) this evening.
We **set off** (= started the journey; usually a long journey) at about 7.30.

B Grammar: transitive verbs

Many phrasal verbs are transitive: they need a direct object after the verb. You can usually put the object between the different parts of the verb, or after the phrasal verb.

Put on your shoes. ✓	Turn on the TV. ✓	Take off your coat. ✓
Put your shoes on. ✓	Turn the TV on. ✓	Take your coat off. ✓

If the object is a pronoun, it must go in the middle.

Put them on. ✓ (~~Put on them.~~) Turn it on. ✓ (~~Turn on it.~~) Take it off. ✓ (~~Take off it.~~)

C In dictionaries

You can use a dictionary to check the grammar. Most dictionaries show it like this:

carry on, get by (= intransitive phrasal verb)
I can **get by** in French. (= I can manage in French, but I don't speak it well.)

put sth↔on, throw sth↔away (= transitive phrasal verb)
Did you **throw** those books **away**? (= get rid of them/put them in a rubbish bin)
Did you **throw away** those books?

get over sth, look after sb/sth (= verb + preposition + object)
Maria will **look after** (= take care of) the children. (Maria will **look after them**.)

D Style: formal or informal?

Most phrasal verbs are more common in spoken English. In written English there is often a more formal word with the same meaning. (The other words in bold are often used with these verbs.)

make sth up = invent/create sth (from your imagination), e.g. We had to **make up a story**.
leave sth out = omit sth (= decide not to do sth), e.g. You can **leave out** question 7.
sort sth out = solve sth (such as a problem), e.g. We asked the computer guy to **sort it out**.
turn sb/sth down = reject sth (= say *no* to sth), e.g. I offered him £50, but he **turned it down**.

Some phrasal verbs are used in written English if there is no other easy way to express the meaning.

wake up, e.g. I always **wake up** early, even at weekends.
break down (= go wrong/stop working), e.g. The **car broke down** on the motorway.
take off (= leave the ground), e.g. The **plane** couldn't **take off** because of bad weather.
break into sth (= enter by force, often illegally), e.g. **Thieves broke into** the house and stole £500.

Exercises

24.1 **Correct any mistakes with word order in these sentences. Be careful: some are correct.**

1 He's putting his boots on.
2 I told the children I'd pick up them after school.
3 She grew on a farm up.
4 We set off very early this morning.
5 It's a big problem but the man will sort out it.
6 I think she made that story up.
7 We know there were two thieves, but do you know how they broke the house into?
8 I said I'd look after them if necessary.

24.2 **Make these texts more informal by changing the underlined verbs to phrasal verbs.**

1 The cost of living is increasing all the time and I am now finding it quite difficult to manage on my salary. I can probably continue for a few months, but after that I may have to look for another job.
2 She told us to enter, but then we had to remove our shoes.
3 The teacher told half the class to invent a story to go with the picture in our books, while the other half did Exercise 5. She said we could all omit Exercise 4 if we wanted to.
4 I don't know why he rejected my offer of help because the company is in a lot of trouble and they've got no one to solve the problems.

24.3 **Fill the gaps to complete the phrasal verbs in these sentences.**

1 I'm afraid the photocopier has just broken ....
2 I couldn't do the second question, so I left it ....
3 Put your coat .... if you're cold.
4 If there are problems with the computer, I usually have to sort it ....
5 He told me he was 25, but I don't believe him. I think he's making that ....
6 You're not going to throw .... that food, are you?
7 Why couldn't the plane take .... ?
8 I think she grew .... in a small village.
9 We'll get there by seven if we set .... now.
10 They offered him the job but he turned it ....

24.4 **Complete these sentences in a logical way.**

1 Could you lie down ....on the floor.................. ?
2 I'm not very good at making up ....
3 She asked me to turn on ....
4 Two men tried to break into ....
5 We have asked an engineer to come and sort out ....
6 Are you going to stay in .... ?
7 Why did you leave out .... ?
8 I'm afraid we broke down ....
9 Can you get by .... ?
10 I grew up ....

24.5 **There are many phrasal verbs in other units. Find three phrasal verbs in each of these units: 52, 53, 61, 79, 80.**

25 Have and have got

A Have vs have got

We can use *have* or *have got* to talk about possessions, relationships, illnesses and some other states. *Have got* is more common in spoken English.

I've got an old CD player.
She's got two brothers.
He's got a headache.
I haven't got a car at the moment.
Have you got the time? (= What time is it?)
It hasn't got a swimming pool.

1 In negative sentences, we can use *haven't got* or *don't have*.
I haven't got a car/I don't have a car. (NOT ~~I haven't a car.~~)
2 We don't use *got* in short answers, and it isn't common in the past tense.
A: **Have you got any brothers or sisters?** B: **No, I haven't.** (NOT No, I ~~haven't got~~)
I had a car when I was at college. (NOT I ~~had got~~)
3 The verb form used in the question is usually the same in the answer.
A: **Do you have a car?** A: **Have you got a car?**
B: **Yes, (I do).** B: **Yes, (I have).**

B Have + noun

When the same word can be a noun or a verb, e.g. *wash*, it is common to use *have* + the noun, and not the verb on its own, e.g. *I'm going to have a wash.* (NOT I'm going to ~~wash~~.) *Have got* is not used here.

I always **have a quick shower** when I get up. (= shower)
Let's **have a rest** before we go on. (= rest/stop doing an activity and relax)
I often **have a sleep** after lunch. (= sleep) [We use this expression for a short period of sleep.]
This computer game is really hard. Would you like to **have a try**? (= try it)
I **had a dream** about you last night. (= dreamt)
Let me **have a think** before I decide. (= think about sth for a period of time)

We use *be* + adjective and not *have* + noun in these expressions:

She was **lucky**. I'm **hungry**. (= I want something to eat.) I'm **thirsty**. (= I want a drink.)

C Have + object

have breakfast/lunch/a meal, etc. (= eat)	I **had** steak but Paul just **had** a sandwich. What time do you **have breakfast**?
have a drink (= drink sth)	Let's **have a drink** before dinner.
have a party	I'm **having a party** for my birthday.
have a baby (= be pregnant or give birth)	Mary is **having a baby** next month.
have a look (= read or examine)	Could I **have a look** at your paper? (= read it) The doctor **had a look** at my knee. (= examined it)
have a nice/great/terrible/etc. time	We **had a very nice time** in Switzerland.
have an argument (= angry discussion)	They **had an argument** about the holidays.
have a word with sb (= speak to sb)	I **had a word with** the teacher about my homework.
have the bill (= receive it in a restaurant)	Could I **have the bill**, please?
have a problem + (with) or (*-ing*)	I'm **having a problem** with this exercise. I **had a problem** opening the door.

Exercises

25.1 Transform these sentences from *have* to *have got*, or *have got* to *have*.

1 I have a new CD player. I've got a ...
2 I don't have a job at the moment.
3 Has he got any change for the machine?
4 She hasn't got much money.
5 We don't have a video at school.
6 A: Do you have an English dictionary?
B: Yes, I do.

25.2 Now change the form of *have* to *have got* where possible. Make any other changes that are necessary.

1 Do you have a car? Have you got a car?
2 Have you seen her today? You can't change the form here.
3 We have a small garden.
4 I think I have a cold.
5 A: Do you have a spare pen? B: No, sorry.
6 Someone told me she has a new boyfriend.
7 Let's have lunch.
8 They had an exam yesterday.
9 I have a new computer.
10 Excuse me. Do you have the time?

25.3 Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

1 I'm tired. I think I'll have a ..sleep.........................
2 I had a funny .... about you last night. I woke up laughing.
3 I'm exhausted. Can we have a .... ?
4 She's having her 21st birthday .... next week. Are you going?
5 I need to have a .... before I decide what to do.
6 Did you have a .... finding the place without a map?
7 The weather was terrible on our holiday. We didn't have a very good ....
8 We had .... in a little restaurant, then went for a walk in the afternoon.
9 There's a problem with the car, so I asked the garage to have a .... at it.
10 I had a terrible .... with my sister; I haven't spoken to her for days.

25.4 What can you ask in these situations? Use *have* + a noun and start each question *Could I ...?*

1 You want to pay in a restaurant. Could I have the bill, please?
2 You would like to look at someone's newspaper.
3 You want to speak to your teacher.
4 You are in a friend's house and you are thirsty.
5 Someone asks you if you want to buy their CD player, but you're not 100% sure if you want it.

25.5 Express these sentences in a different way using *have* + a noun. Keep the meaning the same and start each one with *Mary* ...

1 Mary is speaking to one of the boys. Mary is having a word with one of the boys.
2 Mary is pregnant.
3 Mary found it very difficult to work the video.
4 Mary examined my bad shoulder.
5 Mary really enjoyed herself in Ireland.

26 Make, do and take

A Things we make

a mistake (= an error)	He **made** a few **mistakes** in the test.
a meal (= prepare)	I don't usually **make a meal** in the evening if I'm busy. I'll **make lunch** today.
money (= become rich)	He **made** a lot of **money** when he was in America.
friends	I **made** a lot of **friends** in Australia last year.
a decision	Think about it before you **make a decision**.
a noise	I can't work when the children **make** a lot of **noise**.
progress (= become better)	Her English is good now; she's **made** a lot of **progress**.
a difference (= have an effect on a situation)	Sarah tried to help but it didn't **make** any **difference**. The extra money **makes** a **big difference** to us.

B Things we do

homework	I forgot to **do** my **homework** last night.
the housework (= cleaning)	My mother **does** all the **housework** in our house.
a subject (= study a subject)	What **subjects** do you **do** at school? Did you **do English** at school?
a course	I **did** a one-week **course** in word processing.
the shopping (= buy food)	I always **do the shopping** at the weekend.
research (= detailed study)	He's **doing research** in physics at Rome University.
sb a favour (= do sth to help sb)	Could you **do me a favour**? I haven't got any coffee. Could you lend me some?
well (= succeed; *opp* badly)	I **did well** at Spanish, but my sister **did very badly**.
something/nothing/anything	Those kids **do nothing** all day. I didn't **do anything** last night.

C Things we take

an exam (also 'do')	I'm going to **take** four **exams** next month.
a photo	She **took** lots of **photos** on holiday.
a break (= short period of rest)	OK, let's **take a break** for ten minutes, then we'll continue.
a decision (also 'make')	I'm not very good at **taking decisions**.
a shower (also 'have')	I'm just going to **take a shower** before lunch.
a bus/train/plane/taxi (also 'get')	We were late, so we **took a taxi** to the airport.
periods of time (= time we need to do sth)	It **takes** me **half an hour** to walk to school. How **long** does it **take** you to do an exercise?
a seat (= sit down)	Please come in. **Take a seat**.
time off (= time away from work for holidays or to do sth)	I **took** a few **days off** work and we went away. Could I **take** this afternoon **off**?

Exercises

26.1 Underline the correct verb(s) in italics. Be careful: in some sentences both verbs are correct.

1 I couldn't *do/make* my homework last night.
2 When do you *take/do* your next exam?
3 Did he *do/make* many mistakes?
4 I don't often *make/do* the housework.
5 Did you *make/take* many photos?
6 I think I've *done/made* a lot of progress.
7 I want to *do/make* a course in English.
8 We must *take/make* a decision soon.
9 He is *doing/making* research in chemistry.
10 They *did/made* a lot of noise during the party.

26.2 Replace the underlined phrase with a phrase from the opposite page. Use the verb in brackets.

Example I'll clean the house at the weekend. (do) do the housework

1 I buy my food on Saturday morning. (do)
2 He is definitely improving. (make)
3 OK, let's stop work and relax for 15 minutes. (take)
4 Could you help me and post this letter for me? (do)
5 Now I have a car it changes things a lot. (make)
6 They both want to become rich. (make)
7 When are they going to decide? (make)
8 I'm afraid she failed in both exams. (do)
9 Please sit down. (take)
10 I want to have a week's holiday. (take)

26.3 Complete the sentences in the past tense about each of the pictures. Use verbs from the opposite page.

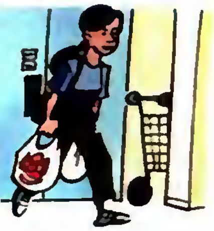
Sally / this morning

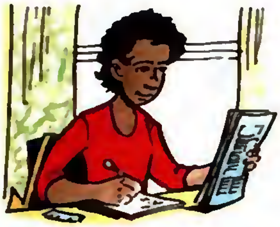
2 Maria / after dinner

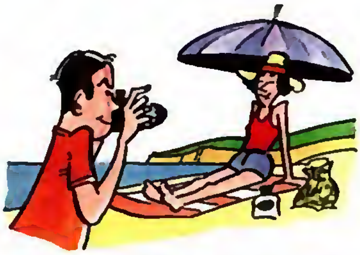
3 Simon / of me this morning

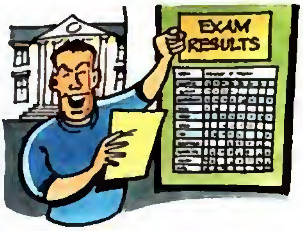

4 Michael / in his exams

26.4 Choose three of these things. How long does it usually take you to do them? Write sentences, and compare with someone else if possible.

Example It usually takes me about 25 minutes to get to work.

get to college/work
check your e-mail
eat lunch
wash your hair
do your English homework
put on your make-up

27

Give, keep, break, see

A

Give

I'll **give** you a **ring** this evening. (= phone you this evening)
Could you **give** me a **hand**? (= help me)
I'll **give** you a **lift** home. (= take you home in my car)

In spoken English *give* + noun is often used instead of a verb on its own, e.g. He gave me a kiss, instead of He kissed me. Other examples are:
He **gave** me a **push**. (= pushed me)
He **gave** me a (big) **smile**. (= smiled at me)
He **gave** me some **advice**. (advised me)
He **gave** me a **hug**. [See picture.]

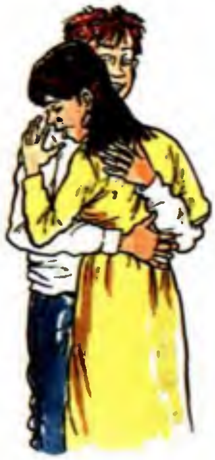

B

Keep

Keep (+ noun/pronoun) + adjective (= to make sth/sb stay in a particular state)

These gloves will **keep** your hands **warm**.
Running helps me to **keep fit**. (= stay healthy)
That raincoat will **keep** you **dry**.
Please **keep quiet**. (= remain quiet)

Keep + *-ing* (= to do sth again and again; often sth that you don't want to happen)
I **keep** losing my glasses. She **keeps** interrupting me. I **keep** getting backache.

I try to **keep in touch** with old school friends. (= stay in contact, e.g. phone/write to them)
I'm sorry to **keep you waiting**.

C

Break

If you **break a record**, you do something faster or better than anyone else before, e.g. He **broke** the world 100 metres **record** with a time of 9.79 seconds.
I didn't know I was **breaking the law**. (= doing something wrong/against the law)
Who's going to **break the news** to her family? (= give her family the news)
It'll **break her heart** (= make her very unhappy) to see her son like this.

D

See

A: She didn't have your number, so she couldn't phone.
B: Oh, **I see**. (= I understand)

A: It's easier to carry two smaller suitcases.
B: Yes, **I see what you mean**. (= I understand what you are saying.)

They're doing experiments to **see** (= find out) how people react when they are under stress.

A: Do you think we need the car?
B: **I'll see** (= find out) **what the others think**.

A: Is that John at the door?
B: Yes, **I'll see** (= find out) **what he wants**.

I don't see the point of practising six hours a day. (= I don't understand the reason/I think it's crazy.)

Exercises

27.1 Match each verb with two nouns on the right to form common phrases.

1 break
2 give
3 keep

in touch
somebody a hand
somebody waiting
the law
somebody's heart
somebody a lift

27.2 Fill the gaps with verbs from the opposite page.

1 She ..gave.................... me a big smile when I got to work this morning.
2 He said he was sorry to .... us waiting.
3 That's the second time she's .... the record.
4 Before we make a decision, let's .... what Patricia says.
5 He just came up to me and .... me a big hug.
6 I don't know what the problem is, but I .... getting headaches.
7 I don't know when the next bus is due – I'll go and .... what the timetable says.
8 A: There's something wrong with this door. B: Yes, I .... what you mean.
9 I'll have to .... the news when they get here.
10 I don't .... the point of spending a lot of money on children's clothes – they only last for a few months and then they're too small.

27.3 Complete these dialogues using a verb + noun construction with the same meaning as the underlined words and phrases.

1 A: Did you take them in your car?
B: Yes, I ..gave them a lift.......
2 A: Did you phone her?
B: Yes, I .... last night.
3 A: Have you ever committed a crime?
B: No, I've never .... in my life.
4 A: Have you stayed in contact all this time?
B: Yes, I've tried to .... as much as possible.
5 A: This is going to make her terribly unhappy.
B: Yes I know. It'll ....
6 A: Could anyone help me with this?
B: Yeah, I'll ....

27.4 Complete the sentences with a suitable adjective or *-ing* form.

1 This umbrella should keep you ....
2 I don't know why she keeps .... – it wasn't a very funny story.
3 I never drink coffee at night; it keeps me ....
4 If you do lots of exercise, it'll keep you ....
5 It's really stupid, but I keep .... to lock the door when I go out.
6 They're making a lot of noise in there. Could you tell them to keep .... ?

27.5 Can you translate the phrases in bold on the opposite page into your own language? If so, do you use the same verb in your own language?

28 Leave, catch and let

A Leave

leave home/work (= depart/go out from)	I always **leave home** before 8 am.
leave school/work/a husband/a wife (= permanently)	She **left her job** last year to have a baby. No one really knows why she **left her husband**.
leave sth/sb somewhere (= allow sb/sth to stay/remain in a place)	You can **leave** your coats in my bedroom. I **left** my things at home; I'll pick them up later.
leave sth somewhere (= forget sth)	I **left** my books on the bus. It was so stupid.
have got sth left (= the amount that remains)	I had £100 yesterday, and now I've only **got** £20 **left**. **Have we got** any coffee **left**, or did we drink it all?
leave a message	He wasn't in, so I **left a message** on his answerphone.
leave sb alone (= go away/don't disturb sb)	**Leave** Boris **alone** – he's working.

B Catch

catch a bus (= take/travel by) **catch a criminal** (= find and take) **catch a cold/flu** (= get)	We can walk or **catch a bus**; I don't mind. The police **caught** the man outside the bank. My girlfriend has a cold and I think I **caught** it from her.
not catch (= not hear what sb said)	I **didn't catch** what he said. Is it platform 3 or 4? I'm sorry, I **didn't catch** your name.
catch a ball	I had to run to **catch the ball**.
catch sb doing sth (= see sb when they are doing sth wrong)	My mother **caught** me **taking** food out of the fridge.
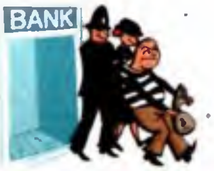	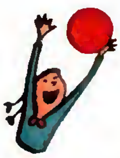 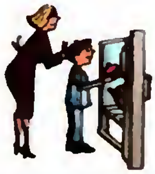

C Let

let sb do sth (= permit sb to do sth)	I **let** my sister **borrow** my car. My parents won't **let** me **stay** in the flat.
let sb know (= tell sb 'yes' or 'no')	I'll **let** you **know** tomorrow about the holiday. If you want to come, could you **let me know**?
let's ... (= introducing a suggestion)	Oh, come on, **let's** go out this evening. **Let's** try that new bar in the main square.
let me see (= a phrase we use to give ourselves time to think)	A: What time shall we leave? B: Er ... **let me see** ... er ... how about six o'clock?
let me do sth (= offering to do sth)	**Let me help** you (with the washing up). **Let me give** you a lift (to the station).

Exercises

28.1 **Fill the gaps in these sentences and dialogues with a suitable verb.**

1 We can walk to the High Street and then .... a bus to the cinema.
2 (*on the phone*) I'm afraid Paul's out. Do you want to .... a message?
3 I asked Dad, but he won't .... me borrow the car.
4 The teacher .... them talking to each other in the exam, so they could be in trouble.
5 I put everything in my bag for school, then .... it on the kitchen table.
6 A: Is it OK if I .... my bike in front of the apartment?
B: Yes, sure.
7 A: I'm sorry, I didn't .... your name. B: Michael.
8 A: What shall we do?
B: Er, ... go to the swimming pool.

28.2 **Complete the phrases in bold in these sentences.**

1 **Please leave me** .... ; I'm trying to finish this essay.
2 I'm sorry, **I didn't quite** .... **what you said.**
3 If you want any more tickets, just **let me** ....
4 A: How many people can we take in the bus?
B: Ooh ... er, **let me** .... er ... about 30, I think.
5 We can't make an omelette – **we haven't got any eggs** .... You had the last one yesterday.
6 Do you want me to **leave a** .... **on his answerphone?**
7 You have to .... **the ball**, then throw it to someone else.
8 **I caught a** .... on holiday and I've still got it. I feel terrible.

28.3 **Each sentence beginning below has two possible endings. Choose the correct combinations.**

1 She left
2 She let
3 She caught

a me use her mobile.
b her bags at the station.
c the bus outside the supermarket.
d the man trying to steal her handbag.
e her job because it was boring.
f us go home early today because it's my birthday.

28.4 **Complete these dialogues in a suitable way.**

1 A: I don't know how to do this.
B: OK, let me have a look
A: Oh, thanks.
2 A: I'm just going to do the washing-up.
B: Oh, let ....
A: No, you don't have to do that. Sit down.

3 A: I have to go to the station.
B: Well, let ....
A: Oh, that's very kind of you.
4 A: Do you want to come next week?
B: I don't know. I'll let .... tomorrow.

28.5 **Would you let your best friend do these things? Ask somebody else the same questions if possible.**

borrow your bike or car for the weekend
live in your home while you're away
choose clothes for you in a shop
decide where you are both going for a holiday

29

Get: uses and expressions

A Meanings

Get is an informal word and is very common in spoken English. It has many meanings.

RECEIVE	I **got** a couple of letters this morning. You **get** a certificate at the end of the course.
FIND/BUY	I **got** my ticket for the match yesterday. Where did you **get** those shoes? She's trying to **get** a new job.
BECOME	It **gets** dark very early in December. My hands are **getting** cold.
ARRIVE/REACH	When did you **get** here? I can't **get** there before 7 pm. I'll phone when I **get** home.
FETCH	Could you **get** the books from the cupboard? Wait here while I **get** the car.

B Get + past participle

We use this structure in particular expressions. It is more natural than just using the verb.

get married (= marry)	Rob and Sarah have just **got married**.
get divorced (= divorce)	They **got divorced** last year. (= the marriage ended officially)
get dressed (= dress)	I **got dressed** quickly and went out.
get undressed (= undress)	He **got undressed** and got into bed.
get changed (= change clothes)	I need to go home and **get changed** first.
get lost (= lose your way)	I **got lost** on my way to the station.

C Get + adjective

Get (= become) combines with many adjectives that often describe a change in state.

It's getting	**hot/cold**	**I'm getting**	**hot/cold**
	dark (*opp* **light**)		**tired**
	late		**better/worse**
	better/worse		**hungry**
	busy		**ready** (= preparing)

D Phrases and phrasal verbs

I **get on** very well with my sister. (= have a very good relationship with my sister)

How are you getting on? (= What progress are you making? e.g. with an exercise or in general)

Is it difficult to **get to know** people? (= meet people and make friends)

We should **get rid of** these books. (= sell them/throw them away; remove them)

My alarm wakes me up at 7, but I don't usually **get up** (= get out of bed) until 7.15.

Those boys **get on my nerves** (= annoy me and make me angry). They don't do any work.

Exercises

29.1 Write a synonym for 'get' in each of these sentences.

1 Where can I get something to eat round here?
2 I'm just going to get some paper from the office. I'll be back in a minute.
3 What time did they get here last night?
4 He got very angry when I told him what you did with his CDs.
5 I couldn't get a room; all the hotels were full.
6 I normally get about four or five letters a week.
7 This book is getting quite interesting.
8 I must get some stamps before I go home.
9 He sent the letter last week but I didn't get it until yesterday.
10 Do they often get here early?

29.2 Complete the dialogues using *getting* + a suitable adjective. Add other words if necessary.

1 A: It's getting cold in here.
B: Yes, it is. I'll turn on the heating.
2 A: I'm ....
B: OK, let's have something to eat then.
3 A: I'm ....
B: Yes, me too. I'll open the window.
4 A: It's ....
B: Yes, it is. I think I'll go to bed.
5 A: It's ....
B: Yes, it is. I'll put the lights on.
6 A: I'm ....
B: No, you're not. You're getting much better. You understand a lot now.

29.3 Rewrite each of these sentences using an expression with 'get'. The meaning must stay the same.

1 I had to put on my clothes very quickly.
I had to get dressed very quickly.
2 How do you meet people and make friends in this country?
How do you .... ?
3 I have a good relationship with my boss.
I ....
4 We would like to throw away most of the furniture in this room.
We would like to ....
5 Someone told me you're doing a new course. How's it going?
Someone told me you're doing a new course. .... ?
6 The people in my class really annoy me.
The people in my class ....
7 They're preparing to go out.
They're ....
8 My sister told me to get out of bed.
My sister told me to ....

29.4 Write down examples of 'get' that you see or hear, then try to group your sentences according to the different meanings. This will help you to get an idea of the ways in which this important word is used in English.

30

Go: uses and expressions

A

Come vs go

With **go** the movement is usually away from the speaker; with **come** the movement is towards the speaker. For example, you are at school and the time is 9.30 am.

> I had to go to Jimmy's to pick up some books. Then I went to the post office before I came to school.

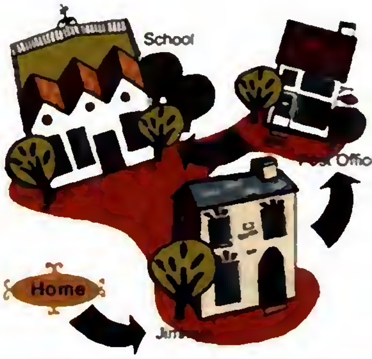

Sometimes the speaker imagines they are in another place. When Thomas meets Marta in Spain, he invites her to stay at his home in Switzerland. He says:
'Would you like to come and visit me in Bern?' (He lives there, so her movement is towards him.)

We can also imagine that the listener is in a different place. Talking to Marta, Thomas says:
'I'll come to your flat at 7.30 pm.' (She will be at home, so his movement is towards her.)

NOTE
There is a similar difference between **bring** and **take**: **Take** the mobile phone with you, then Peter can use it. He can **bring** it back here tomorrow.

B

Different meanings of 'go'

- When you leave a place in order to do an activity, you often express it in these ways.

go + -ing form	*go (out) + for a + noun*
We could **go shopping**.	Why don't we **go (out) for a walk/drive**?
They all **went sightseeing**.	They decided to **go (out) for a drink**.
I'd like to **go swimming**.	She wants to **go (out) for a meal**.

- Go can describe a changing state (usually a bad one) with certain adjectives.
  My dad's **going grey** (= his hair is going grey) and I'm **going bald**. (= losing my hair)
  The company **went bankrupt** last year. (= lost all its money and had to stop operating)
  My grandmother is **going deaf**. (deaf = cannot hear)
  Our 12-year-old dog is **going blind**. (blind = cannot see)
  He'll **go mad** (= get very angry *infml*) if you wear his jacket.
- When you want to say/ask if a road or form of transport takes you somewhere.
  Does this bus go to the National Gallery?
  This road goes through the mountains.
- **Go and get** means fetch.
  Could you **go and get** the glasses from the kitchen?
- When you talk about the usual position for something.
  The dictionaries go on the bottom shelf.
  Does this table go next to the wall?

C

Expressions with 'go' as noun and verb

I've never tried bungee jumping but I'd love to **have a go**. (= try it)
How's it going? (*infml*) (= How are you? or What progress are you making? e.g. with an exercise)
I'd like to see the film. Why don't we **go together**? (= go somewhere with another person/people)
It's **time to go**. (= time for us to leave)

Exercises

30.1 Complete the dialogue using the correct form of *come, go, bring* or *take.* (Two verbs are possible in one of the answers.)

A: What time are you (1) ..going.................. to Jim's party this evening?
B: I'm not sure because Chris is (2) .... here first, and then we'll (3) .... together.
A: Right. Do you know what's happening about the music?
B: Yeah, I'm going to (4) .... some CDs, and Sue is (5) .... her guitar. But I'll probably leave quite early, so could you (6) .... my CDs back here tomorrow?
A: Yeah, sure. What time?
B: Well, I want to (7) .... to the shops in the morning. Could you (8) .... before ten?
A: Yeah, no problem.

30.2 Replace the underlined words with a different word or phrase. The meaning must stay the same.

1 Excuse me. Does this road go to the bus station? take me
2 Some people aren't interested in scuba diving but I've always wanted to have a go.
3 Hi, Sue. Nice to see you again. How's it going?
4 Could you go and get my handbag from the other room?
5 If you want, we could go with each other.

30.3 Complete these sentences with an *-ing noun* (e.g. riding), or *for a + noun* (e.g. for a walk).

1 I went .... this morning and bought some books and clothes.
2 We didn't have much food in the house, so we decided to go out ....
3 Why don't we go .... in that nice new bar near the square?
4 I wanted to go .... because it was my first time in Rome.
5 My brother has just got a new sports car. We could go .... at the weekend.
6 The pool is at the end of the road, so we often go ....

30.4 Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

1 Don't put the desk in the corner. It doesn't go ...there.......................
2 You can always wear a hearing aid if you go ....
3 If business doesn't improve they could go ....
4 You can always dye your hair (= change the colour) if you start going ....
5 And you can wear a wig (= false hair) if you go ....
6 If the dog comes into the house with wet feet, my aunt will go ....
7 He's going .... , but he's hoping to get a guide dog next year.
8 You don't need to go on your own. We could go ....

30.5 Look up 'go' in a good English dictionary. Find two or three new meanings (including phrasal verbs and idioms) that you think may be useful to you. Try to learn them. Write down the meanings with example sentences in your notebook. Write a translation as well if you want.

31

The senses

A

The five basic senses

These are: **sight**, **hearing**, **taste**, **touch** and **smell**. For each one we use a basic verb, which can be followed by an adjective or noun in these constructions.

It **looks** terrible. (= from what I could see)
He **sounds** German. (= from what I heard)
It **tastes** strange. (= from tasting it)
It **feels** soft. (= from touching it)
It **smells** wonderful. (= from smelling it)

It **looks like** a wedding cake.
It **sounds like** a good idea.
This **tastes** a bit **like** chicken.
It **feels like** wool.
This **smells like** garlic.

We can also use the verbs as nouns.

I didn't like **the look of** the fish.
Do you really like **the taste of** olives?

We could hear **the sound of** church bells.
She hates **the smell of** petrol.

B

See, look (at) and watch

Compare these examples of **see** (= able to see) with **look (for) sth** (= search for, try to find), **look (at) sth** (= pay attention to sth, usually not moving and for a short time) and **watch** (= pay attention to sth not moving, usually for a long time).

I can't **see** a thing without my glasses. (= I'm not able to see anything)
I can't find my keys and I've **looked** (= searched/looked carefully) everywhere.
The police have been **watching** that man for weeks.
If you **look at** (= look carefully) the map, you can **see** (= are able to see) the mountains on the left.
He ran into me because he wasn't **looking**. (= paying attention) [the speaker seems angry]
He ran into me because he didn't **see** me. (= wasn't able to see me) [the speaker is not angry]

Sometimes two verbs are possible in one context; sometimes only one.

I **saw/watched** a great programme on TV last night. [For TV, we can use either verb.]
I **saw** a great film last night at the cinema. [For the cinema, we only use see.[

C

Hear and listen (to)

Hear means to be able to hear; **listen** (to) means to pay attention to things you hear. Compare:

I couldn't **hear** what she said. (= I was physically unable to hear)
I can sometimes **hear** the trains from my bedroom. (= I am able to hear without trying)
I don't know what she said because I wasn't **listening**. (= I wasn't paying attention)
I was **listening** to the radio (= paying attention to it), when I **heard** a strange noise outside.

Sometimes we can use **hear** (but not in the progressive form) to mean 'listen to'.

I know he's dead – I **heard** it on the radio last night. (= I heard it when I was listening)

D

Touch

Don't **touch** those wires – they're dangerous.
You have to **press** that button to start the machine.
I don't feel safe up here. Could you **hold** my hand?

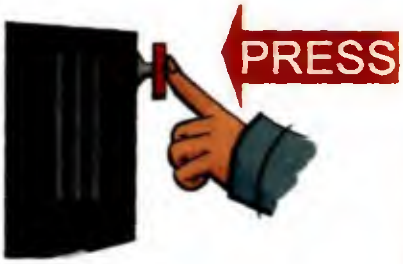

Exercises

31.1 Complete the sentences using words from the box. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

banana sore brother salmon photograph silk
~~new~~ ripe doorbell horrible fresh old socks

1 Those shoes look ....new........................ When did you buy them?
2 I don't think I'll try these peaches yet; they don't feel ....
3 This milk smells .... I'll open another bottle.
4 We had some fruit which tasted a bit like ....
5 My feet are feeling very .... after that run.
6 I love the smell of .... bread.
7 That painting actually looks like a ....
8 I met Malcolm the other day and he really looks like his ....
9 It's a pink fish but it doesn't taste like ....
10 This cheese is terrible – it smells like ....
11 Your telephone sounds just like a ....
12 This dress was quite cheap but it feels like ....

31.2 Complete the sentences below the pictures using *looks/tastes/feels* + adjective.

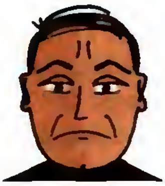

1 This man ....

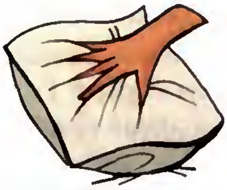

2 This pillow ....

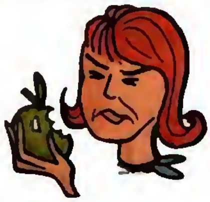

3 This apple ....

31.3 Underline the correct verb in brackets. (Both verbs are correct in one case.)

1 I was (listening to/hearing) the radio when I (listened to/heard) a terrible noise outside.
2 The government is going to introduce new laws about noisy neighbours – I (listened to/heard) it on the radio this morning.
3 She turned up the volume but I still couldn't (listen to/hear) it.
4 I don't know if this is an antique; we'll get an expert to come and (look at/see) it.
5 They wanted to stay and (watch/look at) the programme, but it was a bit late.
6 I was very angry with Tom – he just wasn't (hearing/listening to) what I was saying.
7 Can you bend over and (touch/press) your toes?
8 You have to (touch/press) the eject button if you want to get the video out.
9 Could you (touch/hold) this video for a moment while I move the TV?
10 If you (watch/look) carefully, you can (look/see) how the man does the trick with those cards.

31.4 Complete these sentences about your own likes and dislikes.

I love the smell of ....
I love the sound of ....
I love the taste of ....

I hate the smell of ....
I hate the sound of ....
I hate the taste of ....

32 Partitives: a bag of ..., a bit of ...

There are many different words used to describe a particular quantity of something.

A Containers (e.g. a bag) and contents (e.g. of shopping)

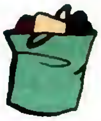
a bag of shopping

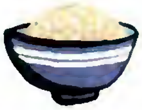
a bowl of sugar

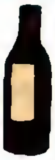
a bottle of wine

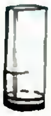
a glass of water

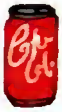
a can of cola

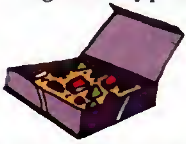
a box of chocolates

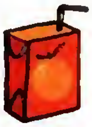
a carton of orange juice

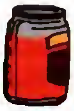
a jar of marmalade

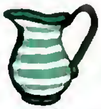
a jug of milk

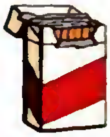
a packet of cigarettes

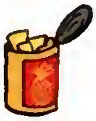
a tin of fruit

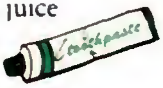
a tube of toothpaste

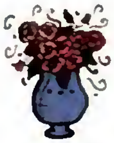
a vase of flowers

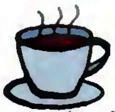
a cup of coffee

B With uncountable nouns

Certain words make uncountable nouns countable in order to describe a specific quantity, e.g. Has anyone got **a sheet of paper** I can have? Other examples are:

a piece of toast	a piece of cake	a piece of wood
a slice of ham	a slice of bread (= a thin piece)	a drop of milk (= a little)

We use **piece** with the nouns above and some abstract nouns, e.g. **a piece of advice**, but the most common phrase in spoken English is **a bit**: we use it with a wide range of nouns.

a bit of advice   a bit of bread   a bit of luck   a bit of time   a bit of news

C A pair of ...

Some nouns have two parts, e.g. trousers (two legs) and shoes (left and right). You can use **pair of** to specify the number, e.g. **a pair of** skis, **two pairs of** shoes, **three pairs of** shorts.

D Groups of things

NOTE

Gang has a negative meaning: it suggests a group of young people who may cause trouble.

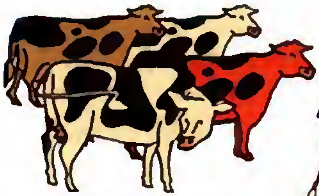
a herd of cows

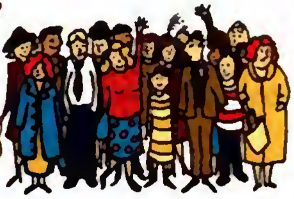
a group of people

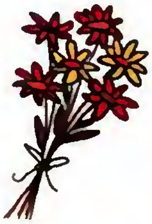
a bunch of flowers

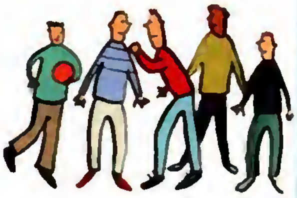
a gang of youths/kids/teenagers

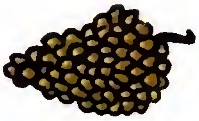
a bunch of grapes

Exercises

32.1 Complete the phrases below the pictures.

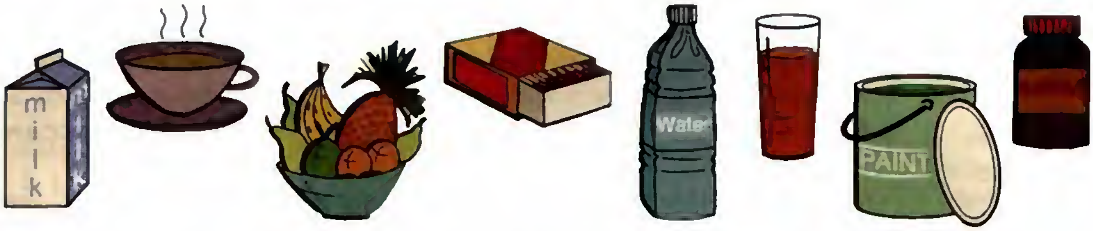

1 a .... of milk
2 a .... of tea
3 a .... of fruit
4 a .... of matches
5 a .... of water
6 a .... of orange juice
7 a .... of paint
8 a .... of coffee

32.2 Contents come in different containers. Are these normal or unusual? If they are unusual, change them and make them normal.

Example a glass of soup Unusual: It's usually a bowl or cup of soup.

1 a vase of coffee
2 a jug of wine
3 a jar of mustard
4 a carton of toothpaste
5 a bowl of milk
6 a tube of cigarettes
7 a bag of salt
8 a tin of tomatoes

32.3 Complete these sentences with a suitable noun.

1 I gave her a big ....bunch.................... of flowers from my garden.
2 The police are looking for a .... of youths who may be responsible for the damage.
3 I cut about six .... of ham and put them on a plate.
4 They own a large .... of land on the coast.
5 I did a .... of homework last night, then went out.
6 The teacher told us to take a blank .... of paper, then write our names at the top.
7 A small .... of people gathered outside the embassy.
8 I need at least two .... of socks inside these shoes.
9 I asked him for a .... of advice.
10 I like to put a .... of cream in my coffee.
11 Have you seen that old .... of boots I use for gardening?
12 I've got a .... of time, so I can help you now if you like.

32.4 Underline any words in (brackets) which are wrong in these sentences.

1 I asked her for a (bit/piece) of advice.
2 I asked for a (piece/sheet) of cake.
3 There was a (group/gang) of journalists outside her house.
4 My lunch consisted of two (slices/pieces) of bread and a small (bunch/group) of grapes.
5 She hit me over the head with a small (piece/bit) of wood.
6 I'm in a hurry, but I've still got a (bit/piece) of time.
7 We had a (piece/bit) of luck this morning: we won some money!
8 Could I have a (piece/bit/drop) of milk in my coffee?

33 Uncountable nouns and plural nouns

A Uncountable nouns

Uncountable nouns, e.g. information, homework, advice:
- don't have a plural form, e.g. **information** (NOT ~~informations~~)
- are not used with the indefinite article, e.g. (some) **homework** (NOT ~~a~~ homework)
- are used with a singular verb, e.g. my **advice is** … (NOT my advice ~~are~~ …)

The uncountable nouns below are often countable in other languages. Look at them carefully, and also notice the other words in **bold** that are often used with them.

Perhaps we could get some more **information about** the concert off the internet.
She **gave me** lots of **advice** about the best dictionary to buy.
Are we going to sell all the **furniture**? (= tables, chairs, armchairs, desks, etc.)
My **knowledge** (= what I know) **of** German is very **limited**. (= very little)
You need a lot of **camping equipment**. (e.g. tent, sleeping bag, things for cooking, etc.)
She's worked hard and she's **making good progress**. (= she is improving/getting better)
Is there any more **news** about the rail strike?
The teacher **gave us** a lot of **homework** last night.
I always put my camera in my **hand luggage**. (= bags you carry with you on the plane)
Would you like some more **toast**? (= bread that is heated and brown on both sides)

NOTE
You can make many uncountable nouns singular using different nouns, e.g. **a piece of toast**, **a news item**, etc. In spoken English we use **a bit** with many nouns, e.g. **a bit of information**, **a bit of advice**.

B In dictionaries

Learners' dictionaries show countable nouns with a (C) and uncountable nouns with a (U). Some nouns can be countable with one meaning and uncountable in another.

book (C)	The books are on the table.
housework (U)	I did a lot of housework (= cleaned the house) this morning.
hair (U)	My hair is getting very long. I must get it cut.
hair (C)	I'm starting to get a few grey hairs now.

C Plural nouns

Plural nouns, e.g. trousers, stairs, sunglasses:
- have a plural form and aren't used with 'a/an', e.g. **trousers** (NOT ~~a trouser~~)
- usually take a plural verb, e.g. These stairs **are** dangerous (NOT These stairs ~~is~~ …)
- can sometimes be made singular using **a pair of**, e.g. **a pair of sunglasses**

Here are some other nouns that are usually plural:
I've just bought **a pair of trainers**.
These **shorts** are too long.
I bought new **pyjamas** when I went into hospital.
The **scissors** are on the table.
I often wear **sunglasses** for driving.
You can **weigh yourself** on the **scales** in the bathroom.
He couldn't hear me because he was **wearing headphones**.

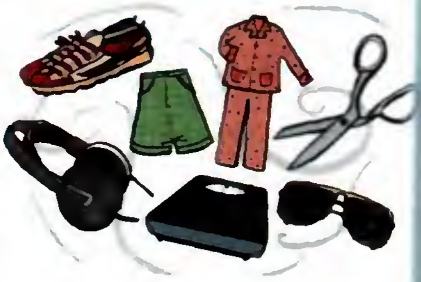

Exercises

33.1 Check the pronunciation of the underlined words in the Index. Practise saying the phrases.

my knowledge of German
hand luggage
camping equipment
a pair of pyjamas
buy some furniture
I want to weigh myself

33.2 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1 I need some informations.
2 The teacher has a news about the school trip.
3 The furnitures are very old.
4 I'm looking for a new jeans.
5 Your hairs are getting very long.
6 Do you have a scissors?
7 We had a lot of homeworks yesterday.
8 Do you think she's making a progress with her English?
9 These trousers is too small.
10 She gave me some good advices.

33.3 Mark these nouns countable, uncountable, or countable and uncountable. If they can be both, write sentence examples to show the difference.

cup housework coffee spaghetti money coin work travel

33.4 Complete these dialogues using a suitable plural noun or uncountable noun from the opposite page. Make sure the form of each word is correct. Look at the example first.

Example A: It's too hot for jeans. B: You need a pair of shorts.

1 A: I have to cut this paper into three pieces.
B: You need ....

2 A: I can't see because the sun is in my eyes.
B: You need ....

3 A: I don't know what to do when I leave school.
B: You need ....

4 A: My room looks so empty.
B: You need ....

5 A: I want to find out how much I weigh.
B: You need ....

6 A: I can't play my music loud because my mother always complains.
B: You need ....

33.5 Read this short text from a radio broadcast. Find two uncountable nouns and one noun always used in a plural form. (These words are not included on the opposite page.)

Traffic on the M3 motorway has been terrible this morning because of the bad weather and the roadworks near Basingstoke, and there have been long delays for motorists heading into London. Drivers are advised to choose an alternative route if at all possible.

34 Verbs + *-ing* form or infinitive

A Verb + *-ing* form

Some verbs are followed by an *-ing* form if the next word is a verb. Here are some of them.

enjoy	**finish**	**imagine**	**admit**	**avoid**
feel like (*infml*)	**(don't) mind**	**can't stand**	**give up**	**deny**

I've lived in New Zealand all my life; I **can't imagine** living anywhere else.
Some people **can't stand** (= hate) working at the weekend but I **don't mind**. (= for me it's OK)
His doctor told him to **give up** smoking. (= stop smoking)
I always try to **avoid** going through the city centre. (= stay away from it)
At the police station, he **admitted** stealing her money, but **denied** taking the computer. (= he said 'yes' he took the money, but 'no' he didn't take the computer)
Do you **feel like** going out (= want to go out) this evening?

B Verb + infinitive

Some verbs are followed by an infinitive if the next word is a verb.

decide	**want**	**seem**	**appear**
hope	**forget**	**expect**	**mean**
manage	**refuse**	**promise**	**offer**

It's a long walk so I **offered** to take them in the car.
I **expect** (= think or believe something will happen) to get the results before next week.
I **meant** (= planned/intended) to get the information, but I **forgot** (= didn't remember) to phone.
It was hard work but we **managed** to finish it. (= we were able to finish it but it was difficult)
I asked her to carry the suitcases but she **refused** to help. (= she said 'no')
They **promised** to phone me as soon as they arrived. (= they said they would)

C Verb + *-ing* form or infinitive

Some verbs can be followed by an *-ing* form or infinitive and the meaning is very similar, e.g. **love**, **like** and **prefer**. But with some verbs there is a difference in meaning:

I **remembered** to buy my grandmother a birthday card. (= I didn't forget to buy one)
I **remember** making cards for her when I was small. (= it's one of my memories from the past)

D Verb + infinitive without 'to'

Two common verbs are followed by an object + infinitive without 'to': **make** someone do something, and **let** someone do something.

My parents **make** me do my homework every night. (= They **force** me to do my homework.)
My parents **let** me go out at the weekend. (= They **allow/permit** me to go out.)

Exercises

34.1 Underline the correct word(s). Be careful: in two sentences, both possibilities are correct.

1 We decided (to work/working) during our holiday.
2 She promised (to help/helping) us.
3 I don't feel like (to go/going) for a walk at the moment.
4 She hopes (to spend/spending) some time in the mountains this summer.
5 Do you actually like (to go out/going out) when it's raining?
6 I can't imagine (to eat/eating) pasta every day of the week.
7 Most of the time she prefers (to work/working) on her own.
8 I don't remember (to go/going) to the zoo when we stayed in Madrid.
9 He hopes (to finish/finishing) his thesis by the end of the month.
10 I don't mind (to help/helping) you if I'm not busy.

34.2 Complete part (c) of each sentence in a suitable way, starting with a verb.

1 Most people want:
   a to be rich b to get married c ....
2 A lot of people can't stand:
   a getting wet b getting up early c ....
3 Most people enjoy:
   a going to parties b lying on a beach c ....
4 On hot days most people don't feel like:
   a working b eating big meals c ....
5 Most people expect:
   a to be happy b to find a job they will like c ....
6 A lot of people don't mind:
   a washing up b ironing c ....
7 Some parents make their teenage children:
   a wear certain clothes b do housework c ....
8 Other parents let their teenage children:
   a wear what they like b stay out all night c ....

Now think about each of the above statements. Are they true, and are they (or were they) true for you?

34.3 Read the story and answer the questions below.

When Julie was 17, her father said she could go on holiday with two school friends. He also said that he would lend her the money for the hotel, but she must pay for the flight and her entertainment. Julie was delighted and said she would bring him back a wonderful present, and pay him back in six months. First they had to decide where to go. They looked at lots of brochures and finally agreed on a two-week holiday in the south of France. They had a great time, but unfortunately Julie spent all her money and forgot to buy a present for her father.

1 What did Julie's father let her do?	He let her go on holiday with friends.
2 And what did he offer to do?	He offered ....
3 But what did he refuse to do?	He refused ....
4 In return what did Julie promise?	She promised ....
5 What did the three girls decide?	They decided ....
6 What did Julie forget?	She forgot ....

35 Verb patterns

A Verb + object

subject	*verb*	*object*
They	discussed (= talked about)	the film for hours.
Did she	answer	the question?

B Verb + object + question word

NOTE
There is no direct object after **explain**: He explained ~~me~~ what to do.

subject	*verb*	*object*	*question word*	
I	told	them	where	to find it.
She	asked	(us)	why	we were late.
He	showed	everyone	what	to do.

C Verb + object + infinitive

subject	*verb*	*object*	*infinitive*
She	asked	everyone	to leave.
They	told	us	to wait outside.
The doctor	advised	him	to stay in bed.
I	wanted	the others	to help us.
He	persuaded	me	to go to the party.
She	warned	them	to be **careful**. (= think/pay attention)

Warn (= tell someone of a possible danger, and often tell them what they should(n't) do)
She **warned** the children not to swim near the boats.
Persuade (= make somebody change their mind/opinion)
John wanted to get the new car now, but I **persuaded** him to wait.

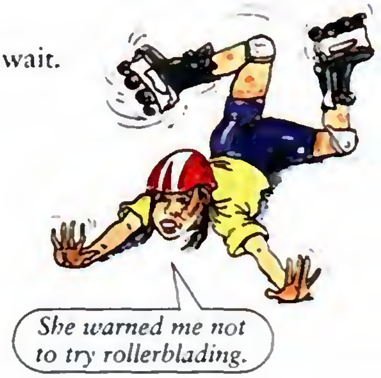
She warned me not to try rollerblading.

D Verb + 'that' clause

subject	*verb*	*(that) clause*
He	said	(that) it was good.
She	suggested	(that) we go together.
He	mentioned	(that) the film was tonight.

Mention (= say or write a fact or piece of information)
When I spoke to the secretary, she didn't **mention** (that) our teacher was ill.

E Verb + (object) + preposition

I **asked** the taxi driver **for** directions to the hotel.
They **blamed** me **for** the accident. (= they said I was responsible for it/it was my fault)
She **complained** (to the manager) **about** the service. (= said she was not satisfied with it)
The manager **apologised for** the noise outside the restaurant. (= the manager said sorry)

Exercises

35.1 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1 She said me the film was terrible. She said the film was terrible
2 He told it's impossible.
3 The teacher is going to explain you what to do.
4 She suggested us to go to an Italian restaurant.
5 Can we discuss about my report?
6 I want that he leaves.
7 You must answer to the question.
8 I apologised my mistake.
9 She advised me buy a dictionary.
10 I asked to the waiter for a knife.

35.2 Complete the sentences with a suitable verb. (There may be more than one answer.)

1 They watched the film together and then they ...discussed............ it in small groups.
2 I didn't understand the exercise but she .... me what to do.
3 She wasn't satisfied with her room, so she .... to the manager.
4 My suitcase was very heavy, so I .... the hotel porter to carry it.
5 Martin knew the area was dangerous but he didn't .... me when I went there.
6 I didn't want to go at first but she .... me.
7 I didn't feel well and my mother .... me to stay at home and rest.
8 She lost all her money but she didn't .... it when I phoned her.
9 I don't think it was my fault but they still .... me for it.
10 She didn't know the way, so I .... how to get there.

35.3 Complete these sentences in a logical way.

1 Some of them were getting hungry so I suggested ....
2 They were making a lot of noise next door and I told ....
3 Paula went to that new Greek restaurant and said ....
4 We read the book for homework and discussed ....
5 She didn't have any money, so she wanted ....
6 It was only a few minutes to the beach, but I still couldn't persuade ....
7 She said there were strange noises outside her flat, so I advised ....
8 The team played badly but most of the newspapers blamed ....
9 The water can make you ill and I warned ....
10 If you don't understand the instructions, someone will explain ....

35.4 When you learn new verbs, you may need to know the constructions that are used with them. So look at the grammar information about a word in a good dictionary, and always look carefully at the example sentences, then write one or two of your own. Do it for these three examples. What patterns from the opposite page are used after these verbs?

order recommend prevent

Example ask 1 + object + question word, e.g. I asked her what to do.
2 + object + infinitive, e.g. I asked them to help me.
3 + (object) + preposition, e.g. I asked (her) for some advice.

36 Adjectives

A 'Scale' and 'limit' adjectives

NOTE
We usually don't use 'very' with limit adjectives (NOT ~~very marvellous~~) or 'absolutely' with scale adjectives (NOT ~~absolutely good~~), but we can use 'really' with both (**really marvellous** and **really good**).

LIMIT	SCALE		SCALE	LIMIT
terrible	(very) bad	OK	(very) good	marvellous
awful				terrific
dreadful				great

Adjectives such as 'good' and 'bad' can be anything from weak to strong, e.g. **quite good** or **very good**. Adjectives at the end of the scale only have one extreme meaning and are often used on their own. We can make them stronger with 'absolutely' or 'really', e.g. **absolutely great, really awful**.

scale	*limit*	*scale*	*limit*
(very) small	(absolutely) **tiny**	(very) pleased	(absolutely) **delighted**
big	**huge/enormous**	cold	**freezing**
tired	**exhausted**	nice	**delicious** (food only)
interesting	**fascinating**	**frightened** (= afraid of)	**terrified**
surprised	**astonished**	hungry	**starving** (*infml*)

B Adjectives ending in *-ing* and *-ed*

A large group of adjectives can have an *-ing* or *-ed* ending. The *-ing* ending describes a person, thing or situation; the *-ed* ending describes the effect on someone of this person, thing or situation.

It was such a **boring** party. Most people left before 11 pm – they were so **bored**.
I think the students are **depressed** because the weather is very **depressing** at the moment.

Other examples of adjectives ending *-ing* and *-ed* are:

surprising/ed
tiring/ed
interesting/ed
frightening/ed
confusing/ed
embarrassing/ed
astonishing/ed
exhausting/ed
fascinating/ed
terrifying/ed
exciting/ed
disappointing/ed

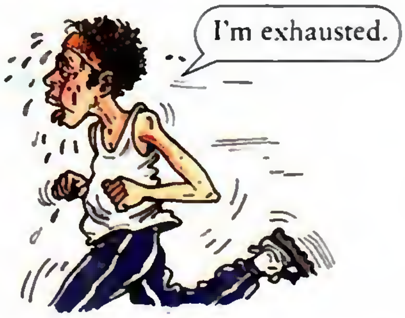
I'm exhausted.

John isn't very good at French, so I was quite **surprised** when he passed the exam – and I was absolutely **astonished** at his result. He got 98%.
I thought it was very **exciting** when I first got on a plane. Then we took off and flew into bad weather. I was **terrified**.
London has lots of streets with the same name; it's very **confusing** for tourists.
Greg was very **disappointed** when they lost the match. Then, the next day, his girlfriend left him, so now he's really **depressed**.
One of our teachers often forgets my name. It was funny at first, but now it's a bit **embarrassing**.

Exercises

36.1 Write one limit adjective with a similar meaning to these scale adjectives. Cover the opposite page before you begin.

1 bad ....awful........
2 small ....
3 tired ....
4 surprised ....
5 interesting ....
6 good ....
7 cold ....
8 big ....
9 hungry ....
10 frightened ....

36.2 Rewrite this postcard using limit adjectives where possible to give a more positive and/or more extreme effect. Make any other changes that are necessary and include *absolutely* once or twice.

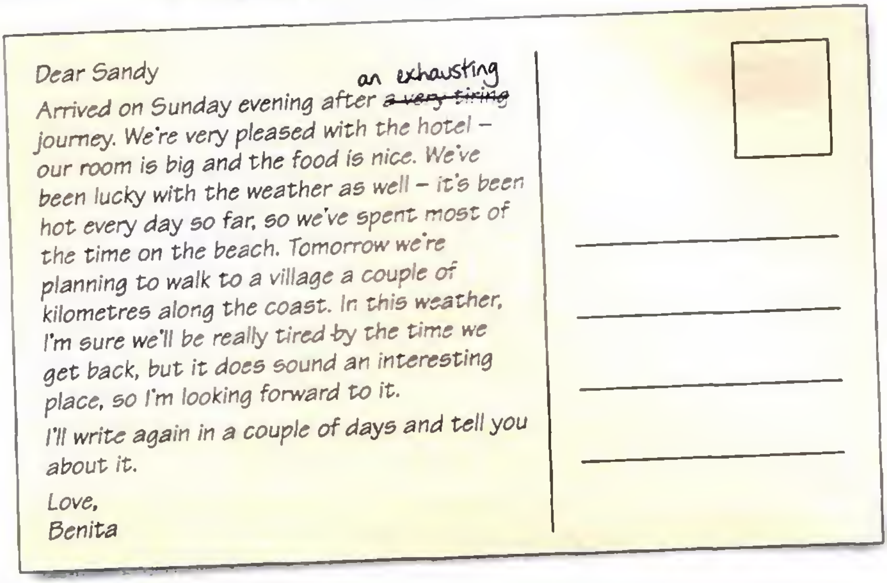

Dear Sandy

Arrived on Sunday evening after ~~a very tiring~~ an exhausting journey. We're very pleased with the hotel – our room is big and the food is nice. We've been lucky with the weather as well – it's been hot every day so far, so we've spent most of the time on the beach. Tomorrow we're planning to walk to a village a couple of kilometres along the coast. In this weather, I'm sure we'll be really tired by the time we get back, but it does sound an interesting place, so I'm looking forward to it.

I'll write again in a couple of days and tell you about it.

Love,
Benita

36.3 Complete the dialogues using a suitable 'limit' adjective in the correct form (*-ing* or *-ed*).

1 A: I was very interested in her talk.
B: Yes, it was absolutely ....fascinating...........
2 A: You weren't frightened, were you?
B: Yes, it was absolutely ....
3 A: It was a surprising decision, wasn't it?
B: Yes, everyone was ....
4 A: Was the journey very tiring?
B: Yes, I was ....
5 A: Are you hungry?
B: Yes, I'm absolutely ....
6 A: I expect you were very pleased with your score.
B: Yes, I was absolutely ....

36.4 Think of an adjective from the opposite page to describe how the people felt in these situations.

1 They walked ten miles, then spent the afternoon cutting down trees. exhausted
2 From the description in the travel brochure, they expected a beautiful big villa by the sea. In actual fact it was quite small, not very nice, and miles from the beach.
3 They wore jeans to the party but when they arrived everyone was wearing very formal clothes.
4 One person told them the street was on the left, another told them to turn right, and a third person said they had to go back to the station.
5 My brother has a flat and it's usually in a terrible mess – he's very untidy. But yesterday when I visited him, the place was incredibly tidy. In fact everything looked new.

37 Prepositions: place

A At, on, in

NOTE
She lives **in Danver Road**.
BUT She lives **at 43 Danver Road**.

at a point/place	I met her at the bus stop. He's at work (i.e. not at home).	She lives at 43 Danver Road. They're at a party tonight.
on a surface	The book's on the desk. They sat on the floor.	We put the picture on the wall. Don't put it on the sofa.
in an area or space	A country in Africa. He's in the kitchen.	She lives in Poland. The key's in the top drawer.

B Opposites

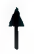
up

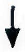
down

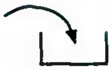
into

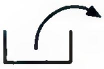
out of

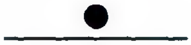
over/above

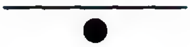
under/below

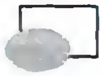
in front of

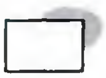
behind

Over/above and **under/below** are very similar in meaning, but **over** and **under** sometimes suggest movement. For example:

When we flew **over** Paris we couldn't see much because we were **above** the clouds. **Below** us was the river which ran **under** the bridge.

C Other common prepositions of place

We drove **along** one side of the lake, then **round** the top shore, **past** the old castle, and finally **through** the village.

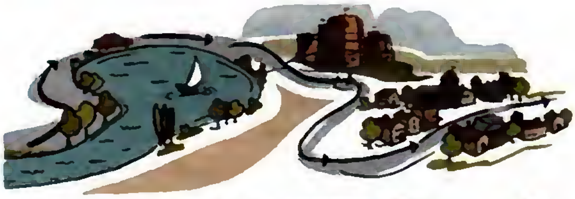

We came **over** the bridge and parked **next to** the house, which was **opposite** the hotel.

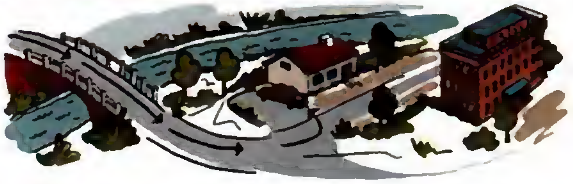

Our house is **between** two shops and it's **near** a bus stop. You just go **across** the road and walk **along** the other side **towards** the church.

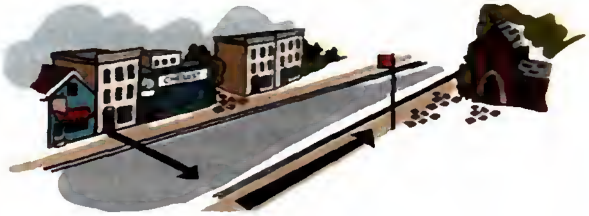

Exercises

37.1 Fill the gaps with *at*, *on* or *in*.

1 I put the books .... the table.
2 The butter is .... the fridge.
3 We saw them .... the bus stop.
4 I met her .... a party.
5 She works .... Moscow.
6 The dictionary is .... my desk.
7 I sat .... the bed and wrote the letter.
8 I left my books .... school.
9 There was still a lot of snow .... the ground when I arrived.
10 He lives .... a very nice area.

37.2 Complete these dialogues using the opposite preposition.

1 Was he standing in front of you?
No, behind me...........
2 Is it up the hill to his house?
No, it's ....
3 Did you climb over the fence?
No, we got ....
4 Did you see her get into the car?
No, but I saw her get ....
5 Does she live in the flat above you?
No, she's ....

37.3 Look at this picture and complete the description of the route you took on the first day.

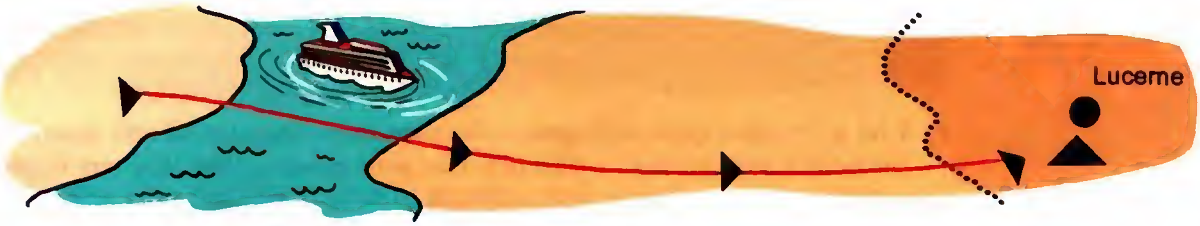

We took the boat (1) .... the channel, then we drove (2) .... France and (3) .... Switzerland, where we spent the first night (4) .... a small town quite (5) .... Lucerne.

Now look at this picture and complete the description of the second day.

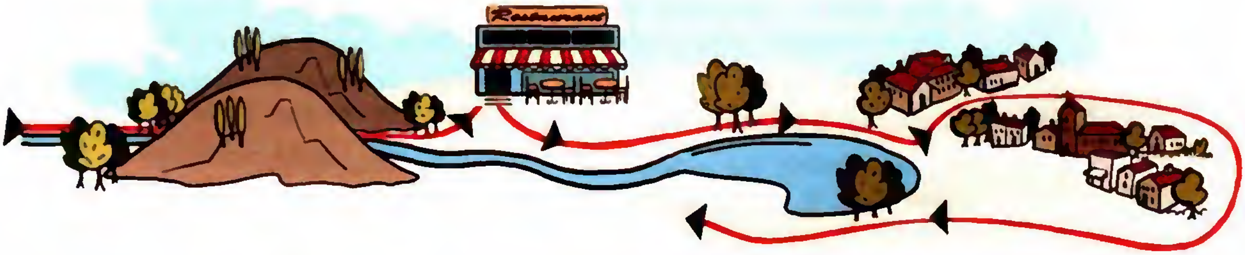

The next morning we walked (6) .... a river which ran (7) .... two mountains. We had lunch (8) .... a small restaurant and then walked (9) .... the small town of Stans before heading back.

38 Adverbs: frequency and degree

A Frequency (= how often)

always	often frequently	quite often	sometimes	occasionally	seldom *(fml)* hardly ever rarely	never

- Adverbs of frequency usually go before the main verb, but not if the main verb is 'to be':
  I occasionally see them.
  They **hardly ever** go to the cinema now.
  She is often late these days.
  I've **never** tried Korean food.
- **Sometimes, occasionally** and **often** can go at the beginning or end of the sentence:
  They go to the zoo **quite often**.
  I play tennis **occasionally**.
  Sometimes my parents give me money.
  Occasionally I work at the weekend.

B Degree (= how much)

These adverbs are used with adjectives. They are more common in spoken English. Each group has a similar meaning, but read the notes below carefully.

I was	**a bit** bored	It's	**quite** large	They were	**very** interesting
	slightly		**fairly**		**extremely**
			rather		**incredibly**
			pretty		**really**

- **A bit** = less than **quite**, and **quite** = less than **very**. They are all very common.
  The book's a **bit** boring. The film was **quite** good. She tells **very** funny stories.
- **A bit, pretty** and **really** are *informal* and much more common in spoken English. **A bit** is mostly used before negative adjectives or adjectives with a negative prefix.
  The food was **pretty** good.
  This watch must be **really** expensive.
  The hotel was **a bit** disappointing.
  The explanation was **a bit** unnecessary.
- **Rather** is like 'quite' and 'fairly', but we often use it when something is a surprise.
  Her cooking is **rather** good actually. (= better than I thought and a very nice surprise)
  People don't usually like factories, but I think they're **rather** interesting places.
- **Incredibly** and **extremely** are stronger than 'very'.
  We're **extremely** busy at the moment. I was **incredibly** tired at the end.

C Almost/nearly

It's **almost/nearly** five o'clock. (= it is probably about 4.57)
I **almost/nearly** lost the match. (= I won but only just; only by a small amount)

D Hardly

I **hardly** had anything to eat for lunch. (= I had almost nothing)
She could **hardly** walk after her operation. (= it was difficult for her to walk)

Exercises

38.1 Organise these mixed-up words into correct sentences.

1 brother often us Sundays visits on my
2 me ever phones she hardly
3 have leg my broken never I
4 summer ever saw I hardly him the during
5 get occasionally I early up
6 lose often I glasses quite my

38.2 Replace the underlined adverb with a different adverb that has the same meaning.

1 She seldom goes to conferences now.
2 The cinema was fairly full.
3 There were almost 50 people there, you know.
4 I thought it was a bit disappointing, didn't you?
5 I'm afraid I'm extremely busy next week.
6 We frequently ask them to turn their music down.

38.3 Respond to these sentences using 'rather' to show a positive surprise. (You can also add 'actually' at the end of the sentence; this is very common in spoken English.)

1 A: Was it a boring evening?
B: No, it was rather interesting, actually.
2 A: Were the children very noisy?
B: No, they ……………………………………
3 A: I've heard it's a very dirty town. Is that true?
B: No, it ……………………………………
4 A: Was the weather bad?
B: No, it ……………………………………

38.4 Change the underlined adverbs to make these sentences more positive.

1 I thought they were very good. I thought they were incredibly good.
2 He's been getting quite good marks in his exams.
3 It's a pretty nice house.

Change these adverbs to make them less negative.

4 John said the flat was very small.
5 They said it was fairly boring.
6 The clothes were very expensive.

38.5 Put a frequency adverb into each of these sentences to make a true sentence about yourself. Make sure you put the adverb in the correct place.

1 I buy clothes I don't like.
2 I remember my dreams.
3 I give money to people in the street.
4 I clean my shoes.
5 I speak to strangers on buses and trains.
6 I lose things.

Now think about each of your answers to the above sentences. Do you think they are:
a fairly typical? b slightly unusual? c extremely unusual?

If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

39 Time and sequence

A When/as soon as

I'll phone my uncle **when** I get home.
As soon as I get home I'll phone my uncle.
When you've finished this exercise you can go home.
You can go home **as soon as** you've finished this exercise.

The meaning is the same, but **as soon as** suggests it is more immediate. **When** and **as soon as** can be followed by the present tense or the present perfect [but not *will*].

B Two things happening at the same time

Pat got ready **while** I cooked the dinner. [Two actions that need similar periods of time.]
The accident happened **while** I was on my way to work. [A longer action 'on my way to work' and a shorter action 'the accident'. We can also use **when** or **as** here.]
I saw him **(just) as** I came out of the office. [For two short actions happening at the same time we use **as**, and we can add **just** for emphasis, e.g. He opened the door **just as** I rang the bell.]

C One thing after another

We met the others in the café, and **then/afterwards** we went to the match.
I finished my homework, and **after that/afterwards** I played some computer games.
After my visit to New York, I decided to have a rest.
We had something to eat **before** we went out.

We can also follow **before** and **after** with an *-ing* form:

After visiting New York, I ...　　We had something to eat before going out.

D A sequence of actions

We had a great holiday. **First of all** we stayed in St Moritz. **Then/After that** we drove down the coast for a few days. **Finally**, we went back to Switzerland to visit friends.

- We can use **afterwards** instead of 'after that', and especially if one thing happens soon after another, e.g. We had a couple of drinks, then **afterwards** we went back to the flat.
- If something happens after a lot of time or problems, you can use **eventually** or **in the end**, in place of **finally**, e.g. The weather was bad and the traffic was awful, but **eventually** we got there.

E A sequence of reasons

There are different combinations of words and phrases we can use here:

WORKER: Why can't we buy the new photocopiers now?
MANAGER: **First(ly)** we haven't got enough money. **Second(ly)** the new models are not available yet. And **third(ly)** the ones we have will be OK for at least six months.

- In spoken English we can start with **for one thing**, followed by **and for another (thing)**.
  A: What's wrong with that washing machine?
  B: Well, **for one thing** it's too big to go in the space. **And for another**, it's very noisy.
- For a second or final reason, we also use **anyway** in spoken English.
  We can't go to that club because it's too far. **Anyway**, I'm not a member.

Exercises

39.1 Underline the correct word(s) in brackets. Sometimes both answers are correct.

1 We can have lunch (when/as soon as) we've finished this.
2 I'll give them your message as soon as I (get/will get) there.
3 Maria cleaned the kitchen (as/while) I did the bathroom.
4 We must go to that gallery before (leave/leaving).
5 I had problems at the shop but (eventually/finally) they gave me back my money.
6 The phone rang (while/just as) I was shutting the front door.
7 The letter arrived (while/just as) we were having lunch.
8 We spent the morning in the park and (after that/afterwards) we went home for lunch.

39.2 Complete these sentences in a suitable way.

1 I'll give you the answers when you've finished. ....
2 We had a game of squash and afterwards ....
3 I'll meet you as soon as ....
4 I must remember to lock the back door before ....
5 He thinks he dropped the letter as ....
6 I worked with a partner. I looked up half of the words while ....
7 We had to wait for hours but eventually ....
8 If we phone his home, he probably won't be there. Anyway, ...
9 I saw him break the window just as ....
10 I knew she was angry as soon as ....

39.3 Add a final sentence (starting with a suitable link word or phrase) to each of these dialogues.

1 A: Why do you want to stay in this evening when we could go to Karl's party?
B: Well, for one thing because my ex-boyfriend will be there and I really don't want to see him. And ....
2 A: What did you do?
B: First of all we spent a few days in Paris. After that we took the train down to Marseilles and stayed with friends. ....
....
3 A: Why can't we send one of our staff to the conference?
B: Firstly, I don't think that the company should send anyone to the conference.
....

39.4 You spent a weekend at a hotel and had these problems:

- There was very little variety in the food.
- The service was very slow.
- When you mentioned this to the staff, they were very rude.

The manager was on holiday during your stay, so you have decided to send a letter of complaint. Write the next part of this letter and then look at the model answer for the whole letter on page 219.

Dear Sir,
I have just returned from a weekend break at The Royal Hotel, and I'm afraid it was not a very enjoyable stay. Firstly, …

40

Addition and contrast

A Also, as well, in addition

NOTE

In addition and **what's more** are more common in written English.

You can link two ideas in one sentence using **and**, e.g.The food is excellent and very good value. When we put this information in two sentences, we can use these link words.

The restaurant has excellent food. It's **also** very good value.
The food is excellent in that restaurant. It's very good value **as well** (or **too**).
You get very good food in that restaurant. **What's more**, it's open every day of the week.
The set menu is £15, which is excellent value. **In addition**, they give you a free glass of wine.

B Although, despite, in spite of

NOTE

It is common to include **still** for emphasis in these sentence contrasts.

When you contrast two ideas in one sentence, and the second idea is surprising or unexpected after the first, you can use these link words at the beginning or in the middle of the sentence.

She still won the game, **although/though** she had a bad knee.
Although/though some people were getting tired, we decided to carry on for a bit longer.

They went for a walk **despite the fact that** it was raining.
Despite having no money, he still seemed very happy.
They got there on time **in spite of** the delay.
In spite of all the problems, we still enjoyed the trip.

Despite/in spite of can be followed by a noun, an *-ing* form, or a clause beginning **the fact that** ...; **although** is only followed by a clause, e.g. Although she had ...

C However

But contrasts two ideas in one sentence; **however** contrasts two ideas in two sentences. **Though** can be used in a similar way in spoken English, but it comes at the end of the clause.

I don't agree with a lot of his methods. **However**, he is a good teacher.
We didn't like the town that much. **However**, the hotel was wonderful.
I didn't like the film at all. It was better than sitting at home, **though**.
They told us the shop was next to the station. We never found it, **though**.

D Whereas, however

Whereas and **however** can contrast a fact or opinion about one person, place or thing, with something different about other people, places or things. The second fact is a contrast but not always a surprise. Notice that **whereas** contrasts two ideas in a single sentence.

Sarah is careful **whereas** Christopher makes lots of mistakes.
The south is hot and dry **whereas** the north gets a lot of rain.
Most big cats such as tigers like to live alone. Lions, **however**, spend a lot of time in groups.
Marcel said it was very interesting. **However**, most of them thought it was a fairly stupid film.

Exercises

40.1 Organise these words into two groups: words that link ideas with a similar meaning, and words that show a contrast between ideas.

although
however
in addition
also
whereas
what's more
as well
despite

40.2 Underline the correct word(s) in brackets. Both answers may be correct.

1 (Although/In spite of) we left late, we still got there in time.
2 It was a fantastic evening (although/in spite of) the terrible food.
3 We have decided to go (in spite of/despite) the cost of the tickets.
4 They enjoyed the course, (although/whereas) it was very difficult.
5 I love the sea (what's more/whereas) most of my friends prefer the mountains.
6 We've found a lovely villa near the lake. (In addition/What's more) it has its own swimming pool, and we have free use of the owner's car.
7 We told John the car was too expensive. (However/Although), he still bought it.
8 Most people tried to help us. They were very friendly (too/as well).
9 It's busy during the week. At the weekend, (however/whereas), it's very quiet.
10 My uncle owns the factory opposite. He (also/however) runs the restaurant next door.

40.3 Combine parts from each column to form five short texts.

A	B	C
He went to school today	although	it's not really what he wants.
He always worked hard at school	in spite of	he's the most experienced.
He's got the right qualifications.	However,	the help I gave him.
He didn't pass the exam	whereas	he didn't feel very well.
He decided to take the job.	What's more,	most of his classmates were lazy.

40.4 Fill the gaps with a suitable link word or phrase.

1 .... the fact that they were busy, they still helped us.
2 It took me two hours to do it .... the others finished in half an hour.
3 People say the hotel is very good. ...., it's quite cheap.
4 People say the hotel is terrible. ...., it's quite cheap.
5 She managed to get there, ... she didn't have a map like the others.
6 It's not the best dictionary you can buy. .... , it's better than nothing.
7 She's the youngest in the group, and she's better than most of them ....
8 I think you can do it. It won't be easy, ...
9 Mike is always here on time .... his brother is late at least twice a week.
10 The food's not as good as it was. .... , they've put their prices up.

40.5 Complete these sentences in a logical way.

1 I understood what she was saying although ....
2 I was able to follow what she was saying whereas ....
3 We enjoyed the holiday in spite of ....
4 If you buy a season ticket, you can go when you like. What's more, ...
5 The exam was very difficult. However, ...
6 Although it's a long film, ...

41 Similarities, differences, comparisons, exceptions

A Similarities

These are ways of saying that two or more things are similar, or have something the same.

Peter is **like** his brother/**similar to** his brother in many ways. (= they are the same in many ways)
Tom and Mark are very **similar**.
We have **similar** taste in music/art/etc. (= we like the same music/art/etc.)
There is a **similarity** between them.
Maria and Rebecca **both** passed their exams. (= Maria passed and Rebecca passed)
But **neither** wants to go to university. (= Maria doesn't want to go and Rebecca doesn't want to go)
I really like my cousin, and we **have a lot in common**. (= we have many of the same interests)

B Differences

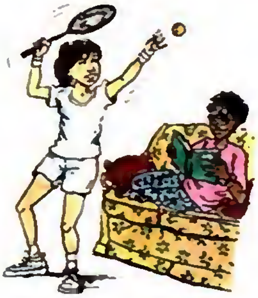

His early films are very **different from** his later ones.
The two brothers are completely **different**. (= different in every way)
Paula is quite **unlike** (= completely different from) her sister.
They **have nothing in common**. (= they have no hobbies, interests or beliefs that are the same)

C Comparisons

When we **compare** two or more things, we study them to see how they are similar or different.

We want to **compare** the prices before we decide which one to buy.
If you **compare** this one **with** the others, I'm sure you'll see a difference.
House prices in the north are very low **in comparison with** London and the south.
Our new flat is very big **compared with/to** our old one. (= if you compare it with/to our old one)

D Exceptions

An 'exception' is when we make a general statement about things or people and then say that one thing or person is not included, or is different from the others.

It snowed everywhere **except** (= but not) the west coast.

The museum is open every day **except/apart from** Sunday(s).
Everyone heard the fire alarm **except/apart from** the two boys in room 7.
We all agreed it was a good idea **with the exception of** George – but he always disagrees.

'Except' and 'apart from' have a similar meaning, but 'except' is more common. 'Except' can also be followed by 'for'.

Except for a few tourists, the streets were empty.

Exercises

41.1 Fill the gaps with the correct preposition(s).

1 He's similar .... my brother.
2 She's different .... the others.
3 It's cheap compared .... the others.
4 They have a lot .... common.
5 There is a similarity .... them.
6 Everyone came apart .... Sean.
7 We all agreed .... the exception .... Pat.
8 It's nice .... comparison .... the other one.

41.2 Read the information, then complete the sentences below with a word or phrase.

MICHEL
is 21 and lives with his parents. He works in a shoe shop. He is shy, works hard, and is good at sport. He would like to become manager of a sports shop.

PHILIPPE
is 22 and lives alone. He is at university. He is clever but lazy, and spends most of his time at parties. He has no plans for the future.

PAUL
is 20 and lives with his parents. He works in a bank and one day he wants to be manager. He's good at football.

1 Michel and Paul are very ...similar...................
2 Philippe is quite .... the other two.
3 Paul and Michel have a lot ....
4 Paul and Philippe have almost nothing ....
5 Paul and Michel both ....
6 Neither of them ....

41.3 Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right.

1 She's like the others.
She's ...similar to the others................... SIMILAR
2 Manuela is quite unlike her brother.
Manuela is completely .... DIFFERENT
3 When you see their houses, you realise that our house is very small.
Our house is very small .... COMPARED
4 In her class, Carla was the only one who didn't pass the exam.
Everyone .... EXCEPT
5 The two girls have completely different interests.
The two girls have .... COMMON
6 It's free every day except Saturday.
It's free .... APART
7 Everyone liked it except William.
Everyone liked it .... EXCEPTION
8 We like the same sorts of clothes.
We .... SIMILAR

41.4 Complete these sentences about yourself and your country.

1 In my family, I think I am quite similar to ....
2 I am .... compared with the rest of my family.
3 In comparison with Britain, my country is ....
4 I think Britain is very different from my country because ....

42 Reason, purpose, result, condition

A Reason

I went home early **because/as** I was feeling a bit tired.
As I was feeling tired, I went home early. [We don't usually start a sentence with 'because'.]
I was feeling a bit tired, **so** I went home early. [This is very common in spoken English.]
The reason I went home early **was that** I was feeling tired.

We can also use **because of**, but with a different construction. Compare:
They go there **because** the weather is wonderful. [because + noun + verb]
They go there **because of** the wonderful weather. [because of + (adjective) + noun]

Due to means the same as **because of**, and is often used to explain the reason for a problem:

The plane was late **due to** bad weather. [**Due to** is often used after the verb 'to be'.]

B Purpose

A 'purpose' is an intention or reason for doing something:

The purpose of the meeting is to plan the timetable. (= the reason for the meeting is ...)

We often introduce a purpose using **so (that)** or **in order to**:
I bought this book **so (that)** I can improve my English.
They went home early **(in order) to** watch the match on television.
We moved house **so (that)** we could send our children to this school.
She went into town **(in order) to** do some shopping.

In spoken English, we often say **so** (without **that**) and **to** (without **in order**).
It is also common to use a modal verb, e.g. *can* or *could*, after **so that**.

C Result

I left my ticket at home, **so** I had to buy another one.
They are a very big team and **therefore** they can get the best players.
I forgot to send the letters. **As a result**, no one knew about the meeting.

So is very common in spoken English, and usually links ideas in a single sentence.
Therefore is more formal, and can be used in a single sentence or to connect two sentences.
As a result is more common in written English, and usually connects ideas in two sentences.

D Condition

You probably know **if**, but we also use other words to express conditions. Notice the tenses used.

We'll be late **unless** we leave now. (= if we don't leave now)
Unless the weather improves (= if the weather doesn't improve), we won't be able to go.

I have to go now, **otherwise** (= because if I don't) I'll miss the last bus.
You'll have to turn up the music, **otherwise** (= because if you don't) they won't be able to hear it.

You can borrow it **as long as** you bring it back by Thursday. (= but you must bring it back)
You can wear what you like **as long as** you look smart. (= but you must look smart)

Exercises

42.1 Combine the two sentences into one sentence using 'so', 'so that' or 'because'. More than one answer is possible in some sentences.

1 I didn't phone you. It was very late. I didn't phone you because it was very late.
2 I turned up the radio in the lounge. I could hear it in the kitchen.
3 The restaurant was full. We went to the bar next door.
4 I stayed at home. I was expecting a phone call.
5 It's a very large city. You have to use public transport a lot.
6 I learned to drive. My mother didn't have to take me everywhere.

42.2 Rewrite these sentences using 'because of'. Make any changes that are necessary.

1 He couldn't play because his arm was broken. He couldn't play because of his broken arm.
2 She got the job because her qualifications are excellent.
3 The weather was terrible, so we couldn't eat outside.
4 She didn't go to school because she had a bad cold.
5 The light was very bad, so the referee had to stop the game.
6 The traffic was very heavy; I was half an hour late.

42.3 Fill the gaps with 'unless', 'otherwise' or 'as long as'.

1 I must write that letter now, ... I'll forget to do it.
2 I can meet you for dinner on Friday .... I have to work late at the office.
3 We agreed to buy my daughter a dog .... she takes it for a walk every day.
4 .... there's a problem, I won't disturb you.
5 You can borrow my dictionary .... you bring it back on Monday.
6 You'd better tidy your room, ... your mother will get very angry.

42.4 Read this memo from a manager to the staff. Fill each gap with a suitable link word/phrase.

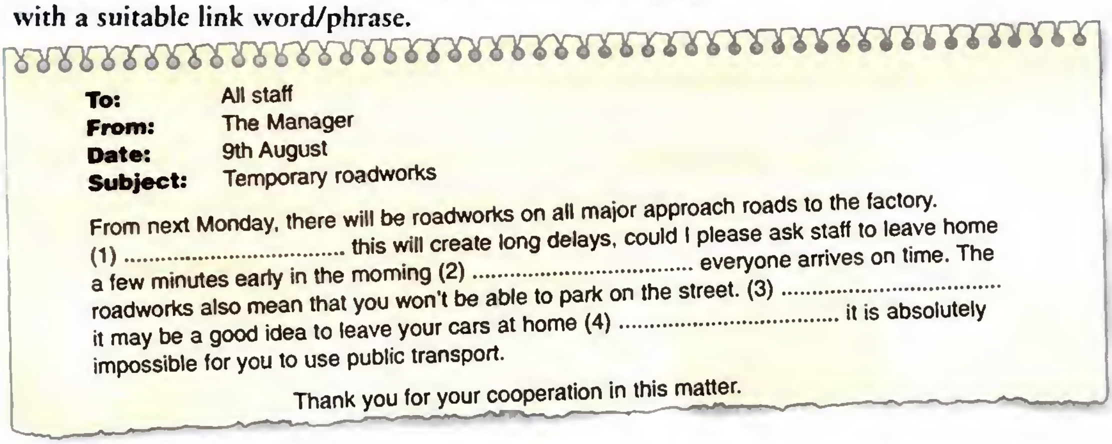

To: All staff
From: The Manager
Date: 9th August
Subject: Temporary roadworks

From next Monday, there will be roadworks on all major approach roads to the factory. (1) .... this will create long delays, could I please ask staff to leave home a few minutes early in the morning (2) .... everyone arrives on time. The roadworks also mean that you won't be able to park on the street. (3) .... it may be a good idea to leave your cars at home (4) .... it is absolutely impossible for you to use public transport.

Thank you for your cooperation in this matter.

42.5 These sentences are all about learning English. Complete them in a logical way.

1 I want to improve my English because ....
2 I bought myself a personal stereo so that I ....
3 I usually study English at the weekend as I ....
4 I always write words down in my notebook, otherwise I ....
5 I don't get many opportunities to practise my English, and therefore ....
6 My brother has got a number of American friends. As a result, ...

43 The physical world

A The world and parts of the solar system

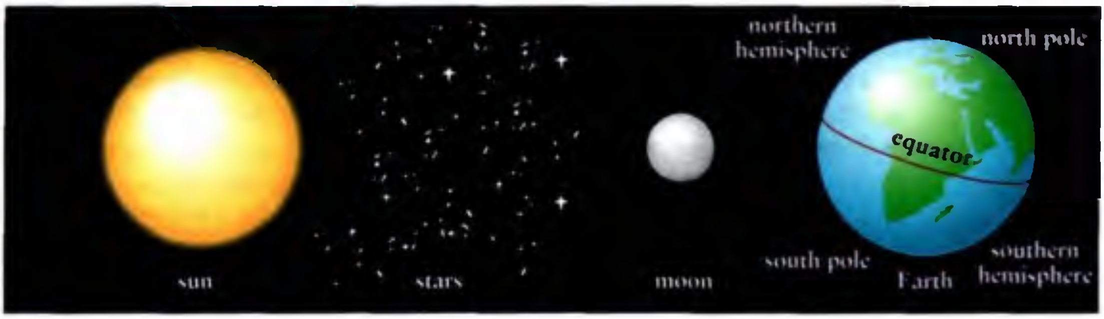

Why do people want to go into **space**? (= the area outside the earth where the stars and planets are)

I'd love to travel **round the world**.

You find oil **in many parts of the world**.

It's the coldest place **on earth**.

The hottest place **in the world**. (NOT ~~of~~ the world)

There's a five-hour **time difference between** Britain and New York.

Rio de Janeiro is only three hours **behind** London.

They're nine hours **ahead of** us in Sydney.

B Physical features

I travelled through the **continent** of Asia.
China is an enormous **country**.
We flew over the Atlantic **Ocean**.
We've got a small house near **Lake** Como.
The Nile is the longest **river** in Africa.
We went diving in the Red **Sea**.
We travelled into the Sahara **Desert**.
Parts of the Amazon **rainforest** are disappearing.

Few people have **climbed Mount** Everest.
Elba is an **island** just **off the coast of** Italy.

Elba
ITALY
Rome

NOTE
Sometimes we need the definite article *the*, e.g. **the Red Sea**; sometimes no article is used, e.g. Mount Everest.

C Natural disasters

A **disaster** is when something terrible happens. There is physical damage and people often die.

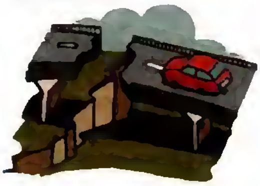

earthquake

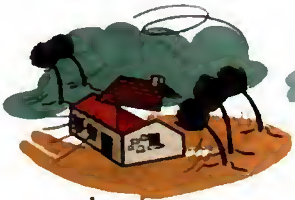

hurricane

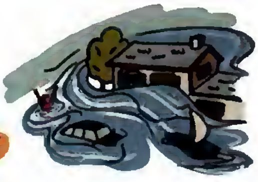

flood

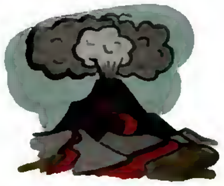

volcano/volcanic eruption

The **earthquake destroyed** many homes. (= many homes are so badly damaged, they don't exist)

They say the **hurricane** could **hit** Florida today. (= reach Florida today with great force)

The **floods** have been terrible – hundreds of people have **drowned**. (= died from being under water)

There are many **active volcanoes** in the world, such as Mount Etna.

Exercises

43.1 Fill the gaps with the correct word.

1 Would you like to go round the ....world.................. if you had the chance?
2 Neil Armstrong was the first man to walk on the ....
3 On a clear night you can see lots of ....
4 Australia is in the .... hemisphere.
5 If you think of time, is your country .... Britain or .... of Britain?
6 Is China the largest country .... the world?

43.2 Complete the sentences.

1 The Nile is a ...river...
2 The Atlantic is ....
3 Greece is ....
4 The Sahara is ....
5 The Amazon is ....
6 The Mediterranean is ....
7 Africa is ....
8 Crete and Corsica are ....
9 Everest is the highest ....
10 Michigan and Eyrie are two of the Great ....

43.3 Fill the gaps in the text with the definite article (*the*) if necessary.

My journey took me across (1) .... Atlantic Ocean from (2) .... Europe to (3) .... South America. I travelled through (4) .... Amazon rainforest and down through the interior of (5) .... Brazil. From there I headed north again, through Bolivia, round (6) .... Lake Titicaca and up to Cuzco. Then I crossed (7) .... Andes and finally arrived in Lima. For the last part of the journey I flew to (8) .... Jamaica in (9) .... West Indies.

43.4 What type of disaster is being described in each of these sentences?

1 It lifted a car off the ground, and then we saw it disappear down the street.
2 It was about two metres deep and we watched as our furniture just floated away.
3 The walls began to move visibly, and large cracks opened up in the ground.
4 The heat was incredible and we watched as the red hot lava came down the mountain.

43.5 Complete the sentences below using the correct form of the verbs in the box.

destroy hit dive drown climb fly

1 Two children .... in the floods when their boat capsized.
2 The earthquake .... the village – there is nothing left.
3 It's a fantastic place to go .... because the water is so clear.
4 The plane .... over the Alps on the way back from Geneva.
5 They say the hurricane may .... the islands later today.
6 They're going to .... the south face of the mountain.

44 Weather

A Weather conditions

Notice that it is very common to form adjectives by adding '-y'.

noun	*adjective*	*noun*	*adjective*
sun	sunny	wind	windy
cloud	cloudy	ice	icy
fog	foggy	shower	showery
heat	hot	humidity	humid

It was very **cloudy** in the morning, but then the **sun came out** (= appeared) in the afternoon.
The accident happened in **thick fog** (= bad fog) on the motorway.

B Rain

For **light rain** (= raining a bit) we can use **drizzle**, e.g. It was cloudy with a bit of **drizzle**.
For **heavy rain** (= raining a lot) we often use **pour**, e.g. It's **pouring (with rain)** outside.
Rain for a short period of time is a **shower**, e.g. We had several **showers** today – some quite heavy.

C Temperature

thermometer

boiling	hot	warm	not very warm	cold	freezing
(= very hot)				(also chilly)	(= very cold)

A: How hot does it get in the summer?
B: It can reach about 35°. (= 35 **degrees**)
A: How cold does it get in the winter?
B: It often goes **below 0**. (= **zero**)

D Wind

a breeze	a wind	a strong wind	a gale	a hurricane

A **breeze** is gentle and pleasant; a **hurricane** is over 100 km per hour and can be dangerous.

It was a hot day but there was a **gentle breeze**.
The trees were **damaged** in the **gale** last night.
Her hair was **blowing** in the **wind**.
The **hurricane destroyed** many buildings.

E Thunderstorms

A period of very hot weather is sometimes called a **heatwave**, and it often ends with a **thunderstorm**. First it becomes very **humid** (= when the air feels wet), then you get **thunder** and **lightning**, and finally very **heavy** rain. Afterwards, it is often cooler and feels fresher.

Exercises

44.1 Identify the weather conditions in these pictures.

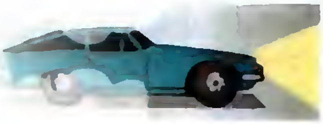

1 ....

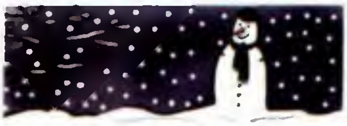

2 ....

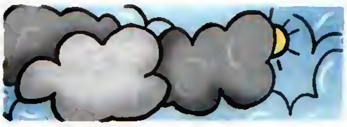

3 ....

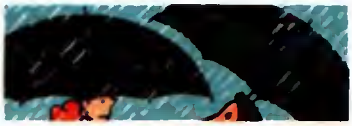

4 ....

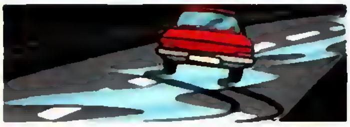

5 ....

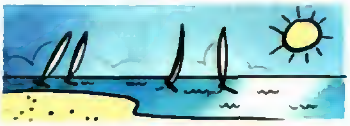

6 ....

44.2 Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

1 We had really thick .... this morning.
2 When it's hot, you still get a lovely .... off the sea.
3 I hope we don't get any more thunder and ....
4 We had a heavy .... of rain this morning, but it only lasted a few minutes.
5 The hurricane completely .... the village. There's nothing left.
6 It's quite hot when the sun .... out.
7 What's the .... today? It feels much colder than yesterday.
8 They said it was ten degrees below .... in New York yesterday. That's too cold for me.

44.3 True or False? (If a sentence is false, change it to make it true.)

1 When it's foggy you need sunglasses. False (When it's foggy you can't see very well.)
2 It gets quite chilly in the desert in the evening.
3 Thunder makes a noise.
4 Lightning can kill people.
5 A shower is a type of wind.
6 If it is humid, the air will be very dry.
7 Heavy rain means that it is pouring with rain.
8 It often pours with rain in the desert.

44.4 Complete this text with suitable words.

An important influence on Japanese weather is the wind. During the summer it (1) .... from the Pacific, causing (2) .... and humid weather, but in winter, the north-westerly (3) .... from Siberia are very cold and it (4) .... heavily on the mountains in the north-west. The south-eastern parts receive cold dry air. Between June and mid-July, there is a period of very wet weather when the rice fields get the water they need. After that, there is less heavy rain, but the air is still (5) .... Autumn, however, is drier and usually very pleasant.

Write a paragraph about the weather in your own country, or a specific part of your country, e.g. your own region. Try to use as many words as possible from the opposite page.

45 Animals and insects

A Pets and farm animals

NOTE

The word 'sheep' is the singular and plural form. A young sheep is called a **lamb**.

Many people keep **pets** (= own and look after domestic animals that live with people) in Britain.
The most common are dogs and cats, but people also keep **mice** (singular = a **mouse**), rabbits and goldfish.

Farm animals include: sheep, pigs, cows, horses, chickens and goats.

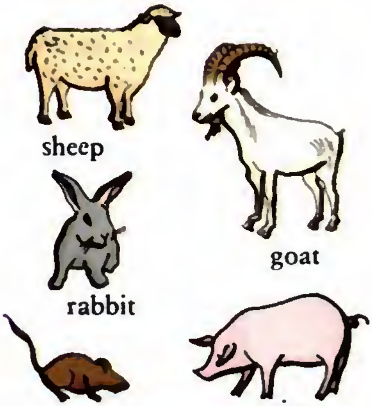
sheep
goat
rabbit
mouse
pig

B Wild animals

You will find these animals in a zoo or **in the wild**. (= living free, e.g. in parts of Africa)

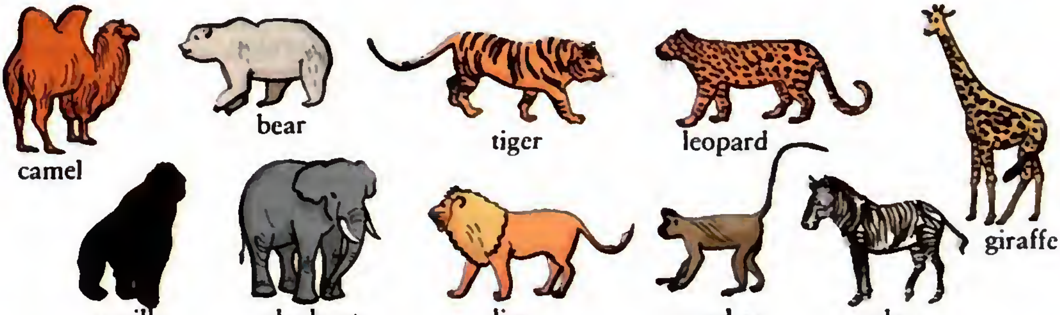
camel
bear
tiger
leopard
giraffe
gorilla
elephant
lion
monkey
zebra

Some animals that live in the wild are in **danger of extinction** (= they may not exist much longer), so it is important that we **protect** them. (= make sure they stay safe)

C Insects

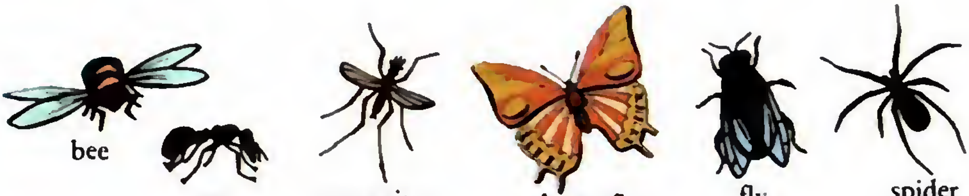
bee
ant
mosquito
butterfly
fly
spider

D In the water, in the air and on the ground

Here are some **creatures** (= living things, e.g. animals and birds) that swim, fly or move along the ground (e.g. a snake).

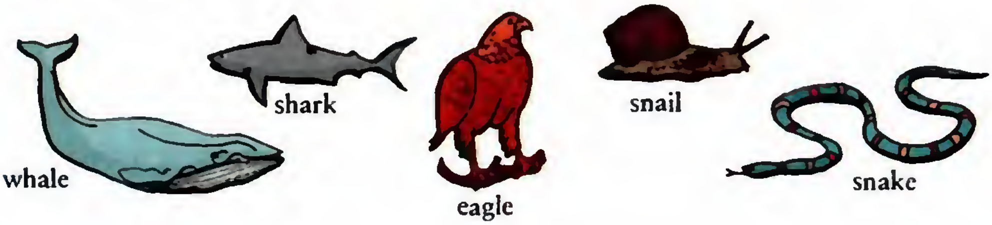
whale
shark
eagle
snail
snake

Exercises

45.1 Look at the underlined letters in each pair of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Use the pronunciation guide in the Index to help you.

Examples whale water (different)
cat camel (same)

1 lion tiger
2 leopard mosquito
3 bear eagle
4 gorilla giraffe
5 spider wild
6 monkey mosquito
7 camel snake
8 leopard shark
9 monkey butterfly
10 mouse cow

45.2 Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

1 I've only ever seen .... animals on television, or in a zoo.
2 Some animals are in .... of extinction.
3 I don't just hate spiders and mosquitoes – I hate all ....
4 We used to .... animals on our farm.
5 Snakes can move along the .... really fast if they want.
6 Some animals are disappearing – it's very important that we .... them, so they continue to exist.

45.3 Arrange these words into three groups: farm animals, wild animals, and insects.

monkey
lion
mosquito
camel
horse
zebra
tiger
ant
goat
elephant
bee
leopard
fly
pig
sheep
bear

45.4 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

1 They've got lots of pets: two dogs, four cats, and a ....
2 Their farm animals include cows, sheep and ....
3 The children love to see the 'big cats' at the zoo such as lions, tigers and ....
4 I hate most insects, but particularly mosquitoes and ....
5 We saw some really large animals at the safari park: elephants, giraffes and ....

45.5 Start each sentence with a suitable creature from the opposite page.

1 ....Eagles.................... can fly at a great height.
2 .... can swim very long distances.
3 .... can understand lots of human commands.
4 .... can run very fast.
5 .... can travel through the desert for long distances without water.
6 .... can be 30 metres in length.
7 .... can eat leaves from tall trees.
8 .... change their skin several times a year.
9 .... can pick things up with their trunk.
10 .... provide us with wool.

46 Countries, nationality and language

A Who speaks what where?

country	*nationality*	*language*
Argentina	Argentinian	Spanish
Brazil	Brazilian	Portuguese
Britain	British	English
China	Chinese	Mandarin (also Cantonese)
Egypt	Egyptian	Arabic
France	French	French
Germany	German	German
Greece	Greek	Greek
Israel	Israeli	Hebrew
Italy	Italian	Italian
Japan	Japanese	Japanese
Korea	Korean	Korean
Mexico	Mexican	Spanish
Poland	Polish	Polish
Russia	Russian	Russian
Saudi Arabia	Saudi Arabian	Arabic
Spain	Spanish	Spanish
Switzerland	Swiss	Swiss-German, French, Italian
The United States (USA)	American	English
Turkey	Turkish	Turkish

I come from Argentina, so I am **Argentinian** and my **first language** is Spanish. The **capital** is Buenos Aires, which has a **population** of more than 10 million people.

B Regions

There are some names for regions of the world that we often use.

Europe (e.g. Britain, Spain, etc.)
the Far East (e.g. China, Japan, etc.)
the Caribbean (e.g. Jamaica, Trinidad, etc.)
the Mediterranean (e.g. Italy, Spain, etc.)
the Middle East (e.g. Egypt, Iran, etc.)
South/Latin America (e.g. Brazil, Chile, etc.)

C The people

When we are talking about people from a particular country, nationalities ending in '-i' or '-(i)an' can be made plural with an 's', but most others are formed with the definite article (and no 's').

(The) Thais/Israelis
Brazilians/Russians } are ...

The British
The French } are ...

D Talking about people in general

These are common ways of talking about people 'in general'.

The British are generally ...
Russians tend to be very ...
I think most French people are ...
In general, Polish people are quite ...

Exercises

46.1 **Answer these questions without looking at the opposite page.**

1 Write down three countries whose first language is English.
2 What language is spoken in Brazil?
3 Write down three languages spoken in Switzerland.
4 What language is spoken in Saudi Arabia?
5 What nationality are people from Poland?
6 What language is spoken in Mexico?
7 Where do people speak Hebrew?
8 Where do people speak Mandarin?

46.2 **What regions of the world are these countries in?**

1 Germany *Europe*
2 Saudi Arabia
3 Jamaica
4 Corsica and Sardinia
5 Japan
6 Argentina

46.3 **Underline the main stress on the words in the box, and practise saying them.**

Brazilian
Arabic
Chinese
Japan
Italian
Germany
Japanese
Austria
Saudi Arabia
Egyptian
Korea
Egypt

46.4 **Complete these sentences with the name of the people from the country on the right.**

Examples I've worked a lot with Germans/German people. GERMANY
I've spent lots of time with the French/French people. FRANCE

1 We do a lot of business with .... JAPAN
2 I used to know a lot of .... ISRAEL
3 I have always found .... very friendly. BRAZIL
4 People often say that .... are reserved. BRITAIN
5 .... are very organised. SWITZERLAND
6 I met a lot of .... on my trip to Moscow. RUSSIA

46.5 **Complete these sentences.**

1 Athens is the capital of ....
2 Ankara is the capital of ....
3 Seoul is the capital of ....
4 Moscow is the capital of ....
5 Warsaw is the capital of ....
6 Madrid is the capital of ....

46.6 **Answer these questions about yourself. If possible, ask somebody from a different country.**

1 Where do you come from?
2 What's the total population?
3 What's your first language?
4 What's the capital city?

46.7 **Write this sentence in three more different ways to make it more of a generalisation.**

'British people are polite.' I think most British people are polite.

47

The body and what it can do

A Parts of the body

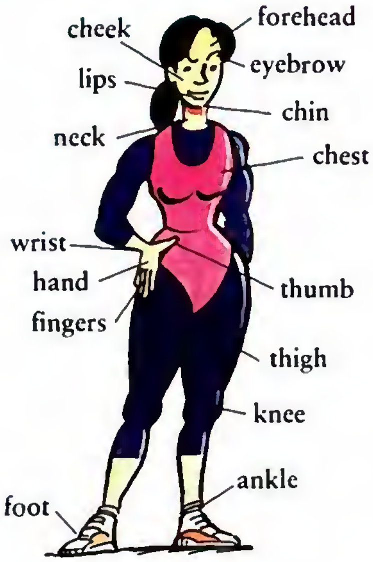
cheek
forehead
lips
eyebrow
chin
neck
chest
wrist
hand
fingers
thumb
thigh
knee
ankle
foot

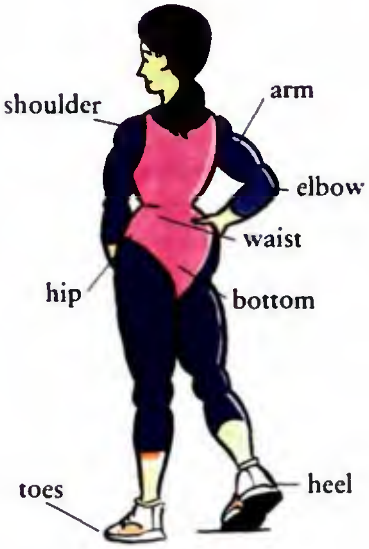
shoulder
arm
elbow
waist
hip
bottom
toes
heel

The outer part of the body is covered in **skin**, e.g. Too much sun is bad for your **skin**.

B Physical actions

People **breathe** through the nose or mouth, and **breathe in and out** 12–15 times a minute.
People **smile** when they're happy, and sometimes **smile at** people to be polite.
Funny things **make people laugh** – for example, when someone **tells a joke**.
People sometimes **cry** if they're unhappy or receive bad news.
They **yawn** when they're tired or bored.
People in some countries **nod their head** to mean 'yes', and **shake their head** for 'no'.

C Common expressions

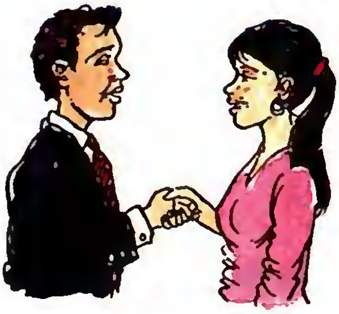

shake hands with somebody

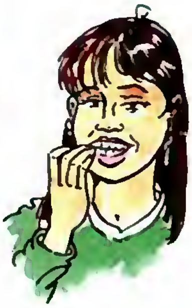

bite your nails

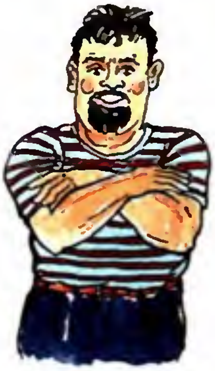

fold your arms

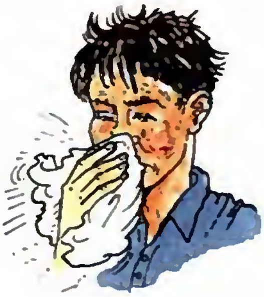

blow your nose

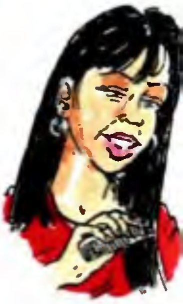

comb your hair

Exercises

47.1 Find 13 more words describing parts of the body, either across or down, in this word square.

C	E	L	B	O	W	A
H	T	I	A	E	N	R
I	O	P	C	Y	A	M
N	E	C	K	E	I	H
I	H	A	N	K	L	E
K	C	H	E	S	T	E
C	H	E	E	K	A	L

47.2 How much of the picture can you label without looking at the opposite page?

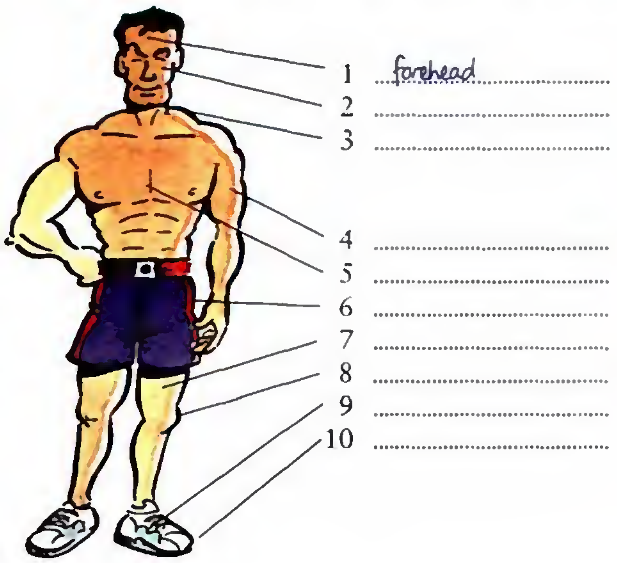

1 forehead
2 ......
3 ......
4 ......
5 ......
6 ......
7 ......
8 ......
9 ......
10 ......

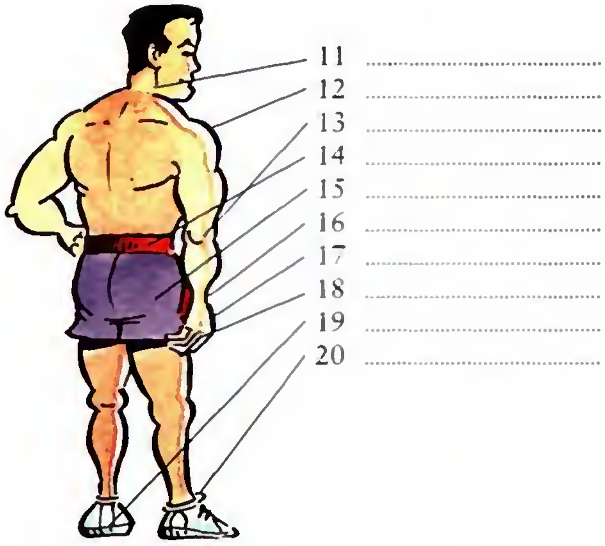

11 ......
12 ......
13 ......
14 ......
15 ......
16 ......
17 ......
18 ......
19 ......
20 ......

47.3 Match the verbs on the left with a part of the body on the right to form common expressions.

1 shake
2 bite
3 comb
4 fold
5 blow
6 nod

your arms
your nose
your nails
your head
hands
your hair

47.4 What do these actions often mean? (There may be several possible answers.)

1 People often smile when they're happy.
2 They often breathe quickly after ......
3 They laugh when ......
4 They may bite their nails ......
5 They blow their nose ......
6 They shake their head ......
7 And nod their head ......
8 They cry ......
9 They yawn when ......

48 Describing people's appearance

A General descriptions

Positive: **beautiful** is generally used to describe women; **handsome** is used to describe men; **good-looking** and **attractive** are used for both. **Pretty** is another positive word to describe a woman (often a girl), meaning 'attractive and nice to look at'.
Negative: **ugly** is a very negative word; **plain** is negative but more polite.

B Height and build

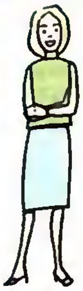
tall and **slim**

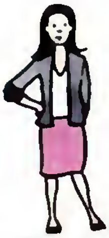
medium height and **build**

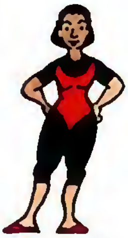
medium height and very **muscular**

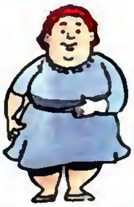
short and **fat**

Another word for **slim** is **thin**, but with a more negative meaning, e.g. John is lovely and slim, but his brother is very thin. It is not very polite to say someone is **fat**; **overweight** is a bit less rude.

C Hair

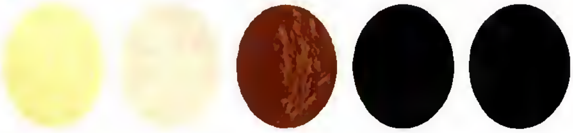
blond(e) **fair** **brown** **dark** **black**

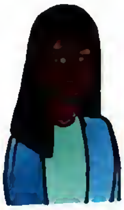
straight

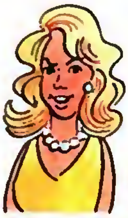
wavy

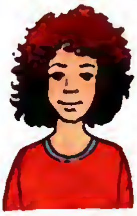
curly hair

D Special features

The man on the left has very **pale skin** (= light skin). He also has **broad shoulders**, with a **scar** on his forehead. The other man has **dark skin**. He also has a **beard** and **moustache**.

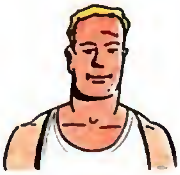

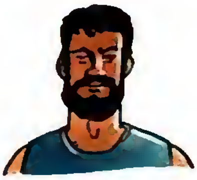

E Asking questions about a person's appearance

Q: What does she **look like**?	A: She's **tallish**, with short fair hair.
Q: **How tall** is she?	A: **About** 1 metre 65.
Q: **How much does she weigh**?	A: I don't know – **roughly** 50 kilos, I guess.

We can use **about** and **roughly** to mean 'more or less' when talking about **height** (= how tall someone is), **weight** (= how heavy is someone) or **age**. The suffix **'-ish'** can be used at the end of some adjectives to mean 'quite' and at the end of some numbers to mean 'more or less'.

She's got **longish** hair. He's **twentyish**. She's **roughly** 40.

Exercises

48.1 Complete these sentences in a suitable way. (More than one answer may be possible.)

1 He's got very muscular ...arms...........................
2 She's got blonde ....
3 He's got very pale ....
4 They've both got curly ....
5 I would say he was medium ....
6 Her brother has got very broad ....
7 Last time I saw him he had grown a beard and ....
8 Both men were very good- ....

48.2 Replace the underlined word with a word which is more suitable or more polite.

1 He told me he met a handsome girl in the disco last night. beautiful
2 She's beautiful but her younger sister is really quite ugly.
3 I think Peter is getting a bit fat, don't you?
4 I think she's hoping to meet a few beautiful men at the tennis club.
5 Paul is very thin.

48.3 You want to know about the following: someone's general appearance; their height; their weight. What do you need to ask? Complete these questions.

1 What .... ?
2 How .... ?
3 How much .... ?

48.4 Make these sentences less exact. Do it in a different way each time.

1 She's 20. She's 20, more or less.
2 I'm 75 kilos.
3 She's 1 metre 70.
4 They're both 30.

48.5 Now answer these questions.

1 How tall are you?
2 How would you describe your build?
3 How much do you weigh?
4 What kind of hair have you got?
5 What colour is it?
6 Would you like it to be different? If so, what else would you like to change about your appearance?
7 Do you think you have any special features?
8 Are there any special features you would like to have?
9 Do you like beards?
10 Can you think of a famous woman you would describe as beautiful, and a famous man you would describe as good-looking?

If possible, ask another person these questions.

49 Describing character

A Opposites

NOTE

Sympathetic doesn't mean 'nice' in English. We use it to describe a person who understands other people's feelings/ problems, e.g. She was very **sympathetic** when I explained the problem.

positive	*negative*
warm and **friendly**	**cold** and **unfriendly**
kind (= cares about others)	**unkind**
nice, **pleasant**	**horrible**, **unpleasant**
generous (= happy to give/share)	**mean** (= never gives to others)
optimistic (= thinks positively)	**pessimistic** (= thinks negatively)
easy-going (= relaxed, calm)	**tense** (= nervous; worries a lot; not calm)
sensitive (= thinks about people's feelings)	**insensitive**
honest (= always tells the truth)	**dishonest**
good fun (= enjoyable to be with)	**boring**
broad-minded	**narrow-minded** (= unable to accept new ideas)

My parents are great and don't mind what I wear – they're very **broad-minded**.
When I tried on the dress, the shop assistant said it would look better on a younger person. I know she was trying to be **honest**, but it was a bit **insensitive** of her.

B What's he/she like?

He's very **self-confident**. (= feels he can do things, and is relaxed in social situations)
When you first meet her she seems **shy**. (= finds it difficult to talk to people and make conversation)
She doesn't **show her feelings**. (= you don't know what she is thinking or feeling)
He's got a great **sense of humour**. (= laughs a lot and sees the funny side of life)

C Describing character in work situations

positive	*negative*
hard-working	**lazy** (= never does any work)
punctual (= always on time)	**not very punctual**; always late
reliable	**unreliable** (= you cannot trust/depend on someone like this)
clever	**stupid**
flexible	**inflexible** (= a fixed way of thinking and unable to change)
ambitious	**not ambitious** (= no desire to be successful/get a better job)
has lots of common sense (= thinks in a practical way; doesn't do stupid things)	**has no common sense**; **an idiot** (= a stupid person)

D First impressions

We use **impression** to talk about the effect that a person has on another person.

She **made a very good impression** at her interview. (= had a positive effect on the interviewer
My **first impression** of him was a bit negative.
She **comes across as** (= appears to be) quite serious.

Exercises

49.1 Organise these words into pairs of opposites and put them in the columns below.

mean clever nice lazy relaxed
hard-working tense generous unpleasant stupid

positive	*negative*
clever	....
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....

49.2 Which prefix forms the opposite of these words? (You need three different prefixes.)

unhappy flexible friendly honest
reliable sensitive kind pleasant

49.3 How would you describe the person in each of these descriptions?

1 She's always here on time. punctual
2 He never bought me a drink in ten years.
3 She often promises to do things but half the time she forgets.
4 I don't think he's done any work since he's been here.
5 She finds it difficult to meet people and talk to strangers.
6 He can work in any of the departments – on his own or part of a team.
7 One of her qualities is that she is so aware of what other people think or feel.
8 I know Mike wants to be head of the department and then go on to a bigger company.

49.4 Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

1 At work, James .... across as serious and a bit boring, but outside of work he's completely different; he's really good ....
2 It's important to .... a good impression on your first day in a new job.
3 I'm sure he can find the place; he just needs to use his common ....
4 Meeting new people doesn't worry her; she's a very self-.................................... young woman.
5 It's hard to know what Sam thinks – he doesn't really .... his feelings.
6 Do you think .... impressions are very important? I do.
7 I always have a laugh with my cousin – he's got a great sense of ....
8 She is so ....-minded: she cannot accept any ideas different from her own.

49.5 What nouns can be formed from these adjectives? Use a dictionary to help you.

kind kindness optimistic punctual lazy confident ambitious

49.6 Choose three words from the opposite page which describe you. Is there one quality you do not have but would like to have? What, in your opinion, is the worst quality described on the opposite page? If possible, compare your answers with a friend.

50 Human feelings and actions

A Feelings/emotions

noun	*adjective(s)*
love (*opp* hate)	–
happiness (*opp* sadness)	happy (*opp* sad)
anger	angry
fear	afraid (of)/frightened (of)
pride	proud (of)
jealousy	jealous (of)
embarrassment	embarrassed/embarrassing (see Unit 36)

Pride can be a positive feeling when you (or people you know) have done something well.

I'm not a great photographer, but I'm **proud of** my pictures because I taught myself.

He was very **proud** when his wife became the first president of the organisation.

Jealousy is a negative feeling of anger/unhappiness, often if someone you love shows a lot of interest in others, or if someone has something you want and don't have.

My boyfriend gets very **jealous** when I talk to other boys.

He's **jealous of** his sister because she's more intelligent.

Upset is a common adjective, and means unhappy, sad, and sometimes angry.

He was **upset** when they didn't invite him.   She gets **upset** if you shout at her.

B How do you feel?

I **felt** very sad when I left university and all my friends.

It was a **great feeling** when I finished all my exams.

She had **mixed feelings** (= not sure what to think or feel) about leaving her job.

C Ways of speaking, looking and walking

whisper (= speak very quietly)
glance (at) (= look at sb/sth very quickly)
stroll (= walk in a slow casual way)
shout (= speak in a very loud voice)
stare (at) (= look at sb/sth for a long time)
march (= walk quickly and with a clear reason)

These words can also function as nouns with no change in form.

I heard a **shout** from inside.   We had a **stroll** on the beach.

D Things we do with our hands

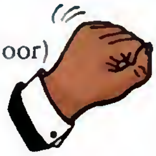
knock (on/at a door)

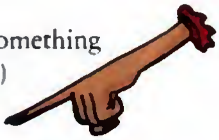
point (at something /someone)

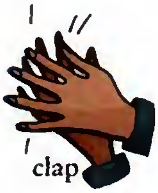
clap

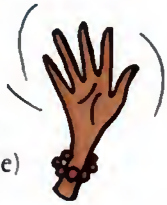
wave (goodbye)

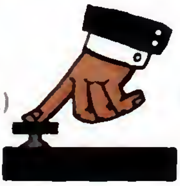
press (a button)

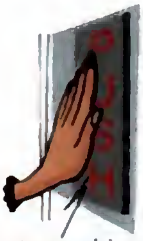

push (something)

Exercises

50.1 What nouns can be formed from these adjectives?

1 sad sadness
2 proud
3 angry
4 jealous
5 happy
6 embarrassed

50.2 Find the logical ending on the right for each of the sentence beginnings on the left.

1 He was very proud when
2 He was very jealous when
3 He was very embarrassed when
4 He was very angry when
5 He was very sad when
6 He was very frightened when

a someone stole his money.
b his father appeared on TV.
c he heard his aunt had died.
d he saw the man had a knife.
e he sent her a birthday card on the wrong day.
f his best friend went out with a girl he liked.

50.3 What are these people doing? Describe their actions using words from the opposite page.

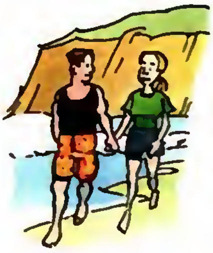
1

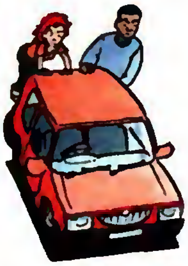
2

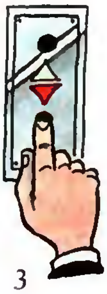
3

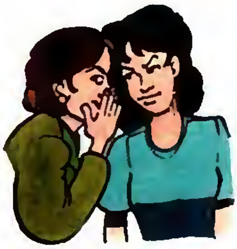
4

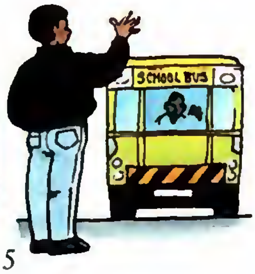

5

50.4 Replace the underlined words with a single verb that has the same meaning.

1 She stopped working and looked quickly at the clock.
2 As we were in the library, he spoke very quietly in my ear.
3 We walked casually along the beach and then stopped for a drink.
4 He made us all walk quickly up the hill.
5 The man kept looking at Susan, but she didn't seem to notice.
6 He kept talking in a very loud voice.

50.5 Fill the gaps with the missing preposition.

1 I knocked .... the door.
2 She glanced .... her watch.
3 She's jealous .... her sister.
4 Why is he pointing .... the clock?
5 He's very proud .... them.
6 What are they afraid .... ?

50.6 Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1 How would you feel if you forgot your mother's birthday or your father's birthday?
2 How do you feel when you are in a car that is going very fast?
3 How do you feel when other people ask you to do things that you don't want to do?
4 If you made a stupid mistake in English, how would you feel?
5 Is there any one thing that you are very proud of?
6 Are there any common situations where you sometimes feel embarrassed?
7 How do you feel about going home after a wonderful holiday?
8 Have you left school? If so, did you have mixed feelings when you left? If you haven't left school, do you think you'll have mixed feelings when you leave?

51 Family and friends

A Relatives (= members of your family)

NOTE
In English we usually say 'my uncle's daughter' (NOT ~~the daughter of my uncle~~) or 'Anna's sister' (NOT ~~the sister of Anna~~).

	male	*female*
Your parents' parents	grandfather(s)	grandmother(s)
Your parents' brother and sister	uncle(s)	aunt(s)
Your aunt's/uncle's children	cousin(s)	cousin(s)
The father and mother of the person you marry	father-in-law	mother-in-law
The brother and sister of the person you marry	brother-in-law	sister-in-law
Your brother's/sister's children	nephew(s)	niece(s)
If the person you marry dies, you are a ...	widower	widow
If your mother or father remarries, you have a ...	stepfather	stepmother

B Talking about family and friends

I've got two brothers and a sister. My brothers are **twins** (= two children born to one mother at the same time), and they are three years younger than me. I'm the oldest and I **take after** my father (= I am similar to him in appearance and/or character). My sister takes after my father in some ways, but she **looks like** my mother (= her appearance is similar to my mother's). We're a **close family** (= we have a good relationship/see each other a lot). My **best friend** Pete is an **only child** (= without brothers or sisters); he spends a lot of time with us and he's almost one of the family.

C Family names

Your parents give you a **first name**, e.g. James and Sarah are common first names in Britain. Your family name, usually called your **surname**, is the one that all the family have, e.g. Smith and Jones. Your **full name** is all the names you have, e.g. Sarah Jane Smith.

D Changing times

In some parts of the world, couples may live together but do not get married. In this relationship they often call each other their **partner**. Where the child or children live(s) with just one parent, especially after the parents have **separated** (= they don't live together any more), these are sometimes called **single-parent families**.

E Friends

an **old friend** (= someone you have known for a long time)
a **close friend** (= a good friend/someone you like and trust)
your **best friend** (= the one friend you feel closest to)
classmates (= other people in your class)
flatmates (= people you share a house/flat with, who are not your family)
colleagues (= people you work with; they may or may not be friends)

F Ex-

We use this for a relationship that we had in the past but do not have now:

The children stay with my **ex-husband** at the weekend.
I saw an **ex-girlfriend** of mine at the disco last night.

Exercises

51.1 Look at the family tree and complete the sentences below.

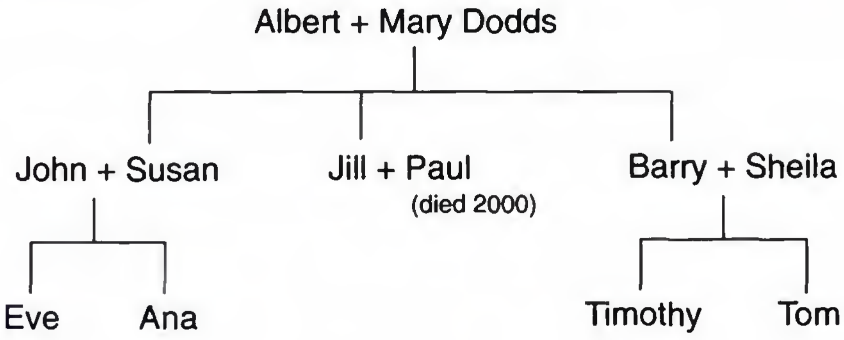

1 John is Jill's ....
2 Timothy is Jill's ....
3 Eve and Ana are Timothy's ....
4 Eve is Sheila's ....
5 Albert Dodds is Tom's ....
6 Barry is Eve's ....
7 Susan is Timothy's ....
8 As Paul died in 2000, Jill is a ....
9 Tom is Mary's ....
10 The only two people who are not related are .... and ....

51.2 Fill the gaps with the correct word.

1 Did you say his .... name was Boris?
2 He looks like his mother but definitely takes .... his father in character.
3 There is an increasing number of single-.............................. families in Britain.
4 Most of my .... at work are married, and I don't see them socially.
5 I've known him for years; he's an .... friend.
6 They're not married any longer, but she still sees her ....-husband.

51.3 Answer these questions about yourself.

1 What's your first name?
2 What's your surname?
3 Are you an only child?
4 Are you part of a very close family?
5 Do you look like your father or mother?
6 In character, who do you take after?
7 Do you know any twins?
8 Who is your best friend?
9 Do you work? If so, how many of your work colleagues are also your friends?
10 Do you have any ex-boyfriends or girlfriends who are still close friends?

51.4 Draw your own family tree. Are there any relationships you cannot describe in English?

52 Ages and stages

A Growing up and growing old

NOTE

The period between 13 and 17 approximately is called **adolescence**, and the boy/girl is an **adolescent**.

age	*stage*
0–1 approximately	a **baby**
1–2	a **toddler**
2–12 approximately	a **child** – this period is your **childhood**
13–17 approximately	a **teenager** (14 = **early teens**)
18 +	an **adult**
20–29	**in your twenties** (24–26 = **mid-twenties**)
30–39	**in your thirties** (38 = **late thirties**)
40 +	people are **middle-aged**
60 or 65	**retirement** (= when people stop work; they are **retired**)
75 +	**old age** (you can describe people as **elderly**)

B Childhood and adolescence

Sam (on the right) was **born** in Scotland but when he was two, his father got a new job in Los Angeles, and he **grew up** in California. He **went to university** at 19 where ...

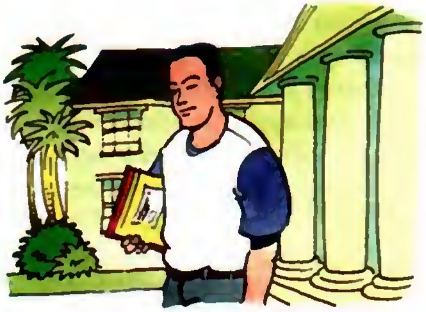

C Romance

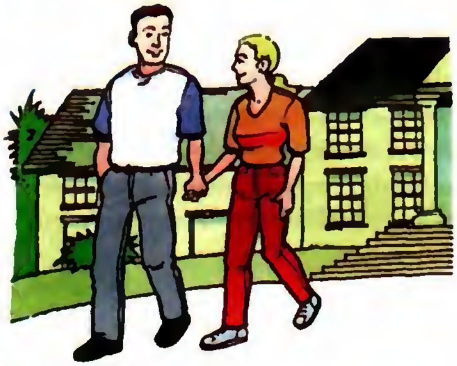

... he met Anthea. He **went out with** her (= she was his **girlfriend**; he was her **boyfriend**) for three years, but towards the end they had lots of **rows** (= arguments) and finally they **split up** (= separated/ended their relationship). In his **mid-twenties** he met Marie. They **fell in love** and ...

D Marriage

... **got married** within six months. One year later she **got pregnant** and they **had** their first **child**, a boy. But the marriage was not a success. Sam left two years afterwards and they **got divorced** (= the marriage ended officially). Four years later, Marie **remarried** (= got married again), and as you can see in the picture, she is now **expecting** a second **baby** (= she's pregnant).

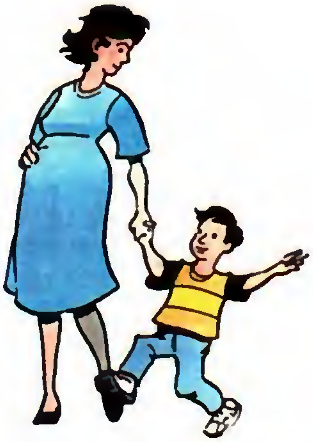

Exercises

52.1 What stage of life are these people at?

1 Paul isn't two yet, so he's still a toddler..................
2 Albert was a bus driver for 40 years but stopped work two years ago, so he's now ....
3 Susan is 25, so she is in her ....
4 Caroline is 48 this year so she is now in her ....
5 Ron is 33 and his wife is 32, so they are both in their ....
6 Joan is 75 this year, so she is quite ....
7 Jason was born six weeks ago, so he's a ....
8 Leyla is 13 this year, so she'll soon be a ....
9 Ravi is 18 this year, so legally he becomes an ....
10 15 is often a difficult age for boys going through ....

52.2 Are these sentences true or false about the people on the opposite page? If false, write the correct answer below. Try to answer the questions first without looking at the opposite page.

1 Sam was born in Ireland. True/False
Sam was born in Scotland.
2 He grew up in the south of Ireland. True/False
....
3 He went out with Anthea for two years. True/False
....
4 They split up because Sam went to live in Japan. True/False
....
5 Sam fell in love with Marie. True/False
....
6 They had a baby a year after they got married. True/False
....
7 Marie is now expecting her third child. True/False
....
8 Marie left Sam. True/False
....

52.3 Find the logical ending for each of the sentence beginnings on the left and construct Rebecca's life.

1 Rebecca was born
2 She grew up
3 Her first boyfriend
4 She went out with him
5 She went to university
6 She fell in love
7 They got married
8 She had a baby
9 Her father retired

a was a boy at her secondary school.
b in her early thirties.
c on a farm with lots of animals.
d when she was in her late twenties.
e in a small local hospital in 1972.
f for six months.
g just after the baby was born.
h with another student doing medicine.
i when she left school.

How many of the sentence beginnings on the left can you complete about your own life? Complete the ones you can.

53 Daily routines

A Sleep

During the week I usually **wake up** at 6.30 am. I sometimes **lie in bed** (= stay in bed) for 5–10 minutes but then I have to **get up** (= get out of bed and put on clothes).
Most evenings I **go to bed** about 11.30 pm, and usually **go to sleep/fall asleep** very quickly. If I **have a late night** (= go to bed very late; *opp* an early night), it's easy to **oversleep** (= sleep too long) the next morning, then I may be late for work.
If I can, I **have a sleep** (= for a short period, e.g. half an hour) in the afternoon. At weekends I often **have a lie-in** (= stay in bed until later, e.g. 9.30 am).

B Food

NOTE
Usually there is no definite article (*the*) with **breakfast**, **lunch** or **dinner**.

In the week I **have breakfast** at 7.00 am, **lunch** at 1.00, and **dinner** around 7 pm. I also have one or two **snacks** (= food eaten between meals, e.g. a cake or biscuits) during the day. As I live **alone/on my own** (= without other people), I have to **make my own** breakfast and dinner (= prepare breakfast and dinner for myself), but during the week I **don't bother** (= don't make an effort) to cook very much. I also have to **feed** (= give food to) my cats twice a day.

C Keeping clean

In the summer I **have a shower** in the morning, but in the winter I often **have a bath instead** (= in place of a shower). Sometimes I **have a shave** at the same time, or I shave when I **have a wash** and **clean/brush** my teeth after breakfast. I **wash my hair** two or three times a week.

English often uses a verb + noun construction, where other languages may use a verb or reflexive verb, e.g. **I had a wash** (NOT ~~I washed~~ or ~~I washed myself~~); **I had a rest** (NOT ~~I rested~~ or ~~I rested myself~~).

D Work

In the morning I **leave home** about 8.15 am and **get to work** (= arrive at work) by 9 am. I have a **lunch break** (= period when I stop work for lunch) from 1–2 pm, and usually a couple of short **breaks** (= periods to relax) during the day. I **leave work** around 5.30 and **get home** about 6.15.

E Spare time (= free time)

In the week I usually **stay in** (= stay at home) and watch TV or read in the evening. At the weekend I **go out** (= leave the house for social reasons, e.g. go to a cinema or disco), but I also **have friends for dinner** (= invite friends to my house and cook dinner for them), or friends **come round** (= visit me at the house) to **play cards**, e.g. poker or bridge.

F Housework

I **do the shopping** (= buy the food and household goods) on Saturday. **Fortunately/Luckily** (= it is lucky for me) I have a **cleaner** (= a person who cleans) and she does most of the housework: she **does** my **washing** (= washes my clothes), she **does the washing-up** (= washes the dishes) and most of **the ironing**.

Exercises

53.1 How many expressions with 'have + noun' from the opposite page can you remember?

have ....breakfast.......... have ....a shower.......... have ....
have .... have .... have ....

53.2 Match the verbs on the left with the correct word on the right to form common partnerships.

1 do	a rest
2 fall	my teeth
3 have	the dog
4 play	asleep
5 go	cards
6 clean	the ironing
7 feed	early
8 get up	to bed

53.3 Complete this dialogue with a suitable word or phrase from the opposite page.

A: Don't (1) ....bother.............. to cook a meal this evening.
B: Why not?
A: We could (2) .... instead.
B: Yeah. Where?
A: Well, I'd like to go to that Korean restaurant. We could ask Karen and Mike to come.
B: That's miles away. No, I think I'd rather (3) .... and have an (4) .... night.
A: But it's Friday. You can have a (5) .... tomorrow if we have a late night.
B: Yes, I know, but I'm tired. Look, why don't you ask Karen and Mike to (6) .... for a meal? I can order some pizzas from the takeaway and we'll have a nice evening here. We can (7) .... cards or watch a few videos.
A: Sorry, but if you don't want to come with me, I'll go (8) ....

53.4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1 What time do you have the breakfast?
2 In the morning I always let home at 8 o'clock.
3 I didn't shave me this morning.
4 I live by my own.
5 I usually wash the hair every day.
6 I went to bed and slept very quickly.

53.5 Complete the phrasal verb in these sentences.

1 I usually wake .... around 7.30, and then get .... about 8.
2 During the week I usually stay .... , but at the weekend I always go ....
3 Sometimes friends come .... to the house and we play cards.

53.6 Find three facts from the opposite page which are similar to your routine, and three that are different. Complete the table below.

	similar	*different*
1	I go to bed around 11.30 pm.	I don't stay in during the week.
2		
3		
4		

54 The place where you live

A Location

NOTE
Right is often used for emphasis, e.g. I live **right** next to the park.

I live on **the outskirts of** town. (= on the edge of town, near the country)
I live in **the suburbs**. (= areas where people live outside the centre of town)
I live in **a residential area**. (= a nice area of houses/flats, with no factories)
I live **quite close to** the station. (= near the station)
I live **right in the centre**. (= exactly in the centre)

B Houses

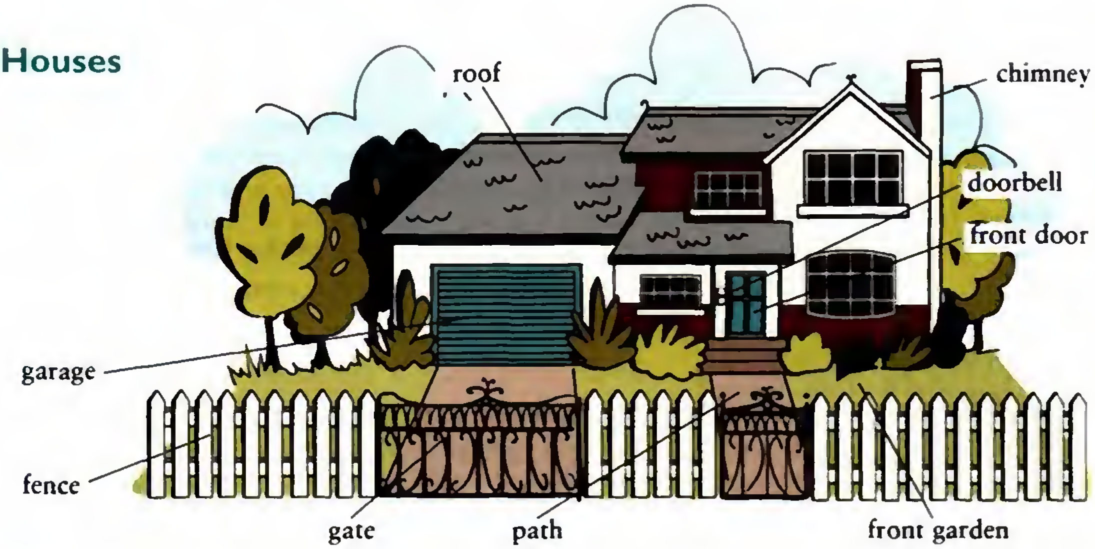

C Flats

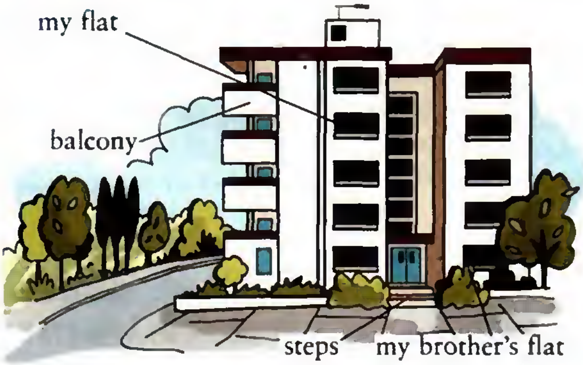

I live in a **block of flats**. My brother lives on the **ground floor**, and I have a flat on the **third floor**. Unfortunately there is no **lift**, so I have to **climb** (= go up/ walk up) three **flights of stairs** to reach my flat. But I have a **balcony** with a great **view** of the park **opposite** the building.

Steps are outside a house or inside a public building. **Stairs** connect floors inside a house or building and are often covered with a carpet.

D Describing the place where you live

My parents **own** their house (= they bought it/it belongs to them), but I **rent** a flat near my university (= I don't own it; I pay money every week to the owner). The rooms are **tiny** (= very small, *opp* **huge/enormous**), but they're **light** (*opp* **dark**) because they're on the top floor and get lots of sun. The flats on the ground floor are dark and also **noisy** (*opp* **quiet**) because they're nearer the traffic. Some rooms are **draughty** (= cold air comes in through windows and under doors), and are expensive to **heat** (= keep warm); but I've got **central heating** (= system of heating every room in a building) and the flat is **in good condition**.

Exercises

54.1 What can you remember about the house and block of flats on the opposite page? Answer these questions without looking.

1 Does the house have a garage?
2 Does it have a fence at the front?
3 Is the gate open or shut?
4 Does each flat have a balcony?
5 Does the brother live on the first floor?
6 Do the flats have a view of a school and offices?

54.2 Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

1 I walked up to the house and rang the ....
2 She lives .... the second floor.
3 We had to .... six flights of stairs to get to her flat because the .... wasn't working.
4 I've got a great .... from my balcony.
5 You have to walk up some .... to reach the entrance to the building.
6 Do you own the flat or do you .... it?
7 I'm living in the house now but it actually .... to my brother. He bought it two years ago. It was in very bad .... then, but he spent a lot of money on it.
8 It costs a lot of money to .... a house when you live in a cold climate. Central .... is usually quite expensive.

54.3 Write down four more positive things and four more negative things about a house or flat. When you have finished, compare your answers with section D opposite.

positive	*negative*
1 It's very light.	1 It's very dark.
2	2 ....
3	3 ....
4	4 ....
5	5 ....

Now think about your answers again. Which positive features are the most important for you? Which negative features do you dislike the most?

54.4 What about your home? Answer these questions.

1 Do you live in a house or flat?
2 If you live in a flat, what floor is it on?
3 If you live in a house, do you have a garden?
4 Does the house/flat belong to you (or your family), or do you rent it?
5 Do you have your own garage or personal parking space?
6 Would you describe your house/flat as dark or light?
7 Is it noisy or quiet?
8 Do you have central heating?
9 Is it near the centre, in the suburbs, or on the outskirts?
10 Is it in a quiet residential area?

55 Around the home (1)

A Rooms

The **living room** or **lounge** (= where you sit, relax and watch TV); the **dining room**; the **kitchen**; the **bedroom(s)**; and the **bathroom(s)**. Some people have a **study** (= room with a desk where you work) and a **spare room** (= room you don't use every day, and where guests can sleep). The entrance area in a house or flat is called the **hall**.

B The living room

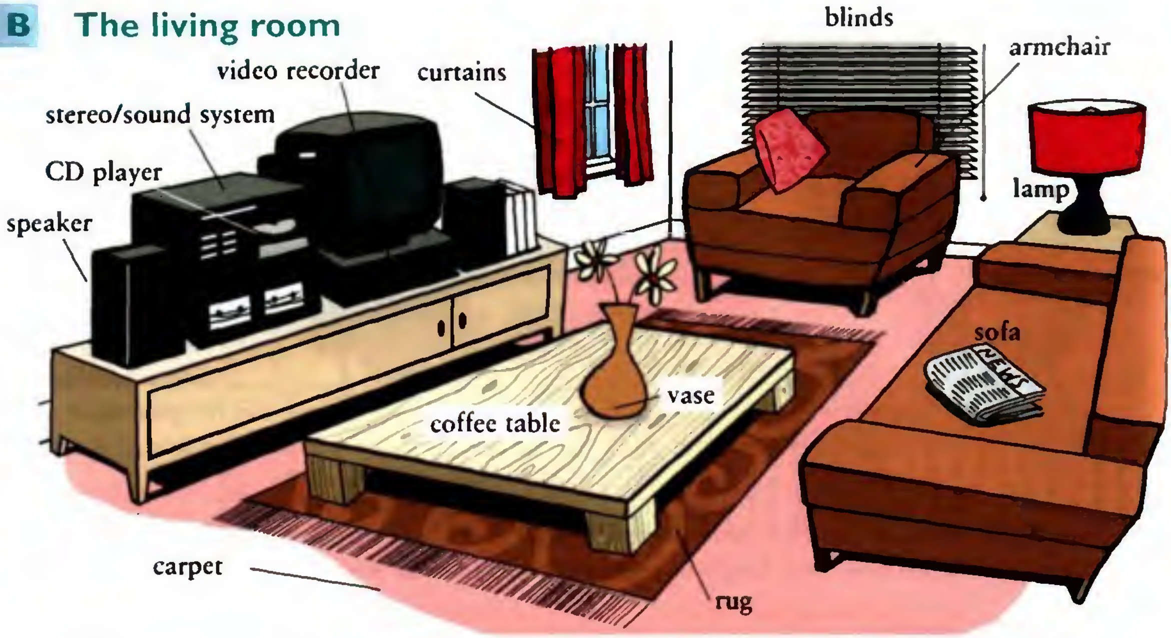
blinds
armchair
video recorder
curtains
stereo/sound system
CD player
lamp
speaker
sofa
NEWS
vase
coffee table
carpet
rug

While the cat was asleep in the **armchair**, I sat on the **sofa** and had a look at the paper. Then I turned on the **TV** to watch the news.

C The kitchen

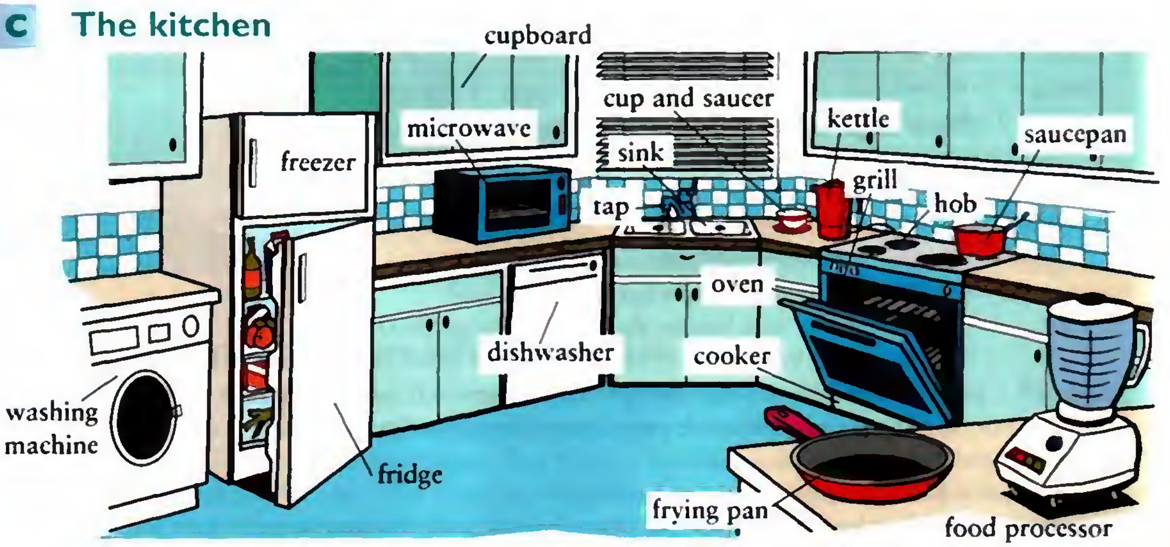
cupboard
cup and saucer
microwave
kettle
saucepan
freezer
sink
grill
tap
hob
oven
dishwasher
cooker
washing machine
fridge
frying pan
food processor

I put the meat in the **oven**, then I made myself a coffee and put the milk back in the **fridge**. After that, I put some **cups** and **saucers** in the **dishwasher**.

Exercises

55.1 Complete the descriptions. (There may be more than one possible answer.)

1 The bedroom, that's where you ....sleep.....................
2 The kitchen, that's where you do the ....
3 The bathroom, that's where you have a .... and ....
4 The living room, that's where you .... and ....
5 The dining room, that's where you ....
6 A spare room, that's often where ....
7 A study, that's usually where you ....

55.2 You are in the kitchen. Where would you put:

1 biscuits and a packet of spaghetti? in a cupboard
2 milk?
3 meat that you are going to cook?
4 dirty clothes?
5 dirty cups and saucers?
6 clean cups and saucers?
7 frozen food that you want to keep?

55.3 Here are some things you may find in the living room or kitchen but the letters are jumbled. What are they, and which room do you usually find them in?

Example sekd desk (living room)

skin
faos
nacitusr
veon
rapcet
digref
shadriswhe
hiamcrar
teklet
acepasnu

55.4 Complete these sentences with the correct adverb or preposition.

1 Shall I put the plates .... the cupboard?
2 I took the ham .... of the fridge, made a sandwich, then put the rest of it .... in the fridge.
3 We tend to sit in the same places – me .... the sofa and my husband .... the armchair.
4 I didn't have anything to do, so I turned .... the TV.
5 You normally cook the meat .... the oven for 45 minutes.
6 I took a few things .... of the cupboard and put them .... the table.

55.5 You have just moved into a new flat. For the first six months you can only have six of the following. Which would you choose, and why? Compare with someone else if possible.

Example I would certainly choose a cooker – I can't eat cold food all the time.

sofa
cooker
CD player
kettle
carpets
curtains
bed
saucepans
dishwasher
fridge
dining table
food processor
TV
desk
washing machine
armchair

55.6 Write down:

- three things in the lounge or kitchen you can turn on/off
- three things in the kitchen you wash regularly
- two things in the lounge or kitchen you can sit on
- two things you can use to boil water

56 Around the home (2)

A The bedroom

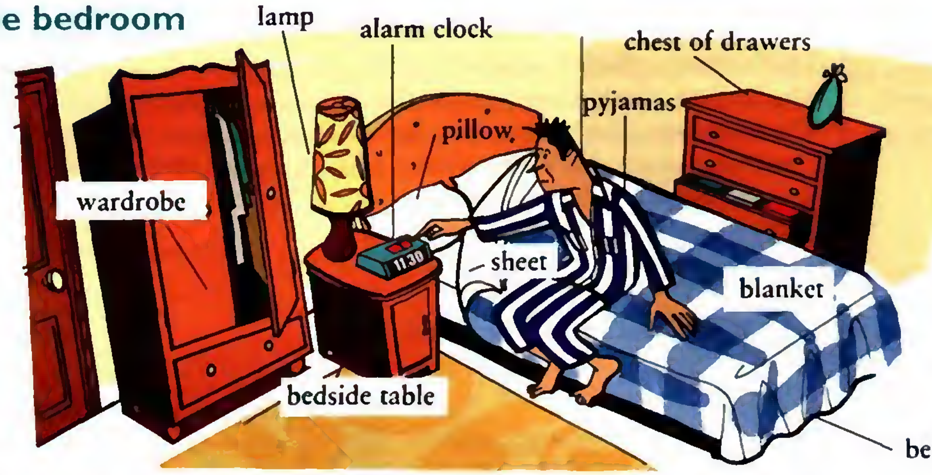
lamp
alarm clock
chest of drawers
pyjamas
pillow
wardrobe
sheet
blanket
bedside table
bed

I put on my pyjamas, got into bed, and read a book for half an hour. Then I set the alarm clock, switched off the light and went to sleep.

B The bathroom

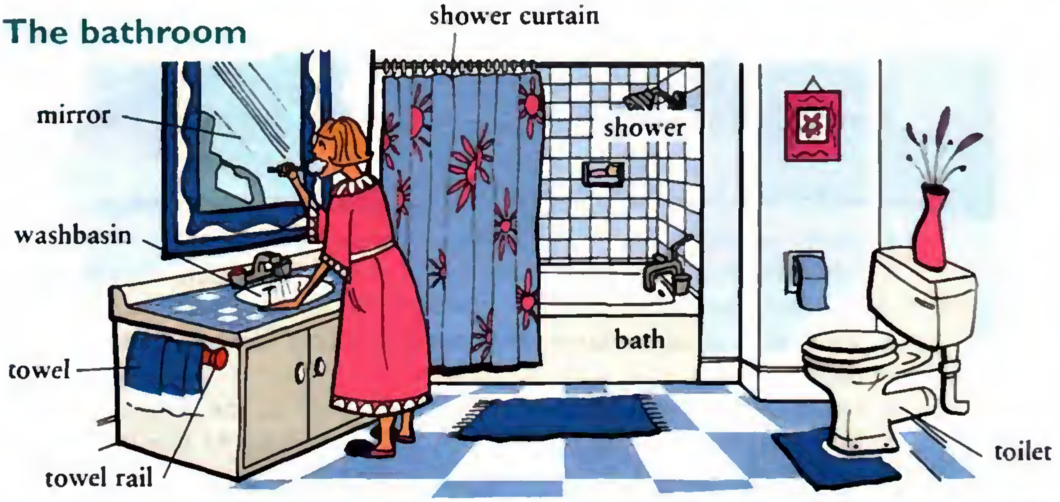
shower curtain
mirror
shower
washbasin
bath
towel
toilet
towel rail

I didn't have time for a bath, but I had a wash, cleaned my teeth, and then I went to work.

C Housework

My room is very **tidy** (= everything in order), but my brother is very **untidy** – he leaves his clothes **all over the floor** (= everywhere) and never **makes his bed**. The room is **a complete mess**. (= very untidy)

I **do the washing-up** (= wash the dishes) every evening, and I normally **do some washing and ironing** (= wash and iron clothes) at the weekend. I **hoover** the carpets once a week.

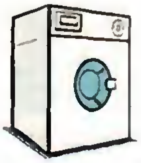
washing machine

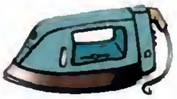
iron

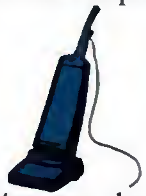
hoover/vacuum cleaner

Exercises

56.1 Find the correct ending on the right for each of the sentence beginnings on the left, then put the sentences in the most logical order.

1 I cleaned
2 I went
3 I set
4 I switched off
5 I had
6 I put on
7 I got

the light
into bed
a wash
my teeth
to sleep
the alarm clock
my pyjamas

56.2 The pictures show six things the man did this morning. Complete the sentences below.

1
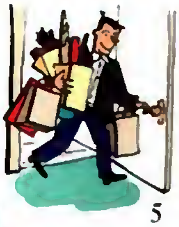

2
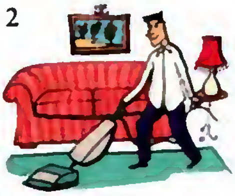

3
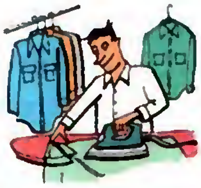

4
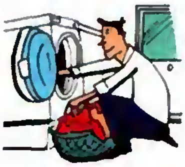

5
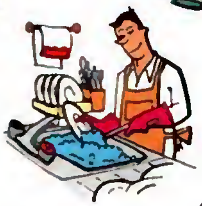

6
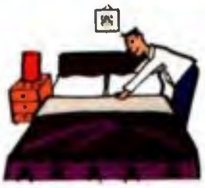

1 He did the shopping.
2 He ....
3 He ....
4 He ....
5 He ....
6 He ....

56.3 How often do you do the things in 56.2? Complete these sentences about yourself.

1 I often/sometimes/never ....
2 I ....
3 I ....
4 I ....
5 I ....
6 I ....

56.4 Test your memory. Cover the opposite page and answer these questions about the pictures.

1 Does the alarm clock show 11.30?
2 Does the bed have one pillow or two?
3 Is the wardrobe open?
4 How many drawers does the chest of drawers have?
5 Is the woman in the bathroom holding a towel?
6 Is the shower above the bath?

56.5 How well do you know your own home? Answer these questions as quickly as possible.

1 Have you got a mirror above the washbasin in the bathroom?
2 Have you got a towel rail on the same wall as the washbasin?
3 Is the toilet next to the bath/shower?
4 Have you got a wardrobe and chest of drawers in your bedroom?
5 Have you got a lamp on your bedside table?
6 Have you got an alarm clock?

57

Everyday problems

A There's something wrong with ...

We use these expressions when there is a problem with machines and other things we use.

There's something wrong with the TV. (= there is a problem with it)
The light **isn't working**. (= not functioning/there is no light)
The light's **not working properly**. (= it is functioning but not very well)
The telephone is **out of order**. (= not in use/not functioning)

You often see a notice saying **out of order** on a public machine or piece of equipment that isn't working, e.g. pay phone, public toilet, etc. At home we usually say **it isn't working**.

B In the home

Paul had a lot of problems yesterday.

He **dropped** a cup

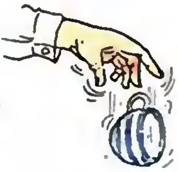

and it **broke**.

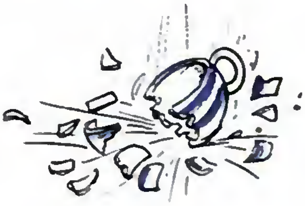

He got another cup, made some coffee, and then **spilt** it.

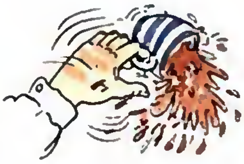

His shirt now has a large **stain** on it [see picture], and it is **ruined**. (= he can't wear it again, it has no use)

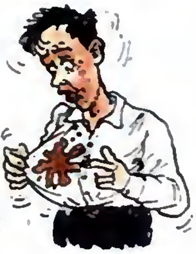

Then he decided to make some toast. He **burnt** the first piece (if you **burn** something, you damage it with heat or fire), then he realised he'd **run out of** bread (= the bread was finished/there was no more bread). He left home hungry and **in a bad mood**. (= angry and unhappy; *opp* **in a good mood**)

C Out and about

NOTE
You can say, 'I **forgot** my book', but if you say where this happened, you must use the verb 'leave', e.g. I **left** my homework **on** the bus. (NOT ~~I forgot my books on the bus.~~)

After Paul went out, **things got worse** (= his situation became worse/there were more problems). He was late, and he **missed the bus** (= the bus came and went before he got to the bus stop), so he had to walk. That made him even later. He started running, but he **fell over** and **cut himself** (see picture). Later, when he got to school, he realised he'd **lost** some money and **left** his English book at home. (= forgotten his books)

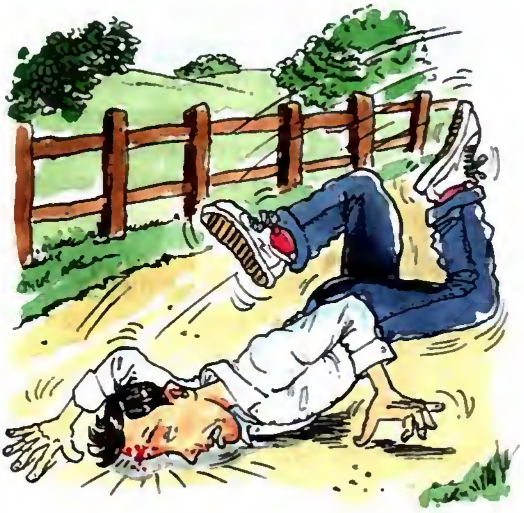

Exercises

57.1 Complete the past tense and past participle of these verbs.

infinitive	*past tense*	*past participle*
leave	left	left
break		
fall		
spill		
forget		
lose		
burn		
cut		

57.2 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the correct endings on the right.

1 I lost my credit card
2 I'm afraid I've run out
3 I'm afraid I left
4 I dropped my radio on the floor
5 I spilt my coffee
6 I missed the bus
7 I burnt myself
8 I forgot

a when I lit that cigarette.
b and had to wait ages for another.
c and it has stained the carpet.
d and all my money.
e to bring my money.
f my money at home.
g and now it doesn't work properly.
h of coffee. Would you like tea?

57.3 This is what happened when Anna had a party at her house. Write a description of the damage.

1
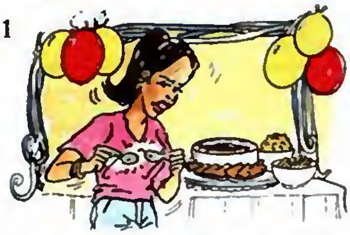

2
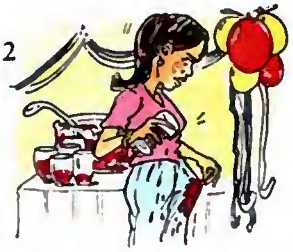

3
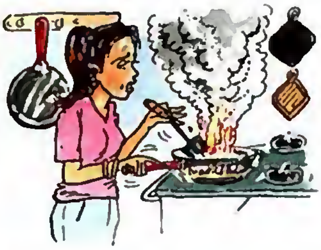

57.4 Write a logical explanation for each question, using vocabulary from the opposite page.

1 Why can't we watch TV? It isn't working.
2 How did you break that wine glass?
3 How did you cut your knee like that?
4 I'm cold. What's wrong with the central heating?
5 What happened to the money I gave you?
6 Where's your homework?
7 What's wrong with this radio?
8 Why can't you use the public phone in the station?

57.5 Answer the questions using 'often/occasionally/hardly ever/never'. How often do you:

drop things?
spill things?
fall over?
break things?
lose things?
leave things somewhere?
burn things?
forget things?
run out of things?

58

Money

A

Notes and coins

In the UK the **currency** (= type of money used) is **sterling**; in America it is **the dollar**; in much of Europe it's **the euro**.

notes	*coins*
e.g. ten pounds, twenty euros a ten-pound note	e.g. fifty pence, a pound a 50p coin, a one-pound coin

B

Common verbs

spend £££ on (sth)	Last week I **spent** £100 **on** food, and £20 **on** books.
pay £££ (for sth)	I **paid** £200 **for** my new desk. (= it cost me £200)
cost	My new desk **cost** (me) £200. (= I paid £200 for it)
charge	They **charged** me (= told me to pay) £10 to repair my watch.
lend and borrow	Could you **lend** me some money? *or* Could I **borrow** some money?
waste £££ (on sth)	Parents often think that children **waste** their money (= use it badly) **on** sweets and other things they don't need.
save (up) (for sth)	I'm **saving (up)** (= keeping some of my money when I receive it) **for** my holiday – I'm hoping to go to Greece.

C

Adjectives

These are all used to describe the **price** of something (= the amount of money you have to pay for sth), e.g. This watch was **cheap**; the hotel was **reasonable**; my suit was **quite expensive**, etc.

free	cheap	reasonable	quite expensive	very expensive	incredibly expensive
–	£	£	£	£	£

D

Talking money

I **can't afford** (= don't have enough money) to go on holiday this year.

A: How much is that watch **worth**? (= What is its value?) B: It's **worth** about £50.

The **cost of living** (= how much people pay for things) is high in Sweden and Norway, but people still have a good **standard of living**. (= the level of money and comfort people have)

His car **cost a fortune** (= was very expensive), but he can **afford** it; he's **well-off**. (= rich)

Exercises

58.1 Fill the gaps using the past tense of verbs from the box. Be careful, most of them are irregular.

buy
sell
spend
win
lose
waste
pay
find
cost
give

1 My car was five years old, so I .... it and .... a new one.
2 I was very sad when I .... my watch because it was a present from my wife and it .... her a lot of money. Fortunately, somebody .... it a few days later and took it to a police station.
3 I .... over £2,000 for my computer, but it isn't worth very much now.
4 My father .... me £50 last week but I .... most of it on Friday when I went to the concert.
5 Last week somebody .... £1 million in a game show on television. It was quite exciting.
6 I'm afraid I .... my money on those computer games – I don't think I've played them more than once.

58.2 Complete the sentences without using the underlined words and phrases. Don't change the meaning.

Example You want to tell a friend that your uncle is very rich.
My uncle is very well-off.

1 You want to know the value of your friend's gold ring. You ask:
How much is your ....?
2 A friend wants to go to a restaurant but you don't have enough money. You say:
I'm afraid I ....
3 You want to borrow some money from a friend. You ask:
Could you ....?
4 You want to know how much a friend paid for her dictionary. You ask:
How much ....?
5 You want to explain to someone that a disco is incredibly expensive. You say:
That disco ....

58.3 How quickly can you answer these questions, YES or NO? Write down answers to all of them, then go back and check. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1 Is the currency in America called the dollar?
2 Is a five-pound note worth less than a 50p coin?
3 If you lend something to someone, do they borrow it?
4 If you waste money, do you use it well?
5 Is the 'euro' a currency?
6 If you 'can't afford' something, do you have enough money for it?
7 Does 'cost of living' mean the same as 'standard of living'?
8 If someone tells you a hotel is reasonable, is it very expensive?

58.4 Write down the approximate price of six things in your country, e.g. a daily newspaper, a short bus journey, a cup of coffee in a bar/café, a ticket for the cinema, a takeaway burger, a pair of jeans, etc. Do you think the price is expensive, reasonable, cheap? Compare with someone else if possible.

59

Health: illness

A Common problems

A: I **don't feel well.**
B: **What's the matter?**
A: I've got a **sore throat** and I keep **sneezing.**
B: Oh, you've probably got a **cold** or **flu.**
You should go to bed.
A: Yes, I think I will.

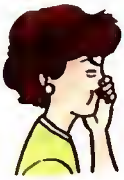

She's sneezing.

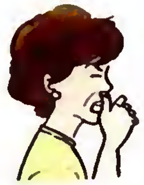

She's coughing.

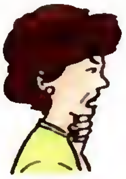

She's got a sore throat.

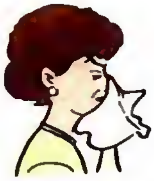

She's blowing her nose.

She's got a temperature.

What's the matter?	*How do you know?* (the symptoms)	*cause of illness*
I've got a **cold.**	sneezing, a sore throat, a **cough**	a **virus**
I've got **flu.** (= like a cold but more serious)	same as for a cold + **high temperature,** e.g. 40°	a virus
I've got **diarrhoea.**	I keep going to the toilet.	often food, or a virus
I **feel sick.**	I want to **vomit.** (= **be sick**)	many, e.g. food, illness
I've got a **hangover.**	headache, feel sick	too much alcohol

For these **illnesses**, you can go to a doctor or a **chemist** (= pharmacy). The doctor may give you a **prescription** (= paper with an order for medicine) that you get from the chemist.

B Aches and pains

We use the noun **ache** for **toothache, stomachache, backache, earache** and a **headache.** For other parts of the body we use **pain.** With both nouns, we often use the verb **get.**

I've got a **terrible headache.** (= a bad headache)
I often **get backache.**
I woke up with a **terrible pain** in my chest.
I **get** a **pain** in my leg when I run.

Ache is also a verb, describing a pain which continues for a long time but is not strong.
By the end of the day, my feet were **aching.**

Hurt is common as a verb, used to describe a pain which is stronger or more sudden.
My throat **hurts** when I speak.
Where does it **hurt?** (= Where is the pain?)

The most common adjective is **painful.**
A: Did it hurt when you had the **fillings?** (= when the dentist fills a hole/cavity in the tooth)
B: It was quite **painful** when she gave me the **injection.**

C Serious illnesses

Smoking is a major cause of **lung cancer.**
He had a **heart attack** and died almost immediately.
Hepatitis is a **disease affecting** the **liver.**
Many people **suffer from** (= have the illness of) **asthma.**
(= chest illness causing breathing problems)

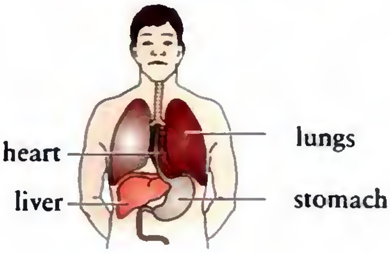

Exercises

59.1 Write down the main symptom or symptoms for these conditions.

1 A cold: sneezing, ...
2 Flu: ....
3 A hangover: ....
4 Diarrhoea: ....

59.2 Look at the underlined letters in these pairs of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Look at the examples first and use the pronunciation guide in the Index to help you.

Examples ache pain same
cold stomach different

1 disease diarrhoea
2 chemist ache
3 lung suffer
4 virus illness
5 flu virus
6 cough enough

59.3 Complete the sentences with 'a' or nothing (–).

1 I think I'm getting .... cold.
2 Mary's got .... flu.
3 I've got .... backache.
4 I've got .... terrible headache.
5 He's got .... diarrhoea.
6 She's got .... cancer.

59.4 Look at the pictures and write what happened in the space below. Try to use at least three or four words or phrases from the opposite page.

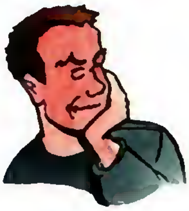

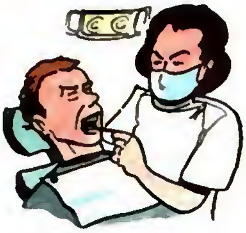

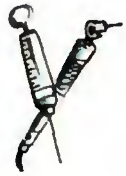

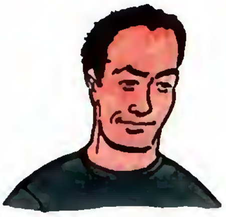

I had ....
....

59.5 Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

1 I don't .... well. I think I'll go to bed early.
2 I hit my hand on the desk and now it really ....
3 Do you often .... backache?
4 They say she died of a heart ....
5 She had some apples that weren't ready to eat; now she's got stomach....................................
6 I've got this terrible .... in my neck from sleeping in the wrong position.
7 He died of .... cancer but he never smoked a cigarette in his life.
8 I went to the doctor, and she gave me a .... for some antibiotics.
9 There are different forms of hepatitis; one is a more serious .... than the other.
10 My back .... from sitting at that computer all day.

60 Health: injuries

A Common injuries

An **injury** is damage to part of your body. These are common **injuries**.

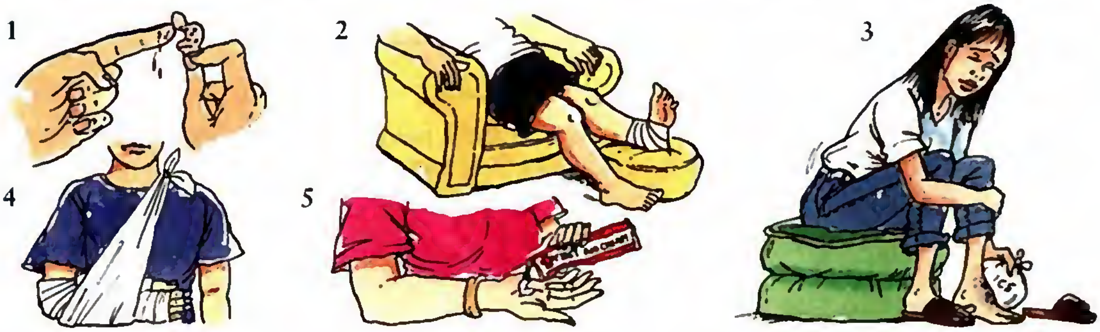

NOTE
Cut, bruise, burn and **bandage** can all be used as nouns or verbs with the same form.

What's the problem?	*How did it happen?*	*result*	*solution*
1 She **cut** her **finger**	using a knife	it's **bleeding**	put a **plaster** on it
2 He **twisted** his **ankle**	running for a bus	he can't walk	put a **bandage** on it
3 She's got a **bruise**	she hit her ankle when she fell over	it's **swollen** black and blue	ice pack
4 He **broke** his **arm**	he fell off his bike	he can't use it	a **sling**
5 She **burnt** her **hand**	on the kettle	it's very **painful**	put **cream** on it

The verb **hurt** is often used to describe the pain from injuries. It has different structures:
I **hurt** my back in the garden. She **hurt herself** when she fell over.
I hit my leg against the table and it **really hurts**. (= it's a bad pain)

B Hospital treatment

John **fell out of** the window and **hit his head** on the ground. His wife called an **ambulance** but John was still **unconscious** when it arrived. He was **rushed to hospital** (= taken to hospital very quickly) and when he **came round** (= became conscious), he didn't know where he was.

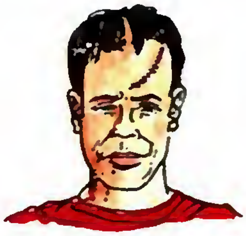

Two players jumped for the ball and **bumped into each other** (= hit each other but it was an accident). One **cut** his head and had to **go to hospital**. He needed ten **stitches**.

C Wounds and injuries

Wound and **injury** describe damage to the body, but a **wound** is usually caused by a **weapon** (e.g. gun or knife) and happens in fights and wars. The verbs are **wound** and **injure**.

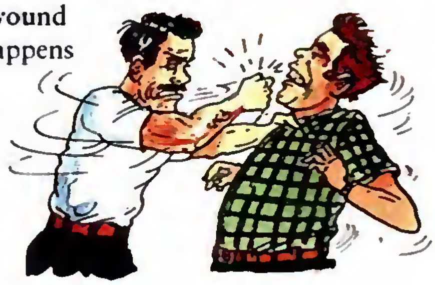

He was **seriously** (= badly) **injured** in a car crash.
Two of the soldiers were **wounded**.
Someone **shot** him (with a gun).
He got into a **fight** and he was **beaten up**.

Exercises

60.1 Check the pronunciation of these words in the Index (especially the underlined letters). Practise saying them.

injury
wound
blood
swollen
bandage
bruise
unconscious
weapon

60.2 Complete the table. Use a dictionary to help you.

noun	*verb*	*noun*	*verb*
cut	....	blood	....
injury	....	bruise	....
shot	....	treatment	....

60.3 Look at the pictures and write the story.

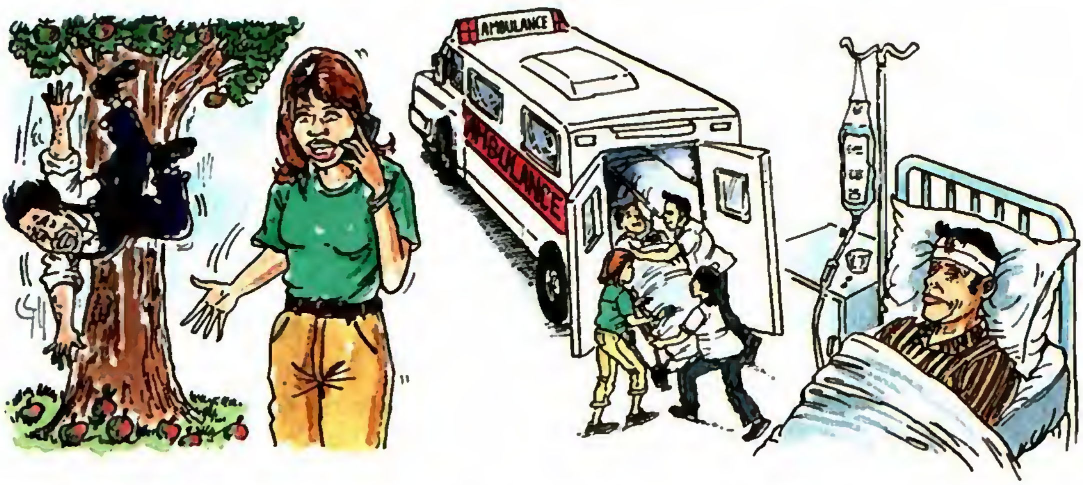

Now compare your story with the story about John on the opposite page.

60.4 Match the wounds/injuries on the left with the results on the right.

1 He hit his head on the door.
2 He bruised his leg.
3 He broke his leg.
4 He cut his finger.
5 He burnt himself.
6 He got into a fight.

a It's swollen and it hurts when he walks.
b He was beaten up quite badly.
c It's very painful.
d He's got a big bruise on it.
e It's still bleeding.
f He won't be able to walk for six weeks.

60.5 Answer these questions about yourself. If the answer is 'yes', when did it happen? How? How did you feel? If possible, ask another person the same questions.

1 Have you ever broken your arm or leg?
2 Have you ever needed stitches?
3 Have you ever been unconscious?
4 Have you ever been in an ambulance?
5 Have you ever got into a fight?

61 Clothes

A Pockets, buttons, collar, sleeves

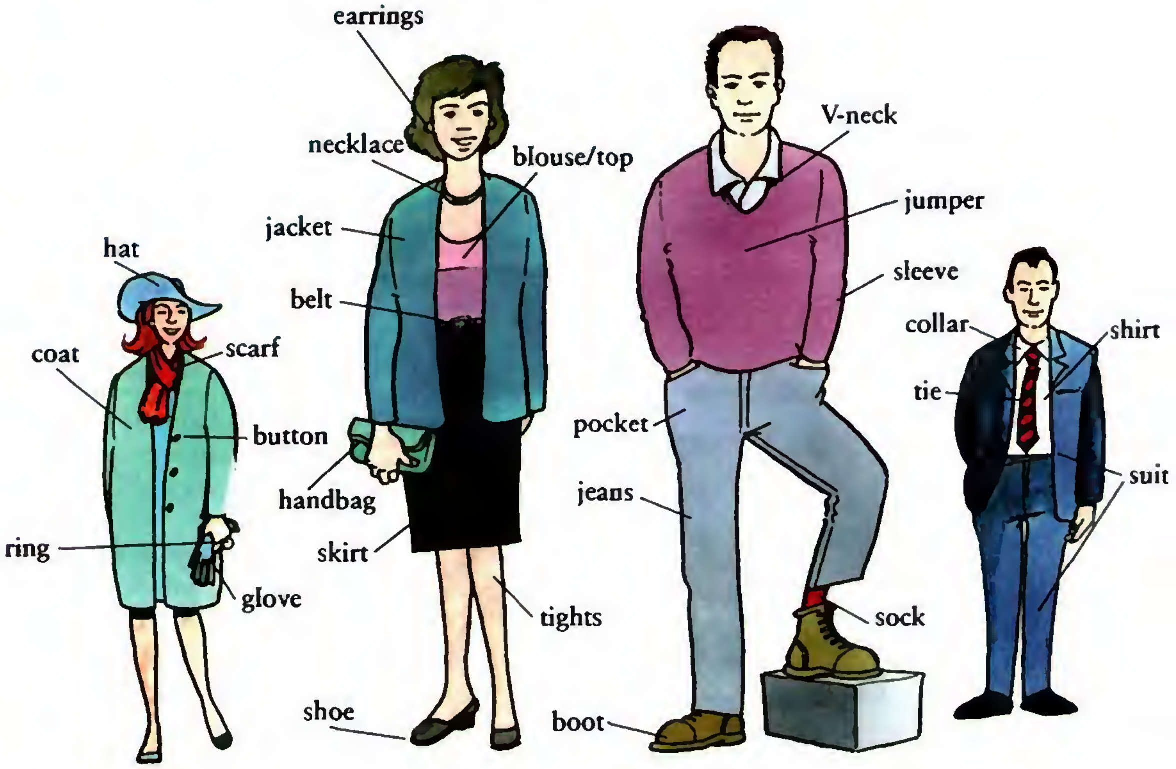
earrings
necklace
blouse/top
V-neck
jumper
jacket
hat
sleeve
belt
collar
shirt
coat
scarf
tie
button
pocket
suit
handbag
jeans
ring
skirt
glove
tights
sock
shoe
boot

For 'buttons' and 'zips', we usually use the verbs **do up** and **undo**.
Do up your jacket before you go out. I can't **undo** these buttons – my hands are too cold.

B Verbs and phrases used with clothes

NOTE
See Unit 24 for information about word order with phrasal verbs, e.g. put on, hang up, etc.

The following text shows common verbs and phrases in an everyday context.

I got up at 7.30, had a shower, **got dressed** (= put on my clothes), and had breakfast. It was a cold morning so I **put on** my coat and left home about 8.20. When I got to work I **took** my coat **off** and **hung it up** behind the door. It was hot in the office, so I **took** my jacket **off** as well. During my lunch break I had a look round the shops. I saw a nice jacket in one place and **tried it on**, but it didn't **fit me** – it was too small and they didn't have the **right** size. When I got home I **took off** my suit and **changed into** jeans and a T-shirt.

C 'Too' + adjective and adjective + 'enough'

The man on the right is wearing a suit but it doesn't fit him very well – the jacket is too small (= not big enough), and the trousers are too short. (= not long enough)

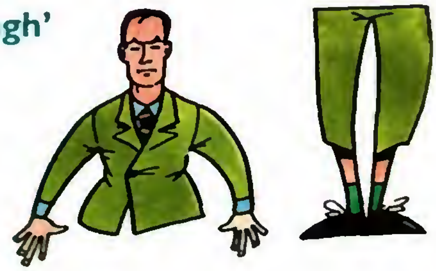

Exercises

61.1 Finish this sentence with five more different items of clothing.

I need a pair of ....trousers....................
....
....
....
....
....

61.2 Put these sentences in a logical order. The first one has been done for you.

a He took off his jeans.
b He put his shoes back on.
c He tried on the trousers.
d He went into the changing room. 1
e He took them off.
f He paid for the trousers.
g He took off his shoes.
h He went back to the sales assistant.
i He put his jeans on again.

61.3 What's different? Find five things in the first picture that aren't in the second picture.

1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....

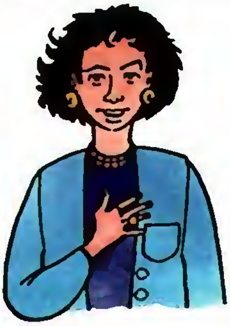

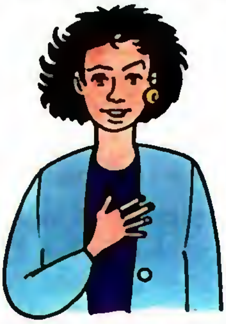

61.4 Fill the gaps with suitable words. (More than one answer may be possible in some cases.)

1 She decided to wear a .... and a .... instead of a dress.
2 I tried on a .... ; the jacket was fine but the .... were too short.
3 It was hot, so I took off my jacket and .... , and rolled up the sleeves of my ....
4 It was very embarrassing because I couldn't .... up the zip on my jeans.
5 I wanted to buy the jacket, but unfortunately the one I tried on wasn't big .... and they didn't have it in a bigger ....
6 I tried on a jumper, but the medium size was .... big and the small size wasn't big ....

61.5 Write down:

1 Five things usually worn by women only
2 Five things worn by men and women
3 Five more items of clothing you have at home

62

Shops and shopping

A Shop and shopping

Where's the **shop assistant**? (= person who works in a shop; also called sales assistant)
The shoes were in the **shop window**. (= the window at the front of the shop)
We went to the new **shopping centre**. (= a place with many shops, outside or indoors)
I just went **window shopping**. (= looking round the shops without buying anything)
Did you make a **shopping list**? (= a list of things to buy)
I **went shopping** yesterday. (= I bought things, e.g. clothes, CDs, a present for my sister)
I **did the shopping** yesterday. (= I bought food and things for the house)
You have to **shop around** for the best prices. (= go to different shops to find the best price)

B Types of shop and what they sell

name of shop	*what they sell*
department store	almost everything (furniture, clothes, **electrical appliances**, e.g. TV and washing machine, **toys**, e.g. dolls, games, **jewellery**, e.g. rings, earrings)
supermarket	most things, but especially food and **household goods**, e.g. cleaning products and kitchen equipment, etc. In some, you buy meat at a **meat counter** and fish at a **fish counter**. (= place where people serve you)
newsagent('s)	newspapers, cigarettes, **stationery**, e.g. writing paper, envelopes
butcher('s)	meat
chemist('s)	medicine, baby products, shampoo, soap, toothpaste, etc.
off-licence	specialist shop for wine, beer and soft drinks

NOTE
Most other shops are just '+ shop', e.g. shoe shop or record shop. Some countries have stalls/shops in the street for newspapers. We call them **kiosks**.

C In a clothes shop

ASSISTANT: Can I help you?
CUSTOMER: Yes, **I'm looking for** (= I want) a blue jumper. *or*
No, **I'm just looking**, thanks. (= I don't need help) *or*
I'm being served, thanks. (= another assistant is already serving/helping me)
ASSISTANT: What **size** are you? (e.g. large? small? medium? 14? 16?)
CUSTOMER: Where's the **changing room**? (= the room where you try on clothes)
fitting room?
ASSISTANT: It's down there on the right.
CUSTOMER: Yes, I'll **take** this one/these. (= Yes, I want to buy this one/these.)
CUSTOMER: No, I'll **leave** it thanks. (= No, I don't want to buy it/them.)
CUSTOMER: Excuse me. Where do I pay for these?
ASSISTANT: Over at the **cash desk** (also **till**).
CUSTOMER: And can I pay by **credit card**?

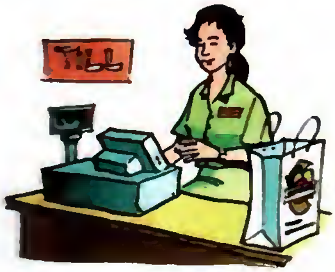

Exercises

62.1 What 'general' word on the opposite page describes each group of items below.

1 meat .... e.g. lamb, beef, pork
2 .... e.g. shoes, trousers, jacket
3 .... e.g. potatoes, beans, onions
4 .... e.g. sofa, armchair, table
5 .... e.g. television, washing machine, food processor
6 .... e.g. ring, earrings, necklace
7 .... e.g. teddy bear, plastic gun, Lego
8 .... e.g. writing paper, envelopes

62.2 Where would you buy these things? Choose from the shops below.

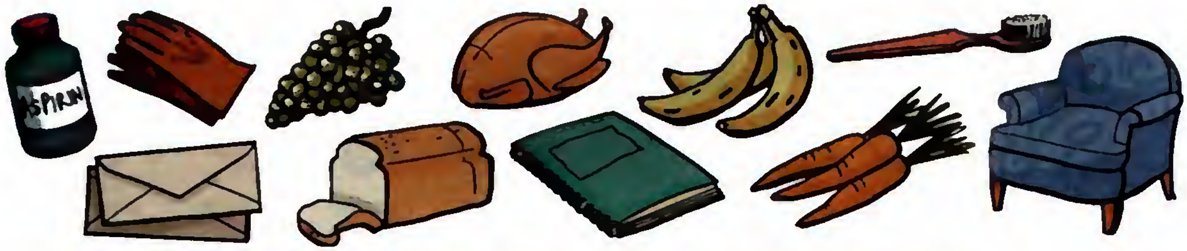

butcher newsagent chemist supermarket department store

Write down two more things you could buy in each shop.

62.3 What word or phrase is being defined in these sentences?

1 A shop where you buy meat.
2 A place with many shops, either outside or indoors.
3 A person who works in a shop.
4 The place where you can try on clothes in a shop.
5 The place where you pay for things in a shop.
6 To look round the shops without planning to buy anything.
7 A shop where you buy wine, beer and soft drinks.
8 A shop where you buy medicines, baby products, shampoo, etc.

62.4 Complete this shopping dialogue with a suitable word or phrase.

ASSISTANT A: Can I help you?
CUSTOMER: Yes, I'm (1) .... a blouse like this, but in blue.
ASSISTANT A: I see. And what (2) .... are you?
CUSTOMER: Er, 12 usually.
ASSISTANT A: OK, I'll just go and see if we've got any.
CUSTOMER: Fine.
ASSISTANT B: Can I help you?
CUSTOMER: No, it's OK, I'm (3) .... thanks.
ASSISTANT A: Here we are. The last one in stock.
CUSTOMER: Great. Can I try it on?
ASSISTANT A: Yes, of course. The (4) .... is just over there. *[pause]*
How was it?
CUSTOMER: Yeah, fine. I'll (5) ....

63 Food

A Fruit

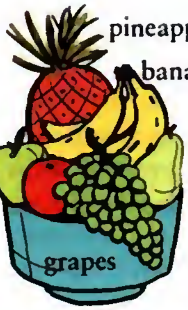

lemon
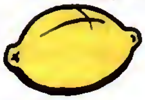

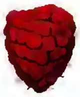
raspberry

plum
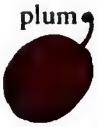

cherries
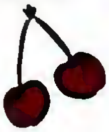

melon
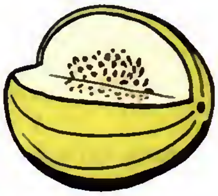

strawberry
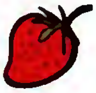

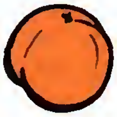
peach

You normally **peel** oranges and bananas (= remove the skin) before you eat them.

B Vegetables

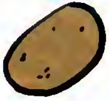
potato

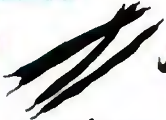
green beans

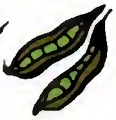
peas

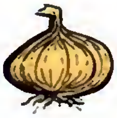
onion

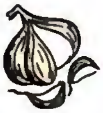
garlic

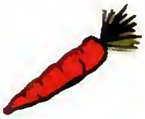
carrot

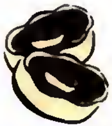
mushrooms

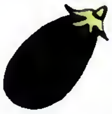
aubergine

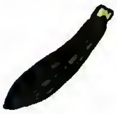
courgette

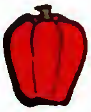
red pepper

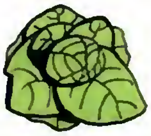
cabbage

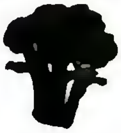
broccoli

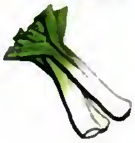
leeks

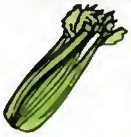
celery

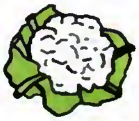
cauliflower

I peeled the potatoes and **chopped** the carrots. (= cut into small pieces)

C Salad

A **salad** is usually a mixture of uncooked vegetables. In Britain it often contains **lettuce**, but may also contain **tomato**, **cucumber**, and other things. We often put **salad dressing** (usually a mixture of **oil** and **vinegar**, or oil and lemon juice) on salad.

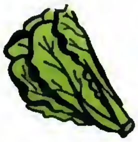
lettuce

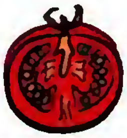
tomato

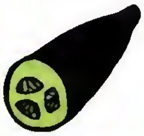
cucumber

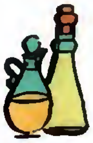
vinegar oil

D Meat (animals), fish and seafood

animal:	cow	calf (= young cow)	lamb (= young sheep)	pig	chicken
meat:	**beef**	**veal**	**lamb**	**pork**	**chicken**

NOTE
A person who does not eat meat is a **vegetarian**.

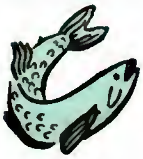
salmon

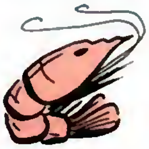
prawn

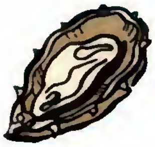
oyster

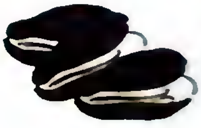
mussels

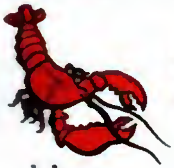
lobster

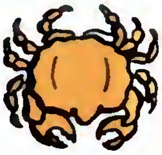
crab

Exercises

63.1 Write down at least one vegetable and fruit:

	vegetable	*fruit*
1 beginning with the letter 'p'	potato, peas	....
2 beginning with the letter 'b'	....	....
3 beginning with the letter 'm'	....	....
4 beginning with the letter 'c'	....	....
5 beginning with the letter 'a'	....	....

63.2 Match words in the two boxes where the underlined letters are pronounced the same.

Example banana melon

lettuce
orange
aubergine
raspberry
onion
~~banana~~
salmon
prawn

tomato
pork
calf
broccoli
~~melon~~
chicken
lamb
mushroom

63.3 Which is the odd one out in each group, and why?

1 pork veal salmon beef Salmon is a fish, the others are meat.
2 lettuce leek tomato cucumber
3 peach onion mushroom courgette
4 chicken lamb beef crab
5 grape cherry aubergine melon

63.4 Do you eat the skin (= the outside) of these fruits *always*, *sometimes* or *never*? Make three lists.

apple
strawberries
orange
pear
banana
pineapple
cherries
peach
melon
grapes

63.5 What do we call:

1 the meat from a cow?
2 the meat from a calf?
3 the meat from a pig?
4 the main vegetable in a green salad?
5 the two things we often put on salad? Oil and .... or ....

63.6 Using words from the opposite page, complete these sentences about yourself and your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 In my country .... is/are more common than ....
2 In my country .... is/are more expensive than ....
3 In my country a mixed salad usually contains ....
4 In my country we don't grow ....
5 And we don't often eat ....
6 Personally, I prefer .... to ....

64

Cooking and restaurants

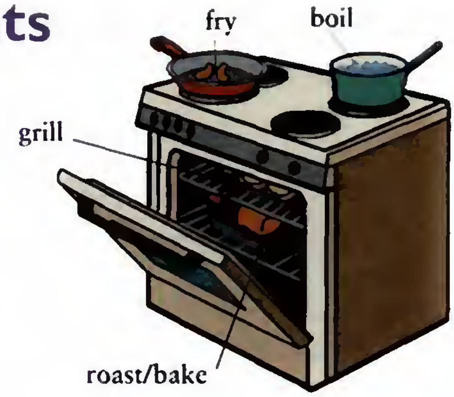

A Ways of cooking food

NOTE
Food which is not cooked is **raw**.

boil: in water, e.g. potatoes or rice
fry: in oil or butter above the heat, e.g. sausages
grill: under the heat, e.g. toast or meat
roast: in the oven using oil, e.g. meat
bake: in the oven without oil, e.g. cakes

B How would you like your steak?

Rare (= cooked quickly and red inside); **medium-rare** (= cooked longer but still red in the middle); **medium** (= cooked more and pink); or **well-done**. (= cooked longer and not pink)

C What does it taste like?

Taste the sauce (= try a bit to see if it's good) and add salt if necessary.
You can really **taste** the garlic in this.   It's very **tasty**. (= lots of flavour; a positive word)

D Describing food and drink

salty: lots of salt   **hot/spicy**: lots of spices, e.g. curry, chilli
sweet: lots of sugar (*opp* **bitter**, e.g. very strong coffee, or **sour**, e.g. lemons)
fresh: recently produced or picked, e.g. **fresh bread**, **fresh fruit**
fattening: food which makes you **put on weight/get fat**, e.g. cream, cakes, etc.
healthy: good for your health/fitness, e.g. salad or fruit
chilled (= very cold), e.g. white wine is usually chilled
still: describes water without gas; **sparkling** is water with gas (also called **fizzy water**)

E A typical menu

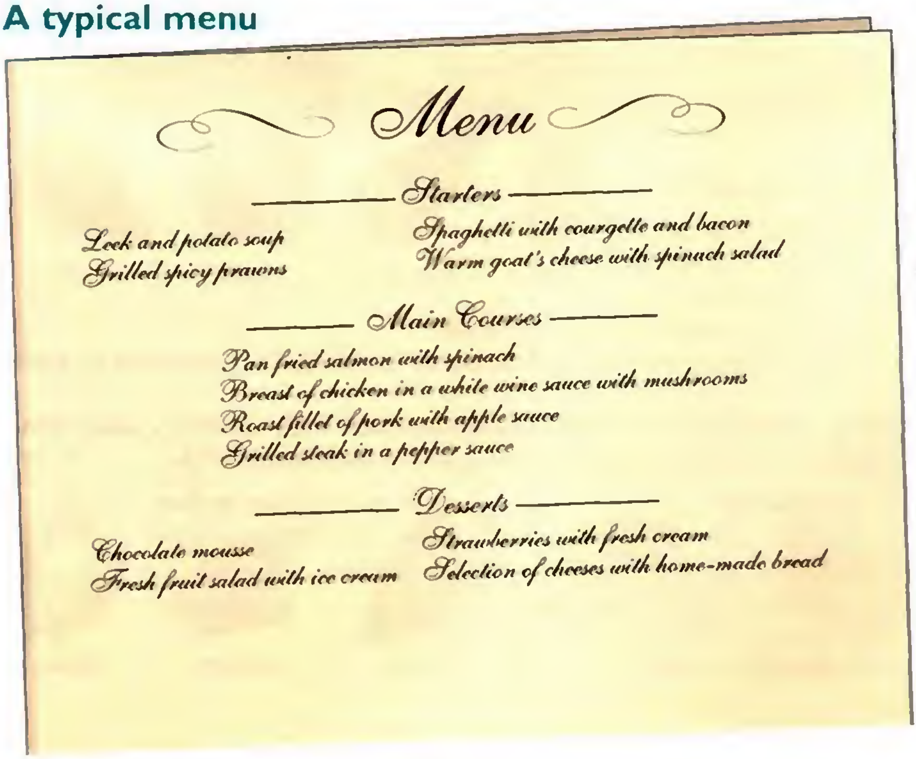

Menu

Starters

Leek and potato soup
Grilled spicy prawns
Spaghetti with courgette and bacon
Warm goat's cheese with spinach salad

Main Courses

Pan fried salmon with spinach
Breast of chicken in a white wine sauce with mushrooms
Roast fillet of pork with apple sauce
Grilled steak in a pepper sauce

Desserts

Chocolate mousse
Fresh fruit salad with ice cream
Strawberries with fresh cream
Selection of cheeses with home-made bread

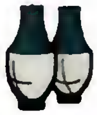
salt and pepper

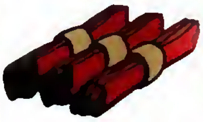
napkins

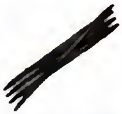
toothpicks

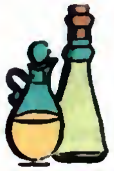
vinegar oil

Exercises

64.1 Do you often eat the following food in your country? If so, do you eat it in the same way?

Example In Britain, we often eat 'fish' but not usually 'raw fish'.

raw fish	fried rice
fried eggs	baked potatoes
roast beef	raw spinach
roast peppers	boiled eggs
grilled cheese	baked bananas

64.2 Look at the menu on the opposite page again, and answer these questions.

1 Which starter doesn't contain vegetables? Grilled spicy prawns
2 Which dish contains pasta?
3 Which main course may be rare or well-done?
4 Which main course is definitely cooked in the oven?
5 Which main course will probably be quite spicy?
6 Which main course contains alcohol?
7 Which dessert(s) will be quite sweet?
8 If you don't want to put on weight, which would probably be the best dish for the main course?

64.3 Choose an adjective from the opposite page which could describe these things.

	adjective		*adjective*
honey	sweet	bacon	....
lemon	....	fillet steak	....
bread	....	mineral water	....
cakes	....	coffee	....

64.4 Answer these questions about the food you like, and eating in your country. If possible, ask another person the same questions.

1 Do you eat steak? If so, how do you like it cooked?
2 Do you like hot spicy food?
3 In restaurants, do you normally drink still or sparkling water?
4 Do waiters normally leave fresh bread on the table?
5 Do you normally eat a starter, main course and dessert when you eat out?
6 How many of these do you normally find on the table in a café or restaurant in your country?

salt	YES/NO	pepper	YES/NO	oil	YES/NO
vinegar	YES/NO	toothpicks	YES/NO	napkins	YES/NO

7 Generally, do you add more salt to your food when you eat in cafés or restaurants?
8 Do you think that food in your country is generally quite fattening?

65

City life

A Buildings and places

Here are some of the things you will find in most towns and cities.

commercial centre (= area with lots of banks and company offices)
shopping centre (= place with many shops, either indoors or outdoors)
car parks (= places to leave many cars)
factories (= buildings where you make/manufacture things, e.g. cars)
skyscrapers/high-rise buildings (= buildings with many floors)
libraries (= places where you can borrow books)
suburbs (= areas outside the centre of town where people live)

B People on the move

For many people, the worst time of day is the **rush hour** (= the time when people travel to and from work, e.g. 7–9 in the morning). At this time of day the **public transport system** (= trains and buses) has to **cope with** (= manage something which is difficult) the people who live in the city, and also **commuters** (= people who live in the country but travel into the city for work). The roads get **congested** (= busy and full of cars) and people are always **in a hurry** (= want to get to another place very quickly). For many, this is very **stressful.** (= makes you nervous and anxious)

C Going out (= going to places for social reasons)

I live and work in the suburbs, but I usually **go into town** (= the town centre) two or three times a week. In the evening, it is pretty **lively** (= lots of people and lots of things happening), and **there's plenty to do** (= lots of possibilities, e.g. bars, discos, etc.). One problem is that **there's nowhere to park** in the centre, so I usually **get/take a bus** into town and **take/get a taxi** home if I'm late.

There are many common phrases using this construction: **there's plenty to do; there's nothing to do; there's plenty to see; there's nowhere to go; there's nowhere to park,** etc.

D Advantages and disadvantages

'The best thing about living in a city is that:'
There's good **nightlife.** (= places to go at night, e.g. bars, discos, cinemas)
There's a **wide range of shops.** (= many shops selling different things)
You can get **whatever you want.** (= buy everything and anything you want)
There are lots of **cultural activities.** (e.g. museums, concerts, films)
It's **cosmopolitan.** (= full of people from many different countries and cultures)
There are more **job opportunities.** (= easier to find work)

'The worst thing about living in a city is that:'
It's very **crowded.** (= full of people)
People are more **aggressive.** (= seem angry and very unfriendly)
It can be **noisy** (*opp* quiet) and **dangerous.** (*opp* safe)
The streets are often **dirty** (*opp* clean) and it's **polluted.** (= dirty air)
There's **traffic congestion** (= too many cars) and **parking** is difficult.
There's a high **crime rate.** (= number of crimes)
You have a higher **cost of living.** (e.g. houses are more expensive, so is transport)

Exercises

65.1 Combine words from the left and right to form common compound words and phrases.

1 rush
2 traffic
3 night
4 cost
5 crime
6 shopping
7 high-rise
8 car

a building
b life
c rate
d hour
e park
f of living
g congestion
h centre

65.2 Complete the dialogues in a suitable way. Each gap is one word.

1 A: The town is full of people from different countries and cultures.
B: Yes, it's very ......cosmopolitan........
2 A: There are cinemas, theatres, museums, art galleries and everything.
B: Yes, I know, there are lots of ....
3 A: There's a .... of shops.
B: Oh yes. You can buy .... you want.
4 A: There's plenty to do in the evening.
B: Yes, the .... is great.
5 A: There's a better chance of finding work.
B: Yes, there are more job ....
6 A: The transport system has to .... with the people who live in the country but work in town.
B: Yes, I know, there are too many ....

65.3 Complete this table of opposites.

towns and cities	*villages in the countryside*
......noisy......	quiet and peaceful
....	clean air
....	safe
....	not much traffic
....	nothing to do in the evening

Put a tick ✓ beside each answer you agree with, and a ✗ beside each answer you don't.

65.4 Think of your journey to school, college or work. How many of these do you see or pass?

a car park
a library
a factory
suburbs
a museum
a railway station
commuters
lots of traffic
skyscrapers
a shopping centre

65.5 Do you live in a big town or city? If so, answer questions 1a-b. If not, answer 2a-b.

1a For me, the best thing about living in a big town/city is that ....
1b The worst thing about living in a big town/city is that ....
2a For me, the best thing about not living in a big town/city is that ....
2b The worst thing about not living in a big town/city is that ....

66

Life in the country

A Surrounded by nature

I **grew up** (= spent my childhood) in a **rural area** (= an area in the country; *opp* an **urban area**). It was quite a **remote area** (= an area far from towns), and we lived in an old **cottage** (= a type of house, often small, you find in the country). My sister and I played a lot in the **woods** (= an area of trees like a small forest), not far from the nearest **village** (= a place smaller than a town). I loved being in the **country**. (NOT ~~I loved to be in the nature~~.)

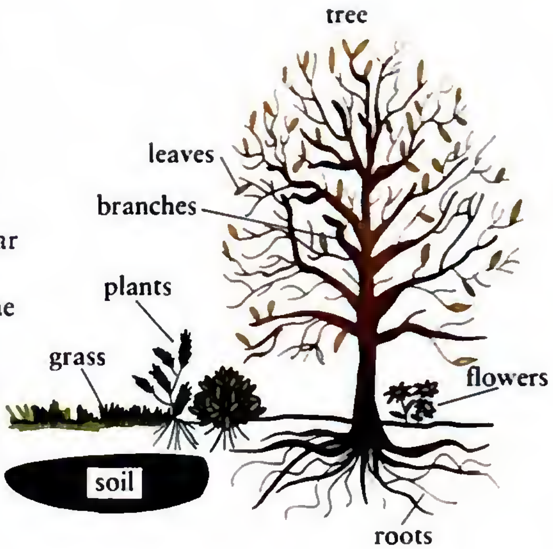

B Working in the country

A lot of land in the **country/countryside** (both words are used) is used for **agriculture/ farming**. Some **farms grow crops** (e.g. wheat, apples and potatoes) and some **keep animals** (e.g. cows, sheep and pigs). When I was younger, I **worked on a farm** during my school holidays.

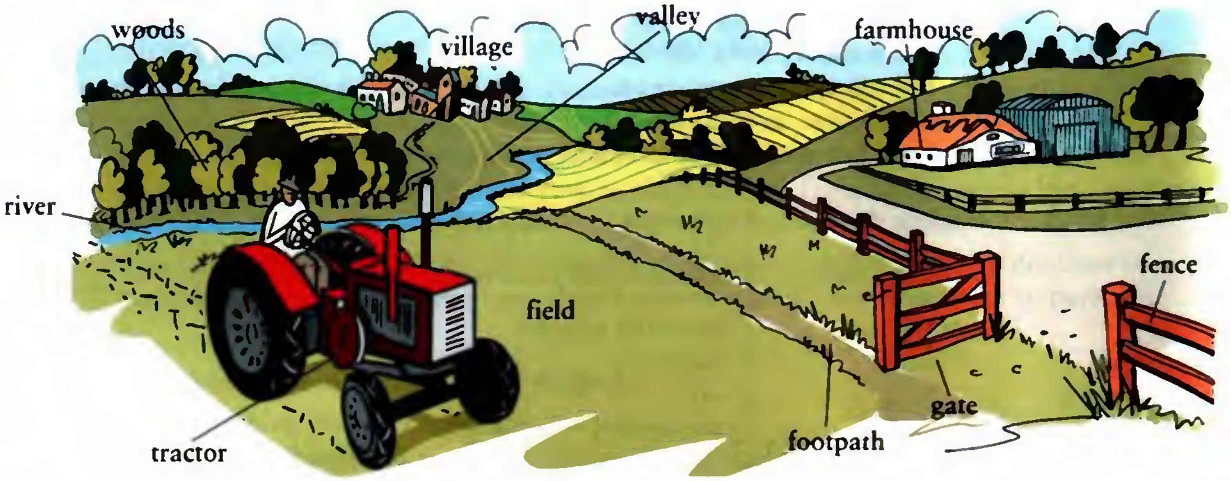

C Advantages and disadvantages

NOTE
The phrase **you get** (= there exists/you find) is very common (*opp* **you don't get**).

'The best thing about living in the country is that:'
You get **peace and quiet**. (a common phrase to describe a place that is quiet and calm)
You get **fresh air**. (= air outside a building or town which is clean)
You're **surrounded by** lovely **scenery** and you can walk in the **countryside**.
The **pace of life** (= the amount of activity in life) is slower and more relaxed.

'The worst thing about living in the country is that:'
There isn't much **nightlife**.
Public transport (= buses and trains) is **hopeless**. (= terrible)
You don't get many **shops**.
There isn't much **privacy** (= private life) because everyone knows what you are doing.

Exercises

66.1 **You find these things in nature and they all grow, but the words are jumbled. What are they?**

1 seret *trees*
2 sargs
3 velase
4 tnpsal
5 toros
6 woserlf

66.2 **Fill the gaps with the correct adverb or preposition.**

1 Have you ever lived .... the country?
2 I grew .... in a small village.
3 Have you ever worked .... a farm?
4 It's wonderful to be surrounded .... nature.
5 I love the pace .... life in a small village.
6 The best thing .... the countryside is that people are very friendly.

66.3 **Study the picture in 66B on the opposite page for one minute, then cover it and complete this text.**

We opened the (1) .... , said 'hello' to the man on the (2) .... , and then followed the (3) .... across the (4) .... and down into the (5) .... We stopped and had a picnic by the river. Afterwards we walked up through the (6) .... and came to a (7) .... where we stopped and bought some bread.

66.4 **Fill the gaps with a suitable word.**

1 Another word for the 'country' is the ....
2 Another word for 'farming' is ....
3 Wheat, rice and potatoes are all examples of .... that farmers grow.
4 The opposite of an 'urban area' is a .... area.
5 A place smaller than a town is called a ....
6 An area where trees grow, smaller than a forest, is called a ....
7 A .... is often quite small, and it's the type of house you find in the country.
8 Buses and trains are examples of public ....

66.5 **Fill the gaps with a suitable word.**

The best (1) .... about living in the country is that:

- there's peace and (2) ....
- you get (3) .... air
- you are (4) .... by nature
- the (5) .... of life is slower and more relaxed

The (6) .... thing about living in the country is that:

- there are no cinemas and discos, so there isn't much (7) ....
- everyone knows what you are doing, so there isn't much (8) ....

Can you add more things to each list?

67

On the road

A Road features

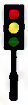

traffic lights

junction

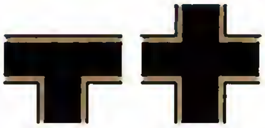

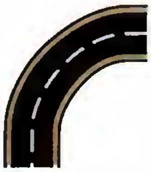

a **bend** in the road
(this road **bends** to the right)

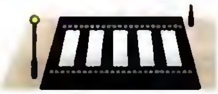

pedestrian crossing
(= where people can cross the road)

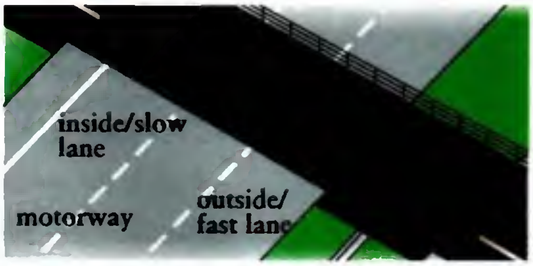

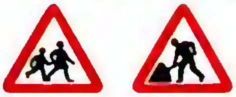

road signs (school, roadworks)

B An accident

There was an **accident** on one of the **main roads** into town this morning. A **lorry** [see picture] **broke down** (= stopped because of a problem) in the middle of the road. It was eight o'clock, a busy time, and with the lorry **blocking** the road (= stopping things from moving in the road), there was soon a long **tailback** (= long line of cars that cannot move). One man in a Mercedes **pulled out** (= moved out to the centre of the road) to go round the lorry, but another car was **coming in the opposite direction**. The driver **braked** (= put his foot on the brake to stop the car), but he couldn't **prevent** the accident (= stop it happening) – the Mercedes **crashed into** the front of his car. The driver of the Mercedes was OK, but the other driver was **badly injured** and both cars were **badly damaged**.

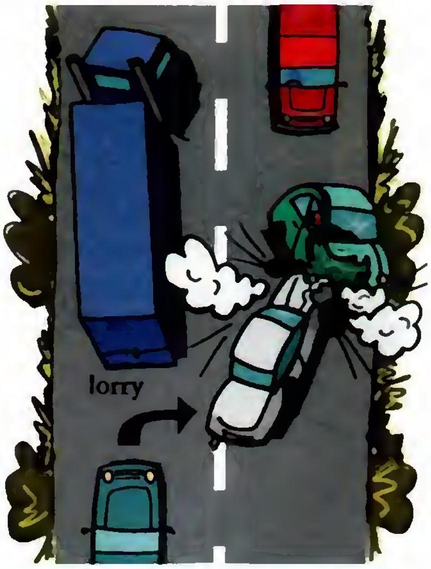

C Giving directions

Go along here, **turn right into** the **main road**, then **take the first turning on your left**. **Keep going** (= continue in this direction), then **turn left** again when you **get to** (= reach/arrive at) the bank.

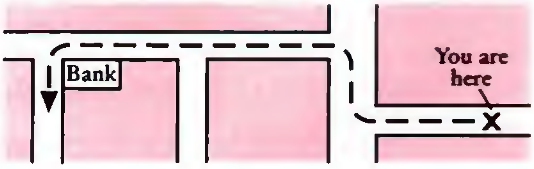

D Common words and phrases

Cars and buses use the **road**; **pedestrians** (= people who walk) use the **pavement**.
Cars mustn't **park** on the pavement.
The **speed limit** on **motorways** in Great Britain is 70 mph (120 kph). The police use **speed cameras** to catch people who are **speeding/breaking the speed limit**. (= going too fast)
Most **petrol stations** (= places where you buy petrol) in Great Britain are **self-service**.
(= there are no people to put the petrol in your car; you serve yourself and then pay)
The other car was going very slowly, so I decided to **overtake** it. (= pass it on the outside)

Exercises

67.1 Complete the text using the map on the right.

Go (1) along this road and turn left at the
(2) .... Then you
(3) .... and
(4) .... right when you
(5) .... to the (6) ....
Then (7) ....
again into (8) .... Road, and the
bank is (9) .... the left just
(10) .... the cinema.

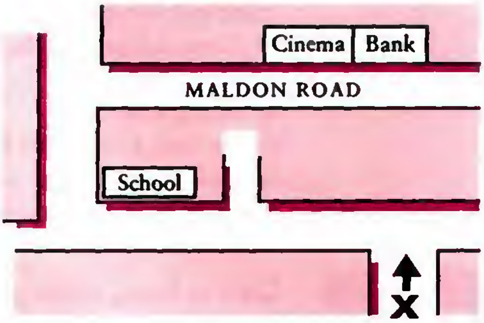

67.2 Fill the gaps with the correct word.

1 It was quite a serious .... ; both drivers were taken to hospital.
2 Almost all the petrol stations round here are self-..................................
3 One driver was badly .... in the crash, and both cars were badly ....
4 There were four or five cars involved in the accident and it .... the road for about half an hour. When I got there, the .... was already about two miles long, and drivers were getting very frustrated.
5 The bicycle hit me just as I stepped off the .... to cross the road.
6 My car .... on the motorway and I had to phone a garage to come and fix it.
7 I was doing about 120kph and then this car .... me doing about 160.
8 I couldn't stop quickly enough, and I .... into the back of the car in front.
9 Cars, motorbikes and bikes can't go down there – it's only for ....

67.3 Many road signs are international. Do you know or can you guess what these mean?

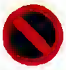
1 You can't ....

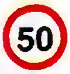

2 50 mph* is the ....

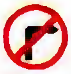
3 You can't ....

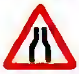
4 There is only one ....

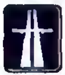
5 End of ....

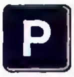

6 Car ....

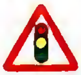
7 Traffic ....

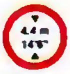
8 Low ....

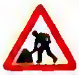
9 Road ....

mph = miles per hour (50 mph = 80 kph approximately)

67.4 Answer these questions about your own country. If possible, compare with someone else.

1 Do you have a speed limit on motorways? If so, what is it?
2 How many lanes do motorways usually have?
3 Do drivers usually stop for pedestrians at pedestrian crossings?
4 Are most petrol stations self-service, or do people serve you?
5 Do many people park their cars on the pavement?
6 Do you have speed cameras at the side of the road?

68

Transport

A Vehicles

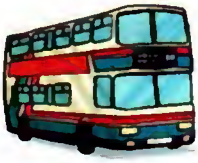
bus

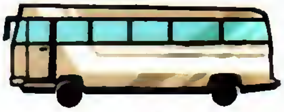
coach

Vehicle is the general word for all types of road transport.

A: How did you get here?
B: I came by bus.
A: And the others?
B: Sue and John came by car.
A: And Paul?
B: He missed the bus, so he had to get a taxi.

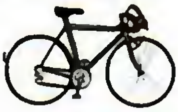
bicycle

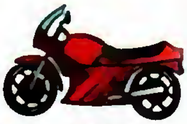
motorbike

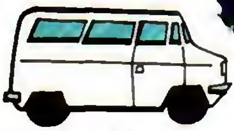
van

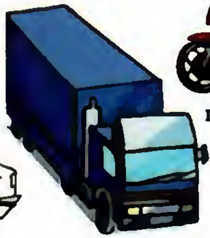
lorry

B Get a bus, take a taxi

NOTE

We can say: **I go to work on my bike** (= bicycle), or **I cycle to work.**

bus	*train*	*plane*	*taxi*	*bicycle*	*car*
driver	driver	pilot	driver	cyclist	driver
drive	drive	fly	drive	ride	drive
(£) fare	fare	air fare	fare	–	–
get/catch/take	get/catch/take	get/take	get/take	go on (my)	go in (my)
get on/off	get on/off	get on/off	get in/out (of)	get on/off	get in/out
journey	journey	flight/journey	–	ride	journey
bus station	railway station	airport	taxi rank	–	–

C Trains

These are things train **passengers** (= people who travel by train) often say or ask:

Single to Edinburgh, please. (= a ticket to Edinburgh)
Return to Bath, please. (= a ticket to Bath and back)
Does this train **go to** (= take me to) Oxford?
Do I have to **change**? (= change to another train)
Is it a **fast train** or a **stopping train**?

A: Which **platform** for Liverpool?
B: Number three.
A: And when is the train **due to arrive**? (= timetabled to arrive)

D Buses

Sometimes buses are **punctual** (= arrive at the correct time), but not always. Where I live, buses should **run** (= travel/operate) every ten minutes, but sometimes I wait at the **bus stop** for half an hour in a **queue** (= line of people), and then three buses come together, and they're all **full up**. (= full of people) Other times the bus is early and I **miss it**. (= I don't catch it)

E Taxis

Taxis show what you have to pay on the **meter**. When you want the driver to stop, you can say this: Could you **drop me** here? (= Could you stop here?) People often give taxi drivers a **tip** (= extra money as well as the fare). For example, if the **fare** is £8.40, you can give the driver £9.

Exercises

68.1 Underline the correct word in brackets in these sentences.

1 You mustn't (ride/drive) a motorbike without a crash helmet in the UK.
2 She told him to (get in/get on) the car and fasten his seat belt.
3 The bus (fare/ticket) is cheaper than the train.
4 Trains to the airport (travel/run) every half hour.
5 The pilot couldn't (drive/fly) the plane in such bad weather.
6 Have a look at the train (schedule/timetable) to see when the next one is due.
7 We were late, so we had to (get/catch) a taxi.
8 They left a bit late and (lost/missed) the bus.

68.2 Write down two different words that can combine with each of the words below.

Example miss the bus the train

1 .... / .... fare
2 get on .... / ....
3 .... / .... station
4 .... / .... driver
5 get in .... / ....
6 .... / .... journey

68.3 Write the names of these vehicles without looking at the opposite page.

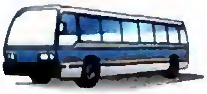

1 ....

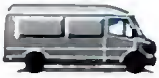

2 ....

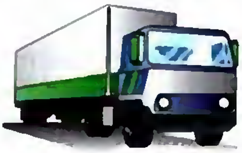

3 ....

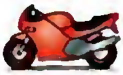

4 ....

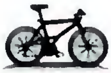

5 ....

68.4 Fill the gaps with the correct word.

1 Our train leaves from .... seven in ten minutes.
2 I waited at the .... for ten minutes, and then two buses arrived at the same time.
3 I couldn't get on the first bus because it was ....
4 After we took off, the .... told us a bit about the plane and the journey.
5 Buses are not very .... Sometimes they come every five minutes, then other times you have to wait for 40 minutes.
6 When I got to the bus stop there was a long .... of people.
7 The flight was fine but we had a terrible .... from the airport to our hotel.
8 I think the next train is .... to arrive in about ten minutes.

68.5 Are these statements true or false in your country?

1 Trains are more punctual than buses.
2 Train fares are more expensive than bus fares.
3 Train journeys are more interesting than bus journeys.
4 Railway stations are nicer places than bus stations.
5 In city centres, taxis are quicker than going in your own car.

69 Work: duties, pay and conditions

A What do you do?

NOTE
You can also say: **I haven't got a job.** (NOT I haven't got ~~a work~~.)

People may ask you about your job. They can ask and you can answer in different ways:

What do you do?	I'm a banker/an engineer/a builder. (I'm + 'a(n)' + job)
What's your job?	I work in a bank/marketing. (work in + place or type of work)
What do you do for a living?	I work for UnionBank/Fiat. (work for + name of company) (= I'm **employed** by Union Bank/Fiat, etc.) I'm **self-employed**. (= I work for myself.)

B What does that involve?

NOTE
We often use **responsible for/in charge** of for part of something, e.g. a department or some of the workers; and **run** for control of all of something, e.g. a company, a shop, a course, etc.

When people ask you to explain your job, they want to know your **responsibilities** (= your duties/what you have to do), or something about your **daily routine** (= what you do every day). They can ask like this: **What does that involve?** (= What do you do in your job?)

General duties/responsibilities
I'm **in charge of/responsible for** security in the **factory**. (= the place where a product is made)
I **deal with/handle** customer **complaints**. (= take all necessary action when customers are unhappy)
I **run** the coffee bar in the museum. (= I am in control of it/I manage it)

Daily duties/routines
I have to **go to/attend** (*fml*) a lot of **meetings**.
I **visit/see/meet clients**. (= people I do business with, who pay for my service)
I **advise** clients. (= give them help and my opinion)
My job **involves** travelling. [Notice the *-ing* form after **involve**.]

C Working hours

For many people in Britain, **working hours** are 8.30–9.00am to 5.00–5.30pm, so people often talk about a **nine-to-five job** (= regular working hours). Some people **do flexitime** (= they can start work earlier or finish later); and some **do shiftwork** (= work at different times, e.g. during the day one week, at night the next). Some people **work/do overtime**. (= work extra hours for more money)

D Pay and conditions

Most workers are **paid** (= receive money) every month. This is called a **salary**. We can also use the verbs **earn/make**, e.g. I **earn/make** $60,000 a year. (= My **salary** is $60,000 a year.)

Some people are paid for the hours they work. The lowest amount for one hour's work is called the **minimum wage**. This amount is decided by the government.
With most jobs you get **4–6 weeks' paid holiday**; you also get **sick pay**. (= pay when you are ill)

The total amount of money you receive in a year is called your **income**. This could be your salary from one job, or the salary from two different jobs. You have to **pay** part of your income to the government; this is called **income tax**.

Exercises

69.1 Match words on the left and right to form compound nouns or phrases.

1 nine-to-
2 working
3 flexi-
4 income
5 minimum

a time
b tax
c wage
d five
e hours

69.2 Match the verbs on the left with the nouns on the right. Use each verb once only.

1 earn
2 work
3 deal with
4 attend
5 run

a overtime
b meetings
c a shop
d complaints
e £2,000 a month

69.3 Rewrite these sentences starting with the words given. The meaning must stay the same.

Example I'm a banker.
I work in banking.

1 What do you do?
What's ....
2 I'm employed by the government.
I work ....
3 I earn $50,000.
My ....
4 I get £20,000 from my teaching job and another £10,000 from writing.
My total ....
5 In my job I look after all the computers in the building.
My job involves ....
6 I'm responsible for one of the departments.
I'm in ....

69.4 This is part of a conversation with a teacher about her job. Write the missing questions.

A: .... ? B: I start at nine and finish at four.
A: .... ? B: Yes, a bit. On certain courses I work until 5.30.
A: .... ? B: 12 weeks. That's one of the good things.
A: .... ? B: Yes, we do, but we have to have a doctor's note.

69.5 What about working conditions in your country?

1 What are normal working hours for most office jobs in your country?
2 How much income tax do most people pay, e.g. 10% or 20% of what they earn?
3 Do workers normally get paid holidays? If so, how many days do they usually get?
4 Is there a minimum wage decided by the government? If so, how much is it?
5 What jobs often involve shiftwork in your country? (Give at least two examples.)

69.6 Think about your own job or the job of someone you know well. How many of the things on the opposite page are true in your country? How is the work different? Can you explain your/their responsibilities and daily duties in English?

70 Jobs

A Manual jobs

These are jobs where you work with your hands, and these are all **skilled**. (= need a lot of training)

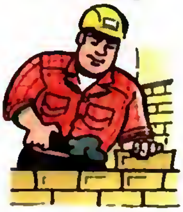
bricklayer
(builds walls with bricks)

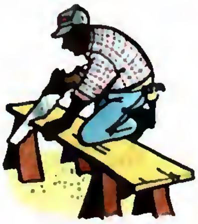
carpenter
(makes things using wood)

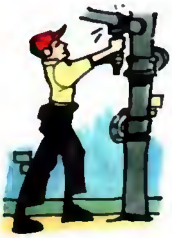
plumber
(installs and repairs water pipes, etc.)

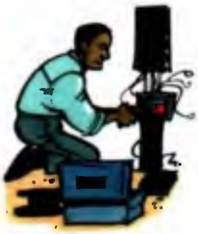
electrician
(installs and repairs electrical things)

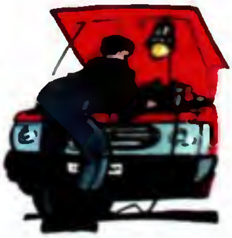
mechanic
(repairs cars)

B Professional people

job	*definition*
architect	designs buildings
lawyer	represents people with legal problems
engineer	plans the building of roads, bridges, machines, etc.
accountant	controls the financial situation of people and companies
university lecturer	teaches in a university
stockbroker (on the **stock market**)	buys and sells **stocks** and **shares** (e.g. on Wall Street)
sales/personnel manager	responsible for sales or personnel staff

C The medical profession

Doctors, **nurses** and **surgeons** (= specialist doctors who operate on people) work in **hospitals**. **GPs** (= general practitioners – doctors who treat people with general problems), **dentists** and **vets** (= animal doctors) work in places we call **surgeries**. All of these people **treat** (= give medical help, e.g. advice, medicines) and **look after** (= care for/take care of) people or animals.

D The armed forces and the emergency services

My cousin **joined/went into the army** when he was 18.

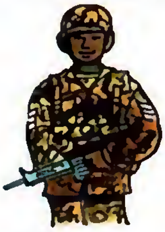
soldier
(in the **army**)

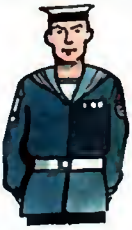
sailor
(in the **navy**)

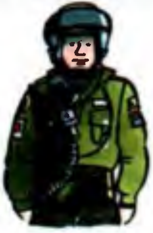
pilot
(in the **air force**)

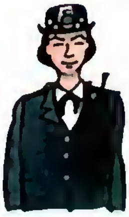
police officer/ policeman/policewoman
(in the **police force**)

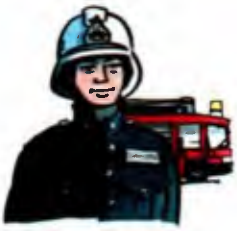
firefighter/fireman
(in the **fire brigade**)

Exercises

70.1 Write down one job from the opposite page that would probably be impossible for these people.

1 Someone who didn't go to university doctor
2 Someone with very bad eyesight (= cannot see very well)
3 Someone who is always seasick on a boat
4 Someone who understands nothing about cars
5 Someone who will not work in the evening or at weekends
6 Someone who is afraid of dogs
7 Someone who is afraid of heights and high places
8 Someone who is terrible at numbers and maths
9 Someone who doesn't like to see blood (= the red liquid in your body)
10 Someone who is a pacifist (= is anti-war)

70.2 Complete these definitions.

1 A university lecturer teaches in a university.
2 An architect ……………………………
3 An accountant ……………………………
4 A vet ……………………………
5 A lawyer ……………………………
6 An engineer ……………………………
7 A bricklayer ……………………………
8 A stockbroker ……………………………
9 A mechanic ……………………………
10 A surgeon ……………………………

70.3 Respond to the statements below, as in the example.

Example A: She's a police officer.
B: Really? When did she join the police force?

1 A: She's a soldier.
B: …………………………… ?
2 A: He's a sailor.
B: …………………………… ?
3 A: He's a fighter pilot.
B: …………………………… ?
4 A: He's a fireman.
B: …………………………… ?

70.4 You have just bought a piece of land and you are planning to build a house on it. Write down at least six people from the opposite page that you may need to help you. What would you need their help for?

Example A bricklayer to build the walls

70.5 Write a list of friends, relatives and neighbours who have jobs. What does each person do?

Example My uncle Jim's an engineer. His wife is an accountant.

71

The career ladder

A

Getting a job

When Paula left school, she **applied for** (= wrote an official request for) a job in a local company. They gave her a job as a **trainee** (= a very junior person in a company). She didn't **earn** much (= didn't get much money/she had a **low salary**), but they gave her **in-house training** (= the company gave her help and advice to become better), and she **went on/did** several **training courses**.

B

Moving up

Paula worked hard and her **prospects** (= future possibilities in the job) looked good. Her **manager/boss** (*infml*) was very pleased with her progress and she soon got a good **pay rise** (= more money every week/month). After two years she **was promoted** (= was given a higher position with more money and responsibility). After five years she was **in charge of** (= the boss of) a department with five **employees** (= workers) **under her**. (= under her control)

employer (= person who employs); **employee** (= worker)
trainer (= person who gives training); **trainee** (= person who receives training)

C

Leaving the company

By the time Paula was 30, she decided she wanted a **fresh challenge** (= a new exciting situation) and a **career change** (= to work in a different kind of job). She wanted to **work abroad** (= work in another country), so she **resigned** (= officially told the company she was **leaving her job**; also **quit** *infml*) and started **looking for** another job. After a month she got a job with an international company which **involved** (= included) a lot of foreign travel. She was very excited about this and at first she really enjoyed it, but ...

D

Hard times

After six months, Paula started to dislike the travelling and living in hotels. She didn't do well in the job either. After a year the company **dismissed/sacked** her (= told her to leave), and Paula found life difficult. She was **unemployed/out of work** (= without a job) for nine months until she got a **part-time job** (= working only part of the day or week) in the kitchen of a restaurant.

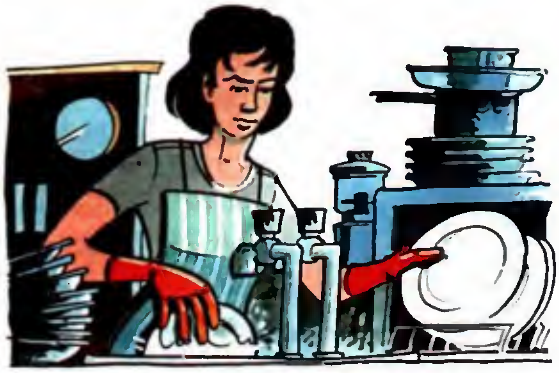

NOTE

Paula didn't **have a job** for nine months. (NOT She didn't have ~~a work.~~)

E

Happier times

Paula loved the restaurant. She enjoyed learning to cook, and two years later she **took over** (= took control of) the restaurant. After a year, she opened a second one, and after 20 years she had 10 restaurants. Last year Paula **retired** (= stopped working completely) at the age of 50, a rich woman.

Exercises

71.1 Write a synonym (= word with a similar meaning) for each of these phrases.

1 sack someone = ...dismiss.................. someone
2 out of work = ...
3 leave a company = ...
4 be given a better position in a company = be ....
5 future possibilities in a job = ...
6 stop working (often at 60 or 65) = ...
7 workers in a company = ...
8 take control of something (e.g. a company) = ...

71.2 Find the logical answer on the right for each of the questions on the left.

1 Why did they sack her?
2 Why did they promote her?
3 Why did she apply for the job?
4 Why did she retire?
5 Why did she resign?
6 Why did she go on the course?

a Because she was 60.
b Because she was late for work every day.
c Because she needed more training.
d Because she was out of work.
e Because she was the best person in the department.
f Because she didn't like her boss.

71.3 Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

1 He's not happy in his own country. He wants to work ....
2 I don't want a full-time job. I'd prefer to work ....
3 She'd like to go on another training ....
4 I'm bored in my job. I need a fresh ....
5 At the end of this year we should get a good pay ....
6 She's got more than a hundred workers under ....
7 I didn't know he was the new manager. When did he take .... ?
8 I know it's not a great job. How much does she .... ?

71.4 Complete the table. Use a dictionary to help you.

verb	*general noun*	*person*
manage	....management..........	....
promote	....	-
employ	....	..................................../....................................
resign	....	-
retire	....	-
train	....	..................................../....................................

71.5 Have you got a job in a company? If so, answer these questions as quickly as you can. If possible, ask another person the same questions.

1 Are you responsible for anything or anyone?
2 Have you had much training from the company?
3 Have you been on any training courses?
4 Have you been promoted from the time you started your job?
5 Do you normally get a good pay rise at the end of each year?
6 What do you think about your future prospects in the company?

72 In the office

A Office equipment

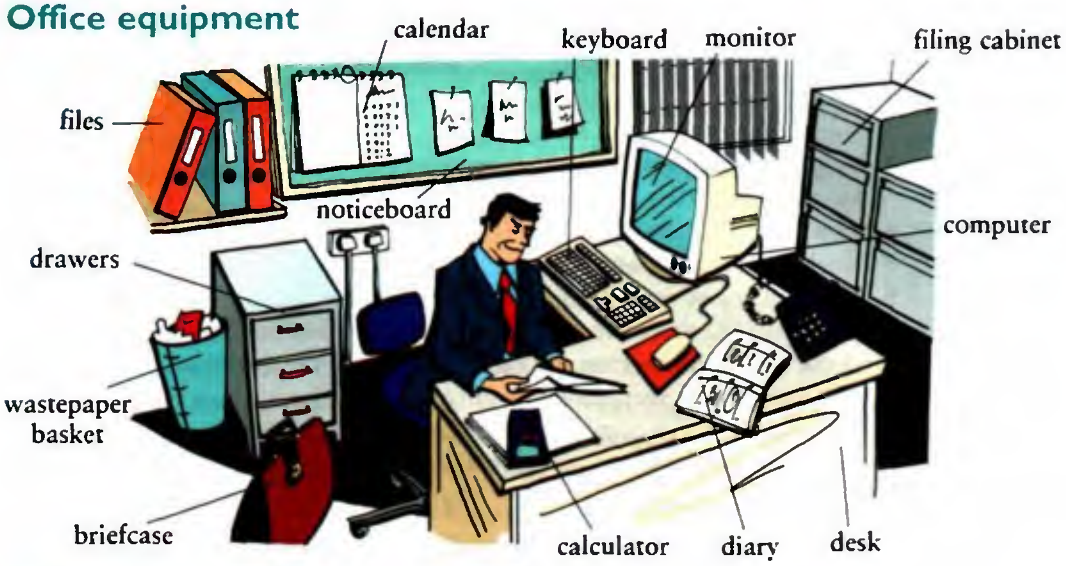

B Office work

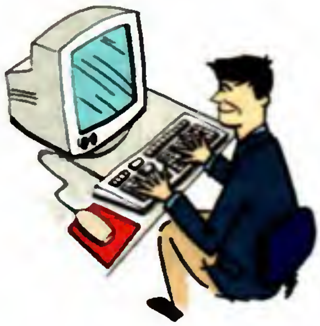

Brian works for a company which **produces** (= **makes/ manufactures** *fml*) furniture. He works in an office, opposite the **factory** where the furniture is made. This is how he spends his day:

He works at a **computer** most of the time, where he **types** [see picture] letters and reports, and **sends** lots of **e-mails**.

He sends **invoices** (= paper showing products sold and the money to pay) to customers, and **does quite a lot of paperwork**, e.g. **filing reports** (= putting them in a file/ filing cabinet), etc.

Occasionally he **shows people round the factory**.

He has to **make appointments** for his boss and put them in the diary. He also **arranges meetings** for managers from different departments and types the **agenda** (= list of things to discuss at a meeting). Sometimes he has to **attend** (= go to *fml*) meetings and **take the minutes**. (= write down everything that is said during the meeting)

C Office problems

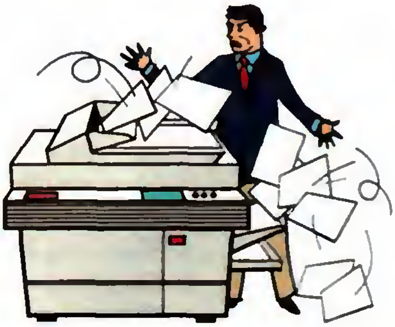

Like most people who work in an office, Brian has his problems. This is how he explains them.

The photocopier **is broken**.
The printer **isn't working**.
We've **run out of** paper. (= the paper is finished) The computer's **down** (= not working) at the moment.
One of my **colleagues** (= people you work with) is **off** (= not at work) today and we've got **loads of work** (= a lot of work *infml*) to do.

Exercises

72.1 Find the best noun in the box to complete each of the sentences.

e-mail
appointment
~~work~~
computer
letter
meeting
minutes
reports
visitors
drawer

1 I've got loads of ....work.................. to do today.
2 I made an .... to see their managing director next week.
3 The pens are in the top .... of my desk.
4 Could we arrange the .... for next Thursday?
5 The .... was down this morning, so I couldn't do anything.
6 I sent her an .... yesterday but she hasn't replied.
7 Have you filed those .... yet?
8 Could you type a .... for me to send to the bank?
9 I'm busy tomorrow. I have to show some .... round the factory.
10 Who took the .... of yesterday's meeting?

72.2 Complete the compound noun in each sentence.

1 I told him to put the details on the notice..................................
2 He put most of the stuff in the filing ....
3 I'm sure I put those reports in my brief..................................
4 It's a very boring job and I spend most of my time doing general paper..................................
5 I threw all that stuff in the wastepaper ....

72.3 Rewrite these sentences. Replace the underlined words with the correct form of the word on the right. Add any other words that are necessary, but the meaning must stay the same.

1 My secretary isn't here today. is off	OFF
2 The photocopier is broken.	WORK
3 We are very busy today.	LOADS
4 There's a problem with the computer.	DOWN
5 We don't have any more paper for the photocopier.	RUN OUT

72.4 What words from the opposite page are being defined here?

1 People you work with. colleagues
2 Something you put on a wall which tells you the date.
3 A book where you often write down all your appointments and things you have to do.
4 A piece of paper which shows the products a customer bought and the money to pay.
5 A building where things (e.g. cars or computers) are made.
6 A list of things to discuss at a meeting.

72.5 Have you got a job? If so, are these statements true for you at work? If you haven't got a job, answer the questions about someone you know well. Compare your answers with a partner if possible.

I work at a computer a lot of the time.
I use e-mail a lot.
I arrange meetings.
I have to do a lot of paperwork.
I show people round my workplace.
I attend quite a lot of meetings.

73 Business and finance

A Banks and business

Companies often borrow money from banks to **finance** (= pay for) **investments** (= things they need to buy to help the company in future, e.g. machines). This money is called a **loan**, and companies have to **pay interest** on it, e.g. if you borrow £1,000 for a year, and the **interest rate** is 10%, then you have to **pay back** £1,000 + £100 **in interest**.

B Profit and loss

The main **aim/objective** of a company (= most important thing for a company to do) is to **make a profit** (= receive more money than it spends; *opp* **make a loss**). If a company does not make a profit or a loss, it **breaks even**. For example:
Most new companies are happy if they **break even** in their first year of business.

Companies receive money from selling their products (this money is called the **turnover**), and they spend money (called the **expenditure**) on these things: **raw materials** (= materials in their natural state, e.g. coal and oil are important **raw materials** used to make plastics), and **overheads** (= things a company must always spend money on, e.g. rent, electricity, etc.). For many companies, **labour costs** (= money paid to workers) are very expensive.

C Rise and fall

These verbs describe **trends** (= movements) in sales, prices, profit and loss, etc.

↑ rise/go up/increase	↗ e.g. rise slowly (also gradually)	↗ go up steadily	↗ rise sharply
↓ fall/go down/drop	↘ e.g. fall slowly	↘ fall steadily	↘ drop sharply

Notice the different uses of prepositions with these verbs:

by + size of change	Pre-tax profits rose **by** 11% (**to** £120 million).
from + previous level	Prices dropped **from** $594 **to** $386.
to + new level	

NOTE

Rise, increase and **fall** are also used as nouns. For example: a **rise of** 10% ('of' introduces the amount); a **fall of** $3.5 million; an **increase in** sales ('in' introduces the thing that is changing); a **fall in** profits.

D Businesses and the economy

Most companies want:
to **grow/expand** (= get bigger) and **be successful** (= do well and make a lot of profit); low **inflation**, so prices do not go up; low **interest rates** to borrow money; economic and political **stability** (= no quick changes in the economic/political situation); a **healthy/strong economy** (= an economy in good condition; *opp* an economy **in recession**); **tax cuts** (= tax reductions/lower taxes), so they can keep more of their profit.

Exercises

73.1 What single word or phrase is being defined in each of these sentences?

1. Money you borrow from a bank for your business.
2. What you must pay the bank if you borrow money.
3. The continuous increase in the price of things.
4. Total amount of money a company receives from selling its products.
5. When a company does not make a profit or a loss.
6. Money that a company spends on rent, electricity, paper, etc.

73.2 Complete the missing preposition in these sentences.

1. Sales rose .... 10% last year.
2. The stock market value fell .... 240 .... 225 in the space of two days.
3. There was a rise .... 5% in the value of the shares.
4. The shares were £2.50 last week, but the value has just gone up 20p .... £2.70.
5. There has been a steady increase .... the profit.
6. We had to pay over £5,000 .... interest.

73.3 Replace the underlined word(s) with another word or phrase that has the same meaning.

After last year when sales (1) dropped by 5%, I am pleased to say there has been a (2) slow rise in sales in the first quarter of this year, and we are optimistic that the company will continue to (3) do well in the next quarter. In the longer term, our (4) objective for the company is to (5) grow by at least 10% over the next two years, and of course, to make sure that our profit (6) increases by a similar amount.

73.4 Look at the graph and complete the sentences on the left. Each gap is one word.

1. In 1998 sales ....
2. In the following year they ....
3. In 2000 there was a .... in sales.
4. In 2001 business improved and there was a ....
5. And in 2002 sales ....
6. In the five-year period sales .... by ....

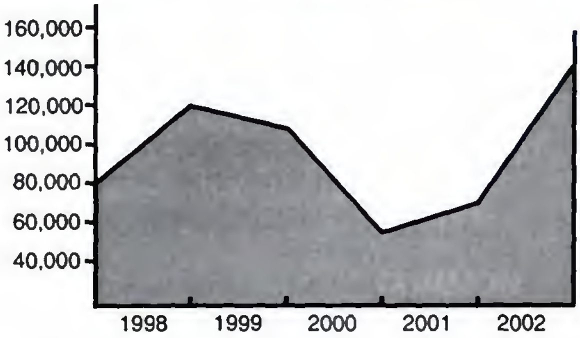

73.5 Complete the compound words or common phrases. There may be more than one answer.

1. profit and ....
2. .... rate
3. tax ....
4. raw ....
5. a healthy ....
6. .... stability

73.6 Can you answer these questions about your own country?

1. What is the inflation rate at the moment?
2. If you borrow money from the bank, what is the interest rate approximately?
3. What is the state of the economy at the moment? Is it strong? Is it in recession?

74 Sport: ball games

A Ball games

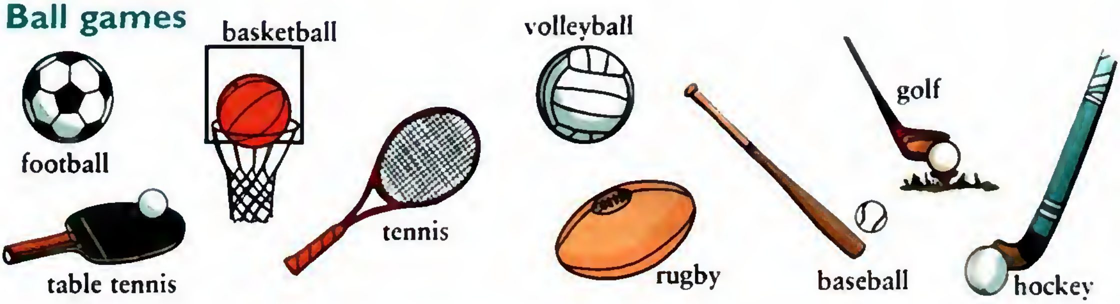

B Equipment (= what you need to play the games)

For most ball games you need **boots** or **training shoes**. (also **trainers** *infml*)
You need a **racket** for tennis, a **bat** for baseball/table tennis; a **stick** for hockey; and **clubs** for golf [see picture].
In tennis and volleyball and there is a **net** across the middle of the **court**. There is also a **net** around each **goal** in football.

C Things you can do with a ball

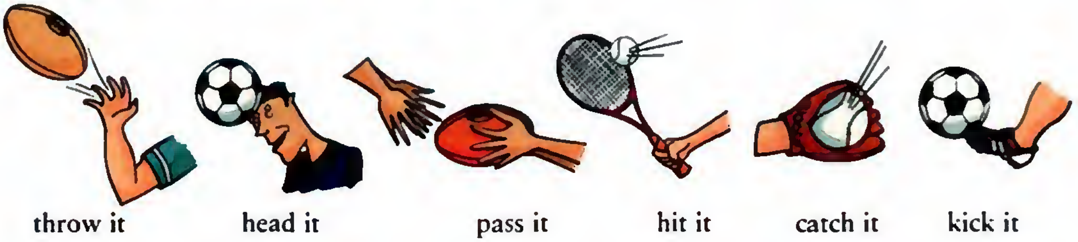

D Places and people

Places

The playing area for football and rugby is called a **pitch**. Around the pitch there is an area for **spectators/the crowd** (= people who watch the game). The total area is the **stadium**. The playing area for tennis, volleyball and basketball is a **court**; for golf it is a **course**.

Officials

Football and rugby have a **referee**; tennis and baseball have an **umpire**. In football the referee uses a **whistle** to control the game.

E Winning and losing

Spain **beat** Switzerland 3–2. (= Switzerland **lost to** Spain 3–2) In other words: Spain **won** the match. (= Switzerland **lost** the match) Spain were the **winners**. (= Switzerland were the **losers**)

If two teams/players have the same **score** (= number of goals or points) at **full-time** (= the end of the game), it is a **draw**. We can also use **draw** as a verb, e.g. We **drew** 2–2.

When a game is in progress, we use **lead** to describe the position of the teams or player with the most goals/points, and **latest** to describe the score:
At half-time, Brazil are **leading** Chile 2–1. (= the **latest score** is 2–1 to Brazil)

NOTE
We write **2–2**, but say **two-all**.

Exercises

74.1 Complete the table with the correct forms.

infinitive	*past tense*	*past participle*
win	won	....
lose	....	....
beat	....	....
catch	....	....
draw	....	....

74.2 Write down six things you can do with a ball. Cover the opposite page first.

.... it .... it .... it
.... it .... it .... it

74.3 Write down:

1 Five games where you can hit the ball (with various kinds of equipment)
2 Four games where you can pass the ball (with hands or feet)
3 Three games where you can catch the ball
4 Two games where you can kick the ball
5 One game where you can head the ball

74.4 Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

1 I think the final .... was 3–1.
2 The Czech Republic .... Holland 2–1, so they are in the semi-final.
3 Bayern Munich .... 1–1 with AC Milan last night.
4 The Maracana .... in Brazil is the biggest in the world. It holds over 100,000 people.
5 Many of the .... ran onto the pitch after the game.
6 Paris St Germain will play the .... of the game between Barcelona and Roma.
7 United scored first and they are still .... 1–0 with five minutes to go until half-time.
8 With 20 minutes to go, the .... score we have is 2–1 to Real Madrid.

74.5 Organise these words and put them in the correct columns below.

football racket course pitch tennis boots
golf net court clubs training shoes whistle

sport	*place*	*equipment*
football		

75 Sport and leisure

A Sports

sport	*place*	*equipment*
athletics	track	vest, shorts, running shoes
motor racing	circuit	crash helmet
swimming	pool	swimming costume (women); trunks (men)
boxing	ring	vest, shorts, gloves, boots
ice hockey	rink	sticks, skates, puck
skiing	ski slopes	skis, sticks, ski suit, ski boots

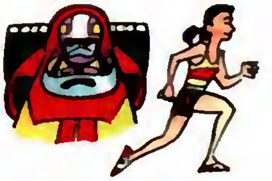

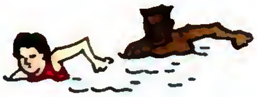

B Outdoor leisure activities

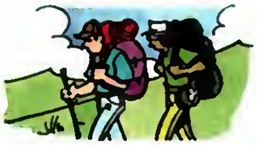
hiking

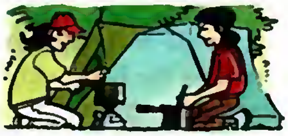
camping

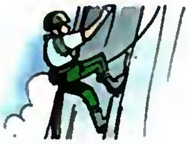
rock climbing

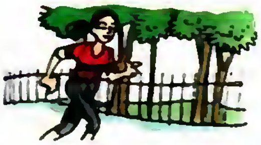
jogging

I often **go camping** in the summer.
I really **enjoy** hiking.

I do **a bit of/a lot of** rock climbing in Wales.
Jogging **keeps me fit.** (= keeps my body healthy)

C What do you do?

Notice the common verb + noun combinations here, e.g. **do exercise** or **play a game**.

Do you **do much sport**?
I **go skiing** in the winter.
I **play** a lot of ice hockey.
I **go to the gym** (= gymnasium) twice a week,
where I **do aerobics** and a bit of **weight training**.
Is it expensive to **join** (= become a member of) a sports club?
I plan to **take up** (= start) golf when I get older.
I had to **give up** (= stop) athletics after I injured my back.
Swimming is **good for you**. (= helps people to stay healthy)
You need to **do/take more exercise** if you want to **get fit**.
(= become fit/get in good condition)
A: Which team do you **support**? (= like and follow)
B: Real Madrid. I've **supported** them all my life.

D Do you take it seriously?

A: I **take sport very seriously** (= sport is very important to me) and when I play team games I'm very **competitive** (= I try hard and always want to win). What about you?

B: No. **I'm the complete opposite** (= I'm completely different: *opp* **I'm exactly the same**). I only play **for fun**. (= for pleasure/enjoyment)

Exercises

75.1 Organise these words and put them in the correct columns below.

swimming pool costume motor racing crash helmet trunks circuit
pool skates ice hockey rink puck sticks

sport	*place*	*equipment*
swimming		

75.2 Fill the gaps with the correct verb.

1 Do you .... much exercise?
2 I only .... volleyball in the summer.
3 If possible, I'd like to .... a fitness club.
4 A: I love football.
B: Do you? Which team do you .... ?
A: Liverpool.
5 My Dad played football but he .... last year. He said he was too old.
6 We used to .... camping in the mountains.
7 Why don't you .... hiking or swimming, or something? You need more exercise.
8 If you want to .... fit, you need to run three or four miles every other day.

75.3 Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

1 Do you still do a lot of weight ....training............... ?
2 I enjoy jogging and it keeps me ....
3 Liz doesn't have much opportunity now to go rock ....
4 Nigel loves dangerous sports; I'm the complete ....
5 He has played for several good teams and he takes it very ....
6 I used to play a lot of ice ....
7 We still like watching motor ....
8 I played for years, then I injured my ankle and I had to give ....
9 In the summer I go jogging in the park. In the winter I exercise indoors and go to the ....
10 I love swimming, and it's really good for ....

75.4 Answer these questions. If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.

1 What sport do you do?
2 Do you take sport seriously or do you do it just for fun?
3 Are you very competitive?
4 Are you good at any sports?
5 Have you taken up a new sport recently?
6 Have you ever had to give up a sport for any reason?

76

Cinema and theatre

A

Inside a theatre

NOTE

The people in the theatre are called the **audience**.

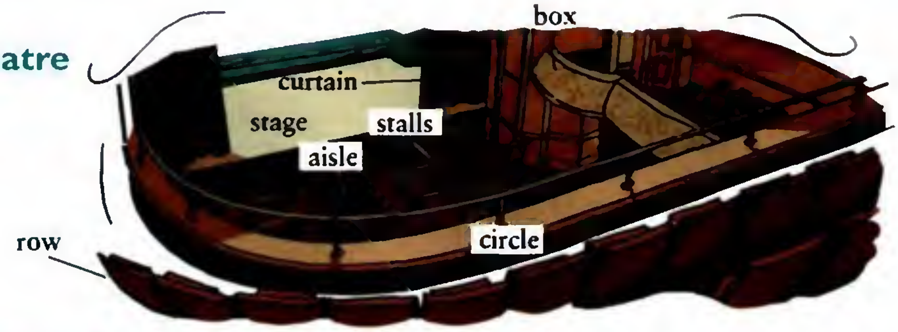

B

Plays and musicals

At the theatre you can see **plays**, e.g. *Hamlet*, written by Shakespeare; or **musicals**, e.g. *Phantom of the Opera*, written by Andrew Lloyd Webber. You usually **book** (= reserve) tickets **in advance** (= some time before you see the play). When you see the play (or film), it is called a **performance**, e.g. The evening performance usually starts at 8 pm.

C

Cinema

Films are **shown** on a screen. In your country, films made in English may have **subtitles** (= a written translation at the bottom of the screen), or they are **dubbed**. (= the English is replaced by actors speaking the words in your own language)

The person who makes the film is the **director**, e.g. Steven Spielberg, and the people in the film are **actors**. Famous actors are often called **film stars** (or **stars**), e.g. Julia Roberts.

D

Types of film

war film, e.g. *Apocalypse Now*; *Platoon*
romance (= a love story/about a relationship)
thriller (= interesting and exciting; often about crime)
disaster movie, e.g. *Titanic*
action film, e.g. *Indiana Jones*
horror film, e.g. *Dracula*
comedy (= funny film; makes you laugh)
romantic comedy (= love story and funny)

E

Describing plays and films

Journalists who write about films and plays are called **critics**, and their articles are called **reviews**. These are some common words they use.

brilliant/superb acting (= fantastic acting)
very **moving** (= has a big effect on our emotions; often sad)
violent scenes (= scenes including fighting and death)
an **awful/dreadful** film (= terrible)
a **slow** film (= boring)
a **gripping** story (= exciting/interesting)
good fun (= enjoyable but not serious)
a **complex plot** (= story with many ideas)

F

Telling the story

The film **is set** (= happens) in the 1920s. **It's about** (= the subject/story is) a young man from a poor **background** (= family history and situation), who meets a girl and they **fall in love**. But her family don't accept him, so they **run away** (= go to another place to be away from the parents). **At first** (= in the beginning) everything is fine, but then **things go wrong** (= problems appear in their situation) and she has to leave him or they will be unhappy.

Exercises

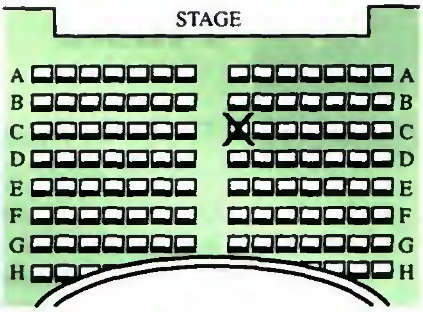

76.1 Look at the picture and answer the questions.

1 Did you sit in the stalls or circle?
2 Which row were you in?
3 Were you next to an aisle?
4 Did you have a good view of the stage?

76.2 Match the words on the left with the best definition on the right.

1 violent
2 moving
3 complex
4 gripping
5 funny
6 good fun
7 dreadful
8 superb

a very exciting
b terrible
c fantastic
d lots of fighting
e very enjoyable
f lots of different ideas
g sad and emotional
h it makes you laugh

76.3 What word or phrase is being defined?

1 A play or film, and part of the story is sung to music.
2 The people who watch a play at the theatre.
3 The person who makes a film.
4 Journalists who write articles about films and plays.
5 The name of the articles they write.
6 The translation of the words of a film across the bottom of the screen.
7 To reserve tickets before the performance.
8 The most important actors in a film.

76.4 Complete these sentences describing parts of the story of different books and films.

1 The film is .... in the 1940s, during the Second World War.
2 At the beginning, Paul meets Jennifer in a bookshop and they fall in ....
3 The film is .... two women who drive across America.
4 The main character is young, clever and comes from a very rich ....
5 The couple are too young to marry, and their parents are very unhappy about the relationship, so they run ....
6 In this film the husband loses money gambling, but .... first his wife knows nothing about it.
7 At the beginning, the company is successful, but then things start going ....
8 There's a love story in it, and it's very funny. I suppose you'd call it a ....

76.5 Test your general knowledge of cinema. What kinds of films are these?

1 *Pearl Harbor*
2 *Four Weddings and a Funeral*
3 *Die Hard*
4 *Frankenstein*
5 *Silence of the Lambs*
6 *Basic Instinct*

Have you seen any of these films? If so, what words or phrases would you use to describe them?

77 Music

A Types of music

Classical music, e.g. Beethoven, Mozart (NOT ~~classic~~ music)
Opera (= a play in which the words are sung), e.g. *La Boheme* by Puccini, *Carmen* by Bizet
Rock and pop music, e.g. U2, Madonna, Robbie Williams, Alicia Keys
Jazz, e.g. Duke Ellington, Miles Davis

There are many types of rock and pop music. Some are popular for long periods, others have a short history. Examples in the last 25 years are: punk, reggae, rap, garage and hip-hop.

B Musical instruments and musicians

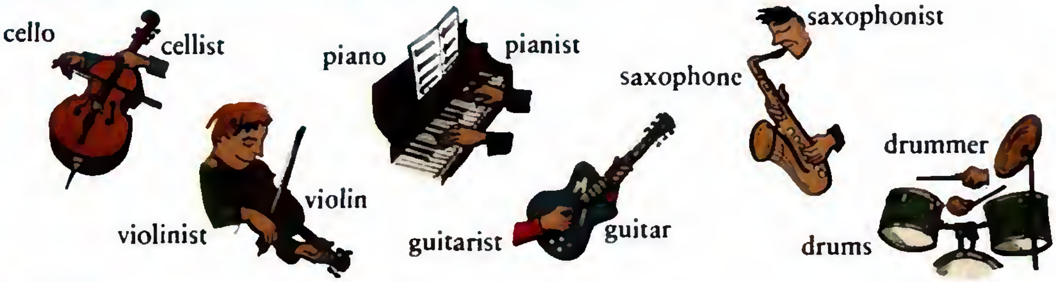

C People

Rock and pop music are usually **performed** (= played to an audience) by a **group/band**, e.g. Bon Jovi or Travis. Most groups have a **lead singer**, a **lead guitarist** (guitar with six strings), a **bass guitarist** (four strings) and a **drummer**.

Solo artists (= people who perform alone, e.g. Robbie Williams or Madonna) play with a **backing group**, and some of them are **songwriters**. (= they write their music/songs)

Classical music is written by a **composer**, e.g. Bach, and performed by an **orchestra** (= a large group of musicians including violins and cellos) with a **conductor** (= person at the front who directs the musicians). Some music also has a **choir**. (= a large group of singers)

D A hit record

A **hit record** is a song that is very popular and bought by many people, e.g. 'Bohemian Rhapsody' was a **hit single** for Queen, and 'Angel' was a **hit single** for Robbie Williams. Groups and solo artists also **produce albums** (= make a collection of songs, usually 8–12, on one CD). 'Sergeant Pepper' by the Beatles is one of the most famous albums ever made.

These are also common phrases we use to talk about popular music.

Craig David's **new album is out** next week. (= you can buy his new album next week)
They plan to **release a new record** (= put it in the shops for people to buy) for Christmas.
Have you heard **the latest album** by Stereophonics? (= the most recent/newest album)
Kylie Minogue's new single is **number one**. (= the most popular record in the shops this week)
Which is your **favourite track** on the album? (= the song on the album you like the most)
Has your **taste in music** (= the type of music you like) changed in the last ten years?

Exercises

77.1 What do you call the people who play the following instruments?

1 piano pianist
2 violin
3 guitar
4 cello
5 drums

77.2 Fill the gaps with the correct word.

1 Do you play a musical .... ?
2 A: Do you like .... music?
B: Yes, very much.
A: Who's your favourite .... ?
B: It's hard to say, but I love Bach.
3 I sang in a .... for years. We performed in churches all over the country.
4 Their new CD is .... next week. I'm sure it'll go to number ....
5 Their first single was very popular, but they haven't .... an album yet.
6 I think their .... album is brilliant, and much better than their last one.

77.3 Now use the context and your own knowledge to fill the gaps with a suitable word.

1 He used to be conductor of the Berlin Philharmonic ....
2 Robbie Williams was in a .... called Take That before he became a .... artist.
3 Elton John .... piano, and writes and .... all his own songs.
4 I think 'Hey Jude' or 'I want to hold your hand' is the Beatles' biggest selling hit .... , but 'Sergeant Pepper' is probably their most famous .... That or 'Abbey Road'.
5 I haven't been to the .... since I saw *The Marriage of Figaro* last year.
6 Keith Richard has been .... guitarist of the Rolling Stones for over 30 years.
7 Duke Ellington is one of the greatest .... pianists ever.
8 'Waterloo' was one of Abba's most famous hit ....
9 Eric Clapton sings on his albums, but he first became famous as a ....
10 Before he became a solo artist, Sting was the .... singer with Police.

77.4 Complete this story of Craig David's early years.

Craig David was born and grew up in Southampton, on the south coast of England. As a teenager he used to write his own (1) .... on a dictaphone, and his (2) .... in music at that time ranged from Terence Trent D'Arby to Michael Jackson and Stevie Wonder. His first (3) .... was 'Human', a version of the song that was a (4) .... for the 'Human League'. After that David became better known, and his first album was (5) .... in summer 2000.

77.5 Answer these questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1 What sort of music do you like best?
2 Who's your favourite singer/group/composer?
3 What was the last record or album you bought?
4 Has your musical taste changed in the last few years?

78 Newspapers

DAILY Mirror 20p
The Guardian
THE INDEPENDENT
THE BROADER VIEW
THE Sun
Toothless Liam faces fine after
BEING ETHAN HAWKE
Daily Mail
Nancy: So what's she trying to tell Sven now?
TIMES

A Background

Most newspapers are **daily** (= they **come out**/are **published** every day). Some are **national**, some are **local**. Magazines are **weekly** or **monthly** (= published every week/month).

Some newspapers are **tabloids** (= small in size). These are usually the **popular press** (= short articles and lots of pictures), and they often have a larger **circulation** (= number of readers). The more serious newspapers are bigger in size. People often refer to newspapers as **the press**.

B Contents

Reports (= pieces of writing about news items, e.g. **a report in** *The Times*)
Articles (= pieces of writing about an important subject, e.g. **an article about** drugs)
Headlines (= title in large letters above the report/article, e.g. a **front-page headline**)
Reviews (= articles giving an opinion of new films, books, etc., e.g. **a review of** ...)
Adverts (= words and pictures about a product, to make people buy it, e.g. **an ad for** ...)

C People

Editor (= person in control of the daily production)
Reporters/journalists (= people who report news and write articles)
Photographers (= people who take the pictures in the papers)

D Headlines

Certain words (usually short) are common in newspaper headlines. Verb grammar is also different in headlines: the present simple can be used for present or past events; an infinitive often refers to the future. Articles (*the/a*) and the verb *be* are often not included.

row (= an argument)	Government in new row over schools
back (= support)	Bush backs new law (= Bush has backed a new law)
quit (= leave a job)	British Rail chairman to quit (= the chairman is going to quit)
hit (= have a bad effect on)	Bad weather hits farmers
bid (= try/attempt)	UN in bid to end war
talks (= discussions)	Government and IRA in new talks
cut (= reduce/make less)	Bank of England cuts rate again
key (= very important)	Zidane could be key player

E 'It said in the paper that ...'

When we refer to something written in a newspaper we use these phrases:

It said in *The Times* that they've found the missing girl. (NOT ~~it's written~~ in ...)
According to *The Guardian*, the missing girl was found last night.

Exercises

78.1 These words can be difficult to pronounce. Check the pronunciation in the Index and practise saying them. Remember, you must stress the second syllable of 'advertisement' and 'photographer'.

publish
journalist
article
pho'tographer
ad'vertisement
row (= argument)

78.2 Fill the gaps with the correct preposition.

1 There was a report .... *The Independent* .... this new law.
2 Have you read any reviews .... his new film?
3 It's an advert .... a type of mobile phone, I think.
4 I read it .... the paper.
5 High unemployment won't last according .... the paper.

78.3 Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

1 A: Is the paper ....published.......... every day?
B: No, it .... out once a week.
2 There are more than ten national .... newspapers in Britain.
3 I haven't read 'Hello' magazine. Is it a weekly or a .... ?
4 The manager was interviewed for the paper by their best known ....
5 Do you understand this ____________ ? '200 WOMEN GIVEN WRONG DIAGNOSIS'
6 The picture on the front page was taken by one of their youngest ....
7 There was a fantastic .... in the paper yesterday about 'Space'. Did you read it?
8 I read a .... of his latest film. It doesn't sound very good.
9 You often see .... in the paper which promise that you can learn a language in ten hours with this method. It's nonsense.
10 .... to *The Times*, the government is starting to panic.

78.4 Rewrite these headlines in your own words. Don't repeat the underlined words. Remember that small words like articles (*the/a*) and pronouns (*his/my*) are often not included in headlines, but they will need to be in your answers.

1 MINISTER TO QUIT
A minister is going to leave his/her job
2 Japan and US start fresh talks
3 GERMANY BACKS US PLAN
4 POLICE DISCOVER KEY WITNESS
5 Government to cut spending on new hospitals
6 Bad weather hits rail service
7 MINISTERS IN NEW ROW OVER TAX
8 ***New bid to cut teenage smoking***

78.5 Think about newspapers in your own country. Answer these questions.

1 How many daily national newspapers are there?
2 How many are tabloids?
3 How many newspapers only come out on Sunday in your country?
4 Which newspaper has the largest circulation?
5 Can you name two or three famous journalists who write for daily newspapers?

79 Television

A Using a television/telly/TV

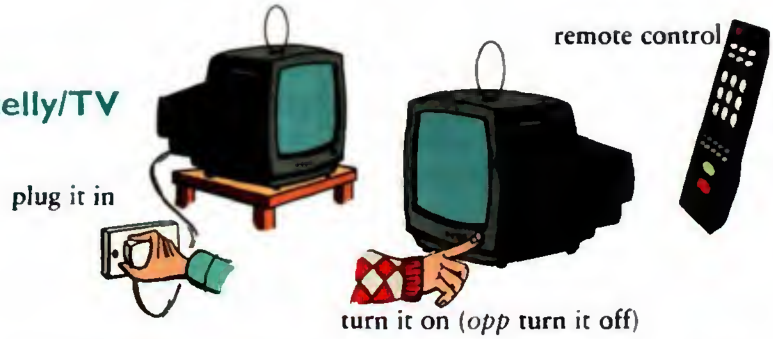

You can also **turn it up** (= increase the volume; *opp* **turn it down**) and **turn over** (= change to a different **channel**; e.g. from 1 to 3). You can use **switch on**, **switch off**, or **switch over** in place of turn. (NOT ~~switch it up/down~~)

B Types of programme

Soap opera: a programme often on two or three times a week, which follows the lives of a group/community of people. The stories are often exciting, dramatic and hard to believe.
Quiz show or **Game show**: individuals or teams (called **contestants**) answer questions or play different games against each other. The winner gets a **prize**, e.g. money or a holiday.
Chat show: a programme where a presenter talks to famous people about their lives.
Documentary: a film with factual information, often about a problem in society.
Series: a number of programmes about the same situation or the same characters in different situations. This may be a **comedy series** (= programmes that try to be funny), or a **drama series**. (= programmes with interesting characters and exciting situations)
Current affairs: programmes about a social or political problem. **Current** means happening 'now/at the present time'.

C TV in Great Britain

At the moment there are five 'terrestrial' **channels** (or **stations**) on TV (BBC 1, BBC 2, ITV1, Channel 4 and Channel 5).
If you pay extra, you can have a **satellite dish** and receive **satellite TV**; or pay to have **cable TV** (TV sent through wire cables underground). There are many channels available.

D Talking TV

What's on TV tonight? (= what programmes are showing on TV tonight?)
Is there anything on TV tonight?
What time's the film on? (= what time is the film showing?)

I quite like **television commercials**. (= the advertisements between programmes)
Are they showing the game **live** (= as it happens) or just **recorded highlights**? (= parts of the game after it has been played, e.g. later in the day/evening)
'Friends' is on tonight, but it's a **repeat** (= the programme has been on TV before). I've seen it.
What's your **favourite programme**? (= the programme you like most/best)

Exercises

79.1 You are watching TV with a friend. What could you say in each of the situations below?

1 You want to watch a programme on TV. Could you turn the TV on?
2 You can't hear the programme very well. Could you .... ?
3 You want to watch a different programme. Could you .... ?
4 Now it's too loud for you. Could you .... ?
5 You don't want to watch any more. Could you .... ?

79.2 Here are the evening programmes on three British TV channels. Find one example of: a documentary; a quiz show; a game show; a drama series; a current affairs programme.

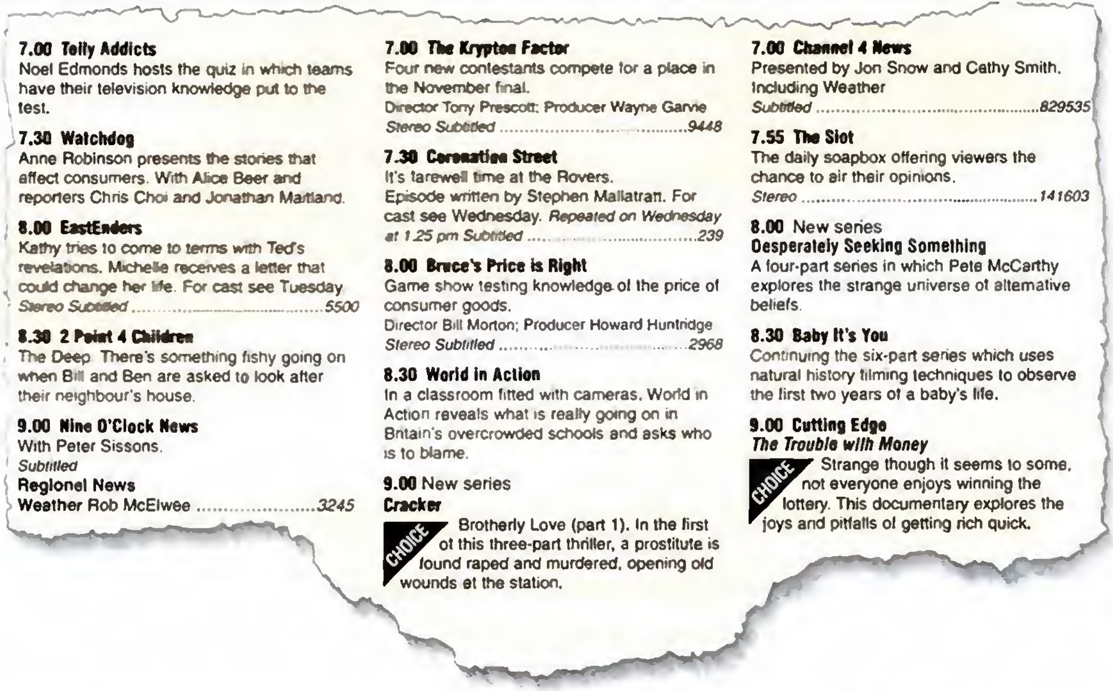

7.00 Telly Addicts
Noel Edmonds hosts the quiz in which teams have their television knowledge put to the test.

7.30 Watchdog
Anne Robinson presents the stories that affect consumers. With Alice Beer and reporters Chris Choi and Jonathan Maitland.

8.00 EastEnders
Kathy tries to come to terms with Ted's revelations. Michelle receives a letter that could change her life. For cast see Tuesday
Stereo Subtitled 5500

8.30 2 Point 4 Children
The Deep. There's something fishy going on when Bill and Ben are asked to look after their neighbour's house.

9.00 Nine O'Clock News
With Peter Sissons.
Subtitled
Regional News
Weather Rob McElwee 3245

7.00 *The Krypton Factor*
Four new contestants compete for a place in the November final.
Director Tony Prescott; Producer Wayne Garvie
Stereo Subtitled 9448

7.30 Coronation Street
It's farewell time at the Rovers.
Episode written by Stephen Mallatratt. For cast see Wednesday. *Repeated on Wednesday at 1.25 pm Subtitled* 239

8.00 Bruce's Price is Right
Game show testing knowledge of the price of consumer goods.
Director Bill Morton; Producer Howard Huntridge
Stereo Subtitled 2968

8.30 World in Action
In a classroom fitted with cameras, World in Action reveals what is really going on in Britain's overcrowded schools and asks who is to blame.

9.00 New series
Cracker
CHOICE Brotherly Love (part 1). In the first of this three-part thriller, a prostitute is found raped and murdered, opening old wounds at the station.

7.00 Channel 4 News
Presented by Jon Snow and Cathy Smith. Including Weather
Subtitled 829535

7.55 The Slot
The daily soapbox offering viewers the chance to air their opinions.
Stereo 141603

8.00 New series
Desperately Seeking Something
A four-part series in which Pete McCarthy explores the strange universe of alternative beliefs.

8.30 Baby It's You
Continuing the six-part series which uses natural history filming techniques to observe the first two years of a baby's life.

9.00 Cutting Edge
The Trouble with Money
CHOICE Strange though it seems to some, not everyone enjoys winning the lottery. This documentary explores the joys and pitfalls of getting rich quick.

There is also one comedy series, and two soap operas. Can you guess what they are?

79.3 Complete these dialogues in a suitable way.

1 A: What's .... TV tonight?
B: Oh, the usual soap .... and stuff like that.
2 A: Did you see the game live?
B: No, they just showed the recorded ....
3 A: Ally McBeal is .... tonight.
B: Yes, it's a good programme, but I've seen it before: it's a ....

79.4 Answer these questions about TV in your own country.

1 How many channels approximately can you watch?
2 Do you watch a lot of satellite TV and/or cable TV?
3 In total, how much TV do you watch every week?
4 What are your favourite programmes on TV at the moment? When are they on?
5 Do you enjoy watching the commercials?

80 On the phone

A Phone and telephone

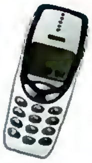

mobile phone

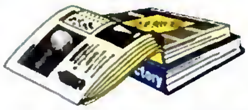

telephone directory

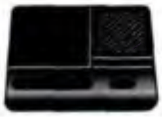

answerphone

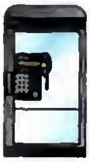

phone box

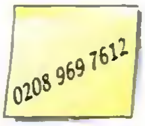

phone number

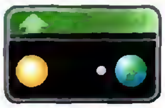

phone card

B Starting a phone conversation

The first conversation is informal between friends; the second is a formal business call.

MARY: Hello?
RUTH: **Is that Mary?** (NOT ~~Are you Mary~~? or ~~Is it Mary~~?)
MARY: Yeah.
RUTH: Hi. **It's** Ruth. (NOT ~~I am Ruth~~ or ~~Here is Ruth~~)

RECEPTIONIST: Good morning. Chalfont Electronics.
PAUL SCHOLES: Oh, good morning. **Could I speak to** Jane Gordon, **please?**
RECEPTIONIST: Yes. **Who's calling, please?**
PAUL SCHOLES: My name is Paul Scholes from 'Bexel Plastics'. (= a typical formal introduction)
RECEPTIONIST: Right, Mr Scholes. **I'm putting you through** (= I'm connecting you)
... *pause* ...
JANE GORDON: Hello?
PAUL SCHOLES: Mrs Gordon?
JANE GORDON: **Speaking.** (= yes, this is Mrs Gordon)

NOTE
When British people answer the phone at home, they usually just say 'hello' and occasionally they give their number. Usually they do not give their name.

C Telephone problems

4.20 pm You phone your sister Susan, but it's **engaged** (= the phone line is busy). In other words, Susan is already **on the phone** (= using the phone) talking to someone else.

4.30 pm You phone again but a stranger answers and says: '**I think you've got the wrong number.**' (= you have **dialled** another number, e.g. 637424 and not 627424)

4.35 pm You **get through to** (= make contact with) your sister's number, but she's **out** (= not at home). Her husband answers and says: 'Susan **won't be back** (= will not return) for an hour', so you **leave a message**: 'Could you ask Susan to ring me when she **gets back** (= returns)?' The husband agrees to **give Susan the message**: '**I'll tell her you called.**'

6.00 pm Susan **phones** you **back** but you're out. She leaves a message on the answerphone. Her message is: 'Jean, this is Susan. I'm just **returning your call**. I'll **give you a ring** (= phone you) tomorrow. Bye.'

D Useful vocabulary

To phone another city/country, you need the **(dialling) code**, e.g. the code for Cambridge is 01223.
Phone calls in a town are **local calls**; calls to another country are **international calls**.
Text messages are short written messages you can send from one mobile phone to another.

Exercises

80.1 Write four more words or expressions that include 'phone'.

phone number.................. phone .... phone ....

.... phone .... phone

80.2 Complete these phone conversations with suitable words or phrases.

A: Hello?
B: Good morning. Could I (1) .... Alicia James?
A: (2) ....
B: Oh, good morning, Mrs James. My name is …

A: Good morning. Boulding Limited. Can I help you?
B: Yes. (3) .... Paul Mathews and I'm trying to contact Mr Patterson. He left a (4) .... on my answerphone yesterday afternoon.
A: I see. Well, I'm afraid Mr Patterson's (5) .... at the moment. Can I ask him to phone you (6) .... later?
B: Yes, please. I shall be here until lunchtime. My (7) .... is 748 7267.

A: Hello?
B: Hi. (8) .... Sandra?
A: No, sorry. Sandra's not (9) .... at the moment.
B: Oh. Do you know when she'll (10) .... back?
A: No, I've no idea.
B: OK. Well, in that case, could I (11) .... a (12) .... for her?
A: Yes, of course.
B: Could you ask her to (13) .... me a (14) .... this evening?
A: Sure. What's your name?
B: Catherine. I'm a colleague from work. She's got my (15) ....
A: Right. I'll tell her.

A: Hello?
B: (16) .... Carlos?
A: Yeah, speaking.
B: Hi, Carlos. (17) .... Serena.
A: Oh, hello. I was expecting you to ring yesterday.
B: I did – I tried. I rang about six times last night but I couldn't get (18) .... It was (19) .... all the time.
A: Oh, yes, I'm sorry about that. I was (20) .... the phone to my brother for about an hour and then someone rang me about the table tennis next week.

80.3 Answer these questions. If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.

1 Have you got a mobile phone? How often do you use it? What do you use it for? Do you send many text messages?
2 In your country, what is the emergency number for the police?
3 From your country, what's the dialling code for the United Kingdom?
4 How much does it cost to make a local call?
5 What's the phone number of your English school?

81 Computers and the Internet

A Hardware and software

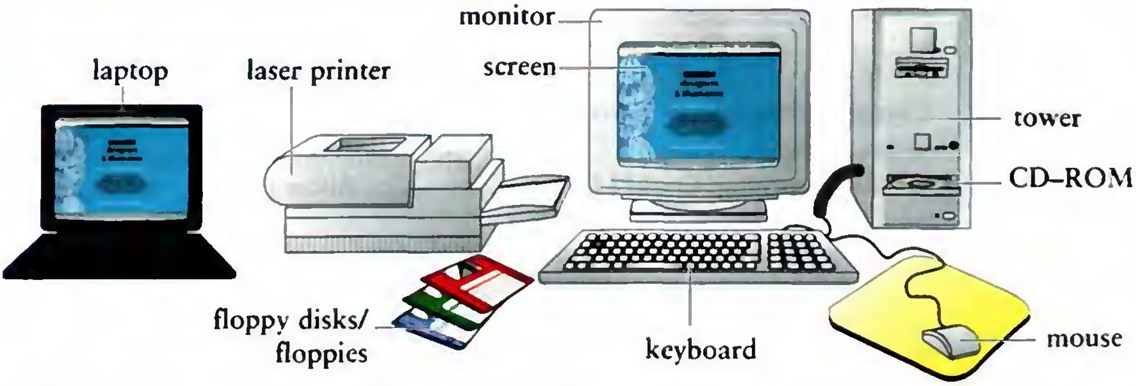

There is **hardware** (= the machines), and **software** (= the programs needed to work the machines). These programs are **stored** (= kept) on **disks**: **hard disk** (inside the tower), **floppy disks**, **CD-ROMs** or **DVDs**.

B Operating a computer

open a new document	open an existing document	save the data in this document	print	cut	copy	paste

You can **print** it **out** later.   Have you **saved** it **in a new file**?

C The Internet

The **Internet**/**the Net** is a system **connecting** (= linking) millions of computers **worldwide** (= around the world). In order to **get online** (= become connected) you must **connect** your computer to a phone line using a **modem**. You also need an **Internet Service Provider** (**ISP**), e.g. aol, freeserve. On the Internet, there are different **search engines** you can use such as 'Yahoo' or 'Excite' to find what you are looking for.
When you **go online** (= use the Internet), you can **browse** (= look at) different **websites** and **download** stuff from the Internet. (= move data from one computer to another)

D E-mail

I sent you an **e-mail** yesterday.   What's your **e-mail address**?
Did you **check your e-mail** today? (= look to see if you received any **e-mails**)
You can **e-mail me** at pd@freeserve.co.uk. (spoken as: pd at freeserve dot co dot uk)

E Important vocabulary

Some computers and programs are more **user-friendly** (= easy to use) than others.
If your computer has a **virus** (= a software problem), it may **crash** (= stop working).
Because of this you should make a **back-up copy**. (= a second copy on a floppy disk)

Exercises

81.1 Complete the words and phrases below with words from the box.

Provider copy ~~computer~~ disk sites
board address printer user top

1 computer.............. program
2 floppy ....
3 ....-friendly
4 Internet Service ....
5 key................................
6 e-mail ....
7 laser ....
8 lap ....
9 back-up ....
10 web................................

81.2 Can you remember what these symbols mean?

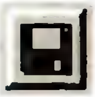
1 ....

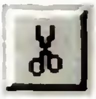
2 ....

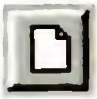
3 ....

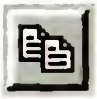
4 ....

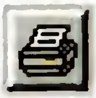
5 ....

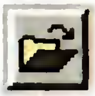
6 ....

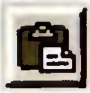
7 ....

81.3 Fill each gap with a suitable word.

1 I wrote a report on the computer this morning, then I .... out two copies – one for me and one for my boss. Then, without any warning, the computer .... , and I'm afraid I lost the whole document.
2 If you want to get online, you have to .... your computer to a phone line using a modem.
3 You can .... a lot of information from the Internet onto your own computer, but it can take a lot of time.
4 There was a warning on the news this morning about a new computer .... that attacks e-mail. If you open a message called 'April Showers', it destroys all your e-mail contacts.
5 A: Have you .... your e-mail today?
B: No, I haven't.
A: Well, I .... you an e-mail this morning. You'd better have a look.
6 I spend ages just .... different websites.
7 It may depend on the .... engine you are using.
8 My new e-mail address is: janebriggs .... aol .... com.

81.4 Answer these questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1 Do you have a computer at home? If so, what is it (e.g. PC, Mac, etc.)?
2 Do you use computers at school/college/university or work?
3 What do you use them for?
4 What software are you familiar with?
5 Do you use e-mail? If so, what's your e-mail address?
6 Do you use the Internet? If so, what are some of your favourite websites?

82

Education: school

A The state system (= free education)

Age of 3	most go to **nursery school**
5	everyone starts **primary school**
11	**pupils** (= the name for students at this age) go to **secondary school**
16	go to a **college** for **vocational** (= job) **training**, e.g. hotel management, secretarial courses; or **stay at school** for two more years; **leave school** and get a job
18	leave school and **go to university**; go to a college for **further education/training**, e.g. teaching, business studies; get a job

You **go to school** and **go to university** (NOT go to ~~the~~ school/university). Other examples are: **go to church** (= to pray), **go into hospital** (= as a patient because you are ill), **go to bed** (= to sleep), **go to prison** (= as a criminal). There are also **public/independent/private schools** and parents pay to send their children to these schools. The **school fees** are expensive. About 7–10% of the population go to private schools in the UK.

B Subjects (= topics you study)

arts	*sciences*
English	maths (= mathematics)
French, German, Spanish	physics
history	chemistry
geography	biology
art, music	information technology (= about computers and communication)

Some words look plural, but in fact they are singular and need a singular verb, e.g. Maths **isn't** my favourite subject. Other examples are: physics, politics and economics.

C Timetable

The school day is **divided into** 6–7 **lessons** in different subjects, with a **break** (= period of rest between work) in the morning and afternoon. There is also a one-hour **lunch break**. The school year is usually **divided into** three **terms** (= periods of study). Each term is about 13 weeks, and each week pupils **do** (= study) about ten **subjects**. At the end of the school year they **do/take an exam** in each subject. After the holidays, pupils **go back** (= return) to school.

D Success and failure

success	*failure*
I **passed** my exam.	I **failed** my exam.
I **did** very **well**.	I **did** very **badly**.
I **got nine out of ten** for my homework. (= 9/10)	I **got three out of ten** for my homework.
I got a very **high mark**. (e.g. 18/20)	I got a very **low mark**. (e.g. 5/20)
I got a good **grade**. (e.g. B+)	I didn't get a very good **grade**. (e.g. D–)
I'm **good at** English.	I'm **hopeless at** (= very bad at) maths.

Exercises

82.1 Here are some school subjects but the letters are mixed up. What are the subjects?

1 tahms ....maths..........
2 cnecsei ....
3 hogtceynlo ....
4 rat ....
5 ehnfcr ....
6 irthosy ....
7 nisgehl ....
8 ehgoragpy ....
9 simcu ....
10 srheyictm ....

82.2 How much can you remember? Answer these questions without looking at the opposite page.

1 At what age do English children go to nursery school?
2 When do they start primary school?
3 When do they go to secondary school?
4 At what age can children leave school?
5 What can they do if they pass all their exams at the age of 18?

82.3 Complete this text about the timetable of a typical secondary school in Britain.

The school day is normally (1) .... into six or seven (2) .... , with (3) .... during the morning, at lunch and in the afternoon. Over the whole week, (4) .... usually do about ten different (5) .... The school year normally has three (6) .... , with exams at the end of the year.

82.4 Complete these sentences with a suitable phrase.

1 When she was a child she went ....to school.......... in a small village.
2 He didn't go to school last term. He was very ill and he had to go ....
3 I was very tired, so after I finished my homework I went ....
4 When I left school I went .... and studied medicine.
5 It was a religious school, so we had to go .... quite a lot.
6 The police caught him and he went .... for six months.

82.5 Write the opposites.

1 I passed my exam.
2 I did very well.
3 I'm very good at English.
4 I got a very high mark.

82.6 What about you and your country? Answer these questions.

1 Did you go to nursery school?
2 Do most children start primary school at the age of five?
3 Is the secondary school system similar or different to the English system?
4 How many subjects do/did you study at secondary school?
5 Do/Did you study any subjects which are not included on the opposite page?
6 What is/was your favourite subject?
7 How many lessons do/did you have every day?
8 Is/Was your school a state school or private school?
9 At what age can you leave school?
10 How many terms are there in a school year?

83 Education: university

A Subjects

You can normally **do/study** these **subjects** at university but not always at school. (The underlining shows the syllable you must stress in each word.)

medicine
engineering
architecture
agriculture
law
psychology
politics
history of art
philosophy
sociology
business studies
economics

B Studying at (a British) university

If you want to **go to** (= **enter** *fml*) university, you must first **pass examinations** that most students take at the age of 18 (called 'A' levels). Students usually take three or four 'A' levels (examinations in three or four subjects), and they must do well to **get a place** at university.

If you get a place, most students have to pay part of their **tuition fees** (= money for teaching). Some students also get a government **grant** (= money to pay for living expenses, e.g. food and somewhere to live), but most students need **a loan** (= money you borrow from a bank) to **cover the cost of** (= pay for) university life. Students at university are called **undergraduates** while they are studying for their first degree.

Most university courses **last** (= continue for) three years, some courses last four years, and one or two courses, e.g. medicine, are five years. During this period students can say they are **doing a degree**, and when they finish and pass their exams, they can say they **have a degree**. This can be a **BA** (= bachelor of arts) or a **BSc** (= bachelor of science). For example:

He hopes to **get a place** at Oxford.
She's **doing a degree** in physics.
She's **got a BA** in French.
She's **at university** in Glasgow.
I've **got a degree** in German from York University.
He's **got a BSc** in computer science.

C Postgraduate courses

When you complete your first degree, you are a **graduate**. Some students then **go on** (= continue) to do a second course or degree, called a **postgraduate course/degree** (or **postgrad course**). These students are then **postgraduates** and they often study for:

an **MA** (Master of Arts), e.g. I'm **doing a Masters** in English *or*
an **MSc** (Master of Science), e.g. She **did a Masters** in biology *or*
a **PhD** (Doctor of Philosophy) [minimum three years], e.g. He's **got a PhD** in computer science.

When people study one subject in great detail (often to find new information), we say they are **doing research**, e.g. My sister is **doing research into/on** the effects of stress at work.

D School vs university

School has **teachers** and **lessons**; at university you have **lecturers** and **lectures**. The **head of department** (also called a 'faculty', but less common in spoken English) at a university is usually called a **professor**. (An ordinary teacher or lecturer is not a professor.)

Exercises

83.1 **Read these sentences spoken by university students. What is each person studying?**

1 I'm concentrating on Le Corbusier and Frank Lloyd Wright. architecture
2 We have to know every bone in a person's body.
3 The way we use fertilisers is much more precise than 20 years ago.
4 We're going to concentrate on Freud and Jung this term.
5 I've been reading some books on time management.
6 Expressionism was really a reaction to the work of the Impressionists.
7 We've spent a lot of time on American foreign policy.
8 You must know this case; it's one of the most famous in legal history.

Now mark the stress on each of your answers, check with the pronunciation in the Index, and practise saying the subjects.

83.2 **What do you call:**

1 the money some students receive if they get a place at university?
2 the qualification you get at the end of university?
3 the name we give students during this period at university?
4 teachers at university?
5 students when they have completed their first degree?
6 students studying for a second, higher degree?
7 the study of one subject in great depth and detail, often to get new information?
8 the talks/lessons that students go to while they are at university?

83.3 **Replace the underlined verbs with less formal verbs that have the same meaning in the context.**

1 Is it very difficult to obtain a place at university?
2 You have to pass exams before you can enter university.
3 He's studying physics, I think.
4 Did she receive a grant for her course?
5 The course continues for three years.

83.4 **Fill the gaps with a suitable word.**

1 My brother is 20. He's still .... university in York.
2 She's got a degree .... economics.
3 He's .... research .... various types of nervous disorder.
4 She's already got a BA. She's doing a .... degree now.
5 Who is the professor in your .... ?

83.5 **Answer these questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else from your own country and/or someone from a different country.**

1 Do you need to pass examinations before you can go to university?
2 Do some students get a grant to study at university?
3 Is the tuition free if you go to university?
4 Do most degree courses last three years?
5 What is your equivalent of the British BA or BSc?
6 Do you have similar postgraduate degrees in your country?

84 Law and order

A The police

When someone **commits a crime** (= **breaks the law** and does something **illegal/against the law/wrong**), the police do a number of things.

They **investigate** the crime. (= try to find out what happened and who is responsible)
If they **catch** (= find) the person they believe is responsible for the crime, they will **arrest** them. (= take them to the police station because they think the person has committed the crime)
At the police station, they **question** them. (= ask them questions)
If they are sure that the person committed the crime, the person is **charged with** the crime. (= the police make an official statement that they believe the person committed the crime)
For a serious crime (e.g. murder), the person must then **go to court for trial**. [see section B]

B In court

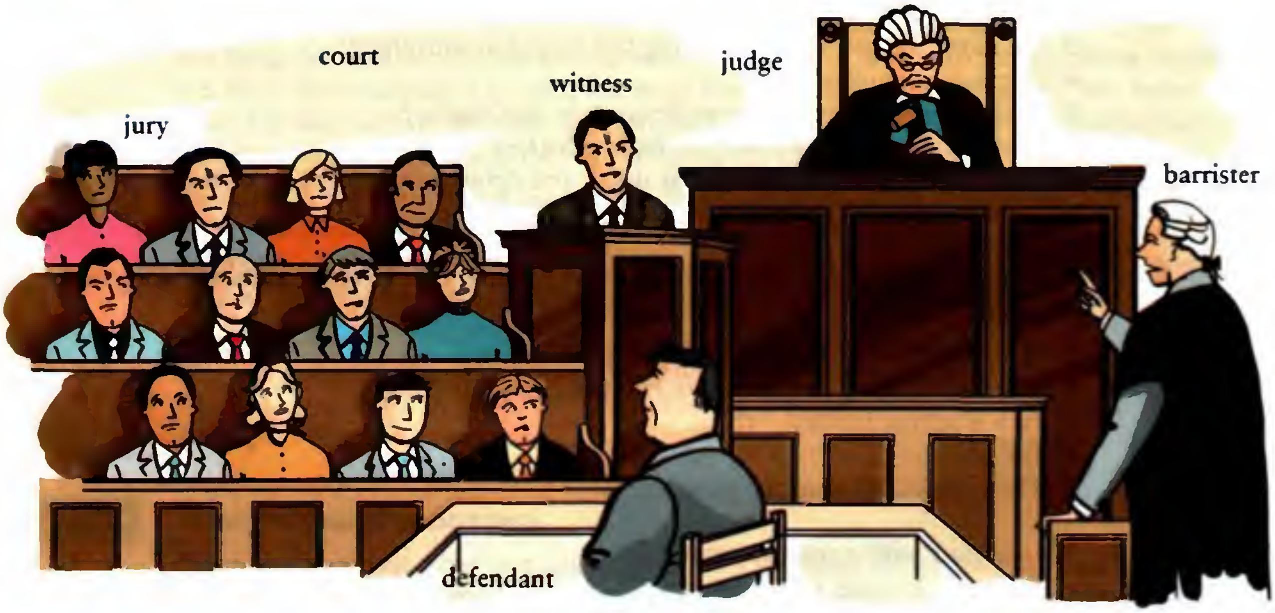

In court, the **defendant** must try to **prove** (= provide facts to show something is true) that they did not commit the crime. In other words, they must try to prove that they are **innocent** (*opp* **guilty**). Twelve members of the public (called the **jury**) listen to the **evidence** (= information about the crime, for and against) and then make their decision. People who see a crime are **witnesses**, and they usually **give evidence** at a trial.

C Punishment (= what a person must suffer if they do something wrong)

If someone is guilty of a crime, the judge will give the **sentence** (= the punishment). If a person is guilty of murder, the sentence may be 10–20 years **in prison**. The person then becomes a **prisoner**.

For crimes that are not serious (called **minor offences**, e.g. illegal parking), the punishment is usually a **fine**. (= money you have to pay)

Exercises

84.1 Put this story in the correct order. The first event has been given.

a they found both men guilty.
b and charged them with the robbery.
c £10,000 was stolen from a bank in the High Street. 1
d After the jury had listened to all the evidence
e The judge gave the men a prison sentence of five years.
f The trial took place two months later.
g and they finally arrested two men.
h They questioned them at the police station
i The police interviewed a number of witnesses about the crime

84.2 Answer the questions.

1 Who investigate(s) crimes? the police
2 Who sentence(s) people?
3 Who live(s) in prison?
4 Who decide(s) if someone is innocent or guilty?
5 Who defend(s) people and present(s) evidence?
6 Who commit(s) crimes?

84.3 Fill the gaps with the correct word.

1 A: Have you ever .... the law?
B: No, never.
2 A: Does anyone know why she .... the crime?
B: I think she needed the money.
3 A: Is it legal to ride a motorbike without a licence?
B: No, it's .... the law.
4 In Britain it is .... to drive a car without insurance.
5 If you drive through a red light, you will have to pay a ....
6 The defendant must try to .... he or she is innocent.
7 The jury must decide if the defendant is innocent or ....
8 Before they reach a decision, the jury must look at the .... carefully.
9 If someone is guilty of murder, the .... will be at least ten years in prison.
10 He has been in trouble before, but it was only a minor ....

84.4 Read the text, then write your answers to the questions below, based on your knowledge of the law in your own country. If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.

> Two 15-year-old boys broke into a house when the owner was out, and took money and jewellery worth about £900. The owner reported the crime when she got home at 6pm.

1 Will the police investigate this crime?
2 How will they investigate? What will they do?
3 Do you think the police will catch the two boys?
4 If they do, what crime will they be charged with?
5 Can boys of this age go to prison?
6 What do you think the sentence would be? Do you think this is the correct sentence?

85 Crime

A The law

If you do something **illegal/against the law** (= wrong), you have **committed a crime**. Most people commit a crime at some time in their lives, e.g. driving above the speed limit or parking illegally, etc. If you **break the law** (= do something wrong/illegal) and commit a crime, you could **get into trouble** (= be in a bad situation) with the police.

B Crimes

crime	*criminal (= person)*	*verb*
theft (= general word for stealing)	**thief**	**steal** (also **take**)
robbery (= steal from people or places, e.g. banks)	**robber**	**rob**
burglary (= break into a shop/house and steal things)	**burglar**	**break in**
shoplifting (= steal from shops when they're open)	**shoplifter**	**shoplift**
murder (= kill someone by intention)	**murderer**	**murder**
manslaughter (= kill someone but without intention)	–	–

C Scene of the crime

Two men **robbed** a jeweller's in west London early this morning. They **broke in** (= forced their way into the building, e.g. they broke a window) around 7am and **took/stole** rings and necklaces valued at over £10,000. Several **witnesses** (= people who see a crime) saw them leave the shop and **get away/escape** (= go away from a dangerous situation) in a blue car. The police believe both men **are armed** (= have guns) and extremely dangerous.

D Crime prevention

What can governments do to **prevent crime** (= stop crime happening) or **reduce** it (= make it less)? These things happen in some countries.

The police **carry guns**. (= have guns)
The police **are allowed to** (= are permitted to/can) stop anyone in the street and ask them questions.
Criminals receive **tough** (= hard) **punishments**, e.g. go to prison for long periods.
There is **capital punishment** (= death, e.g. by injection or electric chair) for some crimes.

What can people do to **protect themselves** (= keep themselves safe) and their **property** (= home and land)? They can do these things.

Avoid (= keep away from) dark streets **late at night** (e.g. midnight).
Avoid wearing (= try not to wear) expensive rings or watches. [Note the *-ing* form after 'avoid'.]

Have a **burglar alarm**.
Put money and **valuables** (= things worth a lot of money) in a **safe**.
Leave lights on at home when they go out.
Lock doors and windows when they go out.

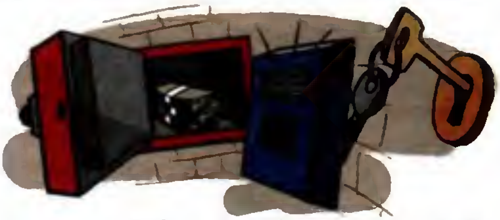

Exercises

85.1 Complete this table.

crime	*person*
bank robbery	bank robber
murder	....
burglary	....
theft	....
shoplifting	....

85.2 Respond to these statements or questions confirming the crime in each one.

1 A: He broke into the house, didn't he?
B: Yes, he's been charged with burglary.
2 A: He killed his wife?
B: Yes, he's been charged with ....
3 A: She stole clothes from that department store, didn't she?
B: Yes, and she's been charged ....
4 A: The man on the motorbike didn't mean to kill the boy.
B: No, but he's been ....
5 A: He took the money from her bag?
B: Yes, but they caught him and he's ....

85.3 Find the best noun on the right to follow each verb on the left.

1 lock
2 commit
3 go
4 carry
5 break into
6 break

a a gun
b a house
c the door
d a crime
e the law
f to prison

85.4 How safe and secure are you? Answer these questions with YES or NO.

1 Do you often walk in areas which are not very safe? YES = 1 NO = 0
2 Do you often walk on your own in these areas late at night? YES = 2 NO = 0
3 Do you wear an expensive watch or expensive jewellery? YES = 1 NO = 0
4 Do you lock doors and windows before you leave the house? YES = 0 NO = 2
5 Do you have a burglar alarm? YES = 0 NO = 1
6 Do you leave lights on when you go out? YES = 0 NO = 1
7 Is there someone who protects the building when you are out? YES = 0 NO = 2
8 Do you have a safe in your home? YES = 0 NO = 1

Add up your score. Less than 3 = very safe; 3–5 = quite safe; 6–8 = you could take more care; more than 8 = you are a dangerous person to know!

85.5 Fill the gaps in these questions with a suitable word. What's your opinion?

1 Do you think the police should .... guns?
2 Do you think the police should be .... to stop people without a reason?
3 Do you agree with capital .... for certain crimes such as murder?
4 Do you think tougher punishments will help to .... crime?

86 Politics

A Types of government

Monarchy: a state **ruled by** a king or queen (= the king or queen has power and control). Some countries, e.g. the UK, have a monarchy, but the monarch is not the **ruler**.
Republic: a state governed by **representatives** (= men or women chosen by the people) and a president, e.g. the USA or France. People who believe in this system are **republicans**.
Democracy: a system of government in which leaders are chosen by the people, e.g. France or the United Kingdom. People who believe in this system are **democrats**.
Dictatorship: a system of government in which one person **rules** the country (= one person has total power). This person is called a **dictator**.

B Political beliefs

noun politics	*person* politician	*adjective* political
conservatism	conservative	conservative
socialism	socialist	socialist
social democracy	social democrat	democratic
liberalism	liberal	liberal
communism	communist	communist

People who **believe** in social democracy are social democrats.
It is a **democratic** government, with liberal **beliefs**.

C Political positions

The government is very **reactionary** (= they don't want any changes). **The opposition** (= the main political party which is not in government) is more **radical** (= they want to make changes to the system). The Prime Minister is quite **right-wing** (= conservative/ capitalist), and the leader of the opposition is more **left-wing** (= socialist).

D Elections

In a democracy, people **vote for** (= they choose in a formal way) the **political party** (e.g. social democrats) they want to form the government. They do this in an **election** (= when everyone votes). Quite often elections **take place/are held** (= happen) every five years.

42% **voted for** the socialists in the **election**. (= The socialist party got 42% of the votes.)
They **elected** a new **president** last year. (= The new president was elected last year.)
The **election takes place** next week, and the Liberals hope to **form** the next government.

E Government

Political systems are different **all over the world** (= in every part of the world). In the UK, when a political party wins a **majority** (= 51% or more) of **seats** (= official places in parliament) in an election, they are **in power** (= the government of the country), and their **leader** (= person in control of the party) becomes Prime Minister.
The government must have **policies** (= programmes of action) to **run** (= manage and control) the country. This means, for example, an **economic policy** (for the economy), and a **foreign policy** (for actions by the country in other parts of the world).

Exercises

86.1 **What kind of political system is being described?**

1 The country is ruled by a king or queen.
2 The country is governed by men and women who are chosen by the people.
3 The country is ruled by one person.

86.2 **Complete the tables. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.**

general noun	*person*
socialism	socialist
democracy	....
politics	....
conservatism	....

verb	*general noun*
believe	belief
elect	....
govern	....
vote	....

86.3 **Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same. Make any necessary changes.**

Example It's in every part of the world. ALL
It's all over the world.

1 Elections take place every five years. HELD
Elections ....
2 The government is socialist. WING
The government is ....
3 I'm a democrat. BELIEVE
I ....
4 Who controls the country at the moment? POWER
Who ....

86.4 **Fill the gaps in this text about the political system in the United Kingdom.**

In the UK (1) .... take place every five years. The (2) .... Minister may decide to have one after four years, but five years is the maximum. The country is divided into 652 areas and people in each area can only (3) .... for one person from one political (4) .... The person with the most (5) .... is the winner, and that person becomes one of the 652 members of parliament.
The political party with a (6) .... of the seats in parliament then forms the government, and the (7) .... of that party becomes Prime Minister. His or her job is then to decide on a number of different (8) .... to run the country.

86.5 **Answer these questions about your own country. If possible, ask someone else.**

1 Which are the main political parties in your country?
2 Which party is in power at the moment?
3 When were they elected?
4 Did you vote in this election?
5 Who is the leader of this party?
6 Is this person the President or Prime Minister of your country?
7 Do you think you are left-wing, right-wing, or in the centre?
8 Do you think your political beliefs have changed/will change during your life?

87 Bureaucracy

A What is it?

Bureaucracy is the rules used by **officials** (or **bureaucrats**) to control an organisation or country. It is often used in a negative way to mean unnecessary rules, e.g. **filling in** (= completing) forms, and waiting for **documents**. (= pieces of paper with official information)

B Important documents (e.g. passport)

identity card (= card with your name, date of birth and photo to show who you are. The United Kingdom is one of the few countries where people do not have identity cards.)
driving licence (= the official document which permits you to drive on public roads)
visa (= document which gives you permission to enter, pass through or leave a country)

Officials often **check** (= look at and examine) your documents, e.g. customs officials check your passport or identity card, and the police may check your driving licence.

We also use the word **certificates** for official pieces of paper stating certain facts: a **birth certificate** gives the important facts about your birth, **exam certificates** state you have passed certain exams, and a **marriage certificate** states you have married.

Some documents are for a fixed period of time, e.g. a visa may be for six months. At the end of that period, the visa **runs out** (*infml*)/**expires** (*fml*) (= it finishes/comes to an end). If you want to stay in the country, you must **renew** it (= get a new one for a further period of time). You can normally renew a visa, a passport, a membership card for a club, etc.

C Forms

There are situations where you need to **fill in** (= complete) forms.

landing card: a form you may have to fill in when you enter another country
enrolment form (sometimes called a **registration form**): a form you often have to fill in when you join a school or course
application form: a form where you write details about yourself, often when applying for a job

With many forms, you will need to **sign** them (= write your **signature**) and **print** your full name **underneath**. (= under it)

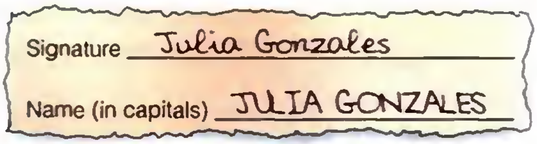

Signature Julia Gonzales
Name (in capitals) JULIA GONZALES

D Language of forms

Forms often contain formal expressions. In spoken English, this may be different.

NOTE
In written and spoken English, we use **surname** (= your last name or family name).

written		*spoken*
date of birth	=	When were you born?
place of birth	=	Where were you born?
country of origin	=	Where do you come from?
marital status	=	Are you single or married?
date of arrival	=	When did you arrive?
date of departure	=	When are you leaving? (or When did you leave?)

Exercises

87.1 Check the pronunciation of these phrases in the Index (you will find them at the underlined words). Repeat them until you can say them fluently.

identity card   important document   exam certificate   registration form

87.2 Write down a word that can be used before these nouns, but not including words in 87.1.

.... card   .... licence
.... certificate   .... form

87.3 Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

1 Will you need to ...get........................ a visa if you go to the United States?
2 I was surprised that nobody .... my passport when we arrived in France.
3 Could you .... in this form for me, please?
4 They sent the form back to me because I forgot to .... it at the bottom.
5 A: Do I have to put my .... at the bottom of this form?
B: Yes, please – and then print your full name underneath.
6 A: I only had a visa for six months and it .... next week.
B: Are you going to .... it?
A: Yes, if I can. I don't think it'll be a problem.
7 Write your first name here and your .... underneath.
8 I want to do a course, so I wrote to the school and asked them to send a(n) .... form.

87.4 How many of these documents do you have?

passport	identity card
driving licence	birth certificate
exam certificates	marriage certificate

87.5 Rewrite these sentences in more informal English.

1 What's your date of birth? When were you born?........
2 What's your country of origin? .... ?
3 What's your marital status? .... ?
4 What was your date of arrival? .... ?
5 When's your date of departure? .... ?

87.6 I asked some British people about problems they had had with bureaucracy. What about you? Have you had any problems? If so, write them down and compare them with the replies in the Answer key on page 236.

1 ....
2 ....
3 ....

88 Global problems

A The environment (= air, water and land around us)

Many people believe we are **destroying** the environment. (If you 'destroy' something, you damage it so badly it does not exist any more.) For example:

Cars and factories **pollute** the air. (= make the air dirty)
We continue to **cut down rainforests** and increase the dangers of **global warming**. (= an increase in temperature because of increased carbon dioxide around the earth)

How can the **planet** (earth) **survive**? (= continue to exist)

- We must **save/conserve** (= use less and use well) **natural resources** (e.g. water, oil and gas). We mustn't **waste** them. (= use them badly)
- We must **protect** animals and plants. (= keep them safe from human damage)
- We mustn't **throw away** bottles and cans. We must **recycle** them. (= use them again)

Many of the verbs above form common nouns:

verb	*noun*
destroy	destruction
survive	survival
waste	waste

verb	*noun*
pollute	pollution
protect	protection
recycle	recycling

B Natural disasters

A disaster is when something terrible happens and people often die. A **natural disaster** is caused by nature. For example:

famine (= situation where people die because there isn't enough food)
drought (= no rain for a long period of time; this often causes famine)
floods (= too much rain in a short period of time, causing damage to houses and land)
earthquakes (= violent movement of the earth; buildings are often destroyed)

C War and peace

A war is a long period of fighting between two or more countries. Some countries have been **at war** (= fighting a war) for years. There are also **civil wars** (= fighting between two or more groups in the same country). These are some of the most violent – **soldiers** (= the people in the army) are killed, but many **civilians** (= people not in the army or navy, etc.) also die. Wars often end with a **peace settlement**. (= both sides agree to stop fighting)

D Terrorism

This is violent action for political reasons. People who do this are terrorists. A common terrorist crime is **planting bombs** (= putting bombs in public places) often to **kill/assassinate** important people. Terrorists also **hijack** planes and buses (= take control of them by force). The people on board then become prisoners (called **hostages**). The terrorists may agree to **release** the hostages (= permit the hostages to go free) if governments agree to their **demands** (= what they ask for), perhaps giving them money or releasing other terrorists from prison.

NOTE
Assassinate = to kill a famous person, often for a political reason.

Exercises

88.1 **Many words in this unit are difficult to pronounce. Check the pronunciation in the Index at the back of the book and practise saying the words.**

pollution
famine
survive
drought
resources
flood
disaster
earthquake
civilian
soldiers
terrorists
hostage

88.2 **Complete the tables.**

noun	*verb*
waste	....
pollution	....
damage	....

noun	*verb*
....	protect
....	destroy
....	survive

88.3 **If we want to look after the environment, there are certain things we shouldn't do and certain things we should do. Complete these sentences with suitable verbs.**

We shouldn't:

1 ....throw away...... paper, bottles and cans; we should .... them.
2 .... water and energy; we should .... them.
3 .... rainforests; we should .... them from human damage.

88.4 **Match words from the left and right to form compound words or phrases.**

1 peace	a resources
2 civil	b settlement
3 natural	c warming
4 global	d war

88.5 **Complete these definitions with a word or phrase.**

1 Global warming is an increase in temperature caused by an increase in ....
2 A disaster is when something ....
3 A famine is a long period of time when people may die because there isn't enough ....
4 A flood is the result of too much ....
5 A drought occurs when there is a long period without ....
6 A war is a long period of ....
7 A civil war is a war between two or more groups from ....
8 To assassinate means to ....
9 Soldiers are people who fight in an ....
10 Civilians are people who are not ....

88.6 **Complete these sentences with a suitable word.**

1 Terrorists have hijacked a ....
2 Two men attempted to assassinate the ....
3 One of the terrorists planted a ....
4 The terrorists have agreed to release all the ....
5 During the fighting a number of civilians were ....
6 The two sides have agreed to a peace ....

89 Air travel

A Departures

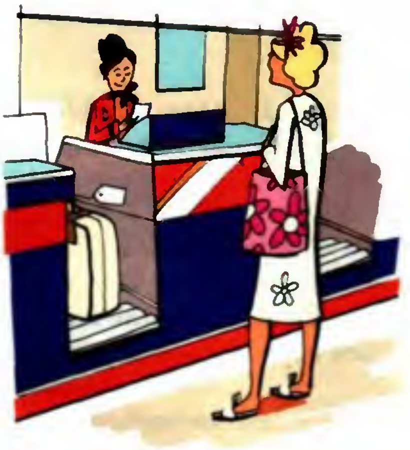

When you arrive at the airport, you can look at the **departures board** which shows the **flight numbers** (e.g. BA735), **departure times** (e.g. 0840) and **destinations** (e.g. Venice). At the **check-in desk** they **weigh your luggage**. Usually you can take about 20 kilos. If it is more, you may have to pay **excess baggage** (= you pay extra). They also check your ticket and give you a **boarding card** for the plane with your seat number on it. Then you go through **passport control** where an official checks your passport, and into the **departure lounge**. Here, you can also buy things in the **duty free**, e.g. perfume or alcohol. About half an hour before **take-off**, you go to a **gate** number, e.g. gate 14, where you wait before you get on the plane. When you **board** (= get on) the plane, you find your seat. If you have **hand luggage**, you can put it under your seat or in the **overhead locker** above your seat. If there are no **delays** (= when you have to wait until a later time for some reason), the plane moves towards the **runway**. (= the area where planes take off and land)

Delay can be used as a noun and verb. It is a common word at airports.

There's a two-hour **delay** on our flight.	Why is the flight **delayed**?
What's the reason for the **delay**?	We were **delayed** at Athens airport.

B The flight

NOTE

The cabin crew are both men (**stewards**) and women (**stewardesses**). They are also called **flight attendants**.

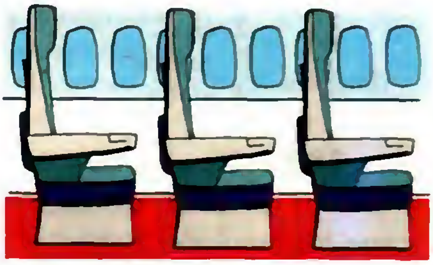

The **captain** (= the pilot) or **cabin crew** (= people who look after passengers) may say these things:

- Please **fasten your seat belt** and put your seat in the **upright position**.
- May we **remind passengers** (= to passengers: please remember) that there is no smoking now until you are inside the **terminal building**. (= the part of the airport where passengers arrive and depart)
- The cabin crew are now coming round with **landing cards**. (= cards you have to fill in when you enter certain countries)

C Arrival

NOTE

You **hire** something for a short period, and **rent** something for a long period, e.g. a flat. For a car you can use both.

When the plane **lands** (= arrives on the ground), you have to wait for it to stop. When the doors are open, you get off the plane and walk through the **terminal building** and go to the **baggage reclaim** (= place where you collect your luggage). You go through **customs** (GREEN = nothing to declare; RED = goods to declare). At most airports, you can **hire a car**. (= rent a car)

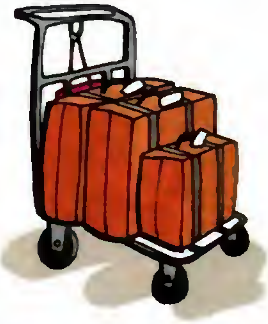

luggage trolley

Exercises

89.1 Complete the words or phrases below using words from the box.

control	number	desk	card	baggage
lounge	luggage	reclaim	locker	

1 boarding ....
2 excess ....
3 check-in ....
4 flight ....
5 overhead ....
6 departure ....
7 baggage ....
8 passport ....
9 hand ....

89.2 What do you call these?

1 The place where you go when you arrive at the airport with your luggage.
2 The card they give you with the seat number on it.
3 What you have to pay if your luggage is very heavy.
4 The bags you carry onto the plane with you.
5 The place above your head where you can put these bags.
6 The part of the airport where the plane accelerates and takes off.
7 The people who look after you on the plane.
8 Another verb used to say 'rent' a car.

89.3 Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

1 There was a mechanical problem, and we ended up with a two-hour ....
2 Several passengers had to fill in landing ....
3 I went through passport control and sat in the departure ....
4 If you have nothing to declare, you follow the green sign when you go through ....
5 A woman at the check-in desk weighed my ....
6 I looked for our flight number on the departures ....

89.4 Fill the gaps in this letter.

Dear Tom,

I've just arrived in Rome but I'm still recovering from a really terrible flight. We (1) .... two hours late because of bad weather, and then over the channel we had more bad weather. The (2) .... told us to (3) .... our seat belts, which worried me a bit, and for half an hour we (4) .... through a terrible storm. I was almost sick, but the cabin (5) .... were really nice. It was still raining and very windy when we (6) .... in Rome and I was really glad to (7) .... the plane and get into the airport building. I really hope the return (8) .... is a lot better ...

89.5 Answer these questions. If you don't fly very much, try to ask someone who does.

1 What is the most interesting part of the flight, and what is the most boring part?
2 Where do you often have delays, and why?
3 What do you usually do during the flight?
4 Do you always eat the food they give you? Do you ever drink alcohol on the flight?

90 Hotels and restaurants

A Types of hotel accommodation

a single room = room for one person with a single bed
a double room = room for two people with one large bed
a twin room = room for two people with two single beds
full board = includes breakfast, lunch and dinner
half board = includes breakfast and dinner
B&B = just bed (= the room) and breakfast

B Visiting a hotel or restaurant

At busy times, e.g. the weekend, you may need to **book** (= reserve) a room in a hotel or a table in a restaurant **in advance** (= before you go). When you arrive at a hotel you **check in at reception** (= tell the receptionist you have arrived); at a restaurant you ask for a table (e.g. Could we have a table for two? *or* I booked a table for two. The name is Carter.)
In restaurants you can **tip** the **waiter/waitress** (= give money for good service) if service is not included; in a hotel you may also give the **porter** (= person who carries luggage) a **tip**.
At the end of a **meal** in a restaurant or the end of your stay in a hotel, you **pay the bill**.

C In a restaurant

You can see the food available on the **menu**, and choose wine (and other drinks) from the **wine list**. There are usually three parts to a meal: a **starter** (e.g. soup), a **main course** (e.g. meat or fish) and a **dessert** (e.g. fruit or ice cream). A drink before the meal is often called an **aperitif**.

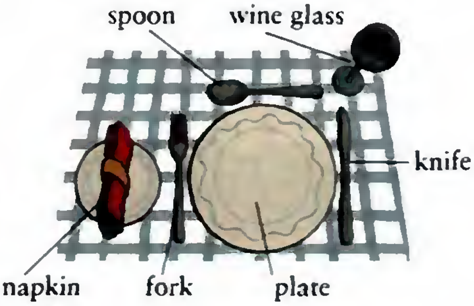

D Useful words and expressions

In a hotel

GUEST: Are you **fully booked** (= completely full) next week?
Do you have any **rooms available** (= free rooms) this weekend?
Is breakfast/dinner included? (= Does the price include breakfast/dinner?)
Where's the **lift**? (= the machine which takes you up or down a floor)
Excuse me. **How do I get to** (the underground station) from here?
There's something wrong with (= there's a problem with) the heating in my room.
What time do we have to **check out**? (= leave the room on our last day)

In a restaurant

WAITER: Are you **ready to order**? (= Have you decided what you want?)
Would you like to **try** the wine? (= taste the wine to see if it is OK)
Is everything all right with your meal?

CUSTOMER: Are you fully booked?
What's *vichysoisse* exactly?
I'll have the (soup) **to start**. (= as a starter)
Excuse me. Where's the **toilet**?

Exercises

90.1 Put the sentences in each column in a logical order.

Hotel

a I paid my bill.
b I checked in at reception.
c I left the hotel.
d I went up to my room.
e I spent the night in the hotel.
f I had an early morning call.
g I booked the hotel. 1
h I went out to a local restaurant for dinner.
i I arrived at the hotel.
j I got up and had breakfast.
k I tipped the porter who took my bag to the room.

Restaurant

a I had the starter.
b I paid the bill.
c I left the restaurant.
d I looked at the menu.
e I gave the waiter a tip.
f I booked a table. 1
g I had a dessert.
h I ordered my meal.
i I arrived at the restaurant.
j I had my main course.
k I looked at the wine list.

90.2 Finish these questions or statements with a suitable word.

HOTEL GUEST

1 I'm leaving in a few minutes. Could I pay my .... ?
2 Is that just bed and breakfast or full .... ?
3 Could I book a twin .... ?
4 I'm interested in next weekend. Do you still have rooms .... ?
5 [Your room is on the tenth floor.] Excuse me. Where's the .... ?

WAITER

6 Right, madam. Are you ready to .... ?
7 Would you like to try the .... ?
8 Is everything all right with your .... ?

RESTAURANT CUSTOMER

9 I'll .... the soup to start.
10 Excuse me. Is service .... ?

90.3 What would you ask the hotel receptionist in these situations?

1 You think a hotel is busy next weekend, but you're not sure. What could you ask?
Are you fully booked next weekend?
2 You want to stay in a hotel for two nights next weekend with your husband/wife. You phone the hotel. What do you say?
....
3 You are planning to leave in about 15 minutes. What could you ask?
....
4 You want to go to the nearest bank but you don't know where it is. What do you ask?
....

90.4 You are staying in quite a good hotel (e.g. two-star or three-star) in your country. Would you expect to have the following? Compare your answers with someone else if possible.

1 Colour television
2 Satellite TV
3 Hair dryer
4 Mini-bar (= fridge with drinks)
5 Tea- and coffee-making facilities
6 Air-conditioning

91 A sightseeing holiday in the city

A Famous places

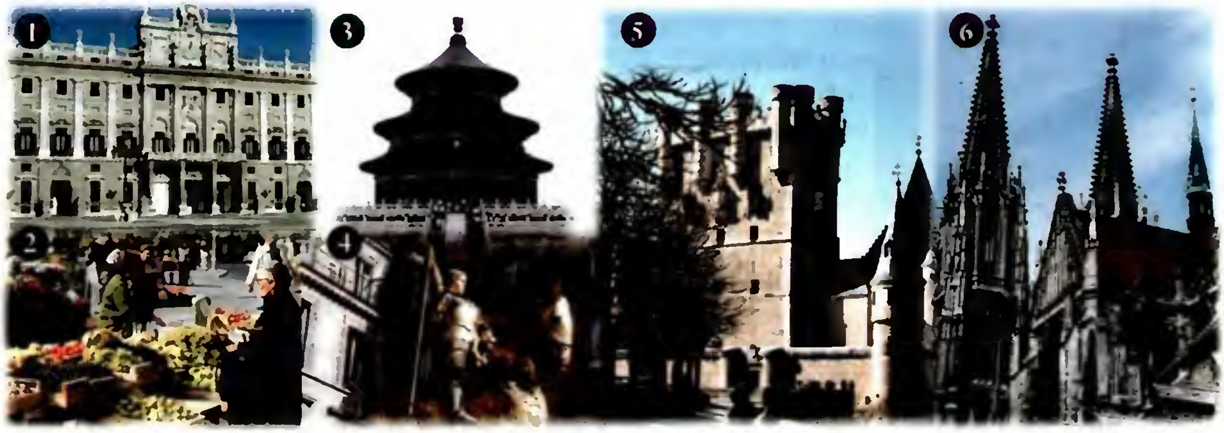

1 palace 2 market 3 temple 4 statue 5 castle 6 cathedral

Many people go on a **sightseeing tour** of a town (usually in a bus); they can also go on a **tour** of a castle, cathedral, etc. When you are sightseeing, it helps to buy a **guidebook** (= a book of information for tourists) and a **map** of the town you are visiting.

B Tourist activities

go sightseeing	We **went sightseeing** almost every day.
do a bit of/a lot of sightseeing	I didn't **do a lot of sightseeing** in Warsaw.
have a look round (= visit somewhere casually)	We **had a** quick **look round** the shops. I wanted to **have a look round** the **art galleries**.
take pictures (= photos)	I **took** hundreds of **pictures** on holiday.
spend money	I **spent** lots of **money** – too much.
get lost (= lose one's way)	We **got lost** almost every day in London.
have a great/nice/terrible time	They **had a lovely time** in Venice.
go out (= leave home/your hotel to go to a social event, e.g. restaurant or disco)	On holiday we **went out** every night.

C Describing 'places'

The word **place** can describe a building, an area, a town, or country:
Bruges is a lovely **place** (= town) and we found a really nice **place** (= hotel) to stay.
The town is full of interesting **places**. (= areas/buildings)

Venice is beautiful but it's always **packed** (= very crowded) **with tourists**.
New York is very **cosmopolitan**. (= full of people from different countries and cultures)
St Petersburg has lots of **historic monuments**. (= important places built a long time ago)
Many beautiful cities are now very **touristy**. (= a negative word: 'too much tourism')
São Paolo is a really **lively** place (= full of life and activity) and the **nightlife** is fantastic.

To ask if it is 'a good idea' to visit a place, use **be worth** + *-ing* or noun.

A: If I go to Scotland, is it **worth spending** a few days in Edinburgh?
B: Yes, definitely – and Glasgow **is worth a visit** as well.

Exercises

91.1 Complete this postcard. You may need a word or phrase in each space.

Hi everyone,

I've been in Paris for over a week now and I'm having a great (1) .... In the first few days I did quite a lot of (2) .... – the Eiffel Tower, Notre Dame, and all the usual tourist attractions. Most places are absolutely (3) .... with tourists, so yesterday I decided to have a (4).............................. round the shops.

Today I've been to a couple of interesting art (5) .... I got (6) .... on my way back to the hotel, but it didn't matter because I discovered a really fascinating (7) .... with lots of little stalls, selling just about everything from apples to antiques.

I ate in the hotel the first night but usually I (8) .... for dinner – the restaurants are great and I can get a set meal for less than 25 euros. I'm afraid I've (9) .... a lot of money, but it's a great place. You'll be able to see for yourself when I get back – I've taken lots of (10) ....

I hope you're all well. I'll write again next week.

Love, Emma

91.2 Which of these places do you usually visit or go to when you are on holiday?

museums
concerts
markets
art galleries
discos/nightclubs
restaurants
churches and cathedrals
castles/palaces/temples
bars
tourist shops
the cinema
the theatre

91.3 Agree with the information in the questions without repeating the same words and phrases. Use words and phrases from the opposite page.

Example A: You've got quite a few pictures, haven't you?
B: Yes, I took lots of photos.

1 A: It's a fabulous city, isn't it?
B: Yes, it's a ....
2 A: There's a big mix of people in London, isn't there?
B: Yes, it's very ....
3 A: It was very crowded, wasn't it?
B: Yes, it was ....
4 A: There's a lot to do in the evenings, isn't there?
B: Yes, the .... is very good.
5 A: Did you enjoy yourselves?
B: Yes, we had a ....
6 A: Kyoto is a good place to go to, isn't it?
B: Yes, Kyoto is definitely ....

91.4 Think of a place in your country (a different place for each number) which is:

1 cosmopolitan
2 lively
3 very touristy
4 famous for its historic monuments
5 worth visiting
6 not worth visiting

92 Holidays by the sea

A Places to stay

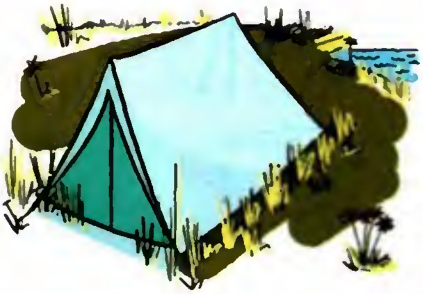

When people **go on holiday** they stay in **various** places (= a number of different places): some go to hotels; some **rent an apartment** (a holiday flat); some prefer to **go camping** and sleep in a **tent**.

B On the beach

Many people spend their holiday in **seaside resorts** (= towns by the sea for tourists, e.g. Malaga, St Tropez, Okinawa) where they can **go to the beach** every day.

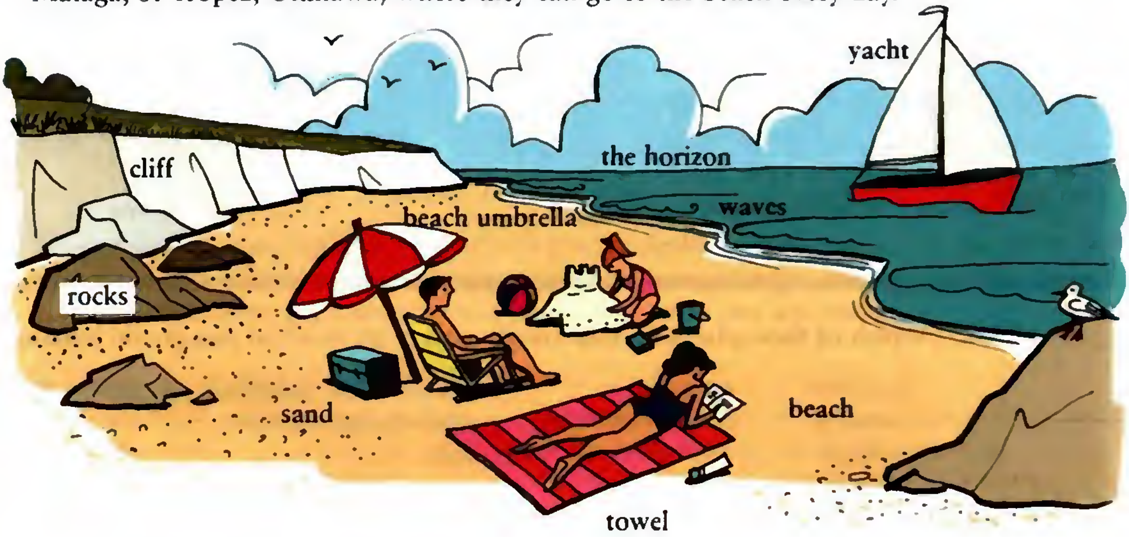

You sometimes get a **gentle breeze** (= a light pleasant wind) from the sea, which helps to cool you down on hot days, but it can also burn you [see section D].

C Seaside activities

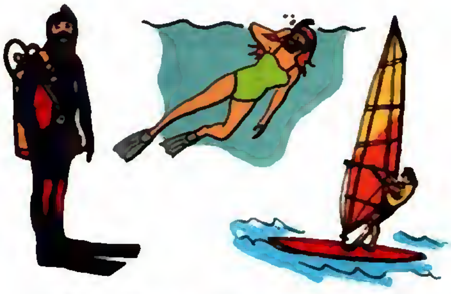

I like to **go for a walk along the cliffs**.
On **sandy beaches**, I often **play volleyball**.
I sometimes **go windsurfing/snorkelling/diving**.
I don't swim much but I like to **have a paddle**.
(= just put my feet in the sea)
My sister likes to **have a swim** in the sea,
but not if it is very **rough** (*opp* **calm**).

D In the sun

Many people go to the beach to **sunbathe** (= lie in the sun) and **get a suntan** (= when the body goes an attractive brown colour from the sun; we can also say, **be brown**). This can be dangerous, and you should always put on **suntan lotion** (= cream or oil to stop your skin burning). This will also help you to **get a tan** and **protect your skin** (= keep your skin safe). If you don't protect your skin, you may **get sunburn** (= the skin becomes red and very painful). For total protection, use **sunblock**.

Exercises

92.1 Write down four more words beginning with 'sun'.

sunshine................ sun........................... sun........................... sun........................... sun...........................

92.2 Match a word from the left with a word from the right to form six phrases.

1 beach	a breeze
2 suntan	b umbrella
3 seaside	c sea
4 gentle	d lotion
5 sandy	e resort
6 rough	f beach

92.3 Identify these seaside activities.

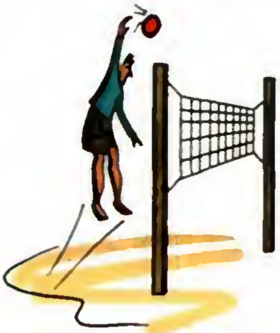

1 ....

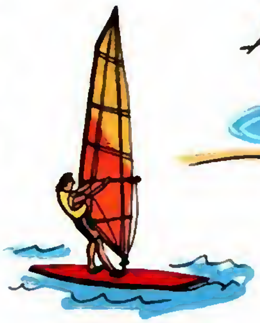

2 ....

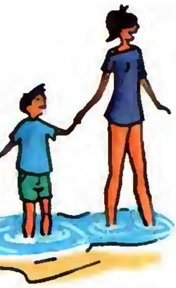

3 ....

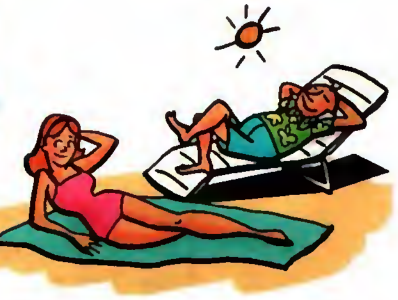

4 ....

92.4 Can you find 11 words (including one phrasal verb) from the opposite page in this word square? All the answers are vertical or horizontal.

S	C	A	L	M	T	C
T	O	W	E	L	A	A
R	O	C	K	S	N	M
C	L	I	F	F	B	P
A	D	R	L	P	R	I
H	O	R	I	Z	O	N
S	W	I	M	O	W	G
H	N	S	K	I	N	T

92.5 Fill the gaps with a suitable verb (one word only). If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.

1 How often do you .... on holiday?
2 Where did you .... your last holiday?
3 Do you or your family often .... an apartment for your holidays?
4 Do you ever .... camping?
5 Do you enjoy .... on a beach?
6 Do you .... a suntan easily?

93 Time

A Prepositions: at, on, in

at a specific time	at 8 o'clock, at 3.30, at midnight
on a day	on Monday, on July 14, on the second day
in a period	in the morning, in April, in the summer, in 1998

Important exceptions are: **at Christmas, at Easter, at the weekend, at night.**

B Prepositions often confused

I'll stay **until** she phones; I'll be here **until** 4.30. (= I'll leave after she phones/after 4.30)
I'll be in the office **by** 8.15 (= not later than 8.15); I'll be back home **by** 6.30. (= not later than 6.30)

I've worked in this office **for** six months. [For + a period of time, e.g. a week, a month]
I've worked here **since** May. [Since + a point in time in the past, e.g. last Friday, 3 March]

I worked on a farm **during** the summer/the holidays. [This tells you 'when'.]
I worked on a farm **for** two years. [This tells you 'how long'.] (NOT ~~during two years~~)

I'm going back to Brazil **in** ten days' **time**. (= ten days from now) (NOT ~~after ten days~~)

C Approximate periods of time: past, present and future

Past
I've known the two girls **for ages**. (= for a long time)
I haven't been to the dentist **recently/lately**. (e.g. in the last few months)
I saw Tom **recently**. (e.g. a few weeks ago/not long ago)
I used to go skiing, but that was **a long time ago**. (e.g. 5–10 years ago)
My sister went to the zoo **the other day**. (= a few days ago, perhaps a week)

Present
I don't see my sister much **these days**. (= a period including the past and now)

Future
This dictionary will be OK **for the time being**. (= for now/the near future – but not long)
I'm sure I'll go to America **one day**. (= in the future but I don't know when)

D Counting time

There are 60 **seconds** in a **minute**, 60 **minutes** in an **hour**, 24 **hours** in a **day**, 7 **days** in a **week**, 2 **weeks** in a **fortnight**, 52 **weeks** in a **year**, 10 **years** in a **decade**, 100 **years** in a **century**.

E 'Take' and 'last'

We use **take** to say how long we need to do something.
It **takes** me (= I need) half an hour to get to school.
We can walk, but it'll **take** (= we'll need) a long time.

We use **last** to talk about the duration of something, from the beginning to the end.
The cookery course **lasted** for ten weeks. (= it continued for ten weeks)
How long does the film **last**? (= How long is it from the beginning to the end?)
The battery in my camera **didn't last long**. (= didn't continue to function for a long time)

Exercises

93.1 Complete the text with *at*, *on* or *in*.

There's one bus from London which gets here (1) .... ten o'clock (2) .... the morning and then another which gets in (3) .... four o'clock (4) .... the afternoon. That's (5) .... weekdays, but (6) .... the weekend the timetable is different. (7) .... Saturday there are still two buses but the second one arrives (8) .... five thirty; (9) .... Sunday there is just the one bus (10) .... two o'clock. And (11) .... the winter, the service doesn't run at all (12) .... Sundays.

93.2 Underline the correct answer in (brackets).

1 The teacher told us to finish our homework (by/until) Monday.
2 We can't leave (by/until) the others get back.
3 I've been in the army (for/since) I was 18.
4 They've worked here (for/since/during) six months.
5 I visit my uncle every week (for/since/during) the winter.
6 I was at university (for/since/during) three years.
7 She's going back to France (in/after) three months' time.
8 I'll see you (in/after) ten days' time.

93.3 Replace the underlined words with more 'approximate' time expressions.

1 I went to Egypt with my parents but that was ten years ago. A long time ago
2 I went to the library three days ago.
3 I haven't been to the cinema for the last three weeks.
4 I haven't been to a concert for three or four years.
5 This computer will be OK for me now and in the next year.

93.4 General Knowledge Quiz. Can you complete these sentences with the correct number?

1 The Olympic Games usually lasts about .... weeks.
2 Pablo Picasso was born in the ....th century, and died in the ....th century.
3 President Kennedy died in .... That's over .... years ago.
4 It takes approximately .... hours to fly from London to New York.
5 The best athletes can run 100 metres in less than .... seconds.

93.5 Complete these sentences about yourself and your country.

1 On weekdays I usually get up at .... and leave home at ....
2 I always clean my teeth in ....
3 I don't go to school/college/work on ....
4 I usually have a holiday in ....
5 I have been in my present school/college/job for ....
6 I have been studying English since ....
7 I haven't spoken English since ....
8 It takes me .... to get to school/college/work.
9 You can't get a driving licence until ....
10 It rains quite a lot during ....

94 Numbers

A Cardinal numbers

379 = three **hundred** and seventy-nine
5,084 = five **thousand** and eighty-four
2,000,000 = two **million**
2,860 = two **thousand** eight **hundred** and sixty
470,000 = four **hundred** and seventy **thousand**
3,000,000,000 = three **billion**

There is no plural 's' after hundred, thousand, million and billion when they are part of a number. When we are talking more generally, they can be plural, e.g. **thousands** of people; **millions** of insects.

B Ordinal numbers and dates

One problem with dates is that we write them and say them in a different way.

We write **4 January** (or 4th January), but say **the fourth of January** *or* **January the fourth**.
We write **21 May** (or 21st May), but say **the twenty-first of May** *or* **May the twenty-first**.
1997 = **nineteen ninety-seven** 2003 = **two thousand and three**

C Fractions and decimals

$1\frac{1}{4}$ = one and a **quarter**
$1\frac{1}{2}$ = one and a **half**
$1\frac{3}{4}$ = one and three **quarters**
1.25 = one **point** two five
1.5 = one **point** five
1.75 = one **point** seven five

D Percentages

26% is spoken as twenty-six **per cent**.
More than 50% of something is the **majority** of it; less than 50% is the **minority**.

E Arithmetic

There are four basic processes. Notice how they are said when we are **working out** (= calculating) the answer.

+ = **addition** e.g. 6 + 4 = 10 (six **plus/and** four **equals/is** ten)
− = **subtraction** e.g. 6 − 4 = 2 (six **minus** four equals/is two)
× = **multiplication** e.g. 6 × 4 = 24 (six **times/multiplied by** four equals/is twenty-four)
÷ = **division** e.g. 8 ÷ 2 = 4 (eight **divided by** two equals/is four)

Some people are not very good at **mental arithmetic** (= arithmetic in your mind without paper) and often **get stuck** (= have a problem) if they have to **work something out**. The easiest way is to use a **calculator**. (= small electronic machine for working out numbers)

F Saying '0'

This can be spoken in different ways in different contexts.

telephone number: 603 724 = six **oh** three, seven two four
mathematics: 0.7 = **nought** point seven; 6.02 = six point **oh** two *or* six point **nought** two
temperature: −10 degrees = ten degrees below **zero** *or* **minus** ten degrees

Exercises

94.1 How do you say these numbers in English? Write your answers after each one.

1 462 ....
2 $2\frac{1}{2}$ ....
3 2,345 ....
4 0.25 ....
5 1,250,000 ....
6 10.04 ....
7 47% ....
8 10 April ....
9 3 July ....
10 602 8477 (phone number) ....
11 –5° centigrade ....
12 In 1976 ....

Now repeat them until you can say them fluently.

94.2 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1 After the game I heard that the crowd was over twenty thousands.
2 We arrived on the four August.
3 There were two hundred twenty altogether.
4 My birthday is the thirty-one August.
5 My phone number is seven twenty three, six nought nine.

94.3 Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

1 The .... were in favour of the new plan; about 80%, I think.
2 A small .... were not happy with the idea, but it was only 5%.
3 I'm not very good at mental arithmetic. I always have to use a ....
4 When I tried to add all the numbers together, I couldn't .... it out.
5 I can do simple mental arithmetic, but I get .... if the numbers are very big.

94.4 Can you do these mental arithmetic problems? If you find it difficult, use paper or a calculator.

1 23 and 36 is ....
2 24 times 8 is ....
3 80 minus 20 is ....
4 65 divided by 13 is ....
5 Add 10 and 6, multiply by 8, then subtract 40 and divide by 11. What have you got?
6 Divide 33 by 11, multiply by 7, add 10, and subtract 16. What's your answer?

94.5 Answer these questions. Write your answers in words.

1 When were you born?
2 How much do you weigh?
3 What is the number of the flat or house where you live?
4 What is the approximate population of your town?
5 What is the approximate population of your country?
6 What is the normal temperature of a healthy person?
7 How many kilometres are there in a mile?

95 Distance, size and dimension

A Distance

These are common ways of asking about distance, with typical replies.

A: How far is it?	B: The nearest one (= the shortest distance from here) is about five miles.
A: Is it far?	B: No. It's just round the corner. (= very near)
A: Is it a long way?	B: No, not far (= quite near) – about ten minutes' walk.
A: Is it very far?	B: Yes, quite a long way. *or* Yes, too far to walk.

We can use **far** in a question or a negative, but not in a positive statement on its own (**it's a long way** NOT ~~it's far~~). But we can say: 'It's **too far** to walk.'

B Size and dimension

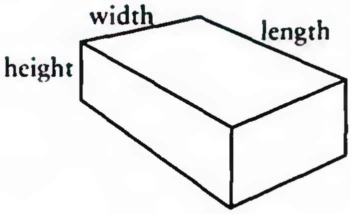

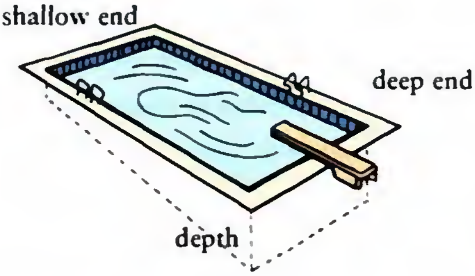

We can ask and answer about dimensions like this:

questions			*answers*
What's the **length** of the room?	*or*	How **long** is the room?	It's 5 metres (**long**).
What's the **width** of the path?		How **wide** is the path?	It's 60 cm (**wide**).
What's the **height** of the wall?		How **high** is the wall?	It's two metres (**high**).
What's the **depth** of the pool?		How **deep** is the pool?	It's 3 metres (**deep**).

C Size in people and things

NOTE

We usually use **tall** to describe people, trees and buildings; and **high** to describe walls, mountains, etc.

We use different words to describe the size of people and things. For example:

a tall girl (*opp* a short girl)
a long book (= many pages) (*opp* a short book)
a deep lake (= many metres) (*opp* a shallow lake)
fat people (*opp* thin people)

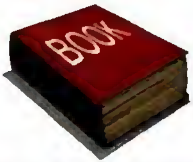

a thick book (*opp* a thin book)

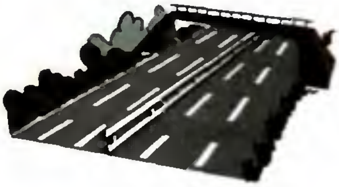

a wide road (*opp* a narrow road)

We can use **big** or **large** to describe size in English, but not **great**, which usually means 'fantastic' in spoken English. But we can use **great big** to say that something is very big, e.g. There was a great big dog in the garden, so I stayed outside.

Exercises

95.1 Think about the building you are in now, and answer these questions using expressions from the opposite page.

1 How far is it to the nearest shop?
2 How far is it to a bank?
3 Is it very far to the nearest bus stop?
4 Is it very far to a post office?
5 Is it a long way to the nearest swimming pool?
6 Is it a long way to the next big town?
7 How far is the nearest railway station?
8 Is it far to the centre of town?

If possible, ask someone else the same questions and compare your answers.

95.2 Write down at least six different questions you could ask about the distance, size or dimensions of: the lake, the mountain, the football pitch and the person.

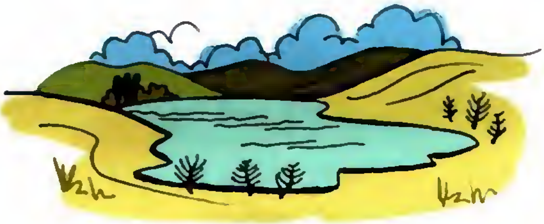

Example How big is the lake?

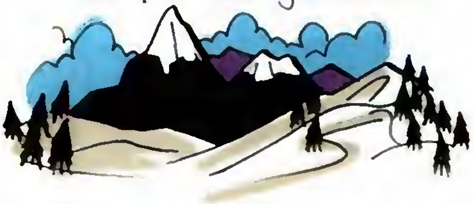

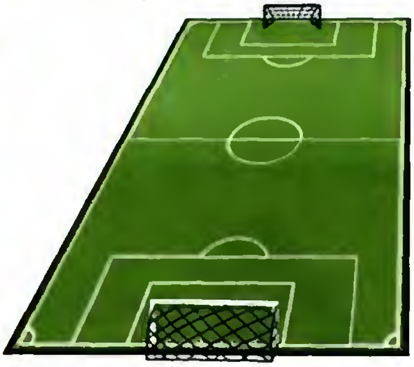

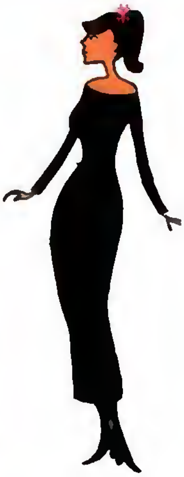

95.3 Disagree with the speaker in the dialogues below. Look at the example first.

Example A: Is it a long film?
B: No, it's quite short.

1 A: Is he very fat?
B: No, he's quite ....
2 A: The water's deep, isn't it?
B: No, it's ....
3 A: Is the road very wide at that point?
B: No, ...
4 A: He's quite tall, isn't he?
B: No, ...
5 A: They only live in a small place, don't they?
B: No, it's ....
6 A: It's a fairly boring place, isn't it?
B: No, ...

96 Shapes, colours and patterns

A Shapes

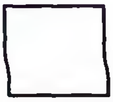
a **square** (n)
square (adj)

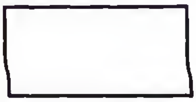
a **rectangle** (n)
rectangular (adj)

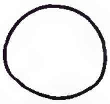
a **circle** (n)
round (adj)

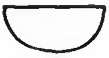
a **semi-circle**

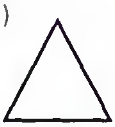
a **triangle**
triangular (adj)

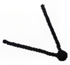
a **point** (n)
pointed (adj)

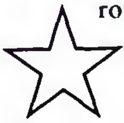
a **star**

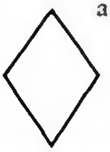
a **diamond**

The room was almost **square**.
It was like a **triangle**.

We haven't got a **round** table.
An unusual **star-shaped** candle.

We sat in a **semi-circle**.
The end was **pointed**.

B Colours

You will already know most of the common colours.
Here are some that are less common.

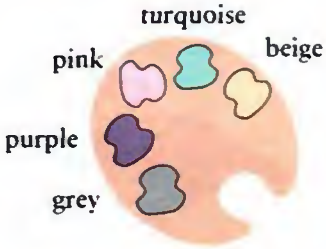

C Shades of colour (= degrees and variation of colour)

NOTE
With some colours, we use **pale**, not **light**, e.g. pale yellow, pale pink.

She bought a **dark** green skirt.

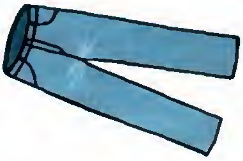
He's wearing **light** blue jeans.

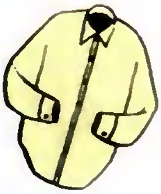
The shirt is **pale** yellow.

D Patterns (also called 'designs')

These are common on clothes and furniture.

striped shirt

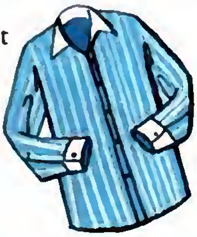

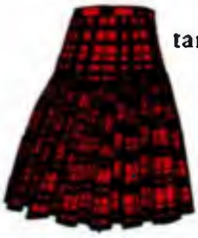
tartan skirt

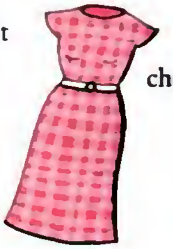
check dress

E Use of the suffix *-ish*

When we want to say that a shape is 'almost round' or a colour is 'a sort of green', we can also express this idea with the suffix *-ish*.

She had a **roundish** face. He wore a **greenish** tie. The wall was a **yellowish** colour.

Exercises

96.1 Complete the table.

noun	*adjective*
square	....
rectangle	....
circle	....
point	....

96.2 Complete these sentences with the correct colour.

1 You mix black and white to get ....
2 You mix red and white to get ....
3 You mix brown and yellow to get ....
4 You mix red and blue to get ....
5 You mix blue and green to get ....

96.3 Describe these pictures using the correct adjective(s) and noun.

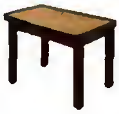

1 ...a rectangular table.........

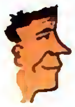

4 ....

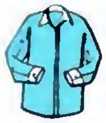

7 ....

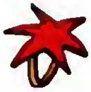

2 ....

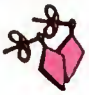

5 ....

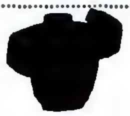

8 ....

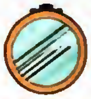

3 ....

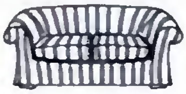

6 ....

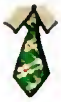

9 ....

96.4 What object is being described in each of these sentences?

1 It's got a point at one end and that's the end you write with.
2 It's rectangular and often green. There are white lines on it, and people play on it.
3 It's a reddish-orange vegetable, quite long and usually pointed at one end.
4 For some of the month it's completely round; at other times, it's closer to a semi-circle.
5 It can look grey, pale blue, dark blue, or a greenish blue. It really depends where it is and whether the sun is shining on it.
6 It's roundish, and white, beige or brown in colour. You eat the inside when it's cooked.
7 The bottom part is triangular, and at the top there is another bit in the shape of a semi-circle. You put things on the triangular part and hang them using the semi-circular part.
8 It lives in the sea. It's quite small and greyish, but goes pink when you cook it. Then you eat it.

96.5 What are you wearing? Write a description, including the exact colour of everything. If there is a colour or design you cannot describe, use a bilingual dictionary.

97 Notices and warnings

A Information

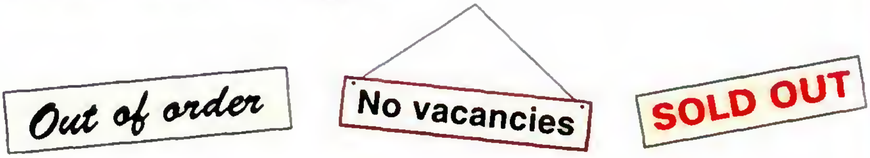
Out of order
No vacancies
SOLD OUT

OUT OF ORDER
for a machine that is not working, e.g. public phone or washing machine

NO VACANCIES
in the window of a B&B (cheap hotel), it means the hotel is full

SOLD OUT
outside a cinema or concert hall – there are no tickets left; they have all been sold

B Do this!

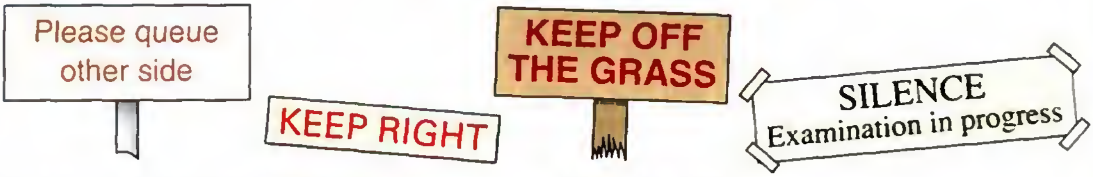
Please queue other side
KEEP RIGHT
KEEP OFF THE GRASS
SILENCE
Examination in progress

PLEASE QUEUE OTHER SIDE
(= wait in a line on the other side of this notice) e.g. in a bank or post office

KEEP RIGHT
(= stay on the right side, and continue on the right side) e.g. in airports, on the underground

C Don't do this!

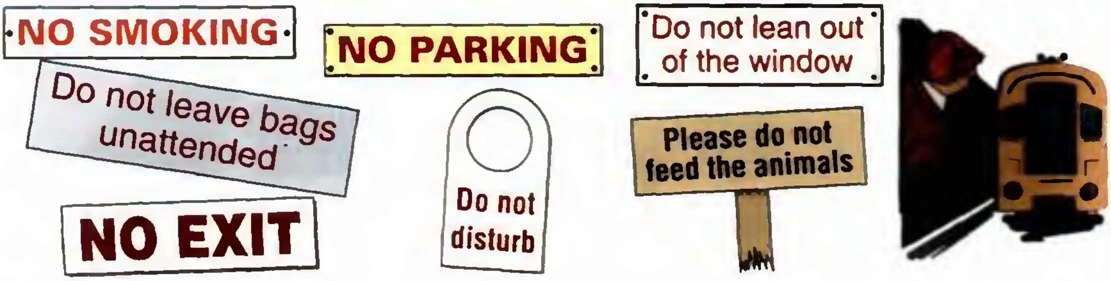
NO SMOKING
NO PARKING
Do not lean out of the window
Do not leave bags unattended
Do not disturb
Please do not feed the animals
NO EXIT

D Be careful!

With these notices, something bad may happen if you do not pay attention to them.

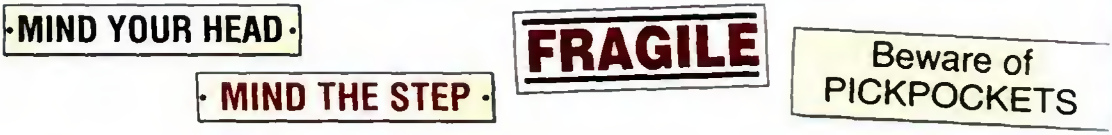
MIND YOUR HEAD
MIND THE STEP
FRAGILE
Beware of PICKPOCKETS

MIND YOUR HEAD
(= be careful you don't hit your head) e.g. in front of a low door

MIND THE STEP
(= be careful you don't hit the step and fall) e.g. in front of a step

FRAGILE
(= be careful, this will break easily)

BEWARE OF PICKPOCKETS
(= be careful, there are people here who will steal things from your bag or pocket without you knowing)

Exercises

97.1 Complete these notices and warnings in possible ways, without looking at the opposite page.

PLEASE QUEUE ....
MIND THE ....
SOLD ....
OUT OF ....
KEEP ....
BEWARE OF ....
MIND YOUR ....
PLEASE DO NOT ....
NO ....

97.2 Where could you see these notices or warnings?

1 **Nothing to declare** ..at an airport..............................
2 **No vacancies** ....
3 Beware of PICKPOCKETS ....
4 Please queue other side ....
5 *Out of order* ....
6 **SOLD OUT** ....
7 **FRAGILE** ....
8 **KEEP OFF THE GRASS** ....

97.3 What notice(s) might you see in each of these places?

1 A zoo ....
2 A waiting area in a busy airport ....
3 The door of a hotel room at 9 o'clock in the morning ....
4 In front of garage doors ....
5 Above the window of a train ....
6 Inside a theatre ....
7 On the underground ....
8 A door going into a low room ....

97.4 Now write some different notices of your own. Think of six possible notices you could put in one of these places:

- a school ....
- a university ....
- a language school ....
- a place where people work, e.g. bank, factory, hospital ....

Where would you put these notices? If possible, do this activity with another person or show it to another person.

97.5 Look for other notices (in English or your first language). Can you understand the English notices? Can you translate the ones in your own language. Try to find six more notices in the next week.

98 Vague language

Vague means 'not clear or precise or exact'. For example, we can say:
I have a **vague** idea where it is. (= I know more or less but not exactly)
In spoken English, we use a lot of vague words when we are not being very precise.

A Thing(s)

- To refer to actions, ideas and facts:
  The main **thing** (= fact) about John is that he always stays calm.
  That was a terrible **thing** (= action) to do.
- To refer to countable objects (often the speaker and listener know what the object is):
  What's that **thing** (bicycle) doing in the house?
  Put those **things** (cups and saucers) in the cupboard.
- To refer to a general situation:
  How are **things** at school? **Things** (= life in general) **are going really well.**

B Stuff

We can use **stuff** with uncountable nouns (or a group of countable nouns) when we don't need to give the exact word. Often the listener knows what the speaker is talking about.
Just leave that **stuff** (= different items of clothes) on the floor. I'll clear it up.
I play guitar but not much classical **stuff.** (= music)

C A sort of ...

We often use this phrase when we cannot find the exact word to describe something.
The walls are **a sort of** yellow. (= not exactly yellow, but more or less)
It's **a sort of** horror film. (= not exactly a horror film, but more or less)

D And things like that/and that sort of thing

We use these phrases so that we don't need to continue the examples.
I don't eat chilli and garlic **and things like that.**
She wears a lot of Armani and Versace **and that sort of thing.**

E Sometime/any time

It'll be ready **sometime next week.** (= next week but I don't know when)
You can collect it **any time after** 10. (= at 10.30 or 12.30, or 3.00 in the afternoon, etc.)

F A bit

It usually means 'a little', but it can also mean 'quite a lot' in spoken English.
Could you speak up **a bit?** (= a little) I can't hear you very well.
I thought the hotel was **a bit** (= quite) expensive, actually.

G Approximately

These words are used with numbers and all mean **approximately.**
It'll take you **about/around** 40 minutes. It's **roughly** ten miles.
We're expecting 100 people, **more or less.** We interviewed 20 **or so,** I think.

Exercises

98.1 What could *thing(s)* and *stuff* refer to in these sentences?

1 I never wear that stuff; it's got such a strong smell. perfume/aftershave
2 This thing has got stuck in the lock.
3 I bought a couple of bottles when I was in Scotland. It's great stuff.
4 We don't need these things on a picnic. We can eat the food with our fingers.
5 What's that white stuff called that you mix with water to make bread?
6 There was a great thing on television last night about elephants.
7 I couldn't get any more stuff in my suitcase.
8 It's a wonderful thing and keeps my young children occupied for ages.
9 I don't know why I bought that thing – it's too heavy for me to carry even when it's empty.
10 It's good stuff. My hair feels really soft, and it didn't cost a lot.

98.2 **Add a word or phrase in the spaces to make this conversation less precise and more natural.**

A: How many people were at the conference?
B: (1) .... 400.
A: Was it good?
B: Er, I (2) .... enjoyed it.
A: You don't seem very sure.
B: Well, there were some good (3) .... , but it was (4) .... too long.
A: And did you go to John's talk?
B: Naturally.
A: How did it go?
B: Well, he was (5) .... nervous at the beginning, but it went really well.
A: What was it about exactly?
B: Oh you know, changes in the family, (6) ....
A: How many people were in the audience?
B: 75 (7) ....
A: That's good, isn't it?
B: I think John was (8) .... disappointed – he wanted at least 100.

98.3 **Reply to each of these questions with a suitable 'vague' response.**

1 A: Did you get everything you wanted?
B: Yeah, more or less
2 A: Did you say the walls were blue?
B: Yeah, ...
3 A: Will there be 20 chairs in the room?
B: Yeah, ...
4 A: Is it a very serious film?
B: Yeah, ...
5 A: Are you tired?
B: Yeah, ...
6 A: Can I collect it tomorrow?
B: Yes, ...

99 Formal and informal English

A Formal English

Formal English is more common in writing than speaking, and is used in notices, business letters and legal English. You will hear some examples in spoken English, e.g. airport announcements.

Notice in café: Only food **purchased** (= bought) here may be eaten **on the premises**.
Police statement: I **apprehended** (= caught) the accused outside the supermarket.
Theatre announcement: The play will **commence** (= start) in two minutes.
Business meeting: The meeting will **resume** (= start again) this afternoon at 2 pm.
Lawyer in court: My client had a broken ankle, **thus** (= so) he couldn't drive the car.
Business letter: I **regret to inform you** (= I'm sorry to say) that we are **unable to** ... (= can't)
Notice: If you **require** (= need) **further assistance** (= more help), please contact ...
Airport announcement: Will passengers for Miami please **proceed to** (= go to) gate 36.

B Informal English

Informal language is more common in spoken English. For example:

- most uses of get are informal (see Unit 29)
- many phrasal verbs are informal (see Units 23 and 24)
- many idioms are informal (see Unit 13)
- most shortened words are informal (see Unit 100)

Informal language is not suitable for formal written English, but in spoken English (and most e-mails or letters to friends) it will help you generally to sound more natural.

I had to go and **pick up** (= collect) the **kids** (= children) from school.
I **reckon** (= think) we'll **get** (= receive/obtain) the money **pretty** (= quite) soon.
I'm just going to the **loo**. (= toilet)
Do you **fancy** going out? (= Would you like to go out?)
I managed to **fix up** (= arrange/make) an appointment for 7.30.
My flat is very **handy** for the shops. (= near the shops and very convenient)
I thought the book was **terrific**. (= marvellous)
Most of the students are **bright** (= intelligent) but Paul is really **thick**. (= stupid)
What's up? (= What's the matter?)
We must **get in touch with** them (= contact them) very soon.
When we **get to** (= reach/arrive) the hotel, I'll **have a word with** (= speak to) them.
I offered him ten **quid** (= pounds), but the **guy** (= man) wasn't interested.
A: Here's the book I promised you.
B: Oh, **cheers**. (= thank you. It can also mean 'goodbye'.)
Did you bring your **bike**? (= bicycle)

C Slang

This is a form of very informal language. It includes words used by particular groups of people, e.g. young people often refer to 'drugs' as **dope**, and also words which many people think are impolite and unacceptable in most situations. You should probably not use these words, but some of them are quite common. For example, the word **piss** is a slang word meaning to urinate/go to the toilet, and it is also used in a number of other slang expressions with different meanings.

Piss off! (= go away) He was **pissed**. (= drunk) It's **pissing with rain**. (= raining heavily)

Exercises

99.1 Put the words on the left into the correct column on the right.

handy
purchase
thus
quid
apprehend
guy
loo
resume
terrific
commence
reckon
cheers

formal	*informal*
purchase	....
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....
	....
	....

99.2 Find a synonym in the box for each of the words in 99.1.

so
start
thanks
buy purchase
man
think
convenient
start again
marvellous
catch
pounds
toilet

99.3 Replace the underlined words and phrases in these sentences with more informal language.

1 Where did you purchase that book?
2 I'm just going to the toilet.
3 The woman on the desk told us to proceed to gate 12.
4 What's the matter?
5 Would you like to go out for a meal?
6 When are you going to collect your bicycle?
7 My flat is five minutes from where I work, thus it's very convenient.
8 The man in the market wanted twenty pounds for this ring.
9 Most of the children are very clever.
10 I think it'll commence quite soon.

99.4 Now rewrite the underlined parts of this letter in more suitable formal English.

Dear Mr Collins,

We're really sorry to say that we can't lend you the sum of £500 that you need, but it may be possible to provide you with a loan for some of the money.

If you would like to contact the branch and have a word with Mrs Jenkins, she will fix up an appointment with the assistant manager. He will be happy to discuss the matter with you.

Yours sincerely,

99.5 Dictionaries will tell you if a word is formal or informal/spoken. Use your dictionary to find out if these underlined words are formal or informal/spoken. What do they mean?

I thought the film was a drag.
Someone has pinched my pen.
Patrons only.
He's a nice bloke.
It was too much hassle to go.
Smoking isn't permitted.

100 Abbreviations and abbreviated words

A Letters or words?

Most abbreviations are spoken as individual letters:

BBC	British Broadcasting Corporation	MP	Member of Parliament
UN	United Nations	PM	Prime Minister
EU	European Union	ID	Identification, e.g. Do you have an ID card?
USA	United States of America	PC	Personal computer
WWW	World Wide Web	CV	Curriculum vitae
ISP	Internet Service Provider	CD	Compact Disc

A few abbreviations are spoken as words, e.g. AIDS /eɪdz/ (= Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome), and occasionally they can be spoken as individual letters or a word, e.g. VAT /væt/ or [V-A-T] Value Added Tax (= a tax on goods/products in EU countries)

If you don't understand an abbreviation, you can ask about its meaning like this:

A: What does V-A-T stand for?
B: Value Added Tax.

A: What does EU stand for?
B: European Union.

B Written forms only

Some abbreviations are written forms only; they are still pronounced as full words.

Mr /mɪstə/
Mrs /mɪsɪz/ (= a married woman)
Ms /məz/ (= a woman who may be single or married)

St Mark (Saint Mark)
Dean St (Dean Street)
Dr (Doctor)

C Abbreviations as part of the language

Some abbreviations (from Latin) are used as part of the language.

abbreviation	*pronunciation*	*meaning*	*Latin*
etc.	et cetera	and so on	et cetera
e.g.	E-G	for example	exempli gratia
i.e.	I-E	that's to say/in other words	id est

NOTE

We write 'etc'. and 'e.g.', but when we speak we usually say 'and so on' and 'for example'.

D Shortened words

Some common English words can be shortened, especially in spoken English. In some cases, the shorter form is more common and the full form sounds very formal/strange, e.g. refrigerator, influenza, gymnasium and veterinary surgeon.

phone (telephone)
maths (mathematics)
board (blackboard)
case (suitcase)
ad/advert (advertisement)

fridge (refrigerator)
exam (examination)
plane (aeroplane)
photo (photograph)
flu (influenza) (= illness like a cold but more serious)

bike (bicycle)
TV/telly (television)
a paper (newspaper)
vet (veterinary surgeon)

lab (laboratory) (= special room where scientists work)
gym (gymnasium) (= large room with equipment for physical exercise)
sales rep (sales representative)

Exercises

100.1 What do these letters stand for? Complete each one.

1 BBC = British Broadcasting ....
2 MP = Member of ....
3 WWW = World Wide ....
4 CD = ... Disc
5 PM = Prime ....
6 UN = United ....
7 PC = Personal ....
8 ID = ...

100.2 Rewrite this note, making it more informal by using short forms where possible.

> Michael
>
> Peter had a mathematics examination this afternoon and then he had to take his bicycle to the repair shop, so he'll probably be a bit late home. You can watch television while you're waiting for him, and please help yourself to anything in the refrigerator. If there's a problem (for example, Doctor Brown rings about the influenza vaccination), my telephone number is next to the photographs on the dining room table. I should be home myself by about five.
>
> Margaret (Peter's mother)

100.3 What abbreviations in written English are often used for these words or phrases?

1 for example
2 and so on
3 Street
4 in other words
5 Mister
6 Doctor

100.4 Complete these sentences with suitable words or abbreviations from the opposite page.

1 She didn't want to walk, so she went on her ...bike...............................
2 If you go to Mediterranean islands, ... Sardinia or Corsica, it's a good idea to hire a car.
3 If you want to apply for the job, you need to send your .... with a letter of application.
4 I asked the teacher to write the word on the ....
5 In that shop on the corner you can get books, pens, writing paper, ...
6 She was away from college last week because she had .... I think she's better now, though.
7 When I sold my records, I put an .... in the paper and had three replies the same day.
8 It was a warm day, so I put the milk and butter in the ....
9 If the tickets are very expensive, ... more than £50, don't buy any.
10 What does EU .... for?

100.5 Here are some more abbreviations. What does each one stand for, and where will you see them?

PTO RSVP ASAP CC/cc

Answer key

Unit 1

1.1 *Suggested answers:*

1 It is better to plan regular self-study.
2 No, study the units that interest you.
3 Yes.
4 Yes, it usually is necessary.
5 It is probably better to revise for short periods but do it often.

1.3 revision/revise; pronunciation/pronounce; choice/choose; interest/interest

1.4 1 Did you do 2 for half an hour 3 the left-hand page
4 I spent twenty minutes 5 the whole page

1.5 2 True 3 False (it means doing certain things in the same way) 4 True
5 False ('at least 50' means a minimum of 50) 6 True 7 True
8 False ('revision' means studying something a second or third time)
9 True 10 False ('a blank piece of paper' has no writing on it)

Unit 2

2.1 *Possible answers:*

CLOTHES	RAILWAYS/TRAVEL	WORDS WITH '*un-*' PREFIX
put on	platform	unfriendly
gloves	train	unhappy
size	get on	unable
jumper	late	unkind
wear	passenger	
tie		

2.2 1 on 2 black 3 put on 4 make 5 gave 6 finger

2.3 1 b 2 c 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 a 7 b 8 b

2.4 The answers here will depend on your first language: a translation may or may not be suitable for all of the words. Example sentences are a good idea for most words, and there is usually something else that is also useful to know. Here are some suggestions:
concentrate: the main stress is on the first syllable, and it is followed by the preposition 'on'. The noun is 'concentration'.
beard: a picture is the best way to show meaning; it is pronounced /bɪəd/; also useful to know 'moustache'.
nearly: synonym = almost. Usually goes before the main verb except the verb 'to be', e.g. we nearly lost the game; it is nearly 4 o'clock.
empty: opposite = full. Also useful to learn 'half-empty' (= 'half-full') but seems more negative.
rescue: synonym = save; noun and verb.
knife: a picture is the best way to show meaning; the letter 'k' is silent; also important to know the plural form 'knives', and the words 'fork' and 'spoon'.

2.5 *Possible answers:*

take: a picture, a bath, a decision, a bus
make: a mistake, a decision, a mess, a noise, friends, money, coffee
do: homework, research, someone a favour, an exam, sport, the shopping, the washing-up

Unit 3

3.1 1 bilingual 2 pronunciation 3 uncountable 4 opposites 5 guess; look it up

3.2
2 Wrong ('homesick' means you are unhappy living away from home and want to return)
3 Right
4 Right
5 Wrong (the opposite of 'polite' is 'impolite')
6 Wrong (the past tense of 'begin' is 'began')
7 Right
8 Right
9 Right
10 Wrong ('depend' is followed by the preposition 'on')

3.3 k in knife; b in comb; t in castle; l in salmon; p in receipt

3.4
1 very small
2 /lu:z/ like 'choose'
3 win a game
4 chose/chosen
5 choice
6 It's an adjective.
7 be and feel, e.g. She's homesick; He feels homesick.
8 law and order

3.5 1 = def. 3 2 = def. 1 3 = def. 2 4 = def. 1

Unit 4

4.1
2 in Seville; preposition
3 got/took/caught a train; verb
4 a beautiful city; indefinite article
5 expensive/good hotel; adjective
6 of money; preposition
7 wonderful hotel/place/location; noun
8 to Spain; preposition
9 never stays; adverb

4.2
uncountable noun: traffic
plural noun: shorts; jeans
a phrasal verb: get in; put on
idiom: get a move on

4.3 1 transitive 2 transitive 3 intransitive 4 transitive
5 intransitive 6 intransitive

4.4 *Syllables and main stress (underlined):*

One syllable: noun
Two syllables: English; decide; before, adverb
Three syllables: informal; adjective; opposite; understand
Four syllables: education; preposition
Five syllables: pronunciation

4.5 1 adjectives
2 happily; luckily; dangerously; cheaply
3 happy/content/cheerful; lucky/fortunate
4 un- (unhappy; unlucky)
5 dangerous/safe; cheap/expensive

Unit 5

5.1 1 notebook 2 file 3 briefcase 4 socket 5 plug
6 tape recorder/cassette recorder

5.2 2 a cassette/tape
3 an OHT
4 notes/papers
5 notes/books/pens, etc
6 a plug
7 rub things out/erase them
8 (photo)copy things
9 because you want it louder
10 because there aren't enough books/you've forgotten your book

5.3 2d 3e 4a 5f 6g 7h 8b

5.4 1 What does 'swap' mean?
2 How do you pronounce it?
3 How do you spell it?

Unit 6

6.1 2 incorrect
3 illegible
4 impossible
5 impatient
6 irregular
7 unfriendly
8 informal
9 impolite
10 invisible
11 unemployed
12 dishonest
13 unlock
14 unpack
15 disagree
16 dislike

6.2 2 unlock the door 3 disappear 4 get undressed

6.3 2 it's very untidy 3 he got undressed 4 it's completely illegible
5 she's very impatient 6 inadequate 7 unpleasant
8 dishonest

6.4 2 misunderstood/misread/misheard 3 unpacked 4 disappeared
5 redo/rewrite 6 overslept 7 unlock 8 disliked 9 redo/retake
10 overdoing 11 reopen 12 overcharged

Unit 7

7.1 education; improvement; jogging; government; spelling; hesitation; arrangement
stupidity; happiness; weakness; similarity; activity; sadness; popularity

7.2 2 election 3 education 4 government 5 weakness
6 stupidity 7 management 8 improvement

7.3 2 translator 3 actor 4 psychologist 5 economist 6 footballer

7.4 pop singer bus driver shop manager child psychologist
film director ballet dancer computer operator professional footballer

7.5 2 murders someone
3 manages a bank
4 acts on TV
5 translates books and articles, etc.
6 drives a lorry
7 writes articles in newspapers and magazines
8 paints pictures

Unit 8

8.1
2 attractive
3 creative
4 cloudy
5 (un)suitable
6 useful/useless
7 careful/careless
8 thoughtful
9 political
10 enjoyable
11 painful
12 dirty
13 sunny
14 musical
15 (un)comfortable
16 famous
17 (un)reliable
18 emotional

8.2
2 famous
3 helpful
4 dangerous
5 painful
6 useful
7 reliable
8 industrial
9 economical
10 homeless
11 fashionable
12 incomprehensible

8.3
1 *opp* awful/terrible
2 *opp* useless
3 *opp* wonderful/great
4 *opp* careless
5 *opp* ugly

8.4
homeless family
careless mistake
comfortable bed
industrial area
famous actor
useful advice
cloudy morning
enjoyable party

8.5 *Possible answers:*

2 cloudy, sunny, foggy
3 careful, careless, dangerous, reliable
4 famous, dirty, attractive, industrial
5 comfortable, fashionable, reliable, unreliable, economical

Unit 9

9.1
1 guess
2 diet
3 queue
4 murder
5 ring
6 kiss
7 chat
8 dream

9.2
1 We waited a long time.
2 This apple tastes strange.
3 We queued for half an hour.
4 The holiday cost about £500.
5 I replied to his letter yesterday.
6 She smiled at me this morning.

9.3
1 I'll give him a ring this evening.
2 I'll go on a diet if necessary.
3 If you don't know, just have a guess.
4 I put on the brakes but I still couldn't stop in time.
5 I had a dream about my mother.
6 Did you have a look in the paper?

9.4
1 same meaning
2 completely different (the verb 'to book' = 'to reserve')
3 completely different ('a break' is a rest; 'to break a leg' = to fracture a leg)
4 similar (but not exactly the same because 'a run' here is not just the action of running; it is an activity that the person chooses to do)

Unit 10

10.1 *Possible answers:*

Money: credit card, cash machine, income tax, box office (where you buy tickets)
Kitchens: dishwasher, washing machine, frying pan, tin opener
Jobs: bus driver, postman, babysitter, pop star, film star, rock star
Roads/transport: traffic lights, traffic jam, bus stop, bus driver, travel agent
Things we wear: T-shirt, sunglasses, earrings, make-up

10.2
2 traffic jam 3 film star 4 traffic lights 5 waiting room
6 babysitter 7 sunglasses 8 income tax 9 hair dryer
10 bus stop 11 science fiction 12 washing machine

10.3 *Possible answers:*

1 living room, waiting room, chat room, bedroom, bathroom, classroom
2 pop star, rock star, film actor, film director
3 birthday card, postcard, Christmas card, phone card, credit limit
4 toothbrush, toothache, toothpick
5 traffic jam, traffic warden, street lights
6 sunshine, suntan, sunshade, sunburn
7 haircut, hairdresser, hairstyle, tumble dryer
8 girlfriend, pen friend, school friend

Unit 11

11.1
easy-going
five-star
brand-new
part-time
well-known
good-looking
short-sleeved
second-hand
left-handed

11.2
1 sleeved 2 handed 3 new 4 behaved
5 part 6 written 7 off/paid 8 hand
9 looking 10 known 11 going 12 year

11.3 *Possible answers:*

1 well-paid; well-organised; well-written, well-equipped, etc.
2 part-time; full-time
3 badly-written; badly-dressed; badly-behaved; badly-organised, etc.
4 right-handed; left-handed

11.4 1 hotel 2 delay 3 note 4 walk 5 fine

Unit 12

12.1
heavy traffic; heavy rain; heavy smoker
miss a bus; miss a person; miss a lesson
tell a joke; tell a lie; tell the truth

12.2
2 a slight accent 3 weak coffee 4 a loud voice
5 a soft drink 6 tell a lie 7 miss the bus 8 dry wine

12.3
1 missed
2 told
3 start
4 great
5 start
6 hard
7 vitally
8 heavy
9 strong
10 missed
11 well
12 wasted
13 fast; wide

12.4
1 size; large
2 wide range
3 broad shoulders
4 vast majority

Unit 13

13.1
1 hang on
2 I haven't a clue
3 go ahead
4 Never mind
5 if you like
6 up
7 keep an eye on
8 make it
9 make up your mind
10 up to you

13.2
1 term
2 turns
3 nerves
4 theory
5 place/world
6 mind
7 rid
8 like
9 early
10 tongue
11 hand
12 getting
13 changed
14 get

13.3
1 easy
2 for ever (they are not coming back)
3 manage

Unit 14

14.1 *The correct prepositions and sample replies:*

2 at	B: French and German.
3 for	B: Her brother, I think.
4 for	B: Assistant manager.
5 to	B: I think it's a comedy programme.
6 about	B: She said the vegetables were cold.
7 for	B: The fact that she was late twice last week.
8 to	B: The man over there.
9 at	B: One of the students in her class.
10 in	B: Thrillers, I think.
11 on	B: How much it costs, I expect.
12 of	B: The fact that she can't get out; she's claustrophobic.

14.2 2j 3a 4l 5h 6b 7d 8k 9g 10i 11e 12f

14.3 *Possible answers:*
2 to my brother/sister/mother
3 with her homework/her results
4 from hay fever/sunburn
5 with this TV
6 into five languages/French
7 of flying/heights/spiders
8 in art/music
9 on sport/English food
10 from British people
11 of going to Greece
12 of tourists/holidaymakers

14.4 fond of; concentrate on; rely on

Unit 15

15.1
1 on 2 by 3 on 4 on 5 on 6 by 7 for
8 in 9 on 10 by 11 in 12 on 13 by 14 by
15 on 16 in 17 in 18 at 19 by 20 in

15.2
1 by myself/on my own 2 in time 3 on fire 4 on the phone
5 on TV 6 by mistake/accident 7 in the end 8 at the end
9 at the moment 10 by chance

15.3
1 by accident 2 by himself/on his own 3 on foot (*or* 'by bus, by taxi, by train')
4 on business 5 on the radio 6 out of work
7 by train (*or* 'by car, by bus') 8 in love

Unit 16

16.1
2 I'm; cancelled; problem 3 keep; mind 4 sort 5 lot
6 apologise; matter 7 long; worry 8 kind 9 beg; problem
10 about; up

16.2 *Possible answers:*

2 I'm sorry I'm late, but I missed the bus.
3 Oh, thank you. That's very kind of you.
4 Don't worry. It doesn't matter.
5 I'm very sorry to disturb you, but …
6 Never mind. Don't worry. I'll sort it out.
7 I must apologise for not coming to the meeting yesterday. Unfortunately, …
8 Please accept our apologies for the delay in sending the information we promised you. Unfortunately, we had a fire at the factory last month, and this …

Unit 17

17.1
A: Would you like to go out this evening?
B: I'm afraid I haven't got any money. (omit 'but')
A: That's OK, I'll pay. How about going to see a film?
B: No, I think I'd rather stay in and do my homework. (omit 'to' after 'rather')
A: Why don't you do your homework this afternoon?
B: I'm busy this afternoon.
A: OK. We could go tomorrow.
B: Yeah, great.
A: Right. What film shall we see?
B: I don't mind.

17.2
1 sure/no problem
2 wondering; love
3 fancy; don't; idea
4 shall; about; could; rather; like
5 would; mind

17.3 *Possible answers:*

1 Yeah, sure.
2 Yes, of course.
3 I'm afraid not.
4 Yes, I'd love to.

5 I'd love to, but I'm afraid I can't.
6 Yeah, great.
7 Yes, that's a good idea.
8 Yes, if you like.
9 Well, it's a bit difficult actually because I promised to help …
10 Yeah, I don't mind/if you like.

Unit 18

18.1
1 What do you think of … ?
2 What do you think about … ?
3 How do you feel about … ?

18.2
1 of; personally ('actually' would also be correct here)
2 according
3 point
4 totally ('completely' would also be possible here)
5 opinions/views

18.3 *Possible answers:*

2 In my opinion the club needs new players.
3 I don't agree with you at all.
4 According to the newspaper terrorists started the fire.
5 Yes, I see what you mean.
6 What do you think about giving … ?

18.4 1c 2a 3d 4b

18.5 *Possible answers:*

1 Yeah, possibly, but that doesn't mean all women want to be housewives. Some want to have careers.
2 Yes, I agree to some extent, but how do you know if people don't want to work? They may want to work but there are no jobs.
3 Yes, I agree with you, but of course we have to decide what the best way to help them is.

Unit 19

19.1
1 A: I love modern art.
B: Yes, so do I.
2 A: Do you like this?
B: Yes, I like it very much.
3 A: Would you like to go out?
B: No, I'd prefer to stay here.
4 I'm looking forward to seeing you next week.
5 A: Do you like tea?
B: Yes, but I prefer coffee to tea.
6 A: Does he like football?
B: No, he's not interested in sport.
7 A: I don't like his new CD.
B: No, neither do I.
8 I don't mind helping them.

19.2
1 stand 2 thing/stuff 3 on 4 like
5 forward 6 interest 7 into 8 hearing

19.3
2 I think they'd rather go home.
3 His books don't interest me.
4 I don't really like things like that.
5 I'm very interested in archaeology.
6 I don't mind the new building.

19.4 2 So do I/me too. 3 Neither do I/me neither. 4 Neither can I/me neither.
5 So am I/me too. 6 Neither am I/me neither.

Unit 20

20.1 2 single 3 special/much 4 get 5 What
6 longer 7 How 8 sort/kind

20.2
2 Have you got the time?
3 How old are you?
4 How far is it?
5 What sort/type/kind of food do you eat?
6 Excuse me. How do I get to (the national museum)?
7 What's their new flat like?
8 What are you doing this evening?
9 How long have you been here? / When did you get here?

20.3 2 How's it going? (Also 'How are things going?') 3 Whereabouts do you live …
4 What's your steak like? 5 … the first time you've been to …
6 matter

20.4
A: How long have you been here?
B: Just a couple of days.
A: Really? And how long are you staying / how long are you here for / how much longer are you here for?
B: Until next Friday.
A: Is this the first time you've been to Spain?
B: No, I came last year.

Unit 21

21.2 1 so 2 so 3 not 4 it 5 so 6 not

21.3 2f 3e 4b 5d 6a

21.4 1 shame 2 If you like 3 how 4 doubt it
5 Whatever you like/want 6 that sounds awful/terrible

21.5 *Possible answers:*

1 How exciting/That sounds wonderful.
2 Oh, what a nuisance/pain.
3 If you like/I don't mind.
4 I don't mind/Wherever you like.
5 Oh, that's brilliant/How exciting.
6 Oh, what a shame/pity.
7 Really? That's dreadful/Oh, how awful.
8 Oh, what a nuisance/pain.

Unit 22

22.1
2 Happy (21st) Birthday (*or* Many happy returns)
3 Happy New Year
4 Congratulations (on passing your exams)/Well done
5 Good luck (in your driving test)
6 See you soon

22.2 1 How do you do?; How do you do?/Pleased/nice to meet you.
2 Have a nice weekend; Yes, you too/same to you.
3 Bless you!
4 Cheers; cheers

22.3 2 Sorry? (with rising intonation)
3 Goodbye. Nice to meet you/Nice to have met you.
4 Excuse me.
5 Goodnight. (See you in the morning/tomorrow.)
6 Excuse me. (You would probably add something like 'I think you've dropped something.')
7 Congratulations.
8 Good luck.

22.4 We use 'hard luck' to someone who has just failed in something, e.g. failed an exam.
We ask people to 'say cheese' when we are about to take a photo of them.
We say 'watch out' as a warning, e.g. to warn someone crossing a road that a cyclist is right behind them and could hit them if they aren't careful.
We say 'keep your fingers crossed' when we wish and hope that a situation will have a happy or good result, e.g. 'I'm taking my driving test tomorrow, so keep your fingers crossed'. (= Let's hope I pass.)

Unit 23

23.1 2 picked 3 gone 4 get 5 gets 6 put
7 look 8 carry/get 9 get 10 run

23.2 *Possible answers:*

2 an hour late/for Paris/from Heathrow
3 in a dictionary
4 my boss/my parents/the neighbours/my teacher, etc.
5 her coat/her jacket/her gloves, etc.
6 smoking/chocolate, etc.
7 the cat/the children, etc.
8 the car
9 paper, coffee, bread, etc.
10 by ten pounds/next week, etc.

23.3 1 def. 3 2 def. 5 3 def. 2 4 def. 4

23.4 Look at the examples on page 48.

Unit 24

24.1 1 *correct*
2 ... I'd pick them up after school.
3 She grew up on a farm.
4 *correct*
5 ... will sort it out.
6 *correct*
7 ... broke into the house?
8 *correct*

24.2 1 going up; get by; carry on
2 come in/go in; take off
3 make up; leave out
4 turned down; sort out

24.3 1 down 2 out 3 on 4 out 5 up
6 away/out 7 off 8 up 9 off/out 10 down

24.4 *Possible answers:*

2 excuses/stories
3 the TV/the light/the fire
4 my flat/my house
5 the problem/the mess/the central heating
6 tonight/on Saturday evening
7 the second question/the final part
8 just outside London/on the motorway, etc.
9 in English/on your salary
10 in a small town/by the sea

24.5 *Possible answers:*

U52: grow up; go out (with sb); split up
U53: wake up; get up; stay in; go out
U61: do up; take sth off; put sth on
U79: plug sth in; turn sth off/on/over; switch sth on/off/over
U80: put sb through; get through; phone sb back; be back; get back

Unit 25

25.1 2 I haven't got a job at the moment.
3 Does he have any change for the machine?
4 She doesn't have much money.
5 We haven't got a video at school.
6 A: Have you got an English dictionary? B: Yes, I have.

25.2 3 We've got a small garden.
4 I think I've got a cold.
5 A: Have you got a spare pen?
6 ... she's got a new boyfriend.
7 *cannot change*
8 *cannot change*
9 I've got a new computer.
10 Have you got the time?

25.3 2 dream 3 rest/break 4 party 5 think 6 problem
7 time 8 lunch 9 look 10 argument/row

25.4 2 Could I have a look at your paper?
3 Could I have a word with you?
4 Could I have a drink/something to drink?
5 Could I have a think about it?

25.5 2 Mary is having a baby/going to have a baby.
3 Mary had a problem working the video/with the video.

4 Mary had a look at my bad shoulder.
5 Mary had a great time in Ireland.

Unit 26

26.1 1 do 2 take/do 3 make 4 do 5 take
6 made 7 do 8 take/make 9 doing 10 made

26.2 1 do my/the shopping 2 making progress 3 take a break 4 do me a favour
5 makes a (big) difference 6 make (a lot of) money 7 make a decision
8 did badly 9 take a seat 10 take a week off/take a week's holiday

26.3 1 Sally did the shopping this morning. 2 Maria did her homework after dinner.
3 Simon took a picture/photo of me this morning. 4 Michael did well in his exams.

Unit 27

27.1 1 break somebody's heart; the law
2 give somebody a hand; somebody a lift
3 keep in touch; somebody waiting

27.2 2 keep 3 broken 4 see 5 gave
6 keep 7 see 8 see 9 break 10 see

27.3 2 gave her a ring
3 broken the law
4 keep in touch
5 break her heart
6 give you a hand

27.4 1 dry 2 laughing 3 awake 4 fit/healthy 5 forgetting 6 quiet

Unit 28

28.1 1 catch (also take/get) 2 leave 3 let 4 caught
5 left 6 leave 7 catch 8 let's

28.2 1 alone 2 catch 3 know 4 see
5 left 6 message 7 catch 8 cold

28.3 1b and e; 2a and f; 3c and d

28.4 *Possible answers:*

2 me help you/me do it 3 me give you a lift 4 you know

Unit 29

29.1 1 buy/find 2 fetch 3 arrive 4 became 5 find
6 receive 7 becoming 8 buy 9 receive 10 arrive

29.2 2 I'm getting hungry. 3 I'm getting hot. 4 It's getting late.
5 It's getting dark. 6 I'm getting worse at English.

29.3 2 get to know people in this country 3 get on (very) well with my boss
4 get rid of most of the furniture in this room 5 How are you getting on?
6 really get on my nerves 7 getting ready to go out 8 get up

Unit 30

30.1 2 coming 3 go 4 take 5 taking ('bringing' is also possible here if the speaker already imagines him/herself at the party) 6 bring 7 go 8 come

30.2 2 try 3 are you 4 fetch 5 together

30.3 1 shopping 2 for a meal/for something to eat 3 for a drink
4 sightseeing 5 for a drive 6 for a swim *or* swimming

30.4 2 deaf 3 bankrupt 4 grey 5 bald
6 mad 7 blind 8 together

Unit 31

31.1 2 ripe 3 horrible 4 banana 5 sore 6 fresh
7 photograph 8 brother 9 salmon 10 old socks 11 doorbell
12 silk

31.2 1 looks sad 2 feels soft 3 tastes horrible/bad

31.3 1 listening to; heard 2 heard 3 hear 4 look at 5 watch
6 listening to 7 touch 8 press 9 hold 10 watch *or* look; see

Unit 32

32.1 1 carton 2 cup 3 bowl 4 box
5 bottle 6 glass 7 tin 8 jar

32.2 1 a cup or jar of coffee 2 is possible; also a bottle or glass of wine 3 is normal
4 a tube of toothpaste 5 is possible; also a bottle/carton or glass of milk
6 a packet of cigarettes 7 is possible; also a packet of salt
8 is normal; also a bag of tomatoes (if they are fresh)

32.3 2 gang 3 slices/pieces 4 piece 5 bit/lot 6 sheet/piece/bit
7 group (also crowd) 8 pairs 9 piece/bit 10 bit/drop/(lot)
11 pair 12 bit

32.4 1 *both correct* 2 sheet is wrong 3 gang is wrong
4 *both correct*; group is wrong 5 *both correct* 6 piece is wrong
7 *both correct* (but 'bit' would be more likely) 8 piece is wrong

Unit 33

33.2
1 I need some information.
2 The teacher has (some) news about the school trip.
3 The furniture is very old.
4 I'm looking for a new pair of jeans. *or* I'm looking for (some) new jeans.
5 Your hair is getting very long.
6 Do you have any scissors? *or* Do you have a pair of scissors?
7 We had a lot of homework yesterday.
8 Do you think she's making progress with her English?
9 These trousers are too small.
10 She gave me some good advice.

33.3 Countable: cup; coin
Uncountable: housework; spaghetti; money; travel
Countable and uncountable:
coffee U e.g. I love coffee.
C e.g. I sat down and ordered a coffee. (= cup of coffee)
work U e.g. Most people enjoy their work.
C e.g. The Mona Lisa is a famous work of art.

33.4
1 some scissors/a pair of scissors
2 some sunglasses/a pair of sunglasses
3 some advice/a bit of advice
4 some furniture
5 some scales
6 some headphones/a pair of headphones

33.5 Uncountable nouns: traffic, weather
Plural noun: roadworks

Unit 34

34.1
1 to work 2 to help 3 going 4 to spend 5 to go out/going out
6 eating 7 to work/working 8 going 9 to finish 10 helping

34.2 *Possible ways to complete part (c):*

1 to have a successful career; to be happy; to have children
2 doing housework; waiting at bus stops; going to the dentist
3 getting up late; walking in the country; spending money
4 walking long distances; doing sport; drinking coffee
5 to live until they are 75; to have some disappointments; to meet a person they will love
6 making their bed; cooking their dinner; cleaning their room
7 come home at a certain time; tidy their own rooms; get up at a certain time
8 get up when they like; do what they like; have parties at their home

34.3
2 He offered to lend her the money for the hotel/offered to pay for the hotel.
3 He refused to pay for the flight and her entertainment.
4 She promised to bring him back a present and pay him back in six months.
5 They decided to go to the south of France for two weeks.
6 She forgot to bring him back a present.

Unit 35

35.1
2 He told me it's impossible/He said it's impossible.
3 The teacher is going to explain what to do.
4 She suggested that we go to ... /She suggested going to ...
5 Can we discuss my report?
6 I want him to leave.
7 You must answer the question.
8 I apologised for my mistake.
9 She advised me to buy a dictionary.
10 I asked the waiter for a knife.

35.2
2 showed/told 3 complained 4 asked 5 tell (*also* warn) 6 persuaded
7 advised/told 8 mention 9 blamed 10 explained

35.3 *Possible answers:*

1 that we go for a meal/stop for lunch
2 them to be quiet/to turn down the music
3 it was great
4 it in class
5 me to pay/me to lend her some
6 him to go/to walk there
7 her to lock her door/ring the police
8 the manager (for the defeat)
9 them not to drink it
10 how it works

35.4 ORDER
1 + object, e.g. He ordered a meal.
2 + object + infinitive, e.g. He ordered us to leave.
3 + 2 objects, e.g. He ordered me a steak.
RECOMMEND
1 + object, e.g. She recommended the school.
2 + 'that' clause, e.g. She recommended that we stay in a hotel.
3 + preposition, e.g. What would you recommend for young children?
PREVENT
1 + object, e.g. I couldn't prevent the accident.
2 + object + preposition, e.g. They prevented us from leaving.

Unit 36

36.1 2 tiny 3 exhausted 4 astonished 5 fascinating
6 marvellous, terrific, great 7 freezing 8 enormous/huge
9 starving 10 terrified

36.2 *Possible answer:*

We're delighted with the hotel – our room is (absolutely) huge and the food is (absolutely) delicious. We've been lucky with the weather as well – it's been hot every day so far, so we've spent most of the time on the beach.

Tomorrow we're planning to walk to a village a couple of kilometres along the coast. In this weather, I'm sure we'll be really exhausted by the time we get back, but it does sound a(n) (absolutely) fascinating place, so I'm looking forward to it.
I'll write again in a couple of days and tell you about it.

36.3 2 terrifying 3 astonished 4 exhausted 5 starving 6 delighted

36.4 2 disappointed 3 embarrassed 4 confused 5 astonished

Unit 37

37.1 1 on 2 in 3 at 4 at 5 in 6 on 7 on 8 at 9 on 10 in

37.2 2 down the hill 3 under the fence/under it 4 out of the car/out of it
5 (in the flat) below me

37.3 1 across 2 through/across 3 into 4 in 5 near
6 along 7 between 8 at/in 9 through/around

Unit 38

38.1
1 My brother often visits us on Sundays.
2 She hardly ever phones me.
3 I have never broken my leg.
4 I hardly ever saw him during the summer.
5 I occasionally get up early. ('occasionally' could also begin or end the sentence)
6 I quite often lose my glasses. ('quite often' could also end the sentence)

38.2
1 hardly ever/rarely 2 quite/pretty 3 nearly 4 slightly
5 incredibly/really 6 often

38.3
2 No, they were rather quiet (actually).
3 No, it's rather clean (actually).
4 No, it was rather good (actually).

38.4
2 He's been getting very/really good marks in his exams.
3 It's a very/really nice house.
4 John said the flat was fairly/quite/rather small.
5 They said it was a bit/slightly boring.
6 The clothes were quite/fairly/rather expensive.

Unit 39

39.1
1 *both* 2 get 3 while 4 leaving
5 *both* 6 just as 7 while 8 *both*

39.2 *Possible answers:*

2 we went for a swim
3 I have finished here/I finish here
4 leaving/I go out
5 he was leaving the house
6 John/Maria looked up the other half
7 the others arrived
8 I don't think I have his number
9 I was coming round the corner
10 I saw her face

39.3 *Possible answers:*

1 And for another, I've got lots of work to do.
2 Then finally we came back through the Loire valley and stayed in Tours for a couple of days.
3 Secondly,/Anyway, we can't really afford it.

39.4 *Possible answer:*

Dear Sir,
I have just returned from a weekend break at The Royal Hotel, and I'm afraid it was not a very enjoyable stay. Firstly, there was very little variety in the food and sometimes no choice at all. Secondly, the service was very slow most of the time and we had to wait half an hour between courses. And finally, when we complained to the head waiter about these delays, he was very rude and the service did not improve.

I sincerely hope that action will be taken to improve the restaurant, and I shall expect a letter of apology and explanation for the very poor standard of service in a hotel with such a fine reputation.

Yours faithfully,

Unit 40

40.1 in addition; as well; also; what's more
although; whereas; however; despite

40.2 1 Although 2 in spite of 3 *both* 4 although 5 whereas
6 *both* 7 However 8 *both* 9 however 10 also

40.3 He went to school today although he didn't feel very well.
He always worked hard at school whereas most of his classmates were lazy.
He's got the right qualifications. What's more, he's the most experienced.
He didn't pass the exam in spite of the help I gave him.
He decided to take the job. However, it's not really what he wants.

40.4 1 Despite/In spite of 2 whereas 3 In addition/What's more 4 However
5 although 6 However 7 as well/too 8 though 9 whereas
10 What's more/In addition

40.5 *Possible answers:*

1 she spoke very quickly
2 the others couldn't
3 the bad weather
4 it's much cheaper
5 I think they'll probably pass
6 I wasn't bored at all

Unit 41

41.1 1 to 2 from 3 with/to 4 in
5 between 6 from 7 with; of 8 in; with

41.2 2 unlike/different from 3 in common 4 in common
5 live at home/have jobs/like sport 6 is lazy/went to university

41.3 2 Manuela is completely different from her brother.
3 Our house is very small compared with/to their houses.
4 Everyone in the class passed the exam except Carla.
5 The two girls have nothing in common.
6 It's free every day apart from Saturday.
7 Everyone liked it with the exception of William.
8 We have similar taste in clothes/We like similar clothes.

Unit 42

42.1 2 I turned up the radio in the lounge so (that) I could hear it in the kitchen.
3 The restaurant was full, so we went to the bar next door.
4 I stayed at home because I was expecting a phone call.
5 It's a very large city, so you have to use public transport a lot.
6 I learned to drive so (that) my mother didn't have to take me everywhere.

42.2 2 She got the job because of her excellent qualifications.
3 We couldn't eat outside because of the terrible weather.
4 She didn't go to school because of her bad cold.
5 The referee had to stop the game because of the bad light.
6 I was half an hour late because of the heavy traffic.

42.3 1 otherwise 2 unless 3 as long as 4 Unless 5 as long as 6 otherwise

42.4 1 As 2 so that 3 As a result/Therefore 4 unless

42.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I want to improve my English because I will need it in my job very soon.
2 I bought myself a personal stereo so that I could listen to English cassettes on the bus.
3 I usually study English at the weekend as I am very busy during the week.
4 I always write words down in my notebook, otherwise I'll forget them.
5 I don't get many opportunities to practise my English, and therefore I find it difficult to remember everything I study.
6 My brother has got a number of American friends. As a result, he gets a lot of opportunities to practise his English.

Unit 43

43.1 2 moon 3 stars 4 southern 5 behind; ahead 6 in

43.2 2 an ocean 3 a country 4 a desert 5 a river and a rainforest 6 a sea
7 a continent 8 islands 9 mountain in the world 10 Lakes

43.3 1 the 2 – 3 – 4 the 5 – 6 – 7 the 8 – 9 the

43.4 1 hurricane 2 flood 3 earthquake 4 volcano (volcanic eruption)

43.5 1 drowned 2 destroyed 3 diving 4 flew 5 hit 6 climb

Unit 44

44.1 1 foggy 2 snowing 3 cloudy 4 pouring with rain/raining 5 icy 6 sunny

44.2 1 fog 2 breeze 3 lightning 4 shower
5 destroyed 6 comes 7 temperature 8 zero

44.3 2 True 3 True 4 True 5 False (a shower is a short period of rain)
6 False (the air will feel wet or damp) 7 True
8 False (it hardly ever pours with rain in the desert)

44.4 1 blows 2 hot/warm 3 winds/gales 4 snows 5 humid

Unit 45

45.1 1 same 2 different /lepəd/; /mɒskiːtəʊ/ 3 different /beə/; /iːgl/
4 different /gərɪlə/; /dʒɪrɑːf/ 5 same 6 different /mʌŋki/; /mɒskiːtəʊ/
7 different /kæməl/; /sneɪk/ 8 different /lepəd/; /ʃɑːk/ 9 same 10 same

45.2 1 wild 2 danger 3 insects 4 keep 5 ground 6 protect

45.3 *Likely answers:*

FARM ANIMALS: horse, goat, pig, sheep
WILD ANIMALS: monkey, lion, zebra, elephant, tiger, camel, leopard, bear
INSECTS: fly, mosquito, bee, ant

45.4 *Possible answers:*

1 rabbit 2 pigs 3 leopards 4 spiders 5 camels

45.5 *Possible answers:*

2 whales or sharks 3 monkeys or dogs are the most probable answer
4 leopards, lions, tigers and other big cats 5 camels 6 whales
7 monkeys or giraffes 8 snakes 9 elephants 10 sheep

Unit 46

46.1 1 Britain, the United States of America, Canada, Australia 2 Portuguese
3 Swiss-German, French, Italian (A small number of people also speak a language called Romansch.) 4 Arabic 5 Polish 6 Spanish 7 Israel 8 China

46.2 2 the Middle East 3 the Caribbean (also the West Indies) 4 the Mediterranean
5 the Far East 6 South America (also Latin America)

46.3 Japan Japanese Egyptian Arabic Italian Austria
Korea Chinese Germany Saudi Arabia Egypt

46.4 1 the Japanese 2 Israelis 3 Brazilians 4 the British/British people
5 The Swiss/Swiss people 6 Russians

46.5 1 Greece 2 Turkey 3 South Korea 4 Russia 5 Poland 6 Spain

46.7 British people are generally polite.
In general, British people are polite.
British people tend to be polite.

Unit 47

47.1

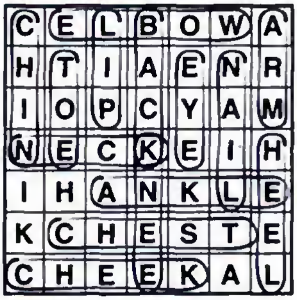

C	E	L	B	O	W	A
H	T	I	A	E	N	R
I	O	P	C	Y	A	M
N	E	C	K	E	I	H
I	H	A	N	K	L	E
K	C	H	E	S	T	E
C	H	E	E	K	A	L

47.2

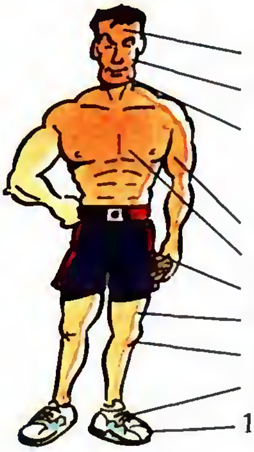

1 forehead
2 cheek
3 chin
4 arm
5 chest
6 hip
7 thigh
8 knee
9 foot
10 toes

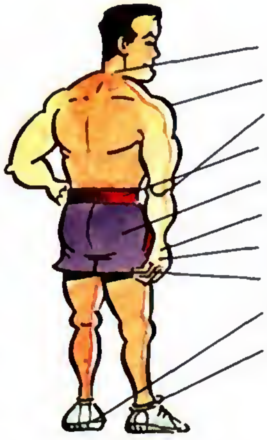

11 neck
12 shoulder
13 elbow
14 waist
15 bottom
16 wrist
17 hand
18 fingers
19 heel
20 ankle

47.3 2 bite your nails 3 comb your hair 4 fold your arms
5 blow your nose 6 nod your head

47.4 *Possible answers:*

2 running/exercise
3 they're happy or when someone says something funny
4 when they're nervous
5 when they have a cold
6 when they want to say 'no'
7 when they mean 'yes'
8 when they're sad, upset, or possibly when they're very happy
9 they're tired or bored

Unit 48

48.1 2 hair 3 skin 4 hair 5 height/build 6 shoulders
7 moustache 8 looking

48.2 2 plain 3 overweight 4 good-looking/handsome 5 slim

48.3 1 What does he/she look like?
2 How tall is he/she?
3 How much does he/she weigh?

48.4 *Possible answers:*

2 I'm roughly 75 kilos.
3 She's around 1 metre 70.
4 They're both thirtyish.

Unit 49

49.1

positive	*negative*
clever	stupid
nice	unpleasant
relaxed	tense
hard-working	lazy
generous	mean

49.2 unfriendly; unreliable; unkind; unpleasant
inflexible; insensitive
dishonest

49.3 2 mean 3 unreliable 4 lazy 5 shy
6 flexible 7 sensitive 8 ambitious

49.4 1 comes; fun 2 make 3 sense 4 confident
5 show 6 first 7 humour 8 narrow

49.5 kindness optimism/optimist (person) punctuality laziness
confidence ambition

Unit 50

50.1 2 pride 3 anger 4 jealousy 5 happiness 6 embarrassment

50.2 2f 3e 4a 5c 6d

50.3 *Possible answers:*

1 They are strolling along a beach.
2 They are pushing a car.
3 He/she is pressing a button.
4 They are whispering.
5 He is waving goodbye (to someone).

50.4 1 glanced 2 whispered 3 strolled 4 march 5 stared 6 shouting

50.5 1 on/at 2 at 3 of 4 at 5 of 6 of

50.6 *Possible answers:*

1 upset/embarrassed 2 frightened/excited 3 angry 4 angry/embarrassed
5 – 6 – 7 mixed feelings (sad to be leaving but happy to be going home) 8 –

Unit 51

51.1
1 John is Jill's brother-in-law.
2 Timothy is Jill's nephew.
3 Eve and Ana are Timothy's cousins.
4 Eve is Sheila's niece.
5 Albert Dodds is Tom's grandfather.
6 Barry is Eve's uncle.
7 Susan is Timothy's aunt.
8 As Paul died in 2000, Jill is a widow.
9 Tom is Mary's grandson.
10 The only two people who are not related are John and Sheila.

51.2 1 first 2 after 3 parent 4 colleagues 5 old 6 ex

Unit 52

52.1 2 retired 3 (mid-) twenties 4 (late) forties (NOT ~~in her middle age~~)
5 (early) thirties 6 elderly/old 7 baby 8 teenager 9 adult
10 adolescence (NOT ~~teenage~~)

52.2
2 False: He grew up in California.
3 False: He went out with Anthea for three years.
4 False: They split up because they had lots of rows.
5 True
6 False: Marie got pregnant a year after they got married.
7 False: Marie is now expecting her second child.
8 False: Sam left Marie.

52.3 2c 3a 4f 5i 6h 7d 8b 9g

Unit 53

53.1 have: lunch, dinner, a sleep, a lie-in, a late/an early night, a wash, a shave, a bath/shower, a (lunch) break, a rest, have friends for dinner

53.2 2 fall asleep 3 have a rest 4 play cards 5 go to bed
6 clean my teeth 7 feed the dog 8 get up early

53.3 2 go out 3 stay in 4 early 5 lie-in
6 come round 7 play 8 on my own/alone (*or* by myself)

53.4 1 What time do you have breakfast?
2 In the morning I always leave home at 8 o'clock.
3 I didn't have a shave this morning. *or* I didn't shave this morning.
4 I live on my own.
5 I usually wash my hair every day.
6 I went to bed and fell asleep/went to sleep very quickly.

53.5 1 up; up 2 in; out 3 round (*or* 'over')

Unit 54

54.1 1 yes 2 yes 3 shut 4 no (the ground floor flats don't have balconies)
5 no (ground floor) 6 no (a park)

54.2 1 doorbell/bell 2 on 3 climb; lift 4 view 5 steps 6 rent
7 belongs; condition 8 heat; heating

54.3 *Possible answers:*

positive	*negative*
2 there's a good view	there's no view
3 it's quiet	it's noisy
4 it's got large rooms	it's got small rooms
5 it's in good condition	it's in bad condition
6 it has central heating/it's warm	it's cold and draughty

Unit 55

55.1 *Likely answers:*

2 cooking and washing-up
3 wash and shower (and bath)
4 sit and relax (and watch TV)
5 eat meals
6 guests sleep/where you keep things you don't use all the time
7 work/study

55.2 2 in the fridge
3 in the oven
4 in the washing machine
5 in the dishwasher or in the sink
6 in a cupboard
7 in the freezer

55.3 LIVING ROOM: curtains, carpet, sofa, armchair
KITCHEN: sink, dishwasher, kettle, oven, fridge, saucepan

55.4 1 in 2 out; back 3 on; in 4 on 5 in 6 out; on

55.6 Turn on/off: oven, cooker, grill, hob, dishwasher, TV, sound system, washing machine, kettle, microwave
Wash: cups and saucers, saucepans, frying pan, food processor
Sit on: sofa, (arm)chair
Boil: kettle, saucepan

Unit 56

56.1 *Most likely order (the first two could be reversed):*

I cleaned my teeth.
I had a wash.
I put on my pyjamas.
I got into bed.
I set the alarm clock.
I switched off the light.
I went to sleep.

56.2 *Possible answers:*

2 He hoovered the living room. 3 He did the ironing. 4 He did the washing.
5 He did the washing-up. 6 He made the bed.

56.4 1 Yes 2 Two pillows 3 Yes 4 Three (that we can see) 5 No 6 Yes

Unit 57

57.1

infinitive	*past tense*	*past participle*
break	broke	broken
fall	fell	fallen
spill	spilt (also spilled)	spilt (*also* spilled)
forget	forgot	forgotten
lose	lost	lost
burn	burnt (also burned)	burnt (*also* burned)
cut	cut	cut

57.2 2h 3f 4g 5c 6b 7a 8e

57.3 *Possible answers:*

She broke her glasses; She had/got a stain on her trousers; She burnt the food

57.4 *Possible answers:*

2 I dropped it (on the floor).
3 I fell over/fell off my bike.
4 It's not working properly.
5 (I'm afraid) I lost it.
6 I left it at home.
7 It's not working.
8 It's out of order.

Unit 58

58.1 1 sold; bought 2 lost; cost; found 3 paid
4 gave; spent 5 won 6 wasted

58.2
1 How much is your gold ring worth?
2 I'm afraid I can't afford it *or* can't afford to go.
3 Could you lend me some money?
4 How much did your dictionary cost? *or* How much did you pay for your dictionary?
5 That disco costs a fortune.

58.3 1 yes 2 no 3 yes 4 no 5 yes 6 no 7 no 8 no

Unit 59

59.1
1 A cold: sneezing, a sore throat, a cough
2 Flu: sneezing, a sore throat, a cough, a high temperature (aching muscles)
3 A hangover: headache, feeling sick
4 Diarrhoea: keep going to the toilet

59.2 1 different 2 same 3 same 4 different 5 different 6 different

59.3 1 a 2 – 3 – ('a' is possible) 4 a 5 – 6 –

59.4 *Possible answer:*

I had terrible toothache, so I made an appointment to see the dentist. She had a look at the tooth and decided that I needed a filling. She gave me an injection, which was quite painful, but afterwards it felt much better.

59.5
1 feel 2 hurts 3 get/have 4 attack 5 ache
6 pain 7 lung 8 prescription 9 disease 10 aches

Unit 60

60.2

noun	*verb*	*noun*	*verb*
cut	cut	blood	bleed
injury	injure	bruise	bruise
shot	shoot	treatment	treat

60.3 *Possible answer:*

Paul somehow fell from the tree where he was picking apples and he knocked himself unconscious. His wife immediately rang for an ambulance and it soon arrived and he was rushed to hospital. He had to have a number of stitches for a large cut on the side of his head, but fortunately it wasn't serious.

60.4 2a 3f 4e 5c 6b

Unit 61

61.1 *Possible answers:*

shoes, socks, jeans, gloves, tights

61.2 2g, 3a, 4c, 5e, 6i, 7b, 8h, 9f

61.3 an earring, a ring, a button, a pocket, a necklace

61.4 *Possible answers:*

1 top or blouse; skirt 2 suit; trousers 3 tie; shirt 4 do
5 enough; size 6 too; enough

61.5 *Possible answers:*

worn by women: dress, top, blouse, skirt, tights, necklace
worn by men and women: hat, gloves, jeans, trousers, jacket, scarf, coat

Unit 62

62.1 2 clothes 3 vegetables 4 furniture 5 electrical appliances 6 jewellery
7 toys 8 stationery

62.2 butcher: chicken
newsagent: envelopes, notebook
chemist: aspirin, toothbrush
supermarket: aspirin, envelopes, toothbrush, chicken, grapes, notebook, bananas, loaf of bread, carrots
department store: envelopes, gloves, armchair, notebook

Possible answers:

butcher: steak, sausages, bacon, lamb
newsagent: cigarettes, sweets, greeting cards
chemist: soap, shampoo, perfume, toothpaste
supermarket: coffee, wine, cakes, biscuits, cheese
department store: clothes, washing machines, saucepans

62.3 1 butcher('s) 2 shopping centre 3 shop/sales assistant
4 changing/fitting room 5 till/cash desk 6 window shopping
7 off-licence 8 chemist('s)

62.4 1 looking for 2 size 3 being served/just looking
4 changing room 5 take it

Unit 63

63.1 1 potato/peas; peach/pear 2 beans/broccoli; banana 3 mushroom; melon
4 carrot/cauliflower/cabbage/celery; cherry 5 aubergine; apple

63.2 lettuce/chicken
orange/broccoli
aubergine/tomato
raspberry/calf
onion/mushroom
salmon/lamb
prawn/pork

63.3 2 leeks; the others are common in salad but leeks aren't
3 peach; the others are vegetables but a peach is a fruit
4 crab; the others are types of meat but crab is a type of seafood
5 aubergine; the others are types of fruit but an aubergine is a vegetable

63.4 *Most likely answers:*

always	*sometimes*	*never*
cherries grapes strawberries	apple peach pear	banana pineapple melon orange

63.5 1 beef 2 veal 3 pork 4 lettuce 5 vinegar or lemon juice

Unit 64

64.1 *Typical answers for Britain:*

raw fish (no)
fried eggs (yes)
roast beef (yes)
roast peppers (yes)
grilled cheese (yes, usually on toast)
fried rice (yes)
baked potatoes (yes)
raw spinach (in salad, but not very common)
boiled eggs (yes)
baked bananas (yes, as a dessert)

64.2
2 spaghetti with courgette and bacon
3 steak
4 roast fillet of pork
5 steak in a pepper sauce
6 breast of chicken in a white wine sauce
7 ice cream and chocolate mousse
8 probably the salmon

64.3 *Possible answers:*

lemon: sour
bread: fresh
cakes: fattening/sweet
bacon: salty/tasty
fillet steak: rare/well-done
mineral water: still/sparkling
coffee: sweet/bitter

Unit 65

65.1 2g 3b 4f 5c 6h 7a 8e

65.2 2 cultural activities 3 wide range; whatever (*or* anything)
4 nightlife 5 opportunities 6 cope; commuters

65.3

towns and cities	*villages in the countryside*
dirty/polluted	clean air
dangerous	safe
traffic congestion/congested	not much traffic
lots to do/good nightlife	nothing to do in the evening

Unit 66

66.1 2 grass 3 leaves 4 plants 5 roots 6 flowers

66.2 1 in 2 up 3 on 4 by 5 of 6 about

66.3 1 gate 2 tractor 3 footpath 4 field
5 valley 6 woods 7 village

66.4 1 countryside 2 agriculture 3 crops 4 rural
5 village 6 wood 7 cottage 8 transport

66.5 1 thing 2 quiet 3 fresh 4 surrounded
5 pace 6 worst 7 nightlife 8 privacy

Unit 67

67.1 2 junction 3 keep going 4 turn 5 get (also come) 6 school
7 turn right 8 Maldon 9 on 10 after

67.2 1 accident 2 service 3 injured; damaged
4 blocked; tailback (also traffic jam) 5 pavement 6 broke down
7 overtook 8 crashed 9 pedestrians

67.3 1 You can't park/wait 2 50 mph is the speed limit 3 You can't turn right
4 There is only one lane 5 End of motorway 6 Car park
7 Traffic lights 8 Low bridge 9 Roadworks

Unit 68

68.1 1 ride 2 get in 3 fare 4 run
5 fly 6 timetable 7 get 8 missed

68.2 *Possible answers:*

1 bus fare; train fare; air fare; taxi fare
2 get on the bus; get on the coach; get on the train; get on the plane
3 bus station; railway station; coach station
4 bus driver; train driver; taxi driver; van driver; lorry driver
5 get in the car; get in the taxi; get in the van; get in the lorry (People also sometimes say 'get in the bus' or 'get in the train'.)
6 train journey; bus journey; car journey; coach journey

68.3 1 coach 2 van 3 lorry 4 motorbike 5 bike/bicycle

68.4 1 platform 2 bus stop 3 full (up) 4 pilot
5 punctual 6 queue 7 journey 8 due

Unit 69

69.1 1d 2e 3a 4b 5c

69.2 1e 2a 3d 4b 5c

69.3 1 What's your job?
2 I work for the government.
3 My salary is $50,000.
4 My total income is £30,000.
5 My job involves looking after all the computers.
6 I'm in charge of one of the departments.

69.4 A: What are your working hours?
A: Do you do/work any overtime?
A: How much holiday/how many weeks holiday do you get?
A: Do you get sick pay?

Unit 70

70.1 *Possible answers:*

2 a pilot 3 a sailor 4 a mechanic 5 a police officer
6 a vet 7 a firefighter 8 an accountant 9 a doctor, nurse, surgeon, or vet
10 someone in the army, navy or air force

70.2 2 designs buildings 3 controls the financial situation of people and companies
4 treats animals 5 represents people with legal problems
6 plans the building of roads, bridges, machines, etc. 7 builds walls
8 buys and sells shares 9 repairs cars 10 operates on people

70.3 1 Really? When did she join the army? 2 Really? When did he join the navy?
3 Really? When did he join the air force? 4 Really? When did he join the fire brigade?

70.4 *Possible answers:*

an architect to design the house
a lawyer to give legal advice
a carpenter to make cupboards and fit doors
a plumber to fit the kitchen and bathroom
an electrician to do all the electrical work
an accountant to calculate how much everything will cost

Unit 71

71.1 2 unemployed 3 resign/quit 4 promoted
5 prospects 6 retire 7 employees 8 take over

71.2 1b 2e 3d 4a 5f 6c

71.3 1 abroad 2 part-time 3 course 4 challenge
5 rise 6 her 7 over 8 earn/get

71.4

verb	*general noun*	*person*
manage	management	manager
promote	promotion	–
employ	employment	employer (boss)/employee (worker)
resign	resignation	–
retire	retirement	–
train	training	trainer (gives the training)/trainee (receives it)

Unit 72

72.1 2 appointment 3 drawer 4 meeting 5 computer
6 e-mail 7 reports 8 letter 9 visitors 10 minutes

72.2 1 noticeboard 2 filing cabinet 3 briefcase
4 paperwork 5 wastepaper basket/bin

72.3 2 The photocopier isn't working.
3 We've got loads of work today.
4 The computer is down.
5 We've run out of paper for the photocopier.

72.4 2 calendar 3 diary 4 invoice 5 factory 6 agenda

Unit 73

73.1 1 loan 2 interest 3 inflation 4 turnover 5 it breaks even 6 overheads

73.2 1 by 2 from; to 3 of 4 to 5 in 6 in

73.3 1 fell 2 gradual 3 be successful 4 aim 5 expand 6 goes up/rises

73.4 1 rose 2 fell slightly 3 sharp fall
4 steady rise 5 rose sharply 6 rose by 60,000

73.5 1 loss 2 interest/inflation 3 cut/increase
4 materials 5 economy 6 political/economic

Unit 74

74.1

infinitive	*past tense*	*past participle*
win	won	won
lose	lost	lost
beat	beat	beaten
catch	caught	caught
draw	drew	drawn

74.2 head it; pass it; catch it; throw it; hit it; kick it; drop it

74.3 *Possible answers:*

1 tennis, table tennis, baseball, hockey, squash, cricket, golf
2 football, rugby, American football, basketball, volleyball
3 rugby, American football, cricket, baseball, basketball, football (goalkeeper only)
4 football, rugby, American football
5 football

74.4 1 score/result 2 beat 3 drew 4 stadium
5 spectators/crowd 6 winner(s) 7 leading 8 latest

74.5

sport	*place*	*equipment*
football	pitch	boots, training shoes, net, whistle
tennis	court	training shoes, racket, net
golf	course	clubs

Unit 75

75.1

sport	*place*	*equipment*
swimming	pool	trunks, costume
motor racing	circuit	crash helmet
ice hockey	rink	sticks, skates, puck

75.2 1 do 2 play 3 join 4 support
5 gave up/stopped 6 go 7 take up 8 get/be/keep

75.3 2 fit 3 climbing 4 opposite 5 seriously
6 hockey 7 racing 8 up 9 gym/pool 10 you/me

Unit 76

76.1 1 stalls 2 C 3 yes 4 yes

76.2 1d 2g 3f 4a 5h 6e 7b 8c

76.3 1 musical 2 audience 3 director 4 critics
5 reviews 6 subtitles 7 to book 8 stars

76.4 1 set 2 love 3 about 4 background/family
5 away 6 at 7 wrong 8 romantic comedy

76.5 1 war film 2 romantic comedy 3 action film
4 horror film 5 horror film 6 thriller

Unit 77

77.1 2 violinist 3 guitarist 4 cellist 5 drummer

77.2 1 instrument 2 classical; composer 3 choir 4 out/released; one
5 produced (recorded or released are also possible) 6 latest (new is also possible)

77.3 1 orchestra 2 group/band; solo 3 plays; performs/sings
4 single/record; album 5 opera 6 lead 7 jazz 8 singles/records
9 guitarist 10 lead

77.4 1 songs/music 2 taste 3 record (CD)/single 4 hit 5 released/produced

Unit 78

78.2 1 in; about 2 of 3 for 4 in 5 to

78.3 1 comes 2 daily 3 monthly 4 journalists/reporters 5 headline
6 photographers 7 article/report 8 review 9 advertisements/adverts
10 According

78.4 *Possible answers:*

2 Japan and the US are going to start fresh discussions
3 Germany supports the US plan/has decided to support the ...
4 The police have discovered an important witness
5 The government is going to reduce spending on new hospitals
6 (The) bad weather has had a bad effect on the railway service
7 Ministers are in a new argument over tax
8 There will be a new attempt to reduce teenage smoking

Unit 79

79.1 *Possible answers:*

2 Could you turn it up?
3 Could you turn/switch over?
4 Could you turn it down?
5 Could you turn/switch it off?

79.2 Documentary: World in Action and Cutting Edge
Quiz show: Telly Addicts
Game show: Bruce's Price is Right (The Krypton Factor is also a game show)
Drama series: Cracker
Current affairs: World in Action
Comedy series: 2 Point 4 Children
Soap operas: EastEnders and Coronation Street

79.3 1 on; operas 2 highlights 3 on; repeat

Unit 80

80.1 *Possible answers:*

phone card; phone box; phone call; phone directory; answerphone; mobile phone; public phone; on the phone

80.2 1 speak to 2 Speaking 3 My name is 4 message
5 out/not here/in a meeting 6 back 7 (phone) number
8 Is that 9 here/in 10 be 11 leave 12 message
13 give 14 ring/call 15 (phone) number 16 Is that
17 This is/It's 18 through 19 engaged 20 on

Unit 81

81.1 2 floppy disk 3 user-friendly 4 Internet Service Provider 5 keyboard
6 e-mail address 7 laser printer 8 laptop 9 back-up copy 10 websites

81.2 1 save the data in this document 2 cut 3 open a new document 4 copy
5 print 6 open an existing document 7 paste

81.3 1 printed; crashed 2 connect 3 download 4 virus
5 checked; sent 6 browsing 7 search 8 at; dot

Unit 82

82.1 2 science 3 technology 4 art 5 French 6 history
7 English 8 geography 9 music 10 chemistry

82.2 1 3 2 5 3 11 4 16 5 go to university or college/get a job

82.3 1 divided 2 lessons 3 breaks
4 pupils 5 subjects 6 terms

82.4 2 into hospital 3 to bed 4 to university 5 to church 6 to prison

82.5 1 I failed my exam. 2 I did very badly.
3 I'm hopeless/terrible/not very good at English. 4 I got a very low mark.

Unit 83

83.1 2 medicine/biology 3 agriculture/chemistry 4 psychology 5 business studies
6 history of art 7 politics 8 law

83.2 1 a grant 2 a degree 3 undergraduates 4 lecturers
5 graduates 6 postgraduates 7 research 8 lectures

83.3 1 get 2 go to 3 doing 4 get 5 lasts/goes on for

83.4 1 at 2 in 3 doing; in(to)/on 4 postgraduate/Masters 5 department

Unit 84

84.1 1c 2i 3g 4h 5b 6f 7d 8a 9e

84.2 2 the judge 3 prisoners 4 the jury 5 barristers (lawyers) 6 criminals

84.3 1 broken 2 committed 3 against 4 illegal 5 fine
6 prove 7 guilty 8 evidence 9 sentence 10 offence

84.4 *Possible answers (for Britain):*

1 Yes
2 Visit the owner and the house that was broken into and take fingerprints if possible
3 Probably not (less than 50% of burglars are caught)
4 Burglary
5 No, not at 15
6 Probably a suspended sentence (= the boys are free but if they commit another crime in the next year or two years, they will receive a much tougher punishment) unless the boys already have a record for burglary. In this case, they could be sent to a centre for young offenders.

Unit 85

85.1

crime	*person*
murder	murderer
burglary	burglar
theft	thief
shoplifting	shoplifter

85.2 2 murder 3 with shoplifting 4 charged with manslaughter
5 been charged with theft

85.3 2d 3f 4a 5b 6e

85.5 1 carry/have 2 allowed/able/permitted 3 punishment 4 reduce/prevent

Unit 86

86.1 1 monarchy 2 republic/democracy 3 dictatorship

86.2

general noun	*person*
democracy	democrat
politics	politician
conservatism	conservative

verb	*general noun*
elect	election
govern	government
vote	vote

86.3

1 Elections are held every five years.
2 The government is left-wing.
3 I believe in democracy.
4 Who is in power at the moment?

86.4 1 elections 2 Prime 3 vote 4 party
5 votes 6 majority 7 leader 8 policies

Unit 87

87.2 landing card; birth/marriage certificate; driving licence; application/enrolment form

87.3 2 checked 3 fill 4 sign 5 signature
6 runs out/expires; renew 7 surname/family name 8 enrolment/registration

87.5 2 Where do you come from?/Where are you from?
3 Are you single or married?
4 When did you arrive?
5 When are you leaving?/When do you leave?

87.6 *Problems mentioned were:*

- Delays, e.g. in getting a new passport
- Officials putting the wrong information on documents, which then need to be changed, e.g. driving licence
- Officials losing information you have given them
- Being asked to explain the same information over and over again to different officials, especially over the telephone
- Spending a long time getting a document in one country, then discovering that nobody is interested in it when you arrive in another country
- Officials who behave like policemen

Unit 88

88.2

noun	*verb*
waste	waste
pollution	pollute
damage	damage

noun	*verb*
protection	protect
destruction	destroy
survival	survive

88.3 1 recycle
2 waste; save/conserve
3 cut down/destroy; protect

88.4 1b 2d 3a 4c

88.5 1 carbon dioxide 2 terrible happens (and people often die) 3 food
4 rain 5 rain 6 fighting between two or more groups 7 the same country
8 kill (a famous person, usually for political reasons) 9 army
10 in the armed forces (army, navy or air force)

88.6 *Possible answers:*

1 plane/bus 2 President/Prime Minister 3 bomb
4 hostages/prisoners 5 killed/injured/wounded 6 settlement

Unit 89

89.1 1 boarding card 2 excess baggage 3 check-in desk
4 flight number 5 overhead locker 6 departure lounge
7 baggage reclaim 8 passport control 9 hand luggage

89.2 1 check-in (desk) 2 boarding card 3 excess baggage 4 hand luggage
5 overhead locker 6 runway 7 cabin crew 8 hire

89.3 1 delay 2 cards 3 lounge
4 customs 5 luggage (also 'bags') 6 board

89.4 1 took off 2 captain/pilot 3 fasten 4 flew
5 crew 6 landed 7 get off 8 flight/journey

Unit 90

90.1 *Hotel:* 1g 2i 3b 4d 5k 6h 7e 8f 9j 10a 11c
Restaurant: 1f 2i 3d 4k 5h 6a 7j 8g 9b 10e 11c

90.2 1 bill 2 board 3 room (or twin-bedded room) 4 available ('free' is possible)
5 lift 6 order 7 wine 8 meal 9 have 10 included

90.3 *Possible answers:*

2 I'd like to book a double room for next weekend. *or* Do you have any double rooms available next weekend?
3 Could you order a taxi for me, please? *or* Could I pay my bill, please?
4 How do I get to the nearest bank from here? *or* Could you tell me the way to the nearest bank, please?

Unit 91

91.1 1 time 2 sightseeing 3 packed 4 look 5 galleries
6 lost 7 market/place 8 go out 9 spent 10 photos/pictures

91.3 *Possible answers:*

1 Yes, it's a great place.
2 Yes, it's very cosmopolitan.
3 Yes, it was (absolutely) packed.
4 Yes, the nightlife is very good.
5 Yes, we had a great time.
6 Yes, Kyoto is definitely worth seeing/worth a visit.

Unit 92

92.1 *Possible answers:*

suntan; sunbathe; sunburn; sunblock

92.2 2d 3e 4a 5f 6c

92.3 1 playing volleyball 2 windsurfing 3 paddling 4 sunbathing

92.4 *Vertical:* cool down, tan, brown, camping
Horizontal: calm, towel, rock(s), cliff, horizon, swim, skin

92.5 1 go 2 spend 3 rent 4 go 5 lying/sitting/being 6 get

Unit 93

93.1 1 at 2 in 3 at 4 in 5 on 6 at
7 On 8 at 9 on 10 at 11 in 12 on

93.2 1 by 2 until 3 since 4 for 5 during 6 for 7 in 8 in

93.3 2 the other day 3 recently/lately 4 for ages 5 for the time being

93.4 1 two 2 19th; 20th 3 1963; 40
4 eight 5 ten

93.5 *Possible answers:*

1 7; 8   2 the morning   3 Saturdays   4 August   5 two years
6 1999   7 last Wednesday   8 40 minutes   9 you're 17   10 October

Unit 94

94.1
1 four hundred and sixty-two
2 two and a half
3 two thousand three hundred and forty-five
4 nought point two five
5 one million two hundred and fifty thousand
6 ten point oh four (*or* nought four)
7 forty-seven per cent
8 the tenth of April (*or* April the tenth)
9 the third of July (*or* July the third)
10 six oh two eight four seven seven (*or* double seven)
11 five degrees below zero (*or* minus five degrees centigrade)
12 nineteen seventy-six

94.2 1 thousand   2 the fourth of August   3 two hundred and twenty
4 the thirty-first of August   5 seven two three six oh nine

94.3 1 majority   2 minority   3 calculator   4 work   5 stuck

94.4 1 59   2 192   3 60   4 5   5 8   6 15

94.5 *Answers to questions 6 and 7:*

6 thirty seven point six (degrees)   7 approximately one point six kilometres in a mile

Unit 95

95.1 *Possible answers:*

1 It's about two minutes' walk.
2 It's about a kilometre.
3 No, it isn't.
4 Yes, it's too far to walk.
5 Yes, quite a long way.
6 It's about 20 kilometres.
7 It's about 15 minutes' walk.
8 No, not far.

95.2 *Possible questions:*

What's the size of the lake?
How deep is it? *or* What's the depth of the lake?
How far is it from one side of the lake to the other?
How high is the mountain? *or* What's the height of the mountain?
How long is the pitch? *or* What's the length of the pitch?
How wide is the pitch? *or* What's the width of the pitch?
How tall is she?

95.3
1 No, he's quite thin.
2 No, it's quite shallow.
3 No, it's quite narrow.

4 No, he's fairly short.
5 No, it's quite big (*or* it's a great big place).
6 No, it's great/really interesting/very lively.

Unit 96

96.1 1 square 2 rectangular 3 round 4 pointed

96.2 1 grey 2 pink 3 beige 4 purple 5 turquoise

96.3 2 a star-shaped ring 3 a round mirror 4 a pointed nose
5 diamond-shaped earrings 6 a striped sofa 7 a light blue shirt
8 a dark blue jumper 9 a tartan tie

96.4 1 a pencil 2 a football/rugby/hockey pitch 3 a carrot 4 the moon
5 the sea 6 an egg 7 a (coat/clothes) hanger 8 prawns

Unit 97

97.1 *Possible answers:*

Please queue other side
Mind the step
Sold out
Out of order
Keep right; Keep off the grass
Beware of pickpockets
Mind your head
Please do not disturb; Please do not feed the animals
No exit; No smoking; No parking

97.2 *Possible answers:*

2 in a Bed & Breakfast (cheap hotel)
3 on the underground
4 in a bank or post office
5 by a public telephone
6 outside a theatre/cinema/concert hall
7 on the outside of a parcel/package
8 in a park

97.3 1 Please do not feed the animals
2 Do not leave bags unattended
3 Please do not disturb
4 No parking
5 Do not lean out of the window
6 No smoking
7 Keep right; No smoking; No exit
8 Mind your head

Unit 98

98.1 *Possible answers:*

2 the key 3 whisky 4 knives and forks 5 flour
6 programme 7 clothes/belongings 8 a type of toy
9 a suitcase 10 shampoo/conditioner

98.2 *Possible answers:*

1 About/Around/Roughly 2 sort of 3 things 4 a bit 5 sort of/a bit
6 and things/stuff like that *or* and that sort of thing 7 more or less/or so 8 a bit

98.3 *Possible answers:*

2 sort of/blueish
3 more or less/roughly
4 sort of
5 a bit/sort of
6 any time

Unit 99

99.1

formal	*informal*
purchase	handy
resume	loo
thus	terrific
commence	quid
apprehend	reckon
	guy
	cheers

99.2

so/thus
start/commence
thanks/cheers
buy/purchase
man/guy
think/reckon
convenient/handy
start again/resume
marvellous/terrific
catch/apprehend
pounds/quid
toilet/loo

99.3

1 Where did you buy/get that book?
2 I'm just going to the loo.
3 The woman on the desk told us to go to gate 12.
4 What's up?
5 Do you fancy going out for a meal?
6 When are you going to pick up your bike?
7 My flat is five minutes from where I work, so it's very handy.
8 The guy in the market wanted 20 quid for this ring.
9 Most of the kids are very bright.
10 I reckon it'll start pretty soon.

99.4 We regret to inform you that we are unable to lend you the sum of £500 that you require, but it may be possible to ...

If you would like to contact the branch and speak to Mrs Jenkins, she will arrange an appointment with the assistant manager. He will ...

99.5

a drag (*infml*) = boring
pinched (*infml*) = stolen
patrons (*fml*) = People who use a hotel/restaurant or shop. The word patron often appears on notices in hotel or restaurant car parks.
bloke (*infml*) = man
hassle (*infml*) = trouble or inconvenience
permitted (*fml*) = allowed

Unit 100

100.1

1 British Broadcasting Corporation
2 Member of Parliament
3 World Wide Web
4 Compact Disc
5 Prime Minister
6 United Nations
7 Personal Computer
8 Identification

100.2 Michael,
Peter had a maths exam this afternoon and then he had to take his bike to the repair shop, so he'll probably be a bit late home. You can watch TV/telly while you're waiting for him, and please help yourself to anything in the fridge. If there's a problem (e.g. Dr Brown rings about the flu vaccination), my phone number is next to the photos on the dining room table. I should be home myself by about five.
Margaret (Peter's mum)

100.3 1 e.g. 2 etc. 3 St 4 i.e. 5 Mr 6 Dr

100.4 2 e.g. 3 CV 4 board 5 etc. 6 flu 7 ad(vert)
8 fridge 9 i.e. 10 stand

100.5 PTO stands for 'please turn over' at the bottom of a page.
RSVP means 'please reply' (from the French 'répondez, s'il vous plaît') and is found at the bottom of formal invitations, e.g. to a reception or wedding.
ASAP/asap stands for 'as soon as possible' and is commonly used in e-mails and faxes.
CC/cc stands for 'carbon copy' and is used in business letters and e-mails to show you are sending a copy to someone else. In the past, carbon copies were made using carbon paper. We don't use this any more, but we still use the abbreviation.

Phonemic symbols

Vowel sounds

Symbol	*Examples*		
/iː/	sleep	me	
/i/	happy	recipe	
/ɪ/	pin	dinner	
/ʊ/	foot	could	pull
/uː/	do	shoe	through
/e/	red	head	said
/ə/	arrive	father	colour
/ɜː/	turn	bird	work
/ɔː/	sort	thought	walk
/æ/	cat	black	
/ʌ/	sun	enough	wonder
/ɒ/	got	watch	sock
/ɑː/	part	heart	laugh
/eɪ/	name	late	aim
/aɪ/	my	idea	time
/ɔɪ/	boy	noise	
/eə/	pair	where	bear
/ɪə/	hear	beer	
/əʊ/	go	home	show
/aʊ/	out	cow	
/ʊə/	pure	fewer	

Consonant sounds

Symbol	*Examples*		
/p/	put		
/b/	book		
/t/	take		
/d/	dog		
/k/	car	kick	
/g/	go	guarantee	
/tʃ/	catch	church	
/dʒ/	age	lounge	
/f/	for	cough	
/v/	love	vehicle	
/θ/	thick	path	
/ð/	this	mother	
/s/	since	rice	
/z/	zoo	houses	
/ʃ/	shop	sugar	machine
/ʒ/	pleasure	usual	vision
/h/	hear	hotel	
/m/	make		
/n/	name	now	
/ŋ/	bring		
/l/	look	while	
/r/	road		
/j/	young		
/w/	wear		

Pronunciation problems

when 'a' is /eɪ/	*when 'u' is /ʌ/*	*when 'i' is /aɪ/*	*when 'o' or 'oo' is /ʌ/*
patient	punctual	pilot	gloves
Asia	luggage	virus	oven
dangerous	hungry	dial	month
pavement	discuss	hepatitis	front
bacon	function	minus	monkey
phrase	publish	licence	government
engaged	customs	diet	worry
sunbathe	luck	striped	flood
lately	bankrupt	tiny	blood

When ow is /əʊ/, e.g. row (= line), throw, blow, show, know, elbow
When ou or ow is /aʊ/, e.g. lounge, drought, row (= argument), towel, allowed, blouse, shower
When ou is /uː/, e.g. soup, group, through, wound, souvenir, routine
When ou is /ʌ/, e.g. cousin, couple, trouble, tough, rough, enough
When a, au or aw is /ɔː/, e.g. draw, raw, law, stall, fall, cause, audience, launch, exhausted
When a or au is /ɑː/, e.g. vase, calm, laugh, draughty, half
When a or u is /ɪ/, e.g. busy, business, minute, lettuce, purchase, surface, orange, damage
When o is /uː/, e.g. move, prove, improve, lose
When or or ur is /ɜː/, e.g. purple, burn, burglary, worth, work, curtain
When ea is /e/, e.g. dreadful, jealous, health, dead, bread, instead, pleasant, weather, weapon

Silent letters (the underlined letters are silent):
island, knee, knife, know, knock, knowledge, wrong, wrist, muscle, castle, whistle, fasten, listen, bomb, lamb, thumb, comb, scissors, psychology, honest, hour, cupboard, answer, guess, handsome, aisle, half, calm, Christmas, mortgage

Short syllables (the underlined letters often disappear or are only /ə/):
fattening, miserable, comfortable, fashionable, restaurant, strawberry, eventually, parliament, actually, occasionally, prisoner, medicine, favourite, temperature, literature

Problem pairs:
quite /kwaɪt/ and quiet /'kwaɪət/   desert /'dezət/ and dessert /də'zɜːt/   soup /suːp/ and soap /səʊp/

Note:
The pronunciation of these letters at the end of words is often like this:
-ous /əs/, e.g. famous, dangerous, unconscious, ambitious, cautious, jealous
-age /ɪdʒ/, e.g. luggage, baggage, village, damage, cabbage, bandage, message, manage
-able /əbl/, e.g. comfortable, reliable, suitable, unbreakable, vegetable, fashionable, miserable
-are /eə/, e.g. care, spare, square, beware, stare, fare, aware, rare(ly), barely
-ile /aɪl/, e.g. fragile, mobile, file, while
-tory/tary /təri/, e.g. directory, history, secretary, documentary
-ture /tʃə/, e.g. picture, signature, departure, capture, temperature, literature, feature
-ate /eɪt/ at the end of verbs, e.g. educate, operate, communicate
-ate /ət/ at the end of nouns and adjectives, e.g. graduate, approximate, certificate

Index

The numbers in the Index are Unit numbers not page numbers.

a day (an hour a day) /ə deɪ/ 1
a long time ago 93
about /ə'baʊt/ 48, 98
about (the film's about ...) /ə'baʊt/ 76
above /ə'bʌv/ 37
abroad/ə'brɔ:d/ 71
absolutely /ˌæbsə'lu:tli/ 36
accident /'æksɪdənt/ 67
according to /ə'kɔ:dɪŋ tu:/ 18, 78
accountant /ə'kaʊntənt/ 70
ache /eɪk/ 2, 59
across /ə'krɒs/ 37
action film /'ækʃən fɪlm/ 76
active volcano /ˌæktɪv vɒl'keɪnəʊ/ 43
activity /æk'tɪvəti/ 7
actor /'æktə/ 7, 76
ad/advert /æd/ /'ædvɜ:t/ 78, 100
addition /ə'dɪʃən/ 94
adjective /'ædʒektɪv/ 4
admit (+ *-ing*) /əd'mɪt/ 34
adolescence /ˌædəl'esəns/ 52
adolescent /ˌædəl'esənt/ 52
adult /'ædʌlt/ 52
adverb /'ædvɜ:b/ 4
advice /əd'vaɪs/ 3, 27, 33
advise /əd'vaɪz/ 69
advise (somebody + inf) /ədˌvaɪz/ 35
afford (I can't afford ...) /ə'fɔ:d/ 58
afraid (of something/somebody) /ə'freɪd/ 14
after (+ *-ing*) /'ɑ:ftə/ 39
after that /ˌɑ:ftə 'ðæt/ 39
afterwards /'ɑ:ftəwədz/ 39
against (the law) /əˌgenst/ 84, 85
age /eɪdʒ/ 48
agenda /ə'dʒendə/ 72
aggressive /ə'gresɪv/ 65
agree (I agree with you) /ə'gri:/ 14, 18
agriculture /'ægrɪkʌltʃə/ 66, 83
ahead (of us) /ə'hed/ 43
AIDS /eɪdz/ 100
aim /eɪm/ 73
air force /eə fɔ:s/ 70
airport /'eəpɔ:t/ 68
aisle /aɪl/ 76
alarm clock /ə'lɑ:m klɒk/ 56
album (new/latest album) /'ælbəm/ 77
all over the floor 56
all over the place 13
allow (somebody to do something) /ə'laʊ/ 34, 85
almost /'ɔ:lməʊst/ 38
alone /ə'ləʊn/ 53
along /ə'lɒŋ/ 37, 67
also /'ɔ:lsəʊ/ 40
although /ɔ:l'ðəʊ/ 40
always /'ɔ:lweɪz/ 38
ambitious /æm'bɪʃəs/ 49
ambulance /'æmbjələns/ 60
American /ə'merɪkən/ 46
and for another (thing) 39
and so on /ən 'səʊ ɒn/ 100
anger /'æŋgə/ 50
angry /'æŋgri/ 50
ankle /'æŋkl/ 47
answer (n, v) /'ɑ:nsə/ 9
answerphone /'ɑ:nsəfəʊn/ 80
ant /ænt/ 45
any time (after 10) /'eni taɪm/ 98
anyway /'eniweɪ/ 39
apart from /ə'pɑ:t frəm/ 41
apartment /ə'pɑ:tmənt/ 92
aperitif /əˌperə'ti:f/ 90
apologise (for something) /ə'pɒlədʒaɪz/ 14, 16, 35
apology /ə'pɒlədʒi/ 16
appear /ə'pɪə/ 6
appear (+ inf) 34
apple /'æpl/ 63
application (form) /ˌæplɪ'keɪʃən/ 87
apply for a job /ə'plaɪ/ 14, 71
appointment /ə'pɔɪntmənt/ 72
apprehend /ˌæprɪ'hend/ 99
approximately /ə'prɒksɪmətli/ 98
Arabic /'ærəbɪk/ 46
architect /'ɑ:kɪtekt/ 70
architecture /'ɑ:kɪtektʃə/ 83
Are you married? 20
Argentina /ˌɑ:dʒən'ti:nə/ 46
Argentinian /ˌɑ:dʒən'tɪniən/ 46
arithmetic /ə'rɪθmətɪk/ 94
arm /ɑ:m/ 47
armchair /ˌɑ:m'tʃeə/ 55
armed /ɑ:md/ 85
armed forces /ˌɑ:md' fɔ:sɪz/ 70
army /'ɑ:mi/ 70
around /ə'raʊnd/ 98
arrange (meetings) /ə'reɪndʒ/ 72
arrest /ə'rest/ 84
art gallery /'ɑ:t ˌgæləri/ 91
article (definite/indefinite) /'ɑ:tɪkl/ 4
article (in a paper) 78
artist /'ɑ:tɪst/ 7
as (= because) /æz/ 42
as (= when) 39
as a result 42
as long as 42
as soon as 39
as well 40
ask (somebody + inf) /ɑ:sk/ 35
ask (somebody + wh- word) 35
ask (somebody for something) 35
assassinate /ə'sæsɪneɪt/ 88
asthma /'æsmə/ 59
astonishing/astonished /ə'stɒnɪʃɪŋ/ /ə'stɒnɪʃt/ 36
at (8.00) /æt/ 93
at (the bus stop) 37
at all (e.g. I don't like it at all) /ət 'ɔ:l/ 18
at Christmas/Easter/the weekend/night 93
at first /ət 'fɜ:st/ 76
at home /ət 'həʊm/ 57
at least /ət 'li:st/ 1
at night /ət 'naɪt/ 15
at the end 15
at the moment 15
athletics (track) /æθ'letɪks/ 75
attend (meetings) /ə'tend/ 69, 72
attractive /ə'træktɪv/ 8, 48
aubergine /'əʊbəʒi:n/ 63
audience /'ɔ:diəns/ 76
aunt /ɑ:nt/ 51
available (rooms) /ə'veɪləbl/ 90
avoid /ə'vɔɪd/ 85
avoid (+ *-ing*) 34
aware of (the problem) /ə'weə əv/ 14
awful /'ɔ:fəl/ 2, 36, 76

BA/BSc /ˌbi:'eɪ/ /ˌbi:es'si:/ 83
babysitter /'beɪbɪˌsɪtə/ 10
back (v) /bæk/ 78
back-up (copy) /'bækʌp/ 81
backache /'bækeɪk/ 59

background /'bækgraʊnd/ *76*
backing group /'bækɪŋ gruːp/ *77*
bad (at something) /'bæd/ *14*
badly-behaved /ˌbædlibɪ'heɪvd/ *11*
badly-dressed /ˌbædlidrest/ *11*
bag /bæg/ *5*
bag (of shopping) *32*
baggage reclaim /'bægɪdʒ rɪˌkleɪm/ *89*
bake /beɪk/ *64*
balcony /'bælkəni/ *54*
bald (go bald) /bɔːld/ *30*
ballet dancer /'bæleɪ ˌdɑːnsə/ *7*
banana /bə'nɑːnə/ *63*
band (rock/pop) /bænd/ 77
bandage /'bændɪdʒ/ *60*
bankrupt (go bankrupt) /'bæŋkrʌpt/ *30*
barrister /'bærɪstə/ *84*
baseball /'beɪsbɔːl/ *74*
basketball /'bɑːskɪtbɔːl/ *74*
bass guitarist /ˌbeɪs gɪ'tɑːrɪst/ 77
bat /bæt/ *74*
bath /bɑːθ/ *56*
bathroom /'bɑːθrʊm/ *55*, *56*
BBC /ˌbiːbiː'siː/ *100*
be (really) into something *19*
be back (= return) /biː 'bæk/ *80*
be delayed / held up /biː dɪ'leɪd/ˌheld 'ʌp/ *16*
be out (= available to buy) /biː 'aʊt/ *77*
be out (= not at home) *80*
beach /biːtʃ/ 92
beach (umbrella) 92
bear /beə/ *45*
beard /bɪəd/ *48*
beat (= win) /biːt/ *74*
beat somebody up /ˌbiːt 'ʌp/ *60*
beautiful /'bjuːtɪfəl/ *48*
because (of) /bɪ'kɒz/ *42*
bed /bed/ *56*
bed & breakfast (B&B) /ˌbed ən 'brekfəst/ *90*
bedroom /'bedrʊm/ *10*, *55*, *56*
bedside table /ˌbedsaɪd 'teɪbl/ *56*
bee /biː/ *45*
beef /biːf/ 63
before (+ *-ing*) /bɪ'fɔː/ *39*
behind /bɪ'haɪnd/ *37*
beige /beɪʒ/ *96*
belief /bɪ'liːf/ *86*
believe (in something) /bɪ'liːv/ *86*
belong (to somebody) /bɪ'lɒŋ/ *14*, *54*
below /bɪ'ləʊ/ *37*
belt /belt/ *61*
bend (n, v) /bend/ *67*
best friend /ˌbest 'frend/ *51*
between /bɪ'twiːn/ *37*
beware (of pickpockets) /bɪˌweə/ *97*
bicycle /'baɪsɪkl/ *68*
bid (= try) /bɪd/ *78*
big /bɪg/ *95*
bike /baɪk/ *99*, *100*
bill (pay the bill) /bɪl/ *90*
billion /'bɪliən/ *94*
biology /baɪ'ɒlədʒi/ 82
birth certificate /'bɜːθ səˌtɪfɪkət/ *87*
bit (a bit tired/nervous, etc.) /bɪt/ *38*, *98*
bit (a bit of advice/luck, etc.) *32*
bite (your nails) /baɪt/ *47*
bitter /bɪtə/ *64*
bitterly disappointed /'bɪtəli ˌdɪsə'pɔɪntɪd/ *12*
black coffee /ˌblæk 'kɒfi/ 2
blame (somebody for something) /bleɪm/ *35*
blank piece of paper *1*
blanket /'blæŋkɪt/ *56*
bleed /bliːd/ *60*
bless you /'bles juː/ 22
blind (go blind) /blaɪnd/ *30*
blinds /blaɪndz/ *55*
block (the road) /blɒk/ *67*
block (of flats) *54*
blond(e) hair /ˌblɒnd 'heə/ 2, *48*
blood /blʌd/ *60*
blouse /blaʊz/ *61*
blow your nose /bləʊ jɔː 'nəʊz/ *47*, *59*
board (blackboard/whiteboard) /bɔːd/ *5*, *100*
board a plane /ˌbɔːd ə 'pleɪn/ *89*
board pen /'bɔːd ˌpen/ *5*
boarding card /'bɔːdɪŋ ˌkɑːd/ *89*
boil /bɔɪl/ 64
boiling /'bɔɪlɪŋ/ *44*
bold /bəʊld/ *1*
book (a room/seat) /bʊk/ 76, *90*
boots /buːts/ *61*, *74*
boring/bored /'bɔːrɪŋ/bɔːd/ *36*
born (I was born ...) /bɔːn/ 52
borrow /'bɒrəʊ/ *5*, *58*
boss /bɒs/ *71*
both /bəʊθ/ *41*
bother (I don't bother to ...) /'bɒðə/ *53*
bottle (of water) /'bɒtl/ *32*
bottom (= part of the body) /'bɒtəm/ *47*
bowl (of sugar) /bəʊl/ *32*
box (theatre) /bɒks/ 76
box (of chocolates) *32*
box office /'bɒks ˌɒfɪs/ *10*
boxing (ring/gloves) /'bɒksɪŋ/ *75*
boyfriend /'bɔɪfrend/ 52
brackets /'brækɪts/ *1*, *4*
brake (n, v) (put on the brakes) /breɪk/ 9, *67*
branch (of a tree) /brɑːnʃ/ 66
brand-new /ˌbræn'njuː/ *11*
Brazil /brə'zɪl/ 46
Brazilian /brə'zɪliən/ 46
break (v) /breɪk/ 27, *57*
break (n) *53*, 82
break (take a break) 26
break a record 27
break an arm/leg *60*
break down (= stop working) 24, *67*
break even *73*
break in(to) 24, *85*
break somebody's heart 27
break the law 27, *84*, *85*
break the news 27
breathe (in and out) /briːð/ *47*
breeze /briːz/ *44*, 92
bricklayer /'brɪkˌleɪə/ *70*
bridge /brɪdʒ/ *67*
briefcase /'briːfkeɪs/ *5*, *72*
bright (= intelligent) /braɪt/ 99
brilliant /'brɪliənt/ 76
brilliant idea /ˌbrɪliənt aɪ'dɪə/ *18*
bring (versus take) /brɪŋ/ *30*
Britain /'brɪtən/ 46
British /'brɪtɪʃ/ 46
broad shoulders /ˌbrɔːd 'ʃəʊldəz/ *48*
broad-minded /ˌbrɔːd'maɪndɪd/ *49*
broccoli /'brɒkəli/ *63*
broken /'brəʊkən/ 72
brother-in-law /'brʌðərɪnlɔː/ *10*, *51*
brown (= have a suntan) /braʊn/ 92
browse /braʊz/ *81*
bruise (n, v) /bruːz/ *60*
brush (my teeth) /brʌʃ/ *53*
build /bɪld/ *70*
build (medium build) *48*
bump into (somebody) /ˌbʌmp 'ɪntuː/ *60*
bunch (of flowers/grapes) /bʌnʃ/ *32*
bureaucracy /bjʊ'rɒkrəsi/ *87*

bureaucrat /'bjʊərəkræt/ 87
burglar /'bɜ:glə/ 85
burglar alarm /'bɜ:glə ə,lɑ:m/ 85
burglary /'bɜ:gləri/ 85
burn (n, v) /bɜ:n/ 60
burn (v) 57
bus /bʌs/ 68
bus driver /'bʌs ,draɪvə/ 7, 10
bus station /'bʌs ,steɪʃən/ 68
bus stop /'bʌs ,stɒp/ 10, 68
business studies /'bɪznɪs ,stʌdiz/ 83
busy /'bɪzi/ 90
but /bʌt/ 40
butcher /'bʊtʃə/ 62
butterfly /'bʌtəflaɪ/ 45
button /'bʌtən/ 61
buy /baɪ/ 70
by (a book by Dickens, etc.) /baɪ/ 15
by (10%) 73
by (8.15) 93
by accident /baɪ 'æksɪdənt/ 15
by bus/car/taxi, etc. 15, 68
by chance (meet somebody by chance) /baɪ 'tʃɑ:ns/ 15
by hand (made by hand) /baɪ 'hænd/ 15
by mistake (take something by mistake) /baɪ mɪ'steɪk/ 15
by myself /baɪ maɪ'self/ 15

cabbage /'kæbɪdʒ/ 63
cabin crew /'kæbɪn kru:/ 89
cable TV /'keɪbl ,ti:'vi:/ 79
calculator /'kælkjəleɪtə/ 72, 94
calendar /'kæləndə/ 72
calf /kɑ:f/ 63
call (n) (local/international) /kɔ:l/ 80
calm (sea) /kɑ:m/ 92
camel /'kæməl/ 45
camping (go/do a lot of) /kæmpɪŋ/ 75
can (of cola) /kæn/ 32
cancel /'kænsəl/ 16
can't stand /,kɑ:nt stænd/ 19
can't stand (+ *-ing*) 34
capital (city) /'kæpɪtəl/ 46
capital punishment 85
captain (= pilot) /'kæptɪn/ 89
car /kɑ:/ 68
car park /'kɑ: pɑ:k/ 65
career /kə'rɪə/ 71
careful /'keəfəl/ 8, 35
careless /'keələs/ 8
Caribbean (the Caribbean) /,kærɪ'bi:ən/ 46
carpenter /'kɑ:pəntə/ 70
carpet /'kɑ:pɪt/ 55
carrot /'kærət/ 63
carry a gun /'kæri/ 85
carry on 3, 23
carton (of orange juice) /'kɑ:tən/ 32
case (= suitcase) /keɪs/ 100
cash desk /'kæʃ ,desk/ 62
cash machine /'kæʃ mə,ʃi:n/ 10
cassette /kə'set/ 5
cassette recorder /kə'set rɪkɔ:də/ 5
castle /'kɑ:sl/ 91
catch (I didn't catch that) /kætʃ/ 28
catch a ball 28, 74
catch a bus/train 12, 28, 68
catch a cold/flu 28
catch a criminal 28, 84
catch (somebody doing something) 28
cathedral /kə'θi:drəl/ 91
cauliflower /'kɒlɪ,flaʊə/ 63
CD (compact disc) /,si:'di:/ 100
CD player /,si:'di: ,pleɪə/ 55
CD-ROM /,si:di:'rɒm/ 81
celery /'seləri/ 63
cellist /'tʃelɪst/ 77
cello /'tʃeləʊ/ 77
central heating /,sentrəl 'hi:tɪŋ/ 54
century /'senʃəri/ 93
certificate (exam/marriage) /sə'tɪfɪkət/ 87
chalk /tʃɔ:k/ 5
change (bus/train) /tʃeɪndʒ/ 68
change (into other clothes) 61
change my mind 13
changing room /'tʃeɪndʒɪŋ ru:m/ 62
channel (TV) /'tʃænəl/ 79
charge (money) /tʃɑ:dʒ/ 58
charge (somebody with a crime) 84
chat (n, v) /tʃæt/ 9
chat room /'tʃæt ,ru:m/ 10
chat show /'tʃæt ,ʃəʊ/ 79
cheap /tʃi:p/ 58
check (= examine) /tʃek/ 87, 89
check (adj) 96
check in (v) /tʃek 'ɪn/ 90
check out (v) /,tʃek 'aʊt/ 90
check (the meaning) 3
check-in (desk) /'tʃekɪn/ 89
cheek /tʃi:k/ 47
cheers /tʃɪəz/ 22, 99
chemist /'kemɪst/ 59, 62
chemistry /'kemɪstri/ 82
cherry /'tʃeri/ 63
chest /tʃest/ 47
chest of drawers /,tʃest əv 'drɔ:z/ 56
chicken /'tʃɪkɪn/ 63
childhood /'tʃaɪldhʊd/ 52
chilled /tʃɪld/ 64
chilly /'tʃɪli/ 44
chimney /'tʃɪmni/ 54
chin /tʃɪn/ 47
China /'tʃaɪnə/ 46
Chinese /tʃaɪ'ni:z/ 46
choice /tʃɔɪs/ 1, 3
choir /'kwaɪə/ 77
choose /tʃu:z/ 1, 3
chop (v) /tʃɒp/ 63
circle /'sɜ:kl/ 96
circle (theatre) 76
circuit (racing) /'sɜ:kɪt/ 75
circulation /,sɜ:kjə'leɪʃən/ 78
civil war /,sɪvəl 'wɔ:/ 88
civilian /sɪ'vɪliən/ 88
clap /klæp/ 50
classical music /,klæsɪkəl 'mju:zɪk/ 77
classmate /'klɑ:smeɪt/ 51
clean (v, adj) /kli:n/ 9
clean (v) 5
clean my teeth 53, 56
cleaner /'kli:nə/ 53
clever /'klevə/ 49
client /'klaɪənt/ 69
cliff(s) /klɪfs/ 92
climb /klaɪm/ 54
close down /,kləʊz 'daʊn/ 6
close (to the station) /kləʊs/ 54
close (friend/family) 51
cloud /klaʊd/ 44
cloudy /'klaʊdi/ 8, 44
club (football/golf) /klʌb/ 74, 75
coach (type of transport) /kəʊtʃ/ 68
coat /kəʊt/ 61
coffee table /'kɒfi ,teɪbl/ 55
coin /kɔɪn/ 58
cold (n, adj) /kəʊld/ 9
cold (= illness) 59
collar /'kɒlə/ 61
colleague /'kɒli:g/ 51, 72
colour /'kʌlə/ 96
comb (your hair) /kəʊm/ 47
come across (= seem) /,kʌm ə'krɒs/ 49
come from (I come from Argentina) /'kʌm frəm/ 46

come in /ˌkʌm 'ɪn/ *24*
come out (= publish) /ˌkʌm 'aʊt/ *78*
come out (the sun came out) *44*
come round (= become conscious) /ˌkʌm 'raʊnd/ *60*
come round (= visit) *53*
come (versus go) *30*
comedy /'kɒmədi/ *76*
comedy series /'kɒmədi ˌsɪəri:z/ *79*
comfortable /'kʌmftəbl/ *8*
coming in the opposite direction /ˌkʌmɪŋ ɪn ði: ˌɒpəzɪt dɪ'rekʃən/ *67*
comma /'kɒmə/ *4*
commence /kə'mens/ *99*
commercial centre /kəˌmɜ:ʃəl 'sentə/ *65*
commit a crime /kəˌmɪt ə 'kraɪm/ *84*, *85*
common sense /ˌkɒmən 'sens/ *49*
communism /'kɒmjənɪzəm/ *86*
communist /'kɒmjənɪst/ *86*
commuter /kə'mju:tə/ *65*
compare /kəm'peə/ *41*
compared with/to /kəm'peəd wɪð/ tu:/ *41*
comparison /kəm'pærɪsən/ *41*
competitive /kəm'petɪtɪv/ *75*
complain (to somebody/about something) /kəm'pleɪn/ *14*, *35*
complaint /kəm'pleɪnt/ *69*
complete opposite /kəmˌpli:t 'ɒpəzɪt/ *75*
completely different /kəmˌpli:tli 'dɪfərənt/ *41*
complex (plot) /'kɒmpleks/ *76*
composer /kəm'pəʊzə/ *77*
computer /kəm'pju:tə/ *72*
computer operator *7*
conductor (music) /kən'dʌktə/ *77*
confusing/confused /kən'fju:zɪŋ/ /kən'fju:zd/ *36*
congested /kən'dʒestɪd/ *65*
congratulations /kənˌgrætʃʊ'leɪʃənz/ *22*
connect /kə'nekt/ *81*
conservatism /kən'sɜ:vətɪzəm/ *86*
conservative /kən'sɜ:vətɪv/ *86*
conserve /kən'sɜ:v/ *88*
contestant /kən'testənt/ *79*
continent /'kɒntɪnənt/ *43*
cooker /'kʊkə/ *55*
cool (somebody) down /ˌku:l 'daʊn/ *92*
cope with (something/somebody) /'kəʊp wɪð/ *65*
copy /'kɒpi/ *81*
correct (v) /kə'rekt/ *5*
cosmopolitan /ˌkɒzmə'pɒlɪtən/ *65*, *91*
cost (v) /kɒst/ *58*
cost a fortune /ˌkɒst ə 'fɔ:tʃu:n/ *58*
cost of living /ˌkɒst əv 'lɪvɪŋ/ *58*, *65*
cottage /'kɒtɪdʒ/ *66*
cough /kɒf/ *59*
Could I speak to ...? /'kʊd aɪ ˌspi:k tu:/ *80*
Could I/you (possibly) ...? *17*
counter (meat/fish) /'kaʊntə/ *62*
country /'kʌntri/ *43*
country of origin /ˌkʌntri əv 'ɒrɪdʒɪn/ *87*
countryside /'kʌntrɪsaɪd/ *66*
courgette /kɔ:'ʒet/ *63*
course (food in a restaurant) /kɔ:s/ *59*
court (tennis) /kɔ:t/ *74*
court (justice) *84*
courteous /'kɜ:tiəs/ *3*
cousin /'kʌzən/ *51*
cover (v) /'kʌvə/ *1*
cover the cost (of something) /ˌkʌvə ðə 'kɒst/ *83*
crab /kræb/ *63*
crash (computer) /kræʃ/ *81*
crash helmet /'kræʃ ˌhelmət/ *75*
crash into /ˌkræʃ 'ɪntə/ *67*
cream (medicine) /kri:m/ *60*
creative /kri'eɪtɪv/ *8*
creature /'kri:tʃə/ *45*
credit card /'kredɪt kɑ:d/ *10*
crime prevention /ˌkraɪm prɪ'venʃən/ *85*
crime rate /'kraɪm reɪt/ *65*
criminal /'krɪmɪnəl/ *85*
critic /'krɪtɪk/ *76*
crops /krɒps/ *66*
crowd /kraʊd/ *74*
crowded /kraʊdɪd/ *65*
cry /kraɪ/ *47*
cucumber /'kju:kʌmbə/ *63*
cultural activity /ˌkʌltʃrl æk'tɪvəti/ *65*
cup /kʌp/ *55*
cup (of coffee) *32*
cupboard /'kʌbəd/ *55*
curly hair /ˌkɜ:li 'heə/ *48*
currency /'kʌrənsi/ *58*
current affairs /ˌkʌrənt ə'feəz/ *79*
curtain (theatre) /'kɜ:tən/ *76*
curtains /'kɜ:tənz/ *55*
cut (n, v) (= injure) /kʌt/ *57*, *60*
cut (= reduce) *78*
cut (= remove) *81*
cut (oneself) *57*
cut (something) down /ˌkʌt 'daʊn/ *88*
CV (curriculum vitae) /ˌsi:'vi:/ *100*
cycle (v) /'saɪkl/ *68*
cyclist /'saɪklɪst/ *68*

daily /'deɪli/ *78*
damaged (badly damaged) /'dæmɪdʒd/ *67*
dangerous /'deɪndʒərəs/ *8*, *65*
dark /dɑ:k/ *54*
dark (colour) *96*
dark skin /ˌdɑ:k 'skɪn/ *48*
date /deɪt/ *94*
date (of arrival/departure) *87*
date of birth /ˌdeɪt əv 'bɜ:θ/ *87*
deaf (go deaf) /'def/ *30*
deal with (something/somebody) /di:l wɪð/ *69*
decade /'dekeɪd/ *93*
decide (+ inf) /dɪ'saɪd/ *34*
decimal /'desɪməl/ *94*
deep /di:p/ *95*
defendant /dɪ'fendənt/ *84*
define /dɪ'faɪn/ *1*
definite article /ˌdefɪnət 'ɑ:tɪkl/ *4*
degree (do/have/get) /dɪ'gri:/ *83*
degrees (e.g. centigrade) /dɪ'gri:z/ *44*
delay /dɪ'leɪ/ *11*, *89*
delayed (be/get delayed) /dɪ'leɪd/ *16*
delicious /dɪ'lɪʃəs/ *36*
delighted /dɪ'laɪtɪd/ *36*
demands /dɪ'mɑ:ndz/ *88*
democracy /dɪ'mɒkrəsi/ *86*
democrat /'deməkræt/ *86*
democratic /ˌdemə'krætɪk/ *86*
dentist /'dentɪst/ *70*
deny (+ *-ing*) /dɪ'naɪ/ *34*
department (university) /dɪ'pɑ:tmənt/ *83*
department store /dɪ'pɑ:tmənt stɔ:/ *62*
departure (board/lounge/time) /dɪ'pɑ:tʃə/ *89*
depend (it depends on) /dɪ'pend/ *3*
depend on (somebody/something) *14*

depressing/depressed /dɪ'presɪŋ/dɪ'prest/ 36
depth /depθ/ 95
desert /'dezət/ 43
design /dɪ'zaɪn/ 70, 96
desk /desk/ 72
despite (the fact that) /dɪ'spaɪt/ 40
dessert /dɪ'zɜ:t/ 64, 90
destination /,destɪ'neɪʃən/ 89
destroy /dɪ'strɔɪ/ 43, 88
destruction /dɪ'strʌkʃən/ 88
dial /daɪəl/ 80
dialling code /'daɪəllɪŋ ,kəud/ 80
diamond /'daɪəmənd/ 96
diarrhoea /,daɪə'rɪə/ 59
diary /'daɪəri/ 72
dictator /dɪk'teɪtə/ 86
dictatorship /dɪk'teɪtəʃɪp/ 86
diet (n, v) (go on a diet) /daɪət/ 9
different from /'dɪfərənt frɒm/ 14, 41
dimension /,daɪ'menʃən/ 95
dining room /daɪnɪŋ ru:m/ 10, 55
director (film/theatre) /dɪ'rektə/ 76
dirty /'dɜ:ti/ 3, 8, 65
disagree /,dɪsə'gri:/ 6, 18
disappear /,dɪsə'pɪə/ 6
disappointing/disappointed /,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪŋ/ /,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪd/ 36
disaster /dɪ'zɑ:stə/ 43, 88
disaster movie /dɪ'zɑ:stə ,mu:vi/ 76
discuss /dɪ'skʌs/ 7, 35
discussion /dɪ'skʌʃən/ 7
disease /dɪ'zi:z/ 59
disgusting /dɪs'gʌstɪŋ/ 18
dishonest /dɪ'sɒnɪst/ 6, 49
dishwasher /'dɪʃ,wɒʃə/ 10, 55
disk (hard/floppy) /dɪsk/ 81
dislike /dɪ'slaɪk/ 6
dismiss somebody /dɪ'smɪs/ 71
distance /'dɪstəns/ 95
divide (arithmetic) /dɪ'vaɪd/ 94
divided (into) 82
diving /'daɪvɪŋ/ 92
division /dɪ'vɪʒən/ 94
do (my) homework /du: 'həumwɜ:k/ 3, 26
do (the) housework /du: 'hauswɜ:k/ 26
do (my) packing /du: 'pækɪŋ/ 6
do a bit/a lot of sightseeing 91
do a course 26
do a degree 83
do a sport 75
do a subject 26, 82, 83
do an exam 82
do an exercise 1
do not lean out of the window 97
do not leave bags unattended 97
do research (in/into) 26
do somebody a favour 26
do something/nothing 26
do the shopping 26, 62
do up (your jacket) 61
do well/badly 26, 82
Do you think you could ...? /du: ju: ,θɪŋk ju: kud/ 17
doctor /'dɒktə/ 70
document /'dɒkjəmənt/ 81, 87
documentary /,dɒkjə'mentəri/ 79
dollar /'dɒlə/ 58
don't worry /,dəunt 'wʌri/ 16
doorbell /'dɔ:bel/ 54
dope (= drugs) /dəup/ 99
double room /'dʌbl ,ru:m/ 90
doubt (I doubt it) /daut/ 21
down /daun/ 37
down (= not working) 72
download /,daun'ləud/ 81
Dr /'dɒktə/ 100
drama series /'drɑ:mə ,sɪəri:z/ 79
draughty /'drɑ:fti/ 54
draw (n, v) (= the same score) /drɔ:/ 74
drawer(s) /drɔ:z/ 72
dreadful /'dredfəl/ 36, 76
dream (n, v) (have a dream) /dri:m/ 9
drive(r) /'draɪvə/ 68
driving licence /draɪvɪŋ ,laɪsəns/ 87
drizzle /'drɪzl/ 44
drop (v) /drɒp/ 57, 73
drop (of milk) 32
drop (v) (= stop) 68
drought /draut/ 88
drown /draun/ 43
drummer /'drʌmə/ 77
drums /drʌmz/ 77
dry weather /,draɪ 'weðə/ 12
dry wine /,draɪ 'waɪn/ 12
dub (dubbed) /dʌb/ 76
due to (arrive) /'dju: tu:/ 68
due to (= because of) 42
during /'djuərɪŋ/ 93
duty free /,dju:ti 'fri:/ 89
DVD /,di: ,vi: 'di:/ 81

e-mail /'i:meɪl/ 72
e-mail (send/check) 81
e-mail address /'i:meɪl ə,dres/ 81
e.g. /,i: 'dʒi:/ 100
eagle /'i:gl/ 45
earache /'ɪəreɪk/ 59
early night /,ɜ:li 'naɪt/ 13
earn /ɜ:n/ 69, 71
earrings /'ɪərɪŋz/ 10, 61
earth /ɜ:θ/ 43
earthquake /'ɜ:θkweɪk/ 43, 88
easy-going /,i:zi'gəuɪŋ/ 11, 49
economic policy /,i:kə,nɒmɪk 'pɒləsi/ 86
economical /,i:kə'nɒmɪkəl/ 8
economist /ɪ'kɒnəmɪst/ 7
editor /'edɪtə/ 78
Egypt /'i:dʒɪpt/ 46
Egyptian /ɪ'dʒɪpʃən/ 46
elbow /'elbəu/ 47
elderly /'eldəli/ 52
elect /ɪ'lekt/ 7, 86
election (win the election) /ɪ'lekʃən/ 7, 86
electrical appliances /ɪ,lektrɪkəl ə'plaɪənsɪz/ 62
electrician /,elɪk'trɪʃən/ 70
elephant /'elɪfənt/ 45
embarrassing/embarrassed /ɪm'bærəsɪŋ/ /ɪm'bærəst/ 36
embarrassment /ɪm'bærəsmənt/ 50
emergency services /ɪ,mɜ:dʒənsi 'sɜ:vɪsɪz/ 70
emotional /ɪ'məuʃənəl/ 8
employee /ɪm'plɔɪi:/ 71
employer /ɪm'plɔɪə/ 7, 71
engaged (= busy) /ɪn'geɪdʒd/ 80
engineer /,endʒɪ'nɪə/ 70
engineering /,endʒɪ'nɪərɪŋ/ 83
enjoy (+ *-ing*) /ɪn'dʒɔɪ/ 2, 34
enjoy your meal /ɪn,dʒɔɪ jɔ: 'mi:l/ 22
enjoyable /ɪn'dʒɔɪəbl/ 8
enormous /ɪ'nɔ:məs/ 36, 54
enough (big enough) /ɪ'nʌf/ 61
enrolment form /ɪn'rəulmənt ,fɔ:m/ 87
enter (university) /'entə/ 83
enthusiasm /ɪn'θju:ziæzəm/ 21
environment /ɪn'vaɪrənmənt/ 88
equator /ɪ'kweɪtə/ 43
equipment /ɪ'kwɪpmənt/ 33, 74
escape /ɪ'skeɪp/ 85
etc. /et'setrə/ 100
EU (European Union) /,i:'ju:/ 100
euro /'ju:rəu/ 58
Europe /'juərəp/ 46
eventually /ɪ'ventʃuəli/ 39

evidence /'evɪdəns/ 84
ex- (husband/girlfriend, etc.) /eks/ 51
exam /ɪg'zæm/ 100
examination /ɪg,zæmɪ'neɪʃən/ 83
except (for) /ɪk'sept/ 41
exception (with the exception of ...) /ɪk'sepʃən/ 41
excess baggage /ɪk,ses 'bægɪdʒ/ 89
exciting/excited /ɪk'saɪtɪŋ/ /ɪk'saɪtɪd/ 36
excuse /ɪk'skju:s/ 16
excuse me /ɪk'skju:s mi:/ 22
exercise (do/take exercise) /'eksəsaɪz/ 75
exhausted/exhausting /ɪg'zɔ:stɪd/ /ɪg'zɔ:stɪŋ/ 36
expand /ɪk'spænd/ 73
expect (= think) (+ inf) /ɪk'spekt/ 34
expecting (a baby) /ɪk'spektɪŋ/ 52
expenditure /ɪk'spendɪtʃə/ 73
expensive /ɪk'spensɪv/ 58
expire /ɪk'spaɪə/ 87
explain (+ wh- word) /ɪk'spleɪn/ 35
extremely /ɪk'stri:mli/ 38
eyebrow /'aɪbraʊ/ 47

factory /'fæktəri/ 65, 69, 72
fail (an exam) /feɪl/ 82
failure /'feɪljə/ 82
fair hair /,feə 'heə/ 48
fairly /'feəli/ 38
fall (n, v) /fɔ:l/ 73
fall asleep 53
fall in love 52, 76
fall out (of the window) 60
fall over 23, 57
fall slowly/sharply 2
family name /'fæməli neɪm/ 51
famine /'fæmɪn/ 88
famous /'feɪməs/ 8
fancy /'fænsi/ 99
fancy (Do you fancy going ...?) /'fænsi/ 17
far (not far/too far) /fɑ:/ 95
Far East (the Far East) /,fɑ:r i:st/ 46
fare (bus/air fare) /feə/ 58, 68
farewell /,feə'wel/ 22
farm /fɑ:m/ 66
farmhouse /'fɑ:mhaʊs/ 66
farming /'fɑ:mɪŋ/ 66
fascinating/fascinated /'fæsɪneɪtɪŋ/ /'fæsɪneɪtɪd/ 36
fashionable /'fæʃənəbl/ 8
fast asleep /,fɑ:st ə'sli:p/ 12
fasten (your seat belt) /'fɑ:sən/ 89
fat /fæt/ 48, 95
father-in-law /'fɑ:ðərɪn,lɔ:/ 51
fattening /'fætənɪŋ/ 64
fault /fɔ:lt/ 35
favour (do somebody a favour) /'feɪvə/ 26
favourite (programme) /'feɪvərɪt/ 79
fear /fɪə/ 50
feed /fi:d/ 53
feel /fi:l/ 50
feel (it feels soft) /fi:l/ 31
feel (I don't feel well) 59
feel like (it feels like wool) 31
feel like (a drink/going out) 13, 34
feeling (a great feeling) /'fi:lɪŋ/ 50
feelings (mixed feelings) /'fi:lɪŋz/ 50
fence /fens/ 54, 66
field /'fi:ld/ 66
file (for papers) (n, v) /faɪl/ 5, 72
filing cabinet /'faɪlɪŋ ,kæbɪnət/ 72
fill in (a form) /,fɪl 'ɪn/ 87
filling (in tooth) /'fɪlɪŋ/ 59
film director /'fɪlm dɪ,rektə/ 7
film star /'fɪlm ,stɑ:/ 10, 76
finally /'faɪnəli/ 39
finance (v) /'faɪnæns/ 73
find out /,faɪnd 'aʊt/ 23
fine (adj) /faɪn/ 17
fine (n) (50 euro fine) 11, 84
fine, thanks /'faɪn ,θæŋks/ 20, 22
finger /'fɪŋgə/ 2, 47
finish (+ *-ing*) /'fɪnɪʃ/ 34
fire brigade /'faɪə brɪ,geɪd/ 70
firefighter/fireman /'faɪə,faɪtə/ /'faɪəmən/ 70
first(ly) /'fɜ:stli/ 39
first impression 49
first language 46
first name 51
first of all /,fɜ:st əv 'ɔ:l/ 39
first-class (ticket) /'fɜ:stklɑ:s/ 11
fit (adj) (= healthy) /fɪt/ 75
fit (v) (right size) /fɪt/ 61
fitting room /'fɪtɪŋ ru:m/ 62
fix up (= arrange) /,fɪks 'ʌp/ 99
fizzy (water) /'fɪzi/ 64
flatmate /'flætmeɪt/ 51
flats /flæts/ 54
flexible /'fleksɪbl/ 49
flexitime /'fleksitaɪm/ 69
flight /flaɪt/ 68
flight attendant /'flaɪt ə,tendənt/ 89
flight number /'flaɪt ,nʌmbə/ 89
flight of stairs /,flaɪt əv 'steəz/ 54
flood /flʌd/ 43, 88
floor (on the third floor) /flɔ:/ 54
floppy disk /,flɒpi 'dɪsk/ 81
flowers /'flaʊəz/ 66
flu (= influenza) /flu:/ 59, 100
fly (n) (insect) /flaɪ/ 45
fly (v) (plane) 68
fog /fɒg/ 44
foggy /'fɒgi/ 8, 44
fold your arms /,fəʊld jɔ:r 'ɑ:mz/ 47
food processor /,fu:d 'prəʊsesə/ 55
foot /fʊt/ 47
football /'fʊtbɔ:l/ 74
footpath /'fʊtpɑ:θ/ 66
for (+ a period of time) /fɔ:/ 93
for (a walk/swim/drive/run) 15
for ages /fər 'eɪdʒɪz/ 93
for example /fər ɪg'zɑ:mpl/ 100
for one thing 39
for the time being 93
force (somebody to do something) /fɔ:s/ 34
forehead /'fɒrɪd/ 47
foreign policy /,fɒrɪn 'pɒləsi/ 86
forest /'fɒrɪst/ 43
forget /fə'get/ 57
forget (+ inf) 34
fork /fɔ:k/ 90
fortnight /'fɔ:tnaɪt/ 93
fortunately /'fɔ:tʃənətli/ 53
four-star hotel /,fɔ:,stɑ: həʊ'tel/ 11
fraction /'frækʃən/ 94
fragile /'frædʒaɪl/ 97
France /frɑ:ns/ 46
free /fri:/ 58
freezer /'fri:zə/ 55
freezing /'fri:zɪŋ/ 36, 44
French /frenʃ/ 46
frequently /'fri:kwəntli/ 38
fresh (bread/fruit) /freʃ/ 64
fresh air /,freʃ 'eə/ 66
fresh challenge /,freʃ 'tʃælɪndʒ/ 71
fridge (= refrigerator) /frɪdʒ/ 55, 100
friendly /'frendli/ 49
frightened/frightening /'fraɪtənd/'fraɪtənɪŋ/ 36
from (23 to 25) /frɒm/ 73
front door /,frʌnt 'dɔ:/ 54

front garden /ˌfrʌnt 'gɑːdən/ 54
fruit /fruːt/ 63
fry /fraɪ/ 64
frying pan /'fraɪɪŋ pæn/ 10, 55
full board /ˌfʊl 'bɔːd/ 90
full name /ˌfʊl 'neɪm/ 51
full of (something) 14
full stop /ˌfʊl 'stɒp/ 4
full up /ˌfʊl 'ʌp/ 68
full-time (end of game) /ˌfʊl'taɪm/ 74
full-time job 11
fully booked /ˌfʊli 'bʊkt/ 90
fun (play for fun) /fʌn/ 75
furniture /'fɜːnɪtʃə/ 33

gale /geɪl/ 44
game show /'geɪm ʃəʊ/ 79
gang (of youths/kids) /gæŋ/ 32
garage /'gærɑːʒ/ 54
garlic /'gɑːlɪk/ 63
gate /geɪt/ 54, 66, 89
generally /'dʒenərəli/ 46
generous /'dʒenərəs/ 49
geography /dʒi'ɒgrəfi/ 82
German /'dʒɜːmən/ 46
Germany /'dʒɜːməni/ 46
get (= arrive/reach) /get/ 29, 67, 99
get (= become) 29
get (= fetch) 29
get (= find/buy) 29
get (= receive) 29, 99
get a bus/train 65
get a job 82
get a place (at university) 83
get away (= escape) 85
get back (= return) 80
get by 24
get changed 29
get delayed/held up 16
get divorced 29, 52
get dressed 6, 29, 61
get fit 75
get home 53
get in (a car) 68
get in touch (with somebody) 99
get into (a fight) 60
get into bed 56
get into trouble 85
get lost 29, 91
get married 14, 29, 52
get off (a bus) 2, 12, 68
get on (a plane) 68, 89
get on (with somebody) 21, 23, 29
get on (my) nerves 13, 29
get our (of a car) 68
get over (an illness) 23
get ready 29
get rid of something /ˌget 'rɪd əv/ 13, 29
get through (= finish) /ˌget 'θruː/ 23
get through (= make phone contact) 23, 80
get to know somebody 29
get to work 53
get undressed 6, 29
get up (= get out of bed) 29, 53
get whatever/wherever you want 65
getting (hot/cold/better/worse) /getɪŋ/ 29
getting nowhere 13
giraffe /dʒɪ'rɑːf/ 45
girlfriend /'gɜːlfrend/ 52
give somebody a hand 27
give somebody a hug 27
give somebody a kiss 27
give somebody a lift 27
give somebody a message 80
give somebody a push 27
give somebody a ring 9, 27, 80
give up (= stop doing something) /ˌgɪv 'ʌp/ 23, 34, 75
glance (at) (n, v) /glɑːns/ 50
glass (of water) /glɑːs/ 32
global warming /ˌgləʊbəl 'wɔːmɪŋ/ 88
glove /glʌv/ 2, 61
go (= its usual position) /gəʊ/ 30
go (= leads to/rakes you) 30
go ahead 13
go along here 67
go and get ... 30
go back to school 82
go bald /ˌgəʊ 'bɔːld/ 30
go bankrupt /ˌgəʊ 'bæŋkrʌpt/ 30
go blind /ˌgəʊ 'blaɪnd/ 30
go camping/swimming/diving, etc. 92
go deaf /ˌgəʊ 'def/ 30
go down 73
go (out) for a walk/drive/drink/meal 30
go grey 30
go into hospital 60, 82
go into the army/navy 70
go into town 65
go mad 30
go off (= ring) /gəʊ ɒf/ 23
go off (= explode) 23
go off (= go bad) 23
go on (= continue) 83
go on a (training) course 71
go on a diet 9
go on a tour of ... 91
go on holiday 92
go out (social activity) 53, 91
go out with somebody 52
go shopping 62
go sightseeing 91
go skiing/swimming 75
go through customs 89
go to bed 53
go to court 84
go to school/university/church 82
go to sleep 53, 56
go to university 52, 83
go to work 56
go together 30
go up (= increase) 23, 73
go wrong 76
goal /gəʊl/ 74
goat /gəʊt/ 45
goldfish /'gəʊlfɪʃ/ 45
golf (course) /gɒlf/ 74
golf (club) /gɒlf/ 74
good at something 14, 82
good for you 75
good fun 49, 76
good luck 22
good morning/afternoon/evening night 22
good-looking /ˌgʊd'lʊkɪŋ/ 11, 48
gorilla /gə'rɪlə/ 45
govern /'gʌvən/ 7
government /'gʌvənmənt/ 7, 86
GP /ˌdʒiː'piː/ 70
grade /greɪd/ 82
gradual(ly) /'grædʒuəli/ 73
graduate (n) /'grædʒuət/ 83
graduate (v) /'grædʒueɪt/ 83
grandfather/grandmother /'græn,fɑːðə/ /'græn,mʌðə/ 51
grant (n) /grɑːnt/ 83
grapes /greɪps/ 63
grass /grɑːs/ 66
great (= fantastic) /greɪt/ 17, 36
great big (dog) 95
great success /ˌgreɪt sək'ses/ 12
great time /ˌgreɪt 'taɪm/ 12
Greece /griːs/ 46
Greek /griːk/ 46
green beans /ˌgriːn 'biːnz/ 63
greetings /'griːtɪŋz/ 22
grey /greɪ/ 96

grill (v) /grɪl/ *64*
grill (n) *55*
gripping /ˈgrɪpɪŋ/ 76
ground floor /ˌgraʊnd ˈflɔː/ *54*
group (rock/pop) /gruːp/ 77
group (of people) *32*
grow /grəʊ/ *73*
grow (apples/wheat/crops) 66
grow up /ˌgrəʊ ˈʌp/ 24, *52*, 66
guess (n, v) (have a guess) /ges/ 9
guess the meaning *3*
guidebook /ˈgaɪdbʊk/ *91*
guilty /ˈgɪlti/ *84*
guitar /gɪˈtɑː/ 77
guitarist 77 /gɪˈtɑːrɪst/
guy /gaɪ/ 99
gym /dʒɪm/ *75*, *100*

hair /heə/ *33*
hair dryer /ˈheə ˌdraɪə/ *10*
haircut /ˈheəkʌt/ *10*
half /hɑːf/ *94*
half board /ˌhɑːf ˈbɔːd/ *90*
hall /hɔːl/ *55*
hand /hænd/ *47*
hand luggage /ˈhænd ˌlʌgɪdʒ/ *33*, *89*
handbag /ˈhænbæg/ *61*
handle (v) /ˈhændl/ 69
handsome *48* /ˈhænsəm/
handy 99 /ˈhændi/
hang on /ˌhæŋ ˈɒn/ *13*
hang something up *61*
hangover /ˈhæŋəʊvə/ *59*
happiness /ˈhæpɪnəs/ *7*, *50*
Happy Birthday/Christmas/New Year 22
hard disk /ˈhɑːd ˌdɪsk/ *81*
hard question *12*
hard work *12*
hard-working /ˌhɑːdˈwɜːkɪŋ/ 49
hardly /ˈhɑːdlɪ/ *38*
hardly ever *38*
hardware /ˈhɑːdweə/ *81*
hat /hæt/ *61*
hate /heɪt/ *19*, *50*
have a baby *25*
have a break *53*
have a dream 9, *25*
have a drink *25*
have a(n) early/late night *53*
have a go *30*
have a guess 9
have a lie-in *53*
have a look 9, *25*
have a look at something *55*
have a look round *91*
have a nice weekend 22
have a nice/great/terrible time *25*, *91*
have a party *25*
have a problem (*-ing*/with something) *25*
have a rest 9, *25*
have a shower/bath/shave/wash *25*, *53*, *56*
have a sleep *25*, *53*
have a swim/paddle 92
have a think *25*
have a try *25*
have a word (with somebody) *25*, 99
have an argument *25*
have breakfast/lunch/a meal *25*, *53*
have friends for dinner *53*
have got *25*
have got something left *28*
have something/nothing in common *41*
have the bill *25*
Have you got the time? *20*, *25*
head (the ball) /hed/ *74*
headache /ˈhedeɪk/*59*
headline /ˈhedlaɪn/ *78*
headphones /ˈhedfəʊnz/ *33*
healthy /ˈhelθi/ *64*
healthy economy *73*
hear (versus listen to) /hɪə/ *31*
hearing /ˈhɪərɪŋ/ *31*
heart /hɑːt/ *59*
heart attack /ˈhɑːt əˌtæk/ *59*
heat (n) /hiːt/ *44*
heat (v) *54*
heatwave /ˈhiːtweɪv/ *44*
heavy rain *12*, *44*
heavy smoker *12*
heavy traffic *12*
Hebrew /ˈhiːbruː/ 46
heel /hiːl/ *47*
height /haɪt/ *95*
height (medium height) *48*
held up (be/get held up) /ˌheld ˈʌp/ *16*
help yourself /help jɔːˈself/ *17*
helpful /ˈhelpfəl/ *8*
hemisphere (northern/southern) /ˈhemɪsfɪə/ *43*
hepatitis /ˌhepəˈtaɪtɪs/ *59*
herd (of cows) /hɜːd/ *32*
high /haɪ/ *95*
high-rise (building) /ˌhaɪˈraɪz/ *65*
highlight (new words) /ˈhaɪlaɪt/ *5*
highlighter pen /ˈhaɪˌlaɪtə pen/ *5*
highlights (recorded highlights) /ˈhaɪlaɪts/ 79
hijack /ˈhaɪdʒæk/ *88*
hiking /haɪkɪŋ/ *75*
hip /hɪp/ *47*
hire /haɪə/ *89*
historic monuments /hɪˌstɒrɪk ˈmɒnjəmənts/ *91*
history /ˈhɪstəri/ *82*
history of art *83*
hit (a ball) /hɪt/ 74
hit (= affect badly) *43*, 78
hit (record/single) 77
hit (your head) *60*
hob /hɒb/ *55*
hockey /ˈhɒki/ 74
hold /həʊld/ *31*
hold (an election) *86*
homeless /ˈhəʊmləs/ *8*
homesick /ˈhəʊmsɪk/ *3*
homework /ˈhəʊmwɜːk/ *33*
honest /ˈɒnɪst/ *49*
hoover (v) /ˈhuːvə/ *56*
hoover/vacuum cleaner *56*
hope (+ inf) /həʊp/ *34*
hopeless /ˈhəʊpləs/ 66
hopeless at something *82*
horizon /həˈraɪzən/ 92
horror film /ˈhɒrə ˌfɪlm/ 76
hospital /ˈhɒspɪtəl/ *70*
hostage /ˈhɒstɪdʒ/ *88*
hot /hɒt/ *44*
household (goods) /ˌhaʊsəʊld/ 62
housework /ˈhaʊswɜːk/ *3*, *33*, *56*
How about you? *20*, *22*
How about (+ *-ing*)? *17*
How are things? *98*
How are you getting on? *29*
How are you? *20*, 22
How do I get to ...? *20*, *90*
How do you do? 22
How do you feel about ...? *18*
How do you pronounce ...? *5*
How do you spell ...? *5*
How do you use ...? *5*
how fantastic/exciting/awful *21*
How far is it? *20*, *95*
How long are you here for? *20*
How long are you staying? *20*
How long does it take? 26
How long have you been here? *20*
How long/wide/high/deep is ...? *95*

How much does he/she weigh? *48*
How much is that? *20*
How much longer (are you staying)? *20*
How old are you? *20*
How tall is he/she? *48*
How was (the party)? *20*
however /haʊ'evə/ *40*
How's it going? *20*, *22*, *30*
hug (give somebody a hug) /hʌg/ *27*
huge /hjuːdʒ/ *36*, *54*
humid /'hjuːmɪd/ *44*
humidity /hjuː'mɪdəti/ *44*
hundred /'hʌndrəd/ *94*
hungry (be hungry) /'hʌŋgri/ *25*
hurricane /'hʌrɪkən/ *43*, *44*
hurry up /ˌhʌri 'ʌp/ *23*
hurt /hɜːt/ *60*
hurt (oneself) *59*
hyphen /'haɪfən/ *4*

I (don't) think so *21*
I beg your pardon *16*
I don't mind *17*, *21*
I doubt it *21*
I haven't a clue *13*
I hope not *21*
I hope so *21*
I regret to inform you *99*
I see *21*, *27*
I see what you mean *18*, *27*
I take your point *18*
I was wondering if …? *17*
I won't be long *16*
i.e. /ˌaɪ 'iː/ *100*
ice /aɪs/ *44*
ice hockey *75*
icy /'aɪsi/ *44*
identity card (ID) /aɪ'dentəti kɑːd/ *87*, *100*
idiom /'ɪdiəm/ *4*
idiot /'ɪdiət/ *49*
if you like *13*, *17*, *21*
ill /ɪl/ *1*
illegal /ɪ'liːgəl/ 6, *84*, *85*
illegible /ɪ'ledʒəbl/ 6
illness (serious illness) /'ɪlnəs/ *7*, *59*
imagine (+ *-ing*) /ɪ'mædʒɪn/ *34*
impatient /ɪm'peɪʃənt/ 6
impolite /ˌɪmpəl'aɪt/ *3*, 6
impossible /ɪm'pɒsəbl/ 6
impression (make a good impression) /ɪm'preʃən/ *49*
improve /ɪm'pruːv/ *7*
improvement /ɪm'pruːvmənt/ *7*
in (Africa) *37*
in (April) *93*
in (ten days') time *93*
in a hurry *15*, *65*
in a mess 6
in a moment *15*
in a newspaper/magazine *15*
in addition *40*
in advance *76*, *90*
in business *15*
in charge of *69*, *71*
in comparison with *41*
in danger of extinction *45*
in front of *37*
in general *46*
in good condition *54*
in love *15*
in my opinion *18*
in order to *42*
in other words *100*
in power *86*
in practice *13*
in spite of *40*
in the blue jumper/dark glasses *15*
in the centre *54*
in the country/countryside 66
in the end *15*, *39*
in the long term *13*
in the morning/afternoon/evening *15*
in the short term *13*
in the wild *45*
in theory *13*
in time *15*
in your twenties/thirties, etc. *52*
in-house (training) /ˌɪn'haʊs/ *71*
inadequate /ɪ'nædɪkwət/ 6
included (Is breakfast included?) /ɪn'kluːdɪd/ *90*
income /'ɪŋkʌm/ *69*
income tax *10*, *69*
incomprehensible /ɪnˌkɒmprɪ'hensəbl/ *8*
incorrect /ˌɪnkər'ekt/ 6
increase (n, v) /'ɪnkriːs/ *73*
incredibly (expensive/cheap) /ɪn'kredɪbli/ *38*, *58*
indefinite article /ɪnˌdefɪnət 'ɑːtɪkl/ *4*
independent school /ˌɪndɪ'pendənt ˌskuːl/ *82*
industrial /ɪn'dʌstriəl/ *8*
infinitive /ɪn'fɪnətɪv/ *4*
inflation /ɪn'fleɪʃən/ *73*
inflexible /ɪn'fleksəbl/ *49*
inform /ɪn'fɔːm/ *7*
informal /ɪn'fɔːməl/ 6
information /ˌɪnfə'meɪʃən/ *7*, *33*
information technology *82*
injection /ɪn'dʒekʃən/ *59*
injure /'ɪndʒə/ *60*
injured (badly injured) /'ɪndʒəd/ *67*
injury /'ɪndʒəri/ *60*
innocent /'ɪnəsənt/ *84*
insect /'ɪnsekt/ *45*
insensitive /ɪn'sensətɪv/ *49*
install /ɪn'stɔːl/ *70*
interest (pay interest) /'ɪntrəst/ *73*
interest (v) *1*
interest rate /'ɪntrəst reɪt/ *73*
interested in something /'ɪntrəstɪd ɪn/ *14*, *19*
(the) Internet (the Net) /'ɪntənet/ *81*
into /'ɪntuː/ *37*
intransitive verb /ɪnˌtrænsətɪv 'vɜːb/ *4*
investigate /ɪn'vestɪgeɪt/ *84*
investment /ɪn'vesmənt/ *73*
invisible /ɪn'vɪzəbl/ 6, *8*
invoice /'ɪnvɔɪs/ 72
involve /ɪn'vɒlv/ *69*, *71*
iron /aɪən/ *56*
ironing (do the ironing) /'aɪənɪŋ/ *53*, *56*
irregular (verbs) /ɪ'regjələ/ 6
irresponsible /ˌɪrɪ'spɒnsəbl/ 6
Is that …? (on the phone) /ɪz ˌðæt/ *80*
Is this the first time you've been to …? *20*
island /'aɪlənd/ *3*, *43*
ISP (Internet Service Provider) /ˌaɪes'piː/ *81*, *100*
Israel /'ɪzreɪl/ 46
Israeli /ɪz'reɪli/ 46
it doesn't matter *16*
It says (in the paper) /ɪt ˌsez/ *78*
Italian /ɪ'tæliən/ 46
Italy /'ɪtəli/ 46
it's a bit difficult (actually) … *17*
it's up to you *13*
I'd love to *17*
I'll clear it up *16*
I'll leave it *62*
I'll sort it out *16*
I'll take it/them *62*
I'm (very) sorry *16*
I'm afraid I can't *17*
I'm afraid not *17*, *21*
I'm afraid so *21*

I'm being served *62*
I'm just looking (thanks) *62*
I'm looking for a … *62*
I'm sorry about (the mess) *16*
I'm sorry I can't *17*
I'm sorry I'm late *16*
I'm sorry to disturb you *16*
I'm sorry to keep you waiting *16*

jacket /ˈdʒækɪt/ *61*
Japan /dʒəˈpæn/ *46*
Japanese /ˌdʒæpənˈiːz/ *46*
jar (of marmalade) /dʒɑː/ *32*
jazz /dʒæz/ *77*
jealous (of) /ˈdʒeləs/ *50*
jealousy /ˈdʒeləsi/ *50*
jeans /dʒiːnz/ *61*
jewellery /ˈdʒuːəlri/ 62
job /dʒɒb/ *69*
job opportunities *65*
jog /dʒɒg/ *7*
jogging /ˈdʒɒgɪŋ/ *7*, *75*
join (the army/the police) /dʒɔɪn/ *70*
join a club *75*
journalist /ˈdʒɜːnəlɪst/ *7*, *78*
journey /ˈdʒɜːni/ *68*
judge /dʒʌdʒ/ *84*
jug (of milk) /dʒʌg/ *32*
jumper /ˈdʒʌmpə/ *61*
junction /ˈdʒʌŋʃən/ *67*
jury /ˈdʒʊəri/ *84*
just as *39*

keen (on/not very keen on …) /ˈkiːn/ *14*, *19*
keep (animals) /kiːp/ *45*, 66
keep (losing/interrupting/getting) *27*
keep (+ noun/pronoun + adjective) *27*
keep an eye on something/somebody *13*
keep fit /kiːp ˈfɪt/ 27, *75*
keep going *67*
keep in touch *27*
keep off the grass *97*
keep quiet *27*
keep right/left *97*
keep somebody waiting *27*
kettle /ˈketl/ *55*
key (adj) /kiː/ *78*
keyboard /ˈkiːbɔːd/ 72, *81*
kick a ball /kɪk/ *74*
kids /kɪdz/ 2, 99
kill /kɪl/ *88*
kind (= nice) /kaɪnd/ *49*
kind (What kind of …?) *19*
kiosk /ˈkiːɒsk/ 62
kiss /kɪs/ *9*
kitchen /ˈkɪtʃɪn/ *55*
knee /niː/ *47*
knife /naɪf/ *3*, *90*
knock (on/at a door) /nɒk/ *50*
knowledge /ˈnɒlɪdʒ/ *33*
Korea /kəˈriːə/ *46*
Korean /kəˈriːən/ *46*

lab /læb/ *100*
labour (costs) /ˈleɪbə/ *73*
lake /leɪk/ *43*
lamb /læm/ *45*, *63*
lamp /læmp/ *55*, *56*
land (v) /lænd/ *89*
landing card /ˈlændɪŋ ˌkɑːd/ *87*, *89*
lane /leɪn/ *67*
laptop /ˈlæptɒp/ *81*
large /lɑːdʒ/ *95*
laser printer /ˌleɪzə ˈprɪntə/ *81*
last (v) /lɑːst/ *83*, *93*
late (at night) /leɪt/ *85*
late night *13*
late twenties/thirties, etc. *52*
lately /ˈleɪtli/ *93*
latest (score/album) /ˈleɪtɪst/ *74*, *77*
Latin America (South America) /ˌlætɪn əˈmerɪkə/ *46*
laugh (n, v) /lɑːf/ 9, *47*
law /lɔː/ *3*, *83*
lawyer /ˈlɔɪə/ *70*
lazy /ˈleɪzi/ *49*
lead (= winning) /liːd/ *74*
lead singer/guitarist *77*
leader /ˈliːdə/ *86*
leave a job/school (= permanently) /liːv/ 28, *71*, *82*
leave a message *28*, *80*
leave home/work (= depart) *28*, *53*
leave lights on *85*
leave somebody (= permanent separation) *52*
leave somebody alone *28*
leave somebody/something somewhere (= allow them to stay) *28*
leave something behind (= forget something) *28*, *57*
leave something out (= omit) *24*
leaves /liːvz/ 66
lecture /ˈlektʃə/ *83*
lecturer /ˈlektʃərə/ *70*, *83*
leek /liːk/ *63*
left (e.g. I've got £20 left) /left/ *28*
left-hand page *1*
left-handed /ˌleftˈhændɪd/ *11*
left-wing /ˌleftˈwɪŋ/ *86*
lemon /ˈlemən/ *63*
lend /lend/ *58*
length /leŋθ/ *95*
leopard /ˈlepəd/ *45*
lesson /ˈlesən/ *83*
let me (help you) /ˌlet miː/ *28*
let me see *28*
let (somebody do something) *28*, *34*
let somebody know *28*
lettuce /ˈletɪs/ *63*
let's go/try *28*
liberal /ˈlɪbərəl/ *86*
liberalism /ˈlɪbərəlɪzəm/ *86*
library /ˈlaɪbrəri/ *65*
lie down /ˌlaɪ ˈdaʊn/ *23*
lie in bed /ˌlaɪ ɪn ˈbed/ *53*
lift (give somebody a lift) /lɪft/ *27*
lift (= to go up in a building) *54*, *90*
light colour /laɪt/ *96*
light (*opp* dark) *54*
light rain *44*
lightning /ˈlaɪtnɪŋ/ *44*
like /laɪk/ *19*
like (+ *-ing* or inf) *34*
lion /laɪən/ *45*
lip /lɪp/ *47*
listen (to something/somebody) /ˈlɪsən/ *14*
listen to (versus hear) *31*
live (adj) /laɪv/ *79*
lively /ˈlaɪvli/ *65*, *91*
liver /lɪvə/ *59*
living room /ˈlɪvɪŋ ruːm/ *10*, *55*
loads (of work) /ləʊdz/ *72*
loan /ləʊn/ *73*, *83*
lobster /ˈlɒbstə/ *63*
lock /lɒk/ *6*, *85*
long /lɒŋ/ *95*
(a) long way *95*
loo /luː/ *99*
look (v) (it looks terrible) /lʊk/ *31*
look (n) (I didn't like the look of the fish) *31*
look after something/somebody *23*, *24*, *70*
look at something *31*
look for a job *71*

look for something *31*
look forward to something *19*
look like *31*, *51*
look something up *5*, *23*
look versus watch versus see *31*
lorry /'lɒri/ *67*, *68*
lose /lu:z/ *3*
lose a game *74*
lose something (e.g. money) *57*
loser /'lu:zə/ *74*
loss (make a loss) /lɒs/ *73*
loud voice /ˌlaʊd 'vɔɪs/ *12*
lounge /laʊndʒ/ *55*
love /lʌv/ *19*
love (+ *-ing* or inf) *34*
luckily /'lʌkɪli/ *53*
lucky (be lucky) /'lʌki/ *25*
luggage /'lʌgɪdʒ/ *33*
luggage trolley /'lʌgɪdʒ ˌtrɒli/ *89*
lunch break /'lʌnʃ breɪk/ *82*
lung /lʌŋ/ *59*
lung cancer /lʌŋ 'kænsə/ *59*

MA/MSc /ˌem'eɪ/ /ˌemes'si:/ *83*
main course /ˌmeɪn 'kɔ:s/ *64*, *90*
main road /ˌmeɪn 'rəʊd/ *67*
maintain (your interest) /meɪn'teɪn/ *1*
majority /mə'dʒɒrəti/ *86*
make (= manufacture) /meɪk/ *72*
make (= earn) *69*
make (somebody do something) *34*
make a decision *26*
make a difference *26*
make a loss *73*
make a meal *26*
make a mistake *2*, *26*
make a noise *26*
make a profit *73*
make coffee *55*
make friends *26*
make it (e.g. I can't make it tonight) *13*
make money *26*
make my own breakfast/dinner *53*
make progress *26*
make something up (= invent) *24*
make the bed *56*
make up (your) mind *13*
make-up /'meɪkʌp/ *10*
manage (a business) /'mænɪdʒ/ *7*
manage (= be able to) (+ inf) /'mænɪdʒ/ *34*
management (bad management) /'mænɪdʒmənt/ *7*
manager /'mænɪdʒə/ *70*, *71*
Mandarin (also Cantonese) /'mændərɪn/ *46*
manslaughter /'mænˌslɔ:tə/ *85*
manual /'mænjuəl/ *70*
manufacture /ˌmænjə'fæktʃə/ *72*
Many Happy Returns *22*
map /mæp/ *91*
march (= walk) (n, v) /mɑ:tʃ/ *50*
marital status /ˌmærɪtəl 'steɪtəs/ *87*
mark (high/low) /mɑ:k/ *82*
market /'mɑ:kɪt/ *91*
marriage /'mærɪdʒ/ *52*
maths (mathematics) /mæθs/ *82*, *100*
May we remind passengers ... /meɪ/ *89*
maybe /'meɪbi/ *18*
me neither *19*
me too *19*
meal /mi:l/ *90*
mean (adj) /mi:n/ *49*
mean (= intend/plan) (+ inf) /mi:n/ *34*
mechanic /mɪ'kænɪk/ *70*
medicine /'medsən/ *83*
Mediterranean (the Mediterranean) /ˌmedɪtər'eɪniən/ *46*
medium (height/build) /'mi:diəm/ *48*
medium-rare (meat) /ˌmi:diəm 'reə/ *64*
meet /mi:t/ *52*
meeting /'mi:tɪŋ/ *69*
melon /'melən/ *63*
mental arithmetic /ˌmentəl ə'rɪθmətɪk/ *94*
mention (that + clause) /'menʃən/ *35*
menu /'menju:/ *64*, *90*
Merry Christmas /ˌmeri 'krɪsməs/ *22*
mess (a complete mess) /mes/ *56*
message (give/leave a message) /'mesɪdʒ/ *80*
meter (taxi meter) /'mi:tə/ *68*
Mexican /'meksɪkən/ *46*
Mexico /'meksɪkəʊ/ *46*
mice /maɪs/ *45*
microwave /'maɪkrəweɪv/ *55*
mid-twenties/thirties, etc. *52*
Middle East (the Middle East) /ˌmɪdl 'i:st/ *46*
middle-aged /ˌmɪdl'eɪdʒd/ *52*
million /'mɪljən/ *94*
mind (+ *-ing*) /maɪnd/ *34*
mind (I don't mind) *19*
mind the step/your head *97*
minimum wage /ˌmɪnɪməm 'weɪdʒ/ *69*
minor offence /ˌmaɪnər ə'fens/ *84*
minus /'maɪnəs/ *94*
minute /'mɪnɪt/ *93*
minutes (take the minutes) /'mɪnɪts/ *72*
mirror /'mɪrə/ *56*
misread /mɪs'ri:d/ *6*
miss a bus/train /mɪs/ *12*, *57*, *68*
miss a lesson *12*
miss a person *12*
misunderstand /ˌmɪsʌndə'stænd/ *6*
mobile phone /ˌməʊbaɪl 'fəʊn/ *80*
modem /'məʊdem/ *81*
monarchy /'mɒnəki/ *86*
monitor /'mɒnɪtə/ *72*, *81*
monkey /'mʌŋki/ *45*
monthly /'mʌnθli/ *78*
mood (in a good/bad mood) /mu:d/ *57*
moon /mu:n/ *43*
more or less *98*
mosquito /mɒs'ki:təʊ/ *45*
mother tongue /'mʌðə tʌŋ/ *10*
mother-in-law /'mʌðərɪnˌlɔ:/ *51*
motor racing /'məʊtə reɪsɪŋ/ *75*
motorbike /'məʊtəbaɪk/ *68*
motorway /'məʊtəweɪ/ *67*
mountain /'maʊntɪn/ *43*
mouse (animal) /maʊs/ *45*
mouse (computer) *81*
moustache /mə'stɑ:ʃ/ *48*
move (along the ground) /mu:v/ *45*
moving /'mu:vɪŋ/ *76*
MP (Member of Parliament) /ˌem'pi:/ *100*
Mr /'mɪstə/ *100*
Mrs /'mɪsɪz/ *100*
Ms /mɪz/ *100*
multiplication /ˌmʌltɪplɪ'keɪʃən/ *94*
multiply /'mʌltɪplaɪ/ *94*
murder(er) /'mɜ:dərə/ *7*, *85*
murder (n, v) /'mɜ:də/ *9*
muscular /'mʌskjələ/ *48*
mushroom /'mʌʃrʊm/ *63*
musical (n) /'mju:zɪkəl/ *76*
musical (adj) *8*
mussels /'mʌsəlz/ *63*
my name is ... (on the phone) *80*

napkin /ˈnæpkɪn/ 64, 90
narrow (road) /ˈnærəʊ/ 95
narrow-minded /ˌnærəʊˈmaɪndɪd/ 49
natural disaster /ˈnætʃərəl/ 88
natural resources 88
navy /ˈneɪvi/ 70
near /nɪə/ 37
nearest /ˈnɪərɪst/ 95
nearly /ˈnɪəli/ 38
neck /nek/ 47
necklace /ˈnekləs/ 61
neither /ˈnaɪðə/ 41
neither (do I) 19
nephew /ˈnefjuː/ 51
net /net/ 74
never /ˈnevə/ 38
never mind 13, 16
news /njuːz/ 33
newsagent /ˈnjuːzˌeɪdʒənt/ 62
next to /ˈnekst tuː/ 37
nice to have met you 22
nice to meet you 22
niece /niːs/ 51
nightlife /ˈnaɪtlaɪf/ 65, 66, 91
nine-to-five (job) /ˌnaɪntəfaɪv/ 69
no exit/parking/smoking/vacancies 97
no problem 16
nod (your head) /nɒd/ 47
noisy /ˈnɔɪzi/ 54, 65
not bad /ˌnɒt ˈbæd/ 20, 22
notebook /ˈnəʊtbʊk/ 5
notes (money) /nəʊts/ 58
nothing (there's nothing to do) /ˈnʌθɪŋ/ 65
nothing special/much 20
notice (n) /ˈnəʊtɪs/ 97
noticeboard /ˈnəʊtɪsbɔːd/ 72
nought /nɔːt/ 94
noun /naʊn/ 4
nowhere (there's nowhere to park) /ˈnəʊweə/ 65
nuisance (what a nuisance) /ˈnjuːsəns/ 21
number one (pop music) /ˌnʌmbə ˈwʌn/ 77
nurse /nɜːs/ 70
nursery school /ˈnɜːsəri skuːl/ 82

objective /əbˈdʒektɪv/ 73
occasionally /əˈkeɪʒənəli/ 38
ocean /ˈəʊʃən/ 43
off (= not at work) /ɒf/ 72
off-licence /ˈɒfˌlaɪsəns/ 62
offer (+ inf) /ˈɒfə/ 34
official (n) /əˈfɪʃəl/ 87
often /ˈɒfən/ 38
oh (e.g. 603) /əʊ/ 94
OHP /əʊeɪtʃˈpiː/ 5
OHT /əʊeɪtʃˈtiː/ 5
oil /ɔɪl/ 63, 64
old age /ˌəʊld ˈeɪdʒ/ 52
old friend 51
on (the desk) /ɒn/ 37
on (= showing on TV) 79
on (Monday) 93
on business 15
on earth 43
on fire 15
on foot 15
on holiday 15
on (my) own 15, 53
on purpose 15
on strike 15
on the ground/first floor 54
on the one hand 13
on the other hand 13
on the outskirts (of town) 54
on the phone 2, 15, 80
on the radio 15
on the tip of my tongue 13
on time 15
on TV 15
one day 93
onion /ˈʌnjən/ 63
online (go/get online) /ˌɒnˈlaɪn/ 81
only child 51
open a document 81
opera /ˈɒpərə/ 77
operate (on) /ˈɒpəreɪt/ 70
opposite /ˈɒpəzɪt/ 4, 37
(the) opposition /ˌɒpəˈzɪʃən/ 86
optimistic /ˌɒptɪˈmɪstɪk/ 49
or so (= about) 98
orange /ˈɒrɪndʒ/ 63
orchestra /ˈɔːkɪstrə/ 77
original /əˈrɪdʒənəl/ 18
otherwise /ˈʌðəwaɪz/ 42
out (= not here) /aʊt/ 80
out of 37
out of order 57, 97
out of work 15, 71
oven /ˈʌvən/ 55
over /ˈəʊvə/ 37
overcharge /ˌəʊvəˈtʃɑːdʒ/ 6
overdo /ˌəʊvəˈduː/ 6
overhead locker /ˈəʊvəhed/ 89
overheads /ˈəʊvəhedz/ 73
oversleep /ˌəʊvəˈsliːp/ 6, 53
overtake /ˌəʊvəˈteɪk/ 67
overtime (do/work overtime) /ˈəʊvətaɪm/ 69
overweight /ˌəʊvəˈweɪt/ 48
own (v) /əʊn/ 54
oyster /ˈɔɪstə/ 63

pace (of life) /peɪs/ 66
pack (my suitcase) /pæk/ 6
packed (with tourists) /pækt/ 91
packet (of cigarettes) /ˈpækɪt/ 32
pain (I've got a pain in ...) /peɪn/ 59
pain (what a pain) 21
painful /ˈpeɪnfəl/ 8, 59, 60
pair (of shoes/skis/shorts) /peə/ 32
palace /ˈpælɪs/ 91
pale /peɪl/ 96
pale skin /ˌpeɪl ˈskɪn/ 48
(a) paper (newspaper) /ˈpeɪpə/ 100
paperwork (do paperwork) /ˈpeɪpəwɜːk/ 72
park (v) /pɑːk/ 67
parking /ˈpɑːkɪŋ/ 65
part-time (job) /ˌpɑːtˈtaɪm/ 11, 71
partner /ˈpɑːtnə/ 51
pass a ball /pɑːs/ 74
pass an exam 82, 83
passenger /ˈpæsəndʒə/ 68
passport /ˈpɑːspɔːt/ 87
passport control 89
past /pɑːst/ 37
paste /peɪst/ 81
path /pɑːθ/ 54
pattern /ˈpætən/ 96
pavement /ˈpeɪvmənt/ 67
pay (n, v) /peɪ/ 69
pay by (cheque/credit card) 62
pay for something 58
pay rise 71
pay something back 73
pay the bill 90
PC (personal computer) /ˌpiːˈsiː/ 100
peace and quiet /piːs ən kwaɪət/ 66
peace settlement 88
peach /piːtʃ/ 63
pear /peə/ 63
peas /piːz/ 63
pedestrian /pɪˈdestriən/ 67
pedestrian crossing 67
peel /piːl/ 63
pencil sharpener /ˈpensəl ˌʃɑːpənə/ 5
pepper /ˈpepə/ 64

pepper (red/green) *63*
per cent /pɜː 'sent/ *94*
perform /pə'fɔːm/ *77*
performance /pə'fɔːməns/ *76*
perhaps /pə'hæps/ *18*
personally I ... /'pɜːsənəli aɪ/ *18*
persuade (somebody + inf) /pə'sweɪd/ *35*
pessimistic /,pesɪ'mɪstɪk/ *49*
pet /pet/ *45*
petrol station /'petrəl ,steɪʃən/ *67*
PhD /,piːeɪtʃ'diː/ *83*
philosophy /fɪ'lɒsəfi/ *83*
phone /fəʊn/ *100*
phone box/card/number *80*
phone somebody back *80*
photo (photograph) /'fəʊtəʊ/ *26*, *100*
photocopier /'fəʊtə,kɒpiə/ *5*, *72*
photocopy /'fəʊtə,kɒpi/ *5*
photographer /fə'tɒgrəfə/ *78*
phrasal verb /'freɪzəl ,vɜːb/ *4*
physics /'fɪzɪks/ *82*
pianist /'piːənɪst/ *77*
piano /pi'ænəʊ/ *77*
pick something up (= take it using one's hands) /,pɪk ʌp/ *23*
pick something/somebody up (= collect) *23*, *99*
piece (of toast/advice) /piːs/ *32*
pig /pɪg/ *45*
pillow/'pɪləʊ/ *56*
pilot /'paɪlət/ *68*, *70*
pineapple /'paɪnæpl/ *63*
pink /pɪŋk/ *96*
piss (v) (slang) /pɪs/ *99*
pitch /pɪtʃ/ *74*
pity (that's a pity) /'pɪti/ *21*
place /pleɪs/ *91*
place of birth *87*
plain /pleɪn/ *48*
plan (v) /plæn/ *70*
plane /pleɪn/ *68*, *100*
planet /'plænɪt/ *88*
plant /plɑːnt/ *66*
plant bombs *88*
plaster /'plɑːstə/ *60*
plate /pleɪt/ *90*
platform /'plætfɔːm/ *3*, *68*
play (n) /pleɪ/ *76*
play a game *75*
play cards /,pleɪ 'kɑːdz/ *53*
pleasant /'plezənt/ *49*
please accept our apologies *16*
please do not disturb *97*
please do not feed the animals *97*
please queue other side *97*
pleased to meet you *22*
plenty (there's plenty to do) /'plenti/ *65*
plug /plʌg/ *5*
plug something in /,plʌg 'ɪn/ *5*, *79*
plum /plʌm/ *63*
plumber /'plʌmə/ *70*
plural noun /,plʊərəl 'naʊn/ *4*
plus /plʌs/ *94*
PM (Prime Minister) /,piː'em/ *100*
pocket /'pɒkɪt/ *61*
point /pɔɪnt/ *96*
point (at something/somebody) *50*
point (decimal) *94*
point (I don't see the point of ...) *27*
point (I take your point) *18*
pointed /'pɔɪntɪd/ *96*
Poland /'pəʊlənd/ *46*
pole (north/south) /pəʊl/ *43*
police force /pə'liːs ,fɔːs/ *70*
police officer /pə'liːs ,ɒfɪsə/ *70*
policeman/policewoman /pə'liːsmən/ /'pə'liːswʊmən/ *70*
policy (economic/foreign) /'pɒləsi/ *86*
Polish /'pəʊlɪʃ/ *46*
polite /pə'laɪt/ *3*
political /pə'lɪtɪkəl/ *8*
political party *86*
politician /pɒlɪ'tɪʃən/ *86*
politics /'pɒlətɪks/ *83*, *86*
pollute /pə'luːt/ *88*
polluted /pə'luːtɪd/ *65*
pollution /pə'luːʃən/ *88*
pond /pɒnd/ *2*
pop music /pɒp/ *77*
pop singer *7*
pop star *10*
popular press /,pɒpjələ 'pres/ *78*
population /,pɒpjə'leɪʃən/ *46*
pork /pɔːk/ *63*
porter /'pɔːtə/ *90*
Portuguese /,pɔːtʃə'giːz *46*
possibly /'pɒsəbli/ *18*
post office /'pəʊst ,ɒfɪs/ *10*
postbox /'pəʊsbɒks/ *10*
postgraduate (course/degree) /,pəʊs'grædʒuət/ *83*
postman /'pəʊsmən/ *10*
potato /pə'teɪtəʊ/ *63*
pour (with rain) /pɔː/ *44*
prawn /prɔːn/ *63*
prefer (I'd prefer to ...) /prɪ'fɜː/ *17*, *19*
prefer (+ *-ing* or inf) *34*
prefer (Which do/would you prefer?) *19*
prefer (I prefer X to Y) *19*
prefix /'priːfɪks/ *4*
pregnant /'pregnənt/ *52*
preposition /,prepə'zɪʃən/ *4*
prescription /prɪ'skrɪpʃən/ *59*
press (a button) /pres/ *31*, *50*
pretty (adv) /'prɪti/ *38*
pretty (adj) /'prɪti/ *48*
prevent /prɪ'vent/ *67*, *85*
price /praɪs/ *58*
pride /praɪd/ *50*
primary school /'praɪməri ,skuːl/ *82*
Prime Minister /,praɪm 'mɪnɪstə/ *86*
print /prɪnt/ *81*, *87*
print something out /,prɪnt 'aʊt/ *81*
printer /'prɪntə/ *81*
prison (in prison) /'prɪzən/ *84*
prisoner /'prɪzənə/ *84*
privacy /'prɪvəsi/ *66*
private school /,praɪvɪt 'skuːl/ *82*
prize /praɪz/ *79*
proceed to ... prə,siːd tuː/ *99*
produce (= manufacture) /'prəd'juːs/ *72*
produce an album *77*
profession /prə'feʃən/ *70*
professional (footballer) /prə'feʃənəl/ *7*
professor /prə'fesə/ *83*
profit (make a profit) /'prɒfɪt/ *73*
program (computer) /'prəʊgræm/ *81*
programme (TV) *79*
progress (make progress) /'prəʊgres/ *26*, *33*
promise (+ inf) /'prɒmɪs/ *34*
promote /prə'məʊt/ *71*
pronounce prə'naʊns/ *1*
properly (it isn't working properly) /'prɒpəli/ *57*
property /'prɒpəti/ *85*
prospects /'prɒspekts/ *71*
protect /prə'tekt/ *45*, *88*
protect (oneself) *85*
protect your skin /prə,tekt jɔ 'skɪn *92*
protection /prə'tekʃən/ *88*
proud (of) /praʊd/ *50*

prove /pru:v/ *84*
psychologist /saɪ'kɒlədʒɪst/ *7*
psychology /saɪ'kɒlədʒi/ *83*
public school /'pʌblɪk ˌsku:l/ *82*
public transport (system) *65*, *66*
publish /'pʌblɪʃ/ *78*
pull out /ˌpʊl 'aʊt/ *67*
punctual /'pʌŋktʃuəl/ *49*, *68*
punishment /'pʌnɪʃmənt/ *84*, *85*
pupil /'pju:pəl/ *82*
purchase /'pɜ:tʃəs/ *2*, *99*
purple /'pɜ:pl/ *96*
purpose /'pɜ:pəs/ *42*
push /pʊʃ/ *50*
put on clothes /pʊt ɒn kləʊðz/ *2*, *56*, *61*
put on the brakes *9*
put on weight *64*
put somebody through (= connect by phone) *80*
put something back (= return it) *23*, *55*
put something off (= postpone) *23*
pyjamas /pɪ'dʒɑ:məz/ *33*, *56*

quarter /'kwɔ:tə/ *94*
question (v) /'kwestʃən/ *84*
question mark /'kwestʃən ˌmɑ:k/ *4*
queue (wait in a queue) /kju:/ *9*, *68*
quid /kwɪd/ *99*
quiet /'kwaɪət/ *54*, *65*
quit /kwɪt/ *71*, *78*
quite /kwaɪt/ *38*
quite like *19*
quite often *38*
quite unlike *41*
quiz show /'kwɪz ʃəʊ/ *79*

rabbit /'ræbɪt/ *45*
racket /'rækɪt/ *74*
radical /'rædɪkəl/ *86*
railway station /'reɪlweɪ ˌsteɪʃən/ *68*
rain (n, v) /reɪn/ *9*
rainforest /reɪnˌfɒrɪst/ *43*, *88*
rare (meat) /reə/ *64*
rarely /'reəli/ *38*
raspberry /'rɑ:zbəri/ *63*
rather /'rɑ:ðə/ *38*
raw /rɔ:/ *64*
raw material /ˌrɔ: mə'tɪəriəl/ *73*
reactionary /ri'ækʃənəri/ *86*
really /'rɪəli/ *38*
really? *21*
reason /'ri:zən/ *42*
reasonable /'ri:zənəbl/ *58*
reassure somebody /ˌri:ə'ʃʊə/ *16*
recently /'ri:səntli/ *93*
reception /rɪ'sepʃən/ *90*
recession (in recession) /rɪ'seʃən/ *73*
reckon /'rekən/ *99*
recorded highlights /rɪˌkɔ:dɪd 'haɪlaɪts/ *79*
rectangle /'rektæŋgl/ *96*
rectangular /rek'tæŋgjələ/ *96*
recycle /ˌri:'saɪkl/ *88*
recycling /ˌri:'saɪklɪŋ/ *88*
reduce /rɪ'dju:s/ *85*
referee /ˌrefər'i:/ *74*
refuse (+ inf) /rɪ'fu:z/ *34*
registration form /ˌredʒɪ'streɪʃən fɔ:m/ *87*
release (a hostage) /rɪ'li:s/ *88*
release (a record/CD) *77*
reliable /rɪ'laɪəbl/ *8*, *49*
remember (+ inf or *-ing*) /rɪ'membə/ *34*
remote /rɪ'məʊt/ *66*
remote control /rɪˌməʊt kən'trəʊl/ *79*
renew /rɪ'nju:/ *87*
rent /rent/ *54*, *89*, *92*
repair /rɪ'peə/ *70*
repeat (v) /rɪ'pi:t/ *5*
repeat (n) *79*
report /rɪ'pɔ:t/ *78*
reporter /rɪ'pɔ:tə/ *78*
represent /ˌreprɪ'zent/ *70*
representative /ˌreprɪ'zentətɪv/ *86*
republic /rɪ'pʌblɪk/ *86*
republican /rɪ'pʌblɪkən/ *86*
require (further assistance) /rɪ'kwaɪə/ *99*
research (do research) /rɪ'sɜ:tʃ/ *26*, *83*
residential area /ˌrezɪ'denʃəl 'eəriə/ *54*
resign /rɪ'zaɪn/ *71*
resources /rɪ'zɔ:sɪz/ *88*
responsibilities /rɪˌspɒnsə'bɪlətiz/ *69*
responsible (for something/somebody) /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/ *69*, *70*
resume /rɪ'zju:m/ *99*
retire /rɪ'taɪə/ *71*
retired /rɪ'taɪəd/ *52*
retirement /rɪ'taɪəmənt/ *52*
return (n) (return to Bath) /rɪ'tɜ:n/ *68*
review /rɪ'vju:/ *76*, *78*
revise /rɪ'vaɪz/ *1*
revision /rɪ'vɪʒən/ *1*
ride a bike /raɪd ə baɪk/ *68*
ridiculous /rɪ'dɪkjələs/ *18*
right (= OK) /raɪt/ *21*
right (= correct) *18*
right (in the centre) *54*
right (turn right) *67*
right now *15*
right-handed /ˌraɪt'hændɪd/ *11*
right-wing /ˌraɪt'wɪŋ/ *86*
ring (n, v) (= phone) /rɪŋ/ *9*
ring (on finger) *61*
rise (n, v) /raɪz/ *2*, *73*
river /'rɪvə/ *43*, *66*
road signs /'rəʊd saɪnz/ *67*
roadworks /'rəʊdwɜ:ks/ *67*
roast (meat) /rəʊst/ *64*
rob /rɒb/ *85*
robber /'rɒbə/ *85*
robbery /'rɒbəri/ *85*
rock climbing /'rɒk ˌklaɪmɪŋ/ *75*
rock music /'rɒk ˌmju:zɪk/ *77*
rock star /'rɒk ˌstɑ:/ *10*
rocks /rɒks/ *92*
romance /rəʊ'mæns/ *52*, *76*
romantic comedy /rəˌmæntɪk 'kɒmədi/ *76*
roof /ru:f/ *54*
roots /ru:ts/ *66*
rough sea /ˌrʌf 'si:/ *92*
roughly /'rʌfli/ *48*, *98*
round (adj) /raʊnd/ *96*
round (prep) /raʊnd/ *37*
(just) round the corner /ˌraʊnd ðə 'kɔ:nə/ *95*
routine /ru:'ti:n/ *1*, *69*
row (in a theatre/cinema) /rəʊ/ *76*
row (= argument) /raʊ/ *52*, *78*
rub something off (the board) /ˌrʌb 'ɒf/ *5*
rub something out *1*, *5*
rubber /'rʌbə/ *5*
rug /rʌg/ *55*
rugby /'rʌgbi/ *74*
ruin /'ru:ɪn/ *57*
rule (v) /ru:l/ *86*
ruler /'ru:lə/ *86*
run (= travel/operate) /rʌn/ *68*
run (= manage/control) *69*, *86*
run away *76*
run out (= expire) *87*
run out (of something) *23*, *57*, *72*
runway /'rʌnweɪ/ *89*

rural (area) /'rʊərəl/ 66
rush hour /'rʌʃ ˌaʊə/ 65
rushed (to hospital) /rʌʃt/ 60
Russia /'rʌʃə/ 46
Russian /'rʌʃən/ 46

sack (v) /sæk/ 71
sadness /'sædnəs/ 50
safe (adj) /seɪf/ 65
safe (n) 85
sailor /'seɪlə/ 70
salad /'sæləd/ 63
salad dressing /'sæləd dresɪŋ/ 63
salary /'sæləri/ 69, 71
sales rep /'seɪlz ˌrep/ 100
salmon /'sæmən/ 63
salt /sɔːlt/ 64
salty /'sɔːlti/ 64
same to you /ˌseɪm tuː 'juː/ 22
sand /sænd/ 92
sandy (beach) /'sændi/ 92
satellite TV/dish /'sætəlaɪt tiː'viː/'dɪʃ/ 79
satisfied (with something) /'sætɪsfaɪd/ 14
saucepan /'sɔːspən/ 2, 55
saucer /'sɔːsə/ 55
Saudi Arabia /ˌsaʊdi ə'reɪbiə/ 46
Saudi Arabian /ˌsaʊdi ə'reɪbiən/ 46
save (= conserve) /seɪv/ 88
save (up) 23, 58
save (data) 81
saxophone/saxophonist /'sæksəfəʊn/ /sæk'sɒfənɪst/ 77
say (the paper/TV says that ...) /seɪ/ 18
say (that + clause) 35
say the word aloud 1
scales /skeɪlz/ 33
scar /skɑː/ 48
scarf /skɑːf/ 61
science /'saɪəns/ 82
science fiction /ˌsaɪəns 'fɪkʃən/ 10
scissors /'sɪzəz/ 33
score /skɔː/ 74
screen (cinema) /skriːn/ 76
screen (computer) 81
sea /siː/ 43
seafood /'siːfuːd/ 63
search engine /'sɜːtʃ ˌendʒɪn/ 81
seaside resort /'siːsaɪd rɪˌzɔːt/ 92
seat /siːt/ 3
seats (in parliament) 86
second(ly) /'sekəndli/ 39
second(s) (n) /'sekəndz/ 93
second-hand /ˌsekən'hænd/ 11
secondary school /'sekəndəri ˌskuːl/ 82
see (= understand) /siː/ 27
see (= find out) 3, 27
see versus watch versus look at 31
see you later/tomorrow/soon 22
seem (+ inf) /siːm/ 34
seldom /'seldəm/ 38
self-confident /ˌself'kɒnfɪdənt/ 49
self-employed /ˌselfɪm'plɔɪd/ 69
self-service /ˌself'sɜːvɪs/ 67
self-study /ˌself'stʌdi/ 1
sell /sel/ 70
semi-circle /'semɪˌsɜːkl/ 96
send (e-mail) /send/ 72
sense of humour /ˌsens əv 'hjuːmə/ 49
senses /'sensɪz/ 31
sensitive /'sensɪtɪv/ 49
sentence (prison) /'sentəns/ 84
separated /'sepəreɪtɪd/ 51
series (comedy/drama) /'sɪəriːz/ 79
serious injury /ˌsɪəriəs 'ɪndʒəri/ 12
seriously injured /ˌsɪəriəsli 'ɪndʒəd/ 60
set (be set in ...) /set/ 76
set off /ˌset 'ɒf/ 24
set the alarm 56
shade /ʃeɪd/ 96
shake (hands) /ʃeɪk/ 47
shake your head 47
Shall we ...? /'ʃæl wiː/ 17
shallow (lake) /'ʃæləʊ/ 95
shame (what a shame) /ʃeɪm/ 21
shape /ʃeɪp/ 96
share /ʃeə/ 5
shark /ʃɑːk/ 45
sharp(ly) /'ʃɑːpli/ 73
sheep /ʃiːp/ 45
sheet /ʃiːt/ 56
sheet (of paper) 32
shiftwork /'ʃɪftwɜːk/ 69
shirt /ʃɜːt/ 61
shoe /ʃuː/ 61
shoot /ʃuːt/ 60
shop around /ʃop ə'raʊnd/ 62
shop manager 7
shop window 62
shop/sales assistant 62
shoplift(er) /'ʃɒpˌlɪftə/ 85
shoplifting /'ʃɒplɪftɪŋ/ 85
shopping (do the shopping) /'ʃɒpɪŋ/ 53
shopping centre 62, 65
shopping list 62
short /ʃɔːt/ 48, 95
short-sleeved /ˌʃɔːt'sliːvd/ 11
shorts /ʃɔːts/ 33, 75
shoulder /'ʃəʊldə/ 47
shout (at somebody/to somebody) /ʃaʊt/ 14, 50
show (somebody + wh- word) /ʃəʊ/ 35
show (= for people to see) 76
show one's feelings 49
show somebody (a)round 72
shower (in the bathroom) /'ʃaʊə/ 56
shower (of rain) 44
shower curtain 56
showery /'ʃaʊəri/ 44
shy /ʃaɪ/ 49
sick (be sick/feel sick) /sɪk/ 59
sick pay 69
sight /saɪt/ 31
sightseeing /'saɪtsiːɪŋ/ 91
sightseeing tour 91
sign (your name) /saɪn/ 87
signature /'sɪgnətʃə/ 87
silence (silence: exam in progress) /'saɪləns/ 97
silent(ly) /'saɪləntli/ 1
similar /'sɪmɪlə/ 41
similar (to) 7, 14
similar taste 41
similarity (a similarity between X and Y) /'sɪmɪ'lærəti/ 7, 41
since (+ a point in time) /sɪns/ 93
single (not married) /'sɪŋgl/ 20
single (hit single) 77
single (n) (single to Edinburgh) 68
single room 90
single-parent (family) /ˌsɪŋgl'peərənt/ 51
sink /sɪŋk/ 55
sister-in-law /'sɪstərɪnlɔː/ 51
sit down /ˌsɪt 'daʊn/ 23
size /saɪz/ 61, 62
skiing /'skiːɪŋ/ 75
skilled /skɪld/ 70
skin (dark/pale) /skɪn/ 47, 48
skirt /skɜːt/ 61
skis /skiːz/ 75
skyscraper /'skaɪˌskreɪpə/ 65
slang /slæŋ/ 99
sleeves /sliːvz/ 61
slice (of bread) /slaɪs/ 32
slight (accent) /slaɪt/ 12
slightly /'slaɪtli/ 38

slim /slɪm/ *48*
sling/slɪŋ/ *60*
slow(ly) /'sləʊli/ *73*
slow (= boring) /sləʊ/ *76*
smell (n, v) /smel/ *9*
smell (v) (it smells wonderful) *31*
smell (n) (the smell of petrol) *31*
smell like (it smells like garlic) *31*
smile (n, v) /smaɪl/ *2, 9, 47*
snack /snæk/ *53*
snail /sneɪl/ *45*
snake /sneɪk/ *45*
sneeze (I keep sneezing) /sni:z/ *59*
snorkelling /'snɔ:kəlɪŋ/ *92*
so (do I) /səʊ/ *19*
so (that) *42*
soap opera /'səʊp ˌɒpərə/ *79*
social democrat /ˌsəʊʃəl 'deməkræt/ *86*
socialism /'səʊʃəlɪzəm/ *86*
socialist /'səʊʃəlɪst/ *86*
sociology /ˌsəʊʃi'ɒlədʒi/ *83*
sock /sɒk/ *61*
socket /'sɒkɪt/ *5*
sofa /'səʊfə/ *55*
soft (drink/voice) /sɒft/ *12*
software /'sɒfweə/ *81*
soil /sɔɪl/ *66*
sold out /ˌsəʊld 'aʊt/ *97*
soldier /'səʊldʒə/ *70, 88*
solo artist /'səʊləʊ ˌɑ:tɪst/ *77*
something wrong (with something) /ˌsʌmθɪŋ 'rɒŋ/ *14*
sometime (next week) /'sʌmtaɪm/ *98*
sometimes /'sʌmtaɪmz/ *38*
songwriter /'sɒŋˌraɪtə/ *77*
sore throat /ˌsɔ: 'θrəʊt/ *59*
sorry /'sɒri/ *22*
sort (What sort of ...?) /sɔ:t/ *19*
(a) sort of *98*
sort something out /ˌsɔ:t 'aʊt/ *24*
sound (the sound of church bells) /saʊnd/ *31*
sound (v) (he sounds German) *31*
sound like (it sounds like a good idea) /'saʊnd laɪk/ *31*
sound system /'saʊnd ˌsɪstəm/ *55*
sour /saʊə/ *64*
South America (Latin America) /ˌsaʊθ ə'merɪkə/ *46*
space /speɪs/ *43*
Spain /speɪn/ *46*
Spanish /'spænɪʃ/ *46*
spare room /speə 'ru:m/ *55*
sparkling water /'spɑ:klɪŋ ˌwɔ:tə/ *64*
speaker /'spi:kə/ *55*
speaking (on the phone) /'spi:kɪŋ/ *80*
spectators /spek'teɪtəz/ *74*
speed limit /'spi:d ˌlɪmɪt/ *67*
speeding /'spi:dɪŋ/ *67*
spell /spel/ *7*
spelling (be good at spelling) /'spelɪŋ/ *7*
spend (money on something) /spend/ *14, 58, 91*
spend your holiday *92*
spicy /'spaɪsi/ *64*
spider /'spaɪdə/ *45*
spill /spɪl/ *57*
split up /ˌsplɪt 'ʌp/ *52*
spoon /spu:n/ *90*
square /skweə/ *96*
St (street) /stri:t/ *100*
St (saint) /seɪnt/ *100*
stability (economic/political) /stə'bɪləti/ *73*
stadium /'steɪdiəm/ *74*
stage /steɪdʒ/ *76*
stain (n) /steɪn/ *57*
stairs /steəz/ *54*
stalls /stɔ:lz/ *76*
stand up /stænd 'ʌp/ *23*
standard of living /'stændəd əv 'lɪvɪŋ/ *58*
star (shape) /stɑ:/ *96*
star (film) *76*
star (in the sky) *43*
stare (at) /steə/ *50*
start a car /stɑ:t/ *12*
start a family *12*
starter /'stɑ:tə/ *64, 90*
starving /'stɑ:vɪŋ/ *36*
state system /ˌsteɪt 'sɪstəm/ *82*
station (TV) /'steɪʃən/ *79*
stationery /'steɪʃənəri/ *62*
statue /'stætʃu:/ *91*
stay (at school) /steɪ/ *82*
stay (v) *90*
stay in *24, 53*
steady/steadily /'stedi/ /'stedɪli/ *73*
steal /sti:l/ *85*
stepfather /'stepˌfɑ:ðə/ *51*
stepmother /'stepˌmʌðə/ *51*
steps /steps/ *54*
stereo /'steriəʊ/ *55*
sterling /'stɜ:lɪŋ/ *58*
steward(ess) /'stju:əd/'stju:ədes/ *89*
stick (hockey stick) /stɪk/ *74*
stick (skiing/ice hockey) *75*
still /stɪl/ *40*
still water /'stɪl ˌwɔ:tə/ *64*
stitches /'stɪtʃɪz/ *60*
stockbroker /'stɒkˌbrəʊkə/ *70*
stomach /'stʌmək/ *59*
stomachache /'stʌməkeɪk/ *59*
straight hair /ˌstreɪt 'heə/ *48*
strawberry /'strɔ:bəri/ *63*
stress /stres/ *4*
stressful /'stresfʊl/ *65*
striped /straɪpt/ *96*
stroll (n, v) /strəʊl/ *50*
strong accent /ˌstrɒŋ 'æksənt/ *12*
strong coffee *12*
strong economy *73*
strong wind *44*
stuck (get stuck) /stʌk/ *94*
study (room) /'stʌdi/ *55*
study a subject *83*
stuff /stʌf/ *98*
stuff like that *19*
stupid /'stju:pɪd/ *7, 49*
stupidity /stju:'pɪdəti/ *7*
subject /'sʌbdʒɪkt/ *82, 83*
subtitles /'sʌbˌtaɪtlz/ *76*
subtraction /səb'trækʃən/ *94*
suburbs /'sʌbɜ:bz/ *54, 65*
success /sək'ses/ *82*
successful /sək'sesfəl/ *73*
suffer (from an illness) /'sʌfə/ *14, 59*
suffix /'sʌfɪks/ *4*
suggest (that + clause) /sə'dʒest/ *35*
suggestion /sə'dʒestʃən/ *17*
suit (n) /su:t/ *61*
suitable /'su:təbl/ *8*
sun /sʌn/ *43, 44*
sunbathe /'sʌnbeɪð/ *92*
sunblock /'sʌnblɒk/ *92*
sunburn /'sʌnbɜ:n/ *92*
sunglasses /'sʌnˌglɑ:sɪz/ *10, 33*
sunny /'sʌni/ *8, 44*
suntan (get a suntan) /'sʌntæn/ *92*
suntan lotion /'sʌntæn ˌləʊʃən/ *92*
superb /su:'pɜ:b/ *76*
supermarket /'su:pəˌmɑ:kɪt/ *62*
support (a team) /sə'pɔ:t/ *75*
sure (= of course) /ʃʊə/ *17*
surgeon /'sɜ:dʒən/ *70*
surgery /'sɜ:dʒəri/ *70*
surname /'sɜ:neɪm/ *51, 87*
surprised (at/by) /sə'praɪzd/ *14*
surprising/surprised /sə'praɪzɪŋ/ /sə'praɪzd/ *36*

surrounded (by) /sə'raʊndɪd/ *66*
survival /sə'vaɪvəl/ *88*
survive /sə'vaɪv/ *88*
swap places /ˌswɒp 'pleɪsɪz/ *5*
sweet /swiːt/ *64*
sweet wine *12*
swimming (costume/trunks) /'swɪmɪŋ/ *75*
swimming pool *75*
Swiss /swɪs/ *46*
switch off (the light) /swɪtʃ ɒf/ *56*
switch something on/off/over *79*
Switzerland /'swɪtsələnd/ *46*
swollen /'swəʊlən/ *60*
syllable /'sɪləbl/ *4*
sympathetic /ˌsɪmpə'θetɪk/ *49*
symptom /'sɪmtəm/ *59*
synonym /'sɪnənɪm/ *4*

T-shirt /'tiːʃɜːt/ *10*
table tennis /'teɪbl ˌtenɪs/ *74*
tabloid /'tæblɔɪd/ *78*
tailback /'teɪlbæk/ *67*
take (= steal) /teɪk/ *85*
take a break *26*
take a bus/taxi *26, 65, 68*
take a decision *2, 26*
take a photo *2, 26, 91*
take a seat *26*
take a shower *2, 26*
take after somebody *51*
take an exam *26, 82*
take it in turns *13*
take off (= leave the ground) /'teɪk 'ɒf/ *23, 24*
take-off (n) /'teɪkɒf/ *89*
take over (= take control) *71*
take place *86*
take something back (= return it) *23*
take something off (= remove clothes) *23, 24*
take something seriously *75*
take something up (= start a sport/hobby) *75*
take the first/second turning on the left/right *67*
take time (e.g. it takes 20 minutes) *2, 26, 93*
take time off *26*
talks /tɔːks/ *78*
tall /tɔːl/ *48, 95*
tan /tæn/ *92*
tap /tæp/ *55*
tape /teɪp/ *5*
tape recorder /'teɪp rɪˌkɔːdə/ *5*
tartan /'tɑːtən/ *96*
taste (n, v) /teɪst/ *9, 64*
taste (in music) *77*
taste (v) (it tastes strange) *31*
taste (n) (the taste of olives) *31*
taste like (it tastes like chicken) *31*
tasty /'teɪsti/ *64*
tax cut /'tæks kʌt/ *73*
taxi /'tæksi/ *68*
taxi rank *68*
teacher /'tiːtʃə/ *83*
team /tiːm/ *75*
teenager /'tiːnˌeɪdʒə/ *52*
telephone directory /'telɪfəʊn dɪˌrektəri/ *80*
television commercial /'telɪvɪʒən kə'mɜːʃəl/ *79*
television/TV /'telɪvɪʒən/ /ˌtiː'viː/ *79*
tell (somebody + inf) /tel/ *35*
tell (somebody + wh- word) *35*
tell a joke *12, 47*
tell a story *12*
tell the truth *12*
telly/TV /'teli/ /ˌtiː'viː/ *100*
temperature (weather) /'temprətʃə/ *44*
temperature (body) *59*
temple /'templ/ *91*
ten-minute walk /ˌtenmɪnɪt 'wɔːk/ *11*
ten-pound note /ˌtenpaʊnd 'nəʊt/ *58*
ten-year-old (boy/girl) /'tenjɪərəʊld/ *11*
tend to /tend tuː/ *46*
tennis /'tenɪs/ *74*
tense /tens/ *49*
tent /tent/ *92*
term /tɜːm/ *82*
terminal building /'tɜːmɪnəl bɪldɪŋ/ *89*
terrible pain /'terəbl peɪn/ *59*
terribly (sorry) (to bother you) /'terəbli/ *12*
terrific /tə'rɪfɪk/ *36, 99*
terrifying/terrified /'terəfaɪɪŋ/ /'terəfaɪd/ *36*
terrorism /'terərɪzəm/ *88*
terrorist /'terərɪst/ *88*
text message /'tekst ˌmesɪdʒ/ *80*
thank you /'θæŋk juː/ *22*
thank you very much *16*
thanks (a lot) /θæŋks/ *16*
that sort of thing *19, 98*
that sounds interesting/wonderful/terrible *17, 21*
that's a good idea *17*
that's great/brilliant/dreadful *21*
that's OK *16*
that's to say (i.e.) *100*
that's very kind of you *16*
the other day *93*
the press *78*
theft /θeft/ *85*
then /ðen/ *39*
therefore /'ðeəfɔː/ *42*
there's something wrong with ... *57, 90*
these days /'ðiːz deɪz/ *93*
thick (= stupid) /θɪk/ *99*
thick fog *44*
thief /θiːf/ *85*
thigh /θaɪ/ *47*
thin /θɪn/ *48*
thing(s) /θɪŋz/ *98*
thing (best/worst thing about ...) /θɪŋ/ *65, 66*
things (are going well) *98*
things got worse *57*
things like that *19, 98*
think (I think .../I don't think ...) /θɪŋk/ *18*
thinking (of going/doing) /ˌθɪŋkɪŋ/ *14*
third(ly) /'θɜːdli/ *39*
thirsty (be thirsty) /'θɜːsti/ *25*
though /ðəʊ/ *40*
thoughtful /'θɔːtfəl/ *8*
thousand /'θaʊzənd/ *94*
three-quarters /ˌθriː'kwɔːtəz/ *94*
thriller /'θrɪlə/ *76*
through /θruː/ *37*
throw (something at somebody/to somebody) /θrəʊ/ *14, 74*
throw something away *24, 88*
thumb /θʌm/ *2, 47*
thunder and lightning /ˌθʌndə ən 'laɪtnɪŋ/ *44*
thunderstorm /'θʌndəstɔːm/ *44*
thus /ðʌs/ *99*
tick /tɪk/ *3*
tidy /'taɪdi/ *56*
tie /taɪ/ *61*
tiger /'taɪgə/ *45*
tights /taɪts/ *61*
till /tɪl/ *62*
time difference /'taɪm ˌdɪfərəns/ *43*
(It's) time to go *30*

times (= multiplied by) /taɪmz/ *94*
timetable /'taɪm,teɪbl/ *82*
tin (of fruit) /tɪn/ *32*
tin opener /'tɪn ,əʊpənə/ *10*
tiny /'taɪni/ *3*, *36*, *54*
tip (money) /tɪp/ *68*, *90*
tired (of something) /'taɪəd/ *14*
tiring/tired /taɪərɪŋ/ /taɪəd/ *36*
toast /təʊst/ *33*
toddler /'tɒdlə/ *52*
toe /təʊ/ *47*
toilet /'tɔɪlɪt/ *56*
tomato /tə'mɑ:təʊ/ *63*
too (too big/small) /tu:/ *61*
too (= as well) *40*
toothache /'tu:θeɪk/ *10*, *59*
toothbrush /'tu:θbrʌʃ/ *10*
toothpaste /'tu:θpeɪst/ *10*
toothpick /'tu:θpɪk/ *64*
top (= clothes) /tɒp/ *61*
totally disagree /,təʊtəli ,dɪsə'gri:/ *18*
touch (don't touch those) /tʌtʃ/ *31*
tough (punishment) /tʌf/ *85*
touristy /'tʊərɪsti/ *91*
towards /tə'wɔ:dz/ *37*
towel /'taʊəl/ *56*, *92*
towel rail /'taʊəl ,reɪl/ *56*
tower (computer) /'təʊə/ *81*
toys /tɔɪz/ *62*
track (favourite track) /træk/ *77*
tractor /'træktə/ 66
traffic congestion /'træfɪk kən,dʒestʃən/ 65
traffic jam /'træfɪk ,dʒæm/ *10*
traffic light(s) /'træfɪk ,laɪts/ *10*, *67*
train /treɪn/ *68*
trainee /,treɪ'ni:/ *71*
trainer (= job) /'treɪnə/ *71*
trainers /'treɪnəz/ *33*, *74*
training (course) /'treɪnɪŋ/ *71*
transitive verb /,trænsətɪv 'vɜ:b/ *4*
translate something into (e.g. Spanish) /trænz,leɪt/ *14*
translator /trænz'leɪtə/ *7*
travel agent /'trævəl ,eɪdʒənt/ *10*
treat (v) /tri:t/ *70*
tree /tri:/ 66
trend /trend/ *73*
trial /traɪəl/ *84*
triangle /'traɪæŋgl/ *96*
triangular /traɪ'æŋgjələ/ *96*
try something on /,traɪ/ *61*
tube (of toothpaste) /tju:b/ *32*
tuition (fees) /tju'ɪʃən/ *83*
Turkey /'tɜ:ki/ *46*
Turkish /'tɜ:kɪʃ/ *46*
turn (left/right) /tɜ:n/ *67*
turn something on/off (e.g. TV/radio) *24*, *55*, *79*
turn something up/down (= increase/reduce volume) *5*, *79*
turn something/somebody down (= reject) *24*
turning (the first turning) /'tɜ:nɪŋ/ *67*
turnover /'tɜ:n,əʊvə/ *73*
turquoise /'tɜ:kwɑ:z/ *96*
twin room /,twɪn 'ru:m/ *90*
twins /twɪnz/ *51*
twist (an ankle) /twɪst/ *60*
type (v) /taɪp/ 72

ugly /'ʌgli/ *2*, *48*
umpire /'ʌmpaɪə/ *74*
UN (United Nations) /,ju:'en/ *100*
unable /ʌn'eɪbl/ 6, 99
unbreakable /ʌn'breɪkəbl/ *8*
uncle /'ʌŋkl/ *51*
unconscious /ʌn'kɒnʃəs/ *60*
uncountable (noun) /ʌn'kaʊntəbl/ *4*
under /'ʌndə/ *37*
under somebody (under their authority) *71*
undergraduate /,ʌndə'grædʒuət/ *83*
underneath /,ʌndə'ni:θ/ *87*
undo (your jacket) /ʌn'du:/ *61*
unemployed /,ʌnɪm'plɔɪd/ 6, *71*
unfriendly /ʌn'frendli/ 6, *49*
unhappy /ʌn'hæpi/ 6
United States (the United States of America) /ju:,naɪtɪd 'steɪts/ *46*
university /,ju:nɪ'vɜ:səti/ *83*
unkind /ʌn'kaɪnd/ 6, *49*
unless /ən'les/ *42*
unlike /ʌn'laɪk/ *41*
unlock /ʌn'lɒk/ 6
unnecessary /ʌn'nesəsəri/ 6
unpack (my suitcase) /ʌn'pæk/ 6
unpleasant /ʌn'plezənt/ 6, *49*
unreliable /,ʌnrɪ'laɪəbl/ *49*
unsuitable /ʌn'su:təbl/ *8*
untidy /ʌn'taɪdi/ 6, *56*
until /ən'tɪl/ *93*
unusual /ʌn'ju:ʒəl/ 6
up /ʌp/ *37*
upright position /'ʌpraɪt pə,zɪʃən/ *89*
upset (get upset) /'ʌpset/ *50*
urban (area) /'ɜ:bən/ 66
USA /,ju:es'eɪ/ *100*
useful /'ju:sfəl/ *8*
useless /'ju:sləs/ *8*
user-friendly /,ju:zə'frendli/ *81*

V-neck /,vi:'nek/ *61*
vacuum cleaner (hoover) /'vækju:m ,kli:nə/ *56*
vague (idea) /veɪg/ *98*
valley /'væli/ 66
valuables /'væljuəblz/ *85*
value /'vælju:/ *58*
van /væn/ *68*
various /'veəriəs/ *92*
vase /vɑ:z/ *32*, *55*
VAT (value added tax) /,vi:eɪ'ti:/ *100*
veal /vi:l/ *63*
vegetarian /,vedʒɪ'teəriən/ *63*
vehicle /'vɪəkl/ *68*
verb /vɜ:b/ *4*
very /'veri/ *38*
vest /vest/ *75*
vet /vet/ *70*, *100*
video (n) /'vɪdiəʊ/ *5*
video a programme /,vɪdiəʊ ə 'prəʊgræm/ *5*
video recorder /'vɪdiəʊ rɪ,kɔ:də/ *55*
view /vju:/ *54*
village /'vɪlɪdʒ/ 66
vinegar /'vɪnɪgə/ *63*, *64*
violent /'vaɪələnt/ *76*
violin /,vaɪə'lɪn/ *77*
violinist /vaɪə'lɪnɪst/ *77*
virus (illness) /'vaɪrəs/ *59*
virus (computer) *81*
visa /'vi:zə/ *87*
vitally important /'vaɪtəli ɪm'pɔ:rtənt/ *12*
vocational training /və'keɪʃənəl treɪnɪŋ/ *82*
volcanic eruption /vɒl,kænɪk ɪ'rʌpʃən/ *43*
volcano /vɒl'keɪnəʊ/ *43*
volleyball /'vɒlibɔ:l/ *74*
vomit /'vɒmɪt/ *59*
vote (for) /vəʊt/ *86*

waist /weɪst/ *47*
wait (for something/somebody) /weɪt/ *14*
wait in a queue *9*
waiter/waitress /'weɪtə/ /'weɪtrəs/ *90*
waiting room /'weɪtɪŋ ,ru:m/ *10*

wake up /ˌweɪk 'ʌp/ 23, 24, 53
want (somebody + inf) /wɒnt/ 35
want (+ inf) 34
war /wɔ:/ 88
war film 76
wardrobe /'wɔ:drəʊb/ 56
warn (somebody + inf) /wɔ:n/ 35
warning /'wɔ:nɪŋ/ 97
wash (my hair) /wɒʃ/ 53
washable /'wɒʃəbl/ 8
washbasin /'wɒʃˌbeɪsən/ 56
washing (do the washing) /'wɒʃɪŋ/ 53, 56
washing machine /'wɒʃɪŋ məˌʃi:n/ 10, 55, 56
washing-up (do the washing-up) /ˌwɒʃɪŋ'ʌp/ 53, 56
waste (v) /weɪst/ 58
waste (n, v) 88
waste time/money 12
wastepaper basket /ˌweɪs'peɪpə ˌbɑ:skɪt/ 72
watch (versus see versus look at) /wɒtʃ/ 31
wave (goodbye) /weɪv/ 50
waves /weɪvz/ 92
wavy hair /'weɪvi heə/ 48
we could ... /wi: ˌkʊd/ 17
weak (*opp* strong) /wi:k/ 7
weak coffee 12
weakness (the main weakness) /'wi:knəs/ 7
weapon /'wepən/ 60
weather /'weðə/ 2
website /'websaɪt/ 81
weekly /'wi:kli/ 78
weigh (your luggage) /weɪ/ 89
weigh oneself 33
weight /weɪt/ 48
well aware of the problem 12
well done /ˌwel 'dʌn/ 22
well-behaved /ˌwelbɪ'heɪvd/ 11
well-done (meat) /ˌwel'dʌn/ 64
well-equipped /ˌwelɪ'kwɪpt/ 11
well-known /ˌwel'nəʊn/ 11
well-off /ˌwel'ɒf/ 11, 58
well-organised /ˌwel'ɔ:gənaɪzd/ 11
well-paid /ˌwel'peɪd/ 11
well-written /ˌwel'rɪtən/ 11
wet weather /wet 'weðə/ 12
whale /weɪl/ 45
What about ...? 17
What are you doing at the moment? 20
What are you doing this evening? 20
What do you do for a living? 69
What do you do? 20, 69
What do you think about ...? 18
What do you think of ...? 18
What does (it) stand for? 100
What does he/she look like? 48
What does X mean? 5
What sort/kind of ...? 20
What time do you have breakfast? 25
What time's (the film) on? 79
whatever you like 21
What's (the flat) like? 20
what's more 40
What's on? 79
What's the difference between X and Y? 5
What's the length/width of ...? 95
What's the matter? 20
What's up? 13, 99
What's your address/phone number? 20
What's your job? 69
when /wen/ 39
whenever you like 21
Where are you from? 20
Where do you come from? 20
Whereabouts? 20
whereas /weə'ræz/ 40
wherever you like 21
while /waɪl/ 39
whisper (n, v) /'wɪspə/ 50
whistle (n) /'wɪsl/ 74
(the) whole page/book 1
Who's calling? (on the phone) 80
Why don't we ...? 17
wide /waɪd/ 95
wide awake /ˌwaɪd ə'weɪk/ 12
wide range /ˌwaɪd 'reɪndʒ/ 65
widow /'wɪdəʊ/ 51
widower /'wɪdəʊə/ 51
width /wɪtθ/ 95
win /wɪn/ 74
wind /wɪnd/ 44
window shopping /'wɪndəʊ ˌʃɒpɪŋ/ 62
windsurfing /'wɪnsɜ:fɪŋ/ 92
windy /'wɪndi/ 44
wine glass /'waɪn glɑ:s/ 90
wine list 90
winner /'wɪnə/ 74
witness (n) /'wɪtnəs/ 84, 85
woods /wʊdz/ 66
work (in a bank) /wɜ:k/ 69
work (for a company) 69
work (= function) (it isn't working) 57, 72
work at a computer 72
work something out (= calculate) 94
working hours /'wɜ:kɪŋ ˌaʊəz/ 69
world /wɜ:ld/ 43, 86
worldwide /ˌwɜ:ld'waɪd/ 81
worry about something/somebody /'wʌri əˌbaʊt/ 14
worth (+ -*ing*) /wɜ:θ/ 58, 91
worth a visit 91
would rather (I'd rather ...) /wʊd 'rɑ:ðə/ 17, 19
Would you like to ...? 17
wound (n, v) /wu:nd/ 60
wrist /rɪst/ 2, 47
write something down 5
writing paper /'raɪtɪŋ ˌpeɪpə/ 10
wrong number /ˌrɒŋ 'nʌmbə/ 80
WWW (World Wide Web) /ˌdʌblju:dʌblju:'dʌblju:/ 100

yacht /jɒt/ 92
yawn /jɔ:n/ 47
you get (= it exists) 66

zebra /'zebrə/ 45
zero /'zɪərəʊ/ 44, 94
zoo /zu:/ 45

Acknowledgements

For this new edition I am particularly grateful to lexicographer Julie Moore. Working with the *Cambridge International Corpus* of written and spoken English, she has provided information and insights which have been invaluable in guiding lexical selection and example sentences in the book.

A number of people have reviewed different parts of the manuscript and given me extremely useful feedback. My thanks to the following reviewers:
Miles Craven, Cambridge, UK
Eryl Griffiths, Cambridge, UK
Agnieska Lenko-Szymanska, Milanowek, Poland
Chris Nicol, Cannes, France
Jeanine Saelens, Heule, Belgium
Olga Vinogradova, Moscow, Russia

My editor Alison Silver has been wonderful. She has worked with great professionalism on a long and intricate manuscript, and the final product is immeasurably improved as a result of her contribution. My thanks to Ruth Carim for her proof-reading and comments on the final manuscript.

Finally, I would like to thank Oxford Designers & Illustrators for their elegant design of this new edition, and Nóirín Burke at Cambridge University Press. Nóirín has guided the project from its infancy, and coordinated the various stages of both editions with calm efficiency.

Stuart Redman

London, 2002

The author and publishers would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce photographs and other illustrative material:

p. 158 newspaper mast heads: Daily Mirror © Mirror Syndication International, The Guardian © Guardian Newspapers Limited 2002, The Sun © N I Syndication Limited, London, 3 December 2002, The Independent © Independent Newspapers (UK) Limited, The Times © N I Syndication Limited, London, 3 December 2002, Daily Mail by permission of Atlantic Syndication; p. 182 Corbis (©Macduff Everton); p. 184 Objectif Photos.

Illustrations by Sophie Joyce, Nick Davies, David Mostyn and Oxford Designers & Illustrators.

English Vocabulary in Use

Second Edition

Pre-intermediate & intermediate

English Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate & intermediate is primarily designed as a self-study reference and practice text but it can also be used for classroom work. This second edition has been fully revised and updated to ensure that the vocabulary presented is current and relevant.

English Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate & intermediate

- 100 easy-to-use units: vocabulary items are presented and explained on left-hand pages with a range of follow-up activities on right-hand pages.
- Presents and explains new words in context and shows learners how to use them and how to work out rules for using them.
- Based on a corpus of real written and spoken language to ensure the vocabulary is relevant and up-to-date.
- Contains a comprehensive, student-friendly answer key.
- Includes a detailed index with phonemic transcriptions to help with the pronunciation of difficult vocabulary.
- Is beautifully illustrated in full colour.

CAMBRIDGE INTERNATIONAL CORPUS

The Cambridge International Corpus (CIC) is a collection of over 700 million words of real spoken and written English. The texts are stored in a database that can be searched to see how English is used. The CIC also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, a unique collection of over 50,000 exam papers from Cambridge ESOL. It shows real mistakes students make and highlights the parts of English which cause problems for students.

www.cambridge.org/corpus

REAL ENGLISH GUARANTEE

Also available:

in Use

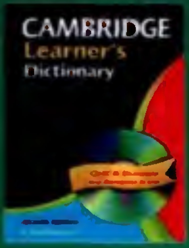

English
Vocabulary in Use
Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

Test Your
English
Vocabulary in
Stuart Redman

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org

Eng Vocab In Use, Pre-Intermediate & Intermediate
9 780521 011716

ISBN 0-521-01171-X
9 780521 011716

English Vocabulary in Use

elementary

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

60 units of vocabulary reference and practice

self-study and classroom use

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

English Vocabulary in Use

elementary

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

PUBLISHED BY THE PRESS SYNDICATE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE
The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge, United Kingdom

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, UK www.cup.cam.ac.uk
40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011–4211, USA www.cup.org
10 Stamford Road, Oakleigh, Melbourne 3166, Australia
Ruiz de Alarcón 13, 28014 Madrid, Spain

© Cambridge University Press 1999

This book is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without
the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1999
Reprinted 1999

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

Typeface (see design) *System* (see design) [UPH]

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN 0 521 599571 (with answers)
ISBN 0 521 656257 (without answers)

ЭЛЕКТРОННАЯ БИБЛИОТЕКА
Прочитал? Удали!
LIBRUS.RU

Contents

Acknowledgements 3
Introduction 4

Learner training

1 Talking about language (noun, verb, plural, etc.)
2 Learning vocabulary (collocation, pictures and diagrams)

Everyday verbs

3 Have/had/had (have breakfast, have time)
4 Go/went/gone (go away, go shopping)
5 Do/did/done (do an exercise, do your best)
6 Make/made/made (make coffee, make a mistake)
7 Come/came/come (come in, come from)
8 Take/took/taken (take the bus, take a photo)
9 Bring/brought/brought (bring sth. here, bring back)
10 Get/got/got (get a job, get tired)
11 Phrasal verbs (put on, turn down)
12 Every day things (watch TV, wash clothes)
13 Talking (say, tell)
14 Moving (walk, carry)

Words and grammar

15 Conjunctions and connecting words (because, only)
16 Time words (1): days, months and seasons (Monday, July, winter)
17 Time words (2) (next year, often)
18 Places (middle, front, abroad)
19 Manner (fast, loud)
20 Irregular verbs (run, drink)
21 Common uncountable words (bread, money)
22 Common adjectives: good and bad things (nice, awful)
23 Common adjectives: people (happy, horrible)
24 Words and prepositions (wait for, good at)
25 Prefixes (impossible, ex-president)
26 Suffixes (useful, useless)
27 Words you may confuse (quiet/quite; lend/borrow)

People

28 Birth, marriage and death (birthday, married)
29 The family (mother, uncle)
30 Parts of the body (head, foot)
31 Clothes (hat, shirt)
32 Describing people (tall, dark, handsome)
33 Health and illness (headache, heart attack)
34 Feelings (love, tired)
35 Greetings and other useful phrases (Good morning, Happy New Year)

The world

36 Countries, languages and people (America, Chinese, Greek)
37 Weather (cold, rain)
38 In the town (railway station, bank)
39 In the countryside (hill, farm)
40 Animals and pets (horse, giraffe)
41 Travelling (train, map)
42 Notices (No smoking, Out of order)

At home

43 Food and drink (rice, tea)
44 In the kitchen (fridge, glass)
45 In the bedroom and bathroom (wardrobe, shampoo)
46 In the living room (bookshelf, lamp)

School and workplace

47 Jobs (secretary, factory)
48 At school and university (biology, notebook)
49 Communications (phone box, computer)

Leisure

50 Holidays (package holiday, phrase book)
51 Shops and shopping (butcher's, department store)
52 In a hotel (single room, key)
53 Eating out (café, menu)
54 Sports (table tennis, judo)
55 Cinema (western, film star)
56 Leisure at home (gardening, listening to CDs)

Social issues

57 Crime (murder, prison)
58 The media (TV channel, magazine)
59 Everyday problems (untidy, in a bad mood)
60 Global problems (war, strike)

Answer key 126

List of phonetic symbols 157

Index 158

Acknowledgements

We would like to thank Gillian Lazar, Geraldine Mark and Stuart Redman for their invaluable reports on the initial manuscript. We are also grateful to the students and staff at various institutions who assisted in piloting the material in different parts of the world: Hülya Akgün, Özel Gökdil Lisesi, Istanbul, Turkey; Monika Barczyk, Sosnowiec, Poland; Anna Cerna, The Bell School, Prague, Czech Republic; Leigh Fergus, Paris, France; Sharon Hartle, Verona, Italy; Gary Hicks and David Parry, Embassy Language and Training Centre, Hove, England; Grazyna Kanska, Warsaw, Poland; Stephanie Lott, St. John's–Bell Language Centre, Bangkok, Thailand; Elena Marinina, Moscow State University, Moscow, Russia; Dr Miroslawa Modrzewska, Gdansk, Poland; Dr Ramzy Radwan, Cairo, Egypt; M G Rogers, English One, Seville, Spain; Margot Teschendorf, Melbourne, Australia.

Many thanks are due to Nóirín Burke of Cambridge University Press, who guided this book through the editorial process. She set the deadlines that motivated us to get the book done, and chased us when we lagged behind. Geraldine Mark, as usual, proved to be the most professional of editors when the typescript passed into her hands and made many useful comments that have improved the book. Ellen Shaw, who worked on the American edition of the upper-intermediate *English Vocabulary in Use*, has continued to offer sound advice which we hope is reflected at this level. Our domestic partners must always get a special thank-you for being so tolerant of the long hours we spend away from them in the company of our computer keyboards. Whatever faults and shortcomings remain in the book must be laid entirely at our door.

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

Cambridge, January 1998

Introduction

To the student

This book has been written to help you learn new vocabulary. You already know hundreds of English words, but to speak and write English in normal situations you need at least 1–2,000 words. In this book, there are around 1,250 new words and phrases for you to learn. You will find them on the left-hand page of each unit. Every new word or phrase is used in a sentence, or in a conversation, or has a picture with it, or has some explanation of what it means. On the right-hand page there are exercises and other activities to help you practise using the words and to help you to remember them. The book has been written so that you can use it yourself, without a teacher. You can do the units in any order you like, but we believe it is a good idea if you do Units 1 and 2 first, as they will help you to work with the rest of the book in the best possible way.

The key at the end of the book is for you to check your answers to the exercises after you do them. The key sometimes has more than one answer. This is because often there is not just one correct way of saying something. The key also has possible answers for most of the exercises which are open-ended, or where you are asked to talk about yourself.

The index at the end of the book has all the important words and phrases from the left-hand pages. The index also tells you how to pronounce words. There is a table of phonetic symbols to help you understand the pronunciation on page 157.

You should also have a dictionary with you when you use the book. This is because sometimes you may want to check the meaning of something, or find a word in your own language to help you remember the English word. Sometimes, you will also need a dictionary for the exercises; we tell you when this is so.

To learn a lot of vocabulary, you have to do two things:

1 Study each unit of the book carefully and do all the exercises. Check your answers in the key. Repeat the units after a month, and then again after three months, and see how much you have learnt and how much you have forgotten. Repeating work is very important.

2 Develop ways of your own to study and learn new words and phrases which are not in this book. For example, every time you see or hear an interesting phrase, write it in a notebook, and write who said it or wrote it, and in what situation, as well as what it means. Here is an interesting example:

   ready: (man at the door of a theatre, to all the people waiting) 'Have your tickets ready please!' = have your ticket in your hand.

   Making notes of the situations words are used in will help you to remember them and to use them at the right moment.

We hope you like this book. When you have finished it, you can go to the next book in the series, *English Vocabulary in Use: pre-intermediate and intermediate*, and after that, to the higher level, *English Vocabulary in Use: upper-intermediate and advanced.*

To the teacher

This book can be used in class or as a self-study book. It is intended to take learners from a very basic level of vocabulary to a level where they can use around 2,000 words and phrases. The vocabulary has been chosen for its usefulness in everyday situations, and the authors consulted a written and spoken corpus of present-day English to help them decide on the words and phrases to be included. The new vocabulary (on average 20–25 items per unit) is presented with illustrations and explanations on the left-hand page, and there are exercises and activities on the right-hand page. There is a key and an index with pronunciation for all the key vocabulary.

The book focuses not just on single words, but on useful phrases and collocations. For example, difficult teaching points such as the difference between **do** and **make**, are dealt with through collocation (we **do** our homework, but we **make** mistakes), and useful phrases (e.g. **come along**, in the unit on **come**) are presented.

The book is organised around everyday topics, but also has units devoted to core verbs such as **get** and **bring/take**, as well as units concerned with ways of learning vocabulary. Typical errors are indicated where appropriate, and the most typical meanings and uses are focused on for each key item. The units in the book can be used in any order you like, but we would advise doing the initial units on learning vocabulary (Units 1 and 2) first, as these lay the foundations for the rest of the book.

The right-hand pages offer a variety of different types of activities, some traditional ones such as gap-filling, but also more open-ended ones and personalised activities which enable learners to talk about their own lives. Although the activities and exercises are designed for self-study, they can be easily adapted for pair-work, group-work or whole-class activities in the usual way. The key sometimes gives alternative answers to the exercises, and also usually gives possible model answers for the more personalised ones.

When the learners have worked through a group of units, it is a good idea to repeat some of the work (for example, the exercises) and to expand on the meaning and use of key words and phrases by extra discussion in class, and find other examples of the key items in other texts and situations. This can be done at intervals of one to three months after first working on a unit. This is important, since it is usually the case that a learner needs five to seven exposures to a word or phrase before they can really know it, and no single book can do enough to ensure that words are always learnt first time.

When your students have finished all the units in this book, they will be ready to move on to the two higher level books in this series: *English Vocabulary in Use: pre-intermediate and intermediate*, by Stuart Redman, and after that, to the higher level, *English Vocabulary in Use: upper-intermediate and advanced*, by the same authors as this book.

We hope you enjoy using the book.

1 Talking about language

A Language words

This book uses some grammar words in English.

grammar word	*meaning*	*example*	*in your language*
noun	a person or thing	book, girl, pen	
verb	something we do	do, read, write	
adjective	describes a person or thing	good, bad, happy, long	
adverb	describes a verb	slowly, badly	
preposition	a little word used before a noun or pronoun	in, on, by, at	
singular	just one	book, house	
plural	more than one	books, houses	
phrase	a group of words (*not* a complete sentence)	in a house, at home, an old man	
sentence	a complete idea in writing, beginning with a capital letter and ending with a full stop	The man went into the room and closed the door.	
paragraph	a short part of a text (one or more sentences) beginning on a new line	This book has 60 units. Each unit has 2 pages.	
dialogue	a conversation between two people	Ann: How's Jo? Bill: OK, thanks.	
question	a set of words that begin with a capital letter and end with a question mark	Are you English? Do you like school?	
answer	reply to a question	Yes, I am. No, I don't.	

B The language of the exercises in this book

Here are some of the instructions which we often use for the exercises.

1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right. Draw lines.
orange ice-cream
chocolate juice
2 Fill the gaps in the sentence.
Jack is ....at...... home today.
3 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.
Jack is ~~in~~ home today. Jack is at home today.
4 Complete the sentence for yourself.
I go to work by ....bus.....
5 Add another example.
cat, dog, horse ...cow...

Exercises

1.1 Write the grammar words in A opposite in your own language.

1.2 Look at B opposite. Write the exercise instructions in your own language.

1.3 Write these words in the correct column.

book speak good word house have
write new man right blue say

noun	*verb*	*adjective*
book		

1.4 Think of four examples of prepositions.

……………………………………………………………………………………

1.5 Are these phrases, sentences or questions?

1 in the park phrase
2 Do you speak English?
3 a black cat
4 She's writing a book.
5 What's your name?
6 I like English.

1.6 Answer these questions.

1 What is the plural of **book**?
2 What is the singular of **men**?
3 Is **from** a verb?
4 Is **cat** an adjective?
5 Is **'Jane loves Hari.'** a phrase?
6 Is **bad** an adverb?

1.7 Follow these instructions.

1 Fill the gap in the question. What ……is…. your name?
2 Add another example of a colour. black, green, blue …
3 Correct these words. speek, inglish
4 Answer this question. Is there a river in your town?
5 Match the verbs on the left with the nouns on the right. Draw lines.
make homework
do a shower
have a mistake

2 Learning vocabulary

Tip: Keep a vocabulary notebook. Write the words you learn from this book in it. Use a good dictionary. Ask your teacher to recommend one. You will need it for some exercises in this book.

Here are some ways of writing down words you want to learn.

A Write down words that go together (collocations)

You **do the exercises** in this book. Sometimes, you may **make mistakes** in your English. In your vocabulary book, write down: **do an exercise** and **make a mistake**.

When words are used together like this, we call it a **collocation**.

You go **by train**, but **on foot** (= walking)	preposition + noun
Some people are **good at** languages [NOT good ~~in~~]	adjective + preposition
I saw a very **tall man** [NOT ~~high~~ man]	adjective + noun

Tip: Always write down collocations when you learn a new word.

B Learn words in families

word family	*some words in the family*
temperature	**hot, warm, cool, cold**
travel	**ticket, passport, suitcase**

Tip: Make a page for every different word family in your vocabulary notebook.

C Pictures and diagrams

Draw pictures. For example: **car**

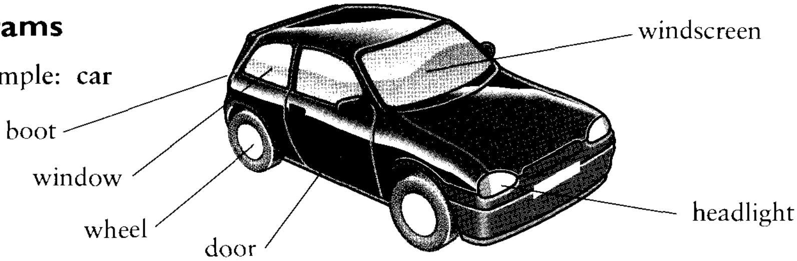

Draw diagrams like this one. Put more words in as you learn them.

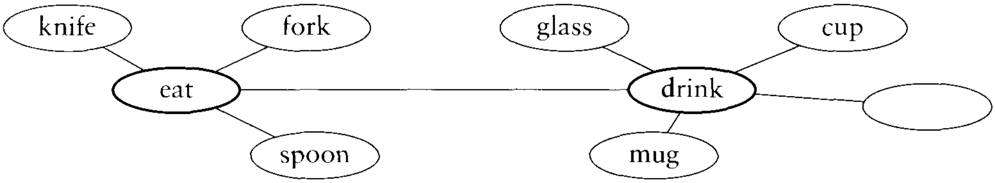

Tip: When you can, use pictures and diagrams.
One more tip: Look at the words you have written down again and again and again!

Exercises

2.1 Look at Unit 3 of this book. How many more collocations for *have* could you write in your vocabulary notebook?

have a party, a shower ....

2.2 Which words can go with *weather*? Use a dictionary.

wet high big dry warm happy cool rainy dark

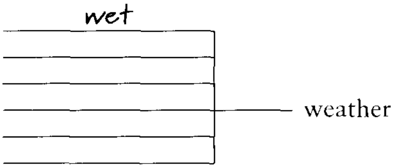

2.3 There are two word families here. What are they? Put them in the table. Use a dictionary.

school rain sun teacher cloud exam snow ice student

name of family	*words in family*

2.4 Draw simple pictures to help you remember these words, as in the example.

Example: to cry

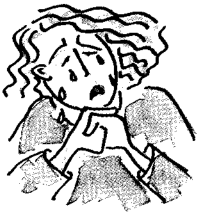

1 a plane lands
2 sunny weather
3 under the table

2.5 Put words in the empty circles.

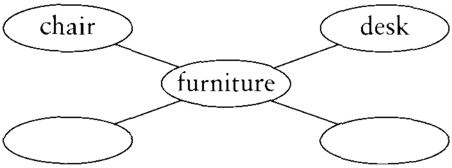

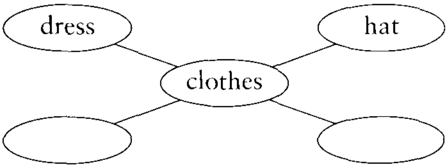

Tip: Now make sure you have started a vocabulary notebook before you do the other units in this book.

3 Have/had/had

A What can you have?

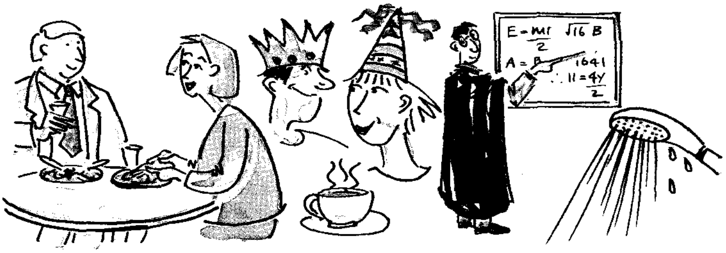

You can ...
1 **have** lunch
2 **have** a party
3 **have** a lesson
4 **have** a cup of tea/coffee
5 **have** a shower

B Other things you can have

	example	*other things*			
1	lunch	dinner	breakfast	a meal	something to eat
2	a party	a meeting	a competition	a game (of football/chess/cards)	
3	a lesson	an exam	homework	an appointment (with the dentist)	
4	tea/coffee	a drink	a sandwich	an ice-cream	some cheese
5	a shower	a bath	a swim	a sauna	

C Expressions with have

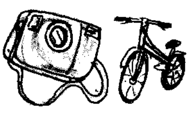

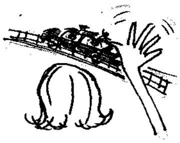

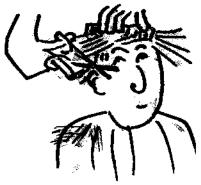

Is that your camera? Can I **have a look?**
(= look at it)
Is that your bicycle? Can I **have a go?** (= ride it)
Goodbye! **Have a good journey!** (= somebody is going away)
Do you **have a moment?** (= have some time) Can **I have a word with you?** (= speak to you)
We always **have a good time** in our English lessons (= fun; we enjoy them)
I'm going to **have my hair cut.** See you later. Can you meet me at the hairdresser's?
I want to learn to ski but I **don't have the time.**

D Have + got (speaking/informal) = have (writing/formal)

I've **got** three sisters. **Have** you **got** any brothers and sisters?
My house is big. **It's got** five bedrooms and three bathrooms.
We've **got** ten minutes before the train goes.
Have you **got** a pen?
(*In a shop*) A: Do you sell postcards? B: Yes, but we **haven't got** any at the moment.
I've **got** a problem. Can I have a word with you?
I've **got** a cold / a headache.

E Have to

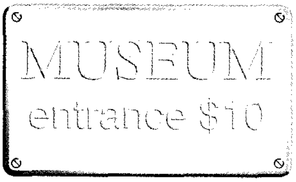

We use **have to** when the situation means you **must** do something.
The museum's not free. You **have to** pay $10 to go in.
All students **have to** do the exam.
I haven't got a car, so I **have to** walk to school every day.

Exercises

3.1 **Fill the gaps in the sentences. Use words from A and B opposite.**

1 I always have .... (and ....) for breakfast.
2 I have an .... with the dentist at 3 o'clock.
3 Do you want to have a game of ....?
4 Jane's having a .... on Saturday. Are you going?
5 Do you want to have a ....? The bathroom's just here.
6 I have an .... tomorrow, so I have to study tonight.
7 We must have a .... to talk about these problems.
8 I'm going to the cafeteria to have a .... Do you want to come?
9 The hotel has a swimming pool, so we can have a .... every day.
10 We can have .... before the film, or we can eat after it.

3.2 **Answer the questions about *yourself.***

1 Have you got any brothers or sisters?
2 What time do you have English lessons?
3 What do you have for lunch?
4 Do you have to go to lessons every day?
5 How many pens have you got with you now?
6 Do you always have a party on your birthday?
7 What do you usually have when you go to a restaurant?

3.3 **Do the crossword.**

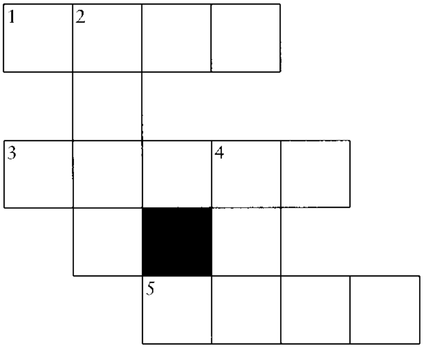

Across
1 You have it in a restaurant.
3 People often have one on their birthday.
5 Do you want to have a .... of tennis?

Down
2 You have it at school or university.
4 If you don't like coffee, you can have ....

3.4 **What do you say?**

1 (*Someone is thirsty*) Why don't you have ....?
2 (*Someone is going away*) Bye! Have a ....!
3 (*Someone sneezes [Atchoo!] and has a red nose*) Oh! have you got a ....?
4 (*Someone has a new camera*) Is that new? Can I have ....?

4 Go/went/gone

A Go

Go means to move from one place to another.

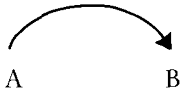

I **go** to work by bike. My brother **goes** by car.
We **went** to Paris last summer.
Shall we **go** to the swimming pool today?

You can go to a place on foot or in some kind of transport.
To make it clear that we are going on foot we can say:
We're **walking** to work this morning.

Is this train **going** to Granada?

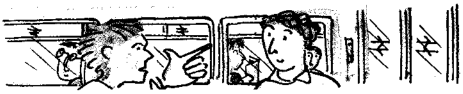

Where **does** this road **go**?

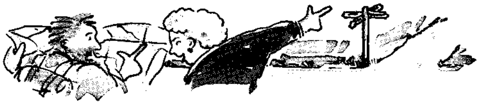

B Go + prepositions

Kim **went in(to)** his room and shut the door.

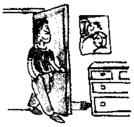

Yuko **went out of** the house and **into** the garden.

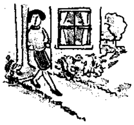

Rani was tired. He **went up** the stairs slowly.

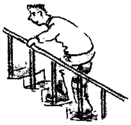

The phone was ringing. She **went down** the stairs quickly.

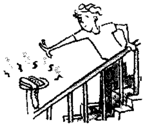

Go **away**.

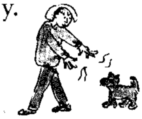

I'm **going back** home this evening.
(See Unit 7.)

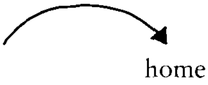

C Go + -ing for activities

Go is often used with **-ing** for different activities.

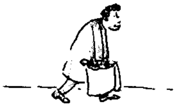

I hate **going shopping**.

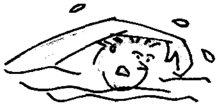

I usually **go swimming** in the morning.

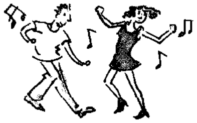

Let's **go dancing**.

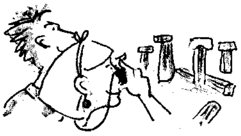

Do you like **going sightseeing** when you are on holiday?

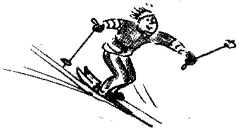

Hans **goes skiing** every winter.

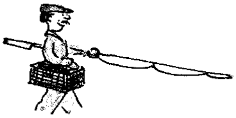

Bob is **going fishing** today.

D Future plans

be going to is often used for plans for the future:

On Saturday Jan is **going to visit** his aunt. On Sunday we're **going to stay** at home. On Monday I'm **going to meet** Sam at the restaurant.

Exercises

4.1 Where are these people going? Follow the lines.

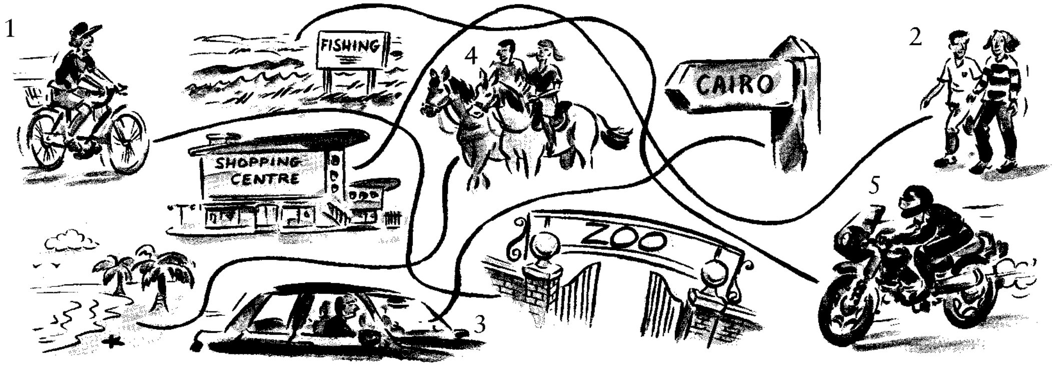

1 Pablo is going to the zoo.
2 Soraya and Mehmet
3 Imran
4 The Patels
5 Natasha

4.2 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1 Please, go ~~in~~ I'm tired. away
2 We're going sightsee today.
3 Jo went down to the top of the hill.
4 Let's go to fish today.
5 She went out off the shop.

4.3 Look at the activities in C opposite. Which do you do on holiday? Write sentences.

I usually go shopping on holiday.

4.4 Write about Alison's plans for next week.

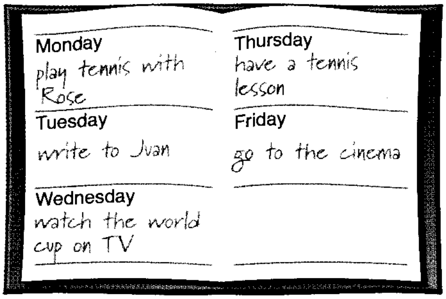

Monday
play tennis with Rose
Tuesday
write to Juan
Wednesday
watch the world cup on TV
Thursday
have a tennis lesson
Friday
go to the cinema

1 On Monday Alison is going to play tennis with Rose.
2 On Tuesday
3 On Wednesday
4 On Thursday
5 On Friday

4.5 Write about where trains, buses and roads go to from your town.

From Cambridge, trains go to London and to Norwich.

4.6 Look in a book in English. What examples of *go* can you find?

5 Do/did/done

A Do as auxiliary

questions	Do you **like** tennis?	**Did** they **like** the film?
short answers	Yes, I **do**.	Yes, they **did**.
	So **does** Sinjit.	So **did** I.
negatives	He **doesn't play** well.	Jo **didn't** see it.

B What are you doing?

Do as a general verb

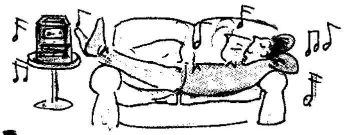

What **do** you **do** to relax?
I listen to music.

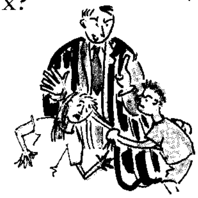

Don't **do** that, Tommy.

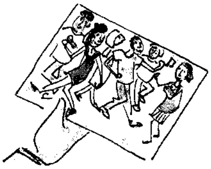

What **are** the people in the picture **doing**?
They're dancing.

C What do you do?

What **do** you **do**? (= What is your job?)
I'm a student. *or* I'm a teacher. *or* I'm an engineer.

What **does** your wife **do**? (= What's your wife's job?)
She's a doctor. *or* She's a secretary. *or* She's a mechanic.

D Do + task

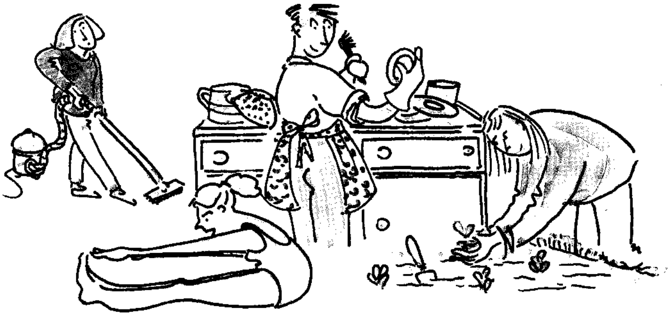

do the housework
do the gardening
do the washing
do the washing-up
do your homework
do some exercises
do business with
do your best

Did you **do the washing** this morning?
No, I'm going to **do** it later.

Our company **does a lot of business with** the USA.

The homework exercise is very difficult – just **do your best**.

Tip: Make a note of any expressions with **do** that you find when you are reading in English.

See Unit 6 for the contrast between **do** and **make**.

Exercises

5.1 Write questions and answers about the people in the picture.

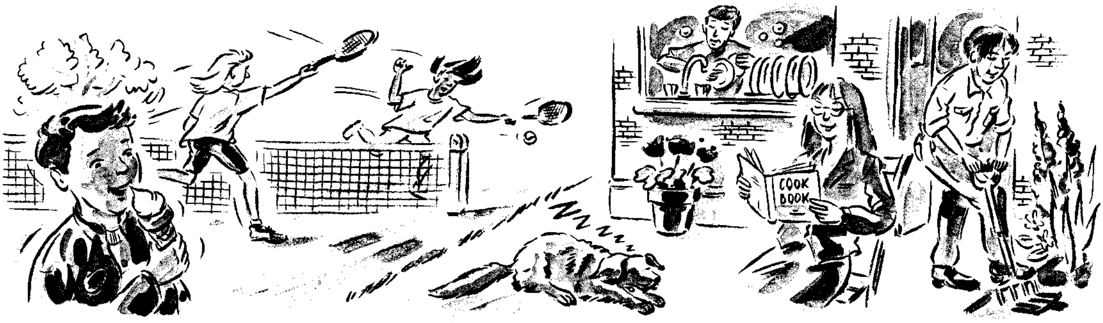

1 (the boy) What is the boy doing? He's eating an ice-cream.
2 (the woman)
3 (the girls)
4 (the man in the house)
5 (the dog)
6 (the man in the garden)

5.2 Write questions and answers about the jobs of the people in the pictures.

1 Lee Atkins

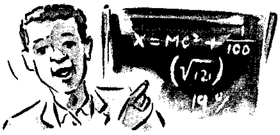

2 Lara Brown

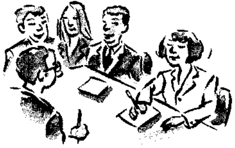

3 Sophie Hicks

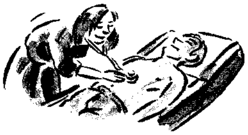

4 Jo Ted

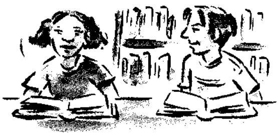

1 What does Lee Atkins do? He's a teacher.
2
3
4

5.3 Write questions about what the people in exercise 5.2 did this morning. Answer the questions using the phrases in the box.

talk to five patients ~~teach 3 lessons~~ write an essay go to a meeting

1 What did Lee Atkins do? He taught three lessons.
2
3
4

5.4 Look at the *do* expressions in D. Write sentences about you or your family and these activities.

I do a lot of housework but I never do the gardening.

5.5 Correct the mistakes in this dialogue.

ANNA: Where did you went on your holidays? To London?
PAVEL: No, we don't go to London this year. We went to Scotland.
ANNA: Do your grandmother lives in Scotland?
PAVEL: No, she don't but my uncle do.

6 Make/made/made

A Make ...

To **make coffee**.

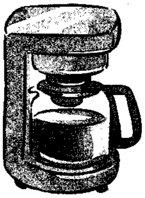

To **make dinner**.

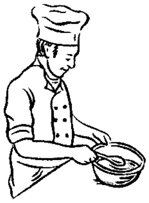

I'll **make some tea/hot chocolate**.
I **make breakfast/lunch/supper** every day. (supper = a meal just before bed)

B Make a ...

The teacher's **making a photocopy**.

He's **making a film/video** of the class.

The children are **making a noise**.

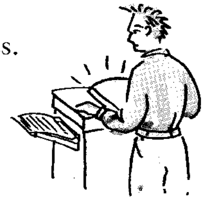

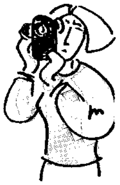

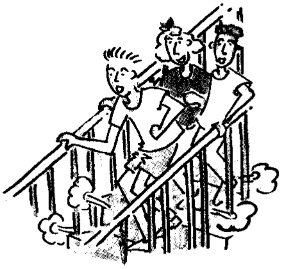

C Don't make mistakes with make!

Can I say ...?	*yes/no*	*Correction*
I **made** a mistake in the exercise.	✓	
I have to **make** my homework.	✗	I have to **do** my homework.
I have to **make** an exam next week.	✗	I have to **take/do** an exam next week.
When I get up I **make** my bed.	✓	
I want to **make** an appointment with the doctor. (= fix a time to see him/her)	✓	
I'd like to **make** a photo of you.	✗	I'd like to **take** a photo of you.
After dinner, I'll help you **make** the dishes.	✗	After dinner I'll help you **do** the dishes.

D It makes me (feel) ...

Going by train always **makes me** (**feel**) tired.

My friend called me stupid. It **made me** (**feel**) angry.

That film **made me** (**feel**) sad.

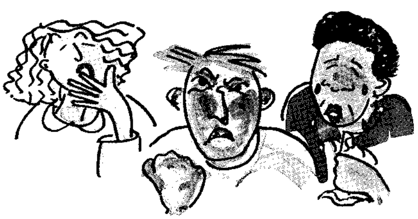

Exercises

6.1 Fill the gaps with *make* or *do*.

1 I always .... a lot of mistakes when I speak English.
2 If I .... my homework every day, my English will get better.
3 Let's go to bed now. We can .... the dishes in the morning.
4 I want to .... an exam in French. Do you know where I can .... one?
5 We always try not to .... a noise after ten o'clock at night.

6.2 Complete the sentences with *make(s)/made me feel.*

1 That film .... sad.
2 Long lessons always .... tired.
3 She was horrible to me; it .... angry.

6.3 What are these people doing? Complete the sentences using *make.*

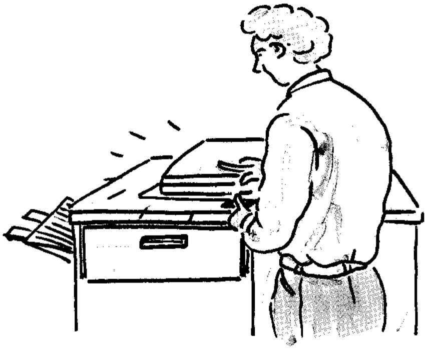

1 He's ....

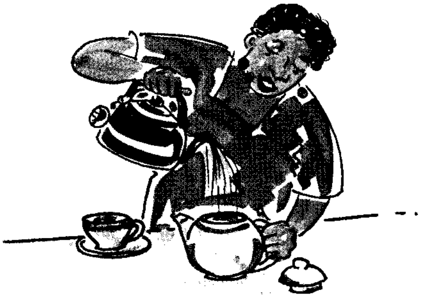

2 She's ....

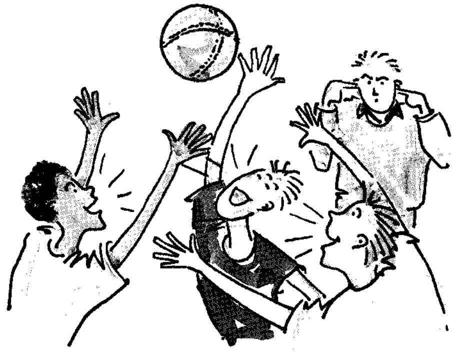

3 The children are ....

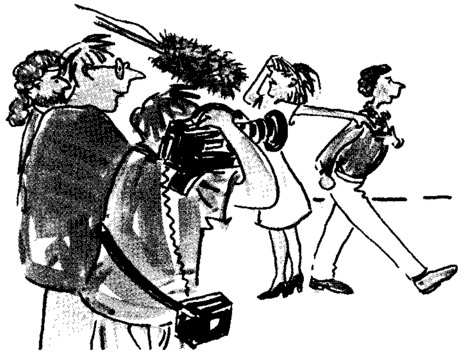

4 They're ....

6.4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences. Look at the example.

1 I have to ~~make~~ my homework. I have to do my homework.
2 Can I make a photo of you?
3 He's 25 but he never makes his own washing. He takes his dirty clothes to his mother's.
4 What do you think, yes or no? We must do a decision today.
5 I have to take an appointment with the doctor. Do you have her phone number?
6 I do mistakes when I speak English.
7 Are you making an exam tomorrow?

7 Come/came/come

Come and **go** are different:

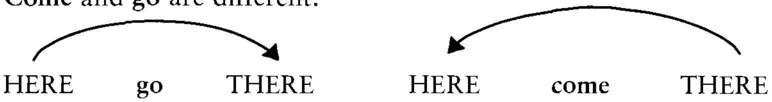
HERE
go
THERE
HERE
come
THERE

A Come in/out

We say '**Come in!**' when someone knocks at the door of a room. Then the person who knocked **comes into** the room.

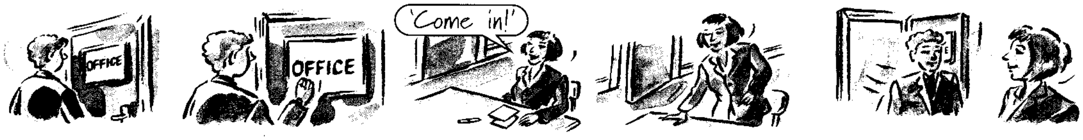
OFFICE
OFFICE
'Come in!'

Come out is often the opposite of **come in**.
A woman **came out of** the shop with two big bags. (I was in the street.)

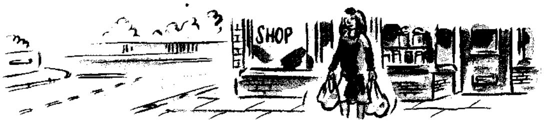

You put your money in and the ticket **comes out of** the machine.

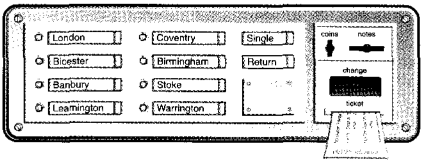
London
Coventry
Single
Bicester
Birmingham
Return
Banbury
Stoke
Leamington
Warrington
coins
notes
change
ticket

B Come back and come home

Come back means 'return to *this place here*'.
She went away for three days. She **came back** yesterday. (She is here again.)

Come back is often used with **from**.
They **came back from** Italy yesterday.

Come home is similar; 'home' is 'here' for the person speaking.

MOTHER: What time did you **come home** last night?
ANNE: Oh, about eleven o'clock.
MOTHER: What! Eleven! That's much too late!

C Other important uses of come

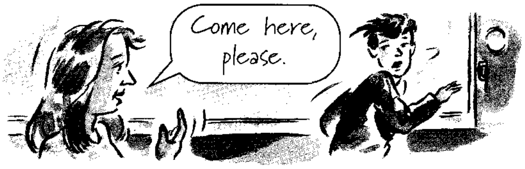
Come here, please.

A: What country do you **come from**?
B: I'm from **Norway**. (*or* I **come from** Norway. *or* I'm Norwegian.)

We're going to a disco tonight. Do you want to **come along**? (= come with us)

Come and see me some time. (= visit me)

Tip: Write down any prepositions you find with **come** every time you see them.

Exercises

7.1 **Fill the gaps in the sentences.**

1 I put money in, but the ticket didn't come ..out..of.... the machine.
2 A: I'm going to Taiwan tomorrow.
B: Oh! When are you coming ....?
A: Two weeks from now.
3 The teacher came .... the classroom and started the lesson.
4 A: Where do you come ....?
B: I'm Brazilian.
5 Come and .... me at five o'clock; we can talk about it then.
6 The children come .... school at four o'clock.

7.2 **Answer these questions for *yourself.***

1 What time do you come home every day?
2 What country do you come from?
3 What do you do when you come into your classroom?

7.3 **What do you think these people are saying?**

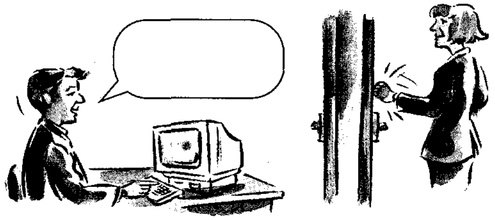

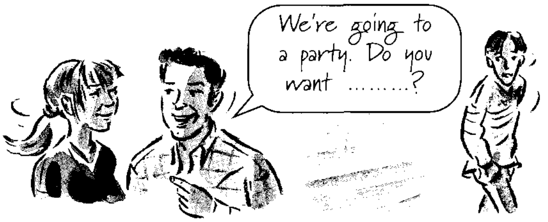
We're going to a party. Do you want ....?

1 ....
3 ....

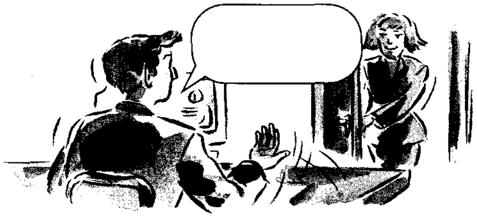

2 ....

7.4 **Fill the gaps using *come* in the correct form.**

1 Have you .... for your letters? They're on the table.
2 She .... back yesterday.
3 He .... here every Tuesday.
4 .... you .... to the school party tonight?

7.5 **Look up these verbs in a dictionary. Write the meaning in your vocabulary book. You may find more than one meaning, but just write down *one* meaning for each verb. After a week, cover the verbs, look at your notes and see if you can remember the verbs.**

1 come round 2 come across 3 come up

8 Take/took/taken

A Take with time (*it* + *take* + *person* + *time*)

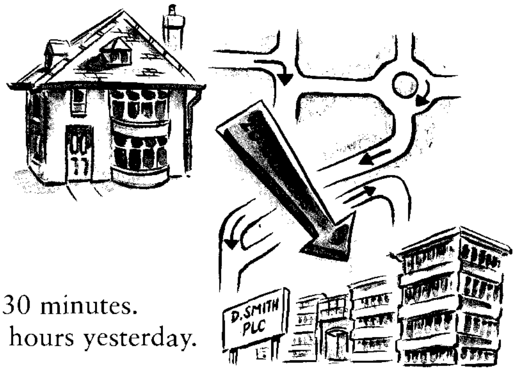

It **takes** Alan 20 minutes to get to work.
Alan's house → 20 minutes → Alan's office

It **takes** Miriam 45 minutes to get to work.
Miriam's flat → 45 minutes → Miriam's office

I go to school/university every day. It **takes** me 30 minutes.
I do homework every day. It **took** me two hours yesterday.

How long **does it take** to get to the station? 15 minutes in a taxi.

B Take with courses/exams, etc.

Are you **taking** an English course? Yes.
Do you have to **take** an exam? Yes, at the end of the course.
I want to **take** some Japanese lessons.

C Take with bus, car, etc.

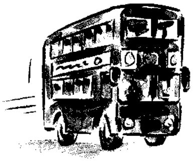

How do you get to work? I **take** the bus.

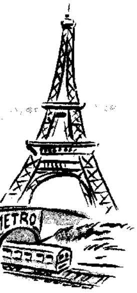

In Paris you can **take** the metro to the Eiffel Tower.

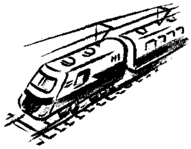

How does Nik get to work?
He **takes** the train.

D Take something with you

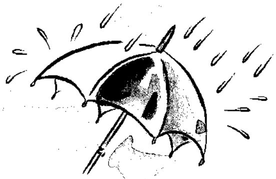

Are you going out? **Take** an umbrella.
It's raining.

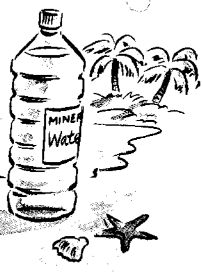

Are you going to the beach? **Take** some water with you.

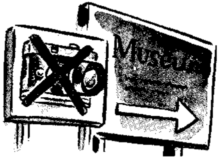

Sorry, you can't **take** your camera into the museum.

Useful expression: Can I **take a photograph** here?

Tip: Make a page in your notebook for **take** and put in new words that go with it when you see them (e.g. a picture, a look at, a chance).

Exercises

8.1 Fill the gaps for *yourself.*

1 It .... me .... minutes to get to school/university.
2 It takes me .... minutes/hours to go from .... to ....
3 .... takes me .... to do one unit of this book.

8.2 **Complete the sentences using *take/took* and an expression from the box.**

a course   your driving test   some lessons   an exam

1 At the end of the course, you have to ....
2 I wanted to speak French, so I ....
3 You want to learn Russian? Why don't you ....?
4 In Britain, when you are 17, you can ....

8.3 **Look at the pictures. Answer the questions using *take.***

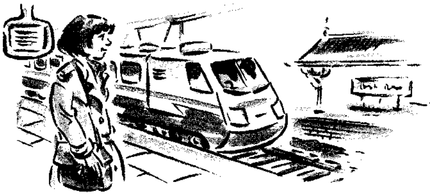

1 How does Lisa go to work?
She ....

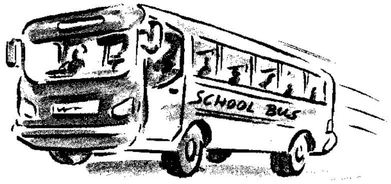

3 How does Simon go to school?
He ....

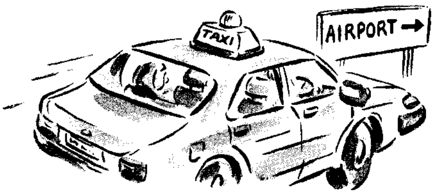

2 How can I get to the airport?
You ....

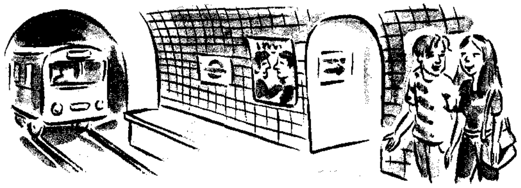

4 How do Paul and Ann get home every day?
They ....

8.4 **What do you take with you when ...**

1 you want to take photographs?

2 it's raining?

3 you go to another country?

4 you go to your English lessons?

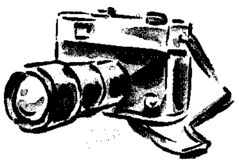

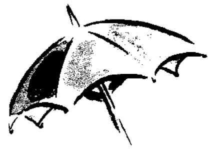

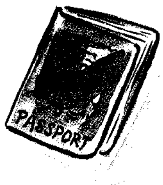

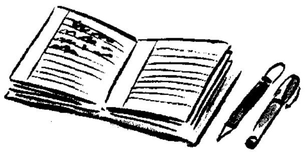

8.5 **How long did it take you to do this unit?**

9 Bring/brought/brought

A Bring and take

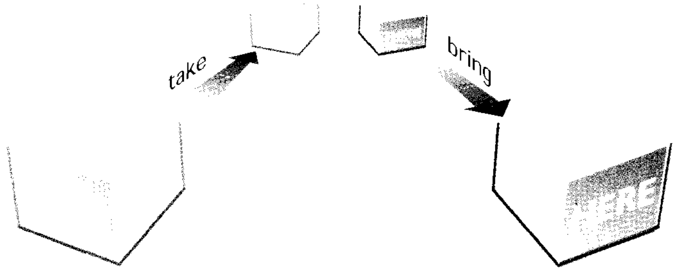

take = from *here* to *there*

bring = from *there* to *here*

Are you going to school? **Take** your books. (*from here* to the school)
Are you going to the kitchen? Can you **bring** me a glass? (from the kitchen *to here*)

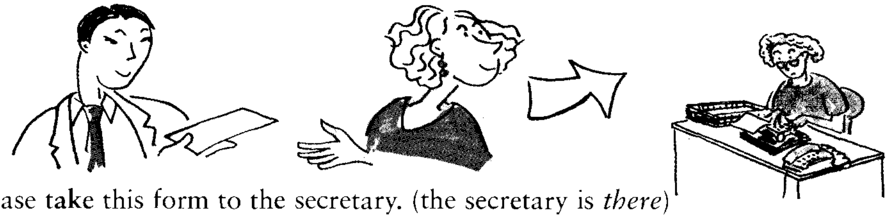

Please **take** this form to the secretary. (the secretary is *there*)

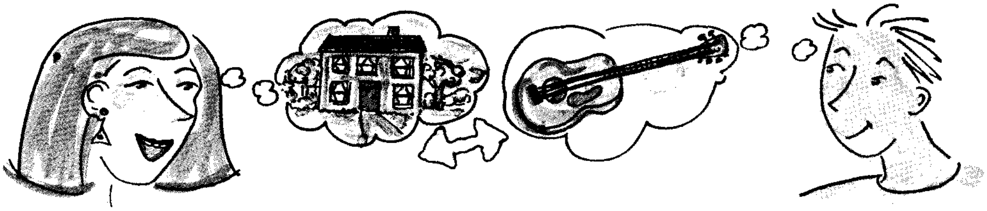

Come to my house tomorrow and **bring** your guitar. (for me, my house is *here*)

B Bring somebody something

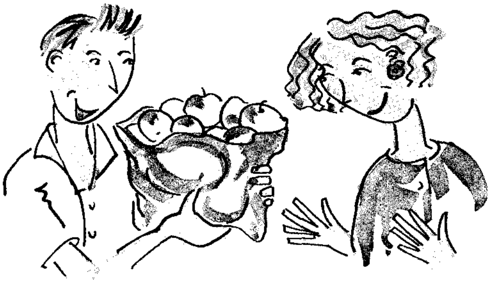

A: I've **brought** you some apples from my garden. B: Oh, thank you!

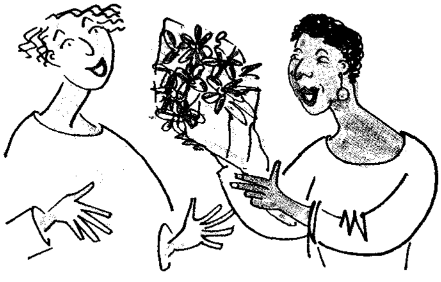

When she visits me, she always **brings** me flowers.

C Bring something back

It's raining. You can **take** my umbrella and **bring** it **back** tomorrow.

TOM: This book is interesting.
ANN: Please **take** it with you and read it.
TOM: Thanks. I'll **bring** it **back** on Friday.
ANN: OK. No problem.

Exercises

9.1 **Fill the gaps with *take* or *bring*.**

1 Are you going to the shops? ....Take....... an umbrella. It's raining.
2 'Don't forget to .... your books tomorrow!' the teacher said to the class.
3 Are you going to the kitchen? Can you .... me some water?
4 .... your camera with you when you go to Bangkok. It's beautiful there.
5 Are you going to the secretary's office? Can you .... these papers, please?
6 Shall I .... you a present from New York?

9.2 **Fill the gaps with *take* or *bring back*.**

1 Can I .... this book to read tonight? I'll .... it .... tomorrow.
2 When she went to Belgium, she .... me .... some chocolates.
3 Please .... my umbrella. You can .... it .... tomorrow.

9.3 **Match the words on the left with the words on the right. Draw lines.**

1 Yesterday he brought me
2 You must take
3 Come to my house and
4 Go to the secretary and take
5 Everybody is going to bring

a these letters, please.
b bring your guitar.
c some flowers.
d food to the party.
e your passport when you travel.

9.4 **Fill the gaps with the correct form of *bring* or *take*.**

1 She always ......brings...... me presents. Yesterday she .... me some chocolates.
2 Hello, I've .... you some flowers. I hope you like them!
3 I .... 72 photographs when I was in Rio de Janeiro.
4 She has .... my book, but she's going to .... it back tomorrow.

9.5 **Are you in your English lesson now? If *yes*, look at (a). If *no*, look at (b).**

(a) Name three things you always bring to the lesson.
(b) Name three things you always take to the lesson.

Name three things someone has brought you recently.

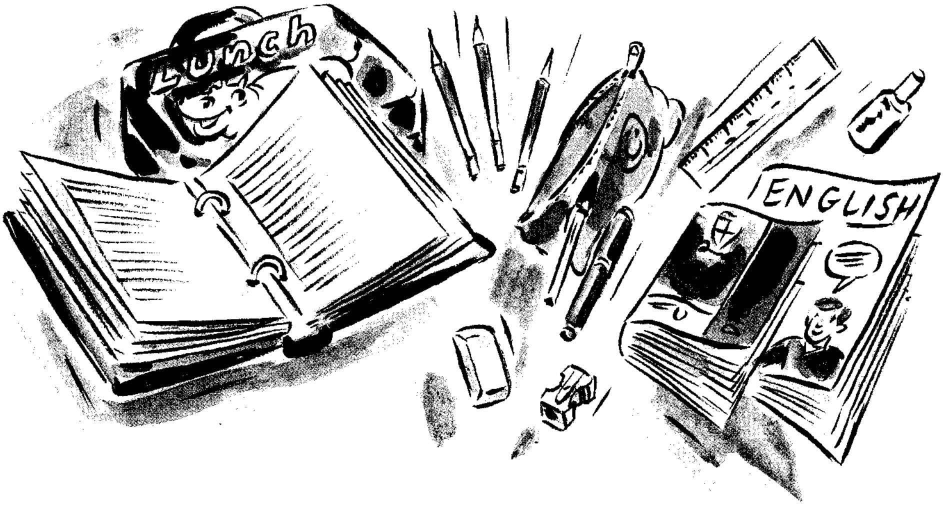

10 Get/got/got

A Get with adjectives: for changes

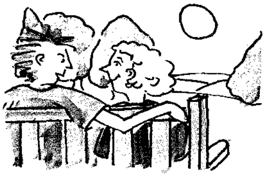

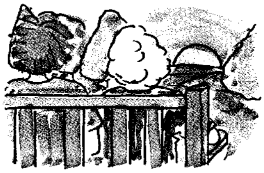

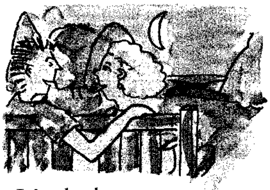

It's light. ——→ It's **getting** dark. ——→ It's dark.

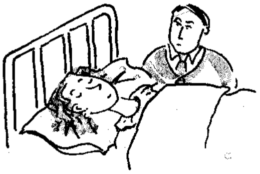

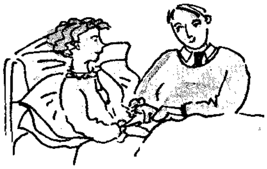

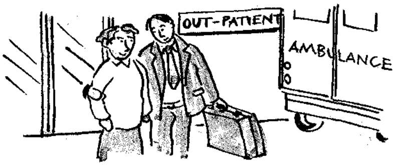

She's ill. ——→ She's **getting** better. ——→ She's better. / She's well.

I'm **getting** tired. I want to go to bed.

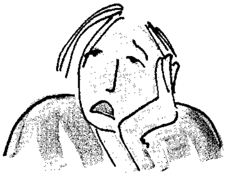

It's raining! I'm **getting** wet!

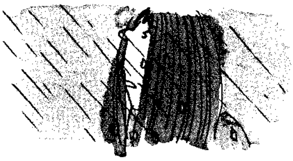

B Get with nouns

If you **don't have** something you can **get** it.

I want to send a postcard. I **have** to **get** a stamp.
I've finished my studies. Now I want to **get** a job.
My friend is ill! Please **get** a doctor.
Do you want a drink? I can **get** some coffee.
I'm going to the shop to **get** a newspaper.
Where can I **get** a taxi?

Having a great time here in Falmouth and I hope to see you as soon as I get home on Friday
Cheers Simon

John Wright
27 Reads Av.
Newtown
Hampshire
HE2-5HQ

C Get to (arrive at / reach a place)

How can I **get to** the airport? Take the airport bus at the bus station.
When you **get to** New York, ring me. OK, give me your number.

D Other phrases with get

Maria and David are **getting married** in April.
When you **get back** from Hong Kong, ring me. (= return / come home)
(See also **get up** in Unit 23.)

When I **get home**, I have my lunch.
I **get there** at 6 o'clock, so please ring me at 6.30.
[NOT get ~~to~~ home or get ~~to~~ there.]

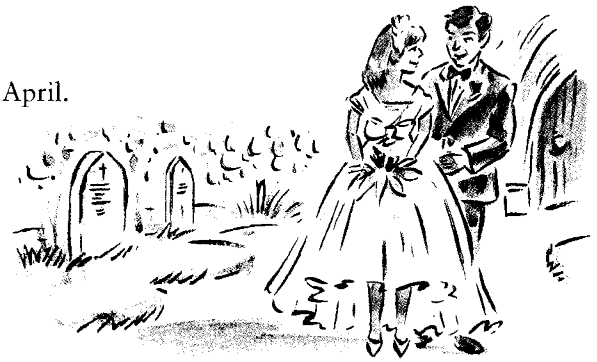

Exercises

10.1 **Complete these sentences using (a), (b) or (c).**

1 I studied too much and I got (a) hot (b) tired (c) sick.
2 I ate too much and I got (a) hot (b) tired (c) sick.
3 I sat in the sun too much and I got (a) hot (b) tired (c) sick.

10.2 **Complete these sentences using *get* and a word from the box.**

better light dark cold wet

1 The sun is going down. It's getting dark..............
2 When the sun comes up it ....
3 She's in hospital but she ....
4 It's raining! I ....!
5 Please close the window. I ....

10.3 **What/Who do you *get* if ...**

1 you want to post a letter? a stamp
2 somebody is ill?
3 you want a drink of water?
4 you want to write something down?
5 you want to read the news?
6 you want to go to the airport?
7 you want to earn some money?

10.4 **Fill the gaps in these sentences.**

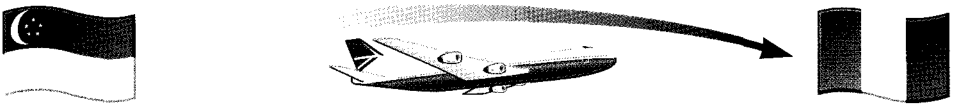

Singapore (dep 0545) Paris (arr 1230)

1 This plane .... Paris at 1230.

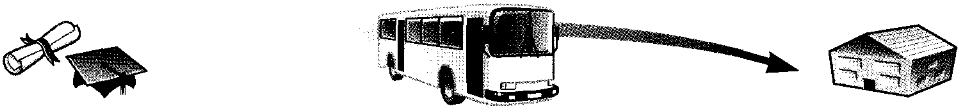

university (25 minutes) my house

2 The bus from the university .... my house in 25 minutes.

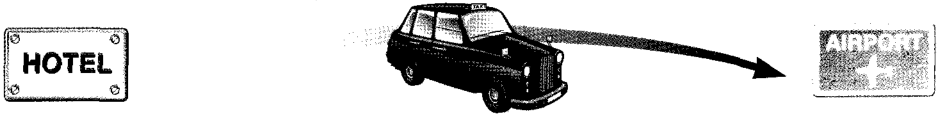

hotel airport

3 How .... the airport? Take a taxi. The bus is very slow!

10.5 **Answer the questions.**

1 In your country, how old are people when they get married?
2 When do people get married? Which day? Which month(s)?
3 What time do you get home every day? How do you get there?
4 Fill the gap: Now you can look at the key and .... the answers!

11 Phrasal verbs

A What are phrasal verbs?

Phrasal verbs have two parts: a verb + a preposition.

get up/on/over

I got **up** at 6.30 this morning. I'm tired now.
I hated my sister when I was young but now we **get on** very well.
He soon **got over** his cold. (= he got better quickly)

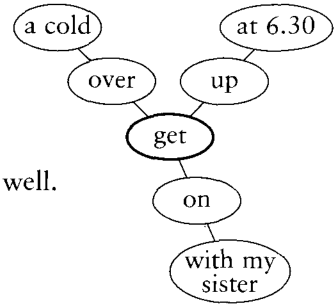

turn on/off/up/down

He always **turns on** the TV at 9 o'clock to watch the news.
It's a sunny day. **Turn** the light **off**.
Turn the TV **up**. I can't hear it.
Turn the TV **down**. It's too loud.

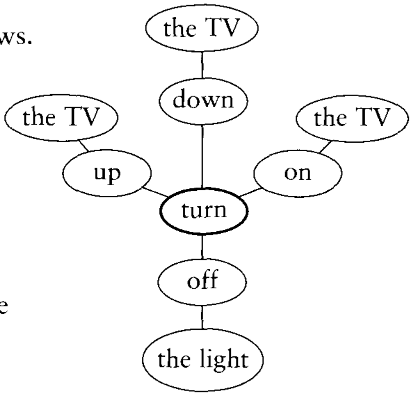

go on/off

Don't stop. **Go on** talking. It's very interesting.
A bomb **went off** in a London station today. Four people are still in hospital.

put something on

It's cold and windy outside. **Put** your coat **on**. *or* **Put on** your coat.

come on

Come on! We're late.

B One phrasal verb, different meanings

Note that one phrasal verb can often have different meanings.

turn down

She **turned down** the stereo. (= made it not so loud)
She **turned down** the invitation. (= refused it)

do up

She **did up** her coat.

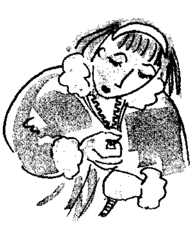

She **did up** her flat.

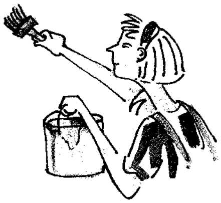

take off

Our plane **takes off** at 12.30. (= leaves the ground)
She **took off** her shoes. (= removed them from her feet)

Tip: Make a special page in your notebook. Write down any phrasal verbs you see or hear.

Exercises

11.1 **Match a sentence on the left with a sentence on the right. Draw lines.**

1 It's getting late.
2 It's very cold today.
3 That funny programme is on soon.
4 Her boyfriend left her.
5 I'm trying to work.
6 The flat is quite old.
7 It's raining today.
8 I don't want to accept that job.

a Turn it down then.
b Please turn your music down.
c It's time to get up.
d Do up your coat.
e Put on your raincoat.
f She got over it quickly.
g Turn on the TV.
h We can do it up nicely.

11.2 **Put the correct prepositions in these sentences.**

1 It's dark in here. Turn .... the lights.
2 Our plane takes .... at 6.25 and lands at 7.50.
3 Come ....! It's time to get ....
4 The children took .... their school uniforms when they got home.
5 It's time to turn .... the TV and go to bed now.
6 That teacher always gets .... her students.
7 The students went .... working until late at night.
8 When they got to the beach, he put .... his swimming trunks and ran down to the sea.

11.3 **What is happening in these pictures? Use one of the phrasal verbs from the opposite page to describe each picture.**

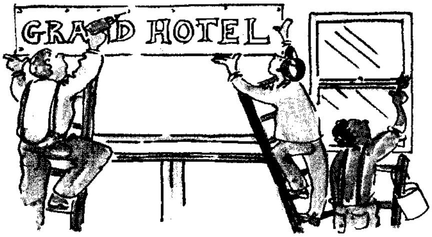

1 They are doing up the hotel.

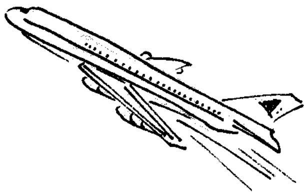

3 ....

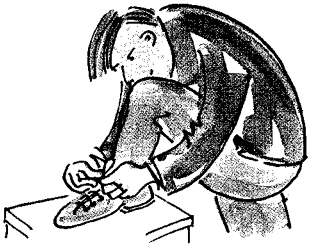

2 ....

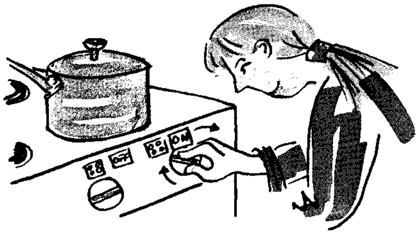

4 ....

11.4 **Organise the words on the opposite page into groups, in any way that makes sense to you, for example, clothes, movement.**

11.5 **Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb from the opposite page.**

1 The plane left at midnight.
2 I removed my hat and coat.
3 She continued writing novels all her life.
4 He soon got better from the flu.

12 Everyday things

A Things we do every day

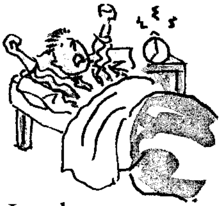
I wake up

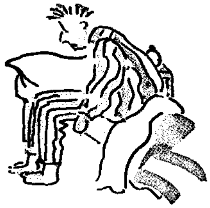
get up

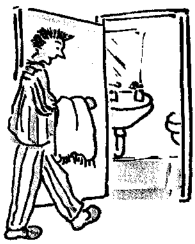
go to the bathroom

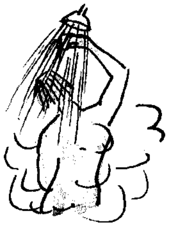
have a shower

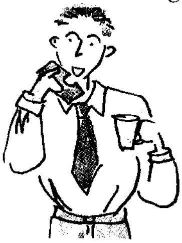
have breakfast

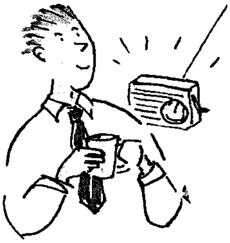
listen to the radio

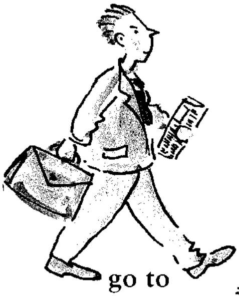
go to work

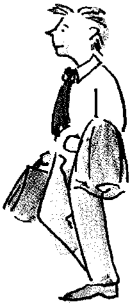
come home

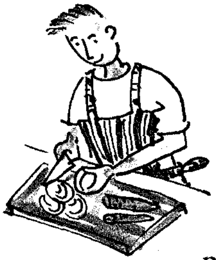
make dinner

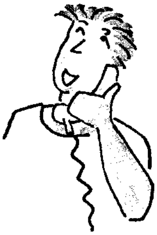
phone (*or* call) a friend

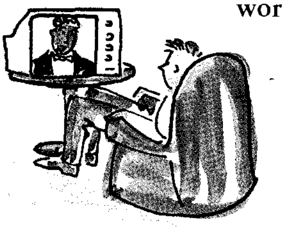
watch TV

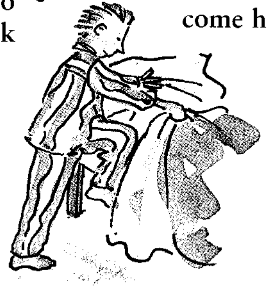
go to bed

B Sometimes I …

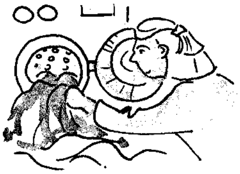
wash clothes

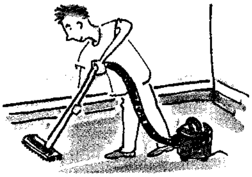
clean the house

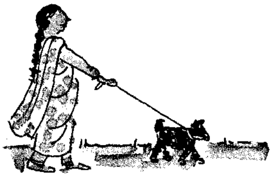
go for a walk

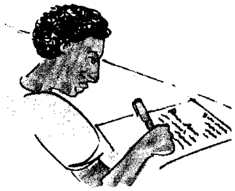
write letters

C Questions about everyday things

How often do you read the newspaper / watch TV? Three times a week / every day, etc.
What time do you get up / go to work? Seven o'clock. / Half past eight. etc.
How do you go to work? By bus/train/car, etc.

D Usually/normally (what I do typically)

We say I **usually/normally** get up at eight o'clock, *but* today I got up at eight-thirty.
[NOT ~~I used to~~ / ~~I'm used to get up~~ at eight o'clock!]
(See also Units 3 and 6.)

Exercises

12.1 Write the answers for *yourself*.

1 I usually wake up at ....
2 I go to the bathroom and have ....
3 I usually have .... for breakfast.
4 I go to work by ....
5 I usually have a cup of tea/coffee at .... o'clock.

12.2 What do they usually do?

1 He ...listens to the radio every morning.............

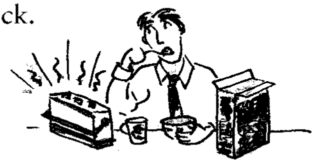

2

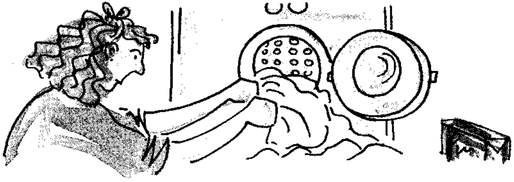

She w.. (every Saturday)

3

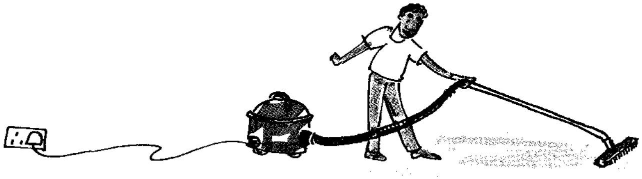

He c.. (every weekend)

4

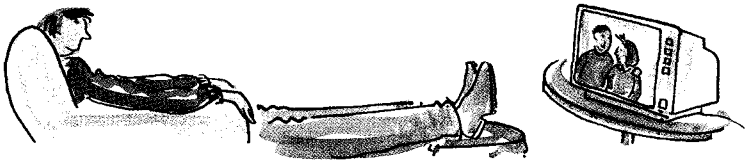

He w.. (every evening)

5

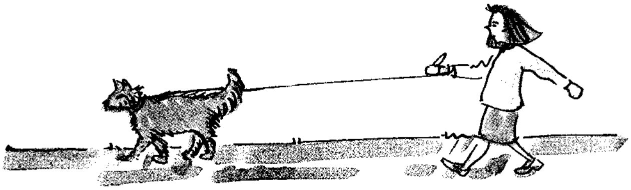

She g.. (every Sunday)

12.3 Ask questions.

	topic	*question*	*answer*
1	get up	What time do you get up?	Seven-thirty, usually.
2	go for a walk	How ...	Every Saturday.
3	go to work	How ...	By train.
4	have dinner	When ...	Between seven and eight o'clock, usually.

13 Talking

A Say (say/said/said)

We use say when we report someone's words.
She **said** 'This is horrible!'
He **said that** he wanted a drink.

We use say when we ask about language.
A: **How do you say** 'book' in Spanish?
B: 'Libro'.

We **say hello / goodbye** **please / thank you**
Happy Birthday / Merry Christmas / Happy New Year / Congratulations

B Tell (tell/told/told)

Tell is usually followed immediately by a person. **Say** is not followed immediately by a person.
He **told me** his name. [NOT He ~~said me~~ his name.]

We use **tell** when we want to know how to get to a place.
Can you tell me where the bus station is, please? [NOT Can you ~~say me~~ ...?]

We use **tell** with other **wh**-words too (**when, how, why, where**), e.g. you can **tell someone how** to do something, **where** something is, **why** something happened.

He **told me how** to send a fax. **Tell me when** you want to have dinner.
You can **tell someone the time / a story / a joke / your name / address / telephone number.**

C Ask

Ask is used for questions.
My sister **asked me** where I was going. (*or* My sister asked (me) 'Where are you going?')

A: Can I **ask you a question**?
B: Yes.
A: What day of the week were you born?
B: Thursday.

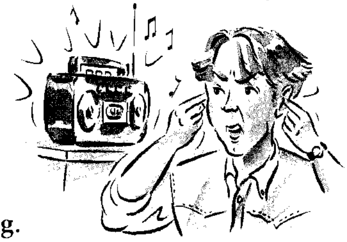

You can **ask someone the way / the time / a question.**

Ask somebody to do something and **ask someone for something.**
I **asked him to** turn off his radio. (*or* I said 'Please turn off your radio.')
She **asked for** the bill. (*or* She said 'Can I have the bill please?')

D Speak/talk/answer/reply

Do you **speak** Japanese? [NOT Do you ~~talk~~ Japanese?]
I like **talking to** you. (having a conversation with you)
Can you **answer** the telephone / the door, please?
(pick up the phone / open the door to see who it is)
I wrote a letter to him but he did not **reply**.
(for letters/faxes/e-mails) (he did not send me a letter back).

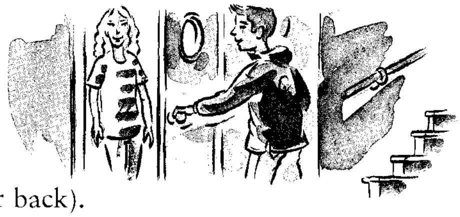

Exercises

13.1 **Fill the gaps with the correct form of *say* or *tell*.**

1 Can you ...tell....... me where the Plaza Hotel is, please?
2 She .... me her name.
3 I .... goodbye to her.
4 'Please, ... me a story,' the little boy ....
5 'Come here!' the police officer ....
6 The teacher .... that the students were very good.

13.2 What do you say?

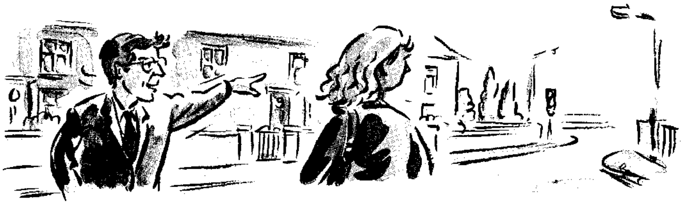

1 You want to know where the railway station is.
Can ....?
2 You want to know the word for 'tree' in German.
How ....?
3 You want to know the time.
Excuse me, can you ....
....?

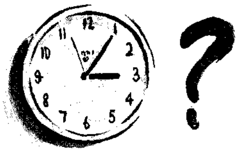

4 Your course is finished. You want to say goodbye to your teacher.
I just want to ....?
5 You want to know when the exam is.
Can you ....?
6 The telephone rings. You are in the bathroom.
(*To your friend*)
Can you ....
....?

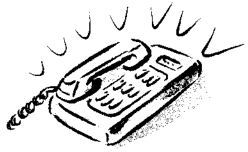

13.3 **Match the verbs on the left with the words on the right. Draw lines.**

1 Say
2 Answer
3 Ask for
4 Reply to
5 Tell
6 Talk to
7 Ask

a a letter
b someone to help you
c Happy New Year
d the door
e a friend
f someone a joke
g the bill

13.4 **On the left are some things in different languages. Can you match them with the sentences on the right? Draw lines.**

1 La cuenta, por favor.
2 Berapa ini?
3 God jul!
4 Kon'nichi wa.
5 Shukran.

a Say Merry Christmas in Swedish.
b Say thank you in Arabic.
c Ask for the bill in Spanish.
d Ask how much something is in Malay.
e Say good morning in Japanese.

14 Moving

A Without transport

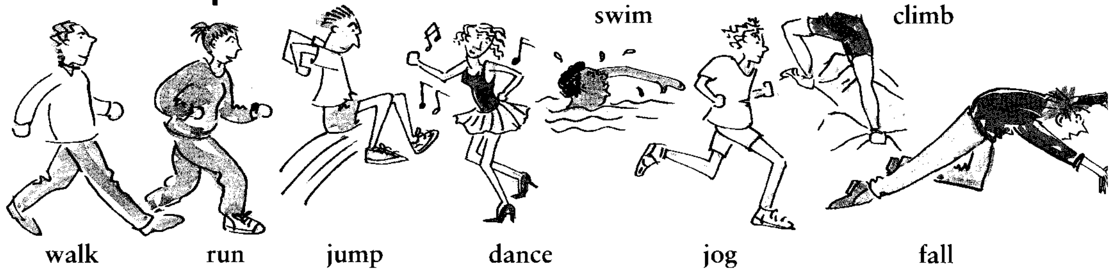
swim
climb
walk
run
jump
dance
jog
fall

B Transport

You **go by** car / plane / bus / train / bike / motorbike / ship / taxi / underground [NOT by ~~a~~ car].

You **take a** bus / train / taxi / plane and you **take the** underground.

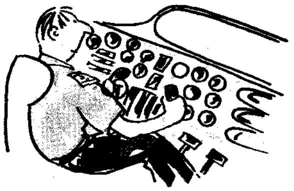

You **ride** a bicycle / bike / motorbike / horse.

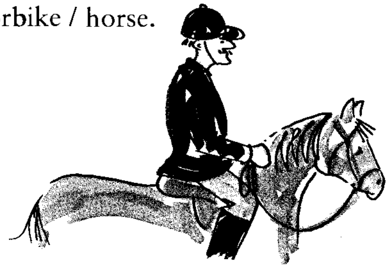

You **drive** a car / bus / train.

The pilot **flies** a plane.

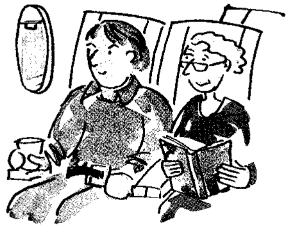

How did you get to Istanbul? We **flew** there.

If you **catch** the bus, train or plane, you arrive in time to get it.
If you **miss** the bus, train or plane, you arrive too late to get it.

You **arrive at** or **in** a place [NOT ~~to~~ a place]. The train arrived in Tokyo on time. The plane arrived late at Heathrow.

Tip: When you are travelling you will probably see a lot of notices in English. Make a note of any new words and expressions you see.

See Unit 41 (Travelling) for more words about transport.

C Moving objects

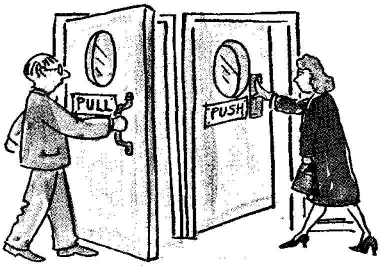

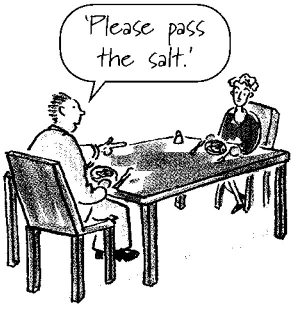
'Please pass the salt.'

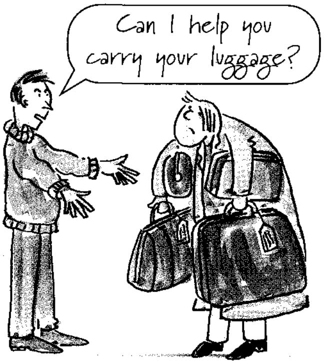
Can I help you carry your luggage?

Exercises

14.1 **Fill the gaps with verbs from A opposite. Write them in the correct form.**

1 Jack likes ....jogging.............. round the park every morning but Betty prefers ....walking............... round it with her dog.
2 Everyone .... at the party last night.
3 Every day Jane .... ten lengths of the swimming pool before breakfast.
4 James can .... very fast. He has won a lot of races.
5 Robert loves .... hills.
6 The old lady .... on her way home and broke her arm.
7 Sandra .... into the swimming pool and quickly .... to the other side.
8 It is much better for you to .... to work than to go by car.

14.2 ***Ride, drive, go by*** **or** ***take?*** **Write the correct word(s) in the phrase.**

1 Can you .... a motorbike?
2 He works for a railway company. He .... a train.
3 She sometimes .... the underground to work.
4 He goes away from home a lot. He .... a lorry.
5 I prefer to .... a bus than .... car.
6 Would you like to .... an elephant.
7 You never forget how to .... a bicycle.
8 I usually .... a taxi when it rains.

14.3 **Answer these questions. Use** ***every day, once a week, once a year*** **or** ***never.***

1 How often do you walk to work or school? I walk to work every day.
2 Have you got a bike? How often do you ride it?
3 How often do you go swimming? Do you go in the sea or in a swimming pool?
4 How often do you go jogging?
5 How often do you drive a car?
6 How often do you go dancing?
7 Do you often go climbing?

14.4 **What other things do we often ask people to pass at the dinner table?**

Write down *Please pass* + a noun six times. Please pass the sugar.

14.5 **Put these sentences into the past tense with the word** ***yesterday.***

1 Jim runs a mile every day. He ran a mile yesterday.
2 Maria often drives her grandmother to the city.
3 Bill catches the 9.45 train to London every day.
4 I sometimes take a taxi home from the station.
5 Jane often falls when she rides her bike.

15 Conjunctions and connecting words

A Basic conjunctions

Conjunctions join two parts of a sentence and help to show the connection between the two parts of the sentence.

conjunction	*function*	*example*
and	tells you more	We went home and went straight to bed.
but	makes a contrast	They are rich but they aren't happy.
because	answers the question *why?*	We went home because we were tired.
so	tells you the result	We went home early, so we missed the end of the concert.
when	answers the question *when?*	We went home when Jane wanted to.
before, after	answers the question *what happened first?*	We went home before the concert ended. We went home after Max Jones had sung his first song.
although, though	tells you something surprising	We went home although / though we did not really want to.
if	makes a condition	We will go home if we are tired.

B Other connecting words

The words in this table are useful for making connections between words and phrases.

word	*function*	*example*
only	says something is not very big or not very much	He sleeps only 3 hours every night.
even	says something is surprising or unusual	Even their 10-year-old son works in the shop.
like	makes a comparison	She looks like her dad.
than	used after a comparative adjective or adverb	She works harder than he does.
also, too, as well	says something is extra	He works in the shop and she does also / too / as well.

Exercises

15.1 **Choose one of the underlined words to complete the sentence.**

1 Sam liked school because/although/if he had many friends there.
2 Sam left school so/but/and he joined the navy.
3 He hadn't travelled much but/before/after he joined the navy.
4 Sam was seasick when/if/so he left the navy.
5 He got a job in a bank because/although/and he had no qualifications.
6 He will stay at the bank when/if/though he likes it there.

15.2 **Write down ten sentences from the table. Use each of the conjunctions once.**

	after	she loves him.
	although	she doesn't love him.
Mary agreed to marry Paul	and	she loved him.
	because	she didn't love him.
	before	they had two sons.
	but	he moves to London.
	if	he moved to London.
Mary will marry Paul	so	he was a pop star.
	though	they decided to set up a business together.
	when	

15.3 **Write each of the conjunctions in A in your own language.**

15.4 **Fill in the gaps with words from the table in B.**

I love swimming and my brother loves swimming (1).. Almost all my family loves swimming. (2).. my grandmother swims every day. She swims (3).. a fish. (4).. my father doesn't like it very much. I can swim better (5).. my father.

15.5 **Think about your family and your habits. Write sentences using *only, even, than, like, also, too* and *as well* about your habits.**

I play tennis and my mother plays as well. My mother plays better than I do.

15.6 **Complete these sentences for *yourself.***

1 I am learning English because ....
2 I'll learn more English if ....
3 I am learning English and ....
4 I am learning English although ....
5 I started learning English when ....
6 I can speak some English, so ....
7 I'll learn more English but ....

16 Time words (1): days, months and seasons

A Basic time words

There are:
365 days in a year
12 months in a year
52 weeks in a year
7 days in a week
2 weeks in a fortnight
24 hours in a day
60 minutes in an hour. (We say **an hour**)
60 seconds in a minute
100 years in a century

B Days of the week

Sunday , Monday , Tuesday, Wednesday , Thursday, Friday, Saturday.

The names of the days always begin with a capital letter in English.

Saturday + Sunday = the weekend

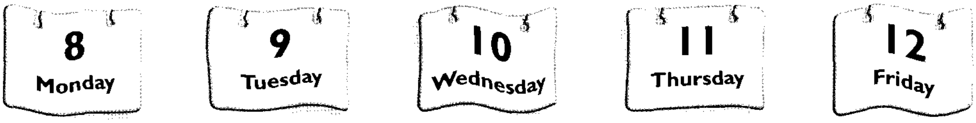

the day before yesterday ← yesterday ← today → tomorrow → the day after tomorrow

Monday (before 12 a.m.) = Monday morning
Monday (between 12 a.m. and 6 p.m.) = Monday afternoon
Monday (after 6 p.m.) = Monday evening
We say on + days of the week: on Monday, on Saturday, etc. I saw her **on Friday, on** Tuesday evening.
We say at + the weekend: I went to the cinema **at the weekend.**

C Months and seasons

Months: January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December.
The names of the months always begin with a capital letter in English.

Some countries have four seasons: spring, summer, autumn and winter

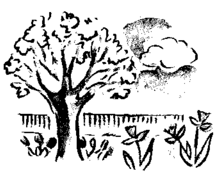
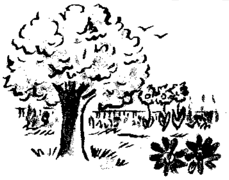
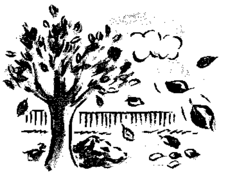
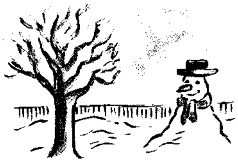

We say in + months/seasons: in July, in December, in (the) spring, in (the) summer, etc.
My birthday is **in July.** [NOT ~~on~~ July] Birds sing **in (the) spring.**

Tip: Write the day and date in English when you do an English exercise.

Exercises

16.1 **Complete the sentences with a word from A opposite.**

1 There are 3,600 seconds in ....
2 There are 1,200 months in ....
3 There are 168 hours in ....
4 There are 8,760 hours in ....

16.2 **Recite (a) the days of the week and (b) the months of the year.**

16.3 **Complete this British children's song about the number of days in each month.**

Thirty days has S................................,
A................................, J................................ and N................................
All the rest have ....,
Except for F................................ dear
Which has twenty eight days clear
And .... in each leap year (= every four years).

16.4 **These abbreviations are often used for the days of the week and the months. Write the names out in full.**

1 Mon.
2 Aug.
3 Oct.
4 Sat.
5 Wed.
6 Jan.
7 Apr.
8 Th.
9 Feb.
10 Sept.
11 Tues.
12 Nov.

16.5 **What are the next few letters in each case? Explain why.**

1 S M T W ? ? ?
2 J F M A M J J ? ? ? ? ?
3 S S ? ?

16.6 **There are six mistakes in this paragraph. Correct the mistakes.**

I'm going to a party on saturday for Jill's birthday. Her birthday is on thursday but she wanted to have the party on a Weekend. She's having a barbecue. I think june is a good month to have a birthday because of the weather. I love going to barbecues on the summer. My birthday is in Winter and it's too cold to eat outside!

16.7 **Quiz: How quickly can you answer these questions?**

1 How many seconds in quarter of an hour?
2 What is the third day of the week?
3 What month is your birthday in?
4 What day will it be the day after tomorrow?
5 What day was it the day before yesterday?
6 How many minutes are there in half an hour?
7 What day is it today?
8 What day will it be tomorrow?
9 What is the seventh month?
10 What day was it yesterday?
11 What century is it?
12 What month is it?

17 Time words (2)

A Time in relation to NOW

Now means at this moment. **Then** means at another moment (usually in the past).

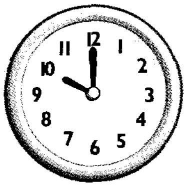

It is 10 **o'clock** now.
I got up 2 **hours ago**, at 8 o'clock.
An hour **ago** it was 9 o'clock.

two years
1994 1996

for two years
from 1994 **to** 1996
from 2010 to 2012

1994 → 1996

last year / last week / last Saturday
next year / next week / next summer

It is July now.
Last month it was June.
Next month it will be August.

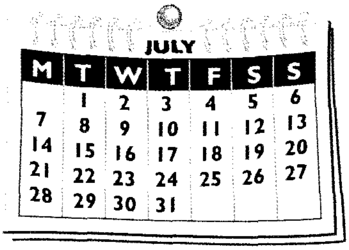

M	T	W	T	F	S	S
	1	2	3	4	5	6
7	8	9	10	11	12	13
14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27
28	29	30	31			

When we talk about time in general, we talk about **the past**, **the present** and **the future**. We talk about the past, the present and the future forms of the verb, for example

In the past people didn't have television.
People may travel to Mars **in the future**.

I'll be with you **in a moment**. (= a very short time)
Jane's in Paris **at the moment**. (= now)

See you **soon**! (= in a short time)

We met **recently**. (= not long ago)

B Frequency adverbs

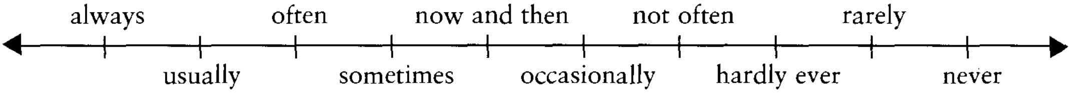

It **always** snows in Russia in winter.
It **often** rains in Britain.
The temperature in London **hardly ever** gets to 35°. (= almost never)
The Ancient Romans **never** went to America or Australia.

Notice the use of **a** in these expressions of frequency.
once (= one time) a week: I go swimming **once** a week, every Saturday.
twice (= two times) a day: I clean my teeth **twice a day**.
three times a year: I see my uncle **three times a year**.
four times a month: I play football **four or five times a month**.

Exercises

17.1 **Fill the gaps with a preposition from A opposite.**

(1)........ the past, Rosa worked in many different countries. Rosa worked in Hong Kong (2)........ three years, (3)........ 1993 (4)........ 1996. (5)........ the moment she is working in Tokyo. She will stay there (6)........ two more years.

17.2 **Draw lines to match the centuries to their time.**

1 the 19th century
2 the 22nd century
3 the 18th century
4 the 21st century
5 the 20th century

the past
the present
the future

17.3 **Read the sentences and answer the questions.**

1 Peter will get his exam results very soon.
Do you think Peter will get them next year, next month or tomorrow?
2 Harriet and Rupert met for the first time recently.
Do you think they first met last year, six months ago or a week ago?
3 I'll help you in a moment.
Do you think I'll help you next week, in two hours or in a few minutes?

17.4 **Are these sentences true about *you*? If not, write them out correctly. Use other frequency adverbs from B on the opposite page.**

1 I always go swimming on Fridays. I sometimes go swimming on Fridays. I often go swimming on Saturdays.
2 I normally go to school/work by bus.
3 I hardly ever play football.
4 I occasionally watch TV.
5 I rarely drink milk.
6 I often wear a hat.
7 I rarely eat chocolate.
8 I always go to bed at 10.
9 I never go to the theatre.

17.5 **Look at the table and make sentences using expressions like *once a week, three times a month,* etc.**

	play tennis	*practise the piano*	*have a business meeting in Germany*
John	Mondays and Thursdays	Saturdays	the first Friday every month
Sally and Amy	Tuesdays, Fridays and Saturdays	every morning and every evening	once in January, March, May, July, August and December every year.

17.6 **Write a paragraph about your own life using as many as possible of the words and expressions from the opposite page.**

18 Places

A General place words

Come **here** please. (to me, to where I am)
Do you know Lima? I'm going **there** in April. (not here, another place)
I'm coming **back** from Portugal in May. (to here again, to this place)
There are books and papers **everywhere** in my room. (in all parts / all places)
(See unit 7.)

B Positions

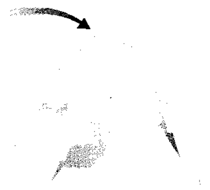

The **top** of the mountain.

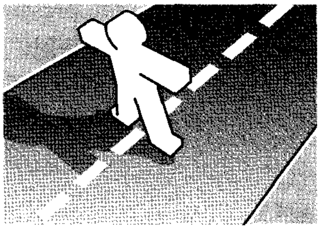

The **middle** of the road.

The **bottom** of the glass.

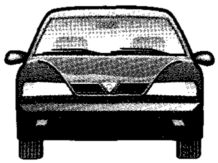

The **front** of the car.

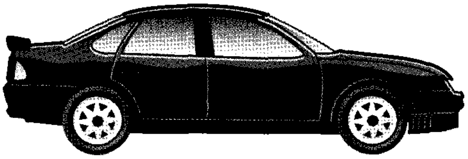

The **side** of the car.

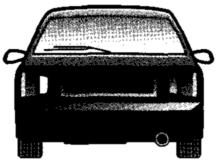

The **back** of the car.

The **beginning** of the motorway.
The **end** of the motorway.

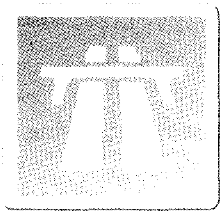

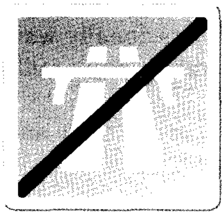

C Left and right

This is his **left** hand.

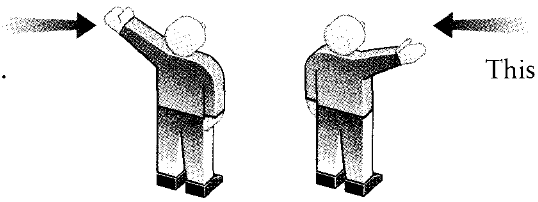

This is his **right** hand.

In York Street, there is a cinema **on the left** and a restaurant **on the right**.

D Home and away

Is Mary **at home**? (in her house / flat)
No, sorry, she's **out**. (at the shops / at work / at school)
No, sorry, she's **away**. (in another town / city or country)
No, sorry, she's **abroad**. (in another country)

Exercises

18.1 Fill the gaps with *here* or *there.*

1 Please bring it .... (See Unit 9 for **bring.**)
2 Are you coming .... next week? (See Unit 7 for **come.**)
3 This letter is for a teacher at the university. Can you take it ....? (See Unit 8 for **take.**)
4 I want to leave this letter in Nora's office. Are you going ....?

18.2 Complete the sentences.

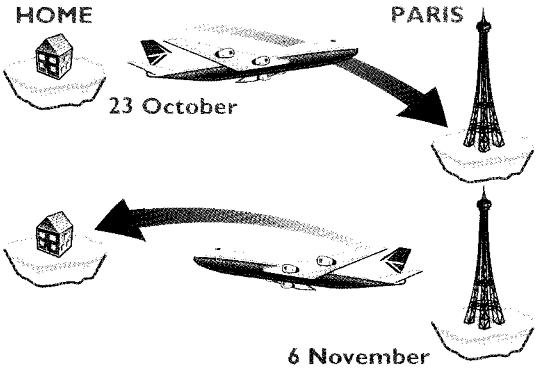

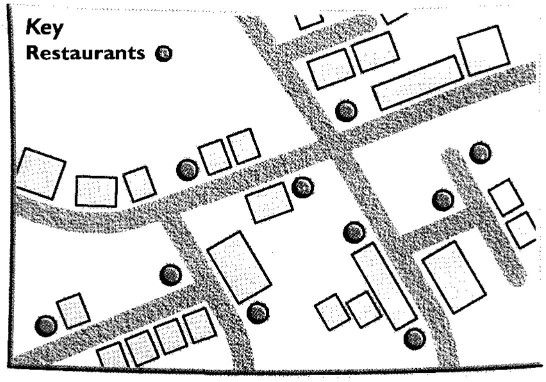

1 What is Mary doing on 6 November?
She's coming ....

2 Is there just one restaurant in Scoffton?
No there are restaurants ....

18.3 Mark the positions on the tree and on the bus.

1 The top of the tree.
2 The middle of the tree.
3 The bottom of the tree.
4 The front of the bus.
5 The side of the bus.
6 The back of the bus.

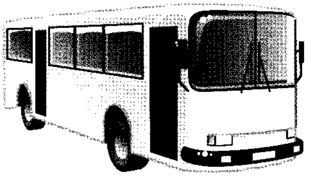

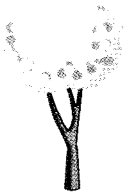

18.4 Answer these questions about *yourself* and about this book.

1 Are you studying English at home or abroad?
2 Are you going away this year?
3 What have you got in your left or right hand at the moment?
4 What is there at the end of this book?
5 Where is the unit on **Have** in this book? (beginning/middle/end?)
6 Where is the Unit on **Feelings**? (beginning/middle/end?)

18.5 Fill the gap with *out, away* or *abroad.*

1 I'd like to work .... and learn about a new country.
2 Is Lily here? No, she's .... but she'll be back in about five minutes.
3 I'm going .... tomorrow to my sister's. She lives about 50 miles north of here.
4 When we go .... we like to go .... and see new countries.

19 Manner

Manner = how we do something

A Fast and slow

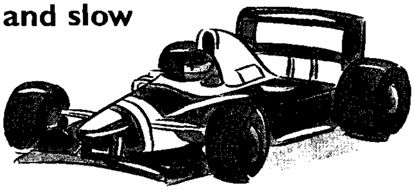

This car goes very **fast**. It's a **fast** car.

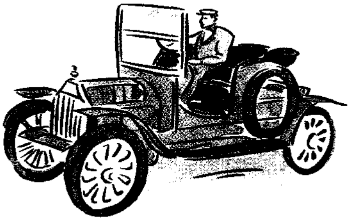

This car goes very **slowly**. It's a **slow** car.

B Right and wrong

This sentence is **right**. I like coffee very much. ✓
This sentence is **wrong**. I like very much coffee. ✗

C Loud and quiet /laʊd/ and /ˈkwaɪət/

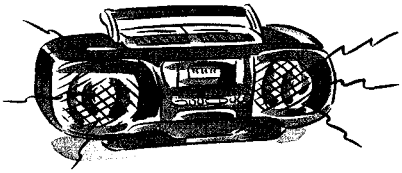

The music is too **loud**.

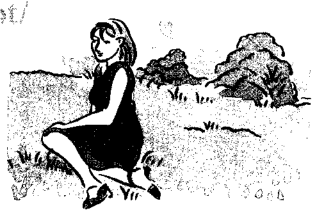

It's very **quiet** here.

The teacher speaks very **quietly**. We can't hear him.
She sang loudly.

D Well and badly

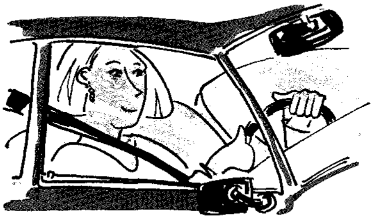

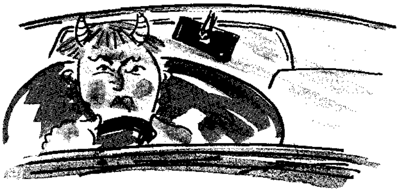

She's a **good** driver. She drives **well**.
He's a **bad** driver. He drives **badly**.

E Way

Way means **how** someone does something.

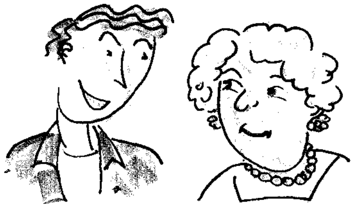

He's speaking **in a friendly way**.

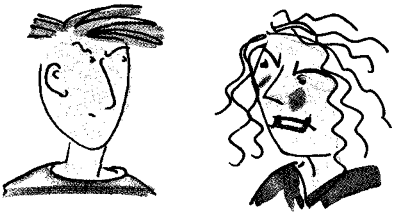

She's speaking **in an unfriendly way**.

Exercises

19.1 Complete the sentences.

1 This train is **slow**. It goes very ....slowly.....
2 He is a **bad** singer. He sings very ....
3 She is always **loud**. She speaks very ....
4 He's a **fast** swimmer. He swims very ....
5 This girl is **quiet**. She always speaks ....
6 He's a **good** English-speaker. He speaks English ....

19.2 Which do you think is better? Use your dictionary if you want to.

1 A loud person or a quiet person?
2 A fast bus or a slow bus?
3 A friendly person or an unfriendly person?
4 A right answer or a wrong answer?
5 To speak politely or impolitely?
6 To speak in a strange way or in a normal way?

19.3 Find words from the left-hand page.

w r o n g o
e c i b a d
l u b g e z
l o u d h i
s e f a s t

19.4 Use a dictionary. Are the definitions right or wrong?

word	*definition*	*right* (✓)	*wrong* (✗)
suddenly	very slowly		✗
sadly	in an unhappy way		
strangely	not in a normal way		
quickly	very slowly		
easily	with no difficulty		

19.5 Make sentences about yourself and your friends/family. Use the new words opposite.

I play tennis well.

20 Irregular verbs

Most verbs in English are regular but some of the most common verbs in English are irregular. The forms here are the infinitive (go, come), the past simple (went, came) and the past participle (gone, come).

A All forms the same

cost	cost	cost	cut /kʌt/	cut	cut	hurt	hurt	hurt
let	let	let	put /pʊt/	put	put	shut /ʃʌt/	shut	shut

B Two different forms

run	ran	run	read /riːd/	read /red/	read /red/	feel	felt	felt
keep	kept	kept	sleep	slept	slept	leave	left	left
come	came	come	become	became	become			
bring	brought	brought	buy	bought	bought	catch	caught	caught
fight	fought	fought	teach	taught	taught	think	thought	thought
find	found	found	spend	spent	spent	learn	learnt	learnt
pay	paid /peɪd/	paid	say	said /sed/	said			
win	won	won	lose	lost	lost	shine	shone	shone
sell	sold	sold	tell	told	told	sit	sat	sat
meet	met	met	get	got	got	shoot	shot	shot
stand	stood	stood	understand	understood	understood			
make	made	made	have	had	had	do	did	done
hear	heard	heard	beat	beat	beaten			

C Three different forms

be	was/were	been	go	went	gone	begin	began	begun
drink	drank	drunk	sing	sang	sung	swim	swam	swum
fly	flew	flown	know	knew	known	throw	threw	thrown
break	broke	broken	choose	chose	chosen	speak	spoke	spoken
steal	stole	stolen	wake	woke	woken	take	took	taken
wear	wore	worn	drive	drove	driven	ride	rode	ridden
rise	rose	risen	write	wrote	written	eat	ate	eaten
give	gave	given	forget	forgot	forgotten	fall	fell	fallen

Tip: When you learn a new irregular verb, add it to one of the groups of verbs on this page.

Exercises

20.1 Do you know what the verbs opposite mean? Write out the infinitive form of each of the verbs with its meaning in your own language beside it. Use a dictionary if you want to.

20.2 Write these words out in their three forms. Then find a verb on the opposite page which has the opposite meaning. Write it out in its three forms.

1 open open, opened, opened; shut, shut, shut
2 give 5 walk 8 rise
3 come 6 wake 9 win
4 make 7 remember 10 buy

20.3 Use the pictures and complete this story about Jane yesterday.

Yesterday Jane (1)................. up at 7.00. She (2)................. an apple and she (3)................. a cup of hot chocolate. Then she got in her car and (4)................. to work. At work she (5)................. a newspaper and then she (6)................. some letters. At lunch-time she (7)................. in the park for half an hour and then she (8)................. a sandwich. After lunch she (9)................. at her desk again and (10)................. some telephone calls. In the evening she (11)................. the office at six o'clock and (12)................. some Japanese visitors. They (13)................. to a restaurant together. After a busy day Jane (14)................. very well.

1
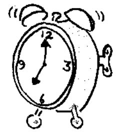
2
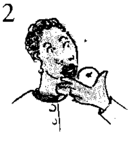
3
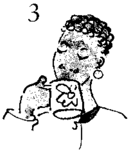
4
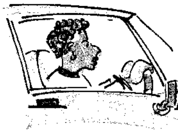
5
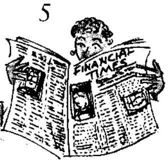

6
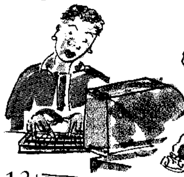
7
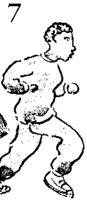
8
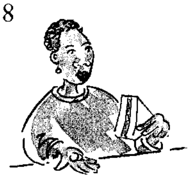
9
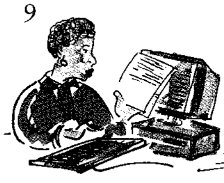
10
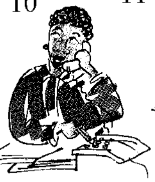
11
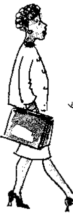
12
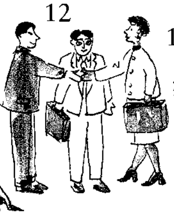
13
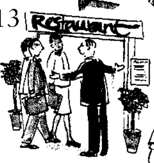

14
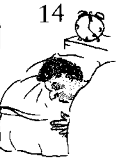

20.4 Choose the best verbs opposite. Complete the sentences with the correct past participle form.

1 We have .... in the sea every day this week.
2 Where is my bike? Someone has .... it!
3 I have .... a long time on this work.
4 That boy has .... very lazy recently.
5 I hope Jack has .... the bus and won't be late home.
6 Poor John. He has .... his leg badly. But he hasn't .... it.

20.5 Write sentences of your own with verbs from the box. Use the past tense.

bring choose fall feel fly keep
pay speak teach tell think win

20.6 Read all three parts of all the verbs on the opposite page aloud. Then cover parts two and three. Can you remember what they are?

21 Common uncountable words

A What is countable?

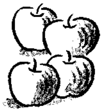
apples

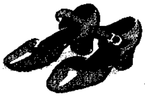
shoes

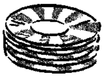
plates

COUNTABLE (You can count them: 4 apples, 2 shoes)

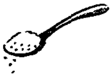
sugar

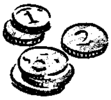
money

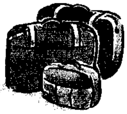
luggage

UNCOUNTABLE (You can't count it: NOT 3 ~~luggages~~)

Can I have **three apples** and **some sugar**, please?
Are these shoes yours? Is this **luggage** yours?

B Everyday uncountable words

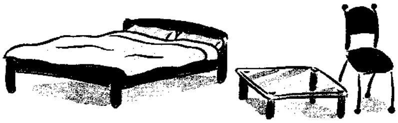
This **furniture** is modern.

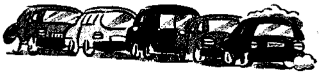
The **traffic** is bad today.

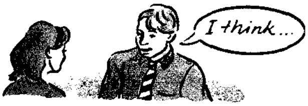

I'll give you some **advice** about your future.

He can give you some useful **information** about Bangkok.

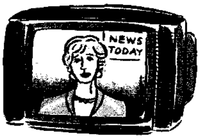

There is some bad **news** today.

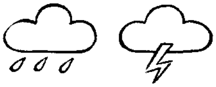
It's terrible **weather** today.

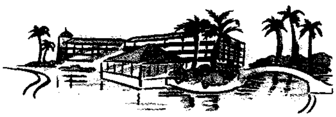
Accommodation here is expensive.

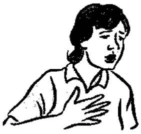
I need some fresh **air**.

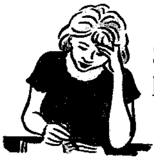
Studying is **hard work**.

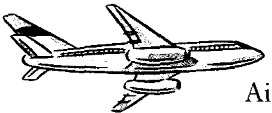
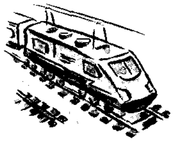
Air **travel** is faster than rail **travel**.

C Food

A lot of uncountable nouns are kinds of food and drink.

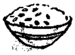
rice

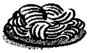
spaghetti

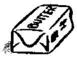

butter

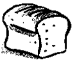
bread

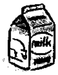

milk

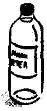
water

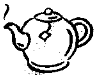
tea

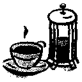
coffee

Note: When we want to say how much we want, we say, three loaves of bread, two litres of milk, a kilo of apples.

Tip: When you learn a new noun, write it down in a phrase which shows if it is countable or uncountable.

Exercises

21.1 **Fill the gaps with an uncountable noun opposite.**

1 I'd like to buy a car but I haven't got enough ....
2 Cows give us .... and ....
3 If you don't know what to do, ask your parents for some ....
4 The .... at the seaside is very good for you.
5 Rob left school last month and is now looking for ....
6 There is always a lot of .... in central London.

21.2 **Match the words on the right with the words on the left.**

1 heavy	information
2 useful	travel
3 bad	water
4 modern	luggage
5 brown	news
6 cold	furniture
7 space	bread

21.3 **Find an adjective to go with the uncountable nouns in the box.**

cold weather, British money

weather money sugar traffic advice accommodation air
work rice spaghetti butter milk tea coffee

21.4 **Fill the gaps with the correct form of the verb *be*.**

1 Accommodation in the city centre .... expensive.
2 Spaghetti with Italian tomato sauce .... very good.
3 The weather in Scotland .... best in the autumn.
4 The news .... better today than it .... yesterday.
5 Work .... the most important thing in Sam's life.
6 Their furniture .... very old and very beautiful.

21.5 **Correct the mistakes in these sentences.**

1 The news ~~are~~ not very good today.
The news is not very good today.
2 Where can I get some informations about your country?
3 Let me give you an advice.
4 Cook these spaghetti for ten minutes.
5 Can I have a bread, please?
6 Mary is looking for a new work.
7 We should buy some new furnitures.
8 The east of the country usually has a better weather than the west.
9 We went on two long travels last year.
10 I must find a new accommodation soon.

22 Common adjectives: good and bad things

A (+) 'good' adjectives

A **good** restaurant.

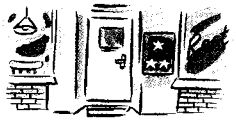

A **better** restaurant.

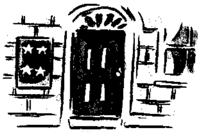

The **best** restaurant in town.

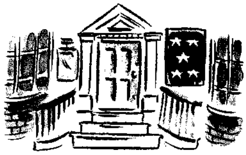

This restaurant is **better than** that one.
nice (+) **lovely** (++) **wonderful** (+++) **excellent** (++++)

A: That's a **nice** jacket.
B: Thank you.

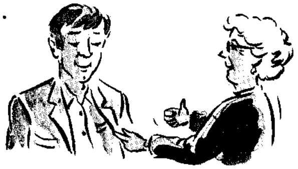

A: It's a **lovely** day today!
B: Yes, it is.

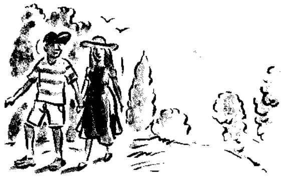

A **wonderful** view

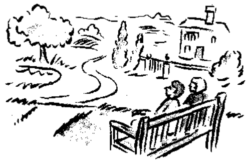

Mary's a **wonderful** person.
Everybody loves her.

A: Do you want to go to London on Saturday?
B: That's an **excellent** (= very good) idea!

When you answer and want to say how you feel:
A: The train arrives at six o'clock; dinner is at seven.
B: **Excellent! / Great! / Wonderful! / Lovely! / Perfect!**

B (-) 'bad' adjectives

bad (**worse / the worst**) (-) **awful** (- -) **terrible** (- - -) **horrible** (- - -)

bad weather

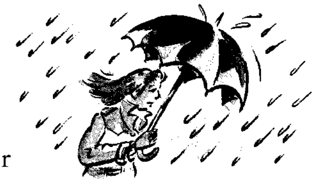

My hair is **awful!**

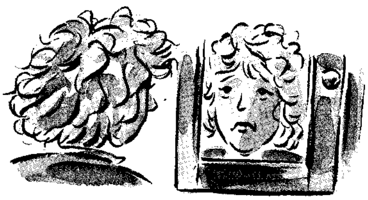

The weather last year was **worse than** this year.
Tim is a **horrible** person. Nobody likes him. (used about people)
I had a **terrible** day at work today. (used about situations)
The traffic's **terrible** at 5 o'clock on Fridays.

Note: We often say **not bad** when we are speaking:
A: I get $500 a week in my job.
B: That's **not bad**! (= good!)

You can say these adjectives with **how**:
A: I have to get up at 5.30 tomorrow.
B: Oh, **how awful! / horrible!** [NOT ~~how bad~~]

Exercises

22.1 **Fill the gaps, as in the example.**

1 My hair's ....awful..... I must go to the hairdresser's.
2 The weather's .... I don't want to go out.
3 The traffic is .... in the city centre. Take the train.
4 That's a(n) .... idea! Let's do it!
5 How ....! Three exams on the same day!
6 What a .... house! The sea is only 100 metres away!
7 My timetable's not .... I'm free on Wednesdays and Fridays.

22.2 **What can you say? Someone says to you ...**

1 Do you like my new jacket?
2 I have to get up at 4.30 tomorrow morning.
3 Shall we go out for dinner tonight?
4 (*In your town*) Excuse me. Is there a good restaurant in this town?
5 What sort of person is your English teacher?

22.3 **What goes together? Match a description from the left with an expression from the right. Draw lines.**

1 Blue sky, sun 25°.
2 5 stars (★★★★★), very famous.
3 Bad person. Nobody likes him/her.
4 90 out of 100 in an exam.
5 Grey sky, wind, rain, 11°.
6 We can take a taxi.

a Wonderful news.
b Awful weather.
c Lovely weather.
d An excellent idea.
e The best hotel in town.
f A horrible person.

22.4 **Use a dictionary. Put these new words into the *good* or *bad* column.**

dreadful ghastly gorgeous marvellous horrendous fine superb brilliant

good (+)	*bad (-)*
	dreadful

22.5 **Look at the adjectives in 22.4. Think of two nouns to go with each of the adjectives.**

dreadful weather/film

23 Common adjectives: people

In this unit, ** = normal, **** = stronger

A Saying positive (+)/good things about people

Nice is the most common word used for people who we like / who are good.
Mary's very **nice**.
Richard's a **nice** man.

If we want to make **nice** stronger, we can use **wonderful**.
nice (**) ——▶ **wonderful** (****)

Ron is a **wonderful** teacher. All the students love him.
But we don't say 'Mary is ~~very~~ wonderful', we just say 'Mary is wonderful'.

If someone is good to other people, we use **kind**.
She's very **kind**; she helps me with the children.

Other 'good' things about people

My teacher is a **lovely** man. (= very kind / I like him very much)
My friend Neil is very **easy-going**. (= relaxed, easy to be with)
Maureen's a **happy** person. (≠ **an unhappy** person)
All my friends are more **intelligent** than me. (= clever, good at school subjects, etc.)

B Saying negative (-)/bad things about people

Marcia is **not** very **nice**.

not very nice (**) ——▶ **horrible** (****)

Margaret is a **horrible** woman; nobody likes her.
My uncle is a **difficult** person. He is never happy.
That waiter is **stupid**. I asked for coffee and he has given me tea! (**stupid** **** is a very strong word)
I don't like **selfish** people. (= people who think only of themselves)

C Little children

We often say that little children are **good** or **well-behaved**. If they are not, we say they are **naughty**.
Tim is very **good** / **well-behaved**, but his little sister is very **naughty**.

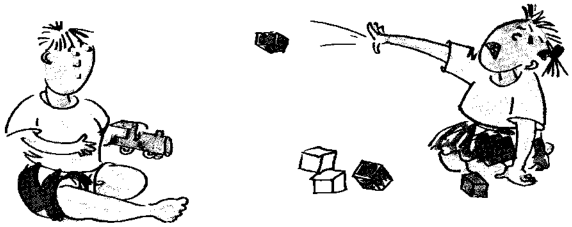

D Prepositions

Jean was nice/kind/wonderful **to** me when I was in hospital.
You were horrible **to** me yesterday!
It was nice/kind **of** you to remember my birthday.

Exercises

23.1 What do you think B said? Complete the sentences.

1 A: Mary's very nice.
B: She's more than nice, she's ....!

2 A: Was George not very nice to you?
B: He was really ....!

3 A: Let me carry your bag.
B: Thanks, that's ....

4 A: Is your little brother well-behaved?
B: No, he's ....

23.2 Complete the word puzzle. Use the letters of *selfish* and words from the opposite page.

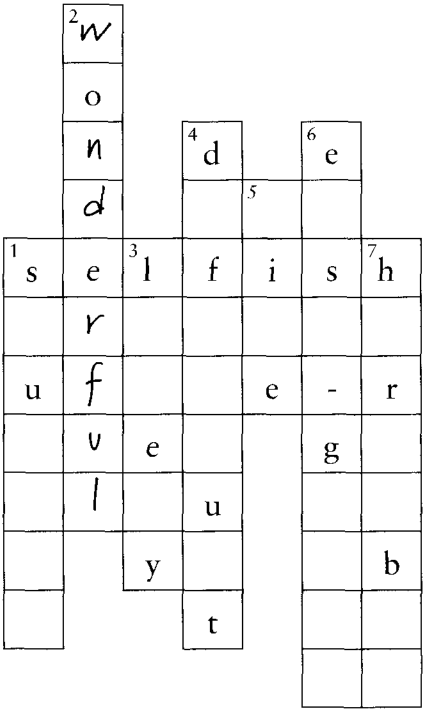

	2 w					
	o					
	n		4 d		6 e	
	d			5		
1 s	e	3 l	f	i	s	7 h
	r					
u	f			e	-	r
	v	e			g	
	l		u			
		y				b
			t			

23.3 Circle the words that describe *you*.

I am: easy-going sometimes difficult kind to animals sometimes stupid happy intelligent selfish horrible to some people nice to my friends

23.4 Fill in the correct prepositions.

1 The teacher is never horrible ..to.. the students.
2 It is kind .... you to help me.
3 Barbara was wonderful .... me when I needed a friend.
4 It was nice .... her to ring me.

24 Words and prepositions

A Verbs

Some verbs are usually followed by a preposition.
I **listen to** the radio in bed in the morning.
I **waited for** the bus for half an hour yesterday.
I **asked for** a black coffee, not a white one.
Where do I **pay for** our meal?
This book **belongs to** Sarah Smith.

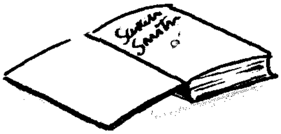

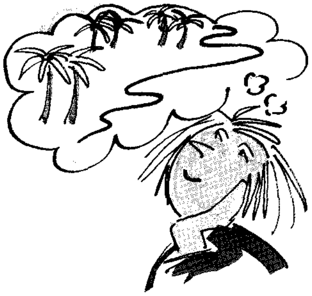

What are you **thinking about**?
Helena **thanked** her mother **for** the present.
Jamie **apologised for** being late.

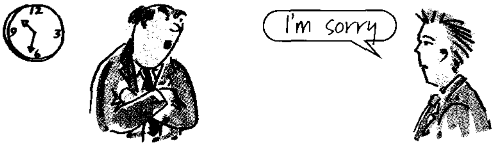

B Same verb, different preposition

Some verbs have different meanings when they are used with different prepositions, for example, **look**.

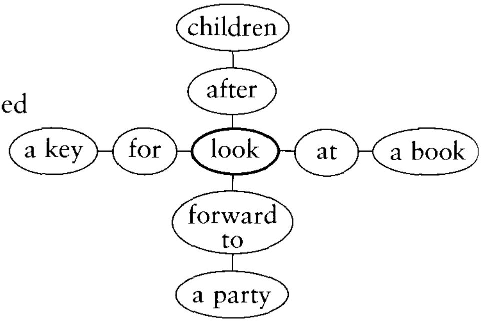

I love **looking at** old photographs.
If you want to find something, for example, your key, you must **look for** it.
Parents **look after** their children (= they take care of them).
You **look forward to** something nice in the future, for example, a friend's letter, a holiday.

C Adjectives

Some adjectives are also followed by prepositions.
I'm **good at** geography but **bad at** maths.
I'm **interested in** (hearing) all your news.
He is **afraid of** mice.
John is **proud of** winning a medal and his mother is **proud of** him.

Note: You are **used to** (*or* **accustomed to**) what you know well; you have to **get used to** / **accustomed to** something new, for example a new school or driving on the other side of the road; you are used to doing something, I'm used to getting up early, I always do.

D Grammar

Prepositions are followed by a noun: Joe is **good at tennis** *or*
the -ing form of the verb: Joe is **good at playing** the piano [NOT good at ~~play~~ the piano].

Tip: Look carefully at prepositions when you read in English. Make a note of any phrases which use prepositions in a new way.

Exercises

24.1 **Match a phrase on the left with a phrase on the right, to make seven sentences.**

1 John is waiting
2 This bicycle belongs
3 The children thanked their grandmother
4 Sally is listening
5 He apologised
6 Let me pay
7 Billy is thinking

for his mistake.
about the holidays.
for a train to London.
to the hotel.
for our tickets.
to her walkman.
for the money.

24.2 **Complete these sentences with a preposition and an appropriate noun or pronoun.**

1 Joanna can't read yet but she likes looking ......at books.....
2 A nurse looks ....
3 I can't find my glasses? Could you help me look ....?
4 It's my birthday soon. I'm really looking ....
5 Why are you looking .... in that way? Is my face dirty?
6 I don't like my job very much. I'm looking ....
7 Alex is going to France in July. He is looking ....
8 I often look .... when their parents go out.

24.3 **Fill the gaps with a preposition.**

Anne has got used (1)......... her new job and is doing well there. She is very good (2)........ talking to customers. She always listens (3)........ them. She is very interested (4)........ sport and she belongs (5)........ a tennis club and a swimming club. Her parents were very proud (6)........ her when she won a medal for swimming last year.

24.4 **Hiroshi is a visitor from Japan. Make sentences about what he found strange, at first, in Britain.**

1 driving on the left ✓ Hiroshi was used to driving on the left.
2 speaking English every day ✗ He wasn't used to speaking English every day.
3 eating British food ✗
4 traffic jams ✓
5 expensive shops ✓
6 British money ✗

24.5 **Answer these questions about *yourself*.**

1 What were you good at at school? What were you bad at?
2 What do you usually ask for when you go to a café?
3 What are you proud of?
4 What are you afraid of?
5 What kind of music do you like listening to?
6 What are you looking forward to?
7 Do you belong to any clubs?
8 Are you used to eating different kinds of food?

25 Prefixes

Prefixes (at the beginning of words) can help you to understand what a new word means. Here are some common prefixes.

prefix	*meaning*	*examples*
ex (+noun)	was but not now	ex-wife, ex-president
half (+noun or adjective)	50% of something	half-price, half-hour
in, im (+adjective)	not	informal, impossible
non (+adjective or noun)	not	non-smoking
pre	before	pre-school
re (+verb)	again	redo, rewrite
un (+adjective or noun)	not	unhappy, unsafe

An **ex-wife** is a wife who is now divorced.
President Gorbachev is an **ex-President** of Russia.
A **half-hour** journey is a journey of 30 minutes.
Something that cost £10 yesterday and costs £5 today is **half-price**.
Informal clothes are clothes like jeans and trainers. Formal clothes are things like a suit.
If something is **impossible**, you can't do it. It is impossible to read with your eyes closed.
A **non-smoking** room is a room where people may not smoke.
Pre-school children are children who are still too young to go to school.
To **redo** something is to do it a second time and to **rewrite** something is to write it a second time.
Unhappy means sad, the opposite of happy.
Unsafe means dangerous, the opposite of safe.

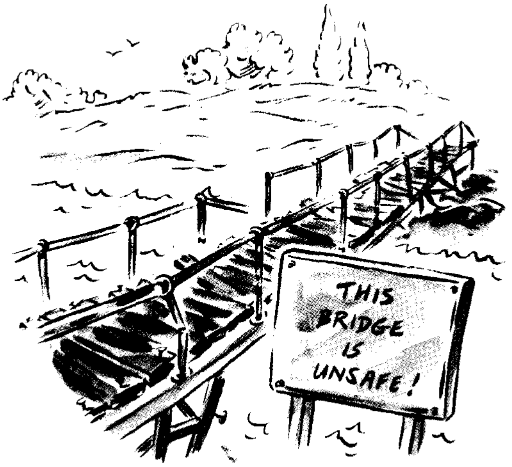
THIS BRIDGE IS UNSAFE!

Tip: Sometimes words with prefixes have a hyphen (-), e.g. a half-hour programme, and sometimes they don't, e.g. an impossible question. Use a dictionary when you are not sure if there is a hyphen or not.

Exercises

25.1 **Choose one of the words from the prefix table to fit in these sentences.**

1 This part of the restaurant is ..non-smoking...
2 I can't read this. Please .... your homework.
3 In .... English we often say 'Hi'.
4 I liked school but my sister was very .... there.
5 I bought two T-shirts because they were .... in the sale.
6 Don't walk on that wall – the notice says it is ....

25.2 **Write your own sentences to show what these words mean.**

ex-wife ex-president redo
impossible pre-school

25.3 **What do you think these words and phrases mean? Look at the table on the opposite page to help you.**

1 an ex-husband a husband who is now divorced from his wife
2 pre-exam nerves
3 an incorrect answer
4 an unread book
5 to retell a story
6 a half-brother
7 an unfinished letter
8 a non-alcoholic drink
9 to reread a book
10 to readdress a letter

25.4 **Find one more example of a word using the prefixes in the table. Use a dictionary to help you. Write a phrase or sentence using your word.**

ex: My ex-boss lives near me.
half: You stop at half-time in a football match.

25.5 **Write a paragraph with at least eight of the example words from the table.**

25.6 **Find the negative forms of these words. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

1 possible impossible
2 comfortable
3 safe
4 formal
5 smoking
6 happy
7 polite
8 correct

26 Suffixes

Suffixes come at the end of words. They help you to understand the meaning of a new word. Here are some common suffixes.

suffix	*meaning*	*examples*
er, or (noun)	person	worker, swimmer, instructor
er, or (noun)	machine, thing	cooker, word processor
ful (adjective)	full of	useful, beautiful
ology (noun)	subject of study	sociology, psychology
ics (noun, singular)	subject of study	economics, politics
less (adjective)	without	useless, endless
ly	makes an adverb from an adjective	sadly, happily
ness	makes an abstract noun from an adjective	happiness, sadness
y	makes an adjective from a noun	sandy, sunny

He's a hard **worker.** He works 12 hours a day.
Her tennis is much better now that she has a new **instructor.**
She's a very good **swimmer.**
She was in the Olympic team.
We've got a new gas **cooker**
so the food should be delicious!

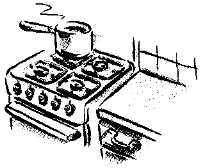

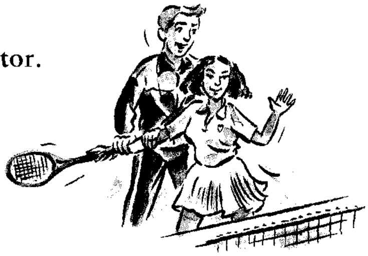

Thanks for the information. It was very **useful.**
What a **beautiful** photo. I think it will win the competition.

Studying **sociology** teaches you about society.
Studying **psychology** teaches you about people.

Economics is the study of money and finance.
Although he is a very good Member of Parliament, he has never studied **politics.**

This book is no help at all – it's **useless.**
I can't finish this book – it's **endless.**

He was late for work so he went **quickly** to the station.
The little child danced **happily** across the grass.

The mother was smiling with **happiness** as she held her baby in her arms.
They said goodbye with great **sadness** because they
knew they would probably never meet again.

That beach is very popular with tourists
because it is long and **sandy.**
It's a lovely **sunny** day – let's go to the beach.

Exercises

26.1 Which of the example words do these pictures illustrate?

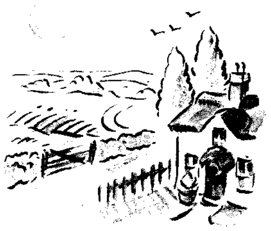

1 a s~~~~unny day......................

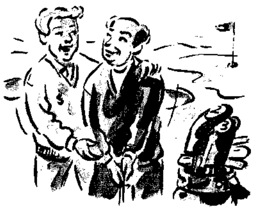

3 a golf i............................

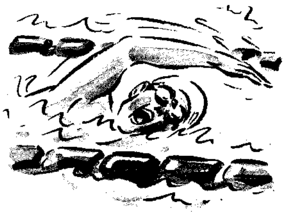

5 a s.......................................

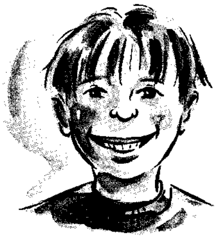

2 He's smiling h................

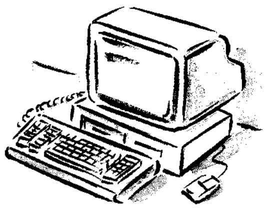

4 a w................................

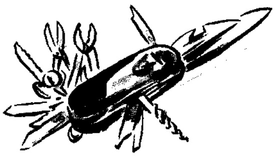

6 a u............................ thing

26.2 Match the adjectives with the nouns in the box. Some adjectives go with more than one noun.

electric cooker / guitar

1 electric
2 fast
3 beautiful
4 sandy
5 sunny
6 hard
7 useful
8 endless
9 useless

worker cooker beach weather car idea
book swimmer guitar smile picture fun

26.3 Match these books with their subjects – *sociology, psychology, economics* or *politics.*

1 The Role of the President in the US Congress
2 British Society in the 1950s
3 Banking Today
4 Why People Smile

26.4 Are there suffixes in your language? Write a translation or an explanation for the suffixes in the table.

26.5 What do you think these words and phrases mean? Use the information about prefixes and suffixes in the table to help you.

1 zoology the study of animals
2 a traveller
3 slowly
4 hopeful
5 rainy
6 painless
7 badly
8 a tin opener
9 mathematics
10 a footballer

27 Words you may confuse

This unit looks at words which are easy to mix up.

A Similar sounds

quite/quiet

This book is **quite** good. bad ——▶ quite good ——▶ good
My bedroom is very **quiet**. = silent / no noise

lose/loose

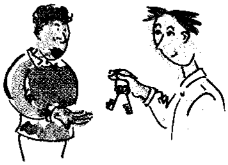

A: Why do I always **lose** my keys!
B: Here they are.
A: Oh, thank you!

If you lose something, you do not know where it is / you can't find it.

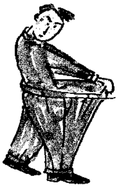

These trousers are very **loose**. (loose means they are not tight, because they are too big)

fell/felt

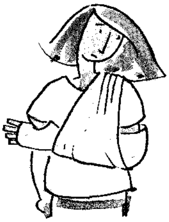

Fell is from **fall/fell/fallen.**
Yesterday I **fell** and broke my arm.
Felt is from **feel/felt/felt.**
I **felt** ill yesterday, but I feel OK today.

cooker/cook

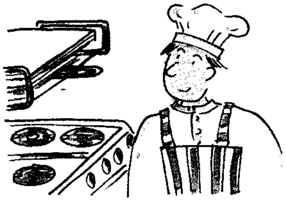

This **cooker** costs £500. (= the thing you cook on)
He is a very good **cook**. (= the person who cooks)

B Similar or related meanings

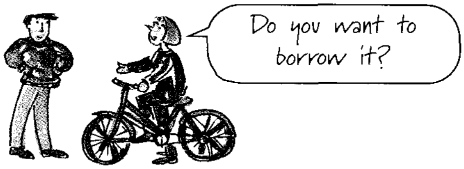

Do you want to borrow it?

lend/borrow

If you **lend** something, you *give* it.
If you **borrow** something, you *get* it.
Sam wants a bicycle:
SAM: Will you **lend** me your bicycle? (= you *give* it to me for one day/an hour, etc.)
or Can I **borrow** your bicycle? (= I *get* it from you)
RITA: Yes, take it.
SAM: Thanks.

check/control

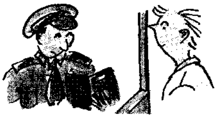

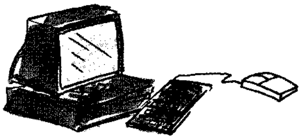

The passport officer **checked** my passport. (= looked at it)
The mouse **controls** the computer. (= tells it what to do)

C Other words often mixed up

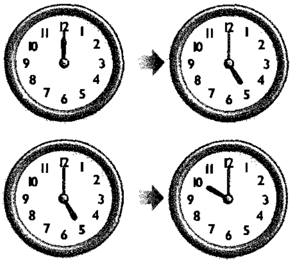

In English the **afternoon** is from about 12 o'clock till 5 or 6 p.m.
The **evening** is from 5 or 6 p.m. until about 9 or 10 p.m.
After 9 or 10 p.m. it is the **night**.
They're **waiting for** the bus.
I **hope** I pass my exams. (= I really want to pass)
I have not studied; I **expect** I'll fail my exams. (= it's probable)

Exercises

27.1 **Fill the gaps with words from A opposite. The first letter is given.**

1 Please be ..quiet... The baby is sleeping.
2 If you l.................... your passport you must call the Embassy.
3 I f.................... tired this morning, but I am OK now.
4 We are going to buy a c.................... for our new kitchen.
5 She f.................... and broke her leg. She had to go to hospital.
6 It's q.................... cold today.
7 These shoes are very l.................... I need smaller ones.
8 My sister is a good c.................... I love eating at her house.

27.2 **Put a tick in the right box for each word. Look at the example.**

word	*sounds like?*	*yes* (✓)	*sounds like?*	*yes* (✓)
lose	juice		shoes	✓
loose	juice		shoes	
quite	right		higher	
quiet	right		higher	

27.3 **Answer these questions.**

1 What does a mouse do to a computer? It ....controls it....
2 What does the passport officer do to your passport? He/She ....
3 If you want to use someone's camera for two hours, what do you say? Can I ....
....
4 What do you say to someone at 3 p.m.? Good ....
5 What do people do at a bus stop? They ....
6 What do you say to a friend if you need £1 for the phone? Can you ....
....
7 What do you say if someone makes too much noise? Please be ....

27.4 **Answer these questions for *yourself*.**

1 Are you expecting any visitors today?
2 What do you hope to do with this book?
3 Do you borrow things from your friends? What things?
4 Would you lend your best friend £200?

You can find other words that are often confused in these units in this book:

Do and **make**	Units 5 and 6
Take and **bring**	Units 8 and 9
Say and **tell**	Unit 13
Speak and **talk**	Unit 13
Rob and **steal**	Unit 57

28 Birth, marriage and death

A Birth

Diana **had a baby** yesterday.
It **was born** at 1.15 yesterday morning.
It **weighed** 3 kilograms.

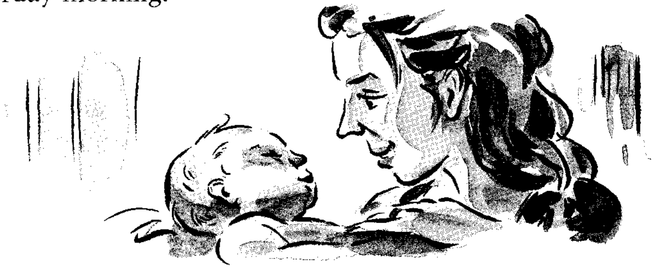

They are going to **call** him John – after John, his grandfather.
Grandfather John's **birthday** is June 16th too – but **he was born** in 1945!
The baby's parents **were born** in 1974.

B Marriage

If you do not have a partner, you are **single**.
If you have a husband or wife, you are **married**.
If your husband or wife dies, you are **widowed**.
If your marriage breaks up, you are **separated/divorced** (the marriage has legally ended).

The wedding

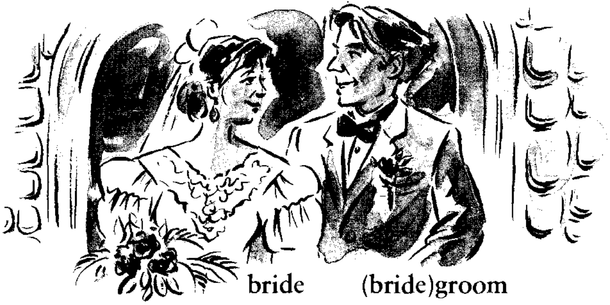

Bill and Sarah **got married**.
Sarah **got married** to Bill. [NOT ~~with~~ Bill]
They (got) married in **church**.
They went on **honeymoon** to Italy.
They **were married** for twenty years.

C Death

Then Bill **became ill**.
He **died** last year.
He **died** of a heart attack.
Bill is **dead**.

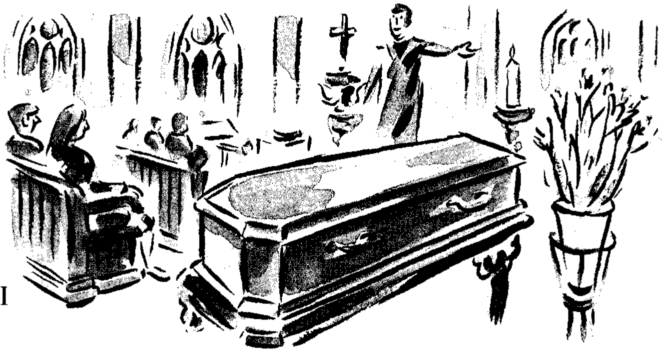

The funeral

Exercises

28.1 **When and where were you and your family and friends born? Write sentences about five people.** My mother was born in Scotland on July 4th 1947.

28.2 **When were these people born and when did they die? Write sentences.**

1 Christopher Columbus (1451–1506) Christopher Columbus was born in 1451 and died in 1506.
2 Elvis Presley (1935–1977)
3 Genghis Khan (1162–1227)
4 Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1519)
5 George Washington (1732–1799)

28.3 **Fill in the blanks with *died, dead* or *death.***

1 Jill's grandfather .... last year.
2 His .... was a great shock to her.
3 Her grandmother has been .... for five years now.
4 She .... of a heart attack.
5 Now all Jill's grandparents are ....

28.4 **Find a word or phrase opposite which means ...**

1 the name for a woman on her wedding day. bride
2 the name for a man on his wedding day.
3 what you are if you haven't got a partner.
4 to be X kilograms.
5 what you are if your marriage has legally ended.
6 a religious service for a dead person.
7 a holiday after a wedding.
8 what you are if your husband or wife dies.

28.5 **Fill the gaps with words from the box.**

in	after	of	to	born	on

(1).............. 1993 Anne got married (2).............. Robert Smith. Unfortunately, Robert's grandmother, Rosemary Smith, died (3).............. old age soon after their wedding. Robert and Anne were (4).............. their honeymoon when she died. Anne's baby daughter was (5).............. two years later. They called the baby, Rosemary, (6).............. Robert's grandmother.

28.6 **Write about your family. Use words and expressions from the opposite page.**

29 The family

A family tree for some of Anne and Paul Mason's **relatives** *or* **relations**.

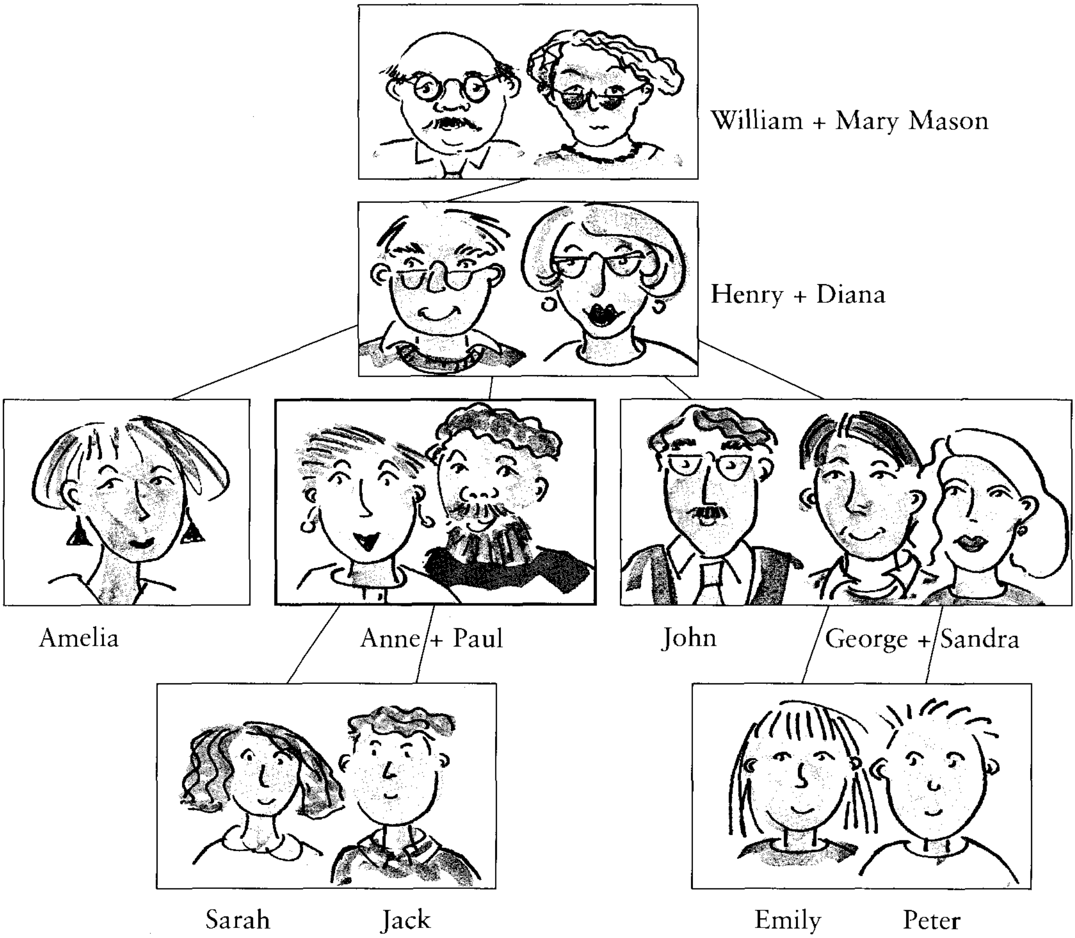
William + Mary Mason
Henry + Diana
Amelia
Anne + Paul
John
George + Sandra
Sarah
Jack
Emily
Peter

Paul is Anne's **husband** and Sarah and Jack's **father**.
Anne is Paul's **wife** and Sarah and Jack's **mother**.
Anne and Paul are Sarah and Jack's **parents**.
Sarah is Anne and Paul's **daughter**. Jack is their **son**.
Sarah is Jack's **sister**. Jack is Sarah's **brother**.
Henry is Sarah and Jack's **grandfather**. Diana is their **grandmother**.
Henry and Diana are Sarah and Jack's **grandparents**.
Sarah is Henry and Diana's **granddaughter**. Jack is their **grandson**.
John and George are Sarah and Jack's **uncles**.
Amelia and Sandra are Sarah and Jack's **aunts**.
Sarah is Amelia, John, George and Sandra's **niece**. Jack is their **nephew**.
Emily and Peter are Sarah and Jack's **cousins**.

Exercises

29.1 Look at the family tree on the opposite page. Finish the sentences.

1 Emily is Peter's ...sister.................................
2 Peter is Emily's ....
3 Anne is Emily's ....
4 Paul is Peter's ....
5 Diana is Peter's ....
6 Henry is Emily's ....
7 Peter is Paul's ....
8 Emily is Paul's ....
9 Sandra is Emily's ....
10 Sandra is George's ....
11 Sarah is Peter's ....

29.2 Draw your family tree. Then write sentences. Write about your relations. *Anne is my mother.*

29.3 The Masons have some other relatives. Finish the paragraph about them.

Fiona

Howard

Sandra has a brother, Howard. Howard is Peter's (1)............... Howard's wife is Emily's (2).................... They are all very good friends. But Henry has a sister, Fiona. Henry is Fiona's (3).................... Fiona does not get on well with William, her (4).................. but William loves Fiona's three sons who are his (5).................... Fiona's boys are Paul's (6).................. but they do not see each other very often. Then there is Anne's mother, Mrs Scott. She is Sarah and Jack's (7).................... She and Anne, her (8).................., like to play golf together.

29.4 Ask a friend. Then write sentences about your friend and his or her family. *Chen has one brother and no sisters.*

1 Have you got any brothers and sisters?
2 Have you got any cousins?
3 Have you got any nieces or nephews?
4 Have you got any grandparents?

29.5 Cover the page opposite. How many family words can you write down in two minutes? Check what you wrote carefully with the book. Did you spell everything correctly? Which words did you forget?

29.6 Write down the names of some people in your family. Then write down their relationship in English to you. Use a dictionary if necessary.

30 Parts of the body

A Head and face

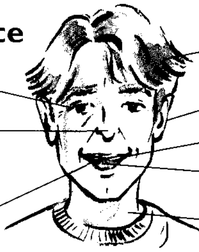
hair
eye
ear
nose
mouth
lip
tooth (teeth)
neck

B Arm and leg

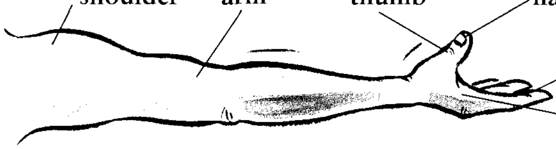
shoulder
arm
thumb
nail
finger
hand

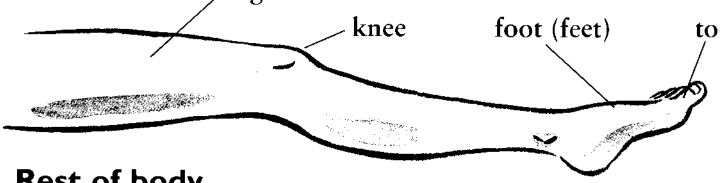
leg
knee
foot (feet)
toe

C Rest of body

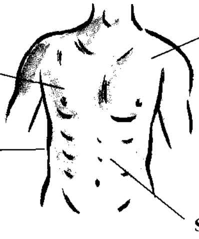
chest /
bust (*women only*)
skin
side
stomach

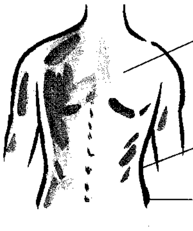
back
waist
hips

D Inside the body

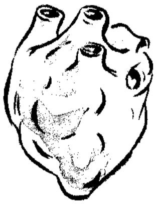

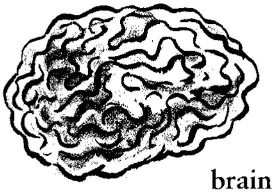

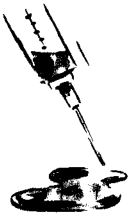

E Pronunciation problems

eye knee stomach heart
blood foot tooth

F Grammar

Usually we use my, your, his, her, etc. with parts of the body.
Jane is washing **her** hair. I have a pain in **my** leg.
[NOT Jane is washing ~~the~~ hair. NOT I have a pain in ~~the~~ leg.]

Exercises

30.1 What are these parts of the body?

1 eken knee
2 osen
3 rathe
4 hamcost
5 olderush
6 are
7 hotot

30.2 **Complete these sentences with words from the opposite page.**

1 A hand has five .....fingers.....
2 A foot has five ....
3 An adult has 32 ....
4 You smell with your ....
5 The .... is a symbol of love.
6 You hear with your ....
7 The child sat on her dad's ....
8 Your .... type can be A, B, AB or O.

30.3 Parts of the body words are used in different contexts too.

1 A chair has arms, legs and a back. What do you think they are?
2 This is a needle. Where is its eye?
3 This is a clock. Where is its face? Where are its hands?
4 This is a bottle. Where is its neck?
5 This is a mountain. Where is its foot?

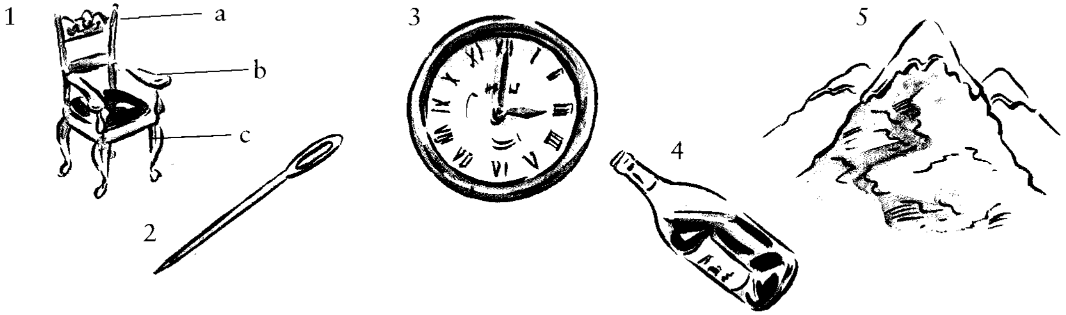

30.4 **Parts of the body are often used in compound nouns too. Complete these nouns with a word from the opposite page.**

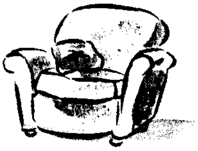
1 ....arm.chair

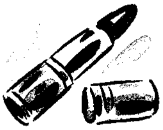
3 ....stick

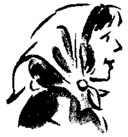
5 ....scarf

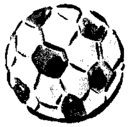
2 ....ball

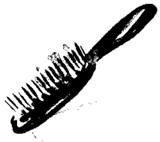
4 ....brush

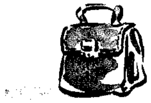
6 ....bag

30.5 **Write down six of the words from the opposite page together with the same words in your own language. Then write down six different words with a picture of what the word means. Next week, test yourself. Which group of words do you remember best – those which you learnt with a translation or those which you learnt with a picture?**

31 Clothes

A Clothes

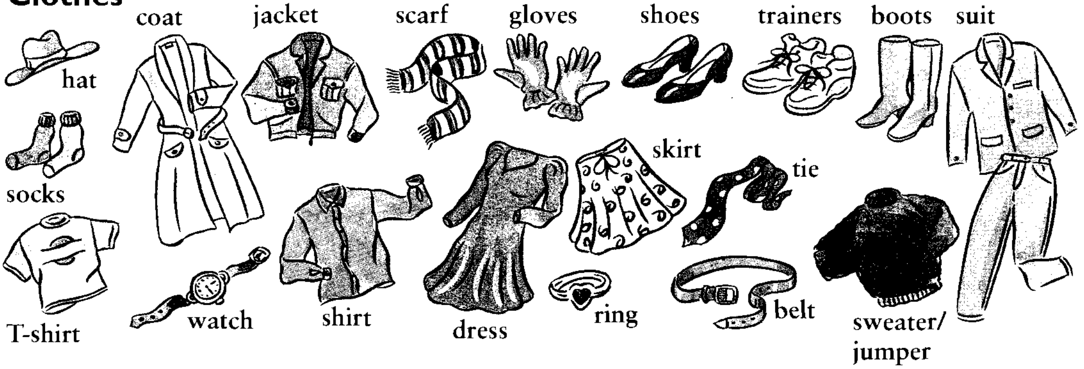
coat
jacket
scarf
gloves
shoes
trainers
boots
suit
hat
socks
skirt
tie
T-shirt
watch
shirt
dress
ring
belt
sweater/
jumper

B Plural words

These words are always plural in English. They need a plural verb.

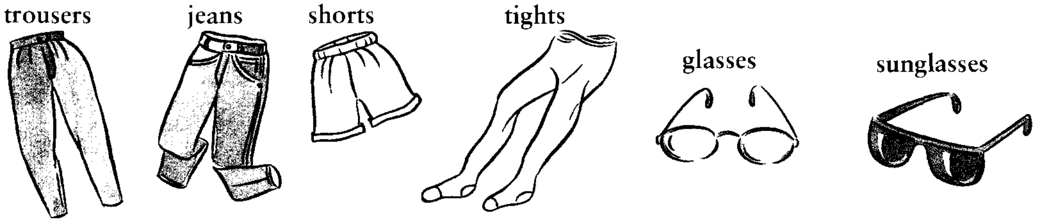
trousers
jeans
shorts
tights
glasses
sunglasses

My suit is new but these trousers are old. Her shorts/jeans/tights are blue.
Note: You say: a pair of shorts/glasses/trousers, etc.

C Verbs

You **wear** clothes but you **carry** things. [NOT you ~~use~~ clothes]

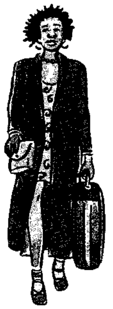

Naomi **is wearing** a long red coat. She's **carrying** a suitcase and a small handbag.
You can also say: Naomi **has (got)** a red coat **on**.
You **carry** a briefcase and an umbrella.

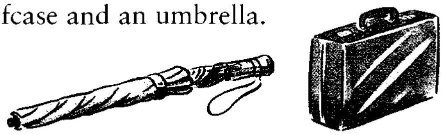

In the morning you **get dressed** or **put** your clothes **on**. At night you **get undressed** or **take your clothes off**.

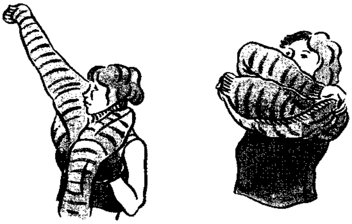

Tip: Can you name all the clothes you usually wear? If not, use a dictionary to help you find the words you need.

Exercises

31.1 **Put these words into one or both columns.**

coat jacket dress tie belt
shoes watch suit skirt
shirt ring trousers sweater
T-shirt handbag briefcase

men	*women*
coat	coat

31.2 **Match the part of the body with the item of clothing.**

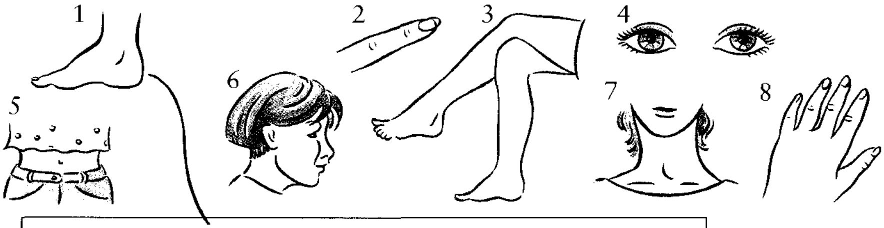

scarf belt shoe hat glove glasses ring tights

31.3 **Choose one of the verbs in the box and put it in the right form.**

be wear carry have

1 John's jeans ....are...... blue and his T-shirt .... red.
2 Julia .... jeans and a T-shirt today.
3 Meena .... got a red coat on and she .... some flowers. Where is she going?
4 Sarah's dress .... old but her shoes .... new.
5 Last year John's trousers .... white. Now they .... grey.
6 .... this a new pair of jeans?

31.4 **Look at the picture and write the names next to the numbers.**

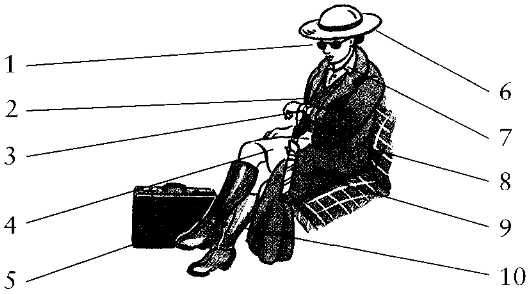

31.5 **Write a paragraph about what you are wearing today.**

I'm wearing a white T-shirt and a blue jumper. I've got a pair of black trousers on. I'm wearing blue socks and white trainers. I've also got a watch and a pair of glasses on.

32 Describing people

A Height (= how many metres?)

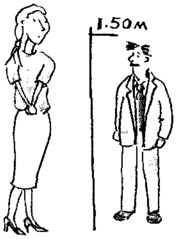

Mary Pimm is a very **tall** woman.
[NOT Mary Pimm is a very ~~high~~ woman.]

Tom Jakes is quite **short**.
[NOT Tom Jakes is quite ~~low.~~]

If you aren't tall or short, you are **medium height**.
To ask if someone is tall or short, we say:
How tall is Mary/Tom? She's 1.60 metres tall. / He's 1.48 metres tall.

B Weight (= how many kilos?)

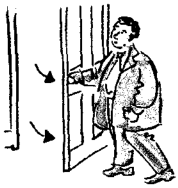

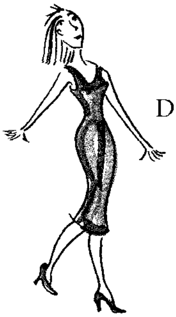

Dolly Ryan is really **slim**.
I was very **thin** when I was in hospital.
(**thin** is a more negative word)

A rather **fat** man opened the door. (**fat** is quite negative)
The doctor said I am **overweight**. (= more kilos than is good for me)
How much do you weigh? I weigh 62 kilos / 74 kilos, etc.

C Face and head

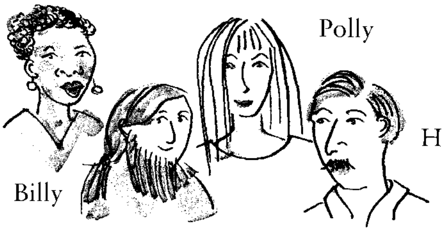

Sally has **dark** hair and **dark skin**.
She has **brown** eyes.
Polly has **blonde** (or **fair**) hair and **fair skin**.
She has **blue** eyes.
Billy has **a beard** and **long** hair.
He has **green** eyes.
Harry has **a moustache** and **short** hair.

You can also use **has got**, for example, Sally **has got** dark hair and dark skin.

D Age

My grandmother is 97. She's very **old**. My sister is 14. She's **young**, but would like to be **older**. My father is 56. He's **middle-aged**, but would like to be **younger**!

This hospital is for **elderly** people. (more polite than **old**)

E Looks: positive (+) and negative (-)

My sister is quite **pretty**. (+++) (usually girls/women only). She's a very **beautiful** girl. (++++) Jim's a very **handsome** man. (++++) (usually for men only) Bob's a rather **ugly** man. (---)
I'm not ugly or beautiful, I'm just **ordinary-looking**! (+/-)

Exercises

32.1 **Fill the gaps in the sentences.**

1 He's only one metre 52. He's quite ...short....
2 Very .... people are often good at basketball.
3 Models are usually ....
4 Is her skin dark? No it's ....
5 She's only 12. She's very ....
6 If I eat too much I'll be ....
7 My grandmother is in this hospital. It's a hospital for .... people. (don't use 'old')

32.2 **Ask questions for these answers. Use the words in brackets.**

1 ....How tall is your brother?....... (your brother)
He's about one metre 75.
2 Is ....? (Elena's hair)
No, her hair's dark.
3 Is ....? (Mike's hair)
Yes, it is quite long.
4 Are ....? (your parents)
Not really, they're middle-aged.
5 Is .... ? (his sister)
Yes, all the boys want to go out with her.
6 Why ....? (Sara – thin)
She has been very ill.

32.3 **Write sentences describing the people in these pictures.**

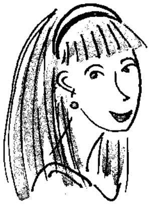
Suzanna

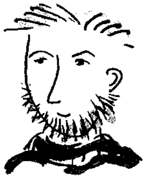
Jeff

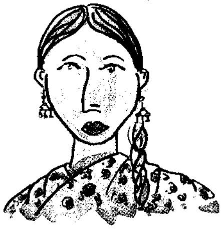
Caroline

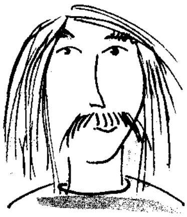
Dick

1 Suzanna's got ....
2 Jeff has ....
3 Caroline's got ....
4 Dick's hair is .... and he ....

32.4 **Write down the names of three people you know. Then write about:**

– their height (tall, short, medium height)
– their hair (colour, long, short, beard)
– their eyes (colour)
– their looks (ordinary, handsome, etc.)

33 Health and illness

A How are you today?

I am **very well**, thanks. I'm **fine**, thanks.
I **don't feel very well**. I must go home and rest. (I'll probably be OK tomorrow.)
I **feel ill**. Can you get a **doctor** please. (Perhaps a serious problem.)
That fish was bad. I think I'm going to be **sick**! (I want to vomit.)

B Everyday problems

Have you got an **aspirin**? I've **got** a **headache**.

I've got **toothache**. I need to go to the dentist.

I'm going to bed with a hot drink. I've **got a cold**.

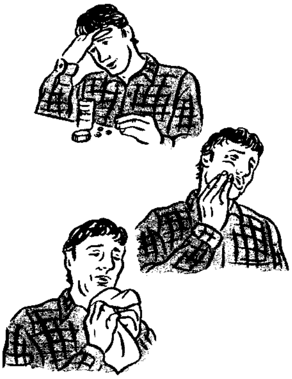

C Problems people have for many years / all their lives

I get **hay-fever** every summer, from flowers and grass. I **sneeze** all day.

My little brother has **asthma**;
sometimes he can't breathe.

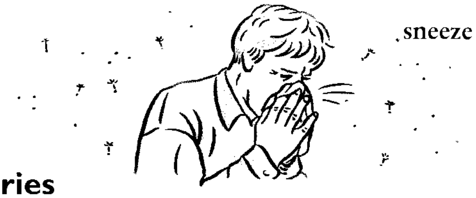

D Illnesses in hot/tropical countries

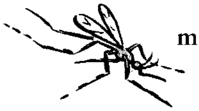

In some countries, mosquitoes can give people **malaria**.
The drinking water was bad, and many children had **cholera**.

E Serious illnesses

My father **had a heart attack**.
He is **in hospital**.
Cancer kills many people who
smoke ever year.

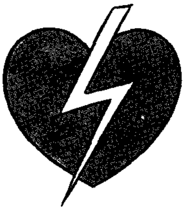

F How to keep fit and well

Have a good **diet**: eat lots of fruit and vegetables.
Get some **exercise**: swimming, jogging, cycling are good for you.
Don't have too much **stress**: relax after work, and don't panic about work!

Exercises

33.1 **Put these health problems in the three columns. Do you think they are *not serious*, *more serious* or *very serious*?**

cancer toothache cholera hay-fever a headache
a heart attack a cold asthma

not serious	*more serious*	*very serious*
a headache		

33.2 **Complete the dialogues.**

1 A: How are you today?
B: ……………………………………………
A: Good!

2 A: Are you OK?
B: No, ……………………………………………
A: Would you like to use the bathroom?
B: Yes, thank you.

3 A: I ……………………………………………
B: Shall I call a doctor?
A: Yes, I think you should.

4 A: ……………………………………………
B: Here's the phone number of the school's dentist.
A: Thanks.

5 A: Your nose is red. Have you got ……………………………………………?
B: Yes.
A: Have a hot drink and go to bed early.

33.3 **Answer these questions for yourself. Use a dictionary if you have to.**

1 What do you think is a good diet?
2 What sort of exercise do you like?
3 Do you have a lot of stress in your life?
4 Have you ever been in hospital?

33.4 **What illnesses are connected with ...**

1 a mosquito bite? malaria
2 bad drinking water?
3 pollution, traffic fumes?
4 grass, flowers, etc.?
5 smoking?

34 Feelings

A Love / like / hate

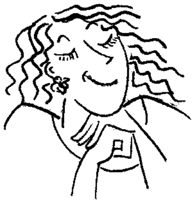

love

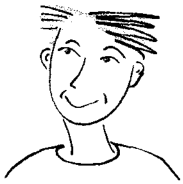

like

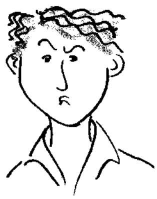

don't like
(dislike)

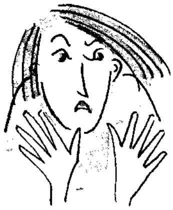

hate

I **love** my family and my best friend.
I **like** my job.
I **don't like** horror films. (I **dislike** (horror films) is less common.)
I **hate** my boss.

I **prefer** coffee **to** tea. (= I like coffee more than I like tea.)

I **want** (= I would like) **a new car**. (want + noun)
I **want to buy** a new car. (want + infinitive)
Note: I **want my father to buy** a new car. (verb + object + infinitive) [NOT ~~I want that~~ ...]

I **hope to do** well in my exam. (hope + infinitive)
I **hope (that)** my friend does well in his exam. (hope + that clause)

B Happy / sad / tired

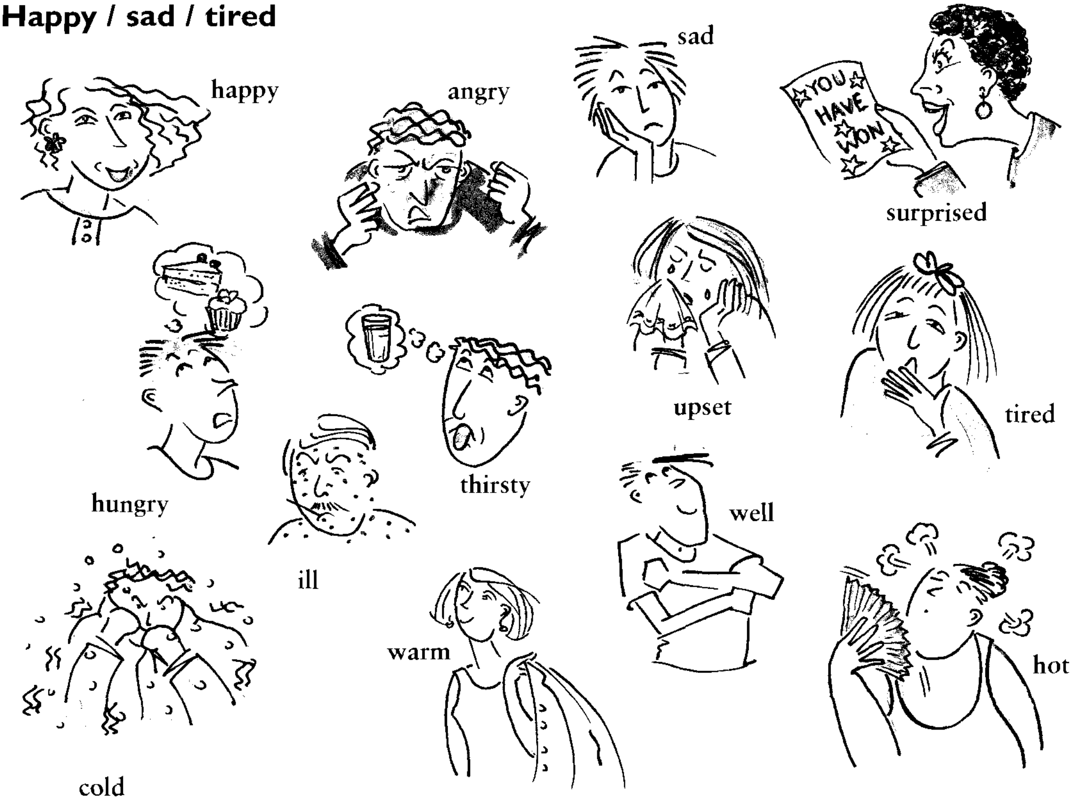
happy
angry
sad
YOU HAVE WON
surprised
upset
tired
hungry
thirsty
ill
well
cold
warm
hot

Exercises

34.1 **Do you love, like, not like or hate these things? Write sentences.**

1 chocolate
2 cowboy films
3 aeroplanes
4 tea
5 football
6 cats
7 cars
8 jazz music

34.2 **Which do you prefer – tea or coffee? Write answers as in the example.**

1 tea or coffee? I prefer coffee to tea.
2 dogs or cats?
3 sunbathing or sightseeing?
4 BMWs or Rolls Royces?
5 strawberry or chocolate ice-cream?
6 watching sport or doing sport?

34.3 **Answer these questions using *want* or *hope*.**

1 You're thirsty. What do you want? I want a cup of tea.
2 The lesson feels very long. What do you hope?
3 You're hungry. What do you want?
4 Your friend feels ill. What do you hope?
5 You're tired. What do you want?
6 You're upset. What do you want?
7 It is very cold weather. What do you hope?

34.4 **Look at the pictures. How do they feel? Use one of the words from B opposite.**

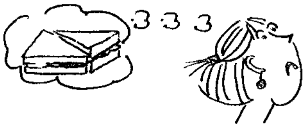

1 Diana ....is hungry.................................

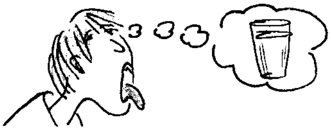

2 Fred ....

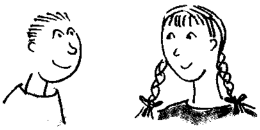

3 The children ....

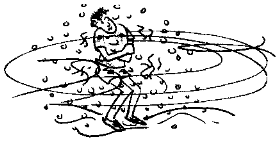

4 William ....

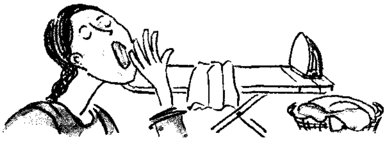

5 Mrs Jones ....

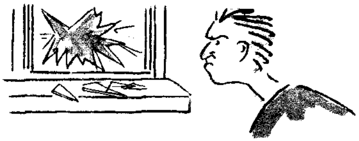

6 Mr Jones ....

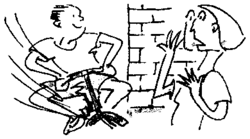

7 Fiona ....

34.5 **When did you last feel ...**

1 angry? 2 surprised? 3 upset?

I felt angry this morning when I read the newspaper.

35

Greetings and other useful phrases

A Every day

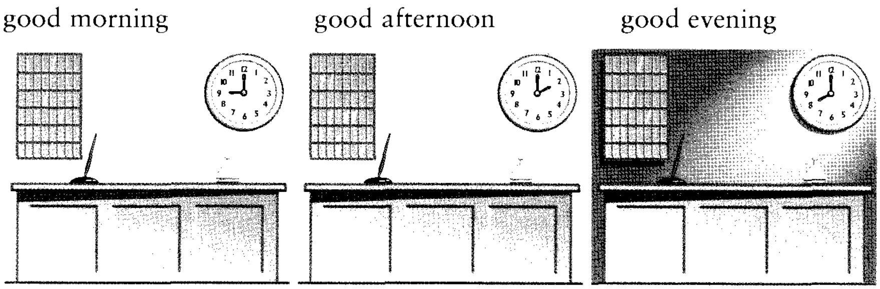
good morning
good afternoon
good evening

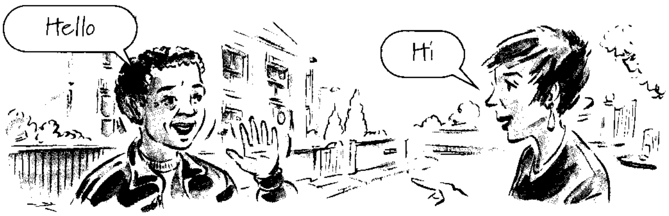

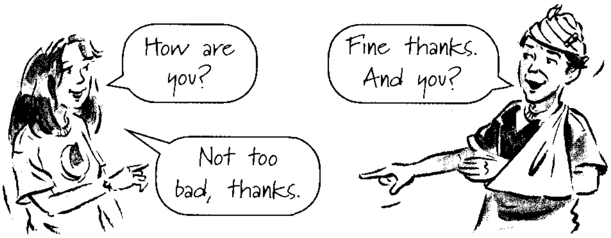
How are you?
Fine thanks. And you?
Not too bad, thanks.

When we leave someone we usually both say **Goodbye** and perhaps, **See you soon!** **See you soon** is quite informal.
When someone goes to bed, we usually say **Goodnight**. We sometimes also say **Sleep well.** Don't say **Goodnight** when you arrive somewhere, only when you leave.

If you ask for something you usually say **Please**.
If someone does something nice for you, you say **Thank you.**

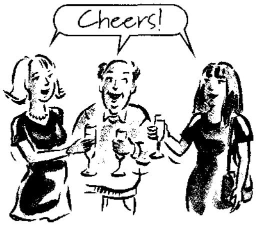

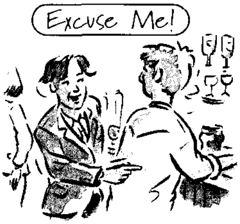

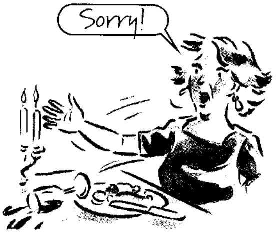

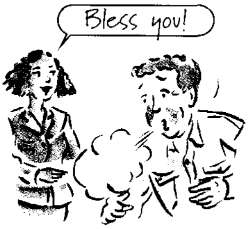

Special days

When it is someone's birthday we say **Happy Birthday** [NOT ~~Congratulations~~].
On (or near to) the 25th December (Christmas Day) we say **Happy** or **Merry Christmas.**

On (or near to) the 1st January (New Year's Day) we say **Happy New Year.**
If someone is going to do something difficult (for example, take an exam or have an interview for a job) we say **Good luck!**
If someone has done something special (for example, done well in an exam, got a new job, had a baby) we say **Congratulations!** or **Well done!**

Exercises

35.1 **Choose one of the phrases from the opposite page to fit the dialogues.**

1 A: *(sneezes)* Atchoo!
B: ....

2 A: I'm taking my driving test today.
B: ....

3 A: I passed my driving test!
B: ....

4 A: Goodbye.
B: ....

5 A: It's my birthday today.
B: ....

6 A: How are you?
B: ....

7 A: Hello!
B: ....

8 A: Here's your tea.
B: ....

35.2 **What is the person saying in the pictures?**

1
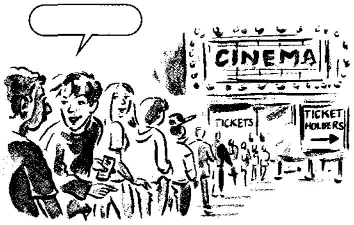

3
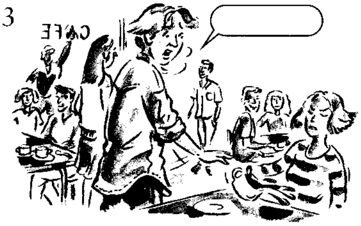

5
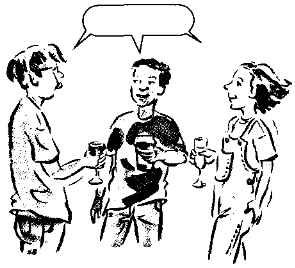

2
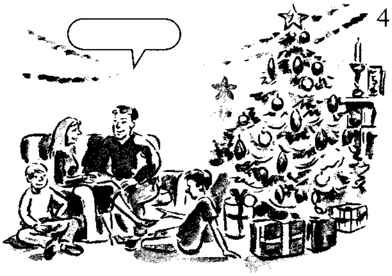

4
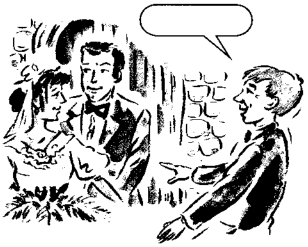

6
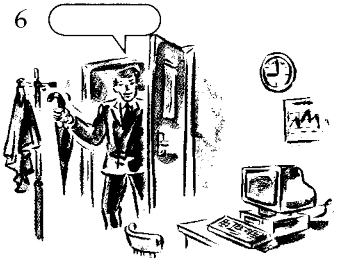

35.3 **What do you say? Choose a phrase opposite.**

1 You want to order a coffee. The waiter is reading the newspaper.
2 A friend buys you a drink.
3 A child says 'Goodnight' to you.
4 You answer the phone at work. It is 10.30 a.m.
5 You answer the phone at work. It is 3 p.m.
6 It is 2 a.m. on January 1st. You meet a friend on the street.
7 A friend spoke too quickly. You don't understand.
8 It is 24th December. You meet a friend on the bus.

35.4 **Ann and Bill meet in a bar. Bill usually says the wrong thing. Correct his mistakes.**

ANN: Good evening.
BILL: Good day.
ANN: How are you?
BILL: Terrible. I've got a bad cold and ...
ANN: It's my birthday today.
BILL: Congratulations.
ANN: Would you like a drink?
BILL: No, thank you. A coke.
ANN: With ice?
BILL: No, please.
ANN: Here you are. Cheers.
BILL: Bless you!

35.5 **Write a conversation using as many as possible of the phrases from the opposite page.**

36 Countries, languages and people

All the nouns and adjectives in this unit always begin with a capital letter, for example Africa [NOT ~~a~~frica].

A The Continents

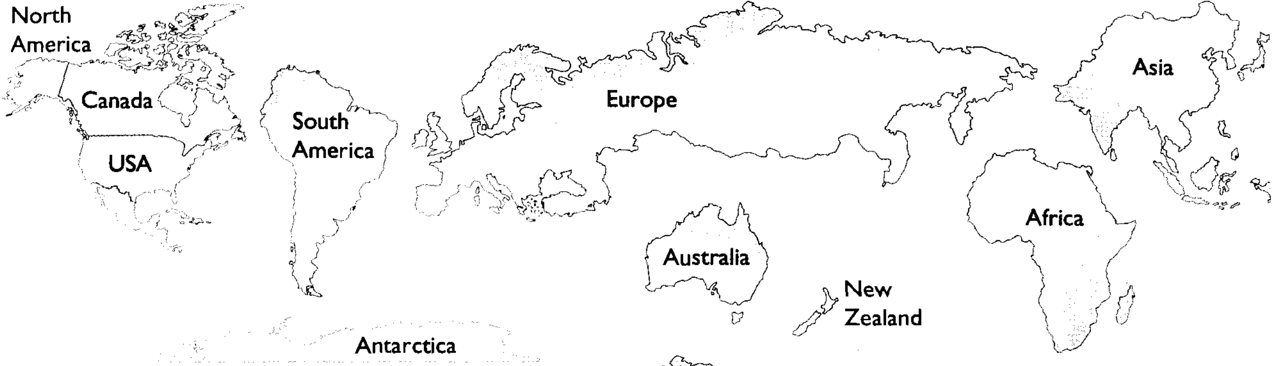
North America
Canada
USA
South America
Europe
Asia
Africa
Australia
New Zealand
Antarctica

B Countries

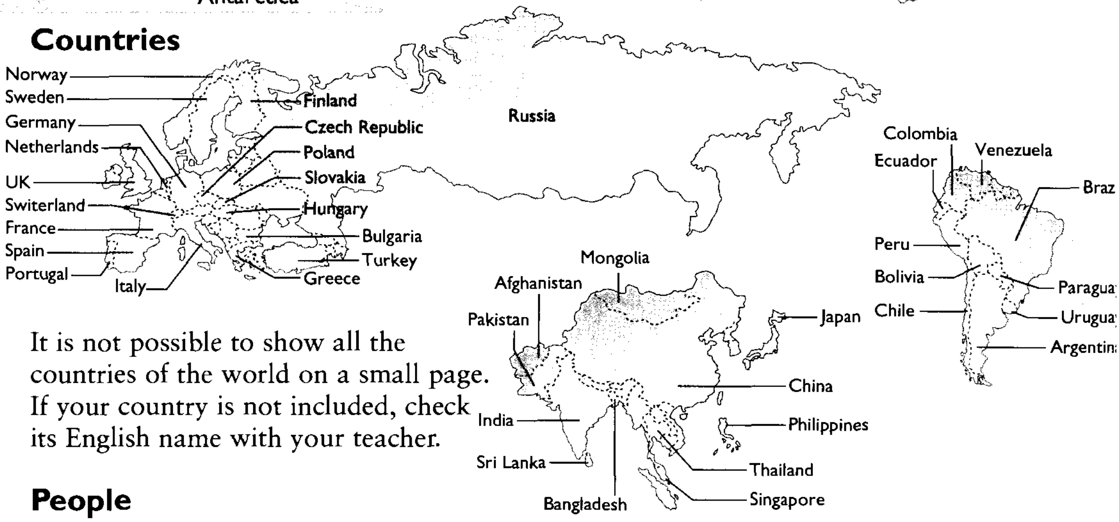
Norway
Sweden
Germany
Netherlands
UK
Switerland
France
Spain
Portugal
Italy
Finland
Czech Republic
Poland
Slovakia
Hungary
Bulgaria
Turkey
Greece
Russia
Colombia
Ecuador
Venezuela
Braz
Peru
Bolivia
Paragua
Chile
Urugua
Argentin
Mongolia
Afghanistan
Pakistan
Japan
China
India
Philippines
Sri Lanka
Thailand
Bangladesh
Singapore

It is not possible to show all the countries of the world on a small page. If your country is not included, check its English name with your teacher.

C People

notes	*adjective*
Most country adjectives end in *(i)an.*	German, Mexican, Jamaican, Russian, Canadian, Australian, Brazilian, Egyptian, Peruvian, Korean, Argentinian
Many country adjectives end in *ish.*	British, English, Irish, Scottish, Polish, Swedish, Finnish, Spanish, Turkish
A few country adjectives end in *ese.*	Chinese, Portuguese, Japanese, Vietnamese, Nepalese

Exceptions: French (from France), Dutch (from Holland), Swiss (from Switzerland), Greek, Iraqi, Thai, Icelandic, Arab, Israeli

D Languages and people

Words for languages are usually the same as the 'people' adjective: **English, French, Japanese, Thai, Spanish, Chinese, Norwegian** (from **Norway**), etc. There is one exception: **Arabic.**

Exercises

You may need to ask a teacher or to use a dictionary to help you with some of these exercises – it is not possible to include every country and nationality on the left-hand page.

36.1 In which continents are these places?

1 Mount Everest Asia
2 The Sahara
3 The Amazon
4 Wogga Wogga
5 The Volga
6 Mount Kilimanjaro
7 The Mississippi
8 Mount Fuji
9 Lake Titicaca

36.2 Which countries are these ? Write their names on them.

Brazil Spain Russia China Sweden Thailand

1
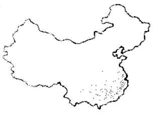

2
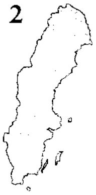

3
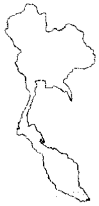

4
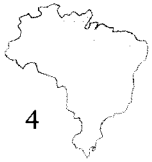

5
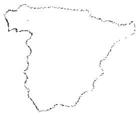

6
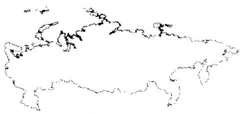

36.3 Where are these capital cities? Write sentences.

1 Tokyo Tokyo is the capital of Japan.
2 Rome
3 Canberra
4 Bogota
5 Cairo
6 Vienna
7 Edinburgh
8 Ankara
9 Buenos Aires
10 Madrid

36.4 Write down in English:

1 the name of your country.
2 the names of the countries next to your country.
3 the names of any other countries which are important for your country in some way.
4 the word for your language.
5 the name for people from your country.

36.5 Which country is different? (Think of the languages they speak there.) Write sentences.

1 England, Canada, Iceland, Australia In England, Canada and Australia they speak English but in Iceland they speak Icelandic.
2 Mexico, Brazil, Spain, Chile
3 Italy, Austria, Germany, Switzerland
4 Morocco, Egypt, China, Saudi Arabia
5 Switzerland, Canada, Scotland, France

36.6 What is the adjective for these countries?

1 Cuba Cuban
2 Vietnam
3 Korea
4 Thailand
5 Iraq
6 Germany
7 Egypt
8 Argentina
9 Holland
10 Spain
11 Peru
12 China
13 Britain
14 Greece
15 Australia
16 Poland
17 India

37 Weather

A Types of weather

sun
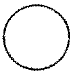

rain
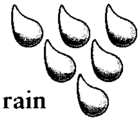

cloud
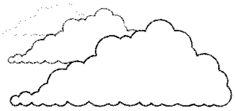

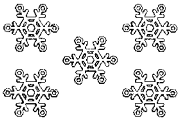
snow

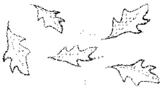

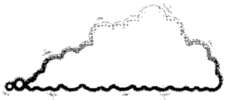

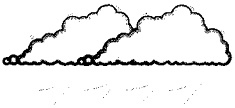

fog

wind

thunder

lightning

B Adjectives and verbs

noun	*adjective*
sun	sunny
rain	rainy
wind	windy
cloud	cloudy
snow	snowy
fog	foggy
thunder	thundery
lightning	–

It's a sunny day in Tokyo today, but it's cloudy in Hong Kong.
It's foggy in Sydney and it's snowing / it's snowy in Moscow.
It's raining in Barcelona but the sun is shining in Granada.

It's lovely weather today, isn't it! [NOT It's ~~a~~ lovely weather.]
It's a horrible day, isn't it!

You cannot say It's ~~winding~~ / ~~clouding~~ / ~~fogging~~ / ~~sunning~~.

C Other useful weather words

It is very **hot** in Mexico – it is often 45 **degrees** there in summer.
It is very **cold** in the Arctic – it is often **minus** 50 **degrees** there.
It is very **wet** in London – carry an umbrella when you go sightseeing there.
It is very **dry** in the Sahara – it doesn't often rain there.
A **hurricane** is a very strong wind.
A **storm** is when there is a strong wind and rain together.
A **thunderstorm** is when there is thunder, lightning, rain and sometimes wind together.

Tip: If you are able to see the weather forecast in English on television, watch it as often as you can.

Exercises

37.1 Match the words and the symbols.

1 snow 2 sun 3 rain 4 fog 5 lightning 6 wind 7 cloud

a
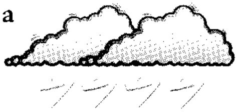

b
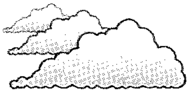

d
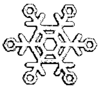

g
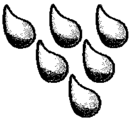

f
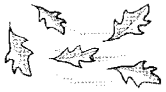

c
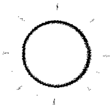

e
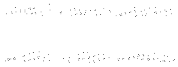

37.2 Look at the types of weather in A. Write them down in order from your most favourite to your least favourite.

37.3 Look at the chart. Write sentences about the towns in the chart.

	Hanoi	1 It is sunny in Hanoi.
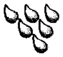	Hong Kong	2 It is raining in Hong Kong.
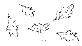	La Paz	3 It is ....
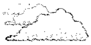	Paris	4 It ....
	Tashkent	5 ....
	Seoul	6 ....
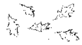	Warsaw	7 ....
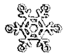	Washington	8 ....

37.4 Complete these sentences with a word from the opposite page.

1 The sun .... every day last month.
2 When it ...., I take my umbrella.
3 It is lovely .... today, isn't it.
4 When it ...., we can go skiing.
5 You see .... before you hear thunder.
6 It is 24 .... here today.
7 It is dangerous to be in a small boat at sea in a ....
8 It is very .... in Siberia in winter.

37.5 Are these sentences true about the weather in your country? If not, correct them.

1 It often snows in December.
2 It is usually 40 degrees in summer and minus 20 degrees in winter.
3 There are thunderstorms every day in August.
4 It is very wet in spring.
5 We never have hurricanes.
6 Summer is my favourite season because it is usually hot and dry.

37.6 Write about the weather where you are today. Use as many words as possible from the opposite page.

38 In the town

A The town centre

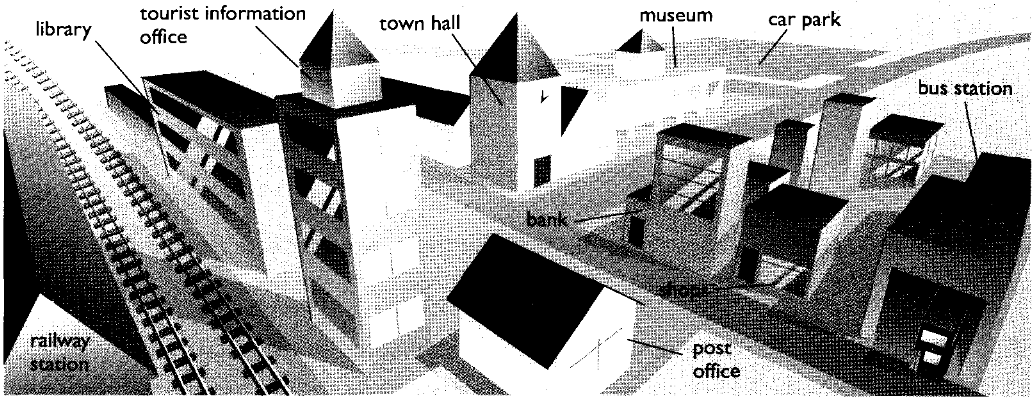
library
tourist information office
town hall
museum
car park
bus station
bank
shops
post office
railway station

You can **get a train** at the **railway station.**
You can **change money** at the **bank.**
You can **read books and newspapers** at the **library.** *or*
You can **park your car** in/at the **car park.**

B Streets and roads

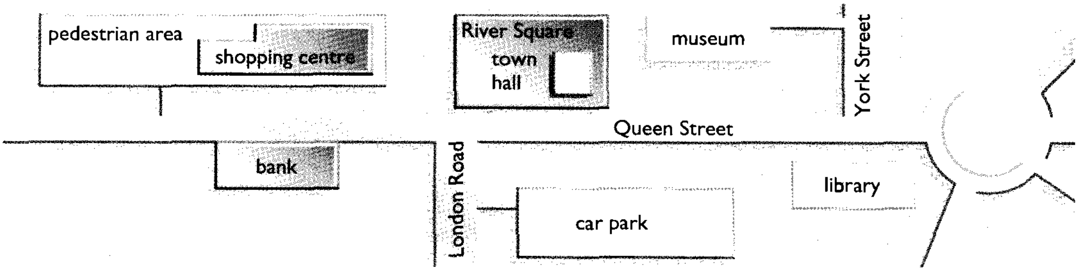
pedestrian area
shopping centre
River Square
town hall
museum
York Street
Queen Street
bank
London Road
car park
library

Asking for help

Where is the main square? **How do I get to** X street? **Is there** a pedestrian area here? Can I park here? **Excuse me, I'm looking for** the museum.

C People in the town

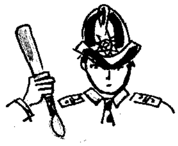

police officer

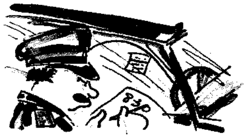

traffic warden

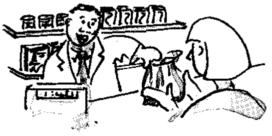

shop assistant

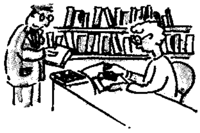

librarian

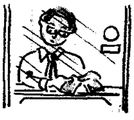

bank clerk

D Signs

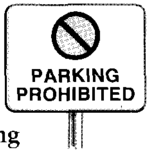
PARKING PROHIBITED

no parking

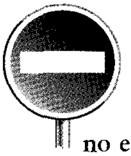

no entry

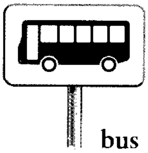

bus stop

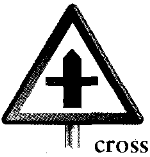

crossroads

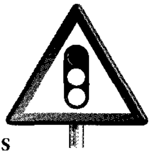

traffic lights

Exercises

38.1 Answer the questions.

1 Where can I get a bus to London? At the bus station.
2 Where can I get information about hotels?
3 Where can I change money?
4 Where can I park?
5 Where can I see very old things?
6 Where can I post a letter?

38.2 Look at the map on the opposite page. Ask questions.

1 ...Where's the library?...... Near the roundabout.
2 .... In the square.
3 .... Go left at York Street.
4 .... In the pedestrian area.
5 .... London Road car park is best.
6 .... There's a bank in Queen Street.

38.3 What words are these?

1 sumuem museum
2 nowt hlal
3 brilyra
4 rac prak
5 ywrlaai nttoisa
6 dtaeepsrin raae
7 frtafci dnearw

38.4 What are these signs?

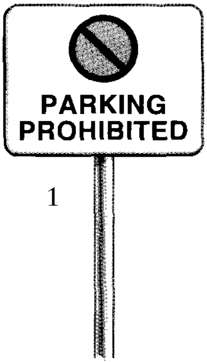

1

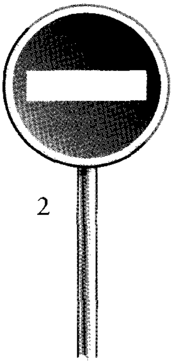

2

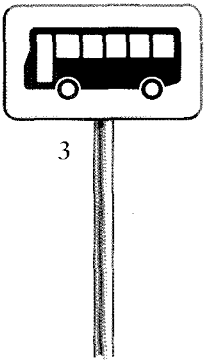

3

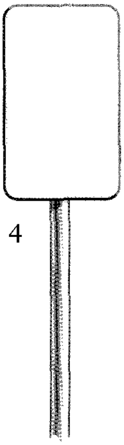

4

38.5 Write a paragraph about your town. Use the words opposite.

39 In the countryside

The **countryside** and the **country** both mean 'not the city'. **Country** can also mean a nation (e.g. France, China).

A Things we can see in the countryside

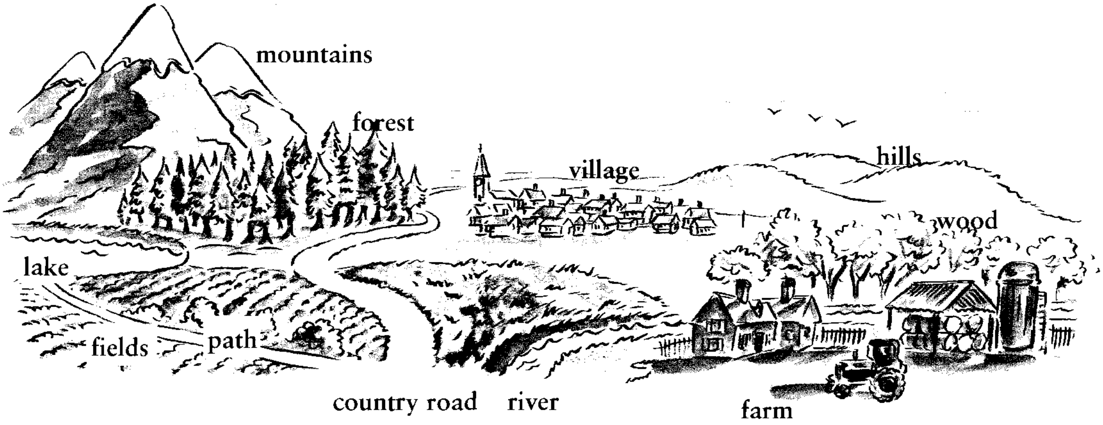

B Living and working in the countryside

In the countryside, people usually live in a **small town** (e.g. 6,000 people) or **village** (e.g. 700 people).
A **farmer** lives **on a farm** and works in the fields.
My friend lives in a **cottage** (small house in a village or out in the countryside).

C Nature and conservation

Nature means 'everything in the natural world' (= animals, birds, plants, etc.).
I love **nature**. [NOT I love ~~the~~ nature.]
I like walking **in the countryside**. [NOT I like walking in the ~~nature.~~ 'Nature' is not a place.]

When we talk about animals, birds, fish and insects, we can say **wildlife**.
There is wonderful **wildlife** in the north of the country.

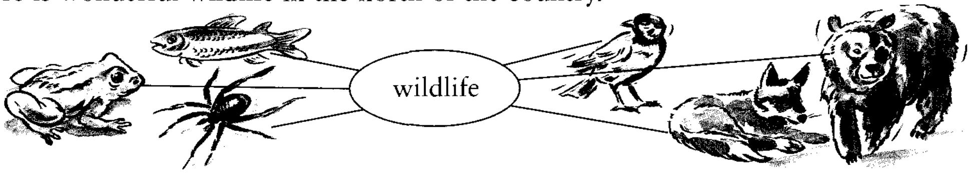

Near the village there is **a conservation area** (= place where wildlife and nature are protected).
In the south of the country, there is a **national park** (= very big national conservation area).

D Things to do in the countryside

You can take food and drink and have **a picnic**.
You can **go walking/skiing** in the mountains.

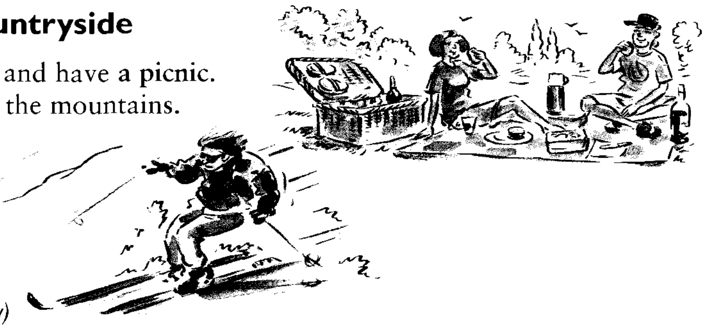

Exercises

39.1 Cover the left-hand page. How many names of things in the countryside can you remember?

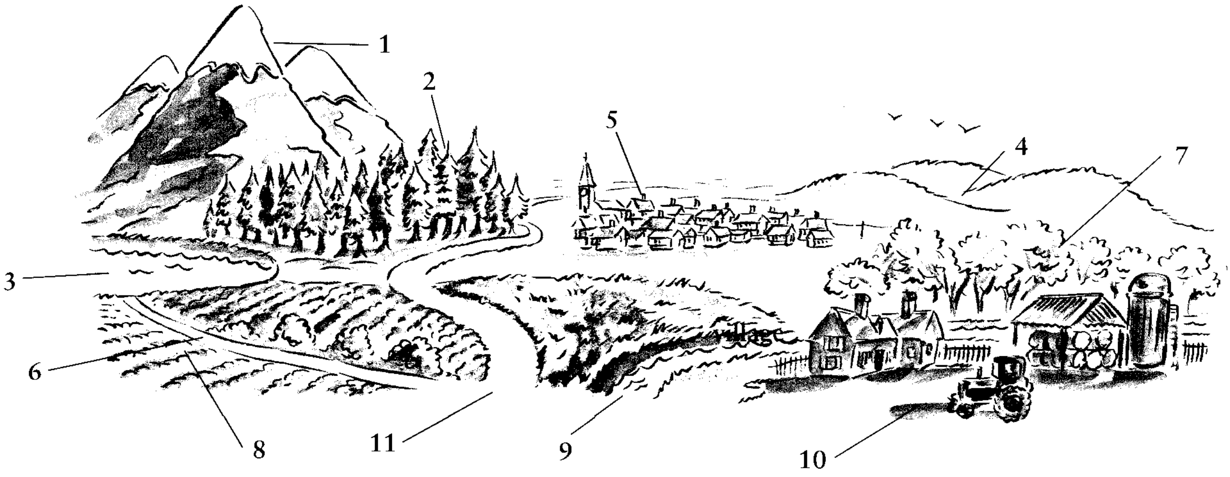

39.2 Fill the gaps in thse sentences.

1 My brother is a ...farmer........ He lives .... a farm.
2 It's not a big house; it's just a ....
3 The farm is near a ....; it has 800 people.
4 20 kilometres from the village there is a small .... It has 9,000 people.

39.3 Match the beginning of the sentences on the left with the ends of the sentences on the right. Draw lines.

1 We went swimming
2 We went walking
3 We went skiing
4 We saw some wonderful wildlife
5 We had a picnic

sitting by the river.
in the national park.
in the lake. The water was warm.
along a 5-kilometre path.
down the mountain.

39.4 Describe the typical countryside where you come from. Write four sentences about it. Use these questions to help you.

1 Are there any woods or forests?
2 Are there any hills or mountains?
3 Are there any lakes or rivers?
4 Are there many villages or small towns?
5 Are there farms?
6 Are there paths where you can walk?
7 Can you go skiing?
8 Can you see wildlife?

39.5 Put *the* in the sentence if necessary.

1 He loves .... nature.
2 She wants to live in .... country.
3 They are interested in .... wildlife.

40 Animals and pets

A Farm animals

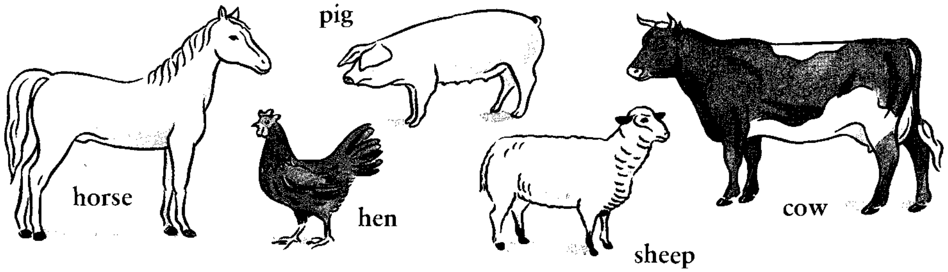
pig
horse
hen
sheep
cow

animal	*produce*	*baby*
horse		foal
cow	milk, leather, meat (beef)	calf
sheep	wool, meat (lamb)	lamb
pig	meat (pork, bacon, ham)	piglet
hen	eggs, meat (chicken)	chick

B Wild or zoo animals

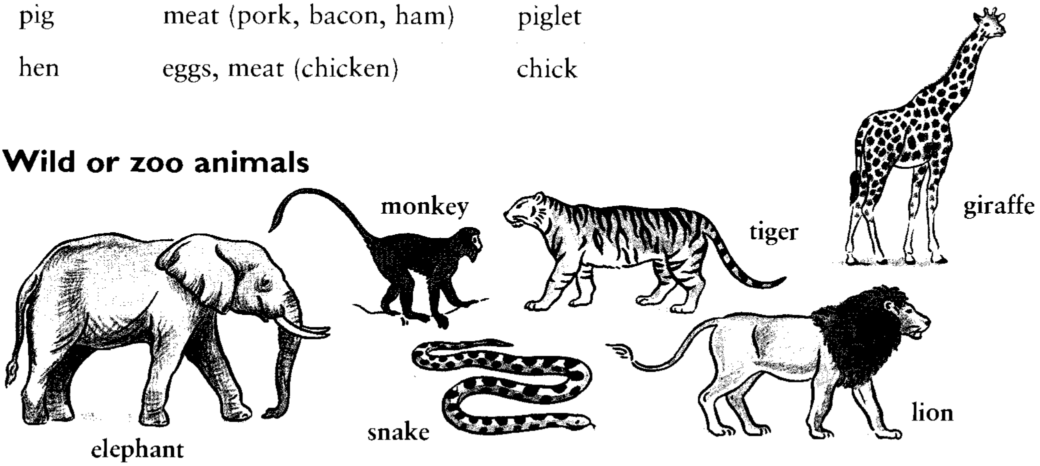
giraffe
monkey
tiger
elephant
snake
lion

C Pets

These animals are often **pets**.

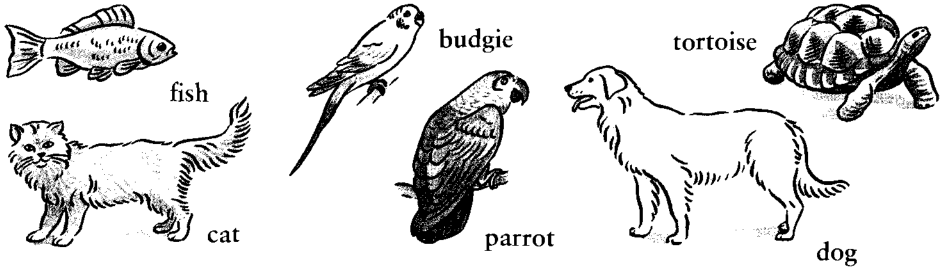
budgie
tortoise
fish
cat
parrot
dog

Parrots and budgies are **birds**.
You **take** your dog **for a walk** but you don't usually take your cat for a walk.

Exercises

40.1 Complete these sentences.

1 A .....tortoise..... goes to sleep in winter.
2 A .... has a very long neck.
3 ...., ... and .... are birds.
4 .... and .... are large cats.
5 You can ride a .... and an ....
6 .... swim and .... fly.
7 You can buy .... at a butcher's.
8 .... and .... give us things for breakfast.

40.2 Match the animal with its meat and with its young animal. Draw lines.

animal	*meat*	*young*
sheep	chicken	piglet
cow	pork	lamb
hen	beef	calf
pig	lamb	chick

40.3 Look at the animals opposite. Which of them ...

1 eat meat?
2 give us things that we wear?
3 produce their babies in eggs?

40.4 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword.

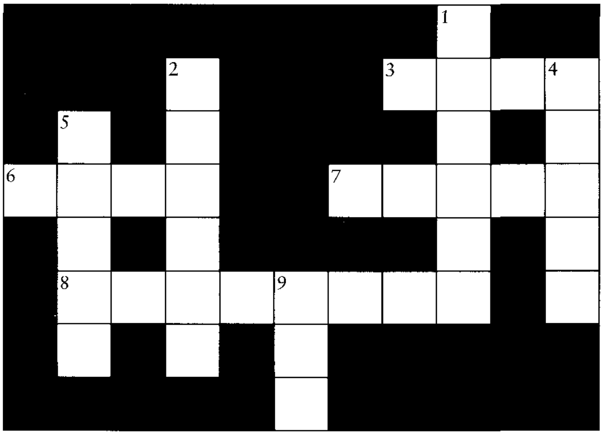

Across

3
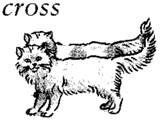

6
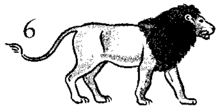

7
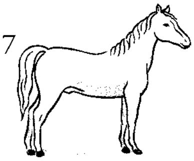

8
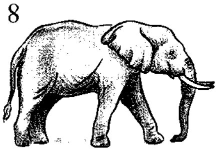

Down

1
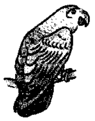

2
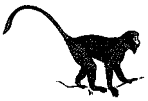

4
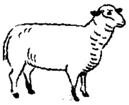

5
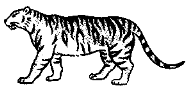

9
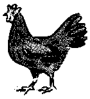

40.5 There are 17 different animals in the pictures on the opposite page. Cover the page. How many of these animals can you remember?

41 Travelling

A Types of transport

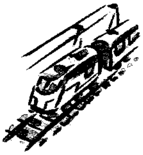
train

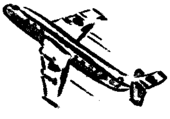
(aero)plane

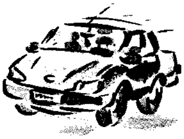
car

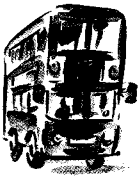
bus

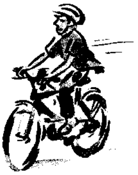
bicycle/bike

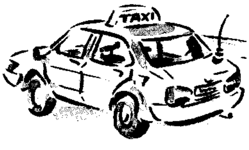
taxi

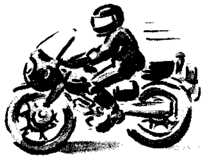
motorbike/motorcycle

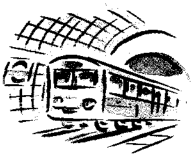
underground

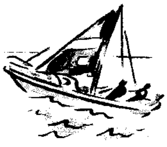
boat

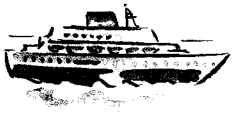
ship

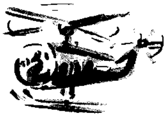
helicopter

B Useful travel words

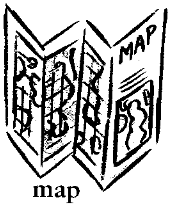
map

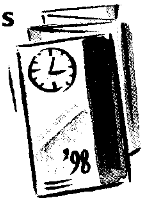
timetable

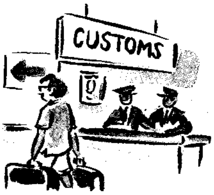
customs

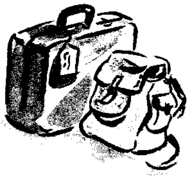
luggage

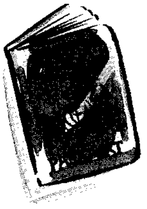
passport

Can I have a **single/return** (ticket) to Barcelona please? (single = Madrid → Barcelona; return = Madrid ⇄ Barcelona)
I'd like to **book/reserve a seat in advance.** (to make sure you have a seat)
How much is the (train / bus / taxi / air) **fare**?
Was the **journey** long? [NOT Was the ~~travel~~ long?]

C By train

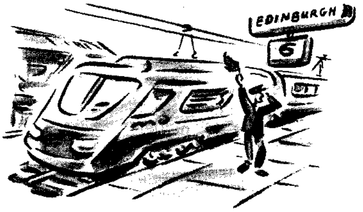

The train **arriving at** platform 3 is the 16:50 train to Paris.
The Edinburgh train **departs/leaves from** platform 6.
Is there a **buffet/restaurant car** on this train?
Do I have to **change trains** for Toulouse? (= get off one train and go onto another)

D By plane

You have to **check in** an hour before the plane **takes off** (= leaves the ground).
I **went through customs** but nobody **checked** my passport. [NOT ~~controlled~~ my passport] (See Unit 27.)
Give your **boarding card** to the **flight stewards** when you get on the plane.
Have a good **flight**.
The plane **landed** in New York at 5.30.

E By car

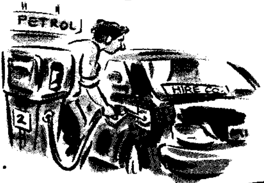

We **hired a car** for a week. We had to **fill it up with petrol.**
Can I **give** you **a lift**? I'm going into town.

Unit 14 (Moving) has some more useful words about travelling.

Exercises

41.1 **Match the words on the left with their definitions on the right. Draw lines.**

1 land	a a place to eat on a train
2 fare	b bags and suitcases
3 buffet car	c it says when trains depart and arrive
4 ship	d what you must pay when you travel
5 timetable	e planes do this at airports
6 platform	f it travels on water e.g. the *Titanic*
7 luggage	g where you stand when you are waiting for a train

41.2 **Can you answer these questions about the vocabulary of travel?**

1 What is the difference between a single ticket and a return ticket?
2 What does a customs officer do?
3 Does a plane take off at the end of a journey?
4 What do you do with a boarding card?
5 What is the difference between hiring a car and buying a car?
6 If you ask someone for a lift, do you want to go to the top floor?

41.3 **Here are instructions to get to John's house from the airport.**

When you arrive at the airport, take a number 10 bus to the railway station. Then take a train to Bigtown. The journey takes half an hour and you get off the train at the second stop. Take a taxi from the station to John's house.

Now write instructions for someone to get to your house from the airport.

41.4 **Make cards to test yourself. Write the word on one side of the card and a picture (or a definition or translation) on the other side. Look at the pictures (or definitions or translations). Can you remember the English words?**

41.5 **Complete the crossword.**

Across

3
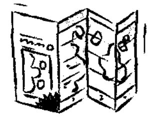

6
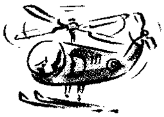

7
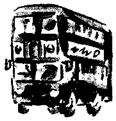

8
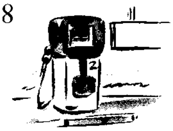

Down

1
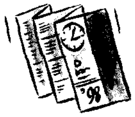

2
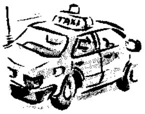

3
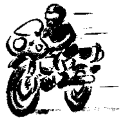

4
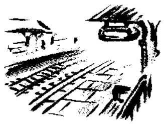

5
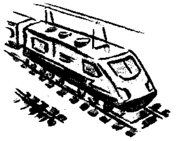

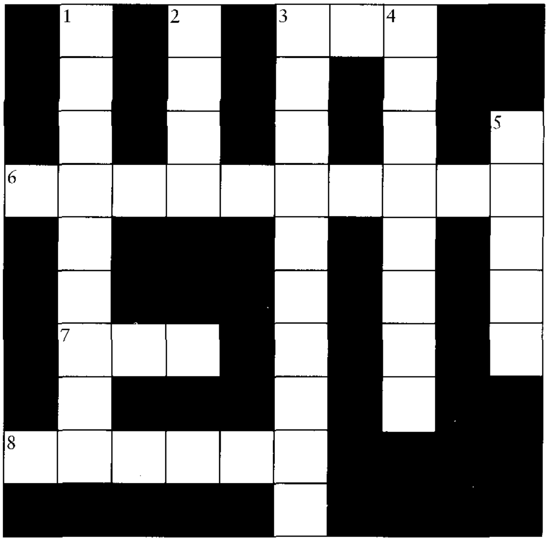

42 Notices

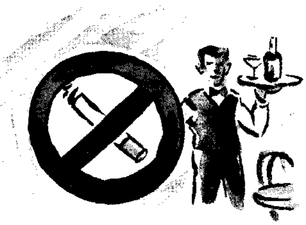

No smoking here.

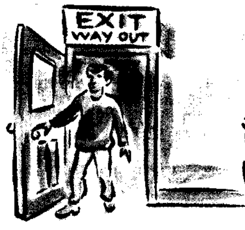
EXIT
WAY OUT

You go out here.

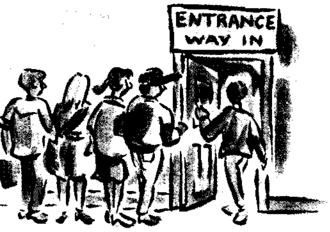
ENTRANCE
WAY IN

You go in here.

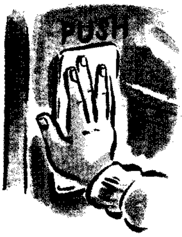

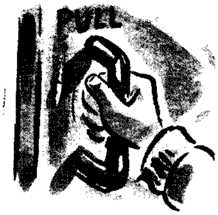

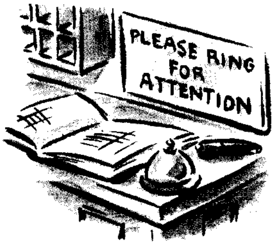
PLEASE RING FOR ATTENTION

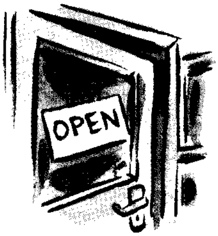

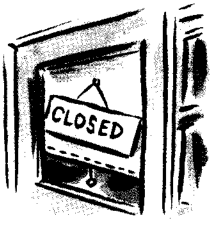

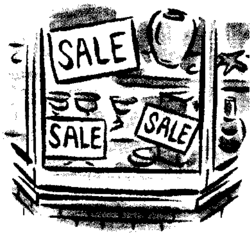
SALE
SALE
SALE

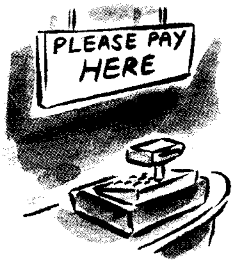
PLEASE PAY HERE

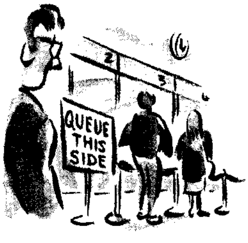
QUEUE THIS SIDE

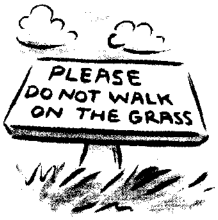
PLEASE DO NOT WALK ON THE GRASS

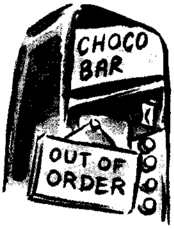
CHOCO BAR
OUT OF ORDER

There are lots of different signs for public toilets.

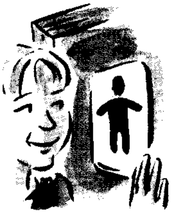

Men

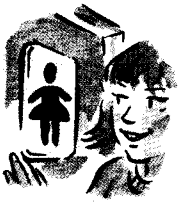

Women

Toilets WC

Tip: Look for other signs in English. Write down any that you see.

Exercises

42.1 Choose the correct letter.

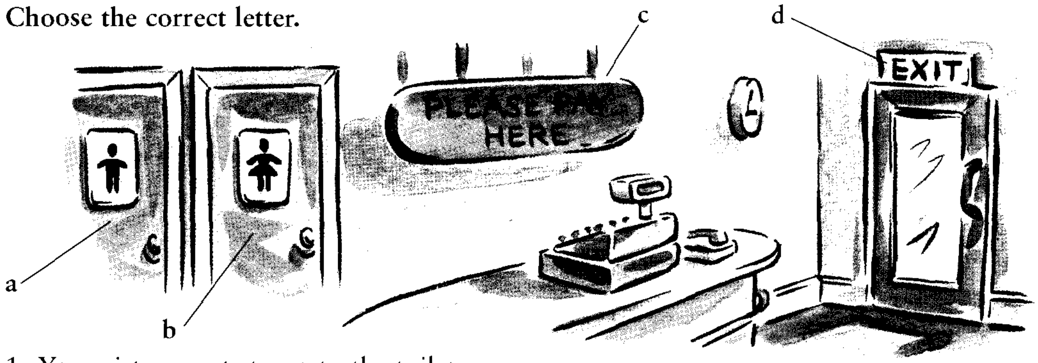
c
d
EXIT
PLEASE PAY HERE
a
b

1 Your sister wants to go to the toilet.
2 You want to buy something.
3 Your father wants to go to the toilet.
4 You want to go out of the shop.

42.2 Look at each of the notices on the opposite page. Write down a place where you can see each of them. No smoking – in a restaurant.

42.3 Look at the pictures and answer the questions.

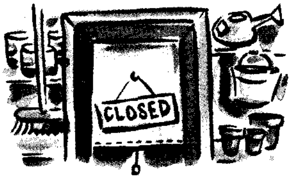

1 Can you go in now? No

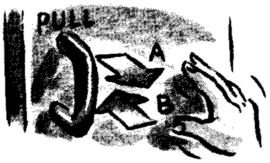

4 How do you open the door – a or b?

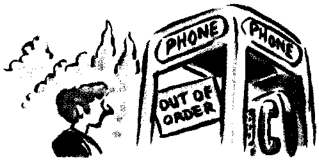
PHONE
PHONE
OUT OF ORDER

2 Can you use the telephone now?

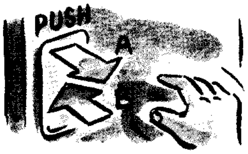

5 How do you open the door – a or b?

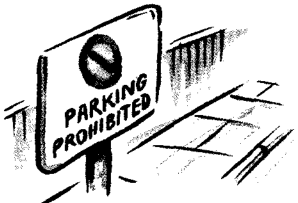
PARKING PROHIBITED

3 Can you park your car here?

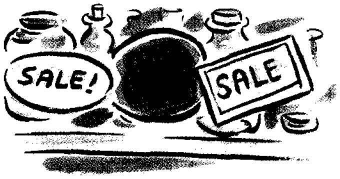

6 You haven't got much money. Is this a good time to go shopping?

42.4 Notices often give you information (for example, that a shop is closed) or give you instructions (for example, that smoking is forbidden). Put the notices on the opposite page into two columns – *Information* and *Instructions.*

42.5 Where can you find examples of signs in English in your country?

43 Food and drink

A Everyday food

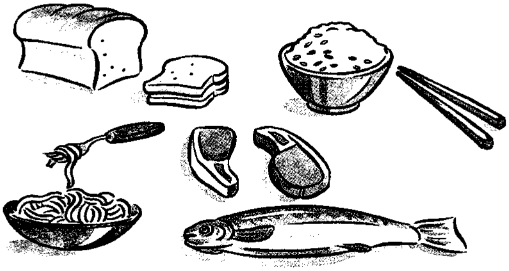

Do you want some **bread**?
[NOT Do you want ~~a~~ bread?]
In China, most people eat **rice**.
In Italy, **pasta** is very popular.
Many people eat **meat** or **fish** almost every day.

B Popular food / fast food

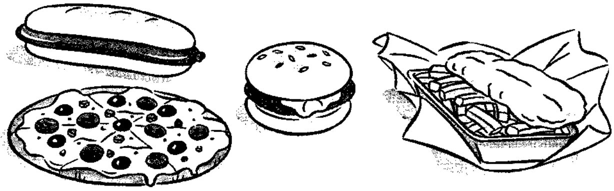

Most young people love **hot-dogs**, **hamburgers** and **pizzas**.

Most British people like **fish and chips**.

C Fruit and vegetables

Vegetables are good for you. **Fruit** is also good for you. (singular) [NOT fruit~~s~~]

Vegetables

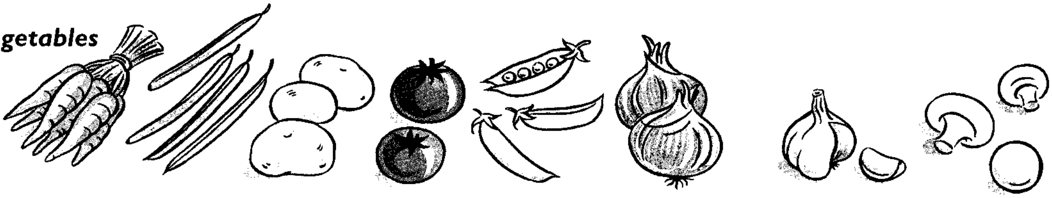

carrots beans potatoes tomatoes peas onions garlic mushrooms

Fruit

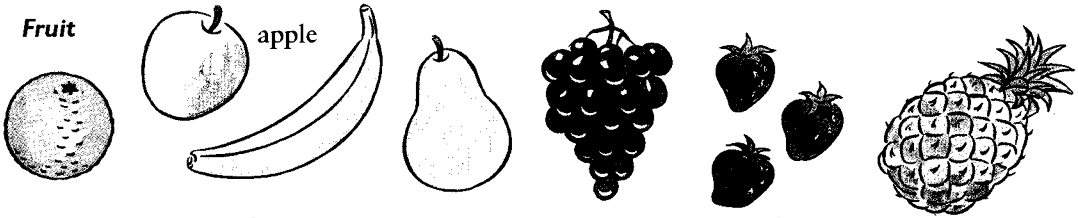

orange apple banana pear grapes strawberries pineapple

D Drinks

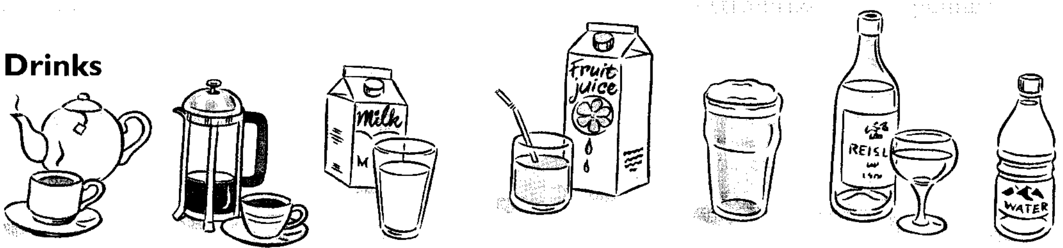

tea coffee milk fruit juice beer wine mineral water

Tip: Go to a supermarket. How many drinks and foods have English names on them? Try to learn some of them.

Exercises

43.1 **Complete the sentences. Use words from A and B opposite.**

1 ....Rice........ is the most important food in Japan.
2 .... and .... are very popular in Britain.
3 Chips are made from ....
4 Most Italian people love ....
5 Hamburgers are made from ....
6 A .... is a sausage inside a piece of bread.

43.2 **Put these words into two lists: fruit and vegetables, as in the example.**

beans pineapple grapes onions apple carrot garlic pear mushrooms

fruit	*vegetables*
	beans

43.3 **Write the names of these fruit and vegetables.**

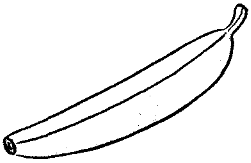

1 ....

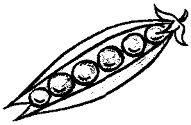

3 ....

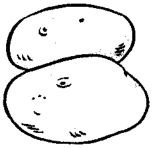

5 ....

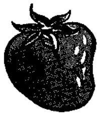

2 ....

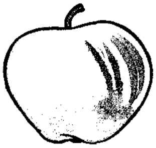

4 ....

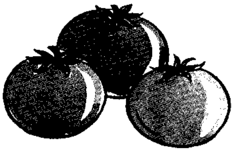

6 ....

43.4 **Here are the names of some drinks with the letters mixed up. What are they?**

1 eta tea
2 rebe
3 klim
4 fecofe
5 rituf eciju
6 nilemar retaw

43.5 **What are your four favourite foods? And your three favourite drinks? Are they good for you? Use a dictionary if the names are not in this unit.**

44 In the kitchen

A What's in the kitchen?

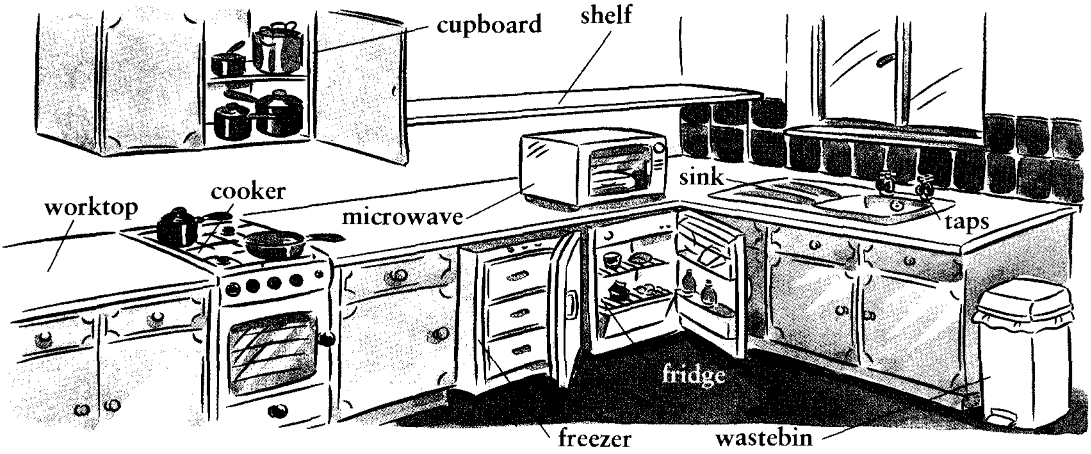
cupboard
shelf
worktop
cooker
microwave
sink
taps
fridge
freezer
wastebin

B Things we use in the kitchen

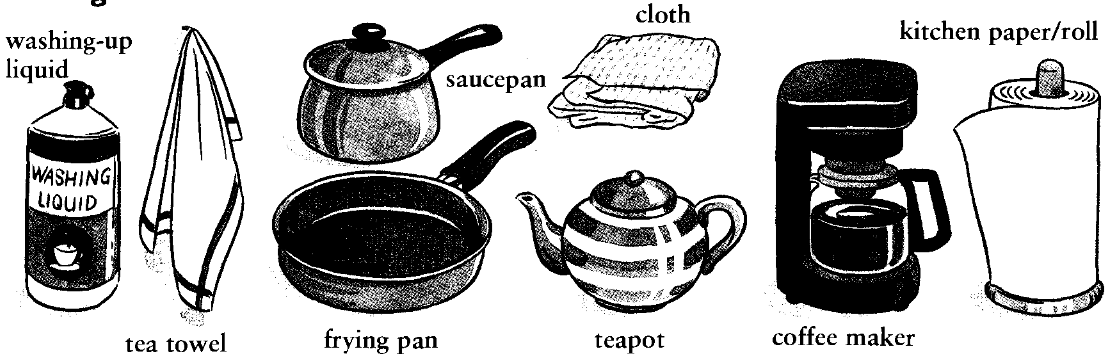
washing-up liquid
WASHING LIQUID
tea towel
saucepan
frying pan
cloth
teapot
coffee maker
kitchen paper/roll

C Things we use for eating and drinking

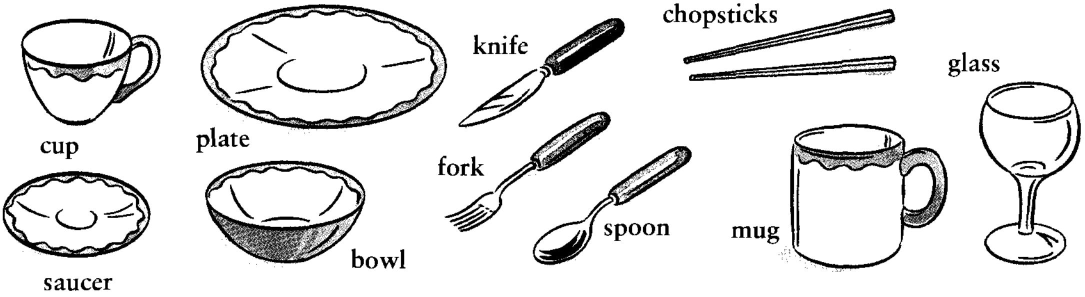
cup
saucer
plate
bowl
knife
fork
spoon
chopsticks
mug
glass

D Questions in the kitchen

Where can I find a mug / cloth / some kitchen paper?
Can I help with the washing-up / the cooking?
Where does this cup / plate / frying pan **go?** (where do you keep it?)
Where shall I put this cup / the milk?

Exercises

44.1 Tick (✓) *yes* or *no*.

	yes	*no*
1 I use a frying pan to drink out of.		✓
2 Washing-up liquid makes the dishes clean.		
3 The fridge is cold inside.		
4 The freezer is not as cold as the fridge.		
5 I turn on the tap to get water.		
6 A tea towel is for making plates wet.		

44.2 **Ask questions for these answers. Use words from the left-hand page.**

1 .... It's in the cupboard.
2 .... It's on the cooker.
3 .... Please put it in the sink.
4 .... Thanks. You can wash those plates, and I'll dry them.

44.3 **What do you need?**

1 To make coffee I need ...coffee, water, milk, a coffee maker, a cup, a spoon...............
2 To make tea I need ....
3 To fry an egg I need ....
4 To eat my food I need ....
5 To drink some water I need ....
6 To make my dinner in just two minutes I need ....

44.4 **Look at the pictures. Answer the questions.**

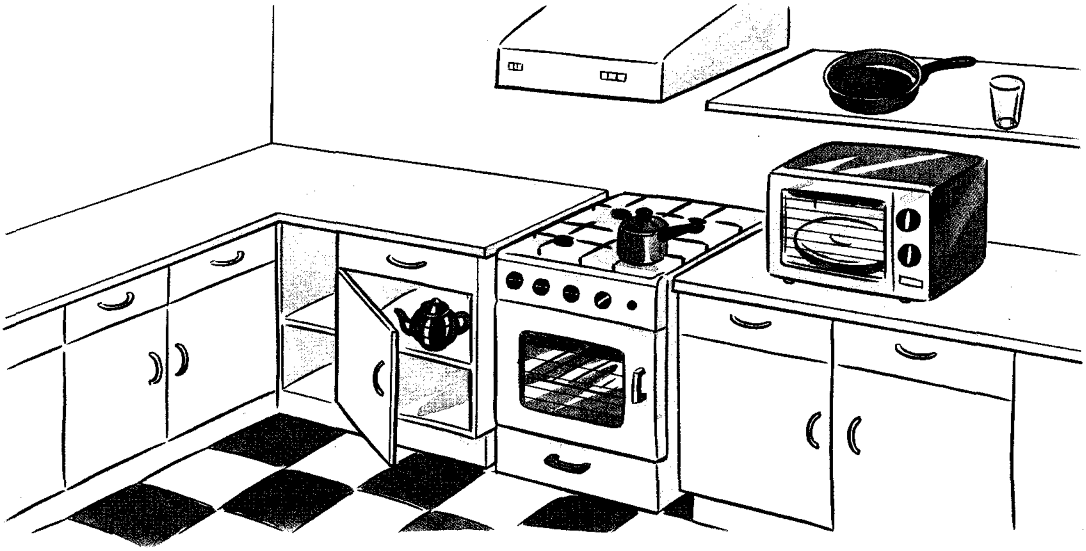

1 What's near the cooker?
2 What's on the cooker?
3 What's on the shelf?
4 What's in the cupboard?

45 In the bedroom and bathroom

A Bedroom

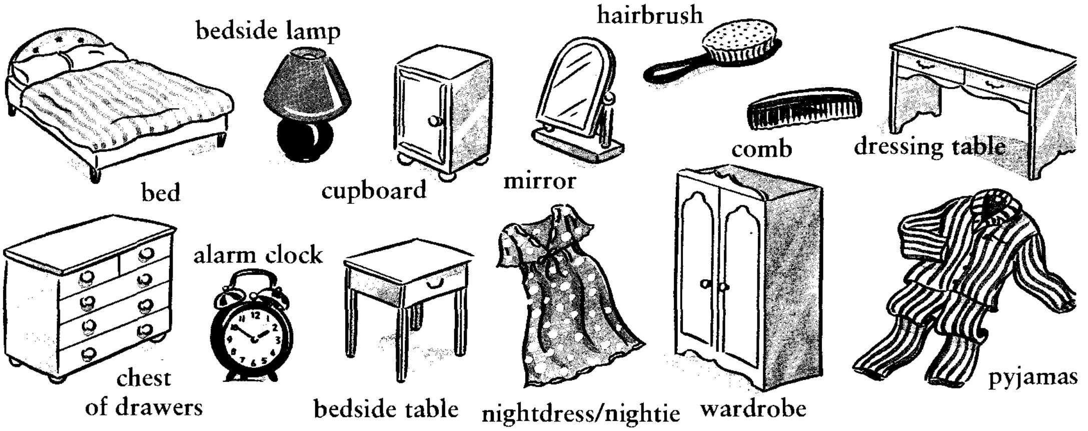
bedside lamp
hairbrush
bed
cupboard
mirror
comb
dressing table
alarm clock
chest of drawers
bedside table
nightdress/nightie
wardrobe
pyjamas

B Bathroom

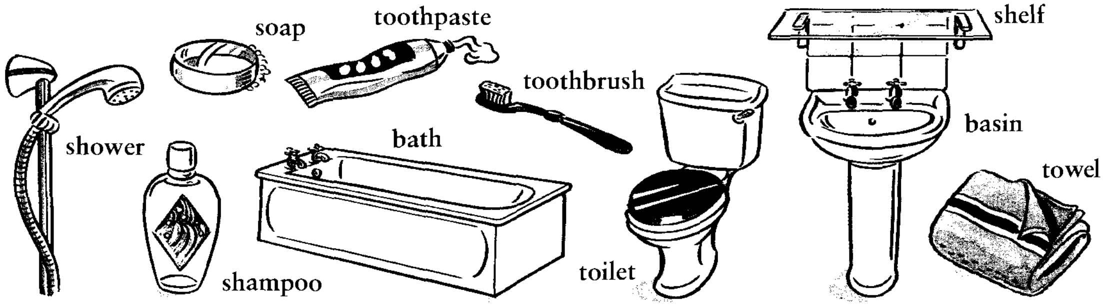
soap
toothpaste
shelf
toothbrush
shower
bath
basin
towel
shampoo
toilet

C Joel's routine

Joel goes to bed at 11 o'clock. He goes upstairs to his bedroom.
He gets undressed and goes to bed.
He reads for a bit. He turns off the light and falls asleep.
He wakes up when his alarm clock rings.
He gets up. He has a shower, cleans his teeth and gets dressed.
He goes downstairs to the kitchen for breakfast.
(See Unit 12.)

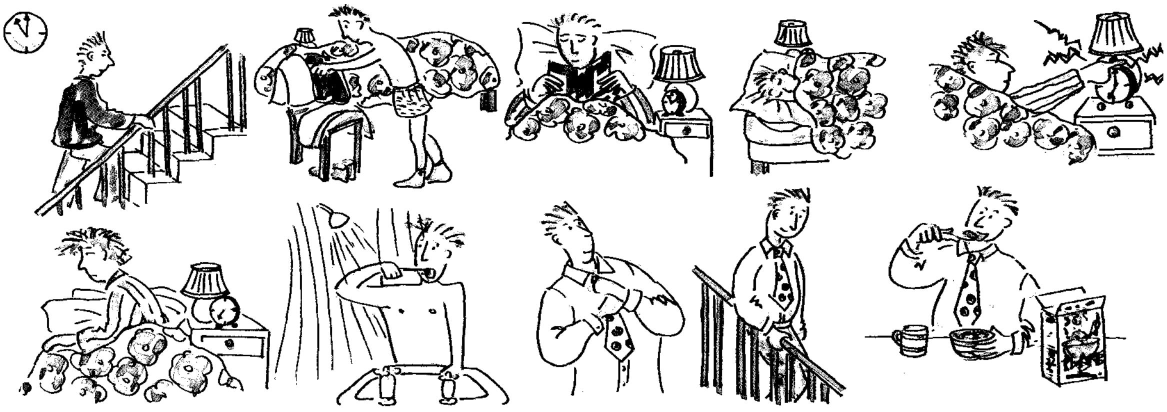

Exercises

45.1 Look at the picture and write the words next to the numbers.

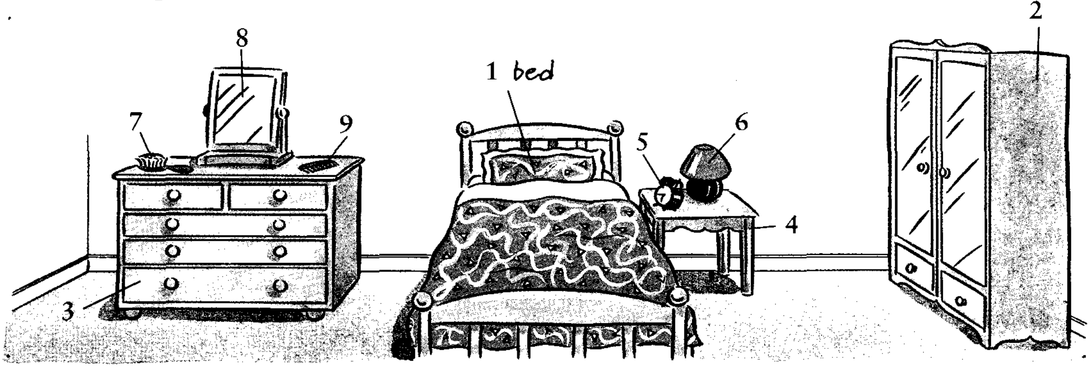

45.2 Write down five more things that you need to take with you if you go to stay with a friend for one night.

........toothbrush.................... ....
....

45.3 Look at the pictures. Describe what the people are doing.

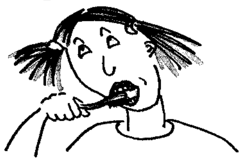

1 Anne ...is cleaning her teeth..................

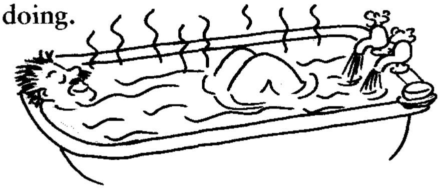

4 Mr Park ....

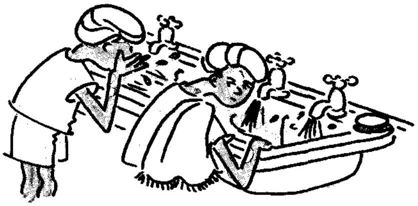

2 Selim and Umit ....

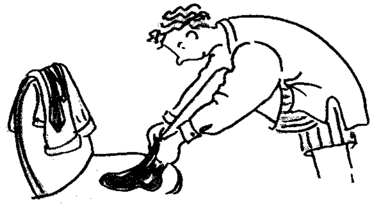

5 Jaime ....

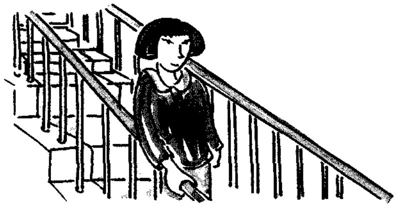

3 Mrs Park ....

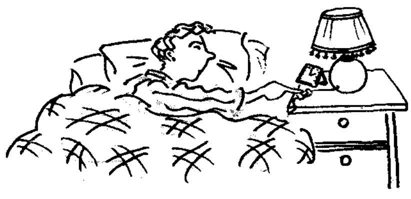

6 Lee ....

45.4 Write down the words for all the things you have in your bathroom. Use a dictionary to help you, if you need to.

45.5 Describe your bedroom. Write four or five sentences.

45.6 Write about your night-time routine. Use the verbs in C opposite. I usually go to bed at ...

46 In the living room

A Things in the living room

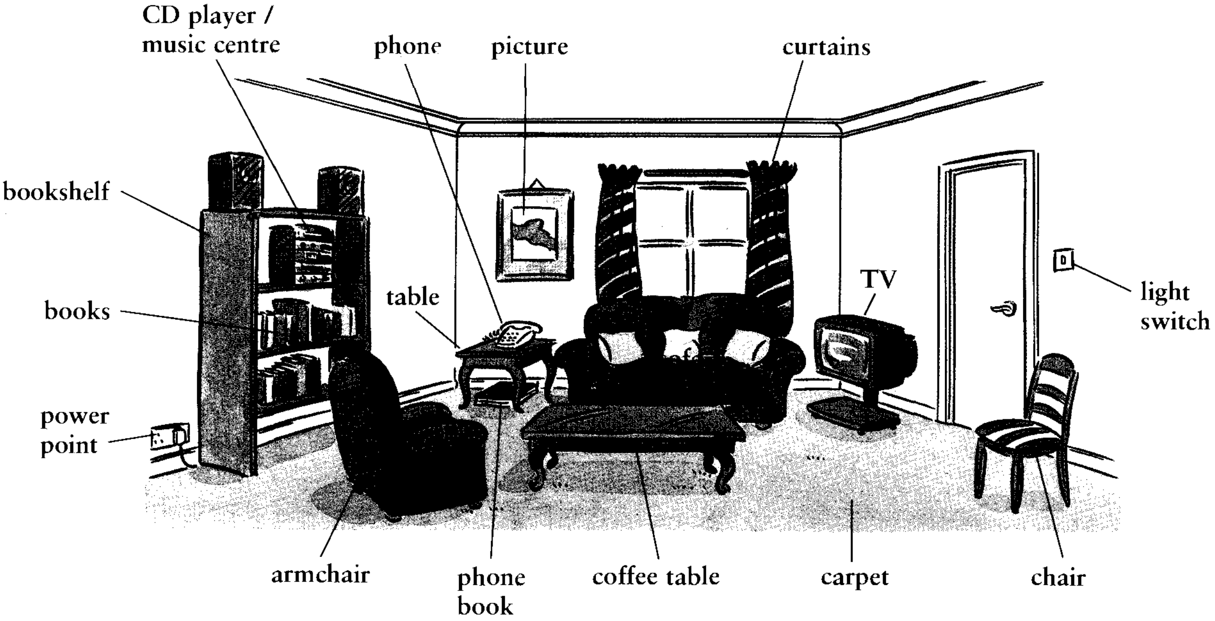
CD player / music centre
phone
picture
curtains
bookshelf
books
table
TV
light switch
power point
armchair
phone book
coffee table
carpet
chair

B Useful prepositions

The sofa is **near** the window.
Next to the sofa is a small table.
The TV is **in the corner**.

The coffee table is **in the middle** of the room.
The bookshelf is **against** the wall.
Where's the telephone book? **Under** the small table.

C Things we do in the living room

Every evening I **watch television**.
Sometimes I **listen to the radio** or **listen to music**.
Sometimes I **read**.
Sometimes I just **relax**. (= rest and do nothing)

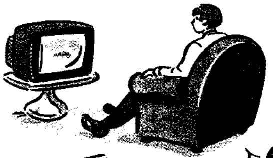

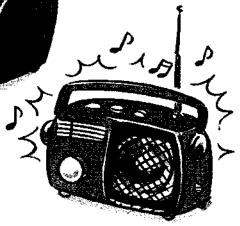

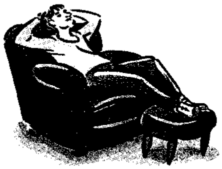

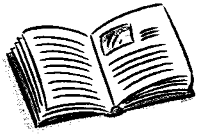

D Things we use

Where is **the remote control** for the TV?
There's **a reading lamp** on the desk.
Close the curtains and **switch the light on**; it's getting dark.
Turn the radio off and **turn the TV on**, please. I want to watch the football.

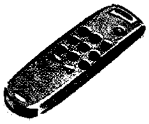

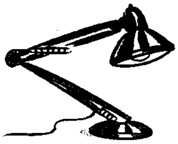

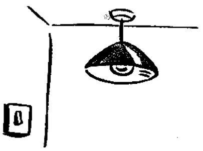

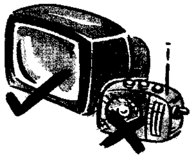

Exercises

46.1 Write down the names of ...

1 Somewhere you can put books. a bookshelf
2 Somewhere two/three people can sit.
3 Somewhere you can put down your coffee-cup.
4 Something you can look at on the wall.
5 Something for switching the light on/off.
6 Something for listening to music.
7 Something under your feet.

46.2 Choose (a), (b) or (c).

1 If you want to relax, which is the best?
(a) a chair (b) an armchair (c) a sofa
2 If it is dark and you want to read, do you ...?
(a) close the curtains (b) switch on the reading lamp (c) switch off the light
3 If you want to watch a different TV station, do you ...?
(a) use the remote control (b) use the power point (c) turn off the TV

46.3 **Fill the gaps with the correct prepositions. Look at the picture opposite.**

1 .... the floor there is a carpet.
2 There is a small table .... the corner. There is a TV .... the table.
3 The TV is .... the door.
4 The bookshelf is .... the wall.
5 The coffee table is .... front .... the sofa.

46.4 **Write about your living room at home. Draw a plan of it first.**

Describe your furniture (tables, chairs, sofa, etc.). Say where things are (e.g. next to ..., in the corner ..., near ..., etc.). What colour are the walls? Are there any pictures on them? What do you do when you are in your living room?

46.5 **Word puzzle. How many names of things in the living room can you find?**

t	e	n	b	w	o
a	c	h	a	i	r
b	a	x	b	n	r
l	r	c	o	d	a
e	p	v	o	o	d
m	e	s	k	w	i
h	t	v	s	u	o

47 Jobs

A What's his/her job?

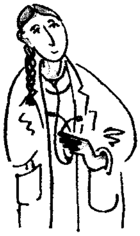
doctor

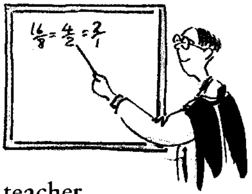
teacher

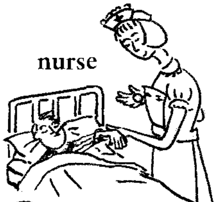
nurse

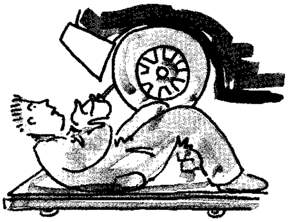
mechanic

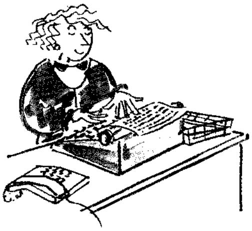
secretary

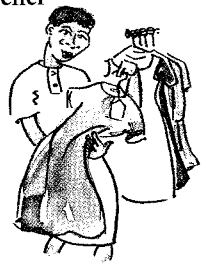
shop assistant

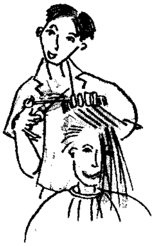
hairdresser

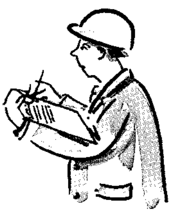
engineer

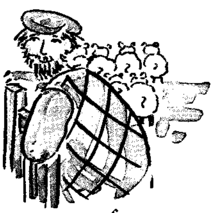
farmer

B Job (noun) and work (verb) /wɜːk/

What's your **job**? *or* What do you **do**?
I'm a waiter.

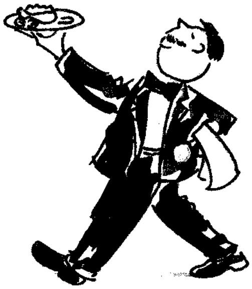

Where do you **work**? I work in a restaurant.
Is it an interesting **job**? Yes, I like it.

C Workplaces

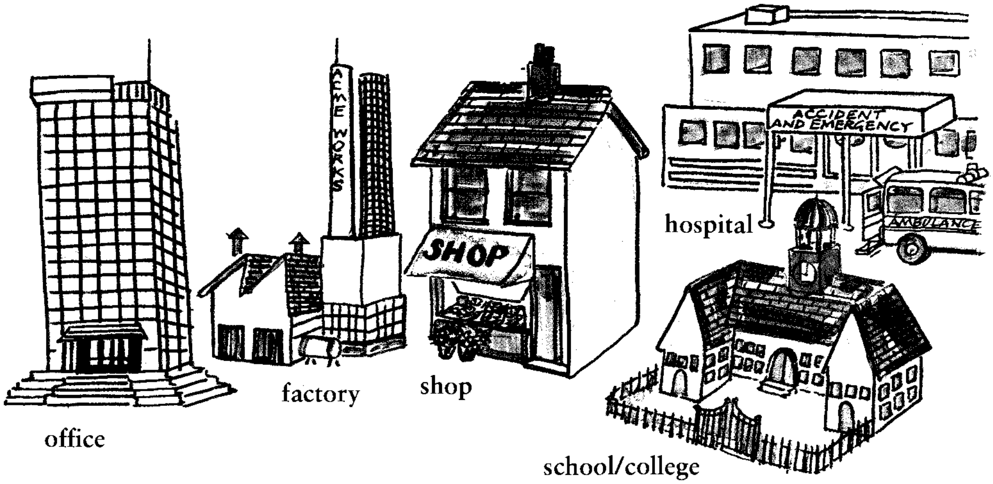
ACME WORKS
SHOP
ACCIDENT AND EMERGENCY
AMBULANCE
hospital
office
factory
shop
school/college

I work **in** a factory / an office etc. I work **at/from** home.

Exercises

47.1 **Where do they work?**

1 A teacher works in a school/college/university.
2 A doctor ....
3 A waiter ....
4 A secretary ....
5 A shop assistant ....
6 A hairdresser ....

47.2 **Match the pictures with the jobs in the box.**

farmer engineer taxi-driver mechanic nurse secretary

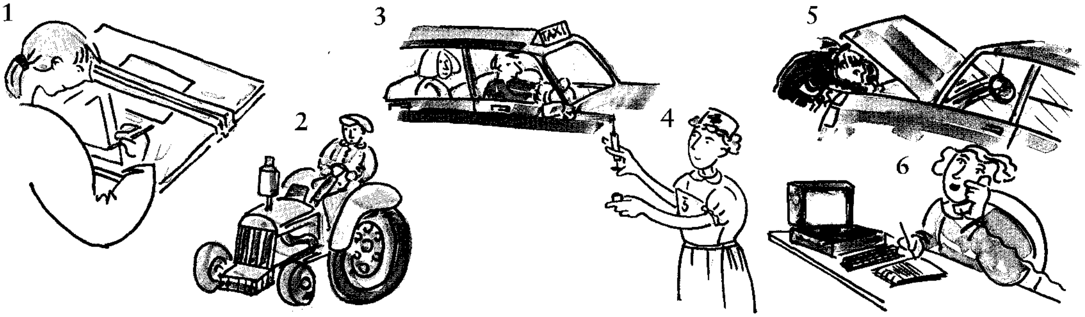

47.3 **Answer the questions for *yourself*.**

1 What do you do?
2 Where do you work?
3 Is it an interesting job?

47.4 **Word puzzle. Fill in the letters.**

Across	*Down*
1 works on a bus	1 works in a hospital
2 works in a school	2 works in a restaurant
3 writes books	3 works with the doctor

1 b			1 d	r		v			■
■	■	■		■	■	■	■	■	3
■	■	■		■	2	■	■	■	
■	■	■	2						
■	■	■		■		■	■	■	
■	■	3 w			t		r	■	
■	■	■	■	■		■	■	■	■
■	■	■	■	■		■	■	■	■

48 At school and university

Subjects

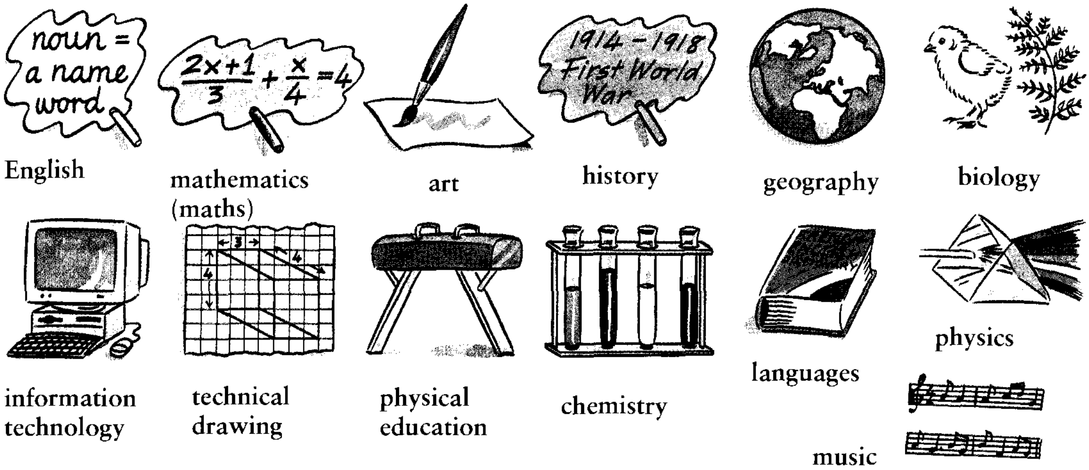
noun = a name word
$\frac{2x+1}{3}+\frac{x}{4}=4$
1914 – 1918 First World War
English
mathematics (maths)
art
history
geography
biology
information technology
technical drawing
physical education
chemistry
languages
physics
music

B Useful things

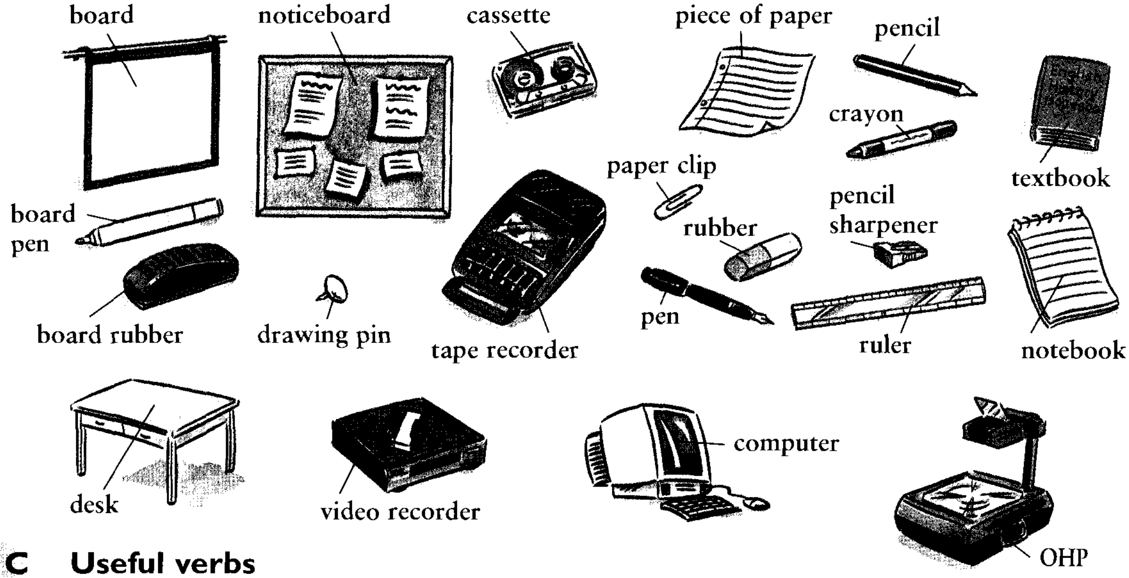
board
noticeboard
cassette
piece of paper
pencil
crayon
textbook
paper clip
pencil sharpener
rubber
board pen
board rubber
drawing pin
tape recorder
pen
ruler
notebook
desk
video recorder
computer
OHP

C Useful verbs

A maths teacher **teaches** maths. Her students **study** maths.

After school, students **do homework**.

At primary school, children **learn** to read and write.

A university teacher **gives a lecture on** chemistry and the students **take notes**.

Students can **do an** (English) **course** in many colleges and schools. At the end of a course, you often have to **take/do an exam**. You hope to **pass your exams**. You don't want to **fail your exams**.

If you pass your final exams at university, you **get a degree**.

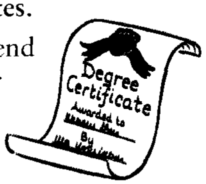
Degree Certificate
Awarded to
By

Exercises

48.1 Match the subject on the left with the topic on the right.

1 maths
2 physics
3 history
4 geography
5 physical education
6 English
7 chemistry
8 biology
9 information technology

a animals
b gymnastics
c $25y + 32 x = 51z$
d $e = mc^2$
e H_2O
f the countries of the world
g the 15th century
h computers
i spelling

48.2 Look at the subjects in A. Which were your favourite subjects? Which did you not like?

48.3 Look at the picture for 30 seconds. Then cover it. How many of the ten objects can you remember? Write them down in English.

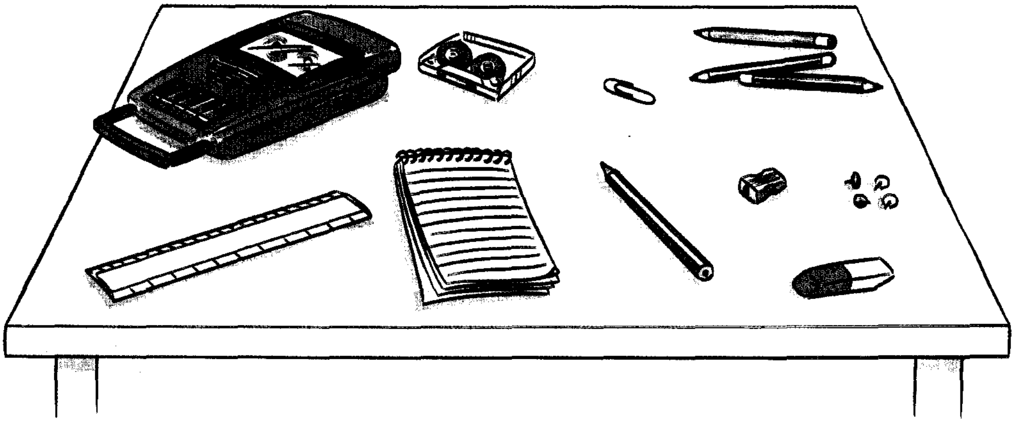

48.4 Which of the things in B opposite have you got in the room where you study English? Write down the words for everything you can see.

48.5 Choose a verb from C opposite to fill the gaps below. Put the verb in the correct form.

John did well at school. He always found it easy to (1)......learn......... and he always (2)........................ his homework. He (3)........................ all his school exams. Now he (4)........................ geography at university. He is also (5)........................ a special geology course. He enjoys sitting in lectures, listening to the lecturer and (6)........................ notes. He will (7)........................ his final exams next year. If he (8)........................, he will (9)........................ a degree in geography. If he (10)........................, he will be very sad. He would like to become a geography lecturer. He would like to (11)........................ lectures.

48.6 Choose the ten words from the opposite page which you most want to learn. Write them down in one column on a piece of paper and in a second column put a drawing (or a translation or a definition). Cover the words in the first column and look at the second column. Can you remember the words?

49 Communications

A Letters

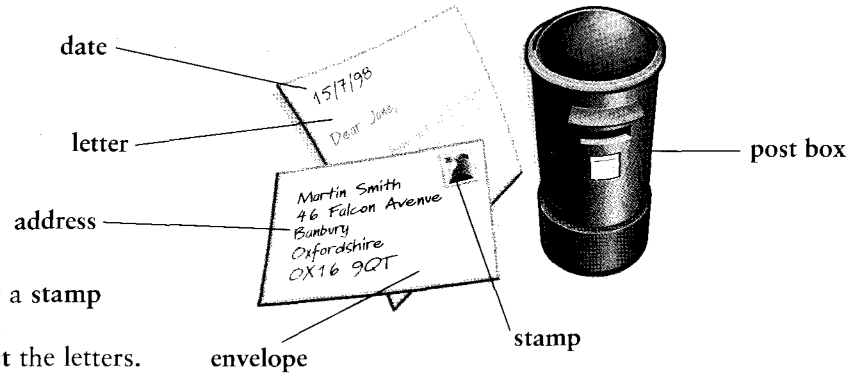
date
15/7/98
letter
Dear Jane,
address
Martin Smith
46 Falcon Avenue
Banbury
Oxfordshire
OX16 9QT
envelope
stamp
post box

Don't forget to put a **stamp** on the **envelope**.
Don't forget to **post** the letters.

B Telephone and fax

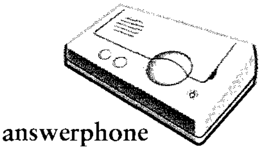
answerphone

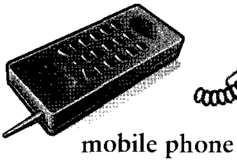
mobile phone

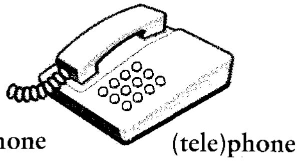

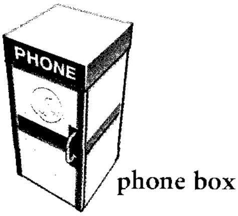
PHONE
phone box

Juan **makes** a lot of **phone calls**. He phones his girl friend every day.

Jill **sent** me a **fax** yesterday.

What is your **phone/fax number**?
330718 (= double three oh seven one eight)

C A typical phone conversation

SUE: Two three four six five oh.
NICK: Hello. It's Nick here. Can I speak to John, please.
SUE: I'm sorry, he isn't here at the moment. Can I take a message?
NICK: Thanks. Could you just tell him Nick called. I'll call back later.
SUE: OK. I'll tell him. Goodbye.
NICK: Bye.

D E-mail

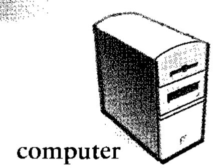

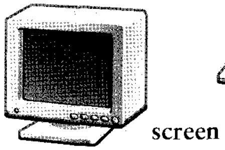

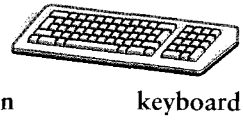

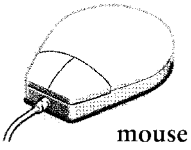

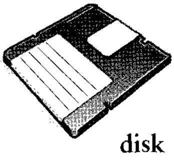

Anne gets a lot of e-**mails** from New York.

What is your **e-mail address**?
Mollflanders@cup.cam.ac.uk (= Moll Flanders at C-U-P dot C-A-M dot A-C dot U-K)

Tip: If possible, get an example of a letter and an e-mail in English. Write down any useful words or phrases in them.

Exercises

49.1 Have you got any of the things on the opposite page? Make a list. answerphone

49.2 What are the names of these things?

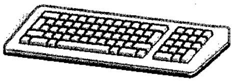
1 ....keyboard....

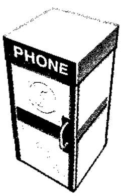
4 ....

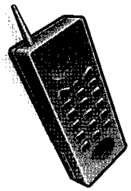
7 ....

2 ....

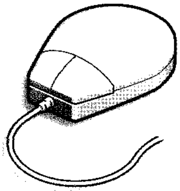
5 ....

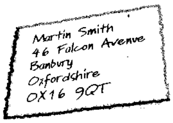

8 ....

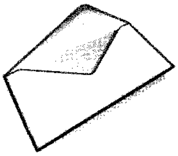
3 ....

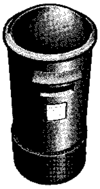
6 ....

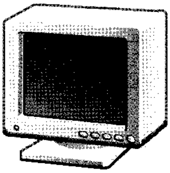
9 ....

49.3 Complete this phone conversation.

SALLY: 333091
MEENA: Hello. (1).................. Meena here. Can I (2).................. to Amal, please.
SALLY: I'm (3).................., he's at work (4).................. the moment.
Can I (5).................. a message?
MEENA: It's all right. I'll (6).................. back later.
SALLY: OK, then. Bye.
MEENA: Bye.

49.4 Write down these numbers and addresses then read them aloud.

1 Two telephone or fax numbers that are important to you.
2 Two e-mail addresses that are important to you.

Now practise reading aloud the examples in the key at the end of the book.

49.5 Answer these questions.

1 Which is quickest – a phone call, a fax, an e-mail or a letter? a phone call
2 Which is cheapest – a phone call, a fax, an e-mail or a letter?
3 Have you sent all of these – a letter, a fax and an e-mail ? Have you received all of them?
4 Which is your favourite way of communicating with a friend?
5 Which is your favourite way of business communication?

50 Holidays

A Holiday (noun)

We **had** a wonderful **holiday** in Egypt in 1996.
I'm not working next week. **I'm on holiday.**
Are you **going on holiday** this summer?

B Types of holidays

We are going on **a package holiday** to Hong Kong. (everything is included, flights, hotel, etc.)
We're going to have a **winter holiday** this year. (often means skiing / winter sports)
I want to go **camping** this year. (sleep in a tent)
I'm going on a **walking holiday** in the Alps. (usually means walking up mountains)
A **coach tour** is a cheap way to go on holiday. (going in a big, comfortable bus)

C Transport

Are you **flying** to France from England?
No, we're going **by ferry.** (ship where you can take your car with you)
We're going **by car / by train / by bus.**
(See Units 14 and 41.)

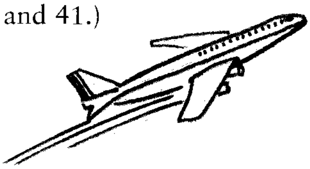

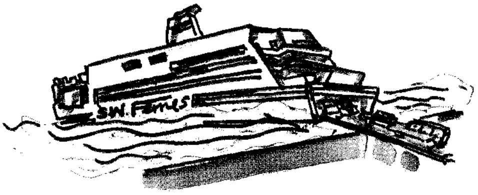

D Don't forget to take with you ...

your **passport** (if you are going to another country)
a **visa** (a special stamp in your passport to go to some countries)
your **tickets**
some **traveller's cheques** and **currency** (money of the country you are going to)
a **camera**
a **phrase book** (if it's a different language)
your **luggage**

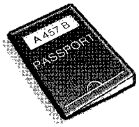

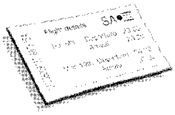

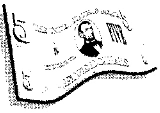

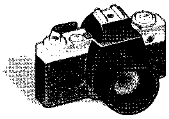

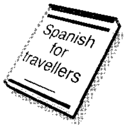

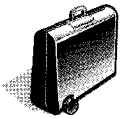

E When you are there ...

Send some **postcards.**
Try the **local food.**
Enjoy the **nightlife.** (discos, clubs, etc.)
Try to **speak the language.**
Go to the **Tourist Information Office** if you have any questions. (*or* the **Tourist Office**)

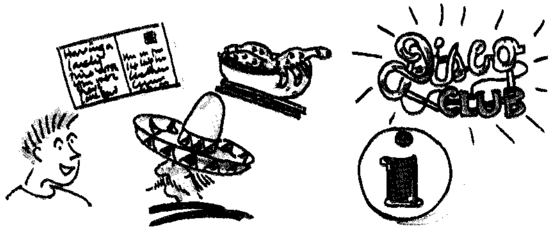

Exercises

50.1 Fill the gaps.

1 A: Are you working on Monday?
B: No, I'm .... holiday.

2 A: Are you going .... holiday this year?
B: Yes, I'm going camping.

3 A: Did you have a good .... in Greece?
B: Yes, it was wonderful.

4 A: Are you flying to Italy?
B: No I'm going .... train.

50.2 These people are talking about their holidays. What type of holiday did they have?

1 Everything was included, meals, hotels, flights.
2 We were on the same coach for seven days. I was very tired.
3 We walked about 20 kilometres every day.
4 It wasn't very good. There wasn't much snow.

50.3 Put a plus (+) in the boxes for the different ways of travelling. Put one plus (+) for *sometimes true*, two for *very true* (++), three for *absolutely true!* (+++)

	you can take a lot of luggage	*very fast*	*usually cheap*	*you see a lot as you travel*	*you can relax*
ferry					
car					
flight					

50.4 Write the names of these things you need for a holiday.

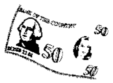
1 ....

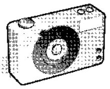
3 ....

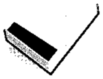
5 ....

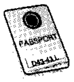
2 ....

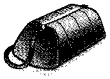
4 ....

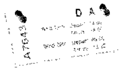
6 ....

50.5 What do we call:

1 Cheques you can use in different countries? t.................... c....................
2 A special stamp or paper for your passport to enter a country? a v....................

50.6 Fill the gaps in these sentences.

1 Don't forget to send me ..a..postcard...
2 The .... is good; the discos are open all night.
3 I didn't try the .... food. I had hamburgers every day!
4 Is there a .... Office here? I want some information.
5 I'd like to go to Estonia for my holiday but I can't speak the ....

51 Shops and shopping

A Kinds of shops

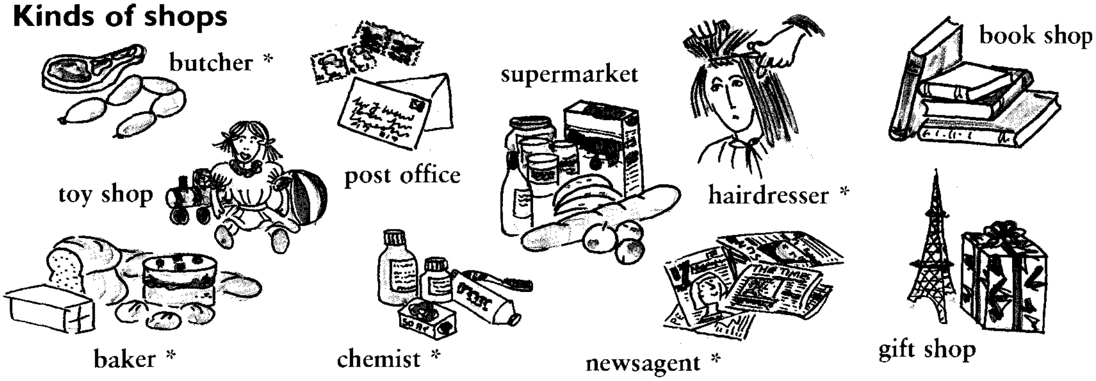
butcher *
post office
supermarket
hairdresser *
book shop
toy shop
baker *
chemist *
newsagent *
gift shop

* These words are also for people's jobs. We often add 's and say: I'm going to the newsagent's to get a paper. Do you want anything from the butcher's?

B Department store

A department store is a large shop which sells a lot of different things – clothes, cosmetics, toys and so on.

H E R O D S

- BASEMENT
  food, sports equipment
- GROUND FLOOR
  cosmetics, shoes, stationery
- FIRST FLOOR
  ladieswear
- SECOND FLOOR
  childrenswear, menswear, toys
- THIRD FLOOR
  electrical goods, furniture
- FOURTH FLOOR
  restaurant

(cosmetics = beauty products; stationery = pens, pencils, paper, etc.)

C Going shopping

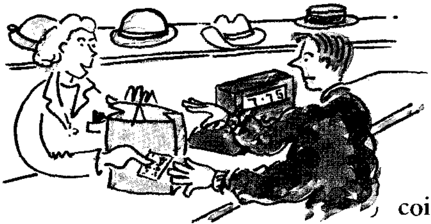

You buy something from a **shop assistant**.
You pay for it at the **cash desk** / **till**.
You get a **receipt**.

D Useful phrases

Can I help you?
How much does this cost?
Can I pay by **cheque** / **credit card**?
No, **cash** only.
Sorry, I only have a £20 **note**; I don't have any **change** (coins).
Can I **try it on**?
Have you got a **bigger** / **smaller size** / a **different colour**?
Would you like a (**carrier**) **bag**?

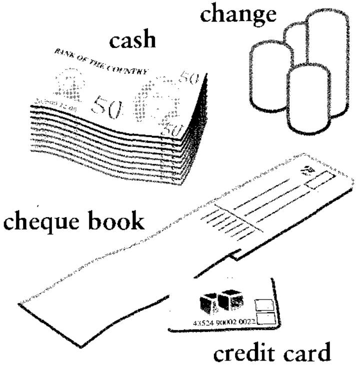
coins/ change
cash
cheque book
credit card

Exercises

51.1 **Match the item with the shop.**

toy shop	butcher's	baker's	gift shop	chemist's	newsagent's

1 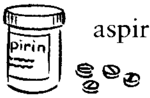
aspirin

2 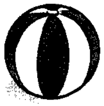
beach ball

3 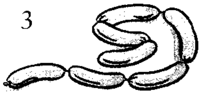
sausages

4 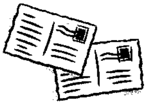
postcards

5 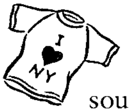
souvenir T-shirt

6 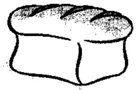
bread

51.2 **Where do you need to go?**

1 I want to get a newspaper. The newsagent's.
2 Your hair is too long.
3 I need some stamps.
4 We must get Jim a present.
5 I'd like to buy a book.
6 I want to buy everything in one shop.

51.3 **Look at the department store plan in B. Which floor will you go to if you want to buy:**

1 an armchair?
2 lipstick?
3 a cup of tea?
4 a packet of tea?
5 a skirt?
6 some tennis balls?
7 a pair of boots?
8 some baby clothes?
9 a tie?
10 a TV?
11 pens?
12 a doll?

51.4 **Write the words for these definitions.**

1 a person who sells things in a shop shop assistant
2 money not a cheque or credit card
3 a person who cuts hair
4 'plastic money'
5 a floor lower than the ground floor

Now write definitions in English for:

6 a £5 note
7 the first floor
8 a receipt
9 a cash desk

51.5 **Make a list of ...**

1 the shops in a street near you.
2 the departments there are in your favourite department store.

51.6 **Fill the gaps in the dialogue.**

CUSTOMER: How much does this shirt ....?
SHOP ASSISTANT: £25.
CUSTOMER: I'll take it, please. Can I .... by credit card?
SHOP ASSISTANT: Certainly.
I'll put your receipt in the ....

52 In a hotel

A At reception

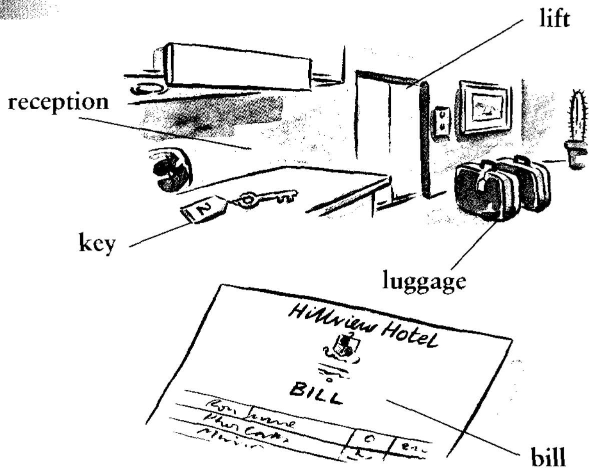
lift
reception
key
luggage
Hillview Hotel
BILL
bill

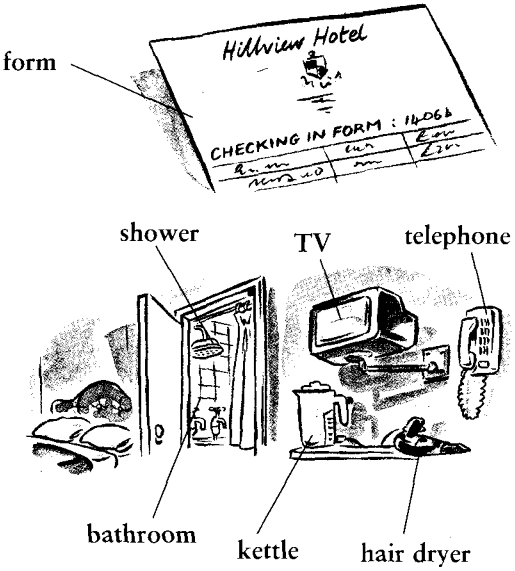
form
Hillview Hotel
CHECKING IN FORM : 14061
shower
TV
telephone
bathroom
kettle
hair dryer

Do you have a **single room** (= for one person) a **double room** (= for two people)? How much is a single room with a bathroom?
I have a **reservation.** (= I booked a room) My name is ...

The receptionist may say:
Your room is on the **first floor**. The **lift** is over there.
Here is your **key**.
Would you like some help with your **luggage**?
Can you **fill in** this **form**, please?
Sign here, please. (= write your name)
Please, **check** your bill. (= make sure it is correct)

When you leave you say,
Can I **check out**, please?
Can I have the **bill**, please?

B Using the telephone

How do I get an **outside line**? (You want to phone someone who is not in the hotel.)
What is the **code** for Korea / Poland, etc.?

Can I have **breakfast in my room**, please?
Can I have a **morning call**, please? At 6.30. (You want to wake up at 6.30.)
What time is breakfast/lunch/dinner?

C Changing money

You can often change money in a big hotel. Here are some useful phrases.
Can I (**ex**)**change** some money, please?
Can I **change** some dollars **into** pounds, please?
How many yen **to the** pound at the moment? (yen = Japanese **currency**)
Can I **cash** a traveller's cheque?

Exercises

52.1 Look at the pictures and complete the dialogue with words from the opposite page.

CLIENT: Can I have a 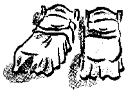 (1).............. room for tonight, please?

RECEPTIONIST: Would you like a room with a 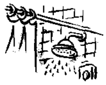 (2)..............?

CLIENT: Yes, please. And with a 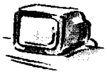 (3).............., please.

RECEPTIONIST: All our rooms have a TV, a 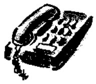 (4)..............and a 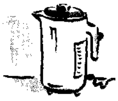 (5).............. I can give you room 25. It has a view of the (6).............. Here is your 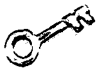 (7)..............

The 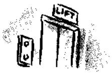 (8).............. is over there. It's on the second floor.

52.2 Match what you want on the left with what you need on the right.

You want:
1 to have a cup of tea in your room
2 to go to the top floor
3 to open your door
4 to get up at 6 a.m.
5 to phone your country
6 to watch the news
7 to wash your hair
8 to dry your hair

You need:
a the lift
b an outside line
c a shower
d a kettle
e a hair dryer
f a morning call
g a TV
h a key

52.3 Do you know?

1 How much does a hotel room cost in the capital of your country?
2 What is the code for Britain if you phone from your country?
3 How many US dollars are there to your own currency at the moment?
4 How much of your own currency is there to the pound?
5 Why are traveller's cheques useful when you are travelling?

52.4 You are on holiday in London with two other people. You want rooms for one night. Write a dialogue.

52.5 Write down six questions that you can ask in a hotel beginning: *Can I ...?*

53 Eating out

A Places where you can eat

café: you can have a cup of tea/coffee and a **snack** there (= something small to eat like a sandwich or a cake). They sometimes serve meals there too.
restaurant: you go there for a full meal; more expensive than a café.
bar/pub: bars and pubs serve alcohol and **soft drinks** (= non-alcoholic drinks like fruit juice and lemonade); you can usually have a meal or a snack there too.
sandwich bar: a place that serves lots of different kinds of sandwiches. People usually buy sandwiches and take them to eat in a different place, at work or in the park.
fast food restaurant: you can get a quick hot meal there, for example burger and chips.
self-service restaurant/café: you take what you want, pay for it and carry it to your table.

B In a restaurant

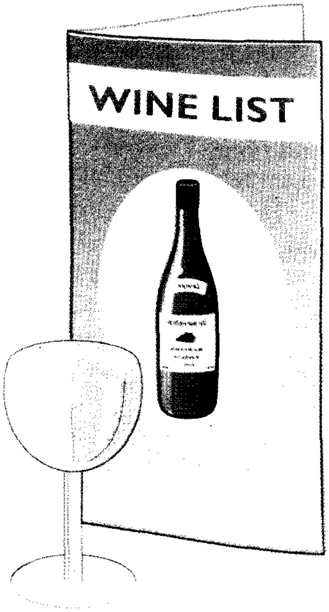

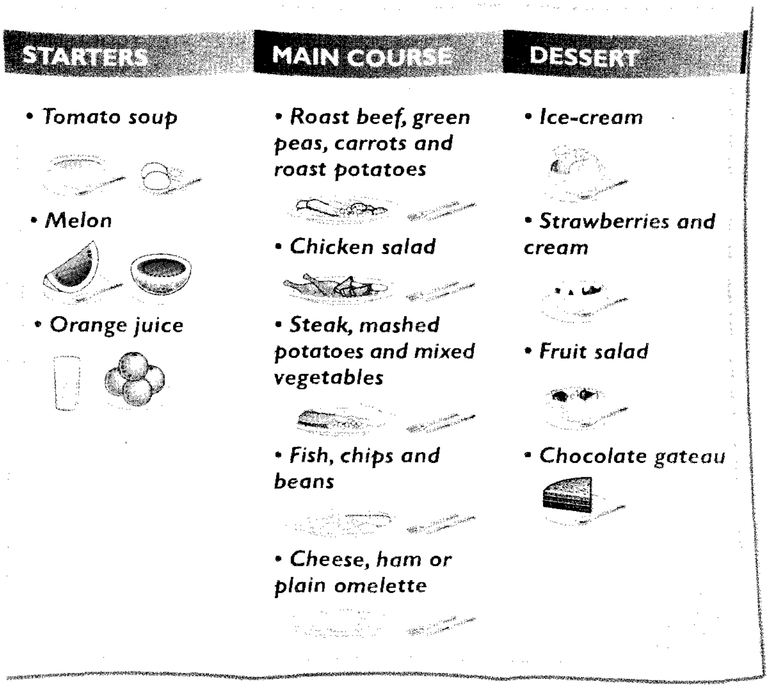

STARTERS

- *Tomato soup*
- *Melon*
- *Orange juice*

MAIN COURSE

- *Roast beef, green peas, carrots and roast potatoes*
- *Chicken salad*
- *Steak, mashed potatoes and mixed vegetables*
- *Fish, chips and beans*
- *Cheese, ham or plain omelette*

DESSERT

- *Ice-cream*
- *Strawberries and cream*
- *Fruit salad*
- *Chocolate gateau*

C Ordering food

WAITER: Are you ready to order?
CUSTOMER: Yes, I'd like tomato soup and steak, please.
WAITER: Would you like the steak with chips or new potatoes? And how would you like your steak – rare, medium or well-done?
CUSTOMER: Well-done, please. And with chips.
WAITER: And what would you like to drink?
(*later*)
WAITER: Is everything all right?
CUSTOMER: Thank you, it's very nice.

Exercises

53.1 Which of the places in A opposite would you go to if you ...

1 want to buy something in the morning to eat at lunch-time at work? a sandwich bar
2 want a romantic dinner for two?
3 have three small children with you?
4 arrive half an hour early to meet a friend?
5 are very thirsty?

53.2 Do you have all the places in A in your country? Write down all the places you have. Give an example of an eating place of this type. fast food restaurant – McDonald's

53.3 Look at the menu on the opposite page.

1 What would you eat from the menu opposite?
2 What would a vegetarian eat? (Vegetarians don't eat meat.)

53.4 Choose one of the words in the box which can go with each of the words in each group.

steak	omelette	potatoes	gateau	~~soup~~	salad

1 You can have tomato / vegetable / chicken ....soup......... to start.
2 Would you like a cheese / ham / plain ....?
3 I'll have the chicken / ham / fruit ....
4 I'd like some roast / mashed / new ....
5 Can I have the chocolate / strawberry / apricot ...., please.
6 Do you like your .... well-done / medium / rare?

53.5 There are some mistakes in this dialogue. Correct the mistakes.

WAITER: Are you ready for order?
CUSTOMER: Yes. I like vegetable soup and steak, please.
WAITER: What would you like your steak? Rare, medium or done good?
CUSTOMER: Rare, please.
WAITER: What you would like to drink?
CUSTOMER: A orange juice, please.

53.6 Cover the page opposite and write down all the words you can remember.
Then look at the page again and write down any words you forgot.

Tip: Sometimes restaurants in other countries have English menus for tourists. Look at one of these. Write down any useful words you find.

54 Sports

A Ball games

We **play** all these sports. I **play** rugby. Do you **play** baseball?

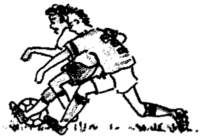

football (soccer)

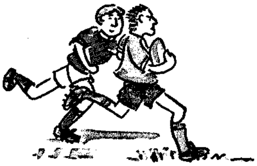

rugby

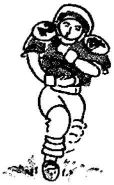

American football

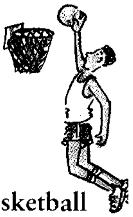

basketball

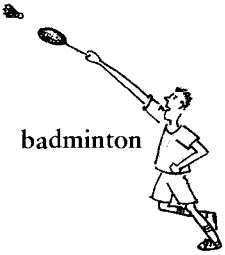

badminton

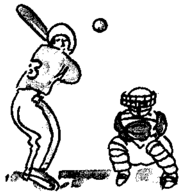

baseball

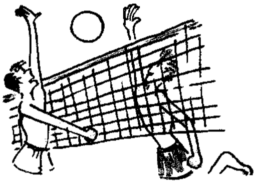

volleyball

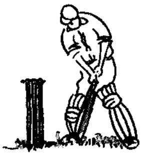

cricket

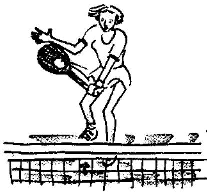

tennis

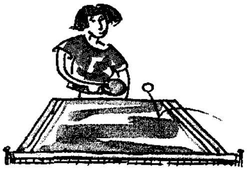

table tennis

B Other popular sports

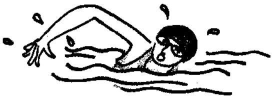

swimming

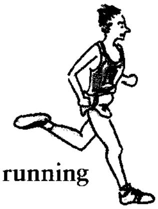

running

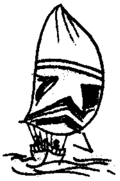

sailing

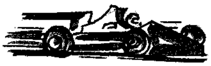

motor racing

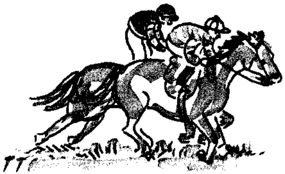

horse racing

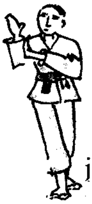

judo/karate

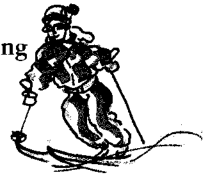

skiing

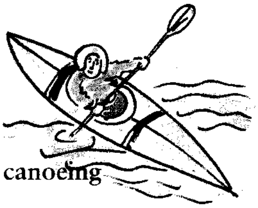

canoeing

We use **go** or **do** with most of these sports. I **go** running. He **does** canoeing.
We use **do** only with judo and karate. She **does** judo. I **do** karate.

C Asking questions about sports

Do you do any sports? Yes, I go swimming/running/sailing/canoeing.
Do you play football/tennis/badminton?
What's your favourite sport? I like motor racing **best.**
(See Unit 4.)

D Where we do sports

We play tennis/badminton/volleyball/basketball on a **tennis/badminton/volleyball/basketball court.**
We play football/cricket/rugby on **a football/cricket/rugby field** or **pitch.** We swim in a **swimming pool.**

Exercises

54.1 Cover the left-hand page and try to remember the names of these sports.

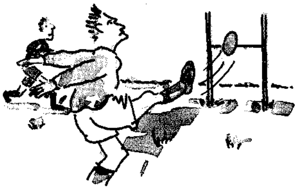

1 ....

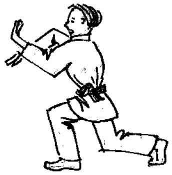

3 ....

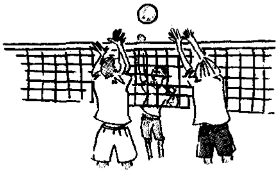

5 ....

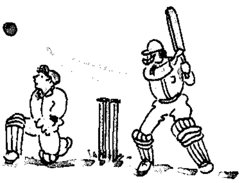

2 ....

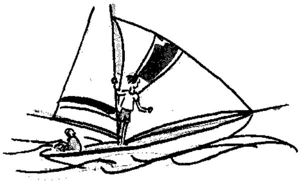

4 ....

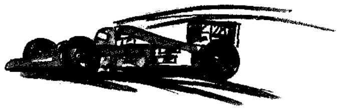

6 ....

54.2 What sports do you think of when you see ...?

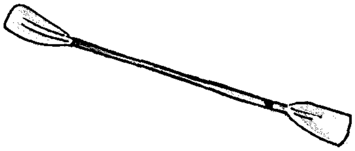

1 ....

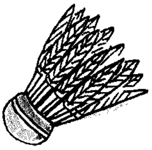

3 ....

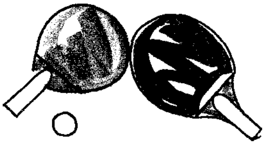

5 ....

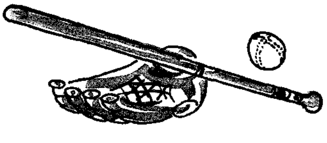

2 ....

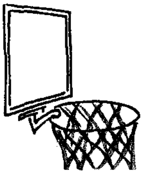

4 ....

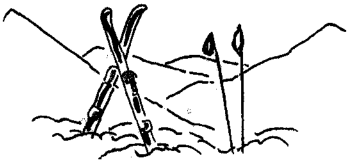

6 ....

54.3 Ask questions for these answers.

1 What's your favourite sport?
I like running best.
2 Do you ....?
Yes, but not soccer, only American football.
3 ....?
No, I don't do any at all. I prefer watching TV.
4 Do you ....?
Yes. I go to the swimming pool every Friday.

54.4 Write the names of the sports you have done. Which ones do you like? Which do you not like? Which ones would you like to do?

Tip: Make a page in your vocabulary book for 'sports'. Look at the sports pages of an English language newspaper. Write down the names of sports you do not know. Look them up in a dictionary.

55 Cinema

A Types of films

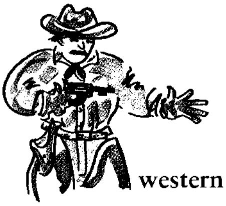
western

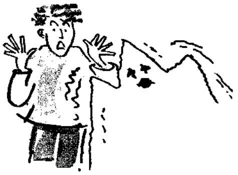
a horror film

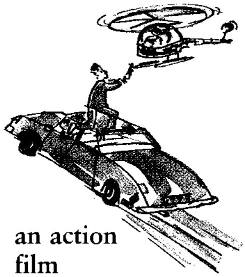
an action film

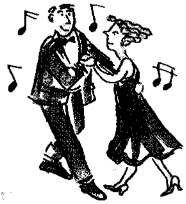
a musical

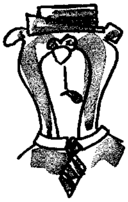
a cartoon

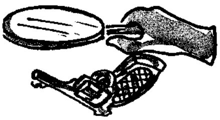
a crime/detective film

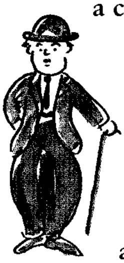
a comedy

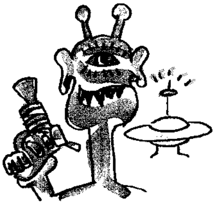
a science fiction film

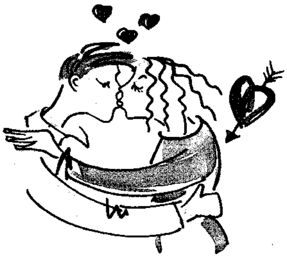
a love story /
a romantic film

Do you like **westerns**? No, I like **science fiction films** best.
The best **action film** I've seen was *Goldfinger* with James Bond.
If I see a **horror film**, I can't sleep.

B People in films

Zelda Glitzberg is a **film star**.
She lives in Hollywood.
She is **in** the new James Bond film.

Sean Connery **played** James Bond in *From Russia with Love*.

I like films by Italian **directors**.

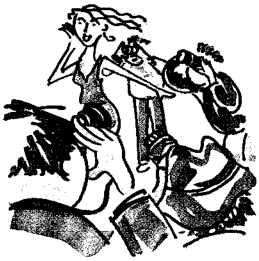

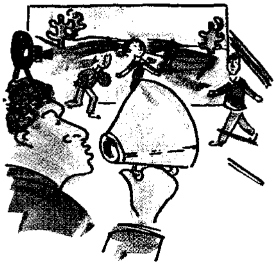

C Watching films

Do you **go to the cinema** often?
Yes, I go every week.
No, I **watch videos** at home.

What's on at the cinema this week?
It's a comedy called *Airplane*.

Have you **seen** *The English Patient*?
Yes I saw it **on** TV.

Did you like *Dirty Harry*?
Yes, **I loved it / enjoyed it.**
No, it was **boring**. (= makes you want to fall asleep)

Exercises

55.1 What types of films are these?

1 Some cowboys rob a train. western
2 A flying saucer lands from Mars.
3 A dead person comes back to life.
4 James Bond saves the world.
5 Mickey Mouse goes on a picnic.
6 A man falls in love with his teacher.
7 A dead body is found in the river.
8 There are lots of songs and dancing.

55.2 Word puzzle. How many words for other types of films can you make with the letters of ROMANTIC?

			C	R	I	M	E						
			_	O	_	_	_	R					
		C	_	M	_	_	Y						
				A	_	T	_	_	N				
S	_	_	_	N	C	_	F	_	_	_	_	_	N
	W	_	_	T	_	_	N						
	M	_	_	I	C	_	L						
				C	A	_	_	O	O	_			

55.3 Fill the gaps in these sentences.

1 Do you prefer to go .... cinema or to watch TV?
2 We .... a video last night.
3 Who .... James Bond in *You Only Live Twice*?
4 Was Clint Eastwood .... *Dirty Harry*?
5 All the big .... live in Hollywood.
6 Stephen Spielberg is a famous American film ....

55.4 Answer these questions for *yourself.*

1 Name one science fiction film you have seen.
2 Who is your favourite film star?
3 Do you like detective films? Can you name one?
4 Can you watch horror films?

55.5 Write down the English names of three films you have seen this year. You can learn vocabulary by remembering the English names of films. For example:

Four Weddings and a Funeral
Mars Attacks!
Home Alone

55.6 Try to name one example of each type of film from the opposite page!

56 Leisure at home

A TV, radio, music, video

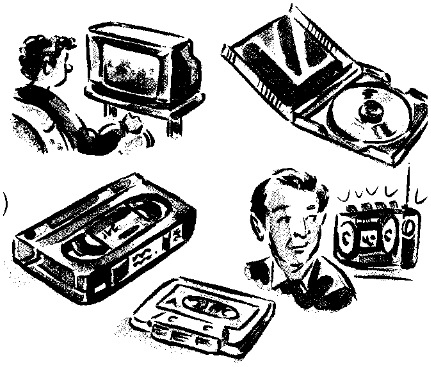

I **watch** TV every evening. [NOT I ~~see~~ TV.]
Did you **watch/see** the film about President Kennedy?
I **listen** to the radio every morning. [NOT I ~~hear~~ the radio.]
What **programmes** do you like best on TV and radio?
I like **watching** films on TV. (*or* I like to watch ...)
I like **listening to** music on the radio. (*or* I like to listen ...)
I often **listen to CDs** or **tapes** when I am relaxing.
At the weekend, we usually **watch a video**.

B Hobbies/activities at home

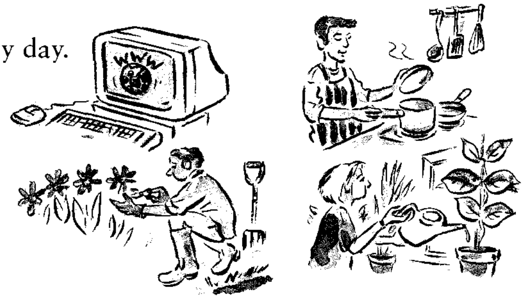

A lot of young people **play computer games** every day.
Do you use **the Internet**?
I really like **cooking**.
Do you like **gardening**?
We **grow flowers** and **vegetables** in our garden.
I live in a flat. I don't have **a garden**,
but I have a lot of **house plants**.

C Reading

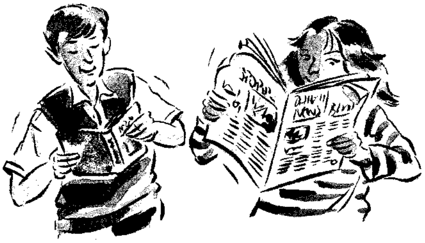

I **read** a lot at home.
What do you read?
I read **novels**. (= long stories)
I like **books about** nature/different countries, etc.
I like **magazines about** rock music and sport.
Do you read a **newspaper** every day?

D Time with other people

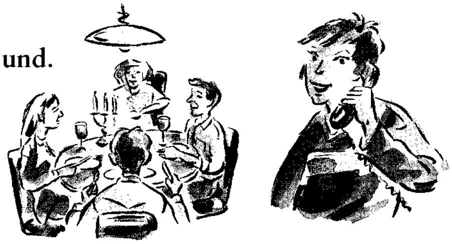

Sometimes we **invite friends around/have friends around**.
(= we ask them to come to our house/flat)
I often **have people/have friends to dinner**.
My best friend **comes to stay** sometimes.
(= sleeps in my house/flat)
I **talk to** my friends **on the phone** every evening. *or*
I **ring** my friends every evening.

E Just relaxing

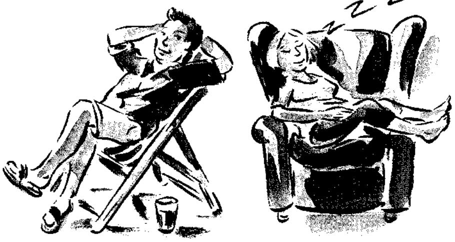

Sometimes, I just **do nothing**.
I like to **have a sleep** after lunch.

Exercises

56.1 What are these people doing?

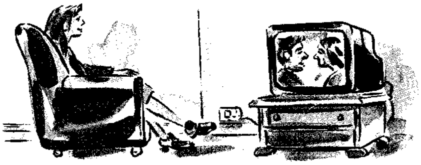

1 She's ....

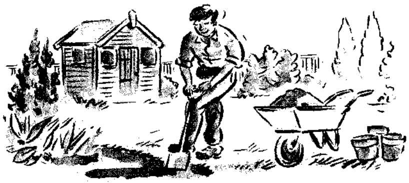

2 He's ....

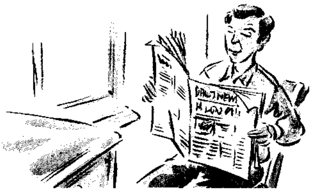

3 He's .... a ....

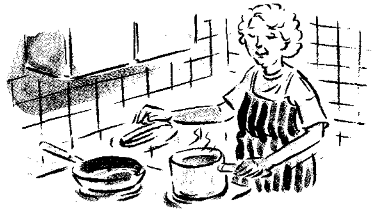

4 She's ....

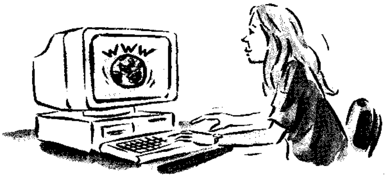

5 She's using the ....

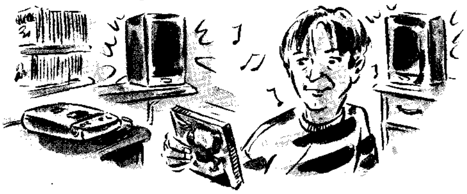

6 He's .... to a ....

56.2 Fill in the missing verbs.

1 Sometimes I ...listen..... to CDs or tapes.
2 I prefer to .... magazines more than newspapers.
3 I .... to my sister on the phone every Sunday.
4 A lot of people like to .... a sleep after lunch.
5 Do you ever .... friends to dinner?
6 The children .... computer games every evening.
7 Shall we .... a video tonight?
8 Did you .... the programme about Namibia yesterday?
9 My father .... vegetables in his garden.

56.3 Answer for *yourself.*

1 If you have friends around, what do you like to do?
2 Does anyone come to stay at your house/flat?
3 What do you like to read most?
4 How often do you ring your friends?

56.4 Interesting or boring? Put these leisure activities in order, from *most interesting* to *most boring*, in your opinion.

gardening cooking reading using the Internet watching videos
listening to music doing nothing

◄──────────────────────────►

most interesting *most boring*

57 Crime

A Crimes, people who do them, and verbs

	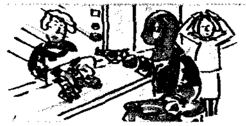	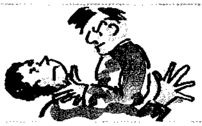	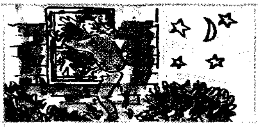	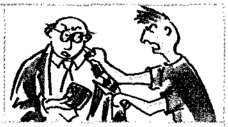
crime	robbery	murder	burglary	mugging
person	a robber	a murderer	a burglar	a mugger
verb	to rob somebody or a place (e.g. a bank)	to murder somebody	to break into a house/flat (break/broke/broken)	to mug somebody
	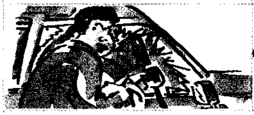	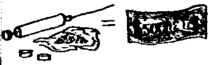	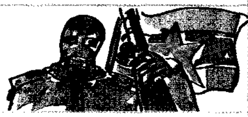	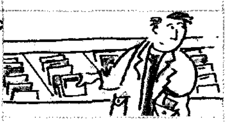
crime	car theft	drug pushing/ dealing	terrorism	shoplifting
person	a car thief	a drug pusher/ dealer	a terrorist	a shoplifter
verb	to steal a car (steal/stole/stolen)	to sell drugs (sell/sold/sold)	to attack somebody or a place	to steal things from a shop

There was **a burglary** at the school last night.
John West **murdered** his wife.
There are a lot of **muggings** in the city centre.

A robber **robs** a person or a place. That bank **was robbed** yesterday. My sister **was robbed** in the city centre.
A thief **steals** something (**steal/stole/stolen**). Somebody **stole** my bicycle. [NOT Somebody ~~robbed~~ my bicycle.]
I was **robbed** in the city centre yesterday. [NOT I was ~~stolen~~.]

B The law

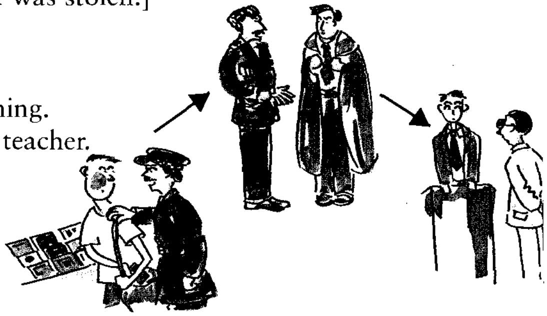

A student **was arrested for** shoplifting this morning.
The police came to the school and spoke to his teacher.
The student has to **go to court** next week.
If he is **guilty** he will have to **pay a fine.**
If he is **innocent** he can go home.
I don't think he will **go to prison.**

C Other crime problems

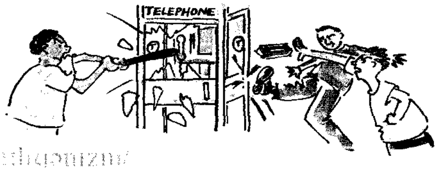

Some **vandals** broke the windows in the telephone box.
(A vandal breaks and smashes things.)
We have a lot of **vandalism** in my town.
A lot of young people **take drugs** nowadays.
Is **football hooliganism** a problem in your country?
(A **football hooligan** is a person who goes to a football match and makes trouble.)

Exercises

57.1 **What do we call ...?**

1 a person who steals cars? a car thief
2 a person who kills someone?
3 a person who steals things from shops?
4 a person who robs people's houses and flats?
5 a person who attacks someone in the street and steals their money?
6 a person who sells dangerous drugs?

57.2 **Fill the gaps in these sentences.**

1 There were a lot of football hooligans near the stadium.
2 The police officer a.................... her for shoplifting.
3 Some v.................... destroyed all the flowers in the park.
4 He had to pay a f.................... of £50 for parking his car in the wrong place.
5 There are a lot of b.................... in this part of the city, so always close the windows.
6 The police made a mistake; she was i..................... She did not steal the money.
7 People who t.................... drugs often do other crimes too.
8 A group of t.................... have attacked the airport.
9 He murdered his wife. He was in p.................... for 20 years.

57.3 **What do you think should happen to these people? Choose from the list a – i on the right. If you do not like the list, what do you think should happen to them?**

1 A man murdered his wife and three children.
2 A student with no money stole a book from a bookshop.
3 A woman sold some drugs to a teenager.
4 Some terrorists attacked a bus and killed 5 people.
5 A woman parked her car and blocked the traffic.
6 A teenager broke some trees in the park.
7 A man who drank too much alcohol drove his car and crashed.

a fine of £100
b 30 years in prison
c six months in prison
d death
e five years in prison
f in prison for life
g a fine of £50
h must work in a hospital for six months
i must not drive a car for a year

57.4 **What do you think? Put all the crimes on the opposite page in a list, from *least serious* to *most serious*.**

57.5 **Choose five or six words opposite and use them to make your own sentences.**

58 The media

A Radio and TV programmes

The **news** *is* on TV at 6 o'clock every night. (= important things that happen) [NOT The news ~~are~~ on TV.]

Do you watch **soaps / soap operas**? *Home and Away* is my favourite. (Soap operas are stories about people's lives. They are often on TV every day.)

I like **nature programmes** best. (= programmes about animals, birds, etc.)

I watched a **documentary** last night about drugs and young people. (= programme looking at a social problem or question)

In **talk shows**, people talk about very personal and private things in their lives.

The children watch **cartoons** on Saturday mornings. (For example, Disney films with animals that talk.) (See Unit 55.)

I always watch **sport programmes** and **films**.

B Newspapers and magazines

In most countries there are **morning newspapers** and **evening newspapers**.

Every month, I buy a **magazine**.

My mother buys **women's magazines**.

I like **news magazines** like *Newsweek* and *Time*.

My little brother buys **comics**.

Other types of magazines: **sports magazines / computer magazines / teenage magazines** (See Unit 56.)

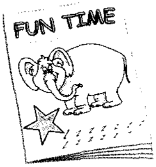

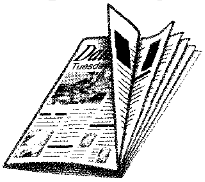

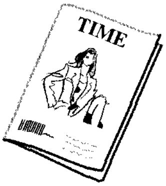

C Media and technology

Do you have **satellite** TV?

How many **channels** do you have? We have 25.

You can read some newspapers **on the Internet**.

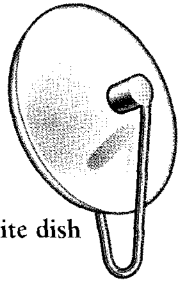

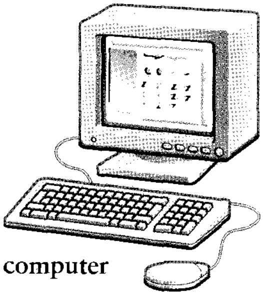

D People and the media

There was **an interview with** the US President on TV last night.

The **reporters** are outside Zelda Glitzberg's house. (= People who go out and get the news stories where they happen.)

My sister is a **journalist**; she writes for *The Oxford Times* newspaper. (= Person who writes articles.)

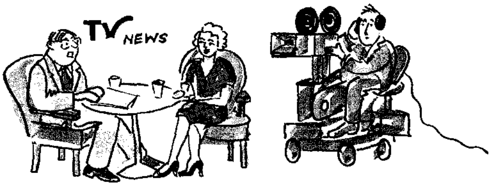

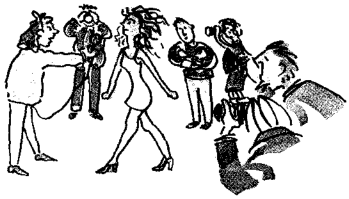

Exercises

58.1 **Fill the gaps in these sentences.**

1 The news ....is....... on Channel 3 at nine o'clock every night.
2 Ten million people watch this .... every week. It's very popular.
3 There was a .... about traffic problems in cities on TV last night.
4 I saw a .... programme about birds in Antarctica.
5 My sister is 13; she reads .... magazines every week. She likes the love stories.
6 With my computer I can get the sports news on the ....
7 Most young children don't read newspapers, they prefer ....

58.2 **Match the left-hand column with the right-hand column. Draw lines.**

1 Talking about family problems
2 Film of elephants in Africa
3 Football cup final
4 Reports from all over the world
5 Maria decides not to marry Philip

a International news
b Sports programme
c Soap opera
d Nature programme
e Talk show

58.3 **What can we find in these magazines? Match the left-hand column with the right-hand column. Draw lines.**

1 a computer magazine
2 a women's magazine
3 a news magazine
4 a teenage magazine

a articles about health
b pictures of pop music stars
c news about the Internet
d interviews with politicians

58.4 **What do you call ...**

1 a person who goes out and gets stories for newspapers? A reporter
2 a person who writes articles in newspapers and magazines?
3 a newspaper you can buy every day after about 5 p.m.?
4 a magazine that children read, with cartoon pictures?
5 a programme on TV about animals, birds, etc?

58.5 **Answer these questions for *yourself.***

1 Do you read a morning or an evening newspaper?
2 How many TV channels do you have?
3 Is satellite TV popular in your country?
4 How many hours of TV do you watch every day?
5 What are your favourite kinds of TV programmes?

58.6 **Write a paragraph about the media in your country. Use words from the opposite page.**

59 Everyday problems

A At home

The TV **isn't working**. Can you **repair** it?

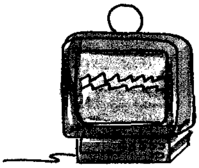

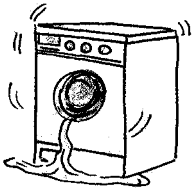

The washing machine is **broken**. We need to **mend** it.

The plants **are dying**.
Did you forget to **water** them?

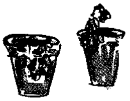

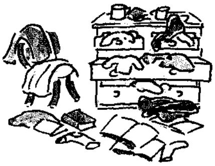

The room is **untidy**. We must **tidy** it.

I've lost my keys. Will you help me **look for** them?

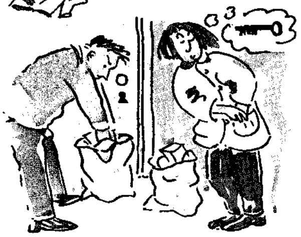

You've **cut** your finger.
You should **put on a plaster**.

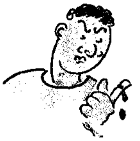

You've **had a row** /raʊ/ **with** a friend. Will you **apologise**? (= say 'I'm sorry'.)

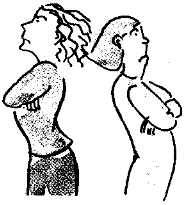

B At work

Carla had a bad day at work yesterday. She was **late for** work.

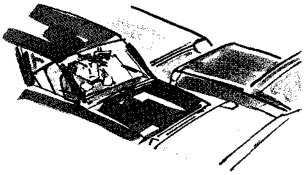

She had **too much work to do**.

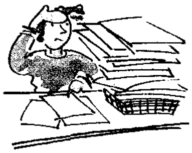

Her colleague was **in a bad mood**.

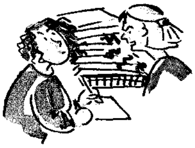

Her **computer crashed**.

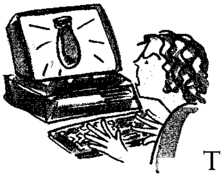

The photocopier was **out of order**.

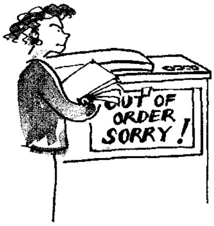
OUT OF ORDER SORRY!

The coffee machine **wasn't working**.

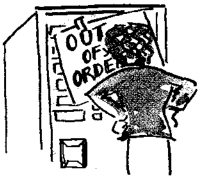

Tip: When you need to make a list of things to do, make it in English, e.g.
Mend my bike Water the plants Tidy my desk

Exercises

59.1 Look at the pictures. What is the problem?

1
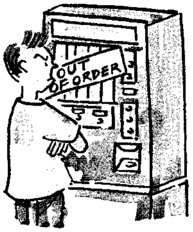

2
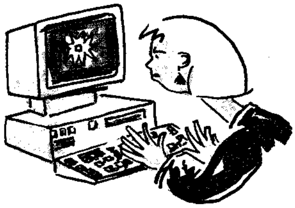

3
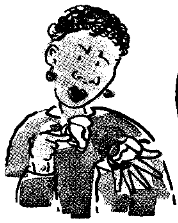

4
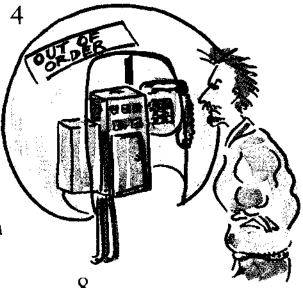

5
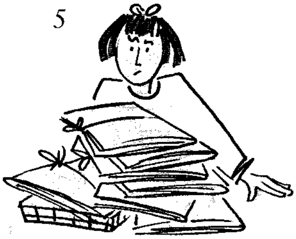

6
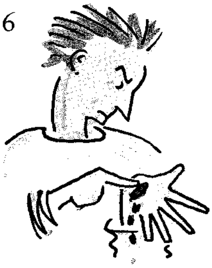

7
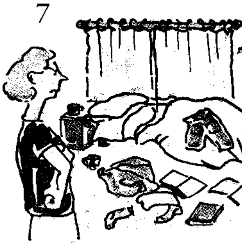

8
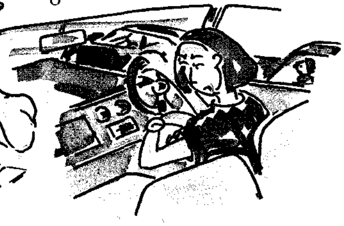

1 Sam The coffee machine isn't working.
2 Sarah ....
3 Maria ....
4 Tommy ....
5 Tina ....
6 Ross ....
7 Delia ....
8 Kim ....

59.2 Write down three nouns that can go with these words:

1 broken window/cup/glass
2 cut ....
3 untidy ....
4 late for ....
5 a .... that isn't working
6 too much ....

59.3 Put the problems in two groups, *serious* or *not serious*.

1 a TV that doesn't work
2 dying plants
3 a cut finger
4 being late for work
5 a colleague in a bad mood
6 a photocopier that is out-of-order
7 a coffee machine that isn't working
8 a broken washing machine
9 an untidy bedroom
10 a row with a friend
11 a computer crash
12 lost keys
13 too much work

59.4 Look at Carla's problems in B. What could she do?

She was late for work – get a new alarm clock.

59.5 Can you think of three everyday problems that you, or people you know, have had recently? Write them down in English. Use a dictionary if you need one.

60 Global problems

A Natural disasters

There was a **hurricane** / **snowstorm** / **forest fire** there last year.
hurricane = when there is a very strong wind
snowstorm = when there is a lot of snow and wind at the same time
forest fire = when it is very dry and trees catch fire

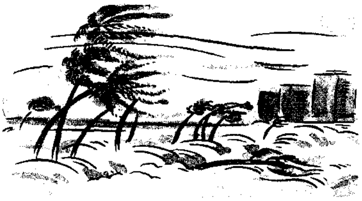

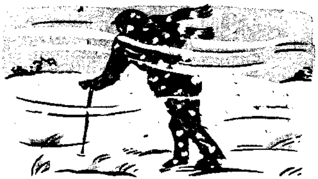

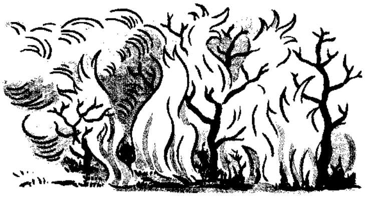

San Francisco has had a lot of **earthquakes**. (= when the earth moves)
The river often **floods** after heavy rain. (= when there is too much water)

B Man-made problems

There are too many people in some places. Cities are too **crowded**.
Many people are:
poor = they do not have enough money
hungry = they do not have enough food
homeless = they do not have a place to live
unemployed = they do not have a job

There is a lot of **pollution** in many cities. (= when the air, water or earth is dirty and bad for people, plants and animals)
The **air pollution** is very bad today.
The river is **polluted** and a lot of fish have died.

The American **War** of Independence lasted eight years. (= fighting between two or more countries or nationalities)

The **traffic jams** in the city are terrible **in the rush hour**. (= times when everyone is going to work)

He had a **car crash** on the way to work.

There's a teachers' **strike** today. (= when they will not work)
The bus drivers are **on strike**.

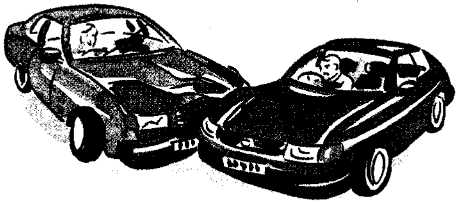

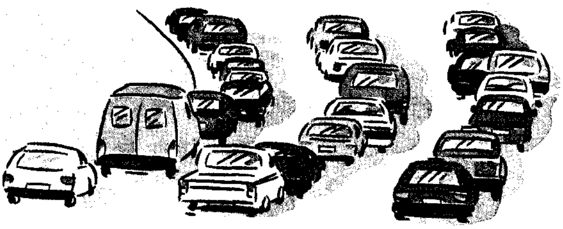

Exercises

60.1 What problems can you see in the pictures?

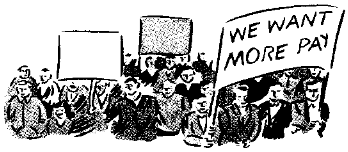

1 ....strike..............................

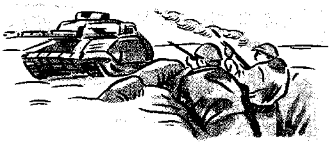

4 ....

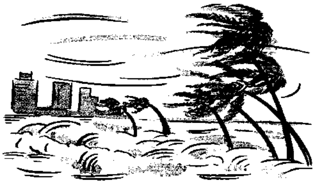

7 ....

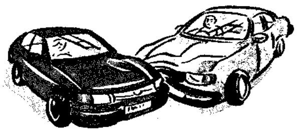

2 ....

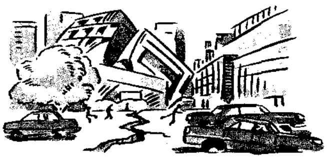

5 ....

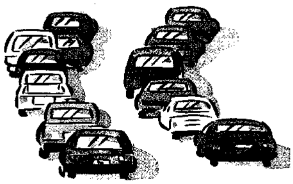

8 ....

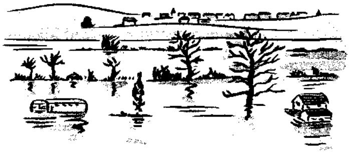

3 ....

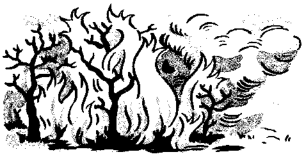

6 ....

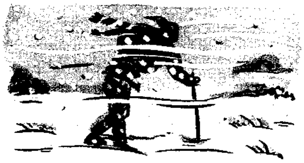

9 ....

60.2 Write down the natural disasters in A and the names of places they have happened.

hurricane – Florida

60.3 Write down all the problems in B that you have in your country and the places where you have them.

poor people – small villages

60.4 Put all the words on the opposite page into groups in any way that seems appropriate to you. You may use as many groups as you wish.

hurricane, snowstorm, flood – problems because of the weather

60.5 Fill the gaps with a word from the opposite page.

1 Cars make air ....pollution............ worse in towns.
2 Their wages were very low so the workers went on ....
3 My great-grandfather died in the First World ....
4 Jack had a .... last year but fortunately no-one was hurt.
5 Japan often has .... and Siberia often has ....
6 When people are ...., they sometimes have to sleep on the streets.

Tip: Try to listen to or watch the news in English every day.

Answer key

Unit 1

1.1 and 1.2 Check your work with a teacher if you are not sure about your answers.

1.3

noun	*verb*	*adjective*
book house word man	speak have write say	good new right blue

1.4 *Possible answers:*

to, for, with, below

1.5
2 question
3 phrase
4 sentence
5 question
6 sentence

1.6
1 books
2 man
3 No, it's a preposition.
4 No, it's a noun.
5 No, it's a sentence.
6 No, it's an adjective. The adverb is *badly*.

1.7 *Possible answers:*

2 black, green, blue, red
3 speak, English
4 It depends where you live.
5 make a mistake; do homework; have a shower

Unit 2

2.1 *Possible answers:*

have a party, a shower, lunch, a lesson, a cup of tea, a meeting, etc.

2.2
wet
dry
warm — weather
cool
rainy

2.3

name of family	*words in family*
education	school teacher exam student
weather	rain sun cloud snow ice

2.4 *Possible pictures:*

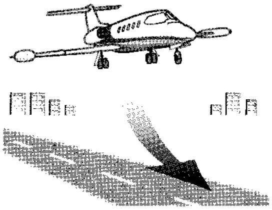

1 **a plane lands**

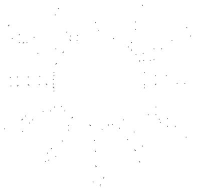

2 **sunny weather**

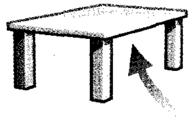

3 **under** the table

2.5 *Possible words:*

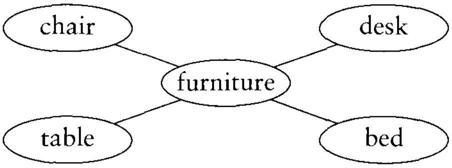

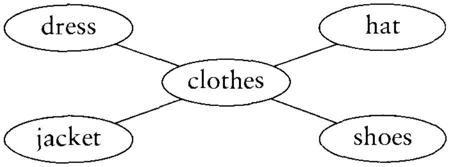

Unit 3

3.1 *Possible answers:*

1 coffee / tea / juice ... toast / bread / fruit / an egg
2 an appointment
3 tennis / squash / rugby / darts / football / chess / cards
4 party
5 shower / bath / wash
6 exam
7 meeting
8 coffee / cup of tea / drink / sandwich
9 swim
10 dinner / supper / a meal / something to eat

3.2 *Possible answers:*

1 I've got one brother and two sisters.
2 I have them at 9.30 every day.
3 I have a sandwich and a cup of tea.
4 No, I have to go on Wednesday and Friday.
5 I've got two.
6 Yes, I always have a party.
7 I usually have pasta or fish.

3.3

Across	*Down*
1 meal	2 exam
3 party	4 tea
5 game	

3.4 *Possible answers:*

1 Why don't you have a drink / some water / a cup of tea?
2 Bye! Have a good time! *or* Have a good journey!
3 Oh! have you got a cold?
4 Is that new? Can I have a look?

Unit 4

4.1
2 Soraya and Mehmet are going shopping.
3 Imran is going to Cairo.
4 The Patels are going to the beach.
5 Natasha is going fishing.

4.2
2 We're going sightseeing today.
3 Jo went up to the top of the hill. *or* Jo went down to the bottom of the hill.
4 Let's go fishing today.
5 She went out of the shop.

4.3 *Possible answers:*

I sometimes go swimming.
I sometimes go dancing.
I always go sightseeing.
I never go skiing.
I never go fishing.

4.4 2 On Tuesday Alison is going to write to Juan.
3 On Wednesday she is going to watch the World Cup on TV.
4 On Thursday she is going to have a tennis lesson.
5 On Friday Alison is going to go to the cinema.

4.5 *Possible answers:*

From Cambridge, trains go to London, Norwich, Ely and Peterborough. Buses go to Oxford, to Heathrow and to Scotland from Cambridge. From Cambridge roads go to London, to the sea and to Huntingdon.

Unit 5

5.1 2 What is the woman doing? She's reading a book.
3 What are the girls doing? They are playing tennis.
4 What is the man in the house doing? He's washing-up. / He's doing the washing-up.
5 What is the dog doing? It's sleeping.
6 What is the man in the garden doing? He's gardening. / He's doing the gardening.

5.2 2 What does Lara Brown do? She's a secretary.
3 What does Sophie Hicks do? She's a doctor.
4 What do Ted and Joe do? They're students.

5.3 2 What did Lara Brown do? She went to a meeting.
3 What did Sophie Hicks do? She talked to five patients.
4 What did Ted and Jo do? They wrote an essay.

5.4 *Possible answers:*

I usually do the washing-up.
My husband usually does the washing.
My son has to do his homework every day.
My husband does his exercises every morning.
He does business with Eastern Europe.
I hate doing the housework.
I love doing the gardening.
I always do my best.

5.5 ANNA: Where did you go on your holidays? To London?
PAVEL: No, we didn't go to London this year. We went to Scotland.
ANNA: Does your grandmother live in Scotland?
PAVEL: No, she doesn't but my uncle does.

Unit 6

6.1 1 make
2 do
3 do
4 do/take; do/take
5 make

6.2 1 made/makes me (feel) sad.
2 make me (feel) tired.
3 made me (feel) angry.

6.3 1 He's making a photocopy.
2 She's making tea.
3 The children are making a noise.
4 They're making a video / a film.

6.4 1 Can I take a photo of you?
2 He's 25 but he never does his own washing. He takes his dirty clothes to his mother's.
3 What do you think, yes or no? We must make a decision today.
4 I have to make an appointment with the doctor. Do you have her phone number?
5 I make mistakes when I speak English.
6 Are you doing/taking an exam tomorrow?

Unit 7

7.1 2 back home
3 into
4 from
5 see
6 out of / back from

7.2 *Possible answers:*

1 I usually come home at five-thirty.
2 I'm from / I come from Scotland/Jamaica/Pakistan/Latvia/Bolivia, etc.
3 I sit down and talk to my friends / take out my books.

7.3 1 Come in!
2 Come here, please!
3 We're going to a party. Do you want to come along?

7.4 1 come
2 came
3 comes
4 Are ... coming

7.5 *Possible meanings and sentences:*

1 **come round** can mean 'come to someone's house/flat'.
Do you want to come round this afternoon for a coffee?
2 **come across** can mean 'meet/find for the first time'.
I come across lots of new words when I read English books.
3 **come up** can mean 'be mentioned / occur in conversation'.
When new words come up in class, the teacher tells us the meaning.

Unit 8

8.1 *Possible answers:*

1 It takes me 10 minutes to get to university.
2 It takes me an hour to go from Cambridge to London.
3 It takes me an hour to do one unit of this book.

8.2 1 take an exam.
2 took some lessons. / took a course.
3 take a course? / take some lessons?
4 take your driving test.

8.3 1 She takes the train.
2 You can / could / have to / should take a taxi.
3 He takes the bus.
4 They take the Underground.

8.4 1 a camera
2 an umbrella
3 my passport
4 my books and pens/pencils

8.5 For some people, it takes them about an hour.

Unit 9

9.1 2 bring 4 Take 6 bring
3 bring 5 take

9.2 1 take; bring ... back 2 brought ... back 3 take; bring ... back

9.3 1 Yesterday he brought me some flowers.
2 You must take your passport when you travel.
3 Come to my house and bring your guitar.
4 Go to the secretary and take these papers, please.
5 Everybody is going to bring food to the party.

9.4 1 brought 2 brought 3 took 4 taken ... bring

Unit 10

10.1 *Possible answers:*

1 tired 2 sick 3 hot

10.2 2 it gets light. 4 'm getting wet!
3 's getting better. 5 'm getting cold.

10.3 2 a doctor 5 a newspaper
3 a glass 6 a taxi / a bus / a train
4 a pen/pencil and paper 7 a job

10.4 1 gets to 2 gets to 3 can I get to

10.5 *Possible answers:*

1 In Britain, people get married mostly when they are 20 to 30 years old.
2 People usually get married at the weekend, mostly on Saturday. April, May and June are very popular months (spring and summer).
3 I get home at about 5 o'clock. I get there by car.
4 get

Unit 11

11.1 1 c 2 d 3 g 4 f 5 b 6 h 7 e 8 a

11.2 1 on 3 on; up 5 off 7 on
2 off 4 off 6 on with 8 on

11.3 2 Someone is doing up a shoe.
3 A plane is taking off.
4 Someone is turning on the oven.

11.4 *Possible answers:*

There are lots of different ways to answer this question. This is one way.

Words connected with dressing and daily routine
do up (e.g. coat)
put something on
take off (e.g. shoes)
get up

Words connected with movement
come on
take off (aeroplane)

Words connected with equipment
turn up
turn down (stereo)
turn on
turn off
go off

Words connected with people or things doing well or getting better
get on
get over

Words connected with people speaking
turn down (an offer)
go on

11.5 1 took off
2 took off
3 went on
4 got over

Unit 12

12.1 *Possible answers:*

1 I usually wake up at seven o'clock.
2 I go to the bathroom and have a shower.
3 I usually have tea and toast for breakfast.
4 I go to work by car.
5 I usually have a cup of tea/coffee at eleven o'clock.

12.2 2 She washes her clothes every Saturday.
3 He cleans the house every weekend.
4 He watches TV (*or* television) every evening.
5 She goes for a walk every Sunday.

12.3 *Possible questions:*

2 How often do you go for a walk?
3 How do you go to work?
4 When do you have dinner?

Unit 13

13.1 2 told
3 said
4 tell; said
5 said
6 said

13.2
1 Can you tell me where the railway station is?
2 How do you say 'tree' in German?
3 Excuse me, can you tell me the time?
4 I just want to say goodbye (to you).
5 Can you tell me when the exam is?
6 Can you answer the phone, please?

13.3 *Possible answers:*

1 Say Happy New Year
2 Answer the door
3 Ask for the bill
4 Reply to a letter
5 Tell a joke
6 Talk to a friend
7 Ask someone to help you

We can also say 'answer a letter', but not 'reply to the door'!

13.4
1 Ask for the bill in Spanish.
2 Ask how much something is in Malay.
3 Say Merry Christmas in Swedish.
4 Say good morning in Japanese.
5 Say thank you in Arabic.

Unit 14

14.1
2 danced
3 swims
4 run
5 climbing
6 fell
7 jumped; swam
8 walk

14.2
1 ride
2 drives
3 takes
4 drives
5 take; go by
6 ride
7 ride
8 take

Note you can also use *go by* with all these forms of transport (but without 'the' or 'a') i.e. you can go to work by bicycle, go home by underground/taxi, etc.

14.3 *Possible answers:*

2 I ride my bike once a week.
3 I swim in the sea once a year.
I swim in a pool once a week.
4 I never jog.
5 I drive my car every day.
6 I go dancing once a month.
7 I go climbing once a year.

14.4 *Possible answers:*

Please pass the salt.
Please pass the pepper.
Please pass the bread.
Please pass the water.
Please pass the salad.
Please pass the sauce.

14.5
2 Maria drove her grandmother to the city yesterday.
3 Bill caught the 9.45 train to London yesterday.
4 I took a taxi home from the station yesterday.
5 Jane fell when she rode her bike yesterday.

Unit 15

15.1
1 because
2 and
3 before
4 so
5 although
6 if

15.2 *Possible sentences:*

Mary agreed to marry Paul after they decided to set up a business together.
Mary will marry Paul although/though she doesn't love him.
Mary agreed to marry Paul and they had two sons.
Mary agreed to marry Paul because he was a pop star.
Mary will marry Paul before he moves to London.
Mary will marry Paul but she doesn't love him.
Mary agreed to marry Paul if he moved to London.
Mary agreed to marry Paul so he moved to London.
Mary will marry Paul when he moves to London.

15.3 Check with a teacher or a dictionary if you are not sure if your answers are correct or not.

15.4
1 as well / too / also
2 Even
3 like
4 Only
5 than

15.5 *Possible answers:*

I only play tennis in the summer.
It is too cold to swim here even in summer.
She plays the piano better than I do.
He swims like a fish.
I like listening to music and I like reading also.
I like going skiing too.
I often go skiing with the children and sometimes my husband comes as well.

15.6 *Possible answers:*

1 I enjoy it.
2 I do all the exercises in this book.
3 I am also studying Spanish.
4 it is very difficult.
5 I was fifteen.
6 I can manage in British hotels.
7 not this year.

Unit 16

16.1 1 an hour 2 a century 3 a week 4 a year

16.3 Thirty days has September,
April, June and November.
All the rest have thirty one.
Except for February dear
Which has twenty eight days clear
And twenty nine in each leap year. (= every four years)

This is a traditional rhyme which people use to help them remember the number of days of the month. It means that:
September, April, June and November have 30 days. The other months have 31 days except for February which has 28 days and 29 days in a leap year.

16.4
1 Monday
2 August
3 October
4 Saturday
5 Wednesday
6 January
7 April
8 Thursday
9 February
10 September
11 Tuesday
12 November

16.5
1 T F S (first letters of the days of the week)
2 A S O N D (first letters of the months)
3 A W (first letters of the four seasons)

16.6 I'm going to a party on Saturday for Jill's birthday. Her birthday is on Thursday but she wanted to have the party on a weekend. She's having a barbecue. I think June is a good month to have a birthday because of the weather. I love going to barbecues in the summer. My birthday is in the winter and it's too cold to eat outside.

16.7 *Possible answers:*

It is only possible here to give answers to some of these questions. Check with your teacher if you are not sure if your answers to any of the other questions are correct or not.

1 900
2 Tuesday or Wednesday
6 Thirty
9 July

Unit 17

17.1 1 In 2 for 3 from 4 to 5 At 6 for

17.2

the 19th century the 18th century	the past
the 20th century *	the present
the 21st century * the 22nd century	the future

* If you are using this book after the year 2000, then *the twentieth century* is the past and not *the present* and *the twenty first century* is *the present* and not *the future.*

17.3 1 Probably tomorrow. 2 Probably a week ago. 3 In a few minutes.

17.4 *Possible answers:*

2 I sometimes go to school by bus. I normally go by car.
3 I never play football.
4 I often watch TV.
5 I occasionally drink milk. I usually drink coffee.
6 I never wear a hat.
7 I often eat chocolate.
8 I sometimes go to bed at 10. I usually go to bed at 11.
9 I sometimes go to the theatre.

17.5 John plays tennis twice a week. He practises the piano once a week and he has a business meeting in Germany once a month.

Sally and Amy play tennis three times a week. They practise the piano twice a day. They go to Germany for a business meeting six times a year. *or* They have a business meeting in Germany six times a year.

17.6 *Possible answer:*

I usually get up early. I always have a cup of coffee when I wake up. I often work at home but sometimes I go to a school to teach. I never drive. Sometimes I walk to school and sometimes I go by bus. Now and then I have lunch in a park near school; but I hardly ever have a hot lunch. I normally eat a sandwich and occasionally I have an apple as well. Once a week I visit a friend and we go to the cinema together or have a meal in a restaurant.

Unit 18

18.1 1 here 2 here 3 there 4 there

18.2 1 back from Paris 2 everywhere

18.3

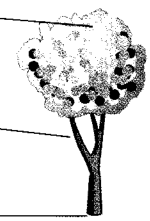
The top of the tree
The middle of the tree
The bottom of the tree

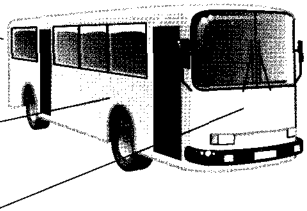
The back of the bus
The side of the bus
The front of the bus

18.4 *Possible answers:*

1 When I studied English, I studied at home, in Britain.
2 Yes, I'm going to Dublin and to the USA.
3 At the moment I have a pen in my right hand.
4 The answer key.
5 The unit on **Have** is at the beginning of this book (Unit 3). Note *at.*
6 The unit on **Feelings** is in the middle of this book (Unit 34). Note *in.*

18.5 1 abroad 2 out 3 away 4 away; abroad

Unit 19

19.1

2 badly
3 loudly
4 fast [NOT ~~fastly~~]
5 quietly
6 well

19.2 *Possible answers:*

1 Usually, a quiet person is better.
2 Most people like a fast bus.
3 A friendly person!
4 A right answer is best in class!
5 To speak politely – always.
6 Usually it's better to speak in a normal way.

19.3

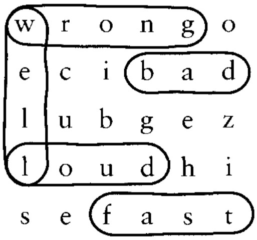

w	r	o	n	g	o
e	c	i	b	a	d
l	u	b	g	e	z
l	o	u	d	h	i
s	e	f	a	s	t

19.4

word	*definition*	*right* (✓)	*wrong* (✗)
suddenly	very slowly		✗
sadly	in an unhappy way	✓	
strangely	not in a normal way	✓	
quickly	very slowly		✗
easily	with no difficulty	✓	

Suddenly means very quickly, when you are not expecting it.
Quickly is similar to 'fast' when fast is an adverb, not when it is an adjective.

Unit 20

20.2
2 give, gave, given; take, took, taken
3 come, came, come; go, went, gone
4 make, made, made; break, broke, broken
5 walk, walked, walked; run, ran, run
6 wake, woke, woken; sleep, slept, slept
7 remember, remembered, remembered; forget, forgot, forgotten
8 rise, rose, risen; fall, fell, fell
9 win, won, won; lose, lost, lost
10 buy, bought, bought; sell, sold, sold

20.3
1 woke/got
2 ate
3 drank
4 drove
5 read
6 wrote
7 ran
8 bought
9 sat
10 made
11 left
12 met
13 went
14 slept

20.4
1 swum
2 stolen
3 spent
4 become
5 caught
6 hurt; broken

20.5 *Possible sentences:*

Bill brought me a present from the USA.
I chose a strawberry ice-cream.
Snow fell all day yesterday.
I felt very cold last night.
We flew to Paris last summer.
My little brother kept a pet mouse in his bedroom.
Jack paid for our meal.
Mary spoke good Spanish.
My brother taught me to play football.
I told him to help you.
I thought you were at home.
Manchester United won the game.

Unit 21

21.1
1 money
2 milk; butter
3 advice
4 air
5 work
6 traffic

21.2
1 heavy luggage
2 useful information
3 bad news
4 modern furniture
5 brown bread
6 cold water
7 space travel

21.3 brown sugar; heavy traffic; good advice; expensive accommodation; fresh air; hard work; brown rice; delicious spaghetti; unsalted butter; cold milk; Indian tea; Colombian coffee

21.4
1 is/was
2 is/was
3 is/was
4 is; was
5 is/was
6 is/was

21.5
2 Where can I get some information about your country?
3 Let me give you some advice.
4 Cook this spaghetti for ten minutes.
5 Can I have some bread, please?
6 Mary is looking for a new job.
7 We should buy some new furniture.
8 The east of the country usually has better weather than the west.
9 We went on two long journeys last year.
10 I must find some new accommodation soon.

Unit 22

22.1 *Possible answers:*

1 terrible/horrible/awful/bad
2 terrible/awful
3 excellent/great/wonderful
4 awful/horrible
5 wonderful/lovely
6 bad

22.2 *Possible answers:*

1 Yes, it's very nice. / Yes it's lovely.
2 Oh, how awful!
3 That's an excellent idea. *or* Yes, great!
4 Yes, there's the *Ritz*. It's the best restaurant in town.
5 She/He's a wonderful person! (We hope you can say this!)

22.3 1 c 2 e 3 f 4 a 5 b 6 d

22.4

good (+)	*bad (-)*
gorgeous	dreadful
marvellous	ghastly
fine	horrendous
superb	
brilliant	

22.5
gorgeous boy/girl
marvellous weather/food
fine weather/day
superb idea/view
ghastly man/restuarant
horrendous traffic/person

Unit 23

23.1
1 A: Mary's very nice.
B: She's more than nice, she's wonderful/lovely!

2 A: Was George not very nice to you?
B: He was really horrible!

3 A: Let me carry your bag.
B: Thanks, that's (very) kind of you.

4 A: Is your little brother well-behaved?
B: No, he's (very) naughty.

23.2
1 stupid
2 wonderful
3 lovely
4 difficult
5 nice
6 easy-going
7 horrible

23.3 Most people probably think they are most of these things at some time, or at least the positive ones!

23.4 2 of 3 to 4 of

Unit 24

24.1
1 John is waiting for a train to London.
2 This bicycle belongs to the hotel.
3 The children thanked their grandmother for the money.
4 Sally is listening to her walkman.
5 He apologised for his mistake.
6 Let me pay for our tickets.
7 Billy is thinking about the holidays.

24.2 *Possible answers:*

2 after people.
3 for them.
4 forward to it.
5 at me
6 for a new one.
7 forward to it.
8 after the children

24.3 1 to 2 at 3 to 4 in 5 to 6 of

24.4
3 Hiroshi wasn't used to eating British food.
4 He was used to traffic jams.
5 He was used to expensive shops.
6 He wasn't used to British money.

24.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I was good at languages and bad at physical education.
2 I usually ask for a black coffee.
3 I am proud of my family.
4 I am afraid of going to the dentist.
5 I like listening to folk music.
6 I am looking forward to my holiday.
7 I belong to a teachers' club.
8 I am used to eating lots of different kinds of food.

Unit 25

25.1
2 rewrite (*or* redo)
3 informal
4 unhappy
5 half-price
6 unsafe

25.2 *Possible answers:*

He and his two ex-wives are all good friends.
An ex-president is giving a lecture here tomorrow.
It is impossible to read his handwriting.
Pre-school children learn by playing.
This work is not very good. Please redo it.

25.3
2 nerves before an exam
3 a wrong answer, an answer that is not correct
4 a book that has not been read
5 to tell a story again
6 a brother with one parent the same (for example, perhaps with the same mother but not the same father)

7 a letter that is not finished
8 a drink with no alcohol in it (for example, fruit juice, cola)
9 to read a book for a second time
10 to send a letter to a new address (to forward a letter)

25.4 *Possible answers:*

non: a non-stick pan
in: an incomplete answer
im: an impolite question
pre: a pre-lunch drink
re: to repaint a room
un: an unanswered question

25.5 *Possible answer:*

This paragraph is a rather silly story but it uses most of the words in the table.

He is a very unhappy ex-president. He never sees his ex-wife or his pre-school grandchildren. He lives in a house which is a half-hour bus ride from the city centre in an unsafe area. It is very crowded there and it is impossible for non-residents to park there. He is rewriting his autobiography for the third time in a very informal style. I don't know why he redoes it so often. He is sure that the book will only sell if it is sold at half-price.

25.6 2 uncomfortable
3 unsafe
4 informal
5 non-smoking
6 unhappy
7 impolite
8 incorrect

Unit 26

26.1 2 happily 3 instructor 4 word processor 5 swimmer 6 useful

26.2 *Possible answers:*

You may be able to think of some other possible combinations.

2 fast worker/car/swimmer
3 beautiful picture/beach/book/weather/smile
4 sandy beach
5 sunny weather/smile
6 hard worker
7 useful idea/book/car
8 endless beach/fun
9 useless idea/book (Note that you can also say I'm a useless swimmer. It is quite colloquial and means I am no good at swimming.)

26.3 1 politics 2 sociology 3 economics 4 psychology

26.4 Check with a teacher if you are not sure if your answers are right or not.

26.5 2 a person who travels
3 the opposite of fast
4 with lots of hope
5 weather when it is raining
6 it doesn't hurt
7 the opposite of doing something well
8 a thing for opening tins
9 the study of maths
10 a person who plays football

Unit 27

27.1 2 lose
3 felt
4 cooker
5 fell
6 quite
7 loose
8 cook

27.2

word	*sounds like?*	*yes (✓)*	*sounds like?*	*yes (✓)*
lose	juice		shoes	✓
loose	juice	✓	shoes	
quite	right	✓	higher	
quiet	right		higher	✓

27.3
2 He/She checks it.
3 Can I borrow your camera?
4 Good afternoon.
5 They wait for the bus.
6 Can you lend me £1 for the phone?
7 Please be quiet.

27.4 *Possible answers:*

1 I am expecting my brother at 5.30. (= He said he would come at 5.30)
2 I hope to learn a lot of new words. (= I really want to learn new words)
3 Sometimes I borrow books and tapes.
4 Yes, but only to my *best* friend!

Unit 28

28.1 *Possible answers:*

My mother was born in Hull on June 19 1907.
My father was born in South Africa on June 4 1909.
My brother was born in London on June 6 1940.
My husband was born in Russia on February 6 1946.
My son was born in Cambridge on October 16 1988.

28.2
2 Elvis Presley was born in 1935 and died in 1977.
3 Genghis Khan was born in 1162 and died in 1227.
4 Leonardo da Vinci was born in 1452 and died in 1519.
5 George Washington was born in 1732 and died in 1799.

28.3
1 died
2 death
3 dead
4 died
5 dead

28.4
2 (bride)groom
3 single
4 to weigh
5 divorced
6 a funeral
7 a honeymoon
8 widowed

28.5
1 In
2 to
3 of
4 on
5 born
6 after

28.6 *Possible answer:*

I have two brothers and two sisters. My sisters are both married. One sister got married this year. She had a very big wedding and was a beautiful bride. They went to Italy on their honeymoon. The other sister got married four years ago. She has two children. The boy was born two years ago and the girl was born last year. One of my brothers is divorced and one is single. My father died two years ago. My mother is widowed.

Unit 29

29.1
2 brother
3 aunt
4 uncle
5 grandmother
6 grandfather
7 nephew
8 niece
9 mother
10 wife
11 cousin

29.2 *Possible family tree:*

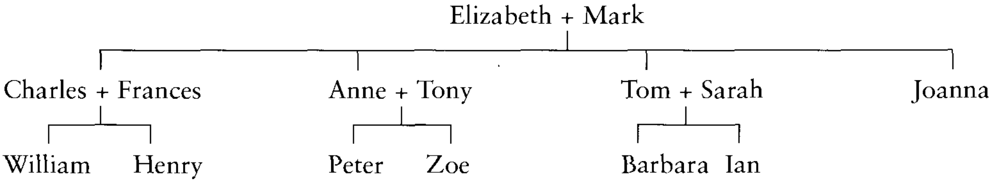

I am Tony. Anne is my wife. Peter and Zoe are our children. Peter is our son and Zoe is our daughter. Barbara is our niece. William, Henry and Ian are our nephews.

29.3
1 uncle
2 aunt
3 brother
4 father
5 grandsons
6 cousins
7 grandmother
8 daughter

29.4 *Possible answers:*

1 Chen has / has got one brother and one sister.
2 Chen has / has got two cousins.
3 Chen has / has got two nephews but I haven't got any nieces.
4 Chen has / has got only one grandmother now.

Unit 30

30.1
2 nose
3 heart
4 stomach
5 shoulder
6 ear
7 tooth

30.2 2 toes 3 teeth 4 nose 5 heart 6 ears 7 knee 8 blood

30.3
1 a back b arms c legs
2 The eye is the hole in the needle.
3 The face is the front of the clock (with the numbers on it). The big hand shows the minutes and the little hand shows the hours.
4 The neck is the narrow part at the top of the bottle.
5 The foot of the mountain is the bottom of the mountain (the lowest part).

30.4
2 football
3 lipstick
4 hairbrush
5 headscarf
6 handbag

30.5 If you find you learnt the words with the pictures particularly well, then try, whenever possible, to draw a picture beside words you want to learn.

Unit 31

31.1 All the words fit into both columns except for *tie* – men; *skirt, dress, handbag* – women.

31.2
1 foot – shoe
2 finger – ring
3 legs – tights
4 eyes – glasses
5 waist – belt
6 head – hat
7 neck – scarf
8 hand – glove

31.3
1 is
2 is wearing
3 has; is carrying
4 is; are
5 were; are
6 Is

31.4
1 sunglasses
2 jersey
3 watch
4 skirt
5 brief-case
6 hat
7 shirt
8 coat
9 umbrella
10 boots

31.5 *Possible answer:*

I am wearing a blue T-shirt and black trousers. I have got white shoes on. I'm wearing a watch, three rings and a pair of glasses.

Unit 32

32.1
2 tall
3 slim/thin
4 fair
5 young
6 fat/overweight
7 elderly

32.2 *Possible questions:*

2 Is Elena's hair blonde/fair? Has Elena got blonde/fair hair? Does Elena have blonde/fair hair?
3 Is Mike's hair long? Does Mike have long hair? Has Mike got long hair?
4 Are your parents old? (*or* more polite: Are your parents elderly?)
5 Is his sister pretty/beautiful?
6 Why is Sara so thin? Why does Sara look so thin? Sara looks very thin, doesn't she?

32.3 *Possible answers:*

1 Suzanna's got long blonde hair and fair skin.
2 Jeff has short fair hair and a beard.
3 Caroline's got dark skin and dark hair.
4 Dick's hair is long and he has a moustache.

32.4 *Possible answers:*

Joanna: Joanna is tall. She has long black hair and brown eyes. She's very pretty.
Kevin: Kevin is medium height. He has fair hair and a beard. His eyes are blue. He's quite ordinary-looking.
My mother: My mother is short, with grey hair. She has green eyes. She is a beautiful woman.

Unit 33

33.1 *Possible answers:*

not serious	*more serious*	*very serious*
a headache a cold toothache	hay-fever asthma	cancer cholera a heart attack

33.2
1 I'm very well / I'm fine, thanks.
2 I feel sick. (*or perhaps* I don't feel very well. *or* I feel ill.)
3 feel ill.
4 I've got toothache.
5 a cold?

33.3 *Possible answers:*

1 A lot of fruit and vegetables, not so many sweet things.
2 I like/love swimming/cycling/playing golf/skiing/jogging/playing tennis, etc.
3 Sometimes I have a lot of stress at work / when I have exams.
4 Yes, I had an operation once / I broke my leg, etc. ('Be in hospital' means you are ill, you are a patient. 'Be in a hospital' can just mean you are visiting someone.)

33.4
2 cholera
3 asthma
4 hay-fever
5 cancer / heart attacks (*or* heart disease)

Unit 34

34.1 *Possible answers:*

1 I love chocolate.
2 I hate cowboy films.
3 I like aeroplanes.
4 I like tea.
5 I don't like football.
6 I love cats.
7 I like cars.
8 I don't like jazz music.

34.2 *Possible answers:*

2 I prefer cats to dogs.
3 I prefer sightseeing to sunbathing.
4 I prefer BMWs to Rolls Royces.
5 I prefer strawberry to chocolate ice-cream.
6 I prefer watching sport to doing sport.

34.3 *Possible answers:*

2 I hope (that) the lesson ends soon.
3 I want some food.
4 I hope (that) my friend feels better soon.
5 I want to go to bed.
6 I want to cry.
7 I hope (that) it gets warmer soon.

34.4
2 Fred is thirsty.
3 The children are happy.
4 William is cold.
5 Mrs Jones is tired.
6 Mr Jones is angry.
7 Fiona is surprised.

34.5 *Possible answers:*

2 I felt surprised yesterday when an old friend rang me.
3 I felt upset when my boss was rude to me.

Unit 35

35.1
1 Bless you!
2 Good luck!
3 Congratulations! / Well done!
4 Goodbye.
5 Happy Birthday!
6 Fine thanks.
7 Hello! / Hi!
8 Thank you.

35.2
1 Excuse me!
2 Happy Christmas!
3 Sorry!
4 Congratulations!
5 Cheers!
6 Good morning!

35.3
1 Excuse me.
2 Thank you. Cheers!
3 Goodnight. Sleep well.
4 Good morning.
5 Good afternoon.
6 Happy New Year!
7 Sorry / Excuse me. I didn't understand.
8 Happy Christmas!

35.4
ANN: Good morning.
BILL: Good morning.
ANN: How are you?
BILL: Fine thanks. And you?*
ANN: It's my birthday today.
BILL: Happy Birthday.
ANN: Would you like a drink?
BILL: Yes, please. A coke.
ANN: With ice?
BILL: No, thanks.
ANN: Here you are. Cheers.
BILL: Cheers!

* You can say 'Terrible.' as Bill did, but usually we say 'Fine' even if we feel terrible.

35.5 *Possible answer:*

A: Hello, good morning.
B: Hi. How are you?
A: Fine thanks. And you?
B: Fine. A bit nervous. I'm taking my driving test today.
A: Good luck. That's funny, I passed mine last week.
B: Oh Congratulations!
A: It's my birthday today.
B: Is it? Happy Birthday. Why don't we go out for a drink this evening?
A: OK. See you later. Goodbye.
B: Goodbye. See you soon.

Unit 36

36.1
2 The Sahara is in Africa.
3 The Amazon is in South America.
4 Wogga Wogga is in Australia.
5 The Volga is in Europe.
6 Mount Kilimanjaro is in Africa.
7 The Mississippi is in North America.
8 Mount Fuji is in Asia.
9 Lake Titicaca is in South America.

36.2
1 China
2 Sweden
3 Thailand
4 Brazil
5 Spain
6 Russia

36.3
2 Rome is the capital of Italy.
3 Canberra is the capital of Australia.
4 Bogota is the capital of Colombia.
5 Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
6 Vienna is the capital of Austria.
7 Edinburgh is the capital of Scotland.
8 Ankara is the capital of Turkey.
9 Buenos Aires is the capital of Argentina.
10 Madrid is the capital of Spain.

36.4 Check your answers with your teacher if you are not sure.

36.5
2 In Mexico, Spain and Chile they speak Spanish but in Brazil they speak Portuguese.
3 In Austria, Germany and Switzerland they speak German but in Italy they speak Italian.
4 In Morocco, Egypt and Saudi Arabia they speak Arabic but in China they speak Chinese.
5 In Switzerland, Canada and France they speak French but in Scotland they speak English.

36.6
2 Vietnamese
3 Korean
4 Thai
5 Iraqi
6 German
7 Egyptian
8 Argentinian
9 Dutch
10 Spanish
11 Peruvian
12 Chinese
13 British
14 Greek
15 Australian
16 Polish
17 Indian

Unit 37

37.1 1 d 2 c 3 g 4 e 5 a 6 f 7 b

37.2 *Possible answer:*

most favourite = snow, sun, wind, rain, lightning, cloud, fog = least favourite

37.3
3 It is windy in La Paz.
4 It is cloudy in Paris.
5 It is foggy in Tashkent.
6 It is sunny in Seoul. *or* The sun is shining in Seoul.
7 It is windy in Warsaw.
8 It is snowing in Washington.

37.4
1 shone
2 rains
3 weather
4 snows
5 lightning
6 degrees
7 storm
8 cold

37.5 *Possible answers:*

1 It sometimes snows in December.
2 It is usually 20 degrees in summer and 0 (zero) degrees in winter.
3 There are sometimes thunderstorms in August.
4 It is not usually very wet in spring.
5 We almost never have hurricanes.
6 Summer is my favourite season because it is warm and dry.

37.6 *Possible answer:*

Today it is sunny and warm. There are some clouds in the sky and a little wind. It is not raining and it is not snowing. There is no thunder or lightning – it is not hot enough.

Unit 38

38.1
2 At the tourist information office.
3 At the bank.
4 In/At the car park.
5 At the museum.
6 At the post office.

38.2 *Possible questions:*
2 Where's the town hall?
3 How do I get to the museum?
4 Is there a shopping centre?
5 Where can I park?
6 Where can I change money?

38.3
2 town hall
3 library
4 car park
5 railway station
6 pedestrian area
7 traffic warden

38.4
1 No parking (do not leave your car here)
2 No entry (you must not drive in)
3 Bus stop
4 Information

Unit 39

39.1
1 mountains
2 forest
3 lake
4 hills
5 village
6 path
7 wood
8 fields
9 river
10 farm
11 country road

39.2 1 on 2 cottage 3 village 4 town

39.3
1 We went swimming in the lake. The water was warm.
2 We went walking along a 5-kilometre path.
3 We went skiing down the mountain.
4 We saw some wonderful wildlife in the national park.
5 We had a picnic sitting by the river.

39.4 *Possible sentences:*
1 There are some big forests and a lot of farms.
2 There are no hills or mountains. The countryside is flat. There are a lot of paths where you can walk.
3 There is one big river and some small rivers. The wildlife there is very beautiful.
4 There are a lot of villages and some small towns.

39.5
1 He loves nature.
2 She wants to live in the country.
3 They are interested in wildlife.

Unit 40

40.1 *Possible answers:*
2 giraffe
3 Parrots; budgies; hens
4 Tigers; lions
5 horse; elephant
6 Fish; birds
7 meat
8 Hens; cows (*or* pigs)

40.2 sheep – lamb – lamb
cow – beef – calf
hen – chicken – chick
pig – pork – piglet

40.3 *Possible answers:*

1 Lions, tigers, monkeys, snakes, dogs and cats eat meat.
2 Cows, sheep, pigs, parrots (for feathers), snakes (for snakeskin). (You may think of some other things, e.g. horsehair for wigs for judges.)
3 Hen, tortoise, parrot, budgie, snake, fish.

40.4

Across	*Down*
3 cats	1 parrot
6 lion	2 monkey
7 horse	4 two sheep
8 elephant	5 tiger
	9 hen

40.5 Write down the number you remembered. Try again tomorrow and write down how many you remember then.

Unit 41

41.1 1 e 2 d 3 a 4 f 5 c 6 g 7 b

41.2 1 A single takes you to a place and a return takes you to that place and back again.
2 He or she checks what people bring into a country.
3 No, it lands at the end of a journey and takes off at the beginning of a journey.
4 You can get on a plane or a boat.
5 If you hire a car you have it for a day or a week. If you buy it it is your car.
6 No, you want to go somewhere in their car.

41.3 *Possible answer:*

At the airport, follow the signs to the railway station. Buy a ticket to Cambridge. There are trains every hour. At Cambridge station take a number 5 bus. The stop is just outside the station. Get off the bus at the hospital, cross the road and take the first road on the left. My house is on the corner of the street with a red door.

41.4 Keep the cards and test yourself every day. If you find this useful write cards for words from other units of the book.

41.5

Across	*Down*
3 map	1 timetable
6 helicopter	2 taxi
7 bus	3 motorcycle
8 petrol	4 platform
	5 train

Unit 42

42.1 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 d

42.2 *Possible answers:*

Entrance and Way In – cinema, museum, etc.
Exit and Way Out – airport, cinema, etc.
Push and Pull – on doors in public places e.g. shops, railway station, museum
Please ring for attention – at a hotel reception
Open and Closed – on the door of a shop or museum
Sale – on a shop window
Please pay here – in a shop
Queue this side – at a cinema
Please do not walk on the grass – in the garden of a palace, in some parks
Out of order – on a public phone, on a drinks machine, etc.
Toilets – in a restaurant
WC – in a hotel
Women and Men – in a café

42.3 2 No 3 No 4 a 5 b 6 Yes

42.4 *Possible answers:*

Information	**Instructions**
Entrance and Way In	No smoking
Exit and Way Out	Please ring for attention
Push and Pull	Please pay here
Open and Closed	Queue this side
Sale	Please do not walk on the grass
Out of order	
Toilets	
WC	
Women and Men	

42.5 *Possible answers:*

You might see signs in English at airports, railways stations, beside the road, in hotels. Some other common signs are:
Stop
No entry
One way street
No parking
Admission free (= you don't need to pay to go in)

Unit 43

43.1
2 Fish ... chips
3 potatoes
4 pasta/pizzas
5 meat
6 a hot-dog

43.2

fruit	*vegetables*
pineapple	beans
grapes	onions
apple	carrot
pear	garlic
	mushrooms

43.3 1 banana 2 strawberry 3 peas 4 apple 5 potatoes 6 tomatoes

43.4
2 beer
3 milk
4 coffee
5 fruit juice
6 mineral water

Unit 44

44.1
2 yes
3 yes
4 no, the freezer is *colder* than the fridge.
5 yes
6 no, a tea towel makes them *dry*.

44.2 *Possible questions:*

1 Where's the coffee?
Where can I find the tea?
2 Where's the saucepan?
Where's the frying pan?
3 Where shall I put this mug?
4 Can I help with the washing-up?

44.3 *Possible answers:*
2 tea, a cup, a teapot, a spoon, maybe milk and sugar.
3 a frying pan, oil, a cooker.
4 a plate, a knife and fork, or a spoon and fork, or chopsticks.
5 water and a glass or a cup or a mug.
6 a microwave.

44.4
1 a microwave
2 a saucepan
3 a frying pan and a glass
4 a teapot

Unit 45

45.1
1 bed
2 wardrobe
3 chest of drawers
4 bedside table
5 alarm clock
6 bedside lamp
7 brush
8 mirror
9 comb

45.2 *Possible answers:*

toothpaste, brush, comb, pyjamas, soap.

45.3
2 Selim and Umit are washing their faces.
3 Mrs Park is going downstairs.
4 Mr Park is having a bath.
5 Jaime is getting dressed.
6 Lee is turning off the light.

45.4 *Possible answer:*

bath, shower, toilet, basin, soap, shampoo, toothbrush, toothpaste, mirror, bathroom cupboard with medicines in it, shelf, plants.

45.5 *Possible answer:*

In my bedroom there is a big bed. There are two wardrobes, one on the left and one on the right of the room. I have a bedside table with a lamp and an alarm clock on it. There is a cupboard beside the window. The cupboard has two shelves and five drawers in it.

45.6 *Possible answer:*

I usually go to bed at 10.30. I go upstairs to my bedroom. I get undressed and have a bath. I am usually tired but I always read a bit. I turn off my light after ten minutes. I fall asleep quickly. I wake up before my alarm clock rings. I get up when my alarm clock rings. I wash my face, clean my teeth and get dressed. I go downstairs to the kitchen for breakfast.

Unit 46

46.1
2 a sofa
3 a coffee table, a side/small table
4 a picture
5 a light switch
6 a CD player/tape recorder
7 a carpet

46.2
1 a sofa/an armchair
2 switch on the reading lamp
3 use the remote control

46.3
1 On
2 in; on
3 near
4 against
5 in ... of

46.4 *Possible sentences:*

In my living room there is a table, a TV, a desk, a sofa and two armchairs. The TV is near the window, and the sofa is against the wall. The table is in the middle of the room. The walls are white and there are some pictures on them. I like to relax in the living room. In the evening I watch TV there, or listen to music.

46.5

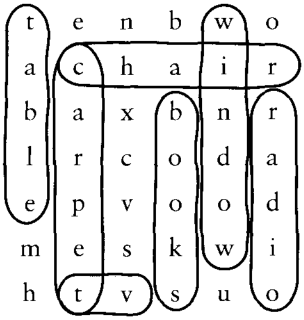

t	e	n	b	w	o
a	c	h	a	i	r
b	a	x	b	n	r
l	r	c	o	d	a
e	p	v	o	o	d
m	e	s	k	w	i
h	t	v	s	u	o

Unit 47

47.1
2 A doctor works in a hospital (or a clinic, or a surgery).
3 A waiter works in a restaurant (or a café).
4 A secretary works in an office.
5 A shop assistant works in a shop.
6 A hairdresser works in a hairdresser's (or a salon).

47.2 1 engineer 2 farmer 3 taxi-driver 4 nurse 5 mechanic 6 secretary

47.3 *Possible answers:*

1 I'm a teacher.
2 In a university.
3 Yes, very interesting.

47.4

Across	*Down*
1 bus driver	1 doctor
2 teacher	2 waiter
3 writer	3 nurse

Unit 48

48.1 1 c 2 d 3 g 4 f 5 b 6 i 7 e 8 a 9 h

48.2 *Possible answers:*

My three favourite subjects were languages, English and art. I didn't like physical education, physics and maths.

48.3 notebook, crayons, cassette, drawing pins, pencil, rubber, ruler, paper clip, tape recorder and pencil sharpener.

48.4 *Possible answer:*

I usually have a tape recorder and some cassettes, a notebook, some pens, some paper clips, a pencil, a rubber and a pencil sharpener.

48.5
2 did
3 passed
4 is studying
5 doing
6 taking
7 take/do
8 passes
9 get
10 fails
11 give

48.6 Try this exercise again in one week's time. How many words can you remember now?

Unit 49

49.1 *Possible answers:*

I have the following: address, letter, envelope, stamp, phone number, phone, mobile phone, computer, screen, disk, mouse, keyboard and e-mail address.

49.2
2 stamps
3 envelope
4 phone box
5 mouse
6 post box
7 mobile phone
8 address
9 screen

49.3
1 It's
2 speak
3 sorry
4 at
5 take/give him
6 ring/call/phone

49.4 *Possible answers:*

1 01223 240754: oh one double two three, two four oh, seven five four
0181 441 7895: oh one eight one, double four one, seven eight nine five
01465 353607: oh one four six five, three five three, six oh seven
01954 345882: oh one nine five four, three four five, double eight two
2 steve@stuff.co.uk: Steve at stuff dot co dot U-K
TESL-L@cunyvm.cuny.edu: Tesl hyphen L at cuny V-M dot cuny dot edu (i.e. Tesl, cuny and edu are read as words while VM is read as individual letters)

49.5 *Possible answers:*

2 An e-mail is usually cheapest (if you have the equipment).
3 I've sent and received them all.
4 Phoning, because I like to talk to my friends.
5 E-mailing is quick and easy.

Unit 50

50.1 1 on 2 on 3 time 4 by

50.2
1 a package holiday (or package tour)
2 a coach tour
3 a walking holiday
4 a winter holiday / a skiing holiday

50.3 *Possible answers:*

	you can take a lot of luggage	*very fast*	*usually cheap*	*you see a lot as you travel*	*you can relax*
ferry	++		++	++	+++
car	+++	++	+++	+++	+
flight		+++	+	+	++

50.4 1 currency 2 passport 3 camera 4 luggage 5 phrase book 6 tickets

50.5 traveller's cheques; a visa

50.6 2 nightlife 3 local 4 Tourist Information 5 language

Unit 51

51.1
1 chemist's
2 toy shop
3 butcher's
4 newsagent's
5 gift shop
6 baker's

51.2
2 The hairdresser's.
3 The post office.
4 A gift shop.
5 A book shop.
6 A department store (or a supermarket).

51.3
1 3rd
2 ground
3 4th
4 basement
5 1st
6 basement
7 ground
8 2nd
9 2nd
10 3rd
11 ground
12 2nd

51.4
2 cash
3 a hairdresser
4 a credit card
5 the basement
6 a piece of paper that is worth five pounds
7 the floor above the ground floor (in a British building)
8 a piece of paper that you get when you buy something
9 the place where you pay for things in a shop

51.5 *Possible answers:*

Shops near me: baker's, newsagent's, chemist's, post office, hairdresser's, supermarket

Departments in my favourite department store: childrenswear, sports equipment, menswear, cosmetics, toys, ladieswear, shoes, electrical goods, stationery, furniture

51.6 1 cost 2 pay 3 (carrier) bag

Unit 52

52.1
1 double room
2 shower
3 TV
4 telephone
5 kettle
6 sea
7 key
8 lift

52.2 1 d 2 a 3 h 4 f 5 b 6 g 7 c 8 e

52.3 *Possible answers:*

1 From £30 – £80 per night
2 00 44 (from e.g. France)
3 1.6
4 102
5 Because they are no use to a thief.

52.4 *Possible answer:*

YOU: Excuse me, please. Can I have one double and one single room for tonight?
RECEPTIONIST: With a bathroom?
YOU: Yes, please.
RECEPTIONIST: Rooms 11 and 12 are free. They are on the first floor.
YOU: How much are they?
RECEPTIONIST: The single room is £30 and the double is £50.
YOU: Thank you. That's fine. We'll take them.
RECEPTIONIST: Good. Can you fill in this form for me, please?

52.5 *Possible answer:*

Can I have a morning call, please?
Can I have breakfast in my room, please?
Can I book a room for next week, please?
Can I have a double room for tonight, please?
Can I have my bill, please?
Can I borrow a hairdryer, please?

Unit 53

53.1 *Possible answers:*

2 restaurant
3 fast food restaurant
4 café
5 bar/pub/café

53.2 *Possible answers:*

café – Jim's Corner Café
restaurant – The Taj Mahal
bar – The Red Lion
sandwich bar – Annabelle's
fast food restaurant – Burger King
self-service café – café in railway station

53.3 *Possible answers:*

1 I'd choose tomato soup, chicken salad and strawberries and cream.
2 A vegetarian would choose melon or tomato soup and a cheese or plain omelette and any of the desserts.

53.4 2 omelette 3 salad 4 potatoes 5 gateau 6 steak

53.5 WAITER: Are you ready to order?
CUSTOMER: Yes. I'd like vegetable soup and steak, please.
WAITER: How would you like your steak? Rare, medium or well-done?
CUSTOMER: Rare, please.
WAITER: What would you like to drink?
CUSTOMER: An orange juice, please.

Unit 54

54.1
1 rugby
2 cricket
3 judo/karate
4 sailing
5 volleyball
6 motor racing

54.2
1 canoeing
2 baseball
3 badminton
4 basketball
5 table tennis
6 skiing

54.3
2 play football?
3 Do you do any sports?
4 go swimming? / like swimming? / swim?

Unit 55

55.1
2 Science fiction
3 Horror
4 Action
5 Cartoon
6 Romance
7 Crime/detective
8 Musical

55.2

			C	R	I	M	E						
			H	O	R	R	O	R					
		C	O	M	E	D	Y						
				A	C	T	I	O	N				
S	C	I	E	N	C	E	F	I	C	T	I	O	N
	W	E	S	T	E	R	N						
	M	U	S	I	C	A	L						
				C	A	R	T	O	O	N			

55.3
1 to the
2 watched (some people say 'saw a video')
3 played
4 in
5 film stars
6 director

55.4 *Possible answers:*

1 *Star Wars*, *Star Trek*, etc.
2 Sean Connery, Demi Moore, Arnold Schwarzenegger, etc.
3 Yes I love them. No, they're boring.
Dick Tracy is one example.
4 Yes, if I'm not on my own.

Unit 56

56.1
1 She's watching TV.
2 He's gardening.
3 He's reading a newspaper.
4 She's cooking.
5 She's using the Internet.
6 He's listening to a CD.

56.2
2 read
3 talk
4 have
5 have/invite
6 play
7 watch
8 see/watch
9 grows

56.3 *Possible answers:*

1 We talk, or we have a meal, or we listen to music, etc.
2 My best friend sometimes comes to stay. / My cousins sometimes come to stay, etc.
3 I like novels, and I read a newspaper every day.
4 I ring them about once a week.

56.4 *Possible answers for a young person who likes technology:*

◄————————————————————►

most interesting … *most boring*

using the Internet watching videos listening to music doing nothing reading cooking gardening

Unit 57

57.1
2 a murderer
3 a shoplifter
4 a burglar
5 a mugger
6 a drug pusher/dealer

57.2
2 arrested
3 vandals
4 fine
5 burglaries
6 innocent
7 take
8 terrorists
9 prison

57.3 *Possible answers:*

1 f 2 g 3 e 4 b 5 a 6 h 7 i

Unit 58

58.1
2 soap (opera) / talk show
3 documentary
4 nature
5 teenage
6 Internet
7 comics

58.2 1 e 2 d 3 b 4 a 5 c

58.3 1 c 2 a 3 d 4 b

58.4
2 A journalist
3 An evening (news)paper
4 A comic
5 A nature programme

58.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I always read an evening newspaper.
2 In Britain, most people have four or five channels. They have more if they have satellite TV.
3 Satellite TV is getting more popular in Britain every year.
4 I watch two or three hours every day.
5 Documentaries and nature programmes.

Unit 59

59.1
2 Her computer has crashed.
3 The cup is broken.
4 The phone is out of order.
5 She has too much work.
6 His hand is cut.
7 The room is untidy.
8 She is late for work.

59.2 *Possible answers:*

2 cut finger/hands/knees
3 untidy room/desk/hair
4 late for school / an appointment / a concert
5 a camera/microwave/walkman that isn't working
6 too much work/rain/wind

59.3 *Possible answers:*

Serious	*Not serious*
a computer crash	a TV that doesn't work
a broken washing machine	dying plants
lost keys	an untidy bedroom
a row with a friend	a cut finger
being late for work	a colleague in a bad mood
too much work	a photocopier that is out-of-order
a coffee machine that isn't working!	

59.4 *Possible answers:*

too much work – get an assistant
a colleague in a bad mood – pay no attention
a crashed computer – get a technician
a photocopier that is out-of-order – repair the photocopier
a coffee machine that isn't working – drink water

59.5 *Possible answers:*

My video recorder doesn't work.
My brother lost his credit card.
My husband broke a glass.

Unit 60

60.1
2 car crash
3 flood
4 war
5 earthquake
6 forest fire
7 hurricane
8 traffic jam
9 snowstorm

60.2 *Possible answers:*

snowstorm – Alaska
forest fire – Australia
earthquake – Japan
flood – Bangladesh

60.3 *Possible answers:*

We have poor people in big cities, hungry people in big cities, homeless people in the capital, unemployed people in the north, too many people in the capital, traffic jams in big cities, car crashes on main roads, strikes in some factories. Fortunately, we don't have any wars.

60.4 *Possible answers:*

hurricane, snowstorm, flood – problems because of the weather
earthquake, car crash – things get smashed
forest fire, pollution, traffic jam – they make the environment dirty
poor, unemployed, hungry and homeless people – too many people
strike, war – problems caused by government and politics

60.5
2 strike
3 War
4 car crash
5 earthquakes; snowstorms
6 homeless

Phonetic symbols

Vowel sounds

Symbol	*Examples*
/iː/	sleep me
/i/	happy recipe
/ɪ/	pin dinner
/ʊ/	foot could pull
/uː/	do shoe through
/e/	red head said
/ə/	arrive father colour
/ɜː/	turn bird work
/ɔː/	sort thought walk
/æ/	cat black
/ʌ/	sun enough wonder
/ɒ/	got watch sock
/ɑː/	part heart laugh
/eɪ/	name late aim
/aɪ/	my idea time
/ɔɪ/	boy noise
/eə/	pair where bear
/ɪə/	hear beer
/əʊ/	go home show
/aʊ/	out cow
/ʊə/	pure fewer

Consonant sounds

Symbol	*Examples*
/p/	put
/b/	book
/t/	take
/d/	dog
/k/	car kick
/g/	go guarantee
/ʧ/	catch church
/ʤ/	age lounge
/f/	for cough photograph
/v/	love vehicle
/θ/	thick path
/ð/	this mother
/s/	since rice
/z/	zoo houses
/ʃ/	shop sugar machine
/ʒ/	pleasure usual vision
/h/	hear hotel
/m/	make
/n/	name now know
/ŋ/	bring
/l/	look while
/r/	road
/j/	young
/w/	wear

Index

a.m. /eɪ 'em/ 16
about /ə'baʊt/ 56
abroad /ə'brɔːd/ 18
accommodation /əkɒmə'deɪʃn/ 21
accustomed to /ə'kʌstəmd tə/ 24
action /'ækʃən/ 55
activity /æk'tɪvəti/ 56
add /æd/ 1
address /ə'dres/ 13, 49
adjective /'ædʒektɪv/ 1
adverb /'ædvɜːb/ 1
advice /əd'vaɪs/ 21
aeroplane /'eərəpleɪn/ 41
afraid of /ə'freɪd ɔv/ 24
Africa /'æfrɪkə/ 36
after /'ɑːftə/ 15
afternoon /ɑːftə'nuːn/ 16, 27
against /ə'genst/ 46
age /eɪdʒ/ 32
ago /ə'gəʊ/ 17
air /eə/ 21
air pollution /'eə pəluːʃn/ 60
airport /'eəpɔːt/ 10
alarm clock /ə'lɑːm klɒk/ 45
along /ə'lɒŋ/ 7
also /'ɔːlsəʊ/ 15
although /ɔːl'ðəʊ/ 15
always /'ɔːlweɪz/ 17
America /ə'merɪkə/ 36
American /ə'merɪkən/ 54
and /ænd/ 15
angry /'æŋgri/ 6, 34
animal /'ænɪməl/ 40
answer /'ɑːnsə/ 1, 13
answerphone /'ɑːnsəfəʊn/ 49
Antarctica /æn'tɑːktɪkə/ 36
apologise (for) /ə'pɒlədʒaɪz (fə)/ 24, 59
apple /'æpəl/ 9, 21, 43
appointment /ə'pɔɪntmənt/ 3, 6
apricot /'eɪprɪkɒt/ 53
April /'eɪprəl/ 16
Arab /'ærəb/ 36
Arabic /'ærəbɪk/ 36
Argentina /ɑːdʒən'tiːnə/ 36
Argentinian /ɑːdʒən'tɪniən/ 36
arm /ɑːm/ 30
armchair /ɑːm'tʃeə/ 30, 46
around /ə'raʊnd/ 56
arrest /ə'rest/ 57
arrive /ə'raɪv/ 41
arrive at/in /ə'raɪv ət/ɪn/ 14
art /ɑːt/ 48
as well /əz 'wel/ 15
Asia /'eɪʒə/ 36
ask /ɑːsk/ 13
ask for /'ɑːsk fə/ 24
aspirin /'æsprɪn/ 33
asthma /'æsmə/ 33
at the moment /æt ðə 'məʊmənt/ 17
attack /ə'tæk/ 57
attention /ə'tenʃən/ 42
August /'ɔːgəst/ 16
aunt /ɑːnt/ 29
Australia /ɒs'treɪliə/ 26
Australian /ɒs'treɪliən/ 36
autumn /'ɔːtəm/ 16
away /ə'weɪ/ 18
awful /'ɔːfəl/ 22

baby /'beɪbi/ 28
back /bæk/ 7, 9, 10, 18
bacon /'beɪkən/ 40
bad /bæd/ 19, 22, 23
bad at /'bæd ət/ 24
bad mood /bæd 'muːd/ 59
badly /'bædli/ 26
badminton /'bædmɪntən/ 54
baker('s) /'beɪkə(z)/ 51
ball game /'bɔːl geɪm/ 54
banana /bə'nɑːnə/ 43
bank /bæŋk/ 38
bar /bɑː/ 53
baseball /'beɪsbɔːl/ 54
basement /'beɪsmənt/ 51
basin /'beɪsən/ 45
basketball /'bɑːskɪtbɔːl/ 54
bath /bɑːθ/ 3, 45
bathroom /'bɑːθrʊm/ 12, 45, 52
be /biː/ 20
be born /biː bɔːn/ 28
be used to /biː'juːsd tə/ 12, 24
beans /biːnz/ 43, 53
beard /bɪəd/ 32
beat /biːt/ 20
beautiful /'bjuːtɪfəl/ 26, 32
because /bɪ'kɒz/ 15
become /bɪ'kʌm/ 20
bed /bed/ 6, 45
bedroom /'bedrʊm/ 45
bedside lamp/table /'bedsaɪd 'læmp/'teɪbəl/ 45
beef /biːf/ 40, 53
beer /bɪə/ 43
before /bɪ'fɔː/ 15
begin /bɪ'gɪn/ 20
beginning /bɪ'gɪnɪŋ/ 18
belong to /bɪ'lɒŋ tə/ 24
belt /belt/ 31
best /best/ 22
better /'betə/ 10, 22
bicycle (bike) /'baɪsɪkəl/ (/baɪk/) 14, 41
big /bɪg/ 2
bill /bɪl/ 13, 52
biology /baɪ'ɒlədʒi/ 48
bird /bɜːd/ 40
birth /bɜːθ/ 28
birthday /'bɜːθdeɪ/ 16, 28
Bless you /'bles juː/ 35
blonde /blɒnd/ 32
blood /blʌd/ 30
blue /bluː/ 32
board pen /'bɔːd pen/ 48
board rubber /'bɔːd rʌbə/ 48
boarding card /bɔːdɪŋ kɑːd/ 41
boat /bəʊt/ 41

body /ˈbɒdi/ 30
book /bʊk/ 9, 38, 41, 52, 56
bookshelf /ˈbʊkʃelf/ 46
book shop /ˈbʊk ʃɒp/ 51
boot /buːt/ 2
boots /buːts/ 31
boring /ˈbɔːrɪŋ/ 55
born /bɔːn/ 28
borrow /ˈbɒrəʊ/ 27
bottom /ˈbɒtəm/ 18
bowl /bəʊl/ 44
brain /breɪn/ 30
Brazil /brəˈzɪl/ 36
bread /bred/ 21, 43, 51
break /breɪk/ 20
break into /breɪk ˈɪntə/ 57
breakfast /ˈbrekfəst/ 3, 6, 12, 45, 52
bride /braɪd/ 28
bridegroom /ˈbraɪdgruːm/ 28
briefcase /ˈbriːfkeɪs/ 31
bring /brɪŋ/ 9, 20
British /ˈbrɪtɪʃ/ 36
broken /ˈbrəʊkən/ 59
brother /ˈbrʌðə/ 29
brown /braʊn/ 32
budgie /ˈbʌdʒi/ 40
buffet /ˈbʊfeɪ/ 41
burger /ˈbɜːgə/ 53
burglar /ˈbɜːglə/ 57
burglary /ˈbɜːgləri/ 57
bus /bʌs/ 8, 10, 14, 38, 41, 50
bust /bʌst/ 30
but /bʌt/ 15
butcher('s) /ˈbʊtʃə(z)/ 51
butter /ˈbʌtə/ 21
buy /baɪ/ 20
by /baɪ/ 2

café /ˈkæfeɪ/ 53
cakes /keɪks/ 51
calf /kɑːf/ 40
call /kɔːl/ 12, 28, 49
camera /ˈkæmrə/ 8, 50
Canada /ˈkænədə/ 36
Canadian /kəˈneɪdiən/ 36
cancer /ˈkænsə/ 36
canoeing /kəˈnuːɪŋ/ 54
car /kɑː/ 2, 14, 38, 41, 50
car crash /ˈkɑː kræʃ/ 60
car park /ˈkɑː pɑːk/ 38
car theft /ˈkɑː θeft/ 57
car thief /ˈkɑː θiːf/ 57
carpet /ˈkɑːpɪt/ 46
carrier bag /ˈkæriə bæg/ 51
carrot(s) /ˈkærət(s)/ 43, 53
carry /ˈkæri/ 14, 31
cartoon /kɑːˈtuːn/ 55, 58
cash /kæʃ/ 51, 52
cash desk /ˈkæʃ desk/ 51
cassette /kəˈset/ 48
cat /kæt/ 40
catch /kætʃ/ 14, 20
CD /siːˈdiː/ 46, 56
centre /ˈsentə/ 38
century /ˈsentʃəri/ 16
chair /tʃeə/ 2, 46
chance /tʃɑːns/ 8
change /tʃeɪndʒ/ 41, 51, 52
channel /ˈtʃænəl/ 58
check /tʃek/ 27, 41, 52
check in /tʃek ˈɪn/ 41
check out /tʃek ˈaʊt/ 52
Cheers /tʃɪəz/ 35
cheese /tʃiːz/ 53
chemist('s) /ˈkemɪst(s)/ 51
chemistry /ˈkemɪstri/ 48
cheque /tʃek/ 51
chest /tʃest/ 30
chick /tʃɪk/ 40
chicken /ˈtʃɪkɪn/ 40, 53
childrenswear /ˈtʃɪldrənzweə/ 51
China /ˈtʃaɪnə/ 36
Chinese /tʃaɪˈniːz/ 36
chips /tʃɪps/ 53
chocolate /ˈtʃɒklət/ 53
cholera /ˈkɒlərə/ 33
choose /tʃuːz/ 20
chopsticks /ˈtʃɒpstɪks/ 44
church /tʃɜːtʃ/ 28
cinema /ˈsɪnəmə/ 55
clean /kliːn/ 12
clean your teeth /kliːn jə ˈtiːθ/ 45
climb /klaɪm/ 14
close /kləʊz/ 46
closed /kləʊzd/ 42
clothes /kləʊðz/ 2, 12, 31, 51
cloud /klaʊd/ 37
cloudy /ˈklaʊdi/ 37
coach tour /ˈkəʊtʃ tʊə/ 50
coat /kəʊt/ 31
code /kəʊd/ 52
coffee /ˈkɒfi/ 3, 6, 10, 21, 43
coffee maker /ˈkɒfi meɪkə/ 44
coffee machine /ˈkɒfi məˈʃiːn/ 59
coffee table /ˈkɒfi teɪbl/ 46
cold /kəʊld/ 2, 33, 34, 37
college /ˈkɒlɪdʒ/ 47
collocation /kɒləˈkeɪʃn/ 2
colour /ˈkʌlə/ 51
column /ˈkɒləm/ 1
comb /kəʊm/ 45
come /kʌm/ 7, 12, 20, 56
come back / in / out of /kʌm bæk / ɪn / ˈaʊt əv/ 7
come on /kʌm ɒn/ 11
comedy /ˈkɒmədi/ 55
comic /ˈkɒmɪk/ 58
communication /kəmjuːnɪˈkeɪʃn/ 49
competition /kɒmpəˈtɪʃn/ 3
complete /kəmˈpliːt/ 1
computer /kəmˈpjuːtə/ 48, 49, 58
computer game /kəmˈpjuːtə geɪm/ 56
congratulations /kəngrætʃʊˈleɪʃnz/ 13, 55
conjunction /kənˈdʒʌŋkʃn/ 15
conservation area /kɒnsəˈveɪʃn eəriə/ 39
continent /ˈkɒntɪnənt/ 36
control /kənˈtrəʊl/ 27
cook /kʊk/ 27
cooker /ˈkʊkə/ 26, 27, 44
cooking /ˈkʊkɪŋ/ 56
cool /kuːl/ 2

copy /ˈkɒpi/ 6
corner /ˈkɔːnə/ 46
correct /kəˈrekt/ 1
cosmetics /kɒzˈmetɪks/ 51
cost /kɒst/ 20, 51, 52
cottage /ˈkɒtɪdʒ/ 39
countable /ˈkaʊntəbəl/ 21
country /ˈkʌntri/ 36, 39
countryside /ˈkʌntrisaɪd/ 39
course /kɔːs/ 8, 48, 53
court /kɔːt/ 54, 57
cousin /ˈkʌzən/ 29
cow /kaʊ/ 40
crash /kræʃ/ 59
crayon /ˈkreɪɒn/ 48
cream /kriːm/ 53
credit card /ˈkredɪt kɑːd/ 51
cricket /ˈkrɪkɪt/ 54
crime /kraɪm/ 55, 57
crowded /ˈkraʊdɪd/ 60
cry /kraɪ/ 2
cup /kʌp/ 2, 3
cupboard /ˈkʌbəd/ 44, 45
currency /ˈkʌrənsi/ 50, 52
curtain /ˈkɜːtən/ 46
customs /ˈkʌstəmz/ 41
cut /kʌt/ 20, 59

dance /dɑːns/ 14
dark /dɑːk/ 2, 10, 32
date /deɪt/ 49
daughter /ˈdɔːtə/ 29
day /deɪ/ 12, 16
day after tomorrow /deɪ ɑːftə təˈmɒrəʊ/ 16
day before yesterday /deɪ bɪfɔː ˈjestədeɪ/ 16
dead /ded/ 28
death /deθ/ 28
December /dɪˈsembə/ 16
degree /dɪˈgriː/ 48
degrees /dɪˈgriːz/ 37
dentist /ˈdentɪst/ 3, 33
depart /dɪˈpɑːt/ 41
department store /dɪˈpɑːtmənt stɔː/ 51
desk /desk/ 2, 48
dessert /dɪˈzɜːt/ 53
detective /dɪˈtektɪv/ 55
dialogue /ˈdaɪəlɒg/ 1
die /daɪ/ 28, 59
diet /ˈdaɪət/ 33
different /ˈdɪfrənt/ 51
difficult /ˈdɪfɪkəlt/ 23
dinner /ˈdɪnə/ 3, 6, 12, 52, 56
director /daɪˈrektə/ 55
disaster /dɪˈzɑːstə/ 60
disk /dɪsk/ 49
dishes /ˈdɪʃɪz/ 6
dislike /dɪsˈlaɪk/ 34
divorced /dɪˈvɔːst/ 28
do /duː/ 2, 5, 20, 54, 56
do a course /duː ə kɔːs/ 48
do business with /duː ˈbɪznɪs wɪð/ 5
do homework /duː ˈhəʊmwɜːk/ 5, 48
do some exercises /duː səm ˈeksəsaɪzɪz/ 5
do the gardening /duː ðə ˈgɑːdnɪŋ/ 5
do the housework /duː ðə ˈhaʊswɜːk/ 5
do the washing /duː ðə ˈwɒʃɪŋ/ 5
do the washing-up /duː ðə wɒʃɪŋ ˈʌp/ 5
do up /duː ˈʌp/ 11
do your best /du jə ˈbest/ 5
doctor /ˈdɒktə/ 5, 6, 10, 33, 47
documentary /dɒkjəˈmentri/ 58
dog /dɒg/ 40
doll /dɒl/ 51
door /dɔː/ 2, 13
double room /dʌbəl ˈruːm/ 52
downstairs /daʊnˈsteəz/ 45
draw /drɔː/ 46
drawers /drɔːz/ 45
drawing pin /ˈdrɔːɪŋ pɪn/ 48
dress /dres/ 2, 31
dressing table /ˈdresɪŋ teɪbəl/ 45
drink /drɪŋk/ 2, 20, 43, 53
drive /draɪv/ 14, 20
drug pusher /ˈdrʌg pʊʃə/ 57
drug pushing /ˈdrʌg pʊʃɪŋ/ 57
dry /draɪ/ 2, 37
Dutch /dʌtʃ/ 36

ear /ɪə/ 30
earthquake /ˈɜːθkweɪk/ 60
easy-going /iːzi ˈgəʊɪŋ/ 23
eat /iːt/ 2, 20, 53
economics /iːkəˈnɒmɪks/ 26
egg /eg/ 40
Egypt /ˈiːdʒɪpt/ 36
Egyptian /ɪˈdʒɪpʃən/ 36
elderly /ˈeldəli/ 32
electrical goods /ɪˈlektrɪkəl gʊdz/ 51
elephant /ˈelɪfənt/ 40
e-mail /ˈiː meɪl/ 49
end /end/ 8, 18
endless /ˈendləs/ 26
engineer /endʒɪˈnɪə/ 5, 47
English /ˈɪŋglɪʃ/ 36, 48, 54
enjoy /ɪnˈdʒɔɪ/ 55
entrance /ˈentrəns/ 42
envelope /ˈenvələʊp/ 49
Europe /ˈjʊərəp/ 36
even /ˈiːvən/ 15
evening /ˈiːvnɪŋ/ 16, 27
every /ˈevri/ 12
everyday /ˈevrideɪ/ 59
everywhere /ˈevriweə/ 18
exam /ɪgˈzæm/ 2, 3, 6, 8, 48
example /ɪgˈzɑːmpəl/ 1
excellent /ˈeksələnt/ 22
exchange /ɪks ˈtʃeɪndʒ/ 52
excuse me /ɪkˈskjuːz miː/ 35, 38
exercise /ˈeksəsaɪz/ 2, 33
ex-husband /eks ˈhʌzbənd/ 25
exit /ˈeksɪt/ 42
expect /ɪkˈspekt/ 27
ex-president /eks ˈprezɪdənt/ 25

ex-wife /eks 'waɪf/ 25
eye /aɪ/ 30

face /feɪs/ 30, 32
factory /'fæktri/ 47
fail /feɪl/ 48
fair /feə/ 32
fall /fɔːl/ 14, 20, 27
fall asleep /fɔːl ə'sliːp/ 45
family /'fæməli/ 29
fare /feə/ 41
farm /fɑːm/ 39
farmer /'fɑːmə/ 39, 47
fast /fɑːst/ 19, 26
fast food /fɑːst 'fuːd/ 43
fast food restaurant /'fɑːst fuːd 'restrɒnt/ 53
fat /fæt/ 32
father /'fɑːðə/ 29
favourite /'feɪvərɪt/ 54
fax /fæks/ 49
February /'februəri/ 16
feel /fiːl/ 6, 20, 27
feelings /'fiːlɪŋz/ 34
feet /fiːt/ 30
ferry /'feri/ 50
field /'fiːld/ 39
fight /faɪt/ 20
fill /fɪl/ 1
fill in a form /fɪl ɪn ə 'fɔːm/ 52
fill up with /fɪl 'ʌp wɪð/ 41
film /fɪlm/ 6, 55, 58
film star /'fɪlm stɑː/ 55
find /faɪnd/ 20
fine /faɪn/ 33, 35, 57
finger /'fɪŋgə/ 30
Finnish /'fɪnɪʃ/ 36
first floor /fɜːst 'flɔː/ 51, 52
fish /fɪʃ/ 40, 43, 53
fish and chips /fɪʃ ən 'tʃɪps/ 43
flight /flaɪt/ 41
flood /flʌd/ 60
floor /flɔː/ 51
flower /'flaʊə/ 9, 56
fly /flaɪ/ 14, 20, 50
fog /fɒg/ 37
foggy /'fɒgi/ 37
food /fuːd/ 21, 43, 50, 51
foot /fʊt/ 30
football /'fʊtbɔːl/ 3, 30, 54
footballer /'fʊtbɔːlə/ 26
football hooligan /'fʊtbɔːl 'huːlɪgən/ 57
football hooliganism /'fʊtbɔːl 'huːlɪgənɪzəm/ 57
forest /'fɒrɪst/ 39
forest fire /fɒrɪst 'faɪə/ 60
forget /fə'get/ 20, 49
fork /fɔːk/ 2, 44
form /fɔːm/ 9, 52
formal /'fɔːməl/ 25
fortnight /'fɔːtnaɪt/ 16
fourth floor /fɔːθ 'flɔː/ 51
France /frɑːns/ 36
freezer /'friːzə/ 44
French /frentʃ/ 36
Friday /'fraɪdeɪ/ 16
fridge /frɪdʒ/ 44
friend /frend/ 12, 56
friendly /'frendli/ 19
front /frʌnt/ 18
fruit /fruːt/ 43
fruit juice /'fruːt dʒuːs/ 43
fruit salad /fruːt 'sæləd/ 53
frying pan /'fraɪɪŋ pæn/ 44
funeral /'fjuːnərəl/ 28
furniture /'fɜːnɪtʃə/ 2, 21, 51
future /'fjuːtʃə/ 17

game /geɪm/ 3, 51
gap /gæp/ 1
garden /'gɑːdən/ 9, 56
gardening /'gɑːdənɪŋ/ 56
garlic /'gɑːlɪk/ 43
gateau /'gætəʊ/ 53
geography /dʒɪ'ɒgrəfi/ 48
German /'dʒɜːmən/ 36
Germany /'dʒɜːməni/ 36
get /get/ 10, 20
get a degree /get ə dɪ'griː/ 48
get accustomed / used to /get ə'kʌstəmd / 'juːs tə/ 48
get back /get 'bæk/ 10
get dressed /get 'drest/ 31, 45
get married /get 'mærid/ 10, 28
get on /get 'ɒn/ 11
get over /get 'əʊvə/ 11
get to /'get tə/ 14
get undressed /get ʌn'drest/ 31, 45
get up /get 'ʌp/ 10, 11, 12, 45
gift shop /'gɪft ʃɒp/ 51
giraffe /dʒɪ'rɑːf/ 40
give /gɪv/ 20
give a lecture /gɪv ə 'lektʃə/ 48
glass /glɑːs/ 29, 44
glasses /'glɑːsɪz/ 31
global /'gləʊbəl/ 60
gloves /glʌvz/ 31
go /gəʊ/ 4, 12, 20, 54, 55
go away /gəʊ ə'weɪ/ 4
go back /gəʊ 'bæk/ 4
go by /gəʊ 'baɪ/ 14
go camping /gəʊ 'kæmpɪŋ/ 50
go dancing / fishing / sightseeing / swimming etc. /gəʊ 'dɑːnsɪŋ / 'fɪʃɪŋ / 'saɪtsiːɪŋ / 'swɪmɪŋ/ 4
go down /gəʊ 'daʊn/ 4
go for a walk /gəʊ fər ə 'wɔːk/ 12
go in /gəʊ 'ɪn/ 4
go into /gəʊ 'ɪntə/ 4
go off /gəʊ 'ɒf/ 11
go on /gəʊ 'ɒn/ 11
go out of /gəʊ 'aʊt əv/ 4
go shopping /gəʊ 'ʃɒpɪŋ/ 4, 51
go skiing / walking /gəʊ 'skiːɪŋ / 'wɔːkɪŋ/ 4, 39
go through /gəʊ 'θruː/ 41
go to bed /gəʊ tə 'bed/ 12, 45
go up /gəʊ 'ʌp/ 4
going to /'gəʊɪŋ tə/ 4
good /gʊd/ 19, 22, 23

good morning / afternoon / evening / night /gʊd 'mɔːnɪŋ / ɑːftə'nuːn/ 'iːvnɪŋ / naɪt/ 35
good at /gʊd ət/ 2, 24
good luck /gʊd 'lʌk/ 35
goodbye /gʊd'baɪ/ 13, 35
grammar /'græmə/ 1
granddaughter /'grændɔːtə/ 29
grandfather /'grænfɑːðə/ 28, 29
grandmother /'grænmʌðə/ 29
grandparents /'grænpeərənts/ 29
grandson /'grænsʌn/ 29
grape /greɪp/ 43
great /greɪt/ 22
Greece /griːs/ 36
Greek /griːk/ 36
green peas /griːn 'piːz/ 53
green /griːn/ 32
greetings /'griːtɪŋz/ 35
groom /gruːm/ 28
ground floor /graʊnd 'flɔː/ 51
grow /grəʊ/ 56
guilty /'gɪlti/ 57
guitar /gɪ'tɑː/ 9

hair dresser('s) /heə 'dresə(z)/ 47, 51
hair dryer /'heə draɪə/ 52
hair /heə/ 30, 32
hairbrush /'heəbrʌʃ/ 30, 45
half-brother /hɑːf 'brʌðə/ 25
half-hour /hɑːf 'aʊə/ 25
half-price /hɑːf 'praɪs/ 25
ham /hæm/ 40, 53
hamburger /'hæmbɜːgə/ 43
hand /hænd/ 18, 30
handbag /'hænbæg/ 30, 31
handsome /'hænsəm/ 32
happily /'hæpɪli/ 26
happiness /'hæpɪnəs/ 26
happy /'hæpi/ 2, 23, 34
Happy Birthday /hæpi 'bɜːθdeɪ/ 13, 35
Happy Christmas /hæpi 'krɪsməs/ 35
Happy New Year /'hæpi njuː jɪə/ 13, 35
hardly ever /hɑːdliː 'evə/ 17
hat /hæt/ 2, 31
hate /heɪt/ 34
have /hæv/ 3, 12, 20, 56
have (your) hair cut /hæv (jə) 'heə kʌt/ 3
have a baby /hæv ə 'beɪbi/ 28
have a go /hæv ə 'gəʊ/ 3
have a good time /'hæv ə gʊd 'taɪm/ 3
have a look /hæv ə 'lʊk/ 3
have a moment /hæv ə 'məʊmənt/ 3
have a row with /hæv ə 'raʊ wɪð/ 59
have a shower /hæv ə 'ʃaʊwə/ 45
have a word with /hæv ə 'wɜːd wɪð/ 3
have got /həv gɒt/ 3
have got… on /həv gɒt… ɒn/ 31
have the time /hæv ðə 'taɪm/ 3
have to /'hæv tə/ 3
hayfever /'heɪ fiːvə/ 33
head /hed/ 30, 32
headache /'hedeɪk/ 33
headlight /'hedlaɪt/ 2
headscarf /'hedskɑːf/ 30
health /helθ/ 33
hear /hɪə/ 20
heart /hɑːt/ 30
heart attack /'hɑːt ətæk/ 28, 33
height /haɪt/ 32
helicopter /'helɪkɒptə/ 41
hello /hel'əʊ/ 13, 35
hen /hen/ 40
here /hɪə/ 7, 9, 18
hi /haɪ/ 35
high /haɪ/ 2
hill /hɪl/ 39
hips /hɪps/ 30
hire /haɪə/ 41
history /'hɪstri/ 48
hobby /'hɒbi/ 56
holiday /'hɒlədeɪ/ 50
Holland /'hɒlənd/ 36
home /həʊm/ 7, 10, 12, 18, 47, 56
homeless /'həʊmləs/ 60
homework /'həʊmwɜːk/ 3, 6, 48
honeymoon /'hʌnimuːn/ 28
hooligan /'huːlɪgən/ 57
hope /həʊp/ 27
hopeful /'həʊpfəl/ 26
horrible /'hɒrəbəl/ 22, 23
horror /'hɒrə/ 55
horse /hɔːs/ 14, 40
horse racing /'hɔːs reɪsɪŋ/ 54
hospital /'hɒspɪtəl/ 33, 47
hot /hɒt/ 2, 34, 37
hot chocolate /hɒt 'tʃɒklət/ 6
hot-dog /'hɒt dɒg/ 43
hotel /həʊ'tel/ 52
hour /aʊə/ 16
house /haʊs/ 9, 12
house plant /'haʊs plɑːnt/ 56
how…! /haʊ/ 22
how are you? /haʊ ɑː 'juː/ 35
how do I get to…? /haʊ də waɪ 'get tə/ 38
how do you…? /'haʊ djə/ 12
how often…? /haʊ 'ɒfən/ 12
hungry /'hʌŋgri/ 34, 60
hurricane /'hʌrɪkən/ 37, 60
hurt /hɜːt/ 20
husband /'hʌzbənd/ 29

ice /aɪs/ 2
ice-cream /aɪs 'kriːm/ 53
Icelandic /aɪs'lændɪk/ 36
if /ɪf/ 15
ill /ɪl/ 10, 28, 33, 34
illness /'ɪlnəs/ 33

impossible /ɪm'pɒsəbəl/ 25
in /ɪn/ 55
in a bad mood /ɪn ə bæd 'muːd/ 59
in a moment /ɪn ə 'məʊmənt/ 17
in advance /ɪn əd'vɑːns/ 41
incorrect /ɪnkə'rekt/ 25
India /'ɪndɪə/ 36
informal /ɪn'fɔːməl/ 25
information /ɪnfə'meɪʃn/ 21
information technology /ɪnfə'meɪʃn tek'nɒlədʒi/ 48
innocent /'ɪnəsənt/ 57
instructions /ɪn'strʌkʃnz/ 1
instructor /ɪn'strʌktə/ 26
intelligent /ɪn'telɪdʒənt/ 23
interested in /'ɪntrestɪd ɪn/ 24
Internet /'ɪntənet/ 56, 58
interview /'ɪntəvjuː/ 58
invite /ɪn'vaɪt/ 56
Iraqi /ɪ'rɑːki/ 36
Irish /'aɪrɪʃ/ 36
irregular verb /ɪ'regjələ 'vɜːb/ 20
Israeli /ɪz'reɪli/ 36
Italy /'ɪtəli/ 36

jacket /'dʒækɪt/ 31
Jamaican /dʒə'meɪkən/ 36
January /'dʒænjʊəri/ 16
Japan /dʒə'pæn/ 36
Japanese /dʒæpə'niːz/ 8, 13, 36
jeans /dʒiːnz/ 31
job /dʒɒb/ 10, 47
jog /dʒɒg/ 14
joke /dʒəʊk/ 13
journalist /'dʒɜːnəlɪst/ 58
journey /'dʒɜːni/ 3, 41
judo /'dʒuːdəʊ/ 54
juice /dʒuːs/ 53
July /dʒə'laɪ/ 16
jump /dʒʌmp/ 14
jumper /'dʒʌmpə/ 31
June /dʒuːn/ 16

karate /kə'rɑːti/ 54
keep /kiːp/ 20
kettle /'ketəl/ 52
key /kiː/ 52
keyboard /'kiːbɔːd/ 49
kind /kaɪnd/ 23
kitchen /'kɪtʃɪn/ 44
kitchen paper /'kɪtʃɪn 'peɪpə/ 44
knee /niː/ 30
knife /naɪf/ 2, 44
know /nəʊ/ 20
Korea /kə'riːə/ 36
Korean /kə'rɪən/ 36

ladieswear /'leɪdizweə/ 51
lake /leɪk/ 39
lamb /læm/ 40
land /lænd/ 2, 41
language /'læŋgwɪdʒ/ 1, 36, 50
languages /'læŋgwɪdʒɪz/ 48
last /lɑːst/ 17
late for /'leɪt fə/ 59
learn /lɜːn/ 20, 48
leather /'leðə/ 40
leave /liːv/ 20
lecture /'lektʃə/ 48
left /left/ 1, 18
leg /leg/ 30
leisure /'leʒə/ 56
lend /lend/ 27
lesson /'lesən/ 3, 8
let /let/ 20
letter /'letə/ 49
letters /'letəz/ 12
library /'laɪbrəri/ 38
lift /lɪft/ 52
light /laɪt/ 10, 45
lightning /'laɪtnɪŋ/ 37
like /laɪk/ 15, 34, 54
lion /'laɪən/ 40
lip /lɪp/ 30
lipstick /'lɪpstɪk/ 30
listen (to) /'lɪsən (tə)/ 12, 24, 46, 56
living room /'lɪvɪŋ rʊm/ 46
local /'ləʊkəl/ 50
look /lʊk/ 8
look after /lʊk 'ɑːftə/ 24
look at /'lʊk ət/ 24
look for /'lʊk fɔː/ 24, 38, 59
look forward to /lʊk 'fɔːwəd tə/ 24
loose /luːs/ 27
lose /luːz/ 20, 27, 59
loud /laʊd/ 19
love /lʌv/ 34, 55
love story /'lʌv stɔːri/ 55
lovely /'lʌvli/ 22, 23
luggage /'lʌgɪdʒ/ 21, 41, 50, 52
lunch /lʌntʃ/ 3, 6, 52

magazine /mægə'ziːn/ 56, 58
magazines /mægə'ziːnz/ 51
main course /'meɪn kɔːs/ 53
make /meɪk/ 2, 6, 12, 20
make a (phone) call /meɪk ə 'fəʊn kɔːl/ 49
malaria /mə'leəriə/ 33
man-made /'mæn meɪd/ 60
manner /'mænə/ 19
map /mæp/ 41
March /mɑːtʃ/ 16
marriage /'mærɪdʒ/ 28
married /'mærɪd/ 28
mashed potatoes /mæʃ pə'teɪtəʊz/ 53
match /mætʃ/ 1
mathematics (maths) /mæθ'mætɪks/ 26, 48
May /meɪ/ 16
meal /miːl/ 3, 53
meat /miːt/ 40, 43, 51
mechanic /mɪ'kænɪk/ 5, 47
media /'miːdiə/ 58
medicine /'medsən/ 51
medium /'miːdiəm/ 32, 53
meet /miːt/ 20
meeting /'miːtɪŋ/ 3
melon /'melən/ 53
men /men/ 42
mend /mend/ 59
menswear /'menzweə/ 51

menu /ˈmenjuː/ 53
Merry Christmas /meri ˈkrɪsməs/ 13, 35
message /ˈmesɪdʒ/ 49
metro /ˈmetrəʊ/ 8
Mexican /ˈmeksɪkən/ 36
Mexico /ˈmeksɪkəʊ/ 36
microwave /ˈmaɪkrəʊweɪv/ 44
middle /ˈmɪdəl/ 18, 46
middle-aged /mɪdəl ˈeɪdʒd/ 32
milk /mɪlk/ 21, 40, 43
mineral water /ˈmɪnərəl ˈwɔːtə/ 43
minus /ˈmaɪnəs/ 37
minute /ˈmɪnɪt/ 8, 16
mirror /ˈmɪrə/ 45
miss /mɪs/ 14
mistake /mɪsˈteɪk/ 6
mixed /mɪkst/ 53
mobile phone /məʊbaɪl ˈfəʊn/ 49
moment /ˈməʊmənt/ 17
Monday /ˈmʌndeɪ/ 16
money /ˈmʌni/ 21, 38, 52
monkey /ˈmʌŋki/ 40
month /mʌnθ/ 16
mood /muːd/ 59
morning /ˈmɔːnɪŋ/ 16, 58
morning call /mɔːnɪŋ ˈkɔːl/ 52
mother /ˈmʌðə/ 29
motor racing /ˈməʊtə reɪsɪŋ/ 54
motorbike /ˈməʊtəbaɪk/ 14, 41
motorcycle /ˈməʊtəsaɪkəl/ 41
motorway /ˈməʊtəweɪ/ 18
mountain /ˈmaʊntɪn/ 39
mouse /maʊs/ 49
moustache /məˈstɑːʃ/ 32
mouth /maʊθ/ 30
move /muːv/ 14
mug /mʌg/ 2, 44, 57
mugger /ˈmʌgə/ 57
mugging /ˈmʌgɪŋ/ 57
murder /ˈmɜːdə/ 57
murderer /ˈmɜːdərə/ 57
museum /mjuːˈziːəm/ 8, 38
music centre /ˈmjuːzɪk ˈsentə/ 46
music /ˈmjuːzɪk/ 48, 56
musical /ˈmjuːzɪkəl/ 55

nail /neɪl/ 30
name /neɪm/ 13
national park /næʃənəl ˈpɑːk/ 39
natural disaster /ˈnætʃərəl dɪˈzɑːstə/ 60
nature /ˈneɪtʃə/ 39, 58
naughty /ˈnɔːti/ 23
near /nɪə/ 46
neck /nek/ 30
negative /ˈnegətɪv/ 23
Nepalese /nepəˈliːz/ 36
nephew /ˈnefjuː/ 29
never /ˈnevə/ 17
New Zealand /njuː ˈziːlənd/ 36
news /njuːz/ 21, 58
newsagent('s) /ˈnjuːzeɪdʒənts/ 51
newspaper /ˈnjuːspeɪpə/ 10, 38, 51, 56
next /nekst/ 17
next to /ˈneks tə/ 46
nice /naɪs/ 22, 23
niece /niːs/ 29
night /naɪt/ 27
night life /ˈnaɪt laɪf/ 50
nightdress /ˈnaɪtdres/ 45
nightie /ˈnaɪti/ 45
no entry /nəʊ ˈentri/ 38
no parking /nəʊ ˈpɑːkɪŋ/ 38
no smoking /nəʊ ˈsməʊkɪŋ/ 42
noise /nɔɪz/ 6
non-smoking /nɒn ˈsməʊkɪŋ/ 25
normally /ˈnɔːməli/ 12
North America /nɔːθ əˈmerɪkə/ 36
Norway /ˈnɔːweɪ/ 36
Norwegian /nɔːˈwiːdʒən/ 36
nose /nəʊz/ 30
not too bad /nɒt tuː ˈbæd/ 35
note /nəʊt/ 51
notebook /ˈnəʊtbʊk/ 48
nothing /ˈnʌθɪŋ/ 56
notice /ˈnəʊtɪs/ 42
noticeboard /ˈnəʊtɪsbɔːd/ 48
noun /naʊn/ 1
novel /ˈnɒvəl/ 56
November /nəʊˈvembə/ 16
now /naʊ/ 17
now and then /naʊ ən ˈðen/ 17
number /ˈnʌmbə/ 13
nurse /nɜːs/ 47

o'clock /əˈklɒk/ 17
occasionally /əˈkeɪʒənəli/ 17
October /ɒkˈtəʊbə/ 16
office /ˈɒfɪs/ 47
often /ˈɒfən/ 17
OHP /əʊ eɪtʃ ˈpiː/ 48
old /əʊld/ 32
omelette /ˈɒmlət/ 53
on foot /ɒn ˈfʊt/ 2
on strike /ɒn ˈstraɪk/ 60
once /wʌns/ 17
onion /ˈʌnjən/ 43
only /ˈəʊnli/ 15
open /ˈəʊpən/ 42
orange /ˈɒrɪndʒ/ 43
orange juice /ˈɒrɪndʒ dʒuːs/ 53
order /ˈɔːdə/ 53
ordinary-looking /ˈɔːdənəri lʊkɪŋ/ 32
out /aʊt/ 18
out of order /aʊt əv ˈɔːdə/ 42, 59
outside line /ˈaʊtsaɪd ˈlaɪn/ 52
overweight /əʊvəˈweɪt/ 32

p.m. /piː ˈem/ 16
package holiday /ˈpækɪdʒ ˈhɒlədeɪ/ 50
pain /peɪn/ 30
painless /ˈpeɪnləs/ 26

pair of glasses /peə əv ˈglɑːsɪz/ jeans /dʒiːnz/ shorts /ʃɔːts/ etc. 31
paper clip /ˈpeɪpə klɪp/ 48
parents /ˈpeərənts/ 28, 29
park /pɑːk/ 38
parrot /ˈpærət/ 40
party /ˈpɑːti/ 2, 3
pass /pɑːs/ 14
pass an exam /pɑːs ən ɪgˈzæm/ 48
passport /ˈpɑːspɔːt/ 2, 41, 50
past /pɑːst/ 17
pasta /ˈpæstə/ 43
path /pɑːθ/ 39
pay /peɪ/ 20, 42, 57
pay for /ˈpeɪ fə/ 24
pea(s) /piː(z)/ 43, 53
pear /peə/ 43
pedestrian area /pəˈdestriən ˈeəriə/ 38
pen /pen/ 48
pencil /ˈpensəl/ 48
pencil sharpener /ˈpensəl ˈʃɑːpənə/ 48
people /ˈpiːpəl/ 36
perfect /ˈpɜːfɪkt/ 22
Peru /pəˈruː/ 36
Peruvian /pəˈruːviən/ 36
pet /pet/ 40
petrol /ˈpetrəl/ 41
phone /fəʊn/ 12, 49, 56
phone box/number /fəʊn bɒks / ˈnʌmbə/ 49
photo(graph) /ˈfəʊtəgrɑːf/ 6, 8
photocopier /ˈfəʊtəʊkɒpiə/ 59
phrasal verb /ˈfreɪzəl vɜːb/ 11
phrase /freɪz/ 1
phrase book /ˈfreɪz bʊk/ 50
physical education /ˈfɪzɪkəl edʒʊˈkeɪʃən/ 48
physics /ˈfɪzɪks/ 48
picnic /ˈpɪknɪk/ 39
picture /ˈpɪktʃə/ 8, 46
piece of paper /piːs əv ˈpeɪpə/ 48
pig /pɪg/ 40
piglet /ˈpɪglət/ 40
pilot /ˈpaɪlət/ 14
pineapple /ˈpaɪnæpəl/ 43
pitch /pɪtʃ/ 54
pizza /ˈpiːtsə/ 43
place /pleɪs/ 18, 53
plain /pleɪn/ 53
plane /pleɪn/ 2, 14, 41
plant /plɑːnt/ 59
plaster /ˈplɑːstə/ 59
plate /pleɪt/ 21, 44
play /pleɪ/ 54, 55, 56
please /pliːz/ 13, 35
plural /ˈplʊərəl/ 1
police /pəˈliːs/ 57
Polish /ˈpəʊlɪʃ/ 36
politics /ˈpɒlɪtɪks/ 26
polluted /pəˈluːtɪd/ 60
pollution /pəˈluːʃən/ 60
pool /puːl/ 54
poor /pɔː/ 60
pork /pɔːk/ 40
Portuguese /pɔːtʃʊˈgiːz/ 36
position /pəˈzɪʃən/ 18
positive /ˈpɒzətɪv/ 23
possible /ˈpɒsəbəl/ 25
post /pəʊst/ 49
post box /ˈpəʊst bɒks/ 49
postcard /ˈpəʊstkɑːd/ 10, 50
post office /ˈpəʊst ɒfɪs/ 38, 51
potato(es) /pəˈteɪtəʊ(z)/ 43, 53
pre- /priː/ 25
prefer /prɪˈfɜː/ 34
preposition /prepəˈzɪʃən/ 1
present /ˈprezənt/ 9, 17, 51
president /ˈprezɪdənt/ 25
pretty /ˈprɪti/ 32
primary school /ˈpraɪməri skuːl/ 48
prison /ˈprɪzən/ 57
problem /ˈprɒbləm/ 59, 60
programme /ˈprəʊgræm/ 56, 58
proud of /ˈpraʊd əv/ 24
psychology /saɪˈkɒlədʒi/ 26
pub /pʌb/ 53
pull /pʊl/ 42
push /pʊʃ/ 42
put /pʊt/ 20, 49
put on /ˈpʊt ɒn/ 11, 31, 59
pyjamas /pəˈdʒɑːməz/ 45

question /ˈkwestʃən/ 1, 13
queue /kjuː/ 42
quiet /ˈkwaɪət/ 19, 27
quite /kwaɪt/ 27

radio /ˈreɪdiəʊ/ 12, 13, 46, 56, 58
railway station /ˈreɪlweɪ ˈsteɪʃən/ 38
rain /reɪn/ 2, 9, 10, 37
rainy /ˈreɪni/ 2, 26, 37
rare /reə/ 53
rarely /ˈreəli/ 17
re- /riː/ 25
read /riːd/ 20, 38, 45, 46, 56
receipt /rɪˈsiːt/ 51
recently /ˈriːsəntli/ 17
reception /rɪˈsepʃən/ 52
redo /riːˈduː/ 25
relations /rɪˈleɪʃənz/ 29
relatives /ˈrelətɪvz/ 29
relax /rɪˈlæks/ 46
remote control /rɪˌməʊt kənˈtrəʊl/ 46
repair /rɪˈpeə/ 59
reply /rɪˈplaɪ/ 13
reporter /rɪˈpɔːtə/ 58
reread /riːˈriːd/ 25
reservation /rezəˈveɪʃən/ 52
reserve /rɪˈzɜːv/ 41
restaurant /ˈrestrɒnt/ 51, 53
restaurant car /ˈrestrɒnt kɑː/ 41
retell /riːˈtel/ 25
return ticket /rɪˈtɜːn ˈtɪkɪt/ 41
rewrite /riːˈraɪt/ 25
rice /raɪs/ 21, 43
ride /raɪd/ 14, 20
right /raɪt/ 1, 18, 19

ring /rɪŋ/ 31, 42, 45, 56
rise /raɪz/ 20
river /ˈrɪvə/ 39
road /rəʊd/ 38
roast beef/potatoes /rəʊst ˈbiːf/pəˈteɪtəʊz/ 53
rob /rɒb/ 57
robber /ˈrɒbə/ 57
robbery /ˈrɒbəri/ 57
romantic /rəˈmæntɪk/ 55
roundabout /ˈraʊndəbaʊt/ 38
routine /ruːˈtiːn/ 45
row /raʊ/ 59
rubber /ˈrʌbə/ 48
rugby /ˈrʌgbi/ 54
ruler /ˈruːlə/ 48
run /rʌn/ 14, 20
running /ˈrʌnɪŋ/ 54
rush hour /ˈrʌʃ aʊə/ 60
Russia /ˈrʌʃə/ 36
Russian /ˈrʌʃn/ 36

sad /sæd/ 6, 34
sadly /ˈsædli/ 26
sadness /ˈsædnəs/ 26
safe /seɪf/ 25
sailing /ˈseɪlɪŋ/ 54
salad /ˈsæləd/ 53
sale /seɪl/ 42
sandwich /ˈsænwɪdʒ/ 53
sandwich bar /ˈsænwɪdʒ bɑː/ 53
sandy /ˈsændi/ 26
satellite /ˈsætəlaɪt/ 58
Saturday /ˈsætədeɪ/ 16
saucepan /ˈsɔːspən/ 44
saucer /ˈsɔːsə/ 44
sauna /ˈsɔːnə/ 3
say /seɪ/ 13, 20
scarf /skɑːf/ 31
school /skuːl/ 2, 47, 48
science fiction /saɪəns fɪkʃn/ 55
Scottish /ˈskɒtɪʃ/ 36
screen /skriːn/ 49
season /ˈsiːzn/ 16
seat /siːt/ 41
second /ˈsekənd/ 16, 51
secretary /ˈsekrətri/ 5, 9, 47
see /siː/ 7, 55, 56
see you soon /siː jə ˈsuːn/ 35
selfish /ˈselfɪʃ/ 23
self-service (café/restaurant) /self ˈsɜːvɪs (/ˈkæfeɪ/ ˈrestrɒnt/) 53
sell /sel/ 20, 57
send /send/ 49
sentence /ˈsentəns/ 1
September /sepˈtembə/ 16
shampoo /ʃæmˈpuː/ 45
sheep /ʃiːp/ 40
shelf /ʃelf/ 44, 45
shine /ʃaɪn/ 20, 37
ship /ʃɪp/ 14, 41
shirt /ʃɜːt/ 31
shoe /ʃuː/ 21, 31, 51
shoot /ʃuːt/ 20
shop /ʃɒp/ 38, 47, 51
shop assistant /ʃɒp əˈsɪstənt/ 47, 51
shoplifter /ˈʃɒplɪftə/ 57
shoplifting /ˈʃɒplɪftɪŋ/ 57
shopping /ˈʃɒpɪŋ/ 51
short /ʃɔːt/ 32
shorts /ʃɔːts/ 31
shoulder /ˈʃəʊldə/ 30
shower /ˈʃaʊə/ 2, 3, 12, 45, 52
shut /ʃʌt/ 20
sick /sɪk/ 33
side /saɪd/ 18, 30
sign /saɪn/ 38, 52
single /ˈsɪŋgəl/ 28
single room /sɪŋgəl ˈruːm/ 52
single ticket /sɪŋgəl ˈtɪkɪt/ 41
singular /ˈsɪŋgjələ/ 1
sink /sɪŋk/ 44
sister /ˈsɪstə/ 29
size /saɪz/ 51
skiing /ˈskiːɪŋ/ 54
skin /skɪn/ 30, 32
skirt /skɜːt/ 31
sleep /sliːp/ 20, 35, 56
slim /slɪm/ 32
slow /sləʊ/ 19
slowly /ˈsləʊli/ 26
snack /snæk/ 53
snake /sneɪk/ 40
snow /snəʊ/ 2, 37
snowstorm /ˈsnəʊstɔːm/ 60
snowy /ˈsnəʊi/ 37
so /səʊ/ 15
soap /səʊp/ 45, 51, 58
soap opera /ˈsəʊp ɒprə/ 58
soccer /ˈsɒkə/ 54
sociology /səʊʃiˈɒlədʒi/ 26
socks /sɒks/ 31
sofa /ˈsəʊfə/ 46
sometimes /ˈsʌmtaɪmz/ 17
son /sʌn/ 29
soon /suːn/ 17
sorry /ˈsɒri/ 35
soup /suːp/ 53
South America /saʊθ əˈmerɪkə/ 36
souvenir /suːvəˈnɪə/ 51
spaghetti /spəˈgeti/ 21
Spain /speɪn/ 36
Spanish /ˈspænɪʃ/ 36
speak /spiːk/ 13, 20, 49, 50
spend /spend/ 20
spoon /spuːn/ 2, 44
sports /spɔːts/ 54, 58
sports equipment /spɔːts ɪˈkwɪpmənt/ 51
spring /sprɪŋ/ 16
square /skweə/ 38
stamp /stæmp/ 10, 49, 51
stand /stænd/ 20
starter /ˈstɑːtə/ 53
stationery /ˈsteɪʃənri/ 51
stay /steɪ/ 56
steak /steɪk/ 53
steal /stiːl/ 20, 57
steward /ˈstjuːəd/ 41
stomach /ˈstʌmək/ 30
stop /stɒp/ 41
storm /stɔːm/ 37
story /ˈstɔːri/ 13
strawberry (-ies) /ˈstrɔːbəri(z)/ 43, 53
street /striːt/ 38
stress /stres/ 33
strike /straɪk/ 60
student /ˈstjuːdənt/ 2, 5, 48

studies /ˈstʌdiz/ 10
study /ˈstʌdi/ 48
stupid /ˈstjuːpɪd/ 23
subject /ˈsʌbdʒɪkt/ 48
sugar /ˈʃʊgə/ 21
suit /suːt/ 31
suitcase /ˈsuːtkeɪs/ 2
summer /ˈsʌmə/ 16
sun /sʌn/ 2, 37
Sunday /ˈsʌndeɪ/ 16
sunglasses /ˈsʌŋglɑːsɪz/ 51
sunny /ˈsʌni/ 26, 37
supermarket /ˈsuːpəmɑːkɪt/ 31
supper /ˈsʌpə/ 6
surprised /səˈpraɪzd/ 34
sweater /ˈswetə/ 31
Swedish /ˈswiːdɪʃ/ 36
swim /swɪm/ 3, 14, 20
swimmer /ˈswɪmə/ 26
swimming /ˈswɪmɪŋ/ 54
Swiss /swɪs/ 36
switch /swɪtʃ/ 46
switch on /ˈswɪtʃ ɒn/ 46
Switzerland /ˈswɪtsələnd/ 36

table tennis /ˈteɪbəl ˈtenɪs/ 54
table /ˈteɪbəl/ 46
take /teɪk/ 8, 9, 14, 20, 57
take… for a walk /teɪk fər ə ˈwɔːk/ 40
take a message /teɪk ə ˈmesɪdʒ/ 49
take an exam /teɪk ən ɪgˈzæm/ 48
take notes /teɪk ˈnəʊts/ 48
take off /teɪk ɒf/ 11, 31, 41
talk /tɔːk/ 13, 56
talk show /ˈtɔːk ʃəʊ/ 58
tall /tɔːl/ 2, 32
tap /tæp/ 44
tape /teɪp/ 56
tape recorder /ˈteɪp rɪkɔːdə/ 48
taxi /ˈtæksi/ 10, 14, 41
tea ˈtiː/ 3, 6, 21, 43
tea-towel /ˈtiː taʊəl/ 44
teach /tiːtʃ/ 20, 48
teacher /ˈtiːtʃə/ 2, 5, 47, 48
teapot /ˈtiːpɒt/ 44
technical drawing /teknɪkəl ˈdrɔːɪŋ/ 48
teenage /ˈtiːneɪdʒ/ 58
teeth /tiːθ/ 30
telephone (phone) /ˈtelɪfəʊn/ 12, 13, 49, 52, 56
telephone number /ˈtelɪfəʊn ˈnʌmbə/ 49
television (TV) /ˈtelɪvɪʒən/ 12, 46, 52, 55, 56, 58
tell /tel/ 20
temperature /ˈtemprətʃə/ 2
tennis /ˈtenɪs/ 54
terrible /ˈterəbəl/ 22
terrorism /ˈterərɪzəm/ 57
terrorist /ˈterərɪst/ 57
textbook /ˈtekstbʊk/ 48
Thai /taɪ/ 36
Thailand /ˈtaɪlænd/ 36
than /ðæn/ðən/ 15
thank for /ˈθæŋk fɔː/ 24
thank you /ˈθæŋk jə/ 13, 35
thanks /θæŋks/ 35
then /ðen/ 17
there /ðeə/ 7, 9 10, 18
thin /θɪn/ 32
think /θɪŋk/ 20
think about/of /ˈθɪŋk əbaʊt/ɒv/ 24
third /θɜːd/ 51
thirsty /ˈθɜːsti/ 34
though /ðəʊ/ 15
throw /θrəʊ/ 20
thumb /θʌm/ 30
thunder /ˈθʌndə/ 37
thunderstorm /ˈθʌndəstɔːm/ 37
thundery /ˈθʌndəri/ 37
Thursday /ˈθɜːzdeɪ/ 16
ticket /ˈtɪkɪt/ 2, 41
tidy /ˈtaɪdi/ 59
tie /taɪ/ 31
tiger /ˈtaɪgə/ 40
tights /taɪts/ 31
time /taɪm/ 13
timetable /ˈtaɪmteɪbəl/ 41
tin opener /ˈtɪn əʊpənə/ 26
tired /taɪəd/ 6, 10, 34
today /təˈdeɪ/ 16
toe /təʊ/ 30
toilet /ˈtɔɪlət/ 42, 45
tomato /təˈmɑːtəʊ/ 43
tomorrow /təˈmɒrəʊ/ 9, 16
too /tuː/ 15
too much /tuː ˈmʌtʃ/ 59
tooth /tuːθ/ 30
toothache /ˈtuːθeɪk/ 33
toothbrush /ˈtuːθbrʌʃ/ 45
toothpaste /ˈtuːθpeɪst/ 45, 51
top /tɒp/ 18
tortoise /ˈtɔːtəs/ 40
tourist (information) office /ˈtʊərɪst ɪnfəˈmeɪʃən ˈɒfɪs/ 38, 50
towel /ˈtaʊəl/ 45
town /taʊn/ 38, 39
town hall /taʊn ˈhɔːl/ 38
toys /tɔɪz/ 51
toy shop /ˈtɔɪ ʃɒp/ 51
traffic /ˈtræfɪk/ 21
traffic jam /ˈtræfɪk dʒæm/ 60
train /treɪn/ 2, 14, 38, 41, 50
trainers /ˈtreɪnəz/ 31
transport /ˈtrænspɔːt/ 14, 41
travel /ˈtrævəl/ 2, 21
traveller /ˈtrævələ/ 26
traveller’s cheque /ˈtrævələz tʃek/ 50, 52
travelling /ˈtrævəlɪŋ/ 41
tropical /ˈtrɒpɪkəl/ 33
trousers /ˈtraʊzəz/ 31
try on /ˈtraɪ ɒn/ 51
t-shirt /ˈtiː ʃɜːt/ 31
Tuesday /ˈtjuːzdeɪ/ 16
Turkey /ˈtɜːki/ 36
Turkish /ˈtɜːkɪʃ/ 36
turn down /tɜːn ˈdaʊn/ 11
turn off /tɜːn ˈɒf/ 11, 13, 45, 46
turn on /tɜːn ˈɒn/ 11, 46
turn up /tɜːn ˈʌp/ 11
TV (television) /tiː ˈviː/ 12, 46, 55, 56, 58
twice /twaɪs/ 17

ugly 32
umbrella 8, 9, 31
uncle 29
uncountable 21
under 2, 46
underground 14, 41
understand 20
unemployed 60
unfinished 25
unfriendly 19
unhappy 23, 25
United States of America (USA) 36
university 48
unread 25
unsafe 25
untidy 59
upset 34
upstairs 45
USA 36
used to 12, 24
useful 26
useless 26
usually 12, 17

vandal 57
vandalism 57
vegetable(s) 43, 53, 56
verb 1
video 48
video recorder 48
Vietnamese 36
village 39
visa 50
volleyball 54

waist 30
wait 24, 27
waiter 47
wake 20
wake up 45
walk 4, 14, 42
walking holiday 50
want 34
war 60
wardrobe 45
warm 2, 34
wash 30
washing-up liquid 44
wastebin 44
watch 12, 31, 55, 56
water 8, 21, 59
way 13, 19
way in 42
way out 42
WC 42
wear 20, 31
weather 2, 21, 37
wedding 28
Wednesday 6
week 16
weekend 16
weigh 28
weight 32
well 10, 19, 33, 34
well-behaved 23
well-done 53
western 55
wet 2, 10, 37
what time...? 12
what's on...? 55
wheel 2
when 15
widowed 28
wife 25
wild animal 40
wildlife 39
win 20
wind 37
window 2, 46
windscreen 2
windy 37
wine 43
wine list 53
winter 16
winter holiday 50
women 42, 58
wonderful 22, 23
wood 39
wool 40
word 1
word processor 26
work 12, 21, 47, 59
worker 26
worktop 44
worse 22
worst 22
write 12, 20
wrong 19

year 16
yesterday 16
young 32

zoo 40
zoology 26

FOCUS ON

Advanced English C.A.E.

GRAMMAR PRACTICE

REVISED AND UPDATED

THE BRITISH COUNCIL
000017002

Longman

RICHARD WALTON
SERIES EDITOR: Sue O'Connell

428.43

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate
Harlow
Essex CM20 2JE
England
and Associated Companies throughout the world

www.longman-elt.com

© Richard Walton 1994, 1999

The right of Richard Walton to be identified as author of this Work has been asserted by him in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

First published by Thomas Nelson and Sons Ltd 1994
This edition published by Pearson Education Ltd, 1999

Fourth impression 2000

ISBN 0 582 32571 4

Set in 11/13.5 Minion

Printed in Spain by Graficas Estella

Author's acknowledgement
Many thanks to Sue O'Connell for keeping the book 'focused' and staying positive: and to Roberta for putting up with it all.

I would also like to thank the students and staff of St Clare's, Oxford for their help in piloting the material and for their support.

The publishers are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce copyright material: Philip Allan Publishers Ltd for an adapted extract from 'Special Agents' by Andrew Jones in SOCIOLOGY REVIEW vol. 7 No 1, September 1977 and an extract from 'Thinking about family life' by David Morgan in SOCIOLOGY REVIEW vol. 7 No 4, 1998; British Airways for an extract from an article by David Hewson in BRITISH AIRWAYS BUSINESS LIFE July/August 1998; BBC WILDLIFE MAGAZINE on behalf of the authors, for extracts from 'Mystery of the dying frogs' by Tim Halliday & 'Small is beautiful' by Jonathan Porritt in BBC WILDLIFE MAGAZINE October 1997 p29 & pp21–22; Brockman Inc. on behalf of the author, for an extract from THE RISE AND FALL OF THE THIRD CHIMPANZEE by Jared Diamond; Guardian Newspapers Ltd for a slightly adapted extract from 'Office Politics' by Guy Browning in THE GUARDIAN WEEKEND 6.6.98; Guild of Master Craftsman Publications Ltd for and advertisement for a desk editor in THE INDEPENDENT 13.10.93; Penguin Books Ltd for an adapted extract from BETTER READER, FASTER READER by Manya and Eric De Leeuw (Pelican Original) Copyright © Manya and Eric De Leeuw, 1965.

We have been unable to trace the copyright holder of the letter 'Pick Strawberry Fields for the heritage beat' from Mr Gerald Murphy to THE INDEPENDENT and would appreciate any information which would enable us to do so.

Illustrations by Nigel Paige, Anne Burchell
Designed by Annette Peppis
Project Managed by Dave Francis

Contents

1 Use Your Head 4

Dictionary skills – Abbreviations; parts of speech; tenses; dependent prepositions
Grammar – Conditionals 0, 1, 2; *despite/in spite of; although/but*
Phrasal verbs – Word order
Phrasal verbs – Can you split it up?
Prefixes – *under* and *over*
Writing – Informal letter
Word formation
Wordcheck – Collocations
Error correction

2 Severe Weather 11

Vocabulary – Collocations; Idioms and metaphors
Contrast links
Collocations
Prepositions
Writing – Formal letter
Spelling – That can't be right!
Grammar – Review of passives and causative *have/get something done*; passives for formal effect
Dependent prepositions
Wordcheck – Weather

3 Time Eaters 16

Vocabulary – Register and style
no matter ...
Grammar – *will* vs *going to*; future time clauses; guess the ending; present tenses, modal verbs

4 Stress 20

Cause and effect
Grammar – *-ing* forms; prepositions and conjunctions + *-ing*; *-ing* or infinitive?; *-ing* nouns; *-ing* adjectives
Word building – Verb formation
Dependent prepositions
Collocations
Wordcheck – Stress and relaxation

Progress Test One 25

5 Globe Trotting 29

Cohesive devices
Grammar – Past simple vs past continuous; past perfect simple and continuous
Phrasal verbs – Phrasal verbs with *up*; in other words; three-word phrasal verbs
Reference links
Word stress – Air travel
Writing – Formal letter
Editing for phrasal verbs
Wordcheck – Collocations

6 Language Matters 35

Relative clauses – Relative pronouns; different endings; reduced relative clauses; fill in the gaps
like, as and *alike*
Comparison – Comparatives and superlatives, as ... as, complete the sentences
Degrees of comparison
Linking and logical devices – addition, concession, contrast
Spelling
Emphasisers
Review writing

7 The Ages of Man 41

Grammar – *used to* ... vs *be/get used to* ...; past simple or present perfect; present perfect simple and continuous; stative vs dynamic verbs
Dictionary skills – Connotation; parts of speech; metaphors and idioms; collocation; word formation (derivations); register; pronunciation and stress
Reported speech
Expressions with *make*
Discourse cloze
Wordcheck – Age

8 Personally Speaking 46

Compound adjectives of character
The ... the ... – comparatives
Phrasal verbs
Grammar – The passive; fill in the gaps; *make/cause*, etc.
Writing – Informal letter
Wordcheck – Character and personality
Lexical cloze

Progress Test Two 50

9 Mind Your Manners 55

Inversion after negative introductions
Modal verbs
Collocations – verb + noun; verb + adverb; adjective + noun
Dictionary skills – Opposites – prefixes; synonyms and antonyms; phonetics; spelling vs pronunciation; pronunciation
Type 3 and mixed conditionals
Writing – Report writing
Register cloze

10 State of the Union 61

Grammar – Review of *-ing* forms and infinitives; cleft sentences and introductory *it*
Collocations with *do/make/have/get*
Phrasal verbs
Dependent prepositions
Writing – Information sheet
Structural cloze
Word formation
Wordcheck – Relationships

11 Last Chance to See

Relative clauses – Punctuation; relative clauses with prepositions
Phrasal verbs – Tense and structure; different meanings
Expressing the future
Quantifiers – *each/every, either/neither*
Linking and logical devices – cause and result, purpose and time
Discourse cloze
Writing – Formal letter
Wordcheck – The environment

Progress Test Three 71

12 Living Dangerously 75

Collocations and idioms
Emphatic structures
Phrasal verbs – Tense and structure; different meanings
Past tenses
Conditionals – Conditional 3; 1st, 2nd, 3rd and mixed conditionals
Dependent prepositions
Writing – Article
Structural cloze
Wordcheck – Fire

13 Mind and Body 80

Pronouns – object, reflexive and reciprocal
Past tenses for hypothetical situations
Vocabulary – Word building; adjectives
Phrasal verbs
Dictionary skills – Collocations; metaphors and idioms
Expressions of concession
Writing – Character reference
Word formation

14 Testing Times 86

Review of grammatical and syntactical structures – Tense forms and time; conditionals; structures after verbs; modals/modal perfects; passives; linkers; participle clauses; emphatic structures
-ing forms – *-ing* or infinitive?; *-ing* forms, infinitive with or without *to*
Tenses
Review of tenses
Writing – Report
Wordcheck – Studying and examinations
Editing skills

Progress Test Four 93

Answer Key 98

SB = Student's Book

1 ▶ Use Your Head

1 Dictionary skills

1.1 Abbreviations

Give two examples for each of the following dictionary abbreviations. The first one has been done for you.

1 PREP *with, from*
2 ADV ....
3 SING ....
4 CONJ ....
5 PRON ....
6 N [U] or UNCOUNT ....
7 PL ....
8 ADJ ....
9 V ....
10 PASS ....

STUDY TIP Using a dictionary

▶ As an advanced learner, you will find a good monolingual dictionary an essential tool. Apart from spelling and meanings, a dictionary can tell you:
- part of speech
- pronunciation – if you can recognise phonetic script
- word stress – /rɪˈtɜːn/ or /rɪtɜːn/
- word formation
- collocations
- useful phrases the word is used in

1.2 Parts of speech

Decide the grammatical function of the word *fast* in each of the sentences below. Use your dictionary to check your answers.

1 If you take the fast train, you should be there in under an hour.
2 Many religions require their followers to fast at certain times of the year.
3 The car got stuck fast in the wet sand so we just left it there.
4 When it started raining, we all ran inside as fast as we could.
5 Some prisoners began a fast to protest against the appalling conditions.
6 By the time I got home, the children were already fast asleep.

1.3 Tenses

Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Then fill in the name of the tense you have used. See the example.

1 Dan *hates* doing the washing-up. (hate – *present simple*)
2 Hi, Laura. Long time no see. How .... it .... ? (go – ....)
3 Sorry to keep you. How long .... you .... ? (wait – ....)
4 I sincerely hope they .... the building work by the end of next month. (finish – ....)
5 What .... you .... between 5 and 6pm last Saturday? (do – ....)
6 Good news everybody! We .... to build a new gymnasium with the new government grant. (can – ....)
7 .... Julia ever .... seriously ill before her trip to India last year? (be – ....)
8 Just think, this time next month I .... here for ten years! (work – ....)
9 Does anyone want a sandwich? No thanks, I .... just .... lunch. (have – ....)
10 Where on earth .... you .... those shoes? They're awful! (buy – ....)
11 I hope I .... on a sun-drenched beach in Italy this time tomorrow. (sit – ....)
12 We .... through the forest for two or three hours when we realised we were lost! (walk – ....)

1.4 Dependent prepositions

Complete the following sentences by putting the correct preposition in the space provided. The first one has been done for you.

1 Moral and social responsibility should be integrated *into* every child's schooling.
2 It's impossible to attend .... a task properly if you're worrying .... something else.
3 Kelly has great confidence .... her children's abilities.
4 It's a good idea to make notes .... what you're reading if you want to remember it.
5 Unfortunately, many university courses do not provide students .... the basic study skills they really need.

6 Jack took early retirement as he was losing his grip .... the job.
7 Apparently, an interest in reading in later life is closely related .... how much your parents read to you as a child.
8 Ron usually primes himself .... plenty of black coffee before starting the night shift.
9 I find it very hard to commit historical dates .... memory.
10 Lack of sleep can seriously interfere .... your ability to think rationally.

2 Grammar

2.1 Conditionals 0, 1 and 2 ▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 14

Complete the following conditional sentences with suitable phrases. Look at the example given.

1 OK, OK, I'll lend you the money as long as you *pay me back* next week.
2 What would you do if your car .... miles from anywhere?
3 If you .... woollen clothes in hot water, they shrink.
4 Quite frankly, I think you're going to fail the exam unless .... harder.
5 I know he's hardly ever around these days but if you .... , tell him to get back in touch.
6 But supposing our train is late, how .... the airport on time?
7 I can't get off to sleep at night unless .... a hot drink.
8 If my boyfriend spoke to me like that, ... his face.
9 You can borrow my video camera on condition that .... properly.
10 If you drop a cat, it always .... on its feet.
11 I'd apply for that job as an interpreter if .... better Russian.
12 Should .... further information, please contact our publicity officer.
13 I'm going to take a big pullover in case .... very cold.
14 I'm sure you .... those headaches all the time if you wore your glasses more often.
15 Provided .... no more objections, we'll continue with the next point on the agenda.
16 Suppose .... on a desert island, how would you survive?
17 I'd go and see the doctor with that rash if .... you.
18 We should be able to play tennis on Friday afternoon unless .... , of course.
19 Should .... in the neighbourhood, feel free to call in.
20 I'd play a lot more sport if I .... so much work to do.

STUDY TIP Conditionals

▶ Although you cannot use *'ll* after *if* in most conditional sentences, there is one time when you can. This is to express willingness or volition:
e.g. If you'll clear the table, I'll wash the dishes.

2.2 *despite/in spite of; although/but* ▶Study Box, SB page 17

Match the first half of the sentences in Column A with their endings in Column B then add an appropriate linking word or phrase. The first one has been done for you.

A

1 Joan is very hard-working [D]
2 .... Lucy lived in Mexico for three years, ☐
3 Joe's parents wanted him to be a doctor ☐
4 .... teachers can help students learn, ☐
5 .... what you might have heard, ☐
6 Sue passed all of her exams
7 .... they lived almost opposite the state school ☐
8 .... of drinking six cups of strong, black coffee ☐
9 We made ourselves understood ☐
10 .... all the special offers ☐

B

A .... not doing any revision at all.
B .... of not speaking any Greek.
C Jack and Ruth sent their daughter to a private place ten miles away.
D *but* she's not very imaginative.
E I refused to buy any encyclopaedias.
F she only speaks a few words of Spanish.
G I just couldn't stay awake.
H students must learn for themselves.
I .... he wanted to learn to write plays.
J there is no quick and easy way to learn a language.

3 Phrasal verbs

3.1 Word order

In some, but not all, of the sentences below the word order of the phrasal verbs and objects is wrong. Make any corrections that you think are necessary. See the example given.

1 If there are any words you don't understand, look ⋎up them in your dictionaries.
2 Quick, I haven't got a pen. Can you jot Jack's phone number down for me?
3 You don't have to give me an answer right away. Think over it and let me know tomorrow.
4 'Are you going to the party next Friday?'
'Yes, I'm really looking forward to it.'
5 Could you look this article through and tell me what you think of it?
6 'I don't think we'll be able to play the match in all this rain.'
'No, let's put off it until tomorrow.'
7 'Mrs McCarthy, I've got your husband on the line.'
'OK. Put him through.'
8 It was such a good book I just couldn't put down it.
9 Harry's family always believed in his innocence and stood by him throughout the murder trial.
10 'I see you're still smoking, Chris.'
'Yes, but I'm really trying to give up it.'

3.2 Can you split it up? ▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 19

In the following sentences add a particle to complete the phrasal verb and an appropriate object pronoun (*it, me, them,* etc) in the CORRECT place – either before or after the particle. See the example provided.

1 OK, you read out the phone numbers and I'll jot *them down.*
2 Where's the remote control?
I don't know. I was just looking ....
3 That cheese in the fridge had gone off so I threw ....
4 He doesn't look like his father much but he takes .... in the way he behaves.
5 Their company has gone bankrupt and they only set .... two years ago!
6 Look, don't keep complaining to me about it. If your steak is underdone, send ....!
7 'Did you believe that story about a long-lost brother?'
'No, not a word of it. I'm sure she was making ....'
8 'What did little Patrick think of his first visit to the swimming pool?'
'Oh, he took .... like a duck to water!'
9 You don't have to give me an answer right now. Think .... for a while.
10 The form was so complicated that she had to ask her accountant to fill .... for her.
11 I've been given this algebra problem to solve before tomorrow morning and I just can't work ....
12 His wife left him for another man and he's never really got ....
13 I still don't understand this word and I've just looked .... in the dictionary!
14 As they didn't have anywhere to stay, we put .... for the night.
15 Nina fainted in the heat and we had to bring .... with smelling salts.

4 Prefixes – *under* and *over*

▶ Word formation, SB page 20

4.1 Fill in the spaces below with words beginning with *under* and their opposites. Look at the example provided.

1 smaller than average or normal (adj)
2 fail to guess or understand the real cost, size or difficulty of something (v)
3 not express an idea fully or adequately (v)
4 weak and unhealthy due to lack of food (adj)
5 charge too little money for something (v)
6 having too few people for the amount of work (adj)
7 not cooked for long enough (adj)
8 wearing clothes that are not attractive or formal enough for an event (adj)
9 make too little use of something (v)
10 lacking the money, education, possessions and opportunities that the average person has (adj)
11 fail to appreciate how skilful, important someone or something is (v)
12 give too little light to a piece of photographic film (v)

	Word	Opposite
1	*undersized*	*oversized*
2	....	....
3	....	....
4	....	....
5	....	....
6	....	....
7	....	....
8	....	....
9	....	....
10	....	....
11	....	....
12	....	....

4.2 Now complete these sentences using any of the words from 4.1. See the example provided.

1 There was far too much light and all my photos were *overexposed.*
2 Don't you think you're a bit .... for a barbecue in that suit?
3 The baby was a bit .... at birth but she's put on weight well.
4 Calling his behaviour criminal is rather an .... It was just a mistake.
5 I think 45 minutes is an .... of the time it will take. I'd allow an hour.
6 The office is .... so some people will have to be made redundant.
7 The council is trying to promote the new sports facilities, which are .... at present.
8 I'm hopeless at preparing pasta. I always .... how much to cook and we end up either eating it for three days or throwing it away.
9 I can't stand meat that is so .... that it has blood oozing out of it.
10 I find his songs very repetitive. I think he's really .... as a singer, to be honest.
11 To say we were surprised by the news of his arrest would be an ....
12 Many of the children were clearly .... and suffering from various diseases.
13 It's a very good restaurant. But be warned, they tend to ....
14 Although she came from an .... family background, she went on to become one of the most highly paid lawyers in Britain.

5 Writing – Informal letter

In the following letter, there are 7 mistakes of layout and style. One has been marked for you. There are also 7 missing phrases. Find the other 6 mistakes and complete the 7 missing phrases.

Andy Kulbacher
Bramley Road 25
Burnville BV2 6BZ

23rd Oct, 20—

Dear friend,

it was very nice to (1) .... after such a long time. (2) .... to hear that you've settled down in your new job in Valencia and are getting into the local way of life!

As you know, I'm still working at the same language school as before although now I'm in charge of marketing our courses in Europe! So it's a lot more responsibility and lots of travelling. As it happens, I'm coming to Valencia next month and (3) .... favour! I desperately need the names, addresses and phone numbers of the directors of all the local English language schools and I can't seem to get that sort of information in this country.

(4) .... if you could go through all the local yellow pages and send me information. Please don't (5) .... if you can't manage it, I can always do it when I get there.

(6) .... , we must definitely meet up when I'm over. (7) .... see you soon.

Looking forward to hearing from you. Yours sincerely,

Andy

6 Word formation

6.1 **Complete the following grid, paying particular attention to whether the required word is grammatically positive (+) or negative (–). See the examples provided.**

1	efficient (adj +)	*efficiency*	(noun +)
2	respond (verb +)	*irresponsible*	(adj –)
3	benefit (noun +)	....	(adj +)
4	complex (adj +)	....	(noun +)
5	intellect (noun +)	....	(adj +)
6	conceive (verb +)	....	(noun –)
7	deceive (verb +)	....	(adj +)
8	anxious (adj +)	....	(noun +)
9	honesty (noun +)	....	(adj –)
10	explain (verb +)	....	(noun +)
11	photograph (noun +)	....	(adj +)
12	attend (verb +)	....	(adj –)
13	psychology (noun +)	....	(adj +)
14	invest (verb +)	....	(noun +)
15	appear (verb +)	....	(noun –)

6.2 **Now complete the following sentences with suitable words from the exercise above.**

16 A 'cheat' is someone who behaves in a .... and .... way.

17 There is a popular .... that all British people are monarchists. This is simply not true!

18 Sara refused to provide the police with any .... for the .... of such a large sum of money.

19 The .... effects of taking regular exercise are both physical and ....

20 Children often feel a great deal of .... about their first day at school.

21 Although Rita was often .... in class, she had a virtually .... memory and got top grades in all her exams.

22 The .... of her arguments left us all in a state of confusion.

23 I like to relax with a good detective story – nothing too demanding or ....

24 The .... of our memories does not necessarily deteriorate with age.

7 Wordcheck – Collocations

Complete the sentences below by adding the correct verbs in the most suitable form from the box. The first one has been done for you.

parrot
circulate
produce
~~consult~~
report
assimilate
offer
jot down
undergo
set yourself
chew over
prove

1 If you don't know where it is, try *consulting* an atlas.

2 It's hard to .... information when feeling anxious.

3 Several students volunteered to .... psychological tests.

4 Details of the new grant were .... in the last edition of the college magazine.

5 Don't even try and write everything. Just .... the main points.

6 It's important to .... clear targets in your study programme.

7 Don't make the mistake of simply .... someone else's words when writing your own notes.

8 The teacher said mnemonics can help you memorise things and to .... the point he memorised various phrases the students came up with in other languages.

9 The headteacher could .... no explanation for such poor examination results.

10 I find it helpful to listen to classical music when I'm .... a problem.

11 So-called 'sleep learning' has failed to .... any beneficial effects to the learning process.

12 The findings of the tests were .... in the journal 'Psychobabble'.

8 Error correction

8.1 Parts of speech

Underline the unnecessary words in each of the following sentences and identify which part of speech it is. See the example given.

1 Remind me to telephone to my sister before the end of the day. *preposition*
2 We really need an information about flights to Skopje. ....
3 The modern life is complicated enough without more rules and regulations. ....
4 They hope to can arrive before the start of the conference. ....
5 Hadn't she been suggested creating two part-time jobs? ....
6 If you don't know the answer, why don't you ask to the teacher? ....
7 Prague which is a city I've always wanted to visit. ....
8 Paul was in the hospital for three months after the accident. ....
9 The shark which pushed silently through the seaweed and attacked the unsuspecting swimmers. ....
10 There was an ominous silence as they entered into the room. ....

8.2 Error correction

In most lines of the following text there is one unnecessary word. It is either grammatically incorrect or it does not fit in with the sense of the text. For each numbered line, find the unnecessary word and then write it in the space provided. Some lines are correct. Indicate these with a tick (✓). The first two lines have been done for you.

Mapping the mind's word processor

An area is deep in the left frontal half of the brain used to
process language has been pinpointed by a new brain-imager.
Dr Julie Fiez, who first reported the work, believes brain-imagers
will one day help to show that the causes of problems like dyslexia
and determine strategies to overcome language in difficulties.
The new imaging technique shows that the parts of the brain which
are working harder' because of blood flow has increased.
When some people being studied were asked to lift their left index
finger when they have heard a specific tone, word, syllable
or vowel. Others were asked only to listen without doing anything.
The brain's left frontal region was seen to be used only
when subjects had to show they had heard of the specific sound,
rather than just listened. Many regions are involved in listening
but this one appears to be involved when parts of a sound have to
be analysed to make up a decision, for instance how to correctly
pronounce the words 'lead' and 'tears' in the different contexts.

0 *is*
0 ✓
1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....
11 ....
12 ....
13 ....
14 ....

2 ▶ Severe Weather

1 Vocabulary

1.1 Collocations

Match each word in Column A with its partner in Column B. See the example.

	A			B
1	high	E	A	situation
2	gusty	☐	B	range
3	torrential	☐	C	warning
4	severe	☐	D	level
5	slight	☐	E	tides
6	desperate	☐	F	weather
7	flood	☐	G	seas
8	choppy	☐	H	rain
9	temperature	☐	I	winds
10	sea	☐	J	breeze

1.2 Idioms and metaphors

Complete the following sentences to make a suitable common idiom or metaphor connected with the weather.

1 I'm really sorry I won't be able to see you this week but I'm absolutely *snowed* under with work.
2 'What's the capital of Peru?'
'Sorry, I haven't got the .... idea!'
3 Jane and Steve have what you might call a .... relationship – they're always arguing and then making up again!
4 Julie is amazingly cheerful, she always greets everyone with a .... smile.
5 The decision to build the new motorway through the forest was met by .... of protest from local residents.
6 Tom has been .... Maria with presents to make up for forgetting their wedding anniversary last month.
7 One of the TV cameramen was hit in the leg when they were caught in a .... of bullets outside the gang's hideout.
8 The boss's manner turned decidedly .... after I told her I was looking for a new job.
9 I got home to find everyone in .... of tears over the terrible news.
10 'Is Nick pleased about his new job?'
'Pleased? He's on .... nine!'

2 Contrast links

▶Study Box, SB page 27

Complete the sentences using the linking words in the box below. The first one has been done as an example.

while/whereas	although	in contrast
on the other hand	~~but~~	yet

1 Mick likes playing tennis, *but* only if he wins!
2 Dogs are loving and loyal, ... cats are very independent.
3 Hugo claims to be a strict vegetarian and .... he regularly eats chicken!
4 Cars produce a great deal of pollution. Bicycles, ..., are totally environmentally friendly.
5 Checkers is a relatively easy game to master, ... learning to play chess takes a very long time.
6 Ms Ross will be able to see you tomorrow .... not before 11am.
7 Some people regard television as no more than 'chewing gum for the eyes', ... many others appreciate its educative value.
8 .... Jo likes living in the country, she does miss the convenience of living in town.

3 Collocations

Complete the following sentences to form common word combinations. The first letter of the missing word is given in each case to help you. See the example.

1 Unfortunately, I missed the bus so I had to hitch a *lift*.
2 The lorry drivers' strike brought the traffic to a s.................... in most parts of the country.
3 Quick! Grab h.................... of my hand and I'll try and pull you out.
4 I took a.................... of the sales to buy myself a smart new suit.
5 Jan takes large doses of Vitamin C at the slightest h.................... of a cold.
6 My kids just never g.................... a second thought to where all the money comes from to pay for their toys and presents.
7 Clean, running water plays a vital r.................... in the health of the population of any country.

4 Prepositions

Complete these sentences with a preposition and the appropriate form of a word taken from the box below. See the example.

increase tears admission warn clear
stand-by action ~~count~~ illusions fit

1 Dan's rather mean. He thinks a box of chocolates *counts as* a generous wedding present!
2 In rough weather the coast guard is .... constant .... to respond quickly to distress signals from boats.
3 A local woman .... us .... swimming in the bay. She said sharks had been seen there recently.
4 Most people regarded his refusal to answer the question as an .... his guilt.
5 The workers were rather cynical after the meeting. Most of them were .... no .... that the management would take their complaints seriously.
6 Before applying the solution, make sure the surface to be treated has been .... all loose rust and paint.
7 The police moved swiftly .... to stop fighting between the rival groups of football fans.
8 There has been a dramatic .... the number of cases of skin cancer due to the damage to the ozone layer.
9 It was such a sad film that we were all reduced .... at the end.
10 The new model is .... electric windows, a sun-roof and a catalytic converter as standard.

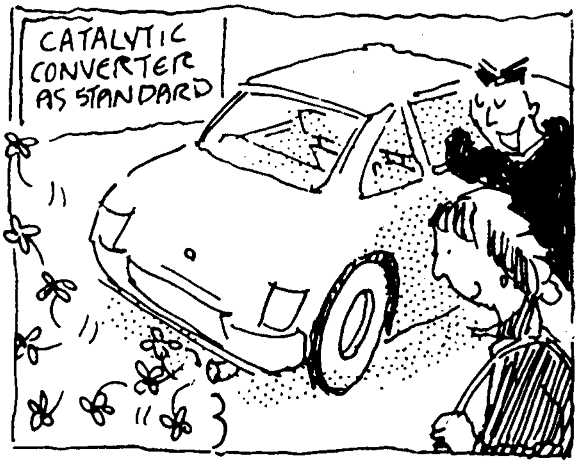

5 Writing – Formal letter

Fred Smith is writing a letter to Mr Clough, the Chairman of the town council in Loxley. The information in his letter is correct but the style is far too informal. Rewrite the letter in a more formal style and include the phrases in the box below.

I am writing to express my concern about …
I must insist that you …
I must urge you to …

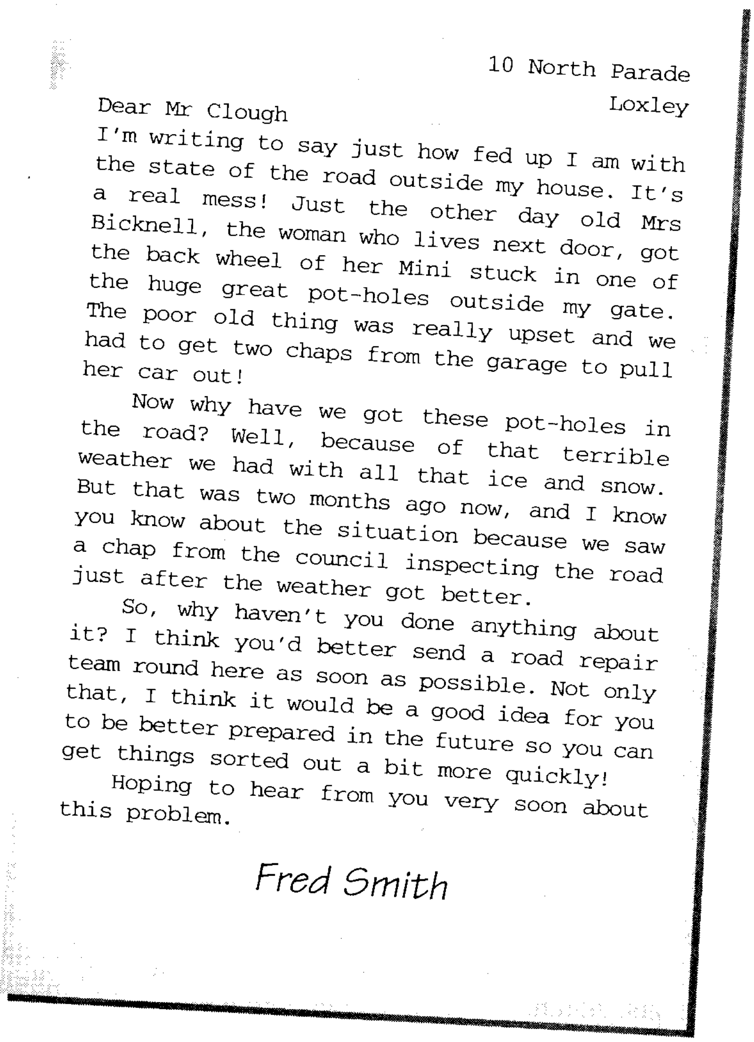

10 North Parade
Loxley

Dear Mr Clough

I'm writing to say just how fed up I am with the state of the road outside my house. It's a real mess! Just the other day old Mrs Bicknell, the woman who lives next door, got the back wheel of her Mini stuck in one of the huge great pot-holes outside my gate. The poor old thing was really upset and we had to get two chaps from the garage to pull her car out!

Now why have we got these pot-holes in the road? Well, because of that terrible weather we had with all that ice and snow. But that was two months ago now, and I know you know about the situation because we saw a chap from the council inspecting the road just after the weather got better.

So, why haven't you done anything about it? I think you'd better send a road repair team round here as soon as possible. Not only that, I think it would be a good idea for you to be better prepared in the future so you can get things sorted out a bit more quickly!

Hoping to hear from you very soon about this problem.

Fred Smith

6 Spelling – That can't be right!

In the following sentences some of the underlined verbs are spelt incorrectly. Correct any mistakes, as in the example.

forgetting
1 I've got a terrible memory, I keep forgeting that girl's name.
2 If you believe what they say in the commercials, some of these face creams seem to stop the ageing process completely!
3 William is studing modern languages. He hopes to become an interpreter.
4 I think the best sport for all-round fitness must be swiming.
5 I wish you'd stop biting your nails – it's a really unpleasant habit!
6 Come on, let's go to the pub, I'm dieing for a drink!
7 I see the police have arrested those men who are supposed to have kidnaped that little boy.
8 The crash is a complete mystery. It occurred on a sunny afternoon, with excellent visibility and practically no wind.
9 Louise must have left her credit card behind when she payed for the petrol.
10 They tryed not to laugh at his accent but just couldn't help it.
11 Jim and Fay don't seem to be getting on very well these days, they're always argueing about something.
12 Excuse me, Professor. Could you repeat the name of that German scientist you refered to earlier?
13 When I was a boy, I plaied rugby not football.
14 Oh Brian! You really must stop disagreeing with everything I say!
15 Although the fire was very small, everyone paniced and rushed out of the cinema, causing complete chaos.

STUDY TIP Doubling consonants

▶ Remember that in verbs of more than one syllable the final consonant is (usually) doubled only if the stress is on the syllable before it:

e.g.	o O referred	but	O o offered
	o O forgetting	but	o O o o remembering

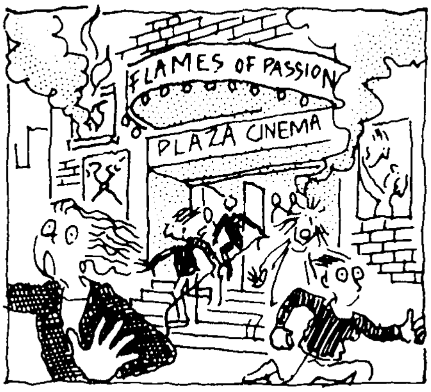

7 Grammar

7.1 Review of passives and causative (*have/get something done*) ▶ Focus on Grammar SB, page 30

STUDY TIP Causative *have/get*

▶ *Have/get something done* (Causative) is used to mean:

- cause something to be done by someone else
e.g. I had/got my hair cut yesterday. (The hairdresser did it.)
- cause something to happen yourself
e.g. I'll have/get this mess cleared up in no time.
- experience something (usually undesirable)
e.g. Clara had/got her credit cards stolen the other day.

Get is used rather than *have:*

- to show a feeling of obligation or urgency
e.g. I must get my car insurance renewed – it ran out last week!
- to show that something was difficult to do/achieve
e.g. We finally got the decorating finished just before we moved in.
- to indicate a planned action to achieve something
e.g. He got himself elected President of the club.
- in imperatives
e.g. Get this room cleaned up at once!

In the following sentences, decide which of the underlined forms is correct/more probable or if both are possible. See the example given.

1 Our house is [✓ being]/getting renovated so we're staying with friends at the moment.
2 Frank's nose was/got broken while he was playing rugby.
3 The new museum on Bath Road was/got designed by Isobel Fischer.

4 Sorry I'm late but I kept being/getting lost on the way here.
5 I'm afraid the meeting will have to be/get postponed until next week.
6 Apart from the terrible hotel and the dirty beach, my camcorder was/got stolen on the last day too!
7 Have/Get your hair cut, you horrible little man!
8 I went to five different shops but I just couldn't have/get my watch repaired.
9 We eventually managed to have/get the tent put up just before it started snowing.
10 Don't worry, we'll soon have/get your car started.

7.2 Passives for formal effect

Using the verbs in the box below, complete the sentences to make more formal equivalents of the sentences provided. An example is given.

address to ~~pay for~~ accompany receive notify
pay grant accompany require allow

1 If you break anything, you'll have to pay for it.
All breakages *(will) have to be paid for.*
2 You might have to show some sort of ID.
Proof of identity may ....
....
3 You can't pay by cheque unless you've got a guarantee card.
All cheques must ....
....
4 You mustn't use a flash inside the cathedral.
Flash photography ....
....
5 You should tell the manager if you've got anything to complain about.
All complaints ....
....
6 They'll tell you before the end of the month if you've got the job or not.
The successful applicant ....
....
7 You've got to pay for everything within ten working days.
Full payment ....
....
8 Sorry, but the council has turned down your planning permission.
We regret to inform you that planning permission
....
....
9 You won't get any compensation if you post money and it gets lost.
No compensation ....
....
10 They don't let kids in without a grown-up.
Children ....
....

8 Dependent prepositions

Complete the following sentences with the correct preposition. See the example given.

1 All new models have been fitted *with* a safety lock.
2 You look really scruffy. Can't you tuck your shirt .... your trousers at least?
3 The main part of the house is very old. It dates .... more than 400 years.
4 The sudden movement of the train threw me .... balance and I fell head-first down the steps.
5 Erica is an excellent colleague. She goes .... her job calmly and efficiently.
6 The school ran .... financial trouble when 80% of the staff went on strike.
7 As soon as the President stepped out of the car, guards moved .... action to hold back the crowds.
8 The price of shares in the company went up .... over 50% when they announced the discovery of the new oilfield.
9 We've decided to switch .... electricity .... solar power in an attempt to be more eco-friendly.
10 The over-use of fertilisers and pesticides is one of the greatest threats .... wildlife today.

9 Wordcheck – Weather

Complete the crossword. One has been done for you.

Across

1 If severe weather or a transport problem prevents you from leaving a place, you are .... (8)
2 Violent form of 8 across with strong circular 9 across. (7)
3 Very strong 9 across. (4)
4 A great amount of water in a place that is usually dry. (5)
5 A pile of snow blown up by 9 across. (5)
6 Medical term for when your body temperature falls to a dangerously low level. (11)
7 Water at 0°C. (3)
8 Bad weather with a lot of rain. (5)
9 A current of air moving across the earth's surface. (4)
10 Blocked in by heavy snow. (9)

Down

11 Having become hard or stiff from cold. (6)
12 Periods of dry weather causing suffering and hardship. (8)
13 A violent hurricane that occurs in the western Pacific. (7)
14 A large mass of snow that slides down the side of a mountain. (9)
15 To die under water because you can't breathe. (5)
16 Heavy snowfall with extremely strong 9 across. (8)
17 A mixture of rain and snow. (5)

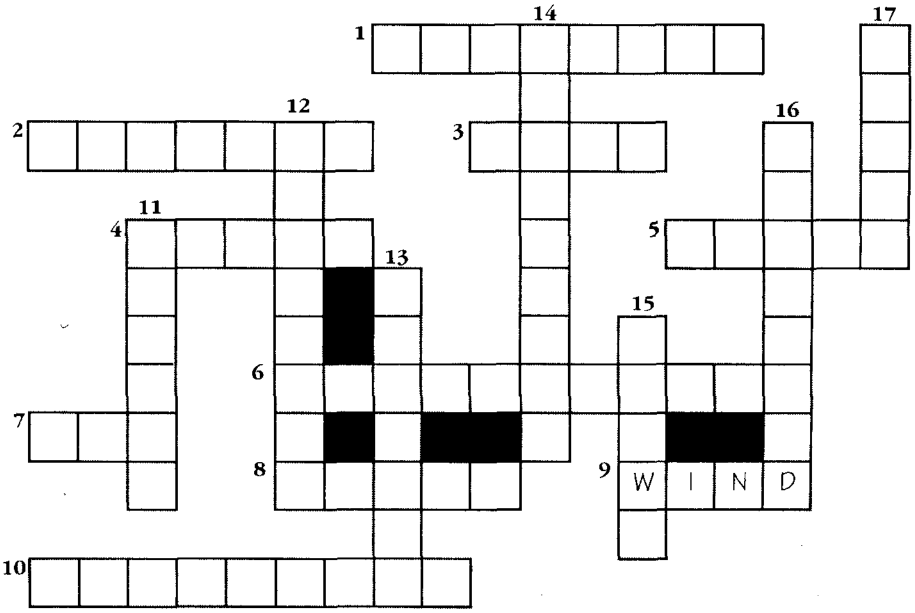

3 ▶ Time Eaters

1 Vocabulary – Register and style

Language Focus, SB page 36

1.1 Good monolingual dictionaries always indicate if a word or phrase has a particular 'register', in other words the type of context it should be used in. Different dictionaries use slightly different labels to indicate register but they all tell you whether the word or phrase is informal, formal, specialised/technical (e.g. medical, legal, literary, etc), old-fashioned/dated, slang, etc. Words and phrases with no label are of neutral register.

Use your monolingual dictionary to determine the register of the following words and to discover a more common/neutral (near) synonym. An example is given.

	Word	Register	Synonym
1	lesion	*medical*	*cut, wound*
2	podgy	....	....
3	bananas (adj)	....	....
4	pen (v)	....	....
5	wireless (n)	....	....
6	larceny	....	....
7	pretty (adv)	....	....
8	court (v)	....	....
9	notwithstanding	....	....
10	nosh-up	....	....
11	politic	....	....
12	bamboozle	....	....
13	clavicle	....	....
14	lingo	....	....

1.2 Make any necessary changes to the underlined words in the sentences that follow. Not all the underlined words are in inappropriate register. The first one has been done for you.

1 Unfortunately, he ended his days in an institution for the criminally ~~bananas~~. *insane*
2 Oh no! I think I've put my clavicle out again.
3 Lingo study classes are from 0900 to 1215 with options in the afternoon.
4 You are invited to a nosh-up to celebrate the 25th anniversary of the foundation of the club.
5 It's no good trying to bamboozle me. I'm not going to buy any insurance.
6 She turned out to be a great boss to work for notwithstanding what everybody said about her.
7 It is, to say the very least, pretty regrettable that the Managing Director has decided to resign at this crucial time.
8 Podgy children run a higher risk of heart disease in later life.
9 My grandmother never bought a TV. She was quite happy listening to her wireless, as she used to call it.
10 Can you pen a quick shopping list for me? You know how forgetful I am.
11 One feels it may not be politic at this moment to press for an increase in salary.
12 'Hi, Karen. So this is your new boyfriend.'
'Yeah, we've been courting for about two months now.'
13 I'm a bit worried about Harry, doctor. He's got some nasty lesions on his legs.
14 'I see Fred Gomm's been arrested again.'
'Oh, what for this time?'
'The usual – larceny.'

2 *no matter ...*

▶ Study Box, SB page 42

Match the first part of each sentence in Column A with the second part in Column B and add a suitable word to complete it. Look at the example.

F

A

1 No matter *how* hard I try, ☐
2 Well, it looks as though we'll have to buy a new one, ☐
3 She never gets to work on time, ☐
4 Don't trust her an inch, ☐
5 No matter .... much he'd like to, ☐
6 No matter .... you get there, ☐
7 No matter .... the doctor tells him, ☐
8 Cigarettes are extremely bad for you, ☐
9 Look, this rumour is totally untrue, ☐
10 Come on, you'd better clear up this mess, ☐

B

A no matter .... she promises.
B no matter .... it costs.
C he'll never forget the crash.
D no matter .... fault it was.
E he refuses to give up eating fatty food.

F I never lose any weight.
G no matter .... told you.
H no matter .... bus she takes.
I give us a ring to let us know everything's OK.
J no matter .... little tar they might contain.

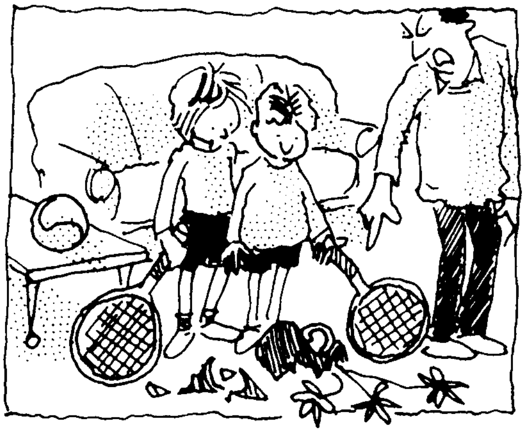

3 Grammar

3.1 *will* vs *going to* ▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 44

Complete the sentences below using the most appropriate form of *will* or *going to* and the verb given in brackets. The first one has been done as an example.

1 What *are you going to do* (do) after you leave university?
2 I hope I .... (have) a better job this time next year.
3 Look out, that lorry's coming straight at us! Oh no, we .... (crash)!
4 'Could I have an orange juice?'
'I'm sorry, we've run out.'
'Oh, alright I .... (have) a coke then, please.'
5 What time do you think you .... (get) back from the conference?
6 Oh come on, look at that beautiful blue sky – it .... (not rain) today!
7 'Have you got any plans for Friday night?'
'Not really, I .... (just stay) in and read a book.'
8 Sid promised to come and help us but he .... (probably not remember), you know how unreliable he is.
9 'Maria, the phone's ringing and I'm in the bath.'
'OK, I .... (get) it!'
10 Quick! Give me a paper tissue, I .... (sneeze) again!

3.2 Future time clauses ▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 44

Complete the following passage by putting the time conjunctions from the box in the correct space. The first one is shown as an example.

until when by the time ~~before~~ if
after while as soon as until once

Memorandum

from **Security Supervisor I B Shadow**

(1) *Before* the Ambassador arrives, you will have searched the embassy and grounds for anything suspicious. **(2)** .... he steps out of his bullet-proof limousine, you and three of your men will be in charge of his personal safety **(3)** .... he gets back into his limousine after the meeting. **(4)** .... he's shaken hands with the British diplomats, one of you will have to stay very close to him **(5)** .... he greets the well-wishers in the crowd and, remember, **(6)** .... you see anyone behaving strangely, you'll be expected to act first and ask questions later. **(7)** .... he goes inside the embassy building with the negotiators, you'll accompany him to the meeting room door and wait outside **(8)** .... he re-emerges – this could take anything from two to three hours. **(9)** .... he comes out of the embassy, the crowd will probably have dwindled somewhat but this is the time when you and your men will need to be most vigilant, so keep him covered all the time. **(10)** .... he gets back in his limousine, he'll be back in the hands of the mobile security unit and you'll be able to breathe a sigh of relief.

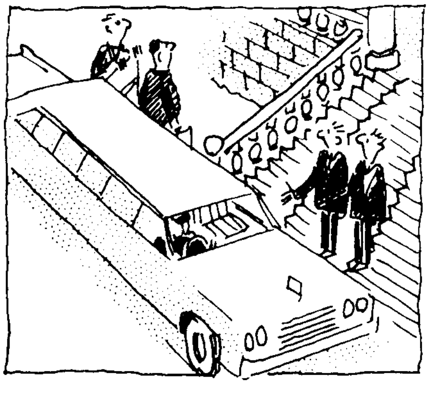

3.3 Guess the ending ▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 44

Complete these sentences in a logical way. Look at the example provided.

1 Don't worry, you'll recognise me as soon as *you see me!*
2 It's OK, I'll wait for you until ....
3 I'll go and have a cup of tea while ....
4 Hurry up, or they'll have finished dinner by the time .... !
5 I'll meet you back here after we ....
6 Won't you get a fine if .... ?
7 Come on, let's do the washing-up before we ....
8 You won't feel much on this side of your mouth until the injection ....

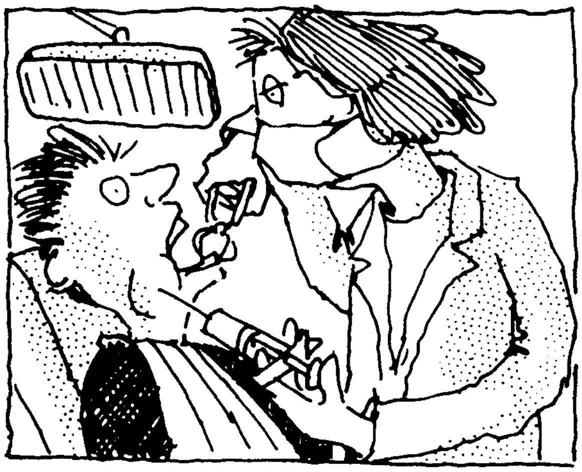

3.4 Present tenses

Put the verbs in brackets into either the present simple or the present continuous tense. Put any other words in the brackets in the correct place. The first one has been done for you.

1 This milk *doesn't smell* (not smell) too fresh – I think I'll throw it out.
2 You .... (forever/use) my razor, can't you buy one of your own?
3 Oh yes, Jean and I .... (know) each other very well.
4 Mark .... (go) to work by train while his car's at the mechanic's.
5 Don't forget the coach .... (leave) at 6.45 tomorrow morning so you'd better get an early night.
6 'Where's Harry?' 'In the study, I think he .... (write) some letters.'
7 Aunt Agnes is very generous, she .... (always/give) the children wonderful presents for their birthdays.
8 That new postman .... (not seem) very bright to me, he .... (always/leave) our letters in the wrong letterbox.
9 I'm sorry we can't make it to the party on Saturday but we .... (have) dinner with some old friends.
10 Predictably, at the end of the film the Swarzenegger hero .... (rescue) the prisoners and .... (get) the girl!
11 Where .... you .... (live) until your new house is ready?
12 Carter .... (serve), Pampas .... (return) but the ball .... (go) into the net. Game to Carter.

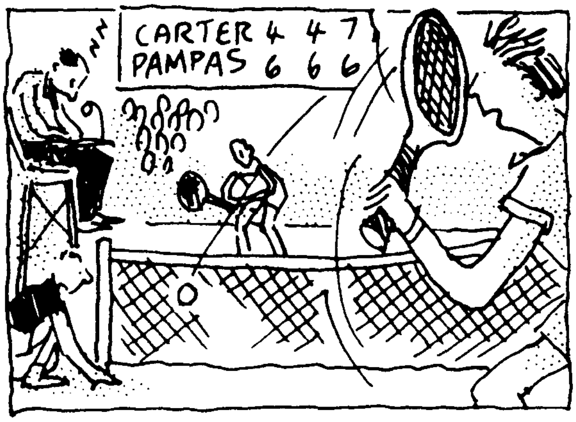

STUDY TIP Present tenses

▶ Remember that present tenses are not only limited to talking about the present – they are also used:
– to make the past seem less remote and more dramatic.
e.g. So, yesterday I'm sitting in the office, finishing off a few letters, when in comes Alan!
– to make the future more definite:
e.g. We're flying to Crete next Friday. The plane takes off at 7 a.m.

3.5 Modal verbs ▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 48

Complete the following sentences with a suitable form of *can, could, be able, may, might, must* and the verb in brackets. An example is given.

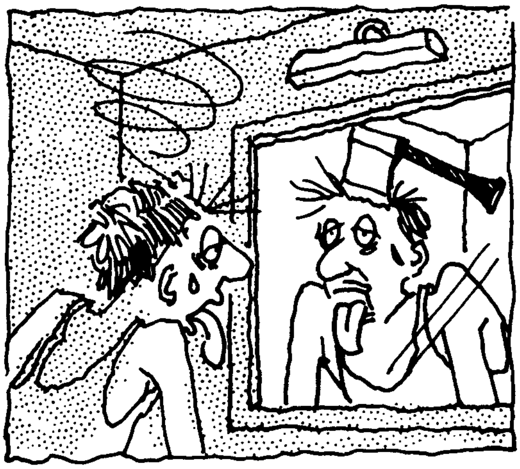

1 I feel absolutely awful. I think I *must have* (have) flu.
2 Are you going to .... (come) to Charlie's birthday party next Saturday?
3 My word! It .... (take) you ages to write all this. There are more than 2,000 pages!
4 Which bus do you think you .... (leave) your bag on?
5 'It's odd we haven't received that cheque. Showerings said they'd sent it.'
'Yes, I suppose it .... (get) lost in the post but I doubt it.'
6 I .... (swim) really well when I was six years old.
7 Although she had a broken leg, she .... (swim) to the shore.
8 You .... (tell) me it was a formal party. I looked a real idiot in my pullover and jeans!
9 It's not surprising we .... (not find) the house. You gave us the wrong address!
10 I used to .... (run) for miles. Now I .... (not even run) round the block!
11 'I wonder why Pam ignored me in the street this morning.'
'Well, she .... (not realise) it was you. She's as blind as a bat.'
12 Smoking .... (cause) all sorts of physical problems.
13 We .... (not be) more delighted when we heard the news. Congratulations!
14 Quick, Phil! .... you (see) that man over there? I think he .... well (be) the one the police are looking for.
15 Marsha .... (be) a brilliant lawyer but she gave it all up to go and live in Nepal.
16 'What's that there in those trees?'
'It .... (not be) a dog, it's too big. Let's run for it!'
17 Jane's not completely deaf but she .... (not hear) properly for a long time.
18 Billy, come away from that dog. It .... (bite you.

STUDY TIP *could* vs *was able to*

▶ Remember *could* is used to show general ability in the past:
e.g. She could drive when she was 13.
▶ *was able* to shows ability on a specific occasion in the past:
e.g. Despite having a flat tyre, she was able to drive home.

4 ▶ Stress

1 Cause and effect

▶ Study Box, SB page 55

Match the beginning of each sentence in Column A with the correct ending in Column B and add any necessary words. See the example.

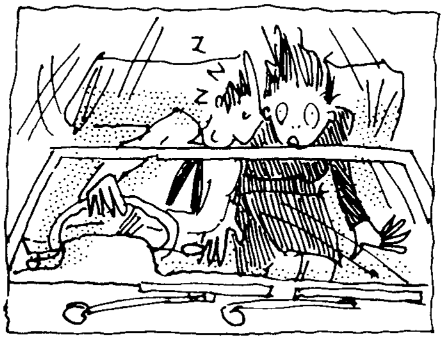

A

1 Careless driving I
2 Eating too many sugary things ☐
3 Skin cancer ☐
4 Heart attacks ☐
5 One .... of using a computer all day ☐
6 Bad posture ☐
7 A sudden rise in temperature ☐
8 Malaria can .... from ☐
9 Obesity can be the .... of ☐
10 Crimes in inner cities have increased ☐
11 Letting children always do what they want ☐
12 Accidents in the home ☐

B

A overeating and a lack of exercise.
B can be .... to tiredness and distraction.
C can and does .... in tooth decay.
D is to cause headaches and eye problems.
E being bitten by a mosquito.
F is a major .... of chronic back pain.
G .... of high unemployment and a lack of recreational facilities.
H can be .... by sunbathing for long periods.
I is a major *cause* of road accidents.
J can and does .... to behavioural problems at school.
K have increased as a .... of our modern stressful lifestyles.
L can and does .... avalanches.

2 Grammar

▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 58

2.1 *-ing* forms

In each of the following sentences add a suitable subject made from a verb. The first one is shown as an example.

1 *Drinking lots of water* is supposed to be good for your complexion.
2 .... causes a lot of unnecessary accidents every year.
3 .... is much less popular now than it was 20 years ago.
4 .... is by far the most common way of spending the evening.
5 .... often makes you appreciate the things you took for granted in your own country.
6 .... crossword puzzles is a classic time-eater.
7 .... is a good way of losing weight and getting fit.
8 .... in poor light can damage your eyesight.
9 .... is my favourite way of relaxing.
10 .... is a sign of nervousness or stress.

2.2 Prepositions and conjunctions + *-ing*

Complete the following sentences by adding the correct preposition and a suitable gerund. See the example.

1 I'm really looking forward *to meeting* your sister, I've heard so much about her.
2 We're thinking .... to Turkey this summer.
3 Arnold was falsely accused .... cash from the till.
4 When I was a child my mother was always warning me .... lifts from strangers.
5 Jean doesn't believe .... today what she can put off until tomorrow!
6 Trevor is absolutely hopeless .... photos – he always cuts your head or feet off!
7 Lesley's rather anxious .... the doctor next week – she thinks it might be something serious.
8 Emma was furious with me .... her ex-boyfriend to the party.
9 I intend to find out who's responsible .... the window.
10 I'm tired .... the same old faces every day – I need a change!
11 Anyone interested .... on the trip to Bath should tell Kerry by noon today.
12 Dr Farquar is famous .... people's names – I'm surprised he can remember his own!
13 Carol is incredibly honest. She'd never dream .... a lie.
14 You can delete anything you don't want .... this button.
15 Sally found it difficult to re-adjust to the British way of life .... back from a long holiday in the Greek islands.
16 What's the name of that stuff you use .... grass stains out of clothes?
17 MANUFACTURER'S WARNING: Always wear safety goggles .... this machinery.
18 Francesco picked up a strong American accent .... a Master's degree in the USA.
19 .... practically nothing, I just can't seem to lose any weight!
20 You must check in your mirror .... another car on the motorway.

2.3 *-ing* or infinitive?

Complete the following sentences with either a gerund or infinitive. In some cases the verb to use is indicated i brackets. The first one has been done for you.

1 You'll remember *to fill* the car up with petrol, won't you?
2 Try .... a cup of camomile tea before you go to bed.
3 She remembered .... his face in a police identikit picture.
4 You must try .... down on the number of cigarettes you smoke.
5 Being a doctor means .... very long hours anc .... a fragmented social life.
6 During the meeting we came .... that not onl were we not getting a pay rise but probably a pay cut!
7 I regret .... him he was pathetic, I got a bit angry, that's all.
8 I regret .... you that there is very little chance of recovery.
9 Having defeated the champion in the opening match, she went on .... the tournament.
10 Isn't it time you stopped .... on your parents so much and tried .... on your own two feet?
11 You can't expect .... the exam if you spend all day .... video games.
12 I can't help .... (wonder) why Julie keeps .... home so late.
13 It's no good .... (worry) about things you can't be expected .... (know).
14 Would you mind not .... in here? I can't stand .... in other people's cigarette smoke.
15 I hate .... in small, confined places. I was once trapped in a lift and tried .... (smash) the doors down.
16 Don't forget .... the car to the garage on Monday – the brakes need .... again.
17 It's not worth .... (risk) .... (get) a fine by .... the car here even for five minutes.
18 There was no point in .... (promise) .... (help) if you don't like .... (get) your hands dirty!

2.4 *-ing* nouns

Put the correct form of the nouns in the box below in the correct places in the following sentences. See the example given.

showing
spelling
airing
sighting
carving
being
saying
~~hanging~~
hearing
setting
following
recording
awakening
fitting
reading

1 A hundred years ago people used to attend public *hangings* outside local jails.
2 We'll need to leave work early if we want to see the earlier .... of the new movie.
3 The rock group 'U2' has a very large .... all over the world.
4 Have there ever been any verified .... of the Loch Ness monster?
5 I like to throw open the windows and give the room a good .... every morning.
6 Our second .... this evening comes from the poetic works of Oscar Wilde.
7 There's a lot of truth in the .... 'Everything comes to he who waits'.
8 We bought a beautiful wooden .... of a horse in Hungary.
9 The cabins were in the most attractive ...., on the edge of a lake, surrounded by forest.
10 He felt a gradual .... of love for this strange, independent girl.
11 There was an official .... to discover who was responsible for polluting the river.
12 Actually, the word has two different .... and both are correct!
13 He told me he'd spoken to some alien .... from another universe!
14 The bathroom still has all the original Victorian ....
15 I'm sorry it's so crackly but it's the original 1948 concert ....

2.5 *-ing* adjectives

Match each adjective in Column A with the appropriate noun in Column B. The first one is shown as an example.

	A			B
1	carving	G	A	board
2	shaving	☐	B	rod
3	building	☐	C	bag
4	diving	☐	D	stone
5	watering	☐	E	licence
6	parking	☐	F	powder
7	driving	☐	G	knife
8	filling	☐	H	can
9	paving	☐	I	water
10	walking	☐	J	site
11	fishing	☐	K	cream
12	sleeping	☐	L	space
13	ironing	☐	M	station
14	washing	☐	N	stick
15	drinking	☐	O	board

STUDY TIP Collocations

▶ Some common words are very useful in forming collocations e.g. *board, card, bag.*

diving	chess	chopping	BOARD
birthday	credit	membership	CARD
carrier	shoulder	shopping	BAG

▶ Keep a record of these and other such useful words and their possible partners.

3 Word building – Verb formation

Use the nouns or adjectives shown in brackets to form suitable verbs to fill each space. An example is provided.

1 If you tell the company exactly what you want, they can put together a *customised* (custom) computer system for you.
2 Would it be possible to .... (large) this part of the photo?
3 You'll never get a job unless you .... (smart) yourself up a bit.
4 It was really Charles Dickens who .... (popular) the celebration of Christmas in Britain.
5 If you're worried about the drinking water, there are

tablets you can get to .... (pure) it.
6 We don't need to hear all the details of the meeting. Could you just .... (summary) the main point for us?
7 Everyone now agrees that smoking .... (danger) people's health.
8 Frank bought an old car and .... (cannibal) it to repair two others.
9 We were all .... (horror) by the amount of money we had to pay.
10 The management are trying to persuade the workers to agree to .... (long) the working week.
11 Excuse me, professor. Could you .... (clear) what you mean by 'dumbing down'?
12 Taking regular exercise can .... (less) the risk of heart disease.
13 The police find it extremely difficult to .... (force) speed limits out of town.
14 Gangs of hooligans have been .... (terror) local residents.
15 Our anger .... (height) still further as we realised our luggage had been taken to the wrong airport.

4 Dependent prepositions

Replace the incorrect prepositions in the following sentences with the correct ones. The first one is shown as an example.

1 You can reduce your vulnerability ~~for~~ *to* stress by taking a nap in the afternoon.
2 I play tennis – but just in fun. I'm not very good at it.
3 I've no idea why Tony is so angry. He never confides with me.
4 Jane's out in the garden mulling through a problem to do with work.
5 There's no need to exercise at the point of exhaustion.
6 At weekends, I like to immerse myself with the peace and quiet of the countryside.
7 Bob's finding it hard to focus his mind in his studies at the moment.
8 Dentists fall on the category of high-stress occupations.
9 One of the greatest causes of stress at the workplace is the feeling of being undervalued.
10 Moving house often has a negative effect for people's mental health.

5 Collocations

Complete each of the following sentences with the correct form of an appropriate verb taken from the box. The first one is shown as an example.

modify
calm
take
receive
do
~~spend~~
meet
organise
attend
provide
answer

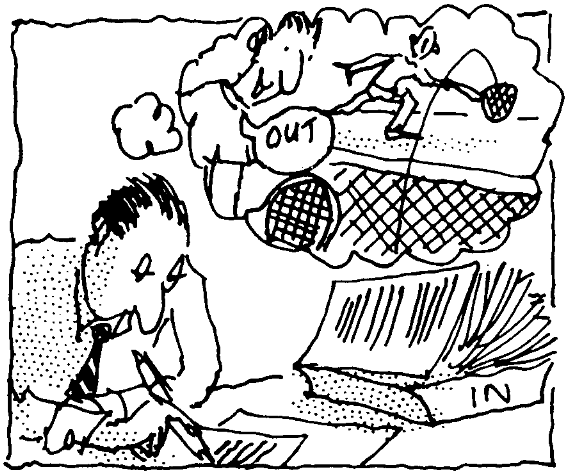

1 We all need to *spend* some time just enjoying ourselves.
2 Not having enough money to .... your basic needs is a great cause of stress.
3 Many people find it hard to .... their behaviour in order to reduce stress.
4 We've just been told that the new multi-gym will .... facilities for just about all indoor sports.
5 Excuse me! I wonder if you'd have the time to .... a brief questionnaire.
6 I try to .... my mind by .... yoga.
7 How many alcoholic drinks do you .... per week?
8 It's important to both give and .... affection regularly.
9 I really must try and .... my time better. I'm always leaving things until the last minute.
10 Her grandmother is in excellent health and regularly .... the local sports club.

6 Wordcheck – Stress and relaxation

6.1 Odd word out

Underline the word in each group that does not fit in with the other three. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary. The first one is shown as an example.

1	fun	enjoyable	friendly	light-hearted
2	nap	rush	snooze	siesta
3	dizzy	worn out	tired	run-down
4	tackle	wrestle with	fight	mull over
5	focus	unwind	relax	switch off
6	source	result	cause	reason
7	tense	angry	upset	vulnerable
8	stuck	confined	boosted	cramped

6.2 Collocations

Match up the word partners in Columns A and B as in the example.

	A			**B**
1	blood	C	A	nights
2	stomach	☐	B	effects
3	time	☐	C	pressure
4	stress	☐	D	breakdown
5	minor	☐	E	ulcers
6	balanced	☐	F	constraints
7	sleepless	☐	G	trouble
8	nervous	☐	H	ailments
9	heart	☐	I	meal
10	harmful	☐	J	overload

▶ Progress Test One

Units 1–4

1 Structural cloze

Complete the following newspaper article by writing one word in each of the numbered gaps.

Shining example or white elephant?

The new university hospital in Trenton, (1) .... the Health Minister Victoria Culley has described (2) .... a 'shining example' to hospitals all (3) .... the country, has been open now for over six months. (4) .... heard several less than complimentary comments about the organisation and efficiency of the place, I decided to see for myself. Before (5) .... there, I had arranged with my local GP to have some routine blood tests for anaemia.

In (6) .... of arriving early (7.15 a.m.!) I found that there were already long queues at the reception desks. (7) .... I was waiting, I looked around and have to admit that it is an impressive building; large and light with marble everywhere. Eventually my turn came and I presented my doctor's letters to the receptionist, (8) .... informed me that I was in the X-ray queue and I'd have to go to another queue and start again! I couldn't believe it and asked her if it (9) .... be possible to give me an appointment card anyway (10) .... making me queue up again. She informed me it was no (11) .... arguing with her and I should have read the sign, an almost invisible piece of card saying 'X-rays' just in front of her (12) .... very few people can have seen it. No (13) .... how hard I tried to persuade her, she wouldn't give me an appointment card for a blood test, so I started (14) .... again and finally got the card at 8.30! I then set off for the blood tests room, following the nice new signs (15) .... they suddenly stopped and I realised that I was in a part of the hospital that hasn't been finished yet! When I got to the door I saw a notice saying 'Back in 10 minutes'. I sat down and waited for 30 minutes before a doctor appeared and told me to come in without, of course, (16) .... for keeping me waiting. I asked him why I'd had to wait and he explained he'd had to help out in another ward which was (17) .... as a (18) .... of a flu epidemic among the doctors!

I got out of the hospital at 9.45 a.m. and breathed a sigh of relief. I'm now waiting for the results.

So, Mrs Culley, a far from rosy picture. Certainly the public should be (19) .... no illusions that things have changed for the better. Perhaps you should visit the hospital as an anonymous out-patient rather than a government minister if you really want to know what it's like, (20) .... , as I suspect, you don't actually care that much!

2 Phrasal verbs

Complete each of the following sentences with the appropriate form of a suitable phrasal verb. An example is provided.

Example: Dennis has given up his job so he can stay at home and *look after* the children.

1 Overeating and lack of exercise can .... serious health problems in later life.
2 Hi Brenda, Peter here. I'm just .... to say I've got two tickets for the concert on Saturday night. Fancy coming?
3 You should .... the pros and cons carefully before buying a second-hand car.
4 Now, don't .... us .... We're counting on you to cook something really special for the party this Saturday.
5 The group .... the concert with their greatest hits. So everyone went home happy.

3 Error correction

In most of the lines of the following text, there is one unnecessary word. It is either grammatically incorrect or does not fit in with the sense of the text. For each numbered line 1–16, find this word and write it in the space to the right of the text. Some lines are correct. Indicate these lines with a tick (✓) in the space. The exercise begins with two examples (0).

Hibernation syndrome

I don't know about you, but come to the winter months, my body
seems to require more sleep than in summer and I'm definitely at
my happiest when I'm being curled up in a hedgehog-style ball.
'Wanting to sleep more in winter is not natural and nothing to
worry about, unless you are sleeping for more than 12 hours a
day,' says sleep expert Dr James B. Maas. The reason for we feel
drowsy has as much to do with our biochemistry as it does so with
wanting to sniggle up like a couch potato indoors. 'It's all to do
with melatonin,' explains Dr Maas, 'a hormone with which is
secreted by the brain's pineal gland in response to darkness.'
They may feel more sleepy, but as many people find getting to
sleep in winter is a problem. It's hardly surprising. When lounging
around indoors drinking mugs of warming up coffee and snacking
on chocolate bars doesn't always prepare you for a good
night's rest. If you do have trouble nodding off, Deepak Chopra
has this tip: 'Try a soothing mix of the sweet and sour
essential oils, such as orange, geranium and clove are mixed with
almond oil and rubbed it on to your forehead just before bedtime.'

0 *to*
0 ✓
1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....
11 ....
12 ....
13 ....
14 ....
15 ....
16 ....

4 Word formation

Read the texts below. Use the words in the box to form one word that fits in the numbered space in the texts. The exercise begins with an example.

All at sea

Just after sunrise, Jack looked out of the porthole again. If anything, the sea was looking even (0) choppier... than it had been the night before. The wind had (1) .... and was now accompanied by (2) .... rain. Jack's heart sank. He felt (3) .... after yet another (4) .... night spent tying things down and praying the yacht wouldn't sink under the relentless battering of the wind and the waves. With the radio broken, he had no chance of signalling for help and all he had for company was mile upon (5) .... mile of mountainous seas between him and the (6) .... of port. He realised he was in a (7) .... situation.

0 CHOPPY
1 INTENSE
2 TORRENT
3 DREAD
4 SLEEP
5 END
6 SAFE
7 DESPAIR

Homeopathy

Our army of (8) .... and underpaid family doctors are daily disheartened to see the same people returning with the same problems. They know only too well that thousands of people suffer from (9) .... for which conventional treatment proves (10) .... , no matter how many expensive or painful tests they are forced to (11) .... However, all is not lost. Alternative medicine and, (12) .... , homeopathy is gaining (13) .... as a valid form of treatment even though it remains hard to prove (14) .... just how it works! Sceptics regard it as a fairly (15) .... form of hocus-pocus with active ingredients so diluted they wouldn't hurt a fly. But with so many devotees, it seems hard to ignore its potential any longer.

8 WORK
9 AIL
10 EFFECT
11 GO
12 PARTICULAR
13 RECOGNISE
14 SCIENCE
15 HARM

5 Discourse cloze

For questions 1–6, read through the following text and then choose from the list A–J the best phrase or sentence to fill each of the spaces. Write one letter (A–J) in the correct space. Some of the answers do not fit at all. The exercise begins with an example (0).

So how was your inbox this morning? Overflowing at the seams? Full of messages from people you don't know, subjects you don't care about, and (0) ..J.. , the odd gem of information which could transform your life (1) .... ?

Welcome to the club: e-mail is both business blessing and commercial curse. You can't do without it, yet you still can't face the idea of wading through every one of those tedious messages that come through the digital door every day. Perhaps (2) .... , then it's time to move on to the fun parts of the magazine because I have momentous news for you: the e-mail flood may be bad today, but tomorrow (3) ..... Not only are you going to get more of the stuff, the stuff itself is going to explode too – into audio and graphics, video and customer response forms. And (4) .... , you're going to lose a key business edge along the way.

In the US, (5) .... for large corporations that deal with employees, customers and suppliers by e-mail to dispatch a staggering 800,000 messages per day (yes, you did read that correctly). Small wonder that one boss of a large software company decided to close down his network e-mail system for part of each day, (6) .... he thought people were too busy e-mailing and not spending enough time communicating.

A if all this sounds way too familiar
B it is not unknown
C unless you refuse to use it
D precisely because
E if you try to ignore it
F it's going to be ten times worse
G despite the fact that
H if only you could find it
I somewhere in among the dross

5 ▶ Globe Trotting

1 Cohesive devices

▶ Language Focus, SB page 65

Correct any illogical linking devices in the following sentences. The first one is shown as an example.

Although
1 ~~Because~~ he'd never tried it before he was very good at it.
2 Don't forget to phone us finally you get there.
3 Despite being an accomplished musician, Freda is also a first-rate painter.
4 As well as the bad weather, the race meeting has been cancelled.
5 I hope to get some work done while the holidays.
6 So that you're always borrowing a pen, I've decided to buy you one.
7 Cars are expensive to maintain, whereas bicycles cost very little.
8 I put the vases on top of the piano since they wouldn't get broken.
9 While a little sunshine can be good for you, too much can be very harmful.
10 The job is a little tedious, but however it offers lots of fringe benefits.
11 Credit may be arranged so as to spread payment over twelve months.
12 Tony has decided to take a year off owing to travel around the world.

2 Grammar

▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 70

2.1 Past simple vs past continuous

In the following sentences put the verbs in brackets in either the past simple or past continuous tense. Put any other words in the brackets in the correct place. Look at the example provided.

1 While the teacher *was explaining* (explain) the sum on the blackboard, the children *were throwing* (throw) paper aeroplanes around the classroom.
2 Eve .... (live) in Athens when she .... (meet) the man who was to become her husband.
3 .... you .... (not work) at McIlroy's when they .... (have) that terrible fire?
4 As it .... (get) foggier it .... (become) almost impossible to steer the boat along the narrow canal.
5 I .... (hear) a strange noise just as I .... (go) to sleep.
6 When the fire alarm .... (go) off, we .... (leave) the building as quickly as possible.
7 At the place where we .... (live) before, our neighbours .... (always/have) violent arguments late at night.
8 I .... (hope) you'd come round for tea one afternoon next week.
9 Fiona .... (live) in New York when her first novel .... (publish).
10 On looking out of the window, Dick .... (see) it was another dreary day. The wind .... (blow) hard and big black clouds .... (gather) on the horizon.
11 While the others .... (lie) on the beach, poor old Gary .... (work) in the office as usual.
12 When the phone .... (ring), she .... (pick) it up and .... (put) it down again!
13 I .... (never/understand) why you .... (always/get) to school late on Monday mornings.
14 Beverly .... (work) in a fast-food restaurant for a few months before she .... (go) to college.
15 When I .... (be) a lad, we .... (always/go) to Heysham for our summer holidays. I .... (really/love) the place even though it .... (often/rain).

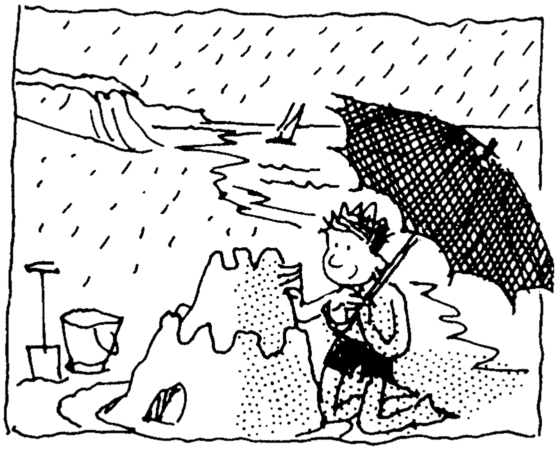

2.2 Past perfect simple and continuous

In the following passage fill in the spaces with an appropriate form of the past perfect simple, past perfect continuous, past simple or past continuous of the verb in brackets. The first one has been done for you.

Frogs in my car

I (1) *had been waiting* (wait) for over an hour when Barry finally (2) .... (turn up) on the tractor. He (3) .... (explain) he (4) .... (hold up) by a fallen tree on the road. I (5) .... (not find) this hard to believe as a gale force wind (6) .... (blow) for the past 5 hours accompanied by torrential rain. The reason why I (7) .... (call) Barry was that my car (8) .... (lie) on its side in a ditch. I (9) .... (drive) along very slowly in the terrible weather when suddenly a large dog (10) .... (appear) in front of me. I (11) .... (brake) to avoid hitting it and the car (12) .... (skid) out of control on the water and mud on the road and into the ditch. I (13) .... (manage) to get out through the window. The problem now was that the car (14) .... (fill up) with water and mud! Within seconds Barry, who (15) .... (wear) enormous rubber boots, (16) .... (tie) a rope to the front bumper of the car and (17) .... (pull) it out with the tractor. After a few minutes the car was the right way up and back on the road again. We (18) .... (open) the door and out (19) .... (jump) two big frogs who (20) .... (swim) in through the open window!

3 Phrasal verbs

3.1 Phrasal verbs with *up*

Substitute the underlined words in the following sentences with a phrasal verb with *up*. The first one is shown as an example.

1 The TV's rather quiet, can't you increase its volume/*turn it up?*
2 I'd like to improve/...................... my Spanish before going on holiday to Valencia.
3 Come on, finish your drink/...................... and we'll go for a walk along the river.
4 What's the matter, Rupert? Can't you fasten/...................... your seatbelt for yourself?
5 In my grandparents' day it was unusual for married couples to separate/...................... .
6 The police eventually managed to bring together/...................... all the criminals who had taken part in the bank robbery.
7 Quite honestly, Mr Mitty, I think you've invented/...................... the whole story.
8 Children often don't realise how cruel it is to unite/...................... against someone who is different from them.
9 If you don't understand a word, try and guess what it means before you find its meaning/...................... in a dictionary.
10 Can't we go a little faster/...................... a bit or we'll never get there on time?

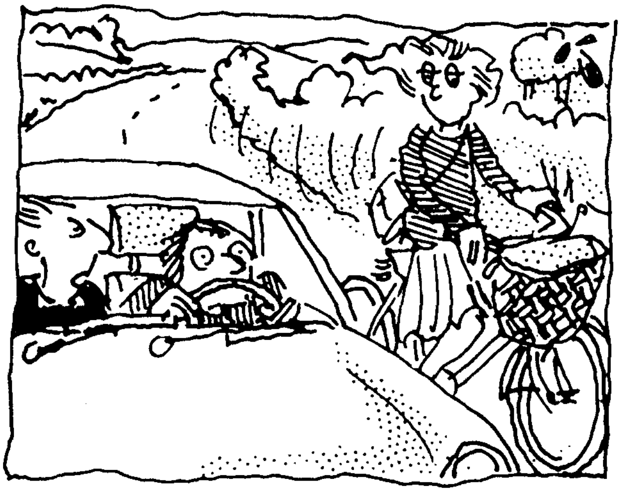

3.2 In other words

In the following story replace the words in brackets with an appropriate phrasal verb taken from the box below. See the example.

pull up
look on to
build up
~~look out for~~
drop off to
start up
pull off
stub out
jump out of
shoot off
go through with
rip off
pull over
pull out
take aback

The hold-up

The hold-up had started going wrong. Clyde, who was supposed to be (1) *looking out for* (waiting to see) the security van from a flat which (2) .... (gave a view of) the main street, had (3) .... (gone to) sleep due to the fact that he had been drinking double brandies all morning to (4) .... (increase) his courage.

So Bugsy, Danny and Studs were completely (5) .... (amazed) when the security van (6) .... (stopped) outside the bank without a word of warning from Clyde. Bugsy (7) .... (extinguished) his cigarette. 'We've gotta (8) .... it (not leave unfinished) now – it's too late to (9) .... (abandon a difficult plan)!' Studs (10) .... (put in motion) the getaway car and (11) .... (moved) to a spot just past the bank. Bugsy and Danny (12) .... (quickly left) the car and (13) .... (ran) towards the bank. Studs suddenly realised just how shaky he felt after the recent events and got out of the car for a breath of fresh air.

A few minutes later Bugsy and Danny came running back from the bank shouting to the still dazed Studs that they had (14) .... it .... (succeeded in a difficult plan). Studs, however, didn't seem too interested and stood glued to the spot where he had left the car.

'Good God! Is nothing sacred these days? Some crook's just (15) .... the car .... (stolen)!'

3.3 Three-word phrasal verbs ▶ Study Box, SB page 72

Complete the following sentences with three-word phrasal verbs. An example is provided in number one.

1 We still haven't sold the house because the buyers went *back on* their word and pulled out of the deal.
2 As there was no official at the gate, Diana got .... not buying an entrance ticket.
3 Unfortunately, the new restaurant didn't really live .... our expectations.
4 How much longer have we got to put .... these hooligans before the police take some action?
5 I look .... meeting you at the congress next month.
6 I gave .... waiting for the landlord to repair the roof and paid for the work to be done myself.
7 Someone broke into the shop last night and made .... some videos and a TV set.
8 We spent over an hour at the airport looking .... Vera's cousin but, somehow, we missed him!
9 Although they are from very different backgrounds, they get .... each other extremely well.
10 I'm sorry I haven't got .... fixing your window yet. I'll do it tomorrow.

STUDY TIP Phrasal verbs

▶ A good way to record and remember phrasal verbs is to group them according to particle (*up, down, in, out, on, off,* etc) rather than verb (*get, make, run,* etc):

e.g. turn / switch / keep ON   keep / put / catch UP WITH

Remember that particles often have fixed meanings such as fastening and restriction, approach etc:
e.g. wrap up, zip up, tie up, make for, head for

4 Reference links

▶ Study Box, SB page 75

Match sentences 1–9 with A–H. Use the reference links in the box below to complete A–H. Look at the example given.

such which ~~the aforementioned~~ that
this the above the latter another

1 Frank and Nigel Fish had been seen in the area two or three days before the robbery took place. *D*
2 The national press falls into two main camps, the broadsheets and the tabloids.
3 Occasionally the child does not want to be re-united with the parents.
4 Not recommended for people with angina, diabetes, migraine or vertigo.
5 There has been a family feud going on for about ten years.
6 Hamford seems to be more and more polluted – the city centre is just appalling with all those buses belching out exhaust fumes,
7 One way of treating a headache is to take some pain killers, like aspirins.
8 Didn't you realise Andrew is only partially sighted?

A In .... cases it is extremely hard to find a solution.
B .... is to try relaxation techniques or, better still, massage.
C .... is why we've decided to move out to the countryside.
D Not only that but the style of the crime is typical of *the aforementioned* brothers.
E Oh, ... explains why it's Barbara who always drives the car!
F As you can imagine, ... makes birthdays and Christmas parties rather tense affairs!
G .... tend to concentrate on the more sensational or scandalous aspects of the news.
H Please consult your GP if you suffer from any of ....

5 Word stress – Air travel

Use a dictionary to help you mark the stress patterns in the underlined words below. Draw one circle for each syllable and show the stressed syllables with large circles. Be careful to identify the grammatical function in each case. See the example provided.

O o
1 Oh no, I've left my handbag at the check-in desk.
2 The hostess on the plane gave us some sweets to suck before take-off.
3 Would late passengers for flight BY577 please check in immediately.
4 Lavatories on planes are usually rather small.
5 The bus for the city centre leaves from outside the terminal building.
6 Please have your boarding card ready.
7 I'm not sure if I'll be leaving today as I've got a standby ticket.
8 Sorry for the delay, we hope to take off in 5 minutes.

STUDY TIP Word stress

▶ Use bubbles not accents to show the correct stress on words you have difficulty with. Bubbles show not only the main stress but also the number of syllables which are actually pronounced.

O o oO o o O o o
e.g. comfortable, interesting, temperature

6 Writing – Formal letter

Look at the advertisement opposite, which appeared in *The Independent*, and the letter written in response to it. The letter contains 14 mistakes. Find and correct them as in the two examples provided.

COUNTRY COTTAGE HOLIDAYS

Give yourself a break in one of our beautifully restored country cottages with all mod cons – sleeping from 4 to 10 people. Prices from £100 per week.

Contact: Randolf Jefferies
20 The Green,
Hinton,
Devon HN3 2CC.

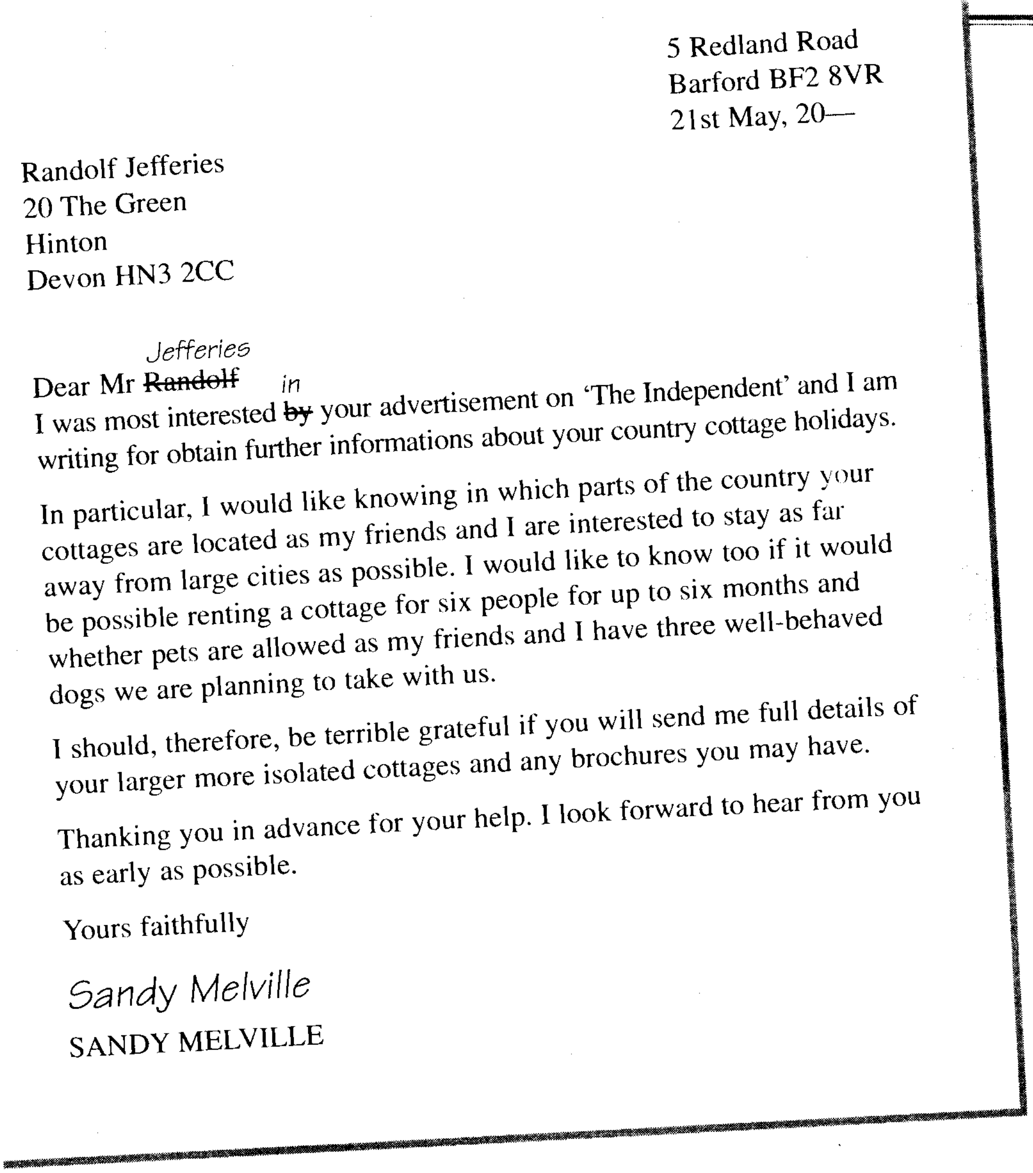

5 Redland Road
Barford BF2 8VR
21st May, 20—

Randolf Jefferies
20 The Green
Hinton
Devon HN3 2CC

Dear Mr ~~Randolf~~ Jefferies

I was most interested ~~by~~ in your advertisement on 'The Independent' and I am writing for obtain further informations about your country cottage holidays.

In particular, I would like knowing in which parts of the country your cottages are located as my friends and I are interested to stay as far away from large cities as possible. I would like to know too if it would be possible renting a cottage for six people for up to six months and whether pets are allowed as my friends and I have three well-behaved dogs we are planning to take with us.

I should, therefore, be terrible grateful if you will send me full details of your larger more isolated cottages and any brochures you may have.

Thanking you in advance for your help. I look forward to hear from you as early as possible.

Yours faithfully

Sandy Melville

SANDY MELVILLE

7 Editing for phrasal verbs

In the following passage most (but not all) of the phrasal verbs have either the wrong verb or wrong particle. If a correction is required, write it in the space provided. Look at the example (0).

Although £10 seemed a lot for a guided walking tour, I'd charged up
like most of the others staying at the hotel. The tour was supposed
to start at 9 o'clock, so we were getting a little angry and were
just about to give in and go and have a cup of coffee together
when the guide finally turned out at reception 30 minutes late.
She said she had left home on time but had had to go back
as she'd forgotten the tour maps – it came out to be her first
day on the job! First of all, she sorted off which of us already had
maps and which didn't. We eventually set off more than an hour
behind schedule and started making to the old town. Although
there were only about ten of us, I found it hard to hear her
commentary as she seemed to have singled out the three or
four people closest to her to talk to. As we were walking along
I asked her if we could go and see a beautiful old church, but
she replied rather abruptly that we had to stick in the itinerary.
After that, I decided I'd better write down my £10 and rely on
my own map and intelligence for a more personal tour of the city.

0 *paid*
1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....
11 ....
12 ....
13 ....
14 ....
15 ....
16 ....

8 Wordcheck – Collocations

Complete the following sentences with suitable word combinations. See the example.

1 I've never done it before but I'll give it a *try*.
2 When I asked him where room C10 was, he just .... his shoulders and told me to ask someone else.
3 After the bank robbery, the thieves went into .... in an old barn for six months.
4 We advise all our clients to .... out travel insurance.
5 It's pretty quiet now but when the holiday season is under .... it's absolutely packed with people.
6 Ski instructors must .... fairly interesting lives, mustn't they?
7 I hope Bobby won't make himself the life and .... of the party tonight. It's so embarrassing!
8 The group's mission is to .... peace between nations and help different peoples understand each other better.
9 'Hold your .... boy! Speak when you're spoken to!', shouted the old man angrily.
10 As the inspection day approached, the manager .... us all under tremendous pressure to make sure everything was in order.

6 ▶ Language Matters

1 Relative clauses

▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 84

1.1 Relative pronouns

Where possible, remove the relative pronouns in the following sentences and make any other necessary changes. Look at the example given.

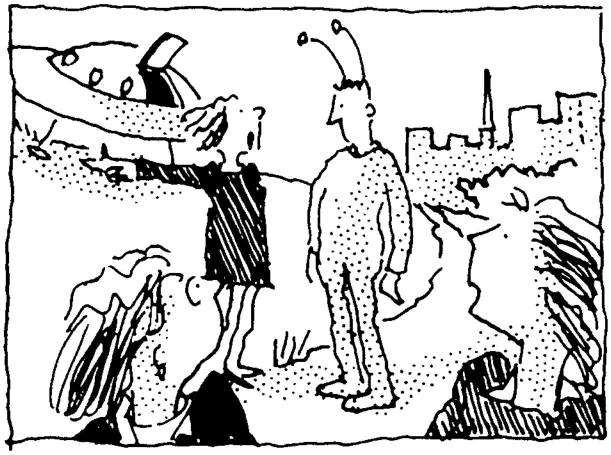

1 Who's that man ~~that~~ Lisa's talking to?
2 I'm calling about the advert that appeared in yesterday's 'Evening Echo'.
3 Isn't that the hotel where Greg and Sally had their wedding reception?
4 The gentleman with whom you spoke last time is no longer with the company.
5 That's the couple whose house was burgled last week.
6 The bulldog that attacked that little girl has been destroyed.
7 The reason why the accident happened has never been clarified.
8 Is this the picture to which you were referring?
9 She always chooses a moment to call when everyone's out of the office.
10 That's the car that we were thinking of buying.

1.2 Different endings

Each of the sentences below can end in several different ways. Choose the possible endings from the box below and add a suitable relative pronoun where necessary. The first one is shown as an example.

1 What's the name of that town
a *which was featured in that TV documentary last week?*
b ....?
c ....?
d ....?
2 Have you still got that book
a ....?
b ....?
c ....?
3 Wasn't it Elizabeth
a ....?
b ....?
c ....?
4 Which is the month
a ....?
b ....?
c ....?

you wanted to have off
author I can never remember the name of
lived in China until she was 16
had to be invented to make the year longer
mayor was arrested for corruption
was reviewed in *The Times* last week
the restaurant sacked for being rude to customers
~~was featured in that TV documentary last week~~
most people get married
I lent you last term
was almost completely destroyed during the war
Richard Burton was born
boyfriend wants to go and live in Italy

1.3 Reduced relative clauses

Decide which of the following sentences contain reduced relative clauses and which do not. Put a tick (✓) in the appropriate column as in the example.

Y N

1 The man called Max at the office and asked him to meet him later that day. ☐ ☑
2 The man called Max in the film was played by Patrick Swayze. ☐ ☐
3 Plums used to make me sick when I was a boy. ☐ ☐
4 The player hurt in the tackle had to be taken to hospital. ☐ ☐
5 Coffee made with this new percolator tastes better than ever! ☐ ☐
6 The shark attacked in the shallows, causing panic among the bathers. ☐ ☐
7 The player hurt his knee in the tackle but played on. ☐ ☐
8 Coffee made Brenda feel agitated so she gave up drinking it. ☐ ☐
9 The shark attacked in the shallows swam away losing a lot of blood. ☐ ☐
10 Plums used to make jam must be very ripe. ☐ ☐

1.4 Fill in the gaps

Complete the following sentences with a suitable reduced relative clause and any necessary prepositions. Each sentence must have a passive meaning. Look at the example given.

1 Children *born on* or before 1st September should have been vaccinated.
2 Any books .... to the library more than three days late will be subject to a fine.
3 Meat .... oil or butter contains much more cholesterol than meat which has been grilled.
4 Patients .... the new wonder drug showed no greater signs of recovery than those receiving traditional medicine.
5 Did you know that grapes .... to dry in the sun turn into raisins?
6 Tickets .... phone must be paid for within 24 hours.
7 The management declines all responsibility for property .... from cars .... this car park.
8 The skeleton .... the building site last month turned out to be over 2,000 years old.
9 Yes folks, it's true. Clothes .... new 'Spumo' won't lose their colour. We guarantee it!
10 Looking round a junk shop one day, Stanley came across a picture .... by Rembrandt.
11 Dogs .... Britain from another European country must spend three months in quarantine.
12 Baggage .... unattended may be destroyed.

2 *like, as* and *alike*

▶Study Box, SB page 85

Put *like, as* or *alike* in the appropriate places in the following sentences. One is shown as an example.

1 Several of the businessmen got a little rowdy and started behaving *like* complete idiots.
2 Just .... I suspected, my letter had been delivered to the wrong office.
3 'The Watkins brothers are really ...., aren't they?'
'Yes, just .... two peas in a pod.'
4 Nothing can go wrong providing you do exactly .... you're told.
5 The fundamental injustice of the law was that it did not treat all offenders ....
6 There's no need to talk .... that in front of the children!
7 .... they had feared, the company decided to make 200 workers redundant.
8 Cheryl must have been terrified. She came running out of the house .... a bat out of hell!

STUDY TIP *as* vs *like*

▶ A useful distinction between these two is:
as = in the capacity of
e.g. She works as a taxi driver.
He used his briefcase as a table to rest his notes on.
like = similar to
e.g. She works like a beaver.
He's got a briefcase like yours.

3 Comparison

▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 89

3.1 Comparatives and superlatives

Complete the following sentences with a suitable comparative or superlative form of the words in brackets. Look at the example given.

1 According to a computer, Spanish is (easy) *the easiest* foreign language to learn.
2 Dogs are intelligent but not (intelligent) .... chimpanzees.
3 They say it's (good) .... to have loved and lost than never to have loved at all.
4 Even (carefully) .... prepared plans can go wrong.
5 England isn't (mountainous country) .... Scotland.
6 Reykjavik is the world's (northern) .... capital city.
7 Your composition is full of mistakes because you didn't spend half (time) .... on it .... you should have!
8 Don't worry, you'll be OK with Gerry, he's (careful driver) .... you could wish to have.
9 In the Alto Adige region of Italy, German dialect is spoken much (frequently) .... Italian.
10 Sumo wrestlers must be (heavy) .... athletes in the world.

3.2 *as ... as*

Using a good monolingual dictionary, check which words in Column A go with the ones in Column B to form common comparative expressions with *as ... as (a) ...* Look at the example provided.

	A			B
1	pretty	G	A	a pancake
2	weak	☐	B	a bat
3	fresh	☐	C	a kitten
4	thin	☐	D	a bone
5	stubborn	☐	E	an eel
6	slippery	☐	F	a daisy
7	proud	☐	G	a picture
8	strong	☐	H	a mule
9	dry	☐	I	an ox
10	deaf	☐	J	a rake
11	flat	☐	K	a peacock
12	blind	☐	L	a post

3.3 Complete the sentences

Now complete the following sentences with the expressions you have made. The first one has been done for you.

1 Doesn't little Amy look nice in her new dress?
Oh yes, she's *as pretty as a picture.*
2 Alf is ...., he can't see much without his glasses.
3 Oh no! We'll have to change the tyre, it's ....
4 If we don't get some rain soon, we'll never grow anything in the garden, it's ....
5 I had a good night's sleep last night, so I'm .... this morning.
6 I wouldn't give Colin any of my money to invest, he's ....
7 Tim's been in bed all week with flu and he's ....
8 Freda's ...., once she makes up her mind she's going to do something, nothing you can say will stop her!
9 'My word! David's lost a lot of weight.'
'Yes. Do you think he's OK? He looks .... to me!'
10 'Mrs Copley's daughter has been offered a place at university.'
'Yes and she's .... She's already told half the town.'
11 Young Alan is really helpful on the farm. He's .... and he'll do anything you ask him to.
12 I'm afraid Grandad won't hear you unless you shout. He's ....!

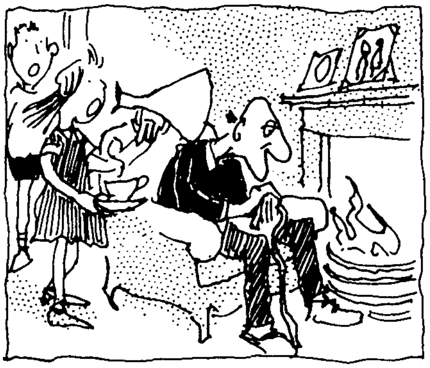

4 Degrees of comparison

Using the language in the boxes below, complete the comparisons between the two couples as in the example.

slightly
about
more/less/fewer
exactly
a great deal
nearly
twice
half
five times
over
much/far
as much as
considerably
as many as

	MARTIN	FIONA	RUPERT	RACHEL
Age	39	42	37	29
Height	1m 77cm	1m 68cm	1m 76cm	1m 65cm
Weight	96kg	48kg	75kg	59kg
Working day	9 hrs	5.5 hrs	6 hrs	3 hrs
Annual income	£42,000	£16,500	£32,000	£8,000
Exercise per week	1 hr	2 hrs	4 hrs	1.5 hrs

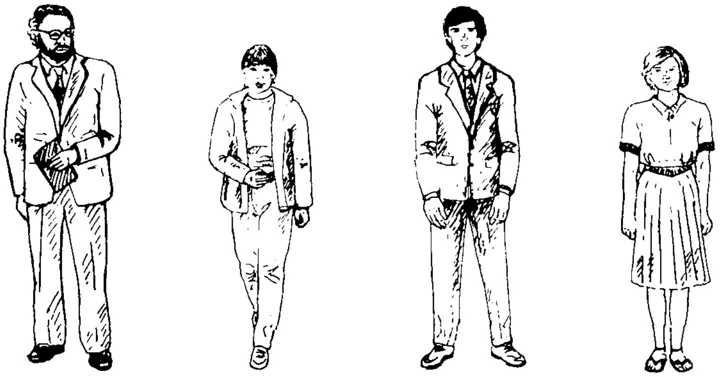

1 (AGE) Rachel *is considerably younger than* Fiona.
2 (AGE) Martin is .... Rupert.
3 (WEIGHT) Fiona weighs .... Martin.
4 (WEIGHT) Martin weighs .... Rupert.
5 (HEIGHT) Rupert is .... Martin.
6 (HEIGHT) Fiona is .... Rachel.
7 (WORK) Martin works .... Rachel.
8 (WORK) Fiona works .... Rupert.
9 (INCOME) Rachel earns .... Fiona.
10 (INCOME) Martin earns .... Rachel.
11 (EXERCISE) Rupert takes .... Martin.
12 (EXERCISE) Rachel takes .... Fiona.

5 Linking and logical devices – addition, concession, contrast

Complete the following sentences with suitable linking devices. An asterisk (*) indicates at least two possible answers. Look at the example.

1 Jenny speaks **both/not only* Russian *and/but also* excellent Chinese.
2 .... does Jenny speak Russian, ... excellent Chinese.
3 Jenny speaks Russian. *...................... , she speaks excellent Chinese.
4 *...................... speaking Russian, Jenny speaks excellent Chinese.
5 They looked at us *...................... we came from another planet!
6 *...................... the doctor told him to rest for a week, he was back at work after two days.
7 .... we'd caught the earlier train we wouldn't have got there on time. So, stop worrying!
8 I know she's a sensible girl and .... I can't help worrying about her.
9 They played golf all morning *...................... the torrential rain.
10 We thought it was going to be a great match. .... , it turned out to be rather dull.
11 They've got no chance of winning the game; .... , they're training every day.
12 Some people like boxing, *...................... others absolutely detest it.

STUDY TIP *even if* vs *even though*

▶ Remember that *even if* is used before statements that are hypothetical i.e. not fact:
e.g. Even if I had all the money in the world, I wouldn't buy that car.
We wouldn't have caught the plane even if we'd taken a taxi.
▶ *Even though*, on the other hand, is used before statements that are fact:
e.g. She's not happy with her job even though she's just had a pay rise and promotion.
He went to the cinema with his friends even though he'd already seen the film.

6 Spelling

6.2 Here is a quick checklist of the main areas of difficulty:

- silent letter combinations – *know, comb, wrong, castle,* etc.
- doubling consonants to maintain correct pronunciation – *taped* (past of *tape*) vs *tapped* (past of *tap*), *cuter* (from *cute*) vs *cutter* (from *cut*), etc.
- doubling consonant on stressed final syllable before a suffix:

  O o   O o o   o O   o O o
  differ   *differing*   *defer*   *deferring*
  O o o   O o o o   o O   o O o
  benefit   *benefited*   *admit*   *admitted*
- doubling final 'l' after no more than one vowel – *travel > travelled, control > controller,* vs *reveal > revealed*
- dropping final 'e' before suffixes starting with a vowel – *write > writing* (but *age > aging* or *ageing*), *create > creating, collapse > collapsible, collaborate > collaboration*
- final 'y' changes to 'i' only if preceded by a consonant and followed by a suffix not beginning with 'i' – *try > tried* vs *trying*
- negative prefixes before specific letters – *im + p (impolite), il + l (illogical), ir + r (irresponsible)*
- differences between GB and US English – *colour* vs *color, traveller* vs *traveler*
- individual oddities!

6.2 Now check the following sentences. Correct any spelling mistakes you find.

1 They stoped the car to ask the way.
2 The police are patroling this area more and more.
3 We are studing the fall of the Roman Empire at the moment.
4 It is debateable whether the death penalty is an effective deterrent.
5 I keep forgeting where I've left my keys.
6 I remember we stayed in a lovely guesthouse near the centre of town.
7 Jane seems much happyer now that she's living on her own.
8 Unfortunately, Frank panicked and crashed the car.
9 The college provides residential accomodation for all its students.
10 It's doutful whether they'll get beyond the semi-finals.

7 Emphasisers

Some of the emphasisers placed before the adjectives in the sentences below have been used incorrectly. Make any necessary corrections. Look at the example given.

extremely
1 The old castle is an ~~absolutely~~ attractive place to visit at sunset.
2 Oh, I'm awfully sorry, I didn't see you sitting there.
3 By the time we got home we were very exhausted and went straight to bed.
4 Jack was truly angry about not getting the promotion he wanted.
5 You said there was some petrol in the car but it was completely empty.
6 I wish I'd brought my umbrella. We're going to get extremely soaked in this rain.
7 We were totally happy to hear that you've passed all your exams.
8 The way Luisa can switch between three languages is very impressive.
9 Most people found the documentary deeply shocking.
10 I'll never forget that tremendously delicious meal we had on the last day of our holiday.

8 Review writing

For questions 1–15 read the film review below and then decide which word best fits in each space. The exercise begins with an example (0).

Having seen the (0) ..*trailer*.. on TV for this latest Sam Spadacci film, I knew I was in for something a little different! The main (1) .... of the film (2) .... with the fall and eventual rise of Frankie Longo, (3) .... by the new Hollywood superstar Larry Zardini. The (4) ...., which has some brilliant one-liners, was written by Spadacci's old associate, Matt Dusi.

Everything starts off fairly predictably – a young Italo-American kid, mixed up with the local Mafia – it seems to be the usual (5) .... of Spadacci's own roots. But then, after going in and out of jail for a couple of years, Frankie 'gets cuisine' and suddenly discovers he's a marvellous cook! Some (6) .... are a little slow-moving as we (7) .... on Frank's culinary prowess – did we really need to spend five minutes of the film watching Frank's perfect soufflé rising in the oven?

Soon Frankie is cooking for the rich and famous, including the Mafia big cheese Joe d'Ancona – a wonderfully over the top (8) .... by veteran Bruno Marmo – and eventually the President! Inevitably, in (9) .... of his efforts to go straight, Frankie is caught up in a secret (10) .... to assassinate the President. Without giving too much away, Frankie apparently goes along with the Mafia while really sabotaging things. There are some crazy (11) ...., including gangsters exploding out of a giant birthday cake! The (12) .... maintains the almost slapstick feel with a manic tempo at times.

(13) .... some of the dialogue is a little laboured at times this is, all in (14) ...., a thoroughly entertaining bit of fun, which I (15) .... whole-heartedly.

0	A commercial	B episode	C trailer	D broadcast
1	A storyline	B narrative	C contents	D commentary
2	A concerns	B shows	C describes	D deals
3	A designed	B set	C played	D cast
4	A chapter	B script	C speech	D story
5	A study	B survey	C test	D revision
6	A sections	B chapters	C acts	D scenes
7	A analyse	B focus	C devote	D examine
8	A character	B part	C performance	D personality
9	A spite	B account	C despite	D view
10	A plot	B design	C agreement	D intention
11	A stages	B stunts	C actions	D productions
12	A beat	B singing	C record	D soundtrack
13	A While	B Except	C Although	D Whereas
14	A balance	B all	C conclusion	D end
15	A offer	B suggest	C recommend	D represent

7 ▶ The Ages of Man

1 Grammar

1.1 *used to …* vs *be/get used to …* ▶ Study Box, SB page 102

Match the first half of each short dialogue (1–10) with its corresponding second half (A–J) and then complete them with a suitable form of *used to …* or *be/get used to …* . The exercise starts with an example.

1 Oh dear. I've never driven such a powerful car before. [E]
2 Don't you play tennis? ☐
3 It must be really hard to get up at five every morning. ☐
4 I hear Roger was really shocked when he first started work for the murder squad. ☐
5 Valeria didn't really know what to do when she went to live on her own. ☐
6 I thought you didn't like opera. ☐
7 I don't think I'll ever understand this new computer program! ☐
8 Why did you give up your job just after the new boss took over? ☐
9 Have you noticed how many people drink bottled mineral water these days? ☐
10 Did Gerry enjoy his time in the army? ☐

A Well, there's no rush. Give yourself a month .... it.
B Oh, not really. I .... it by now.
C I know. She .... waited on hand, foot and finger by her mum.
D Not really. He never could .... orders!
E Don't worry, you'll soon *get used to* it.
F Strange, isn't it? No-one ever .... when I was a lad.
G Well, I .... but I really enjoy it now.
H I just .... under so much pressure.
I Oh, I .... but I haven't practised for ages.
J Yes, but he .... the job in the end.

1.2 Past simple or present perfect? ▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 102

Using the verbs and any other words given in brackets, complete the following sentences with the most suitable form of either the past simple or the present perfect. An example is given to help you.

1 Maria *saw* (see) the doctor yesterday about that rash she *has had* (have) for ages now.
2 'How long .... you .... (live) in Spain?'
'Two years altogether, before moving to Italy.'
3 OK. Who .... (take) my best pen? It .... (be) on my desk thirty seconds ago.
4 In the Middle Ages people .... (not live) so long as they do now.
5 Oh dear, what .... (happen) to you? You look as though you .... (see) a ghost!
6 Who .... (write) William Tell? I can never remember if it .... (be) Mozart or Rossini.
7 Where .... you .... (buy) those trousers? They're fantastic!
8 It's definitely our favourite film, we .... (see) it six times.
9 .... you ever .... (steal) apples when you .... (be) a kid?
10 Thomas .... (be) late for every lesson so far.
11 I hear you .... (go) to St Petersburg on your honeymoon. What .... you .... (think) of the place?
12 Hello Julia. When .... you .... (get) here?
13 Ah, madam. I believe you .... (witness) the accident. Could you tell me exactly what .... (happen)?
14 Hugo .... (break) his leg so he can't go skiing next month.
15 Ella .... (smoke) forty cigarettes a day for over thirty years. Then she .... (give up) overnight and .... (not touch) one since!

1.3 Present perfect simple and continuous ▶Focus on Grammar, SB page 102

In the following sentences decide whether to use the present perfect simple, the present perfect continuous or the past simple tense of the verbs in brackets and fill in any other missing words as in the example.

1 How long *have* you *been running* (run) the hotel *for* now?
2 When .... you .... (see) the doctor? I .... (not see) him yet.
3 I .... (learn) Japanese .... about six months now. It's really interesting.
4 How long .... you .... (live) in Japan before coming back to England?
5 .... Rob .... (finish) his novel? Oh yes. It .... just .... (be) published.
6 They .... (live) in that same little house .... the day they .... (get) married 20 years ago. I don't think they'll move now!
7 What a fantastic old car! How long .... you .... (have) it?
8 .... you .... (suffer) from these pains in your chest .... a long time?
9 I see they still .... (not repair) that big hole in the road.
10 The team .... (not win) a single match so far this season.
11 Don't we need some groceries? Don't worry, I .... (take) care of that. I .... (do) the shopping on the way home.
12 .... Maisy .... (phone) yet? Yes, about 10 minutes ago. She .... (say) she can't make it tonight.
13 How many of those chocolates .... you .... (eat) so far?
14 We .... (use) my father's garage as a storeroom for our furniture .... the fire. We still .... (not find) anywhere permanent to live.
15 Julie .... (eat) nothing but 'paella' .... her trip to Spain.

1.4 Stative vs dynamic verbs ▶Focus on Grammar, SB page 103

Complete the gaps in the dialogue below using the correct form of the verbs and any other words given in the brackets. See the example.

'Why (1) *are you smelling* (you smell) that cheese, Ted?'
'I (2) .... (think) about eating it, of course.'
'Well, I (3) .... (not think) that's a very good idea. It (4) .... (look) a bit strange and it (5) .... (definitely smell) off!'
'Maybe, but I bet it (6) .... (taste) great.'
'Well, I (7) .... (realise) it's up to you but don't say I didn't warn you.'

(Half an hour later)
'Oooh Donald, I (8) .... (not feel) too well.'
'Well, to be honest, that (9) .... (not surprise) me one little bit. You (10) .... (seem) almost determined to make yourself ill at times. I (11) .... (remember) the time with those oysters!'
'OK, OK. Listen, I (12) .... (need) a rest but I (13) .... (see) Nancy in an hour ...'
'And I (14) .... (suppose) you'd like me to put her off.'
'Thanks Dougal, and I (15) .... (promise) I'll listen to you in the future.'

2 Dictionary skills

In all of the following exercises you should use a good monolingual dictionary to help you find the answers.

2.1 Connotation

In the following sentences, decide on the different meanings of the underlined words and if they are being used to give a positive, negative or neutral connotation.

1 Phil has got incredibly hairy forearms, hasn't he?
2 It was rather hairy coming down the mountain road with no lights on the car.
3 Anna's really funny, she just makes me laugh and laugh.
4 I thought there was something a bit funny about his explanation of the accident.
5 In spite of the forecast, it turned out to be a fine day.
6 As a restorer of old paintings, she must have an eye for fine detail.

2.2 Parts of speech

Decide the grammatical function of each of the underlined words.

7 The poor are always with us.
8 Sorry, I'm afraid I explained that rather poorly.
9 Many students are quite poor.
10 Jack's feeling rather poorly so he's staying at home today.

2.3 Metaphors and Idioms

Which of the following words can come after the word *hard* and what do they mean? (four do not exist)

11 headed
12 luck
13 up
14 brained
15 nut
16 eared
17 sleeper
18 drink
19 cash
20 hearted

2.4 Collocation

Match the verbs in Column A with the correct parts of the body in Column B and try doing the actions! With five of the verbs it is not really necessary to add the part of the body – which are they?

	A		**B**
21	wink	A	your lips
22	snap	B	your head
23	nod	C	your eyelashes
24	shrug	D	your thumbs
25	flutter	E	your nose
26	twiddle	F	your hands
27	pick	G	your eye
28	clench	H	your shoulders
29	pout	I	your fingers
30	clap	J	your fist

2.5 Word formation (derivations)

Use the correct form of the word *use* in each sentence.

31 Haven't you got another dictionary? This one's absolutely .... !
32 The computer disks got wet so they were no longer ....
33 Before buying a .... car, it's a good idea to have it checked by a mechanic.

34 I think your time could be more .... spent than reading comics all day.
35 .... of the photocopier are kindly requested to report any breakdowns to the secretary.

2.6 Pronunciation and stress

For words 36 to 40 cross out the silent letters. For 41 to 45, draw bubbles to show the correct stress, e.g. c$\overset{\circ}{o}$rr$\overset{O}{e}$ct.

36 buoy
37 wrestling
38 knick-knack
39 comb
40 sword
41 guitar
42 photographer
43 difficulty
44 calculator
45 original

3 Reported speech

Focus on Grammar, SB page 105

Put the following sentences into reported speech. Pay particular attention to the type of reporting verb (avoid *said*). The first one has been done for you.

1 'That's correct. The new ringroad will be built through the wood.'
The government official confirmed that the new ringroad would be built through the wood.

2 'Don't worry. I'll repair the back door this weekend'.
Colin ....

3 'Alright, it's true. It was me who scratched the car.'
Karen ....

4 'If you don't give me £5,000, I'm going to tell the police all about it.'
Maurice ....

5 'You must come to Dave's party with me on Saturday.'
Hilary ....

6 'Oh, by the way, Terry's house is still for sale.'
Silvia ....

7 'Honest to God, I've never seen this money before in my life.'
Mr Penfold ....

8 'Don't go walking in the fog, it can be very dangerous.'
The mountain guide ....

9 'Oh, just a minute, was it Leonardo or Michelangelo who painted the Mona Lisa?'
He couldn't ....

10 'Well, I'd like you all to know Nina and I are getting married next year.'
Julian ....

11 'Oh, I'm easily the best tennis player at the college.'
Jemima ....

12 'Would you mind repeating the question, Dr McPherson?'
Dr Bianchi ....

13 'The service in this restaurant is incredibly slow.'
George ....

14 'I think it might be better to wait until the manager gets here.'
The shop assistant ....

15 'Well, Jack, if I were you, I'd eat less and take more exercise.'
The doctor ....

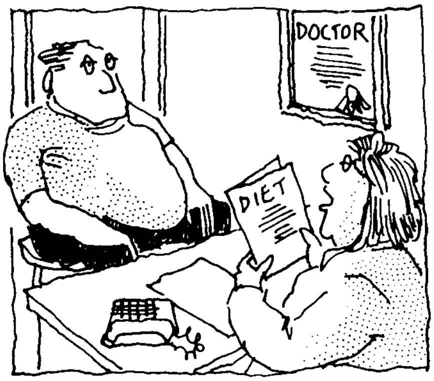

STUDY TIP Reported speech

When reporting what someone said it is not always necessary to change the tense of what was said if it is still true:
e.g. 'Don't worry, I'm coming next week,' said Gus.
Someone reporting this shortly afterwards would say:
Gus assured us he's coming next week.

4 Expressions with *make*

Make an appropriate question using the verb *make* to produce each of the following answers. Look at the example given.

1 Q: How much does he *make*?
A: About $100,000 a year. He's just been promoted again.

2 Q: What .... ?
A: Let's see … . Just gone three.

3 Q: Do you reckon George .... a good boss?
A: Not really. He's too arrogant.

4 Q: So, why can't you .... this evening?
A: Because I've got to go to a college meeting at eight.

5 Q: What .... ?
A: Um … 138. Is that right?

6 Q: Do you think we .... ?
A: I'm not sure. But we mustn't give up.

5 Discourse cloze

Read through the following text and choose from the list A–J the best phrase to fit each space. Some of the suggested answers do not fit at all. The exercise begins with an example (0).

The Roots of Discipline

Humour is strong and flexible. Tragedy is brittle. If we change all our children's misdeeds into tragedy, (0) J . If all their mistakes are exposed and judged, as before the High Court, they will swiftly feel themselves to be victims of an unyielding system. Soon they feel that not only what they did was bad, (1) .... .

But if a child can make mistakes in safety, (2) .... , or through laughter, his trust and feeling of parental acceptance is not destroyed. The lesson will, however, still be learned. Humour defuses a situation; (3) .... .

Quite simply, the best way to convey discipline to our children is to discipline ourselves. We are the signposts to our children's futures, (4) .... .

It makes sense to take responsibility for our own actions, and respect and accept our own feelings (5) .... . We are then less likely to hide behind a liberal or an authoritarian mask that is unable to reflect the full range of our feelings.

A and they are always looking to us to see where to go
B if we wish to develop as human beings
C but that they are intrinsically bad, too
D as we travel through life together
E but also that their parents are totally out of control
F learn through the warmth of a cuddle
G seriousness augments it
H which is, of course, its greatest strength
I before we discipline the child
J they soon learn the unhappiness of existence

6 Wordcheck – Age

Fill in the missing words in the grid below to reveal another hidden word associated with age. Look at the example given.

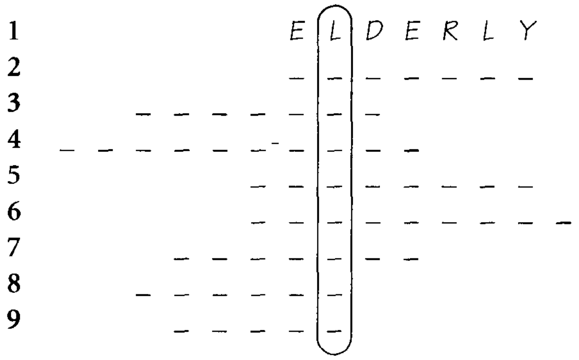

1 Word used to describe old people.
2 Young child who is learning or has just learned to walk.
3 Physical strength to do something over long periods of time.
4 No longer young but not yet old.
5 Someone aged between 13 and 19.
6 If you are aged between 70 and 79 you are in your ....
7 A child with special gifts or great ability.
8 A very young child.
9 If you are 32, you are in your .... thirties.

8 ▶ Personally Speaking

1 Compound adjectives

Word formation, SB page 120

Complete the following sentences with compound adjectives to describe character. The first letters are given to help you. See the example provided.

1 My God! You're so *empty-headed*. How could you leave a broken bottle in the children's play area?
2 Fanny's become really b................-h................ since she won the tennis tournament!
3 You needn't worry about shocking my parents, they're very b................-m................ .
4 Emma is terribly t................-s................ ; she takes offence at the most innocent remarks.
5 Don't bother asking Lisa for a loan, she's really t................-f................ .
6 If you want some sensible suggestions, go and ask Julia – she's pretty l................-h................ .
7 Be careful how you treat him, he's so s................-t................ he's likely to blow up at any moment!

2 *The ... the ...* – comparatives

▶ Study Box, SB page 113

Complete the following sentences with a suitable comparative form. The first one is shown as an example.

DRIED CHILLIES

1 The *hotter* (hot) the curry, the *better* (good) she likes it!
2 The .... (interesting) the book, the .... (likely) I am to try and finish it in one evening!
3 The .... (easy) a job is to do, the .... (highly) paid are the people who do it.
4 The .... (wine) he drank, the .... (clearly) he spoke.
5 The .... (close) it got to the time of the interview, the .... she became.
6 The .... (humid) it became, the .... (bad) they felt.
7 The .... (far) we climbed up the mountain, the .... the clouds became.
8 .... , the more determined I am to succeed.
9 The less students contribute in class, ...
10 .... , the less fluently one speaks a foreign language.

3 Phrasal verbs

▶Focus on Vocabulary, SB page 113

Complete the following sentences with a suitable phrasal verb from the box below. Remember to use the correct tense or grammatical structure. The first one has been done for you.

face up to
fall back on
steer away from
~~pick out~~
tick off
fight out
tune in
put down
work out
eke out

1 Don't forget to *tune in* tomorrow at 8.15 to find out who killed Lady Redfern in the last episode of our Radio Murder Mystery series.
2 When packing, I always make a checklist so I can .... things .... as I put them in the suitcase.
3 I think it would be best if you .... your complaints in a letter addressed to the manager.
4 They'll eventually have to .... the fact that the company is going to be closed down.
5 It is said that Isaac Newton .... the law of gravity after he'd been hit on the head by an apple!
6 I try and .... talking about politics with Steven but he always gets back to it sooner or later.
7 When I was a student, I .... what little money I had by buying only second-hand clothes.
8 There's only one place left and I'm not deciding who should have it. You'll have to .... it .... amongst yourselves.

9 When we both lost our jobs at the same time, it was lucky we had our savings to ....
....

10 The old lady had no trouble in ....
.... the thief at the identity parade.

4 Grammar

▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 118

4.1 The Passive

Match up the beginning of each sentence in Column A with its ending in Column B and add a suitable passive verb form in the space provided. The first one is shown as an example.

A

1 In the past, small amounts of cocaine used *to be used.* G
2 Salt .... on roads. ☐
3 Central heating .... ☐
4 In the future, many of today's hereditary diseases .... ☐
5 Not so long ago, teeth .... ☐
6 In my grandfather's time, a driving licence .... ☐
7 Undeveloped film .... ☐
8 150 years ago, Gaelic .... ☐
9 'Graded readers' are books in which the language .... ☐
10 Hand gestures .... ☐
11 The world's tropical rainforests .... ☐
12 In India, cows .... ☐

B

A to mean different things in different countries.
B to direct sunlight
C much more widely in Scotland than it is today
D by the Romans.
E so quickly that they may all have gone by 2035!
F when there is snow and ice.
G in the production of Coca-Cola.
H as sacred animals.
I at a post office without having to take a test!
J without any anaesthetic!
K so that learners can read them more easily.
L through genetic engineering.

4.2 Fill in the gaps

Complete the gaps in the following passage by putting the verbs in brackets into an appropriate passive form. You will also have to put any other words in brackets in the correct place. Look at the example given.

Well, last month most of the lambs (1) *were sold* (sell) at the market, although we've still got ten, which (2) .... (probably send) next week. When all the lambs have gone, the sheep (3) .... (take) to another part of the farm. After that, we usually start on the fruit, although the blackcurrants (4) .... (already pick) because it was an early season this year. The plums can't (5) .... (pick) for another three weeks by law as they (6) .... (spray) only seven weeks ago. Of course, they still have (7) .... (gather) by hand, unlike the blackcurrants, which (8) .... (harvest) by machine nowadays. The plums and blackcurrants (9) .... (both make) into jam and preserve. Then we have what's called the 'bag fruit', which is apples and pears. Since the fruit doesn't have to be in good condition (10) .... (make) into cider and perry, it (11) .... (treat) pretty badly. For example, there are no skilled pickers involved, the trees (12) .... (just shake) until the fruit drops to the ground, where it (13) .... (collect) and (14) .... (put) into bags. As you can imagine, handling the bags is a very dirty job as the juice leaks out everywhere. But I hope the whole process (15) .... (automate) before much longer.

4.3 *make/cause*, etc.

Add a suitable ending to each of the following sentences using an infinitive verb form with or without *to*. Look at the example provided.

1 Reading an article about the 'greenhouse effect' *persuaded Gary to travel by bicycle more frequently.*
2 The lack of rain caused most of the plants
....
3 The park-keeper wouldn't let the children
....
4 Driving while under the influence of alcohol causes people ....
5 The TV pictures of the damage caused by the flood made us all ....

6 What the doctor said about lung cancer and heart disease convinced Moyra ....
7 The customs officer asked Boris
....
8 The examination invigilator didn't let anyone
....
9 Living and working in a foreign country usually forces you ....
10 Having to deal with tiresome bureaucracy makes me
....

STUDY TIP *make*

▶ Remember that when *make* is used passively it takes *to* before a following verb:
e.g. They made her leave the room.
She was made to leave the room.

5 Writing – Informal letter

Use the following notes to write a letter of invitation to a friend. You must use all the words in the same order as the notes. You may add words and change the form of words where necessary but do not add any extra information. The first one has been done for you.

1 many thanks postcard Greece – get last week.
2 glad hear have good time – apart sunburn!
3 hope get over it – feel better now.
4 anyway reason write – Kim and I party Saturday 19th celebrate end exams.
5 know rather long way come but wonder you like stay weekend.
6 both hope able make it.
7 can let know come by next Friday?
8 Hope hear soon

Dear Sam,
1 *Many thanks for your postcard from Greece, which we got last week.*
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
All the best,

STUDY TIP Informal letters

▶ Remember the following points when writing an informal letter:

DO	DON'T
write the salutation (e.g. *Dear Sally*) against the left hand margin.	begin *Dear Friend*
begin the first paragraph under the first letter of the correspondent's name.	
indent the following paragraphs slightly in from the left hand margin.	
end with *Best wishes* or *Love* (depending on how well you know the person).	use the formal endings *Yours sincerely/faithfully.*

6 Wordcheck – Character and personality

In each of the following groups of words there is one that doesn't fit. Underline the odd word out. The first one has been done for you.

1	critical	defensive	sarcastic	persistent
2	keen	restless	eager	ambitious
3	harsh	unfeeling	impatient	insensitive
4	diligent	talkative	friendly	chatty
5	shy	withdrawn	timid	calm
6	carefree	attentive	careful	cautious
7	happy	content	cheerful	charming
8	trustworthy	dynamic	reliable	dependable

7 Lexical cloze

Read the following text carefully and choose the answer which best fits each space. The first answer has been given as an example.

Smile Power

The expression on your face can actually dramatically (0) B.. your feelings and perceptions, and it has been proved that (1) .... smiling or frowning can create corresponding emotional responses. The idea was first (2) .... by a French physiologist, Israel Waynbaum, in 1906. He believed that different facial (3) .... affected the flow of blood to the brain, and that this could create positive or negative feelings. A happy smile or irrepressible (4) .... increased the blood flow and contributed to joyful feelings. But sad, angry expressions decreased the flow of oxygen-carrying blood, and created a vicious (5) .... of gloom and depression by effectively (6) .... the brain of essential fuel.

Psychologist Robert Zajonc rediscovered this early (7) .... , and (8) .... that the temperature of the brain could affect the production and synthesis of neurotransmitters – which definitely influence our moods and energy levels. He argues that an impaired blood flow could not (9) .... deprive the brain of oxygen, but create further chemical imbalance (10) .... inhibiting these vital hormonal messages. Zajonc goes on to propose that our brains remember that smiling is associated with being happy, and that by deliberately smiling through your tears you can (11) .... your brain to release uplifting neurotransmitters – replacing a depressed condition (12) .... a happier one. People suffering from psychosomatic (13) .... , depression and anxiety states could (14) .... from simply exercising their zygomatic (15) .... – which pull the corners of the mouth up and back to form a smile – several times an hour.

0	A effect	B alter	C arrange	D reduce
1	A desperately	B determinedly	C deliberately	D decidedly
2	A put off	B put down	C put by	D put forward
3	A aspects	B looks	C expressions	D appearances
4	A laughter	B sadness	C humour	D depression
5	A cycle	B spiral	C circle	D vortex
6	A cutting	B starving	C removing	D eliminating
7	A result	B subject	C research	D experiment
8	A advises	B wants	C demands	D suggests
9	A even	B only	C ever	D always
10	A by	B without	C when	D from
11	A make	B persuade	C allow	D decide
12	A through	B by	C after	D with
13	A disease	B illness	C infection	D ailment
14	A recover	B improve	C benefit	D progress
15	A muscles	B nerves	C veins	D bones

Progress Test Two

Units 5 – 8

1 Structural cloze

For questions 1–15, complete the following story by writing each missing word in the space. Use only one word for each space. The exercise begins with an example (0).

A summer job

'Oh good, you're here at last. I was wondering what time you'd (0) *arrive*,' snapped the boss. 'I've been waiting for you (1) .... three quarters of an hour!'

I apologised and explained that the early morning traffic had been (2)..................... heavier than I'd expected.

'Oh dear! I don't suppose you're (3) .... to getting up so early after your time at university. To be honest, I'm surprised you were (4) .... to get here before midday,' he added sarcastically. I smiled and said nothing.

The job was driving a bus around Stratford (5) .... Cheryl, the boss's daughter, gave a description of the places of interest we were passing.

We set off at half past nine with a bus full of tourists. Suddenly Cheryl hissed into my ear, 'How (6) .... have you had your licence? You drive (7) .... a complete lunatic! Slow down or they won't see anything.'

'Sorry,' I said, gritting my teeth. 'I'll (8) .... my best.'

At 11 o'clock, the tourists and Cheryl went into Anne Hathaway's cottage so I decided to go and have a cup of coffee. The cafe was a (9) .... further away than I realised and I had to stand in the queue for ages – it (10) .... have taken me 20 minutes to get served. When I got back to the bus, Cheryl was furious.

'Where on earth have you (11) .... ?' shouted Cheryl.

'I just went for a coffee. Your father said it (12) .... be OK,' I protested.

When we got back, Cheryl told her father about my dreadful behaviour. But before he (13) .... to open his mouth, I said 'Look, I've had just about enough of this. Don't bother to sack me, I won't be (14) .... in tomorrow!' and walked out.

I later found out that they had had four different drivers in (15) .... many weeks.

2 Phrasal verbs

Complete each of the following sentences with the appropriate form of a suitable phrasal verb. An example sentence is provided.

Example: Hal had no trouble in *calling up* all the data we needed on the computer screen.

1 Giving up my job to go and live abroad .... to be the biggest mistake I've ever made.

2 Jane has always .... her brother even when he was accused of murder and everyone else refused to speak to him.

3 This watch used to belong to my great-great-grandfather. It's been .... from father to son for five generations.

4 My karate instructor always .... Robert to demonstrate techniques as he's the best in the class.

5 I've got to drive, so I think I'd better .... orange juice, thanks all the same.

3 Word formation

Read the texts below. Use the words in the box to form one word that fits in the numbered space in the texts. The exercise begins with an example (0).

From what we had read in the (0) *advertisement*, it promised to be the holiday of a lifetime – not only a quality hotel in a top (1) .... resort, but also (2) .... cheap with it! We should have known it was too good to be true! We arrived at the airport to discover we only had (3) .... tickets and there was no guarantee we would be flying. Luckily, two places became free at the last minute and we took off. The flight lasted at least (4) .... as long as it should have and by the time we arrived, we were both feeling rather (5) ...., probably because of the dubious in-flight meal we had had. We were met by our guide, who seemed (6) .... incompetent and understood very little of what we said to him. Instead of the hotel we had seen in the photograph back home, he took us to a squalid little guesthouse much (7) .... away from the resort than we were expecting. We wanted to explain that there had been a dreadful mistake but it was (8) .... trying to complain – nobody could understand us!

How to be sensitive

When asked to talk about themselves, some people, particularly men, become rather (9) .... Others become (10) ...., unable to sit still or look at their inquisitor. Others, however, become extremely (11) ...., delighted to have been given the opportunity to talk about themselves. Jenny falls into this latter category. One innocent question about her health can result in half an hour's in-(12) .... description of her backache or sleepless night. What's more, you daren't interrupt her for fear of offending her legendary (13) .... and being described as an (14) .... egotist with no interest in other people! I have now learned that all (15) .... is futile and one simply has to grin and bear it.

0 ADVERTISE
1 SEA
2 SURPRISE
3 STAND
4 TWO
5 POOR
6 LANGUAGE
7 FAR
8 USE

9 DEFEND
10 REST
11 TALK
12 DEEP
13 SENSE
14 FEEL
15 RESIST

4 Register cloze

Read the following information sheet about hiring a car while on holiday in Greece and use the information to complete the numbered gaps in the informal letter to a friend. Use no more than two words for each gap. The words you need do not occur in the information sheet. The exercise begins with an example (0).

GENERAL CAR HIRE CONDITIONS

1 Cars should be booked at the same time as your holiday. If added later, a fax or telex fee may be incurred.

2 A small charge (c. £5 per day) to offset extra insurance costs is made for additional drivers and payable locally.

3 Drivers must be at least 23 years of age for Groups A, B and C, 25 years of age for other Groups, and have held a full UK driving licence for 12 months. All drivers should be entered individually on the contract to be completed when collecting the car – you will need passport, driving licence, 'Hellas' voucher and a credit card.

4 Damage to the tyres, engine or underside of the car is not covered by insurance in Greece. A credit card imprint or cash deposit of approximately £100 will be required on delivery of the car, returnable at the end of the hire period on condition that the car is returned with no damage to the above.

5 Outside normal office hours (0800–2000) an out-of-hours delivery charge is payable locally, normally c. £15.

6 Child seats and roof racks are available on request only and at a charge of c. £3 per day payable locally.

7 Cars may be booked for periods of less than 7 days but the daily rate increases – please telephone us for a quote. Car hire prices are calculated on 24 hour periods.

Dear Fabienne,

Sorry it's taken me so long to get back in touch but I've been up to my eyes in work. Anyway, I did manage to find out about hiring a car if you book your holiday with 'Hellas'. The first thing is to book the car when you pay for your holiday or there'll be some extra (0) *charges. If David's going to drive* (1) .... *, you'll have to pay another £5 a day. I know you're both* (2) .... *twenty-three but have you both* (3) .... *for more than 12 months? If you haven't, you won't be allowed to drive! Also, don't forget to* (4) .... *both your names on the contract you sign in Greece. They'll also ask you for a deposit for* (5) .... *£100 to* (6) .... *any damage you might do to the car. But don't worry, you'll* (7) .... *this back so long as you bring the car back in one* (8) .... *! Child seats don't come as standard, so you'll have to* (9) .... *one for little Rory when you're there. It'll* (10) .... *you another £3 a day.*

5 Lexical cloze

Read the following text carefully and choose the answer which best fits each space. The first answer has been given as an example (0).

Stress-related hair loss

When stress levels become so high that they affect the immune system it can have a (0) C.. effect on the body and the hair. Hair loss itself causes immense stress and then it can become a vicious (1) .... .

Bonnie Kinnear, 50s, housewife: 'Last year my life was quite stressful due to my husband's high-profile career being constantly in the (2) .... . At this time I began to develop an (3) .... scalp which was wrongly diagnosed as psoriasis, for which I was (4) .... steroids. Over the next two months my scalp became worse, and hair began to fall out, leaving (5) .... patches, which was devastating.

Having to look good and be a support to my famous husband was stressful because wherever we went people would look at us. I had lost at (6) .... one third of my hair and, in (7) .... , visited a high-profile Mayfair trichologist. Without any (8) .... I was ordered to buy £300 (9) .... of products and my head was massaged by a girl who proceeded to turn my hair into what is (10) .... as 'bird's-nest syndrome'. It took four hours to (11) .... .

My GP (12) .... me to seek help from Andrew Bernie. I was diagnosed with a stress-triggered (13) .... where the skin cells multiply fast, grow down the hairshaft and bind with sebaceous matter to strangle the hair. I visit Andrew regularly for (14) .... . I am also trying to (15) .... my stress levels, which is easier now my hair is returning.

0	A hard	B heavy	C profound	D full
1	A cycle	B effect	C closure	D circle
2	A daylight	B spotlight	C searchlight	D starlight
3	A intense	B enlarged	C inflamed	D inflicted
4	A prescribed	B ordered	C allowed	D recommended
5	A empty	B bald	C dark	D hairy
6	A once	B all	C least	D first
7	A reply	B fun	C hope	D desperation
8	A experiment	B diagnosis	C study	D result
9	A worth	B value	C price	D cost
10	A supposed	B known	C seen	D referred
11	A replace	B untangle	C return	D reset
12	A suggested	B forbade	C convinced	D reported
13	A state	B symptom	C outcome	D condition
14	A treatments	B dates	C services	D appointments
15	A destroy	B assess	C manage	D measure

6 Discourse cloze

For questions 1–6, read through the following text and then choose from the list A–J the best phrase or sentence to fill each of the spaces. Write one letter (A–J) in the correct space. Some of the answers do not fit at all. The exercise begins with an example (0).

Indo-European Languages

Today, most European languages, and many Asian languages as far east as India, are very similar to each other. (0) J.. about memorising French word lists in school, these so-called 'Indo-European' languages resemble English and each other in terms of vocabulary and grammar (1) ..... . Only 140 of the modern world's 5,000 tongues belong to this language family, (2) ..... . Thanks to the global expansion of Europeans since 1492 – especially people from England, Spain, Portugal, France and Russia – nearly half the world's present population of five billion now speaks an Indo-European language as its native tongue.

When, however, we go to parts of the world (3) .... , we realise how unusual Europe's linguistic similarity is, and how it calls for explanation. (4) .... , in areas of the New Guinea highlands (5) .... , we find languages as different as English is from Chinese being spoken in neighbouring areas. (6) .... until some people speaking the mother tongue of the Indo-European language family began to dominate and pushed almost all other European languages out of existence.

今日 は
γειά σας
استعمال الكتاب

- A as well as French
- B Eurasia must have originally been as diverse
- C For example
- D which must have originated outside Europe
- E yet differ in this respect from all the world's other languages
- F In spite of this
- G where contact with the outside world began only in the 20th century
- H but their importance is far out of proportion to their numbers
- I with great linguistic diversity
- J No matter how much we complain

9 ▶ Mind Your Manners

1 Inversion after negative introductions

▶ Study Box, SB page 127

Complete the following sentences to make a more dramatic version of the sentence printed above it. The first one has been done for you.

1 You mustn't press this red button under any circumstances.
Under no circumstances must you press this red button.
2 She'd only just stubbed out one cigarette when she lit another.
Hardly ....
3 We didn't see a soul all day.
Not ....
4 As soon as I put the phone down, it rang again!
No sooner ....
5 He spoke so quietly that I didn't hear a thing he said.
So ....
6 They didn't win a game all season.
Not ....
7 Life is like that.
Such ....
8 She didn't realise who he was until she'd been speaking to him for ten minutes.
Only after ....
9 Kate not only spilled wine on the carpet but she also broke six glasses.
Not only ....
10 I'd never seen such a gigantic fish before!
Never .... !

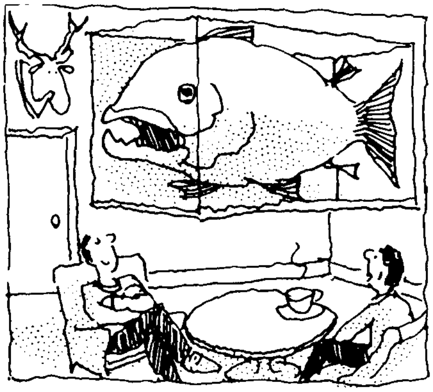

2 Modal verbs

▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 128

Complete the following sentences using a suitable modal verb to express obligation or permission together with the verb in brackets. The first one is shown as an example.

1 You *must go* (go) and see that new play at the Adelphi. It's marvellous!
2 Guests .... (leave) their valuables in the hotel safe if they wish.
3 It was lucky we .... (change) any money as all the banks were shut.
4 We .... (rush) after all. The plane was over an hour late taking off.
5 You .... (have) a special licence to drive lorries weighing over two tons.
6 Sorry to interrupt, Professor Cripwell. .... I .... (ask) you a quick question?
7 In the future, European citizens .... (travel) from one country to another inside Europe without going through customs.
8 We really .... (have) the car washed. It's absolutely filthy!
9 I've no idea where the inn is. So when we get to the village, we .... (ask) for directions.
10 Unlike many other countries, young men in Britain .... (do) compulsory military service as it was abolished in 1957.
11 You used .... (build) a house more or less anywhere on your land 100 years ago. Today you .... (put) a shed in your garden without planning permission!
12 .... we .... (discuss) this any further? I'm sure we've all got a good idea of the problem now.
13 You .... (keep) the receipt. They won't take it back without one now.
14 I hope we .... (build) an extension on the back of our house next year.
15 At my last job, we .... (make) any personal phone calls from the office. We .... (use) the public call box in the street!

3 Collocations

▶ Focus on Vocabulary, SB page 130

3.1 Collocations – verb + noun

Complete the following sentences to make common word partnerships, or collocations. The first one has been done for you.

1 William *takes himself* rather *seriously*, I'm afraid.
2 The government broke their .... not to put up taxes.
3 The town council plans to .... a public meeting to discuss the new car park.
4 Thomas wasted a lot of money on ineffectual advertisements but, in the end, he just put it down to ....
5 Kevin's always cracking terrible .... that only he laughs at!
6 A break from the everyday routine .... everyone a lot of good.
7 Laura raised an interesting .... at the staff meeting yesterday.
8 Jo was asked to .... an explanation for her extraordinary behaviour.
9 The doctor tried to put me at my .... about the operation but I couldn't help being worried.
10 The consultant advised us to bring our computer system up to .... , describing what we've got as antiquated and practically obsolete!
11 The manager told us to give .... to the publicity campaign as that was the most important thing to get finished.
12 She was trying to .... him a compliment but it came out all wrong.
13 Amanda .... an excuse about visiting a sick friend but I don't think she really wanted to come.
14 I made a real .... when I asked her about her husband. How was I to know they'd just split up?
15 It was getting very late but nobody seemed to want to make a .... to break up the party.

3.2 Collocations – verb + adverb

Complete the following sentences with a suitable adverb. See the example.

1 Everyone welcomed us so *warmly* we felt like royalty!
2 He must have said something absolutely hilarious because everyone was laughing up................ .
3 Kimiko cat................ denied having stolen the money.
4 She also de................ resented the fact that I thought she might have done.
5 I later apologised pr................ when it came to light that the money had simply been misplaced.
6 We complained bi................ about the noise outside our bedroom window but nothing was done about it.
7 You're absolutely right. I agree with you whole- ....
8 I bi................ regret not going to Brazil when I had the chance.
9 We congratulated them wa................ on their wonderful achievement.
10 I'm sorry but I fl................ refuse to do such a stupid thing!

3.3 Collocations – adjective + noun

Match each adjective in the first box with its corresponding noun in the second box and form common collocations to complete the sentences that follow. See the example provided.

ADJECTIVE	family	kind	~~working~~
social	warm	wedding	close
fond	distant	sunny	firm
candle-lit	unkind	relaxed	prior

NOUN	~~lunch~~	welcome	atmosphere
dinner	handshake	engagement	smile
remark	get-together	invitation	friend
climber	farewell	relative	reception

1 I didn't enjoy my meal very much as it was a *working lunch.*
2 Regretfully, we will be unable to attend the Reunion Dinner due to a ....
3 Thank you so much for your .... We'd love to come.

4 Fred is rather two-faced – he's always got some .... to make about his so-called friends.
5 Apparently, the famous composer William Walton is a .... of Richard's, although they've never met.
6 And now ladies and gentleman would you please give a very .... to our next guest, Mr Danny Muller!
7 I'm dreading it. I'm best man and I've got to make a humorous speech at the ....
8 Vincent is a terrible .... He's always trying to get himself invited to the most exclusive parties.
9 As they parted they whispered a .... , knowing they would never meet again.
10 I always try and greet business contacts with a .... and a .... !
11 My mother's birthday is a chance for us all to meet up and have a ....
12 I'd rather you didn't speak like that about Rachel, she happens to be a .... of mine.
13 I love going round to Roddy's – there's always such a ....
14 Gerry proposed to Amanda halfway through a romantic ....

STUDY TIP Collocations

▶ It is very important to know which words frequently go together to form collocations (word partnerships). A good idea to help build up your knowledge of collocations is to create 'key word grids':

e.g.

verbs	**describing words**	**key word**	**words that come after**
catch	wrong		stop
miss	last	BUS	pass
get on	crowded		fare
stop	night		station

Try to make your own grids with common key words.

4 Dictionary skills

In each of the following exercises you should use a good English/English dictionary to help you find the answers.

4.1 Opposites – prefixes

Find the opposites for the following words using the prefixes in the box. The first one has been done for you.

dis- il- im- in- ir- mis- non- un-

1	formal	*informal*
2	mobile	....
3	rational	....
4	comfortable	....
5	smoker	....
6	relevant	....
7	reliable	....
8	respect	....
9	soluble	....
10	behave	....
11	logical	....
12	comfort	....
13	spell	....
14	polite	....
15	legible	....
16	resident	....

STUDY TIP Negative prefixes

▶ Record in groups those words that start with the same negative prefix:
e.g. (verbs) misbehave, misinform, mislay
(adjectives) misguided, misnamed

▶ Remember that certain prefixes occur before certain spellings:
e.g. il- (illogical, illiterate) – usually before a word beginning with l
im- (impersonal, immature) – usually before a word beginning with m or p
ir- (irrational, irreparable) – usually before a word beginning with r

4.2 Synonyms and antonyms

Write a (near) synonym and antonym for each of the following adjectives.

		SYNONYM	ANTONYM
17	cheeky	....	....
18	brainy	....	....
19	skinny	....	....
20	handy	....	....

STUDY TIP Phonetics

▶ Some phonetic symbols are quite easy to understand e.g. /k/, /z/, /p/ but there are a few which need to be learnt. Do you know what sounds these symbols represent? If not, check in a dictionary.
/ɔː/, /θ/, /ʤ/, /ð/, /ɜː/, /tʃ/

4.3 Phonetics

Find the pronunciation key at the beginning or end of your dictionary. Use it to help you match the following words with the vowel sound they contain. Write the correct phonetic symbol in the box after each word.

	words		sounds
1	cut	☐	/uː/
2	caught	☐	/æ/
3	kit	☐	/ɔː/
4	cat	☐	/ɜː/
5	cot	☐	/ɑː/
6	curt	☐	/ʌ/
7	coot	☐	/ɪ/
8	cart	☐	/ɒ/

4.4 Spelling vs pronunciation

Similar spelling does not always mean similar pronunciation in English. Decide if the following pairs of words have the same vowel sound. Write S (same) or D (different) in the box.

9	bomb	comb	☐
10	low	tow	☐
11	weight	eight	☐
12	stove	glove	☐
13	pour	sour	☐
14	laughter	daughter	☐
15	food	mood	☐
16	rear	pear	☐
17	none	done	☐
18	mown	town	☐

4.5 Pronunciation

The combination of letters 'ough' can be pronounced in seven different ways in English. Put the words in the box below in the correct list depending on the pronunciation of 'ough'.

nought	through	trough	rough
thorough	though	tough	borough
enough	bough	drought	thought
cough	plough	dough	

e.g.	/ʌf/	/ə/	/aʊ/	/əʊ/
	bluff	again	how	no
	....	....	....	....
	....	....	....	....
	....	....	....	....
	/ɔː/	/ɒf/	/uː/	
	saw	coffee	too	
	....	....	....	
	....	....	....	
	....	....	....	

5 Type 3 and mixed conditionals

Re-write the following sentences so that they mean the same as the sentences before them. An example is given.

1 We couldn't have a picnic because it started raining.
If it hadn't started raining, we could have had a picnic.

2 Jane doesn't live anywhere near London so she didn't apply for that job in the City.
Jane would ....

3 I only found out because Louis mentioned it to me in passing.
If Louis ....

4 Ronald is in prison because a detective recognised him from an identikit picture.
If a detective ....

5 Harry beat me at tennis – but only because he's such a terrible cheat!
Harry wouldn't ....

6 You left the map in the car – that's why we're lost!
If you ....

7 We know nothing about engines, so we weren't able to fix the car when it broke down.
We might ....

8 I didn't prepare anything special because I didn't know they were coming.
I'd ....

6 Writing – Report writing

You are writing a report for 'Bocia', the manufacturers of the new 'Bambo' pushchair, based on the results of interviews with mothers and fathers all over the country. The aim of the interviews was to find out how good the pushchair is. Expand the following notes into a full report using the phrases in the box below. You may also use subheadings e.g. Introduction, Observations, Recommendations, etc. Write about 250 words.

The aim of this report is to ... It is based on ...
It was found that ... A/The majority/minority of people ...
In the words of ... On the whole ... It is interesting that ...
It is recommended that ... It is advisable for 'Bocia' to ...
'Bocia' might consider ... To sum up/summarise ... On balance ...

Notes for report on new 'Bambo' pushchair
Number of people interviewed: 150
Interview locations: London, Bristol, Birmingham, Gloucester, Glasgow, Leeds.

Sample comments:
'Compared to our old pushchair, this is fantastic – it's so light and manageable.' Mrs Roberta Long, Gloucester
'My little boy really likes going out in it – so it must be comfy, mustn't it?' Mr Adam Blair, London
'Well, we quite like it but it's a bit stiff to open and close really. That's our only complaint.' Mr and Mrs Osmonth, Leeds
'It folds up really small and fits in the boot of the car no problem. The only thing is it's always getting stuck in little holes.' Mrs Joy McCarthy, Glasgow

Analysis:
Good points
- *light*
- *easy to steer*
- *good for carrying shopping*
- *attractive design and colours*
- *comfortable for baby*
- *small when folded*
- *4 positions for baby, from sitting up to lying flat*

Bad points
- *difficult to open and close*
- *wheels too small so it gets stuck in holes on rough ground*
- *wheels difficult to lock as mechanism is too small to operate by foot*

Suggestions (with diagram):

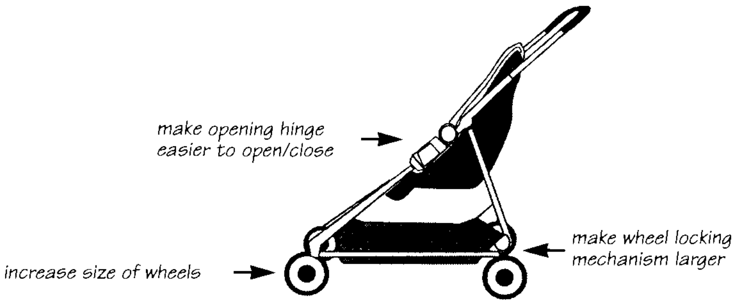
make opening hinge easier to open/close
make wheel locking mechanism larger
increase size of wheels

7 Register cloze

For questions 1–16, read the following comments from a language school student questionnaire and use the information to complete the numbered gaps in the formal memorandum to staff. Use no more than two words for each gap. The words you need do not occur in the students' comments. The exercise begins with an example (0).

Typical answers to feedback questionnaire:

Classes
'My teacher was late for class every day except the first Monday!'
'I came to England to study English not to play games – I'm not a child!!!'

Facilities
'My classroom (A35) is a mess – can't the repairmen fix the cracks in the walls and stick the wallpaper back on? Only one of the lights was working during the whole 4-week course!'
'I liked the books and things in the self-access centre but it's in a bad place right at the top of the library on the fourth floor! Why not put it somewhere students spend more time?'
'The "Munch House Cafe Bar" is OK – I liked the new chairs and tables. Some of the sandwiches were off and they always ran out of coke when it was hot!'

Food
'I didn't like the food at all – it's always the same – chips, chips, chips!'
'All the food is boring – it has no real taste.'

Activities
'I liked the tour of the city but the sports were terrible, nobody knew where to go or what time to arrive!'
'Tom Shark was very rude to the students and we had to pay for things I thought I'd paid for when I paid for the course – like the BBQs and discos!'

Memorandum

To: All members of EFL staff
From: Jack Boot (Director of Studies)
Date: 16 June
cc: The Principal

RE: STUDENT FEEDBACK QUESTIONNAIRE

I am afraid there were a large number of (0) *complaints* about the school at the end of this course. The following is a summary of the most recurrent comments.

Lessons
(1) .... seems to be a problem with many teachers, in fact one managed to be on time only once during the course. There also seems to be a feeling among students that the lessons weren't **(2)** .... and that too many games were played in class. Many of our students find such activities rather **(3)** ....

Facilities
Various students noted that the classrooms are in a **(4)** .... of repair and that we need to pay greater and more immediate attention to **(5)** .... As regards the new self-access centre, many students praised the wide selection of **(6)** .... but commented negatively about its **(7)** .... at the top of the library building, which, it seems, makes it somewhat **(8)** .... for students. Another more positive element in the school is the "Munch House". Many students commented favourably about the **(9)** .... but also pointed out that the sandwiches are often **(10)** .... and that soft drinks are frequently in short **(11)** .... particularly during hot weather.

Catering
The food lacks **(12)** .... with a great deal of the same food appearing day after day. It also seems that the food is far too **(13)** .... for international students.

Activities
There were numerous negative comments in this area. The sports activities seem very **(14)** .... organised with students having no clear instructions as to where or when to play. Certain members of the activities staff were also described as **(15)** .... Finally, it is clear that many students are being charged again for activities they paid for in **(16)** .... , such as barbecues and discotheques.

I propose to hold an emergency meeting to discuss how best to address the most urgent issues outlined above. The meeting will be this Friday 23 June starting at 4.30pm in the staff room.

All staff are expected to attend.

10 ▶ State of the Union

1 Grammar

1.1 Review of *-ing* forms and infinitives ▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 175

Complete the following sentences with either the infinitive or the *-ing* form of the verb given in brackets. See the example given.

1 *Living* (live) alone is becoming more common nowadays.
2 I'm really looking forward to .... (see) you again next week.
3 Can't we just .... (have) a quiet evening at home for once?
4 It's always difficult .... (know) if and when you should get married.
5 Come on, you kids! Stop .... (shout)! You're driving me crazy.
6 When they split up, Paula made David .... (give) back all the presents she'd ever given him.
7 The most important thing in any relationship is .... (understand) what makes your partner tick.
8 Maurice and Fiona have always let their children .... (do) exactly what they want.
9 With the advances in medical science, it seems that you're never too old .... (have) children any more.
10 When the baby was small I have to admit that I had to wear earplugs at night .... (get) a good night's sleep.

1.2 Cleft sentences and introductory *it* ▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 180

Complete the following dialogues with some form of cleft sentence to give greater emphasis. An example is given to help you.

1 'Didn't George get the sack?'
'No, the person who got the sack was Jim.'
2 'Aren't you allergic to beans?'
'No, ... I'm allergic to!' (onions)
3 'I thought you went to Tunisia on your holidays.'
'Oh come on, I've told you hundreds of times, ... we went to was Turkey!'
4 'How important is a good salary to you?'
'Not very, ... I'm looking for.' (job satisfaction)
5 'I was told Rudy emigrated because he didn't like the weather.'
'That's just a joke! .... he went away was because he'd been caught stealing credit cards.'
6 'Is that the man you saw breaking into the house?'
'I don't think so. .... I saw was much taller.'
7 'I'm sure New York was first settled by the British.'
'That's not right. .... who first settled there and they called it New Amsterdam!'
8 'Did you enjoy yourself at the cinema last night?'
'Well, unfortunately .... , *Bladerunner*, was sold out. So we went to see some terrible film whose name escapes me.'
9 '...................... Shakespeare who wrote the *Canterbury Tales*?'
'You're joking, aren't you? It was Chaucer, of course!'
10 'Surely English is the most widely spoken language in the world.'
'Well, actually .... by most people is Mandarin Chinese.'

2 Collocations with *do/make/have/get*

▶ Focus on Vocabulary, SB page 181

Use suitable collocations with ***do, make, have*** or ***get*** to complete the sentences below. An example is provided.

1 Now come on, stop crying. *You're making a fuss about nothing.*
2 It's our tenth wedding anniversary and we're going to .... a big .... to celebrate.
3 Neil's never really had a steady girlfriend as he finds it hard to .... a ....
4 Look, I'm sorry about .... we .... last night. I shouldn't have lost my temper and started shouting.
5 Fred and Keiko have just .... and plan to marry next year.
6 I'm pleased to see you've started washing your own clothes at last. But why have I still got to .... the .... ?
7 Sebastian is a really spoilt kid. He always .... his own .... at home.

8 The film was a real 'tear-jerker' and we all sat there at the end .... a good ....
9 Look, we can't have a serious conversation if you're going to be so hysterical. You're just .... no .... at all!
10 Some men still fail to .... their fair .... of the housework.

3 Phrasal verbs

Complete the following dialogue with the correct form of suitable phrasal verbs. See the example.

Jackie: Have you heard the latest?
Lesley: No, what's happened?
Jackie: Well, it seems Emma and Rory have (1) *broken off* their engagement.
Lesley: Really? I must say it doesn't surprise me. They were always (2) .... with each other and then having to kiss and (3) .... They were bound to (4) .... sooner or later.
Jackie: Well, if you ask me, it was more than just arguments. I'm pretty sure Rory was (5) .... her with that 'old friend' of his, Sarah, from university. I heard him (6) .... her .... to the pub with him just the other day and then, surprise, surprise, next morning Emma's complaining that Rory (7) .... her .... for their weekly visit to the cinema!
Lesley: She's better off without him, in my opinion. She's a pretty tough character – she'll soon (8) .... him!
Jackie: Yes. Let's hope she (9) .... someone more sensible next time. They were never really suited. I'm just surprised she didn't (10) .... him sooner – he's such an egotist!

4 Dependent prepositions

Put the correct prepositions in the gaps in the text below. The first one has been done for you.

I must admit that I cringe (1) *at the prospect of going to see my brother.* He is, I suppose, fairly well-read (2) .... his field, which is medicine. However, the way he insists (3) .... always being right all the time, regardless (4) .... how well-informed his conversational adversary may be, makes me quite angry. Whenever anything concerned (5) .... medicine crops up in conversation, he puffs himself up and prepares to 'inform' people. His attitude (6) .... people who get their facts slightly wrong is insufferable. He cannot just let things go, he is just not comfortable (7) .... inaccuracies. It is almost as if he is dropping (8) .... status if he fails to pick someone up on a point. I remember him once arguing with a dinner guest for over an hour on the difference (9) .... the hard and soft palate! No wonder his wife is always complaining (10) .... him!

5 Writing – Information sheet

You have been asked to design an eye-catching information leaflet about the dangers of household poisons to children. Using the information below, create your leaflet. Remember to use main headings and sub-headings; to break up the text in order to avoid blocks; to use visuals e.g. blobs, numbers, asterisks, etc, different styles and sizes of writing, underlining, different colours, boxes and arrows.

Hundreds of children are taken to hospital every year with symptoms of poisoning. Most common causes are household products (for kids tablets = sweets, bottle of bleach = lemonade, a paint brush covered in paint = an ice lolly, rat poison = talcum powder) and plants and berries in the garden.

Parents must be alert at all times – NB keep all medicines locked in cabinets or out of children's reach, fit safety catches to cupboards where cleaning products are stored; teach kids not to drink from bottles or eat brightly coloured berries in the garden.

If you think your child has been poisoned, act quickly – don't wait and see what happens! Don't make your child vomit; go straight to the Accident and Emergency ward of your local hospital; take the plant, berries or substance with you; try and find out how many tablets/berries/etc your child has swallowed.

6 Structural cloze

For questions 1–15, complete the following extract from a professional journal by writing each missing word in the space. Use only one word for each space. The exercise begins with an example.

Thinking about Family Life

Family life continues to occupy (0) *a* somewhat ambiguous position in public debate and policy in Britain today. On the one hand, references (1) .... the importance of the family, however defined (2) .... understood, (3) .... rarely absent from speeches at political party conferences or statements from religious leaders. On the (4) .... hand, (5) .... contrast to some other European countries, we do not have a minister (6) .... special responsibilities for 'the family' and (7) .... do we have anything (8) .... a coherent programme that could be called a family policy.

Some sociologists might lend their support to particular programmes or social policies, (9) .... the basis of the evidence as they see it. More (10) .... , however, the popular impression would seem to be (11) .... the sociologists provide the facts about family life and that (12) .... facts, thus 'discovered', provide the basis for public statements or, possibly, public policy. For (13) .... , sociologists may provide facts about the circumstances of lone mothers and (14) .... children and these studies (15) .... inform policy-makers.

7 Word formation

For questions 1–15, read the two texts below. Use the words in the boxes to form one word that fits in the same numbered space in the text. The exercise begins with an example (0).

Gender on Screen

Many (0) *researchers* have suggested that the media portray men and women in different and often (1) .... ways, arguing that this can lead to the (2) .... of gender stereotyping. (3) .... films are sometimes considered to be a 'male' genre with a limited range of characters for audience (4) .... Stallone, Schwarzenegger, Willis and Van Damme are (5) .... names, whose character types are fairly (6) .... .The subject (here) of such movies will usually be male, white, young, aggressive, vengeful, strong, invulnerable and (7) .... , using weapons and moving the narrative along. It is (8) .... the body of the masculine hero that provides the focus of the spectators' gaze and visual pleasure.

0 RESEARCH
1 LIMIT
2 PRODUCE
3 ACT
4 ENJOY
5 HOUSE
6 PREDICT
7 EMOTION
8 PRIMARY

Nappy Alarm

Some babies bawl when they have a wet nappy, others carry on gurgling (9) .... , leaving their mothers none the wiser and the baby at risk of nappy rash. Now novice British inventor, Paul Kimsey, has come up with a (10) .... alarm which warns parents when it's time to change their baby's wet nappy. The electronic device placed in the nappy alerts the parent by sounding a (11) .... bleeper carried on a belt or in a bag. Mr Kimsey, 36, came up with the idea seven years ago after witnessing the (12) .... suffered by a relative's baby. He was (13) .... to develop it at the time as he was too busy running the family car mat manufacturing business. He has fine-tuned his idea (14) .... since that first (15) ....

9 CONTENT
10 RELY
11 WARN
12 COMFORT
13 ABLE
14 CONSIDER
15 BRAIN

8 Wordcheck – Relationships

Complete the sentences below with vocabulary connected with relationships. The first letter of each word is given to help you. See the example.

1 Often the most difficult part of a relationship is asking the person out on the first date.
2 People looking for a partner sometimes place advertisements in the l................-h................ column of a newspaper or magazine.
3 An a................ a................ is someone who gives advice to people who write to a magazine about their personal lives.
4 On their wedding day, the woman is the b................ and the man is the g................ .
5 After getting married most couples hold a r................ to which they invite all their friends and relatives.
6 The day after that, they usually go on their h................ – a romantic holiday for two!
7 A man with no intention of getting married may be described as a c................ b................ .
8 An o................ f................ is someone from your past who you used to have a romantic relationship with.
9 A w................ is a man whose wife has died.
10 On official forms you may be asked to state your m................ s................ , in other words whether you are married or not.
11 S................ is another word which often appears on official forms. It means husband or wife.
12 A famous male actor or singer adored by female fans is a h................-................ .

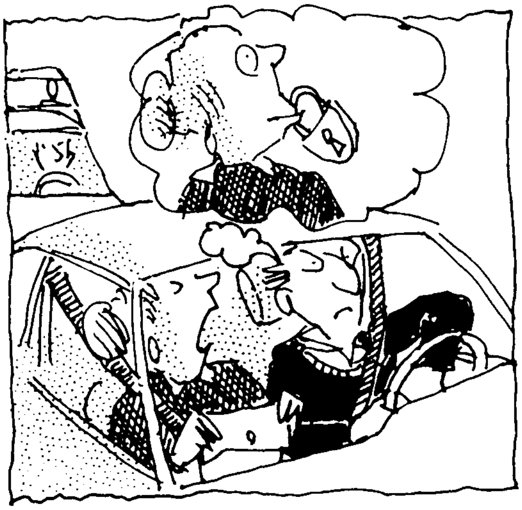

11 ▶ Last Chance to See

1 Relative clauses

▶ Study Box, SB page 188

1.1 Relative clauses – punctuation

Decide if the following sentences, which all contain relative clauses, are punctuated correctly or not. Make any necessary corrections, as in the example.

1 Mark's father, who used to be a diplomat, speaks eight foreign languages.
2 Children, who don't have brothers or sisters, often find it hard when they first go to school.
3 Have you still got that second-hand computer you bought from that chap you met in the pub we used to go to?
4 The Irish doctor, who used to work at this surgery, has moved to Leeds.
5 Do you remember that little cinema we saw all those old black and white movies at? Well, it's been pulled down!
6 We went to the first performance of the play which turned out to be a complete disaster!
7 It rained all day which meant we couldn't go out at all.
8 DNA which is 98.4% identical in humans and chimpanzees was discovered by Watson and Crick in 1944.
9 The Paris which is in Texas has very little to do with the Paris in France.
10 'Zorro', Mrs Nimmo's favourite cat whose tail was bitten off by a dog isn't very good at balancing any more!

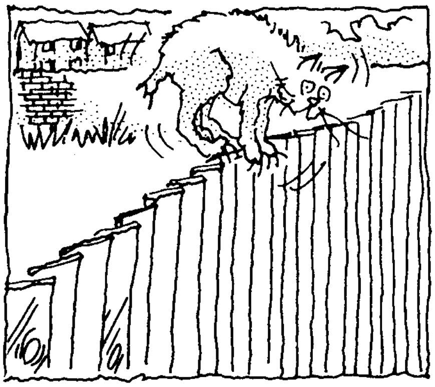

1.2 Relative clauses with prepositions

Some of the relative clauses below are not acceptable either in terms of grammar or level of formality. Make any necessary corrections as in the example.

1 The person ~~that~~ you need to speak to is out of the office at present.
2 What was the name of that card game you were talking about?
3 The vegetation on that these animals depend is under threat.
4 Oh, look! There's that pen for which you've been looking.
5 We have established that this is the window through which the criminals made good their escape.
6 Although his parents called him Marcus, 'Ginger' was the name who he was generally known by.
7 But that chap from whom we bought the car said it was guaranteed!
8 The process the vast majority of nuclear power is produced by is known as 'fission'.
9 The department for which Mr Roberts is responsible has again failed to reach its production targets.
10 Those kids after whom she looks are really terrible!

2 Phrasal verbs

2.1 Tense and structure

Complete the following sentences with phrasal verbs from the box below. Use the correct tense or structure. An example is given.

carry out cut down cut up
dip into hold up make up
spring up

1 Are all animals' bodies *made up* of cells?
2 Don't forget to .... the potatoes into small pieces before boiling them or they take ages.
3 It's not quite the sort of book you'd want to read from cover to cover but it's quite interesting to .... now and then.
4 It's a miracle the roof didn't fall in as one of the walls which had been .... it .... suddenly collapsed.

5 Modern computers are capable of .... the most complex operations in micro-seconds.
6 A lot of fast food restaurants have .... in the town centre over the last couple of years.
7 You need fifteen players to .... a rugby team.
8 We had to .... the old oak tree after it was damaged in the storm.

2.2 Different meanings

Use a good English/English dictionary to find different uses for the phrasal verbs in the box in 2.1 and complete the sentences, using the right tense. The first one is shown as an example.

1 It took me over an hour to get *made up* for the part of Othello.
2 If you want to lose weight, you should .... on the amount of dairy products you eat.
3 He .... some story about catching the wrong train to explain his lateness.
4 Joe and Sally are always having quarrels but they always .... in the end.
5 The start of the concert .... by the late arrival of the group.
6 I can't afford a summer holiday this year unless I .... my savings.
7 Three masked men tried to .... the security van last week.
8 Monty accidentally trod on the rake, which .... and hit him on the nose!

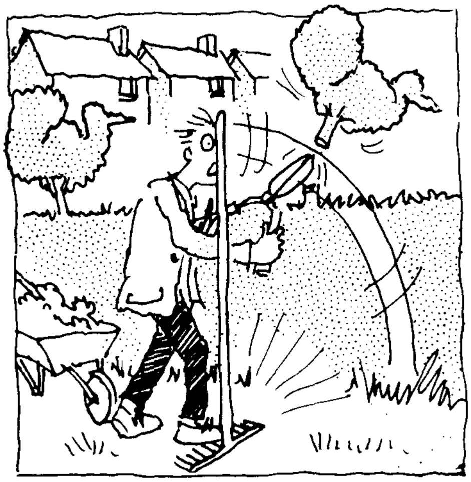

3 Expressing the future

▶Focus on Grammar, SB page 189

Put the verbs in brackets in the most suitable form (active or passive) of the future. The first one has been done for you.

1 *Are you doing* (do) anything special on Friday evening?
2 Mandy .... (finish) her exams by this time next week.
3 The train .... (get) in at 5.15, which means we .... (have) about half an hour to get to the conference centre.
4 Look out! That boy .... (fall) of his bike!
5 The new sports centre .... (open) next month but I doubt if it .... (complete) by then!
6 The Prince .... (give) a speech to local community leaders this evening.
7 We .... (live) in this house for exactly five years next Sunday.
8 Congratulations! We hope you .... (be) very happy together.
9 The play .... (not start) until 8.30 so I think we .... (have) time to eat something first.
10 'Anna looks rather fat these days.'
'Oh, don't you know? She .... (have) a baby.'
11 Just think, this time on Thursday we .... (fly) to Los Angeles.
12 Don't worry, I .... (phone) the plumber first thing tomorrow morning.
13 Do you think you .... (finish) that report by the end of the week?
14 .... I .... (give) you a lift to the airport on Monday or .... Fred .... (take) you?
15 We'd better hurry up, I think they .... (close).

4 Quantifiers – *each/every, either/neither*, etc

▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 192

Correct any incorrect uses of quantifiers in the following sentences. The first one is shown as an example.

1 None *of* the supermarkets in our town sells fresh fish.
2 Our two children are very alike: every one has red hair and green eyes.
3 Which of these two umbrellas is yours? None.
4 How much are these second-hand books? £1 every one.
5 You can go either way at the fork in the road: they all lead to the beach.
6 Is Phyllis a nurse or a dentist? Neither. She's a psychiatrist.
7 I'm afraid I know a few words of Italian so I can't really communicate.
8 All student is responsible for cleaning his own room.
9 Each CD in her collection was by the same group!
10 There seems a little point in continuing our discussion if you are not prepared to make any concessions.
11 We asked a young couple for directions but none of them knew where the street was.
12 I've seen all Meryl Streep's films and she's brilliant in every one.
13 We're having a cocktail party for few close friends next Friday if you'd like to join us.
14 Does either of them happen to live in Cavendish Road?
15 Each tyre on the car had been deliberately slashed by vandals.

STUDY TIP *both* and *all*

▶ These are placed after auxiliary verbs but before main verbs:
e.g. They can both/all swim.
Do you both/all speak French?
They have both/all been to New Zealand.
We both/all have black tea for breakfast.

5 Linking and logical devices – cause and result, purpose and time

Complete the following sentences with suitable linking devices. An asterisk (*) indicates at least two possible answers. Look at the example provided.

1 It was necessary to use a microscope **in order to/so as to/to* establish the existence of organisms in the drinking water.
2 They got to the shop at 6 a.m. * .... they would be able to get the best bargains in the sale.
3 You'd better take your cheque book with you .... it costs more than you expect.
4 The apple crop this year has been terrible * .... the unseasonal frosts we had in May.
5 * .... there was a train strike, we had to spend an extra two days on Otranto.
6 The man was .... rude .... the manager had to ask him to leave the restaurant.
7 Vince didn't get to bed until 5 a.m. .... he's feeling exhausted this morning.
8 Erica's new boss turned out to be .... a tyrant .... she resigned after a week!
9 The new model is slightly larger and * .... more expensive.
10 * .... you arrive in Bombay, give us a call to let us know everything's OK.
11 We won't be able to forward the goods *...................... we receive your cheque.
12 .... I had the chance to reverse into the parking space someone else drove straight into it.
13 * .... had I dropped off to sleep .... next door's dog started howling at the moon.
14 .... he ate all the sandwiches. * .... he drank all the wine. .... he collapsed on the sofa!
15 .... Steve was upstairs having a shower, the burglars were downstairs helping themselves to his stereo, computer and TV.

TEA LEAF LTD

6 Writing – Formal letter

The following letter is in response to the job advertisement shown below. Complete the letter with suitable words or phrases. Look at the example.

DESK EDITOR

CIRCA £13,500 p.a.

An experienced editor is required by an expanding publisher of books on leisure, craft and wood-related subjects. The position involves taking charge of the day-to-day process of producing highly illustrated books from receipt of manuscript to approval for press. A practical approach is needed, with good keyboard and organisational skills, as well as the ability to work quickly and accurately to tight deadlines.

You will need to be able to work independently, although you will be part of a small team, and to be concerned with maintaining the highest standards.

Please apply in writing to:
Mr A E Phillips, Publisher
GMC Publications
166 High Street,
Lewes,
East Sussex BN7 1XU

---

34 St Mary's Way
Buxton
Derbyshire BU4 8JS

(1) *14th October 20–*

Mr A E Phillips

GMC Publications
(2) ....
Lewes
East Sussex BN7 1XU

Dear Mr Phillips

I am interested (3) .... for the (4) .... desk editor which (5) .... in 'The Independent' yesterday.

(6) .... applying is that I (7) .... for 10 years as an assistant editor in a small publishing company concerned mainly with books on leisure and hobbies and I am now (8) .... a post which would (9) .... more responsibility and independence to make editorial and organisational decisions.

I am used to and enjoy the challenge (10) .... to tight deadlines to produce high quality books. I have fast and accurate keyboard skills and am familiar with all modern publishing computer software.

I would be able (11) .... interview at any time which is (12) .... to you.

(13) ....
(14) ....

Olivia James
(15) ....

7 Discourse cloze

For questions 1–5, read through the following article and then choose from the list A–J the best phrase given below it to fill each of the spaces. Some of the suggested answers do not fit at all. The exercise begins with an example (0).

Small is Beautiful

Fritz Schumacher, most famous for his work 'Small is beautiful', wasn't really an environmentalist at all. He was an economist, a philosopher, a wordsmith, a baker of bread and planter of trees and, together with Barbara Ward, one of the first pioneers (0) ..J. sustainable growth.

The subtitle of *Small is Beautiful* is 'Economics as if people mattered'. And that informs all his economic writing. It was, for instance, incomprehensible to Schumacher that politicians could so obsessively pursue the goal of endless economic growth (1) ..... .

If idolised as the most essential task of society, economic growth bears bitter fruit and tends to defeat itself. Set it up as the supreme national objective and you will inevitably promote greed, impatience, ruthlessness and envy, destroying those fundamental virtues (2) ..... .

But he was no believer in zero-growth either, (3) ..... . 'To replace the idea of rapid economic growth by the idea of zero growth, that is to say, of organised stagnation, is to replace one emptiness with another.'

That kind of pragmatic balancing act is classic Schumacher doctrine (4) ..... . It characterises his lifelong preoccupation with the scale of things; it wasn't that he thought everything big was automatically ugly but rather that we'd lost the art of gauging 'human scale' in terms of what works best in practice for individuals and society. .

In the gentlest of ways, he often remonstrated with environmentalists for being oblivious to such social and economic concerns. He couldn't understand why they were more concerned with the damage being done to wildlife than with that being done to the human mind (5) .... – 'the rotting of brains of millions of workers could be classed as the worst pollution of all.'

A even though this was the standard ecoposition in those days
B without which society cannot function satisfactorily
C and typical of environmentalists of his day
D through exposure to degrading and soulless work
E of the classic all-consuming capitalist Western civilisation
F without ever assessing the real benefits they derive from that growth
G and often advocated the benefits of 'a culture of poverty'
H and one of the reasons he is still so relevant
I without any form of quality of life
J of what we now call

8 Wordcheck – The environment

Match the two-word collocations in columns A and B and then use them to complete the sentences below. The first one is shown as an example.

A

illegal
national
logging
~~water~~
long
lead-free
rare
natural
forest
conservation

B

petrol
poaching
~~shortage~~
policy
species
rights
habitat
parks
lifespan
fire

1 Climate change and desertification is leading to serious *water shortages* for people, animals and plants in some countries.

2 The use of .... is being promoted to improve air quality in many large cities with a great deal of traffic.

3 Every developing country needs a clear .... to avoid destroying their natural resources for quick money.

4 A large area of vegetation and many animals were destroyed in the ....

5 The White Rhino is now a very .... indeed with only a few thousand animals still alive.

6 .... for ivory accounts for the slaughter of hundreds of 'protected' adult elephants every year.

7 Larger mammals often have a very .... – some live for over 120 years!

8 Selling the .... to ancient forests results in only short-term wealth and long-term environmental disaster.

9 With so many forest areas being destroyed, a great deal of wildlife is losing its ....

10 Many countries now see the advantages of setting up .... in which animals and plants are legally protected.

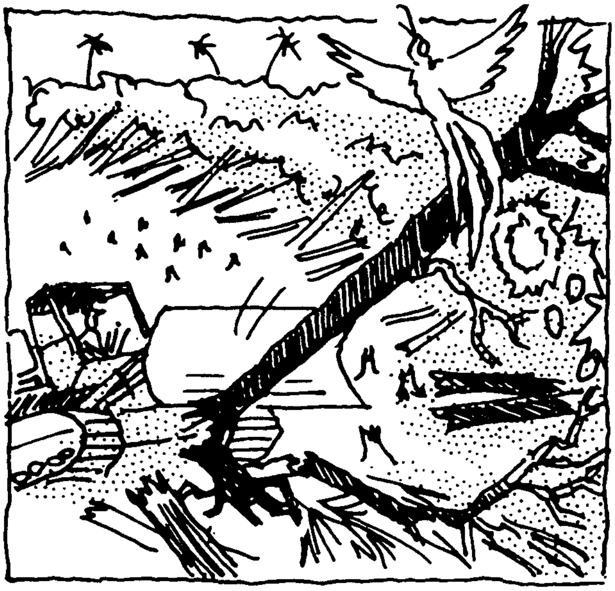

Progress Test Three

Units 9 – 11

1 Structural cloze

For questions 1–15, complete the following passage by writing each missing word in the space. Use one word only for each space. The exercise begins with an example (0).

A mountain excursion

My friend, Nigel, (0) ....*who*....... had just completed an advanced orienteering course, had somehow (1) .... me to go on an excursion across the mountains with him. When we set out just after lunch, it had been clear and sunny but for the past hour or so it had been getting foggier and foggier. We had been walking along under a blanket of thick fog for about half an hour (2) .... Nigel suddenly turned to me and announced we were lost!

'Oh, that's marvellous!' I said. 'First of all you (3) .... me come on this stupid hike with you, you lead me up a mountain in the fog and now you tell me we're lost! I thought you knew (4) .... to read a map.'

'I (5) ....,' protested Nigel. 'it's just that all the landmarks have been covered by this fog.'

'OK, OK, but it's getting dark now, what are we going to do?' I asked.

'We'll have to find somewhere to spend the night,' he said ominously.

We walked on a little way (6) .... we came up against an old stone wall (7) .... seemed to be part of an old farmhouse (8) .... I supposed had been abandoned by its former occupants.

'Well, it looks like survival tactics from now on,' said Nigel, apparently enjoying the idea. 'The (9) .... it gets, the better I like it,' he added with a grin, (10) .... me to wonder if he wasn't getting a little overexcited.

'Right, (11) .... we need now is some firewood. (12) .... I go and get some, you stay here and unpack the survival kit from the bottom of my rucksack,' ordered Nigel as he disappeared into the fog.

(13) .... about five minutes, he came back with an armful of sticks which appeared to have been cut into convenient lengths and just left on the mountain.

'OK, I'm going to try and fix up a shelter against the wall. In the (14) ...., you get a fire started,' he barked.

No (15) .... had I got the fire started than I heard a movement. I turned round to see a little old lady looking at me rather angrily.

'What on earth do you think you're doing in my field? For goodness sake put that wood back, I need it to repair the fence with.'

2 Phrasal verbs

Complete each of the following sentences with the appropriate form of a suitable phrasal verb. An example is provided.

Example: I enjoy *looking through* the encyclopaedia from time to time.

1 Sheila .... her duties well enough but she's just not interested in her job.
2 When I woke up, everyone else had gone to bed and the fire had ....
3 We were on holiday there when the civil war ....
4 Don't forget to .... your job application before this Friday.
5 There was so much snow that our village was completely .... and food had to be brought in by helicopter.

3 Error correction

In most of the lines of the following text there is a mistake connected with the verbs (tense, form, agreement, etc). Underline each mistake and write the correction in the space at the end of the line. If there is no mistake in a line, put a tick (✓) in the space. The exercise begins with two examples (0).

Solving the elk problem

Motorists who find themselves driving along the lonely roads	0	✓
through Sweden's extensive pine forests were more relaxed these	0	*are*
days. Small plastic bottles which are being hung from roadside	1	....
trees had calmed their deepest fear – colliding with an elk!	2	....
Each bottle contain a pungent blend of animal fat and wolf's	3	....
urine. The idea is simple – because wolves are hunting elks the	4	....
smell makes the elks to avoid the roads like the plague.	5	....
'It really works, we're very exciting about it,' said spokesman	6	....
Lars Olofson, adding that 25,000 accidents have been caused	7	....
by elks every year, according to research he's just completed.	8	....
The cost of protecting the roads will have been cut by the new	9	....
potion, which cost only 2 krona per metre compared with 40	10	....
krona per metre for the traditional metal fences used before.	11	....
The wolf cocktail had been invented two years ago by Mr	12	....
Olofson's father, who used it to stop elks to eat his onions.	13	....
'It's a top-secret formula,' added Lars, 'if everyone started	14	....
using it, the elks would soon have become desensitised to it	15	....
and perhaps they would no longer feared their old enemy – the wolf!'	16	....

4 Discourse cloze

For questions 1–6, read through the following text and then choose from the list A–J the best phrase to fit each of the spaces. Write one letter (A–J) in the spaces. The exercise begins with an example (0).

Mystery of the dying frogs

Many of the world's amphibians, particularly frogs and toads, are becoming extinct faster than scientists can determine the causes. At the Third World Congress of Herpetology, held in Prague in August, (0) .J.. . Serious declines and several probable extinctions have been reported from the Pacific North West of America, from Central America and from Western Australia. While most amphibian declines around the world are attributable to habitat destruction (1) .... , some species (but not all) have declined rapidly in nature reserves, national parks and other areas (2) ..... .

Karen Lips, of the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute in Panama, has found large numbers of dead and dying frogs along streams. The disease which has killed them seems to be moving southwards through the mountains of Central America. One symptom is a thickening of the skin, (3) ..... . This appears to be caused by a protozoan parasite. A similar organism may also be responsible for the deaths of thousands of frogs in the mountains of Queensland, Australia. Urgent research is under way (4) ..... .

Typically, herpetologists have had to respond to these declines (5) ..... . Now, recent work by Ross Alford, of James Cook University, Australia, has suggested one way to detect a decline early on; measure a frog's limbs. His study has shown that fluctuating asymmetry (random variation in the size of paired structures on the left and right side of the body) increases in the limbs of frogs (6) ..... .

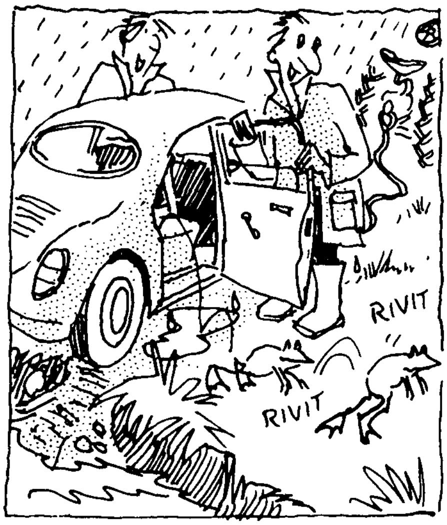

A to determine if this is indeed the case
B set aside for the protection of biodiversity
C as quickly as possible under the circumstances
D as their population size declines
E in all these three areas
F into the effects of DDT on amphibians in the US and Kenya
G after they have occurred
H which effectively smothers the frog
I which have built up immunity to such diseases
J it became clear that the phenomenon is a global one

5 Word formation

Read the texts below. Use the words in the boxes to form one word that fits in the same numbered spaces in the texts. The exercise begins with an example (0).

Afraid of giving

Just as women are afraid of receiving, so men are afraid of giving. To extend himself in giving to others means to risk (0) ......failure...... , correction and disapproval. These consequences are most (1) .... because deep inside his unconscious he holds an (2) .... belief that he is not good enough. This belief was formed and reinforced in (3) .... every time he thought he was expected to do better. When his (4) .... went unnoticed or were (5) .... , deep in his unconscious he began forming the belief that he was not good enough. A man is particularly vulnerable to this belief. It generates within him the fear of failing. He wants to give but is afraid he will fail, so he doesn't try. If his biggest fear is (6) .... , he is naturally going to avoid any (7) .... risks.

Cross-cultural misunderstandings

Many visitors to Britain find the natives' (8) .... frequently rather strange and occasionally totally (9) .... One of the most common complaints is that we are cold and (10) .... In fact, all we are trying to do is to 'mind our own business' and not to interfere in other people's. This may also make us appear (11) .... in foreign visitors. We are also seen as far too (12) .... , forever going round saying 'Sorry' and 'I beg your pardon'. Again, our main concern is to avoid any degree of (13) .... On the other hand, foreign visitors often appear (unintentionally) (14) .... to the British. What to a Spaniard is a wholly (15) .... click of the fingers to attract attention is highly insulting to a British barworker and practically guarantees a drink-free evening!

0 FAIL
1 PAIN
2 CORRECT
3 CHILD
4 ACCOMPLISH
5 APPRECIATE
6 ADEQUATE
7 NECESSARY

8 BEHAVE
9 COMPREHEND
10 FRIEND
11 INTEREST
12 APOLOGY
13 EMBARRASS
14 POLITE
15 OFFEND

12 ▶ Living Dangerously

1 Collocations and idioms

Fill in the gaps in the sentences below to create suitable collocations and idioms connected with risk and danger. The first one has been done for you.

1 Chris was cautioned by the police for *exceeding* the speed limit.
2 Every time you make a parachute jump you're taking your life in your own h...................... .
3 Modern society has become so 'safe' that people pay good money to e...................... themselves to more risk!
4 Teenagers often show a r...................... disregard for their own safety.
5 Val was d...................... with death, driving so fast on an icy road.
6 The popularity of so-called a...................... holidays is indicative of how important thrills are in our lives.
7 This crossroads is a notorious accident b...................... – five people have been killed here in the last six months.
8 People need to be trained to deal with fires before they get out of h...................... .
9 An enormous crowd gathered to watch the motorbike riders do their d...................... stunts.
10 We had a really n...................... escape – the avalanche missed our cabin by a few metres.
11 You're really playing with f...................... if you agree to take part in that dishonest deal.
12 I'm not risking my n...................... in that old car. I'd rather walk!
13 With no money and nowhere to spend the night, Walter was in a bit of a tight c...................... .
14 George is skating on very thin i...................... – one more mistake and the boss is going to fire him.
15 Going into my headmaster's study really felt like entering the lion's d...................... – I was terrified!

2 Emphatic structures

Rewrite the following sentences to make them more emphatic. Look at the underlined words and any other words given in brackets to help you. See the example in number one.

1 We'd never seen such a huge wolf.
Never had we seen such a huge wolf.
2 I'd really like to try bungee-jumping. (The thing ...)
3 The greatest cause of accidents is inexperience not recklessness.
4 There wasn't a fire escape anywhere in the entire hotel!
5 Visitors must not approach the cages under any circumstances.
6 Most young people need a sense of danger in their lives. (What ...)
7 We didn't see a living soul for over two months!
8 They weren't rescued until three days after the accident. (It ...)
9 She'd no sooner left hospital than she went sky-diving again!
10 I really love the rush of adrenalin I get when I go skiing.

3 Phrasal verbs

▶Language check, SB page 205

3.1 Tense and structure

Complete the following sentences with phrasal verbs from the box below. Use the right tense or structure. The first one is shown as an example.

~~break out~~	bring out	cut off
get over	put down to	put out

1 Quick action by the police prevented fighting from *breaking out* between rival groups of fans after the football match.
2 Sports commentators have .... her poor performance .... lack of training.
3 The magazine article .... the more unpleasant side to the actor's personality.
4 The gas supply was .... for about four hours as they had to repair some leaking pipes.

5 Herbie asked them to .... their cigarettes as he is allergic to smoke.
6 As Consuelo didn't speak any English, it was rather difficult for her to .... what she wanted us to do.
7 In the Middle Ages, there was very little you could do if a smallpox epidemic .... near your home.
8 I phoned to let them know which plane I'd be on but I was .... before I could tell them.

3.2 Different meanings

Use a good English/English dictionary to find different uses for the phrasal verbs in the box in 3.1. The first one has been done for you.

1 I hear FIAT have *brought out* a new model but I haven't seen it yet.
2 I know they split up over three years ago but he's never really .... her.
3 Jack shouldn't have spent so much time and money on the publicity campaign – still, he'll just have to .... it .... experience.
4 He looked a bit different last time I saw him, maybe because he'd .... his ponytail ....
5 She .... the problem of lack of time by hiring a house-cleaner.
6 The prison is supposed to be high security but twelve prisoners .... last month.
7 The radio station .... a warning about the severe weather only minutes before it arrived!
8 She's an exceptional teacher. She .... the best in all her pupils.

4 Past tenses

▶Focus on Grammar, SB page 205

Correct any mistakes you find in the following sentences. Not all of them are wrong. See the example given.

1 There was a power cut while we ~~watched~~ *were watching* the film on TV last night.
2 Did you ever get into trouble at school when you were a kid?
3 Florencia never saw snow until she went to Scotland.
4 Just how many patients did Dr Harris examine so far this week?
5 Oh, what a lovely hat! Where have you bought it?
6 Mr Wolf has worked at the bank for 25 years before his retirement last May.
7 I've been writing ten letters this morning – I need a rest!
8 By the time we got to the theatre the play already started.
9 How long did you live in Italy for? Three years but then I got homesick.
10 I was sitting on the train for ten minutes when I realised I'd left my suitcase on the platform!
11 Exactly what were you doing at eleven o'clock yesterday evening, sir?
12 When I looked out of the window, I realised it had snowed for hours and there was no chance of getting back down the mountain.
13 That's the third time Sam crashed the car this month!
14 Just think, this time last week we rode a camel in the desert!
15 Of course it has rained. Look how wet the road is.

5 Conditionals

▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 205

5.1 Conditional 3

In the following sentences, put the verbs in brackets in the correct tense to form 3rd or mixed conditionals. Put any other words in brackets in the correct place. An example is given.

1 If I *hadn't seen* (not see) it with my own eyes, I *wouldn't have believed* (not believe) it!
2 We .... (still live) in Cardiff if we .... (not find) someone to buy our house last year.
3 If Hilary .... (look) out of the window at that moment, she .... (not spot) the criminals trying to break into her car.
4 Nobody .... (ever guess) he was a thief if he .... (not catch) red-handed taking money from the safe.
5 Henry .... (not ever get) that job at the bank if he .... (not go) to school with the manager's son.
6 Just think, if I .... (take) that job with the export/import company, I .... (live) in São Paulo now, not Manchester!
7 If the doctor .... (not notice) the defect when I was a child, I .... (be) practically blind by now.
8 We .... (be) home in bed ages ago if you .... (not lose) the map!
9 Frank .... (not be) here today if that boy .... (not know) how to do artificial respiration.
10 If you .... (listen) to the traffic report on the radio this morning, we .... (not sit) here in this jam!

5.2 1st, 2nd, 3rd and mixed conditionals

Rewrite the following sentences as conditionals. The first one is shown as an example.

1 Eric was with us so we didn't get lost.
If *Eric hadn't been with us, we would have got lost.*
2 We got soaking wet on Sunday and now we've all got colds.
If ....
3 I'm afraid I don't know so I can't tell you.
If ....
4 Because the train was 10 minutes late I managed to catch it.
I ....
5 The weather could be bad on Saturday, in which case we'll have to cancel the barbecue.
We ....
6 I'm living in Italy because I got married to an Italian.
I ....
7 Sorry I didn't phone you but I lost the bit of paper with your number on it.
I ....
8 We don't get on very well because she's so aggressive.
If ....
9 There's the possibility of a train strike on Monday so I might not be able to come.
If ....
10 We've got a broken window because you and your friends were playing football in the back yard!
We ....
11 They're so reserved that I speak to them very infrequently.
I ....
12 I missed the end of the film so I don't know who the murderer was.
If ....
13 Jimmie's father might buy him a new bike; it depends on him passing his exams.
If ....
14 As we'd already seen the film we didn't go to the cinema.
We ....
15 Zoe tripped and fell just as she was about to win the race.
Zoe ....

STUDY TIP Conditionals

▶ Each conditional has a more formal equivalent:

Type 1: If you arrive late, go straight to my office.
Should you arrive late, go straight to my office.

Type 2: If we reduced the price, we'd make no profit.
Were we to reduce the price, we'd make no profit.
(N.B. This is a very uncommon form.)

Type 3: If she had phoned, I would have met her.
Had she phoned, I would have met her.

6 Dependent prepositions

Complete the following sentences with the correct prepositions. The first one has been done as an example.

1 Exercising without first warming up can lead *to* injury.
2 John takes a very irresponsible attitude .... his own safety – he never wears a crash helmet.
3 We sat there speculating .... how the accident might have happened.
4 There were so many people queuing .... a go on the 'Wall of Death' that we decided to try the 'Ghost Train'.
5 Fiona's twisted ankle prevented her .... going skating.
6 Many people seem to enjoy exposing themselves .... risk.
7 You need to be able to devote a lot of time .... practice if you want to become a top athlete.
8 Walking in the snow for over six hours led .... frostbite in Carl's toes.
9 We spent loads of money .... new equipment for our camping holiday.
10 At weekends, our husbands indulge .... war games. They're like big kids really.

7 Writing – Article

You have been asked to write an article of about 250 words for a local newspaper advertising a new Adventure Park which is opening next week just outside the town. Expand the following notes to write your article to attract as many people as possible to the Park.

Name: Tamford Towers Adventure Park

Opening: next Saturday at noon

Cost: cheapest in Britain – lots of 'family deals'

Clients: suitable for all the family – toddlers, teenagers and adults, something for everybody

Rides: ten fantastic rides – full of thrills – ranging from traditional water splash (bit boring?) to 'Screwball'-type of crazy high-speed spinner and 'The Abyss' – vertical drop for 10 metres totally exhilarating and many others.

Other attractions: small zoo – penguins (feeding times 11 am and 5 pm), camels, rhinos and 'Uncle Ted's Farmyard' with chickens, sheep, goats, etc for younger kids

Facilities: large playground for little kids, cafe-style restaurant, pub, souvenir shop (full of great stuff), refreshment kiosks around the park, plenty of toilets, huge free car parking area!

8 Structural cloze

For questions 1–15, complete the following extract by writing each missing word in the space. Use only one word for each space. The exercise begins with an example.

A rescue (0) *was* underway in the Scottish Highlands last night (1) .... a team of six climbers fell 500ft on Creag Meagaidh in Inverness-shire. Initial reports (2) .... that several of the party were seriously injured. Helicopters from RAF Kinloss and HMS Gannet were scrambled (3) .... the scene of the accident, (4) .... happened around 4.30 pm yesterday. The RAF Sea King was flying the injured mountaineers to a rendezvous point from (5) .... the naval helicopter was taking (6) .... on to Raigmore Hospital, 35 miles (7) .... the north. A hospital spokesman said that (8) .... the six climbers, two were stretcher cases and the (9) .... four were 'walking wounded'.

It is understood the six climbers were all roped (10) .... when they came off the 3,700ft mountain, which (11) .... four miles north of the southern tip of Loch Laggan. The fall was witnessed by (12) .... team of climbers, (13) .... managed to raise the alarm shortly before 5 pm.

The Cairngorm and Lochaber mountain rescue teams, (14) .... with sister units from RAF Kinloss and Leuchars, were called (15) .... in the biggest night-time rescue operation in the Highlands this year.

9 Wordcheck – Fire

There are 18 words connected with fire and fire fighting in the box below. You will find 6 horizontally, 8 vertically and 4 diagonally. Three have been found for you.

C	R	T	A	S	P	A	R	K	S	T	U	R
F	O	E	Y	M	D	E	M	B	E	R	S	E
U	R	N	B	O	I	X	A	R	L	B	O	S
H	A	G	F	U	B	T	P	I	N	A	T	C
O	V	I	L	L	R	I	F	G	E	L	Z	U
S	I	N	E	D	A	N	T	A	N	A	G	E
E	B	E	D	E	F	G	L	D	N	R	O	F
K	S	P	V	R	A	U	R	E	T	M	B	I
A	M	C	F	M	H	I	O	A	X	C	E	R
E	F	L	A	M	E	S	O	M	T	L	S	E
W	I	G	U	P	N	H	E	A	T	I	R	M
I	S	M	O	K	E	E	K	T	O	L	O	A
H	U	T	Y	S	A	R	S	O	N	T	A	N

13 ▶ Mind and Body

1 Pronouns – object, reflexive and reciprocal

Correct any mistakes in the use of pronouns in the following sentences. See the example in number one.

1 When her sister left home, Mary finally had a bedroom all to ~~her~~ *herself.*
2 OK. Let's meet ourselves outside the disco at ten.
3 Did you do all this by you or did someone help you?
4 We were shown around the factory by the Chairman himself.
5 Some of the people hurt itself trying to climb over the fence.
6 You should enclose a self-addressed envelope if you want them to send the material back to yourself.
7 John really prides himself on his Italian pronunciation and no one has the heart to tell him it's terrible!
8 I don't really understand it myself but my wife does.
9 How many other people from Bath went to the meeting besides you?
10 Oh come on, can't you make ourselves a cup of tea? I haven't got time.
11 I'm not surprised they're splitting up, they never really talked to themselves.
12 People say that talking to yourself is the first sign of madness.
13 Us as parents can fully understand how you must have felt.
14 We are looking for a penfriend for each of ourselves.
15 They arrived early in the morning and had the whole beach to them.
16 Nicola and Kim are so happy together, it's as though they were made for themselves.

2 Past tenses for hypothetical situations

▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 213

Complete the sentences to express your thoughts for each of the following situations. Look at the example given.

1 Your dream is to be able to surf.
I wish I could surf!

2 Your colleague keeps interrupting you when you're speaking.
I'd rather you ....

3 It's ten to nine and your sister has to be at the station by nine!
Come on, it's time you ....

4 You lost your temper at work this morning and now you're sorry.
I wish I ....

5 Your brother is pretending not to have seen his old girlfriend.
Why are you acting as though ....

6 You think your friend might lose his job and he should think about this possibility.
But suppose you ....

7 A friend has rather stupidly given your phone number to an insurance agent.
I'd rather you ....

8 Someone who's rather wealthy is always complaining about having no money.
Oh, stop talking as if you ....

9 You're depressed because you have to go back to work tomorrow.
If only I ....

10 A passenger on a boat stopped you from falling overboard by holding on to your belt!
If he ....

11 The cold, cloudy British weather is getting you down.
I really wish ....

12 You dream of being rich and travelling round the world in your own plane.
If I ....

STUDY TIP Past tenses for hypothetical situations

▶ Remember that in English we use past tenses to talk about an imaginary action or state which isn't true/isn't happening or wasn't true/didn't happen:
e.g. I wish she was happy. = she's not happy at the moment
If only she'd studied for the exam. = she didn't study

3 Vocabulary

3.1 Word building ▶ Language Check, SB page 217

Complete the sentences below with suitable nouns or adjectives formed from the words given in brackets. See the example provided.

1 Tony is a terribly *competitive* (compete) person.
2 Most adolescents go through periods of great .... (insecure).
3 Limited exposure to the sun's rays can be .... (benefit) to health.
4 Daniel shows very little .... (aware) of how others see him.
5 The confusion over the diplomats' names caused a great deal of .... (embarrass).
6 Although she appeared calm, you could hear the .... (anxious) in her voice.
7 I've always regarded him as a man of great .... (sincere).
8 Monica was always very .... (resent) of the fact that she was never given the chance of going to university.
9 I'm really fed up with her air of superiority – she's just so .... (dismiss) of everyone else's ideas.
10 Oh, it's a delightful little restaurant. Tasteful decor, excellent food and, most important, ... (attend) waiters!

3.2 Adjectives

Make any necessary corrections to the adjectives in the sentences below. The mistake may be either of logic or word formation. The exercise starts with an example.

11 The British are generally regarded as an ~~inemotional~~ *unemotional* race.
12 What's wrong? You seem very uncontented with your job these days.
13 No one is completely unvulnerable to stress.
14 The police were not fooled by their unconvincing story.
15 I wouldn't trust him at all. He's one of the most unhonest men I know.
16 They seemed unaware that there was anyone else in the room.
17 The children were impatient for the film to start.
18 I couldn't help thinking that all their lavish praise was really unsincere.
19 I'm afraid Joan is very disattentive in lessons.
20 He's not very good-looking but, there again, he's not inattractive either.

4 Phrasal verbs

Fill in the gaps in the following passage with suitable phrasal verbs in the correct form. The first one has been done for you.

Top dogs and underdogs

The people I work with (1) *fall into* two main groups – those who do the bullying (the aggressors) and those who get bullied (the victims). Their distinctive behaviour is most apparent in meetings. The first thing that (2) .... them .... is their body language. I've even seen a 'victim' (3) .... their chair for an 'aggressor' and (4) .... standing for an hour instead! When it comes to speaking, a typical 'victim' will (5) .... in mid-sentence if an 'aggressor' so much as looks in their direction! And even when a 'victim' is talking heatedly about something important, an 'aggressor' can easily (6) .... him or her .... and state their own view. Not only that but after the meeting the 'victim' usually finds himself (7) .... the wishes of an 'aggressor'. Bearing all this in mind, I have decided to (8) .... all sorts of aspects of psychology and get each group to (9) .... the fact that they need to change their behaviour patterns.

5 Dictionary skills

In all of the following exercises you should use a good English/English dictionary to help you find the answers.

5.1 Collocations

Some of the following sentences, which contain actions and parts of the body you do them with, are incorrect. Correct any mistakes, as in the example.

1 Please stop drumming your ~~thumbs~~ fingers on the table – it's driving me mad!
2 Steve screwed his face up in pain when he accidentally banged his head on the low doorway.
3 The station guard shrugged his arms unhelpfully when I asked him where the nearest bank was.
4 I couldn't help clapping my palms with joy when I heard I'd finally passed my driving test.
5 Bill's such a spoilt child – if he doesn't get his own way he stamps his legs and screams until you give in.
6 The old woman shook her fist at the children stealing apples from her garden.
7 Everyone nodded their necks in agreement at the director's proposal for increasing sales.
8 I cupped my hands and drank greedily from the mountain stream.

5.2 Metaphors and idioms

Match up the beginnings and endings of the following sentences and add a word from the box below to make a suitable metaphor or idiom.

ears	teeth	foot	nail	eye
teeth	heart	heels	thumbs	hand

9 Sally's prepared to fight tooth and .... ☐
10 I really put my .... in it ☐
11 When I was at school ☐
12 The debate got completely out of .... ☐
13 The train was about to leave as we got to the station ☐
14 It's no good warning Judy about Harry; ☐
15 I keep dropping things today; ☐
16 Robin lied through his .... ☐
17 Can you keep an .... on my luggage, ☐
18 Sorry, but I just can't make it to the dinner party; ☐

A but we just caught it by the skin of our ....
B to keep possession of her house.
C when the police asked him about his movements last Friday evening.
D I tried to learn Shakespeare's sonnets by ....
E she's head over .... in love with him.
F I'm up to my .... in work.
G I've got to go to the toilet for a minute.
H I seem to be all fingers and ....
I when I asked her about her job – she's been sacked!
J when two old ladies started hitting each other with their handbags.

STUDY TIP

Learning idioms and metaphors

▶ A good way to remember an idiom or a metaphor is to draw a picture of it (it doesn't have to be very good) – this will help you remember better than simply writing it down! Use the 4-column method shown below.

PICTURE	FIRST LETTERS	IDIOM	EXAMPLE SENTENCE
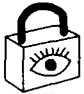	k..... a..... e..... o.....	keep an eye on	Could you keep an eye on my bag while I go to the toilet
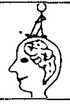	o..... t..... b.....	have something on the brain	Robert must have golf on the brain – he never stops talking about it!

Once you have created this grid, you can test yourself by covering everything except the pictures with a piece of paper to see if you can remember. If you can't, slide the piece of paper to the right to reveal the first letter. Try it, it works.

6 Expressions of concession

▶ Study box, SB page 218

Use a suitable expression of concession to complete the following sentences. Initial letters are provided to help you. See the example.

1 *Although* she didn't have the right qualifications, she was offered the job.
2 We can't seem to save any money n................ m................ how hard we try!
3 M................ a................ we enjoyed our time in India, we wouldn't want to go and live there again.
4 They managed to find their way out of the jungle i................ s................ o................ not having a map or compass.
5 W................ we appreciate how much work you've put into the project, it's just not what we wanted.
6 You'll end up spending lots of money w................ airline you fly with.
7 H................ difficult it might seem now, you'll be glad you did it in the end.
8 D................ t................ f................ t................ they phoned well in advance, all the tickets had been sold.
9 I'm sorry but we're going to have to economise, w................ you might think.
10 H................ h................ we tried, we just couldn't make ourselves understood.

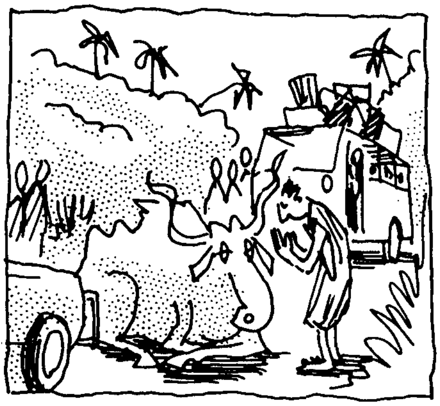

7 Vocabulary

▶ Focus on Vocabulary, SB page 220

Complete the following sentences with suitable collocations connected with the body. Initial letters are provided to help you. The first one has been done for you.

1 Jake sounded relaxed but his *body language* showed he was feeling threatened.
2 It was a h................ c................, so they were lucky nobody was killed.
3 We were so far away we tried to communicate using h................ s................ .
4 Steve wants a serious h................ t................ about our relationship - I'm dreading it!
5 I'm sorry. I spoke without thinking. It was a k................ r................ .
6 Annie gave us a quick .... s................ of her life as a double agent during the Cold War.
7 And then there was an e................ n................ as the gigantic wave crashed down on to the boat.
8 Carla is very insecure. She never makes e................ c................ when talking to you.
9 I have terrible b................ c................ . My toes turn blue in the winter months!
10 Judy told us a h................ s................ about finding giant spiders under the bed when she was living in the Amazon.

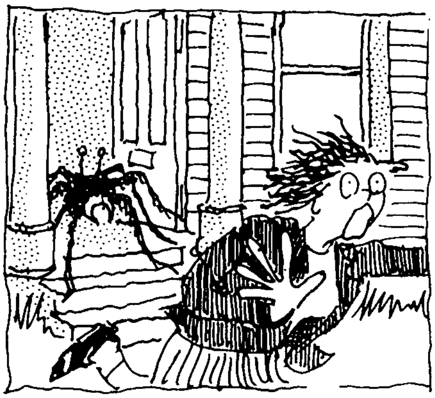

8 Word formation

For questions 1–15, read the two texts below. Use the words given to form one word that fits in the same numbered space in the text. The exercise begins with an example (0).

Take care in the sun

The sun should be enjoyed but (0) *overexposure* can cause sunburn, leading to (1) .... skin ageing and increased risk of skin cancer. It is the ultraviolet rays which cause this; even in the UK they can damage your skin, and UV is much more (2) .... the nearer the equator you go. You should stay out of the sun during the 2 hours around midday, use shade at other times, a sun hat and (3) .... woven but loose clothing. (4) .... creams suitable for your skin type can help protect (5) .... exposed parts of the body. A further sun related risk is heatstroke, caused by (6) .... Avoid strenuous activity during the hottest hours and make sure you drink plenty of (7) .... drinks (best is water which has been boiled or soft drinks from sealed cans or bottles) to replace body fluids.

0 EXPOSE
1 MATURE
2 POWER
3 TIGHT
4 PROTECT
5 AVOID
6 HEAT
7 ALCOHOL

Plastic surgery

Most impressive is Dr Ohana's (8) .... to the individual needs of his patients, honed by (9) .... experience and his earlier career as a doctor. Born in Marrakech in 1951, Ohana grew up in an (10) .... household. When Ohana was 10, however, his father severed the nerves and tendons of a hand and he could no longer play a musical instrument. Moved by the devastating effect this had on his father and his (11) .... route to (12) .... , Ohana decided to become a doctor. He became a surgeon, specialising in cancer patients. It was during this period that he learnt the (13) .... of finding out how patients feel (14) .... He believes it to be a crucial element in cosmetic surgery. 'No matter how able a surgeon is, the success of an operation depends entirely on why the patient has come for a (15) .... ,' he says.

8 SENSITIVE
9 CHILD
10 ART
11 PAIN
12 RECOVER
13 IMPORTANT
14 EMOTION
15 CONSULT

8 Writing – Character reference

Read through the following character reference written for someone who has applied for a job as a member of staff at an exclusive Health Farm and make any changes you think are necessary. See the example.

~~About my acquaintance~~ Ms Maria Hempel

Dear Sir or Madam,

I'm dropping you a line in support of Ms Maria Hempel's application to become a resident health and fitness trainer at your place. I've known Maria for getting on for about ten years in her job as aerobics instructor at the gym which I'm manager of – 'Avalon Club' is its name.

The first thing I must say about her is that she's brilliant at teaching aerobics. The feedback forms I get people to fill in have all rated her extremely highly. The only little niggle some of the older people had was with her pink hair but I expect she'll change that if she gets the job at your posh place.

I also know she has been following a health and nutrition course and has just passed the exams and got another certificate.

But Maria is not just a good instructor she's also always on time, never away through illness, and a humorous and well-liked member of the gym instructors' team who gets on like a house on fire with everybody.

In a nutshell, I'd say Maria will make an excellent member of staff for you. We'll all be sad to see her go from here and I'll certainly find it hard to get anyone as good as her again.

Best wishes,

Jim Long

14 ▶ Testing Times

1 Review of grammatical and syntactical structures

▶ Focus on Grammar, SB page 229

Most (but not all) of the sentences in the following sections contain classic mistakes. Correct those you find. See the example provided.

1.1 Tense forms and time

1 By this time next month we *will have finished* ~~will finish~~ all our exams!
2 I'd rather you don't smoke indoors. Can't you go out on the balcony?
3 Is this the first time you taste Spanish food?
4 You're always leaving the lights on – it's a terrible waste of energy!
5 I really wish I was born somewhere warm, like Australia!

1.2 Conditionals

1 If only you told me it was her birthday, I'd have brought a present.
2 If you'll offer us a larger discount, we'll pay within ten working days.
3 To be honest, we'll all be quite relieved unless he comes to the meeting.
4 We'd be back in the tent now if you didn't lose the map.
5 Had we not seen the rock in time, we would definitely have crashed.

1.3 Structures after verbs

1 They tried to stop us to play cricket in the park.
2 She suggested me to speak to the Principal about my problem.
3 I'm interested to learn as much about Zimbabwe as possible before my trip next month.
4 Remember buying a card for your mother. It's her birthday next week.
5 The printer seems to be broken. Why don't you try to plug it in?

1.4 Modals/Modal perfects

1 Don't touch that – I think it can be poisonous!
2 It mustn't have been Jack you spoke to, he doesn't work here any more.
3 Although he had broken his leg, he could swim to the shore.
4 Might you have left your handbag on the bus, do you think?
5 They told us we needn't have taken warm clothes but when we got there it was absolutely freezing.

1.5 Passives

1 By the time we got to the canteen, most of the food was already eaten.
2 Having been made redundant, Josh decided to emigrate.
3 I think my eyes need being tested, I keep getting terrible headaches.
4 Members are requested to provide proof of identity.
5 Unfortunately, Rory's record collection got damaged when he moved house.

1.6 Linking devices

1 Despite he lived in Germany for a year, he couldn't speak a word of the language.
2 We had to cancel the course due of the low number of enrolments.
3 The reason for she studied languages was to work as a tour guide.
4 Poor dietary habits are a major reason of heart disease.
5 Football is an exciting spectator sport, however cricket can be rather boring.

1.7 Participle clauses

1 Lived in the countryside as a boy, I missed out on a lot of things.
2 Suddenly I recognised the man lying in the shop doorway.
3 Never flying before, Ronald seemed rather anxious just before take-off.
4 Terry learnt to ski while living in Canada.
5 My mother who lives in Bath is a school teacher.

1.8 Emphatic structures

1 No sooner we'd arrived at the bar when it closed.
2 Not only dirty was the hotel room, it was also freezing cold!

3 Only when the detective turned over the body did he realise the full horror of the crime.
4 What do we want is a direct answer not yet another carefully prepared speech.
5 That's not right. It was Tchaikovsky who wrote the '1812 Overture' not Mozart.

2 -*ing* forms

2.1 ... -*ing* or infinitive?

Match up the beginnings and endings of the following sentences and add a suitable verb either with -*ing* or in the infinitive. Look at the example.

1 The train had to stop suddenly [E]
2 I'd been calling our dog for ages ☐
3 Poor Alison absolutely dreads .... ☐
4 I remember .... it in a safe place ☐
5 I meant .... you a ring to tell you I'd be late ☐
6 Polly tried .... happy and relaxed ☐
7 British Rail regrets .... passengers ☐
8 Why don't you try .... the car – ☐
9 The doctor forgot .... me how often ☐
10 After a few weeks working with Gwendoline ☐
11 Will you remember .... the gas bill ☐
12 I dread .... what would have happened ☐
13 Victor really regrets .... university ☐
14 I'll never forget .... mistaken ☐

A I had to take the tablets.
B or had I better do it myself?
C but everyone could see she'd been crying.
D but I just didn't have the time.
E *to avoid* crashing into a cow standing on the tracks!
F for a famous actor when I arrived at Madrid airport.
G if the lifeguard hadn't seen you.
H that all trains are subject to delay due to the snow.
I I came .... what an extraordinary person she was.
J before he came .... out of the wood with a rabbit in his mouth.
K but I've no idea where!
L before completing his degree.
M that might get it started?
N and has to take half a bottle of tranquillisers before she'll set foot on a plane.

2.2 -*ing* forms, infinitive with or without to

In the following sentences, circle the correct form of the verbs in bold. The first one is shown as an example.

1 I'd rather not **to/[✓ go]/going** very far in the new car until I've got used **to/drive/driving** it.
2 Max dreads **to/be/being** made redundant as he's too old **to/get/getting** another decent job.
3 I spent all afternoon **to/listen/listening** to the neighbours **to/argue/arguing** about whose turn it was to mow the lawn.
4 I noticed the girl **to/put/putting** the watch into her pocket without **to/pay/paying** for it.
5 Hadn't you better **to/start/starting to/revise/revising** for the exam?
6 I think Rodney rather resents Jessica **to/participate/participating** in the conference.
7 The fire brigade had **to/be/being** called **to/get/getting** the boys down from the roof.
8 Why not **to/go/going** by train rather than **to/take/taking** the car?
9 Louise always hated her father **to/tell/telling** her what to do.
10 The council was **to/ban/banning** all parking in the city centre but there were so many complaints they've decided not to.
11 I didn't dare to/show/showing them the damage I'd done to their car.
12 We're bound **to/run/running** out of cash so don't forget **to/bring/bringing** your credit card.
13 If this is a private matter, perhaps you'd prefer me **to/leave/leaving**.
14 Our physical education teacher used **to/make/making** us **to/go/going** swimming in an outdoor pool even in winter.

STUDY TIP -*ing* or infinitive

▶ With the verbs *remember, forget, regret* and *stop* the choice between -*ing* or the infinitive depends on whether the verb following them happens before or after.
-*ing* = before
infinitive = after
e.g. Do you remember *meeting* me last year?
meeting happened before *remember*
Did you remember *to post* that letter?
to post happened (or not) after *remember*

3 Tenses

Decide which tense is being described in each 'time line' and short description and then write an example sentence in that tense. A cross shows an individual action or event and a wavy line shows an activity happening continuously or repeatedly. Look at the example given.

1 **Past** **Now** **Future**

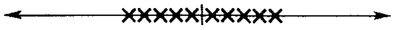

Tense = Present simple

never changing/always true

e.g. I always brush my teeth before I go to bed.

2 **Past** **Now** **Future**

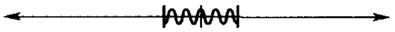

Tense = ...

happening now/during a period around now

e.g. I .... this month.

3 **Past** **Now** **Future**

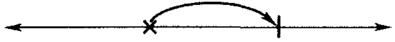

Tense = ...

past event where time is not mentioned or where the present result is more important than when the event happened

e.g. I .... so I'm not hungry, thanks.

4 **Past** **Now** **Future**

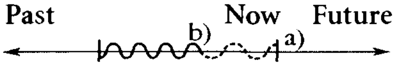

Tense = ...

action started in past and a) continuing now b) finished but evidence remains

e.g. a) I .... for an hour.

b) I .... that's why my face is so red.

5 **Past** a) b) **Now** **Future**

this time last week / the phone rang

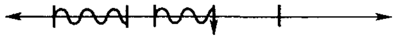

Tense = ...

activity over time in past a) at a certain time b) when another event occurred

e.g a) I .... this time last week.

b) I .... when the phone rang.

6 **Past** **Now** **Future**

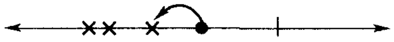

Tense = ...

event(s) in past occurring before a point of reference/another event in past

e.g. By the time the police arrived, the robbers

....

7 **Past** **Now** **Future**

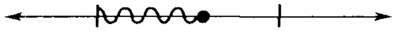

Tense = ...

activity started before and continuing up to a point of reference in past

e.g I .... for ten hours when I fell asleep exhausted.

8 **Past** **Now** **Future**
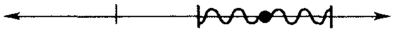
Tense = ...
activity seen as occurring around a stated time/reference point in the future
e.g. I .... this time next month.

9 **Past** **Now** **Future**
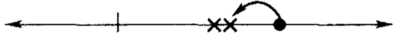
Tense = ...
future event(s) happening before another future event/point of reference
e.g I hope I .... when I meet her next week.

10 **Past** **Now** **Future**
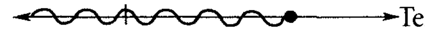
Tense = ...
activity started before and continuing up to a future point of reference
e.g. I .... for three years next June.

4 Review of tenses

In the following passage, put the verbs in brackets into a suitable (active or passive) tense and put any adverbial expressions in the correct place. The first one has been done for you.

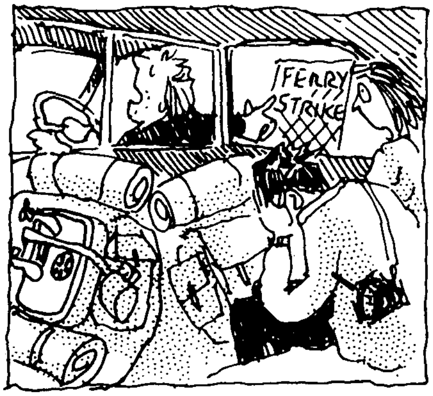

I must admit that Maria's English (1) *is improving* (improve) every day. Three weeks ago she (2) .... (manage) to book us on to the Portsmouth to Santander ferry at the local travel agent's.

The night before we (3) .... (be) due to leave, she (4) .... (ring) me up to remind me to be on time. 'Don't forget the train (5) .... (leave) at 7.35 and if we (6) .... (miss) that, we (7) .... (miss) the ferry too!' she said.

'Of course I (8) .... (get) there on time,' I replied, somewhat annoyed. 'You're the one who (9) .... (always turn up) late for things!'

Surprisingly, we both (10) .... (arrive) at the station in time (11) .... (catch) the train. We (12) .... (sit) on the train for about ten minutes when we realised, to our horror, that it (13) .... (go) in the wrong direction! We got off at the next station where a ticket seller informed us that there (14) .... (not be) another train to Portsmouth until 8.45. We explained that we had to catch the ferry at 10 o'clock. 'Well, if I (15) .... (be) you,' he said, 'I (16) .... (catch) the coach. That should get you to Portsmouth before the ferry (17) .... (sail). But you (18) .... (have) to hurry, it (19) .... (leave) the bus station in about five minutes!'

We shot off like lightning despite the heavy rucksacks on our backs and jumped on the coach just as the driver (20) .... (shut) the doors. We (21) .... (just collapse) in our seats with a sigh of relief, when the driver announced, 'Sorry everyone but the motorway (22) .... (still repair) so we (23) .... (not get) to Portsmouth until 9.45.'

We groaned in despair. That gave us only fifteen minutes to get to the ferry terminal.

We arrived at Portsmouth bus station at 9.40 and jumped straight into a taxi.

'The Santander ferry terminal and please hurry,' I shouted, 'or it (24) .... (go) before we (25) .... (get) there!'

To our astonishment, the taxi driver calmly switched off the engine and turned round.

'(26) .... you .... (not hear)?' he said, smiling, 'the ferry workers (27) .... (come) out on strike last night!'

'Oh no!' I cried in disbelief. 'If only I (28) .... (listen) to the news this morning!'

5 Writing – Report

Complete the report opposite based on the following notes. Use only one word in each space. Two examples are given for guidance.

- *CD tried out by 30 intermediate level EFL students*
- *all completed brief feedback questionnaire*
- *10 also interviewed in greater depth*
- *most liked the package – particularly chance to follow same lesson through different 'paths' i.e. grammar, pronunciation or vocabulary*
  'I love following the vocabulary path.' Marina Gomez
  'My problem is pronunciation so I follow that path.' Kimiko Kamogawa
  'I need to know the grammar or I'm not happy.' Franz Brandt
- *all liked the idea of personalised learning speed*
- *authors' worry that material was 'too low level' was unjustified*
- *some problems with pilot version – clicked on some buttons and nothing happened! → need for programmers to go through everything carefully*
- *main worry was over pronunciation strand – students couldn't really 'monitor' themselves and continued to make mistakes which they thought correct → possibility of inbuilding 'voice recognition' software?*
- *17 students did not like the graphics → definitely needs to be reworked*
  NB Most mentioned 'dull' colours
- *users unfamiliar with computer mouse couldn't cope → need for optional introductory lesson on using PC?*

Report on Boxhill Press 'Intermediate English CD ROM' (Pilot Version)

Introduction

The (1) *aim* of this report is to describe the reaction of (2) *thirty* individual students to the new 'Intermediate English CD ROM'. It is (3) .... on written (4) .... from all of the students and face-to face (5) .... with a representative number of them.

Positive notes

On the (6) .... , the students liked the CD package. (7) .... particular, they enjoyed being able to (8) .... their preferred 'path' through each unit. (9) .... to Franz Brandt, a German student, he wouldn't be happy unless he could follow the grammar path, (10) .... other students were happy to follow different paths. (11) .... , all students liked the fact that they could progress through the material at their (12) .... speed. (13) .... enough, the students all found the material sufficiently challenging at intermediate level.

Negative points

As might have been (14) .... , there were some technical problems with this pilot version. It (15) .... , for example, that several of the click boxes were inactive. In (16) .... to this, concern was expressed that less computer-literate users found mouse control difficult. More (17) .... , it was (18) .... by most students that the graphics were too dull. Perhaps an even greater (19) .... for concern at this stage is that it is impossible for students to effectively self-assess their performance on the pronunciation path.

Conclusions and recommendations

On (20) .... , it appears that Boxhill Press have produced a very promising product, which should soon establish itself as a market leader. (21) .... , it is strongly (22) .... that certain changes be made to the pilot version, (23) .... that the programmers ensure that all click-boxes are active, that Boxhill add an optional introductory lesson for the less computer-literate, that more vibrant colours be used in the graphics, and, most (24) .... , that Boxhill investigate the possibility of adding 'voice recognition' software to the CD to make the pronunciation path more effective for self-assessment.

6 Wordcheck – Studying and examinations

In the grid below there are 18 words connected with studying and taking exams: 7 are hidden horizontally, 7 vertically and 4 diagonally. When you have found them all, complete the sentences with some of them. Three have been found for you.

T	I	M	E	L	I	M	I	T	M	T
C	R	N	A	P	C	N	Q	I	F	P
A	B	E	P	R	A	H	U	S	A	E
N	M	R	V	A	K	S	E	K	I	R
D	E	V	G	I	P	S	S	C	L	F
I	M	E	R	U	S	K	T	J	K	O
D	O	S	A	M	W	I	I	V	E	R
A	R	O	D	L	E	A	O	X	T	M
T	Y	T	E	S	T	U	N	N	W	A
E	A	S	T	R	A	T	E	G	Y	N
D	I	N	K	R	I	P	A	N	I	C
O	D	P	A	P	E	R	C	I	Z	E
T	S	I	T	N	G	R	E	L	A	X

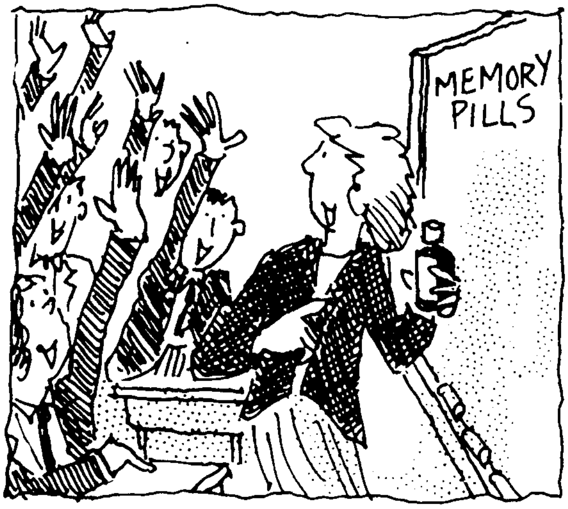

1 A student who enters for an exam is called a ....

2 It's a good idea to try and use some .... aids when preparing for the exam.

3 Another verb meaning to take an examination is ....

4 Stretching and breathing exercises can help you keep your exam .... under control.

5 Read all the .... carefully before attempting to answer them and .... all your answers before the end of the exam.

6 Most people try not only to .... the exam but also to get a good ....

7 Be careful not to spend too long on one part of the exam; remember there is a ....

8 Stay calm and try not to .... during the exam as this can badly affect your ....

7 Editing skills

In most lines of the following text there is one word which is wrongly spelled, including the use of capital letters. Underline each wrongly spelled word and write the correct spelling in the space provided. If there are no spelling mistakes in a line, indicate this with a tick (✓). Look at the examples provided (0).

If you're going skiing this winter, here's a cautionary tale.
Last december three friends decided to go on a cheap skiing
holiday in the dolomites in the north of Italy. Being an
adventureous lot, they decided to go by car, which turned out
to be Dan's ancient VW Beetle. On the way there, they had no
problems except for a little quarreling about whose turn it
was to drive. The trouble started on there first day's skiing
when Amy paniced, fell over and broke her ankle. On the
second day, Charlie woke up saying, 'I think I'm dieing'.
In fact, he had caught pneumonia. On the third day, Dan tryed
to be too clever and broke a leg! All of this meant they
payed plenty in doctor's bills and then, with nobody able to
drive, they traveled back by plane and the car went back by
train! So, all in all, it was an extremly expensive trip!

0 ✓
0 *December*
1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....
11 ....
12 ....

Progress Test Four

Units 12–14

1 Structural cloze

For questions 1–15, complete the following story by writing each missing word in the space. Use only one word for each space. The exercise begins with an example (0).

Business affairs

Jeff Weaver knew it was going to be a tough meeting. A year ago he had been regarded (0) *as* the company's rising star in the export department, signing contracts for massive orders from state-run companies in Lavania. It looked as (1) .... he had saved the company's fortunes. But all that was before the collapse of the Lavanian economy and the inevitable non-payment of most invoices.

The Managing Director, Derek Robinson, had decided to (2) .... an extraordinary meeting (3) .... look into the matter. Jeff was now about to (4) .... asked to give a detailed explanation of the disaster.

Mr Robinson coughed and tapped the table. 'Right then, everyone. Let's get (5) .... to business. I'm sure you're all aware of the reasons for this meeting. So without further preamble, I'll call on Mr Weaver who, I hope, will be able to put our minds (6) .... rest about this worrying state of affairs.'

Jeff stood up and decided to go on the attack. 'Thank you, Mr Robinson. First of all, I must admit that many mistakes have been made over the past twelve months – but not just by me! I think it's clear that I am (7) .... used as a shield to protect a number of more senior colleagues, who (8) .... have the courage to assume some responsibility for this mess. In particular, my immediate superior, Georgina Bunyon, who has never seen eye (9) .... eye with me, and who is using this crisis (10) .... a way of (11) .... me removed from the company!'

Everyone turned to look at Georgina, who was (12) .... her fists and glaring pointedly at Jeff.

'No-one (13) .... have predicted the collapse of the Lavanian economy. However, to avoid further embarrassment, I have decided to resign.' And with this, Jeff marched out of the meeting.

Two months later, Jeff and Georgina were sitting looking at Lake Como from the terrace of a beautiful villa (14) .... they had just bought with part of what they called their 'Lavanian fund'.

'Any regrets, darling?' asked Georgina.

'Only one,' said Jeff, smiling. 'I (15) .... we'd taken twice as much!'

2 Phrasal verbs

Complete each of the following sentences with the appropriate form of a suitable phrasal verb. An example is shown.

Example: We all thought the lecture would be rather boring but it *turned out* to be extremely interesting.

1 As we didn't have an instructions manual, we had to .... how to set up the stereo by trial and error.
2 It's a formal occasion so we'll have to get .... to the nines – no jeans and pullovers this time!
3 Toby's .... really well at his new job. He's already been promoted twice.
4 Sarah's really lucky. She left her car in a no-parking area for five hours and, believe it or not, she .... with it!
5 Oh dear, Helen, your glass is almost empty. Let me .... it .... for you.

3 Register cloze

For questions 1–12, read the following memo from the Director of Studies to the new Health and Safety officer of a language school and use the information to complete the numbered gaps in the fire notice. Use no more than two words for each gap. The words you need do not occur in the memo. The exercise begins with an example (0).

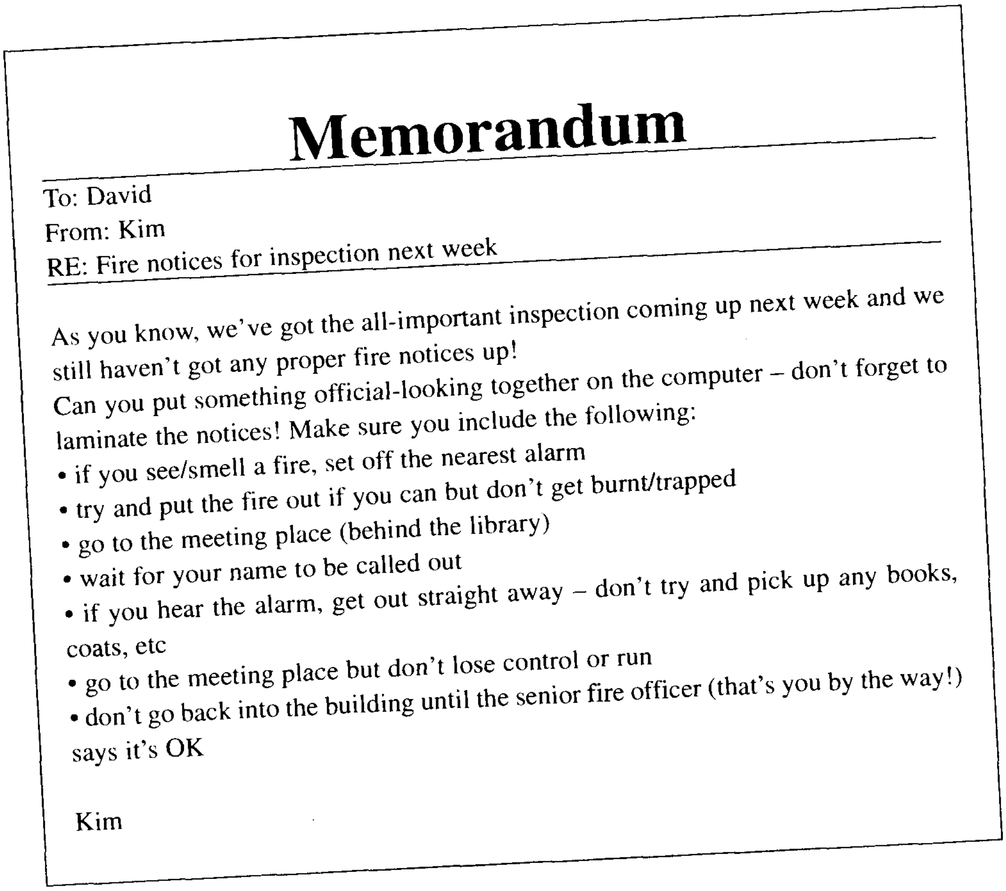

Memorandum

To: David
From: Kim
RE: Fire notices for inspection next week

As you know, we've got the all-important inspection coming up next week and we still haven't got any proper fire notices up!
Can you put something official-looking together on the computer – don't forget to laminate the notices! Make sure you include the following:
- if you see/smell a fire, set off the nearest alarm
- try and put the fire out if you can but don't get burnt/trapped
- go to the meeting place (behind the library)
- wait for your name to be called out
- if you hear the alarm, get out straight away – don't try and pick up any books, coats, etc
- go to the meeting place but don't lose control or run
- don't go back into the building until the senior fire officer (that's you by the way!) says it's OK

Kim

FIRE NOTICE

On (0) *discovering* **a fire:**

1 (1) .... the nearest fire alarm

2 (2) .... to (3) .... the fire but (4) .... risks

3 Proceed to the (5) .... point (to the (6) .... the library)

4 (7) .... roll call

On hearing the fire alarm:

1 Leave without stopping to (8) ....

2 Proceed to the library quickly but without (9) .... or running

3 (10) .... outside the building until (11) .... that it is safe (12) .... by a senior fire officer

4 Error correction

In most lines of the following text there is one unnecessary word. It is either grammatically incorrect or does not fit in with the sense of the text. For each numbered line, find the unnecessary word and then write it in the space provided. Some lines are correct. Indicate these with a tick (✓). The exercise begins with two examples (0).

Note-taking

Obsessive note-taking which is the occupational hazard of — 0 *which*
students. They believe they remember things best by writing them — 0 ✓
down. Writing things down, however, it is still a practice that can — 1 ....
be abused as it can so easily lead back to a passive and — 2 ....
unconfident attitude to books; every little point the student — 3 ....
reads may in its context be so persuasive and that he feels — 4 ....
obliged to include it in his notes, which also become an abridged — 5 ....
version of the original. What the obsessive note-taker usually — 6 ....
postpones learning by understanding till he comes to read in his — 7 ....
notes; but as such these are not always the product of — 8 ....
understanding, they may be lengthy and unreliable. Furthermore, — 9 ....
reading sentence-by-sentence or paragraph-by-paragraph note- — 10 ....
taking commits the reader to further page-by-page reading; and as — 11 ....
we shall see later, this situation is not necessarily the best — 12 ....
way of reading slowly and understanding a book. The reader's — 13 ....
notes should be both the outcome of understanding and not — 14 ....
the prelude to it. Notes written of this kind are not only far — 15 ....
more briefer, but also better organised and more personalised. — 16 ....

5 Lexical cloze

For questions 1–15, read the following passage carefully and decide which word best fits each space. The exercise begins with an example (0).

Lunatics

One of the oldest beliefs in folklore is that a full moon can (0) .B. a sane person into a madman. Robert Louis Stevenson's Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde was (1) .... by the real-life activities of Charles Hyde, who (2) .... horrendous crimes during the full moon. In 1992, Christopher Gore began a sentence at Broadmoor hospital after being (3) .... of killing his parents. He is also (4) .... of killing two others – all four crimes (5) .... to nights of the full moon. Perhaps because of the enormous amount of anecdotal evidence from people working in the emergency services, some scientific research has been conducted in this (6) .... – but the conclusions are mixed. In 1972, research at the University of Miami seemed to show that the homicide rate in the city reached a (7) .... at each full moon. In India, there is much reported violent crime around the time of the full moon – but then the Indians are famously (8) .... in the full moon and ready to (9) .... misdemeanours on the moon's influence. 'Anecdotally, (10) .... nurses say patients become more disturbed when the moon is full, and firemen report more (11) .... of arson. Indeed, scientific research does show a correlation between changed behaviour and the full moon,' Dr David Nias, (12) .... in medical psychology at St Bartholomew's Hospital, London, admitted recently. 'However, this blip is explained by the small number of people who believe in the 'full moon effect' changing their behaviour accordingly – in much the same (13) .... as believers in astrology modify their behaviour to (14) .... that associated with their star (15) .... .

0	A make	B turn	C cause	D create
1	A based	B inspired	C founded	D exemplified
2	A made	B produced	C realised	D committed
3	A charged	B arrested	C convicted	D apprehended
4	A suspected	B involved	C believed	D implicated
5	A connected	B associated	C linked	D joined
6	A department	B range	C section	D field
7	A top	B peak	C tip	D summit
8	A fascinated	B obsessed	C interested	D attracted
9	A blame	B accuse	C explain	D refer
10	A psychotic	B psychopath	C psychic	D psychiatric
11	A episodes	B accidents	C cases	D events
12	A student	B teacher	C professor	D lecturer
13	A degree	B means	C way	D amount
14	A agree	B concur	C align	D match
15	A type	B name	C sign	D symbol

6 Word formation

For questions 1–15, read the two texts below. Use the words in the boxes to form one word that fits in the same numbered spaces in the texts. The exercise begins with an example (0).

Graphology

Graphology is the study of aspects of people's (0) *handwriting* to reveal their (1) .... A graphologist would claim to be able to (2) .... you by looking at such things as how you cross your 't's or dot your 'i's or whether your words slope backwards or forwards. Decreasing margins indicate (3) .... or subordination, whereas increasing margins show (4) .... Angular joins between letters are said to show strong will power and a certain (5) .... to adapt. Many people are, of course, quite (6) .... of graphology and its claims to 'read' people's characters. When compared with the results of established psychologists' tests, graphology has been shown to be generally (7) .... and a poor indicator of true character.

0 WRITE
1 PERSON
2 CATEGORY
3 SECURE
4 GENEROUS
5 ABLE
6 DISMISS
7 RELY

One good turn deserves another

On his way to the all-important job interview at St Cake's, Rupert had foolishly stopped to help someone fix an old car, which was barely (8) .... This meant he arrived late and had oil marks on his shirt and jacket. He went into reception and was led into a waiting room with great (9) .... There were three other candidates there, who (10) .... stared in amazement at his clothes. Clearly, the (11) .... rule was smile at no-one and speak to no-one! The other three were, of course, immaculately dressed and (12) .... cool, calm and collected. Rupert suddenly felt completely (13) .... as he imagined a (14) .... scene with the interviewers barely able to hide their contempt for him as he sat, dirty and sweating, on the chair in front of them! After thirty interminable minutes, Rupert was finally called into the interview room. As he entered, a familiar-looking old man greeted him, 'Ah, Mr Chester, the man with the in-depth (15) .... of the old Rover 80!' Rupert smiled. Maybe he would get the job after all!

8 ROAD
9 SOLEMN
10 REPEAT
11 SPEAK
12 SEEM
13 COURAGE
14 NIGHTMARE
15 KNOW

Answer Key ▶

1 Use Your Head

1.1 (Suggested answers only)

2 carefully, now 3 cat, house 4 but, moreover 5 hers, mine 6 information, luggage 7 cats, houses 8 tall, funny 9 sleep, catch 10 was kidnapped, were arrested

1.2

1 adjective 2 verb 3 adverb 4 adverb 5 noun 6 adverb

1.3

2 's it going – present continuous 3 have you been waiting – present perfect continuous 4 they will have finished – future perfect simple 5 were you doing – past continuous 6 'll be able – future simple 7 Had Julia ever been – past perfect simple 8 'll have been working – future perfect continuous 9 've just had – present perfect simple 10 did you buy – past simple 11 'll be sitting – future continuous 12 We had been walking – past perfect continuous

1.4

2 to … about 3 in 4 on (about) 5 with 6 on 7 to 8 with 9 to 10 with

2.1

2 broke down/ran out of petrol 3 wash 4 you work 5 (should) see him 6 will we get to 7 I have 8 I'd slap 9 you use/look after it 10 lands 11 I spoke/could speak 12 you require (any) 13 it gets/turns 14 wouldn't get/have 15 there are/you have 16 you were shipwrecked/stranded 17 I were/was 18 it rains/'s raining 19 you be/find yourself 20 didn't (always) have

2.2

2 Although F 3 I but 4 Although H 5 Despite/In spite of J 6 A despite/in spite of 7 Although C 8 In spite G 9 B in spite 10 Despite/In spite of E

3.1

2 OK 3 think it over 4 OK 5 look through this article 6 put it off 7 OK 8 put it down 9 OK 10 give it up

3.2

2 for it 3 it out/away 4 after him 5 it up 6 it back 7 it up 8 to it 9 it over/about it 10 it in/out 11 it out 12 over it 13 it up 14 them up 15 her round

4.1

2 underestimate, overestimate 3 understate, overstate 4 undernourished, overnourished 5 undercharge, overcharge 6 understaffed, overstaffed 7 undercooked (underdone), overcooked (overdone) 8 underdressed, overdressed 9 underuse, overuse 10 underprivileged, overprivileged 11 underrate, overrate 12 underexpose, overexpose

4.2

2 overdressed 3 undersized 4 overstatement 5 underestimate 6 overstaffed 7 underused 8 overestimate 9 underdone/undercooked 10 overrated 11 understatement 12 undernourished 13 overcharge 14 underprivileged

6 Layout and style mistakes

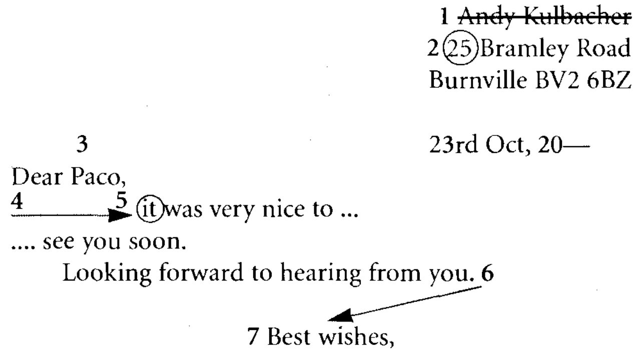

1 ~~Andy Kulbacher~~
2 ㉕ Bramley Road
Burnville BV2 6BZ

3 23rd Oct, 20—

Dear Paco,
4 → 5 it was very nice to ...
.... see you soon.
Looking forward to hearing from you. 6

7 Best wishes,

Missing phrases:
1 hear from you 2 I was/am glad 3 I wonder (was wondering) if I could ask/I need (want) to ask you a 4 I'd be (terribly/really/very) grateful 5 hesitate to say no/worry 6 Anyway 7 Hope to/I hope to

6

3 beneficial 4 complexity 5 intellectual 6 misconception 7 deceitful 8 anxiety 9 dishonest 10 explanation 11 photographic 12 inattentive 13 psychological 14 investment 15 disappearance 16 deceitful ... dishonest 17 misconception 18 explanation ... disappearance 19 beneficial ... psychological 20 anxiety 21 inattentive … photographic 22 complexity 23 intellectual 24 efficiency

7

2 assimilate 3 undergo 4 reported 5 jot down 6 set yourself 7 parroting 8 prove 9 offer 10 chewing over 11 produce 12 circulated

8.1

2 an (indefinite article) 3 The (definite article) 4 can (modal verb) 5 been (be) 6 to (preposition) 7 which (relative pronoun) 8 the (definite article) 9 which (relative pronoun) 10 into (preposition)

8.2

1 ✓ 2 that 3 in 4 that 5 of 6 When 7 have 8 ✓ 9 ✓ 10 of 11 ✓ 12 ✓ 13 up 14 the

2 ▶ Severe Weather

1.1

2 I 3 H 4 F 5 J 6 A 7 C 8 G 9 B 10 D

1.2

2 foggiest 3 stormy 4 sunny 5 storms 6 showering 7 hail 8 frosty 9 floods 10 cloud

2

2 while/whereas 3 yet 4 in contrast/on the other hand 5 while/whereas 6 but 7 while/whereas 8 Although

3

2 standstill 3 hold 4 advantage 5 hint 6 give 7 role

4

2 on … stand-by 3 warned … against 4 admission of 5 under … illusions 6 cleared of 7 into action 8 increase in 9 to tears 10 fitted with

5 (Model answer)

10 North Parade
Loxley

15 April 20—

The Chairman
Town Council
Loxley

Dear Sir,

I am writing to express my concern about the appalling state of the road outside my house. Indeed, the road is in such bad repair that my nextdoor neighbour recently had the misfortune to get the back wheel of her car stuck in one of the enormous potholes outside my gate. She was not only most distressed by the incident but also had to pay for a breakdown truck to pull her car out.

The damage to the road surface is clearly the result of the period of extremely cold weather we had with ice and snow. That, however, was two months ago and still nothing has been done, despite the fact that the road was inspected by a member of the council immediately after the weather improved.

I must, therefore, insist that the council takes steps to have the road repaired as soon as possible. Moreover, I must urge the council to take appropriate action to ensure that situations like this are rectified more promptly in the future.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Fred Smith

6

2 OK or aging 3 studying 4 swimming 5 OK 6 dying 7 kidnapped 8 OK 9 paid 10 tried 11 arguing 12 referred 13 played 14 OK 15 panicked

7.1

2 both possible (got – more probable) 3 was (only) 4 getting (only) 5 be (only) 6 both possible 7 Get (only) 8 get (only) 9 get (only) 10 both possible

7.2

2 be required 3 be accompanied by a cheque guarantee card 4 is not allowed inside the cathedral 5 should be addressed to the manager 6 will be notified before the end of the month 7 should be received within ten working days 8 has not been granted 9 will be paid (if) for money (is) lost in the post 10 must be accompanied by an adult

8

2 into 3 back 4 off 5 about 6 into 7 into 8 by 9 from … to 10 to

9

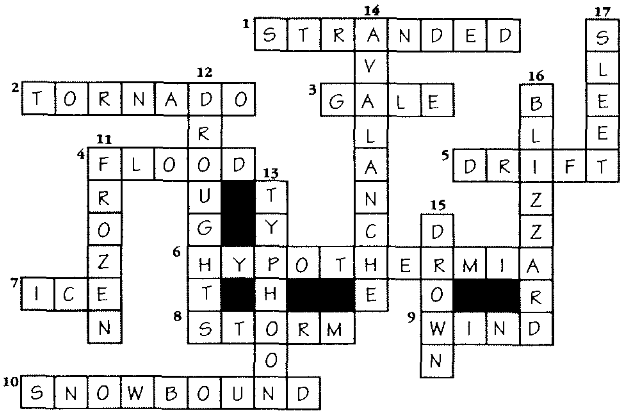

3 ▶ Time Eaters

1.1

2 informal, fat/overweight 3 informal, mad/crazy/insane 4 formal, write 5 dated, radio 6 legal, stealing/theft 7 informal, quite/rather/somewhat 8 dated, go out with 9 formal, despite (the fact or thing mentioned) 10 informal, large meal 11 formal, wise/prudent 12 informal, trick/deceive 13 medical, collar bone 14 informal, language

1.2

2 collar bone 3 Language 4 meal/dinner 5 OK 6 despite 7 somewhat 8 Overweight 9 OK 10 write 11 OK 12 going out (together) 13 cuts 14 stealing

2

2 B how much 3 H which 4 A what 5 how C 6 when I 7 what E 8 J how 9 G who 10 D whose

3.1

2 'll have (have also possible) 3 're going to crash 4 'll have 5 'll get 6 isn't/'s not going to rain 7 'm just going to stay 8 probably won't remember 9 'll get 10 'm going to sneeze

3.2

2 As soon as/When/Once 3 until 4 After 5 while 6 if 7 When/Once/As soon as 8 until 9 By the time 10 Once/When/As soon as

3.3 (Suggested answers only)

2 you've finished 3 you're seeing the bank manager 4 we get there 5 've finished the exam 6 you leave the car here 7 go to bed 8 has worn off

3.4

2 're forever using 3 know 4 's going 5 leaves 6 's writing 7 always gives 8 doesn't seem, 's always leaving 9 're having 10 rescues, gets 11 are you living 12 serves, returns, goes

3.5

2 be able to come 3 must have taken 4 might have left 5 could/might/may have got 6 could swim 7 was able to swim 8 could/might/may have told 9 couldn't find 10 be able to run, can't even run 11 mightn't/can't have realised 12 can cause 13 couldn't have been 14 Can you see, might/could/may well be 15 could have been 16 can't be 17 hasn't been able to hear 18 might/may bite

4 ▶ Stress

1

2 C result 3 H caused 4 K result 5 effect D 6 F source/cause 7 L cause 8 result E 9 result A 10 G because 11 J lead 12 B due

2.1 (Suggested answers only)

2 Driving carelessly 3 Listening to the radio 4 Watching TV 5 Living abroad 6 Doing 7 Swimming 8 Reading 9 Having a bath 10 Biting your nails

2.2

2 of going 3 of stealing 4 about accepting 5 in doing 6 at taking 7 about seeing 8 for inviting 9 for breaking 10 of seeing 11 in going 12 for forgetting 13 of telling 14 by pressing 15 after coming 16 for getting 17 while/when operating/using 18 while taking 19 In spite of eating 20 before overtaking

2.3

2 drinking 3 seeing 4 to cut 5 working, having 6 to realise 7 telling 8 to tell 9 to win 10 relying/depending, to stand 11 to pass, playing 12 wondering, coming/getting 13 worrying, to know 14 smoking, breathing 15 being, to smash 16 to take, fixing/repairing/adjusting 17 risking, getting, leaving/parking 18 promising, to help, getting

2.4

2 showing 3 following 4 sightings 5 airing 6 reading 7 saying 8 carving 9 setting 10 awakening 11 hearing 12 spellings 13 beings 14 fittings 15 recording

2.5

2 K 3 J 4 A/O 5 H 6 L 7 E 8 M 9 D 10 N 11 B 12 C 13 O/A 14 F 15 I

3

2 enlarge 3 smarten 4 popularised 5 purify 6 summarise 7 endangers 8 cannibalised 9 horrified 10 lengthening 11 clarify 12 lessen 13 enforce 14 terrorising 15 heightened

4

2 ~~in~~ – for 3 ~~with~~ – in 4 ~~through~~ – over 5 ~~at~~ – to 6 ~~with~~ – in 7 ~~in~~ – on 8 ~~on~~ – into 9 ~~at~~ – in 10 ~~for~~ – on

5

2 meet 3 modify 4 provide 5 answer 6 calm, doing 7 take 8 receive 9 organise 10 attends

6.1

2 rush 3 dizzy 4 mull over 5 focus 6 result 7 vulnerable 8 boosted

6.2

2 E 3 F 4 J 5 H 6 I 7 A 8 D 9 G 10 B

Progress Test One

1

1 which 2 as 3 over 4 Having 5 going 6 spite 7 While/As 8 who 9 would/might 10 without 11 good 12 where 13 matter 14 queuing 15 until 16 apologising 17 understaffed 18 result 19 under 20 unless/although

2

1 lead to 2 ringing up/phoning up 3 weigh up 4 let … down 5 rounded off/finished off

3

1 being 2 not 3 ✓ 4 for 5 so 6 ✓ 7 with 8 ✓ 9 as 10 When 11 up 12 ✓ 13 ✓ 14 the 15 are 16 it

4

1 intensified 2 torrential 3 dreadful 4 sleepless 5 endless/unending 6 safety 7 desperate 8 overworked 9 ailments 10 ineffective 11 undergo 12 particularly 13 recognition 14 scientifically 15 harmless

5

1 H 2 A 3 F 4 E 5 B 6 D

5 Globe Trotting

1

2 as soon as/immediately/once 3 As well as/In addition to 4 Owing/Due to 5 during 6 Since/As 7 OK 8 so that 9 OK 10 delete however 11 OK 12 in order to/so as to/to

2.1

2 was living, met 3 Weren't you working, had 4 got, became 5 heard, was going 6 went, left 7 lived, were always having 8 was hoping 9 was living, was published 10 saw, was blowing, were gathering 11 were lying, was working 12 rang, picked, put 13 never understood, always got 14 worked, went 15 was, always went, really loved, often rained

2.2

2 turned up 3 explained 4 had been held up 5 didn't find 6 had been blowing 7 (had) called 8 was lying 9 had been driving 10 (had) appeared 11 (had) braked 12 (had) skidded 13 (had) managed 14 was filling up 15 was wearing 16 had tied 17 was pulling 18 opened 19 jumped 20 had swum

3.1

2 brush up 3 drink up 4 do up 5 split/break up 6 round up 7 made up 8 gang up 9 look it up 10 speed up

3.2

2 looked on to 3 dropped off to 4 build up 5 taken aback 6 pulled up 7 stubbed out 8 go through with 9 pull out 10 started up 11 pulled over 12 jumped out of 13 shot off 14 pulled … off 15 ripped off

3.3

2 away with 3 up to 4 up with 5 forward to 6 up on 7 off with 8 out for 9 on with 10 round to

4

2 G The latter 3 A such 4 H the above 5 F this 6 C which 7 B Another 8 E that

5

O o O o o O O o o O o o
2 hostess, take-off 3 check in 4 Lavatories 5 terminal

O o o O o oO o O
6 boarding card 7 standby 8 delay, take off

6 (Corrected mistakes numbered and shown in bold)

5 Redland Road
Barford BF2 8VR
21st May 20–

Randolph Jefferies
20 The Green
Hinton
Devon HN3 2CC

Dear (1) **Mr Jefferies**

I was most interested (2) **in** your advertisement (3) **in** 'The Independent' and I am writing (4) **to obtain** further (5) **information** about your country cottage holidays.

In particular, I would like (6) **to know** in which parts of the country your cottages are located as my friends and I are interested (7) **in staying** as far away from large cities as possible. I would (8) **also like** to know if it would be possible (9) **to rent** a cottage for six people for up to six months and whether pets are allowed as my friends and I have three well-behaved dogs we are planning to take with us.

I should, therefore, be (10) **most/extremely/terribly** grateful if you (11) **would send** me full details of your larger, more isolated cottages and any brochures you may have.
Thanking you in advance for your help. I look forward to (12) **hearing** from you as (13) **soon** as possible.

Yours (14) **sincerely,**

Sandy Melville

7

0 paid 1 ✓ 2 ✓ 3 (give) up 4 (turned) out 5 ✓ 6 turned (out) 7 (sorted) out 8 ✓ 9 (making) for 10 ✓ 11 ✓ 12 ✓ 13 ✓ 14 (stick) to 15 (write) off 16 ✓

8

2 shrugged 3 hiding 4 take 5 way 6 lead 7 soul 8 promote 9 tongue 10 put

6 Language Matters

1.1

2 OK 3 Isn't that the hotel Greg and Sally had their wedding reception in? 4 The gentleman you spoke to last time is no longer with the company. 5 OK 6 OK 7 The reason the accident happened has never been clarified. 8 Is this the picture you were referring to? 9 OK 10 That's the car we were thinking of buying.

1.2

1b whose mayor was arrested for corruption? c which/that was almost completely destroyed during the war? d where Richard Burton was born? 2a whose author I can never remember the name of? b which/that was reviewed in *The Times* last week? c (which/that) I lent you last term? 3a who lived in China until she was 16? b (who/that) the restaurant sacked for being rude to customers? c whose boyfriend wants to go and live in Italy? 4a (which/that) you wanted to have off? b which/that had to be invented to make the year longer? c when most people get married?

1.3

2 yes 3 no 4 yes 5 yes 6 no 7 no 8 no 9 yes 10 yes

1.4

2 taken back/brought back/returned 3 cooked in 4 given/treated with 5 left/allowed 6 booked by/reserved by 7 taken/stolen/removed, parked/left in 8 dug up at (on)/ found at (on)/discovered at (on)/unearthed at (on) 9 washed in/with 10 painted 11 brought into/imported into 12 left

2

2 as 3 alike, like 4 as 5 alike 6 like 7 As 8 like

3.1

2 so/as intelligent as 3 better 4 the most carefully 5 as/so mountainous a country as 6 most northern/most northerly/northernmost 7 as much time … as 8 as careful a driver as 9 more frequently than 10 the heaviest

3.2

2 C 3 F 4 J 5 H 6 E 7 K 8 I 9 D 10 L 11 A 12 B

3.3

2 as blind as a bat 3 as flat as a pancake 4 as dry as a bone 5 as fresh as a daisy 6 as slippery as an eel 7 as weak as a kitten 8 as stubborn as a mule 9 as thin as a rake 10 as proud as a peacock 11 as strong as an ox 12 as deaf as a post

4 (Some variations are possible)

2 slightly older than 3 exactly half as much as 4 much more than 5 a little/slightly shorter than 6 slightly taller than 7 three times as many hours per day as 8 slightly fewer hours per day than 9 about half as much (money) as 10 over five times as much (money) as 11 a great deal more exercise than 12 slightly less exercise than

5

2 Not only, but also 3 Moreover/Furthermore 4 In addition to/As well as/Besides 5 as if/as though 6 Although/Even though/Though 7 Even if 8 yet 9 in spite of/despite 10 However 11 nevertheless 12 whereas/while

6.2

1 stopped 2 patrolling 3 studying 4 debatable 5 forgetting 6 OK 7 happier 8 OK 9 accommodation 10 doubtful

7

2 OK 3 absolutely/completely/totally 4 very/extremely 5 OK 6 absolutely/completely/totally 7 very/extremely 8 OK 9 OK 10 absolutely/completely/totally

8

1 A 2 D 3 C 4 B 5 A 6 D 7 B 8 C 9 A 10 A 11 B 12 D 13 C 14 B 15 C

7 The Ages of Man

1.1

2 I used to (play) 3 B 'm used to 4 J got used to 5 C 'd been used to being 6 G didn't use to 7 A to get used to 8 H wasn't used to working 9 F used to drink it 10 D get used to obeying

1.2

2 did you live 3 took, was 4 didn't live 5 's happened, 've seen 6 wrote, was 7 did you buy 8 've seen 9 Did you ever steal, were 10 has been 11 went, did you think 12 did you get 13 witnessed, happened 14 's broken 15 smoked, gave up, hasn't touched

1.3

2 did you see, haven't seen 3 've been learning, for 4 did you live 5 Has … finished, has just been published 6 've been living, since, got 7 have you had 8 Have you been suffering, for 9 haven't repaired 10 hasn't won 11 've taken, did 12 Has Maisy phoned, said 13 have you eaten 14 've been using, since, haven't found 15 's been eating, since

1.4

2 'm thinking 3 don't think 4 looks 5 definitely smells 6 tastes 7 realise 8 'm not feeling/don't feel 9 doesn't surprise 10 seem 11 remember 12 need 13 'm seeing 14 suppose 15 promise

2.1

1 with a lot of hair, neutral 2 dangerous, negative 3 amusing, positive 4 strange, negative 5 pleasant, positive 6 small, neutral

2.2

7 noun 8 adverb 9 adjective 10 adjective

2.3

11 hard-headed = practical and unemotional when making difficult decisions

12 hard luck = expression of commiseration when someone fails in something
13 hard up = not having enough money to buy essential things
14 doesn't exist – hard headed
15 hard nut = informal expression for someone who is physically or mentally very strong (or thinks they are)
16 doesn't exist – hard of hearing
17 doesn't exist – heavy sleeper
18 doesn't exist – hard liquor
19 hard cash = money in notes or coins, not cheques or credit cards
20 hard-hearted = not caring about other people's feelings

2.4

21 G 22 I 23 B 24 H 25 C 26 D 27 E 28 J 29 A 30 F
Verbs not needing to add the part of the body: 21 wink 23 nod 24 shrug 29 pout 30 clap

2.5

31 useless 32 usable 33 used 34 usefully 35 Users

2.6

36 b~~u~~oy 37 ~~w~~res~~t~~ling 38 ~~k~~nic~~k~~-~~k~~nac~~k~~ 39 com~~b~~ 40 s~~w~~ord
o O   o O o o   O o o o   O o o o
41 guitar 42 photographer 43 difficulty 44 calculator
o O o o
45 original

3 (Some variations are possible)

2 Colin promised he'd/to repair the back door last/that weekend. 3 Karen admitted she'd scratched the car. 4 Maurice threatened to tell the police if they didn't give/unless they gave him £5,000. 5 Hilary insisted that I go/went to Dave's party with her on Saturday. 6 Silvia mentioned that Terry's house was still for sale. 7 Mr Penfold swore he'd never seen the money before. 8 The mountain guide warned them not to go walking in the fog (because it could be dangerous). 9 He couldn't remember if it was Leonardo or Michelangelo who painted/had painted the Mona Lisa. 10 Julian announced/told us/informed us that he and Nina were getting married the following year. 11 Jemima boasted/claimed she was the best tennis player at the college. 12 Dr Bianchi asked Dr McPherson if (s)he'd mind repeating the question/to repeat his/her question. 13 George complained that the service in the restaurant was incredibly slow. 14 The shop assistant suggested it might be better to/that I (should) wait until the manager got there. 15 The doctor advised Jack to eat less and take more exercise.

4

2 time do you make it? 3 would make 4 make it 5 do you make it? 6 're going to/'ll make it?

5

1 C 2 F 3 G 4 A 5 I

6

2 toddler 3 stamina 4 middle-aged 5 teenager 6 seventies 7 prodigy 8 infant 9 early The hidden word: longevity

8 ▶ Personally Speaking

1

2 big-headed 3 broad-minded 4 thin-skinned 5 tight-fisted 6 level-headed 7 short-tempered

2 (* = Suggested answer only)

2 more/less interesting, more/less likely 3 less easy/easier, more/less highly 4 more wine, less clearly 5 closer, *more nervous 6 more humid, worse 7 farther/further, *thicker 8 *The harder something is to do 9 *the less they practise their English 10 *The more stressful the situation

3

2 tick ... off 3 put down 4 face up to 5 worked out 6 steer away from 7 eked out 8 fight ... out 9 fall back on 10 picking out

4.1

2 is spread/put F 3 was invented D 4 will be/will have been wiped out/eradicated L 5 used to be/were extracted/taken out/pulled out J 6 could be bought/obtained I 7 should not be exposed B 8 was/used to be spoken C 9 has been/is simplified K 10 are used A 11 are being destroyed E 12 are regarded H

4.2

2 will probably be sent 3 will be/are taken 4 have already been picked 5 be picked 6 were sprayed 7 to be gathered 8 are harvested 9 are both made 10 to be made 11 is treated 12 are just shaken 13 is collected 14 (is) put 15 will be automated

4.3 (Suggested answers only)

2 to die 3 play on the grass 4 to have more accidents 5 realise how bad the situation really was 6 to give up smoking 7 to open his suitcase 8 leave the room 9 to learn to speak the language 10 lose my temper.

5

2 I was/am glad to hear you had a good time – apart from the sunburn!
3 I hope you've got over it and are feeling better (by) now.
4 Anyway, the reason (why) I'm writing is that Kim and I are having a party on Saturday 19th to celebrate the end of our exams.
5 I know it's rather a long way (for you) to come but I was wondering if/whether you'd like to stay the whole weekend.
6 We both hope you'll be able to make it.
7 Can you let me know if you're coming (or not) by next Friday?
8 Hope to hear from you soon.

6

2 restless (the others describe someone with a strong desire to do something) 3 impatient (the others describe someone who is not aware of or doesn't care about other people's feelings) 4 diligent (the others describe someone who communicates

well with other people) 5 calm (the others describe someone who finds it difficult to talk to other people) 6 carefree (the others describe someone who concentrates so as not to make mistakes) 7 charming (the others describe someone who feels/is feeling pleasure) 8 dynamic (the others describe someone you can place your faith in or trust)

7

1 C 2 D 3 C 4 A 5 C 6 B 7 C 8 D 9 B 10 A 11 B 12 D 13 B 14 C 15 A

Progress Test Two

1

1 for 2 much/far 3 used 4 able 5 while 6 long 7 like 8 do 9 bit/little 10 must 11 been 12 would 13 managed 14 coming 15 as

2

1 turned out 2 stood by 3 handed down 4 singles out 5 stick to

3

1 seaside 2 surprisingly 3 standby 4 twice 5 poorly 6 linguistically 7 farther/further 8 useless 9 defensive 10 restless 11 talkative 12 depth 13 sensitivity 14 unfeeling 15 resistance

4

1 too/as well 2 over/at least 3 been driving 4 put/write 5 about 6 cover/pay for 7 get 8 piece 9 get/hire/rent/pay for 10 cost

5

1 D 2 B 3 C 4 A 5 B 6 C 7 D 8 B 9 A 10 B 11 B 12 C 13 D 14 A 15 C

6

1 E 2 H 3 I 4 C 5 G 6 B

9 ▶ Mind Your Manners

1

2 Hardly had she stubbed out one cigarette when she lit another. 3 Not a soul did we see all day. 4 No sooner did/had I put the phone down than it rang again. 5 So quietly did he speak that I didn't hear a thing he said. 6 Not a (single) game did they win all season. 7 Such is life. 8 Only after she'd been speaking to him for ten minutes did she realise who he was. 9 Not only did Kate spill wine on the carpet, but she also broke six glasses. 10 Never (before) had I seen such a gigantic fish!

2

2 may leave 3 didn't have to change 4 needn't have rushed 5 must have/have to have/need to have 6 Can/Could/May/Might I ask 7 will be allowed/able to travel 8 should/ought to/must have 9 'll have to ask 10 don't have (need) to do/needn't do 11 to be allowed/able to build, can't put 12 Need we discuss/Do we need to discuss 13 should have kept 14 'll be allowed/able to build 15 weren't allowed to/couldn't make, had to use

3.1

2 promise 3 hold 4 experience 5 jokes 6 does 7 question/point 8 give 9 ease 10 date 11 priority 12 pay 13 made 14 blunder 15 move

3.2

2 uproariously 3 categorically 4 deeply 5 profusely 6 bitterly 7 heartedly 8 bitterly 9 warmly 10 flatly

3.3

2 prior engagement 3 kind invitation 4 unkind remark 5 distant relative 6 warm welcome 7 wedding reception 8 social climber 9 fond farewell 10 firm handshake, sunny smile 11 family get-together 12 close friend 13 relaxed atmosphere 14 candle-lit dinner

4.1

2 immobile 3 irrational 4 uncomfortable 5 non-smoker 6 irrelevant 7 unreliable 8 disrespect 9 insoluble 10 misbehave 11 illogical 12 discomfort 13 misspell 14 impolite 15 illegible 16 non-resident

4.2

17 rude – polite 18 clever/intelligent – stupid/unintelligent 19 thin – plump/fat 20 useful/convenient – useless/inconvenient

4.3

1 /ʌ/ 2 /ɔ:/ 3 /ɪ/ 4 /æ/ 5 /ɒ/ 6 /ɜ:/ 7 /u:/ 8 /ɑ:/

4.4

9 D 10 S 11 S 12 D 13 D 14 D 15 S 16 D 17 D 18 D

4.5

/ʌf/	/ə/	/aʊ/	/əʊ/
rough	thorough	bough	though
enough	borough	drought	dough
tough		plough	

/ɔ:/	/ɒf/	/u:/
thought	cough	through
nought	trough	

5

2 Jane would have applied for that job in the City if she had lived anywhere near/nearer London.
3 If Louis hadn't mentioned it to me in passing, I wouldn't have found out.
4 If a detective hadn't recognised him from an identikit picture, Ronald wouldn't be in prison.
5 Harry wouldn't have beaten me at tennis if he hadn't cheated/been such a terrible cheat!
6 If you hadn't left the map in the car, we wouldn't be lost!

7 We might have been able to fix the car when it broke down if we had known anything about engines.
8 I would have prepared something special if I'd known they were coming.

6 (Model answer)

Report on the new 'Bambo' pushchair

Introduction
The aim of this report is to find out how good the new 'Bambo' pushchair is. It is based on interviews with 150 mothers and fathers in six different cities all over Britain.

Observations and comments
It was found that the majority of people interviewed had a very favourable overall impression of the pushchair. In the words of a Mrs Long of Gloucester, comparing it with her old pushchair, 'The "Bambo" is fantastic – it's so light and manageable' and as a Mr Blair of London said, it must be comfortable as his little boy 'really likes going out in it'. On the whole, most people interviewed agree the 'Bambo' has the following good points: it is light and easy to steer; it is good for carrying shopping on the tray under the baby's seat; it is colourful and attractive to look at; the baby seems comfortable as (s)he has 4 different positions ranging from lying flat to sitting upright; it is easy to transport as it takes up very little room when folded. There were, however, some negative comments, which were: the opening hinge is often stiff making it difficult to unfold; the wheels themselves are rather small, which means the pushchair often gets stuck in holes on uneven or rough ground; the wheel locking mechanism on the back wheels is too small to be operated by using one's foot, which means one has to bend down to lock it by hand.

Recommendations
It is advisable for 'Bocia' to make the following changes to their current model of 'Bambo' pushchair: a) make the opening hinge easier to operate, b) increase the size of the wheels, c) make the wheel locking mechanism large enough to be operated by foot.

Conclusion
To sum up, the current model is already well established as one of the best pushchairs on the market. However, acting on the recommendations stated above, 'Bocia' should be able to improve the product still further and possibly become market leader.

7

1 Punctuality 2 serious 3 childish 4 poor state 5 repairs/maintenance 6 resources 7 location/position 8 inaccessible 9 furniture 10 stale/not fresh 11 supply 12 variety 13 bland 14 poorly 15 impolite 16 advance

10 ▶ State of the Union

1.1

2 seeing 3 have 4 to know 5 shouting 6 give 7 understanding 8 do 9 to have 10 to get

1.2

2 it's onions 3 the place/country 4 job satisfaction is what/it's job satisfaction 5 The reason (why) 6 The man 7 It was the Dutch 8 the film we wanted to see 9 Wasn't it 10 the language spoken

2

2 have … party 3 make … commitment 4 the/that argument we had 5 got engaged 6 do … ironing 7 gets … way 8 having … cry 9 making … sense 10 do … share

3

2 falling out 3 make up 4 break/split up 5 cheating on 6 asking/inviting … out 7 stood … up 8 get over 9 goes for 10 go off

4

2 in 3 on 4 of 5 with 6 towards 7 with 8 in 9 between 10 about

5 (Model answer)

Don't let your child's make-believe turn to tragedy!

Every year, hundreds of kids under the age of 5 are taken to hospital after swallowing something poisonous. Half of these children need to be kept in hospital. Some are accidentally poisoned when they think they are eating or drinking something nice.

MOST OF THESE ACCIDENTS ARE AVOIDABLE!

Safety checks you can make.

- Keep all medicines in a locked cabinet – or store them out of reach of children.
- Fit safety locks on the cupboard where you keep cleaning materials – including dishwasher and washing powder.
- Teach your kids to act safely – not to eat pills or berries and not to drink from a bottle unless a grown-up says it's OK.
- Be aware of plants and berries in your garden – find out which ones are harmful if eaten.

If your child has swallowed something harmful ...

Keep calm and read this panel carefully. If in doubt, phone 01742 313272

- Do not make your child vomit
- Immediately call the Accident and Emergency department of your nearest hospital or take your child there directly
- Take the substance, plant or berries you think your child has swallowed with you

At the hospital the staff will need to know:

- How many tablets or berries your child may have swallowed
- When he/she took them
- Whether your child has any symptoms (eg vomiting)

STAY CALM BUT ACT QUICKLY

6

1 to 2 or 3 are 4 other 5 in 6 with 7 nor 8 like 9 on 10 often/frequently 11 that 12 these 13 instance/example 14 their 15 may

7

1 limited/limiting 2 production 3 Action 4 enjoyment 5 household 6 predictable 7 unemotional 8 primarily 9 contentedly 10 reliable 11 warning 12 discomfort 13 unable 14 considerably 15 brainwave

8

2 lonely-hearts 3 agony aunt 4 bride, groom 5 reception 6 honeymoon 7 confirmed bachelor 8 old flame 9 widower 10 marital status 11 Spouse 12 heart-throb

11 Last Chance to See

1.1

2 no commas 3 OK 4 no commas 5 OK 6 comma before *which* 7 comma before *which* 8 comma before *which* and after *chimpanzees* 9 OK 10 comma before *whose* and after *dog*

1.2

2 OK 3 The vegetation on which these animals depend is under threat. 4 There's that pen you've been looking for. 5 OK 6 ... 'Ginger' was the name he was generally known by. 7 But that chap we bought the car from said it was guaranteed! 8 The process by which the vast majority of nuclear power is produced is known as 'fission'. 9 OK 10 Those kids she looks after are really terrible!

2.1

2 cut up 3 dip into 4 holding ... up 5 carrying out 6 sprung up 7 make up 8 cut down

2.2

2 cut down 3 made up 4 make up 5 was held up 6 dip into 7 hold up 8 sprang up

3

2 will have finished 3 gets, 'll have 4 's going to fall 5 is due to open, 'll have been completed 6 is to/is due to/is going to give/is giving 7 'll have been living 8 'll be 9 doesn't start, 'll have 10 's going to have /'s having 11 'll be flying 12 'll phone 13 'll have finished 14 Shall I give, is Fred going to take/will Fred be taking/is Fred taking 15 're about to/going to close

4

2 ... both (of them) have ... 3 Neither 4 £1 each (one) 5 ... they both lead ... 6 OK 7 ... I know (very) few words ... 8 Each/Every student ... 9 OK or Every CD ... 10 ... seems little point ... 11 ... but neither of them ... 12 OK or ... all of them 13 ... for a few close friends ... 14 OK 15 OK

5

2 so that/in order that 3 in case 4 due to/owing to/as a result of/because of 5 As/Since/Because 6 so ... that 7 so 8 such ... that 9 consequently/therefore/as a result 10 As soon as/When/Once 11 until/till 12 Before 13 Hardly ... when or No sooner ... than 14 First, Then/Next/After that, Finally 15 While

6

2 166 High Street 3 in applying 4 post/position of 5 was advertised/I saw advertised 6 My reason for 7 have worked/been working 8 interested in/looking for 9 offer/give me 10 of working 11 to attend an 12 convenient 13 I look forward to hearing from you. 14 Yours sincerely, 15 OLIVIA JAMES

7

1 F 2 B 3 A 4 H 5 D

8

2 lead-free petrol 3 conservation policy 4 forest fire 5 rare species 6 Illegal poaching 7 long lifespan 8 logging rights 9 natural habitat 10 national parks

Progress Test Three

1

1 persuaded/convinced 2 when 3 make 4 how 5 do
6 until 7 which/that 8 which/that 9 harder/tougher
10 causing 11 what 12 While 13 After
14 meantime/meanwhile 15 sooner

2

1 carries out 2 gone out 3 broke out 4 send off 5 cut off

3

1 have been hung/are hung 2 have calmed 3 contains
4 hunt 5 makes the elks avoid 6 excited 7 are caused
8 OK 9 will be cut 10 costs 11 OK 12 was invented
13 stops elks eating 14 OK 15 would soon become 16 fear

4

1 E 2 B 3 H 4 A 5 G 6 D

5

1 painful 2 incorrect 3 childhood 4 accomplishments
5 unappreciated 6 inadequacy 7 unnecessary
8 behaviour 9 incomprehensible 10 unfriendly
11 uninterested 12 apologetic 13 embarrassment
14 impolite 15 inoffensive

12 ▶ Living Dangerously

1

2 hands 3 expose 4 reckless 5 dicing 6 adventure
7 blackspot 8 hand 9 daredevil 10 narrow 11 fire 12 neck
13 corner 14 ice 15 den

2

2 The thing I'd really like to try is bungee-jumping.
3 Inexperience not recklessness is the greatest cause of accidents.
4 Nowhere in the entire hotel was there a fire escape!
5 Under no circumstances must visitors approach the cages.
6 What most young people need is a sense of danger in their lives.
7 Not a living soul did we see for over two months!
8 It was not until three days after the accident that they were rescued.
9 No sooner had she left hospital than she went sky-diving again!
10 The rush of adrenalin is what I really love when I go skiing.

3.1

2 put … down to 3 brought out 4 cut off 5 put out 6 get over 7 broke out 8 cut off

3.2

2 got over 3 put … down to 4 cut … off 5 got over
6 broke out 7 put out 8 brings out

4

2 OK 3 … had never seen … 4 … has Dr Harris examined … 5 … did you buy … 6 … worked … 7 I've written …
8 … had already started … 9 OK 10 I had been sitting …
11 OK 12 … had been snowing … 13 … has crashed …
14 … were riding … 15 … has been raining …

5.1

2 would still be living, hadn't found 3 hadn't looked, wouldn't have spotted 4 would ever have guessed, hadn't been caught
5 would never have got, hadn't been/gone 6 had taken, might/would be living 7 hadn't noticed, would be 8 would have been, hadn't lost 9 wouldn't be, hadn't known 10 'd listened, wouldn't be sitting

5.2

2 If we hadn't got soaking wet on Sunday, we wouldn't (all) have colds (now).
3 If I knew, I'd tell you.
4 I wouldn't have caught/managed to catch the train if it hadn't been 10 minutes late.
5 We'll have to cancel the barbecue if the weather's bad on Sunday.
6 I wouldn't be living in Italy if I hadn't got married to an Italian.
7 I would have phoned you if I hadn't lost the bit of paper with your number on it.
8 If she weren't/wasn't so aggressive, we'd get on (much better).
9 If there's a train strike on Monday, I might not be able to come.
10 We wouldn't have a broken window if you and your friends hadn't been playing football in the back yard.
11 I'd speak to them more often if they weren't so reserved.
12 If I hadn't missed the end of the film, I'd know who the murderer was/is.
13 If Jimmie passes his exams, his father will/is going to buy him a new bike.
14 We'd have gone to the cinema if we hadn't already seen the film
15 Zoe would have won the race if she hadn't tripped and fallen.

6

2 towards 3 on/about 4 for 5 from 6 to 7 to 8 to 9 on
10 in

7 (Model answer)

FUN FOR ALL THE FAMILY AT NEW ADVENTURE PARK
Tamford Towers Adventure Park is set to open its doors to the public this Saturday at noon and, take it from me, it's an opportunity you don't want to miss! The park designers have really pulled out all the stops on this one and come up with what, for my money, is the best adventure park ever! Not only that but also the best value for the money in Dad's pocket with all sorts of special deals and discounts for families on a budget.

Once you're inside, there's something for everyone. There are ten totally new rides ranging from the Water Splash log-ride, which might be a bit tame for some of you teenagers, to the hair-raising 'Screwball' – a type of crazy high-speed spinner – and the awesome 'Abyss', which sends you plummeting to earth at over **100** miles an hour! Totally exhilarating and definitely not one for the faint-hearted!

But there's more yet! There's a small zoo with camels, rhinos and, a must-see for younger kids, penguins! Don't miss their feeding times (11am and 5pm). Then there's 'Uncle Ted's Farmyard', where youngsters can see and even touch chickens, sheep, cuddly lambs and goats. And when they're tired of the animals, there's a large playground with swings, roundabouts and slides. And when Mum and Dad need a break from all the fun, there's a cafe-style restaurant as well as the park's very own pub with beer garden – a popular retreat for fathers in need of refreshment.

And don't forget the souvenir shop (full of marvellous things), refreshment kiosks for ice creams and soft drinks – yes, there are plenty of toilets – and a huge FREE car park! So, don't forget this Saturday – be there or be square!

8

1 after/when 2 state/say/indicate 3 to 4 which 5 where 6 them 7 to 8 of 9 other 10 together 11 lies/is 12 another 13 who 14 along/together 15 out

9

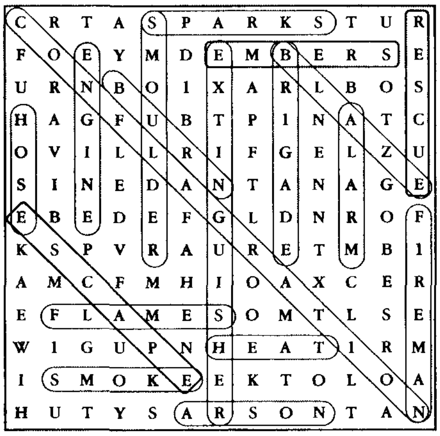

C	R	T	A	S	P	A	R	K	S	T	U	R
F	O	E	Y	M	D	E	M	B	E	R	S	E
U	R	N	B	O	I	X	A	R	L	B	O	S
H	A	G	F	U	B	T	P	I	N	A	T	C
O	V	I	L	L	R	I	F	G	E	L	Z	U
S	I	N	E	D	A	N	T	A	N	A	G	E
E	B	E	D	E	F	G	L	D	N	R	O	F
K	S	P	V	R	A	U	R	E	T	M	B	I
A	M	C	F	M	H	I	O	A	X	C	E	R
E	F	L	A	M	E	S	O	M	T	L	S	E
W	I	G	U	P	N	H	E	A	T	I	R	M
I	S	M	O	K	E	E	K	T	O	L	O	A
H	U	T	Y	S	A	R	S	O	N	T	A	N

13 ▶ Mind and Body

1

2 … meet outside … 3 by yourself 4 OK 5 themselves 6 … to you 7 OK 8 OK 9 OK 10 … make us … 11 … to each other 12 OK 13 We as … 14 … each of us 15 … to themselves 16 … for each other

2

2 didn't interrupt me when I'm speaking 3 left for the station 4 hadn't lost my temper (this morning) 5 you hadn't/haven't seen her 6 lost your job, what would you do then? 7 hadn't given my number to that insurance agent 8 were poor/broke/didn't have any money! 9 didn't have to go back to work tomorrow 10 hadn't held on to my belt, I'd have fallen overboard 11 I was somewhere warm and sunny/the weather wasn't so awful 12 were rich, I'd travel round the world in my own plane

3.1

2 insecurity 3 beneficial 4 awareness 5 embarrassment 6 anxiety 7 sincerity 8 resentful 9 dismissive 10 attentive

3.2

12 discontented 13 invulnerable 14 OK 15 dishonest 16 OK 17 OK 18 insincere 19 inattentive 20 unattractive

4

2 sets … apart 3 give up 4 end up 5 clam up 6 shout … down/shut … up 7 carrying out 8 look into 9 face up to

5.1

2 OK 3 shrugged his shoulders 4 clapping my hands 5 stamps his feet 6 OK 7 nodded their heads 8 OK

5.2

9 nail B 10 foot I 11 D heart 12 hand J 13 A teeth 14 E heels 15 H thumbs 16 teeth C 17 eye G 18 F ears

6

2 no matter 3 Much as 4 in spite of 5 While 6 whichever 7 However 8 Despite the fact that 9 whatever 10 However hard

7

2 head-on collision 3 hand signals 4 heart-to-heart talk 5 knee-jerk reaction 6 thumbnail sketch 7 earsplitting noise 8 eye contact 9 blood circulation 10 hair-raising story

8

1 premature 2 powerful 3 tightly 4 Protective
5 unavoidably 6 overheating 7 non-alcoholic
8 sensitivity 9 childhood 10 artistic 11 painful 12 recovery
13 importance 14 emotionally 15 consultation

9 (model answer)

Ms Maria Hempel

I am writing in support of Ms Maria Hempel's application to become a resident health and fitness trainer at your establishment.

I have known Ms Hempel for approximately ten years in her capacity as aerobics instructor at the 'Avalon Club', the gymnasium which I manage.

First and foremost, I would say Ms Hempel is an excellent teacher of aerobics. References to her in our customer feedback forms have been unanimous in their praise for her as a professional. The only slight criticism has been over her modern hairstyle. However, I am sure she would be prepared to adapt her appearance as seems appropriate should she be selected for the post.

Furthermore, Ms Hempel has continued her professional development through a health and nutrition course, which she has just completed successfully, adding another qualification to her portfolio.

Besides her professional qualities, Ms Hempel is also punctual, in excellent health, has a good sense of humour and excellent interpersonal relations with the other members of the instructors' team.

In short, I would highly recommend Ms Hempel as a prospective member of your staff. Should she get the job, it would be a great loss to us here and it will be difficult to replace her.

Jim Long

(15 May 2002)

14 ▶ Testing Times

1.1

2 … you didn't smoke … 3 … you've tasted … 4 OK 5 … I had been born …

1.2

1 … you'd/had told … 2 OK 3 … relieved if he doesn't come … 4 … if you hadn't lost … 5 OK

1.3

1 … us playing … 2 … suggested that I spoke/should speak … 3 … interested in learning … 4 Remember to buy … 5 … try plugging it in?

1.4

1 … it may/might/could be … 2 It can't have been … 3 … he managed to swim … 4 OK 5 … we didn't need to take …

1.5

1 had already been eaten. 2 OK 3 … need testing … 4 OK
5 OK

1.6

1 Despite living/Although he lived … 2 … due to the low …
3 The reason (why) she … 4 … a major cause of …
5 … sport, whereas/while/whilst cricket …

1.7

1 Having lived in the countryside … 2 OK 3 Never having flown before … 4 OK 5 … mother, who lives in Bath, is …

1.8

1 No sooner had we arrived … 2 Not only was the hotel room dirty, … 3 OK 4 What we want is … 5 OK

2.1

2 J running/walking/wandering 3 flying N 4 putting/hiding K 5 to give D 6 to look/appear C 7 to inform H
8 pushing/kicking/shaking/hitting M 9 to tell A 10 I to realise/understand 11 to pay B 12 to think G
13 leaving/dropping out of L 14 being/getting F

2.2

2 being, to get 3 listening, arguing 4 put, paying 5 start revising/to revise 6 participating 7 to be, to get 8 go, taking 9 telling 10 to ban 11 (to) show 12 to run, to bring 13 to leave 14 to make, go

3 (Model answers)

2 Present continuous – I am working in Dublin this month.
3 Present perfect simple – I've already eaten so I'm not hungry, thanks.
4 Present perfect continuous – a I've been waiting for an hour. b I've been sunbathing in the garden, that's why my face is so red.
5 Past continuous – a I was picking grapes in France this time last week. b I was defrosting the fridge when the phone rang.
6 Past perfect simple – By the time the police arrived, the robbers had already escaped.
7 Past perfect continuous – I had been working for ten hours when I fell asleep exhausted.
8 Future continuous – I'll be relaxing at the seaside this time next month.
9 Future perfect simple – I hope I'll have read her book when I meet her next week.
10 Future perfect continuous – I'll have been working here for three years next June.

4

2 managed 3 were 4 rang 5 leaves 6 miss 7 'll miss 8 'll get 9 's always turning/always turns up 10 arrived 11 to catch 12 had been sitting 13 was going 14 wouldn't

Focus on Advanced English C.A.E.

GRAMMAR PRACTICE

RICHARD WALTON

Focus on Advanced English Grammar Practice provides additional practice to support the main grammar and vocabulary areas found in each of the 14 units of Focus on Advanced English.

Focus on Advanced English Grammar Practice can also be used as a freestanding workbook for students who wish to prepare for the Certificate in Advanced English examination.

This new edition reflects the changes to the new edition of Focus on Advanced English Students' Book and to the modified Certificate in Advanced English examination.

Focus on Advanced English Grammar Practice also contains:

- study tips to help with common grammatical problems
- space for written answers
- four Progress Tests
- a pull-out Answer Key

Focus on Advanced English C.A.E. revised edition

Grammar Practice	0-582-32571-4
Students' Book	0-582-32569-2
Class cassettes (set of two)	0-582-32572-2
Teacher's Book	0-582-32570-6
Practice Tests with Guidance	0-582-38257-2
with key edition	0-582-38258-0
Practice Tests Cassettes (set of two)	0-582-38259-9

18-09-01
95.80

N 0-582-32571-4
9 780582 325715

Pearson Education
www.longman-elt.com

LONGMAN

Student Grammar of SPOKEN and WRITTEN ENGLISH

Douglas Biber
Susan Conrad
Geoffrey Leech

Longman

www.longman.com

LONGMAN

Student Grammar of SPOKEN and WRITTEN ENGLISH

Douglas Biber
Susan Conrad
Geoffrey Leech

Longman

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate
Harlow
Essex CM20 2JE
England
and Associated Companies throughout the World.

Visit our website: http://www.longman.com/dictionaries

© Pearson Education Limited 2002

The rights of Douglas Biber, Susan Conrad and Geoffrey Leech to be identified as authors of this work have been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

First published 2002
Second impression 2003

Words that the editors have reason to believe constitute trademarks have been described as such. However, neither the presence nor the absence of such a description should be regarded as affecting the legal status of any trademark.

ISBN
0 582 237270 (cased edition)
0 582 237262 (paper edition)

Library of Congress Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress.

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record of this book is available from the British Library.

Designed by Sally Lace
Graphs by Robert Escott
Set in Minion and Frutiger by Mendip Communications Limited,
Frome, Somerset
Printed in China
EPC/02

Preface

This book is a coursebook and a reference grammar for students and their teachers. Although it is based on the *Longman Grammar of Spoken and Written English* (*LGSWE*), the *Student Grammar* is much more than just an abbreviated *LGSWE*. Rather, we have simplified and reorganized the content of the *LGSWE*, avoiding much technical detail while retaining the strengths of the larger book. For example, like the *LGSWE*, the *Student Grammar* contains over 3,000 authentic English examples, and contrasts the major patterns of use in spoken and written registers. However, we have simplified the presentation when possible; for example, we have tried hard to find new and simpler extracts from our corpus data, often replacing more complex examples in *LGSWE*.

Of the five authors of *LGSWE*, we three owe a debt of gratitude to our two other co-authors: Stig Johansson and Ed Finegan. We benefited from the work that Stig and Ed did on the *LGSWE* during our writing of the *Student Grammar*. We would also like to thank the students in English 528 at Northern Arizona University, who used a draft of the *Student Grammar* as their grammar textbook and provided numerous helpful comments and suggestions for revision.

To support the educational use of the *Student Grammar*, we have also written a Workbook, which can be used as a classroom textbook or for self-study by students. The Workbook provides exercises based on authentic English texts and sentences, linked directly to the Grammar Bites in the present book.

DB SC GL

Abbreviations, symbols, and conventions

Corpus examples and data

All examples and text extracts are taken from the LSWE Corpus, and are marked as coming from one of the four main subdivisions of the corpus:

(ACAD)	academic text
(CONV)	conversation transcription
(FICT)	fiction text
(NEWS)	news text

Some examples are truncated to save space. These are marked with the † symbol:

(ACAD†), (CONV†), (FICT†), (NEWS†)

Truncated examples, showing an incomplete sentence or conversational turn, are used only when the omitted parts are judged to have no bearing on the grammatical point being illustrated, and where overly long examples might distract rather than help the reader. For example:

1a *Every atom has a dense nucleus.* (ACAD†)
1b *Every atom has a dense nucleus that contains practically all of the mass of the atom.* (ACAD)

Example **1a** is a truncated version of the complete sentence in example **1b**. Note that even with truncation, dispensable material is almost always omitted from the beginning or end of an example, not from the middle. In this sense, virtually every example quoted is a continuous 'slice of linguistic reality'. Occasional cases of medial omission are shown by the insertion of <...> at the point where the omission occurs:

<...>	part of an example where words have been omitted

Other abbreviations used to label examples are:

AmE	American English
BrE	British English

In a few cases, examples have been invented to show a contrast between accceptable and unacceptable usage. Such unacceptable examples are marked *:

* [preceding]	an example which is unacceptable in English

Some examples have a following editorial comment, marked < >:

< >	an editorial comment

Conventions within examples

Typographic features are used to highlight particular features of an example:

bold type
highlights the main item for attention
underlining or brackets [ ]
highlight further elements

A dash at the end of a word signals that it is incomplete.

Grammatical abbreviations

A	adverbial	OP	object predicative
DO	direct object	P	predicative
IO	indirect object	S	subject
LVP	long verb phrase	SP	subject predicative
NP	noun phrase	V	verb (phrase)
O	object	VP	verb phrase

Glossary terms

There is a Glossary at the end of the book, containing definitions of many grammatical terms used in the book. These terms are flagged in bold at their first instance, or at a subsequent early instance.

Corpus data

Sections of text that draw most heavily on the data from the LSWE Corpus are flagged:

🔍	a section of text presenting corpus patterns

Contents

Preface iii
Abbreviations, symbols, and conventions iv
Grammar Bites in each chapter viii

1 Introduction: a discourse perspective on grammar **1**
1.1 Introduction 2
1.2 A corpus-based grammar 3
1.3 More about language variation 4
1.4 More detail on the LSWE Corpus 7
1.5 Overview of the book 9
1.6 Conventions used in the book 10

2 Words and word classes **12**
2.1 Introduction 13
2.2 What are words? 14
2.3 Survey of lexical words 20
2.4 Survey of function words 26
2.5 Special classes of words 32
2.6 Word-class ambiguities 35

3 Introduction to phrases and clauses **37**
3.1 Introduction 38
3.2 Phrases and their characteristics 38
3.3 Types of phrases 41
3.4 A preview of clause patterns 46
3.5 Clause elements 47

4 Nouns, pronouns, and the simple noun phrase **55**
4.1 Introduction 56
4.2 Main types of nouns 56
4.3 Proper nouns v. common nouns 59
4.4 Package nouns 60
4.5 Determiners 65
4.6 The articles 67
4.7 Other determiners 72
4.8 Number: singular and plural 78
4.9 Case: the genitive 79
4.10 Gender 85
4.11 The formation of derived nouns 88
4.12 Personal pronouns 93
4.13 Reflexive pronouns 97
4.14 Demonstrative pronouns 98
4.15 Indefinite pronouns 99
4.16 Other pronouns 101

5 Verbs **102**
5.1 Introduction 103
5.2 Verb functions and classes 103
5.3 Semantic categories of lexical verbs 106
5.4 The most common lexical verbs 110
5.5 Regular and irregular verb endings 115
5.6 Verb formation 118
5.7 Valency patterns 119
5.8 Multi-word verbs: structure and meaning 123
5.9 Phrasal verbs 127
5.10 Prepositional verbs 129
5.11 Phrasal-prepositional verbs 132
5.12 Other multi-word verb constructions 134
5.13 *Be* 135
5.14 *Have* 136
5.15 *Do* 137
5.16 The copula *be*, and other copular verbs 140
5.17 Functions of copular verbs 141

6 Variation in the verb phrase: tense, aspect, voice, and modal use **148**
6.1 Introduction 149
6.2 Tense and time distinctions: simple present and past tense 150
6.3 Perfect and progressive aspect 156
6.4 Perfect aspect in use 159
6.5 Progressive aspect 162
6.6 Active and passive voice 166
6.7 Associations between verbs and passive voice 170
6.8 Voice and aspect combinations 173
6.9 Modals and semi-modals 174
6.10 Personal and logical meanings of modals 178
6.11 *Be going to* and *used to* 182
6.12 Modals combined with aspect or voice 183

6.13 Sequences of modals and semi-modals 184

7 Adjectives and adverbs 186

7.1 Introduction 187
7.2 Characteristics of adjectives 188
7.3 The formation of adjectives 190
7.4 The function of adverbs 193
7.5 The formation of adverbs 193
7.6 Semantic categories of adjectives 197
7.7 More about attributive adjectives 199
7.8 More about predicative adjectives 200
7.9 Other syntactic roles of adjectives 202
7.10 Syntactic roles of adverbs 204
7.11 Semantic categories of adverbs 208
7.12 Comparative and superlative forms of adjectives 215
7.13 Comparative and superlative forms of adverbs 218
7.14 Comparative clauses and other degree complements 218

8 Exploring the grammar of the clause 221

8.1 Introduction 222
8.2 Devices of elaboration and condensation 223
8.3 Subordination and dependent clauses 224
8.4 Coordination 227
8.5 Ellipsis and structural condensation 230
8.6 The subject–verb concord rule 232
8.7 Verbs as operators 238
8.8 Negation 239
8.9 Major types of independent clause 248
8.10 Declarative clauses 249
8.11 Interrogative clauses 249
8.12 Exclamative clauses 254
8.13 Imperative clauses 254
8.14 Non-clausal material 255
8.15 Finite dependent clauses 256
8.16 Non-finite dependent clauses 259
8.17 Subjunctive verbs in dependent clauses 261
8.18 Dependent clauses with no main clause 262

9 Complex noun phrases 263

9.1 Introduction 264
9.2 Survey of noun modifier types 265
9.3 Noun phrases with premodifiers and postmodifiers across registers 267
9.4 Types of premodifiers 272
9.5 Meaning relationships expressed by noun + noun sequences 273
9.6 Noun phrases with multiple premodifiers 276
9.7 Restrictive v. non-restrictive function 279
9.8 Postmodification by relative clauses 281
9.9 Postmodification by non-finite clauses 291
9.10 Postmodification by prepositional phrase 294
9.11 Postmodification by appositive noun phrases 297
9.12 Noun phrases with multiple postmodifiers 298
9.13 Noun complement clauses 300
9.14 Head nouns with noun complement clauses 302

10 Verb and adjective complement clauses 307

10.1 Introduction 308
10.2 Types of complement clauses 308
10.3 Grammatical positions of complement clauses 310
10.4 Discourse functions of *that*-clauses 312
10.5 Post-predicate *that*-clauses 314
10.6 Verbs controlling extraposed *that*-clauses 317
10.7 *That*-clauses controlled by adjectives 317
10.8 Discourse choices with *that*-clauses 319
10.9 Structure and function of *wh*-clauses 322
10.10 Post-predicate *wh*-clauses controlled by verbs 324
10.11 Interrogative clauses with *whether* and *if* 326
10.12 Overview of infinitive clauses 328

10.13 Post-predicate *to*-clauses controlled by verbs 328
10.14 Subject predicative *to*-clauses 334
10.15 Post-predicate *to*-clauses controlled by adjectives 335
10.16 Raising 337
10.17 Extraposed *to*-clauses 338
10.18 Raising v. extraposition 341
10.19 *To*-clause types across registers 342
10.20 Overview of *ing*-clauses 344
10.21 Post-predicate *ing*-clauses 344
10.22 Ellipsis and substitution in complement clauses 348
10.23 Choice of complement clause type 349

11 Adverbials **353**
11.1 Introduction 354
11.2 The main classes of adverbials 355
11.3 Syntactic forms of adverbials 358
11.4 Positions of adverbials 359
11.5 The relationship between adverbials and other clause elements 361
11.6 Semantic categories of circumstance adverbials 362
11.7 Extremely common circumstance adverbials in conversation 368
11.8 Positions of circumstance adverbials 369
11.9 Additional semantic categories of circumstance adverbial clauses 373
11.10 Syntactic forms of adverbial clauses 376
11.11 Positions of adverbial clauses 378
11.12 Subordinators with circumstance adverbial clauses 380
11.13 Semantic categories of stance adverbials 382
11.14 The most common stance adverbials 386
11.15 Positions of stance adverbials 387
11.16 Other discourse functions of stance adverbials 388
11.17 Semantic categories of linking adverbials 389
11.18 The most common linking adverbials in conversation and academic prose 393
11.19 Positions of linking adverbials 394

12 Word order choices **397**
12.1 Introduction 398
12.2 Word order 400
12.3 Fronting 400
12.4 Inversion 405
12.5 Existential *there* 412
12.6 The verb in existential *there* clauses 414
12.7 The notional subject 414
12.8 Adverbials in existential clauses 415
12.9 Simple v. complex existential clauses 415
12.10 Discourse functions of existential clauses 416
12.11 Dislocation 418
12.12 Clefting 419
12.13 Word order choices after the verb 423
12.14 Summary: syntactic choices in conversation v. academic prose 425

13 The grammar of conversation **427**
13.1 Introduction 428
13.2 The discourse circumstances of conversation 429
13.3 Performance phenomena in conversation 436
13.4 Non-clausal units 440
13.5 Ellipsis 441
13.6 Lexical bundles in speech 443
13.7 Inserts 449

Glossary of terms 455
A–Z list of irregular verbs 462
Index 464

Grammar Bites in each chapter

2

A Introduction to words 14
B Lexical word classes 20
C Function word classes 26

3

A Introduction to phrases 38
B Clause elements and clause patterns 46

4

A Types of nouns 56
B Types of determiners 65
C Number and case in nouns 78
D Gender and noun formation 85
E Types of pronouns 92

5

A Verb functions and classes 103
B Single-word lexical verbs 106
C Lexical verbs: structures and patterns 115
D Multi-word lexical verbs 123
E Primary verbs 135
F Copular verbs 140

6

A Tense 150
B Aspect 156
C Voice 166
D Modals and semi-modals 174

7

A Characteristics of adjectives and adverbs 188
B Adjectives: roles and meanings 197
C Adverbs: roles and meanings 204
D Comparative and superlative forms 215

8

A Subordination, coordination, and ellipsis 223
B Subject–verb concord 232
C Negation 238
D Independent clauses 248
E Dependent clauses 256

9

A Types of noun modification 265
B Premodification 272
C Relative clauses 279
D Other postmodifier types 291
E Noun complement clauses 300

10

A Types and positions of complement clauses 308
B *That*-clauses 312
C *Wh*-clauses 322
D Post-predicate infinitive clauses 328
E More on infinitive clauses 337
F *Ing*-clauses, ellipsis/substitution, and review 344

11

A Overview of adverbials 355
B Circumstance adverbials 362
C Circumstance adverbials that are clauses 373
D Stance adverbials 382
E Linking adverbials 389

12

A Fronting and inversion 400
B Existential *there* clauses 412
C Other topics in word order 418

13

A A functional overview of conversational grammar 429
B Grammar tailored to real-time construction 436
C Grammar, lexis, and discourse 443

1

Introduction: a discourse perspective on grammar

Subjects in this chapter

- ➤ Introduction to the concept of corpus-based grammar
- ➤ Language variation: registers, dialects, standard and non-standard (vernacular) English
- ➤ The Longman Spoken and Written English Corpus
- ➤ Overview of the book
- ➤ Conventions used in the book

1.1 Introduction

Every time we write or speak, we are faced with a large array of choices: not only choices of what to say but of how to say it. The vocabulary and grammar that we use to communicate are influenced by a number of factors, such as the reason for the communication, the setting, the people we are addressing, and whether we are speaking or writing. Taken together, these choices give rise to systematic patterns of choice in the use of English grammar.

Traditionally, such patterns have not been included as part of grammar. Most grammars have focused on structure, describing the form and (sometimes) meaning of grammatical constructions out of context. They have not described how forms and meanings are actually used in spoken and written discourse. But for someone learning about the English language for the purposes of communication, it is the real use of the language that is important. It is not enough to study just the grammatical forms, structures, and classes. These tell us what choices are available in the grammar, but we also need to understand how these choices are used to create discourse in different situations.

The year 1999 saw the publication of a large-scale grammar of English with the aim of meeting the above needs: the *Longman Grammar of Spoken and Written English* (*LGSWE*). This was the outcome of an international research project which lasted seven years. Now, we have written a revised, simplified, and shortened version of *LGSWE* for use by advanced students and their teachers.

LGSWE made important innovations in the method of grammatical study. It was based on a large, balanced corpus of spoken and written texts. These texts were electronically stored and analyzed with the aid of computers. The analysis produced information about the frequency of grammatical features in different kinds of language. (We use the term 'feature' broadly in this book, to refer to any grammatical form, structure, class, or rule.) The results of the analysis were then studied by the team of grammarians. The goal was to explain not just what is *possible* in English grammar, but what is more or less *probable* in different situations.

This book, the *Student Grammar of Spoken and Written English* (*SGSWE*), presents the insights and discoveries of *LGSWE* to advanced students of English and their teachers. *SGSWE* is designed to be used with the accompanying workbook as a textbook (for use in class or for self-study), or alternatively as a reference grammar:

- ***SGSWE* is a pedagogical textbook on grammar**. For students systematically studying English grammar, *SGSWE* begins with the 'basics' in the opening two chapters, and moves progressively into more advanced territory. It ends with a chapter devoted to the special characteristics of conversational grammar—an important topic which has generally been neglected in grammars up to now.
- ***SGSWE* can also be used as a reference grammar**. It covers all major features, structures, and classes of English grammar, together with their meaning and use. With the help of the glossary of grammatical terms and the index, students and teachers can use this book as a reference guide. For more detailed information about a feature or its use, you can consult corresponding sections in the larger *LGSWE*.

The greatest innovation of *SGSWE* is that it is a corpus-based grammar. The new methodology of large-scale corpus study developed in *LGSWE* produces results which are very useful for students. In general, advanced students of English want to understand not only the structural rules of English, but how the language is used for communication. For this purpose, new insights, explanations, and information from corpus-based studies of English are an important advantage.

1.2 A corpus-based grammar

A corpus is a large, systematic collection of texts stored on computer. The corpus used for *LGSWE* and *SGSWE*—the Longman Spoken and Written English Corpus (the LSWE Corpus)—contains approximately 40 million words of text, providing a sound basis for the analysis of grammatical patterns. Because the *SGSWE* is based on analysis of this corpus, it offers a number of advantages over traditional grammars:

- **Real examples**: The book contains over three thousand examples of English in use. These are authentic examples from the corpus, showing how real people use real language. Invented examples that sound artificial—a familiar feature of many other grammars—are entirely absent. At the same time, we have taken care to avoid corpus examples that are overly difficult because they require understanding a complicated context.
- **Coverage of language variation**: The core corpus we have used for this book represents four major registers of the language: conversation, fiction writing, news writing, and academic prose. In the past, grammars have usually presented a single view of the language, as if the grammar of English were one fixed and unchanging system. This clearly is not true. Although there is an underlying system of grammar, speakers and writers exploit that system very differently to meet their communication needs in different circumstances. The corpus-based information included in *SGSWE* describes differences between a spoken register (conversation) and three written registers (fiction, newspapers, and academic prose). In addition, our corpus contains data from both American and British conversations and newspapers. Where they occur, important differences between these geographical dialects are pointed out. (See 1.3 for more about registers and dialects.)
- **Coverage of preference and frequency**: This grammar gives information about the preferences speakers or writers have for one grammatical choice over another. Specifically, we discuss the frequency of alternative structures and the conditions that are associated with them. This is clearly a major matter of interest to advanced learners of the language and future teachers of the language. For example, it is not enough simply to describe the structural differences between active and passive constructions, because students and teachers need to know how users choose between these two options. For example, passive verbs are ten times more frequent in academic prose than they are in conversation. And there are good reasons for this, which we discuss in 6.6.1.
- **Interpretations of frequency: context and discourse**: Information about frequency needs to be explained by human interpreters. That is, a corpus

grammar needs to present the evidence of the corpus as a means of exploring *why* users of English make one choice in one situation, and a different choice in another. Usually several factors are relevant, including register, expressing personal attitudes, giving informational emphasis, or other more specific contextual conditions. The *SGSWE* gives attention to the conditions under which grammatical choices are made, so the grammar has a discourse orientation.

- **Lexico-grammatical patterns**: Another distinctive feature of the *SGSWE* is that it brings together the study of grammar and vocabulary. Traditionally, both in theory and pedagogical practice, grammar has been separate from vocabulary, as if they were two totally independent aspects of language and language learning. This separation is artificial, as becomes evident to anyone who uses a large corpus for studying grammar. What becomes clear is that, when they use a language, people bring together their knowledge of word behavior (lexis) with their knowledge of grammatical patterns. These two aspects of language interact in lexico-grammatical patterns. For example, there is one set of verbs that commonly occur with a *that*-clause (e.g. *think*, *say*, *know*) and a different set of verbs that commonly occur with a *to*-clause (e.g. *want*, *like*, *seem*). In addition, each register prefers different verbs with these clause types. These patterns help to explain the typical meanings and uses of each clause type in each register.

1.3 More about language variation

We have mentioned the coverage of language variation as one of the strengths of this grammar. It is important to recognize that there are two major types of language varieties: registers and dialects.

1.3.1 Registers

Registers are varieties of language that are associated with different circumstances and purposes. For example, Table 1.1 compares the circumstances and purposes of the four registers compared in *SGSWE*.

Comparisons between registers can be made on many different levels. For example, the most general distinction can be made on the basis of mode: conversation is spoken, while the other three registers are written. If we consider a more specific characteristic—the main communicative purpose—the registers fall into three categories. Conversation focuses on personal communication,

Table 1.1 Circumstances of the four main registers in *SGSWE*

	CONV	FICT	NEWS	ACAD
mode	spoken	written	written	written
interactiveness and real-time production	yes	restricted to fictional dialog	no	no
shared situation	yes	no	no	no
main communicative purpose/content	personal communication	pleasure reading	information/ evaluation	argumentation/ explanation
audience	individual	wide-public	wide-public	specialist

fiction on pleasure reading, and newspapers and academic prose share a more informational purpose. (We sometimes call these last two expository registers.) However, even between newspapers and academic prose there are differences. Academic prose is more concerned with building an argument than newspaper writing is. What is more, academic prose has a more specialized audience than a newspaper, which is written with a wide audience in mind.

Register variation is the main aspect of language variation we consider in this book. We choose this focus because registers differ greatly in their grammar usage, reflecting their different communication circumstances. In other words, the circumstances of a register have a direct impact on which grammar habits are common in the register. To take an easy example, consider how pronouns and nouns are used in conversation and news. Conversation is interactive as a form of personal communication. It is not surprising, then, that conversation shows a frequent use of the first-person pronouns *I* and *we*, and the second-person pronoun *you*. In contrast, newspaper writing is not directly interactive: it is not addressed to an individual reader, and it often does not have a stated author. But it has a function of conveying general information of current interest. Not surprisingly, in newspaper texts, first- and second-person pronouns are relatively rare. Instead, proper nouns, referring to people, places, and institutions, are particularly common.

The four registers that we concentrate on are, of course, far from a complete picture of register variation in English. However, they have the advantage of (a) being major registers, likely to be frequently encountered by any advanced student of the language, and (b) being sufficiently different from one another to show important differences as well as important similarities.

Within each register there are also sub-registers. For example, fiction can be broken down into different sub-categories—detective fiction, fantasy fiction, romance fiction, etc. The compilers of the LSWE Corpus took pains to represent all the categories and to obtain as good a balance as possible between different sub-varieties within each category. (More details are given in 1.4 below.) In order to limit the size of this book, though, we make only a few references to sub-registers, such as commenting on a feature common in, say, sports reporting or detective fiction.

1.3.2 Dialects

Dialect variation interacts with register variation. Dialects are varieties according to the identity of speaker(s) or writer(s)—their geographic area, gender, socio-economic class, and so on. Dialect is less important for grammatical purposes than register. From the grammatical point of view, dialect differences are arbitrary, while register differences are functional, reflecting the way that grammar varies according to communicative purpose.

Like register, dialect distinctions can be made at different levels of specificity. 'American English' or 'British English' is a very general level; 'the speech of female teenagers in the South Bronx area of New York City' would be a more specific dialect. In the *SGSWE* we focus only on the high-level distinction between American English and British English (although the spoken corpus was developed following sampling methods for geographical regions, socio-economic class, gender, and age, so more detailed dialect studies are possible).

The corpus used for this book also includes some representation of Australian, Canadian, Caribbean, Irish, and West African English in the fiction subcorpus (see details in 1.4). For full coverage of dialect variation, we would need to have coverage of many more world varieties of English. The contrasts between British and American English in this book serve as just one example of regional dialect variation. We have chosen these two dialects because they serve as a target for many learners and teachers of English.

1.3.3 Standard and non-standard (vernacular) English

There is no official academy that regulates usage for the English language, but there is still a prevailing world-wide view that there is a 'standard English': the language variety that has been codified in dictionaries, grammars, and usage handbooks. However, in the corpus, especially in conversation, usage regarded as non-standard (also called the **vernacular**) is also found. For example, consider the vernacular use of *what* as a relative pronoun in **1**, and of *ain't* and multiple negative constructions in **2** and **3**:

1 *They were by the pub* ***what*** *we stayed in.* (CONV)
2 *I* ***ain't*** *done* ***nothing.*** (CONV)
3 *'There* ***ain't nothing*** *we can do.'* (FICT)

As **3** shows, vernacular forms also occur in fiction texts, particularly in representing the speech of fictional characters. However, in general, vernacular forms are rare in the written corpus.

When vernacular forms are discussed or illustrated in the rest of the book, they are generally noted as 'non-standard'. In general, our description of grammar is limited to standard English. However, it is worth bearing in mind that conversation contains many vernacular features of language, and so such features can be expected in the conversation part of our corpus, whereas they are strictly avoided in written language (except where written language deliberately mimics speech, as in fictional dialog). In a similar way, conversational transcriptions often contain informal or non-standard spellings like *gonna* and *cos* (see 1.6.2 below).

A Variation in standard English

The term 'standard English' can be misleading. 'Standard' in some contexts means 'uniform, unchanging', and so it is assumed that only one form of a grammatical feature is accepted in standard English. But this is clearly false. For example, both of the following conform to standard English, even though one begins a relative clause with *that* and the other with *which*:

1 *I could give you figures* ***that*** *would shock you.* (FICT)
2 *This chapter is devoted to a discussion of various flow processes* ***which*** *occur in open systems.* (ACAD)

The relative pronouns *that* and *which* could exchange places in these sentences, although there are a number of factors that favor one over the other (see 9.7, 9.8.1).

Little of the variability within standard English is due to dialect differences between American English and British English, which actually show very few grammatical differences in their standard dialects. We point out such differences where important in *SGSWE*. For example, one well-known difference is that American English has two past participles for the verb *get* (*got* and *gotten*), whereas British English has only one:

> *Angie, I think we've* ***got*** *a leak.* (BrE CONV)
>
> *They've* ***got*** *money.* (AmE CONV)
>
> *He must have* ***got*** *to the door just as the bomb landed.* (BrE CONV†)
>
> *And we still haven't* ***gotten*** *a damn pumpkin.* (AmE CONV)

Note: Another aspect of vernacular English is illustrated by the last example: the word *damn* (or *damned*), which is a mild 'swearword' or taboo term. Swearwords can cause offence or be considered impolite, especially where used in the wrong context, and so we point them out when they occur in examples.

B Prescriptive v. descriptive grammars

Most cases of variation within standard English (e.g. *that* and *which* in **1** and **2** above) do not attract attention from ordinary language users. However, speakers do tend to be aware of some aspects of disputed usage and sometimes have strong opinions about what forms are 'correct'. Thus while the use or the omission of *that* is rarely noticed or commented on, the choice between *who* and *whom* can rouse strong feelings (see 9.8.2). Prescriptive grammars dictate how people 'should' use the language. For example, a prescriptive grammarian would insist that only *whom* should be used when the pronoun refers to a human and functions as an object or prepositional complement. In contrast, speakers in conversation regularly prefer *who* in actual usage:

> *There's a girl* ***who*** *I work with who's pregnant.* (CONV)

In fact, many speakers would find the use of *whom* unusual in any informal, conversational situation.

In this grammar, we do not argue that any one alternative is correct in cases like these. Rather than a prescriptive grammar, the *SGSWE* is a descriptive grammar. We focus on describing the actual patterns of use and the possible reasons for those patterns. However, we do refer from time to time to some cases of disputed usage. Although these may not be so important from the viewpoint of communication, they often play a significant role in people's judgments of what is 'good grammar'. These judgments, in turn, may have an influence on actual patterns of use.

1.4 More detail on the LSWE Corpus

For a corpus-based grammar, the design of the corpus is an important concern. Detailed discussion of the LSWE Corpus can be found in Chapter 1 of *LGSWE*, especially pp. 24–35. Here we give only a brief overview of the corpus.

The entire corpus contains approximately 40 million words. Most of the analyses comparing the four registers used a subcorpus of approximately 20 million words. Additional texts for the dialect comparisons and occasional comparisons with supplementary registers account for a further 20 million words. Table 1.2 provides an overview of the overall composition of the corpus.

Table 1.2 Overall composition of the LSWE Corpus

	number of texts	number of words
core registers		
conversation (BrE)	3,436	3,929,500
fiction (AmE & BrE)	139	4,980,000
news (BrE)	20,395	5,432,800
academic prose (AmE & BrE)	408	5,331,800
AmE texts for dialect comparisons		
conversation (AmE)	329	2,480,800
news (AmE)	11,602	5,246,500
supplementary registers		
non-conversational speech (BrE)	751	5,719,500
general prose (AmE & BrE)	184	6,904,800
total Corpus	37,244	40,025,700

The strength of the LSWE Corpus does not just lie in its size—although size can be important, especially for the study of rare grammatical features. More important qualities are the diversity and balance of the corpus. The LSWE Corpus represents a comparatively wide range of register and dialect variation within the language, and each category of texts is represented by a wide range of writers/speakers and 'sub-registers'. In 1.3.1 and 1.3.2 we mentioned some of the sub-categories within the registers and dialects of the corpus. Tables 1.3–6 provide further details.

Like the written registers, conversation is also a diverse register, but no effort was made to identify sub-registers or list all the topics of conversation. Most of the conversations in the LSWE Corpus are private (often domestic) talk. However, occasionally other kinds of talk are included, like service encounters in a store, or one side of a telephone call. Planned speech, such as lectures, speeches, and sermons, are in a separate register of 'non-conversational speech'.

Table 1.3 Approximate numbers of speakers in the BrE and AmE conversation subcorpora by gender

gender	BrE	AmE
female	270	292
male	225	199

Table 1.4 Distribution of fiction texts across national varieties

national variety	number of texts	number of words
AmE	41	1,095,200
BrE	79	3,347,100
other	19	537,700

Table 1.5 Breakdown of the British and American news subcorpora by topic

topic	BrE	AmE
arts/entertainment	418,400	325,00
business/economics	542,800	1,545,000
domestic/local/city news	1,233,900	995,000
foreign/world news	1,156,100	680,000
sports	1,218,700	260,000
all other topics (including editorials, law, social news, science/medicine/technology, etc.)	862,500	1,485,000

Table 1.6 Breakdown of the academic prose subcorpus

major categories	number of texts	number of words
academic book extracts	75	2,655,000
academic research articles	333	2,676,800

Note: Subjects included are agriculture, anthropology/archaeology, biology/ecology, chemistry/physics, computing, education, engineering/technology, geology/geography, law/history/politics, linguistics/literature, mathematics, medicine, nursing, psychology, sociology.

1.5 Overview of the book

We have organized our discussion of grammar into several major sections:

- **Chapters 2–3 Key concepts and categories in English grammar**
  These chapters present a basic introduction to English grammar, providing the foundation for our discussion of particular areas in later chapters. They introduce the basic terms for structures, rules, and classes in English grammar, illustrating them throughout with real corpus examples. It may be useful to refer back to these chapters (as well as the glossary) if you come across a puzzling term later in the grammar. Because they review all of grammar in a simplified way, these chapters have less room for the information about discourse choice found more plentifully in later chapters.
- **Chapters 4–7 A close look at the major phrase types**
  Chapters 4–7 cover the major classes of 'content words' or lexical words (noun, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs) together with the related phrases (noun phrases, verb phrases, adjective phrases, and adverb phrases):
  4 Nouns, pronouns, and the simple noun phrase
  5 Verbs
  6 Variation in the verb phrase: tense, aspect, voice, modality
  7 Adjectives and adverbs
- **Chapter 8 Clause grammar**
  This chapter introduces the structure and function of independent and dependent clauses. It is a pivotal chapter roughly half way through the book. It looks back to the phrase chapters, Chapters 4–7, showing how those phrase types are used in clauses. At the same time, it looks forward to the later clause

chapters, Chapters 9–12, which describe the use of clauses in more complex constructions.

- **Chapters 9–12 Building on the clause**
  Building on Chapter 8, these chapters explore additional clause-based or clause-derived structures. For example, complex noun phrases (Chapter 9) may not seem to involve clauses, yet in fact they do, because noun phrases can contain relative clauses and other clause-level constructions. These constructions cannot be explained properly until clauses have been covered.
  9 Complex noun phrases
  10 Verb and adjective complement clauses
  11 Adverbials
  12 Word order choices
- **Chapter 13 The grammar of conversation**
  Chapter 13 places the spotlight firmly on spoken language, and shows how the grammar of conversation is adapted to the particular demands of spontaneous spoken interaction. It also highlights some special features of conversational grammar: for example, dysfluencies, discourse markers such as *well* and *okay*, ellipsis, interjections, and taboo expressions ('swearwords').
- **Reference section**
  The book ends with a glossary of grammatical terms and an index. The reference section of the book is designed for all users, but especially to help teachers and students using it as a reference grammar.

1.6 Conventions used in the book

The list of Abbreviations, Symbols and Conventions on p. iv covers many of the conventions used in this book. But some aspects of the transcription of conversation and the use of tables and figures deserve a more detailed explanation here.

1.6.1 Transcription of speech

Spoken language must be transcribed before it can be studied. That is, the transcriber must listen to a tape recording and write down exactly what was said. For the LSWE Corpus, the transcribers produced an orthographic transcription. This transcription uses the ordinary symbols of written texts, including the conventional spellings of words (in most cases). Conventional punctuation symbols—particularly hyphens, periods, commas, and question marks—are used to reflect typical intonation associated with those symbols. Thus, a period reflects falling intonation and a question mark reflects rising intonation.

1.6.2 Spelling variations, reduced pronunciation, and limitations of the transcription

You may sometimes notice variants which are irrelevant to the study of grammar, such as variant spellings like *OK* and *okay*, or American spellings (such as *center*) in some texts and British spellings (such as *centre*) in others. These differences are not significant, and can be ignored from the grammatical point of view. More relevant linguistically are spellings of reduced pronunciations, such as *gonna*, *gotta*, and *wanna* instead of *going to*, *got to*, and *want to*, and *cos* or *cause* instead of *because*. These are semi-conventional spellings, capturing the reduced pronunciations which are very common in casual conversation. They help give an impression of what the speech was like. You will also notice 'words' like *um* and *er* signaling filled pauses (a type of dysfluency—see 13.2.5) and exclamatory words like *hm* and *ooh* which it would be rare to find in ordinary written texts. However, a strict, phonetically accurate transcription was not the goal of the corpus, nor would a phonetically detailed transcription be feasible with a corpus of this size.

Since the corpus was not transcribed phonetically, some features of speech, such as stress and intonation, are not available. In the vast majority of cases, however, the transcription provides plenty of detail for grammatical analyses.

1.6.3 Visible frequency: the use of tables and figures

We have said that frequency is important for understanding how the grammar of English is actually used in different registers, dialects, and situations. At the same time, we recognize that tables of statistics are often not useful to the average grammar student. To overcome this problem, we have used two main ways of representing frequency, both of them avoiding the use of lists of numbers:

- The first method of indicating frequency is to use ordinary words such as *often*, *rarely*, *common*, *uncommon*. While not precise, these terms are useful in giving a general idea of frequency differences. These generalizations are based on corpus analysis, which is often reported in *LGSWE* with tables and figures.
- The second method is to use figures (bar graphs). These figures enable you to compare frequencies in an immediately visible way, by looking at the length of the bars being compared. In these figures, the registers are always presented in the order conversation, fiction, news writing, academic writing. For an example, see Figure 2.1 on p. 23.

To make comparisons easier in the figures, frequencies are normed to the standard measure of 'occurrences per million words'. Thus, although the sizes of the registers of the corpus are somewhat different, the comparisons are based on a standard measurement of *relative* frequency. It may be difficult to envision a million words, so (although there is great diversity in print size and rate of speech) handy comparative measures are as follows:

- Books average about 350 words/page, so one million words = about 3,000 pages.
- Speakers average about 120 words/minute, so one million words = about 140 hours.

2

Words and word classes

GRAMMAR BITES in this chapter

A Introduction to words

- Lexical words, function words, and inserts
- The structure of words: morphology
- Multi-word units: idioms, collocations, and lexical bundles

B Lexical word classes

- The structure and function of lexical words: nouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs
- Comparing lexical word classes in use
- Borderline cases in classifying words

C Function word classes

- The structure and function of function words: determiners, pronouns, auxiliary verbs, prepositions, adverbial particles, coordinators, and subordinators
- Special classes of words

2.1 Introduction

In grammar, we first need to identify the types of grammatical units, such as words and phrases, before describing the internal structure of these units, and how they combine to form larger units. Grammatical units are meaningful elements which combine with each other in a structural pattern. Essentially, grammar is the system which organizes and controls these form-meaning relationships.

The types of grammatical units can be graded according to size of unit, as shown below:

(discourse)

1 sentence	*If I wash up all this stuff somebody else can dry it.*												
2 clauses	*If I wash up all this stuff*	*somebody else can dry it.*											
7 phrases	*If*	*I*	*wash up*	*all this stuff*	*somebody else*	*can dry*	*it.*						
12 words	*If*	*I*	*wash*	*up*	*all*	*this*	*stuff*	*somebody*	*else*	*can*	*dry*	*it.*	
13 morphemes	*If*	*I*	*wash*	*up*	*all*	*this*	*stuff*	*some*	*body*	*else*	*can*	*dry*	*it.*

(phonemes/graphemes)

(CONV)

In the simplest cases, a unit consists of one or more elements on the level below:

- A **clause** consists of one or more phrases (covered in Chapter 3, Grammar Bite B).
- A **phrase** consists of one or more words (covered in Chapter 3, Grammar Bite A).
- A **word** consists of one or more morphemes (covered in this chapter, Grammar Bites A, B and C).

Morphemes are parts of words, i.e. stems, prefixes, and suffixes. For example, *un* + *friend* + *ly* contains three morphemes: a prefix *un-*, a stem *friend* and a suffix *-ly*. The part of grammar dealing with morphemes is **morphology**. The part of grammar dealing with the other types of grammatical units shown above (i.e. words, phrases, clauses, and sentences) is known as **syntax**.

Grammatical units can be combined to form longer written texts or spoken interaction, which is known as discourse. At the other extreme, language can be analyzed in terms of its phonemes (the individual sounds which make up the language) and graphemes (the written symbols we use to communicate in language). These are the smallest units of speech and writing.

In this book, we focus mainly on the three central types of unit: word, phrase, and clause. Morphemes are also occasionally important in describing the structure of words. However, **sentences** will not be separately described because, for the purposes of this book, sentences are orthographic (or written) units, and of interest primarily in the study of the written language. (Note: in some grammars, the word 'sentence' is used in a sense close to 'clause' in this grammar.)

In general, grammatical units are described in terms of four factors: their structure, their syntactic role, their meaning, and the way they are used in discourse.

A Structure

Units can be described in terms of their internal structure: e.g words in terms of bases and affixes (2.2.4), phrases in terms of heads and modifiers (3.3), and clauses in terms of clause elements (3.5).

B Role

Units can be described in terms of their syntactic role. For example, a phrase can have the syntactic role of object in a clause:

> *In November, Susie won* ***those tickets.*** (CONV)

In this example, there are also other roles: *Susie* is the subject, *In November* is an adverbial.

C Meaning

Units can be described in terms of meaning. For example, adverbs (a class of words) can express information about time, place, and manner.

D Use (or discourse function)

Units can be further described in terms of how they behave in discourse. This can include their use in different registers, their frequency in those registers, and the factors which influence their use in speech or in written texts. For example, pronouns like *it* and *they* are often used to refer back to things mentioned earlier in the same discourse:

> *Isn't* ***Cindy*** *coming? Did* ***she*** *call you?* (CONV)

Such pronouns are more common in speech than in written texts.

This chapter is devoted to words, paying attention to all four factors above. We will then move on to phrases and clauses in the next chapter.

GRAMMAR BITE

A Introduction to words

2.2 What are words?

Words are generally considered to be the basic elements of language. They clearly show up in writing, and they are the items defined in dictionaries. Yet the definition of 'word' is not simple.

Words are relatively fixed in their internal form, but they are independent in their role in larger units. For example, insertions can usually be made *between* words but not *within* words:

> *There were two pedal-bins against the wall.* (FICT)
>
> *There were two (large new) pedal-bins (standing) against the (side) wall.*

Notice how, in the above example, it is possible to insert words between other words to form a longer sentence without losing clarity of meaning. On the other hand, we could not easily interrupt a word, by inserting another word or morpheme inside it, as in **pedal-(new)-bins*.

2.2.1 Different senses of the word 'word'

The notion of 'word' is complex, and so it is useful to identify a number of slightly different senses of 'word':

- **Orthographic words**: These are the words that we are familiar with in written language, where they are separated by spaces. For example, *They wrote us a letter* contains five distinct orthographic words.
- **Grammatical words**: A word falls into one grammatical word class (or 'part of speech') or another. Thus the orthographic word *leaves* can be either of two grammatical words: a verb (the present tense *-s* form of *leave*) or a noun (the plural of *leaf*). This is the basic sense of 'word' for grammatical purposes, and the one we normally intend in this book.
- **Lexemes**: This is a set of grammatical words which share the same basic meaning, similar forms, and the same word class. For example, *leave, leaves, left*, and *leaving* are all members of the verb lexeme *leave*. This is the meaning of 'word' that is employed in dictionaries.

Each occurrence of a word in a written or spoken text is a separate **token**. For example, in the following line of conversation there are ten separate word tokens:

The birds and the deer and who knows what else. (CONV)

In contrast to word tokens, word **types** are the different vocabulary items that occur in a text (such as you would look up in a wordlist). Thus, in the sentence above, there are only eight word types (*the, birds, and, deer, who, knows, what,* and *else*), since *and* and *the* occur twice. Notice the token/type distinction applies equally to orthographic words, grammatical words, and lexemes. However, our main concern will be with grammatical words, whether as types or as tokens.

In practice, it is not often necessary to distinguish between these senses, as the word 'word' is rarely ambiguous in any given context. But if there is any potential ambiguity the sense intended will be specified.

2.2.2 Three major families of words

Words can be grouped into three families, according to their main function and their grammatical behavior: **lexical words**, **function words**, and **inserts**.

A Lexical words

- Lexical words are the main carriers of information in a text or speech act.
- They can be subdivided into the following **word classes** (or **parts of speech**): nouns, lexical verbs, adjectives, and adverbs.
- Of all the word families, lexical words are the most numerous, and their number is growing all the time. In other words, they are members of **open classes**.
- They often have a complex internal structure and can be composed of several parts: e.g. *unfriendliness* = *un* + *friend* + *li* + *ness*.

- Lexical words can be heads of phrases: e.g. the noun *completion* is the head (or main word) of the noun phrase *[the* ***completion*** *of the task]*.
- They are generally the words that are stressed most in speech.
- They are generally the words that remain if a sentence is compressed in a newspaper headline: e.g. *Elderly care crisis warning.*

B Function words

- Function words can be categorized in terms of word classes such as prepositions, coordinators, auxiliary verbs, and pronouns.
- They usually indicate meaning relationships and help us to interpret units containing lexical words, by showing how the units are related to each other.
- Function words belong to **closed classes**, which have a very limited and fixed membership. For example, English has only four coordinators: *and, or, but,* and (rarely) *nor.*
- Individual function words tend to occur frequently, and in almost any type of text.

C Inserts

- Inserts are found mainly in spoken language.
- Inserts do not form an integral part of a syntactic structure, but tend to be inserted freely in a text.
- They are often marked off by a break in intonation in speech, or by a punctuation mark in writing: e.g. ***Well,*** *we made it.*
- They generally carry emotional and discoursal meanings, such as *oh, ah, wow,* used to express a speaker's emotional response to a situation, or *yeah, no, okay* used to signal a response to what has just been said.
- Inserts are generally simple in form, though they often have an atypical pronunciation (e.g. *hm, uh-huh, ugh, yeah*). Examples are: ***Hm hm,*** *very good* (CONV), ***Yeah,*** *I will.* ***Bye*** (CONV†), ***Cheers*** *man* (CONV).
- Because inserts are peripheral to grammar, they will not be discussed in this chapter. We describe them in more detail in 13.7.

2.2.3 Closed classes and open classes

A **closed class** contains a limited number of members, and new members cannot be easily added. For example, it is not easy to create a new coordinator or a new pronoun: those word classes have a fairly fixed set of members.

The membership of **open classes** is indefinitely large, and can be readily extended by users of the language. Lexical classes such as nouns and adjectives are open classes. For example, we can easily form new nouns with the suffix *-ee,* adjectives with *-ish,* verbs with *-ize,* and adverbs with *-wise:*

*gossip**ee**, franchis**ee**, intern**ee**, retir**ee***
*bird**ish**, broad**ish**, coquett**ish**, heathen**ish***
*bureaucrat**ize**, mytholog**ize**, period**ize**, solubil**ize***
*crab**wise**, fan**wise**, frog**wise**, star**wise***

In practice, the difference between open classes and closed classes is not always clear-cut. For example, new prepositions develop out of other word classes (e.g. *regarding*), and sequences of orthographic words can gradually become fixed as a single preposition (e.g. *on account of*). As a result, 'closed classes' are not completely closed, but they are extended only slowly, perhaps over centuries. In contrast, new nouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs—the open classes—are always being created.

2.2.4 The structure of words: morphology

Lexical words can consist of a single morpheme (a **stem**, such as *go*, *book*, *cat*), or they can have a more complex structure created by a process of **inflection**, **derivation** or **compounding**. These processes are described below.

A Inflection

Lexical words can take inflectional **suffixes** to signal meanings and roles which are important to their word class, such as 'plural' in the case of nouns, and 'past tense' in the case of verbs. The following word classes are marked by inflection:

word class	base form example	forms with inflectional suffixes
nouns	*boy*	plural (*boys*), genitive (*boy's*, *boys'*)
verbs	*live*, *write*	singular present tense (*lives*, *writes*), past tense (*lived*, *wrote*), past participle (*lived*, *written*), *ing*-participle (*living*, *writing*)
adjectives	*dark*	comparative (*darker*), superlative (*darkest*)
adverbs	*soon*	comparative (*sooner*), superlative (*soonest*)

Other classes of words are generally invariable. For example, prepositions (e.g. *of*, *in*, *with*), conjunctions (e.g. *if*, *while*, *unless*) and determiners (e.g. *the*, *each*, *several*) have only one form.

B Derivation

Derivation, like inflection, usually involves adding an **affix**, i.e. a morpheme attached to the beginning of a word (a **prefix**) or to the end of a word (a **suffix**). However, this process is different from inflection because inflection does not change the identity of a word (i.e. it remains the same lexeme), while derivation creates new nouns, adjectives, verbs, and adverbs. Derivation changes the meaning or word class of a word, and often both, and in effect creates a new **base** form for the word:

prefixes: *ex* + president, *un* + kind, *re* + read, *a* + broad

suffixes: boy + *hood*, central + *ize*, green + *ish*, exact + *ly*

Words can be built up using a number of different prefixes and suffixes, and can thus contain several morphemes:

industri + al, *industri + al + ize*, *industri + al + iz + ation*,
post + industri + al

Notice that inflections, such as *-ed* and *-s*, follow derivational suffixes, such as *-iz(e)*: *central* + ***iz*** + *ed*, *build* + ***er*** + *s*.

C Compounding

Inflection and derivation result in complex words, with a stem plus one or more affixes. Another form of derivation is compounding, which also leads to more complex words. Words that are compounds contain more than one stem. Examples are:

noun + noun: *chair* + *man*, *girl* + *friend*
verb + noun: *cook* + *book*, *guess* + *work*
adjective + noun: *blue* + *bird*, *flat* + *fish*
noun + adjective: *head* + *long*, *water* + *tight*

How are we to know whether two words are genuinely a compound and not simply a sequence of two words? Three tests help to show this:

- The word will be spelt as a single word, without spaces between the two forms: *goldfish*, not *gold fish*.
- It will be pronounced with the main stress on the first element: *a 'goldfish*, not *a gold 'fish*.
- It will have a meaning which cannot be determined from the individual parts: *goldfish* (= an ornamental fish of the carp family) not *gold fish* (= a fish which is made of gold).

If a word passes all three tests, there is no doubt that it is a compound. But in other cases, we may be uncertain about whether an expression is one word or two words. As an in-between category, consider words which are joined by hyphens: e.g. *gold-tipped*, *care-free*. This shows that the combination overall is felt to be a single word, and yet the two parts are felt to be somewhat separate. There are also words like *ice cream*, which are usually spelled as two separate orthographic words, but where the pronunciation and meaning tests suggest a single word. Like many categories in grammar, compounds are not a hard-and-fast category.

2.2.5 Multi-word units, collocations, and lexical bundles

Apart from compounds, there are sequences of words that behave as a combination:

- A **multi-word unit** is a sequence of orthographic words which functions like a single grammatical unit: e.g. the preposition *on top of* or the adverb *of course*.
- An **idiom**, like many compounds, is a multi-word unit with a meaning that cannot be predicted from the meanings of its constituent words. A typical example is a verb expression like *fall in love* or *make up (one's) mind*. However, the boundary between idioms and freely chosen combinations is not always clear.
- A **collocation** is the relationship between two or more independent words which commonly appear together (or co-occur). The adjectives *broad* and *wide*, for example, are similar in meaning, but occur in very different collocations: e.g. *broad accent*, *broad agreement*, *broad daylight*, *broad grin*, *broad shoulders*, etc.; *wide appeal*, *wide area*, *wide experience*, *wide interests*, *wide margin*, etc.

Later in this book we use a further term, **lexical bundle**, for a sequence of words which co-occur very frequently, especially when the sequence consists of more than two words. For example, bundles like *I don't think* ... and *Would you mind* ... commonly recur in conversation (see 13.6).

2.2.6 Use of lexical words, function words, and inserts

Returning to the three word families presented in 2.2.2, we will now present two passages for illustration. The three word families are distinguished as follows: capitals = lexical words; ordinary italics = function words; bold = inserts.

> *A:* IS *that the* TIME*?*
> *B:* ***Yeah****, it's twenty* MINUTES *to four.*
> *A:* ***Oh*** *my* CLOCK IS SLOW*,* ***yeah****.*
> *B: Do you* WANT *us to* JUST GO *out* THERE *and* COME *back and* PICK *you* GUYS *up?*
> *A:* ***Uh huh****.*
> *C:* ***Yeah****.*
> *A: You can* GO *if you* WANT *to, I'll, I* THINK *I'll <...>*
> *D: He* REALLY *doesn't* TRUST *me, does he?*
> *C: That's* RIGHT*,* HOW *'bout I* PIN *you?*
> *D:* ***Okay****.* ***Oh****,* LET *me* TELL *you something.*
> *B: Do you, do you* WANT *to* GO *by yourself?*
> *D:* ***No, no, no****. You'll* FEEL BETTER *and we'll be* FOLLOWING *you.*
> *A: Will you* FEEL BETTER*?*
> *D: It doesn't.*
> *C: I* NEED *three* SAFETY PINS*, you* HAD *one in your* POCKET*.*
> *B:* ***Uh huh****.* (CONV)
>
> RADIOACTIVE LEAK CONFIRMED *at* SELLAFIELD
>
> WORK *on the* DISMANTLING *of a* NUCLEAR REPROCESSING PLANT *at* SELLAFIELD CAUSED *a* LEAK *of* RADIOACTIVITY YESTERDAY. BRITISH NUCLEAR FUELS LTD SAID *the* RADIOACTIVITY REACHED *the* AIR *through a* CHIMNEY STACK *which was* STILL *in* USE. *But* SPOKESMAN BOB PHILLIPS SAID *it was not an* INCIDENT *which* REQUIRED REPORTING *to the* GOVERNMENT. *He* DISMISSED PROTESTS *from* FRIENDS *of the* EARTH *as* 'SCAREMONGERING'. HOWEVER, DR PATRICK GREEN, FRIENDS *of the* EARTH RADIATION CAMPAIGNER, SAID*: 'BNF* HAS *a* SCANDALOUS TRACK RECORD *of* PLAYING *down* INCIDENTS *at first, and* ONLY ADMITTING *their* SERIOUSNESS LATER.*' Three* MONTHS AGO *BNF* CONFIRMED *that a* LEAK *of* RADIOACTIVE PLUTONIUM SOLUTION *had been* RECLASSIFIED *as 'a* SERIOUS INCIDENT*'.* (NEWS)

The conversation and news sample differ strikingly in their use of the three word categories. These examples show how lexical words are used much more frequently in news writing. News writers pack their prose with lexical words to convey information. In contrast, conversation has a higher frequency of function words. Conversation also has quite a large number of inserts, while news has very few. Academic writing and fiction fall between the two extremes of news and conversation in terms of the density of lexical words.

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE A**: Introduction to words

- There are three major families of words: lexical words, function words, and inserts.
- These families are broken down into word classes, such as nouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, and prepositions.
- Words belong to closed classes or open classes.
- The different word classes have different morphology—that is, different rules for how to form them.
- Different registers use the various classes of words to different extents.
  - Newspaper writing has the highest density of lexical words, while conversation has the lowest.
  - Conversation has more use of inserts than the other registers.

GRAMMAR BITE

B Lexical word classes

2.3 Survey of lexical words

As already noted, there are four main classes of lexical words: **nouns**, **lexical verbs**, **adjectives**, and **adverbs**. To decide what class a word belongs to, it is useful to apply tests of three kinds:

- **Morphological**: what forms does a word have (e.g in terms of stems and affixes)?
- **Syntactic**: what syntactic roles does a word play in phrases or other higher units?
- **Semantic**: what type(s) of meaning does a word convey?

2.3.1 Nouns

Words such as *book*, *girl*, *gold*, *information* are **common nouns.** Words such as *Sarah*, *Oslo*, and *Microsoft* (names) are **proper nouns.** Nouns have the following characteristics:

A Morphological

Nouns have inflectional suffixes for plural **number**, and for **genitive** case: *one book* → *two* ***books***; ***Sarah's*** *book.* Many nouns, however, are **uncountable**, and cannot have a plural form (e.g. *gold*, *information*). Nouns quite often contain more than one morpheme:

compound nouns: *bomb* + *shell*, *bridge* + *head*, *clothes* + *line*
nouns with derivational suffixes: *sing* + ***er***, *bright* + ***ness***, *friend* + ***ship***

B Syntactic

Nouns can occur as the **head** of a **noun phrase**: *[a new **book** about the cold war]*, *[the ugliest **person** you've ever seen]*. As these examples show, common nouns such as *book* and *person* can be modified by many kinds of words both before and after them. Proper nouns like *Sarah*, on the other hand, rarely have any modifiers.

C Semantic

Nouns commonly refer to concrete, physical entities (people, objects, substances): e.g. *book, friend, iron*. They can also denote abstract entities, such as qualities and states: e.g. *freedom, wish, friendship*.

2.3.2 Lexical verbs

Words such as *admit, build, choose, write* are **lexical verbs**. They are distinct from **auxiliary verbs** like *can* and *will*, which we treat as function words. The **primary verbs** *be, have,* and *do* (the most common verbs in English) occur as both lexical verbs and auxiliaries. Lexical verbs are identified as follows:

A Morphological

Lexical verbs have different forms signaling **tense** (present and past), **aspect** (perfect, progressive), and **voice** (active and passive). Note the five forms of the verb lexeme *write* in these examples:

example	form
*They **write** about their family.* (CONV†)	base
*He **writes** page after page about tiny details.* (FICT)	third person present (*-s* form)
*They **wrote** about Venus being a jungle paradise.* (FICT)	past tense
*He has **written** to an old journalist friend.* (FICT†)	*ed*-participle (or past participle)
*I wonder if you are **writing** any more songs?* (FICT)	*ing*-participle (or present participle)

The verb forms and their functions are discussed further in 5.2.

Verb lexemes quite often have a complex form with more than one morpheme. The following are examples of multi-word verbs and derived verbs: *bring **up**, rely **on**, look **forward to**, hyphen**ate**, item**ize**, soft**en***.

B Syntactic

Lexical verbs most frequently occur on their own, as a single-word verb phrase acting as the central part of the clause:

*He [**writes**] page after page about tiny details.* (FICT)

They also occur in the final or **main verb** position of **verb phrases**: *[has **written**] a letter; [will be **writing**] tomorrow*. Verb phrases are explained in 3.3.2.

C Semantic

Lexical verbs denote actions, processes, and states of affairs that happen or exist in time. They also define the role of human and non-human participants in such actions, processes, or states:

*[You] [**ate**] [Chinese food].* (CONV)

In this example, ***ate*** expresses the action performed by *you* on the *Chinese food.*

The characteristics of verbs are discussed in detail in Chapters 5 and 6.

2.3.3 Adjectives

Words such as *dark*, *heavy*, *eager*, and *guilty* are adjectives. Adjectives are identified as follows:

A Morphological

Many adjectives can take the inflectional suffixes *-er* (comparative) and *-est* (superlative): *dark* → *dark**er*** → *dark**est***. Adjectives can be complex in morphology:

derived adjectives (with suffixes in bold): *accept**able**, forget**ful**, influent**ial***
compound adjectives: *color-blind, home-made, ice-cold.*

B Syntactic

Adjectives can occur as the head of an **adjective phrase**: *[very **dark**]*, *[**eager** to help]*, *[**guilty** of a serious crime]*. Adjectives and adjective phrases are most commonly used as **modifiers** preceding the head of a noun phrase, or as **predicatives** following the verb in clauses:

modifier: *Tomorrow could be [a **sunny** day].* (CONV†)

predicative: *It's **nice** and **warm** in here. It's **sunny**.* (CONV)

C Semantic

Adjectives describe the qualities of people, things, and abstractions: *a **heavy*** box, *he is **guilty**, the situation is **serious**.* Many adjectives are **gradable**. That is, they can be compared and modified for the **degree** or level of the quality: *heavier*, *very heavy*, *extremely serious.* Adjectives are discussed in detail in Chapter 7.

2.3.4 Adverbs

Words such as *now*, *there*, *usually*, and *finally* are adverbs. Adverbs are a varied word class, with the following characteristics:

A Morphological

Many adverbs are formed from adjectives by adding the suffix *-ly*: *clearly*, *eagerly*. Others have no such ending: *however*, *just.* A few adverbs allow comparative and superlative forms like those for adjectives: *soon* → *sooner* → *soonest*; *fast* → *faster* → *fastest.*

B Syntactic

Adverbs occur as head of **adverb phrases**: *[very **noisily**]*, *[more **slowly** than I had expected]*. Adverbs, with or without their own modifiers, are often used as **modifiers** of an adjective or another adverb: ***really** old*, ***very** soon*. Otherwise, they can act as **adverbials** in the clause: *I'll see you **again soon***. See 3.5.5 on adverbials.

C Semantic

As modifiers, adverbs most often express the **degree** of a following adjective or adverb: ***totally** wrong*; ***right** now*. As elements of clauses (adverbials), adverbs and adverb phrases have a wide range of meanings:

- They can modify an action, process, or state, by expressing such notions as time, place, and manner:

  *So I learned German quite **quickly**.* (CONV†)

  *She was **here earlier today**.* (CONV†)

- They can convey the speaker's or writer's attitude towards the information in the rest of the clause:

  ***Surely** that child's not mine?* (CONV)

- They can express a connection with what was said earlier:

  *It must be beautiful, **though**.* (CONV)

For a detailed account of adverbs, see Chapters 7 and 11.

2.3.5 Comparing lexical word classes in use

Figure 2.1
Distribution of lexical word classes across registers

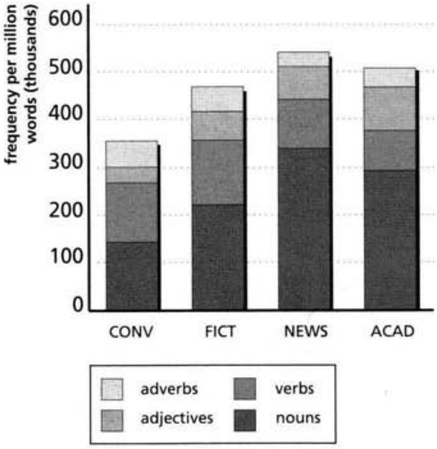

As Figure 2.1 shows, there are interesting similarities and contrasts in the use of the lexical word classes across the registers. Registers can be described in terms of their style by comparing their use of the lexical classes.

- Nouns and verbs are clearly the most common types of words overall.
- Conversation has a high density of verbs, unlike informative writing such as news and academic prose, which has a high density of nouns.
- Adjectives are linked to nouns, because they most frequently modify nouns. So informative writing, which has the highest density of nouns, also has the highest density of adjectives.
- Adverbs, on the other hand, are linked to verbs. They typically describe circumstances relating to actions, processes, and states that are denoted by verbs. So conversation and fiction writing, which have the highest density of verbs, also have the highest density of adverbs.

2.3.6 Borderline cases in classifying words

The categories people operate with in the real world are not clear-cut. The category of 'furniture', for example, includes clear cases, like tables and chairs, but also less clear or borderline cases, such as television sets, cookers, and electric heaters.

The same is true of word classes in grammar. For example, nouns can be more or less 'nouny'. A typical noun (e.g. *boy, car*) has singular, plural, and genitive forms (e.g. *boy, boys, boy's*). It can be preceded by *a* or *the*, and it refers to a class of people, things, or other entities. Yet in the class of nouns we find many words which have only some of these 'nouny' features: e.g. *research*, which has no plural or genitive, cannot be preceded by *a*, and refers to something abstract and intangible

As some words may be more 'borderline' than others within a word class, it is not surprising that the boundaries between two word classes may also be unclear.

As an example of borderline cases in lexical word classes, take the classification of words ending with *-ing*. Almost all of these words have a verb base, so it is easy to assume that all words ending in *-ing* are verbs. However, this conclusion is not correct. In fact, these words can belong to any of three different classes: verb (sometimes called the *ing*-participle), noun, or adjective (sometimes called participial adjective). Normally the following tests can be applied to determine the word class:

- Verbs ending in *-ing* can act as the main verb of a verb phrase, and may be followed by a noun or an adjective (underlined here): e.g. *is **eating** lunch; **becoming** misty overnight.*
- Nouns ending in *-ing* can sometimes have a plural form (e.g. *paintings*), and can usually be a head noun after *a*, *the*, or some other determiner: e.g. *[the **banning** of some chemicals], [her **dancing**]*.
- Adjectives ending in *-ing* can appear before a noun, and can also occur after verbs such as *be* and *become*: e.g. *the **travelling*** public; *it was (very) **confusing**.* They are very often gradable, and can be preceded by degree adverbs such as *very*, *so*, and *too*: ***very** forgiving, **so** interesting, **too** boring.*

But these criteria cannot always be clearly applied. Typical borderline cases include the following:

A Nouns and verbs

The biggest problem here is the so-called **naked *ing*-form** occurring after a main verb, as in

*The matter needed **checking**.* (NEWS†)

In this example the final word *checking* could be a verb. If one added an adverb, it would be a verb:

*The matter needed checking **carefully**.*

In other similar cases, this form could be functioning as a noun. If it were preceded by a modifying adjective, it would clearly be a noun:

*The matter needed **careful** checking.*

Since neither of these clues is present in the original example, the word class of *checking* is left unclear.

B Nouns and adjectives

The biggest problem here is where the *ing*-form modifies a following noun. Compare:

noun + noun	adjective + noun
living *standards*	***living*** *creatures*
dancing *classes*	*the* ***dancing*** *children*
working *conditions*	*a* ***working*** *mother*

As explained in 4.11.3, both nouns and adjectives can modify a noun, so the only way to tell the difference here is to apply a 'paraphrase test': i.e. to try to express the same idea in different ways.

If a paraphrase can be found where the *ing*-form clearly has a noun-like character, the construction consists of noun + noun. For example, if a paraphrase which uses a prepositional phrase is appropriate, the construction must consist of an *ing*-noun + noun: *living standards* = *standards of living*; *dancing classes* = *classes for dancing*. In contrast, a paraphrase with a relative clause (using *that*, *which*, or *who*) shows that the construction consists of *ing*-adjective + noun: *living creatures* = *creatures which are (still) living*; *dancing children* = *children who are dancing*.

C Verbs and adjectives

Borderline cases between these categories occur where the *ing*-form follows the verb *be* without other modifiers. Consider, for example:

It was ***embarrassing.*** (CONV)

If the *ing*-word can take an object (i.e. a following noun phrase), then it is a verb:

*It was embarrassing (**me**).*

In contrast, if the *ing*-word is gradable and can be modified by *very*, it is an adjective:

*It was (**very**) embarrassing.*

In some cases (like this one with *embarrassing*), both tests apply, and there is no single correct analysis. But the second analysis (adjective) is more likely.

Word classes, like virtually all grammatical categories, have uncertain boundaries; but this does not undermine their value as categories. Rather, grammar needs flexibility in its categories to enable people to communicate flexibly. In the large majority of actual instances, however, there is little ambiguity.

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE B**: Lexical word classes

- There are four lexical word classes: nouns, lexical verbs, adjectives, and adverbs.
- Each class can be distinguished by its morphological, syntactic, and semantic characteristics.
- Nouns and adjectives are more frequent in the expository or 'information-giving' registers: news and academic writing.

- Verbs and adverbs are more frequent in the other registers: conversation and fiction writing.
- The classification of lexical words is not always clear-cut, and some words have borderline status between two classes.

GRAMMAR BITE

C Function word classes

2.4 Survey of function words

Function words can also be categorized in different classes: **determiners**, **pronouns**, **auxiliary verbs**, **prepositions**, **adverbial particles**, **coordinators**, and **subordinators**. To distinguish these classes briefly, we will look at their semantic function and syntactic role, list their main forms, and consider their subclasses.

2.4.1 Determiners

Determiners normally precede nouns, and are used to help clarify the meaning of the noun. The most important are the following:

- The **definite article** *the* indicates that the **referent** (i.e. whatever is referred to) is assumed to be known by the speaker and the person being spoken to (or addressee).
- The **indefinite article** *a* or *an* makes it clear that the referent is one member of a class (***a*** *book*).
- **Demonstrative determiners** indicate that the referents are 'near to' or 'away from' the speaker's immediate context (***this*** *book*, ***that*** *book*, etc.).
- **Possessive determiners** tell us who or what the noun belongs to (***my*** *book*, ***your*** *book*, ***her*** *book*, etc.).
- **Quantifiers** specify how many or how much of the noun there is (***every*** *book*, ***some*** *books*, etc.).

There are also determiner-like uses of ***wh*-words** and **numerals** (see 2.5).

2.4.2 Pronouns

Pronouns fill the position of a noun or a whole noun phrase. The reference of a pronoun is usually made clear by its context. There are eight major classes of pronoun:

- **Personal pronouns** refer to the speaker, the addressee(s), and other entities:

  I *won't tell* ***you*** *how* ***it*** *ended.* (CONV)

  Personal pronouns are used far more frequently than the other classes of pronouns.
- **Demonstrative pronouns** refer to entities which are 'near to' v. 'away from' the speaker's context, like demonstrative determiners (2.4.1):

This is Bay City. (CONV)

*I like **those**.* (CONV)

- **Reflexive pronouns** refer back to a previous noun phrase, usually the subject of the clause:

  *I taught **myself**.* (CONV)

  *She never introduced **herself**?* (CONV)

- **Reciprocal pronouns**, like reflexive pronouns, refer to a previous noun phrase, but indicate that there is a mutual relationship:

  *Yeah they know **each other** pretty well.* (CONV)

- **Possessive pronouns** (such as *mine*, *yours*, *his*) are closely related to possessive determiners (*my*, *your*, *his*, etc.), and usually imply a missing noun head:

  *Is this **yours**, or **mine**?* (CONV)

  ***Ours** is better than **theirs**.* (CONV†)

  These possessive pronouns include the meaning of a head noun. For example, *yours* might refer to *your book* or *your pen*.

- **Indefinite pronouns** have a broad, indefinite meaning. Some of them are compound words consisting of quantifier + general noun (*everything*, *nobody*, *someone*, etc.). Others consist of a quantifier alone (*all*, *some*, *many*, etc.):

  ***Somebody** tricked me.* (CONV)

  *That's **all** I know.* (CONV)

- **Relative pronouns** (*who*, *whom*, *which*, *that*) introduce a **relative clause** (see 9.7–8):

  *I had more friends **that** were boys.* (CONV)

  *He's the guy **who** told me about this.* (CONV)

- **Interrogative pronouns** ask questions about unknown entities:

  ***What** did he say?* (CONV)

  *I just wonder **who** it was.* (CONV)

  Most relative and interrogative pronouns (e.g. *who*, *which*, *what*) belong to the class of ***wh*-words** (see 2.5.1).

2.4.3 Auxiliary verbs

There are two kinds of auxiliary verbs: **primary auxiliaries** and **modal auxiliaries**. Both are 'auxiliary verbs' in the sense that they are added to a main verb to help build verb phrases.

Auxiliary verbs precede the main or lexical verb in a verb phrase: ***will*** *arrive*; ***has*** *arrived*; ***is*** *arriving*; ***may be*** *arriving*, etc. (See 8.7 and 13.5.2 for cases where an auxiliary occurs without a main verb.) Some common auxiliaries have contracted forms—*'s*, *'re*, *'ve*, *'d*, *'ll*—used particularly in speech.

A Primary auxiliaries

There are three primary auxiliaries: *be*, *have*, and *do*. They have inflections like lexical verbs, but are normally unstressed. The same verbs *be*, *have*, and *do* can also act as main verbs.

base	present tense	past tense	*ing*-participle	*ed*-participle
be	*is, am, are*	*was, were*	*being*	*been*
have	*has, have*	*had*	*having*	*had*
do	*does, do*	*did*	*doing*	*done*

In various ways, the primary auxiliaries show how the main verb is to be understood (examples below are from conversation):

- The auxiliary *have* is used to form the **perfect aspect**: *I**'ve** done that once* (see 6.3, 6.4).
- The auxiliary *be* is used for the **progressive aspect** or 'continuous' aspect: *She **was** thinking about me* (see 6.3, 6.5).
- The auxiliary *be* is also used for the **passive voice**: *It **was** sent over there* (see 6.6–8).
- The auxiliary *do* is used in negative statements and in questions; this is known as ***do*** insertion: ***Did** he sell it? This **does**n't make sense* (see 8.7).

B Modal auxiliaries

There are nine modal auxiliary verbs. As their name suggests, they are largely concerned with expressing 'modality', such as possibility, necessity, prediction, and volition. The modals are:

will can shall may must would could should might

Each modal in the lower row is historically the past tense of the modal directly above it. For example, *would* was historically the past tense of *will*. (*Must* has no matching historical past tense.) Nowadays, though, the relationship of *will* to *would*, or *can* to *could*, etc. has less to do with tense than with modal meaning (see 6.9–10).

In practice the modals can be regarded as invariable function words, with no inflections such as *-ing* and *-ed*. The modals *will* and *would* have contracted forms (*'ll* and *'d*), and most modals have a contracted negative form ending in *n't*, such as *wouldn't*. Modals occur as the first verb in a clause, and are followed by the base form of another verb, usually the main verb (underlined below):

*I **can** live here quietly.* (FICT†).

*They **would** have a different view.* (ACAD†)

The modal auxiliaries, and marginal modal forms such as *be going to* (**semi-modals**), are covered in detail in 6.9–13.

2.4.4 Prepositions

Prepositions are linking words that introduce prepositional phrases. The **prepositional complement** following a preposition is generally a noun phrase, so prepositions can also be seen as linking words that connect other structures with noun phrases. For example:

*Eleven fifty **with** the tip* (CONV) *And she's **in** a new situation.* (CONV)

*that picture **of** mother* (CONV) *She's still **on** the phone.* (CONV)

Most prepositions are short, invariable forms: e.g. *about, after, around, as, at, by, down, for, from, into, like, of, off, on, round, since, than, to, towards, with, without.*

In the following examples, the preposition is in bold, and the prepositional phrase it introduces is enclosed in *[]*. The noun phrase functioning as prepositional complement is underlined:

> *He'll go [**with** one of the kids].* (CONV†)
>
> *Late one morning [**in** June], [**in** the thirty-first year of his life], a message was brought [**to** Michael K] as he raked leaves [**in** De Waal Park].* (FICT)

Prepositions can be linked to a preceding verb, such as *rely on* and *confide in.*

> *You can't, you can't **rely on** any of that information.* (CONV)
>
> *She **confided in** him above all others.* (FICT)

These multi-word units are referred to as **prepositional verbs** (see 5.10–11).

Complex prepositions

Another set of prepositions consists of multi-word units known as **complex prepositions**, which have a meaning that cannot be derived from the meaning of the parts. Two-word complex prepositions normally end with a simple preposition:

ending in	examples
as	*such as*
for	*as for, except for*
from	*apart from*
of	*because of, instead of, out of, regardless of*
to	*according to, due to, owing to*

Three-word prepositions usually have the structure simple preposition + noun + simple preposition:

ending in	examples
of	*by means of, in spite of, on account of, on top of*
to	*in addition to, with regard to*
as	*as far as, as well as*

As with many grammatical categories, there are borderline cases with complex prepositions. It is not always clear whether a multi-word combination is a complex preposition—that is, a fixed expression with a special meaning—or a free combination of preposition (+ article) + noun + preposition. *At the expense of* is an example of an in-between case.

2.4.5 Adverbial particles

Adverbial particles are a small group of words with a core meaning of motion. The most important are: *about*, *across*, *along*, *around*, *aside**, *away**, *back**, *by*, *down*, *forth**, *home**, *in*, *off*, *on*, *out*, *over*, *past*, *round*, *through*, *under*, *up*. All of these forms except those marked * can also be prepositions.

Adverbial particles are closely linked to verbs. They generally follow verbs, and are closely bound to them in meaning: *go away*, *come back*, *put* (something) *on*, etc. They are used to build **phrasal verbs**, such as the following:.

> ***Come on**, tell me about Nick.* (CONV)
>
> *I just **broke down** in tears when I saw the letter.* (CONV)

> *Margotte rarely* ***turned on*** *the television set.* (FICT)

They are also used to build **extended prepositional phrases**, where a particle precedes the preposition. For example:

> *We were going* ***back to the hotel*** *when it happened.* (NEWS)

Adverbial particles have been called 'prepositional adverbs', because of their resemblance to both prepositions (in form) and adverbs (in syntactic role). In this book, however, they are treated as a distinct word class. Phrasal verbs are considered again in 5.9, and prepositional phrases in 3.3.5.

2.4.6 Coordinators

There are two types of words traditionally called **conjunctions** in English: **coordinators** (also called coordinating conjunctions), and **subordinators** (or subordinating conjunctions), which are dealt with next, in 2.4.7.

Coordinators are used to indicate a relationship between two units such as phrases or clauses. Coordinators link elements which have the same syntactic role, and are at the same level of the syntactic hierarchy (see 2.1). Thus, in any structure [*X* + coordinator + *Y*], *X* and *Y* are equivalent. (Compare this to subordinators in the next section, which indicate that the following structure is subordinate.) The main coordinators are *and*, *but*, and *or*. In the following examples, the coordinated elements are marked by *[]*:

> *[Mother]* ***and*** *[I] saw it.* (CONV)
>
> *[I don't want to speak too soon],* ***but*** *[I think I have been fairly consistent this season].* (NEWS)
>
> *Is this necessarily [good]* ***or*** *[bad]?* (ACAD)

Or has a rather infrequently used negative counterpart, *nor*, which is used after negative clauses:

> *[The donkeys did not come back],* ***nor*** *[did the eleven men],* ***nor*** *[did the helicopter].* (FICT)

As this example shows, coordinators can be used to connect more than two elements.

Correlative coordinators

Each simple coordinator can be combined with another word, to make a **correlative coordinator**:

> ***both*** *[X]* ***and*** *[Y]* ***either*** *[X]* ***or*** *[Y]*
>
> ***not (only)*** *[X]* ***but (also)*** *[Y]* ***neither*** *[X]* ***nor*** *[Y]*

For example:

> *The couple were* ***both*** *[shoved]* ***and*** *[jostled].* (CONV)
>
> *It's yes or no, isn't it?* ***Either*** *[you agree with it]* ***or*** *[you don't agree with it].* (NEWS)
>
> *We used* ***not only*** *[the colors reflected from mineral surfaces]* ***but also*** *[the colors transmitted through minerals in microscopic thin sections].* (ACAD†)
>
> ***Neither*** *[Zack]* ***nor*** *[Jane] had slept that night, but they looked happy anyway.* (FICT†)

Coordination is discussed in more detail in 8.4.

2.4.7 Subordinators

Subordinators (also called subordinating conjunctions) are linking words that introduce clauses known as **dependent clauses**—clauses which cannot stand alone without another clause, called the **main clause**:

> *You can hold her [**if** you want].* (CONV)

The subordinator shows the connection of meaning between the main clause and the subordinate clause. In the above example, the subordinator *if* shows a relation of 'condition'.

In the case of coordination, explained in the last section, the two elements have the same status. However, in the case of subordination, the dependent clause starting with the subordinator is embedded (or included) in the main clause. This can be shown by nested brackets *[[]]*:

> *[[**As** they watched,] a flash of fire appeared.]* (FICT)
>
> *[A flash of fire appeared [**as** they watched.]]*

Notice the dependent clause can come at the front or at the end of the main clause.

Subordinators fall into three major subclasses:

- The great majority of subordinators introduce **adverbial clauses**, adding details of time, place, reason, etc. to the main clause: *after*, *as*, *because*, *if*, *since*, *although*, *while*, etc. (see 8.15.2, 11.9–12).
- Three subordinators introduce **degree clauses**: *as*, *than*, *that* (see 7.14, 8.15.4).
- Three subordinators introduce **complement clauses** (or **nominal clauses**): *if*, *that*, *whether* (see 8.15.1, 10.1–11).

The subordinators in the first two subclasses indicate meaning relationships such as time, reason, condition, and comparison. The subordinators in the third subclass are called **complementizers** because they introduce clauses following verbs, adjectives or nouns, complementing or completing the meaning of these key words in the main clause:

> *I'm glad [**that** I've found you again].* (FICT)
>
> *Sometimes he did not know [**whether** he was awake or asleep].* (FICT)

Dependent clauses can also be introduced by other forms, like *wh*-words and the relative pronoun *that*. These are not subordinators.

Complex subordinators

Like prepositions, subordinators may consist of more than one word. Most of these **complex subordinators** end with *as* or *that* (often the *that* is optional, as shown by parentheses *( )* below):

ending in	examples
as	*as long as, as soon as*
that	*given (that), on condition (that), provided (that), except (that), in that, in order that, so (that), such (that)*
others	*as if, as though, even if, even though*

For examples, see 11.9–12.

2.4.8 Comparing function word classes in use

Function word classes, like lexical word classes, vary greatly in their frequency in different types of English. Figures 2.2 and 2.3 show the way frequency varies between two very different registers of English, conversation and academic prose. Notice especially the striking differences in frequency of pronouns (high in conversation) and determiners (high in academic prose). Another difference is in the frequency of adverbial particles: this is the least frequent function word class in both registers, but it is much rarer in academic prose than in conversation.

Figure 2.2
Frequency of function word classes in conversation

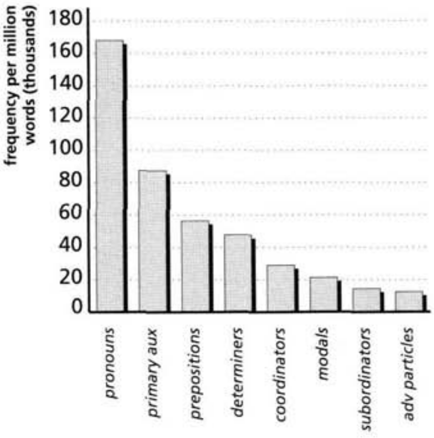

Figure 2.3
Frequency of function word classes in academic prose

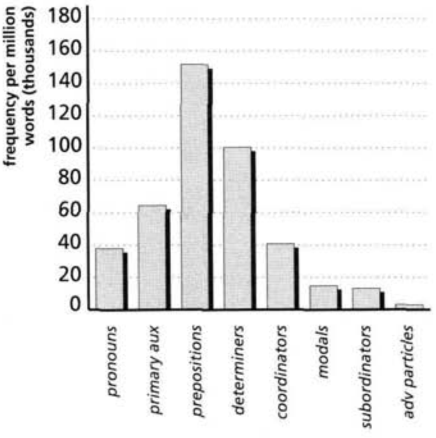

2.5 Special classes of words

A few classes of function words have special qualities: ***wh*-words**, **existential *there***, the **negator *not***, the **infinitive marker *to***, and **numerals**.

2.5.1 *Wh*-words

Wh-words, like subordinators, introduce clauses. However, *wh*-words do not form an independent word class. Instead, they are members of word classes already mentioned, especially determiners, pronouns, and adverbs. As their name suggests, *wh*-words begin with *wh*, with the single exception of *how*. They are used in two main ways: at the beginning of an **interrogative clause**, and at the beginning of a **relative clause**. Two further uses are at the beginning of a complement clause and at the beginning of an adverbial clause.

A Introducing an interrogative clause

***What** do they want?* (FICT)
***When** are you leaving?* (FICT)
***Which** one do you mean?* (FICT)
***Why** should I care?* (CONV†)

Interrogative *wh*-words can be:

- interrogative pronouns: *who, whom, what, which*
- interrogative determiners: *what, which, whose*
- interrogative adverbs: *when, where, how, why*

B Introducing a relative clause (relativizers)

1 *the kind of person [**who** needs emotional space]* (NEWS†)
2 *Graham Poole, [**whose** grandfather started the place in 1895]* (NEWS†)
3 *a small place [**where** everyone knows everyone else]* (NEWS†)

Relativizers can be:

- relative pronouns: *who, whom, which, that*
- relative determiners: *which, whose*
- relative adverbs: *where, when, why*

Relative pronouns stand for a noun phrase, as in **1** above, where *who* refers back to *the kind of person*. Relative determiners occur before the noun, as in **2** above (***whose*** grandfather) or in the phrase *by **which** time*. Relative adverbs are used to refer to times (*when*), reasons (*why*), or places (*where*), as in **3** above (*where* refers back to *a small place*).

C Introducing a complement clause (complementizers)

*I don't know [**what** I would have done without her].* (NEWS)
*I give them [**whatever** I have in my pocket].* (NEWS)
*Vada wonders [**where** she stands in her father's affections].* (NEWS)

D Adverbial clause links

1 *They could not improve upon that, [**whatever** they might say].* (FICT)
2 *[**However** they vary], each formation comprises a distinctive set of rock layers.* (ACAD)

In adverbial clauses as in **1** and **2**, *wh*-words combined with *-ever* express the meaning 'it doesn't matter what/when/where/. . .'. (Compare subordinators like *if* and *when* in 2.4.7 above.)

Finally, the word *whether* is versatile: it is used as a subordinator (see 2.4.7) but it can also be classed as a *wh*-word.

2.5.2 Single-word classes

The three words considered in this group are special in that they are each unique, grammatically, and do not fit into any other class. That is, they form single-word classes.

A Existential *there*

Existential *there* is often called an anticipatory subject. No other word in English behaves in the same way, heading a clause expressing existence:

***There**'s a mark on this chair.* (CONV)
***There** were four bowls of soup.* (FICT)

__There__ are no trains on Sundays. (NEWS)

Existential *there* should not be confused with the place adverb *there.* (See the discussion of existential *there* in 12.5–10.)

B The negator *not*

The negator *not* is in some ways like an adverb, but in other respects it is unique. The main use of *not* (and its reduced form *n't*) is to make a clause negative.

*You can do this but [you **can't** do that].* (CONV) <*[]* marks the clause>

(Note the spelling of *can't* = *can* + *n't.*) Apart from negating whole clauses, *not* has various other negative uses (as in *not all*, *not many*, *not very*, etc.). (See 8.8.)

C The infinitive marker *to*

The infinitive marker *to* is another unique word (not to be confused with the common preposition *to*). Its chief use is as a complementizer preceding the infinitive (base) form of verbs.

*What do you want **to** drink?* (CONV)

*I'm just happy **to** be here right now.* (CONV)

In addition, infinitive *to* occurs as part of two complex subordinators expressing purpose: *in order to* and *so as to*:

*You don't have to live under the same laws as a foreigner **in order to** trade with him.* (NEWS)

*Each has the job of writing his chapter **so as to** make the novel being constructed the best it can be.* (ACAD)

2.5.3 Numerals

Numerals form a rather self-contained area of English grammar. As a word class, numerals consist of a small set of simple forms (*one*, *two*, *five*, etc.), and a large set of more complex forms which can be built up from the simple forms (e.g. *three million eight hundred and fifty-five thousand four hundred and eighteen*, *3,855,418*).

They are most commonly used in the role of determiners or heads in noun phrases. There are two parallel sets of numerals, **cardinals** and **ordinals.**

A Cardinals

Cardinal numerals answer the question 'How many?' and are most commonly used like determiners, with a following noun:

***Four** people were arrested.* (NEWS)

However, cardinals also occur as heads of noun phrases:

***Four** of the yen traders have pleaded guilty.* (NEWS†)

In their nounlike use, cardinals can be made plural by adding *-(e)s*:

*Cops in **twos** and **threes** huddle and smile at me with benevolence.* (FICT)

*Damage is estimated at **hundreds** of **millions** of pounds.* (NEWS).

B Ordinals

Ordinal numerals answer the question 'Which?' and serve to place entities in order or in a series: *first*, *second*, *third*, etc. Similar to cardinals, they can be used either like determiners, before a noun:

> *I was doing my* ***third*** *week as a young crime reporter and had just about finished my* ***second*** *and last story of the day when the phone rang.* (FICT)

or like nouns, as head of a noun phrase:

> *Three men will appear before Belfast magistrates today on charges of intimidation. A* ***fourth*** *will be charged with having information likely to be of use to terrorists. The* ***fifth****, a woman, was remanded on the same charge yesterday.* (NEWS)

Ordinals are also used to form fractions. Treated as regular nouns, ordinals such as *fifth*, *tenth*, and *hundredth* can take a plural *-s* ending:

> *Probably two* ***thirds*** *of the people who live here now are not natives.* (CONV†)
>
> *The pupil can identify the place value of a column or a digit for values of* ***tenths****,* ***hundredths*** *and* ***thousandths****.* (ACAD†)

2.6 Word-class ambiguities

Before we leave word classes, it is important to notice that English has a large number of word forms which occur in more than one word class. In other words, the same spelling and pronunciation applies to two or more different grammatical words. Table 2.1 illustrates a range of such examples.

Some word-class ambiguities are systematic. For example, the class of quantifiers (e.g. *all*, *some*, *any*, *much*) can be seen as a 'superclass' of words which can function with similar meanings as determiners, pronouns or adverbs:

- as determiners:

> *He kept whistling at* ***all*** *the girls.* (CONV†)
>
> *I have* ***a little*** *money in my room.* (CONV) <note: *a little* is considered as a single determiner>

- as pronouns:

> *Is that* ***all*** *I've got dad?* (CONV)
>
> *'Water?' – 'Just* ***a little****, and a lot of ice'.* (FICT)

- as adverbs:

> *Don't get* ***all*** *mucky.* (CONV)
>
> *It was* ***a little*** *hard for him to understand.* (FICT†)

As these examples show, it is impossible to identify the word class of many English words without seeing them in context.

Table 2.1 **Words in more than one class**

form	noun	verb	adj	adv	prep	sub	examples
before				●			*She had never asked him that **before**.*
					●		*He was there **before** her.*
						●	*They'd started leaving **before** I arrived.*
early			●				*Steele kicked an **early** penalty goal.*
				●			*He has also kicked a penalty goal **early** in the match.*
fight	●						*There was a hell of a **fight**.*
		●					*They're too big to **fight**.*
narrow		●					*He plans to **narrow** his focus to certain markets.*
			●				*Current review programs are too **narrow**.*
as					●		*This was the beginning of his life **as** a cultivator.*
						●	***As** they watched, a flash of fire appeared.*
outside			●				*You can open the **outside** window.*
				●			*He's gone **outside**.*
					●		*It's sitting **outside** your house.*

Review

Major points of Grammar Bite C: Function word classes

- There are seven classes of function words: determiners, pronouns, auxiliary verbs, prepositions, adverbial particles, coordinators, and subordinators.
- There are a few other word types which are not easily classified or which cut across other categories: *wh*-words, existential *there*, the negator *not*, the infinitive marker *to*, and numerals.
- English has a large number of words which occur in more than one grammatical category.

3

Introduction to phrases and clauses

GRAMMAR BITES in this chapter

A Introduction to phrases

- The structure of phrases
- The structure and functions of the main types of phrases: noun phrases, verb phrases, adjective phrases, adverb phrases, and prepositional phrases

B Clause elements and clause patterns

- Major clause patterns: intransitive, monotransitive, copular, ditransitive, complex transitive
- Major clause elements: subject, verb phrase, object (direct and indirect), predicative (subject and object), adverbial

3.1 Introduction

In this chapter we give you an initial survey of English grammatical structure, taking words (as classified and illustrated in Chapter 2) as the basic units. This survey progresses in two steps. The first step, in Grammar Bite A, is to see how words pattern together to form phrases. The second step, in Grammar Bite B, is to see how phrases pattern together to form clauses.

GRAMMAR BITE

A Introduction to phrases

3.2 Phrases and their characteristics

As was seen at the beginning of the last chapter, words can be organized into higher units, known as **phrases**. In 3.2 and 3.3, phrase structure and phrase types (or classes) will be examined.

The following example consists of three major phrases, as shown by bracketing *[]* each phrase:

1 *[The opposition][demands][a more representative government].* (NEWS†)

A phrase may consist of a single word or a group of words. Phrases can be identified by substitution—that is, by replacing one expression with another, to see how it fits into the structure. In particular, a multi-word phrase can often be replaced by a single-word phrase without changing the basic meaning:

[It]	*[demands]*	*[something].*
<The opposition>		<a more representative government.>

We can also identify phrases by movement tests. A phrase can be moved as a unit to a different position. Compare **1** above with **1a**, which has a similar meaning:

1a *[A more representative government] [is demanded] [by [the opposition]].*

When we place one set of brackets inside another, as at the end of **1a**, this means that one phrase is **embedded** (i.e. included) inside another. The possibility of embedding sometimes means that a given structure can be understood in two or more different ways. Consider the following example:

2 *They passed the table with the two men.* (FICT†)

Notice there are two possible meanings of this clause, corresponding to different ways of grouping the words (i.e. different phrase structures):

2a *[They] [passed] [the table [with [the two men]]].*
2b *[They] [passed] [the table] [with [the two men]].*

The meaning of **2a** is roughly: 'They passed the table *where the two men were sitting*'. But in **2b** the meaning is '*With (i.e. accompanied by) the two men*, they passed the table'.

In summary:

- Words make up phrases, which behave like units.

- A phrase can consist of either one word or more than one word.
- Phrases can be identified by substitution and movement tests.
- Differences in phrase structure show up in differences of meaning.
- Phrases can be embedded (i.e. one phrase can be part of the structure of another phrase).

Phrase structure can be shown either by bracketing, as in **1–2** above, or by tree diagrams. Figures 3.1 and 3.2 correspond to the three bracketed clauses of **2a** and **2b**.

Figure 3.1
Phrase structure of 2a
(prep = prepositional)

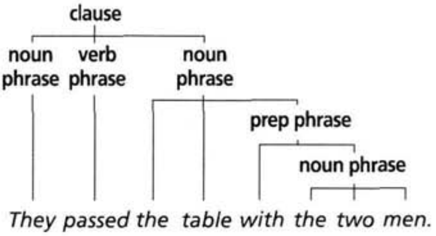
clause
noun phrase
verb phrase
noun phrase
prep phrase
noun phrase
They passed the table with the two men.

Figure 3.2
Phrase structure of 2b
(prep = prepositional)

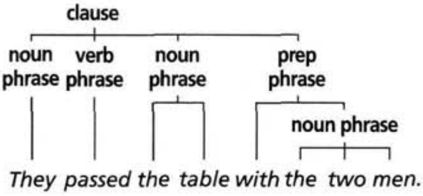
clause
noun phrase
verb phrase
noun phrase
prep phrase
noun phrase
They passed the table with the two men.

3.2.1 Syntactic roles of phrases

Phrase types differ both in their internal structure and in their syntactic roles—i.e. their relations to larger structures. Recognizing syntactic roles, like **subject** and **object**, can be crucial for the interpretation of phrases. For example, consider the difference between:

	subject	**verb**	**object**
1	*[Mommy]*	*[loves]*	*[the kitty].* (CONV)
2	*[The kitty]*	*[loves]*	*[Mommy].*

Here the noun phrases at the beginning and end are interchanged, resulting in a clearly different meaning. Thus the first phrase in both **1** and in **2** is the subject, and the second phrase is the object. By interchanging the positions of *Mommy* and *the kitty*, we have also changed their syntactic roles.

3.2.2 Phrases in use

The use of phrases in discourse can be illustrated by comparing the two text passages presented earlier in 2.2.6. The words in these passages have been grouped into phrases (shown by brackets). Single-word phrases (which are very common) and phrases embedded within phrases are not marked. The round brackets, as in *[Do) you (want]*, signal a split (discontinuous) phrase. (That is, *you* is not part of the phrase *do want.*)

A: Is that [the time]?
B: Yeah, it's [twenty minutes to four].
A: Oh [my clock] is slow, yeah.

> *B: [Do) you (want] us [to) just (go] out there and come back and pick [you guys] up?*
> *A: Uh huh.*
> *C: Yeah.*
> *A: You [can go] if you want to, I'll, I think I'll <. . .>*
> *D: He really [doesn't trust] me, does he?*
> *C: That's right, how 'bout I pin you?*
> *D: Okay. Oh, let me tell you something.*
> *B: Do you, [do) you (want] to go [by yourself]?*
> *D: No, no, no. You['ll feel] better and we['ll be following] you.*
> *A: [Will) you (feel] better?*
> *D: It [doesn't].*
> *C: I need [three safety pins], you had one [in your pocket].*
> *B: Uh huh.* (CONV)
>
> *[Radioactive leak] confirmed [at Sellafield]*
>
> *[Work on the dismantling of a nuclear reprocessing plant at Sellafield] caused [a leak of radioactivity] yesterday. [British Nuclear Fuels Ltd] said [the radioactivity] reached [the air] [through a chimney stack which was still in use]. But [spokesman Bob Phillips] said it was not [an incident which required reporting to the Government]. He dismissed [protests from Friends of the Earth] as 'scaremongering'. However, [Dr Patrick Green, Friends of the Earth radiation campaigner], said: 'BNF has [a scandalous track record of playing down incidents at first, and only admitting their seriousness later].' [Three months ago] BNF confirmed that [a leak of radioactive plutonium solution] [had been reclassified] [as 'a serious incident]'.* (NEWS)

The length of the phrases in the two passages is very different. Generally the news story has longer phrases as well as a larger number of multi-word phrases. In fact, in the conversation sample, almost three-quarters of the phrases are only one word long, while there is only one phrase that contains four or more words. In the news sample, however, nine phrases are four or more words long, and some of these are longer than ten words.

The comparison is incomplete because it does not include phrases within phrases. These occur particularly in the news story. Using a tree diagram or brackets, the example from the beginning of the sample can be broken down as in Figure 3.3.

Noun phrases and prepositional phrases can have particularly complex structure in written texts, with several layers of phrase embedding. In fact, the complexity of phrases is a very striking measure for comparing the complexity of syntax in different registers of English. The simplest structures occur in conversation and the complexity increases through fiction and newspaper writing, with academic writing showing the greatest complexity of phrase structure.

Figure 3.3 A phrase with embedding

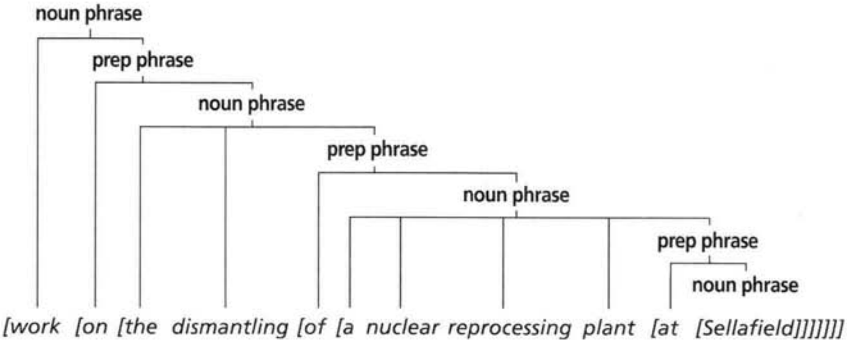
noun phrase
prep phrase
noun phrase
prep phrase
noun phrase
prep phrase
noun phrase
[work [on [the dismantling [of [a nuclear reprocessing plant [at [Sellafield]]]]]]]

3.3 Types of phrases

For each class of lexical word, there is a major phrase type with an example of that class as the **head**: **noun phrase** (3.3.1), **verb phrase** (3.3.2), **adjective phrase** (3.3.3), **adverb phrase** (3.3.4), and **prepositional phrase** (3.3.5). The head is the principal, obligatory word. In fact, each phrase type can often consist of just one word: the head.

To begin our outline of these phrase types, let's recall the procedure of word classification in 2.3, where we took account of form/structure, syntactic role, and meaning. The same three factors need to be recognized in describing phrase types:

- Form/structure: Our main test for the classification of phrases is structure, especially the word class of the head of the phrase and the other elements contained in the phrase. (This is analogous to the morphological structure of words.)
- Syntactic role: Phrases can be described according to their function or syntactic role in clauses (e.g. subject, object). (In 3.4 we outline the structure of clauses in some detail, but here we take for granted only a limited knowledge of such roles as subject and object.)
- Meaning: In general, the semantic nature of phrases is to specify and/or elaborate the meaning of the head word and its relation to other elements in the clause.

3.3.1 Noun phrases

A phrase with a noun as its head is a noun phrase. The head can be preceded by **determiners**, such as *the*, *a*, *her*, and can be accompanied by **modifiers**—elements which describe or classify whatever the head refers to. Here are some examples of noun phrases (head in bold; determiner, where present, underlined):

a ***house***   *these* ***houses***   *their* ***house***   *many* ***houses***
his bristly short ***hair***   *her below-the-knee* ***skirt***
the little ***girl*** *next door*   *heavy* ***rain*** *driven by gales*
any printed ***material*** *discovered which might be construed as dissent*

An abstract head noun can also be followed by **complements**, which complete the meaning of the noun, especially ***that*-clauses** or **infinitive *to*-clauses**. Noun phrases containing a complement are shown below in *[]*; heads are in bold, and complements underlined:

1 *[The popular **assumption** that language simply serves to communicate 'thoughts' or 'ideas'] is too simplistic.* (ACAD)

2 *He feels awkward about [her **refusal** to show any sign of emotion].* (NEWS†)

Besides common nouns, noun phrases can be headed by proper nouns (**3**), pronouns (**4–5**) and (occasionally) adjectives (**6**). (Brackets *[]* enclose noun phrases consisting of more than one word; noun phrase heads are in bold.)

3 ***Dawn** lives in **Wembley**.* (FICT)

4 ***They** said **they**'d got **it**.* (CONV)

5 *'Have **you** got [**everything** you need]?'* (FICT)

6 *'Show me how [the **impossible**] can be possible!'* (FICT)

Even though these phrases do not have a common noun as head, they are noun phrases because they have the structure characteristics of a noun phrase (e.g. **5** has a modifier, *you need*, and **6** has a determiner, *the*) and they serve the same syntactic roles (e.g. acting as subject or object of a clause).

Noun phrases can take the role of subject or object in a clause. For example:

subject	**verb phrase**	**object**
I	*saw*	*a lot of Italy.* (CONV†)

Noun phrases can also take the syntactic role of predicative, adverbial, or complement (in a prepositional phrase). These roles will become clear when we introduce them in relation to other phrase types (see 3.3.5, 3.4).

3.3.2 Verb phrases

Verb phrases have a **lexical verb** or **primary verb** as their head (i.e. their **main verb**; see 2.2). The main verb can stand alone or be preceded by one or more **auxiliary verbs**. The auxiliaries further define the action, state, or process denoted by the main verb.

Finite verb phrases show distinctions of tense (present/past) and can include modal auxiliaries. **Non-finite** verb phrases do not show tense and cannot occur with modal auxiliaries, and so have fewer forms. Here we focus on finite verbs. Table 3.1 presents the range of finite verb phrases for the main verb *show* preceded by one or more auxiliary verbs.

Verb phrases are the essential part of a clause, referring to a type of state or action. The main verb determines the other clause elements that can occur in the clause (e.g. the kinds of objects, see Grammar Bite B).

Verb phrases are often split into two parts (i.e. they are discontinuous). This happens in questions, where the subject is placed after the (first) auxiliary verb:

*What's he **doing**?* (CONV) <verb phrase = *is doing*>

In addition, the parts of a verb phrase can be interrupted by adverbs or other adverbials:

Table 3.1 Main forms of the verb phrase

	present tense	past tense	modal
simple	*shows, show*	*showed*	*could show*
perfect	*has/have shown*	*had shown*	*could have shown*
progressive	*am/is/are showing*	*was/were showing*	*could be showing*
passive	*am/is/are shown*	*was/were shown*	*could be shown*
perfect+progressive	*has/have been showing*	*had been showing*	*could have been showing*
perfect+passive	*has/have been shown*	*had been shown*	*could have been shown*
progressive+passive	*am/is/are being shown*	*was/were being shown*	*could be being shown*

Notes

a *Show*, the main verb illustrated here, has a distinct past participle form *shown*. However, occasionally *show* can also be a regular verb, so *showed* could replace *shown* in the table.

b *Could* is the only modal auxiliary illustrated here. Any modal could be substituted for it.

c In general, the verb phrases with four or more verbs (e.g. *could have been shown*) are extremely rare.

> *You know the English* ***will*** *always* ***have*** *gardens wherever they find themselves.* (FICT) <verb phrase = *will have*>
>
> *The current year* ***has*** *definitely* ***started*** *well.* (NEWS) <verb phrase = *has started*>

3.3.3 Adjective phrases

Adjective phrases have an adjective as head, and optional modifiers that can precede or follow the adjective. In these examples the head is in bold and the modifiers are in ordinary italics:

old ***incredible*** *so* ***lucky*** ***good*** *enough* *desperately* ***poor***

Modifiers typically answer a question about the degree of a quality (e.g. 'How lucky/poor?'). Adjective heads can also take complements. The complements are underlined below:

guilty *of a serious crime*
subject *to approval by**...*
slow *to respond*
more ***blatant*** *than anything they had done in the past*
so ***obnoxious*** *that she had to be expelled*

Complements often answer the question 'In what respect is the adjectival quality to be interpreted?' (e.g. 'guilty/slow in what respect?').

The structure and uses of adjective phrases are described in detail in 7.2–9. Adjectives with clauses as complements are discussed in 10.7, 10.9.2, and 10.15.

The most important roles of adjective phrases are as modifier and subject predicative:

- as a modifier before a noun, where the adjective is called an **attributive adjective** (noun phrases are marked in *[]*):

  *He's [a **deeply sick** man].* (FICT)

  *We saw [a **very good** movie] the other night.* (CONV†)

  *The European study asked [a **slightly different** question].* (ACAD)

- as a **subject predicative**, often following the verb *be*:

  *That's **right**.* (CONV)

  *He's **totally crazy**.* (CONV)

  *Gabby was **afraid to say anything more**.* (FICT)

Adjective phrases modifying nouns can be split into two parts by the noun head:

> *You couldn't have a **better** name **than that**.* (FICT) <adjective phrase = *better than that*>
>
> *When he plays his best, he's a **really tough** player **to beat**.* (NEWS†) <adjective phrase = *really tough to beat* >

3.3.4 Adverb phrases

Adverb phrases are like adjective phrases in structure, except that the head is an adverb (in bold below). Optional modifiers (in ordinary italics) may precede or follow the adverb head. They typically express degree. Complements (underlined) can also follow:

> ***there***
> *pretty* ***soon***
> *so* ***quickly*** *you don't even enjoy it*
> ***quietly***
> ***fortunately*** *enough*
> *much more* ***quickly*** *than envisaged*

Adverb phrases should be distinguished from adverbials: adverb phrases are structures, while adverbials are clause elements. Adverb phrases, prepositional phrases, and adverbial clauses can all function as adverbials (see 3.5.5; 11.1–3).

The following syntactic roles are most usual for adverb phrases:

- as a modifier in adjective or adverb phrases (the adjective or adverb phrase modified is marked *[]*):

  *Those two were [**pretty much horribly** spoiled].* (†CONV)

  *He was an attractive little creature with a [**sweetly** expressive] face.* (FICT†)

- as an adverbial on the clause level:

  *She smiled **sweetly**.* (FICT†)

  *They sang **boomingly well**.* (FICT)

For further detail, see the treatment of adverb phrases in 7.10.5 and the extensive treatment of adverbials in Chapter 11.

3.3.5 Prepositional phrases

Prepositional phrases mostly consist of a preposition (in bold below) followed by a noun phrase, known as the **prepositional complement** (in ordinary italics). The preposition can be thought of as a link relating the noun phrase to preceding structures.

1 ***to*** *town* **3** ***in*** *the morning* **5** ***on*** *the night [****of*** *the first day]*
2 ***to*** *Sue* **4** ***to*** *him* **6** ***in*** *a street [****with*** *no name]*

Note that prepositional phrases are often embedded in larger phrases, as in **5** and **6**, where *[]* enclose an embedded prepositional phrase.

Prepositions also take **complement clauses**—clauses which have the same role as noun phrases—as complements, but normally these are only *wh*-clauses (in **7** below) and *ing*-clauses (in **8** below):

7 *Component drawings carry instructions [on* ***where they are used****].* (ACAD†)
8 *It was hard to live in Missouri [after* ***spending so much time in California****].* (CONV)

Prepositional phrases can be 'extended' by an initial **adverbial particle**, which adds a meaning such as place, direction, or degree: ***back*** *to the fifties*; ***down*** *in the south*. Another kind of extension is an adverb of degree: ***exactly*** *at noon*; ***nearly*** *till eleven*; ***considerably*** *to the right*.

Prepositional phrases vary in how closely they are connected with the surrounding structure. Their two major syntactic roles are:

- as an adverbial on the clause level (see Chapter 11):

  He worked [in a shop] – [probably at that time]. (CONV†)

  He retired [after three minor heart attacks] [at the age of 36]. (NEWS†)

- as a modifier or complement following a noun (the noun phrase is bracketed *{}* and the prepositional phrase is bracketed *[]*):

  He was a poet, {a teacher [of philosophy]}, and {a man [with a terrible recent history]}. (NEWS)

  Or at least that is {the ambition [of {the industrial development commission [of a small Pennsylvania steel town]}]}. (NEWS)

Prepositions also occur in prepositional verbs such as *look* ***at*** (see 5.10).

A preposition is said to be **stranded** if it is not followed by its prepositional complement. The prepositional complement, in such cases, is generally identified as a previous noun phrase, marked *[]* below:

9 *[What more] could a child ask* ***for****?* (NEWS)
10 *As soon as Unoka understood [what] his friend was driving* ***at****, he burst out laughing.* (FICT)
11 *Without the money to pay for your promises, your manifesto is not worth [the paper] it is written* ***on****.* (NEWS†)

Stranded prepositions are usually found in clauses that do not follow normal word order, such as direct questions (**9**), interrogative clauses (**10**) and relative clauses (**11**).

According to the old-fashioned 'rules' of grammar, stranded prepositions have long been considered bad style. However, in practice they frequently occur, especially in conversation. Although there is usually an alternative to stranded prepositions, in which the preposition is moved forward to precede its complement, speakers often prefer the stranded preposition. Taking **9** above as an example, the alternative of placing the preposition at the beginning of the clause (**9a**) is unlikely to occur, even in formal writing.

9 *What more could a child ask* ***for****?* (NEWS)
9a ***For*** *what more could a child ask?*

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE A**: Introduction to phrases

- Words are organized into larger units known as phrases.
- The main classes of phrases are: noun phrase, verb phrase, adjective phrase, adverb phrase, and prepositional phrase.
- The classes can be identified by their meaning, structure, and syntactic role.
- Each of these phrases has a head from the corresponding word class: e.g. noun phrases usually have a noun as their head.
- The frequency of longer and more complex phrases varies from one register to another, increasing from conversation, to fiction, to news writing, to academic prose.

GRAMMAR BITE

B Clause elements and clause patterns

3.4 A preview of clause patterns

The clause is the key unit of syntax, capable of occurring independently (i.e. without being part of any other unit). It is useful to think of the clause as a unit that can stand alone as an expression of a 'complete thought'—that is, a complete description of an event or state of affairs. Hence, many spoken utterances consist of a single clause:

Have you got an exam on Monday? (CONV)

and the same is true of many written sentences:

She smiled sweetly. (FICT)

However, not all utterances or sentences contain a complete clause. For example:

More sauce? (CONV)

Thirty pence please. (CONV)

Five years later? (FICT)

Image crisis for Clinton over haircut. (NEWS) <a headline>

Although these examples make sense as individual utterances or sentences, they do not have a verb phrase, which is the key element of a clause. However, their message could be expressed more fully as a clause:

Would you like more sauce?

Such non-clausal material will be considered further in 13.4. For the sake of clarity, we limit the discussion here to examples with a single, complete clause.

The following list presents examples of the basic clause patterns that are introduced in this section. All the examples are from conversation:

example	pattern
1 *Sarah and Michael*$_{[S]}$ *disappeared*$_{[V]}$	subject (S) + verb phrase (V)
2 *She*$_{[S]}$ *changed*$_{[V]}$ *her dress*$_{[DO]}$	subject (S) + verb phrase (V) + direct object (DO)
3 *The Swiss cheese*$_{[S]}$ *has gone*$_{[V]}$ *bad*$_{[SP]}$	subject (S) + verb phrase (V) + subject predicative (SP)
4 *Marc*$_{[S]}$ *was*$_{[V]}$ *in the bathroom* $_{[A]}$	subject (S) + verb phrase (V) + adverbial (A)
5 *You*$_{[S]}$ *gave*$_{[V]}$ *her*$_{[IO]}$ *the wrong kind of egg*$_{[DO]}$	subject (S) + verb phrase (V) + indirect object (IO) + direct object (DO)
6 *That*$_{[S]}$ *makes*$_{[V]}$ *me*$_{[DO]}$ *so mad*$_{[OP]}$	subject (S) + verb phrase (V) + direct object (DO) + object predicative (OP)
7 *They*$_{[S]}$ *'re sending*$_{[V]}$ *us*$_{[DO]}$ *to Disneyland*$_{[A]}$	subject (S) + verb phrase (V) + direct object (DO) + adverbial (A)

The verb phrase is the central or pivotal element in each clause. The **valency** of the verb controls the kinds of elements that follow it. For example, *disappeared* in **1** cannot be followed by a noun phrase. It has the type of valency known as 'intransitive'. On the other hand, *gave* in **5** has to be followed by two noun phrases—one identifying the recipient (*her*) and the other identifying the thing that was given (*the wrong kind of egg*). Hence the verb lexeme *give* has the type of valency known as 'ditransitive'.

The clauses in the examples above illustrate the five major **valency** patterns:

- **intransitive** pattern (S + V; example **1**)
- **monotransitive** pattern (S + V + DO; example **2**)
- **copular** patterns (S + V + SP and S + V + A; examples **3** and **4**)
- **ditransitive** pattern (S + V + IO + DO; example **5**)
- **complex transitive** patterns (S + V + DO + OP and S + V + DO + A; examples **6** and **7**).

Each term is used to refer both to the clause pattern and to the valency of the verb that occurs in the pattern. So we can say clause **1** has an intransitive pattern and *disappear* is an intransitive verb. Similarly, we can say clause **5** has a ditransitive pattern and *give* is a ditransitive verb. All patterns which have an object following the verb (monotransitive, ditransitive, and complex transitive) are given the generic term **transitive**. (See the more detailed discussion of valency patterns in 5.7.)

3.5 Clause elements

Clause elements are phrases that serve syntactic roles in the clause, as introduced in Grammar Bite A. A number of tests can be applied to identify clause elements, but not all tests will apply in every case. As already noted, grammatical definitions are rarely simple and clear-cut. This is true of clause elements, too.

3.5.1 Verb phrase (V)

The verb phrase is the central element of the clause, because it expresses the action or state to which other elements relate, and it controls the other kinds of elements and meanings that can be in the clause. The verb phrase was described in 3.3.2., so nothing further needs to be said here.

3.5.2 Subject (S)

The second most important element is the subject. In syntactic terms, a number of criteria can be used to define the subject:

- The subject is a noun phrase.
- It occurs with all types of verbs.
- Subject pronouns are in the **nominative** case. For example, *he, she* are the forms of the pronouns used as subject, while the **accusative** forms *him, her* are used as object. Compare ***He*** *likes* ***her*** with ***She*** *likes* ***him***.
- The subject precedes the verb phrase (except in clauses with **inversion**, such as questions, where the subject follows the **operator**).
- The subject determines the **number** of the verb phrase, depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. Compare *She* ***works*** *late* <singular> with *They* ***work*** *late* <plural>.
- The subject noun phrase of a transitive verb can be moved after the verb, and preceded by *by* to make a clause with a **passive** verb. Compare ***Kate*** *saw it* with *It was seen* ***by Kate***.

The six criteria above deal with structure. Turning to meaning:

- The subject denotes the most important participant in the action or state denoted by the verb. With transitive verbs, this is generally the 'doer' or **agent** of the action.
- The subject generally represents the topic, i.e. the entity that the clause is about. But sometimes English requires a subject, even if the subject has no actual meaning:

  It*'s warm in here.* (CONV)

  It *never rains in Albuquerque.* (CONV)

  In these cases, English uses *it* as a pronoun that fills the place of the subject but has no content—a **dummy pronoun**.

3.5.3 Object (O)

- An object is a noun phrase.
- It usually follows the verb.
- It only occurs with transitive verbs.
- An object pronoun is in the accusative case. For example, in *He likes her* and *She likes him*, the accusative forms *her* and *him* fill the object position.
- The object noun phrase of a transitive verb can be moved to become subject of the corresponding passive clause. Compare *Everyone deserted* ***me*** with ***I*** *was deserted (by everyone)*.

Three valency patterns contain **direct objects**: the monotransitive, ditransitive, and complex transitive patterns. The ditransitive pattern contains first an **indirect object** followed by a direct object.

A Direct objects (DO)

A direct object generally follows immediately after the verb, except where an indirect object intervenes. Its most common semantic role is to denote the entity affected by the action or process of the verb:

*He bought **biscuits and condensed milk**.* (FICT)

*We parked **the car** in the worst place.* (CONV)

*Well, I made **an English muffin**, but I ate **the whole thing**.* (CONV)

In these typical cases, the subject denotes the doer of the action, and the clause fits the template: '*X did something*' (where 'something' is the direct object). However, there is a wide range of transitive verbs where the meanings of direct objects are less typical. Here are a few examples:

*Oh, are you having **a lovely time**?* (CONV)

*The stewards all spoke **French**.* (CONV)

*We should show **understanding for the fear of our neighbours**.* (NEWS)

In these examples, the direct objects express abstractions, which are not actually affected by the action of the verb. Nevertheless, grammatically, they are direct objects.

Sometimes English verbs require a direct object even though it has no meaning. Such is the case with the verb *take*:

*Take **it** easy Tina.* (CONV) <i.e. relax>

As with subjects, English uses *it* as the dummy pronoun for direct objects.

B Indirect objects (IO)

An indirect object occurs after ditransitive verbs such as *give* and *tell*, and comes before the direct object. It conforms to the other criteria for objects, including the formation of passives. To illustrate this last point, consider example **1**, where the indirect object is in bold and the direct object is underlined. In the passive counterpart **1a**, the indirect object *you* becomes the subject:

1 *Ben Franklin Transit gave **you** additional funding.* (CONV†)

1a ***You** were given additional funding by Ben Franklin Transit.*

In contrast, the direct object *additional funding* cannot easily become the subject of a corresponding passive without the insertion of a preposition (here *to*):

1b *[Additional funding] was given (**to**) **you** by Ben Franklin Transit.*

As for their semantic role, indirect objects generally denote people receiving something or benefiting from the action of the verb:

*Well actually he brought **us** the big menu first.* (CONV†)

*I cooked **the kids** dinner.* (CONV†)

*'Agnes has been showing **me** her prize,' said Mynors.* (FICT†)

3.5.4 Predicative (P)

- A predicative can be an adjective phrase, a noun phrase, or occasionally a prepositional phrase.
- It follows the verb phrase and (if one is present) the direct object.
- It has the semantic role of characterizing a preceding noun phrase.

There are two major types of predicative, the **subject predicative** and the **object predicative**:

A Subject predicatives (SP)

Subject predicatives characterize or specify the subject noun phrase (underlined in the following examples):

1 *His skin was* ***very pink.*** (ACAD) <SP = adjective phrase>

2 *That tall fellow over there is* ***Dr Fraker.*** (FICT) <SP = noun phrase>

3 *But his wife Shelley seemed* ***in great shape.*** (NEWS†) <SP = prepositional phrase>

For example, in **1**, the adjective phrase *very pink* is the subject predicative, and it characterizes *his skin* (that is, it says what kind of skin he has).

Special distinguishing features of the subject predicative are:

- It immediately follows the verb phrase.
- The main verb has to be a **copular verb**, such as *be*, *seem*, and *become*.

Subject predicatives are also sometimes called 'subject complements'.

B Object predicatives (OP)

Object predicatives characterize or specify the direct object noun phrase (object predicatives are in bold, direct objects are underlined):

1 *Oh, I can't get this milk* ***open.*** (CONV) <OP = adjective phrase>

2 *Many consider these new gates* ***something of a menace.*** (NEWS) <OP = noun phrase>

3 *He was surprised to find himself* ***out of breath.*** (FICT†) <OP = prepositional phrase>

Thus in **1**, *open* characterizes *this milk*.

The distinguishing features of the object predicative are:

- It generally immediately follows the direct object.
- The main verb has to be a complex transitive verb, such as *make*, *find*, *consider*, and *name*.

The object predicative is sometimes called the 'object complement'.

3.5.5 Adverbials (A)

A Obligatory adverbials

Some verbs take an **adverbial** in order to complete their meaning. This is known as an obligatory adverbial. Obligatory adverbials can occur with two patterns: the copular pattern and the complex transitive pattern. Obligatory adverbials usually express place or direction, although they can also express time or manner meanings:

example	clause pattern
Your toast is ***on the table.*** (CONV†)	S + V + **A**
The pleasant summer lasted ***well into March.*** (FICT)	S + V + **A**
She placed the baby ***on a blanket in the living room.*** (FICT†)	S + V + DO + **A**
I treated her ***badly, very badly.*** (FICT)	S + V + DO + **A**

In these clause patterns, the adverbial has to be present in order to complete the structure and meaning of the verb. This may be tested by removing the adverbial (in bold), resulting in an incomplete clause (e.g. *your toast is* or *she placed the baby*).

B Optional adverbials

Only a few verbs require adverbials to be complete; however, adverbials occur widely in clauses as optional elements.

- Optional adverbials can be added to clauses with any type of verb.
- They are usually adverb phrases, prepositional phrases, or noun phrases.
- They can be placed in different positions within the clause—in final, initial, or medial positions.
- More than one of them can occur in a single clause.
- They are rather loosely attached to the rest of the clause. Whereas the verb phrase is central, the adverbial is relatively peripheral (except in those clause patterns that require adverbials).

Optional adverbials add additional information to the clause, covering a wide variety of meanings, such as place, time, manner, extent, and attitude.

examples	clause pattern
I ***only*** *bought one* ***today.*** (CONV)	S + **(A)** + V + DO + **(A)**
I was here, ***with Uncle Nick, thirty years ago.*** (FICT)	S + V + A + **(A)** + **(A)**
They are peculiarly susceptible to drought. They ***therefore*** *benefit* ***considerably from periodic submergence.*** (ACAD†)	S + **(A)** + V + **(A)** + **(A)**

The above examples illustrate some of the variety of adverbials, showing a range of meanings and functions, showing how a number of adverbials can co-occur in a single clause, and showing the optionality of most adverbials. However, notice that 'optionality' here means that the adverbial could be omitted *without making the clause structurally incomplete.* Of course, even optional adverbials cannot be omitted without making a difference to meaning. (Chapter 11 is devoted to adverbials.)

3.5.6 Long verb phrases

In 3.3.2 we introduced verb phrases as phrases containing a main verb sometimes preceded by one or more auxiliary verbs. There is another 'bigger' notion of verb phrase commonly used in grammar, including not only the verb phrase in this sense, but also any other clause elements which follow the main verb (object, predicative, adverbial), depending on the valency of the main verb: e.g. monotransitive, ditransitive. We will call this 'umbrella constituent' a **long verb phrase** (shown in bold below):

My mother ***was born in Canada.*** (CONV)

Some clauses consist only of a long verb phrase, as with imperative constructions:

Look at that nice dog. (CONV)

The long verb phrase corresponds roughly to a traditional grammatical notion of 'predicate'. It is useful for analysis particularly when a complex clause consists of a subject followed by a series of conjoined long verb phrases:

The firefighters ***grabbed me*** *and* ***pulled me up.*** (CONV†)

When we use tree diagrams in this book, we include both a long and 'short' verb phrase as separate constituents, the first including the second. It is now time to revise the tree diagrams in Figures 3.1 and 3.2, to include the added long verb phrase, which will occur in clause tree diagrams in the rest of the book; see Figures 3.4 and 3.5. Although it is important in tree diagrams, the long verb phrase will not need to be discussed in the rest of this book.

Figure 3.4 **Revision of Figure 3.1, showing the long verb phrase**
(prep = prepositional)

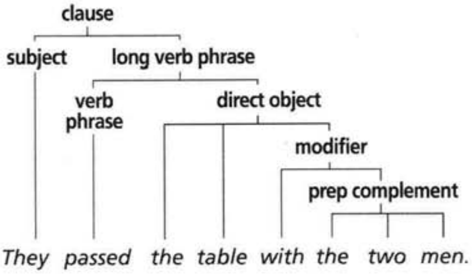
clause
subject
long verb phrase
verb phrase
direct object
modifier
prep complement
They passed the table with the two men.

Figure 3.5 **Revision of Figure 3.2, showing the long verb phrase**
(prep = prepositional)

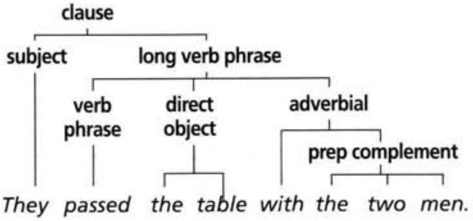
clause
subject
long verb phrase
verb phrase
direct object
adverbial
prep complement
They passed the table with the two men.

Note: Figures 3.4 and 3.5 show the same structure as Figures 3.1 and 3.2, except that (a) the long verb phrase is included and (b) the diagrams show syntactic role labels (subject, adverbial, etc.) instead of labels for phrase types (noun phrase, etc.)

3.5.7 Truly peripheral elements

Some elements are even more peripheral to the clause than adverbials. These are attached to the clause in a loose way, but do not form part of the main message of the clause. In fact, it may be unclear whether they are truly part of the clause at all. They are often set off from the rest of the clause by punctuation (in writing), intonation (in speech), or by being placed immediately before or after the clause. Sometimes these peripheral elements are complete clauses in their own right. They will simply be listed here with a brief explanation and one or two examples.

A Conjunctions

Coordinating and subordinating **conjunctions** (see 8.3–4) are fixed in initial position in the clause, even ahead of other peripheral adverbials:

> ***And****, of course, now Keely doesn't have any teeth.* (CONV)
>
> ***Because*** *he and Jane aren't married.* (CONV)

B Parentheticals

Parentheticals are set off from the surrounding clause by parentheses (in writing), or sometimes by dashes:

> *At precisely 11.07 (****Earth time****), a message flashed up on the ITN screen.* (NEWS)
>
> *One of the first to make it in modern times (****some Greeks had known it long before****) was Leonardo da Vinci.* (ACAD)

C Prefaces

Prefaces are noun phrases placed before the subject, which typically have the same reference as a personal pronoun in the clause. In the following examples, the preface is in bold, and the personal pronoun with the corresponding reference is underlined:

> ***This woman****, she's ninety years old.* (CONV)
>
> *But* ***Anna-Luise*** *what could have attracted her to a man in his fifties?* (FICT)

The use of prefaces in conversation is discussed in 12.11.1 and 13.3.2.

D Tags

In contrast to prefaces, **tags** are normally added at the end of a clause, and can be either **noun phrase tags** (**1**), **question tags** (**2**) or **declarative tags** (**3**):

> **1** *It's nice* ***that table*** *anyway.* (CONV)
> **2** *She's so generous,* ***isn't she?*** (CONV)
> **3** *Yeah I thoroughly enjoyed it* ***I did****.* (CONV)

Noun phrase tags are comparable to prefaces, except that they follow the main part of the clause.

E Inserts

We mentioned **inserts** as a separate family of words in 2.2.2. Grammatically these are extra words which can be 'slipped into' spoken discourse, mainly to convey interactive meanings. They can occur as stand-alone elements, or as peripheral elements in a clause. Examples with clauses are:

> ***Hello*** *is that Cindy Jones?* (CONV)
>
> *You know who Stan is,* ***right?*** (CONV)

Some multi-word expressions may be considered inserts because they have become so formulaic that they seem like single units rather than syntactic constructions:

> *Er no I'll give it a – miss right now* ***thank you.*** (CONV)
>
> ***You know*** *she went all the way up to calculus in high school.* (CONV)

In 13.7, we will look at inserts in greater depth.

F Vocatives

Vocatives are nouns or noun phrases which generally refer to people, and serve to identify the person(s) being addressed:

> ***Mum,*** *I'm making such a big sandwich.* (CONV)
>
> *Oh, make your bloody mind up,* ***boy!*** (CONV) <note: *bloody* is a taboo word and may be offensive to some people>
>
> *Come on* ***you reds,*** *come on* ***you reds,*** *come on* ***you reds.*** (CONV) <addressing a football team during a match>

All the above types of peripherals, except for conjunctions and parentheticals, are more frequently found in spoken language.

Review

Major points in GRAMMAR BITE B: Clause elements and clause patterns

- Clauses (in their simplest form) are composed of phrases that function as clause elements such as subject and object.
- The main elements of clauses are subject, verb phrase, object (direct object or indirect object), predicative, and adverbial.
- These elements combine in seven basic clause patterns: intransitive, monotransitive, ditransitive, two types of copular, and two types of complex transitive patterns.
- Adverbials are usually optional elements. This means that they can be added to the basic clause patterns—either at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end of a clause.
- An 'umbrella constituent', the long verb phrase, includes the verb phrase and the clause elements which follow it.
- There can also be peripheral elements in a clause, such as conjunctions, tags, and vocatives.

4

Nouns, pronouns, and the simple noun phrase

GRAMMAR BITES in this chapter

A Types of nouns

- ➤ Countable and uncountable nouns
- ➤ Proper nouns
- ➤ Collective nouns, unit nouns, and species nouns

B Types of determiners

- ➤ The definite and indefinite articles *the* and *a(n)*
- ➤ Possessive and demonstrative determiners
- ➤ Quantifiers and numerals
- ➤ Semi-determiners and *wh*-determiners

C Number and case in nouns

- ➤ Number: singular and plural
- ➤ Regular and irregular plurals
- ➤ Genitives as determiner and as modifier
- ➤ Independent genitives, group genitives, and double genitives
- ➤ Genitives and *of*-phrases

D Gender and noun formation

- ➤ Masculine, feminine, personal, and neuter
- ➤ Derived nouns: common noun suffixes
- ➤ Noun compounds

E Types of pronouns

- ➤ Personal pronouns
- ➤ Possessive, reflexive, and reciprocal pronouns
- ➤ Demonstrative pronouns
- ➤ Indefinite pronouns
- ➤ Other pronouns

4.1 Introduction

Chapter 3 showed that one of the key parts of English grammar is the noun phrase. In this chapter, we focus on the simple noun phrase, which consists of a head alone, or a determiner + head. Nouns or pronouns can function as head. These components are illustrated below.

		determiner slot	**head slot**	
			music	← common noun
determiner	→	*the*	*friends*	← common noun
			Chicago	← proper noun
			She	← pronoun
genitive	→	*Charles's*	*grandfather*	← common noun

In addition, noun phrases can be extended by the use of modifiers and complements, which are the subject of Chapter 9.

GRAMMAR BITE

A Types of nouns

4.2 Main types of nouns

Nouns can be grouped into a small number of classes which differ in meaning and grammatical behavior. There is first a distinction between **common** and **proper** nouns. Common nouns can be either **countable** or **uncountable**.

- Countable common nouns refer to entities which can be counted: they have both a singular and a plural form (*a* **cow**, *two* **cows**, etc.). Both in the singular and in the plural there is a contrast between **indefinite** and **definite,** signaled by **articles**: *a cow* v. *the cow*; *cows* v. *the cows*.
- Uncountable common nouns refer to something which cannot be counted: they do not vary for number. They cannot occur with the indefinite article *a(n)*, but they allow a contrast between definite and indefinite: *the milk* v. *milk*.
- Proper nouns have no contrast for number or definiteness: they are singular and definite. For example, the proper noun *Sue* has no options *a Sue*, *the Sue*, or *Sues*.

The differences among these noun classes are shown here:

	common countable		**common uncountable**		**proper**
	indefinite	**definite**	**indefinite**	**definite**	**(definite)**
singular	*a cow*	*the cow*	*milk*	*the milk*	*Sue*
plural	*cows*	*the cows*	—	—	—

Countability is partly a matter of how we view the world, rather than how the world really is. For example, *furniture* and *traffic* are uncountable nouns in English. Although they refer to sets of separate items (e.g. chairs, cars), the English language 'sees' these items as a mass.

Proper nouns need no article or plural form because they only name an individual (e.g. a specific person or place, like *Sue*, *Chicago*) whereas common nouns denote a class (like *girl*, *city*). Proper nouns are generally used in situations where the speaker and addressee know which individual is meant, without further specification.

Nevertheless, proper nouns can sometimes have modifiers like common nouns:

> *The court heard that* ***little*** *Harry's death could have been prevented if social workers had not overruled detectives.* (NEWS)

The adjective modifier here does not serve to distinguish Harry from others of that name, but adds a descriptive label to someone already identified.

Further, proper nouns sometimes have a possessive determiner:

> *I'm gonna have to phone* ***our*** *Sue.* (CONV)
>
> *Oh did I tell you* ***our*** *Joanie's coming over?* (CONV)

In these examples *our* signals that Sue and Joanie are members of the speaker's family. Later, in 4.3.3, it will be seen that proper nouns can also be used like common nouns.

4.2.1 Concrete v. abstract nouns

In the following text excerpt, the different kinds of noun are highlighted as follows: underlined = common countable, bold = common uncountable, capitals = proper:

> *The lab crew at CIBA-GEIGY, the Swiss chemical and drugs giant, continues to seek out niche markets with a vengeance. The latest development is a drug called* ***clomipramine*** *which has the endearing quality of reducing the desire to pull your* ***hair*** *out when under* ***stress****.* (NEWS)

This text sample illustrates another distinction:

- Concrete nouns refer to physical entities or substances.
- Abstract nouns refer to abstractions such as events, states, times, and qualities.

In the text sample, the following common nouns are concrete:

> *lab, crew, chemical, drugs, drug, clomipramine, hair*

and the following common nouns are abstract (though some of them can have concrete meanings in other sentences):

> *giant, niche, markets, vengeance, development, quality, desire, stress*

The distinction between concrete and abstract nouns is purely semantic: it has no real grammatical role, since abstract nouns, like concrete nouns, can be countable, uncountable, common, or proper. In fact, some nouns, like *thing*, cross the boundary between concrete and abstract very easily. *Thing* commonly refers to a physical object (as in **1**), but it is also widely used for abstract meanings like 'event' or 'process' (as in **2**):

1 *This* ***thing*** *is way too small to stick between your toes.* (CONV)
2 *I have just got it confirmed, but these* ***things*** *take time.* (CONV)

Concrete nouns are more 'physical' than abstract nouns, and the countable/uncountable distinction can be better understood if we think of these distinctions for concrete nouns:

- Countable concrete nouns refer to persons, objects, places (e.g. *student*, *chair*, *town*).
- Uncountable concrete nouns refer to substances, materials, liquids, gases (e.g. *steel*, *water*, *air*).

However, this is just a useful guide—as the exceptional cases of *furniture* and *traffic* have already shown.

4.2.2 The same noun as countable or uncountable

Many nouns can be both countable and uncountable, but with a difference of meaning:

> *I think these are eggs from our new* ***chickens****.* (CONV†) <countable>
> *Would you like some* ***chicken*** *for dinner?* (CONV) <uncountable>
>
> *There is no way to tell how old a* ***rock*** *is merely by looking at its minerals.* (ACAD†) <countable>
> ***Rock*** *is defined as the inorganic mineral material covering the earth's surface.* (ACAD†) <uncountable>

Also, many basically uncountable nouns have countable uses:

> *Plant beverages include* ***tea****, coffee, wine, alcoholic drinks, intoxicants, and sweet beverages.* (ACAD) <uncountable>
> *Six* ***teas*** *please.* (CONV) <countable, = cups of tea>
>
> *I think I would like some* ***wine*** *though.* (CONV) <uncountable>
> *A lot of non-alcoholic* ***wines*** *are expensive.* (CONV†) <countable, = types of wine>

Tea and *wine*, referring to liquids or substances, are basically uncountable, but notice from these examples that *teas* (countable) can refer to cups of tea, and that *wines* can refer to types of wine.

In a similar way, abstract nouns can have countable and uncountable uses:

> *What's your highest level of* ***education****?* (CONV) <uncountable>
> *Although she was a girl she wanted* ***an education****.* (NEWS†) <countable>
>
> *They had received* ***kindness****, thoughts and good wishes from total strangers.* (NEWS†) <uncountable>
> *It would be* ***a*** *'cruel* ***kindness****' to uphold the county court order.* (NEWS) <countable>

Here the indefinite article *a/an* signals the countable use of *education* and *kindness*. The uncountable noun refers to the general abstraction, while the countable noun refers to particular instances or types of it.

4.2.3 Plural uncountable nouns

Although it may seem to be a contradiction, there are a few plural uncountable nouns:

> *She wears* ***those*** *jigsaw-type* ***clothes****,* ***trousers*** *usually.* (CONV)
>
> *She reached for the* ***scissors****.* (FICT)

*Letters of **thanks** have been flooding into our office.* (NEWS)

These are plural in that they have a plural ending *-s* and go with plural determiners (*those* in the first example), but they are uncountable because there is no singular form **a clothe, a thank.* (Notice that *clothes*, referring to the things people wear, is not the plural of *cloth*, which has its own plural *cloths*.)

4.3 Proper nouns v. common nouns

Important types of proper noun are:

- personal names (e.g. *Anna, Tom, Williams, Singh*)
- place names (e.g. *Australia, Karachi, Africa*)
- organization names (e.g. *Congress, Mitsubishi*)
- time names (e.g. *Saturday, July, Christmas*)

The most typical proper nouns (e.g. *Anna, Africa*) are arbitrary in form. Grammatically, these nouns have no determiner and do not have a contrast of number between singular and plural (*Annas, the Anna, an Anna* do not normally occur). In spelling, proper nouns are marked by an initial capital letter.

Yet these features of proper nouns have exceptions. Many names are actually multi-word expressions, and contain ordinary lexical words: e.g. *the Horn of Africa, the White House.* As these examples show, a name may also be preceded by *the*—something which can also occur with a single proper name as in *the Sahara (Desert), the Pacific (Ocean), the Vatican, the Kremlin.* Some proper names with *the* are plural (e.g. *the Himalayas*).

4.3.1 Initial capitals

The use of initial capitals in spelling extends beyond proper names. Uses for which the capital letter is conventional are:

- personal names (e.g. *Sam, Jones, Mandela*)
- geographical names (e.g. *Canada, Tokyo, Asia*)
- objects, especially commercial products (e.g. *Voyager, Chevrolet, Kleenex*)
- religious periods, months, and days of the week (e.g. *Ramadan, August, Friday*)
- religions and some religious concepts (e.g. *Buddhism, Islam, God, Heaven, Hell*)
- address terms for family members (e.g. *Mother, Dad, Uncle*)
- people or bodies with a unique public function (e.g. *the Pope, the President, the Senate, Parliament, the Commonwealth*)
- public buildings, institutions, laws, etc. (e.g. *the Library of Congress, Yale University, the Fire Precautions Act*)
- political parties and their members (e.g. *the Democrats, the Labour Party*)
- languages, nationalities, and ethnic groups (e.g. *Arabic, Chinese, English, Sioux*)
- adjectives and common nouns derived from proper nouns (e.g. *Marxist, Marxism, Victorian, the Victorian(s), New Yorker(s), Greek(s)*)

Not all words spelled with initial capitals are proper nouns: the last group above consists of adjectives and common nouns. They can be put in a series like this:

proper noun	adjective	singular common noun	plural common noun
Buddha, Buddhism	*Buddhist*	*a Buddhist*	*Buddhists*
Finland	*Finnish*	*a Finn*	*Finns*
Paris	*Parisian*	*a Parisian*	*Parisians*

In fact, there is a lot of interplay between proper nouns and common nouns. Many names are combinations of common nouns and other words with a definite article (as in *the British Library*). On the other hand, many common nouns are based on proper nouns and keep the capital letter: *the Japanese* (from *Japan*).

4.3.2 Proper nouns regularly occurring with *the*

Some proper nouns regularly occur with a definite article. Important groups are:

- geographical names, such as rivers, seas, and canals (e.g. *the Nile, the Panama Canal, the Indian Ocean*)
- plural geographical names (e.g. *the Cayman Islands, the Great Smoky Mountains*)
- buildings with public functions, such as hotels, restaurants, theatres, museums, and libraries (e.g. *the Ritz, the Metropolitan Museum*)
- names of ships (e.g. *the Titanic, the Santa Maria*)
- many newspapers and some periodicals (e.g. *The New York Times, The Guardian*)

4.3.3 Proper nouns behaving like common nouns

Sometimes proper nouns can function like common nouns. The following show typical uses:

- a person or family called X:

  I haven't been in touch with ***the Joneses*** *for ages.* (CONV) <the Jones family>

- a product of X

  I got ***a Bentley****, two* ***Cadillacs****, a Chrysler station wagon, and* ***an MG*** *for my boy.* (FICT) <makes of car>

4.4 Package nouns

Four special classes of countable common nouns are considered in this section: **collective nouns**, **unit nouns**, **quantifying nouns**, and **species nouns**. Overall, they have a function of 'packaging' together a range of entities. Package nouns are often followed by *of*-phrases: e.g. *a* ***load*** *of books.* The four different classes are sometimes difficult to separate. For example, *bunch* is a collective noun (4.4.1) but it has also become popular as a quantifying noun (= 'a quantity of') in American English conversation.

4.4.1 Collective nouns

Collective nouns refer to groups of people, animals, or things: e.g. *army*, *audience*, *committee*, *family*, *staff*, *team*, *flock*, *bunch*. All these nouns behave like ordinary countable nouns, varying for number and definiteness: *the team*, *a team*, *the teams*, *teams*. (Among collective nouns we also find proper nouns naming official bodies or organizations: *the USAF*, *the BBC*, *the Senate*, *the UN*, *NBC*, *Congress*, *Parliament*.)

One special class of collective nouns often comes before an *of*-phrase describing the members of the group:

> *Two little* ***groups of people*** *stood at a respectable distance beyond the stools.* (FICT)
>
> *There was a small* ***crowd of people*** *around.* (NEWS)
>
> *The aircraft flew into a large* ***flock of seagulls*** *just after take-off.* (ACAD†)

Nouns like *group*, *crowd*, and *flock* are called ***of*-collectives** because they generally precede *of* + plural noun, where the plural noun names a set of people, animals, objects, etc. Some *of*-collectives, such as *group*, are quite general in meaning, whereas others have a more specific application. Some typical **collocations** are:

collective noun	selected collocations
bunch *of*	*idiots, thieves, roses, grapes*
crowd *of*	*demonstrators, fans, spectators, shoppers*
flock *of*	*birds, doves, geese, sheep, children*
gang *of*	*bandits, hecklers, thugs*
group *of*	*adults, girls, animals, buildings, diseases, things*
set *of*	*assumptions, characteristics, conditions*

The list of collocations above suggests the range of meaning that a collective noun can cover. Other examples are: ***herd*** *of cows*, ***host*** *of stars*, ***pack*** *of lies*, ***series*** *of accidents*, ***shoal*** *of fish*, ***swarm*** *of bees*, ***troop*** *of inspectors*. Some points to note are:

- *Bunch*, *group*, and *set* are the most general words, allowing the widest range of collocations.
- Although many of these collectives have a specific range (e.g. *flock* refers to a group of birds and animals), they can be extended, for special effect, to other nouns (e.g. *flock of children*).
- Some of the collectives frequently have a negative effect: especially *bunch*, *gang*, and *pack*. Notice the contrasting effects of:

> ***A group of young men*** *were talking eagerly.* (FICT†) <neutral>
>
> ***A swarm of panicked men****, most with rifles, approached the blinding, erupting generator.* (FICT†) <negative>

4.4.2 Unit nouns

Unit nouns allow us to cut up a generalized mass or substance into individual units or pieces. They are countable nouns, but they are usually followed by an *of*-phrase containing an uncountable noun. Each unit noun has a specific meaning, which shows up in the different collocations it favors:

unit noun	selected collocations
a ***bit*** *of*	*cake, wood, fun, luck*
a ***chunk*** *of*	*chocolate, concrete, gold*
a ***grain*** *of*	*corn, dust, salt, sand*
an ***item*** *of*	*clothing, equipment, news*
a ***lump*** *of*	*clay, coal, soil, butter, fat*
a ***piece*** *of*	*cake, toast, chalk, land, wood, advice, evidence*
a ***sheet*** *of*	*cardboard, iron, paper*

Other unit nouns are illustrated by: ***scrap*** *of paper*, ***slice*** *of bread*, ***speck*** *of dirt*, ***strip*** *of cloth*.

- Like quantifying collectives, unit nouns vary in their range: ***loaf*** *of bread* and ***rasher*** *of bacon* favor only one collocation, but *bit* and *piece* can be used very generally.
- One uncountable noun can also combine with a variety of unit nouns. For example, *paper* can follow *ball of, bit of, fragment of, heap of, length of, mound of, piece of, pile of, roll of, scrap of, sheet of, wad of*, etc. depending on the meaning required.

4.4.3 Quantifying nouns

Quantifying nouns are used to refer to quantities, which are usually specified in a following *of*-phrase containing either a plural noun or an uncountable noun:

a pile of bricks	*a pile of rubbish*
a kilo of potatoes	*a kilo of flour*

In this section, we distinguish seven kinds of quantifying nouns:

A Nouns for a type of container

noun	selected collocations
basket *of*	*eggs, flowers, bread, fruit*
box *of*	*books, candy, matches, soap*
cup *of*	*coffee, soup, tea*

Other examples are: *bag, barrel, bottle, can, carton, crate, keg, pack, packet, sack.*

B Nouns for shape

noun	selected collocations
heap *of*	*ashes, blankets, bones, leaves, rubble*
pile *of*	*bills, bodies, bricks, rocks, rubbish, wood*

Heap and *pile* can be used more generally, to express a very large amount:

> *Oh god, I've got* ***heaps of things*** *to do.* (CONV†)
>
> *They must have cost* ***a pile of money.*** (FICT)

C Measure nouns

nouns	selected collocations
pint, gallon, quart, liter/litre *of*	*beer, blood, gas, milk, oil, wine*

nouns	selected collocations
***foot, inch, yard, meter/metre** of*	*cloth, concrete, material, wire*
***ounce, pound, gram, kilo(gram)** of*	*butter, cheese, flour, gold,*
***ton, tonne** of*	*aluminium, bricks, ore, sewage*

<note: *liter* and *meter* are AmE spellings; *litre* and *metre* are BrE>

Some measure nouns are used more generally: *ounce*, for example, can be used for a very small amount and *ton* for a very large amount:

> *He didn't seem to have* ***an ounce of grown-up character*** *to draw on.* (FICT)
> *He has released* ***tons of songs*** *for the consumption of the masses.* (NEWS†)

D Plural numeral nouns

Hundred, *thousand*, *million*, *dozen*, and *score* are nouns for precise numbers. But they can be used in the plural to express an indefinitely large number:

> *Oh goodness, darling, you've seen it* ***hundreds of times.*** (FICT)

E Nouns for large quantities

The nouns *load(s)* and *mass(es)* can also be used emotively and vaguely to refer to large quantities:

noun	selected collocations
*a **load** of*	*fuel, garbage, junk, money, stuff*
***loads** of*	*friends, money, things, work*
*a **mass** of*	*blood, detail, material, stuff*
***masses** of*	*homework, money, people*

Load(s) is found mostly in conversation, while *mass* (in the singular) is found more in written language.

F Nouns ending in *-ful*

The noun suffix *-ful* (not to be confused with the adjective suffix *-ful*, as in *careful*) can be added to almost any noun that can denote some kind of container. For example:

> *bowlful, earful, fistful, handful, mouthful, pocketful, spoonful, teaspoonful*

In their basic meaning, these nouns are similar to measure nouns (e.g. in a recipe: *Add two teaspoonfuls of olive oil*), but they can be used more imaginatively. *Handful* is the most common noun of this type, and it also stands out in being used in an extended sense, to refer to a small quantity (as in *a handful of people*).

G *Pair* and *couple*

These are both nouns referring to two people, things, etc. But they are quite different in the way they collocate with other nouns:

noun	selected collocations
***pair** of*	*arms, eyes, glasses, gloves, hands, pants, pliers, scissors, shoes, socks*
***couple** of*	*days, babies, balloons, boys, examples, hours, kids*

The main difference is that *pair of* applies to two things which occur together (thus it can go with plural uncountable nouns, as in *a pair of trousers*); whereas *couple of* is used more vaguely, to mean 'two or three, a very small number'. *A couple (of)* is similar to *a few*, and can be considered a plural quantifier (see 4.7.3).

Like many vague expressions, *a couple (of)* is colloquial: it occurs far more in conversation than in the written registers, and hardly occurs at all in academic writing.

4.4.4 Species nouns

Species nouns are another class of nouns often followed by an *of*-phrase, but they refer to the type rather than the quantity of something:

> *Mr. Mathew is the* ***sort of*** *character Dickens liked to create.* (NEWS)
>
> *I was 'a floater,' really. I did all* ***kinds of*** *things.* (FICT)
>
> *There are two* ***types of*** *bond energy.* (ACAD†)
>
> *The scheme covers any* ***make of*** *machine.* (NEWS†)
>
> *Limestones, one* ***class of*** *sedimentary rock, are made up of calcium carbonate.* (ACAD†)
>
> *Under these conditions certain* ***species of*** *bacteria break down the waste to form methane gas.* (ACAD)

Species nouns can be followed by countable or uncountable nouns. In the former case, there is a choice between singular and plural for both nouns:

1 *any* ***make*** *of* ***machine*** (NEWS) <singular + *of* + singular>
2 *what* ***sort*** *of* ***things*** (ACAD) <singular + *of* + plural>
3 *certain* ***types*** *of* ***car*** (NEWS) <plural + *of* + singular>
4 *these* ***kinds*** *of* ***questions*** (ACAD) <plural + *of* + plural>

The choice between **3** and **4** often makes little difference to meaning; for example, *certain types of car* and *certain types of cars* have the same meaning.

Sort (of) + noun and *kind (of)* + noun are the most common species nouns. *Sort of* + noun is particularly frequent in conversation, and *kind of* + noun in fiction. Other species nouns (*type (of)* and *species(of)*) are frequent only in academic writing. (On *sort of* and *kind of* as adverbs, see 7.11.6)

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE A**: Types of nouns

- The major types of noun can be categorized in two ways: countable v. uncountable nouns, and common v. proper nouns.
- Countable nouns have singular and plural number; uncountable nouns do not.
- Common nouns refer to classes, while proper nouns refer to individuals.
- Some nouns can switch between countable and uncountable, and some can switch between common and proper.
- There are also special types of package noun: collective nouns, unit nouns, quantifying nouns, and species nouns.
- These special noun types are often followed by *of* (e.g. *group of animals*, *cup of coffee*).

GRAMMAR BITE

B Types of determiners

4.5 Determiners

Determiners are function words used to specify the kind of reference a noun has. As Table 4.1 shows, determiners vary in the kind of noun head they occur with: the three classes in question are countable singular noun, countable plural noun, and uncountable noun.

Table 4.1 How determiners combine with nouns

determiner type	**countable nouns**		**uncountable nouns (singular)**
	singular nouns	**plural nouns**	
zero article	—	*books*	*milk*
indefinite article	***a*** *book*	—	—
definite article	***the*** *book*	***the*** *books*	***the*** *milk*
possessive	***my/your*** *book*	***my/your*** *books*	***my/your*** *milk*
demonstrative	***this*** *book* ***that*** *book*	***these*** *books* ***those*** *books*	***this*** *milk* ***that*** *milk*
quantifier	***every / each*** *book*	—	—
	—	***all*** *(the) books*	***all*** *(the) milk*
	—	***many*** *books*	***much*** *milk*
	—	***some*** *books*	***some*** *milk*
	—	*(a)* ***few*** *books*	*(a)* ***little*** *milk*
	—	***enough*** *books*	***enough*** *milk*
	—	***several*** *books*	—
	either / neither *book*	***both*** *books*	—
	any *book*	***any*** *books*	***any*** *milk*
	no *book*	***no*** *books*	***no*** *milk*
numeral	***one*** *book*	***two/three*** *books*	—

There are other determiners, not shown in this table: e.g. *a lot of*, and the *wh*-words *what*, *which*, and *whose*. The determiner slot can also be filled by genitives (e.g. *Tanya's*)—see 4.9.2.

Sometimes more than one determiner occurs in the same noun phrase: e.g. *all the books*. In such cases, the determiners occur in a fixed order, and for this purpose we distinguish between central determiners (the most common type), predeterminers (which precede central determiners when both occur) and postdeterminers (which follow central determiners). These are shown in Table 4.2. The different slots for determiners are summarized in Table 4.3.

Table 4.2 **How determiners combine with one another**

predeterminers	central determiner	postdeterminers (1)	postdeterminers (2)	head
all	*the*		*four*	*(races)*
all	*those*	*other*		*(guys)*
both	*these*			*(problems)*
half	*a*			*(cup)*
half	*the*			*(size)*
twice/double	*the*			*(size)*
	the		*many/few*	*(occasions)*
	her	*first*		*(marriage)*
	the	*last*	*two*	*(years)*
	the	*other*	*two*	*(fellows)*

Table 4.3 **Summary of the position of determiners**

predeterminers	central determiners	postdeterminers (slot 1)	postdeterminers (slot 2)
all, both, half	articles	ordinal numerals	cardinal numerals
multipliers like *double, twice*	demonstrative determiners possessive determiners	semi-determiners like *same, other, next*	quantifying determiners

4.5.1 Determiner v. noun

The special kinds of nouns introduced in 4.4.1–4 behave in a similar way to quantifying determiners and semi-determiners like *a few*, *a little*, *a lot of*, and *such* (described in 4.7.3, 4.7.5). Like these determiners, expressions like *a load of*, *a couple of*, and *a kind of* qualify a following noun in terms of quantity or type. Compare:

> *We knew* ***masses of*** *people.* (CONV†)
>
> *There's* ***so many*** *people in that place.* (CONV†)

Similarly, ***this sort of*** *food* is equivalent in meaning to ***such*** *food*, except that *sort of* occurs more in speech, and *such* more in writing.

In some ways, it is the noun following *of*, rather than the quantifying noun, that behaves like the head of the noun phrase in these expressions. We will take this topic up again under **concord** (8.6.4).

4.5.2 Determiner v. pronoun

As will be clearer in 4.12–16, there is also a strong parallel between the different types of determiner and the different types of pronoun. The main correspondences are shown in Table 4.4. Pronouns lack the referential content provided by a noun head, and therefore they depend much more on context for their interpretation than determiners.

Table 4.4 Classes of determiners and pronouns

determiner class	pronoun class	general name
the definite article (4.6.3): *the*	personal pronouns (4.12): *you, he, she, it,* etc.	
possessive determiners (4.7.1): *your, his, her, its,* etc.	possessive pronouns (4.12.4): *yours, his, hers, its,* etc.	possessives
demonstrative determiners (4.7.2): *this, that, these, those*	demonstrative pronouns (4.14): *this, that, these, those*	demonstratives
quantifying determiners (4.7.3): *all, some, any, no,* etc.	indefinite pronouns (4.15): *all, some, any, none,* etc.	quantifiers

4.6 The articles

The most common determiners are the **articles** *the* and *a/an*, which signal definite and indefinite meaning. When no determiner occurs before the noun, it is useful to say that there is a **zero article**.

The **definite article** and the **indefinite article** both take a different spoken form when the word begins with a vowel:

/ə/	*a house, a UFO*
/ən/	*an apple, an hour, an MP*
/ðə/	*the house, the union*
/ðɪ/	*the apple, the hour, the other day*

(Notice that spelling can be misleading: some words beginning with *u* have an initial consonant sound /juː../, and a few words beginning with a 'silent' *h* have an initial vowel sound.) The spelling *an* is used when the following word begins with a vowel sound.

Figure 4.1 shows that articles are much less common in conversation than in writing. This is largely because conversation uses many pronouns, which generally do not need articles. In contrast, the written registers use many more nouns, resulting in many more articles.

Figure 4.1

Distribution of definite and indefinite articles across registers

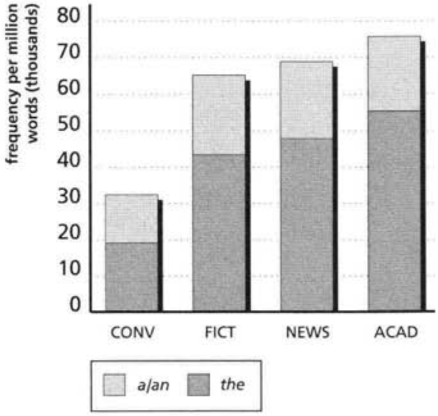

4.6.1 Indefinite meanings expressed by *a/an*

The indefinite article *a/an* is used only with singular countable nouns. It narrows down the reference of the head noun to one indefinite member of the class.

A Specific use of *a/an*

The indefinite article is often used to introduce a new specific entity into the discourse:

1 ***A 12-year-old boy*** *got mad at his parents Friday night because they refused to let* ***him*** *go fishing on the Colorado River with relatives. So, while his parents were distracted during a barbecue with eight adult friends,* ***he*** *slipped away from his sister and three brothers, snatched the keys to a Volkswagen Beetle and drove off in one of his parent's four cars, prompting fears that* ***he*** *had been kidnapped. <...> El Cajon police sent teletype descriptions of* ***the curly haired, 90-pound sixth-grader*** *to law enforcement agencies throughout Southern California and the Arizona border area.* ***The boy*** *was found unharmed – but scared and sleepy – at about noon yesterday by San Diego County sheriff's deputies.* (NEWS†)

In **1,** the indefinite article ***a*** (*12-year-old boy*) introduces a specific, but unnamed and unknown boy; afterwards the boy is referred to by pronouns (*him, he*) and definite noun phrases (*the curly haired, 90-pound sixth-grader* and *the boy*).

B Unspecific use of *a/an*

The indefinite article is also used where the noun phrase does not refer to any specific individual:

2 *I'm looking for* ***a millionaire****, she says, but I don't see any around.* (CONV)
3 *'I feel terrible. I need* ***a friend****.'* (FICT)

In **2** and **3,** *a millionaire* and *a friend* are unspecific and mean 'any person of that kind'.

C Classifying or generic use of *a/an*

The indefinite article can also serve to classify an entity, as in **4**, or to refer generically to what is typical of any member of the class, as in **5**:

4 *My husband is* ***a doctor****.* (FICT) <classifying>
5 ***A doctor*** *is not better than his patient.* (FICT†) <generic>

Generic reference is described in 4.6.4 below.

4.6.2 Indefinite meaning with the zero article

Like *a/an* with singular countable nouns, the zero article signals indefiniteness with uncountable nouns (**1**) and plural countable nouns (**2**):

1 *We have* ***wine*** *on the table girls, drink it.* (CONV†)
2 *We have* ***telephones*** *and we talk to* ***people****.* (CONV)

The reference here is to an indefinite number or amount (often equivalent to *some*).

Zero article phrases commonly express non-specific or generic reference. But there are also some special uses of the zero article with singular countable nouns, where otherwise we expect *the* or *a/an* to occur.

A Meals as institutions

Are they going out for ***dinner*** *or something?* (CONV)

B Places as institutions

*The ceremony took place in **church**.* (FICT†)

*They are prepared to go to **jail** for their cause.* (NEWS)

C Predicatives with unique reference

When a predicative noun phrase names a unique role or job, either a zero article or *the* is used:

*Lukman was re-elected **OPEC president** in November.* (NEWS†) <with zero article>

*Simon Burns is **the chairman of the appeal fund**.* (NEWS†) <with *the*>

D Means of transport and communication

The zero article here is found mainly after the preposition *by*:

*travel by **air/car/horse/rail***

*send by **mail/post/e-mail/satellite link***

E Times of the day, days, months, and seasons

*Tomorrow at **dawn** we'll begin our journey.* (FICT)

*When **winter** comes in 12 weeks, they will freeze.* (NEWS)

F Parallel structures

The zero article sometimes occurs in parallel structures like *X and Y* or *from X to Y*, where *X* and *Y* are identical or contrasting nouns:

*He travelled from **country** to **country**.* (FICT)

*Thankfully, it has turned out all right for **mother** and **baby**.* (NEWS)

*This broadly relates to communications between **lawyer** and **client**.* (NEWS)

Examples of this kind are often fixed phrases, like *eye to eye*, *face to face*, *from start to finish*.

G Block language

The zero article is normal with noun phrases in **block language**, that is, abbreviated language used in newspaper headlines, labels, lists, notices (e.g. *ENTRANCE*, *WAY OUT*), etc. Compare:

***Fire** kills **teenager** after **hoax**.* (NEWS) <the headline>

***A teenager** died in **a blaze** at his home after firemen were diverted by a call that turned out to be **a student prank**.* (NEWS) <the news story following the headline>

Notice the headline uses the zero article for *fire*, *teenager*, and *hoax*, which are then mentioned in the news story as ***a** blaze*, ***a** teenager*, and ***a** student prank*.

H Vocatives

The zero article also occurs in forms of address (**vocatives**):

*No hard feelings, **Doctor**.* (FICT)

*Do you want that, **baby**?* (FICT)

With all these special uses of the zero article, it is worth noting that the same types of noun can occur with the definite article, when a more specific meaning is intended:

A *Bye bye, dear, thanks for* ***the lunch.*** (CONV)
B ***The church*** *serves a population of 18,000.* (NEWS)
D *She took* ***the train*** *to the campus.* (FICT)

4.6.3 The definite article *the*

The goes with both countable and uncountable nouns. It marks the noun as referring to something or someone assumed to be known to speaker and addressee (or writer and reader).

A Anaphoric use of *the*

After unknown entities have been introduced, they can be treated as 'known' and named by ***the*** in later references. This use is clear in passage **1** in 4.6.1, where we introduced the indefinite article:

1 ***A 12-year-old boy*** *got mad at his parents Friday night <...> and drove off in one of his parent's four cars <...> El Cajon police sent teletype descriptions of the curly haired, 90-pound sixth-grader to law enforcement agencies throughout Southern California and the Arizona border area.* ***The boy*** *was found unharmed <...>* (NEWS†)

This is called **anaphora**: the phrase with *the* refers back to a previously mentioned item.

B Indirect anaphoric use of *the*

In indirect anaphora, the earlier noun is not repeated, but an associated noun is used with *the*:

2 ***The Mercedes*** *took a hard bounce from a pothole. 'Christ,' said Sherman, 'I didn't even see that.' He leaned forward over* ***the steering wheel. The headlights*** *shot across the concrete columns in a delirium.* (FICT)

We know that cars have a steering wheel and headlights, so after the Mercedes has been mentioned, 'the steering wheel' and 'the headlights' can be treated as known.

C Use of *the* with synonyms

Sometimes, indirect anaphora involves the use of a different noun referring to the same thing or person:

3 *He found* ***her blue Ford Escort*** *in the car park.* ***The vehicle*** *was locked and the lights were off.* (FICT)

We know that the Ford Escort is a vehicle, and so 'the vehicle' can be treated as known. A second example is the shift from ***a*** *12-year-old boy* to ***the*** *curly haired, 90-pound sixth-grader* in **1** above.

D Cataphoric use of *the*

Cataphora can be thought of as the opposite of anaphora. Here definite reference is established by something following later in the text, especially some modifier (marked *[]* here) of the noun (e.g. ***the centre*** *[of Bucharest]*, ***the summer*** *[of 1984]*):

4 *Another potential voter starts to tell them about* ***the car*** *[that went through his garden wall].* (NEWS)

5 *Emerson admitted that he felt like quitting for* ***the rest*** *[of the season].* (NEWS)

In **4** the defining postmodifier is a relative clause; in **5** it is an *of*-phrase.

E Situational use of *the*

The often occurs because an entity is known from the situation: either the immediate situation in which speech takes place, or the wider situation which includes knowledge of the national situation, the world, or even the universe.

6 *I think there's somebody at* ***the door*** *now.* (CONV) <immediate situation>

7 *Cos they get money off* ***the government****, don't they?* (CONV†) <wider situation>

Sometimes a speaker assumes situational knowledge that the hearer does not have, and so has to clarify the reference:

8 *A: Could you get me from* ***the shelf*** *the black felt pen?*
B: ***Which shelf****?*
A: ***The big one.*** (CONV†)

F Other uses of *the*

The above are the major uses of the definite article, but definiteness depends on assumed shared knowledge in the minds of speaker and addressee, so some uses of *the* are more difficult to explain:

9 *A woman and a child had a narrow escape yesterday when their car left the road.* ***The accident*** *happened at about 9.25am at Marks Tey, near Colchester.* (NEWS†)

Here the reader has to infer that the event described in the first sentence is an accident. This type of usage is similar to indirect anaphora, except that we cannot point to a particular noun, like *Mercedes* in **2** above, which explains the later use of ***the*** *headlights*, etc.

Also, some uses of *the* are idiomatic, as part of a fixed phrase: e.g. *in the main*, *by the way*, *at the end of the day*, etc.

Finally, *the* can be used for generic reference, as in *He plays* ***the*** *trumpet*, discussed in 4.6.4 below.

As Figure 4.2 shows:

- Situational *the* is common only in conversation, where speakers rely on the context that they share with hearers.
- Anaphoric *the* is common in all registers.
- Cataphoric *the* is heavily concentrated in non-fiction writing; it is associated with complex noun phrases.

Figure 4.2
Percentage use of reference patterns for definite noun phrases

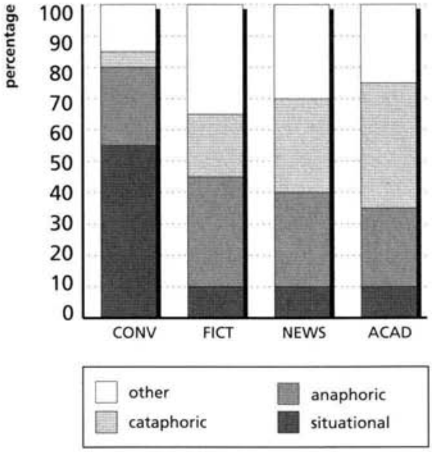

4.6.4 Generic reference

Reference is **generic** when a noun phrase refers to the whole class, rather than just one or more instances of the class. In English all three articles (*a/an*, *the*, and zero) can be used for generic reference:

- indefinite article: ***A doctor** is not better than his patient.* (FICT†)
- zero article: ***Doctors** are not better than their patients.*
- definite article: ***The doctor** is not better than his patient.*

All three of these sentences can be understood to express a general truth about the class of people called doctors (although the last example could also be about a particular doctor).

- *A/an* is used generically with singular countable nouns, and designates 'any person or thing of the class'.
- The zero article is used generically with plural and uncountable nouns, and refers to the class as a whole:

  *They're very nice, **cats** are.* (CONV)

  ***Beer** is, quite rightly, Britain's favourite Friday night drink.* (NEWS)

- In general, *the* is used generically only with singular countable nouns:

  ***The trumpet** is a particularly valuable instrument for **the contemporary composer**.* (NEWS†)

  *Comprehension depends on **the reader**'s ability to remember all the words in **the sentence**.* (ACAD†)

4.7 Other determiners

There are several other subclasses of determiners.

4.7.1 Possessive determiners

Possessive determiners specify the noun phrase by relating it to the speaker/writer or other entities. The possessive determiners correspond to personal pronouns:

possessive determiner	*my*	*our*	*your*	*his*	*her*	*its*	*their*
personal pronoun	*I*	*we*	*you*	*he*	*she*	*it*	*they*

Possessive determiners make noun phrases definite:

1 ***My** brain was scarcely working at all.* (FICT)

2 *She didn't want to spoil **her** shoes.* (FICT†)

3 *Never hit **your** younger sister.* (CONV)

For example, ***her** shoes* in **2** refers to the shoes belonging to the specific woman, and not anyone else.

4.7.2 Demonstrative determiners

The **demonstrative determiners** *this/these* and *that/those* are similar to the definite article *the* in conveying definite meaning. However, they also specify whether the referent is singular or plural (*this* v. *these*) and whether the referent is 'near' or 'distant' in relation to the speaker:

	countable		**uncountable**
	singular	**plural**	**singular**
near	*this book*	*these books*	*this money*
distant	*that book*	*those books*	*that money*

In general, *this/these* are about twice as common as *that/those.* By far the highest frequency of *this/these* is in academic writing, where these forms are useful especially for anaphoric reference.

Like *the* (4.6.3), the demonstrative determiners can make the reference clear either by pointing to the situation (situational reference), or by referring to the neighbouring text—either preceding (anaphoric reference) or following (cataphoric reference).

A Situational reference

Situational reference is very common in conversation, where the choice between *this/these* and *that/those* reflects the speaker's perception of whether the referent is near or distant:

***This** cake's lovely.* (CONV) <the speaker is eating the cake>

*Look at **that** man sitting there.* (CONV) <the man is sitting some distance away>

The choice of determiner can also reflect emotional distance: *this/these* can express greater sympathy than *that/those*:

*You know I actually quite like **this** chap.* (CONV)

*A: They're still holding **those** guys? We should have just bombed them hard right then. As soon as they tried to pull **that** hostage move.*

*B: **Those** bastards.* (CONV) <note: *bastards* is a taboo word and may be offensive to some people>

B Time reference

Although the basic situational use of demonstratives is in reference to place (compare *here/there*), another kind of situational use refers to time (compare *now/then*):

> *They're buying a house* **this** *year in France.* (CONV) <the present year>
>
> *They started at nursery* **that** *summer.* (CONV) <a summer in the past>

C Anaphoric reference

In writing, demonstratives typically refer back to the preceding text:

> *In 1882 H. Weber gave [a set of postulates for abstract groups of finite order].* **These postulates** *are essentially those in use today.* (ACAD)

In this example, *these postulates* in the second sentence refers back to *a set of postulates* in the first sentence.

D Cataphoric reference

Like cataphoric *the* (4.6.3), cataphoric *that* and *those* are used where a modifier following the head specifies the reference of the head noun. In these examples, the modifier is a relative clause, marked by *[]*:

> *The unit of heat was defined as* **that** *quantity [which would raise the temperature of unit mass of water <. . .>]* (ACAD†)
>
> *We apologise to* **those** *readers [who did not receive the Guardian on Saturday].* (NEWS†)

Here *that* and *those* are formal in style, and do not express 'distant' meaning. They could be replaced by *the*.

E Introductory *this/these*

There is a special conversational use of *this/these* to introduce a new entity into a narrative:

> *We went to* **this** *mall where there was* **this** *French restaurant.* (CONV†)

4.7.3 Quantifying determiners (quantifiers)

Some determiners specify nouns in terms of quantity or amount and are therefore called **quantifying determiners** (or simply **quantifiers**):

with uncountable nouns	with countable nouns
all money	*all girls*
much money	*many girls*

(Quantifying pronouns, discussed in 4.15.2, are related forms with similar meanings.)

Quantifiers can be broadly divided into four types:

A Inclusive

Some inclusive quantifiers are: *all, both, each, every. All* refers to the whole of a group or mass; *both* refers to two entities, and goes with a plural noun:

> *The testing of* **all** *hens will continue to be compulsory.* (NEWS†)

***Both** amendments were defeated.* (NEWS†)

Each and *every* refer to all the individual members of a group but, in contrast to *all*, combine only with singular countable nouns. *Each* stresses the separate individual, *every* stresses the individual as a member of the group. *Each* can denote two or more, while *every* denotes three or more.

> *We have two stations, but two people can work at **each** station.* (CONV)
>
> ***Every** minute of **every** day, hundreds of millions of tonnes of coal are burned.* (ACAD)

B Large quantity

Many and *much* denote a large quantity: *many* with plural countable nouns, and *much* with uncountable nouns. They are used especially with negatives, interrogatives, and some combinations such as *very much/many*, *so many/much*, *too many/much*, *a great many*, *a good many*:

> *There were**n't many** people there.* (CONV†)
>
> *There's **so many** other girls wearing exactly the same thing.* (CONV†)
>
> *The girl was**n't** paying **much** attention.* (FICT†)

Other determiners signifying a large amount are multi-word units, like *a lot of*, *lots of*, *plenty of*, *a great/good deal of*. *A lot of* and *lots of* often replace *much* and *many* in casual speech:

> *There were **lots of** people going through the tills.* (CONV†)
>
> *'He's had **a lot of** trouble.'* (FICT†)

In fact, *much* and *many* would be odd in these informal contexts.

C Moderate or small quantity

Some usually denotes a moderate quantity and is used with countable and uncountable nouns:

> *Insurance shares produced **some** excitement.* (NEWS)
>
> ***Some** performance curves will now be presented.* (ACAD†)

We will go into the contrast between *some* and *any* in 8.8.10–11.

Determiners denoting a small quantity are:

	plural countable	**uncountable**
a small number/amount	*a few, several*	*a little, a bit of*
less than expected	*few (fewer, fewest)*	*little (less, least)*

A few and *a little* are used to indicate a small amount:

> *With **a little** care he had no difficulty whatever in putting his glass back on the table.* (FICT)
>
> *There were **a few** people sitting at the tables in the back.* (FICT†)

Few and *little* (without *a*) mean 'not many' and 'not much'.

> *Very **few** women have hair that's that short.* (CONV†)
>
> *That's why I dislike plans because so much time is spent planning and so **little** time is spent doing anything.* (CONV†)

D An arbitrary or negative individual or amount

Any denotes an arbitrary member of a group, or an arbitrary amount of a mass. *Either* has a similar meaning, but it is used to denote a member of a group of two, and occurs only with singular countable nouns:

> *There aren't* ***any*** *women.* (CONV)
>
> *Got* ***any*** *money?* (CONV)
>
> *There were no applications for bail for* ***either*** *defendant.* (NEWS†)

As these examples suggest, *any* and *either* usually occur with negatives or questions. On the other hand, *no* and *neither* have a purely negative meaning: *no* is used for countables as well as uncountables, and *neither* is used for a choice of two:

> *Next time there would be* ***no*** *mercy.* (FICT)
>
> ***Neither*** *method is entirely satisfactory.* (ACAD†) <comparing two methods>

There will be more to say about the relations between *some*, *any*, and *no*, and between *either* and *neither*, under the headings of **negation** (especially 8.8.7–11) and **assertive** and **non-assertive** forms (8.8.10–11).

4.7.4 Numerals as determiners

Cardinal numerals (like *two*) are similar to quantifiers, while **ordinal numerals** (like *second*) are similar to the semi-determiners (discussed below in 4.7.5). Like most quantifiers, numerals can occur in determiner position or in head position in a noun phrase:

> *You owe me* ***ten bucks****, Mary.* (CONV)
>
> *Tomorrow I have to get up at* ***seven****.* (CONV)

When the two types occur together in one noun phrase, ordinal numerals normally precede cardinal numerals:

> *The* ***first three*** *pages were stuck together with the young man's blood.* (FICT†)

Notice also that the numerals can follow the definite article—in fact this is normal with ordinal numerals.

The alphabetic form (*five*, *twenty*, etc.) is most common with numbers under ten, and with round numbers such as *a hundred*. The digital form (*5*, *20*, etc.) is more common with higher numbers:

Table 4.5 Cardinal and ordinal numerals

cardinal	ordinal	cardinal	ordinal
0 zero	—	*10 ten*	*10th tenth*
1 one	*1st first*	*11 eleven*	*11th eleventh*
2 two	*2nd second*	*12 twelve*	*12th twelfth*
3 three	*3rd third*	*13 thirteen*	*13th thirteenth*
4 four	*4th fourth*	*14 fourteen*	*14th fourteenth*
5 five	*5th fifth*	*15 fifteen*	*15th fifteenth*
6 six	*6th sixth*	*16 sixteen*	*16th sixteenth*
7 seven	*7th seventh*	*17 seventeen*	*17th seventeenth*
8 eight	*8th eighth*	*18 eighteen*	*18th eighteenth*
9 nine	*9th ninth*	*19 nineteen*	*19th nineteenth*

> *Last year,* ***767*** *works were sold to* ***410*** *people in* ***four*** *days.* (NEWS)

Ordinal numbers, however, are more commonly written with the alphabetic form (*fifteenth* rather than *15th*).

4.7.5 Semi-determiners

In addition to the determiners so far mentioned, words like *same*, *other*, *another*, *last*, and *such* have some adjective characteristics and some determiner characteristics. These forms lack the descriptive meaning that characterizes most adjectives, and like most determiners, they can also double as pronouns (see 4.16). We call these words **semi-determiners**:

> ***The same*** *person was there with almost exactly* ***the same*** *message.* (CONV)
>
> *I saw how one fist beat into the palm of* ***the other*** *hand behind his back.* (FICT)
>
> *He's living with her and* ***another*** *girl, and* ***another*** *boy.* (CONV)
>
> *I would like to think that this is not his* ***last*** *Olympics.* (NEWS)
>
> ***Such*** *functions are not symmetrical.* (ACAD†)

4.7.6 *Wh*-determiners

***Wh*-determiners** are used to introduce interrogative clauses (**1**) and relative clauses (**2**):

> 1 ***Which*** *way are we going?* (CONV)
>
> 2 *I had a girl* ***whose*** *dog was the bridesmaid.* (NEWS)

These will be illustrated further in discussing interrogative clauses (8.11) and relative clauses (9.7–8).

Review

Major points in **GRAMMAR BITE B**: Types of determiners

- ➤ The most common determiners are the definite and indefinite articles (*the* and *a/an*).
- ➤ There is also a zero article, used with plural or uncountable nouns for indefinite meaning.
- ➤ All three articles can be used to express generic meaning (referring to a class as a whole).
- ➤ Predeterminers precede determiners in a noun phrase; postdeterminers follow determiners.
- ➤ Possessive and demonstrative determiners are definite in meaning (like *the*), whereas quantifying determiners are indefinite in meaning (like *a/an*).
- ➤ Numerals (cardinal and ordinal numbers) are grammatically like a class of determiners.
- ➤ Quantifying determiners and quantifying pronouns usually have the same form (e.g. *all*, *few*). We call both of them quantifiers.
- ➤ Semi-determiners, such as (*the*) *same* and *another* have characteristics of both determiners and adjectives.

GRAMMAR BITE

C Number and case in nouns

4.8 Number: singular and plural

Number is the term for the contrast between singular and plural: a contrast in English grammar affecting not only nouns, but pronouns, determiners and verbs. However, our concern now is with nouns: the singular form of nouns is the unmarked and most common form, and plural nouns are formed from the singular by inflectional change, normally the addition of a suffix.

4.8.1 Regular plurals

The overwhelming majority of nouns form their plural by adding the ending *-(e)s.*

A Pronunciation

Add /ɪz/ after consonants /s, z, ʃ, ʒ, ʧ, ʤ/:

case—cases, fuse—fuses, ash—ashes, bridge—bridges

Add /s/ after voiceless consonants (except /s, ʃ, ʧ/):

cat—cats, map—maps, stick—sticks, act—acts, myth—myths

Add /z/ after vowels and voiced consonants (except /z, ʒ, ʤ/):

boy—boys, dog—dogs, girl—girls, time—times, union—unions.

B Spelling

The normal spelling is *-s*, but if the word ends in *s, z, x, sh*, or *ch*, the spelling is *-es*:

bus—buses, box—boxes, bush—bushes, match—matches

If the singular ends in a consonant letter + *-y*, the spelling is *-ies*:

copy—copies, fly—flies, lady—ladies, army—armies

If the singular ends in a vowel letter + *-y*, however, the spelling is *-s*:

boy—boys, day—days, key—keys, essay—essays

If the singular ends in *-o*, the spelling of the plural is sometimes *-os* and sometimes *-oes*:

pianos, radios, videos v. *heroes, potatoes, volcanoes*

4.8.2 Native irregular plurals

Irregular plurals can be divided into native English plurals and plurals borrowed from other languages. A small number of native English words have irregular plurals:

- changing the vowel:

man—men	*foot—feet*	*tooth—teeth*
woman—women	*goose—geese*	*mouse—mice*

- adding *-(r)en*:
  child—children *ox—oxen*
- voicing the last consonant—/f/ changes to /v/:
  calf—calves *knife—knives* *leaf—leaves* *life—lives*
  shelf—shelves *thief—thieves* *wife—wives* *wolf—wolves*

Most nouns ending in *-f*, however, have a regular plural: *beliefs*, *chefs*, *chiefs*, *proofs*, *reefs*, *roofs*.

4.8.3 Latin and Greek plurals

Some words borrowed from Latin and Greek keep their original plurals, although often the regular plural is an alternative:

alumnus—alumni
curriculum—curricula
appendix—appendices
crisis—crises
criterion—criteria
syllabus—syllabi
formula—formulae
axis—axes
diagnosis—diagnoses
phenomenon—phenomena

4.8.4 Zero plurals

Zero plurals are plural forms which do not change from singular to plural:

- some animal nouns: *fish*, *sheep*, *deer*, *salmon*
- some quantifying nouns: *dozen*, *hundred*, *foot*, *mile* when they are used as part of a numerical quantity (e.g. *two **dozen** people*, *two **hundred** kids*)
- a few other zero plural nouns: *aircraft*, *dice*, *series*, *species*.

The sign of a zero plural is that the same form can be used with singular and plural **concord**:

> *Anglers are heading for court because **fish are** too easy to catch.* (NEWS)
>
> *Each **fish is** caught, the hook carefully removed and the weight noted before release.* (NEWS)

4.8.5 Plural-only nouns and singular nouns in *-s*

These are nouns that can be confusing because:

- they look singular but are actually plural, like *people*, *police*, *staff*, *cattle*
- they look plural but are actually singular, like *news*, *measles*, *mumps*, *checkers*.

4.9 Case: the genitive

Historically, English had **case** endings for nouns like the **nominative** and **accusative** cases of pronouns (e.g. *he—him*). However, the only case ending that survives in modern English nouns is the **genitive** ending **'s**.

4.9.1 The form of the genitive

The *-'s* genitive ending varies in pronunciation in the same way as the plural ending:

A Pronunciation

Add /ɪz/ after /s, z, ʃ, ʒ, ʧ, ʤ/:

Charles's, Liz's, George's, Cox's

Add /s/ after voiceless consonants except /s, ʃ, ʧ/:

cat's, Jack's, Philip's, Smith's, staff's

Add /z/ after vowels and voiced consonants except /z, ʒ, ʤ/:

boy's, daddy's, girl's, women's, dog's

With regular plural nouns ending in -*s*, e.g. *girls'*, the genitive is not pronounced.

B Spelling

The genitive is written with an apostrophe: -*'s.*

With regular plural nouns ending in -*s*, the genitive is marked by a final apostrophe: *girls'*. Thus *the girl's success* (one girl) and *the girls' success* (more than one girl) are distinguished only by the apostrophe.

For irregular plurals not ending in -*s*, the genitive is -*'s* as for singular forms: *women's rights, men's clothing.*

For singular names ending in -*s*, the regular genitive is usual: *Davis's, Charles's.* But sometimes these nouns are treated as if they were plural nouns: *Davis', Charles'.*

4.9.2 Genitive as determiner: specifying genitives

Genitives usually fill the determiner slot in a noun phrase: they precede the head, and like other determiners they play the role of **specifying** the reference of the head noun. In this, they have the same function as the possessive determiner. Compare:

***the girl's** face* ***her** face* ***his parents'** home* ***their** home*

These examples answer the question 'Whose X?'. The genitive acts as the head of its own noun phrase, which acts as determiner for the whole noun phrase. In the following, *[]* enclose the genitive phrase:

[the girl's] face *[his parents'] home* *[decent people's] feelings*

Notice that the determiner or modifier at the beginning of the three examples belongs to the genitive noun, and not to the following noun. It is often possible to use an *of*-phrase as an alternative to the genitive. Compare:

[decent people's] feelings *the feelings [of decent people]*

This example underlines the need to see the genitive construction as a phrase, even though the genitive very frequently consists of one word, as in *[Jack's] voice.* Genitives can even have postmodifiers, as in ***someone else's** house.*

4.9.3 Genitive as modifier: classifying genitives

In contrast to specifying genitives, other genitives have the role of **classifying** the reference of the head noun: the question answered here is 'What kind of X?'. Compare these pairs of specifying and classifying genitives:

1 *Several hours later [**the bird's** relieved owner] arrived at the station.* (NEWS†)

2 *His hair felt like [**a bird's** nest]. He was a mess.* (FICT)

1 *Even [**her two children's** clothes] disappeared.* (NEWS)

2 *Hoppity in Hartlepool is one of the few nearly new shops specializing just in [**children's** clothing].* (NEWS)

In the **1** examples the reference is to the owner of a specific bird and the clothes belonging to some specific children. In the **2** examples, the genitives serve to classify the types of nest and clothes.

In many cases, a classifying genitive is equivalent to an adjective or a noun modifier, whereas this is not true of the specifying genitive. Compare the genitives in the following examples with the non-genitive modifiers which could replace them:

*the **women's** movement*	***children's** literature*	*a **summer's** day*
*(the **feminist** movement)*	*(**adult** literature)*	*(a **summer** day)*

4.9.4 Genitives of time and measure

The genitive is often used to specify time (especially in news writing):

*Wigler's and Parsons' report appeared in **this week's** issue of Science magazine.* (NEWS)

The genitive is also used to express duration, distance/length, or value:

- duration: ***a minute's** hesitation, **a month's** holiday, **two hours'** sleep*
- distance/length: *I held the telephone at **arm's** length and stared at it.* (FICT)
- monetary value: *She had to buy **fifty pounds'** worth.* (CONV)

4.9.5 Independent genitives

Independent genitives are genitive phrases standing alone as a noun phrase. Unlike other genitives, they are not part of another (main) noun phrase. Many independent genitives involve **ellipsis** (8.5).

Elliptic genitives are genitive phrases whose main noun head can be recovered from the preceding text (see 8.5). The omitted noun is shown in *[]* below:

*This isn't my [handwriting]. It's **Selina's**.* (FICT) <i.e. Selina's handwriting>

*All the Turner girls preferred girls' [toys] to **boys'**.* (FICT†) <i.e. boys' toys>

Other independent genitives have become conventional, so that they need no supporting noun head in the context. They generally refer to people's homes (**1**), to other places such as businesses and clubs (**2**), and to commercial products and firms (**3**):

1 *She's going to **a friend's**.* (CONV†) <i.e. a friend's house>

2 *The vast main concourse had the combined appearance of a football scrimmage and Christmas Eve at **Macy's**.* (FICT) <Macy's is a department store>

3 *An open bottle of **Jack Daniel's** is on the candle table.* (FICT†) <Jack Daniel's is a type of whiskey>

4.9.6 Double genitives

The **double genitive** is a special construction in which either the independent genitive or a possessive pronoun occurs in an *of*-phrase:

> *This was **a good idea of Johnny's**.* (CONV)
>
> *There's a talk by this lady from Boulder who's **a student of Sandy's**.* (CONV)
>
> *The woman who owns Harte's is **a friend of ours**.* (FICT†)

As these examples show, the main noun phrase typically begins with the indefinite article. In fact, the definite article does not normally combine with the double genitive: **the good idea of Johnny's* is unlikely to occur.

The meaning of the double genitive can sometimes be alternatively expressed by other constructions. Thus, *a friend of ours* could alternatively be expressed as *one of our friends*.

4.9.7 Semantic types of noun taking the genitive

For the most part, the genitive inflection is used with personal nouns: that is, nouns referring to humans, including proper nouns. However, Figure 4.3 shows that the genitive is also used with other semantic types of nouns, particularly in news writing.

Apart from personal nouns, the most common genitive nouns are collective nouns, usually referring to human organizations (e.g. *the Government's denial*). Place nouns are also moderately common as genitives, usually referring to countries or other places with human populations (e.g. *Spain's inflation*). Thus, a genitive noun is very likely to have a human connection, even if it is not a personal noun.

Figure 4.3
Distribution of genitive nouns

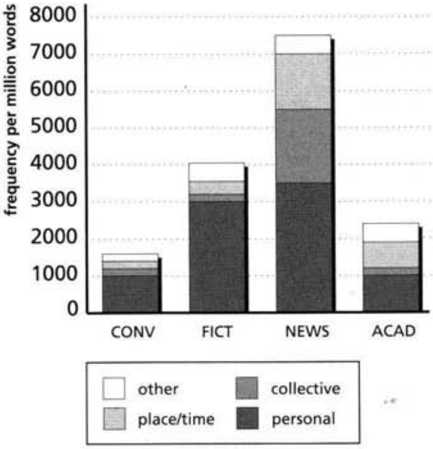

4.9.8 The choice between genitives and *of*-phrases

It is easy to find examples where the genitive construction and the *of*-phrase seem to be free variants: e.g. *the car's owner* and *the owner of the car*. Yet in practice there are several factors which favor the choice of one construction over the other. Here we briefly review those factors, considering only *of*-phrases which are in competition with the genitive (e.g. excluding *of*-phrases with special noun classes, like unit nouns and quantifying nouns—see 4.4 above).

A The semantic class of the noun

Personal nouns, especially proper nouns, are much more likely to be used in the genitive. Inanimate and abstract nouns, on the other hand, are much more likely to be used with the *of*-construction: e.g. *the future of socialism*, rather than *socialism's future.*

B The meaning relation between the two nouns

There are many different meaning relations that can exist between the genitive noun and the main noun (or between the corresponding nouns in an *of*-construction). Some meanings favor the genitive, while others favor the *of*-construction.

Meaning relations favoring the genitive are:

- possessive genitive:

  The family's car *was found abandoned at Andersonstown Crescent.* (NEWS) <the family had/owned a car>

- attributive genitive:

  On occasions, ***Martha's*** *courage failed her.* (FICT) <Martha was courageous>

- subjective genitive:

  Chiang's recognition *of the priority of the spoken language explained why so few characters were pictographs or ideographs.* (ACAD) <Chiang recognized something>

On the other hand, other meaning relations favour the *of*-phrase, such as the 'objective' construction where the noun after *of* has a role like the object of a verb:

> ***The brutal murder of a child*** *leaves a firm trace on the mind of a police officer like an indelible pen.* (NEWS) <someone murdered the child>

The combination of a genitive construction and an *of*-construction in the same noun phrase is illustrated in:

The Government's denial of the need (NEWS†)	subjective + objective
Mrs. Bidwell's description of the quarrel (FICT†)	subjective + objective

We could express the same meaning with a clause: *The Government denied the need* and *Mrs. Bidwell described the quarrel.*

C Collocations

Genitives tend to occur in fixed collocations: *at death's door*, *life's work*, *nature's way*, *out of harm's way*. The genitive with *sake* is particularly productive: *for God's sake*, *for goodness' sake*, *for heaven's sake*, *for old time's/times' sake.*

D Length of phrases: end-weight

Genitive constructions are generally short, whereas *of*-phrases are often longer. This pattern, shown graphically in Figure 4.4, follows the general principle of **end-weight** in English (see 12.1.4).

Figure 4.4

Preference for *of*-phrase v. *s*-genitives according to length

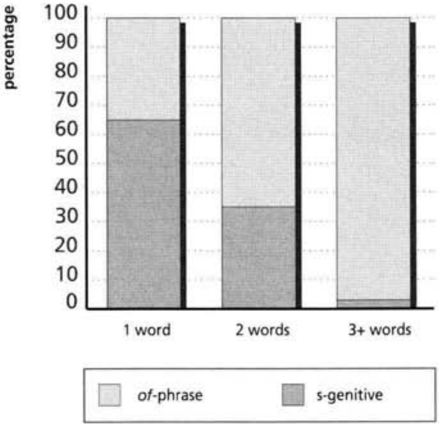

E Information flow: end-focus

English tends to prefer **end-focus** (see 12.1.1–2): presenting given information first, and new information at the end of a construction. Thus, the genitive, coming first, tends to express given information, while the *of*-phrase, following, tends to introduce new information.

> ***United's manager**, Alex Ferguson, must despair.* (NEWS) <after Manchester United has recently been mentioned>
>
> *April 1991: Takes over as **manager of Liverpool**.* (NEWS) <after managers' jobs have recently been mentioned>

F Register distribution of genitives and *of*-phrases

A last important factor is register. Figure 4.5 shows that *of*-phrases are by far the more frequent option overall, and they are especially common in academic writing.

The proportion of genitives is much higher in news than in academic writing. News writing uses the genitive to pack information densely and concisely into noun phrases. For example:

> ***Last week's** meeting of **the borough's** policy and finance committee was all but devoid of dissenting voices.* (NEWS†)

Conversation, though, has relatively few genitives or *of*-phrases.

Figure 4.5

Distribution of *of*-phrases v. *s*-genitives across registers

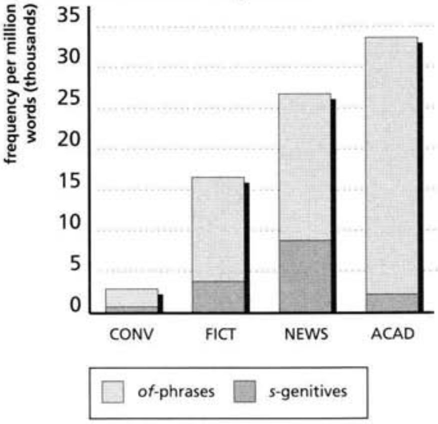

Review

Major points of GRAMMAR BITE C: Number and case in nouns

- Number is the term for the contrast between singular and plural in nouns.
- In addition to regular plurals with *-s*, English has a few classes of nouns with an irregular plural.
- The genitive case in nouns is used to express possession and other meanings.

➤ Genitives can have the role of either a determiner or a modifier in the larger noun phrase.
➤ Genitives can also be phrases, with their own determiners and modifiers.
➤ Genitives overlap with *of*-phrases in the range of meanings they express.

GRAMMAR BITE

D Gender and noun formation

4.10 Gender: masculine, feminine, personal, and neuter

Gender is not an important grammatical category in English: unlike many European languages, English has no masculine and feminine inflections for nouns or determiners. Yet semantically, gender is an interesting and controversial topic: for example, how do English speakers distinguish between male, female, and male-or-female reference? Gender is also an area where the language is changing. This section discusses how to signal the gender of nouns and pronouns.

Four semantic gender classes can be distinguished:

	example nouns	pronouns
masculine	*Tom, a boy, the man*	*he, him, his*
feminine	*Sue, a girl, the woman*	*she, her, hers*
personal	*a journalist, the doctor*	*who, someone*
neuter	*a house, the fish*	*it, what, which*

- **Masculine** nouns and pronouns refer primarily to male people.
- **Feminine** nouns and pronouns refer primarily to female people.
- **Personal gender** nouns and pronouns refer primarily to people, regardless of whether they are female or male.
- **Neuter gender** nouns and pronouns refer primarily to inanimates (including abstractions).

However, as the following sections show, there are special circumstances where the boundaries of these categories are fuzzy.

4.10.1 Masculine and feminine noun reference

There are four major ways of specifying masculine and feminine contrast in nouns:

- using totally different nouns:

  father—mother son—daughter uncle—aunt man—woman bull—cow

- using derived nouns with masculine and feminine suffixes *-er/or*, *-ess*:

  actor—actress waiter—waitress master—mistress

- using a modifier, such as *male*, *female*; *man*, *woman*, *women*:

  male nurse   female officer   woman doctor   male dancer   women priests

- using nouns in *-man*, *-woman*:

  chairman   Englishman   policewoman   spokeswoman

(In writing, masculine nouns consisting of noun + *man* look like compounds, but in pronunciation, *-man* is more like a derivational suffix: it is pronounced /-mən/ in both the singular and the plural.)

The derivational endings *-er/or* and *-ess* are not of equal status. While *-ess* always has female reference, *-er/or* can be used for both sexes with personal gender words like *doctor* and *teacher*. Further, *-ess* can be added to a noun without *-er/-or* to form the female variant: *lion—lioness; priest—priestess.*

Feminine nouns in *-ess* are generally used less than their masculine counterparts, because we usually use the masculine form when we do not know which sex the individual is and for plurals when we may be referring to both males and females. The most common *-ess* nouns are *princess*, *actress*, *mistress*, *duchess*, *waitress*, *countess*, *goddess*, *hostess*, and *stewardess*. However, all these are used less than their masculine counterparts (*prince*, *actor*, *master*, *duke*, etc.).

Similarly, most English speakers and writers use words ending in *-man* far more than words ending in *-woman*. Even the most common words ending in *-woman* (*spokeswoman*, *policewoman*, *chairwomen*, *businesswoman*, *congresswoman*, *horsewoman*) are used far less than the corresponding words ending in *-man* (*spokesman*, *policeman*, etc.)

4.10.2 Gender bias in nouns

There are two reasons for the preference of male terms over female terms:

- Speakers and writers refer to males more frequently than to females.
- The masculine terms are often used to refer to both sexes. For example, the masculine nouns *spokesman* and *manager* are used in the following sentences to refer to women:

  Eyeline ***spokesman*** *Rosie Johnson said: 'We don't need a vast sum, but without it we'll be forced to close.'* (NEWS)

  Area ***manager*** *Beth Robinson says: 'Our business in Finaghy has steadily increased year by year.'* (NEWS†)

Both these factors amount to a bias in favour of the masculine gender. With reference to the second factor, it is traditionally argued that a term like *chairman* or *governor* has personal gender (i.e. is sex-neutral) in addition to its masculine use. However, the fact that such roles have typically been taken by men means that these terms have strong masculine overtones.

In recent decades, efforts have been made to avoid masculine bias by using gender-neutral nouns in *-person* instead of *-man* or *-woman*. For example:

Mrs Ruddock said she had been nominated as ***spokesperson*** *for the wives.* (NEWS†)

Salespersons *by the thousands have been laid off in the recession.* (FICT†)

However, this trend has had limited success so far. Words in *-person* (or their plurals in *-persons* or *-people*) are rare compared with the corresponding words in *-man* or *-men*. The only moderately common words of this kind are *chairperson(s)*, *spokesperson(s)*, *salespeople*, and *townspeople*. (Note that both *-people* and *-persons* are used in the plural.)

4.10.3 Gender bias in pronouns

English has some personal-gender pronouns that are neutral for female/male, such as *somebody*, *everyone*, *you*, *they*, and *who*. But in the key case of singular third-person pronouns, there is no personal-gender form corresponding to *he* (masculine) and *she* (feminine). When there is need to refer to 'male or female', the traditional choice, again, is in favor of the masculine: using *he* to refer to both sexes or either sex:

> *Each novelist aims to make a single novel of the material* ***he*** *has been given.* (ACAD†)

Three main ways of avoiding this gender bias have been adopted in recent decades. (In the following examples, like the example above, underlining marks a personal-gender word that a pronoun co-refers to.)

A Use of coordinated pronouns and determiners

> *It's the duty of every athlete to be aware of what* ***he or she*** *is taking.* (NEWS)
>
> *Thus, the user acts on* ***his/her*** *own responsibility when executing* ***his/her*** *functions within* ***his/her*** *task domain.* (ACAD)

As the second example shows, this device can become rather clumsy through repetition. In actual practice, this strategy is restricted primarily to academic writing.

B Use of plural instead of singular pronouns

1 *Not everybody uses* ***their*** *indicator.* (CONV)
2 *Somebody left* ***their*** *keys. These aren't yours?* (CONV)
3 *Nobody likes to admit that* ***they*** *entertain very little, or that* ***they*** *rarely enjoy it when* ***they*** *do.* (NEWS)

The use of *they* referring back to a singular personal noun or pronoun is common in conversation. In serious writing, however, it is often avoided as 'incorrect', because a commonly accepted 'rule' of pronoun concord states that the pronoun should agree with its antecedent noun phrase in number, as well as in gender. However, there has been a growing adoption of this use of *they* in written texts, as in **3** above. (On concord generally, see 8.6.)

C Avoiding the problem by using the plural throughout

It is usually possible to avoid a generic singular noun phrase by converting it into the generic plural, e.g. changing **1** to **1a**:

1 *The teacher finds that* ***he or she needs*** *more time.* (ACAD†)
1a *Teachers find that* ***they need*** *more time.*

4.10.4 Personal v. neuter reference with pronouns

There is a choice between neuter *it* and personal reference by *she* or *he* in the case of babies and animals (particularly pets). Note the differences between the **a** and the **b** examples below:

1a *One three-month-old baby managed to talk* ***its*** *parents into sending Santa a letter.* (NEWS†).

1b *The baby was lying on* ***his*** *back in* ***his*** *crib, perfectly content.* (FICT)

2a *You know that cat,* ***it*** *scratched me.* (CONV)

2b *Only the dog's determination to be reunited with* ***her*** *master kept* ***her*** *going.* (NEWS†)

Linguistically, babies (**1**) and animals (**2**) are 'borderline beings', who may not entirely qualify as 'persons'. So *it* is a convenient way to refer to them if their sex is not known. *It*, however, may be an offensive way to refer to a child in talking (say) to its proud parents! (*She* can also be used to refer to nations and ships, as a conventional form of personification.)

It can refer to human beings when used as an introductory subject and followed by *be*:

'Who is it?' 'Me. It's me.' (FICT†)

There is nothing offensive in this usage.

4.11 The formation of derived nouns

Derived nouns are formed from other words by means of **affixation** (prefixes and suffixes), **conversion**, and **compounding**.

4.11.1 Affixation

Derivational prefixes do not normally alter the word class of the base word; that is, a prefix is added to a noun to form a new noun with a different meaning:

base noun	suffixed noun
patient	***out****patient* (a patient who is not resident in a hospital)
group	***sub****group* (a group which is part of a larger group)
trial	***re****trial* (another trial of the same person for the same crime)

Derivational suffixes, on the other hand, usually change both the meaning and the word class; that is, a suffix is often added to a verb or adjective to form a new noun with a different meaning:

base word	suffixed noun
adjective: *dark*	*dark****ness***
verb: *agree*	*agree****ment***
noun: *friend*	*friend****ship***

A Noun prefixes

The following list shows some of the more frequent prefixes, and indicates the typical meaning signaled by each prefix.

prefix	main meaning(s)	examples
anti-	against, opposite to	*antibody, anticlimax*
arch-	supreme, most	*arch-enemy, archbishop*

prefix	main meaning(s)	examples
auto-	self	*autobiography, autograph*
bi-	two	*bicentenary, bilingualism*
bio-	of living things	*biochemistry, biomass*
co-	joint	*co-chairman, co-founder*
counter-	against	*counteract, counterclaim*
dis-	the opposite of	*disbelief, discomfort*
ex-	former	*ex-Marxist, ex-student*
fore-	ahead, before	*forefront, foreknowledge*
hyper-	extreme	*hyperinflation*
in-	inside, *or* the opposite of	*inpatient, inattention*
inter-	between, among	*interaction, intermarriage*
kilo-	a thousand	*kilobyte, kilowatt*
mal-	bad	*malfunction, malnutrition*
mega-	a million, supreme	*megawatt, megastar*
mini-	small	*minibus, mini-publication*
mis-	bad, wrong	*misconduct, mismatch*
mono-	one	*monopoly, monosyllable*
neo-	new	*neomarxist, neo-colonialism*
non-	not	*nonpayment, non-specialist*
out-	outside, separate	*outpatient, outbuilding*
poly-	many	*polysyllable, polytheism*
re-	again, back	*re-election, re-organization*
semi-	half	*semicircle, semi-darkness*
sub-	below	*subgroup, subset*
super-	more than, above, large	*superhero, supermarket*
tele-	distant	*telephone, teleshopping*
tri-	three	*tricycle, tripartism*
ultra-	beyond	*ultrafilter, ultrasound*
under-	below, too little	*underclass, underachievement*
vice-	deputy (second in command)	*vice-chairman, vice-president*

B Noun suffixes

Suffixes tend to have less specific meanings than prefixes. Grammatically speaking, their main role is to signal a change of word class, so that (for example) if you meet a word ending in *-ism*, *-ness*, or *-tion*, you can recognize it as a noun. However, some suffixes are ambiguous: e.g. *-al* and *-ful* can mark an adjective as well as a noun. (Note that the process of derivation can bring a change in the pronunciation or spelling of the base word: for example, when we add *-cy* to *infant*, the whole word is spelt *infancy*, not **infantcy*.)

The symbols V, A, and N in the list below show whether the noun is derived from a verb, an adjective, or another noun. Those that are derived from verbs and adjectives are said to be **nominalizations**. Most derived nouns are abstract in meaning.

suffix	main meaning(s)	examples
-age	(various meanings)	*baggage, wastage, postage, orphanage*
-al	action or instance of V-ing	*arrival, burial, denial, proposal*

suffix	main meaning(s)	examples
-an, -ian	nationality, language, etc.	*American, historian, Korean, Victorian*
-ance, -ence	action or state of V-ing,	*assistance, resemblance, experience*
	state of being A	*dependence, difference, ignorance*
-ant, -ent	a person who V-s, something used for V-ing	*assistant, consultant, student, coolant, intoxicant, lubricant*
-cy	state or quality of being A/N	*accuracy, adequacy, infancy, lunacy*
-dom	state of being A/N	*boredom, freedom, stardom, wisdom*
-ee	a person (various meanings)	*absentee, devotee, employee, trainee*
-er, -or	a person/thing that V-s,	*actor, driver, filler, teacher, visitor*
	a person connected with N	*footballer, cottager, New Yorker*
-ery, -ry	(various non-personal meanings)	*bakery, bravery, refinery, robbery*
-ese	nationality or language	*Chinese, Japanese, journalese*
-ess	a female N (see 4.10.1)	*actress, baroness, tigress, waitress*
-ette	a small N	*cigarette, kitchenette, novelette*
-ful	amount that fills a N (see 4.4.2)	*handful, mouthful, spoonful*
-hood	state of being A/N	*childhood, falsehood, likelihood*
-ician	person concerned with N	*clinician, mathematician, physician*
-ie, -y	a pet name for N	*auntie, daddy, doggie, Johnny*
-ing	action/instance of V-ing,	*feeling, meeting, reading, training*
	place or material	*building, crossing, landing, lining*
-ism	ideology, movement, tendency	*atheism, criticism, capitalism, Marxism*
-ist	follower of N/A-ism, specialist	*atheist, capitalist, racist, physicist*
-ite	citizen or follower of N	*Moabite, Muscovite, Thatcherite*
-ity	state or quality of being A	*ability, activity, density, insanity*
-let	a small N	*bomblet, booklet, leaflet, piglet*
-ment	action or instance of V-ing	*argument, movement, statement, treatment*
-ness	state or quality of being A	*blindness, darkness, fairness, happiness*
-ship	state or skill of being a N	*friendship, membership, relationship*
-tion	action or instance of V-ing	*communication, education, production*
-ure	action or instance of V-ing	*closure, departure, exposure, pressure*

Apart from *-er*, the most frequent noun suffixes are all abstract: *-tion*, *-ity*, *-ness*, *-ism*, *-ment* (see Figure 4.6). In general, these suffixes are far more frequent and productive in academic writing than in the other registers. The following is an extreme example of the use of these abstract 'nominalizations' in academic prose:

> *The **conventionalist** system lacks the **capacity** to reach anything like the **flexibility** of **pragmatism**, because any **relaxation** would inevitably involve the defeat of publicly encouraged **expectation**.* (ACAD)

4.11.2 Conversion

Another way to derive nouns from other word classes is known as conversion (or 'zero derivation'). In this case, no affix is added to the base, but the base itself is converted into a different word class, usually from a verb or adjective into a noun (see Table 4.6).

Figure 4.6

Frequency of noun suffixes

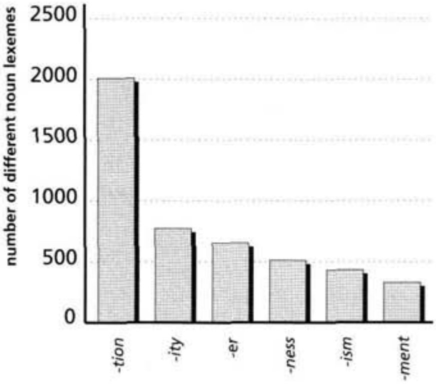

Table 4.6 **Converted nouns**

conversion from	base	meaning(s) of converted noun	example of converted noun
adjectives (A)	*hopeful*	someone who is A	*presidential **hopefuls***
	white	someone who is A	*they speak like the **whites** do in the South*
		something that is A	*you could see the **whites** of his eyes*
verbs (V)	*catch*	act of V-ing something that is V-ed something used for V-ing	*he took a brilliant **catch*** <sport> *they had a fine **catch** of fish* *he loosened the **catch** and opened the window*
	cheat	someone who V-s	*. . . accused him of being a **cheat***
	walk	act of V-ing way of V-ing place for V-ing	*we can go for a **walk** later* *the **walk** of a gentleman* *the **walk** stretched for 154 miles*

4.11.3 Compounding

Another very productive process is the formation of compound nouns. Common patterns of compounding are the following (note that the parts of the compound can be written as a single word, or else hyphenated or written as two words):

structural pattern		examples
1a	noun + noun	*bar code, bathroom, database, eye-witness, lamp post, logjam, newspaper, shell-fish, suitcase, wallpaper*
1b	noun + verb/noun	*gunfire, handshake, home run, landslide, moonwalk*
1c	noun + verb-*er*	*dishwasher, dressmaker, eye-opener, firefighter, screwdriver*
1d	noun + verb-*ing*	*fire-fighting, housekeeping, thanksgiving, window shopping*
1e	verb/noun + noun	*cookbook, dipstick, playboy, swimsuit, volleyball*
1f	*self* + noun	*self-control, self-esteem, self-help, self-indulgence, self-pity*

structural pattern		examples
1g	verb-*ing* + noun	*filing cabinet, filling station, mockingbird, printing-press*
2	adjective + noun	*bigwig, blackbird, grandmother, highway, real estate*
3	verb + particle	*checkout, feedback, fly-over, go-between, handout, standby*
4	particle + verb/noun	*bystander, downturn, in-fighting, outfit, overcoat, upkeep*

Noun + noun combinations are the most productive type of noun compound. In fact, Patterns **1a–g** above can all be considered as special cases of noun + noun compounds. Noun compounds are especially common in news writing, where they help to pack a lot of information into a small space. (Noun + noun sequences are discussed further in 9.5.)

Review

Major points of GRAMMAR BITE D: Gender and the formation of nouns

- English nouns do not have special inflectional endings for gender; instead, gender is a semantic category in English.
- English speakers often show gender bias in the way they use masculine and feminine words, e.g. nouns ending in *-man* or *-woman*.
- Another example of gender bias is that the pronoun *he* has traditionally been used to refer to both men and women.
- Several strategies are used to avoid gender bias with nouns and pronouns.
- Derived nouns can be formed through affixation (prefixes and suffixes), conversion, and compounding.
- Forming new nouns with suffixes is especially common in academic writing, while compounding is especially common in news.

GRAMMAR BITE

E Types of pronouns

Most **pronouns** replace full noun phrases, and can be seen as economy devices. Personal and demonstrative pronouns, for example, serve as pointers to the neighbouring text (usually preceding text) or to the speech situation. Other pronouns have very general reference, or can be used for substitution or ellipsis (see 8.5). In this Grammar Bite, we survey the major pronoun classes: **personal pronouns**, **reflexive pronouns**, **demonstrative pronouns**, and **indefinite pronouns**.

But first, in Figure 4.7, we notice that pronouns have a very different pattern of use from nouns.

4.12 Personal pronouns

Personal pronouns have different forms according to

- **number:** singular, plural (e.g. *I* v. *we*)
- **person:** first person, second person, third person (e.g. *I* v. *you* v. *she*)
- **case:** nominative, accusative, possessive (e.g. *I* v. *me* v. *mine*)
- **gender:** masculine, feminine, neuter (e.g. *he* v. *she* v. *it*).

These distinctions are shown in Table 4.7.

Figure 4.7

Distribution of nouns v. pronouns across registers

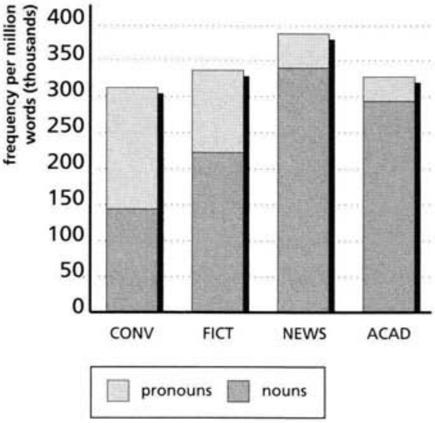

Table 4.7 **Personal pronouns and corresponding possessive and reflexive forms**

person	personal pronoun		possessive		reflexive pronoun
	nominative	accusative	determiner	pronoun	
1st					
singular	*I*	*me*	*my*	*mine*	*myself*
plural	*we*	*us*	*our*	*ours*	*ourselves*
2nd					
singular	*you*	*you*	*your*	*yours*	*yourself*
plural	*you*	*you*	*your*	*yours*	*yourselves*
3rd					
singular	*he*	*him*	*his*	*his*	*himself*
	she	*her*	*her*	*hers*	*herself*
	it	*it*	*its*	–	*itself*
plural	*they*	*them*	*their*	*theirs*	*themselves*

A Case forms of pronouns

The form of the personal pronoun varies according to case. Nominative personal pronouns like *I*, *he*, *she* are used for the subject of a clause, whereas accusative personal pronouns like *me*, *him*, and *them* are used for other positions in the clause, such as object. The possessive determiners (e.g. *my*, *her*) and possessive pronouns (e.g. *mine*, *hers*) are in effect the genitive case forms of personal pronouns.

B Person forms in pronouns

In spite of their name, personal pronouns may have both personal and non-personal reference. *I*, *me*, *you*, *he*, *she*, *him*, *her*, *we*, and *us* generally refer to people, while *it* has non-personal reference. The plural pronouns *they*, *them*, *theirs* can have both personal and non-personal reference, because *they* is the plural of *he*, *she* and *it*:

1 *You hear about guys beating up women and stuff and yet* ***they*** *love* ***them*** *so much.* (CONV) <personal reference>
2 *Those are great pictures, aren't* ***they****? Did you see* ***them****?* (CONV) <non-personal reference>

Person in pronouns actually relates people, things, etc. to the speech situation. The three persons (first, second, third) are generally used as follows:

- First-person pronouns refer to the speaker/writer.
- Second-person pronouns refer to the addressee(s).
- Third-person pronouns refer to other people or entities, which are neither the speaker/writer nor the addressee.

4.12.1 Person and pronoun usage

The above definitions of the first-, second- and third-person categories are clear enough and apply to the vast majority of personal pronoun uses. However, there are some problems and special cases.

A First person: *we*

While the singular pronoun *I* is unambiguous in referring to the speaker, the plural pronoun *we/us/ours* can vary according to context. *We* can be inclusive, including the addressee(s) (I + you): *What game should* ***we*** *play?*. It can also be exclusive, excluding the addressee(s) but including other people (e.g. I + my family): *Nancy,* ***we*** *love you.*

The speaker can make the reference more explicit by adding other words to *we*:

'***We all*** *believe in him,' said the 18-year-old chairwoman.* (NEWS†)

'***We Americans*** *are spoilt,' he said.* (NEWS)

Another more explicit method is to use *I/we* in coordination with another pronoun or proper noun:

We've got a bond in common, ***you and I.*** (FICT)

Well, it was late, and ***me and my friend Bob****, we'd been to a game.* (FICT†).

Notice that *we* in these examples is used as a subject, but is reinforced by a loosely attached coordinated phrase (see 3.5.7 on **prefaces** and **tags**). However, in general it is left to the addressee to decide the reference of *we* from the situation.

In a very different way, the meaning of *we* can also vary in academic writing. Three uses of *we* can be distinguished:

1 ***We*** *spoke of Dirac's piece of chalk.* (ACAD†)
2 ***We*** *are now able to understand why* ***our*** *information about the states of motion is so restricted in quantum mechanics.* (ACAD)
3 *When* ***we*** *start talking* ***we*** *often cease to listen.* (ACAD)

In **1**, *we* refers to the author(s) of the text. This use sometimes occurs even when there is only one author. In **2**, *we* refers to the author(s) and reader(s), assuming a common understanding shared by both. In **3**, *we* refers to people in general. *We* here is similar to the generic pronoun *one* (see 4.15.3). These meaning differences are usually implicit, so readers must decide the intended meaning in each case.

B Second person: *you*

You is similar to *we* in inviting different interpretations. For example, since *you* can be either singular or plural, it is not always clear whether it refers to one person or more than one. As with *we*, the plural use can sometimes be specified by a following nominal expression:

*And what did **you all** talk about?* (NEWS)

***You two** are being over optimistic.* (FICT)

*Are **you guys** serious?* (FICT)

You all is particularly common, and is three times more frequent in American English conversation than in British English conversation: this form (also transcribed *y'all*) is especially a feature of southern American English.

C Third person: *it, he, she, they*

Generally third-person pronouns are important in making referential links in a text or a conversation. In the following examples, we underline the **antecedent**, i.e. the noun phrase a pronoun refers back to:

1 *My cousin works at Jones <...>. **She**'s a designer, **she**'s very famous. **She** designs a lot of clothes for Lord Browning. **Her** best friend is Princess Margaret.* (CONV)

2 *On **his** arrival in Hobart, Mr. Bond told journalists **he** was not finished yet.* (NEWS)

Third-person pronouns are usually **anaphoric** as in **1**, where the antecedent precedes the pronoun. But it is also possible, as in **2**, for a pronoun to go before its antecedent. (Compare the anaphoric and cataphoric use of *the* in 4.6.3.)

It also acts as a **dummy pronoun**, which does not have a specific reference, but has the role of 'place filler', particularly as an empty subject:

***It**'s cold.* (CONV) <weather>

***It** is eight o'clock in the morning.* (NEWS) <time>

***It**'s a long way from here to there.* (FICT†) <distance>

Empty *it* also appears in special clause types—see extraposition (10.3.3, 10.4.3, 10.17) and clefting (12.12).

4.12.2 Generic use of personal pronouns

The personal pronouns *we*, *you*, and *they* can all be used to refer to people in general:

***We** cannot nibble at quantum theory. If **we** are to digest it properly it must be swallowed whole.* (ACAD)

***You**'ve got to be a bit careful when **you**'re renting out though.* (CONV)

> *Ross duly appeared in a multi-million pound advertising campaign and the rest, as* ***they*** *say, is history.* (NEWS)

These **generic** pronouns tend to retain a trace of their basic meaning as first-, second-, or third-person pronouns. Thus *we* is typical of written style, and places the focus on shared human experience or knowledge, including the speaker's. *You* is typical of spoken English; choice of this generic pronoun appeals to common human experience, inviting empathy from the hearer. *They*, also common in speech, can be roughly glossed 'people, not you or me'.

A fourth pronoun capable of expressing the meaning 'people in general' is the generic pronoun *one* (see 4.15.3): it occurs rather infrequently in formal speech or in writing.

> ***One*** *can have too much of a good thing.* (NEWS)

4.12.3 Case: nominative v. accusative personal pronouns

Most of the personal pronouns have a distinction between nominative and accusative case forms: *I—me, he—him, she—her, we—us, they—them.* The use of these forms is generally straightforward: the nominative is used as subject, and the accusative as object or complement of a preposition.

In some positions, however, there is variation. There is a tendency for the accusative form to spread in popular usage into contexts traditionally reserved for the nominative form:

A Variation in pronoun choice after forms of *be*

> **1** *Hello gorgeous it's* ***me!*** (CONV)
> **2** *So maybe it's* ***I****, John Isidore said to himself.* (FICT)

Although the nominative form (e.g. *I*) is traditionally considered correct after the copula *be*, the accusative form (e.g. *me*) is the normal choice in practice, in both conversation and the written registers.

B Variation in pronoun choice after *as* and *than*

We find more or less the same pattern after *as* and *than* in **comparative constructions**:

> **3** *She's as bad as* ***me*** *and you!* (CONV)
> **4** *You are closer to death than* ***I****.* (FICT)

The accusative form (*me*) predominates as in **3**, especially in conversation.

C Stand-alone noun phrases

Where a noun phrase stands on its own, without being integrated into a clause, the accusative forms are again commonly used:

> *A: Who told him?*
> *B:* ***Me****.* (CONV)
>
> ***'Me and my friend Bob****, we'd been to a game.'* (FICT†)

4.12.4 Possessive pronouns

The possessive pronouns (*mine*, *yours*, *his*, etc.) are like possessive determiners, except that they constitute a whole noun phrase. The antecedent is underlined in the examples below:

1 *The house will be* ***hers*** *you see when they are properly divorced.* (CONV†)
2 *Writers have produced extraordinary work in conditions more oppressive than* ***mine***. (NEWS)

Possessive pronouns are typically used when the head noun can be found in the preceding context: thus in **1**, *hers* means 'her house', and in **2**, *mine* means 'my conditions'. Here the possessive pronoun is parallel to the elliptic use of the genitive (4.9.5).

To make the possessive noun phrase emphatic, a possessive determiner precedes *own*:

We have a wine tasting, and everybody makes ***their own***. (CONV) <i.e. makes their own wine>

The possessive form with *own* typically refers back to the subject of the clause (like reflexive pronouns—see 4.13 below).

Possessive pronouns depend a great deal on context for their interpretation. Consequently they are far more common in conversation than in the written registers.

4.13 Reflexive pronouns

Reflexive pronouns end with *-self* in the singular and *-selves* in the plural. Each personal pronoun has a corresponding reflexive pronoun, and in fact *you* has two reflexive forms: *yourself* (singular) and *yourselves* (plural):

personal	*I*	*we*	*you*	*he*	*she*	*it*	*they*
reflexive	*myself*	*ourselves*	*yourself/yourselves*	*himself*	*herself*	*itself*	*themselves*

4.13.1 Reflexive pronouns in their reflexive use

The most common use of reflexive pronouns is in their basic 'reflexive' role: to mark some other element of the clause as referring back to the subject (underlined below):

1 *Most consultants are just selling* ***themselves***. (CONV†)
2 *We're all looking very sorry for* ***ourselves***. (CONV)

The reflexive pronoun most commonly fills an object slot (as in **1**) or a prepositional complement slot (as in **2**) in the same clause as the **co-referential** subject (signaled here by underlining). The reflexive pronoun has to be used if co-reference is intended. For example, if *them* were used instead of *themselves* in **1** (*consultants are selling* ***them***) the meaning would be different: that consultants were selling some other products.

Reflexive pronouns are used like this only when there is a co-referential subject in the same clause. Notice, in **3**, that *his big brother*, not *he*, is the subject of the non-finite clause, and therefore *him* is used instead of *himself*:

3 *He wanted [his big brother to treat* ***him*** *as an equal].* (FICT†)

4.13.2 Emphatic use of reflexive pronouns

A reflexive pronoun can be used for emphasis, immediately following the emphasized noun phrase (underlined):

1 *Unfortunately I **myself** did not have this chance.* (FICT)

2 *This explains why the representation of the totem is more sacred than the totemic object **itself**.* (ACAD)

With subject noun phrases, as in **1**, there is another variant of this construction. The reflexive pronoun is separated from its noun phrase, and placed later in the clause. This word order is preferred in conversation:

3 *I'll do the preparation **myself**.* (CONV)

4.13.3 Reciprocal pronouns

The reciprocal pronouns *each other* and *one another* are similar in use to reflexive pronouns. They refer back to the subject of the clause, and occur as object or prepositional complement:

*We always speak French to **each other**.* (CONV)

*They got along, they admired **one another**.* (CONV)

Reciprocal pronouns express a mutual relation between two or more parties: e.g. *A and B hate each other* means *A hates B*, and *B hates A*. *Each other* is far more common than *one another*.

4.14 Demonstrative pronouns

The four words *this*, *that*, *these*, and *those* act as demonstrative determiners (as we saw in 4.7.1). They also act as demonstrative pronouns, which match the determiners in their meaning and function:

***That** was by far my favorite ride. It was just incredible.* (CONV)

*A: What are **these**, mom?*
*B: **Those** are called hot plates.* (CONV)

Like demonstrative determiners, demonstrative pronouns contrast in terms of singular (*this*, *that*) and plural (*these*, *those*), and in terms of 'near' reference (*this*, *these*) and 'distant' reference (*that*, *those*).

Demonstrative pronouns can often be considered as alternatives to the pronoun *it*. These pronouns all refer to something in the context—either in the neighbouring part of the text or the external situation. But unlike the pronoun *it*, demonstrative pronouns are usually pronounced with stress and so carry greater communicative weight.

A: What a neat picture.
*B: Yeah, I should put **that** in a frame or something – keep **it**.* (CONV)

The demonstrative pronouns are much less frequent than the personal pronouns.

That is the most common of the demonstrative pronouns. *That* is especially common in conversation, where it often has a vague reference:

***That**'s what I thought* (CONV).

This, on the other hand, is most frequent in academic writing. Both *this* and *these* are used commonly for textual linkage. For example:

> *We must accept that the positive part of conventionalism <...> cannot offer useful advice to judges in* *hard cases**.* ***These*** *will inevitably be cases in which the explicit extension of the various legal conventions contains nothing decisive either way <...>.*
>
> *But it must now be said that, so far from being a depressing conclusion,* ***this*** *states precisely the practical importance of conventionalism in adjudication. <...>* ***This*** *explains why cases do not come to court <...>.* (ACAD†)

This passage illustrates the two major types of linkage with demonstrative pronouns. The pronoun *these* refers back to a specific noun phrase antecedent (*hard cases*). In contrast, the pronoun *this* is used here to refer back to a more extensive piece of text, which includes several preceding sentences.

4.14.1 Demonstrative pronouns referring to humans

The demonstrative pronouns are usually not used to refer to humans. A major exception to this rule, though, is when they are used in introductions:

> *Sally introduced them. 'Danny,* ***this*** *is my friend Sarah.'* (FICT)

Similarly, callers in a phone conversation will often identify themselves using the demonstrative pronoun *this*:

> *Hi,* ***this*** *is Larry.* (CONV)

4.15 Indefinite pronouns

There are three main classes of indefinite pronouns: the compound pronouns *somebody*, *everything*, *anyone*, etc.; the quantifiers *some*, *all*, *any*, etc.; and the pronoun *one*.

4.15.1 Compound pronouns

There are four groups of **compound pronouns**, beginning with the determiners *every*, *some*, *any*, and *no*:

	every-	*some-*	*any-*	*no-*
personal reference	*everybody*	*somebody*	*anybody*	*nobody*
	everyone	*someone*	*anyone*	*no one*
neuter reference	*everything*	*something*	*anything*	*nothing*

No one is normally spelt as two words, although the hyphenated spelling *no-one* also occurs.

The meanings of compound pronouns match the meanings of noun phrases with the corresponding determiners (4.7.3), except that they refer to indefinite persons or things. Compare:

> *'He brought me* ***some natural food****.'* (FICT)
>
> *'I have brought* ***something*** *for you from Doctor Fischer.'* (FICT)

Compound pronouns are most common in conversation and fiction, and least common in academic writing. As the examples below show, compound pronouns have a general and often vague reference:

> *I enjoyed not having to say* ***anything*** *to* ***anybody****.* (CONV†)
>
> *They gutted it and they put in all new offices and* ***everything****. There was* ***nothing*** *in there.* (CONV)

The two personal forms in *-body* and *-one* have the same meaning, but somewhat different distributions. Pronouns ending in *-body* are most common in conversation, while pronouns in *-one* are preferred in the written registers. Pronouns ending in *-body* are also more common in American English than in British English.

4.15.2 Quantifying pronouns (quantifiers)

Quantifiers, as we have seen in 4.7.3, can act both as determiners and as pronouns. In general, the form of the word is identical for both.

Most quantifying pronouns are followed by *of* and a definite noun phrase, as in *some of the ..., several of my ...*:

> *some (of), both (of), each (of), either (of), neither (of), all (of), many (of), enough (of), any (of), much (of), several (of), none (of), (a) little (of), (a) few (of)*

For example:

> *Bring* ***all of*** *your friends.* (CONV†)

However, quantifying pronouns can also stand alone as a noun phrase (e.g. *all* in **1**), and they can have an elliptic meaning, referring back to some previously mentioned noun phrase (e.g. the second *some* in **2**):

> **1** *I just want to get my bonus, that's* ***all****.* (CONV)
> **2** *A: I'll eat* ***some of*** *the steak.*
> *B: I'll have* ***some****.* (CONV) <i.e. some of the steak>

4.15.3 The pronoun *one*

Apart from its use as a numeral (4.7.4), *one* has two uses as a pronoun:

A Substitute *one, ones*

One can replace a countable noun that has been mentioned before or is inferred from the context. A singular noun is replaced by *one*, and a plural noun by *ones*.

> *An artist cannot fail; it is success to be* ***one****.* (ACAD) <i.e. to be an artist>
>
> *You can test out the colors tonight and find which* ***ones*** *are best.* (CONV) <i.e. which colors>

Note that unlike other indefinite pronouns, *one* and *ones* can follow a determiner or semi-determiner: e.g. *the one, those ones, another one, the last one*. They can even follow an adjective: *the latest one*. In fact, *one* is best seen as a replacement for a noun, rather than for a whole noun phrase.

B Generic *one, one's, oneself*

One is also used as a generic pronoun (see 4.12.2) referring to people in general. In this use, *one* is singular and has no plural form. However, it has a possessive form *one's* (**2**) and a reflexive form *oneself* (**3**).

1 ***One*** *doesn't raise taxes with enthusiasm.* (NEWS†)

2 *Success and acclaim were seen as a means of validating* ***one's*** *existence.* (NEWS†)

3 ***One*** *does not wish to repeat* ***oneself*** *unduly.* (ACAD†)

Substitute *one* is far more common in conversation than in the written registers. Generic *one*, on the other hand, is impersonal and rather formal in tone. It is largely restricted to the written registers, especially fiction and academic writing.

4.16 Other pronouns

There are pronoun uses corresponding to semi-determiners (see 4.7.5). For example, *others, another, the other, the latter, the last, such.*

Be self-reliant and helpful to ***others****.* (CONV)

She said: 'Stilgar, I underestimated you.' ***'Such*** *was my suspicion,' he said.* (FICT)

The *wh*-pronouns *what, which, who, whom,* and *whose* are used to form interrogative and relative clauses; these will be dealt with in later chapters (see 8.11, 9.8.2).

What*'s the problem?* (NEWS)

But he's in the wrong, he's the one ***who****'s wrong.* (FICT)

Review

Major points in **GRAMMAR BITE E**: Types of pronouns

- The major types of pronoun are personal, reflexive, demonstrative, and indefinite.
- Personal pronouns refer to people and entities in the context of discourse; they can also have generic reference.
- Reflexive pronouns are used to refer back to the subject, or for emphasis.
- Demonstrative pronouns point to entities which are 'near' or 'distant' in the context of discourse.
- Indefinite pronouns are mostly quantifying words, related in form and meaning to quantifying determiners.

5
Verbs

GRAMMAR BITES in this chapter

A Verb functions and classes

- ➤ Main verbs v. auxiliary verbs
- ➤ Lexical verbs v. primary verbs v. modal verbs
- ➤ Lexical verbs across registers

B Single-word lexical verbs

- ➤ The meanings that lexical verbs can express
- ➤ The different uses of the twelve most common lexical verbs

C Lexical verbs: structures and patterns

- ➤ Verbs with regular and irregular morphology
- ➤ The creation of new verbs with derivational affixes
- ➤ Verb valency patterns

D Multi-word lexical verbs

- ➤ The use of multi-word lexical verbs, including phrasal verbs, prepositional verbs, and phrasal-prepositional verbs

E Primary verbs

- ➤ The uses of the three primary verbs: *be*, *have*, and *do*

F Copular verbs

- ➤ The copula *be*
- ➤ Other verbs that can function as copular verbs
- ➤ The major uses and meanings of copular verbs

5.1 Introduction

Verbs provide the focal point of the clause. The main verb in a clause determines the other clause elements that can occur and specifies a meaning relation among those elements. However, there are many different kinds of verbs, including lexical v. auxiliary verbs, different semantic classes, and single-word v. multi-word verbs.

In the six Grammar Bites of this chapter, we describe several major classes of verbs. In Grammar Bite A, we survey the major functions and classes for verbs, considering oppositions like main v. auxiliary verb. In Grammar Bite B, we focus on single-word lexical verbs. We describe their meanings—using semantic classes—and the most common verbs in each semantic class. Then in Grammar Bite C, we discuss structural aspects of lexical verbs: their valency patterns, verbs with irregular morphology, and the creation of new verbs with derivational affixes.

In Grammar Bite D, we turn to a type of verb that is often challenging for learners of English: multi-word lexical verbs, including phrasal verbs, prepositional verbs, and phrasal-prepositional verbs. Then, in Grammar Bite E, we take a closer look at the three primary verbs (*be*, *have*, and *do*). Finally, in Grammar Bite F, we identify the verbs that function as copular verbs, illustrating their major uses and meanings.

GRAMMAR BITE

A Verb functions and classes

5.2 Verb functions and classes

5.2.1 Main verbs v. auxiliary verbs

Main verbs play a central role in clauses. They usually occur in the middle of a clause, and they are the most important element in the clause because they determine the other clause elements. The pattern of these other clause elements is called the **valency pattern**. For example, a clause with the main verb *go/went* cannot take a direct object (e.g. **I went the house*). However, *go/went* can be followed by an adverbial (underlined below):

I ***went*** *into the empty house*. (FICT)

In contrast, a clause with the main verb *give* usually occurs with both a direct object and an indirect object. In the following example, *him* is the indirect object and *a message* is the direct object:

I could ***give*** *him a message*. (FICT)

Auxiliary verbs, on the other hand, occur before a main verb and qualify the meaning of the main verb. In the following example, *could* and *be* are auxiliary verbs, and *staying* is the main verb.

Jack the Ripper ***could be staying*** *there*. (CONV†)

In this example, *could* adds unreality to the meaning of the main verb, and *be* signals an ongoing process. The overall meaning is quite different from the sentence without auxiliary verbs, *Jack the Ripper stays there.*

5.2.2 Lexical verbs v. primary verbs v. modal verbs

Verbs can be grouped into three major classes according to their ability to function as main verbs or auxiliary verbs:

- **Lexical verbs** (e.g. *run*, *eat*, *think*) function only as main verbs.
- **Primary verbs** (*be*, *have*, and *do*) can function as both auxiliary and main verbs.
- **Modal verbs** (*can*, *could*, *shall*, *should*, *will*, *would*, *may*, *might*, *must*) function only as auxiliary verbs.

Lexical verbs (sometimes called 'full verbs') are used only as main verbs.

> *Children and dogs* ***ran*** *from side to side.* (FICT†)
>
> *He barely* ***ate*** *or* ***slept*** *that night.* (FICT)

The class of lexical verbs is an open class, which means that the English language is always adding new lexical verbs.

Most lexical verbs have **regular** endings for forming past and present tense (e.g. *call*, *calls*, *called*). However, many of the most common lexical verbs in English have **irregular** morphology. In the above example sentences, the verbs show irregular past tense forms: *run—ran*, *eat—ate*, and *sleep—slept*. (See 5.5–7.)

One distinctive feature of English grammar is that lexical verbs often occur as multi-word units (see 5.8–12):

> *He* ***turned on*** *the lights.* (FICT)
>
> *I* ***looked at*** *that one again.* (CONV)

There are only three primary verbs: *be*, *have*, and *do*, the most common verbs in English. These verbs form a separate class because they can be used either as a main verb or as an auxiliary verb. For example, compare the following uses of each primary verb:

- primary verbs—main verb function:

> *He* ***does*** *my washing.* (CONV)
>
> *His dad* ***was*** *an art professor.* (CONV†)
>
> *Every atom* ***has*** *a dense nucleus.* (ACAD†)

- primary verbs—auxiliary verb function (with main verb underlined):

> *He* ***does****n't* *look* *at the numbers.* (CONV)
>
> *He* ***was*** *wearing* *a dark ski mask.* (NEWS†)
>
> *A particular combination of results* ***has*** *occurred*. (ACAD)

Primary verbs are described further in 5.13–15.

Finally, modal verbs are used only as auxiliary verbs. In the following examples the main verb is again underlined:

> *People thought he* ***might*** *have been* *joking*. (NEWS)
>
> *He* ***would*** *probably* *like* *it softer.* (NEWS)

Modal verbs and other auxiliaries are covered in detail in Chapter 6.

5.2.3 Lexical verbs across registers

Lexical verbs are much more common than primary verbs or modal verbs (see Figure 5.1). This is not surprising as there are hundreds of different lexical verbs, and most clauses occur with a lexical verb as main verb. In contrast, there are few primary verbs and modal verbs, and many clauses occur without an auxiliary verb.

When the verb *be* (*am*, *is*, *was*, *were*, etc.) is used as a main verb it is termed the **copula**, because of its special linking or 'coupling' function. It is the single most common verb occurring as a main verb. Interestingly, the copula *be* is more common in academic prose than in the other registers. Lexical verbs, however, are relatively rare in academic prose; they are much more common in conversation and fiction (Figure 5.2).

The following text samples illustrate the differing uses of main verbs in conversation and academic prose. Lexical verbs are in bold, and the copula *be* is underlined. Auxiliary verbs are not marked (e.g. *are* in the phrase *are taking*). (Auxiliary verbs express verb **aspect, voice,** and **modality**, which are covered in Chapter 6.)

Figure 5.1
Overall frequency of verb classes

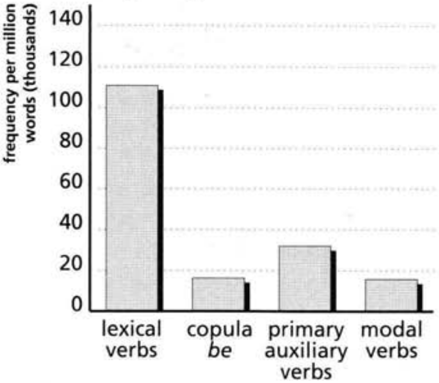

Figure 5.2
Frequency of lexical verbs and copula *be* across registers

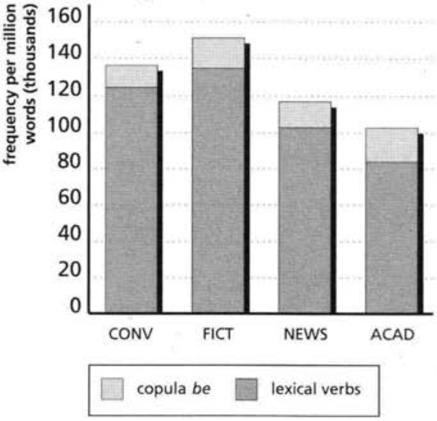

Text sample 1: CONVERSATION

> A: Those hyacinths in the corner are ***taking*** *a long time to* ***come*** *out, aren't they? I'd have* ***thought*** *the tulips in the coal scuttle, the tulips in the cauldron, I* ***thought*** *they'd* ***had*** *it, they were* ***lying*** *down completely.*
>
> B: *I* ***know****, but they've* ***straightened*** *out.* (CONV)

Text sample 2: ACADEMIC PROSE

> *In* ***going*** *from atoms to quarks there is a change of scale by a factor of at least 10 million. It is impressive that quantum mechanics can* ***take*** *that in its stride. The problems of interpretation* ***cluster*** *around two issues: the nature of reality and the nature of measurement.* (ACAD)

These two short samples illustrate important differences in the use of lexical verbs and the copula *be* across registers. Although the samples are nearly the same length, the conversation contains many more lexical verbs (eight) than the academic prose sample (three). The conversation has frequent, short clauses, and most of these clauses contain a lexical verb.

Academic prose has fewer lexical verbs for two reasons:

- First, it uses longer clauses than conversation does. Each clause has long noun phrases and prepositional phrases, but only one main verb—and with fewer clauses, there are consequently fewer main verbs.
- Second, more of the main verbs are forms of the copula *be*. These are used to state the existence of conditions (*there is a change of scale* . . .) and to give evaluations (*it is impressive* . . .).

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE A**: Verb functions and classes

- ➤ Verbs perform two major functions in clauses: main verbs v. auxiliary verbs.
  - ➤ Main verbs are the central element in a clause.
  - ➤ Auxiliary verbs qualify the meaning of the main verb.
- ➤ Verb forms can be grouped into three major classes according to their ability to function as main verbs or auxiliary verbs.
  - ➤ Lexical verbs (e.g. *run*, *eat*, *think*) function only as main verbs.
  - ➤ Primary verbs (*be*, *have*, and *do*) can function as both auxiliary and main verbs.
  - ➤ Modal verbs (*can*, *could*, *shall*, *should*, *will*, *would*, *may*, *might*, *must*) function only as auxiliary verbs.
- ➤ Lexical verbs are much more common than primary verbs or modal verbs.
- ➤ Lexical verbs are most common in conversation and fiction.

GRAMMAR BITE

B Single-word lexical verbs

5.3 Semantic categories of lexical verbs

Although many verbs have more than one meaning, we find it useful to distinguish seven semantic categories: **activity verbs**, **communication verbs**, **mental verbs**, **causative verbs**, **verbs of occurrence**, **verbs of existence or relationship**, and **verbs of aspect**.

A Activity verbs

Activity verbs usually refer to a **volitional activity**—that is, an action performed intentionally by an **agent** or 'doer'. Thus, in the following examples, the subject (underlined below) performs the action by choice:

*Then you should **move** any obstacles.* (CONV†)

*He **bought** biscuits and condensed milk.* (FICT)

*In many of these jobs, women are **working** with women only.* (ACAD)

Many commonly used verbs are activity verbs. The twenty most common, in conversation, fiction, newspaper writing, and academic prose combined, are:

bring *buy* *come* *follow*
get *give* *go* *leave*
make *meet* *move* *pay*
play *put* *run* *show*
take *try* *use* *work*

Activity verbs can be **transitive**, taking a direct object, or **intransitive**, occurring without any object:

- transitive activity verbs, with the direct object underlined:

  *Well **give** it to the dogs, they'll **eat** it.* (CONV)

  *Even the smallest boys **brought** little pieces of wood and **threw** them in.* (FICT†)

- intransitive activity verbs:

  *They **ran**, on rubbery legs, through an open gate.* (FICT†)

  ***Go** to the hospital!* (CONV)

Activity verbs are also sometimes used to express events that occur without the volition of an agent. For example, *move* and *give* were used in the examples above as volitional activities. In the following examples the subjects (underlined) do not perform the activity by their will:

> *During that time continents, oceans, and mountain chains have **moved** horizontally and vertically.* (ACAD†)
>
> *A few simple, rough calculations will **give** surprisingly good estimates.* (ACAD)

B Communication verbs

Communication verbs are a special subcategory of activity verbs that involve communication activities, particularly verbs describing speech and writing:

> *You **said** you didn't have it.* (CONV)
>
> *'Stop that', he **shouted**.* (FICT)
>
> *The organiser **asked** me if I wanted to see how the money was spent.* (NEWS)
>
> *Too many students **write** far too little about their research methods.* (ACAD†)

The twelve most common 'communication' verbs in conversation, fiction, newspaper writing, and academic prose combined are:

ask *call* *claim* *describe*
offer *say* *speak* *suggest*
talk *tell* *thank* *write*

C Mental verbs

Mental verbs refer to mental states and activities. For example:

> *I **think** it was Freddie Kruger.* (CONV)
>
> *I **wanted** very much to give him my orange but held back.* (FICT)

These verbs do not involve physical action. Some of the verbs convey volition; others do not. Mental verbs express a wide range of meanings:

- mental states or processes (e.g. *think*, *know*)
- emotions, attitudes, or desires (e.g. *love*, *want*)

- perceptions (e.g. *see*, *taste*)
- the receiving of communication (e.g. *read*, *hear*).

Many mental verbs describe mental activities that are relatively **dynamic** in meaning, such as the following:

> *They* ***decided*** *to watch TV.* (CONV)
>
> *And uh then I* ***studied*** *Russian at Berkeley.* (CONV)
>
> *We might even* ***discover*** *that he uses a lower number of abstract nouns than other writers of his time.* (ACAD)

Other mental verbs are more **stative** in meaning: that is, they describe a state rather than an action. These include verbs describing mental states, such as *believe*, *remember*, and *understand*, as well as many verbs describing emotions or attitudes, such as *enjoy*, *fear*, *hate*, and *prefer*:

- mental states:

> *Oh yeah, right we all* ***believe*** *that.* (CONV)
>
> *Somehow I* ***doubt*** *it.* (FICT)

- emotions/attitudes:

> *He* ***hated*** *this weekly ritual of bathing.* (FICT†)
>
> *I* ***preferred*** *life as it was.* (NEWS)

The twenty most common 'mental' verbs in conversation, fiction, newspaper writing, and academic prose combined are:

believe *consider* *expect* *feel*
find *hear* *know* *like*
listen *love* *mean* *need*
read *remember* *see* *suppose*
think *understand* *want* *wonder*

D Causative verbs

Causative verbs, such as *allow*, *cause*, *force*, and *help*, indicate that some person or thing helps to bring about a new state of affairs. These verbs often occur with a derived noun (see 4.11) as the direct object, which reports the action that was facilitated. For example, *deletion* and *formulation* in the following sentences are formed from verbs (the direct objects are underlined):

> *Still other rules* ***cause*** *the deletion of elements from the structure.* (ACAD)
>
> *This information* ***enables*** *the formulation of precise questions.* (ACAD†)

The use of derived nouns with causative verbs is particularly common in academic prose. In other cases, the resulting action or event is expressed in a **complement clause** that follows the causative verb (underlined in the following examples):

> *What* ***caused*** *you to be ill?* (FICT)
>
> *This law* ***enables*** *the volume of a gas to be calculated.* (ACAD†)
>
> *This would* ***help*** *protect Jaguar from fluctuations in the dollar.* (NEWS†)

Complement clause structures are discussed in Chapter 10.

Compared with other semantic classes of verbs, there are only a few common causative verbs:

allow *help* *let* *require*

E Verbs of occurrence

Verbs of occurrence report events that occur without an actor. Often the subjects of these verbs are affected by the event that is described by the verb, as in these examples (subjects are underlined):

The lights ***changed****.* (CONV)

Resistant organisms may ***develop*** *in the alimentary tract.* (ACAD†)

The term 'feature' has ***occurred*** *many times in this chapter.* (ACAD)

Seven verbs of occurrence are especially common, in conversation, fiction, newspaper writing, and academic prose combined:

become *change* *develop* *die*
grow *happen* *occur*

F Verbs of existence or relationship

Verbs of existence or relationship report a state of existence or a logical relationship that exists between entities. Some of the most common existence verbs are **copular verbs**, such as *seem* and *appear*:

Witnesses said he ***appeared*** *happy and relaxed.* (NEWS)

All these uses ***seem*** *natural and serviceable.* (ACAD)

Copular verbs are discussed in detail in Grammar Bite F.

Other verbs in this class report a state of existence or a relationship between entities:

- state of existence:

  I go and ***stay*** *with them.* (CONV)

  These varying conditions may ***exist*** *in close proximity.* (ACAD†)

- relationship:

  The exercise will ***include*** *random stop checks by police, and* ***involve*** *special constables and traffic wardens.* (NEWS)

  They ***contained*** *large quantities of nitrogen.* (ACAD†)

Some common 'existence/relationship' verbs are:

appear *contain* *exist* *include*
indicate *involve* *live* *look*
represent *seem* *stand* *stay*

G Verbs of aspect

Verbs of aspect characterize the stage of progress of an event or activity. These verbs usually occur with a complement clause following the verb. In the following examples the complement clause is underlined:

She ***kept*** *running out of the room.* (CONV)

He couldn't ***stop*** *talking about me.* (CONV†)

Tears ***started*** *to trickle down his cheeks.* (FICT)

Complement clauses are covered in detail in Chapter 10.

Some common 'aspect' verbs are:

begin *continue* *keep* *start* *stop*

5.3.1 Verbs with multiple meanings

Many verbs have more than one meaning. In some cases, the verb's meaning covers two or more semantic categories simultaneously. For example, the verbs *hesitate* and *pretend* can convey the physical activity aspects of hesitating and pretending as well as the mental aspects.

> *She* ***hesitated*** *and then said 'Why not.'* (FICT)
>
> *She can just* ***pretend*** *it's her new car.* (CONV)

Also, some verbs have different meanings in different contexts. This is especially true of activity verbs, which often have secondary meanings in another category. For example, *raise* can refer to a physical activity or an act of communication (e.g. *raise your hand* or *raise the subject*) and *look* can refer to a physical action (*look down*), to a mental process (*look at the offer*), or to a state of existence (*you look happy*). These different meanings are also often associated with different valency patterns (see 5.7).

The context usually makes the intended meaning of a verb obvious. In the following pairs of examples **1** has a physical meaning, and **2** has a mental or communication meaning:

1 *Many patients are quite fit when* ***admitted*** *to the surgical ward.* (ACAD†)
2 *I must* ***admit*** *it gave me a bit of a shock.*
1 *He jumped and* ***raised*** *his right elbow so that it projected outwards.* (NEWS†)
2 *The issue was* ***raised*** *by Mr. Burns at a meeting with the Transport Secretary.* (NEWS)
1 *I think I was half ready to* ***follow*** *her.* (FICT)
2 *I don't* ***follow*** *you, begging your pardon.* (FICT)

5.4 The most common lexical verbs

The twelve most common lexical verbs in English are all activity or mental verbs, except for the verb *say*, which is the single most common lexical verb overall (see Figure 5.3):

- activity verbs: *get, go, make, come, take, give*
- mental verbs: *know, think, see, want, mean*

Figure 5.3 **Frequency of the most common lexical verbs in the LSWE Corpus (over 1,000 per million words)**

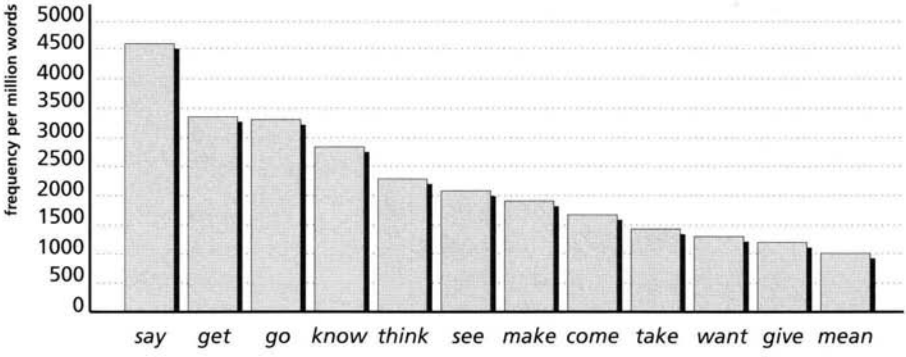

- communication verb: *say*.

(The primary verbs *be* and *have* are also extremely common expressing existence or relationship. These verbs are discussed in 5.13–14 below.)

A *Say*

The verb *say* is the most common lexical verb overall. Speakers and writers rely heavily on *say* to report the speech of themselves and others, rather than some communication verbs like *tell*, *ask*, *offer*, or *explain*. In all registers, this verb is most common in the past tense, in reporting a past utterance:

> *You **said** you didn't have it.* (CONV)
>
> *No use sitting about, he **said**.* (FICT)
>
> *He **said** this campaign raised 'doubts about the authenticity of the eventual allegedly free choice'.* (NEWS)

However, conversation differs from the written registers: it also commonly uses *say* in the present tense. Often, as in the first example below, these occurrences still report past speech, but the use of the present tense conveys a feeling of immediacy and personal involvement:

> *So he **says**, Oh my God!* (CONV)
>
> *Rachel **says** she thinks that Pam's just acting like a spoiled brat.* (CONV)

Present tense *say* is also commonly used for repeated or habitual behavior, as in:

> *Look mum, he **says** horrible things to me.* (CONV)

Interestingly, present tense *say* is also common in jokes, conveying a sense of immediacy:

> *And the daughter comes home from school one day and **says**, mum I want to be like you.* (CONV)
>
> *And she **says** yes every time she's got her bubble gum in, she **says** no when she hasn't got the bubble gum in her mouth.* (CONV)

See 10.5.2 for the use of *say* with complement clauses, and 12.4.3 for its use in reporting clauses.

B *Get*

Although it is easy to overlook, the verb *get* is more common in conversation than any other lexical verb in any register. *Get* is so common because it is extremely versatile. Although it is often used as an activity verb, it actually has a wide range of meanings and grammatical patterns. The major meanings of *get* include:

- obtaining something (activity):

  *See if they can **get** some of that beer.* (CONV)

- moving to or away from something (activity):

  ***Get** in the car.* (CONV)

- causing something to move (causative):

  *We ought to **get** these wedding pictures into an album of some sort.* (CONV)

- causing something to happen (causative):

  *It **gets** people talking again, right.* (CONV)

- changing from one state to another (occurrence):

  *She's **getting** ever so grubby-looking now.* (CONV)

  *Once you **got** to know him you liked him.* (CONV†)

- understanding something (mental):

  *Do you **get** it?* (CONV)

In addition to these meanings, *get* in the **perfect** form *have got* is equivalent to the primary verb *have* with a stative meaning, as in:

> *The Amphibicar. It'**s got** little propellers in the back.* (CONV)
> <compare: *It **has** little propellers...*>
>
> ***Have** you **got** any plans for this weekend?* (CONV)
> <compare: *Do you **have** any plans...*>

In speech, *have* is sometimes omitted from the perfect form of *get*, as in:

> *You **got** your homework done, Jason?* (CONV)
> <compare: ***Have** you **got**...?*>

The verb *get* is also extremely versatile from a grammatical point of view. In addition to being a main verb, it functions as part of the **semi-modal** *(have) got to* (or *gotta*, see 6.9.2). It can also be used like an auxiliary verb to create a **passive** construction, the so-called '***get* passive**':

> *I **got caught** once before.* (CONV†)
> <compare: *I **was caught** once before.*>

Finally, *get* occurs in idiomatic multi-word phrases:

> *He was no good she says, she **got rid of** him.* (CONV)
>
> *My mom loves him. He can **get away with** anything – he could **get away with** murder and my mom would still love him.* (CONV)

Given its versatility, it might seem surprising that *get* is not extremely common in all registers. However, it is relatively rare in most written registers. In general, it is considered an informal word and is therefore avoided in formal writing. In its place, written registers use a wide range of lexical verbs with more specific meanings, such as *obtain*, *cause*, *encourage*, *become*, and *understand*.

C Other extremely common verbs

Most of the other extremely common activity verbs are used to different extents across the registers. *Go* is extremely common in conversation and also very common in fiction:

> *We might as well **go** and see Janet.* (CONV)
>
> *Then they **went** and sat in rocking chairs in the front room.* (FICT)

The verb *come*, which is related to *go* in meaning, is also most common in these two registers:

> *He **came** with Alan.* (CONV)
>
> *'Ma, the permit isn't going to **come**', he said.* (FICT)

In fiction and news, two other activity verbs are common—*make* and *take*:

> *I thought I might **make** coffee for them all before I go.* (FICT)
>
> *The intruders **took** money and jewelry, commission sources said.* (NEWS)

Like *get*, both *make* and *take* commonly occur as part of idiomatic expressions. For example:

You have to ***take advantage of*** *every moment.* (CONV)

Without shame he details how he came to ***make a mark*** *in espionage history.* (NEWS)

Mental verbs, especially *know*, *think*, *see*, *want*, and *mean*, are particularly common in conversation. These verbs report states of awareness, certainty, perception, and desire. Mental verbs usually go with *I* or *you* as subject:

I ***think*** *it was a worm that it had in its mouth.* (CONV)

In many cases, these verbs occur together in the same utterance:

I ***see*** *what you* ***mean****.* (CONV)

You ***know*** *what I* ***mean****.* (CONV)

I really ***wanted*** *her to wear it, you* ***know****?* (CONV)

Fiction, too, has relatively high frequencies of the verbs *know*, *think*, and *see*. These verbs typically occur in the past tense, reporting the thinking and perceptions of fictional characters:

She ***knew*** *what had happened to them.* (FICT)

I ***thought*** *I would go and see the Pope.* (FICT)

She ***saw*** *the light again.* (FICT)

Surprisingly, the verb *see* is also relatively common in academic prose, where it is used to report scientific observations, or for references to other studies:

The Type I disease is usually ***seen*** *in calves grazed intensively.* (ACAD†)

*There now exists an extensive literature on the construction of social indicators (****see****, for example, Knox 1978c).* (ACAD†)

Finally, the verb *give* is relatively common in all registers. In most registers, this verb is used with activity meanings:

He's not gonna ***give*** *it to you twice though.* (CONV)

She was too shy to ***give*** *him more than a covert glance.* (FICT)

The vehicles will be ***given*** *to the National Association of Boys' Clubs.* (NEWS)

However, in academic prose *give* often expresses causative or existence meanings:

A good method of analysis is one that ***gives*** *a large correlation coefficient.* (ACAD)

K values are ***given*** *in Fig. 2.5.* (ACAD)

5.4.1 Repeated use of the most common verbs

Figure 5.4 (on page 114) compares the frequency of the twelve most common verbs with the frequency of all other lexical verbs. As a group, the commonest verbs occur much more frequently in conversation than in the other three registers. They are used so often that they account for nearly 45 per cent of all lexical verbs in conversation. In contrast, the commonest verbs account for only 11 per cent of all lexical verbs in academic prose.

The following two excerpts from conversations illustrate speakers' frequent use of the commonest verbs:

A: *She and Cathy might like to* ***come*** *because she did* ***say*** *to me, how is Cathy and I* ***said*** *she was <...>*

B: *She* ***knows*** *about Cathy's problem?*

A: *Yes, she **said** so do you **think** Cathy would mind if I rang her? – and I **said** no I'm sure she wouldn't.* (CONV†)

A: *I used to **get** really nervous when I came to Chinese restaurants. I never **knew** what to choose.*
B: *Really?*
A: *But gradually over the years you **get** the hang of it. Some people **get** the hang of these things more quickly than I do.*
B: *We didn't **go** often enough dear, that's the other thing.* (CONV)

Figure 5.4
Distribution of the most common lexical verbs v. other verbs

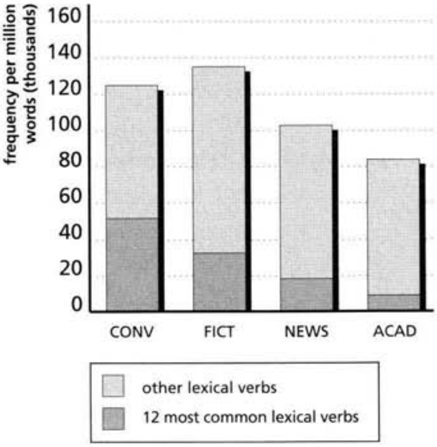

These short exchanges are typical of conversations: participants repeatedly use the most common verbs to share experiences, thoughts, and speech.

The written registers rely less on the most common verbs. In part, this might reflect a wider range of subject matter—especially in news and academic prose. It may also reflect a wish to make the text more interesting by varying vocabulary—especially in fiction. Further, varied and precise word choice is easier for writers, because they have time to plan and revise. Speakers in conversations, in contrast, have little opportunity for planning or revising, so they rely more heavily on the most common verbs (see 13.2.5 for more on the repetitiveness of conversation).

Review

Major points of GRAMMAR BITE B: Single-word lexical verbs

- Lexical verbs fall into seven major semantic categories: activity verbs, communication verbs, mental verbs, causative verbs, verbs of occurrence, verbs of existence or relationship, and verbs of aspect.
- Many lexical verbs have more than one meaning.
- Twelve verbs are especially common in English. Their main uses fall into three types:
  - activity verbs: *get, go, make, come, take, give*
  - mental verbs: *know, think, see, want, mean*
  - communication verb: *say.*
- In conversation, these twelve verbs are extremely common. Written registers like academic prose tend to use a wider range of different verbs.

GRAMMAR BITE

C Lexical verbs: structures and patterns

5.5 Regular and irregular verb endings

5.5.1 Regular verbs

Inflections are morphemes that express grammatical meanings like **person** and **number**. Most verbs are **regular**, meaning that they use the same inflections to mark **person**, **tense**, **aspect**, and **voice**. For example, all regular verbs mark third person singular with an *-s* suffix and past tense with an *-ed* suffix. Yet many grammatical distinctions are not marked on verbs in English. For example, there is no difference between the verb form for first person present tense (e.g. *I walk*), second person present tense (*you walk*), and the infinitive of regular verbs (*to walk*). Some other grammatical distinctions are marked by the use of auxiliary verbs (such as *have* for perfect aspect and *be* for passive voice), rather than by inflections. Consequently, English verbs have few morphological forms. Regular verbs have only four morphological forms. These forms involve three suffixes added to a base:

form	use
base	**infinitive**, present tense except third person singular, and **subjunctive**
base + suffix *-(e)s*	third person singular present tense
base + suffix *-ing*	***ing*-participles** (as in **progressive** aspect)
base + suffix *-ed*	simple past tense and **ed-participles** (or **past participle**, as in **perfect** and **passive** constructions)

For example:

base	*look*	*move*	*try*	*push*	*reduce*
base + *-(e)s*	*looks*	*moves*	*tries*	*pushes*	*reduces*
base + *-ing*	*looking*	*moving*	*trying*	*pushing*	*reducing*
base + *-ed*	*looked*	*moved*	*tried*	*pushed*	*reduced*

Pronunciation of suffixes:

- *-ing*: /ɪŋ/
- *-(e)s*: /s/ after voiceless consonants except /ʃ, ʧ, s/: *looks, hopes, laughs*
  /z/ after vowels and voiced consonants except /ʒ, ʤ, z/: *tries, moves, minds*
  /ɪz/ after /ʃ, ʧ, s, ʒ, ʤ, z/: *passes, reduces, recognizes, pushes, massages, watches, manages*
- *-ed*: /t/ after voiceless consonants except /t/: *watched, looked, pushed*
  /d/ after vowels and voiced consonants except /d/: *tried, moved*

/ɪd/ after /t, d/: *waited, wanted, included*

Spelling of suffixes:

- *-(e)s*: *-es* after the letters *s, z, x, sh* or *ch*: *pass—passes, push—pushes, watch—watches*
  -*s* after all other letters
- *-ing* and *-ed*: if the base of the verb ends in consonant + *e*, the final *e* is dropped before adding the suffix: *reduce—reducing—reduced*; compare a base ending in vowel + *e*: *agree—agreeing—agreed.*
- *-(es)* and *-ed*: if the verb ends in a consonant + *y*, the spellings become *-ies* and *-ied*: *copy—copies—copied, try—tries—tried*; otherwise, final *y* takes the usual endings: *play—plays—played.*

5.5.2 Irregular verbs

There is a much smaller set of **irregular** verbs—that is, they have irregular past tense and *ed*-participle forms—but these include many of the most common verbs. Note that the *ed*-participle is a good label for regular verbs, since all regular verbs have an *ed*-participle (i.e. past participle) ending in *-ed*. But it is a misleading label to use for irregular verbs, since irregular past participles (like *cut, eaten*) rarely end in *-ed*!

There are seven main patterns used to mark past tense and *ed*-participles in irregular verbs:

A Class 1

A *-t* suffix marks past tense and *ed*-participles. The *t* may replace a final *d* of the base: e.g. *build—built, send—sent, spend—spent*. Or the *t* may be added to the base: e.g. *spoil—spoilt, learn—learnt*. Some of the verbs that add *t* to the base also have a regular form: e.g. *learnt* and *learned* both occur.

B Class 2

A *-t* or *-d* suffix marks past tense and *ed*-participle, and the base vowel changes. For example:

base form	**past tense**	***ed*-participle**
mean /miːn/	*meant* /mɛnt/	*meant*
think /θɪŋk/	*thought* /θɔːt/	*thought*
sell /sɛl/	*sold* /səʊld/	*sold*
tell /tɛl/	*told* /təʊld/	*told*

C Class 3

The regular *-ed* suffix marks past tense, but an *-(e)n* suffix marks *ed*-participles. For example:

base form	**past tense**	***ed*-participle**
show	*showed*	*shown* (note: *showed* also occurs)

D Class 4

No suffix is used for the past tense, but *ed*-participles have an *-(e)n* suffix; in addition, the base vowel changes in either the past tense, *ed*-participle, or both. For example:

base form	**past tense**	***ed*-participle**
give /ɪ/	*gave* /eɪ/	*given* /ɪ/
know /əʊ/	*knew*/(j)uː/	*known* /əʊ/
see /iː/	*saw* /ɔː/	*seen* /iː/

E Class 5

The base vowel changes in the past tense, the *ed*-participle, or both; there are no other changes. For example:

base form	**past tense**	***ed*-participle**
begin /ɪ/	*began* /æ/	*begun* /ʌ/
come /ʌ/	*came* /eɪ/	*come* /ʌ/
find /aɪ/	*found* /aʊ/	*found* /aʊ/

F Class 6

Past tense and *ed*-participle forms are identical to the base form. For example:

base form	**past tense**	***ed*-participle**
cut	*cut*	*cut*
hit	*hit*	*hit*

G Class 7

One of the forms is completely different. For example:

base form	**past tense**	***ed*-participle**
go /gəʊ/	*went* /wɛnt/	*gone* BrE /gɒn/ AmE /gɔn/

5.5.3 Preference for regular v. irregular endings

Many irregular verbs also have regular alternatives. For example, two different forms are used for the past tense of *speed*: the irregular *sped*, and the regular form *speeded*. In most cases, one form is used more than the other. For example, the irregular forms *hung*, *lit*, *quit*, and *sped* are more common than the regular forms *hanged*, *lighted*, *quitted*, and *speeded*. In contrast, the regular forms *dreamed*, *knitted*, and *leaned* are much more common than the irregular forms *dreamt*, *knit*, and *leant*.

For a few verbs, different forms are associated with different grammatical functions. For example, the regular form *spoiled* is used more commonly for past tense, but the irregular form *spoilt* is used more commonly for the *ed*-participle (in British English).

In American English, the verb *get* is unusual because it has two irregular *ed*-participle forms that occur following *have*: *got* and *gotten*. In British English, the combination *have* + *gotten* almost never occurs. In both American English and British English, the combination *have got* can express a meaning roughly equivalent to *have* as a lexical verb, or it can express the perfect aspect meaning of *get*:

- meanings equivalent to *have* as a lexical verb:

  Look at that face. He ***hasn't*** *got any teeth.* (AmE CONV)
  <compare: *He doesn't* ***have*** *any teeth.*>

  Have *you* ***got*** *an exam on Monday?* (BrE CONV)
  <compare: *Do you* ***have*** *an exam on Monday?*>

- perfect aspect of *get*:

  It could ***have got*** *put in storage or something.* (AmE CONV)

  We ***have got*** *ourselves into a rut.* (BrE NEWS†)

In contrast, *have gotten* in American English almost always has a perfect aspect meaning, as in:

I can't believe Ginger's bike ***hasn't gotten*** *stolen yet.* (AmE CONV)

5.6 Verb formation

Derivational affixes are incomplete units of language that form a new word when they are added to an existing word (the base). **Prefixes** are attached to the front of the base, while **suffixes** are attached to the end of the base.

Verb prefixes usually do not change the word class. That is, when a prefix is attached to a verb base, the new word remains a verb. However, the meaning changes:

base verb	derived verb with prefix	base verb	derived verb with prefix
like	*dislike*	*cook*	*overcook*
lead	*mislead*	*seal*	*reseal*
do	*outdo*	*zip*	*unzip*

Verb derivational suffixes, on the other hand, are added to a noun or adjective to create a verb:

adjective base	derived verb with suffix	noun base	derived verb with suffix
active	*activate*	*assassin*	*assassinate*
simple	*simplify*	*class*	*classify*
actual	*actualize*	*alphabet*	*alphabetize*
black	*blacken*	*height*	*heighten*

5.6.1 Most common derivational affixes

There are many different derivational prefixes used to form new verbs in English. The most common derivational prefixes, in order of frequency of occurrence, are:

prefix	meaning of prefix	examples
re-	again	*reabsorb, rearm, rebuild, redefine, refinance*
dis-	opposite, apart	*disallow, disarm, disconnect, discontinue, dislike*
over-	too much, across, beyond	*overbook, overcome, overeat, overhear, overreach*
un-	opposite, in reverse	*unbend, uncouple, unfold, unload, unpack*
mis-	wrong, poorly	*misbehave, mishandle, misinform, mispronounce*
out-	beyond, further	*outbid, outdo, outgrow, outperform, outweigh*

The prefix *re-* is used most often in formal written registers, like academic prose and news. Many verbs formed with *re-* have been in use for a considerable time, but *re-* is also frequently used to create new words in technical discourse: e.g. *redeploy, redimension, retransmit.*

There are only a few derivational suffixes used for verb formation, although some of the suffixes combine with many different words. The suffixes are listed below in order of frequency of occurrence:

suffix	meaning of suffix	examples
-ize/-ise	to (cause to) become	*computerize, energize, itemize, stabilize*
-en	to (cause to) become	*awaken, flatten, lengthen, moisten*
-ate	to (cause to) become	*activate, liquidate, regulate, pollinate*
-(i)fy	to (cause to) become	*beautify, codify, exemplify, notify*

Notice that all four of the most frequent derivational suffixes have a basic meaning of 'become' or 'cause to be'. However, when different suffixes are added to the same base, separate meanings can result. For example, *liquidize* is usually used with an agent making a substance 'liquid', but *liquify* is often used without an agent, and *liquidate* is used in a financial context, when assets are 'made liquid'.

The suffix *-ize* is often spelled *-ise* in BrE.

5.7 Valency patterns

The main verb in a clause determines the other elements that are required in that clause. The pattern of the clause elements is called the **valency pattern** for the verb. The patterns are differentiated by the required clause elements that follow the verb within the clause (e.g. direct object, indirect object, subject predicative). All valency patterns include a subject, and optional adverbials can always be added.

There are five major valency patterns:

A Intransitive

Pattern: subject + verb (S + V). Intransitive verbs occur with no obligatory element following the verb:

subject	verb
More people	***came.*** (FICT)

B Monotransitive

Pattern: subject + verb + direct object (S + V + DO). Monotransitive verbs occur with a single direct object:

subject	verb	direct object
She	***carried***	*a long whippy willow twig.* (FICT†)

C Ditransitive

Pattern: subject + verb + indirect object + direct object (S + V + IO + DO). Ditransitive verbs occur with two object phrases—an indirect object and a direct object:

subject	verb	indirect object	direct object
Fred Unsworth	***gave***	*her*	*a huge vote of confidence.* (NEWS†)

D Complex transitive

Patterns: subject + verb + direct object + object predicative (S + V + DO + OP) or subject + verb + direct object + obligatory adverbial (S + V + DO + A). Complex transitive verbs occur with a direct object (a noun phrase) which is followed by either (**1**) an object predicative (a noun phrase or adjective), or (**2**) an obligatory adverbial:

	subject	verb	direct object	object predicative
1	*people*	***called***	*him*	*Johnny.* (NEWS†)

	subject	verb	direct object	obligatory adverbial
2	*He*	***put***	*his hand*	*on the child's shoulder.* (FICT†)

E Copular

Patterns: subject + verb + subject predicative (S + V + SP) or subject + verb + obligatory adverbial (S + V + A). Copular verbs are followed by (**1**) a subject predicative (a noun, adjective, adverb or prepositional phrase) or (**2**) by an obligatory adverbial. (Copular verbs are further discussed in Grammar Bite E.)

	subject	(copular) verb	subject predicative
1	*Carrie*	***felt***	*a little less bold.* (FICT†)

	subject	(copular) verb	obligatory adverbial
2	*I*	*'ll* ***keep***	*in touch with you.* (CONV†)

F Variations on transitive patterns

The monotransitive, ditransitive, and complex transitive patterns are the **transitive** patterns; they all require some type of object. As in the above examples, the most common structure for the objects is a noun phrase. However, in some cases other structures can function as objects. For example:

- monotransitive pattern with a complement clause for the direct object:

subject	verb	direct object
He	***said***	*he was going to make a copy.* (CONV†)

- ditransitive pattern with a prepositional phrase expressing the indirect object:

subject	verb	direct object	indirect object
He	***gave***	*all that info*	*to the FBI.* (NEWS†)

<note that the indirect object prepositional phrase could also be analyzed as an adverbial>

- ditransitive pattern with a noun phrase for the indirect object and a complement clause for the direct object:

subject	verb	indirect object	direct object
Staff in the information office	***told***	*me*	*that the train had been delayed until 18.15.* (NEWS)

Verbs in all patterns can occur with optional adverbials. For example:

- intransitive with optional adverbial (S + V + (A)):

	subject	verb	optional adverbial
	He	***went***	*to the corner shop.* (FICT)
[Then]	*they*	***fell***	*in the sea.* (FICT)

- transitive with optional adverbial (S + V + O + (A)):

subject	verb	object	optional adverbial
He	***ate***	*nearly all those chips*	*tonight.* (CONV)
He	***left***	*it*	*in the bushes.* (FICT†)

5.7.1 Verbs with multiple valency patterns

Grammarians sometimes identify a verb as 'an intransitive verb' or 'a transitive verb', as if one verb normally takes just one pattern. However, the reality is different from this. Most common verbs allow more than one valency pattern, and some allow a wide range. For example, *speak* and *help* can occur with intransitive or monotransitive patterns:

intransitive	monotransitive
*Simon **spoke** first.* (FICT)	*The stewards all **spoke** French.* (NEWS)
*Money **helped**, too.* (NEWS)	*As Australia's forward coach, Evans did great work when he **helped** Alan Jones.* (NEWS)

Similarly, *find* and *make* can occur in the monotransitive or complex transitive patterns:

monotransitive	complex transitive
We might ***find*** *a body.* (NEWS†)	*You might* ***find*** *these notes useful.* (ACAD)
Malcolm ***made*** *no sound.* (FICT)	*The sheer intensity of the thing* ***made*** *me nervous.* (FICT)

Further, verbs that have the same possible valency patterns often use them with different meanings and very different frequencies. We illustrate this point below with a brief case study of three verbs.

5.7.2 Intransitive and monotransitive patterns

Many verbs can take both intransitive and monotransitive patterns, but these verbs differ in their preference for one pattern over another. For example, *stand*, *change*, and *meet* are possible with both valency patterns. However, *stand* usually occurs as an intransitive verb, while *change* and *meet* most commonly occur in the monotransitive pattern.

A *Stand*

The most common pattern is intransitive with an optional adverbial (S + V + (A)):

subject	adverbial	verb	optional adverbial
I	*just*	***stood***	*there.* (CONV)

Monotransitive *stand* is rare and found primarily in conversation and news in idiomatic expressions, such as *to stand a chance* or *can't stand someone or something*:

subject	verb	direct object
You don't	***stand***	*a chance.* (CONV†)

subject	adverbial	verb	direct object
I	*really*	***couldn't stand***	*him.* (CONV)

Monotransitive *stand* with a complement clause as the direct object is rare and found primarily in fiction:

	subject	verb	direct object (complement clause)
[Could]	*you*	***stand***	*being alone with me for five or six days?* (FICT)

B *Change* and *meet*

With these verbs, monotransitive (S + V + DO) is the most common pattern:

subject	verb	direct object
I	*[want to]* ***change***	*my clothes.* (CONV)
... you	*[will never]* ***change***	*the world.* (FICT†)
She	***met***	*several leading actors and musicians.* (NEWS†)

Intransitive (S + V) is the second most common pattern, especially for *change*:

subject	verb	
People's circumstances	***change***	*[and er ... they vote differently].* (CONV)

Intransitive with optional adverbials (S + V + (A)) is also found:

subject	verb	optional adverbial
We could	***meet***	*in Tucson* (CONV†)
The work	*had* ***changed***	*in the post-war period.* (ACAD†)

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE C**: Lexical verbs: structures and patterns

- Two areas are important in the structure of lexical verbs:
  - their inflectional morphology, which marks person, tense, aspect, and voice.
  - their derivational morphology, which shows how verbs have been created.
- In their inflectional morphology, most verbs occur with regular suffixes.
  - Many of the most common verbs have irregular morphology.
  - Some verbs allow both regular and irregular morphology.
- New verbs can be formed with derivational morphology.
  - The prefix *re-* is frequently used for forming new words.
  - The suffix *-ize* is also frequently used for forming new words.
  - Four derivational suffixes are all common and are used with similar meanings: *-ize*, *-ate*, *-(i)fy*, and *-en*.
- The main verb determines the other elements that are necessary for the clause—i.e. the valency pattern.
  - There are five major valency patterns: intransitive, monotransitive, ditransitive, complex transitive, and copular.
  - Many verbs can occur with more than one valency pattern, and they often have different meanings with each pattern. Further, each verb occurs with very different frequencies for the different patterns.

GRAMMAR BITE

D Multi-word lexical verbs

5.8 Multi-word verbs: structure and meaning

Many multi-word units function like a single verb. These combinations usually have **idiomatic** meanings. That is, their meaning cannot be predicted from the meaning of each individual word.

These multi-word verbs fall into four classes:

- **phrasal verbs**
- **prepositional verbs**
- **phrasal-prepositional verbs**
- **other multi-word verb constructions.**

Phrasal verbs consist of a verb followed by an adverbial particle (e.g. *carry out*, *find out*, or *pick up*). When these adverbial particles are used independently, they have literal meanings signifying location or direction (e.g. *out*, *in*, *up*, *down*, *on*, *off*). However, in phrasal verbs they are commonly used with less literal meanings. For example, the meaning of *find out* does not include the 'place' meaning of *out*.

Prepositional verbs consist of a verb followed by a preposition, such as *look at*, *talk about*, *listen to*.

Phrasal-prepositional verbs contain both an adverbial particle and a preposition, as in *get away with*.

Because they are idiomatic in meaning, it is sometimes possible to replace multi-word verbs by single-word verbs with a similar meaning:

multi-word verb	**single-word verb**
carry out	*undertake*
look at	*observe*
put up with	*tolerate*
find out	*discover*
talk about	*discuss*
make off with	*steal*

In contrast to multi-word verbs, **free combinations** consist of a single-word lexical verb followed by an adverb or preposition with a separate meaning (e.g. *come down*, *go back*). In practice, it is hard to make an absolute distinction between free combinations and multi-word verbs. It is better to think of a continuum where some uses of verbs are relatively free and others relatively idiomatic.

5.8.1 Characteristics of phrasal verbs and prepositional verbs

The meanings and structures of phrasal verbs, prepositional verbs, and free combinations differ in many ways. However, just three criteria are usually sufficient for distinguishing among the types of multi-word combinations. The criteria are:

- whether or not there is an idiomatic meaning
- whether or not particle movement is possible
- how the *wh*-question is formed.

The nature of a multi-word expression is determined by whether or not there is a following noun phrase. When there is no following noun phrase (e.g. *shut up* or *go away*), there are only two possible interpretations. It must be either an intransitive phrasal verb, or a free combination of verb + adverb. If there is a following noun phrase (e.g. *find out the meaning*), there are three possible interpretations. Either it is a transitive phrasal verb, a transitive prepositional verb, or a free combination of verb + adverbial prepositional phrase.

A Idiomatic meaning

Checking for an idiomatic meaning is especially useful when there is no following noun phrase, and you wish to distinguish between an intransitive phrasal verb and a free combination. Intransitive phrasal verbs usually have an idiomatic meaning, while the words in free combinations retain their own meanings. For example, the intransitive phrasal verbs *come on*, *shut up*, *get up*, *get out*, *break down*, and *grow up* all have idiomatic meanings beyond the separate meanings of the two parts (e.g. *grow up* means to act/become more mature, not literally to grow in an upward direction). In contrast, both the verb and the adverb have separate meanings in free combinations like *come back*, *come down*, *go back*, *go in*, *look back*.

- Intransitive phrasal verbs:

  Shut up *you fool!* (CONV)

  Come on! *Tell us then!* (CONV)

- Intransitive free combinations:

  If this was new, I wouldn't let people ***go in****.* (CONV)

  Come back*, or I'll fire.* (FICT)

  He was afraid to ***look back****.* (FICT)

B Particle movement

When multi-word combinations have a following noun phrase, tests using structure are more important than those involving idiomatic meaning. The first important test is **particle movement**: that is, whether the adverbial particle can be placed both before and after the object noun phrase. Transitive phrasal verbs allow particle movement. In the following examples the object noun phrase is shown in brackets.

I went to Eddie's girl's house to ***get back*** *[my wool plaid shirt].* (FICT†)
I've got to ***get*** *[this one]* ***back*** *for her mom.* (CONV)

K came back and ***picked up*** *[the note].* (FICT)

He ***picked*** *[the phone]* ***up****.* (FICT)

When the object of a transitive phrasal verb is a pronoun, the adverbial particle is almost always after the object:

Yeah I'll ***pick*** *[them]* ***up****.* (CONV)

So I ***got*** *[it]* ***back****.* (CONV)

(Other factors influencing particle movement are discussed in 12.13.4.)

Particle movement is not possible with prepositional verbs. Instead, the particle (actually, a preposition) always comes before the noun phrase that is the object:

Well those kids are ***waiting for*** *their bus.* (CONV)

<compare: **Well those kids are* ***waiting*** *their bus* ***for****.*>

It was hard to ***look at*** *him.* (NEWS)

Availability ***depends on*** *their being close to the root.* (ACAD†)

C *Wh*-question formation

Wh-question formation is a second important structural test for deciding the type of multi-word verb. This test is especially useful for distinguishing between a transitive prepositional verb + object and a free combination of verb + adverbial prepositional phrase. In sentences with a prepositional verb, *wh*-questions are typically formed with *what* or *who*. These questions indicate that the noun phrase that follows the preposition functions as the object of the prepositional verb:

What are you ***talking about****?* (CONV)
What are you ***laughing at****?* (FICT)
<compare the statement: *I am* ***talking about*** */* ***laughing at*** *something.*>
Who are you ***working with****?* (CONV)
Who was he ***talking to****?* (CONV)
<compare the statement: *I am* ***working with*** */* ***talking to*** *somebody.*>

In contrast, *wh*-questions for free combinations can be formed using the adverbial *wh*-words *where* and *when*. These questions indicate that the prepositional phrase is an adverbial that follows the verb:

- place:

  Where are you walking? (CONV)
  <compare the statement: *I am* ***walking*** ***to*** *that place.*>
  Where will we meet? (FICT)
  <compare the statement: *We will* ***meet*** ***at*** *that place.*>

- time:

  When are you playing? (CONV)
  <compare the statement: *I am* ***playing*** ***at*** *that time.*>
  When are you leaving? (FICT)
  <compare the statement: *I am* ***leaving*** ***at*** *that time.*>

Comparing these features does not always result in clear-cut distinctions between all multi-word verb combinations. Many combinations can function as more than one type, depending on the context. Further, some combinations can be interpreted as belonging to more than one category. Section 5.8.2 illustrates several of these problematic cases.

5.8.2 Multi-word combinations in multiple categories

Sometimes multi-word combinations fit into more than one category. For example, the combination *fit in* can be an intransitive phrasal verb (**1**), or a free combination of verb + adverbial prepositional phrase (**2**):

1 *He just doesn't* ***fit in****.* (CONV)
2 *The mushroom was too big to* ***fit*** *[****in*** *a special dryer at Purdue University's plant and fungi collection].* (NEWS†)

In addition, some combinations have the characteristics of more than one category even in a single occurrence. For example, consider *come back*, with the meaning to 'recover' or 'resume an activity'. This combination might be analyzed as a free combination because *come* and *back* both contribute independently to the meaning. But the combination could also be regarded as an intransitive phrasal verb, because the combined meaning of the parts is idiomatic.

3 *Everton* ***came back*** *from a goal down to beat Blackburn 2–1.* (NEWS)

4 *When Jim went to the police station, officers told him to* ***come back*** *another day.* (NEWS)

Sentence **4** might seem more clearly a free combination because the adverb *back* has a literal directional meaning, while **3** has a more clearly idiomatic meaning ('recover'). However, **4** also has a meaning that can be represented by a single verb: *return*. In this sense, it, too, is idiomatic. In sum, as for many grammatical categories, the distinction is not always clear-cut.

5.8.3 Frequency of multi-word verb types

Prepositional verbs are far more common than phrasal verbs or phrasal-prepositional verbs (Figure 5.5). Both phrasal verbs and phrasal-prepositional verbs are extremely rare in academic prose, while in the other registers phrasal verbs are more common than phrasal-prepositional verbs. The greater frequency of prepositional verbs goes with the greater diversity of the meanings they express. Phrasal and phrasal-prepositional verbs are most commonly used for physical activities, while prepositional verbs cover a wide range of semantic categories.

Figure 5.5
Distribution of multi-word verbs across registers

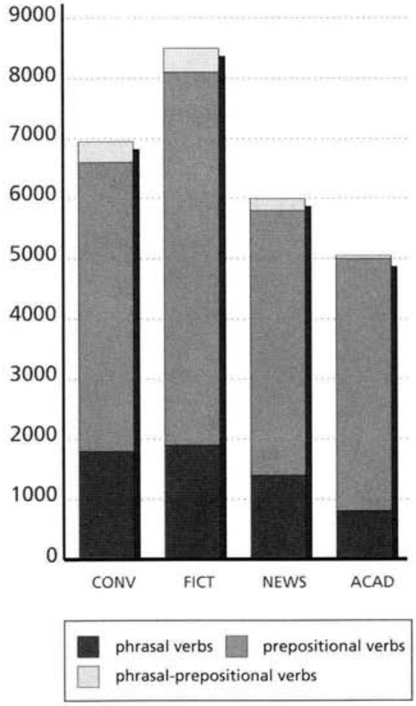

5.9 Phrasal verbs

There are two major subcategories of phrasal verbs: intransitive and transitive.

- Intransitive phrasal verbs:

  Come on, *tell me about Nick.* (CONV)

  Hold on! *What are you doing there?* (FICT)

  I just ***broke down*** *in tears when I saw the letter.* (NEWS)

- Transitive phrasal verbs:

  Did you ***point out*** *the faults on it then?* (CONV)

  I ventured to ***bring up*** *the subject of the future.* (FICT)

  I want to ***find out*** *the relative sizes of the most common dinosaurs.* (ACAD†)

With transitive phrasal verbs the particle can be placed after the direct object. This is the normal word order when the object is a pronoun:

Terri ***turned*** *it* ***on.*** (CONV)

I just thought I would ***point*** *it* ***out*** *to you.* (CONV)

The warden said that she would ***turn*** *the heating* ***on.*** (ACAD†)

In addition, a few phrasal verbs are copular, such as *turn out*, *end up*, and *wind up*. We return to these verbs in 5.16–17 below.

5.9.1 Most common phrasal verbs

A Intransitive phrasal verbs

As Figure 5.5 above shows, conversation and fiction use phrasal verbs much more frequently than news and academic prose do. This difference is especially noteworthy for intransitive phrasal verbs. They are extremely common in conversation and fiction, but extremely rare in news and academic prose. One reason for this difference is that most phrasal verbs are colloquial in tone.

In fact, the most common intransitive phrasal verbs are activity verbs that are used as directives. They often occur as imperatives. Since imperative clauses are most common in conversation and fiction, it is not surprising that these intransitive phrasal verbs are also most common in those registers:

Shut up! *Just forget it.* (CONV)

Go off *to bed now.* (CONV)

Stand up *straight! People are looking!* (FICT)

In declarative clauses, the common intransitive phrasal verbs usually have human subjects (underlined below):

No, he ***came over*** *to the study.* (CONV)

Crowe ***sat up*** *and stared at Frederica.* (FICT)

I ***sat down*** *behind my desk.* (FICT)

The intransitive combination *come on* in conversation is the most common phrasal verb in any register. This verb has three major functions:

- as an exclamation in a call for action:

  Come on*, let Andy do it.* (CONV)

- as a pre-departure summons to move:

  Come on*, we better go.* (CONV)

- as the main verb in a clause, meaning 'to start' or 'become activated':

  The heating didn't ***come on*** *this morning.* (CONV)

The intransitive phrasal verb *go on* is also extremely common. *Go on* is similar to *come on* in having a number of different functions. However, unlike *come on*, *go on* is used often in both written and spoken registers:

- as an exclamatory call for action (like *come on* above):

  It's alright, rub it in. ***Go on!*** (CONV)

- to express continuation:

  I just ignored her and ***went on.*** *I didn't have time to talk.* (CONV)

  As time ***went on****, Liebig developed his thesis.* (ACAD†)

- to mark continuation of some general action (as a transitive verb with a complement *ing-* or *to*-infinitive clause as direct object):

  *Labour would **go on** getting the public's support by constructing strong unity of purpose.* (NEWS†)

  *Bjornsson **went on** to study the newspapers of 11 countries.* (ACAD)

- to mark an unspecified activity, with a meaning similar to 'happen':

  *Think what's **going on**. It's dreadful.* (FICT)

B Transitive phrasal verbs

Transitive phrasal verbs are more evenly spread across written and spoken registers. For example, verbs such as *put on*, *make up*, and *find out* are relatively common in both conversation and the written expository registers:

> *Some people they read the top bit and read the bottom bit, and sort of **make up** the bit in the middle.* (CONV)
>
> *Because you might **find out** it works.* (CONV)
>
> *Haven't you **found** that **out** yet?* (FICT)
>
> *For the modern mathematician these numbers would **make up** the ordered pair (V1, V2).* (ACAD)

In fact, a few transitive phrasal verbs are actually more common in expository writing than in conversation. These include *carry out*, *take up*, *take on*, *set up*, and *point out*:

> *It is common practice to **carry out** a series of design point calculations.* (ACAD†)
>
> *The rule also affected Henry Cotton, who **took up** the post at Royal Waterloo, Belgium, in 1933.* (NEWS†)
>
> *When the Spanish arm of the operation needed assistance he was asked to **take on** a supervisory role.* (NEWS)
>
> *The EIT was **set up** last year to help fund university research.* (NEWS†)
>
> *Gushchin (1934) **pointed out** many of the weaknesses of these attempts.* (ACAD†)

Finally, the combination *turn out* is unusual in that it is a common phrasal verb that can function as a copular verb. It is discussed in 5.17.

5.10 Prepositional verbs

All prepositional verbs take a **prepositional object**, i.e. the noun phrase that occurs after the preposition. There are two major structural patterns for prepositional verbs: with a single prepositional object (Pattern 1), and with a direct object and a prepositional object (Pattern 2):

- Pattern 1: NP + V + prep + NP (prepositional objects are underlined)

  *It just **looks like** the barrel.* (CONV)

  *I've never even **thought about** it.* (CONV)

- Pattern 2: NP + V + NP + prep + NP (direct objects and prepositional objects are underlined):

[Yeah it's really pretty]. It ***reminds*** *me* ***of*** *some parts of Boston.* (CONV)

He ***said*** *farewell* ***to*** *us [on this very spot].* (FICT)

But McGaughey ***bases*** *his prediction* ***on*** *first-hand experience.* (NEWS†)

The two-object prepositional verb (Pattern 2) is also common with passive verbs. The noun phrase that corresponds to the direct object is placed in subject position:

The media is falsely ***accused of*** *a lot of things.* (CONV†)
<compare the active voice: *People falsely* ***accuse*** *the media* ***of*** *a lot of things.*>

The initiative is ***based on*** *a Scottish scheme.* (NEWS†)
<compare the active voice: *Someone* ***based*** *the initiative* ***on*** *a Scottish scheme.*>

Most prepositional verbs occur with only one pattern. However, some prepositional verbs occur with both Patterns 1 and 2. These include *apply* (NP) *to*, *connect* (NP) *with*, *provide* (NP) *for*, *ask* (NP) *for*, *hear* (NP) *about*, *know* (NP) *about*:

- *apply to* with Pattern 1:

  The regulations also ***apply to*** *new buildings.* (NEWS†)

- *apply to* with Pattern 2:

  They were cosmologists wrestling to ***apply*** *quantum mechanics* ***to*** *Einstein's general theory of relativity.* (ACAD)

- *ask for* with Pattern 1:

  But I've ***asked for*** *much too much already.* (FICT)

- *ask for* with Pattern 2:

  He ***asked*** *Stan* ***for*** *a job.* (CONV)

The structure of a prepositional verb can be analyzed in two ways. On the one hand, it can be considered a single-word lexical verb that is followed by a prepositional phrase. The prepositional phrase functions as an adverbial. This analysis is supported by the fact that it is usually possible to insert another adverbial between the verb and the prepositional phrase in Pattern 1. The adverbials *exactly* and *much* are between the verbs and prepositional phrases in these examples:

She ***looked*** *exactly [****like*** *Kathleen Cleaver].* (FICT)

I never ***thought*** *much [****about*** *it].* (FICT)

However, the verb + preposition can also be considered as a multi-word unit—a single 'prepositional verb'. This analysis is supported by the fact that prepositional verbs often have idiomatic meanings that cannot be derived from the meanings of the two parts. The two-word units can often be replaced by a single transitive verb with a similar meaning:

thought about *it* → ***considered*** *it*

asked for *permission* → ***requested*** *permission*

stand for *it* → ***tolerate*** *it*

Also, as explained in 5.8.1, *wh*-questions with prepositional verbs are formed using *who* or *what* (e.g. *What are your thinking about?*), rather than a *wh*-adverb *where*, *when*, or *how*.

5.10.1 Most common prepositional verbs

Unlike phrasal verbs, prepositional verbs are common in academic writing as well as in conversation and fiction. However, different kinds of prepositional verbs are preferred in each register.

A Conversation and fiction

Because of the typical topics and purposes in conversation and fiction, these registers have many common prepositional verbs that are activity, communication, or mental verbs. The most common prepositional verb is *look at*. It is used in two main ways:

- to direct the attention of others:

    Look at *that great big tree stuck under the bridge!* (CONV)

- to describe actions involving sight:

    The boys ***looked at*** *each other tearfully unbelieving.* (FICT)

The communication verb *say to* (*say* NP *to* NP) is also very common in conversation and fiction. This prepositional verb is used to report the content of speech (the direct object), while also identifying the addressee (the prepositional object):

> *She* ***said*** *something* ***to*** *mom and dad earlier on.* (CONV†)
>
> *I went to* ***say*** *thank you* ***to*** *Doris.* (FICT)

In many examples with *say to*, a clause is used as the direct object, to report the content of the speech. Often, following the principle of **end-weight**, such lengthy direct objects are in final position:

> *I* ***said to*** *John something about the house on Frazier Street.* (CONV)
>
> <compare: *I* ***said*** *something about the house on Frazier Street* ***to*** *John.*>
>
> *I keep* ***saying to*** *Michael it's so expensive.* (CONV)
>
> <compare: *I keep* ***saying*** *it's so expensive* ***to*** *Michael.*>

In addition to these two very frequent prepositional verbs, conversation and fiction use a number of other common prepositional verbs to indicate activities, communications, and mental processes:

- activity verbs:

    Pity we couldn't ***go for*** *a romp around a canal, isn't it?* (CONV)

    Patrice held her breath, ***waiting for*** *Lettie's reply.* (FICT)

    He ***stared at*** *me blankly, unbelievingly.* (FICT)

- communication verbs:

    Just ***talk to*** *her.* (CONV)

    I was ***talking about*** *the old sort of diesel multiple unit.* (CONV)

    He ***spoke to*** *Paul in a bitter, controlled tone.* (FICT†)

- mental verbs:

    What did they ***think of*** *the brochure then?* (CONV)

    I was ***thinking about*** *the playgroup downstairs.* (CONV)

    Since when does nobody ***listen to*** *you?* (CONV)

B Academic prose

Academic prose also uses several common prepositional verbs that mark physical activities and mental states. However, these are mostly verbs that take the double object pattern (Pattern 2). They are often used in the passive voice. The most common of these is *use* NP *in*, and its passive counterpart (*be used in*):

> *We will continue to* ***use*** *Table 4.2* ***in*** *our economic analysis.* (ACAD†)
>
> *Another type of football* ***was used in*** *the second century in China to celebrate the emperor's birthday.* (ACAD)

Other common prepositional verbs used in academic prose include the following:

- activity verbs:

> *For example, the Message Type can* ***be derived from*** *its internal structure.* (ACAD)
>
> *Similarly other parts of the body may* ***be used as*** *bases to start from.* (ACAD†)
>
> *The method outlined could now* ***be applied to*** *a selected number of points along the blade length.* (ACAD)

- mental verbs:

> *This induced mustiness* ***is known as*** *Sierra rice.* (ACAD)
>
> *The electron may* ***be regarded as*** *a tiny mass carrying a negative charge.* (ACAD†)
>
> *All members of the specified Role Class* ***are considered as*** *possible senders of the received message.* (ACAD†)

In general, academic prose focuses on the relations among inanimate entities, with less concern for the people who are performing actions. The preference for passive voice with prepositional verbs reflects this general focus. Thus, by using the passive, the above examples avoid mentioning the people who *derive*, *use*, *apply*, *know*, *regard*, or *consider*.

Academic prose also commonly uses prepositional verbs that express causation, existence, or simple occurrence. These verbs, too, specify relations among entities rather than describing actions:

- causative verbs:

> *Further experimentation might* ***lead to*** *the identification of other difficulty factors.* (ACAD†)
>
> *Replacing the nonsense stems by English stems would have* ***resulted in*** *a grammatically correct sequence.* (ACAD†)

- existence verb:

> *It will* ***depend on*** *the purpose of, and audience for, the writing.* (ACAD)

5.11 Phrasal-prepositional verbs

The third major type of multi-word verb shares characteristics of both phrasal and prepositional verbs. Phrasal-prepositional verbs consist of a lexical verb combined with both an adverbial particle and a preposition. For example, *look* *forward to* has the lexical verb *look*, the adverbial particle *forward*, and the preposition *to*:

> *I'm* ***looking forward to*** *the weekend.* (CONV)

This type of verb is similar to a prepositional verb, as the complement of the preposition (*the weekend*) functions as the prepositional object of the verb (*looking forward to*).

Here are some more examples, with the complement of the preposition underlined:

> *Perhaps I can* ***get out of*** *it without having to tell her anything.* (FICT)
>
> *I would still* ***end up with*** *a lot of money.* (NEWS)

A few phrasal-prepositional verbs can take two objects:

> *I could* ***hand*** *him* ***over to*** *Sadiq.* (FICT)
>
> *Who* ***put*** *you* ***up to*** *this?* (FICT)

Phrasal-prepositional verbs function as a semantic unit and can sometimes be replaced by a single transitive lexical verb with similar meaning. For example:

> ***put up with*** *such treatment* → ***tolerate*** *such treatment*
>
> ***get out of*** *it* → ***avoid*** *it*
>
> ***come up with*** *a proposal* → ***make*** *a proposal*

5.11.1 Most common phrasal-prepositional verbs

Like phrasal verbs, phrasal-prepositional verbs are more frequent in conversation and fiction than in expository writing. However, common phrasal-prepositional verbs are used for a limited range of meanings. Most are activity verbs.

The most frequent phrasal-prepositional verb is *get out of*. Often it is imperative (**1**) or declarative (**2**):

> **1** *Just* ***get out of*** *my way.* (CONV)
> **2** *We have to* ***get out of*** *here.* (FICT)

Several other phrasal-prepositional verbs are relatively common with activity meanings. For example:

> *Stop yakking and* ***get on with*** *it!* (CONV)
>
> *He said he would* ***get back to*** *me.* (FICT†)
>
> *Burns* ***went up to*** *the soldiers and started talking.* (FICT)

In news, two phrasal-prepositional verbs with activity meanings are relatively common: *get back to* and *come up with*:

> *It's going to take time for you to* ***get back to*** *full strength.* (NEWS)
>
> *The panel will be asked to* ***come up with*** *the best all-time team on earth.* (NEWS)

In addition, the mental verb *look forward to* is relatively common in fiction and news:

> *She had been* ***looking forward to*** *this moment.* (FICT)

In the case of news, *look forward to* typically occurs in direct (**1**) or reported speech (**2**):

> **1** *'We are* ***looking forward to*** *the game'.* (NEWS)
> **2** *He said he was* ***looking forward to*** *the results of the inquiry.* (NEWS†)

5.12 Other multi-word verb constructions

In addition to the three types of multi-word verbs discussed above, verbs are also used in relatively fixed or idiomatic multi-word constructions: verb + prepositional phrase combinations, verb + verb combinations, and verb + noun phrase combinations.

A Verb + prepositional phrase combinations

Many verb + prepositional phrase combinations are idiomatic. Such combinations function semantically as a unit that can often be replaced by a single lexical verb, as in the following sentences:

> *I also have to* ***bear in mind*** *the interests of my wife and family.* (NEWS†)
> <compare: *remember*>
>
> *The triumph* ***came as a surprise*** *to many.* (NEWS)
> <compare: *surprised*>
>
> *You have to* ***take into account*** *where the younger shoots are dominant.* (FICT)
> <compare: *consider*>

B Verb + verb combinations

A second idiomatic category involves verb + verb combinations, such as *make do (with)* and *let* NP *go/be*:

> *Patients had to* ***make do with*** *quiche or ham salad.* (NEWS†)
>
> *He was 'very reluctant' to* ***let*** *him* ***go****.* (NEWS†)
>
> *I think it is time to* ***let*** *it* ***be****.* (NEWS)

C Verb + noun phrase combinations

There are a few verbs—such as *take*, *make*, *have*, and *do*—that can be used for many meanings. These verbs can combine with noun phrases to form idiomatic verbal expressions. In many cases, the combination also includes a following preposition. For example:

> *But you know how you* ***make fun of*** *me sometimes.* (CONV)
>
> *Let's* ***have a look at*** *this.* (CONV)
>
> *Do you want me to* ***do your hair****?* (CONV)
>
> *Yes, I'll* ***take care of*** *it.* (FICT)

Review

Major points of GRAMMAR BITE D: Multi-word lexical verbs

- There are three major types of multi-word verb: phrasal verbs, prepositional verbs, and phrasal-prepositional verbs.
  - Multi-word combinations can also be free combinations.
- Phrasal verbs consist of a verb + adverbial particle; they can be intransitive or transitive.
  - Phrasal verbs are especially frequent in conversation and fiction. The most common verbs express physical activities (e.g. *come on*, *get up*, *pick up*).
  - A few phrasal verbs are especially common in academic prose (e.g. *carry out*).

- ➤ Prepositional verbs consist of a verb + preposition. They can have one or two objects.
  - ➤ Prepositional verbs are common in all registers.
  - ➤ Prepositional verbs with activity and communication meanings are especially common in conversation (e.g. *look at, go for*).
  - ➤ Passive voice prepositional verbs are especially common in academic prose (e.g. *be based on, be associated with*). They have causative or existence meanings.
- ➤ Phrasal-prepositional verbs consist of a verb + particle + preposition.
  - ➤ Like phrasal verbs, phrasal-prepositional verbs are especially frequent in conversation and fiction. The most common verbs express physical activity (e.g. *get out of, get on with*).
- ➤ There are also other kinds of multi-word verb constructions that occur with idiomatic meanings (e.g. *bear in mind, make do* and *take time*).

GRAMMAR BITE

E Primary verbs

5.13 *Be*

5.13.1 Main verb *be*

As a main verb, *be*—the **copula**—is the most important **copular verb** in English. It links the subject noun phrase with a subject predicative (**1**) or an obligatory adverbial (**2**):

1 *Radio waves* ***are*** *useful.* (NEWS†)
2 *She* ***was*** *in Olie's room a lot.* (CONV)

The use of copula *be* is discussed further in 5.17 below.

5.13.2 Auxiliary verb *be*

As an auxiliary verb, *be* has two distinct grammatical functions:

- progressive aspect (*be* + *ing*-participle):

  The last light ***was*** *fading by the time he entered the town.* (FICT)

- passive voice (*be* + *ed*-participle):

  This system of intergovernmental transfers ***is*** *called fiscal federalism.* (ACAD)

These two auxiliary uses of *be* can occur together in the same clause (the progressive passive; see 6.8):

> *A mutual investment fund for Eastern Europe* ***is being*** *launched today with the backing of Continental Grain.* (NEWS†)

Progressive aspect and passive voice verbs are discussed further in 6.3, 6.5 and 6.6–8.

5.14 *Have*

5.14.1 Main verb *have*

Because *have* is a primary verb, we have not covered its use under our earlier discussion of lexical verbs. However, as a transitive main verb, *have* is as common as the most common lexical verbs in English. *Have* is most common in conversation and least common in academic prose. Within academic prose, though, *have* is more common than any lexical verb.

Similar to *get*, the main verb *have* can be used with many different meanings. For example:

- showing physical possession:

  One in three of these families ***has*** *two cars.* (NEWS)

- telling family connections:

  Her story was this: she ***had*** *a husband and child.* (FICT)

- describing eating or drinking:

  The kids ***had*** *'superhero sundaes' which turned out to be merely ice cream.* (NEWS†)

- showing where something exists (similar to an **existential there** construction):

  But it really would be nice to ***have*** *a young person about the house again.* (FICT)

  <compare existential *there*: *It would be nice if* ***there was*** *a young person about the house.*>

- linking a person to an abstract quality:

  I hope she ***has*** *fun.* (CONV)

  Her visitor ***had*** *a strong pungent odor of a winter's day.* (FICT)

- linking an inanimate subject to an abstract quality:

  Stylistics can ***have*** *other goals than this.* (ACAD†)

  In these extensions soil science will always ***have*** *a major role.* (ACAD†)

- showing that someone causes something to be done:

  Maybe you should ***have*** *it dyed black as well.* (CONV)

In addition, the verb *have* occurs as part of the semi-modal *have to* (meaning *must*):

I'll ***have to*** *blank it out.* (CONV)

This semi-modal is discussed in 6.9 and 6.10.2.

Finally, *have* occurs in a number of idiomatic multi-word phrases, such as *have a look*:

I'll ***have a look***. (CONV)

5.14.2 Auxiliary verb *have*

As an auxiliary verb, *have* is the marker of perfect aspect. Past tense *had* marks past perfect, and present *has/have* marks present perfect:

> *Twenty years before, Charlie* **had** *passed a whole day from rising to retiring without a drink.* (FICT)
>
> *No one* **has** *ever seen anything like that before.* (NEWS)

Perfect aspect verbs are discussed in 6.3–4.

5.15 *Do*

5.15.1 Main verb *do*

As a main verb in transitive constructions, *do* has an activity meaning. It can take a direct object:

> *In that moment Franklin Field* **did** *a wonderful thing.* (FICT)

or an indirect object + direct object:

> *Will you* **do** *me a favor?* (CONV)

However, *do* more commonly combines with a noun phrase to form relatively fixed, idiomatic expressions such as *do the job*, *do the dishes*, *do time* (meaning *'go to prison'*), *do some work*, *do the wash*, *do your hair*. For example:

> *It* **does the job**. *It's not a bad little thing.* (CONV)
>
> *Well we'd better* **do some work** *you know.* (CONV)
>
> *I'm used to it. I* **do the dishes** *every day.* (CONV)

In these expressions, *do* has little lexical content. It refers to the performance of an activity that is relevant to the object noun phrase, but it does not specify that activity.

A Main verb *do* as a transitive pro-verb

Do also commonly functions as a **pro-verb**, substituting for a lexical verb. Pro-verb *do* is especially common in conversation. It often combines with *it*, *this/that*, or *so*, to form a transitive pro-verb construction:

> *I didn't* **do it**. (CONV)
>
> *Well that's why he* **did it**. (CONV)
>
> *That really hurts my ears when you* **do that**. (CONV)
>
> *The Englishman, half asleep, had broken Lazzaro's right arm and knocked him unconscious. The Englishman who had* **done this** *was helping to carry Lazzaro in now.* (FICT)
>
> <*done this* = broken his right arm and knocked him unconscious>
>
> *'The Chancellor has had to face very difficult economic circumstances both abroad, which affects us, and at home,' he said. 'He has* **done so** *with great courage.'* (NEWS†)
>
> <*done so* = faced very difficult economic circumstances>

Notice that expressions like *do this* and *do so* can substitute for a large number of words.

B Main verb *do* as an intransitive pro-verb

In British English conversation after an auxiliary verb, *do* as an intransitive pro-verb provides an alternative to **ellipsis**:

A: *No, no signs of him resigning.*
B: *Well they kicked him out.*
A: *They should have* ***done****, but they won't.* (CONV)
<*done* = kicked him out>

However, it is more common for speakers to use ellipsis rather than *do* (i.e. *they should have* rather than *they should have done*).

5.15.2 Auxiliary verb *do*

A *Do*-support in negatives and interrogatives

Do functions as an auxiliary verb when lexical main verbs are made negative or used in interrogatives. For example:

negative: *He* ***doesn't*** *smoke or drink.* (NEWS)
yes/no interrogative: ***Do*** *you like scallops?* (FICT)
wh-interrogative: *So what* ***did*** *you bring for us this time?* (CONV)

This use of *do* is known as ***do*-support**, because *do* is added merely to support the construction of the negative or **interrogative**. The *do* does not contribute any independent meaning. In these constructions, present or past tense is marked on the verb *do*, not on the main verb. Thus compare:

negative clause	positive clause
I ***didn't*** *realize it was from smoking.* (CONV)	*I* ***realized*** *it was from smoking.*

interrogative clause	declarative
Did *you see Andy today?* (CONV)	*You* ***saw*** *Andy today.*

Negatives are discussed further in 8.8 and interrogatives in 8.11. *Do* is here termed a 'dummy **operator**' (see 8.7), since it takes the role of an auxiliary verb where there is no auxiliary verb in the corresponding positive and declarative clause.

B Emphatic *do*

Emphatic *do* occurs as an auxiliary verb in a clause that is not negated and is not a question. It is used to emphasize that the meaning of the main verb (or the rest of the clause) is positive, in contrast with what one might expect. In speech, emphatic *do* is usually stressed. It most commonly occurs in conversation and fiction.

1 *I* ***did have*** *a protractor, but it broke.* (CONV)
2 *I really* ***did go*** *to see him.* (FICT)
3 *But in the final hour he* ***did deliver*** *the goods.* (NEWS)
4 *Gascoigne, though,* ***does have*** *a problem – his Lazio team is not a good side.* (NEWS)

Emphatic *do* cannot be combined with another auxiliary. For example, it is ungrammatical to say **It does might help.*

Emphatic *do* usually marks a state of affairs that contrasts with an expected state of affairs. The contrast is sometimes explicitly marked by connectives such as *but, however, nevertheless, though*, and *although*, as in **3** and **4** above and the following:

> *Nevertheless, great changes* ***do occur*** *and have been well documented.* (ACAD)

A special use of emphatic *do* is in commands (or suggestions/invitations that use the **imperative** form). Although this use sounds conversational, it occurs more commonly in fictional dialog than in actual conversation:

> *Oh* ***do shut up!*** (CONV)
>
> ***Do come*** *and see me some time.* (FICT)
>
> ***Do get on with*** *your work, Beth.* (FICT)
>
> *I* ***do beg*** *you to consider seriously the points I've put to you.* (FICT)

Normally the copula *be* behaves like an auxiliary, and therefore does not take emphatic *do* in declarative clauses: **They do be* ... With imperative clauses, however, *do + be* is possible:

> *'**Do be** sensible, Charles,' whispered Fiona.* (FICT)

C Auxiliary *do* as a pro-verb

Like main verb *do*, auxiliary *do* can act as a pro-verb, standing in for the whole verb phrase + complement. It is used in both positive and negative clauses:

> *A: He doesn't even know you.*
> *B: He* ***does!*** (CONV) <*does = does know me*>
>
> *I think his mom wants him to come back but his dad* ***doesn't.*** (CONV)
> <*doesn't = doesn't want him to come back*>

In these examples, *do* can be considered a stranded **operator** (8.7). That is, *do*, as the empty auxiliary, is left 'stranded' without the main verb which normally follows an auxiliary. The rest of the clause, as with other auxiliaries, is missing through ellipsis.

D Auxiliary *do* in question tags

Do functions as an auxiliary in **question tags**:

> *But Fanny looked after you,* ***didn't*** *she?* (FICT)
>
> *This delay solves nothing,* ***does*** *it?* (FICT)

This construction is obviously related to *do*-support (as in A above): it occurs where the preceding main verb (underlined above) has no auxiliary.

Review

Major points of GRAMMAR BITE E: Primary verbs

- The three primary verbs—*be, have*, and *do*—can serve as both main verbs and auxiliary verbs. They differ, however, in their specific main and auxiliary functions.
- *Be*:
  - As copula (a main verb), *be* is the most common copular verb in English.
  - As an auxiliary verb, *be* marks progressive aspect and passive voice.
- *Have*:
  - As a main verb, *have* is one of the most common lexical verbs in English.
  - It has a particularly wide range of meanings.
  - As an auxiliary, *have* marks perfect aspect.

- *Do*:
  - As a main verb, *do* is a general transitive verb of action (e.g. *do some work*).
  - It often combines with a noun phrase to form idiomatic expressions (e.g. *do the dishes*).
  - As a main verb, *do* can also function as a transitive pro-verb (*do it, do that*) or an intransitive pro-verb (e.g. *I must have done*.)
  - As an auxiliary verb, *do* is used in the *do*-support construction for forming negation and questions (e.g. *Didn't you know?*).
  - Auxiliary *do* is also used for emphatic meaning (e.g. *Oh do shut up!*).

GRAMMAR BITE

F Copular verbs

5.16 The copula *be*, and other copular verbs

Copular verbs are used to associate an attribute with the subject of the clause. The attribute is usually expressed by the subject predicative following the verb. For example, in the clause:

*You'**re** very stupid*. (CONV)

you is the subject, and the phrase *very stupid* is the subject predicative that specifies the attribute that is associated with the subject. The copula *be* (contracted as *'re*) links this attribute to the subject.

Many copular verbs are also used to locate the subject of the clause in time or space. Times and places are expressed by an obligatory adverbial of position, duration, or direction that occurs after the copula. For example:

*I **was** in the kitchen*. (CONV)

Several verbs—like *go*, *grow*, and *come*—can function as either a copular verb or a transitive/intransitive verb, depending on the context:

- copular verb:

  *It makes your teeth and your bones **grow** strong and healthy*. (CONV)

  *It's beginning to **go** bad for you*. (FICT)

  *Your prophecy of last night has **come** true*. (FICT)

- transitive verb:

  *So you said she started to **grow** sesame herbs*. (CONV)

- intransitive verb:

  *It was when Wharton Horricker and I **went** to Mexico*. (FICT)

  *He **came** from the far north*. (FICT†)

There are many verbs that can function as copular verbs. They fall into two main categories: **current copular** verbs and **result copular** verbs.

A Current copular verbs

Current copular verbs have two subclasses. The first subclass identifies attributes that are in a continuing state of existence. This includes: *be*, *seem*, *appear*, *keep*, *remain*, *stay*. The other subclass reports sensory perceptions. This includes: *look*, *feel*, *sound*, *smell*, *taste*.

- state-of-existence:

  *We **are** all human.* (FICT)

  *I may have **appeared** a little short with my daughter that morning.* (FICT)

  *David Elsworth **seemed** quite satisfied with the performance of Barnbrook.* (NEWS)

- sensory perception:

  *I really do **look** awful.* (CONV)

  *Ooh that **feels** good.* (CONV)

  *They just **sound** really bad when they're recorded on.* (CONV)

B Result copular verbs

Result copular verbs identify an attribute that is the result of a process of change:

*She'll **end up** pregnant.* (CONV)

*His breathing **became** less frantic.* (FICT)

*My heart **grew** sick and I couldn't eat.* (FICT)

Other result copular verbs include: *become*, *get*, *go*, *grow*, *prove*, *come*, *turn*, *turn out*, *end up*, *wind up*.

5.17 Functions of copular verbs

Copular verbs differ in their meanings and in the complements that they take. Overall, most copular verbs occur with an adjective phrase as the subject predicative, but some verbs are also strongly associated with other structures, such as a noun phrase or complement clause. Some verbs are limited to one type of complement, while others occur with many. In the following subsections, we review the associations between the most common copular verbs and their complements, and discuss how these associations reflect the differences in meaning and function of the verbs.

5.17.1 Current copular verbs: state of existence

A *Be*

The copula *be* is by far the most common verb in English. Surprisingly, the copula *be* differs from most lexical verbs because it is much more frequent in academic prose than in conversation, newspapers, or fiction. *Be* also occurs with a wide range of complements.

Unlike most copular verbs, *be* occurs most commonly with a noun phrase as subject predicative. In these structures, the noun phrase following *be* has two common functions: to characterize the subject noun phrase in some way, or to identify the subject noun phrase:

- characterizing:

  *Oh, my dad **was** a great guy, too.* (CONV)

  *Tomorrow could **be** a sunny day.* (CONV†)

- identifying:

  *That'**s** our back yard.* (CONV)

  *The kernel **is** the part of the plant of greatest value.* (ACAD†)

Adjective phrases are also very common as subject predicatives of *be*. The most common of these predicative adjectives express **stance**. In conversation, these are mostly general evaluative terms, such as *right*, *good*, *sure*, *nice*, and *funny*. In most cases, these adjectives occur without complements after them:

> *That **wasn't** very nice.* (CONV)
>
> *It **was** funny though.* (CONV)

In contrast, academic prose uses a larger range of predicative adjectives that express more specific evaluations, such as *important*, *possible*, *necessary*, *difficult*, and *useful*. In most cases, these adjectives occur with a complement clause or prepositional phrase. The predicative adjective expresses an evaluation that applies to the following clause or phrase:

> *It **is** also important to gain the cooperation of workshop participants.* (ACAD†)
>
> *It **is** possible to have more than one major hypothesis.* (ACAD†)

The common predicative adjectives occurring with *be* are described fully in 7.8.

Prepositional phrases are much less common as complements of *be*. They are used for two functions:

- as a subject predicative describing a characteristic of the subject:

  *Umuofia **was** in a festival mood.* (FICT)

  *The resistive voltage drop **is** in phase with the current.* (ACAD)

- as an adverbial expressing position or direction:

  *I wish you **were** at the shack with me last night.* (CONV)

  *The houses **are** in a conservation area.* (NEWS)

Finally, *be* sometimes occurs with a complement clause as subject predicative:

> *The capital **is** to be provided by the French government.* (NEWS†)
>
> *But the danger **was** that the pound would fall further than planned.* (NEWS)

B Other state-of-existence copular verbs

Table 5.1 summarizes the patterns of use for five other state-of-existence copular verbs. These verbs are all relatively common but far less common than *be*. *Seem* and *appear* have a variety of functions, while *remain*, *keep*, and *stay* all mark the continuation of a state.

Table 5.1 State-of-existence copular verbs (in addition to *be*)

verb	frequency	most common complements	examples
seem	most common copular verb other than *be*	*to*-complement clause	*This **seemed** to work.* (FICT)

Table 5.1 continued

verb	frequency	most common complements	examples
		adjectives, especially conveying attitudes, surprise and possibility in fiction	*Sometimes it **seemed** impossible that he should fail.* (FICT)
			*He **seemed** surprised by that.* (FICT)
		adjectives of likelihood in academic prose, with extraposed *that*-clauses	*It **seems** likely that practical work has helped to develop these skills in some students.* (ACAD)
			*It **seems** clear that more meals will be cooked over charcoal in the future.* (ACAD†)
		noun phrase as subject predicative, especially with perceptions that are not necessarily accurate	*Fijisankei, itself privately owned and independent, **seems** the ideal partner.* (NEWS†)
		prepositional phrase expressing an attribute of the subject	*Now he **seemed** in control.* (FICT)
			*Most of the time he **seems** like such a normal guy.* (FICT)
appear	less common than *seem*	*to*-complement clause	*The inheritance of leaf angle **appears** to be polygenic.* (ACAD)
		adjectives of likelihood in academic prose and news	*There was never a moment when it **appeared** likely that we could get them.* (NEWS)
			*The courts have **appeared** willing to go beyond the rules of neutral justice.* (ACAD)
remain	most common of the three continuation verbs; particularly common in academic prose and news	adjectives, often reporting absence of change	*Next Friday's date for the final **remains** unchanged.* (NEWS)
		typical adjectives: *unchanged, constant, intact, motionless, immobile, low, high, open, closed, controversial, uncertain, unknown, obscure*	*The opening of the oviduct **remains** intact.* (ACAD)

Table 5.1 continued

verb	frequency	most common complements	examples
keep	less common than *remain*	typical adjectives: *alive, awake, quiet, silent, secret, busy, fit, close, warm*	*It's funny how he manages to **keep** awake.* (CONV)
		subject of *keep* is usually an animate being	*He was just trying to **keep** warm.* (FICT)
stay	least common of the three continuation verbs	typical adjectives: *awake, dry, sober, alive, clear, loyal, healthy*	*I mean, if you **stay** sober.* (CONV)
		subject of *stay* is usually human	*Meanwhile, Millie's mistress **stayed** loyal to her husband's ambitions.* (FICT)

5.17.2 Current copular verbs: sensory perceptions

The patterns of use for sensory copular verbs are summarized in Table 5.2.

Sensory copular verbs—*look, feel, sound, smell, taste*—occur with adjectival complements to report positive or negative evaluations. For example:

*Do I **look** nice?* (CONV)

*The food **smelled** good to her.* (FICT)

Table 5.2 Sensory copular verbs

verb	frequency	most common functions and complements	examples
look	very common in fiction; relatively common in conversation	often evaluates physical appearance	*Oh he does **look** sad, doesn't he?* (CONV)
		common adjectives: *awful, different, happy, lovely, pale, puzzled, sad, small, surprised, terrible, tired, well, young*	*Quite frankly she **looked** terrible.* (FICT) *You **look** lovely.* (FICT)
feel	very common in fiction; moderately common in news and conversation	reports an assessment of physical or mental state of being	*It'll make you **feel** better.* (NEWS) *My hands **feel** cold.* (FICT)
		common adjectives: *ashamed, bad, better, cold, good, guilty, sick, sure, tired, uncomfortable, uneasy*	*I always **feel** guilty passing Mike's house.* (CONV)
sound	most common in fiction and conversation	literal use: evaluations of sound perceptions	*She doesn't **sound** angry anymore.* (FICT)
		common adjectives: *good, nice, silly, stupid, interesting, awful, angry, sad, strange*	*He looked and **sounded** awful.* (FICT)
		additional use: reactions to ideas/suggestions	*Oh how nice. That **sounds** good to me.* (CONV)

Table 5.2 **continued**

verb	frequency	most common functions and complements	examples
			*I know it **sounds** stupid, but I wanted to go.* (CONV)
smell	generally rare	reports evaluations of smell perceptions common adjectives: *awful, bad, funny, musty, odd, rotten, terrible, delicious, fresh, good, lovely, nice*	*It **smells** funny in here.* (CONV)
taste	rare; occasional occurrences in conversation and fiction	reports evaluations of taste perceptions common adjectives: *awful, horrible, nice, wonderful*	*They just **taste** awful.* (CONV)

Here, the copular verb identifies the sense (e.g. sight, hearing), while the predicative adjective reports the evaluation. The general evaluating adjectives *nice*, *good*, and *bad* occur commonly as subject predicative with all five sensory copular verbs.

5.17.3 Result copular verbs

The verbs *become*, *get*, *go*, *grow*, *prove*, *come*, *turn*, *turn out*, *end up*, and *wind up* are all used to describe a process of change. However, despite this general similarity, these verbs differ greatly in their specific meanings, collocational preferences, and register distributions.

A *Become*

The result copular verb *become* is especially common in academic prose and fiction. It is used to describe the process involved in changing from one state to another. In academic prose, it often refers to an impersonal process of moving from a state of ignorance or disbelief to one of knowledge or belief (i.e. without mentioning individual people who experience the change). The adjectives *clear* and *apparent* are most common with this function, but there are a number of other adjectives that occur with *become*, including *difficult*, *evident*, *important*, *possible*.

> *In the joint-stock company, the social character of production has **become** apparent.* (ACAD)
>
> *It soon **becomes** clear that there is much more to comprehension than vocabulary.* (ACAD†)
>
> *Performance and functionality only **become** important with Release 3.* (ACAD†)

In fiction, *become* usually refers to a specific person. It describes a change in that person's state of awareness or state of being:

> *Raymond soon **became** aware that his strategy and hard work was paying dividends.* (FICT)

It all **became** *clear to me when I reached street level.* (FICT)

I **became** *silent, overwhelmed suddenly by the great gulf between us.* (FICT†)

B *Get*

The result copular verb *get* is usually used to describe a person changing to a new state. *Get* is very common, especially in conversation and fiction, and it has many uses, describing both physical and mental changes. The adjectives *ready* and *worse* are the most common subject predicatives with *get*, but a number of other adjectives recur: *angry, bigger, better, bored, cold, dressed (up), drunk, lost, mad, mixed (up), old, older, pissed (off), sick, tired, upset, wet*. Many of these mark some affective or attitudinal stance. For example:

Well he's only gonna **get** *worse.* (CONV)

And if she doesn't win, she either **gets** *upset and cries or* **gets** *angry.* (CONV)

And people **get** *pissed off, don't they?* (CONV) <note: *pissed off* is slang and may be offensive to some people>

C *Go*

The copular verb *go* is usually used to describe a change towards an undesirable state, especially in conversation and fiction. *Go* describes changes experienced by humans and other natural processes. The adjectives *crazy, mad,* and *wrong* are the most common complements of *go*, but several other adjectives recur: *bad, cold, deaf, funny, limp, quiet, red, wild.*

You can't **go** *wrong with that, can you?* (CONV)

Yeah I know. I would **go** *mad.* (CONV)

Mama will **go** *crazy.* (FICT)

D Less common result copular verbs

Although *become, get,* and *go* are the most common result copular verbs, several others deserve mention. These verbs and their functions are summarized in Table 5.3.

Review

Major points of GRAMMAR BITE E: Copular verbs

- Copular verbs are used to express a relationship between the subject of the clause and an attribute.
- Copular verbs usually take an obligatory subject predicative.
- Some copular verbs can also occur with an obligatory adverbial.
- Many different verbs can function as copulas. These verbs can be grouped into two major categories: current copular verbs and result copular verbs.
  - Current copular verbs express states of existence or sensory perceptions (e.g. *be, feel*).
  - Result copular verbs express the result of a process of change (e.g. *become, turn out*).
- The copular verbs differ in their meanings and in the complements that they can take.
- There are highly systematic patterns of use associated with copular verbs + complements.

Table 5.3 Less common result copular verbs

verb	frequency	most common functions and complements	examples
come	generally rare, occurs mainly in fiction and news	usually describes a change to a better condition recurring adjectives: *alive, awake, clean, loose, short, true, unstuck*	*It literally is a dream **come** true.* (NEWS†) *Slowly his face **came** alive and he grinned.* (FICT)
grow	primarily used in fiction	describes gradual change often makes an implicit comparison with an earlier state through use of comparative adjective as complement recurring adjectives: *angry, big, bright, cold, dark, hot, large, old, pale, tall, tired, warm, weak, bigger, darker, larger, louder, older, shorter, smaller, stronger, warmer, weaker, worse*	*We should **grow** old here together.* (FICT) *The wind dropped and it suddenly **grew** cold.* (FICT) *The girl's deep black eyes **grew** darker.* (FICT) *She continued to lose weight and **grow** weaker.* (FICT†)
prove	used primarily in academic prose and news	reports an assessment recurring adjectives: *costly, decisive, difficult, fatal, necessary, popular, possible, successful, suitable, useful, wrong*	*Looking for tourist highlights in Montepulciano can **prove** difficult.* (NEWS) *He was confident the units would **prove** popular with travellers.* (NEWS) *Yet it has **proved** necessary to attempt this task.* (ACAD†)
turn	occasionally used in fiction; rare in other registers	*turn* + adjective describes change in appearance; typically refers to color changes recurring adjectives: *black, brown, (bright) red, white, pale*	*The canals in the suburbs appear to **turn** black.* (FICT) *She had **turned** pale and her voice shook.* (FICT)
turn out	generally rare	emphasizes the end-point of a process with simple positive or negative evaluation recurring adjectives: *good, nasty, nice, (all) right, wrong*	*A lot of times they **turned out** wrong.* (FICT) *The marriage will **turn out** all right.* (FICT)
end up and *wind up*	generally rare	describe an unintended negative event or state	*And this argument went on. Danny **ended up** in tears and I **ended up** really angry.* (CONV) *He says Marilyn **ended up** pregnant after her affair with President Kennedy.* (NEWS) *And the young bucks who tore the place apart invariably **wound up** dead.* (FICT†)

6

Variation in the verb phrase: tense, aspect, voice, and modal use

GRAMMAR BITES in this chapter

A Tense

- ➤ Description of past and present tenses
- ➤ Functions and meanings of past and present tenses
- ➤ The expression of future time
- ➤ Frequency of tense use for particular verbs

B Aspect

- ➤ Description of perfect and progressive aspect
- ➤ Combinations of aspects and tenses
- ➤ Functions and meanings of perfect and progressive aspect
- ➤ Most common verbs with each aspect
- ➤ Use of time adverbials and dependent clauses with past perfect

C Voice

- ➤ Forms of passive voice constructions
- ➤ Functions and frequencies of passive voice across registers
- ➤ Verbs that rarely occur in passive voice
- ➤ Voice and aspect combinations

D Modals and semi-modals

- ➤ Description of modals and semi-modals
- ➤ Functions and meanings of modals and semi-modals
- ➤ Use of modals and semi-modals across registers
- ➤ Combinations of modals, semi-modals, aspect, and voice

6.1 Introduction

There are six major kinds of variation in the structure of verb phrases. These are illustrated below with the verb *see*:

- **tense**:
  - present (*sees*)
  - past (*saw*)
- **aspect**:
  - unmarked (also called **simple aspect**) (*sees*)
  - perfect (*has seen*)
  - progressive (*is seeing*)
  - perfect progressive (*has been seeing*)
- **voice**:
  - active (*sees*)
  - passive (*is seen*)
- **modality**:
  - unmarked (*sees*)
  - with modal verb (*will/can/might see*)
- **negation**:
  - positive (*sees*)
  - negative (*doesn't see*)
- **finite clause type** (also called 'mood'):
  - declarative (*you saw*)
  - interrogative (*did you see?*)
  - imperative/subjunctive (*see*)

In this chapter we concentrate on the first four kinds of variation in the verb phrase: tense, aspect, voice, and modality. (Negation and finite clause types are described in 8.8, 8.9–13 and 8.17.) These structures can be combined in numerous ways, as you will see throughout the chapter. For example, the verb phrase *will be eating* has a modal + progressive aspect, and *have been eaten* has perfect aspect + passive voice. The parts of the verb phrase—and therefore the auxiliary verbs associated with each part—follow a consistent order (optional elements are in parentheses):

	(modal)	(perfect) (form of *have*)	(progressive) (form of *be*)	(passive) (form of *be*)	main verb
example:	*will*	*have*	*been*	*being*	*eaten*

Verb phrases with all of these structures are extremely rare, but are possible.

The variations in the verb phrase are related to many differences in meanings. However, it is not possible to figure out the meaning simply by looking at the form. Rather, a single form can be used to express several meanings, and the same meaning can be expressed by more than one form.

The complex relationship between form and meaning is easy to see by contrasting verb tense and time meaning. People commonly assume that present tense verbs refer to the present time. However this is not always true. In fact, present tense verbs are sometimes used to refer to a time in the past. Compare:

- present (habitual) time with present tense:

> *He **goes** there a lot.* (CONV)

- past time with present tense (the **historic present**):

> *I wanted just a small box. He wasn't satisfied with it – He **goes** and **makes** a big one as well.* (CONV)

On the other hand, in terms of time, different forms can be used to express the same meaning. For example, in **1** below, future time is expressed with a present tense verb, while in **2**, future time is expressed with the modal *will* + infinitive:

- future time with present tense:

> **1** *Goalkeeper Stephen Pears **goes** into hospital tomorrow for an operation on a cheekbone injury.* (NEWS†)

- future time with modal *will*:

> **2** *This part of the project **will go** ahead extremely rapidly.* (NEWS)

The following Grammar Bites introduce the range of verb constructions used in the English verb phrase, and the meanings that each of them expresses.

GRAMMAR BITE

A Tense

6.2 Tense and time distinctions: simple present and past tense

In English, **finite verb phrases** can be marked for only two tenses: present and past. Verb phrases that are marked for **tense** are called tensed verb phrases. (See 5.5 for a discussion of verb morphology for tense with regular and irregular verbs.)

Other main verb phrases may include a modal verb. However, these two options cannot occur together: a finite verb phrase either has a modal or is marked for tense, but not both. **Non-finite phrases**, as in *to*-clauses and *ing*-clauses, do not include either tensed or modal verbs (see Fig. 6.1).

Figure 6.1 **Basic choices in the verb phrase (apart from aspect and voice)**

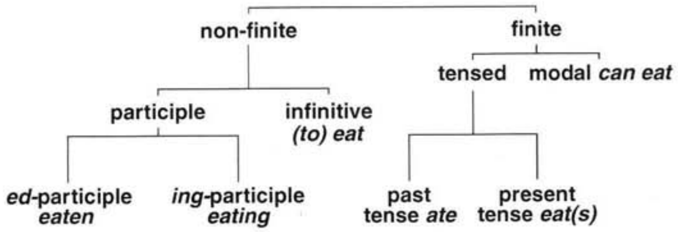

A Simple present tense and present time

Simple present tense often refers to present time, as in these examples:

1 *I **want** a packet of crisps.* (CONV)
2 *The pigment **occurs** in the epidermal cells.* (ACAD)
3 *She's vegetarian but she **eats** chicken.* (CONV)
4 *He **dances** and **moves** about a lot.* (NEWS)
5 *Here **comes** your mother.* (CONV)
6 *Oh, my goodness. There he **goes**. Look at him walk.* (CONV) <talking about a toddler>

There are three major meanings for simple present tense when it refers to present time:

- It can describe a state that exists at the present time. You can see this meaning in **1** and **2**. The state may be temporary, as in **1**, or it may last for a longer time, as in **2**.
- It can refer to a habitual action, as in **3** and **4**. In these examples, simple present tense is used to refer to an activity that is repeated on occasion, rather than to a state of being.
- It can describe an action that is happening at the present time, as in **5** and **6**.

In addition, simple present tense can sometimes be used to refer to past or future time. These special meanings are described in 6.2.1 below.

B Simple past tense and past time

Simple past tense is most often used to refer to past time. In fictional narrative and description, the use of simple past tense is common for describing imagined past states and events:

> *The clock on the tower of St Michael-in-the-Moor chimed nine as he **came** onto the road. The milkman's van **was** on the green; Mrs Southworth from the Hall **was** at the pillar box, posting a letter. He **walked** on away from the green and the houses up the bit of Jackley Road from which Tace Way **turned** off.* (FICT)

In addition, simple past tense is sometimes used for a situation at the present time. In this case, the past tense gives information about **stance**. It is usually used with verbs like *think*, *wonder*, and *want*. The clause refers to a current state of mind, but the past tense conveys tentativeness and shows that the speaker is being polite:

> ***Did** you want a cup of tea?* (CONV)
>
> *I just **wanted** to thank you guys for allowing me to tape-record you.* (CONV†)

Furthermore, in some types of dependent clauses, the simple past tense is used as the subjunctive, to show **hypothetical** or 'unreal' conditions (see 11.10.1):

> *And if you **were** in the mood we could at least go.* (CONV†)
>
> *Timothy, it's time you **got married**.* (FICT)

6.2.1 Simple present tense used for past or future time

A Simple present tense used for past time

In special cases, simple present tense is used to refer to past events or future events. When it refers to past time, it is called the historic present tense. This use is most common in conversation:

1 *No. He* ***says****, are you going home tonight? He thought I was going home to my parents.* (CONV)

2 *And the daughter* ***comes*** *home from school one day and* ***says****, mum I want to be like you. And the mum* ***goes****, okay dear.* (CONV†) <note: *goes* = says>

3 *All right. There****'s*** *a fortune teller and the man* ***goes*** *to the fortune teller and the fortune teller* ***goes*** *<...> I can tell you the future.* (CONV†)

As these examples illustrate, the historic present is particularly common with verbs expressing directional movement (*come* and *go*) and with verbs that describe speaking (e.g. *say*, *go*). The verb *go* is especially interesting, because it is used to express both types of meaning. This pattern is usually found in personal stories (as in **1**) or in jokes (which are often told entirely in the historic present, as in **2** and **3**).

B Present tense used for future time

When the present tense is used to refer to future time, some other grammatical feature usually occurs in the clause:

- a time adverbial that refers to the future (see **1** below)
- an adverbial clause of time or condition that has future time reference (see **1** and **2** below):

1 *A new era* ***begins*** *for the bomb-damaged Ulster landmark [when the curtain* ***goes up*** *on Jack and the Beanstalk [in December]].* (NEWS†)

2 *[If I* ***refuse*** *to do what she says this time,] who knows where my defiance will end?* (FICT)

In **1**, the time adverbial *when the curtain goes up ... in December* pinpoints the specific future time when the new era *begins*. In addition, the time adverbial *in December* tells the specific time reference for the verb *goes up*. In **2**, the use of a present tense verb *refuse* in an *if*-clause indicates actions that might occur in future time; the modal verb *will* later in this sentence further reinforces the future time reference here.

6.2.2 Tense in reported speech

Simple past tense has a special use in reported speech or thought. The original speech or thoughts may have been in present tense, but past tense is usually used for the reports:

1 *Then the next day he* ***said*** *he no longer* ***loved*** *me.* (CONV) <direct speech: 'I no longer love you.'>

2 *And I* ***thought*** *I* ***was*** *going to go home early.* (CONV) <direct thought: 'I am going to go home early.'>

3 *Abbey* ***said*** *there* ***was*** *a meeting planned to discuss the contract this week.* (NEWS) <direct speech: 'There is a meeting...'>

The tense of the verb in the indirect quote agrees with the past tense of the reporting verb (e.g. *said—loved* in **1**). If a speaker is reporting the speech of someone else, there is also a corresponding shift in pronouns, for example from *I* to *he* in **1**. Notice that the circumstances may still be continuing even though past tense is used. For example, in **3** the meeting may still be planned.

Although this use of past tense in reported speech is common, reported speech also occurs with other tenses. Consider these examples:

She ***said*** *she* ***feels*** *good now.* (CONV†)

Graham ***said*** *the owls' messy habit* ***makes*** *them the ideal bird for the study.* (NEWS)

Here, the reporting verb (*said*) is in the past tense, but the verb in the indirect quote remains in the present tense, emphasizing that the circumstances expressed by *feels* and *makes* are still continuing.

A further variation in tense in reported speech occasionally occurs in conversation, where present tense is used for the reporting verb and past tense for the indirect quote:

He says he ***bought*** *another Amiga.* (CONV)

6.2.3 Future time

There is no way to mark future tense on verbs in English. That is, verbs cannot be inflected for future tense in the same way that they can be inflected for present and past tense. Instead, future time is usually marked in the verb phrase with a **modal** (such as *will or shall)* or **semi-modal** (such as *be going to*; see 6.11):

Even more precise coordination ***will*** *be necessary.* (FICT)

We ***shall*** *give an account of the Einstein-Podolski-Rosen paradox.* (ACAD†)

*And he****'s going to*** *see it.* (CONV)

The semi-modal *be going to* can be used for present or past tense. When the past tense is used (*was going to*), this semi-modal refers to a projected future time seen from a point in the past:

1 *It was in the summer holidays and Matthew* ***was going to*** *start school.* (CONV)

As you can see in **2**, the reference can be to a situation that never actually occurred:

2 *I* ***was going to*** *be called Kate if I was a girl.* (CONV)

6.2.4 Tense use across registers

From a grammatical point of view, tense and modals belong to a single system: all finite verb phrases either have tense or a modal, but not both. As Figure 6.2 shows, tensed verb phrases are much more common than verb phrases with modals.

When modals are used, they usually express stance: the degree of certainty, or meanings such as obligation, necessity or giving or asking permission (see Grammar Bite D below). However, most clauses in English are not marked for stance. Rather, they are marked for time orientation, which requires a tensed verb. (There are other ways of marking stance with tensed verbs, such as using **stance adverbials**; see 11.2, 11.13–16.)

Figure 6.2

Frequency of present/past tense v. modal verbs across registers

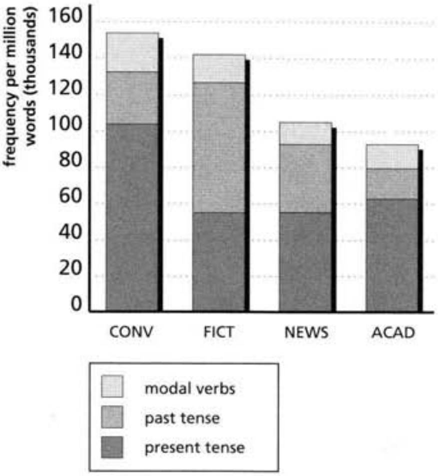

Figure 6.2 also shows that present tense verbs are slightly more common than past tense verbs. Present tense expresses a wider range of meanings than past tense. As we have seen, it can refer to events in the past, to present states, to habitual behaviors, and to future events. Past tense is more restricted in its meanings. It is used mainly for past time. Thus, the frequency of present tense is related to the greater variety of its uses.

However, there are important differences in the preferred tense across registers. Present tense is particularly common in both conversation and academic prose—but for very different reasons. In conversation, present tense is used to refer to the immediate context and current states or events:

> A: *I've done this thing today, I'**ve** to come up with, I'll do this afternoon, I'**m** quite proud of it.*
> B: *What **do** you do at Dudley Allen then?*
> A: *What the school?*
> B: *Yeah. **Do** you –*
> A: *No I'**m**, I'**m** only on the PTA.* <PTA = Parent-Teacher Association>
> B: *You'**re** just on the PTA.*
> A: *That'**s** it.* (CONV)

In this conversation, present tense is used for current states (*I'm quite proud*) as well as habitual actions (*What do you do* . . .).

In academic prose, on the other hand, present tense is used to show that a proposition is true regardless of time. Consider the following:

> *A fault tree analysis **reveals** the logical connections existing between an undesired event in a technical system and component systems which **lead** to it. In the case of safety analyses for process plants, the undesired event usually **is** a fire* <. . .> (ACAD†)

In this example of academic prose, simple present tense is being used to convey general truths. For example, when the author writes *the analysis reveals the logical connections*, this would be true at any time.

In contrast to conversation and academic prose, fiction has a higher frequency of past tense. In fact, many fictional narratives are written entirely in the past tense, with present tense used only for the direct speech of characters. In the following example, past tense verbs are in bold and present tense verbs are underlined:

Hurriedly draining her cup, she ***frowned*** *at Marge, who* ***had*** *hardly touched the coffee that she just* ***had*** *to have before traveling any farther. 'Look, hon, we have to hurry. Mom's real together about serving Thanksgiving dinner on time.' 'All right –' Marge* ***replied****.* (FICT)

6.2.5 Verbs that are often used in present or past tense

Many verbs are used more frequently in either simple past or simple present tense. For example, *bet* and *doubt* are usually used in the present tense, while *remark* and *sigh* are usually used in the past tense.

A Verbs that usually occur in the present tense

- Verbs that occur in the present tense over 80 per cent of the time:
  bet, doubt, know, matter, mean, mind, reckon, suppose, think
- Verbs that occur in the present tense over 70 per cent of the time:
  care, differ, fancy, imply, tend, want

Most of the verbs that usually occur in the present tense describe mental or logical states. They are often used to express emotions or attitudes, especially in conversation. For example:

I ***don't want*** *one.* (CONV)

I ***bet*** *he's starving for real grub.* (NEWS) <note: *grub* is an informal term for 'food'>

These verbs are also used to refer to logical thinking or analysis:

But I ***reckon*** *they have got it just right with the Mondeo.* (NEWS)

Customs ***differ****, but the meaning's the same.* (NEWS)

The sequence ***implies*** *a history of Muav sedimentation and burial.* (ACAD†)

Transplanting ***tends*** *to reduce lodging.* (ACAD)

B Verbs that usually occur in the past tense

- Verbs that occur in the past tense over 80 per cent of the time:
  exclaim, eye, glance, grin, nod, pause, remark, reply, shrug, sigh, smile, whisper
- Verbs that occur in the past tense over 70 per cent of the time:
  bend, bow, lean, light, park, seat, set off, shake, stare, turn away, wave, wrap

The verbs that usually occur in the past tense have very different meanings from the verbs that prefer present tense. Many of these past tense verbs are used to describe human activities: *bend, bow, eye, glance, grin, lean,* etc. A special subset of these verbs are verbs describing speaking: *exclaim, remark, reply, whisper*. All of these verbs are especially common in fiction, but they occur in other registers as well.

- Human activities:

  She just ***shrugged*** *her shoulders.* (CONV)

  Rachel ***glanced*** *at her uncle.* (FICT)

  She ***waved*** *to well-wishers at Sadler's Wells in London.* (NEWS†)

- Communication verbs:

  Well he ***whispered*** *to me last night, you know.* (CONV)

  'A fine thing,' Dr. Saito ***remarked*** *to me.* (FICT)

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE A**: Tense

- ➤ Verbs in English have only two tenses marked on them: present and past.
  - ➤ Verb phrases can either be marked for tense or have a modal verb, but not both.
  - ➤ Verb phrases that are marked for tense are more common than verb phrases with modal verbs.
- ➤ There are several different meanings expressed by present and past tense.
  - ➤ Present tense verbs often refer to present time, either describing a state that exists at the present time or describing a habitual action.
  - ➤ Present tense is also used to show past or future time.
  - ➤ Past tense often refers to past time, but it is sometimes used to mark present time and for hypothetical conditions.
- ➤ Future time is usually marked in English with modals or semi-modals.
- ➤ Many verbs tend to occur with a particular tense.
  - ➤ Verbs describing mental states are commonly in the present tense.
  - ➤ Verbs about activity and communication are commonly in the past tense.

GRAMMAR BITE

B Aspect

6.3 Perfect and progressive aspect

As explained in Grammar Bite A, tense can be used to mark past and present and refer to future time. **Aspect** adds time meanings to those expressed by tense. Aspect answers the question 'Is the event/state described by the verb completed, or is it continuing?'. There are two aspects in English: **perfect** and **progressive** (sometimes known as 'continuous'). Verbs that do not have aspect marked on them are said to have simple aspect.

6.3.1 Meanings of perfect and progressive aspect

The perfect aspect most often describes events or states taking place during a preceding period of time. The progressive aspect describes an event or state of affairs in progress or continuing. Perfect and progressive aspect can be combined with either present or past tense:

- perfect aspect, present tense:

  *We **have written** to Mr. Steven, but he **has ignored** our letters.* (NEWS)

- perfect aspect, past tense:

  *He **had seen** him picking purses.* (FICT)

- progressive aspect, present tense:

  *Jeff **is growing** his beard out.* (CONV)

- progressive aspect, past tense:

  *That's why I **was thinking** I might hang onto the Volvo.* (CONV)

Present perfect verbs often refer to past actions with effects that continue up to the present time. For example, consider the sentence:

*Mr. Hawke **has embarked** on a crusade.* (NEWS†)

The action (embarking on a crusade) began sometime previously, but Mr Hawke continues to be on the crusade at the time this sentence was written.

In contrast, past perfect verbs refer to actions in the past that are completed at or before a given time in the past. The actual time is often specified:

*Two brothers told a court yesterday how they watched their terminally-ill mother 'fade away' after she was given an injection. Widow Lilian Boyes, 70, **had** earlier **pleaded** with doctors to 'finish her off,' Winchester Crown Court heard.* (NEWS)

In this example, the events of the second sentence—the pleading—are completed by the time of the events described in the first sentence. The first sentence describes a past time with the simple past tense, and then the past perfect is used in the second sentence to refer to an even earlier time. You can find more information on past perfect and present perfect in 6.4 below.

The meaning of progressive aspect is less complicated: it is typically used to report situations or activities that are in progress at some point in time (past, present, or in the near future). For more information about the meaning and use of the progressive see 6.5 below.

6.3.2 The perfect progressive

Verb phrases can be marked for both aspects (perfect and progressive) at the same time:

- present perfect progressive:

  *God knows how long I**'ve been doing** it. **Have** I **been talking** out loud?* (FICT)

- past perfect progressive:

  *He **had been keeping** it in a safety deposit box at the Bank of America.* (FICT)

  *For months she **had been waiting** for that particular corner location.* (FICT)

The perfect progressive aspect is rare, occurring usually in the past tense in fiction. It combines the meaning of the perfect and the progressive, referring to a past situation or activity that was in progress for a period of time.

6.3.3 Perfect and progressive aspect across registers and dialects

A Register differences

Figure 6.3 presents the distribution of simple, perfect, and progressive aspects across registers. Perfect progressive aspect is omitted because it is too rare to show up on the chart.

The figure shows that the large majority of verb phrases are not marked for aspect. In fact, almost 90 per cent of all verbs are simple aspect. Perfect aspect is used in all registers, but it is somewhat more common in fiction and news. Progressive aspect is more common in conversation than in the written registers.

It might surprise some readers that simple aspect verbs are much more common than progressive aspect verbs in conversation, since many people believe that progressive verbs are the normal choice in conversation. It is true that progressive verbs are more common in conversation than they are in newspaper language or in academic prose. However, as Figure 6.3 shows, simple aspect verbs are the typical choice even in conversation. Progressive aspect verbs are comparatively rare, reserved for special use to express continuing action or states.

Figure 6.3
Frequency of simple, perfect and progressive aspect across registers

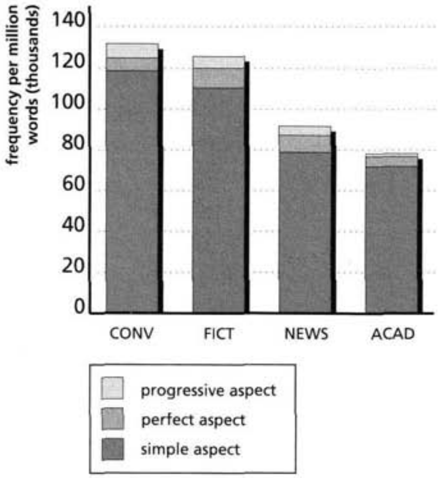

B Dialect differences

Conversation and news clearly reflect the differences between American and British English. You can see from Figure 6.4 that American English conversation uses progressive aspect much more than British English conversation does:

> *Nothing's* ***happening*** *over here.* (AmE CONV)
>
> *Oh yeah, but he's* ***roaming*** *around on the range?* (AmE CONV)
>
> *One time, I saw a seal <...> The seal* ***was begging****.* (AmE CONV)

Figure 6.4
Frequency of perfect and progressive aspect in AmE v. BrE conversation and news

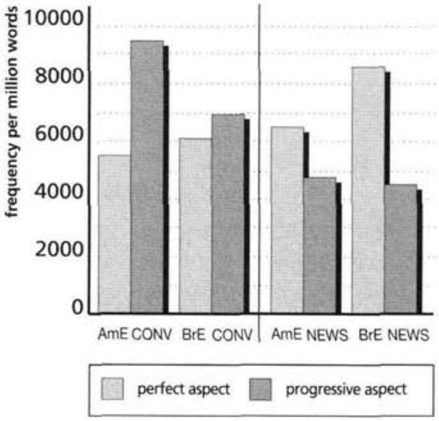

Although British English has similar constructions, they are used much less commonly.

In contrast, British English uses perfect aspect much more than American English does. American English often uses past tense in contexts where British English uses the present perfect. This difference is especially noticeable when the sentence also includes *yet* or *already*:

AmE conversation	BrE conversation
*Hey, **did** you read through this **yet**?*	***Have** you **read** it **yet**?*
*No not **yet I didn't**. I **didn't** get a chance.*	*I **haven't** sold it yet.*
*We **already gave** him a down payment.*	*They**'ve given** me that **already**.*

Strangely, the British English preference for perfect aspect shows up most strongly in news. You can see the contrast in these examples:

> *The ceremony took place in the main State Department lobby next to the honor roll of American diplomats who gave their lives in the line of duty.* (AmE NEWS†)
>
> *She praised the gallantry, determination and sense of duty of the servicemen and women who **had given** their lives for their country.* (BrE NEWS)

6.4 Perfect aspect in use

The present perfect is much more common than past perfect in conversation, news, and academic prose. However, past perfect is somewhat more common in fiction. One of the easiest ways to see the functions of present and past perfect is to consider the verbs that are most common with these aspects.

6.4.1 Verbs that are common in the present perfect

A *Has/have been*

The present perfect *have/has been* is common in all registers. It often has a copular use:

> *Rowlands **has been** critical of Welsh officials.* (NEWS)

Have/has been can also have a meaning similar to *go*:

> *Where **have** you **been**?* (CONV)
> <compare: *Where did you go?*>

B *Has/have got* and *has/have had*

Two other common present perfect verbs are *has/have got* and *has/have had*. *Has/have got* is extremely common in British English conversation. It has a range of meanings similar to the simple present tense *have*:

1 *Jones **has got** the letter.* (BrE CONV)
2 *I **have got a** problem actually.* (BrE CONV)
3 *She**'s got** blond hair.* (BrE CONV)
4 *He**'s got** a bad temper.* (BrE CONV)

Speakers also sometimes use the *ed*-participle of the verb (*got*) but omit the perfect aspect marker (*has/have*). This expression has a meaning like the present perfect *have/has got.* It is equivalent to the present tense of *have* rather than the normal past tense meaning of *get* (that something was acquired). (Note that in formal written English, this form is considered non-standard.)

> *Oh I* ***got*** *loads left.* (BrE CONV)
> <compare: *I have got loads left* NOT *I acquired loads*>
>
> *And then something else I got here is peanut butter pie.* (BrE CONV)
> <compare: *Something else I have got here is peanut butter pie* NOT *Something else I acquired here. . .*>

In American English conversation, the present tense form of *have* is much more common than *has/have got* when speakers want to convey the meaning of possession:

> *This friend of mine* ***has*** *a vault in his house.* (AmE CONV)
>
> *Santa Barbara* ***has*** *Republican tendencies.* (AmE CONV)

In American English there is a meaning difference between *has/have got* and *has/have gotten*: *has/have got* usually refers to current possession, while *has/have gotten* means that something has been acquired or that a change of state has occurred:

> *And we still haven't gotten knobs on the doors.* (AmE CONV)

In British English, the meaning of current possession is frequently expressed by *have got*, as in examples **1–4** above. In contrast, *has/have had* expresses the current relevance of some state that came into being in the past. This expression is especially common in conversation and news:

> *No but I mean he* ***has had*** *a bad start.* (BrE CONV)
>
> *I* ***have had*** *a few years in which to practise cooking.* (BrE NEWS)

C Other verbs that are common in present perfect aspect

The other verbs most commonly used with present perfect aspect are some of the most common verbs overall (e.g. *gone*, *done*, *made*, *seen*, *come*, *said*, *taken*, *become*, *given*, *shown*, *thought*, *called*; see 5.3). Most of these are physical or communication verbs and their consequences may persist over an extended period of time:

> *He****'s gone*** *home.* (CONV) <implying that he is still there>
>
> *Doctors in the region* ***have called*** *for a review of the prescription charge system.* (NEWS†) <implying that it is still expected to be done>

In academic prose, the present perfect is often used with different verbs to state that earlier findings or practices continue to be valid:

> *Experiments* ***have shown*** *that nitrogen deficiency tends to strengthen the lower nodes.* (ACAD†)
>
> *It* ***has become*** *the usual practice to use only maintenance applications.* (ACAD†)

6.4.2 Verbs that are rare with perfect aspect

Some verbs rarely occur with the present perfect. These are mostly verbs that describe mental or logical states:

- mental states:

  *He **needs** it for something.* (CONV)

  *But he **doubted** it.* (FICT)

- logical states:

  *Again, this **represents** a transposition of tendencies.* (ACAD†)

  *Durkheim seeks to delimit what **constitutes** crime.* (ACAD†)

You can see from the last example that academic prose writers often use simple present tense even when reporting the views and writings of scholars in the past. (Durkheim died in 1917.)

Other verbs that are rarely used in the present perfect refer to physical actions (like *glance, kiss, nod, scream, smile*). These verbs usually describe brief actions:

*She **glanced** at him shyly.* (FICT)

*Judge Crawford **kissed** the woman on both cheeks.* (NEWS)

6.4.3 Verbs that are common in the past perfect

Like the simple past tense, past perfect verb phrases are especially common in fiction. They are used especially for reference to an earlier period in the middle of a past tense narrative:

*He **had**n't even **been** jealous of her dead husband.* (FICT)

*Nancy **had gone** with them.* (FICT)

*He **had taken** it himself.* (FICT)

*I kept remembering what Addy **had said**.* (FICT)

*Rick **had seen** that before in androids.* (FICT)

The most common verbs with the past perfect are some of the most common verbs overall (see 5.3). These are mostly verbs that describe physical movements and other activities (e.g. *gone, come, left, given, got*, etc.), speech acts (*said, told*), and mental perceptions or thoughts (*see, heard, known*).

6.4.4 Choices between perfect and simple aspect

Past time can be expressed by the simple past tense, the present perfect, or the past perfect. How do speakers choose the most suitable of these three options?

A Present perfect v. simple past

Both the present perfect and the simple past tense normally refer to an event or state in the past. In addition, both can be used to refer to a state that existed over a period of time. The primary difference in meaning between the two is that the present perfect evokes a situation that continues to exist up to the present time, while the simple past tense describes an event that took place at a particular time in the past.

This meaning difference is often made explicit by time adverbials. With the simple past tense, the adverbial describes when the event or state occurred. Adverbials are underlined in the following examples:

> *I* ***saw*** *him yesterday.* (CONV)
>
> *At that moment, Tony* ***knocked.*** (FICT)

The most common time adverbial used with simple past tense is *then*. It typically describes a sequence of events:

> *And then they* ***said*** *have you heard of the paper? And I* ***said*** *yes but not as er as a window. Then they* ***said*** *well and then I* ***realized*** *that it was Fennite.* (CONV)

Other time adverbials with the simple past are used to specify a period of past time:

> *Throughout the rest of the week we* ***racked*** *our brains.* (FICT)
>
> *I* ***met*** *Giovanni during my second year in Paris.* (FICT)

B Past perfect v. simple past

Past perfect verb phrases look back to an extended time period that was completed in the past. In order to clarify the time reference, time adverbials are often used with verbs in past perfect:

> *When he returned the priest* ***had*** *already* ***used*** *the special needle-sharp quill and ink.* (FICT†)
>
> *So he sat down and breathed deeply as the Zen teachers* ***had taught*** *him years ago.* (FICT)

Past perfect verbs also tend to occur in dependent clauses. In this case, the simple past tense in the main clause provides the perspective for interpreting the time reference. The event in the dependent clause was completed by the time of the event in the main clause:

1 *[When I* ***had sorted*** *that out], I shrugged.* (FICT)
2 *It came almost as a shock to realize [that her night* ***had been*** *peaceful].* (FICT)

For example, in **1**, the action described by *had sorted* was completed before the action of *shrugged* took place. In **2**, the use of *had been* shows that the night was completed by the time the narrator realized the peacefulness of it.

6.5 Progressive aspect

The progressive aspect describes activities or events in progress at a particular time, usually for a limited amount of time. The present progressive describes events that are currently in progress, or events that are going to take place in the future and about which the speaker feels quite certain:

- present progressive describing an event in progress:

> *What's she* ***doing****?* (CONV)
>
> *I'****m looking*** *for an employee of yours.* (FICT)

- present progressive with future time reference:

> *But she'****s coming*** *back tomorrow.* (CONV)
>
> *I'****m going*** *with him next week.* (FICT)

Past progressive verbs describe events that were in progress at an earlier time:

> *I **was** just **coming** back from Witham.* (CONV)
>
> *Well he **was saying** that he's finding it a bit difficult.* (CONV)

It is sometimes assumed that the progressive aspect occurs only with dynamic verbs that describe activities. However, the progressive is also used with verbs that describe a situation or a state. In this case, the progressive refers to the ongoing continuation of the state:

> *Chris **is living** there now.* (CONV)
>
> *I **was sitting** in my office smoking one of James's cigarettes.* (FICT)

Some of the most common verbs occurring with the progressive aspect describe a short-term state, like most of the examples above.

6.5.1 Verbs with the progressive aspect

Progressive aspect is most common in conversation and fiction (see 6.3.3). In conversation, most progressive verb phrases are in the present tense, while past progressive verbs are preferred in fiction. There are two notable exceptions to this general trend, however: the past tense forms *was/were saying* and *was/were thinking* are more common in both registers.

Some verbs are most often used in the progressive aspect. In fact, some (e.g. *bleed* and *starve)* almost always occur as progressive verbs. The common progressive aspect verbs come from many semantic domains, including both **dynamic verbs** (e.g. *chase, shop*) and **stative verbs** (e.g. *look forward to*). Other verbs, like *arrest* or *shrug*, almost never occur as progressive verbs. These verbs have an 'instantaneous' meaning, and are difficult to use in a sense of 'ongoing progress'.

The following lists identify the verbs most strongly associated with progressive aspect and the verbs that almost never occur with progressive aspect.

- Verbs occurring over 80 per cent of the time in progressive aspect:
  - activity/physical verbs: *bleed, chase, shop, starve*
  - communication verbs: *chat, joke, kid, moan*
- Verbs occurring over 50 per cent of the time in progressive aspect:
  - activity verbs: *dance, drip, head (for), march, pound, rain, stream, sweat*
  - communication verbs: *scream, talk*
  - mental/attitude verbs: *look forward, study*
- Verbs that occur less than 2 per cent of the time in the progressive aspect:
  - activity verbs: *arrest, dissolve, find, invent, rule, shut, shrug, smash, swallow, throw*
  - communication verbs: *accuse, communicate, disclose, exclaim, label, reply, thank*
  - mental/attitude verbs: *agree, appreciate, believe, conclude, desire, know, like, want*
  - perceptual states/activities: *detect, hear, perceive, see*
  - facilitation/causation verbs: *convince, guarantee, initiate, oblige, prompt, provoke*

Many previous descriptions of progressive aspect describe it as occurring with dynamic verbs. However, it turns out that both dynamic verbs and stative verbs occur with the progressive. Similarly, verbs rarely used in the progressive form include both dynamic verbs and stative verbs.

Two characteristics determine whether a verb is commonly or rarely used in the progressive form:

- whether the subject is an **agent** or an **experiencer**
- the duration of the action described by the verb.

First, the verbs that are common with the progressive usually have a human agent as the subject of the clause. The agent actively controls the action or state expressed by the verb. In contrast, many of the verbs that rarely occur in the progressive have a human experiencer as the subject of the clause. The experiencer does not control the action or state, but experiences its effect.

This first characteristic helps to explain why some verbs that describe states and perceptions occur as progressives while others do not. For example, the perception verbs *look*, *watch*, *stare*, and *listen* are all common in progressive aspect, and the subject of the verbs is usually a human agent.

*He'**s staring** at me now.* (CONV)

*I **was looking** at that one just now.* (CONV)

*And the police **are** always **watching**.* (FICT†)

*I felt he **wasn't listening**.* (FICT)

In contrast, the perception verbs *see* and *hear* rarely occur in the progressive. They describe perceptions which are experienced, but which are not controlled by the subject. The subject may refer to a human, but the human is an experiencer rather than an agent:

*I **saw** him the other day.* (CONV)

*Yeah, I **heard** about that.* (CONV)

You can also see the influence of the first characteristic with mental verbs. Verbs like *think* and *wonder*, which commonly occur in the progressive, involve an active agent who controls the mental activity.

*You should **be wondering** why.* (CONV)

*Oh, I **was** just **thinking**, it'd be nice to go there.* (CONV)

*I **was wondering** how often she did this.* (FICT†)

In contrast, verbs like *appreciate*, *desire*, *know*, *like*, and *want* describe a state of mind rather than an activity:

*Well I really **appreciate** your having done so much already.* (CONV)

*He **didn't know** why.* (FICT)

*Naturally I **want** to help.* (FICT)

Verbs that rarely have human subjects are also rare in the progressive. These are most common in academic prose, where they usually describe a relationship involving abstractions:

*The main problem of the present investigation **concerned** the effectiveness of the game crossing sign.* (ACAD†)

*Serum ferritin levels **correlate** well with the evidence of iron deficiency.* (ACAD†)

The second major characteristic that influences whether the progressive is used with a verb concerns the question 'How long does the state or action described by the verb last?'. The action, state, or situation described by common progressive verbs often extends over a substantial period of time. In contrast, the verbs that rarely occur in the progressive usually refer to an action that happens very quickly, or a temporary state of short duration.

Some mental verbs that occur with human agents fit the category of a process that extends over time. For example, verbs like *hope*, *think*, and *wonder* can signal mental processes that last for a long time. They therefore commonly occur in the progressive. Stative verbs also can refer to situations that extend over time, so they frequently occur in the progressive. Such verbs include *stay*, *wait*, *sit*, *stand*, and *live*. When used in the progressive, they imply that the state extends over time, but is not a permanent state. For example, **1** clearly states that Sandy is staying a few days, and **4** implies that the writer no longer lives in Furukawa:

1 *Sandy's* ***staying*** *with her for a few days.* (CONV)
2 *We* ***were waiting*** *for the train.* (CONV)
3 *I* ***was standing*** *there the other night.* (CONV)
4 *When I first came to this city as a young man, I* ***was living*** *in Furukawa.* (FICT†)

Many activity verbs (e.g. *bring*, *drive*, *move*, *play*, *walk*) also refer to an action that extends over time, and therefore they occur in the progressive:

He ***was driving*** *his van, delivering copies of First Rebel.* (FICT)

A lot of people ***are chasing*** *me. They****'re shouting***. (FICT)

In contrast, there are many dynamic verbs that refer to an action that takes place instantaneously. For example, *shut*, *smash*, *swallow*, and *throw* have virtually no duration. Such verbs rarely occur in the progressive:

The man ***threw*** *me off the bus.* (CONV)

They ***shut*** *the sliding doors behind them.* (CONV)

I ***smashed*** *the electric light bulb.* (FICT)

Other verbs that rarely occur in the progressive report the end-point of a process. Consider this example:

A disciplinary hearing in June ***ruled*** *that Mr. Reid should be dismissed.* (NEWS†)

The hearing may have extended over a period of time, but the ruling came at the end. Other verbs of this type include *attain*, *dissolve*, *find*, and *invent*.

The use of progressive aspect with *saying* and *thinking* often conveys a more vivid image and a greater sense of involvement than the simple past tense. This is most common in conversation, with the past progressive:

Aunt Margaret ***was saying*** *it's from my great-grandmother.* (CONV†)

I'm thinking *it would be a lot easier if you dropped it off on Sunday.* (CONV)

Review

Major points in **GRAMMAR BITE B**: Aspect

- There are two aspects in English: perfect and progressive.
  - Each aspect can be combined with present and past tenses.
- Perfect aspect 'points back' to an earlier time, and usually signals that the circumstance, or its result, continued up to a given time.

- Perfect aspect is most common in fiction and news.
  - British English newspaper writing uses perfect aspect much more than American English newspapers do.
- Perfect aspect verbs are often used with time adverbials that make the time reference explicit.
  - Past perfect often occurs in dependent clauses, and the main clause makes the time reference clear.
- Progressive aspect signals an event currently in progress or an event in the future that is quite certain.
- Progressive aspect is used more commonly in conversation than in writing.
  - American English conversation uses progressive aspect the most, far more than British English conversation.
- Surprisingly, the most common verbs in progressive aspect include both dynamic verbs and stative verbs.

GRAMMAR BITE

C Voice

6.6 Active and passive voice

Most transitive verbs can occur in two voices: **active voice** and **passive voice**. The active is the most common, unmarked voice. Passive verb phrases are less common and used for special discourse functions. They reduce the importance of the agent of an action and fulfill other discourse functions described in 6.6.1 and 6.6.2.

Most passive constructions are formed with the auxiliary *be* and an *ed*-participle:

The results of one experiment ***are given*** *in Table 1.1.27.* (ACAD)

However, passive verb phrases can also be formed with the auxiliary verb *get*, called the ***get*-passive**:

It's about these people who ***got left*** *behind in Vietnam.* (CONV)

The passive voice is possible with most transitive verbs. The subject noun phrase in the passive sentence usually corresponds to the direct object in the equivalent active voice sentence:

1 *[Turbofan and turboprop engines] are then discussed in turn.* (ACAD†)
<compare active voice: *We then discuss [turbofan and turboprop engines] in turn.*>

Passives can occur as either **short** or **long passives**. In short passives (also called **agentless passives**) the agent is not specified. Thus, in **1**, it is not stated who exactly is discusssing the engines. Similarly, in **2**, the agent is an unspecified 'someone':

2 *To do so, [the cooling curves]* ***are plotted*** *for the two pure components.* (ACAD†)
<compare active voice: *Someone plotted [the cooling curves].*>

Long passives contain a *by*-phrase which, in typical cases, specifies the agent of the action. (In some cases the *by*-phrase will specify a different semantic role, such as experiencer.)

> *The proposal* ***was approved*** *by the Project Coordinating Team.* (ACAD)
> <compare active voice: *The Project Coordinating Team approved the proposal.*>

Short passives are about six times as frequent as long passives.

Passive constructions are also common with two-object prepositional verbs:

> *[Dormancy]* ***is associated with*** *[short duration]* (ACAD†)
> <compare active voice: *Researchers associate [dormancy] with [short duration].*>
>
> *[Elements]* ***are*** *usually* ***classified as*** *[metals or non-metals].* (ACAD)
> <compare active voice: *Researchers usually classify [elements] as [metals or non-metals].*>

The subject of a passive verb can also correspond to the indirect object of a ditransitive verb:

> *[Mariko]* ***was given*** *[permission to go to Osaka].* (FICT)
> <compare active voice: *Someone gave [Mariko] [permission to go to Osaka].*>

or the prepositional object of a one-object prepositional verb:

> *The problem* ***was dealt with*** *by developing a reference test.* (ACAD†)
> <compare active voice: *Someone dealt with [the problem] by...*>

These kinds of verbs are discussed in 5.10.

Most passive voice verbs are easy to identify. However, sometimes words look like passive verbs, but are actually predicative adjectives describing a state or quality. For example:

> *We* ***are*** *delighted with the result.* (NEWS)
> *I ought to* ***be*** *excited.* (FICT†)

These participial adjectives function as subject predicatives. They are usually gradable and can be modified by *very*.

Some participial forms (like *broken* or *frozen*) can occur as both passives and predicative adjectives. In some contexts they are clearly functioning as passive verbs, describing an action with an agent (as in **3** below). However, in other sentences the same form may express a state and behave like an adjective (**4** below):

> **3** *The silence* ***was broken*** *by the village crier.* (FICT)
> **4** *The wire* ***is*** *always* ***broken.*** (FICT†)

6.6.1 The use of the short passive across registers

The frequency of both forms of the passive varies greatly across registers, as shown in Figure 6.5. Passives are most common in academic prose, where they account for about 25 per cent of all finite verbs. Passives are also common in news (about 15 per cent of all finite verbs). In contrast, passive voice verbs are rare in conversation.

In many expository prose texts (such as academic research articles), passive voice verbs are especially common. For example:

*Three communities on a brackish marsh of the Rhode River, a sub-estuary of the Chesapeake Bay, **were exposed** to elevated carbon dioxide concentrations for two growing seasons beginning in April 1987. The study site and experimental design **are described** in Curtis et al. (1989a). One community **was dominated** by the perennial carbon 4 grass spartina patens.* (ACAD†)

Figure 6.5

Frequency of finite passive v. non-passive verbs across registers

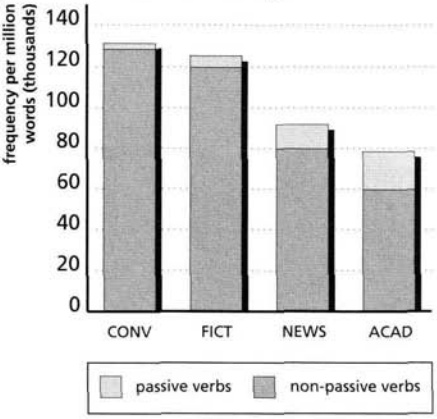

Often, the human actor (or **agent**) is not important in academic writing. So the passive voice is useful: it reduces the importance of the agent noun phrase by putting it in a *by*-phrase or not mentioning it at all. At the same time, the passive sentence gives the status of topic to the direct object of the corresponding active voice clause. Thus, compare the following active voice alternatives to sentences in the passage above:

[We, the researchers,] exposed three communities to elevated carbon dioxide concentrations.

[We, the researchers,] describe the study site and experimental design in Curtis et al. (1989a).

In an active voice clause, the agent is the subject of the clause. However, because readers already know that 'the researchers' usually do the work in a study, there is really no need to mention them. Here the short passive becomes a useful device: it allows the objects of study ('the three communities', 'the study site', and 'the experimental design') to be the subject of sentences, thereby giving them topic status.

The extensive use of passives also gives a sense of objective detachment in expository prose. This sense of objectivity is part of scientific culture, and is often expected in scientific writing.

In contrast, conversation is generally much more concerned with the experiences and actions of people. It therefore usually expresses the agent as subject, and rarely uses passive voice.

News is similar to academic writing in using the passive voice to make the agent less prominent. Often the focus of a news story is an event that involves a person or institution. The agent may be easy to guess or unimportant. Furthermore, presenting only the new information can save space, which is desirable in newspaper writing. It is natural in such cases to omit agents and use the passive voice. For example, reference to 'the police' is omitted in the following:

*Doherty **was arrested** in New York in June.* (NEWS†)

In other cases, the agents may not be known, or they cannot be mentioned for legal reasons:

*The officer **was beaten** and repeatedly **kicked** in the head.* (NEWS)

6.6.2 The use of the long passive across registers

Although the long passive (with a *by*-phrase) is much less common than the short passive, it is similar in being most common in academic writing, and least common in conversation.

In principle, the long passive can be replaced by an active clause with the same meaning. For example, the sentence we have just used is a long passive, and we could have used an active clause instead:

1a *In principle, the passive* ***can be replaced*** *by an active clause with the same meaning.* <passive>

1b *In principle, an active clause with the same meaning* ***can replace*** *the passive.* <active>

However, this active clause would have been less appropriate than the passive clause we used. Why? There are three interconnected motivations for choosing the long passive:

- Principle 1: The long passive is chosen to accord with the **information-flow** principle: the preference for presenting new information at the end of a clause (see 12.1.1). This means that given information (information already shared by the writer and the reader, often because of previous mention) is placed before new information.
- Principle 2: The long passive is chosen to accord with the **end-weight** principle (see 12.1.4). This means that a 'heavier' (or more lengthy) element of the clause, in this case the agent, is placed at the end, where it does not hold up the processing of the rest of the clause.
- Principle 3: The long passive is chosen to place initial emphasis on an element of the clause which is the topic, or theme, of the current discourse.

Example **1a** illustrates all three of these principles well:

- **1a**, unlike **1b**, begins with given information: *the passive* has already been mentioned, and the use of *the* signals its 'familiar' status in the discourse. In contrast, *an active clause with the same meaning* is new information, signalled by the indefinite article *an* and the postmodifying prepositional phrase (*with the same meaning*) which identifies the specific type of 'active clause' in question.
- **1a**, unlike **1b**, begins with a short two-word phrase as its subject (*the passive*). It ends with a longer phrase (*an active clause with the same meaning*) as its agent. This situation is reversed in **1b**.
- **1a**, unlike **1b**, begins with a reference to *the passive*, which is the current topic of the discourse, as shown, for example, by the heading of the section. In **1b**, the topic would have been placed at the end of the clause.

Although we have presented these as three factors, it is clear that they are not really separate. Principles 1 and 2 tend to support one another: a 'given' element will generally be shorter than a 'new' element. For example, in **2** below, the subject is a personal pronoun, which is a clear instance of given information, referring back to someone already mentioned; pronouns are also as short as possible, being a single word consisting of a single syllable:

2 *In two minutes,* ***he*** *was surrounded by [a ring of men].* (FICT)

The agent, in contrast, introduces *a ring of men* which has not been mentioned before, and which is considerably longer, consisting of four words.

Similarly Principle 3 tends to support Principle 1, because the topic of discourse is likely to be someone or something that has been already introduced to the reader.

It is important to note that the three principles mentioned above are not strict grammatical rules. Of the first two principles, the information flow principle (1) is more important than the end-weight principle (2). Thus, it is not too unusual to find examples in which the information flow principle is upheld but the end-weight principle violated:

> ***The vapour at this boiling temperature*** *is represented by [point D].* (ACAD)
>
> ***The achievement of this objective*** *is jeopardised by [unethical conduct].* (ACAD)

6.7 Associations between verbs and passive voice

Some verbs usually take the passive voice; other verbs are rare in the passive.

6.7.1 Verbs that are common in the passive voice

The following lists identify the verbs most strongly associated with passive voice:

- Verbs occurring over 90 per cent of the time in the passive voice:
  aligned (with), based (on), born, coupled (with), deemed, effected, entitled (to), flattened, inclined, obliged, positioned, situated, stained, subjected (to)
- Verbs occurring over 70 per cent of the time in the passive voice:
  approved, associated (with), attributed (to), classified (as), composed (of), confined (to), designed, diagnosed (as), distributed, estimated, grouped (with), intended, labelled, linked (to/with), located (at/in), plotted, recruited, stored, viewed

This shows the verbs with the strongest preference for passive voice. There are a few verbs that almost always occur in the passive, for example *be born* and *be reputed*:

> *Brandon Lee* ***was born*** *in Oakland, California.* (NEWS†)
>
> *The deal* ***is reputed*** *to be worth £1m.* (NEWS†)

Other verbs, like *be based on*, *be deemed*, *be positioned*, and *be subjected to*, are grammatical in both the active and passive voice, but they are used over 90 per cent of the time in the passive voice:

> *The material* ***was deemed*** *faulty.* (NEWS)
>
> *Anyone found guilty of drinking alcohol* ***may be subjected to*** *80 lashes of a cane.* (NEWS)
>
> *They* ***were based on*** *his book 'The Principles of Quantum Mechanics'.* (ACAD†)

A Common passive verbs in academic prose

Passive voice is especially common in academic prose, and many of the common passive verbs refer to scientific methods and analysis:

The same mechanism ***was analysed*** *on each.* (ACAD†)

Their occurrence ***is measured*** *in a few parts per million.* (ACAD)

The test object clause will allow any object to ***be tested.*** (ACAD)

Other passive verbs report findings or express logical relationships:

These effects ***are believed*** *to* ***be associated with*** *a disturbance of auxin metabolism.* (ACAD)

The rate constant can ***be interpreted*** *in terms of entropy.* (ACAD)

B Common passive verbs in news

In news, a different set of verbs is common in the passive voice. Many of these verbs report unpleasant or dramatic events. The agent in these clauses is unimportant, unknown, or previously mentioned:

He ***was accused*** *of using threatening and insulting behavior.* (NEWS)

He ***was jailed*** *for three months.* (NEWS)

Neither man ***was injured*** *during the incident.* (NEWS)

Everybody remembers where they were when JFK ***was shot.*** (NEWS)

C Common passive verbs in conversation

Although the passive is generally rare in conversation, a few passive verbs are more common in conversation than in the written registers. The most common is the fixed expression *can't be bothered*:

I can't ***be bothered*** *really.* (CONV)

I can't ***be bothered*** *to play the piano.* (CONV)

Be done is also relatively common:

It's gotta ***be done.*** (CONV)

Other passive verbs in conversation are more stative in meaning and might be interpreted as predicative adjectives. These examples could be analyzed as either passives or predicative adjectives:

Most of our garden will ***be finished*** *one day.* (CONV)

I might have ***been concerned*** *about my hair or* ***concerned*** *about band or something like that.* (CONV)

6.7.2 Verbs frequently used in the *get*-passive form

The *get*-passive is rare in all registers, but is occasionally used in conversation. Only five verbs have a notable frequency with the *get*-passive:

- over 20 per million words: *get + married*
- over 5 per million words: *get + hit, involved, left, stuck*

Many of these verbs have a different emphasis when used with the *get*-passive rather than the *be*-passive. With *be*, they express a state, such as the state of 'being married' or 'being involved.' With *get*, they are more dynamic, describing the processing of getting into that state.

be **passives**	***get*** **passives**
*I **was married** for a couple of years in the seventies.*	*She **got married** when she was eighteen.*
*They **weren't involved** for that long.*	*And then we start to **get involved** in local society.*
*You're gonna **be left** alone to get on with your job.*	*The one that got the short straw **got left** out or something..*
*You wouldn't **be stuck** at home.*	*My head **got stuck** up there.*

Get-passives are typical only in conversation. The written registers usually use *become* instead.

6.7.3 Verbs that are uncommon in the passive voice

There are many transitive verbs and single-object prepositional verbs that rarely occur in the passive voice:

- Verbs occurring in passive voice less than 2 per cent of the time:

  single word transitive verbs: *agree, exclaim, guess, hate, have, hesitate, joke, lack, let, like, love, mind, pretend, quit, reply, resemble, try, want, watch, wish, wonder*

  single-object prepositional verbs: *agree to/with, belong to, bet on, come across/for, compete with, cope with, correspond to, glance at, laugh about/at, listen to*

Many of these transitive verbs usually occur in the active voice. For example:

*He **has** money.* (CONV)

*Sinead **wants** a biscuit.* (CONV)

*I **lacked** the courage to be alone.* (FICT)

Although these verbs are possible as passives, they simply are not used in the passive voice very often.

Some of the verbs that are rare in the passive usually take a post-predicate complement clause rather than a simple noun phrase as direct object. For example:

*I **wished** [I had a job like that].* (CONV)

*He's also **agreed** [to deal with a few other things].* (FICT)

*I **pretended** [to be another friend].* (FICT)

These complement clauses make it difficult to form the passive voice. For example, we cannot say: **To be another friend was pretended by me.*

As we see from the above list, many single-object prepositional verbs rarely occur in the passive voice.

*They're all **waiting for** me.* (CONV†)

*We can **smile at** them.* (FICT)

*The eigenvectors must obviously **correspond to** special states.* (ACAD)

The passive voice is awkward, if not impossible, with these verbs, because there would be a **stranded preposition** after the verb. For example: **I'm being waited for by them.*

However, a few single-object prepositional verbs do easily occur in the passive voice. The subject corresponds to the prepositional object of the active version, as in:

> *Your sister can **be relied on** to remember when your birthday is.* (FICT†) <compare the active: *You can **rely on** your sister to remember when your birthday is.*>

In contrast to single-object prepositional verbs, two-object prepositional verbs usually allow the passive voice. In fact, many of these verbs normally occur in the passive voice (e.g. *be associated with, be based on*). The subject is the direct object of the active form. The passive subject corresponds to the direct object of the active verb, rather than the prepositional object, so there is no stranded preposition:

> *[Some definitions of style] have **been based on** this assumption.* (ACAD) <compare the active: *Someone **based** [some definitions of style] **on** this assumption.*>

In general, passive subjects are easier to form from direct objects than from prepositional objects.

6.8 Voice and aspect combinations

In English verb phrases, the passive can combine with perfect and/or progressive aspect. In actual use, though, the perfect passive is only moderately common while the progressive passive is rare. The perfect passive with present tense is preferred in academic prose and news, while the past perfect passive is moderately common in fiction.

Perfect aspect and passive voice are both common in academic prose and news, and so it is not surprising that the two are used together in those registers. Perfect passive verb phrases with present tense typically retain the meaning of both the perfect and the passive. They show past time with present relevance (through perfect aspect) and they reduce the importance of the agent (through the passive voice):

> *He **has been jailed** for explosives offenses in Ulster and **has** previously **been denied** a visa.* (NEWS)
>
> *Since 1916 much government money **has been spent** on these developments.* (ACAD†)

In fiction, perfect passives are also moderately common, but they are usually in the past tense:

> *He **had been thrown** from a moving train.* (FICT)
>
> *Most of the lights **had been turned off**.* (FICT†)

The passive with progressive aspect is rare, but it does occur occasionally in news and academic writing:

> *A police spokesman said nobody else **was being sought** in connection with the incident.* (NEWS)

Expenses ***are*** *still* ***being incurred*** *while a budget for the future* ***is being prepared.*** (ACAD†)

Review

Major points in **GRAMMAR BITE C**: Voice

- There are three types of passive voice verb phrases: short passives, long passives, and *get*-passives.
- Compared to active voice, passive voice reduces the importance of the agent of the action and allows the receiver of the action to become the subject of the sentence.
- Passive voice verbs are most common in the expository registers, where agents are often unknown or unimportant.
  - In academic prose, passives often relate to scientific methods or logical relationships.
  - In news, passives often report negative events that happened to someone.
- *Get*-passives are rare, and used almost exclusively in conversation.
- Some verbs usually occur as passives (e.g. *be born*, *be based on*). Other verbs rarely occur in the passive voice (e.g. *hate*, *like*, *want*).
- Voice and aspect combinations are possible; in use, the perfect passive is moderately common and the progressive passive is rare.

GRAMMAR BITE

D Modals and semi-modals

6.9 Modals and semi-modals

There are nine central modal verbs in English: *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *must*, *should*, *will*, *would*, and *shall*. Modals have several distinctive characteristics:

- They act as an auxiliary verb in verb phrases (e.g. *I can go*).
- They do not take inflections to show agreement or tense (e.g. *I can go*, *He/she/it can go*). That is, the form does not vary (e.g. not **He cans go*).
- They precede the negative particle in *not* negation (e.g. *I cannot go*).
- They precede the subject in yes–no questions (e.g. *Can you go?*).
- They take a bare infinitive verb as the main verb in the verb phrase (e.g. *He can go*, not **He can to go* or **He can goes* or **He can went*).
- They express stance meanings, related to possibility, necessity, obligation, etc.

In most dialects of English, only a single modal can be used in a verb phrase. However, certain regional dialects (such as southern AmE) allow some combinations of modals (e.g. *might could* or *might should*).

Semi-modals (also called 'periphrastic modals' or 'quasi-modals') are multi-word constructions that function like modal verbs: *(had) better*, *have to*, *(have) got to*, *ought to*, *be supposed to*, *be going to*, *used to*. In orthographic representations of the spoken language, *better*, *gotta*, and *gonna* often occur as the reduced forms of *had better*, *have got to*, and *be going to*.

Semi-modals express meanings that can usually be paraphrased with a central modal verb. For example:

> *I* ***have to*** *read it again.* (CONV) <paraphrase: *I* ***must*** *read it again.*>
>
> *Mosquitoes* ***aren't supposed to*** *be inside here.* (CONV) <paraphrase: *Mosquitoes* ***should*** *not be inside here.*>

In addition, some semi-modals are fixed expressions, which cannot be inflected for tense or person. However, some of the semi-modals, like *have to* and *be going to*, can be marked for tense and person:

- past tense:

  He ***had to*** *call the police.* (CONV)

- third-person agreement:

  Maybe she ***has to*** *grow up a bit more.* (CONV)

These semi-modals can sometimes co-occur with a central modal verb or another semi-modal, underlined in the examples:

- co-occurrence with a modal:

  I ***might have to*** *tell him.* (FICT)

- co-occurrence with another semi-modal:

  I think the teachers ***are gonna have to*** *be there.* (CONV)

There are also some lexical verbs and adjectives that have meanings similar to modal auxiliaries, in that they express stance meanings, but they are neither idiomatic nor fixed expressions. Rather, these verbs and adjectives express their core lexical meanings of desire, obligation, possibility, etc. Examples are: *need to, dare to, want to, be able to, be obliged to, be likely to, be willing to,* etc. These expressions are discussed further in 10.13.3, 10.15. (In BrE, *need* and *dare* are sometimes used in grammatical patterns similar to modal verbs; see 10.13.)

6.9.1 Time distinctions with modals and semi-modals

The central modals can be used to make time distinctions, even though they are not marked for tense. For example, the modals *will* and *shall* can be used to refer to future time. The semi-modal *be going to* is also used for future time.

> *There* ***will*** *be no outcry from the corporate sector about the disarray in the accountancy profession.* (NEWS)
>
> *We* ***shall*** *deal with these questions in 4.4.* (ACAD)
>
> *It's* ***going to*** *be hot.* (CONV)

In addition, it is possible to group the central modals (except *must*) into pairs with related meanings that sometimes distinguish between past time and non-past time:

modals referring to present and future time	corresponding modals that can refer to past time
can	*could*
may	*might*
shall	*should*
will	*would*

Compare the following pairs. The modal in the second example of each pair refers to a past time:

> *I think we* ***can beat*** *Glenavon.* (NEWS)
>
> *In 1971 he thought he* ***could help*** *his brother in his illness by writing about their childhood.* (NEWS)
>
> *You know he'****ll come****.* (CONV)
>
> *I knew I* ***would put*** *on weight.* (CONV)

In general, though, it is misleading to describe modals as referring to past time and non-past time, as the next section explains.

6.9.2 Typical meaning distinctions for modals and semi-modals

There are many meaning distinctions made by modals beyond those of time. In fact, the main functions are related to stance: e.g. the expression of possibility or obligation. As a result, modals that can be associated with past time (like *could*) are also used for hypothetical situations with present or future time reference. In these contexts, the modals convey politeness and tentativeness:

> ***Could*** *I sit here a minute, Joyce?* (CONV)
>
> ***Could*** *you sign one of these too?* ***Would*** *you mind?* (CONV)

Each modal can have two different types of meaning: **personal** or **logical**. For example, *must* can be used to show personal obligation (*You must brush your teeth*) or logical necessity (*Today must be your birthday*, said after noticing a birthday cake). These two types of meaning are also called intrinsic and extrinsic. Personal (intrinsic) modal meaning refers to the control of actions and events by human and other agents. These meanings are personal permission, obligation, and volition (or intention). Logical (extrinsic) modal meaning refers to the logical status of states or events. It usually refers to levels of certainty, likelihood, or logical necessity.

Modals and semi-modals are grouped into three categories based on their meanings and each category contains both personal/intrinsic and logical/extrinsic meanings. (The semi-modal *used to* is excluded from these categories, being the only modal that refers primarily to past time.)

name of category	modals	meanings
permission/ability	*can, could, may, might*	personal meaning: permission or possibility, ability logical meaning: possibility
obligation/necessity	*must, should, (had) better, have (got) to, need to, ought to, be supposed to*	personal meaning: obligation logical meaning: necessity
volition/prediction	*will, would, shall, be going to*	personal meaning: volition or intention logical meaning: prediction

Often, you can tell the difference between personal and logical meanings by the structure of the clause. Personal meanings have two typical characteristics: the subject of the verb phrase usually refers to a human being, and the main verb is usually a dynamic verb that describes an activity or event that can be controlled. Consider these examples:

> *You* ***can't mark*** *without a scheme. You* ***must make*** *a scheme.* (CONV) <personal ability and obligation meanings, with human subject *you* and dynamic verbs *mark* and *make*>
>
> *We* ***shall*** *not* ***attempt*** *a detailed account of linguistic categories in this book, but* ***will use*** *as far as possible those which are well enough known.* (ACAD†) <personal volition or intention meanings, with human subject *we* and dynamic verbs *attempt* and *use*>

In contrast, modal verbs with logical meanings usually occur with non-human subjects and/or with main verbs that express states:

> *Well, it* ***must be*** *somewhere in the office.* (CONV) <necessity meaning, with stative main verb *be*>
>
> *But in other cases his decisions* ***will seem*** *more radical.* (ACAD) <prediction meaning, with non-human subject (*his decisions*) and stative verb *seem*>

The personal and logical uses of modal verbs are discussed in more detail in 6.10.

6.9.3 Modals and semi-modals across registers

Figure 6.6 shows that the nine central modals differ greatly in frequency. The modals *will*, *would*, and *can* are extremely common. *Shall* is rare. The other modals fall in between.

Figure 6.6 Frequency of modal auxiliary verbs in the LSWE Corpus

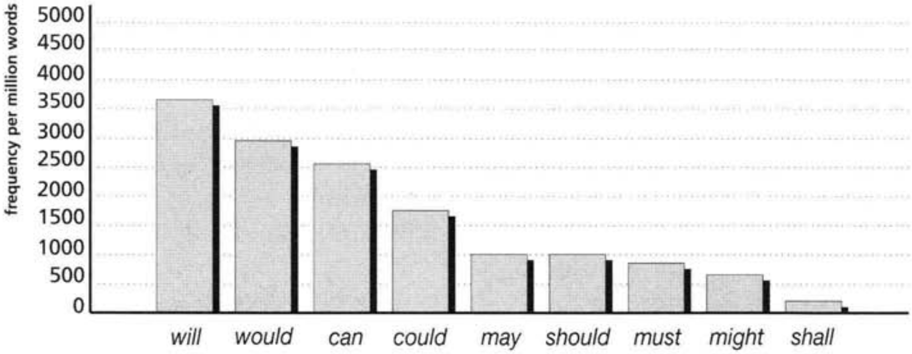

If you consider the pairs of central modals, the tentative/past time member is usually less frequent than its partner. For example, *will* is more common than *would*, and *can* more common than *could*. The exception is *shall/should*, because *should* is more common.

You can see from Figure 6.7 that modals and semi-modals are most common in conversation and least common in news and academic prose. Semi-modals are much more common in conversation than they are in the written expository registers. It is more surprising that the central modals are also more common in conversation, since researchers have often assumed that modal verbs are especially characteristic of writing. However, it turns out that both modals and semi-modals are extremely common in conversation, where they are one of several devices used to express stance.

Compare Figure 6.8 with Figure 6.6. Here you see that many individual modals—especially *will*, *can*, and *would*—are extremely common in conversation. On the other hand, the less common modal *may* is extremely rare in conversation. Academic prose, included in the figure for comparison, shows a very different set of tendencies.

Figure 6.7
Frequency of semi-modals and modals across registers

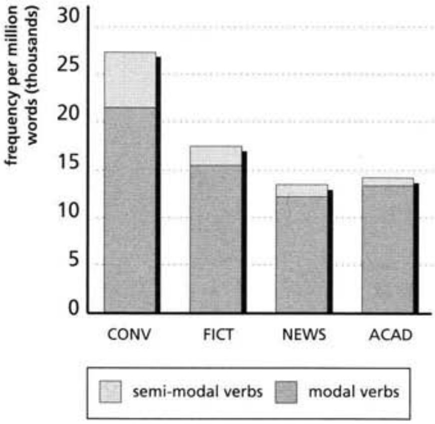

Figure 6.8
Frequency of modal verbs across registers

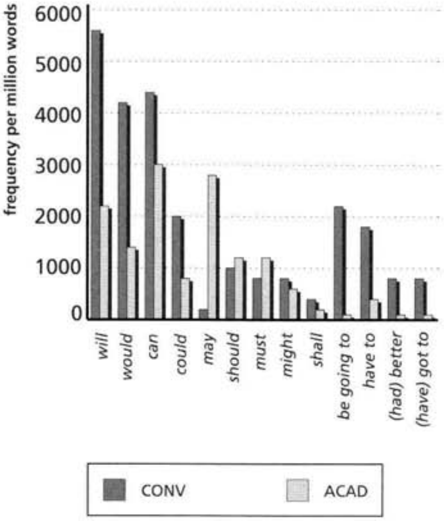

6.10 Personal and logical meanings of modals

In the following sections, individual modals and semi-modals are discussed in more detail, focusing on their use with personal and logical meanings. We will concentrate on conversation and academic prose because these show the clearest contrasts.

6.10.1 The permission/possibility/ability modals

Figure 6.9 summarizes the use of *can*, *could*, *may*, and *might* with permission, possibility, and ability meanings.

In academic prose, *could*, *may*, and *might* are used almost exclusively to mark logical possibility:

> *The two processes **could** well **be** independent.* (ACAD)
>
> *Of course, it **might be** the case that it had been settled long before that.* (ACAD)

May is especially common with this function:

Figure 6.9 **Frequency of permission/possibility modals with intrinsic, extrinsic, and ability meanings**

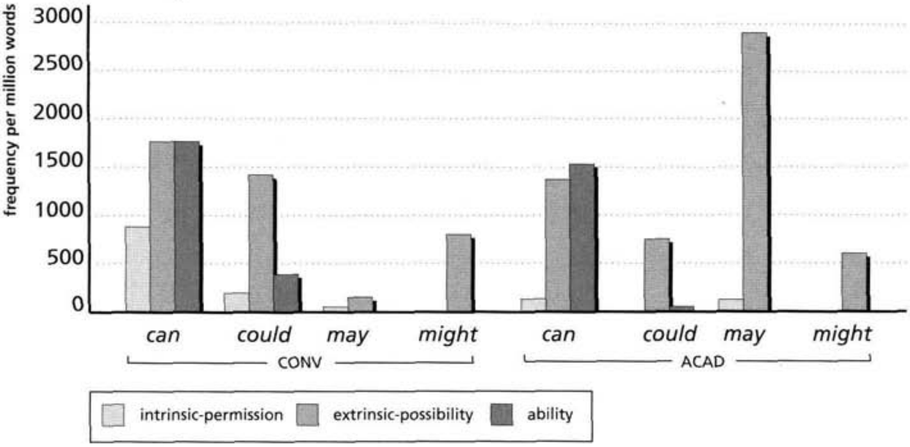

The only problem ***may be*** *that the compound is difficult to remove.* (ACAD†)

In contrast, *can* is used for both ability and logical possibility. In fact, in some cases *can* is ambiguous:

An isolated system is an ideal system. It ***cannot be achieved*** *in practice.* (ACAD)

This sentence could mean that 'no one has the ability to achieve an isolated system' or that 'it is not possible that an isolated system will be achieved'.

In conversation, *could* and *might* are used most commonly for logical possibility, just as they are in academic prose. They usually express doubt, with *could* showing the greatest degree of uncertainty or tentativeness:

That ***could be*** *her.* (CONV)

He ***might relent*** *and show up unexpectedly but I doubt it.* (CONV)

The modal *can* usually expresses ability, but it is often ambiguous with a logical possibility meaning:

- *can* marking ability:

  I ***can hear*** *what she's saying to somebody.* (CONV)

  He goes, I ***can't swim.*** (CONV) <note: *goes* = says>

- *can* ambiguously marking ability or possibility:

  Well you ***can*** *get cigarettes from there,* ***can't*** *you?* (CONV)

- *can* is also relatively common with permission meanings:

  Can *I* ***have*** *some?* (CONV)

  You ***can read*** *my book.* (CONV)

In contrast to the other modals in this set, *may* is rarely used in conversation. When it does occur, it usually expresses logical possibility rather than permission:

He ***may*** *not* ***see*** *it as a joke.* (CONV)

That ***may be*** *wrong, though.* (CONV)

Despite a well-known prescription that *may* rather than *can* should be used for permission, this use of *may* is rare in the LSWE Corpus. When it does occur, *may* indicating permission is usually produced by parents or teachers talking to children. For example:

> *Yes Carl. You* ***may do*** *some maths if you want to. <...> You* ***may do*** *your language work if you want to. <...> No you* ***may*** *not* ***draw*** *a picture.* (CONV)

6.10.2 The obligation/necessity modals and semi-modals

Obligation/necessity modals and semi-modals are less common overall than the other modal categories. Figure 6.10 summarizes the meanings usually expressed by each modal.

Figure 6.10 **Frequency of obligation/necessity modals with intrinsic and extrinsic meanings**

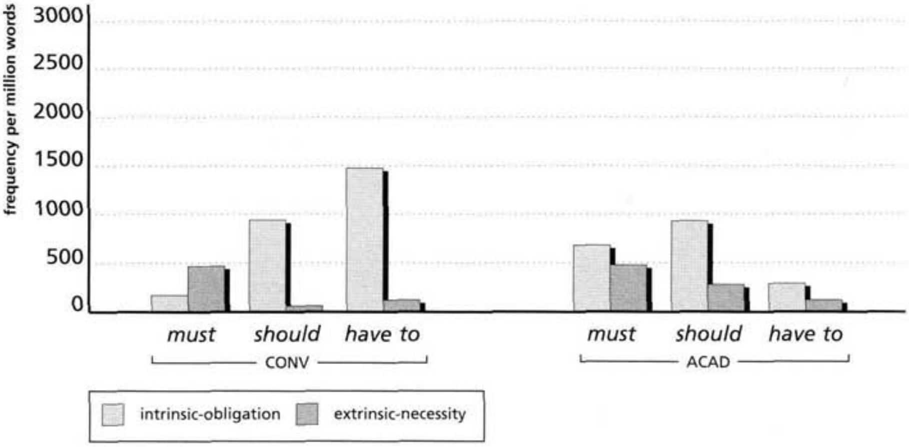

Except for the modal *must*, these modals and semi-modals usually express personal obligation. This is especially true for *should* and *have to* in conversation:

> *Well I* ***have to*** *get up at ten thirty in the morning to take this thing back.* (CONV)
>
> *What do we* ***have to*** *do?* (CONV)
>
> *You* ***should*** *relax.* (CONV)

Even though writers of academic prose usually suppress their own personal feelings in their writing, they also use these modals to express personal obligation rather than logical necessity:

> *However one* ***should*** *not* ***despise*** *too hastily such hand-waving discussions.* (ACAD)
>
> *If the crop is to be harvested by machinery, varieties* ***should be cultivated*** *which do not readily shatter.* (ACAD)
>
> *We* ***have to*** *await the completion of David Dilks's biography.* (ACAD†)

The modal *must* is particularly interesting because its distribution is the opposite of what you might expect. The logical meaning (logical necessity) is most common in conversation; the personal meaning (personal obligation) is most common in academic prose.

- *must* expressing logical necessity in conversation:

  *Your mum **must** not **care**.* (CONV)

  *It **must have fallen** out trying to fly.* (CONV)

  *Your feet **must feel** wet now.* (CONV)

- *must* expressing personal obligation in academic prose:

  *I **must** now **confess** something which I kept back from you in Chapter 3.* (ACAD)

  *This is the sort of case in which judges **must exercise** the discretionary power described a moment ago.* (ACAD†)

The rarity of *must* for obligation in conversation is probably due to the strong impression *must* makes when used in face-to-face interaction. *Should* and *have to* are less threatening ways to express obligation in conversation.

Both *must* and *should* are also relatively common in academic prose for expressing logical necessity. For example:

*It **must** surely be the case that the cat is competent to act as observer of its own survival or demise.* (ACAD)

*If the preceding work has been done with care there **should be** few, if any, off-types.* (ACAD)

6.10.3 The volition/prediction modals and semi-modals

These verbs all express future time meanings. The differences lie in whether the modal expresses a personal intention to perform some future act, or just the prediction of the probability of something occurring in the future. In academic prose, these modals usually express prediction:

*Such deviations **will** often **be** the clue to special interpretations.* (ACAD)

*If the marble is not moving fast enough it **will run** out of kinesic energy before it reaches the top.* (ACAD†)

*Cheap money **would have** the same effect by increasing private investment.* (ACAD†)

In conversation, *will* and *would* are used for both volition and prediction, and the distinction between the two is not always clear. Utterances expressing volition usually have a first-person pronoun as subject, while those expressing prediction have other subjects:

- *will* and *would* marking volition in conversation:

  1 *I'**ll come** and show you it in registration Tuesday morning. <...> I **won't be** here early enough to show you before school.* (CONV)

  2 *I think for sure I **would go** if my friends were going to go.* (CONV†)

- *will* and *would* marking prediction in conversation:

  3 *It **won't be** that difficult to do.* (CONV)

4 ***Will*** *my coat* ***be*** *dry?* (CONV)
5 *She* ***would*** *just* ***feel*** *better if she went out.* (CONV)

In the case of *would*, whether for prediction or volition, the meaning is often hypothetical. Thus, **2** implies 'I am not going because my friends are not going'. Similarly, for **5**, 'she' hasn't gone out and she might not go out at all—so the speaker's prediction is hypothetical.

The combination of first-person pronoun + *would* can also express advice. When speakers tell what they themselves would do, it may mean mean 'I think you should...'. For example:

I ***would*** *just* ***read*** *the book as well.* (CONV) <possible meaning: *I think you should just read the book as well*>

I ***would give*** *it back.* (CONV) <possible meaning: *I think you should give it back*>

Be going to, like *will*, can express intention or prediction, but the intention meaning is the most common one:

I'm going to *put my feet up and rest.* (CONV)

I said I ***was going to*** *collect John's suitcase from Susan.* (CONV)

This meaning, of course, is also related to future time and prediction: by showing intention, the speakers also predict future events. In contrast, *be going to* is very rare in academic prose.

Finally, *shall* is interesting because, although rare, it is used to mark personal volition in both conversation (especially BrE) and academic prose. In academic prose, this use of *shall* (**1** below) is somewhat formal and old-fashioned.

1 *We* ***shall*** *here* ***be*** *concerned with only s and p orbitals.* (ACAD)
2 ***Shall*** *we* ***wait*** *for them*? (BrE CONV)

Shall is typically in a question in conversation (as in **2**), where it is used to make an offer or suggestion. (This use is mainly BrE.) In both registers, *shall* is usually used with *I* or *we* as subject.

6.11 *Be going to* and *used to*

The semi-modals *be going to* and *used to* are different from the other semi-modals because they are used mostly to mark time distinctions rather than stance meanings.

The semi-modal *be going to* is a common way of marking future time in conversation and fictional dialog:

1 *We'**re going to** wait.* (CONV)
2 *I think* ***I'm going to*** *die.* (FICT)

As we saw in 6.10.3, the marking of future time often involves personal volition. In **1**, the meaning of *be going to* expresses the speaker's intention as well as a prediction of the future. In **2**, however, *be going to* is used to jokingly predict the future, with no meaning of intention.

Used to shows past habitual behavior or a past state. This semi-modal, like *be going to*, is relatively common in conversation but rare in academic prose:

Oh Nigel ***used to*** *have a perm, didn't he?* (CONV)

He ***used to*** *sleepwalk.* (CONV)

The sequence *used to* can be confusing because it occurs with several different functions. The function described in this Grammar Bite is as a semi-modal. However, *used to* can also represent an adjective + preposition, meaning 'accustomed to'. This meaning is also common in conversation:

> *I'**m used to** it. I do the dishes every day.* (CONV)

A third function of *used to* is as a passive lexical verb (*used*) followed by a *to*-clause (shown in *[]* below). Combinations with this meaning are pronounced differently from the other two meanings—/juːzd. . ./ rather than /juːst. . ./. This meaning is most common in academic prose.

> *Water control may **be used** [**to** reduce liability to lodging].* (ACAD†)

6.12 Modals combined with aspect or voice

Modals cannot combine with tense, but they can combine with aspect and voice:

- modal with perfect aspect (modal + *have* + *ed*-participle):
  > *The demand for subject access **may have come** as a shock to the library profession.* (ACAD)
- modal with progressive aspect (modal + *be* + *ing*-participle):
  > *Nancy **will be coming** back.* (CONV)
- modal with passive voice (modal + *be* + *ed*-participle)
  > *To produce the best results the plant **should be supplied** with water which carries no contamination.* (ACAD)

The great majority of modals do not occur with marked aspect or voice. However, there are a few cases which deserve discussion.

6.12.1 Modals with perfect aspect

Perfect aspect occurs sometimes with the obligation/necessity modals *must* and *should* in fiction and news. Sometimes *should* + perfect aspect shows a past obligation (unfulfilled), as in the following:

> *Papa **should have done** it long before.* (FICT†)

More commonly, however, these modals are used to mark logical necessity rather than personal obligation. In fact, with the perfect aspect, *must* is interpreted only as logical necessity. The logically necessary events occurred at some point in the past:

> *So the wind **must have blown** it here.* (FICT)
>
> *They **should have won** and would surely have done so but for a mind-boggling miss by Andy Sinton when it was 2–2.* (NEWS†)
>
> *If they say she's made a payment, she **must have made** a payment.* (CONV)

May and *might* are used with the perfect to express a certain degree of doubt about past events or situations:

> *Also he **may have had** quite a job finding it.* (FICT)
>
> *Yesterday he confessed he **might have forgotten** one.* (NEWS)

6.12.2 Modals with progressive aspect

Relatively few modals or semi-modals occur with progressive aspect. *Will* and the obligation/necessity modals and semi-modals in conversation (and fictional dialog) are occasional exceptions to this generalization:

> *He **must be running** low.* (CONV)
>
> *She'**s supposed to be coming** in.* (CONV)
>
> *This **has got to be moving** around this way.* (CONV†)
>
> *'May I ask who you **will be voting** for?' asked Andrew.* (FICT)

Finally, although the modal *shall* is rare overall, it often occurs with progressive aspect when it is used:

1 *We **shall be campaigning** for the survival of local government in Cleveland.* (NEWS)
2 *We **shall be meeting** with all parties in the near future.* (NEWS†)

Will could also be used in place of *shall* in **1** and **2**.

6.12.3 Modals with passive voice

Can and *could* are relatively common with passive voice. The use of the passive avoids identification of the agent of the main verb. As a result, the permission meaning does not occur, and the ability meaning is also less likely to occur than in the active; therefore, the possibility meaning is most common in passive:

> *Each interpretation **can be seen** generally to flow through the abbreviated text as a whole.* (ACAD) <possibility>
> <compare active voice: *We can see each interpretation...* – ability.>
>
> *The methods **could be refined and made** more accurate.* (ACAD) <possibility>
> <compare active voice: *We could refine the methods...* – ability.>

As the examples suggest, *can* + passive is most common in academic prose.

In academic prose, *must* and *should* are also relatively common with the passive voice, and are used to express a kind of collective obligation. The passive voice is useful in allowing the writer to avoid explicitly identifying who has the obligation:

> *Care **must be taken** to ensure that the diffusion in stator is kept at a reasonable level.* (ACAD)
>
> *It **should be noted** that the following scenario is nothing more than one of many potential scenarios.* (ACAD)

6.13 Sequences of modals and semi-modals

The semi-modals *have to* and *be going to* can occur in series following another modal or semi-modal:

> *The researchers warn that they **will have to** treat many more patients before they can report a cure.* (NEWS)

*I'**m gonna have to** stay.* (CONV)

*I thought, perhaps, you **might be going to** be married.* (FICT)

Sequences of modal + *have to* are relatively common in all four registers, especially in combination with volition/prediction modals:

*He **would have to** wait a whole year again to taste it.* (FICT)

*To succeed again they **will have to** improve their fitness and concentration.* (NEWS†)

*If this programme is to make any sense we **shall have to** find a way to associate numbers with our operators.* (ACAD)

These complex verb phrases are generally less common in conversation than in the written registers, even though semi-modals are more common in conversation overall. The only complex modal combination that occurs commonly in conversation is the one that combines the two most common semi-modals, *be going to* + *have to*:

*Because you'**re going to have to** say something.* (CONV)

This combination enables speakers to express two modal meanings in one clause: future time + obligation.

Review

Major points in **GRAMMAR BITE D**: Modals and semi-modals

- There are nine central modals in English: *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *shall*, *should*, *will*, *would*, and *must*.
- In addition, there are a number of semi-modals (e.g. *be going to*, *have to*); these are sequences of words that function like modal verbs.
- The main function of modals and semi-modals is to convey stance.
- Modals fall into three major categories of meaning; each category combines personal (intrinsic) meanings and logical (extrinsic) meanings.
  - The categories are: permission/possibility or ability; obligation/necessity, and volition/prediction.
- Four modals and semi-modals are used primarily to express time meanings: *will*, *shall*, and *be going to* for future time, and *used to* for past time.
- Modals are common in all registers, but they are most common in conversation.
- Semi-modals are especially common in conversation and rare in news and academic prose.
- Modals can be used in combination with both aspects and passive voice.
  - Most modals occur with simple aspect and active voice.
- The semi-modals *have to*, *need to*, and *be going to* can follow a modal or other semi-modal in a series.

7

Adjectives and adverbs

GRAMMAR BITES in this chapter

A Characteristics of adjectives and adverbs

- ➤ Overview of typical characteristics of adjectives
- ➤ The forms that adjectives take
- ➤ Syntactic functions of adverbs
- ➤ The forms that adverbs take

B Adjectives: roles and meanings

- ➤ Semantic categories of adjectives
- ➤ More about attributive adjectives
- ➤ More about predicative adjectives
- ➤ Other syntactic roles of adjectives

C Adverbs: roles and meanings

- ➤ Syntactic roles of adverbs
- ➤ Semantic categories of adverbs

D Comparative and superlative forms

- ➤ Comparative and superlative forms of adjectives
- ➤ Comparative and superlative forms of adverbs
- ➤ Comparative constructions with clauses and phrases

7.1 Introduction

Adjectives and **adverbs** are two of the four lexical word classes. (As described in Chapter 2, nouns and verbs are the other two.) Adjectives and adverbs are very common in all registers, but less common than nouns and verbs. Adjectives and adverbs differ in their frequencies across registers. Like nouns, adjectives are more common in news and academic prose than in conversation. But the distribution of adverbs is like the distribution of verbs: most common in conversation and fiction.

These facts reflect the typical uses of adjectives and adverbs. Adjectives commonly modify nouns, so they add to the informational density of registers like academic prose. In contrast, adverbs often occur as clause elements (**adverbials**); they occur together with lexical verbs adding information to the short clauses of conversation and fiction.

Text sample 1 below illustrates how adjectives and nouns co-occur in academic prose. Text sample 2 illustrates how adverbs and verbs co-occur in conversation.

Text sample 1: HIV INFECTION (adjectives are in bold; nouns are underlined)

> *Thus HIV infection is **likely** to remain with us for the **foreseeable** future. The **full** impact of HIV infection will be felt over decades. The virus does not need to spread rapidly in a population to have a very **marked** and gradually **expanding cumulative** effect.* (ACAD)

Text sample 2: DESCRIBING A HEN (adverbs are in bold; lexical verbs are underlined)

> A: *And she got her feet stuck through netting – **so** she was flapping and the net was **just** going up and down!* <...>
>
> B: *Now as she, I flapped it, I got hold of it and I flapped it **so** it, I **sort of** bounced about, she **sort of** bumped along* (CONV†)

Text sample 1 illustrates the dense use of adjectives and nouns in academic prose. You can see that most of these adjectives occur as noun modifiers (e.g. ***foreseeable*** *future*, ***full*** *impact*, *a very* ***marked*** *and gradually* ***expanding cumulative*** *effect*). Text sample 2 has fewer nouns and adjectives, but more verbs, because the clauses are shorter. Adverbs commonly occur as adverbials in those clauses (e.g. *so*, *just*, *sort of*). This sample also illustrates the occurrence of adverbial particles in phrasal verbs, such as *bumped along*. (These particles, though, are different from adverbs and were covered in 2.4.5 and 5.8–11.)

Beyond their overall distributions, there is a great deal of variation in the form, meaning, and syntactic roles of adjectives and adverbs. Grammar Bite A introduces the characteristics and forms of these two classes. Grammar Bite B then focuses on the syntactic roles and meanings of adjectives. Grammar Bite C focuses on the syntactic roles and meanings of adverbs. Grammar Bite D then covers comparative and superlative forms of both classes.

GRAMMAR BITE

A Characteristics of adjectives and adverbs

7.2 Characteristics of adjectives

Certain characteristics are typical of adjectives, although not all adjectives have all of these characteristics. Adjectives that have these characteristics are called **central adjectives**. Adjectives with fewer of the characteristics are **peripheral adjectives**.

7.2.1 Defining characteristics of adjectives

A Morphological characteristics

Central adjectives can be inflected to show comparative and superlative degree, as with *big, bigger, biggest* (see Grammar Bite D).

B Syntactic characteristics

Central adjectives serve both **attributive** and **predicative** syntactic roles. In attributive position, an adjective is part of a noun phrase: it precedes and modifies the head noun. Most of the adjectives in Text sample 1 above—such as ***foreseeable*** *future* and ***full*** *impact*—are attributive.

Predicative adjectives are not part of a noun phrase, but instead characterize a noun phrase that is a separate clause element. Usually predicative adjectives occur as subject predicatives following a copular verb:

> *That'll be quite* ***impressive.*** (CONV)

Here the adjective *impressive* describes the subject *that*. Predicative adjectives also occur as object predicatives:

> *Even Oscar Wilde called it* ***charming.*** (NEWS)

Here the adjective *charming* describes the object *it*.

C Semantic characteristics

Central adjectives are descriptive. They typically characterize the referent of a nominal expression (e.g. ***blue*** *and* ***white*** *flag,* ***unhappy*** *childhood*). In addition, they are **gradable**, which means that they can show different degrees of a quality. Gradable adjectives can take comparative and superlative forms (e.g. *close, closer, closest*) and can be modified by an adverb of degree, such as *very*:

> *The two couples were* ***very close.*** (NEWS)

Many of the most common adjectives in English are central adjectives that share all of these characteristics. These include color adjectives (e.g. *red, dark*), adjectives of size and dimension (e.g. *big, long*), and adjectives of time (e.g. *new, old*).

7.2.2 Peripheral adjectives

Peripheral adjectives share some but not all of the defining characteristics of adjectives, as Table 7.1 illustrates. As the table also shows, the concept of 'central v. peripheral' is not a clear dichotomy. *Big* is a central adjective and exhibits all the characteristics listed above. Some adjectives, such as *beautiful*, have all the characteristics of central adjectives except that they cannot be inflected to show comparative or superlative degree (**beautifuller*). Other adjectives lack other characteristics. For example, *absolute* is not gradable (something cannot be more or less absolute). *Afraid* is gradable but it does not occur in attributive position, and it cannot be inflected (**afraider*). In prescriptive usage, *alive* is not a gradable adjective since something is either alive or dead. However, *alive* does sometimes occur with an adverb of degree:

> *The center of the city is **very alive**.* (CONV†)

Many peripheral adjectives occur in only attributive or predicative roles, but not both. For example, *unable* is used only predicatively, while *mere* is used only attributively.

> *Heisenberg was totally **unable** to answer them.* (ACAD) <not **an unable Heisenberg*>
>
> *Some of them are very young, **mere** children.* (FICT†) <not **children who are mere*>

Table 7.1 Variability in the defining characteristics of adjectives

morphological inflection	attributive role	predicative role	descriptive meaning	gradable	example
+	+	+	+	+	*big*
–	+	+	+	+	*beautiful*
–	+	+	?	–	*absolute*
–	–	+	+	+	*afraid*
–	–	+	+	?	*alive*
–	+	+	–	+	*different*
–	+	?	+	?	*lone*
?	+	–	–	–	*mere*

7.2.3 Frequency of attributive and predicative roles

Figure 7.1 shows how the distribution of attributive and predicative adjectives differs across registers. In news and academic prose, attributive adjectives are much more common than predicative adjectives. In conversation, both functions are relatively rare.

In news and academic prose, attributive adjectives are an important device used to add information to noun phrases. For example (adjectives are in bold, head nouns are underlined):

> *With **economic** specialization and the development of **external economic** linkages, division of labor intensifies, a merchant class is added to the*

> ***political*** *elite, and* ***selective*** *migration streams add to the* ***social*** *and* ***ethnic*** *complexity of cities.* (ACAD)

In contrast, the roughly equal frequency of predicative and attributive adjectives in conversation reflects a much greater reliance on clauses rather than noun phrases. For example, in the following conversation sample, notice how speakers use predicative adjectives to characterize events and people:

Figure 7.1
Distribution of attributive and predicative adjectives across registers

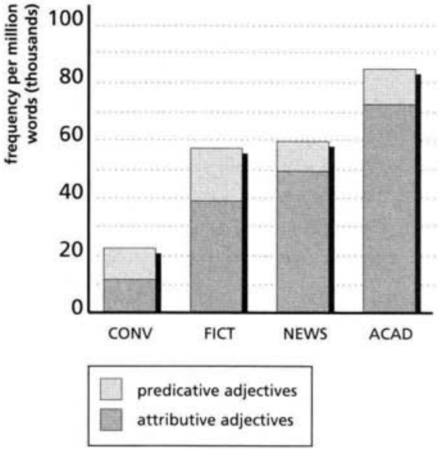

> A: *Getting a B is* ***good*** *enough for him.*
> B: *That's* ***great****.*
> A: *Especially for people in med school – I think a lot of them are so* ***used*** *to being –*
> B: *Super-achievers.*
> A: *Super-achievers that they can't slow down, but, uh, Trey's not that way. He's real* ***laid-back****.* (CONV) <note: *med school* = medical school>

Specific adjectives have a strong preference for predicative or attributive position. For example, adjectives with the prefix *a-* are usually predicative. All the following adjectives occur over 98 per cent of the time in a predicative role:

> *abed, ablaze, abreast, afraid, aghast, aglow, alike, alive, alone, askew, asleep, aware.*

In contrast, adjectives ending in *-al* show a strong preference for attributive position. All the following common adjectives occur in attributive position over 98 per cent of the time:

> *general, industrial, local, national, social.*

7.3 The formation of adjectives

New adjectives can be formed through three processes:

- using participial forms
- adding word endings or derivational suffixes
- compounding (i.e. combining two words).

7.3.1 Participial adjectives

Both *-ing* and *-ed* participial forms can be used as adjectives. Most participial adjectives are derived from verbs (e.g. *promising, surprised, determined*). In fact, when a participle follows the verb *be*, it is sometimes difficult to know whether to analyze it as an adjective or a main verb (see 2.3.6).

New participial adjectives can also be formed by adding a negative prefix to an already existing adjective (e.g. *uninteresting* from *interesting*).

Many *-ing* and *-ed* participial forms can serve both attributive and predicative functions (e.g. *boring, thrilling, confused, excited*). However, participial adjectives are generally more common with attributive uses. Some of the most common participial adjectives are as follows:

- common *-ing* participial adjectives:

  amazing, boring, corresponding, encouraging, exciting, existing, following, increasing, interesting, leading, missing, outstanding, promising, remaining, threatening, underlying, willing, working

- common *-ed* participial adjectives:

  advanced, alleged, armed, ashamed, bored, complicated, confused, depressed, determined, disabled, disappointed, educated, excited, exhausted, frightened, interested, pleased, surprised, tired, unemployed, unexpected, worried

7.3.2 Adjectives with derivational affixes

Many adjectives are formed by adding an adjective suffix to a noun or verb. For example:

noun		**suffix**	**derived adjective**
cord	+	*-less*	*cordless*
effect	+	*-ive*	*effective*

verb		**suffix**	**derived adjective**
continue	+	*-ous*	*continuous*
elude	+	*-ive*	*elusive*

Adjectives can also be formed from other adjectives, especially by using the negative prefixes *un-*, *in-*, and *non-* (e.g. *unhappy, insensitive, nonstandard*).

Figure 7.2

Frequency of derivational suffixes for adjectives across registers

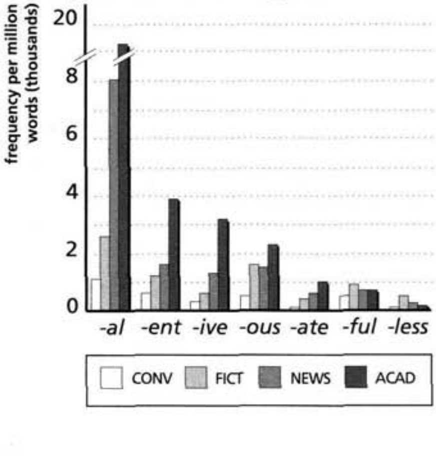

Figure 7.2 shows that derived adjectives are by far most common in academic prose; they are rare in fiction and conversation. Adjectives formed with the suffix *-al* are by far more common than adjectives formed with any other suffix.

The suffix *-al* is extremely productive in academic prose; it is used to form many new adjectives, though these adjectives occur only rarely. Most of these adjectives are very specialized words, such as *adrenocortical, carpopedal,* and *tubulointerstitial.* At the same time, some *-al* adjectives are common in all registers, such as *central, final, general.*

The suffixes *-ent*, *-ive*, and *-ous* are also relatively common. Many adjectives ending in *-ent*, such as *different* and *persistent*, are derived from a verb (*differ, persist*). However, it is hard to determine the source of adjectives like *patient, frequent, recent.* Adjectives in *-ive* also have several sources: some are formed from verbs (*active, adaptive, relative*), some are formed from nouns (*instinctive* from *instinct*), and others are more difficult to analyze (e.g. *aggressive*). Finally, most *-ous* adjectives are similar to *-al* adjectives in being highly specialized (e.g. *floriferous, umbrageous*). However, there are some more common *-ous* adjectives, like *serious, obvious, previous.*

7.3.3 Adjectival compounds

Adjectival compounds are made from a combination of more than one word, resulting in a compact expression of information. They take many forms, including:

adjective + adjective	*greyish-blue, infinite-dimensional*
adjective + noun	*full-time, cutting-edge, large-scale*
noun + adjective	*butterfly-blue, age-old, life-long*
adverb + *-ed* participle	*ill-suited, newly-restored, so-called*
adverb + *-ing* participle	*free-spending, slow-moving, tightly-fitting*
adverb + adjective	*highly-sensitive, already-tight, grimly-familiar*
reduplicative	*wishy-washy, roly-poly, goody-goody*
noun + *ed*-participle	*church-owned, classroom-based, horse-drawn*
noun + *ing*-participle	*eye-catching, law-abiding, nerve-wracking*

In some cases, the individual items in a compound can be derived from other words (e.g. *greyish* from *grey*). Some compounds would be analyzed as two words if the hyphen was omitted (e.g. *highly sensitive*).

Adjectival compounds are common in the written registers, especially news. They are most common as attributive adjectives.

Adjectival compounds present a compact form of information. Often, alternative expressions would require a full clause, usually a relative clause. Thus, *an attack that was motivated by racism* becomes *a racially-motivated attack.* Consider the following example from a news text:

1 *In a speech before the ballot, Mr Kovac – whose career includes a stint as an economic advisor to Cuban leader Fidel Castro in the 1960s – said he was in favour of '**socially-oriented**' market policies.*

2 *'I agree with the principles of a market economy **which are socially oriented**,' he told parliament.* (NEWS)

This example provides a contrast between the use of an adjectival compound in writing (**1**) and a fuller relative clause in quoted speech (**2**). The compound is used to compress information into a two-word expression, which is used as an attributive adjective in a noun phrase. In speech, without time for planning or editing, relative clauses seem easier to produce for certain kinds of information. In contrast, the more compact expression resulting from a compound attributive adjective is used by writers who have time for planning and editing.

One type of compound is more common in conversation: the reduplicative compound (e.g. *wishy-washy, roly-poly*). These compounds are different from the other compounds because the two parts rarely occur separately. They also usually play with sounds, which make them more suited to conversation.

7.4 The function of adverbs

Adverbs serve two major roles: they can be integrated into an element of the clause, or they themselves can be an element of the clause. In the first case, the adverb serves as a **modifier**; in the second case, the adverb is an **adverbial**.

When adverbs are modifiers, they usually modify an adjective or another adverb, as in these examples (the modified word is underlined):

*I am **almost** positive she borrowed that off Barbie!* (CONV)

*First, health service managers must be able to price their services **reasonably** accurately for trading purposes.* (NEWS)

In contrast, in the following examples, adverbs are adverbial elements of the clause:

1 *I think she'll be married **shortly**.* (CONV)

2 ***Possibly** the Wesleyan church tolerated outside unions unofficially, in a way the Anglican Church did not.* (ACAD)

These adverbs serve typical adverbial functions. In **1**, the adverb *shortly* provides information about the time when *she'll be married*. In **2**, *possibly* tells the level of certainty for the entire following clause.

It is important to note that the same adverbs can function as modifiers and adverbials. For example, the adverbs in **3** and **4** are modifiers, but the same adverbs in **5** and **6** are adverbials:

3 *To put on a grey shirt once more was **strangely** pleasing.* (FICT)

4 *This apparently complicated expression for pull-out torque gives the **surprisingly** simple characteristic shown in Fig 5.8.* (ACAD)

5 *And shortly Rabbit too is asleep. **Strangely**, he sleeps soundly, with Skeeter in the house.* (FICT)

6 ***Surprisingly**, the choked voice resumes.* (FICT)

Adverbials are covered in detail in Chapter 11. This chapter touches on adverbs as adverbials, but we concentrate here more on the structural characteristics of adverbs and on their use as modifiers.

7.5 The formation of adverbs

Adverbs are sometimes described as words ending in *-ly*. This is true of some adverbs, but the class is actually very diverse in form. In fact, there are four major categories for the form of adverbs.

A Simple adverbs

Simple adverbs are not derived from another word: for example, *well*, *too*, *rather*, *quite*, *soon*, and *here*. Sometimes a simple adverb form can also be used as another part of speech. For example, *fast* can be used as an adjective as well as an adverb; *down* can be used as a preposition as well as an adverb. In addition, some simple adverbs originated as compounds, but the independent meaning of the two parts has been lost (e.g. *already* from *all* + *ready*, *indeed* from *in* + *deed*).

B Compound adverbs

Compound adverbs are formed by combining two or more elements into a single word. Examples include adverbs such as *anyway* (*any* + *way*), *nowhere* (*no* + *where*), and *heretofore* (*here* + *to* + *fore*).

C Adverbs derived by suffixation

Many adverbs are formed by suffixing *-ly* to an adjective, such as *clearly* formed from the adjective *clear*. However, not all words ending in *-ly* are adverbs. Some adjectives end in *–ly*, such as *weekly* and *fatherly*:

> *Luzhkov is a master of populist* ***fatherly*** *gestures.* (NEWS)

Many of these words can also be used as adverbs:

> *He was smiling benignly, almost* ***fatherly****, at her.* (FICT)

The *-ly* suffix is very productive in forming new adverbs, resulting in unusual adverbs in both spoken and written texts:

> *Oh yes, it went very* ***jollily****.* (CONV)
>
> *Every 20 minutes or so, the play* ***guffawingly*** *alludes to the non-arrival of some long-ordered calculators.* (NEWS)
>
> *All phenols can act* ***bactericidally*** *or* ***fungicidally****.* (ACAD)

In addition to *-ly*, other suffixes are used to form adverbs. Two relatively common ones are *-wise* and *-ward(s)*. The suffix *-wise* can be added to nouns (e.g. *piecewise*) and the suffix *-ward(s)* is added to nouns (e.g. *homewards*, *seawards*) and prepositions (e.g. *onward*, *afterward*).

D Fixed phrases

Finally, some fixed phrases are used as adverbs. These phrases never vary in form, and their component words have lost their independent meaning. Examples include *of course*, *kind of*, and *at last*.

7.5.1 Distribution of adverb types

Figure 7.3 shows the preference for each adverb type in each register (based on analysis of frequently occurring adverbs). You can see that simple adverbs and *-ly* suffixes account for the majority of frequently occurring adverbs. However, the different registers have different preferences. In conversation, over 60 per cent of the common adverbs are simple forms, while about 55 per cent of the common adverbs used in academic prose are *-ly* forms.

Figure 7.3

Proportional use of adverb types

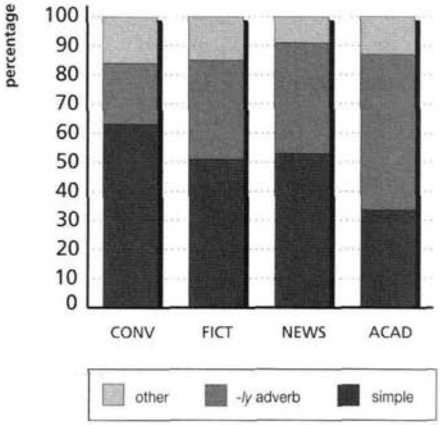

In conversation, many simple adverbs are adverbials used to establish time and place relationships. They include items such as *again*, *always*, *already*, *far*, *here*, *never*, *now*, *soon*, *still*, *then*, and *yet*:

> *But we couldn't, didn't walk too **far** today.* (CONV)

Also common are some modifying adverbs, such as *very*, *rather*, *quite*, and *pretty*:

> *That's **pretty** good.* (CONV)

In contrast, in academic prose *-ly* adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly used, for a variety of purposes. Many function as **stance adverbials** expressing authors' attitudes (see also 11.13–16). Often these forms comment on the likelihood of an idea, with adverbs such as *possibly*, *probably*, *certainly*, *expectedly*, or *obviously*:

> ***Obviously** this is an overstatement.* (ACAD)
>
> *The house is **possibly** in North America.* (ACAD†)

In addition, *-ly* adverbs in academic prose are used as adverbials in descriptions of processes or conditions:

> *The solubility decreases **rapidly** as the temperature falls.* (ACAD)

Academic prose also commonly uses *-ly* adverbs as modifiers:

> *Acclimatization is **relatively** unimportant.* (ACAD)
>
> *The paper by Donchin et al. is a **particularly** good methodological critique of research in this area.* (ACAD)

In contrast to both conversation and academic prose, fiction uses a wide range of *-ly* adverbs, including uncommon ones, to give an apt and lively description of events:

> *All three adults giggled **easily** and at everything, **absentmindedly** fingering small silver spoons.* (FICT)

7.5.2 Adverbs and adjectives with the same form

Sometimes an adverb has the identical form as a related adjective. For example, *fast* is an adjective in **1** below, while in **2** it is an adverb:

> **1** ***Fast** guys tire, a basketball coach once said of his own high-rise team, but big guys don't shrink.* (NEWS)
>
> **2** *One looter, a woman who did not run **fast** enough, was shot dead.* (FICT)

In conversation, adjective forms are often used as adverbs:

> *The big one went so **slow**.* (CONV)

From a prescriptive point of view, *slow* is an adjective form, and its use as an adverb is classified as non-standard. However, in conversation, such uses are not unusual. For example:

> *Well it was hot but it didn't come out **quick**.* (CONV)
>
> *They want to make sure it runs **smooth** first.* (CONV†)

Good is sometimes used as an adverb in place of the prescriptively correct adverb *well*:

> *They go **good** with baggy jeans.* (CONV)
>
> *'It's running **good** now.'* (FICT)

Many adjective forms that are used as adverbs have the function of adverbials, as in the above examples. However, other related forms occur as modifiers. A common example is the modifier *real* used in place of the prescriptively correct adverb *really*:

> *It came out* ***real*** *[good].* (CONV)

Good is commonly used as an adverb in American English conversation, but this use is rare in British English conversation and in all written registers. Clearly, this is an informal choice, favored in American English:

> *It just worked out* ***good****, didn't it?* (AmE CONV)
>
> *Bruce Jackson, In Excess' trainer said, 'He ran* ***good****, but he runs* ***good*** *all the time. It was easy.'* (AmE NEWS)

Figure 7.4

Frequency of *real* and *really* as adverbs in AmE v. BrE conversation

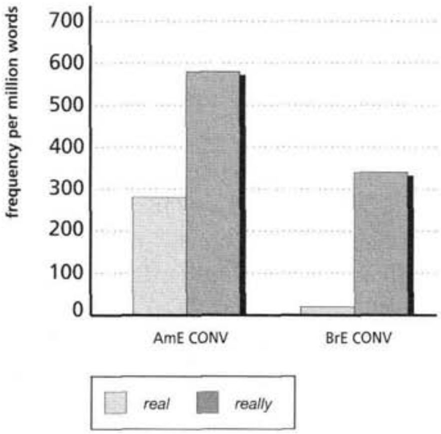

Figure 7.4 shows that both British and American English conversation commonly use *really* to modify adjectives, especially with the adjectives *good*, *nice*, *bad*, and *funny*:

> *This looks* ***really*** *[good] this little ... thing.* (BrE CONV)
>
> *You couldn't tell from looking at him but he was driving a* ***really*** *[nice] car.* (AmE CONV)
>
> *But he's always, he's always making* ***really*** *[funny] comments.* (BrE CONV)

On the other hand, only American English conversation frequently uses *real* to modify adjectives, especially with *good*, *nice*, *hard*, *bad*, *big*, *easy*:

> *It would have been* ***real*** *[bad] news.* (AmE CONV)
>
> *She's a* ***real*** *[nice] girl.* (AmE CONV)

Interestingly, the same speaker can alternate quickly between *really* and *real*:

> *I have a* ***really*** *[good] video with a* ***real*** *[good] soundtrack.* (AmE CONV)

Review

Major points of Grammar Bite A: Characteristics of adjectives and adverbs

- Adjectives have certain typical characteristics in their form, meaning, and use.
  - Central adjectives share all of the characteristics.
  - Peripheral adjectives vary in the extent to which they share the characteristics.
- Adjectives have two major functions: attributive and predicative.
- New adjectives can be formed in three ways: the use of participial forms, the use of derivational suffixes, and compounding.
- Adverbs have two major functions: modifier and adverbial.
- Adverbs have four major forms: simple, compound, forms with suffixes, and fixed phrases.
- Some adverbs have the same form as adjectives or, informally, adjective forms are used as adverbs (e.g. *good*).

GRAMMAR BITE

B Adjectives: roles and meanings

7.6 Semantic categories of adjectives

There are two major semantic categories of adjectives: **descriptors** and **classifiers**.

Descriptors are adjectives that describe color, size and weight, chronology and age, emotion, and other characteristics. They are typically gradable. For example:

- color descriptors: *black, white, dark, bright, blue, brown, green, grey, red*
- size/quantity/extent descriptors: *big, deep, heavy, huge, long, large, little, short, small, thin, wide*
- time descriptors describe chronology, age, and frequency: *annual, daily, early, late, new, old, recent, young*
- evaluative/emotive descriptors denote judgments, emotions, and emphasis: *bad, beautiful, best, fine, good, great, lovely, nice, poor*
- miscellaneous descriptors cover many other kinds of characteristics: *appropriate, cold, complex, dead, empty, free, hard, hot, open, positive, practical, private, serious, strange, strong, sudden.*

Classifiers limit or restrict a noun's referent, rather than describing characteristics in the way that descriptors do. For example:

- relational/classificational/restrictive classifiers limit the referent of a noun in relation to other referents: *additional, average, chief, complete, different, direct, entire, external, final, following, general, initial, internal, left, main, maximum, necessary, original, particular, previous, primary, public, similar, single, standard, top, various*
- affiliative classifiers identify the national or social group of a referent: *American, Chinese, Christian, English, French, German, Irish, United*
- topical/other classifiers give the subject area or specific type of a noun: *chemical, commercial, environmental, human, industrial, legal, medical, mental, official, oral, phonetic, political, sexual, social, visual.*

As you can see from these examples, the distinction between descriptors and classifiers is not always clear. Many topical classifiers, for instance, provide descriptive content while they also limit the reference of the head noun (e.g. *chemical, medical, political*).

Most classifiers are non-gradable. This means that they usually cannot take modifiers of degree or comparative/superlative forms. For example, we cannot say **very medical* or **more additional.*

Some adjectives can serve as both classifiers and descriptors, depending on their context of use. For example, the expressions in the left-hand column contain a descriptor, while the same adjective is a classifier in the right-hand column.

descriptor	classifier
*a **popular** girl in high school*	***popular** vote, **popular** opinion*
***criminal** activity*	***criminal** law*
*a **primary** issue*	***primary** school*

The most common adjectives often have a range of meanings. For example, *old* is descriptive of age (*an old radio, old newspapers*), but it can also be used to express evaluation or emotion (*poor old Rusty, good old genetics*). Even within a single category, an adjective can have more than one meaning. *Poor* as a descriptor, for instance, can mean either 'lacking financial resources' (*a poor country*) or 'not good' (*poor health*).

Meanings can also vary with syntactic role or register. For example, the predicative use of *poor* usually refers to the financial situation (*We're very poor*), while the attributive use is often associated with an emotive meaning, especially in fiction (e.g. *the poor devil, the poor little kid*).

7.6.1 Adjectives in combination

Sometimes adjectives are used in combination for a particular semantic effect.

A Repeated comparative adjectives

Especially in fiction, two identical comparative adjectives are sometimes joined by *and* to denote an ever-increasing degree of the adjective. For example, *funnier and funnier* is a way of saying 'increasingly funny.' Typical examples include:

1 *His own need for food grew **slighter and slighter**.* (FICT)
2 *Her visits to the country to see her soon became **rarer and rarer**.* (FICT)
3 *See the branches get **smaller and smaller and smaller**.* (CONV)

Repeated adjectives typically occur after resulting copular verbs, such as *grew* in **1**, *become* in **2**, and *get* in **3**. Example **3** also shows that more than one repetition is possible.

Some adjectives make comparatives with *more* rather than with an *-er* ending (see Grammar Bite D). In this case, the structure repeats the *more* rather than the adjective itself:

*It got **more and more popular** strangely enough.* (CONV)

B The intensifiers *good and* and *nice and*

Sometimes adjectives are conjoined with *good* or *nice* in order to intensify the meaning of the adjective. For example, *good and sorry* intensifies the meaning of *sorry*; it does not add the individual meaning of 'good'. Sequences of this type occur in predicative rather than attributive position. They are typical of fictional dialog and natural conversation:

*Furthermore, we'll end this conversation when I'm **good and ready**.* (FICT)

The combination *nice and* is especially common:

*Good for your teeth. Makes your teeth **nice and strong**.* (CONV)

In contrast, similar sequences in attributive position do not intensify the meaning of the second adjective. Rather, the first adjective—*good* or *nice*—retains its meaning:

> *There are many* ***good and prosperous*** *people here.* (FICT)

This example does not refer to 'very prosperous people', but rather people who are both good and prosperous.

7.7 More about attributive adjectives

Attributive adjectives usually modify common nouns (underlined below):

> *Yes, it's a* ***bad*** *attitude.* (CONV)
>
> *It had been his* ***favorite*** *toy.* (FICT)

Attributive adjectives can also modify proper place nouns:

> ***old fashioned Episcopalian*** *New York* (NEWS)
>
> ***ancient*** *Mesopotamia* (ACAD)

Less commonly, they modify the name of a person:

> ***little*** *Laura Davies* (NEWS)
>
> *the* ***late*** *John C. Drennan* (NEWS)

Attributive adjectives can also modify personal pronouns. Although these adjective + personal pronoun combinations are generally rare, they do occur occasionally in conversation and fiction, especially in exclamations. *Lucky*, *poor*, and *silly* are the most common adjectives modifying personal pronouns:

> ***Lucky*** *you!* (CONV)
>
> *Not like* ***poor*** *me.* (FICT)
>
> *'****Silly*** *old him,' Lally laughed.* (FICT†)

7.7.1 Most common attributive adjectives in conversation and academic prose

Descriptors are relatively common in both registers, while classifiers are found much more commonly in academic prose. Most of the frequent descriptors in conversation are simple one-syllable words (see Table 7.2). Most of these adjectives describe size, time, or personal evaluations. Evaluative adjectives are the most common:

> *That's a* ***good*** *film.* (CONV)
>
> *He had this really* ***nice*** *cap.* (CONV)

Even the adjective *old*, usually classified as a time adjective, is often used for an evaluative meaning in conversation:

> *The* ***old*** *pig!* (CONV)
>
> *Yeah. Same* ***old*** *stuff.* (CONV)

Several of the most common attributive adjectives in conversation are contrasting pairs: *little/big*, *new/old*, *black/white*, *good/bad*, *same/different*.

Academic prose shows a much greater use of classifiers, especially relational and topical adjectives:

- relational adjectives: *the* ***same*** *physical units*, ***basic*** *processes*, ***general*** *method*, ***whole*** *number*

Table 7.2 Most common attributive adjectives in conversation and academic prose

	CONV	ACAD
descriptors		
size/amount	*big, little, long*	*long, small, great, high, low, large*
time	*new, old*	*new, old, young*
color	*black, white*	—
evaluative	*good, bad, best, right, nice*	*good, best, right, important, simple, special*
relational	*same, whole, different*	—
classifiers		
relational	—	*basic, common, following, higher, individual, lower, particular, similar, specific, total, various, whole, different, full, general, major, final, main, single*
topical	—	*local, natural, normal, oral, physical, public, sexual, political, social, human, international, national, economic*

- topical adjectives: ***social*** *status*, ***human*** *nature*, ***sexual*** *development*, ***natural*** *law*, ***public*** *policy*, ***political*** *economy*, ***experimental*** *physics.*

These adjectives are important in specifying the reference of noun phrases. In addition, academic prose writers use evaluative adjectives to express judgments of what is important, unusual, appropriate, and so on: ***important*** *consequences*, ***special*** *cases*, ***appropriate*** *conditions*, ***right*** *level.*

7.8 More about predicative adjectives

Predicative adjectives occur with two syntactic roles: **subject predicative** and **object predicative.**

A Subject predicatives

Subject predicatives complement a copular verb. They characterize the nominal expression that is in subject position (underlined):

1 *She seems quite* ***nice*** *really.* (CONV)
2 *That's* ***right.*** (CONV)
3 *It would be* ***easier, quicker,*** *and* ***cheaper.*** (FICT)
4 *The tendencies are not* ***significant*** *and get* ***weaker*** *when data are corrected for guessing.* (ACAD)

For example in **1**, the predicative adjective *nice* is an evaluation characterizing the subject pronoun *she.*

Many of the most frequent predicative adjectives occur with a phrasal or clausal complement of their own. That is, they have a prepositional phrase, *to*-infinitive clause, or *that*-clause that complements their meaning. For example (complements are in *[ ]*):

- phrasal complements:

*Well you're **good** [at remembering numbers].* (CONV)

*That's **nice** [of you].* (FICT)

*A system concept is **subject** [to several constraints].* (ACAD†)

- clausal complements:

*'You look **good enough** [to eat],' he said.* (FICT)

*I am **sure** [the warm affinities between Scots and Jews arise out of appreciation of herrings].* (NEWS)

In general, English does not allow adjectives with prepositional or clausal complements to occur in attributive position.

B Object predicatives

Object predicatives occur with complex transitive verbs, following the direct object. Rather than characterizing the subject, they characterize the object. For example (direct objects are underlined, and the object predicative is in bold):

*I said you've got all your priorities **wrong**.* (CONV)

*I had it **right** the first time, didn't I?* (CONV)

*She had considered it infinitely **vulgar** and **debased**.* (FICT)

*She has since declared herself **bankrupt**.* (NEWS)

7.8.1 Most common predicative adjectives in conversation and academic prose

The most common predicative adjectives in conversation and academic prose are:

CONV: *able, alright, lovely, sure, right, good, nice, true, wrong, bad, fine, funny*

ACAD: *able, common, dependent, equal, equivalent, essential, greater, large, low, present, similar, useful, sure, true, difficult, different, possible, impossible, likely, important, necessary, clear, small, available, better*

Most of the common predicative adjectives are descriptors rather than classifiers. Interestingly, there is little overlap between these predicative adjectives and the common attributive adjectives. (The exceptions are *right*, *good*, *large*, *low*, *different* and *full*.)

The most common predicative adjectives in conversation tend to be evaluative and emotional: e.g. *good*, *lovely*, *bad*. *Right*, *alright*, and *sure* usually express agreement or confidence, as in *That's right*. Expressions of disagreement (e.g. *you're wrong*) are less common.

In conversation, a single common adjective can express a wide range of meanings. For example, the adjective *funny* is used for many meanings in addition to its core meaning of 'humorous'; other meanings include 'strange', 'spoiled', 'noteworthy':

*She sounds **funny** on the phone. Most odd.* (CONV)

*Told you about her having that – dish – and it went **funny**.* (CONV)

*What's **funny** about me is that I'm very much affectionate.* (CONV†)

Most predicative adjectives in conversation do not have complements:

*Are you **sure**?* (CONV)

*We'll find out what's **wrong**.* (CONV)

In contrast, predicative adjectives in academic prose are often used with complements to express intellectual claims. For example (complements are in *[]*):

1 *It will be **clear** [that the presence of two slits is essential to give an interference pattern].* (ACAD)
2 *The feeling of comfort is **basic** [to a sense of well-being], but it is **difficult** [to define] and is often most **notable** [in its absence].* (ACAD)

These adjectives typically provide a frame for the claim expressed in the complement. A predicative adjective such as *clear* in **1** is a kind of stance marker. It gives the author's assessment of certainty or importance. (Predicative adjectives and their complements are discussed further in 10.7.1–2, 10.15, and 10.21.3.)

7.9 Other syntactic roles of adjectives

Besides their attributive and predicative uses, adjectives can serve several other roles, including postposed modifiers, noun phrase heads, clause linkers, free modifiers, and exclamations. (Adjectives also have an important role in comparative clauses, described in Grammar Bite D.)

7.9.1 Adjectives as postposed modifiers

A **postposed** adjective is part of a noun phrase but it *follows* the head word. Postposed adjectives are most common with compound indefinite pronouns as heads, such as *no one*, *anything*, or *somebody*:

*It's a shame if you haven't got anyone **musical** here.* (CONV)

*I think they are doing everything **possible** to protect the workers.* (NEWS)

In addition, postposed adjectives appear in some fixed expressions, e.g. *attorney general*, *heir apparent*, *notary public*, *Asia Minor*.

Similarly, when a modifying adjective phrase is very long, the adjective phrase will often follow the head noun:

*It's a, a lounge **not much bigger than the one we've got now**.* (CONV)

*He drew from the high soprano instrument sounds **totally different from what we think of as saxophone tone**.* (NEWS)

7.9.2 Adjectives as noun phrase heads

Adjectives can also function as the head of a noun phrase. Adjectives in this role can be modified by adverbs (e.g. *very* in **2** below), which is typical of adjectives but not nouns. However, these adjectives can also take premodifiers (e.g. *real working* in **3** below), which is typical of nouns:

1 *Everyone picks on the **Welsh**, don't they?* (CONV)
2 *I think the contrast between the very **rich** and the very **poor** in this country is disgusting.* (FICT)

3 *These people may be the real working* ***poor****, the* ***elderly****, the very* ***young****, the* ***unemployed****, or the* ***transient****.* (ACAD)

As these examples illustrate, the adjective-headed noun phrase usually refers to a group of people with the characteristic described by the adjective; thus, *the elderly* refers to 'elderly people in general'. The definite article (*the*) is typically used with adjectives as noun phrase heads.

7.9.3 Adjectives as linking expressions

An adjective sometimes serves to link clauses or sentences to one another. Adjectives in this role can also have modifiers (e.g. *still more* in **2**):

1 ***Worse*** *he had nothing to say.* (FICT)
2 *Still more* ***important****, children who grew up in elite homes enjoyed advantages that helped them maintain elite status.* (ACAD)

Such linking adjective phrases often express stance.

7.9.4 Adjectives as free modifiers

Adjectives can also be syntactically free modifiers of a noun phrase. These adjective phrases modify a noun phrase, but they are not syntactically part of the noun phrase; in fact, the adjective phrase has a peripheral role in the clause. These structures are most common in fiction. They typically occur in sentence-initial position. Below, the free modifiers are in bold and the noun phrases they modify are in *[]*:

Green, bronze and golden *[it] flowed though weeds and rushes.* (FICT)

Delicate and light bodied, *[it] is often confused with American blended whiskey and thus called rye.* (ACAD)

Free modifiers can also occur in sentence-final position:

[Victor chucked], ***highly amused****.* (FICT)

7.9.5 Adjectives as exclamations

Adjectives often serve as exclamations, especially in conversation and fictional dialog:

Great*! I need some of those.* (CONV)

Good*! I like that.* (CONV)

Other examples in conversation: *Excellent! Bloody brilliant! Sorry! Oh dear! Amazing! Wonderful! Super! Super-duper!* <note: *bloody* is a taboo word that may be offensive to some people>

Review

Major points in Grammar Bite B: Adjectives: roles and meanings

- Adjectives can have two different kinds of meaning: they can be descriptors or classifiers.
- Adjectives are sometimes combined in interesting ways: repetition of a comparative adjective shows increasing intensity (e.g. *smaller and smaller*), combination with *good and* or *nice and* intensifies the meaning (e.g. *good and ready*).

- Attributive adjectives occur mainly before common nouns, but they can also occur before proper nouns and personal pronouns.
  - The frequency and use of attributive adjectives varies greatly between conversation and academic prose.
- Predicative adjectives can function as subject predicatives or object predicatives.
  - Conversation and academic prose tend to use different kinds of predicative adjectives.
- Only a few adjectives are common in both predicative and attributive positions.
- Adjectives have five syntactic roles in addition to their attributive and predicative roles: postposed modifier, noun phrase head, linking expression, exclamation, and free modifier.

GRAMMAR BITE

C Adverbs: roles and meanings

7.10 Syntactic roles of adverbs

In Grammar Bite A we identified the two major roles of adverbs: modifiers and adverbials. Here we cover these roles in more detail.

7.10.1 Adverbs modifying adjectives

One of the primary functions of adverbs is modifying adjectives (the adjective is underlined below):

> *I'm **rather** partial to parsnips.* (CONV)
>
> *I was **utterly, hopelessly, horribly** glad.* (FICT)
>
> *This is **slightly** larger than the calculated value.* (ACAD†)

Usually, adverbs precede the adjectives that they modify, but the adverbs *enough* and *ago* are postposed, placed after the adjectives they modify:

> *Down came the dry flakes, fat **enough** and heavy **enough** to crash like nickels on stone.* (FICT)
>
> *That seems so long **ago**.* (FICT†)

Other adverbs can also be postposed:

> *It is rich **nutritionally** with high calcium content.* (ACAD)

Common adverb + adjective combinations

Registers vary greatly in their use of adverb + adjective pairs. Here we focus on the contrast between conversation and academic prose.

Conversation makes use of a few extremely frequent adverb + adjective combinations. In all cases, these most frequent combinations include a degree adverb: *real*, *really*, *too*, *pretty*, *quite*, or *very*, in combination with adjectives like *bad, good, nice, quick.* These are general evaluative expressions with vague reference. For example:

That looks ***pretty*** *good, it's still a little high.* (CONV)

Really, I, I fancy Emma cos she's a ***very*** *nice girl.* (CONV)

In contrast, academic prose has more diversity in adverb + adjective combinations. As in conversation, the most common adverb modifiers are degree adverbs: *more, quite, very*. However, the co-occurring adjectives express specific qualities rather than general value judgments (e.g. *different, difficult, important, large, low*). In addition, several of the common combinations in academic prose refer to statistical measurements (e.g. *significantly different/higher* and *statistically significant*).

He found it ***very*** *difficult to regain his usual level of activity because his arthritis seemed worse after the operation.* (ACAD†)

The hospital mortality at 21 days for those who received streptokinase was not ***significantly*** *different from the control group.* (ACAD†)

7.10.2 Adverbs modifying other adverbs

Adverbs also modify other adverbs:

They'll figure it out ***really*** *fast.* (CONV)

The do-it-yourself builder ***almost*** *always uses a water-repellent plywood, oil-tempered hardboard or fibre-cement sheet.* (ACAD†)

The two adverbs together (*really fast* in **1** and *almost always* in **2**) form an adverb phrase.

Common adverb + adverb combinations

Adverbs are less common as modifiers of other adverbs than as modifiers of adjectives. However, certain pairs are extremely common, especially in conversation:

pretty/so/very/too much
much better/more
pretty/really/very well
right here/there
right now
pretty soon

In both conversation and academic prose, adverb + adverb combinations are used primarily for describing amounts/intensities, or for qualifying a comparison that is being made:

1 *Thank you* ***very*** *much for listening.* (CONV)
2 *Oh, you're going to do* ***much*** *better.* (CONV)
3 *I admitted, however, that internal skepticism offers a* ***much*** *more powerful challenge to our project.* (ACAD)

As **3** illustrates, these combinations in academic prose are usually themselves modifiers of an adjective.

Adverb + adverb combinations in conversation can also be used for time and place. The modifier *right* is especially common in American English to suggest exactness:

I really couldn't keep him in my apartment ***right*** *now.* (AmE CONV)

She already got a twenty percent tip ***right*** *here.* (AmE CONV)

The whatchacallems are ***right*** *there, see?* (AmE CONV†)

7.10.3 Adverbs modifying other elements

Adverbs can also modify noun phrases (or parts of noun phrases), prepositional phrases, particles, numerals, or measurements:

- modifier of noun phrase:

  *'It came as **quite** a surprise,' said one.* (NEWS)

- modifier of pronoun:

  ***Almost** nobody, it seemed, could eat what they were given.* (FICT)

- modifier of predeterminer:

  *I've done **about** half a side.* (CONV)

- modifier of prepositional phrase:

  *But there's a hell of a lot – **well** into their seventies.* (CONV)

- modifier of particle of phrasal verb:

  *It's really filled the room **right** up.* (CONV)

- modifier of numeral:

  *It is still not clear whether the **approximately** 250 people still listed as missing include those whom ex-detainees say were still alive in May.* (NEWS)

- modifier of other measurement expressions:

  *Tosi (1984:27–34, fig. 3) estimates that **roughly** one-quarter to one-third of the total surface area of four sites in 'prehistoric Turan' was devoted to different craft activities.* (ACAD)

Most of these adverbs occur as **premodifiers**. However, **postmodification** also occurs, especially when identifying the location of a noun phrase:

> *Thus, in the ammonia example **above**, if ammonia, NH_3, is allowed to escape from the reaction system, the reaction cannot achieve equilibrium.* (ACAD)

For some of these functions, only a small set of adverbs is used. For instance, only *right*, *well*, *straight*, and *directly* are commonly used to modify prepositions.

7.10.4 Adverbs as complements of prepositions

Another function of adverbs is to serve as the complement of a preposition. Consider the following examples, with the preposition underlined and adverb in bold:

1 *Before **long**, he met a pretty singing cowgirl from Texas who went by the name of Dale Evans.* (NEWS)
2 *Its importance has often been recognized since **then**.* (ACAD†)
3 *There's another sweatshirt lurking under **there** that I didn't see.* (CONV)
4 *But I'm seeing all this from **above**.* (FICT†)

These adverbs serving as complements of prepositions usually denote time (as in **1** and **2**) or place (**3** and **4**).

7.10.5 Adverbs as clause elements: adverbials

An adverb (or an adverb phrase) can function as an adverbial. There are three major types of adverbials: **circumstance adverbials**, **stance adverbials**, and **linking adverbials**. Adverbs can be used for all three types of adverbials.

A Circumstance adverbials

These add information about the action or state that is described in the clause. They give details about factors such as time, manner, and place. For example:

> *He took it in **slowly** but **uncomprehendingly**.* (FICT†)

B Stance adverbials

These convey the speaker/writer's assessment of the proposition in the clause:

> *His book **undoubtedly** fills a need.* (NEWS)

C Linking adverbials

These serve to connect stretches of text:

> *Most of our rural people do not have radio or television and a large proportion are illiterate. **Therefore** we had to use approaches that do not depend on the mass media or on literacy.* (ACAD)

Chapter 11 gives a detailed discussion of adverbials—see especially 11.2.

7.10.6 Adverbs standing alone

In conversation, adverbs can stand alone, unconnected to other elements in a clause. They can even serve as complete utterances. In some cases, the adverbs are related by ellipsis to previous utterances. For example:

> *The kitten's gone crazy. No, totally I mean it. **Totally** and **utterly**.* (CONV)

Here the complete form would be *The kitten's gone totally and utterly crazy.*

Adverbs as stand-alone utterances can also serve to express—or emphasize—agreement:

> A: *What you could afford you had.*
> B: ***Exactly. Exactly.***
> A: *In other words the skills of a counselor?*
> B: *Yes. Yes.*
> C: ***Definitely. Definitely.***

Adverbs can also be used as questions. Often, these adverbs are stance adverbials (see 11.2, 11.13–16):

> A: *You can still vote if you lost it.*
> B: ***Really?***
> A: *They should have your name on the roster.*

> A: *You're supposed to put the lid on otherwise it won't switch off.*
> B: ***Seriously?***
> A: *Yeah.*

Similarly, stance adverbs can be used to answer questions:

A: *It's warm isn't it. By the radiator.*
B: ***Probably.***
A: *Are they that good?*
B: ***Definitely.*** *Only band I want to see playing – in the world.*

7.11 Semantic categories of adverbs

Adverbs cover a wide range of semantic categories. Here we identify seven main categories—place adverbs, time adverbs, manner adverbs, degree adverbs, additive/restrictive adverbs, stance adverbs, and linking adverbs—as well as other less common meanings. (The semantic classes of adverbials are discussed in more detail in 11.6, 11.9, 11.13, 11.17.)

As with verbs and adjectives, many of the most common adverbs have multiple meanings that vary with context of use. First, some adverbs have both literal and more metaphorical meanings. For example, *perfectly* can be used in its literal meaning 'in a perfect manner' (*perfectly arranged, perfectly fits the bill*). However, *perfectly* is more commonly used in a more metaphorical sense to mean 'completely' (*perfectly normal, perfectly safe*). In addition, adverbs can belong to more than one major category of meaning. *Still*, for example, can be an adverb of time (**1**) or a linking adverb (**2**):

1 *Are you* ***still*** *teaching?* (CONV)
2 *I'm doing better now. <...>* ***Still*** *I don't even remember how to start.* (CONV)

For further examples of ambiguous adverbs (*just*, *then*, and *there*) see 11.7.

7.11.1 Place adverbs

Place adverbs express distance, direction, or position:

He loves it ***there.*** (CONV) <position>
'Don't worry, he can't have gone ***far.****'* (FICT) <distance>
It hopped ***backward*** *among its companions.* (FICT†) <direction>

Place adverbials are further discussed in 11.6.1.

7.11.2 Time adverbs

Time adverbs express position in time, frequency, duration, and relationship:

1 *She doesn't say go away very much* ***now.*** (CONV) <time position>
2 *She* ***always*** *eats the onion.* (CONV) <time frequency>
3 *She will remain a happy memory with us* ***always.*** (NEWS) <time duration>
4 *When they took the old one out it was* ***already*** *in seven separate pieces!* (CONV) <time relationship>

These examples show how the same adverb can have different time meanings, depending on its context of use. For example, *always* in **2** refers to frequency (i.e. how often she eats the onion); while in **3**, *always* refers more to duration (= 'for ever'). Time adverbials are further illustrated in 11.6.2.

7.11.3 Manner adverbs

Manner adverbs express information about how an action is performed. Many of these adverbs have *-ly* suffixes, taking their meanings from the adjectives that they are derived from:

> ***Automatically*** *she backed away.* (FICT)
>
> *But sentiment recovered* ***quickly****.* (NEWS†)

Other manner adverbs are not *-ly* adverbs:

> *You can run* ***fast*** *but not here.* (CONV)
>
> *To perform* ***well*** *it has to be tightly targeted to cope with quite a narrow band of frequencies.* (NEWS)

In the above examples, manner adverbs are used as adverbials. But manner adverbs can also be used as modifiers, providing description that is integrated into a noun phrase:

> *<...> by the dark waters of Buda, her tears dropping hotly among [the [****quietly*** *flowing] dead leaves].* (FICT†)
>
> *In [a [****fast*** *moving] first half] the teams appeared to cancel each other out in mid-field.* (NEWS)
>
> *The Russian leader threw [the [****carefully*** *arranged] welcome] into chaos.* (NEWS†)

These adverb + adjective combinations could also be analyzed as compound adjectives (described in 7.3.3), particularly if they were hyphenated. Manner adverbials are further discussed in 11.6.3.

7.11.4 Degree adverbs

Adverbs of degree describe the extent of a characteristic. They can be used to emphasize that a characteristic is either greater or less than some typical level:

> *It's insulated* ***slightly*** *with polystyrene behind.* (CONV)
>
> *Those letters from you, it got so I* ***almost*** *believed they were really written to me.* (FICT)
>
> *They* ***thoroughly*** *deserved a draw last night.* (NEWS†)

Most modifying adverbs discussed in 7.10.1–3 are adverbs of degree. Degree adverbials are discussed further in 11.6.5.

A Amplifiers/intensifiers

Degree adverbs that increase intensity are called **amplifiers** or **intensifiers**. Some of these modify gradable adjectives and indicate degrees on a scale. They include *more, very, so, extremely*:

> *Our dentist was* ***very*** *good.* (CONV)
>
> *If they had not helped her* ***so*** *generously in those times, Mrs Morel would never have pulled through without incurring debts that would have dragged her down.* (FICT)
>
> *Most will be* ***extremely*** *cautious until new case law defines the extent of the new Act.* (NEWS)

Other amplifiers indicate an endpoint on a scale. These include *totally*, *absolutely*, *completely*, and *quite* (in the sense of 'completely'):

> ***Completely** cold and unemotional.* (FICT)
>
> *But snow and ice accumulate in a **totally** different way from sediment.* (ACAD)

How is also used as an intensifier in exclamatory sentences:

> A: *Well it ain't the child's fault.*
> B: *No.*
> A: ***How** cruel!* (CONV)
> <note: *ain't* is a non-standard form>

Often when *how* is used as an amplifier in conversation, it is used to make an ironic comment:

> A: *This guy came reeling down the hallway completely plastered, uh, and the manager told me, oh, don't worry about him. He lives here, but he's completely harmless, and he sits out front, on the grass, right in front of the door to my apartment and drinks.*
> B: ***How** lovely.*

Some manner adverbs can lose their literal meaning to be used as amplifiers:

> **1** *New York's an **awfully** safe place.* (FICT)
> **2** *And Carl was **perfectly** awful.* (FICT)

In **1**, ***awfully*** does not mean 'in an awful way'; rather, it is a somewhat colorful way of saying 'very' or 'extremely'. Similarly in **2**, *perfectly* takes on its more metaphorical sense of 'completely'. *Dead* is another adverb used in informal situations to modify adjectives. Clearly, *dead* loses its literal meaning in such cases:

> *He is **dead** serious all the time.* (CONV)

B Diminishers/downtoners

Degree adverbs which decrease the effect of the modified item are called **diminishers** or **downtoners**. As with intensifiers, these adverbs indicate degrees on a scale and are used with gradable adjectives. They include *less*, *slightly*, *somewhat*, *rather*, and *quite* (in the sense of 'to some extent'):

> **1** *A **slightly** cold start gave way to wonderful contrasts of feeling.* (NEWS)
> **2** *Consequently, Marx often uses the term Klasse in a **somewhat** cavalier fashion.* (ACAD†)

Downtoners are related to **hedges** (like *kind of*; discussed below under stance adverbs). That is, they indicate that the modified item is not being used precisely. For example, in **1** and **2** above, *cold* and *cavalier* are not completely accurate descriptions of *a start* and *a fashion*.

Other degree adverbs that lessen the impact of the modified item are *almost*, *nearly*, *pretty*, and *far from*. These also occur with some non-gradable adjectives:

> *Mr Deane's glass is **almost** empty.* (FICT)

C Choices among degree adverbs as modifiers

Conversation and academic prose have very different preferences in their choice of degree modifiers. Conversational speakers use many informal amplifiers that are avoided in academic prose; these include *bloody* (BrE), *damn*, *totally*, *absolutely*, *real*, and *really*. Forms like *bloody* and *damn* are taboo words which can be offensive in some contexts:

> *You're stupid, you're* ***bloody*** *stupid!* (CONV)
>
> *He'll look* ***really*** *sweet.* (CONV)
>
> *I got that speeding ticket and now I'm making* ***damn*** *sure I don't speed.* (CONV)

Academic prose uses more formal amplifiers, including *extremely*, *highly*, *entirely*, *fully*:

> *Indeed it is* ***extremely*** *difficult to establish any truly satisfactory system.* (ACAD†)
>
> *The* ***highly*** *complex process of adjustment to infection is determined by many variables.* (ACAD)

However, the two most common amplifiers for both conversation and academic prose are the same: *very* and *so* (although both tend to be more common in conversation). They occur with many different adjectives, but general positive words (*good*, *nice*) are the most common in conversation:

> *That sounds* ***very*** *good.* (CONV)
>
> *Oh, it's* ***so*** *nice.* (CONV)

Academic prose has a greater variety of adjectives that occur with *so* and *very*. For example:

> *It will not be* ***so*** *straightforward to achieve.* (ACAD†)
>
> *Racial preferences are* ***very*** *pronounced.* (ACAD)

7.11.5 Additive/restrictive adverbs

Additive adverbs show that one item is being added to another. For example:

1 *Oh, my dad was a great guy,* ***too****.* (CONV)

2 *The experiment* ***also*** *illustrates how thoroughgoing one has to be in applying quantum mechanics.* (ACAD)

Additive adverbs typically single out one particular part of the clause's meaning as being 'additional' to something else. However, context is often essential to determine the intended comparison. For example, **1** can mean either that my dad was a great guy in addition to having other qualities, or that someone else was also a great guy.

Restrictive adverbs such as *only* are similar to additive adverbs because they focus attention on a certain element of the clause. They serve to emphasize the importance of one part of the proposition, restricting the truth of the proposition either primarily or exclusively to that part:

> *The idea of anybody, Marge* ***especially****, liking that wall-eyed ox in preference to Dickie made Tom smile.* (FICT)
>
> ***Only*** *those who can afford the monthly payment of $1,210.05, plus $91.66 a month during probation, can be ordered to pay.* (NEWS)

See 11.6.6 for a fuller discussion of additive and restrictive adverbials.

7.11.6 Stance adverbs

Adverbs can be used to express three types of **stance**: epistemic, attitude, and style. These are briefly exemplified here, leaving a more detailed discussion to 11.13–16.

A Epistemic stance adverbs

These express a variety of meanings:

- showing levels of certainty or doubt:

  *No it's alright I'll **probably** manage with it.* (CONV)

- commenting on the reality or actuality of a proposition:

  ***Actually** I'm not very fussy at all.* (CONV)

- showing that a proposition is based on some evidence, without specifying the exact source:

  *The supernumerary instar is **reportedly** dependent on the density of the parental population.* (ACAD)

- showing the limitations on a proposition:

  ***Typically**, the front top six teeth will decay because of the way the child has sucked on its bottle.* (NEWS)

- conveying imprecision—these adverbs are also called **hedges**:

  *It was **kind of** strange.* (CONV)

  *I ain't seen this series – I just **sort of** remember from the last series.* (CONV) <note: *ain't* is a non-standard form; see 8.8.5>

Many hedges occur as adverbials. However, hedges are also common as modifiers of phrases and words. In conversation, hedges are often used to show imprecision of word choice. In the following example *a little flaming fire thing* is marked as imprecise by the use of *like* as a hedge:

*They'd bring **like** a little flaming fire thing.* (CONV†)

Hedges are also common with numbers, measurements, and quantities. These hedges are also called **approximators**:

*They were suing Kurt for **like** seventy thousand dollars.* (CONV)

***About** 15 families attended the first meeting.* (NEWS†)

*Prices were lower across the board, with **nearly** all blue-chip stocks losing ground.* (NEWS)

B Attitude stance adverbs

These adverbs express a speaker's or writer's emotional attitude toward a proposition:

*I lost the manual that goes with it, **unfortunately**.* (CONV)

***Surprisingly**, the dividend rates of some pretty solid companies equal and sometimes exceed rates available from bonds and certificates of deposit.* (NEWS)

C Style stance adverbs

These adverbs tell something about a speaker's manner of speaking. For example, is the speaker using language sincerely, frankly, honestly, simply, or technically?

> *Crackers she is, that woman!* ***Honestly****! She's crackers!* (CONV)
>
> ***Frankly****, Dee Dee suspects that in this instance she may also be a victim of lookism, i.e., discrimination against persons who do not measure up to an arbitrary, unrealistic and sexist standard of beauty.* (NEWS†)
>
> ***Quite simply****, life cannot be the same.* (NEWS†)

7.11.7 Linking adverbs

Linking adverbs make connections between sections of discourse. They show how the meaning of one section of text is related to another. For example:

> *They need to propel themselves upwards and it is that moment of suspension coming between their force upwards and the force of gravity downwards that is so important.* ***Thus*** *it is possible to fly onto and off apparatus as separate tasks.* (ACAD†)
>
> *And the month before he left, he had made several long distance phone calls to Arizona and Ohio. Police,* ***however****, would not say where they were concentrating their search.* (NEWS)

Linking adverbs serve as adverbials and are covered in detail in 11.17–19.

7.11.8 Other meanings

In addition to the categories specified above, adverbs occasionally realize other meanings. For example, consider the following:

1 *The technical achievement of opening a vessel measured* ***angiographically*** *was similarly successful for both groups of patients.* (ACAD)

2 *When there is a funeral, the body is washed* ***symbolically*** *as part of the service.* (NEWS)

In **1**, *angiographically* might be considered a manner adverb, but more specifically it specifies the method or **means** used to measure the vessel. In **2**, the adverb makes clear that the body washing is symbolic in intent, and it could therefore be considered an adverb of **purpose**. The semantic categories of means and purpose are more commonly realized by structures other than adverbs (see 11.6.3–4).

Another adverb which does not fit into any of the above categories is the courtesy adverb *kindly*. It functions similarly to the insert *please* to mark a request as polite. It is used most commonly in fiction, often with an ironic (i.e. impolite) meaning:

> *In any case,* ***kindly*** *ask the authorities to call off their search.* (FICT)
>
> ***Kindly*** *attend to what I say and not to what Mr Shelly says, sir.* (FICT)

7.11.9 Semantic domains of adverbs in conversation and academic prose

In conversation, most of the common adverbs fall into three semantic domains: time, degree, and stance. In contrast, many common adverbs in academic prose are from the semantic domains of degree and linking (see Table 7.3). These distributions are similar to the distribution of adverbials, discussed in 11.6.9. Four common adverbs in conversation refer to time and place: *here*, *there*, *then*, and *now*. These adverbs are **deictics**—i.e. they make reference to the time and place of speaking (e.g. *now* refers to the actual time of speaking). Because speakers are physically together in conversation, it is easy to use these deictics (depending on shared context; see 13.2.1).

It is also typical of conversation to use vague or general language. This can be seen in the use of the conversational adverb *else*, which modifies general pronouns like *something* and *someone*:

> *If we run out of toilet rolls right, someone* ***else*** *can buy them cause I bought the last two lots.* (CONV)
>
> *I thought I had something* ***else*** *to show you up there.* (CONV)

Stance adverbs are also often imprecise in conversation:

> *Angie's one is really* ***like*** *hot and will dry things.* (CONV)
>
> *You can still find that in Mexico in* ***sort of*** *hacienda-like places and ranchos.* (CONV)

Table 7.3 **Common adverbs in conversation and academic prose (at least 200 occurrences per million words, including both modifier and adverbial functions in AmE, BrE, or both)**

	CONV	ACAD
place	*here, there, away*	*here*
time	*now, then, again, always, still, today, never, ago, ever, just, yesterday, yet* (BrE), *already* (AmE), *sometimes* (AmE), *later* (AmE)	*now, then, again, always, still, already, sometimes, often, usually*
manner	*together* (AmE)	*significantly, well*
degree	*very, really, too, quite* (BrE), *exactly* (AmE), *right* (AmE, applied to time and place adverbials), *pretty* (AmE), *real* (AmE)	*very, quite, more, relatively*
additive/restrictive	*just, only, even, too, else, also* (AmE)	*just, only, even, too, also, especially, particularly*
stance	*of course, probably, really, like, actually, maybe, sort of, perhaps* (BrE), *kind of* (AmE)	*of course, probably, perhaps, generally, indeed*
linking	*then, so, anyway, though*	*then, so, however, e.g., i.e., therefore, thus*

And at that stage my plaster that I'd had on after the er op had only been off ***perhaps*** *a fortnight.* (CONV) <note: *op* = operation>

The higher number of linking adverbs in academic prose reflects the greater importance of logical arguments and overtly marking the connections between ideas.

Review

Major points in Grammar Bite C: Adverbs: roles and meanings

- ➤ Adverbs have many syntactic roles: modifier of adjective, modifier of other adverb, modifier of other elements such as pronouns and prepositional phrases, complement of preposition, adverbials (element of a clause), and stand-alone adverb.
- ➤ Adverbs belong to seven major meaning categories: place, time, manner, degree, additive/restrictive, stance, linking.
- ➤ The meaning of an adverb often varies with its context of use, and sometimes meanings are blended together.
- ➤ The frequency and use of common adverbs differs greatly between conversation and academic prose.

GRAMMAR BITE

D Comparative and superlative forms

7.12 Comparative and superlative forms of adjectives

Gradable adjectives can be marked to show comparative and superlative degree. These degrees can be marked either inflectionally (using a single word) or phrasally (using a construction of more than one word):

type of marking	comparative degree	superlative degree
inflectional	*stronger, softer*	*strongest, softest*
phrasal	*more difficult, more famous*	*most difficult, most famous*

Short adjectives (one syllable) generally take an inflectional suffix, such as *strong* and *soft* above. Notice that the addition of *-er* or *-est* can involve regular spelling changes to the adjective stem. Silent *-e* is omitted before adding the suffix (e.g. *safe, safer, safest,* not **safeer, *safeest*) and final *-y* is changed to *-i* if a consonant precedes it (e.g. *tidy, tidier, tidiest*). An adjective ending with a single vowel letter followed by a single consonant usually doubles the final consonant: (e.g. *wet, wetter, wettest,* not **weter, *wetest*). Three other adjectives—*good, bad,* and *far*—have irregular comparative and superlative forms:

good, better, best *bad, worse, worst* *far, further, furthest*

Longer adjectives often take phrasal comparison, using the degree adverbs *more* and *most*. *Difficult* and *famous* above are typical examples.

However, there is variation within these general patterns. Some two-syllable adjectives allow both types of comparison: e.g. *likelier* v. *more likely*; *narrowest* v. *most narrow*. Some short adjectives take phrasal as well as inflectional marking. For example, *fairer*, *fiercer*, and *prouder* are possible, but their phrasal alternatives also occur:

> *'Wouldn't that be* ***more fair****?' she asked.* (FICT)
>
> *Our women were* ***more fierce*** *than our men.* (NEWS)
>
> *'I think this is the one she is* ***most proud*** *of.'* (NEWS)

A possible reason for choosing the phrasal alternative is that it makes the comparison more prominent. In speech, the comparison can be emphasized further by stressing the word *more* or *most*.

Other general trends for the formation of comparatives and superlatives are summarized in Table 7.4.

Table 7.4 General trends for the formation of comparative and superlative adjectives

characteristic of adjective	form of comparative / superlative	examples
gradable adjectives of one syllable	almost always inflectional	*older, youngest*
two syllables ending in unstressed *-y*	generally inflectional	*easier, easiest, happier, happiest*
three syllables ending in *-y*	usually phrasal, sometimes inflectional	phrasal: *more unhappy*; inflectional: *almightier, almightiest*; *unhappier, unhappiest*
adjectives ending in *-ly*	varies with the adjective, some inflectional, some phrasal; many use both forms	inflectional: *earlier, earliest, likelier, likeliest*; phrasal: *more likely, most likely*
two syllables ending in unstressed vowel	usually inflectional	*mellower, narrowest, yellowest*
ending in syllabic /r/ in AmE or /ə/ in BrE or syllabic /l/	often inflectional	*cleverer, slenderest, tenderest, cruelest, feeblest, littler, nobler, simpler*
ending in *-ere* and *-ure* (stressed)	sometimes inflectional, usually phrasal	*most sincere, sincerest, most secure, securest*
gradable adjectives of two syllables with no internal morphology	usually phrasal	*more common, most common*
other adjectives longer than two syllables	almost always phrasal	*more beautiful, most incredible*
adjectives ending in derivational suffixes	almost always phrasal	*most useful, most mindless, more musical, more effective, more zealous*
adjectives formed with *-ed* and *-ing* (participial adjectives)	almost always phrasal	*more bored, most tiring*

7.12.1 The use of phrasal and inflectional markings

A Inflectional marking

Inflectionally marked comparatives and superlatives are most common in academic prose, and least common in conversation. Comparative degree is used twice as frequently as superlative.

Some common inflected comparative adjectives are:

CONV: *best, bigger, cheaper, easier, older*

FICT: *best, lower, older, younger*

NEWS: *best, better, biggest, greater, higher, highest, largest, latest, lower*

ACAD: *best, better, earlier, easier, greater, greatest, higher, highest, larger, largest, lower, older, smaller, wider*

It is striking that most of the common inflected adjectives have either an evaluative meaning (*greater, best*) or a descriptive meaning that often also implies an evaluation (e.g. *cheaper, older*).

B Phrasal comparison

In general, phrasal marking is less common than inflectional marking. Academic writing has the most occurrences of phrasal marking for comparative and superlative degree. Conversation has few occurrences.

Some common phrasally marked comparative and superlative adjectives are:

NEWS: *most important, more likely*

ACAD: *more important, most important, more likely, more difficult*

Academic prose uses more technical vocabulary, which includes longer adjectives. Because long adjectives tend to take phrasal rather than inflectional comparison, we find more phrasal marking overall in academic prose.

7.12.2 Comparatives and superlatives that are marked twice

Sometimes in conversation, adjectives are doubly marked for degree; that is, they have both inflectional and phrasal markers:

*This way, it's **more easier** to see.* (CONV)

*It's much **more warmer** in there.* (CONV)

In addition, irregular comparatives and superlatives are sometimes given the regular *-er* or *-est* ending, making *bestest* or *worser*:

*This is the **bestest** one you can read.* (CONV)

Doubly marked forms are sometimes used jokingly. In standard English they are considered unacceptable.

7.12.3 Adjectives with absolute meanings

Certain adjectives have absolute meanings: e.g. *dead, true, unique, perfect*. Degree marking seems redundant with these forms. Something is either dead or not dead, true or not—not more or less dead, or more or less true. As a result, prescriptive grammars sometimes state that these adjectives should not be made comparative or superlative, or be modified by degree adverbs such as *very*.

However, in conversation, degree marking with absolute adjectives is not unusual:

> *I'll just – trim the* ***very*** *dead ends off the side there.* (CONV)
>
> *That's* ***very*** *true.* (CONV)

Even in the expository registers, writers sometimes mark adjectives such as *unique* and *perfect* for comparative or superlative degree:

> *<...> the* ***most*** *unique transportation and distribution system for time sensitive inquiries.* (NEWS†)
>
> *The slates have* ***more*** *perfect planar partings.* (ACAD)

7.13 Comparative and superlative forms of adverbs

Like adjectives, gradable adverbs can be marked as comparative or superlative with an inflection or the use of *more* or *most* (for example, *fast*, *faster*, *fastest*; *frequently*, *more frequently*, *most frequently*). Inflected comparative and superlative forms are not used as often as they are with adjectives. In fact, superlative forms of adverbs are very rare, while comparative forms are only occasionally used. Examples include:

1 *I just kept working* ***harder*** *and* ***harder***. (NEWS†)

2 *He went to the altar every first Friday, sometimes with her,* ***oftener*** *by himself.* (FICT)

In some cases, an adverb can be made comparative either with the use of *more* or with the *-er* inflection. For example, **2** above illustrates the use of *oftener* where *more often* could also be used. This choice appears to be related to register and author style. *Oftener* occurs primarily in fiction, and is used by only a small number of writers. In contrast, the usual choice is *more often*:

> *I love live theatre, of course, I really ought to go* ***more often***. (CONV)

7.14 Comparative clauses and other degree complements

Gradable adjectives and adverbs can take clauses or phrases of degree as their complements. In these constructions, the strength of the adjective or adverb is compared against some standard or along some scale. For example:

> *Truna's only [a tiny bit taller* ***than me****].* (CONV)

Here the scale of tallness is relative to *me*. The adjective *taller* has the complement *than me*—a prepositional phrase.

7.14.1 Complements of adjectives

Comparative and degree complements of adjectives can be prepositional phrases or clauses. There are six major types of degree complements for adjectives. Two can be phrases or clauses; the final four can only be clauses. Only the first type can occur with an inflected comparative adjective (e.g. *taller*). In the following examples, the degree complement (such as a comparative clause) is enclosed in *[]*.

- **Type 1:** adjective-*er* + *than* + phrase/clause OR *more/less* + adjective + *than* + phrase/clause:

  Carrie was sure he must guess something was up but he seemed less ***suspicious*** *[than usual], perhaps because he was happier.* (FICT) <phrase>

  I did not want to go there if they were ***poorer*** *[than we were].* (FICT) <clause>

This is the most common type of comparative construction. It is particularly common in academic prose, where it is useful to help explain the nature of something by comparing or contrasting it with other things:

> *But a small sample for comparison is* ***better*** *[than nothing at all].* (ACAD)
>
> *Distances were in fact reported as being* ***shorter*** *[than they were in reality].* (ACAD)

- **Type 2:** *as* + adjective + *as* + phrase/clause:

  The last tinkle of the last shard died away and silence closed in ***as deep*** *[as ever before].* (FICT) <phrase>

  It's a good place – I mean, ***as good*** *[as you can get].* (CONV) <clause>

- **Type 3:** *so* + adjective + *that*-clause

  The murder investigation was ***so contrived*** *[that it created false testimony].* (NEWS†)

- **Type 4:** *so* + adjective + *as* + *to*-clause

  And if anybody was ***so foolhardy as*** *[to pass by the shrine after dusk] he was sure to see the old woman hopping about.* (FICT)

- **Type 5:** *too* + adjective + *to*-clause

  For larger systems the bundles of energy were ***too numerous*** *[to be countable].* (ACAD)

- **Type 6:** adjective + *enough* + *to*-clause

  1 *The stairs wouldn't be* ***strong enough*** *[to hold the weight].* (CONV)

Often the degree complement can be omitted. The listener or reader must then infer the comparison. For example, **1** could be reduced to:

> *The stairs wouldn't be* ***strong enough.***

7.14.2 Complements of adverbs

The clauses and phrases which occur as degree complements with adjectives can also occur with adverbs. The adverb phrase functions as an adverbial in all of the examples below.

- **Type 1:** adverb-*er* + *than*-phrase/clause OR *more/less* + adverb + *than*-phrase/clause

*He rode it **oftener** [than ever].* (FICT†) <phrase>

*Generally speaking, those higher in occupational status suffered **less acutely** [than those lower down].* (ACAD) <phrase>

*We expected this to happen **much quicker** [than it did].* (NEWS) <clause>

*It could happen **more quickly** [than anyone expects].* (NEWS) <clause>

- **Type 2:** *as* + adverb + *as*-phrase/clause

  *The normal scan must be resumed **as quickly** [as possible].* (ACAD) <phrase>

  *I didn't do **as well** [as I wish that I had].* (CONV) <clause>

- **Type 3:** *so* + adverb + *that*-clause

  *Albert had spoken **so calmly** [that it made her calm too].* (FICT)

- **Type 4:** *so* + adverb + *as to*-clause (this structure occurs most commonly with the adverb *far*):

  *He went **so far as** [to write home some vague information of his feelings about business and its prospects].* (FICT)

- **Type 5:** *too* + adverb + *to*-clause

  *The situation has deteriorated **too far** [to repair].* (NEWS)

- **Type 6:** adverb + *enough* + *to*-clause

  *At least four people were bitten **seriously enough** [to be hospitalized].* (NEWS)

As we saw for adjectives, the degree adverb in these constructions can usually occur without the following degree complement.

*You shouldn't go to bed **too early**!* (CONV)

This can be considered a type of **ellipsis** (see 8.5).

Review

Major points in Grammar Bite D: Comparative and superlative forms

- ➤ For gradable adjectives, comparative and superlative forms can be expressed with inflections (*-er*, *-est*) or as a phrase (with *more* and *most*).
  - ➤ Length, spelling, emphasis, and other factors contribute to the choice between inflection and phrase.
  - ➤ Comparative forms are more common than superlative.
  - ➤ The use of both comparatives and superlatives is more common in academic prose than conversation.
  - ➤ Inflectional comparison is more common than phrasal.
- ➤ Adjectives which are not strictly gradable (e.g. *unique*) are nevertheless sometimes marked for comparative or superlative degree.
- ➤ Adverbs can also have either inflectional comparison (*-er*, *-est*) or phrasal comparison (*more*, *most*).
- ➤ Adjectives and adverbs can take six different complement structures that show comparison.

8

Exploring the grammar of the clause

GRAMMAR BITES in this chapter

A Subordination, coordination, and ellipsis

- How to condense and elaborate meaning in grammar
- Subordination and dependent clauses: making grammar 'deeper'
- Coordination: making grammar 'broader'
- Ellipsis and condensation of structure: making grammar 'quicker and simpler'

B Subject–verb concord

- Concord: matching subjects and verbs in clauses
- Special cases of concord, such as collective nouns
- Notional concord v. grammatical concord
- The principle of proximity

C Negation

- Clause negation and local negation
- Negative contractions and verb contractions
- Choosing between *not*-negation and *no*-negation
- The scope of negation
- Assertive and non-assertive forms

D Independent clauses

- Declarative clauses: statements
- Interrogative clauses: questions
- Imperative clauses: directives
- Exclamative clauses and non-clausal material

E Dependent clauses

- Finite v. non-finite dependent clauses
- Finite clauses: complement, adverbial, relative, and other types
- Non-finite clauses: infinitive, *-ing*, *-ed*, and other types
- Dependent clauses without a main clause

8.1 Introduction

The **clause** is in many ways the key unit of grammar. Chapter 3 (3.4–5) surveyed simple clauses, seen as units structured around a verb phrase. In the simplest case, the chief elements of the clause—subject, verb phrase, object, predicative, and adverbial—are made up of phrases, which have been explored in some detail in Chapters 3–7.

However, we now turn to subordination: the type of syntactic structure where one clause is embedded as part of another. For example, clause elements like object or adverbial can be realized as other dependent clauses. We also need to describe how clauses can be combined by coordination, and the way simplified or condensed structures can be formed through ellipsis. The way in which clauses can be combined to make more complex structures is fundamental to grammar. The present chapter introduces the key concepts and terms. We explore the grammar of these structures in more detail in Chapters 9–13.

8.1.1 Clauses v. non-clausal material

Clauses are used very differently in different varieties of English. As a starting point, let's examine the distribution of clauses in discourse, using two text samples (the verb phrases are given in bold, and clauses are enclosed in *[]*):

Text sample 1: CONVERSATION IN A BARBER'S SHOP (*B* = barber, *C* = customer)

*B: [I **will put**,] [I **won't smile**.] – [**Tell** me [what **would** you **like** now?]]*
*C: Erm – [**shortened up** please Pete] – erm – [**shaved** a little at the back and sides]–[and then just sort of **brushed back** on the top a bit.]*
*B: Right, and [when you **say** [**shaved** a little bit]]*
*C: Yeah yo– – [you sort of just – **got** your thing] and zazoom!*
*B: Yeah [but – **is** it that short really?]*
C: Yeah to–, yeah and I
B: <unclear> *[you **want** a number four?]*
*C: Yeah [I **think** so]*
. . .
<later in the same conversation>
*B: So yeah, [I **was** well pleased] [cos you **remember** [the time before I **said** [I **wasn't** perfect.]]]*
C: <unclear>
*B: [That'**s** right] yeah – yeah – [[I **mean**] I'**m being** honest.]*
C: Yeah – mm.
. . .
*B: [I **was**] – [I **thought** [it **looked** good]] – [and I **thought**,] [I **was** quite confident [that it **would stay** in very well,] [you **know**?]] –*
C: Mm. (CONV)

Text sample 2: A COMPLETE NEWS STORY FROM THE *INDEPENDENT* NEWSPAPER

*[People [who **eat** a clove or more of garlic a day] **are** less likely [to **suffer** a heart attack, high blood pressure or thrombosis,] [doctors **said** yesterday,] [**writes** Liz Hunt.]] [New clinical trials **show** [that [**including** garlic in the diet] **can** significantly **reduce** cholesterol in the blood], according to Dr Jorg*

> *Grunwald, a research biologist from Berlin.] [High cholesterol levels **are associated** with atherosclerosis, or 'furring' of the arteries with fatty deposits, [which **can lead** to a heart attack.]] [Garlic **could** also [**reduce** high blood pressure] and [**prevent** blood cells sticking together,] risk factors for a heart attack, [Dr Grunwald, head of the medical and scientific department of Lichtwer Pharma, a German company that manufactures garlic pills, **said**.]] [The active ingredient in garlic **is thought** [to **be** the compound alliin.]]* (NEWS)

The differences between these two samples are striking:

The conversation text	In the newspaper text
includes non-clausal material (e.g. *right, yeah*)	all words and phrases belong to clauses
includes many single-clause units	there are no single-clause units
includes little clause embedding	the clauses contain many words

GRAMMAR BITE

A Subordination, coordination, and ellipsis

8.2 Devices of elaboration and condensation

This Grammar Bite introduces **coordination**, **subordination**, and **ellipsis**, three aspects of grammar which are closely interrelated, and which enable us to elaborate, combine, and reduce the structure of clauses. With coordination, two clauses are connected, with each having equal status, as in:

> *It's modern **but** it's clean.* (CONV)

With subordination, on the other hand, one clause is embedded as part of another clause, as in:

> ***Although** it's modern, it's clean.*

Finally, ellipsis is a device of simplification: it allows us to subtract words from the complete clause structure, wherever their meaning can be 'taken for granted' (^ marks the ellipsis):

> *It's clean **although** ^ modern.*
>
> *It's modern **but** ^ clean.*

8.3 Subordination and dependent clauses

We can see more exactly how subordination of clauses differs from coordination of clauses by looking at Figures 8.1 and 8.2. In the case of subordination, one clause (a dependent clause) is embedded as part of another clause (its main clause). In Figure 8.2, the dependent clause functions as an adverbial in the main clause. As shown by the repeated use of brackets in Text sample 2 (8.1.1), there can be further degrees of embedding: one dependent clause can be subordinate to another dependent clause. The following example, simplified and extracted from Text sample 2, further illustrates this:

> *[New clinical trials show [that [including garlic in the diet] can reduce cholesterol.]* (NEWS†)

Figure 8.1 Coordinated clauses

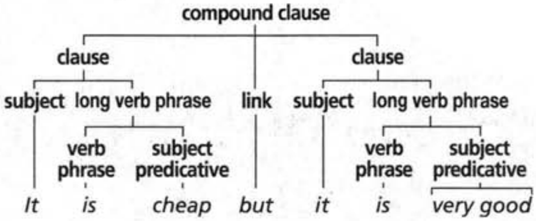
compound clause
clause
clause
subject
long verb phrase
link
subject
long verb phrase
verb phrase
subject predicative
verb phrase
subject predicative
It
is
cheap
but
it
is
very good

Figure 8.2 Main clause with embedded adverbial clause

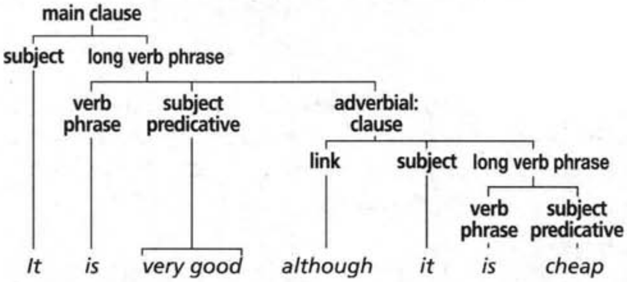
main clause
subject
long verb phrase
verb phrase
subject predicative
adverbial: clause
link
subject
long verb phrase
verb phrase
subject predicative
It
is
very good
although
it
is
cheap

Figure 8.3 shows this complex clause as a tree diagram. In this diagram, three clauses are marked as clause$_1$, clause$_2$, and clause$_3$: clause$_2$ functions as the object of *show*, and so it is subordinate to clause$_1$; clause$_3$ functions as the subject of *can reduce*, and so it is subordinate to clause$_2$.

When we classify clauses, we draw a major distinction between **independent clauses** (those which can stand alone without being subordinate to another clause) and **dependent clauses** (those which have to be part of a larger clause). Hence clause$_1$ in Figure 8.3 is an independent clause, while clause$_2$ and clause$_3$ are dependent clauses.

Figure 8.3 **Main clause with two degrees of embedding**

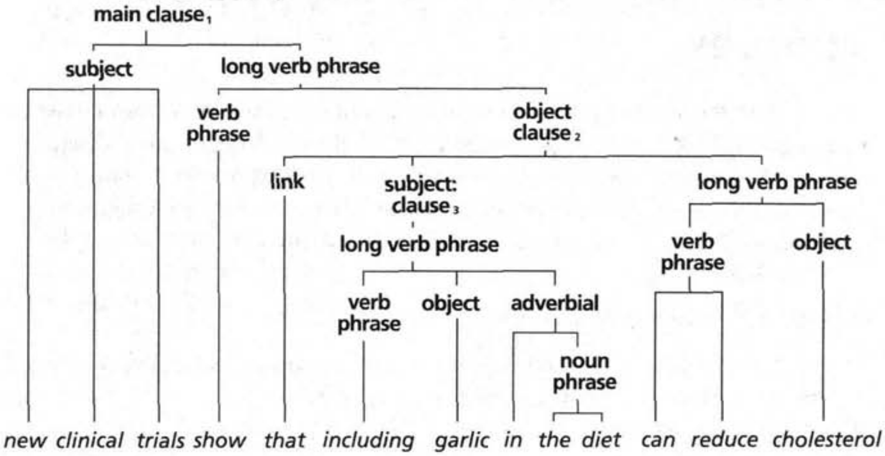
main clause$_1$
subject
long verb phrase
verb phrase
object clause$_2$
link
subject: clause$_3$
long verb phrase
long verb phrase
verb phrase
object
adverbial
noun phrase
verb phrase
object
new clinical trials show that including garlic in the diet can reduce cholesterol

8.3.1 Subordinators as clause links

Subordinators differ in important ways from other clause links. Subordinators are like **coordinators**, but are different from **linking adverbials**, because they occur in a fixed position at the front of their clause. But, unlike coordinators, the clause introduced by a subordinator is always a dependent clause, and it does not necessarily follow the clause to which it is linked:

He was screaming ***because*** *he had to go home.* (CONV)

Examples **1** and **1a** illustrate how it is often possible to move a dependent clause to a different position; but **2** and **2a** show this is not possible for coordinate clauses:

1 *I'm still just as afraid of her,* ***although*** *she's no longer my teacher.* (FICT)
1a ***Although*** *she's no longer my teacher, I'm still just as afraid of her.* <equivalent to **1**>

2 *She's no longer my teacher,* ***but*** *I'm still just as afraid of her.*
2a *****But*** *I'm still just as afraid of her, she's no longer my teacher.* <not equivalent to **2**>

***Wh*-words** are like subordinators in normally being fixed at the beginning of a dependent clause. However, unlike subordinators, *wh*-words usually fill a major syntactic role (e.g. subject, object or adverbial) in the dependent clause (see 2.5.1).

8.3.2 Signals of subordination

Subordination can be signalled by:

- an overt link, in the form of a subordinator or *wh*-word
- a non-finite verb phrase, that is, by a verb phrase introduced by an infinitive, *-ing* participle or *-ed* participle.

Finite clauses are marked for tense or modality. Finite dependent clauses usually have an overt link, starting with a subordinator or a *wh*-word:

*You can drink your orange [**if** you like].* (CONV)

Non-finite clauses have no tense and they cannot include a modal verb. Non-finite dependent clauses usually have no overt link, but the non-finite verb form itself signals that the clause is subordinate:

*[**Leaving** the road], they went into the deep darkness of the trees.* (FICT†)

Most non-finite clauses have no subject, and so the verb phrase typically begins the clause. Hence, in most cases, the listener has no problem in recognizing when the speaker is beginning a dependent clause. (For more on finite and non-finite dependent clauses, see Grammar Bite E in this chapter.)

8.3.3 Clause patterns revisited

To see in more detail how dependent clauses are embedded in main clauses, we return to the clause patterns and elements previewed in 3.4–5. At that point we introduced basic clause structures with the elements S (subject), O (object), P (predicative), and A (adverbial) realized by phrases. But now we describe how S, O, P and A can themselves be clauses. Table 8.1 identifies by # the major ways in which finite and non-finite clauses can be elements of a main clause.

Table 8.1 Typical realizations of the clause elements S, O, P, A

clause element	noun phrase	verb phrase	adj. phrase	adv. phrase	prep. phrase	finite clause	inf. clause	*ing-* clause	*ed-* clause
subject (S)	●					#	#	#	
verb phrase (V)		●							
subject predicative (SP)	●		●		●	#	#	#	
direct object (DO)	●					#	#	#	#
indirect object (IO)	●					#			
prep. object	●					#		#	
object predicative (OP)	●		●			#	#	#	
adverbial (A)	●			●	●	#	#	#	#

Key: adj. = adjective; adv. = adverb; prep. = prepositional; inf. = infinitive.

These dependent clause patterns are illustrated below:

- subject:

  finite clause: ***That it would be unpopular with students or colleges** was obvious.* (NEWS)

  infinitive clause: ***To meet the lady** was easy enough.* (FICT†)

  ing-clause: ***Including garlic in the diet** can significantly reduce cholesterol.* (NEWS†)

- subject predicative:

  finite clause: *That's **what I'll do tomorrow**.* (CONV)

  infinitive clause: *Their function is **to detect the cries of predatory bats**.* (ACAD)

- direct object:

finite clause: *She hoped* ***that Joe wouldn't come in drunk.*** (FICT†)
ing-clause: *Stephanie disliked* ***living in this unfinished mess.*** (FICT†)
infinitive clause: *'I wouldn't like* ***to leave him,*** *' Olivia said.* (FICT)

- prepositional object:
  finite clause: *Well you pay for* ***what you want.*** (CONV)
  ing-clause: *Please forgive me for* ***doubting you.*** (FICT)
- object predicative:
  infinitive clause: *No one can expect us* ***to sign our own death sentence.*** (NEWS†)
  ing-clause: *She watched her son George* ***scything the grass.*** (FICT)
  ed-clause: *I should have got my boots* ***mended.*** (FICT†)
- adverbial:
  finite clause: *I'm tense; excuse me* ***if I talk too much.*** (FICT)
  infinitive clause: *I borrowed a portable phone* ***to ring Waterloo.*** (NEWS)
  ing-clause: *She gazed down at the floor,* ***biting her lip.*** (FICT†)
  ed-clause: *I went on waiting,* ***tinged with doubt.*** (FICT)

8.4 Coordination

Unlike subordination, coordination can link words, phrases, or clauses:

> *'No black worth [his]* ***or*** *[her] salt would touch such a [black]* ***and*** *[white] merry-go-round.* (NEWS†) <coordination linking words>
>
> *'[A fool]* ***and*** *[his money] are soon parted,' he says.* (FICT) <coordination linking phrases>
>
> *[He had even called her parents]* ***and*** *[they didn't know where she was],* ***nor*** *[did her friends when he called them].* (FICT) <coordination linking clauses>

In addition, the coordinators *and*, *or*, *but*, and *nor* can function as utterance- or turn-initial links in speech (see 8.4.2 below). In this case, coordinators are very close in function to linking adverbials like *however*.

> *A:* ***And*** *you won't have that problem.*
> *B:* ***But*** *that's a, that's a, that's a different thing.* (CONV) <turn-initial coordination>

In what follows, we survey some aspects of the use of coordinators, drawing a broad distinction between phrase-level coordination (including coordination of words) and clause-level coordination.

8.4.1 Use of coordination

There are three major coordinators in English: *and*, *or*, and *but*. As Figure 8.4 shows, these coordinators are not equally common: *and* is much more common than *or* or *but*. Further, although it is often supposed that *and* is especially common in conversation, Figure 8.4 shows that *and* is actually most common in academic and fiction writing.

The other major coordinators—*but* and *or*—follow very different patterns: *but* occurs most often in conversation, whereas *or* occurs most often in academic writing. There is a fourth coordinator—*nor*—which occurs much less frequently, so that it does not show up in Figure 8.4.

Figure 8.4

Distribution of coordinators across registers

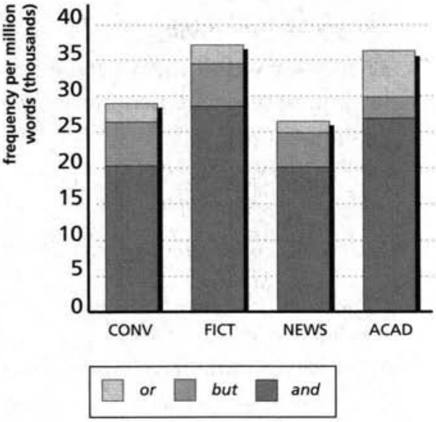

The registers also differ in the ways they use coordinators. Figure 8.5 shows that speakers in conversation are most likely to use *and* as a clause-level link, while in academic writing *and* is most likely to occur as a phrase-level link. Conversation often follows a simple mode of grammatical construction in simply adding one clause to another—what we later call the 'add-on' strategy (13.3.2). Hence coordinators in conversation are primarily clause-level links.

Figure 8.5

Percentage use of *and* as phrase-level v. clause-level connector

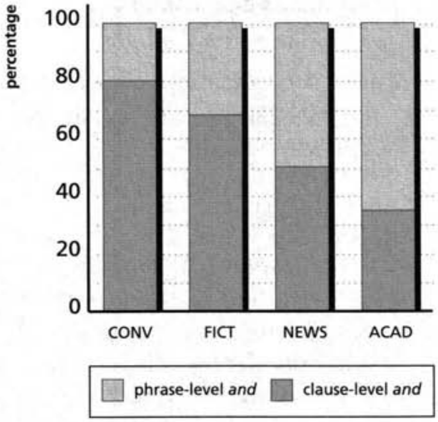

But is more frequent in conversation than the written registers, because people tend to highlight contrast and contradiction in dialog. Note the following typical use of *but* at or near the beginning of a speaker's turn:

1 *A: The golden rule is if you're reversing you must look behind you!*
*B: Yeah, **but** she said she did.* (CONV)

Academic writing contrasts very strongly with conversation in favoring phrase-level coordination, which helps to build up complex embedded structures:

2 *A distinction is needed between {$_1$ [elements, which include {$_2$ [nitrogen], [phosphorus] **and** [potassium]$_2$ }], which are mobile in the phloem] **and** [those which are comparatively immobile, for example, {$_3$ [calcium], [boron] **and** [iron]$_3$ }]$_1$ } <...> An example of the {$_4$ [uptake] **and** [transfer]$_4$ } of {$_5$ [nitrogen] **and** [phosphorus]$_5$ } during the period of grain filling of winter wheat is given in Table 2.5.* (ACAD†)

All the instances of *and* in **2** illustrate phrase-level coordination. Example **2** also illustrates two further aspects of coordination: (a) that the coordinator can link more than two elements, as in *nitrogen, phosphorus **and** potassium*; and (b) that structures of coordination can be embedded, one within the other (as shown by the brackets-within-brackets in the text). Curly brackets *{ }* are used to show whole coordinate constructions.

8.4.2 Some special uses of coordinators

A Sentence-initial and turn-initial coordinators

There is a well-known prescription prohibiting the use of coordinators at the beginning of a sentence. Nevertheless, coordination often occurs in this position. Sentence-initial or turn-initial coordination is most common at the beginning of a turn in conversation:

> *A: They started late last year.*
> *B:* ***And*** *what are your academic classes you're taking next semester, you're taking the art history class?* (CONV)

However, it is also relatively common in writing.

The coordinators show different preferences for initial position: *but* and *nor*, as 'stronger' linkers, are much more likely to take this prominent position than *and* or *or*.

B Coordination tags

Like sentence/turn-initial coordinators, coordination tags are frowned upon in writing but popular in conversation. The most common coordination tags are the phrases *or something, and everything, and things/stuff (like that)*:

1 *She uses a food processor* ***or something****.* (CONV)
2 *He has a lot of contacts* ***and things****.* (CONV†)
3 *They're all sitting down* ***and stuff****.* (CONV)

Coordination tags are a kind of vagueness marker or **hedge**: they are a grammatical way of waving one's hand, and saying '... of course I could add more'. The coordinator *and* or *or* is followed by a general noun or pronoun. But this does not mean that the coordination is always at the word or phrase level. On the contrary, in **3** above, the coordination tag is added on to a whole clause.

In contrast to the expressions above, the tags *or so, and so on*, and *etc.* (*et cetera*, a Latin expression meaning 'and other things') are mainly associated with expository writing:

> *I waited for a day* ***or so****.* (NEWS†)
>
> *The Libertas catalogue menu offered a choice of six search modes (author and title, title, subject,* ***etc.****).* (ACAD)

C Correlative coordinators

The correlative coordinators *both ... and, either ... or, neither ... nor* were introduced in 2.4.6. They are also strongly associated with the written registers, probably because they add greater clarity and precision:

> *Symptoms may appear first in* ***either*** *younger* ***or*** *older leaves.* (ACAD)

8.5 Ellipsis and structural condensation

Ellipsis is the omission of elements which are recoverable from the linguistic context or the situation. In the following examples, the ellipted elements are re-inserted in < >:

1 *He squeezed her hand but* <he> *met with no response.* (FICT)
2 *He and his mate both jumped out, he* <jumped out> *to go to the women, his mate* <jumped out> *to stop other traffic on the bridge.* (FICT)
3 *Perhaps, as the review gathers steam, this can now change. It needs to* <change>. (NEWS)

Notice that the words within < >, which were not part of the original text, can be added without changing the meaning of the clause and without producing an ungrammatical structure. These are the hallmarks of ellipsis: it **condenses** (or reduces) the same meaning into a smaller number of words.

8.5.1 Types of ellipsis: initial, medial, final; textual, situational

The words omitted by ellipsis can be at the front, middle, or end of a clause. In the examples above, **1** shows initial ellipsis (omitting the subject of the second clause), **2** illustrates medial ellipsis, and **3** illustrates final ellipsis.

Another distinction is between textual ellipsis and situational ellipsis. In textual ellipsis, the missing words can be found in the nearby text. Typically, the missing words occur in the preceding text, as in **1–3** above. Thus, textual ellipsis is a means of avoiding unnecessary repetition.

In situational ellipsis, on the other hand, the missing words are clear from the situation in which language is used (^ = ellipsis)

4 ^ *Saw Susan and her boyfriend in Alder weeks ago.* (CONV)

Here the subject *I* is omitted, but it can easily be supplied from the context. Situational ellipsis usually takes the form of omitting initial function words in a clause, such as a pronoun subject, an auxiliary verb, or the initial article of a noun phrase. It is a common feature of conversation, but it also often occurs in fiction texts imitating the elliptical habits of speech:

5 *Gillespie made his examination. '^ Middle-aged man,' he said '^ anywhere between forty-five and sixty, more probably in the middle or late fifties. ^ Body seems to be in fair condition, ^ own hair, ^ not thinning. ah, yes – ^ depressed fracture of skull. He's been in the water for some time, ^ clothing ^ utterly soaked, ^ body ^ chilled.'* (FICT)

In most cases, we can easily find and fill in the gaps left by ellipsis, using grammatical and situational knowledge. (See also 8.14 on non-clausal material and block language, and 13.5 for more examples of ellipsis in conversation.)

8.5.2 Other structures with ellipsis

Ellipsis, like coordination, is a variable device which can occur in many grammatical structures. In the above paragraphs we have noted ellipsis occurring:

- in coordinate clauses

- in dependent clauses
- at the beginning of independent clauses.

Ellipsis also occurs in more specialized cases:

A Ellipsis in comparative clauses

Comparative clauses generally mirror the structure of a preceding clause. Repeated elements in the comparative clause are normally left out (or replaced by a **pro-form**). In the following examples, the ellipted elements are reinserted in < >:

> *She looks older than my mother* <does>. (CONV)
>
> *One result was that older people made greater head movements than younger people* <did>. (ACAD)

B Ellipsis in question–answer sequences

> *A: Have you got an extra exam on Monday?*
> *B:* <I've got> *Two exams* <on Monday>.
> *A: What exams* <have you got>?
> *B:* <I've got> *German, reading and French oral – French oral's a doddle.*
> *A: Is it* <a doddle>*?* (CONV) <note: *a doddle* = very easy>

In the quick give-and-take of conversation, speakers leave out what is easily recoverable from the linguistic context or the situation. This applies particularly to answers to questions. (On ellipsis in conversation, see further 13.5.)

C Ellipsis in noun phrases

Ellipsis is also common in noun phrases. We find ellipsis following independent genitives (**1** below), quantifiers (**2**), and semi-determiners (**3**):

1 *Under Reagan, everything bad that happened was either my fault or Nixon's <u>fault</u> or Congress's <u>fault</u> or some* ***foreigner's*** ^. (NEWS†)
2 *How's everyone's <u>champagne</u>? Tommy do you want some* ***more*** ^? (CONV)
3 *It gets you from one <u>place</u> to the* ***next*** ^. (CONV)

(Underlining shows the repeated words that have been omitted.)

8.5.3 Other forms of condensation

Pronouns and other pro-forms are similar to ellipsis in that they reduce the length and complexity of clauses. Pronouns substitute for full noun phrases that are retrievable from context, while other pro-forms, such as the substitute verb *do*, replace a whole predicate. The following examples illustrate how each of these methods can abbreviate what a person needs to say or write (the pro-form is in bold; the fuller expression is underlined):

- pronoun:

> *We borrowed <u>the tennis racquets</u> when Bonnie and Steve were here. And we used* ***them*** *twice I think.* (CONV)

- other pro-forms:

> *A: Who <u>took that picture</u>?*
> *B: I* ***did***. (CONV)

Another form of structural condensation occurs with non-finite clauses, which usually omit the subject and auxiliary verb. (This makes a difference to the usefulness of these clauses; see 11.10 on adverbial finite and non-finite clauses.) Compare:

1 *I don't know* ***what to write about.*** (CONV) <non-finite clause>
1a *I don't know* ***what I should write about.*** <finite clause>

Generally speaking, pronouns and pro-forms, like ellipsis, are much more common in conversation, whereas non-finite clauses are more common in the written registers.

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE A**: Subordination, coordination, and ellipsis

- Subordination and coordination are ways of 'deepening' and 'broadening' grammar.
- Subordinate clauses are embedded as part of another clause.
- Subordination is signaled by an overt link (such as a subordinator) or by a non-finite verb phrase.
- Coordinate clauses are joined, with each having equal status.
- Coordination can also be used to join phrases.
- Despite prescriptive rules, coordinators are commonly used at the beginning of a turn in conversation, and at the start of a new sentence in writing.
- Ellipsis is a way of simplifying grammatical structure through omission.
- Ellipsis is common in a wide range of contexts. A listener can usually reconstruct the missing words from the preceding text or from the situation.
- Pronouns and other pro-forms also reduce the length and complexity of clauses.

GRAMMAR BITE

B Subject–verb concord

8.6 The subject–verb concord rule

The rule of **subject–verb concord** is that in finite clauses, the verb phrase in a clause agrees with the subject in terms of number (singular or plural) and person (first, second or third person). Except for the verb *be*, subject–verb concord is limited to the present tense, and to the choice between the base form (e.g. *walk*) and the *s*-form (e.g. *walks*) of the finite verb. There is no subject–verb concord with modal auxiliaries, non-finite verbs, imperatives, or the subjunctive: these do not vary for number or person.

Although the rules for subject–verb concord are easy to state, in practice they are not always so easy to apply. Difficulties arise because 'singular' and 'plural' can be understood either in terms of form or in terms of meaning. We consider some special cases below.

8.6.1 Concord with plurals not ending in *-s*

Zero plurals, like *sheep*, do not change between singular and plural (see 4.8.4). These forms appear to break the concord rule, but in fact do not. (The subject noun phrase is marked by *[]* in examples.)

1a *[The sheep]* ***is*** *infected by ingesting the mollusc.* (ACAD†)
1b *In its grassy centre [the dark-wooled sheep]* ***were*** *grazing.* (FICT†)

The different forms of *be* used in **1a** and **1b** obey the concord rule: *sheep* in **1a** is singular, and in **1b** it is plural.

There are also some pronouns and semi-determiners which do not change between singular and plural, e.g. *which, who, the former, the latter*:

2a *He is beside* ***a rock face*** *[which]* ***is*** *like the loose side of a gigantic mule.* (FICT†)
2b *These are* ***the moments*** *[which]* ***are*** *calculable, and cannot be assessed in words.* (FICT†)

In these cases, the concord is shown by the antecedent nouns of the pro-form: e.g. singular *a rock face* in **2a** v. plural *the moments* in **2b**.

8.6.2 Concord with singular forms ending in *-s*

Some nouns ending in *-s* are singular (e.g. *billiards, checkers, measles*, etc.; see 4.8.5), and therefore take a singular verb. Nouns denoting fields of study (e.g. *mathematics, economics, politics*) are also singular, but they allow some variation between singular concord (in **1**) and plural concord (in **2**):

1 *[Politics]* ***wishes*** *to change reality, it* ***requires*** *power, and thus it* ***is*** *primarily in the service of power.* (NEWS)
2 *[The oppositionist politics] of the 1970s and early 1980s* ***are*** *over.* (NEWS)

In these cases the singular tends to be used where the meaning is 'field of study', and the plural where reference is to 'mode(s) of behavior'.

8.6.3 Concord with coordinated subjects

A Coordination by *and*

Subjects consisting of noun phrases coordinated by *and* take plural concord, since *and* gives these subjects plural reference:

1 *[The trees and the church]* ***are*** *reflected in the water.* (ACAD)

However, there are occasional exceptions to this rule. Where we find singular concord, the subject refers to something that can be viewed as a single entity:

2 *[The anxiety and anger]* ***is*** *then taken away and suddenly* ***erupts*** *in the family environment, placing stress on other members of the household.* (NEWS)

For example, in **2** *anxiety and anger* are merged into a single emotional state.

B Coordination by *or*

Subjects consisting of noun phrases coordinated by *or* generally take singular concord if both noun phrases are singular:

Check that [no food or drink] ***has*** *been consumed.* (ACAD)

However, examples with plural concord also occur occasionally:

I'll wait until [my sister or mother] ***come*** *down, and I'll eat with them.* (FICT)

Where one of the noun phrases linked by *or* is plural, plural concord is the rule:

Whether [interest rates or intervention] ***were*** *the chosen instrument, and in what combination, was probably a secondary question.* (NEWS)

C Coordination by *neither ... nor*

Subjects consisting of phrases coordinated by *neither ... nor* have singular concord where both noun phrases are singular, and plural concord where both are plural:

[Neither geologic evidence nor physical theory] ***supports*** *this conclusion.* (ACAD)

But [neither the pilots nor the machinists] ***appear*** *interested.* (NEWS)

D Agreement of person

Coordination of different grammatical persons causes no problem with *and*, since a plural verb is used (in accordance with the general rule). Where *or* or *neither ... nor* link different grammatical persons, the verb tends to agree with the closest noun phrase:

Not one leaf is to go out of the garden until [either I or ***my chief taster****]* ***gives*** *the order.* (FICT)

In many years of service [neither Phillips nor ***I****]* ***have*** *seen anything like it.* (FICT)

This pattern follows the **principle of proximity** (see 8.6.7 below).

8.6.4 Concord with quantifying expressions

The indefinite pronouns *anybody/anyone*, *everybody/everyone*, *nobody/no one*, and *somebody/someone* agree with singular verb forms:

1 *[Everybody]****'s*** *doing what they think they're supposed to do.* (FICT)
2 *[Nobody]* ***has*** *their fridges repaired any more, they can't afford it.* (FICT)

Here subject–verb concord is singular, even though co-referent pronouns and determiners may be plural, as we notice from the forms *they* and *their* in **1** and **2** above.

Quantifying pronouns such as *all*, *some*, *any*, *none*, *a lot*, *most* can take either singular or plural concord, according to whether they have singular or plural reference. If an *of*-phrase follows, the noun phrase after *of* indicates whether singular or plural is required:

3 *[Some of it]* ***is*** *genuine, some of it all a smoke-screen.* (NEWS)
4 *[Most of the copies]* ***are*** *seized in raids.* (NEWS)
5 *Yeah all people are equal yet [some]* ***are*** *more equal than others.* (CONV)

In **3**, the concord is singular, as signalled by the singular pronoun *it* in the subject phrase. In **4**, the concord is plural, signalled by *copies*. Example **5** illustrates the case where there is no *of*-phrase, but the context signals a plural meaning (*some = some people*).

Singular concord is normal with *each* and *one*. Both singular and plural forms are found with *either* and *neither*, although the singular is often considered more 'correct':

[Neither of these words] ***is*** *much help.* (FICT)

[Neither of us] ***believe*** *in useless symbols.* (FICT)

Concord patterns also vary with *any* and *none*. With these pronouns, the singular was traditionally considered 'correct', but there is little sign of such a deliberate preference these days:

[None of us] ***has*** *been aboard except Vinck.* (FICT)

[None of us] really ***believe*** *it's ever going to happen.* (FICT†)

8.6.5 Concord with collective nouns

Singular collective nouns like *team*, *government*, *committee* allow either singular or plural concord in British English, but in American English the singular is the normal choice. Compare these examples from British English:

[The flock] ***is*** *infected with Salmonella Typhimurium.* (BrE NEWS†)

[The Catholic flock – who constitute one third of Malawi's population] – ***are*** *tired of dividing their loyalties.* (BrE NEWS)

Plural concord, where it occurs, puts the focus on the individuals making up the group, rather than the group as a whole. A few collective nouns, like *family* and *crew*, regularly take both singular and plural concord in British English:

[Her own family] ***has*** *suffered the anguish of repossession.* (BrE NEWS)

[The family] ***are*** *absolutely devastated.* (BrE NEWS)

In fact, nearly all human collective nouns occasionally occur with plural concord in British English. For example:

[The Government] ***have*** *decreed that we will have to rebid for our betting licence.* (BrE NEWS†)

In contrast, singular concord is the norm with collective nouns in American English:

3 *[His committee]* ***approves*** *covert operations only when there's a consensus.* (AmE NEWS†)

4 *[The Government]* ***has*** *indicated it will make provision in the Bill for such an amendment.* (AmE NEWS)

8.6.6 Notional concord

Competing with the rule of grammatical concord, there is a tendency to follow **notional concord**, that is, to let the *notion* of singular/plural in the subject determine the form of the verb, rather than the grammatical *form* of the subject. Notional concord helps explain many of the special cases we have considered in 8.6.3–5. Notional concord is also behind the following cases.

A Concord with names, titles, etc.

Plural names, titles, and quotations take singular concord if the reference is to a single thing (a country, a newspaper, a dish, etc.):

> *The country can ill afford an operation that would permit others to argue that [the United States]* ***does*** *not respect international law.* (NEWS)
>
> *[The New York Times]* ***was****, as usual, dryly factual.* (FICT†)

B Concord with measure expressions

Plural measure expressions take singular verb forms if the reference is to a single measure (amount, weight, length, time, etc.):

> *[Two pounds]* ***is*** *actually quite a lot.* (CONV†)
>
> *[Eighteen years]* ***is*** *a long time in the life of a motor car.* (NEWS)

8.6.7 Concord and proximity

In addition to grammatical concord and notional concord, the **principle of proximity** sometimes plays a part in subject–verb agreement. This principle is the tendency, especially in speech, for the verb to agree with the closest (pro)noun, even when that (pro)noun is not the head of the subject noun phrase. For example:

> *Do you think [any of them]* ***are*** *bad Claire?* (CONV)
>
> *[Not one of the people who'd auditioned]* ***were*** *up to par.* (FICT†)

8.6.8 Concord where the subject is a clause

Singular concord is the rule when the subject is a finite or non-finite clause:

> *[Carrying cases, boxes, parcels, or packages]* ***was*** *a task only for servants.* (FICT)

But **nominal relative clauses** can have plural as well as singular concord:

> *[What we do know]* ***is*** *this.* (NEWS†)
>
> *[What is needed]* ***are*** *effective regulators.* (NEWS)

8.6.9 Concord with subject–verb inversion

There are some clause patterns where the subject follows, rather than precedes, the verb phrase. This pattern, known as subject–verb inversion, can give rise to opposing tendencies in the choice of subject–verb agreement.

A Existential there

With existential *there is/are*, the noun phrase which follows the main verb *be* is termed the **notional subject**. In written registers, the notional subject generally determines concord with the verb:

> *There* ***was*** *[candlelight], and there* ***were*** *[bunks with quilts heaped on top].* (FICT)

However, in conversation a contrary trend is observed: the verb is likely to be singular even when the following notional subject is plural:

There's [so many police forces that don't even have computers yet]. (CONV†)

Gary, there's [apples] if you want one. (CONV)

(See 12.5–10 for a full discussion of existential *there.*)

B Other instances of subject–verb inversion

Other patterns similar to *there is/are* occur in conversation, where there is a tendency to attach the singular verb contraction *'s* to the preceding adverb:

***Here's** your shoes.* (CONV)

***Where's** your tapes?* (CONV)

***How's** mum and dad?* (CONV†)

Here again, concord in conversation is singular even where the following 'notional subject' is plural.

8.6.10 Vernacular concord in conversation

In some non-standard speech, verbs like *say, do,* and *be* are not inflected for number, as in:

*She **don't** like Amanda though.* (CONV) <= *She **doesn't**...*>

***Times is** hard.* (CONV) <= *Times **are** ...*>

8.6.11 Concord and pronoun reference

There is normally agreement between subject–verb concord and any following personal pronouns that refer back to the subject:

*In two short years [the government] **has** seemed to lose **its** grip.* (NEWS)

However, there are exceptions to this where the plural pronoun *they* is used as a singular reference unspecified for sex (as discussed in 4.10.3):

*Everybody**'s** doing what **they** think **they**'re supposed to do.* (FICT)

It is common in speech to use *they* for a person whose sex is unspecified or unknown, and this use is increasingly found in written as well as spoken registers.

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE B**: Subject–verb concord

- In finite clauses, the subject and verb need to match in terms of concord (i.e. number and person).
- There are a few special cases for concord, such as collective nouns, quantifiers, and coordinated noun phrases as subject.
- Notional concord and proximity are two factors which influence grammatical concord.
- There is sometimes a mismatch between subject–verb concord and pronoun reference.

GRAMMAR BITE

c Negation

8.7 Verbs as operators

To explain negative as well as other kinds of clauses in English, it is useful to recognize the special syntactic role of the **operator**. The operator is the verb used for clause negation or for forming questions (interrogative clauses). To form a negative clause, the negative particle *not* is inserted after the operator. For interrogative clauses, the operator is placed in front of the subject noun phrase (**subject–operator inversion**). There are three major categories of operators:

A The first auxiliary verb in the verb phrase

Clause negation (the main verb is underlined below):

*They **are** not forgotten.* (FICT)

*They **have** not been very helpful.* (NEWS)

*I **won**'t fail.* (FICT)

Question formation:

***Are** you kidding?* (CONV)

***Have** you tried that?* (CONV)

*Where **have** you been?* (FICT)

*What **could** I do?* (FICT)

B The copula *be*

Clause negation:

*You**'re** not pretty.* (CONV)

Question formation:

***Are** you serious?* (CONV)

C The dummy auxiliary verb *do*

Clause negation:

*Well he **does**n't live down there now.* (CONV)

Question formation:

*Where **does** she live?* (CONV)

When no operator exists (i.e. for simple present and past tenses), the dummy operator *do* is inserted to form negative and interrogative clauses:

positive	**negative**
*I **looked**.*	I ***did**n't **look**.*

declarative	**interrogative**
*It **makes** sense.*	***Does** it **make** sense?*

(The main verb *have* and the quasi-modals *need* and *dare* are sometimes used as operators; see 8.8.6 and 8.11.7 below.)

8.7.1 Operators alone

Apart from their role in forming negation and questions, operators have another function. It is often useful to omit everything in a clause after the operator, where it would simply repeat what has already been said. This is a popular type of final ellipsis (8.5.1):

1 A: *You've lost some weight since I've seen you.*
B: *I* ***have*** ^, *yes.* (CONV)

2 A: *You don't know Murphy's Law?*
B: *Yeah, <...> if anything can go wrong, it* ***will*** ^. (CONV)

3 A: *Didn't you have an aunt like that?*
B: *A great aunt.*
A: *You* ***did*** ^? (CONV)

In **1–3**, the ellipsis is marked by ^, the operator is in bold, and the piece of text which is semantically repeated through the ellipsis is underlined. The operator is typically an auxiliary verb, so this is the exceptional case where an auxiliary verb occurs 'stranded', without the main verb which normally follows it. Note, in **3**, that the dummy auxiliary *do* occurs here for simple present and past tenses, just as it does in forming negation and questions.

8.8 Negation

Negation is largely a feature of clauses: a clause is either positive or negative. The most common way of making a clause negative is to insert the negative particle *not*, or its contraction *-n't*, after the operator:

negative: *I can****not*** *believe it.* (NEWS†) <compare positive: *I can believe it.*>
negative: *I have****n't*** *eaten.* (CONV) <compare positive: *I have eaten.*>

(Note that *can* + *not* is usually written as a single word.)

There are actually two main kinds of clause negation: ***not*-negation** and ***no*-negation**. Whereas *not*-negation is formed with *not* or *-n't*, *no*-negation is formed with other negative words such as *no*, *nothing*, *none*:

There's ***nothing*** *you can do about it.* (CONV)

As Figure 8.6 shows, *not*-negation is far more common than *no*-negation. More interestingly, negation is more than twice as common in conversation as it is in the written registers.

Figure 8.6
Distribution of negative types

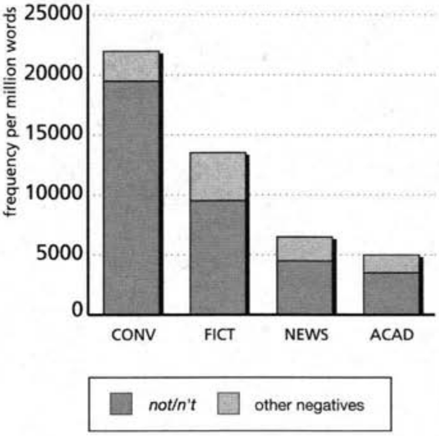

8.8.1 *Not*-negation

The negator *not/n't* is added after the operator. If there is no auxiliary verb and the main verb is not the copula *be*, the auxiliary verb *do* has to be inserted as dummy operator. Compare:

> *You **can** do this but you **can't** do that.* (CONV)
>
> *I **remembered** it but I **didn't remember** where it burned her specifically.* (CONV)

The negative of an interrogative or imperative clause is formed in the same way as the negative of a declarative clause (by adding *not/n't* after the operator):

> ***Don't** you have a key?* (CONV) <positive: *Do you have a key?*>
>
> *Why **aren**'t you working?* (CONV) <positive: *Why are you working?*>
>
> ***Don't** talk to me.* (CONV) <positive: *Talk to me.*>

Most interrogative clauses have subject–operator inversion. If *not* is contracted to *-n't*, it is attached to the operator and comes before the subject:

> *Could**n't she** get a job like teaching?* (CONV†)
>
> *Hey why is**n't it** ready?* (CONV)

But if *not* is a full form, it has to be placed after the subject:

> *Could **she not** get a job like teaching?*
>
> *Hey why is **it not** ready?*

This option is rare, and in general speakers choose the contracted form.

Negative imperatives with the copula *be* are exceptional because the *be* does not serve as the operator for negation; rather, *do not* or *don't* is inserted before the verb *be*:

> ***Don't be** silly.* (CONV)
>
> ***Don't be** so hard on yourself.* (FICT)

In conversation, it is usual for a negative clause to contain a contracted form attached to the immediately preceding word. This can be either a contraction of the operator (e.g. *'s, 're, 'll, 'd*) or the contraction of the negative (*n't*). The following sections discuss the choice between these alternatives.

8.8.2 Verb contraction

Verb contraction occurs with the primary verbs *be* and *have* as well as with the modal verbs *will* and *would* (see Table 8.2). The contractions *'s* and *'d* are ambiguous, with *'s* representing either *is* or *has*, and *'d* representing either *had* or

Table 8.2 Contracted forms of *be, have, will* and *would*

	present tense			past tense
	1st person sing.	**2nd person sing. + plurals**	**3rd person sing.**	
be	*am → 'm*	*are → 're*	*is → 's*	
have	*have → 've*	*have → 've*	*has → 's*	*had → 'd*
modals	*will → 'll*	*would → 'd*		

would (or sometimes *did*). However, the intended meaning of these contractions is generally clear in context. Here are some examples with a following *not*:

That's *not true.* (CONV) <= *That is*>

It's *not been a normal week.* (CONV) <= *It has*>

They'd *not even washed.* (CONV) <= *They had*>

We'd *not want your shade to plague us.* (FICT) <= *We would*>

Verb contraction needs a preceding 'host' in the clause. Usually the host is a pronoun (e.g. *I'm, you'd, she'll, that's*). But many other forms preceding a verb can serve as host, including full nouns, *wh*-words, and *there*:

Gerry'll *phone you during the show.* (FICT)

Where'd *you get that haircut?* (FICT)

How's *it going?* (CONV)

There's *no doubt that's going to lead to dumping.* (NEWS)

Now's *the time to go on a seed hunting expedition in your garden.* (NEWS).

If there is no preceding host, e.g. with *yes/no* questions, then there is no possibility of verb contraction:

Is *that on the sea?* (FICT) <but not: *****'s*** *that on the sea?*>

Similarly, verbs in clause-final position cannot be contracted. For example:

I don't know what it ***is****.* (FICT†) <but not: **I don't know what it'****s****.*>

In addition, when the noun phrase preceding the verb is complex (e.g. where it contains a postmodifier) it rarely serves as a host to a verb contraction.

Figure 8.7 shows that the registers make steeply decreasing use of contractions, in the following order: conversation > fiction > news > academic writing. In addition, contraction is favored by specific linguistic factors. For example, individual verbs are contracted with differing degrees of frequency: *be* and *will* are usually contracted in conversation, while *would* is rarely contracted. With *be*, the contraction of *am* (*'m*) is more common than *is* or *are* (*'s, 're*).

Figure 8.7
Proportional use of verbs as contractions

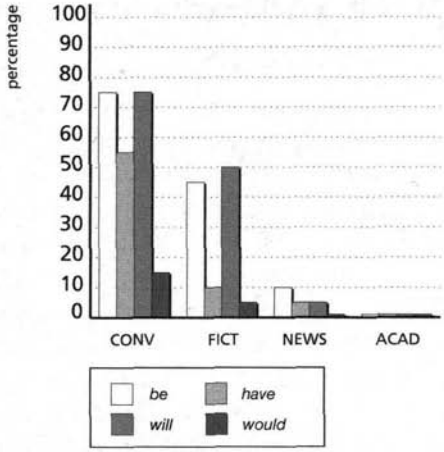

Have is much more likely to be contracted as an auxiliary verb (in the perfect aspect, as in *We've arrived*) than as a main verb (e.g. *I've no idea*). Further, the contraction of *have* is more common than *has* or *had*. Finally, the possibility of contraction is influenced by the host: verb contraction is much more likely with a pronoun subject than with a full noun phrase.

8.8.3 Negative contraction

Negative contraction occurs when *not* is reduced and attached to a preceding primary verb (as operator) or modal auxiliary verb. The resulting negative auxiliary verb is spelled with a final *-n't*, as in:

be	*isn't, aren't, wasn't, weren't*
have	*haven't, hasn't, hadn't*
do	*don't, doesn't, didn't*
modals	*won't (= will not), wouldn't, can't (= cannot), couldn't, shan't (= shall not), shouldn't, mustn't*

There is no contraction for *am not* (**amn't*), and although there are contractions for *may not* and *might not*, these very rarely occur.

Figure 8.8 shows a similar pattern for negative contractions as for verb contractions: the preference for contracted forms declines sharply from nearly 100 per cent in conversation to roughly 5 per cent in academic writing.

Figure 8.8
Proportional use of *not* as a contraction

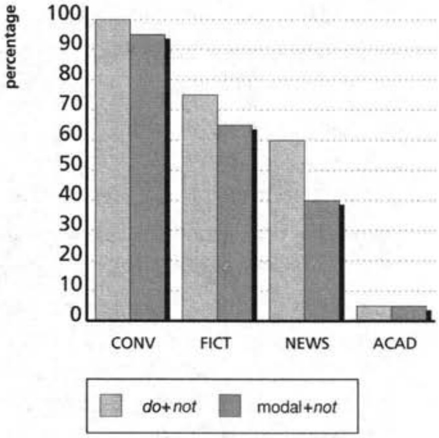

8.8.4 Negative contraction compared with verb contraction

It is impossible for negative contraction and verb contraction to co-exist in the same clause (e.g. we cannot say **It'sn't, *We'ven't*), so they compete with each other where both are possible. These are the main trends:

- When *be* contraction is possible, it is strongly favored over *not* contraction: e.g. *you're not, it's not* is preferred to *you aren't, it isn't.*
- This preference is particularly strong with first- and second-person pronouns. In fact, in the case of *I'm not*, there is no alternative except for the marginally acceptable *I ain't* or *aren't I* (see 8.8.5 below).
- In contrast, with the verbs *have, will,* and *would*, there is a very strong preference for negative contraction: e.g. *I haven't, she won't, they wouldn't* are much preferred to *I've not, she'll not, they'd not.*

8.8.5 *Aren't I* and *ain't*: two rogue contractions

A *Aren't I*

Negative contraction is not a possibility with *am not* (**I amn't*), and this causes a difficulty in questions (where inversion does not allow verb contraction). In colloquial English, *aren't I* is sometimes substituted for the non-existent **amn't I*. (The full form *am I not* is generally avoided.)

> *I'm naughty* ***aren't*** *I?* (CONV)
>
> *'**Aren't** I supposed to understand?'* (FICT)

B *Ain't*

This is a very versatile negative contraction, capable of substituting for all negative contractions of *be* or the auxiliary *have*:

> *'There* ***ain't*** *nothing we can do.'* (FICT) <= *isn't*>
>
> *'I'm whispering now,* ***ain't*** *I?'* (FICT) <= *aren't*>
>
> *I* ***ain't*** *done nothing.* (CONV) <= *haven't*>

Ain't is common in the conversation of some dialects, and it occurs in representations of speech in writing. However, *ain't* is widely felt to be non-standard, and so it is generally avoided in written language, as well as in careful speech.

8.8.6 Use and non-use of dummy *do* in negation

Six verbs have variation between (**1**) acting as a lexical verb with dummy *do*, and (**2**) acting as operator themselves. For the most part, this choice exists only for British English.

A *Have* as a lexical verb

1 *do*-construction:	*She* ***doesn't*** *have a dime.* (FICT)
2 *have* as operator:	*I* ***haven't*** *a clue what her name was!* (BrE CONV)

Option **2** is a conservative (or even old-fashioned) choice. It occurs rarely in British English conversation and almost never in American English. (*Have got*, though, is often used as an alternative to main verb *have* in British English conversation.)

B The semi-modal *have to*

For *have to*, the same choices occur, and under similar conditions. Option **1** is again by far the most common:

1 *do*-construction:	*You* ***don't have to*** *have a conscience.* (CONV)
2 *have* as operator:	*Oh I wish I* ***hadn't to*** *go out tonight.* (BrE CONV)

C *Need* and *dare*

1 *do*-construction:	*They* ***do not*** *need to belong to the same phase.* (ACAD) *I* ***didn't*** *dare to mention Hella.* (FICT)
2 auxiliary construction:	*The details* ***need not*** *concern us here.* (ACAD†) *No, I* ***daren't*** *tell her.* (CONV)

Need and *dare* are dual-function verbs: they can behave like modal auxiliaries or like main verbs. In the auxiliary use, these verbs function as the operator for negation, as in **2**. However, this construction is restricted to British English, and even there it is relatively rare.

D *Used to and ought to*

Used to and *ought to* are two other verbs on the boundary of modal auxiliary status. They have (rare) negative contractions *usedn't* and *oughtn't*, but they also have the infinitive *to*, which aligns them with lexical verbs:

1 *do*-construction: *We **didn't** used to see much of it.* (CONV)
*He **didn't** ought to be doing that sort of job.* (CONV†)
2 auxiliary construction: *Gentlemen **used not** to have any traffic with him.* (FICT†) <traffic = dealings>
*So I think I **oughtn't** to spend more.* (CONV†)

Negation is generally rare with these verbs.

8.8.7 *No*-negation

Negation involving quantifiers can be expressed by negative words like *no*, or by a **non-assertive** word like *any* (see 8.8.10) following *not/n't*:

negative words	**non-assertive words**
determiners: *no, neither*	determiners: *any, either*
adverbs: *neither, nowhere, never, nor*	adverbs: *either, anywhere, ever*
pronouns: *none, neither, nobody, no one, nothing*	pronouns: *any, either, anybody, anyone, anything*

Non-assertive words can occur after *not*, where they often provide a way of expressing the same meaning as *no*-negation:

*They had **no** sympathy for him.* (FICT)
<compare: *They did**n't** have **any** sympathy for him.*>
*There was **nobody** in the hut.* (FICT†)
<compare: *There was**n't** **anybody** in the hut.*>
*I'll **never** be able to tell her.* (FICT†)
<compare: *I wo**n't** **ever** be able to tell her.*>

When *no*-negation and *not*-negation are both possible, there is sometimes a slight difference of meaning. This is true of clauses containing *not a* v. *no*—compare **1–2** with **3–4**:

1 *He is ten years old, he is **not a baby**.* (FICT)
2 *He was**n't a** union member.* (NEWS†)
3 *She was **no** great beauty.* (FICT†)
4 *He is **no** quitter.* (NEWS†)

While **1** and **2** can be read as factual descriptions of a person, **3** and **4** express a judgment about a person's attributes. Similarly, *She's **not a** teacher* and *She's **no teacher*** are different in that the first is a statement about her job and the second a statement about her capabilities.

8.8.8 Choosing between *not*-negation and *no*-negation

In many cases, the choice between *not*-negation and *no*-negation is just not available. For a *not*-negated clause to be equivalent to a *no*-negated clause, it has to have some indefinite form following *not*, such as *any* or *a*:

> *She doesn't have **a** car yet.* (FICT)
> <compare: *She has **no** car yet.*>

Conversely, when a form of *no*-negation precedes the verb (usually as subject), there is no equivalent *not*-negated clause:

> '***Nobody** stole it?' said James.* (FICT)
>
> *Nothing can happen to you, and **nothing** can get you.* (FICT)

Overall, *not*-negation is much more common than *no*-negation. As Figure 8.9 shows, *no*-negation is especially rare in conversation, but it is moderately common in the written registers. When *no*-negation does occur in conversation, it is often part of habitual collocations such as:

> *There is ... no doubt/no need/no point/no sign/no way*
>
> *I have ... no idea/no choice/no desire/no effect/no intention/no reason*

Figure 8.9
Proportional use of *not*- v. *no*-negation

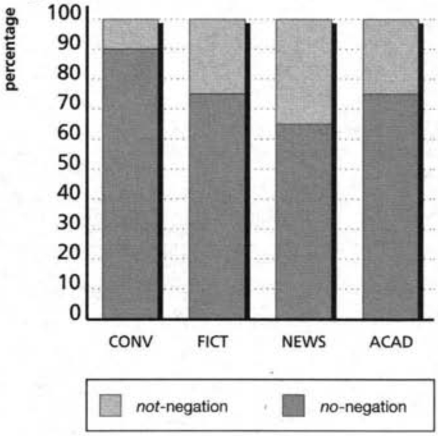

8.8.9 The scope of negation

The **scope of negation** is the part of a clause that is affected by negative meaning. The scope may be restricted to a single word or phrase, in which case we consider it to be local negation rather than clause negation:

1 *One rabbit can finish off a few hundred young trees **in no time**.* (FICT)
2 *Robertson, **not unexpectedly**, claimed afterwards that his strike should have been recognised.* (NEWS)

In these examples, the negation is located in adverbials, and does not affect the interpretation of the main part of the clause. In **2,** note the 'double negative' effect of *not unexpectedly*, which actually means that Robertson's behavior was expected.

Even more local is the following use of *nowhere* and *nobody*—where in effect these words are treated like nouns:

> *It's in the middle of **nowhere**, isn't it?* (CONV†)
>
> *He's a nobody, but you see I fell in love with him.*(FICT)

With clause negation, the whole proposition is denied, and the scope of negation extends from the negative element to the end of the clause. Placing an adverbial before or after *not* often results in a difference of meaning. Compare **1** and **2** (the scope of negation is shown by underlining.)

1 *'Our investigations indicate that this substance was **not deliberately** administered.'* (FICT)
<i.e. the substance was administered accidentally, not deliberately.>
2 *Alexander looked at Wilkie who **deliberately did not** see him.* (FICT)
<i.e. he deliberately avoided seeing him.>

8.8.10 Assertive and non-assertive forms

The forms below are associated with either **assertive** or **non-assertive** contexts:

	assertive	non-assertive
adverbs	*already*	*yet*
	sometimes	*ever*
	somewhat	*at all*
	somewhere	*anywhere*
	still	*any more*
	too	*either*
determiners/pronouns	*some*	*any*
	somebody	*anybody*
	someone	*anyone*
	something	*anything*

Assertive forms are used mainly in positive clauses, whereas non-assertive forms are used with clause negation. Non-assertive forms follow the *not*, as in examples **1–3**:

1 *There are**n't any passenger trains**.* (CONV†) <negation of: *There are **some passenger trains**.*>
2 *'But he does**n't** have to do **anything**.'* (FICT†) <negation of: *He has to do **something**.*>
3 *I do**n't** think [we had **any** cheese] did we?* (CONV)

Note that the scope of negation can extend into dependent clauses, shown by *[]* in **3**.

Although non-assertive forms are particularly associated with negation, they are also used in other contexts:

- interrogative clauses (**4** independent and **5** dependent):

  4 *Does **anyone ever** ring the bell Carrie?* (CONV)
  5 *Wonder if Tamsin had **any** luck selling her house.* (CONV)

- conditional clauses:

  *If there are **any** problems in performance-related pay, we can iron these out.* (NEWS)

- temporal clauses introduced by *before*:

  *I was with him before **anyone** else was.* (FICT)

- comparative and degree constructions:

  *I can trust you, Babes, more than **anybody**.* (FICT)

Another set of contexts for non-assertive forms are implicit negatives: that is, words (underlined below) which do not look negative, but convey a negative meaning.

6 *Most scientists, however, refuse to pay **any** heed or give **any** credence to Psychical Research.* (ACAD†)

7 *On the first occasion Mr Reynolds met the stoma care nurse he was very quiet and seemed reluctant to discuss **anything**.* (ACAD)

8 *But I very rarely fry **anything** anyway.* (CONV)

9 *Jane requires you to guess at and check a set of mathematical functions without **ever** giving you the answers.* (ACAD)

Notice that such implicit negatives belong to various word classes: *refuse* (**6**) is a verb, *reluctant* (**7**) is an adjective, *rarely* (**8**) is an adverb, and *without* (**9**) is a preposition.

8.8.11 Assertive forms used in negative clauses

Although assertive forms like *some* are strongly associated with positive clauses, they are sometimes found in negative clauses, especially if they stay outside the scope of negation:

*For **some** reason it did not surprise him.* (FICT†)

*I don't mind talking, not to **some** people.* (CONV)

8.8.12 Multiple negation

Sometimes more than one negative word occurs in the same clause. Such combinations belong to two types: dependent multiple negation and independent multiple negation.

A Dependent multiple negation

This is a common feature of conversation in some dialects, but it is generally considered to be non-standard:

*You've **never** seen **nothing** like it.* (CONV) <meaning: *You've never seen anything like it.*>

*There **ain't nothing** we can do.* (FICT) <meaning: *There isn't anything we can do.*>

The corresponding clauses in standard English have a negative form followed by a non-assertive form (as in 8.8.10).

B Independent multiple negation

We use this term for repeated negative forms which occur when a speaker reformulates a negative utterance. In these cases, the negative forms are not integrated in the same clause:

***No, not** tomorrow, she said.* (FICT)

*There's **no one** to blame **not** really.* (FICT†)

We also find repeated occurrences of *not* in the same clause, each adding its own negative meaning. Here two negatives make a positive meaning:

Oh well you sleep on sherry though – it makes you sleepy, you ***can't not*** *sleep.* (CONV) <meaning that you just have to sleep>

As it did turn out, I ***never*** *did* ***not*** *smoke in the end. I lit a cigarette and kept them coming.* (FICT)

Independent multiple negation is generally considered to be standard.

Review

Major points of Grammar Bite C: Negation

- Clauses are either positive or negative.
- Negative clauses are most commonly formed by using *not* or its contraction *-n't*.
- The verb as operator is a key tool for forming negation with *not/-n't*.
- Clause negation is the main type of negation, but there is also local negation.
- In clause negation, there is an important distinction between *not*-negation and *no*-negation.
- The scope of negation is important for choosing non-assertive v. assertive forms (e.g. *there aren't any…* v. *there are some…*).
- There are standard and non-standard forms of multiple negation.

GRAMMAR BITE

D Independent clauses

8.9 Major types of independent clause

An independent clause is a clause which is not part of any larger clause structure. However, independent clauses can be coordinated, and they can include embedded dependent clauses:

- simple independent clause (single clause):

  You can give me a cheque. (CONV)
- coordinated independent clauses (two or more coordinated clauses):

  He was crying and so I gave him back his jacket. (CONV†)
- complex independent clause (with one or more dependent clauses):

  If you pay too much they'll give us the money back. (CONV†)

All independent clauses are finite, that is, they contain a finite verb form which specifies tense (e.g. *is*, *looked*) or modality (e.g. *can*, *would*).

Independent clauses are used to perform **speech-act** functions. There is a general correspondence between four basic speech-act functions and the four structural types of independent clauses, shown in Table 8.3.

A **statement** gives information and expects no specific response from the addressee. A **question** asks for information and expects a linguistic response. A **directive** is used to give orders or requests, and expects some action from the addressee. An **exclamation** expresses the strong feelings of the speaker/writer, and expects no specific response.

Table 8.3 **Major classification of independent clauses**

speech-act	functional	clause	structural	example
informing	statement	declarative clause	SV structure	*It's strong*
eliciting	question	interrogative clause	VS structure	*Is it strong?*
			wh-word + VS structure	*Where is she?*
			wh-word structure	*Who was there?*
directing	command	imperative clause	V structure (no S)	*Be strong!*
expressing	exclamation	exclamative clause	*wh*-word + SV structure	*How good she is!*

Structure and speech-act function do not always agree, and it is therefore useful to distinguish between the two (e.g. a declarative clause can be used as a directive). In practice, though, many grammars use the terms interchangeably, as we do when no misunderstanding can result.

The four clause types are described below, giving attention to both form and associated speech-act function.

8.10 Declarative clauses

Declarative clauses have SV (subject–verb) structure and typically express statements; they are the 'default' type of independent clause, especially in writing.

Although declarative clauses normally convey information (especially in writing), they can also serve other speech-act functions in conversation and fictional dialog. For example, SV order is occasionally used in asking a question (the question status being signalled in speech by rising intonation or in writing by a question mark):

1 *A:* ***So he's left her?***
B: She left him. (CONV)

2 ***'You weren't happy together?'*** – *'No,' I said.* (FICT†)

These declarative questions, as they can be called, retain some of the declarative force of a statement: it is as if the speaker is testing out the truth of the statement by inviting confirmation.

8.11 Interrogative clauses

As indicated in Table 8.3 above, an **interrogative clause** can be recognized by two structural clues, which often occur in combination: a VS (verb–subject) structure and an initial *wh*-word. In addition, rising intonation (in speech) and a question mark (in writing) are supplementary, non-grammatical cues.

There are three main types of independent interrogative clause: ***wh*-questions, *yes/no*-questions,** and **alternative questions.** Their basic uses are:

- to elicit missing information (*wh*-questions, 8.11.1)
- to ask whether a proposition is true or false (*yes/no* questions, 8.11.2)
- to ask which of two or more alternatives is the case (alternative questions, 8.11.3).

8.11.1 *Wh*-questions

Wh-questions begin with a *wh*-word that refers to a missing element in the clause. The missing element can be a clause element (subject, object, predicative, adverbial) or part of a phrase. Below, the role of the *wh*-word is shown within < >:

1 ***Who's*** *calling?* <subject> (CONV)
2 ***What*** *d'you mean?* <direct object> (CONV†)
3 ***Who*** *are you talking about?* <prepositional object> (CONV†)
4 ***How*** *was your trip, Nick?* <subject predicative> (CONV)
5 ***Which*** *photos are we going to look at?* <part of noun phrase> (CONV)
6 ***When*** *did you see Mark?* <adverbial, time> (CONV)
7 ***Why*** *did you buy that?* <adverbial, reason> (CONV)
8 ***How*** *old's Wendy?* <part of adjective phrase> (CONV)

Note, from **1**, that the declarative order SV is preserved when the *wh*-word is the subject of the clause. All the other examples show VS order—that is, the **operator** comes before the subject. (This is known as **subject–operator inversion**.)

In informal language, the *wh*-word can be reinforced by a following expletive, signaling the speaker's strong feelings:

> '***What*** *the hell's the matter with you?*' (FICT)

When the speaker asks for two pieces of information, there is more than one *wh*-word in the clause. Only one of these occurs in initial position:

> ***Who*** *is bringing* ***what****?* (FICT)

Very often in conversation a *wh*-question lacks a full clause structure. It may consist only of the *wh*-word:

> *A: It's six o'clock isn't it?*
> *B:* ***What?*** (CONV)

What?, as in the last example, is often a general request for repetition: an echo question. There are also echo questions where the *wh*-word is left in its regular position in the clause, instead of being fronted:

> *A: And I think she's stealing stuff as well.*
> *B: She's* ***what****?* (CONV)

More than simple requests for repetition, such echo questions can express surprise or disbelief.

Although *wh*-questions are primarily for seeking information, they can have other speech-act functions:

9 ***Who*** *needs sitcoms?* (NEWS)
10 ***How*** *dare you speak to me like that?* ***Who*** *do you think you are?* (CONV†)
11 ***Why*** *don't we go next week?* (CONV)

Example **9** illustrates a rhetorical question with a function close to that of a statement: 'Nobody needs sitcoms'. Example **10** expresses a strong rebuke, and is more like an exclamation than a question. Example **11** is a suggestion, and has a function similar to a first-person imperative: 'Let's go next week.'

8.11.2 *Yes/no* questions

Yes/no questions have VS word order: they begin with the operator followed by the subject. The addressee is expected to reply with a truth value—either *yes* or *no*. Needless to say, there are other possible answers indicating various degrees of certainly or uncertainty (*definitely*, *perhaps*, *I don't know*, etc.).

A: *Is it Thursday today?*
B: *No, Friday.* (CONV)

A: *Do you think he'll be any better?*
B: *Maybe. Yeah.* (CONV)

Casual *yes/no* questions frequently contain ellipsis:

^ *You alright?* (CONV) <*are* omitted>

^ *Got what you want?* (CONV) <*have you* omitted>

Like *wh*-questions, *yes/no* questions are used for purposes other than asking for information:

1 *Isn't that lovely?!* (CONV)
2 *Will you behave?!* (CONV)
3 *Can we turn that light off please?* (CONV)

In **1**, the interrogative structure expresses an exclamation (similar to *How lovely!*). Examples **2** and **3** function as directives: a forceful command in **2**, and a polite request in **3**.

Especially in conversation, *yes/no* questions frequently have the minimal form operator + subject:

A: *She's a teacher.*
B: *Oh* ***is she****?* (CONV)

These elliptic questions are not really asking for information: they rather function as **backchannels,** showing interest and keeping the conversation going.

8.11.3 Alternative questions

An alternative question is structurally similar to a *yes/no* question: it opens with operator + subject. But instead of expecting a *yes/no* answer, it presents alternatives for the addressee to choose between:

A: *Do you want one* ***or*** *two?*
B: *Two.* (CONV)

A: *So do you like my haircut* ***or*** *not?*
B: *It's alright.* (CONV)

An alternative question is signaled by the word *or* and by falling intonation at the end.

8.11.4 Question tags

Although **question tags** are not independent clauses, it is convenient to deal with them here. A question tag consists of operator + pronoun subject, and is used to seek confirmation of the statement the speaker has just uttered. The operator is a repetition of the operator in the preceding declarative clause; if there is no operator, the dummy operator *do* is used. The subject refers back to the subject of the preceding clause. For example:

1 *She's so generous, **isn't she**?* (CONV)
2 *She's not a lesbian, **is she**?* (CONV)
3 *She doesn't like things that blow up, **does she**?* (CONV)
4 *It seems a shame to break it up, **doesn't it**, when it's so good.* (CONV)

Note that the tag does not necessarily have to be placed at the very end of the clause (**4**), although it cannot go before the main clause verb phrase.

Question tags usually contrast with the polarity of the preceding statement. That is, a positive statement is followed by a negative question tag (**1, 4**), while a negative statement is followed by a positive question tag (**2, 3**). However, there is also a style of question tag which agrees with the preceding statement in being positive:

5 *A: She likes her granddad, **does she**?*
B: Yeah. (CONV)
6 *A: It's my ball.*
*B: It's your ball, **is it**?* (CONV)

These positive-positive question tags are similar in their effect to declarative questions (8.10): they seek confirmation of a previous statement.

8.11.5 Interrogatives across registers

Questions are many times more common in conversation than in writing, reflecting the interactive nature of conversation (see Figure 8.10). Conversation uses both *wh-* and *yes/no* questions. However, nearly half the questions in conversation consist of fragments or tags. About every fourth question in conversation is a question tag; the most common type of question tag is negative.

Figure 8.10

Distribution of questions

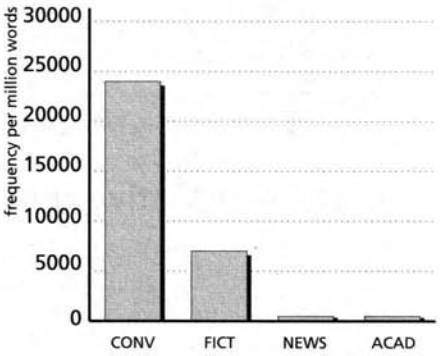

When questions are used in news or academic prose, they have rhetorical purposes, since there can be no expectation that readers will actually respond. However, these questions do help to involve the reader in the discussion. For example:

> *Sign up for the green team. **Do you want to know what's happening to our countryside, forests, seas and seashores at home and across the world? Do you want to know how easy it is to affect the environment of the world by planting trees or buying eco-friendly products?** If so, read this feature every week.* (NEWS)
>
> ***How far will the magnetic flux penetrate? Is there a simple way of describing the decay of the magnetic flux mathematically?** There is. We can use the following one-dimensional model.* (ACAD)

8.11.6 Choice between interrogative *who* and *whom*

Who is used for *wh*-questions inquiring about a person, regardless of syntactic role: that is, as subject, object, or prepositional object:

1 ***Who** went first on the castle rock?* (FICT) <subject>
2 ***Who** can I trust?* (CONV†) <object>
3 *Amanda, **who** are you going out with?* (CONV) <prepositional object>

The traditional written form *whom* is also occasionally used for objects, but only in formal written English:

4 *'**Whom** do you favour?'* (FICT)
5 *I know **whom** she belongs to.* (FICT†)

Examples **3** and **5** illustrate preposition stranding. The alternative construction, where the preposition is fronted with the *wh*-word, is very likely to retain the form *whom*:

*For **whom** would I be working?* (FICT)

In conversation, however, even this last-ditch refuge for *whom* is being taken over by the all-triumphant *who*:

A: Obliged to make polite conversation all the time oh!
*B: With **who**?* (CONV)

8.11.7 Use and non-use of dummy *do* in questions

As with negative clauses (8.8.6), questions show variation in the use of dummy *do* with certain verbs: *have, have to*, and the marginal modals *dare, need, ought to*, and *used to*. Apart from *have* and *have to*, these verbs are rare, especially in questions, and largely restricted to British English:

A *Have* as a lexical verb

1 *do*-construction: ***Did** you have a good walk?* (CONV)
2 with *have* as operator: ***Have** you any comments on this Mick?* (BrE CONV)

The *do*-construction **1** is virtually the only option in American English. *Have got* is preferred as an alternative to main verb *have* in British English conversation.

B The semi-modal *have to*

1 *do*-construction: *Look, **do** I **have to** tell you everything?* (CONV)
2 *have* as operator: ***Have** they **to** pay for her to be there?* (BrE CONV)

The *do*-construction **1** is the only option in American English and the preferred option in British English.

C *Need* and *dare*

1 *do*-construction: ***Do** you **need to** go somewhere?* (CONV)
2 auxiliary construction: *How **dare** you squeal like that.* (CONV)

In our corpus, option **1** is used 90 per cent of the time with *need*. The auxiliary construction with *dare* functions more like an exclamative (see 8.12) than a question.

D *Used to and ought to*

1 *do*-construction: ***Did*** *you* ***used to*** *have long hair?* (FICT)
2 auxiliary construction: *'****Ought*** *I* ***to*** *take it?'* (FICT)

Both of these semi-modals are very rare in questions.

8.12 Exclamative clauses

Exclamations can be expressed by a range of structures, both clausal and non-clausal (see 13.2.4). Here we illustrate only independent clauses with an exclamatory function: a clause type which begins with a *wh*-word (*what* or *how*) and continues with an SV (subject–verb) pattern:

1 *Oh,* ***what a good girl you are.*** (CONV)
2 ***How clever you are****, and how beautiful.* (FICT)

8.13 Imperative clauses

Formally, most **imperative clauses** are characterized by the lack of a subject, use of the base form of the verb, and the absence of modals as well as tense and aspect markers:

Get off *the table.* (CONV)
Don't forget *about the deposit.* (CONV)

An imperative typically urges the addressee to do something (or not to do something): given this limited function, there is no need for tense, aspect, or modality in the imperative verb phrase.

A special type of imperative clause contains the verb *let* followed by *us* (usually contracted to *'s*) to express a suggestion involving both the speaker and the addressee:

Let's *catch up with Louise.* (CONV)
Well, ***let's*** *try this,* ***let's*** *see what happens.* (CONV†)

8.13.1 The form and function of imperative clauses

Although most imperative clauses are very simple, we need to take account of some variations that occur. Optionally, the addressee of an imperative can be identified either by a subject noun phrase or a **vocative** address term:

1 ***You*** *go home and go to sleep.* (CONV) <*you* as subject>
2 *Don't* ***you*** *dare talk to me like that* ***Clare****, I've had enough.* (CONV) <*you* as subject and *Clare* as vocative>
3 ***Melissa,*** *take those things away.* (CONV†) <*Melissa* as vocative>

When it occurs, the subject precedes the main verb and is not separated from it by a punctuation or intonation break. Thus, the pronoun in **1** and **2** is a subject. The distinction between a subject and a vocative is best seen in **2,** where both occur: the vocative *Clare* could be positioned at the beginning, middle or end of the vocative, and is more mobile than the subject.

Imperative clauses can also be elaborated by the addition of question tags, discourse markers like *please*, and adverbs like *just*:

4 *Pick your plates up from down there* ***will you?*** (CONV)
5 *Pass me his drink* ***please.*** (CONV†)
6 ***Just*** *dump it at the door there.* (CONV)

The question tag *will you* does little to soften the command in **4.** *Please* has a softening effect, but it is in some ways a minimal politeness strategy. *Just* makes the imperative seem less demanding and easier to comply with. It is clear from these and other examples that an imperative can express a range of directive speech acts, varying from commands to offers and invitations, depending on the situation and the kind of demand made on the addressee.

A different kind of function is served by the imperative clause in **7,** which is coordinated with a following declarative clause:

7 ***Touch them*** <tuning knobs> *and the telly goes wrong.* (CONV†)

Here the coordinated clause expresses a conditional relationship: 'if you touch them, the telly goes wrong'.

8.13.2 Imperative clauses in use

Figure 8.11
Distribution of imperatives

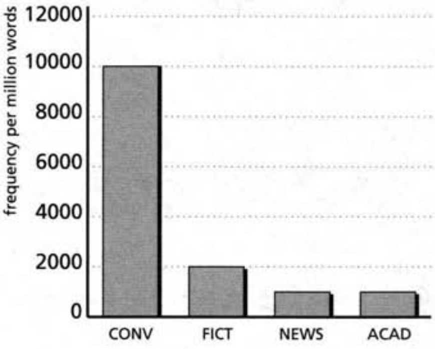

Imperatives are frequently used in conversation (see Figure 8.11) because speakers often try to direct the activity of listeners. Similarly, fiction texts use imperatives in dialog passages.

It is more surprising that the written informative registers need imperatives. In fact, imperatives are more frequent than questions in news and academic writing, presumably because writers can use them to manipulate the reaction and behavior of the reader. For example:

For full details of performances,
talks, workshops, contact the Third Eye Centre. (NEWS†)
See also Section 5.2. (ACAD)

8.14 Non-clausal material

Conversation contains many non-clausal utterances, as shown in the comparison of two text samples early in this chapter (8.1.1; see also 13.4 and 13.7). However, non-clausal material is also found in writing, where it regularly occurs in special contexts such as public notices, headings, book titles, figure captions, and newspaper headlines (so-called *block language*). Here are some examples from headlines:

1 *Elderly care crisis warning.* (NEWS)
2 *Image crisis for Clinton over haircut.* (NEWS)

These headlines are composed of only a noun phrase. Headline **1** shows a tendency to compress meaning by stringing nouns together (four nouns occur in sequence).

In addition, non-clausal material also occurs in running text, where it adds a colloquial tone:

3 ***And now for something completely different: cheap and cheerful claret.*** (NEWS)

4 *Now there is no bar to having more than one particle in each state.* ***Quite the contrary.*** (ACAD)

Review

Major points of Grammar Bite D: Independent clauses

- ➤ There are four major types of independent clause: declarative, interrogative, imperative, and exclamative clauses.
- ➤ These correspond to four main types of speech act: statement, question, directive, and exclamation. However, there are mismatches between the clause types and the associated speech-act types.
- ➤ Questions are varied in form and in function.
- ➤ Major types of question are *wh*-questions, *yes/no* questions, and alternative questions.
- ➤ Question tags are also very common in conversation: e.g. *isn't it?*
- ➤ Grammatically, although independent clauses are the main building blocks of texts, non-clausal material is also common, particularly in conversation.

GRAMMAR BITE

E Dependent clauses

8.15 Finite dependent clauses

We now turn to dependent clauses, surveying the types of finite clause in this section, and then surveying non-finite clauses in 8.16.

8.15.1 Complement clauses

Complement clauses are controlled by a preceding verb, adjective, noun, or preposition. Complement clauses are also called **nominal clauses,** because their syntactic roles are comparable to those of a noun phrase. Thus, they are used as subject, predicative, or object in the main clause. Finite complement clauses are introduced by the subordinator *that* or by a *wh*-word.

- *that*-clauses (see 10.4–8):

  That this was a tactical decision <subject> *quickly became apparent.* (NEWS)

  They believe ***that the minimum wage could threaten their jobs.*** <direct object> (NEWS)

- *wh*-clauses (see 10.9–11):

  *'**What I don't understand** <subject> is **why they don't let me know anything.**'* <subject predicative> (FICT†)

  *Perhaps it is us who made them **what they are?*** <object predicative> (FICT)

Complement clauses can also occur within phrases (marked *[]*), as complements of a noun, adjective, or preposition:

> *He was [aware **that a Garda Inquiry was being conducted**].* (NEWS)
>
> *There is [a fear **that such rules will be over-bureaucratic**].* (NEWS)
>
> *Be [very careful **what you tell me**].* (FICT)
>
> *She was [afraid of **what might happen if Chielo suddenly turned round and saw her**].* (FICT)

8.15.2 Adverbial clauses

Adverbial clauses are used as adverbials in the main clause. Like adverbials in general, they are normally optional elements, and can be placed either at the beginning, middle, or end of the main clause:

1 ***If you go to a bank**, they'll rip you off.* (CONV)
2 *There's a term and a half left **before he moves in**.* (CONV)
3 ***When the houses were ready**, prices of up to £51,000 were quoted.* (NEWS)
4 *Most ions are colourless, **although some have distinct colours**.* (ACAD)
5 *The conclusion, **it seems**, is intolerable.* (ACAD)
6 *He was at a tough football camp in Arkansas **I guess**.* (CONV)

Finite adverbial clauses are normally introduced by a subordinator: e.g. *if*, *before*, *when*, and *although*. (Some subordinators, like *when* in **3**, begin with *wh*-, but the clauses they introduce are not nominal *wh*-clauses like those in 8.15.1). Most adverbial clauses belong to the class of circumstance adverbials, expressing meanings like time, reason, and condition. However, **5** and **6** illustrate a type of adverbial clause called a comment clause, which normally has no subordinator. Sections 11.9–12 provide a detailed account of adverbial clauses.

8.15.3 Relative clauses

A **relative clause** is a postmodifier in a noun phrase, serving to expand the meaning and specify the reference of the head noun. It is introduced by a relativizer, which has a grammatical role (e.g. subject or direct object) in the relative clause, in addition to its linking function. The relativizer points back to its antecedent, the head of the noun phrase (the noun phrase is in *[]*; the relativizer is underlined):

> *He warned the public not to approach [the men, **who are armed and dangerous**].* (NEWS)
>
> *A system is [that part of the world **which we are interested in** and **which we are investigating**].* (ACAD)

Relative clauses are discussed in detail in 9.7–8.

Nominal relative clauses are actually *wh*-complement clauses (see 8.15.1), but they are equivalent to a general noun as head + relative clause (see 10.9–11):

Do ***what you want.*** (CONV) <= *Do the thing* ***that you want.***>

Whoever rents this apartment next year *might have trouble.* (CONV)
<= *The person* ***who rents this apartment next year****. . .*>

8.15.4 Comparative clauses

Comparative clauses are complements in an adjective phrase or an adverb phrase, with a gradable word as head. Comparative forms of adjectives, adverbs, pronouns, and determiners (e.g. *bigger*, *more carefully*, *less*, *fewer*) require a basis of comparison. For example, the use of the word *bigger* raises the question 'bigger than what?'. A comparative clause spells out the basis of this comparison, and is introduced by a conjunction (*than* for unequal comparison, and *as* for equal comparison). In **1** below the comparative clause is part of an adjective phrase; in **2** it is part of an adverb phrase (phrases are enclosed in *[]*):

1 *Maybe Henry would realize she was not [as nice* ***as she pretended to be****].* (FICT)

2 *She fled these Sunday afternoons [earlier* ***than she should have****].* (FICT)

Comparative clauses were described in 7.14.

8.15.5 Peripheral clauses

Two types of dependent clause have a peripheral role in the main clause: **reporting clauses** and **tag clauses.**

Reporting clauses are on the boundary of dependent and independent status:

1 *'Please come too,'* ***she begged.*** *– 'I'll be back when I feel like it,'* ***he said (to her) without emotion.*** *– 'I'm sorry,'* ***she whimpered.*** (FICT†)

A reporting clause introduces somebody's direct speech or thought. As we see in **1,** a reporting clause can report who is speaking (*she*, *he*), who the addressee is (*to her*), the nature of the speech act (*begged*), and the manner of speaking (*whimpered*, *without emotion*).

The reporting clause often consists of just a one-word subject and a one-word verb phrase, as in the following examples. But there is variation in the ordering of S and V (see 12.4.3), and in the position of the clause relative to the quoted speech:

2 ***They said,*** *'Yes, sir,' and saluted.* (FICT)

3 *'Yes,'* ***thought Fleury,*** *'she's going at it hammer and tongs for his benefit.'* (FICT)

4 *Can we do some singing?* ***he asks.*** (FICT)

Tag clauses are another type of peripheral clause; they are loosely attached to the end (or sometimes the middle) of another clause. They include not only **question tags** (such as *She's so generous,* ***isn't she****?*; see 8.11.4) but **declarative tags**, which have the effect of reinforcing the speaker's commitment to the proposition in the main clause:

Yeah I thoroughly enjoyed it ***I did.*** (CONV)

He's alright ***he is.*** (CONV)

Like tags in general (see 13.3.2), tag clauses are characteristic of speech.

8.16 Non-finite dependent clauses

Non-finite clauses are regularly dependent on a main clause. They are more compact and less explicit than finite clauses: they do not have tense or modality, and they usually lack an explicit subject and subordinator (see 8.3.2). There are four major types of non-finite clause: **infinitive clauses, *ing*-clauses**, ***ed*-participle clauses**, and **verbless clauses**.

8.16.1 Infinitive clauses

Infinitive clauses have a wide range of syntactic roles:

- subject:

  Artificial pearls before real swine were cast by these jet-set preachers. ***To have thought this*** *made him more cheerful.* (FICT)

- extraposed subject (see 10.3.3):

  It's difficult ***to maintain a friendship***. (CONV)
  <compare: ***To maintain a friendship*** *is difficult.*>

- subject predicative:

  'My goal now is ***to look to the future.****'* (NEWS)

- direct object:

  He upset you very much, and I hate ***to see that***. (FICT)

- object predicative:

  Some of these issues dropped out of Marx's later works because he considered them ***to have been satisfactorily dealt with***. (ACAD†)

- adverbial:

  A little group of people had gathered by Mrs. Millings ***to watch the police activities on the foreshore***. (FICT)

- noun complement:

  They say that failure ***to take precautions against injuring others*** *is negligent.* (ACAD)

- noun postmodifier:

  It is a callous thing ***to do***. (NEWS)

- part of an adjective phrase:

  I think the old man's a bit afraid ***to go into hospital***. (CONV†)

In all these roles except object predicative and adverbial, *to*-infinitive clauses act as complement clauses (see 10.12–19).

8.16.2 *Ing*-clauses

Ing-clauses, too, have a varied range of syntactic roles:

- subject:

  Having a fever *is pleasant, vacant.* (FICT)

- extraposed subject (see 10.3.3):

  It's very difficult ***getting supplies into Sarajevo***. (NEWS†)
  <compare: ***Getting supplies into Sarajevo*** *is very difficult.*>

- subject predicative:

    The real problem is ***getting something done about cheap imports.*** (NEWS)

- direct object:

    I started ***thinking about Christmas.*** (CONV†)

- adverbial:

    I didn't come out of it ***looking particularly well,*** *I know.* (FICT)

- complement of a preposition (including prepositional object):

    No-one could rely on ***his going to bed early*** *last night.* (FICT†)

- noun postmodifier:

    The man ***making the bogus collections*** *was described as middle aged.* (NEWS)

- part of an adjective phrase:

    The town is busy ***taking advantage of its first City Challenge victory.*** (NEWS†)

8.16.3 *Ed*-participle clauses

Ed-participle clauses (also called past participle clauses) are less versatile than the other types of non-finite clauses. They can have the following roles:

- direct object:

    Two-year-old Constantin will have ***his cleft-palate repaired.*** (NEWS†)

- adverbial:

    When told by police how badly injured his victims were he said: 'Good, I hope they die'. (NEWS)

- noun postmodifier:

    This, as we have seen, is the course ***chosen by a large minority of households.*** (ACAD†)

Notice from this last example that the *ed*-participle form can take different forms with irregular verbs.

8.16.4 Supplement clauses

In the examples given in 8.16.1–3, the non-finite clauses are clearly integrated within the main clause. **Supplement clauses**, in contrast, are more loosely attached and can be considered a peripheral type of adverbial clause. They occur mostly in written registers, where they are usually marked off by a comma:

1 *[**Considered by many as Disney's last true classic**], The Jungle Book boasts some terrific songs.* (NEWS†)

2 *She gazed down at the floor, [**biting her lip**], [**face clouded**].* (FICT)

(Example **2** contains two supplement clauses in sequence.)

The relation between a supplement clause and its main clause is loose in meaning as well as form. By using a supplement clause, the writer marks information as supplementary background information in relation to the main clause. Supplement clauses can be *ing*-clauses or *ed*-clauses. They can also be verbless clauses.

8.16.5 Verbless clauses

Verbless clauses might be considered a special type of non-finite clause:

1 *She had also been taught, **when in difficulty**, to think of a good life to imitate.* (FICT)
2 ***Although not a classic**, this 90-minute video is worth watching.* (NEWS†)
3 *He does not believe celibacy should be demanded of priests **whether gay or straight**.* (NEWS)
4 *Every day, **if possible**, allot time at your desk to sorting and filing.* (ACAD†)

These expressions can be treated as adverbial clauses with ellipsis of the verb *be* and the subject. For example, *when in difficulty* in **1** can be decompressed as: *when she was in difficulty*.

The label 'verbless clause' seems a contradiction in terms, since we have described the clause as a unit with a verb phrase as its central element. The reason for wanting to label these units as clauses is that (a) they behave like clauses in their syntactic role, and (b) it is possible (taking account of the ellipsis of the verb *be*) to label their constituents as subordinator + subject predicative or adverbial.

8.17 Subjunctive verbs in dependent clauses

Subjunctive verb forms are rare in present-day English (although they were once much more common). Subjunctive verbs are invariable and thus do not exhibit subject–verb concord.

The present subjunctive is the base form of the verb, used where the *s*-form of the verb would occur normally. It occurs in special kinds of finite dependent clauses, particularly in some *that* complement clauses (**1**) and occasionally in some adverbial clauses (**2**):

1 *I told her she could stay with me until she found a place, but she insisted [that she **pay** her own way].* (FICT)
2 *The way in which we work, [whether it **be** in an office or on the factory floor], has undergone a major transformation in the past decade.* (NEWS)

With regular verbs, the present subjunctive is recognizable only with a singular subject. The past subjunctive is restricted to the form *were* used in the singular, especially to express unreal or hypothetical meaning:

3 *My head felt as if it **were** split open.* (FICT†)

Like the present subjunctive, this form is recognizable only in the singular, where it is used as an alternative to *was* as a hypothetical past tense verb.

8.18 Dependent clauses with no main clause

In special circumstances, dependent clauses can be used without being attached to a larger structure. One situation in which an unembedded dependent clause can occur is in dialog, owing to the influence of ellipsis:

> *A: You will be careful with that, won't you?*
> *B: Yeah!*
> *A:* ***Cos it costs a lot of money.*** (CONV)

However, similar phenomena occur in texts written in an informal style:

> *Sneaky, insincere? Depends how it's done.* ***Which brings us onto those Americans.*** *'Have a nice day.' How exaggerated, how American, we Brits recoil.* (NEWS)

Notice that the unembedded clause here is part of a passage containing non-clausal elements, and obviously imitating a spoken style.

Elsewhere, unembedded dependent clauses occur in **block language**, such as newspaper headlines:

> *Paris Transport Workers to Strike.* (NEWS)
> *Climbing High, but Feeling Low.* (NEWS)

Review

Major points of Grammar Bite E: Dependent clauses

- Dependent clauses are subdivided into finite and non-finite clauses (whereas independent clauses are generally finite).
- Finite dependent clauses include complement, adverbial, relative, comparative, and other degree clauses.
- There are also some clause types of borderline status: e.g. reporting clauses and question tags.
- Non-finite dependent clauses include infinitive clauses, *ing*-clauses, *ed*-clauses, and verbless clauses.
- In certain circumstances, dependent clauses are used as separate units, like independent clauses.

9

Complex noun phrases

GRAMMAR BITES in this chapter

A Types of noun modification

- The different structures used to modify noun phrases
- The patterns of use for noun modification across the registers

B Premodification

- Modifiers that occur in front of the head noun in a noun phrase: attributive adjectives, noun + noun sequences, and other more specialized structures

C Relative clauses

- Options in the structure of relative clauses, such as the choice between different relative pronouns
- Factors that are associated with each option

D Other postmodifier types

- Modifiers other than relative clauses that occur following the head noun in a noun phrase: non-finite clauses, prepositional phrases, and appositive noun phrases

E Noun complement clauses

- The different kinds of noun complement clauses: *that*-clauses, *to*-infinitive clauses, *of* + *ing*-clauses and *wh*-interrogative clauses
- The functions of the different types of noun complement clauses

9.1 Introduction

The basic noun phrase, which we discussed in Chapter 4, can be expanded with noun **modifiers**. **Premodifiers**, like attributive adjectives, occur before the **head** noun. **Postmodifiers**, like relative clauses, occur following the head noun. In total, noun phrases can be composed of four major components:

determiner + premodifiers + head noun + postmodifiers

All noun phrases include a head, while determiners, premodifiers, and postmodifiers are optional. This can be illustrated in the following noun phrases:

determiner	**premodifiers**	**head (noun)**	**postmodifiers**
	industrially advanced	*countries*	
a	*small wooden*	*box*	*that he owned*
a	*market*	*system*	*that has no imperfections*
the	*new training*	*college*	*for teachers*
		patterns	*of industrial development in the United States*

A pronoun can substitute for a noun or a complete noun phrase. As a result, noun phrases can have a pronoun instead of a noun as the head. Pronoun-headed phrases usually do not include a determiner or premodifiers, but they may have postmodifiers. Several pronoun-headed phrases are illustrated here:

determiner	**premodifiers**	**head (pronoun)**	**postmodifiers**
		I	
		she	
		anyone	*who is willing to listen*
		those	*who take the trouble to register*
the	*big*	*one*	*in town*

As the above examples show, noun phrases can be expanded in many ways and often involve both premodifiers and postmodifiers. As a result, noun phrases are often structurally complex, especially in written discourse.

For example, the following sentence is from a newspaper article about cellular radios. Its main clause structure is very simple: a main verb (*is*) with two noun phrase slots (marked by *[]*)—subject (*problem*) and subject predicative (*competition*).

> *[The latest **problem** for the government] is [increasing **competition** for mobile cellular radio services, which have a small bunch of frequencies around 900 MHz].* (NEWS)

However, this sentence is relatively long and complex because the noun phrases have complex modification:

determiner	**premodifiers**	**head noun**	**postmodifiers**
The	*latest*	*problem*	*for the government*
	increasing	*competition*	*for mobile cellular radio services which have a small bunch of frequencies around 900 MHz.*

This example also illustrates that there are different levels of **embedding** within noun phrases. That is, postmodifiers of a first-level noun phrase can include complex noun phrases with pre- and postmodification. For example:

top-level NP:

premodifiers	**head noun**	**postmodifiers**
increasing	*competition*	*for mobile cellular radio services . . .*

second-level NP (embedded within postmodifer):

premodifiers	**head noun**	**postmodifiers**
mobile cellular radio	*services*	*which have a small bunch of frequencies around 900 MHz*

Although we will stop our analysis here, we could go on to break down the noun phrase within the postmodifier *which have a small bunch of frequencies around 900 MHz.*

As this chapter will show, such complexity of noun modification is not unusual in English. In the following five Grammar Bites, we explore the major options for expanding noun phrases in English. In Grammar Bite A, we survey the structures used as noun premodifiers and postmodifiers, comparing the frequency of each type across registers. Then, in Grammar Bite B, we focus on types of premodification. In Grammar Bites C, D, and E, we turn to postnominal modifiers. Relative clauses are the most complex of these because there are many structural alternatives; these are covered in Grammar Bite C. Then, in Grammar Bite D we survey the other structures used as postnominal modifiers and discuss how sequences of postmodifiers can be used in combination. Finally, in Grammar Bite E we consider a special type of structure that occurs following noun heads: noun complement clauses. We show how noun complement clauses are different from relative clauses, and we describe the most common types of noun complement clauses.

GRAMMAR BITE

A Types of noun modification

9.2 Survey of noun modifier types

There are several different types of premodifiers and postmodifiers. **Premodifiers** include adjectives, participials, and other nouns:

- adjective as premodifier:

  *a **special** project* (CONV)

  *an **internal** memo* (NEWS)
- participial premodifiers:

  ***written** reasons* (NEWS)

__detecting__ devices (ACAD)

- noun as premodifier:

  the ***bus*** strike (CONV)

  *the **police** report* (NEWS)

There are also several different types of **postmodifier**, including both clauses and phrases. Clausal postmodifiers can be either **finite** or **non-finite**. When the clauses are finite, they are **relative clauses**. Non-finite postmodifier clauses have three different forms: ***to*-clauses**, ***ing*-clauses**, and ***ed*-clauses**:

- relative clause as postmodifier:

  *a footpath **which disappeared in a landscape of fields and trees*** (FICT)

  *beginning students **who have had no previous college science courses*** (ACAD)

- *to*-infinitive clause as postmodifier:

  *the way **to get to our house*** (CONV)

  *enough money **to buy proper food.*** (FICT)

- *ing*-clause as postmodifier:

  *the imperious man **standing under the lamppost*** (FICT)

  *rebels **advancing rapidly southwards*** (NEWS)

- *ed*-clause as postmodifier:

  *fury **fanned by insensitive press coverage*** (NEWS)

  *products **required to support a huge and growing population*** (ACAD)

Phrasal postmodifiers consist of two main types: **prepositional phrases** and **appositive noun phrases. Adjective phrases** can also be postmodifiers, but they are less common.

- prepositional phrase as postmodifier:

  *doctors **at the Johns Hopkins Medical School*** (NEWS)

  *compensation **for emotional damage*** (ACAD)

- appositive noun phrase as postmodifier:

  *the Indian captain, **Mohammed Azharuddin*** (NEWS)

- adjective phrase as postmodifiers (not common):

  *President Bush will reiterate he wants a smooth transition and will co-operate in [any way **possible**].* (NEWS)

  *[The extremely short duration varieties **common in India**] were not used in West Africa.* (ACAD†)

Occasionally adverbs can also be premodifiers or postmodifiers in noun phrases:

- adverb as premodifier:

  *the **nearby** guards* (FICT†)

- adverb as postmodifier:

  *a block **behind*** (FICT†)

Noun complement clauses are different from postmodifiers in structure and meaning, although they also occur following noun heads. They involve primarily special kinds of *that-* and *to*-clauses:

*the idea **that he was completely cold and unemotional*** (FICT) *a chance **to do the right thing*** (FICT)

The special features of noun complement clauses are described in Grammar Bite E.

9.3 Noun phrases with premodifiers and postmodifiers across registers

Noun phrases with premodifiers and noun phrases with postmodifiers are about equally common in English. However, there are large differences across registers in the use of the types of modifier.

Figure 9.1 shows that the typical case in conversation is to use nouns with no modifier at all. In fact, noun phrases are often realized by a pronoun instead of a full noun. The following text sample from a conversation illustrates these patterns; all noun phrases are in *[]*, while the head nouns and pronouns are in bold.

Figure 9.1

Distribution of noun phrases with premodifiers and postmodifiers

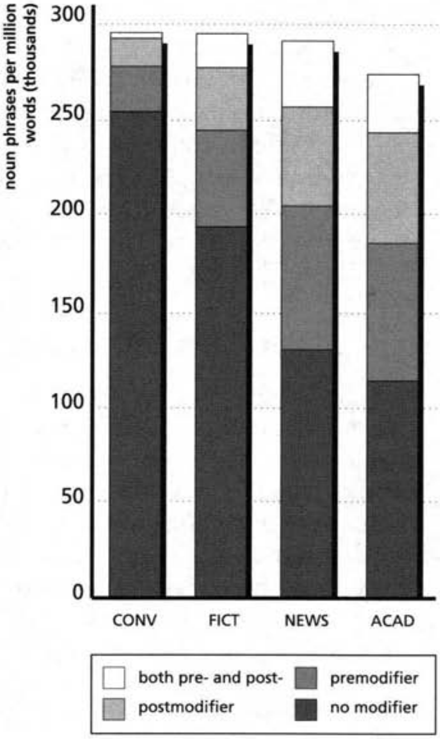

Text sample 1: PICTURES AND SLEEVES (CONV)

A: *[**Trouble**] is [**granny**] does [**it**] and [**she**]'s got [loads of **time**]. [**She**] sits there and does [**them**] twice as fast as [**me**]. [**I**] – what [**I**] like doing, [**I**] like [the **pictures**].*

B: *Yes.*

A: *So [**I**] don't mind doing [the **pictures**]. If [**she**]'d do [the **sleeves**] and [the **back**] for [**me**], [**I**]'d be very grateful.*

B: *Yeah.*

A: *Whereas [**she**] can't stand doing [the **pictures**], cos [**it**] takes [**her**] [too much **time**].*

B: *[**It**]'s like doing [**tapestry**].*

As this excerpt shows, conversation has many noun phrases, but they are usually very short and have concrete referents—specific people, places, or things. Pronouns are also extremely common in conversation. Speakers in a conversation share the same physical situation, and they often share personal knowledge about each other as well. As a result, speakers typically use noun phrases with no modification, knowing that the listener will have no trouble identifying the intended referent.

In contrast, noun phrases in academic writing usually have premodifiers or postmodifiers (or both). The following text sample illustrates these patterns, with the top-level noun phrases marked in *[]*, and the head nouns marked in bold.

Text sample 2: COLLISIONS WITH COMETS (ACAD)

> *[Professor **H.C. Urey**] has suggested that [rare **collisions** between the earth and comets, recorded as scatters of tektites], must have produced [vast **quantities** of energy that would have been sufficient to heat up considerably both the atmosphere and the surface layers of the ocean].*

This excerpt has only three non-embedded noun phrases, but two of these have extensive modification. These two noun phrases are listed below, with premodifiers underlined and postmodifiers given in *[]*:

> *rare **collisions** [between the earth and comets], [recorded as scatters of tektites]*
>
> *vast **quantities** [of energy] [that would have been sufficient to heat up considerably both the atmosphere and the surface layers of the ocean]*

Such structures are typical of academic prose, where a majority of all noun phrases have some modification. In fact, much of the new information in academic texts occurs in the modifiers in noun phrases, resulting in a very high density of information.

It is surprising that premodifiers and postmodifiers have a similar distribution across registers. It might be expected that specific registers would tend to rely on either premodifiers or postmodifiers. Instead, we find *both* types of noun modification to be extremely common in written expository registers, while both types are relatively rare in conversation.

9.3.1 Premodifier types across registers

Adjectives are by far the most common type of noun premodifier (Figure 9.2). Adjectives come from many different semantic classes, which cover numerous concepts, including color, size/extent, time/age/frequency, and affective evaluation. Chapter 7 describes the use of these premodifying (attributive) adjectives in detail.

It is more surprising that nouns are also extremely common as noun premodifiers, especially in the written expository registers. Noun + noun sequences are used to express a wide range of meaning relationships in a succinct form. As a result, nouns as premodifiers are especially favored as a space-saving device in newspaper language. We return to a detailed discussion of noun + noun sequences in 9.5.

Figure 9.2

Frequency of premodifier types across registers

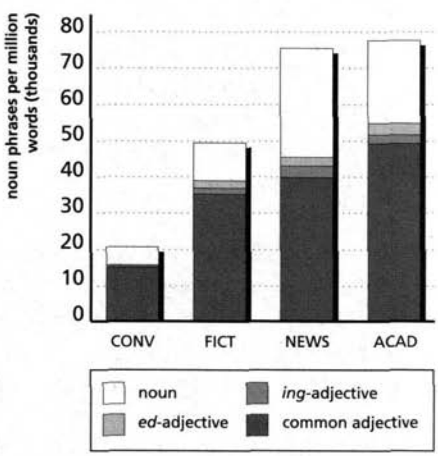

9.3.2 Postmodifier types across registers

Although relative clauses often receive the most attention in discussions of noun postmodifiers, prepositional phrases are actually much more common (Figure 9.3). Prepositional phrases as postmodifiers are especially common in news and academic prose. These structures often occur in extremely dense, embedded sequences. In the following text extract, postmodifiers are in *[]* with the associated prepositions in bold. Top-level noun phrases (i.e. those which are not part of other noun phrases) are underlined:

Figure 9.3
Prepositional v. other postmodification across registers

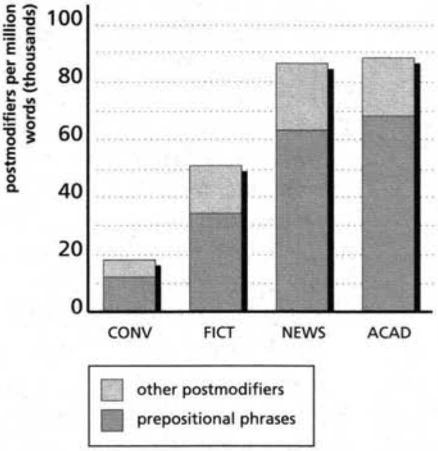

> *Mortality [**among** stocks [**of** eggs] [stored outdoors in the ground]] averaged 70%; eggs [collected the following spring from a large number [**of** natural habitats [**in** the central part [**of** the province]]] suffered a 46% reduction [**in** viability] [which could only be attributed to this exposure [**to** cold]]. Further evidence [**of** the association [**of** winter egg mortality [**with** sub-zero temperatures and snow cover]]] was reported **by** Riegert (1967a).* (ACAD)

(Note that prepositional phrases can also function as adverbials, as in *collected . . . from*.)

In academic prose, prepositional phrases allow a very dense packaging of information in a text. They are more compact than relative clauses. For example, compare the prepositional phrase from the beginning of the last example with an alternative relative clause:

> **prepositional phrase postmodifier**
> *mortality among stocks . . .*
>
> **relative clause postmodifier**
> *mortality which occurred among stocks . . .*

Prepositional phrases commonly occur in sequences in academic prose, which also adds to the dense packing of information. For example, the sample above contains the sequence:

> *a large number [of natural habitats [in the central part [of the province]]]*

Relative clauses differ from prepositional phrases as postmodifiers in both their communicative function and their register distribution (see Figure 9.4). They are common in both fiction and news, where they are often used to identify or describe a person:

> *someone **whom I had never seen before*** (FICT)
> *a man on the platform **whose looks I didn't like*** (FICT)
> *a 20-year-old woman **who has been missing for a week*** (NEWS)

When they are used to characterize inanimate objects, relative clauses often link the object to a person, as in **1–3** below. Further, relative clauses in fiction and news typically use dynamic verbs describing actions, in contrast to the static presentation of information associated with prepositional phrases:

1 *one of those mixed-up salads* ***which men will eat with complete docility in restaurants*** (FICT)
2 *the boiling pot of gravy* ***which fell upon his foot*** (FICT)
3 *the 1988 event* ***which left her on the verge of a nervous breakdown*** (NEWS)

All three of these examples relate an inanimate head (*salads*, *pot*, *event*) to a person (*men*, *his foot*, *her*) and use a dynamic verb (*eat*, *fell*, *left*).

Figure 9.4
Non-prepositional postmodifier types across registers

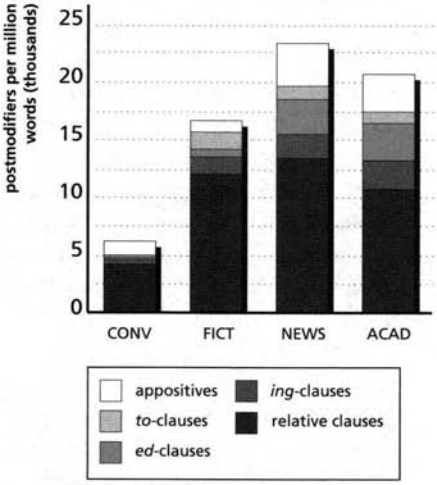

The other types of clausal postmodifier are less common (although postmodifying *ed*-clauses and appositive noun phrases are relatively common in news and academic prose). Each of these postmodifier types is described in detail in Grammar Bite D.

9.3.3 Modifiers with different head noun types

In general, nouns occur freely with premodifiers and postmodifiers, while pronouns rarely occur with modification. However, there are notable exceptions to this rule. For example, proper nouns and other naming expressions usually do not occur with a modifier, since the name itself clearly refers to a specific person, place, or institution. When proper nouns do occur with a modifier, it is usually an appositive noun phrase, such as (appositive underlined):

Heiko, *a 19-year-old factory worker* (NEWS)

Voronezh, *a dour city of 850,000 people in the great Russian heartlands* (NEWS)

Personal pronouns (like *I*, *you*, *she*) follow the general rule of rarely occurring with a modifier. However, other pronoun classes behave differently. For example, the substitute pronoun *one*, which stands for a noun or noun-headed expression, is similar to common noun heads because it freely takes both premodifiers and postmodifiers. In conversation, a modifier is used to identify 'which one' is intended (premodifiers and postmodifiers underlined):

You know ***the one*** *she ran off with.* (CONV)

He's got ***a*** *horrible* ***one*** *that he hardly ever wears.* (CONV)

The *last* ***one*** *I had was at least four years ago.* (CONV†)

The substitute pronoun *one* in academic prose is usually directly anaphoric, substituting for a previously used noun phrase, but the modifier provides new descriptive details about that referent:

> *The idea is **a** strange **one**.* (ACAD†)

Postmodifiers are used more commonly than premodifiers to give the new information, since they can be longer and thus provide more descriptive information:

> *A black body is **one** that perfectly absorbs, and then re-emits, all radiation falling upon it.* (ACAD)

Indefinite pronouns can also take both premodifiers and postmodifiers. However, postmodifiers are overwhelmingly more common with this head type.

> ***All** I know is nobody likes her.* (CONV)
>
> *Um, this was a surprise to **several** of us.* (CONV)
>
> *We have tried to impart **something** about the motivations of contemporary geologists.* (ACAD†)
>
> *But today, over thirty years after Basset's book appeared, is there **anything** new to say about 1931?* (ACAD)

Demonstrative pronouns differ from other head types in that they take only postmodifiers. However, each individual pronoun shows a different pattern of use:

- The pronouns *this* and *these* are extremely rare with a modifier.
- The pronoun *that* occasionally takes a postmodifier.
- The pronoun *those* is extremely common with a postmodifier, especially in writing.

When it occurs with a modifier, the demonstrative pronoun *that* usually takes an *of* prepositional phrase as postmodifier:

> *The simplest covalent structure is **that** of diamond.* (ACAD) <i.e. the structure of diamond>

In contrast, the demonstrative pronoun *those*—referring to people or things—takes a variety of postmodifiers to identify the intended reference:

> *A state may have good grounds in some special circumstances for coercing **those** who have no duty to obey.* (ACAD)
>
> *They sat erect, conscious of their uniforms, styled like **those** of the post-1843 Prussian army.* (FICT) < = like the uniforms of the post-1843 Prussian army>
>
> *This may be smugly satisfying to **those** of us who sit on the sidelines.* (NEWS)

Review

Major points of GRAMMAR BITE A: Types of noun modification

- ➤ There are many different types of premodifiers and postmodifiers.
- ➤ Adjectives are the most common premodifier type.
  - ➤ Nouns are also very common as premodifiers in the written registers.
- ➤ Prepositional phrases are by far the most common type of postmodifier.
  - ➤ Relative clauses are also common.
- ➤ Premodifiers and postmodifiers are distributed in the same way across registers: rare in conversation, very common in informational writing.

➤ Different types of noun phrase heads (e.g. common noun, personal pronoun, indefinite pronoun) are associated with different types of modifiers.

GRAMMAR BITE

B Premodification

9.4 Types of premodifiers

There are four major structural types of premodification in English:

- general adjective: *big pillow, new pants, official negotiations, political isolation*
- *ed*-participial modifier: *restricted area, improved growth, fixed volume, established tradition*
- *ing*-participial modifier: *flashing lights, growing problem, exhausting task*
- noun: *staff room, pencil case, market forces, maturation period*

In addition, as we showed in Chapter 4, determiners, genitives, and numerals precede the head and modifiers, and help to specify the reference of noun phrases.

Premodifiers are condensed structures. They use fewer words than postmodifiers to convey roughly the same information. Most adjectival and participial premodifiers can be re-phrased as a longer, postmodifying relative clause:

premodifiers	**relative clause as postmodifier**
*a **big** pillow*	*a pillow **which is big***
*a **restricted** area*	*an area **which is restricted***
*an **established** tradition*	*a tradition **which has been established***
***flashing** lights*	*lights **which are flashing***

We explained in 9.3.1 that general adjectives, functioning as attributive adjectives, are the most common form of noun premodifiers.

Figure 9.2 in 9.3.1 showed that nouns are also extremely common as premodifiers, especially in newspaper language and academic prose. Noun + noun sequences can represent many different meaning relationships, but there are no signals to indicate which meaning is intended in any given case. To rephrase noun + noun sequences as postmodifiers requires a wide range of function words (different prepositions and relative pronouns) together with different verbs. Thus consider the range of meaning relationships expressed by the following noun + noun sequences:

noun + noun sequence	**re-phrasing with a postmodifier**
plastic trays	*trays made from plastic*
wash basins	*basins used for washing*
law report	*report about the law*

noun + noun sequence	re-phrasing with a postmodifier
company management	*the management of a company*
commission sources	*sources in the commission*
elephant boy	*boy who resembles an elephant*

In fact, such sequences often represent more than one possible meaning relationship. *Commission sources* could also be 'sources of commission', and *elephant boy* could refer to 'a boy who rides on an elephant'.

In the following section, we examine the range of meanings that noun + noun sequences can express. Then, in 9.6, we introduce more complex combinations of premodifiers.

9.5 Meaning relationships expressed by noun + noun sequences

Noun + noun sequences contain only content words, with no function word to show the meaning relationship between the two parts (see also 4.11.3). This means that they present information densely. It also means they rely heavily on implicit meaning, because the reader must infer the intended logical relationship between the modifying noun and head noun. In fact, noun + noun sequences are used to express a bewildering array of logical relations, including the following (where the head noun is labeled N2 and the premodifying noun N1):

- composition (N2 is made from N1; N2 consists of N1):

  e.g. *glass windows = windows made from glass*

  metal seat, plastic beaker, zinc supplement, protein granules, tomato sauce, satin dress, egg masses, water supplies, fact sheets

- purpose (N2 is for the purpose of N1; N2 is used for N1):

  e.g. *pencil case = case used for pencils*

  brandy bottle, patrol car, Easter eggs, picnic ham, chess board, safety device, search procedure, worship services, war fund, extortion plan

- identity (N2 has the same referent as N1 but classifies it in terms of different attributes):

  e.g. *women algebraists = women who are algebraists*

  conventionalist judge, men workers, consultant cardiologist, member country, exam papers, grant aid

- content (N2 is about N1; N2 deals with N1):

  e.g. *algebra text = a text about algebra, probability profile = profile showing probability*

  market report, sports diary, prescription chart, success rates, credit agreement, intelligence bureau

- objective (N1 is the object of the process described in N2, or of the action performed by the agent described in N2):

  e.g. *egg production = X produces eggs, taxi driver = X drives a taxi* *waste disposal, paddy cultivation, root development, curio sellers, corn farmer, computer users*

- subjective (N1 is the subject of the process described in N2; N2 is usually a nominalization of an intransitive verb):

  e.g. *child development = children develop*

  leaf appearance, eye movement, management buy-out
- time (N2 is found or takes place at the time given by N1):

  e.g. *summer conditions = conditions that occur during the summertime*

  Sunday school, Christmas raffle
- location (N2 is found or takes place at the location given by N1):

  e.g. *corner cupboard = a cupboard that is located in the corner*

  roof slates, Paris conference, church square, surface traction, tunnel trains
- institution (N2 identifies an institution for N1):

  e.g. *insurance companies = companies for (selling) insurance*

  ski club, egg industry
- partitive (N2 identifies parts of N1):

  e.g. *cat legs = legs of a cat*

  rifle butt, family member
- specialization (N1 identifies an area of specialization for the person or occupation given in N2; N2 is animate):

  e.g. *finance director = director who specializes in finance*

  Education Secretary, gossip columnists, football fans, estate agent, management consultant

Many sequences can be analyzed as belonging to more than one category. For example, *thigh injury* and *heart attack* could be considered as either objective (*X injured the thigh*) or location (*the injury is located at the thigh*).

In addition, many noun + noun sequences do not fit neatly into any of the above categories. For example, the expression *riot police* might be understood as expressing purpose, but there is an additional component of meaning: these are police used to control riots, not police for (creating) riots! Other noun + noun sequences express a range of meaning relationships in addition to the above major categories. For example:

noun + noun	**meaning**
voice communication	communication using voice
union assets	assets belonging to a union
jet streams	air streams moving like a jet
bank holiday	holiday observed by banks
pressure hose	hose able to withstand pressure
pressure ratios	ratios measuring pressure

9.5.1 Premodifying nouns that occur with many head nouns

A few premodifying nouns are especially productive in that they combine with many different head nouns. For example, the noun *family* is used with a wide range of head nouns representing many different kinds of semantic relationships:

family affair
family argument
family background
family barbecue
family car
family company
family doctor
family entertainment
family friend

In conversation, only a few nouns are productive as premodifiers. The combinations that do occur reflect the everyday-life topics of conversation. For example:

car + *accident, door, insurance, keys, park, seat, wash*

school + *book, children, clothes, fees, holidays, trips*

In contrast, newspaper language makes extensive use of noun + noun sequences. Many of the most productive premodifying nouns identify major institutions, especially government, business, and the media. For example:

government + *action, agencies, approval, bonds, control, decision*

business + *administration, cards, community, dealings, empire, ideas*

TV + *ads, appearance, cameras, channel, crew, documentary, licence*

Some premodifiers that are productive in conversation are also productive in news. However, in news they usually have an institutional meaning. For example:

water + *authorities, bill, companies, industry, levels, privatisation*

The extremely productive use of noun + noun sequences in newspaper language results in a very dense presentation of information. These forms save space, since each noun + noun sequence conveys a complex meaning in condensed form. However, the dense use of these forms can place a heavy burden on readers, who must infer the intended meaning relationship between the modifying noun and head noun.

9.5.2 Plural nouns as premodifiers

Although the singular form is usually used for premodifying nouns, plural nouns can also occur as premodifiers. Typical examples include *carpets retailer*, *cities correspondent*, *drugs business*, *trades union*, *residents association*. This pattern is much more common in British English than in American English.

Plural nouns as premodifiers occur especially in newspaper language. A few nouns are commonly found in both American and British English. For example:

arms + *race, scandal, supplier, treaty*

sales + *force, gain, increases, tax*

savings + *account, banks, deposits, institutions*

women + *candidates, drivers, ministers, voters*

However, there is a much larger set of plural nouns used frequently in British English but rarely in American English. For example:

drugs + *administration, ban, business, companies, problem, trade*

jobs *+ crisis, losses, market*

animals *shelter,* ***careers*** *office,* ***highways*** *department*

In addition to the overall dialect differences, there are two factors that are associated with the use of a plural premodifying noun. The first is when the noun premodifier only has a plural form, or has a special meaning associated with the plural:

arms *accord,* ***customs*** *officer,* ***explosives*** *factory*

However, some nouns which have only a plural form do lose the plural ending in noun + noun constructions:

scissor *kick,* ***trouser*** *leg*

The second factor is when the noun modifier itself contains more than one word:

1 *At Tesco's you've got fifty feet of [[**baked beans**] shelves].* (CONV†)

2 *A bit more will be said of particular features of the metalinguistic and [[**possible-worlds**] proposals].* (ACAD†)

The plural form in these sequences provides a clear signal of the structure of the complex noun phrase. In writing, some of these premodifiers are hyphenated (as in **2** above).

Some plural nouns, such as *affairs*, *relations*, *resources*, *rights*, and *services* are almost always premodified themselves, and retain the plural form when used in premodification:

*the State Department's [[**consular affairs**] bureau]* (NEWS)

*Labour's chief [[**foreign affairs**] spokesman]* (NEWS)

*the [[**customer relations**] department]* (CONV)

9.6 Noun phrases with multiple premodifiers

In written registers, many noun phrases occur with multiple premodifiers. However, it is rare for all the words in a premodification sequence to modify the head noun. Rather, premodifying sequences usually have embedded relationships, with some words modifying other premodifiers instead of the head noun. For example, consider the following noun phrases:

*[[**quite pale**] skin]*

*two [[**mutually perpendicular**] directions]*

Both of these noun phrases show an adverb (*quite* and *mutually*) modifying a following adjective (*pale* and *perpendicular*) instead of the head noun (*skin* and *directions*).

In a few cases, the meaning relationships among constituents are truly ambiguous. For example, out of context, the noun phrase *two more practical principles* has two distinct interpretations:

[two more] [practical] principles—i.e. 'two additional principles that are practical'

two [[more] practical] principles—i.e. 'two principles that are more practical'

Other noun phrases illustrate different relationships among the constituents, as in the following noun phrases with three-word premodification:

the [[one-time prosperous] [[market] town]]
the [[controversial] [offshore investment] portfolios]

The number of possible meaning relationships increases dramatically with each additional premodifier. Thus, noun phrases with four-word premodification can represent many different meaning relationships among constituents. For example, each of the following noun phrases with four-word premodification represents a different set of meaning relations:

1 *[[naked], [shameless], [direct], [brutal] exploitation]*
2 *[[very [finely grained]] [alluvial] material]*
3 *a [[totally [covered]], [uninsulated] [[pig] house]]*

In **1**, all four words in the premodification directly modify the head noun. This type of structuring is very rare, however. As **2** and **3** illustrate, multiple words in the premodification much more commonly have complex structural relationships among themselves.

9.6.1 The order of multiple premodifiers

Although there are no absolute rules, there are a few general tendencies governing the order of words in a premodification sequence:

A Adverb + adjective + head

Adverbs almost always precede adjectives. This is because adverbs usually modify the following adjective rather than the head noun directly. Examples include:

*a **really hot** day*
*a **rather blunt** penknife*
*a **thoroughly satisfactory** reply*
*an **extremely varied** and **immensely pleasing** exhibition*

B Adjective + noun + head

When a noun phrase has both an adjective and a noun as premodifiers, the adjective usually precedes the noun. This sequence is most common because the position closest to the head noun is filled by modifiers that are more integrated with the meaning of the head noun. The following noun phrases illustrate these tendencies:

- adjective + noun + head:
  mature rice grain, thick winter overcoat, true life stories, bright canvas bags
- color adjective + noun + head:
  black plastic sheet, black leather jacket, red address book
- participial adjective + noun + head:
  an experienced woman worker, broken bicycle wheels, an increasing mortgage burden

This order can sometimes be reversed, especially with participial adjectives. This is when the premodifying noun modifies the participial adjective (rather than the head noun):

- noun + participial adjective + head noun:

[information processing] activities, [hypothesis testing] process

In most cases, this kind of sequence of premodifiers is hyphenated. In fact, such sequences may be considered as adjectival compounds (see 7.3.3):

English-speaking world, self-fulfilling prophecy, tree-lined avenues, egg-shaped ball

C Adjective + adjective + head

A related principle for multiple adjectives as premodifiers is that **descriptors** tend to precede **classifiers** (see 7.6.):

stronger environmental regulation, any major industrial nation

Color adjectives tend to follow other adjectives. For example:

- adjective + color adjective + head noun:

  dry white grass, clear blue eyes, shabby black clothes

9.6.2 Coordinated premodifiers

In one respect, coordinated premodifiers make the logical relationships among premodifiers explicit, since each part directly modifies the head noun:

black and white *cat*

hot and hardening *mud*

arrogant and unattractive *man*

physical and sexual *abuse*

However, these structures have their own kinds of indeterminacy. In most cases, premodifiers coordinated with *and* are used to identify two distinct attributes that are qualities of a single referent:

precise and effective *solutions*

pleasing and efficient *surroundings*

complex and technical *legislation*

With plural and uncountable heads, however, *and*-coordinated premodifiers can also be used to identify two different (mutually exclusive) referents, such as:

spoken and written *styles*

male and female *workers*

British and American *spelling*

Thus, *precise and effective solutions* refers to solutions that are both precise and effective. In contrast, *spoken and written styles* refers to two different kinds of styles—spoken style and written style—rather than to styles that are both spoken and written.

Or-coordinated premodifiers can also have two interpretations. In some cases, either one, or both, of the two attributes can be applied to a given referent:

racial or religious *cohesion*

familiar or preplanned *activities*

In other cases, though, the coordinator connects two attributes that are mutually exclusive, so that only one can characterize a given referent:

dead or dying *larvae*

petroleum or coal-based *hydrocarbon matrices*

In general, coordinated premodifiers are most common in academic writing. Certain adjective + adjective combinations are especially common, often referring to complementary demographic or institutional characteristics (e.g. *social and cultural*, *economic and political*, *mental and physical*):

> *Such a strategy assumes <. . .> that it will be legitimized by a range of* ***social and cultural*** *values.* (ACAD†)

In fiction, certain adjectives are common as the first member of adjective + adjective combinations, adding descriptive details about the noun:

> ***black and ginger*** *fur* (FICT)
> *a* ***black and yellow*** *eel-like fish* (FICT)
> *this* ***strange and empty*** *country* (FICT)
> *this* ***strange and dreaded*** *group of men* (FICT)

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE B:** Premodification

- There are four major types of noun premodifier: general adjective, *ed*-participial modifier, *ing*-participial modifier, and noun.
  - Nouns as premodifiers are especially rich in meaning because they express a wide array of logical relationships.
  - A few nouns, like *car*, *school*, *government*, and *TV*, are especially productive as premodifiers.
  - Plural nouns can also occur as premodifiers, as in *arms race*. This pattern is more common in British English.
- When noun phrases have multiple premodifiers, they tend to occur in a predictable order depending on their grammatical category: e.g. adjective + noun + head noun.
- Coordinated premodifiers (e.g. *male and female workers*) are found primarily in academic prose.
  - Coordinated premodifiers are surprisingly complex because their meaning is not explicit.

GRAMMAR BITE

C Relative clauses

9.7 Restrictive v. non-restrictive function

Relative clauses are often classified by their function as either **restrictive** or **non-restrictive**. Restrictive relative clauses identify the intended reference of the head noun (the whole noun phrase is included in *[]*):

> *Richard hit the ball on [the car* ***that was going past****].* (CONV)

The relative clause in this sentence has a restrictive function. It pinpoints the particular 'car' being referred to.

In contrast, non-restrictive relative clauses add elaborating, descriptive information about a head noun that has already been identified or is assumed to be known. For example:

> *He looked into [her mailbox,* ***which she never locked****].* (FICT)

In this example, the particular mailbox is identified by the possessive pronoun *her*, and the non-restrictive relative clause is used to provide additional, descriptive information.

In writing, non-restrictive postmodifiers are usually separated from the head noun by a comma, while no punctuation is used with a restrictive postmodifier. In spoken language, where there are no punctuation marks, intonation and pauses can differentiate restrictive and non-restrictive postmodifiers. (For the following analyses, we have used punctuation to identity non-restrictive relative clauses in the written registers.)

Overall, analyzing the frequency of relative clauses, we find that:

- Restrictive relative clauses are much more common than non-restrictive clauses.
- Newspaper stories tend to use non-restrictive clauses to a greater extent than other registers.

The information added by non-restrictive clauses is often tangential to the main point of a text. This is especially the case in news, where non-restrictive clauses are used to add information of potential interest but not directly related to the news story. For example, consider the following sentences from a news article about negotiations for the sale of the firm Whyte & Mackay by the company Brent Walker:

> *Brent Walker said it expected the buyout negotiations 'would be successfully completed shortly.' Brent Walker bought Whyte & Mackay from Lonrho earlier this year for £180m in a deal that included four French vineyards,* ***which are also for sale for as much as £60m****.* (NEWS)

In this excerpt, the fact that the French vineyards are for sale does not help the reader identify the referent of 'vineyards'. Instead, this is an extra piece of information that might be of interest to some readers.

Similar uses of non-restrictive relative clauses are also common in news when the head is a proper noun:

> *American Airlines,* ***which began the daily flights to Chicago less than a year ago****, accused the government of being partly to blame.* (NEWS†)

In constructions of this type, the identity of the head noun is well-known to readers, and the non-restrictive relative clause is used to add newsworthy but incidental information about that referent.

9.7.1 Restrictive and non-restrictive functions with other postmodifiers

Although this Grammar Bite focuses on relative clauses, it is worth noting that postmodifiers other than relative clauses can also be classified by restrictive and non-restrictive functions. The great majority of other postmodifiers are restrictive, including most of the examples you have seen earlier in this chapter. For example:

- restrictive *ed*-clause:

  *His is a fury **fanned by insensitive press coverage of homosexuality and the AIDS epidemic**.* (NEWS†)

- restrictive *ing*-clause:

  *The Ethiopian army is failing to halt northern rebels **advancing rapidly southwards to the capitol**.* (NEWS†)

- restrictive prepositional phrase:

  *Doctors **at the Johns Hopkins Medical School in Baltimore** say that* <...> (NEWS†)

In each case above, the postmodifier is important for identifying the reference of the head noun.

However, other postmodifiers do have a non-restrictive function occasionally, though much less commonly than relative clauses.

- non-restrictive *ed*-clauses:

  *A converted farm building, **donated by Mr. and Mrs. Tabor**, has been turned into a study room filled with photographs and displays.* (NEWS)

  *The distinction between public and private law, **espoused in many pluralist accounts**, is largely bogus.* (ACAD)

- non-restrictive *ing*-clauses:

  *Both writing and reading are enormously complex skills, **involving the coordination of sensory and cognitive processes**.* (ACAD)

  *Style variation is intrinsic to the novel's satiric-epic picture of Victorian urban society, **concentrating on the capitalist house of Dombey**.* (ACAD)

- non-restrictive prepositional phrases:

  *The great tall library, **with the Book of Kells and of Robert Emmet**, charmed him.* (FICT)

  *The sale, **for a sum not thought to be material**, marks the final dismemberment of Metro-Cammell Weymann.* (NEWS)

Appositive noun phrases are exceptional—they are usually non-restrictive:

- non-restrictive appositive noun phrases:

  *The rebels, **the Tigrayan People's Liberation Front** (TPLF)* (NEWS)

  *a Soviet Deputy Defence Minister, **General Varrenikov*** (NEWS)

  *both types of eggs **(diapause and non-diapause)*** (ACAD)

9.8 Postmodification by relative clauses

When discussing relative clauses, we will focus on three key components: the **head** noun, the **relativizer**, and the **gap**.

- The head noun is the noun modified by the relative clause.
- The relativizer is the word, such as *who* or *that*, which introduces the relative clause. It refers to the same person or thing as the head noun.
- The gap is the location of the missing constituent in the relative clause. All relative clauses have a missing constituent, which again corresponds in meaning to the head noun.

Thus, consider the relative clause construction:

> *the diamond earrings* ***that Mama wore*** ^. (FICT)

- The head noun is *earrings.*
- The relativizer is *that*, referring to the 'earrings'.
- The gap occurs in the direct object position, after the verb *wore*. The underlying meaning of the relative clause is that 'Mama wore [the earrings]'.

There are many variations possible with relative clauses, and these are described in detail in the following sections. The most obvious of these involves the choice of relativizer (9.8.1). In addition, relative clauses can occur with different gap positions (9.8.2). Relative clauses with adverbial gaps occur with an especially wide range of variants; these are dealt with in a separate section (9.8.3).

9.8.1 The discourse choice among relativizers

In standard English, relative clauses can be formed using eight different relativizers. Five of these are **relative pronouns**: *which*, *who*, *whom*, *whose*, and *that*. The other three relativizers are **relative adverbs**: *where*, *when*, and *why*. In the following examples, head nouns are underlined, and relative clauses are in bold:

> *The lowest pressure ratio* ***which will give an acceptable performance*** *is always chosen.* (ACAD†)
>
> *There are plenty of existing owners* ***who are already keen to make the move.*** (NEWS)
>
> *There was a slight, furtive boy* ***whom no one knew.*** (FICT)
>
> *It was good for the fans,* ***whose support so far this season has been fantastic.*** (NEWS)
>
> *Well, I can see that this is may be the only way* ***that I can help Neil.*** (CONV)
>
> *I could lead you to the shop* ***where I bought it.*** (FICT)
>
> *He was born in another age, the age* ***when we played not for a million dollars in prize money.*** (NEWS)
>
> *There are many reasons* ***why we may wish to automate parts of the decision process.*** (ACAD)

In addition, in many cases the relativizer can be omitted (but not with subject gaps, discussed below), resulting in a **zero relativizer** (represented as ^ in **1** and **2**):

> **1** *The next thing* ^ ***she knows****, she's talking to Danny.* (CONV)
>
> **2** *Gwen gave the little frowning smile* ^ ***she used when she was putting something to someone.*** (FICT†)

Relative pronouns substitute for a noun phrase in the relative clause (subject, direct object, etc.), while relative adverbs substitute for an adverbial phrase. For example, the relative pronoun *whom* stands for the direct object of the verb *knew* in the following structure:

> *a slight, furtive boy* ***whom no one knew***

Here the relative clause has the meaning of 'No one knew [the boy]'.

In contrast, the relative adverb *where* stands for an entire prepositional phrase that expresses an adverbial of place:

the shop ***where I bought it***

Here the relative clause has the meaning of 'I bought it [at the shop]'.

To some extent, the choice of relative pronoun is determined by structural factors like the position of the gap in the relative clause. The relativizers *that*, *which*, and *who* are the most flexible in their gap positions. As a result, they are by far the most frequent forms. The most common use of all three pronouns is with subject gaps:

- subject gaps:

  Do you want a cup of tea ***that's been brewing for three days?*** (CONV)

  The lowest pressure ratio ***which will give an acceptable performance*** *is always chosen.* (ACAD†)

  There are merchant bankers ***who find it convenient to stir up apprehension.*** (NEWS†)

However, all three of these relative pronouns can also be used with other gap positions:

- direct object gaps:

  She came up with all sorts of things ***that she would like for the new development.*** (CONV)

  Ralph trotted into the forest and returned with a wide spray of green ***which he dumped on the fire.*** (FICT)

  He took an instant dislike to Leroy, ***who he attacked twice.*** (FICT†)

- other gaps (circumstance adverbial or complement of preposition):

  1 *You have to pay for it in the year* ***that you don't make any profit.*** (CONV) <time adverbial>

  2 *Well, that's the only way* ***that this can be assessed.*** (CONV) <manner adverbial>

  3 <...> *the mustard pot,* ***which he had been sitting on.*** (FICT†) <complement of preposition>

  4 *They are statements of a kind* ***about which readers can readily agree.*** (ACAD) <complement of preposition>

  5 <...> *the guy* ***who I buy the Mega stuff off.*** (CONV†) <complement of preposition>

In contrast to *that*, *which*, and *who*, the other relativizers are rarer. They are restricted to a specific gap position:

- *Whom* occurs only with non-subject noun phrase gaps.
- *Whose* occurs only with possessive/genitive gaps.
- *Where*, *when*, and *why* occur only with adverbial gaps. The choice of the specific relative adverb is determined by the adverbial meaning of the gap: *where* for place/location; *when* for time; *why* for reason. These distinctions are described in 9.8.3.
- Zero occurs only with non-subject gaps in restrictive relative clauses. Thus, it would be impossible to omit the relative pronoun in a subject-gap relative clause such as:

There are merchant bankers ***who find it convenient to stir up apprehension.***
<compare: **There are merchant bankers* ***find it convenient to stir up apprehension.***>

or a non-restrictive relative clause:

He took an instant dislike to Leroy, ***who he attacked twice.*** (FICT†)
<compare: **He took an instant dislike to Leroy,* ***he attacked twice.***>

Examples **4** and **5** above also show that when the relative pronoun is part of a prepositional phrase, speakers and writers have the choice to put the preposition before the relative pronoun (**4**) or to leave it **stranded** (**5**). Thus, **5** has the alternative form:

5a *the guy* ***off whom*** *I bought the Mega stuff*

Although prescriptive grammarians may consider stranded prepositions incorrect, many users find that a clause like **5a** sounds overly formal or even incorrect (especially in conversation). Preposition use is discussed further with adverbial gaps (see 9.8.3).

9.8.2 Relative pronoun choices

Three relative pronouns stand out as being particularly common in English: *who, which*, and *that*. The zero relativizer is also relatively common. However, Figures 9.5–9.8 show that the relative pronouns are used in very different ways across registers. For example:

- *That* and zero are the preferred choices in conversation, although relative clauses are generally rare in that register.
- Fiction is similar to conversation in its preference for *that*.
- In contrast, news shows a much stronger preference for *which* and *who*, and academic prose strongly prefers *which*.

In general, the relative pronouns that begin with the letters *wh*- are considered to be more literate. In contrast, the pronoun *that* and the zero relativizer have a more colloquial flavor and are preferred in conversation.

These register differences are related to other structural and functional considerations. For example, newspaper texts commonly discuss the actions of people, resulting in a frequent use of relative clauses with *who*, such as:

a 20-year-old woman ***who has been missing for a week*** (NEWS)

In contrast, academic prose focuses on inanimate objects or concepts, resulting in a much greater use of the relativizer *which*.

The choice among relative pronouns is influenced by a number of other factors, including gap position, and restrictive v. non-restrictive function. In general, *that* is usually used only with restrictive relative clauses, while *which* is used with both restrictive and non-restrictive clauses. The following subsections consider a number of these factors for specific sets of alternatives.

A *Who* v. *which* with human and non-human head nouns

Of the four most common relativizers (*who, which, that*, and zero), two—*who* and *which*—are most sharply distinguished:

- *Who* occurs almost exclusively after human heads.

Figure 9.5 Frequency of relativizers in conversation

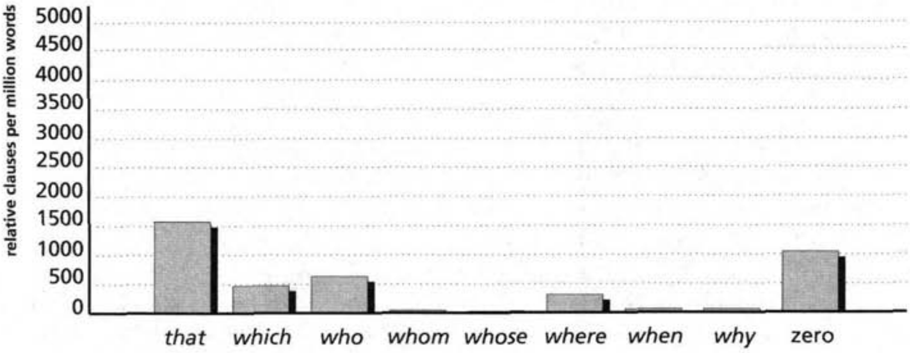

Figure 9.6 Frequency of relativizers in fiction

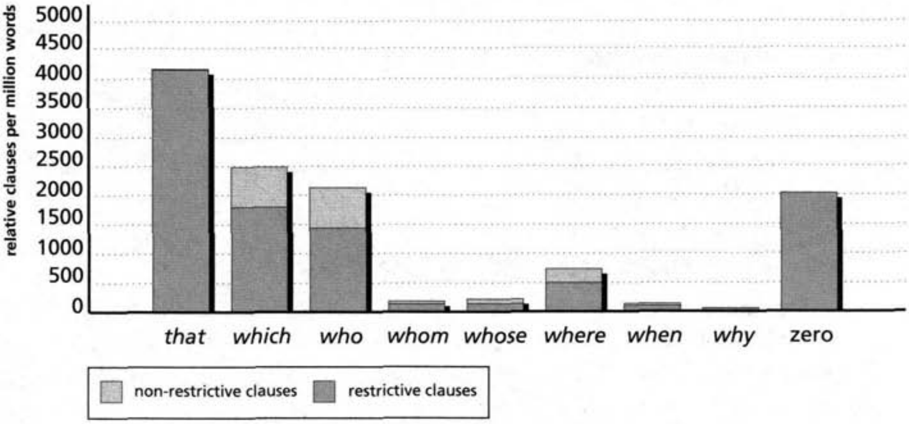

Figure 9.7 Frequency of relativizers in news

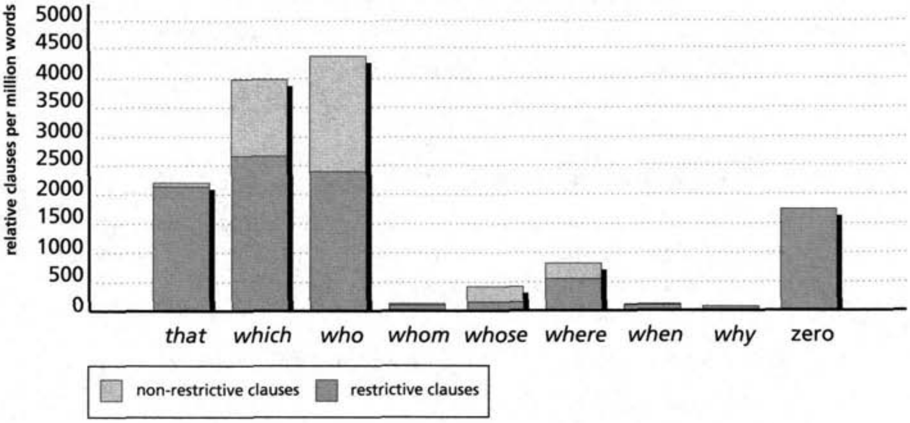

Figure 9.8 Frequency of relativizers in academic prose

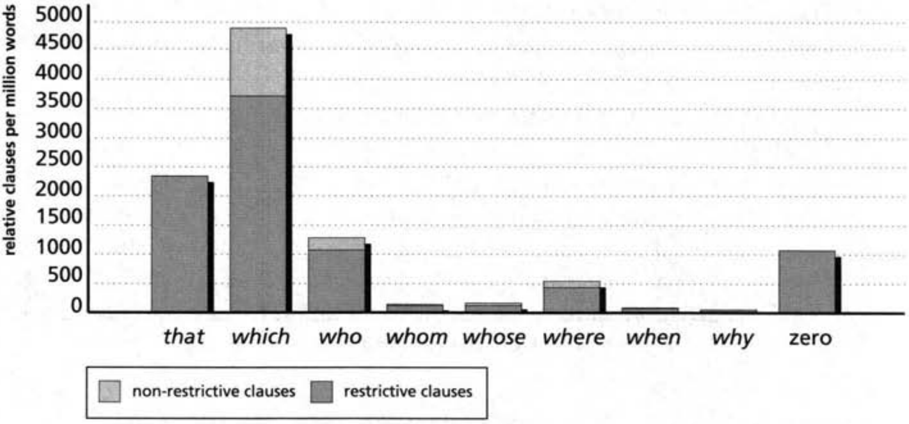

- *Which* occurs most often after inanimate heads.

Especially in the written registers, there is a very strong tendency for a relative clause with a human head noun to use *who* rather than *which* (or *that*):

> *They all seemed to have relatives* ***who had been involved in scandals in London hotels.*** (FICT)
>
> *Team Millar rider McWilliams,* ***who is still looking for a 500 Grand Prix finish,*** *had a constructive finish.* (NEWS)

B *That* and zero with human and non-human head nouns

Relative clauses with *that* or zero are flexible in that they can be used with both inanimate and animate head nouns. In conversation, *that* freely occurs with animate heads. In fact, for many head nouns referring to humans, *that* is almost as common in conversation as *who*:

> *all those poor people* ***that died*** (CONV)
>
> *that man* ***that I went to that time*** (CONV)
>
> *that girl* ***that lives down the road*** (CONV)
>
> *all these children* ***that like to go to the library*** (CONV)

These same head nouns also commonly take a zero relativizer in conversation:

> *Who's the ugliest person* ***you've ever seen?*** (CONV)
>
> *I thought of a girl* ***I used to know called Louise.*** (CONV)

C *Whom* v. *who* v. *that* with human head nouns

The relativizers *who* and *whom* are both used with animate head nouns, but the choice between them is pretty clear-cut: *who* is usually used with subject gap positions, while *whom* is used with non-subject gaps:

- *who* with subject gap:

> *This gentleman is the doctor* ***who examined the body.*** (FICT)

- *whom* with non-subject gap:

> *They lived in America and had one child, a girl* ***whom they idolized.*** (FICT)

With non-restrictive relative clauses, there is a very strong preference to use *who/whom* rather than *that* or zero:

> *Donal Lenihan,* ***who had been named as captain,*** *has also withdrawn after injuring a shoulder.* (NEWS)
>
> *This man,* ***whom Elethia never saw,*** *opened a locally famous restaurant.* (FICT†)

With restrictive relative clauses, *that* is a general-purpose relative pronoun. It occurs with animate and inanimate heads, and with gaps in subject or non-subject position. It is an alternative to *whom* for animate head nouns and non-subject gaps. The choice of *that* over *whom* is especially preferred in informal discourse (like conversation and fiction). It avoids the formal overtones of *whom*, and possibly avoids the choice between *who* and *whom*:

> *There might be people* ***that we don't know of.*** (CONV)
>
> *She took up with the first boy* ***that she came near to liking.*** (FICT)

With non-subject gaps, it is most common to completely avoid the choice among relative pronouns by omitting the relativizer altogether. With human head nouns, this alternative is the preferred choice in both spoken and written registers. See F below.

D *Which* v. *that* in detail

The relativizers *which* and *that* are similar in their grammatical potential. They are both grammatical with a wide range of gap positions and with animate or inanimate heads. However, there are a number of important differences in their actual patterns of use:

which	***that***
rare with animate heads	common with animate heads, especially in conversation or with non-subject gaps
common in non-restrictive relative clauses	rare in non-restrictive relative clauses
usually considered more formal	usually considered less formal
can follow a preposition (e.g. *of which*)	cannot follow a preposition (e.g. **of that*)

When *that* does introduce a non-restrictive clause, it often occurs in a series of postmodifiers and is used for special stylistic effect (especially in fiction):

> *He gazed at the yellow, stained wall [with all the spots [which dead bugs,* ***that had once crawled,*** *had left]].* (FICT†)

The level of formality associated with each relative pronoun is an important factor in their use. With its more formal, academic associations, *which* is preferred in academic prose. In contrast, *that* has more informal, colloquial associations and is thus preferred in conversation and most contemporary fiction:

> *An operator is simply something* ***which turns one vector into another.*** (ACAD)
>
> *He said something* ***that she couldn't catch.*** (FICT)

E *Whose* v. *of which*

The relativizer *whose* is used to mark a possessive relationship between a human head noun and some other noun phrase:

> *And we also know that there's at least one and maybe two other white males* ***whose names we do not know.*** (FICT)

Thus, the underlying meaning of the relative clause in this case, with the gap included, is: 'We do not know the males' names'.

By extension, *whose* can be used to mark possessive relationships with collective organizations, such as corporations, government agencies, clubs, societies, and committees:

> *A shipping group,* ***whose profits dived last year by nearly a third,*** *has told shareholders to expect an even lower result for 1993.* (NEWS)

In fact, *whose* can be used to mark possessive relationships with completely inanimate, sometimes abstract, head nouns. This use is especially common in academic prose:

> *A crystal is a piece of matter* ***whose boundaries are naturally formed plane surfaces.*** (ACAD)
>
> *There is a way of proceeding in conceptual matters* ***whose method is to define away any inconvenient difficulty.*** (ACAD)

An alternative to *whose* with inanimate head nouns is the phrase *of which*. This alternative is also largely restricted to academic prose:

> *Some of the particles cluster into aggregates, clods or crumbs,* ***the size distribution of which determines the soil structure.*** (ACAD)
>
> *This wheel drives a similar but smaller wooden-toothed wheel,* ***the other end of which carries a large open-spoked wheel.*** (ACAD†)

A variant way of introducing a relative clause with *of which* is to front only the prepositional phrase *of which*, leaving the rest of the noun phrase to follow it in its normal position in the relative clause:

> *He joined a dining-club* ***of which the motto was, The Whole, The Good, and The Beautiful.*** (FICT)

Finally, similar meanings can be expressed in two other ways: (**1**) a relative clause with *which* or *that* and the verb *have*, or (**2**) a postmodifying prepositional phrase with the preposition *with*. For example, compare:

1. *He joined a dining-club* ***which had the motto*** ...
2. *He joined a dining-club* ***with the motto*** ...

F Zero relativizer

Speakers and writers often omit the relativizer altogether in restrictive relative clauses. This alternative is possible in standard English whenever the gap is not in subject position. For example:

> *the only shiny instrument* ***he possessed*** (FICT)
>
> *the way* ***the man used to watch him*** (FICT)

Although the zero relativizer is found in all four registers, it has colloquial associations and is therefore especially characteristic of conversation and fiction. In conversation, the relativizer is omitted in about half of the relative clauses that permit this option:

the slippers ***you lost*** (CONV)

that person ***she was with*** (CONV)

In fiction, zero relativizer occurs both in the quoted speech of fictional characters and in fictional narrative:

- zero relativizer in fictional speech:

  I do beg you to consider seriously the points ***I've put to you.*** (FICT)

  I confess I have got plans ***you may find a little startling.*** (FICT)

- zero relativizer in fictional narrative:

  the names ***his mother had remembered from the past*** (FICT)

  a rather ugly tie ***his father had lent him*** (FICT)

In all registers, the zero relativizer is more likely to be used when the subject of the relative clause is a personal pronoun. This is because most pronouns distinguish between subject (nominative) and object forms (e.g. *I*, *we*, *she*, *he* v. *me*, *us*, *her*, *him*), and so the presence of a subject pronoun unambiguously marks the beginning of a relative clause, even without the relativizer:

the only choice ***we've got*** (CONV)

the kind of organisation ***she likes*** (NEWS)

the way ***we acquire knowledge*** (ACAD)

9.8.3 Relative clauses with adverbial gaps

When relative clauses have adverbial gaps, speakers and writers have four choices for the use of relativizers, as shown below. (The relative clause is enclosed in *[]*, and the relativizer is in bold.)

*the time [**when** I began]*

*the time [**at which** I began]*

*the time [**that** I began **at**]*

*the time [**that** I began]* OR *the time [**I began**]*

Each of the choices is described below.

A Relative adverbs: *where, when, why*

The first option is to use one of the three relative adverbs that specifically mark adverbial gaps: *where* for place adverbials (location or direction), *when* for time adverbials, and *why* for reason adverbials. These relative adverbs substitute for an entire adverbial phrase.

the area ***where the chapels have closed*** (CONV)

one day ***when she was at school*** (FICT)

the other reason ***why the ambulance workers have lost out*** (NEWS)

Occasionally *where* and *when* are used to mark an abstract 'location' rather than physical locations or times. For example, the head noun *bit*, referring to a part of a movie or story, commonly occurs in conversation with both of these relativizers:

You know the bit ***where the man jumps inside Whoopie Goldberg.*** (CONV)

Similar uses of *where* and *when* are especially common in academic prose:

the kind of situation ***where this type of work is helpful*** (ACAD)

in difficult cases ***when accurate estimation of disease activity will have important therapeutic implications.*** (ACAD)

The use of relative adverbs is limited because there are many types of adverbial gap that do not have a corresponding relative adverb. For example, there is no standard relative adverb for manner adverbials: **the way how I look at it.*

B Preposition + relative pronoun *which*

The second option is to use the relative pronoun *which* preceded by a preposition that marks the adverbial element in the relative clause. For example:

1 *the apartments* ***in which no one lives*** (FICT)

2 *the endless landscape* ***from which the sand is taken*** (FICT)

In these constructions, the preposition + relative pronoun stands for the adverbial prepositional phrase in the relative clause. Thus, the relative clause in **1** has the meaning 'no one lives in the apartments'. This choice is recommended by many usage handbooks.

C Stranded preposition

A third option for adverbial gaps is to leave the preposition stranded in the relative clause, marking the site of the gap. The relativizer can be *which*, *that*, or zero with this option (the stranded preposition is underlined):

the one ***that old James used to live in*** (FICT)

some of the houses ***I go to*** (CONV)

D Omitted preposition

The last option is to omit the preposition altogether, providing no surface marker of the adverbial gap. The relativizer may also be omitted in these structures:

1 *the time* ***that I began*** (FICT)

2 *the way* ***I look at it*** (CONV)

3 *a place* ***I would like to go*** (CONV)

In these structures, the preposition has to be inferred from the information in the head noun and the main verb of the relative clause. For example, in **3** above, we can reconstruct the meaning of an adverbial *to*-phrase from the head noun *place* and the main verb *go:*

I would like to go to a place

If the verb had been *live* instead of *go*, we would have reconstructed a phrase with *in*:

I would like to live in a place

E Manner adverbial gaps and *way*

As already mentioned, there is no relative adverb available for relative clauses with manner adverbial gaps. Instead, these structures almost always use the same head noun: *way*. For example:

They're not used to the way ***that we're used to living*** (CONV)

It is not the only way ***in which a person can be brought before a court.*** (ACAD)

Because *way* as a head noun is so strongly associated with a manner adverbial gap, these relative clauses usually occur with both the relativizer and the preposition omitted. This tendency holds for academic prose as well as for the more colloquial registers. For example:

That's not the way ***you do that.*** (CONV)

<. . .> *the way* ***the book is used*** (ACAD)

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE C**: Relative clauses

- Relative clauses, and other postmodifiers, are classified into two main types by their function: restrictive, helping to identify the reference of the head noun, and non-restrictive, adding descriptive details about the head noun.
  - In general, restrictive relative clauses are more common than non-restrictive.
  - Most other postmodifier types are restrictive, but can occasionally be non-restrictive.
- Relative clauses have three key components: the head noun, the relativizer, and the gap.
- There are eight different relativizers in English. The most common ones are *which*, *who*, and *that*.
  - In some cases, the relativizer can be omitted altogether, although its meaning is still implied. This is referred to as the zero relativizer.
- Some relativizers (such as *which* and *that*) are similar in their potential uses, but there are differences in their actual patterns of use.
- The gap refers to the location of a missing constituent in the relative clause. The gap can occur at almost any noun phrase position (e.g. subject, direct object, adverbial).
  - Relative clauses with adverbial gaps involve special choices for the relativizer.

GRAMMAR BITE

D Other postmodifier types

9.9 Postmodification by non-finite clauses

The last Grammar Bite concentrated on relative clauses, which are finite clauses that modify a noun. However, nouns can also be modified by non-finite clauses. These constructions have non-finite verbs, which are not inflected for tense.

There are three major types of non-finite postmodifying clauses: *ing*-clauses, *ed*-clauses, and *to*-clauses. The first two types are also called participle clauses, and the third is also called an infinitive clause or a *to*-infinitive clause.

Participle clauses as postmodifiers always have subject gap positions. They can often be paraphrased as a relative clause:

a letter ***written by a member of the public*** (ACAD)
<compare: *a letter* ***which has been written by a member of the public***>
young families ***attending the local clinic*** (NEWS)
<compare: *families* ***who are attending the local clinic***>

In contrast, *to*-clause postmodifiers can have either subject or non-subject gaps:

- subject gap:

I haven't got friends ***to beat him up*** *though.* (CONV)
<compare: *Friends will beat him up*>

- non-subject gap:

I had a little bit ***to eat.*** (CONV) <direct object: *I ate a little bit*>

I'll remember which way ***to go.*** (CONV) <direction adverbial: *I can go that way*>

Get angry! We've both got a lot ***to be angry about.*** (FICT) <complement of preposition: *We are angry about a lot*>

As these examples show, most non-finite clauses do not have a stated subject. However, with *to*-clauses the subject is sometimes expressed in a *for*-phrase:

Really now is the time ***for you*** ***to try and go.*** (CONV)

9.9.1 Participle clauses as postmodifiers

Both *ed*-clauses and *ing*-clauses can function as postmodifying participle clauses:

- *ed*-clauses:

1 *The US yesterday welcomed a proposal* ***made by the presidents of Colombia, Peru and Bolivia.*** (NEWS)
2 *It can be derived using the assumptions* ***given above.*** (ACAD)

- *ing*-clauses:

3 *A military jeep* ***travelling down Beach Road at high speed*** *struck a youth* ***crossing the street.*** (FICT†)
4 *Interest is now developing in a theoretical approach* ***involving reflection of Alfven waves.*** (ACAD)

The verbs in *ed*-clauses correspond to passive verbs in finite relative clauses. Thus, for **1** and **2**, equivalent relative clauses would be:

1a *a proposal* ***that was made by the presidents of Colombia, Peru and Bolivia***
2a *the assumptions* ***that were given above***

In contrast, the verbs in *ing*-clauses do not always correspond to finite progressive aspect verbs. In **3** (above), the verb *travelling* does have progressive meaning. However, in **4** the verb *involving* does not have a progressive sense. Thus, the equivalent relative clauses for **3** and **4** would be:

3a *A military jeep* ***that was travelling down Beach Road at high speed*** <progressive>
4a *a theoretical approach* ***that involves reflection of Alfven waves.*** (ACAD) <not progressive>

Several patterns are important in the use of postmodifying clauses:

- Participle clauses are especially common in news and academic prose.

- In news and academic prose, *ed*-clauses are considerably more common than *ing*-clauses.
- Most *ing*-participles and passive verbs occur in participle clauses rather than relative clauses, even when relative clauses could be used. That is, a postmodifying participle clause is the expected choice whenever an *ing*-form or a passive verb occurs in a postmodifying clause.

Ing-participles expressing an abstract relationship (e.g. *consisting of*) regularly occur in a non-finite clause, even though the corresponding progressive aspect would not occur in a full relative clause (see 6.5.1):

a society ***consisting of educated people*** (ACAD)

a matter ***concerning the public interest*** (ACAD)

initiatives ***involving national and local government authorities*** (ACAD)

compare:

a society* ***which is consisting of educated people*

a matter* ***which is concerning the public interest*

initiatives* ***which are involving national and local government authorities*

In contrast, *ed*-clauses can usually be rephrased as a full relative clause with a passive verb, by inserting *which is* or something similar. So participle clauses serve the interests of efficiency: they convey the same meaning in fewer words.

Passive verbs do, however, occur in finite relative clauses when tense, aspect, or modality are important. These distinctions cannot be marked in a postmodifying participle clause, so a relative clause is necessary:

The mistaken view is that theory refers to ideas ***which have never been tested.*** (ACAD†)

Now 48 sites ***which could be maintained by local authorities*** *have been identified.* (NEWS)

9.9.2 *To*-clauses as postmodifiers

Postmodifying *to*-clauses are more flexible than participle clauses for two reasons: they can occur with both subject and non-subject gaps, and they can occur with an overt subject noun phrase. In the following examples, the head noun (or pronoun) is underlined, and the *to*-clause is in bold:

- *to*-clauses with subject gap:

  Its absence was a factor ***to be taken into account.*** (NEWS†)

  <note: this is a passive construction equivalent to 'a factor is to be taken into account'.>

- *to*-clauses with object gaps:

  Papa dressed in his Sunday suit and hat was a sight ***to see.*** (FICT)

  There is one further matter ***to confess.*** (ACAD)

- *to*-clauses with adverbial gaps:

  They'd take a long time ***to dry.*** (CONV)

  We shall have to find a way ***to associate numbers with our operators.*** (ACAD†)

- *to*-clauses with prepositional object gap (and stranded preposition):

  She's had a lot ***to put up with.*** (CONV)
- *to*-clauses with an overt subject (introduced by *for*):

  That'll be the worst thing ***for us to do.*** (CONV) <object gap>

  There was no possible way ***for the pilot to avoid it.*** (ACAD) <manner adverbial gap>

Surprisingly, a relatively high proportion of the postmodifiers in conversation are *to*-clauses. Their meaning often points to the future:

Father's got a lot of things ***to tell you.*** (CONV)

The *to*-clause constructions in conversation usually have object or adverbial gap positions:

1 *Well I mean this is a horrible thing* ***to say,*** *but* <...> (CONV†)
2 *I've got stuff* ***to sort out*** *anyway.* (CONV)
3 *Friday evening I didn't have a lot* ***to drink.*** (CONV)

The most common head nouns taking a *to*-clause have general meanings. They are nouns that are especially common in conversation (e.g. *thing*, *time*, *way*). The common head nouns associated with adverbial gaps cover the three major domains of time, place, and manner:

4 *There's not enough time* ***to get it out and defrost it.*** (CONV) <time domain>
5 *But it's certainly a nice place* ***to live.*** (CONV) <place domain>
6 *That's no way* ***to talk to Sean!*** (CONV) <manner domain>

Most postmodifying *to*-clauses do not have an overt subject (as in the above examples). In these cases, the subject of the postmodifying clause is easily predicted and need not be stated. In many cases in conversation, the missing subject clearly refers to the speaker (as in examples **1–3** above). For example, **1** could be restated with the subject 'me' in a *for*-phrase:

1a *Well I mean this is a horrible thing* ***for me to say*** ...

Alternatively the subject can be interpreted as a generic reference to 'people' or 'anybody' (as in **4–6** above):

4a *There's not enough time* ***for anybody to get it out and defrost it.***

9.10 Postmodification by prepositional phrase

9.10.1 Prepositional phrases v. relative clauses

As we explained in 9.3.2, prepositional phrases are by far the most common type of postmodifier in all registers, although they are especially common in news and academic prose.

In some cases, prepositional phrases can be re-phrased as relative clauses with nearly equivalent meaning. Prepositional phrases beginning with *with* often correspond to relative clauses with the main verb *have*:

feedback systems ***with chaotic behaviour*** (ACAD)
<compare the relative clause: *systems* ***which have chaotic behaviour***>

Some other prepositional phrases can be re-phrased as a relative clause with the copula *be* and a prepositional phrase complement:

documents ***in his possession***
<compare the relative clause: documents ***which were in his possession****>* (NEWS)

the car keys ***on the table***
<compare the relative clause: the car keys ***that were on the table****>* (ACAD)

In general, relative clauses with the main verb *have*, or with the copula *be* + preposition, are rare in comparison with prepositional phrase postmodifiers. Many occurrences of prepositional phrase postmodifiers, however, have specialized meanings that cannot easily be re-phrased as relative clauses:

the problems ***at its ISC Technologies subsidiary*** (NEWS)
this list ***of requirements*** (ACAD)
the same effect ***on the final state*** (ACAD)

Even when a prepositional phrase and a relative clause are both possible, prepositional phrase postmodifiers are much more common. However, two factors favor the choice of a relative clause over a prepositional phrase: the need to convey non-restrictive meaning, and the need to convey past tense meaning:

- relative clauses with non-restrictive meaning.

  Then he set off for Simon's house, ***which was at the other end of the lane.*** (FICT) <with copula + preposition>

  He said the resident, ***who is in her late 70s****, had been very confused.* (NEWS†) <with copula + preposition>

  With animals like moles, ***which have tough and durable skins****, the periods involved are longer.* (ACAD†) <with *have*>

- relative clauses with past tense meaning.

  The lower-income groups also consumed amounts of iron ***that were below the standard.*** (ACAD†)

  DMB and B Result, ***which had a link with a big international agency****, went bust recently.* (NEWS†)

9.10.2 Prepositional phrases with *of*

Over half of all postmodifying prepositional phrases begin with the preposition *of*. This is due to the extremely wide range of functions for this preposition. Many functions of *of*-phrases have been discussed already in 4.4 and 4.9.8, including:

- after quantity nouns: *loads of work*
- after unit nouns: *a piece of cake*
- after container nouns: *our bottle of champagne*
- after nouns denoting shape: *a pile of money*
- after species nouns: *these kinds of question*

In addition, *of*-phrases can express many more specialized meaning relationships. Some of these could be paraphrased as noun + noun sequences:

of prepositional phrase	*noun + noun sequence*
*ten **words of English*** (FICT)	*ten English words*
*the **color of chocolate*** (FICT)	*the chocolate color*
*the **Ministry of Defence*** (NEWS)	*the Defence Ministry*

However, many expressions with *of*-phrases cannot be easily rephrased in this way:

> *wonderful **contrasts of feeling*** (NEWS)
>
> *a **woman of very strong high moral values*** (NEWS)
>
> *your **style of interpretation*** (ACAD)

Academic prose is noteworthy for a large number of noun + *of*-phrase expressions that are used repeatedly. Most of these **lexical bundles** convey information in one of the following areas:

- physical description: *the surface of the* . . . , *the shape of the* . . . , *the position of the* . . .
- existence or presence: *the presence of the* . . . , *the existence of a* . . .
- abstract qualities: *the nature of the* . . . , *the value of the* . . . , *the use of a* . . .
- long-term processes or events: *the development of an* . . . , *the course of the* . . .

(See 13.6 for a discussion of lexical bundles in conversation.)

9.10.3 Prepositional phrases with *in* and other prepositions

Prepositional phrases beginning with *in* are also moderately common. They express meanings that cover physical location, time meanings, and logical relationships:

- physical location:

  > *the mess **in his bedroom*** (CONV)
  >
  > *the third largest trucking firm **in the midwest*** (FICT)

- time/durational meaning:

  > *the longest touchdown **in the history of the school*** (FICT)
  >
  > *maintenance of health **in the long term*** (ACAD)

- more abstract meanings:

  > *the co-chairman's faith **in the project*** (NEWS)
  >
  > *the rapidly deteriorating trend **in cashflow*** (NEWS)
  >
  > *a resulting decrease **in breeding performance*** (ACAD)

Prepositional phrases beginning with *for*, *on*, *to*, or *with* are less common than *of* or *in*, but they are also used for a wide range of meanings:

> *a school **for disabled children*** (CONV)
>
> *the search **for new solutions*** (ACAD)
>
> *a mole **on his head*** (CONV)
>
> *his most wounding attack **on the tabloids*** (NEWS)
>
> *their first trip **to Scotland*** (NEWS)
>
> *one apparently attractive answer **to that question*** (ACAD)
>
> *some cheese **with garlic*** (CONV)

9.11 Postmodification by appositive noun phrases

Appositive noun phrases have equivalent status with the preceding (head) noun phrase. That is, the order of head noun phrase + appositive noun phrase can normally be reversed to produce an equally grammatical construction with essentially the same meaning:

> *former secretary of state Jim Baker* (NEWS) = *Jim Baker former secretary of state*

Appositive noun phrases are usually non-restrictive in meaning. They provide descriptive information about the head noun, but they are not needed to identify the reference of the head noun. One exception to this is with nouns that refer to words, phrases, or expressions:

> *The word **gossip** itself actually means 'God's kin'.* (NEWS)

Here the appositive is restrictive in function, identifying which 'word'.

Like prepositional phrases, appositive noun phrases are an abbreviated form of postmodifier. In contrast to relative clauses, appositive noun phrases include no verbs at all. Not surprisingly, these postmodifiers are by far most common in the registers with the highest informational density. The patterns of use for appositives include:

- They are most common in news and academic prose.
- In news, appositives usually involve a proper noun with human reference.
- In academic prose, appositives usually provide information about a technical term.

In news, with its focus on the actions of human participants, appositive noun phrases provide background information about people. Most of these constructions include a proper name and a descriptive noun phrase, but these two elements can occur in either order:

- proper noun + descriptive phrase:

  Dr. Jan Stjernsward, chief of the World Health Organisation Cancer Unit (NEWS)

  Vladimir Ashkenazy, one of the world's greatest pianists (NEWS)

- descriptive phrase + proper noun:

  The editor of The Mail on Sunday, Mr Stewart Steven (NEWS)

  the Labour Party's housing spokesman, Mr. Clive Soley (NEWS)

In academic prose, appositive noun phrases have a wider range of use. In many cases, the appositive noun phrase is given in parentheses following the head noun. Appositive noun phrases are commonly used in five ways:

- to provide an explanatory gloss for a technical reference:

  the mill (a term introduced by Babbage) (ACAD)

  the optical propagation direction (z-direction) (ACAD)

- to introduce acronyms:

  IAS (Institute of Advanced Studies) (ACAD)

  SLA (Second Language Acquisition) (ACAD)

- to introduce short labels for variables, parts of diagrams, etc.:
  the valves on the pressure side (V1 and V2) (ACAD)
  a point P (ACAD)
- to name chemical or mathematical formulas:
  fayalite, Fe_2SiO_4 (ACAD)
  hydrogen chloride, HCl (ACAD)
- to list items included in some class:
  essential nutrients (manganese, copper and zinc) (ACAD)
  the various life-history events (i.e. oviposition, hatching and maturation) (ACAD)

9.12 Noun phrases with multiple postmodifiers

9.12.1 Postmodifier complexes

Noun phrases often have multiple postmodifiers, especially in academic prose. We refer to the combination of structures following a head noun as the **postmodifier complex.** The structures in a postmodifier complex can represent either a series of forms modifying a single head noun, or embeddings.

For example, the following sentence has a very simple main clause structure: NP_1 (with *chapters* as head) *consider* NP_2 (with *aspects* as head):

> *[The chapters **in this section of the reader**] consider [various aspects **of teaching and learning that have come under increased official scrutiny by central state agencies in recent years**].* (ACAD†)

However, both NP_1 and NP_2 have postmodifier complexes, resulting in a long and complicated sentence. As Figure 9.9 shows, these two noun phrases illustrate

Figure 9.9 Postmodifier complexes with multiple embedding v. multiple modification

(NP = noun phrase, prep = preposition, PP = prepositional phrase, postmod = postmodifier)

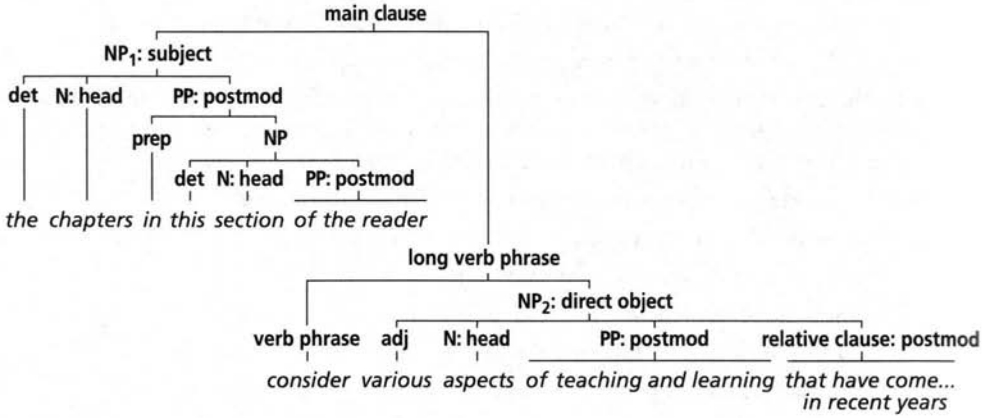
main clause
NP₁: subject
det
N: head
PP: postmod
prep
NP
det
N: head
PP: postmod
the chapters in this section of the reader
long verb phrase
NP₂: direct object
verb phrase
adj
N: head
PP: postmod
relative clause: postmod
consider various aspects of teaching and learning that have come... in recent years

the two types of structural relationships that are possible in postmodifier complexes: multiple embedding v. multiple modification of a single head noun.

NP_1 (*chapters*) illustrates embedding. The first prepositional phrase in the postmodifier complex (*in this section*) directly modifies the head noun *chapters*, but the second prepositional phrase (*of the reader*) is embedded because it modifies the noun *section*. Thus, as Figure 9.9 shows, the head noun *chapters* has only one postmodifier: a prepositional phrase, which in turn contains a second embedded prepositional phrase.

In contrast, NP_2 (*aspects*) illustrates multiple modification of a single head noun. The prepositional phrase *of teaching and learning* directly follows *aspects* and is the first postmodifier. That prepositional phrase is then followed by a relative clause (*that have come under...*), which functions as the second postmodifier of *aspects*.

9.12.2 Common types of postmodifier complexes

In general, three patterns characterize postmodifier complexes:

- The most common type of postmodifier complex is composed of two prepositional phrases:

  The main difficulties which are posed concern the rendition ***[of culturally specific German or French terms] [into English]****.* (ACAD)

  A sociological description might discuss the utilisation ***[of such devices] [for social purposes]****.* (ACAD)

- When there are two postmodifiers, they are often the same structure:

  Large clear diagrams ***[drawn on sugar paper] and [covered with transparent film]*** *are particularly useful teaching aids.* (ACAD) <*ed*-clauses, co-ordinated with *and*>

  It was spacious with a high ceiling ***[painted with cherubs] and [decorated with flowers]****.* (FICT) <*ed*-clauses, co-ordinated with *and*>

  At the last election the Labour MP, ***[Mildred Gordon], [a left-winger]*** *beat the Liberal Alliance candidate.* (NEWS†) <appositive noun phrases>

- The second postmodifier in a complex is often a relative clause, regardless of the type of first postmodifier:

  Firemen needed police support as they tackled a car ***[in the driveway] [which had been set on fire]****.* (NEWS) <prepositional phrase + relative clause>

  Most countries have a written document ***[known as 'the constitution'] [which lays down the main rules]****.* (ACAD†) <*ed*-clause + relative clause>

Relative clauses are particularly common as the second postmodifier in a complex because they are easily identified as a postmodifer, even when they are distant from the noun phrase head. The relativizer provides an overt surface marker of their postmodifier status.

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE D**: Other postmodifier types

- ➤ Postmodifiers can be clauses or phrases.
- ➤ In addition to relative clauses (covered in Grammar Bite C), three types of non-finite clauses can be noun postmodifiers: *ing*-clauses, *ed*-clauses, or *to*-clauses.
  - ➤ The verbs in *ed*-clauses correspond to passive verbs in relative clauses.

  - The verbs in *ing*-clauses sometimes correspond to progressive verbs in relative clauses, but often do not.
  - Postmodifying *to*-clauses are more flexible than participle clauses; for example, they can have subjects that differ from the main clause subject.
- Prepositional phrases are by far the most common type of phrasal postmodifier.
  - They can express an extremely wide range of meanings.
- Noun phrases can also be postmodifiers, called appositive noun phrases.
  - Appositive noun phrases are non-restrictive; they are especially common in the written registers.
- When a noun phrase has two postmodifiers, they are usually both the same structural type (e.g. both are prepositional phrases).
  - One exception is that relative clauses commonly occur following other structural types of postmodifier.

GRAMMAR BITE

E Noun complement clauses

9.13 Noun complement clauses

9.13.1 Noun complement clauses v. relative clauses

On the surface, **noun complement clauses**, such as the following, can appear to be identical to relative clauses with *that*:

The fact ***that it can be done*** *is important.* (ACAD†)

However, noun complement clauses and relative clauses are actually very different structures. Their differences are summed up as follows:

	relative clause	**noun complement clause**
function of clause	identify reference of head noun	present the content of the head noun or add descriptive information
structure	incomplete, contains a 'gap'	complete, no 'gap'
function of *that*	relative pronoun	complementizer
omission of *that*	possible with object gaps	impossible
types of N modified	almost any noun	only a few nouns

(Noun complement clauses are similar to verb and adjective complement clauses, discussed in Chapter 10.)

Compare the following two sentences, both with the noun *report* as head:

- postmodifying relative clause:

1 *Peter reached out for the well-thumbed report* ***that lay behind him on the cupboard top.*** (FICT)

- noun complement clause:

2 *Other semiconductor stocks eased following an industry trade group's report* ***that its leading indicator fell in September.*** (NEWS†)

The relative clause in example **1** identifies which 'report' Peter is reaching for. It has a gap in subject position, which corresponds to the head noun *report*. The underlying meaning of the relative clause is that 'the report lay behind him', but *that* takes the place of *the report* in the relative clause. (Since the gap is in subject position, omission of *that* is impossible in **1**, but it can be omitted in other relative clauses; see 9.8.2.)

In contrast, in example **2** the noun complement clause gives the actual content of the 'report': that 'the trade group's leading indicator fell'. The noun complement clause is complete structurally. It does not include a reference to the head noun in any way (i.e. it does not have a gap corresponding in meaning to the head noun). In addition, the complementizer *that* cannot be omitted in this or any other noun complement clause. Finally, *report* is one of the few nouns that can be modified by complement clauses (see 9.14 below for more on head nouns).

9.13.2 Structural types of noun complement clause

There are two main types of noun complement clause: finite *that*-clauses and non-finite *to*-infinitive clauses. In the following examples, the head is underlined and the complement clause is in bold:

- *that*-clauses:

  There were also rumors ***that Ford had now taken its stake up to the maximum 15 per cent allowed.*** (NEWS†)

  These figures lead to an expectation ***that the main application area would be in the office environments.*** (ACAD)

- *to*-clauses:

  You've been given permission ***to wear them.*** (CONV)

  Legal peers renewed their attack on the Government's plans ***to shake up the legal profession*** *yesterday.* (NEWS)

Note that while the *to*-clauses have missing subjects that can be reconstructed from the context, they do not have gaps corresponding to the heads *permission* or *plans*.

In addition, *ing*-clauses and *wh*-clauses sometimes occur as noun complement clauses:

- *of* + *ing*-clause:

  He had no intention ***of singing at anyone's twenty-first birthday.*** (FICT)

  The exchanged protons have about the same chance ***of having the same or opposite spin orientations.*** (ACAD†)

- dependent *wh*-interrogative clause:

  There was no question ***who was the star.*** (FICT)

  We always come back to the same question ***why the devil won't he show himself.*** (FICT)

In addition to the simple pattern noun + *wh*-clause shown above, there are two other structural options for *wh*-interrogative clauses. The first uses the preposition *of* followed by a *wh*-clause. The second uses the preposition *as to* followed by the *wh*-clause. This option is used primarily with the *wh*-interrogative word *whether*.

- *of* + *wh*-clause:

  *But the question **of who will pay the multi-million dollar bill** is unanswered.* (NEWS†)

  *We have only the most general notion **of how the first continents formed.*** (ACAD)

- *as to* + *wh*-clause:

  *Masters and men were deeply divided over the substantive issue **as to whether women should be employed at all.*** (ACAD†)

9.13.3 Restrictive and non-restrictive functions

All of the above examples have illustrated restrictive noun complement clauses. That is the most common function. However, it should be noted that noun complement clauses can be used in non-restrictive functions, where they serve a parenthetical function:

1 *Clinton's second allegation, **that there has been collusion between the security forces and Protestant para-military groups**, is based on a very few isolated cases.* (NEWS)

2 *The contrary assumption, **that common sense will take wholly indistinguishable mental events to be different thoughts**, strikes me as remarkable.* (ACAD)

In these examples, the noun complement clause still names the content of the head noun. For example in **1**, *that there has been collusion* ... is the content of *Clinton's second allegation*. These non-restrictive complement clauses are used when the writer assumes that most readers already know the content of the head noun (e.g. the 'allegation' or the 'contrary assumption'), but they want to spell it out to avoid uncertainty.

9.14 Head nouns with noun complement clauses

Unlike relative clauses, noun complement clauses occur with only a small set of head nouns. Many of the head nouns with noun complement clauses express a stance towards the proposition in the complement clause. For example, these head nouns can be used to indicate the certainty of the proposition or the source of the information: *fact*, *claim*, and *report*.

Noun complement clauses with head nouns that convey stance are especially common in news and academic prose. In conversation and fiction, similar functions are more commonly served by complement clauses following verbs or adjectives. In many cases, the same roots can be used to control both noun and verb complement clauses. For example:

*<...> there is every hope **that this will continue.*** (ACAD)

*I just hope **that I've plugged it in properly.*** (CONV)

(See 10.5, 10.7.1 on *that*-clauses following verbs and adjectives.)

Each structural type of noun complement clause occurs with a different set of head nouns. The following sections survey these head nouns and the associated functions for each type.

9.14.1 Head nouns complemented by *that*-clauses

That-clauses functioning as noun complements are one of the primary devices used to mark stance in academic prose. In these constructions, the *that*-clause reports a proposition, while the head noun reports the author's stance toward that proposition. Two main kinds of stance are expressed by the most common head nouns. The first is an assessment of the certainty of the proposition in the *that*-clause. Typical nouns are:

fact, possibility, claim, notion, assumption, hypothesis, rumor

For example:

But there remained the very troublesome fact ***that leguminous crops required no nitrogenous manure.*** (ACAD†)

There is a possibility ***that this morphology represents an ancestral great ape character.*** (ACAD†)

The second kind of stance is an indication of the source of the information expressed in the *that*-clause. Three primary sources and their typical nouns can be distinguished:

linguistic communication	*claim, report, suggestion, proposal, remark*
cognitive reasoning	*assumption, hypothesis, idea, observation, conclusion*
personal belief	*belief, doubt, hope, opinion*

For example:

This conforms conveniently with Maslow's (1970) suggestion ***that human motivation is related to a hierarchy of human needs.*** (ACAD)

The survey was aimed at testing a hypothesis ***that happily-married couples tend to vote more conservatively.*** (ACAD†)

The traditional belief ***that veal calves should be kept in a warm environment is unscientific.*** (ACAD†)

Many of these head nouns are **nominalized** equivalents of verbs or adjectives that can control *that*-complement clauses (see 9.4–8). Most of these nouns have corresponding verbs that also control *that*-clauses. For example:

What's your feeling about his claim ***that someone's trying to kill him****?* (FICT)
<compare: *The nuns claim* ***that their eggs have never been associated with an outbreak of food poisoning.*** (NEWS)>

There seems to be an automatic assumption ***that a single division on a scale represents a single unit of some kind.*** (ACAD)
<compare: *She had always idly assumed* ***that there was some system.*** (FICT)>

The only common head noun derived from an adjective is *possibility:*

But there remains a possibility ***that gregarious Desert Locusts might become less viable.*** (ACAD†)
<compare: *It is possible that she has just decided to leave the area.* (NEWS)>

As illustrated by the above examples, noun complement clauses often express stance in an abstract way, without a clear agent. With verb complement clauses, the subject of the controlling verb mentions a person, so that the stance reported by the verb can be attributed directly to that person. In contrast, the stance conveyed by a controlling head noun is not normally attributed to anyone. For example, the examples above include head nouns such as *possibility*, *belief*, *assumption* and *possibility*. Readers must infer whose attitude towards the information is reported.

Verb complement clauses are preferred in conversation while noun complement clauses are preferred in academic writing. This distribution reflects major differences between the registers in structure and function:

	conversation	academic prose
structure	preference for verbal structures	preference for integrating information in noun phrases
function	participants interested in each others' feelings and attitudes	readers/writers more interested in attitudes towards information

Conversation tends to use verb constructions that directly and prominently attribute stance to participants. Academic writing uses noun complement clauses that tend to give more prominence to the information; the stance is backgrounded and not directly attributed to the author.

9.14.2 Head nouns complemented by *to*-infinitive clauses

Unlike *that*-clauses, the head nouns with *to*-clauses do not typically present a personal stance. Instead, the nouns commonly taking *to*-clauses represent human goals, opportunities, or actions:

> *chance, attempt, effort, ability, opportunity, decision, plan, bid*

A second difference from *that*-clauses is that *to*-clauses are especially common in newspaper language (instead of academic prose). The meanings of the head nouns taking *to*-clauses fit the purposes of news, with a focus on human goals and actions rather than on stance towards propositions:

> *We need to give decent people a chance* ***to elect a sensible council.*** (NEWS)
>
> *The leader's gunshot wounds are taking their toll, complicating efforts* ***to persuade him to surrender.*** (NEWS)
>
> *Last year the society's committee made a decision* ***to relaunch*** *in a bid to attract more members.* (NEWS)

Yet the head nouns taking *to*-clauses are similar to those taking *that*-clauses in that many of them are nominalized equivalents of verbs or adjectives controlling *to*-complement clauses (see 9.12–15).

- nouns with corresponding verbs + *to*-clauses:

  attempt, decision, desire, failure, intention, permission, plan, proposal, refusal, tendency

- nouns with corresponding adjectives + *to*-clauses:

  ability/inability, commitment, determination, willingness

Thus compare:

He chastises Renault for their failure ***to respond to BMW's challenge.*** (NEWS†)

He failed ***to notice that it made Wilson chuckle.*** (FICT)

Such an order should be made only where there is evidence of the defendant's ability ***to pay.*** (NEWS)

I've never been able ***to determine that for sure.*** (FICT)

9.14.3 Head nouns complemented by *of-* + *ing*-clauses

Several of the head nouns that take *of-* + *ing*-clauses can also take another type of complement clause. (In contrast, there is almost no overlap between the head nouns taking *that*-clauses and the head nouns taking *to*-clauses.) Thus, the following head nouns occur with both *of-* + *ing*-clauses and with *that*-clauses:

idea, hope, possibility, sign, thought

For example:

Feynman discusses the idea ***of putting a lamp between the two slits to illuminate the electrons.*** (ACAD)

<compare: *Then a door is opened for the more threatening idea* ***that some principles are part of the law because of their moral appeal.*** (ACAD)>

So we have no hope ***of finding here a common reason for rejecting checkerboard solutions.*** (ACAD)

<compare: *There is every hope* ***that this will continue.*** (ACAD†)>

Fewer head nouns can take both an *of-* + *ing*-clause construction and a *to*-clause, but they include two of the most common nouns with both constructions—*chance* and *intention*:

Also one increases the chance ***of revealing similarities between superficially distinct objects.*** (ACAD)

<compare: *BOAC never had a chance* ***to establish commercial operations on any scale.*** (ACAD†)>

This writer has served on review teams and has had every intention ***of giving each proposal a thorough reading.*** (ACAD)

<compare: *Mr. Rawlins announced his intention* ***to leave Sturge at some time in the future.*** (NEWS)>

Finally, some head nouns can control only *of* + *ing*-clauses, such as *cost*, *task*, and *problem*:

They presented the move as a contribution by the Government to the huge cost ***of improving water quality.*** (NEWS)

It therefore seems logical to begin the task ***of disentangling the relationship between movement and urban structure.*** (ACAD)

9.14.4 Head nouns complemented by *wh*-interrogative clauses

Wh-interrogative clauses are much less common than the other types of noun complement clause. They are restricted mostly to occurrence with the head noun *question*.

The *of-* + *wh*-clause variant is actually more common than simple *wh*-clauses as noun complements, especially in news and academic prose. Further, it occurs with a wider range of head nouns. These include nouns referring to:

speech communication	*question, story, explanation, description, account, discussion*
exemplification	*example, indication, illustration*
problems	*problem, issue*
cognitive states or processes	*knowledge, understanding, sense, analysis, idea, notion.*

For example:

> *The question* ***of how to resolve the fear which so many people have in Hong Kong*** *was omitted.* (NEWS)
>
> *We have no knowledge* ***of where it came from.*** (NEWS)

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE E**: Noun complement clauses

- Noun complement clauses can easily be confused with relative clauses.
- They differ in that they are structurally complete (i.e. noun complement clauses do not have a gap) and the complementizer *that* cannot be omitted.
- There are two main types of noun complement clause: finite *that*-clauses and non-finite *to*-clauses.
- *Ing*-clauses and *wh*-clauses can be used as noun complement clauses, but are less common.
- Noun complement clauses occur with only a few abstract head nouns.
- Each structural type of complement clause occurs with a different set of head nouns.
- The head nouns that take *that*-clauses (e.g. *fact, possibility, claim*) mark stance.
- The head nouns that take *to*-clauses (e.g. *chance, attempt, plan*) mark human goals or actions.

10

Verb and adjective complement clauses

GRAMMAR BITES in this chapter

A Types and positions of complement clauses

- ➤ The four major and other minor types of complement clauses
- ➤ The grammatical positions of complement clauses: subject, post-predicate, and extraposed

B *That*-clauses

- ➤ The functions of *that*-clauses in discourse
- ➤ The grammatical patterns of *that*-clauses
- ➤ Verbs and adjectives that commonly control *that*-clauses
- ➤ Choices with *that*-clauses: subject v. extraposed position, and omission of *that*

C *Wh*-clauses

- ➤ The different types of *wh*-clauses and their functions
- ➤ Grammatical patterns of *wh*-clauses
- ➤ Common verbs controlling *wh*-clauses
- ➤ *Wh*-clauses that use *whether* and *if*

D Post-predicate infinitive clauses

- ➤ Grammatical patterns of *to*-clauses controlled by verbs
- ➤ Common verbs controlling *to*-clauses
- ➤ The functions of subject predicative *to*-clauses
- ➤ Common adjectives controlling *to*-clauses

E More on infinitive clauses

- ➤ Description of raising in *to*-clauses controlled by verbs and adjectives
- ➤ The use of extraposed and subject position *to*-clauses
- ➤ The choice between raised constructions and extraposed constructions
- ➤ A summary of *to*-clause use across registers

F *Ing*-clauses, ellipsis/substitution, and review

- ➤ Grammatical patterns of *ing*-clauses
- ➤ Common verbs and adjectives controlling *ing*-clauses
- ➤ Ellipsis and substitution in *to*-, *wh*-, and *that*-clauses
- ➤ A review of complement clause use across registers

10.1 Introduction

Complement clauses are dependent clauses that complete the meaning of a verb, adjective, or noun. For example, the *that*-complement clause in the following utterance provides the content of the 'thinking':

I thought ***that it looked good.*** (CONV†)

Here the main clause verb—*thought*—is said to control the complement clause.

Complement clauses are also called **nominal clauses**, because they often occupy a noun phrase slot in a clause, such as subject, object, or predicative. For example, the following *that*-clause is the direct object of the verb *said*:

I said ***that I wasn't perfect.*** (CONV†)

Complement clauses can also complete the meaning of an adjective rather than a verb. In this case, a predicative adjective controls the complement clause. In the following example, the *that*-clause is a complement to the adjective *careful*:

I've gotta be careful ***that I don't sound too pompous.*** (CONV†)

In this chapter we use the term **predicate** for the element that controls a complement clause: either a lexical verb or a predicative adjective.

Nouns can also control complement clauses. This was dealt with in the last chapter, in 9.13–14. In this chapter we focus on verb and adjective complementation.

GRAMMAR BITE

A Types and positions of complement clauses

10.2 Types of complement clauses

There are four major types of complement clauses: ***that*-clauses** and ***wh*-clauses** are finite complement clauses; ***to*-clauses** and ***ing*-clauses** are non-finite complement clauses (see 8.3.2). The clause types can be distinguished by their **complementizer**: the word that begins the complement clause (such as *that* or *to*). All four of the main types can complement both verbs and adjectives.

A *That*-clauses

They warned him ***that it's dangerous.*** (CONV†)

That-clauses are finite. Therefore, they are marked for tense or modality, and they have a subject. *That*-clauses can also occur without the complementizer *that*:

I thought ***it was a good film.*** (CONV)
<compare: *I thought that it was a good film.*>

The absence of the complementizer does not change the structure of the clause: it is still a finite dependent clause that completes the meaning of the verb (*thought*) and functions as direct object.

B *Wh*-clauses

> *She didn't* *ask* ***what my plans were.*** (FICT)

Wh-clauses begin with a *wh*-word (including *how*). Like *that*-clauses, they are finite clauses, and can show tense or modality and must have a subject.

C *To*-infinitive clauses

> *We* *wanted* ***to talk in front of my aunt.*** (FICT)

To-infinitive clauses are non-finite complement clauses. They cannot have tense or modals (for example, you cannot say **to talked*), and usually they do not have a subject. In most cases, the assumed subject of the complement clause is the subject of the main clause.

To-infinitive clauses can also occur in combination with *wh*-clauses:

> *She never* *knows* ***how to just say no.*** (CONV)

D *Ing*-clauses

> *He* *began* ***crunching it gently but firmly.*** (FICT†)

Ing-clauses are also non-finite; they have an *ing*-participle as their main verb form.

E Additional types of complement clause

In addition to the four major types, there are two less productive types of complement clause: **bare-infinitive clauses** and ***ed*-clauses**. Both of these are non-finite clauses.

Bare infinitive clauses are a special type of infinitive clause with an infinitive verb form, but without *to*:

> *Surrey police say the film would* *help* ***identify participants at the weekend party.*** (NEWS)
> <compare: *Surrey police say the film would* *help* ***to identify participants...***>

Ed-complement clauses are rare and very restricted in their distribution. For example:

> *I* *got* *the door* ***unlocked.*** (FICT†)
>
> *Western Union must have* *got* *the names* ***reversed.*** (FICT†)
>
> *They* *had* *carnival rides* ***trucked in and installed on the great green lawns.*** (FICT†)

Ed-clauses can complement only verbs, and only a few main clause verbs can control them (e.g. *get*, *have*, *want*, *need*, *see*, and *hear*). As you can see from the examples above, the *ed*-clause is separated from the controlling verb by a noun phrase.

10.3 Grammatical positions of complement clauses

There are three major grammatical positions for complement clauses: **subject** (or **pre-predicate**), **post-predicate**, and **extraposed**. Extraposed is actually an alternative to subject position.

10.3.1 Subject position

Complement clauses can occur before the verb, i.e. in subject position. This position is possible for complement clauses controlled by a verb or an adjective. This position is also sometimes called 'pre-predicate position', because the complement clause comes before the predicate.

- Subject position, verb complement clauses:

  That they are already struggling *troubles Graham Taylor.* (NEWS)

  What is good among one people *is an abomination with others.* (FICT)

  However, ***to say all other courses are impossible*** *is not to say this course is possible.* (NEWS)

  Walking the back nine *confirms what all the fuss is about.* (NEWS)

- Subject position, adjective complement clauses:

  That it would be unpopular with colleges or students *was obvious.* (NEWS)

  What a single mother represents *may seem touchingly attractive.* (NEWS)

  To attempt to forecast the effects of changing regulations on a national scale *is very difficult.* (ACAD)

  Her coming *was quite useless.* (FICT)

10.3.2 Post-predicate position

All complement clause types can occur after the verb or adjective that controls them. This is the post-predicate position. Post-predicate complement clauses can function as direct object (following a transitive verb), subject predicative (following a copular verb), or an adjective complement (following a predicative adjective). (Section 8.3.3 summarizes the range of syntactic roles for complement clauses.)

- Verb complement clause as direct object:

  They conclude ***that the change was cynical and opportunistic.*** (NEWS)

  You know ***what I call my mom.*** (CONV)

  They are trying ***to hold it together.*** (CONV†)

  I'm not going to start ***going on any cross-country runs at my age.*** (FICT)

- Verb complement clause as subject predicative after a copular verb:

  The industry's premise is ***that we can recognize information presented below our threshold awareness.*** (NEWS)

  That's ***what the case is all about.*** (NEWS)

The immediate reason for his return is ***to give two charity concerts.*** (NEWS†)

Happiness is ***being able to assume you are happy.*** (FICT†)

- Adjective complement clause (post-predicate position):

I feel very confident ***that Republican state organizations would finance an opponent.*** (NEWS†)

I'm not sure ***when it's open.*** (CONV)

Everybody's glad ***to have him around.*** (CONV)

The Prime Minister appeared confident of ***winning an overall majority.*** (NEWS†)

10.3.3 Extraposed position

Complement clauses rarely occur in subject position. Instead, extraposed clauses are usually used to express an equivalent meaning. In an extraposed structure, dummy *it* fills the subject slot, and the complement clause occurs after the predicate. Dummy *it* does not refer to anything—it simply fills the grammatical place of subject. However, the post-predicate complement clause functions as the logical subject. For example, consider this extraposed *wh*-clause, complement to the adjective *clear*:

It was not immediately clear ***how the Soviet leadership could enforce such a ruling.*** (NEWS†)
<compare: *How the Soviet leadership could enforce such a ruling was not immediately clear.*>

That-clauses and *to*-clauses are the most common types of complement clauses in extraposed position. They occur as complements of both adjectives and verbs.

- Extraposed *that*-clause as verb complement:

It appears ***that Big Blue does not lead the market.*** (NEWS)
<compare: *That Big Blue does not lead the market appears (to be the case).*>

- Extraposed *that*-clause as adjective complement:

It seems odd ***that I should be expected to pay for the privilege of assisting in this way.*** (NEWS)
<compare: *That I should be expected to pay . . . seems odd.*>

- Extraposed *to*-clause as verb complement:

It had taken him 26 years ***to return.*** (NEWS†)
<compare: *To return had taken him 26 years.*>

- Extraposed *to*-clause as adjective complement:

It's good ***to see them in the bath.*** (CONV†)
<compare: *To see them in the bath is good.*>

Review

Major points in **GRAMMAR BITE A**: Types and positions of complement clauses

- ➤ There are four major types of complement clauses: *that*-, *wh*-, *to*-, and *ing*-clauses.
  - ➤ Less common types are the bare infinitive clause and *ed*-clause.

- There are three major grammatical positions for complement clauses: subject (or pre-predicate), post-predicate, and extraposed (an alternative for subject position).

GRAMMAR BITE

B *That*-clauses

10.4 Discourse functions of *that*-clauses

Different kinds of *that*-clauses serve different functions. Their frequencies across registers—shown in Figure 10.1—reflect the communicative needs of each register in relation to these typical functions. (Subject and subject predicative *that*-clauses are relatively rare in all registers and are thus omitted from Figure 10.1.)

Figure 10.1

Frequencies of *that*-clause types

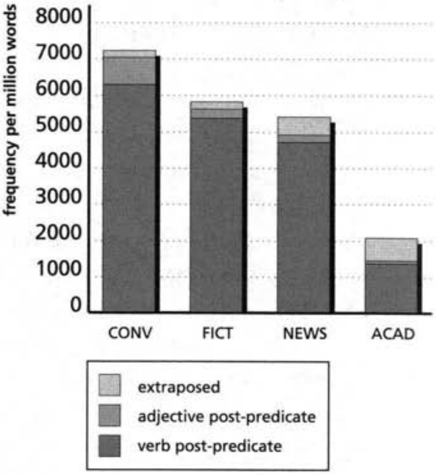

10.4.1 Post-predicate *that*-clauses

That-clauses in post-predicate position are by far the most common type of *that*-clause—they account for over 80 per cent of all *that*-clauses. These *that*-clauses typically report the speech and thoughts of humans. The subject of the main clause usually refers to a person, the main clause verb presents the type of reporting (e.g. speech or thought), and the *that*-clause presents the reported speech or thought. Although these structures are common in fiction and news, they are even more common in conversation, with its focus on interpersonal communication.

> *I think* ***Stuart's gone a bit mad.*** (CONV)
>
> *Did you know* ***that Kathy Jones had a brother here****?* (CONV)
>
> *He said* ***that nine indictments have been returned publicly in such investigations****.* (NEWS)

Post-predicate *that*-clauses controlled by adjectives are less common than those controlled by verbs. They generally tell the attitudes and emotions of speakers:

> *I was quite confident* ***that it would stay in very well.*** (CONV)

10.4.2 Subject predicative *that*-clauses

When a *that*-clause serves as subject predicative to a copular verb, it usually has one of three functions. First, these constructions often describe a problem of some kind:

> *The problem is* ***that the second question cannot be answered until Washington comes up with a consensus on the first.*** (NEWS)
>
> *The only problem may be* ***that the compound is difficult to remove after use.*** (ACAD)

Second, subject predicative *that*-clauses can present reasons, results, or conclusions:

> *The net result is* ***that foreign money has frequently ended up fertilising or irrigating opium fields.*** (NEWS†)
>
> *Our first conclusion at this point was* ***that it is necessary to support the specification.*** (ACAD†)

The third function is to present accepted truths or facts:

> *The truth is* ***that the country is now specialising more in processing and marketing.*** (NEWS)

Subject predicative *that*-clauses are used mostly in news and academic prose.

10.4.3 Extraposed *that*-clauses

Extraposed *that*-clauses often involve a main clause that reports an attitude or stance without attributing it to anybody. Usually they show the attitude of the speaker or writer of the text, but the author does not assume direct responsibility:

> *It is certain* ***that the challenges ahead are at least as daunting as anything the cold war produced.*** (NEWS†)
>
> *It is vitally important* ***that both groups are used to support one another.*** (ACAD†)

Extraposed *that*-clauses are used primarily in news and academic prose. The *that*-clause usually has a non-human subject, and reports a state or relationship in an impersonal manner.

10.4.4 Embedded *that*-clauses

That-clauses often occur in complex series, using various kinds of coordination and embedding. Post-predicate clauses can be mixed with extraposed clauses. Surprisingly, complex structures of this type are found in conversation as well as in news and academic prose. Thus, the following example is quoted speech reported in a newspaper article:

> *I think [****that President Reagan believed [[that not only was the government the problem], but [that it was rare indeed [that government could be a positive force in solving the problem****]]]].* (NEWS)

Even in this complicated sentence, you can see the *that*-clauses fulfilling their typical functions of reporting thoughts and attitudes.

10.5 Post-predicate *that*-clauses

10.5.1 Grammatical patterns

There are three major grammatical patterns for verbs that take a *that*-clause in post-predicate position:

- **Pattern 1: verb + *that*-clause** (e.g. *agree, ask*)

  1 *I didn't agree* ***that he should be compelled to do singing.*** (CONV)

- **Pattern 2: verb + NP + *that*-clause** (e.g. *tell, persuade*)

  2 *I persuaded [myself]* ***that something awful might happen.*** (FICT)

- **Pattern 3: verb + *to* NP + *that* clause** (e.g. *suggest*)

  3 *I suggested [to Miss Kerrison]* ***that she sit down on the chair and wait.*** (FICT)

All verbs that can occur in Pattern 3 can also occur in Pattern 1. For example, compare **3** to **4** below:

> **4** *I suggested* ***that she sit down on the chair and wait.***

(For a discussion of the subjunctive *she sit ... wait* in **3** and **4**, see 8.17.)

Many verbs can occur with both Pattern 1 and 2 (e.g. *promise*):

> *I promise* ***that we will take great care of him.*** (FICT†)
> <compare: *I promise [you] that we will take great care of him.*>

A few verbs can occur with all three patterns (e.g. *write, cable, wire*):

> *I wrote* ***that I would be satisfied with any old freighter.*** (FICT†)
> <compare: *I wrote [him] that I would be satisfied with any old freighter;*
> *I wrote [to him] that I would be satisfied with any old freighter.*>

Most of the verbs that take Pattern 2 can also occur in the passive voice with a *that*-clause:

> *[He] was told* ***that she had checked out of the hospital.*** (FICT†)
> <compare: *Someone told [him] that she had checked out of the hospital.*>

That-clauses do not occur following prepositions. However, some of the verbs that take *that*-clauses correspond to prepositional verbs taking noun phrases:

Pattern 1: *agree* + *that*-clause	compare: *agree to* + NP
Pattern 2: *advise* + NP + *that*-clause	compare: *advise* + NP + *of/about* NP

For example:

> *We all agree* ***that cuts are needed.*** (NEWS)
> <compare: *Would she agree to [it]?* (CONV)>
> *He advised [them]* ***that my stated intention would put the Prime Minister's future at risk.*** (NEWS†)
> <compare: *He advised [the police] of [the first raid].* (NEWS†)>

10.5.2 Verbs controlling post-predicate *that*-clauses

Ten verbs are especially common controlling *that* post-predicate clauses: *think, say, know, see, find, believe, feel, suggest, show,* and *guess* (in American English conversation). Table 10.1 lists all common verbs controlling *that*-clauses divided into semantic domains.

Table 10.1 The most common verbs controlling a complement *that*-clause by semantic domain and register; occurrences per million words

████ over 600 ██ over 200 ■ over 100 ▮ over 20

semantic domain	CONV	FICT	NEWS	ACAD
mental/cognition				
know	████	████	■	■
think	████	████	██	▮
guess (AmE)	██	■		
see	■	██	■	■
find	▮	██	■	■
believe	▮	■	██	▮
mean	■	■	▮	▮
suppose	■	■		▮
feel	▮	██	▮	▮
realize	▮	■	▮	▮
hear	▮	■	▮	
hope	▮	■	▮	
assume		▮	▮	■
speech act				
say	████	████	████	██
other communication				
show	▮	▮	■	██
suggest		▮	■	██
ensure			▮	■
indicate			▮	■

A Mental verbs

Mental verbs are very common with *that*-clauses, reporting various mental states and attitudes. The verb *think* is especially common in conversation—it is frequently used in the fixed expression *I think* to report one's own thoughts and lack of certainty:

I think ***we picked it.*** (CONV†)

I think ***he does too much in the furniture business.*** (CONV†)

The verb *guess* + *that*-clause is very common in American English conversation and fiction:

I guess ***I should probably call Michele.*** (AmE CONV)

I guess ***they didn't hear anything.*** (FICT)

In general, fiction uses a wider range of mental verbs than conversation to describe characters' mental states:

He knew ***that if he touched it, it would be as soft as silk.*** (FICT†)

She saw ***that it was a moose with a body as big as a truck.*** (FICT)

He looked at the wound and found ***that it had stopped bleeding.*** (FICT†)

He felt ***that something was going to happen tonight.*** (FICT†)

The verb *believe* also reports a cognitive state, but it is more common in news than the other registers:

The Secretary of State and Mr. Bush believe ***that there are trustworthy deals to be done.*** (NEWS†)

Mental verbs with *that*-clauses are an important device for expressing stance. For example, verbs such as *think*, *feel*, and *assume* convey a sense of possibility combined with uncertainty, while verbs such as *know*, *find*, and *see* convey a greater sense of certainty. Compare the level of certainty in these two examples:

I think ***it's gotta be through there.*** (CONV)

I know ***I told you.*** (CONV)

Mental verbs are less common with *that*-clauses in academic prose, because academic writers usually do not mark the reports of personal thoughts explicitly.

B Speech act and other communication verbs

The second common use of *that*-clauses is to report what someone said. For example:

She said ***that it's lovely to wear.*** (CONV)

Fatty had told him ***that he looked the type.*** (FICT†)

Besides, aid workers argue ***that cutting any aid will only result in more poppies.*** (NEWS)

The verb *say* is extremely common in news and conversation. Its frequent use in news reflects the fact that statements by public figures are newsworthy:

Mr. Kenneth Clarke, the Health Secretary, yesterday said ***that the latest pay offer made last Friday was worth 9 per cent.*** (NEWS†)

Direct speech reporting is an alternative way to express the same content as a *that*-clause with a speech act verb. The clause in direct speech gives the content of the speech, and is associated with a reporting clause containing a speech act verb (see 8.15.5):

It will be ineffective against the multi-layer reactive armour, *experts say.* (NEWS)

<compare: *Experts say* ***that it will be ineffective against the multi-layer reactive armour.***>

Academic prose shows a moderately frequent use of communication verbs such as *show*, *ensure*, and *indicate*. These verbs are often used with a non-personal subject. Therefore, the idea expressed in the *that*-clause is not overtly attributed to anybody:

Life histories show ***that elite women also chose spouses of the same social and economic status as themselves.*** (ACAD)

Investigations at the Irri indicate ***that high yields and high water efficiency can be achieved with continuous flow of shallow water.*** (ACAD†)

Notice that many of these communication verbs also indicate the degree of certainty associated with the information. In the examples above, *indicate* is less certain than *show*. *Suggest* is even less certain, while *prove* expresses an extreme degree of certainty:

*They suggest **that he could become the country's national president.*** (NEWS†)

*It is extremely difficult to prove **that there is no gene flow between enclaves.*** (ACAD†)

Finally, there are some communication verbs used with *that*-clauses to propose a potential course of action. These are not the most common verbs controlling *that*-clauses, but they are familiar verbs such as *advise*, *insist*, *order*, and *ask*:

1 *The medicine-man then ordered **that there should be no mourning for the dead child.*** (FICT)

2 *We ask **that this food be blessed.*** (CONV†)

That-clauses with this function generally occur with either the modal *should*, as in **1**, or an uninflected subjunctive verb form (e.g. *be*), as in **2**.

10.6 Verbs controlling extraposed *that*-clauses

Extraposed *that*-clauses controlled by verbs are much less common than post-predicate *that*-clauses, and many fewer verbs can control extraposed clauses. The copula *be* is most common. In these structures, the controlling predicate is the copula in combination with the following predicative noun phrase, such as *is a wonder* in the following:

*It's a wonder **he's got any business at all!*** (CONV)

*It's a wonder **the tree's alive,** but it is.* (FICT)

The copular verbs *seem* and *appear* can also take this pattern:

*It seemed however **that in-pig sows showed more stress than empty ones.*** (ACAD)

*It now appears **that I will be expected to part with a further portion of my income.*** (NEWS†)

The verb *follow* is used in an intransitive sense with extraposed *that*-clauses:

*It follows **that metals are better conductors at lower temperatures.*** (ACAD)

Extraposed *that*-clauses also occur after passive voice verbs, such as *be found*, *be known*, *be assumed*, *be said*, and *be shown*:

*It can be assumed **that number of kilometers driven in one year is a fair indication of experience of driving.*** (ACAD)

10.7 *That*-clauses controlled by adjectives

The adjectives that control a *that*-complement clause all convey stance. They fall into three major categories: degrees of certainty (e.g. *certain*, *confident*, *evident*); affective states (e.g. *annoyed*, *glad*, *sad*); and evaluations (e.g. *appropriate*, *odd*, *good*, *important*, *advisable*).

That-clauses controlled by adjectival predicates occur in post-predicate or extraposed position:

- post-predicate *that*-clause:

  I'm glad ***that I found you again.*** (FICT)

- extraposed *that*-clause:

  It's nice ***that people say it to you unprompted.*** (CONV)

A few adjectives, like *certain* and *sad*, can control both post-predicate and extraposed clauses. However, most adjectives can control only one type of clause. The following sections describe the adjectives that take each type.

10.7.1 Adjectives controlling post-predicate *that*-clauses

Only one adjective is especially common with post-predicate *that*-clauses: *sure*.

> *I'm sure* ***that they'd got two little rooms on the ground floor.*** (CONV†)

Some other adjectives controlling post-predicate *that*-clauses are:

> certainty: *certain, confident, convinced, positive, right, sure*
>
> emotive: *afraid, amazed, angry, annoyed, astonished, (un)aware, careful, concerned, depressed, disappointed, encouraged, frightened, glad, grateful, (un)happy, hopeful, hurt, irritated, mad, pleased, proud, relieved, sad, (dis)satisfied, shocked, sorry, surprised, thankful, upset, worried*

Adjectives + post-predicate *that*-clauses typically occur with a human subject, so that the associated stance is tied directly to that person:

- certainty adjective:

  The minister is confident ***that Pakistan could deflect western pressure.*** (NEWS)

- emotive adjectives:

  I'm afraid ***it brings the caterpillars in.*** (CONV)

  I'm sorry ***I hit you just now.*** (FICT)

10.7.2 Adjectives controlling extraposed *that*-clauses

Some common adjectives controlling extraposed *that*-clauses are:

> *clear, (un)likely, (im)possible, true.*

Others include:

> certainty: *certain, doubtful, evident, false, inevitable, obvious, plain, probable, right, well-known*
>
> emotion or evaluation: *amazing, astonishing, awful, curious, disappointing, embarrassing, (un)fortunate, frightening, funny, good, great, horrible, inconceivable, incredible, interesting, irritating, (un)lucky, natural, neat, nice, notable, noteworthy, odd, ridiculous, sad, shocking, silly, strange, stupid, surprising, tragic, unfair, understandable, unthinkable, unusual, upsetting, wonderful*
>
> importance: *critical, crucial, essential, important, necessary, obligatory, vital*

Adjectival predicates with extraposed *that*-clauses mark a stance or attitude towards what is in the *that*-clause. In most cases, the stance or attitude belongs to the speaker or writer, but this relationship is not overt because the subject of the main clause is the empty *it*.

The most common adjectives controlling extraposed *that*-clauses (*clear*, *(un)likely*, *(im)possible*, *true*) express the (un)certainty of the idea in the *that*-clause:

> *It is indeed possible* ***that the results of research will lead to a reappraisal of current methods of cultivation.*** (ACAD)
>
> *It is unlikely* ***that any insect exceeds about twice this velocity.*** (ACAD)

Emotion/evaluation adjectives express other positive or negative attitudes to the information in the *that*-clause: e.g. *appropriate*, *fortunate*, *great*, *awful*, *disappointing*, *unlucky*.

> *It is good* ***that our clan holds the Ozo title in high esteem.*** (FICT†)
>
> *It's horrible* ***that he put up with Claire's nagging.*** (CONV)

Other affective adjectives are not strongly positive or negative, but indicate an emotional response such as surprise, interest, or amusement:

> *It's pretty funny* ***that you and Alicia were the only ones in the classroom.*** (FICT†)
>
> *It's incredible* ***that Paul is still playing.*** (NEWS†)

Importance adjectives with extraposed *that*-clauses are most common in academic prose. Some evaluation and importance adjectives are used with extraposed *that*-clauses to propose a course of action. They thus have a hypothetical sense and usually occur with *should* or with subjunctive verb forms (marked *):

> *It is sensible* ***that the breeding animals receive the highest protection.*** (ACAD)
>
> *It is essential* ***that the two instruments should run parallel to the microscope state.*** (ACAD)
>
> *It is important* ***that it be* well sealed from air leakage.*** (ACAD)
>
> *It is desirable* ***that it be* both lined and insulated.*** (ACAD†)

10.8 Discourse choices with *that*-clauses

10.8.1 Subject position v. extraposed *that*-clauses

Subject *that*-clauses and extraposed *that*-clauses are equivalent structures. In both cases, the *that*-clause is the logical subject of the sentence.

> *Maybe it annoys them* ***that you don't fit their image of a fairy princess.*** (FICT)
>
> <compare: ***That you don't fit their image of a fairy princess*** *annoys them.*>

A third related structure has a subject noun phrase that begins with *the fact that* (see 9.13.1):

> ***The fact that the medical technicians were available*** *does not make the government's conduct any less offensive.* (NEWS)

Overall, extraposed *that*-clauses are far more common than subject *that*-clauses. As a result, when subject *that*-clauses are used, they serve special discourse functions. Specifically, there are four factors that are important in the choice of a subject *that*-clause over an extraposed one:

A Register

Subject *that*-clauses are rare in all registers. They occur occasionally in academic prose and news, but they are virtually non-existent in conversation.

This preference for extraposed *that*-clauses over subject *that*-clauses reflects the general preference in English to use short, simple subjects, and to use longer, more complex structures towards the end of a clause. (See 12.1.4 on the principle of end-weight.)

Subject *that*-clauses cause difficulties for both speakers and listeners: we must understand the embedded complement clause and hold it in our memory until we get to the main clause predicate. The problems caused by a subject *that*-clause are especially great in conversation, because there is no time for editing or re-hearing.

B Information structure

In almost every case where a subject *that*-clause is used, it presents information that is already presupposed as factual or generally accepted. The information in the *that*-clause is established through previously stated information. The subject *that*-clause therefore provides a link with previous discourse, and follows the information flow principle, with established information occurring before new information (see 12.1.1). For example:

> *One of the triumphs of radioactive dating emerged only gradually as more and more workers dated meteorites. It became surprisingly apparent that all meteorites are of the same age, somewhere in the vicinity of 4.5 billion years old* <...>
>
> ***That there are no meteorites of any other age, regardless of when they fell to Earth,*** *suggests strongly that all meteorites originated in other bodies of the solar system that formed at the same time the Earth did.* (ACAD)

Here the subject *that*-clause summarizes information that can be deduced from the previous paragraph. It states this known information as the subject of the sentence and moves on to the new information (*all meteorites originate in other bodies* ...).

C Grammatical factors

In most cases when a subject *that*-clause is used, the main clause predicate has a complex construction with many phrases or clauses. For example:

> ***That a stimulus can be processed either verbally or non-verbally*** *helps [to make sense of those otherwise anomalous findings in which verbal stimuli give rise to a LVF superiority].* (ACAD)

The alternative extraposed construction would be very hard to understand in cases like this.

D Topic and style

Personal style and topic can also favor the use of subject *that*-clauses. Some authors use subject *that*-clauses more than others. Sports writers as a group have a stylistic preference for them, as in:

> ***That the 49ers' injury-ravaged defensive secondary was exploited by the Vikings (2–1)*** *was no shocker.* (NEWS†)

10.8.2 Retention v. omission of *that*

Another major choice with *that*-clauses is whether to use the *that*-complementizer or not. There is no difference in meaning:

> *I hope* ***you realized they said a few words on there.*** (CONV)
> <compare: *I hope* ***[that] you realized [that] they said a few words on there.***>

While you might guess that these options are fairly random, there are actually strong discourse factors associated with the omission or retention of *that.*

A Register factors

In conversation, omission of *that* is typical. In academic prose, on the other hand, omission of *that* is unusual. These preferences follow general patterns for the two registers: conversation often favors the reduction or omission of constituents that are not necessary; academic prose, in contrast, is carefully produced, and has elaborated structures.

B Factors favoring omission of *that*

Three grammatical factors are associated with the omission of *that*: *say/think* as the main clause verb, co-referential subjects in the main clause and *that*-clause, and a personal pronoun as subject of the *that*-clause. These characteristics are illustrated in **1–2**:

1 *I think* ***I'll make a shopping list today.*** (CONV)
2 *You said* ***you didn't.*** (CONV)

In **1**, the controlling verb is *think*, while in **2** it is *say*. Both examples have co-referential subjects for the main clause and *that*-clause (*I–I* in **1**, *you–you* in **2**), and the *that*-clause subjects are personal pronouns.

That-complement clauses often have these characteristics. Therefore, it is easy for hearers/readers to recognize the presence of these *that*-clauses without explicit marking with *that.*

C Factors favoring retention of *that*

Three grammatical characteristics are associated with the retention of *that*: coordinated *that*-clauses, use of passive voice, and an intervening noun phrase.

First, coordinated *that*-clauses almost always retain the *that.* It would be hard to identify the start of the second *that*-clause in **1** if *that* were omitted:

1 *The major conclusion of both studies was* ***that the nation and particularly the state of Florida must quickly reduce their large reliance on foreign oil*** *and* ***that conservation measures and increased reliance on the abundant national supply of coal were the major alternatives.*** (ACAD)

Second, when a passive voice verb is used in the main clause, *that* is usually retained:

> *I was told* ***that both the new right and those who support the government's view had been excluded.*** (NEWS†)

Third, if there is an intervening noun phrase (marked in *[]* below) between the main clause verb and the *that*-clause, the *that* is usually retained:

> *They warn [him]* ***that it's dangerous.*** (CONV)

The influence of these factors is strongest in conversation: omission of *that* is the norm in conversation, but when these factors occur, *that* is almost always retained.

Review

Major points in **GRAMMAR BITE B**: *That*-clauses

- The most common type of *that*-clause is post-predicate. Its typical function is reporting the thoughts and speech of humans.
  - Each of the other types of *that*-clauses has particular functions in discourse also.
- Mental verbs and speech act/communication verbs are the most common type of verb with a *that*-clause.
  - These verbs reflect the primary function of *that*-clauses for reporting thoughts and speech.
  - Many of the verb + *that*-clause combinations also convey stance.
- Subject-position and extraposed *that*-clauses are much less common than post-predicate *that*-clauses.
  - For verbs, only *be* is common controlling extraposed *that*-clauses.
- The adjectives that control *that*-clauses all convey stance.
  - There are three subcategories of meaning: certainty (e.g. *certain*), psychological states (e.g. *glad*, *sad*), and evaluation (e.g. *good*, *important*).
  - Extraposed *that*-clauses are far more common than subject *that*-clauses.
  - When subject *that*-clauses are used, they usually conform to particular characteristics of register, grammatical complexity, and information structure. In addition, some topics and individual writers favor subject *that*-clauses.
- Factors associated with the retention or omission of the *that*-complementizer include register, the main clause verb, and certain characteristics of the subjects in the main clause and *that*-clause.

GRAMMAR BITE

C *Wh*-clauses

10.9 Structure and function of *wh*-clauses

There are three basic types of *wh*-complement clauses: **interrogative clauses**, **nominal relative clauses**, and **exclamatives**. Interrogative clauses and nominal relative clauses use the same *wh*-words, except that *whether* is used only with interrogatives. Exclamative *wh*-clauses begin with *how* or *what*.

Interrogative clauses are used with verbs such as *ask* and *wonder* to present an indirect question:

1 *Jill was asking* ***what happened.*** (CONV†)
<compare: *Jill asked 'What happened?'*>
2 *I wonder* ***what that could be about.*** (CONV)

Note that there is a change in word order when the *wh*-word corresponds to an object in the complement clause. For example, the complementizer *what* corresponds to the object of the preposition in **2**, but it is placed at the front of the complement clause (not: **I wonder that could be about what*).

Nominal relative clauses can be paraphrased with a general head noun + relative clause:

Yes. Burbidge Road. Which is ***where Carlos used to live.*** (CONV)
<paraphrase: *Which is* ***the place where Carlos used to live.***>
What baffles me *is how few of them can spell.* (NEWS)
<paraphrase: ***The thing that baffles me*** *is...*>

Exclamative *wh*-clauses are less common than the other types. They begin with *how* + adjective or with *what* as a predeterminer. They act as indirect exclamatives (see 8.12):

He still remembered ***how wonderful it had been.*** (FICT)
I was thinking ***how nice you are, what a good actor,*** *and* ***what a nice man.*** (FICT†)
<compare: *I was thinking 'How nice you are! ...'*>

As these examples show, exclamative *wh*-clauses have a change in word order. The subject predicative and its *wh*-word (e.g. *how wonderful, how nice*) is placed at the front of the clause.

10.9.1 *Wh*-clauses controlled by verbs

With verbs, *wh*-complement clauses often occur in object position. For example:

You give him ***what he wants.*** (FICT)

Wh-clauses can also occur as subject:

What could be at work there *is an actual enmity towards the very structure of society.* (FICT)
How to read the record *is the subject of much of this book.* (ACAD)

Wh-clauses also occur as subject predicatives. These structures are particularly common in conversation, with the demonstrative pronoun *that* as subject, and the copula contracted to *'s*:

That's ***what I'm saying.*** (CONV)
That's ***why I bought the refill.*** (CONV)

10.9.2 *Wh*-clauses as complements of adjectives and prepositions

Wh-clauses can also follow adjectival predicates:

I'm not sure ***when it's open for anybody.*** (CONV)
She wanted to be careful ***what she said.*** (FICT)

Wh-clauses that are complements of adjectives can also be extraposed:

> *It was incredible* ***what had happened to them.*** (FICT)
>
> *It was not immediately clear* ***how the Soviet leadership could enforce such a ruling.*** (NEWS)

Finally, unlike *that*-clauses, *wh*-clauses can be the complement of a preposition or the object of a prepositional verb:

> *She was amazed at* ***how exhausted she was.*** (FICT)
>
> <compare: *She was amazed* ***that she was so exhausted.***>

10.10 Post-predicate *wh*-clauses controlled by verbs

10.10.1 Grammatical patterns

There are two important grammatical patterns used with *wh*-complement clauses in post-predicate position:

- **Pattern 1: verb + *wh*-clause** (e.g. *know, remember, see*)

  > *I don't know* ***what they are.*** (CONV)
  >
  > *I can't remember* ***how I used to be.*** (FICT)

- **Pattern 2: verb + NP + *wh*-clause** (e.g. *ask, show, tell*)

  > *I didn't tell [you]* ***what Emma thought.*** (CONV)
  >
  > *I want you to show [me]* ***where the car went off.*** (FICT)

Pattern 1 has a variant with prepositional verbs:

> *You actually think about* ***what you're seeing.*** (CONV†)

Pattern 2 can also occur with a prepositional verb, where the preposition occurs between the NP and the *wh*-clause, e.g. *remind* + NP + *of* + *wh*-clause:

> *They remind [me] of* ***when I was at school.*** (CONV)

In both patterns, some verbs can take *wh*-infinitive clauses. The *wh*-word is followed by the *to* infinitive marker and the uninflected form of the verb:

> *You must also understand* ***how to check their accuracy at recognised stages.*** (ACAD†)
>
> *I would tell [them]* ***where to go.*** (CONV)

10.10.2 Verbs controlling *wh*-clauses

As you can see in Table 10.2, the most common verbs controlling a *wh*-clause fall into four major semantic domains: mental, speech act, other communication, and perception. In addition, the relationship verb *depend (on)* is common in conversation.

By far the most common verb controlling a *wh*-clause is *know* in conversation. Although it can be used to report what a speaker knows, it is even more commonly used to report what the speaker does not know:

> *I know* ***what she said.*** (CONV)

Table 10.2 **The most common verbs controlling a complement *wh*-clause by semantic domain and register; occurrences per million words**

██████ over 1000 ████ over 500 ███ over 200 ██ over 100
■ over 40 ▮ over 20

semantic domain	CONV	FICT	NEWS	ACAD
cognition				
know	██████	████	██	■
wonder	██	██		
think (about)	■	■		
remember	■	▮		
understand	▮	■		▮
guess	▮			
realize				▮
find (out)		▮		
speech act				
tell (NP)	██	██	▮	
ask (NP)	■	■	▮	
say	▮	▮		
explain			▮	▮
other communication				
show (NP)	▮	▮		▮
perception				
see	███	██	■	■
look (at)	■			
relationship				
depend (on)	▮			

> *I don't know* ***what's happening.*** (CONV)
> *I don't know* ***where they are.*** (CONV)

The verb *know* is also common in dialog in fiction and news:

> *I don't know* ***how people are going to get through the winter.*** (NEWS)

The verb *see* is also notably common with *wh*-clauses in conversation. Sometimes it is used for literal perceptions of seeing:

> *I couldn't see* ***what they were doing.***

More commonly, however, it is used metaphorically to mean 'find out':

> *I'll see* ***what cash I've got left.*** (CONV)
> *So we'll see* ***what transpires this time.*** (CONV)

The expression *see what I/you mean* is particularly common in conversation:

> *I can see* ***what you mean.*** (CONV)
> *Do you see* ***what I mean?*** (CONV)

Other mental verbs, such as *wonder*, *think (about/of)*, *remember*, and *understand* are relatively common with *wh*-clauses in both conversation and fiction:

I could never remember ***how to do them.*** (CONV)

You should wonder ***why she wants me around.*** (FICT)

Sethe smiled just thinking about ***what the word could mean.*** (FICT)

Speech act verbs are also relatively common with *wh*-clauses in conversation and fiction:

Did you tell him ***what Greg said about your arms?*** (CONV)

I am asking ***what you intend to do about this man.*** (FICT)

Although these are the most common verbs with *wh*-clauses, it is important to realize that *wh*-clauses can occur with almost any transitive verb as a nominal relative clause. For example:

The birds gathered round to eat ***what was left.*** (FICT)

She also won ***what they call oratory.*** (FICT)

He dreaded ***what he might have to do.*** (FICT†)

And I respect ***what she says.*** (CONV)

Wh-clauses are generally less common in academic prose. However, there are some mental and communication verbs that are particularly useful with *wh*-clauses in academic prose. These verbs deal with discovery and description:

- mental verbs:

  We need to discover ***what they believe about AIDS.*** (ACAD)

  Thus the programmer can establish ***when a transput operation is complete.*** (ACAD†)

- communication verbs:

  He describes ***how the National Committee is organized.*** (ACAD)

  An evaluation can also indicate ***what are likely outcomes.*** (ACAD†)

10.11 Interrogative clauses with *whether* and *if*

The *wh*-word *whether* is used as a complementizer to introduce dependent *yes/no* interrogative clauses that express indirect questions. *If* can be used as a complementizer in the same way:

- *whether*-clauses:

  He wondered ***whether the mestizo had stolen his mule.*** (FICT†)

  Police are not taking action until they know ***whether the men face charges.*** (NEWS)

- *if*-clauses:

  Ask him when they were here last. See ***if he's got a tongue.*** *See* ***if he's such an idiot as he looks.*** (FICT)

  One of the most common problems encountered is simply deciding ***if two components in a machine clash.*** (ACAD)

In the above examples, it would be possible to change *whether* to *if*, and vice versa, without changing the meaning. Notice that this use of *if* is different from *if* as a subordinator in adverbial conditional clauses (see 11.9.1), such as the following:

I would've died ***if I was in there.*** (CONV)

Adverbial *if*-clauses can be moved to initial position (e.g. ***If I was in there,*** *I would've died*). In contrast, interrogative *if* complement clauses cannot be moved.

With the verb *ask*, the *if/whether* clause functions as an indirect speech report of a *yes/no* question:

I asked ***if she needed a ride.*** (FICT)
<compare direct speech: *Do you need a ride*?>

Sometimes alternatives are offered by using *or (not)* with an *if/whether* clause:

Mynors asked her ***whether they should go through the marketplace or along King Street.*** (FICT†)

I don't care ***whether you want to play an instrument or not.*** (CONV)

The phrase *or not* can also directly follow the complementizer *whether*:

We do not ask ***whether or not*** *an axiom is 'true'.* (ACAD†)

If is less often used with *or* + alternative expressions:

I don't know ***if she was upset or her eyes were watering because of the smoke.*** (NEWS)

It really doesn't matter ***if I'm a nice guy or not.*** (NEWS)

When *if* is the complementizer, *or not* cannot follow it directly: ...* *if or not I'm a nice guy.*

As many of the above examples illustrate, *whether/if* clauses are frequently used with a negative in the main clause. The verbs *care*, *matter*, *mind*, and *know* are especially common in the negative:

I don't care ***if you're serious or not.*** (CONV)

Doesn't matter ***whether – whether it's a boy or a girl.*** (CONV)

I don't mind ***if the goals are spread around.*** (NEWS)

10.11.1 Verbs controlling *whether*- and *if*-clauses

If-clauses are more common than *whether*-clauses as interrogative clauses. Verbs used commonly with *if*-clauses in conversation and fiction are *see*, *wonder*, and *know*; less frequent verbs include *ask*, *matter*, *mind*, *doubt*, *care*, and *remember*. *If*-clauses are generally rare in academic prose.

Whether-clauses, in contrast, occur more evenly across registers. *Know* + *whether*-clause is especially common in conversation, but many different verbs are used with moderate frequencies (e.g. *decide*, *see*, *mind*, *care*, *say*, *ask*). *Wonder* + *whether*-clause is relatively common in fiction, while *determine* + *whether*-clause is relatively common in academic prose. Several less common verbs are found primarily in academic prose with *whether*-clauses (e.g. *consider*, *establish*, *indicate*, *find out*).

If-clauses and *whether*-clauses are stylistically different. *If*-clauses are favored in more informal styles, so they are especially common in conversation and fiction, especially with *see* (= 'find out'), *wonder*, and *know*:

Dad, try this on and see ***if it fits.*** (CONV)

I wonder ***if they will close our school down.*** (CONV†)

I don't really know ***if that's such a good idea.*** (CONV)

Review

Major points in **GRAMMAR BITE C:** *Wh*-clauses

- There are three major types of *wh*-clauses: interrogative, nominal relative, and exclamative.
- *Wh*-clauses can be complements of verbs, adjectives, or prepositions.
- *Wh*-complements can occur with or without a noun phrase between the verb and *wh*-clause.
- There are four types of verbs that are most common with *wh*-clauses: mental, speech act, other communication, and perception.
- *Whether* and *if* are used to introduce dependent interrogative clauses.
  - *If*-clauses are more common than *whether*-clauses, especially in conversation.
  - *Whether*-clauses are used with more formal discourse and with clauses that include choices with *or* and *or not.*

GRAMMAR BITE

D Post-predicate infinitive clauses

10.12 Overview of infinitive clauses

In general, infinitive clauses are more common in the written registers than in conversation. This is the opposite of the distribution of *that*-clauses and *wh*-clauses, which are both most common in conversation.

Infinitive complement clauses serve a wide range of functions. They report speech and mental states, and they are also used to report intentions, desires, efforts, perceptions, and other general actions. They usually occur in post-predicate position, although they can also occur in subject position and in extraposed constructions. In this Grammar Bite, we concentrate on basic information about post-predicate *to*-clauses (including those that function as subject predicatives). Then, in Grammar Bite E, we describe other types of *to*-clauses.

10.13 Post-predicate *to*-clauses controlled by verbs

10.13.1 Grammatical patterns

There are five major grammatical patterns for post-predicate infinitive clauses following a verb:

- **Pattern 1: verb + *to*-clause** (e.g. *try, hope*)

  I'm just trying ***to get away early.*** (CONV†)

  The new promoters hope ***to make prototypes at $299,000 each.*** (NEWS)

Pattern 1 is by far the most common pattern for *to*-clauses in all registers.

- **Pattern 2: verb + NP + *to*-clause** (e.g. *tell, believe, enable, expect*)

  It enables [the farmer] ***to maintain uniform and near constant conditions in the house.*** (ACAD†)

  Pattern 2 is moderately common in news and academic prose. Many verbs in Pattern 2 also have a corresponding passive form, which we can call **Pattern 2P: *be* verb-*ed* + *to*-clause**:

  PCBs are generally considered ***to be carcinogenic.*** (ACAD)
  <compare Pattern 2: *Researchers generally consider [PCBs]* ***to be carcinogenic.***>

  Pattern 2P is also moderately common in news and academic prose. In news, *be expected* is the most common verb in this pattern, while *be found* and *be required* are more common in academic prose:

  Heavy fighting with government troops was expected ***to break out soon.*** (NEWS)

  Thus, paddy soils are found ***to be very dissimilar in chemical composition.*** (ACAD†)

- **Pattern 3: verb + *for* NP + *to*-clause** (e.g. *ask, love, arrange, wait*)

  Hire a Daily Mirror van and wait for [Mrs Jones] ***to arrive.*** (CONV†)

  Pattern 3 is most common in American English conversation.

- **Pattern 4: verb + bare infinitive clause** (e.g. *dare, help, let*)

  The police didn't dare ***touch them*** *because of United Nations.* (FICT†)

  It could have helped ***clarify a number of issues.*** (NEWS†)

  This pattern is rare in all of the registers of our corpus.
  Some verbs that take Pattern 4—such as *dare* and *help*—also take Pattern 1:

  It could have helped ***to clarify a number of issues.***

- **Pattern 5: verb + NP + bare infinitive clause** (e.g. *have, feel, make, help, see*)

  I'll have [Judy] ***do it.*** (CONV)

  He actually felt [the sweat] ***break out now on his forehead.*** (FICT)

  Pattern 5 is found primarily in conversation and fiction, but it is much less common than Patterns 1 and 2.

10.13.2 Meaning variations of *to*-clause patterns

A Pattern 1: verb + *to*-clause

In this pattern, the implied subject of the *to*-clause is usually the same as the subject of the main clause. To see this, you can compare a *to*-clause with an equivalent *that*-clause:

> *I didn't claim* ***to be an authority.*** (CONV)
> <compare: *I didn't claim* ***that I was an authority.***>
> *Widmer said he hoped* ***to sell Brabham.*** (NEWS†)
> <compare: *Widmer said he hoped* ***that he could sell Brabham.***>

The verb *say* is unusual in this pattern, however. With *say*, the implied subject of the *to*-clause is the speaker, rather than the subject of the main clause:

Mr Bryant said ***to put it through to you.*** (FICT)
<compare: *Mr Bryant said* ***that I*** *<not he>* ***should put it through to you.***>

Jerry said ***to tell you how sorry he is.*** (FICT)
<compare: *Jerry said* ***that I*** *<not he>* ***should tell you how sorry he is.***>

B Pattern 2: verb + NP + *to*-clause

In Pattern 2, the roles of the NP and *to*-clause depend on the controlling verb. There are three variations.

Variation 1: This variation occurs with ditransitive verbs. In these sentences, the NP is both the indirect object of the main clause and the implied subject of the *to*-clause. The *to*-clause is the direct object of the main clause.

I told [grandma] ***to make me and Tim some more.*** (CONV†)

Here *grandma* is the indirect object of the main verb *told* as well as the implied subject of the *to*-clause (i.e. grandma should make me and Tim some more). Other examples of this type include:

I sprinkle a little around and tell [the demons] ***to leave.*** (NEWS)

He had persuaded [a woman] ***to come into the laundry room of the house.*** (FICT†)

Variation 2: This variation occurs with complex transitive verbs. In these sentences, the NP is the direct object of the main clause and also the implied subject of the *to*-clause. The *to*-clause is the object predicative of the main clause.

Rechem believes [the results] ***to be unscientific.*** (NEWS)
<compare: *Rechem believes* ***that the results are unscientific.***>

Here the noun phrase *the results* functions as the direct object of *believes* as well as the implied subject of the *to*-clause. However, the *to*-clause is needed as object predicative to complete the main clause. In fact, it would give the opposite meaning to keep the direct object without the object predicative (i.e. 'Rechem believes the results').

This pattern occurs with mental verbs (e.g. *assume, believe, consider, understand*), verbs of intention, desire, and decision (e.g. *choose, expect, like, need, prefer, want, wish*), and verbs of discovery (e.g. *find*):

In a sense he considered [the trip] ***to be a medical necessity.*** (FICT)

She said that she would like [her mother] ***to stay with her.*** (ACAD)

In nylon he found [the Voigt average] ***to be closest to experimental data.*** (ACAD)

Variation 3: With these verbs, the NP functions as the indirect object of the main clause, but it is not the implied subject of the *to*-clause. Rather, the subject of the main clause is the implied subject of the *to*-clause. The only common verb with this pattern is *promise*:

Ollie has promised [Billy] ***to take him fishing next Sunday.*** (FICT)
<compare: *Ollie has promised Billy* ***that he*** <Ollie> ***will take him*** <Billy> ***fishing.***>

You can see that here the implied subject of the *to*-clause is the subject of the main clause—*Ollie.*

C Pattern 2P: NP + passive verb + *to*-clause

We mentioned above that Pattern 2 can occur in the passive. Thus, the active voice form

NP_1 + verb + NP_2 + *to*-clause

has the corresponding passive structure:

NP_2 + passive verb + *to*-clause

Many verbs allow both the active and passive forms. For example:

active: *[We $_{NP1}$] assume [the variable x $_{NP2}$]* ***to be subjective.*** (ACAD†)
passive: *[An unemployed teenager sharing a house with the family $_{NP2}$] was assumed* ***to have a separate, and often lower, income.*** (NEWS†)

active: *[He $_{NP1}$] did not believe [this last remark $_{NP2}$]* ***to be true.*** (FICT)
passive: *[Tens of thousands of phantom azalea bushes and geraniums $_{NP2}$] are believed* ***to be alive and growing in the gardens of Northern Ireland.*** (NEWS)

However, no passive form is possible for some verbs that take Pattern 2, including *want*, *get*, *cause*, and *prefer*. In contrast, only the passive form is commonly used for some other verbs with *to*-clauses. These verbs include *be claimed*, *be said*, and *be thought*:

The costs are claimed ***to be about 2.5bn.*** (NEWS†)

In Ceausescu's Romania, even the ashtrays are thought ***to have ears.*** (NEWS†)

D Pattern 3: verb + *for* NP + *to*-clause

Most of the verbs that occur in Pattern 3 are prepositional verbs, such as *wait for*, *long for*, *call for*:

She waited for the little antelope ***to protest.*** (FICT†)

The society called for consumers ***to take conservation measures to save water.*** (NEWS†)

With these verbs, the preposition *for* is mandatory. However, a few verbs that express desire or preference can take an optional *for* + NP before the *to*-clause:

I would like Sir Alec ***to carry on.*** (FICT)

But I would like for you ***to do one thing*** *if you would.* (FICT)

Certainly, but I should hate you ***to forget that he has scored more runs in Test cricket than any other Englishman.*** (NEWS)

I'd hate for all that stuff ***to go bad.*** (CONV)

10.13.3 Verbs controlling post-predicate *to*-clauses

Table 10.3 lists the most common verbs with post-predicate *to*-clauses, showing their semantic categories. The written registers use verbs from many different categories. In contrast, conversation uses far fewer verbs commonly; most of those are verbs of desire (e.g. *want*, *like*), plus the verbs *seem* and *try*.

The combination *want* + *to*-clause is extremely common in conversation, where speakers often express their own desires or the desires of others:

I don't want ***to have a broken nose.*** (CONV)

Table 10.3 Verbs controlling infinitive clauses in post-predicate position, by semantic domain

common = over 20 occurrences per million words
occassional = attested in corpus but less than 20 occurrences per million words

pattern	verbs
for speech act and other communication verbs:	
Pattern 1: verb + *to*-clause	occasional: *ask, beg, claim, decline, offer, promise, prove, request, say*
Pattern 2: verb + NP + *to*-clause	common: *ask, prove* occasional: *advise, beg, beseech, call, challenge, command, convince, invite, promise, remind, report, request, show, teach, tell, urge, warn*
Pattern 2P: passive verb + *to*-clause	common: *be asked* occasional: *be claimed, be proved/proven, be said, be told*
Pattern 3: verb + *for* NP + *to*-clause	occasional: *ask, call, pray*
for cognition verbs:	
Pattern 1: verb + *to*-clause	common: *learn* occasional: *expect, forget, pretend, remember*
Pattern 2: verb + NP + *to*-clause	common: *expect, find* occasional: *assume, believe, consider, estimate, imagine, judge, know, presume, suppose, take, trust, understand*
Pattern 2P: passive verb + *to*-clause	common: *be expected* occasional: *be found, be thought*
for perception verbs:	
Pattern 2: verb + NP + *to*-clause	occasional: *see*
Pattern 2P: passive verb + *to*-clause	occasional: *be felt, be heard*
Pattern 5: verb + NP + bare infinitive clause	occasional: *feel, hear, see, watch*
for verbs of desire:	
Pattern 1: verb + *to*-clause	common: *hope, like, need, want, wish* occasional: *(cannot) bear, care, dare, desire, dread, hate, love, long, prefer, regret, (cannot) stand*
Pattern 2: verb + NP + *to*-clause	common: *want* occasional: *dare, dread, hate, like, love, need, prefer, wish*
Pattern 3: verb + *for* NP + *to*-clause	occasional: *(cannot) bear, care, dread, hate, like, love, long, prefer, (cannot) stand*
Pattern 4: verb + bare infinitive clause	occasional: *dare*
for verbs of intention or decision:	
Pattern 1: verb + *to*-clause	common: *agree, decide, intend, mean, prepare* occasional: *aim, consent, choose, hesitate, look, plan, refuse, resolve, threaten, volunteer, wait*

Table 10.3 continued

pattern	verbs
Pattern 2: verb + NP + *to*-clause	occasional: *choose, design, intend, mean, prepare, schedule*
Pattern 2P: passive verb + *to*-clause	common: *be prepared*
Pattern 3: verb + *for* NP + *to*-clause	occasional: *agree, consent, intend, look, mean, plan, wait*
for verbs of modality or causation:	
Pattern 1: verb + *to*-clause	common: *get* occasional: *afford, arrange, deserve, help, vote*
Pattern 2: verb + NP + *to*-clause	common: *allow, enable, require* occasional: *appoint, assist, authorize, cause, compel, counsel, defy, drive, elect, encourage, entitle, forbid, force, get, help, inspire, instruct, lead, leave, oblige, order, permit, persuade, prompt, raise, summon, tempt*
Pattern 2P: passive verb + *to*-clause	common: *be allowed, be enabled, be made, be required*
Pattern 3: verb + *for* NP + *to*-clause	occasional: *allow, arrange*
Pattern 4: verb + bare infinitive clause	occasional: *help, let, make to (with)*
Pattern 5: verb + NP + bare infinitive clause	occasional: *have, help, let, make*
for verbs of effort:	
Pattern 1: verb + *to*-clause	common: *attempt, fail, manage, try* occasional: *bother, endeavor, seek, strive, struggle, venture*
for verbs of aspect:	
Pattern 1: verb + *to*-clause	common: *begin, continue, start* occasional: *cease, commence, proceed*
for verbs of probability or simple fact:	
Pattern 1: verb + *to*-clause	common: *appear, seem, tend* occasional: *come, happen, turn out*

> *I wanted* ***to go and get something.*** (CONV)
>
> *He probably wants* ***to speak to you.*** (CONV)

Speakers also often question the desires of people they are speaking to:

> *Do you want* ***to go in the water?*** (CONV)

In fictional dialog, the verb *want* is also extremely common with these same functions:

> *I want* ***to jump into a tub of hot water first.*** (FICT)
>
> *Do you want* ***to come along?*** (FICT)

Verbs of effort are most common in fiction and news, where they typically report people's attempts or failures:

> *She had failed* ***to appear in court.*** (FICT)
>
> *Military officers have tried* ***to seize power six times.*** (NEWS†)

Aspectual verbs are also most common in fiction and news. They typically report the state of progression for an activity or process:

> *He continued* ***to stare at her.*** (FICT)
>
> *Even ambulance staff not suspended are beginning* ***to feel the pinch.*** (NEWS†)

The verbs *tend* and *appear*, expressing likelihood, occur most frequently in academic prose:

> *The cloud tended* ***to flatten into a disk.*** (ACAD)
>
> *Neither the sex nor the strain of donor rats appears* ***to be important.*** (ACAD)

These are **raising** structures, to be described in Grammar Bite D.

Finally, it is worth noting that verbs of modality/causation, even though they are not common overall, are common with *to*-clauses in academic prose:

> *An autumn-like pattern, or even a constant day length, will allow the body* ***to develop properly before the bird starts laying.*** (ACAD)

10.14 Subject predicative *to*-clauses

To-clauses acting as subject predicatives are relatively common in the written registers. They are similar to *that*-clauses as subject predicatives. They occur after a copular verb and identify or describe the subject of the main clause. The subject (marked in *[]*) is typically abstract:

> *[Their hope] is* ***to succeed as the consolidator of post-Thatcherism.*** (NEWS)
>
> *[Their function] is* ***to detect the cries of predatory bats.*** (ACAD)

There are four major uses of subject predicative *to*-clauses:

- framing points in a discussion:

  > *[A fourth challenge] is* ***to develop management arrangements within hospitals.*** (NEWS)
  >
  > *[The first step in any such calculation] is* ***to write the equation for the reaction.*** (ACAD)

- introducing an aim, objective, plan, goal, purpose, strategy, task, or idea:

  > *[Our major aim] is* ***to reach beginning students in geology.*** (ACAD†)
  >
  > *[The plan] is* ***to turn Ross into a mini-conglomerate.*** (NEWS†)
  >
  > *[The purpose of this chapter] is* ***to describe some of the available techniques.*** (ACAD†)

- introducing a methodology:

  > *[The best method for recovering eggs] is* ***to use the flushing method described in Section 2.2.*** (ACAD)
  >
  > *[An alternative technique for this stage of oocyte maturation] is* ***to collect freshly ovulated oocytes from the fallopian tubes.*** (ACAD)

- making a balanced sentence structure when a *to*-clause is also subject of the main clause:

[To be European in France] is ***to think globally about a French-led political Europe which will challenge the power of Japan and America.*** (NEWS)

10.15 Post-predicate *to*-clauses controlled by adjectives

Adjectives with post-predicate *to*-clauses include:
very common: *(un)likely*
moderately common: *(un)able, determined, difficult, due, easy, free, glad, hard, ready, used, (un)willing*
selected other adjectives:
certainty: *certain, sure*
ability or willingness: *anxious, careful, eager, fit, hesitant, inclined, obliged, prepared, quick, ready, reluctant, (all) set, slow*
emotion or stance: *afraid, amazed, angry, annoyed, ashamed, astonished, careful, concerned, curious, delighted, disappointed, disgusted, embarrassed, furious, grateful, happy, impatient, nervous, pleased, proud, sorry, surprised, worried*
ease or difficulty: *awkward, (un)pleasant, (im)possible, tough*
evaluation: *bad, brave, careless, crazy, expensive, good, lucky, mad, nice, right, silly, smart, (un)wise, wrong*

The adjectives that control *to*-clauses fall into five semantic categories.

A Degree of certainty

These adjectives express the likelihood or certainty of the idea in the *to*-clause:

I'm certain ***to regret it.*** (FICT)

He's liable ***to be a bit amorous.*** (CONV)

He was sure ***to see the old woman hopping about.*** (FICT†)

Likely and *unlikely* are the most common adjectives in this group:

Mr. Adams said there were unlikely ***to be enough volunteers.*** (NEWS†)

They are likely ***to have been made by different processes.*** (ACAD†)

B Ability or willingness

These adjectives express the ability, preparedness, or commitment to the action specified in the *to*-clause:

He doesn't seem willing ***to move out.*** (CONV)

I'm ready ***to take over in Dave's place.*** (FICT†)

The embryos are less inclined ***to skid about.*** (ACAD†)

C Emotion or stance

These adjectives express a feeling or emotional reaction to the idea in the *to*-clause. Many different stance adjectives occur with *to*-clauses:

Not everybody's going to be glad ***to have him around.*** (FICT†)

I'm sorry ***to hear about you.*** (CONV)

Gabby was afraid ***to say anything more.*** (FICT)

D Ease or difficulty

These adjectives give the speaker's assessment of how difficult or easy a task is. The task is described in the *to*-clause. *Easy*, *difficult*, and *hard* are the most common adjectives in this group:

They're easy ***to steal.*** (CONV)

Jobs were hard ***to come by.*** (FICT†)

PCBs are biologically difficult ***to degrade.*** (ACAD†)

E Evaluation

These adjectives give an evaluation of an action or situation that is described in the *to*-clause. No adjectives in this group are especially common with *to*-clauses:

This one is nice ***to smell.*** (CONV†)

Katherine was smart ***to have her wits about her.*** (FICT†)

This food wouldn't be bad ***to wake up to.*** (FICT†)

The evaluation adjectives are slightly different from stance adjectives. Stance adjectives express the feelings of the person identified as the subject of the sentence: e.g. *glad*, *afraid*, *sorry*. Evaluation adjectives provide an external evaluation of the entire proposition. For evaluation adjectives, a paraphrase can often be given with a subject *to*-clause. For example:

To smell this one *is nice.*

Review

Major points in **GRAMMAR BITE D**: Post-predicate infinitive clauses

- By far the most common position for *to*-clauses is post-predicate.
- There are five major patterns for *to*-clauses controlled by a verb in post-predicate position.
    - The patterns vary in the way noun phrases come between the verb and *to*-clause, and in the choice of *to* or a bare infinitive.
    - Some factors to consider in the grammatical patterns with *to*-clauses are: passive alternatives, the implied subject of the *to*-clause, the relationship between the object of the main clause and the *to*-clause, and prepositional verbs.
    - The semantic category of a verb often influences the grammatical patterns that are possible for that verb.
- The verbs that are common with *to*-clauses vary across registers and cover many semantic categories.
    - Conversation has the least variation. Here *want* + *to*-clause is extremely common.
    - The other registers have more variation, including more verbs of effort (e.g. *try*), of aspect (e.g. *begin*, *continue*), of probability (e.g. *tend*), and of causation (e.g. *allow*).
- Subject predicative *to*-clauses have four major functions: introducing points, introducing objectives or plans, introducing methodologies, and making a balanced structure when a *to*-clause is also the subject of the main clause.
- *Likely/unlikely* is the only adjective that commonly controls a *to*-clause.

- Many other adjectives occur, conveying certainty, ability, stance, ease/difficulty, or evaluation.

GRAMMAR BITE

E More on infinitive clauses

10.16 Raising

10.16.1 Subject-to-subject raising with *to*-clauses controlled by verbs

In Grammar Bite D, we noted that the implied subject of most post-predicate *to*-clauses is the same as the subject of the main clause. However, in some cases, the entire *to*-clause is the implied subject of the main clause. For example:

1 *The prize pupil, however, turned out* ***to have another side to his character***. (NEWS)

The equivalent *that*-clause construction is an extraposed construction:

1a *It turned out* ***that the prize pupil had another side to his character***.

You can see here that the grammatical subject of the main clause in **1** (*the prize pupil*) is the implied subject of the *to*-clause (the prize pupil is the one who had another side to his character). This is similar to most *to*-clauses. However, the logical subject of the main clause is the entire *to*-clause. That is, the intended meaning is not that 'the prize pupil turned out'; rather, the entire idea that 'the prize pupil had another side to his character' is the logical subject of the main clause.

This kind of structure is called subject-to-subject raising. The subject of the dependent *to*-clause is 'raised' to become the subject of the main clause. Subject-to-subject raising occurs with *to*-complement clauses controlled by verbs of probability and simple fact (e.g. *turn out*, *seem*, *tend*, *appear*). However, these structures occur more commonly with *to*-clauses controlled by adjectives, as described in the next section.

10.16.2 Raising with *to*-clauses controlled by adjectives

On the surface, *to*-clauses controlled by adjectives all appear the same. However, the implied subject of the *to*-clause and its relationship to the subject of the main clause can vary.

In the simplest case, the implied subject of the *to*-clause is the same as the subject of the main clause. For example:

Millar was obstinately determined ***to change the content of education***. (NEWS)

However, there are two major groups of adjectives that differ from this simple case: certainty adjectives and adjectives of ease or difficulty.

A Certainty adjectives controlling subject-to-subject raising

Like the probability verbs in 10.16.1, certainty adjectives (such as *likely*, *unlikely*, *sure*, *certain*) occur with subject-to-subject raising. For example:

1 *[The government] is unlikely* ***to meet the full cost.*** (NEWS)

Here the grammatical subject of the main clause (*the government*) is the implied subject of the *to*-clause. However, the logical subject of the main clause is the entire *to*-clause. This meaning relationship becomes explicit if we paraphrase the structure with an equivalent *that*-clause. Actually, there are two possible paraphrases, one in subject position and the other extraposed:

1a ***That the government will meet the full cost*** *is unlikely.*

1b *It is unlikely* ***that the government will meet the full cost.***

With both paraphrases, we see that the full complement clause functions as the logical subject of the main clause.

B Adjectives of ease or difficulty controlling object-to-subject raising

Adjectives of ease or difficulty (e.g. *difficult*, *easy*, *hard*, *(im)possible*) control a different type of raising. Consider this sentence:

> *Without those powers, [computer hacking] would be almost impossible* ***to prove.*** (NEWS†)

Here the grammatical subject of the main clause is the implied object of the *to*-clause. In this example, *computer hacking* (subject of the main clause) is the understood object of *prove* (the infinitive). In addition, the logical subject of the main clause is the *to*-clause. The sentence does not mean 'computer hacking would be almost impossible'. Rather, it means:

> ***To prove computer hacking*** *would be almost impossible.*

You can see that the subject in this restatement consists of the *to*-clause and its implied object *to prove computer hacking.*

This kind of structure is called object-to-subject raising. The object of the dependent *to*-clause is 'raised' to become the subject of the main clause.

The implied subject of the *to*-clause with these raising structures is generic. For instance, the above example means that it is impossible for *anyone* or *people generally* to prove computer hacking.

10.17 Extraposed *to*-clauses

There are few verbs that control extraposed *to*-clauses. The most common is the copula *be* combined with a subject predicative noun phrase or prepositional phrase:

> *It is still an adventure* ***to travel down the canyon of the Colorado river in a small boat.*** (ACAD)
> <compare: ***To travel down the canyon of the Colorado river in a small boat*** *is still an adventure.*>

It is for others ***to offer moral guidance to the newly prosperous Pharisees.*** (NEWS)

<compare: ***To offer moral guidance to the newly prosperous Pharisees*** *is for others.*>

In general, though, extraposed *to*-clauses controlled by verbs are rare.

In contrast, there are many adjectives that can control extraposed *to*-clauses; these forms are found especially in news and academic prose.

Adjectives taking extraposed *to*-clauses come from three major semantic domains: necessity and importance adjectives, ease and difficulty adjectives, and evaluation adjectives. The adjectives in all three classes are used to mark a stance towards the proposition in the *to*-clause.

The most common necessity or importance adjectives controlling extraposed *to*-clauses are *essential, important, interesting, necessary, vital*:

If you want peace it is important ***to stay cool.*** (NEWS)

I'm sure it's not necessary ***to ask you not to pass any information on to the Communists.*** (NEWS)

If the development of the unit spans a long period it will be essential ***to make use of the new developments of this kind.*** (ACAD)

Adjectives marking ease or difficulty can control extraposed *to*-clauses as well as *to*-clauses in post-predicate position (with object-to-subject raising; see 10.16.2). The most common ease or difficulty adjectives are *(im)possible, difficult, easy, easier, hard,* and *tough*:

Moreover, it is notoriously difficult ***to predict the costs of major infrastructural projects.*** (NEWS†)

It is easy ***to see that the model ignores some fundamentally important variables.*** (ACAD†)

It may be tough ***to attract people.*** (NEWS†)

It is possible ***to love, and to aid thy neighbor, without state intervention.*** (NEWS)

Evaluation adjectives come from two major subclasses: adjectives expressing general goodness or badness, and adjectives marking some specific evaluation or assessment. The border between these two semantic domains is not always clear-cut. Adjectives marking goodness or badness indicate a generalized stance towards the proposition in the extraposed *to*-clause. These adjectives include: *bad, best, better, good, nice, wonderful, worse.* For example:

It's good ***to see them in the bath.*** (CONV†)

It was bad ***to be prodigal.*** (FICT†)

Several other adjectives express more specific evaluations, including: *(in)appropriate, awkward, convenient, desirable, improper, (un)reasonable, safe, smart, stupid, surprising, useful, useless, wise, wrong.* For example:

It was awkward ***to move elbows and clap in such a crowd of people.*** (FICT)

For the purposes of this paper it is convenient ***to consider four major categories of uncertainty.*** (ACAD†)

It's not safe ***to run down there.*** (FICT)

However, for our purposes it is useful ***to emphasize three roles.*** (ACAD)

10.17.1 Extraposed v. subject position *to*-clauses

In many cases, a subject *to*-clause can be rephrased as an extraposed clause, and vice versa. In general, extraposition is the normal choice, with subject *to*-clauses being reserved for special functions. Three major factors influence this choice: register, information flow, and grammatical complexity.

A Register

Subject *to*-clauses are rare in all registers. When they do occur, they are used primarily in academic prose. Extraposed *to*-clauses are much more common, although they are also primarily used in expository writing.

B Information flow

In almost all cases, subject *to*-clauses are used for given information, creating cohesion with the previous discourse.

> *The law also allowed the seizure of all assets, not simply those related to a specific offence. 'The US law in this respect seems greatly excessive', he said. '**To take away the profits of crime** is one thing; **to seize the assets that have no connection with crime** is another.'* (NEWS†)

In this example, the ideas in the subject *to*-clauses (taking away the profits of crime and seizing the assets that have no connection with crime) directly follow from the preceding explanation of the law.

In addition, the above example shows how subject *to*-clauses are sometimes used in parallel to present a balance of connected ideas. This parallel structure can create a strong impact:

> *He advanced into the room and sat in the armchair. I felt incensed, yet helpless. **To order him to leave** would be overdramatic yet perhaps I should. **To pull the bell-rope and ask for help** would be even more so.* (FICT)

C Grammatical complexity of the rest of the clause

In most cases when a subject *to*-clause is used, the rest of the clause is a complex construction, as in:

> **1** ***To accept a US mediation plan** means [that the Israeli-Palestinian meeting is now likely in the New Year].* (NEWS)

The most common construction of this type is an equation of two *to*-clauses:

> **2** ***To expect Europe to become a single warm cultural bath** is simply [to mistake the nature of the European identity].* (NEWS†)
>
> **3** ***To argue otherwise** is [to betray millions of people].* (NEWS)

Extraposed constructions are usually not a practical alternative with such complex predicates, because they would be very difficult to follow. (A similar point was about subject *that*-clauses in 10.8.1.) For example, compare the following extraposed examples to **1** and **2** above:

> **1a** *It means that the Israeli-Palestinian meeting is now likely in the New Year to accept a US mediation plan.*

2a *It is simply to mistake the nature of the European identity to expect Europe to become a single warm cultural bath.*

10.18 Raising v. extraposition

10.18.1 Subject-to-subject raising v. extraposed *that*-clauses

Complement clauses controlled by verbs of probability and simple fact (e.g. *seem, appear*), passive voice mental verbs (e.g. *be found, be assumed*), and adjectives of certainty (e.g. *likely, unlikely, certain, sure*) have two alternative forms: a *to*-clause with subject-to-subject raising or an extraposed *that*-clause. For example:

1 *The rate for the North American continent has been estimated* ***to be about 0.3 mm/year.*** (ACAD)

1a *It is has been estimated* ***that the rate for the North American continent is about 0.03 mm/year.***

In all four registers, the *to*-clause structure with subject-to-subject raising (**1**) is much more common. One reason for the choice of the raised *to*-clauses concerns information flow. In most constructions with subject-to-subject raising, the main clause subject (marked in *[]*) is given information that refers directly back to the topic of the previous discourse:

Andy really surprises me. <...> [Andy] seems ***to know everything.*** (CONV)

The first thing he thought of when he woke up was Marge. <...> [She] wasn't likely ***to take a taxi to Naples.*** (FICT)

The raised construction allows the sentence to follow the typical information pattern of English: given information comes before new, and the given information is placed in subject position (see 12.1.1).

Extraposed *that*-clauses are used when it is important to mark modality or tense in the complement clause (since these cannot be marked with a *to*-clause). For example:

It is likely ***that North Korea will channel investment to areas that can be contained.*** (NEWS)

It is perhaps more likely ***that they were associated with locomotion from the beginning.*** (ACAD†)

In addition, extraposed constructions are preferred when a prepositional phrase occurs between the verb and the *that*-clause:

2 *It seemed [to him]* ***that his home life was disintegrating all at once.*** (FICT)

3 *It appears [from initial observations]* ***that the storage of viable sperm is limited to a period of two or three months.*** (ACAD†)

The alternative *to*-clause constructions with raising sound more awkward, with the prepositional phrase disrupting the association between the verb and the *to*-clause:

2a *His home life seemed to him to be disintegrating all at once.*

10.18.2 Object-to-subject raising v. extraposed *to*-clauses controlled by adjectives

Adjectives of ease or difficulty are used with both post-predicate *to*-clauses and with extraposed *to*-clauses:

1 *They're hard **to get**.* (CONV†)
1a *It is hard **to get them**.*

Easy, *hard*, *difficult*, and *(im)possible* are the most common adjectives occurring in these constructions. Object-to-subject raising (**1**) and extraposition (**1a**) occur in all registers, with the raised structures being only slightly more common.

The strongest factor influencing this choice is again information flow. In almost all structures with object-to-subject raising, the implied object of the *to*-clause (which is the grammatical subject of the main clause) presents given information. It provides a link with the immediately preceding discourse:

> *A: And then I fell out of the swing.*
> *B: [That] wasn't easy **to do**.* (CONV)
>
> *The second approach <...> necessitates the building of special-purpose assembly and iterative routines. <...> [This] is difficult **to achieve on current commercial turnkey systems**.* (ACAD)

In contrast, extraposed structures are used when the object of the *to*-clause presents new information. The extraposed *to*-clauses also usually have long, complex objects. These structures follow the end-weight principle: longer, more complex structures tend to be placed later in a clause (see 12.1.4):

> *It is difficult **to imagine a direct advantage conferred by shell banding for survival in waveswept conditions**.* (ACAD†)
>
> *It is easy **to see (Figure 4–11) that for a folded sequence of layers, the oldest beds would be found at depth in the core (or central axis) of the anticline and the youngest rocks**.* (ACAD†)

10.19 *To*-clause types across registers

The distribution of *to*-clause types reflects their different discourse functions (Table 10.4). Over 60 per cent of all *to*-clauses occur in post-predicate position controlled by a verb. These *to*-clauses typically are used to report the activities, aspirations, thoughts, and emotions of human participants:

> *I wanted **to do it**.* (CONV)
>
> *Dr. Gruner asked Uncle Sammler **to read a few items from the Market Letter**.* (FICT)
>
> *Mrs. Carol Bentley tried **to ignore the fuss**.* (NEWS†)
>
> *Carpenter found highly nonlinear cases **to be chaotic**.* (ACAD†)

Because conversation, fiction, and news focus on such concerns, post-predicate *to*-clauses controlled by verbs are most common in those registers.

To-clauses controlled by adjectives more often describe a state, often presenting a stance toward the idea in the *to*-clause. These structures are one of the main devices for expressing stance in the written expository registers.

Table 10.4 Types of *to*-clause complements across registers

	CONV	FICT	NEWS	ACAD
post-predicate *to*-clause complementing a verb	common	very common	very common	common
post-predicate *to*-clause complementing an adjective	rare	moderately common	common	moderately common
extraposed *to*-clause complementing a verb	rare	rare	relatively rare	rare
extraposed *to*-clause complementing an adjective	rare	moderately common	moderately common	common
subject *to*-clause	rare	rare	rare	rare
subject-predicative *to*-clause	rare	moderately common	moderately common	moderately common

Post-predicate *to*-clauses controlled by adjectives often express a person's stance towards his or her own activities. This pattern is relatively common in news:

> *Sir Anthony is willing* ***to provide a focal point for discussion.*** (NEWS†)
>
> *Advertisers said they were delighted* ***to see many of their proposals reflected in the Government's approach.*** (NEWS)

In contrast, extraposed *to*-clauses following an adjective most often present a stance that is not directly attributed to anyone. This pattern is most common in academic prose:

> *It is important* ***to specify the states after the formulae in the equation.*** (ACAD)
>
> *It is difficult* ***to maintain a consistent level of surgical anesthesia with ether.*** (ACAD†)

Review

Major points in Grammar Bite E: More on infinitive clauses

- Raising describes the relationship between the main clause subject and the *to*-clause.
  - *To*-clauses controlled by verbs can have subject-to-subject raising.
  - *To*-clauses controlled by adjectives can have subject-to-subject or object-to-subject raising.
- Extraposed *to*-clauses are most often controlled by an adjective.
  - Extraposed clauses are more common than subject position clauses.
  - The choice of subject position rather than extraposed is related to register, cohesion and information structure, the complexity of the main clause predicate, and individual style.
- *To*-clauses with raising are alternatives to some extraposed constructions.
  - With certain verbs and adjectives, *to*-clauses with raising are more common than extraposed *that*-clauses. This choice is usually due to information structure.

  - Adjectives of ease or difficulty are slightly more common with raised *to*-clauses than extraposed *to*-clauses. Again, information structure and cohesion are important to the choice.
- The different types of *to*-clauses have different frequencies across the registers, which reflect their functions.
  - Post-predicate *to*-clauses are most common in conversation, fiction, and news. They usually report activities, desires, and thoughts of humans.
  - *To*-clauses controlled by adjectives are most common in news and academic prose. They usually describe a state or an attitude.

GRAMMAR BITE

F *Ing*-clauses, ellipsis/substitution, and review

10.20 Overview of *ing*-clauses

Like *that*-complement clauses and *to*-complement clauses, *ing*-complement clauses serve a wide range of functions. They are used most often with verbs like *begin*, *start*, and *stop* to convey aspect, but they are also used to report speech acts, cognitive states, perceptions, emotions, and other actions. Overall, *ing*-clauses are more common in the written registers than in conversation.

Ing-clauses are most common in post-predicative position, where they can be controlled by verbs and adjectives:

> *Gizmo keeps* ***trying to persuade me to go with her.*** (CONV)
>
> *I could see she was confident of* ***handling any awkward situation that might arise.*** (FICT†)

In many cases the adjectives are followed by prepositions, like *confident of* in the above example.

Ing-clauses can also occur in subject position:

> ***Reflecting on this and related matters*** *took him past his stop and almost into Dinedor itself.* (FICT)

And they can occur as subject predicatives:

> *Sometimes being loud is* ***being obnoxious.*** (CONV)

10.21 Post-predicate *ing*-clauses

10.21.1 Grammatical patterns for *ing*-clauses controlled by verbs

There are three major grammatical patterns for *ing*-complement clauses in post-predicate position:

- **Pattern 1: verb + *ing*-clause** (e.g. *begin, remember*)
  1 *He began* ***paging through old newspapers.*** (FICT†)
  2 *I remember* ***reading this book.*** (CONV)

  In Pattern 1, the implied subject of the *ing*-clause is the subject of the main clause. Thus, in **1**, *he* was *paging through old newspapers*, and in **2**, *I* was *reading this book*. The exception to this meaning relationship is with verbs that express a required action, such as *need*:

  Oh you know that front room really needs ***painting.*** (CONV)

  Here the subject of the main clause (*that front room*) is the implied object of the *ing*-clause, while the implied subject of the *ing*-clause is a general noun (such as *someone*); that is, the intended meaning is that 'someone needs to paint that front room'.

- **Pattern 2: verb + NP + *ing*-clause** (e.g. *see, find*)
  3 *When you see [a geek]* ***walking down the street,*** *give it a good throw.* (CONV)
  4 *Don't be surprised to find [me]* ***sitting on the tee in the lotus position.*** (NEWS)

  In this pattern, the noun phrase after the verb (marked in *[]* in **3** and **4**) functions as the logical subject of the *ing*-clause. For example, in **3**, *a geek* is walking down the street. The noun phrase + *ing*-clause can be considered the object of the main clause verb.

- **Pattern 2a: verb + possessive determiner + *ing*-clause**

  Some Pattern 2 verbs allow a possessive determiner + *ing*-clause. Thus compare:

  Did you mind [me] ***saying it,*** *Stephen?* (FICT) <Pattern 2>

  And maybe you won't mind [my] ***saying that you're getting a little old for studying.*** (FICT) <Pattern 2a with possessive determiner>

  When the possessive alternative is used, it focuses attention on the action described in the *ing*-clause. In contrast, the regular NP form puts more emphasis on the person doing the action:

  I appreciate [your] ***being here.*** (FICT)

  We couldn't picture [you] ***walking so far.*** (FICT)

  Prescriptive tradition favors the possessive form. However, in practice over 90 per cent of Pattern 2 *ing*-clauses take the regular NP form. Further, many verbs do not allow the possessive alternative, such as *keep, have, leave, find, catch.*

- **Pattern 3: prepositional verb + *ing*-clause**

  Many *ing*-clauses occur with **prepositional verbs**:

  *We were thinking of **bringing our video camera**.* (CONV)

  *She complained of **feeling feverish** and went early to bed.* (FICT)

  *It also assists in **helping to buffer the indoor environment against sudden fluctuations outside**.* (NEWS)

  Here the *ing*-clause acts as object of the prepositional verb.

10.21.2 Verbs controlling *ing*-clauses

The most common verbs controlling *ing*-clauses, broken down by the four registers, are:

CONV: *keep, start, go, stop, see* NP, *remember, think (about/of), get* NP, *sit*
FICT: *keep, see* NP, *go, start, stop, begin, hear* NP, *come, spend, remember, think (about/of), get* NP, *sit, feel* NP, *stand/stood*
NEWS: *start, keep, begin, see* NP, *go, spend, come, stop, be accused of*
ACAD: *be used for, involve, be achieved by/with*

Overall, the most common verb + *ing*-clause construction is with *keep* in conversation. *Start* + *ing*-clause is also very common in conversation. In academic prose, the combination *be used for* + *ing*-clause is surprisingly common.

Verbs of aspect or manner are the most common verbs controlling *ing*-clauses, especially in conversation and fiction. The verb *keep* shows that the action in the *ing*-clause is continuous or repeated.

*She keeps **smelling the washing powder**.* (CONV)

*His brake lights keep **flashing on**.* (CONV†)

A more informal near-synonym is *go on*:

*The guard went on **sleeping**.* (FICT†)

The verbs *start* and *stop* show the beginning or ending of an activity. They are frequent in both conversation and fiction. The more formal-sounding *begin* is common only in fiction:

*You can start **doing what you want then**.* (CONV)

*A dog began **barking**.* (FICT)

*Ralph had stopped **smiling**.* (FICT†)

The verbs *go, come, sit*, and *stand* are commonly used with *ing*-clauses to describe the manner in which an action was done. They are most common in fiction. *Go* and *come* indicate the direction of movement (towards or away from a place):

*I went **looking for it**.* (CONV)

*One of the children came **running after him**.* (FICT)

Sit and *stand* denote unmoving states that are further described in the *ing*-clause:

*All morning they sat **waiting in the sun**.* (FICT†)

*The two police guards stood **peering in the direct of the commotion**.* (FICT†)

The verbs *see* and *hear* are commonly used to describe the perception of an activity:

I suddenly saw water ***rushing down the wall.*** (CONV)

They could hear the waves ***breaking on the rocks.*** (FICT)

With all the above verbs, the following *ing*-clause has a meaning of 'activity in progress', related to the use of the *ing*-form with progressive aspect (see 6.3, 6.5). For example, in the sentence *the children came running*, the verb *running* expresses the meaning of ongoing activity, similar to the main clause progressive form *the children were running*.

News and academic prose have more specialized sets of verbs that commonly control *ing*-clauses. Verbs that describe processes and states (*be used for*, *involve*) and effort (*be achieved by/with*) are most common:

Some method of refrigeration is used for ***cooling the milk in all bulk tanks.*** (ACAD)

This is achieved by ***saving information at the beginning of the subroutine.*** (ACAD†)

News is notable for using *ing*-clauses with verbs having to do with criminal offenses and punishments, such as *accused of* and *charged with*:

George Helaine, a Belgian, is accused of ***organizing the shipment from Morocco.*** (NEWS†)

All are charged with ***violating official secrets laws.*** (NEWS†)

Many other kinds of verbs occur with moderate frequencies controlling *ing*-clauses. For example, communication and speech act verbs give indirect reports of statements:

They talk about ***building more.*** (CONV)

She had never mentioned ***having a religion.*** (FICT)

Cognition verbs tell of a mental state or process, which is specified by the *ing*-clause:

I don't even remember ***telling you that.*** (CONV)

I can't conceive of somebody ***getting killed and injuring another person because of being too damn stupid to drive carefully.*** (FICT†) <note: *damn* is a taboo word and may be offensive to some people>

Stance verbs tell the speaker/writer's feelings or attitudes towards the idea in the *ing*-clause:

I hate ***doing that.*** (CONV)

He immediately regretted ***thinking any such thought.*** (FICT)

Finally, a few verbs show facilitation or effort:

Well he couldn't help ***being a miserable sod.*** (CONV) <note: *sod* is a taboo word and may be offensive to some people>

You ought to try ***taking some of them.*** (CONV)

10.21.3 Adjectives controlling *ing*-clauses

Most adjectives that control *ing*-clauses express a personal feeling or attitude, or some evaluation of the idea in the *ing*-clause:

It is true that young rabbits are great migrants and capable of ***journeying for miles.*** (FICT)

I'm sorry about ***being in a mood Saturday.*** (CONV)

> *These people were not afraid of* ***signing papers.*** (FICT†)
>
> *There is no reason why women should not be good at* ***selling cars.*** (NEWS)
>
> *Mineralogy and texture are also useful in* ***subdividing the sedimentary rocks.*** (ACAD)

In most cases, as in these examples, the controlling adjective is followed by a preposition.

10.22 Ellipsis and substitution in complement clauses

10.22.1 Ellipsis in post-predicate *to*- and *wh*-clauses

Various forms of ellipsis or substitution can be used with post-predicate complement clauses when the content is clear from the preceding discourse. Ellipsis can occur with *to*-clauses and *wh*-clauses, where the complement clause is omitted but the complementizer (*to* or a *wh*-word) is retained:

> *A: Are we having that tonight too?*
> *B: If you want* ***to.*** (CONV)
> <meaning: *If you want* ***to have that tonight.***>
>
> *He feel asleep up there – I don't know* ***how.*** (CONV)
> <meaning: *I don't know* ***how he fell asleep up there.***>

Ellipsis with complement clauses is most common in conversation. (See 13.5 for further discussion of ellipsis in conversation.) However, even though most verbs can occur with ellipsis, very few do so frequently. Each type of complement clause has a single verb that is by far most common with this type of ellipsis:

- *want + to*: *You can go if you* ***want to.*** (CONV)
- *know + wh*-word: *I couldn't fall asleep till four last night – I don't* ***know why.*** (CONV)

In addition, *try* and *like* are moderately common with an ellipted *to*-clause. *Like + to* usually follows the modal verb *would*:

> *A: Keep him in line.*
> *B: I'll* ***try to.*** (CONV)
>
> *A: Did you use my toothbrush again?*
> *B: Well, I* ***would like to.*** (CONV)

With *wh*-clause ellipsis, *wonder* and *remember* also occur:

> *A: I took a shower early this morning and I feel like I didn't shower.*
> *B: I* ***wonder why.*** (CONV)

With *that*-clauses, ellipsis involves the omission of the entire complement clause, including the complementizer *that*. Such ellipsis is usually found with extremely common verbs like *think*, *know*, and *guess* (in American English):

> *A: Hey, look!*
> *B: Yeah, but there's seven teams in front of them dad.*
> *A: Yeah,* ***I know,*** *but mm I don't mind that.* (CONV)

10.22.2 Substitution in post-predicate *that*-clauses

With post-predicate *that*-clauses, substitution can also occur. The substitute form *so* or *not* takes the place of the entire clause:

> A: *Oh, you tasted it before, didn't you?*
> B: *I don't think* ***so.*** (CONV)
> <meaning: *I don't think* ***that I tasted it before.***>
>
> A: *Is the dog going to jump?*
> B: *I hope* ***not.*** (CONV)
> <meaning: *I hope* ***that the dog is not going to jump.***>

Relatively few verbs permit substitution for a *that*-clause. Substitution is most common in conversation, and it occurs by far most often with *think* + *so*. Usually the subject is a first-person pronoun, and the speaker expresses a lack of certainty about the previous idea:

> A: *Have they found him?*
> B: *I don't know – I don't* ***think so.*** (CONV)
>
> *I really think your dad is going to be her executor, I'm not sure, but I really* ***think so.*** (CONV)

Hope, *suppose*, and *guess* are also used with substitution to express stance. *Suppose so* is relatively common in British English conversation, while *guess so* is more common in American English:

> A: *You have to write your name down every time.*
> B: *Yeah, I* ***suppose so.*** (BrE CONV)
>
> A: *The medicine is slowing down the disease.*
> B: *Yeah, I* ***guess so.*** (AmE CONV)

Say + *so* is used for indirect speech, especially in fiction:

> *But he always found fault with their effort, and he* ***said so*** *with much threatening.* (FICT)

Not is much less common for *that*-clause substitution than *so*. Only *hope* and *guess* occur frequently:

> A: *We're not having too early a lunch, are we?*
> B: *I* ***hope not.*** (CONV)
>
> A: *You don't think the Cardinals are doing very well at all, are they?*
> B: *Not that bad, I* ***guess not.*** (AmE CONV)

10.23 Choice of complement clause type

This chapter has discussed four types of complement clauses: *that*-clauses, *wh*-clauses, *to*-clauses, and *ing*-clauses. In many ways, the types are interchangeable: each type can complement verbs and adjectives, and each type occurs in several positions. It is natural to ask, then, how do speakers choose between them?

There are many factors that influence this choice. First, there are lexical factors, since many verbs control specific types of complement clause. Nearly any transitive verb can take a *wh*-clause, but the other clause types are more restrictive. For example, *guess* and *conclude* can control only *that*-clauses; *prepare* and *fail* can control only *to*-clauses; *keep (on)* and *finish* can control only *ing*-clauses. In addition, many other combinations occur. For example, *hope* can control *that*-clauses and *to*-clauses but not *ing*-clauses; *remember* and *believe* can control all four clause types.

There are also semantic factors. For example, some verbs have a more hypothetical meaning with a *to*-clause than an *ing*-clause. For example:

1 *Remember* ***to wash your hands,*** *I'll be listening.* (CONV)
2 *I remember* ***going late at night.*** (CONV)

In **1**, *remember* + *to*-clause is used to refer to a unfulfilled (but expected) future action. In **2**, *remember* + *ing*-clause is used for an event that has already occurred.

In fact, there are many subtleties concerning the meaning and structural differences among the complement clause types. Here we present only a few major points:

A Register factors

- Overall, *that*-clauses and *to*-clauses are more than twice as common as *wh*-clauses and *ing*-clauses.
- Finite complement clauses—i.e. *that*-clauses and *wh*-clauses—are most common in conversation, followed by fiction. They are relatively rare in academic prose.
- Non-finite complement clauses—i.e. *to*-clauses and *ing*-clauses—are most common in fiction, followed by news and academic prose. They are relatively rare in conversation.

B Structural factors

- The majority of *that*-clauses and *wh*-clauses occur in post-predicate position after verbs. In contrast, a much higher proportion of *to*-clauses and *ing*-clauses follow adjectives. This trend is especially strong in academic prose.
- Extraposed constructions and subject predicative constructions are more common with *to*-clauses than with *that*-clauses. For *to*-clauses, extraposed constructions are more common with adjectives than with verbs. Again, this trend is strongest in academic prose.

C Semantic factors

- *That*-clauses combine with relatively few verbs from only three semantic groups. However, individual verbs (especially *think* and *say*) are extremely common controlling *that*-clauses. In contrast, *to*-clauses and *ing*-clauses combine with a large number of different verbs expressing many different types of meaning.

The following two text samples illustrate the different uses of *that*- and *to*-clauses in conversation and academic prose. (*That*-clauses are in bold and *to*-clauses are marked in *[]*; some *to*-clauses are embedded within *that*-clauses.)

Text sample 1: CONVERSATION

> A: *I said how's your revision going, cos I knew* ***she was doing revision****, she went ccccckkk I try a maths paper and I can't do that, and I* <. . .> *a chemistry paper and I can't do that and I really* <growl>*. I said I think* ***you need a break*** <laugh> *I think* ***you need [to go and do something else for a little while]*** *– I said cos if you keep looking over thinking* ***you can't do it****, have a break and go back to it afterwards. You just get really despondent*
>
> B: *Yeah.*
>
> A: *and fed up and think* ***you can't do it*** *and you go blank and then you can't touch anything you – and you know* ***it's hard****.* (CONV)

Text sample 2: ACADEMIC PROSE

> *The above means are not able [to represent an office procedure or an activity in a way which would allow automation of the co-ordination required for execution]. There are no methods for representing the interworking of the different description techniques and it should be noted* ***that it may be necessary [to model the same activity more than once redundantly and in parallel by different means]****. In particular, it must be possible [to model the interworking of roles (to be represented by organigrams or job profiles), flow charts and forms].* (ACAD)

The conversation sample illustrates the dense use of *that*-clauses in post-predicate position. Most of the *that*-clauses are controlled by the verb *think*. The subject of *think* is typically *I* or *you*, so that the construction directly represents the thoughts of the speaker or hearer.

In contrast, the academic prose sample illustrates the different complement clauses typical of informational written prose. There are more *to*-clauses than *that*-clauses. The clauses are often controlled by adjectival predicates (e.g. *able*, *necessary*) with non-animate subjects (e.g. *the above means*). The controlling verbs and adjectives express many meanings (ability, communication, necessity, possibility). Finally, extraposed clauses are relatively common (*it should be noted* . . . and *it must be possible* . . .).

Review

Major points in GRAMMAR BITE F: *Ing*-clauses, ellipsis/substitution, and review

- ➤ The most common type of *ing*-clause is a post-predicate clause following a verb.
  - ➤ There are two major grammatical patterns, with and without a NP between the verb and the *ing*-clause.
  - ➤ The most common verbs controlling *ing*-clauses are verbs of manner or aspect (e.g. *begin*, *start*, *stop*).
  - ➤ Many adjectives that control *ing*-clauses express a feeling or evaluation (e.g. *sorry*, *afraid*, *capable)*.
  - ➤ Many of these adjectives are followed by prepositions (e.g. *sorry about*, *afraid of*).
- ➤ Ellipsis and substitution in complement clauses is most common in conversation.
  - ➤ For *to*-clauses and *wh*-clauses, the complement clause can be omitted if it is understandable from context. The complementizer *to* or *wh*-word is usually retained.

  - With certain verbs, *so* or *not* can substitute for a *that*-clause. This substitution is most common in the expression *think so*, but occurs with several other verbs also.
- The types of complement clauses in this chapter are distributed differently across the registers.
  - The patterns of use reflect register, structural factors, and semantic factors. Overall, they reflect the typical functions of the different clause types.

11

Adverbials

GRAMMAR BITES in this chapter

A Overview of adverbials

- ➤ The three main classes of adverbials: circumstance, stance, and linking adverbials
- ➤ Syntactic forms of adverbials
- ➤ Positions of adverbials in clauses
- ➤ The relationship between adverbials and other clause elements

B Circumstance adverbials

- ➤ Semantic categories of circumstance adverbials
- ➤ Syntactic forms commonly used for circumstance adverbials
- ➤ Some extremely common circumstance adverbials in conversation
- ➤ Typical positions for non-clausal circumstance adverbials

C Circumstance adverbials that are clauses

- ➤ Additional semantic categories for circumstance adverbials that are clauses
- ➤ Forms of non-finite and finite adverbial clauses
- ➤ Typical positions for circumstance adverbial clauses
- ➤ The use of subordinators with circumstance adverbial clauses

D Stance adverbials

- ➤ Semantic categories of stance adverbials
- ➤ Syntactic forms commonly used for stance adverbials
- ➤ The use of the most common stance adverbials
- ➤ Typical positions for stance adverbials
- ➤ Cohesive and interactive functions of stance adverbials

E Linking adverbials

- ➤ Semantic categories of linking adverbials
- ➤ Syntactic forms commonly used for linking adverbials in conversation and academic prose
- ➤ The most common linking adverbials in conversation and academic prose
- ➤ Typical positions for linking adverbials

11.1 Introduction

Adverbials are clause elements that serve three major functions:

- They tell the circumstances relating to the clause, such as when or where an activity took place (circumstance adverbials).
- They express a speaker's feelings, evaluation, or comments on what the clause is about (stance adverbials).
- They link the clause (or some part of it) to another clause (linking adverbials).

Adverbials can be easy to confuse with other items that have similar structures but are parts of a phrase rather than elements of a clause. For example, **1–4** below are adverbials, but **5** and **6** are not:

1 *How long have you been walking* ***on your two feet****?* (CONV)
2 *She grinned* ***widely****.* (FICT)
3 ***In all honesty****, $300 million is not going to make a fundamental change.* (NEWS)
4 ***In summary****, the Alexis apartments are of a very high standard.* (NEWS†)
5 *[The £3,000 prize* ***in the women's event****] went to Bev Nicholson.* (NEWS)
6 *[[****Widely*** *varying] types of land] are cultivated.* (ACAD)

The prepositional phrase *on your two feet* in **1** and the adverb *widely* in **2** give the circumstances relating to their main verbs (*walking* and *grinned*). In **3**, the prepositional phrase *in all honesty* gives the speaker's comment about the entire following clause. In **4**, the prepositional phrase *in summary* connects this concluding statement to the preceding discourse. All four of these examples are elements of their clauses, so they are adverbials.

In contrast, in **5** *in the women's event* modifies the noun *prize*, and in **6** *widely* modifies the adjective *varying*. Examples **5** and **6**, therefore, show elements that are only parts of phrases (marked *[]*), not adverbials.

Adverbials differ from other clause elements in several ways. Consider the following examples (*[]* shows the boundaries of adverbials in a series):

7 ***As I say****, we were* ***eleven hundred feet above sea level*** *and we er really moved [****here****] [****because er I could not stand the er the bad weather****].* (CONV)
8 ***In spite of great efforts by their authors****, these books* ***usually*** *contain a number of fallacies and errors that are* ***in due course*** *passed on [****repeatedly****] [****by later writers of other books****] <...>* ***Unfortunately****, these authors lack <...>* (ACAD†)

The most notable point about adverbials is how varied they are. These examples illustrate many of the important characteristics of adverbials:

- **They serve a variety of functions**. Some adverbials add something about the circumstances of an activity or state (e.g. *here* in **7**, *usually* in **8**). Others give a speaker's comment about what a clause says (e.g. *unfortunately* in **8**). Still other adverbials serve a connective function (e.g. *In summary* in **4** above, connecting a concluding statement to the preceding discourse).
- **They have many semantic roles**. In the examples above, adverbials express location or place (*eleven hundred feet above sea level*, *here*); reason (*because ...*); concession (*in spite of ...*); time (*usually*, *in due course*, *repeatedly*);

agency (*by later writers*); and attitude (*unfortunately*). They are also used for many other meanings.

- **They have a wide range of syntactic forms**. The examples above include adverbs (e.g. *here, usually, unfortunately*), prepositional phrases (e.g. *in spite of great efforts, in due course*), and clauses (e.g. *as I say, because ...*). They can also be noun phrases (e.g. *each day* or *no doubt*).
- **They occur in various positions in clauses**. The examples above illustrate adverbials in the initial position (e.g. *as I say*), medial position before the main verb but after the subject (e.g. *really, usually*), and final position (e.g. *here, repeatedly, by later writers*). Adverbials can also be placed in other medial positions.
- **Multiple adverbials can occur in a clause**. In **8**, for example, the main clause has two adverbials (*in spite of ... , usually*) and the dependent clause has three adverbials (*in due course, repeatedly, by later writers ...*).
- Finally, **most adverbials are optional** (the only exceptions follow certain verbs that take obligatory adverbial complementation; see 3.5.5). For example, **8** would be fine without the adverbials:

  8a *These books contain a number of fallacies and errors that are passed on.*

GRAMMAR BITE

A Overview of adverbials

11.2 The main classes of adverbials

We divide adverbials into three major classes by their functions: **circumstance adverbials**, **stance adverbials**, and **linking adverbials**.

A Circumstance adverbials

Circumstance adverbials are the most common type of adverbials, adding something about the action or state described in the clause. They answer questions such as 'how?', 'when?', 'where?', 'how much?', 'how long?', and 'why?'. They include both obligatory adverbials, as in **1** below, and optional adverbials, as in **2**:

1 *We were* ***at the game.*** (CONV)
2 *Writers on style have differed [****a great deal****] [****in their understanding of the subject****].* (ACAD)

Of the three classes, circumstance adverbials are the most integrated into the clause. However, they can vary in **scope**; that is, they can modify differing amounts of the clause (see 11.5).

B Stance adverbials

Stance adverbials add speakers' comments on what they are saying or how they are saying it. Stance adverbials fall into three categories: **epistemic**, **attitude**, and **style adverbials.**

Epistemic stance adverbials focus on the question: how true is the information in the clause. They comment on factors such as certainty, viewpoint, and limitations of truth value. For example:

> *Well she **definitely** looks at her mobile.* (CONV)
>
> ***From my perspective**, it was a clear case of abuse.* (NEWS)
>
> ***On the whole**, sons-in-law were in better paid jobs than their fathers-in-law.* (ACAD)

Attitude stance adverbials express speakers' evaluations and attitudes towards the content of a clause:

> ***To my surprise**, the space devoted to the kinetic sculptures had a lively and progressive atmosphere.* (NEWS)
>
> ***Fortunately**, this is far from the truth.* (ACAD)

Style stance adverbials convey a speaker's comment on the style or form of the communication. Often style stance adverbials clarify the speaker's manner of speaking or how the utterance should be understood:

> *Well, yes, **technically speaking**, I guess it is burnt.* (CONV)
>
> *That proves at least that Cassetti was certainly alive at twenty minutes to one. At twenty-three minutes to one, **to be precise**.* (FICT†)
>
> ***Quite frankly**, we are having a bad year.* (NEWS)

As the above examples show, stance adverbials usually have scope over the entire clause. (However, in 11.5 we discuss some special cases.) Stance adverbials are always optional.

C Linking adverbials

Linking adverbials serve a connecting function, rather than adding information to a clause. They show the relationship between two units of discourse, as in the following examples:

1 *They were kid boots at eight shillings a pair. He, **however**, thought them the most dainty boots in the world, and he cleaned them with as much reverence as if they had been flowers.* (FICT)

2 *Some hospitals use their own ethics committees to settle such cases, but a hospital's biases could creep into its committee's decisions, Ms. Yuen says. **Furthermore**, the committee's decision wouldn't be legally binding and wouldn't shield a physician from liability.* (NEWS)

3 *Humanism is a positive philosophy <...> Humanists believe morality comes from within man, not from God. They believe in the pursuit of human happiness and well-being. <...> **Yet** humanism is not a soft option. It is quite hard because there are no God-given certainties. You have to make up your mind what is right and what is wrong <...>* (NEWS†)

4 *My objectives in this work are twofold: **first**, to set out a precise yet comprehensive analysis <...>* (ACAD†)

Linking adverbials can connect units of discourse with differing sizes, as the above examples illustrate. The linked units may be sentences, as in **1** and **2**. The units may also be larger than a sentence, as in **3** where *yet* contrasts several sentences about the positive side of humanism with several sentences dealing with its negative side. The units can also be smaller than a sentence: **4** exemplifies a linking adverbial connecting a *to*-clause to the preceding main clause.

Linking adverbials also express a variety of relationships, including those illustrated above: contrast in **1**, addition in **2**, concession in **3**, and enumeration in **4**.

11.2.1 Frequency of adverbial classes

Adverbials are common in all four registers (Figure 11.1):

- Adverbials are only slightly less common than lexical verbs in conversation, fiction, and news (see 5.2.3 for the frequency of lexical verbs).
- They are actually slightly more common than lexical verbs in academic prose.
- Circumstance adverbials are by far the most common adverbials; they are particularly common in fiction writing.

Figure 11.1
Frequency of adverbial classes across registers

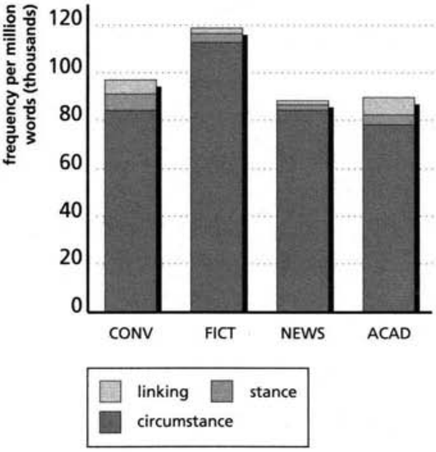

It is not surprising that circumstance adverbials are so common. Although they are usually grammatically optional, they often contain information central to the message. For example, the following clauses are grammatical without their adverbials, but they would not be very informative:

> *It was getting dark* ***when Alice awoke.*** (FICT)
>
> *Researchers use their special expertise* ***to exploit and test the latest technology*** *and* ***to provide much needed reliable and accurate knowledge about system performance, use, and acceptance.*** (ACAD)

Circumstance adverbials have varied meanings. They cover many types of circumstantial information (place, time, process, extent, etc.; see 11.6). Fiction makes particularly frequent use of circumstance adverbials to describe the imaginary characters, events, and the setting:

> *Ralph had no interest in business matters, which was evident [****at the cotton mill****] [****this morning****].* ***Possessing a literary bent,*** *he stood out* ***like an abolitionist in the south.*** (FICT†)

In contrast, stance adverbials and linking adverbials are much less common, accounting for less than 10 per cent of all adverbials (see Figure 11.1). When they do occur, stance adverbials are most common in conversation, while linking adverbials are most common in academic prose. The forms and functions of stance and linking adverbials are discussed in Grammar Bites D and E.

11.3 Syntactic forms of adverbials

Adverbials occur in many syntactic forms. These are exemplified below:

- single adverbs and adverb phrases:

  *Oh she **never** does anything does she?* (CONV)

  *We know each other **very well** and **frankly** we would have preferred to come out of the hat **first**.* (NEWS)

- noun phrases (including single nouns):

  *Well I went to that wedding **Saturday**.* (CONV)

  *The man came to stay with them for a few weeks **each year**.* (FICT)

- prepositional phrases:

  *The man came to stay [**with them**] [**for a few weeks**] each year.* (FICT)

  ***In this chapter** three of the most important approaches are examined.* (ACAD)

- finite clauses:

  *I had to turn it off earlier **because Rupert was shrieking**.* (CONV)

  ***If we do not act**, thousands more will come floating in on the early spring tides.* (NEWS†)

- non-finite clauses, including four major types:

ing-clauses

*He got up and refilled the teapot, then his cup, **adding a touch of skimmed milk**.* (FICT†)

***Using an IBM 3090 supercomputer with 12 interconnected processing units and with a memory capacity of more than five billion characters of information**, the supercomputer center will explore new ways to connect even more advanced supercomputers.* (NEWS)

ed-clauses

*Now **added to that** – by our wall – there was this ruddy great lorry again.* (CONV)

*We measured a seasonal total of 56.99 cm precipitation in the two caged rain gauges, **compared to 56.78 cm on the open plots**.* (ACAD)

to-infinitive clauses

*She called me **to say a lawyer was starting divorce proceedings**.* (FICT)

***To reintroduce us to the joys of story telling round the log fire**, Signals rounded up a slightly disconcerting group of five contemporary writers, all strange to me.* (NEWS)

verbless clauses

*One practice is to designate protons **as if less than this**.* (ACAD)

*The author apologizes **where appropriate**.* (ACAD†)

11.3.1 Frequency of the syntactic forms

In overall frequency, prepositional phrases are the most common form of adverbial (see Figure 11.2). Single adverbs are also common. Compared with these, the other types of adverbial are relatively rare.

Prepositional phrases express a wide range of meanings. They are used not only as circumstance adverbials, but as stance and linking adverbials:

Figure 11.2
Syntactic forms of adverbials

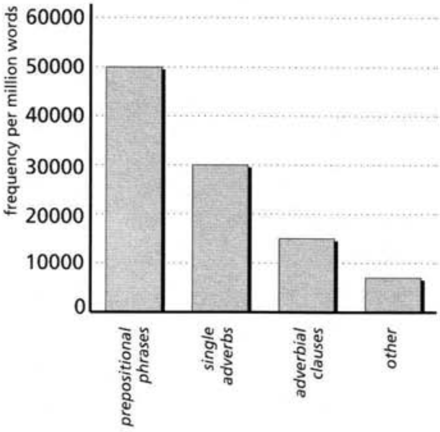

circumstance, place: *I actually come **from the Dales**.* (CONV)
circumstance, agent: *Project topics should be organized **by the tutor**.* (ACAD†)
stance: ***In fact** I might not even need to vacuum the floor.* (CONV)
linking: *'Gossip is mischievous, light and easy to raise, but grievous to bear and hard to get rid of.' **In other words**, mud sticks.* (NEWS†)

11.4 Positions of adverbials

There are four major positions that adverbials take in a clause. It is possible for more than one adverbial to occupy each position.

A Initial

Adverbials can come before the subject or any other obligatory element:

__In the nature of things__, a good many somebodies are always in hospital. (FICT)

*[**Generally**], [**however**], the plants under consideration have been annuals, seedlings or cuttings of perennials.* (ACAD†)

B Medial

We can identify three specific positions within this category.

- Adverbials often occur between the subject and the beginning of the verb phrase:

  *Jean **never** put anything away.* (CONV)

  *I **really** don't know what they're doing.* (FICT)

- When an operator is present, the adverbial is often placed after the operator but before the main verb:

  *Carrie had **often** dreamed about coming back.* (FICT)

  *The utilisation of computers is not **of course** limited to business.* (ACAD)

- Adverbials can also occur after the main verb but before other obligatory elements of the clause (e.g. before the subject predicative or direct object). This placement is normal with the copula *be*:

  It is ***still*** *three weeks away.* (CONV)

  For it is ***no longer*** *a casino.* (FICT)

But adverbials are also occasionally placed after other main verbs (especially for reasons of end-weight; see 12.1.4):

> *Kathy Acker's off-the-shoulder dress displayed* ***to advantage*** *her collection of off-the-shoulder tattoos.* (NEWS)

C Final

And adverbs can also appear in final position in the clause, after obligatory elements:

> *And he's trailing some [**in the back window**] [**as well**].* (CONV)
>
> *There was an extensive literature on agriculture in Roman times which maintained a pre-eminent position* ***until comparatively recently***. (ACAD)

D Other speaker's clause

In conversation and in dialog in fiction, speakers sometimes construct clauses together so that one speaker adds an adverbial to another speaker's utterance. For example:

> *A: I mean you don't have to pay for those.*
> *B: Oh* ***for the films***. (CONV)

Here the complete construction would be *You don't have to pay for the films*, borrowing from the other speaker's clause.

E No clause: stand-alone adverbials

In some cases, adverbials occur without a main verb in a clause. This happens most often in conversation, which often has verbless grammatical structure (see 13.4).

> *Are you gonna have a potato fork? There you are.* ***On the table***. (CONV)

11.4.1 Frequency of positions

Final position is by far the most common position of adverbials overall. Final position is over three times more common than medial position, and four times more common than initial position.

The three adverbial classes have different favorite positions:

- The most common position for circumstance adverbials is final—in fact, 70 per cent of these adverbials occur in final position.
- The most common position for stance adverbials is medial.
- The most common position for linking adverbials is initial position.

11.5 The relationship between adverbials and other clause elements

In the introduction to this chapter, we emphasized that adverbials are elements of clauses, not parts of phrases. However, the exact relationship between adverbials and other clause elements can vary. For example, some circumstance adverbials have scope over an entire clause, while others just complete the meaning of the verb. Similarly, some linking adverbials connect whole paragraphs, while others link a main clause to a dependent clause.

All three classes (circumstance, stance, and linking) have adverbials with differing scope: they can focus on a particular part of the clause, or they can apply to the clause as a whole. Circumstance adverbials with limited scope usually restrict or minimize the meaning of some other element of the clause (scope is marked by underlining):

1 *Well you could have **just** one aspirin.* (CONV)
2 *I was **only** joking.* (CONV)
3 *The kids had 'superhero sundaes' which turned out to be **merely** ice cream.* (NEWS†)

In these examples, the adverbial's scope extends only to the immediately following element in the clause—*one aspirin* in **1**, *joking* in **2**, and *ice cream* in **3**. Often, this smaller scope means less choice in the placement of the adverbial. For instance, it is not acceptable to say, **Well you could have one aspirin **just***. Yet these items are not simply constituents of phrases. It is possible, for example, to move *just* to precede the main verb: *Well you could **just** have one aspirin.*

Stance adverbials, too, can focus on a particular element in the clause:

4 *It was all that running around that made it **sort of** hurt.* (CONV)
5 *In short, I am **literally** disintegrating.* (FICT†)

In **4**, *sort of* conveys that the term *hurt* is imprecise, and in **5**, *literally* refers to the term *disintegrating*. They are thus more local in scope than many stance adverbials. However, they are not part of the structure of a phrase. It is possible to move *sort of* before the verb (*... that sort of made it hurt*), or to move *literally* forward (*I literally am disintegrating*) without greatly altering the meaning.

Finally, some exceptional linking adverbials can link not clauses, but phrases (signaled by *[]* in **6** and **7**):

6 *The principles of care for many of the patients in the ward may be similar, **e.g.** [the preparation carried out pre-operatively to ensure the safety of patients undergoing surgery].* (ACAD)
7 *He recorded what was really there in the rocks, **that is to say** [repeated and sudden changes in environments and extinctions of animals and plants].* (ACAD)

Adverbials such as *e.g.* and *that is to say* above are less clearly elements of a clause than many linking adverbials. Yet they continue to function as linking adverbials do—showing how the writer is connecting two units of discourse—and they are not integrated into a particular phrase.

Review

Major points of Grammar Bite A: Overview of adverbials

- There are three classes of adverbials: circumstance, stance, and linking.
  - Circumstance adverbials are by far the most common class.
- Adverbials can take many forms: adverbs and adverb phrases, nouns and noun phrases, prepositional phrases, and finite and non-finite clauses.
  - Prepositional phrases are the most common form overall.
- Adverbials can occur in three major positions in clauses: initial, final, and medial.
  - Medial position has several variants.
  - In conversation and fictional dialog, some adverbials are connected with another speaker's main clause.
- The function of adverbials in their clauses sometimes varies, depending on the scope of circumstance and stance adverbials, or the amount of text connected by linking adverbials.

GRAMMAR BITE

B Circumstance adverbials

11.6 Semantic categories of circumstance adverbials

Circumstance adverbials can be divided into the following categories and subcategories:

category	subcategories
place	distance, direction, position
time	point in time, duration, frequency, time relationship
process	manner, means, instrument, agent
contingency	cause/reason, purpose, concession, condition, result
degree	extent (amplifier, diminisher)
addition/restriction	addition, restriction
recipient	—

11.6.1 Place

Circumstance adverbials of place express distance, direction, and position.

A Distance adverbials

Distance adverbials usually answer the question 'How far?'. They include specific measurements and general descriptions of distance:

> *I had to go* ***a long way*** *to put the camp behind me.* (FICT)
>
> *A woman who fell* ***50 feet*** *down a cliff was rescued by a Royal Navy helicopter.* (NEWS)

B Direction adverbials

Direction adverbials describe the pathway of an action. They answer the questions 'To(wards) where?', 'From where?', or 'In what direction?'. Some give a general description (e.g. *southwards*); others describe the direction from a beginning point (e.g. *from here*) or towards a destination (e.g. *to the store*):

And they went ***from here*** *about – nine-ish, I suppose?* (CONV)

You used to walk ***to the store****; now you ride.* (NEWS)

C Position adverbials

Position adverbials indicate a point of location. They answer the question 'Where?'. For example:

1 *It would be, be cold* ***up there****.* (CONV)
2 *The implications of this comparison will be discussed further* ***in Section 2.4****.* (ACAD)

They commonly occur with stative verbs, such as *be* in **1**, but also occur with other verbs, such as the communication verb *discuss* in **2**.

11.6.2 Time

Adverbials of time are used for four temporal meanings: point in time, duration, frequency, and time relationships.

A Point in time adverbials

These tell when an event occurs:

I'll see you all ***tomorrow night****.* (CONV)

Perhaps we can put that right ***in January****.* (NEWS)

It is not uncommon ***nowadays*** *to have many hundreds of cattle in one building.* (ACAD)

B Duration adverbials

These describe how long an event lasts:

I wouldn't like to go ***for a week*** *in silence.* (CONV)

It lasted ***years****.* (CONV)

Some observers are predicting the imminent collapse of the military regime which has ruled Ethiopia ***for fifteen years****.* (NEWS)

C Frequency adverbials

These tell how often an event occurs:

I know but you don't have to do it ***every single day****, do you?* (CONV)

Occasionally *she would like to gaze out the window.* (FICT)

Furthermore, the term register is ***sometimes*** *used to refer to <...>.* (ACAD†)

D Time relationships adverbials

These describe the relationship between two events, states, or times:

I want to er clean the floor ***before I take a load of stuff in.*** (CONV)

After this *the conversation sank for a while into mere sociability.* (FICT)

11.6.3 Process

The category of process adverbials has four subcategories: manner, means, instrument, agent.

A Manner adverbials

These, the most common subcategory of process, describe the manner or way something is done. They answer the question 'How?':

I found myself writing ***slowly****, and rewriting, [****piecemeal****], [****endlessly****].* (FICT)

This is blue-sky country where they play their music ***in that western way.*** (NEWS†)

'Where two independent doctors agree there is no hope of recovery, patients should be allowed to die ***with dignity,****' she said.* (NEWS†)

Adverbials of comparison are a special type of manner adverbial. They compare the manner of one state/action to another:

Then I would go through the refrigerator ***like a vacuum cleaner****, sucking in whatever there was* (FICT)

There are few better exponents of the art of looking ***as though life is a complete grind.*** (NEWS†)

Another type of manner adverbial answers the question 'With what?' or 'With whom?' (as well as 'How?'):

1 *He's coming downstairs* ***with two sleeping bags over the top of his head.*** (CONV)

2 *I would feel safer leaving* ***with somebody else*** *anyway.* (CONV)

The *with*-adverbials illustrated by **2** can be called adverbials of accompaniment.

B Means adverbials

These describe the means by which an activity or state is accomplished:

The US, as the country of origin for the uranium, had originally insisted that shipments be made ***by air.*** (NEWS)

We examined this question ***by excluding birds for 3 years from experimental plots.*** (ACAD)

C Instrument adverbials

These mention the item that is used for a task:

Well you can listen to what you've taped ***with headphones.*** (CONV)

She fed it ***with a teaspoon.*** (FICT†)

He wrenched up a piece of the road ***with splintering finger-nails.*** (FICT†)

D Agent adverbials

These tell the agent or the causer of a happening. They are used with passive constructions:

> *The fruit-pulp is also eaten* ***by animals.*** (ACAD)

The agent adverbial corresponds to the subject of an active voice construction, as discussed in 6.6.2.

11.6.4 Contingency

Contingency adverbials tell us how one event or state is contingent—that is, dependent—upon another. Many of the subcategories are closely related.

A Cause/reason adverbials

These answer the question 'Why?'. For example:

> *He's quite frightened* ***cos he doesn't know you.*** (CONV†)
>
> *He was buried under bricks, and died* ***of head injuries.*** (NEWS)

Traditionally, cause was considered an objective dependence of one event on another. Reason was a cognitive dependence, in terms of the way humans explain things. However, in real texts these are often hard to distinguish, so we treat them as one category.

B Purpose adverbials

These can be paraphrased as 'in order to' or 'for the purpose of'. For example:

> *I've got to talk to you* ***to explain what we're doing.*** (CONV)
>
> *Although some of them carried weapons, the knives were just* ***for show.*** (FICT†)

Purpose adverbials also answer the question 'Why?' and are closely related to reason adverbials.

C Concession adverbials

These convey an idea that contrasts with the main idea of the rest of the clause. For example:

1 *1700 miners have been out for seven months and,* ***despite intimidation,*** *no one has gone back to work* (NEWS)

2 ***Although it has been used by others,*** *this book is written for beginning students who have had no previous college science courses.* (ACAD†)

D Condition adverbials

These express conditions that govern the proposition of the main clause:

> *And* ***if you were in the mood*** *we could at least go.* (CONV†)

Adverbials of condition are discussed further in 11.9.1.

E Result adverbials

These adverbials tell the results of the events described in the rest of the clause or in the main clause:

A gust of wind shook the front door, ***so that Mr Harrison had to hold on to it to prevent it slamming in the policeman's face.*** (FICT)

It has been forced to slash prices, ***with the result that profits dropped 11 per cent.*** (NEWS†)

11.6.5 Degree

Degree adverbials answer the questions 'How far/much/many?' and 'To what extent?'. Sometimes they indicate amounts, either in exact terms or more generally:

She's getting on ***a bit*** *now.* (CONV) <i.e. she's getting rather old>

Our estimate puts government losses in the past four weeks ***at 22,000 killed, captured, or deserted.*** (NEWS)

Other degree adverbials intensify the message in the clause (these adverbials are sometimes called **amplifiers** or **intensifiers**):

She looked ***very much*** *like her mother.* (FICT)

The idea is for them eventually to be restored ***completely.*** (NEWS†)

Others (called **diminishers**) lower the strength of a claim made in the clause:

You know, I think you can fix it by pulling the prongs out ***a little bit.*** (CONV)

The land tenure system varies ***slightly*** *from place to place.* (ACAD†)

11.6.6 Addition and restriction

This category includes two opposite types of adverbials. Addition adverbials show that an idea is being added to a previous one:

1 *Some day you'll be old,* ***too,*** *Carol.* (CONV†)
2 *More than 90 minerals, including gold, silver, copper, lead, zinc and cobalt are found in Kazakhstan, which* ***also*** *has productive oil fields.* (NEWS†)

Addition adverbials often have a secondary linking function. In **1**, Carol—in addition to some other person, presumably the speaker—will be old one day. Circumstance adverbials of addition (e.g. *also, too, as well*) are similar to linking adverbials of addition (e.g. *moreover*) in that they both help build **cohesion** in a text.

Restriction adverbials emphasize that the idea in the clause is limited in some way. For example, ***only*** *a sick man* in **3** can be paraphrased: *a sick man and no one else.*

3 *The villagers say jokingly that* ***only*** *a sick man would choose such a remote place to build.* (FICT)
4 *So you'll have to be* ***especially*** *good, Sundays.* (FICT)
5 *Girls do have to help their mothers, sometimes; Grace* ***in particular*** *has to help her mother.* (FICT)

Unlike many other adverbials, addition and restriction adverbials cannot easily be moved without affecting their scope (see 11.5). The position of the adverbial is important in determining what element of the clause is the focus of the addition or restriction. For example, moving the restriction adverbial in **4** changes the meaning:

4a *So you'll have to be good,* ***especially*** *Sundays.*

11.6.7 Recipient

Recipient adverbials tell to whom an action was directed. Often the recipient is a person or group of people:

1 *Okay and then I'll just write the check* ***for you.*** (CONV)
2 *OHA will present the referendum results* ***to the Democrat-controlled Legislature.*** (NEWS)

However, other animals (e.g. *mice* in 3) and even inanimate objects (e.g. *house* in 4) occur in recipient adverbials:

3 *Special cages have been developed* ***for wild mice.*** (ACAD)
4 *I think we're getting that* ***for our house.*** (CONV)

The recipient adverbial can often be replaced by an indirect object (3.5.3). Compare **1** with **1a**:

1a *Okay and then I'll just write* ***you*** *the check.*

Other verbs + recipient adverbials can be alternatively analyzed as a prepositional verb with an object (see 5.10).

11.6.8 Other semantic categories

Some adverbials do not fit into any of the above major semantic categories. Just to give one example, some adverbials mark perspective or respect—for example, prepositional phrases beginning with *as for, regarding, with reference to,* or *in respect of*:

> ***As for problem kids,*** *the association feels this is a matter for discussion with their parents.* (NEWS)
>
> *I believe that early childhood is not at all early* ***in respect of*** *learning.* (NEWS†)

11.6.9 Frequency of semantic categories

As Figure 11.3 shows, place, time, and process are generally the three most common categories of circumstance adverbials (less common types of adverbials are shown as 'other' types, including degree and recipient adverbials). In conversation, place and time adverbials are particularly common, providing down-to-earth information about where and when things happen:

> *I have to be [**at her house**] [**at seven o'clock**].* (CONV)

Adding descriptive details about place, time, and process is

Figure 11.3
Semantic categories for circumstance adverbials

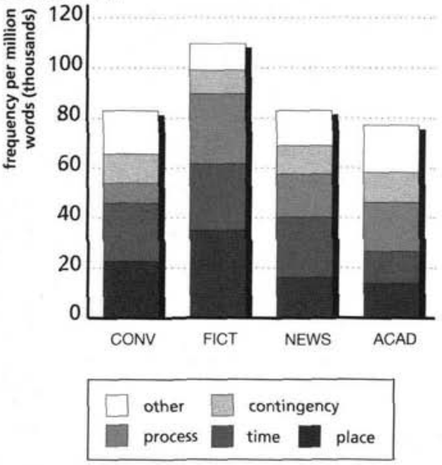

particularly important in fiction writing, for narrating actions and creating imaginary settings:

> *[**Now**] [**for the first time**] he touched her skin, the skin of her forehead **with his fingertips.**<. . .> His instinct was to lift her up and carry her [**down the hillside**] [**to the village**]. He was strong enough to do that **without effort**.* (FICT†)

Similarly in news reports, time, place and process adverbials typically answer the important questions of 'When?', 'Where?', and 'How?'.

Conversation has a particularly high use of *because*- and *if*-clauses:

> *I haven't been using the crutches **because I can't walk on them very well.*** (CONV)
>
> ***If I wash up all this stuff**, somebody else can dry it.* (CONV)

whereas academic prose has a high proportion of purpose adverbials:

> ***In order to help such children**, it is necessary to introduce novel and artificial procedures to assist learning.* (ACAD)
>
> *But now let us climb slowly down the stratigraphical column **to see what other widespread facies we can find.*** (ACAD)

11.7 Extremely common circumstance adverbials in conversation

Three adverbs deserve special consideration because they are so common: *just*, *then*, *there*. These adverbs occur in conversation over 2,500 times per million words—far more than any other adverbials in other registers.

11.7.1 *Just*

Just often plays multiple roles in conversation. Its primary sense is 'only' or 'no more than', but it is also useful in focusing on the part of the clause felt to be important. For example, in the following, *just* focuses attention on the following elements: *a number on a damn computer* in **1**, *crazy* in **2**.

1. *You're **just** a number on a damn computer.* (CONV) <note: *damn* is a taboo word and may be offensive to some people>
2. *It's **just** crazy!* (CONV)

Just has other emotive functions that are especially useful in face-to-face interactions. Consider *just* in these imperatives:

> *Now, now **just** sit down!* (CONV)
>
> ***Just** stay there.* (CONV)

Here, *just* implies 'I'm not asking much, only this thing' or 'Don't argue; simply do as I say'.

In other contexts, *just* also has the effect of downplaying the importance of what is said:

> *She's **just** that way.* (CONV)
>
> *Let me **just** show you this.* (CONV)
>
> *I **just** want to show you the tape I bought.* (CONV)

Just can also be used to refer to closeness of time:

> *She'd* ***just*** *broken up with Joe.* (CONV)

11.7.2 *Then*

Then has two primary functions in conversation. First, it is often used as a deictic adverb roughly equivalent to 'at that time':

> *If I would've known* ***then*** *what I know now, I wouldn't even let you operate.* (CONV)

It is also commonly used to mark the next event in a sequence (roughly equivalent to 'after that'):

> *And* ***then*** *he goes into my bedroom and* ***then*** *he shuts the door and locks himself in.* (CONV)

(Note that *then* is also used as a linking adverb: see 11.17.4.)

11.7.3 *There*

There is also a deictic adverb, meaning 'at that place':

> *Your drink's* ***there.*** (CONV) <the speaker points to the drink>

There can also refer back to places that have been referred to earlier in the conversation:

> *It's gonna stay* ***there*** *until it rots.* (CONV) <*there* refers to a pond that was previously mentioned.>
>
> *I think I've had a meal* ***there*** *years ago.* (CONV) <*there* refers to a pub that was just described.>

11.8 Positions of circumstance adverbials

The positions of adverbials were introduced in 11.4. Figure 11.4 now shows that circumstance adverbials have a very strong preference for final position.

11.8.1 Why choose final position?

A Completing the meaning of verbs

One important factor in the preference for final position is the fact that many circumstance adverbials complete the meaning of the verbs. Some are obligatory and must be in final position:

> *I'm* ***at Willy's*** *right now.* (CONV) <verb pattern S + V + **A**, see 3.4 and 3.5.5>

Figure 11.4

Positions of circumstance adverbials

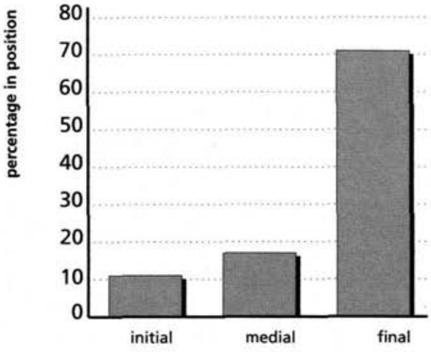

[Whoever put this plant ***on the stairs****] didn't realize we've got silly people like you in the house.* (CONV) <verb pattern S + V + DO + **A** in the clause marked *[]*>

Many optional adverbials have scope over the verb rather than the whole clause (underlining indicates the scope in the following):

1 *It was just flowing along* ***smoothly****.* (CONV) <manner adverbial>
2 *Civilized men fight* ***with gossip****.* (NEWS†) <instrument adverbial>
3 *I can't get you over there* ***in that car****.* (CONV) <means adverbial>

When an adverbial has scope over the verb, it is unusual to move it to a non-final position. For example, *In that car I can't get you over there* is hardly acceptable as an alternative to **3.**

Despite the general preference for final position, various discourse factors favor the use of initial and medial positions (see 11.8.2 and 11.8.3).

B Ordering adverbials in final position

It is quite common for more than one circumstance adverbial to occur in final position. The ordering of these adverbials depends in part on the semantic category of the adverbial. Consider, for example, the three common categories place, time, and manner. In general, these adverbials follow the so-called MPT rule: 'manner before place', 'place before time'—and therefore also 'manner before time'. These three orderings are illustrated below:

*Holly had just sunk [****wearily****][****into the custom-made king-sized waterbed****].* (FICT†)

*Peggy wraps the robe [****around herself****][****again****].* (FICT)

*I'd been living [****independently****][****for about two years****].* (CONV)

Where examples go against the MPT rule, the ordering is often influenced by the principles of **information flow** (placing an adverbial with new information at the end) or end-weight (placing a shorter adverbial before a longer one)—see 12.1.1 and 12.1.4.

11.8.2 Why choose initial position?

A Information flow

Adverbials are typically placed in initial position when they contain given information. Placing them first adds to the cohesion of the discourse and keeps the expected information structure of English, with given information before new information (see 12.1.1). For example, it is obvious that *that moment* in **1** below refers back to something already mentioned. Similarly, *the circumstances* in **2** and *this act and these rules* in **3** have all been mentioned in previous text:

1 ***At that moment*** *a servant entered the library.* (FICT)
2 ***In spite of the circumstances which had brought me to Ashington Grange****, I could not help but be thrilled.* (FICT)
3 ***For notes on this act and these rules****, reference should be made to the eighth edition of this book.* (ACAD)

B Scope over the entire clause

When they are placed in initial position, adverbials usually have scope over the entire clause. They set up a frame for interpreting the entire proposition that follows:

> ***With respect to those employees that remain technically dominant****, Larson notes that even 'they do not control key financial decisions...'* (NEWS†)

Even when manner adverbials are placed in initial position, we also take the adverbial to have scope over the entire clause. For example:

> ***Decisively****, he pushed open the door of the florist's shop and went inside.* (FICT)

Because of its position, we attribute the decisiveness to the subject (*he*) as well as the actions of pushing open the door and going inside.

C Setting the scene (in place or time)

Initial place and time adverbials often have scope over subsequent clauses for a particular reason: they introduce a new scenario, rather like a stage setting the scene for a play:

> ***On the other side of the fence****, the upper part of the field was full of rabbit holes.* (FICT)
>
> ***Last week****, he promised that there would be no more boom and bust.* (NEWS)

11.8.3 Why choose medial position?

Two adverbial categories occur more often in medial position than any other position. These are adverbials of addition/restriction and degree. Often these adverbials have scope over only a particular part of the clause. Further, they are often only one- or two-word adverbials, which makes them easy to handle in medial positions. Some time adverbials are also common in medial position.

A Addition/restriction

Because they relate to a particular part of the clause, medial positions can be important for clearly showing the scope of the adverbial. For example, in the following medial examples of restriction adverbials, the placement of the adverbial highlights its relevance to the following word:

1 *I was **only** asking.* (CONV)
2 *If you read these stories day by day you **simply** don't realize how many there are.* (NEWS)

Thus, **1** downplays the speech act of asking and **2** focuses on the negative (that you do *not* realize).

Though prescriptive rules often insist that addition/restriction adverbials should immediately precede the element they focus, this is frequently not the case in real language. For example, consider the following:

3 *Neither Andrew nor Topaz were aware of the gloom. They **only** saw each other.* (FICT)

In **3** the context requires the meaning that 'they saw each other *and nobody else*', even though *only* precedes *saw*.

B Degree

Medial placement is similarly important with many degree adverbials. For example:

1 *Last week, Jarman hadn't* ***quite*** *decided whether they were to talk to the audience.* (NEWS†)

2 *Traditionally, with apprenticeships and jobs* ***almost*** *assured at 16, there was* <...> (NEWS†)

Here the underlining indicates the word most relevant to the scope of the adverb. In contrast, for other degree adverbials, final position is more common:

I guess I won't be able to help you ***very much****.* (CONV)

C One-word adverbials of time

One-word adverbials showing time (position in time: e.g. *now*, *today*, *yesterday*; and frequency: e.g. *always*, *never*, *often*, *rarely*) also commonly occur in medial position. Most often they are placed before a single main verb:

I ***always*** *thought that I reminded him too much of my mom.* (CONV)

Mason ***now*** *faces a re-trial on the wounding and affray charges.* (NEWS)

Crops ***rarely*** *experience constant environments.* (ACAD)

You may have noticed that the examples of medial adverbials tend to be short adverbials. In fact, almost 75 per cent of medial circumstance adverbials consist of only one word.

Review

Major points of GRAMMAR BITE B: Circumstance adverbials

- There are seven major semantic categories of circumstance adverbials: place, time, process, contingency, degree, addition/restriction, and recipient.
  - Place, time, and process (especially manner) adverbials are most common overall.
  - Three circumstance adverbials are extremely common in conversation and have important functions in spoken discourse: *just*, *then*, and *there*.
- Circumstance adverbials can appear in initial, medial, and final positions.
  - Final position is the most common position for circumstance adverbials in general.
  - Initial position is commonly used to maintain given/new information structure or when the adverbial has scope over a series of clauses.
  - Medial position is common for addition/restriction and degree adverbs that have limited scope, and for short adverbials of time.

GRAMMAR BITE

C Circumstance adverbials that are clauses

11.9 Additional semantic categories of circumstance adverbial clauses

Adverbial clauses fit into many of the semantic categories already presented—especially time, place, and contingency. Here are some examples:

- time:

  When the units are sold, *the city expects to recover all but its $825,000 initial investment.* (NEWS)

- place:

  Wherever your wheels take you, *cycling is serious good fun and saves you a heap of dosh!* (NEWS)

- manner (comparison):

  He smoothed the short sprays of leathery green leaves between his finger and thumb ***as if their texture might tell him something.*** (FICT)

- contingency (reason):

  I'll have to say I'm Rachel ***because our voices sound the same.*** (CONV)

- contingency (condition):

  Well, I'm going to feel lucky ***if my car isn't towed****, I think.* (CONV)

- respect:

  As dinosaurs go*, they were the biggest of the big.* (NEWS)

However, there are some additional meaning distinctions to make for circumstance adverbials that are clauses.

11.9.1 Clauses of condition

Clauses of condition can be divided into three subtypes: open, hypothetical, and rhetorical.

A Open condition

In an open condition, the clause does not say whether or not the condition is fulfilled:

1 *Read the paper* ***if you don't believe me!*** (FICT)
2 ***If the water temperature falls below 22 °C*** *there is a sharp decrease in yield of grain.* (ACAD†)
3 *He won't go with you* ***unless he feels he has to.*** (FICT†)

For example, in **1** you might or might not believe me, and in **2** the temperature may or may not fall below 22 degrees. These clauses do not commit themselves to the truth or falsehood of the proposition they contain.

B Hypothetical (also called unreal) condition

A hypothetical condition implies that the condition is not fulfilled:

4 ***If he had had a coin*** *he would have tossed it.* (FICT) <unfulfilled in the past>

5 ***If I could correct this*** *I certainly would.* (NEWS) <unfulfilled in the present/future>

In **4**, it is clear that he did not have a coin, and in **5** that I cannot correct this.

C Rhetorical condition

These clauses take the form of a condition, but combined with the main clause, they actually make a strong (unconditional) assertion. For example:

> *You may think that I want to destroy the milk boards, but* ***if you believe that*** *you will believe anything.* (NEWS)

The whole sentence functions as a statement meaning: 'You cannot believe that.'

11.9.2 Clauses of preference, proportion, and supplement

In addition to the semantic categories presented in 11.6, clauses can fulfill other semantic categories.

A Preference

Clauses can be used to show preferences:

> *Victor Mason was very much the domesticated male animal who had always preferred to relax in the luxury and privacy of his own home,* ***rather than gallivanting in public.*** (FICT)
>
> *Planners working on Santa Cruz's 15-year general plan are recommending the city build more condominiums and apartments in urban areas* ***rather than sacrifice rural open spaces.*** (NEWS)

As you can see, these preference clauses use the **subordinator** *rather than* followed by a non-finite verb.

B Proportion

Clauses can also be used to express proportions. These adverbial clauses often begin with *the* + comparative and require *the* + comparative in the main clause (both underlined):

> ***The more Katheryn probed,*** *the more Sally squirmed as she gave her version of what had gone on that night.* (FICT)
>
> *You're out to shock and* ***the more you astound and astonish people*** *the happier you'll be.* (NEWS)

C Supplement

These clauses supplement the information in the main clause, although the exact semantic relationship (e.g. of time, reason, or condition) varies. Usually supplement clauses are non-finite, especially *ing*-clauses and *ed*-clauses:

1 *He shook his head,* ***still gazing at the patterns of sunshine on the grass outside the hut.*** (FICT)

2 ***Overcome by curiosity*** *I stared at his odd face, at the scar, the down-weeping, blank eye, the upturned mouth, as if they could tell me something.* (FICT)

We might interpret both of these supplement clauses as time relationships (same time in **1** and a series of events in **2**). However, the adverbial in **1** could also be interpreted as a manner clause, and **2** could be interpreted as a reason clause.

11.9.3 Frequency of clausal semantic categories

Figure 11.5 shows that the distribution of adverbial clauses is similar to the distribution for all adverbials (in Figure 11.1), with fiction using the most adverbials. However, registers show interesting preferences for certain semantic categories. We discuss three of the most striking preferences here.

A Conversation—condition clauses

What is particularly notable in conversation is its high frequency of *if*-clauses of condition. They are used in several ways. First, there are both real and unreal conditions, as described in 11.9.1 above.

> ***If we move some of these off the table*** *we'll have more room to do our pictures.* (CONV) <real>
>
> ***If we could afford it*** *we'd get one.* (CONV) <unreal>

Conditional clauses also serve special conversational uses in suggestions, requests, and offers:

1 *You can hold her* ***if you want.*** (CONV)

2 *Well you can stop being a fusspot* ***if you don't mind.*** (CONV) <spoken to a child>

3 *You can go sit in the living room,* ***if you like.*** (CONV)

A conditional clause can soften the suggestion or command. It suggests that the action is the hearer's choice. But in some cases, as in **2**, the choice is not seriously meant.

Figure 11.5
Frequencies of semantic categories of circumstance adverbial clauses

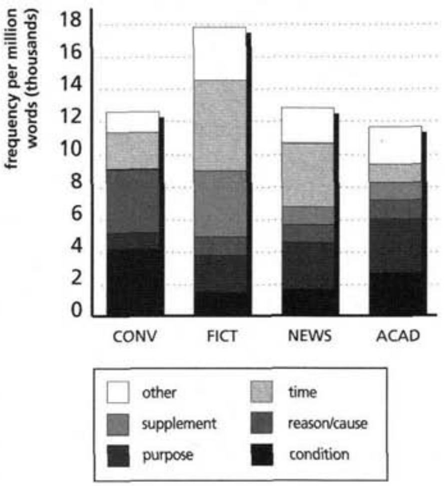

B Fiction—supplement clauses

Compared with other registers, fiction is remarkable for its use of supplement clauses. They are very helpful for adding descriptive details to create an imaginary world. The supplement clauses often describe lesser circumstances that accompany the main narrative:

> ***Dangling the keys in front of everybody's nose***, *I unlocked the caddy.* (FICT)
>
> *The conductor came along the aisle,* ***waving his arms.*** (FICT)

C Academic prose—purpose clauses

Purpose clauses are notably common in academic prose, where they help to explain procedures or recommendations:

> ***In order to help such children***, *it is necessary to introduce novel and artificial procedures to assist learning.* (ACAD)
>
> *Changing the planting date and use of shelter belts have also been suggested* ***to protect the crops.*** (ACAD)
>
> *More air must be bled from the compressor* ***to cool the hotter power turbine.*** (ACAD)

11.10 Syntactic forms of adverbial clauses

The different forms of adverbial clauses were described in 11.3. Figure 11.6 shows that in all registers, finite clauses are more common than non-finite clauses. Finite clauses have several advantages over the other types of clauses.

First, finite clauses generally have subordinators, which allow them to cover a wide variety of semantic relationships. In comparison, non-finite clauses have a more limited range of meaning. For example, most *to*-clauses express just one kind of meaning—purpose.

In addition, the subordinators of finite clauses make the relationship between the adverbial and the main clause explicit. We have seen how some supplement clauses—which are non-finite clauses—are semantically indefinite. This can be useful for a register like fiction, but for expository writing, explicitness is an advantage.

Finite clauses also contain an overtly stated subject, which can be different from the main clause (subjects are underlined):

> ***When you're young,*** *everything seems reversible, remediable.* (FICT)

Figure 11.6
Syntactic forms of circumstance adverbial clauses

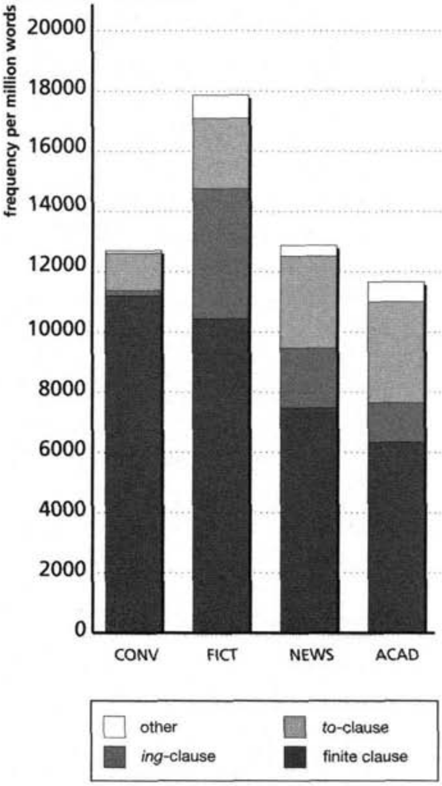

In contrast, non-finite clauses are more constrained because their subject is usually implied or understood, rather than overt. The understood subject of the adverbial clause must normally be the same as in the main clauses, as in:

I borrowed a portable phone ***to ring Waterloo to complain.*** (NEWS)

Here we understand that *I*, not some other subject, had to 'ring Waterloo' and 'complain'.

Finally, finite adverbial clauses can have a different tense, aspect, or modality from the main clause. This is often needed for many semantic relationships, including the time and reason clauses here:

Last Saturday we ***were*** *frantically* ***doing*** *that painting before it* ***got*** *dark.* (CONV)

<main clause verb: past progressive; adverbial clause verb: past simple >

I ***like*** *these foreign pictures because I* ***can believe*** *in them.* (FICT)

<main clause verb: present simple; adverbial clause verb: modal>

The difference in tense and modality is essential in hypothetical conditional clauses, where modals and tenses express the unreal nature of the proposition:

Well you ***might get*** *some facts right if you* ***did****!* (CONV)

If that ***were*** *true, it* ***would*** *perhaps* ***support*** *the conclusion that <...>* (ACAD†)

Whereas finite adverbial clauses have the advantage of being more explicit and versatile, non-finite adverbial clauses have the advantage of condensing the adverbial meaning into fewer words. The use of non-finite clauses shows some strong preferences for semantic category and register. As just noted, *to*-clauses are mostly used for purpose, an especially important meaning in academic prose and news:

To smooth the way*, the school has taken special steps.* (NEWS)

Reforming is the process whereby straight-run gasoline is cracked ***in order to raise the octane number****.* (ACAD)

The only other notable use of *to*-clauses is to express result. This use is most common in news, particularly in sports reports:

Dick Johnson and John Bowe of Australia, in a Ford Sierra, led from the start yesterday ***to win the Bathurst 1,000-km touring car race****.* (NEWS†)

Internazionale shrugged off defeat by Malmo ***to beat the leaders, Roma, also by 3–0.*** (NEWS)

11.10.1 Dangling participles

A well-known prescriptive rule forbids the use of a **dangling** (or unattached) **participle**—i.e. an *ing*- or *ed*-clause with an understood subject that is different from the subject in the main clause. These clauses can cause absurd interpretations if they are taken literally, but readers can usually guess their intended meaning from context. Consider these two examples:

1 ***Leaving the road, they went into the deep resin-scented darkness of the trees.*** *(FICT)*

2 ***Leaving the road, the deep resin-scented darkness of the trees surrounded them.***

Example **1** does not have a dangling participle because *they* is understood to be the subject of the adverbial clause (i.e. *they* left the road). But **2** has a dangling participle, because the understood subject *they* is missing from the main clause. The dangling participle structure implies that *the darkness* left the road, which is absurd.

In certain situations, the rule about dangling participles is relaxed, especially:

- when the adverbial clause is a style adverbial (see 11.13.3), and the implied subject is the speaker:

  Putting it more simply, *a racing program is always a programming error.* (ACAD†)
  <= *If I may put it more simply...*>

- when the main clause has a non-referential *it* as subject:

  When writing the formulae of both covalent molecules and ionic compounds, *it is often useful to use the valency of an atom, ion or group of atoms.* (ACAD)
  <= *When one is writing...*>

Here, we identify the subject of the adverbial clause with the researchers who *use the valency of an atom ...*

- when the entire main clause is the implied subject of the adverbial clause:

  *'**Unknown to him**, two people were waiting for him', the lawyer said.* (NEWS†)
  <= *It was unknown to him that two people were waiting...* >

- in scientific writing when passives are used:

  Using flowing nutrient solutions, *concentrations of ions can be maintained constant at, or very close to, the root surface.* (ACAD)

Here the subject of the adverbial clause corresponds to the unstated agent of the main clause (e.g. *the researchers*).

In all of these cases, 'dangling participles' are unlikely to cause any misunderstanding.

11.11 Positions of adverbial clauses

Adverbial clauses usually occur in initial and final positions:

> ***When you go to sleep***, *I'm gonna watch the game.* (CONV)
>
> *They stood in the passage talking about it in whispers long* ***after she had gone to bed***. (FICT)
>
> *But her annoyance returned* ***when Jenny came in a little while later and told her that she had asked Matthew to dinner***. (FICT)

Short clauses can also occur in medial positions, for example:

> *A numeric value stored inside a computer (after conversion* ***if appropriate****) consists of a series of decimal digits.* (ACAD)

In fact, the vast majority of adverbial clauses are in final position. However, a few structural and semantic categories have unusually high frequencies in initial position. There are a number of likely reasons for this choice; we cover only the two most common here. (Compare the functions of initial position discussed in 11.8.2.)

11.11.1 Common functions of initial adverbial clauses

A Cohesion and information structuring

Initial adverbial clauses can be important for the information flow of a text. They often contain given information—i.e. information already mentioned in the recently preceding discourse (see 12.1.1). This maintains the expected information structure of English, with given information before new:

> *It's not the rummy that aggravates my blood pressure.* ***If there were no cards,*** *there would still be the stock market, and* ***if there weren't the stock market,*** *there would be the condominium in Florida.* (FICT†) <note: 'rummy' is a card game>

Initial purpose clauses in academic prose commonly present given information:

> ***In order to achieve these growth rates*** *factors other than solar radiation must be non-limiting.* (ACAD)

In this example, the noun phrase in the initial adverbial clause (*these growth rates*) has been mentioned in the immediately preceding discourse. An initial *to*-clause can also help with cohesion by leading into the next stage of discussion, stating its purpose:

> ***To assess the impact on education,*** *we turn to some specific cases.* (ACAD)

B Framing subsequent discourse

A second role that initial adverbial clauses play is framing subsequent discourse. This means that a clause 'sets the scene' for one or more following clauses. This is a particularly important function of initial time and condition clauses. They can set the scene for a series of events:

> ***When I took Katie to school this morning*** *– I had to drag her into school! She was screaming! <...> She was crying, I said I want to go home! I want to go home!* (CONV†)

Or they can set the scene for just one event (in this case a hypothetical one):

> ***If Senna had not either won the race or finished second,*** *he would have been out of the championship.* (NEWS)

In fiction, many supplement clauses have this framing function. They often introduce a state or activity of some duration, while the main clause describes a one-time event within that time frame:

> ***Coming back across the yard*** *he heard the sound of a door swinging.* (FICT)
>
> ***Whistling,*** *he began to cut new wood for the window frame.* (FICT)

In contrast to this framing effect, adverbial clauses in final position add important new circumstantial information to the end of the main clause:

> *Kerry, come back* ***when you've got some trousers that actually fit,*** *okay?* (CONV)
>
> *I'm tense; excuse me* ***if I talk too much.*** (FICT)
>
> *He launched into a tirade of abuse against the Government,* ***complaining that they were looking more like Tories every day.*** (FICT)

11.12 Subordinators with circumstance adverbial clauses

Finite adverbial clauses usually require a **subordinator**; these are described in 11.12.1 below.

However, there are exceptions. An unreal condition can be made, for example, using subject–operator inversion rather than the subordinator *if*:

> ***Should things go well**, it would be nice to see the likes of Darren Patterson and Keith Rowland getting a run.* (NEWS) <= *If things should go well...*>
>
> ***But were he to come**, he would most likely be invited before the summit starts.* (NEWS) <= *If he were to come...*>
>
> ***Had it not been for human kindness**, he would have ended up in a pork pie.* (NEWS) <= *If it had not been for human kindness...*>

This construction is rare.

Non-finite adverbial clauses generally occur without a subordinator. For example:

> *They had gone there **to liquidate his father-in-law's estate**.* (FICT)
>
> ***Given a probability sample**, well known statistical procedures can be readily applied.* (ACAD)

However, they also occur (infrequently) with subordinators:

> ***When asked by journalists recently about the refugee problem**, he said, 'What refugee problem?'* (NEWS)
>
> ***Before showing the use of matrices** we must first set up an algebra defining the various operations of addition, subtraction, multiplication, and so on.* (ACAD)
>
> *There are hundreds of questions to be asked **in order to find a satisfactory answer to the general question**.* (ACAD)

These non-finite clauses with subordinators are found mostly in news and academic writing.

11.12.1 Most common subordinators with finite adverbial clauses

A variety of subordinators are possible in all semantic categories. However, a relatively small number are used commonly:

- common subordinators (occurring at least 200 times per million words in at least one register):

  time: *when, as, after, before, while, until, since*

  manner: *as, as if, as though*

  reason: *because (cos), since*

  concession: *though/even though, although, while*

  condition: *if, unless*

- other subordinators:

  time: *once, till, whenever, whilst, now that, immediately* (BrE), *directly* (BrE)

place: *where, wherever*
manner (including similarity and comparison): *like*
purpose: *so (that), in order that*
reason: *as, for, with, in that*
result: *so (that), such that*
concession: *whereas, whilst*
exception: *except that, save that, but that*
condition and contingency: *as long as, in case, in the event that, lest, on condition that, once, provided (that), whenever, wherever, whether*
preference: *rather than*

In two semantic categories a single subordinator predominates: *because* for reason, and *if* for condition. In contrast, time meanings vary, and specific meaning relationships are conveyed through the choice of a subordinator. Consider just a few examples:

- concurrent events:

  And ***when we had that, uh, birthday party there****, they did up her hair and put a ribbon in it and did her nails.* (CONV)

- one event after another:

  Teenager Matthew Bown is being hailed as a hero for saving a toddler from drowning ***after the child plunged into a fast-flowing stream****.* (NEWS)

- one event during another:

  The river swilled him along, ***while he whistled in happiness****.* (FICT)

As is typical, conversation tends to have one dominant subordinator in each category, while the written registers are much more diverse. For example, in conversation *when* is the only time subordinator to occur at least 200 times per million words. (In fiction *as, after, before, when* and *while* all do.) Again in conversation, *if* and *because* (often shortened to *cos* in speech) are even more frequent than *when*, dominating the condition and reason categories of adverbial clause.

11.12.2 Subordinators expressing multiple meanings

It is important to note that a single subordinator can have more than one semantic role. For example, the following common subordinators have two or three meanings:

as	manner, reason, time
since	reason, time
while	concession/contrast, time

But there are strong connections between register and the choice of subordinator meaning. Take the case of *since* in conversation and academic prose. In conversation, the subordinator *since* is most often used to indicate time:

Since Billy's come around *that's all we've been talking about.* (CONV)

Is it six weeks ***since we saw the last one*** *then?* (CONV)

In contrast, *since* overwhelmingly marks reason in academic prose:

__Since most women did marry,__ most teenage girls assumed that they would do so. (ACAD†)

There can be no standard irrigation management system __since conditions under which the crop is grown vary so widely.__ (ACAD)

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE C**: Circumstance adverbials that are clauses

- Clausal circumstance adverbials have some special types of meaning in addition to the meanings of non-clausal circumstance adverbials. For example:
  - Conditional clauses can express open, hypothetical (unreal), and rhetorical conditions.
  - Additional semantic categories are preference, proportion, and supplement.
- Finite clauses are much more common than non-finite clauses.
  - They also have a number of advantages over non-finite clauses, such as a wider range of meanings and an explicitly stated subject.
- Final position is the most common position for both finite and non-finite clauses.
- Initial position commonly serves special functions—especially signaling cohesion or information flow, and framing subsequent discourse.
- Subordinators begin the great majority of finite clauses but are rare with non-finite clauses.

GRAMMAR BITE

D Stance adverbials

11.13 Semantic categories of stance adverbials

Stance adverbials are adverbials that overtly mark a speaker's or writer's attitude to a clause or comment about its content. They can be divided into three categories: epistemic, attitude, and style.

11.13.1 Epistemic adverbials

Epistemic stance adverbials express the speaker's judgments about the information in a proposition. They have six major areas of meaning: certainty and doubt, actuality and reality, source of knowledge, limitation, viewpoint or perspective, and imprecision.

A Certainty and doubt

Some epistemic adverbials tell the speaker's level of certainty or doubt about the proposition in the clause.

- expressing certainty:

That sort of gossip should ***certainly*** *be condemned.* (NEWS)

During the action the person will ***undoubtedly*** *have certain feelings towards it and gain satisfaction from achievement.* (ACAD)

- expressing doubt:

In spite of that it was ***probably*** *more comfortable than the home they'd left anyway.* (CONV)

Maybe *it is true,* ***maybe*** *it isn't.* (NEWS)

Doubt/certainty adverbials include: *no doubt, certainly, undoubtedly, probably, perhaps, maybe, arguably, decidedly, definitely, incontestably, incontrovertibly, most likely, very likely, quite likely, of course, I guess, I think, I bet, I suppose, who knows.*

B Actuality and reality

Actuality and reality adverbials give the proposition the status of real-life fact, usually in contrast with what someone might have supposed:

In fact *I'm taller than the doors.* (CONV)

Not all the evidence by any means concurs with the view that women were ***actually*** *superior to men in some respects.* (ACAD)

Actuality and reality adverbials include: *in fact, really, actually, in actual fact, for a fact, truly.*

C Source of knowledge

Adverbials of source of knowledge tell us where the claim reported in the proposition came from. They can allude to evidence, as with *evidently, apparently,* or *reportedly*:

Evidently*, the stock market believes that matters will not rest there and Pearl's share price raced up 87p to 639p.* (NEWS)

They can also identify a specific source:

According to Mr. Kandil*, nuclear power was the only clean energy alternative for Egypt.* (NEWS)

A finite clause can be used to state evidence for the truth of the main clause:

1 *It wasn't the batteries* ***because I tested the batteries and they were fine.*** (CONV†)

2 ***As Mr. Wardell (1986) notes****, once managerial decisions are known they then become the basis on which groups lower down the hierarchy organize their resistance and responses.* (ACAD)

In **1**, the *because*-clause does not provide the reason for what is described in the main clause. Rather, it gives the source of the knowledge about the batteries: 'I know that because . . .'. Similarly, 'Mr. Wardell' is the source of knowledge in **2.**

Source of knowledge adverbials include: *evidently, apparently, reportedly, reputedly, according to X, as X reports/notes.*

D Limitation

Limitation stance adverbials imply that there are limits to the validity of the proposition:

In most cases *he would have been quite right.* (FICT)

Typically there is a pair of ganglia in each segment of the body. (ACAD)

Limitation stance adverbials include: *in most cases, in most instances, mainly, typically, generally, largely, in general, on the whole.*

E Viewpoint or perspective

These adverbials mark the viewpoint or perspective from which the proposition is claimed to be true:

__In our view__ it would be a backward step. (NEWS)

__From our perspective__, movement success is paradoxical. (ACAD)

Viewpoint or perspective adverbials include: *in our view, from our perspective, to my knowledge, to the best of our knowledge.*

F Imprecision

A number of stance adverbials are **hedges** (see 7.11.6) suggesting that the proposition (or part of it) is imprecise:

Men were __like__ literally throwing themselves at me. (CONV)

It kept __sort of__ pouring out of his pocket, his brother said. (FICT)

Indeed, the only real drawback, __if you can call it that__, is that people are continually coming up and congratulating us on our victory over England. (NEWS)

Hedging adverbs like *sort of, kind of,* and *like* are very common in conversation. Imprecision adverbials include: *like, sort of, kind of, so to speak, if you can call it that.*

11.13.2 Attitude adverbials

Attitude adverbials tell the speaker's attitude toward the proposition. Typically they convey an evaluation, or assessment of expectations:

1 ***Fortunately**, during my first few months here, I kept a journal.* (FICT)
2 *And **most surprising of all**, much farther away still in west Australia, we have the gingin chalk of the late cretaceous age.* (ACAD)
3 ***Hopefully** this problem will be solved when the group is thoroughly revised.* (ACAD)

Often these adverbials can be restated with *that*-clauses and adjectives describing attitudes: **1** *It is fortunate that ...* , **2** *It is surprising that ...* , **3** *I am hopeful that ...* Writing manuals often warn against the use of *hopefully* as a stance adverbial, as in **3**. However, this use is found in the more formal registers of news and academic prose, as well as in conversation and fiction.

Other adverbials are useful for expressing different kinds of attitude, especially in writing:

- expressing expectation: *surprisingly, not surprisingly, most surprising of all, as might be expected, as you'd expect, as you might expect, inevitably, naturally, as you might guess, to my surprise, astonishingly, of course, predictably*
- expressing evaluation: *unfortunately, conveniently, wisely, sensibly, unfortunately, quite rightly, even worse, disturbingly, ironically*
- expressing importance: *even more importantly, importantly, significantly.*

11.13.3 Style adverbials

Stance adverbials of style comment on the manner of conveying the message (e.g. *frankly*, *honestly*, *truthfully*):

1 *Well* ***honestly*** *I, I don't know.* (CONV)

2 ***More simply put****, a feedback system has its inputs affected by its outputs.* (ACAD)

Often these adverbials can be glossed as 'I am being X when I say ...'. For example, **1** means: 'I am being honest when I say I don't know.'

Finite clauses are occasionally used as style adverbials, often with the subordinator *if*:

Is it a fact that you have refused to take any fee for the work you are doing, ***if you don't mind my asking****?* (FICT)

I have to say that in terms of violent crime generally the amount of it in the United Kingdom is small compared with that in other countries and, ***if I may say so****, here in Washington.* (NEWS)

These clauses suggest that the speakers view themselves as speaking in a way that might cause offence.

Style adverbials include: *frankly*, *if you don't mind my saying so*, *literally*, *seriously*, *confidentially*, *to tell you the truth*, *technically speaking*, *generally speaking*, *to put it X (e.g. bluntly, charitably)*.

11.13.4 Ambiguity with other adverbial classes

Some stance adverbials can have ambiguities or multiple meanings, which we now consider.

A Stance adverbial v. circumstance adverbial or degree modifier

It can be difficult to tell whether a word is a stance adverbial or a circumstance adverbial (or in some cases, an adverb modifier within a phrase rather than an adverbial). The adverb *really* is particularly tricky to analyze. Some instances seem clearly to have the epistemic stance meaning of 'in reality' or 'in truth,' especially when the adverb is in initial or final position:

Really*, you've noticed the difference?* (CONV)

I had no choice ***really****.* (NEWS)

But in medial position, the meaning is less clear. In the following, *really* could have a degree meaning, or be interpreted as intensifying the (underlined) adjective or verb (roughly with the meaning of 'very (much)'):

It's ***really*** *wonderful.* (CONV)

The numbers ***really*** *took off in the late 1890s.* (ACAD†)

Other stance adverbials could alternatively be interpreted as circumstance adverbials of degree or time. In the following, *largely* and *mainly* could be interpreted to mean 'to a great extent' or 'usually', as well as being stance adverbials (limiting the truth of the proposition):

The Cranfield Institute of Technology is ***mainly*** *engaged in post-graduate teaching and research.* (NEWS†)

The great scholars also are ***largely*** *ignored for their craft skill.* (ACAD)

B Stance adverbial v. linking adverbial

Some stance adverbials can also have a connecting function, overlapping with linking adverbials. *In fact* not only signals actuality, but generally indicates that what follows reinforces the point just made:

> *I went up and heard the jazz at the Crown last night. <...> **In fact** I was quite a busy little bee last night.* (CONV†)
>
> *She's never seen him on the porch. **In fact**, there's no chair to sit on.* (FICT)

C Stance adverbial v. discourse marker

Sometimes the division between a stance adverbial and a **discourse marker** is not clear. Consider *like* in the following example:

> *She **like** said that they would.* (CONV)

Here it is difficult to tell whether *like* is a discourse marker (with a purely interactive function; see 13.7) or a stance adverbial suggesting that the proposition is communicated imprecisely.

11.13.5 Frequency of semantic categories

Figure 11.7 illustrates the following points about the frequency of stance adverbials across registers:

- Conversation has by far the highest frequency of stance adverbials.
- Epistemic adverbials are by far the most common meaning category in all registers.
- Style adverbials are more common in conversation than the other registers.
- Attitude adverbials are slightly more common in news and academic prose than in conversation and fiction.

Figure 11.7

Frequency of stance adverbials across registers

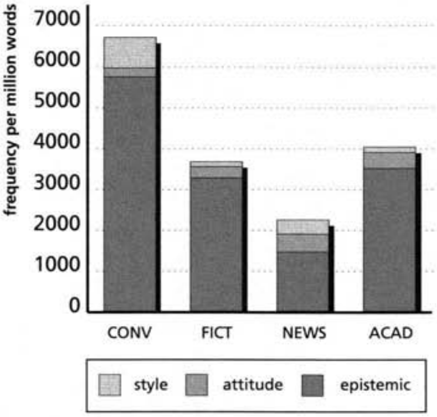

11.14 The most common stance adverbials

Very common stance adverbials that occur over 300 times per million words are:

	doubt/certainty	actuality	imprecision
CONV:	*probably, maybe*	*really, actually*	*like* (AmE), *kind of* (AmE), *sort of* (BrE)
FICT:	*probably, perhaps, maybe*	*really*	
ACAD:	*perhaps*		

('AmE' and 'BrE' here mean that the adverbials are used over 300 times per million words in those varieties. But they are also used (though not so frequently) in the other national dialect.)

The most common are all epistemic: expressing levels of doubt or certainty is important in all the registers. *Probably* and *perhaps* are especially common:

> *You've **probably** wiped it off now.* (CONV)
>
> *Ellen thought that **perhaps** Jackie had been crazy.* (FICT†)
>
> *This level is **probably** sufficient to cause clinical disease.* (ACAD†)

Two very common adverbials in conversation (and one in fiction) are actuality adverbials (*actually* and *really*). These are frequently used in dialog for emphasis:

> *I've **actually** got very strong teeth.* (CONV)
>
> *That's all she could move. It **really** was.* (CONV)
>
> *'I **really** have to go now.'* (FICT)

Other common stance adverbials in conversation are markers of imprecision. In British English conversation, the favorite form is *sort of*:

> *It's **sort of** an L in shape of an O.* (BrE CONV)
>
> *We **sort of** were joking about it.* (BrE CONV)

In American English, the favorites are *like* and *kind of*:

> *I always thought that I reminded him too much of my mom and **like** depressed him.* (AmE CONV)
>
> *She's **kind of** a rich, really rich woman with all this time on her hands.* (AmE CONV†)

11.15 Positions of stance adverbials

Stance adverbials are generally the most mobile of the three classes of adverbials. They typically have scope over the entire clause, and meaning is not changed if the adverbial is placed in a different position. Many adverbs can appear in all positions. Thus, in the examples below, *apparently* occurs in (**1**) initial position, (**2**) medial position immediately following the subject, (**3**) medial position immediately following the operator, and (**4**) final position:

1. *Well **apparently** she said it stands her in good stead.* (CONV)
2. *Arphia pseudonietana and psoleoessa texana **apparently** were much more abundant in the wet summer of 1990.* (ACAD)
3. *The throne is **apparently** in no danger at all.* (NEWS)
4. *Words helped them, **apparently**.* (FICT)

Despite this mobility, slightly over half of stance adverbials occur in medial positions (see Figure 11.8).

Figure 11.8
Positions of stance adverbials

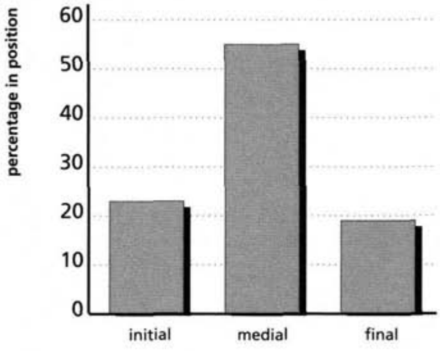

11.16 Other discourse functions of stance adverbials

Stance adverbials can serve a variety of discourse functions in addition to conveying epistemic, attitudinal, and style meanings.

As mentioned in 11.13.4, stance adverbials (such as *in fact*, *in brief*, *in a word*) can have a cohesive function, because they introduce a reinforcement or summary of a previous statement.

Other stance adverbials contribute to the interactive nature of conversation. For example, a speaker can use *no doubt* or *of course* to signal familiar knowledge shared with the interlocutor, as in this comment after a forecast of clear weather:

> *But* ***no doubt*** *we'll have a few showers.* (CONV)

Stance adverbials can also be used to soften disagreement. For instance, after one speaker lists 'Sophie' as a 'weird name', the other responds:

> *Sophie. Well that's not* ***really*** *a weird name.* (CONV)

Similarly, epistemic stance markers can soften a suggestion:

> *Well I was thinking we could* ***perhaps*** *take her to Blagden Hall now that's open.* (CONV)

Epistemic stance markers can also be used for enthusiastic emphasis:

> *You've* ***definitely*** *got the right idea.* (CONV)

These examples show how stance adverbials can be multi-functional in discourse—especially in conversation (compare 13.7.1, Table 13.2 on inserts).

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE D**: Stance adverbials

- ➤ There are three major types of stance adverbials: epistemic, attitude, and style.
- ➤ Epistemic stance adverbials convey meanings such as doubt/certainty, actuality/reality, and imprecision.
- ➤ Some stance adverbials overlap in their functions with circumstance adverbials, linking adverbials, and discourse markers.
- ➤ The highest frequency of stance adverbials overall is in conversation.
- ➤ Single adverbs are the most common form of stance adverbial.
- ➤ All of the most common stance adverbials are epistemic.
- ➤ Medial position is the most common position for stance adverbials.
- ➤ Stance adverbials have important interactional functions in conversation.

GRAMMAR BITE

E Linking adverbials

11.17 Semantic categories of linking adverbials

The main function of linking adverbials is to clarify the connection between two units of discourse. Because they explicitly signal the link between passages of text, they are important devices for cohesion (see Chapter 12, especially 12.1.1). The six major semantic categories are: enumeration and addition, summation, apposition, result/inference, contrast/concession, and transition.

11.17.1 Enumeration and addition

Linking adverbials can be used to enumerate (list) pieces of information, or to signal the addition of items to a list. Linking adverbials for enumeration include numbering words (e.g. *first(ly)*, *second(ly)*), as well as *finally* and some prepositional phrases:

> *This new structure must accomplish two special purposes.* ***First****, as part of overcoming the division of Europe there must be an opportunity to overcome through peace and freedom the division of Berlin and Germany.* ***Second****, the architecture should reflect that America's security remains linked to Europe.* (NEWS)
>
> *He couldn't bring himself to say what he thought.* ***For one thing****, she seldom stopped to listen.* ***For another****, he doubted that he could make himself clear.* (FICT)

Addition linking adverbials signal that a new item of discourse is being added to previous ones:

1 *Each of these crystal systems is represented by a primitive lattice.* ***In addition****, there are seven multi-primitive lattices.* (ACAD)
2 *Feedback tends to be used to stabilize systems, not to randomize them.* ***Similarly****, natural systems would probably evolve to avoid chaos.* (ACAD)

As the use of *similarly* in **2** suggests, addition often goes with similarity of meaning.

Other typical enumerating adverbials are: *lastly, thirdly, in the first/second place, first of all, for one thing . . . for another thing, to begin with, next.*

Other typical addition adverbials are: *also, by the same token, further, furthermore, likewise, moreover.*

11.17.2 Summation

Adverbials that mark summation signal that a unit of discourse concludes or sums up points made in the preceding discourse:

> ***In sum****, then, to account for a synchronic assimilation from [k] to [t] under this view, the processes of tier promotion and complex segment simplification must apply along with the spreading of the assimilation feature.* (ACAD)

> ***To conclude***, *we may place the three notions of saliency in an ordered relation as follows:* <...> (ACAD†)

Other typical summation adverbials are: *all in all*, *in conclusion*, *overall*, *to summarize*.

11.17.3 Apposition

Adverbials of apposition show that the following piece of text is equivalent to, or included in, the point made in the preceding discourse.

An apposition adverbial may introduce the second unit as a restatement of the first, reformulating it in some way or stating it more explicitly:

> *The current edition* <...> *shows that road users cover their track costs by a factor of 2.4 to 1.* ***In other words*** *users of all types pay almost two and a half times as much in taxes as is spent on all road costs from building, maintenance and signs, right down to the provision of police, traffic wardens and even grass cutting and hedge-trimming of the verges.* (NEWS†)
>
> *Our model allows the predefinition of who,* ***i.e.*** *which Communicator, may exchange when,* ***i.e.*** *at what point of time, what,* ***i.e.*** *which message, with whom,* ***i.e.*** *with which Communicator.* (ACAD)

In many cases, the second unit of text is an example. It is information that is logically included in part of the previous text (here marked in *[]*):

> *She understood [the parameters of the picnics] all too well.* ***E.g.*** *they could not go to the beach because of the sand.* (FICT)
>
> *If a population becomes highly entrained, [its diversity is greatly reduced].* ***For example****, the age structure could become very narrow.* (ACAD)

Other typical apposition adverbials are: *which is to say*, *that is to say*, *that is*, *for instance*, *namely*, *specifically*. Note that some apposition adverbials used in writing are Latin abbreviations: *e.g.* ('for example'), *i.e.* ('that is'), *viz.* ('namely').

11.17.4 Result/inference

Linking adverbials of result/inference signal that the second unit of discourse states the results or consequence of the preceding discourse:

> *I once acquired a set of recordings of a Bach piano concerto. I was very fond of it, but my mother was forever criticizing and chastising my poor taste* <...> ***Consequently****, I now hardly listen to Bach.* (FICT†)
>
> *As the spatial file contains all the geometric relationships necessary to specify the body, this can be used to generate any pictorial view. It is* ***thus*** *not necessary to produce an engineering drawing specifically for the purpose of showing everyone what it looks like.* (ACAD)

In conversation this category is also commonly realized by *so*. In some cases, *so* clearly marks a resultive relationship and could be replaced by *therefore*:

> *Oh well you've seen it anyway,* ***so*** *I won't put it on.* (CONV)

So does not always have such a clear role, however. At times, *so* refers to something understood from the context that is not available to readers of a written transcription. In the following example, *so* could relate to an action that is not put into words (e.g. putting away tools or closing a book) but that suggests work is finished:

> *Okay **so** that's that.* (CONV)

In still other cases, *so* has little semantic content of its own. Instead, it functions more like a discourse marker (see 13.7.1, Table 13.2). For example, in the following excerpt, *so* marks the speaker's wish for an explanation of what has been said:

> A: *Uh, yeah, yeah – I'm looking forward to tomorrow night.*
> B: ***So** what are you guys doing?*
> C: *Oh, just visiting folks, pretty much.* (CONV)

Other result/inference adverbials mark one idea as an inferred result of another:

> *He works late. How am I supposed to get there **then**?* (CONV)

In this example, *then* marks the connection between the idea of the first clause (his working late) and the speaker's problem getting to another location. However, this connection is not as overt as with many resultive adverbials in writing (e.g. *He works late; **therefore**, he cannot drive me there*).

Other typical result/inference adverbials are: *hence, therefore.*

11.17.5 Contrast/concession

Here we note linking adverbials that mark some kind of contrast or conflict between information in different discourse units. Some of these adverbials clearly mark contrasting alternatives:

> *Many statutory water companies are already saddled with high borrowings. **In contrast**, the water authorities are going into the private sector flush with cash.* (NEWS)
>
> *All fans should be speed-controlled. **Alternatively**, a system of variable fan speed on a motorized thermostat or electronic control will give full automation on all fans.* (ACAD)

Other adverbials mark a concessive relationship: they show that the subsequent discourse expresses something contrary to the expectations raised by the preceding clause. *Though* and *anyway* are concessive adverbials:

> A: *I would love a nice new car! We won't be able to afford one for a couple years yet.*
> B: *You could afford a Mini **though**.* (CONV†)
>
> *Now that the lawyers have taken over, science will never be able to reach a verdict, and **anyway** it no longer matters.* (NEWS)

Other typical contrast/concession adverbials:

- focused primarily on contrast: *on the other hand, conversely, instead, on the contrary, in contrast, by comparison*
- focused primarily on concession: *anyhow, besides, nevertheless, still, in any case, at any rate, in spite of that, after all, yet.*

11.17.6 Transition

Transition adverbials mark the insertion of an item that does not follow directly from the previous discourse. The new information is signaled as only loosely connected, or unconnected, to the previous discourse, as in the following:

> A: *Yeah Guy I really don't like walking in the bathroom and seeing your underwear hanging off the mirror.*

B: *That's enough.*
C: <laugh>
A: *It's kind of disgusting, how do you get them to stick there* ***by the way****?*
D: *Velcro.* (CONV)

It seems clear there is nothing for it but to go back and attack the first difficulties again. ***Incidentally****, one way to motivate yourself if things do get sticky is to imagine that you have to explain the subject to the class the next day.* (ACAD)

Other transition adverbials are: *by the by, meanwhile, now.*

11.17.7 Frequency of semantic categories

Figure 11.9 shows the frequency of linking adverbials across registers. Academic prose not only has the most common use of linking adverbials; it also shows the most diversity in their meaning. Since a very important aspect of academic prose is presenting and supporting explanations and arguments, ideas often need to be overtly connected:

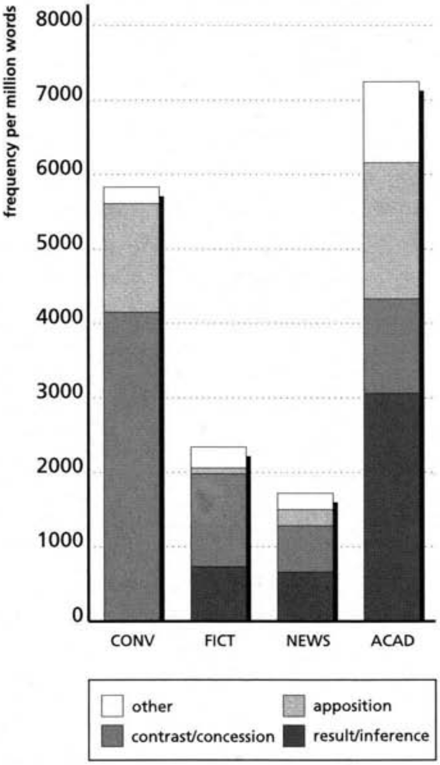

Figure 11.9
Frequencies of linking adverbials across registers

1 ***To summarize****, there is no class of healthy ruminant for which the direct effects of low air temperature per se are likely to cause intolerable stress in the temperate and cool zones of the world.* ***Moreover****, the effects of air temperature on food conversion efficiency below the critical temperature are likely to affect only the smallest animals and at a time when their daily intake is very small relative to lifetime requirements.* ***Thus*** *there are no sound economic grounds for providing any more environmental control for the healthy animal than shelter from excessive air movement and precipitation.* (ACAD)

Notice that each sentence in **1** begins with a linking adverbial. A single sentence may even contain more than one linking adverbial, as in **2**:

2 *There must,* ***in addition****, be some reason why water excretion by the kidney has failed,* ***however****, since ingestion of hypotonic fluid does not ordinarily lead to progressive dilution of body fluids.* (ACAD)

The most common types of linking adverbials in academic prose are result/inference, apposition, and contrast/concessive adverbials—all these help to structure arguments and explanations.

It may seem surprising that conversation also has a high frequency of linking adverbials (compared with news and fiction). This is mainly because of a few very high frequency items (*so*, *then*, *anyway*, and *though*, discussed in the next section). In news and fiction, on the other hand, many connections are left implicit. In the following passage, for example, the man's actions were presumably the result of the child starting to cry, but the writer uses no linking word:

> *The child had begun to cry. He went to her and bent over her, giving her a handkerchief.* (FICT)

11.18 The most common linking adverbials in conversation and academic prose

Common linking adverbials that occur over 100 times per million words are:

CONV: *so*, *then*, *though*, *anyway*
ACAD: *however*, *thus*, *therefore*, *for example*, *then*, *so*, *e.g.*, *i.e.*, *first*, *finally*, *furthermore*, *hence*, *nevertheless*, *rather*, *yet*, *for instance*, *in addition*, *on the other hand*, *that is*

The four linking adverbials commonly occurring in conversation—*so*, *then*, *though*, and *anyway*—are extremely common, averaging well over 1,000 occurrences per million words. They play important roles in the development of conversational discourse:

11.18.1 *So*

So is often used in stories in conversation. It moves the story along, making clear how one event follows from another. Some narrators use *so* repeatedly, as in the following story about a visit to the dentist:

> *He twisted it and a fragment of the tooth came off and hit me straight in the eye.* ***So*** *I've got I've got a little pinprick in my eye.* ***So*** *I'm just hoping I'm not gonna get an infection in it.* (CONV)

11.18.2 *Then*

Then is often used when one speaker sums up an inference based on another speaker's utterance:

> *A: Oh, Dad is sixty-one.*
> *B: Is he? Well* ***then*** *she must be sixty.* (CONV)

In some cases, particularly in British English conversation, *then* is part of a question, asking for confirmation of the inference that has been made:

> *A: Well she's gonna have that knocked into an archway through to a dining room*

> B: *Oh right, lovely <. . .> So the third bedroom would go right across that extension* ***then****?* (CONV†)

Then also occurs with commands or suggestions to another participant in the conversation:

> A: *It's the spears don't work – they slide off the spears that's the problem.*
> B: *Well use your spoon* ***then****.* (CONV)

11.18.3 *Though*

Though is concessive: it is used to mark contrasts between one clause and another:

> *So it should have everything, I still think that it's a bit expensive* ***though****.* (CONV)
>
> *They've got loads of dressy things for girls, not for boys* ***though****.* (CONV)

However, *though* is also often used to establish a link between speakers. The second speaker can add a remark contrasting with the previous speaker's, while at the same time not totally disagreeing with it:

> A: *That one's a nuisance.*
> B: *That one's alright* ***though****.* (CONV)

Notice that *though* makes the disagreement much softer than a marker of direct contrast, such as *but* or *however*. (In writing, on the other hand, *though* is much more often used as a subordinator introducing an adverbial clause.)

11.18.4 *Anyway*

Anyway also has important interactional functions in conversation. It is often used by speakers as they move to their main point, dismissing preceding discourse as less important or irrelevant, especially when there has been some confusion expressed in the preceding discourse, as in the discussion of sun cream in **1**:

> **1** A: *cos it wasn't in the er, in the first aid drawer.*
> B: *I don't think we've unpacked it from when we went – <. . .>*
> A: *Can always get another one* ***anyway****.* (CONV†)
>
> **2** A: *When we had the er – ITV, you know, over Christmas it said in there it was on Central but when I turned it on it wasn't at all.* ***Anyway****, we'll see.* (CONV)

In conversation, *so*, *then*, and *anyway* tend to lose some of the lexical content of linking adverbials, and to resemble discourse markers with interactional functions (like *well* and *now*; see 13.7.1, Table 13.2).

11.19 Positions of linking adverbials

The most common position for linking adverbials is initial position (Figure 11.10): here, the connection between two clauses is clearly signaled as the reader or hearer is guided from the first clause to the second. In the following examples, the reader's or hearer's processing of the discourse is helped by the initial linking adverbials that specify the relationship between clauses:

1 *She knew they weren't suited to each other, really; she didn't love him, but she couldn't give him up just yet.* ***Besides****, he wasn't the sort it was easy to give up.* (FICT)

2 *The bookmakers, showing unusual generosity, gave them a 44-point advantage on the handicap betting list.* ***Instead****, with only 10 minutes left, Dewsbury led 12–6 and a genuine upset was in the offing.* (NEWS)

3 *One is the role of the masses of third world indigenous peoples <. . ..>* ***Secondly****, it addressed the issue of the importance, in our models of economic development, of cultural factors.* (ACAD†)

Figure 11.10

Positions of linking adverbials

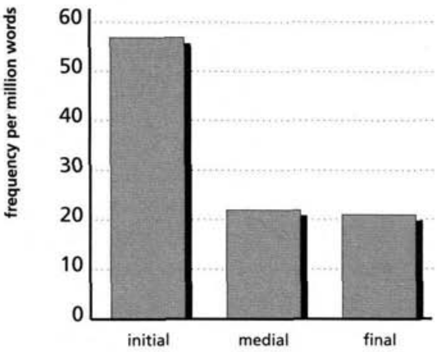

One of the most common linking adverbials in conversation—*so*—cannot occur in any position except initial:

> *People on the West Coast are a lot more relaxed <. . .>* ***So****, it would be scarier to take a job on the East Coast, that's for sure.* (CONV†)

Contrast the impossibility of:

> **It would,* ***so****, be scarier to take a job . . .*
> **It would be scarier to take a job . . .* ***so****.*

Conversation has a higher proportion of linking adverbials in final position than the other registers do. This is largely due to three common adverbials—*then*, *anyway*, and *though*—which are often placed in final position. Examples include:

> *A: And I think she's stealing stuff <. . .>. From the house.*
> *B: Does she still live at home* ***then****?* (CONV†)
>
> *A: I missed it yesterday.<. . .>*
> *B: No well you didn't miss much* ***anyway****.* (CONV†)
>
> *A: She wasn't there.*
> *B: No she was listening* ***though****.* (CONV)

Many of the linking adverbials in medial positions are common linking adverbials in academic prose. *Therefore*, *thus*, and *however* tend to occur in medial positions when they are not in initial positions, most often after the subject or operator:

4 *Einstein,* ***therefore****, set to work to try to demolish the accepted version of quantum mechanics.* (ACAD)

5 *The support of Group Communication* ***thus*** *requires: the availability of already existing interchanged information <. . .>* (ACAD†)

6 *Monopoly was* ***however*** *justified by reference to universalistic and objective criteria of recruitment and achievement.* (ACAD†)

In **4** and **5** the linking adverbial follows the subject, and in **6** it follows the operator.

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE E**: Linking adverbials

- There are six major semantic categories of linking adverbials: enumeration/addition, summation, apposition, result/inference, contrast/concession, and transition.
- The greatest use and greatest diversity of linking adverbials are found in academic prose.
  - Conversation has the second highest frequency of linking adverbials, due mostly to a few very common items, like *so*.
  - Cohesion in news and fiction depends less on explicit linking adverbials and more on chronological order or implicit connections.
- Four linking adverbials are extremely common in conversation: *so*, *then*, *though*, *anyway*. They are important in the unfolding of conversational discourse.
- Initial position is the typical position for linking adverbials generally.
  - Three of the common linking adverbials in conversation tend to appear in final position: *then*, *anyway*, *though*.

12

Word order choices

GRAMMAR BITES in this chapter

A Fronting and inversion

- Unmarked word order (i.e. normal word order)
- Different types of fronting and their uses across registers
- Different types of inversion and the uses of inversion across registers

B Existential *there* clauses

- *There* in existential clauses
- Subjects, verbs, and adverbials in existential clauses
- The function of existential *there* clauses

C Other topics in word order

- Types of dislocation
- Types and frequency of clefts
- Word order choices after the verb: the placement of objects
- Summary of syntactic choices in conversation and academic prose

12.1 Introduction

The basic word order of English is subject–verb–object (SVO), as you can see in a sentence such as:

Myrna$_{[S]}$ *makes*$_{[V]}$ *the best cucumber salad*$_{[O]}$. (CONV)

Myrna, the subject, precedes the verb *makes*, which precedes the object *the best cucumber salad*. However, different contexts may make it preferable to put elements of the clause in different places. For example, a speaker who wants to emphasize that Myrna, not someone else, makes the best cucumber salad might say:

It's Myrna who makes the best cucumber salad.

This type of construction is called **clefting** (12.12). Or a speaker who is discussing a variety of cucumber salads might start with *the cucumber salad* and say:

The best cucumber salad is made by Myrna.

This type of construction is the **passive** (discussed fully in 6.6–8). These are just two examples of ways to reorder clause elements.

In the present chapter, we discuss six grammatical devices to manipulate word order in clauses: fronting, inversion of subjects and verbs, existential *there* clauses, dislocation, clefting, and variations in the ordering of objects. Some of these devices involve simply moving elements to different positions. Others require changing the clause in more complicated ways, such as changing the verb to passive voice.

The techniques that we discuss here are used in a variety of ways to make a clause better fit its context. Four major discourse factors are important in understanding the grammatical choices that influence word order:

- information flow: given v. new information
- focus and emphasis, including end-focus and double focus
- contrast
- weight, including end-weight and balance of weight.

Because these factors are so important, we introduce them first in this chapter. However, these concepts do not explain all the reasons for word order changes. For example, irony and surprise may also be important. Also, in some registers, such as fiction, writers may simply want to make varied use of language.

12.1.1 Information flow

If we look at a clause in its discourse context, some elements refer back to information that is familiar due to the preceding discourse—i.e. given information—and other elements present new information. The typical word order in English is to start with given information and move to new. Thus, in the following example clause, the person *Mr Summers* and *the house* have already been introduced.

1 *Inside the house Mr Summers found a family of cats shut in the bathroom.* (NEWS)

The clause is first grounded in the situation that has already been mentioned—*the house* and *Mr Summers*. Then the communication advances with the information about what Mr Summers found. This typical ordering of information—from given to new—is the **information-flow principle**.

Given–new order of information contributes to the **cohesion** of a text. The given information is usually related to its previous mention, and the new information is often taken up in the following discourse. This order of information makes it easier for receivers to understand, because the clause starts with something that is familiar.

However, there are exceptions to the information-flow principle. For example, the needs of focus and emphasis, discussed in the next section, may be stronger than the need to follow the information-flow principle.

12.1.2 Focus and emphasis

In any clause, there is usually at least one point of focus. This point receives some prominence in the clause. It is apparent in speech because the strongest stress or intonation peak will occur at this point. Typically, the focus occurs naturally on the last lexical item in the clause (e.g. *the bathroom* in **1** above). The general principle governing focus is therefore known as the principle of **end-focus.** When the information-flow principle is being followed, new information, which occurs at the end of the clause, will be the focus.

However, there is another potential point of focus in a clause: the beginning. Many of the devices covered in this chapter increase the focus given to the beginning of the clause by starting with an element other than the subject. The result is a clause with double focus (or even more than two points of focus). For example, in **1** an adverbial occurs first. That adverbial—*Inside the house*, and more specifically the lexical item *house*—receives its own focus, in addition to the focus on *in the bathroom*.

When an initial element is the point of focus, it gains prominence. A complement of the verb in initial position is intensified, much as it is intensified by an adverb like *very*:

Brilliant that was! (CONV)

Here *brilliant* is intensified by being in initial focused position, before the subject. The meaning is similar to the speaker saying *That was absolutely brilliant!* The marked word order—with the complement first—gives intensification to the complement (*brilliant*).

12.1.3 Contrast

Contrast occurs when the focused part is highlighted to show its difference from another element:

It's not ***the bikers*** *– it's the* ***other vehicle*** *that's on the road.* (CONV†)

Here *the other vehicle* is focused and contrasted with *the bikers* in the preceding clause in a parallel structure. The manipulation of the sentence structure shows contrast just as the coordinator *but* and the linking adverb *however* do. The speaker, for instance, could have said: *The bikers are not a problem. However, the other vehicle is.*

12.1.4 Weight

Elements in a clause are frequently of different size and complexity, relating to their weight. For instance, a noun phrase consisting of a head noun with long premodifiers and postmodifiers is much 'heavier' than a noun phrase consisting of a single pronoun. The preferred distribution of elements in the clause is called the principle of **end-weight**: long and complex (i.e. heavier) elements are placed towards the end of the clause. This placement helps hearers and readers to follow the message more easily, because they do not have to keep in their mind complex information from the beginning of the clause as they reach the end of the clause (compare the principle of real-time processing in 13.2.5). Many heavy elements also contain a large amount of new information. The information-flow principle and end-weight principle therefore often reinforce one another.

Sometimes heavy elements are at the beginning of sentences. As described above in 12.1.2, these heavy elements then gain some prominence and they can give a clause more than one point of focus—at the end and at the beginning.

GRAMMAR BITE

A Fronting and inversion

12.2 Word order

The term 'word order' is used to refer to the order of elements in a clause: subject, verb, object, predicative, and adverbial.

The **unmarked** word order in English (i.e. clauses that contain the normal word order) has the following characteristics:

- The subject normally precedes the verb, and the verb normally precedes its complements: S + V, S + V + A, S + V + SP, S + V + DO, S + V + Prep + PO, etc.
- Independent interrogative clauses normally have subject–operator inversion (e.g. *Are you sure*?).
- All clause elements realized by *wh*-words are regularly placed in initial position. For example: *I don't know [**what** you want].* (CONV†). (Even though *what* is the object in the dependent clause (*you want what*), it is placed before the subject *you*.)
- Phrases are normally continuous. This means that a phrase is not usually broken up by another element.

12.3 Fronting

Fronting means placing in initial position a clause element which is normally found after the verb. Fronting is relatively rare in English, and it is almost always in declarative main clauses (except for the fronting of *wh*-words mentioned in the last section). However, several kinds of fronting are possible, summarized in Table 12.1.

Table 12.1 **Types of fronting**

type	examples	description
fronted object	**1** ***This*** *I do not understand.* (FICT) **2** ***Why he came this way*** *I will probably never know.* (FICT)	The object of the clause is in initial position. Many different structures occur as fronted objects, such as nouns, pronouns (**1**), and complement clauses (**2**).
fronted nominals other than object	***Whether Nancy was there or not,*** *she could not be certain.* (FICT)	A nominal structure is in initial position, such as the complement to the adjective *certain* in the example here (*She could not be certain* ***whether Nancy was there or not***).
fronted predicatives	**1** ***Far more serious*** *were the severe head injuries.* (NEWS) **2** ***The larger*** *the base* ***the easier*** *it will be to perform the action.* (ACAD) **3** ***So preoccupied*** *was she* ***that*** *she was unaware that Diana was standing in the doorway.* (FICT†)	A subject predicative is in initial position. Many structures can occur as fronted predicatives. Special cases include **proportion** clauses with *the* (**2**) and degree clauses with *so … that* (**3**). Some fronted predicatives occur with inversion (**1**, **3**).
fronted non-finite constructions	**1** *I have said he would come down and* ***come down*** *he did.* (FICT) **2** ***Waiting below*** *was Michael Sams.* (NEWS) **3** ***Enclosed*** *is a card for our permanent signature file.* (FICT†)	An infinitive (**1**), *ing*-participle (**2**) or *ed*-participle (**3**) is in initial position. Its complements are fronted with it (e.g. *down* in *come down*). Some fronted non-finite predicates occur with inversion (**2**, **3**).
fronting in dependent clauses that use *as* or *though*	**1** ***Try*** *as she might to make it otherwise <...>* (FICT†) **2** *<...>* ***unsuccessful*** *though they have been in their proposals <>* (ACAD†)	Dependent clauses that use the subordinator *as* (**1**) or *though* (**2**) sometimes have an element placed before the subordinator. (**1**) illustrates fronting of a main verb and (**2**) illustrates fronting of a predicative.

12.3.1 Fronted objects and other nominals

- Noun phrases as fronted objects:
  1 *Sandy moved ahead. '**This** I do not understand,' he said.* (FICT)
  2 *Bess was satisfied with her hair, but **her freckles** she regarded as a great and unmerited affliction.* (FICT)
  3 ***Some things*** *you forget.* ***Other things*** *you never do.* (FICT)
- Complement clauses as fronted objects:
  4 ***What it was that changed this conclusion****, I don't remember.* (FICT)

5 ***Why he came this way*** *I will probably never know.* (FICT)
6 ***What they can do****, we can do.* (FICT)
7 ***Whether Nancy was there or not****, she could not be certain.* (FICT)

- Nominals with other syntactic roles (e.g. here a subject predicative):

8 *'Pretty strange, huh?'* ***That*** *it is. I nod sadly.* (FICT)

As these examples show, most occurrences of fronting put focus on both the beginning and ending of the clause. For example, in **1**, *this* gains emphasis from its initial placement, rather than the unmarked word order *I understand this*. At the same time, *understand* has its own focus because it is the last element in the clause. In addition, many instances of fronting facilitate the information-flow principle: the fronted element refers to given information. This is particularly obvious with the fronted pronouns in **1** and **8**. Finally, several fronted objects show contrasts. For example, *her freckles* are contrasted with *her hair* in **2**, *other things* are contrasted with *some things* in **3**, and *they* with *we* in **6**.

12.3.2 Fronted predicatives

Many clauses with fronted predicatives have subject–verb inversion, but some do not. Predicative fronting with subject–verb inversion can occur with comparative and superlative forms. In the following examples, underlining signals the subject, here highlighted as new information by the inversion:

1 *The hens in the next garden: their droppings are very good dressing.* ***Best of all****, though, are the cattle, especially when they are fed on those oilcakes.* (FICT)
2 ***Far more serious*** *were the severe head injuries; in particular a bruising of the brain.* (NEWS)

Usually, the predicatives which have been fronted make a comparison with some element in the preceding discourse, and form a cohesive link. In **1**, for example, the cattle are being compared with the hens. The cohesive link is also sometimes made with the words *also* and *such*:

3 *Under stress, Sammler believed, the whole faltered, and parts (follicles, for instance) became conspicuous.* ***Such*** *at least was his observation.* (FICT)
4 ***Also popular for travelling*** *are quilted, overblown pseudo-ski jackets in pink or blue that look like duvets rampant.* (NEWS)

The organization of these examples is consistent with the information-flow principle. In **3**, for example, *such* refers to Sammler's beliefs mentioned in the previous sentence.

There are two special cases of predicative fronting. The first contains combinations of proportion clauses (see 11.9.2) marked by pairs of phrases with *the*:

5 *The more general the domain,* ***the more general, selective and tentative*** *are the statements about its style.* (ACAD) <with inversion>
6 *The larger the base* ***the easier*** *it will be to perform the action.* (ACAD) <without inversion>

Heavier subjects, as in **5**, often have subject–verb inversion. Clauses with a subject pronoun, as in **6**, often do not have inversion.

The second special type of predicative fronting concerns adjectives premodified by *so* and followed by a *that*-clause of degree. For example:

> ***So preoccupied*** *was she at this moment, she was unaware that Diana was standing in the arched doorway to the sitting room.* (FICT)
> <compare: *She was so preoccupied at this moment that she was unaware...*>
>
> ***So ruthless*** *was the IRA in its all-out onslaught against the police and the Army, it didn't care who got in its way.* (NEWS)
> <compare: *The IRA was so ruthless in its all-out onslaught that it didn't care who got in its way.*>

In these sentences, the adjective and intensifier *so* are fronted, but the *that* comparative clause is not fronted.

When the subject is an unstressed pronoun, predicatives can still be fronted but subject–verb inversion does not take place:

7 ***Right*** *you are!* (CONV)
8 ***Bloody amazing*** *it was!* (CONV) *<note: bloody* is a taboo word and may be offensive to some people>
9 ***Peter Harronson***, *he said he was called.* (FICT)

Fronting has an intensifying effect, often strengthened by the choice of words (e.g. *bloody amazing*) or by emphatic stress when spoken. The fronted material is new rather than old, which makes it a marked choice with respect to the information-flow principle. In some cases, the initial predicative highlights the main purpose of the utterance; for example, in **9**, the purpose is to establish the person's name. In **9** you can also see that the fronted predicative can be an object predicative, and can actually belong to an embedded clause (signaled by *[]* in: *He said [he was called* ***Peter Harronson****]*).

12.3.3 Fronted non-finite constructions

There are three major types of fronted non-finite constructions, corresponding to the three types of non-finite verb forms: a bare infinitive, an *ing*-participle, and an *ed*-participle.

A Fronted bare infinitive constructions

In these constructions, a non-finite verb and its complements are fronted. The subject and an auxiliary verb follow in their normal position. Emphatic *do* is used if there is no other auxiliary verb (focused elements are underlined):

1 *I had said he would come down and* ***come down*** *he did.* (FICT)
2 *But, as he said, it had to be borne, and* ***bear it*** *he did.* (FICT†)

As these examples show, fronted bare infinitives are often associated with the echo of a previous verb. The echo is not providing new information, so the fronting serves the information-flow principle and cohesion. However, the fronting also emphasizes the repeated element. Compare **2** above with the unmarked word order and typical ellipsis (marked with ^) of the repeated element in **3**:

3 *I had said he would come down and he did ^.*

Thus, the fronted infinitive predicate gives a double focus—the fronted element and the auxiliary at the end of the clause. The same is true for fronted infinitive constructions that do not echo a previous verb:

4 ***Work*** *I must, and for money.* (FICT)

In **4**, both *work* and *must* are focused elements.

B Fronted *ing*- and *ed*-constructions

Fronted *ed*- and *ing*-constructions usually occur with exceptionally long subjects. Subject–verb inversion accompanies fronted *ed*- and *ing*-constructions, so the heavy subjects (underlined below) are moved to clause-final position:

5 *Nothing on the walls, with one exception:* ***tacked over the bed*** *was a yellowed, deckel-edged photograph.* (FICT†)

6 ***Enclosed*** *is a card for our permanent signature file which we request you to sign and return to us.* (FICT)

7 *Billy beamed lovingly at a bright lavender farmhouse that had been spattered with machine-gun bullets.* ***Standing in its cock-eyed doorway*** *was a German colonel.* (FICT)

8 *The money was left on the parapet of a bridge carrying the track over an old dismantled railway line.* ***Waiting below*** *was Michael Sams, who had left a tray on the bridge parapet for the money.* (NEWS)

The order of the elements in these clauses agrees with the information-flow and end-weight principles. There is generally a reference to the preceding context early in the structures, and new information is introduced in the subject, which occurs at the end of the clause. The subjects are often indefinite noun phrases: the use of *a/an* shows their status as new information (*a photograph*, *a card*, *a colonel*). The fronted items contain definite noun phrases (*the bed*) and pronouns (*it*, *its*), showing their status as given information.

12.3.4 Fronting in dependent clauses

In dependent clauses, fronting occurs only with the subordinators *as* and *though*. For example (the dependent clause is shown in *[]*):

1 *[****Try*** *as they might], no one close to Frankie Howerd could ever improve his image.* (NEWS†)

2 *The proponents of more traditional solutions to the problem of universals, [****unsuccessful*** *though they have been in their own proposals], have made trouble for the solution in terms of individual properties.* (ACAD†)

Fronting the items in bold puts them in a conspicuous position before the subordinators and clearly emphasizes them. Notice that these are clauses of concession, and involve some contrast. In **2**, for example, *unsuccessful* is contrasted with the fact that they have still *made trouble*. You can also see that the end-focus falls on the underlined constituents.

12.3.5 Fronting in exclamations

Exclamative clauses with a *wh*-element (e.g. *How good she is!*) have obligatory fronting, since the *wh*-element has to occur in pre-subject position. However, there are other types of exclamations where fronting is optional. *Such* can be used like *what* in exclamations:

> ***Such a gift*** *he had for gesture. He looked like a king in exile.* (FICT)
> <compare: *What a gift he had for gesture*; and normal order: *He had such a gift...*>

> *And she thought:* ***Such a sure hand*** *my son has with people.* (FICT)
> <compare: *What a sure hand my son has with people.*>

In some cases, the exclamatory effect of the fronting is apparent from the use of exclamation marks:

> ***Charming*** *you are!* (FICT)
>
> ***A fine time*** *you picked to wake up! Where were you in my hour of need?* (FICT)

Fronting in exclamations is often used with irony or sarcasm, as it is in these examples.

12.3.6 The use of fronting across registers

Fronting is relatively rare in all registers, although this device is used more in fiction and academic prose than conversation or news. Further, different types of fronting are preferred in each register.

In academic prose, the most common form is predicative fronting, which aids cohesion by linking clauses:

> *In the Peruvian case study that follows, the degree to which marketwomen are independent petty commodity traders or are undergoing proletarianization is problematic.* ***Also problematic*** *is the degree to which gender may be playing a part in the proletarianization process.* (ACAD)

The fronting ties the sentences together through repetition (note the repetition of *problematic* above).

Conversation and fiction more commonly use fronting of objects. These elements are fronted for focus rather than for cohesion:

> A: *What actually does the price include?*
> B: ***That*** *I couldn't tell you.* (CONV†)
>
> *'No wet beds.* ***That*** *I won't stand.'* (FICT)
>
> ***Whether it would fire after being in the river****, I can't say.* (FICT)

In fiction, where varied sentence structure and stylistic effect are especially valued, fronting occurs more frequently than in conversation.

Although fronting is relatively rare, it is an important option for focus and cohesion; its rarity makes these effects even more conspicuous when they do occur.

12.4 Inversion

In inversion, the verb phrase or the operator comes before the subject. There are two main types of inversion (the subject is underlined):

- **subject–verb inversion** or full inversion: the subject is preceded by the entire verb phrase:

  > *Best of all* ***would be*** *to get a job in Wellingham.* (FICT†)

- **subject–operator inversion** or partial inversion: the subject is preceded only by the operator rather than by the main verb or full verb phrase:

  > *Not before in our history* ***have*** *so many strong influences* ***united*** *to produce so large a disaster.* (NEWS)

In this example, the main verb is *united* but only the auxiliary verb *have* is placed before the subject. If no other operator is present, auxiliary *do* is inserted.

> *Never again* ***did*** *I* ***think*** *of disobedience.* (FICT†)

In general, inversion serves the following discourse functions:

- cohesion and information flow (especially subject–verb inversion)
- intensification (especially subject–operator inversion)
- placement of focus (both kinds of inversion)
- end-weight (both kinds of inversion).

The different types of inversion are summarized in Table 12.2 and explained below.

Table 12.2 **Types of inversion**

type of inversion	examples	conditions commonly associated with this inversion
subject–verb	*On one long wall* ***hung a row of van Goghs.*** (FICT†)	initial adverbial (*on one long wall*)
		short intransitive verbs (*hung*)
		long subjects (*a row of van Goghs*).
subject–operator	**1** *On no account* ***must he*** *strain.* (CONV)	negative opening elements (**1** *on no account*)
	2 *So badly* ***was he*** *affected that he had to be taught to speak again.* (NEWS)	degree expressions with *so* or *such* (**2** *so badly*)
	3 *She hadn't known much about life, nor* ***had he****.* (FICT)	the linking words *so, nor, neither* (**3** *nor*)
subject–verb and subject–operator in formulaic use	*So* ***be it****.* (FICT†) *Long* ***May She*** *Reign!* (NEWS)	archaic and formal expressions

12.4.1 Subject–verb inversion

Subject–verb inversion is most often found with an initial adverbial, a short intransitive or copular verb phrase, and a long subject that introduces new information.

A Initial adverbials

Initial place and time adverbials with subject–verb inversion are especially common.

> *They found an extension to the drawing room with thigh-high cannabis plants growing in polythene bags full of compost.* ***Nearby*** *was a 400-square-yard warehouse with more plants flourishing in conditions controlled by artificial lighting and automatic watering systems.* (NEWS)
>
> *For a moment nothing happened.* ***Then*** *came voices all shouting together.* (FICT)

> ***First*** *came the scouts, clever, graceful, quiet. They had rifles.* ***Next*** *came the antitank gunner.* (FICT)

Usually these adverbials have a cohesive function. They are often tied to previous discourse, and they often show how a scene unfolds, either in physical space or through time. *Here* and *there*, defining a place relative to the speaker, are often found with inversion:

> 1 ***Here*** *comes the first question.* (FICT)
>
> 2 ***There****'s the dog. Call the dog.* (CONV)

(Notice that the place adverb *there* in **2** is different from existential *there*, explained in 12.5–10).

In academic prose, there is less need for description and time narration, but other initial adverbials are sometimes used with inversion. They usually have a clear cohesive function. For example:

> *Formaldehyde may be generated in various ways.* ***Among these*** *is heating a solution of <...>* (ACAD†)

Sometimes an adverbial particle of direction is used with inversion:

> ***In*** *came Jasper, smiling jauntily, stepping like a dancer.* (FICT)
>
> *Billy opened his eye, and* ***out*** *came a deep, resonant tone.* (FICT)

This type of inversion is used in dramatic narration, to emphasize a sudden happening.

B Short intransitive/copular verb phrases, and long subjects

You can see in the above examples that most of these verb phrases are short, consisting of either a copular or an intransitive main verb (e.g. *came*, *is*, *was*). As the following examples show, more complex verb phrases are possible, but here the delayed subject is heavier than the verb, thus following the principle of end-weight:

> *Among the sports* ***will be*** *athletics, badminton, basketball, <...>.* (NEWS†)
>
> *Also noted* ***will have been*** *the 800 metres run by under-15 Claire Duncan at Derby and the under-17 100 metres hurdling of Jon Haslam (Liverpool) which also gained Northern silver.* (NEWS)

Subject–verb inversion does not occur with a lightweight pronoun as subject:

> full noun phrase: *Then* ***came*** *the turning point of the match.* (NEWS)
>
> pronoun: *Then it* ***came*** *again like a whiplash.* (FICT) <but not: **Then came it.*>

12.4.2 Subject–operator inversion

In subject–operator inversion, only the operator (see 8.7), rather than the whole verb phrase, is placed before the subject. Apart from its regular use in forming questions, subject–operator inversion occurs under special conditions:

A Negative and restrictive opening elements

Subject–operator inversion is found after initial negative expressions such as: *neither*, *nor*, *never*, *nowhere*, *on no condition*, *not only*, *hardly*, *no sooner*, *rarely*, *scarcely*, *seldom*, *little*, *less*, *only*. (Notice that *little*, *less*, and *only* are negative in meaning.) The negative 'trigger' for inversion is usually an adverbial or a coordinating conjunction. In the following examples, the trigger element is underlined and the operator is marked in bold:

1 *A: I haven't got a copy of club rules.*
*B: Nor **have** I.* (CONV)
2 *And she said, you know, on no account **must** he strain.* (CONV)
3 *Rarely **are** all the constraints on shape, function and manufacturing clearly defined at the commencement of the activity. Even less **are** they understood and their effect, one on another, recognized by the designer.* (ACAD)

Because of the inversion, the force of the negative element is intensified. Example **3** intensifies the force further, through use of parallel structures in the two sentences.

The expression *no way* is often found in colloquial language, triggering inversion:

4 *Oh no way **do** I want to take that.* (CONV)
5 *And if the case went to trial, there wasn't a damn thing Katheryn could do to stop them. And no way **could** she get Sarah to understand that.* (FICT)

In **4**, notice that dummy *do* is used as the operator, where *do* would be used in ordinary *not* negation: *I **do**n't want to take that* (see 8.8.1).

Notice also that negative elements trigger subject–operator inversion only when they have scope over the entire clause (see negative scope in 8.8.9). Contrast **6** and **7**:

6 *In no time at all the hotels **would** be jammed to the doors.* (FICT)
7 *At no time **did** he indicate he couldn't cope.* (NEWS)

In **6**, *in no time* is a time adverbial roughly meaning 'very soon'; it does not affect the positive nature of the clause, and thus subject–operator inversion is not possible. But in **7**, *at no time* means that the entire clause is negative. A paraphrase would be: *He never indicated that he couldn't cope.* Thus, the opening element of **7** (but not **6**) has scope over the entire clause. Correspondingly only **7** has subject–operator inversion.

B Degree expressions with *so* and *such, neither* and *nor*

Subject–operator inversion occurs in clauses that begin with the degree adverb *so* followed by an adjective or adverb:

*So badly **was** he affected that he had to be taught to speak again.* (NEWS)

Similar constructions occur with *such ... that*:

*Such **is** the gravity of the situation that it has already sparked an international incident.* (NEWS)

Inversion can occur after initial *so* when it is used as a pro-form pointing back to the predicate of a preceding clause:

A: We used to watch that on T.V.
*B: Yes, so **did** I.* (CONV) <= *and I did, too*>
*As infections increased in women, so **did** infections in their babies.* (NEWS)

The initial *so* in these examples stands for given information and has a cohesive effect. The subject, containing the main new communicative point of the clause, is placed in the end-focus position after the verb.

Clauses with initial *nor* and *neither* express parallelism with a preceding negative clause. Again the inversion pattern has a cohesive effect, as the linking word refers back to given information:

> *She hadn't known much about life, nor* ***had*** *he.* (FICT)
>
> *The generalization's truth, if it is true, is not affected by how we count things in question, and neither* ***is*** *its falsehood if it is false.* (ACAD)

With *nor* and *neither*, subject–operator inversion is mandatory.

C Special cases of inversion

There are a few cases of inversion with formulaic expressions. Typically, these are felt to be archaic expressions with literary overtones.

Subjunctive verb forms (8.17) express a strong wish:

> *If you want to throw your life away,* ***so be it****, it is your life, not mine.* (FICT)
>
> *'I, Charles Seymour, do swear that I will be faithful, <. . .>* ***so help me God.****'* (FICT†)

Inversion combined with a subjunctive verb form (*be*, *help*) gives these expressions a solemn tone.

Clauses with inversion opening with the auxiliary *may* also express a strong wish:

> ***May God*** *forgive you your blasphemy, Pilot. Ye-s.* ***May he*** *forgive you and open your eyes.* (FICT)
>
> *The XJS may be an ageing leviathan but it is still a unique car. Long* ***may it*** *be so!* (NEWS)

12.4.3 Inversion in dependent clauses

Although inversion is most common in independent clauses, it also occurs in dependent clauses.

A Opening adverbials and opening negatives

Adverbials and negatives that begin a dependent clause (signaled by underlining in **1** and **2**) can take inversion just as they do with independent clauses. Notice the inversion after the relativizer in **1**:

1. *In the centre of the green was a pond, beside it was a wooden seat on which* ***sat*** *two men talking.* (FICT)
2. *Introspection suggests that only rarely* ***do*** *we consciously ponder the pronunciations of words.* (ACAD)

Dependent clauses also have some special cases of inversion. These are summarized in Table 12.3. The particularly interesting cases of interrogative clauses and reported clauses are discussed below.

B Dependent interrogative clauses with 'semi-direct speech'

Dependent *yes/no* interrogative clauses (marked by *[]* below) are usually introduced by *whether* or *if* and have ordinary subject–verb order, as in:

> *I asked them [if* ***they would*** *hurry it up a bit].* (FICT)

An informal alternative is to use subject–operator inversion:

Table 12.3 Special types of inversion in dependent clauses

type of dependent clause	examples	description
comparative clauses with *as* and *than*	*Independent agencies are in a better position to offer personal service* ***than are those*** *tied to big chains.* (NEWS†)	The operator follows the subordinator *as* or *than*. Usually in formal writing.
some clauses of manner	*Charlotte was fascinated,* ***as were the other guests.*** (FICT)	The operator follows the subordinator *as*.
conditional clauses that are hypothetical or tentative and use *had*, *should*, or *were*	**1** ***Should either of these situations*** *occur, wrong control actions may be taken.* (ACAD) **2** ***Were it*** *running more slowly, all geologic activity would have proceeded at a slower pace.* (ACAD)	The verbs *had*, *should*, or *were* come before the subject. The alternative form is to use the subordinator *if* (**1** *If either of these situations occur* . . .).
conditional clauses that present alternatives or universals	**1** *When the going gets tough, it's these people who react best –* ***be it*** *a natural disaster, accident or sudden emergency.* (NEWS) **2** <. . .> *[He] has somewhat desperately tried to make up his mind to utter his whole self,* ***come what may.*** (ACAD†)	Alternative clauses can be paraphrased with *whether it/he/she/they is/are*. The subjective *be* is used. For (**1**) compare: *whether it is a natural disaster*. Universal clauses express a condition that is universally true. They can be paraphrased with *whatever*. For (**2**) compare: *whatever may come.*
interrogative clauses	*And she said* ***would we*** *like these shirts.* (CONV)	The inversion gives the sentence characteristics of both direct and indirect speech.
reporting clauses	*'That's the whole trouble,'* ***said Gwen,*** *laughing slightly.* (FICT)	The reporting clause may have subject–verb inversion. Inversion is not usual, however, when the clause subject is a pronoun (*said she*).

3 *The young man who had seen Mac in Westmoreland Street asked [**was it** true that Mac had won a bet over the billiard match].* (FICT)

4 *She needed a backing guitarist and asked Kieran, who she had met once or twice on the road, [**would he** help out].* (NEWS)

5 *And she said [**would we** like these shirts].* (CONV)

This pattern represents a compromise between direct and indirect speech. It preserves the subject–operator inversion of the independent interrogative clause, but pronouns and verbs have been adjusted to show the reporting situation. Compare, for example, these alternatives for the semi-direct speech in example **5**:

direct speech: *And she said, 'Would you like these shirts?'*

indirect speech: *And she asked whether we would like these shirts.*

C Reporting clauses

Reporting clauses are direct quotations of a person's speech or thought. They are on the borderline between independent and dependent clauses. They contain some kind of reporting verb, which can be a simple verb of speaking/thinking (e.g. *say, think*) or a related verb identifying a manner of speaking (e.g. *mutter, shriek*), the type of speech act (e.g. *offer, promise*), or the phase of speaking (e.g. *begin, continue*). Such clauses often have subject–verb inversion:

> *'That's the whole trouble', **said Gwen**, laughing slightly.* (FICT)
>
> *Fifties and post impressionist, **thought Alexander**, connecting.* (FICT)
>
> *Councils, **argues Mr Cawley**, are being hit by an unenviable double whammy.* (NEWS)

As these examples show, quotation marks are not always present.

In news, reporting clauses can also be used for attributions of written text:

> *Where farming used to be the only viable source of income, hundreds of people have found regular work, **reveals Plain Tales from Northern Ireland**.* (NEWS†)

There is a strong preference for unmarked word order—that is, subject before verb—under any of these three conditions:

- where the subject is an unstressed pronoun:
  > *'The safety record at Stansted is first class', **he said**.* (NEWS)
- where the verb phrase is complex (containing auxiliary plus main verb):
  > *'Konrad Schneider is the only one who matters', **Reinhold had answered**.* (FICT)
- where the verb is followed by a noun or pronoun that names the addressee:
  > *There's so much to living that I did not know before, **Jackie had told her happily**.* (FICT)

The conditions of inversion in reporting clauses are similar to those for all inversion. Usually inversion is influenced by the end-weight and information-flow principles. A weighty element and/or an element deserving emphasis is last. However, inversions sometimes occur in unexpected conditions, such as with this subject pronoun:

> *'We may all be famous, then,' **said he**.* (FICT)

12.4.4 Inversion across registers

Figure 12.1
Approximate frequency of inversion

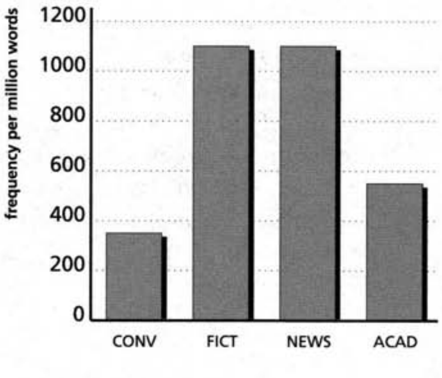

Figure 12.1 shows that inversion is a relatively rare phenomenon, although it is somewhat more common in the written registers. In fiction and in news, inversion is most common in reporting clauses, where it accounts for more than half the total occurrences.

Conversation has certain fixed patterns involving inversion, for example *so am I*, and *there's/here's* ... (where *here* and *there* are deictic adverbs, as in *Here comes your mother*). However, the time for planning and editing in the written registers makes it easier to achieve the variety of word order required for inversion.

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE A**: Fronting and inversion

- ➤ Many types of clause elements can be fronted (i.e. moved to the front of a clause): objects, nominals other than objects, predicatives, non-finite constructions, and some elements in dependent clauses.
- ➤ Fronting is generally infrequent, but the frequency of each type varies across the registers.
- ➤ Fronting is typically used for cohesion and for special emphasis and contrast.
- ➤ Inversion has two primary forms: subject–verb and subject–operator inversion. Other types of inversion occur in dependent clauses.
- ➤ Inversion can be used for cohesion, information flow, intensification and placement of focus.

GRAMMAR BITE

B Existential *there* clauses

12.5 Existential *there*

Existential *there* is a device used to state the existence or occurrence of something (or its non-existence or non-occurrence). It is used with an intransitive or copular verb. Most typically, a clause with existential *there* has the following structure:

there* + *be	**+ indefinite noun phrase**	**(+ place or time position adverbial)**
There's	*a bear*	*sitting in the corner.*

For example:

1 *A man goes in the pub.* ***There's*** *a bear sitting in the corner. He goes up to the, he goes up to the bartender. He says, why* ***is there*** *a bear sitting over there?* (CONV)

2 ***There are*** *around 6,000 accidents in the kitchens of Northern Ireland homes every year.* (NEWS)

The noun phrase following *be* is called the **notional subject**. Thus, in **1**, *a bear* is the notional subject, and in **2**, *around 6,000 accidents* is the notional subject. Typically, the notional subject is an indefinite noun phrase.

Clauses with existential *there* are called existential clauses. The main function of existential clauses is to introduce new information, which is presented in the indefinite noun phrase, the notional subject.

12.5.1 The grammatical status of existential *there*

Existential *there* is a function word. It developed from the place adverb *there*, but it no longer has a meaning of place. Existential *there* differs from the place adverb *there* in the following ways:

- Phonologically, it is normally reduced to /ðə(r)/.
- The original place meaning is lost.
- Syntactically, it functions as a subject rather than an adverbial.

You can easily see the difference between existential *there* and adverbials when existential *there* occurs in the same clause as the place adverbs *there* or *here* (underlined in these examples):

1 ***There****'s more gravy here.* (CONV)
2 ***There****'s still no water there, is* ***there****?* (CONV)

Existential there is an empty grammatical element. It has no lexical meaning. The place adverbs do have meaning and can be paraphrased: *here* = in this place, *there* = in that place.

Syntactically, existential *there* behaves like a grammatical subject. It is placed before the verb in declarative sentences, and as **2** and **3** show, it can be used with inversion in questions and question tags.

3 *Is* ***there*** *a microphone we can borrow?* (CONV)

Existential *there* can also occur as the subject of a non-finite clause:

*N may be too large for [****there*** *to be room for that number].* (ACAD)

*The paramedics arrived just in time, and there was some question of [****there*** *being brain damage this time].* (FICT)

Such non-finite existential clauses are relatively rare, however. They usually occur in academic prose.

Place *there* and existential *there* have very different patterns of distribution across the registers, as you can see in Figure 12.2. Place *there* is very common in conversation and very rare in academic prose, reflecting differences in the importance of physical setting for the registers. In conversation, the setting is shared by speaker and addressee. It makes sense to refer to *here* and *there*. The same is true of fictional dialog. But in news and academic prose, there is no shared physical setting. The frequency of the place adverb *there* is therefore low. When place *there* does occur, it usually refers to a place in the text rather than the physical setting: e.g. <...> *references for further reading given* ***there*** (ACAD†).

Figure 12.2
Existential v. locative *there*

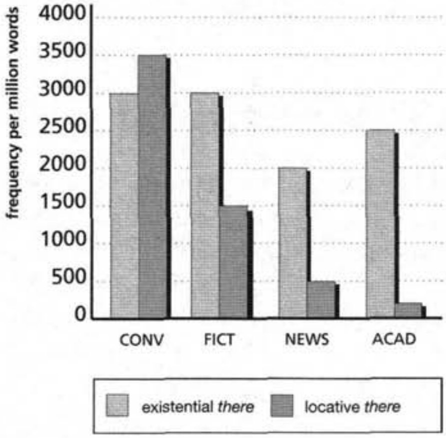

In contrast to place *there*, existential *there* is relatively common in all four registers.

12.6 The verb in existential *there* clauses

The great majority of existential *there* clauses contain a form of the verb *be*. It may be preceded by auxiliaries or semi-modals: *has been, will be, is to be, is supposed to be, used to be*, etc. *Be* may also occur in a *to*-infinitive complement, where the controlling lexical verb expresses a kind of stance: *happen to be, tend to be, appear to be, is said to be*, etc.:

> *There* ***used to be*** *a – a house on the end of the common up at Clarendon Road.* (CONV†)
>
> *If you want to know, there* ***is supposed to be*** *a plot between you and me to get hold of his wealth.* (FICT)
>
> *There* ***seem to have been*** *a lot of people who took up painting for a while and then dropped it.* (NEWS)
>
> *There* ***is said to be*** *a mismatch between the mother tongue and the target language at these points.* (ACAD)

Existential clauses can also contain verbs other than *be*, usually intransitive verbs of existence or occurrence:

> *Somewhere deep inside her there* ***arose*** *a desperate hope that he would embrace here.* (FICT)
>
> *There* ***seems*** *no likelihood of a settlement.* (NEWS)

Existential *there* clauses with verbs other than *be* are generally rare. *Exist* is the most common alternative to *be*. It is used almost entirely in academic prose, where it has a more formal sound than *be*:

> *There* ***exist*** *innate conventions through which human artifacts convey meaning.* (ACAD†)
>
> *There now* ***exists*** *an extensive literature on the construction and use of social indicators in a variety of contexts.* (ACAD†)

Fiction has a greater variety of verbs in existential clauses. These include *come* and *seem* as well as a variety of less common verbs: *arise, ascend, break out, emerge, erupt, float, flow, flutter*, etc.

> *There* ***came*** *a faint stirring in his entrails.* (FICT†)
>
> *There* ***followed*** *a frozen pause.* (FICT†)
>
> *There* ***remained*** *something unmistakably clerical in his manner.* (FICT†)

12.7 The notional subject

The notional subject is the noun phrase that functions logically as the subject of the clause. Since *there* has no content, the notional subject is what the clause is mainly about. Usually, the notional subject is an indefinite noun phrase.

There won't be ***a mass.*** (CONV)

There was ***nobody*** *here yesterday.* (CONV)

Many notional subjects are structurally complex:

There is ***something extra and a little heroic about him.*** (FICT†)

There must be ***an enormous sense of isolation, of being aware of being let down.*** (NEWS)

The notional subject can also be followed by a post-modifying clause:

There's a cow ***standing in the middle of the road.*** (CONV†)
<compare: *A cow is standing in the middle of the road.*>

There are two scales of temperature ***used in science.*** (ACAD)
<compare: *Two scales of temperature are used in science.*>

Existential clauses also sometimes have notional subjects that are definite noun phrases or proper nouns. For example:

First there was ***the scandal of Fergie romping with John Bryan, pictured exclusively in the Mirror.*** (NEWS)

There is also ***the group of non-benzenoid aromatic compounds.*** (ACAD)

As in these examples, the definite noun phrases usually occur when a series of new information elements is introduced, often marked explicitly with a linking adverbial or additive adverb (e.g. *first, also*).

12.8 Adverbials in existential clauses

Often the important information of an existential clause is not simply that something exists, but when or where it exists. Thus, existential clauses often contain a time or place adverbial.

I said, well, there's a wheelbarrow ***down there.*** (CONV)

There are no trains ***on Sundays.*** (NEWS†)

As in these examples, the adverbial is often at the end of the clause. However, initial and medial placement is also possible:

1 ***Near the peak*** *there were no more trees, just rocks and grass.* (FICT)
2 *There rose* ***to her lips*** *always some exclamation of triumph over life when things came together in this peace, this rest, this eternity.* (FICT)

The placement of the adverbials is affected by the same conditions as adverbials of place and time in general (see 11.8). For example, in **1**, the adverbial creates cohesion in the text because it relates to previously mentioned information. The ordering agrees with the information-flow principle, with new information at the end of the clause.

12.9 Simple v. complex existential clauses

We have just described two ways that existential clauses can be expanded: with postmodification of the notional subject and with adverbials. Figure 12.3 shows that the majority of existential clauses have one or both kinds of expansion. Two elements of existential clauses contain little or no information: the verb (*be*, in most cases) and the grammatical subject *there*. As a result, it is not surprising that most existential clauses have additional information in adverbials or postmodifiers of the notional subject.

Figure 12.3
Existential clauses with and without expansion

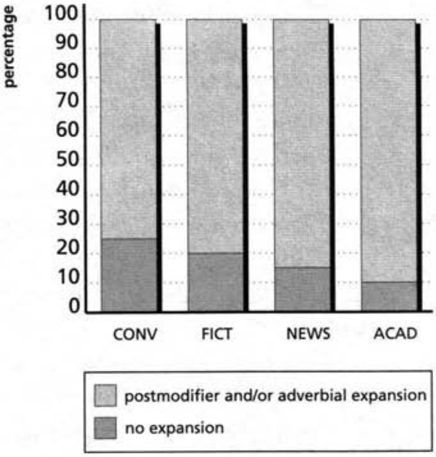

Consider these existential clauses that have both forms of expansion—an adverbial prepositional phrase and a postmodifying relative clause:

1 *There's stuff [in here] we need.* (CONV)

2 *In most cases a syllable is represented by only one character, but there are many cases [among the 558] in which the same syllable is written in more ways than one.* (ACAD†)

You can see that, without the expansion, the clauses would not convey much information: *There's stuff* (**1**), *There are many cases* (**2**). What is strange about **1** and **2** is that the relative clause (underlined) is separated from the rest of the notional subject by the adverbial (marked by *[]*). This is a symptom of the rather loose way in which expansions are added to the end of the notional subject.

Existential clauses without expansion occur in all four registers, but they are most common in conversation. There is a tendency in speech to present information in smaller chunks and to leave more for the listener to infer. These minimal existential clauses are often negative:

> *There's no bus.* (CONV)
>
> *Yeah, there really is no excuse, is there?* (CONV)

In these cases, the negative itself is important information.

12.10 Discourse functions of existential clauses

A Focusing on a new topic

It is often said that existential *there* is used to introduce new elements into the discourse. However, consider the example at the beginning of this Grammar Bite:

> *A man goes in the pub. **There**'s a bear sitting in the corner. He goes up to the, he goes up to the bartender. He says, why is **there** a bear sitting over there?* (CONV)

Notice that the first sentence introduces a new element: *a man*. However, this sentence does not use existential *there*. Instead, existential *there* is used twice when introducing the bear into the discourse. Significantly, the bear is the main 'character' in the story. Furthermore, when this utterance is spoken, stress falls on *bear*.

From this example, you see that existential *there* is used especially to focus on the existence or occurrence of something. Not only is this 'something new', but it is probably going to be a focus of the continuing discourse. Since existential *there* delays the new information until later in the clause, it is consistent with the information-flow principle. Often the new information comes at the end of the clause, thereby receiving end-focus.

One context where it is appropriate to focus on the existence of 'something new' is at the beginning of a story. Thus, fairytales often open with an existential clause:

> *Once upon a time* ***there were*** *three bears. Mama bear, Papa bear, baby bear – They all went for a walk down the woods.* (CONV) <mother reading to child>

Sometimes in informal narrative, the notional subject is further emphasized with the use of a demonstrative pronoun:

> *There was* ***this really good-looking bloke*** *and he was like – We, we'd given each other eyes over the bar in this pub and Lottie goes, well if you don't hurry up with him I'm gonna go and have him.* (CONV†) <note: *goes* = says>
>
> *There was* ***this wonderful little old lady*** *called the tissue collector. She was grey haired, quite dumpy with a white coat on and she came to collect sperm if you wanted it stored. She came up in front of my parents* <. . .> (NEWS†)

Again, notice that the narrative continues with further reference to the person introduced with existential *there*.

B Introducing a series of new items

Existential *there* is also used to develop text in another way. It is used to introduce a series of items:

> ***There are*** *many types of aid to medical decision making available. The earliest ones used* <. . .> (ACAD†)
>
> ***There*** *are three basic rules to consider in planning a farm enterprise:* <. . .> (ACAD†)

The existential clause sets up the elements that are to follow. Existential clauses also often introduce a series of 'new things' separately. For example:

1 *But* ***there was*** *a stillness about Ralph as he sat that marked him out:* ***there was*** *his size, and the attractive appearance; and most, obscurely, yet most powerfully,* ***there was*** *the conch.* (FICT)

2 *It was like heaven.* ***There was*** *candlelight, and* ***there were*** *bunks with quilts and blankets heaped on top.* ***There was*** *a table with a bottle of wine and a loaf of bread and a sausage on it.* ***There were*** *four bowls of soup.* ***There were*** *pictures of castles and lakes and pretty girls on the walls.* (FICT)

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE B**: Existential *there* clauses

- Existential *there* is a grammatical subject but has no meaning content.
- Most existential clauses have the verb *be*, but the written registers use alternatives such as *exist*, *come*, and *follow*.
- The 'idea subject' of the existential clause is called the notional subject. It is usually an indefinite noun phrase.
- Many existential *there* clauses have adverbials or postmodification of the notional subject. This is because the obligatory elements of the clause usually contain little information.
- Existential clauses are used to introduce a new element (or series of elements) which is going to be the focus of the following discourse.

GRAMMAR BITE
C Other topics in word order

12.11 Dislocation

Dislocation has to do with how information is distributed in spoken language. It is not a simple word order option, but involves breaking up a clause-like structure into two separate chunks. A definite noun phrase is placed at one end of the clause, and a co-referential pronoun is used in the core of the clause. In the following example, | separates the two chunks, which each express an important piece of information:

> ***This little shop*** | *it's lovely.* (CONV)

The unmarked sentence structure would be: *This little shop is lovely.* With dislocation, *this little shop* is placed in initial position and repeated with the 'proxy' pronoun *it* in the core of the clause.

There are two types of dislocation. The above example is a **preface**: the definite noun phrase occurs in initial position. The definite noun phrase can also be after the clause—this is termed a **noun phrase tag**:

> *I think he's getting hooked on the taste of Vaseline,* ***that dog.*** (CONV)

12.11.1 Prefaces

Prefaces can precede both declarative and interrogative clauses. The relationship between the preface and its clause varies. In many cases, the preface is co-referential with a subject pronoun (underlined in the examples):

1 ***Sharon*** *she plays bingo on Sunday night.* (CONV)
2 ***That picture of a frog,*** *where is it?* (CONV)
3 '***That crazy Siberian, what's his name,*** *he got one of the best houses in town.*' (FICT†)

A preface can also be co-referential with an object pronoun:

4 *Well* ***Bryony*** *it seemed to be a heavy cold that was making her feel miserable.* (CONV)

5 *'But **Anna-Luise** – what could have attracted her to a man in his fifties?'* (FICT)

The pronoun can even be embedded in a dependent clause, as it is in **4** (*that was making her feel miserable*).

12.11.2 Noun phrase tags

Noun phrase tags may follow both declarative and interrogative clauses. The tag normally refers back to the subject of the preceding clause:

*Has it got double doors, **that shop**?* (CONV)

*Did they have any, **the kids**?* (CONV)

Sometimes the noun phrase tag is a demonstrative pronoun rather than a definite noun phrase:

*It was a good book **this**.* (CONV)

12.11.3 Functions and distribution of prefaces and noun phrase tags

Prefaces and noun phrase tags are relatively common in conversation, and they also occur occasionally in fictional dialog; they are very rare in ordinary written prose.

Prefaces serve to establish a topic. The same work can be done by separate clauses:

A: *When I went to the hospital today, **there was this girl, right**.*
B: *Yes.*
A: ***She** took an overdose.* (CONV†)

Prefaces are also a sign of the evolving nature of conversation. Notice how the first speaker appeals to the addressee by adding the discourse marker *right*. The addressee responds, and then the first speaker goes on to the main point.

The discourse functions of noun phrase tags are more difficult to pinpoint. Frequently they seem to have a clarifying function. It is possible that the speaker, after using a pronoun, may realize that the listener will not understand the referent, and thus the noun phrase tag is necessary clarification. Some noun phrases also seem to serve the principle of end-weight:

*'It must have come as a bit of a shock, **the idea of, er, Rhiannon coming and settling down here after everything**.'* (FICT)

When tags consist of a demonstrative pronoun, they obviously do not fit either the end-weight principle or the clarification function. In sentences such as the following, end-focus seems to give the noun phrase extra emphasis:

*That's marvelous **that**, isn't it yes?* (CONV)

12.12 Clefting

Clefting is similar to dislocation because information that could be given in a single simple clause is broken up. For clefting, the information is broken into two clauses, each with its own verb. There are two major types of cleft constructions: *it*-clefts and *wh*-clefts.

- *it*-cleft:

  1 *It's a man I want.* (FICT)
  <compare: *I want a man.*>

- *wh*-cleft:

  2 *What I want is something to eat, now!* (CONV)
  <compare: *I want something to eat.*>

Clefts are used to bring particular elements of the clause into additional focus, often for contrast. The extra focused element normally appears early in *it*-clefts and late in *wh*-clefts. Thus, in **1** *a man* is focused, and in **2** *something to eat* is focused. Both of these are direct objects in the basic clause structure *I want X.*

12.12.1 *It*-clefts

It-clefts consist of:

- the pronoun *it*
- a form of the verb *be*, optionally accompanied by *not* or an adverb such as *only*
- the focused element, which may be of the following types: a noun phrase, a prepositional phrase, an adverb phrase, or an adverbial clause
- a relative-like dependent clause introduced by *that*, *who/which*, or zero.

In the examples below, the specially focused element is in bold and the dependent clause is in *[]*:

- noun phrase:

  His eyes were clear and brown and filled with an appropriate country shyness. It was ***his voice*** *[that held me].* (FICT)

- prepositional phrase:

  It was only ***for the carrot*** *[that they put up with his abominable parties].* (FICT)

- adverb:

  It is ***here*** *[that the finite element analysis comes into its own].* (ACAD)

- adverbial clause:

  It was ***because they were frightened****, he thought, [that they had grown so small].* (FICT)

You can see that the focused element has various syntactic roles as well. For example, in **1**, *his voice* acts as subject of the dependent clause: *his voice held me.* In **2**, the focused prepositional phrase is a reason adverbial: *they put up with his abominable parties for the carrot.*

A rare variant of *it*-clefts has the focused element in initial position:

The ceremony was in the hands of Mr Alexander Dubcek <. . .> ***He*** *it was [who ushered in the new head of state to the dais]* <. . .> (NEWS†)

The combination of fronting and the *it*-cleft construction has a heightening effect. The meaning suggested is 'it was he and no one else'.

12.12.2 *Wh*-clefts

Wh-clefts consist of:

- a clause introduced by a *wh*-word, usually *what*; this clause has its own point of focus, usually at the end of the *wh*-clause
- a form of the verb *be*
- the specially focused nominal element: a noun phrase or a complement clause.

The specially focused element is in bold in the examples below, and the dependent *wh*-clause is placed in *[]*:

- noun phrase:

  [What I really need] is ***another credit card.*** (CONV)
- bare infinitive phrase:

  [What you should do] is ***tag them when they come in.*** (CONV)
- *to*-infinitive clause:

  [What he did] was ***to go to Holy Trinity Church.*** (FICT†)

Wh-clefts are less flexible than *it*-clefts in that they cannot be used to focus on a prepositional phrase:

> *It is* ***to that boy*** *[that she has remained faithful].* (FICT)
> <but not: **What she has remained faithful is to that boy.*>

On the other hand, *wh*-clefts have an advantage over *it*-clefts because they have a double emphasis: they give some emphasis to the opening nominal clause as well as to the element in final position.

12.12.3 Reversed and demonstrative *wh*-clefts

In general, reversed *wh*-clefts look like ordinary *wh*-clefts except that the *wh*-clause and the focused element switch positions. In the following, the reversed *wh*-clefts are underlined:

1 *There's a lot more darkness in this second TV series compared with the last one but* ***darkness*** *is [what comedy is all about]. (NEWS†)*

2 *'Poor Albert,' Carrie said <. . .> He heard what she said and shouted down to her, '****Help*** *is [what I want], not your pity.'* (FICT†)

In some cases, as in **1**, the focused element is picked up from the preceding text (here, *darkness*). This accounts for its early placement. In **2** the initial placement seems to be used to emphasize the contrast between *help* and *pity*.

Another related structure has a demonstrative pronoun (usually *that*) followed by a form of *be* plus a dependent clause introduced by a *wh*-word:

> ***That****'s [how I spent my summer vacation].* (FICT)
>
> ***This*** *is [what it means to say such systems are effective mixing devices].* (ACAD)

These structures usually cannot be reversed *(*How I spent my summer vacation is that*). Similar to many reversed *wh*-clefts, they open with a reference to preceding text. We refer to them as demonstrative *wh*-clefts.

12.12.4 Distribution of cleft constructions

Figure 12.4
Frequency of cleft types

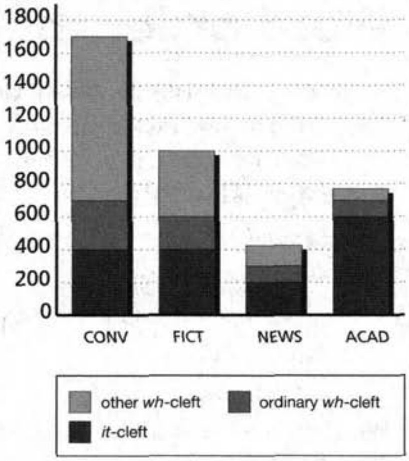

Figure 12.4 shows that both conversation and the written registers use clefts, but the different types of clefts have different distributions across the registers.

It-clefts are relatively common in all registers but most common in academic prose. *It*-clefts are typically contrastive:

> *But it wasn't **the colour of his eyes** [that was peculiar to him], it was the way he walked.* (FICT)

Because the focused elements occurs early in the sentence, the *it*-cleft is suitable for expressing a connection with the preceding discourse:

> *These are the faculties which make clerks into merchants, and merchants into millionaires. It is **these** [which enable the discontented clerk to earn more than eighty pounds a year].* (ACAD)

It-clefts can allow very precise statements to be made. They are also particularly useful in academic prose for presenting information as 'given', or known. Consider this example:

> *It is in fact the case that whereas not all the early investigators even tried to validate their reasoning, several, including Cauchy, Servois and Boole, certainly did. And it was **in this connection** [that Servois, in 1815, introduced the notions of functions which are 'distributive' and 'commutative', terms still used today].* (ACAD†)

The information in the subordinate clause is presented as known, or taken for granted. Such clefts often occur in written texts, where they help to draw the line between what is presupposed and what is treated as new information.

Wh-clefts are more associated with conversation than the written registers. The focused element in *wh*-clefts is at the end, in agreement with the information-flow principle. The purpose of the construction is to signal what is taken as background and what is the main communicative point:

> *No that's Nescafe. [What we usually have] is **Maxwell House from work**.* (CONV)

This example occurred in a context where different sorts of coffee are discussed. The main communicative point is at the end of the sentence. That is, the new information is about *Maxwell House*. *Wh*-clefts are often used in conversations as a starting point for an utterance: *what I think . . . , what I want to say . . . , what we need . . . , what this means . . .*

Demonstrative *wh*-clefts show the biggest differences across registers: relatively common in conversation but very rare in academic prose. The difference is probably one of formality and also the low information content that is common in these *wh*-clauses:

> *That's what I thought.* (CONV†)

12.13 Word order choices after the verb

In general, there is little variation in the order of the core elements towards the end of the clause. However, there are a few options worth considering.

12.13.1 The placement of direct objects and indirect objects

Ditransitive verbs often allow two options that are equivalent in meaning:

- indirect object + direct object:

  I'll fix [you$_{<\text{IO}>}$ *] [some tea*$_{<\text{DO}>}$ *] later.* (FICT)

- direct object + preposition *to* or *for* + prepositional object:

  I'll fix [it$_{<\text{DO}>}$ *] [for [you*$_{<\text{PO}>}$ *]].* (FICT)

For the indirect object + direct object pattern, the principle of end-weight is most important. The indirect object is very short in most cases:

> *The Academy never granted [**him**] [the membership that was his life's ambition].* (NEWS)

In the prepositional pattern, the prepositional phrase is often longer than the direct object. In addition, the prepositional phrase is often a clearer way to communicate the syntactic relationship. The prepositional phrase may even be placed before the direct object:

> *This irregularity in her features was not grotesque, but charming, and gave [to [Anastasia's face*$_{<\text{PO}>}$ *]][a humor she herself did not possess*$_{<\text{DO}>}$ *].* (FICT)

12.13.2 Pronoun sequences as direct and indirect objects

Where both the direct and the indirect objects are personal pronouns, there are three major patterns:

1. direct object + *to*-phrase: *'Give **it to me**, Pauli.'* (FICT)
2. indirect object + direct object: *Give **me it**, you little cow!* (CONV) <note: *cow* is an insult here>
3. direct object + indirect object: '*Do let me give **it him***', *she said.* (FICT)

The first pattern, direct object + *to*-phrase, is the most common in all the registers. This is probably because it is the clearest way to mark the syntactic relationships in the clause. In patterns **2** and **3**, there is no overt signal to show which pronoun is the indirect object and which the direct. The correct interpretation must be determined from the context. Pattern **2**, indirect object + direct object, occurs almost exclusively in conversation. Pattern **3** occurs in conversation and fiction, but is relatively rare in both.

12.13.3 Clauses with direct object and object predicative

A direct object usually precedes an object predicative. However, the object may be postponed to the end position under particular circumstances. In the following examples, the object predicative is underlined and the postponed direct object is marked in bold:

> *Each region has a responsibility to create and make available* ***a collection of contemporary work***. (NEWS†)
> <compare: *Each region has a responsibility to create a collection of contemporary work and make* ***it*** *available.*>

The object predicative is light in such cases in comparison with the direct object, which is long and complex. Where the direct object is a pronoun or a short noun-headed phrase, it must precede the object predicative.

> *I can make* ***you*** *available to people, yeah?* (CONV†)
> <compare: **I can make available to people you.*>
> *He made* ***it*** *impossible.* (FICT)
> <compare: **He made impossible it.*>

12.13.4 Placement of objects of phrasal verbs

For transitive phrasal verbs, direct objects (DO) can be placed before or after the adverbial particle (AP). In the following examples, the adverbial particle is underlined, and the direct object is marked in bold:

1 *Why do you like picking up* ***the telephone*** *so much?* (CONV)
2 *How fast can you pick* ***it*** *up?* (CONV)

Where the direct object is a pronoun, it is usually placed between the verb and the particle (over 90 per cent of the time), as in **2**. However, when the direct object is an indefinite pronoun, it is often placed after the adverbial particle:

> *He's going to – er – pick up* ***somebody*** *somewhere.* (CONV†)
> *He sent out* ***someone*** *to capture the bounty hunter.* (FICT†)

When the direct object is a full noun, there is more variation in its placement. In conversation, over 60 per cent of the occurrences have the order direct object + adverbial particle. However, in the written registers less than 10 per cent of the occurrences have this order. In general, placement follows the principle of end-weight, with heavy direct objects placed after the adverbial particle.

Two other factors are particularly interesting in the placement of the direct object. First, the placement depends somewhat on the nature of the phrasal verb. Some phrasal verbs, such as *take up* and *make out*, are idiomatic. That is, *up* and *out* do not have their literal meanings. In these cases, adverbial particle + direct object is preferred. Other phrasal verbs can have a more literal meaning, such as *take out*, where *out* still has a spatial meaning. In these cases, direct object + adverbial particle is more usual. You can see the contrast in the following examples with *carry out*, which has both an idiomatic and literal meaning:

- idiomatic meaning, adverbial particle + direct object:

  Now carry out ***the instructions.*** (FICT)

- literal meaning, direct object + adverbial particle:

  The Germans carried ***the corpse*** *out.* (FICT)

The second factor is the use of adverbials. Typically, direct object + adverbial particle is preferred when the particle is followed by an adverbial. For example:

Paul took ***his friend*** *up to the top floor.* (FICT)

Last week a husband took ***his wife*** *out for a drive.* (NEWS†)

In these cases, the particle and adverbial are closely related in meaning and so are placed together.

12.14 Summary: syntactic choices in conversation v. academic prose

With the exception of existential clauses, the special word-order choices covered in this chapter are relatively rare. This does not mean that the devices are unimportant. When they are used well, they can contribute greatly to the coherence and effectiveness of a text. The devices that are chosen most often, however, vary across the registers. For a final review of these patterns of variation, we focus on conversation and academic prose, the registers which tend to differ the most. (Although the passive was discussed in an earlier chapter (6.6–8), we include it here. Other structures, like extraposition (Ch. 10) and adverbial position (Ch. 11) have been fully described in earlier chapters.)

In the following, + and – indicate higher v. lower relative frequency:

	CONV	ACAD
marked word order (fronting, inversion, etc.)	–	+
passive constructions	–	+
existential *there*	+	–
prefaces and noun phrase tags	+	–
demonstrative *wh*-clefts	+	–

As you can see, marked word order and passive constructions are more common in academic prose. These choices are more complex structures, reflecting the complexity of academic content and the opportunity to edit and rewrite.

Existential *there*, prefaces, noun phrase tags, and demonstrative *wh*-clefts are more common in conversation. Conversation is produced without planning and editing, and production demands are eased by the use of prefaces and tags and, in general, by shorter and simpler clauses—including short existential clauses. The language of conversation is also less varied and relies more on brief stereotyped expressions, including demonstrative *wh*-clefts such as *That's what I thought.*

Review

Major points of **GRAMMAR BITE C**: Other topics in word order

➤ There are several additional ways of manipulating word order for such purposes as focus, cohesion, contrast, and end-weight.

➤ There are two types of dislocation: prefaces and noun phrase tags.

  - They occur almost exclusively in conversation, and help to break the discourse up into manageable 'chunks'.
- Clefts are another special construction type, subdivided into *it*-clefts and *wh*-clefts.
  - Both types allow special emphasis to be put on a particular element.
  - *It*-clefts are used especially for contrast and cohesion. They are particularly common in academic prose.
  - *Wh*-clefts show typical information flow, though some have very little new information. They are informal and most common in conversation.
- There are also a few word order options following the verb: the placement of direct objects, indirect objects, object predicatives, and objects of phrasal verbs.
- The options for word order are used with different frequencies across the registers.

13

The grammar of conversation

GRAMMAR BITES in this chapter

A A functional overview of conversational grammar

- The special circumstances of conversation compared with other registers
- How these circumstances are reflected in conversational grammar, as contrasted with the grammar of written language

B Grammar tailored to real-time construction

- How conversational grammar is structurally adapted to real-time production
- Key aspects of this adaptation: dysfluencies, the add-on strategy, non-clausal units, and ellipsis

C Grammar, lexis, and discourse

- Lexical bundles as an interface between grammar and lexis
- Inserts as an interface between grammar and discourse

13.1 Introduction

Earlier chapters looked at the grammar of conversation in terms of its contrast with the three written registers of fiction, news, and academic writing. In this chapter, we focus on conversation as a variety of language worth studying in itself.

First, in Grammar Bite A, we summarize conversational features that have been covered throughout this book. This summary shows what is special about conversational grammar, compared with the written registers. We interpret conversational grammar in terms of six functional traits.

In Grammar Bite B, we concentrate on grammar construction in terms of real-time processing. We consider how grammatical structure is shaped by the fact that people have to compose and interpret spoken utterances in real time, without the leisure of revising and re-reading which writers and readers have.

Grammar Bite C finally looks at two factors of great interest which are on the boundaries of grammar, lexis, and discourse: the use of lexical bundles and of inserts.

Since almost all the examples in this chapter are from conversation, we do not mark them as '(CONV)'. However, when the dialect is important, we distinguish examples from our American and British subcorpora by using the labels '(AmE)' and '(BrE)'.

13.1.1 An example of conversation

To begin, we present a conversational extract which exemplifies many typical features of conversation. It will be used as an illustrative sample in the survey of features in Grammar Bite A:

Conversation sample: SERVING CHILI

(Setting: A family of four is sitting down to dinner)

(Participants: *P* = the mother, *J* = the father, *D* = their 20-year-old son, *M* = their 17-year-old son)

D1: *Mom, I, give me a rest, give it a rest. I didn't think about you. I mean, I would rather do it.* <unclear> *some other instance in my mind.*
P1: *Yeah, well I can understand you know, I mean* <unclear> *Hi I'm David's mother, try to ignore me.*
D2: *I went with a girl like you once. Let's serve this damn chili.*
M1: *Okay, let's serve the chili. Are you serving or not dad?*
J1: *Doesn't matter.*
P2: *Would you get those chips in there. Michael, could you put them with the crackers.*
J2: *Here, I'll come and serve it honey if you want me to.*
P3: *Oh wait, we still have quite a few.*
D3: *I don't see any others.*
P4: *I know you don't.*
D4: *We don't have any others.*
P5: *Yes, I got you the big bag I think it will be a help to you.*
J3: *Here's mom's.*
M2: *Now this isn't according to grandpa now.*

P6: *Okay.*
M3: *The same man who told me it's okay* <unclear>
P7: *Are you going to put water in our cups? Whose bowl is that?*
M4: *Mine.*
P8: *Mike put all the water in here. Well, here we are.*
J4: *What.*
P9: *Will y'all turn off the TV.*
J5: *Pie, I'll kill you, I said I'd take you to the bathroom.*
P10: *Man, get your tail out of the soup – Oh, sorry – Did you hear I saw Sarah's sister's baby?*
M5: *How is it?*
P11: *She's cute, pretty really.*

<note: *damn* is a semi-taboo word and may be offensive to some people>

This dinner table interaction touches on several apparently unrelated topics. Speakers refer to the dinner event (e.g. water, chili, crackers, cups, bowl), to other people (grandpa, Sarah's sister's baby), and to a household pet (named 'Pie'), in addition to mentioning an imaginary situation in which *P* speaks (in turn *P1*), switching off the television, and past meetings. Some lines are puzzling out of context (e.g. *No this isn't according to grandpa now*; *Oh sorry*; and *Man, get your tail out of the soup*). A great deal of shared background information and a shared setting are needed to understand this conversation fully. In these respects, the extract is typical of conversation.

GRAMMAR BITE

A A functional overview of conversational grammar

13.2 The discourse circumstances of conversation

In this section, we identify a range of social and situational characteristics of conversation, and discuss their association with particular grammatical traits that are common in conversation. In doing so, we pull together information about features that have been covered throughout all the chapters of this book. Our survey of linguistic features in this chapter has to be selective: there are other important linguistic features distinguishing speech from writing—such as stress and intonation—as well as additional grammatical features that we do not have space to cover here.

In the following subsections (13.2.1–6), we underline the grammatical features that are particularly characteristic of conversation, as compared with the written registers.

13.2.1 Conversation takes place in shared context

Conversation is typically carried out in face-to-face interaction with others. Speakers usually share a lot of contextual background, including a large amount of specific social, cultural, and institutional knowledge. This is one major reason why transcriptions of conversations are often difficult to understand.

Consistent with this shared knowledge, conversation has a very high frequency of pronouns and a very low frequency of nouns. The user of personal pronouns (by far the most common class of pronouns) normally assumes that we share knowledge of the intended reference of *you, she, it,* etc. First- and second-person pronouns (especially *I* and *you*), referring directly to participants in the conversation, are the most common in conversation. In fact, they account for almost two-thirds of the personal pronouns in 'Serving chili'.

The shared context of conversation is also associated with the use of substitute pro-forms and ellipsis. In **1**, *do it* substitutes for a verb phrase, and in **2** *others* substitutes for a noun phrase:

1 *I mean, I would rather* ***do it****.* (*D1*)
2 *I don't see any* ***others****.* (*D3*)

As with these examples, the meaning of pro-forms is generally impossible to tell without the context of the conversation. Some utterances with ellipsis are equally difficult to interpret without the context:

I know you don't ^. (*P4*) <i.e. *I know you don't see any others*>

Ellipsis (signaled here by ^) is discussed in more detail in 13.5.

Another type of reliance on context shows in the use of deictic words (*this, that, these, those, there, then, now,* etc.), most of which are particularly common in conversation. In 'Serving chili', deictics include, for example:

this *damn chili* (*D2*) ***those*** *chips in* ***there*** (*P2*)
Here*'s mom's* (*J3*) *Whose bowl is* ***that****?* (*P7*)

A further context-bound factor is the use of non-clausal or fragmentary components in speech. Although such material can be found in written language (e.g. in headlines and lists), it is far more pervasive and varied in speech. **Inserts** are especially common. For example, in 'Serving chili':

yeah (*P1*) *okay* (*M1*) *sorry* (*P10*)

These inserts rely heavily for their interpretation on situational factors. For example, *thanks* or *sorry* may be a follow-up to a non-verbal action, as well as to a verbal one, as the example *Oh, sorry* in *P10* shows. (See 13.7 for more about the functions and frequency of inserts.)

13.2.2 Conversation avoids elaboration or specification of meaning

Because it relies on context for meaning, conversation can do without the lexical and syntactic elaboration that is found in written expository registers. Conversation has a low density of lexical words in comparison with the three written registers (relying instead more on function words, especially pronouns). Similarly, it tends to have shorter phrases than the expository written registers.

This factor of syntactic non-elaboration is strongly centered on the noun phrase. Speakers in conversation make the most use of pronouns, often reducing the noun phrase to a simple monosyllable like *it* or *she*. Speakers use fewer elaborated noun phrase structures that contain modifiers and complements. Attributive adjectives, noun modifiers and relative clauses, for instance, are rare in comparison with the other registers.

In contrast to its lower lexical density generally, conversation has a higher frequency of verbs and adverbs than the other registers (especially primary and modal verbs). In a register where the noun phrase is reduced to bare essentials, verb phrases and clauses become more frequent.

The one notable exception to this general lack of syntactic elaboration is in the use of complement clauses: *that-* complement clauses and *wh-* complement clauses are actually more common in conversation than in the informational written registers:

> *Do you think* ***they will come back from Europe?***
>
> *I don't know* ***how much it costs.***

Interestingly, these dependent clause types are often used as part of relatively fixed **lexical bundles** (see 13.6 below), and they typically express meanings related to personal stance rather than the dense propositional information associated with elaborated noun phrases in news and academic prose (see 13.2.4 below).

Avoidance of elaboration of syntax is related to avoidance of specification of meaning. Just as speakers in conversation often avoid making their noun references explicit, they also tend to avoid being specific about quantity and quality. Speakers' tendency towards vagueness has been noted, and often condemned, by critics, who say the speakers are 'lazy'. The frequent use of **hedges** is an example:

> *<...> we had to* ***like*** *hold each other's hands.*
>
> *I've got order forms and* ***stuff like that*** *for music.*
>
> *And she's just turned over eighty* ***odd.***

From the viewpoint of the written language, this vagueness seems to be an unacceptable lack of precision. But, from the viewpoint of speakers, greater precision is unnecessary, or even harmful because it could hold up the progress of the conversation. Hints and rough indications, relying on shared knowledge, are often just what is needed.

13.2.3 Conversation is interactive

Conversation is co-constructed by two or more people, adapting their expressions to the ongoing exchange. This is reflected in the frequency of several features:

A Negatives

Conversation has twice as many negatives as the written registers. The cognitive interaction of different speakers often results in negative utterances. For example, in 'Serving chili':

> *D3: I* ***don't*** *see any others.*
>
> *P4: I know you* ***don't.***
>
> *D4: We* ***don't*** *have any others.*

B Eliciting responses

Conversation has many utterances which elicit or make a response. Sequences of question–answer are typical, as in this example from 'Serving chili':

P3: Whose bowl is that.
M4: Mine.

Many questions are non-clausal fragments such as *Really?* and *What for?* Such questions play an important role in the interactive nature of the conversation. In addition, about one-quarter of the questions in conversation take the form of questions tags.

You've got the cards, ***haven't you****?*
She didn't ride back, ***did she****?*

Question tags combine an assertion with a request for confirmation, thus illustrating the characteristic negotiation of acceptance between interlocutors. In comparison to conversation, question tags account for only about 1 in 100 questions in academic prose.

Other common features in conversation that elicit or make a response include the following:

- greetings and farewells:

A: ***Hi*** *Margaret.* *A: Oh.* ***Goodbye*** *Robin.*
B: ***Hi****.* *B:* ***See you later****. Thank you for a lift. Love you lots.*

- backchannels:

A: and their lawn is high up, up the road, you know
B: ***Mm***
C: ***Yeah***
A: so he dug up the lawn and put a little garage in

- response elicitors:

Just leave out the smutty stuff, ***okay****?*
It's like a magnet obviously ***see****?*

- imperatives:

Get *on the phone and* ***phone*** *them up!*

C Attention-signaling forms

Conversation has a number of attention-signaling forms. For example:

Hey, hey *look at all the truckers.*
Say*, Mom, have you got any paint rollers?*

D Vocatives

Conversation commonly uses vocatives (address forms) for getting attention and managing interactions. 'Serving chili' has several clear examples: *Mom* (in *D1*), *dad* (*M1*), *Michael* (*P2*), *honey* (*J2*), *Mike* (*P8*), and *Pie* (*J5*, addressed to the dog). Vocatives often have an attitudinal function in addition to managing the discourse, especially for terms such as *honey* (discussed in 13.2.4).

E Discourse markers

Conversation has a frequent use of discourse markers and other inserts for managing interaction (see 13.7, Table 13.1).

13.2.4 Conversation expresses stance

Speakers in conversation have a primary concern for their feelings, attitudes, evaluations, and assessments of likelihood: what we have referred to as personal stance. Many of the most common grammatical features in conversation are used to express stance, including modal verbs, complement clause constructions, and stance adverbials.

Being interactive, conversation is used for polite or respectful purposes in **speech acts** such as requests, greetings, offers, and apologies. Some inserts have a stereotypical role in marking politeness: *thanks* and *thank you*, *please*, and *sorry*, for example. Vocatives such as *sir* and *madam* also have a respectful role, although these honorific forms are rare in English compared with many other languages.

More typical of English is the use of stereotypic polite openings, such as the interrogative forms *would you* and *could you*, functioning as requests in 'Serving chili':

> *P2: **Would you** get those chips in there. Michael, **could you** put them with the crackers.*

In other cases, the collective first-person imperative *let's* is used as a somewhat less face-threatening alternative to the second-person (*you*) imperative:

> *M1: Okay, **let's** serve the chili.*

However, not all forms in conversation convey respect. For example, second-person imperatives also occur in 'Serving chili' as a balder form of directive, addressed in one case by a son to his mother (**1**) and in another case to the dog (**2**):

1 ***give** it a rest (D1)*
2 ***get** your tail out of the soup (P10)*

Conversation also typically displays a varied range of attitudes. Special features used for these purposes include:

- endearments such as the following are far more common within vocatives than honorific forms such as *sir* and *madam*:

  *Yes I'm coming in a moment **darling**.*

- interjections such as *ah*, *oh*, *wow*, *ugh*, and expletives, such as *bloody* and *damn*:

  A: She burnt popcorn back there.
  *B: **Ugh** it reeks.*
  ***Wow**, that's incredible.*
  ***Bloody hell**! He's gone mad.* (BrE) <note: *bloody*, *hell*, and *damn* are taboo words ('swearwords'), and may be offensive to some people >

- exclamations:

  What a rip-off!
  How wonderful! Good for you!
  Timmy! Sit down! Good boy!

- evaluative predicative adjectives (*good*, *lovely*, *nice*, etc.):

  I thought that was real ***nice****.*

  I don't think it's too ***bad****.*

- stance adverbials:

  P11: She's cute, pretty ***really****.*

  Well, I like the Caesar salad ***actually****.*

13.2.5 Conversation takes place in real time

Speakers are under pressure in conversation to produce language quickly. There is little time for planning and no time for editing, in contrast to writing. Several characteristics of conversation reflect this real-time production pressure.

A Dysfluencies

Conversation often sounds dysfluent. For example, it is quite natural for a speaker's flow to be held up by pauses, hesitators (e.g. *er*, *um*), and repeats (e.g. *I – I – I*) at points where the speaker needs more time to plan ahead:

> *Hopefully,* ***he'll, er, he'll*** *see the error of his ways.*

Repairs are often made; a speaker stops in the middle of saying something, and repeats it with some sort of correction. When they occur at the beginning of utterances, such repairs are also called 'false starts':

> *D1: Mom,* ***I****, give me a rest, give it a rest.*
>
> *Dad,* ***I don't think you sh–****, I think you should leave Chris home Saturday.*

Other kinds of dysfluencies are covered in 13.3.1.

B Reduced forms

To save time and energy, speakers also resort to reduction processes such as elision (omission of vowels or consonants), contractions like *it's* and *can't*, other morphologically reduced forms like *gonna*, and various types of ellipsis, which are covered in 13.5.

C Restricted and repetitive repertoire

The language used in conversation is typically repetitive in several ways.

- Local repetition: in relieving real-time planning pressure, speakers often repeat partially or exactly what has just been said in conversation. Here is an example from 'Serving chili':

  D2: <...> Let's serve this damn chili.

  M1: Okay, let's serve the chili

- Lexical bundles: in 13.6 we describe the use of prefabricated sequences of words, lexical bundles. Time pressure prevents speakers from exploiting the full innovative power of grammar and lexicon, and so they rely heavily on well-worn, routine word sequences, readily accessible from memory.
- Higher frequency of a few items in syntactic categories: in any syntactic category—from modals to subordinators, adverbs, and lexical verbs—conversation tends to make extremely frequent use of a small group of items, while the written registers tend to use a more diverse group of items.

For example, conversation makes repeated use of four modals *will*, *can*, *would*, and *could*. These are the only modals used in 'Serving chili'.

D Other characteristics

Other characteristics reflecting real-time processing in spoken English will be considered in Grammar Bite B (13.3–5).

13.2.6 Conversation employs a vernacular range of expression

Conversation typically takes place privately between people who know one another. It is little influenced by the traditions of prestige and correctness often associated with the printed word. Instead, the style of conversation is overwhelmingly informal. This shows in 'Serving chili' in informal lexical choice (e.g. *get*, *damn*, and *cute*). Reduced forms such as contractions (e.g. *it's* and *don't*) are also considered informal.

Another aspect of vernacular grammar is the occurrence of regional dialect forms. For example, in 'Serving chili', turn *P9* contains the second-person pronoun *y'all*, associated with the southern states of the USA.

Moreover, in some conversational material we find morphological forms widely regarded as non-standard, such as the multiple negative (see 8.8.12) and the concord of *he* with *don't* in:

> *He* ***don't*** *have* ***no*** *manners.*

Other forms are marginally non-standard, such as the negative verb form *ain't* or the combination *aren't I* (see 8.8.5). In pronoun choice, speakers often use the accusative form *me* when prescriptive rules call for the subject form *I*. In the following example, the speaker changes from *I* to *me* as he makes a coordinated noun phrase:

> *But somehow I,* ***me and this other bloke*** *managed to avoid each other.*

Review

Major points of GRAMMAR BITE A: A functional overview of conversational grammar

- Conversation is shaped by several discourse circumstances:
  - It takes place in a shared context.
  - It avoids elaboration or specification of meaning.
  - It is interactive.
  - It expresses politeness, emotion, attitude.
  - It takes place in real time.
  - It employs a vernacular range of expression.
- All these features of conversation show up clearly in the way grammar is used.

GRAMMAR BITE

B Grammar tailored to real-time construction

13.3 Performance phenomena in conversation

In this Grammar Bite, we take a closer look at the demands of real-time language production and processing. Speakers and listeners have no time to revise or reconsider the grammatical structures being produced during spontaneous speech; as a result, conversational grammar typically lacks much of the elaborate structure of the written sentence. In many ways, the construction of syntactic units in speech aims at simplicity—through **the add-on strategy**, through **non-clausal units**, and through **ellipsis**. However, even notions of 'simplicity' or 'complexity' need to be adjusted when applied to spoken language.

As noted above, the time pressure on speakers in conversation often results in **dysfluencies**. In extreme cases, an utterance may become almost grammatically incoherent. For example:

> *No. Do you know erm you know where the erm go over to er go over erm where the fire station is not the one that white white ...*

Such extreme cases usually occur in extreme circumstances. Here the speaker is trying to explain to members of her family how to reach a local shopping area. Her problems are cognitive as well as syntactic. She is simultaneously building a mental map, visualizing the best route, estimating the hearer's familiarity with the area, and explaining the route.

In contrast, consider the following example, which is quite long and appears to be grammatically quite complex (the speaker is talking about his dog):

> *The trouble is if you're if you're the only one in the house he follows you and you're looking for him and every time you're moving around he's moving around behind you* <laughter> *so you can't find him. I thought I wonder where the hell he's gone* <laughter> *I mean he was immediately behind me.*

Here the only dysfluency is the initial repetition of *if you're*. It occurs because of overlapping speech from another speaker.

Thus, conversation can be characterized both by dysfluencies and by well-formed long utterances. In the next two sections, we examine some typical dysfluencies and a strategy that speakers use to adapt to real-time processing pressure.

13.3.1 More on dysfluencies

In 13.2.5 we mentioned that pauses, hesitators, and repeats are typical of conversation. Here we review two other common types of dysfluencies: incomplete utterances and syntactic blends.

A Incomplete utterances

Leaving an utterance uncompleted is not always an unplanned dysfluency, but it usually is. There are four main situations where the speaker starts to utter a grammatical unit and fails to finish, as described below.

- Incompletion followed by a fresh start. (Unlike reformulations, no part of the first start is repeated.)

  Do you know the name of the? *– I don't know what's up there.*

  That's such a neat, *it's so nice to know the history behind it.*

- Incompletion where the speaker is interrupted by another speaker. The first speaker may stop immediately, as in **1**, or there may be overlap between the speakers, as in **2** (words in curly brackets *{ }* show overlaps):

  1 *A: There's a whole bunch of Saturdays.* ***If you just put your***
  B: This is a Sunday.
  A: No, no, no.

  2 *A: So, uh, I saw him, I took him to lunch and, I, I,* ***I'm surprised at how {old}***
  B: {Mature he is?}
  A: Yeah, ***he really {has}***
  B: {Yeah, he seemed} to be that way.

- Incompletion where the hearer rather than the speaker completes the utterance.

  3 *A: I played,* ***I played against erm***
  B: ***Southend.***

  4 *A: She pays a certain amount,* ***but erm – you get erm***
  B: ***Subsidised.***
  A: That's right. Yeah.

In fact, utterances such as these are not incomplete, but rather show co-construction of the discourse by the participants. It can be difficult to distinguish between interruptions and cooperative co-construction. Here the co-construction seems cooperative. In **3**, the completion by *B* is signaled by the preceding hesitation by speaker *A*, who is probably having some difficulty finding the missing word. In **4**, *A* also seems to be having some trouble finding the right word, and accepts *B*'s completion as appropriate.

- Abandoning the utterance, with no interruption or attempt at repair.

  A: ***So it was just, you know.***
  B: Yeah.

The motive for incompletion in this case may not be clear. Perhaps the speaker loses the thread of what he or she is saying, or doesn't bother to complete because the hearer seems to have already understood the intention behind the utterance.

B Syntactic blends

The term **syntactic blend** is applied to a sentence or clause that finishes in a way that is grammatically inconsistent with the way it began. This type of performance error appears to be caused mainly by speakers' working memory limitations. These clauses tend to be fairly long, which suggests that the speakers suffer from a kind of syntactic memory loss in the course of production. Syntactic blends tend to be easy to understand even though they are not grammatically well-formed.

The following examples erroneously contain two verbs. After each example, we add two likely reconstructions, to show the two competing syntactic models the speaker appears to have confused:

1 *About a hundred, two hundred years ago* ***we had*** *ninety-five per cent of people – i– in this country* ***were employed*** *in farming.*
<**a** *Ninety-five per cent of people in this country were employed in farming.*>
<**b** *We had ninety-five per cent of people in this country employed in farming.*>

2 *In fact* ***that's*** *one of the things that there is a shortage of in this play,* ***is*** *people who actually care er, erm – about what happens to erm each, each other.*
<**a** *One of the things that there is a shortage of in this play is people who actually care.*>
<**b** *That's one of the things that there is a shortage of in this play, people who actually care.*>

13.3.2 The add-on strategy

Although dysfluency is normal in speech, there are many quite complex utterances which contain little or no sign of planning difficulty. This appears to be because speakers are skilled at adapting their language to the time constraints of conversation. Consider again the utterance in 13.3, with clauses now marked in brackets and the repeat omitted:

1 *[The trouble is [[if you're the only one in the house] [he follows you] [and you're looking for him] [so you can't find him]]] [I thought [I wonder [where the hell he's gone]]] [I mean [he was immediately behind me]].*

The analysis seems complex: there is a combination of eleven clauses, with six examples of embedding and one of co-ordination. How does a speaker manage to produce such a complex structure with just one small repeat?

This task is not so superhuman as it may appear. If we divide the utterance in a more basic way, simply using vertical lines for clause boundaries, the utterance neatly divides into a linear sequence of short finite-clause-like segments. These follow in line without overlap or interruption, following an add-on strategy:

1a *| The trouble is | if you're the only one in the house | he follows you | and you're looking for him | so you can't find him. | I thought | I wonder | where the hell he's gone | I mean | he was immediately behind me.|*

The semantic relationships between the clause-like units are important to the overall interpretation, but each unit expresses what can be considered a single idea, and within each unit, the processing required is simple. For example, each unit except the first has a pronoun subject.

This breakdown of speech into clause-like segments can be contrasted with an attempt to apply such an analysis to academic writing:

> | *Despite the abnormal morphogenesis observed in such grafts, the range of differentiated tissues formed in such an 'experimental teratoma' can be used to provide an estimate of the developmental potential of the transferred tissue.*| (ACAD)

Here there are no internal vertical lines marking the boundaries of finite clause-like segments, because there are no such boundaries. There is only one finite independent clause in the whole sentence.

Through the add-on strategy, the grammar of speech, unlike the grammar of writing, is well adapted to real-time production. It is sometimes supposed that the grammar of spoken language is simpler than the grammar of written language because of less subordination. However, this is a misleading conclusion. Some types of dependent clauses (e.g. *that*-clauses, finite adverbial clauses) are more common in speech than in writing. In subordination, as in other aspects of structure, spoken language favors the kinds of complexity that do not conflict with the add-on strategy. Consider the following:

2 *I think [you'll find [it counts towards your income]].*

Here the double embedding (one clause within another within another) does not mean that the sentence is difficult to produce or to understand. This is clearer if we present the same sentence with the add-on strategy in mind:

2a |*I think* | *you'll find* | *it counts towards your income.*|

Prefaces and tags

Another example of the add-on strategy is the use of prefaces and tags. These are peripheral elements that precede or follow the main body of the speaker's message. Consider:

> *North and south London – they're two different worlds, aren't they? – in a way.*

This utterance can be analyzed as a simple main clause with a preface and tags added on:

preface	body of message	tags
north and south London	*they're two different worlds*	*aren't they? in a way*

Using utterances with prefaces and tags, a speaker can cope with real-time production, and at the same time convey fairly complex messages. The example above is much easier to produce than this equivalent integrated structure:

> *Don't you agree that north and south London are in some ways two different worlds?*

Many different kinds of units can act as prefaces and tags. For example, linking or stance adverbials can be prefaces (e.g. *What's more* . . . , *To be honest* . . .), as can formulaic utterance launchers (e.g. *The question is* . . . or *Like I say* . . .). Tags can be question tags, comment clause tags (e.g. *I don't think*), or vagueness markers (e.g. . . . *and stuff like that*).

13.4 Non-clausal units

As illustrated throughout this chapter, much of the discourse in conversation cannot be analyzed in terms of grammatical clauses: instead, non-clausal units play important roles. We distinguish two general kinds of non-clausal units: inserts and syntactic non-clausal units. Inserts are stand-alone words, such as interjections and discourse markers. These will be covered in 13.7. In this section we consider syntactic non-clausal units.

13.4.1 Syntactic non-clausal units

Syntactic non-clausal units are grammatical units that lack finite clause structure. Two examples are *Poor kids* (a noun phrase) and *Good for you* (an adjective phrase). The short 'fragmentary' units do not have the structure of an independent clause, nor are they a part of an independent clause. Like other performance phenomena, non-clausal units reflect the simplicity of grammatical constructions resulting from real-time production in conversation.

Syntactic non-clausal units can also be related to ellipsis. For example, *Perfect!* as a response is equivalent to the clause *That's perfect* with the subject and verb omitted. However, it is often difficult to reconstruct the full clause in these cases, because different wordings are possible (*That's perfect, It's perfect, Wasn't that perfect*). For this reason, we treat these as non-clausal units, rather than clausal units with elements omitted.

The following are some of the major types of non-clausal units.

A Condensed questions

Many questions in conversation occur as noun phrases or a verbless structure beginning with a *wh*-word:

More sauce?

How about your wife?

Now ***what about a concert this Friday?***

Such question forms can also echo what has been said, requesting a clarification or expressing disbelief:

A: They have white chocolate. They have it for one of their mocha drinks or something, but you can get white chocolate hot cocoa.
B: <laugh>
C: ***White chocolate hot cocoa?***

B Condensed directives

The following have the force of commands (addressed to children or pets) or, in the case of **3**, a piece of advice:

1 ***No crying.***
2 ***Up the stairs, now.***
3 ***Careful when you pick that up****, it's ever so slippery.*

In the following examples, the directive force of the utterance is indicated, and somewhat softened, by the use of the politeness marker *please*:

> ***Hands off the jug please.***
>
> ***Thirty pence please.*** <asking for payment>

C Condensed statements

Non-clausal units which function as statements often consist of a noun phrase or an adjective phrase:

> ***Very special. Prawns in it and all sorts*** <in a restaurant>
>
> ***No wonder this house i– is full of dirt!***

13.5 Ellipsis

Clausal units with ellipsis are related to the non-clausal units described in 13.4.1. Clausal units with ellipsis can be analysed in terms of the elements subject, verb, object, predicative, or adverbial, even though some of these clausal elements have been omitted. In most cases, ellipsis in conversation can be classified as initial ellipsis and final ellipsis (see 8.5.1). There is also a less frequent phenomenon of medial ellipsis.

In the examples below, ^ marks the position of ellipted material. Ellipsis is highly characteristic of spontaneous speech, because of the need to reduce syntactic complexity due to real-time pressures. In addition, speakers respond to the impulse to speed up communication, avoiding the tedium of unnecessary repetition.

13.5.1 Initial ellipsis

In initial ellipsis, words near the beginning of the clause that have low information value are dropped. They can easily be understood from the situational context. This type of ellipsis is also called situational ellipsis.

A Ellipsis of a subject

This takes place when the subject of a declarative clause is omitted, normally at the start of a turn:

> ^ *Must be some narky bastards in the rugby club!* <*There* is omitted> <note: *bastards* here is an insult and may be considered offensive>
>
> A: *What's concubine?*
>
> B: ^ *Don't know, get a dictionary.* <*I* is omitted>

B Ellipsis of an initial operator in questions

> *Oh.* ^ *You serious?* <*Are* is omitted>
>
> ^ *That too early for you?* <*Is* is omitted>
>
> ^ *Your Granny Iris get here?* <*Did* is omitted>

C Ellipsis of subject and operator

This type of front ellipsis can occur at the beginning of a declarative or an interrogative clause:

- declarative clauses:

  A: I love French beaches.
  B: Yeah ^ telling me. <*You're* is omitted>

- interrogative clauses:

  ^ Know what I mean? <*Do you* is omitted>
  Why aren't you working? ^ Got a day off? <*Have you* is omitted>

13.5.2 Final (post-operator) ellipsis

Final ellipsis in a clause usually takes the form of the omission of any words following the operator:

1 *A: I suppose Kathy is still living in that same place.*
B: Yeah, ***she is*** *^.* <*living in that same place* omitted>
2 *A: Do you have a couple of dollars in cash?*
B: Uh, no ***I don't*** *^.* <*have a couple of dollars* ... omitted>

The verb left after the rest of the clause has been ellipted—e.g. *is* in **1** and *do* in **2**—may be called a 'stranded operator' (see 8.7.1). Many examples of end ellipsis are in replies to questions. However, other contexts for final ellipsis are illustrated in this example:

A1: I'm not going out with her at the moment.
B1: Ah!
A2: ***But I should be*** *^ by around Tuesday night.* <*going out with her* is omitted>
B2: You said by Monday last time.
A3: ***Did I*** *^ ? Well I lied.* <*say by Monday last time* is omitted>

The first case of ellipsis, in turn *A2*, is superficially **medial** rather than **final** ellipsis. However, it contains the omission of the main verb and complement, leaving only an optional adverbial, and so can be considered a type of final ellipsis.

There are other kinds of final ellipsis, such as ellipsis after an infinitive *to* and after a *wh*-word:

A: Oh dear! – Take me home!
B: ***I'd love to*** *^.* <*take you home* omitted>
But she completely lost it. I and I still don't really know ***why or how*** *^.*
<*she lost it* omitted>

13.5.3 Medial ellipsis

Medial ellipsis occurs where the operator is omitted. It is particularly common with the semi-modals *had better*, *have got to* (often transcribed with the spelling *gotta*) and *be going to* (often spelled *gonna*):

Oh. Nobody would marry you. You're, ***you*** *^* ***better*** *keep the one you've got* <laugh>.

Yeah dude, ***I*** *^* ***gotta*** *start working.*

<...> *and* ***we*** *^* ***gonna*** *call it Kam.*

The American English greeting *How are you doing* (often spelt *How ya doing*) is another conventionalized context favoring medial ellipsis:

How *^* ***ya*** *doing Ms.* <name>*?* (AmE)

Apart from its occurrence in declarative clauses, medial ellipsis occurs in *wh*-questions, between the question word and the subject:

What ^ she say?

When ^ you coming back?

In general, medial ellipsis is found more in American English than British English, while initial and final ellipsis are found more in British English.

Review

Major points in GRAMMAR BITE B: Grammar tailored to real-time construction

- ➤ In conversation grammar is adapted to the needs of real-time production, aiming for simplicity.
- ➤ The constraints of real-time processing lead to incomplete structures and syntactic blends.
- ➤ Conforming to the add-on principle reduces complexity in language processing.
- ➤ Non-clausal units are another aspect of structural simplicity in spoken grammar.
- ➤ Ellipsis is a way of simplifying grammar through omission.

GRAMMAR BITE

C Grammar, lexis, and discourse

13.6 Lexical bundles in speech

As we noted in 13.2.5, the grammar of conversation reflects the repetitive and formulaic nature of speech. In this section, we focus on lexical bundles: sequences of words which are frequently re-used, and therefore become 'prefabricated chunks' that speakers and writers can easily retrieve from their memory and use again and again as text building blocks. In conversation, commonly recurring lexical bundles are sequences such as:

do you want me to ...	*going to be a ...*
I said to him ...	*I don't know what ...*

In the LSWE Corpus, it is possible to find lexical bundles simply by counting the number of times any particular sequence of words occurs per million words. For example, the bundle *do you want me to* occurs 50 times per million words in our conversation corpus. This amounts to about one occurrence per 170 minutes of conversation. This may not sound very frequent—but it is frequent enough to establish *do you want me to* as a very useful 'chunk' of language for discourse-building in speech.

13.6.1 Defining lexical bundles

To make things simpler, we defined a lexical bundle as a recurring sequence of three or four words. Two-word sequences are generally too short and numerous to be interesting. Three-word combinations are again extremely numerous, and can be considered a kind of extended **collocation**. But they are less significant as textual building blocks than four-word combinations, which are more phrasal in nature. Even longer recurrent sequences—five-word and six-word bundles—can be found, but they are much less common. Hence we focused on three-word and (particularly) four-word bundles. Figure 13.1 is a pie chart showing the relative frequency of three-word and four-word bundles, compared with non-recurrent expressions.

Figure 13.1 **Percentage of words in recurrent v. non-recurrent expressions—conversation**

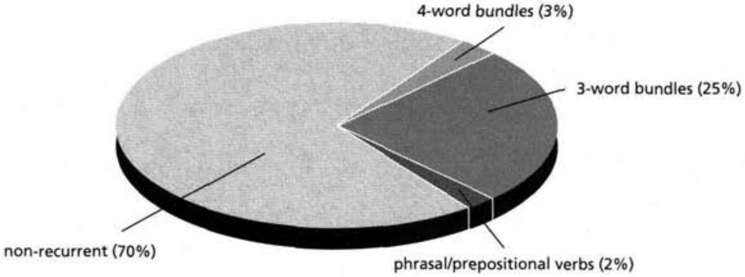

The following three points also played a part in defining lexical bundles:

- In counting the words in lexical bundles, we relied on orthographic word units, even though these sometimes combine separate grammatical words. For example, in our analysis *into*, *cannot*, *place-name*, and *didn't* each counted as a single word.
- To be considered as a lexical bundle, a word combination had to recur at least ten times per million words, spread across at least five different conversations (this was to exclude the influence of individual speakers' habits).
- Only uninterrupted combinations were treated as lexical bundles; lexical combinations that cross a turn boundary or a punctuation mark were not counted.

Figure 13.2
Number of lexical bundles in conversation and academic prose

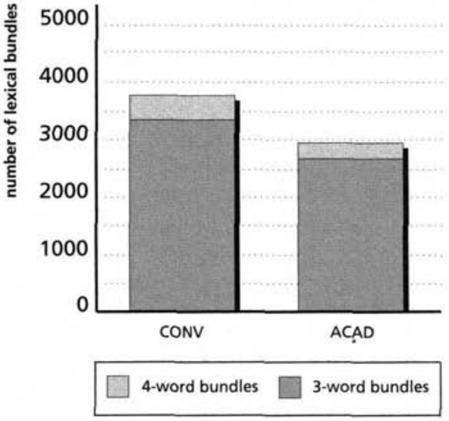

On the whole, conversation is more repetitive than the written registers. This is illustrated by Figure 13.2, which shows how lexical bundles are more frequent in conversation than in academic prose. At the same time, academic prose makes considerable use of prefabricated blocks of text, such as:

in the case of the . . .
it should be noted that. . . *there was no significant . . .*

Lexical bundles in academic prose typically involve parts of noun phrases and prepositional phrases, whereas lexical bundles in conversation typically involve the beginning of a finite clause—especially with a pronoun as subject followed by a frequent verb of saying or thinking: e.g. *I don't think you. . . .*

Grammatical and lexical patterning are closely interrelated aspects of language. Although lexical bundles are usually not complete grammatical units, they tend to have particular grammatical characteristics (described in 13.6.3–4).

13.6.2 Lexical bundles and local repetitions in conversation

Unlike lexical bundles, which are repeated *across* many different conversations, local repetitions occur within a single dialog. Both types of repetition are characteristic of conversation: lexical bundles show the habitual repetitiveness of speakers in general, while local repetitions tend to show the repetitiveness of speakers in a given dialog, talking about a particular topic. The following extract illustrates the difference between them: local repetitions are shown in small capitals, while lexical bundles are marked in bold italics:

C: ***Did you see that*** *thing on* <unclear>
D: *You shouldn't believe that though.*
B: *Who's Vinnie Jones?*
<. . .>
C: *You like Vinnie Jones, don't you?*
D: I RECKON *he er well,* <. . .> *probably* COULD –
A: I DON'T RECKON *Eric* CANTONA COULD.
B: DON'T RECKON CANTONA COULD *what?*
A: I DON'T RECKON CANTONA COULD *beat him up.*
C: *Yeah.*
B: *Nor do I.*
A: <unclear> *couldn't, but Mark Hughes might.*
B: *But* ***I don't know why*** *we're talking about this.*

13.6.3 Structural aspects of lexical bundles

Although lexical bundles in conversation do not usually represent a complete grammatical unit, they fall into several grammatical types. Many of them contain a pronoun followed by a verb phrase followed by part of the verb's complement, as in *I don't know why* and *I thought that was*:

- examples building on *I don't know why*:

  I don't know why *he didn't play much at the end of the season.*
  I don't know why *Catherine finds that sort of thing funny.*
  I don't know why *I did it.*

- examples building on *I thought that was*:

  But ***I thought that was*** *Friday.*

> ***I thought that was*** *going to happen.*
> *Oh **I thought that was** quite good.*

Almost 90 per cent of all four-word lexical bundles in conversation are segments based on a declarative or interrogative main clause:

- declarative clause segments:

  I don't know what . . . , I don't think I . . . , I thought it was . . . ,
  I said to him . . . , I would like to . . . , well you'll have to . . .

- interrogative clause segments:

  can I have a . . . , have you got any . . . , do you want to . . . , are you talking about . . . , what's the matter with . . . , how do you know . . .

These examples illustrate how lexical bundles tend to end with the beginning of an incomplete unit (e.g. the complement clause in *I don't know **what*** . . . and the noun phrase in *have you got **any*** . . .). It is also notable that such bundles tend to express particular speech acts common in conversation, such as requests (*can I have a*) and offers or suggestions (*do you want to*).

Further, lexical bundles often have set patterns which can be summarized as follows:

I don't/didn't + *know/think/want* + complement clause
I want to + *do/get/go/see/be/know*
do you want + *to/a/me/some/any/it/the*

13.6.4 Common lexical bundles in conversation

The following are the most common four-word lexical bundles in conversation (all bundles listed occur more than 40 times per million words; bundles marked ° occur more than 100 times per million words):

- **Pattern 1: Personal pronoun + verb phrase +**

  °*I don't know what . . . , well I don't know . . . , I don't know how . . . ,*
  I don't know if . . . , I don't know whether . . . , I don't know why . . . ,
  oh I don't know . . . , but I don't know . . .
  I thought it was . . . , I think it was . . . , I don't think so
  °*I don't want to . . .*
  I said to him . . .
  I tell you what . . .
  °*I was going to . . . , I'm not going to . . .*
  I would like to . . .
  you want me to . . . , you want to go . . . , you don't want to . . .
  you don't have to . . .
  you know what I . . .
  it's going to be . . .

- **Pattern 2: Extended verb phrase fragments**

    have a look at . . ., let's have a look . . .

    know what I mean. . .

    going to be a . . ., going to have a . . ., going to have to . . ., was going to say . . .

    thank you very much

- **Pattern 3: Question fragments**

    °*do you want to . . . , do you want a . . . , do you want me. . .*

    °*are you going to . . . , are we going to. . .*

    do you know what . . .

    what are you doing . . ., what do you mean . . . , what do you think . . . , what do you want. . .

Most bundles are used at or near the beginning of an utterance. For the most part, the main verbs in these sequences mark personal stance, voicing the feelings, thoughts, or desires of the speaker or (less commonly) the hearer. For example:

*No, **I thought it was** great.*

***I would like to** borrow a pen.*

***Do you want me** to send them today?*

Many of the bundles express negative meanings:

*And **I don't know why** he didn't show up.*

*Oh **I don't want to** hear this.*

The extended verb phrase fragments in Pattern 2 tend to show combinations of verbs with elements which complement them:

*Oh well, let's have a look. Let's **have a look at** this.*

*She's **going to have a** baby.*

13.6.5 Lexical bundles and idioms

Lexical bundles are distinct from **idioms**, which are word sequences whose meaning cannot be predicted from the meanings of the individual words. Examples of idioms are expressions such as:

a piece of cake <meaning something very easy to do>

on the double <meaning running, or moving quickly>

step on the gas <meaning to increase speed>

Idioms vary in 'transparency': that is, whether their meaning can be derived from the literal meanings of the individual words. For example, *make up [one's] mind* is rather transparent in suggesting the meaning 'reach a decision', while *kick the bucket* is far from transparent in representing the meaning 'die'.

In contrast, lexical bundles (such as *I want to go*) do not have any metaphorical or other special interpretation. Also, whereas lexical bundles have been defined as consisting of a set of words in a fixed order, idioms often allow some variation, particularly in the function words they contain. *Make up + my/your/her/*etc. *+ mind*, for example, is an idiom in which the third word (a possessive determiner) varies according to context:

John, can't you ever ***make up*** *your* ***mind****?*

I can ***make up*** *my* ***mind****, but it gets me into trouble.*

Although many idioms are colloquial in tone, they are not particularly common in conversation. In fact, they are less common in conversation than in fiction. Occasionally idioms are frequent enough to occur within a lexical bundle: e.g. *hang on a minute* (meaning 'wait a minute') is a lexical bundle making use of the idiom *hang on.*

13.6.6 Binomial expressions

A **binomial expression** is a special kind of lexical bundle consisting of word$_1$ + *and/or* + word$_2$. Word$_1$ and word$_2$ are from the same word class, and *and* is much more frequent than *or* as the linking word. The order in which the words occur is normally fixed. In conversation, the most common binomial phrases are relatively fixed expressions that commonly go together in people's experience.

A Verb *and* verb

My dad wants to ***go and see*** *a film.*

Shall I ***come and help*** *you?*

I'm just going to ***wait and see*** *what she says.*

I'm going to ***try and put*** *them up today.*

The first verb of these combinations is less variable than the second. In meaning the combination is often equivalent to using the infinitive marker *to* rather than *and*: e.g. *go and see* = *go to see*; *try and put* = *try to put.*

B Noun *and* noun

In conversation, most recurrent binomials of this kind refer to:

- human beings (mostly female *and* male or male *and* female):

  My ***mum and dad*** *went out the other day.*

  They got ***men and women*** *in the same dormitory.*

- food combinations:

  Did they put ***salt and vinegar*** *on them?*

  Can I have two plates of ***bread and butter****?*

- time expressions:

  She's been sick continuously, ***day and night****.*

  A: That's years ago.
  B: Oh yeah, ***years and years****.* <i.e. many years>

C Adverb *and* adverb

These binomials usually express directional or temporal meaning:

Shall we count how many times Alex has been ***in and out*** *of here saying he's going home?*

They could have mended it ***there and then****.* <i.e. at that moment, without delay>

D Adjective *and* adjective

It was gonna be in ***black and white.***

Adjective binomials (e.g. *good and strong*) were discussed in 7.6.1.

13.7 Inserts

Inserts make an important contribution to the interactive character of speech, because they signal relations between speaker, hearer(s), and discourse. Inserts are peripheral to grammar. They occur either as 'stand alone' elements or loosely attached to a clause or non-clausal structure, in which case they occur mainly in an initial position. An exception to this is hesitators, which typically occur in the middle of an utterance.

The following section describes types of inserts, their functions, and their frequency in conversation. We distinguish eight major classes of inserts: interjections (e.g. *oh*), greetings/farewells (e.g. *hi*), discourse markers (e.g. *well*), attention-getters (e.g. *hey*), response-getters (e.g. *okay?*), response forms (e.g. *right*), polite formulas (e.g. *thank you*), and expletives (e.g. *damn*—these are usually taboo words that can easily cause offence).

Throughout this discussion, it is worth remembering that the category of inserts has many ambiguities. Individual items can be used for more than one function; for example, *okay* can be a discourse marker, a response form, or a response-getter (*okay?*). The boundaries between inserts and other categories can also be fuzzy. Some items like *well*, *now*, *I mean*, and *you know* often appear to be on the borderline between inserts and adverbials.

13.7.1 Frequent inserts and their distribution

Table 13.1 illustrates the use and function of common inserts in the eight categories. Inserts are one area of grammar in which American English and British English usage tend to differ. In Figure 13.3, the overall frequencies of the most common inserts are compared in American English and British English. It is important to note, however, that many inserts are strongly preferred by particular social groups within either American or British English (distinguished by age, education, region, etc.). Table 13.2 lists inserts that are slightly less common than those in Figure 13.3.

Figure 13.3
Frequency of common inserts

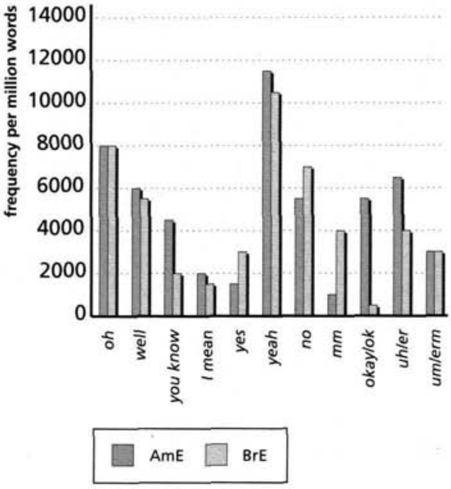

Some interesting observations about the use of inserts in American English and British English conversation are the following:

Table 13.1 A survey of inserts

individual words/expressions and examples from conversation	explanations
type of insert — Interjections are words which have an exclamatory function. They usually express an emotive reaction to something that has been said, or has happened. Their pronunciation is simple and sometimes has abnormal features (e.g. *ugh*, *aargh*, *tt*)	
1 ***Oh*** *how awful! How absolutely naff!* **2** A: *Nicky got that for him.* B: ***Oh,*** *did she? A: Yeah, I think so.*	**1–2** *Oh* is by far the most common interjection. Although highly conventionalized, it has the core function of conveying some degree of surprise or emotion.
3 A: *They're chocolates.* B: ***Ah*** *isn't that nice.* **4** ***Oh wow,*** *they really did that tree nice.* ***Wow.*** (AmE) <admiring decorations> **5** *A: How big was it? B: Four pounds. A:* ***Ooh,*** *that's little.* <talking of a premature birth>	**3–5** *Ah*, *wow*, and *ooh* also express emotional involvement, but have a more marked effect. *Wow* means that the speaker is surprised or impressed.
6 ***Whoops,*** *easy Chester. Chester down. Thank you.* <talking to a dog>	**6** *Oops* or *whoops* signals a minor mishap, e.g. when the speaker spills something.
7 *A: She burnt popcorn back there. B:* ***Ugh*** *it reeks.* **8** ***Ow!*** *I've got the stomach ache.* **9** ***Ouch*** *my neck hurts.*	**7–9** *Ugh*, *ow*, and *ouch* express negative emotions; *ugh* disgust or displeasure, and *ow* and *ouch* pain or discomfort. Other interjections expressing unpleasant or negative emotions are *aargh*, *tt* (pronounced as one or more alveolar clicks) and *hm*.
type of insert — Greetings and farewells signal the beginning and end of a conversation respectively. They usually occur in symmetrical exchanges, as in these examples.	
1 *A:* ***Hi*** *Margaret. B:* ***Hi.*** **2** A: ***Hello,*** *Joyce. B:* ***Good morning,*** *Bob.* **3** *A:* ***Morning.*** *B:* ***Morning.***	**1–3** As greetings, *Hi* is more casual than *Hello*, and *Hello* is more casual than forms such as *Good morning* and *Good evening*. These '*good* forms' can be shortened by omission of *good*, as in **3**.
4 *A: Okay.* ***Bye*** *Butch. B:* ***Bye*** *Butch,* ***bye*** *Marc.* **5** *A:* ***See you.*** *B:* ***Bye bye*** **6** *A: Oh.* ***Goodbye*** *Robin. B:* ***See you later.*** *Thank you for a lift. Love you lots.*	**4–6** Farewells, like greetings, tend to become more casual and familiar as they become shorter. Thus **4** and **5** are more casual than **6**. *Good night* is restricted to leave-taking at night time, especially before going to bed.
type of insert — Discourse markers tend to occur at the beginning of a turn or utterance. They signal interactively how the speaker plans to steer the dialogue.	
1 *A: You are always hungry. B:* ***Well,*** *I'm not now.* **2** *A: How much rice are you supposed to have for one person? B:* ***Well,*** *I don't know. A: Half a cup or –* ***well*** *I'm asking you!*	**1–2** *Well* has varied uses, but overall has the function of a 'deliberation marker', indicating the speaker's need to give brief thought to the point at issue. *Well* also often marks a contrast, as in **1** and **2**, and it can also introduce an indirect or evasive answer—as in **2** again.

Table 13.1 continued

individual words/expressions and examples from conversation	explanations
3 ***Right**, are we ready?* **4** *A: Get on the phone and phone them up! B:* ***Right*** *Claire, I will.*	**3–4** *Right* is often used at the beginning of a turn, indicating that some decision is required or accepted. As a reply, it indicates compliance, agreement, or acknowledgement.
5 *A: Alright. Have fun. B:* ***Now*** *does she have her dollar to buy coffee?*	**5** *Now* signals a change of topic, or a return to an earlier topic.
type of insert — Attention getters have the main function of claiming a hearer's attention.	
1 ***Hey**, Raymond,* ***yo**, what's happening?* **2** ***Hey, Hey,*** *look at all the truckers.* **3** *Oh you're not,* ***hey*** *you're not supposed to say that.*	**1–3** *Hey* is used not only for grabbing attention, but for drawing the hearer's attention to sometimes surprising (**2**), or for making a negative comment about someone's behavior (**3**). Attention getters tend to be familiar and abrupt, and sometimes impolite.
4 ***Say**, Mom, have you got any paint rollers.* (AmE)	
type of insert — Response getters are general question tags, added at the end of a statement, question or directive.	
1 *Oh hi, you're Brent's, you're Brent's older sister,* ***huh**? Your brother's so cool.* (AmE) **2** *Jordan what's the matter? What's the matter* ***eh**?* (BrE)	**1–2** *Huh* is AmE and *eh* (pronounced /eɪ/) is BrE.
3 *Just leave out the smutty stuff,* ***okay**?* **4** *You know who Stan is,* ***right**?*	**3–4** Some response getters, such as *okay?*, *right?*, and *alright?*, have other important functions (e.g., response forms). Unlike regular question tags (e.g. *isn't she?*), response getters have a more speaker-centred role, seeking a signal that the utterance has been understood and accepted.
type of insert — Response forms are brief responses to a previous remark by a different speaker. They are positive or negative. They are used to respond to questions, statements, or directives.	
1 *A: Does somebody have a pencil? B:* ***Yeah**, here.* **2** *A: Did you have a good time <...>? B:* ***Yes**. It was very pleasant.*	**1–2** Positive response forms: *Yeah* (/jɛə/) is more common than *yes*, especially in AmE.
3 *A: You don't need it wrapped? B:* ***No**, I'm going to stick it in an envelope.*	**3–4** The usual negative response form is *no*. Abrupt positive and negative forms, spelled *yep* and *nope*, are more casual. *Unh unh* (pronounced /nʔn/) and *Huh uh* (pronounced /əʔə) are casual forms in AmE.

Table 13.1 continued

individual words/expressions and examples from conversation	explanations
4 *A: With a cherry on top? B: **Unh Unh**.* *A: Oh, I forgot you don't like cherries.*	
5 *A: And then we stopped in Arizona to see Aunt Marie, see, on the way.* *B: **Mhm**. A: Her name was Martha <...>* *B: **Uh huh**.*	**5** The positive response forms *Uh huh* (/əhə/) and its nasalized equivalent *mm* (/mː/) or *mhm* (/mhm/) are also used casually, especially as **backchannels** responding to assertions, to let the other speaker know that the utterance is being understood and accepted.
6 *A: Do you want to play? B: **Okay** come on. A: **Okay** you have to pick a card.*	**6** *Okay* is used as a compliant response to directives, suggestions, offers, advice, and requests.
type of insert — Hesitators or 'pause fillers' signal that the speaker is hesitating, and has not yet finished what he/she wants to say.	
1 *What kind of **uh** bulldog is this?*	**1** The neutral vowel schwa (pronounced /ə/ and spelled *uh* or *er*) is the most common hesitator.
2 *A: How am I gonna get it back to you? B: **Um**, I'll come over to your house.*	**2** A common alternative is the variant with a final nasal, /əm/ (spelled *um* or *erm*).
3 *And **um**, she said you were wonderful and **uh**, she's **uh**, she sends her regards.*	**3** *Uh/er* and *um/erm* can occur in the same utterance, and often co-occur with other types of **dysfluency**.
type of insert — Polite formulae: here we place words like *please*, *thanks*, and *sorry*, as well as formulaic expressions like *thank you* and *excuse me*.	
1 *A: Would you like another drink Adam? B: Yes **please** – .*	**1–2** illustrate *please* (for a polite request).
2 *Can I have a – another two Diet Cokes please? **Thank you**.*	**2–3** illustrate *thanks* and *thank you* (for expressing gratitude)
3 ***Thanks** Carl, I appreciate it.*	
4 *Ah! **Beg your pardon!***	**4–5** illustrate *(I) beg your pardon*, *pardon me*, and *excuse me* (for an apology). These forms can also be used for requesting repetition of an utterance.
5 <belch> – ***Pardon me**.*	
type of insert — Expletives are **taboo** expressions ('swearwords') or semi-taboo expressions used as exclamations, especially in reacting to some strongly negative experience.	
1 *This is, **God**, a bloody afternoon wasted!*	**1–6** The first six examples show swearwords, violating the taboo on sensitive topics like religion, sex, and defecation. These terms may cause (serious) offence, especially **4** and **6**. (Note that 'swearwords' belonging to other word classes, such as the adjective *fucking* in **6**, can also cause offence.)
2 *Oh **Jesus**, I didn't know it was that cold.*	
3 *I know what I forgot to get in town. **Damn!***	
4 ***Shit**, play a fucking domino, **goddamit**.* (AmE)	
5 ***Bloody hell**! He's gone mad.* (BrE)	
6 ***Fuck**, I feel fucking sweaty, I can feel it already.*	

Table 13.1 continued

individual words/expressions and examples from conversation	explanations
7 ***My gosh**, what a great idea.*	**7–11** are examples of 'semi-taboo' expressions. These are milder than those in **1–6**, because they disguise the taboo meaning: e.g. *gosh* for *God*, *gee(z)* for *Jesus*. Those in **7–11** can be used to express favourable, as well as unfavourable emotions, like interjections.
8 *A: Nineteen dollars. B: **Geez**, that is expensive.* (AmE)	
9 *Oh boy, **gee**, you've got some nice pictures.* (AmE)	
10 *Oh **good heavens** no, I mean Walt Disney.*	
11 *Oh **heck** well you'll have to go on the bus.*	

Table 13.2 Less common inserts in AmE and BrE conversation

functional type	more common in AmE (in order of frequency)	similar frequency in AmE and BrE	more common in BrE (in order of frequency)
interjections	*wow, aargh, oops, whoops*		*ah, ooh, ha, aha, tt, whoa, cor*
greetings, farewells	*hi, bye bye*	*bye*	*hello*
discourse markers			*now, you see*
attention getters	*hey*		*oi*
response getters	*huh?*		*eh?*
response forms	*uh, huh, mhm, yep, unh unh, huh uh, nope*	*alright*	*aye*
polite forms	*thank you, thanks*	*excuse me*	*please, sorry, pardon*
expletives (*! = can be offensive; !! = can be deeply offensive*)	*my God*$^{!}$, *my gosh, my goodness, geez, gee*	*gosh, shit*$^{!!}$, *fuck*$^{!!}$, *Christ*$^{!!}$, *damn*$^{!}$, *hell*$^{!}$	*God*$^{!}$

- The attention-getter *hey* is more frequent in American English.
- The response-getter *huh?* is more frequent in American English, whereas *eh?* is more frequent in British English.
- The response form *okay* is vastly more frequent in American English.
- American speakers show a much stronger preference for *yeah* over *yes*, although the same preference does exist for British speakers.
- The more casual greeting *Hi* is much more frequent than *Hello* (also spelled *Hullo*) in American English. Greeting formulas with 'good' (*good morning, good evening*, etc.) are surprisingly rare.
- Similarly, *good(-)bye* is surprisingly rare compared with *bye* and *bye bye*.

The tendency towards informality and phonetic reduction in conversation is strong in both varieties, but appears to be generally stronger in American English. This informality partly reflects the private nature of conversation. But it may also reflect a general drift towards familiarity in everyday speech in both British English and, more particularly, American English.

Review

Major points of GRAMMAR BITE C: Grammar, lexis, and discourse

- Lexical bundles are fixed sequences of words that are used repeatedly across texts.
    - Lexical bundles are usually not idioms, and they do not have to be complete structural units.
    - In conversation, most lexical bundles are clause fragments containing a finite verb.
- Inserts are stand-alone words such as *oh*, *okay*, or *well* that are not part of any larger syntactic unit.
    - They have a wide range of discourse functions: interjections, greetings and farewells, discourse markers, attention-getters, response-getters, response forms, hesitators, polite formulae, and expletives.
    - Inserts, although peripheral to grammar, have an important role in the interaction between speaker and hearer.

Glossary of terms

accusative: the morphological form, or case, associated with object syntactic roles. Accusative case is marked only on pronouns in English: *me, her, him, them.* (4.12.3)

activity verb: verbs that refer to actions and events associated with a volitional activity: *buy, go, take.* (5.3)

add-on strategy: the process of constructing conversational turns from a linear sequence of short finite clause-like segments: *I think | you'll find | it counts towards your income.* (13.3.2)

adjective: one of the four lexical word classes in English—its most common use is modifying nouns: *That's **great**; a **bad** attitude.* (2.3.3)

adjective phrase: a phrase with an adjective as its head: *very old; ready for lunch.* (3.3.3)

adverb: one of the four lexical word classes in English—its most common uses are as an adverbial and as a modifier of an adjective: *It goes **fast**; **physically** tired.* (2.3.4)

adverb phrase: a phrase with an adverb as its head: *pretty often; sooner than you think.* (3.3.4)

adverbial: a phrase or clause that functions as a clause element answering questions such as 'When?', 'Where?', 'Why?', or 'How?' (7.10.5). There are three major classes of adverbial: circumstance, stance and linking.

adverbial clause: a clause that functions as an adverbial element in a higher level clause: *You can have it **if you want**.* (8.15.2)

adverbial particle: a function word like *on* or *up*, that can be used as part of a phrasal and phrasal-prepositional verbs: *turn **on**, put **up** with.* (2.4.5)

affix: a cover term including both suffixes and prefixes.

affixation: the process of adding prefixes or suffixes to a word.

agent: the doer of an action: ***Dad** bought that for us.* This term is also used for the noun phrase following a passive + *by*: *I'm influenced by **all kinds of things**.* (6.6)

agentless passive: a clause with a passive voice main verb but no *by*-phrase; also called a short passive: *It was **stolen**.* (6.6)

alternative question: an interrogative clause that is structurally similar to a *yes/no* question but presents alternatives for the addressee to choose between: *Do you want one or two?* (8.11.3)

amplifier: an extent/degree adverb or adverbial that intensifies meaning: ***totally** different, restored **completely**.* (11.6.5)

anaphora (adjective: anaphoric): a relation between two linguistic expressions such that the second one refers back to the first: ***She** must have cut **herself**.*

antecedent: a pronoun like *he, she,* and *they* often refers back to a noun phrase occurring earlier in the same clause, utterance, or text. This noun phrase is called its antecedent. (4.12.1)

appositive noun phrase: a noun phrase that is used as a postmodifier identifying the referent of a preceding noun: *Heiko, **a 19-year-old factory worker**.* (9.11)

approximator: a hedge or adverb that modifies a number, measurement, or quantity: ***approximately** 250 people.* (7.11.6)

article: the function words that signal definite or indefinite meaning: *the, a, an.* (4.6)

aspect: a choice in the verb phrase that expresses time meanings, related to whether an action is finished or still in progress: ***have eaten**, **was going**.* (6.3)

assertive form: this term is applied to a set of words such as *some, somebody, something, somewhere, already,* which have special behavior in negative and interrogative clauses. (8.8.10)

attitude adverbial: an adverbial that conveys an evaluation or an assessment of what is said: *fortunately, surprisingly.* (11.13.2)

attributive adjective: an adjective functioning as a premodifier before a noun (occurring before the head noun in a noun phrase): ***special** skills, **silent** prayers.* (7.7)

auxiliary verb: a closed set of verbs marking meanings associated with aspect, voice, or modality: ***have** taken, **was** seen, **may** go.* (2.4.3)

backchannel: a word or minimal response used as an utterance to show that the listener is continuing to pay attention: *A: Her name was Martha. B: **Uh huh**.* (13.2.3)

bare infinitive clause: a type of complement clause with an infinitive verb form, but without the complementizer *to*: *help **resettle some of the Bosnians**.* (10.13.1)

base: the form of a word to which affixes are added: *friendliness* = the base *friendly* + the affix *-ness.*

binomial phrase: two words from the same grammatical category coordinated by *and* or *or*: *black and white, presence or absence.* (13.6.6)

block language: constructions typical of headlines, titles, slogans, lists, and notices, using only words essential for the message: *Waiting game. Anxious times in Middle East.* (4.6.2, 8.14)

cardinal numeral: a word (especially a postdeterminer) that states how many: *the **ten** books.*

case: a choice of word form marking the syntactic role of a noun or pronoun, for example as subject (*he*), object (*him*), or genitive (*John's*). (4.9, 4.12.3)

cataphora (cataphoric): a relation between two linguistic expressions such that the first one refers forward to the second: ***It's** nice, **that table**.* (4.6.3)

causative verb: a verb that indicates that some person or thing brings about, or helps to bring about, a new state of affairs: *help, let, allow, require.* (5.3)

central adjective: an adjective that has all the typical characteristics of form, meaning, and use. (7.2)

circumstance adverbial: an adverbial that describes the circumstances relating to the main clause, by answering such questions as 'Where?', 'When?', 'How?', 'Why?', 'How much?': *He'd **always** stay **[in a small hotel]** **[because he prefers them]**.* (11.6)

classifier: a type of adjective that limits or restricts a noun's referent: ***additional** money, **particular** facts.* (7.6)

classifying genitive: a genitive that classifies the reference of the head noun, answering the question 'What kind of X?': *a **bird's** nest, a **girls'** school.* (4.9.3)

clause: a key structural unit of grammar, normally consisting of a verb phrase plus other elements: subject, object, predicative, adverbial.

cleft: a grammatical construction with information broken into two clauses, to provide extra focus to one piece of information. *It*-cleft: *It was his voice that held me.* *Wh*-cleft: *What I want is something to eat.* (12.12)

closed class: a class of words with a small number of members, such as articles or prepositions. (2.2.2)

cohesion: the pattern of relations between structures and lexical items which combine together to form a text. Pronouns like *she*, conjunctions like *but*, and linking adverbs like *therefore* have a particular role in cohesion.

collective noun: a noun that refers to a group: *army, family, herd.* (4.4.1)

collocation: a combination of lexical words which frequently co-occur in texts: *little + baby, small + amount, make + (a) + mistake.*

common noun: a noun that refers to a class rather than a specific entity: *girl*, *city*, *grief*. (4.2)

communication verbs: verbs that refer to speaking and writing activities: *tell*, *shout*, *write*. (5.3)

comparative clause: a clause expressing comparison, normally in an adjective phrase or an adverb phrase, with a gradable word as head: *better* ***than it was***, ***as*** *quickly* ***as possible***. (8.15.4)

complement: a phrase or clause that completes the meaning required by some other form. For example, *that*-clauses can be verb complements: *She said* ***that she has changed***.

complement clause: a dependent clause controlled by a preceding verb, adjective, noun, or preposition: *It should be easy* ***to remember***. (8.15.1)

complementizer: a type of subordinator that begins a complement clause: *I said* ***that*** *I wasn't perfect*. (2.4.7)

complex preposition: a preposition consisting of two or more words: *such as*, *in case of*. (2.4.4)

complex transitive: a transitive valency pattern that includes both a direct object and an object predicative: *Some people* ***call them sodas***. (3.4, 5.7)

compound pronoun: a pronoun that begins with one of the determiners *every*, *some*, *any*, or *no*: *someone*, *anybody*, *nothing*. (4.15.1)

compounding: a process that creates new words by combining two existing words: *bathroom*, *bittersweet*. (4.11.3)

concord (subject–verb): the requirement that the verb phrase in a finite clause agree with the subject in terms of number and person: *he is* v. *they are*. (8.6)

condensation (structural): reducing the amount of structure needed to express a given meaning, for example by using pronouns and non-finite clauses. (8.5.3)

conjunction: a type of function word that connects clauses (and sometimes phrases or words). Conjunctions are subdivided into coordinators and subordinators.

conversion: a process of creating new words by transferring an existing word to a different word class: *walk* as a verb → *a walk* as a noun. (4.11.2)

coordination: connecting two or more clauses, phrases, words, or other structures with equivalent status: *a paper in one hand* ***and*** *a bill in the other*. (8.4)

coordinator: a function word used to connect (or coordinate) two or more words, phrases, or clauses with equivalent status: *and*, *but*, *or*. (8.4)

copula: the primary verb *be* occurring as a main verb: *I* ***am*** *sorry*. (5.16)

copular: a valency pattern that includes a verb and a subject predicative: *He* ***was a gambler***. (3.4, 5.7)

copular verb: any verb that occurs with a copular valency pattern, taking a subject predicative as complement: *He's American. It* ***tastes*** *different*. (5.16)

co-referential: two expressions that refer to the same entity are co-referential: ***Mr. Bond*** *told journalists* ***he*** *was not finished yet.*

correlative coordinator: a combination of two separated words used to signal a relation of coordination: *both … and*; *either … or*; *neither … nor*.

countable noun: a noun that refers to entities that can be counted: ***a cow***, *two* ***cows***. (4.2)

current copular verb: copular verbs that refer to a continuing state of existence or report sensory perceptions: *He* ***seemed*** *satisfied. You* ***stay*** *healthy*. (5.16)

dangling (unattached) participle: an adverbial *ing*- or *ed*-clause with an understood subject that is different from the subject in the main clause: ***Leaving the road,*** *the darkness of the trees surrounded them*. (11.10.1)

declarative clause: a clause (normally with subject–verb word order) that functions to make assertions or statements: *I can't pay my rent. They went to Jamaica*. (8.10)

declarative tag: a peripheral clause with subject–verb word order, added to the end of another clause: *I thoroughly enjoyed it* ***I did***. (8.15.5)

definite article: the determiner *the*, which signals definite meaning. (4.6)

degree clause: a complement clause of an adjective or adverb that tells the extent or degree of a characteristic: *strong enough* ***to hold weight***, *too softly* ***to hear***. Comparative clauses are degree clauses, too.

deictic words: words that point to the situation (especially place or time) in which the speaker is speaking: *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, *now*, *then*.

demonstrative determiner: *this/these* and *that/those* acting as determiners; they convey definite meaning, and specify whether the referent is near or distant in relation to the speaker: ***that*** *word*, ***these*** *pictures*. They are deictic words. (4.7.2)

demonstrative pronoun: a demonstrative form (*this*, *that*, *these*, *those*) functioning as a pronoun: *You will need* ***those***. (4.14)

dependent clause: a type of clause that is normally part of another clause, called its main clause: *I hate* ***to see that***. *We have 30 men* ***who are working***. (8.15)

derivation: the process by which one word is derived from another, by affixation or conversion.

derivational affix: a prefix or suffix added to another word to form a longer word: *happy* → *happi****ness***, *happy* → ***un****happy*.

descriptors: a class of adjectives that describe color, size, weight, chronology, age, emotion, and other characteristics; they are usually gradable: *red*, *old*, *sad*. (7.6)

determiner: a function word that specifies the kind of reference a noun has (e.g. definite, indefinite, negative): ***the*** *walls*, ***those*** *experiences*, ***a*** *bell*, ***no*** *time*. (4.5)

diminisher/downtoner: an extent/degree adverb that diminishes meaning: ***slightly*** *cold*, ***almost*** *empty*. (7.11.4)

direct object: a clause element that follows the main verb, typically a noun phrase referring to the entity affected by the action or process of the verb: *She broke* ***my favorite coffee mug***. (3.5.3)

directive: a speech act expecting some action from the addressee: *Sit down. Can you turn down the TV.*

discourse marker: a type of insert used in conversation. It signals interactively how the speaker plans to steer the dialogue: ***Now****, here's some …* (13.2.3, 13.7)

dislocation: a construction with a pronoun in the main clause and a definite noun phrase before or after the main clause, used to mark the topic or for clarification: ***Sharon*** *she plays bingo. Did they have any,* ***the kids?*** (12.11)

ditransitive: a transitive valency pattern that includes both a direct object and an indirect object: *I* ***gave her the material***. (3.4, 5.7)

do*-support (or *do*-insertion):** the addition of the operator *do* when it is required for questions or negation: *Why* ***do *you hate it? I* ***do*** *not have my pencil*. (5.15.2, 8.7)

double genitive: A construction that includes both the genitive suffix (*'s*) and an *of*-phrase: *a good idea of Johnny's*. (4.9.6)

dummy pronoun: the pronoun *it* as a non-referential subject: *It's cold in here*. (3.5.2)

dynamic verbs: verbs that express action or events. (5.3)

dysfluency: the way in which unplanned speech departs from smooth flowing, grammatically well-formed utterances. (13.2.5)

ed*-clause:** a type of non-finite dependent clause with the *ed*-form of a verb: ***Taken together*, these things persuade many people*. (8.16.3)

ed*-form, *ed*-participle:** a non-finite form of verbs, which in regular verbs ends in *-ed* (e.g. ***heated *by gas*) but in irregular verbs takes various forms, including a form ending in *-en*: ***taken, seen, sent.***

ellipsis: omission of clause or phrase elements that can be reconstructed from the context: *A: I have to appease you. B: No you don't* ^ . (8.5)

embedded (phrase or clause): a phrase or clause that is contained within a higher-level phrase or clause: *[reduction [in the risk [of death [from job-related accidents]]]].* (9.3.2)

end-focus: the normal case in English where attention is given naturally to the last lexical item in the clause. This is signaled in speech by the strongest stress or intonation peak. (12.1.2)

end-weight: a preference in English word order, whereby more complex elements of structure tend to follow less complex ones.

epistemic adverbial: a stance adverbial that expresses the speaker's judgment about the certainty, or limited validity, of the proposition: *You are* ***probably*** *correct.* (11.13.1)

exclamation: a word, phrase or clause that functions like an exclamative clause, expressing strong feelings: *What a miracle! Great!* (3.2.4, 7.9.5, 8.9)

exclamative clause: a type of finite clause used to express strong emotion. It begins with *what* or *how*, followed by subject and verb phrase: *What a tragic death it was.* (8.12)

existential *there*: the word *there* used as subject, where it does not refer to a place, but introduces a clause expressing existence: ***There*** *is no answer to that question.* (12.5)

experiencer: the person who undergoes the sensory or cognitive experience expressed by a verb: ***He*** *smelled her perfume.* (6.5.1)

expletive: a 'swearword', a taboo or semi-taboo expression used as an exclamation: *God! geez! bloody hell!* (13.7)

extraposed: a complement clause is extraposed where dummy *it* fills the subject slot, and the complement clause is placed after the predicate: *It is clear* ***that it will not be simple.*** (10.3.3)

feminine: see gender. (4.10)

finite clause/finite verb phrase: a clause (or verb phrase) that has either present/past tense or a modal verb. (8.3.2)

free combination: a combination in which each word contributes its own meaning: *He was afraid to* ***look back.*** (5.8)

fronting: moving a clause element to initial position: ***That*** *I also like.* (12.3)

function words: words that express grammatical relationships and classifications, such as determiners, conjunctions, and prepositions. (2.4)

gap: the location of the missing constituent in a relative clause: *... a great athlete, which I believe I am* ^ . (9.8)

gender: grammatical marking to signify female (feminine gender: *policewoman, she*), male (masculine gender: *businessman, he*), neither male nor female (neuter gender: *house, it*), or either male or female (personal gender: *student, who*). (4.10)

generic reference: reference to a whole class, rather than to just one or more instances of a class: ***Horses*** *are intelligent animals.* (4.6.4)

genitive: the marking, or case, represented by the *'s* suffix on nouns (or just by *'* in the plural): *Henry's, teachers'.* (4.9)

***get*-passive:** a passive verb phrase marked by the auxiliary *get* rather than *be: got stolen.* (6.7.2)

gradable: quality that exists to a greater or lesser extent: e.g. *old* represents a gradable concept: *older, rather old, very old,* etc. (2.3.3)

head: the required element in any phrase that specifies the type of the phrase; for example, noun phrases have a noun (or pronoun) as the head: *the standard* ***rules*** *of behavior.* (2.8)

hedge: a word that conveys imprecision or uncertainty, often used to lessen the force of what is said: *It seems* ***sort of*** *a betrayal. I* ***might*** *need it.* (11.13.1)

historic present tense: the use of a verb phrase in the present tense to refer to an event that occurred in the past: *They went to some park and got an ice cream ... So we* ***get*** *there ...* (6.2.1)

hypothetical/unreal condition: a condition that cannot be fulfilled, expressed by the past or past perfect form of the verb phrase: *if I* ***had*** *all the money in the world ...* (11.9.1)

idiom: a fixed expression with a meaning that cannot be determined from the individual parts: *kick the bucket.* (13.6.5)

imperative clause: a clause with the base form of the verb, and usually no subject and no extended verb phrase markers (i.e. no modals or tense/aspect markers). Imperatives function as directives: *Be quiet.* (8.13, 13.2.3)

indefinite article: the determiner *a/an* that signals indefinite meaning. (4.6)

indefinite pronoun: a pronoun with indefinite meaning, e.g. compound pronouns (like *anybody*), quantifiers (like *some*), or the pronoun *one.* (4.15)

independent clause: a clause that can stand alone without being subordinate to another clause: *She has a day off school.* (8.9)

independent genitive: a genitive phrase standing alone as a noun phrase: *She's going to* ***a friend's.*** (4.9.5)

indirect object: a clause element that follows verbs like *give* and *tell*, referring to the recipient of the action: *Dave gave* ***me*** *this stuff.* (3.5.3)

infinitive clause: a non-finite dependent clause with the base form of a verb, usually preceded by *to*: *They told her* ***to wait six months.*** (8.16.1)

inflection: a morphological change in verbs, nouns, and some other word classes, that expresses a grammatical meaning such as number or tense: *office**s**, try**ing**, came, late**st**.*

information flow: the normal ordering of information in English discourse, moving from given information and to new information (12.1.1)

ing*-clause:** a non-finite dependent clause with the *ing*-form of a verb: *I stopped* ***going to class. (8.16.2)

***ing*-form, *ing*-participle:** a non-finite form of a verb, ending in *-ing*: *working, eating, discussing.* (2.3.2, 2.3.6)

insert: a general term for conversational words that can be positioned rather freely in a discourse; they usually convey emotional and discoursal meanings (e.g., *oh, yeah, hey, well*). (2.2.2, 13.2.1, 13.7)

intensifier: an alternative term for amplifier. (11.6.5)

interjection: an exclamatory insert used in speech to express emotion or attitude: *oh, ah, wow.* (13.2.4, 13.7)

interrogative clause: a clause marked in certain ways (inversion, initial *wh*-word, intonation) to show that it functions as a question: ***Do you*** *want any food*? ***What*** *is this?* (8.11)

interrogative pronoun: a *wh*-pronoun used (normally) at the beginning of a question or interrogative clause: *what, which, who.*

intransitive: a valency pattern with no objects: *She* ***slept*** *a lot. Michael* ***disappeared.*** (3.4, 5.7)

inversion: a reversal of the normal word order so that the a verb precedes the subject: *Then* ***came the turning point of the match.*** (12.4)

irregular plural: the plural form of nouns that do not follow the regular rule of just adding *-(e)s* to form the plural: *mouse* → ***mice***; *child* → ***children.*** (4.8.2)

irregular verb: a verb which does not use the regular *-ed* inflection for past tense and/or past participle: *speak—spoke—spoken*; *send—sent—sent.* (5.5)

lexeme: a word, in the sense applicable to words listed in a dictionary—a set of grammatical words sharing the same basic lexical meaning, the same basic form and the same word class: *leave*, *leaves*, *left*, and *leaving* belong to the same lexeme. (2.2.1)

lexical bundle: a sequence of words which is used repeatedly in texts. (13.6)

lexical verb: one of the four lexical word classes in English; e.g. *come*, *find*, *overcome*, *magnify*. Lexical verbs act as main verbs in clauses. They cannot act as auxiliary verbs. (2.3.2)

lexical word classes: the open classes of words, used to convey content meaning: lexical verbs, nouns, adjectives, and adverbs (compare with function words).

linking adverbial: an adverbial that relates a clause to preceding (or following) clauses: *however*, *therefore.* (11.17–11.19)

logical modal meaning: modal verbs used to refer to the logical status of states or events, expressing certainty, likelihood, or logical necessity: *We **might** meet them.* (6.10)

long passive: a clause with a passive voice verb phrase plus a *by*-phrase as agent: *The proposal was approved by the Project Coordinating Team.* (6.6)

long verb phrase: a phrase including the verb phrase and any other clause elements which follow the main verb: *My mother **was born in Canada.*** (3.5.6)

main clause: a clause in which a dependent clause is directly embedded. In *[I think {I can fix it}]*, the dependent clause is in *{}*, and the main clause is in *[]*.

main verb: the head and final verb in a verb phrase: ***told***, *have **had**, might be **seen**.* (3.3.2)

mark: indicate or express a given meaning: as in 'Stance adverbials overtly mark a speaker's attitude or judgments'.

marked: a pattern that is not the most typical pattern, and therefore has some special meaning or function. For example, fronting is marked in relation to regular word order: *This I do not understand* v. *I do not understand this.*

masculine: see gender. (4.10)

mental verb: a verb that refers to mental states or activities: *know*, *remember.* (5.3)

modal auxiliary: an alternative term for modal verb.

modal verb: a type of auxiliary verb used to express logical or personal meanings: *can*, *should*, *might.* (6.9)

modality: the expression of logical meaning or personal meaning through the use of modal auxiliary verbs. (6.9)

modifier: an omissible form that specifies further meaning about the head of its phrase: ***very** quickly*, *a **social** critic **who wrote in 1933**.*

monotransitive: a transitive valency pattern that includes only a direct object: *No one ever **saw them**.* (3.4, 5.7)

morpheme: the smallest structural unit that has meaning. Prefixes, suffixes, and stems are morphemes. (2.1)

morphology: the part of grammar explaining how morphemes are put together to construct words.

multiple negation: a construction with two or more negation markers: *You've **never** seen **nothing** like it.* (8.8.12)

negation: forming a negative clause by adding negative elements such as *not* or *no*. (8.8)

negative contraction: reduction in the spelling and/or pronunciation of *not* used in combination with the preceding verb (= operator): *isn't*, *can't.* (8.8.3)

neuter: see gender. (4.10)

nominal: any word, phrase, or clause filling a noun phrase slot, for example, as subject or object.

nominal clause: another term for a complement clause—a clause functioning as a nominal. (8.15.1)

nominalizations: abstract nouns formed from verbs or adjectives through derivational morphology: *educate → education*, *happy → happiness.*

nominative: the morphological form, or case, associated with the subject role. Nominative case is marked only on pronouns in English: *she* and *he* v. *her* and *him*. (4.12.3)

non-assertive: this term applies to a number of words such as *any*, *anyone*, *anything*, *ever*, *at all*. These are commonly used to express indefinite meaning in negative and interrogative clauses. (8.8.10)

non-clausal material: the parts of a text or discourse which do not consist of clauses. See non-clausal units.

non-clausal units: structural units (most commonly found in conversation) that are not composed of clauses: e.g. *With or without ice? How cool! Not a lot.* (13.4)

***no*-negation:** forming a negative clause by using negative words other than *not*, such as *no*, *nothing*, *never*: *She had **no future** in Japan.* (8.8.7)

non-finite clause/non-finite verb phrase: a clause (or verb phrase) that has no tense and does not include a modal verb: *I want **to be careful**.* (8.3.2)

non-restrictive modifier: a modifier that does not restrict the reference of a head noun, but rather adds elaborating, descriptive information about the noun: *her husband, **who is now remarried**.* (9.7)

notional concord: subject–verb concord based on meaning rather than the actual grammatical form: ***Two pounds** is nothing. **The committee were** in there.* (8.6.6)

notional subject: the noun phrase coming after the copular verb in constructions with existential *there*; logically, it functions as the subject: *There is **no easy solution**.* (12.7)

***not*-negation:** forming a negative clause by inserting the negative particle *not* after the operator: *It is **not** unusual.* (8.8.1)

noun complement clauses: clauses that act as complements of an abstract noun: *the expectation **that the stock will move still higher**; permission **to wear them**.* (9.13)

noun: one of the four lexical word classes in English, used to refer to concrete entities or substances, and abstract qualities or states: *pencil*, *bread*, *friendship*, *joy*. (2.3.1)

noun phrase: a phrase with a noun (or pronoun) as head: *the standard rules of behavior*. (3.3.1)

noun phrase tag: a definite noun phrase shifted to a position after the main clause: *Has it got double doors, **that shop**?* (12.11.2)

number: the choice between singular or plural forms of nouns, pronouns and other word classes: e.g. *table—tables*; *this—these*. (4.8)

numeral: a word that either specifies how many (cardinal numeral) or the position in a series (ordinal numeral): *the past **three** years, the **third** week.* (2.5.3)

object: a cover term for nominal clause elements occurring after the main verb, including direct objects and indirect objects. Objects can usually become the subject of a passive clause. (3.5.3)

object predicative: a clause element that occurs after the direct object and characterizes the object: *A jury found him **guilty**.* (3.5.4)

open class: a term describing lexical words (verbs, nouns, adjectives, or adverbs), signifying that it is not possible to list all the members of the class and that new members are regularly added. (2.2.3)

operator: the verb used to construct negative or interrogative clauses: *I **will** not allow you to go there. **Is** she walking?* (8.7)

ordinal numeral: a number word that specifies the position of items in a series: *the **first** day.*

orthographic word: a 'word' defined as such by being separated by spaces in writing. (2.2.1)

parenthetical: a element in writing 'bracketed' off by parentheses or dashes, and grammatically loosely attached to the rest of the sentence. (3.5.6)

part of speech: another term for word class.

participial: having the form of a participle: e.g. in *a **sleeping** child* and *He looked **prepared***, *sleeping* and *prepared* are participial adjectives.

participle: the *ed-* and *ing*-forms of a verb are known as *ed-* and *ing*-participles: *was **sleeping**, I've **prepared** a brief statement.*

participle clause: a non-finite clause with an *-ing* participle or an *-ed* participle as the main verb: *I regret **missing the plane. Given these obstacles,** Mattel said . . .*

particle movement: a test for phrasal verbs, whereby the adverbial particle can be placed either before or after the following object noun phrase: ***get back** my shirt, **get** my shirt **back**.* (5.8.1)

passive clause: a clause containing a passive verb phrase.

passive voice, passive verb phrase: a verb construction marked by *be* + past participle, and generally used to give less prominence to the agent of the clause: *He **was struck** several times*. (Compare this with its active equivalent: *They **struck him** several times.*) (6.6)

perfect aspect: a verb construction that describes events or states taking place in the past, but linked to a subsequent time, especially the present. The perfect aspect is formed with *have* + past participle*: have seen, had driven.* (6.3)

perfect progressive: a verb construction that combines both perfect aspect and progressive aspect: *have been seeing*. (6.3.2)

peripheral adjective: an adjective with only some of the typical characteristics of adjective form, meaning, and use: *mere, awake*. (7.2.2)

peripheral clause: a clause, such as reporting clauses and tag clauses, on the boundary of dependent and independent status. (8.15.5)

personal gender: see gender. (4.10)

personal modal meaning: modal verbs used to refer to actions and events that humans directly control, expressing personal permission, obligation, or volition (intention): ***Can** I follow you? We **should** take you there.* (6.10)

personal pronoun: the most common type of pronoun, which has different forms for first person (*I, we*), second person (*you, yours*) and third person (*it, they*). (4.12)

phrasal verb: a multi-word verb consisting of a lexical verb plus adverbial particle: ***turn on** the television set*. (5.9)

phrasal-prepositional verb: a multi-word verb consisting of a lexical verb plus adverbial particle plus preposition: *look forward to*. (5.11)

phrase: a structural unit built from words, consisting of a head plus (optionally) modifiers. (3.2)

possessive determiner: a determiner in a noun phrase that expresses possession, and is comparable to the genitive of nouns: *my, your.* (4.7.1)

possessive pronoun: a pronoun that expresses possession, and is comparable to the independent genitive of nouns: *mine, yours.* (4.12.4)

postmodification: the part of a complex noun phrase consisting of modifiers that follow it: e.g. relative clauses and prepositional phrases. (9.2, 9.3.2)

postmodifier: a modifier following a head noun: *the beginning **of the program**.* (9.2, 9.3.2)

postmodifier complex: the combination of all modifiers and embedded modifiers following a head noun. (9.12.1)

postposed: placed after another element that usually follows. For example, an adjective that follows the head is postposed: *everything **possible**.* (7.9.1)

post-predicate: a complement clauses that occur after the main verb, or after a copular verb plus predicative adjective: *I thought **he was there**. I'm sure **she will**.* (10.3.2)

predicate: the 'logical center' of a clause, consisting sometimes of a verb, and sometimes of a copular verb plus predicate adjective. The predicate determines what elements occur as complements in the clause: *I **thought** he was there. **I'm sure** she will.*

predicative adjective: an adjective that occurs in the subject predicative position, following a copular verb: *He seems **tired**.*

predicative: a clause element that characterizes the referent of some other clause element, either the subject (subject predicatives) or the object (object predicatives). (3.5.4)

preface: a noun phrase functioning as a dislocated peripheral element, placed before the subject of a clause: ***This little shop** – it's lovely*. (12.11.1)

prefix: a morpheme added to the front of a word: ***re**read, **un**sure*.

premodification: modifying structures that occur before a noun and describe it, such as attributive adjectives: *all the **exciting new** things*. (9.2, 9.3.1)

premodifier: an individual modifier preceding a head noun: *a homely, **big** child.* (9.2, 9.3.1)

preposition: a word that introduces a prepositional phrase, linking the following noun phrase to other elements of the sentence: *locked her keys **in** the car, your recollection **about** these events*. (2.4.4)

prepositional complement: the noun phrase (or nominal clause, etc.) that follows a preposition and completes the prepositional phrase: *in **the car**.* (2.4.4)

prepositional object: a noun phrase (or nominal clause, etc.) which normally follows the preposition of a prepositional verb, and which resembles the object of a transitive verb: *asked for **permission**.* (A prepositional object is a special type of prepositional complement.)

prepositional phrase: a phrase consisting of a preposition followed by a noun phrase (or a nominal clause) as prepositional complement: *to the train station, after this Monday*. (2.4.4)

prepositional verb: a multi-word verb consisting of a lexical verb plus preposition: *look at, think of.* (5.10)

primary auxiliary: a primary verb (*be, have*, or *do*) when used as an auxiliary verb.

primary verb: one of the verbs *be, have*, and *do*, which can function as either auxiliary verbs or main verbs. (5.2.2)

pro-form: a word whose function is to substitute for another, often longer, expression. (See pronoun, pro-verb.)

progressive aspect: a verb construction describing an event or state of affairs which is in progress or continuing; formed with *be* + *ing*-participle: *is staying, were flying.* (6.3)

pronoun: a function word that typically fills the position of an entire noun phrase: *a straw hat* → ***it***. Pronouns have a substitute or co-referential function.

proper noun: a noun that names an individual, usually a specific person or place: *Sue, Chicago.* (4.2)

pro-verb: the verb *do* substituting for a lexical verb or a complete predicate: *A: He doesn't even know you. B: He **does**!* (5.15)

quantifier: a cover term used for quantifying determiners and quantifying pronouns.

quantifying determiner: a type of determiner that indicates the amount of something: ***all** the countries, **some** ideas.* (4.7.3)

quantifying noun: a noun that refers to quantities: *a **pound** of brown sugar, a **pile** of money*. (4.4.3)

quantifying pronoun: a type of pronoun that indicates an indefinite amount of something: ***most*** *of the people, I have* ***some***. (4.15.2)

question: the speech act of asking for information, associated with interrogative clauses. (8.11)

question tag: a reduced interrogative clause added to the end of a declarative clause, used to seek confirmation or agreement in conversation: *This is a beautiful spot* ***isn't it?*** (8.11.4)

reciprocal pronoun: a type of pronoun that expresses a mutual relationship between two or more parties: *each other, one another*. (4.13.3)

referent: the person, entity, or group of people/entities referred to by a noun phrase.

reflexive pronoun: a type of pronoun that ends in *-self* and refers back to the subject of the clause: *myself, herself, oneself*. (4.13)

regular plural: the usual rule of adding *-(e)s* to form the plural of a noun: *cow, cows*. (4.8.1)

regular verb: a verb with the usual *-ed* endings for past tense and past participle: *walk,* ***walked****, has* ***walked***. (5.5)

relative adverb: a relativizer *where, when,* or *why,* used when the relative clause has an adverbial gap: *that time* ***when*** *you got stuck on the road.* (9.8.1)

relative clause: a type of finite dependent clause used to modify a noun phrase: *the team* ***that performed the kidney transplant***. (8.15.3)

relative pronoun: a relativizer *which, who, whom, whose,* or *that,* used when the relative clause has a non-adverbial gap: *executives* ***who*** *created special programs.* (9.8.1)

relativizer: the word that introduces a relative clause (either a relative pronoun or a relative adverb) and relates it to the preceding noun head. (9.8.1)

repair: an utterance in conversation where a speaker repeats what was said with some sort of correction: *I don't think you sh-* ***I think you should*** *leave* ... (13.2.5)

reporting clause: a type of peripheral clause that introduces somebody's direct speech or thought: *Can we do some singing?* ***he asks***. (8.15.5)

response form: a word like *yeah* or *no* used in speech to signal a response to the listener.

restrictive postmodifier: a postmodifier that restricts the intended reference of the head noun: *people* ***who want Julius dead***. (9.7)

result copular verb: a copular verb that identifies an attribute that is the result of a process of change: *become, grow, come, turn out*. (5.17.3)

scope: the part of a clause whose semantic interpretation is affected by a modifier or an adverbial. See also scope of negation. (11.2, 11.5)

scope of negation: the part of a clause that becomes negative in meaning due to the occurrence of a negative word. (8.8.9)

semantic: having to do with the meaning of language forms.

semantic categories: the meaning classes of verbs, nouns, adjectives, or adverbs: e.g. activity verbs, time adverbials.

semi-determiner: words like *other* and *same*, which share properties of both determiners and adjectives. (4.7.5)

semi-modal: a multi-word verb that shares some of the grammatical and semantic properties of modal verbs: *have to, be going to*. (6.9)

sentence: a complete structure found in written texts, bounded by sentence punctuation such as '.', '!', '?'.

short passive: another term for agentless passive.

simple aspect: used for verb phrases that are not marked as either perfect aspect or progressive aspect.

species noun: a class of nouns that identify the type of something: *a* ***kind*** *of beer, the* ***type*** *of person.* (4.4.4)

specifying genitive: a genitive functioning like a determiner, and answering the question 'Whose X?' where *X* is the referent of the head noun: ***the girl's*** *name* (contrasted with classifying genitive).

speech act: the communicative function associated with an utterance: e.g. *Can you tell me what to do with this?* is a question, or request for information. (13.2.4)

stance: overt expressions of personal attitudes or feelings towards the content of a clause.

stance adverbials: adverbials that express speaker judgments of the proposition expressed by the rest of the clause: *It* ***definitely*** *is a trend.* (11.13, 13.2.4)

statement: a speech act used to report information, and associated with declarative clauses.

stative verbs: verbs that refer to mental states, attitudes/emotions, perceptions, or other states of existence: *know, feel, see, exist*. (5.3)

stem: the core morpheme of a word to which affixes can be added: *saintliness* = stem *saint* + affix *-ly* + affix *-ness*.

stranded preposition: a preposition that is not followed by its prepositional complement: *Which order shall we go* ***in?*** (3.3.5)

style adverbial: a type of stance adverbial that comments on the manner of conveying the message: *But* ***frankly*** *I am not very impressed with it.* (11.13.3)

subject: the clause element that normally occurs before the verb phrase in a clause, and is a noun phrase identifying the agent or experiencer of the verb: *On Tuesday* ***she*** *sang the whole thing to us.* ***Greenland*** *is the place.*

subject predicative: a phrase that occurs after a copular verb and characterizes the subject of the clause: *She is* ***a singer****. It feels* ***warm***. (3.5.4)

subject–operator inversion: a change in word order where the subject is preceded by the operator but the rest of the verb phrase (if any) follows the subject: *On no account* ***must he strain***. (12.4)

subject–verb inversion: a change in word order where the subject is preceded by the verb phrase: *After that* ***comes the frog***. (12.4)

subjunctive: the form of a finite verb that is sometimes used in hypothetical or non-factual cases: *whether it* ***be*** *in an office or on the factory floor. If I* ***were*** *you* ... The subjunctive is rarely used in English. (8.17)

subordination: the type of linkage that allows one clause to be embedded in or dependent on another clause: *I thought about it* ***after I sent the package***. (8.3)

subordinator: a function word used to introduce subordination: ***because*** *it was amazing,* ***if*** *he's going with me.* (2.4.6)

suffix: a morpheme added to the end of a word: *excite****ment****, work****ing***.

supplement clause: a peripheral type of non-finite adverbial clause that supplements the information in the main clause, without specifying the exact semantic relationship: *He shook his head,* ***still gazing at the patterns of sunshine*** ... (11.9.2)

syntactic blend: a sentence or clause that finishes in a way that is grammatically inconsistent with the way it began: *That's one of the things that there is a shortage of in this play, is people who actually care.* This is a type of dysfluency in speech. (13.3.1)

syntactic role: the grammatical function that a unit of grammar serves in a higher unit. For example, noun phrases have roles such as subject, direct object, and indirect object in a clause. (2.1, 3.3.1)

syntax: the description of how words, phrases, and clauses are constructed and combined in a language.

tag: a peripheral element added to the end of a clause: see noun phrase tag, question tag, or declarative tag. (3.5.6)

tense: morphological marking on the verb phrase related to time distinctions: compare present tense *kick****(s)****, do****(es)*** with past tense *kick****ed****,* ***did***. (6.2)

that*-clause:** a type of finite complement clause introduced by the word *that* as complementizer (although *that* is sometimes omitted): *Booker said* ***that I should call them up. (8.15.1)

to-infinitive clause: a non-finite dependent clause with the base form of a verb preceded by *to*: *They told her* ***to wait six months.*** *something* ***to consider.*** (8.16.1)

token: each occurrence of a word in a text is a token of that word (compare with type). (2.2)

transitive: a valency pattern that includes one or more objects. (3.4)

type: a word considered as a distinct vocabulary item (compare with token). (2.2)

uncountable noun: a type of noun that refers to things that cannot be counted, and normally has no plural form: *milk, equipment, leather.* (4.2)

unit noun: a type of noun that specifies the units used to divide up a generalized mass or substance into countable parts: ***slice*** *of bread*, ***grain*** *of salt.* (4.4.2)

unmarked: the grammatical choice that is most typical, such as subject–verb–object word order in English (compare with marked).

valency pattern: the pattern of clause elements that can occur with a verb: e.g. intransitive, monotransitive. (5.7)

verb: a class of words which have finite and non-finite forms, and normally vary for present and past tense: *have, take, look.* A cover term for lexical verbs and auxiliary verbs. (2.3.2, 2.4.3)

verb contraction: reduction in the spelling and/or pronunciation of verbs used in combination with adjacent words: *I'll, he's.* (8.8.2)

verb phrase: a phrase with a main verb as head: ***tells***, *was* ***taken***, *has been* ***answered***.

verbless clause: a type of non-finite dependent clause with no verb: *The author apologizes* ***where appropriate***. (8.16.5)

verbs of aspect: verbs that characterize the stage of progress of an event or activity: *begin, continue, stop.* (5.3)

verbs of existence or relationship: verbs that report a state of existence or a logical relationship: *appear, exist, represent.* (5.3)

verbs of occurrence: verbs that report events that occur without an actor's volition: *become, happen, develop.* (5.3)

vernacular: natural spoken English associated with regional or social dialect, and often not regarded as part of the standard language.

vocative: a peripheral noun phrase used to identify the person who is being addressed: *These are good eggs* ***Dad***. (3.5.7, 13.2.3)

voice: the choice in the verb phrase between active (*takes*) and passive (*was taken*) forms. (6.6)

volitional activity: an activity performed intentionally by an agent.

wh*-clause:** a type of finite clause introduced by a *wh*-word as complementizer: *She didn't ask* ***what my plans were. (10.9–11)

***wh*-determiner:** a determiner which is a *wh*-word: *whose, which.* (4.7.6)

***wh*-interrogative clause:** another term for a *wh*-question.

***wh*-pronoun:** a pronoun which is a *wh*-word: *which, what, who.*

wh*-question:** a type of interrogative clause with an initial *wh*-word: ***What *are these?* (8.11.1)

***wh*-word:** a word like *who, what, when,* and *where,* used in *wh*-questions and various types of dependent clause. (2.5.1)

word class: a class of words based on grammatical and semantic properties. Two major families of word classes are lexical word classes (nouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs) and function word classes (e.g. determiners, prepositions).

***yes/no* interrogative clause:** another term for *yes/no* question.

yes/no* question:** a type of interrogative clause marked only by subject-operator inversion: ***Is that *right?* (8.11.2)

zero article: the term used where there is no article or other determiner before a noun: *serve* ***dinner***, *drink* ***wine***. (4.6.2)

zero plural: a plural form which is identical to the singular form: *sheep, deer.* (4.8.4)

zero relativizer: the term used where the relativizer of a relative clause is omitted: ***a school*** *^ I know*. (9.8)

A–Z list of irregular verbs

KEY

The most common verbs are written in **bold**.
Less common verbs are printed in ordinary letters (not bold).
•• Verbs marked like this are **very common** (31 verbs).
• Verbs marked like this are **common** (59 verbs).
Verbs not marked with a bullet point (•) are **less common**.
NOTES: 1 2 3 etc. are explained at the end of the list.

Basic form	Past tense	Past participle
• arise	arose	arisen [see rise]
awake	awoke[1]	awoke[1] [see wake]
•• **be**	**was, were**	**been**
• bear	bore	borne[4]
• beat	beat	beaten
•• **become**	**became**	**become**
•• **begin**	**began**	**begun**
bend	bent	bent
bet	bet[1]	bet
bid	bade, bid	bid(den)
• bind	bound	bound
bite	bit	bitten
bleed	bled	bled
• blow	blew	blown
• break	broke	broken
breed	bred	bred
•• **bring**	**brought**	**brought**
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast [see cast]
• build	built	built
• burn	burnt[2]	burnt[2]
burst	burst	burst
• buy	bought	bought
cast	cast	cast
• catch	caught	caught
• choose	chose	chosen
cling	clung	clung
•• **come**	**came**	**come**
• cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept
• cut	cut	cut
• deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug	dug
•• **do**	**did**	**done**
• draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamed, dreamt[2]	dreamed, dreamt[2]
• drink	drank	drunk
• drive	drove	driven
dwell	dwelt[2]	dwelt[2]
• eat	ate	eaten
• fall	fell	fallen
• feed	fed	fed
•• **feel**	**felt**	**felt**
• fight	fought	fought
•• **find**	**found**	**found**
flee	fled	fled
fling	flung	flung
fly	flew	flown
forbid	forbad(e)	forbidden [see bid]
forecast	forecast	forecast [see cast]
foresee	foresaw	foreseen [see see]
foretell	foretold	foretold [see tell]
• forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven [see give]
freeze	froze	frozen
•• **get**	**got**	**got** (BrE), **gotten** (AmE)
•• **give**	**gave**	**given**
•• **go**	**went**	**gone, been**
grind	ground	ground
• grow	grew	grown
• hang	hung[1]	hung[1]
•• **have**	**had**	**had**
•• **hear**	**heard**	**heard**
• hide	hid	hidden
• hit	hit	hit
•• **hold**	**held**	**held**
hurt	hurt	hurt
•• **keep**	**kept**	**kept**
kneel	knelt[2]	knelt[2]
knit	knit[1]	knit[1]
•• **know**	**knew**	**known**
• lay	laid[3]	laid[3]
• lead	led	led
• lean	leant[2]	leant[2]
leap	leapt[2]	leapt[2]
• learn	learnt[2]	learnt[2]
•• **leave**	**left**	**left**
lend	lent	lent
• let	let	let
• lie	lay	lain*
light	lit[1]	lit[1]
• lose	lost	lost
•• **make**	**made**	**made**
•• **mean**	**meant**	**meant**
• meet	met	met
mislead	misled	misled [see lead]
mistake	mistook	mistaken [see take]
misunderstand	misunderstood	misunderstood [see understand, stand]
mow	mowed	mown[1]
overcome	overcame	overcome [see come]
overdo	overdid	overdone [see do]
override	overrode	overridden [see ride]
overrun	overran	overrun [see run]
oversee	oversaw	overseen [see see]
overtake	overtook	overtaken [see take]
overthrow	overthrew	overthrown [see throw]
partake	partook	partaken [see take]
•• **pay**	**paid[3]**	**paid[3]**

*lie meaning 'not telling the truth' is regular: *lie ~ lied ~ lied*

Basic form	Past tense	Past participle
• prove	proved	proven[1]
•• **put**	**put**	**put**
quit	quit[1]	quit[1]
• read	read	read
rid	rid[1]	rid[1]
• ride	rode	ridden
• ring	rang	rung
• rise	rose	risen
•• **run**	**ran**	**run**
saw	sawed	sawn[1]
•• **say**	**said**	**said**
•• **see**	**saw**	**seen**
• seek	sought	sought
• sell	sold	sold
• send	sent	sent
•• **set**	**set**	**set**
sew	sewed	sewn[1]
• shake	shook	shaken
shed	shed	shed
shine	shone[1]	shone[1]
shoe	shod[1]	shod[1]
• shoot	shot	shot
•• **show**	**showed**	**shown**[1]
shrink	shrank	shrunk
• shut	shut	shut
• sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
• sit	sat	sat
• sleep	slept	slept
slide	slid	slid
sling	slung	slung
slink	slunk	slunk
slit	slit	slit
smell	smelt[2]	smelt[2]
sow	sowed	sown[1]
• speak	spoke	spoken
speed	sped[1]	sped[1]
spell	spelt[2]	spelt[2]
• spend	spent	spent
spill	spilt[2]	spilt[2]
spin	span, spun	spun
spit	spat, spit	spat, spit
split	split	split
spoil	spoilt[2]	spoilt[2]
• spread	spread	spread
spring	sprang	sprung
•• **stand**	**stood**	**stood**
steal	stole	stolen
• stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
stink	stank	stunk
stride	strode	stridden, strode
• strike	struck	struck
string	strung	strung
strive	strove[1]	striven[1]
swear	swore	sworn
sweep	swept	swept
swell	swelled	swollen[1]
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
•• **take**	**took**	**taken**
• teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
•• **tell**	**told**	**told**
•• **think**	**thought**	**thought**
• throw	threw	thrown
thrust	thrust	thrust
tread	trod	trod
undergo	underwent	undergone [see go]
• understand	understood	understood [see stand]
• undertake	undertook	undertaken [see take]
undo	undid	undone [see do]
uphold	upheld	upheld [see hold]
upset	upset	upset [see set]
wake	woke[1]	woken[1]
• wear	wore	worn
weave	wove	woven
wed	wed[1]	wed[1]
weep	wept	wept
• win	won	won
wind	wound	wound
withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn [see draw]
withhold	withheld	withheld [see hold]
withstand	withstood	withstood [see stand]
wring	wrung	wrung
•• **write**	**wrote**	**written**

NOTES

[1] means that regular forms are also used.

[2] means that both regular forms and irregular forms exist. The regular spellings are generally more common in AmE, e.g. *leaped.*

[3] *Lay* and *pay* are regular verbs in pronunciation, but the spellings *laid* and *paid* are irregular. (Compare the regular *stayed, prayed.*)

[4] ***Be born*** occurs only as a passive form. It is related to *bear ~ bore ~ borne.*

Index

Note: Page references in *italics* indicate tables; those in **bold type** indicate major references to topics; those in ***bold italic*** indicate terms in the Glossary. Headwords in bold type indicate major topics.

A

- *a/an* 41, 56, 58, 67–8, 72, ***457***
- *about* 29, 126
- **academic prose**
  - formality in 287
  - information density of 5, 23, 187, 189–90, 268, 269, 297
  - lexical density in 19, 105–6
  - as register category 3, 5, *9*
  - *see also discussions of corpus findings in all chapters*
- **activity verb 106–7**, 128, 137, 270, ***455***
  - and aspect 161, 163, 165
  - with *ing*-complement clause 344, 346–7
  - multi-word 128, 131–2, 133
  - single-word 106–7, 110, 112
  - and tense 155–6
- 'add-on' strategy 228, 436, **438–9**, ***455***
  - *see also* preface; tag
- adjectival clause *see* relative clause
- **adjective** 22, **187–93**, **197–204**, ***455***
  - absolute meanings 217–18
  - v. adverb 195–6
  - attributive *see* attributive adjective
  - *be* + adjective 191
  - in binomial expression 198–9, 449
  - central 188–90, *455*
  - characteristics **188–90**
  - as classifier 197–8, 199–200, 201, 278, ***455***
  - as clause link 203
  - color 188, 197, 277–8
  - combinations 198–9, 204–5, 209, 279
  - comparative *see* comparative adjective
  - compound 22, 192, 209, 278
  - degree complement 219
  - as descriptor 188, 197–8, 199, 201, 217, 278, ***456***
  - as exclamation 203
  - with extraposed clauses 318–19
  - formation 22, **190–3**, 215–18
  - gradable 22, 167, 188, 189, 198, 215, ***457***
    - and degree adverbs 209, 210
  - modification 23, 196, 202, 204–5, 276, 277, 402
  - as modifier *see* modifier; postmodifier; premodifier
  - nominalized 89
- **adjective**—*cont.*
  - as noun phrase head 22, 42, 188, 202–3
  - participial 24, 167, 190–1, 277, ***459***
  - peripheral 188, 189, ***459***
  - with post-predicate clause 318, **335–6**
  - as postmodifier 202
  - predicative *see* predicative adjective
  - register distribution 23, 187, 191–3, *191*, 198, 217
  - syntactic roles 22, 187, 188, 198, 202–4
  - with *that*-clause 202, 219, 308, 312, 317–19
  - of time 188, 197, 199
  - with *to*-clause 219, 335–6, 337–8, 339, 342–3, 351
  - *see also* adjective: semantic domains; binomial expression; comparative clause and phrase; morphology; stance adjective; superlative adjective
- adjective complement clause 200–1, 202, 257, 308, 310–11, ***459***
- **adjective phrase 43–4**, ***455***
  - with complements 43
  - with infinitive clause 259
  - with *ing*-clause 260
  - as modifier *see* modifier; postmodifier
  - as predicative 22, 50, 141, 142
  - as stance adverbial 203
  - as subject predicative 43–4, 45, 141, 142
  - syntactic roles 22, 43–4
- **adjective: semantic domains** 22, 188, **197–9**
  - ability/willingness 335, 351
  - affect 201, 317, 319, 335
  - certainty 202, 318, 319, 335, 338, 341
  - ease/difficulty 336, 338, 339, 342
  - evaluative 144, *144–5*, 198, 199–200, 201, 217, 434
    - in complement clauses 317, 319, 336, 339, 347–8
  - habitual behaviour 183
  - necessity/importance 202, 319, 339, 351
- **adverb** 22–3, 187, **193–6**, **204–15**, ***455***
  - v. adjective 195–6
  - as clause element *see* adverbial
  - combinations 204–6, 209
  - comparative 22, **218**, 258
  - as complement of preposition 206, 260
  - compound 194
  - with degree complement 23, 24, 219–20
  - fixed phrase as 194
  - formation 22, **193–6**
  - interrogative 33
  - modification of 205–6, 385

adverb—*cont.*
  as modifier *see* modifier; postmodifier; premodifier
  postposed 204
  prepositional 30
  register distribution 23, 187, 194–5, *194*, 204–5, 211, 214–15, *214*, 431
  relative adverb 33, 282, ***460***
  simple 193
  stance 208, **212–13**, 214
  standing alone 207–8
  superlative 22, **218**
  syntactic roles 23, 187, 193, **204–8**
  and word order 277
  see also adverb: semantic domains; adverbial; amplifier; binomial expression; circumstance adverbial; degree adverb; deictic; downtoner; intensifier; morphology
adverb phrase 44, *455*
  as adverbial 44, 51, 207, 219, 358
  head 23, 44
  as modifier 44, 205
  syntactic roles 44
adverb: semantic domains 23, **208–15**
  additive/restrictive 211, 415
  courtesy 213
  linking 213, 214–15
  manner 209, 210, 289
  means 213
  place 34, 206, 208, 413
  purpose 213
  time 152, 206, 208, 214
adverbial 23, 50–1, 187, 207, **353–96**, ***455***
  addition/restriction adverbial 366, 371–2
  adverb as 193, 195, 209, 355, 358–9
  adverb phrase as 44, 207, 209, 219, 358
  circumstance *see* circumstance adverbial
  classes 354, **355–7**
    see also circumstance adverbial; linking adverbial; stance adverbial
  comparative 364
  ed-clause as 227, 260, 358
  with existential *there* 415
  finite clause as 227, 358
  infinitive clause as 227, 259
  ing-clause as 227, 260, 358
  with inversion ***460***
  linking *see* linking adverbial
  multiple 18, 355
  and negation 245
  non-finite clause as 260, 358, 364–5, 376–7, 380
  noun phrase as 42, 51, 355, 358
  obligatory 50–1, 355, 369
    and copular verb 51, 120, 135, 140
  one-word 372
adverbial—*cont.*
  optional 51, 119, 121, 122–3, 355–6, 357, 370
  peripheral 51, 53
  place *see* circumstance adverbial
  positions 51, 355, **359–60**, 361, 406–7, 415
  prepositional phrase as 45, 51, 130, 269, 290, 355, 358–9, 416
  register distribution 214, 357, 359, *359*, 360
  scope 361
  semantic roles 354–5, 406
  stance *see* stance adverbial
  syntactic forms 355, **358–9**
  temporal *see* circumstance adverbial
  to-clause as 358, 376, 377, 379
  see also adverbial clause
adverbial clause 257, ***455***
  as circumstance adverbial *see* adverbial clause as circumstance adverbial
  as comment clause 257
  register distribution 375, 439
  as stance adverbial 385
  and subjunctive 261
  and subordinator 31, 257, 374, 376, 380–2
  and *wh*-words 257
adverbial clause as circumstance adverbial 257, **373–82**
  as discourse frame 379
  ed-clause 374–5, 377–8
  finite clause 376–7, 380–1
  ing-clause 374–5, 377–8
  non-finite clause 358, 374–5, 376–7, 380
  positions **378–9**
  register distribution 375–6, *375*
  semantic categories 152, 257, 294, **373–6**
  see also contingency adverbial; place adverbial; process/manner adverbial; proportion clause; time adverbial
  syntactic forms *376*, **376–8**
  to-clause 376, 377, 379
  see also conditional clause; preference clause; proportion clause; subordinator; supplement clause; *though*
adverbial particle *see* particle, adverbial
affective verb 344
affix 17, **88–90**, 91, 118–19, 191–2, ***455***, ***456***
  see also prefix; suffix
affixation ***455***
after 31, 381
agent ***455***
  subject as 48, 106–7, 164–5, 168
  see also passive, long
agreement, subject-verb *see* subject-verb concord
almost 210
American English
  and adverbials 386–7
  and adverbs 196, 205

American English—*cont.*
  and aspect 158–9, 160
  and complement clause 315, 348–9
  and conversational grammar 442–3
  as dialect 5, 6–7
  and inserts 449–53, *449*, *453*
  and modals and semi-modals 174, 253
  and negation 243
  and noun compounds 60
  and premodification 275–6
  and pronoun use 95, 100
  and regular/irregular verbs 117–18
  and subject-verb concord 235
amplifier 209–10, 211, 366, ***455***
anaphora *see* reference, anaphoric
and 30–1, 198, 227–8, 229, 233–4, 278, 448
antecedent 95, 97, 257, ***455***
anyway 394, 395
apologies 433
apposition *see* linking adverbial, semantic categories; noun phrase
approximator 212, ***455***
  see also hedge
aren't I 242–3
article 67–72, ***455***
  definite 56, 70–1, 72, 203, ***456***
    and anaphoric reference 70, 72
    as determiner 26, 67, 76
    with genitive 82
    and proper nouns 60
  and generic reference 72
  indefinite 26, 56, 67–8, 71, ***457***
  register distribution 67, 71
  zero 67, 68–70, 72, ***461***
as
  as adverb complement 219–20, 258, *410*
  in comparative 96
  as preposition *36*
  as subordinator 31, *36*, 381, 404
aspect 21, **156–66**, ***455***
  and passive 173–4
  past perfect 136, 157, 159, 161, 162
  past progressive 163, 165
  perfect 112, 118, **156–62**, 173, 241, ***459***
    with modal verbs 28, 115, 183
  perfect progressive 157, 158, ***459***
  present perfect 136–7, 157, 159–62
  present progressive 162
  progressive **156–9**, **162–5**, 173–4, ***459***
    and *ing*-words 135, 183, 293, 347
    with modal verbs 183–4
    with primary auxiliaries 28, 135
  register distribution 158–9, *158*, 163, 164–5, 173–4
  simple 158, 161–2, ***460***
  stative 112
aspect—*cont.*
  and tense 136, 156–62
  see also direct speech reporting
aspect verb **109**, ***461***
  with *ing*-complement clause 109, 344, 346–7
  single-word 109
  with *to*-complement clause 109, *333*, 334
assertion
  in elliptic reply
  in interrogative clause 246, ***455***
  in negation 244, 246–7, ***455***
attention signal 432, *451*, 453, *453*
attitude verb 155, 163
attributive adjective 44, 188, 189, 191, **199–200**, ***455***
  common 199–200, *200*
  and intensifier 199
  as modifier 199, 264, 268, 272
  and peripheral adjective 189
  register distribution 189–90, *190*, 192, 199–200, *200*, 431
  see also adjective; adjective: semantic domains
auxiliary verb 16, **27–8**, 115, ***455***
  and aspect 28
  in interrogative clauses 42, 138, 252, 253–4
  v. lexical verb 21
  v. main verb 42, 103–4
  modal 28, 42, 104, 174, 175, 242, 243–4, ***458***
  in negative clauses 28, 242
  and operators 238, 239
  and passive 28
  primary 27
  and subject-verb concord 237
  in verb phrase 42, 149
  see also be; do; have

B

backchannel 251, 432, ***455***
bare infinitive *see* infinitive clause, bare
base 17, 115, 118, 261, ***455***
be 44, 50, **135–7**, 139, 140–1, 232, 323, 360, ***456***
  as auxiliary verb 21, 27–8, 135, 166
  with complement clause 141, 317, 334, 338–9
  contraction 237, 240–1, 242–3, 435
  existential 141–2
  with existential *there* 412, 414
  with *it*-cleft 420, 421
  as lexical verb 21, 103–4, 105–6
  as main verb 28, 105–6, 135
  and negation 238, 240
  as operator 238
  with passive 28, 115, 135, 166, 171–2, 331
  and personal pronoun 96
  with progressive aspect 28, 135
  register distribution 105, 141–2

be—*cont.*
  in relative clause 295
  and subject-verb concord 237
  and verb contraction 237, 240–1, 242–3, 435
be going to 28, 175, 182, 184–5
become 50, 109, 145
before 36, 257, 381
binomial expression **448–9**, ***455***
  adjective + adjective 198–9, 449
  adverb + adverb 448
  noun + noun 448
  verb + verb 448
blend, syntactic 437–8, ***460***
block language 69, 255–6, 262, ***455***
body *see* conversation

C

can 21, 28, 104, 174, 177–8, *177*, 179, *179*, 184
  register distribution 435
capitals, initial 59–60
case 79–84, ***455***
  accusative 48, 79, 93, 96, ***455***
  nominative 48, 79, 93, 96, ***458***
  and personal pronouns 93, 96
  see also genitive; inflection
cataphora *see* reference, cataphoric
causative verb **108**, ***455***
  and aspect 163
  multi-word 132
  single-word 108, 111
  with *to*-complement clause 108, *333*, 334
choice, and grammar 1, 3–4
circumstance adverbial 194, 207, 354, 355, **362–82**, ***455***
  clause as *see* adverbial clause as circumstance adverbial
  common adverbials 368–9
  and dangling participle 377–8
  position 360, *369*, **369–72**
  prepositional phrase as 126, 142, 354, 359
  register distribution 357, 367–9, 375–6, *375*
  scope 355, 361, 366, 370–2
  semantic categories **362–8**, *367*
    additional categories 373–6
    recipient 367
    see also addition/restriction adverbial; contingency adverbial; degree adverbial; place adverbial; process/manner adverbial; time adverbial
  v. stance adverbial 385
  see also finite clause; non-finite clause; noun phrase; prepositional phrase
classes
  open v. closed 15, **16–17**, 104, ***455***, ***458***
  see also lexical word, class
classifier *see* adjective, as classifier; genitive, classifying
clausal unit in conversation, ellipsis in 441–3
clause 13, **221–62**, ***455***
  adjectival *see* relative clause
  coordinated 222, 223, *224*, 227–9, 248
  distribution 222–3
  elements **46–54**, 323
    see also adverbial; direct object; indirect object; object predicative; operator; prepositional object; subject; verb phrase
  embedded 31, 38, 222, 223, 224–7, *224*, *225*, 228
  existential *see there*, existential
  extraposed *see* extraposition
  links 33, 227–9
  main 31, 401, 439, ***458***
  negative *see* negation
  v. non-clausal material **222–3**
  peripheral elements 53–4, ***459***
  as postmodifier 266
  subordination 31, 222, 223, 224–7, 256
  temporal 246
  types 46–7
    see also adverbial clause; comment clause; comparative clause; complement clause; conditional clause; declarative clause; degree clause; dependent clause; exclamative clause; finite clause; imperative clause; independent clause; infinitive clause; interrogative clause; non–finite clause; relative clause; reporting clause; supplement clause
  verbless 259, **261**, 358, 360, ***461***
  see also discourse marker; ellipsis; insert; parentheticals; preface; tag; vocative
clause patterns 46–7, 226–7
  infinitive clauses 329–32
  subject + verb + optional adverbial 121, 122–3
  see also end weight principle; fronting; inversion; postponement; valency patterns; word order
clefting 398, **419–23**, ***455***
  demonstrative *wh*-cleft 421, 422–3, 425, *425*
  it-cleft 420, 422
  register distribution 422–3, *422*, *425*
  reversed *wh*-cleft 421
  wh-cleft 420, 421
cognition verb *see* mental verb
cohesion ***455***
  and adverbials 366, 379, 388, 407, 415
  and fronting 402, 403, 405
  and information principle 340, 370, 399
  and inversion 406, 407, 408
collective noun 60, ***455***
  as countable 61

collective noun—*cont.*
  with genitives 82
  of-collective 61
  and subject-verb concord 235
collocation 18, ***455***
  with copular verbs 145–6
  fixed 83
  v. lexical bundle 444
  and negation 245
  with package nouns 61–2, 63–4
combination, word 18
  complex prepositions 29
  v. lexical bundle 444
  verb + noun phrase 134, 329
  verb + particle 128–9
  verb + prepositional phrase 126, 134
  verb + verb 134, 448
  see also free combination; lexical bundle; lexical verb, multi-word
come 112, 128, 133, 140, *147*, 152, 346
commands 251, 394, 440–1
  and emphatic *do* 139
  and imperative clauses 255
comment clause 257
  as stance adverbial 439
common noun 20–1, 56, ***456***
  and modification 21, 294
  package noun 60–4
  v. proper noun 56, **59–60**
  see also countable noun; uncountable noun
communication verb 107, **316–17**, 363, ***456***
  and aspect 160, 163
  with *ing*-complement clause 347
  multi-word 131
  single-word 107, 111
  and tense 156
  with *that*-complement clause *315*, 316–17
  with *to*-complement clause *332*
  with *wh*-complement clause 324, *325*, 326
  see also speech-act verb
comparative adjective 215–18, *216*, 258, 402
  doubly marked 217
  inflectional 22, 188, 215–16, 217, 219
  phrasal 215–16, 217
  register distribution 217
  repeated 198
  see also comparative clause and phrase; superlative adjective
comparative clause and phrase 96, **218–20**, 258, ***456***
  assertive v. non-assertive forms 246
  and ellipsis 220, 231
  with inversion *410*
complement ***456***
  of adjective 43, 200–1, 219, 307–8, 323–4
  of adverb 219–20
complement—*cont.*
  of copular verbs *143–5*, 146, *147*
  noun phrase as 42, 259
  see also complement clause; prepositional complement
complement clause 256–7, **300–6**, **307–52**, ***456***
  with adjective phrase 43
  choice of **349–51**
  and clefting 421
  controlled by adjective *see* adjective complement clause
  controlled by noun 257, **300–6**, 308
    see also noun complement clause
  controlled by predicate 202, 257, 308, 310
  controlled by verb **307–52**
    see also verb complement clause
  and copular verb 141–6
  as dependent clause 256–8, 308
  and ellipsis 220, **348–9**
  finite *see that*-complement clause; *wh*-complement clause
  fronted 401–2
  grammatical positions 172, **310–12**
  infinitival *see to*-complement clause
  with lexical bundle 445–6
  and lexical verbs 108, 109, 121
  as nominal clause 236, 308, 421
  non-finite *see ing*-complement clause; *to*-complement clause
  and prepositions 45
  register distribution 350, 431
  structural types 308–9, 349–51
  subordinator *see* if; *that*-complement clause; *whether*
  syntactic role 256
  with verbs 304, 307–8
  see also adjective complement clause; *ed*-participle clause; extraposition; *ing*-complement clause; noun complement clause; *that*-complement clause; *to*-complement clause; verb complement clause; *wh*-complement clause
complement phrase, and predicative adjective 142
complementation *see* clause patterns; valency patterns
complementizer 308, ***456***
  infinitive marker *to* 34, 348
  wh-words 31, 33, 326, 348
  see also if; *that*-complement clause
complex transitive *see* valency patterns, complex transitive
compounding 17, 18, **91–2**, 209, 277, ***456***
  see also adjective, compound; adverb, compound; noun, compound; pronoun, compound
concord *see* subject-verb concord

condensation 223, **230–2**, 440–1, ***456***
  see also directive; ellipsis
conditional clause 257, 373–4, 379
  assertive/non-assertive 246, 374
  hypothetical (unreal) 151, 374, 375, 377, 380, ***457***
  with inversion 380, *410*
  open (real) 373, 375
  rhetorical 374
conjunction 30, 53, 258, 408, ***456***
  see also coordinator; subordinator
connective 138–9
contingency adverbial 365–6, 373
contraction
  of auxiliary verb 27, 28, 140, 240
  negative 28, 239, 240, 242–3, 244, ***458***
  register distribution 241, 242, 243, 434
  of verb 237, 240–1, *240*, 242–3, 435, ***461***
  see also be
contrast 138–9, 199, 398, **399**
  by clefting 420, 422
conversation 427–54
  and adjectives 187
  complexity v. simplicity in 436
  dysfluencies 11, 434, **436–8**, ***456***
    see also 'add-on' strategy; blend, syntactic; hesitator; pause; repair; repeat; utterance, incomplete
  ellipsis in 231, 348, 430, 436, 441–3
  functional characteristics 428, **429–35**
  information density in 190
  and inserts 19, 430, **449–53**
  as interactive 5, 252, 388, 430, 431–3, 449
  lexical bundle in 19, 428, 434, 443–9, *444*
  lexical density in 23, 105–6, 430
  negation in 247, 431
  non-clausal units 255–6, 430, 432, 436, **440–1**
  non-elaboration/specification of meaning 430–1
  real-time contruction 428, 434–5, **436–43**
  as register category 3, 4
  restricted repertoire 434–5
  shared context 267, 429, 430
  standard English in 6
  and subject-verb concord 237
  and vernacular grammar 6, 237, 437
  see also direct speech reporting; discourse; imperative clause; insert; interrogative clause, *yes-no*; politeness; preface; tag; vocative
conversion *91*, **91**, ***456***
coordination 4, 222, **227–9**, 255, ***456***
  with clausal/non-clausal units 30, *224*, 227–8, 248
  and ellipsis 230
  and personal pronouns 94
  phrasal 227–8
coordination —*cont.*
  of premodifiers 278–9
  register distribution 228
  and subject-verb concord 233–4
  see also binomial expression; tag
coordinator 16, **30**, 224, 227, ***456***
  v. adverbial 227
  correlative 30, 229, ***456***
  sentence-initial v. turn-initial 227, 229
  v. subordinator 225
  see also and; or
copula 47, 120, **456**
copular verb 140–7
  with complement clause *143–5*, 146, *147*, 317, 334, 338–9
  current 140–1, 142–4, *144–5*, **456**
  as existence verb 109, 141–4
  functions 141–6
  with participial adjective 190
  phrasal verb as 128, 129, 141
  as primary auxiliary
  register distribution 144, 145–6
  result 140–1, 145–6, *147*, 198, ***460***
  sensory 142–4
  with subject predicative 50, 120, 135, 140–7, 188, 200, 310–11, 313
  with *to*-infinitive 334
  valency patterns 47, 120, **456**
  see also be; subject predicative
corpus-based approach 2, 3–4
countable noun 57–8, 60–4, ***456***
  and article 56, 58, 68–9, 70, 72
  and determiner *65*, 74, 75–6
  plural 56
  and quantifier 74–5

D

declarative clause 139, **249**, 255, ***456***
  as directive 249
  with ellipsis 442
  and existential *there* 413
  and fronting 401
  and intransitive phrasal verb 128
  lexical bundle in 446
  negative 240
  preface with 418
  and tag 53, 258, 419, ***456***
definite article *see* article, definite
degree *see* amplifier; comparative clause; intensifier
degree adjective *see* comparative adjective; superlative adjective
degree adverb 188, 209–11, 214, 216
  see also adverb, comparative; *so*; *that*
degree adverbial 366, 367, 371–2

degree clause 31, 246, 402–3, ***456***
deictic 214, 369, 430, ***456***
demonstrative *see* determiner, demonstrative
demonstrative pronoun 98–9, ***456***
  and anaphoric reference 74
  with demonstrative *wh*-cleft 421
  as determiner 26–7
  with existential *there* 417
  and modification 271
  register distribution 98–9
  as tag 419
  those with postmodifier 271
  see also that; this
dependent clause 256–62, ***456***
  with clefting 420, 421
  and ellipsis 231, 262
  embedded 31, 224, 248, 419
  finite 225, 226–7, **256–8**, 308–9, 350, 380–1
  fronting in 404
  interrogative 301–2, 326–8, 409–10
  inversion in 409–11, *410*
  and negation 246
  non-finite 225–6, **259–61**
  and past perfect aspect 162
  register distribution 439
  and simple past tense 151
  and subjunctive verbs 261
  and subordinator 31, **224–7**, 404
  unembedded 262
  see also adverbial clause; complement clause; noun complement clause; relative clause; *that*-complement clause; *to*-complement clause; *wh*-complement clause
derivation 17, ***456***
  adjective 22, **191–2**
  and gender
  noun 20, 85, **88–92**, 108
  verbs 21, **118–19**
  zero 91
  see also adverb, formation; affix; conversion; prefix; suffix
descriptive grammar 7
determiner 26, **65–77**, ***456***
  central 65, *66*
  comparative 258
  definite/indefinite *see* article
  demonstrative 26, 65, **73–4**, 98, ***456***
  interrogative 33
  v. noun 66
  with noun-head phrase 41, 65, 66, 72, 264
  v. pronoun 66, *67*
  and referential specification 70–2, 80, 272
  register distribution 32, *32*
  relative 33
  semi-determiner 66, **77**, 101, 231, 233, ***460***
  wh-determiner 26, 65, **77**, ***461***
determiner—*cont.*
  see also article; genitive; numeral; possessive determiner; postdeterminer; predeterminer; quantifier; reference, generic
dialect
  American v. British English 3, 5, 6–7, 158–9
  and contraction 243
  in LSWE Corpus 3, 5–6, 7–8
  and modals 174
  and negation 247
  regional/social 435
  and register 5, 435
diminisher 210, 366, ***456***
direct object 49, ***456***
  and adverbial particle 425
  complement clause as 308, 310
  ed-particle as 260
  finite clause as 226–7
  infinitive clause as 226–7, 259
  ing-clause as 226–7, 260
  noun phrase as 125, 126, 130, 172, 330, 424
  with object predicative 50, 201, 424
  of phrasal verb 127–8, 424–5
  postponed 424
  and predicative 50
  and prepositional phrase 423
  of prepositional verb 129–30, 131, 367
  pronoun as 125, 127–8, 423, 424
  pronoun sequence as 423
  semantic roles 49
  and valency patterns 49, 120
  word-order options 423
  see also clause patterns; complement clause; gap
direct speech reporting 192, 328
  and communication verbs 316
  past tense with reporting verb 111, 152–3
  and *that*-complement clause 316
  and zero relativizer 288–9
  see also reporting clause
directive 128, 248–9, *249*, 251, 255, 433, ***456***
  condensed 440–1
discourse marker 391, 419, 433, 440, *450–1*, *453*, ***456***
  in imperative clause 255
  v. stance adverbial 386
  see also insert; linking adverbial
dislocation **418–19**, ***456***
  see also preface; tag, noun phrase
ditransitive *see* valency patterns, ditransitive
***do* 137–9**
  as auxiliary verb 21, 27–8, 42, 104, 138, 240
  do-support 138, 139, ***456***
  as dummy operator 138, 238, 239–40, 243–4, 252, 253–4, 406, 408, ***456***
  v. ellipsis 138, 231
  emphatic 138–9, 403

do—*cont.*
  in idiomatic expressions 134
  and imperative clauses 139
  in interrogative clauses 28, 42, 138
  as lexical verb 21
  as main verb 27, 104, 137–8
  in negative clauses 28, 138, 239–40
  as pro-verb 137–8, 139
  as stranded operator 139
  with subject-operator inversion 408
  and subject-verb concord 237
downtoner 210, ***456***
dummy operator *see* do
dummy pronoun *see* it
dysfluencies *see* conversation, dysfluencies

E

early 36
echoing 250, 403
ed*-participle** 116–18, 260, 377, ***457, ***459***
  and participial adjectives 190–1
  and passive voice 135, 166, 183, 292–3
  and perfect aspect 11, 118, 160, 183
ed*-participle clause 260**, ***456
  as adverbial 227, 260, 358, 374–5
  common controlling verbs 309
  as complement clause 309
  as object predicative 227
  as postmodifier 260, 266, 270, 272, 291, 292–3
  register distribution 292
  restrictive and non-restrictive 281
ed-predicate, fronted 404
effort verb
  with *ing*-clause 347
  with *to*-clause 333, *333*
elision 434
ellipsis 230–2, 436, ***457***
  in clausal units 222, 223, 441–3
  in comparative clause 220, 231
  in complement clause 220, **348–9**
  in coordinate clause 230
  v. *do* 137–8, 231
  elliptic genitives 81, 97, 231
  final (post-operator) 230, 239, **442**
  initial (situational) 230, **441–2**
  in interrogative clause 231, 251
  medial (operator) 230, **442–3**
  in non-clausal units 440
  in noun phrases 81, 231
  situational *see* ellipsis, initial
  textual v. situational 230
embedding 298–9, ***457***
  and complement clause 350
  and coordination 228
  and dependent clause 31, 224, 248, 298–9, 419
embedding—*cont.*
  multiple *298*, 299, 439
  phrases 38, 40, *41*, 45, 265, 299
  and subordination 222, 223, 224–7, *224*, *225*
  that-clause 313, 320
  see also dependent clause; parentheticals
emphasis 98, 138–9, 387, 388, **399**, 403–4, 421
  see also focus; word order
enclitics
end weight principle 398, **400**, 419, ***457***
  and adverbials 360, 370
  and clause-end patterns 131, 320, 342, 423
  and fronting 404
  and genitive v. *of*-phrase 84, *84*
  and long passive 169–70
  and subject-verb inversion 406, 407, 411
endearments 433
evaluation *see* adjective: semantic domains, evaluative; stance; stance adverbial
exclamation 203, ***457***
exclamative clause 248, *249*, 251, **254**, ***457***
  and adjectives 203
  and degree adverbs 210
  with fronting 404–5
  indirect 323
  register distribution 253, 433
  and *wh*-words 322–3, 404
  see also expletive; interjection
existence verb **109**, ***461***
  and aspect 160
  and copular verbs 109, 141–4, 414
  multi-word 132
  single-word 109
  with *to*-complement clause *333*, 334, 337, 341
expletive 7, 250, 433, *452–3*, ***457***
extraposition 259, ***457***
  in *that*-complement clause 311, 313, 317, **318–21**, 337, 350
  in *to*-infinitive clause 259, 311, 328, **338–42**, 350
  in *wh*-complement clause 311

F

false starts 434
farewells 432, *450*, *453*
feminine *see* gender
fiction
  and dialect 6
  as register category 3, 5, *8*
  see also discussions of corpus findings in all chapters
finite clause ***457***
  as postmodifier 266
  and style adverbial 386
  subject of 376–7
  and subject-verb concord 232, 236

finite clause—*cont.*
  and subordinator 380
  see also dependent clause, finite
focus 399, 400, 416–17, 421, 422
  double 398, 399, 403
  end-**focus** 84, 398, 399, 404, 408, 417, 419, ***457***
  and fronting 402, 403, 404, 405
  and inversion 406, 409
  see also emphasis; word order
formality 287
free combination ***457***
  v. multi-word lexical verb 124–5, 126, 127, 128–9, 134, 329, 448
fronting 400–5, ***457***
  with bare infinitive 403–4
  with clefting 420
  in dependent clauses 404
  in exclamations 404–5
  with inversion 402–3, 404
  in non-finite constructions 403–4
  of objects and other nominals 401–2, 405
  of predicative 402–3, 405
  of prepositional phrase 288
  register distribution 405
  types 401–5, *401*
function, and structure 248–9
function word 16, 19, **26–35**, 273, 447, ***457***
  borderline cases 29
  classes 16, 26–32
  register distribution 32, *32*, 430
  special classes 32–5
  see also auxiliary verb; coordinator; determiner; *not*; numeral; particle, adverbial; preposition; pronoun; subordinator; *there*; *to*; *wh*-word
future tense *see* aspect; modal verb; tense, and time; volition/prediction

G

gap 281–2, 284, ***457***
  adverbial 282–3, **289–91**, 293–4
  direct object 282, 283, 293–4
  prepositional object 293
  subject v. non-subject 283, 286–8, 291–2, 293, 301
  see also relative clause
gender 85–8, 93, ***457***
  classes 85–6
  personal v. non-personal reference 85, 87–8
genitive 20, **79–84**, ***457***
  attributive 83
  classifying 80–1, ***455***
  as determiner 65, 80, 93
  double 82, ***456***
  elliptic 81, 97, 231
genitive—*cont.*
  form 79–80
  independent 81, ***457***
  and modification 80–1, 272
  and *of*-phrases 80, 82–4, *84*
  possessive 83
  register distribution 84, *84*
  specifying 80–1, ***460***
  subjective 83
  of time and measure 81
genitive phrase 81
get 7, 111–12, 117–18, 133, 146, 159–60, 309, 346
  get-passive 112, 166, 171–2, 331, ***457***
go 103, 112, 117, 128, 140, 146, 152, 346
going to 153, **182**, 184–5
good
  as adjective 142, 198–9, 339
  as adverb 195–6
  as intensifier 198–9, 211
grammatical units
  discourse function 14
  internal structure 13–14
  meaning 14
  syntactic role 14
  types 13
  see also clausal unit; non-clausal unit; phrase; preface; tag; word
graphemes 13
Greek words, plurals 79
greetings 432, 433, 443, *450*, 453, *453*
guess 314–15, 348, 349

H

have 104, 309
  and aspect 28, 115, 136–7, 159–60
  as auxiliary verb 21, 27–8, 104, 136–7, 241
  and contraction 240–1, 242, 243
  v. existential *there* 136
  in idiomatic phrases 134
  and interrogative clause 253
  as lexical verb 21, 243, 253
  as main verb 27, 136
  as operator 239, 243, 253, 406
  as possessive 136, 160
  and prepositional phrase 294–5
  register distribution 136
have to 136, 175, 180, *180*, 184–5, 243, 253
head *see* noun phrase head
hedge 210, 212, 229, 384, 431, ***457***
  coordination tag as 229
  as stance adverbs 212
here 193, 407
hesitator 434, 449, *452*
honorifics 433

hyphenation
  and compounding 18, 192, 209
  and multiple modification 276, 278

I

idioms 112–13, 123–5, 136, ***457***
  with *do* 134
  and free combination 18, 126–7, 130, 134, 137
  v. lexical bundle 447–8
  register distribution 448
if 31, 152, 257, **326–8**, 368, 375, 381, 385
imperative clause 139, **254–5**, ***457***
  discourse function 254–5, 368
  with intransitive phrasal verb 128
  with *let's* 250, 254, 433
  long verb phrase as 52
  negative 240
  and question tags 255
  register distribution 255, 432
  second-person 433
  subject of 254
  and subject-verb concord 232
  and vocative 254
impersonal pronoun *it see* clefting; extraposition; *it*
indefinite pronoun 99–101, ***457***
  direct object as 424
  with modifier 202, 271
  and quantifying determiner 27
  and subject-verb concord 234
  see also one; pronoun, compound; quantifier
independent clause **248–56**, ***457***
  complex 248
  coordinated 224, 248
  and ellipsis 231
  inversion in 400
  structure and speech-act functions 248–9
  see also clausal unit; declarative clause; directive; exclamative clause; interrogative clause; question
indirect object 49, 367, ***457***
  clause patterns 121
  noun phrase as 330
  pronoun sequence as 423
  semantic roles 49
    recipient 367
  word-order options 423
indirect speech *see* reporting clause
infinitive clause **259**, 328, ***457***
  bare 174, 309, 329, 403–4, 421, ***455***
  as direct object 227, 259
  post-predicate **328–36**
  as postmodifier 291
  register distribution 328, 329
infinitive clause—*cont.*
  wh-clause 324
  see also raising; *to*-clause; *to*-complement clause
inflection ***457***
  of adjectives 22, 188–9, 215, 217, 219
  of adverbs 218
  and lexical words 17
  of nouns 20
  of verbs 115–18
  see also case; gender; genitive
informality 196, 287, 328, 423, 435, 543
information, structuring 379
information-flow principle 84, ***457***
  and circumstance adverbial 370, 379
  and clefting 422
  and fronting 402–3, 404
  and inversion 406, 411
  and passive 169–70
  and *that*-clause 320
  and *to*-clause 340, 341–2
  and word order 169, **398–9**, 400, 415, 417
informational density 273
  of academic prose 5, 23, 187, 189–90, 268, 269, 297
  of conversation 190
  of news 5, 19, 23, 189–90, 274–5, 297
***ing*-complement clause** 45, **259–60**, **344–8**
  controlled by adjective 344, 347–8, 350
  controlled by verb 344–7, 350
  as non-finite clause 350
  as non-finite dependent clause 308–9
  as noun complement clause 301, 305
  as object of preposition 227, 260
  post-predicate **344–8**
  register distribution 292, 344, 346–7, 350
ing*-participle** 377, ***457
  noun v. adjective 24, 25, 191
  noun v. verb 24–5
  and participial adjectives 190–1
  v. preposition 135
  and progressive aspect 135, 183, 292, 347
    see also aspect, progressive
  verb v. adjective 25
ing*-participle clause** 151, ***457, ***459***
  as adverbial 227, 260, 358, 374–5
  as postmodifier 260, 266, 291, 292–3
  and progressive aspect 293
  restrictive and non-restrictive 281
  with subordinators 226–7
  syntactic role 259–60, 344
  see also ing-complement clause
ing-predicate, fronted 404
insert 428, **449–53**, *450–3*, ***457***
  and multi-word lexical units 54
  v. non-clausal unit 440
  polite speech-act formulae *452*

insert —*cont.*
  register distribution 16, 19, 430, 433, 449, *449*, *450–3*
  see also attention signal; discourse marker; expletive; farewells; greetings; hesitator; interjection; response
intensifier ***457***
  adjective as 198–9, 211
  degree adverb as 209–10, 399, 403
  degree adverbial as 366
  and inversion 406
  see also emphasis; fronting; *so*; *very*
interjection 433, 440, *450*, *453*, ***457***
  see also insert
interrogative clause **249–54**, ***457***
  assertive/non-assertive 246, ***455***
  with auxiliary *do* 42, 138, 252, 253–4
  condensed question 440
  declarative 249, 252
  dependent 301–2, 326–8, 409–10
  and dummy *do* 253–4
  echo questions 250
  and ellipsis 231, 251, 441–2
  fragments 447
  with inversion 238, 250, 251, 400, 410–11, *410*
  lexical bundle in 446
  and negative 240
  and noun phrase tag 419
  preface with 419
  register distribution 252
  rhetorical questions 250, 252
  and stranded prepositions 45
  who v. *whom* 7, 253
  yes-no 138, 174, 241, 249, 251, 252, 326–7, ***461***
  see also question; tag, interrogative; *wh*-interrogative
interruption, in conversation 437
intonation, in conversation 16, 249, 251, 280
intransitive *see* valency patterns, intransitive
inversion **405–12**, ***457***
  in dependent clauses 409–11, *410*
  discourse functions 406
  fronting with 402–3, 404
  register distribution 411–12, *411*
  in reporting clauses 411, 412
  special cases 409, *410*
  subject-operator 48, 380, 405–6, *406*, **407–9**, ***460***
    with degree expressions 408–9
    with interrogative clause 238, 250, 251–2, 400, 409–10
    with negation 407–9
    and negative scope 408
  subject-verb 48, 236–7, 405, *406*, **406–7**, ***460***
    fronting with 402–3, 404
    with initial adverbial 406–7
    with interrogative clause 240, 250
inversion —*cont.*
  subject-verb —*cont.*
    with locative *there* 407
    in short verb-phrases 407
  and verb contraction 242
  see also word order
irony 210, 213, 405
irregular verb **115--18** *and inside front cover*
it 14, 87–8, 98, 378
  as dummy pronoun 48, 49, 95, 311, ***456***, ***457***
  it-cleft **420**, 422
  see also clefting; extraposition

J

jargon, discourse function 248–9, 250
just 255, **368–9**

K

know 4, 113, 164, 314, 315–16, 324–5, 327–8, 348

L

Latin words, plurals 79
let 108
let's 250, 254, 433
lexemes 15, 21, ***458***
lexical bundle **443–9**, ***458***
  v. collocation 444
  common 19, 446–7
  definition 444–5
  grammatical types 445–6
  v. idiom 447–8
  register distribution 19, 296, 428, 431, 434, 443–9, *444*
  see also binomial expression; combination, word; free combination
lexical density 19, 23, 105–6, 430
lexical expression *see* binomial expression; collocation; combination, word; idiom; lexical bundle
lexical phrase *see* lexical bundle
lexical verb 21–2, 42, **103–35**, ***458***
  formation **118–19**
  irregular *see* irregular verb
  multi-word 21, 104, 112, **123–35**
    fixed v. free combinations 124–5, 126–7
    register distribution 127, *127*
    semantic role 123–4
    v. single-word 124
    types 126–7, 133–4
    see also phrasal verb; phrasal-prepositional verb; prepositional verb
  and multiple meanings 110

lexical verb —*cont.*
- v. primary v. modal verb 104
- register distribution 105–6, 357
- semantic role 22
- single-word **106–14**, 130
  - common 107, 110–14, *110*, *114*
  - inflections 104
  - irregular 104, 116–18
  - register distribution 113–14
  - regular 104, 115–16
  - semantic categories 106–10
- syntactic role 21
- *see also* activity verb; aspect verb; causative verb; communication verb; existence verb; mental verb; morphology; occurrence verb

lexical word **15–16**, 19, 59
- classes 15, **20–6**, *23*, 24–5, 187, ***458***
- and lexical density 19, 23
- and morphology 17–18, 20
- *see also* adjective; adverb; lexical verb; noun

like 4, 164, 348, 386–7

likely/unlikely 216, 337

linking adverbial 207, 354, 356–7, 366, **389–96**, 415, ***458***
- of apposition 390, 393
- common adverbials 393–4, 395
- of contrast/concession 357, 391, 393, 394, 404
- v. coordinator 227
- v. discourse marker 391, 394
- of enumeration/addition 357, 366, 389
- positions 360, **394–5**, *395*
- as preface 439
- prepositional phrase as 354, 359
- register distribution 357, *392*, **392–4**, 395
- of result/inference 390–1, 393
- scope 361
- semantic categories **389–93**
- v. stance adverbial 386
- v. subordinator 225
- of summation 389–90
- syntactic realizations, *see also* adverb phrase; *anyway*; finite clause; non-finite clause; *so*; *then*; *though*
- of transition 391–2

look 131, 132–3, 142, *144*, 164

LSWE Corpus
- dialect distinctions 3, 5–6, 7–8
- quantitative findings *110*, *177*, 443
- and register 3, 5, 7–8, 180
- size 3, 7–8, *8*

M

main verb 21, 27–8, 103, 105, 136, ***458***
- v. auxiliary verb 42, 103–4

make 50, 112–13, 121–2, 134
- *make out* 424

manner *see* adverb, semantic categories; process/manner adverbial

marginal modal *see* semi-modal verb

masculine *see* gender

may 28, 104, 174, *177*, 178–80, *179*, 183, 409

meaning
- and grammatical units 14
- and structure 2, 149–50

measure 206, 362
- and genitive 81
- and quantifying nouns 62–3
- and subject-verb concord 236

mental verb **107–8**, **315–16**, ***458***
- and aspect 155, 161, 163–5
- copular verbs 141
- with *ing*-complement clause 344, 346–7
- multi-word 131–2
- register distribution *315*, 316
- single-word 107–8, 110–13
- and tense 155
- with *that*-complement clause 315, 316
- with *to*-complement clause 330, *332*, 341
- with *wh*-complement clause 324–6, *325*

modal verb **174–85**, ***458***
- with aspect/voice 183–4
- central 174, 175, 177–8
- v. lexical v. primary verb 104
- marking time 153–4, 175–6, 177, 181–2
- obligation/necessity 153, 175, 176–7, 180–1, 183–5
- and past time 153–4
- permission/possibility/ability 153, 175, 176–7, 178–80, 316
- personal v. logical meanings 176–7, 178–82, ***458***, ***459***
- register distribution 105, 177–83, *177*, *178*, 184–5, 431, 435
- sequences 184–5
- and stance 153–4, 174, 175, 176, 178
- and subject-verb concord 232
- and tense 150, 183
- volition/prediction 176–7, 181–2, 185, ***461***
- *see also* auxiliary verb; modality; semi-modal verb

modality 28, ***458***
- with circumstance adverbials 377
- in complement clause 309, 341
- intrinsic/extrinsic 176
- *see also* modal verb

modification
- of adjective 23, 43, 193, 196, 202, 204–5, 276, 277, 402
- of adverb 23, 205–6, 385
- complex 264–5

modification —*cont.*
  and gender 86
  and genitive 80–1, 272
  and head noun types 270–1
  of noun 21, 23, 57, 187, 199, **264–300**, 431
  of noun phrase 41, 206
  of prepositional phrase 45, 206
  of pronoun 199, 206, 270–1
  restrictive/non-restrictive ***458***
  see also hedge; postmodification; premodification
modifier ***458***
  adjective as 22, 23, 57, 187, 195–6, 199, 202–3
  adjective phrase as 22, 43–4, 202
  adverb as 23, 193, 195, 196, 202, 204–6
    degree adverb 188, 205, 210–11
  adverb phrase as 44, 205
  free 203
  hedge as 212
  postposed 202, ***459***
  see also modification
morphemes 13, 17, 20, 21, ***458***
morphology 13, **17–18**, 20, ***458***
  adjectives 22, 188
  adverbs 22
  lexical verbs 21, 104, 115
  of vernacular grammar 434, 435
  see also adjective, compound; adverb, compound; derivation; inflection; noun, compound
multi-word unit 18, 29, 54, 59, 75, 104, 130, 174
  see also idioms; lexical bundle; lexical verb, multi-word
must 28, 105, 174, 176, 180–1, *180*, 183, 184

N

names
  and modification 199
  personal 59
  and subject-verb concord 236
  see also proper noun
negation **239–48**, ***458***
  assertive/non-assertive 244, 246–7, ***455***
  and auxiliary *do* 28, 138, 239–40
  clausal 238, 239, 240, 245–6
  and contraction 28, 239, 240, 242–3, 244, ***458***
  and coordinators 30
  and dummy *do* 243–4
  implicit negative 247
  with inversion 407–8, 409
  in lexical bundle 447
  multiple 6, 246, 247–8, 435, ***458***
  and quantifiers 75–6, 244
  register distribution 245, 431
  scope 245–6, 247, 408, ***460***
negation —*cont.*
  see also no; not
newspaper writing
  and informational density 5, 19, 23, 189–90, 274–5, 297
  as register category 3, 5, *9*
  see also discussion of corpus findings in all chapters
nice 142, 198–9, 200, 211
no 239, *239*, 244, ***458***
  v. *neither* 76
  v. *not* 245, *245*
nominal clause *see* complement clause
nominal element ***458***
  fronted 402
  noun phrase as 421
  see also noun; noun phrase; pronoun; reference
nominalization 89–90, 303, 304, ***458***
nominative *see* case, nominative
non-assertion *see* assertion
non-clausal unit in conversation 46, 255–6, 432, 436, **440–1**, ***458***
  ellipsis in 440
  syntactic 440–1
  see also insert
non-finite clause 226, **259–61**, ***458***
  as adverbial 260, 358, 364–5, 376–7, 380
  and condensation 232
  as postmodifier 266, **291–4**
  and subject-verb concord 232, 236
  and subordination 226, 380
  as supplement clause 374–5, 376
  see also clause, verbless; *ed*-participle clause; infinitive clause; *ing*-complement clause; *ing*-participle clause; supplement clause; *to*-clause; *to*-complement clause
not 34, 174, 238, 239–40, *239*, 242–3, 244, 247–8, 349, ***458***
  v. *no* 245, *245*
noun 20–1, **56–64**, **77–92**, ***458***
  abstract v. concrete 21, 57–8, 89–90
  in binomial expression 448
  collective *see* collective noun
  common *see* common noun
  compound 20, **91–2**
  countable *see* countable noun
  derived 20, 85, **88–92**, 108
  v. determiner 66
  formation *see* conversion; nominalization; noun, compound
  and gender bias 86
  head *see* noun phrase head
  modification 23, 44, 187, 199, **265–72**, 431
    see also postmodification; premodification
  package nouns 60–4
  of place 82

noun—*cont.*
  - plural 20, 63, **78–9**, 80, 275–6
  - as premodifier 266, 268, 272, 275–6, 277
  - productivity 275
  - proper *see* proper noun
  - quantifying *see* quantifying noun
  - and referential specification 65
  - register distribution 5, 23, 430
  - semantic characteristics 21
  - species **64**, 460
  - and stance 302
  - syntactic characteristics 21
  - types 56–64
  - uncountable *see* uncountable noun
  - unit *see* unit noun

noun + noun sequence 92, 256, 268, **272–6**, 295–6
  - logical relations 273–4, 278
  - plural nouns as premodifiers 275–6
  - *see also* premodification

noun complement clause 257, **300–6**, 308, ***458***
  - head nouns 41, 302–6
  - *ing*-clause 301, 305
  - v. postmodifier 266–7
  - register distribution 304
  - v. relative clause 300–1
  - restrictive/non-restrictive functions 301–2
  - and stance 302, 303–4
  - structural types 301–2
  - *that*-clause 301, 303–4
  - *to*-clause 301, 303–5
  - *wh*-interrogative clause 259, 301–2, 306

noun phrase 41–2, ***458***
  - as adverbial 42, 51, 355, 358
  - appositive 266, 270, 281, **297–8**, ***455***
  - **complex** 72, 241, **263–306**
    - premodification v. postmodification 270–1
  - with contraction 241
  - coordinated 233–4, 435
  - definite 73, 418
  - as direct object 125, 126, 130, 172, 330, 424
  - and ellipsis 231
  - embedded 265
  - fronted 401, 404
  - as fronted object 401
  - head *see* noun phrase head
  - in idiomatic expressions 124, 125
  - indefinite 404, 412, 414
  - as indirect object 330
  - in lexical bundle 446
  - modification *see* postmodification; premodification
  - and multi-word verbs 124–5
  - as nominal element 421

noun phrase—*cont.*
  - and notional subject 412–13, 415
  - as object predicative 42, 48
  - predicative 42, 50, 69
  - as prepositional object 129–30
  - pronoun as 33, 92, 264, 430–1
  - register distribution *93*
  - simple 56, 430–1
  - stand-alone 96
  - structure 40
    - *see also* determiner; noun complement clause; postmodification; premodification
  - as subject 42, 48, 98, 135, 166, 233–4, 254, 319–20, 330, 345, 412, 414
  - as subject predicative 50, 141–2, *143*, 338–9
  - syntactic roles 42
  - verb + noun phrase combinations 134, 329
  - and vocative 54, 254
  - and *wh*-cleft 421
  - *see also* case; clause patterns; gender; nominal element; noun, plural; noun + noun sequence; noun complement clause; postmodification; preface; premodification; prepositional complement; reference; tag, noun phrase

noun phrase head 16, 21, ***457***
  - abstract 42
  - adjective as 22, 42, 188, 202–3
  - and determiner 41, 65, 66, 76, 80, 264
  - and end-weight principle 400
  - and genitives 80
  - with noun complement clause 41, 302–6
  - numeral as 34, 35, 76
  - plural 279
  - and possessive pronouns 27, 97
  - with postmodifier 257, 297
  - pronoun as 42, 264
  - with relative clause, *see* relative clause
  - types 270–1
  - uncountable 279
  - *see also* noun complement clause; postmodification; premodification

now 74, 392

number 48, **78–80**, 93, ***458***
  - *see also* noun, plural

numeral **34–5**, ***458***
  - cardinal 34, 76, ***455***
  - complex 34
  - as determiner 26, 34, 35, **76–7**
  - as linking adverbial 389
  - modification 206
  - ordinal 35, 76, ***458***
  - plural 20, 34, 35, 63
  - as premodifier 272
  - register distribution

O

- object 39, 48–9, ***458***
  - double 132, 133, 167, 172
  - fronting 400, 401–2, 405
  - *see also* direct object; indirect object; object predicative; prepositional object
- object complement *see* object predicative
- object predicative **50**, **120**, 403, ***458***
  - adjective as 120, 188, 200, 201
  - adjective phrase as 50
  - and clause patterns 227
  - and direct object 50, 201, 424
  - *ed*-clause as 227
  - infinitive clause as 227, 259, 330
  - *ing*-clause as 227
  - noun phrase as 120
  - *to*-clause as 330
- occurrence verb **109**, ***461***
  - and copular verbs 414
  - multi-word 132
  - single-word 109, 112
- *of*-phrase
  - with genitive 80, **82–4**, *84*
  - with package noun 60, 61, 62, 64, 295
  - as postmodifier 71, 271, **295–6**
  - with quantifier 100, 234, 295
- *one* **100–1**
  - generic 95, 96, 101
  - substitute 100, 270–1
- *only* 211, 420
- operator **238–48**, ***458***
  - and auxiliary verbs 138, 238, 239
  - and ellipsis 239, 441–2
  - and interrogative clause 238, 251
  - and negation 238, 240, 242, 243–4
  - stranded 139, 239, 442
  - *see also* do, as dummy operator; inversion, subject-operator
- *or* 30, 227, 229, 233–4, 278, 327, 448
- orthography *see* spelling
- *outside 36*

P

- package noun **60–4**
- parallelism, structural 69, 409
- parentheticals 53, ***459***
- participle ***459***
  - dangling (unattached) 377–8, ***456***
  - past 7
  - as premodifier 265–6
  - *see also* adjective, participial; *ed*-participle; *ing*-participle
- participle clause ***459***
  - *see also* *ed*-participle clause; *ing*-complement clause; *ing*-participle clause
- **particle, adverbial 29–30**, ***455***
  - in free combinations 128–9
  - movement 125, ***459***
  - with phrasal verb 29, 124, 125, 187, 206, 424–5
  - with phrasal-prepositional verb 124, 132–3
  - v. preposition 124
  - with prepositional phrase 30, 45
  - register distribution 32, *32*
  - with subject-verb inversion 407
- particle, negative *see* not
- **passive *166–74***, 398, ***459***
  - and aspect 135, 173–4
  - and auxiliary verb 28, 135, 166, 171–2
  - common verbs 170–2
  - and direct object 168, 173
  - discourse functions 166, 167–70
  - finite constructions 292
  - *get*-passive 112, 166, 171–2, ***457***
  - and indirect object 49
  - long 166–7, 169–70, ***458***
  - modal verb in 183, 184
  - and postmodification 292–3
  - and prepositional verb 130, 132, 167, 172–3
  - progressive 135, 173
  - register distribution 3, 167–70, 171, 173–4, 425, *425*
  - and relative clause 292–3
  - short (agentless) 166–8, ***455***, ***460***
  - and stranded prepositions 173
  - subject of 48, 167, 173
  - in *that*-clauses 315, 321–2
  - in *to*-clauses 329, 331, 341
  - uncommon verbs in 172–3
  - and word order *425*
  - *see also* *ed*-participle; voice
- past tense *see* tense, past; tense, present
- pause 280, 434
  - *see also* hesitator
- perception verb *see* mental verb
- perfect aspect *see* aspect, perfect
- peripheral clause 258
- peripheral elements *see* discourse marker; insert; parentheticals; preface; tag; vocative
- **personal pronoun** 53, **93–7**, ***459***
  - and anaphoric reference 95
  - with attributive adjective 199
  - and case 93, 96
  - coordinated 94
  - and copular verb 96
  - as direct or indirect object 423
  - first person 5, 94–5, 181, 182, 242, 340, 435
  - and gender 85, 87–8, 93
  - general reference 95–6
  - in lexical bundle 446
  - with modification 199, 270–1
  - nominative v. accusative forms 96

personal pronoun —*cont.*
  non-personal reference 94
  plural 94
  and possessive determiner 72, *93*, 94
  and possessive pronoun 93
  and reflexive pronoun *93*, 97
  register distribution 94–5, 98, 430
  second person 5, 95, 242, 430, 435
  as subject 94, 321, 445
  and subject-verb concord 237
  third person 95, 237
  and zero relativizer 289
  see also it; one
phonemes 13
phrasal verb 123–9, ***459***
  and adverbial particles 29, 124, 125, 187, 206, 424–5
  common 128–9
  as copular verb 128, 129, 141
  direct object of 127, 424–5
  in idiomatic expressions 124–5, 126–7
  intransitive 124–5, 126, 127, 128
  and particle movement 125, 127
  register distribution 127, *127*, 128–9
  semantic domains 124–6
  transitive 124, 125, 127, 129
phrasal-prepositional verb 124, **132–3**, ***459***
  register distribution 127, *127*, 133
  semantic role 133
phrase 13, **38–54**, ***459***
  embedded 38, 40, *41*
  lexical *see* lexical bundle
  structures 38–9, *39*, 40–1, 400
  syntactic roles 39
  types 41–5
see also adjective phrase; adverb phrase; binomial expression; coordination, phrasal; embedding, phrase; noun phrase; prepositional phrase; verb phrase
place *see* adverb, semantic categories, place; place adverbial
place adverbial 51, 194–5, 207, 289, 294, 354, 367, 370–1, 373
  adverbial clause as 294, 373, 415
  categories 362–3
  with subject-verb inversion 406, 407
plurals
  irregular 78–9, 233, ***457***
  Latin and Greek 79
  regular 78, ***460***
  and subject-verb concord 79, 232–4, 235, 236–7
  and uncountable nouns 20, 58–9, 279
  zero 79, 233, ***461***
  see also noun, plural; number; subject-verb concord
politeness 7, 151, 176, 251
  markers 213, 255, 433, 441, *452*, *453*
  see also insert, polite speech-act formulae; stance
possessive determiner 26, **72–3**, 93, *93*, 345, 447–8, ***459***
  with definite noun phrases 73
  v. genitive 80
  v. possessive pronouns 27, 97
  and proper nouns 57
possessive pronoun 27, 82, 93, 97, ***459***
  and genitive 81, 93
  v. possessive determiner 27, 97
postdeterminer 65, *66*
postmodification 80, 259, **264–71**, **279–300**, ***459***
  with demonstrative pronouns 271
  and genitives 80
  multiple *298*, **298–9**
  of notional subject 415
  v. noun complement clause 266–7, 300–6
  and noun head 257, 270–1, 284
  with proper noun 270
  register distribution 267–8, *268*, 269–70, *269*, *270*, 294, 297, 298
  restrictive/non-restrictive **279–81**, ***460***
  types 265–6, 269–70
  see also of-phrase; postmodifier; relative clause; relative pronoun
postmodifier 267–72, ***459***
  adjective as 202
  adjective phrase as 202, 266
  adverb as 204, 206, 220, 266
  appositive noun phrase as 266–7, 270, **297–8**
  non-finite clause as 266, **291–4**
  participial
    ed-clause 260, 266, 270, 291, 292–3
    ing-clause 260, 266, 291, 292–3
  prepositional phrase as 266, 269–70, *269*, 271, 288, **294–6**, 299
  pronoun as 270–1
  relative clause as 71, 74, 257, 264, 266, 269–70, *270*, 272, **279–91**, 299, 300, 416
  to-clauses as 220, 266, 291–2, 293–4
  see also noun complement clause
postmodifier complex 264–5, 298–9, *298*, ***459***
postponement, of direct object 424
predeterminer 65, *66*, 206, 323
predicate ***459***
  adjectival 317–19, 323–4
    see also predicative adjective
  see also verb phrase
predicative 50, ***459***
  and adjective phrases 50, 142
  and complement clause 308
  fronted 402–3, 405
  and noun phrase 50, 69
  semantic role 50

predicative—*cont.*
  see also object predicative; subject predicative
predicative adjective 22, 188, 189, **200–2**, ***459***
  common 201–2
  and complement clause 200–2, 257, 308, 310
  and copular verb 144, 200
  v. *ing*-participle 191
  and intensifier 198–9
  and passive 167, 171
  and peripheral adjectives 189
  register distribution 189–90, *190*, 201–2, 434
  as stance device 142, 202
  as subject predicative 200–1
  see also object predicative; subject predicative
prefabrication *see* lexical bundle
preface 53, **418–19**, ***459***
  register distribution 419, 425, *425*, 439
preference clause 374
prefix 17, ***459***
  adjectival 13, 190
  negative 190
  noun 88–9
  verb 118–19
  see also affix; derivation; suffix
premodification 264, **265–79**, ***459***
  of adjective 202–3, 276, 402–3
  v. adverb phrase 44
  multiple **276–9**
  and noun head types 270–1
  register distribution 267–8, *267*
  and specific reference 272
  types 265–6, 272–3
  see also attributive adjective; noun + noun sequence; premodifier
premodifier 265–72, ***459***
  adjective as 264, 265, 268, 272, 277–8
  adverb as 204, 206, 209, 266, 276, 277
  coordinated 278–9
  noun as 266, 268, 272, 275–6, 277
  noun phrase as **267–8**
  participle as 265–6
  plural noun as 275–6
preposition 16, **28–9**, ***459***
  and adverb complement 206, 260
  v. adverbial particle 124
  as closed system 17
  complement *see* prepositional complement
  complex 29, ***456***
  and free combination 29
  omission 290
  stranded 45, 173, 253, 284, 290, 294, ***460***
  v. *which* 290
prepositional complement 44–5, 206, 260, 294, 323, ***459***
  and gap 283
  noun phrase as 28–9
prepositional complement—*cont.*
  wh-clause as 45, 324
prepositional object
  and clause patterns 227
  finite clause as 227
  ing-clause as 227, 260
  noun phrase as 130
  and phrasal-prepositional verb 133
  and prepositional verb 129–30, 131, 167, 173
  and stranded prepositions 294
prepositional phrase 44–5, ***459***
  with adjectives 200–1, 219
  with adverbs 30
  and complement clause 42, 45, 142, *143*, 218, 219, 338–9, 341
  with copular verb 142, *143*
  embedded 40, 45, 299
  extended *30*
  fronting 288
  in idiomatic expressions 130
  with *in* 296
  with *of* 295–6
  as predicative 50, 142
  register distribution 294, 359
  v. relative clause 269, 282–3, 284, 294–5
  restrictive and non-restrictive 281
  structure 40
  and word order 423
  see also adverbial; circumstance adverbial; modification; postmodifier
prepositional verb 29, 45, **129–32**, ***459***
  common verbs 130–2
  v. free combination 125–6
  in idiomatic expressions 124–5, 130
  with *ing*-complement clause 346
  object of 125, 126, 129–30, 324
  and passive 129–30, 132, 167, 172–3
  and prepositional object 129–30, 131, 167, 173
  register distribution 127, *127*, 131–2
  semantic domains 124–6
  structural types 129–30
  with *to*-infinitive clause 331–2
  transitive 126
  with *wh*-complement clause 126, 130, 324
  see also activity verb; communication verb; mental verb
prescriptive grammar 7, 218, 284, 345, 371, 435
primary verb 21, 27–8, 42, **135–40**, ***459***
  v. lexical v. modal verb 104
  main v. auxiliary functions 104
  register distribution 105, 431
  see also aspect; auxiliary verb; be; copular verb; do; have
pro-form 231–2, 233, ***459***
  adverbial
  in complement clause 231

pro-form —*cont.*
  in conversation 430
  with inversion 408
  pro-verb 137–8, 139, ***459***
  see also pronoun
probability verb *333*, 334, 341
process/manner adverbial 51, 257, 367, 370–1, 373, 379
  and adverbial gap 290–1, 294
  categories 364–5
progressive aspect *see* aspect, progressive
pronoun 16, 26–7, **92–101**, ***459***
  compound **99–100**, 202, ***456***
  and condensation 231
  with contraction 241, 242
  v. determiner 66, *67*
  as direct object 125, 127–8, 423, 424
  discourse role 14
  dummy *see* it
  and gender 87–8
  generic 95–6, 100
  and indirect object word order 423
  interrogative 27, 33, ***457***
  in lexical bundle 445, 446
  nominative and accusative case 48, 79
  as noun phrase head 42, 264
  v. noun phrases 92
  with prefaces 418–19
  reciprocal 27, 98, ***460***
  register distribution 5, 32, *32*, 67, *93*, 232, 430
  relative *see* relative pronoun
  sequence as direct/indirect object 423
  substitute *see* one
  types **92–101**
  wh-pronoun 101, ***461***
  see also demonstrative pronoun; indefinite pronoun; modification; nominal element; personal pronoun; possessive pronoun; reflexive pronoun
proper names 59, 199
  see also proper noun
proper noun 5, 20, 42, 56–7, 83, ***459***
  v. common noun 56, **59–60**
  and definite article 56, 57, 60
  and genitive 82
  and initial capitals 59–60
  modification 21, 57, 199, 270
  notional subject as 415
  as noun phrase head 42
  with possessive determiner 57
  with *the* 60
  see also proper names
proportion clause 374, 402
prose, academic *see* academic prose
proximity, and subject-verb concord 236
punctuation, and postmodification 280

Q

quantifier 26, 27, 35, 66, **74–6**, 231, ***459***
  of arbitary amount 75–6
  inclusive 74–5
  of large quantity 75
  and negation 75–6, 244
  pronoun as 35, **100**, 234, ***459***
  of small quantity 75
  and subject-verb concord 234–5
  types 74–6
quantifying noun 60, **62–4**, 79, ***459***
  and *of*-phrase 62
question 248, *249*, ***459***
  adverb as 207–8
  alternative 249, 251, ***455***
  condensed 440
  indirect 323, 326–8
  rhetorical 250, 252
  see also interrogative clause
question tag *see* tag, interrogative
quotation, and subject-verb concord 236
quoted speech *see* direct speech reporting; reporting clause

R

raising **337–8**
  object-to-subject 338, 339, 342
  subject-to-subject 334, 337–8, 341
real 196, 211
really 196, 211, 385, 387
reason adverbial 257, 289, 354, 376, 420
reduction 175, 434, 454
  see also contraction; ellipsis; pro-form; pronoun; relativizer, zero; *that*-complement clause, *that* retention v. omission
reference
  anaphoric 70, 72, 73, 74, 95, 271, ***455***
  cataphoric 71, 73, 74, ***455***
  co-reference 97, 234, 321, 418–19, ***456***
  and gender 85
  generic 68, 71, 72, 95–6, ***457***
  personal v. impersonal 94
  situational 73–4
  specific 65, 68, 73, 80, 272, 431
  time 74
  see also gender
referent 26, 73, 267, ***460***
reflexive pronoun 97–8, ***460***
  as determiner 27
  emphatic 98
  and personal pronoun *93*, 97

register 23, 40
  categories 4–5
  and lexical word classes 23
  in LSWE Corpus 3, 4–5, *4*, 7–8
  and phrase structure 40
  and sub-registers 5, 8
  see also academic prose; conversation; fiction; newspaper writing
relationship verb 324, *325*
relative adverb 33, 282–3, 289, ***460***
relative clause 192, 257–8, **279–91**, ***460***
  v. adjectival compounds 192
  as finite clause 279–91, 292
  head noun 281–2, 284, 286–8, 290, 293–4
  nominal 236, 257–8, 322–3, 326
  v. noun complement clause 300–1
  participle clause as, *see also ed*-participle clause; *ing*-participle clause
  v. prepositional phrase 269, 282, 284, 294–5
  register distribution 269–70, *270*, 280, 284, 290, 431
  restrictive v. non-restrictive **279–81**, 283, 284, 287–8, 295, 297
  and stranded prepositions 45, 284, 290
  and subject-verb concord 236
  to-infinitive *see to*-clause
  and *wh*-words 32, 33, 77
  see also gap; postmodifier
relative pronoun 33, **282–9**, ***460***
  as determiner 27
  omission *see* relativizer, zero
  register distribution 284–9
  see also relativizer; *that*; *what*; *which*; *who*
relativizer 33, 257, 281, 299, ***460***
  discourse function 282–4
  register distribution *285–6*, 287–9
  zero 282–4, 286–7, 288–9, 290, ***461***
  see also relative adverb; relative pronoun
repair, conversational 434, ***460***
repeats 434
repetition
  and comparative adjectives 198
  in conversation 434, 444, 445
  in fronting 405
  local v. lexical bundle 445
  see also repeats
reporting clause 152–3, 258, 327, 347, 349, ***460***
  with inversion *410*, 411
  with subject-verb order 258
  see also communication verb; direct speech reporting; speech-act verb; *that*-complement clause, as reporting clause
response
  elicitor 249, 432, *451*, 453, *453*
  form *451–2*, 453, *453*, ***460***

S

sarcasm 405
say 4, 110, *110*, 111, 131, 152, 165, 237, 313, 316, 321, 329–30, 350
  + *so* 349
scope
  of adverbial 356, 361, ***460***
  negative 245–6, 247, 408, ***460***
see 113, 164, 309, 314, 315–16, 325–6, 327–8, 346–7
seem 4, 50, 109, 142, *143*, 337, 341
semantic roles 20
  see also circumstance adverbial; direct object; indirect object; subject
semi-determiner *see* determiner, semi-determiner
semi-modal verb 28, 112, 136, **174–83**, ***460***
  with ellipsis 442–3
  register distribution 177–8, *178*, 182–3, 185
  stance 178
  and time 153, 175, 181, 182, 185
sentence 13, ***460***
  see also independent clause
since 31, 381–2
so 209, 211, 219–20, 349, 390–1, **393**, 395, 402–3, 408
speech
  direct *see* direct speech reporting
  see also conversation
speech act ***460***
speech-act functions 248–9, 250, 433
speech-act verb **107**, **316–17**
  and aspect 161
  with *ing*-complement clause 344, 347
  with inversion 411
  with *that*-complement clause *315*, 316–17
  with *to*-complement clause *332*
  with *wh*-complement clause 324, *325*, 326
  see also communication verb
spelling
  and standard English 6
  see also capitals, initial
stance ***460***
  attitudinal 146, 155, 212, 317–19, 384
  and complement clause 304, 313, 316, 317–19, 335–6, 342–3
  epistemic
    of actuality 212, 383, 387
    of certainty 153, 202, 212, 302, 303, 316–17, 382–3, 387
    of imprecision 384, 387
    of limitation 383–4
    of perspective 384
    of source of knowledge 212, 303, 383
  grammatical devices 142, 151, 153–4, 316
    see also adverb, stance; stance adjective; stance adverbial

stance—*cont.*
  and noun complement cause 302–4
  register distribution 433–4
  style of speaking 213, 356
  and substitution 349
  see also modal verb; politeness; stance adverbial
stance adjective 146, 317–19, 335–6, 339
stance adverbial 154, 207, 354–5, **382–8**, ***460***
  attitudinal 195, 356, 384, 386, *455*
  v. circumstance adverbial or degree modifier 385
  common adverbials 386–7
  discourse functions **388**
  v. discourse marker 386
  epistemic 356, 378, 382–4, 386, 387, 388, ***457***
  v. linking adverbial 386
  multiple meanings 385–6
  positions 360, 385, **387**
  as preface 439
  prepositional phrase as 354, 359
  as question 207
  register distribution 357, *386*, **386–7**, 434
  scope 356, 361, 387
  semantic categories 382–6
  style 356, 378, 385–6, ***460***
  see also adverb, stance
stance verb 347, 414
stand 122, 165
standard/non-standard English 6–7, 160, 195, 217, 247, 288, 435
  see also grammar, conversational
statement 248, 249, *249*, ***460***
  condensed 441
stative verb 108, 112, 163–5, 171, 363, ***460***
stem 13, 17, 18, ***460***
stress, and fronting 403
subject 39, 48, ***460***
  agentive 48, 106–7, 164–5
  anticipatory 33
  clausal 226, 236
  complement clause as 310, 311
  ellipsis 441–2
  as experiencer 164, ***457***
  in imperative clause 254
  infinitive clause as 259, 323, 328
  of *ing*-clause 345
  ing-clause as 226, 259, 344
  notional 236–7, 412, **414–15**, 416, 417, ***458***
  noun phrase as 42, 48, 98, 135, 166, 233–4, 254, 319–20, 345, 414
  overt 294, 376
  with passive 48, 167, 173
  semantic roles 48
  that-clause as 312, 319–21
  to-clause as 226, 259, 334–5, 337–8, 340–1
  wh-clause as 323
subject—*cont.*
  see also inversion, subject-operator; inversion, subject-verb
subject complement *see* subject predicative
subject predicative 50, ***460***
  adjective as 145, 167, 188, 200–1
  adjective phrase as 43–4, 45, 141, 142
  complement clause as 142, 310, 323
  copular verbs with 44, 50, 120, 135, 140, **141–7**, 188, 200, 313
  finite clause as 226
  fronted 402
  infinitive clause as 226, 259, 323, 328
  ing-clause as 260, 344
  noun phrase as 50, 141–2, *143*, 338–9
  participial adjective as 167
  prepositional phrase as 142, 200–1, 338–9
  that-clause as 201, 312, 313, 334, 350
  to-clause as 200–1, **334–5**, 338–9, 350
  wh-clause as 323
subject-operator inversion *see* inversion
subject-verb concord 232–7, ***456***
  with clausal subject 236
  with collective noun 235
  with coordinated subject 233–4
  and inversion 236–7
  non-standard 233, 237, 435
  notional 235–6, ***458***
  and pronoun reference 87, 234–5, 237
  and proximity 236
  with quantifier 234–5
  singular v. plural 79, 232, 233–4, 235, 236–7
  and subjunctive verbs 232, 261
  and tense 232
subject-verb inversion *see* inversion
subjunctive verb 151, 232, **261**, 319, 409, ***460***
subordinator 30, **31**, 222, 223, **224–7**, 439, ***460***
  with adverbial clause 31, 257, 374, 376, **380–2**
  as clause link 224–5, 394
  common 380–1
  and complement clause 31, 256
  complex 31, 34
  v. coordinator 225
  with degree clause 31
  and dependent clause 31, 224–7, 404
  with fronting 404
  if v. subject-operator inversion 380
  with multiple meanings 381–2
  register distribution 381–2, 422
  subordination signals 225–6
  see also adverbial clause; adverbial clause as circumstance adverbial; *as*; embedding; *that*; *though*; *wh*-word
substitution
  in complement clause 348–9

substitution —*cont.*
  pro-form 231, 430
suffix 17, 86, ***460***
  adjectival 22, 191–2, 215
  adverb 13, 193, 209
  of gender 85–6
  genitive 20
  noun 20, 63, 88, **89–90**
  verb 115–17, 118–19
  see also affix; derivation; prefix
superlative adjective 22, 188, **215**, *216*, 217, 402
  doubly marked 217
  inflectional 215–16, 217
  phrasal 215–16, 217
  register distribution 217
  see also comparative adjective
supplement clause 260, 374–6, 379, ***460***
  register distribution 260, 375–6
sure 142, 318, 338
swearword *see* taboo word
synonym 70, 346
syntactic blend 437–8, ***460***
syntactic role ***460***
syntax 13, 20, 431, ***460***

T

taboo word 7, 54, 203, 211, 347, 368, 429, 433, *452–3*
tag 53, ***460***
  coordination 94, 229
  declarative 53, 258, 419, ***456***
  demonstrative pronoun as 419
  interrogative 53, 251–2, 258, 439, ***459–60***
    and auxiliary verbs 139
    and existential *there* 413
    and imperative clauses 255
    as response elicitor 432, *451*
  noun phrase 53, 418, **419**, 425, *425*, ***458***
  register distribution 439
tag clause 258
take 49, 112–13, 134
  take up 424
tense 42, **150–6**, ***460***
  and aspect 136, 156–62
  with circumstance adverbials 377
  historic present 150, 152, ***457***
  and lexical verbs 21, 104, 155–6
  and modal verbs 150, 183
  past 104, 116–17, 151, 155–6, 165, 239, 295
    and present perfect aspect 159, 161–2, 173
    in reported speech 152–3
  present 104, 136–7, 151, 159, 232, 239
    and *say* 111, 152
  register distribution 111, 113, 152, 153–5, *154*
  and time 149–56, 175, 293–4
tense —*cont.*
  see also direct speech reporting
thanks 433
that
  as complementizer *see that*-complement clause
  as degree adverb 402–3
  as demonstrative determiner 73, 74, 98
  as demonstrative pronoun 98–9, 271, 323, 421
  omission *see* relativizer, zero; *that*-complement clause, *that* retention v. omission
  as relativizer 31, 33, 281, 282–3, 284, 286, 290, 300–1
  as subordinator 31, 256
  see also which; whom
that*-complement clause** 4, 42, 202, 220, **312–22**, ***460
  controlled by adjective 202, 308, 312, **317–19**
  controlled by verbs 308, 314–17, *315*, 350–1
  coordinated 313, 321–2
  as direct object 308
  discourse functions **312–13**, 320–1
  with ellipsis 348
  embedded 313, 320
  extraposed 311, 313, 317, **318–21**, 337, 341, 350
  as finite dependent clause 308–9, 350
  as noun complement clause 301, 303–4
  post-predicate 310–11, 312, 313, **314–18**, 349, 350–1
  register distribution 312, *312*, 313, 320, 321, 328, 350–1, 431, 439
  and relative clause 6, 300–1, 312
  as reporting clause 312, 313, 316
  as stance device 313, 384
  as subject 312, 319–21
  as subject predicative 201, 312, 313, 334, 350
  and subjunctive 232, 261, 319
  and subordinator 31, 256
  substitution with 349
  that retention v. omission 7, 301, **321–2**
the 41, 67, 69, 70–1, 72, 203, 374, 402
  anaphoric use 70, 72
  cataphoric use 71
  with proper nouns 59, 60
  situational use 72
  see also article, definite
then 74, 162, **369**, 391, **393–4**, 395
there*, existential** 33–4, **412–18**, ***457
  with adverbial 415
  as anticipatory subject 33
  as deictic adverb 369, 430
  discourse functions **416–17**
  grammatical status 413
  v. *have* 136
  and inversion 236–7, 407, 413
  v. locative *there* 407, 413, *413*
  and negation 416

***there*, existential**—*cont.*
  in non-finite clause 413
  with notional subject 236–7, 412–13, **414–15**, 416, 417, ***458***
  register distribution 413, *413*, 416, 425, *425*
  simple v. complex clauses **415–16**, *416*
  and subject-verb concord 236–7
  and verb 412, **414**, 416
there, locative 34, **369**, 407, 413–14, *413*
think 4, 113, 151, 164–5, 314–15, 321, 346, 348, 350–1
this 73, 74, 98–9, 271, 402
though 139, 394, 404
time *see* adjective, time; adverb, semantic categories, time; adverbial clause as circumstance adverbial; circumstance adverbial, semantic categories; modal verb; tense
time adverbial 194–5, 207, 252, 257, 289, 294, 354, 370–2, 373, 379, 415
  and aspect and tense 162
  categories 363–4
  with inversion 406, 408
  marking future time 152
  obligatory adverbial 51
titles, and subject-verb concord 236
to
  infinitive marker 34, 200–1, 324
  see also *to*-clause; *to*-complement clause
to-clause 34, 42, 151
  as adverbial 358, 376, 377, 379
  as complement clause *see* *to*-complement clause
  as postmodifier 220, 266, 291–2, 293–4
to*-complement clause** 4, 259, 308, **328–43**, ***460–1
  bare infinitive 329
  controlled by adjectives 219, **335–6**, 337–8, 339, 342–3, 350–1
  controlled by nouns 301, 304–5
  controlled by verbs 329–34, 338–9, 342, 350
  discourse functions 342–3
  with ellipsis 348
  extraposed 259, 311, 328, **338–42**, 350
  meaning variations 329–31
  as non-finite clause 308–9, 350
  as object predicative 330
  and passive 329, 331, 341
  post-predicate **328–33**, *332–3*, **335–6**, 339, 342–3, 348
  register distribution 328, 329, 331–4, 340, 341–3, *343*, 350–1
  subject predicative 200–1, **334–5**, 350
  with *wh*-cleft 421
  see also raising
token 15, ***461***
topic 48, 419
topicalization *see* fronting
transitive *see* valency patterns, transitive
type 15, ***461***

U

uncountable noun 20, 56–8, 62, ***461***
  and article 56, 67–8, 70, 72
  and determiner 59, *65*, 74, 75–6
  plural 20, 58–9, 64
unit, clausal *see* clausal unit; non-clausal unit
unit noun **61–2**, ***461***
used to 176, **182–3**, 244, 253–4
utterance
  incomplete 437
  launcher 422, 439
    see also discourse marker; fronting; preface

V

vagueness 98, 214, 229, 431, 439
  markers *see* approximator; hedge
valency patterns 110, **119–23**, ***461***
  complex transitive 47, 49, 50, 51, 120, 121–2, 201, 330–1, ***456***
  copular verbs 47, 120, ***456***
  and direct object 49
  ditransitive 47, 49, 120, 121, 167, 330, 423, ***456***
  intransitive 47, 107, 119, 121, 122–3, 124–5, 126, 140–1, ***457***
  main v. auxiliary verb 103–4
  monotransitive 47, 49, 120–1, ***458***
  multiple 121–2
  with optional adverbial 119, 121, 123
  transitive 10–57, 107, 124, 140–1, 166, ***461***
  see also clause patterns
varieties, English *see* dialect; register; standard/non-standard English
verb 102–47, ***461***
  auxiliary *see* auxiliary verb
  in binomial expression 448
  concord *see* subject-verb concord
  continuation 129, 141, 142, *143–4*
  derived 21, 118–19
  dynamic 108, 163–5, 177, 270, ***456***
  formation **118–19**
  full *see* lexical verb
  irregular 104, 116–18, 260, ***458***, ***462–3***
  lexical *see* lexical verb
  modal *see* modal verb
  multi-word *see* lexical verb; phrasal verb; phrasal-prepositional verb
  nominalized 89
  as operator *see* operator
  phrasal *see* phrasal verb

verb —*cont.*
  phrasal-prepositional *see* phrasal-prepositional verb
  prepositional *see* prepositional verb
  primary *see* primary verb
  register distribution 4, 23, 431
  regular 104, **115–16**, ***460***
  semantic domains **106–10**
    see also activity verb; affective verb; aspect verb; attitude verb; causative verb; communication verb; existence verb; lexical verb; main verb; mental verb; occurrence verb; perception verb; prepositional verb; probability verb; relationship verb; speech-act verb; stative verb
  see also aspect; tense; valency patterns; verb classes
verb classes 103–6
  see also clause patterns; copular verb; lexical verb; modal verb; primary verb; valency patterns
verb complement clause 304, 307–8, 310, 349–50
  post-predicate position 310
  and stance 304
  subject (pre-predicate) position 310
verb phrase 42–3, *43*, **148–85**, 232, ***461***
  and clause grammar 46–7, 48
  complex 185, 411
  discontinuous 42
  finite/non-finite 42, 151, 153, 225, ***457***, ***458***
  in lexical bundle 445, 446–7
  long 51–2, *52*, 407, ***458***
  syntactic roles 21
  see also aspect; clause patterns; inversion; modal verb; negation; tense; valency patterns; verb classes; voice
vernacular 6, ***461***
very 167, 188, 209, 211, 399
vocative 54, ***461***
  in imperative clauses 254
  noun phrase 54
  register distribution 432, 433
  and zero article 69–70
voice 166–74, ***461***
  active 166, 172, 331
  and aspect 173–4
  lexical verbs 21
  and modal verbs 183, 184
  passive *see* passive

W

want 4, 113, 151, 164, 309, 331, 348
weight
  balance 398
weight —*cont.*
  see also end weight principle
well 193, 195, 206
wh*-complement clause** 45, **322–8**, ***461
  and adjectival predicate 323–4
  controlled by verbs 323, 324–6, *325*, 349
  with ellipsis 348
  exclamative 322–3
  extraposed 259, 311, 324
  as finite dependent clause 308–9, 350
  as infinitive 324
  as nominal relative clause 257
  as object 323, 324
  post-predicate **324–6**, 348, 350
  as prepositional complement 45, 324
  register distribution 325–6, 327–8, 350, 431
  structural types 322–4
  as subject 323
  as subject predicative 323
  with *whether* and *if* 326–8
wh*-interrogative** 1, 32–3, 77, 130, 138, 249, 250, 252, 322–3, ***461
  and alternative question 249
  formation 126
  as noun complement clause 301–2, 306
  register distribution 252
  and yes-no questions 249, 326
wh-question *see* *wh*-interrogative
wh*-word 32–3**, 250, ***461
  as adverbial subordinator 31, 225
  as clause link 32, 33
  in cleft 420, **421**, *425*
  as determiner 26, 27, 65, **77**, ***461***
  as exclamative 254, 404
  and fronting 323, 400, 404
  as pronoun 101, ***461***
  as relativizer 32, 33, 77
  as subordinator 31, 225, 256–7
  see also relative pronoun; *wh*-complement clause; *wh*-interrogative
what 33, 65, 101, 126, 130, 250, 254, 323, 421
  as relative pronoun 6
when 33, 126, 130, 250, 257, 282–3, 289–90, 381
whether 31, 33, 302, 323, **325–8**
which 33, 65, 101, 250, 282–3, 284, 293
  of which v. *whose* 288
  v. preposition 290
  v. *that* 6, 287
  v. *who* 284–6
who 7, 33, 101, 126, 130, 250, 253, 281, 282–3, 284
  v. *that* 7, 286–7
  v. *which* 284–6
  v. *whom* 7, 253, 286–7
whom 33, 101, 282–3
  v. *that* 7, 286–7
  v. *who* 7, 253, 286–7

will 21, 104, 150, 152, 153, 174, 175, 177–8, *177*, 181, 184
  register distribution 435
  and verb contraction 28, 240–1, 242
word 13, **14–20**
  grammatical 15
  orthographic 15, 17, 18, 444, ***459***
  'stand-alone', *see also* insert
  structure *see* morphology
  types v. tokens 15, ***461***
  see also function word; insert; lexeme; lexical density; lexical word; morphology; multi-word unit
word classes 15, **20–6**, ***461***
  ambiguities 35–6, *36*
  borderline cases 24–5, 29
  open 15, 16, 104
  single-word 33–4
  special 32–5
  see also function word; insert; lexical word
word order 397–426
  discourse functions 398–400
  and information flow 169, **398–9**, 400, 415
  marked 425, *425*
  register distribution 425
  subject-verb 249, 250, 254, 398
  unmarked 400, 411
  variations 277–8, 423, 424–5
  see also clause patterns; clefting; condensation; dislocation; emphasis; end weight principle; extraposition; focus; fronting; inversion; passive; postponement; reporting clause; *there*, existential

Z

zero article 67, 68–70, 72, ***461***

Index compiled by Meg Davies (Registered Indexer, Society of Indexers)

LONGMAN
Student Grammar
# of SPOKEN and WRITTEN ENGLISH

Based on the insights and discoveries of the ground-breaking *Longman Grammar of Spoken and Written English*, this new book brings fresh perspectives to the study of English grammar.

The *Longman Student Grammar of Spoken and Written English* is a pedagogical coursebook for advanced students at university or on teacher-training courses, and an invaluable reference grammar. It combines a comprehensive examination of grammatical structure with information about the *how*, *when*, and *why* of English as it is really used. The *Longman Student Grammar*:

- examines patterns of use in news, fiction, academic, and spoken English
- takes grammar and vocabulary together and looks at how they interact
- is based on an analysis of 40-million words of British and American, written and spoken corpus text
- uses over 3000 examples of real, corpus English to illustrate the points
- uses frequency tables and graphs to make the new findings of this grammar clear.

The workbook, available separately, can be used in class and for individual study.

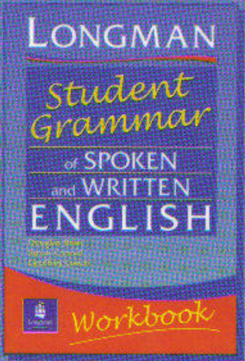

LONGMAN
Student Grammar
of SPOKEN
and WRITTEN
ENGLISH
Workbook

Pearson Education

LONGMAN corpus NETWORK

BRITISH NATIONAL CORPUS

Visit our website http://www.longman.com/dictionaries

Elaine Walker
Steve Elsworth

New Edition

Grammar Practice

for Upper Intermediate Students

with key

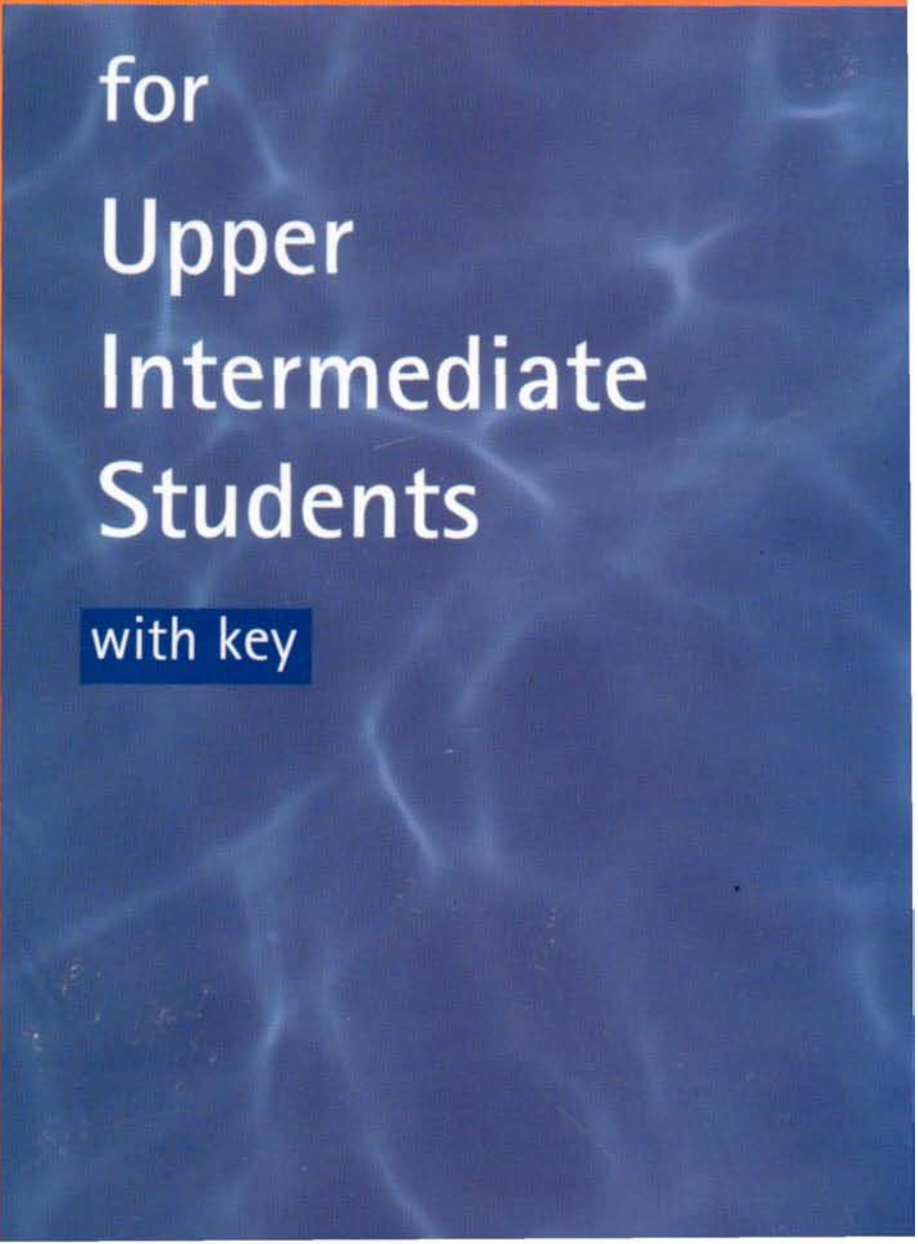

Longman

Elaine Walker
Steve Elsworth

New Edition

Grammar Practice

for

Upper Intermediate Students

with key

Longman

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate
Harlow
Essex CM20 2JE
England
And Associated Companies throughout the World.

www.longman-elt.com

© Pearson Education Limited 2000

The rights of Elaine Walker and Steve Elsworth to be identified as authors of this Work has been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

ISBN 0 582 41721 X

Set in Slimbach

Printed by Spain by Mateu Cromo

Tests on pages 173-184 by Dorothy E. Zemach.

Illustrations by Gillian Martin, Chris Pavely, Ivana Svabic and Celia Witchard.

Designed by Linemead

Project Managed by Lewis Lansford

Contents

To the Student

NOUNS, ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

countable and uncountable nouns 1, 3
the article 4–6
attributive and predicative adjectives 9
order of adjectives 10
participles as adjectives 12
suffixes and prefixes 13, 15
non-gradable adjectives 15
comparison of adjectives 16–17
adverbs and adverbial phrases 20
position of adverbs 21–22
comparison of adverbs 24

VERBS

simple and continuous aspects 27
stative and dynamic verbs 29
perfect aspect 31

The present tense

present simple and continuous 33–34

The past tense

past simple and continuous 37–39, 46

Tenses with the perfect aspect

present perfect simple 42–44, 46
present perfect continuous 43–44
past perfect simple 49–50
past perfect continuous 52

Future forms

be going to future 54–55, 58–59
present continuous as future 54–55, 65
future with *will* 56–59, 63
present simple as future 61
future continuous 62–63, 65
future perfect 66
other ways of referring to the future 68

The passive

forms and uses of the passive 70–71
causative use of *have* and *get* 75–76

Miscellaneous

constructions after *wish* 77
phrasal verbs 79

CONDITIONALS

first, second and third conditional 82, 85–86
variations in tenses 85–86
the zero conditional 86
mixed conditionals 88
words other than *if* 91
implied conditionals 92

MODALS

Introduction 94–95
ability: *can, could, be able* 97
certainty, possibility, deduction: *can, could, may, might, must, will, should, ought to* 99–100
advice, obligation, necessity: *should, ought to, must, have to, have got to, need* 103–104
offers, requests, permission, suggestions: *can, could, may, might, would, must, shall, would you mind* 107
habit: *would, used to* 109

GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES

uses of the gerund 111, 113
uses of the infinitive 111–113
the bare infinitive 114–115
verbs of perception + object + *ing* or bare infinitive 116
verb + *to*-infinitive or gerund 117–119
preposition + gerund 120
be + adjective + infinitive 122
different forms of the gerund and the infinitive 126

REPORTED SPEECH

reported statements 128–130
reported questions 131–132
when not to change tense 128–130
verbs used in reporting 134
summarizing when reporting 136

SENTENCE STRUCTURE

simple, compound and complex sentences 138–139
conjunctions 139
noun clauses 140
participial constructions 143–145
adverbial clauses of time, place, manner and reason 148
defining relative clauses 151
non-defining relative clauses 154–156
relative clauses of time, place and reason 159
relative clauses after *all*, etc. 160
co-ordinating relative clauses 161
tag questions 162–165
echo tags 164–165
prepositions 168–170

TESTS 173-184

ANSWER KEY 185–200

INDEX 201–204

To the Student

Grammar Practice for Upper Intermediate Students gives thorough explanations of all the main areas of English grammar and provides exercises for you to do.

This book can be used in class with help from your teacher or at home as a self-study book.

If you are using the book by yourself, use the Index and the Contents list to find the area that you want to study, read the grammatical explanation and then do the exercise. To check your answers, look in the Key.

We hope that *Grammar Practice for Upper Intermediate Students* helps you to improve your English.

Elaine Walker
Steve Elsworth

Nouns, adjectives and adverbs

1 Countable and uncountable nouns

Uncountable nouns

- Names of substances (materials, liquids, gases, etc.):

leather paper wood metal silver
water coffee air bread meat
butter wine flour

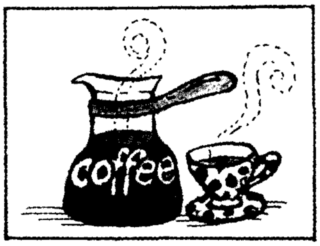

- Activities and sports:

running swimming shopping
gardening football tennis
snooker squash badminton

- Names of subjects:

history mathematics music
physics law art

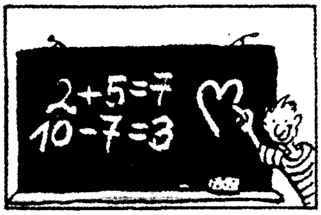

- Languages:

Russian Greek German English

- Abstract nouns:

love hope advice information
intelligence beauty hunger
poverty

- Collective nouns:

furniture luggage equipment
accommodation traffic

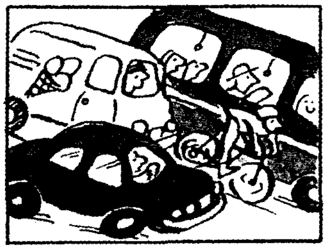

Practice

1a Underline all the uncountable nouns in the following text.

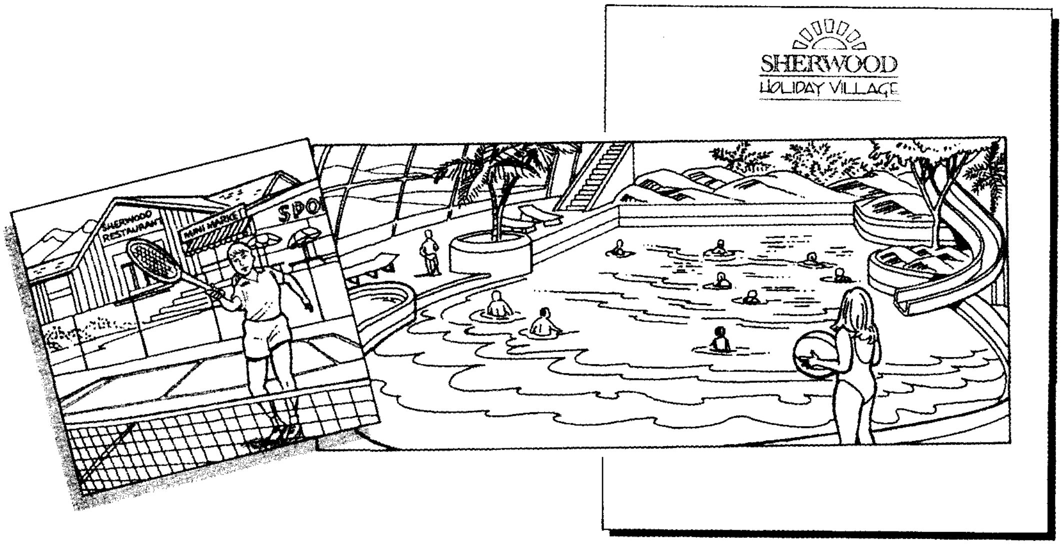

We welcome you as a guest at the Sherwood Holiday Village and hope that you enjoy your holiday with us.

The sports complex is open from 7 a.m. and facilities are available for tennis, squash, bowling, table tennis and snooker.

You can hire equipment at the complex for a nominal fee. If you require tuition, there is coaching available but you must book in advance. For those of you who enjoy competition, there will be tournaments taking place throughout the week. Please sign your name up on the notice board if you are interested. And if you need something to quench your thirst after an energetic game, you can purchase fruit juice, mineral water and herbal drinks as well as a variety of healthy snacks from the health-food bar. May we take this opportunity to inform you that appropriate footwear must be worn for all activities and heavy shoes are not allowed in the sports complex.

Next to the sports complex, you will find our brand-new swimming pool, complete with water slides and a wave machine. The lighting in the pool area gives the effect of sunlight even on the dullest days. And if you want to look your best in the pool, our sports shop stocks a wide range of designer swimwear.

After lots of exercise, you'll probably be ready for a good meal. Why not go to the Sherwood Restaurant? If you'd like to try the buffet, you can eat as much food as you like for just £8. If you'd prefer to eat in, you can purchase your food from the minimarket. Fresh fruit and vegetables are delivered to the minimarket daily and the bread is freshly baked by our own bakers.

If you require any advice or information, please come to the Reception Desk and we will be glad to assist.

Janice Hughes, Manager

Nouns which may be uncountable or countable

Many nouns which are generally uncountable can also be countable in certain contexts.

- Some nouns are uncountable when we talk about the substance, material or abstract concept but countable when we talk about one specific item: *chicken/a chicken, light/a light, stone/a stone, hope/a hope, education/an education, hair/a hair*

  *I'm very interested in **education**.*
  *It is important that she receives **a** good **education**.*

  *There isn't much **light** in this room.*
  *Is there **a light** in this room?*

- Some nouns which are uncountable when we talk about the material and countable when we refer to a specific thing have a particular meaning as countable nouns. For example, *glass* refers to a material. *A glass* refers to an item that we drink from which is made of glass. It does not refer to a piece of glass:
  wood/a wood, paper/a paper, iron/an iron, cloth/a cloth
- Some nouns which are usually uncountable can be countable when we refer to a particular variety:
  wine/an excellent wine, cheese/a strong cheese, fruit/a very sweet fruit
- In informal English, drinks and some types of food which are normally uncountable can be counted, particularly when we are making an order in a cafe or restaurant:
  tea/three teas, coffee/a coffee, soup/two soups
- Some ***ing*** forms can be countable:
  painting/a good painting, drawing/a few drawings

Practice

1b Write ***a*** before the nouns which are being used as countable nouns.

1 a) ..–.. Beauty is subjective.
b) She's ..*a*.. real beauty.

2 a) I am fortunate to have had ..... very good education.
b) ..... education does not just take place at school.

3 a) My eyes are very sensitive to ..... light.
b) Is there ..... light in there?

4 a) You've been ..... great help to me.
b) I'm sorry to ask you but I desperately need ..... help.

5 a) I don't usually drink ..... coffee.
b) I'll have two teas and ..... coffee please.

6 a) He has ..... great love of music.
b) Sometimes ..... love can be very painful.

7 a) You'll get better at the job as you gain ..... experience.
b) I'm so glad I did it: it was ..... wonderful experience.

8 a) The house is built of ..... stone.
b) This is ..... beautiful stone.

9 a) ..... death comes to us all one day.
b) There's been ..... death in the family.

10 a) ..... fear is a perfectly natural human feeling.
b) He has ..... terrible fear of heights.

11 a) He was so hungry that he ate ..... whole chicken.
b) I don't like red meat but I do eat ..... chicken.

12 a) I think that's ..... really ugly painting.
b) ..... painting can be a very relaxing activity.

13 a) I usually eat ..... fruit for breakfast.
b) That's ..... very unusual fruit. What is it?

14 a) Has this soup got ..... potato in it?
b) Would you like ..... baked potato?

15 a) You shouldn't drink ..... wine on an empty stomach.
b) This is ..... very nice wine.

2 The article

The indefinite article *a* or *an*

- ***a*** or ***an***? We use ***a*** before consonant sounds and ***an*** before vowel sounds. But note:

a *uniform*	***a*** *European*	***an*** *MP*	***an*** *L-plate*
/juː/	/juː/	/em/	/el/

USE

We can use the indefinite article before singular countable nouns: we cannot use it before uncountable nouns:
I bought ***a*** *chair* but NOT ~~*I bought a furniture*~~.

We use the indefinite article:

- when we are referring to one thing but it is not one in particular:
  I'd like ***a*** *banana.*
- when we refer to something for the first time. With the second reference, we use ***the***:
  There's ***a*** *man at the door. I think it's* ***the*** *man from the garage.*

- after ***to be*** and ***have got*** when we are describing someone or something, including someone's job:
  *She's **a** headteacher.*
  (BUT *She's **the** headteacher of Park School.*)
  *He's got **a** lovely smile.*
  *It's **a** nice day.*
  (BUT *It's **the** nicest day we've had all week.*)

- with a unit of measurement (weight, quantity, time):
  *£2 **a** kilo, three times **a** day, once **a** week*

- In exclamations:
  *What **a** lovely day!*

The definite article: *the*

USE

We can use the definite article before singular and plural countable nouns and before uncountable nouns.

We use it when we are referring to a specific thing or things. This includes:

- when the content of the sentence specifies which particular one(s) we are talking about:
  ***The** people next door have invited us round for a drink.*
  *I'll wear **the** dress I bought last week.*

- when something is referred to for a second time and therefore becomes specific:
  *They've got a boy and a girl. **The** girl's at university now.*

- when we refer to a particular place, person, animal or thing and the speaker and listener know which one(s) is/are being referred to:
  ***The** window cleaner's here.*
  (our regular window cleaner)
  *I think your keys are in **the** kitchen.*
  (our kitchen or the kitchen here)

- when there is only one:
  ***the** world **the** sun **the** weather **the** American Civil War*

- before some collective nouns referring to a whole group of people, including names of nationalities and political parties or groups:
  ***the** British **the** Italians **the** Conservatives **the** police **the** government*
  ***the** public **the** army **the** management **the** electorate **the** fire brigade*

- before some adjectives (used without a noun) to refer to the group in general:
  ***the** rich **the** poor **the** unemployed **the** disabled*

- before parts of the day:
  *in **the** morning/**the** afternoon/**the** evening*

- before names of ships, newspapers and magazines and some names of musical groups:
  ***The** National Union of Teachers **The** QE2 **The** Daily Mirror **The** Economist*
  ***The** Berlin Philharmonic Orchestra*

- before superlatives and ordinals:
  *It's **the** best film I've seen.*
  *That's **the** third time she's phoned.*

- before names of musical instruments when we talk about playing them:
  *Can you play **the** piano?*
  (BUT *I've just bought **a** piano.*)

- before names of seas, rivers, groups of islands, islands called 'The Isle of ...', chains of mountains, deserts, regions and a few names of countries:
  ***the** Atlantic Ocean* ***the** River Nile* ***the** Himalayas* ***the** Sahara*
  ***the** Southern Hemisphere* ***the** Arctic* ***the** north, south,* etc. ***the** USA*
  ***the** Netherlands* ***the** Sudan* ***the** United Arab Emirates* ***the** Ivory Coast*
  ***the** Philippines* ***the** Bahamas* ***the** Isle of Wight*

The zero article (no article)

USE

We do not use an article before plural nouns and singular uncountable nouns when we use them in a general sense.

	Singular countable nouns	*Singular uncountable nouns*	*Plural nouns*
Definite use	**the**	**the**	**the**
Indefinite use	**a/an**	zero article	zero article

Books are very important to me.
*Have you read **the** books I brought you last month?*
Water is the best thing to drink when you're thirsty.
*Did you put **the** water in the fridge?*

Other uses of the zero article:

- with proper nouns:
  Helen's gone to Paris.
  I'm going away on Friday.

- with meals:
  Have you had breakfast yet?
  (BUT *That was **a** lovely breakfast.*)

- with *school, class, college, university, home, work, church, bed, hospital, prison, town* when we talk about going to these places or being in them for their normal use:
  Danny's gone to bed.
  She's been in hospital for three weeks.
  (BUT *There isn't **a** hospital in **the** town.*)

- with ***by*** + item of transport:
  Did you go by train?

- with ***next/last*** + *week, days of the week,* etc:
  next Wednesday, last night, next time

Practice

2a Complete the sentences with ***a*** or ***an, the*** or no article.

1 'How much are .the. leeks?' 'They're 80 pence ..a.. pound.'
2 I went to .... wonderful concert by .... London Symphony Orchestra.
3 .... local school is soon to be closed.
4 I usually go to .... work by .... train.
5 Is .... meat in .... oven?
6 Is this .... first time you've been to .... Isle of Man?
7 He's .... art teacher and she's .... electrician.
8 A lot of people give .... money to .... charity at this time of year.
9 What .... beautiful face that child's got!
10 .... British usually have .... butter on their bread.
11 .... life is very difficult for .... unemployed these days.
12 .... Leader of .... Opposition is in danger of losing her seat at .... next election.
13 I like to have .... cup of .... tea when I wake up in .... morning.
14 I saw .... fox this morning. I think it must have been .... same one that I saw last week.
15 Can I have .... apple?
16 Have you ever seen .... Acropolis in .... Athens?
17 .... police have had a lot of support from .... general public over this issue.
18 .... shirts on .... washing-line should be nearly dry now.
19 .... people don't like him because of his selfish attitude.
20 I bought my sister .... book and .... bottle of .... perfume for her birthday but I don't think she liked .... perfume.

2b Put ***a*** or ***an, the*** or no article in the gaps in this letter.

Dear ^{1}....–... Jo and Ian,

This is ^{2}...a.... picture of ^{3}......... hotel we're staying at. We were lucky enough to get one of ^{4}......... rooms overlooking ^{5}......... sea and ^{6}......... view is lovely. We had ^{7}......... good journey over here and ^{8}......... children quite enjoyed ^{9}......... flight. They've got ^{10}......... lovely room of their own and they think ^{11}.........

hotel's great. In general, we've all been having [12]......... really good time. Unfortunately, Penny got [13]......... very sunburnt back on [14]......... first day so she's had to wear [15]......... T-shirt since then, but apart from that everyone's been fine. Jeremy's met [16]......... English boy of about [17]......... same age and they get on very well. They went into [18]......... town on their own [19]......... last night and bought themselves [20]......... meal. And tonight they want to go out to [21]......... disco – there are plenty to choose from here.

We've spent most of our time on [22]......... beach so far. [23]......... sea is really warm and clear so we've done lots of [24]......... swimming. Tomorrow we're going on [25]......... boat trip to one of [26]......... islands and we're going to have [27]......... barbecue on [28]......... island. I'm really looking forward to that.

Anyway, I'll give you [29]......... ring when we get back and we'll see you [30]......... next week.

Best wishes,

Sally and Robin

2c Rewrite the reference below in your notebook, adding the definite article ***the*** and the indefinite article ***a*** or ***an*** where appropriate.

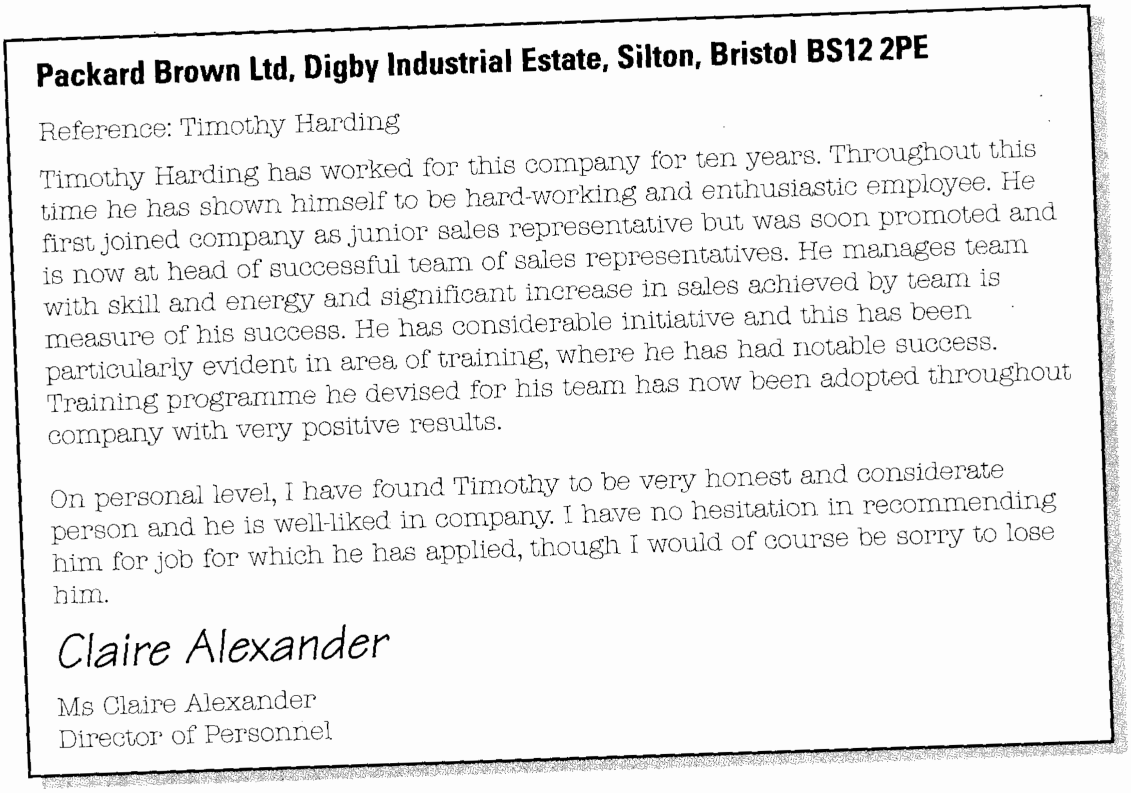

Packard Brown Ltd, Digby Industrial Estate, Silton, Bristol BS12 2PE

Reference: Timothy Harding

Timothy Harding has worked for this company for ten years. Throughout this time he has shown himself to be hard-working and enthusiastic employee. He first joined company as junior sales representative but was soon promoted and is now at head of successful team of sales representatives. He manages team with skill and energy and significant increase in sales achieved by team is measure of his success. He has considerable initiative and this has been particularly evident in area of training, where he has had notable success. Training programme he devised for his team has now been adopted throughout company with very positive results.

On personal level, I have found Timothy to be very honest and considerate person and he is well-liked in company. I have no hesitation in recommending him for job for which he has applied, though I would of course be sorry to lose him.

Claire Alexander

Ms Claire Alexander
Director of Personnel

Example: *Timothy Harding has worked for this company for ten years. Throughout this time he has shown himself to be a hard-working and enthusiastic employee. ...*

3 Adjectives

Attributive and predicative adjectives

- When an adjective comes before a noun, it is attributive:
  *She's an **intelligent young** woman.*
  *I love **strong** cheese.*
- When an adjective is separated from the noun and comes after the verb, it is predicative. An adjective can follow verbs like *be, become, get, seem, appear, feel, smell, look, sound, taste, make* (+ person), *keep, stay, grow, turn*. It is a complement of the verb and not an object:
  *The exam was really **difficult**.*
  *She seems **worried**.*
  *Hilary made me very **angry**.*
- A few adjectives can have a different meaning as attributive adjectives from their meaning as predicative adjectives:
  *Jenny's a really **old** friend.*
  (I've known her for a long time.)
  *Margaret's quite **old** now.*
  (old in age)

  *You're a very **heavy** sleeper.*
  (You sleep very heavily; you do not wake up easily.)
  *This suitcase is really **heavy**.*

  *His **late** father used to run the shop.*
  (His father is dead now.)
  *He's nearly always **late**.*
- A few adjectives can be used only as attributive adjectives or only as predicative adjectives:

  Only predicative
  - Some adjectives relating to health, including ***ill***, ***poorly***, ***well/unwell***, ***fine***: *She's very **ill**.*
  - Adjectives beginning with a, including ***asleep***, ***awake***, ***afraid***, ***alive***, ***alone***: *Do you feel **afraid**?*
  - Some adjectives describing feelings, including ***content***, ***glad***, ***pleased***, ***sorry***, ***upset***: *He seems **upset**.*
  - ***near***, ***far*** (***away***): *It's not **far away**.*

  Only attributive
  - Adjectives which qualify the noun, including ***chief***, ***main***, ***only***, ***particular***, ***principal***, ***sole***: *You're my **only** friend.*

Order of adjectives

When there is more than one adjective preceding a noun, they are generally placed in the following order:

What is it like?	*How big?*	*How old?*	*What shape?*	*What colour?*	*Where was it made?*	*What is it made from?/ What type is it?*	*Noun*
				red	Chinese	silk	shirt
beautiful		old					house
old-fashioned						handmade	doll
	small		square	brown			envelope
	heavy		oval			antique	table

Notes

- ***great big*** generally goes before any other adjectives: *a **great big** lovely old building.*
- When you use more than one adjective from the *What is it like?* category, it does not usually matter what order they go in:
  *She's a **depressed, anxious** young woman.*
  *She's an **anxious, depressed** young woman.*
  If one of the adjectives is more general, it is likely to come first:
  *It was a **beautiful, thought-provoking** film.*
- We generally only use commas between attributive adjectives when there are two or more adjectives of equal importance describing what something is like. The comma separates the adjectives of equal emphasis. There is often another adjective describing age or type before the noun:
  He's an ignorant, selfish old man.
- We can also use ***and*** to separate two attributive adjectives describing what something is like:
  *It's a violent **and** shocking book.*
- If we use two adjectives predicatively, we separate the adjectives with ***and***. If there are more than two adjectives, we separate the last two adjectives with ***and*** and the preceding adjectives with a comma:
  *He is always bright **and** cheerful.*
  *The new teacher is committed, enthusiastic **and** hard-working.*

Practice

3a Rewrite the sentences, putting the words into the correct order. If you think there should be a comma, add it in the correct place.

1 absolutely holiday wonderful was the.

The holiday was absolutely wonderful.

2 enormous they old staying building grey are an in.

....

....

3 and looks now old he tired rather.

....

4 young met student charming we medical a.

....

5 angry an man is young he aggressive.

....

6 heavy is a he smoker very.

....

7 very has happy him she made.

....

8 heavy her gold a gave necklace he beautiful.

....

....

9 close are friends extremely they.

....

10 moment at rather seem the unhappy you.

....

11 thoughtful a be man young seems very he to

....

....

12 impractical is time-wasting expensive the and project.

....

....

13 beginning hair grey turn to is my.

....

14 young actress a Diana successful well-respected and is.

....

....

15 fine am now feeling I.

....

Construction of adjectives

Participles as adjectives

- Many present participles and past participles can be used as adjectives:
  an ***exciting*** *trip* *a* ***falling*** *tree*
  a ***crying*** *child* *a* ***completed*** *manuscript*
  a ***torn*** *shirt* ***frozen*** *vegetables*
- Many compound adjectives are formed with participles. ***Well*** + past participle is particularly common:
  a ***well-built*** *house* ***well-cooked*** *meat*
  a ***time-wasting*** *activity* ***handmade*** *tools*
  a ***fast-selling*** *product* ***home-grown*** *vegetables*

Practice

3b Complete the sentences with participles as adjectives, using the verbs in the box. The verbs with adverbs should be used to form compound adjectives.

dry change ~~act well~~ keep beautifully break decline fast
steal tailor beautifully bring up well continue love
brush well ~~relax~~ think clearly park write well embarrass
build well plan badly boil

1 It was a very restful holiday so I feel much more ..relaxed.. now.

2 It was a very ..well-acted.. play.

3 I kept calling her by the wrong name; it was very ....

4 The .... kettle filled the kitchen with steam.

5 She's a very .... child: she always behaves herself well.

6 I think he may have died of a .... heart.

7 Her hair is always very ....

8 The increase in divorce reflects a .... attitude to marriage and relationships.

9 She's a very good person to have in meetings as she's very ....

10 Shortage of money is a .... problem for them: it probably always will be.

11 The house is old but it's very ....

12 It was a .... escape and so it inevitably failed.

13 Badgers are a .... species in this country as more of them are killed every year.

14 That's a .... suit he's wearing.

15 I need some .... fruit to put in the cake.

16 This is a .... garden: someone must spend a lot of time working on it.

17 It was a very .... article.

18 The police may charge you with receiving .... goods.

19 They're a very .... family and they give each other a lot of support.

20 Children should not play near .... cars.

Suffixes and prefixes

Many adjectives have suffixes or prefixes. Some of the more common suffixes are:

- ***-able/ible*** (able to be): *comfort**able**, enjoy**able***
- ***-ful*** (full of, having): *truth**ful**, beauti**ful***
- ***-less*** (being without, not having): *care**less**, power**less***
- ***-ive*** (tending to, having the nature or quality of doing this): *attract**ive**, impuls**ive***

Practice

3c Complete the following sentences with an adjective formed from one of the verbs or nouns in the box, plus a suffix.

act	care	change	comfort	describe	dread	~~enjoy~~	
forget	grace	motion	power	rely	submit	tire	truth

1 We had a lovely weekend; it was thoroughly .*enjoyable*.. .

2 He never remembers my birthday; I don't know why he's so

....

3 The problem is that there's nothing we can do about it; we're completely

....

4 I believe what he says because he's always been .... in the past.

5 She never seems to run out of energy; she's completely

....

6 She's a very .... writer; she gives you a very good feel for the places and characters in her stories.

7 Don't worry. If he's said he'll be there, then I sure he will. He's very

....

8 His problem is that he always does exactly what people tell him to do: he's just so ....

9 You're so ....: you're always dropping things.

10 I love to watch good ballet dancers: they're so ....

11 The cat stayed .... as it waited to pounce on the bird.

12 It's a very .... climate; the weather can be completely different from one day to the next.

13 It's important to keep .... after you retire.

14 The seats in first class were really .... I could easily have fallen asleep in them.

15 The situation out there is .... More and more people are dying every day.

Negative prefixes

There are a number of negative prefixes including the following:

• ***dis-***	***dis**agreeable*	***dis**honest*
• ***un-***	***un**interesting*	***un**necessary*
• ***il-***	***il**legal*	***il**logical*
• ***im-***	***im**possible*	***im**polite*
• ***in-***	***in**convenient*	***in**significant*
• ***ir-***	***ir**responsible*	***ir**relevant*

Practice

3d Copy the table into your notebook and put the adjectives in the box into the correct columns.

~~patient~~ relevant attractive literate flexible regular legal
agreeable mature convenient tasteful moral replaceable
responsible significant possible legible honest rational
explicable justified mortal reversible destructible perfect
friendly soluble polite logical interesting separable

dis-	*un-*	*il-*	*im-*	*in-*	*ir-*
			impatient		

Non-gradable adjectives

A non-gradable adjective is one that cannot be qualified by words like *very, too* and *enough.*

Non-gradable adjectives include words like:
weekly, unconscious, dead, legal, medical, empty, full.
where the meaning is strictly defined and cannot be qualified. There are, for example, no degrees of being dead or unconscious. Thus we cannot say '~~very dead~~'.

Other non-gradable adjectives are adjectives with a very strong meaning like:
wonderful, perfect, terrible, astonished, delicious, amazing, hilarious.
Astonished, for example, already means *very/extremely/completely surprised,* and so we cannot say 'very astonished'. But we can add some strength to these words by preceding them with ***absolutely*** or ***really***:
absolutely *wonderful*
really *amazing*

Practice

3e Copy the table into your notebook and write the adjectives in the correct columns. Put them into pairs of adjectives with similar meanings.

~~surprising~~ starving nice filthy devastated wonderful
hungry delicious big tasty furious ugly impossible
small hideous terrified good enormous tired thirsty
~~amazing~~ angry vital parched dirty upset important
terrible frightened minute exhausted perfect difficult
bad

Gradable	*Non-gradable*
surprising	amazing

4 Comparison of adjectives

	Comparative	*Superlative*
One syllable adjectives: young, big, short	young**er**, bigg**er**, short**er**	young**est**, bigg**est**, short**est**
Two-syllable adjectives ending in -y: lovely, pretty, funny	lovel**ier**, prett**ier**, funn**ier**	lovel**iest**, prett**iest**, funn**iest**
Other two-syllable adjectives: pleasant, annoyed, modern, careful careless	**more** pleasant **more** annoyed **more** modern **more** careful **more** careless	**most** pleasant **most** annoyed **most** modern **most** careful **most** careless
Adjectives of three or more syllables: expensive, attractive, exciting, intelligent	**more** expensive **more** attractive **more** exciting **more** intelligent	**most** expensive **most** attractive **most** exciting **most** intelligent
Adjectives with irregular comparatives and superlatives: good, bad, far	**better**, **worse**, **further/farther**	**best**, **worst**, **furthest/farthest**

Notes

- ***Less*** and ***least*** can be used in comparative and superlative sentences:
  *Travelling by train is **less** tiring than driving.*
  *This must be the **least** attractive part of the coast.*

  Least is sometimes used in the expression '*not in the **least***' meaning 'not at all':
  *It does**n't** matter **in the least** if you can't come. I'll see you next week.*

- Spelling:
  *h**ot*** → *ho**tt**er* → *ho**tt**est*
  *th**in*** → *thi**nn**er* → *thi**nn**est*
  *bi**g*** → *bi**gg**er* → *bi**gg**est*

  single vowel   single consonant   double consonant

  *nic**e*** → *nic**er*** → *nic**est***
  *larg**e*** → *larg**er*** → *larg**est***
  *rud**e*** → *rud**er*** → *rud**est***

  'e' ending

- An adjective with a negative prefix forms its comparative and superlative in the same way as the adjective without the negative prefix:
  kind → *kind**er*** → *kind**est***   ***un**kind* → ***un**kind**er*** → ***un**kind**est***
  happy → *happ**ier*** → *happ**iest***   ***un**happy* → ***un**happ**ier*** → ***un**happ**iest***
  honest → ***more** honest* → ***most** honest*   ***dis**honest* → ***more dis**honest* → ***most dis**honest*

  However, it is more common to say *not as kind as ...*, *not as honest as ...*, than it is to say *unkinder, more dishonest.*

- When ***than*** is followed by a personal pronoun, it can be a subject pronoun + auxiliary or a subject pronoun + whole clause. In informal English, it is acceptable to use an object pronoun after ***than***:
  *She works harder **than I do**.*
  *She works harder **than me**.* (informal)
  *She works harder **than I used to (work) at her age**.*

- It is not always necessary to follow a comparative with ***than***. A comparative can stand on its own:
  A: *Shall we go by train or by bus?*
  B: *The train's more expensive.*
  A: *Yes, but it's more comfortable.*
  It is clear from the context that the train is being compared with the bus.

- We use ***as*** + adjective + ***as*** to indicate that two things are very similar. And we often use it in the negative: ***not as** ... **as***: *I'm **not as strong as** you are.*

- Two comparatives joined by ***and*** give the idea of a continuing increase:
  *It's growing **bigger and bigger** every day.*
  *It's getting **more and more difficult** to find a quiet beach.*

- We can qualify comparatives using ***a bit***, ***a little***, ***a little bit***, ***quite a bit***, ***a lot***, ***much***, ***far***, ***even***, ***hardly***, ***any***, ***no***:
  *She's **much happier** than she used to be.*
  *He's **even more upset** today than he was yesterday.*
  *Why don't we go on the coach? It's **quite a bit cheaper** than the train.*

Practice

4 Put the adjectives in brackets into the comparative or superlative form. Write the answers for Text 1 under the memo in the spaces provided.

1

Memo

The company's annual report shows that sales figures were ^{1}..... (low) than the previous year. This is no surprise due to the recession but what is ^{2}..... (disappointing) than this is the clear evidence that some of our very ^{3}..... (old) clients have switched to another supplier. We are aware that there are ^{4}..... (cheap) suppliers than ourselves but this may not be the ^{5}..... (important) factor. One old client was heard to say that their new supplier was ^{6}..... (efficient) and ^{7}..... (flexible) than we are. If this is the case, then this is ^{8}..... (worrying) than anything else. The economic situation is getting ^{9}..... and ..... (critical) and if we do not compare favourably with our ^{10}..... (big competitors), then we will not survive. We used to have the ^{11}..... (high) reputation in the business but we are in danger of losing that forever. It is not easy to be the ^{12}..... (good) but that is what we should be aiming for.

1 lower..
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....
11 ....
12 ....

2 Pam, who lives in London, is on the phone to her friend Debbie, who has recently moved to the countryside.

PAM: So how are you enjoying living in the new place?

DEBBIE: Oh, it's very nice. The house is much ^{13}.................................... (spacious) than the flat we had in London and one of the ^{14}.................................... (good) things is being able to walk out of the back door into our own garden.

PAM: Mm, that must be lovely. So all in all, it's much ^{15}.................................... (good) than London, is it?

DEBBIE: Well, I'm not sure I would say that. It's certainly [16]...................................... (polluted) here and I suppose it's [17]...................................... (stressful) and that must be good for me. But it's just so much [18]...................................... (quiet) here and that takes some time to get used to. I suppose I miss the cultural diversity of London. Going out shopping in London was so much [19]...................................... (interesting) that it is here. The people here are so much [20]...................................... (varied) than they are in London.

PAM: I suppose that's true. But it's so much [21]...................................... (busy) on the streets here in London. It must be nice to walk around somewhere that's much [22]...................................... (crowded).

DEBBIE: Well, sometimes it is. Anyway, at least I'm coming up to London next weekend. I'm [23]...................................... (excited) about that than I am about anything happening round here.

PAM: Oh dear. you seem to be thinking that you haven't made the [24]...................................... (good) decision.

DEBBIE: Well, perhaps I'll feel [25]...................................... (settled) here after a few months. Who knows?

PAM: Yes, probably. I personally think you're really lucky to be where you are. When I came to visit you, I thought it was one of the [26]...................................... (beautiful) places I'd ever seen.

5 Adverbs and adverbial phrases

Types of adverbs and adverbial phrases

- Adverbs of manner:
  carefully, badly, quickly, in a friendly way:
  You must pick the glass up very ***carefully****.*
- Adverbs of place (location and direction):
  in Cairo, to Egypt, abroad, downstairs, underneath, over here, at my brother's:
  They're staying ***abroad****.*
- Adverbs of time:
  on Saturday, for a long time, now, eventually:
  I'll see you ***on Saturday****.*
- Adverbs of frequency:
  always, often, sometimes, twice a week, monthly, again:
  I ***often*** *meet him in the park.*
- Adverbs of degree:
  almost, a bit, quite, hardly, very much, only, even:
  I ***quite*** *like that dress.*
- Sentence adverbs (modifying the whole sentence or clause and often expressing degrees of certainty and/or the speaker's opinion):
  obviously, definitely, presumably, probably, luckily, naturally:
  The new system is ***definitely*** *an improvement on the old one.*
  Hopefully*, I'll be there before 10 o'clock.*

Hopefully, I'll be there before 10 o'clock.

Notes

- Adverbs often add to the meaning of a verb. They tell us *how, when, where,* etc. something was done. However, they do not always modify a verb. They can modify adjectives, nouns, other adverbs, phrases and sentences.
- *When, where, why,* etc. are interrogative adverbs.
- *Very, really,* etc. are adverbs which strengthen adjectives and other adverbs. They are sometimes called intensifiers.
- The second word in a phrasal verb is often an adverb, e.g. *lie* ***down****.*
- Adverbs such as *even, only, just* and *simply* precede the word they qualify and focus attention on it. They are sometimes called focus adverbs.

Position of adverbs

- Adverbs of manner, place and time usually go after an intransitive verb or after a transitive verb + object.

V ADVERB
Adverbs of manner: The children sat quietly.

V O ADVERB
They did the work quickly.

V ADVERB
Adverbs of place: They stayed in a hotel.

V O ADVERB
I bought these shoes in the market.

V ADVERB
Adverbs of time: They arrived this morning.

V O ADVERB
I saw Steve last night.

- Adverbs of manner, place and time can sometimes be placed at the beginning of a sentence for emphasis:
  ***Slowly**, the door started to open.*
  ***In Crete**, we stayed in a beautiful beach villa.*
  ***Last weekend**, I stayed in and did lots of work.*
- It is also possible to place adverbs of manner and adverbs of indefinite time between the subject and the verb:
  *Ben **stupidly** went out without locking the door.*
  *I **recently** changed my job.*
  (NOT ~~*I **last month** changed my job*~~.)
- If there is more than one kind of adverb in a sentence, the order is usually: manner, place, time:

	Manner	*Place*	*Time*
She waited	*anxiously*	*at the airport*	*for five hours.*

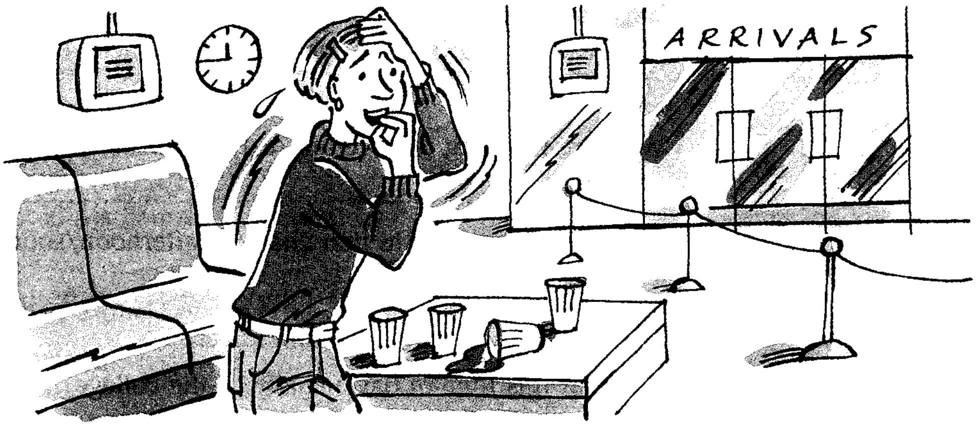

- Adverbs of definite frequency, e.g. ***once, twice, three times a week, daily, every afternoon, on Saturdays, again,*** are usually placed at the end of a sentence:
  I go swimming ***twice a week.***
  I get up at seven o'clock ***every morning.***
  But they can also go at the beginning of a sentence:
  On Saturdays, *I do my shopping.*
- Adverbs of indefinite frequency, e.g. ***always, usually, sometimes, often, never,*** usually go after an auxiliary or the verb *to be* and before a full verb:
  I am ***usually*** *in bed before midnight.*
  I have ***always*** *wanted to go there.*
  We ***sometimes*** *meet for lunch.*
- The adverbs ***frequently, generally, normally, occasionally, ordinarily, sometimes, usually, quite/very often, always/never*** (in the imperative), can also go at the beginning of a sentence for special emphasis:
  Sometimes *he agrees to help me with my homework.*
  Never *do that again!*
- Adverbs of degree, e.g. ***quite, hardly, too,*** usually go before the words they modify:
  quite *nice* ***quite*** *slowly*
  I ***quite*** *enjoyed it.*
- Sentence adverbs, e.g. ***clearly, generally, evidently, honestly,*** can go at the beginning of a sentence:
  Clearly, *the situation is very serious.*
  Or they can go before the verb (or after the verb ***to be*** or an auxiliary):
  I ***honestly*** *believe that this is the best thing we can do.*
  Mr Jameson is ***evidently*** *very happy with the results.*

Practice

5a Write the sentences with the adverbs/adverbial phrases in brackets in the correct position. If the adverbs can go in more than one position, put them in the more usual one.

1 I've been working (in my office/all morning/hard).
I've been working hard in my office all morning.

2 He speaks to me (in the mornings/never/nicely).

....

3 We were listening (all evening/carefully).

....

4 She's been sleeping (in that chair/all afternoon/soundly).

....

....

5 He is (at this time of day/usually/at the college).

....

6 The postman comes (in the morning/very early).

....

7 I thought you spoke (in that meeting/very well/yesterday).

....

....

8 We go swimming (on Saturdays/generally/at the local pool).

....

....

9 I bought these jeans (in the sales/very cheaply/last week).

....

....

10 He's been (to a dentist/never/in his life).

....

5b Complete the story using the following adverbs and adverbial phrases.

for three hours	so much	already	a few times	for months		
lovingly	deeply	just	anxiously	suddenly	soon	only
straightaway	hardly	absolutely	~~impatiently~~	in a friendly way		

She waited [1]..*impatiently*.. in the departure lounge. She had [2].................................... been there [3].................................... . If she didn't get on the plane [4].................................... , she might change her mind about going. She had been planning this trip to Berlin [5].................................... , well, since Uwe had left England. She had missed him [6].................................... and she could [7].................................... wait to see him again. But did he love her as [8].................................... as she loved him? She wasn't [9].................................... sure. She had written to him every day but he had [10].................................... written to her [11].................................... . Would he take her [12].................................... into his arms as soon as she arrived? Or would he just greet her [13].................................... ? Oh, how she hated this waiting. [14].................................... , she heard a message on the tannoy: 'Would Ms Pamela Roberts please go to the desk in the departure lounge [15].................................... ? A message has [16].................................... arrived for her.' Pamela walked [17].................................... towards the desk. What could the message be?

6 Comparison of adverbs

Only gradable adverbs, that is adverbs that can be modified, can have comparative and superlative forms. We cannot modify adverbs such as ***sometimes, never, there, now, almost.***
Adverbs ending in ***-ly*** and a few other adverbs can be put into comparative and superlative forms:

	Adverb	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
Adverbs ending in ***-ly***	carefully quickly	more carefully more quickly	most carefully most quickly
Adverbs with same form as adjective	fast hard early	faster harder earlier	fastest hardest earliest
Irregulars	badly well little much	worse better less more	worst best least most

*She drives **more carefully** than he does.*
*I think Sarah works the **hardest** of us all.*
*He helps me **less** than he used to.*

Notes

- We can also make adverbial comparisons using:
  - (*not*) ***as*** + adverb + ***as***:
    *You walk **as fast as** your brother does.*
    *I can't speak English **as well as** you can.*
  - ***the*** + comparative adverb, ***the*** + comparative adverb or adjective:
    ***The harder** I try, **the worse** I seem to do.*
    ***The more carefully** you do it, **the better** it will be.*
  - comparative adverb + ***and*** + comparative adverb:
    *As the exams got nearer, he worked **harder and harder**.*
    *It's happening **more and more regularly**.*
- superlative adverbs are not used very often.
  We often use comparative + ***than ever, anyone, anything***:
  *You can do the job **better than anyone** can.*

Practice

6a Put the adjectives into the comparative adjective or comparative adverb form.

1 I sleep much ..more heavily.. (heavy) than I used to.

2 She's become much ..happier.. (happy) since she stopped seeing Dominic.

3 He has to work a lot .... (hard) in this new job than he used to in his old one.

4 I always feel .... (healthy) when I'm on holiday than when I'm at work.

5 It all happened .... (sudden) than I was expecting.

6 I think the meal's going to be a lot .... (expensive) than we anticipated.

7 That child ate .... (hungry) than any child I've ever seen.

8 This curry tastes .... (hot) than you usually make it.

9 I occasionally go to the gym but I should go .... (frequent) than I do.

10 He was injured .... (serious) than any of the others.

11 He made me .... (furious) than I've ever been in my life.

12 He treats her .... (considerate) now than he used to.

13 You need to react .... (assertive) when they treat you like that.

14 The weather's turned .... (cold) recently.

15 Your hair looks much .... (nice) like that.

16 You've upset her now. I think you could have told her .... (tactful).

17 I think you were charged too much. Bill would have done the job .... (cheap) for you.

18 I hope this exam is .... (easy) than the one I did yesterday.

19 She took the news .... (calm) than I thought she would.

6b Put the adjectives and adverbs in brackets into the comparative.
Use: a comparative with ***-er***, a comparative with ***more/less***, a comparative with ***more and more*** or a comparative with ***as ... as***. Write the answers in the spaces provided below the text.

Feel Young and Bright with Suppavite

Are you not [1].... (young) you used to be? Do you feel [2].... and .... (tired) in the mornings? When you get in from work, do you get ready to go out [3].... (quickly) possible so that you can go and meet your friends? No? You probably go out [4].... (often) now than you used to. You just don't seem to have the energy for it anymore. You used to do everything so much [5].... (enthusiastically), but now all you want to do is stay at home.

What you need is Suppavite, an amazing new vitamin supplement that will restore some of that youthful energy. After a couple of weeks of taking Suppavite, you're likely to find that you're getting up [6].... (early), getting things done [7].... fast and approaching life [8].... (energetically) and [9].... (optimistically) than you have done for years. Your friends will wonder how you're coping so much [10].... (well) with the rigours of daily life than they are.

Why don't you try it and see?
You certainly won't regret it.

---

1 as young as..........................

2 ....

3 ....

4 ....

5 ....

6 ....

7 ....

8 ....

9 ....

10 ....

Verbs

7 Simple and continuous aspects

Verbs forms can use either the simple aspect or the continuous aspect.

The infinitive can also be used in the simple or continuous aspect:
That child is too young ***to play*** *with matches.*
(infinitive with ***to***)
That child is too young ***to be playing*** *with matches.*
(continuous infinitive with ***to***)

You shouldn't ***work*** *so hard.*
(modal + infinitive)
You shouldn't ***be working*** *so hard.*
(modal + continuous infinitive)

The simple aspect

When we use the simple aspect, we view the action or series of actions as a whole.

The simple aspect indicates one or both of the following:

- that an action or series of actions is complete.
- that the situation is permanent or is regarded as permanent.

We can use both dynamic and stative verbs in the simple aspect.

Dynamic verbs are verbs which describe actions, e.g. go, ask, walk, explain, work.

Stative verbs are verbs which do not describe actions: they describe feelings, thoughts, wishes, the senses and states of being, e.g. believe, belong, know, smell, understand, want.

The continuous (or progressive) aspect

When we use the continuous aspect, we view the action or series of actions in progress. The continuous aspect does not describe the whole event.

The continuous aspect indicates one or more of the following:

- that the action or series of actions are in progress. We view the action at some point between its beginning and its end.
- that the action is not complete.
- that the situation is temporary.

When we use the continuous aspect, we describe an activity in progress. We therefore use the continuous aspect with dynamic verbs but not with stative verbs.

Practice

7a Put the verbs in brackets into the tense indicated. Choose between the simple aspect and the continuous aspect.

Jenny and Francesca, two friends, are talking.

J: So what is it that ^{1}'s worrying. (worry – present) you?

F: Well, I just ^{2}.. (not see – present) a way out of my problems with my boss.

J: Why? What ^{3}.. (go on – present perfect)?

F: Well, we ^{4}.. (go out – past) for dinner about a month ago and I ^{5}.. (think – present) he ^{6}.................................... (assume – past) that I ^{7}.. (be interested – past) in going out with him regularly, but I'm not.

J: ^{8}.. (you/tell – past) him that?

F: Yes, of course I have, but he just ^{9}.. (not seem – present) to understand. Take yesterday for example. I ^{10}.. (work – past) hard on my monthly report when he ^{11}.. (come up – past) to me and ^{12}.. (put – past) his arm round my shoulder. I really ^{13}.................................... (not like – present) him doing that.

J: No, of course. I ^{14}.. (suppose – present) he ^{15}.. (not believe – present) you're not interested in him.

F: No. And he ^{16}.. (get – present) worse all the time. And I ^{17}.. (get – present) more and more fed up with it. In fact I ^{18}.. (think – present) of leaving.

J: But ^{19}.. (you really want – present) to leave?

F: Well no, but I ^{20}.. (not want – present) to be treated like this. Oh well, he's not here today, thank goodness. He ^{21}.. (attend – present) a conference in Birmingham. I ^{22}.. (expect – present) he ^{23}.. (talk – present) to all the attractive women and ^{24}.. (try – present) to find someone to have dinner with.

J: I can tell you really ^{25}.. (dislike – present) him.

Stative and dynamic verbs

- Dynamic Verbs – activities, e.g. drive, watch, listen.
- Stative Verbs – a state of being and not an activity.
  These includes:
  feelings – love, hate
  thinking/believing – think, suppose, expect
  wants and preferences – want, need, prefer
  perceptions and the senses – look, smell
  possession – have, own, belong
  being/seeming – be, seem, appear
- Some verbs which are normally stative verbs can become dynamic verbs with some change in meaning:

  *I **hope** to see you this weekend.*
  (expresses a wish)

  *I'**m hoping** to see you this weekend.*
  (Quite a common use. In the continuous form, ***hope*** becomes more of a deliberate action now in progress.)

  *I **think** it's a good idea.*
  (expresses opinion)

  *You're very quiet. What **are** you **thinking** about?*
  (question about the activity of thinking)

  *He'**s** a very foolish person.*
  (description of something about his character)

  *He'**s being** very foolish.*
  (description of how he's acting/behaving at the moment)

  *This wine **tastes** good.*
  (describing the effect on one of the senses)

  *Amy'**s tasting** the wine to see if it's all right.*
  (describing the activity of tasting)

Practice

7b Complete the gaps using the verbs from the box. Each verb is used once as a stative verb and once as a dynamic verb. Put the verbs into the appropriate present simple or present continuous form.

see think admire appear have
expect ~~weigh~~ look be represent

1 How much .do. you .weigh.? About 60 kilos.

2 We .... dinner at the moment so I'll phone you back in half an hour if that's O.K.

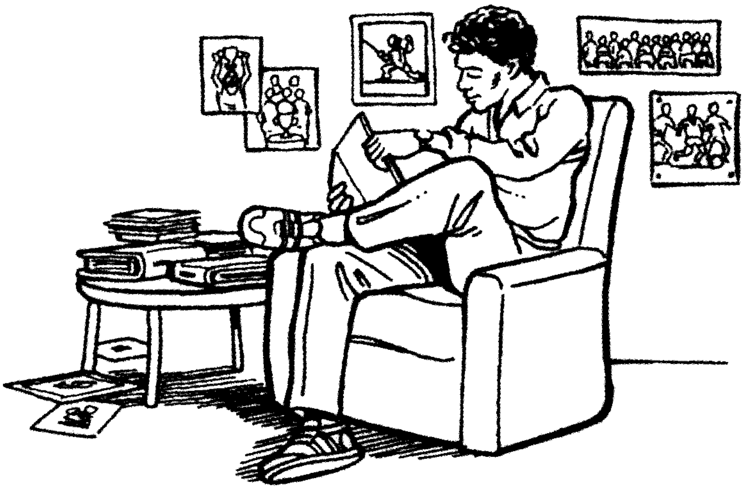

3 Harry's been in his room for ages. He .... at all his old photographs.

4 I really .... Helen. She's an excellent manager.

5 Penelope Fitzgerald .... in a new production of Oliver in London's West End.

6 I'm quite happy for your children to come to the party because I know they .... very well-behaved.

7 The snake in this picture .... the forces of evil.

8 They don't really like living here. They .... of moving.

9 .... you .... that man over there with the grey suit on? He's my brother.

10 I'm really looking forward to this holiday. The hotel .... lovely in the photographs.

11 I can't come out tonight because I .... Paul.

12 I'll do it if I can, but I .... not .... much time today.

13 What .... you .... of the management's new proposals?

15 'What are you doing in here?'
'I .... just .... this painting. I think it's really beautiful.'

16 'Where's the baby?'
'They .... her. Look, there she is on the scales.'

17 I haven't spoken to him much but he .... to be a very nice man.

18 Look at Nick out in the garden. He .... really nice with the younger children.

19 So Peter's still not here. I .... he's forgotten about the meeting. We should start without him.

20 'I hope you've got a good lawyer.'
'Yes, Alison Medley .... me at the trial. She's the best lawyer in town.

8 The perfect aspect

The use of the perfect aspect indicates that the event took place before the time being referred to **or** that it covered a period of time up to the time being referred to. It also shows that this event has some relevance to the time being referred to:
*John's **left**.* (present perfect)
John left before the present time.
He is not here now.

*John **had left** when we got there.* (past perfect)
John left before we got there.
He was not there when we got there.

*John **will have left** when we get there.* (future perfect)
John will leave before we get there.
He will not be there when we get there.

The infinitive can also have a perfect aspect:
*He is sure **to be** there.* (infinitive with ***to***)
*He is sure **to have been** there.* (perfect infinitive with ***to***)
(= It is certain that he has been/was there.)

Modals can be followed by the infinitive or the perfect infinitive:
*Pam may **tell** him the news.* (infinitive)
*Pam may **have told** him the news.* (perfect infinitive)
(= It is possible that Pam has told him the news.)

Practice

8 Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect simple, the past perfect simple or the future perfect simple.

1 The local car factory *has suffered* (suffer) a big drop in sales this year.

2 I .... (work) here for too long. It's time to find a new job.

3 By the time I see my mother tonight, she .... (hear) the news.

4 I was nineteen and studying at university. I .... (be) there for almost a year.

5 It was New Year's Eve but none of the family really wanted to celebrate. They .... (have) a terrible year.

6 They .... (be married) for twenty-five years next month.

7 The doctor came as quickly as she could but the old man .... (already die).

8 She woke up and thought about the night before. It .... (certainly be) a night to remember.

9 Oh no! You look terrible. What .... (happen)?

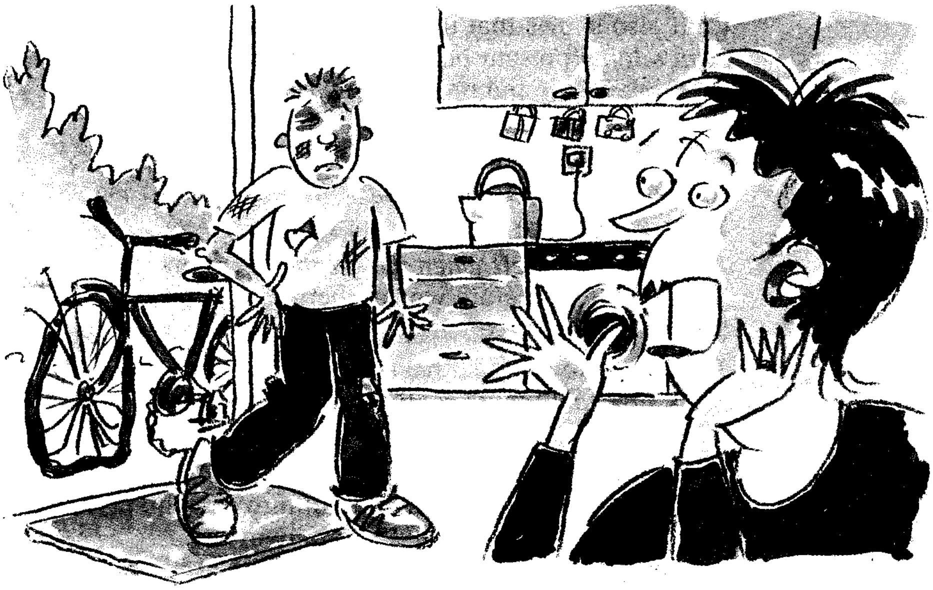

10 When the ship comes back to port next week, the crew .... (be) at sea for six months.

11 Go and help that child. She .... (fall off) her bike.

12 No one in the village had any money because they .... (all lost) their jobs.

13 By the time the summer comes. I .... (finish) all my exams.

14 There was no one at the meeting. Everyone .... (decide) to boycott it.

15 I hear you're looking for a new job. .... (you/find) one?

THE PRESENT TENSE

9 Present Simple and Present Continuous

Present simple

FORM

I work, etc.

Do/Does + infinitive for questions, negatives and short answers

USE

- A regular repeated activity.
  We often use the present simple in this way with adverbs or adverbial phrases of frequency: *sometimes, never, occasionally, every day, on Saturdays, once a week,* etc:
  I ***catch*** *the 8 o'clock train every day.*
  He ***attends*** *the board meeting every Monday.*
- Something that is generally true; a statement of fact:
  Water ***boils*** *at 100 degrees centigrade.*
  Cats ***don't like*** *water.*
  Where ***do*** *you* ***work****?*
- With stative verbs, that is, verbs that describe sentiments, thoughts and states rather than activities:
  Adrian ***needs*** *your help.*
  That coat ***belongs*** *to me.*
- Instructions:
  (We can use the imperative or the present simple for instructions.)
  You ***take*** *the first turning on the left.*
  You ***mix*** *the soup with some cream at the end.*
- In clauses of time and condition, referring to the future. It is used after: *when, if, unless, before, after, until, as soon as, whenever,* etc:
  I'll give her the message when she ***comes*** *back.*
  Will you tell me if you ***see*** *her?*
- Introducing a quotation:
  This book ***says*** *that too much butter and milk is bad for you.*
  The local newspaper ***says*** *that the government should do more to create jobs in the area.*
- In newspaper headlines:
  RIOTS **BREAK OUT** IN CITY CENTRE
  PRESIDENT **RECEIVES** HUGE WELCOME
- For dramatic narrative.
  It is most often used for dramatic narrative in sports commentating when radio and television commentators describe a short action that is completed as the commentator is speaking:
  And Eastwood ***passes*** *the ball to Andrews.*
  And Miller ***takes*** *the lead in the first lap.*

- To give information about a future event:
  It is used in this way with information about timetables, official events and itineraries:
  *The train **leaves** at 3.30 this afternoon.*
  *The Prime Minister **starts** his official visit to China tomorrow.*
  *You **arrive** at the hotel at about 6.00 and **have** your evening meal at 7.30.*

Present continuous

FORM

Verb **to be** + present participle:
*I **am working**,* etc.

USE

- Activity in progress at this moment:
  Where's David?
  *He**'s doing** his homework.*
- An activity that is taking place in the present time period and will continue for a limited time. The activity may or may not be in progress at the moment of speaking.
  The present continuous is often used in this way with *these days, this week, today, this month,* etc:

  *'And what**'s** Linda **doing** these days?'*
  *'She**'s doing** a course in engineering.'*
  (Linda may not be studying engineering at this minute.)

  *The decorator**'s painting** the children's bedrooms this week so they**'re sleeping** in the living room.*
  (The decorators may not be painting at this moment and the children may not be sleeping.)
- A situation that is in the process of changing:
  *Venice **is falling** into the sea.*
  *The number of cars on the road **is increasing** rapidly each year.*
- A future intention with a verb of motion:
  *We**'re driving** up to Scotland next week.*
  *He**'s flying** back on Saturday.*

Practice

9a Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or present continuous.

1 Debbie ..*works*.. (work) as an administrator at the university. She .... (organise) all the timetables and teaching schedules. She .... (work) very long hours at the moment because it's the start of the academic year but she .... (go) on a short holiday at the end of the month.

2 Simon and Sylvia .... (stay) in a cottage in the Yorkshire Dales this month. The cottage .... (belong) to a cousin of Sylvia's but the cousin is away: she .... (cycle) around Norfolk for a few weeks. Simon and Sylvia often .... (use) the cottage when Sylvia's cousin is away. They really .... (enjoy) being in the middle of the countryside.

3 The International School for Languages .... (do) very well at the moment. About two hundred students .... (take) evening classes this term. Many of them .... (need) to learn a new language to improve their job prospects but some of them .... (learn) a new language purely for pleasure. The European languages .... (be) very popular but Japanese and Russian .... (get) more popular too. The school .... (provide) good learning facilities and .... (organise) a range of study tours.

4 The world population .... (still increase) rapidly. Many people in the world .... (already starve) and many more .... (suffer) from malnutrition. The population .... (grow) fastest in the poorest countries where people .... (need) to have children to look after them in their old age and where many of their children .... (die) at a very young age.

9b Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or present continuous. Maggie and Jill, two friends, are talking at a party.

M: Jill, how nice to see you. I [1]..don't think.. (not think) we've seen each other since that party at Jim's last year. How [2].. (you/get on)?

J: Oh, fine. Everything [3].. (go) very well.

M: [4].. (you still/go out) with Dave?

J: No, I'm not, but I [5].. (go out) with someone called Jamie: I met him at my pottery class.

M: Is he here now?

J: Yes look, he's over there. He [6].. (talk) to Charlotte.

M: Oh yes, I [7].. (see) him. [8].. (he/wear) a yellow jumper?

J: Yes, that's him.

M: Oh, he [9].. (look) really nice.

J: He is. I'll introduce you to him when he [10].. (come) over here. So what about you? How [11].. (life/treat) you?

M: Not too badly. I [12].. (still/work) at that awful cafe. I [13].. (keep) looking for other jobs but the problem is that I [14].. (feel) so tired when I [15].. (get in) that I [16].. (not have) much energy to look through all the job ads and everything. Oh well, I [17].. (suppose) something else will come up soon.

J: I [18].. (hope) so. Oh look, Jamie
[19].. (come over) here.
[20].. (you/want) to meet him?

M: Oh yes.

THE PAST TENSE

10 Past Simple and Past Continuous

Past simple

FORM

Positive: past simple form of verb:	*I **arrived**, etc.* (regular) *I **came**, etc.* (irregular)
Negative and question form: **did** + infinitive	
Short answer: **did**	

USE

- Completed actions.
  To talk about events and actions in the past that are now finished.
  The past simple refers to the complete event. The time or approximate time that the event took place is stated or is understood from the context. It may be in the very recent past:
  *Your mother **phoned** a few minutes ago.*
  *Who **opened** this window?*

  or it may be in the more distant past:
  *I never **learnt** to swim as a child.*

- Past habit or regular event.
  To talk about a regular, repeated or habitual event:
  *We **went out** for a meal every evening on holiday.*
  *He **got up** at 7 o'clock every morning to go to work.*

  or a past habit or situation of some duration:
  *He **smoked** for most of his life.*
  *She **worked** there for twenty years.*

- Past situation at a point in time.
  With stative verbs, to talk about a situation that existed at a certain time in the past:
  *In 1950, there **were** fewer than 50 million cars in use around the world.*
  *At the time, I **had** a poorly-paid job in the local shop.*

Past continuous

FORM

was/were + present participle: *I **was studying**,* etc.

USE

- Used in conjunction with the past simple to describe an action or event that started before the event in the past simple and was in progress when the event in the past simple occurred:
  *They **were watching** a film when we arrived.*
  *She **was studying** law when the war started.*
- To describe an action, event or situation that was in progress at a specified time in the past:
  *In 1982, we **were living** in a small flat in Bristol.*
  *In May of last year, she **was studying** hard for her final exams.*
  *At 6 o'clock this morning, I **was walking** along the beach.*
- Used with ***while*** to describe two actions that were in progress at the same time:
  *While I **was driving** along this morning, I **was thinking** about what you'd said.*
  *He **was cooking** the dinner while she **was talking** to him.*
- With adverbials beginning with *all* e.g. ***all night, all morning, all day yesterday,*** to show that an action or event was in progress throughout this time:
  *I **was watching** television all evening.*
  ***Were** you **working** all weekend?*
- To describe the background and set the scene for a narrative in the past:
  *The wind **was blowing** and the rain **was beating** down. John Snell **was standing** at the bus stop shivering. He **was trying** to imagine being at home sitting by a warm fire. Finally he saw the headlights of the bus approaching from the distance.*

Contrast: past continuous versus past simple

The past simple describes a complete event in the past. The past continuous does not describe the complete event, it describes the event in progress, at some time between its beginning and its end.

Stative verbs, that is verbs that describe thoughts, sentiments and states, cannot normally be put into the continuous form. (See p. 29)

Look at the difference between these sentences:

*He **was cooking** the dinner when I arrived.*
(He started cooking the dinner before my arrival and the cooking was in progress at the time of my arrival.)
*He **cooked** the dinner when I arrived.*
(I arrived and then he cooked the dinner. Two complete events.)

*I **was reading** a book about astrology last night.*
(The reading of the book was in progress last night. The past continuous does not describe the complete event so we assume that the book was not finished last night.)
***I read** a book about astrology last night.*
(I read the whole book from beginning to end last night.)

*It **was raining** all night.*
(The rain was in progress throughout the night. The use of the past continuous emphasizes the continuity and duration of the event.)
*It **rained** all night.*
(It rained from the beginning of the night to the end of the night. The rain is viewed as one single, complete event.)

*While I **was making** the dinner, the children **were watching** television.*
(Two activities in progress at the same time.)
*While I **made** the dinner, the children **watched** television.*
(Two complete events that happened at the same time.)

*I **was having** a bath at 8 o'clock.*
(The bath started before 8 o'clock and was still in progress at 8 o'clock.)
*I **had** a bath at 8 o'clock.*
(This describes the complete event. It started at 8 o'clock.)

Practice

10a Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or past continuous.

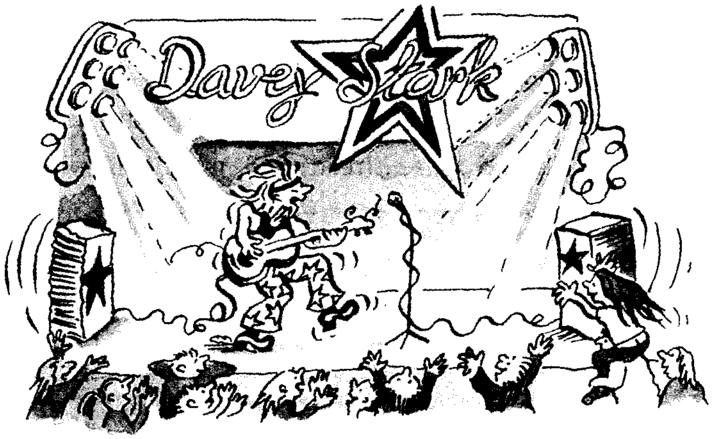

Here he ^{1}.was. (be), Davey Stark, the big rock star. It ^{2}........................... (be) the end of an exhausting two-hour concert. The fans ^{3}........................... (scream) and ^{4}........................... (shout). They ^{5}........................... (want) Davey, their hero. His face ^{6}........................... (pour) with sweat, his hair ^{7}........................... (drip) and his heart ^{8}........................... (thump) violently. But he ^{9}........................... (love) these moments at the end of a concert. He always ^{10}........................... (feel) powerful and in control. He ^{11}........................... (decide) to do one more song for the crowd: one of his most popular. When he

12.......................... (start) singing, the crowd 13.......................... (go) wild. By the end of the song, they 14.......................... (all/dance) and 15.......................... (clap) their hands. When Davey 16.......................... (leave) the stage, he 17.......................... (be) exhausted but exhilarated. But when he 18.......................... (get back) to the dressing room, he 19.......................... (open) the door and 20.......................... (see) that two men 21.......................... (wait) for him. They 22.......................... (lock) the door behind Davey. He 23.......................... (shout) for his bodyguard Bernard, but no-one 24.......................... (come). The two men 25.......................... (tie) his hands behind his back, 26.......................... (blindfold) and 27.......................... (gag) him. Davey 28.......................... (can hear) Bernard in the next room. Bernard 29.......................... (talk) to someone and he 30.......................... (say) terrible things about Davey. He 31.......................... (say) that Davey 32.......................... (deserve) it. 33.......................... (Deserve) what? What 34.......................... (he/mean)? What 35.......................... (go on)? Why 36.......................... (not someone tell) him what 37.......................... (happen)?

10b Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or past continuous.

1 It 1.happened. (happen) in June 1985. It 2.......................... (be) summer and we 3.......................... (all/lie out) in the garden. My mother 4.......................... (read) and my uncle 5.......................... (just/doze) in the sun. We children 6.......................... (look for) worms and insects. And then he 7.......................... (arrive). He 8.......................... (be) a tall, handsome man with piercing blue eyes and he 9.......................... (look) straight at my mother. Her face 10.......................... (go) pale and her eyes 11.......................... (open) wide with shock.
'Arthur, I 12.......................... (think) you 13.......................... (be) dead,' she 14.......................... (say) in a kind of whisper.

2 A: I 15.......................... (phone) you at about 9 o'clock this morning but you 16.......................... (not answer). What 17.......................... (you/do)?
B: Well, I 18.......................... (hear) the phone but I 19.......................... (have) a shower and I 20.......................... (can not) get out in time to answer it. Anyway, what 21.......................... (you/want)?

A: Well, last night I [22]............................ (clear out) that old desk you [23]............................ (give) me when I [24]............................ (come across) a pile of old letters with a red ribbon round them.

B: My letters?

A: Yes, they [25]............................ (be addressed) to you. And they [26]............................ (all/smell) of perfume, a man's perfume.

3 Last night Jake [27]............................ (wake up) at about 3 a.m. As soon as he [28]............................ (wake up), he [29]............................ (listen out) for strange noises but he [30]............................ (not hear) any. His father [31]............................ (snore) in the next room, some central heating pipes [32]............................ (make) a bit of a noise and a tap [33]............................ (drip) in the bathroom. It was all as usual. Jake [34]............................ (open) the window and [35]............................ (look) outside. The moon [36]............................ (be) full and it [37]............................ (shine) brightly. Jake [38]............................ (think) he [39]............................ (see) an owl in one of the trees. He [40]...................... .... (can certainly hear) one. But then he [41]............................ (see) something different. A man – no, it [42]............................ (be) a woman. She [43]............................ (wear) white and she [44]............................ (hide) behind a tree. Suddenly she [45]............................ (run) towards the house.

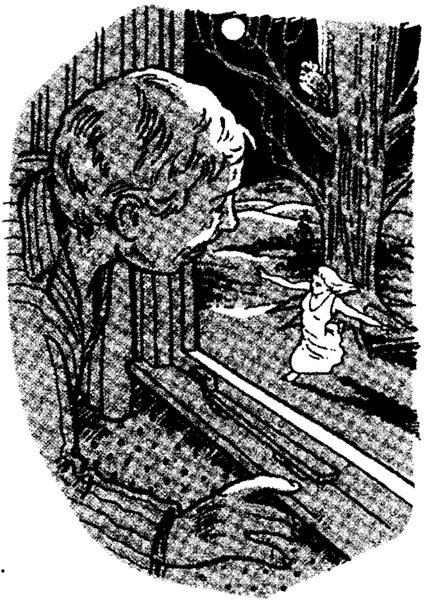

TENSES WITH THE PERFECT ASPECT

11 Present Perfect Simple and Present Perfect Continuous

Present perfect simple

FORM

have ('ve) / has ('s) + *past participle: I'****ve decided****,* etc.

USE

The present perfect shows a relationship between past time and present time. It can be used in the following ways:

A To describe an action that happened at an indefinite time before the present. For example:

- To refer to things that people have done and experiences they have had. Its connection with the present is that the experience is part of that person in the present:
  *He'****s taught*** *English in five different countries.*
  Have *you* ***been*** *round the National Gallery?*
  *I'****ve been*** *to Spain but I* ***haven't been*** *to Italy.*
- When there is very specific evidence in the present of the event that took place in the past:
  *Oh, you'****ve had*** *a haircut.*
  *I see they'****ve knocked down*** *the old cinema in the centre of town.*
- Often in news reporting. The use of the present perfect makes the event seem more immediate and of direct relevance to the present:
  At least twenty people ***have been killed*** *in a motorway crash.*
  The Prime Minister ***has announced*** *that taxes are to increase from the beginning of next year.*
- After the construction of ***to be*** (in the present) + ordinal or superlative:
  *This is the first time I'****ve been*** *to London.*
  *She is the most honest person I'****ve*** *ever* ***met****.*

B With adverbials.

Used with adverbials that show a connection between the past and the present, e.g. *so far, up to now, lately, already, yet, just*:
*She'****s*** *already* ***done*** *her homework.*
*I'****ve seen*** *Jane a lot lately.*
These letters ***have*** *just* ***arrived****.*

C With a time reference.

Used with reference to a period of time that is still continuing in the present, e.g. *this morning, this afternoon, today, this week, this month, this year, this century*:
*I'****ve read*** *two books this week.*
*They'****ve been*** *on holiday twice this year.*

D In clauses of time and condition.
Can be used in clauses of time and condition when, at a certain point in the future, the event will be in the past:
*I'll give you back your ring when **I've found** it.*
*I'll go swimming with you on Monday if **I've recovered** from this cold.*
*Do you think I could borrow that book after **you've finished** reading it?*

E With ***since***, ***for*** and ***how long*** to describe the duration of an activity or situation that started in the past and continues up to the present and possible into the future:
*She**'s been** away from home for six months.*
*Hello, I **haven't seen** you for ages.*
*He**'s lived** there since he was a child.*
*How long **have** you **had** this problem?*

Present perfect continuous

USE

A To refer to an activity which has been taking place in the recent period up to the present. The activity may have finished shortly before the moment of speaking or finish at the moment of speaking in the present:
*'You look tired. What **have** you **been doing**?'*
*'I**'ve been playing** football.'*

'Have you had a good evening?'
*'Well, I**'ve been watching** this film on television but it's rubbish so I think I'll turn it off now.'*

*They**'ve been going** out a lot recently.*

B With ***since***, ***for*** and ***how long*** to refer to an activity which started in the past and continues up to the present and possibly into the future. Also used with phrases starting with ***all*** (*all day, all night, all morning*), phrases which emphasize the duration of the activity:
*They**'ve been studying** English for three years.*
*John**'s been looking** for a job since he finished university.*
*How long **have** you **been feeling** so depressed?*
*She**'s been working** all day.*

Contrast: present perfect simple versus present perfect continuous

A With no time reference:
*I**'ve been reading** that book.*
(Describes the activity. The book is not finished.)
*I**'ve read** that book.*
(Describes the completion of an event. The book is finished.)

*She**'s been running**.*
(Describes the activity of running.)
*She**'s run** three miles.*
(This describes the completion of the three miles. We cannot say ~~*She's been running three miles*~~.)

*He's **written** a book about wind-surfing.*
(Completed at an unspecified time in the past.)
*He's **been writing** a book about wind-surfing.*
(Describes his recent activity.)

B With a time reference:

We can use both the present perfect simple and the present perfect continuous to describe an activity that started in the past and continues up to the present and possibly into the future:
*They'**ve been studying** English for three years.*
*They'**ve studied** English for three years.*
(Both these sentences are correct. The present perfect continuous puts more emphasis on the continuity of the activity.)

We can use the present perfect simple and the present perfect continuous with ***lately*** and ***recently***:
*I'**ve been working** really hard lately.*
(The activity of working is important.)
*I'**ve done** a lot of work lately.*
(The completion of a lot of work is important.)

Practice

11a Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect simple or present perfect continuous.

Tim Bryant, a magazine journalist, is interviewing Margaret Rodwell, the founder of a successful company.

TB: So why do you think your company ^{1}.*has been*. (be) so successful?

MR: Well, our products ^{2}.. (fill) a large gap in the market and I think one of the most important things is that we ^{3}.. (always listen) to our clients and we ^{4}.. (act) on their comments and suggestions.

TB: And what's a typical day for you?

MR: Well, take today for example. I ^{5}.. (interview) candidates for a marketing executive post.

TB: And how many ^{6}.. (you/interview)?

MR: Er, I ^{7}.. (interview) four so far. And I ^{8}.. (talk) to clients on the phone on and off all day. I seem to spend a lot of time on the phone. I ^{9}.. (discuss) some new ideas with them for the transportation and delivery of our products.

TB: Mm, it sounds like a very busy day.

MR: Oh, that's only part of it. I [10].. (have) two meetings, one with Union representatives and one with departmental heads. And I [11].. (also work) on a proposal for a new marketing strategy.

TB: And it's not two o'clock yet!

MR: No, but of course I [12].. (be) here since seven o'clock this morning.

TB: Gosh. And, I hope you don't mind my mentioning this Ms Rodwell, but some rumours [13].. (circulate) about your possible engagement to Mr Grimaldi, the banker.

MR: No, there will be no engagement, though it's true that Mr Grimaldi and I [14].. (see) each other. That's no secret.

TB: When you get the time, I suppose. And is it also true that you [15].. (learn) Russian with a view to introducing your products there?

MR: Yes, I have, but I [16].. (not learn) much yet; there's still a long way for me to go.

11b Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect simple or present perfect continuous.

1A: You look hot. What [1]*have you been doing* (you/do)?

B: I [2].. (run).

A: Running! In this heat? How far [3].. (you/run)?

B: About four miles.

2A: What's the problem? You look a bit preoccupied.

B: Yes, I [4].. (think) about Helen.

A: Why? Is there something wrong with her?

B: Well, she [5].. (act) so strangely lately.

A: In what way?

B: Well, some days when she arrives at work, I know that she [6].. (cry). And she [7].. (make) private calls when we're all out at lunch. I just think that something's going on.

A: [8].. (you/talk) to her about it yet?

B: Yes, a few times, and each time she [9].. (say) that there's nothing wrong, but I'm not so sure.

3A: Where [10].. (you/be), Simon?

B: I [11].. (talk) to Mark on the phone. He says he [12].. (try) to phone us all day.

A: Well I [13].. (be) in most of the day but I [14].. (not hear) the phone.

B: That's strange. But anyway, he [15].. (have) a phone call from Jackie's mother and Jackie [16].. (be) in some kind of accident. It's nothing very serious but she's got to stay in hospital overnight.

A: Oh dear. [17].. (she/break) any bones?

B: I'm not quite sure how badly she [18].. (be hurt) but I think we should go and see her tonight.

12 Contrast: present perfect simple versus past simple

*I'**ve been** to Spain and Italy.*
(indefinite time)
*I **went** to Spain a couple of years ago and I **visited** Italy a few times as a child.*
(specific time)

***Have** you **been** busy this morning?*
(It is still the morning now.)
***Were** you busy this morning?*
(This morning is now the finished past.)

***Have** you had a good holiday?*
(You have just returned.)
***Did** you **have** a good holiday?*
(Your holiday finished some time before the question.)

*She'**s starred** in a lot of major films.*
(She is still alive and acting.)
*She **starred** in a lot of major films.*
(Her acting career is finished or she's dead.)

*He'**s been** in the army for fifteen years.*
(And he is still in the army now.)
*He **was** in the army for fifteen years.*
(But he is no longer in the army. The time period of fifteen years finished in the past.)

Practice

12a Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple, present perfect simple or present perfect continuous.

Jake and Michael, two friends, are talking.

J: Hello, I [1] haven't seen (not see) you for ages.

M: No, it must be about two years since we last [2].. (meet). What [3].. (you/do) with yourself?

J: I [4].. (do) all sorts of things. Life [5].. (be) very busy lately. I [6].. (start) a new job at the sailing centre.

M: Really! Doing what?

J: Well, I [7].. (teach) beginners' courses to school groups this term but when those [8].. (finish), I'll be teaching more advanced groups on holiday courses.

M: That sounds great. What about your old job at the tourist office then?

J: Well, I [9].. (work) there for ten years and I quite [10].. (enjoy) the job but I [11].. (want) to do something different. I [12].. (always/enjoy) sailing in my spare time so I [13].. (think) it would be nice to do it for a job.

M: So how long [14].. (you/be) at the sailing centre?

J: For about two months now. I'm sure I [15].. (do) the right thing. It's a really enjoyable job. And what about you?

M: Well, I'm still at the Rembrandt Hotel. I [16].. (work) there for fifteen years now. But I [17].. (have) a promotion so that's good. They [18].. (give) me the job of head receptionist.

J: Oh, that's good news.

M: Yes, it [19].. (make) me feel much better about work. I mean, I [20].. (do) a lot of different jobs at the hotel but I [21].. (never have) a job with this much responsibility before. I [22].. (work) on the reception desk for four years when I [23].. (start) at the hotel – that was before they [24].. (move) me into the office – but I [25].. (be) only a junior receptionist then so I just [26].. (do) what I [27].. (be told) to do.

J: So when [28].. (you/get) the new job?

M: A month ago, after I [29].. (pass) my intermediate exams in Spanish and German at the college. Did you know I [30].. (do) language evening classes at the college for a while now?

J: No, I didn't realize.

M: Yes, I [31].. (decide) that I [32].. (cannot get) any further at work without learning some languages.

A: And so you did! What a good idea.

12b In your notebook, rewrite the following passages putting the verbs into the present perfect simple or past simple.

News [1]*has just come in* (just come in) that there [2]..... (be) an air crash somewhere off the south coast of England. There [3]..... (be) 120 passengers and crew on the plane and it is understood that no survivors [4]..... (be found). Apparently the plane [5]..... (go) mysteriously out of control and [6]..... (plunge) into the sea. Relatives of most of the passengers and crew [7]..... (now be informed) and many of them [8]..... (set off) for the sea rescue base, but they [9]..... (not be given) much hope. Most of the passengers [10]..... (be) on business.

Despite the problems that the government [11]..... (have) in the last two years, it [12]..... (somehow manage) to stay in power. There [13]..... (be) a number of scandals involving government ministers, including one rumour about the Prime Minister himself. It is said that he [14]..... (promise) gifts to certain Members of Parliament in exchange for their vote before he [15]..... (be elected) leader. In spite of all this, the government [16]..... (maintain) its position in Parliament and [17]..... (claim) that this [18]..... (be) the most successful term of office that a government [19]..... (ever have). This is rather surprising as they [20]..... (come) to power with only a small majority.

13 Past Perfect Simple

The past perfect simple is used to refer to a past time which preceded the past time already being referred to.
It is used in combination with other past tenses to clarify the sequence of events in a past narrative.

FORM

had ('d) + *past participle: I **had finished**,* etc.

USE

- In sentences which have a ***when*** + past simple clause.
  It is used to make it clear that the event in the past perfect came before the event in the past simple:
  *When I got to the station, the train **had left**.*
  (The train left before I got to the station.)

  Compare with:
  When I got to the station, the train left.
  (The train left as I arrived or immediately after my arrival.)
- In ***when*** clauses.
  It is used when we need to make it clear that the event in the **when** clause was completed before the event in the past simple started:
  *When I **had read** the letter, I started to cry.*
  (I finished the letter before I started to cry.)

  Compare with:
  When I read the letter, I started to cry.
  (I started to cry after I started reading the letter.)

  We can also use the past perfect in this way with ***as soon as***, ***the moment***, ***immediately***:
  *As soon as I **had told** her the news, I regretted it.*

Note: As the action in a ***when*** + past simple clause happens just before the other past simple clause, it is not generally necessary to use the past perfect in the ***when*** clause. We only do this when we need to make it clear that the event in the ***when*** clause was completed before the event in the past simple clause started.

- In ***after*** clauses:
  *After we **had passed** our exams, we went out to celebrate.*

  We can also say:
  After we passed our exams, we went out to celebrate.

  The use of the past perfect merely emphasizes the fact that the event in the ***after*** clause preceded the other event. It is correct to use either the past perfect or the past simple in ***after*** clauses.
- As the equivalent of the present perfect.
  The present perfect looks back from the past:
  Ann and Michael have just got married.
  *It was June 1991. Ann and Michael **had just got married**.*
  Jeremy's 21 now and he's been in a wheelchair since he was 10.
  *Jeremy was 21 and he **had been** in a wheelchair since he was 10.*
  (Note that we use ***was*** in the *since* clause in both sentences.)

- As the equivalent of the past simple. We use it when we want to narrate events looking back from a point in the past. Unlike the present perfect, the past perfect can be used with a specific time reference:

  Jane MacDonald is now 28. She started working for the company when she was eighteen. She quickly climbed the career ladder and is now the youngest managing director the company has ever appointed.

  *Jane MacDonald was then 28. She **had started** working for the company when she was eighteen. She **had** quickly **climbed** the career ladder and is now the youngest managing director the company has ever appointed.*

Notes

- The verb in the *when* clause remains in the past simple when the main verb is in the past perfect: *She had started working for the company when she **was** eighteen.*
- For reasons of style, the narration is not likely to continue for very long in the past perfect. The story usually returns quite quickly to the main time reference point, which is in the past simple.
- If we narrate the events in the order in which they occurred, there is no need for the past perfect: *Jane MacDonald started working for the company when she **was** eighteen. She quickly **climbed** the career ladder and **became** the youngest ever managing director at the age of 28.*

- In reported speech:
  A statement or question in the present perfect is usually put into the past perfect in reported speech:
  I've had a lovely time
  *She said she **had had** a lovely time.*

  A statement or question in the past simple can be put into the past perfect or remain in the past simple in reported speech:
  I tried to phone you earlier.
  *He said that he **had tried** to phone me earlier.*
  or *He said that he tried to phone me earlier.*

- After *if, wish, if only:*
  *If I **had known** you were at home, I would have called you.*
  *I expect you wish you **had** never **met** him.*
  *If only they **had stayed** at home.*

Practice

13a Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or past perfect simple.

1 A: I'm sorry we're late. We ¹..missed. (miss) the train.

B: How ²............................ (that/happen)?

A: Well, I ³............................ (get) the times wrong and when we ⁴............................ (arrive) at the station, the train ⁵............................ (just leave).

2 A: 6............................ (you/have) a good meal at Hilary's?

B: Well no, it 7............................ (be) very embarrassing. When we 8............................ (arrive), we 9............................ (know) immediately that she 10............................ (forget) about the whole thing.

A: So what 11............................ (she/do)?

B: Well, she 12............................ (pretend) that she 13............................ (not forget) and 14............................ (say) that the meal 15............................ (not be) ready because she 16............................ (get) home from work very late.

A: Oh no, how awful!

3 It 17............................ (be) a beautiful morning. It 18............................ (rain) in the night and so the ground 19............................ (be) fresh and clean and it 20............................ (smell) wonderful. None of the Taylor family 21............................ (be) awake though. They 22............................ (all go) to bed very late the night before. Their Australian cousin 23............................ (arrive) unexpectedly that evening and they 24............................ (sit up) talking most of the night. Although it 25............................ (be) now 8 o'clock in the morning, they 26............................ (only be) in bed for about two hours.

13b Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or past perfect simple.

James 1..sat. (sit) outside the office waiting for the interview. He 2............................ (feel) so nervous that he 3............................ (not know) what to do with himself. The person who 4............................ (go in) before him 5............................ (be) in there for nearly an hour. And she 6............................ (look) so confident when she 7............................ (go) in. Not like James. He 8............................ (feel) sure that she 9............................ (already get) the job. The problem 10............................ (be) that he 11............................ (want) this job so much. It 12............................ (mean) everything to him. He 13............................ (think) about it such a lot before the day of the interview. He 14............................ (imagine) himself performing brilliantly at the interview and being offered the job immediately. But now here he 15............................ (be) feeling terrible. He 16.................................... (cannot remember) all those things he 17............................ (plan) to say. At that moment, he 18............................

(almost decide) to get up and leave. But no - he [19]............................ (have to do) this. He [20]............................ (spend) so much time thinking about it that he [21].................................... (cannot give up) like that. His hands [22]............................ (be) hot and sticky and his mouth [23]............................ (feel) dry. Finally the door of the office [24]............................ (open). The woman who [25]............................ (go in) an hour earlier [26]............................ (come out) looking very pleased with herself. She [27]............................ (smile) sympathetically at James. At that moment James [28]............................ (hate) her. The managing director then [29]............................ (appear) at the office door. 'Would you like to come in now, Mr Davis? I'm sorry to have kept you waiting.' James [30]............................ (suddenly wish) that he [31]............................ (go) home after all. He [32]............................ (get up), legs shaking and forehead sweating and [33]............................ (wonder) whether he [34]............................ (look) as terrified as he [35]............................ (feel).

14 Past Perfect Continuous

FORM

had ('d) been + *present participle: I* ***had been*** *running,* etc.

USE

The past perfect continuous is the equivalent of the present perfect continuous. The present perfect continuous describes an activity looking back from the present and the past perfect continuous describes an activity looking back from the past:

I'm very tired. I've been working all day.
I was very tired. I ***had been working*** *all day.*

Why are you so wet? What have you been doing?
Why were you so wet? What ***had*** *you* ***been doing****?*

The dog from next door has been barking for two hours.
It was 1 o'clock and the dog from next door ***had been barking*** *for two hours.*

'It's been raining here for days,' she said.
She said it ***had been raining*** *there for days.*
(Present perfect continuous becomes past perfect continuous in reported speech.)

Practice

14 In your notebook, rewrite the following passage, making all the necessary tense changes.

It's 10 o'clock at night. The offices of 'The Daily News' are buzzing with excitement. The deadline for the paper is in half an hour and they are frantically trying to finish the front page. Everyone has been working all evening without a break. Some of the journalists have been at the office since early morning. They have all been trying to get an exclusive story, to find out something that no other journalist has discovered. The main story is a big one. The Prime Minister has resigned. Everyone knows that his government has had lots of problems in the last year but his resignation is nonetheless a big surprise. Rumours have been going round all day about the real reasons for the announcement. Some say that he has been involved in some financial scandal. Others say that he has been seeing another woman. All the papers have been working all day to get the best story. And they've been doing their best to find out what the other papers have said. The whole day has been very tense. Suddenly the editor asks everyone to be quiet. There is a telephone call from the Prime Minister's office.

Example: *It was 10 o'clock at night. The offices of 'The Daily News' were buzzing with excitement.*

FUTURE FORMS

15 The *be going to* future and the Present Continuous as future

The *be going to* future

We can express the future with ***be going*** + ***to***-infinitive. This is often referred to as the ***going to*** or ***be going to*** future.

FORM

verb **to be** + **going** + ***to***-infinitive: ***I'm going to stay,*** etc.

USE

- To express intention. The speaker had the intention before the time of speaking:
  I'm going to visit *Bob tomorrow.*
- To make a prediction based on present evidence:
  *The sun's going down. It**'s going to be** dark in half an hour.*

Present continuous as future

We can use the present continuous to refer to the future. A future time reference must be stated or be clear from the context.

USE

- To describe arrangements. We use it to talk about the future when the plans have been made. It is quite informal and is used to describe personal arrangements such as social activities rather than official plans. As it refers to personal arrangements, the subject of the verb should be a person or people and not a thing:
  I'm meeting *Charlotte for lunch tomorrow.*

Contrast: *be going to* future versus present continuous as future

- a) ***I'm going to visit*** *my aunt in hospital tomorrow.*
  b) ***I'm visiting*** *my aunt in hospital tomorrow.*

  Both these sentences are correct and the difference between them is slight. Sentence a) places more emphasis on the **intention** and sentence b) places more emphasis on the **arrangement**.
  We do not generally use the present continuous with activities that do not involve the making of an arrangement or plan. We can say: *'I'm going to write a letter to my parents tonight.'* (the intention is important) but we do not say: *'I'm writing a letter to my parents tonight.'* (no arrangement is required).

  We tend to avoid using verbs of motion, e.g. ***to go*** and ***to come*** in the ***be going to*** future and prefer instead to use the present continuous with these verbs:
  *We**'re going** to the theatre tonight.*

- a) *Look at that helicopter coming down. It's **going to land** in a minute.*
  b) *Look at that helicopter coming down. ~~It's landing in a minute~~.*

  Sentence a) is correct but sentence b) is not possible. We do not use the present continuous to make a prediction based on present evidence.

- We can only use the present continuous as future with a future time reference or where the future time reference is clear from the context. Where this is not the case, we use the ***be going to*** future:
  *He's **having** a swim.* (= now, if there is no time reference)
  *He's **going to have** a swim.* (in the future)

- Verbs not normally used in the continuous are not used in the present continuous as future. We cannot say: *~~I'm needing some help next week~~*.
  We can sometimes use verbs not normally used in the continuous with the ***be going to*** future. This does not happen very often as these verbs do not describe events that we normally predict or intend. We can say:
  *I'm **going to need** some help next week.*

Practice

15 In your notebook, rewrite the dialogue, substituting the verbs in the ***be going to*** future with the present continuous as future where this is possible.

A: [1]Are you going to come to the meeting tomorrow about the proposed staff cuts?
B: Oh yes, definitely.
A: Have you read the report about the cuts?
B: No, not yet. [2]I'm going to read it tonight. What does it say?
A: Well, [3]there are going to be quite a few cuts in this department.
B: Oh no. I wonder [4]who's going to lose their job.
A: I don't know. I think [5]they're going to ask people if they want to take voluntary redundancy.
B: Well, I certainly don't want that. [6]We're going to move into a new flat next month and the rent's quite high. I don't know [7]what's going to happen if I lose my job.
A: Oh, don't worry about it too much. I'm sure [8]everything's going to be all right. Look, why don't we go out for drink after work.
B: I can't. [9]I'm going to meet some friends for a meal and then [10]we're going to go to the cinema.
A: Well what about tomorrow night? [11]Are you going to go out then?
B: No, [12]I'm not going to do anything.
A: So let's go out after the meeting.
B: OK. Good idea.

Example:
1 Are you coming ...

16 Future with *will*

This is also referred to as the future simple or simple future tense.

FORM

will ('ll) + *bare infinitive: I* ***will (I'll) go***, etc.
Short form of **will not: won't**

USE

- To make a statement of fact or a prediction about the future:
  Sam ***will be*** *here tomorrow.*
  Tonight's programme ***will be*** *very interesting.*
- To make formal announcements of future plans and to present weather forecasts. It is therefore often used in newspapers and on the television and radio:
  The new President ***will move*** *into the White House tomorrow.*
  Rain ***will continue*** *throughout the day.*
- To express hopes, expectations, thoughts about the future. Used after verbs like: *assume, believe, doubt, expect, hope, reckon, suppose, think* and *be sure/afraid* and with adverbs like *perhaps, possibly, probably, definitely*:
  *I expect they****'ll be*** *here soon.*
  *Do you think she****'ll bring*** *her boyfriend?*
- In sentences containing clauses of condition or time:
  *If I get that job, I****'ll go*** *out and celebrate.*
  *I****'ll phone*** *you when I get there.*
- To express an intention when the decision is made at the time of speaking:
  A: *There isn't any milk left.*
  B: *Oh, isn't there? I****'ll get*** *some in town. I'm going there later on.*
- To express the idea of willingness:
  *I****'ll do*** *it for you, I promise.* (promise)
  Will *you* ***open*** *the window, please?* (request)
  *I****'ll look after*** *the children for you.* (offer)
  He ***won't come*** *with me.* (refusal)
  *Yes, I****'ll come*** *with you.* (agreement)
  *I****'ll*** *definitely* ***tell*** *him the truth this time.* (determination)
  *Stop that or I****'ll call*** *the police.* (threat)
- To make offers or suggestions or to ask for suggestions, advice, instructions. Use ***Shall I/we*** ... in the question form:
  Shall *I* ***help*** *you with that?* (offer)
  Shall *we* ***invite*** *them round for dinner?* (suggestion)
  What ***shall*** *I* ***do****?*
  Shall *we* ***come*** *round after dinner?*

Notes
The use of ***shall***

- In spoken English, **shall** is most often used in the question form with ***I*** or ***we*** to make offers or suggestions or to ask for suggestions, advice, instructions:
  Shall *I come with you?*
  What ***shall*** *we do tomorrow?*

- ***Shall*** is occasionally used to express strong determination about oneself or someone else:
  I ***shall*** *go anyway. I don't care what you think.*
  I ***shan't*** *let him bully me.*
  You ***shall*** *have whatever you want.*

- ***Shall*** can be used in the same way as ***will*** in the first person but ***will*** is more common. In spoken English, the contraction ***'ll*** is the most common.
  Shall is used more frequently in formal written English than in informal written or spoken English:
  We ***shall*** *make every effort to answer your enquiry as soon as possible.*
  I ***shall*** *be at the airport to meet you in person.*

- Short form of ***shall not***: ***shan't.***

Practice

16 Complete the following sentences with ***will/'ll*** or ***shall/'ll*** and a verb from the box.

offer make tell have ~~buy~~ drop wash announce
receive be sentenced phone carry be invite go

1 I'm sorry about losing that book. I.'ll buy.. you another one next week.
2 I .... one of those cases for you.
3 The temperature .... significantly during the afternoon.
4 .... you .... me when you get the news? You've got my number haven't you?
5 The Chancellor .... the details of the budget at 10 o'clock tomorrow.
6 .... we .... her the truth about what happened?
7 I expect they .... here soon.
8 You .... your exam results by post during the first few days of August.
9 I .... not .... them here again, whatever you say.

10 If he is found guilty, he .... to life imprisonment.

11 I .... never .... the same mistake again.

12 .... we .... for a swim this afternoon?

13 They definitely .... not .... me the job: I had a terrible interview.

14 .... I .... these plates?

15 I'm determined that he .... everything he wants.

17 Contrast: *be going to* versus *will*

Intention

The ***be going to*** and ***will*** futures can both be used to express an intention about the future.

- ***be going to:*** the intention is premeditated. The decision was made before the time of speaking or writing and plans have probably already been made:
  A: **You know it's Emily's birthday on Friday, don't you?**
  B: **Yes, I*'m going to buy* her a present this afternoon.**
- ***will:*** the intention is unpremeditated. The decision is made at the time of speaking or writing:
  A: **You know it's Emily's birthday on Friday, don't you?**
  B: **Actually I'd forgotten. Thanks for reminding me. I*'ll buy* her a present this afternoon.**

Prediction

The ***be going to*** and ***will*** futures can both be used to make predictions about the future.

- ***be going to:*** the prediction is based on some form of evidence that exists in the present.
  It is often used to predict what is about to happen but it can be used to predict something that is not in the immediate future:
  *Oh look! That car **is going to crash**.*
  *That child eats too much. He**'s going to be** really overweight one day.*
- ***will:*** to express beliefs, hopes, thoughts, assumptions and doubts about the future:
  *It**'ll be** a difficult year for the new Prime Minister.*
  *I'm sure you**'ll enjoy** yourself there.*

Statement of future fact

The ***be going to*** and ***will*** futures can both be used to make statements about the future but the emphasis is slightly different:
a) *The number of students **will fall** over the next five years.*
b) *The number of students **is going to fall** over the next five years.*

Sentence a) is a statement of future fact or of the speaker's beliefs.
Sentence b) is also a statement of future fact but it emphasizes that the speaker is thinking of present trends. It makes the speaker seem more involved and is thus more informal.

Expression of willingness

Will is often used to express willingness.
Be going to does not have this meaning:
*I'll **help** you as much as I can.*
(expression of willingness: a promise)
*I'm **going to help** you as much as I can.*
(expression of intent)

Summary

- ***Be going to*** always indicates a link with the present.
  a) present intention/plans/preparations
  b) present evidence of a future event
- When we use ***will***, the emphasis is more on the future than on its link with the present.
- ***Will*** is more formal than ***be going to*** and is therefore used more extensively in written English.

Practice

17 Put the verbs into the ***be going to*** future or the ***shall/will*** future. If both tenses are possible, choose the one that is most appropriate for the context. With the verbs *to go* or *to come* use the present continuous as future instead of the ***be going to*** future.

Two friends, Jack and David, are talking.

J: Have you decided what you [1] are going to do (do) this weekend?

D: Yes, we [2].. (have) a quiet day on Saturday and then on Sunday we [3].. (take) a bus up into the mountains and do some walking. And we [4].. (probably book into) a hotel there for the night. What about you? [5].. (you/do) lots of work as usual?

J: Well, no. Mark phoned last night about coming down this weekend.

D: Really?

J: Yes, he ^{6}.. (come) on Friday.

D: Oh, I'd like to see him. I think I ^{7}.. (phone him up) tonight and arrange something.

J: Well, we're planning to spend the day on the beach on Saturday. We ^{8}.. (do) some swimming and sunbathing. I just hope the weather ^{9}.. (be) warm enough. And then on Saturday night we ^{10}.. (see) that new film with Tom Cruise.

D: Well, as I've got nothing planned, I ^{11}.. (join) you at the beach on Saturday then, if that's O.K.

J: Of course it is. I ^{12}.. (pick you up) from your flat some time after breakfast.

D: Oh thanks. ^{13}.. (I/bring) a picnic?

J: Yes. Why not? I tell you what: Mark and I ^{14}.. (make) some sandwiches and ^{15}.. (you/bring) some salad and fruit?

D: Yes, fine. I ^{16}.. (do) that. Good. That ^{17}.. (save) us all the cost of eating out. And what about the film? What time ^{18}.. (you/see) that?

J: We ^{19}.. (see) the early showing at 6.00 and then we ^{20}.. (try out) that new disco in town.

D: Right. Well, I think I ^{21}.. (spend) the evening at home with Sarah.

J: O.K. So I ^{22}.. (see) you on Saturday morning, probably at around 10 o'clock.

D: Fine.

18 Present Simple as future

USE

- We use the present simple to refer to the future in clauses of time and condition, e.g. after *if, unless, when, as soon as, until, before, after, by the time*:
  *We'll phone you when we **get** there.*
  *Please wait here until I **get** back.*

  And after *everything, anything, whatever, It is important*, etc:
  *Everything that you **say** will be recorded.*
  *You will do whatever I **ask** you to.*

- We can use the present simple to refer to future events when the event is part of a fixed timetable, e.g. a travel timetable, a holiday itinerary, other organized events, an official trip by a member of the government. The event or the timing of the event is fixed by some official body, organization or timetable:
  *The flight **leaves** at 6 o'clock in the morning.*
  *You **spend** the first night of the trip in a hotel in London.*

Practice

18 Where possible, put the verbs in brackets into the present simple. Where this is not possible, use the ***will*** future.

A teacher is giving some students the details of a forthcoming trip.

The coach ¹..leaves.. (leave) here at 9.00 a.m., and we ².................................... (arrive) at the field study centre before lunch. When we ³.................................... (get) there, you ⁴.................................... (be shown) to your rooms and ⁵.................................... (be given) time to unpack. Lunch ⁶.................................... (be served) in the dining-room at 12.30 precisely so make sure you ⁷.................................... (not get) there late. When lunch ⁸.................................... (finish), it ⁹.................................... (be) time to get ready for our first activity: a walk down to the beach to look at the rock pools.

Nets, magnifying glasses and containers [10].................................... (be provided) by the centre. It the weather [11].................................... (be) fine, we [12].................................... (stay) on the beach for the whole of the afternoon. Otherwise, we [13].................................... (go back) to the centre after an hour or two and watch a video on seashore life. You [14].................................... (be expected) to keep a written record of everything that you [15].................................... (find) and we [16].................................... (look) at all the records when we [17].................................... (get back) to school at the end of the week. Mr McNeill, the field study supervisor, is very knowledgeable and I'm sure that he [18].................................... (help) you to identify anything that you [19].................................... (not recognize). Supper [20].................................... (be served) at 6.00, and at 8.00 there [21].................................... (be) an evening activity. On the first night, Mr McNeill [22].................................... (plan) to go on a moonlight walk with us to look for bats. It is important that you [23]...................... (stay) together on this walk. Please don't wander off. It [24].................................... (not be) easy for us to find you if you [25].................................... (get lost) in the dark. Behave sensibly and I'm sure you [26].................................... (all have) a wonderful time.

19 Future Continuous

FORM

will be + present participle: *I'll **be coming***, etc.

USE

- To describe an activity that will be in progress at a point in the future:
  *This time tomorrow we'**ll be sitting** on the plane.*
- To describe an activity that will cover the whole of a future time period:
  *I'**ll be working** in the office all evening.*
- To describe a future event without expressing deliberate intention:
  Sue: *Oh dear, I haven't given Ben that book back.*
  Joe: *That's all right. I'**ll be seeing** him at the music club tonight so I'll give it to him for you.*

  Here, the activity of seeing Ben is not an express intention but will happen when Joe goes to the music club.

  *I'**ll be revising** for my exams this weekend so I think I'll stay in on Saturday night.*
  The intention expressed here is to stay in on Saturday night. The plan to revise is relevant to this decision.

- To describe what we assume someone else is doing at this moment:
  *Don't phone her now. It's 4 o'clock and she'**ll be collecting** the children from school.*

Note: The future continuous is not used with verbs that do not normally take the continuous form. See page 27.

Contrast: future continuous versus *will* future

will future: expresses intention, belief, hope, assumption and willingness
future continuous: indicates future activity or event but does not express intention or willingness

I'**ll come** and visit you tomorrow	*intention / promise*
I'**ll be coming** to visit you tomorrow so I can bring the magazines then.	*future activity in normal course of events*
Will you **come** to the meeting tonight?	*request*
Will you **be coming** to the meeting tonight?	*casual question about future event*

Practice

19 Put the verbs in brackets into the ***will*** future or the future continuous. Complete any short answers with ***will*** or ***won't***.

1 A: Would you like to come over for lunch on Saturday?
B: Well unfortunately, I ^{1}...'ll be working... (work) all day Saturday.
A: Oh, that's a shame. Well, you ^{2}.. (have to come over) another day. I ^{3}.. (talk) to Andy about it and I ^{4}.. (phone) you on Sunday. ^{5}.. (you/be) in then?
B: Yes definitely. I ^{6}.. (recover) from my week's work.

2 A: ^{7}.. (you/go) to the meeting tonight? If so, I ^{8}.. (give) you a lift there.
B: Oh yes please, that would be helpful. I ^{9}.. (play) tennis until 7 o'clock but I ^{10}.. (be) back shortly after that.

A: O.K. I [11].. (pick you up) at about 7.30.
[12].. (you/be) ready by then?

B: Yes. Don't worry. I [13].. (wait) for you when you get here.

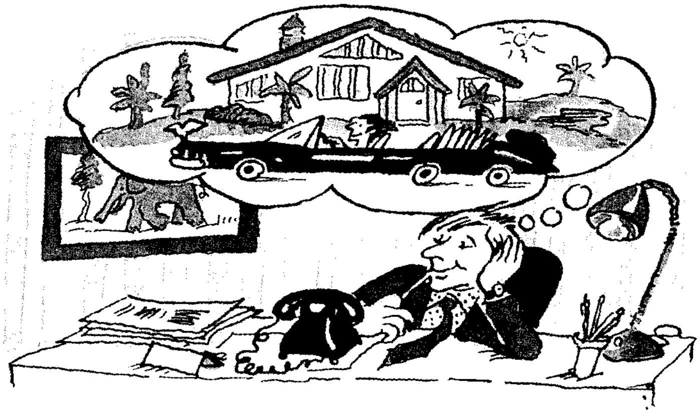

3 A: Do you ever think about what you [14].. (do) in ten years' time?

B: Oh yes. I sometimes imagine that I [15].. (do) a very important job and earning lots of money and that I
[16].. (live) in a beautiful big house. But to be honest, I think I [17].. (still work) here and I
[18].. (probably do) the same job.

A: No, you [19].. . You
[20].. (get) a better job soon, I'm sure you
[21].. .

B: And so [22].. you.

A: And then we [23].. (go) on wonderful foreign holidays and we [24].. (learn) to speak different languages.

B: Perhaps.

4 A: Oh dear, I've run out of stamps. I [25].. (not be able to post) these letters now.

B: Well, I [26].. (go) to the post office later on. I
[27].. (take) the letters and post them for you.

A: Oh thank you. I [28].. (give) you the money for the stamps.

5 A: So I [29].. (wait) for you when you get to the station. I [30].. (not come) onto the platform but I [31].. (see) you by the ticket office.

B: O.K., that's fine. I [32].. (carry) a heavy suitcase so I think we [33].. (have to get) a taxi from the station.

20 Contrast: future continuous versus present continuous as future

Present continuous as future: used for plans. The intention is not important. Future continuous: can also be used to refer to plans. It is not generally used when we first tell someone about a plan. It is often used to refer to a plan when this plan is relevant to the main future event in the sentence:
*We're **spending** the summer on the coast.* (Telling someone about our plans)
A: *Have you ever been sailing?*
B: *No, but we'**ll be spending** the summer on the coast so I might try it then.*
(Referring to the arrangement to spend summer on the coast in connection with the main idea of the sentence – to try sailing)

A: ***Will** you **be using** your bike tomorrow?*
B: *No, I won't.*
A: *Well, I wonder if I could borrow it for the afternoon.*
(Asking about plans in order to make a request for the future that is connected to those plans)

Practice

20 Put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous or the future continuous. It is often the case that either tense is correct. Choose the tense that you think is the most appropriate.

1 A: Will you be seeing. (you/see) Tony at work tomorrow?

B: Yes, I will. .

A: Do you think you could give him a message for me?

2 A: Where .... (you/go) this summer?

B: We .... (go) to the Pyrenees for a couple of weeks in July to do some walking.

3 A: Have you read the notes for the meeting?

B: No, not yet, but I .... (sit) on the train for three hours tomorrow so I can do it then.

4 A: Can you post this letter for me on your way to work?
B: I'm sorry but I .... (not walk) past the post box this morning because Emma .... (give) me a lift to work. I'll post it for you later on though.

5 A: What .... (you/do) tonight? .... (you/go round) to Rita's with us?
B: No, I don't think so. I .... (see) quite a lot of her at our play rehearsals next week.

6 A: I must collect my new glasses from the optician.
B: Do you want me to collect them? I .... (go) past there later on anyway.

21 Future Perfect Simple and Continuous

To talk about the past from a point in the future. It is the equivalent of the present perfect with the reference point in the future. The present perfect looks back from now: the future perfect looks back from the future.

FORM

Future perfect simple:	**will have** + *past participle:* *I'll **have finished**,* etc.
Future perfect continuous:	**will have been** + *present participle:* *I'll **have been working**,* etc.

USE

- We use the future perfect simple to say that, at a certain time in the future, something will be completed and be in the past. It is often used with ***by*** + time reference:
  *I'll **have finished** this book by tomorrow.*
  *I'll **have told** him the news by the time you get here.*
- We use the future perfect simple and continuous with ***for*** to talk about the duration of an activity or state up to a time in the future:
  *We'**ll have lived** here for two years in January.*
  *She'**ll have been working** here for ten years soon.*
- We use the future perfect continuous to describe an activity leading up to a time in the future:
  *They might be tired when you see them because they'**ll have been working** hard.*

Practice

21 Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple, future simple, future perfect simple or future perfect continuous.

1 I think she ..will have heard.. (hear) all about it by the time I ..see.. (see) her.
2 I reckon I .... (finish) this book by the weekend and then I .... (give) it to you.
3 The children .... (be) hungry when they .... (get in) because they .... (run around) all afternoon.
4 This government .... (be) in power for eight years soon but I don't think they .... (win) the next election.
5 .... (you/eat) when you .... (get) here? If not, I .... (make) you something.
6 Don't phone them now. They .... (not get) home yet. They .... (probably get back) at about half-past eight.
7 I think they .... (finish) building the house by the time the winter .... (come) and then we .... (move in) in the New Year.
8 I expect they .... (be) tired when you .... (see) them because they .... (work) all day.
9 If I .... (come) and see the film with you on Saturday, I .... (see) it six times. But it is my favourite film of all time: I think you .... (love) it.
10 Why don't you come round at 9 o'clock? The children .... (go) to bed then so it .... (be) nice and peaceful.

22 Other ways of referring to the future

As well as all the forms we use to refer to the future, we can also use a range of verbs and expressions to show that we are talking about the future. These verbs and expressions are often more precise than a future form and they are used widely, particularly in written English.

- BE TO (***am/is/are/was/were*** + ***to***-infinitive)
  Used for formal plans, official arrangements, instructions and prohibitions:
  The British Ambassador ***is to meet*** *the President at the White House on Friday.*
  The factory ***is to close*** *for three weeks for repairs.*
  She ***is to become*** *the youngest Member of Parliament in our history.*
  *You****'re to be*** *there by eight o'clock.*
  *You****'re not to cross*** *the road without me.*

- BE DUE TO / ABOUT TO / ON THE POINT OF
  be due + ***to***-infinitive: used for arrangements that are to take place at a fixed time. Often used with timetables and official itineraries:
  *The plane****'s due to arrive*** *in half an hour.*
  *Clare****'s due to have*** *her operation in three weeks' time.*

  be (just) about + ***to***-infinitive: used to refer to something that will happen very soon, in the immediate future:
  *Don't start talking to them now: they****'re about to leave****.*

  be (just) on the point of + gerund or noun: used to refer to something in the very immediate future:
  It is understood that the Chancellor ***is on the point of announcing*** *his resignation.*

- CERTAIN VERBS + *TO*-INFINITIVE
  We can say:
  They ***are going to build*** *a new shopping centre in town.*
  We can also use a verb that refers to the future and say:

They	**plan** **intend** **are proposing** **hope** **have agreed** **have promised**	**to build** a new shopping centre in town.

Note: that ***intend*** and ***propose*** can also be followed by a gerund:
They ***intend/propose building*** *a new shopping centre in town.*

We often use a verb that refers to the future, instead of a future form, particularly in written English.

Practice

22 Rewrite the sentences using ***be (not) to, due to, about to, on the point of, plan/intend/propose/hope/agree/promise (not) to.***
You may use a verb or expression more than once.

1 I'm sorry I can't talk to you now. I'm going to work in a minute.
I'm sorry I can't talk to you now. I'm about to go to work.

2 The Council have decided what they would like to do one day. They are going to close the old swimming pool.
The Council intend to close the old swimming pool.

3 They are making plans now. They are going to have a big wedding in the summer.

....

4 The train will depart at 8.25.

....

5 The Condor Freight Company have had discussions with staff representatives and they have reached an agreement on work clothes. They are going to provide free work clothes to all employees.

....

....

6 You must not enter the building without signing your name in the register.

....

....

7 The Government have made a promise. They will not increase taxes during the next year.

....

....

8 The economy will collapse in the very near future; it will happen at any time now.

....

....

9 The Department of Social Security has made a proposal. It is probably going to cut unemployment benefit.

....

....

10 My grandfather is going to die soon.

....

11 I hope I'll find a new job before the end of the year.

....

12 Do you promise that you won't tell anyone about this?

....

13 What are the two leaders' intentions? When are they going to meet?

....

14 They are making plans. They are going to move abroad.

....

15 You will arrive at the hotel at 7.30 in the evening.

....

THE PASSIVE

23 Forms and uses of the passive

FORM

To be in the appropriate form + *past participle.*

- The passive is not used in the present perfect continuous, the past perfect continuous or the future continuous for reasons of style.
- We can use the passive in all other tenses and in other verb forms.

	Active	*Passive*
Infinitive	to do	to be done
Perfect Infinitive	to have done	to have been done
Participle and Gerund	doing	being done
Perfect Participle/Gerund	having done	having been done

USE

- We use the passive form when the receiver of the action is more important than the performer of the action or when the performer of the action is not someone specific. The use of the passive avoids sentences with a vague subject like 'Someone' or 'Some people':
  The local cinema ***was closed down*** *three years ago.*
  Very few typewriters ***are being sold*** *these days.*
  Children should ***be warned*** *not to speak to strangers.*
  The 10.30 flight to Greece ***has been delayed****.*
- The use of the passive is a way of avoiding placing responsibility for a particular action on any specific person or organisation:
  Due to the company's need to increase production, the lunch break ***will be reduced*** *from one hour to forty-five minutes.*

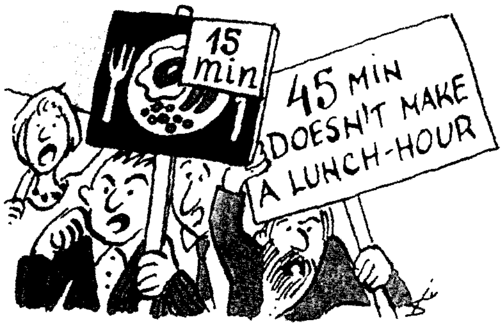
15 min
45 MIN DOESN'T MAKE A LUNCH-HOUR

(The managers will probably prefer to say this than to say *We / The Company / The management will reduce the lunch break...*)

I am sorry that your letter ***was mislaid****.*
(The speaker may prefer not to say *I am sorry that I mislaid your letter.*)

- The passive is often used to avoid a change of subject in a sentence:
  When they got to the police station, they ***were*** *immediately* ***questioned****.*
  I went by train and ***was met*** *at the station by my aunt.*

- We can use ***by*** + the performer of the action after a verb in the passive if we want to say who or what did it. This places emphasis on the performer of the action.
  We often use ***by*** + agent after the passive form of these verbs:
  build, compose, damage, design, discover, invent, make, write:
  The play was written ***by*** *a previously unknown author.*
  St. Paul's Cathedral was designed ***by*** *Christopher Wren.*
  The book tells how he was often beaten ***by*** *his cruel father.*
  The petition was signed ***by*** *all the people in the street.*
  We were stopped ***by*** *the police on our way home.*

- The passive is often used with verbs of saying and believing in these constructions:
  It + passive + that clause:
  It is expected that *many more people will die from starvation in the next decade.*

  There + passive + ***to be***:
  There are believed to be *many thousands of homeless teenagers living on the streets of the capital.*

  Subject + passive + ***to***-infinitive
  She is considered to be *the best singer in the group.*

- The passive is often used in notices, news reports and descriptions of processes:
  Customers ***are advised*** *to buy their tickets in advance.*
  Two escaped prisoners ***were recaptured*** *this morning when they tried to board an aircraft.*
  ENGLISH ***SPOKEN*** *HERE*
  The oranges ***are treated*** *with wax and then* ***stored*** *in large boxes before* ***being shipped*** *abroad.*

Notes

- Some languages often use an impersonal pronoun where English uses the passive. ***One*** as an impersonal pronoun is only occasionally used in formal English now. ***You*** is a more informal personal pronoun and is used more frequently than ***one***:
  One *often sees /* ***You*** *often see large cruise ships coming into this port.*
- ***Get*** is often used with certain past participles: *get engaged, get married, get lost, get killed, get dressed, get elected, get hit, get drunk.*

Practice

23a Rewrite the sentences, putting the underlined verbs into the passive. Make any other changes necessary.

1 They should have given us this information ages ago.

This information should have been given to us ages ago.

2 Do you want someone to wake you up in the morning?

Do you want to be woken up in the morning?

3 I don't like someone telling me what to do.

....

4 The windows are really dirty: no-one's cleaned them for weeks.

....

....

5 After the company made him redundant, he became very depressed.

....

....

6 I would like them to have given me the chance to explain my point of view, but they weren't interested.

....

....

7 I'm hoping they will choose me for the college football team.

....

....

8 People believe that many more people will die of skin cancer over the next ten years.

....

....

9 If it hadn't rained so much, we would have finished the job on time.

....

....

10 We can't take the car: the people at the garage are repairing it.

....

....

23b In your notebook, rewrite the following texts, putting the underlined verbs into the passive and making any other changes that are necessary. Use ***by*** + agent where appropriate.

1 The company is sorry to announce that the situation has forced it to introduce a range of cost-cutting measures as from the beginning of the new year. Unfortunately, we can no longer provide free tea and coffee. Someone is going to install new coin-operated drinks machines in every department and you can purchase a wide range of drinks from these. We will also stop overtime payments after the end of this month and we will expect all members of staff to complete their duties within their contract hours. You must no longer make personal calls from office phones and we request you to use the pay phone in the basement for this purpose.

2 Fire almost completely destroyed the Royal Hotel last night. By the time someone called the Fire Brigade, the hotel was already blazing. Ambulances took fifteen people to hospital suffering from severe burns. They say that seven of them are in a serious condition. People think that a discarded cigarette started the fire.

Example:
The Royal Hotel was almost completely destroyed by fire last night. By the time the Fire Brigade was/were called, ...

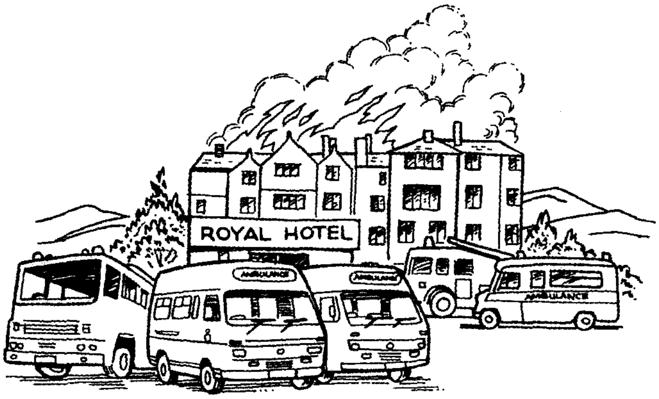

3 Jane is talking to her friend Greg about her holiday.

G: So, how was the holiday?
J: Oh, it was fantastic. They organized everything so well. As soon as we arrived at the airport, our courier met us and took us to the hotel. Someone had cleaned all the rooms beautifully and put fresh flowers on the tables.
G: Oh, how lovely. And what about the food?
J: It was excellent. They freshly prepared it all in the hotel and they even made the bread in the hotel kitchen. They served the bread rolls hot every morning with breakfast.
G: Mm, it does sound good. I must say, I'd like someone to cook my meals for me for a couple of weeks. And what about the surrounding area? Was that nice?
J: Oh beautiful. There were trips every day and they showed us all the local sights. There was so much history to see. You'd love it there, honestly.

4 Last month the Council put forward a plan to make the seafront traffic-free. Many of the shop and restaurant owners support the plan as they believe that a more pleasant environment will improve their trade. However, the hotel owners are less enthusiastic and say that the traffic restriction will make access to their car parks very difficult. There have also been protests from some local residents who complain that the closure of the seafront road will make their journeys around the town much longer.

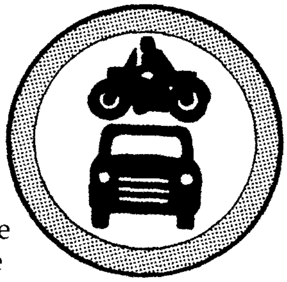

23c Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense and form. Some of the verbs should be in the passive and some in the active. Write the answers in the spaces provided below the text.

Animals on the roads

More cars and lorries ^{1}..... (drive) on our roads every year and, sadly, as a result of this, more and more wild animals ^{2}..... (kill) by vehicles. Roads often ^{3}..... (cross) the routes that ^{4}..... (take) by animals when they are migrating, breeding or feeding.

Every spring, many thousands of toads ^{5}..... (kill) as they ^{6}..... (make) their way to the traditional breeding ponds. All over the world, animals are victims of the road and their dead remains can ^{7}..... (often see) lying on the roadside. Many badgers and hedgehogs ^{8}..... (hit) by cars at night as they ^{9}..... (move around) in search of food. Rabbits sometimes seem to ^{10}..... (hypnotize) by the headlights of cars and ^{11}..... *(not move) quickly out of the way.* Birds ^{12}..... (sometimes hit) too as they ^{13}..... (fly) low over roads.

^{14}..... (can anything do) to protect these animals from the dangers of the road? Well, in 1969, a toad tunnel ^{15}..... (build) in Switzerland and was a great success. Since then, other tunnels ^{16}..... (construct) elsewhere in Europe, not just for toads but for badgers and salamanders too. In Florida, where the rare Florida panther ^{17}..... (live), panther tunnels ^{18}..... (build) under the highway and fencing ^{19}..... (put up) beside the highway to guide the animals safely into these underpasses. Road signs warning drivers to ^{20}..... (look out) for particular animals ^{21}..... (often see) in the US and it is to ^{22}..... (hope) that they ^{23}..... (become) a more common sight on the roads of Europe.

1 are being driven ....

2 ....

3 ....

4 ....

5 ....

6 ....

7 ....

8 ....

9 ....

10 ....

11 ....

12 ....

13 ....

14 ....

15 ....

16 ....

17 ....

18 ....

19 ....

20 ....

21 ....

22 ....

23 ....

24 The causative *have* and the causative *get*

FORM

have/get + *object* + *past participle*

USE

- We use the causative ***have*** or the causative ***get*** when we are not concerned about the person doing the action.
  The subject of the verb ***have*** or ***get*** causes the action to take place:
  *We **have/get** the windows cleaned once a month.*
  (We have an agreement with the window cleaner that s/he cleans the windows once a month and we pay him/her.)
  *You should **have/get** your eyes tested.* (You should arrange for an eye test.)
- We occasionally use the causative ***have*** or ***get*** with ***by*** + agent:
  *We **had/got** the house decorated by a local firm of decorators.*

Contrast: *have* and *get*

The causative ***have*** and the causative ***get*** are very similar and often interchangeable. However, the causative ***get*** is more concerned with the arranging that is required in order for something to be done:
*I **had** the car serviced this morning.*
(I caused this to happen but I may or may not have taken the car to the garage myself.)
*I **got** the car serviced this morning.*
(This is almost the same but there is an assumption here that I took the car to the garage.)
When we are concerned with the process of something happening and not the preparatory arrangements, we use the causative ***have*** and not the causative ***get***:
*I like **having** my hair done.*
*They stayed with us while they were **having** their flat decorated.*

We do not generally use the causative ***get*** in the present perfect or past perfect:
*Oh, you**'ve had** your hair done.* (NOT ~~*You've got your hair done*~~.)

Notes

- We also sometimes use ***get*** + object + past participle to say that we did something ourselves. When we use it in this way, it suggests that there was a lot to be done or that it was difficult but that we managed to finish it:
  *I **got** all my work done yesterday.*
- We occasionally use the causative ***have*** and ***get*** when the subject of ***have/get*** does not cause the action to happen but is an unwilling victim. It is generally used in this way with verbs denoting crimes:
  *I **had/got** my bag stolen last week.*

Practice

24 Rewrite the words underlined using ***have*** or ***get*** + object + past participle.

1 There's a photographer over there. Why don't we ask her to take our picture?
Why don't we have/get our picture taken?

2 I've finally decided to arrange for someone to pierce my nose.
I've finally decided to have/get my nose pierced.

3 There's a leak in the roof. We should arrange for someone to repair it.
....

4 What time is it? I'm afraid someone hasn't repaired my watch yet.
....
....

5 Someone is going to redecorate the kitchen for us next month.
....
....

6 If I were you, I'd ask someone to fell hat tree. It shuts out all the light.
....

7 I'm having a bit of trouble with my eyes at the moment so someone's going to test them next week.
....
....

8 I love someone massaging my shoulders.
....

9 The dentist hasn't checked my teeth this year.
....

10 The baby was crying because someone was washing her hair.

....

11 He looks much younger. I think someone's dyed his hair.

....

12 I don't know if I've passed the course because the tutors haven't marked all my work yet.

....

13 That wasps' nest is dangerous. You must ask someone to remove it.

....

MISCELLANEOUS

25 Constructions after *wish*

USE

- With past simple.
  To express dissatisfaction with a present situation or repeated habitual activity, use ***wish*** + past simple:
  *I **wish** she didn't...* (but she does)
  *I **wish** she did...* (but she doesn't)
  *I **wish** she spoke French.* (but she doesn't. I would very much like her to.)
  With the verb ***to be***, use ***was*** or ***were*** after ***I/She/He/It. Were*** is a little more formal:
  *I **wish** the weather was/were a bit warmer.* (but it isn't)
- With ***would***.
  To express dissatisfaction and annoyance about something that we would like to be different but that we do not expect to be different.
  When we use it to refer to a person, it suggests that the person refuses to change:
  *I **wish** she would speak French.* (but she won't. She can speak French but she refuses to speak it.)
  *I **wish** it would stop raining.* (but it won't. I do not expect it to stop.)
- With past perfect.
  To express regret about the past, use ***wish*** + *past perfect*:
  *I **wish** I had studied harder.* (but I didn't and now I regret it.)

Notes

- We can use ***if only...*** in place of ***I wish...*** . It also expresses dissatisfaction and regret. It is somewhat stronger than ***wish***: *If only I hadn't said that.*
- ***Wish*** + ***to***-infinitive is a more formal way of saying ***I want to...*** or ***I would like to...*** It is used in formal spoken language or in writing: *The management **wish** to inform you that...*

Practice

25 Rewrite the sentences using ***I wish*** + past simple, past perfect or ***would***.

1 I haven't got a car. I would very much like to have one.
I wish I had a car.

2 I went to bed late last night. I regret it now.
I wish I hadn't gone to bed late last night.

3 We don't live in a nice big flat. I would like us to.

....

4 I didn't buy that dress. I regret it now.

....

5 He won't stop shouting. I would like him to

....

6 I lost my temper I regret it now.

....

7 You didn't tell me the truth. I am very sorry that you didn't.

....

8 You're playing that music. I would like you to stop playing it but I don't expect that you will.

....

9 I didn't go to that concert. I regret it now.

....

10 I don't have an interesting job. I would like my job to be more interesting.

....

11 My family live a long way from here. I would like them to live nearer to me.

....

12 You're not listening to me. I feel annoyed about it and I would like you to listen to me but I don't think you will.

....

13 I am not with him now. I would very much like to be.

....

14 I spent all my money on that new coat. I regret it now.

....

15 I'm really hungry now. We didn't eat before we came out and I regret that.

....

26 Phrasal verbs

A phrasal verb is formed with a verb + particle. The particle is an adverb or a preposition. Sometimes its meaning may be inferred from the meaning of the verb and the particle, e.g. *Can you **slow down**?*, but often the meaning is completely different from the meanings of the separate words, e.g. *He **takes after** his mother in his mathematical ability.*

Types of phrasal verbs:

- Intransitive:
  *We must **set off** early tomorrow.*
- Transitive (separable):
  The object can go *before* or *after* the particle.
  *Did you **turn down** that job offer?*
  *Did you **turn** that job offer **down**?*
  *Did you **turn** it **down**?*
  (NOT ~~*Did you **turn down** it*~~*?*)
- Transitive (inseparable):
  The object can only go *after* the particle.
  *She **takes after** her mother.*
  (NOT ~~*She **takes** her mother **after***~~.)

Notes

- Some phrasal verbs have three words: verb + adverb +.preposition. In three-word phrasal verbs, the object can only go *after* the preposition:
  *She **came up with** lots of good ideas.*
  *I think you should **get down to** your work.*
- Some combinations of verb + particle have more than one meaning and some of them may be either transitive or intransitive:
  *Business was very slow over the winter but it's **picking up** now.*
  *I'll **pick** you **up** at 8 o'clock.*
- Many verbs are followed by prepositions but are not phrasal verbs. The combination of the verb with the preposition does not have a meaning of its own. The verb and the preposition each have their literal meaning:
  *She **walked** through the room.*
  *I don't **approve** of this idea.*

  The distinction between a phrasal verb and a prepositional verb is not important, however. It is only important to understand the meaning of the verbs.

Practice

26a Underline the phrasal verbs in the following dialogue. Copy the table into your notebook and write the phrasal verbs in the infinitive in the appropriate columns.

Intransitive	*Transitive (separable)*	*Transitive (inseparable)*
get on		

Jerry, a head of department, is talking to his manager, Tony.

T: So can you tell me how things are going in your department at the moment, Jerry?

J: Well, Alison's getting on very well. I think we did the right thing taking her on. She's already achieved higher sales than Martin this month. She's got lots of enthusiasm and she never wastes any time; she just gets on with it.

T: Well, that's good news. But what about Martin? Is his work still not coming up to standard?

J: No, it isn't. His sales figures have been going down steadily since the beginning of the year. If he carries on like this, I think I'll have to take him off that job and put him back in the office.

T: So what do you think the problem is?

J: Well, to be honest, I think he's lost enthusiasm for the job. And I think his outside interests are taking up a lot of his time and energy.

T: I'm afraid that's just not good enough. If his sales figures don't start going up soon, he might find himself looking round for another job.

J: Yes, I think that's right. I'll fix up a meeting with him so that we can run through this year's figures and then I'll let him know that he can't get away with this poor performance for much longer.

T: Yes, I really think he should give up some of these outside activities if his work is suffering.

J: Yes, I agree. Don't worry, I'll sort it out with him.

26b Rewrite the parts underlined, replacing the words in bold with a phrasal verb from Exercise 26a.

1 I'd like to discuss your plans with you. Can we **arrange** to have a meeting soon?

Can we fix up a meeting soon?

2 You've got exams soon. You can't **continue** going out every night.

....

3 He arrives late for work every day. I don't know how he **does it without getting into trouble**.

....

4 If the business continues to expand, we'll need to **employ** more staff soon.

....

....

5 We'll never get this problem **resolved** if we don't talk about it.

....

....

6 The club membership has been **declining** for the last five years.

....

....

7 I'm going to **remove** you from this case, detective. I think you're becoming too personally involved.

....

8 I really think he should **stop** drinking; it's not doing him any good.

....

9 I'm afraid I'm a bit disappointed with the course. It hasn't really **reached** my expectations.

....

10 I don't think she'll want to be in the play this year. Her new job is **using** all her energy.

....

26c Complete the gaps with the following phrasal verbs. Put the verbs into the correct tense and form. **Two** of the verbs should be put into the passive. Write the answers in the spaces provided below the text.

turn up	put in for	pick up	run out of	come down	go on
turn down	save up	~~take over~~	live off	cheer up	fall back on

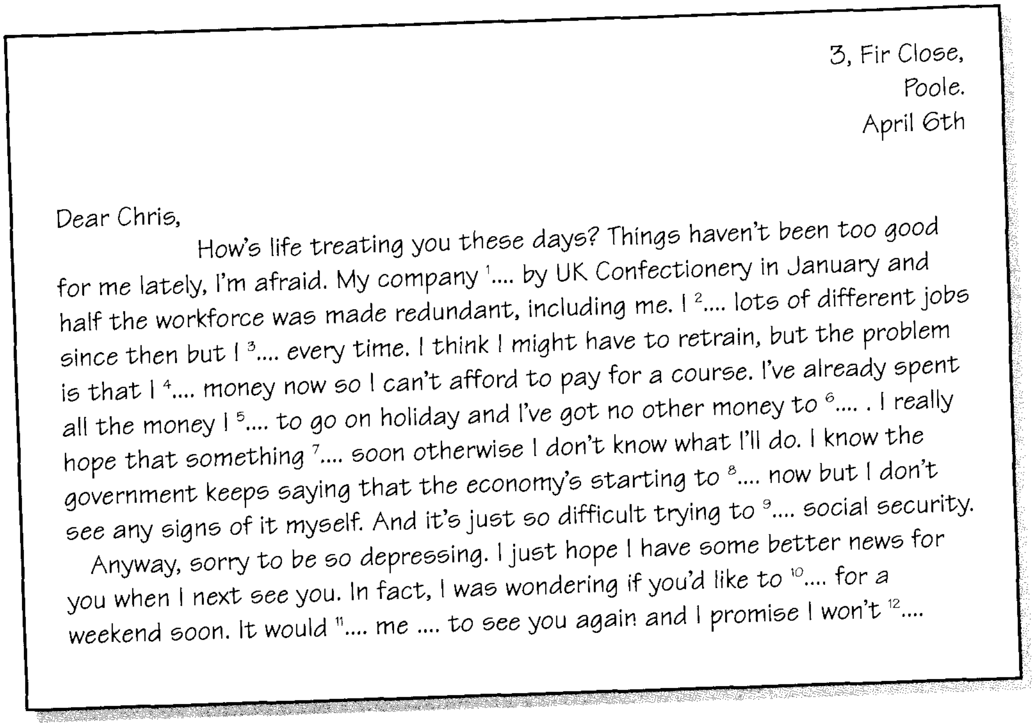

3, Fir Close,
Poole.
April 6th

Dear Chris,

How's life treating you these days? Things haven't been too good for me lately, I'm afraid. My company ^{1}.... by UK Confectionery in January and half the workforce was made redundant, including me. I ^{2}.... lots of different jobs since then but I ^{3}.... every time. I think I might have to retrain, but the problem is that I ^{4}.... money now so I can't afford to pay for a course. I've already spent all the money I ^{5}.... to go on holiday and I've got no other money to ^{6}.... . I really hope that something ^{7}.... soon otherwise I don't know what I'll do. I know the government keeps saying that the economy's starting to ^{8}.... now but I don't see any signs of it myself. And it's just so difficult trying to ^{9}.... social security.

Anyway, sorry to be so depressing. I just hope I have some better news for you when I next see you. In fact, I was wondering if you'd like to ^{10}.... for a weekend soon. It would ^{11}.... me .... to see you again and I promise I won't ^{12}....

1 was taken over

2 ....

3 ....

4 ....

5 ....

6 ....

7 ....

8 ....

9 ....

10 ....

11 ....

12 ....

Conditionals

27 First, second and third conditional

There are three main types of conditional sentences.

First conditional (or Type 1 conditional)

If I ***see*** *Andrew at the meeting, I* ***'ll give*** *him your message.*
present simple   future simple

To talk about something that is quite likely to happen in the future. It is very possible that I will see Andrew at the meeting, in which case I'll give him your message. The condition is quite likely to be fulfilled.

Second conditional (or Type 2 conditional)

If my parents ***were*** *alive, they* ***would be*** *very proud of me now.*
[*they'****d***]
past simple   *would* + infinitive

To talk about a present situation which is impossible: a hypothetical situation. The condition cannot be fulfilled because my parents are not alive.

If she ***changed*** *her job, she* ***would be*** *much happier.*
[*she'****d***]

To talk about a future event that is unlikely to happen. The speaker does not expect her to change her job. That is, it is unlikely that the condition will be fulfilled.

Third conditional (or Type 3 conditional)

If she ***had worked*** *harder, she* ***would have passed*** *the exams.*
[*she'****d have*** */ she* ***would've***]
past perfect   *would* + perfect infinitive

To talk about something in the past that did not happen. She didn't work harder and she didn't pass her exams. It is an unfulfilled condition in the past.

Notes

- In conditional sentences, the conditional clause can be the first or second clause in the sentence, although it is more often the first clause.
  When the conditional clause comes first, it is followed by a comma. When it comes second, there is no comma.
  If I get home early enough, I'll make a special dinner.
  I'll make a special dinner if I get home early enough.
- The tense and verb forms given here are the ones most commonly used in conditional sentences. However, it is possible to use other tenses and these variations are presented on pages 85-86.

Practice

27 The following sentences are first, second or third conditional. Put the verbs in brackets into the appropriate form.

1 *We wanted to go out yesterday but the weather was terrible. If it* .had been. (be) a nice day, we would have gone... (go) for a picnic.

2 Why don't you explain everything to him? If you .... (not tell) him the truth, I'm sure you .... (regret) it one day.

3 Jennifer was here not long ago. If you .... (come round) earlier, you .... (see) her.

4 Apparently, the ferry company are planning to close the port in this town. If that .... (happen), the town .... (lose) a great deal of money.

5 I .... (help) you with it if I .... (have) more time but I'm afraid I haven't got any spare time at all at the moment.

6 The government is expecting to win the next election, but if it .... (lose), the Prime Minister .... (resign) from politics.

7 I am so glad that you took me to your friend's party. If we .... (not go) there, I .... (never meet) Adrian.

8 It's ridiculous that trains are so expensive. If fares .... (be) cheaper, I'm sure more people .... (use) the train and leave their cars at home.

9 If she .... (get) that job she's applied for, she .... (be) delighted. And I think she's got a good chance of getting it.

10 Fortunately the explosion took place at night when the streets were empty. It .... (be) a disaster if it .... (happen) in the middle of the day.

11 The talks between the two leaders keep breaking down. If they .... (break down) again, it is possible that there .... (be) a war between the two countries.

12 If Alison .... (know) anything about car mechanics, I'm sure she .... (help) us fix the car, but I think she knows even less than we do.

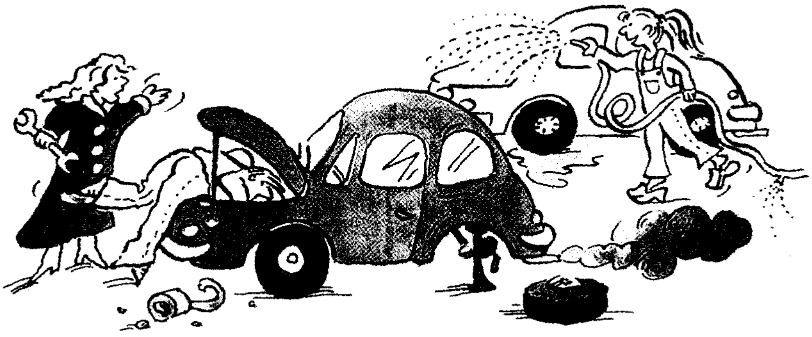

13 They've been married for twenty years now but I don't think she .... (marry) him if she .... (know) what a selfish man he was.

14 Children spend too much time watching television and playing computer games. I'm sure they .... (be) happier if they .... (spend) more time playing outside.

15 Jamie has everything he wants but he's always moaning. I'm sure that if I .... (have) so much money, I .... (not moan) all the time.

28 Conditional sentences: variations in tenses

There are a number of variations in the tenses or verb forms that can be used in conditional sentences.

First conditional

The *if* clause is usually in the present simple. However, we can also use: present continuous, present perfect simple, present perfect continuous, ***can***, ***should***:

If he's still **waiting** for you, he'll be very angry.
If you'**re coming out** with us tonight, you'll need to be ready by 7 o'clock.
If Rob'**s received** your letter, I'm sure he'll phone you today.
If it'**s been raining** in the night, you'll have to wear wellingtons.
If I **can finish** work early, I'll come and help you.
If I **should see** him, I'll tell him the good news.

Note: When we use *if* + ***should***, the condition is less likely to be fulfilled.

The main clause usually has the verb in the future with ***will/shall***. However, we can also use: 'be going to' future, future continuous, future perfect, imperative, ***can/could***, ***may/might***, ***should/ought to***, ***must***:

If Helen passes all her exams, we'**re going to buy** her a big present.
If we book this holiday, we'**ll be lying** on a warm beach in two weeks' time.
If they win this next match, they'**ll have won** every match in the season.
If you need any help, **call** me.
If you phone me after 12 o'clock, I **might be** in bed.
If they don't eat their dinner, they **can't have** any ice-cream.

Second conditional

The *if* clause is usually in the past simple. However, we can also use the past continuous, ***could***, or ***were/was to***:

If you **were coming** with me, I'd give you a lift.
If I **could have** the day off, I'd come with you.
If you **were to** ask Steve, I'm sure he would do it.

The main clause usually has the modal ***would*** + infinitive. However, the modals ***could*** and ***might*** are also used and the infinitive can be in the continuous form:

If we had more money, we **wouldn't be living** here.
If we had more money, we **could go out** more often.
If you asked Tony, he **might do** it for you.

Third conditional

The *if* clause is usually in the past perfect simple. However, we can also use the past perfect continuous or ***could*** + perfect infinitive:

If he **had been travelling** in that car, he would have been killed too.
If we **could have** got a taxi, we would have come round to see you.

The main clause usually has the modal ***would*** + perfect infinitive. However, we can also use the modals ***could*** and ***might*** before the perfect infinitive:

If I had known there was no more work to do, I **could have stayed** in bed.
If the ambulance had come sooner, he **might have been saved**.

The zero conditional

If I **stay** out late, I always **get** a taxi home.
present simple present simple

To describe something that is generally true. The use of ***if*** here is very similar to ***when***.

Each time I stay out late, I get a taxi home.

We can also use the past simple in the two clauses:
If I **stayed** out late, I always **got** a taxi home.

Practice

28 Put the verbs in brackets into the appropriate form.

1 Oh dear, I think we're a bit late. If the concert's already started, we won't be allowed. (not be allowed) to go in.

2 He wouldn't be coming here if he .... (not want) to.

3 If you were planning to leave your husband, I .... (advise) you against it.

4 He could be earning lots of money now if he really .... (want) to, but I don't think that's what he wants.

5 You can stay here tonight if you .... (not have) anywhere else to stay.

6 If I could have phoned you, I .... (tell) you what was happening.

7 If you .... (have) any problems, give me a ring.

8 If you .... (get) here at about 8 o'clock, I'll be waiting for you.

9 We could have got there in time if you .... (phone) us earlier.

10 If this should happen again, ... (come) and .... (tell) me about it immediately.

11 You can't expect kindness and support from your family if you .... (not give) the same to them.

12 If she's been working all day, she .... (be) very tired when she gets in.

13 If the management were to reinstate the strike leader, the strike .... (be called off).

14 If I .... (keep) working on this essay, I'll have finished it by tonight.

15 If I could borrow some money, I .... (definitely come) on the holiday with you, but I think it's unlikely.

16 I might have been able to help you if you .... (explain) the problem to me.

17 If I could live wherever I wanted to, I think I .... (choose) to live on a Scottish island.

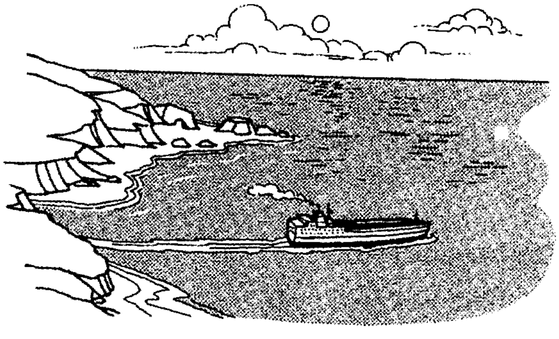

18 If they had been listening more carefully, they .... (might understand) what I was saying.

19 If I .... (be) a year older, I could join the army.

20 If I .... (get) a pay rise, I'm going to buy a new car.

29 Mixed conditionals

In addition to all the tense variations that we can use in first, second and third conditionals, it is also possible to mix conditionals so that, for example, the ***if*** clause uses a verb form used in the first conditional and the main clause uses a verb form used in the third conditional. The context defines the meaning. The most common mixed conditional is:

3rd	2nd
if + past perfect	***would/could/might*** + infinitive

Examples of mixed conditionals

3rd 2nd
If I **had worked** harder at university, I **would have** a degree now.

1st 2nd
If you **come** to the party tomorrow, I **wouldn't bring** Mike with you.

2nd 3rd
If she **loved** him, she **would have stayed** with him.

Practice

29 Match the clauses and write the mixed conditional sentences in your notebook.

1 If you had told me about this problem earlier,
2 If you were a more sensitive person,
3 If they don't contact you soon,
4 If he hadn't died so young,
5 If he didn't work so hard all the time,
6 If the train hadn't been delayed,
7 If he was feeling ill this morning,
8 If you're coming with us,
9 If I really wanted to have children,
10 If you had worked harder last month,

A he probably won't be at the meeting.
B you could always ring them up.
C his wife would never have left him.
D you wouldn't have said that to her.
E I would have had them by now.
F everything would be all right now.
G would you hurry up and get ready?
H you wouldn't be so busy this month.
I we would be there by now.
J I'm sure he'd be a famous musician by now.

Example:
1F – *If you had told me about this problem earlier, everything would be all right now.*

30 Conditionals

As you have seen, it is possible to use almost any combination of tenses in conditional sentences. The context determines the choice of tense.

Check

30 Put the verbs in brackets into the appropriate form.

1 Harry and Sarah, a husband and wife, are talking.

H: Shall I make the children something to eat?

S: I wouldn't bother. You know how much they eat when they visit their grandparents.

H: That's true. If they ¹ have been eating (eat) all afternoon, they ².. (not want) anything when they get home.

S: Are we going to pick them up soon?

H: No, my parents are bringing them over. We agreed that if I ³.. (take) them there, they ⁴.. (bring) them back.

S: Oh good. Well, if we ⁵.. (not collect) them, I ⁶.. (go back) upstairs and do a bit more work. I've nearly finished that report now. If I ⁷.. (do) another half hour's work, I ⁸.. (finish) it by the time the children get home.

H: Why do you always have to bring work home with you? If you ⁹.. (not agree) to take on that new job, you ¹⁰.. (have) much more free time now.

S: Yes, and if I ¹¹.. (not take on) that job, we ¹².. (not have) much money now.

H: That's true, but I don't like you working so much.

S: Well never mind. We've got a week's holiday soon. Just think! In two week's time, we ¹³.. (lie) on a warm sunny beach – that's if I ¹⁴.. (can get) the time off work of course.

H: What do you mean, 'if'?

S: Well, everything's very busy at the moment. And if we
[15]... (get) any more orders, I just
[16]... (not see) how I can leave the office.

H: What? But that's ridiculous.

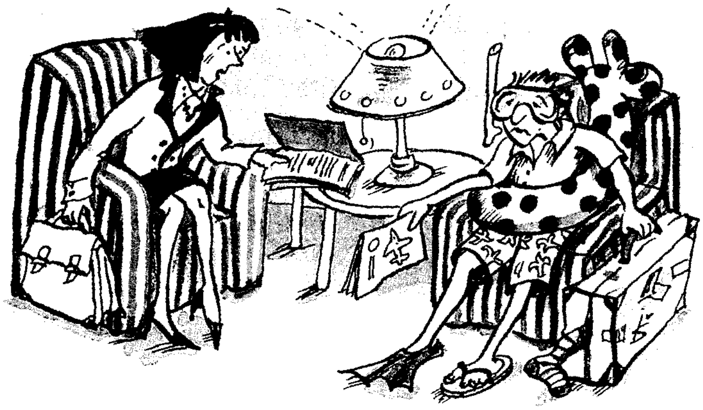

2 Dear Angela,

Thanks for your letter, it was nice to hear from you. And yes, I would like to come and see you in Spain. If I [17]... (save up) enough money when the summer holidays start, I [18]............................... (try) and come then – if that [19]... (be) O.K. Otherwise, I'll come over in the autumn because I'm sure I [20]... (save up) enough by October – if I [21]... (not lose) my job by then! Unfortunately, lots of people in our company are being made redundant and it could be me next. If I [22].. (have) any sense, I [23]... (leave) this job ages ago. Still it could be worse I suppose.

I was delighted to hear about your promotion – it's great news. If you [24]... (keep on) getting promoted, you [25]... (run) the whole school soon.

And it sounds like the weather's been really good over there. It's been terrible here. I don't think it's been dry once this month. If it [26]...................... .... (be) dry, I [27]... (not notice). Oh well, we're hoping it'll get better soon. If it [28]... (still rain) at the weekend, we

[29].. (decide) we'll try and emigrate!

Have you heard from Charlotte by the way? She said she was going to phone you to tell you that she's pregnant. If she [30]... (not phone you up yet), [31]... (not tell) her that I've already told you her news, will you?

All the best,

Jade

31 Words other than *if*

Conditionals can also be introduced by the following conjunctions:

unless	even if	if only	as/so long as	assuming(that)
on (the) condition (that)	provided/providing (that)			
In questions: suppose/supposing (that)	what if	imagine		

Practice

31 In your notebook, rewrite the sentences replacing *if* with the most appropriate conjunction.

1 Mr Davidson says he'll come and give a talk at the conference if we pay him a reasonable fee.
(supposing that / unless / on condition that)
Mr Davidson says he'll come and give a talk at the conference on condition that we pay him a reasonable fee.

2 I won't help him if he doesn't ask me properly.
(provided / unless / as long as)

3 If I could get a job, life here would be perfect.
(what if / even if / if only)

4 If you had a lot of money, do you think you would give up work?
(Supposing that / Providing that / As long as)

5 If the train arrives on time, they'll be here in a few minutes.
(What if / Assuming that / On condition that)

6 If he doesn't agree to my request, what will I do then?
(Imagine / What if / Provided that)

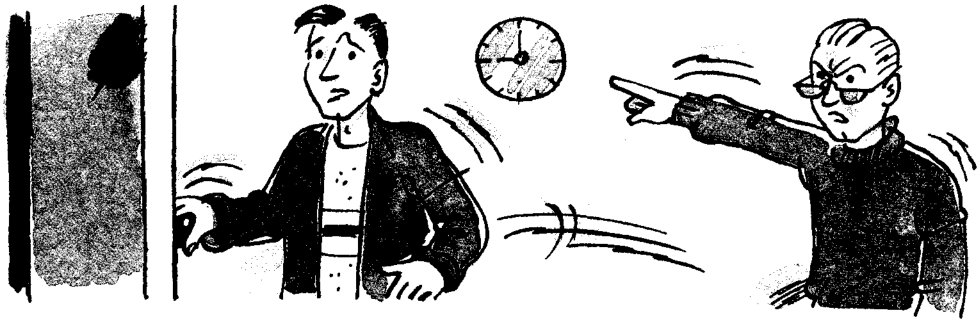

7 You can go out tonight if you get back by midnight.
(as long as / assuming that / supposing that)

8 If the helicopter hadn't been there to save her, what would have happened then?
(If only / Imagine / Unless)

9 If you'd offered to pay me a thousand pounds, I wouldn't have done it.
(If only / Provided that / Even if)

10 If Rosie gets this new promotion, we'll have enough money for a holiday abroad this year.
(Even if / Provided that / Supposing that)

32 Implied conditionals

Conditions are not always expressed in the form of conditional clauses, particularly in spoken English. They can be expressed in another way or they may be evident from the context:

Please come out with us tonight. I'm sure you'll enjoy it.
(implied condition: *if you come out with us*)
With a bit more help, I would have finished it on time.
(*with a bit more help* = if I had had more help)
I'm sure we'd really enjoy going on holiday with you but we just can't afford it.
(implied condition: *if we went*)
I'm glad you didn't tell Matthew about it. He would have been furious.
(implied condition: *if you had told him*)

Practice

32 The condition is not stated in a conditional clause in the following underlined sentences. It is implied or is stated in a different way. Write a sentence containing the underlined words as a main clause, and an appropriate conditional clause.

1 I think Alison should apply for the job. She would make a very good managing director.

She would make a very good managing director if she got the job.

2 The problem is that she doesn't work very hard. I know that she could do really well.

....

....

3 We're lucky it's sunny today. It would be horrible sitting out here otherwise.

....

....

4 He would not be able to live on his own without the help of his neighbours.

....

....

5 With luck, we'll finish the job by the end of today.

....

....

6 I hear you're thinking of going to Indonesia for the summer. You'll love it there.

....

7 I hope those refugees aren't deported, but I think they will be. They may be imprisoned or even executed.

....

....

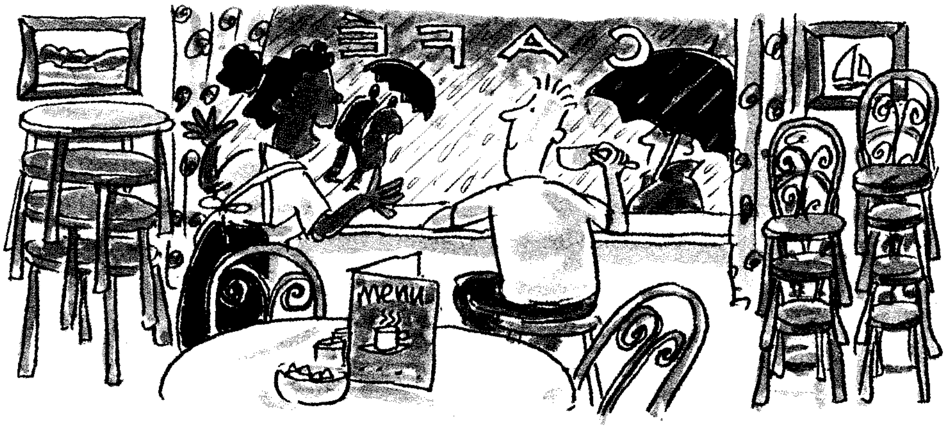

8 It's a good job you brought all those tables and chairs in from outside last night. The rain would have ruined them.

....

....

9 Mark should have told her the truth. I'm sure she would have forgiven him.

....

....

10 Without the help of the Red Cross doctors, many more would have died.

....

....

Modal auxiliaries

33 Modal auxiliaries: introduction

Modal auxiliaries are also sometimes called modal verbs or modals.
The following are modal auxiliaries:

Present	*Past form*
can	could
may	might
will	would
shall	should
must	—
ought to	—
need	—

FORM

- Positive: subject + modal + bare infinitive:
  *I **must** see you tomorrow.*
  *We **must** go now.*

- Negative: subject + modal + ***not/n't*** + bare infinitive:
  *You **shouldn't** go to bed so late.*
  *They **needn't** come if they don't want to.*

- Question: modal + subject + bare infinitive:
  ***Can** you help me?*
  ***Will** she be here soon?*

- Short answers: subject + modal auxiliary:
  *Yes, we **can**. No, they **won't**.*

- Modal auxiliaries always stay the same.
  They cannot be:
  - put into different tenses.
  - used as infinitives.
  - used as gerunds or present participles.

- They can be followed by the infinitive in different forms:

	Active	*Passive*
modal +	*bare infinitive*: must **take**	***be*** + *past participle*: must **be taken**
	be + *present participle*: must **be taking**	
	have + *past participle*: must **have taken**	***have been*** + *past participle*: must **have been taken**
	have been + *present participle*: must **have been taking**	

Notes

- **need** can be a modal auxiliary only in the question or negative form.
- **ought** is the only modal auxiliary followed by ***to***.
- **dare** can be used as a modal auxiliary in the question and negative forms. It can also be used as a main verb followed by the ***to***-infinitive.
  It is not a common modal auxiliary and is not therefore included in the practice exercises.

Practice

33 Rewrite the following sentences using a modal. The underlined words can be written as subject + modal + verb (or modal + subject + verb in questions). In some sentences, more than one modal is possible.

1 I promise to phone you next week.

I will/I'll phone you next week.

2 At the age of nine, he still didn't know how to read.

At the age of nine, he still couldn't read.

3 It's essential that we leave on time tomorrow morning.

....

....

4 Are you able to come with me tonight?

....

5 It's not a good idea for you to work so hard.

....

6 It's possible that they'll be here soon.

....

7 Why don't we go and see a film tonight?

....

8 He said that he intended to write to me soon.

....

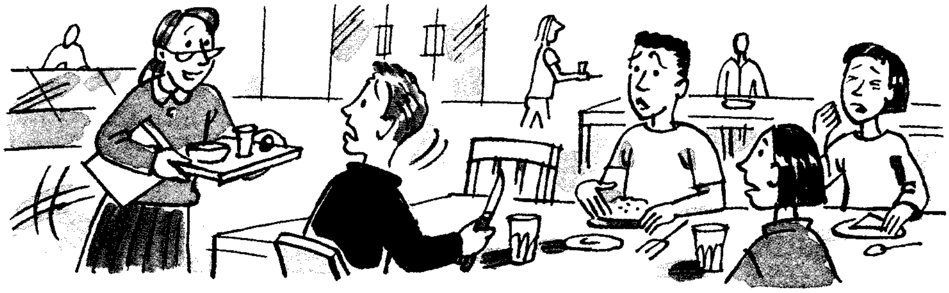

9 Is it possible for me to sit here?

....

10 He refuses to give me an answer.

....

11 It's not necessary for you to apologize.

....

12 Am I allowed to smoke in here?

....

13 He knew how to speak four languages by the time he was twelve.

....

....

14 I want to help you but I'm not able to.

....

15 I think it's a good idea for me to stay in tonight: I've got a lot of work to do.

....

....

16 I don't know who she is but it's possible that she's Rick's sister.

....

....

17 Do not tell him any of this: it's vital that it remains a secret

....

....

18 I intend to finish this essay before I go to bed.

....

....

19 It's 7 o'clock. I assume that Clare will be here soon.

....

....

20 He's in but he's not answering the phone. I'm sure that he's asleep.

....

....

34 Ability: *can, could, be able*

- ***Can*** (present or future) and ***could*** (past) refer to a general ability to do something. ***Can*** is also used to refer to an ability to do something specific at a time in the future:
  *She **can** sing really well.*
  *I **can** come and see you next week.*
  *I **can't** swim so I won't come to the pool with you.*
  *He **could** read when he was four.*
  *I **couldn't** understand the language when I first came here.*
- ***Can*** and ***could*** refer to the ability to do something, but not to the doing of it. We use ***can*** or ***be able*** to talk about ability:
  *Will you **be able** to/**Can** you come on Saturday?*
  *My parents live quite a distance away so we**'re not able** to/**can't** see them very often.*
  *He had a motorbike accident at the age of eighteen and after that he **wasn't able** to/**couldn't** walk.*

  We use ***be able*** to talk about ability + achievement of the action:
  *Jan gave me a lift home so I **was able** to stay at the party till late.*
  *We got lost but we **were able** to find our way home again with the map.*
- We use ***will be able*** and not ***can*** to talk about skills that will be acquired in the future:
  *I**'ll be able** to drive by next summer so we can hire a car.*
  ***Will** you **be able** to read textbooks in German when you've finished this course?*
- We use ***can*** + ***be*** + adjective or noun to talk about possibility:
  *The sea **can be** quite warm in September./The sea is sometimes quite warm in September.*
  *She **can be** very charming when she wants to be.*
- We use ***be able*** for different grammatical forms that are not possible with ***can***:
  *I like **being able** to work at home.*
  *We'd like **to be able** to help you but we can't.*
  *I**'ve been able** to work much faster since I got that new computer.*
- We use ***can, could*** and ***could have*** in conditional sentences. We also use them in sentences with an implied condition:
  *I **can** help you if you want me to.*
  *I **could** do it if I had the time.*
  *You **could** do that job easily. (if you had that job)*
  *I **couldn't have** done it if I hadn't had your help.*
  *I **could have** got here earlier but I didn't know you were waiting. (I could have got here earlier if I had known you were waiting.)*

Practice

34 Complete the sentences with the correct form of ***can***, ***could*** or ***be able***. If it is possible to use ***can/could*** *or* ***be able***, use ***can/could***.

1 He is very fit for his age. He .can.run. (run) really fast.

2 I'd like ..to.be.able.to.work. (work) with you one day.

3 He .... (not climb) up to the top: he was too scared.

4 If they hadn't phoned for an ambulance, he .... (die).

5 I love .... (spend) all morning in bed at the weekends.

6 We .... (go) to that concert tomorrow if the tickets haven't sold out.

7 I think you should go in the spring: it .... (be) very crowded there in the summer.

8 I .... (not understand) what he says: he speaks too quickly.

9 Do you know where Nick's glasses are? He .... (not see) very much without them.

10 .... (speak) another language fluently is a great advantage when you're looking for a job.

11 Jonathan .... (not say) anything until he was about three years old.

12 We .... (not phone her up) because her phone had broken, but fortunately we .... (get) a message to her.

13 Amy's exam results weren't very good. She .... (do) better.

14 I .... (not sleep) very well for the last four nights. It's been too hot.

15 She tried to think of other things but she .... (not put) that awful memory out of her mind.

16 You should .... (go out) when you want to.

17 .... (you come) to the party on Saturday?

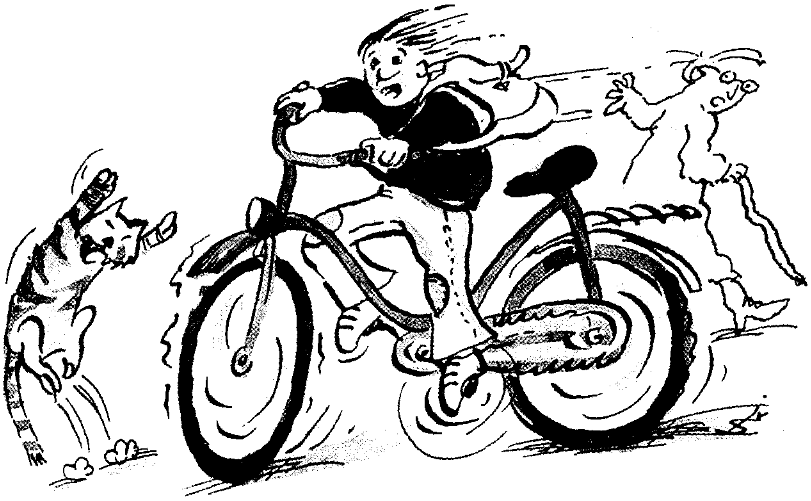

18 I .... (ride) this bike soon: I just need more time to practise.

19 He doesn't do very much when he's here. He .... (be) more helpful.

20 I .... (play) tennis really well a few years ago, but not anymore.

35 Certainty, possibility, deduction: *can, could, may, might, must, will, should, ought to*

- To talk about something that it is possible to do at any time, use ***can*** or ***may***. With this use, ***can*** and ***may*** are often followed by the passive infinitive:
  *Suitcases **can/may** be left in the left luggage office at the station.*
  *Stamps **can/may** be bought at most shops which sell cards.*
- To talk about a future possibility, use ***may*** or ***might***. We can also use ***could***; ***could*** refers to a theoretical possibility:
  *The parcel **may/might** arrive tomorrow.*
  *I **may/might** see you next week.*
  *You **could** go by train. (It is possible to take a train there if you wanted to do that.)*
- To talk about a present or future certainty, use ***will*** + simple or continuous infinitive:
  *You can phone Sally: she'**ll** be at home now.*
  *I'**ll** be there by 9 o'clock.*
  *The meeting **will** start at 7.30.*
  *We should go now: they'**ll** be waiting for us.*
  *I'**ll** be standing on the platform when you arrive.*

- To talk about the possibility in the present, use ***may***, ***might*** or ***could*** + simple infinitive (usually the verb ***to be***) or continuous infinitive:
  *'Where's Tony?' 'I don't know. He **may** be outside.'*
  *'Whose is this?' 'It **could** be Emma's.'*
  *Alison's not in the office today so she **may** be working at home.*
  *I won't phone Jennifer now because she **might** be having a rest.*
- To talk about possibility in the past, use ***may***, ***might*** or ***could*** + perfect infinitive (simple or continuous):
  *It's 8.30 so she **may** have left by now.*
  *I don't know why they're so late. I suppose they **could** have got lost.*
  *Sue wasn't at the party last night. She **might** have been feeling too tired to come.*
- To make a deduction about something in the present, use ***must*** (positive deduction) or ***can't*** (negative deduction) + simple infinitive (usually the verb ***to be***) or continuous infinitive:
  *Jane's not at home so she **must** be on her way here.*
  *The office is closed now so he **can't** be there.*
  *Barbara's back at work now so she **must** be feeling better.*
  *He **can't** be driving here: he hasn't got a car.*
- To make a deduction about something in the past, use ***must*** or ***can't*** (or ***couldn't***) + perfect infinitive (simple or continuous):
  *It's very wet outside so it **must** have rained in the night.*
  *He **can't** have forgotten about the meeting: he talked to me about it only this morning.*
  *You **must** have been talking on the phone for a long time last night: I phoned four times and it was engaged.*
  *Eddie **couldn't** have done that robbery: he was with me the whole weekend.*
- We can use ***should*** or ***ought to*** + present infinitive to make assumptions about the present or the future and ***should*** or ***ought to*** + perfect infinitive to make assumptions about the past. We use ***should*** more frequently than ***ought to***:
  *The train got in half an hour ago so they **should** be here soon.*
  *The sun's been shining all day so the sea **should** be quite warm now.*
  *The weather's lovely there at this time of year so they **should** be having a nice holiday.*
  *Let's go and see Cathy: she **ought to** have finished working by now.*

Notes

- We can use modals in short responses:
  *'Are they at home now?' 'They **might** be.'*
  *'I expect Debbie was very pleased with her results.' 'Yes, she **must** have been.'*
- In short responses, ***do*** often replaces other verbs:
  *'Has he gone home?' 'He may have **done**.'*

Practice

35 Complete the sentences with ***can, could, may, might, will, should, ought to*** or ***must*** and an infinitive in the appropriate form.

1 Kerry's rather late. She .*must have missed*. (miss) the train.

2 Travellers' cheques .*can/may be exchanged*. (be exchanged) at most banks.

3 They're not answering the phone so they .... (be) out.

4 Don't phone her now. It .... (be) the middle of the night in Australia.

5 They .... (not move) house yet. I saw them in town this morning.

6 I haven't seen Molly this week. I think she .... (visit) her parents but I'm not sure.

7 Her exam results are coming out soon. She worked very hard so she .... (do) well.

8 That woman's just fallen over. Let's go and see her: she .... (be) hurt.

9 I don't know where she is. She .... (not still play) tennis: it's been dark for the last hour.

10 I sent the letter two days ago so he .... (get) it by now, but you can never be sure.

11 The encyclopaedias .... (be found) on the second floor of the library.

12 Jim's been very quiet since his girlfriend went away. He .... (miss) her.

13 I .... (come) and visit you at the weekend. Anyway, I'll give you a ring to let you know.

14 She was with a man I didn't recognize. It .... (be) her brother because he looked a bit like her.

15 The roads are fairly quiet today so we .... (have) a good journey.

16 'Do you think Josephine .... (be) at home now?'

'No, she .... She .... (have) a swim. She always does at this time in the morning.'

17 'Why do you think Tricia was in such a hurry?'

'I don't know. She .... (run) to catch the bus.'

18 These glasses .... (be) Tim's: they look a bit like his.

19 It .... (not rain): the ground's completely dry.

20 I .... (join) the sports club in the summer but I haven't decided yet.

21 What a terrible thing to have happened. You .... (be) terrified.

22 I told her you were coming so she .... (expect) you.

23 They've just rung the bell so the children .... (be) out of the classrooms in a minute.

24 That looks like Jack but it .... (not be) him. He went to live in Australia last year.

25 I've got a stomachache this morning. I .... (eat) too much last night or I .... (have) some sort of virus.

36 Advice, obligation, necessity: *should, ought to, must, have to, have got to, need*

- To give advice, use ***should*** or ***ought to***. ***Should*** is used more frequently.
  Should/Ought to = that course of action would be a good idea; it would be the best thing to do. It can refer to present time or to future time:
  *You **should/ought to** try and lose some weight.*
  *We **should/ought to** be leaving soon.*
  *You **shouldn't/oughtn't to** take any notice of him. He always upsets you.*
  ***Should** we/**Ought** we **to** tell Ann where we're going?*

  We often use ***should/ought to*** with *I think .../Do you think ...?/Don't you think...?*
  *Don't you think you **should/ought to** stop seeing him?*

  We sometimes use *I **should*** ... (NOT ~~*I **ought to***~~) to give advice to someone else when there is an implied condition *if I were you*:
  *Everything's going to be allright. I **should** stop worrying about it. (if I were you)*

- To give strong advice and recommendations, use ***must***. It can refer to present time or to future time.
  *You **must** go and see that film; it's fantastic.*
  *You really **must** try to forget him.*
  *You **mustn't** let him talk to you like that.*
  *We **must** go and visit them more often.*
  *You **must** come and stay with us sometime.* (Here it is used to give a casual invitation.)

- To criticize actions in the past, use ***should*** or ***ought to*** + perfect infinitive.
  Should/Ought to in the past means that the subject did not do the right thing:
  *I **should** have stayed at home.* (= I didn't stay at home and my behaviour was wrong.)
  *You **shouldn't** have said that.* (= You said that and it was the wrong thing to have said.)
  *They **shouldn't** have been talking when the exam started.*
  ***Should** I have phoned you back?*

- To talk about obligation, use ***must, mustn't*** or ***have to***.
  Have to is not a modal verb. It is an ordinary verb and it can be used in any form.
  Must and ***have to*** are often interchangeable but there is sometimes a difference between them.
  Have to – the obligation is often external, it comes from the situation:
  *We **have to** get up early tomorrow to catch the plane.*
  (The time of the plane is the reason for the obligation.)
  Must – the obligation comes from the speaker or writer of the sentence. This may be an individual or some kind of authority:
  *We **must** get up early tomorrow. We've got a lot to do.*
  (We are imposing the obligation on ourselves.)
  *Passengers **must** fasten their seat belts.*
  (The obligation is imposed by the airline who wrote the notice.)
  *Children **must** wear school uniform at all times when they are in school.*
  *You **mustn't** smoke in here.*
  *We'll **have to** get there before 5 o'clock because the shops close then.*
  *Do you **have to** pay for the tickets in advance?*

- We can also use ***have got to*** to express obligation.
  Have got to is often interchangeable with ***have to*** but there is sometimes a difference.
  Have to can be used for habitual actions and single actions:
  *I **have to** get the bus into work today.*
  *I **have to** get the bus into work every day.*
  Have got to can only be used for single actions:
  *I **have got to** get the bus into work today.*
  (NOT ~~*I **have got to** get the bus into work every day*~~.)

- To express a negative obligation, use ***mustn't***.
  Do not use ***don't have to***. ***Don't have to*** means there is no obligation:
  *You **mustn't** wait here.* (You are not allowed to wait here.)
  *You **don't have to** wait here.* (It is not necessary for you to wait here but you can if you want to.)

- To express obligation in the past, use ***had to***:
  *I **had to** report the incident to the police.*
  *Did you **have to** get a visa?*

Note: ***Must*** + perfect infinitive is not used to talk about past obligation. It is used to make deductions about the past: *She **must have left** early.*

- To express necessity, use ***need***.
  We can use ***need*** as a modal verb in questions and negative sentences. It is most often used in the negative:
  *You **needn't** come if you don't want to.*
  ***Need** I bring anything with me?*
  We can also use ***need*** as an ordinary verb, followed by the ***to***-infinitive:
  *You **don't need** to come if you don't want to.*
  ***Do** I **need** to bring anything with me?*
  *Everyone **needs** to eat fresh fruit and vegetables.*
  *I'**ll need** to buy some new clothes if I get that job.*

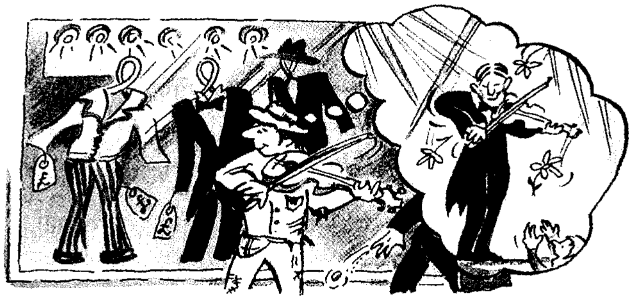

- To express lack of necessity in the past, use ***needn't*** + perfect infinitive or ***didn't need to/didn't have to*** + infinitive. There is some difference between them:
  *I **needn't** have gone to the station so early. The train was nearly an hour late.* (It wasn't necessary to go to the station early but I didn't realise that and so I did get there early.)
  *We **didn't need to/didn't have to** get up early this morning because we had no lectures.* (It wasn't necessary and so we didn't do it.)

Note: We do not use ***need*** + perfect infinitive in the positive.

Practice

36 Complete the sentences using the modals ***should***, ***ought to***, ***must***, ***need*** or the verb ***have to*** in the correct tense and form. Put the infinitive into the appropriate form.

1 We ..had to leave.. (leave) at 11 o'clock last night because the last bus went at 11.20.

2 I don't think you ..should /ought to offer. (offer) to help him. You've got enough work to do yourself.

3 They .... (not pay) to stay in a hotel. They can stay with us.

4 We've been staying in a hotel for the last two weeks so we .... (not cook) our own meals.

5 You .... (come round) for dinner one evening. We haven't had a good talk for a long time.

6 We .... (run) all the way to the station because we were late for the train.

7 It's your own fault that you're so tired. You .... (not go) to bed so late.

8 Why .... the prisoners .... (be locked) in their cells all day?

9 Hurry up. You .... (not have) a bath now. The taxi's coming in twenty minutes.

10 You .... (not tell) him what happened. He would never forgive us.

11 You .... (not allow) Max to walk home from school every day on his own. He's too young.

12 I don't like .... (do) everything my boss tells me to do.

13 You .... (go) to that new French restaurant in town. It's the best restaurant I've ever been to.

14 Tom .... (not get up) early in the morning but everyone else in the house does.

15 If I fail any one of my exams, I .... (take) all of them again in November.

16 You .... (work) when I came into the room, not talking.

17 I .... (tell) him what you really think of him next time you see him if I were you.

18 The wedding's been cancelled so I ....
.... (not buy) that new suit: it was a waste of money.

19 I .... (take) the children to school every morning before I go to work.

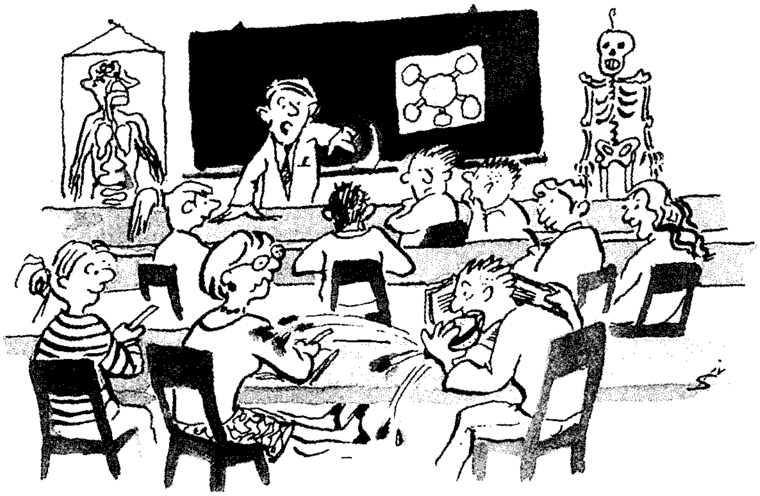

20 You .... (not eat) in the lecture halls: it's against the college regulations.

21 I'd like you to come to the meeting but you ....
.... (not come) if you don't want to.

22 This letter .... (be hidden) where no-one will ever find it. Its contents
.... (remain) a secret for ever.

23 .... (you/wear) a uniform at work?

24 Please don't say any more. I already know the truth so you
.... (not lie to me).

25 Employees .... (follow) the safety regulations.

37 Offers, requests, permission, suggestions: *can, could, may, might, would, must, shall, would you mind*

- To ask permission or make a request, use:

ASKING PERMISSION
Can } I ...? informal
Could
May
Might ↓ formal

*'**Can** I borrow your pen, please?' 'Yes, of course you **can**.'*
*'Do you think I **could** leave my bag here?' 'Yes, certainly.'*
*'**May** I use your phone, please?' 'Yes, of course you **may**.'*

MAKING A REQUEST
Can } you ... ?
Could
Would

*'**Could** you open the door for me, please?' 'Yes, of course.'*

Would you mind + | gerund ...?
| ***if I*** + verb in present or past ...?

'***Would you mind*** | *opening the window?'* | *'No, of course not.'*
| ***if I*** *open/opened the window?'* |

- To give or refuse permission, use:
You can/can't/may/may not/must/mustn't ...:

*You **can** stay here if you want to.*
*You **may** borrow these books whenever you like.*
*You **can** go out but you must be back by midnight.*
*I'm afraid you **can't** wait in here.*

These modals can also be used to give permission or make prohibitions in the third person, e.g. in written rules:
*Each player **may** look at the cards once.*
*Candidates **must not** start writing until the examiner tells them to.*

- To make an offer, use:
Can/Shall I, we ...? Would you like ...?
I'll ..., (shall I?), May I ...? (more formal)
Can *I help you?*
Shall *I carry that for you?*
Would you like *some tea?*
Would you like *me to help you?*
I'll *make you some breakfast,* ***shall I?***
May *I take your coat?*

- To make a suggestion or an invitation, use:
Shall we ...?, We could ... ., Would you like to ...?:
*'**Shall we** go out for a meal tonight?' 'Yes, that would be nice.'*
*'**We could** have a game of tennis this afternoon.' 'Yes, OK, why not?'*
*'**Would you like to** come round tomorrow?' 'Yes, I would.'*

Practice

37 Write what to say using ***can, could, may, might, shall, must, would, would you like, would you mind***. There may be several possible answers.

1 Offer to open the door for a stranger.

Shall I open the door for you?

2 Ask someone to answer the phone for you.

Would you answer the phone for me, please?

3 Invite a friend to go for a swim this morning.

....

4 Offer to make someone a sandwich.

....

5 Request an appointment to see your bank manager, Ms Arnold.

....

....

6 Give someone permission to use your phone.

....

7 Suggest going for a picnic this afternoon.

....

8 Ask someone to wait here for you.

....

9 Give your son permission to go out but tell him to be back before dark.

....

....

10 You are in a train. Ask another passenger if you can open the window.

....

11 You are the teacher. Give your students permission to work outside today but tell them not to talk too much.

....

....

12 Offer to answer the phone.

....

13 Ask a friend for a pen.

....

38 Habit

would and *used to*

- ***used to*** is not a modal. It is formed like this:
  *I **used to** work there.*
  *I **didn't use to** work there.*
  ***Did** you **use to** work there?*
- Use ***would*** and ***used to*** to talk about past habits:
  *When we were children, my brother and I **used to** fight all the time.*
  *When we were children, my brother and I **would** fight all the time.*
- When we use ***would*** to talk about a past habit, it is necessary to use a past time reference. ***Used to*** can be used with or without a past time reference.
  *I **used** to go out a lot.*
  (NOT ~~*I **would** go out a lot*~~.)
  *Before I got this job, I **used to/would** go out a lot.*
- When we talk about past situations (not actions), we can use ***used to*** but we can't use ***would***:
  *We **used to** live in a flat in the town centre.*
  (NOT ~~*We **would** live in a flat in the town centre*~~).
  *She **used to** have long hair but now she wears it short.*

Practice

38 Complete the sentences with ***would*** or ***used to***. Where either form is possible, write them both. Where there is a word in brackets, put it in the correct position.

1 I ..used to.. have lots of free time before I started working here.

2 In the long summer holidays, we ..used to/would.. go out somewhere with a picnic every day.

3 When I was a newly-trained teacher, I .... work till late every night preparing lessons.

4 They .... be happy together but they're not now.

5 When they came to London, they .... (never) travel anywhere on the tube.

6 When I had a car, I .... drive everywhere, but now I'm much fitter because I always walk or cycle.

7 During my last year at university, I .... go to the library to start work at 9 o'clock every morning.

8 When we shared a flat together, we .... (often) stay up talking late into the night.

9 When Amy was a baby, people .... (often) come up to me and tell me how beautiful she was.

10 He .... be very overweight but he's much slimmer now.

11 When I was at school, I .... (never) do my weekend homework until Sunday evening.

12 I .... work in the same department as your sister.

13 When I was a teenager, I .... (often) spend the whole evening just listening to music.

14 She .... have a lot of boyfriends when she was younger.

15 He .... go for a run every day.

Gerunds and infinitives

39 Gerunds and infinitives: uses

The gerund

USES

- Subject of a verb:
  Smoking *is bad for you.*
- Object of a verb:
  Do you like ***cooking****?*
- The complement of ***to be***:
  His favourite activity is ***watching*** *television.*
- After prepositions:
  She's very good at ***listening*** *to people.*
- After determiners (***a***, ***the***, ***this***, ***some***, ***a lot of***):
  The ***bombing*** *of civilians horrified everyone.*
- After possessive adjectives, object pronouns or nouns:
  I hope you don't mind his/him/John ***coming*** *here.*
- After adjectives:
  Regular ***swimming*** *is very good for you.*
  It was awful ***working*** *there.*
- In certain expressions:
  It's no use ***trying*** *to help her.*
  Is this for ***peeling*** *vegetables?*
  How about ***going out*** *for a meal tonight?*
  There are some jobs I hate, like ***washing*** *and* ***ironing*** *the clothes.*
  We usually go ***fishing*** *at the weekend.*
  No ***smoking***

Notes

- Gerunds can take objects and can be qualified by adverbs.
  I enjoy ***reading*** *new books.*
  gerund object

  You should stop ***working*** *so hard.*
  gerund adverb
- The negative gerund form is ***not*** + gerund:
  It's nice ***not being*** *at work.*

The infinitive

USES

- After certain verbs:
  They agreed ***to come****.*
- After certain verbs + person (object):
  I asked her ***to come*** *here.*

- After ***to be***:
  *My first thought was **to phone** you.*
- To express purpose:
  *I came here **to tell** you the good news.*
- After ***be*** + adjective (+ ***of*** + noun/pronoun):
  *It was nice **to see** you.*
  *It's kind of you **to help** me.*
  *She's very keen **to do** the course.*
- After ***the first/second/last/only/best*** (and other superlative adjectives) + noun or pronoun '***one***':
  *He was the only one **to die**.*
- After a noun/pronoun. The verb in the infinitive relates to the preceding noun/pronoun:
  *There's a lot of work **to do**.*
  *I've got a few people **to see**.*
- After verbs of knowing and believing:
  verb + object + infinitive
  or
  verb in the passive + infinitive
  *I know him **to be** an honest man.*
  *He is known **to be** an honest man.*
  *We consider it **to be** our duty.*
  *It is considered **to be** our duty.*
- After verb + question word:
  *I don't know what **to do**.*
- After ***too*** + adjective and after adjective + ***enough***:
  *He's too ill **to come**.*
  *The garden isn't big enough **to play** games in.*
- After ***is/are*** to describe a future event:
  *He is **to become** Mayor next month.*

Notes

- Infinitives can take objects and can be qualified by adverbs:
  *He expects **to win** the race easily.*
  infinitive object adverb
- The negative infinitive form is ***not*** + (***to–***) infinitive:
  *He agreed **not to tell** anyone.*

Verb + infinitive, verb + gerund

The ***to***–infinitive after a verb often describes a future event, an event following the main verb. For example, after ***hope***, ***expect***, ***promise***, ***want***, the event in the ***to***–infinitive comes after the activity or thought in the main verb:
*I hope **to see** you next week.*

The gerund describes an activity. It does not indicate a time sequence:
*We enjoyed **seeing** you last weekend.*

Practice

39a In your notebook, copy the table and put the following verbs into the correct columns.

~~apologize~~, ~~arrange~~, ~~avoid~~, approve, decide, demand, discourage, dream, enjoy, expect, finish, help, hope, imagine, enquire, insist, intend, invite, learn, would like, look forward, manage, mind, miss, object, offer, plan, pretend, refuse, seem, succeed, want, wish

Verb (+ person) + infinitive	*Verb + preposition + gerund*	*Verb + gerund*
arrange (for s.o.)	*apologize for*	*avoid*

39b Put the verbs in brackets into the infinitive or the gerund.

1 He has promised *to deliver* (deliver) it to me this afternoon.
2 I've invited Mark and Anna .... (stay) for the weekend.
3 I don't mind .... (stay) at home to look after the children.
4 Has she decided .... (take) that job?
5 He's always complaining about .... (work) too hard.
6 He claims .... (be) her brother but I think he's lying.
7 Why are you blaming me for .... (get) lost? You've got the map.
8 We don't believe in .... (buy) each other big presents.
9 I know you don't approve of .... (smoke) so I won't smoke in here.
10 The doctor told me .... (stay) in bed but it's so boring.
11 Don't keep on .... (talk) about it. It's upsetting me.
12 It's raining outside. Would you prefer .... (stay in)?
13 My boss told me .... (not leave) the office before five.

14 It's very nice here but I miss .... (see) my friends.

15 I don't recommend .... (study) on your own.

16 I've always dreamed of .... (live) in a cottage in the country.

17 Sometimes I think you enjoy .... (upset) me.

18 I regret .... (not keep) in touch with my old friends.

19 I'm not expecting him .... (phone) me tonight but I hope he does.

20 Don't forget .... (lock up) when you go to bed.

40 The bare infinitive

We generally use ***to*** with the infinitive, e.g. *I want **to see** you*. However, in some cases, we use the bare infinitive: that is, the infinitive without ***to***.

USES

- After modals and after the auxiliaries ***do/did***:
  *You must **come**.*
  *They may **arrive** soon.*
  *Did you **pass** the exam?*
- After ***Let's*** ...:
  [us]
  *Let's **go** out tonight.*
- After ***make*** + noun/pronoun object:
  *He made me **come** here.*
- After ***would rather***:
  *I'd rather **walk** there than take the bus.*
  *I'd rather **not stay** out late tonight.*
- After ***had better***:
  *We'd better **go** home now.*
- After ***Why not ...?***:
  *Why not **phone** me tomorrow?*

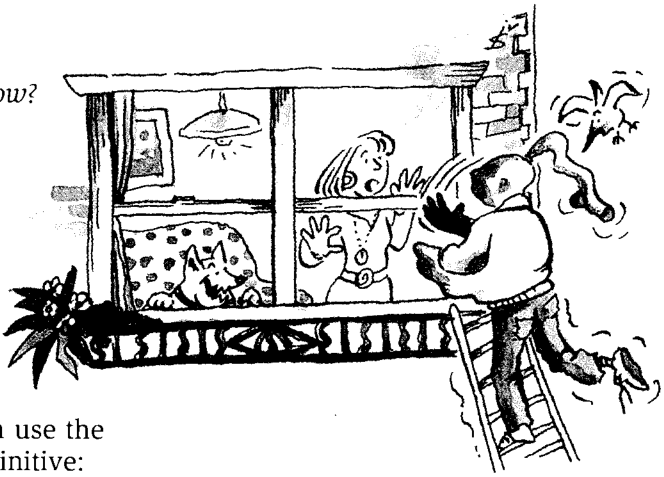

- After the verb ***help***, we can use the ***to***-infinitive or the bare infinitive:
  *Can you help me (**to**) **open** this?*

- After a verb of perception (*see, watch, notice, feel, hear*) + object:
  I didn't hear you ***come in***.

Note: Present participles also come after verbs of perception. See page 116.

- When there is a series of infinitives after a verb:
  I'd like to come and ***see*** *you.*

Practice

40 In your notebook, copy the dialogue underlining all the infinitives and adding ***to*** where it is required.

Two friends, Alex and Megan, are talking.

A: Megan, where were you last night? I tried *to find* you but I couldn't *see* you anywhere. James says he didn't see you come in to the party.
M: Yes Alex, that's right. I'm sorry. My parents wouldn't let me come out last night. I wanted see you – honestly I did.
A: Why did your parents make you stay in? They usually allow you go out in the evenings, don't they?
M: Yes, but I hadn't finished doing my homework. And they refused let me go out until I had.
A: Oh dear, poor you. Oh well, never mind. Let's do something tonight instead.
M: OK. Actually, I'd like see that new film.
A: Would you? I suppose it might be quite good but I'd rather just go out to the cafe. I was hoping have a chance talk to you properly.
M: Well, why not do both? We could go to the early showing of the film and then go to the cafe.
A: I'm not sure I can afford go to the cinema.
M: That's all right. I've got some money.
A: So what time would you like meet, then?
M: Six o'clock I suppose – in the cinema. I'll try get there a bit earlier and buy the tickets.

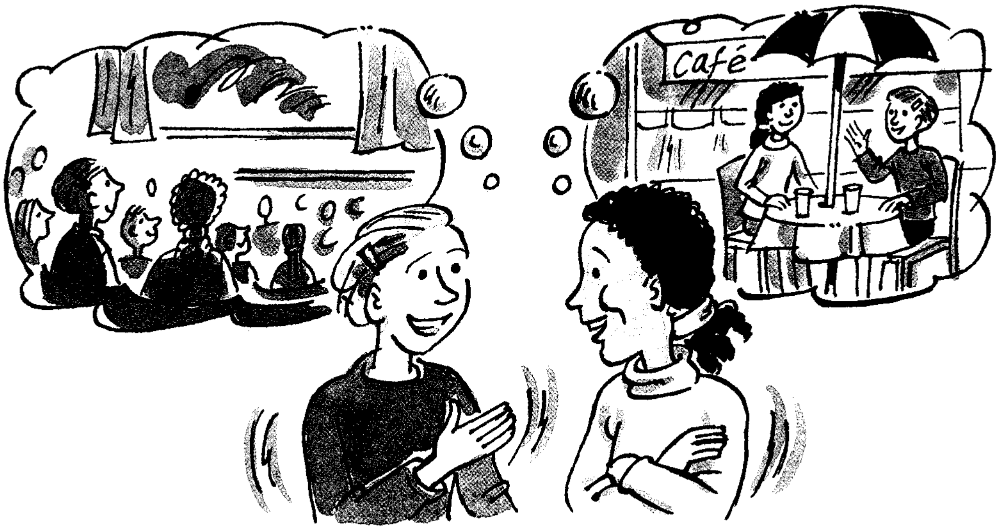

41 Verbs of perception + object + *ing* or the bare infinitive

Verbs of perception (***see, notice, look at, watch, feel, hear, listen to***) can be followed by the ***ing*** form or the bare infinitive. The verb ***smell*** can only be followed by the ***ing*** form:
The use of the bare infinitive describes the complete action:
I watched her ***play*** *tennis.* (I saw the whole game.)

The use of the ***ing*** form describes the action in progress:
I watched her ***playing*** *tennis.* (I saw the game in progress.)

The ***ing*** form after a verb of perception is a present participle. Verb of perception + present participle is more common than verb of perception + bare infinitive. The difference between the use of the present participle and the use of the bare infinitive is often very small:
I always hear the birds ***singing*** *in the mornings.*
I always hear the birds ***sing*** *in the mornings.*

Note: We use a few other verbs with the present participle: ***find, discover, catch, leave, keep.*** These verbs cannot be followed by the bare infinitive:
I found her ***looking*** *in my desk.*

Practice

41 Rewrite the following pairs of sentences as one sentence, using the ***ing*** form or a bare infinitive.

1 I saw you the other day. You were cycling to work.

I saw you cycling to work the other day.

2 I heard him early this morning. He left the house.

I heard him leave the house early this morning.

3 She stood there and watched him. He drove away.

....

4 Did you notice me? I was crying.

....

5 I've often seen you. You've been walking along the beach with your dog.

....

....

6 Have you ever heard him? He plays the saxophone.

....

7 I expect to find you when I get back. You'll be working hard.

....

....

8 Did you hear me? I arrived.

....

9 I looked at the child and felt very sad. She was smiling up at me.

....

....

10 We heard them. They were arguing all night.

....

11 I can feel my hands. They're shaking.

....

12 I watched you and then I left. You went to sleep.

....

13 I never really noticed your hair. It was going grey.

....

14 I can smell smoke. It's coming in through the windows.

....

15 He watches me every weekend. I play football.

....

42 Verbs followed by the *to*–infinitive or the gerund

Some verbs can be followed by the ***to***–infinitive or the gerund, with some change in meaning.

BE
My favourite watersport ***is wind-surfing****.*
(The gerund behaves like a noun and describes an activity.)
Our plan ***is to close*** *the factory down next year.*
(The ***to***–infinitive describes a complete event. It often describes a future event and is frequently used after words like *plan, aim, intention, decision, solution.*)

REMEMBER
I ***remembered to give*** *her the message.*
(I remembered first and then I gave her the message.)
I ***remember giving*** *her the message.*
(I gave her the message and now I remember that I did that.)

FORGET
I ***forgot to go*** *to that meeting.*
(I forgot and so I didn't go.)
I ***forget going*** *to that meeting.*
(I forget now that I went.)

TRY
I ***tried to open*** *the door but it was locked.*
(I tried to do it, but I couldn't. The attempt failed.)
I couldn't open the door so I ***tried using*** *a different key.*
(***Try doing something*** suggests an experiment. I experimented with using a different key. The result may have been a success or a failure.)

REGRET
*I **regret to say** that your interview was not successful.*
(*I am sorry to say … .* ***Regret*** is quite formal here.)
*I really **regret being** so rude to her.*
(The speaker looks back to an action that took place in the past. The regretting takes place now.)

STOP
*We **stopped to have** a cup of tea.*
(The ***to***-infinitive describes purpose. It introduces the reason why we stopped.)
*We **stopped talking** when she came in.*
(Talking is what we were doing. That is what we stopped doing.)

GO ON
*After an unsuccessful first year at university, he **went on to get** a first-class degree.*
(***go on*** + ***to***-infinitive = move to something different.)
*We **went on talking** all night.*
(***go on*** + gerund = continue doing the same thing)

LIKE / DISLIKE / LOVE / HATE
*I **like going** for a run before work.*
(I enjoy the activity of going for a run before work. I may or may not do it regularly.)
*I **like to go** for a run before work.*
(Describes a regular activity. I like it because I think it's a good idea. I may or may not enjoy the activity while I am actually doing it.)

PREFER
*I don't go out much. I **prefer to stay** at home in the evenings.*
*I don't go out much. I **prefer staying** at home in the evenings.*
(The meaning of these two sentences is very similar.)
*I **prefer staying in** to **going out**.*
(We cannot say: ~~*I prefer to stay in to go out*~~.)
***I'd prefer to stay in** tonight.*
(***Would prefer*** is followed by the infinitive and refers to a specific occasion. NOT ~~***I'd prefer staying in***~~ tonight.)

BEGIN / START / CONTINUE
*He **began/started/continued shouting**.*
*He **began/started/continued to shout**.*
(The meaning of these two sentences is very similar.)

ADVISE / ALLOW / ENCOURAGE / FORBID / RECOMMEND
*They **advised** us **to leave**.*
*They **advised leaving**.*
(These verbs are usually followed by an object [name of a person or a personal pronoun] + ***to***-infinitive. Occasionally they have no object. In that case, they take a gerund.)

NEED
I ***need to get up*** *early tomorrow.*
(It is necessary for me to do it.)
The car ***needs cleaning****.*
(***Need*** + gerund has a passive meaning. Someone needs to clean the car: it doesn't matter who does it.)

Practice

42 Complete the following texts putting the verbs into the gerund or the ***to***-infinitive.

1 Caroline and Simone, two friends, are talking.

C: Would you like [1] to go out (go out) for a meal tonight?

S: Yes, that would be nice. I just need [2]...................... (wash) my hair first.

C: Shall we go to Perry's?

S: I'd prefer [3]...................... (go) somewhere else. Don't you remember [4]...................... (send) the food back last time we went there? It was terrible.

C: Oh yes, I'd forgotten. We decided to stop [5]...................... (go) there, didn't we?

S: Yes, we did. So I've got another suggestion. Sally recommended [6]...................... (try) that new French restaurant, Chez Victor. She said it was very good. We'll go there, shall we?

C: OK. That's a good idea.

2

Dear Ms Walters,

Thank you for your application for the diploma in tourism but I regret [7]........................... (inform) you that this course is now full. Should you wish to take the course elsewhere, I would advise you [8]........................... (apply) to Central College. They started [9]........................... (run) a course in tourism a year ago and I would recommend you [10]........................... (consider) [11]........................... (enrol) on that course rather than [12]........................... (wait) another year to do a course here. If you would prefer [13]........................... (wait) for this course, then I would encourage you [14]........................... (try) [15]........................... (find) some work related to tourism so that you can start [16]........................... (acquire) some relevant experience.

3 Gareth and Vincent, two friends, are talking.

G: Did you remember [17]....................... (book) the tickets for that concert?

V: Yes, I did, but the problem now is [18]....................... (get) there. My mother says I'm not allowed [19]....................... (borrow) the car this weekend, so I don't know what to do. What about your old motorbike?

G: No, I'm afraid it needs [20]....................... (repair). I could try [21]....................... (ask) my brother if we can have his car. You never know – he might agree.

V: I doubt it. And the tickets were so expensive. I regret [22]....................... (buy) them now. I'm sure we've just wasted the money.

G: I'm sure we haven't. We just need [23]....................... (give) the problem some thought.

V: Actually, I remember [24]....................... (walk) there one night. Mind you, it took about two hours, and we did get a lift home.

G: OK, so we could walk if necessary. Just stop [25]....................... (worry) and start [26]....................... (think).

43 Preposition + gerund

- After prepositions, we use the gerund.
  Preposition + gerund:
  ***After reading** the letter, he changed his mind.*
  *You shouldn't have gone there **without telling** me.*

  Adjective/noun + preposition + gerund:
  *Are you **interested in applying** for this job?*
  *He's expressed a lot of **interest in applying** for this job.*

  Verb + preposition + gerund/phrasal verb + gerund:
  *They **succeeded in getting** the new contract.*
  *She **apologized for upsetting** him.*
  *They **carried on working**.*

  Verb + object (person/personal pronoun) + preposition + gerund:
  *We **dissuaded him from writing** the letter.*
  *She **accused me of cheating**.*

  Verb + preposition + object pronoun or possessive adjective + gerund:
  *My boss **complained about me/my arriving** late last week.*
  *They **agreed on us/our sharing** the expenses.*
  Also: ***What about me/my coming** to see you tomorrow?*

Note: We use an object pronoun (**me**, **us**) more often than a possessive adjective (**my**, **our**) after a preposition. The use of a possessive adjective is rather formal.

Note: **to** may be part of the ***to***-infinitive or it may be a preposition preceding a gerund:
*We're hoping **to see** you this weekend.*
We're looking forward to seeing you this weekend.

Practice

43a Complete the sentences with the correct preposition and the gerund.

1 Don't try and discourage me .*from doing*. (do) what I want to do.

2 I'd like to enquire .... (enrol) on one of your evening courses.

3 She seems very excited .... (start) that new job.

4 Are you thinking .... (leave) him?

5 I think we're all in agreement .... (cut) our costs.

6 She lives on her own but she relies .... the neighbours .... (help) her.

7 She insisted .... (pay) the bill.

8 I expect he's very depressed .... (lose) his job.

9 I think you should apologize .... (not tell) me the truth.

10 I've never approved .... young people .... (stay out) late.

11 Stop talking and get on .... (write) your essays.

12 Why do you always blame me .... (start) the arguments?

13 It's lovely here. It's a great improvement .... (live) in that awful flat.

14 I warned them .... (buy) that car.

15 They're planning .... (expand) the company.

43b Complete the sentences with the infinitive or the gerund.

1 She's hoping to .*finish*.. (finish) writing her thesis soon.

2 Are you looking forward to .*seeing*.. (see) James again?

3 The Government are opposed to .... (spend) more money on public transport.

4 I've been waiting to .... (see) you for ages.

5 Alison has persuaded me not to .... (do) it.

6 It's very difficult for him because he's not used to .... (speak) English.

7 Have you never wanted to .... (get) married?

8 In addition to .... (work) such long hours, she also does all the jobs in the house.

9 I've been thinking about it all night, but I'm no closer to .... (find) a solution.

10 It was very unfortunate that you forgot to .... (post) that letter.

11 The key to .... (sleep) soundly is to have regular exercise.

12 I don't know why you object to .... (work) with her. She seems very nice.

13 When did you decide to .... (give up) the course?

14 This problem is similar to .... (have) problems with money: it's not a problem until you find you haven't got any.

15 They're proposing to .... (open) a new airport just outside the town.

44 *be* + adjective + infinitive

- ***be*** + adjective + ***to***–infinitive:
  The verb in the infinitive often refers to an event in the future:
  *He **is keen to change** his job.*
  *They**'re willing to lend** us the money.*
  *We**'re sure to have** a good time.*

- ***be*** + adjective of feeling + ***to***–infinitive:
  *I**'m pleased to see** you.*
  *We **were sorry to hear** your news.*

- ***be*** + adjective describing personal characteristic + (**of** person) + ***to***–infinitive:
  *It **was silly of her to say** that.*
  *It**'s good of you to come.***
  *It **was selfish of me to ignore** you.*

- ***be*** + adjective describing the activity + ***to***–infinitive:
  *This book **is** very **difficult to read**.*
  *She**'s** very **amusing to talk** to.*

Note: After adjectives like *nice, lovely, great, wonderful, awful* and *horrible,* we can use the ***ing*** form (present participle) or the ***to***–infinitive:
*It's **nice seeing** you.*
*It's **nice to see** you.*
The ***ing*** form describes the activity in progress and the ***to***–infinitive describes the whole event. But in practice, the use of the two forms is very similar.

Practice

44 Rewrite the sentences using ***be*** + adjective + ***to***-infinitive.

1 We're going to leave. We're ready.
We're ready to leave.

2 He's afraid of telling her the truth.
....

3 I received your letter. I was delighted.
....

4 I heard about their divorce. I was surprised.
....

5 You shouldn't interrupt people. It's rude.
....

6 You brought those flowers. It was very kind of you.
....

7 Heating this house is very expensive.
....

8 I saw you last night. It was lovely.
....

9 Having interests outside work is important.
....

10 That child learns very quickly.
....

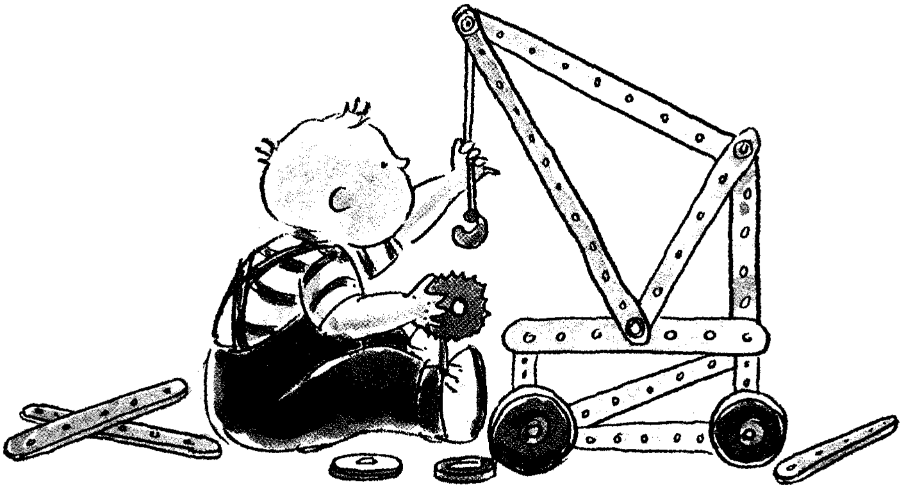

45 The infinitive and gerund: mixed uses

Before doing the next exercise, re-read the list of uses on pages 111-113.

Practice

45 Put the verbs in the dialogue into the *to*–infinitive or the gerund.

Helen has been called to the office of her boss, Andrea.

A: Take a seat, Helen. Would you like [1].to have. (have) some coffee?

H: Er, no thank you.

A: I asked [2]................................. (see) you [3]................................. (talk) about your work. I think there are a few things that we need [4]................................. (discuss).

H: Oh dear. Is there some problem? I do love [5]................................. (work) here and I think I'm getting better at [6]................................. (do) the job.

A: Yes, I'm sure you are, Helen, but sometimes you are rather slow [7]................................. (learn). In a hotel of this reputation, we cannot afford [8]................................. (make) mistakes and I am sorry [9]................................. (say) that you have made rather a lot. There are some things you are very good at, like [10]................................. (welcome) the guests, [11]................................. (talk) to them and [12]................................. (give) them any help they require.

H: That's true. I was rather shy when I first started [13]................................. (work) here but now I'm much better at [14].................................

(communicate) with the guests. They have often said to me that it is nice [15]................................... (see) such a friendly face at reception.

A: That's good. It's true [16]................................... (say) that you have got much better at [17]................................... (deal) with people. But you do not pay enough attention to [18]................................... (ensure) that the administrative part of your job is carried out efficiently.

H: [19]................................... (Keep) the records is not my favourite part of the job, I must admit.

A: But it's essential [20]................................... (do) that properly. It's no use [21]................................... (be) nice to all the guests if you are creating problems for them by [22]................................... (fail) [23]................................... (carry out) your job efficiently. I know there is a lot of work [24]................................... (do) at reception, but last week you made three mistakes with the billing. That's not good enough.

H: Yes, I'm sorry about that, but sometimes the bills are very complicated [25]................................... (work out).

A: I know, but we can't make mistakes and that's that. And what about you [26]................................... (accept) that booking for the penthouse suite at the weekend when we were using it for a conference? It was very careless of you [27]................................... (do) that. I had to do a lot of [28]................................... (apologize) [29]................................... (calm down) those guests. They were furious.

H: Yes, it was terrible. I do try [30]................................... (get) everything right but I can't help [31]................................... (make) mistakes sometimes. I just don't know what [32]................................... (do) about it.

A: Well, I do. You've got a month [33]................................... (prove) to me that you can do the job efficiently, and if you can't, you'll have [34]................................... (start) [35]................................... (look) for another job.

46 Different forms of the gerund and the infinitive

The gerund and the infinitive can be used in the following forms:

Gerund

gerund	*doing*
perfect gerund	*having done*
passive gerund	*being done*
perfect passive gerund	*having been done*

Infinitive

infinitive	*(to) do*
continuous infinitive	*(to) be doing*
perfect infinitive	*(to) have done*
perfect continuous infinitive	*(to) have been doing*
passive infinitive	*(to) be done*
perfect passive infinitive	*(to) have been done*

Practice

46 Complete the sentences with the appropriate form of the gerund or the infinitive.

1 His greatest ambition is .to be chosen. (choose) to take part in the Olympics.

2 .... (accept) for that course changed my life.

3 Please come in. I'm sorry .... (keep) you waiting.

4 It is understood that the escaped prisoner might .... (hide) in a friend's house for the last month.

5 I saw Amy last night. She seems .... (get) much better.

6 He denied .... (say) it to me.

7 We congratulated him on .... (get) the job.

8 I hope .... (live) in my own house in five years' time.

9 The children are looking forward to .... (film) for that television programme.

10 I'm sorry I wasn't in when you came round. I would like .... (see) you.

11 I can't see Tony. He seems .... (leave).

12 He denied .... (take part) in the robbery.

13 He is suspected of .... (lie) in order to get the job.

14 The Director is understood .... (resign) last week because of the impending fraud investigation.

15 I hate .... (ask) my age.

16 The builders are expecting .... (finish) the job by the time we get back.

17 He was a difficult child, probably due to .... (look after) by a series of different foster parents.

18 She can't .... (dance) with Tim last night. He's got a broken leg.

19 She seems .... (lose) a lot of weight recently, but otherwise I think she's all right.

20 He doesn't respond very well to .... (ask) to do things.

Reported speech

47 Reported statements

In reported speech (also known as indirect speech), the tense used in the speaker's original words is usually (but not always) moved back a tense when the reporting verb (*said, told,* etc.) is in the past. The tense does not change if the reporting verb is in the present, present perfect or future.

Tense changes

Speaker's words		*Reported speech*
present simple	→	past simple
present continuous	→	past continuous
present perfect simple	→	past perfect simple
present perfect continuous	→	past perfect continuous
past simple	→	past perfect simple
past continuous	→	past perfect continuous
past perfect	→	past perfect
going to future	→	*was going to*
shall/will	→	*would*
shall in offers and suggestions	→	*should*
must	→	*had to*
can	→	*could*

Example: *'Sales* ***have dropped*** *dramatically in the last year.'*
A representative said (that) sales ***had dropped*** *dramatically in the last (or previous) year.*

Note: It is possible to omit ***that***.

When the tense doesn't change

The past simple and continuous often remain unchanged in reported speech, in both written and spoken English, if this can be done without causing any confusion about the time of the actions.
It is also possible for other tenses to remain unchanged in reported speech in spoken English.

Past continuous

- The past continuous usually remains unchanged in reported speech:
  'When they arrived, I ***was*** *still* ***cooking*** *the dinner.'*
  He said that when they arrived, he ***was*** *still* ***cooking*** *the dinner.*

*'I **was working** until ten o'clock last night.'*
*She said that she **was working** until ten o'clock last night/the previous night.*

- Where the past continuous is used to refer to an activity that was completed before an event in the past simple or present perfect, we are more likely to change the past continuous to the past perfect continuous:
  *'We **were planning** to go out but then Joe started feeling sick.'*
  *'She said that they **had been planning** to go out but then Joe started/had started feeling sick.*

Past simple

- When the past simple is used in a time clause, it does not generally change. When there is a time clause, the verb in the main clause can remain in the past simple or change to the past perfect:
  *'When I **got** there the place **was** almost empty.'*
  *She said that when she **got** there, the place **was/had been** almost empty.*

- When the past simple is used to refer to a situation that still exists in the present, it does not generally change:
  *'We didn't stay in the hotel because it **was** too expensive.'*
  (And presumably the hotel is still expensive now.)
  *She said that they hadn't stayed in the hotel because it **was** too expensive.*

- In other circumstances it is better to change the past simple to the past perfect in written reporting. However, in oral reporting, it is becoming increasingly common to leave the past simple unchanged:
  *'I **enjoyed** myself last night.'*

Oral reporting:	*Clare said that she **enjoyed** (had enjoyed) herself last night/on Saturday night.*
Written reporting:	*Clare said that she **had enjoyed** herself last night/the previous night/on Saturday night.*

Present tenses

- In oral reporting, it is becoming increasingly common not to change the present tenses if the activity is still going on or the situation still exists at the time of reporting:
  *'Alison**'s living** with her parents now.'*
  *Jo told me that Alison **is living** (was living) with her parents now.*

  *'I can't come to the party because I**'m doing** my homework.'*
  *He said that he can't (couldn't) come to the party because he **was doing** his homework.*

  However, if the party is now finished and he is no longer doing his homework, then we change the tense in reported speech:
  *He said that he couldn't come to the party because he **was doing** his homework.*

  - *'The school **takes on** new students every month.'*

  Assuming that this situation still exists, the verb can stay in the present simple or change to the past simple in oral reporting:
  *The receptionist told me that the school **takes on/took on** new students every month.*

The future

In oral reporting, the future tenses can remain unchanged if the event is still in the future:
*'I'm **meeting** John tonight.'*
*Sheila said that she **is meeting/was meeting** John tonight.*
(Tonight is still in the future.)
BUT
*Sheila said that she **was meeting** John last night.*
(Tonight is now in the past.)

*'We**'re going to launch** a thorough investigation.'*
*The police said that they **are going to/were going to launch** a thorough investigation.*

*'There **will be** no increase in taxes.'*
*The Prime Minister said that there **will/would** be no increase in taxes.*

*'The plane **will be leaving** in thirty-five minutes.'*
*They announced that the plane **will/would be leaving** in thirty-five minutes.*

Time and place changes

It is often necessary to change time, place and other references in reported speech, depending on when and where the reporting takes place in relation to the actual words.

Some common changes

now	→	then
tonight	→	that night
yesterday	→	the day before/on + name of day
tomorrow	→	the following day/the next day/on + name of day
this morning	→	that morning
last week	→	the previous week
next Saturday	→	the following Saturday
ago	→	before/previously
here	→	there
this + the place	→	that/the + the place
this	→	that/the

Note: In the following exercises, you should make the tense changes as for written reporting.

Practice

47 In your notebook, rewrite the sentences in reported speech.

1 'I'll come and see you on Friday if that's all right.' (She said)
She said (that) she would come and see us on Friday if that was all right.
2 'The conference will be spending a considerable time discussing the world debt crisis.' (The statement said)
3 'The shop's closing in half an hour.' (She explained)
4 'He's planning to set up his own business.' (Gareth tells me)
5 'We're going to have to make quite a few cutbacks.' (The managing director said)
6 'The police have been investigating new allegations of fraud.' (A spokesperson said)
7 'When the project first started, there was a lot of interest in it.' (She explained)
8 'It's pouring with rain down here.' (She told me)
9 'I'll have finished writing the report by the time you get here.' (She promised me)
10 'My new computer has made a lot of difference to me.' (She says)
11 'The 8.45 train from Waterloo will be arriving in approximately five minutes.' (The station announcer has just said)
12 'When we were setting up the organisation, we had very little money.' (They told me)
13 'The club lost quite a lot of money last month.' (The treasurer told the meeting)
14 'It will be a very difficult time for all of us.' (He agreed)
15 'You work too hard. You should take more time off.' (He told me)

48 Reported questions

The rules about tense changes apply to questions in the same way as they apply to statements.

- ***Wh*** questions
  The subject and verb are NOT inverted in reported speech:
  *'Why **didn't you tell** me the truth?'*
  inversion

  *She asked me why **I hadn't told** her the truth.*
  subject + verb

- ***Yes/no*** questions
  Put ***if*** or ***whether*** before the subject + verb:
  *'**Have I seen** you before?'*
  *She asked me **if she had seen** me before.*

to–infinitive in reported speech

- In reported requests, advice, commands, etc., use ***to***–infinitive:
  'Can you help me write my speech?'
  *She asked me **to help** her write her speech.*
  'Don't stay out too late.'
  *She told me **not to stay out** too late.*

- When reporting ***shall/should*** questions, we can use ***to***–infinitive after the question word:
  'How much should we give them?'
  He wanted to know how much ***to give*** *them.*
  'What should I buy for Peter?'
  She asked me what ***to buy*** *for Peter.*
  'Should I tell her what happened?'
  He wanted to know whether ***to tell*** *her what had happened.*

Note: We do not use the ***to***–infinitive after ***why*** or ***if***.

Practice

48 Write the following in reported speech.

1 'Where do you think we should advertise? (He asked me)
He asked me where I thought we should advertise.

2 'Are you going to audition for the play?' (Emma asked me)

....

....

3 'Give me a ring if you need any help.' (She told me)

....

....

4 'How is Laura getting on?' (She often asks me ... you ...)

....

....

5 'Shall I ask her out for a meal?' (He's been wondering)

....

....

6 'Why did Matthew look so embarrassed when he saw Carole?' (He asked)

....

....

7 'Must we stay here all evening?' (He asked)

....

....

8 'What are they doing about publicity for the event?' (She wondered)

....

....

9 'Will you send me the report when it's finished?' (He asked me)

....

....

10 'What have you done with the student records?' (She asked me)

....

....

11 'Do you think you could keep your voices down a bit?' (She asked us)

....

....

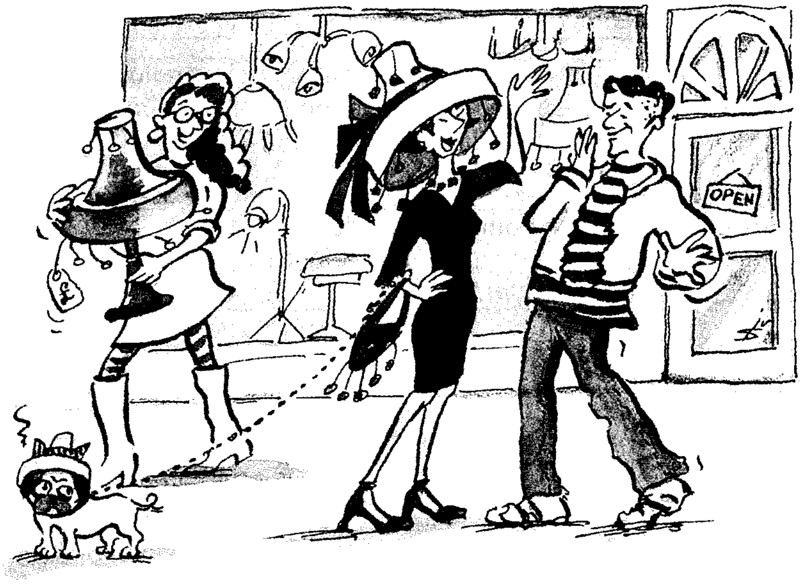

12 'Where did you buy that hat?' (He wanted to know)

....

....

13 'Have you been eating properly?' (The doctor asked me)

....

....

14 'Don't make any noise during the performance.' (They asked us)

....

....

15 'Were you still teaching music when you met Oliver?' (Mike asked me)

....

....

49 Verbs used in reporting

Many different verbs are used in reporting. We do not usually report every word that was said or written and these different verbs can help to summarize the original words:
'Would you like to come and stay for the weekend?'
→ *He **invited** us to stay for the weekend.*

'No, no, I don't want your money. I'm definitely going to pay for the meal and that's that.'
→ *She **insisted** on paying for the meal.*

Examples of verbs used in reporting

advise someone agree decide encourage s.o. invite s.o. offer promise refuse warn s.o. (not to …) remind s.o. persuade s.o.	+ INFINITIVE
accuse s.o. of agree on/about apologize for complain about insist on recommend suggest warn against advise s.o. against dissuade s.o. from persuade s.o. against	+ GERUND
agree complain decide insist recommend suggest (+ should) announce boast claim claim concede	+ *that* clause

Practice

49 Put the sentences into reported speech, summarizing what was said and using the verbs in the box.

decide complain accuse advise apologize
~~offer~~ ~~persuade~~ remind warn refuse

1 'I know you've got a lot of work to do at the moment. I'll help you type up that report if you like,' he said.
He offered to help me type up the report.

2 A: I don't think you should hand in your resignation immediately. Give yourself more time to think about it.
B: OK. I suppose you're right. I'll leave it for a while then.
He persuaded me not to hand in my resignation immediately.

3 'No, I'm not going to discuss it with you. I think it's a waste of time,' he said.

....

4 'I really think I should have been invited to the meeting. I'm very unhappy about the fact that I wasn't,' he said.

....

....

5 'You've been quite ill and you need to recover. I really think you should take it easy for a few days,' the doctor said.

....

....

6 'You must not go near their house again or there will be trouble,' the police said to him.

....

....

7 'After giving the matter some serious thought, we have now reached a final decision. We are going to close down the naval base in two years' time,' said the Ministry of Defence.

....

....

8 'Someone's been reading my diary. I know they have. I found it in the wrong drawer this morning. It was you, wasn't it?'

....

....

9 'Remember that you've got to apply for a new passport. Yours is out of date now,' he said to me.

....

10 'I'm really sorry about all the trouble I've caused. I didn't mean to,' she said.

....

....

50 Summarizing when reporting

When we are reporting, we do not repeat everything that was said or written. As we report, we summarize.

A range of different verbs are used and these help to summarize. (See page 134.)

In addition, we often use adjectives to describe how someone responded, instead of reporting their words:

'Oh, that's fantastic. I'm just so pleased. This is the best news we've had in ages.'

——➤ *She was* ***delighted*** *when we told her the news.*

Oral reporting

When we report orally, we regularly switch our method of reporting. We use a mixture of direct speech, reported speech and descriptions of the content of the conversation. For example:

I was talking to Jo last night about the holiday. She thinks we shouldn't book anything up yet because we'll probably get a cheaper deal if we leave it till just before we go. I agreed with her but I said I didn't know what you would think about that. And then of course we have to decide definitely where we want to go. I said we quite fancied going to one of the islands but she said, 'Well, I'm not sure Graham will like the idea.' Anyway, in the end she said why don't we talk to him about it when we meet him on Thursday.

Written reporting

In written reports, we tend to use reported speech consistently rather than switching from one style of reporting to another. If we are reporting what one person said, it is not necessary to keep repeating **She/He/It said ...** . However, we continue to use the reported speech tenses if it is understood that we are still reporting. For example:

The meeting was concluded by the Chair of the Governors, who said that although it had been a difficult year, the staff of the school had managed very well. The financial cutbacks had hit hard and it was to be hoped that there would be no further cutbacks in the coming year. Library stocks were severely depleted and he suggested that there should be a series of fundraising activities to help raise money for books. He thanked all the staff for their hard work and hoped that the coming year would be successful. The Headteacher then thanked the Chair of the Governors for his contribution to the school and the meeting was closed at 9.00 p.m.

Practice

50 In your notebook, write a summarized report of the following speech.

'I am delighted to have been elected onto the Council and I thank all those voters who came out in the rain today to vote for me. I am very much looking forward to representing the interests of the residents of Kimbridge Valley and hope that I will have the opportunity to do so for many years to come.

During the last few weeks, I have spoken to many of the valley residents on the doorstep and I have a clear idea of the issues which are of most concern to them. The proposed closure of the school is understandably causing a great deal of anxiety and I shall do everything in my power to fight against that. I hope that I will be successful.

Thanks again to my supporters and a big thank you to all those who helped me during the campaign.'

Example:
In her acceptance speech, Diane Banham said that she was delighted ...

KIMBRIDGE VALLEY
Council Meeting

Sentence structure

Introduction

Simple sentences

- Subject + verb:

S	V
The rice	*is burning.*

- Subject + verb + complement:

S	V	COMP.
She	*'s*	*a lawyer.*

S	V	COMP.
She	*'s*	*intelligent.*

- Subject + verb + direct object:

S	V	D.O.
I	*'ve read*	*this book.*

- Subject + verb + indirect object + direct object:

S	V	I.O.	D.O.
My boyfriend	*wrote*	*me*	*a lovely letter.*

- Subject + verb + object + complement:

S	V	O	COMP.
They	*made*	*him*	*a star.*
They	*made*	*him*	*very famous.*

Compound sentences

We can link simple sentences to form compound sentences of two or more clauses. In a compound sentence, the clauses are of equal importance. We can make the link in the following ways:

- With a co-ordinating conjunction, e.g. ***and***, ***but***, ***so***, ***yet***, sometimes preceded by a comma:
  He loves her **but** *she doesn't love him.*

- With a semi-colon or colon:
  I met David yesterday; *he's just come out of hospital.*
  or *I met David yesterday*: *he's just come out of hospital.*

- With a semi-colon or a colon followed by a connecting adverb. e.g. ***however***, ***nevertheless***, ***meanwhile***, ***after all***, ***finally***:
  He performed very well in the interview; ***however****, he didn't get the job.*
  or *He performed very well in the interview:* ***however****, he didn't get the job.*

Complex sentences

Complex sentences have a main clause and one or more subordinate clauses or phrases. We can link the clauses as follows:

- With relative clauses:
  *Many people **who are out of work** become depressed.*
- With noun clauses:
  *I've always known **that he hated me**.*
- With adverbial clauses:
  *Did you see him **when he came in**?*
- With infinitive or participial constructions:
  ***To do the job properly**, you'll need to get some tools.*
  *She ran out of the house **calling for help**.*

51 Conjunctions

Common conjunctions

*To **link**:* and, both ... and, or, either ... or, neither ... nor, not only ... but (also)
*To **contrast**:* but, however, nevertheless, though/although, in spite of, despite, whereas
*To **express a reason or purpose**:* because, for, as, since, so that, in order that
*To **express a consequence**:* so, therefore
*To **make an additional point**:* besides, moreover, anyway

Practice

51 In your notebook, join the sentences with a suitable conjunction. There may be more than one possible answer for each sentence.

1 I went to bed early. I would be able to get up early.
I went to bed early so that I would be able to get up early.
I went to bed early in order that I would be able to get up early.
2 It's an excellent course. I'm very lucky to get a place on it.
3 I don't really want to go to the cinema tonight. I can't afford it.
4 There is very little that the company can do about this. It is not their responsibility.
5 I've known her for a long time. I don't know much about her private life.
6 She's extremely generous. Her husband is the exact opposite.
7 I didn't say that. I didn't even think it.
8 The suspect is critically ill in hospital. We can't interview him for the time being.
9 I like working here. The people are very friendly.
10 I could do the work tonight. I could get up early in the morning to do it.
11 In a way, I love the job. I hate it.
12 He looks a bit overweight. He is quite fit.
13 The economy has been in recession all year. Our sales have remained steady.
14 I've brought a photograph. You can see how beautiful the place is.
15 The Government are getting worried. They're losing popularity.

16 I had a terrible headache last night. I couldn't go out.
17 My job is very interesting. It doesn't pay very well.
18 You leave now. I'll call the police.

52 Noun clauses

A noun clause is sometimes called a ***that***-clause. However, noun clauses do not always use ***that***.

- Noun clause as object.
  Many verbs can be followed by a noun clause:
  I can guarantee ***(that) it will be there on time****.*
  Do you think ***(that) she'll come****?*

- Noun clause as subject:
  That you don't love him *is obvious.*
  However, we more often use the construction:
  It + ***be/seem*** + adjective + noun clause
  It is obvious ***(that) you don't love him****.*
  or we use: *The fact that ...*:
  The fact ***that you don't love him*** *is obvious.*

- Noun clause after certain adjectives, e.g. adjectives describing feelings: *pleased, sorry, happy, glad, delighted, upset, worried, concerned, surprised, grateful,* and adjectives describing degrees of certainty: *sure, positive, convinced, doubtful*:
  I'm concerned ***(that) he won't believe me****.*
  Are you sure ***(that) he said that****?*

- Noun clause after a large number of abstract nouns, e.g. *belief, idea, fact, hope, promise, suggestion, thought, reason, implication, something/anything.*

  As object: *I don't like the suggestion* ***that we do this job together****.*

  As subject: *The thought* ***that I upset her so much*** *is awful.*

- Noun clause with question words.
  Noun clauses that start with a question word do not start with *that.*

  As object: *I will never understand* ***why he did that****.*
  or ***Why he did that*** *I will never understand.*
  I looked at ***what they'd done****.*

  As subject: ***What happened between us*** *must remain a secret.*

- Noun clauses with *if/whether* (*or not*).

  As object:
  I don't know ***if/whether he's coming tonight****.*

  As subject: ***Whether or not he's coming tonight*** *is still uncertain.*
  It is still uncertain ***if/whether/whether or not he's coming tonight****.*

Practice

52a Underline the noun clauses in the following dialogue.

Angie and Helen are talking at work. Angie is Helen's boss.

A: Helen, I'm delighted to hear that you've decided to accept the post of junior manager.
H: Yes. I just hope that it turns out all right.
A: Oh, I'm sure it will. Is there anything in particular that you're worried about?
H: Well, yes. I'm not sure how the staff will respond to me as a manager. After all, I am quite a bit younger than most of them.
A: Oh, I wouldn't worry too much about that. I expect that some of them will be a bit hostile to you at first but they'll soon get used to the fact that you're the boss. It's important that you appear confident in your position, even if you don't feel very confident. The reason that you got this position at your age is that you're good and you must remember that.
H: Well, I hope that I will live up to your expectations of me. I will certainly try.

52b Join the sentences together using a noun clause. Make changes where necessary.

1 He's lying to you. I'm sure.

I'm sure that he's lying to you.

2 You did something. It is unforgivable.

What you did is unforgivable.

It is unforgivable what you did.

3 She still holds on to the belief. He isn't dead.

....

....

4 She hasn't made a complaint. We must be grateful for that.

....

....

5 Some people are coming to the meeting. I don't know how many.

....

....

6 She didn't lie to you about it. That suggestion is ridiculous.

....

....

7 You're going with him. I presume that.

....

8 Judith's coming round tonight. Have you forgotten that?

....

....

9 She may have passed her exams. I don't know.

....

....

10 He didn't tell her the truth. She is very angry about that.

....

....

11 She may be good enough to do the job: she may not. It remains doubtful.

....

....

12 He has some emotional problems. That is quite apparent.

....

....

13 Where are we going to meet tonight? Have you arranged that?

....

....

14 How is she? Do you know?

....

15 They're getting married. I'm delighted.

....

53 Participial constructions: present participial phrases

After verbs

- After verbs of sensation: *see, hear, feel, smell, listen, notice, watch*:
  I saw her ***leaving the house very early this morning****.*

  Note: These verbs can also be followed by a bare infinitive which implies completeness:
  I saw her ***leave*** *the house early this morning.*
  i.e. I saw her whole departure.

- After *catch, find, leave*:
  I caught him ***looking through my drawers****.*

- After *go, come, spend time, waste time, be busy*:
  Would you like to come ***skiing with us****?*

In place of clauses

Participial phrases in place of clauses are quite formal and are used most often in written language.
A participle must have the same subject as the verb in the main clause. We use them:

- when two actions by the same subject take place at the same time:
  She held his hand and led him through the crowd.
  Holding his hand*, she led him through the crowd.*
  She led him through the crowd ***holding his hand****.*

- when one action immediately follows another or is a direct result of it. The main action is a finite verb and the secondary action is a participle. The action which takes place first is written first:
  I stayed at home and watched television.
  I stayed at home ***watching television****.*

  I saw her on the other side of the road and quickly tried to hide.
  Seeing her on the other side of the road*, I quickly tried to hide.*

  She turned on her computer and started work.
  Turning on her computer*, she started work.*

  He told her not to eat it and explained that there was a risk of food poisining.
  He told her not to eat it, ***explaining that there was a risk of food poisoning****.*

- in place of clauses of time.
  (present or perfect participle after time conjunctions *after, before, since, while, on*)

  clause of time
  After I spoke to you, | *I felt much better.*

  After speaking/having spoken to you*, I felt much better.*
  I felt much better ***after speaking/having spoken to you****.*

  When I first met him, I didn't like him.
  I didn't like him ***on first meeting him****.*

- in place of clauses of reason.
  We use a present participle in place of a clause of reason in the present simple, present continuous, past simple or past continuous:

clause of reason
As/Since/Because I was happy with my results, | *I decided to go out and celebrate.*

Being happy with my results, *I decided to go out and celebrate.*

We use a perfect participle in place of a clause of reason in the present perfect or past perfect:

clause of reason
He's lived here all his life | *so he knows a lot about the town.*

Having lived here all his life, *he knows a lot about the town.*

I'd had an argument with him the night before so I didn't want to see him.
Having had an argument with him the night before, *I didn't want to see him.*

- in place of clauses of concession.
  After *although* and *while*:
  While fully understanding your problem, *I can't allow you to break the rules.*
- In place of defining subject relative clauses in the present simple or continuous:
  The woman who lives/who is living next door works for a television company.
  The woman ***living next door*** *works for a television company.*

Practice

53 In your notebook, rewrite the sentences below using a present participial or perfect participial phrase.

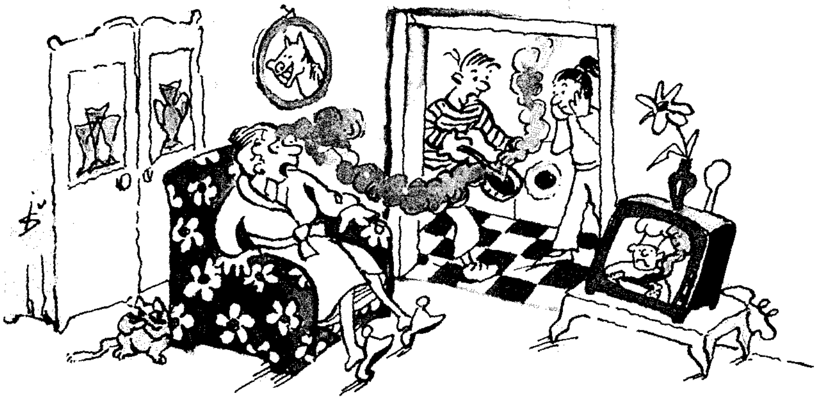

1 I smelt something. It was burning.
I smelt something burning.
2 I went round to see her. I was hoping for a reconciliation.
3 While he hated the job, he did it for many years.
4 She came in. She looked furious.
5 I had plenty of time to spare so I had a good look round the town.
6 He was wearing only a pair of shorts. He walked out into the darkness.

7 I had been out all day so I was quite happy to stay in for the evening.
8 The bedrooms that overlook the sea are the best ones in the hotel.
9 We're wasting time. We're sitting here and doing nothing.
10 I have changed my job since I last wrote to you.
11 Before I make a decision, I need to discuss it with my partner.
12 We had been friends for twenty years and suddenly we had a big argument and haven't seen each other since.
13 I had failed one of my exams so I couldn't get into university.
14 Because he loved her so much, he forgave her for everything.
15 I left them. They were doing the washing-up.

54 Participial constructions: past participial phrases

The past participle can sometimes replace subject + passive verb in the same way as the present participle can sometimes replace subject + active verb.

- Past participle in place of the passive:
  I often saw her at the disco. She was surrounded by her admirers.
  I often saw her at the disco, ***surrounded by her admirers****.*

  He was loved by all who knew him. He devoted his life to others.
  Loved by all who knew him*, he devoted his life to others.*

  Her books, which are read by people all over the world, are still immensely popular.
  Her books, ***read by people all over the world****, are still immensely popular.*

  Although it was intended to be a nice surprise, the party was not what I wanted at all.
  Although ***intended to be a nice surprise****, the party was not what I wanted at all.*

  If I am accepted for the job, I'll have to start at the beginning of next month.
  If ***accepted for the job****, I'll have to start at the beginning of next month.*

  The manuscript had been lost for many years when it suddenly turned up again.
  Lost for many years*, the manuscript suddenly turned up again.*

- ***Being*** + past participle following *after, before, when, since, while, on, by:*
  After it was cleaned the bike looked as good as new.
  After ***being cleaned****, the bike looked as good as new.*

  Since the government was elected, it has had one crisis after another.
  Since ***being elected****, the government has had one crisis after another.*

  When he was being questioned, he suddenly burst into tears.
  When ***being questioned****, he suddenly burst into tears.*

  The message got across to people because it was repeated over and over again.
  The message got across to people by ***being repeated over and over again****.*

Practice

54 Rewrite the sentences below using a past participial phrase or ***being*** + past participial phrase.

1 I was exhausted through lack of sleep and fell asleep at my desk.
Exhausted through lack of sleep, I fell asleep at my desk.

2 Peter was abandoned by his parents at an early age and took to stealing.

………………………………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………………………………

3 Although it was written many years ago, the book is still relevant today.

………………………………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………………………………

4 Since I was promoted, I've had no time to go out.

………………………………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………………………………

5 The boy was taken from his parents at an early age. He had a very difficult life.

………………………………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………………………………

6 The money was hidden in the cellar. It was not discovered for many years.

………………………………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………………………………

7 He was frequently criticized for his self-centred attitude but was nonetheless very popular.

………………………………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………………………………

8 After he was released from prison, Andy could not find a job anywhere.

………………………………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………………………………

9 The committee meetings, which were always dominated by the same people, were slow-moving and ineffectual.

………………………………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………………………………

10 When he was caught, he confessed everything. (On ...)

....

11 When it is seen from the outside, the building looks a mess, but it is lovely inside.

....

....

12 If we are elected, we will increase the value of pensions.

....

....

13 Although he was ridiculed by everybody, he continued to pursue his bizarre projects.

....

....

14 Unless it is destroyed, this material could have damaging consequences.

....

....

15 Jennifer had been shoplifting for many years before she was found out.

....

....

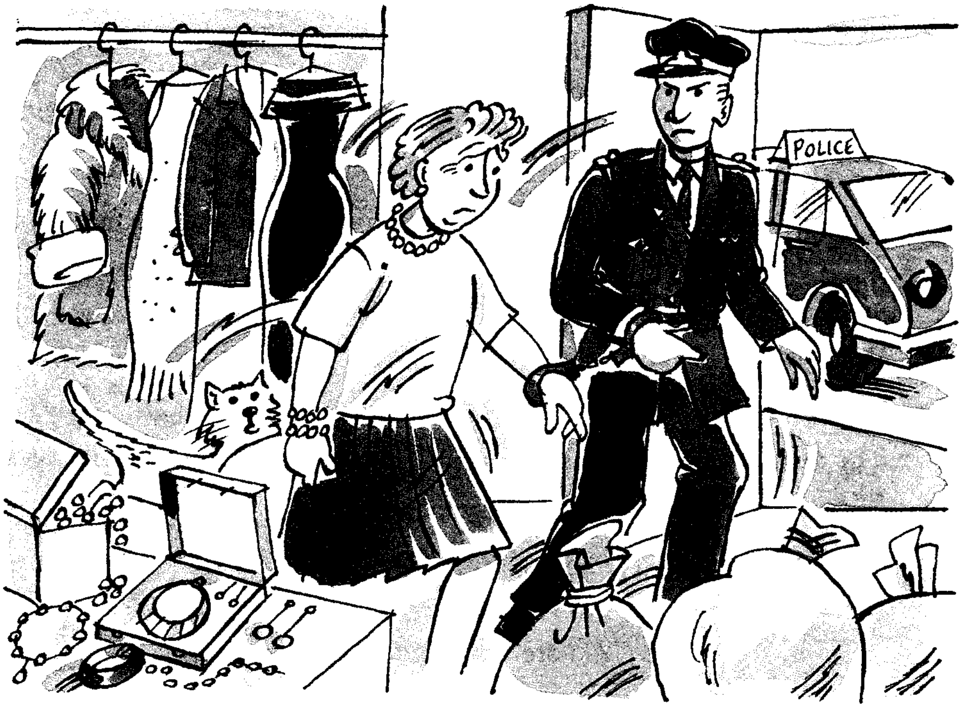

55 Adverbial clauses of time, place, manner and reason

Adverbial clauses, like adverbs, tell us something further about the verb and answer the questions ***When?***, ***Where?***, ***How?***, ***Why?***, etc.
Here are some of the most common conjunctions used to introduce adverbial clauses:

Time	when, after, before, as, as soon as, by the time (that), once, since, until/till, wherever, while
Place	where, wherever, anywhere, everywhere
Manner	as, as if, as though
Comparison	than, as ... as
Reason	because, as, since
Purpose	so that, in order that, in case
Result	so ... that, such a ... that
Condition	if, unless, provided/providing (that), so/as long as
Contrast	although/though/even though, while, whereas, however, (+ much/good/badly), whatever, whenever, wherever

Note: We generally use the present simple to refer to the future in adverbial clauses of time and condition:
*When/If I **come** to London, I'll come and see you.*
and we use the present perfect in place of the future perfect:
*When I**'ve finished** my dinner, I'll come and help you.*

Practice

55a Underline the adverbial clauses and complete them with an appropriate conjunction.

In some sentences, more than one conjunction is possible.

1 I'm sorry I wasn't here earlier but I came .as soon as. I could.
2 I'm staying in all weekend .... I can get my work done.
3 He spoke to me .... it was all my fault.
4 He didn't react .... I'd hoped; he was actually rather angry.
5 Things are never .... bad .... you think they are.
6 You are growing fast. You're taller .... your mother is now.

7 He'd like to be an actor .... his father would like him to be a lawyer.

8 She's .... interested in her work .... she never seems to do anything else.

9 I'll meet you .... you like; I don't mind where it is.

10 I won't believe you .... I've seen it for myself.

11 She seems happy .... she can't find a job.

12 .... I didn't feel very well, we decided to leave early.

13 The money was hidden .... no-one could find it.

14 I'll come with you .... we don't stay late. I need to be up early tomorrow.

15 .... I like him, I sometimes find him very irritating.

55b Put an appropriate conjunction before the adverbial clauses. Write the answers in the spaces provided below the text.

The car: Is it worth it?

^{1}..... the petrol-fuelled internal combustion engine was first developed by the German engineers Benz and Daimler in 1885, our lives have changed completely. ^{2}..... the damaging effects of the motor car are now well-recognized, the number of cars on the road continues to grow every year. In 1950, there were fewer than 50 million cars in use around the world, but ^{3}..... cars became more widely available and relatively cheaper, this number grew to 500 million by 1999.

We continue to drive cars ^{4}..... we know how dangerous they are in every respect. People seem to accept the higher number of deaths and injuries as a normal fact of life ^{5}..... smaller risks in other areas of life seem to generate more publicity and fear. We accept the awful risk ^{6}..... it is somehow justifiable. ^{7}..... any other activity carried with it such a risk, there would be a huge public reaction.

And what of the pollution? ^{8}..... research into car emissions started, it has become clearer and clearer how damaging the emissions are to health and the environment. Will we keep on driving our cars ^{9}..... much damage we do? It seems that people are ^{10}..... attached to their cars that they won't give them up for anything. To some people, their car is more important to them ^{11}..... anything else.

One of the obvious answers to the problem is better public transport. ^{12}..... we could travel ^{13}..... we liked on cheap, comfortable public transport, we would be less inclined to use the car. People will not stop using their cars ^{14}..... there is a good alternative. But we need to act now ^{15}..... it is too late. We must change our attitude and our priorities ^{16}..... future generations can live in a cleaner world.

1 *Since*..............................

2 ....

3 ....

4 ....

5 ....

6 ....

7 ....

8 ....

9 ....

10 ....

11 ....

12 ....

13 ....

14 ....

15 ....

16 ....

56 Participial phrases

Check

56 In your notebook, write the following text changing clauses to participial phrases where possible.

Vincent Van Gogh, who was born in Holland in 1853, is one of the world's most famous painters. Although his talent was unrecognized throughout his life, it was much appreciated after his death.

After he had failed in every career he had attempted, Van Gogh first turned to art to express his strong religious feelings. After he had decided to become a painter, in about 1880, he started to paint studies of peasants and miners. During the next few years, which are known as his 'Dutch period', he produced paintings with rather dark greenish-brown colours.

In 1886, when he went to Paris to visit his brother Theo, he was immediately attracted to the Impressionist work he saw there. He decided to stay in Paris and continued his painting there. He was encouraged by Pissaro to use more colour in his pictures and his subsequent paintings were bright and immensely colourful.

After Van Gogh had moved to Arles in the south of France, in 1888, he worked frantically. This frenzied activity, which was interrupted by bouts of deep depression and despair, produced the majority of his most famous paintings. One of these, which is called *Self Portrait with Bandaged Ear*, shows Van Gogh: he was wearing a bandage after he had cut off his own ear. A year later, in 1890, he committed suicide.

A lot is known about Van Gogh's life and his feelings because of the hundreds of letters which were written by him to his brother Theo and others. Because his brother believed in Van Gogh's genius, he always encouraged him in his work. He was the person closest to Van Gogh.

Example:
Born in Holland in 1853, Vincent Van Gogh is one of the world's most famous painters.

57 Defining relative clauses

Look at this sentence:
The family who live next door moved here from Ireland.
There is a main clause: ***The family** ... **moved here from Ireland*** and there is a relative clause: ***who live next door**.*

The main clause does not make proper sense without the relative clause. The relative clause tells us which family we are talking about. It is a defining relative clause.

The relative clause may come in the middle or at the end of a sentence. It follows the word that it defines.

- Subject relative pronouns:
  *Are you the person **who** telephoned here an hour ago?*
  The relative pronoun ***who*** functions as the subject of the verb *telephoned.*
  *Can you pick up the knife **that/which** has just fallen off the table?*
  The relative pronoun ***that/which*** functions as the subject of the verb *has fallen off.* ***That*** is used more often than ***which***. ***Which*** is more formal or scientific.

- Object relative pronouns:
  *That's the woman **who/that** I met at Tony's house.*
  Who or ***that*** functions as the object of the verb *met.*

  *Is this the book **that/which** you were reading last night?*
  That or ***which*** functions as the object of the verb *were reading.*

  In defining relative clauses, the object relative pronoun (***who/that/which***) is often omitted:
  That's the woman I met at Tony's house.
  Is this the book you were reading last night?

- Relative pronouns: object of a preposition:
  *This is the beach (**that/which**) I was telling you about.*
  That or ***which*** functions as the object of the preposition *about.* It can be omitted.

- Possessive relative pronoun:
  *They are the workers **whose** jobs are being cut.*
  Whose is a possessive relative pronoun. It refers to the workers. It is the workers' jobs that are being cut. ***Whose jobs*** functions as the subject of the verb *are being cut.*

  *I couldn't find the man **whose** case I'd taken by mistake.*
  Whose refers to the man. It was his case I'd taken. ***Whose case*** functions as the object of the verb *had taken.*

- Summary: relative pronouns in defining relative clauses:

	Subject	*Object*	*Possessive*
For people	who/that	no pronoun/who/that	whose
For things	that/which	no pronoun/that/which	—

Note: Where there is a choice of pronoun, the underlined one is the most commonly used.

Practice

57a Underline the ten defining relative clauses in the dialogue. Then circle the relative pronoun in each one and indicate whether it is a subject (S) or object (O) pronoun.

Holt and Watkins, private detectives, are discussing a murder.

W: So who was the one *who killed Mr Makepeace? (S)*

H: Can't you guess?

W: Well, I think it was probably the woman who was staying in the room next door to him.

H: No, Watkins, of course it wasn't. She only wanted the money he owed her. She won't get that now that he's dead.

W: Oh yes, I hadn't thought about that. So was it Mr Grant, the man who always shared their table in the evenings?

H: No, Watkins. It's true that he loved Mrs Makepeace but he knew that she didn't love him. And he probably believed that she could never fall in love with a man who had murdered her husband.

W: I suppose that's true. So who was it then? The son? Do you think that he wanted to have the money that would be due to him from his father's life insurance policy.

H: Well no, because he knew that the insurance policy would be invalid if his father died suspiciously. And apart from that, I think that in a way he loved his father. The one he hates is Mr Bottomley, the man his mother is in love with.

W: So who did kill Mr Makepeace?

H: Well, I feel quite sure now that it was Mrs Makepeace.

W: Mrs Makepeace!

H: Yes. She had never loved the man she had married. What she loved was all the money he had. Then Mr Bottomley came along. He had money too and she loved him. But she had to get Mr Makepeace out of the way.

57b Join the two sentences together, making the second sentence a defining relative clause. Use the relative pronoun that is most commonly used or no pronoun at all where this is possible.

1 She's the one. I told you about her.
She's the one I told you about.

2 I don't like the people. They are staying with the Browns.

....

....

3 I like books. They make you think about things.

....

....

4 I'm looking for the person. I've just hit their car.

....

....

5 Most of the books are still popular today. I read them as a child.

....

....

6 You can buy the pasta from that Italian shop. It has just opened in the high street.

....

....

7 The woman is coming back to work soon. I'm doing her job.

....

....

8 Is she the new television presenter? Everyone's talking about her.

....

....

9 People often have very little money to spend on leisure. They have a lot of leisure time.

....

....

10 Is Technico the company? Sarah works for them.

....

....

11 This is the job. I've always wanted it.

....

....

12 The swimming pool is only open to the public in the mornings. I use it.

....

....

13 We've just bought a computer package. It teaches you how to play the piano.

....

....

14 My favourite holiday was that one. We spent it in a cottage in the mountains.

....

....

15 We haven't seen the friends for ten years. They are coming to visit us this weekend.

....

....

58 Non-defining relative clauses

Look at the difference between these two sentences:

1 *The boy who lives next door is having a party tonight.*
The underlined clause is a defining relative clause. It tells us which boy is being talked about.
There are no commas before and after a defining relative clause.

2 *Darren, who lives next door, is having a party tonight.*
The underlined clause is a non-defining relative clause. It does not tell us which boy we are talking about; we already know that from the name. It gives us extra information about Darren.
A non-defining relative clause in the middle of a sentence has a comma before and after it. A non-defining relative clause at the end of a sentence has a comma before it and a full stop at the end.

- Subject relative pronouns:

  *This is my friend Jane, **who** has just returned from Italy.*
  The relative pronoun ***who*** refers to *Jane* and it functions as the subject of the verb *has … returned* in the relative clause.

  *Mike's car, **which** is only six months old, broke down last night.*
  The relative pronoun ***which*** refers to *Mike's car* and it functions as the subject of the verb *is* in the relative clause.

- Object relative pronouns:
  *The woman next door, **who/whom** I met for the first time last week, is moving next month.*
  Who or ***whom*** refer to *the woman next door* and function as the object of the verb *met* in the relative clause.
  Whom is more formal and is generally used in formal written English.
  Who is more common in spoken English.

Unlike the object relative pronoun in defining relative clauses, the object relative pronoun in non-defining relative clauses cannot be omitted.
That book about the First World War, ***which*** *I finished last week, was really interesting.*
Which refers to *that book about the First World War* and functions as the object of the verb *finished* in the relative clause. We cannot omit it.

- Relative pronouns: object of a preposition:
  a) *Marjorie Campbell,* ***who/whom*** *we have all depended on so much, has just announced her retirement.*
  b) *Marjorie Campbell, on* ***whom*** *we have all depended so much, has just announced her retirement.*

  Who or ***whom*** in sentence a) and ***whom*** in sentence b) refer to *Marjorie Campbell* and function as the object of the preposition *on*.

  a) *The new pedestrian crossings,* ***which*** *there has been much discussion about, are going to be in use from the beginning of next month.*
  b) *The new pedestrian crossings, about* ***which*** *there has been much discussion, are going to be in use from the beginning of next month.*

  Which refers to the new pedestrian crossings and functions as the object of the preposition *about*.

Notes:

- Position of preposition: In the a) sentences, the preposition comes at the end of the relative clause. This is less formal and is becoming more common.
  In the b) sentences, the preposition comes before the relative pronoun. This word order is used in more formal written English.
- ***Who*** or ***whom***? When the preposition comes before the relative pronoun, it is only possible to use ***whom*** for people. When the preposition comes at the end of the relative clause, it is possible to use ***who*** or ***whom***.

- Possessive relative pronoun:
  Amanda Lovelace, ***whose*** *husband died last year, has now lost her job.*
  Whose refers to *Amanda Lovelace*. It is her husband who died.
  Whose husband functions as the subject of the verb *died*.

  This is our son John, ***whose*** *friends you will be meeting at the party later on.*
  Whose refers to *our son John*. It is his friends you will be meeting.
  Whose friends functions as the object of the verb *will be meeting*.

  a) *We are hoping for a visit from Henry Webster, whose support we have so much depended on.*
  b) *We are hoping for a visit from Henry Webster, on* ***whose*** *support we have so much depended.*

  Whose support functions as the object of the preposition *on*. The preposition can go at the end of the relative clause, or it can go before the relative pronoun, which is quite formal. It is more common to put it at the end of the relative clause.

- Summary:

	For people	*For things*	*For possession*
Subject	who	which	whose
Object	who/whom	which	whose

Note: Spoken versus written English:
Non-defining relative clauses which are in the middle of a sentence are quite formal and are more commonly used in written English than in spoken English. In spoken English, we usually prefer to use shorter sentences or to link clauses together with simple conjugations. For example, in written English, we may write:
Ann Roberts, whose first job was in this department, has just been appointed Director.
but in spoken English, we are more likely to say something like:
Ann Roberts has just been appointed Director. Do you remember? Her first job was here in this department.

Practice

58a In your notebook, rewrite the sentences making the second sentence into a non-defining relative clause and putting it into the correct place.

1 When I was in town, I met your sister. She was shopping for some clothes.
When I was in town, I met your sister, who was shopping for some clothes.
2 Their house needs a lot of work doing to it. It is near the beach.
3 Sandra's just got a new job with Capital Insurers. It's a much better company than the last one she worked for.
4 The new manager seems to be a very capable woman. I met her last week.

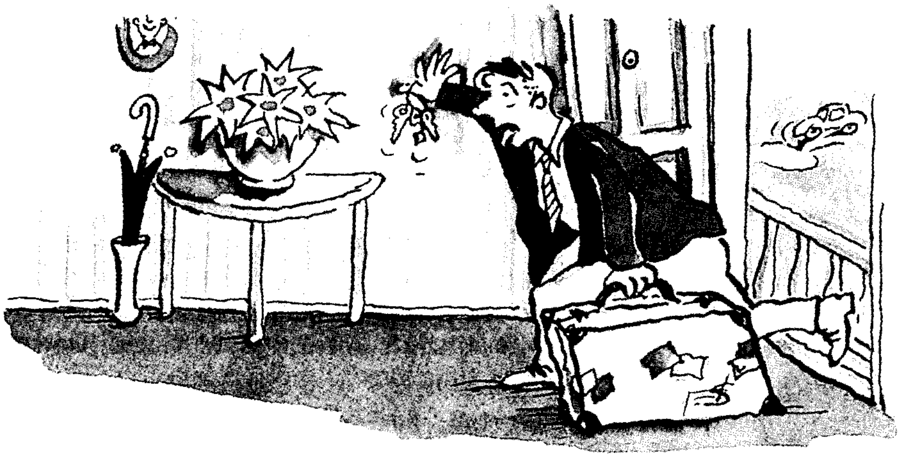

5 This case is full of books. I carried it all the way from the station.
6 The Games International Company has just gone bankrupt. We have done business with them for many years.
7 The hospital has handed out redundancy notices to all its staff. It is due to close down next year.
8 The prisoners are requesting more time out of their cells. Their families are campaigning on their behalf.
9 The new government is now facing major problems. It came to power with a lot of public support.
10 Her latest novel is really good. I read it on holiday.
11 The Home Affairs Minister is suspected of being involved in a financial scandal. The opposition have accused the minister of lying.
12 The Education Department is changing its policy on single sex schools. Mrs Parkinson is in charge of the department.
13 The Lilley and Swan department store has made reductions on most of its goods. The store has a sale on at the moment.

14 The principal actor could hardly speak last night due to a sore throat. He normally has a wonderful voice.
15 The sales manager is planning a new advertising campaign. I support her ideas.

58b Use the sentences in the box to make non-defining relative clauses. Insert an appropriate clause into each of the sentences.

Her books are read all over the world.
It was very crowded.
We love to walk round them.
~~It is very powerful~~.
He is staying in a nursing home.
I like her very much.
He is staying in his holiday home in Scotland at the moment.
Her parents believed it.
She came over to apologize to us.
I always attend her lectures.

1 This new drug could have bad side effects.

This new drug, which is very powerful, could have bad side effects.

2 Her father is said to be dying of cancer.

....

....

3 The Prime Minister said that he was very saddened by the news of the air crash.

....

....

4 The story she gave was that she had not realized how late it was.

....

....

5 Agatha Christie was a very prolific writer.

....

....

6 The sub-tropical gardens are open all year round.

....

....

7 The manager of the restaurant said that she was very sorry about the undercooked fish.

....

....

8 Our Professor of Psychology has written some very interesting books.

....

....

9 We packed a picnic and walked down to the beach.

....

....

10 Next Saturday, I'm going to visit my Aunty Sheila.

....

....

59 Defining and non-defining relative clauses

Check

59 Underline all the relative clauses in the following article.

POETRY AND THE WAR

One of the most extraordinary things about the First World War was the enthusiasm with which the majority of soldiers went off to fight for their country. Those young, patriotic men, who rushed to the enlistment centres, had no idea what lay ahead of them. They did not know that they would live for months in holes they had dug in the mud. They did not know what it would be like to watch a friend who had been horribly injured die a painful death. And so they were excited, even thrilled, about the prospect of going to war.

This was the first war in which the image-makers made an impact. There were posters which asked women to encourage their men to go to war: 'If he does not think that you and your country are worth fighting for – do you think he is WORTHY of you?'

The mood which seized the country was one of patriotic and heroic struggle. At the same time, it was generally believed that it would all be over in a few months.

The war fever which gripped the nation stirred up the emotions of everyone and there was a huge growth in the writing of poetry. At first the poems were proud and optimistic: 'Now in thy splendour go before us Spirit of England', but as the war dragged on, the writers of poetry became angry at the myths they had been told. They wanted people to know about the horrible reality of war, which brutalized the people who took part.

One writer who put these feelings into words very effectively was Wilfrid Owen, who, in the poem Anthem for Doomed Youth, wrote 'What passing bells for these who die as cattle?' The poetry of Wilfrid Owen, Siegfried Sassoon, Robert Graves and others, which described the horrific reality of war, also questioned its morality. Many of the poets were wealthy, privileged men who had not at first been anti-war, but whose attitudes were changed by what they saw.

60 Relative clauses of time, place and reason

In relative clauses of time, place and reason, it is possible to use ***when***, ***where*** and ***why*** in place of relative pronouns.

- Time:
  1990 was (the year) ***when we moved here****.*
- Place:
  That's (the place) ***where we stayed for our honeymoon****.*

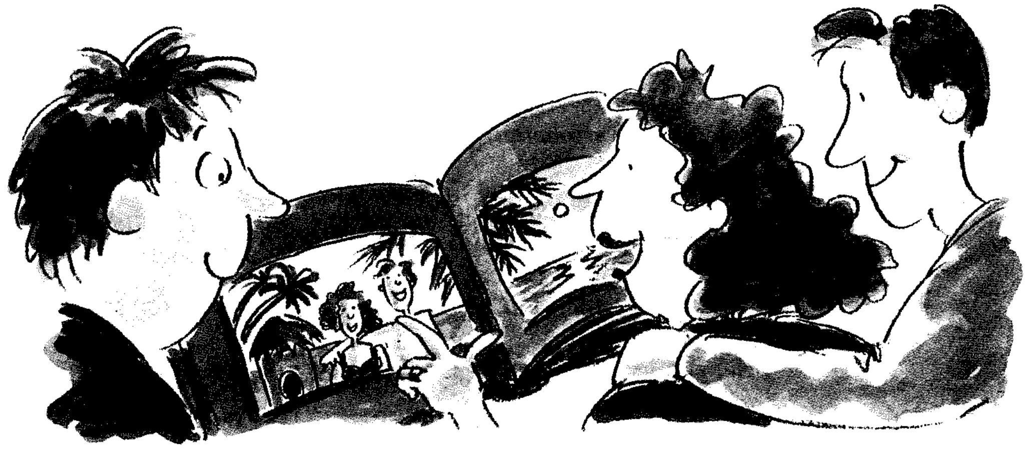

- Reason:
  Its central location is (the reason) ***why we chose this flat****.*

Note: Relative clauses with ***when***, ***where*** and ***why*** are usually defining but can be non-defining. Relative clauses starting with ***where*** are more often non-defining than relative clauses starting with ***when*** or ***why***:
The village of Baydon, ***where I lived as a child****, has now become part of the town.*

Practice

60 In your notebook, rewrite each pair of sentences as one sentence, using a relative clause with ***when***, ***where*** or ***why***.

1 The early morning is the time. I work best then.
The early morning is (the time) when I work best.
2 His mid-teens were the time. He first became interested in politics then.
3 His dishonesty is the reason. That's why I left him.
4 Edinburgh is the city. I'd most like to live there.
5 The outdoor swimming pool has now been closed down. We often went there as children.
6 This is a picture of the place. We're going there for our holidays.
7 His refusal to tell her the truth is the reason. That's why she is so angry with him.
8 This is the place. I fell off my bike here.
9 The people I work with are the reason. That's why I stay in the job.
10 That terrible night in December changed my life forever. I found out then what had been going on.

61 Relative clauses after *all*, etc.

- *All, anyone/anything, everyone/everything, the only thing, the best* (and other superlatives) + a defining relative clause:

All ***that happened*** *was that they had a little argument.*	Subject relative clause
All ***(that) I need to do now*** *is to buy my ticket.*	Object relative clause
Everyone ***who came to the party*** *really enjoyed it.*	Subject relative clause
Everyone ***(who/that) I met*** *said they were enjoying themselves.*	Object relative clause

Note: After ***everyone/anyone*** we can use ***who*** or ***that*** in both subject and object relative clauses.

- *A few, several, some, many, much, most, all, none, either/neither, half, a number, the biggest* (and other superlatives) + ***of whom/which*** in a non-defining relative clause:
  My two cousins, ***neither of whom I have seen for ten years,*** *are coming to visit next week.*
  Her old letters, ***some of which have now been lost,*** *make very interesting reading.*

Practice

61 In your notebook, put the following into one sentence using a relative clause.

1 You shouldn't listen to anything. He says it.
You shouldn't listen to anything (that) he says.
2 It was nice to see all his family. I have met most of them before.
It was nice to see all his family, most of whom I have met before.
3 The worst thing is that we'll miss the train. This can happen.
4 I've read both the reports. I agree with neither of them.
5 The only thing is to get some cash out of the bank. I need to do it.
6 The cleaners have decided to take industrial action. Several of them have complained to me about their low pay.
7 Everything has been a failure. I've done it.
8 I've lost any optimism for the future. I once had optimism.
9 Members of the committee have decided to call for an investigation. Many of them are themselves suspected of corruption.
10 The only thing is to give her the chance to talk about it. I can do that.
11 Everyone said that Peter started it. They saw the argument.
12 Those chocolates were not meant to be for me. I've already eaten half of them.
13 The management team are all saying the same thing. I trust none of them.
14 The cheapest was about £5, I saw it.
15 Her brothers have set up in business together. The youngest one is a friend of mine.

62 Co-ordinating relative clauses

- In a co-ordinating relative clause, ***which*** refers back to a whole sentence:
  He has decided to see the doctor about it, ***which is a good idea****.*
  Which refers back to him seeing the doctor about it.
- Co-ordinating relative clauses are always non-defining.

Practice

62 In your notebook, write sentences with a co-ordinating relative clause. Use the sentences in the box to make the relative clauses and combine them with the statements below.

It will be an interesting experience for him.
That's just what she needs after all her problems.
He should have done that a long time ago.
It is very worrying.
It will be a great help to him.
It was a complete surprise.
It is a terrible accusation to make.
That will give him more time to spend with his girlfriend.
That's why I don't go out very much.
~~It's a great shame~~.

1 She's going to have to sell the business.
She's going to have to sell the business, which is a great shame.
2 The weather's very cold at this time of year.
3 He's decided to go and teach abroad.
4 They say he's been stealing money from the company.
5 She's going to have a month off work.
6 He's going to give up his evening job.
7 The editor has finally agreed to print an apology.
8 She suddenly appeared on the doorstep last night.
9 A few people have been attacked in this area recently.
10 He's going to have an electric wheelchair soon.

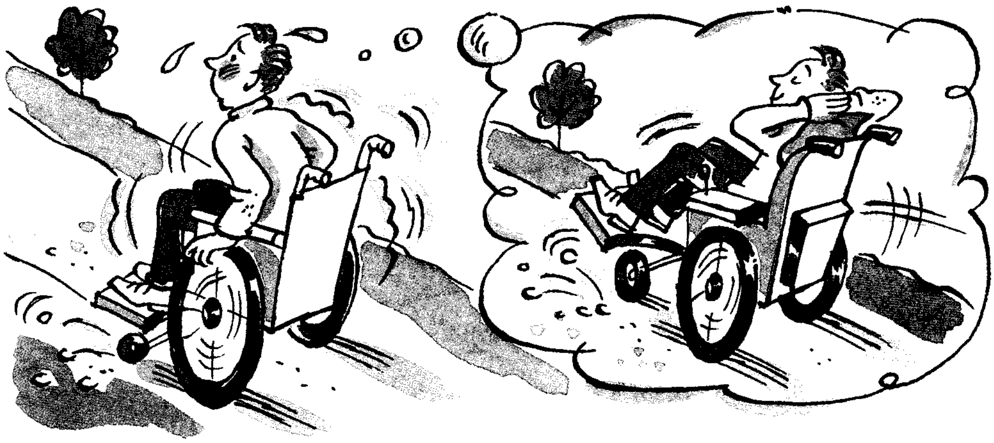

63 Tag questions

FORM

Tag questions are formed with the auxiliary of the verb in the main clause.
For example, where the main verb is in the present simple, the tag is formed with ***does/do*** and where the verb is past simple, the tag is formed with ***did***.
Where the main verb is positive, the tag is usually negative and where the main verb is negative, the tag is usually positive.
The majority of tag questions use a *falling* intonation.

*It's very cold, **isn't it**?*

*She comes from France, **doesn't she**?*

*I gave you the message, **didn't I**?*

Types of tag questions

Tag questions with a falling intonation

positive statement – negative tag
negative statement – positive tag

This is the most common type of tag question. The tag question is not really a question. We use it to make a comment where it is assumed that the listener agrees with the statement.

A statement on its own expresses an opinion to the listener or gives the listener some information. A statement with a tag question usually sounds more friendly because the tag assumes that the listener already knows this information or holds this opinion. When we use a tag question, we are therefore including the listener more in what we are saying.

The listener is expected to reply in agreement. S/he may reply in the following ways:
Statement with tag question: *It's a lovely day, **isn't it**?*

Short answer:	*Yes, it is.*
Short answer with additional comment:	*Yes, it is. It's much nicer than yesterday.*
Short answer with another tag question:	*Yes, it is, **isn't it**?*

USE

- To make a single conversational statement:

  *(It's a) Lovely day, **isn't it**?*

  *It's not very nice today, **is it**?*

  *The train's late today, **isn't it**?*

- To open a conversation and introduce a topic:

  It was terrible news about that murder, ***wasn't it****?*

  It looks like this meeting's going to be interesting, ***doesn't it****?*

  This year's pay review hasn't been announced yet, ***has it****?*

- To pass a comment during a conversation:

  Yes, it's disgusting, ***isn't it****?*

  But he made some very good points, ***didn't he****?*

Tag questions with a rising intonation

positive statement – negative tag
negative statement – positive tag

Tag questions with a rising intonation are much less common than tag questions with a falling intonation. A tag with a rising intonation is more questioning than a tag with a falling intonation. It expresses stronger feelings than a falling tag and can be used to convey a range of emotions.

USE

- To express surprise or disapproval:

  You didn't tell him, ***did you****?*

- To express surprise and ask for confirmation of what the speaker thought to be true:

  A: *I think he's taking his test next week.*

  B: *But he passed his test a long time ago,* ***didn't he****?*

- To check and ask for confirmation:

  That's your car, ***isn't it****?*

- To make a tentative polite request:

  You couldn't open the door for me, ***could you****?*

- To express suspicion:

  It wasn't you who told him, ***was it****?*

Tag questions with a rising intonation

positive statements - positive tag

These tags are not so common as positive-negative or negative-positive tags. The tag can convey a range of emotions.

USE

- To express friendly interest and to encourage the other speaker to give more information:

  So, you've been given a promotion, ***have you****?*

- To make a suggestion, where agreement is expected:

  We'll go for a swim this afternoon, ***shall we****?*

- To express disagreement and a warning:

  So you think you're tougher than me, ***do you****?*

- To express disapproval and an accusation:

  You went there without telling me, ***did you****?*

Echo tags

Positive statement – positive echo tag
Negative statement – negative echo tag

Intonation: falling or rising
Rising intonation expresses more surprise.

An echo tag is a tag used in response to a statement.
Echo tags are very common in spoken English.
We use echo tags to show that we are listening to what the speaker is saying and showing interest:
A: *I met David the other night.*
B: ***Did you?***

A: *I'm not going to apply for that job now.*
B: ***Aren't you?***

Notes

- Tag questions always use a pronoun and not a full name:
  John's coming, ***isn't he****?*
  NOT ~~*John's coming, **isn't John**?*~~
  and NOT ~~*He's coming, **isn't John**?*~~
- When the main sentence has a modal, use the modal in the tag:
  You can help me, ***can't you****?*
  James would have helped us, ***wouldn't he****?*
- When the subject of the sentence is ***there***, use ***there*** in the tag:
  There aren't many people here, ***are there****?*
- When the subject of the sentence is ***This/That***, use ***it*** in the tag:
  That's nice, ***isn't it****?*

- When the subject of the sentence is ***These/Those***, use ***they*** in the tag:
  *Those are beautiful, **aren't they**?*
- When the subject of the sentence is a word like ***no-one***, ***someone***, ***everyone***, the tag uses the pronoun ***they***:
  *Everyone's coming tonight, **aren't they**?*
- Sentences with negative subjects like ***nothing***, ***no-one***, ***neither***, ***anyone*** behave like negative sentences and have a positive tag:
  *Nobody saw you, **did they**?*
  *I don't think anyone's coming, **are they**?*
- Imperative sentences use ***will*** in the tag:
  *Don't do that again, **will you**?*
- Sentences with ***Let's*** ... use ***shall*** in the tag:
  *Let's go there tomorrow, **shall we**?*
- Negative questions can perform a similar function to question tags with a falling intonation.
  *It's cold today, **isn't it**?*
  Isn't it cold today?

Practice

63a Complete the gaps with a tag question or echo tag.

A: It's been a wonderful day, [1] hasn't it ?

B: Yes, fantastic. And we've had no problems with anything, [2]................................... ? Everything's been perfect.

A: That's right. It'll certainly be a lovely day to remember, [3]................................... ?

* * * *

A: I had a letter from Louis yesterday.

B: Oh, [4]................................... ?

A: Yes, he says he's coming to stay this weekend.

B: Really? That'll be nice, [5]................................... ?

* * * *

A: I don't know what to do today. Just look at the rain outside.

B: Well, I don't want to stay in all day. Let's go and see a film, [6]................................... ?

A: Why not? Good idea. There's nothing much on at the local cinema though, [7]................................... ?

B: All right. We'll take the train into town then, [8]................................... ?

* * * *

A: Eve and Tony are coming round for dinner tonight.

B: [9]................................... ? Oh, that'll be nice.

A: Yes. I thought you might like to come too.

B: Well yes, but you haven't seen them for a long time. I expect you'd like to talk to them on your own, [10]..................................... ?

****

A: How did you get in here?

B: I came in through the back door.

A: Nobody saw you coming in, [11]..................................... ?

B: No, I don't think so.

A: You shouldn't come and see me like this. It's dangerous. Please don't come here again, [12]..................................... ?

****

A: That's a beautiful table, [13]..................................... ?

B: Yes, it is, [14]..................................... ?

A: It would be lovely in our kitchen, [15]..................................... ? Why don't we get it?

B: Don't be ridiculous. Look at the price. We can't afford it, [16]..................................... ?

****

A: You couldn't hold this door open for me, [17]..................................... ? I can't get the pram through it.

B: Of course. It's terrible how they design these doors, [18]..................................... ? It makes it so difficult for people in wheelchairs or with young children.

A: Yes, it does, [19]..................................... ?

* * * *

A: I've just been talking to Roger.

B: [20]................................. , Dad?

A: Yes, and I didn't like what he told me. So you went to that nightclub on Friday, [21]................................. ? The one I told you not to go to.

B: I'm sorry Dad. I thought you wouldn't really mind.

A: Oh you did, [22]................................. ? Well, I do mind.

63b In your notebook, rewrite the conversation adding tag questions where appropriate.

Tracey and Dominic used to be girlfriend and boyfriend. They meet again at a party.

D: Hello. Nice to see you here. It's a great party.
T: Yes, it's really good. There are so many people here that I haven't seen for ages.
D: Yes, there are a lot of our old school crowd here. Have you spoken to many of them?
T: Yes, quite a few. I bumped into Adrian a few minutes ago and we had a brief chat. Well, no, he chatted and I listened.
D: Yes, he's still the same. He just loves talking about himself and he doesn't seem to be interested in what anyone else has to say.
T: That's right. Oh look, that's Melanie over there.
D: Yes, you're right, it is. Who's that she's with?
T: It's Matthew.
D: But he's going out with her sister Emma.
T: Well, yes, I thought so. But look, he's holding Melanie's hand.
D: Oh yes. Well, I suppose our information must be out-of-date then. Anyway, what about you? I've missed you, you know.
T: Yes, I've missed you too.
D: But I expect you've got a new boyfriend now.
T: Not now. I did for a little while after you went away but not now.
D: It was hard saying goodbye. I was going to write to you but I thought it wouldn't help.
T: No, maybe not. Well, anyway, we're here together now. Why don't we just enjoy ourselves.
D: Good idea. Let's dance.
T: Yes, I'd like to. But not now. The music's terrible.
D: Well, it's no good for dancing, that's for sure. We'll go and ask them if we can change it.
T: OK. Well, you go. And put on one of our favourites.
D: Yes, I will. And will you be waiting for me when I get back?
T: Yes, of course I will.

Example: *D: Hello. Nice to see you here. It's a great party, isn't it?*

64 Common prepositions of time

at	a time: ***at*** *9 o'clock* an age: ***at*** *fifteen/the age of fifteen*
on	a day or a date: ***on*** *Monday,* ***on*** *25th September* ***on*** *Saturday afternoon,* ***on*** *the morning of 4th June* + noun/gerund: ***On*** *departure/departing, she ...* = *When she departed, she ...*
in	a period of time: – some time during that period: ***in*** *the morning,* ***in*** *February,* ***in*** *1994* – at the end of a stated period: *I'll be ready* ***in*** *five minutes.* (five minutes from now) – the length of time that something takes: *I read the book* ***in*** *two and a half hours.*
by	a time, date, period, not later than that time: *You must be here* ***by*** *7 o'clock.*
before	a time, date, period, event: *I never go to bed* ***before*** *midnight.*
after	a time, date, period, event: *I'll phone you* ***after*** *lunch.*
since	a point in time, from that time until now or until a point in the past: *We've been here* ***since*** *Tuesday.* *It was the end of the summer. They had been there* ***since*** *June.*
for	a period of time: *They've been together* ***for*** *three years.*
during	a named period or an event: *We always work hard* ***during*** *the summer.* *Fighting broke out between rival fans* ***during*** *the match.*
until/till	a point in time, the point in time at which the action finished: *We slept* ***until/till*** *8.00.* *We didn't wake up* ***until/till*** *8.00.*
from a time **to/until/till** a time:	*We slept* ***from*** *11.30* ***to/until/till*** *8.00.*

Notes

- We use ***at*** with festivals and religious celebrations: ***at*** *Easter*
- We say ***at night***. But we can also say ***in the night*** meaning *during*.
- We often use ***last/this/next*** with time words:
  We didn't go on holiday ***last*** *summer.*
  I'm going home ***this*** *weekend.*
  I'll see you ***next*** *Monday.*
- ***During*** versus ***for***:
  We rented a cottage ***for*** *the summer.*
  (Tells us how long)

*He became ill **during** the summer.*
(Tells us when – at some point in the summer period)

*We spend all our time outside **during** the summer.*
(Tells us when – refers to the whole summer period)

- ***During*** versus ***in***:
  They can both be used to refer to something that happens throughout a time period, from its beginning to its end, and so it is often possible to use either ***during*** or ***in***.
  *It's very cold here **during/in** the winter.*

  BUT
  - We use ***in*** and not ***during*** when we want the time reference to sound more specific. So, for example, if we are contrasting one period of time with another, we use ***in***:
    *I last saw you **in** May, not July.*
  - We use ***during*** when we want to stress the idea of duration.
    *She felt miserable **during** the whole of that summer.*
  - When the time reference is an activity rather than a time period, we use ***during***:
    *She didn't speak once **during** the meal.*

Practice

64 Complete the gaps with a suitable preposition of time.

Paula and Jemma are friends.

P: Jemma, how would you like to come round for a meal ^{1}.on. Saturday?

J: Yes, that sounds a good idea. ^{2}.................. the evening, do you mean?

P: Yes. ^{3}.................. about 8 o'clock if that's O.K.

J: Sure, that would be fine. The only thing is, I'll have to leave ^{4}.................. about midnight because I've got to get up early ^{5}......... Sunday morning.

P: That's all right. I don't like staying up much ^{6}.................. midnight anyway.

J: No, neither do I. I stayed up ^{7}.................. three o'clock last Saturday and I felt terrible ^{8}.................. Sunday morning.

P: So what were you doing ^{9}.................. three o'clock?

J: Oh, Kirsty came down ^{10}.................. the weekend. We actually got home ^{11}.................. about half past twelve ^{12}.................. Saturday night but then we stayed up talking ^{13}.................. another two and a half hours.

P: Oh, how is Kirsty? I haven't seen her ^{14}.................. your party last year.

J: Oh, she's a bit fed up. She's just split up with Matthew ^{15}.................. four years together.

P: Oh, poor Kirsty.

J: Yes, and they split up just ^{16}.................. her exams started too. In fact, I think she had her first exam the next day. Isn't that awful? Anyway, I'll tell you about it ^{17}.................. Saturday.

P: O.K. I'll see you then.

65 Common prepositions of position and movement

- *(away) from/at/to* a place.
  Use when the reason for being there is more important than the exact position. It may be inside or outside:
  I'll meet you ***at*** *the station.*
  We walked ***from*** *the station* ***to*** *the cinema.*
- ***out of/in/in(to)*** a place.
  Use when the place is something with walls or boundaries:
  I'll wait for you ***in*** *the car.*
  Could you get ***in(to)*** *the car?*
  Can I get ***out of*** *the car here, please?*
- ***off/on/on(to)*** a surface or line:
  We need some pictures ***on*** *the wall.*
  Shall we take that picture ***off*** *the wall?*
  Do you think we should put this ***on*** *the wall?*

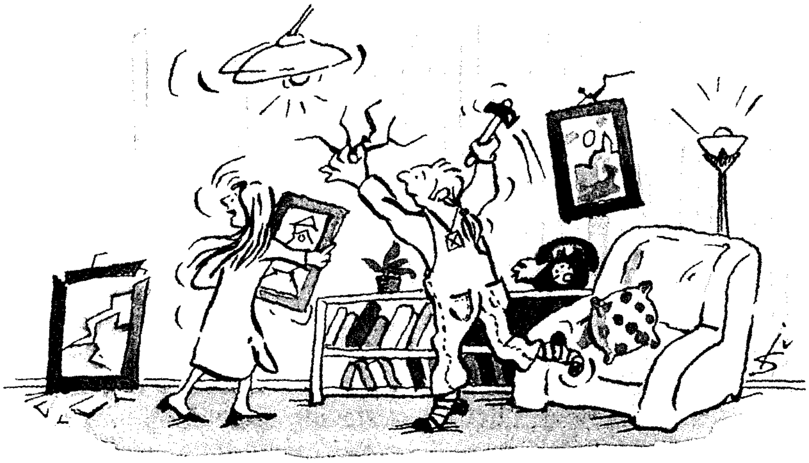

Note: We usually use ***on*** rather than ***onto***. We use ***onto*** when we want to emphasize the movement from one place onto another:
I drove ***onto*** *the motorway.* (I drove off another road and onto the motorway.)
I drove ***on*** *the motorway.* (That's where I drove./That's how I got there.)

Notes:
- arrive ***at/in*** a place
  get ***to/into*** a place
  get ***in*** (without place)
  in as an adverb: *When does the train get* ***in****?*
- ***on*** a train, bus, plane
  in a car

Practice

65 Complete the gaps with a preposition (or adverb) of position or movement. Two friends, Polly and Maria, are talking.

P: I didn't see you [1].at.. the club last night. Where were you? Did you stay [2].............. home?

M: Yes, I thought it was time to stay [3].............. for a change and, besides, I didn't feel very well. I just lay [4].............. bath reading for ages. I decided I wasn't going to get [5].............. the bath until I'd finished the book. But then Rosie turned up [6].............. the doorstep so I had to get [7].............. to see her.

P: So are you feeling well enough to come out later on?

M: I think so.

P: Well, I'm going round [8].............. Helen's at 5.00 and we're going to take the train [9].............. Highbury [10].............. Richmond. So we should get [11].............. Richmond by 6.00. Then we can walk [12].............. the station [13].............. that nice cafe [14].............. the riverbank. And if we see Charles there, he might invite us [15].............. his boat.

M: Oh, that would be nice.

P: Did he tell you about Kate pushing him [16].............. last week?

M: No. So, he fell [17].............. the boat, did he?

P: Yes, and straight [18].............. the river. He was soaked, and pretty cold too.

66 Prepositions of time, position and movement

Check

66 Complete the gaps with a suitable preposition or adverb of time or place.

It was 8 o'clock [1].on.. a cold morning [2].................. January. She was still asleep. She usually stayed [3].................. bed [4].................. about 9 o'clock [5].................. the winter. Suddenly she was woken up by a knocking at the door. She got [6].................. bed and went [7].................. the door. There was a man [8].................. the doorstep. She thought she recognized him. 'Hello Edna,' he said. 'It's Tom. Can I come [9].................. ?' And then she knew who it was but she didn't quite believe it. She hadn't seen him [10].................. thirty years, not [11].................. the summer of 1940 when she'd said goodbye to him the night

[12].................. his final departure. That was when he went off [13].................. war. It was two years [14].................. that when she received the letter [15].................. the War Office which said that Tom had been missing [16].................. some time and was now presumed dead. She kept on hoping that they were wrong right up [17].................. the end of the war. But then she gave up. [18].................. then, she'd continued to think of Tom every day. [19].................. his birthday, she always stayed [20].................. home all day because she couldn't bear to meet anybody. She'd met Tom [21].................. the age of sixteen and they'd had a wonderful time together [22].................. the start of the war. She was nineteen when war broke out and they'd been together [23].................. three years. They were going to get married [24].................. the war.

She looked at his face. It was still the same face but with quite a few lines [25].................. it and there was a bit less hair [26].................. his head. He put his hand [27].................. his pocket and took out a small photograph. It was one she'd sent him just [28].................. his disappearance. It was a picture of her [29].................. a teenager [30].................. the war. She held it [31].................. her hand and remembered back to those times. She felt rather hot and dizzy and thought that she might fall [32].................. the floor at any moment. She asked him to come [33].................. the living-room and they sat down together to tell their stories.

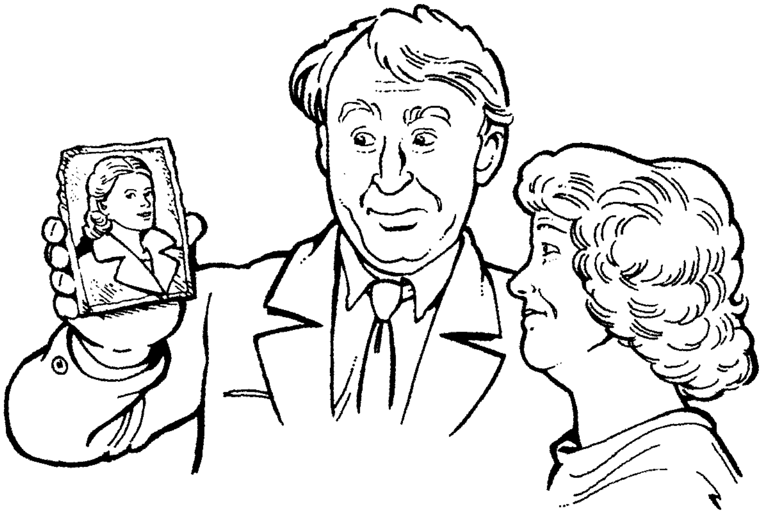

Test 1

Part A

Fill in the gaps with ***a*** or ***an***, ***the*** or no article.

Dear William,

Hello from [1]........................... Mexico City! I'm staying at [2]........................... beautiful hotel in [3]........................... centre of [4]........................... city. This [5]........................... morning I had [6]........................... breakfast in [7]........................... hotel garden. Tomorrow I'm going to rent [8]........................... car and drive to [9]........................... mountains. I hope [10]........................... weather will be fine.

See you soon,

Carol

SCORING Score ☐

10 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

Part B

Put the words in these sentences in the correct order.

1 She bought a silk / new / lovely / blouse.

....

2 The shop sells old / expensive / handmade objects.

....

3 seldom / gets to work / 9.00 / she / before.

....

4 I'll / see him / probably / when I come to work / in the morning / early.

....

5 He left the house / after his phone call / suddenly / quite.

....

SCORING Score ☐

5 points. *Give yourself one point for each completely correct answer.*

Part C

Use the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives and adverbs in brackets.

A: Do you like your new job?

B: Oh, yes, it's much [1]........................... (interesting) than my old position. Of course, I have to work [2]........................... (hard), too.

A: Are the working conditions [3]........................... (good), too?

B: My office is [4]........................... (spacious), and it's [5]........................... (quiet). But the people in my old office were [6]........................... (friendly). My new boss seems [7]........................... (difficult) to please, too.

A: Well, you're [8]........................... (new) person, so I guess you'll have to prove yourself.

B: I'm certainly working much [9]........................... (hard) than anyone else in the office! It's a real challenge, but every day it gets [10]................. (easy).

SCORING Score ☐

10 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

Part D

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct present or past form (present; past; present perfect; past perfect). You may use both simple and continuous aspects.

A: How long [1].......................... (you/work) there?

B: For three years. I [2].......................... (leave) last year.

A: [3].......................... (you/meet) Sarah?

B: Oh, yes, I [4].......................... (know) her for several months. She [5].......................... (be) in my dance class. We [6].......................... (go) to the same class every Tuesday since January.

A: [7].......................... (the phone/ring?)

B: Yes, but I [8].......................... (cook) dinner, so I [9].......................... (not/answer) it.

A: Why didn't you give him the news?

B: By the time I found out, he [10] .... (already/leave).

SCORING Score ☐

10 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

Part E

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct future tense (*going to*; *will/shall*; present form).

A: Do you have any plans for tomorrow?

B: We [1]................................... (take) the children to the park.

A: I heard on the radio that it [2]................................... (rain).

B: Oh. If it rains, then I guess we [3]................................... (stay) home. If we [4]................................... (stay) home, I [5]................................... (call) you and invite you over to watch a video with us.

SCORING Score ☐

5 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

Part F

Combine each phrase in column A with a suitable phrase from column B. Not all phrases in column B will be used.

A

1 He got the job despite
2 She was quite nervous, so
3 He seems well-educated; however,
4 I hired him because
5 She is not only beautiful and intelligent but

B

kind and thoughtful.
he had so much experience.
I don't like her.
she didn't do very well.
not having much experience.
he's not very bright.
not very interesting.

1 ....

2 ....

3 ....

4 ....

5 ....

SCORING Score ☐

5 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

Part G

Choose a preposition from the box to fill the gaps. Not all prepositions will be used.

about after at beyond during in onto out to until

Today was definitely not my lucky day! First, when I got ^{1}.................. the bus, I bumped my head. When I got ^{2}.................. work, my boss yelled at me. ^{3}.................. a phone call, I spilled coffee on some important papers; ^{4}.................. that, I accidentally deleted some important files on my computer. My bad luck continued ^{5}.................. I went home. I hope tomorrow is a better day.

SCORING Score ☐

5 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

TOTAL SCORE Total Score ☐

Maximum 50 points. *Add up your score.*

Test 2

Part A

Underline the correct verb forms to complete the sentences.

1 By this summer, I **will have been working** / **will be working** here for 5 years.
2 I **will have to finish** / **will have had to finish** washing the car before I can go out.
3 You are **not to speak** / **not to be speaking** during the test.
4 **Will you wait** / **Will you be waiting** for me when I return?
5 They **don't intend to marry** / **don't intend to marrying** until after they graduate.
6 Don't bother cleaning up; I **will do** / **will have done** it later.
7 She wishes her husband **doesn't come** / **didn't come** home so late every night.
8 I wish he **writes** / **wrote** to me more often.
9 If only he **knew** / **had known** the truth before he spoke to her.
10 I wish you **would stop** / **stopped making** that awful noise while I'm studying.

SCORING Score ☐

10 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

Part B

Put the verbs in brackets into the passive where possible.

A report 1.. (just come in) that the Southgate
warehouse 2.. (break into) last Friday night.
The gate 3.. (force) open and two of the back
windows 4.. (shatter). Someone, probably a tall
male, 5.. (leave) muddy footprints in the back
hall. The owners 6.. (tell) reporters that nothing
terribly valuable 7.. (take); however, there is a
lot of damage 8.. (repair). Police
9.. (work) on the case now, and expect an
arrest 10.. (make) within a week.

SCORING Score ☐

10 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

Part C

Answer the following questions by using one of the phrasal verbs from the box. Use the appropriate verb tense, and use pronouns in your answer where possible. Not all the verbs in the box will be used.

call up cheer up come up with fix up give up run out of save up take after turn down

1 A: Did you accept that job offer?
B: No, I ....

2 A: Does the baby look like his father?
B: No, actually, I think he .... his mother.

3 A: Have you had any good ideas for the project yet?
B: Yes, I've just .... something wonderful.

4 A: I didn't know you smoked.
B: Well, I .... for a few years, but then I started again.

5 A: What's the matter? Have we .... petrol?
B: No, the engine's overheating.

SCORING Score ☐

5 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

Part D

Use a gerund or infinitive form of the verbs in brackets to complete the letter.

Dear Ms Collins,

I am writing [1]........................... (express) my interest in the secretarial position at CRS advertised in the Times last week. I am proficient at [2]........................... (type), and know how [3]........................... (use) most word-processing packages. I enjoy [4]........................... (work) with people, know how [5]........................... (meet) a challenge, and don't mind [6]........................... (work) overtime. As you can see from the enclosed letters of reference, my previous employers considered me [7]........................... (be) a skilled secretary. I would be pleased [8]........................... (further) my career by [9]........................... (work) for a prestigious company like CRS. I look forward to [10]........................... (hear) from you.

Yours sincerely

Caroline Sinclair

SCORING Score ☐

10 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

Part E

Rewrite the sentences below, using a present participle or a perfect participle. Where there are two sentences, join them to form one, using a participle.

1 He wore himself out. He hiked all day.

....

2 After we heard the news, we came over as quickly as possible.

....

3 She had worked hard all day. She wanted to go out for dinner.

....

4 Soon after he moved up north, he regretted his decision.

....

5 While I sympathize with your point of view, I cannot totally agree with you.

....

SCORING Score ☐

5 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

Part F

Combine the two sentences into one, using a relative pronoun or a conjunction, and making any necessary changes.

1 That's the woman. Her dog bit me.

....

2 Can you tell me about the town? You were born there.

....

3 I found the book. It was taken from the library.

....

4 I can't remember the time. I first heard that song.

....

5 The woman married my best friend. The woman is my cousin.

....

SCORING Score ☐

5 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

Part G

Add a tag question to each sentence.

1 You haven't seen my bag anywhere, ... ?
2 Laura couldn't have spoken to him this morning, ... ?
3 So, you went into my room when I was away, ... ?
4 The meeting went quite well, ... ?
5 Nobody is coming tonight, ... ?

SCORING Score ☐
5 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

TOTAL SCORE Total Score ☐
Maximum 50 points. *Add up your score.*

Test 3

Part A

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1 If you .... (finish) your work, you could come with us. It doesn't look like it'll be done in time, though.

2 If it hadn't rained, the flowers .... (die).

3 I .... (not go) there if I were you.

4 If this water .... (not be) cleaned up, there's going to be an accident.

5 If you .... (go) to the lecture today, please take good notes.

6 You'll have to move if you .... (get) that promotion.

7 If the other driver had been looking, he .... (not hit) our car.

8 He .... (not come) to the party if Tessa is invited.

9 If the house .... (be) warmer, I wouldn't have to wear a jacket inside.

10 If you .... (be) more careful, you wouldn't have made so many mistakes.

SCORING Score ☐

10 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

Part B

Match the clauses by writing the letter of the second half in the space provided after the first half. No letter will be used twice.

1 You don't have to call me .....

2 He wouldn't have been angry ....

3 I won't work overtime ....

4 I would take that job ....

5 I would have left my job last year ....

6 I wouldn't want to speak to her again ....

7 I will be happy to see her again ....

8 I won't go out with her again ....

a if they hadn't offered me more money.

b as long as they offer me more money.

c unless she apologizes to me.

d if only you hadn't been so late.

e on condition that you are not late.

f provided they offered me more money.

g assuming that you're not late.

h even if they offer me more money.

9 We'll get there before the film begins ....

10 I will renew my contract for next year ....

i even if she apologized to me.

j as long as she apologizes to me.

SCORING Score ☐

10 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

Part C

Each sentence has one mistake. Rewrite the sentences, correcting the mistake.

1 I think this umbrella can be Emily's; she was carrying one like it yesterday.

....

....

2 After I've been studying French for another year, I can speak it more fluently.

....

....

3 We must to leave as soon as she gets here.

....

4 You ought write to your parents more often.

....

5 He isn't able to be very bright; he's failed the course three times.

....

6 I wish I can come to your party.

....

7 He must waits until the bank opens.

....

8 They'll have to taking a taxi to get there in time.

....

9 My parents say that I am able to stay out until midnight.

....

10 May I to use this phone to make a private call?

....

SCORING Score ☐

10 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

Part D

Choose a word from the box to complete each sentence. Each word is used once.

mustn't	need to	needn't	should	shouldn't

1 It's an airline regulation that you .... unfasten your seatbelt until the plane has landed.
2 If she wants to lose weight, she .... eat so many sweets.
3 You .... submit two photos with your application.
4 You .... have brought your umbrella: it's not going to rain.
5 He .... have thought more carefully before he spoke!

SCORING Score ☐

5 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

Part E

Underline the correct form of the infinitive or gerund in each sentence.

1 I hope **to be chosen / to be choosing** for the lead role in the play.
2 Please thank her for **having done / being done** such a fine job.
3 I deeply regret **having lied / to have lied** about the matter.
4 She would like **to have completed / to be completing** her courses before she gets married.
5 What do you expect **to have been doing / to be doing** in five years?

SCORING Score ☐

5 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

Part F

Rewrite the following sentences in reported speech. Use appropriate forms for written reporting.

1 'I am going to resign next month.'
The Councillor said that he .... next month.
2 'I didn't realize all the problems.'
She explained that she .... all the problems.
3 'There will be a few changes around the office.'
The boss announced that there .... a few changes around the office.

4 'Heavy rains have caused flooding in the north.'
The weather report mentioned that heavy rains
.... flooding in the north.

5 'I have been playing the piano for 5 years.'
He told me that he .... the piano for 5 years.

6 'No, he's not employed.'
His wife explained that he .... employed.

7 'I completely forgot!'
He admitted that he ....

8 'We're having a dinner party this Wednesday.'
The Carters told us that they .... this Wednesday.

9 'By this summer, I will have been working there for three years.'
He told us that by this summer, he .... there for three years.

10 'I don't have enough time to finish.'
The student complained that she .... enough time to finish.

SCORING Score ☐
10 points. *Give yourself one point for each correct answer.*

TOTAL SCORE Total Score ☐
Maximum 50 points. *Add up your score.*

Key

1a tennis, squash, bowling, table tennis, snooker, equipment, fee, tuition, coaching, competition, thirst, fruit juice, mineral water, footwear, lighting, sunlight, swimwear, exercise, food, food, fruit, bread, advice, information

1b 1 b 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 a 7 b 8 b 9 b 10 b 11 a 12 a 13 b 14 b 15 b

2a 1 the a 2 a the 3 The 4 – – 5 the the 6 the the 7 an an 8 – – 9 a 10 The – 11 – the 12 The the the 13 a – the 14 a the 15 an 16 the – 17 The the 18 The the 19 – 20 a a – the

2b 1 – 2 a 3 the 4 the 5 the 6 the 7 a 8 the 9 the 10 a 11 the 12 a 13 a 14 the 15 a 16 an 17 the 18 – 19 – 20 a 21 a 22 the 23 The 24 – 25 a. 26 the 27 a 28 the 29 a 30 –

2c Timothy Harding has worked for this company for ten years. Throughout this time he has shown himself to be **a** hard-working and enthusiastic employee. He first joined **the** company as **a** junior sales representative but was soon promoted and is now at **the** head of **a** successful team of sales representatives. He manages **the** team with skill and energy and **the** significant increase in sales achieved by **the** team is **a** measure of his success. He has considerable initiative and this has been particularly evident in **the** area of training, where he has had notable success. **The** training programme he devised for his team has now been adopted throughout **the** company with very positive results.

On **a** personal level, I have found Timothy to be **a** very honest and considerate person and he is well-liked in **the** company. I have no hesitation in recommending him for **the** job for which he has applied, though I would of course be sorry to lose him.

3a 1 The holiday was absolutely wonderful. 2 They are staying in an enormous old grey building. 3 He looks rather tired and old now. 4 We met a charming young medical student. 5 He is an angry, aggressive young man. 6 He is a very heavy smoker. 7 She has made him very happy. 8 He gave her a beautiful, heavy gold necklace. 9 They are extremely close friends. 10 You seem rather unhappy at the moment. 11 He seems to be a very thoughtful young man. 12 The Project is expensive, time-wasting and impractical. 13 My hair is beginning to turn grey. 14 Diana is a successful and well-respected young actress. 15 I am feeling fine now.

3b 1 relaxed 2 well-acted 3 embarrassing 4 boiling 5 well brought-up 6 broken 7 well-brushed 8 changing 9 clear-thinking 10 continuing 11 well-built 12 badly-planned 13 fast-declining 14 beautifully-tailored 15 dried 16 beautifully-kept 17 well-written 18 stolen 19 loving 20 parked

3c 1 enjoyable 2 forgetful 3 powerless 4 truthful 5 tireless 6 descriptive 7 reliable 8 submissive 9 careless 10 graceful 11 motionless 12 changeable 13 active 14 comfortable 15 dreadful

3d
dis- disagreeable distasteful dishonest
un- unattractive unjustified unfriendly uninteresting
il- illiterate illegal illegible illogical
im- impatient immature immoral impossible immortal imperfect impolite
in- inflexible inconvenient insignificant inexplicable indestructible insoluble inseparable
ir- irrelevant irregular irresponsible irrational irreversible irreplaceable

3e The first adjective in each pair is gradable: surprising, amazing; hungry, starving; nice, wonderful; dirty, filthy; upset, devastated; tasty, delicious; big enormous; angry, furious; ugly, hideous; difficult, impossible; small, minute; frightened, terrified; good, perfect; tired, exhausted; thirsty, parched; important, vital; bad, terrible

4 1 lower 2 more 3 oldest 4 cheaper 5 most important 6 more efficient 7 more flexible 8 more worrying 9 more and more critical 10 biggest 11 highest 12 best 13 more spacious 14 best 15 better 16 less polluted 17 less stressful 18 quieter 19 more interesting 20 less varied 21 busier 22 less crowded 23 more excited 24 best 25 more settled 26 most beautiful

5a 1 I've been working hard in my office all morning. 2 He never speaks to me nicely in the mornings. 3 We were listening carefully all evening. 4 She's been sleeping soundly in that chair all afternoon. 5 He is usually at the college at this time of day. 6 The postman comes very early in the morning. 7 I thought you spoke very well in that meeting yesterday. 8 We generally go swimming at the local pool on Saturdays 9 I bought these jeans very cheaply in the sales last week. 10 He's never been to a dentist in his life.

5b 1 impatiently 2 already 3 for three hours 4 soon 5 for months 6 so much 7 hardly 8 deeply 9 absolutely 10 only 11 a few times 12 lovingly 13 in a friendly way 14 Suddenly 15 straightaway 16 just 17 anxiously

6a 1 more heavily 2 happier 3 harder 4 healthier 5 more suddenly 6 more expensive 7 more hungrily 8 hotter 9 more frequently 10 more seriously 11 more furious 12 more considerately 13 more assertively 14 colder 15 nicer 16 more tactfully 17 more cheaply 18 easier 19 more calmly

6b 1 as young as 2 more and more tired 3 as quickly as 4 less often 5 more enthusiastically 6 earlier 7 faster 8 more energetically 9 (more) optimistically 10 better

7a 1 's worrying 2 don't see 3 's been going on 4 went out 5 think 6 assumed 7 was interested 8 Have you told 9 doesn't seem 10 was working 11 came up 12 put 13 don't like 14 suppose 15 doesn't believe 16 's getting 17 'm getting 18 'm thinking 19 do you really want 20 don't want 21 's attending 22 expect 23 's talking 24 trying 25 dislike

7b 1 do you weigh 2 're having 3 's looking 4 admire 5 is appearing 6 are 7 represents 8 're thinking 9 Do you see 10 looks 11 'm seeing 12 don't have 13 do you think 14 's expecting 15 'm just admiring 6 're weighing 17 appears 18 's being 19 expect 20 is representing

8 1 has suffered 2 have worked 3 will have heard 4 had been 5 had had 6 will have been married 7 had already died 8 had certainly been 9 has happened 10 will have been 11 has fallen off 12 had all lost 13 will have finished 14 had decided 15 Have you found

9a
1 works … organises … is working … is going
2 are staying … belongs … is cycling … use … enjoy
3 is doing … are taking … need … are learning … are … are getting … provides … organises
4 is still increasing … are already starving … are suffering … is growing … need … die

9b 1 don't think 2 are you getting on 3 's going 4 Are you still going out 5 'm going out 6 's talking 7 see 8 Is he wearing 9 looks 10 comes 11 's life treating 12 'm still working 13 keep 14 feel 15 get in 16 don't have 17 suppose 18 hope 19 's coming over 20 Do you want

10a 1 was 2 was 3 were screaming 4 shouting 5 wanted 6 was pouring 7 was dripping 8 was thumping 9 loved 10 felt 11 decided 12 started 13 went 14 were all dancing 15 clapping 16 left 17 was 18 got back 19 opened 20 saw 21 were waiting 22 locked 23 shouted 24 came 25 tied 26 blindfolded 27 gagged 28 could hear 29 was talking 30 was saying 31 was saying 32 deserved 33 Deserved 34 did he mean 35 was going on 36 didn't someone tell 37 was happening

10b 1 happened 2 was 3 were all lying out 4 was reading 5 was just dozing 6 were looking for 7 arrived 8 was 9 looked 10 went 11 opened 12 thought 13 were 14 said 15 phoned 16 didn't answer 17 were you doing 18 heard 19 was having 20 couldn't 21 did you want 22 was clearing out 23 gave 24 came across 25 were addressed 26 all smelt 27 woke up 28 woke up 29 listened out 30 didn't hear 31 was snoring 32 were making 33 was dripping 34 opened 35 looked 36 was 37 was shining 38 thought 39 saw 40 could certainly hear 41 saw 42 was 43 was wearing 44 was hiding 45 ran

11a 1 has been 2 have filled 3 have always listened 4 have acted 5 have been interviewing 6 have you interviewed 7 have interviewed 8 have been talking 9 have been discussing 10 have had 11 have also been working 12 have been 13 have been circulating 14 have been seeing 15 have been learning 16 haven't learnt

11b 1 have you been doing 2 've been running 3 have you run 4 've been thinking 5 's been acting 6 's been crying 7 've been making 8 Have you talked 9 's said 10 have you been 11 've been talking 12 's been trying 13 've been 14 haven't heard 15 's had 16 's been 17 Has she broken 18 's been hurt

12a 1 haven't seen 2 met 3 have you been doing 4 've been doing 5 's been 6 've started 7 've been teaching 8 have finished 9 worked 10 enjoyed 11 wanted 12 've always enjoyed 13 thought 14 have you bee 15 've done 16 've been working 17 've had 18 've given 19 's made 20 've done 21 've never had 22 worked 23 started 24 moved 25 was 26 did 27 was told 28 did you get 29 passed 30 've been doing 31 decided 32 couldn't get

12b 1 has just come in 2 has been 3 were 4 have been found 5 went 6 plunged 7 have now been informed 8 have set off 9 have not been given 10 were 11 has had 12 has somehow managed 13 have been 14 promised 15 was elected 16 has maintained 17 has claimed 18 has been 19 has ever had 20 came

13a 1 missed 2 did that happen 3 got 4 arrived 5 had just left 6 Did you have 7 was 8 arrived 9 knew 10 had forgotten 11 did she do 12 pretend 13 hadn't forgotten 14 said 15 wasn't 16 had got 17 was 18 had rained 19 was 20 smelt 21 were 22 had all gone 23 had arrived 24 had sat up 25 was 26 had only been

13b 1 sat 2 felt 3 didn't know 4 had gone in 5 had been 6 had looked 7 went in 8 felt 9 had already got 10 was 11 wanted 12 meant 13 had thought 14 had imagined 15 was 16 couldn't remember 17 had planned 18 almost decided 19 had to do 20 had spent 21 couldn't give up 22 were 23 felt 24 opened 25 had gone in 26 came out 27 smiled 28 hated 29 appeared 30 suddenly wished 31 had gone 32 got up 33 wondered 34 looked 35 felt

14 It was 10 o'clock at night. The offices of 'The Daily News' were buzzing with excitement. The deadline for the paper was in half an hour and they were frantically trying to finish the front page. Everyone had been working all evening without a break. Some of the journalists had been at the office since early in the morning. They had all been trying to get an exclusive story, to find out something that no other journalist had discovered. The main story was a big one. The Prime Minister had resigned. Everyone knew that his government had had lots of problems in the last year but his resignation was nonetheless a big surprise. Rumours had been going round all day about the real reasons for the announcement. Some said that he had been involved in some financial scandal. Others said that he had been seeing another woman. All the papers had been working all day to get the best story. And they had been doing their best to find out what the other papers had said. The whole day had been very tense. Suddenly the editor asked everyone to be quiet. There was a telephone call from the Prime Minister's office.

15 1 Are you coming 2 – 3 – 4 – 5 – 6 We're moving 7 – 8 – 9 I'm meeting 10 we're going 11 Are you going out 12 I'm not doing

16 1 'll buy 2 'll carry 3 will drop 4 Will you phone 5 will announce 6 Shall we tell 7 'll be 8 will receive 9 shall not/shan't invite 10 will be sentenced 11 will/shall never make 12 Shall we go 13 will not/won't offer 14 Shall I wash 15 shall have

17 1 are going to do 2 're going to have 3 're going to take 4 'll probably book into 5 Are you going to do 6 's coming 7 'll phone him up 8 're going to do 9 will be 10 're going to see 11 'll join 12 'll pick you up 13 Shall I bring 14 will make 15 will you bring 16 'll do 17 will save 18 are you going to see 19 're going to see 20 're going to try out 21 'll spend 22 'll see

18 1 leaves 2 arrive 3 get 4 will be shown 5 be given 6 is served 7 don't get 8 finishes 9 will be 10 are provided 11 is 12 will stay 13 will go back 14 are expected 15 find 16 will look 17 get back 18 will help 19 don't recognize 20 is served 21 is 22 plans 23 stay 24 won't be 25 get lost 26 will all have

19 1 'll be working 2 'll have to come over 3 'll talk 4 'll phone 5 Will you be 6 'll be recovering 7 Will you be going 8 'll give 9 'll be playing 10 'll be 11 'll pick you up 12 Will you be 13 'll be waiting 14 'll be doing 15 'll be doing 16 'll be living 17 'll still be working 18 'll probably be doing 19 won't 20 'll get 21 will 22 will 23 'll go 24 'll learn 25 won't be able to post 26 'll be going 27 'll take 28 'll give 29 'll be waiting 30 won't come 31 'll see 32 'll be carrying 33 'll have to get

20 1 Will you be seeing … will 2 are you going … 're going 3 'll be sitting 4 won't be walking … 's giving 5 are you doing … Are you coming round … 'll be seeing 6 'll be going

21 1 will have heard … see 2 'll have finished … 'll give 3 will be … get in … 'll have been running around 4 will have been … 'll win 5 Will you have eaten … get … 'll make 6 won't have got … 'll probably get back 7 'll have finished … comes … 'll move in 8 'll be … see … 'll have been working 9 come … 'll have seen … 'll love 10 will have gone … 'll be

22 1 I'm about to go to work. 2 The Council intend to close the old swimming pool. 3 They are planning to have a big wedding in the summer. 4 The train is due to depart at 8.25. 5 The Condor Freight Company have agreed to provide free work clothes to all employees. 6 You are not to enter the building without signing your name in the register. 7 The Government have promised not to increase taxes during the next year. 8 The economy is on the point of collapse/collapsing. 9 The Department of Social Security has proposed cutting unemployment benefit. 10 My grandfather is about to die. 11 I hope to find a new job before the end of the year. 12 Do you promise not to tell anyone about this? 13 When do the two leaders intend to meet? 14 They are planning to move abroad. 15 You are due to arrive at the hotel at 7.30 in the evening.

23a 1 This information should have been given to us ages ago. 2 Do you want to be woken up in the morning? 3 I don't like being told what to do. 4 The windows are really dirty: they haven't been cleaned for weeks. 5 After being made redundant, he became very depressed. 6 I would like to have been given me the chance to explain my point of view, but they weren't interested. 7 I'm hoping I'll be chosen for the college football team. 8 It is believed that many more people will die of skin cancer over the next ten years. 9 If it hadn't rained so much, the job would have been finished on time. 10 We can't take the car: it is being repaired (at the moment).

23b 1 The company is sorry to announce that it has been forced to introduce a range of cost-cutting measures as from the beginning of the new year. Unfortunately, free tea and coffee can no longer be provided. New coin-operated drinks machines are going to be installed in every department and a wide range of drinks can be purchased from these. Overtime payments will also be stopped after the end of this month and all members of staff will be expected to complete their duties within their contract hours. Personal calls must no longer be made from office phones and you are requested to use the pay phone in the basement for this purpose.

2 The Royal Hotel was almost completely destroyed by fire last night. By the time the Fire Brigade was/were called, the hotel was already blazing. Fifteen people were taken to hospital suffering from severe burns. Seven of them are said to be in a serious condition. (It is said that seven of them are in a serious condition.) The fire is thought to have been started by a discarded cigarette.

3 G: So, how was the holiday? J: Oh, it was fantastic. Everything was organized so well. As soon as we arrived at the airport, we were met and taken to the hotel. All the rooms had been beautifully cleaned and fresh flowers had been put on the tables. G: Oh, how lovely. And what about the food? J: It was excellent. It was all freshly prepared in the hotel and even the bread was made in the hotel kitchen. The bread rolls were served hot every morning with breakfast. G: Mm, it does sound good. I must say, I'd like my meals to be cooked for me for a couple of weeks. And what about the surrounding area? Was that nice? J: Oh beautiful. There were trips every day and we were shown all the local sights. There was so much history to see. You'd love it there, honestly.

4 Last month a plan was put forward (by the Council) to make the sea front traffic free. The plan is supported by many of the shop and restaurant owners as they believe that their trade will be improved by a more pleasant environment. However, the hotel owners are less enthusiastic and say that access to their car parks will be made very difficult. There have also been protests from some local residents who complain that their journeys around the town will be made much longer.

23c 1 are being driven 2 are being killed 3 cross 4 are taken 5 are killed 6 make 7 often be seen 8 are hit 9 move around 10 be hypnotized 11 do not move 12 are sometimes hit 13 fly 14 Can anything be done 15 was built 16 have been constructed 17 lives 18 have been built 19 has been put up 20 look out 21 are often seen 22 be hoped 23 become

24 1 Why don't we have/get our picture taken? 2 I've finally decided to have/get my nose pierced. 3 We should have/get it repaired. 4 I'm afraid I haven't had my watch repaired yet. 5 We're going to have the kitchen redecorated next month. 6 If I were you, I'd have/get that tree felled. 7 I'm going to have/get them tested next week. 8 I love having my shoulders massaged. 9 I haven't had my teeth checked this year. 10 … she was having her hair washed. 11 I think he's had his hair dyed. 12 I haven't had all my work marked yet. 13 You must have/get it removed.

25 1 I wish I had a car. 2 I wish I hadn't gone to bed late last night. 3 I wish we lived in a nice big flat. 4 I wish I had bought that dress. 5 I wish he would stop shouting. 6 I wish I hadn't lost my temper. 7 I wish you had told me the truth. 8 I wish you would stop playing that music. 9 I wish I had gone to that concert. 10 I wish my job was/were more interesting. 11 I wish my family lived nearer to me. 12 I wish you would listen to me. 13 I wish I was/were with him now. 14 I wish I hadn't spent all my money on that new coat. 15 I wish we had eaten before we came out.

26a Intransitive: get on, go down, carry on, go up
Transitive: (separable) take one, take off, put back, take up, fix up, give up, sort out

Transitive: (inseparable) get on with, come up to, look round for, run through, get away with

26b 1 Can we fix up a meeting soon? 2 You can't carry on going out every night. 3 I don't know how he gets away with it. 4 ... we'll need to take on more staff soon. 5 We'll never get this problem sorted out if we don't talk about it. 6 The membership of the club has been going down for the last five years. 7 I'm going to take you off this case detective. 8 I really think he should give up drinking. 9 It hasn't really come up to my expectations. 10 Her new job is taking up all her energy.

26c 1 was taken over 2 have put in for 3 have been turned down 4 have run out of 5 had saved up 6 fall back on 7 turns up 8 pick up 9 live off 10 come down 11 cheer me up 12 go on

27 1 had been ... would have gone 2 don't tell ... will regret 3 had come round ... would have seen 4 happens ... will lose 5 would help ... had 6 loses ... will resign 7 hadn't gone ... would never have met 8 were ... would use 9 gets ... will be 10 would have been ... had happened 11 break down ... will be 12 knew ... would help 13 would have married ... had known 14 would be ... spent 15 had ... wouldn't moan

28 1 won't be allowed 2 didn't want 3 would advise 4 wanted 5 don't have 6 would have told 7 have 8 get 9 had phoned 10 come ... tell 11 don't give 12 will be 13 would be called off 14 keep 15 would definitely come 16 had explained 17 would choose 18 might have understood 19 was/were 20 get

29 1 F 2 D 3 B 4 J 5 C 6 I 7 A 8 G 9 E 10 H

30 1 have been eating 2 won't want 3 took 4 would bring 5 are not collecting 6 'll go back 7 do 8 'll have finished 9 hadn't agreed 10 would have 11 hadn't taken on 12 wouldn't have 13 'll be lying 14 can get 15 get 16 don't see 17 have saved up 18 'll try 19 is 20 'll have saved up 21 haven't lost 22 had 23 would have left 24 keep on 25 'll be running 26 has been 27 haven't noticed 28 's still raining 29 've decided 30 hasn't phoned you up yet 31 don't tell

31 1 on condition that we pay him a reasonable fee 2 unless he asks me properly 3 If only I could get a job 4 Supposing that you had a lot of money 5 Assuming that the train arrives on time 6 What if he doesn't agree to my request? What will I do then? 7 as long as you get back by midnight 8 Imagine the helicopter hadn't been there to save her. What would have happened then? 9 Even if you'd offered to pay me a thousand pounds, 10 Provided that Rosie gets this new promotion,

32 1 Alison would make a very good managing director of she got the job. 2 I know that she could do really well if she worked hard/harder. 3 It would be horrible sitting out here if it wasn't/weren't sunny. 4 He would not be able to live on his own if he didn't have the help of his neighbours. 5 We'll finish this job by the end of today if we're lucky. 6 You'll love it (in Indonesia) if you go there. 7 They may be imprisoned or even executed if they are deported. 8 The rain would have ruined them if you hadn't brought them in from outside. 9 I'm sure she would have forgiven him if he had told her the truth. 10 Many more would have died if they hadn't had the help of the Red Cross doctors.

33 1 I'll phone 2 he still couldn't read 3 We must leave 4 Can you come 5 You shouldn't/oughtn't to work 6 They might/could be 7 Shall we go 8 he would write 9 May I sit 10 He won't give 11 You needn't apologize. 12 May/Can I smoke 13 He could speak 14 I can't 15 I should/ought to stay in. 16 she might/could be 17 You mustn't tell 18 I will finish 19 Clare should/ought to be 20 He must be

34 1 can run 2 to be able to work 3 couldn't climb 4 could have died 5 be able to spend 6 can/could go 7 can be 8 can't understand 9 can't see 10 Being able to speak 11 couldn't say 12 couldn't phone her up ... were able to get 13 could have done 14 haven't been able to sleep 15 couldn't put 16 be able to go out 17 Can you come 18 'll be able to ride 19 could be 20 could play

35 1 I must have missed 2 can/may be exchanged 3 must be 4 will be 5 can't have moved 6 might be visiting 7 should/ought to do/have done 8 might/could be 9 can't still be playing 10 should/ought to have got 11 can be found 12 must be missing 13 might come 14 could/might have been 15 should/ought to have 16 will be ... won't ... 'll be having 17 might/could have been running 18 could/might be 19 can't have rained/can't have been raining 20 might join 21 must have been 22 should/ought to be expecting 23 should/ought to be 24 can't be 25 might have eaten ... might/could have

36 1 had to leave 2 should/sought to offer 3 don't have to pay/needn't pay 4 haven't had to cook 5 must come round 6 had to run 7 shouldn't/ought to have gone 8 do the prisoners have to be locked 9 shouldn't/oughtn't to be having 10 mustn't tell 11 shouldn't/oughtn't to allow 12 having to do 13 must go 14 doesn't have to get up 15 'll have to take 16 should/ought to have been working 17 should tell 18 needn't have bought 19 have to take 20 mustn't eat 21 don't have to come 22 must be hidden ... must remain 23 Do you have to wear 24 needn't lie/don't have to lie 25 must follow

37 (One modal answer is provided here for each question but there are a number of possible answers for each one.) 1 Shall I open the door for you? 2 Would you answer the phone for me, please? 3 Would you like to go for a swim this morning? 4 Shall I make you a sandwich? 5 Could I make an appointment to see Ms Arnold, please? 6 You can use the phone if you want to. 7 Shall we go for a picnic this afternoon? 8 Would you wait here for me, please? 9 You can go out but you must be back before it gets dark. 10 Would you mind if I opened the window? 11 You can work outside today but you mustn't talk too much. 12 Shall I answer the phone? 13 Can I borrow a pen, please?

38 1 used to 2 used to/would 3 used to/would 4 used to 5 never used to/would never 6 used to/would 7 used to/would 8 often used to/would often 9 often used to/would often 10 used to 11 never used to/would never 12 used to 13 often used to/would often 14 used to 15 used to

39a Verb (+ person) + infinitive: arrange (for s.o.), decide, demand, expect, help (s.o.), hope, intend invite (s.o.), learn, would like, manage, offer, plan, pretend, refuse, seem, want, wish

Verb + preposition + gerund: apologize for, approve of, discourage s.o. from, dream of/about, enquire about, insist on, learn about, look forward to, object to, succeed in

Verb + gerund: avoid, enjoy, finish, imagine, mind, miss

39b 1 to deliver 2 to stay 3 staying 4 to take 5 working 6 to be 7 getting 8 buying 9 smoking 10 to stay 11 talking 12 to stay in 13 not to leave 14 seeing 15 studying 16 living 17 upsetting 18 not keeping 19 to phone 20 to lock up

40 A: Mary, where were you last night? I tried to find you but I couldn't see you anywhere. James says he didn't see you come in to the party.

M: Yes Alex, that's right. I'm sorry. My parents wouldn't let me come out last night. I wanted to see you – honestly I did.

A: Why did your parents make you stay in? They usually allow you to go out in the evenings, don't they?

M: Yes, but I hadn't finished doing my homework. And they refused to let me go out until I had.

A: Oh dear, poor you. Oh well, never mind. Let's do something tonight instead.

M: OK. Actually, I'd like to see that new film.
A: Would you? I suppose it might be quite good but I'd rather just go out to the cafe. I was hoping to have a chance to talk to you properly.
M: Well, why not do both? We could go to the early showing of the film and then go to the cafe.
A: I'm not sure I can afford to go to the cinema.
M: That's all right. I've got some money.
A: So what time would you like meet, then?
M: Six o'clock I suppose – in the cinema. I'll try to get there a bit earlier and buy the tickets.

41 1 I saw you cycling to work the other day. 2 I heard him leave the house early this morning. 3 She stood there and watched him drive away. 4 Did you notice me crying. 5 I've often seen you walking along the beach with your dog. 6 Have you ever heard him play (or playing) saxophone. 7 I expect to find you working hard when I get back. 8 Did you hear me arrive. 9 I looked at the child smiling up at me and felt very sad. 10 We heard them arguing all night. 11 I can feel my hands shaking. 12 I watched you go to sleep and then I left. 13 I never really noticed your hair going grey. 14 I can smell smoke coming in through the windows. 15 He watches me play football every weekend.

42 1 to go out 2 to wash 3 to go 4 sending 5 going 6 trying 7 to inform 8 to apply 9 running 10 to consider 11 enrolling 12 waiting 13 to wait 14 to try 15 to find 16 acquiring/to acquire 17 to book 18 getting 19 to borrow 20 repairing 21 asking 22 buying 23 to give 24 walking 25 worrying 26 thinking

43a 1 from doing 2 about enrolling 3 about starting 4 of leaving 5 about cutting 6 on the neighbours helping 7 on paying 8 about losing 9 for not telling 10 of young people staying out 11 with writing 12 for starting 13 on living 14 against buying 15 on expanding

43b 1 finish 2 seeing 3 spending 4 see 5 do 6 speaking 7 get 8 working 9 finding 10 post 11 sleeping 12 working 13 give up 14 having 15 open

44 1 We're ready to leave. 2 He's afraid to tell her the truth. 3 I was delighted to receive your letter. 4 I was surprised to hear about their divorce. 5 It's rude to interrupt people. 6 It was very kind of you to bring those flowers. 7 It is very expensive to heat this house. 8 It was lovely to see you last night. 9 It is important to have interests outside work. 10 That child is very quick to learn.

45 1 to have 2 to see 3 to talk 4 to discuss 5 working 6 doing 7 to learn 8 to make 9 to say 10 welcoming 11 talking 12 giving 13 working 14 communicating 15 to see 16 to say 17 dealing 18 ensuring 19 keeping 20 to do 21 being 22 failing 23 to carry out 24 to do 25 to work out 26 accepting 27 to do 28 apologizing 29 to calm down 30 to get 31 making 32 to do 33 to prove 34 to start 35 looking

46 1 to be chosen 2 Being accepted 3 to have kept 4 have been hiding 5 to be getting 6 saying/having said 7 getting/having got 8 to be living 9 being filmed 10 to have seen 11 to have left 12 taking part/having taken part 13 lying/having lied 14 to have resigned 15 being asked 16 to have finished 17 having been looked after 18 having been dancing/have danced 19 to have lost 20 being asked

47 1 She said (that) she would come and see us on Friday if that was all right. 2 The statement (said) that the conference would be spending a considerable time discussing the world debt crisis. 3 She explained (that) the shop was closing in about half an hour. 4 Gareth tells me (that) he's planning to set up his own business. 5 The managing director said (that) we/they were going to have to make quite a few cutbacks. 6 A spokesperson said (that) the police had been investigating new allegations of fraud. 7 She explained (that) when the project first started/had first started, there was/had been a lot of interest in it.' 8 She told me (that) it was pouring with rain down there. 9 She promised me (that) she would have finished writing the report by the time I got there. 10 She says (that) her new computer has made a lot of difference to her. 11 The station announcer has just said (that) the 845 train from Waterloo will be arriving in approximately five minutes. 12 They told me (that) when they were setting up the organisation, we had/had had very little money. 13 The treasurer told the meeting (that) the club had lost quite a lot of money last month/ the previous month. 14 He agreed (that) it would be a very difficult time for all of us/ them. 15 He told me (that) I worked too hard and that I should take more time off.

48 1 He asked me where I thought we should advertise. 2 Jean asked me if/whether I was going to audition for the play. 3 She told me to give her a ring if I needed any help. 4 She often asks me how you are getting on. 5 He's been wondering whether to ask her out for a meal. 6 He asked why Matthew had looked so embarassed when he saw Carole. 7 He asked if/whether we had to stay there all evening. 8 She wondered what they were doing about publicity for the event. 9 He asked me if/whether I would send him the report when it was finished. 10 She asked me what I had done with the student records. 11 She asked us if/whether we could keep our voices down a bit. 12 He wanted to know where I had bought the/that hat. 13 The doctor asked me if/ whether I had been eating properly. 14 They asked us not to make any noise during the perfomance. 15 Mike asked me if/whether I was still teaching music when I met Oliver.

49 1 He offered to help me type up the report. 2 He peruaded me not to hand in my resignation immediately. 3 He refused to discuss it with me. 4 He complained about not being invited/having been invited to the meeting. 5 The doctor advised him to take it easy for a few days. 6 The police warned him not to go near their house again. 7 The Ministry of Defence have decided to close down the naval base in two years' time. 8 She accused me of reading/having been reading her diary. 9 He reminded me to apply for a new passport. 10 She apologized for all the trouble she had caused.

50 *Model Answer*

In her acceptance speech, Diane Banham said that she was delighted to have been elected onto the Council and that she was very much looking forward to representing the interests of the residents of Kimbridge Valley. Having spoken to the many valley residents over the last few weeks, she said that she had a clear idea of the issues which were of most concern to them. The proposed closure of the school was understandably causing a great deal of anxiety and she hoped to be successful in fighting against that. She then thanked all her supporters and helpers.

51 1 I went to bed early so that/in order that I would be able to get up early. 2 It's an excellent course so I'm very lucky to get a place on it. 3 I don't really want to go to the cinema tonight because I can't afford it. 4 There is very little that the company can do about this since it is not their responsibility. 5 I've known her for a long time. However, I don't know much about her private life. 6 She's extremely generous, whereas her husband is the exact opposite. 7 Not only did I not say that: I didn't even think it. 8 The suspect is critically ill in hospital so/therefore we can't interview him for the time being. 9 I like working here because the people are very friendly. 10 (Either) I could do the work tonight or I could get up early in the morning to do it. 11 In a way, I both love the job and hate it. 12 He looks a bit overweight in spite of/despite being quite fit./He looks a bit overweight although he's quite fit./He looks a bit overweight. Nevertheless, he's quite fit. 13 Although the economy has been in recession all year, our sales have remained steady./The economy has been in recession all year. However,/Nevertheless, our sales have remained steady/In spite of/Despite the economy being in recession all year, our sales have remained steady. 14 I've brought a photograph so that you can see how beautiful the place is. 15 The Government are getting worried because they're losing popularity. 16 I had a terrible headache last night so I couldn't go out. 17 My job is very interesting but/although it doesn't pay very well. 18 Either you leave now or I'll call the police.

52a A: Helen, I'm delighted to hear that you've decided to accept the post of junior manager.

H: Yes. I just hope that it turns out all right.

A: Oh, I'm sure it will. Is there anything in particular that you're worried about?

H: Well, yes. I'm not sure how the staff will respond to me as a manager. After all, I am quite a bit younger than most of them.

A: Oh, I wouldn't worry too much about that. I expect that some of them will be a bit hostile to you at first but they'll soon get used to the fact that you're the boss. It's important that you appear confident in your position, even if you don't feel very confident. The reason that you got this position at your age is that you're good and you must remember that.

H: Well, I hope that I will live up to your expectations of me. I will certainly try.

52b 1 I'm sure that he's lying to you. 2 What you did is unforgivable./It is unforgivable what you did. 3 She still holds on to the belief that he isn't dead. 4 We must be grateful for the fact that she hasn't made a complaint. 5 I don't know how many people are coming to the meeting. 6 The suggestion that she lied to you about it is ridiculous. 7 I presume that you're going with him. 8 Have you forgotten that Judith's coming round tonight? 9 I don't know if/whether she has passed her exams. 10 She is very angry about the fact that he didn't tell her the truth. 11 It remains doubtful if/whether she is good enough to do the job./If/whether she is good enough to do the job remains doubtful. 12 It is quite apparent that he has some emotional problems. 13 Have you arranged where we are going to meet tonight? 14 Do you know how she is? 15 I'm delighted that they're getting married.

53 1 I smelt something burning. 2 I went round to see her hoping for a reconciliation. 3 While hating the job, he did it for many years. 4 She came in looking furious. 5 Having plenty of time to spare, I had a good look round the town. 6 Wearing only a pair of shorts, he walked out into the darkness. 7 Having been out all day, I was quite happy to stay in for the evening. 8 The bedrooms overlooking the sea are the best ones in the hotel. 9 We're wasting time sitting here and doing nothing. 10 I have changed my job since last writing to you. 11 Before making a decision, I need to discuss it with my partner. 12 After having been friends for twenty years, we suddenly had a big argument and haven't seen each other since. 13 Having failed one of my exams, I couldn't get into university. 14 Loving her so much, he forgave her for everything. 15 I left them doing the washing-up.

54 1 Exhausted through lack of sleep, I fell asleep at my desk. 2 Abandoned by his parents at an early age, Peter took to stealing. 3 Although written many years ago, the book is still relevant today. 4 Since being promoted, I've had no time to go out. 5 Taken from his parents at an early age, the boy had a very difficult life. 6 Being hidden in the cellar, the money was not discovered for many years. 7 Frequently criticized for his self centred attitude, he was nonetheless very popular. 8 After being released from prison, Andy could not find a job anywhere. 9 Always dominated by the same people, the committee meetings were slow-moving and ineffectual. 10 On being caught, he confessed everything. 11 Seen from the outside, the building looks a mess, but it is lovely inside. 12 If elected, we will increase the value of pensions. 13 Although ridiculed by everybody, he continued to pursue his bizarre projects. 14 Unless destroyed, this material could have damaging consequences. 15 Jennifer had been shoplifting for many years before being found out.

55a 1 as soon as I could 2 so that I can get my work done 3 as if/as though it was all my fault 4 as I'd hoped 5 as bad as you think they are 6 than your mother is now 7 although/whereas his father would like him to be a lawyer 8 so ... that she never seems to do anything else 9 wherever you like 10 until I've seen it for myself 11 although/though/even though she can't find a job 12 Because/As/Since I didn't feel very well 13 so that no-one could find it 14 so/as long as/provided/providing that we don't stay late 15 Although/Though I like him

55b 1 Since 2 Although 3 as 4 even though 5 while 6 as if/as though 7 if 8 Since 9 however 10 so 11 than 12 if 13 wherever 14 unless 15 before 16 so that

56 Born in Holland in 1853, Vincent Van Gogh is one of the world's most famous painters. Although unrecognized throughout his life, his talent was much appreciated after his death.

Having failed in every career he had attempted, Van Gogh first turned to art to express his strong religious feelings. Having decided to become a painter, in about 1880, he started to paint studies of peasants and miners. During the next few years, known as his 'Dutch period', he produced paintings with rather dark greenish-brown colours.

In 1886, having gone to Paris to visit his brother Theo, he was immediately attracted to the Impressionist work he saw there. Encouraged by Pissaro to use more colour in his pictures, his subsequent paintings were bright and immensely colourful.

After moving/having moved to Arles in the south of France, in 1888, he worked frantically. This frenzied activity, interrupted by bouts of deep depression and despair, produced the majority of his most famous paintings. One of these, called Self Portrait with Bandaged Ear, shows Van Gogh wearing a bandage after having cut off his own ear. A year later, in 1890, he committed suicide.

A lot is known about Van Gogh's life and his feelings because of the hundreds of letters written by him to his brother Theo and others. Believing in Van Gogh's genius, his brother always encouraged him in his work. He was the closest person to Van Gogh.

57a 1 who killed Mr Makepeace (S) 2 who was staying in the room next door to him (S) 3 he owed her (O) 4 who always shared their table in the evenings (S) 5 who had murdered her husband (S) 6 that would be due to him from his father's life insurance policy (S). 7 he hates (O) 8 his mother is in love with (O) 9 she had married (O) 10 he had (O)

57b 1 She's the one I told you about. 2 I don't like the people who are staying with the Browns. 3 I like books that make you think about things. 4 I'm looking for the person whose car I've just hit. 5 Most of the books I read as a child are still popular today. 6 You can buy pasta from that Italian shop that has just opened in the high street. 7 The woman whose job I'm doing is coming back to work soon. 8 Is she the new television presenter everyone's talking about? 9 People who have a lot of leisure time often have very little money to spend on leisure. 10 Is Technico the company Sarah works for? 11 This is the job I've always wanted. 12 The swimming pool I use is only open to the public in the mornings. 13 We've just bought a computer package that teaches you how to play the piano. 14 My favourite holiday was the one we spent in a cottage in the mountains. 15 We haven't seen the friends that are coming to visit us this weekend for ten years.

58a 1 When I was in town, I met your sister, who was shopping for some clothes. 2 Their house, which is near the beach,

needs a lot of work doing to it. 3 Sandra's just got a new job with Capital Insurers, which is a much better company than the last one she worked for. 4 The new manager, who/whom I met last week, seems to be a very capable woman.
5 This case, which I carried all the way from the station, is full of books. 6 The Games International Company, which we have done business with for many years/with which we have done business for many years, has just gone bankrupt.
7 The hospital, which is due to close down next year, has handed out redundancy notices to all its staff. 8 The prisoners, whose families are campaigning on their behalf, are requesting more time out of their cells. 9 The new government, which came to power with a lot of public support, is now facing major problems.
10 Her latest novel, which I read on holiday, is really good. 11 The Home Affairs Minister, who/whom the opposition has accused of lying, is suspected of being involved in a financial scandal. 12 The Education Department, which Mrs Parkinson is in charge of/of which Mrs Parkinson is in charge, is changing its policy on single sex schools.
13 The Lilley and Swan department store, which has a sale on at the moment, has made reductions on most of its goods.
14 The principal actor, who normally has a wonderful voice, could hardly speak last night due to a sore throat. 15 The sales manager, whose ideas I support, is planning a new advertising campaign.

58b 1 This new drug, which is very powerful, could have bad side effects.
2 Her father, who is staying in a nursing home, is said to be dying of cancer. 3 The Prime Minister, who is staying in his holiday home in Scotland at the moment, said that he was very saddened by the news of the air crash. 4 The story she gave, which her parents believed, was that she had not realised how late is was.
5 Agatha Christie, whose books are read all over the world, was a very prolific writer. 6 The subtropical gardens, which we love to walk round, are open all year.
7 The manager of the restaurant, who came over to apologize to us, said that she was very sorry about the undercooked fish. 8 Our professor of psychology, whose lectures I always attend, has written some very interesting books. 9 We packed a picnic and walked down to the beach, which was very crowded. 10 Next Saturday I'm going to visit my Aunty Sheila, who/whom I like very much.

59 1 with which the majority of soldiers went off to fight for their country.
2 who rushed to the enlistment centres
3 they had dug in the mud 4 who had been horribly injured 5 in which the image makers made an impact 6 which asked women to encourage their men to go to war 7 which seized the country
8 which gripped the nation 9 they had been told 10 which brutalized the people that took part 11 who put these feelings into words very effectively 12 who, in the poem Anthem for Doomed Youth, wrote 'What passing bells for these who die as cattle?' 13 who die as cattle 14 which described the horrific reality of war
15 who had not at first been anti-war
16 whose attitudes were changed by what they saw

60 1 The early morning is (the time) when I work best. 2 His mid-teens were the time when he first became interested in politics
3 His dishonesty is (the reason) why I left him. 4 Edinburgh is (the city) where I'd most like to live. 5 The outdoor swimming pool, where we often went as children, has now been closed down.
6 This is a picture of (the place) where we're going for our holidays. 7 His refusal to tell her the truth is (the reason) why she is so angry with him. 8 This is (the place) where I fell off my bike. 9 The people I work with are (the reason) why I stay in the job. 10 That terrible night in December, when I found out what had been going on, changed my life forever.

61 1 You shouldn't listen to anything (that) he says. 2 It was nice to see all his family, most of whom I have met before. 3 The worst thing that can happen is that we'll miss the train. 4 I've read both the reports, neither of which I agree with.

5 The only thing (that) I need to do is to get some cash out of the bank. 6 The cleaners, several of whom have complained to me about their low pay, have decided to take industrial action. 7 Everything (that) I've done has been a failure. 8 I've lost any optimism that I once had for the future. 9 Members of the committee, many of whom are themselves suspected of corruption, have decided to call for an investigation. 10 The only thing (that) I can do is to give her the chance to talk about it. 11 Everyone who/that saw the argument said that Peter started it. 12 Those chocolates, half of which I've already eaten, were not meant to be for me. 13 The management team, none of whom I trust, are all saying the same thing. 14 The cheapest (that) I saw was about £5. 15 Her brothers, the youngest of whom is a friend of mine, have set up in business together.

62 1 She's going to have to sell the business, which is a great shame. 2 The weather's very cold at this time of year, which is why I don't go out very much. 3 He's decided to go and teach abroad, which will be an interesting new experience for him. 4 They say he's been stealing money from the company, which is a terrible accusation to make. 5 She's going to have a month off work, which is just what she needs after all her problems. 6 He's going to give up his evening job, which will give him more time to spend with his girlfriend. 7 The editor has finally agreed to print an apology, which he should have done a long time ago. 8 She suddenly appeared on the doorstep last night, which was a complete surprise. 9 A few people have been attacked in this area recently, which is very worrying. 10 He's going to have an electric wheelchair soon, which will be a great help to him.

63a 1 hasn't it 2 have we 3 won't it 4 did you 5 won't it 6 shall we 7 is there 8 shall we 9 Are they 10 wouldn't you 11 did they 12 will you 13 isn't it 14 isn't it 15 wouldn't it 16 can we 17 could you 18 isn't it 19 doesn't it 20 Have you 21 did you 22 did you

63b D: Hello. Nice to see you here. It's a great party, **isn't it**?
T: Yes, it's really good, **isn't it**? There are so many people here that I haven't seen for ages.
D: Yes, there are a lot of our old school crowd here, **aren't there**? Have you spoken to many of them?
T: Yes, quite a few. I bumped into Adrian a few minutes ago and we had a brief chat. Well no, he chatted and I listened.
D: Yes, he's still the same, **isn't he**? He just loves talking about himself and he doesn't seem to be interested in what anyone else has to say, **does he**?
T: That's right. Oh look, that's Melanie over there, **isn't it**?
D: Yes, you're right, it is. Who's that she's with?
T: It's Matthew, isn't it?
D: But he's going out with her sister Emma, **isn't he**?
T: Well yes, I thought so. But he's holding Melanie's hand.
D: Oh yes. Well, I suppose our information must be out of date then, **mustn't it**? Anyway, what about you? I've missed you, you know.
T: Yes, I've missed you too.
D: But I expect you've got a new boyfriend now, **haven't you**?
T: Not now. I did for a little while after you went away but not now.
D: It was hard saying goodbye, **wasn't it**? I was going to write to you but I thought it wouldn't help.
T: No maybe not. Well anyway, we're here together now, **aren't we**? Why don't we just enjoy ourselves.
D: Good idea. Let's dance, **shall we**?
T: Yes, I'd like to. But not now. The music's terrible, **isn't it**?
D: Well it's no good for dancing, that's for sure. We'll go and ask them if we can change it, **shall we**?
T: OK. Well, you go. And put on one of our favourites, **will you**?
D: Yes, I will. And will you be waiting for me when I get back, **won't you**?
T: Yes, of course I will.

64 1 on 2 In 3 At/For 4 at/by 5 on 6 after 7 till/until 8 on 9 till/until 10 for 11 at 12 on 13 for 14 since 15 after 16 before 17 on

65 1 at 2 at 3 in 4 in 5 out of 6 on 7 out 8 to 9 from 10 to 11 to 12 from 13 to 14 on 15 onto 16 off 17 off/out of 18 into

66 1 on 2 in 3 in 4 until/till 5 in 6 out of 7 to 8 on 9 in 10 for 11 since 12 before 13 to 14 after 15 form 16 for 17 to/till/until 18 Since 19 On 20 at 21 at 22 before 23 for 24 after 25 on 26 on 27 into 28 before 29 as 30 before 31 in 32 onto 33 into

TEST 1

Part A

1 –
2 a
3 the
4 the
5 –
6 –
7 the
8 a
9 the
10 the

Part B

1 She bought a lovely new silk blouse.
2 The shop sells expensive old handmade objects.
3 She seldom gets to work before 9.00.
4 I'll probably see him early in the morning when I come to work. *or* I'll probably see him when I come to work early in the morning.
5 He left the house quite suddenly after his phone call.

Part C

1 more interesting
2 harder
3 better
4 more spacious
5 quieter
6 friendlier
7 more difficult
8 the newest
9 harder
10 easier

Part D

1 did you work
2 left
3 Have you met
4 've known
5 's
6 've been going
7 Has the phone rung
8 was cooking
9 didn't answer
10 'd already left

Part E

1 're taking (are going to take)
2 's going to
3 'll
4 stay
5 'll call

Part F

1 He got the job despite not having much experience.
2 She was quite nervous, so she didn't do very well.
3 He seems well-educated; however, he's not very bright.
4 I hired him because he had so much experience.
5 She is not only beautiful and intelligent but kind and thoughtful.

Part G

1 onto
2 to
3 During
4 after
5 until

TEST 2

Part A

1 will have been working
2 will have to finish
3 not to speak
4 Will you be waiting
5 don't intend to marry
6 will do
7 didn't come

8 wrote
9 had known
10 would stop

Part B

1 has just come in
2 was broken into
3 was forced
4 were shattered
5 left
6 told
7 was taken/had been taken
8 to be repaired
9 are working
10 to be made

Part C

1 turned it down
2 takes after
3 come up with
4 gave it up
5 run out of

Part D

1 to express
2 typing
3 to use
4 working
5 to meet
6 working
7 to be
8 to further
9 working
10 hearing

Part E

1 He wore himself out hiking all day.
2 After having heard/hearing the news, we came over as quickly as possible.
3 Having worked hard all day, she wanted to go out for dinner.
4 Soon after moving up north, he regretted his decision.
5 While sympathizing with your point of view, I cannot totally agree with you.

Part F

1 That's the woman whose dog bit me.
2 Can you tell me about the town where you were born?
3 I found the book which/that was taken from the library.
4 I can't remember when I first heard that song.
5 The woman who married my best friend is my cousin.

Part G

1 have you
2 could she
3 did you
4 didn't it
5 are they

TEST 3

Part A

1 finished
2 would have died
3 wouldn't go
4 isn't
5 go
6 get
7 wouldn't have hit
8 won't come
9 were
10 had been

Part B

1 e
2 d
3 h
4 f
5 a
6 i
7 j
8 c
9 g
10 b

Part C

1 I think this umbrella **could/must** be Emily's ...
2 After I've been studying French for another year, I **will be able to speak** it more fluently.
3 We **must leave** as soon as she gets here.
4 You ought **to** write to your parents more often.
5 He **can't be** very bright ...
6 I wish I **could** come to your party.

7 He must **wait** until the bank opens.
8 They'll have to **take** …
9 … I **can** stay out until midnight.
10 May I **use** this phone to make a private call?

Part D

1 mustn't
2 shouldn't
3 need to
4 needn't
5 should

Part E

1 to be chosen
2 having done
3 having lied
4 to have completed
5 to be doing

Part F

1 was going to resign
2 hadn't realised
3 would be
4 had caused
5 had been playing
6 wasn't
7 had completely forgotten
8 are having/were having
9 would have been working/will have been working
10 didn't have

Index

References are to page numbers.

A
a/an 4–5
adjectives 9–17
  attributive/predicative 9
  order of 10
  participial 12
  non-gradable 15
  comparative and superlative 16–17
adverbs and adverbial phrases 20
  types 20
  position 21–22
  comparative and superlative 24
adverbial clauses 148
articles 4–6
aspects
  simple and continuous 27
  perfect 31

B
bare infinitive 114–115
be able 97
'be going to' *future* 54–55, 58–59

C
can/could
  ability 97
  offers/requests/permission/
    suggestions 107
  possibility 99–100
causative have/get 75–76
comparative adjectives 16–17
conditionals 82, 85–86, 88, 91–92
conjunctions 139
continuous aspect 27
co-ordinating relative clauses 161
could/can – *see* can/could
countable and uncountable nouns 1, 3

D
defining relative clauses 151
definite article 5–6
dynamic and stative verbs 29

E
echo tags 164–165

F
first conditional 82, 85
future forms
  'be going to' 54–55, 58–59
present continuous as future 54–55, 65

  future with will 56–59, 63
  present simple as future 61
  future continuous 62–63, 65
  future perfect 66
  other ways of referring to the future 68

G
gerund 0111, 113, 117–119, 120, 126
get something done 75–76
'going to' *future* 54–55, 58–59

H
have got to 104
have something done 75–76
have to 0103

I
if *clauses* 82, 85–86, 88
implied conditionals 92
indefinite article 4–5
indirect speech 128–132, 134, 136
  statements 128–130
  questions 131–132
infinitive 111–119, 122, 126
infinitive without to 114–115

M
may/might
  requests/permission/offers 107
  possibility 99–100
might/may (*see* may/might)
mixed conditionals 88
modal auxiliaries 94–95, 97, 99–100, 103–104, 107, 109
must
  deduction 100
  advice/obligation 103–104
  permission 107

N
need 104
non-defining relative clauses 154–156
non-gradable adjectives 15
noun-clauses 140
nouns: countable and uncountable 1, 3

O
ought to
  assumptions 100
  advice 103

P
participial adjectives 12
participial phrases 143–145
passive 70–71, 75–76
past conditional 82, 85–86, 88, 92

past continuous 38–39
past participial phrases 12, 145
past perfect continuous 52
past perfect simple 49–50
past simple 37–39, 46
perfect aspect 31, 42–44, 46, 49–50, 52
phrasal verbs 79
prefixes 15
prepositions 168–170
present continuous 33–34
present continuous as future 54–55, 65
present participial phrases 143–144
present perfect continuous 43–44
present perfect simple 42–44, 46
present simple 33–34
present simple as future 61
progressive forms – see continuous

Q
question tags 162–165

R
relative clauses 151, 154–156, 159, 160–161
  defining 151
  time, place, reason 159
  after 'all' 160
  non-defining 154–156
  co-ordinating 161
reported speech 128–132, 134, 136
  statements 128–130
  questions 131–132

S
second conditional 82, 85, 88
shall 56–57, 107
should
  assumptions 100
  advice 94, 103–104
simple aspect 27
simple future (will) 56–59, 65
simple past 37–39, 46
simple present 33–34
simple present as future 61
stative and dynamic verbs 29
suffixes 13
superlative adjectives 16–17
superlative adverbs 24

T
tag questions 162–165
the 5–6
third conditional 82, 86, 88

U

uncountable and countable nouns 1, 3
used to 109

W

will: *certainty* 99–100
'will' *future* 56–59, 63
wish 77
would
  offers/requests/permission/suggestions 107
  past habit 109

Z

zero article 6
zero conditional 86

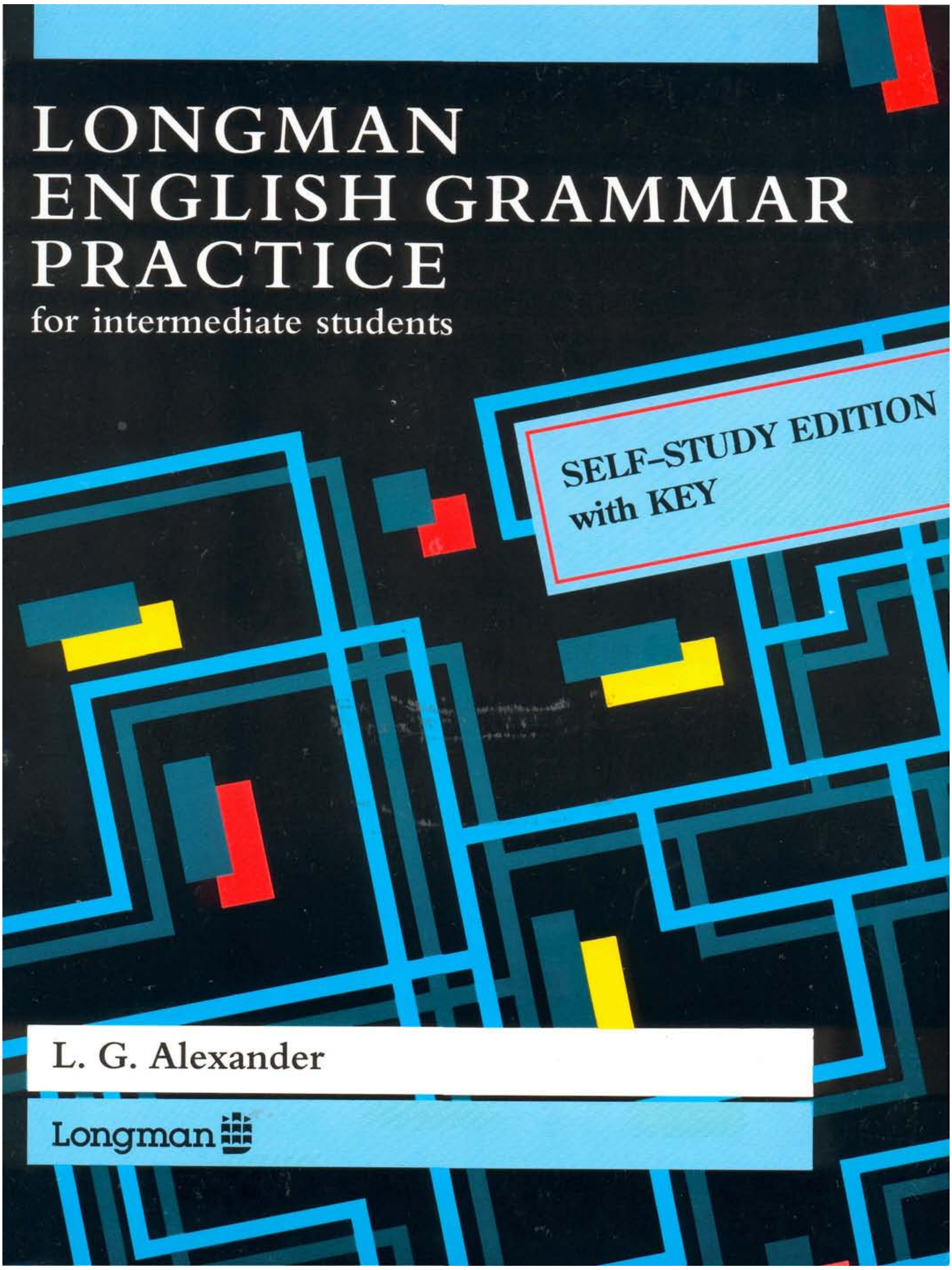

LONGMAN ENGLISH GRAMMAR PRACTICE

for intermediate students

SELF-STUDY EDITION
with KEY

L. G. Alexander

Longman

LONGMAN ENGLISH GRAMMAR PRACTICE

for intermediate students

L. G. **Alexander**

Longman

Addison Wesley **Longman** Limited
Edinburgh Gate, Harlow,
Essex CM20 2JE, England
and Associated Companies throughout the world.

© Longman Group UK Limited 1990
All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be
reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted
in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical,
photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without
the prior written permission of the Publishers.

Distributed in the United States of American by
Addison Wesley Longman, New York

First published 1990
Eleventh impression 1998

Cartoons by Larry, Ed Mclaughlin and David Simonds

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
Alexander, L. G. (Louis George) 1932-
Longman English grammar practice (Intermediate level)
1. English language. Grammar
I. Title
428.2

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Alexander, L. G.
Longman English grammar practice (Intermediate level) / L G Alexander.
p. cm.
1. English language - Textbooks for foreign speakers
2. English language - Grammar - 1950 - Problems, exercises, etc I Title
PE1128.A4573 1990
428.2'4-&20 89-13851
CIP

Set in 9111.5 pt. Linotron Helvetica Roman

Produced through Longman Malaysia, ACM

ISBN 0 582 04500 2

Contents

To the student 1

1 The sentence 2
1.1 Sentence word order 2
1.2 The simple sentence: verbs with and without objects 4
1.3 The simple sentence: direct and indirect objects 6
1.4 The compound sentence 8
1.5 The complex sentence: noun clauses 10
1.6 The complex sentence: relative pronouns and clauses 12
1.7 The complex sentence: 'whose'; definingInon-defining clauses 14
1.8 The complex sentence: time, place, manner 16
1.9 The complex sentence: reason and contrast 18
1.10 The complex sentence: purpose, result and comparison 20
1.11 The complex sentence: present participle constructions 22
1.12 The complex sentence: perfect/past participle constructions 24

2 Nouns 26
2.1 One-word nouns 26
2.2 Compound nouns 28
2.3 Countable and uncountable nouns (1) 30
2.4 Countable and uncountable nouns (2) 32
2.5 Number (singular and plural) (1) 34
2.6 Number (singular and plural) (2) 36
2.7 Gender 38
2.8 The genitive 40

3 Articles 42
3.1 The indefinite article: ‘a/an’ (1) 42
3.2 The indefinite article: ‘a/an’ (2) 44
3.3 The definite article: 'the' (1) 46
3.4 The definite article: 'the' (2) 48
3.5 The zero article (1) 50
3.6 The zero article (2) 52

4 Pronouns 54
4.1 Personal pronouns 54
4.2 'One' 56
4.3 'It' and ‘one/some/any/none’ 58
4.4 Possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns (‘my/mine’) 60
4.5 Reflexive pronouns ('myself') 62
4.6 Demonstrative adjs/prons ('this'); ‘some/any/no’ compounds ('someone') 64

5 Quantity 66
5.1 Quantifiers + countable and uncountable nouns 66
5.2 General and specific references to quantity 68
5.3 Uses of 'some', 'any', 'no' and 'none' 70
5.4 'Much', 'many', 'a lot of', '(a) few', '(a) little', 'fewer', 'less' 72
5.5 'Both' and 'all' 74
5.6 'All (the)', ‘(a/the) whole', 'each' and 'every' 76
5.7 'Another', '(the) other(s)’, 'either', 'neither', 'each (one of)' 78

6 Adjectives 80
6.1 Formation of adjectives 80
6.2 Position of adjectives 82
6.3 Adjectives that behave like nouns; '-ed/-ing' endings 84
6.4 Adjectives after 'be', 'seem', etc.; word order of adjectives 86
6.5 The comparison of adjectives 88

7 Adverbs 90
7.1 Adverbs of manner 90
7.2 Adverbs of time 92
7.3 Adverbial phrases of duration 94
7.4 Adverbs of frequency 96
7.5 Adverbs of degree 98
7.6 Intensifiers 100
7.7 Focus adverbs 102
7.8 Viewpoint adverbs, connecting adverbs and inversion 104

8 Prepositions, adverb particles and phrasal verbs 106
8.1 Prepositions, adverb particles and conjunctions 106
8.2 Prepositions of movement and position; prepositions of time 108
8.3 Particular prepositions, particles: contrasts (1) 110
8.4 Particular prepositions, particles: contrasts (2) 112
8.5 Particular prepositions, particles: contrasts (3) 114
8.6 Phrasal verbs: Type 1, verb + preposition (transitive) 116
8.7 Phrasal verbs: Type 2, verb + particle (transitive) 118
8.8 Phrasal verbs: Type 3, verb + particle (intransitive) 120
Type 4, verb + particle + preposition (transitive)

9 Verbs, verb tenses, imperatives 122
9.1 The simple present and present progressive tenses (1) 122
9.2 The simple present and present progressive tenses (2) 124
9.3 The simple past tense 126
9.4 The simple past and past progressive tenses 128
9.5 The simple present perfect and present perfect progressive 130
9.6 The simple past perfect and past perfect progressive tenses 132
9.7 The simple future tense 134
9.8 The simple future, the future progressive, the future perfect 136
9.9 'Going to' and other ways of expressing the future 138
9.10 The imperative 140

10 Be, Have, Do 142
10.1 'Be' as a full verb (1) 142
10.2 'Be' as a full verb (2) 144
10.3 'There' + 'be' 146
10.4 Verbs related in meaning to 'be' 148
10.5 'Have' as a full verb = 'possess'; 'have got' = 'possess' 150
10.6 'Have' as a full verb meaning 'eat', 'enjoy', etc. 152
10.7 'Do' as a full verb 154

11 Modal auxiliaries and related verbs 156
11.1 The two uses of modal verbs 156
11.2 Uses of modals (etc.) to express ability and inability 158
11.3 Uses of modals (etc.) to express permission and prohibition 160

11.4 Uses of modals (etc.) to express certainty and possibility 162
11.5 Uses of modals to express deduction 164
11.6 Uses of modals for offers, requests and suggestions 166
11.7 Expressing wishes, etc.: 'I wish', 'if only', 'it's (high) time' 168
11.8 Expressing preferences: 'would rather' and 'would sooner' 170
11.9 'It's advisable ...'/'It's necessary ...' 172
11.10 'It isn't advisable ...'/'It isn't necessary ...'/'It's forbidden' 174
11.11 Modals to express habit: 'used to', 'will' and 'would' 176
11.12 'Need' and 'dare' as modals and as full verbs 178
11.13 'Wouldlwouldn't'; 'that ...should'; 'there' + modal 180

12 The passive and the causative 182
12.1 General information about form 182
12.2 Uses of the passive 184
12.3 Form and use of the causative 186

13 Questions, answers, negatives 188
13.1 **Yes/No** questions, negative statements, **Yes/No** answers 188
13.2 Alternative negative forms and negative questions 190
13.3 Tag questions and echo tags 192
13.4 Additions and responses 194
13.5 Question-word questions (1): 'Who(m) ...?', 'What ...?' 196
13.6 Question-word questions (2): 'When?', 'Where?', 'Which?', 'Whose?' 198
13.7 Question-word questions (3): 'Why?', 'How?' 200
13.8 Subject-questions: 'Who?', 'What?', 'Which?', 'Whose?' 202
13.9 Questions about alternatives; emphatic questions with 'ever' 204

14 Conditional sentences 206
14.1 Type 1 conditionals- 206
14.2 Type 2 conditionals 208
14.3 Type 3 conditionals 210
14.4 Mixed conditionals; 'unlesslif ... not', etc. 212

15 Direct and indirect speech 214
15.1 Direct speech 214
15.2 'Say', 'tell' and 'ask' 216
15.3 Indirect statements with tense changes 218
15.4 Indirect questions with tense changes 220
15.5 Uses of the to-infinitive in indirect speech 222
15.6 When we use indirect speech 224

16 The infinitive and the '-ing' form 226
16.1 The bare infinitive and the *to*-infinitive 226
16.2 The bare infinitive or the '-ing' form; the *to*-infinitive 228
16.3 Verb (+ nounlpronoun) + *to*-infinitive 230
16.4 Adjectives and nouns + *to*-infinitive 232
16.5 The '-ing' form 234
16.6 Verb + the '-ing' form 236
16.7 Adjectives, nouns and prepositions + '-ing' 238
16.8 The *to*-infinitive or the '-ing' form? 240

Index 242

Key 253

Acknowledgements

Different versions of these materials were tried out with students in five countries. The book is in its present form partly as a result of the useful reports and in many cases the very detailed comments received while the work was being developed. I would like to thank the following:

Brazil	Vera Regina de A Couto and staff Rosa Lenzuen	Cultura Inglesa, Rio
	Louise Towersey Michael Watkins	Cultura Inglesa, Curitiba
Germany	Werner Kieweg	University of Munich
	Norman Lewis	Gymnasium Wildeshausen
	Robert Nowacek	Volkshochschule, Kaufbeuren
Greece	Sandra Klapsis Joanna Malliou	Homer Association, Athens
	George Rigas	The Moraïtis School, Athens
Italy	Paola Giovamma Ottolino	Liceo Linguistico, A. Manzoni, Milano
United Kingdom	Sue Boardman Pat Lodge	Bell School, Saffron Walden
	Alan Fortune	Ealing College of Higher Education
	Mary Stephens	Eurocentre, Bournemouth
	M. Milmo Steve Moore Jennifer Swift Ann Timson Josephine von Waskowski	Eurocentre, Lee Green

I would also like to thank:

- Donald Adamson and Neville Grant for their detailed and stimulating commentaries and particularly Roy Kingsbury for his comprehensive report and notes on exercise-types.
- my personal assistant, Penelope Parfitt, and my wife, Julia, for reading and commenting on the work at every stage of its development.

I am especially grateful to my publishers and their representatives for administering and monitoring the trialling of the manuscript in various locations round the world and for exercising such care and skill to see the work through to publication.

To the student

Why do we learn grammar?

There is no point in learning grammar for the sake of learning grammar. Grammar is the support system of communication and we learn it to communicate better. Grammar explains the *why* and *how* of language. We learn it because we just can't do without it.

Who is this book for and what does it cover?

This book deals entirely with English as a foreign language (EFL). It is for intermediate students who are working with a teacher or working on their own. It covers every important area of the English language. If you look at the Contents pages, you will find sixteen major areas which form the basis of English grammar. This book is based on the *Longman English Grammar* and the grammatical information in it is all drawn from this work. *Longman English Grammar Practice* has been designed to stand on its own. Students who require further grammatical information can refer to the *Longman English Grammar.*

How the material is organized

Longman English Grammar Practice is a practice book. It is intended to support (not replace) the material in language courses and is organized for this purpose:

- The material is laid out on facing pages.
- Each set of facing pages deals with a major point of grammar.
- This major point is divided into small, manageable amounts of information. Clear notes explain the points to be practised, followed by an exercise on just those points.
- The last exercise is in context, usually an entertaining story with a cartoon illustration. It sums up all you have learnt in the exercises you have just done and shows you how the language works. It is a 'reward' for the hard work you have just been doing!

Cross references

If you see e.g. [> 7.3A] in the notes, it means that a similar point is discussed in some other part of the book. Follow up the reference for parallel practice or information if you want to. If you see e.g. [> LEG 4.30] at the top of the notes, it means that the point is dealt with in the *Longman English Grammar.* Follow up the reference if you want 'the whole story'.

How to work

YOU DON'T HAVE TO WORK THROUGH THIS BOOK FROM START TO FINISH!
It is not arranged in order of increasing difficulty.

Select a chapter or part of a chapter which you want to study. Do this by referring to the Contents pages or the Index. Usually, this will be a topic you have been dealing with in your language course. Then:

1 Read the notes carefully (called **Study).** Notes and exercises are marked like this:
★ = Elementary ★★ = Intermediate (most exercises) ★★★ = Advanced
You will sometimes find that you know some, but not all, of the points in an exercise marked ★★.

2 Do the exercises (called Write). Always leave the story till last (called Context).

3 Check your answers with your teacher.

4 If you have made mistakes, study the notes again until you have understood where you went wrong and why.

1 The sentence

1.1 Sentence word order

1.1A The basic word order of an English sentence [> LEG 1.3]

Study: ☐

The meaning of an English sentence depends on the word order.

1 We put the subject before the verb and the object after the verb:
The cook | burnt | the dinner.

2 Adverbials *(How?, Where?, When?)* usually come after the verb or after the object:
He read the note ***quickly.*** *(How?) I waited* ***at the corner*** *(Where?)* ***till*** *11.30. (When?)*

3 The basic word order of a sentence that is not a question or a command is usually:

subject	**verb**	**object**	**adverbials**		
			How?	***Where?***	***When?***
I	*bought*	*a hat*			*yesterday.*
The children	*have gone*			*home.*	
We	*ate*	*our meal*	*in silence.*		

4 We also put the time reference at the beginning: ***Yesterday*** *I bought a hat.* [> 7.2A]

Write 1: **a** Rewrite the sentences that don't make sense.
b Mark all the sentences in the exercise S V **O** to show Subject, Verb, Object.

1 Has set John Bailey a new high-jump record. (S) John Bailey (V) has set (O) a new high-jump record.
2 The passport examined the passport officer.
3 These biscuits don't like the dogs.
4 The shop assistant is wrapping the parcel.
5 Have seen the visitors the new buildings.
6 My father didn't wash the dishes.
7 The pipe is going to fix the plumber.
8 Will the goalkeeper catch the ball?
9 Has the meal enjoyed the guest?
10 Can't play John the game.

Write 2: **a** Arrange these words in the right order. Use a capital letter to begin each sentence.
b Mark each rewritten sentence S V **O M** P T to show:
Subject, Verb, Object, Manner *(How?)*, Place *(Where?)*, Time *(When?)*.

1 till 11 o'clock this morning | slept | the children (S) The children (V) slept (T) till 11 o'clock this morning.
2 the papers | into the bin | he threw
3 I don't speak | well | English
4 hides | Mrs Jones | her money | under the bed
5 carefully | this suitcase | you didn't pack
6 on this shelf | I left | this morning | some money
7 from the bank | a loan | you'll have to get
8 the phone | in the middle of the night | woke me up
9 in the park | you shouldn't walk | at night
10 your food | you should sat | slowly
11 my term | begins | in October
12 your article | I | quickly | last night | in bed | read

1.1B The forms of a sentence [> LEG 1.2]

Study: ★★

1 A sentence can take any one of four forms:
- **a statement:** *The shops close/don't close at 7 tonight.*
- **a question:** *Do the shops close at 7 tonight?*
- **a command:** *Shut the door./Don't shut the door.*
- **an exclamation:** *What a slow train this is!*

2 When we write a sentence, we must begin with a capital letter and end with a full stop (.), a question mark (?), or an exclamation mark (!).
If there are quotation marks ('...') or ("...") around spoken words in a sentence, we put other punctuation marks 'inside' them:
'I'm tired,' she said. (Not **'I'm tired', she said.**) [> 15.1A-B]

Write:

a Arrange these groups of words in the right order. Add (.), (?) or (!).
b Describe each sentence as a statement, question, command or exclamation: S, Q, C or E.

1 the coffee | don't spill ...... Don't spill the coffee. ...... (C)
2 today's papers | have you seen ...... (   )
3 to meet you | how nice ...... (   )
4 my umbrella | where did you put ...... (   )
5 arrived | the train | fifteen minutes late ...... (   )
6 on time | the plane | won't arrive ...... (   )
7 this electricity bill | I can't pay ...... (   )
8 for me | please | open the door ...... (   )
9 the nearest hotel | where's | he asked ...... (   )
10 the bill | can't pay | I | he cried ...... (   )

1.1C Context

Write: Read this story and arrange the words in each sentence in the right order.
Add capital letters and (,), (.), (!) or (?) in the right places.

A QUIET SORT OF PLACE!
1 my car | I parked | in the centre of the village I parked my car in the centre of the villag
2 near a bus stop | an old man | I saw ......
3 'beautiful village | what a' | I exclaimed ......
4 'live here | how many people' ......
5 'seventeen people | there are' | the old man said ......
6 'here | have you lived | how long' ......
7 'all my life | I have lived here' ......
8 'isn't it | it's a quiet sort of place' ......
9 'here | a quiet life | we live ......
10 a cinema | we don't have | or a theatre ......
11 our school | five years ago | was closed ......
12 only one shop | we have ......
13 calls | a bus | once a day ......
14 here | in **55** B.C. | came | the Romans ......
15 since then | has happened | nothing' ......

1.2 The simple sentence: verbs with and without objects

1.2A What is a complete sentence? [> LEG 1.2]

Study: ★★

1 When we speak, we often say things like *All right! Good! Want any help?*
These are 'complete units of meaning', but they are not real sentences.

2 A simple sentence is a complete unit of meaning which contains a subject and a verb, followed, if necessary, by other words which make up the meaning. So:
Made in Germany is correct English but it is not a sentence because it doesn't have a subject.
My car was made in Germany. is a complete sentence with a subject and verb.
We can't say e.g. *Is tired* because we need a subject [> 4.1A, 4.3A]: He *is tired.*

3 The subject may be 'hidden': *Open the door.* really means ***You** open the door.* [> 9.10B]

Write: Put a tick (✓) beside real sentences.

1 Made in Germany. __
2 This car was made in Germany. ✓
3 To write a letter. __
4 Standing in the rain. __
5 I want to write a letter. __
6 Is tall. __
7 Do you like? __
8 The train has arrived. __
9 Have finished my work. __
10 You should listen. __
11 Sit down please. __
12 You can't park here. __
13 Don't interrupt. __
14 I understand. __
15 She doesn't like me. __
16 Under the water. __
17 Ate. __
18 A bottle of ink. __
19 He's a doctor. __
20 What happened? __

1.2B Verbs with and without objects [> LEG 1.4, 1.9, 1.10, 1.12, App 1]

Study: ★★

1 We always have to use an object after some verbs: e.g. *beat, contain, enjoy, hit, need.*
We call these transitive verbs. We have to say:
Arsenal beat Liverpool. But we can't say *Arsenal beat.*

2 Some verbs never take an object: e.g. *ache, arrive, come, faint, go, sit down, sleep, snow.*
We call these intransitive verbs. We have to say:
We arrived at 11. But we can't say '*We arrived the station at 11.*•

3 Some verbs can be used transitively or intransitively: e.g. *begin, drop, hurt, open, ring, win.*
We can say: *Arsenal won the match.* (transitive) or *Arsenal won.* (intransitive)

Write: Put an object (a pronoun or a noun) after these verbs only where possible.

1 The box contains ...pencils...
2 The train has arrived ....
3 The phone rang ....
4 Someone is ringing ....
5 You need ....
6 We sat down ....
7 Don't hit ....
8 Did you beat .... ?
9 Who opened .... ?
10 The door opened ....
11 This is a game no one can win ....
12 The concert began .... at 7.30.
13 I began ....
14 It's snowing ....
15 Quick! She's fainted ....
16 Did you enjoy .... ?
17 My head aches ....
18 My foot hurts ....

1.2C Sentences with linking verbs like 'be' and 'seem' [> LEG 1.9, 1.11, 10.23-26]

Study: ★★

1 Verbs like *be* [> 10.1-3] and *seem* [> 10.4] are 'linking verbs'. They cannot have an object.
The word we use after *be,* etc. tells us something about the subject. In grammar, we call this a ***complement*** because it 'completes' the sentence by telling us about the subject.
In *He is ill. She seems tired.* etc. the words *ill* and *tired* tell us about *he* and *she.*

2 A complement may be:

– *an adjective:*	*Frank is* ***clever.***
– *a noun:*	*Frank is* ***an architect.***
– *an adjective + noun:*	*Frank is* ***a clever architect.***
– *a pronoun:*	*This book is* ***mine.***
– *an adverb of place or time:*	*The meeting is* ***here.*** *The meeting is* ***at 2.30.***
– *a prepositional phrase:*	*Alice is* ***like her father.***

Write: ***a*** Complete these sentences using a different complement for each sentence.
b Say whether you have used a noun, an adjective, an adjective + noun, etc.

1 My neighbour is very ......tall.(adjective)......
2 My neighbour is ....
3 This apple tastes ....
4 The children are ....
5 The meeting is ....
6 Whose is this? It's ....
7 John looks ....
8 That music sounds ....
9 Your mother seems ....
10 I want to be .... when I leave school. ....

1.2D Context

Write: Read this story and arrange the words in each sentence in the right order.
Add capital letters and (,), (.), (!) or (?) in the right places [> 1.1B].

SO PLEASE DON'T COMPLAIN!

1 the local school | attends | my son Tim ....My son Tim attends the local school.......
2 to his school | my wife and I went | yesterday ....
3 we | to his teachers | spoke ....
4 Tim's school report | we collected ....
5 very good | wasn't | Tim's report ....
6 in every subject | were | his marks | low ....
7 was waiting anxiously for us | outside | Tim ....
8 'my report | how was' | eagerly | he asked ....
9 'very good | it wasn't' | I said ....
10 'you | harder | must try ....
11 seems | that boy Ogilvy | very clever ....
12 good marks | he got | in all subjects' ....
13 'clever parents | Ogilvy | has' | Tim said ....

1.3 The simple sentence: direct and indirect objects

1.3A Subject + verb + indirect object + direct object: 'Show me that photo' [> LEG 1.13]

Study: ☐

1 We can use two objects after verbs like *give* and *buy.*
Instead of: ***Give** the book **to me,*** we can say: ***Give me** the book.*
Instead of: ***Buy** the book **for me,*** we can say: ***Buy me** the book.*

2 Some verbs combine with TO: *bring, give, lend, pay, post, sell, send, show, tell, write:*
*Bring that book **to me.*** → *Bring **me** that book.*

3 Other verbs combine with FOR: *buy, choose, cook, cut, do, fetch, find, get, make, order:*
*Please order a meal **for me.*** → *Please order **me** a meal.*

4 We can put *it* and *them* after the verb: *Give **it** to me. Buy **them** for me. Do **it** for me.*
With e.g. *give* and *buy,* we can say: *Give me **it.** Buy me **them.*** (But not 'Do me it*')
We say: *Give **it to John.** Buy **them for John.*** (Not 'Give John it' 'Buy John them')

Write: You want people to do things for you. Write suitable polite requests using *it, them* or *one* [> 4.3B].

1 Where are my shoes? (find) Please find them for me / Please find me them.
2 John needs a new coat. (buy) Please ....
3 I can't reach that cup. (pass) Please ....
4 Ann wants to see our flat. (show) Please ....
5 I can't do the shopping. (do) Please ....
6 I'd like a copy of that book. (order) Please ....

1.3B Verb + object + 'to' + noun or pronoun: 'Explain it to me' [> LEG 1.12.1]

Study: ★★

1 There are some verbs like *explain* which do not behave in exactly the same way as *give.*
For example, we can say: ***Give** the book **to me,*** or ***Explain** the situation **to me.***
***Give me** the book.* (but not 'Explain me the situation.*')

2 We cannot use an indirect object *(me)* immediately after *explain.* We can only have:
verb + object + 'to': *He **explained** the situation **to me.***
*He **confessed** his crime **to the court.***

3 Other verbs like *explain* and *confess* are: *admit, announce, declare, demonstrate, describe, entrust, introduce, mention, propose, prove, repeat, report, say, suggest.*

Write: Complete these sentences giving the right order of the words in brackets.

1 You must declare (the Customs/this camera) this camera to the Customs.
2 Aren't you going to introduce (me/your friend)? ....
3 You can say (me/what you like) ....
4 Who suggested (this idea/you)? ....
5 He confessed (his crime/the police) ....
6 I have never admitted (anyone/this) ....
7 Can you describe (me/this man)? ....
8 Please don't mention (this/anyone) ....
9 I'm going to report (this/the headmaster) ....
10 I don't want you to repeat (what I told you/anyone) ....

1.3C The two meanings of 'for' [> LEG 1.13.3]

Study: ★★

1 We can use *for* after all verbs which have two objects [> 1.3A].

2 When we use *for* after verbs normally followed by *to (give, post, read, sell, show, tell,* etc.) it can mean 'instead of': *I'll post it for you.* (= to save you the trouble)

3 When we use *for* after verbs normally followed by *for (buy, choose, do, find, keep, order,* etc.) the meaning depends on the context. It can mean 'for someone's benefit':
Mother cooked a lovely meal for me. (= for my benefit, for me to enjoy)
It can mean 'on someone's behalf/instead of':
I'll cook the dinner for you. (on your behalf/instead of you – to save you the trouble)

Write: Tick (J) to show whether *for* means 'instead of you/me' or 'for your/my benefit'.

		'instead of'	**'for your/my benefit'**
1	I've cooked a meal for you and I hope you enjoy it.	__	✓
2	Let me cook the dinner for you this evening. – Thanks!	__	__
3	I've made this cake for you. Do you like it?	__	__
4	I'll post this letter for you, shall I?	__	__
5	I've bought this especially for you.	__	__
6	I've got some change. Let me pay the bill for you.	__	__
7	As you're busy, let me book a room for you.	__	__
8	I've saved some of this pudding for you.	__	__
9	I can't choose a tie myself. Please choose one for me.	__	__
10	My father has bought a wonderful present for me.	__	__

1.30 Context

Write: Put a tick (J) where you think you can change the word order.

A CURE FOR HYSTERIA

When I was a girl, my parents sent me to a very strict school. They had to *buy an expensive uniform for me* ^{1} ✓ and *pay school fees for me* ^{2}__. Our headmistress, Miss Prim, never smiled. She *explained the school rules to us* ^{3}__ and expected us to obey them. 'I will never *say anything to you* ^{4}__ twice,' she used to say. We had to *write a letter to our parents* ^{5}__ once a week and *show it to Miss Prim* ^{6}__ before we sent it. I can still remember some of the school rules. We were not allowed to *lend anything to anyone* ^{7}__. We were not allowed to *give each other help* ^{8}__ with homework. We had to *report unusual situations to the headmistress* ^{9}__. One morning, during assembly, a girl fainted. The next morning, two more fainted. This continued to happen for several mornings. Mass hysteria had set in! But Miss Prim put an end to it. She *announced a new rule to us* ^{10} : 'No girl will faint in College!' And after that, no one did!

No girl will faint in College!

1.4 The compound sentence

1.4A The form of a compound sentence [> LEG 1.17-20]

Study: ★★

1 When we join two or more simple sentences [> 1.2A], we make a **compound sentence:**
Tom phoned. He left a message. → *Tom phoned **and** left a message.*

2 The name we give to 'joining words' is **conjunctions.**
These are the conjunctions we use to make compound sentences:
and, and then, but, for, nor, or, so, yet;
either ... or; neither ... nor ...; not only ... but ... (also/as well/too).

3 We can use conjunctions to show, for example:

- **addition** *(and):* *He washed the car **and** polished it.*
- **continuation** *(and then):* *He washed the car **and then** polished it.*
- **contrast** *(but, yet):* *She sold her house, **but/yet** (she) can't help regretting it.*
- **choice** *(or):* *You can park your car on the drive **or** on the road.*
- **result** *(so):* *He couldn't find his pen, **so** he wrote in pencil.*
- **reason** *(for):* *We rarely stay in hotels, **for** we can't afford it.*

4 We do not usually put a comma in front of *and,* but we often use one in front of other conjunctions: *He washed the car **and** polished it.* (no comma before *and)*
Compare: *He washed the car, **but** didn't polish it.* (comma before *but)*

5 We keep to the basic word order in a compound sentence [> 1.1A, 1.2C]:

subject	verb	object	conjunction	subject	verb	complement
Jimmy	*fell off*	*his bike,*	*but*	*(he)*	*was*	*unhurt,*

6 When the subject is the same in all parts of the sentence, we do not usually repeat it:
same subject: *Tom phoned. He left a message.* → *Tom phoned **and** (he) **left** a message.*
different subjects: *Tom phoned. Frank answered.* → *Tom phoned **and Frank** answered.*

7 We usually repeat the subject after *so: He couldn't find his pen, **so he** wrote in pencil.*

8 We always have to repeat the subject after *for. For* is more usual in the written language and we cannot use it to begin a sentence [compare > 1.9A]:
*We rarely stay at hotels, **for we** can't afford it.*

Write 1: **Compound sentences with the same subject**

Join these simple sentences to make compound sentences. Use the words in brackets.

1 I took the shoes back to the shop. I complained about them. (and)
I took the shoes back to the shop and complained about them.

2 Your mother phoned this morning. She didn't leave a message. (but)
....

3 I can leave now. I can stay for another hour. (I can either ... or)
....

4 Jim built his own house. He designed it himself. (Jim not only ... but ... as well)
....

5 I don't know what happened to him. I don't care. (I neither ... nor)
....

6 My new assistant can type very well. He hasn't much experience with computers. (but)
....

Write 2: Compound sentences with different subjects and with **'so/for'**

Join these simple sentences to make compound sentences. Use the words in brackets.

1 The taxi stopped at the station. Two men got out of it. (and)
The taxi stopped at the station and two men got out of it.

2 You can give me some advice. Your colleague can. (Either you ... or)
....

3 We got ready to get on the train. It didn't stop. (but)
....

4 No one was in when we called. We left a message. (so)
....

5 We didn't want to get home late after the film. We went straight back. (so)
....

6 The old lady was nervous. She wasn't used to strangers calling late at night. (for)
....

7 I've always wanted to live in the country. My parents prefer to live in town. (but)
....

8 The letter has been lost. The postman has delivered it to the wrong address. (or)
....

9 For a moment the top of the mountain was visible. A cloud covered it. (and then)
....

10 Jane was a successful career woman. Her mother wanted her to be a housewife. (yet)
....

1.48 Context

Write: Put a circle round the correct words in brackets.

(NOT SO) MERRY-GO-ROUND!

The customers at the funfair were leaving (^{1}[✓ and]/but) the lights were going out. The last two people on dodgem cars paid (^{2}and/so) left. The big wheel stopped (^{3}for/and) the merry-go-round stopped (^{4}as well/not only). The stalls closed down (^{5}so/and) the stall-owners went home. At 2 a.m. four nightwatchmen walked round the funfair, (^{6}but/so) there was no one to be seen. 'I'm fed up walking round,' one of them said, ('^{7}yet/and) what can we do?' 'We can (^{8}or/either) play cards (^{9}either/or) sit and talk.' They were bored, (^{10}so/for) there was nothing to do on this quiet warm night. 'We can have a ride on the merry-go-round!' one of them cried. 'That'll be fun!' Three of them jumped on merry-go-round horses (^{11}yet/and) the fourth started the motor. Then he jumped on too (^{12}and/but) round they went. They were having the time of their lives, (^{13}but/so) suddenly realized there was no one to stop the machine. They weren't rescued till morning (^{14}and/but) by then they felt very sick indeed!

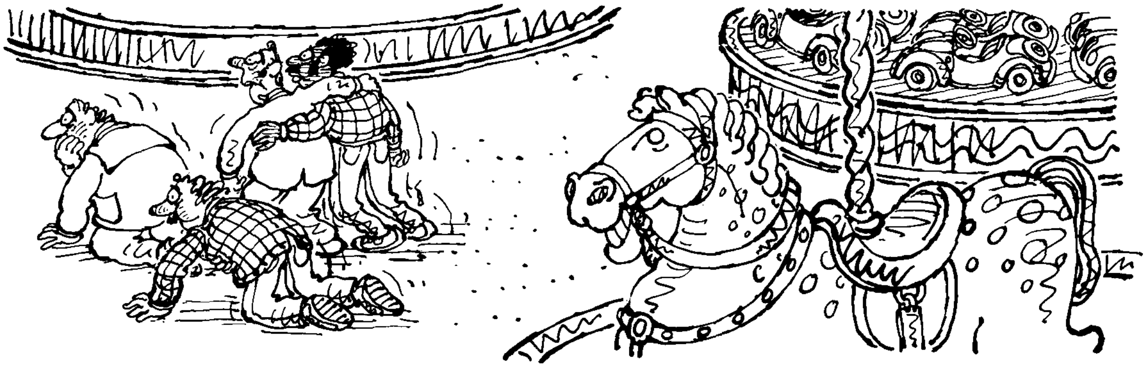

They felt very sick indeed!

1.5 The complex sentence: noun clauses

1.5A Introduction to complex sentences [> LEG 1.21]

Study: ★★

1 We can join two or more simple sentences to make **complex sentences:**
The alarm was raised. The fire was discovered.
The alarm was raised ***as soon as*** *the fire was discovered.*
The alarm was raised ***when*** *the fire was discovered.*
The alarm was raised ***after*** *the fire was discovered.*

2 We can use many different kinds of 'joining words' (or **conjunctions)** to make complex sentences: *after, as soon as, when, since, that, if, so that, whether,* etc. [> *1.5-10*]

3 In a complex sentence there is one 'main' idea and one or more 'subordinate' ideas.
We can take the main idea (or **clause)** out of the sentence so that it stands on its own:
The alarm was raised is a **main clause:** it can stand on its own. **...** *as soon as the fire was discovered cannot* stand on its own. It is **subordinate** to the main clause.

Write: Underline the main clauses in these sentences.

1 You can tell me all about the film after I've seen it myself.
2 When you've finished cleaning the car, you can help me with the dishes.
3 You didn't tell me that you were going to invite so many guests.
4 **I** walk to work every morning so that I can get some exercise.
5 Since no one answered my call, **I** left a message on the answer-phone.

1.5B Noun clauses derived from statements [> LEG 1.22-23, 15.10-16, Apps 45-46]

Study: ★★

1 **A noun clause** does the work of a noun. It answers the questions *Who?* or *What?:*
He told me about ***his success.*** *(told me about what?): his success* is a 'noun phrase'.
He told me ***that he had succeeded.*** (... *what?): that he had succeeded* is a noun clause.

2 We introduce noun clause statements with *that* after:
– some adjectives: *It's obvious* ***that he's going to be late.***
– some nouns: ***It's a pity that he's going to be late.***
– some verbs: *I know* ***that he's going to be late.***

3 We often use noun clauses after 'reporting verbs' like *say, tell (me), think,* ***know*** [> 15.2-3]. We can often omit *that.*
Instead of: *I know* ***that he's going to be late,*** we can say: *I know* ***he's going to be late.***

Write: Complete these sentences with noun clauses.

1 He feels angry. It's not surprising (that) he feels angry.
2 She has resigned from her job. It's a shame ....
3 You don't trust me. It's annoying ....
4 You are feeling better. I'm glad ....
5 She's upset. I'm sorry ....
6 He didn't get the contract. He told me ....
7 It's a fair price. He believes ....
8 You're leaving. He has guessed ....
9 She's been a fool. She agrees ....

1.5C Noun clauses derived from questions [> LEG 1.24]

Study: ★★

Yes/No questions

1 *Has he signed the contract?* is a direct **Yes/No** question. [> 13.1]

2 We can introduce a **Yes/No** question as a noun clause after *if* or *whether.* We use 'reporting verbs' like *ask, tell me, want to know* [> 15.4A]:
Tell me if ***he has signed the contract.*** *(Tell me what?): if he has signed the contract.*
Ask him ***whether he has signed it.*** *(Ask him what?): whether he has signed it.*

Question-word questions

1 *When did you sign the contract?* is a question-word question. [> 13.5-8]

2 We can introduce this as a noun clause after *Tell me, I want to know,* etc. The word order changes back to subject + verb and we don't use a question mark [> 15.4B]:
Tell me ***when you signed the contract.*** (Not *'Tell me when did you sign')*

Write: Complete these sentences with noun clauses.

1 Has he passed his exam? I want to know *if/whether he has passed his exam.*
2 Can you type? You didn't say ....
3 Will he arrive tomorrow? I wonder ....
4 Does he like ice-cream? Ask him ....
5 Was he at home yesterday? I'd like to know ....
6 Should I phone her? I wonder ....
7 Is she ready? Ask her ....
8 When did you meet her? I want to know ....
9 How will you manage? Tell me ....
10 Why has he left? I wonder ....
11 Where do you live? Tell me ....
12 Which one does she want? Ask her ....
13 Who's at the door? I wonder ....
14 What does he want? I'd like to know ....

1.5D Context

Write: Underline nine noun'clauses in this text.

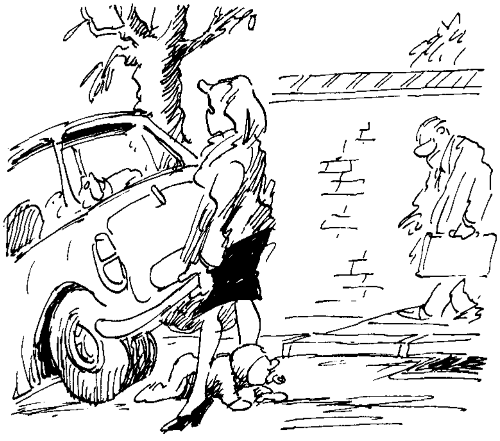

She lifted the car!

YOU DON'T KNOW YOUR OWN STRENGTH!

I suppose you know you can turn into superwoman or superman in an emergency. Mrs Pam Weldon reported that her baby nearly slipped under the wheels of a car. Mrs Weldon weighs only 50 kilos, but she said she lifted the car to save her baby. Dr Murray Watson, a zoologist, wrote that he jumped nearly three metres into the air to grab the lowest branch of a tree when hyenas chased him in Kenya. Perhaps you wonder if you can perform such feats. The chances are that you can. Doctors say that we can find great reserves ot strength when we are afraid. It's well-known that adrenalin can turn us into superwomen or supermen!

1.6 The complex sentence: relative pronouns and clauses

1.6A Relative pronouns and clauses [> LEG 1.25-38]

Study:
★★

Introduction to relative clauses
Suppose you want to write a paragraph like this:

The house we moved into is absolutely beautiful. The people who lived here before us took very great care of it. The garden, which is quite small, is lovely. I'm glad we moved. I don't think we'll ever regret the decision we made.

If we want to speak or write like this, we have to master **relative clauses.** We introduce relative clauses with these relative pronouns: *who, who(m), which, that* and *whose.*

'Who', 'which' and 'that' as subjects of a relative clause [> LEG 1.27-31]

1 We use *who* or *that* to refer to people. We use them in place of noun subjects or pronoun subjects *(I, you, he,* etc.) and we cannot omit them.
They do not change when they refer to masculine, feminine, singular or plural:
He is the ***man/She*** *is the woman* ***who/that*** *lives here.* (Not *He is the man who he ...*)
They are the ***men/the*** *women* ***who/that*** *live here.* (Not *They are the men who they ...*)

2 We use *which* or *that* (in place of noun subjects and *it)* to refer to animals and things:
That's the cat ***which/that*** *lives next door. Those are the* ***cats which/that*** *live next door.*
Here's a photo ***which/that*** *shows my car. Here are some photos* ***which/that*** *show my car.*

Write: Join these sentences using *who* or *which.* (All of them will also join with *that.)*

1 He's the accountant. He does my accounts. He's the accountant who does my accounts.
2 She's the nurse. She looked after me. ....
3 They're the postcards. They arrived yesterday. ....
4 They're the secretaries. They work in our office. ....
5 That's the magazine. It arrived this morning. ....
6 They're the workmen. They repaired our roof. ....

1.6B 'Who(m)', 'which' and 'that' as objects of a relative clause [> LEG 1.33-34]

Study:
★★

1 We use *who(m)* or *that* to refer to people. We use them in place of noun objects or object pronouns *(me, you, him,* etc.). We often say *who* instead of *whom* when we speak.
They do not change when they refer to masculine, feminine, singular or plural:
He's the ***man/She's*** *the woman* ***who(m)/that*** *I met.* (Not *He's the man that I met him.*)
They're the ***men/women who(m)/that*** *I met.* (Not *They are the men that I met them.*)
However, we usually omit *who(m)* and *that.* We say:
He's the man/She's the woman I met. They're the men/They're the women I met.

2 We use *which* or *that* (in place of noun objects or *it)* to refer to animals and things:
That's the cat ***which/that*** *I photographed. Those are the cats* ***which/that*** *I photographed.*
That's the photo ***which/that*** *I took. Those are the photos* ***which/that*** *I took.*
However, we usually omit *which* and *that.* We say:
That's the cat I photographed. Those are the cats I photographed.
That's the photo I took. Those are the photos I took.

Write: Join these sentences with *who(m)*, *which* or nothing. (All of them will join with *that.)*

1 He's the accountant. You recommended him to me. He's the accountant you recommended...
2 She's the nurse. I saw her at the hospital. ....
3 They're the postcards. I sent them from Spain. ....
4 They're the secretaries. Mr Pym employed them. ....
5 That's the magazine. I got it for you yesterday. ....
6 They're the workmen. I paid them for the job. ....
7 That's the dog! I saw it at the dog show last week. ....
8 They're the birds. I fed them this morning. ....

1.6C 'Who(m)', 'which' or 'that' as the objects of prepositions [> LEG 1.35-36]

Study:

The position of prepositions in relative clauses is very imponant. We can say:

1 *He is the* ***person to whom*** *I wrote.* (Never *'to who)* (very formal)
This is the ***pan in which*** *I boiled the milk.* (very formal)

2 *He is the* ***person who(m)*** *I wrote* ***to.*** *This is the* ***pan which*** *I boiled the milk* ***in.***

3 However, we usually prefer to omit the relative and say:
He is the ***person I wrote to.*** *This is the* ***pan I boiled the milk in.***

Write: Join each pair of sentences in three different ways.

1 He's the man. I sent the money to him.
a He's the man to whom I sent the money.
b He's the man who(m) I sent the money to
c He's the man I sent the money to...

2 She's the nurse. I gave the flowers to her.
a ....
b ....
c ....

3 That's the chair. I sat on it.
a ....
b ....
c ....

4 He's the boy. I bought this toy for him.
a ....
b ....
c ....

5 That's the building. I passed by it.
a ....
b ....
c ....

6 They're the shops. I got these from them.
a ....
b ....
c ....

1.6D Context

Write: Put in the right relative pronouns only where necessary.

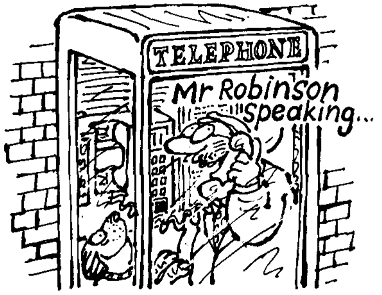

... just happened to be passing

A CHANCE IN A MILLION
Cissie, the woman [1].....who...... works in our office, wanted to phone Mr Robinson, but she dialled the wrong number. The number [2].................. she dialled turned out to be the number of a public call box in the street. A man, [3].................. was passing at the time, heard the phone ringing and answered it. 'Is that Mr Robinson?' Cissie asked. 'Speaking,' the man answered. It turned out that the man [4].................. she was speaking to was actually called Robinson and had just happened to be passing the call box when she rang!

1.7 The complex sentence: 'whose'; defining/non-defining clauses

1.7A 'Whose' + noun in relative clauses [> LEG 1.32, 1.37]

Study: ★★

1 We use *whose* in place of possessive adjectives (*my, your, his*, etc.) to refer to people.
Whose does not change when it refers to masculine, feminine, singular or plural:
***He's** the **man/She's** the **woman whose car** was stolen.* (Not **whose his car was stolen*)*
***They're** the **people whose cars** were stolen.* (Not *'whose their cars were stolen*)*

2 We sometimes use *whose* in place of *its* to refer to things and animals:
*That's the **house whose windows** were broken.* (= the windows of which)

3 We can also use *whose* with prepositions:
*He's the man **from whose house** the pictures were stolen.* (formal)
*He's the man **whose house** the pictures were stolen **from.***

Write: Join these sentences using *whose.*

1 He is the customer. I lost his address. ...He's the customer whose address I lost.....................
2 She is the novelist. Her book won first prize. ....
3 They are the children. Their team won the match. ....
4 You are the expert. We want your advice. ....
5 I'm the witness. My evidence led to his arrest. ....
6 She's the woman. The film was made in her house. ....

1.78 Defining and non-defining clauses [> LEG 1.26, 1.29, 1.31-32, 1.34-37]

Study: ★★

1 When we write relative clauses with *who, which* or *whose,* we have to decide whether to use commas 'round the clauses' or not.

2 In sentences like:
*I've never met **anyone who** can type as fast as you can.*
*The magazine **which arrived** this morning is five days late.*
the relative clauses tell us which person or thing we mean. They give us essential information which we cannot omit. We call them **defining clauses** because they 'define' the person or thing they refer to. We never use commas in such sentences.
We never use commas with *that* in relative clauses:
*I've just had a phone call from the people **(that)** we met during our holidays.*
*The wallet **(that)** you lost has been found.*

3 In sentences like:
*Our new secretary, **who can type faster than anyone I have ever met,** has completely reorganized our office.*
*Time Magazine, **which is available in every country in the world,** is published every week.*
the relative clauses add 'extra information'. If we take them out of the sentences, we won't seriously change the meaning. We call these **non-defining clauses** (they do not 'define') and we use commas before and after them.

4 Sometimes we have to decide when the information is 'essential' or 'extra' and we may or may not use commas. We must decide this for ourselves:
*He asked lots of questions(,) **which were none of his business**(,) and annoyed everybody.*

Write: Add commas to the following sentences where necessary.

1 My husband, who is on a business trip to Rome all this week, sent me this postcard.
2 The person who told you that story didn't know what he was talking about.
3 Will the driver whose vehicle has the registration number PXB2140 please move it?
4 The author Barbara Branwell whose latest novel has already sold over a million copies will be giving a lecture at the public library tomorrow.
5 The person you got that information from is my cousin.
6 The play *Cowards* which opens at the Globe soon had a successful season on Broadway.
7 *Cowards* is the name of the play which ran for over two years.
8 The thing that pleases me most is that I'll never have to ask for your help again.
9 The manager whom I complained to about the service has refunded part of our bill.
10 Sally West whose work for the deaf made her famous has been killed in a car accident.
11 We found it impossible to cross the river that had flooded after the storm.
12 I have just learned that the engine part which I need is no longer made.

1.7C Sentences with two meanings [> LEG 1.26]

Study: ★★

The use or omission of commas round relative clauses can sometimes affect the meaning: *My wife, who is in Paris, will be returning tomorrow.* Without commas, this could suggest that I have another wife who is (or other wives who are) somewhere else!

Write: Say what these sentences mean a) without commas; b) with commas.

1 The test paper which everyone failed was far too difficult.

....

2 My brother who is in Canada is an architect.

....

1.7D Context

Write: Put in relative pronouns where necessary and commas where necessary.

1234
FOR SALE

This charming property ...

THIS CHARMING PROPERTY ...
People ¹.....who...... tell the truth about the properties they are selling should be given prizes for honesty. A house ².................. is described as 'spacious' will be found to be too large. Words like 'enchanting', 'delightful', 'convenient', 'attractive' .... are commonly used all mean 'small'. The words 'small' and 'picturesque' ⁴.................. are not so frequently used both mean 'too small'. A 'picturesque house' is one with a bedroom ⁵.................. is too small to put a bed in and a kitchen ⁶.................. is too small to boil an egg in. My prize for honesty goes to someone ⁷.................. recently described a house ⁸.................. he was selling in the following way: 'This house ⁹.................. is situated in a very rough area of London is really in need of repair. The house ¹⁰.................. has a terrible lounge and a tiny dining room also has three miserable bedrooms and a bathroom ¹¹.................. is fitted with a leaky shower. The central heating ¹².................. is expensive to run is unreliable. There is a handkerchief-sized garden ¹³.................. is overgrown with weeds. The neighbours ¹⁴.................. are generally unfriendly are not likely to welcome you. This property ¹⁵.................. is definitely not recommended is ridiculously overpriced at •'85,000.'

1.8 The complex sentence: time, place, manner

1.8A Adverbial clauses of time, place and manner [> LEG 1.44-47]

Study: ★★

Introduction to adverbial clauses of time, place and manner
Suppose you want to write a paragraph like this:

When we visited London, *we went to the Tower. We saw the spot* ***where so many famous people had lost their heads!*** *We felt* ***as if we had travelled*** *back in time to another world!*

If we want to speak or write like this, we have to master **adverbial clauses of time** (answering *When?*), **place** (answering *Where?*) and **manner** (answering *How?*)

Adverbial clauses of time (past reference) [> LEG 1.45.1]
To say *when* something happened in the past, we use 'joining words' (or **conjunctions**) like *when, after, as, as soon as, before, by the time (that), once, since, until/till, while:*
When *we visited London, we went to the Tower.* [compare > 9.6A]

Write: Join these sentences with the conjunctions in brackets.

1 I lost a lot of weight. I was ill. (when)
I lost a lot of weight when I was ill.

2 I phoned home. I arrived in the airport building. (immediately after)

3 She had already opened the letter. She realized it wasn't addressed to her. (before)

4 The building had almost burnt down. The fire brigade arrived. (by the time)

5 We realized that something had gone wrong. We saw him run towards us. (as soon as)

1.8B Adverbial clauses of time (future reference) [> LEG 1.45.2]

Study: ★★

When the time clause refers to the future, we normally use the simple present after: *after, as soon as, before, by the time, directly, immediately, the moment, till, until* and *when:*
The Owens ***will move*** *to a new flat* ***when*** *their baby* ***is*** *born.* (Not **will be born**)

Write: Join these pairs of sentences with the conjunctions in brackets, making necessary changes.

1 I won't know if I have got into university. I will get my exam results. (until)
I won't know if I have got into university until I get my exam results.

2 I'll give him your message. He will phone. (as soon as)

3 We should visit the Duty Free Shop. Our flight will be called. (before)

4 I'll be dead. They will find a cure for the common cold. (by the time)

5 You'll get a surprise. You will open the door. (the moment)

1.8C Adverbial clauses of place [> LEG 1.46]

Study: ★★

To say *where* something happens or happened, we use conjunctions like *where, wherever, anywhere* and *everywhere*: *That dog follows me* ***wherever*** *I go.*

Write: Complete the following sentences to say *where.*

1 This is the exact spot where the accident happened...............................
2 You're not allowed to park anywhere...............................
3 Some television programmes are familiar everywhere...............................
4 Please sit wherever...............................
5 Let's put the television set in a place where...............................

1.8D Adverbial clauses of manner [> LEG 1.47]

Study: ★★

To say *how* something happens or happened, we use these conjunctions:
as: *Type this again* ***as*** *I showed you a moment ago.*
(in) the way (that), (in) the same way: *Type this again* ***in the way*** *I showed you.*
as if/as though (especially after *be*, *seem*, etc.): *I feel* ***as if/as though*** *I'm floating on air.*

Write: Complete the following sentences to say *how.*

1 It sounds as if ...it's raining...............................
2 I think this omelette is exactly as...............................
3 When I told her the news she acted as though...............................
4 I think you should write the report in the way...............................
5 You never do anything the way...............................

1.8E Context

Write: Put in the conjunctions *as, as soon as, as if, before, that, the way (that), when, which.*

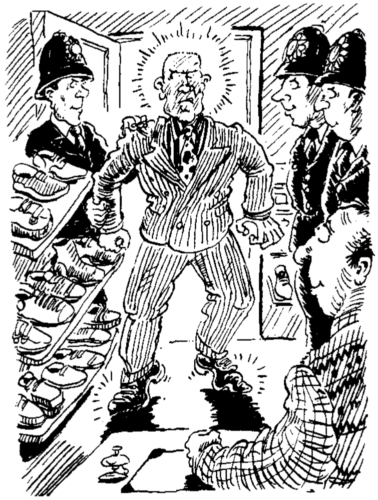

The man limped into the shop

CAUGHT BY THE HEEL!
Mr Boxell was just shutting his shoe shop at the end of the day [1]....when.... a man in a well-cut suit walked in and asked for an expensive pair of shoes. There was something about [2]................... the man walked that made Mr Boxell suspicious. He felt [3]................... he had seen him before somewhere, and then remembered that he had – on TV! The man was a wanted criminal! The man tried on a few pairs of shoes [4]................... he bought a pair [5]................... Mr Boxell strongly recommended. 'They're a bit tight,' the man complained. 'They'll stretch, sir,' Mr Boxell said. [6]................... Mr Boxell had expected, the man limped into the shop next day to complain about the shoes. [7]................... he entered the shop, he was surrounded by police. Mr Boxell had deliberately sold the man a pair of shoes [8]................... were a size too small, knowing he would return them the next day!

1.9 The complex sentence: reason and contrast

1.9A Adverbial clauses of reason [> LEG 1.48]

Study:

1 **Adverbial clauses of reason** answer the question *Why?* We often give reasons by using 'joining words' (or **conjunctions)** like *because, as, seeing (that),* and *since.*

2 We often begin sentences with *as* and *since.* [Compare *since* (time) > 1.8A]
As (Since) *it's a public holiday, you won't find many shops open.*

3 We often use *because* in the second half of a sentence:
Jim's trying to find a place of his own ***because*** *he wants to feel independent.*
We can always use *because* in place of *as, since* and *for* [> 1.4A, Note 8]. We cannot always use *as, since* and *for* in place of *because.*

Write: Join these sentences with the conjunctions to say *why.* More than one order is possible.

1 Service in this hotel ought to improve. There's been a change of management. (because)
Service in this hotel ought to improve because there's been a change of management

2 The Air Traffic Controllers are on strike. We have cancelled our holiday. (as)
....

3 Could you sell your old computer to me? You have no further use for it. (seeing (that))
....

4 She's never in when I phone. I'll have to write to her. (since)
....

5 I've had to have the document translated. I can't read Russian. (since)
....

1.9B Contrast (1) [> LEG 1.50]

Study:

We can introduce **contrast** with conjunctions like *although, considering (that), though, even though, even if, much as, while* and *whereas*:
Though *I've had more than 20 lessons, I'm still not ready to take my driving test.*

Write: Join these sentences using the conjunctions in brackets to introduce *contrast.*
More than one order is possible.

1 I'm going to buy a computer. I haven't got much money. (even though)
I'm going to buy a computer even though I haven't got much money.

2 I intend to go for a walk this morning. It's raining. (even if)
....

3 I'd like to help you. I'm afraid I won't be able to. (much as)
....

4 Your design is excellent. It isn't suitable for our purposes. (while)
....

5 I try hard to play the piano. I don't seem to improve. (although)
....

6 Chinese is so difficult. It's surprising how many people learn it. (considering that)
....

7 The play was wonderful. The film was a commercial failure. (whereas)
....

1.9C Contrast (2) [> LEG 1.50]

Study: ★★★

We can also introduce contrast with:

– *however* + adjective or adverb: e.g. *however small, however much.*
I intend to buy a CD player ***however much*** (or ***whatever)*** *it costs.*

– *no matter* e.g. *no matter how much, no matter where, no matter how* ***(slow/slowly).***
They'll find him ***no matter*** *where he's hiding.*

Write: Join these sentences using the conjunctions in brackets. Make any necessary changes.

1 It's expensive. He's determined to buy it. (however expensive)
However expensive it is, he's determined to buy it. ....

2 I work hard. I still have to take work home with me. (however hard)
....

3 You write well. It doesn't mean you will be published. (however well)
....

4 She feels sorry. The damage has been done. (no matter how sorry)
....

5 How much will they pay us? It will never compensate us. (no matter how much)
....

6 It doesn't matter how many cards I send. I always receive more. (no matter how many)
....

7 It doesn't matter what he tells you. Don't believe a word he says. (whatever)
....

1.9D Context

Write: Put in the conjunctions *as, because, even though, since, though, while.*

A SORT OF HUMANBURGER

¹...Even though..... it's difficult to find work these days, Joe Dobson has just given up his job. They were surprised when he announced this at the Job Centre ²............................, after a lot of effort, they had found Joe a jab at a Hamburger Bar. ³............................ Joe wasn't highly-qualified, this hadn't been easy. Yet Joe resigned, ⁴............................ the job was easy and quite well-paid. 'What did you have to do for your money?' the young woman at the Job Centre asked. 'Strange ⁵............................ it sounds,' Joe said, 'I had to dress up as a hamburger and stand outside the restaurant.' 'A sort of humanburger?' she suggested. 'That's right,' Joe said. 'I had to stand between the two round halves of a bun, ⁶............................ I was "disguised" as the hamburger filling, covered in tomato sauce. The uniform was wonderful, ⁷............................ I looked good enough to eat. The manager was pleased with me, ⁸............................ I attracted a lot of customers.' 'So why did you give up, Joe?' the young woman asked kindly. '⁹............................,' Joe said, his voice breaking slightly, 'students kept turning me on my side and rolling me down hill!'

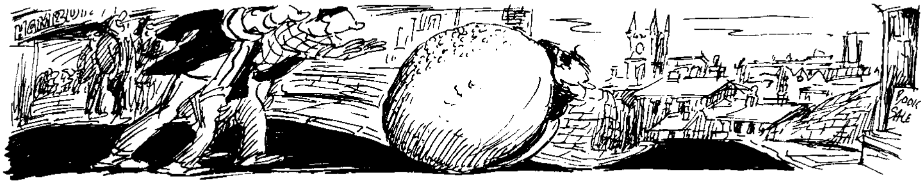

A sort of humanburger

1.10 The complex sentence: purpose, result and comparison

1.10A Adverbial clauses of purpose with 'so that' and 'in order that' [> LEG 1.51.2]

Study: ★★★

We can express **purpose** with *so that* and *in order that*:
I spent a year in Germany ***in order that (so that)*** *I might learn German.*
Note that it's easier to use the *to*-infinitive instead of *so that* and *in order that:*
I spent a year in Germany ***to learn*** *German.* [> 16.2C]

Write: Rewrite these sentences using *in order that* or *so that* making any necessary changes.

1 I took twenty driving lessons to pass my driving test first time.
I took twenty driving lessons in order that I might pass my driving test first time.
2 I arrived at the cinema early so as not to miss the beginning of the film.
....
3 We stood up in order to get a better view of what was happening.
....
4 Mr Jones bought a second car for his wife to learn to drive.
....
5 I spoke slowly and clearly because I wanted the audience to understand me.
....

1.10B Adverbial clauses of purpose with 'in case' [> LEG 1.51.3]

Study: ★★

In case means 'so as to be on the safe side' and refers to the future. We use the simple present or *should* after *in case:*
Take an umbrella with you. It might rain. →
Take an umbrella with you ***in case*** *it rains.* (Or ... *in case it should rain*)

Write: Join these sentences with *in case*, making any necessary changes.

1 I'm going to sign the agreement immediately. You might change your mind.
I'm going to sign the agreement immediately in case you change your mind.
2 Take this key with you. You might not be able to get into the house.
....
3 We keep a fire extinguisher in the kitchen. There might be a fire.
....
4 Go by train. There might be a lot of traffic on the roads.
....
5 I'm going to take my passport with me. I might need it.
....

1.10C Adverbial clauses of result with 'so ... (that)' and 'such ... (that)' [> LEG 1.52.1]

Study: ★★

We can describe results with:
1 ***so*** **+ adjective** ***(that)*** (= 'as a result'):
We were tired. We went to bed. → *We were* ***so tired (that)*** *we went to bed.*

2 ***such*** **+ noun** (***that***) (= 'as a result'):
He's a fool. He believes anything. → *He's* ***such a fool (that)*** *he believes anything.*

Write: Join these sentences with *so ... (that)* and *such ... (that).*

1 We were late. We missed the first act of the play.
We were so late (that) we missed the first act of the play.
2 I was working hard. I forgot what the time was.
....
3 There was a delay. We missed our connecting flight.
....
4 We've had difficulties. We don't think we can stay in business.
....

1.10D Adverbial clauses of comparison with 'as ... as' [> LEG 1.53]

Study: ★★

We can make comparisons with *as ... as, not so* (or *as*) ... *as* and *than:*
We use object pronouns after *as* and *than* [> 4.1B]: *He's as tall as **me**. He's taller than **me**.*
Or we use subject + verb: *He is as tall as I **(am).** He's taller than I **(am).***
We may use *do, does* or *did* to replace a verb in the simple present or simple past:
*He **plays** the piano as well as **I (do)**. He **plays** the piano as well as his sister (**does**).*
*You **didn't finish** the crossword puzzle as quickly as **I (did)**.*

Write: Join or rewrite these sentences using the conjunctions in brackets.

1 John works hard. Susan works hard. (as ... as)
John works as hard as Susan (does).
2 John is less intelligent than Susan. (not so ... as)
....
3 This computer holds less information than that one. (not ... as much ... as)
....
4 The film 'Superman 1' is enjoyable. 'Superman 2' is enjoyable, too. (as ... as)
....

1.10E Context

Write: Put in *as ... as, buf, in case, in order that, so ... that, such ... that, when, which.*

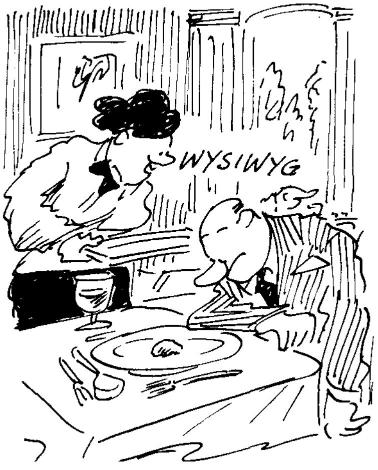

'Wysiwyg!'

WYSIWYG /wɪzɪwɪg/
We create new words all the time. We have to do this in order that we may express new ideas. Perhaps the strangest word ².................. has come into the English language recently is 'wysiwyg'. I was ³.................. puzzled by this word .... I kept asking people what it meant, ... no one knew. Last week I found it in a dictionary. It is not .... peculiar .... I had thought. It comes from computers. This is what it means, ⁶.................. you want to know: 'What You See Is What You Get'. This means that what you see on your screen is what you get ⁷.................. you print. Now I discover that everyone knows this word. The other day I was in my favourite restaurant and ordered sausages. They were ⁸.................. small sausages .... I complained to the waitress. She just smiled at me and whispered, 'Wysiwyg!'

1.11 The complex sentence: present participle constructions

1.11A Joining sentences with present participles ('-ing') [> LEG 1.56-1.58.1]

Study:
★★★

The **present participle** is the '-ing' form of a verb: *find* – ***finding*** [> 16.5].

1 We can use the present participle in place of *and, so,* etc. to join two simple sentences:
I found the front door locked. I went round the back. (two simple sentences > 1.2A)
I found the front door locked **and went** *round the back.* [> 1.4A]
Finding *the front door locked, I went round the back.*

2 To make a negative, we put *not* in front of the *-ing* form:
Not knowing *his phone number, I wasn't able to ring him.* (= I didn't know ...)

3 Note how we can use *being* in place of *is* or *was*:
I was *short of money. I couldn't afford to buy it.*
Being *short of money, I couldn't afford to buy it.*

Write: Rewrite these sentences using *-ing*, making any necessary changes.

1 She got very worried and thought we had had an accident.
She got very worried, thinking we had had an accident.
2 He went to his room and closed the door behind him.
....
3 I didn't hear what he said and asked him to repeat it.
....
4 You didn't ask me for permission because you knew I would refuse.
....
5 I'm not a lawyer, so I can't give you the advice you are looking for.
....

1.11B The present participle in place of adverbial clauses [> LEG 1.56-60]

Study:
★★★

We often use the present participle after a 'joining word' (or **conjunction**).
Instead of: ***Since we arrived*** *here, we have made many new friends.* [> 1.8A]
We can say: ***Since arriving*** *here, we have made many new friends.*

Write: Rewrite these sentences using a joining word + *-ing*.

1 They broke this window when they tried to get into the house.
They broke this window when trying to get into the house.
2 Though he refused to eat, he admitted he was very hungry.
....
3 I damaged the car while I was trying to park it.
....
4 While I agree you may be right, I still object to your argument.
....
5 After we looked at the map, we tried to find the right street.
....
6 Don't get into any arguments before you check your facts.
....

1.11C The present participle in place of relative clauses [> LEG 1.58.6]

Study:
★★★

1 We can sometimes omit *who* or *which* + *is/are* when we use the present progressive.
Instead of: ***The man who is serving** at the counter is very helpful.*
We can say: ***The man serving** at the counter is very helpful.*
Instead of: *The new law applies to **vehicles which are carrying** heavy loads.*
We can say: *The new law applies to **vehicles carrying** heavy loads.*

2 We can sometimes use *-ing* in place of *who* or *which* + simple present:
Instead of: *This job will suit **students who want** to work during the holidays.*
We can say: *This job will suit **students wanting** to work during the holidays.*

Write: Circle the words you can delete and/or change to use *-ing*.

1 The plane which is flying overhead is travelling north.
2 The candidates who are sitting for this examination are all graduates.
3 The woman who is waiting to see you has applied for a job here.
4 What can you do about a dog which is barking all night?
5 Trains which leave from this station take an hour to get to London.
6 Customers who complain about the service should see the manager.
7 Passengers who travel on planes shouldn't smoke.
8 There's a pension scheme for people who work for this company.
9 There's a crime prevention scheme for people who are living in this neighbourhood.
10 There's someone who is knocking at the door.

1.11D Context

Write: Use the *-ing* form of the verbs in brackets and put in *after, as, when* and *who.*

THE CASE OF THE POISONED MUSHROOMS

While *(prepare)*^{1} preparing. a meal for her guests, Mrs Grant got rather worried about some unusual mushrooms which a kind friend had sent her from the country. *(Feel)*^{2}.................. suspicious, she gave a mushroom to her dog. ^{3}.................. the dog ate it with no ill effects, Mrs Grant decided to cook the mushrooms for her guests. That evening the guests greatly enjoyed the mushrooms, *(comment)*^{4}.................. on their unusual flavour. They quickly changed their minds ^{5}.................. Mrs Grant's daughter, Jill, burst into the dining-room and announced that the dog was dead. On *(hear)*^{6}.................. the news, Mrs Grant, now in a state of shock, phoned Dr Craig, ^{7}.................. came round immediately and pumped out the stomachs of all those who had eaten the mushrooms – a very unpleasant experience for them. ^{8}.................. Dr Craig asked if he could see the dog, he was led out of the house. He soon discovered that the dog had been killed by a passing car. Not *(know)*^{9}.................. anything of her mother's suspicions about the mushrooms, Jill hadn't mentioned this important fact when *(announce)*^{10}.................. the death of the dog.

They quickly changed their minds!

1.12 The complex sentence: perfect/past participle constructions

1.12A 'Being' and 'having been' [> LEG 1.60]

Study: ★★★

1 We sometimes use *being* in place of is, *are, was* or *were,* though this is often formal:
Instead of: ***I was lost, so*** *I had to ask someone the way.*
We can say: ***Being lost,*** *I had to ask someone the way.*

2 We sometimes use *having been* in place of *have been* or *had been* (also formal):
Instead of: ***I've been abroad,*** *so I missed the elections.*
We can say: ***Having been abroad***, I missed the elections.

Write: Rewrite these sentences using *being* or *having been.*

1 I am out of work, so I spend a lot of my time at home.
...Being out of work, I spend a lot of my time at home...

2 John is a scientist, so he hasn't read a lot of novels.
....

3 He has been promised a reward, so he hopes he'll get one.
....

4 I was near a newsagent's, so I went in and got a paper.
....

5 They had been up all night, so they were in no mood for jokes.
....

1.12B 'It being' and 'there being' [> LEG 1.60]

Study: ★★★

1 We sometimes use *it being* in place of *it is* or *it was* (formal):
Instead of: ***It was Sunday,*** *so it was hard to find a garage open.*
We can say: ***It being Sunday****, it was hard to find a garage open.*

2 We sometimes use *there being* in place of *there is* or *there was* (formal):
Instead of: ***There was so*** *much noise, I couldn't hear what was going on.*
We can say: ***There being*** *so much noise, I couldn't hear what was going on.*

3 We can use *it being* and *there being* after *without* (formal):
They often dig up the roads ***without it being*** *necessary.* (= it isn't necessary)
She suddenly began shouting ***without there being*** *any reason.* (= there was no reason)

Write: Rewrite these sentences using *it being* or *there being,* making any necessary changes.

1 There were no questions so the meeting ended quickly.
...There being no questions, the meeting ended quickly...

2 He kept helping himself to money and it wasn't noticed. (without it ...)
....

3 He kept asking awkward questions and there was no reason for it. (without there ...)
....

4 It was a holiday, so there were thousands of cars on the roads.
....

5 There was no one in, so I left a message.
....

1.12C Agreement between present participle and subject [> LEG 1.61]

Study: ★★★

We have to be very careful to make the participle agree with the subject of both verbs:
Turning the corner, I saw a tile fall off the roof. (= **I** turned ... and **I** saw ...)
If we say or write **Turning the corner, the tile fell off the roof**, this means 'the tile was turning the corner and then fell off the roof'. The sentence is nonsense!

Write: What's wrong with these sentences?

1 Opening the door of the refrigerator, the smell was bad. It wasn't the smell that was opening the d
2 Changing gear, the bus had difficulty getting up the hill. ....
3 Burning the rubbish, all my important papers were destroyed. ....

1.12D Past participle constructions [> LEG 1.62]

Study: ★★★

1 The **past participle** is the third part of a verb [> 9.3A-B]:
play – played – ***played*** (regular verbs); *build – built –* ***built*** (irregular verbs)

2 We sometimes use the past participle instead of the passive:
Viewed *from a distance, it resembled a cloud. (When it was viewed ...)*
Although built *years ago, it was in good order. (Although it was built ...)*
If accepted *for the job, you will be informed soon. (If you are accepted ...)*

3 We can omit *who* and *which:* ***The system used*** *here is very successful. (which is used...)*

Write: Rewrite these sentences using past participles.

1 The painting was lost for many years. It turned up at an auction.
...Lost for many years, the painting turned up at an auction..........................

2 Although the meat was cooked for several hours, it was still tough.
....

3 If the picture is seen from this angle, it looks rather good.
....

4 The vegetables which are sold in this shop are grown without chemicals.
....

5 When the poem is read aloud it is very effective.
....

1.12E Context

Write: Put in suitable words (and forms where necessary) in the spaces below.

YAH BOOH!
My cat Blossom is always getting into fights with Ginger, the tomcat next door. ¹.....When..... I see Ginger through my window, I shout and wave my arms to frighten him away. .... out of the window yesterday, I saw Ginger near my front door. There .... no one around, I pulled a hideous face, stuck out my tongue, waved my arms over my head and started screaming, 'Yah booh! Yah booh!' .... the front door, I was determined to chase Ginger away. ⁵.................... I succeeded admirably, I terrified the postman as well!

2 Nouns

2.1 One-word nouns

2.1A Noun endings: people who do things/people who come from places

[> LEG 2.2, App 2]

Study: ★★

1 We use some words only as nouns: e.g. ***desk, hat, tree,*** etc.

2 However, we often make nouns from other words by adding different endings or **suffixes** and sometimes making other small changes. For example, if we add *-er* to a verb like ***play,*** we get the noun *player*; if we add *-ity* to the adjective ***active,*** we get the noun ***activity.*** There is no easy rule to tell us which endings to use to make nouns.

3 Typical endings which make nouns:
people who do things: ***actor, assistant, beggar, driver, engineer, historian, pianist.***
people who come from places: ***Athenian, Berliner, Milanese, Muscovite, Roman.***

Write: Give the nouns which describe people who do things or who come from places.
Use these noun endings: ***-an, -ant,*** *-ar, -er, -ian, -ist,* ***-or.*** Some are used more than once.

1 He ***acts*** very well. He's a fine ......actor.........
2 Don't ***beg.*** You're not a ....
3 I can't play the ***piano.*** I'm not a ....
4 She ***drives*** well. She's a good ....
5 I'm from ***Berlin.*** I'm a ....
6 She's from ***Athens.*** She's an ....
7 Manuel ***assists*** me. He's my ....
8 She always tells ***lies.*** She's such a ....
9 He's from ***Texas.*** He's a ....
10 Anna is studying ***history.*** She's a fine ....

2.1B Nouns formed from verbs, adjectives, other nouns [> LEG 2.2-3, Apps 2, 3.2]

Study: ★★

1 Some nouns have the same form as verbs: ***act, attempt, blame, book, call, copy, cost, dance, fall, fear, help, joke, kiss, laugh, try, vote, wait, walk, wash, wish.***

2 Typical endings which make nouns from:
– **verbs:** ***acceptance, agreement, arrival, behaviour, discovery, knowledge, possession.***
– **adjectives:** ***absence, activity, anxiety, constancy, happiness.***
– **other nouns:** ***boyhood, kingdom, lunacy, mouthful, sexism.***

And note *-ing* forms used as nouns: ***I've given your shirt an ironing.*** [> **2.2A,** 16.51

Write: Give the nouns derived from verbs, adjectives or other nouns. Use these endings: ***-age, -hood,*** *-ation,* ***-ion,*** *-ful, -ence, -ency, -ness, -al, -(er)y, -ment, -ety,* ***-ism,*** *-ity, -ing.*

1 I ***decided this.*** It was my ......decision..........
2 Don't be so ***anxious.*** Control your ....
3 Ann's a ***socialist.*** She believes in ....
4 We all want to be ***happy.*** We all seek ....
5 We all ***agree.*** We're all in ....
6 Who ***discovered*** this? Who made this ....?
7 We'll all ***arrive.*** We'll be met on ....
8 I was a *child* then. That was in my ....
9 She is ***absent.*** Can you explain her .... ?
10 I'll ***post*** this. What's the ....?
11 ***Try*** again. Have another ....
12 Be more ***efficient.*** Improve your ....
13 Don't be so ***curious.*** Control your ....
14 ***Address*** this envelope. I'll give you the ....
15 I ***refused*** their offer. My .... is final.
16 I ***warned*** you. I gave you enough ....
17 Put it in your ***mouth.*** Take one ....
18 Can you ***explain*** it? Is there an ....?
19 They ***tried*** him. I was at the ....
20 Don't ***argue.*** I don't want an ....

2.1C Nouns and verbs with the same spelling but different stress

[> LEG 2.3.1, App 3.11

Study: ★★

1 With some words, when the stress is on the **first syllable**, the word is a **noun**.
When the stress is on the **second syllable**, it is a **verb**. The meanings are related:
noun: *We have finished Book 1. We have made good* ˈ***progress***.
verb: *We are now ready to* ***progress*** *to Book 2.*

2 The meanings can also be quite different:
noun: *My son's* ˈ***conduct*** *at school hasn't been very good.*
verb: *Mahler used to* ***conˈduct*** *the Vienna Philharmonic.*

Write: Underline the syllable that you would stress when speaking.

1 I need a ***permit*** to work in this country.
2 I can't *permit* you to park here.
3 Will they ***increase*** my salary next year?
4 I'm looking for an ***increase*** in salary.
5 Joy ***objects*** to your proposal.
6 Don't treat me as if I were an ***object.***
7 We've had complaints about your ***conduct,***
8 I'll ***conduct*** you to your seat.
9 This is the ***entrance*** to the building.
10 Gloria will ***entrance*** you.
11 Do you want to buy this *record*?
12 Let me ***record*** your voice.
13 I've brought you a ***present.***
14 Please ***present*** my compliments to him.
15 I must ***protest*** at your proposal.
16 The proposal didn't go without ***protest.***
17 I've got an Australian ***accent.***
18 Please ***accent*** every syllable.
19 Our ***exports*** have increased this year.
20 We ***export*** everything we make.
21 I'll ***escort*** you to your new office.
22 You'll need an ***escort.***
23 Our ***imports*** have increased.
24 We ***import*** too much.

2.1D Context

Write: Refer to the words in brackets and put in the right nouns.

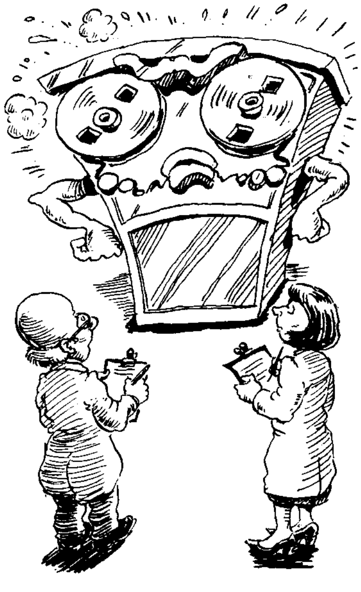

The computer was having a tantrum!

COMPUTER TANTRUMS

A clever computer built at Imperial College, London, often suffers from ***(bore)***^{1}...boredom.... The computer was built to find out about human ***(communicate)***^{2}........................ The computer acquired a simple vocabulary in the same way as babies do: through ***(babble)*** .... It is common ***(know)***^{4}........................ that when babies babble, it is a ***(prepare)***^{5}........................ for speech. When babies make sounds like real words, they are encouraged to remember them. With ***(encourage)***^{6}........................ from their parents, babies quickly build up their vocabulary. In the same way, the clever computer learnt to use real words. For example, it learnt to identify a black cat. It was then shown a white cat to test how good it was at ***(recognize)***^{7}........................ . It refused to co-operate because the ***(solve)***^{8}........................ to the problem was too easy. At first this ***(refuse)***^{9}........................ puzzled scientists, but then they decided the computer was having a tantrum. 'It just sits there and goes on strike,' a ***(science)***^{11}........................ said. 'These clever computers must also be taught good ***(behave)*** ^{10}........................ .'

2.2 Compound nouns

2.2A Nouns formed with gerund ('-ing') + noun: 'dancing-shoes'

[> LEG 2.7, 2.11n.3, 6.3.1, 16.39.3]

Study:
★★

1 When a noun has two or more parts (e.g. *classroom),* we call it a compound noun.
We can make compound nouns with the *-ing* form: e.g. *dancing-shoes* [compare > *16.51.*

2 The *-ing* form can sometimes be an adjective:
Can you see that 'dancing 'couple? (= couple that is dancing)
When the *-ing* form is an adjective, we stress both words and never use a hyphen.

3 The *-ing* form can be the first part of a compound noun:
I need a pair of 'dancing-shoes. (= shoes used for dancing; not 'shoes that are dancing')
When the *-ing* form is a noun, we stress the first word only and a hyphen is optional.

Write: Put a tick if the second word is part of a compound noun.

1 You need a pair of *running shoes.* ✓
2 We sat beside a *running stream.* __
3 Put it in the *frying pan.* __
4 I like the smell of *frying sausages.* __
5 This water is near *boiling point.* __
6 I need some *boiling water.* __
7 Where are my *walking shoes?* __
8 Vera is a *walking dictionary.* __

2.28 Apostrophe s ('s) or compound noun? [> LEG 2.10.1, 2.44, 2.47-48]

Study:
★★★

1 We use apostrophe *s* (*'s*) and *s* apostrophe (*s'*) with people and some living things to show possession: *Gus's car, the girls' shoes, a dog's bark* [> 2.8].

2 When we want to show possession with things, we can use *of: the leg of the table.*
However, we often prefer to use a compound noun instead of *of: the table-leg.*

3 We can say *the voice of a man* or *a man's voice.* (Not **a man voice**)
We can say *the leg of a table* or *a table-leg.* (Not **a table's leg**)

Write: Supply a phrase with 's or a compound noun in place of the phrases in italics.

1 Where's *the key of the car?* ...the car key...
2 Where's *the surgery of the doctor?* ....
3 It's *the idea of the committee.* ....
4 Don't damage *the nib of the pen.* ....
5 It's *the keyboard of the computer.* ....
6 I've cleaned *the top of the desk.* ....
7 It was in *the reign of King John.* ....
8 Do you like *the poetry of Eliot?* ....
9 It's *the responsibility of no one.* ....
10 Look at *the handle of the suitcase!* ....
11 Polish *the knob of the front door.* ....
12 *The journey of Scott* is historic. ....
13 Who stole *the bicycle of the postman?* ....
14 Put out *the stub of that cigarette.* ....
15 We've got *a new table in the kitchen.* ....
16 Don't pull *the tail of the horse!* ....
17 Please clean *the switches of the lights.* ....
18 I spoke to *the secretary of the boss.* ....
19 This is *the* new *policy of the party.* ....
20 *The cover of the book* is torn. ....
21 He's *the son of Mr Jones.* ....
22 *The gate of the factory* was shut. ....
23 Please open *the door of the garage.* ....
24 I've lost *the photos of the children.* ....
25 *The phone in the office* is out of order. ....
26 *The critic of the film* was wrong. ....
27 She's a *teacher of dancing.* ....
28 Who's *the mother of the twins?* ....
29 That's *the wife of my brother.* ....
30 I need *a new lamp for reading.* ....
31 *The surface of the road* is slippery. ....
32 He is *the secretary of the President.* ....

2.2C Compound nouns which tell us about materials and substances

[> LEG 2.10.5, 6.13]

Study: ★★

1 Names of materials and substances *(leather, gold)* are like adjectives when we use them to form compound nouns: *a watch made of gold* → *a* ***gold watch.*** (Not *"golden')*
These words behave like adjectives in this one way, but they remain nouns because they do not have comparative or superlative forms and we cannot put *very* in front of them.
We stress both words in spoken English: *I can't afford a* ***ˈgold ˈwatch****.* [> 6.4B-D]

2 Two important exceptions are *wood* and *wool,* which have adjectival forms:
a table made of wood → *a* ***wooden*** *table; a dress made of wool* → *a* ***woollen*** *dress.*

3 There are adjectival forms for words like *gold:* ***glass/glassy, gold/golden, leather/leathery, silver/silvery, silk/silky/silken, steel/steely, stone/stony.***
We use them to mean 'like': *a* ***golden*** *sunset* (= a sunset like gold).

Write: Make compound nouns or use adjectival forms.

1 a raincoat made of plastic a plastic raincoat
2 a shirt made of silk ....
3 hair like silk ....
4 a table-top made of glass ....
5 eyes like glass ....
6 a wallet made of leather ....
7 a spoon made of stainless steel ....
8 nerves like steel ....
9 a pullover made of wool ....
10 a blouse made of cotton ....
11 a teapot made of silver ....
12 a voice like silver ....
13 a wall made of stone ....
14 silence like stone ....
15 a tile made of ceramic ....
16 a nailbrush made of nylon ....
17 a tongue like leather ....
18 a spoon made of wood ....

2.2D Context

Write: Refer to the words in brackets and put in the right compounds.

GREEK BIRDMAN
You probably remember the story of Daedalus, who made *(wings of feathers)* [1] feather wings for himself and his son, Icarus, to escape Minos, King of Crete. A young Greek, Kanellos Kanellopoulos, recently repeated this journey in *(a machine that flies)* [2]............................ called 'Daedalus'. His *(path of flight)* [3]............................ was from Crete to Santorini, a distance of 119 kilometres. Kanellos, *(a cyclist who is a champion)* [4]............................, didn't use wax and feathers, but *(power from pedals)* .... to drive his machine. He was in the *(seat of the pilot)* [6]............................ for 3 hours and 5 minutes. His *(machine made of carbon fibre)* [7]............................ weighed 31 kilos and its wings measured 34 metres. Icarus, in the old story, flew too close to the sun. The wax that held his wings melted, so he crashed into the sea. Kanellos, however, kept 3 to 4 metres above the water and had a good *(wind from the south)* [8]............................ . He broke the record for human-powered flight previously set up by Bryan Allen, who 'cycled' 35.8 km across the English Channel.

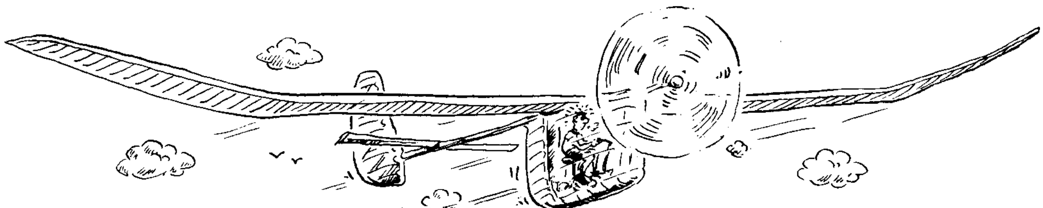

Daedalus

2.3 Countable and uncountable nouns (1)

2.3A Countable and uncountable nouns compared [> LEG 2.14]

Study:
★★

1 If a noun is **countable:**
a we can use *a/an* in front of it: *I bought* ***a book.*** (Not *I bought book.*)
b it has a plural and can be used in questions with *How many?: How many* ***books ...***?
c we can use a number in front of it: *one book, two books.*

2 If a noun is **uncountable:**
a we do not normally use *a/an* in front of it: *I bought* ***some bread.*** (Not *a bread')
b it does not normally have a plural and can be used in questions with *How much?:*
How much ***bread...***? (Not *'How many breads?')*
c we cannot normally use a number in front of it. [compare > 2.3C]

3 We need to know whether nouns are countable or uncountable in English to be able to use *a/an, some, any, much, many, a few, a little,* etc. correctly.
Compare: *It was* ***a marvellous experience.*** (countable = something that happened)
We need someone with ***experience.*** (uncountable = skill and knowledge)

Write: Underline the noun in each sentence and write 'C' or 'U' to show whether the noun is countable or uncountable.

1 This is an excellent painting. C
2 I don't like milk. __
3 How many photos did he take? __
4 Add a little more oil. __
5 His drawings really interest me. __
6 Hope keeps me going. __
7 He hasn't a hope. __
8 How much flour did you buy? __
9 Where are my two new shirts? __
10 We've got plenty of coal. __

2.3B Nouns which can be either countable or uncountable: 'an egg/egg'
[> LEG **2.16.1,2.16**.2]

Study:
★★

1 Some nouns are countable when they refer to single items, but they are uncountable when they refer to substances:

countable (a single item)	**uncountable** (substance/material)
He ate ***a*** *whole* ***chicken!***	*Would you like* ***some*** *chicken?*
I had ***a boiled egg*** *for breakfast.*	*There's* ***egg*** *on your tie.*

2 Some nouns are uncountable when they refer to a material, but they are countable when they refer to an object made from that material:

countable ('thing')	**uncountable** ('material')
I broke ***a glass*** *this morning.*	***Glass*** *is made from sand and lime.*
I picked up ***a stone.***	*We used* ***stone*** *to build our walls.*

Write: Underline the noun in each sentence and write 'C' or 'U' to show whether the noun is being used as a countable or as an uncountable.

1 Add more onion. U
2 Would you like some fish? __
3 I eat two eggs every day. __
4 Too much cake isn't good for you. __
5 They've built a new motorway. __
6 Would you like an ice? __
7 I need two clean glasses. __
8 Don't throw stones. __
9 A lot of paper is wasted. __
10 We bought a new iron yesterday. __

2.3C Normally uncountable nouns used as countables (1): 'a coffee/(some) coffee' [> LEG 2.16.3]

Study: ★★

1 Words for drinks like *coffee* are normally uncountable. This means:
– we use no article: *__Coffee__ is important to the economy of Brazil.*
– or we use *some/any*: *Is there __any coffee?__ I'd like __some coffee,__ please.*

2 However, when we are ordering *coffee,* etc., we normally treat it as countable:
I'd like __a coffee,__ please. __Two coffees,__ please. __One coffee__ and a glass of milk, please.

Write: Use *I'd like ..., please* to ask for drinks in each situation.

1 You have come down to breakfast. There is a choice between tea and coffee.
...I'd like (some) tea, please. I'd like (some) coffee, please..........
2 You are ordering drinks. You want coffee for yourself. Your two friends want tea.
....
3 You are ordering drinks for three people: beer, lemonade, tomato juice.
....
4 You are ordering drinks. Two want coffee. Three want tea. One wants milk.
....

2.3D Normally uncountable nouns used as countables (2): 'oil/a light oil' [> LEG 2.16.3]

Study: ★★★

Words like *oil* and *plastic* for substances and materials are normally uncountable [> 3.5A]:
__Oil__ is produced in the North Sea.
We often use *a/an* with nouns like this when we are describing them with an adjective:
The North Sea produces __a light oil__ which is highly prized in the oil industry.

Write: Rewrite these sentences using the nouns as countables.

1 The North Sea produces oil. (light) ...The North Sea produces a light oil..........
2 This region produces wine. (excellent) ....
3 This factory produces cloth. (traditional) ....
4 This box is made of wood. (rare) ....

2.3E Context

Write: Put in *a, some,* or '-'.

A terrible tragedy!

OOOPS!

^{1}..........—.......... wine is not cheap and ^{2}.................. good wine can cost a lot of money these days. So spare ^{3}.................. thought for Mr Sokolin, ^{4}.................. New York wine merchant, who recently lost ^{5}.................. bottle of wine worth •'305,000 (or about •'50,000 ^{6}.................. glass!). It was ^{7}.................. 1784 Chateau Margaux which had once belonged to Thomas Jefferson, the third president of America. Mr Sokolin took the bottle to ^{8}.................. wine tasting and put it on ^{9}.................. table. The bottle was made of ^{10}.................. dark glass and a waiter didn't notice it. He hit it with ^{11}.................. tray, making ^{12}.................. large hole in it. Most of the wine was lost, but Mr Sokolin was able to taste ^{13}.................. of it. He said it was 'not very good', but the loss of the bottle was described as '^{14}.................. terrible tragedy'.

2.4 Countable and uncountable nouns (2)

2.4A Singular equivalents of uncountable nouns: ‘bread/a loaf' [> LEG 2.16.6]

Study: ★★

1 A word like *bread* is uncountable. If we want ‘one item', we use a different word:
I'd like ***some bread,*** *please.* → *I'd like a* ***loaf*** *(of bread), please.*

2 Sometimes we have to say exactly what we want. We cannot say **a clothing**, so we ask for *a coat, a shirt*, etc. In the same way, we cannot say **a luggage**, **an accommodation**. We have to say what we want: e.g. *a suitcase, a room.*

Write: Put in any suitable word which means 'one item'.

1 Are you giving away all this clothing/all these clothes? – No, I'm giving away a .....coat..................
2 There's a lot of laughter from next door. I just heard a very loud ....
3 My luggage is getting old and worn. I really need a new ....
4 There are a lot of people looking for work. I need a .... myself.
5 I'm looking for accommodation. I'd like a .... for the night.

2.48 Nouns not normally countable in English: 'information'

[> LEG **2.14.1-2,2.17,2.30,** App 4]

Study: ★★

1 A number of nouns, like *information*, are countable in many languages, but they are uncountable in English. This means we cannot:
– use *a/an* in front of them: *I'd like* ***some information,*** *please.* (Not **an information')*
– give them a plural: *I'd like* ***some information,*** *please.* (Not **(some) informations')*

Other examples: *advice, clothing, flu, furniture, hair, homework, housework, jewellery, lightning, luggage, meat, money, news, permission, progress, rubbish, scenery, shopping, soap, spaghetti, thunder, toast, traffic, weather.*

2 *News* is plural in form, but takes a singular verb: ***The news*** *is bad.* (Not *'the news are')*
Hair (that grows on the head) is singular: ***My hair is*** *long.* (Not **my hairs are')*
We use *hairs* only for individual strands of *hair*: ***There are three hairs*** *on my nose.*

Write 1: Tick the words which normally have plurals in English.

1 *advice* __
2 *diamond* ✓
3 *meat* —
4 *answer* —
5 *jewellery* __
6 *carrot* __
7 *penny* __
8 *story* __
9 *scenery* —
10 *money* __
11 *news* __
12 *shirt* —

Write 2: Put in *some, any, a, the, a lot of* or '-'.

1 I'd like some information, please.
2 The tree was struck by .... lightning.
3 Is there .... toast, please?
4 There's .... slice of toast left.
5 What's .... weather like today?
6 Can I have .... potatoes, please?
7 I need .... new clothing.
8 I'm tired. I've just done .... shopping.
9 I've done .... housework.
10 I've just received .... letter from John.
11 Can you give me .... description of it?
12 I'd like .... tomatoes, please.
13 Would you like .... spaghetti?
14 There was .... traffic this morning.
15 John's gone to bed with .... flu.
16 Have you made .... progress with Chinese?
17 I've got .... permission to park here.
18 Our teacher has given us .... homework.
19 There's .... rubbish in our garden.
20 I'm going to plant .... tree in the garden.

2.4C Partitives: 'a piece of', etc. [> LEG 2.18, App 5]

Study: ★★

1 We use **partitives** to refer to:
- one item: ***a loaf of bread***
- a part of a whole: ***a slice of bread***
- a collection of items: ***a packet of biscuits***

2 The most common partitives are ***a piece of*** and (in everyday speech) ***a bit of:***
Can I have a piece of bread/a bit of bread/two pieces of bread, please?

3 There are partitives which go with some words but not with others. So we can say ***a slice of bread, a slice of cake, a slice of meat*** (but not ****a slice of soap')***.
Partitives can be 'containers' ***(a tin of soup)*** or can refer to small amounts ***(a drop of rain).***

Write: Match A and B.

A	B
1 I'd like ***some*** ice. ....a cube of ice..........	a wisp of ....
2 Have you got ***any*** chocolate?	a cube of ....
3 Can I have ***some*** bread, please?	a splash of ....
4 We need ***some*** paper.	a box of ....
5 Buy me ***some*** soap, please.	a sip of ....
6 Buy me ***some*** milk, please.	a tube of ....
7 We need ***some*** jam.	a drop of ....
8 Have you got ***any*** matches?	a bar of ....
9 I've made ***some*** tea.	a slice of ....
10 Buy ***some*** toothpaste.	a pinch of ....
11 Add ***a little*** water.	a sheet of ....
12 Add ***a little*** salt.	a jar of ....
13 I've drunk ***a little tea.***	a bar of ....
14 Add ***a little*** soda.	a bottle of ....
15 I can see ***a little*** smoke.	a pot of ....

2.4D Context

Write: Put in ***a,*** a ***lot of*** (use once only), ***some,*** or '-'

JUNK OR ART?
Who became famous for painting ^{1}........a........ tin of soup? The answer is the American pop artist, Andy Warhol. Andy painted everyday objects and he also liked to collect them in large numbers: ^{2}.................. cookie jars, ^{3}.................. sets of cutlery, ^{4}.................. vases, ^{5}..................furniture and .... paintings. Andy died in **1987** and his vast collection was sold. Someone paid **$23,100** for two cookie jars which had cost a few dollars each. ^{7}.................. pieces of furniture were sold for nearly **$300,000**. The sale raised ^{8}.................. money for the Andy Warhol Foundation for the Visual Arts, which may now have $100m! So, before you clear out your attic, take another look. What you think is .... rubbish today, might be ^{10}.................. treasure tomorrow. That ugly old vase belonging to Grandma may be more valuable than you think!

Campbell's
CONDENSED
CHICKEN NOODLE SOUP
COOKIES

Junk or art?

2.5 Number (singular and plural) (1)

2.5A Nouns with plurals ending in **-s** or **-es:** 'friends', 'matches' [> LEG 2.20, 2.21]

Study: ☐

1 We add *-s* to form the plural of most nouns.
We pronounce *-s* as /s/ after these sounds: /f/ *chiefs;* /k/ *cakes;* /p/ *taps;* /t/ *pets;* /θ/ *months.*
We pronounce *-s* as /z/ after these sounds: /b/ *verbs;* /d/ *friends;* /g/ *bags;* /l/ *bells;* /m/ *names;*
/n/ lessons; /ŋ/ *songs;* vowel (a, e, **i,** o, u) + *s: eyes,* or vowel sound + r: *chairs.*

2 We add *-es* after nouns ending in **-o**: *potato – potatoes;* **-s**: *class – classes;*
-x: *box – boxes;* **-ch**: *match – matches;* **-sh**: *dish – dishes.*

We do not pronounce *e* in plurals like: *cakes, clothes, tables, names, eyes.*
We pronounce the plural as /ɪz/ after these sounds:
/z/: *noises;* /dʒ/: *oranges;* /s/: *buses*; /ʃ/: *dishes*; /tʃ/: *matches*; /ks/: *boxes.*

Write: Write the plurals of these nouns in the columns below to show their pronunciation.
address, beach, bottle, cinema, clock, guitar, hotel, island, lake, light, month, office, park, piece, smile, space, tape, village.

	/s/		/z/		/ɪz/
1	clocks	7	bottles	13	addresses
2		8		14	
3		9		15	
4		10		16	
5		11		17	
6		12		18	

2.58 Nouns with plurals ending in **-s** or **-es:** 'countries', 'knives'
[> LEG 2.20, 2.23, 2.36]

Study: ★★

1 Consonant (b, c, d, etc.) + *-y* becomes *-ies*: *country/countries, strawberry/strawberries.*

2 Vowel (a, e, o and u) + *-y* adds an *-s*: *days, keys, boys, guys.*
Proper nouns (names spelt with a capital letter) ending in *-y* just add an *-s*:
Have you met the ***Kennedys?*** *The last four* ***Januarys*** *have been very cold.*

3 We change the ending *-f* or *-fe* into *-ves* in the plural with the following nouns:
calf/calves, half/halves, knife/knives, leaf/leaves, life/lives, loaf/loaves, self/selves, sheaf/sheaves, shelf/shelves, thief/thieves, wife/wives and *wolf/wolves.*

4 We add *-s* or *-ves* to: *hoof – hoofs/hooves, scarf – scarfs/scarves.*

5 We just add *-s* to: *handkerchief/handkerchiefs, roof/roofs.*

Write: Rewrite these sentences in the plural making necessary changes.

1 This cherry is very sweet.
These cherries are very sweet.

2 I've lost my key.
....

3 This knife is blunt.
....

4 The leaf is turning yellow.
....

5 The roof has been damaged.
....

6 We have a Henry in our family.
We have three ....

2.5C Nouns ending in -o and some irregular plural forms

[> LEG 2.20, 2.25-27, **App 49**]

Study: ★★

1 To nouns ending in *-o*, we add ***-es***: *hero – heroes, potato –potatoes, tomato – tomatoes.*
Or we add *-es* or ***-s***: *cargo – cargoes* or *cargos, volcano – volcanoes* or *volcanos.*
Or we add only ***-s***: *bamboos, photos, pianos, radios, solos, videos, zoos.*

2 We change the vowels of some nouns to form the plural: ***foot/feet, goose/geese, man/men, mouse/mice, tooth/teeth, woman/women.*** And note: ***child/children, ox/oxen.***

3 Some nouns have the same singular and plural forms: *aircraft, deer, salmon, trout, sheep.*

4 Nationality nouns ending in ***-ese*** and *-ss* have the same singular and plural forms:
a Chinese – the Chinese; a Swiss – the Swiss. [> 3.3C]

Write: Rewrite these sentences in the plural making necessary changes.

1 Which video do you like **best?**
Which videos do you like best?
2 Which volcano is erupting?
....
3 This is John's pet mouse.
....
4 This tooth is giving me trouble.
....
5 Can you see that goose?
....
6 A postman is busy all the time.
....
7 We're going to sell that sheep.
....
8 **I** can see a salmon in the water.
....
9 Which **aircraft** has just landed?
....
10 A Swiss is used to mountains.
....

2.5D Context

Write: Supply the correct plural forms.

WHAT DOES IT COME UNDER?

If you're dieting there are certain *(food)*¹.....foods........ you really have to avoid: *(cake)*²........................ and *(biscuit)*³........................ are out for a start, but you can't live for ever on *(tomato)*⁴........................and *(orange)*⁵........................ . There are *(man)*⁶........................ and *(woman)*⁷........................ who spend their entire *(life)*⁸........................ counting the calories they take in each day. Some national *(cuisine)* .... make you fat. The *(Japanese)*¹⁰........................have a high protein diet, while the *(Swiss)*¹¹........................eat a lot of milk *(product)*¹². .... Personally, I'm lucky not to have to diet, but my friend, John, can't eat anything without looking it up in his Calorie Chart. This is carefully organized so that *(strawberry)*¹³........................ and *(peach)*¹⁴........................ are under 'Fruit'; *(potato)*¹⁵........................ and (***spaghetti*** > 2.4B) ¹⁶........................ come under 'Starchy Foods', and so on. **I** entertained John to a nice low calorie meal yesterday and at the end **I** offered him some jelly. 'What does "**jelly**" come under?' he asked looking at his chart. 'Half a **litre** of double cream,' **I** said, pouring the stuff over my plate!

Half a litre of double cream!

2.6 Number (singular and plural) (2)

2.6A Collective nouns followed by singular or plural verbs: 'government'
[> LEG 2.28-29]

Study: ★★

1 Words like *government* and *family* are **collective nouns** because they refer to groups.

2 We can use singular or plural verbs with nouns like *committee, company, family, government* and *jury What will you be doing while* ***the family is*** (or ***are)*** *on holiday?*
These words also have regular plurals: *Many* ***families are*** *in need of help.*

3 We can use singular or plural verbs with nouns like *the majority, the public* and *the youth of today* ***The public want*** (or ***wants)*** *to know how* ***they are*** (or ***it is)*** *governed.*
These words do not have regular plural forms: (Not **the publics')*

4 We use only plural verbs with nouns like *cattle, the military, people, the police* and *vermin:*
There are *too many* ***people*** *in the world.*
(Not **There is too many people* *There are too many peoples**)
These words do not have normal plural forms, but note that *peoples* means 'national populations': *The* ***peoples*** *of the Arab World have a common language.*

Write: Supply *is, are, has* or *have*. Give two forms where possible.

1 The government is/are bringing in a new bill.
2 The company .... going to employ six staff.
3 All governments .... trying to control crime.
4 The jury .... trying to decide now.
5 The youth of today .... many advantages.
6 There .... vermin in this restaurant.
7 The military .... occupied the house.
8 The police .... interested in this case.
9 The public .... concerned about it.
10 How many people .... coming tonight?
11 The committee .... meeting now.
12 A lot of people .... signed the petition.

2.68 Nouns with a plural form + singular or plural verbs: 'acoustics' [> LEG 2.31]

Study: ★★★

1 Nouns ending in *-ics*:
- *athletics, gymnastics, linguistics, mathematics (maths)* and *physics* take a singular verb: ***Mathematics is*** *not the most popular school subject.* (Not *'Mathematics are')*
- *acoustics, economics, phonetics* and *statistics* take a singular verb only when they refer to the academic subject: ***Statistics is*** *a branch of economics.* (Not *'statistics are')*
  They take a plural verb when the reference is specific: ***Your statistics are*** *unreliable.*

2 Nouns like *crossroads, headquarters, kennels, series, species* and *works* (= factory) are singular when they refer to one: ***This species*** *of moth* ***is*** *rare.*
They are plural when they refer to more than one: ***There are*** *thousands of* ***species.***

Write: Supply *is, are, has* or *have.*

1 The acoustics in this room ...are... very good.
2 This crossroads .... dangerous.
3 There .... four crossroads in our village.
4 Acoustics .... a subject I know little about.
5 Our company headquarters .... in London.
6 There .... many series of books on birds.
7 .... there any kennels in this area?
8 The statistics in this report .... inaccurate.
9 .... there any statistics for road accidents?
11 Many species of moth .... disappeared.
11 This species .... green and white spots.
12 Our works .... a good canteen.
13 My maths .... got worse and worse!
14 There .... crossroads every mile.

2.6C Nouns with a plural form + plural verbs: 'trousers' [> LEG 2.32, App 5.8]

Study: ★★

1 These nouns have a plural form only and are followed by a plural verb:
glasses (= spectacles), jeans, pants, pliers, pyjamas, scissors, shorts, tights, trousers:
My ***trousers are*** torn.
All these nouns can combine with a pair of, (two) pairs of
I bought ***a pair of shorts*** yesterday and ***two pairs of trousers.***

2 These nouns are plural in form and are followed by a plural verb:
belongings, brains (= intellect), clothes, congratulations, earnings, goods, manners, stairs:
Were those ***clothes*** expensive?

Write: Supply the missing words.

1 The goods you ordered ....have.......... arrived.
2 Where .... the scissors? – .... are in the first drawer on the left.
3 How much .... a good pair of trousers cost these days?
4 How much did you pay for .... trousers? – .... were very expensive!
5 I know he's clever, but .... aren't the only thing in life.
6 I'm so pleased you got into university! .... on your success!
7 If your clothes .... dirty, please put them in the laundry basket.
8 My jeans (not) .... faded much even though I keep washing ....
9 I'm looking for the pliers. – You'll find .... on that shelf.
10 All their belongings .... been destroyed in a fire.
11 My earnings (not) .... high, but at least they .... regular.
12 These shorts .... fit me at all!

2.6D Context

Write: Put in singular or plural verb-forms.

LIES, DAMN LIES?
Statistics (be) ^{1}.......is........ a branch of economics, but it is often said that there (be) ^{2}.................. lies, damn lies and statistics. Recent statistics of British life (show) ^{3}.................. that the family (be) .... happier than it used to be. The youth of today (be) ^{5}.................. likely to live longer than the previous generation. People (own) ^{6}.................. more things than they used to, but more police (be) ^{7}.................. employed to fight crime. Mathematics (be) ^{8}.................. a subject which is studied more by boys than by girls, as (be) ^{9}.................. physics. The earnings of working women (be) ^{10}.................. getting higher all the time and many women earn more than their husbands. Good manners (be) ^{11}.................. declining. The public (spend) ^{12}.................. more on clothes, and clothes (be) ^{13}.................. becoming more and more expensive. Glasses (be) ^{14}.................. worn by more people, but only a minority (favour) ^{15}.................. contact lenses. Statistics (make) ^{16}.................. us want to grind our teeth and can probably tell us if we have any teeth left to grind!

STATISTICS MACHINE

Lies, damn lies?

2.7 Gender

2.7A Male and female word forms: 'waiterlwaitress' [> LEG 2.39-40]

Study:

1 In many languages, the names of things such as *book, chair, radio, table* may be grammatically masculine, feminine or neuter. Often gender doesn't relate to sex, so that the word for 'girl' might be neuter and the word for 'chair' might be feminine.

2 There is no grammatical gender for nouns in English. Though there can be exceptions [> 4.1C], we use only *he* and *she* to refer to people and *it* to refer to everything else. It is the pronouns, not the nouns, that tell us whether the reference is to male or female:
***He** is the **person** you spoke to. **She** is the **person** you spoke to.*

3 We still have a few male and female word forms (*man/woman*) and a few *-ess* endings that refer to females: *waiter/waitress, lion/lioness.* In the case of people, this *-ess* ending is becoming rare. In the interests of sexual equality, words like *author* and *manager* refer to both sexes, rather than using **authoress** or *manageress* for a woman.

Write: Supply the missing words. Refer to this list as little as possible.

actress, aunt, bachelor, bridegroom, cows, daughter, female, goddess, hens, heroine, heiress, lionesses, mares, nephew, nieces, nuns, prince, queens, ram, saleswoman, sister, sow, spinster, uncle, waitress, widower.

1 John's *brother* is a bank clerk and his ...sister... is a nurse.
2 My *aunt* is very nice and my .... has a wonderful sense of humour.
3 My .... is a little boy of four; my *niece* is a little girl of two.
4 My father's *brother* and *sister* have never married. He's still a .... and she's a ....
5 These days, few men become *monks* and few women become ....
6 There is only one *bull* in the field, but there are dozens of ....
7 The *cock* crows at dawn and wakes up all the ....
8 The *stallion* is in a separate stable from the ....
9 We call the *boar* Henry and we call the .... Jemima.
10 The *ewes* look quiet enough, but I don't like the look of that ....
11 Tony is an *actor* and his wife is an ....
12 John and Jane work in a restaurant; he is a *waiter* and she is a ....
13 In fairy tales the handsome .... usually marries the beautiful *princess.*
14 We went to a wildlife park and saw a lot of *lions* and ....
15 In mythology, Mars is the *god* of war; Diana is the .... of hunting.
16 Katerina is the .... to her father's fortune.
17 Why does everyone expect the *hero* of the story to marry the ....?
18 A *widow* can often manage much better on her own than a ....
19 A .... won the award for most sales this month; a *salesman* came second.
20 When you look at fish, it's often difficult to distinguish between *male* and ....
21 Very few people know the names of the *kings* and .... of England.
22 I took a photo of the *bride* and .... at the wedding.
23 The Smiths have a *son* called Robert and a .... called Jill.
24 My *uncle* and .... are over here from Canada.
25 I enjoy being an uncle. I have two .... and three *nephews.*

2.7B Identifying masculine and feminine through pronouns: 'He/She is a student' [> LEG 2.41]

Study: ★★

1 The word forms *man* and *woman* tell us that the reference is to male and female [> 2.7A], but with most nouns that refer to people, we don't know whether the reference is to male or female until we hear the pronoun:
*My **neighbour** has just bought a new shed for **his** garden.*
*My **neighbour** is always telling us about **her** famous son.*

2 Other typical nouns like this are:
adult, artist, child, cook, cousin, darling, dear, doctor, foreigner, friend, guest, journalist, lawyer, musician, orphan, owner, parent, passenger, person, pupil, relation, relative, scientist, singer, speaker, spouse, stranger, student, teacher, tourist, visitor, writer.

Write: Supply the correct pronouns in these sentences.

1 When I saw the doctor, ...she........ told me to go back and see her again next week.
2 Jennifer is a fine musician. .... plays in the Philharmonic.
3 My lawyer told me .... would ring me when he had the information I wanted.
4 Your visitor left .... glasses behind when he came here yesterday.
5 Professor Myers is a brilliant scientist. ....should be given the Nobel Prize for her work.
6 Mrs Carter, our English teacher, really knows .... grammar!
7 The artist, **Rembrandt**, painted several pictures of .... wife.
8 Anton Schmidt works as a cook at a large hotel. .... is famous for his cooking.
9 How would you describe her? – Well, ... is a student of about 18.
10 How do you know this passport belongs to a woman? – The owner has ....photo in it.
11 My daughter works as a journalist and .... has been very successful.
12 You don't know .... so you should begin your letter 'Dear Madam'. .

2.7C Context

Write: Put in *actors, Miss, mother, Prince, princess, Sisters* and the missing words.

CINDERELLA AND THE UGLY SISTERS

Our local school recently put on *Cinderella* as a play and invited the Mayor of the town to see it. After the performance, the distinguished guest went backstage. [1].......She........ congratulated the young [2].......................and actresses. [3]....................... spoke to Henry who played the part of .... Charming and Liz, who played the part of Cinderella. The Mayor asked Liz if [5]....................... would enjoy being a [6]....................... when she married Prince Charming and she blushed and giggled. The Mayor congratulated the Fairy God-[7]......................., and, of course, the teacher who produced the play, Miss Jones. [8]....................... Jones was very pleased because [9]....................... had worked hard to put on the play with a company of eleven-year-olds. The Mayor then approached us and said, 'Excellent ... excellent ... and ...-er ... you must be the Ugly [10].......................!' 'No, ma'am!' we cried. 'We're the children's mothers!'

You must be the Ugly Sisters!

2.8 The genitive

2.8A How to show possession with 's, s' and the apostrophe (') on its own

[> LEG 2.42-46]

Study: ★★

1 We show possession in English with the **genitive** form of a noun. This means we normally use 'sand *s'* for people and some living creatures. We put the possessive before the noun it refers to: *Frank's car.* (Not *'the car of Frank/the car of Frank's*)*

2 The simplest rule to remember is: **Add 's to any personal noun unless it is in the form of a plural ending in *-s*, – in which case, just add an apostrophe (').** This means:

– add *'s* to singular nouns and names not ending in *-s*: *a boy's tie, Tom's hat.*
– add *'s* to singular nouns ending in *-s*: *an actress's career, a waitress's job.*
– add *'s* to irregular plural nouns: *children's games, the men's club, sheep's wool.*
– add an apostrophe (') after the *-s* of regular plurals: *the girls' uniforms.*
– add *'s* to names ending in *-s*: *Charles's address, Doris's party, St James's Park.*
Famous names ending in *s* just add ('): *Yeats' poetry.* This is pronounced /s/ or /ɪz/.

Write: Rewrite these sentences using *'s, s'*, or just an apostrophe (').

1 This bicycle is for a child. This is a child's bicycle.
2 This pen belongs to the teacher.
3 He described the career of the actress.
4 That's a job for a stewardess.
5 These toys belong to the children.
6 This is a club for women.
7 It's a school for girls.
8 This is the lounge for residents.
9 This umbrella belongs to James.
10 That hat belongs to Doris.

2.88 Apostrophe s ('s/s'), compound noun, or 'of'? [> LEG 2.47-48, 2.50]

Study: ★★

1 When we want to show possession with things, we can use *of: the leg of the table.* However, we often prefer to use a compound noun instead of *of: the table-leg* [> 2.2B].

2 We must use *of* when we can't form a compound noun:
the book of the film (Not **the film's book**); *the top of the box* (Not **the box's top**)
You can only learn these from experience. If you are in doubt, use *of.*

Write: *Only where possible,* use an apostrophe to show possession in these sentences.

1 That's *the voice of a man.* That's a man's voice.
2 I can't see *the bottom of the box.*
3 That's *the decision of the committee.*
4 It's *the fault of no one.*
5 This is a copy of *the poetry of Keats.*
6 That's *the leg of the table.*
7 Where's *the key of the car?*
8 That's *the bell of the village church* that you can hear.
9 These are *the stables of the horses.*

2.8C The use of 's and s' with non-living things: 'an hour's journey'

[> LEG 2.49-50]

Study: ★★

We use 's and s' with some non-living things:
– fixed phrases: the earth's surface, journey's end, the ship's company
– time phrases (singular): *an hour's journey, a day's work, a month's salary*
– time phrases (plural): *two hours' journey, two days' work, two months' salary*

Write: Use *'s* or *s'* only where possible with these.

1 a delay of an hour ....an hour's delay........
2 a journey of two days ....
3 the shade of the tree ....
4 the book of the film ....
5 the inside of the box ....
6 the price of success ....
7 work of seven years ....
8 the surface of the earth ....
9 at the door of death ....
10 an absence of a year ....

2.8D Omission of the noun after 's [> LEG 2.51]

Study: ★★

We generally omit the noun after *'s* when referring to work-places, shops, and houses:
the doctor's, rather than *the doctor's surgery*, *my mother's* rather than *my mother's house*.

Write: What could we use in place of the words in brackets?

1 Your mother has gone to (the shop owned by the hairdresser)....the hairdresser's..................
2 I'll meet you at (the shop owned by the chemist)..
3 I'm going to spend the night at (the house owned by my aunt) ....
4 We were married in (the church dedicated to St Andrew) ....
5 I bought this at (the department store owned by Marks and Spencer) ....

2.8E Context

Write: Put in compounds and 's and s' constructions in this story.

Mind your skin!

MIND YOUR SKIN!

We have become very conscious of conservation these days. A lot of people won't buy any goods made from (skins of animals) ^{1}....animal skins.......... In many parts of the world, it is now unthinkable for a person to dress in (a coat made of the skin of a leopard) .... We realize that (the wildlife of the earth) ^{3}... needs protection. This affects such things as (clothing worn by children) ^{4}.. and (coats worn by ladies) ^{5}.. If (a fur coat worn by an actress) ^{6}.. attracts admiration these days, it is probably created from man-made materials. Of course, we still farm animals for their skins, but the notice I saw in a shop recently must have been (the revenge of the crocodiles) ^{7}.. It was selling crocodile-skin bags and offering the following service: ('skins of customers) ^{8}.. made up?

3 Articles

3.1 The indefinite article: 'a/an' (1)

3.1A General statements with 'alan' and zero (∅) [> LEG 3.7, 3.9.1-2, 3.19.1]

Study: ★★

1 *A* and *an* have exactly the same meaning. We use *a* in front of consonant sounds *(a man, a year)* and *an* in front of vowel sounds *(an umbrella, an eye, an hour)*.

2 We can talk about people or things 'in general' with *a/an* or with the plural [> 3.5A].
Instead of: ***Cats** are domestic animals.* (= 'cats in general')
We can say: ***A cat** is a domestic animal.* (= 'cats in general')

Write: Make the singular sentences plural and the plural sentences singular.

1 A small computer isn't expensive. Small computers aren't expensive.
2 A quartz watch doesn't last for ever.
3 I like plays with messages.
4 I admire politicians who are sincere.
5 A big city is always fascinating.
6 Even an efficient system can break down.
7 A road map is always out of date.
8 A rule is meant to be broken.
9 Restaurants shouldn't charge too much.
10 How much do car radios cost?
11 A bus leaves here every hour.
12 How long does a letter take to get here?

3.1B The 'plural form' of 'alan' [> LEG 3.5-6, 3.9.1-2]

Study: ★★

1 The plural of *a/an* is *zero* (∅) when we refer to 'things in general':
A cat** is **a domestic animal. → (∅) ***Cats** are* (∅) ***domestic animals.***

2 The plural of *a/an* is *some* or *any* when we refer to 'quantity' **[but compare > 5.3A]**:
*There's **a sandwich** on the plate.* → *There are **some sandwiches** on the plate.* **[> 5.3B]**
We use numbers in place of *a/an* and *some/any* only when we are counting:
*There's only **one sandwich** left.*+ *There are only **four sandwiches** left.* **[> 3.2B]**

Write: Turn these sentences into the plural, making all necessary changes.

1 She's an architect. They're architects.
2 Do you want a potato?
3 A doctor needs years of training.
4 How well can a cat see in the dark?
5 Have you got a cat at home?
6 Why should a compact disc be so dear?
7 I borrowed a compact disc.
8 Can you lend me a compact disc?
9 Why is a car so expensive?
10 There isn't a car in the street.

3.1C Describing people and things with 'a/an' + noun: 'He's a doctor'

[> **LEG** 3.9.3-4, App 49]

Study: ★★

1 We use some words as adjectives or nouns when we want to describe people.
When we use them as countable nouns, we always put *a/an* in front of them [> 2.3A], e.g.
– nationality: She's ***American.*** (adjective) or: She's ***an American.*** (noun) [> 3.3C]
– religion: She's ***Anglican.*** (adjective) or: She's ***an Anglican.*** (noun)
– politics: He's ***Conservative.*** (adjective) or: He's ***a Conservative.*** (noun)

2 We use some words only as countable nouns (people and things) and we always put *a/an* in front of them: He's ***a doctor.*** (Not 'He's doctor.9 ***It's a tree.*** (Not *'It's* tree.9
We can also use adjective + noun: She's ***a good girl.*** (Not 'She's good girl.9

3 We can use *a/an* in front of proper nouns (names spelt with a capital letter) for:
– members of a family: He's ***a Forsyte.*** (= a member of the Forsyte family)
– literature and art: It's ***a Dickens novel.*** It's ***a Brecht play.*** Sometimes we can use the name on its own. We can say It's ***a Rembrandt painting*** or It's ***a Rembrandt.***

Write: Write sentences using He's ..., She's ..., It's ... + noun for each of the following.

1 What does he do? He drives a taxi. ....He's a taxi-driver.....
2 What's her religion? She's Catholic. ....
3 Where does he come from? He comes from England. ....
4 What's that? (ant) ....
5 What's that? (kind of insect) ....
6 What political party does she belong to? She's socialist. ....
7 What does she do? She teaches children. ....
8 What does she do? (architect) ....
9 What is it? (sonnet by *Shakespeare*) ....
10 What is it? (painting by *Picasso*) ....

3.1D Context

Write: Put in a, some, any or '-'. Alternatives are possible.

AT YOUR SERVICE, SIR!
........–......... robots are common in industry and perhaps they will soon be common in the home. .... robot working in the home must be able to behave like ^{3}.................. human. You could ask it to make breakfast for you. 'I'd like ^{4}.................. pot of coffee, please and ^{5}.................. boiled eggs.' 'How many, sir?' 'Two please.' You wouldn't have to worry about bringing friends home to dinner. 'I've brought ^{6}.................. friends for dinner,' you would say, 'please prepare ^{7}.................. meal for six.' Your robot would be ^{8}.................. cook, ^{9}.................. servant and ^{10}.................. cleaner, and perhaps it could even do the shopping. 'We haven't got ^{11}.................. tomatoes,' you would say. 'Be ^{12}.................. good robot and get some from the supermarket.' ^{13}.................. robots would never need to sleep, and would never complain. But I wouldn't want them wandering round the house at night!

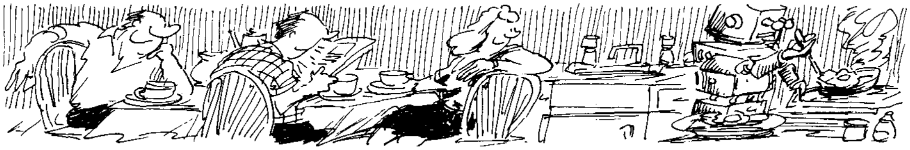

Ask it to make breakfast for you.

3.2 The indefinite article: 'a/an' (2)

3.2A The use of 'a/an' when something is mentioned for the first time

[> LEG 3.8, 3.10.2]

Study: ★

We use *a/an* to introduce a person or thing for the first time. This shows that the listener or reader doesn't know what we are referring to. After this first reference, we use *the.*

I watched ***a car*** *as it came up our road.* ***The car*** *stopped outside our house and* ***a man*** *got out.* ***The man*** *was carrying* ***a case*** *in his hand. With* ***the case*** *in his hand,* ***the man*** *looked like* ***a salesman.***

Write: Supply *a/an* or *the* in the following text.

During our journey we came to ¹.....a...... bridge. As we were crossing ².............. bridge, we met .... old man and spoke to him. ⁴.............. man refused to answer us at first. He could tell at a glance that we had escaped from ⁵.............. prisoner-of-war camp and he was afraid of getting into trouble. We weren't ⁶.............. first prisoners of war to have escaped from ⁷.............. camp. As soon as Jim produced ⁸.............. revolver, ⁹.............. man proved very willing to answer our questions. He told us exactly where we were and directed us to ¹⁰.............. farm where we might find food.

3.2B The difference between 'a/an' and 'one' [> LEG 3.10.1, 3.11]

Study: ★★

1 We do not use *a/an* + noun and *one* + noun in the same way.
We use *a/an* to mean 'any one': *I'd like* ***a coffee,*** *please.*
We use *one* when we are counting: *It was* ***one coffee*** *I ordered and* ***not two.***

2 We use *one* with *day, morning, evening* when we are telling a story:
One day, *when I was working as a salesman, I received a strange telephone call.*
Compare: *I had to stay in bed for a* ***day.*** (= any day, it doesn't matter which)
I had to stay in bed for ***one day.*** (= one day and not two or more)

3 We use *a/an* or *one* with:
a Whole numbers: *a/one hundred, thousand.*
b Fractions: *done quarter, half.*
c Money: *a/one pound, dollar.*
d Weights, measures: *done kilo, foot.*

Write: Supply *a/an* or *one* in these sentences. Note where you can use either *a/an* or *one.*

1 I need ....a.......... picture-hook to hang this picture.
2 Did you say you wanted .... picture-hook or two?
3 .... nail won't be enough for this job. I need several.
4 You should use .... hammer to drive in those nails.
5 How many orange juices did you say? – Just .... orange juice, please.
6 You should get out into the fresh air on .... day like this!
7 .... day, many years later, I learnt the truth.
8 I was out walking late .... evening when I saw .... strange object in the sky.
9 He says he's going to be .... millionaire .... day.
10 There were over .... hundred people at the party.
11 Have you ever seen .... silent movie?
12 I've only ever seen .... silent movie.

3.2C 'Alan' for price, distance and frequency: '80p a kilo' [> LEG 3.12]

Study: ★★

price/weight: *80p a kilo*
distance/speed: *40 km an hour*
distance/fuel: *30 miles a* (or *to the*) *gallon*
frequency/time: *twice a day*

Write: Write complete answers to these questions.

1 How much are these apples? 90p/kilo .....They're 90p a kilo......
2 How often do you take these pills? once/day ....
3 What speed are we doing? 100 km/hour ....
4 How many miles a gallon do you do? 45 miles/gallon ....
5 How often is the rubbish collected? twicelweek ....
6 What does olive oil cost? £3/litre. ....

3.2D 'Alan' or zero with reference to illnesses: 'a cold' [> LEG 3.15]

Study: ★★

1 We always use *a/an* with these illnesses: *a cold, a headache, a sore throat.*

2 We can use or omit *a/an* with these:
catch (a) cold, have (a/an) backache/earache/stomach-ache/toothache.

3 We use no article at all with these plurals: *measles, mumps, shingles.*

4 We use no article with these: *(high) blood pressure, flu, gout, hepatitis.*

Write: Supply *a/an* where necessary. Note where you can use *a/an* or zero (-).

1 I'm going to bed, I've got ...a... headache.
2 I was awake all night with .... toothache.
3 I think Gillian's got .... flu.
4 The children are in bed with .... mumps.
5 Mind you don't catch .... cold.
6 .... measles can be very unpleasant.
7 Don't come near me. I've got .... sore throat.
8 I think I've got .... cold!
9 I've had .... terrible backache.
10 I often suffer from .... backache.

3.2E Context

Write: Put in *a, the,* or *one* only where necessary.

I trust you're keeping well!

HERE'S HEALTH!
'I think that's all, Mrs Grant,' Dr Grey said as she handed her ^{1}.......a..... list of prescriptions. ^{2}............... list was very long and Mrs Grant almost fainted as she tried to read it. She had ^{3}............... headache and ^{4}............... cold and felt as if she was getting ^{5}............... flu. On top of this, one of her children was in bed with ^{6}............... mumps. 'I've prescribed some pills for ^{7}............... high blood pressure as well,' Dr Grey said. 'How many do I have to take – .... pill ^{9}............... day?' 'No. One pill with each meal. Three pills ^{10}............... day.' Mrs Grant thanked ^{11}............... doctor and walked out of her surgery with some difficulty. She staggered into the local chemist's and handed ^{12}............... long prescription list to Mr Burt, ^{13}............... chemist. Mr Burt greeted her cheerfully. 'Good morning, Mrs Grant,' he said, glancing at ^{14}............... list. 'What a list! I trust you're keeping well!'

3.3 The definite article: 'the' (1)

3.3A Form and basic uses of 'the' [> LEG 3.16, 3.18]

Study: ★

1 *The* never varies in form whether it refers to people or things, singular or plural:

a *That's* ***the man*** *we met last night.*	d *They're* ***the men*** *we met last night.*
b *That's* ***the woman*** *we met last night.*	e *They're* ***the women*** *we met last night.*
c *That's* ***the shirt*** *I bought yesterday.*	f *They're* ***the shirts*** *I bought yesterday.*

2 We use *the* to refer to something that is known. [> 3.2A]

3 *The* can combine with singular countable nouns *(the book),* plural countable nouns *(the books),* and uncountable nouns, which are always singular (*the furniture*).

Write: Supply *a* or *the* in the following text.

We wanted to reach ......a...... small village and knew we must be near. Then we saw .... woman just ahead and some children playing, When we stopped to ask the way, ...woman said she was .... stranger herself. We called out to .... children, but they ignored us. Just then two men came along and we asked them the way. .... men didn't know, but at least they were helpful. 'There's 7............. signpost a mile along this road,' one of them said. We drove to 8............. signpost eagerly. This is what it said: NORTH POLE 6,000 MILES.

3.3B 'Alan', 'the' and zero in front of abbreviations: 'the BBC'

[> LEG 3.7, 3.17, 3.241

Study: ★★

1 We make abbreviations with the first letters of the most important words. We then treat these abbreviations like ordinary nouns and use them with *a/an*, *the* or zero [> 3.1C]:
I've just bought ***an*** *LP.* (= a Long Playing record).
We use *an* + vowel sound *(an* LP) and *a* + consonant sound *(a VW=* a Volkswagen).

2 We use *a/an* and full stops with titles: *She's* ***an*** *M.A.* (= Master of Arts)

3 We use *the* in front of institutions when we can't say them as single words. We don't use full stops: *I listen to the news on* ***the*** **BBC.** (= the British Broadcasting Corporation)
We are members of **UNESCO.** /juːˈneskəʊ/
(= the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization)

4 We use no article (zero) with chemical symbols: CO_2 *stands for Carbon Dioxide.*

5 The first letters of some words are often used as normal words: e.g.
Planes use ***radar.*** (= RAdio Detection And Ranging)

Write: Supply *a/an, the* or '-'.

1 Jim got ....a........... B.Sc. (= Bachelor of Science) from Durham University in 1988.
2 Celia is sure she's seen .... UFO (= Unidentified Flying Object).
3 .... EC (= European Community) does a lot of trade with the rest of the world.
4 I don't know how much .... MP (= Member of Parliament) earns.
5 Which countries belong to .... NATO /neɪtəʊ/ ? (= North Atlantic Treaty Organization)
6 .... H_2O is the chemical formula for water.
7 I've used my computer to learn .... BASIC (= Beginners' All-purpose Instruction Code).
8 .... NASA (= National Aeronautics and Space Administration) had a setback in 1986.

3.3C 'The' + nationality noun: 'the Chinese' [> LEG 3.19.2, App 49]

Study: ★★

We use *the* in front of nationality nouns to refer to 'all the people in general'.
We can divide nationality nouns into four groups:

1 ***the*** + ***-ese*** or ***-ss***: ***the*** *Chinese, the Japanese, the Portuguese, the Sudanese, the Swiss.*

2 ***the*** + plural ending in ***-s***:
-ian: *the Austrians, the Belgians, the Brazilians, the Egyptians, the Russians.*
-an: *the Americans, the Koreans, the Mexicans, the Venezuelans, the Zimbabweans.*
other ***-s*** endings: *the Arabs, the Germans, the Greeks, the Poles, the Scots, the Turks.*

3 Two forms: *the Danes/the Danish, the Spaniards/the Spanish, the Swedes/the Swedish.*

4 ***the*** + ***-ch*** or ***-sh***: *the British, the Dutch, the English, the French, the Irish, the Welsh.*

Write: Rewrite these sentences using nationality nouns to refer to 'the people in general'.

1 *The people from Portugal* are very different from *the people from Spain.*
....The Portuguese are very different from the Spaniards...

2 *The people from America* and *the people from Russia* understand each other better.
....

3 *The people from Brazil* speak Portuguese, but *the people from Mexico* speak Spanish.
....

4 *The people from Germany* and *the people from Japan* work very hard.
....

5 *The people from Greece* buy ships from *the people from Korea.*
....

6 *The people from Britain* and *the people from Holland* do a lot of foreign trade.
....

3.3D Context

Write: Put in *a* or *the.*

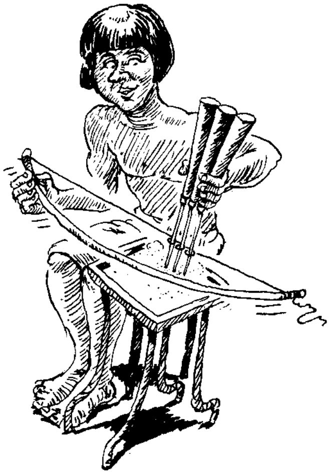

An ancient Egyptian drill

ANCIENT SECRETS

Mr Denys Stocks, ^{1}.....a...... retired policeman, has just been given ^{2}.............. B.Sc. for twelve years' research into ancient Egyptian industrial methods. Egyptologists have often wondered how ^{3}.............. Egyptians were able to cut such hard stone and how they produced such fine jewellery. Mr Stocks has shown that ^{4}.............. Egyptians used saws and drills. ^{5}.............. saws and drills were made of copper, which is very soft. But ^{6}.............. Egyptian craftsmen turned them into very powerful tools. First ^{7}.............. craftsman made ^{8}.............. cut in ^{9}.............. stone with ^{10}.............. soft saw. Then ^{11}.............. craftsman poured sand into ^{12}.............. cut. ^{13}.............. hard sand got into ^{14}.............. teeth of ^{15}.............. saw and did ^{16}.............. cutting. In this way, ^{17}.............. worker could cut basalt, one of the hardest rocks. ^{18}.............. sand he used turned into ^{19}.............. very fine powder. ^{20}.............. powder was then used by jewellers to cut precious stones and to make delicate jewellery.

3.4 The definite article: 'the' (2)

3.4A 'The' for specifying [> LEG 3.20]

Study: ★★

1 When we use *the,* the listener or reader knows or can understand what we are referring to. We can make a reference 'specific' or 'definite' by means of:
- back reference: *We stopped at a small village.* ***The village*** *was very pretty.* [> 3.2A, 3.3A]
- ***the*** + noun + ***of: The life of Napoleon*** *was very stormy.*
- a clause (= part of a sentence): ***The Jones I'm referring to*** *is a colleague of mine.*
- context: The listener knows exactly what we are referring to from the context.
  That's why we say: *It's* ***the postman.*** (Not **a postman**)
  She's gone to ***the butcher's.*** (Not **a butcher's**) [> 2.8D]
  Running is good for ***the heart.*** (Not **a heart**)

2 We often say *the cinema, the theatre, the supermarket, the bank,* etc. even if we don't know exactly which: *He's gone to* ***the cinema/the theatre/the supermarket/the bank.***

3 We refer to *the country, the mountains, the seaside* even if we don't know exactly where: *We're spending the weekend in* ***the country****/in* ***the mountains****/at* ***the seaside.***

4 We use *the* to refer to 'one of a kind': *the earth, the sea, the sky, the sun, the moon, the solar system, the planets, the galaxy, the universe:* ***The earth*** *doesn't belong to us.*

Write: Supply *a/an, the* or '-'

1 We were looking for ......a........ place to spend .....the.... night. .... place we found turned out to be in .... charming village. .... village was called .... Lodsworth.
2 .... individual has every right to expect personal freedom. .... freedom of .... individual is something worth fighting for.
3 Yes, my name is .... Simpson, but I'm not .... Simpson you're looking for.
4 Who's at .... door? – It's .... postman.
5 When you go out, would you please go to .... supermarket and get some butter.
6 I've got .... appointment this afternoon. I've got to go to .... doctor's.
7 We went to .... theatre last night and saw *Flames.* It's .... wonderful play.
8 We prefer to spend our holidays in .... country, ... mountains or by .... sea.
9 We have seen what .... earth looks like from ....moon.
10 This is the front room. .... ceiling and .... walls need decorating, but .... floor is in good order. We'll probably cover it with .... carpet.
11 You're imagining .... things. All your fears are in .... mind.
12 Look at this wonderful small computer. .... top lifts up to form .... screen; .... front lifts off to form .... keyboard and .... whole thing only weighs 5 kilos.
13 .... history of .... world is .... history of .... war.
14 Is there .... moon round .... planet Venus?
15 What's .... John doing these days? – He's working as .... postman.
16 .... exercise is good for .... body.
17 Could you pass me .... salt, please?
18 They're building .... new supermarket in .... centre of our town.
19 Where's your mother at .... moment? – I think she's in .... kitchen.
20 If you were a cook, you'd have to work in .... kitchen all day long.

3.48 'The' to refer to things that are unique (not place names) [> 3.6C, LEG 3.22]

Study: ★★

1 We often use *the* to refer to 'things that are unique':
- **a** organizations: *the United Nations*
- **b** ships: *the Titanic*
- **c** documents: *the Constitution*
- **d** public bodies: *the police, the Government*
- **e** titles of books and films: *The Odyssey*
- f climate: *the weather*
- **g** historical events: *the French Revolution*
- **h** official titles: *the President*
- **i** political parties: *the Labour Party*
- **j** the press: *The Economist, The Times*
- **k** beliefs: *the gods*
- **l** the whole species: *the dinosaurs*

2 We treat other, similar, words as proper nouns [> 3.5A] and use no article (zero), e.g.
- **a** organizations: *Congress, Parliament*
- **b** titles of books and films: *Jaws*
- **c** beliefs: *God, Buddha*
- **d** official titles: *Queen Elizabeth*
- **e** the press: *Punch, Time magazine*
- **f** the whole species: *Man*

Write: Supply *the* or '-'.

1 I like to read newspapers like ....The.... *Times* and ....The.... *Washington Post.*
2 I read .... *Economist* every week and .... *Time* magazine.
3 Do you think .... *New Yorker* and .... *Punch* have much in common?
4 We can't be sure about the history of .... human race, but .... man developed earlier than we think, though we certainly weren't around at the time of .... dinosaurs.
5 I like watching old films. I recently watched .... *Graduate* and .... *Jaws* on video.
6 The Ancient Greeks believed in .... gods. The idea of .... God was not known to them.
7 I've read Homer's .... *Odyssey,* but I haven't read Joyce's .... *Ulysses.*
8 .... United Nations may be a talking shop, but so is .... Congress.
9 A lot of people object to attempts to bring up .... *Titanic.*
10 My oldest son joined .... Navy and now my youngest wants to join .... Army.
11 France celebrated the 200th anniversary of .... French Revolution in 1989.
12 In many countries, the head of state is called ....President.
13 Do you know who killed .... President Lincoln?
14 Because of 'the greenhouse effect' .... climate of the world is changing.

3.4C Context

Write: Put in *a/an* or *the.*

SUNRAYCER

I read recently in ¹...The.... *Times* that the big American company, General Motors, has developed .... vehicle that uses ³.............. power of ⁴.............. sun instead of petrol. ⁵.............. vehicle is called Sunraycer. Sunraycer has just taken part in ⁶.............. race against 25 solar-powered vehicles. ⁷.............. route of ⁸.............. race was from Darwin to Adelaide, ⁹.............. immense distance. Sunraycer covered ¹⁰.............. distance in 45 hours at ¹¹.............. average speed of 41 miles ¹².............. hour in temperatures as high as 48•‹C. It beat all other cars by two and ¹³.............. half days! Sunraycer ('ray of the sun' + 'racer') is certainly ¹⁴.............. car of ¹⁵..............future!

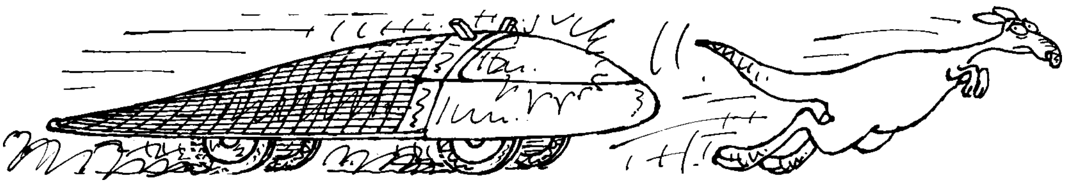

Sunraycer

3.5 The zero article (1)

3.5A Basic uses of the zero article (Ø): 'Life is short' [> LEG 3.24-26, 3.27.1, 3.27.3-5]

Study:
★★

We often use no article at all (zero) in English where some other languages use *the:*

1 In front of **plural countable nouns** used in general statements [> 3.1A], e.g. for:
– people: **Ø Women** need better pay. – places: **Ø *Museums*** *are closed on Mondays.*
– animals: **Ø *Cats*** *don't like cold weather.* – plants: **Ø *Trees*** *don't grow in the Antarctic.*
– food: **Ø *Beans*** *are good for you.* – products: **Ø *Watches*** *aren't expensive.*
(Not *The beans are good for you.* etc.) [compare > 5.3A]

2 In front of **uncountable nouns** (always singular) used in general statements, e.g. for:
– food: *I like* **Ø *butter.*** – substances: **Ø *Oil*** *is produced in Alaska.*
– colours: **Ø *Red*** *is my favourite colour.* – activities: **Ø *Swimming*** *is good for you.*
– abstract: **Ø *Life*** *is short.* – languages: **Ø *English*** *is a world language.*
(Not *The life is short.* etc.) [compare > 5.3A]

3 In front of most **proper nouns** (names spelt with a capital letter) [> 3.1C, 3.6C]:
Fritz Weber *lives in* ***Berlin.*** *This was made by* ***Jackson and Son.***

By comparison, we use *the* when the reference is specific, not in general statements:
1 In front of plural countable nouns: ***The beans*** *I like best are kidney beans.*
2 In front of uncountable nouns: *I used all* ***the butter*** *that was in the butter dish.'*
3 In front of proper nouns: ***The Fritz Weber*** *I know lives in Vienna.*

Write: Supply *the* or '-'.

1 A lot of people are giving up ......–...... meat.
2 .... meat we had for lunch last Sunday was very tough.
3 As someone said, ... life is just one damned thing after another.
4 I don't know much about .... life of .... Napoleon.
5 .... running is supposed to be good for you.
6 I ought to be fit with all .... running I do, but I don't feel fit.
7 Which is your favourite colour? – .... Red.
8 I think .... red one will suit you best. .... Red is more your colour.
9 We learnt .... English at school, but .... English we learnt was useless.
10 .... London is a safe city today, but .... London of the 18th century was pretty rough.
11 .... watches have become very cheap and very attractive.
12 Most of .... watches you see today work on .... quartz.
13 .... indoor plants require a lot of effort and attention.
14 .... Bach gives me a great deal of pleasure.
15 .... Bach recording you bought for my birthday is first class.
16 What has been the longest period of .... peace in .... history?
17 If you study .... History, you've got to read a lot.
18 .... fasting during .... Ramadan is more difficult in the summer months.
19 .... journeys to unknown places require a lot of preparation.
20 .... lives of .... poets and .... musicians have often been unbearably difficult.
21 I'm not interested in the price of .... silver or the price of .... gold.
22 .... time is .... money.
23 I can never regret .... time I've spent enjoying myself.
24 I often listen to .... music and I like .... jazz best.

3.5B The zero article with names and titles: 'Mr Pym' [> LEG 2.13, 3.27]

Study: ★★

1 We do not normally use articles in front of proper nouns (like *John, London,* etc.).

2 We use a surname or first name + surname after *Mr, Mrs, Miss* and *Ms* /məz/ : *Mr Pym, Mr John Pym.* We often write, but rarely say *Ms,* as in *Ms Joan Cartwright.*

3 We abbreviate *Doctor* to *Dr* in writing and use a surname after it: *I'm Dr Brown,* but we can use *Doctor* on its own as a form of address (written in full): *It's my liver, Doctor.*

4 In British English *Madam* and *Sir* can be used as forms of address, e.g. by shop assistants: *Yes, madam? Sir* is also a title in front of first name (+ surname): *Sir John (Falstaff),* (Not *'Sir Falstaff').* Americans use *Sir* on its own to speak to strangers.

5 We can say *Uncle* and *Auntie* (but not *'Cousin'* or *Sister')* to address our relations.

6 *Major* and *Professor* can be used with names or on their own.

7 *Nurse* and sometimes *Sister* can be used as forms of address for nurses.

Write: Mark with an X those sentences that are wrong or unacceptable and briefly say why.

1 Excuse me, Mr – can you tell me the way to the station, please? X
2 Good morning, Doctor. __
3 Don't ask me. Ask Mrs Elizabeth. __
4 Can I introduce you to Mrs Elizabeth Jackson? __
5 I have an appointment with Dr White. __
6 I've just received a letter from cousin Frank. __
7 Can I help you, Mrs? __
8 Can I help you, Madam? __
9 Sir Falstaff is a famous Shakespeare character. __
10 May I have a word with you please, Professor? __
11 I've addressed the letter to Professor John Williams. Is that right? __
12 Nurse, could I speak to you for a moment, please? __

3.5C Context

Write: Put in *a/an, the* or '-'

FOOD FIT FOR A KING!

^{1}......–...... seeds dating from **1325** B.C. have been found at ^{2}.............. Kew Gardens in ^{3}.............. London. 'It's ^{4}.............. exciting discovery,' ^{5}.............. Professor Arthur Bell, ^{6}.............. Director, said yesterday. ^{7}.............. seeds were found in **30** cardboard boxes by ^{8}..............French student, ^{9}.............. Christian Tutundjian de Vartavan. ^{10}.............. seeds come from ^{11}.............. tomb of ^{12}..............King Tutankhamun. Inside ^{13}.............. tomb were *shawabtis,* that is, model human beings who would serve ^{14}.............. King after ^{15}.............. death. Inside ^{16}.............. Tutankhamun's tomb, there was ^{17}.............. wheat for making ^{18}.............. bread, ^{19}.............. barley, perhaps for brewing ^{20}.............. beer, and spices like ^{21}.............. coriander, ^{22}.............. cumin and ^{23}.............. sesame, as well as ^{24}.............. grapes and ^{25}.............. tropical fruits. ^{26}.............. food had to be suitable for ^{27}.............. King's last journey, but it was very tasty, too!

Inside Tutankhamun's tomb

3.6 The zero article (2)

3.6A Zero article for parts of the day ('at dawn') and for meals ('for lunch')

[> LEG 3.28.1-2]

Study: ★★

1 **Parts of the day and night**: We use no article when we refer to parts of the day and night:
at dawn/daybreak, at sunrise/sunset/noon/night, by day/night, at/by/before/after/till 4 o'clock: *We left* ***at dawn.***
But compare: *I've never seen* ***a dawn*** *like it! I got up early to admire* ***the dawn.***

2 **Meals:** We use no article with words like: *breakfast, lunch, tea, dinner, supper:*
Dinner *is served. He's* ***at lunch.*** *Let's* ***have breakfast.***
But compare: ***The breakfast*** *I ordered still hasn't arrived.* (a specific reference)
That was ***a very nice dinner.*** (simple description [> 3.1C])

Write: Supply *a/an, the* or '-'.

1 We're setting off at .....—...... sunrise.
2 We must be home before .... midnight.
3 I'm often wide awake at .... night.
4 We reached the village before .... sunset.
5 .... lunch I ordered was burnt.
6 We're invited to the Smiths for .... lunch.
7 Let's have .... breakfast on the terrace.
8 Do you always have .... tea at four?
9 We've come here to see .... sunset.
10 I had .... nice lunch at the Ritz.

3.6B Zero article for e.g. 'She's at school' and 'He's in hospital'

[> LEG 3.28.3, Apps 21-23]

Study: ★★

1 We use no article in front of nouns like *school* and *hospital* in phrases like *to school, at school, in hospital* when we are referring to their normal purpose:
Jane's gone ***to school.*** *Jane's* ***at school.*** (to learn); *John's* ***in hospital.*** (he's ill)
(Not *Jane's gone to the school.* *Jane's at the school.* *John's in the hospital.*)
Other nouns like this are: *bed, church, class, college, prison, sea, town, university, work.*
For the use of *to, at* and *in* with these nouns [> 8.2A]. For *home* [> 8.2A, 10.2C].

2 We use *the* or *a/an* with these nouns when we are not referring to their 'purpose':
Jane's gone ***to the school*** *for a meeting. There's a meeting* ***at the school.***
Norton High is ***a very good school.*** *I'm going to make* ***the bed.***

3 Nouns which are not part of this special group behave in the usual way:
My wife's at ***the office.*** (perhaps to work); *They are* ***at the mosque.*** (perhaps to pray)
John's ***in the kitchen.*** (perhaps to prepare a meal) [> 3.4A]
My wife's firm has ***an office*** *in Edinburgh.* (Not *My wife's firm has office* [> 3.1C])

Write: Supply *a/an, the* or '-'.

1 I'm really tired and I'm going to ....—..... bed.
2 Your shoes are under .... bed.
3 Tim's been in .... bed for hours.
4 We've bought .... lovely new bed.
5 We took some photos outside .... church.
6 We always go to .... church on Sunday.
7 Have you ever worked in .... factory?
8 Susan's in .... class at the moment.
9 My father went to .... sea when he was 14.
10 When do you hope to go to .... university?
11 Martha's been taken to .... hospital.
12 How long will she be in .... hospital?
13 There's a strike at .... hospital.
14 We've got .... fine new hospital.
15 When do you get home from .... office?
16 John's at .... work at the moment.

3.6C Zero article or 'the' with place names [> LEG 3.31]

Study: ★★

1 **General rule:** We use no article with proper nouns [> 3.5A], so this includes place names, but there is some variation. We use *the* with the words *bay, canal, channel, gulf, kingdom, ocean, republic, river, sea, strait(s), union, united: the United States of America.*

2 **Zero** for: countries *(Turkey),* states *(Ohio),* cities *(Paris),* streets *(Oxford Street),* parks *(Hyde Park),* addresses *(24 North Street),* buildings *(Westminster Abbey),* geographical areas *(Africa),* historical references *(Ancient Rome),* mountains *(Everest),* islands *(Malta).*

3 ***The*** for: some countries *(the USA, the USSR),* some geographical areas *(the Arctic, the Balkans),* some historical references *(the Dark Ages),* oceans and rivers *(the Pacific, the (River) Nile),* mountain ranges *(the Alps, the Himalayas),* deserts *(the Sahara, the Gobi).*

4 **Zero** or ***the:*** theatres *(Her Majesty's/The Globe),* hotels *(Brown's/the Hilton),* restaurants *(Leoni's/the Café Royal),* hospitals *(Guy's/the London Hospital).*

Write: Supply *the* or '-'.

1 I've always understood ..the... Dark Ages to refer specifically to ..–.... Medieval Europe.
2 Ferguson has travelled everywhere from .... Central Asia to .... Arctic.
3 I've been to .... Brazil and .... Argentina, but I've never been to .... USA.
4 I'd love to do a tour of European capitals and visit .... London, ... Paris, and .... Vienna.
5 What's your address? – I live in .... Montague Road, number 27.
6 I could never afford to stay at hotels like .... Brown's or .... Hilton.
7 Karl was born in .... Bavaria, but he now lives in .... Ohio.
8 You can't visit .... London without seeing .... Buckingham Palace.
9 I've been climbing in .... Alps, but I've never managed to get up .... Mont Blanc.
10 A lot of people have tried to cross .... Sahara without being properly prepared.
11 I'd love to travel down .... Nile as far as .... Luxor.
12 There's a splendid view of .... Lake Geneva from this hotel.
13 We had an early dinner at .... Leoni's and then went to a play at .... Globe Theatre.
14 Go down .... Oxford Street till you come to .... Oxford Circus, then turn right.
15 Do you know the song about .... London Bridge?

3.6D Context

Write: Put in *a/an, the* or '-'

HIGH FLYER

I travel all over ¹...the..... world on business and my neighbour thinks my life is one long holiday. You know what ².............. business travel is like: up at ³.............. dawn to catch ⁴.............. plane; ⁵.............. breakfast in ⁶.............. London, ⁷.............. lunch in ⁸.............. New York, ⁹.............. luggage [> 2.4B] in ¹⁰.............. Bermuda. When you're in ¹¹.............. sky, you see only snow in ¹².............. Arctic or ¹³.............. Greenland. You have glimpses of ¹⁴.............. Andes or ¹⁵.............. Pacific. You're always exhausted. Your wife or husband complains you're never there to take ¹⁶.............. children to ¹⁷.............. school or put them to ¹⁸.............. bed. When you get home, your neighbour says, 'Another nice holiday, eh?' Give me Home Sweet Home any day!

Home Sweet home!

Home Sweet Home!

4 Pronouns

4.1 Personal pronouns

4.1A Subject and object pronouns [> LEG 4.1-6]

Study:
★

1 We use pronouns in place of nouns. They may be subject (*she*) or object ***(her).***

2 We call ***I, you,*** etc. personal pronouns because they refer to 'grammatical persons':
1st person: ***I, we*** 2nd person: ***you*** 3rd person: ***he, she, it, one, they***

3 In English, we must express the subject of a sentence, so we use a pronoun or a noun:
John (or **He)** ***is here.*** Tim and Pam (or They) ***have arrived.*** (Not ****is here* *have arrived**** etc.)

4 We do not have singular and plural forms of ***you.*** We can say ***You're right*** to someone we don't know at all or to someone we know very well, to a child or to an adult.

5 We use ***it*** to say who someone is: ***Who's that? – It's our new neighbour, Mr Groves.***
We use *he/she/they* to give information about someone:
Who's Mr Groves? – He's our new neighbour.

6 We also use *it* when we don't know the sex of a baby or child: ***Is it a boy or a girl?***

Write: Supply pronouns and underline the words they replace.

1 Your parcel has arrived. ....It........... was delivered this morning.
2 Jane and I have already eaten. .... had a meal before we left home.
3 Who's that? – ....'s my mother. Would you like to meet her?
4 Who's Jane Wilson? – ....'s the woman who's just started working for our company.
5 So you've had a baby! Is .... a boy or a girl?
6 Whose cat is that? ....'s always in our garden.
7 When John comes in, please tell .... I phoned.
8 If you see Catherine, please give .... my regards.

4.1B Subject or object pronoun? [> LEG 4.7, 6.27.1]

Study:
★★

1 We often use object pronouns after ***be: Who is it? – It's me/him/her/us/them.***

2 We do not use ***I, she,*** etc. on their own in answer to questions with ***Who?.*** In everyday speech, we use object pronouns: ***Who told him? – Me/Not me.*** Or we say: ***I did/I didn't.***

3 We use object pronouns after ***as*** and ***than: He's taller than me/as tall as me.***
or we use subject + verb: ***He's taller than I am/as tall as I am.*** [> 1.10D]

Write: Supply suitable pronouns in the following. Alternatives are possible.

1 Who's that? – It's ..me/him/her/us/them.... !
2 Who wants to know what we're having for dinner tonight? – .... !
3 Who wants to help me in the garden? – Not .... !
4 You can invite him to your place. – .... ! You must be joking!
5 It was .... who told you, not my brother.
6 She's taller than ...., but not as strong as .... am.
7 He's more intelligent than .... am, but not as good at sports as ....

4.1C Gender in relation to animals, things and countries [> LEG 4.8]

Study:
★★

1 We use *it* to refer to animals, as if they were things [> 1.6, 2.7A]. We only use *he, she* and *who* when there is a reason for doing so, for example, when we refer to a pet:
*Rover's a good dog. **He**'s my best friend. Bessie's a fine cow. **She** gives a lot of milk.*
Or in folk stories: *'It's late,' the hare said as **he** looked at **his** watch.*

2 We use *he* or *she* to refer to 'lower animals' when, for example, we regard their activities with interest: *Look at that frog! Look at the way **he** jumps!*

3 We sometimes refer to ships, cars, motorbikes and other machines as *she,* when the reference is 'affectionate': *My old car's not fast, but **she** does 50 miles to the gallon.*

4 Some writers refer to a country as *she* when they're thinking of it 'as a person':
*In 1941, America assumed **her** role as a world power.*

Write: Supply suitable pronouns in the following. Alternatives are possible.

1 What do you call your dog? – ......She......'s called Flossie.
2 There's a dog in our neighbourhood that barks all night. ....'s getting on my nerves.
3 They're launching a new ship in Portsmouth and I've been invited to see .... launched.
4 The *Titanic* may be at the bottom of the sea, but ....'s never forgotten.
5 I run a car in London, but I really don't need ....
6 This old car of mine may be falling to pieces, but ....'s all I've got.
7 Did you see that frog? .... jumped right in front of us!
8 I saw a frog in our garden. – Where did you see ....?
9 You can't see America in a week, you know. ....'s a big country!
10 In the 19th century America welcomed the European poor. .... opened her arms to them.
11 '.....................'s a cunning fox,' the monkey said to the hen. 'Be careful!'
12 They've just found an old wreck off the coast of Florida. ....'s probably Spanish.

4.1D Context

Write: Put in the missing pronouns (including *who).*

TOO MUCH TO BEAR!

If you're on holiday in the Western Islands of Scotland and ^{1}....you.... see a bear, avoid ^{2}...............! It might turn out to be Hercules, the famous star ^{3}............... has appeared in TV ads, films and cabaret. Hercules disappeared when his owner, Andy Robbins, took ^{4}............... for a swim. Police and troops have joined in the search, but ^{5}............... haven't had any success. After all, Hercules is unlikely to appear suddenly, shouting, 'It's ^{6}...............! Here ^{7}............... am!' The search party are carrying yoghurt and bananas to offer the bear because that's what ^{8}............... likes best. '^{9}............... isn't dangerous, but ^{10}...............'s very hungry,' a searcher said. So if you see a ten-foot bear in the Western Islands, make sure ^{11}............... are carrying some bananas. ^{12}............... may be just what a hungry bear is waiting for and if ^{13}............... don't find ^{14}..............., you can always eat ^{15}...............yourself!

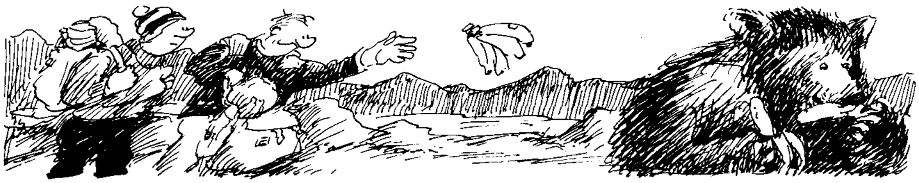

If you see a ten-foot bear ...

4.2 'One'

4.2A 'One' and 'you' [> LEG 4.9]

Study: ★★

We use *one*, as a pronoun meaning ‘everyone/anyone’, to refer to ‘people in general’ only when we want to be formal. In everyday speech, we use *you* in an informal way to mean ‘everyone/anyone’. Compare:

A: *Is it easy to go camping in this country?*

B: *Yes, but one isn't allowed to camp where one likes. One can only use camp-sites.*

or: *Yes, but you aren't allowed to camp where you like. You can only use camp-sites.*

Don't use *one, one's* (= your) and *oneself* (= yourself) unless you want to sound formal.

Write: Rewrite this paragraph so that it sounds 'informal'. Use *you.*

The moment one gets into the mountains, one is on one's own. One has to rely on oneself for everything. This means one has to carry all one's own food, though, of course, one can get pure drinking water from mountain streams. One won't see any local people for days at a time, so one can't get help if one's lost. One has to do one's best to find sheltered places to spend the night.

The moment you get into the mountains ....

....

....

....

....

4.28 'One' and 'ones' in place of countable nouns: 'Use this clean one'

[> LEG 4.101

Study: ★★

1 We can't use an adjective on its own in place of a singular countable noun. We must use a noun after an adjective or we must use *one* to avoid repeating the noun [> 6.3A]:
Don't use that cloth. Use this clean one. (Not *'Use this clean.*')

2 We use *ones* to avoid repeating a plural countable noun:
I don't want to wear my old shoes. I want to wear my new ones. (Not *'wear my new'*)

3 We can use *one* and *ones* for people as well as things:
Do you know John ***Smith/Jane*** *Smith? – Is* ***he/she*** *the one who phoned last night?*
Do you know the Smiths? – Are they the ones who used to live in this house?

4 We do not use *one* in place of an uncountable noun. We repeat the noun or use no noun at all:
Don’t use that ***milk****. Use this* ***fresh milk****.* Or: *Use this* ***fresh****.* (Not **this fresh one**)

Write: Supply *one* or *ones* where necessary.

1 Have you met our new secretary? – Is she the .....one............................ who joined us last week?
2 You know the man I mean, the .... who lent you •’50.
3 Which actresses did you meet? – The .... who appeared in Act 1.
4 Here are your stamps. These are the .... you paid for.
5 Which computer did you use? – The .... that is in your office.
6 The children I like to teach are the .... who like to learn.
7 Pour away that dirty water and get some clean ....
8 If I were you, I'd sell that old car and buy a new ....

4.2C 'Which one(s)?' – 'This/that (one)', etc. [> LEG 4.10]

Study: ★★

1 We use *one/ones* to refer to people and things after ***Which?, this/that*** and adjectives:
Which one would you like? This one or that one? – I'd like the large one/the red one.
We can also say ***Which would you like? This or that?***

2 We sometimes omit ***one*** and ***ones*** after superlatives and in short answers:
***Which** one/ones **would you like? – I'd like the best** (one/ones).*
Which** one/ones **would you like? – The large/the red.

3 We usually avoid ***ones*** after *these/those:* ***I want these. I want those.*** (Not ***'these ones*)***

4 We normally use *one/ones* after *this/that/these/those* + adjective:
I want this/that white one. I want these/those white ones.

5 We cannot omit *one/ones* in structures like: ***Which woman? – The one in the green dress.***

Write:

a Supply ***one*** or ***ones.***
b Put a tick beside the sentences where *one/ones* could be omitted.

1 Which gloves would you like to see? – The ....ones......... in the window.
2 Which shoes fit you best? – The large ....
3 Which pullover do you prefer? – The red ....
4 Which jeans are you going to buy? – The most expensive ....
5 Please pass me that plate. – Which .... ?
6 Two of those coats suit you very well. – Which .... ?
7 I'd like to test-drive one of these two cars. – This .... or that ....?
8 I'd like to see some rings, please. – These .... in silver or those .... in gold?
9 I'd like to try one of these shirts. Please pass me that white ....
10 I think, on the whole, I prefer these yellow ....

4.2D Context

Write: Put in ***you, one*** or ***ones*** where necessary.

HELP!

[1] ...You..... can always tell the people who know all about cars. They're the [2].............. who can recognize all the latest models and who bore [3].............. silly with useless information. The [4].............. who don't know about cars are a bit like my friend, Robin. Robin is [5].............. of those people who believes that all car engines are in the front of a vehicle. He recently hired a car without even realizing that it was [6].............. of those with its engine at the back. Last week he was driving along a country road when he heard a strange noise coming from the car and he stopped to have a look. He raised the bonnet to examine his engine and you can imagine his surprise when he saw that he didn't have ....! He waved to a passing car and a young man stopped. Robin explained that he had lost his engine. 'I don't suppose [8].............. can help me,' he said. 'Of course I can help [9]..............,' the young man said. 'I've got a spare [10].............. in the back of my car. You can use that [11].............. .'

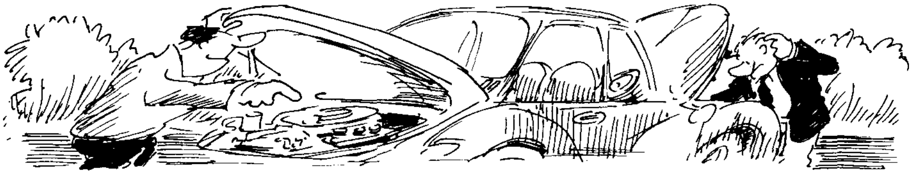

A spare engine in the back.

4.3 'It' and 'one/some/any/none'

4.3A 'It' as in 'It's hot' and 'It's nice to see you' [> LEG 4.12-13]

Study:
★★

1 'empty subject': 'It's hot' [> 1.2A, 4.1A]
It carries no information in sentences like *It's hot, It's 8 o'clock,* etc. so we call it an 'empty subject'. We use *it* because a sentence must have a subject. (Not *'Is hot'*)

2 'preparatory subject': 'It's nice to see you' [> 1.56, 16.4A, 16.7A]
We sometimes begin a sentence with *it* and continue with *to-, -ing* or *that.*
The true subject is *to-, -ing,* or *that,* but we generally prefer to begin with *it*:
To lie in the ***sun/Lying*** *in the sun is pleasant.* → *It's pleasant to lie/lying in the sun.*
That he's arriving today is certain. → *It's certain (that) he's arriving today.*

Write: Here are some notes. Write them as sentences beginning with *It.*

1 Monday, 13th June today. ....It's Monday, 13th June, today.....................
2 Snowing now. Snows a lot here. ....
3 22° Celsius in London yesterday. ....
4 100 kilometres from here to Paris. ....
5 Important to get to the meeting. ....
6 Difficult making such decisions. ....
7 A pleasure to welcome you all here. ....
8 A pity that they couldn't come. ....

4.3B 'It' and 'one' as subjects and objects: 'I like it' [> LEG 4.16]

Study:
★★

1 We use *it* and *they* if we are referring to 'something particular':
Has the letter arrived this morning?- Yes, it has just arrived.
Have the letters arrived this morning? – Yes, they have just arrived.

2 We use *one, some* and *none* when we mean 'in general':
Has a letter arrived? – Yes, one has just arrived.
Have any letters arrived? – Yes, some have arrived. No, none ***have/has*** *arrived.* [> 5.7C]

3 We must use an object after verbs like *enjoy* and *like* [> 1.2B]:
particular: *Do you like this cake? – Yes, I like it.* (Not *'I like/I don't like'*)
general: *Would you like some cake? – Yes, I'd like* ***some.*** */No, I don't want any.*
(Not *'I'd like/I wouldn't like'*)

Write: Supply *it, them, one, some, any* or *none* in the following.

1 Were any cars parked outside our house today? – Yes, ...one....... was parked there all morning.
2 Was that car parked outside our house today? – Yes, ... was parked there all morning.
3 Did any letters come for me this morning? – No, ... came for you.
4 Have the spare parts arrived yet? – Yes, ... of them have just arrived.
5 Do you like this dish? – Yes, I like .... very much.
6 Did you enjoy the strawberries? – Yes, I enjoyed .... very much.
7 Would you like some strawberries? – No, I don't want ...., thank you.
8 Would you like any cherries? – Yes, I'd like ...., please.
9 Have you got the maps with you? – No, I haven't got ....
10 Have you got a spare light bulb? – No, I haven't got ....

4.3C 'I hope/believe/expect so' [> LEG 4.17]

Study: ★★

1 We use *so* (not **it**) after these verbs when we are responding in the affirmative:
believe, expect, fear, guess, hope, imagine, say, suppose, tell someone and *think:*
Is what you told me true? – I ***believe so.*** (Not **I believe* *I believe* ***it****)

2 We use *so* in the affirmative after *I'm afraid* and *It seems:*
The weather changing for the worse. **– *I'm afraid so. It seems so.***

3 We can make a negative in two ways after these verbs:
believe, expect, imagine, suppose, think and *It seems:*
Is that true? – ***I don't think so.*** Or: ***I think not.***

Write: Write questions or statements followed by responses using *believe,* etc.

1 Someone asks you if the next train goes to London. You believe it does.
Does the next train go to London? – I believe so.

2 Someone says the weather is going to improve. You hope it will.
....

3 Someone asks you if the letters have arrived yet. You don't think they have.
....

4 Someone says the rail strike hasn't ended. It doesn't seem to have ended.
....

5 Someone says it's a holiday tomorrow. You want to know who says this.
....

6 Someone says there's been a terrible air disaster. You fear this is the case.
....

7 Someone asks if the democrats will win the election. You don't expect they will.
....

4.3D Context

Write: Put in *one, any, it, they, them,* or *so.*

SPELLING CAN BE A PAIN!

[1]......It..... was late in the afternoon when Mr Fox asked his ten-year-olds if [2]............. would like to do a spelling test.

MR FOX: ....'s quite an easy [4].............. . I'll say the words and you'll spell [5].............. . Write [6].............. in your exercise books. If there are [7]..............words you can't spell, I'll write .... on the blackboard. Do you like spelling, Liz?

LIZ: I love [9].............. .

MR FOX: What about you, Annie?

ANNIE: I think [10].............., but I'm not sure.

Annie was quite late getting home from school that afternoon. Annie's granddad was worried.

GRANDDAD: Why are you late, Annie?

ANNIE: [11]..............'s because of rheumatism.

GRANDDAD: Only older people have rheumatism, Annie.

ANNIE: No, I haven't got [12].............., granddad. I just can't spell [13]..............!'

... because of rheumatism

4.4 Possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns ('my/mine')

4.4A Basic differences between 'my' and 'mine', etc. [> LEG 4.19-21]

Study: ☐

1 *My, your, his, her, its, one's, our, your and their are* ***possessive adjectives.*** *This means they must go in front of nouns: He's* ***my son.*** *It's* ***your house.*** *etc.*

2 *They refer to the possessor, not to the thing possessed:*
John *amused* ***his daughter.*** *(= his own)* ***John*** *amused* ***her daughter.*** *(= someone else's)*
Jane *amused* ***her son.*** *(= her own)* ***Jane*** *amused* ***his son.*** *(= someone else's)*
Its refers to possession by an animal or thing: ***The cat*** *drank* ***its*** *milk.* [> 2.7A]

3 *Mine, yours, his, hers, ours, yours, and theirs are* ***possessive pronouns.*** *This means they stand on their own: That book is* ***mine.*** *(Not 'That is mine book.*')*
We cannot use possessives with *the*. (Not **That's the my car./That car's the mine.**)

Write: Supply the missing possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns.

1 *What a beautiful baby girl! What's* ....her............... *name?*
2 *This is your towel: it's yellow. And that's your husband's.* .... *is blue.*
3 *This car isn't* .... *. My car has a different registration number.*
4 *'Shall we have* .... *supper on a tray and watch TV?' my wife asked.*
5 *That umbrella doesn't belong to you.* .... *is the one with the leather handle.*
6 *Their flat and our flat may seem to be the same, but* .... *is different from ours.*
7 *One should put* .... *own interests last.*
8 *John's son wants to be an actor and* .... *daughter wants to be an actress.*
9 *Patricia's eldest daughter has just left school and* .... *youngest has just begun.*
10 *Has the cat been given* .... *milk yet?*

4.4B The double genitive: 'He is a friend of mine' [> LEG 2.52]

Study: ★★

1 *We can say:* *He is* ***your friend.***
or: *He is* ***a friend of yours.*** *(No apostrophe: not 'He is a friend of your's.*')*
And note: *He is* ***a friend of mine.*** *(Not 'He is a friend of me.*')*

2 *We can say:* *He is* ***my father's friend.*** [> 2.8A]
We still use ***'s*** *after of if we say: He is* ***a friend of my father's.*** *(Not *of my father')*

3 *We often use this and that with this construction, especially when we are criticizing:*
That boy of yours *is in trouble again.* ***That motorbike of yours*** *is very noisy.*

Write: *Rewrite these sentences using phrases with of, making any necessary changes.*

1 *Your brother is always in trouble. That* ..brother of yours is always in trouble.............
2 *He's not my friend. He's no* ....
3 *We watched a play by Shakespeare. We watched* ....
4 *Now tell me about your problem. Now tell me about* ....
5 *We've known him for years. He's our friend. He's* ....
6 *Her loud music drives me crazy! That* ....
7 *My sister's friend phoned from New York. A* ....
8 *Their neighbours have been complaining again. Those* ....
9 *Your radio keeps us all awake! That* ....

4.4C 'My own' and 'of my own' [> LEG 4.22]

Study: ★★

We can use *own* after possessive adjectives, not pronouns, in two ways:
*I have **my own room**.* Or: *I have **a room of my own**.* (Not **mine own room/of mine own**)

Write: Complete these sentences in two ways.

1 I'd love to have a room. my own room/ a room of my own.
2 Frank has started a business. ....
3 The children have rooms. ....
4 Our dog has a kennel. ....

4.40 'The' in place of 'my', etc.: 'a pain in the neck' [> LEG 4.23]

Study: ★★

We sometimes use *the* where we might expect *my, your,* etc., e.g. with parts of the body or with clothing after prepositions: *He hit me **in the face.** She pulled me by **the sleeve.***
We use the to refer informally to members of the family: *How are **the children?***
But avoid expressions like 'Meet the wife'.

Write: Supply *my* or the.

1 He hit me in ..the.... eye.
2 Something has got into .... eye.
3 You don't have to pull me by .... collar.
4 It's nice to see you. How's .... family?
5 What's wrong? – I've hurt .... arm.
6 .... collar is too tight. I can't bear it.
7 .... hair is getting too long. I must get it cut.
8 She looked me in .... face and said, 'No'.
9 What's worse than a pain in .... back?
10 The house is quiet with .... children away.

4.4E Context

Write: Put in *my, mine,* etc., or *the* where necessary.

REAL PERSONAL SERVICE

On ¹....our...... last visit to London my wife and I stayed at the Magna Hotel. The Magna used to be a favourite hotel of ².................., but we hadn't stayed there for over sixteen years. The hotel is famous for .... service and we weren't disappointed. 'The porter will show you to ⁴.................. room,' the Receptionist said with a smile and we were shown to a room on the first floor. 'This is ⁵.................. favourite room,' I exclaimed. 'I know sir,' the porter said. '⁶.................. is the room with a view, isn't it?' 'That's right,' I said. 'You like milk in ⁷.................. tea in the morning and madam prefers lemon in ⁸..................' 'That's right,' my wife said. She pulled me by ⁹.................. sleeve with pleasure when the porter had gone. 'Aren't they amazing! They remember ¹⁰.................. preferences after all these years. This is real personal service!' The next morning at breakfast, we were given raspberry jam with ¹¹.................. toast instead of orange marmalade. 'Isn't there any marmalade?' I asked the waiter. 'We never eat raspberry jam in the morning.' 'Sorry sir,' the waiter said. 'You ordered some for breakfast on ¹².................. last visit and it's been in the computer memory ever since!'

It's been in the computer memory ...

4.5 Reflexive pronouns ('myself')

4.5A Verbs commonly followed by reflexive pronouns: 'I enjoyed myself'

[> LEG 4.251

Study:
★★

1 *Myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, oneself, ourselves, yourselves* and *themselves* are **reflexive pronouns.** There aren't many verbs in English which we must always use with reflexive pronouns: *absent oneself, avail oneself (of)* and *pride oneself (on):*
*Monica **absented herself** from work. Jim **prides himself** on his cooking.*

2 We often use reflexive pronouns with these verbs: *amuse, blame, cut, dry, enjoy, hurt,* and *introduce: I've **cut myself** with the bread knife.*
We can use these verbs without reflexive pronouns if we want to: *I've cut **my thumb.***
We can use object pronouns *(me, him, her,* etc.) after these verbs only when we refer to someone else: *He **amused** me* (but not **I amused **me**/I cut me:* etc.)

Write: Supply the correct reflexive pronouns in the following.

1 I enjoyed ....myself.......... very much at the party.
2 I see you've cut .... again. Won't you ever learn how to shave?
3 How did Tom dry ....? – He used your towel!
4 She has no reason to blame .... for what has happened.
5 I think that poor dog has hurt ....
6 'One prides .... on one's patience,' the boss said, in his usual pompous manner.
7 We amused .... playing football on the beach.
8 Our new neighbours knocked at our door and introduced ....
9 Sheila prides .... on her ability to judge people's characters.
10 Bill had to absent .... from work when his baby was born.

4.58 Verb + reflexive, or not?: 'I've dressed (myself)' [> LEG 4.26-27]

Study:
★★

1 We sometimes add reflexive pronouns after verbs like *dress, hide, shave* and *wash* for emphasis or to show that something has been done with an effort. For example, if we are referring to a child, we might say: *Polly's now learnt how to **dress herself,*** but we could also say: *Polly has now learnt how to **dress.*** (without *herself).* The choice is ours.

2 Verbs such as *get up, sit down, stand up, wake up* and *get wet, get tired, get dressed, get married* [> 10.4C] are not normally reflexive in English: *I sat down with difficulty.*
We might use a reflexive only for emphasis:
*I **sat myself down** with difficulty. Old Bill has **got himself** married at last!*

Write: Write these sentences again using reflexive pronouns with the verbs.

1 We didn't know where to *hide.* We didn't know where to hide ourselves.......................
2 That kitten now *washes* every day. ....
3 She's just learning how to *dress.* ....
4 We *sat down* and waited. ....
5 I *got wet* watering the garden. ....
6 I *woke up* with a start. ....
7 Barry has just *got engaged.* ....
8 *Get ready* quickly! ....

4.5C Reflexive pronouns used after prepositions and for emphasis

[> LEG 4.29-30]

Study:
★★

1 We can use reflexive pronouns:
– after a preposition: *Look* ***after yourself!*** *Take care* ***of yourself!***
– in fixed expressions: *strictly between ourselves, just among ourselves, in itself.*

2 We use object pronouns when we refer to:
– place: *Have you got any money* ***on you?*** (Not *'Have you got any money on yourself?')*
– after *with* (= accompanied by): *I brought the children* ***with me.*** (Not **with myself')*

3 We use *by* + reflexive to mean 'without help' or 'alone':
She made the dress ***by herself.*** (= without help) *She lives* ***by herself.*** (= alone)

4 We sometimes use reflexive pronouns after nouns and pronouns for emphasis to mean 'that personlthing and only that personlthing':
The ***film itself*** *is very good.* ***You yourself*** *saw it.*
The reflexive pronoun can also go at the end of a sentence or clause:
You *saw what happened* ***yourself.*** Or: ***You yourself*** *saw what happened.*

Write 1: Use reflexive pronouns or object pronouns in the following.

1 Hargreaves knows how to take care of himself.
2 Have you got any money on ....?
3 Come and sit beside ....
4 Strictly between ...., she's wrong.
5 She's very certain of ....
6 There's a big truck in front of ....
7 Granddad doesn't like living by ....
8 Jimmy tied his shoelaces all by ....

Write 2: Rewrite these sentences using reflexive pronouns for emphasis.

1 I didn't know about it till yesterday. ..I didn't know about it myself till yesterday...............
2 *The building* is all right, **I** think. ....
3 *You* can't do that! ....
4 **I** can't fetch it – *you* fetch it. ....
5 Don't expect me to do it. *Do* it! ....

4.5D Context

Write: Put in reflexive pronouns *(ourselves,* etc.) or object pronouns *(us,* etc.).

EXCELLENT WORK

You're marvellous!

KEEP SMILING!
Psychiatrists have proved that happiness is the secret of good health. Mood really can affect the body ^{1}........... .... This means we all have to look after ^{2}............................ . We have to enjoy .... and take pride in ^{4}............................ and we'll rarely have to visit the doctor. Praise helps ^{5}............................ to learn and is good for us, too. We all know how pleased young children feel when they learn to dress ^{6}............................ and do things by ^{7}............................ . We should praise ^{8}............................ for their achievements. Bosses rarely have a good word for ^{9}............................ . Yet if we want to be happy and healthy, we need people around ^{10}............................ who keep telling ^{11}............................ how marvellous we are. Then we ^{12}............................ will believe that we are marvellous, too!

4.6 Demonstrative adjectives/pronouns ('this', etc.) 'Some/any/no' compounds ('someone', etc.)

4.6A Different uses of 'this' and 'that' [> LEG 4.32-36, App 7]

Study: ★★

1 The basic uses of *this, these* and *that, those* are:
– *this* and *these* may refer to something that is close to you: ***this*** *one here.*
– *that* and *those* may refer to something that is not close to you: ***that*** *one there.*

2 You can use *this* and *that* in many different contexts and situations. For example:
when you are showing someone round the house: ***This*** ***is my room.***
when you recognize someone you are looking for: *There he is –* ***that's*** *him!*

Write: Say when you would use these sentences.

1 *This* is Mr Cooke. – How do you do. ......Introducing someone......
2 Hullo. Is *that* George? *This* is Tom here. ....
3 We lost the match and *that* set us back. ....
4 I was robbed. – When did *this* happen? ....
5 You can't be too careful *these* days. ....
6 Quick! Run! It's *that* man again! ....
7 £50? It costs more than *that*! ....
8 There was *this* missionary. ....
9 I don't mean *that* Mrs Smith. ....
10 The fish I caught was *that* big. ....

4.6B Uses of 'some/any/no' compounds [> LEG 4.37-39]

Study: ★★

1 We use *some* compounds in [compare > 5.3B-C, 13.2A]:
– the affirmative: ***I met someone*** *you know last night.*
– questions expecting 'yes': ***Was there something*** *you wanted?*
– offers and requests: ***Would you like something*** *to drink?*

2 We use *any* compounds in:
– negative statements: *There* ***isn't anyone*** *here who can help you.*
– questions when we're doubtful about the answer: ***Is there anyone*** *here who's a doctor?*

3 We use *no* compounds when the verb is affirmative: ***There's no one*** *here.* (= not anyone)

Write: Supply *anybody/anyone, nothing, anything, nobody/no one, somebody/someone* or *something* in these sentences.

1 There's ....nothing.......... in the clothes basket. It's empty.
2 Is there .... in the clothes basket? – No, it's empty.
3 I've tried phoning, but every time I phone there's .... in.
4 I've prepared .... for dinner which you'll like very much.
5 I've never met .... who is as obstinate as you are.
6 Would you like .... to start with before you order the main course?
7 I know .... who can help you.
8 He sat at the table, but he didn't have .... to eat.
9 Is there .... here who can speak Japanese?
10 Does .... want a second helping?

4.6C 'Everyone', 'anyone', etc. with singular or plural pronouns [> LEG 4.40]

Study: ★★

1 We often use *anyone* to mean 'it doesn't matter who', especially after *if.*
The traditional rule is to use masculine pronouns with *anyone, everyone, no one,* etc., unless the context is definitely female (e.g. a girls' school).

According to this rule, you would address an audience of both sexes like this:
*If **anyone** wants to leave early, **he** can ask for permission.*
But you would address an audience of females like this:
*'If **anyone** wants to leave early,' the headmistress said, '**she** can ask for permission.'*

2 In practice, we use *they, them,* etc. without a plural meaning to refer to both sexes, though some native speakers think this is wrong:
Instead of: ***Everyone** knows what **he** has to do, **doesn't he?***
We say: ***Everyone** knows what **they** have to do, **don't they?***

Write: Change the words in italics into plural references.

1 Anyone planning to travel abroad should take *his* driving licence with *him.* ....their ... them........
2 I suppose everyone believes *he* could be Prime Minister. ....
3 We knew that no one had done *his* homework. ....
4 If anybody wants to know the answer, *he* can ask me. ....
5 Everybody knows what the answer is, *doesn't he?* ....
6 If anyone wants help in an emergency, *he* can dial *999.* ....
7 Everyone wants to have *his* cake and eat it. ....
8 Nobody wants to be told that *he is* going to be sacked. ....
9 Ask anyone you know what *he thinks* of war and *he'llsay* it's evil. ....
10 Everyone gets what *he deserves,* even if *he doesn't like* what *he gets.* ....

4.6D Context

Write: Put in *they, this, that, nothing, something, anyone* or *no one.*

MY BEST PERFORMANCE

Everyone has studied subjects at school which ¹.....they..... weren't very good at. ².................. can claim that some subjects aren't harder for them than others, however clever ³.................. are. I've never met .... who's ⁵..................clever. My weakest subject at school was certainly chemistry. I learnt formulas and experiments by heart, but there was ⁶.................. I could do to improve my performance. 'Is ⁷.................. the best you can do?' my chemistry teacher would say after every test he set us. 'It's time you did ⁸.................. about .... subject!' 'I really do try, sir,' I would answer. Before my last chemistry exam, I made a big effort. 'I can't do better than ¹⁰..................' I said to my teacher as I handed in my paper. 'It was my best performance.' Two weeks later I got my report and eagerly looked up my chemistry marks. I had got 8%! I couldn't believe it! 'Is ¹¹.................. all I got, sir?' I asked. 'I'm afraid so,' my teacher said. 'Of course, 4% was for neatness!'

8%, but 4% for neatness
=4% for knowledge

4% was for neatness!

5 Quantity

5.1 Quantifiers + countable and uncountable nouns

5.1A Quantifiers + countable and uncountable nouns [> LEG 5.1-2]

Study:
★★

Quantifiers are words like *few, little, plenty of.*
They show how many things or how much of something we are talking about.
Some quantifiers combine with countable nouns; some with uncountable and some with both kinds:

A	**B**	**C**	**D**
+ plural countable	**+ uncountable**	**+ plural countable** **+ uncountable**	**+ singular countable**
both books	***a bit of bread***	***some books*** ***some ink***	***each book***
both	*a (small) amount of*	*some (of the)*	*all (of) the*
(a) few	*a bit of*	*any (of the)*	*any/some (of the)*
fewer	*a great deal of*	*enough*	*each*
the fewest	*a good deal of*	*a lot of/lots of*	*either*
a/the majority of	*(a) little*	*hardly any*	*every*
(not) many	*less* **[but see** 5.4D]	*more/most (of the)*	*most of the*
a minority of	*the least*	*plenty of*	*neither*
a number of/several	*(not) much*	*no, none of the*	*no, none of the*

Write:

a Choose the right word in brackets.
b Mark the quantifier **A, B, C** or **D.**

1 We have imported ....fewer.... videos this year than last year. (fewer/less) A
2 There has been .... demand for videos this year than last year. (fewer/less) ___
3 .... vehicles have just been recalled because of a design fault. (a lot of/much) ___
4 .... effort has been put into this project. (a lot of/many) ___
5 There isn't .... hope of finding the wreck. (much/many) ___
6 There aren't .... dictionaries that can compare with this one. (much/many) ___
7 .... book was written by someone else. (most/most of the) ___
8 .... magazines carry advertisements. (most/most of) ___
9 .... metal is liable to rust. (most/most of) ___
10 I'd like .... milk in this coffee, please. (a few/a little) ___
11 This room needs .... pictures to brighten it up. (a few/a little) ___
12 .... businesses have gone bankrupt this year. (a good deal of/several) ___
13 There aren't .... chocolates left! (any/some) ___
14 There isn't .... time to waste. (any/some) ___
15 We've had .... trouble with this machine already. (enough/hardly any) ___
16 There have been .... accidents on this corner this year. (a good deal of/hardly any) ___
17 We can't accept the estimates. .... estimate is low enough. (either/neither) ___
18 .... examples prove that I am right. (both/neither) ___
19 There have been .... changes in the new edition. (no/any) ___
20 There has been .... change in the new edition. (no/any) ___

5.1B Quantifiers that tell us roughly how much and how many [> LEG 5.3]

Study: ★★

1 If we say *I bought **five magazines** to read on the train,* we are saying exactly how many.

2 If we say *I bought **some magazines** to read on the train,* we aren't saying how many.

3 If we say *I bought **a few magazines** to read on the train,* we are giving 'a rough idea'.
Some quantity words like *a few, a little* give us 'a rough idea'. If we arrange these on a scale, *too much* and *too many* are at the top of the scale and *no* is at the bottom.

Write: Arrange the quantifiers to show *most* at the top and *least* at the bottom. More than one answer is possible.

There are		There is	
enough eggs.	1a too many eggs	*hardly any* milk.	1b too much milk
no eggs.	2a	*too much* milk.	2b ....
too many eggs.	3a	*a little* milk.	3b ....
hardly any eggs.	4a	*no* milk.	4b ....
a few eggs.	5a	*not much* milk.	5b ....
plenty of eggs.	6a	*enough* milk.	6b ....
very few eggs.	7a	*a lot of milk.*	7b ....
a lot of eggs.	8a	*plenty of milk.*	8b ....
not many eggs.	9a	*very little* milk.	9b ....

Now write sentences of your own using any six of the above quantifiers.

1 There are plenty of apples in the bowl.
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

5.1C Context

Write: Put in *any, enough, few, hardly any, many, no, plenty of, some* or *very little.*

I'm asking for some NOW!

EXCUSES! EXCUSES!

You may be trying to buy a pair of shoes and there are too .... in your size and you can't choose, or there are too .... Shop assistants are good at inventing excuses. A few days ago I was trying to buy ^{3}........................ birthday cards for three five-year-old children. There were ^{4}........................ cards for children, but .... for five-year-olds. 'Five is a very popular age this year,' the assistant said. 'We can't get ^{6}........................ cards for this age-group.' Then I went to a Do It Yourself shop and tried to buy some orange paint. There was ^{7}........................ paint in the shop, but in the end I found ^{8}........................ . Then I asked for two small paint brushes. 'We don't have ^{9}........................,' the shop assistant explained. 'There's ^{10}........................ demand for them. No one ever asks for ^{11}........................' . 'Yes, they do!' I exclaimed. 'I'm asking for ^{12}........................ now!'

5.2 General and specific references to quantity

5.2A 'Of' after quantifiers ('a lot of', 'some of', etc.) [> LEG 5.5]

Study:
★★

1 We always use *of* with these quantifiers when we put them in front of a noun or pronoun, and the reference is general:
a bit of, a couple of, a lot of, lots of, the majority of, a number of, plenty of.
*A **lot of people** don't eat meat.* (= a lot of people in general)

2 If we use words like *the* or *my* after *of,* the reference is specific:
***A lot of the people I know** don't eat meat.* (= the ones **I** know)

3 We use quantifiers like *some, any, much* and *many* without *of* in general references:
***Some people** don't eat meat.* (= some people in general)

4 If we use *of* + *the, my* etc., after *some* etc., the reference is specific [compare > 5.7C]:
***Some of the people I know** don't eat meat.* (= the ones I know)
Note that *None of* is always specific: ***None of** my friends is here. I want **none of** it.*

Write:
a Supply *of* where necessary.
b Mark each sentence ***G*** (= General) or **S** (= Specific).

1 There have been a lot .....of..... changes to our plans. G
2 You only need to use a small amount .... salt in a dish like this. __
3 A lot .... the trouble was caused by a faulty switch. __
4 Have some .... tea. __
5 Would you like any .... cake? —
6 Would you like any ....this cake? —
7 We need a couple ....people to work in our new warehouse. —
8 There's plenty .... food for everybody. __
9 There were plenty .... complaints about the service. __
10 There's plenty .... this stew left, so we can have it again tonight. __
11 How much milk is there in the pan? – None .... __
12 How much of the milk have you used? – None .... it. __
13 Some .... students have complained about the canteen. __
14 Some .... my students have complained about the canteen. __
15 Would you like a bit .... butter on this toast? __

5.28 When to use quantifiers without 'of': 'I've got a lot' [> LEG 5.5]

Study:
★★

If we use a quantifier on its own (not in front of a noun or pronoun) we do not use *of.*
*Did you buy any fruit? – Yes, I bought **a lot/lots/plenty**.* (Not **a lot of** etc.)

Write: Use *a couple, a bit, a lot, lots* and *plenty* in short answers to these questions.

1 Are there any eggs in the fridge? – Yes, ...there are a couple..........................
2 Did you buy any cheese at the supermarket? – Yes, ...
3 Have we got enough potatoes for the weekend? – Yes, ...
4 Is there any milk in that jug? – Yes, ...
5 Were there many people at the meeting? – Yes, ...
6 Is there any ironing to be done? – Yes, ...

5.2C 'More' and 'less' after quantifiers: 'some more', 'a little less' [> LEG 5.6]

Study:
★★

We can emphasize quantity with *more* and *less* after quantifiers:

1 We can use *more* + plural nouns after:
some/any, a couple, hundreds, a few, hardly any, a lot, lots, many, no, plenty, several:
There are ***a lot more students*** *studying English this year.*

2 We can use *more* + uncountable nouns after:
some/any, a bit, a good deal, hardly any, a little, a lot, lots, much, no, plenty:
There's ***a little more soup*** *if you'd like it.*

3 We can use *less* + uncountable nouns after:
any, a bit, a good deal, a little, a lot, lots, much:
I'd like ***a little less soup,*** *please.*

Write: Choose *any more, any less,* etc. in the following sentences.

1 How much did we make yesterday? £200? – No, ...much less... than that. (much less/a few less)
2 You've had enough food already and you can't have .... (any more/some more)
3 There are .... people giving up smoking these days. (much more/many more)
4 Newspapers have .... freedom than you think. (many less/much less)
5 .... young people are passing their driving test first time. (lots more/much more)
6 I'll help myself to .... of these vegetables. (some more/any more)
7 Have what you like. There are .... where these came from. (plenty more/much more)
8 There's been .... interest in this idea than we expected. (a lot less/many less)
9 We've had .... than forty applicants for this job. (no less/no fewer)
10 We need .... of this material, but it's hard to get. (many more/much more)
11 Do you want any more? – Yes, ..., please. (hardly any more/a lot more)
12 I've got .... experience in business than you think. (much more/many more)

5.2D Context

Write: Put a circle round the correct words in brackets.

SPARE THAT TREE!
How ([1][✓ many]/much) lists is your name on? There must be ([2]plenty/plenty of) lists of names in every part of the world and they must be used to send information to ([3]millions/millions of) people. The ([4]number/amount) of letters ordinary people receive these days has greatly increased. ([5]A lot/A lot of) the people I know object to receiving unwanted letters. ([6]Much/Many) of the mail we receive goes straight into the waste-paper basket. That's why ([7]most/the most) people refer to it as 'junk mail'. It would be better for all of us if we received ([8]much/many) less junk mail and, as a result, saved ([9]many/much) more trees from destruction. ([10]A lot/A lot of) trees must be wasted each year to produce mountains of junk mail. Recently, I received a very welcome ([11]bit/bit of) junk mail. It was a leaflet urging me not to waste paper and to return junk mail to the sender. 'If we all do this,' the leaflet said, 'we will reduce the ([12]number/number of) trees being destroyed.' I agreed with every word they said, but why did they have to send me four copies of the leaflet?

SPARE THAT TREE

'**Junk** mail'

5.3 Uses of 'some', 'any', 'no' and 'none'

5.3A 'Some/any' or zero in relation to quantity [> LEG 3.6, 3.28.8, 5.3, 5.10]

Study: ★★

countable nouns

The plural of *a/an* is normally *any* or *some* when we are referring to **quantity** [> 3.1B]:

*Is there **a present** for the children?* → *Are there **any presents** for the children?*

*Here's **a present** for the children.* → *Here are **some presents** for the children.*

Sometimes we don't use *any* and *some,* even if we are referring to quantity.

The meaning is exactly the same, though we generally prefer to use *any* and *some:*

*Are there **any presents** for the children?* → *Are there **presents** for the children?*

*Here are **some presents** for the children.* → *Here are **presents** for the children.*

uncountable nouns

In the same way, we sometimes don't use *any* and *some* when referring to quantity:

*Is there **any milk** in the fridge?* is the same as *Is there **milk** in the fridge?*

*There's **some milk** in the fridge.* is the same as *There's **milk** in the fridge.*

general statements

We always use zero in general statements [> 3.1A-B, 3.5A]:

***Beans** are good for you. **Oil** is produced in Alaska. **Life** is short.*

Write: We can use zero in all these sentences. Put in *some* or *any* only where possible.

1 ......–...... eggs are not nice to eat raw.
2 There are .... eggs in that basket.
3 .... life is full of surprises.
4 He's 89, but there's still .... life in him.
5 Get .... meat and salad for the weekend.
6 Some people don't eat .... meat.
7 .... biscuits are bad for the teeth.
8 You won't find .... biscuits in that tin.
9 We can't do without .... bread.
10 Get .... bread while you're out.
11 I don't like .... boiled cabbage.
12 Would you like .... boiled cabbage?
13 .... money has to be earned.
14 You need to earn .... money.
15 There isn't .... news of him.
16 I hate .... bad news.

5.3B Four basic uses of 'some' and 'any' [> LEG 5.10]

Study: ★

Some [compare > 4.6B]	**Any** [compare > 4.6B]
1 Affirmatives: *I want **some eggs.***	1 Negatives: *I don't want **any eggs.***
2 Questions + 'yes': *Do you want **some tea?***	2 Uncertain questions: ***Is** there **any** ...?*
3 Requests: *May I have **some tea?***	3 With *hardly,* etc.: *There's **hardly any ink.***
4 (= certain): ***Some people** believe anything.*	4 With *at all*: *I haven't **any idea at all**.*

Write: Supply *some* or *any.*

1 Are there any more potatoes? – Yes, there are ....some............ potatoes in the dish.
2 Have we got any sugar? – I expect we have. Yes, there's .... sugar in this bowl.
3 May I have .... more tea? – Yes, of course.
4 .... people just don't know how to mind their own business.
5 I didn't get .... shoes at the sales. They were too expensive.
6 I think we've run out of sugar. Is there .... sugar in that bowl? – No, there isn't.
7 There are never .... taxis when you want one.
8 There isn't .... point at all in getting upset about it.

5.3C 'Not ...any', 'no' and 'none' [> LEG 5.11]

Study: ★★

1 We can use *no* instead of *not any*. We use an affirmative verb with *no* [> 13.2A]:
*There **aren't any** buses after midnight.* → *There **are no** buses after midnight.*
*There **isn't any** milk.* → *There's **no** milk.*
2 *We* can also use *no* in place of *not a/an: I'm **not an** expert.* → *I'm **no** expert.*
3 *None* stands on its own as a pronoun: *We have **no bananas**. We have **none**.*

Write: Rewrite these sentences with *any, no* and *none.*

1 There are no buses after **12.30**. There aren't ......any buses after 12.30...............................
2 We haven't got any. We've got ....
3 I'm not an accountant, but these figures are wrong. I'm ....
4 There isn't any explanation for this. There's ....

5.3D Other uses of 'some' and 'any' [> LEG 5.12]

Study: ★★

Some and *any* also have special uses:
*I haven't seen Tom for **some years**.* (= I haven't seen Tom for several years.)
***Any fool** knows the answer to a question like that.* (= 'It doesn't matter who')

Write: Match the sentences on the left with the meanings on the right.

1 It took *some minutes* to see what had gone wrong. f
2 There were *some* 500 people at the meeting. __
3 Monica's really *some actress.* __
4 There must be *some person* who knows the answer. __
5 You're *some help,* I must say! __
6 Albert isn't just *any hairdresser,* you know. __
7 *Any coat* will do. It needn't be a raincoat. __

a) it doesn't matter which
b) an extraordinary
c) an ordinary
d) not much
e) about
f) several
g) an unknown

5.3E Context

Write: Put in *some, any, no* or '-'

Sardines for lunch.

CAUSE FOR ALARM!

'^{1}......-...... Children and ^{2}.............. grown-ups must do their best to keep the world clean,' Mr Fox said to his class. 'Sometimes we see .... rubbish in the streets and we must pick it up. Sometimes we eat .... sweets and we must put the wrappings in the bin. We must all work together so there's .... rubbish in the world. Never throw .... plastic into the sea! There's ^{7}.............. tar on the beaches. There's .... oil in the sea. If we pour .... poison into our rivers, ^{10}.............. fish die. This is called ^{11}.............. pollution. This weekend, see if you can find ^{12}.............. examples of pollution and write ^{13}.............. sentences about it.' Jimmy looked very worried when he went home. On Monday, he handed in his composition. 'Yesterday we had ^{14}.............. sardines for lunch. Mummy opened the tin, but all the fish were dead and the tin was full of oil!'

5.4 'Much', 'many', 'a lot of', '(a) few', '(a) little', 'fewer', 'less'

5.4A Basic uses of 'much', 'many' and 'a lot of' [> LEG 5.13-14]

Study: ☐

The basic uses are:

1 *much* (+ uncountable, always singular) and *many* (+ plural countable) [> 5.1A]:
– in **negative statements:** *We haven't got **much time.** There aren't **many pandas** in China.*
– in **questions:** *Is there **much milk?** Have you had **many inquiries?***

2 *a lot of* or the informal *lots of* (+ plural countable or singular uncountable):
– in the **affirmative**: *I've got **a lot of time/lots of time**. I've got **a lot of/lots of books**.*

Write: Supply *much, many* or *a lot of* in these sentences.

1 I know old Mr Higgins has a lot of money.
2 Is there .... demand for silk stockings?
3 There isn't .... space in this flat.
4 There aren't .... portraits of Shakespeare.
5 I must say, you have .... books.
6 Will there be .... guests at your party?

5.4B Other common uses of 'much', 'many' and 'a lot of' [> LEG 5.13-14]

Study: ★★

1 We can also use *much* and *many* in the affirmative (like a *lot of/lots of*):
– in formal statements: ***Much money** is spent on defence. **Many teachers** retire early.*
– with *as ... as: Take **as much as** you like.*
– in time references: *I've lived here **for many years.***
2 We can use *Not much* and *Not many* to begin a sentence: ***Not many** know about this.*
3 We can use *not a lot of* for emphasis: *I **haven't** got **a lot of** time for people like him.*

Write: Supply *much* or *many* in these sentences.

1 ...Much.... depends on the outcome of the inquiry.
2 Don't be discouraged! .... have failed to run the marathon.
3 You can have as .... of this material as you like.
4 Take as .... of these tiles as you want.
5 He has lived here for .... of his life.
6 We have occupied the same house for .... years.
7 Not .... happens around here when the tourists leave.
8 Not .... doctors are prepared to visit patients in their own homes.

5.4C 'Few', 'a few', 'little', 'a little' [> LEG 5.15]

Study: ★★

1 We use *few* and *a few* with plural countable nouns: *few **friends,** a few **friends.***
We use *little* and *a little* with uncountable nouns: *little **time,** a little **time.***

2 *Few* and *little* are negative (= hardly any): *I've got **few friends.** I've got **little time.*** (hardly any)
We sometimes use *very* with *few* and *little:*
*I've got **very few friends.** I've got **very little time.*** (hardly any at all)

3 *A few* and *a little* are positive (= some): *I've got **a few friends.** I've got **a little time.*** (some)
We sometimes use *only* with *a few* and *a little:*
*I've got **only a few friends**.* (not many) *I've got **only a little time**.* (not much)

Write: Supply *few, a few, little* or *a little* in these sentences.

1 There are very ....few........................... scholarships for students in this university.
2 I'm sorry, but I'm going to have to ask you for .... more time to pay this bill.
3 If you don't hurry we'll miss our train. There's .... time to spare.
4 It's a difficult text. I've had to look up quite .... words in the dictionary.
5 I can't spare any of these catalogues. There are only .... left.
6 I can't let you use much of this perfume. There's only .... in the bottle.
7 There are .... who know about this, so keep it to yourself.
8 If what you say is true, there is .... we can do about it.

5.4D 'Fewer' and 'less' [> LEG 5.16]

Study: ★★

1 *Fewer* is the comparative of *few (few, fewer, the fewest).*
Less is the comparative of *little (little, less, the least* [> 6.5C]).

2 *Fewer* goes with plural countables: ***Fewer videos** have been imported this year than last.*

3 *Less* goes with uncountables: ***Less oil** has been produced this year than last.*

4 Informally, we often use *less* with uncountables. Some native speakers think it's wrong:
***Less people** are travelling abroad this year.*
*People are buying **less newspapers** than they used to.*

Write: Supply *fewer* or *less* in these sentences.

1 The ..less.. you pay, the ..fewer.. services you get.
2 We've had .... complaints this year.
3 I've had .... lessons than you.
4 New cars need .... servicing than old ones.
5 People have .... money to spend this year.
6 Sue's got .... homework than Tom.

5.4E Context

Write: Put in *a little, a lot of, a few, few, fewer, many* or *much.*

All I want for Christmas is a phone..
SANTA GROTTO

Which **year?**

DON'T CALL US, WE'LL CALL YOU!
Two years ago I moved to a new neighbourhood. There seem to be very ^{1}.....few....... people in this area who are without telephones, so I expected to get a new phone quickly. I applied for one as soon as I moved into my new house. 'We aren't supplying ^{2}.................. new phones in your area,' an engineer told me. '^{3}.................. people want new phones at the moment and the company is employing .... engineers than last year so as to save money. A new phone won't cost you ^{5}.................. money, but it will take .... time. We can't do anything for you before December.' You need ^{7}.................. patience if you're waiting for a new phone and you need ^{8}.................. friends whose phones you can use as well. Fortunately, I had both. December came and went, but there was no sign of a phone. I went to the company's local office to protest. 'They told me I'd have a phone by December,' I protested. 'Which year?' the assistant asked.

5.5 'Both' and 'all'

5.5A 'Both/both the' and 'all/all the' with nouns [> LEG 5.18.1-2]

Study: ★★

1 We use *both* and *both the* (or *both my*, etc.) in exactly the same way to refer to two particular people or things (plural countable nouns):
***Both children/Both the children** are in bed. **Both cars/Both the cars** are very fast.*

2 We use *all* + noun to refer to things in general: (= the whole number or amount):
***All children** like to play.* (plural countables) ***All advice** is useless.* (uncountable nouns)

3 *All the* refers to particular people or things:
***All the children in our street** like to play.* (*all the* + plural countable nouns)
***All the advice you gave me** was useless.* (*all the* + uncountable noun)

Write: Supply *both (the)* or *all (the).* There is often more than one possibility.

1 Both (the) tyres on my bicycle are flat.
2 .... people are mortal.
3 .... salt in this bag is damp.
4 .... drinking water must be pure.
5 .... windows in the house are open.
6 .... addresses in this list are out of date.
7 .... twins want to go to the party.
8 .... cars need regular servicing.
9 .... front legs of this chair are shaky.
10 .... earth and moon go round the sun.

5.5B 'Both' and 'all': word order with verbs [> LEG 5.19]

Study: ★★

Both and *all* have three basic positions in affirmative sentences [compare > 7.4A]:

a after *be* when it is the only verb in a sentence:
*The girls **are both** ready. (= Both girls/Both the girls are ready.)*
*The girls **are all** ready. (= All the girls are ready.)*

b after auxiliaries *(can,* etc.) or the first auxiliary when there is more than one:
*The girls **can both** speak French. (= Both **girls/Both** the girls can speak French.)*
*The committee **should all have** resigned. (= All the committee should have resigned.)*

c before the main verb when there is only one verb:
*The girls **both left** early. (= Both girls/Both the girls left early.)*
*The girls **all left** early. (= All the girls left early.)*

Write: Rewrite these sentences so that *both* and *all* are before or after the verbs.

1 All the customers are complaining. The customers are all complaining.
2 Both the patients had appointments at 10. ....
3 Both the directors have retired. ....
4 Both our secretaries can speak French. ....
5 All the customers should have complained. ....
6 Both the boys had haircuts. ....
7 All the pupils may leave now. ....
8 All the students wrote good essays. ....
9 All our employees work too hard. ....
10 All the children must go home early. ....
11 All the children here learn German. ....

5.5C 'Both' and 'all': word order with pronouns [> LEG 5.20]

Study: ★★

subject

Instead of: ***We/They* are *both*** *ready.* We can say: ***Both of us/them*** *are ready.*

We/They all *left early.* ***All of us/them*** *left early.*

object

Instead of: *I love* ***you both/all.*** We can say: *I love* ***both of you/all of you.***

He gave ***us both/all*** *some money.* *He gave some money* ***to both/all of us****.*

Write: Rewrite these sentences using *both of* and *all of.*

1 We all took taxis. ....All of us took taxis. ....
2 They both turned left. ....
3 I know you both. ....
4 She's interested in them both. ....
5 It all went bad. ....
6 She's concerned about us all. ....
7 You all filled in the forms, didn't you? ....

5.5D 'None of' and 'neither of' [> LEG 5.21]

Study: ★★

The negative of ***All the girls*** *left early.* is: ***None of the girls*** *left early.*

The negative of ***Both the girls*** *left early.* is: ***Neither of the girls*** *left early.*

Write: Rewrite these sentences in the negative.

1 All the passengers survived. ....None of the passengers survived. ....
2 We were both late. ....
3 Both tyres needed air. ....
4 We all knew the answer. ....

5.5E Context

Write: Put in us, *them, both, both the, all* or *all the.*

ALL ON BOARD?

.......All...... of ²................... who travel by plane probably find reasons to complain about airlines, but it is less common for airlines to complain about ³...................! At **2.35** p.m. Flight **767** was ready to leave for **Ibiza** and nearly ⁴................... passengers were on board. At **6.10** p.m. the plane was still on the runway. Two passengers hadn't boarded. If people check in but don't board ⁵................... the luggage must be unloaded. ⁶................... passengers had to get off the plane and ⁷...................of .... identified their luggage. At the end there were two pieces of luggage left. Just then, ... missing passengers appeared. 'We ¹⁰................... went to the bar and we had something to drink and a sandwich,' they explained. ¹¹................... of ¹²................... had been sitting in the bar for hours! The captain scolded ¹³................... ¹⁴................... severely and the other passengers were very angry with ¹⁵................... .

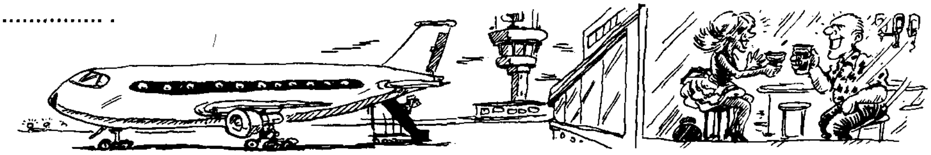

The plane was still on the runway

5.6 'All (the)', '(althe) whole', 'each' and 'every'

5.6A 'All (the)' compared with '(a/the) whole' [> LEG 5.22]

Study: ★★

1 We use *the whole* and *a whole* with singular countable nouns:
He ate ***the whole loaf.*** *He swallowed* ***a whole banana. The whole film*** *was boring.*
We do not use *the whole* with plurals or uncountables. (Not **the whole books/bread**)

2 Some nouns combine only with *all:*
He spent ***all the money.*** *She's* ***90*** *and she's still got* ***all her teeth.***
Some nouns combine only with *whole:*
You must tell me ***the whole truth.*** *I'd like to know* ***the whole history*** *of the world.*
Some nouns combine with *all* or *whole:*
I've waited ***all my life/my whole life*** *for such a moment as this.*

3 We also use *all* and *a/the whole* with time references: *all day, a/the whole night.*
Whole is stronger than *all* and also combines with words like *hour* and *century*
a/the whole hour, a/the whole century. (Not **all the hour* *all the century')*

Write: Rewrite these sentences using either *all* or *whole.*

1 I'm losing my hair. ......I'm losing all my hair......
2 He explained the situation to me. ....
3 The money was spent. ....
4 You didn't tell me the truth. ....
5 I heard the story. ....
6 It will take a century to clean up the atmosphere. ....

5.6B 'All' compared with 'everyonefeverybody' and 'everything' [> LEG 5.24-25]

Study: ★★

1 We rarely use *all* on its own to mean 'everyone/everybody':
Everyone/Everybody wanted *Marilyn's autograph.* (Not **All wanted').*

2 *All* means 'everyone/everybody' when we use other words with it:
All of us/We all *agreed to sign the contract.* ***All those who were present*** *were in favour.*
(= Everyone/Everybody agreed to sign. Everyone/Everybody present was in favour.)

3 We often use *all* and *everything* with other words to refer to things:
All/Everything I have *belongs to you. He taught me* ***all/everything I know.***
But note: *He gave me* ***everything***. (Not **He gave me all.**)

Write: Use *all, everyone* or *everything* in these sentences.

1 When the famous actress appeared, ...everyone.......... wanted to speak to her.
2 .... I invited came to my party.
3 I'm not buying anything. .... is too expensive.
4 .... those who know me can be sure I'm telling the truth.
5 .... of us felt that it had been a wonderful experience.
6 .... stood up when the President came into the room.
7 .... talked about the elections, but I'm not sure they .... voted.
8 .... in the building was destroyed in the fire. Some of the objects were priceless.
9 I wouldn't help you for .... the tea in China!
10 How much do you want for .... in the shop?

5.6C 'Each' and 'every' [> LEG 5.261

Study: ★★

1 We often use *each,* like *both,* to refer to two people or things:
My wife and I each *ordered avocado to start with.* We cannot use *every* here.

2 We can use *each* and *every* to refer to more than two.
Each suggests 'one by one', 'separately'; *every* suggests 'all together':
Each child *at the party had a piece of cake. (Every* is also possible.)
Every child *in the world loves the story of Cinderella. (Each* is unlikely.)

3 We must use *every* (Not **each**) after *nearly* and after *not*
Nearly every *shop is shut today.* ***Not every*** *train driver is on strike today.*

4 We cannot use *of* after *every* and we cannot use *every* at the end of a sentence:
Each of *the children received a present. They received a present* ***each.***

5 We can use **every** with a few uncountable nouns:
My mother gave me ***every encouragement*** *when I was a child.*

Write: Supply *each* or *every* in the following sentences. Sometimes both are possible.

1 Nearly .... home in the country has television.
2 Here is something for .... of you.
3 Not .... student is capable of learning English.
4 Our motoring organization will give you .... assistance if you break down.
5 The admission ticket cost us **£5** ....
6 They seem to be repairing .... road in the country.
7 .... road is clearly signposted.
8 There's a fire extinguisher on .... floor in the building.
9 .... floor in the building has its own fire extinguisher.
10 They are .... fortunate to have such a good start in life.
11 They both did well and they will .... receive prizes
12 You've been given .... opportunity to do well in this company.
13 I've phoned him twice, but he's been out on .... occasion.
14 I've been phoning him all week, but he's been out on .... occasion.

5.6D Context

Write: Put in *each, every, everyone, everything, all* or *whole.*

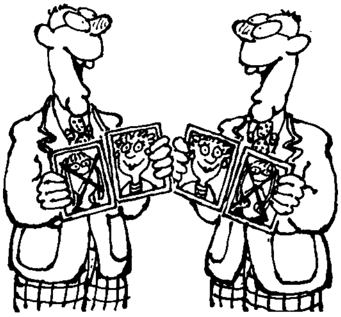

'It wasn't like meeting a stranger!'

JIM MEETS JAMES

I've just heard the ^{1}....whole.......story of the Lewis twins from Ohio, who were adopted by different families at birth and who met each other for the first time at the age of 39. ^{2}....................... wanted to know if they had anything in common. They had! They had ^{3}....................... married a woman called Linda. ^{4}....................... of them had been divorced and married another woman called Betty. The couples who adopted them had .... called them 'Jim'. Many similar things happened to them .... their lives. The ^{7}....................... list is endless. Almost .... experience they had had was the same: there were exact parallels for ^{9}....................... they had ever done. As Jim said when he first met James, 'It wasn't like meeting a stranger!'

5.7 'Another', '(the) other(s)', 'either', 'neither', 'each (one of)'

5.7A 'Another', 'other', 'others', 'the other', 'the others' [> LEG 5.27]

Study: ★★

1 *Another* doesn't refer to anything in particular. It can mean:
- 'different': *Come **another day.*** (= any other day, no particular day)
- 'additional': *We need **another day** to finish this.* (= one more day, no particular day)

2 We can contrast *some* and *other(s)* when we talk about things in general:
***Some holidays** are cheap and **other holidays** are expensive.*
***Some holidays** are cheap and **others** are expensive.* (= holidays in general)

3 We can contrast *one* with *the other* or *the others* when referring to particular things:
***This one** is mine and **the other one** is yours.* (Or: ... ***the other** is yours)*
***This one** is mine and **the other ones** are yours.* (Or: ... ***the others** are yours)*

4 We can use *the **other(s)*** to refer to people as well:
*John went cycling and **the other boy/the other boys** went with him.*
*John went cycling and **the others** went with him.*

5 *The other day* can mean 'a few days ago'; *the next day* refers to the following day:
*I met your father in the street **the other day.*** (= a few days ago)
*We spent our first night in Cairo and **the next day** we went to Alexandria.*

Write: Supply *another, other, the next, the other, the others* and *others.*

1 John came to see me ......the other...... day. It was last Friday, I think.
2 I met two strangers on the way to work. One of them greeted me and .... didn't.
3 Some people like to have the windows open all the time; .... don't.
4 I can't see him today. I'll have to see him .... day.
5 We spent the night in a small village and continued our journey .... day.
6 Bill and .... boy are playing in the yard. Jane and .... girls are in the front room.
7 There must be .... road that leads to the city centre.
8 There must be .... roads that lead to the city centre.
9 I can't let you have any of these plants, but you can have all ....

5.78 'Either' and 'neither' + singular nouns [> LEG 5.29]

Study: ★★

Eitherand neither refer to two people, things, etc. only. [compare > 1.4]
Either means 'one or the other':
*Which pot will I use? – **Either (of them).** It doesn't matter which.*
Neither means 'not one and not the other':
*Which pot will I use? – **Neither (of them).** Use this frying pan.*

Write: Supply *either* or *neither.*

1 When shall we meet: at 7 or at 7.30? – I don't mind. ......Either...... time is convenient for me.
2 You can't use those screwdrivers. .... of them is suitable for the job.
3 I don't know who's on the phone. It's .... your mother or your aunt.
4 I met John a year ago, but I've .... seen him nor heard from him since.
5 Say what you like about those two applicants. I didn't like .... of them! [> 13.2A]
6 I know you sent us two letters, but we have received .... of them.

5.7C 'Each of', etc. [> LEG 5.5.2, 5.30-31]

Study: ★★

1 We can use *of the/my*, etc. after *any, some, another, each, either, neither, none* [> 5.2A]:
Instead of: ***Neither lift** is working.*
We can say: ***Neither of the lifts** is working.*

2 After *either, neither* and *none,* when the reference is plural, we can use a plural verb in everyday speech or a singular verb when we wish to sound 'correct' or formal:
***Neither of us is/are** happy about this. **None of my friends has/have** been invited.*

Write: Rewrite these sentences using *of the.*

1 Another teaspoon is missing. ....Another of the teaspoons is missing.........
2 Neither roadmap is much use. ....
3 Any roadmap you have will be OK. ....
4 Either road leads to the same place. ....
5 Each painting is perfect. ....
6 Neither boy is guilty. ....
7 I can't ask either secretary to do the job. ....
8 Give a tip to each porter. ....

5.7D 'One of' [> LEG 5.30]

Study: ★★

We can say: ***Each of these** answers is right.* Or: ***Each one of these** answers is right.*
We can use *of* or *one of* after *any, another, each, either,* and *neither.*
We must use a noun after *every* (*every room*) or we must use *one of* (*every one of*):
***Every room** is booked. **Every (single) one of** the rooms is booked.* (Not **Every of**)

Write: Delete *one* where possible in these sentences.

1 Every one of these answers is wrong.
2 Each one of these pilots has been highly trained.
3 She came in here and criticized every single one of our products.
4 I'm not prepared to listen to another one of your complaints.
5 Any one of us might be asked to help in an emergency.

5.7E Context

Write: Put in *one, either, others, other, the other* or *some.*

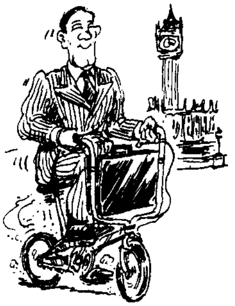

He goes everywhere by bicycle

HALT!
The ^{1}.....other.... day the Prime Minister appointed a new Minister of Transport. ^{2}.................. ministers like to travel everywhere by car; .... prefer to use public transport. .... of these means of transport is fine, but the new minister is .... of those who goes everywhere by bicycle. When he arrived at the House of Commons yesterday, he was stopped by two security guards. ^{6}.................. of them was sure he had seen him before. 'I know you, don't I?' asked one of the guards. 'You're .... of these messengers, aren't you?' 'Well, no, actually,' the minister replied. 'I'm ....of the ministers.' 'I knew you were ^{9}.................. or ^{10}..................!' the guard replied.

6 Adjectives

6.1 Formation of adjectives

6.1A Adjectives formed with suffixes: 'enjoy/enjoyable' [> LEG 6.2, App 8.1]

Study:
★★

Many adjectives related to verbs or nouns have a characteristic ending (or suffix):
We enjoyed the party. The party was very enjoyable.

-able (capable of being): manageable
-ful (full of): boastful
-ic: energetic
-ive (capable of being): attractive
-ant: hesitant
-ible (like -able): permissible
-(i)an (historical period, etc.): Victorian
-ish (have the quality of): foolish, reddish
-ly (have this quality): friendly [> 7.1C]
-ous: humorous

And note *-ing* forms used as adjectives: running water [> 2.2A, 6.3B, 16.5A].

Write: Supply the right adjectival forms. Refer to the box above only when you have to.

1 I'm attracted by this scheme. I find it very ....attractive..
2 A class of forty can be managed. It's just about ....
3 I know I hesitated before agreeing. I couldn't help being ....
4 I don't know where you find all that energy. You're tremendously ....
5 This piece of furniture was made in the reign of Victoria. It's ....
6 I don't know how to describe the colour of the sky. It's almost red, sort of ....
7 I've never met anyone who boasts as he does. He's extremely ....
8 What level of radiation can be permitted? How much radiation is ....?
9 The story is full of humour. I've rarely read anything that's so ....

6.1B Adjectives formed with prefixes: 'possible/impossible' [> LEG 6.2, App 8.2]

Study:
★★

A **prefix** (e.g. *im-*) added to an adjective generally has a negative effect:
*I think it's possible to solve the problem. I think it's **im**possible to solve the problem.*

un-: uncooked, unimaginable
in-: incapable, inhuman
il-: illegal, illegible
im-: immoral, impractical
dis-: dishonest, disagreeable
ir-: irresponsible, irregular

And note ***pre-*** (***pre-****war*) and ***hyper-*** (***hyper****active*), which do not create opposites but modify the meaning of the word in some way.

Write: Supply the right adjectival forms. Refer to the box above only when you have to.

1 I suspect he isn't honest. In fact, I think he's quite ....dishonest...............
2 This arrangement isn't strictly legal. Some people would regard it as ....
3 Sometimes she doesn't behave in a responsible manner. She's quite ....
4 Such a situation is barely imaginable. It's quite ....
5 Bob's not very capable. He's .... of making sound decisions.
6 This fish hasn't been cooked enough. It's ....
7 This scheme isn't very practical. In fact, it's quite ....
8 This dates from before the war. It's ....

6.1C Compound adjectives of measurement, etc.: 'a twenty-year-old man'

[> LEG 6.3.2]

Study: ★★

1 We combine numbers with nouns in the singular to form compound adjectives with hyphens:
a twenty-year-old man (Not ****a twenty-years-old man').***
We prefer compounds of this kind to phrases with *of*: 'a man of twenty years'.

2 Compound adjectives of this kind can refer to:
– age: ***a three-year-old building***
– volume: ***a two-litre car***
– length: ***a twelve-inch ruler***
– price: ***a*** $50 ***dress (a fifty-dollar dress)***
– weight: ***a five-kilo bag***
– area: ***a fifty-acre farm***
– duration: ***a four-hour meeting***
– depth: ***a six-foot hole***
– time/distance: ***a ten-minute walk***

Write: Rewrite the following sentences using compound adjectives.

1 The office-block costs two million pounds. It's ....a two-million-pound office-block......
2 The woman is seventy years old. She's ....
3 The conference lasts two days. It's ....
4 The farm is eighty hectares. It's ....
5 The journey takes three days. It's ....
6 The bag weighs five kilos. It's ....
7 My engine is three litres. It's ....
8 It's a note for fifty pounds. It's ....
9 The fence is twenty miles. It's ....
10 The tunnel is fifty kilometres. It's ....

6.1D Context

Write: Refer to the words in brackets and put in the right adjectives.

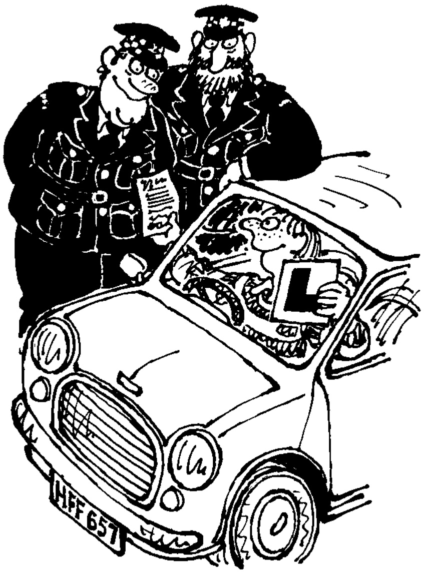

... they broke into smiles

EAGER DRIVER

It's ***(legal)*** [1]...illegal...... to drive under the age of seventeen in Britain, but a ***(boy of seventeen years old)*** [2]........................ managed to pass his driving test on the day of his seventeenth birthday. Most people would consider this ***(possible)***[3]........................ because you need a lot of lessons to pass the test. David Livesey arranged to have ***(a lesson of eight hours)*** [4]........................ beginning at dawn on his birthday. At first he was very ***(care)*** [5]........................ and ***(hesitate)***[6]........................, but he had a ***(wonder)***[7]........................ teacher and his driving improved amazingly during the day. By four in the afternoon, still feeling ***(energy)*** [8]........................, he was ready to take his test and he passed first time! He was almost in a state of shock after the test, and he drove home very slowly in the ***(red)*** [9]........................ light of the ***(set)*** [10]........................ sun. David's driving attracted the attention of two policemen, but they broke into smiles and congratulated him warmly when he showed them his certificate and told them his story.

6.2 Position of adjectives

6.2A Form and position of most adjectives [> LEG 6.4, 6.7]

Study: ★

1 Adjectives have the same form whether they refer to people or things in the singular or plural:
*He's a **tall man.*** *She's a **tall woman.*** *It's **a tall building.***
*They're **tall men.*** *They're **tall women.*** *They're **tall buildings.***

2 Most adjectives are used in two ways in English:
– before a noun: *He is an **old man.** This is an **old ticket.***
– after *be, seem,* etc. the adjective stands on its own: *The man **is old.** The ticket **is old.***

Write: Rewrite these sentences so that the adjectives come after *be:*

1 This is a big company. This company ...is big.....................
2 Kevin and Matthew are clever boys. Kevin and Matthew ....
3 Nina is a hardworking girl. Nina ....
4 These are busy streets. These streets ....
5 They're well-behaved children. The children ....

6.28 Adjectives that can change in meaning before a noun or after 'be'
[> LEG 6.7, **6.8]**

Study: ★★

– before a noun: *John is an **old friend** of mine.* (= I've known him for a long time)
– after *be:* *My friend, John, **is** very **old.*** (= old in years)

Some other common adjectives that can change meaning according to their position are: *early, faint, fine, heavy, ill, late, sick.* Note that *sick* can go before a noun or after *be,* but *ill* (like ***well***) comes after *be. Sick* means 'ill' and also means 'upset in the stomach'.

Write 1: Rewrite these sentences using adjectives with the same meaning as the words in italics.

1 John is a friend *whom I have known for a very long time.*
John is .....an old friend.....................
2 Some money was left to me by my uncle *who is dead.*
Some money was left ....
3 She drew a line *which I could hardly see.*
She drew ....
4 Your suitcase *weighs a lot.*
Your suitcase is ....
5 Susan *smokes a lot.*
She's ....

Write 2: Which words or phrases in B will replace words or phrases in A?

A	B
1 Her wedding dress is made of *beautifulsilk.* b	a) a sick
2 The weather is *good* today. ___	b) fine (twice)
3 Something's upset me. I think I'm going to *throw up.* ___	c) very ill
4 John is *extremely unwell.* ___	d) in the early
5 I was born *at the beginning of the* 1960s. ___	e) be sick
6 Martha is *not a healthy* woman. ___	

6.2C Adjectives before and after nouns with a change of meaning [> LEG 6.11.2]

Study: ★★★

Adjectives go before nouns in English [> 6.2A], but there are a few adjectives which go before or after nouns and they change in meaning according to their position:
This ***elect body*** meets once a year. (before the noun = 'specially chosen')
The ***president elect*** takes over in May. (after the noun = 'who has been elected')

Write: Which words or phrases in B best explain the words or phrases in A?

A

1 The concerned doctor phoned for an ambulance. b
2 The doctor concerned is on holiday at the moment. __
3 It was a very involved question. __
4 The person involved has left the company. __
5 Present employees number 3,000. __
6 The employees present should vote on this. __
7 It was a proper question. __
8 The question proper has not been answered. __
9 Janet is a responsible girl. __
10 The girl responsible has been expelled. __

B

a) correct
b) worried
c) who was blamed
d) complicated
e) with a sense of duty
f) now employed
g) here now
h) connected with this (twice)
i) itself

6.2D Context

Write: Put in the missing adjectives. Alternatives are sometimes possible.

alive, asleep, beautiful, big, complete, fast, fresh, lovely, pleased, polished, poor, quick-drying, shiny, tall, young

NOT A FAST LIFE!
Three and a half years ago Mr Bell received a [1]...beautiful... present from his [2]....................... grandson. The boy had had a [3]....................... holiday by the seaside and had bought his grandfather a present. It was a [4]....................... sea-snail which had been stuck on top of an oyster and another shell. Mr Bell was very [5]....................... with his gift and put it on a shelf. While he was dusting one morning, he accidentally knocked the [6]....................... snail off the oyster. He went to find some [7]....................... glue. When he came back, he couldn't believe his eyes. The snail had moved along the shelf. It was [8]....................... ! 'It must have been [9]....................... all these years and the shock woke it up.' Mr Bell said. He put the snail in a paper bag to show his friends. At first they thought the story was [10]....................... nonsense, until they saw the snail. The [11]....................... creature was so hungry, it had eaten a hole in the bag. Mr Bell gave it a [12]....................... meal of [13]....................... cabbage leaves which it really enjoyed. 'It's not such a [14]....................... story,' a scientist explained. 'These creatures live on the seashore and don't lead a [15]....................... life. They can hibernate for years without eating.'

It had eaten a hole in the bag

6.3 Adjectives that behave like nouns; '-ed/-ing' endings

6.3A 'The' (etc.) + adjective + noun: 'the blind' [> LEG 6.6, 6.12.2]

Study:
★★

1 We use a noun after an adjective or we use *one/ones* [> 4.2B-C, compare > 3.1C]:
He's a ***young man.*** (Not *'He's a young') You* ***poor*** *thing!* (Not **You poor!')*
I sold my ***old car*** *and I've bought a* ***new one.*** (Not **... and I've bought a new')*

2 In the plural, we use no article (zero) [> 3.1A]:
They are ***young men.*** *You* ***poor things!*** *We sold our* ***old cars*** *and bought* ***new ones.***

3 We can use a few adjectives on their own after *the* to refer to 'the group as a whole':
the blind/the sighted, the deaf, the dumb, the living/the dead, the rich/the poor,
the young/the old, the elderly, the healthy/the sick, the injured, the unemployed:
We have opened a new school for ***the blind/for blind people.*** (Not *'for (the) blinds')*

We say *He is* ***blind.*** or *He is* ***a blind man.*** (Not **He is a blind.**)
We say *They are* ***blind.*** or *They are* ***blind people.*** (Not *'They are blinds.**)

Write 1: Rewrite these sentences using the adjectives with *man, woman* or *people.*

1 He is *poor.* ....He is a poor man.........
2 They are *unemployed.* ....
3 She is *young.* ....
4 He is *elderly.* ....
5 She is *sick.* ....
6 They are *healthy.* ....

Write 2: Rewrite these sentences to refer to a group without using the word *people.*

1 Rich people should pay more tax than poor people.
.......The rich should pay more tax than the poor.........
2 What hope can the government give to unemployed people?
....
3 Will this new invention really help deaf people?
....
4 Old people usually have to live on a fixed income.
....
5 After the crash, the injured people were rushed to hospital.
....
6 This is a memorial to dead people.
....
7 We have interesting study courses for elderly people.
....
8 Healthy people never think about getting ill.
....
9 It's a nurse's job to look after sick people.
....
10 Blind people should have the same opportunities as sighted people.
....

6.38 Adjectives ending in '-ed' and '-ing': 'interested/interesting'

[> LEG 6.15, App 10]

Study: ★★

1 We use some past participles ending in *-ed* (e.g. *excited*) and some present participles ending in *-ing* (e.g. *exciting*) as adjectives. Common pairs of *-ed/-ing* adjectives are: ***amazed/amazing, annoyed/annoying, bored/boring, enchanted/enchanting, excited/exciting,*** *interestedhnteresting,* ***pleased/pleasing, tired/tiring.***
Similar pairs are: ***delighted/delightful, impressed/impressive, upset/upsetting.***

2 We often use *-ed* endings to describe people:
The story interested ***John.*** → ***John*** *was* ***interested*** *in the story.*
We often use *-ing* endings to describe things, events, etc.: ***The story*** *was* ***interesting.***

3 We can also use *-ing* endings to describe people: *Isn't* ***John interesting!*** Compare:
Gloria was interesting to be with. (= that was the effect she had on others)
Gloria was interested. (= that was the effect someone or something had on her)

Write: Rewrite these sentences using *-ed/-ing* or other endings. Make necessary changes.

1 The coincidence amazed *us.* We ...were amazed by the coincidence....................
2 *The journey* tired us. The journey ....
3 The experience upset *Sylvia.* Sylvia ....
4 *The experience* upset us. The experience ....
5 *Gloria* enchanted me. Gloria ....
6 I enchanted *Gloria.* Gloria ....
7 *The children* delighted us. The children ....
8 The children delighted *us.* We ....
9 *The new building* impresses us. The new building ....
10 The new building impresses *everybody.* Everybody ....

6.3C Context

Write: Put in the correct forms of the words in brackets: *the* + adjective or *-ed/-ing* adjectives.

UNDERTAKERS
ONCE YOU'VE TRIED ONE OF OUR FUNERALS YOU'LL NEVER WANT TO TRY ANOTHER

You'll never want to try another!

A HUMAN IDEAL

A just society is a human ideal. We would all like to live in a place where *(rich)* ......the rich........ are not too rich and *(poor)*^{2}............................ are not too poor; where no one would be *(shock)*^{3}............................ or *(embarrass)* .... at the way *(old)*^{5}............................ are cared for. *(blind)* .... would have as much opportunity as *(sighted)* .... *(deaf)*^{8}............................ would be able to develop their skills. *(unemployed)*^{9}............................ would not depend on the state, because no one would be unemployed. *(healthy)*^{10}............................ would take care of *(sick)* ^{11}............................ . The most innocent people in society, *(young)* ^{12}............................, would be protected. In this happy place no one would feel *(depress)*^{13}............................ or *(distress)*^{14}............................ Unfortunately, in the real world, life can be both *(distress)*^{15}............................ and *(depress)* ^{16}............................ . So let's be thankful for a sense of humour. I recently saw a notice in an undertaker's window and I wasn't sure whether it was addressed to *(living)*^{17}............................ or *(dead)*^{18}............................ . It said: 'Once you've tried one of our funerals, you'll never want to try another!'

6.4 Adjectives after 'be', 'seem', etc.; word order of adjectives

6.4A 'Look good' compared with 'play well' [> LEG 6.17]

Study: ★★

1 After be, look, feel, seem, smell, taste, and sound we use adjectives:
That egg ***is/tastes bad.*** (Bad is an adjective describing the noun egg.) [> 1.2C]

2 After other verbs, we use adverbs: John ***behaved badly.*** [> 7.1]
(Badly is an adverb: it adds to the meaning of the verb behave.) Compare:
John ***looks good.*** (adjective) John ***looks well.*** (adjective [> 6.2B]) John ***plays well.*** (adverb)

Write: Supply adjectives or adverbs in the following.

1 He behaved ...nicely... (nice)
2 The music sounds .... (nice)
3 The play ended .... (bad)
4 This food smells .... (bad)
5 Your cooking is .... (good)
6 You cook .... (good)
7 The train went .... (smooth)
8 I've just shaved and my face feels .... (smooth)

6.48 Word order: two-word and three-word nouns: 'a teak kitchen cupboard' [> LEG 6.13, 6.20.1]

Study: ★★

1 Materials (nouns) behave like adjectives when we use them to form compound nouns:
a cupboard (noun) made of teak (noun) → a ***teak cupboard*** (compound noun) [> 2.2C]

2 We can have three-word compound nouns. 'Material' comes before 'purpose' or 'use':
a teak cupboard, used in the kitchen → a ***teak kitchen cupboard*** (compound noun)
Adjectives go in front of nouns [> 6.2A]. We cannot separate a compound noun by an adjective:
a ***fine*** teak kitchen cupboard. (Not *a teak fine kitchen cupboard*)

Write: Make two-word and three-word nouns.

1 a shirt made of cotton ......a cotton shirt..
2 a shirt made of cotton/worn in the summer ....
3 a rake made of wire ....
4 a clock used in the kitchen ....
5 a clock made of plastic/used in the kitchen ....

6.4C Word order: past participle + noun: 'a handmade cupboard' [> LEG 6.20]

Study: ★★

An adjectival past participle (damaged, handmade, etc.) comes in front of a noun:

adjective + one-word noun:	a ***handmade*** cupboard
adjective + two-word noun:	a ***handmade*** teak cupboard
adjective + three-word noun:	a ***handmade*** teak kitchen cupboard

Write: Add these adjectives to the nouns made in 6.4B above: unused, damaged, worn, broken, handmade.

1 ......a worn cotton shirt..
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....

6.4D Word order: adjective + noun: 'a big round table' [> LEG 6.20]

Study: ★★

The order of adjectives in front of a noun is as follows (in reverse order):

3 **where from? + past participle:** *a **French handmade** kitchen cupboard*
Or: **past participle + where from?:** *a **handmade French** kitchen cupboard*

2 **sizelagelshapelcolour + where from? + past participle:**
*a **large French handmade** cupboard*

1 **qualitylopinion + size, etc.** The most general adjective usually comes first:
*a **beautiful large French handmade** teak cupboard*

summary:

opinion	**size**	**age**	**shape**	**colour**		**from?**	**past part.**	**noun**
a valuable	–	–	–	*brown*		*Victorian*	*handmade*	*teak cupboard*
					Or:	*handmade*	*Victorian*	

Write: You're looking for items you want to buy. Begin each sentence with *I'm looking for ...*

1 clock radio – white – Taiwanese – cheap – for my bedside table
I'm looking for a cheap white Taiwanese clock radio for my bedside table.

2 sports car – well-maintained – second-hand – with a low mileage
....

3 polished – beautiful – antique – dining-table – mahogany – English
....

4 canvas – American – a pair of – trainers – grey and red – which I can use for jogging
....

5 cottage – stone-built – small – old – country
....

6 cotton – dress – summer – pink and white – for my holiday
....

6.4E Context

Write: Put in the right word order or choose the right forms.

NOT A DOG'S DINNER!! Expensive handmade Italian leather shoes
(shoes leather Italian expensive handmade) ^{1}........................: these are my pride and joy. I own a *(old beautiful pair)* ^{2}........................ – or I did until yesterday, when I discovered that one of the shoes was missing. I had left the shoes on my *(doorstep back)* ^{3}........................ to do some gardening. My neighbour has a *(dog friendly large)* ^{4}........................ called Sam. When I saw that one of my shoes had disappeared, I knew that Sam had taken it. I can't say he behaved (***bad/badly***) ^{5}........................ . He just behaved like a dog. Leather looks (***good/well***) ^{6}........................ and tastes (***good/well***) ^{7}........................, too. I unwillingly gave Sam the *(remaining Italian shoe)* ^{8}........................ and then followed him. I not only found one *(Italian unchewed shoe)* ^{9}........................, but also a pile of things Sam had been borrowing, including my wife's *(slippers fur-lined red)* ^{10}........................, which Sam had tried to have for dinner!

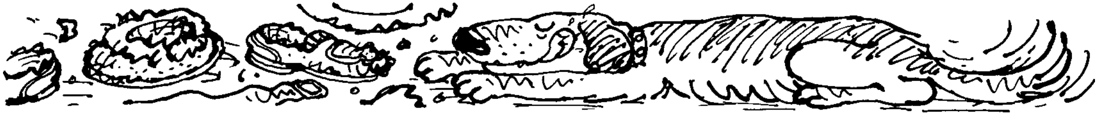

had tried to have for dinner!

6.5 The comparison of adjectives

6.5A Common comparative and superlative forms: 'cold – colder – coldest'

[> LEG 6.5, 6.22-29]

Study: ☐

1 We add *-er* and *-est* to form the comparative and superlative of most one-syllable adjectives: *clean – cleaner – the cleanest, cold – colder – the coldest.*

2 Adjectives like *hot (big, fat, sad, wet)* double the consonant: *hot – hotter – the hottest.*

3 Adjectives like *nice (fine, large, late, safe)* add *-r, -st*: *nice – nicer – the nicest.*

4 With adjectives like *busy* we use *-i* in place of *-y*: *busy – busier – the busiest.*

5 We use the **comparative** when comparing one person or thing with another.

6 We use the **superlative** when comparing one person or thing with more than one other.

Write:

1 My room's *big.* (in the house)
My room's bigger than yours. It's the biggest in the house.

2 My room's *cold.* (in the house)
....

3 My garden's *nice.* (in the street)
....

4 My desk is *tidy.* (in the office)
....

6.58 Adjectives with two or more syllables: 'clever', 'expensive' [> LEG 6.22-29]

Study: ★★

1 Some two-syllable adjectives like *happy (clever, common, narrow, pleasant, quiet, simple, stupid)* have two comparative or superlative forms:
– either with *-er/-est*: *She's cleverer than you. She's the cleverest person I know.*
– or with *more/the most*: *She's* ***more clever*** *than you. She's* ***the most clever person*** *I know.*

2 We use only *more/the most* with most two-syllable adjectives: *careless, correct, famous.*

3 We use *more/the most* with three-syllable adjectives: *more beautiful, the most beautiful.*

Write: Give both forms where possible.

1 She's *happy.*
than I am ......She's happier/more happy than I am.
person I have ever met ..She's the happiest/most happy person I have ever met.

2 His work was *careless.*
than mine ....
in the class ....

3 This problem is *simple.*
than that one ....
in the book ....

4 This watch is *expensive.*
than that one ....
in the shop ....

5 This engine is *quiet.*
than mine ....
ever built ....

6.5C Comparative and superlative forms often confused: 'olderlelder'

[> *LEG* 6.24-26, 7.4-5, App 12]

Study:
★★

1 *Further and farther refer to distance: London is five miles* ***further/farther****.*
*Further (Not *farther') can mean 'in addition': There's no further information.*

2 *We use* **elder/eldest** *before a noun only with reference to people in a family:*
my elder **brother/son**, *the eldest child, he's the eldest (but not *He is elder than me.*)*
We use **older/oldest** *for people and things: He is older than I am. This book is older.*

3 **Irregular comparisons:** *good/well, better, the best; bad, worse, the worst; much/many, more, the most; little, less, the least.*
Good is an adjective; well is adjective or adverb [> 6.4A].

4 *Lesser is formed from less but is not a true comparative. We cannot use than after it.*
Lesser means 'not so great' and we use it in fixed phrases like the lesser of two evils.

5 *Latest/last*: *I bought the latest* (i.e. *most recent) edition of today's paper.*
I bought the last (i.e. *final) edition of today's paper.*

6 *The comparative and superlative of little is smaller/smallest: a* ***small/little*** *boy, a* ***smaller/the*** *smallest boy. Very young children often use littler and littlest.*

Write: *Circle the right forms in these sentences. In some cases both forms are right.*

1 *Is your house* much ([✓ further]/[✓ farther])?
2 *Who is the (oldestleldest) in this class?*
3 *Your driving is* (worse/worst) *than mine.*
4 *It's the* (less/lesser) *of two evils.*
5 *Have you heard the* (last/latest) *news?*
6 *We have no* (further/farther) *information.*
7 *Jane Somers writes* (good/well).
8 *His* (latest/last) *words were: 'The end'.*
9 *This is the town's (oldestleldest) house.*
10 *My flat is* (littler/smaller) *than yours.*
11 *I've got* (less/lesser) *than you.*
12 *Jane is (olderlelder) than I am.*
13 *This is the* (more/most) *expensive.*
14 *His English is* (best/better) *than mine.*
15 *It's the* (better/best) *in the shop.*
16 *It's the (furthestlfarthest) point west.*
17 *It's the (oldestleldest) tree in the country.*
18 *She's my* (elder/older) *sister.*
19 *I've got the* (least/less)!
20 *You've got the* (more/most)!

6.5D Context

Write: *Put in the right forms. Alternatives are possible.*

King Karate was at the bar as usual!

THE CHAMP

The two men were sitting at the bar. The one (near)^{1}.....nearer...... *to me was the (big)*^{2}........................ *and (strong)*^{3}........................ *man I have ever seen. The one (far)*^{4}........................ *from me was the (****small/little****)* ^{5}........................ *and (weak)* .... *. They were having the (violent)*^{7}........................ *argument I had ever heard. Suddenly the little man said,* 'It's *a case of the (small)*^{8}........................ *brain in the world fitted into the (big)*^{9}........................ *head!'They were his (****last/ latest****)* ^{10}........................ *words. The little man didn't know what hit him as he fell to the floor. 'When Shortie wakes up, tell him that was my (****better/best****)* ^{11}........................ *Karate chop,' the big man told the barman as he left. The next evening, King Karate was at the bar as usual when Shortie crept in quietly, swung his arm and the champ fell to the floor. 'When Karate wakes up,' Shortie said, 'tell him it was my (****oldest/eldest****)* ^{12}........................ *Land Rover starting handle.'*

7 Adverbs

7.1 Adverbs of manner

7.1A Adverbs with and without '-ly': 'carefully', 'fast' [> LEG 7.7, 7.13, Apps 14, 15.1]

Study: ★★

1 An adverb adds to the meaning of a verb. Adverbs of manner tells us ***how*** something happens:
How did John behave? – (He behaved) badly.

2 We form adverbs of manner by adding *-ly* to an adjective: *slow/slowly*.
After a consonant, *-y* changes to *-i*: *heavy/heavily*.
It was a slow train./The train went slowly. It was heavy rain./It rained heavily.

3 We can use some words as adjectives or adverbs without adding *-ly* or *-ily*:
It was a fast train. → The train went fast.
Other examples are: *better, best, early, hard, high, last, late, monthly, near, wide, worse.*

Write: Supply the right adverb. Some adverbs end in *-ly* and some do not.

1 He's a bad driver. He drives ......badly......
2 She's a ***hard*** worker. She works ....
3 He's a ***fast*** runner. He runs ....
4 I'm a ***better*** player than you. I play ....
5 This is an ***airmail*** letter. Send it ....
6 He made a ***sudden*** move. He moved ....
7 She gave a ***rude*** reply. She replied ....
8 The train is ***early.*** It has arrived ....
9 Make your ***best*** effort. Do your ....
10 She's ***glad*** to help. She helps ....
11 He's a ***quick*** thinker. He thinks ....
12 She's an ***eager*** helper. She helps ....
13 My name is ***last.*** I come ....
14 The plane is very ***high.*** It's flying ....
15 Be ***careful.*** Act ....
16 The bus was ***late.*** It came ....
17 She was ***brave.*** She acted ....
18 The house was ***near.*** We went ....
19 What a ***wide*** window! Open it ....
20 I get a ***monthly*** bill. I pay ....

7.1B Two forms and different meanings: 'hardlhardly' [> LEG 7.14, App 15.2]

Study: ★★

Some adverbs have two forms, one without *-ly* and one with *-ly*.
These forms have different meanings and uses: e.g. *hard/hardly, last/lastly, late/lately*:
He played ***hard****. He* ***hardly*** *played at all.*

Write: Choose the right adverb in each sentence.

1 Farm workers have to work very ....hard.......... during the harvest. (hard/hardly)
2 Farm workers earn .... enough money to pay their bills. (hard/hardly)
3 1 got off first in the race but managed to come .... (last/lastly)
4 – and ...., I'd like to thank all those who made my success possible. (lastllastly)
5 We've been receiving a lot of junk mail .... (late/lately)
6 The postman brings my mail so .... I rarely see it before I go to work. (late/lately)
7 I'm sure the boss thinks very .... of you. (high/highly)
8 If you want to succeed, you should aim .... (high/highly)
9 I don't think you were treated very .... (just/justly)
10 I've .... been offered a job in Mexico! (just/justly)
11 Please don't go too .... the edge of the platform. (near/nearly)
12 I .... fell off the edge of the platform! (near/nearly)

7.1C Adjectives which end in '-ly': 'friendly' [> LEG 7.12]

Study: ★★

Some adjectives end in *-ly*: *cowardly, friendly, lively, lovely, motherly, sickly, silly*:
Meg's a ***friendly*** *girl. John gave me a* ***friendly*** *handshake.*
If we want to use these words as adverbs we say *in a friendly way/manner/fashion*:
Meg always greets me ***in a friendly way***. (Not **greets me friendly/friendlily**)

Write: Change the adjectives into adverbs or adverbial phrases in the following sentences.

1 That was a *cowardly* thing to do. You acted ....in a cowardly way........
2 That was a *quick* response. She responded ....
3 The music was very *loud*. The band played far too ....!
4 That was a *silly* thing to do. You acted ....
5 The orchestra gave a *lively* performance. They performed ....
6 She's a *slow* runner. She runs ....
7 The singers gave a *bad* performance. They performed ....
8 She can't control her *motherly* feelings. Even though he's 40, she looks after him ....
9 She's a *lovely* teacher. She handles young children ....
10 She delivered a *careful* speech. She spoke ....
11 He looks pale and *sickly*. He always greets me ....
12 You don't have to be so *unfriendly*! You needn't look at me ....

7.1D Context

Write: Put in the missing adjectives and adverbs. Add *-ly* or make other changes where you need to.

beautiful, best (twice), *careful, cheap, early, far, fast, full, hurried, important, last, new, past, quick, rapid, silly*

... threw them out of the window

A SPLASH OF COLOUR

¹......last...... Thursday I had an ²........................ interview for a job. I got up ³........................ and dressed ⁴........................ . I put on my .... jacket and trousers, to look my ⁶........................ . I had to travel by train, so I walked to the station which isn't ⁷........................ from my house. I was walking quite ⁸........................ when I saw a man just ahead painting his fence with red paint. He didn't notice me as I walked ⁹........................ . Then he turned suddenly and splashed my ¹⁰........................ trousers! He had acted ¹¹........................ and he apologized, but the damage was done. There was a big store on the corner, so I decided to buy a new pair ¹²........................ . I could change on the train. I ¹³........................ found a nice pair, which I bought quite ¹⁴........................ . The shop was ¹⁵........................, so I paid ¹⁶........................, grabbed my shopping-bag and left. On the train, I went to the toilet to change. I took off my stained trousers and threw them out of the window. Then I opened the bag to get my ¹⁷........................ ones, but all I found was a pink woollen sweater!

7.2 Adverbs of time

7.2A Points of time: 'Monday', 'this morning' [> LEG 7.21-22, App 48]

Study: ☐

1 *Adverbs of time tell us when something happens. 'Points of time' tell us 'exactly when': e.g. today, yesterday, **this/next/last** week, on Monday, at 5 o'clock.*

2 *We can refer to days of the week without this, last, next or on:*
I'm seeing him **Monday.** (= this/next/on *Monday). (Not *I'm seeing him the Monday.3*
I saw him **Monday.** (= last/on *Monday). (Not *I saw him the Monday.3*

*3 This morning, etc. (Not *today morning* *today afternoon* etc.) can refer to:*
- *now:* *I feel terrible* ***this morning.***
- *earlier:* *I spoke to him* ***this morning.***
- *later on today:* *I'll speak to him* ***this morning.***

4 *Note: tonight, tomorrow night and last night (Not *yesterday night').*

5 *Note: the day before yesterday, the day after tomorrow (in the evening), etc.*

6 *We do not use the in phrases like next Monday, last Monday: I'll see him* ***next Monday.***

7 *We normally put time references at the end of a sentence or clause, but we can also put them* at the beginning: *(This morning) I went to the dentist (this morning).* [> 1.1A]

Write 1: *Fill in the missing points of time.*

1	............yesterday............	*today*	............tomorrow............
2	....	*this morning*	....
3	....	*at noon*	....
4	....	*this afternoon*	....
5	....	*this evening*	....
6	....	*tonight*	....
7	....	*this Monday*	....
8	....	*this January*	....
9	....	*this week*	....
10	....	*this year*	....

Write 2: *Today is Tuesday. Write sentences using the right points of time (today, etc.)*

Monday	**Tuesday**	*Wednesday*

1 *When is she arriving? (Tuesday morning)* ..... She is arriving this morning.........
2 *When can you see him? (Tuesday)* ....
3 *When did she arrive? (Monday night)* ....
4 *When are you expecting her? (Wednesday night)* ....
5 *When will you be home? (Tuesday night)* ....
6 *When can I make an appointment? (Tuesday afternoon)* ....
7 *When can I see you? (Thursday)* ....
8 *When did she leave? (Monday in the evening)* ....
9 *When can I see you? (Thursday morning)* ....
10 *When can I come to your office? (Tuesday midday)* ....
11 *When did he leave? (Monday morning)* ....
12 *When will she phone? (Wednesday in the afternoon)* ....

7.28 'Still' and 'yet' [> LEG 7.25, 7.27]

Study: ★★

1 *Still* and *yet* mean 'until now' and we often use them with the present perfect [> 9.5A].

2 We use *still* to emphasize continuity, mainly in affirmatives and sometimes in questions:
I'm still waiting for my new passport. Is Martha still in hospital?
We can also use ***still*** in the negative for special emphasis: ***John still hasn't written to me.***
Still has the same position in a sentence as adverbs of frequency [> 7.4B].

3 We use ***yet*** mainly in questions and negatives and often put it at the end of a sentence:
Has your new passport arrived yet? – No, not yet. It hasn't arrived yet.

Write: Rewrite these sentences supplying ***still*** or ***yet.*** Sometimes both are possible.

1 The children are at the cinema. ....The children are still at the cinema.........
2 I haven't met your brother. ....
3 Jim works for the same company. ....
4 Has she phoned you? .... – No, not ....
5 The new law hasn't come into force. ....

7.2C 'Already' and other adverbs of time [> LEG 7.23-24, 7.26, 7.28-29]

Study: ★★

1 *Already* means 'before now' or 'so soon'. We use it in questions and affirmatives, but not in negatives. We can put it in the middle [> 7.4B] of a sentence or at the end:
*Have you **already** finished lunch? Have you finished lunch **already**?*
This machine is already out of date. It's out of date already.

2 Other common adverbs of time are: *afterwards, at last, just, lately, now, once, recently, soon, suddenly, then, these days*. We often use these adverbs in story-telling.

Write: Rewrite these sentences using *yet* or *already*. Sometimes both are possible.

1 Have you had breakfast? – I've had it, thanks. ......I've already had it, thanks..........
2 I haven't received an invitation to the party. ....
3 I have received an invitation to the party. ....
4 Have you finished eating? ....
5 Haven't you finished eating?..........

7.2D Context

Write: Put in ***already, immediately, this week, still, then, yesterday, yet.*** Use each word once only.

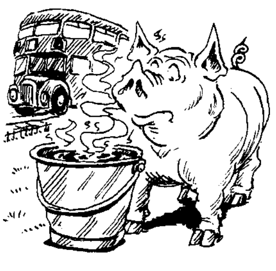

Not fit for **pigs!**

FIT FOR HUMANS, BUT NOT FOR PIGS!
[1].....This week..... there's going to be a festival of British Food and Farming in Hyde Park in London. The festival hasn't begun [2].......... and farmers are .... bringing their animals. But a pig farmer has [4].......... run into a serious problem. [5].......... he arrived with his pigs from the Welsh Hills – hundreds of miles away. The pigs were very thirsty when they arrived in Hyde Park and the farmer [6].......... gave them some London water. [7].......... he got a big surprise because the pigs refused to drink the water. London water is fit for humans but not for pigs!

7.3 Adverbial phrases of duration

7.3A 'Since', 'for' and 'ago' [> LEG 7.31, 7.32, 9.18]

Study: ★★

1 **'Since' + a point of time** [> 7.2A] answers *Since when?* We use *since* with the present perfect to mark a period lasting till now: *I haven't seen him* ***since January***. [> 9.5A, 10.2D]

2 **'For' + period of time** answers *How long?* We use *for* to refer to periods of time:

– in the past:	*My wife and I worked in America* ***for five months.***
– in the future:	*John will be staying in New York* ***for two weeks.***
– in the present perfect:	*I've known Susan* ***for five years.*** [> 9.5A, 10.2D]

3 **Period of time + 'ago'** answers *How long ago?* and marks the start of a period going back from now. We use *ago* with the simple past [> 9.3C]: *I* ***arrived*** *here* ***two months ago.***

Write 1: Show where *since* or *ago* will fit into these sentences.

Since when have...
1 When have you been interested in jazz?
2 I saw your mother a week.
3 I started work here seven months.
4 I saw her last week and haven't seen her.
5 I haven't been home 1987.
6 How long did you become a director?

Write 2: Show where *since* or *for* will fit into these sentences.

... for five years ...
1 They lived here five years before moving.
2 They have lived here 1984.
3 I've known him six years.
4 I've been expecting a letter weeks.
5 I've been expecting a letter last week.
6 I've enjoyed jazz I was a boy.

7.38 'Till' (or 'until') and 'by' [> LEG 7.34]

Study: ★★★

1 Some verbs naturally refer to 'periods of time' or 'continuity' [> 9.5B]: e.g. *learn, lie, live, rain, sit, sleep, stand, stay, wait* and *work.*

2 *Till* (or *until)* and *by* mean 'any time before and not later than'.
We cannot use *by* at all with these 'continuity' verbs. (Not **I'll wait here by 5 o'clock.')*
We can only use *till* (or *until)* with these verbs:
I'll ***wait*** *here* **till** (or **until) 5** *o'clock.* ***I won't wait*** *here* **till** (or **until) 5** *o'clock.*

3 We use *by* with verbs which do not refer to periods of time.
We can think of these as 'point of time verbs': e.g. *arrive, come, finish, go, leave:*
She ***will arrive by 5.*** (= any time before and not later than 5.)
She ***won't arrive by 5.*** *She'll arrive at 6.*

4 We use *till* or *until* with 'point of time verbs' only in the negative.
She ***won't arrive till*** (or ***until***) 5. (But not **She will arrive till 5.**)

Write: Supply *by* or *till.*

1 I'll wait ....till.......... Monday before answering his letter.
2 I intend to stay in bed .... 10 o'clock tomorrow morning.
3 Your suit will be ready .... Friday.
4 Your suit won't be ready .... Friday. You can collect it then.
5 Your suit won't be ready .... Friday. You can collect it next Monday.
6 I'm sure I will have left .... Monday.
7 Your aunt says she won't leave .... Monday. Monday's the day she's going to leave.

7.3C 'During', 'in' and 'for' [> LEG 7.35]

Study: ★★

1 *During* means:
– either: 'from the beginning to the end': *We had a lot of fun* ***during the holidays.***
– or: 'at some point during a period of time': *I'll mend the gate* ***during the weekend.***
We watched a very nice film ***during the flight*** *to New York.*

2 We use *in* like *during* to refer to time:
We had a lot of fun ***in the holidays.*** (Or: ... *during the holidays)*
But we cannot use *in* to refer to an activity or event:
We watched a film ***during the flight.*** (Not **in the flight')*

3 *For* tells us 'how long' [> 7.3A]:
We stayed in Recife ***for a week/for three weeks.*** (Not **during three weeks')*

Write: Supply *in, during* and *for.* Show which sentences take both *in* and *during.*

1 It was very hot ....during.......... August.
2 I was sent abroad .... my military service.
3 It rained .... the night.
4 I'll see you .... the lunch hour.
5 I woke up twice .... the night.
6 I tried to get a taxi .... a whole hour.
7 Many people gave up .... the course.
8 I suddenly felt ill .... my speech.
9 There was an accident .... the race.
10 I sleep .... the daytime.
11 I'm going abroad .... June.
12 Can you hold your breath .... two minutes?

7.3D Context

Write: Put in *during, in, by, till, since, for* or *ago.*

PEACE AND QUIET

I moved to this area seven years [1].........ago......... . [2]........................ years I have had noisy neighbours. Ever .... I moved into this flat, I've had to put up with noise .... the night. I decided I'd had enough and I've been looking for a new flat .... the beginning of the year. I haven't found anything .... now. Every week I go to the local estate agent's office, but it's the same story. 'I might have something .... the end of the week,' he says, or, 'Wait [8]........................ next week. I think I might have a few flats .... then.' I've seen a few flats [10]........................ my search, but I don't like any of them. One flat I saw has been empty [11]........................ two years. 'It's got a busy road on one side and a railway on the other!' I exclaimed. 'I want peace and quiet.' Last week I visited the agent again. 'I won't leave [12]........................ you show me something,' I said. He smiled and said, 'I've got just the flat for you.' I went to see it and I was horrified. 'But it's next to a cemetery!' I cried. 'But you won't have noisy neighbours,' my agent said. 'It's ideal for peace and quiet!'

RIP
RIP
RIP
RIP
RIP
RIP
RI
REST IN PEACE

You won't have noisy neighbours!

7.4 Adverbs of frequency

7.4A Position of adverbs of frequency ('often') in affirmatives and questions

[> LEG 7.37-40]

Study:
★★

1 Adverbs of frequency generally answer the question *How often?*. The most common are: *always, almost always, generally, usually, normally, frequently, often, sometimes, hardly ever, seldom, ever, not ... ever, never.*

2 Adverbs of frequency have three basic positions in affirmative sentences:
– after be when it is the only verb in a sentence: ***I am always** late.*
– after the first auxiliary when there is more than one: ***I would always** have been late.*
– before the main verb when there is only one verb: *You **never tried** hard enough.*

3 In questions, the adverb of frequency comes after the subject: *Are **you always** late?*

Write: Rewrite these sentences using any suitable adverb of frequency in each one.

1 I am late. ....I am generally late.........
2 I was late for work. ....
3 I can tell the difference between the two. ....
4 I would have been able to find a job like yours. ....
5 You tried hard enough. ....
6 You got good marks at school. ....
7 Are you late? ....
8 Have you lived in this town? ....
9 Did you get good marks at school? ....

7.4B The position of adverbs of frequency in negative statements [> LEG 7.40.2]

Study:
★★

1 These usually come after *not: always, generally, normally, often, regularly, usually:*
*Public transport **isn't always** (etc.) very reliable.*

2 Generally, normally, often and *usually* can come after the subject for special emphasis:
***We normally** don't worry if the children are late.*

3 We use *sometimes* and *frequently* before *not* or before *isn't, doesn't, don't, didn't,* etc.:
*Debbie is **sometimes not** responsible for what she does. He is **frequently not** at home.*
*She **sometimes isn't** reliable. He **frequently doesn't** get home till 10.*

4 We can't use *not* to form negatives with *hardly ever,* etc. [> 13.2A]: *He **hardly ever writes.***
(Not **He almost always doesn't write.*' or **He doesn't hardly ever write.**)

Write: Write these sentences again using the adverbs in brackets. Make changes where necessary.

1 Public transport isn't reliable. (always) ......Public transport isn't always reliable.........
2 He wasn't late when he worked here. (often) ....
3 She doesn't arrive on time. (usually) ....
4 She doesn't arrive on time. (sometimes) ....
5 We don't worry if the children are late. (normally) ....
6 You don't phone. (hardly ever) ....
7 We don't complain. (generally) ....
8 You're not at home when I phone. (sometimes) ....

7.4C Adverbs of frequency at the beginning of a sentence [> LEG 7.40.4]

Study: ★★

For special emphasis, we can begin a sentence with frequently, generally, normally, (very) often, sometimes and usually.
We can say: We ***normally*** don't worry if the children are late home from school.
Or: ***Normally,*** we don't worry if the children are late home from school.

Write: Answer each question in full putting the adverb a) in the middle and b) at the beginning.

1 Do you ever bring work home from the office? (often)
I often bring work home from the office. Often, I bring work home ...
2 Does John leave home before his wife does? (normally)
....
3 Have you ever forgotten to lock the back door? (frequently)
....
4 Do you know when to wake up? (usually)
....
5 Are you the one who pays the bills? (generally)
....
6 Is the traffic heavy in the mornings? (often)
....
7 Do you ever have power cuts? (sometimes)
We ....
8 Are there complaints about the service? (often)
....

7.40 Context

Write: Show where the adverbs in brackets can go in the sentences that follow them.

People don't carry stuffed gorillas!

WHERE DID I PUT MY TEETH?
(^{1}ever) Have you forgotten something on a train or bus? ever forgotten
(^{2}*never*) Don't say you have!
(^{3}*always*) (^{4}*occasionally*) We can't be careful with our things and most of us must have left something behind when getting off a bus or train.
(^{5}*never*) There can't be anyone who forgets anything.
(^{6}*regularly*) Over 150,000 items a year are dealt with by London Transport's Lost Property Office.
(^{7}*normally*) People don't carry stuffed gorillas, but someone recently left one on a train.
(^{8}*most* often) The things people lose are umbrellas and keys.
(^{9}*sometimes*) But there are items that are not very common.
(^{10}*ever*) Can you imagine losing a bed and not claiming it?
(^{11}often) Prams and pushchairs are lost.
(^{12}*frequently*) But it is unbelievable that people forget false teeth and even glass eyes when they get off a train!
(^{13}*often*) Yet they do!

7.5 Adverbs of degree

7.5A The two meanings of 'quite' [> LEG 6.5, 7.41-42]

Study: ★★

1 *Quite, fairly* and *rather* are common **adverbs of degree**. They can make the word they modify weaker or stronger and their effect depends on stress and intonation. If we say:

The film is ***quite good!*** and our voice 'goes up', this means 'I enjoyed it on the whole'.

The film is ***quite good****.* and our voice 'goes down', this means 'I didn't really enjoy it'.

We can put quite in front of ordinary adjectives (quite good), adverbs (quite slowly), and a few verbs (I quite enjoy). Regardless of stress, the meaning is 'less than'.

2 We can also use quite with 'absolute' adjectives (dead, empty and full), and with 'strong' adjectives like *amazing* and *wonderful.* Then it means 'completely'. The voice 'goes up'.

The man was ***quite dead****! The bucket is* ***quite full****! The film was* ***quite wonderful****!*

Write: Answer these questions in full with quite, and say whether quite means 'less than' or 'completely'.

1 What was the film like? (good) ...... The film was quite good ('less than') ......
2 How was the exhibition? (amazing) ......
3 What's Pam like? (wonderful) ......
4 How was the play? (awful) ......
5 How was your holiday? (quite enjoy) ......
6 Do you eat snails? (quite like) ......

7.58 'Fairly' [> LEG 7.43]

Study: ★★

Fairly often goes with 'good' adjectives and adverbs (good, nice, well, etc.). It is generally 'less complimentary' than quite. We do not use 'enough' [> 16.4B] to mean quite or fairly.
What's Yoko's English like? – It's quite good. ('complimentary') Not 'enough good*
What's *Yoko's* English like? – It's ***fairly good.*** ('less complimentary') Not *enough good'
We can't use fairly with some 'absolute' adjectives: Not 'fairly, *dead/fairly* wonderful*

Write: Add quite and fairly. Mark as 'complimentary', 'less complimentary' or 'completely'.

1 She sings ...... quite/fairly ...... well. ('complimentary'/'less complimentary')
2 The dinner is ...... spoilt. ......
3 I feel ...... sick. ......
4 She's ...... clever. ......
5 I think he's ...... mad. ......
6 You're ...... incredible! ......

7.5C 'Rather' [> LEG 7.44]

Study: ★★

Rather is stronger than quite and fairly and suggests 'inclined to be'.
It often goes with 'bad' adjectives (*bad, poor, awful, unpleasant*, etc.).
When it goes with 'good' adjectives (*good, nice, tasty*, etc.) it often means 'surprisingly':
This ice-cream is rather *good*. (perhaps I didn't expect it to be)

Write: Add ***quite*** and ***rather*** to each sentence, where possible. Say if they mean 'inclined to (be)', 'less than' or 'completely'.

1 I'm afraid Jane's health is ......quite/rather........ poor. ('completely'/'inclined to be')........
2 Don't worry! Your son is .... all right! ....
3 Your work has been .... unsatisfactory. ....
4 I'm afraid an appointment tomorrow is .... impossible. ....
5 Last night's documentary was .... interesting. ....

7.5D 'Much', 'any', 'far' and 'a lot' as adverbs of degree [> LEG 5.12.3, 7.45]

Study: ★★

1 We can use ***much*** and ***far*** with comparatives and superlatives to say 'to what degree':
Jane is much better today. London is far bigger than Edinburgh.
This Indian cookery book is by far the best. London is much the biggest city in Britain.

2 We can use ***a lot*** and ***any*** with comparatives: ***It's a lot bigger. Is it any better?***

3 ***Not much*** and ***not any*** go with a few adjectives: ***This battery isn't much good/any good.***

4 We can use ***not much*** and ***(not) a lot*** with verbs such as ***like*** and ***enjoy:***
I don't much like fish. I don't like fish (very) much. I (don't) like fish a lot.

5 We often use ***much*** and ***far*** with ***prefer*** and ***would rather*** [> 16.8B, 11.8]:
*I **much prefer** tea to coffee. I'**d far rather** have tea than coffee.*

Write: Add ***much, any, far*** or ***a lot*** and give alternatives where possible.

1 I'm not much/any good at maths.
2 You're .... quicker than me.
3 This is .... more expensive.
4 This is .... the best way to enjoy yourself.
5 I can't go .... faster.
6 Those two recordings aren't ....different.
7 I don't ....like people who show off.
8 I ....prefer swimming to cycling.
9 This machine isn't ....use.
10 You're ....thinner than when I last saw you.

7.5E Context

Write: Put in any suitable adverbs of degree ***(any, many, much, rather, fairly, quite,*** etc.).

CAN WE GO HOME PLEASE?

It was [1].......quite...... late. The restaurant clock showed 1.30a.m. The waiters were feeling [2]...................... tired and were beginning to yawn. There was one [3]...................... middle-aged couple left. They had clearly had [4]...................... a good meal. Now they were looking at each other across the table and were [5]......................unaware of the world around them. The waiters wanted to go home. One of them asked the couple if they wanted [6]...................... more to eat or drink. He didn't get an answer. It clearly wasn't [7]...................... use asking questions! One of the waiters had [8]...................... a good idea. He began stacking chairs upside-down onto the tables. The others joined in. Another waiter turned off the lights. In the end, the restaurant was [9]......................dim. The chairs were stacked on the tables round the couple who just sat and sat and sat!

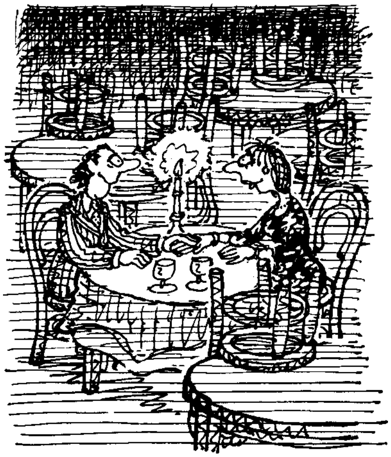

The couple sat and sat and sat!

7.6 Intensifiers

7.6A 'Very', 'too' and 'very much' [> LEG 6.8.2, 6.9, 6.28.2, 7.45, 7.48, 7.50-51]

Study:
★★

1 **Intensifiers** are words like *very* and *too* which strengthen adjectives and adverbs.

2 We use *very* to strengthen:
– the positive form of adjectives (not comparative/superlative): *Martha has been* ***very ill.***
– adjective + noun: *John is a* ***very nice man.***
– adverbs: *The wheels of bureaucracy turn* ***very slowly.***
– many past participle adjectival forms: *I'm* ***very interested.*** *You're* ***very mistaken.***
The very goes with ***best/worst:*** *It's* ***the very best/the very worst*** *meal I've ever had.*
and some nouns (***beginning/end***): *I waited till* ***the very end*** *of the film.*

3 *Too* goes before adjectives and adverbs and means 'more than is desirable' [> 7.76, 16.4B]:
Compare: *It's* ***very hot,*** *but I can drink it. It's* ***too hot*** *and I can't drink it.*
It's often more polite to say *not very good* or *not too good* rather than 'bad':
His work's ***not very good/not too good.*** (There is no difference in meaning here.)

4 *Very much* goes with:
– comparatives: *She is* ***very much better.***
– verbs: *I like your painting* ***very much.*** *This idea* ***has very much interested*** *me.*
– adjectives like *afraid, awake, alive* and *alone: Old Mrs Page is* ***very much alone.***

Write 1: Supply *very, too,* or *very much* in these sentences. Two answers may be possible.

1 I hear Jack has been ..very.. ill.
2 I can't go .... faster than I'm going.
3 Go slower. You're driving .... fast for me.
4 She didn't think my work was .... good.
5 I can't afford that. It's .... expensive.
6 If you think that, you are .... mistaken.
7 This project has .... interested our firm.
8 I didn't enjoy the meal ....
9 Susan's paintings have been .... admired.
10 I always try and buy the .... best.
11 She's .... intelligent to believe that!
12 The Antarctic would be .... cold for me.
13 I .... like your idea.
14 The new XJ6 is .... faster than the old one.
15 We were .... late, but we just got the train.
16 We were .... late, so we missed our train.
17 We have .... missed you.
18 Your children get .... much pocket money.
19 He hasn't got .... much money.
20 I've been .... alone lately.

Write 2: Complete these responses using *very, too, very much* and *too much.*

1 How did you enjoy last night's film? – I enjoyed it ..very much...
2 So you didn't buy the picture in the end! – No, it cost ....
3 I think you should take a coat with you. – Yes, I will. It's .... cold outside.
4 Is that lobster alive? – Yes, it's .... alive!
5 Was that car expensive? – Yes, ...!.
6 Are you thirsty? – Yes, ...!.
7 Did you spend a lot of time on it? – Yes, ...!
8 I don't like sitting in the smoking compartment. – I agree. There's .... smoke.
9 Why aren't you buying those shoes? – They're .... large for me.
10 Those shoes are very large! – Yes, but not .... large!
11 Are the children still awake? – Yes, they're .... awake!
12 How are you feeling? – Not .... well, I'm afraid.

7.68 Adverbs in place of 'very': 'extremely happy', 'fast asleep'

[> LEG 7.52-53, 6.8.2, App 16]

Study: ★★

1 We often use *extremely* and *really* for special emphasis instead of *very*
I'm very sleepy. → *I'm* ***extremely sleepy.*** (more emphatic)

2 In everyday speech we often use *terribly* and *awfully* in place of *very*
That hi fi is very expensive. → *It's* ***awfully/terribly expensive.***

3 Note that we say *fast asleep* and *wide awake* (Not *'very asleep/very awake'):*
Don't disturb the children – they're ***fast asleep.***

4 We use some *-ly* adverbs in fixed phrases: *deeply hurt, painfully embarrassed, highly respected, richly deserved, I greatly appreciate, badly needed, bitterly cold*
Mr Wilson is ***highly respected*** *in our community.*
A new playground for our children is ***badly needed.***

Write: Use suitable adverbs in place of *very.*

1 The traffic is awfully slow today.
2 I'm .... confused by the new regulations.
3 I .... appreciate all you've done for me.
4 We are .... interested in your proposal.
5 That radio talk wasn't .... interesting.
6 I was .... awake all night.
7 I was .... hurt by her answer.
8 Old Mr Ford is .... boring!
9 I'm .... annoyed about this.
10 Your success has been .... deserved.
11 We were all .... embarrassed!
12 Your friend works .... slowly.
13 I was .... bored by the play.
14 I didn't think the film was .... funny.
15 I'm .... sorry about this.
16 What you did was .... stupid.
17 Your staff have been .... helpful.
18 You didn't wake me. I was .... asleep.
19 It was .... cold last night.
20 You think you're .... clever.
21 A well is .... needed in that village.
22 This computer is .... fast.
23 She's still .... young.
24 We're .... grateful to you.

7.6C Context

Write: Use suitable words to complete this story. Don't use the same word more than twice.

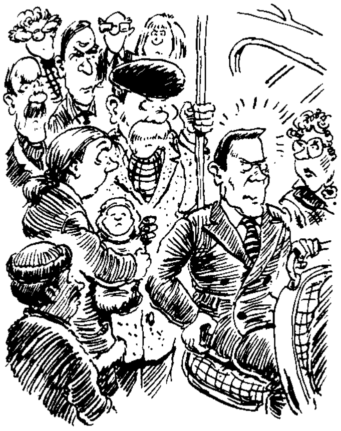

A rude man sat in the empty seat

JUSTLY PUNISHED

There were ^{1}.......too......... many people on the bus for comfort and passengers were standing in the aisle. A young woman carrying a baby was ^{2}........................ grateful when an old man offered her his seat. The baby was ^{3}........................ asleep and she could now rest him on her lap. She thanked the old man ^{4}........................ and was just going to sit down when a rude young man sat in the empty seat. Everyone was .... embarrassed, and the young mother was ^{6}........................ surprised to say anything. All the passengers ^{7}........................ disapproved of the man's action. They were ^{8}........................ angry with him, but he paid no attention. ^{9}........................ later, the rude man wanted to get off the bus and tried to push past the passengers. They all stood closely together and wouldn't let him move. He was made to stay on the bus till it reached its terminus, a punishment he ^{10}........................ deserved.

7.7 Focus adverbs

7.7A 'Even', 'only', 'just' and 'simply' for 'focusing' [> LEG 7.54-55]

Study: ★★

1 We can change the position in a sentence of adverbs like even, only, just and simply depending on where we want to 'focus our attention'. Compare:
Even I understood Professor Boffin's lecture. (i.e. even though I'm stupid)
I even understood Professor Boffin's lecture. (i.e. out of various things I understood)

2 In everyday speech, we often put these adverbs before the verb and other people can understand what we mean from stress and intonation: ***I only asked*** a question means 'that's all I did' rather than 'I was the only person who asked a question'.

Write: Write sentences to show how you interpret these statements.

1 Only I understood his lecture. .....I understood his lecture, but no one else did.............
2 I only listened to his lecture. ....
3 I understood his lecture only. ....
4 Set the table simply. ....
5 I just understood his lecture. ....
6 I understood just his lecture. ....
7 I understood his lecture – *just*! ....

7.78 Two meanings of 'too' [> LEG 7.48, 7.56]

Study: ★

Too changes its meaning according to position:
This coffee is ***too hot*** to drink at the moment. (= more than is desirable [> 7.6A, 16.4B])
The croissant is freshly-made and the coffee is hot, ***too***. (= also)

Write:

1 I can't drink the coffee. (hot) ....It's too hot..
2 The coffee is freshly-made and it is also hot. ....and it's hot, too..................................
3 I went to the bank and I also went to the supermarket. ....
4 I didn't walk to the supermarket. (far) ....
5 I didn't buy that jacket. (expensive) ....
6 I didn't buy that jacket. It was badly-made and also expensive. ....

7.7C 'Too' and 'not either' [> LEG 7.56]

Study: ★

We use too at the end of an affirmative sentence to mean also:
Billy can already read and he can write, ***too***.
In the negative, we must use *either* in place of *too*:
Billy can't write yet and he ***can't*** *read,* ***either***. (Not **He can't read, too.** [>13.4])

Write: Add too or either.

1 I like walking and I like cycling, ...too..........
2 I met John and I met his wife, ...
3 I don't swim and I don't run, ...
4 He runs a restaurant and a hotel, ...
5 I can't knit and I can't sew, ...
6 Don't drink tea and don't drink coffee, ...
7 I don't know and I don't care, ...
8 I know John well and I like him, ...

7.7D 'Also' and 'as well' [> LEG 7.561

Study: ★★

1 We use *also* and *as well* like *too,* that is in affirmative sentences. We replace them by *either* in negative sentences. We use *as well* only at the end of a a clause or sentence:
1 bought this handbag and 1 bought these shoes to go with it, ***as well.***

2 *Also* is more common in writing than in speech. It normally comes:
– after *be, have, can,* etc.: *Susan is an engineer. She is* ***also*** *a mother.*
– after the first auxiliary verb when there is one or more than one:
1 should have collected the letters from your office and 1 ***should also*** *have posted them.*
– before the main verb: *1 play volley-ball and I* ***also play*** *tennis.* [compare > **7.4A]**

Write: Show where *also* goes in these sentences.

1 She can act and she can sing. ...She can act and she can also sing.......
2 I have had a rest and I have had a shower. ....
3 He writes novels and he writes TV scripts. ....
4 He has been arrested and he will be tried. ....
5 You should have phoned and you should have written. ....
6 I have to write a report and I have to file some letters. ....
7 I'd like a cup of coffee and I'd like some sandwiches, please. ....
8 Mr Mason owns the corner shop and he owns the flat over it. ....
9 We sell our products in the home market but we export a lot. ....
10 I'm not going to buy it because it's not what I want and it's too expensive. ....

7.7E Context

Write: Show where the adverbs in brackets will go in the sentences that follow them.

I screamed with surprise!

A SAFE PLACE
('either) My aunt, Millie, always said she had some jewels which she would leave to me, but when she died she didn't leave any money and she didn't leave any **jewels** either.
('even) My mother was surprised.
(^{3}*too*) 'I know she had some rings and some lovely necklaces.
(^{4}*only*) I saw them once, but perhaps she sold them.'
(^{5}*as well)* My mother and I looked everywhere: we looked in the bedrooms, in the bathroom, and in the attic, but we found nothing.
(^{6}*also*) 'Millie was very careful and was afraid of burglars,' mother said, 'but I don't think she hid her jewels anywhere.
('too) Let's go home, and we'd better take all the food in the deep freeze.'
On Sunday, mother said to me, 'I'm going to cook this lovely goose which was in your aunt Millie's deep freeze. I'll prepare some stuffing and you can stuff the goose.'
(^{8}*too*) Five minutes later I screamed with surprise: the goose was full of jewels and there were some gold coins!

7.8 Viewpoint adverbs, connecting adverbs and inversion

7.8A Viewpoint adverbs [> LEG 7.57, App 17]

Study: (***)

We may express our 'viewpoint' in speech or in writing using adverbs like these:
– (= I'm sure): *clearly, definitely, honestly, naturally, obviously, really, strictly speaking.*
– (= I'm going to be brief): *anyhow, briefly, in brief, in effect, in a few words, in short.*
– (= I'm expressing my opinion): *as far as I'm concerned, frankly, in my opinion, I think.*

Write: Mark the 'viewpoints' (a-i) that are expressed in this text.

I was *agreeably* (1..d..) surprised to learn that I had passed my history exam. *Between ourselves,* (2......) I was expecting to fail. *After all,* (3......) I hadn't done any work and, *naturally,* (4......) I didn't think I deserved to pass. So when the results came, I was expecting the worst. *As a general rule,* (5......) you get what you deserve and this is *certainly* (6......) true of exams. *Frankly,* (7......) I deserved to fail, but, I not only passed, I even got very good marks. This only shows that luck can help; *at any rate,* (8......) it helped in my case. *In my view,* (9......) it just shows that passing exams is not always a matter of hard work.

a *I am making a generalization*
b *the reason for this was*
c *I don't want you to repeat this*
d *I was pleased*
e *as was to be expected*
f *I am sure*
g *the important thing is this*
h *I'm being honest*
i *I'm expressing my opinion*

7.8B Connecting adverbs [> LEG 7.58, App 18]

Study: (***)

We can connect ideas in speech or writing using adverbs like these:
– (= I'm adding something): *in addition, again, apart from this, besides, moreover.*
– (= I'm comparing/contrasting): *as compared to, equally, however, in reality.*
– (= I'm summarizing): *all in all, and so on, essentially, in brief, in conclusion, in effect.*

Write: Mark the 'connecting ideas' (a-h) that are expressed in this text.

According to (1..h..) a lot of people I know, there are few things more terrifying than having to speak in public. The only way to succeed is to follow strict rules. *First of all,* (2......) you should be well-prepared. *Second,* (3......) you should have a few jokes ready. *As well as that,* (4......) you should have rehearsed your speech, preferably in front of a mirror. *In comparison with* (5......) being hit by a bus, public speaking isn't too bad, but it's bad enough. *However,* (6......) you can make things easier for yourself by being ready. *Alternatively,* (7......) you can do nothing and make a fool of yourself. *To sum up,* (8......) success depends entirely on you.

a *I am introducing a list*
b *I am making an addition*
c *I am pointing to a contrast*
d *I am stating an alternative*
e *I am summarizing*
f *I am making a second point*
g *I am making a comparison*
h *As stated by*

7.8C Inversion after 'negative adverbs', etc. [> LEG 7.59, App 19]

Study: ★★★

1 Some adverbs like never and little have a 'negative effect' and we sometimes refer to them as 'negative adverbs'. We can use them in the ordinary way [> 7.4]:
I ***have never seen*** so much protest against a government.
Michael ***little realizes*** how important this meeting is.

2 If we begin a sentence with a 'negative adverb' we must follow with the word order we use in a Yes/No question [> 13.1]. Beginning with a negative is very formal:
Never have I seen so much protest against a government.
Little does Michael realize how important this meeting is.

3 We use this kind of inversion, in formal style, after:
- 'negative adverbs': e.g. hardly, hardly ever, never, rarely, seldom.
- phrases with only: e.g. only after, only then, only when ***(Only then did I learn ...)***.
- so + adjective: ***So difficult was this problem,*** Einstein couldn't solve it.

Write: Rewrite these sentences so that they begin with the words in italics.

1 There has never been such a display of strength by the workers.
Never has there been such a display of strength by the workers........................

2 I realized what had happened only later.
....

3 You shouldn't sign the document on any account.
On no account ....

4 You shouldn't answer the door when I'm out in any circumstances.
In no circumstances ....

5 The papyrus was so old, we didn't dare to touch it.
....

7.8D Context

Write: Put in the right verb form and these adverbs: according to, agreeably, however, in brief, moreover or ultimately.

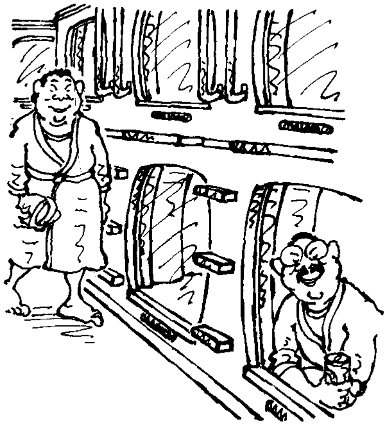

Don't **ask** for a room with a view!

DON'T ASK FOR A ROOM WITH A VIEW!
So high ¹ (be)..............is........... the price of land in Tokyo, that its land area probably costs as much as the whole of California. Never, in any place in the world, (there be) ²............................ such a demand for space! ³............................ a newspaper report, this lack of space has led to 'capsule hotels'. The rooms are just capsules, measuring 1 metre high, 76 cms wide and 2 metres deep. ⁴............................, you will be .... surprised to hear that they are equipped with phones, radio and TV. ⁶............................, they are less expensive than ordinary hotels. ⁷............................, they provide you with all you need for a comfortable night's sleep, even if they don't give you an automatic wash and dry as well! ⁸............................, some people would argue, a small hole in the wall is preferable to a big hole in your pocket! But don't ask for a room with a view!

8 Prepositions, adverb particles and phrasal verbs

8.1 Prepositions, adverb particles and conjunctions

8.1A Words we can use either as prepositions or as adverbs [> LEG 8.4, 7.3.4]

Study: ★★

1 There are many 'small words' in English such as *up, down,* and *by* which we call prepositions. In fact, we use these as prepositions or adverb particles. Understanding the difference between the two will help us to understand 'phrasal verbs' [> 8.6-8].

2 A preposition must have an object (a noun or a pronoun), so it is always related to a noun: *across the road, over the wall, up the hill, down the mountain.*

3 An adverb particle does not need an object, so it is more closely related to a verb: *walk across, drive over, come up, climb down.*

4 We can use the following words either as prepositions or adverb particles: *about, above, across, after, along, before, behind, below, beneath, between, beyond, by, down, in, inside, near, off, on, opposite, outside, over, past, round, through, under, underneath, up, without.* This means we can say:
We drove **round the city.** *(round* has a noun object, so it's a preposition)
We drove **round.** *(round* has no object, so it's an adverb particle).

Write: You are giving instructions to a young child. Give each instruction twice.

1 (run across the road) ......Run across the road. Run across now.......
2 (climb over the wall) ....
3 (come inside the house) ....
4 (go down the hill) ....
5 (go up the ladder) ....
6 (run past the window) ....

8.1B Words we can use only as prepositions or only as adverbs [> LEG 8.4.2-3]

Study: ★★

1 We use some 'small words' only as prepositions, so they always have a noun or pronoun object: *against, among, at, beside, during, except, for, from, into, of, onto, on top of, out of, since, till/until, to, toward(s), upon, with.* This means we have to say: e.g. *Sit* **beside me.** We can't say *'Sit beside.**

2 We use other 'small words' only as adverb particles, so they do not have an object: *away, back, backward(s), downward(s), forward(s), on top, out, upward(s).* This means we have to say: e.g. *Don't go near the fire. Stay* ***away!*** (Not *'Stay away the fire!**)

Write: You are answering the question *What did you do?* Supply suitable noun objects where possible.

1 We waited at ....the station..........
2 We went to ....
3 We jumped back ....
4 We climbed out ....
5 We drove away ....
6 We ran into ....
7 We ran out of ....
8 We went upwards..........

8.1C Words we can use either as prepositions or conjunctions

[> LEG 8.4.4, 1.45.1]

Study: ★★

1 There are a few words we can use either as **prepositions** or **conjunctions:** *after, as, before, since* and *till/until* [> 1.8, 1.9, 7.3A-B].

2 When we use them as **prepositions,** we have a noun or pronoun **object** after them:
Let's have our meeting ***after lunch.***

When we use them as **conjunctions,** we have a **clause** [> 1.5] after them:
Let's have our meeting ***after we have had lunch.***

Write: Complete these sentences with a) a noun object b) a clause.

1 I can't work before ......breakfast / before I have had breakfast..................................
2 I'll meet you after ....
3 I'll wait here till ....
4 I've been staying at this hotel since ....

8.1D Object pronouns after prepositions: 'between you and me' [> LEG 8.3]

Study: ★★

We use the object form of a pronoun, not the subject form, after a preposition [> 4.1A]:
Between you and me, *I think he's a fool.* (Not **Between you and I**)

Write: Circle the right forms in these sentences.

1 The invitation is for my husband and ([✓ me]/I).
2 She gave these presents to (us/we).
3 Share this between yourselves and (they/them).
4 For (we/us), the older generation, there have been many changes in society.
5 Employers are keen on people like (us/we) who work hard.
6 The news came as quite a surprise to a person like (me/I).

8.1E Context

Write: Circle 17 items (including in the title) and say whether they are prepositions or particles.

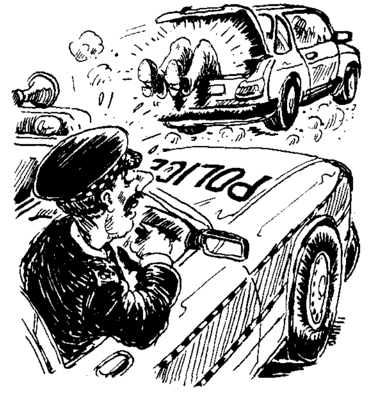

... legs sticking out of the boat!

TWO LEGS [✓ IN] ONE BOOT preposition

It was late in the afternoon. Inspector Mayhew had an hour to go before he finished work for the day. He sat in his police car watching the traffic go by. Suddenly, he sat up! A woman in a blue car drove slowly past and the inspector clearly saw a pair of man's legs sticking out of the boot! Inspector Mayhew immediately gave chase. The woman drove round the town. The blue lamp on top of the police car was flashing, but the woman paid no attention to it. The inspector finally got in front of her and made her stop. 'What's the matter?' the woman asked. 'You've got a body in the boot!' the inspector said. There was a loud laugh from the boot. 'But I'm alive,' the voice said. 'I'm a car mechanic and I'm trying to find the cause of a strange noise in the back of this car.'

8.2 Prepositions of movement and position Prepositions of time

8.2A 'At a point', 'in an area' and 'on a surface' [> LEG 8.6-9, Apps 21-23]

Study:
★★

1 We use *to/from* and *into/out of* to show direction with movement:
– *to/from*: She has gone ***to Paris***. She has just come home ***from Paris***.
– *into/out of*. *I went **into the shop.** I came **out of the shop.***

2 We use *at, in, on* to show position after movement: *at a point, in an area, on a surface.*
We can use *at* with some nouns to mean 'a (meeting) point' or *in* to mean 'inside':
*I'll meet you **at the airport.*** (= that's the meeting point)
*I'll meet you **in the airport.*** (= inside the building)
Typical nouns like this are: *the cinema, the office, the bank, the library, (the) school.*

3 We use *at* mainly with:
– public places/buildings: *at the airport, the bus stop, the Grand Hotel, the butcher's.*
– addresses: *at his sister's, 24 Cedar Avenue.*
– nouns with zero article: *at home, church, college, school, university* [> 3.6B]
– events: *at a concert, a dance, a dinner, a funeral, a meeting, a party, a wedding.*
*He's gone **to a party.** He is **at a party.***
*He's been **to a party.** He was **at a party.*** [> 10.2C]

4 We use *in* mainly with:
– large areas: *in Europe, Asia, the Antarctic, the Andes, the Sahara, Texas, the Pacific.*
– towns/parts of towns: *in Canterbury, Chelsea, Dallas, Manhattan, New York, Paris.*
– outside areas: *in the garden, the park, Hyde Park, the street, the old town, the desert.*
– rooms: *in the bathroom, his bedroom, the garage, the kitchen, the waiting room.*
– nouns with zero article: *in bed, chapel, church, hospital, prison.* [> 3.6B]
*He's gone **to Texas.** He is **in Texas.***
*He's been **to Texas.** He was **in Texas.*** [> 10.2C]

Write: Supply *at* or *in.*

1 He's gone to the station. He's probably .....at..... the station now.
2 She's gone to school. She's probably .... school now.
3 He flew from London. He's probably .... Paris now.
4 He's gone into the garden. He's .... the garden now.
5 She's gone to bed. She's .... bed now.
6 He's gone to a dinner party. He's probably .... the dinner now.
7 She's gone to a wedding. She's probably .... the wedding now.
8 He's gone to the kitchen. He's probably .... the kitchen now.
9 They've come out of the desert. They're probably .... the jungle now.
10 They've gone to New York. They're probably .... New York now.
11 She's gone to the waiting room. She's probably .... the waiting room now.
12 He's been sent to prison. He's probably .... prison now.
13 She's gone to the doctor's. She's probably .... the doctor's now.
14 He's gone home. He's probably .... home now.
15 She's gone to the old town. She's probably .... the old town now.
16 They've sailed to the Pacific. They're probably .... the Pacific now.
17 We live .... 14 Woodland Avenue.
18 She was taken to hospital. She's .... hospital now.

8.28 Prepositions of time: 'at', 'on' and 'in' [> LEG 8.10-14]

Study: ★★

1 We use *at* for: exact time: *at 10 o'clock;* meal times: *at lunch time;* points of time: *at night*[> 3.6A]; festivals: *at Christmas;* age: *at the age of 14;* + 'time': *at this/that time.*

2 We use *on* for: days of the week: *on Monday, on Mondays;* parts of the day: *on Monday morning;* dates: *on June 1st;* particular occasions: *on that day;* anniversaries: *on your birthday;* festivals: *on New Year's Day.*

3 We use *in* for [> 7.3C]: parts of the day: *in the evening;* months: *in May;* years: *in 2050;* seasons: *in (the) spring;* centuries: *in the 20th century;* periods: *in Ramadan, in two years' time.*

Write: Supply *at, on* or *in.*

1 I'll meet you ....at....... 10.30 ....on....... Monday, June 14.
2 We're taking our holiday .... July.
3 I always finish work early .... Fridays.
4 Who knows what the world will be like .... the year 2030?
5 You don't want anything to go wrong .... your wedding day.
6 .... the 19th century many children died before they were a year old..
7 We got up .... dawn and reached the summit .... noon.
8 .... the age of 14 I realized I would never become a brain surgeon.
9 The birds don't find much to eat in our garden .... winter.
10 What will you be doing .... the holidays?
11 What will you be doing .... New Year's Day?
12 The year was 1986. .... that time I was working as a waiter.
13 We try to get away .... Christmas time.
14 I'll see you .... ten days' time.
15 They prepared a surprise for me at the office .... my birthday.

8.2C Context

Write: Supply the missing prepositions.

'THE PROPHECY'

People who live [1].......in....... California have every reason to be afraid of earthquakes. No one has ever forgotten the great quake that destroyed San Francisco [2]................... 1906. [3]................... May, 1988, the people of Los Angeles panicked. According to a prophecy made [4]................... the 16th century by a prophet called Nostradamus, the city would be destroyed early [5]................... 1988. During the panic, parents didn't send their children [6]................... school and people didn't go [7]................... work. No one stayed [8]................... home, either. The airlines did great business carrying people who fled [9]................... their 'doomed city'. Which is more puzzling: how Nostradamus knew that a city which didn't even exist [10]................... his time would be destroyed [11]................... the 20th century, or the behaviour of the people who believed 'the prophecy'?

The people of Los Angeles panicked

8.3 Particular prepositions, particles: contrasts (1)

8.3A Prepositions, particles, etc. often confused and misused [> LEG App 25.1-11]

Study:
★★

1 ***about*** and ***on***
We can use *about* and *on* to mean 'concerning'. We use *on* in a formal way, e.g. to describe a textbook: *a textbook on physics; about* is informal: *a book about animals.*

2 ***according to*** and ***by***
We use *according to* to refer to information coming from other people or sources: *according to him, according to this guide book.* When we refer to ourselves, we say *in my opinion* (Not **according to me').* We can use *by* or *according to* when we refer to a clock or a timetable: *By* or *According to my watch, it's 3.15.*

3 ***across*** and ***over***
We can use both these prepositions to mean 'from one side to the other': *My house is* ***across/ over*** *the road/the river.* We cannot use *over* for large areas: *They're laying a pipeline* ***across Siberia.*** (Not **over')* We use *over* after verbs like ***wander*** to mean 'here and there'. We use *across* to describe movement through water: *She swam* ***across the Channel.*** (Not *'over the Channel*)* But we say *over a wall/a fence.* (Not **across')*

4 ***across*** and ***through***
Through, meaning 'from one side to the other', refers to something like a tunnel *(through a pipe)* or something dense *(through the forest); across* refers to a large area *(across the desert).* With some nouns, like *park,* we can use either *across* or *through.*

5 ***after*** and ***afterwards***
We generally use a noun or pronoun with *after: after lunch* [> 8.1A]. We use *afterwards* on its own: *We had a swim in the sea.* ***Afterwards*** *we lay on the beach.* (Not **After')*

6 ***around*** and ***about***
We use both words to refer to 'lack of purpose': *We didn't have anything to do, so we started* ***fooling around/about***. But we say *He* ***lives (a)round*** *here.* (= near)(Not **about')*

7 ***at, to*** and ***against***
We use *at* after adjectives like *good, clever.* After verbs like *throw, at* often means 'taking aim'. Compare: *throw at* (to hit) and *throw to* (for someone to catch). When there is no idea of 'taking aim', we use *against: throw the ball against the wall.* And note: *fight against.* We use *at* for speed or price: *at 100 miles an hour, at $2 each.*

8 ***away***
Away [> 8.1B] combines with *far (far away)* and *from (away from)* and with verbs which give the idea of 'distance': e.g. *live, work: I live 5 miles* ***away.*** (Not **I live 5 miles far away')*

9 ***because*** and ***because of***
We use *because* to give a reason: *We left the party* ***because it was noisy.*** [> 1.9] We use a noun or pronoun after *because of*: *We left the party* ***because of the noise.***

10 ***before*** or ***in front of***
We often use *before* to refer to time *(before 7*); *in front of* (and its opposite, *behind)* refers to position. We can use either *before* or *in front of* after the verbs *come* and *go.*

11 ***behind, at the back (of)*** and ***back***
We can put a noun or pronoun after *behind (behind this house)* or we can use it on its own *(there's a garden behind).* Or we can say: *at the back of this house, it's at the back.*
Do not confuse *back* with *again: invite them back* means 'return their hospitality'. Don't use *back* after *return: We returned early.* (Not **returned back')* Note *3 years back* (= ago).

Write: Supply suitable words. Refer to the notes only when you have to.

about or ***on?***
1 Read this article ...on/about... the Antarctic.
2 I've read a lot of books .... animals.
according to or ***by***?
3 .... Dr Pim, the sea is rising.
4 .... the timetable, the train leaves at 8.27.
5 It's 10.15 .... my watch.
across or ***over?***
6 There's a newsagent's .... the road.
7 No one wants a pipeline .... Alaska.
8 We skated .... the frozen lake.
9 I'm going to swim .... the river.
across or ***through?***
10 Nothing can flow .... this pipe.
11 We managed to get .... the jungle.
12 I've never walked .... the park.
away (add ***far*** where possible)
13 I see storm clouds .... in the distance.
14 London is 15 miles .... from here.
because or ***because of?***
15 I couldn't get to work .... I was ill.
16 I couldn't get to work .... my illness.
before or ***in front of?***
17 Make sure you're there .... 7.
18 I'll wait for you .... the shop.
19 You come .... me in the queue.
after or ***afterwards?***
20 Come and see me .... work.
21 We tidied up. Our guests arrived soon ....
22 We had a swim and .... we sunbathed.
around or ***about?***
23 We stood .... waiting.
24 I wish you'd stop fooling ....
25 Let me show you .... the house.
26 He lives somewhere .... Manchester.
at, to or ***against?***
27 I'm not very good .... figures.
28 Throw it .... me so that I can catch it.
29 Jim is always throwing stones .... birds.
30 We fought .... the enemy.
31 Ron is driving .... 100 miles an hour.
32 We have combs .... $2 each.
behind, at the back (of) or ***back***?
33 There's a garden in front and one ....
34 Keep this book. I don't want it ....
35 There's a garden .... the house.
36 I saw him four years ....
37 They invited us. We must invite them ....
38 We had to go .... early after the party.
39 Put it .... in its place.
40 I've fallen .... in my work.
41 I tried to lift it out of the hole but it fell ....

8.38 Context

Write: Put in *about, according to, across, after, at, away, because, before, behind, in front of, on.*

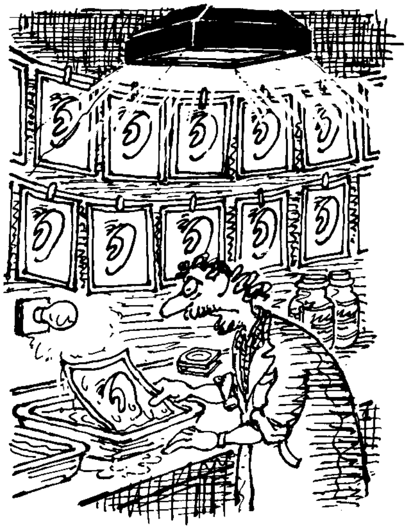

... the photographer's left ear

A GOOD EYE FOR A LEFT EAR

My friend Jonathan, who lives ^{1}......across...... the road, develops and prints films. ^{2}........................ Jonathan most of us take awful pictures. Usually, we fail to aim ^{3}........................ the subject so that the subject is not even in the picture. Sometimes the subject is too far ^{4}........................; sometimes too near. Some photos are spoilt because the sun is .... us, when of course, it should always be ^{6}........................ us. Some of us take blank pictures ^{7}........................ we take the lens cover off ^{8}........................ we have taken our shots. We take most of our pictures when we are on holiday and like to catch our friends when they are fooling .... It's a pity we don't practise using our cameras ^{10}........................ we go on holiday. A good book ^{11}........................ photography would make us better ^{12}........................ taking pictures, but most of us are too lazy to bother. I asked Jonathan what was the worst film he had ever seen. He didn't have to think very hard ^{13}........................ the question. At once he answered, 'Twenty-four shots of the photographer's left ear!'

8.4 Particular prepositions, particles: contrasts (2)

8.4A Prepositions, particles, etc. often confused and misused

[> LEG App 25.12-19, 25.25]

Study:
★★

1 *beside* and *besides*
Beside + nounlpronoun means 'next to': *Sit beside me. Besides* with or without an object means 'in addition to' or 'as well as': *There were many people there besides (us).*

2 *between* and *among*
We commonly use *between* to show a division between two people, things, or times: *Divide this between you both.* We use *among* + plural noun to refer to a mass of people, etc.: *Were you among the people present?* We sometimes use *between* to refer to more than two, if these can be viewed separately: *Don't smoke between courses.*

3 *but (for)* and *except (for)*
But (for)/except (for) mean 'with the exception of': *Everyone has helped but* ***(for)/except*** *(for) you.* We can use *except* and butwithout *for,* but not to begin a sentence:
Except ***for/But*** *for you, everyone has helped.* (Not *Except you/But you everyone ... .*)
Except for/but for can mean 'if not': *We'd've been on time except* ***for/but*** *for the snow.*

4 *by, near* and *on*
By can mean 'right next to': *Sit by me.* We often use the words *right* or *close* in front of *by: The hotel is right* ***by/close*** *by the station. Near* (or *not far from)* usually suggests 'a short way from': *We live* ***near/not*** *far from London. On* means 'right next to' or 'beside' when we refer to 'a line': *Our house is right on the road. I can't see what is on my left.*

5 *by* and *past*
We use either word after verbs of motion *(go, run, walk,* etc.) to mean 'beyond in space or time': *He went right* ***by/past*** *me without speaking. A few days went* ***by/past****.*

6 *by, with* and *without* [compare > 8.5An.7]
We often use *by* in fixed phrases: *by bus, by car, by post.* We also use it to refer to 'method': *You can open it by moving the catch. By* can refer to time and rate: *I'm paid by the hour. With/without* refer to things (especially tools or instruments) which we need to use: *You can't open it* ***with/without*** *a bottle-opener.*

7 *down, up, under* and *over*
Down is the opposite of *up* and shows direction towards a lower level, especially with 'movement verbs': *Let's climb* ***up/down****.* We can also use *up* and *down* to show position: *He lives* ***up/down*** *the street. Under* suggests 'being covered': *Let's sit under a tree. Over* can have the meaning 'covering': *Keep this blanket over you.*

8 *due to* and *owing to*
We often use either one or the other. However, *due to* is related to a noun + *be: Our delay* (noun) *was* (+ *be) due* ***to/caused*** *by the heavy traffic. Owing to* (= because of) is related to the verb: *The broadcast was cancelled* (verb) *owing* ***to/because*** *of the strike.*

9 *like* and *as*
Like (= to compare with) is followed by a noun or pronoun: *There's no one like* ***John/ you****.* We can also use it to mean 'such as': *Invite people like the* ***Frys****. Like* can also mean 'similar to/ in the same way as': *It was like a dream. He acts like a king.*
We use *as* (Not *like') + object to mean 'in the capacity of': *I work as a receptionist.*
We also use *as* to give a reason [> 1.91: *As the last bus had left, we walked home.*
We use *like* informally to introduce a clause, especially in American English: *Like I told you, it's an offer I can't refuse.* A lot of native speakers of English think this is wrong.

Write: Supply suitable words. Refer to the notes only when you have to.

beside or besides?
1 Who was sitting beside you?
2 Who's invited .... us?
3 It's a fast car. .... it's got four-wheel drive.
between or among?
4 Divide it equally .... the two of you.
5 Switzerland lies .... four other countries.
6 I saw you .... the crowd.
but (for) or except (for)?
7 The plane would've landed .... the fog.
8 Everyone sent flowers .... you.
9 .... you, everyone sent flowers.
10 Everyone's here .... John.
11 Who .... John would do a thing like that?
by, near or on?
12 I sat .... the phone all morning.
13 We live .... Manchester.
14 Our house is right .... the river.
15 .... my right I have Frank Milligan.
by or past?
16 The ball went right .... my head!
17 Several days went .... before I had news.
18 Stop .... here on your next visit.
19 Something flew .... my ear.
20 It's .... your bedtime.
by, with or without?
21 Our dog was hit .... a bus.
22 You can open it .... pulling this lever.
23 Dentists are paid .... the hour.
24 It won't open .... a bottle-opener.
down, up, under and over?
25 My mother lives .... the street.
26 The bus got stuck .... the bridge.
27 Put this blanket .... your knees.
due to or owing to?
28 Our success was .... luck.
29 Flights were delayed .... the strike.
30 He lost his job .... bad health.
like or as?
31 There's no business .... show business.
32 .... a lawyer, I would advise caution.
33 I once worked .... a bus conductor.
34 This motorway is .... a car park!
35 People .... the Joneses always copy us.
36 .... it was raining, I took a taxi.
37 .... I explained, it's a public holiday today.
38 He's more .... his mother than his father.
39 Who's used this knife .... a screw-driver?
40 You're just .... your brother.
41 He spends money .... a millionaire.

8.4B Context

Write: Put in *among, as, beside, between, by, down* (or *up*), *due, except, like, past, without.*

Keys will follow by post

Keys will follow

DELIVERED AND SIGNED FOR!

..........As.......... my grandmother used to say, 'Don't sign for anything ^{2}........................ checking it first.' I forgot this good advice when two delivery-men brought my new sideboard yesterday. Delivery was very late ^{3}........................ to the heavy traffic on the road. I saw the delivery-van go ^{4}........................ the house and stop outside a neighbour's .... the street. Then I watched it reverse until it stopped right ^{6}........................ my house. I went outside to look into the back of the van: there was my lovely sideboard ^{7}........................ several pieces of furniture! It was quite heavy, but the two men managed it .... them. Soon, the beautiful sideboard was in place, ... the dining-room wall. I had waited so long for it, it was ^{10}........................ a dream! It was only when the men left that I realized I had checked everying ^{11}........................ the keys. It had been delivered ^{12}........................ keys! It was too late to phone the shop, but I needn't have worried because next morning the keys arrived in the post. I unlocked the sideboard and found a note inside which said, 'Keys will follow ^{13}........................ post'!

8.5 Particular prepositions, particles: contrasts (3)

8.5A Prepositions, particles, etc. often confused and misused

[> LEG App 25.26-37]

Study:
★★

1 ***of, out of, from*** and ***with*** after ***made***
We use *made of* and *made out of* when we can actually recognize the material(s): *made of wood, iron,* etc. We use *made from* when the ingredients are not immediately obvious: *a cake made from eggs, milk and flour.* We use *made with* (= contains) to identify one or more of the ingredients: *These chocolates are* ***made with fresh cream.***

2 ***of*** and ***off***
We never use *of* and *off* in place of each other. We always use a noun or pronoun object after *of*: *north of the river, a woman of* 50. We can use an object after *off,* or we can use it on its own to suggest separation: *just off the motorway, take the top off.*

3 ***on*** and ***in***
We often use both of these to refer to the body. *On* refers to surface: *on your nose.*
In suggests 'deep': *a speck in my eye,* or refers to pain: *a pain in my stomach.*

4 ***out of*** and ***outside***
Out of is the opposite of *into* when we are describing movement: *We ran* ***out of the building.***
In this sense, we can't replace *out of* by *outside.* Compare uses without movement:
He is ***out of his office.*** (= not here) *He is* ***outside the office.*** (= waiting)

5 ***over, above*** and ***on top of***
Over (= covering, sometimes touching): *Keep the blankets* ***over you.*** *Above* (= at a higher level and not touching): *a light above my head. On top of* (= touching): *on top of the TV.*
We can use *over* and *above* in place of each other to mean 'vertically at a higher level':
a helicopter over/above a lifeboat. We cannot use *over* and *above* in place of each other when all we are concerned with is 'a higher level' (not vertical). If, for example, we were referring to two cats on a tree we would say that A was *above* B, not *over* it.
We also use both words to refer to rank, etc.: *over/above the rank of colonel.*

6 ***under, underneath*** and ***below***
Under (= covered by, sometimes touching); *underneath* (= completely covered by):
a mat under/underneath a hot dish. Below is the opposite of *above* and we can use it in place of *under/underneath,. Below* (Not *'under*)* refers to position *(below the knee).*

7 ***with*** and ***without***
We use *with* and *without* to mean 'accompanied by' or 'not accompanied by':
with/without my sister. With can suggest 'having': *with your hands in yourpockets,* and 'taking into consideration': *with the high cost of living. With* follows common adjectives (e.g. *angry)* and we use it in expressions like *blue with cold. Without* + *-ing* can suggest 'and not do something': *Go into the room* ***without waking*** *the children.*

8 ***with, without, in*** and ***of***
We can use *with* and *without* to mean 'carrying'/'not carrying': *with a handbag, without any money.* We can also refer to physical characteristics: *with a big nose;* and such things as hairstyles and make-up: *with pink lipstick.* We can use *in* to mean 'wearing': *the man in the blue suit.* We can also refer to voice quality: *in a loud voice. Of* can describe personal qualities: *a man of courage:* age: *a man of* 65; or wealth: *a woman of substance.*

Write: Supply suitable words. Refer to the notes only when you have to.

of, out of, from or ***with*** after ***made?***
1 You rarely find toys made of/out of solid wood.
2 Beer is made .... hops.
3 Bronze is made .... copper and tin.
4 This sauce is made .... fresh cream.
of or ***off?***
5 We live south .... the river.
6 Our house is just .... the main road.
on or ***in?***
7 There's a black mark .... your nose.
8 I've got a speck of dust .... my eye.
9 I've got a deep cut .... my foot.
10 I've got a light scratch .... my arm.
out of or ***outside?***
11 We ran .... the house, into the street.
12 Mr Ray's not here. He's .... his office.
13 Please wait .... the headmaster's study.
14 There was a big crowd .... the building.
with or ***without?***
15 Enter the room .... making a noise.
16 .... all our expenses, we can't save.
17 She was very angry .... me.
18 I turned blue .... cold.
19 'Life .... father' is a famous book.
20 As an orphan, I grew up .... parents.
21 He stood .... his hands in his pockets.
22 I was green .... envy!
over, above or ***on top of?***
23 I can't sleep with a light .... my head.
24 Don't put that cup .... my papers, please.
25 The helicopter was .... the lifeboat.
26 My bedroom is .... the kitchen.
27 We have the sky .... us.
28 We don't want a boss like that .... us.
29 Major is .... the rank of Captain.
30 His work is .... average.
31 The answer is on the next page. See ....
under, underneath or ***below?***
32 There's nothing new .... the sun.
33 I think she's .... 17.
34 Put a mat .... that saucepan.
35 The stone hit me just .... the knee.
36 What's .... the rank of Captain?
37 She swam just .... the surface.
38 I have two people .... me at work.
with, without, in or ***of?***
39 Who's the woman .... the green umbrella?
40 I can't pay. I'm .... any money.
41 The camera comes .... a case included.
42 Who's the woman .... the green blouse?
43 He spoke .... a quiet voice.
44 He's a man .... a red moustache.
45 She's a woman .... 38.
46 She's a woman .... intelligence.

8.5B Context

Write: Put in *with, out of, over, off, of, in, above, below, on top of.*

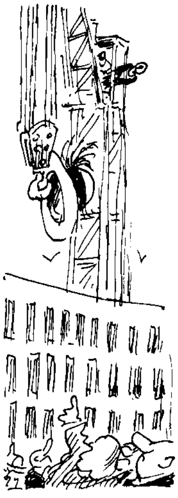

'Lost your hat, miss?'

THE AMAZING FLYING HAT

She was a striking woman ^{1}............of......... about 25, dressed for the races. .... her smart dress and fantastic hat made ^{3}........................ feathers, she drew admiring glances as she walked down the street. Her hat attracted even more attention when a gust ^{4}........................ wind lifted it ^{5}........................ her head and carried it into the air. We all stopped to watch as this amazing hat flew ^{6}........................ our heads. People came ^{7}........................ buildings and into the street. The young woman .... the smart dress was as entertained as the rest ^{9}........................ us. Suddenly, the hat rested ^{10}........................ a high building and we lost sight of it. Then the wind lifted it up again. 'There it is!' cried a man ^{11}........................ an umbrella. He jabbed his umbrella at the sky ^{12}........................ . Then an amazing thing happened. The hat simply disappeared! The mystery was solved when someone shouted ^{13}........................ a loud voice. There was a tall yellow crane ^{14}........................ a high building and the crane driver looked down at the crowd ^{15}........................ . 'Lost your hat, miss?' the crane driver cried and we all gasped ^{16}........................ surprise when we saw that the hat had been caught by his crane!

8.6 Phrasal verbs: Type 1, verb + preposition (transitive)

8.6A Introduction to phrasal verbs [> LEG 8.23-26]

Study: ★★

We often combine verbs with prepositions and adverb particles [> 8.1A-B] to form **phrasal verbs.** These verbs can have non-idiomatic or idiomatic meanings and we use them a lot. So, for example, if someone knocks at the door, we would probably say 'Come in!' rather than 'Enter'. We would say 'take off' your jacket, rather than 'remove' it, and so on. We can define four types of phrasal verbs according to form. As you learn new verbs, get used to recognizing them as one of these four types so that you learn how to use them.

Note the terms: **transitive** (= followed by a noun or pronoun object) [> 1.2B]
intransitive (= not followed by a noun or pronoun object) [> 1.2B]

Type 1: verb + preposition (transitive): e.g. ***Listen to*** *this record.* ***Listen to*** *it.* ***Listen!***
Type 2: verb + particle (transitive): e.g. ***Take off*** *your hat.* ***Take*** *your hat* ***off. Take*** *it* ***off.***
Type 3: verb + particle (intransitive): e.g. ***Hurry up! Sit down!***
Type 4: verb + particle + preposition (transitive): e.g. *We've* ***run out of*** *matches.*

8.6B Type 1: Verb + preposition + object, non-idiomatic: 'look at the camera'

Study: These verbs are used in their normal sense. [> LEG **8.27.2, App** 28]

Write: Supply the missing prepositions.

1 I don't agree ...with... your proposal.
2 Mr Potter suffers .... asthma.
3 Please don't insist .... paying the bill.
4 I wouldn't think .... borrowing money.
5 These two pictures differ .... each other.
6 Choose .... the two.
7 Where did you read .... it?
8 I'm depending .... you.
9 We can only guess .... the truth.
10 Please wait .... me.
11 Knock .... the door.
12 Ask .... the menu.
13 I don't agree .... you.
14 How do you know .... this?
15 Does this jacket belong .... you?
16 Let's begin .... tomato soup.
17 Can you look .... the children for tonight?
18 I couldn't wish .... a nicer office.
19 We failed .... our attempt to win the race.
20 You can't reason .... him.
21 This pie tastes .... onion.
22 I don't believe .... fairies.
23 I succeeded .... starting the engine.
24 The police are looking .... the robbers.

8.6C Type 1: Verb + object + preposition + object, non-idiomatic: 'tell me about it'

Study: These verbs are used in their normal sense. [> LEG **8.27.3, App** 29]

Write: Supply the missing prepositions.

1 I've arranged an excursion .... you.
2 He accused me .... lying.
3 You can't hide the truth .... me.
4 Would you kindly explain this .... me?
5 Invest some money .... this company.
6 I can't advise you .... your private life.
7 Insure your house .... storm damage.
8 Translate this report .... Spanish for me.
9 I'll reserve a seat .... you.
10 You remind me .... my sister.
11 Don't associate me .... them.
12 Can you forgive me .... what I did?
13 They robbed me .... my wallet.
14 Don't repeat this .... anyone.
15 You can't blame me .... this.
16 He stole money .... the firm.

8.6D Type 1: Verb + preposition + object, idiomatic: 'get over an illness'

[> LEG 8.27.4, App 30]

Study: ★★ We cannot relate the parts of these verbs to their literal meanings: e.g.
I don't know what ***came over me.*** (= affected)

Write: Match these verbs (1-20) with the explanations on the right (a-t) after you have tried to explain them in your own way.

1 Eggs don't *agree with* me. .f..
2 Please *call for* me at *6.* ....
3 I *came across* this old book. ....
4 The dog *went for* the postman. ....
5 Let's *go after* him. ....
6 Can I *count on* you for help? ....
7 I haven't *got over* my cold yet. ....
8 This dress will *do for* Jane. ....
9 Where did you *come by* this information? ....
10 You can't *dictate to* me. ....
11 I'll *sleep on* your suggestion. ....
12 I can't *make* anything *of* this. ....
13 I won't *stand for* your rudeness. ....
14 Is there anyone here to *wait on* us? ....
15 The cost *runs into* millions. ....
16 She *took to* English quickly. ....
17 He's been *sitting on* my application. ....
18 You *take after* your father. ....
19 You can *look over* the house. ....
20 You don't have to *stand over* me, you know. ....

a) decide later
b) found (it) easy
c) found
d) reaches
e) supervise
f) have a bad effect on
g) doing nothing with
h) obtain
i) come and collect
j) resemble
k) serve
l) attacked
m) give orders to
n) try and catch
o) inspect
p) rely on
q) understand
r) tolerate
s) be all right for
t) recovered from

8.6E Context

Write: Put in *at, for, from, in, of, on. out of* or *to.* Use each word at least once.

YOU'LL NEVER GET HOLD OF ME!

IS THERE ANYBODY THERE?

A dentist in Bavaria has been haunted by a voice which swears ^{1}.....at..... him all the time. The voice comes ^{2}............. light sockets, washbasins and the telephone. It is a sharp, deep voice which laughs .... the dentist and mocks him. The poor dentist is suffering .... a bad case of nerves. Recently, the voice was recorded and broadcast, so now everyone in Bavaria is looking ^{5}............. the ghost, but so far no one has succeeded ^{6}............. finding it. People who don't believe ^{7}............. ghosts think it is just a practical joke. The voice always shouts ^{8}............. the dentist, but speaks sweetly ^{9}............. his 17-year-old assistant, Claudia. But no one can blame Claudia ^{10}............. the behaviour of the ghost or accuse her ^{11}............. playing tricks ^{12}............. her poor boss. Engineers don't know what to make ^{13}............. it. 'He's a technical genius,' one of them said. The ghost has responded ^{14}............. all this activity by saying, in a thick Bavarian accent, 'You'll never get hold ^{15}............. me!'

You'll **never get** hold of me!

8.7 Phrasal verbs: Type 2, verb + particle (transitive)

8.7A Type 1 and Type 2 phrasal verbs compared [> LEG 8.28, Apps 32, 33]

Study: ★★

1 We use prepositions after Type 1 verbs. We cannot separate the preposition from the verb:
I'm ***looking at*** the camera. (Not *I'm looking the camera at.*)

2 We can separate the adverb particle from a Type **2** verb and put it immediately after the noun object: She ***gave away*** her books. She ***gave*** her books ***away.***

3 If the object is a pronoun, we cannot put the particle in front of it:
Give ***it*** away. (Not *Give away it.*) Give ***them*** away. (Not *Give away them.*)

4 Special note: In She gave away her books, away is an adverb particle [> 8.1B], not a preposition, even if it has an object after it. Unlike a preposition, a particle is 'mobile' and can be used before or after a noun object. [> LEG 8.28.2]

Write: Use arrows to show which adverb particles you can move in these sentences.

1 I'm looking for my glasses.
2 I read about it in the papers.
3 Did you turn the gas off?
4 Yes, I've just turned it off.
5 Have you given the papers out?
6 Yes, I've given them out.
7 Write the information down here please.
8 A crowd emerged from the cinema.
9 Don't associate with him.
10 We've dealt with the problem.

8.7B Type 2: Particles that extend the verb: 'write down' [> LEG 8.28.3-4, App 32]

Study: ★★

A single particle can strengthen or extend the meaning of a verb:
a The scarecrow frightened the birds ***away.*** (away refers to 'distance')
b I was holding my hat and the wind snatched it ***away.*** (away refers to 'detachment')
c I got a cloth and wiped ***away*** the coffee I had spilled. (away refers to 'disappearance')
d *Please put these dishes **away**.* (*away* refers to 'tidying')
The verb often has its non-idiomatic meaning, but the particle 'extends' this meaning: e.g. *pull out, push away, wash away, move back, burn down, bring in, cut off.*

Write: Match these meanings to the adverb particles in the sentences below.

a 'put on paper'
b 'exclusion'
c 'addition'
d 'out of bed'
e 'completely'
f 'movement out'
g 'permanence'
h 'movement in'
i 'enclose'
j 'clearly'
k 'removal'
l 'reduction'
m 'to the ground'
n 'extension'
o 'into pieces'
p 'distribution'
q 'inwards' ('destroy')
r 'up from the surface'
s 'confine'
t 'upwards direction'

out 1 drive the car out ..f..............................
2 leave that word out ....
3 take that stain out ....
4 put out your hand ....
5 copy this out ....
6 give these out ....

in **7** let him in ....
8 lock him in ....
9 write this in ....
10 beat the door in ....

up **11** pull that line up ..,:.......................................
12 pick that up ....
13 fill this car up ....
14 chop that wood up ....
15 let the patient up ....
16 wrap this box up ....

down **17** cut the tree down ....
18 turn the heat down ....
19 close the shop down ....
20 write this down ....

8.7C Type 2: Verb + particle + object, idiomatic: 'bring about a change'

[> LEG 8.28.5, App 33]

Study: ★★ We cannot relate the parts of these verbs to their literal meanings: e.g.
What brought about this change? What brought this change about? What brought it about?
(= caused to happen)

Write: Match these verbs (1-15) with the explanations on the right (a-o) after you have tried to explain them in your own way.

1 When will they *bring* your article *out?* ...e..
2 So she's *broken off* her engagement! ....
3 Don't *bring* that subject *up* again please! ....
4 Why don't you *call up* your mother? ....
5 Shall I *do* your room *out?* ....
6 What excuse did he *cook up* this time? ....
7 They're sure to *find* him *out.* ....
8 You've *given away* the secret. ....
9 I can't *make out* what he means. ....
10 If you're angry, *have it out* with her. ....
11 I'll *pay* you *back* for this! ....
12 Can you *put* me *up* for the night? ....
13 *Shut* him *up!* ....
14 The earthquake *wiped* the village *out.* ....
15 Why don't you *top up* the battery? ....

a) get my revenge
b) discuss your grievance
c) fill
d) give me accommodation
e) publish
f) invent
g) destroyed
h) make him stop talking
i) ended
j) clean
k) reveal his dishonesty
l) mention
m) revealed
n) phone
o) understand

8.7D Context

Write: Look at the phrases in italics. Show with arrows which particles can be moved and where.

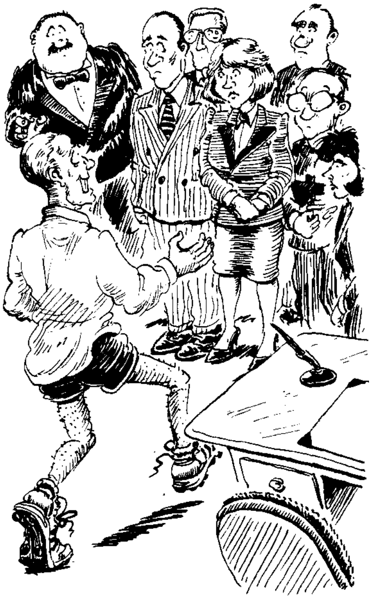

He got up to shake hands

NOT ONLY RED IN THE FACE!

Ken Rose is a company director and he has to sit at a desk all day. He likes to keep fit by running to work every morning. He [1]*arrives at the office* early, [2]*gets out of his shorts and vest* and [3]*puts on a business suit.* Last week, Ken [4]*got to his office* earlier than usual, dressed in red shorts and a red vest. He had just [5]*put on his shirt and tie,* when the phone rang. Ken [6]*picked up the receiver* and sat behind his desk. A business colleague [7]*had called him up* early. Could he see Ken later? Could he [8]*bring someone round!* Could they [9]*check over some figures?* Could they [10]*think of ways* of [11]*cutting down expenses?* Could they [12]*put off the meeting* till later in the week? Ken [13]*was writing down some notes* when he noticed the time. It was after 9. 'Excuse me,' Ken said. 'I'll [14]*call you back.'* He [15]*had just put the receiver down* when someone [16]*knocked at the door.* The Managing Director [17]*came into the room* with six important guests. 'Ah, Ken,' he said, 'I want to [18]*introduce you to our visitors* and I'd like you to [19]*show them round the company.'* 'Of course, sir,' Ken said and he got up to shake hands, forgetting he still [20]*had on his red shorts!*

8.8 Phrasal verbs: Type 3, verb + particle (intransitive) Type 4, verb + particle + preposition (transitive)

8.8A Type 3: Verb + particle, intransitive, non-idiomatic: 'hurry up' [> LEG 8.29.2]

Study: ★★ We use these verbs in their normal sense. Many combinations are possible:
Hurry up! Sit down! Stand up! Compare Type 1 [> 8.6A-B]: *Look!* (Not **Look at3*

Write: Combine the following verbs with the following particles in different ways:
come, go, hurry, sit, stand + along, away, down, in, up

1 ....Come along....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....
11 ....
12 ....
13 ....
14 ....
15 ....
16 ....

8.88 Type 3: Verb + particle, intransitive, idiomatic: 'break down'

Study: ★★ We cannot relate the parts of these verbs to their literal meanings: e.g.
*She **broke down** when she heard the news* (= collapsed). [> LEG 8.29.3, App 36]

Write: Match these verbs (1-17) with the explanations on the right (a-q) after you have tried to explain them in your own way.

1 All this information doesn't *add up.* ....b....
2 I'm glad to say my plan *came off.* ....
3 I need the money and you'd better *cough up.* (informal) ....
4 You're tired. You should *ease off.* ....
5 When did the plane *take off?* ....
6 Please don't *let on* I told you this. ....
7 I'm going to *lie in* tomorrow morning. ....
8 Is there sufficient food to *go round?* ....
9 Business is *looking up.* ....
10 You work and I'll *look on.* ....
11 My car's *playing up* again. ....
12 I'll be late, so don't *wait up.* ....
13 *Mind out!* He's turning left! ....
14 I waited for him, but he never *showed up.* ....
15 What time are you going to *set out?* ....
16 I'm glad to say business is *picking up.* ....
17 How did that *come about?* ....

a) be careful!
b) make sense
c) improving
d) improving
e) work less hard
f) reveal the secret
g) happen
h) succeeded
i) not working properly
j) pay
k) start your journey
l) arrived
m) leave the ground
n) not go to bed
o) be enough
p) be a spectator
q) stay in bed late

8.8C Type 4: Verb + particle + preposition + object, non-idiomatic: 'walk up to the top'

Study: ★★ These verbs are used in their normal sense. [> LEG 8.30.2, 8.8]

Write: Write sentences with the following.

1 (come down from) The lift takes a long time to come down from the top floor.
2 (drive on to) ....
3 (hurry over to) ....
4 (run along to) ....
5 (stay away from) ....

8.8D Verb + particle + preposition + object, idiomatic: 'put up with it'

[> LEG 8.30.3, App 37]

Study: We cannot relate the parts of these verbs to their literal meanings: e.g.
★★ *How do you* ***put up with it?*** (= tolerate)

Write: Match these verbs (1-20) with the explanations on the right (a-t) after you have tried to explain them in your own way.

1 Your argument *boils down to* this. ...e...
2 I can't *go back on* my word. ....
3 Please *let* me *in on* the secret. ....
4 You'd better *talk* him *out of* his plan. ....
5 Some of his good luck has *rubbed off on* me. ....
6 I can't *live up to* my reputation. ....
7 I've *set up in* business ....
8 That *ties in* nicely *with* my plan. ....
9 Who *put* you *up to* this? ....
10 I don't *feel up to* this party. ....
11 This won't *make up for* the damage. ....
12 You've got to *face up to* reality. ....
13 The Cabots *look down on* us. ....
14 We've had to *fall back on* our savings. ....
15 I think it would be a good idea to *keep in with* her. ....
16 I'll *get on to* them immediately. ....
17 The bill *comes out at* £100 exactly. ....
18 If you're angry, you don't have to *take* it *out on* me. ....
19 I'm glad they've *done away with* that bad law. ....
20 I'm *looking forward to* the holidays. ....

a) use
b) allow me to share
c) expecting to enjoy
d) contact
e) can be summarized as
f) totals
g) started
h) treat unfairly
i) benefited
j) accept with courage
k) fits
l) fail to honour
m) abolished
n) maintain the high standard
o) consider us inferior
p) compensate for
q) gave you this idea
r) stay on good terms
s) feel well enough for
t) persuade not to do

8.8E Context

Write: Put in *about, down, down on, in, in on, up, up on, up to, up with* or *to.*

A CURE FOR SNORING

It's very difficult for people who sleep silently to ^{1}put ..up with... the sound of snoring. Some people are asleep the moment they ^{2}lie ....; others ^{3}stay .... half the night waiting for the miracle of sleep to ^{4}come .... Even insomniacs snore. Insomniacs are the ones who need to ^{5}lie .... in the morning to ^{6}catch .... lost sleep. Snorers will never admit to snoring. They know the rest of the world ^{7}looks .... them and they just can't ^{8}face .... reality. My friend, Henry, a champion snorer, has just found a cure and he ^{9}let me .... his little secret. He has just ^{10}coughed .... good money for a band with a stud on it. He wears the band round his head at night and if he tries to sleep on his back, the stud gives him a jab. I'm sure this news will ^{11}cheer .... all snorers, who now have a new experience to ^{12}look forward .... With one of these on their heads, all they have to lose is their sleep!

He wears this round his head

9 Verbs, verb tenses, imperatives

9.1 The simple present and present progressive tenses (1)

9.1A Pronunciation and spelling of the 3rd person, simple present [> LEG 9.6-7]

Study: ★★

1 Pronunciation [compare plural nouns > 2.5A]:
We pronounce ***-s*** as /s/ after these sounds: /f/ *laughs;* /p/ *drops;* /k/ *kicks;* /t/ *lets.*
We pronounce *-s* as /ɪz/ after /z/ *loses;* /dʒ/ *manages;* /s/ *passes;* /ʃ/ *pushes;* /tʃ/ *stitches,* and /ks/ *mixes.*
We pronounce *-s* as /z/ after all other sounds: /b/ *robs;* /d/ *adds;* /g/ *digs;* /l/ *fills;* /m/ *dreams;* /n/ *runs;* /ŋ/ *rings;* after vowels: *sees;* after vowel + *w* or *r*: *draws, stirs.*

2 Spelling
Add *-s* to most verbs: ***work/works, drive/drives, play/plays, run/runs.***
Add *-es* to verbs ending in *-o*: ***do/does***; *-s*: *misses; -x*: *mixes; -ch/-sh*: ***catches/pushes.***

Write:

a Give the third person forms of the verbs in these sentences.
b Show whether you would pronounce the third person form as /s/, /z/ or /ɪz/

1 They laugh a lot. He ......laughs......... /s/
2 I often drop things. She .... / /
3 We drink a lot of tea. She ..../ /
4 I often forget things. She ..../ /
5 We often lose things. He .... / /
6 They manage all right. She .... / /
7 I often pass your house. He .... / /
8 I rush around a lot. She .... / /
9 I always saw the wood. She .... / /
10 I wear old clothes at home. He .... / /
11 I love sweets. She .... / /
12 I often see them. He .... / /
13 They pay •'30a week rent. He.................... / /
14 I cry at sad films. She .... / /

9.1B Uses of the simple present tense: 'I work/he works' [> LEG 9.8, 9.12]

Study: ★★

There are seven basic uses of the simple present tense [compare > 11.11A]. We use it for:

1 Permanent truths: *Summer* ***follows*** *spring. Gases* ***expand*** *when heated.*
2 'The present period' (= 'this is the situation at present'): *My sister* ***works*** *in a bank.*
3 Habitual actions: *I* ***get up*** *at 7. I sometimes* ***stay up*** *till midnight.*
4 Future reference (for timetables, etc.): *The concert* ***begins*** *at 7.30 next Friday evening.*
5 Observations and declarations: *I* ***hope*** *so. It* ***says*** *here that .... I* ***love*** *you. I* ***hate*** *him.*
6 Instructions: *First you* ***weigh*** *the ingredients.*
7 Commentaries: *Becker* ***serves*** *to Lendl.*

Write: Give the correct form of the simple present of each verb.

1 Water ....boils............ at **100•‹C.**(boil)
2 Hot air .... (rise)
3 My uncle .... in a factory. (work)
4 John and Sue .... glasses. (wear)
5 The children .... a lot of sweets. (eat)
6 He only .... at weekends. (work)
7 I always .... out on Saturdays. (go)
8 She .... to London once a week. (drive)
9 She never .... up very early. (get)
10 I occasionally .... meat. (eat)
11 The coach .... at **6** this evening. (leave)
12 The concert .... at **7** next Friday. (start)
13 I .... Barcelona won again. (see)
14 It's not right, you .... (know) – **I** .... (agree)
15 Can he manage? – I .... so. (hope)
16 It .... in the paper it'll be hot. (say)

9.1C Stative and dynamic verbs [> LEG 9.3, App 38]

Study: ★★

1 We call a few verbs like love **stative** because they refer to 'states'. A state has no beginning and no end. We don't 'control' it, so we don't normally use stative verbs in progressive tenses:
She loves her baby more than anything. (Not **is* loving')

2 Most verbs in English are **dynamic.** We can use them in two ways:
– in the simple present tense to describe habits, etc. [> 9.1B]: I often make cakes.
– in the present progressive to describe deliberate actions in progress [> 9.2B]:
I'm making a cake.

3 We can describe three classes of verbs:
a Dynamic verbs which have simple or progressive forms (most verbs in English):
I often listen to records. (simple present tense)
I'm listening to a record. (present progressive tense)
b Verbs which are always stative:
This coat belongs to you. (simple present tense) (Not **is* belonging')
c Verbs that have stative or dynamic uses:
I'm weighing myself. (a deliberate action: present progressive tense)
I weigh 65 kilos. (a state) (Not **I'm* weighing 65 kilos. *)

4 There are five groups of stative verbs referring to: **a** feelings (like, love, etc.);
b thinking/believing (think, understand, etc.) **c** wants (want, prefer, etc.)
d perception (hear, see, etc. [> 11.2B]) **e** being/having/owning (appear, seem, belong, etc. [> 10.41)

Write: Tick the sentences that are right. Cross out the verbs that are wrong and correct them.

1a You're never ill. I envy you. ✓
1b You're never ill. I'm envying you. __
2a I understand English well. __
2b I'm understanding English well. __
3a You're knowing what I mean. __
3b You know what I mean. __
4a Is he seeming unfriendly? __
4b Does he seem unfriendly? __
5a I prefer fish to meat. __
5b I'm preferring fish to meat. __
6a Do you see that bird over there? __
6b Are you seeing John tomorrow? __
7a Why is he smelling his coffee? __
7b Something smells strange. __
8a She's weighing herself again. __
8b She weighs 75.5 kilos. __

9.1D Context

Write: Put in the simple present or the present progressive tenses.

CHOMP CHAMP!

'(you sit) ...Are you sitting... comfortably? Good! I ^{2}(*hope*) .... you ^{3}(*study*) .... this text carefully because I ^{4}(*have*) .... news for you. The Guinness Book of Records ^{5}(*not* include) .... records for eating any more. People who ^{6}(*try*) .... to swallow 47 hard boiled eggs in half a minute will have to do it for pleasure and not to get into the record book. 'We '(regard) .... these records as unhealthy,' said the book's editor, Mr Donald McFarlan. However, one record-holder will remain. He is Michel Lotito of Grenoble ('Monsieur Mangetout'). Since 1966, he has chomped his way through 10 bicycles, 7 TV sets and a light aircraft. He's likely to remain world champ, unless you ^{8}(*want*) .... to challenge him, of course!

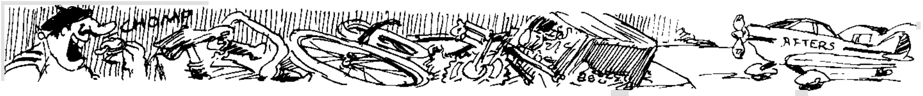

Chomp! chomp!

9.2 The simple present and present progressive tenses (2)

9.2A Spelling: how to add '-ing' to a verb: 'wait/waiting' [> LEG 9.10]

Study:
★

1 We add *-ing* to most verbs, without changing the base form: *wait/waiting*:
Wait for me. → *I* am **waiting** for you.

2 If a verb ends in -e, omit the *-e* and add *-ing*: *use/using*:
Use a broom. → *I* am **using** a broom.

3 A single vowel followed by a single consonant doubles the final consonant: *sit/sitting*:
Sit down. → *I* am **sitting** down. [> compare 6.5A]

4 We double the last consonant of two-syllable verbs when the second syllable is stressed: *be'gin/be'ginning*. Compare the unstressed final syllable: *'differ/'differing*:
Begin work. → *I* am **beginning** work.

5 *-ic* changes to *-ick*: *picnic/picnicking*; *-ie* changes to *-y*: *lie/lying*:
Lie *down.* → *I am* **lying** *down.*

Write: Add *-ing* to the verbs in these sentences.

1 I'm making the beds. (make)
2 I'm .... a sandwich. (eat)
3 I'm .... a letter. (write)
4 I'm always .... things. (forget)
5 I'm .... on my coat. (put)
6 I'm .... abroad. (travel)
7 I'm .... the 9.04. (catch)
8 I'm .... of thirst. (die)
9 I'm .... your case. (carry)

9.2B Uses of the present progressive tense: 'I am working/he is working' [> LEG 9.11]

Study:
★★

There are four basic uses of the **present progressive tense.** We use it for:
1 Actions in progress at the moment of speaking: ***He's working*** at the moment.
2 Temporary situations/actions, not necessarily in progress at the moment of speaking:
My daughter ***is studying*** English at Durham University.
3 Planned actions (+ future adverbial reference): ***We're spending*** next winter in Australia. [> 9.9A]
4 Repeated actions with adverbs like *always, forever*: ***She's always helping*** *people.*

Write:
a Use the present progressive in the sentences below.
b Number the sentences 1, 2, 3 or 4 to show uses of the present progressive.

1 Don't rush me. I am working (1) as fast as I can. (I/work)
2 What ....? It looks awful. (you/drink)
3 .... to see the boss. (She/still wait)
4 .... to catch his train. (He/hurry)
5 ...., aren't you? Calm down! (You/constantly/panic)
6 .... more and more politically aware these days. (Young people/become)
7 What .... nowadays? (John/do) – .... for the British cycle team. (Helride)
8 .... our holiday here very much. (We/enjoy)
9 .... people by asking personal questions. (He/always/upset)
10 What time .... tomorrow? (he/arrive)
11 .... to lock the front door. (Shelforeverlforget)
12 .... treatment on my bad back for a few weeks. (I/have)
13 You can't believe a word he says. .... (He/always/lie)
14 .... the 1,500metres in the next Olympics. (Shelrun)

9.2C The simple present and the present progressive tenses in typical contexts [> LEG 9.12]

Write: **a** Use the correct present tense form.
b Say what the context for each extract could be, written and/or spoken.

1 Let me explain what you have to do. First you (take) ....take......... the photos and (sort) ....sort......... them into categories. Then you (file) ..file... them according to subject.

2 We (hope) .... you (enjoy) .... this marvellous weather as much as we are. We (sunbathe) .... and (go) .... swimming every day. Next week we (go) .... snorkelling.

3 The play is set in London in 1890. The action (take) .... place in Sir Don Wyatt's mansion. When the curtain (go) .... up, the hero and heroine (sit) .... in the lounge. They (argue) ....

4 The house is in a mess because we've got the workmen in. The plumber (put) .... in a new bath, the electricians (rewire) .... the system, and the carpenter (build) .... us some new bookshelves!

5 Dear Jane,
Sorry to hear about your problem at work
I (think) .... you (do) .... the right thing, but I (doubt) .... whether your boss really (know) .... his job from what you (tell) .... me!

6 Pym (pass) .... to Smith, who (run) .... straight at the central defence and (shoot) ...., and Gomez (push) .... it over the bar for a corner.

9.2D Context

Write: Put in the simple present or present progressive. Note where both forms are possible.

I love you. I miss you and I'll never forget you. xxx

The strangest bookmarks!

A HOLIDAY JOB WITH A DIFFERENCE!
I (*study*)¹ ..am studying.. English at Exeter University. I'm on holiday at the moment and I (work) ²............................ in a public library. I'm lucky to have this job. I (not have to) ³............................ get up early. The library (open) ⁴............................ at 10 and (close) ⁵............................ at 7. It's interesting work because people (always come in) ⁶............................ and (ask) ⁷............................ me to help them, so I (learn) ⁸............................ a lot about different subjects. I (enjoy) ⁹............................ the job and (find) ¹⁰............................ it very amusing, too. People (use) ¹¹............................ the strangest things as bookmarks. I have found a rasher of bacon (uncooked!). Matchsticks (be) ¹²............................ common and so (be) ¹³............................ bus tickets. My colleagues (always find) ¹⁴............................ things too – even a •’10 note, but I haven't been so lucky! I often (think) ¹⁵............................ of the photo of a beautiful woman which I found. On the back were the words: ‘I (love) ¹⁶............................ you. I (miss) ¹⁷............................ you and I’ll never forget you.'

9.3 The simple past tense

9.3A The past form and pronunciation of regular verbs [> LEG 9.14, App 39]

Study: ☆☆

1 Regular verbs always end with a *-d* in the simple past, but we do not always pronounce the *-d* ending in the same way. We usually add *-ed* to the base form of the verb:
I play – I played, I open – I opened. We do not pronounce *-ed* as an extra syllable. We pronounce it as /d/: I played /pleɪd/ Not */pleɪ-ɪd/*; I opened /əʊpənd/ Not */əʊpənɪd/*; I arrived /əraɪvd/ Not */əraɪvɪd/*; I married /mærɪd/ Not */mæri-ɪd/* [compare > 2.5A].

2 Verbs which end in the following sounds are pronounced /t/ in the past: /k/ packed; /s/ passed; /tʃ/ watched; /ʃ/ washed; /f/ laughed; /p/ tipped.

3 A few verbs are pronounced and spelt /d/ or /t/: *burned/burnt, dreamed/dreamt.*

4 Verbs ending in the sounds /t/ or /d/ have their past ending pronounced /ɪd/:
added, decided, counted, excited, needed, posted, shouted, started, tasted, wanted.

Write: a Give the past forms of these regular verbs.
b Show whether you would pronounce these past forms as /d/, /t/ or /ɪd/.

1 We waited an hour yesterday. (wait) /ɪd/
2 Joan .... her room on Friday. (clean) / /
3 I .... squash last night. (play) / /
4 She .... my letter yesterday. (post) / /
5 I .... at her. (smile) / /
6 She .... when she saw me. (stop) / /
7 I .... of you last night. (dream) / /
8 Who .... the cakes? (burn) / /
9 He .... a lot as a baby. (cry) / /
10 I .... TV all evening. (watch) / /
11 We .... when we saw them. (laugh) / /
12 He .... the sergeant's orders. (obey) / /
13 We .... into the house. (hurry) / /
14 You .... to me! (lie) / /
15 I .... early yesterday. (finish) / /
16 It's .... in the bill. (include) / /
17 I .... the door before I left. (lock) / /
18 We .... first class. (travel) / /

9.3B Irregular past forms [> LEG 9.15-16, App 40]

Study: ☆

1 Some irregular verbs have the same form in all parts: hit-hit-hit, cut-cut-cut.

2 Some change one part only: keep-kept-kept, make-made-made, sell-sold-sold.

3 Some change two parts: break-broke-broken, know-knew-known, ride-rode-ridden.

Write: Supply the past forms of the irregular verbs in italics.

1 I often *see* Giulio. I ....saw........ him again only yesterday.
2 As teenagers, we always .... each other very well. We still *understand* each other now.
3 I hardly .... Ray's wife. Did you *know* her at all?
4 We always *meet* on Sunday. We .... last Sunday as usual.
5 I often *find* things on the beach. I .... this very old bottle yesterday.
6 Someone's always *leaving* that window open. Who .... it open this time?
7 I .... a lot of letters when I was young. I hardly ever *write* letters now.
8 They *sell* all kinds of rubbish now, but they once .... good handmade furniture.
9 She is very good at figures, you know. She ....first in maths at school.
10 I *have* the same car now that I .... five years ago.
11 I don't *keep* pets now, but I .... a dog when I was a boy.
12 Where did you *eat* last night? – We .... at a restaurant.

9.3C Uses of the simple past tense: 'I worked/he worked' [> LEG 9.17-18]

Study: ★★

We use the **simple past** to talk about events, actions or situations which happened in the past and are now finished. We always have to say (or imply) **when** the action happened, so we often use time references like yesterday, ago, last summer [> 7.2A].

We use the past:

– to describe actions which happened in the recent or distant past:
Sam ***phoned a moment ago.*** (Not *Sam has phoned') [> 9.5A]
The Goths ***invaded Rome in A.D. 410,*** (Not 'The Goths had invaded') [> 9.6]

– to describe past habit: ***I smoked forty cigarettes a day*** till I gave up. [compare > 11.11]

If we do not use time references (a moment ago, when I was young, etc.) we imply them:
I *saw* Fred in town. (i.e. when I was there this morning)
I *never met* my grandfather. (i.e. perhaps he died before I was born)

Write: Give complete answers to these questions using the time references in brackets.

1 How long ago did you work as a civil servant? (five years ago)
..I worked as a civil servant five years ago...
2 When did you last play football? (when I was 14)
....
3 When did the Carters leave for their summer holiday? (last night)
....
4 What time did John arrive? (at 4)
....
5 When did you last see 'Gone with the Wind'? (recently)
....
6 How long did you wait at the airport? (till they arrived)
....
7 When did Sally tell you about her engagement? (when she was here)
....

9.3D Context

Write: Put in the correct forms of the simple past tense of the verbs in brackets.

... red eyes and green scaly skin

LIZARDMAN

Christopher Davis, a young driver from South Carolina, (claim) ......claimed...... a monster (attack) ^{2}............................ him while he was driving along a lonely road. The monster (be) ^{3}............................ seven feet tall and (have) ^{4}............................ red eyes and green, scaly skin. It (chase) ^{5}............................ Christopher's car and (jump) .... on the roof. Many people (believe) ^{7}............................ the story and the newspapers (call) ^{8}............................ the monster 'Lizardman'. Seventy hunters recently (set out) ^{9}............................ to trap Lizardman and a local radio (offer) ^{10}............................ $1 million to anyone who (capture) ^{11}............................ him dead or alive. Lizardman had so much publicity that thousands of people (visit) ^{12}............................ South Carolina to find him. No one has found him yet. As everyone knows, monsters may or may not exist, but they are very good for the tourist industry!

9.4 The simple past and past progressive tenses

9.4A Irregular verbs with the same form in the present as in the past: ‘put/put’ [> LEG 9.16]

Study: ★★

A small number of irregular verbs have the same form in the present as in the past: e.g. *burst/burst, cost/cost, cut/cut, hit/hit, put/put*. We have to remember, especially with such verbs, that the third person singular does not change in the past:
He put on *a clean shirt yesterday.* **(past)** ***He puts on*** *a clean shirt every day.* **(present)**
After *I, you, we,* and *they,* the context or the adverbial tells us the tense:
I put on *a clean shirt* ***yesterday***. **(past)** ***I put on*** *a clean shirt* ***every day***. **(present)**

Write: Do these sentences refer to the present or the past? Write 'present' or 'past'.
In a few cases both references are possible.

1 That shirt cost me •’7.00. ....
2 He often cuts himself. ....
3 She hurt her arm. ....
4 He let me drive his car. ....
5 She reads a lot. ....
6 I set the table every morning. ....
7 I set the table an hour ago. ....
8 She often hit him. ....
9 He shut the door with a bang. ....
10 I hurt my arm yesterday. ....
11 I often let him drive my car. ....
12 She always beat him at tennis. ....
13 The BBC broadcasts every day. ....
14 The BBC broadcast the talk yesterday. ....

9.48 Uses of the past progressive tense: 'I was working' [> LEG 9.20]

Study: ★★

There are five basic uses of the **past progressive tense.** We use it for:

1 Temporary actions in progress in the past: *I* ***was living*** *abroad in* ***1987.***
We often use *all* to emphasize continuity *(all day, all summer): It* ***was raining*** *all night.*

2 Actions which were in progress when something else happened:
Just as/When I ***was leaving,*** *the phone rang.*
These are often introduced by conjunctions like *when, as, just as* and *while,* but the shorter action can be introduced by *when: We* ***were having*** *supper when the phone rang.*

3 Actions in progress at the same time: *While I* ***was reading,*** *Joan* ***was playing*** *the piano.*

4 Repeated actions with e.g. *always: When I worked here, I* ***was always making*** *mistakes.*

5 Polite inquiries: *I* ***was wondering*** *if you could give me a lift.*

Write: Use the past progressive in the sentences below.

1 I ..was not listening... , so I missed what he said. (not listen)
2 We stayed because we .... ourselves. (enjoy)
3 .... tennis yesterday? (they play)
4 He .... all weekend. (garden)
5 .... television all evening? (you watch)
6 It .... hard all day. (rain)
7 I .... whether you could lend me some money. (wonder)
8 .... when I left? (you still work)
9 I lived in France at the time you .... in Spain. (live)
10 When she was younger, she .... things for other people. (always do)
11 Bill and Sue .... their house, before they moved. (constantly improve)
12 .... when I rang you? (you read)
13 Just as I .... to an interesting part of the story, the doorbell rang. (get)

9.4C The simple past and the past progressive in story-telling [> LEG 9.21]

Study: ★★

We often use past tenses (simple past, past progressive and past perfect [> 9.6]) for story-telling. We use the past progressive to set the scene at the beginning of the story.

Write:

a Circle the simple past and the past progressive verbs in this story.
b Number the past progressive verbs 1, 2, 3 to show their uses [> 9.4B].

THE SECRET AGENT
It was just before the Second World War. Tom was only 20 at the time and was living with his mother. He was working in a bank and travelling to London every day. One morning, he received a mysterious letter. It was addressed to 'Mr Thomas Parker'. The letter, which was signed, 'A Friend', asked Tom to go to The Crown Inn during his lunch hour. All morning, as he was dealing with customers, Tom was wondering whether he should do this. At lunch time he decided to go to the inn. It was full of people and Tom couldn't recognize anyone. He was just wondering if he should leave, when a stranger introduced himself and said he had known Tom's father, who had died when Tom was a baby. The stranger explained that Tom's father, Bill, was a secret agent in the First World War. Through this meeting, Tom was recruited to be a secret agent, too, and was already working in France when the war began.

9.4D Context

Write: Put in the simple past or past progressive. Note where both forms are possible.

TUG-OF-WAR WITH A HEDGEHOG
Mrs May, our District Nurse, *(drive)*1 was driving home at 3 a.m. one night after an urgent visit to a sick patient. She *(drive)*2........................ along a deserted country lane, when she *(see)* .... a new kind of animal. She *(stop)*4........................ her car and *(get out)* .... The animal *(be)*6........................ clearly visible in the blaze of her headlights. It *(look)* .... like a hedgehog with a tall white hat. It *(cross)*8........................ the road without paying any attention to Mrs May. When Mrs May *(go)*9........................ close to it, she *(notice)*10........................ that there was a plastic yoghurt pot on the hedgehog's head. The poor creature had got its head stuck in the plastic pot! Her instincts as a nurse *(tell)*11........................ her she would have to rescue it, so she *(pull)*12........................ at the pot, but the hedgehog *(pull)*13........................, too. After a struggle, she *(pull)*14........................ the pot off the hedgehog's head. Mrs May *(think)*15........................ the hedgehog *(look)*16........................ rather sad, when she *(notice)*17........................ that the pot was half full of strawberry yoghurt. She *(give)*18........................ it back to the hedgehog. The creature *(seize)* 19........................ it, *(put)*20........................ it on its head again, and triumphantly *(continue)* 21........................ its journey across the road.

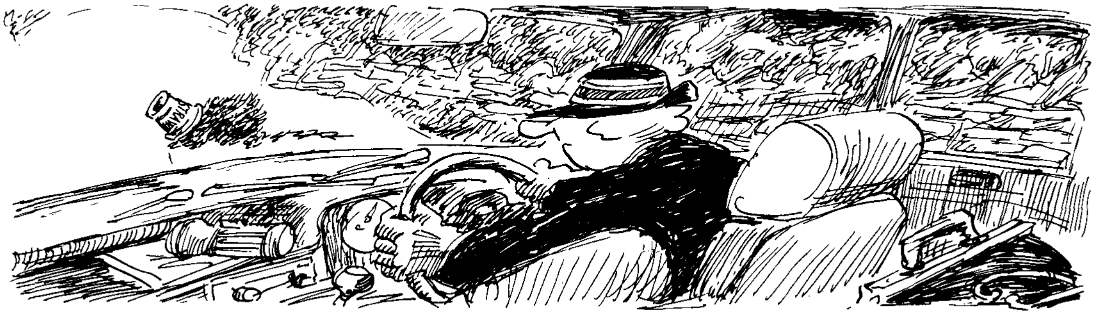

A hedgehog with a tall white hat

9.5 The simple present perfect and present perfect progressive

9.5A Uses of the simple present perfect tense: 'I have eaten/he has eaten'

[> LEG 9.22-27]

Study: ★★

There are two basic uses of the ***simple present perfect tense.*** We use it to describe:

1 Actions beginning in the past and continuing up to the present moment:
- with time references like *before (now), ever, never ... before, up till now, so far:*
  *I **have received** 20 cards so far. I **have never tasted** papaya (before).*
- with *since/for*: ***I've lived*** *here since 1980.* ***I've lived*** *here for 20 years.* [> 7.3A]

2 Actions which happened at an unspecified time in the past:
- with no time reference at all: ***Have you passed*** *your driving test?*
  (Depending on context, this could mean 'very recently' or 'at any time up to now'.)
- with references to recent time, like *just, recently, already, still, yet* ***I've just eaten.***
- repeated/habitual actions: ***I've watched*** *him on TV* ***several times. I've often met*** *her.*

Write: Supply the simple present perfect tense of the verbs in brackets.

1 Up to now I've visited twenty countries. (visit)
2 He .... six letters so far. (type)
3 .... couscous? (you ever eat)
4 They .... like this before. (never quarrel)
5 I .... to Marco since 1989. (not write)
6 We .... there since we were young. (not be)
7 I saw her in May, but .... her since. (not see)
8 She .... the same car for fifteen years. (drive)
9 I .... them for many years. (know)
10 She .... in that shop for ages! (be)
11 They .... a new car. (buy)
12 He .... all over the world. (travel)
13 .... your promise? (you forget)
14 I .... an elephant. (ride)
15 She .... in from Rome. (just fly)
16 She .... a director. (recently become)
17 They .... to me. (already speak)
18 I'.................................... my tea yet. (not drink)
19 She still .... my letter. (not answer)
20 I .... her several times. (met)

9.5B The present perfect progressive tense: 'I have been eating' [> LEG 9.32-34]

Study: ★★

1 We use the ***present perfect progressive*** in place of the simple present perfect when we want to emphasize that something has been in progress throughout a period:
Instead of saying: ***I've typed*** *all day,* we can say, for emphasis, ***I've been typing*** *all day.*
Depending on context, this may mean *I'm still typing* or *I've just recently stopped.*

2 Some verbs like *learn, lie, live, rain, sit, sleep, stand, study, wait, work,* naturally suggest continuity [> 7.3B] and we often use them with *since* and *for* [> 7.3A].
We can use them in the simple present perfect tense:
I've waited *here for two hours.* ***I've worked*** *here since 1987.*
But we most often use them in the progressive:
I've been waiting *here for two hours.* ***I've been working*** *here since 1987.*

Write: Supply the present perfect progressive tense of the verbs in brackets.

1 I'm tired. I have been digging all day. (dig)
2 How long .... here? (you wait)
3 I .... here since 6 o'clock. (stand)
4 How long .... Chinese? (you learn)
5 She .... English for five years. (study)
6 You're out of breath. .... ? (you run)
7 We .... here for twelve years. (live)
8 Your eyes are red. .... (You cry)
9 How long .... ? (the children sleep)
10 What .... all afternoon? (you do)

9.5C The simple present perfect and the present perfect progressive compared [> LEG 9.34]

Study: ★★

The simple present perfect and the progressive forms mean different things here:
***I've been painting** this room. It will look good when it's finished.* (the job is unfinished)
***I've painted** this room. Doesn't it look good?* (the job is definitely finished)

Write: Supply the simple present perfect or the present perfect progressive.

1a I ..I've typed.. all your letters. The job's done. (type)
1b I .... this report since yesterday and I'm only half way through. (type)
2a Your mother is still in the kitchen. She .... all morning. (cook)
2b I .... a lovely meal which I'll be serving in a couple of minutes. (cook)
3a We .... this garage ourselves and have just begun to use it. (build)
3b We .... this garage ourselves and hope to finish it within the next two months. (build)

9.5D The simple past and the simple present perfect compared [> LEG 9.23, 9.26.1]

Study: ★★

With the **simple past** we have to say or imply **when** something happenened [> 7.3A, 9.3C]:
*I **finished** the job **yesterday/an hour ago**,* etc. (Not **I have finished the job yesterday.**)
With the **present perfect**, we do not say 'exactly when': *I **have finished** the job.*
Even if we say *I **have just finished** the job*, we are still not saying 'exactly when' [> 9.5A].

Write: Supply the simple past or the simple present perfect in these pairs of sentences.

1a She ....never read.. a book until she was 25. (never read)
1b She is 80 and .... a book in her life. (never read)
2a I .... lunch an hour ago. (have)
2b I .... lunch. (just have)
3a .... to the bank yet? (he go)
3b .... to the bank at lunch time? (he go)

9.5E Context

Write: Put in the simple present perfect, the present perfect progressive or the simple past.

I waved my right arm

THE AUSTRALIAN SALUTE

Before I (visit) ^{1}......visited...... Australia, an Australian friend in London (tell) .... me I'd learn 'the Australian salute'. 'What's that?' I (ask) .... 'You'll find out when you get there,' he (say) ^{4}........................ I (arrive) ^{5}........................ in Perth last week. Since then, I (stay) ^{6}........................ at a nice hotel near a beautiful beach. I (never visit) ^{7}........................Australia before and I am enjoying my stay. I (swim) ^{8}........................ every day from the time I (arrive) .... Yesterday, an Australian friend (suggest) ^{10}........................a tour into 'the bush'. I (agree) ^{11}........................ at once. The first thing I (notice) ^{12}........................ when we (be) ^{13}........................ in the bush (be) ^{14}........................ the flies. After a while I (*remember*) ^{15}........................ the conversation I had had in London before I (come) ^{16}........................ here. 'What's the "Australian salute"?' I (ask) ^{17}........................ suddenly, as I waved my right arm to keep the flies away. 'That's it!' my friend said as he (wave) ^{18}........................ back!

9.6 The simple past perfect and past perfect progressive tenses

9.6A Uses of the simple past perfect tense: 'I had worked' [> LEG 9.29-30]

Study: ★★

1 When we have two past references, we are not obliged to use the simple past perfect:
*After **I finished** work, **I went** home.* (simple past + simple past)

2 But we often need the past perfect for the event that happened first to avoid ambiguity:
*When I **arrived,** Ann **left*** (i.e. at that moment)
*When **I arrived,** Ann **had left.*** (i.e. before **I** got there)

We use the past perfect to refer to 'an earlier past', that is to describe the first of two or more actions: ***First** the patient died. **Then** the doctor arrived.*
*The patient **had died** when the doctor **arrived.***
We often introduce the past perfect with conjunctions like *when, after, as soon as, by the time that*. We use adverbs like *already, ever, never ... before.*

Write: Supply the simple past or the simple past perfect. Show when both are possible.

1 They ....locked/had locked.... the gates before **I** ....got.................. there. (lock, get)
2 By the time we ...., the party .... (arrive, finish)
3 I .... the shop as soon as I .... the contents of the box. (ring, check)
4 After we .... it on the phone, **I** .... him a letter about it. (discuss, write)
5 We .... a good rest when our guests. .... (have, all leave)
6 When she .... the office this morning, Jim. .... (ring, already go out)
7 Before we .... Tim to the theatre, he .... a stage play before. (take, never see)
8 I .... the carpet when the dog .... in and .... himself. (just clean, come, shake)
9 He .... to do the job in an hour, but he still .... by 10 o'clock. (promise, not finish)

9.6B Uses of the present and past perfect progressive: 'I have/had been working' [> LEG 9.32-33]

Study: ★★

The past perfect progressive is the 'past' form of the present perfect progressive. [> 9.5B]
The progressive forms have the effect of emphasizing continuity.

1 We use them to describe actions in progress throughout a period:
present perfect progressive: *She is very tired. She **has been typing** all day.*
past perfect progressive: *She was very tired. She **had been typing** all day.*
Depending on context, she was still typing, or had recently stopped. *(then,* not now)

2 Some verbs like *learn, lie, live, wait, work,* naturally suggest 'continuity' [> 7.38, 9.5B]:
We say: ***I've waited** for two hours.* (simple present perfect)
Or: ***I've been waiting** for two hours.* (present perfect progessive)
We say: ***I'd waited** for two hours before he arrived.* (simple past perfect)
Or: ***I'd been waiting** for two hours before he arrived.* (past perfect progressive)

3 Repeated actions:
present perfect progressive: ***He's been phoning** every night for a month.*
past perfect progressive: ***He'd been phoning** every night for a month.*

4 Drawing conclusions:
present perfect progressive: *Her eyes are red. It's clear **she's been crying.***
past perfect progressive: *Her eyes were red. It was clear **she'd been crying.***

Write: Supply the present perfect progressive or the past perfect progressive tenses. Show where both are possible.

1 I was tired. I ..had been digging.. all day. (dig)
2 We .... for your call all evening. (wait)
3 How long .... there? (you wait)
4 I .... there since 6 o'clock. (stand)
5 She .... English for five years before she visited Canada. (study)
6 It started raining last Monday and it .... ever since. (rain)
7 I .... to the firm regularly for a month before, but they still hadn't answered. (write)
8 They .... me about it every day for the past week. (ring)
9 I knew you .... – How did you know? – Your hair was covered with paint! (paint)
10 You were out of breath when you came in this morning. ....? (you run)

9.6C The simple past perfect and past perfect progressive compared

[> LEG 9.34]

Study: ★★

The past perfect progressive can tell us that an action was uncompleted then:
When I got home, I found that ***Jill had been painting*** her room. [compare > 9.5C]
The simple past perfect can tell us that an action was completed then:
*When I got home, I found that **Jill had painted** her room.*

Write: Supply the simple past perfect or the past perfect progressive.

1 We had been cooking .... all day for the party that evening and by 8 o'clock we still weren't ready. (cook)
2 John .... a beautiful meal for his guests and they all enjoyed it. (prepare)
3 I knew she .... the washing because the machine was still working when I got in. (do)
4 I knew she .... the washing because when I got in she was ready to go out. (do)
5 By 10 o'clock the children .... their homework and were ready to go to bed. (do)
6 The children .... their homework and by 10 o'clock they still hadn't finished. (do)

9.6D Context

Write: Put in the past perfect simple or progressive or the simple past. Give alternatives where possible.

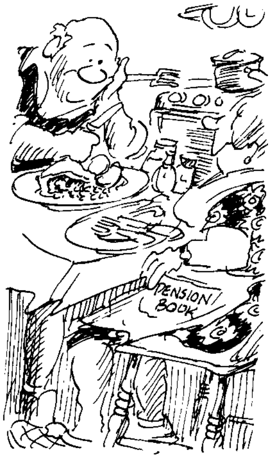

He wasn't enjoying his lunch

COOKING THE BOOKS?

Old Mr Williams was very concerned. He and his wife were pensioners and he (spend) ^{1} had spent.. the whole morning looking for their pension books. He (look) ^{2}........................ everywhere, but he (not be able) ^{3}........................ to find them. Meanwhile, his wife (be) ^{4}........................ busy. She (cook) ^{5}........................ all morning. She (prepare) ^{6}........................ a delicious meal. She (make) ^{7}........................ SOUP, followed by a lovely pie, which she (bake) ^{8}........................ in the oven. Mr Williams (always enjoy) ^{9}........................ his food, but he clearly wasn't enjoying his lunch. 'What's the matter, Tom?' his wife asked. Mr Williams (have to) ^{10}........................ confess that he (lost) ^{11}........................ their pension books. 'I know,' Mrs Williams (say) ^{12}........................, with a twinkle in her eye. 'I've got them'. 'You've got them?' 'Yes – and guess where I (find) ^{13}........................ them!' Mr Williams suddenly remembered. 'In the oven! I (*put*) ^{14}........................ them there for safe-keeping.' He (smile) ^{15}........................ with relief as she (fish) ^{16}........................ them out of her apron pocket!

9.7 The simple future tense

9.7A Some uses of 'will' and 'shall' [> LEG 9.37, 11.23, 11.38-40, 11.73]

Study:
★★

1 *Will* and *shall* are 'modal verbs', so they are like *can, must,* etc. [> **Chapter 11**].

2 We often use *will* and *shall* to make predictions **(the simple future tense):**
*It **will rain** tomorrow. I don't know if I **shall see** you next week.*

3 We use *will* and *shall* in many other ways, apart from predicting the future: e.g.
- intentions/promises [> 9.8A]: ***I'll*** (= I will) ***buy*** *you a bicycle for your birthday.*
- requests/invitations [> 11.6D]: ***Will you hold*** *the door open for me, please?*
- offers [> 11.6E]: ***Shall I get*** *your coat for you?*
- suggestions [> 11.6F]: ***Shall we go*** *for a swim tomorrow?*
- threats: *Just wait! **You'll regret** this!*
- decisions [> 9.9A]: ***I'll stop*** *and ask the way.*

Write: Match the sentences on the left with the functions on the right.

A
1 We'll have a thunderstorm tonight, I'm sure. d
2 Will there be a general strike? __
3 I'll send you a card from Florida. __
4 Will you write to me? __
5 Shall I go to the post office for you? __
6 Shall we take a drive into the country later? __
7 I'll report you to the police next time. __
8 The wedding will take place next Friday. __
9 I hope you'll come and see us again. __
10 Tell them again. Perhaps they'll understand. __
11 Will you have lunch with us on Sunday? __
12 I'll be seeing John at the meeting tomorrow. __

B
a) making a formal announcement
b) making a request
c) stating a planned arrangement
d) making a prediction
e) making an invitation
f) asking for a prediction
g) promising/stating intention
h) expressing future hope
i) expressing future uncertainty
j) threatening
k) offering
l) making a suggestion

9.7B 'Will' and 'shall' to refer to the future [> LEG 9.35-37]

Study:
★★

Forms of 'will' and 'shall'

1 When we are referring to the future, we use *will* with all persons *(I, you, he, she,* etc.), but in British English, we often use *shall* with *I/we*. (Not **he/she/it/you/they shall'):*
I/We will (I'll/We'll) *see you tomorrow.* Or: ***I shall/We shall*** *see you tomorrow.*

2 In speech, we weaken *shall* to /ʃəl/. We often use *'ll* in place of *will* in speech and sometimes in writing, especially after vowels: ***I'll/He'll*** *see you tomorrow.*
We also use *'ll* after consonants: ***Tom'll*** *be here soon.* ***When'll*** *I see you?*

3 Negative short forms are: *'ll not, won't* (= will not) or *shan't* (= shall not):
I'll not *be there/**I won't** be there/**I shan't** be there tomorrow.*
In American English *shall* and *shan't* with a future reference are rare.

Uses of the 'willlshall' future

1 Prediction: We invite prediction or we say what we think will happen:
*Who **will win** on Saturday? Tottenham **will win** on Saturday.*

2 In formal style we say what will happen for events that have been arranged:
*The wedding **will take place** at St Andrew's on June 27th.*

3 We use *shall* and *will* to express hopes and expectations:
*I **hope she'll** get the job she's applied for. She'll get a surprise. – **I expect she will.***

Write: Supply suitable forms of will and shall. Give alternatives where possible.
Situation: Jim is asking his friend Don for advice about a job interview.

JIM: What sorts of questions do you think they ^{1}....'ll/will.... ask?
DON: The same as they asked me. They ^{2}........................ ask you why you want to work for them.
JIM: That's easy. I want to earn more money.
DON: Yes, but you can't say that. You ^{3}........................ have to think of some better reasons.
JIM: I can't think of any just now, but I expect I ^{4}........................ think of something at the time. I hope I ^{5}........................ anyway!
DON: I'm sure you ^{6}........................ . What time is your interview?
JIM: It's at three in the afternoon.
DON: I know it ^{7}........................ help very much, but I ^{8}........................ be thinking of you. Don't worry, everything ^{9}........................ be OK!
JIM: When ^{10}........................ I know if I've got the job?
DON: They ^{11}........................ let you know in a couple of days. That's what happened in my case. You ^{12}........................ get a letter which begins, 'We regret to inform you – !'

9.7C Context

Write: Put in suitable forms of *will* and shall.

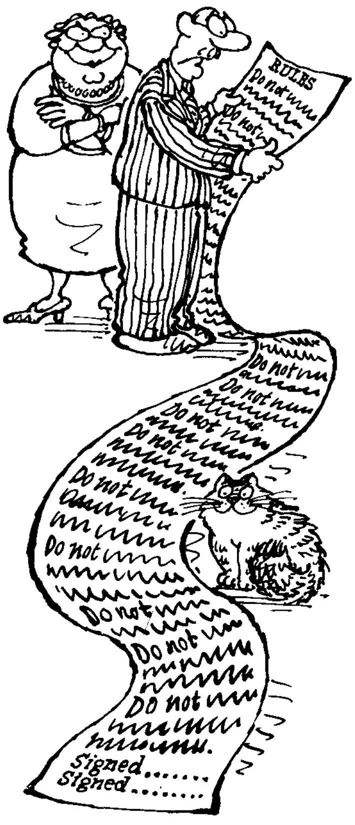

RETIREMENT
I'm going to retire next week and I'm looking forward to it. For the first time in my life I ^{1}...shall.... be able to do all the things I've always wanted to do. I ^{2}.................. (not) have to travel to work any more. I .... (not) have to earn a living. My firm.................. pay my pension into my bank account and I ^{5}.................. (not) have to worry about earning money ever again. My wife and I ^{6}.................. be able to spend more time together. We ^{7}.................. take care of the house together. We ^{8}.................. do the shopping together. I explained all these plans to my wife. 'Of course,' she said. 'I'm looking forward to your retirement, too, but you must remember that while you can retire, I can't. I've written out some simple rules for us both which ^{9}.................. apply from the day you retire. Here they are:'

RULES OF THE HOUSE
1 We ^{10}.................. take turns to do the cooking and the housework.
2 We ^{11}.................. (not) watch TV all day long.
3 We ^{12}.................. keep regular hours.
4 We ^{13}.................. find interesting hobbies to keep us occupied.
5 We ^{14}.................. spend time out of the house as well as in it.
6 We ^{15}.................. keep fit in mind and body.

'They look like sensible suggestions,' I said. 'They are,' my wife answered. 'If we follow these rules I'm sure we ^{16}.................. enjoy a long and happy life together.' 'I hope we ^{17}.................. ,' I answered.

If we follow these rules .

9.8 The simple future, the future progressive, the future perfect

9.8A Simple future 'I will work' and progressive 'I will be working' compared

[> LEG 9.40-41]

Study:
★★

There are three basic uses of the future progressive:

1 We use it to emphasize actions that will be in progress in the near or distant future, especially when we imagine ourselves doing something:
By this time tomorrow, ***I'll be lying*** on the beach. (Not *I will lie')

2 The progressive 'softens' the effect of will + verb and sounds more polite:
When will ***you finish*** these letters? (e.g. boss to assistant)
When ***will you be seeing*** Mr White? (e.g. assistant to boss)
If we say ***I'll work*** on this tomorrow we may be stating an intention.
If we say ***I'll be working*** on this tomorrow, we are simply referring to future time.

3 We use the future progressive like the present progressive for planned actions [> 9.2B]:
We'll be spending *the winter in Australia* is the same as:
We're spending *the winter in Australia.*

Write 1: Supply will + verb or will be + *-ing*. Where both are possible, see if you can 'feel' the different effect of the simple future compared with the progressive.

1 Sit down and fasten your seat belt. We will take off in a few minutes. (take off)
2 When .... to the bank to draw some money? (you go)
3 Do you think you .... here in five years' time? (still work)
4 They .... from Dover, not Folkestone. (sail)
5 The President .... the Prime Minister before flying back home. (meet)
6 So you're stopping off in Dubai on your way to Beijing. How long .... there? (you stay)
7 We .... to London next Monday morning. (drive)
8 By this time next year, I .... my memoirs. (write)
9 In five years' time a permanent space station .... the moon. (circle)
10 I don't think I .... him tonight. (see)

Write 2: Supply will + verb or will be + *-ing* – whichever 'feels' appropriate in this dialogue.
Situation: Susan and her family will be setting out on holiday tomorrow morning.

LOUNGE
GATES
INFO
DELAY
DELAY

MEG: So you're off on holiday tomorrow. How exciting! What time (you leave) ^{1}...will you be leaving....................?
SUE: We (leave) ^{2}.............. the house at about 6 a.m.
MEG: 6 a.m.! Why so early? You don't have to check in till 9.45. You (arrive) ^{3}.............. at the airport terribly early!
SUE: I know, but the airport is very busy at this time of the year and we want to avoid the rush. We (check in) ^{4}.............. as quickly as we can, then we (have) ^{5}.............. breakfast at the cafeteria.
MEG: I'm sure that's wise of you. Imagine! By this time tomorrow evening you (lie) ^{6}.............. on the beach and I (do) .... the ironing or something!
SUE: I hope you're riqht! I hope we (not sit around) ^{8}.............. at the airport. You never know these days!

9.88 The future perfect simple and the future perfect progressive tenses

[> LEG 9.43-44]

Study: ★★

1 We often use the **future perfect simple** with by and not ...*till/until* [> 7.3B] to show that an action will already be completed by a certain time in the future.
We use it with verbs which point to completion, like complete, finish and retire:
I *will have retired* by the year 2020. 1***won't have retired*** till the year 2020.

2 We often use the **future perfect progressive** with verbs like learn, lie, live, rain, sit, wait and *work* which naturally suggest continuity [> 7.3B, 9.5B, 9.6B] to say that what is in progress now will be in progress in the future:
By this time next week, I ***will have been working*** *on this book for a year.*

Write: Supply the future perfect simple or progressive. Note where both are possible.

1 They ....will have completed...... the new bridge by the end ot the year. (complete)
2 By the end of this week, I .... seventeen weeks for my phone to be repaired. (wait)
3 Do you realize that on August 15, we .... in this house for fifty years? (live)
4 I hope I .... this report by the end of the day. (finish)
5 She .... for work before the children get home from school. (leave)
6 We .... non-stop for fourteen hours before we get to Calcutta. (fly)
7 They .... work on the great dam by the end of this decade. (complete)
8 Radio waves from earth .... for light years before anyone picks them up. (travel)

9.8C Context

Write: Put in the simple future, the future progressive or the future perfect simple.

FLYING JUNK

By the middle of the 21st century we (build) ^{1}....will have built..... space stations which (circle) .... the earth and (probably circle) 3............................ the moon, too. We (establish) .... bases on planets like Mars. At present, we use radar to 'watch' nearly 8,000 objects in space. In addition, there are at least 30,000 bits of rubbish from the size of marbles to the size of basket balls flying round the earth. These (increase) ^{5}............................ in number by the year 2050 and (orbit) ^{6}............................ the earth. All these bits and pieces are watched by NORAD (North American Radar Defence Command). NORAD (have) ^{7}............................ more and more rubbish to watch as the years go by. Some bits fall back to earth, like the Russian satellite C954, which crashed in the Northern Territories of Canada in 1978. Crashing junk could give us a bad headache. Most of the stuff (stay) ^{8}............................ up there (we hope)! The sad fact is that we who are alive today (not clear up) ^{9}............................ our own junk tomorrow. Perhaps we (*just* watch) ^{10}............................ from some other (safa) place as it goes round and round the earth!

Perhaps we'll **be** watching

9.9 'Going to' and other ways of expressing the future

9.9A Uses of the 'going to'-future compared with 'will' [> LEG 9.44-46]

Study: ★★

There are three basic uses of the 'going to'-future:

1 Predictions: We often use *going to* to predict the future, especially when we can see something that is about to happen: *Look out! **She's going** to faint.* (Not *'will*')
Or we can describe something which we know will take place in the future:
*Angus and Margaret **are going to** be married in May.*

2 Intentions: We often use *going to* rather than *will* in informal style:
***I'm going to** practice the piano for two hours this evening.*
***I'm going to** be successful one day.*

3 Planned actions: We use *going to* like the present progressive or future progressive:
***We're going to spend** the winter in Australia.*
Or: ***We're spending** the winter in Australia.* [> 9.2B]
Or: ***We'll be spending** the winter in Australia.* [> 9.8A]

4 We use *will* when we decide to do something at the moment of speaking:
*We're lost. **I'll stop** and ask the way.* (= I've just decided to do this.)

Write: Supply *be going to* or *'ll* in this dialogue.
Situation: Mr Sims is driving. His wife is sitting beside him.

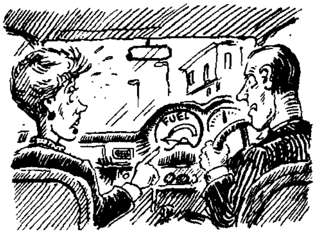

HE: Where *(we spend)* ¹...are we going to spend... the night?
SHE: Cardiff. I've booked us in at the Angel Hotel. Why do you ask?
HE: That's another thirty miles away. We *(run)*².............. out of petrol before we get there. I *(stop)*³.............. at the next filling-station.

Half an hour later.

SHE: This road goes on forever.
HE: We *(get)*⁴.............. stuck. The car's stopping. We *(have to)* .... walk.
SHE: Come on then. Perhaps someone *(give)*⁶.............. us a lift.
HE: Not a filling-station in sight and look at those black clouds. It *(rain)*⁷.............. .
SHE: Look! A car's coming. I *(wave)*⁸.............. to the driver.
HE: Oh good!. He's slowing down. He *(stop)*⁹.............. .

9.96 'am/is/are to', 'be about to', 'be due to' [> LEG 9.47-48]

Study: ★★

1 We use *to be to* for:
- formal arrangements/duties: OPEC *representatives **are to meet** in Geneva in May.*
- formal appointments/instructions: *Three tablets **are to be taken** twice a day.*
- prohibitions: ***You're not to tell** him anything about our plans.*

2 *to be about to* refers to the immediate future:
*Look! The race **is** just **about to** start.*

3 We often use *to be due to* to refer to timetables:
*The plane **is due to** land at 2.15.*

Write: Supply the correct forms of the verb phrases in brackets.

1 The conference delegates ....are to......... meet again later today. (to be to)
2 You .... take these new tablets four times a day. (to be to)
3 They .... open their instructions until midnight. (not to be to)
4 You'll have to hurry. The train .... leave. (to be (just) about to)
5 I can't talk now. I .... go out. (to be (just) about to)
6 There's not much longer to wait. Their plane .... land in ten minutes. (to be due to)
7 Don't be so impatient. She is .... arrive until teatime. (not to be due to)

9.9C The future-in-the-past [> LEG 9.49-50]

Study: ★★

Sometimes we want to refer to events which were 'destined' or planned to take place in the past ('the future-in-the-past'). We use was going to, was about to, was to and was due to. We use these forms for:

– events we couldn't foresee: They didn't know they ***were to be reunited*** ten years later.

– events which were interrupted: We ***were just going to leave,*** when Jean had an accident.

We also use *would* for 'destiny' in story-telling:

*They had already reached 9,000 feet. Soon they **would reach** the top.*

Write: Supply suitable 'future-in-the-past' forms.

1 I ......was to........ meet them at the station at 4, but I was held up in the traffic.
2 She .... phone later, but she must have completely forgotten.
3 She was still young. She didn't realize she .... be world famous before she was 20.
4 He thought his life's work was finished. He didn't know he .... win the Nobel Prize.
5 The plane .... take off at 4.25, but it was delayed.

9.9D Context

Write: Supply suitable future forms (will, going to, etc.). Alternatives are possible.

THE ADVENTURES OF ORLIK

The plane had been privately hired to transport Orlik the bull from one part of the country to the other. 'What (do) ¹are we to do with him, sir?' the co-pilot asked. 'We (deliver) ²....................... him to a farm in Wales,' the captain said. 'I (just check) ³....................... the wooden crate,' the co-pilot said. A few minutes later, he reported that it looked safe. 'I've just heard from Ground Control,' the pilot said. 'Our flight (be) ⁴....................... due in ten minutes. We (take oft) ⁵....................... from Runway Number 7.' Little did both men know how dramatic their flight (be) ⁶....................... They couldn't have imagined that when they were in the air, Orlik the bull (break) ⁷....................... loose from his crate and smash his way into the flight cabin! 'I (take over) ⁸......................., sir!' the co-pilot cried as the captain grabbed Orlik's nose-ring and pulled him away. The co-pilot made an emergency landing in a field. Both men jumped to safety, while Orlik crashed about inside the tiny plane, smashing everything to pieces!

Orlik the bull

9.10 The imperative

9.10A Some uses of the imperative to express different functions [> LEG 9.51-2]

Study:
☐

1 We don't use the imperative just for 'giving orders'. We can use it e.g. for:
- offering: ***Have*** *another sandwich.*
- prohibiting: ***Do not walk*** *on the grass.*
- directing: ***Take*** *the next turning left.*
- warning: ***Look out!*** *A bus is coming!*

2 We can make an imperative more polite or more urgent with *Do*. Compare:
- ordinary imperative: ***Help*** *yourself!*
- polite imperative: ***Do help*** *yourself!*
- negative imperative: ***Don't help*** *yourself!*

Write: Make these imperatives more polite or more urgent.

1 Have a cup of coffee. ...Do have a cup of coffee.........................
2 Make yourself at home. ....
3 Stop talking! ....
4 Hurry! ....
5 Try and ring us. ....
6 Help me with this letter. ....

9.10B The imperative to address particular people [> LEG 9.54]

Study:
★★

1 When we say e.g. *Wait here!* we might be addressing one person or several. We are really saying *'You* (singular or plural) *wait here!'*

2 If we want to speak to someone in particular, we can:
- add *you* (unstressed) for an instruction: ***You wait*** *here for a moment.* (= I want you to)
- add *you* (stressed) to express annoyance: ˈ***You keep*** *quiet!*
- use *you* with (or without) a name: ***You wait*** *here,* ***Henry.*** Or: ***Henry, you wait*** *here.*
- add *yourself/yourselves* to verbs like *help, enjoy, behave:* **Help yourself!**

3 If we are talking to groups of people, we can use the imperative with:
- *everybody:* ***Everybody keep*** *quiet.* ***Keep*** *quiet,* ***everybody****.*
- *somebody/nobody:* ***Somebody answer*** *the phone!* ***Nobody say*** *a word!*
- *Don't .. anybody:* ***Don't say*** *a word,* ***anybody****!* ***Don't anybody say*** *a word!*

Write: Write these imperatives again to address particular people. Alternatives are possible.

1 Enjoy ..Enjoy yourself / Enjoy yourselves.........................
2 Try teaching **40** noisy children every day! ....
3 Make the coffee today! (Meg) ....
4 Turn off that TV! ....
5 Don't turn the lights on! ....
6 Carry this case! (John) ....
7 Sit down! ....
8 Have a short break! ....
9 Don't move! ....
10 (John) Post these letters! ....
11 Don't listen to her! ....
12 Enjoy .... (children)!

9.10C The imperative with question tags [> LEG 9.55]

Study: ★★★

We can make a request [> 11.6D] by adding a 'tag' like *will you?* to an imperative:
1 We add *will you?/won't you?/can't you?* to express annoyance: ***Stop** shouting, **will you**?*
2 We add *would you?/could/can you?* for neutral requests: ***Post** this for me, **would you**?*
3 We add *will you?/won't you?* for friendly offers: ***Take** a seat, **will you**?*
We show our feelings not just by adding a tag, but through stress and intonation.

Write: Rewrite each request as an imperative + tag.

1 Will you stop whistling? ....Stop whistling, will you?........
2 Can't you do something useful? ....
3 Won't you stop asking questions? ....
4 Could you post this letter? ....
5 Would you hold this bag? ....
6 Can you get me some stamps? ....
7 Won't you come in? ....
8 Will you take a seat? ....

9.10D Double imperatives joined by 'and' [> LEG 9.56]

Study: ★★

When we have two imperatives together, we join them with *and* (Not **to**):
***Go and buy** yourself a new pair of shoes.* (Not **Go to buy**)
The only exception is *try*. We can say: ***Try and help*** or ***Try to help***.

Write: Write double imperatives joined by *and* with the following.

1 Come/see ....Come and see us soon......
2 Try/lift it ....
3 Sit here/wait ....
4 Wait/see ....

9.10E Context

Write: Put in the missing imperatives.

ASK AVOID COMEANDASK DO KEEP MIND THINK! DON'T WASTE

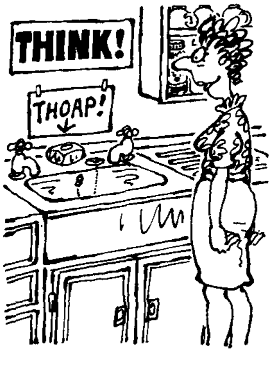
THINK!
THOAP!

The kitchen sink

THINK!
It's a case of ¹.........DO......... AS YOU'RE TOLD in our company! I work for a small firm and my boss is so *bossy* that we all call him 'Napoleon'. He doesn't mind a bit. Wherever you look in our building there's a notice of some kind. The first thing you see when you arrive is ².................... OFF THE GRASS! You come into the building and see ³.................... THE STEPS! The walls are covered with advice. IF IN DOUBT ⁴.................... ME! ⁵.................... MAKING MISTAKES! .... ME FIRST! ⁷.................... TIME! We have learnt to ignore this advice, but lately notices have begun to appear in every part of the building. We have a small kitchen at the back where we make coffee. Yesterday there was a new notice over the kitchen sink. It said: ⁸.................... I was pleased to see it wasn't long before someone added another notice under it which said THOAP!

10 Be, Have, Do

10.1 'Be' as a full verb (1)

10.1A Some uses of the imperative of 'be': 'Be careful!' [> LEG 10.1, 10.5, App 41]

Study: ★★

1 *Be* is a 'helping' (or auxiliary) verb when it 'helps' other verbs, for example to form the present or past progressive [> 9.28, 9.481: *He is reading. He was sleeping.*

2 *Be* is a full verb when we use it with nouns *(She's **a teacher**)* or adjectives *(She's **tall**).*

3 *Be* + noun or adjective in the imperative has limited uses.
We use *be* with nouns to mean 'act like': ***Be** a dear and answer the phone!*
or to mean 'become': ***Be** a better cook!* or 'pretend to be': ***Be** a monster, granddad!*
Don't be is more common: ***Don't be** silly!* ***Don't be** a fool!*

4 We use *be* only with adjectives that describe 'passing behaviour':
Be + *careful, patient, quiet,* etc. ***Don't be*** + *careless, impatient, silly,* etc.
But not with adjectives which describe 'states', like *hungry, thirsty, pretty.*

Write 1: Rephrase the words in italics using *be.*

1 *Act like* an angel and fetch my newspaper, please. ......Be an angel!..........................
2 *Don't act like* a silly idiot! ....
3 The advertisement said: *'Become* the proud owner of a new sports car!' ....
4 *Don't become* a writer. You'll regret it. ....
5 You *play the part of* Batman and I'll *pretend to be* Robin. ....

Write 2: Using *(Do) be ...* or *Don't be ...*, what would you say to these people? Write two sentences for each, choosing from: *afraid, brave, careful, careless, critical, friendly, generous, mean, noisy, quiet.*

1 Some children who are making a lot of noise. ...(Do) be quiet!..........................
2 Someone who has just broken a cup. ....
3 A friend who refuses to give any money to charity. ....
4 A friend who is always criticizing other people. ....
5 Someone who is afraid of going to the dentist. ....

10.1B The use of 'aren't' [> LEG 10.7n.3]

Study: ★★

The full form *Am I not* is rare. We use *Aren't I ...?* (Not *'Amn't I'*) in:

– negative questions:	***Am I not** late?* → ***Aren't I** late?*
– negative Wh-questions:	*Why **am I** not invited?* → *Why **aren't I** invited?*
– negative question tag:	*I'm late, **am I not?*** → *I'm late, **aren't I?*** [> 13.31

We use *aren't I* only in negative questions and negative question tags, never in negative statements: ***I am not** late.* → ***I'm not** late.* (Not *'I aren't late')*

Write: Supply negative forms of *be.*

1 You ....aren't......... cold, are you?
2 I'm right, ... I?
3 You're American, ... you?
4 She's here already, ... she?
5 We're late again, ... we?
6 They're French, ... they?
7 He .... angry, was he?
8 You were early, ... you?

10.1C 'Be' in the simple present and simple past [> LEG 10.6-9]

Study: ☐

In the **simple present** and **simple past** we use *be* as a full verb with nouns and adjectives. Be careful of instances when English makes use of *be* where other languages sometimes don't. For example: ***I am** hungry* (Not **I have hunger**), ***It's** cold* (Not **It makes cold**)

Write: Supply *am, is, are,* was, *were* or weren't.

1 Her family name is now Jones, but it .was.. Smith before she got married.
2 The name of the country .... previously Rhodesia, but it .... now Zimbabwe.
3 I .... hungry. – You can't be. We only had breakfast an hour ago.
4 It .... very cold and windy today, so wear a coat.
5 She .... a very nice woman, but her late husband .... a very unpleasant man.
6 This .... a beautiful blue dress. Buy it.
7 Today .... 23rd March: yesterday .... the 22nd.
8 I'm sure the twins .... 18 today: they ....17 last year.
9 Whose .... these? – They .... Sue's, but she gave them to me, so they .... mine now.
10 Here, this book .... yours, and that one .... Jim's. They were both on the floor.
11 The other students .... here already. They .... all downstairs in the canteen.
12 The party .... next Saturday evening at Petra's house.
13 .... Mr James in? – No, I'm sorry, he .... here not long ago, but now he ....out.
14 .... Fred and Carmen at home when you called? – No, they ...., but they ....home now.
15 It .... quite foggy tonight, but it .... far worse last night.
16 It .... only 2 miles to the shops now. It .... 20 miles to any shops from our old house.
17 My ambition .... to start my own window-cleaning business, but it didn't work out.
18 Her dream .... to dance with the Royal Ballet Company.

10.1D Context

Write: Put in the correct forms of the verb be. Use contracted forms (e.g. I'm) where you can.

... her class of five-year-olds

YOU TRY TEACHING FIVE-YEAR-OLDS!

Yesterday, it ^{1}....was.... Mrs Ray's first day at school with her class of five-year-olds.

MRS RAY: Now, you ^{2}............... Liz, ^{3}............... you?
LIZ 1: Yes, I ^{4}............... Liz
LIZ 2: I'm Liz, too, ^{5}............... I?
MRS RAY: Yes. You ^{6}............... Liz, too. You ^{7}............... another Liz.
LIZ 2: I ^{8}............... not Another Liz. I ^{9}............... Liz.
MRS RAY: Of course. Well, Liz, ^{10}............... a good girl and fetch some chalk from the cupboard.
BOY: ^{11}............... careful! Don't drop it!
MRS RAY: What ^{12}............... your name?
BOY: I ^{13}............... Don.
MRS RAY: Don ^{14}............... a nice name. What do you want to ^{15}............... when you grow up, Don?
DON: A racing driver. Brrrm, brrrm, brrrm ...!
MRS RAY: ^{16}............... yourself again! (Brrrm! Brrrm!) Stop it, Don, or I'll tickle you. ^{17}............... you ticklish?
DON: No, I ^{18}............... Scottish!

10.2 'Be' as a full verb (2)

10.2A Progressive forms of 'be' for 'temporary behaviour' [> LEG 10.10-11, App 41]

Study: ★★

We use the progressive forms *(he is being/he was being)* with adjectives that describe 'passing behaviour' like *naughty* and *silly* [> 10.1A], not states, like *hungry* and *thirsty.* We often imply that this behaviour is deliberate: *He **is being naughty**.* We can use the progressive of *be* with a few nouns as well: *He's **being a (silly) fool**.*

Write: Tick the temporary behaviour in these sentences.

1 They're both being very greedy. ✓
2 They aren't normally greedy. __
3 You're being a nuisance. __
4 You aren't generally a nuisance. __
5 He was being very childish at the party. __
6 He isn't often childish at parties. __

10.2B 'Has been', 'have been', 'had been' + adjectives and nouns [> LEG 10.12-13]

Study: ★★

The rules for the **present** and **past perfect** apply to *have been* and *had been* [> 9.5-6].
The actions or states begin in the past and continue into the present (*have been*) or they refer to an earlier past *(had been).* We use *was/were* when we have a time reference:

– behaviour/states/moods:	*She's been very quiet. I said she had been very quiet.*
– the weather:	*It's been very cold lately. I said it had been very cold lately.*
– professions, behaviour:	*Have you ever been a teacher? She has been a real angel.*

Compare: *The baby **was** very **quiet** while you were out.* (the past + exact time reference)

Write: Supply *has, have* or *had.*

1 Your brother has been very annoying.
2 How long .... you been a bus conductor?
3 I .... been terribly tired lately.
4 She said she .... never been seasick before.
5 It .... been a beautiful day, hasn't it?
6 She ...... been so good. She ...... been an angel!
7 You said you .... been a teacher.
8 I .... been a real fool.

10.2C 'Have been' and 'have gone' [> LEG 10.13.4]

Study: ★★

1 *Have been* and *has been* have the sense of 'visit a place and come back':
Where have you been? – I've been home. (= and now I'm back)

2 *Have gone* and *has gone* have the sense of 'be at a place or on the way to a place':
Where's John? – He's gone home. (= he's either there now or on his way there)

3 *Have been* and *have gone* combine with *to* + noun [> 8.2A]:
I've been to a party. (= and I'm back) *John's gone to a party.* (= he's there/on his way)
Have been combines with *at* and *in* [> 8.2A]: *I've been at a meeting. I've been in Paris.*

4 *Have been* and *have gone* combine with adverbs like *out* and *away:*
*I've been **out/away**.* (= and I'm back) *John's gone **out/away**.* (= he's not here)
and with *home.* (Not **gone/been to home** and not *'to the** to mean 'my own home').
Compare: *He's **been/He's** gone home.* (his own place) *He's been to the home of a friend.*

Write: Supply *have/has been* or *have/has gone.*

1 Isn't Jack here? – No, he ..'s gone.. home.
2 Where have you been? – I .... home.
3 The Smiths .... to Paris for the weekend and have just returned.
4 The Smiths .... to Paris for the weekend and are coming back on Monday.
5 It's nice to see you. I hear you .... away.
6 He doesn't live here. He .... away.
7 The boss won't be in the office till tomorrow. He .... to a meeting.
8 The boss wasn't here earlier, but he's back now. He .... at a meeting.

10.2D 'Have been' with 'since' and 'for' [> LEG 10.13.5]

Study: ★★

We often use *How long ...?* with *have been* in questions and we use *since/for* in answers:

1 ***How long have you been** a nurse? – **I've been** a nurse **for** nearly a year.*
I've been a nurse since January. [> 7.3A, 9.5A]

2 ***Have been*** can have the following meanings [> 9.5B]:
- *have lived/have been living:* ***I've been in this flat for five years.***
- *have worked/have been working:* ***Jane's been in the civil service since she was 23.***
- *have waited/have been waiting:* ***We've been outside the bank** since 9.15.*

Write: What do ***have been*** and ***has been*** mean in these sentences?

1 She's been in the waiting-room for over an hour. ....She has been waiting..........
2 I have been with this company for most of my life. ....
3 We have been in this district since 1982. ....
4 How long have we been under this clock? ....
5 How long has Silvia been with this publishing company? ....
6 How long has your brother been in Australia? ....

10.2E Context

Write: Put in ***have been, have gone, has been, is being*** or ***were.***

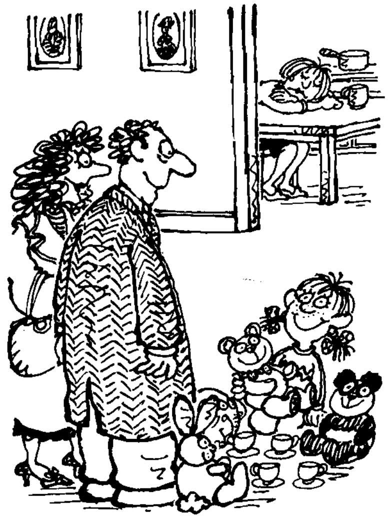

'I've had a lovely time'

IT'S BEEN A WONDERFUL EVENING!
This is what Angela wrote in her diary last night:
Mr and Mrs Lucas ^{1}....have gone.... to the theatre. They ^{2}............................ away for two hours now and I ^{3}............................ with Jenny. This is the first time I ^{4} *(ever)*............................ a baby-sitter and I'm not finding it easy. Jenny is seven years old. She is very nice, but she ^{5}............................ a real nuisance. She won't stay in bed and she won't sit still. I really don't know what to do.'

This is what happened next:
Mr and Mrs Lucas ^{6}............................ home at 11.30. The house was very quiet and all the lights ^{7}............................ on. Jenny was sitting on the floor, playing with her toys. Her mother rushed up to her. 'Hullo, Jenny.' she said. 'Are you all right? I hope you ^{8} (*not*) .... naughty. Where's Angela?' 'She's sitting at the kitchen table,' Jenny answered. 'She ^{9}............................ asleep for the last two hours. She ^{10}............................ a very good girl. I've had a lovely time. It ^{11}............................ a wonderful evening!'

10.3 'There' + 'be'

10.3A 'There' + 'be' as a 'natural choice' [> LEG 10.19]

Study: ★

1 We use *there is*, etc. (Not **it has** or **it is**) when we are talking about or asking about the existence of people, things, etc. It is more 'natural' to say:
There's a *man at the door.* than to say: *A man is at the door.*

2 We use *there is, there was, there will be, there has* **been/had** *been* when we want to:
– announce or report events: ***There'll be*** *a meeting tomorrow.* ***There's been*** *an accident.*
– set a scene for story-telling: ***There had been*** *no rain for months. The earth was bare.*

Write:
a Tick the sentences which sound more idiomatic or 'natural'
b Rephrase the unticked sentences using *There.*

1 There are two men at the door. ✓ ....
2 A good clothes shop is not far from here. __ ...There is a good clothes shop not far from here...
3 There was an interesting article about that in yesterday's paper. __ ....
4 A photograph of that girl was in last week's magazine. __ ....
5 A new security system will be in operation from next week. __ ....
6 There'll be a lot of supporters at the match. __ ....
7 A public holiday is on May 1st. __ ....
8 A meeting between the two world leaders will be in Helsinki. __ ....

10.38 'There is', etc. compared with 'it is', etc. [> LEG 10.20]

Study: ★★

First we show existence with *There is,* then we use personal pronouns *(he, she, it* or *they)* to give more details:
There was a concert *in our village last night.* ('existence')
It (= The concert) ***was*** *in the village hall.* ('more details')

Note how this happens in the following sentences:
There's a bus *coming, but* ***it's*** *full.*
There's a man *at the door.* ***It's*** *the postman.* [compare > 3.4A, 4.1A]
There's a man *at the door.* ***He*** *wants to speak to you.*
There are some children *at the door.* ***They*** *want to see Jimmy.*
There's a van *stopping outside.* ***It's someone*** *delivering something.*

Write: Supply *there* and a personal pronoun *(it, he, she* or *they)* in the blanks.

1 ...There... were a lot of people at the concert, and ...they... all enjoyed it.
2 ....'s a policewoman waiting to see you. ....'s in your office.
3 ....'s a parcel here for you. I think .... 's that book you've been waiting for.
4 ....'ll be a new boy in your class today. ....'s just arrived from Hong Kong.
5 .... has been a lot of argument about the plan. .... has all centred on traffic problems.
6 .... have been serious riots in this country. .... have all been about the price of food.
7 ....'s a review in today's paper of the film we saw last night. ....'s very favourable.
8 ....'s a dog in our garden. ....'s our next door neighbour's.
9 Is .... a route to the town centre from here and is .... more direct?
10 Are .... any applicants for the job and are .... suitable?

10.3C Combinations with 'there' + 'be' [> LEG 10.17, 10.21-2, 11.76]

Study: ★★

1 *There is, there are, there was* and *there were* are the most common combinations:
There's *a phone call for you.* ***There was*** *a phone call for you this morning.*

2 We also use *there* with different tenses, for example [compare > 11.13D]:

perfect tenses: ***There has (there's) been*** *an accident.*
He said ***there had (there'd) been*** *an accident.*
There haven't been *many earthquakes in England.*
future tenses: ***There will (there'll)*** *be a letter for me tomorrow.*
There'll have been *an answer by Friday.*

3 *There* also combines with *seem to be* and *appear to be:*
There seems to be *a mistake in our bill.* ***There appears to be*** *no one in.*

Write: Complete these sentences with the correct forms of *there* + *be* or *seem.*

1 ...There was..... an exhibition of Venetian glass last month.
2 .... days when I don't feel like going to work.
3 .... any letters for me today? – No, ... none. Oh, yes, sorry. .... some here.
4 .... anything I can do to help? – Yes, ... something. You can file those reports.
5 We'll have to rearrange the room. .... a lot more people here than we thought.
6 I've just driven down South Street. .... a terrible accident on the corner.
7 .... more jobs for everybody if more money is invested by large companies.
8 Where can I put these cherries? – .... my shopping bag. You can put them in there.
9 What did he say? – He said .... no news from Fred for months.
10 There's a big match on TV tonight, ...?
11 .... to be fewer teaspoons in the drawer than there should be.
12 .... to be less money in my pay packet than I had expected.

10.3D Context

Write: Put in the correct combinations with *there* and *it.*

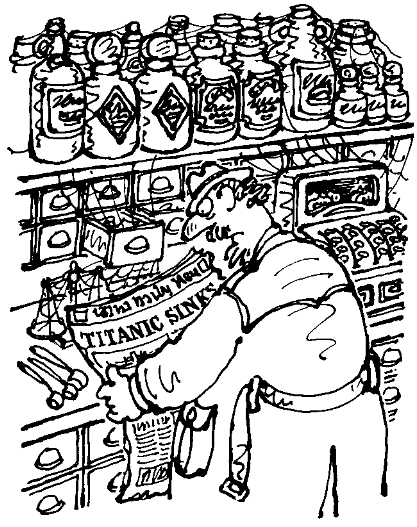

'I've never seen anything like this before'

WHERE TIME STOOD STILL

Miss Margaret White shut down her chemist's shop in the West of England in 1970, never to open it again. [1]There had been. a chemist's shop in her family since the 19th century when [2] *(first)*.................. opened by her grandfather William. After Miss White's death, the auctioneers moved in. They couldn't believe their eyes. [3].................. an old-fashioned cash-register and [4].................. still old pennies in it. At the back of the shop [5].................. old medicine bottles covered with dust, and 127 little drawers. [6].................. full of herbal remedies. [7].................. unusual products like 'Allcocks Powder – Guaranteed Not to Contain Opium or Any Poison Whatsoever'. [8].................. a copy of a newspaper for April 16, 1912. [9].................. the issue that described the sinking of the Titanic. '[10] *(never)*.................. anything like this before and [11] *(never)*.................. again.' one of the auctioneers said.

10.4 Verbs related in meaning to 'be'

10.4A Certainty and uncertainty with 'be', 'seem', etc. [> LEG 10.23-24]

Study:
★★

1 These verbs have nearly the same meaning as *be:*
appear, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste, and also *chance/happen/prove to be.*

2 When we are certain about something, we use *be* or an ordinary verb:
He is ill. He knows the answer.

3 When we are uncertain about something, we can use 'modal verbs' [> 11.1C, 11.4]:
*He **may/might/could** be ill. He **may/might/could** know the answer.*
or we can use verbs related to *be:*
He is ill. → *He **seems/appears** (to be) ill.*
He knows the answer. → *He **seems/appears** to know the answer.*
He was rich. → *He **seemed/appeared** (to be) rich.*
He is working hard → *He **seems/appears** to be working hard.*
He was working hard. → *He **seemed/appeared** to be working hard.*
*He **has been** hurt.* → *He **seems to have been/appears to have been** hurt.*

Write: Rewrite these sentences using appropriate forms of *seem.*

1 They are very happy. ....They seem (to be) very happy...
2 He was a genius at maths. ....
3 She's finding the job difficult. ....
4 They were looking for something. ....
5 He's been knocked out. ....
6 It's very dark outside. ....
7 It's raining very hard outside. ....
8 My watch has stopped. ....

10.48 'To be' or not 'to be'? [> LEG 10.25]

Study:
★★

1 We can leave out *to be* after *appear* and *seem* in the simple present and simple past:
*He **appears/seems** (to be) ill. He seemed (to be) a fool.*

2 We usually include *to be* before adjectives like *afraid, asleep* and *awake:*
They seem to be asleep. He seems to be afraid.

3 We cannot use *to be* after *feel, look, smell, sound* or *taste*:
*He **feels hot**. You **look cold**.* (Not **He feels to be hot.* *You look to be cold.**)

Write: Add *to be* where necessary in these sentences. Where you can't use *to be,* put a dash (-). Where *to be* is optional, put brackets *(to be).*

1 It seemed ....(to be).......................... a good idea at the time.
2 These things often appear .... a little strange.
3 All the old people seem .... asleep.
4 Doesn't he look .... stupid in that hat?
5 I think it feels .... quite hot in here.
6 That goulash smells .... good, doesn't it?
7 The choir sounded .... very good to me.
8 She seemed to me .... too young for the job.

10.4C 'Process verbs' related to 'be' and 'become' [> LEG 10.26]

Study: ★★

1 Process verbs describe a change in state: *When I asked him about it, **he grew angry.***
Typical process verbs are: *become, come, fall, go, get, grow, run, turn, wear.*

2 The most common process verbs are *get, become* and *grow:*
*I'm **getting tired.** You're **becoming lazy.** It's **growing dark.***
We often use other verbs in fixed phrases: e.g. *come true, fall ill, go bad, run dry, turn sour.*

3 We often use *get* + adjective: *get annoyed, get bored, get depressed, get ill, get wet.*

4 Nouns are not so common after process verbs, but note *become* and *make:*
*The ugly frog **became a handsome prince.** Cynthia will **make a good nurse** one day.*

Write: Supply suitable forms of verbs other than *be* in these sentences.

1 When I ......grow.............................. old, I hope I'll have lots of grandchildren.
2 You must be very careful you don't .... ill when you're travelling.
3 I think this milk .... sour.
4 Food .... bad very quickly in hot weather.
5 It hasn't rained for months and our local river .... dry.
6 It's no good .... impatient every time I ask you a question. [> 16.7C]
7 She always wanted to retire before the age of **40** and her dream .... true.
8 I had to cut my trip short because I .... ill.
9 I must get these shoes repaired. The soles .... rather thin.
10 Don't you .... bored listening to political broadcasts?
11 My son is determined to .... a pilot when he grows up.
12 Personally, I think he'll .... a very good pilot.

10.4D Context

Write: Put in *appeared, became, feel, got, looked, looks, proves, seemed, seems* or *smelt.*

NOT AS INNOCENT AS IT SEEMS TO BE!
It was Katy's birthday last Thursday. Her husband, Paul, bought her a beautiful bouquet with what ^{1}....seemed..... to be an unusual flower as the centre piece. Katy was delighted with the flowers. They .... wonderful and ^{3}........................ wonderful, too. Katy .... very excited when she saw the beautiful flower in the centre of the bouquet. She bent over to smell it when it ^{5}........................ to punch her in the nose! Paul was amazed. He ^{6}........................ so interested in the flower that he took it to the botanical gardens at Kew to find out about it. An expert examined the flower and told him that it was a kind of orchid called a Cymbidium. This flower seizes anything that ^{7}........................ like an insect so that it will carry its pollen. If you try to smell it, the Cymbidium will try to grab your nose! So next time you .... like sniffing a rare orchid, hold your nose – just in case it ^{9}........................ to be a Cymbidium. It's not as innocent as it ^{10}........................ to be!

This flower seizes anything

10.5 'Have' as a full verb = 'possess'; 'have got' = 'possess'

10.5A 'Have got' = 'own' and 'have got' = 'obtain' [> LEG 10.30]

Study: ★★

1 In British English, we often use *have* or *have got* to mean 'possess':
*I **have** a new car. I **have got** a new car.* (= I own, I possess a new car)

2 In British English, we also use *have (just) got* (American English *have gotten)* as the normal present perfect form of the verb *get* to mean 'have obtained' or 'have received':
***I've just got(ten)** a letter from Pam.* (= I have just received)

Write: What does *have got* mean in these sentences? Tick the columns.

	'have received/obtained'	'possess/own'
1 I've just got a letter from Pam.	✓	___
2 I've got a black sweater.	___	___
3 They've got a villa near the beach.	___	___
4 They've just got a puppy.	___	___
5 Don't come near me. I've got a bad cold.	___	___
6 I think I've just got a cold!	___	___

10.5B Uses of 'have' and 'have got' to mean 'possess' [> LEG 10.30]

Study: ★★

1 We often use *have got* in place of *have* in the present:
***I've got** a good job. **Have you got** a good job? **I haven't got** a good job.*

2 *Do you have?* and *I don't have* are also common especially in American English:
***Do you have** a good job? **I don't have** a good job.*

3 We use the correct forms of *have,* not *have got,* in other tenses to mean 'possess':
*I **have had** this car for three years. By June, I **will have had** this car for three years.*

4 In other tenses, *have got* means 'obtained':
*When I saw him, he **had just got** a new car. By May I **will have got** a new car.*

Write: Replace the phrases in italics by a phrase with *have* or *have got.*
If you think it is possible to use *have* and *have got,* give two versions.

1 *They own* an apartment near the beach. They have / They've got an apartment.
2 *I don't possess* a party dress. ....
3 *Do you possess* a motorbike? ....
4 *My uncle owned* a Rolls Royce once. ....
5 *I've owned* this bike for five years. ....
6 *We'll possess* a new apartment soon. ....
7 *I will have owned* this suit for ten years by my next birthday. ....
8 She said *she had possessed* the car for some time. ....
9 That's a marvellous little invention. *I must own* one. ....
10 If he can't hear very well, *he should own* a hearing-aid. ....
11 *Does your brother possess* a bicycle? ....
12 *Will you own* this house one day? ....
13 *Have you owned* this house for a long time? ....
14 *Do you own* a car? ....

10.5C Common uses of 'have' and 'have got' [> LEG 10.31]

Study: ☐

We can use ***have*** and ***have*** got to say we own or possess something (***I have/I've got a car***).
But note how we can extend this idea of 'possession':
***I have/I've got a good dentist. I have/I've got an appointment** at 4.30.* etc.

Write: Supply correct forms of ***have*** and ***have*** got. Give alternatives where possible.

1 Have. you .got.... a new car yet? Do.you.have
2 They .... a nice apartment. ....
3 .... you .... any spare pencils? ....
4 .... you .... today's newspaper? ....
5 She .... ten dresses. ....
6 He .... plenty of money. ....
7 He .... long black hair. ....
8 This tree .... red leaves in autumn. ....
9 I (not) .... any faith in him. ....
10 She (not) .... much patience. ....
11 How many sisters .... you ....? ....
12 They .... three sons. ....
13 I .... a good accountant. ....
14 We .... a very good butcher. ....
15 That's a smart suit he .... on. ....
16 What .... she .... on last night? ....
17 I .... a temperature, I think. ....
18 When .... you last .... a cold? ....
19 I .... a meeting in town today. ....
20 She .... a date tonight. ....
21 I .... no idea what to do. ....
22 .... you .... a better suggestion? ....
23 You .... mud on your shoes. ....
24 She .... something in her eye. ....

10.5D Context

Write: Put in the correct forms of ***have*** or ***have*** got.

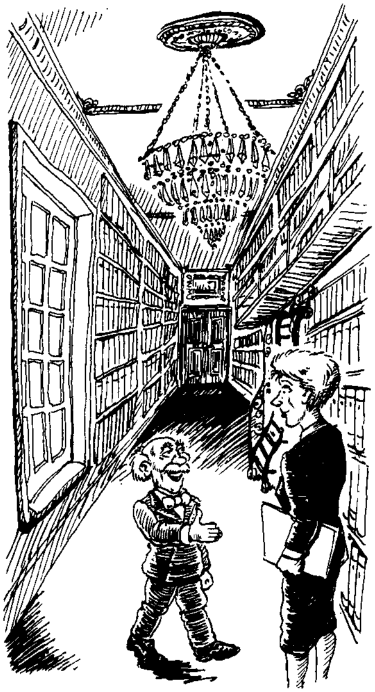

Ole Ez

OLE EZ

I work as a journalist and today I was lucky ^{1}.....to have... an interview with Ezra Pryme, the famous English eccentric. I say 'lucky', because Ole Ez (as the locals know him) ^{2}........................ (not) much time for the human race and he rarely ^{3}........................ visitors. Ole Ez is very rich and he ^{4}........................ an immense country house with a large garden. He ^{5}........................ a large family, but he never sees any of his children or grandchildren. 'I ^{6}........................ (not) any time for them,' he says. Ole Ez ^{7}........................ the largest collection of Art Deco objects in the world, but he is the only one who ever sees them. I knocked at the door of the mansion at exactly 3 p.m. Ez's butler opened the door for me. I was led through a large hall which ^{8}........................ all sorts of paintings on the walls and then into a library. I waited for a while and at last a very short man appeared. He ^{9}........................ white hair and twinkling grey eyes. He ^{10}........................ a beautiful green velvet suit on and a pink bow tie. He also ^{11}........................ a smile on his face, which surprised me. As soon as he saw me, he held out his hand. Not expecting this, I hesitated for a moment. 'You can shake hands,' he said, 'I ^{12}........................ (not) any diseases! Mind the steps!' he cried, leading me down some steep steps. 'I don't say that to all my visitors, you know!'

10.6 'Have' as a full verb meaning 'eat', 'enjoy', etc.

10.6A 'Have' (= 'eat', 'enjoy', etc.) compared with 'have' (= 'possess')

[> **LEG** 10.32-36, App 42.1]

Study: ★★

1 *Have* can mean 'eat, enjoy, experience, drink, take', etc. In these senses, we use *have* like any other verb, in all tenses, including the progressive:
***I'm having** a drink.* (= I'm drinking something at the moment)
By comparison, *have* meaning 'possess' does not have progressive forms [> 9.1C]:
***I have** a drink. **I have got** a drink.* (= e.g. I have one in my hand)
***I have** a car. **I have got** a car.* (Not **I'm having a car.**)

2 In the simple present and simple past of *have* (= eat, etc.), we use *do, does* and *did* to form questions and negatives:
***Do you have** milk in your tea?* (= Do you take ...?)
Compare: ***Have you/Do you have/Have you got** any milk in your tea?* (= Is there any?)

3 Note how *have* can be both an auxiliary and a full verb in:
***I have had** my lunch.* (= I have eaten)
*He said **he had had** his lunch.* (= He said he had eaten)

Write 1: Replace the words in brackets by a suitable phrase with *have got* or *have.*

1 (Do you take) sugar in your coffee? ...Do you have...
2 (There are) some beautiful fir trees in their garden. ....
3 (We own) a new apartment. ....
4 (She takes) a hot bath the moment she comes home from work. ....
5 Would you like a coffee? – No, thanks. (I've just drunk) one. ....
6 (We enjoyed) a very pleasant evening with them. ....
7 (She's suffering from) a very bad cold. ....
8 (I receive) a letter from them about once a year. ....
9 (I don't often eat) breakfast. ....
10 (Are there) any large envelopes in your drawer? ....
11 They told me (they had enjoyed) a pleasant holiday. ....
12 What (did you eat) for breakfast this morning? ....

Write 2: Supply the correct forms of *have* in these sentences.

1 Please help yourself. ......Have........ another sandwich.
2 She never .... milk in her coffee.
3 Where's John? – Oh, he .... a long talk with Simon in the garden.
4 I .... a lovely cycle ride in the country last Sunday.
5 We .... dinner when a salesman came to the door.
6 I .... a lot of bad luck recently.
7 She .... German lessons for about two years now.
8 He .... already .... interviews for two other jobs before he came to see me.
9 She .... trouble with her back before she went to see a specialist.
10 Don't phone between 6 and 7. I ....a rest then.
11 They .... supper if you don't get there before eight o'clock.
12 By August he .... 25 years with this company.

10.6B Common 'have' + noun combinations [> LEG 10.37-39, App 42.1]

Study:
★★

1 ***Have*** combines with many nouns: ***Let's have lunch! I've had a good trip,*** etc.
We often use it in the imperative: ***Have a sandwich! Have a good time!***

2 In place of common verbs like ***to sleep*** or ***to swim,*** we often prefer to use ***have*** + noun:
Instead of: *I **danced twice** with Molly.* We can say: *I **had two dances** with Molly.*

Write 1: Make good sentences with ***have*** + the words in brackets.

1 (a meal) ....We had an awful meal at the Station Hotel.........
2 (a dream) ....
3 (a haircut) ....
4 (an appointment) ....
5 (a good trip) ....
6 (a lovely day) ....
7 (a pain) ....
8 (a sense of humour) ....

Write 2: Rewrite these sentences with ***have.***

1 Those twins are always fighting. ....Those twins are always having fights.........
2 Look at this! ....
3 I want to rest this afternoon. ....
4 Can I ride in your car? ....
5 I talked to Jim about it. ....
6 Come and swim with us. ....
7 I must wash before lunch. ....
8 Sleep and you'll feel better. ....

10.6C Context

Write: Put in the correct forms of ***have got*** or ***have.***

I saw Worzel coming towards me!

NOT A MAN OF STRAW!
Our neighbour, Mr French. ^{1}....has (got)... a very large farm and he ^{2}........................ trouble with birds all his life. Birds eat his vegetable crops and cost him a lot of money, so Mr French has just bought a computerized scarecrow called Worzel. Worzel is more than two metres tall and ^{3}........................ four legs. He ^{4}........................ a round head and arms that swing from right to left. '^{5}........................ Worzel .... any success?' I asked Mr French recently as I watched him ^{6}........................ a walk in a vegetable field. 'He ^{7}........................ a tremendous effect on birds,' Mr French said. 'Come and ^{8}........................ a look at him. An ordinary scarecrow ^{9}........................ a head full of straw, but Worzel ^{10}........................ a brain!' Just then I heard a loud moan and saw a blinding flash. 'You ^{11}(*not*) .... a dream,' Mr French said. 'He does this to frighten the birds!' Of course, there wasn't a bird in sight! 'I must leave now, Mr French,' I said as I saw Worzel coming towards me. 'I ^{12}........................ an appointment.' 'He's harmless,' Mr French said, but I wasn't going to wait to find out!

10.7 'Do' as a full verb

10.7A Forms and uses of 'do' as an auxiliary and as a full verb [> LEG 10.40-44]

Study: ★★

1 We use *do* as an auxiliary verb to form questions and negatives in the simple present and simple past tenses: ***Do** you **like** Italian opera?* etc. [> 13.1]

2 *Do* is also a full verb meaning 'perform an activity or task'. We use it like any other verb in all tenses. This means *do* can be auxiliary verb and full verb at the same time: *What **did*** (auxiliary) *you **do*** (full verb) *this morning?* – ***I wrote a** lot of letters.*

3 We often use *do* to avoid repeating a previous verb: *The washing machine often **stops** suddenly. 1 don't know why it **does** that.*

4 *Do* can also mean 'be in the wrong place' in: *What are these clothes **doing** on the floor?*

5 We often use *do* + *-ing* for 'named tasks': *I've just **done the ironing**.*

Write 1: Match the phrases in column A with the phrases in column B.

A	B
1 Do l	a) the same job for thirty years!
2 She always does __	b) the job by the time I get back?
3 Are you still doing __	c) 140 kilometres an hour.
4 I did __	d) a great favour for me.
5 They were still doing __	e) this time tomorrow?
6 He's just done __	f) all the ironing by the time Sue came home.
7 He's been doing __	g) the cleaning on Thursday.
8 John had done __	h) quite a few little jobs yesterday.
9 She had been doing __	i) the same job for ten years by next month.
10 This car will do __	j) the same job?
11 What will you be doing __	k) the housework when their guests arrived.
12 Will you have done __	l) this exercise now, please.
13 I will have been doing __	m) the gardening for an hour when she remembered she should have been at the bank.

Write 2: Supply the correct forms of *do* in the sentences below.

1 What ...are you doing?............? – What does it look like? I'm reading the paper.
2 She loves cooking, but she (never washes up) ....
3 Shall I make the beds? – No, ... that. Dust the furniture first.
4 What (that flowerpot/do) .... in the kitchen sink?
5 A lot of people in Britain (wash their clothes) .... on Mondays.
6 Cut the grass first. Then, when .... that, start weeding the flower beds.
7 Whatever business he's in, he always makes a success of it. How .... it?
8 It's a shame (he doesn't read) ....
9 What ....? – I've just reversed the car into the garage door!
10 What (those suitcases/do) .... in the entrance hall?
11 What have you been doing all afternoon? – I (do/a bit of gardening) ....
12 What (that carldo) .... in the middle of the motorway?
13 Phone your mother. – I (already/so) ....

10.7B 'Do' and 'make' compared [> LEG 10.45, App 43]

Study: ★★

1 *Do* often means 'be engaged in an activity'; *make* has the sense of 'create':
What are you doing? – I'm making a cake. What are you making? – A cake.

2 We often use *do* and *make* in 'fixed phrases'. *Do* and *make* go with particular nouns:

do + : *(me) a favour, damage, good, no good, harm, the housework, a lesson, justice, one's teeth* (= clean).
make + : *an accusation, an agreement, a demand, a loss, a mess, a mistake, a promise, a proposal.*

3 Sometimes both *make* and *do* are possible:
*I'll **make**/I'll do the beds this morning, if you like.*

Write: **a** Put *do* or *make* in front of these words.
b Then write sentences using these phrases with correct tenses.

..Do.. one's best; .... an appointment; .... business with someone; .... an experiment;
.... an arrangement; .... research; .... one's hair; .... an attempt;
.... a noise; .... something for a living; .... progress; .... an impression;
.... somebody a service; .... a journey; .... a fortune; .... war.

1 You should always try to do your best.
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....
11 ....
12 ....
13 ....
14 ....
15 ....
16 ....

10.7C Context

Write: Put in the correct forms of *do* or *make.*

Meet the wolfman!

JUST HAIR-RAISING!
Last Saturday I ^{1}.....did...... a few jobs round the house and then decided to go into the town. 'Shall I take the dog for a walk?' I asked my wife. 'No, ^{2}..................,' she answered. 'I'll ^{3}.................. that. You can ^{4}.................. some shopping for me.' I got the shopping ^{5}.................. quickly and then .... a sudden decision to have a haircut. My barber was as cheerful as ever. 'The usual?' he asked. 'I don't have much choice,' I said. 'Do you know,' my barber said, 'that scientists have been ^{7}.................. experiments with a new kind of product which will ^{8}.................. miracles? It will even grow hair on a head as bald as yours. It's called minoxidil.' 'You'll .... a lot of money,' I said. He ignored me. 'All you have to ^{10}.................. is rub it into your scalp.' 'That's hair-raising news!' I said. 'But what happens if hair grows on my fingertips instead?' 'Meet the wolfman!' my barber said.

11 Modal auxiliaries and related verbs

11.1 The two uses of modal verbs

11.1A The first use of modal verbs (1) [> LEG 11.1-2]

Study: ★★

1 Verbs like can and may are **modal auxiliaries.** We often refer to them as **modal verbs** or just **modals.** We use them with other verbs [> 16.1A], for example, to ask for permission:
Can I use your phone, please? ***May I borrow*** your car, please?
There are ten modals: can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should, must, ought to and three 'semi-modals': need, dare and used to.

2 In their **first use,** modal verbs have basic meanings which are given in dictionaries:
– *can/could* (= ability): ***I can lift 25 kg./I can type.***
– *may/might* (= permission): You ***may leave*** early.
– *will/would* (= prediction): It ***will rain*** soon. [> 9.7]
– shall after *I/We* (= prediction): ***Will we find*** our way? – I'm sure ***we shall.***
– *should/ought* to (= duty): You ***should do*** as you're told.
– *must* (= total obligation): *You **must be** quiet.*
– *needn't* (= no obligation): *You **needn't wait**.*

Write: What do these sentences express? Match A and B.

	A		B
1	I can type twenty-five words a minute. c	a)	prediction
2	You should do as you're told. __	b)	permission
3	You needn't wait. __	c)	ability
4	It will rain soon. __	d)	no obligation
5	You may leave now if you want to. __	e)	total obligation
6	You must be quiet. __	f)	duty

11.1B The first use of modal verbs (2) [> LEG 11.4,11.6.1]

Study: ★★

1 Modal verbs are not 'complete verbs'. For example, we use verbs like must and can to refer only to the present or the future:
I must go to the bank ***now. I must go*** to the bank ***tomorrow.***
This means we have to make up the 'missing parts' of must with have to.
So if we want to express the past of must, we say: ***I had to go*** to the bank yesterday.
In the same way, we use be able to to make up the 'missing parts' of can [> 11.2A,C].

2 Other important points about modal verbs:
We can't use them as to-infinitives: I want ***to be able to*** type very fast. (Not 'to *can*')
We do not use the to-infinitive after modals: You ***must/mustn't phone.*** (Not 'to phone') [> 16.1A]
There's no *-(e)s* in the 3rd person singular: The boss ***can see*** you now. (No *-s* on can)

Write: Use suitable forms of have to only when it is impossible to use must.

1 You .... take a taxi if you intend to catch the next train.
2 Since the new boss took over, we ...have had to.... change our working methods.
3 We .... talk about this again tomorrow.

4 If you .... bring up a large family, you wouldn't have had so much money to spend.
5 I was late for work this morning because I .... go to the bank first.
6 I (not) .... speak French since I was at school.
7 I hate .... wait for people who don't know how to keep appointments. [> 16.8B]
8 He .... get up early tomorrow morning if he wants to see the sunrise.

11.1C The second use of modal verbs [> LEG 11.3-4, 11.8]

Study: ★★

1 The second way we use modals is to express degrees of **certainty** or **uncertainty.** We use nine of the modals for this purpose (not *shall),* but we don't use them in a fixed order.
We express the greatest uncertainty with *might;* the greatest certainty with *must/can't*:
*He **might be** right. He **might know** the answer.* (very uncertain)
*He **could be** right. He **would know** the answer.* (fairly certain)
*He **must be** right, He **must know** the answer.* (almost certain)
*He **can't be** right. He **can't know** the answer.* (almost certain)

We use *be* or an ordinary verb, not a modal, for 'absolute certainty' [> 10.4A, 11.4A]:
*You **are** right. You **know** the answer.* (certain)

2 In their second use, modals have only two forms:
– present form: *He **must be** right. He **must know** the answer.* (now)
– perfect or past form: *He **must have been** right. He **must have known** the answer.* (then)

Write: Put 'certain', 'almost certain', 'fairly certain' or 'very uncertain' beside these sentences.

1 The phone's ringing. It's Roland. ....certain..
2 The phone's ringing. It might be Roland. ....
3 A car is parking outside our house. That will be the Kennedys. ....
4 A car is parking outside our house. That must be the Kennedys. ....
5 From your description, the person you met would have been my cousin, Jeff. ....
6 From your description, the person you met can't have been my cousin Jeff. ....
7 If I have understood you correctly, Jeff should be my second cousin. ....
8 Are you saying it mightn't be possible for me to get a visa to visit the USA? ....
9 If he spent five years in America, he must speak English, I suppose. ....

11.1D Context

Write: Put in *am, can, can't, couldn't, have had to, haven't been able to, may, must, must be* or *must have.*

Remember me?

REMEMBER ME?
There was a knock at the door. I opened it and saw a stranger. 'Hullo, Fred,' he cried. '^{1}...May/Can....... I come in?' 'How do you know my name?' I asked. 'We met ten years ago on a ferry-boat and you gave me your card.' 'You ^{2}............................ mistaken,' I said. 'No, I ^{3}............................ not,' the stranger said. He produced my card: Fred Ames. I ^{4}............................ given it to him ten years ago, but I ^{5}............................ remember it! 'I ^{6}............................ remember you,' I said. 'We exchanged cards years ago,' the stranger said. 'You said, "You ^{7}............................ come and stay with us for as long as you like any time you're in England." I'm sorry I ^{8}............................ wait so many years before coming to visit you. I've been so busy, I ^{9}........ ...., but here I am at last! Better late than never! I've just arrived on the ferry. My wife and children are in the car and we wonder if we ^{10}........................... stay with you for a month.'

11.2 Uses of modals (etc.) to express ability and inability

11.2A Expressing present and past ability: 'can' and 'be able to' [> LEG 11.10-12]

Study: ★★

1 We can use can (or sometimes *am/is/are* able to) to describe natural or learned ability:
I can (I am able to) run 1500 metres in 5 minutes. (natural ability)
I can't (I am not able *to*/I am unable to) drive. (learned ability)

2 We can use could, *couldn't* or *was/were* (not) able to to describe 'general ability in the past':
I could (I was able to) run very fast when I was a boy. (i.e. general ability)

3 We use *was/were* able to or managed to (Not **could**) to describe the successful completion of a specific action:
We were able to (we managed to) get tickets for the match yesterday. (Not **could**)

4 However, we can use *couldn't* to describe a specific action not successfully completed:
We couldn't get tickets for the match yesterday. Or:
We weren't able ***to/didn't*** manage to get tickets for the match yesterday.

Write: Supply can, *can't*, could, couldn't, *was/were* able to, managed to. Alternatives are possible.

1 A good 1500-metre runner ....can.......... run the race in under four minutes.
2 Bill is so unfit he .... run at all!
3 Our baby is only nine months and he .... already stand up.
4 When I was younger, I .... speak Italian much better than I .... now.
5 .... she speak German very well? – No, she .... speak German at all.
6 He .... draw or paint at all when he was a boy, but now he's a famous artist.
7 After weeks of training, I .... swim a length of the baths underwater.
8 It took a long time, but in the end Tony .... save enough to buy his own hi-fi.
9 Did you buy any fresh fish in the market? – No, I .... get any.
10 For days the rescuers looked for the lost climbers in the snow. On the fourth day they saw them and .... reach them without too much trouble.

11.28 'Can/could' with verbs of perception: 'I can see' [> LEG 9.3, 11.13, App 38.4]

Study: ★★

1 **Verbs of perception** are verbs like *see, hear, smell*, etc. [> 9.1C]

2 When we are describing something that is happening now, we do not use the progressive with these verbs: I see a bird in that tree. (Not **I'm* seeing')

3 We often use can + verb in place of the simple present with verbs of perception:
I can see a bird in that tree. (= I see) Can you see it? (= Do you see)
We often use ***could*** **+ verb in place of the simple past** with verbs of perception:
I looked up, but ***couldn't see*** *anything.* (= didn't see)

Write: Rewrite these sentences using can, *can't, could* or couldn't

1 Do you see that man over there? ....Can you see that man over there?..........
2 I smell something burning. ....
3 I understood what he said. ....
4 Did you understand what he said? ....
5 I don't see anyone. ....
6 I didn't understand what he said. ....

11.2C Ability in tenses other than the present and the past [> LEG 11.16]

Study:
★★

Can and could are not 'complete verbs', so we use be able to and sometimes manage to if, for example, we want to express the future or the present perfect [> 11.1B]:
***I'll be able to** pass my driving test after I have had a few lessons.* Not **I can/I will can**

Write: Supply suitable forms of be able to in these sentences.

1 Our teacher says we .....will be able to............ speak English fluently in a few months.
2 I've been trying for hours, but so far I (not) .... get through on the phone.
3 If he had asked me earlier, I .... help him.
4 I'm sure she would have helped you if she ....
5 I think I .... play table tennis better after a bit of practice.
6 He has managed to live in England for years without .... speak English.
7 I'm practising hard because I want to .... pass my driving test first time.
8 If I .... sing, I would have loved to be an opera singer.

11.2D 'Canlcould' in place of 'is often' and 'was often' [> LEG 11.18]

Study:
★★

Instead of: ***It's often** cold in January.* We can say: ***It can be** cold in January.*
Instead of: ***He was often** naughty when he was a boy.*
We can say: ***He could be** naughty when he was a boy.*

Write: Rewrite these sentences with can be or could be.

1 The sea is often rough in the harbour. ....The sea can be rough in the harbour...........
2 She is bad tempered at times. ....
3 She was often rude when she was a girl. ....
4 It is often cold here in winter. ....
5 He was often helpful when he wanted to be. ....

11.2E Context

Write: Put in suitable forms which express ability.

I'm Chief Naga

JOURNEY'S END

The journey to Western Papua had been very hard. We [1] had not been able to make much progress in the heavy rain and we [2]....................... only cross rivers with great difficulty. After two month's journey, we [3]....................... see smoke in the distance and knew we must be near a village. There was another boiling river in front of us, but we [4]....................... cross it by using a rope bridge we had brought with us. At last we approached the village and wondered how we [5]....................... communicate with the chief. None of us [6]....................... speak the local language. Soon, a young, dignified and smiling man approached us. '[7]....................... you speak English?' I asked hopefully. 'Of course,' the young man replied. 'I was educated at Oxford University. I'm Chief Naga. Welcome to my village!'

11.3 Uses of modals (etc.) to express permission and prohibition

11.3A Asking for permission with 'can', 'could', 'may' and 'might' [> LEG 11.20-22]

Study: ★★

We use *can, could, may* and *might* to ask for permission, depending on the situation.

1 *Can* is the commonest and most informal: ***Can I borrow** your umbrella (please)?*

2 *Could* is more polite than *can*: ***Could I borrow** your umbrella (please)?*

3 *May* is more 'respectful' than *can* and *could*: ***May I borrow** your umbrella (please)?*

4 *Might* is the most polite but the least common: ***Might I borrow** your umbrella (please)?*

5 We can add *possibly* and use expressions like *Do you think* and *I wonder if* to make requests even more polite:
***Can/Could/May/Might I possibly** borrow your umbrella?*
***Do you think I could/Do you think I might (possibly)** borrow your umbrella?*
***I wonder if I could/I wonder if I might (possibly)** borrow your umbrella?*

Write: Make suitable requests for permission in these situations

1 You are visiting a close friend and you want to make yourself some coffee.
Can I make myself some coffee (please)?
2 You are visiting an acquaintance and want to use the lavatory.
....
3 You are at a party given by people you hardly know. You want to see their garden.
....
4 You are visiting people you know reasonably well. You want to make a phone call.
....
5 You are visiting a close friend and want to borrow his new car.
....

11.36 Giving and refusing permission/Expressing prohibition [> LEG 11.19, 11.23]

Study: ★★

We personally give or refuse permission in everyday situations in the following ways:

You { ***can (not)*** / ***may (not)*** } *watch TV for as long as you like.* (Not **could**) (Not **might**)

We refer to 'some other authority' that gives/refuses permission like this [> 11.10A, 16.5A5]:

You can/cannot or *You're allowed to/not allowed to*
You can/cannot or *You're permitted to/not permitted to* } *smoke here.*
You mustn't or *You're forbidden to*

Write: Rephrase these notices to give or refuse permission. Begin each sentence with *You ...*

1 Thank you for not smoking You may not smoke.
2 No camping or picnicking ....
3 Fishing strictly forbidden ....
4 Campers welcome ....
5 Private – Keep Out ....
6 Do not lean out of the window ....
7 Leave your litter here ....
8 No stopping ....

11.3C Permission/prohibition in tenses other than present and future

[> LEG 11.24, 11.4, 11.6.1]

Study: ★★

> ***May*** and ***must*** are not 'complete verbs', so we use ***be allowed to*** to make up their 'missing parts' [> 11.1B]:
> ***The children were allowed to watch TV last night.*** (Not ***could***> 11.2A)

Write: Supply the correct tense form of ***be allowed to.***

1 The children ....*were allowed to*...... stay home from school yesterday because of the weather.
2 I .... never .... stay up late when I was very young.
3 She .... only .... go to parties in the last few months.
4 He .... just .... go home after three hours at the police station.
5 Since he was admitted to hospital, we (not) .... visit him.
6 His doctor (not) .... him ...... take any exercise in the year before he died.

11.3D 'Can' (= ability) and 'can/could' (= have permission, be free to)

[> LEG 11.10, 11.16, 11.261

Study: ★★

> We use *can/could* in the sense of 'am/is/are free to' to refer to the future:
> ***Mr Jones can/could see you tomorrow, if you are free.*** Or ***Mr Jones is able to see you ...***
> But we must use ***will be able to*** (not **can/could**) to describe future ability [> 11.2C]:
> ***Baby will be able to stand up*** *in two weeks' time.* (Not **can/could**)

Write: Replace *will be able to* with *can* where possible in the sentences below.

1 She'll be able to drive by the end of next week. ....
2 We'll be able to go to the seaside tomorrow. .....*We can go to the seaside tomorrow.*........
3 She'll be able to drive you home tomorrow. ....
4 I'll be able to play chess soon. ....
5 I'll be able to play a game of chess with you tomorrow. ....
6 You will be able to use my computer during the weekend. ....
7 You will be able to operate this computer after a bit of practice. ....

11.3E Context

Write: Supply suitable forms which express permission, prohibition or ability.

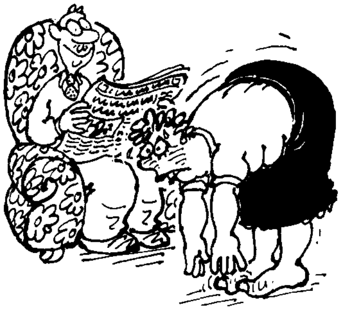

Perhaps your fingernails were longer ...

WHAT WOULD YOU ADVISE?
Mrs Wilkins is on a strict diet. '^{1}*Am I allowed to*........................ eat toast and butter for breakfast?' she asked her doctor. 'I'm afraid not, Mrs Wilkins. You ^{2}........................ only have half a grapefruit and a glass of water. You certainly ^{3}........................ eat any kind of fat and you ^{4}........................ eat biscuits or sweets. But don't worry, you .... eat what you like after two months of this diet.' Mrs Wilkins was very determined and took a lot of exercise as well. After two months' diet and exercise she said to her husband, 'I still ^{6}........................ touch my toes as I ^{7}........................ before we married.' 'Don't worry, my love,' he said kindly. 'Perhaps your fingernails were longer in those days!'

11.4 Uses of modals (etc.) to express certainty and possibility

11.4A Certainty and possibility [> LEG 11.27-30]

Study:
★★

1 If we are certain of our facts, we use *be* or any full verb [> 11.1C]:
Jane ***is*** at home. Jane works at home. (certain facts)

2 If we are referring to possibility, we use may, might or could + *be/have* been:
Jane ***may/might/could*** be at home now.
She ***may/might/could*** have been at home yesterday.
Or we use may, might, could + full verb:
*Jane **may/might/could work** (or ... **may/might/could be working**) at home.*
*She **may/might/could have worked** (or ... **have been working**) at home yesterday.*

Write 1: Read these sentences and write C (= Certain) or P (= Possible) against each one.

1 My boss is away on holiday. C
2 His wife may be with him. __
3 She will be back next week. __
4 He could reply by the weekend. __
5 He wasn't here last week. __
6 She might have been to Paris. __
7 She's returned from Paris. __
8 He could be swimming right now. __
9 He'll come back in a good mood. __
10 He might leave this evening. __
11 They've been staying at a big hotel. __
12 They may have been dancing all night. __
13 He borrowed my ladder. __
14 He could have borrowed my ladder. __

Write 2: Turn these 'certain' statements into 'possible/less than certain' statements.

1 He is at home now. He may/might/could be at home now.
2 He will be at home tomorrow. ....
3 He was at home yesterday. ....
4 She leaves at 9. ....
5 She will leave tomorrow. ....
6 She has left. ....
7 She left last night. ....
8 She will have left by 9. ....
9 He is working today. ....
10 He will be working today. ....
11 He was working today. ....
12 He has been working all day. ....

Write 3: Write uncertain answers to these questions.

1 Where's Jim today? He may/might/could be at home.
2 Where was Jim yesterday? ....
3 Where will Jim be tomorrow? ....
4 What time does the train leave? ....
5 What time did the train leave last night? ....
6 What's Sue doing at the moment? ....
7 What was Sue doing yesterday? ....
8 What will Sue be doing tomorrow? ....
9 What has Sue been doing this week? ....
10 What has John had for breakfast? ....
11 Where has Ann parked the car? ....
12 What did that car cost? ....

11.48 Certain and uncertain answers to questions [> LEG 11.31, 13.5-6]

Study: ★★★

1 A 'certain' question may produce an 'uncertain' answer [compare > 13.1C]:
Does he like** fish? – He **might (do).** He **may (do).** He **could (do).** He **may not.

2 An 'uncertain' question may produce a 'certain' answer:
Can he still be** working? – Yes, **he is.

3 We use *be* and *have been* to answer questions with *be:*
Is** he ill? – He **may be. Was** he ill? – He **may have been. (Not *he may*)

4 We use *do/done* to replace other verbs, though this is optional:
Will you catch** the early train? – I may./I may **do.
Has he received** my message? – He could have./He could have **done.

5 We also answer Wh-questions with 'certainty' or 'uncertainty':
*What's his name? – **It's** Smith.* (certain) ***It may/might be** Smith.* (uncertain)
*What was his name? – **It was** Smith.* (certain) ***It may/might have been** Smith.* (uncertain)

Write: Give uncertain answers to these questions.

1 Does she still live in London? ....(Yes,) she may (do)...........................
2 Where does she live? ....
3 Did he catch the early train? ....
4 Which train did he catch? ....
5 Are they still living abroad? ....
6 Where are they living? ....
7 Has he finished work? ....
8 When did he finish work? ....
9 Will you leave tomorrow? ....
10 When will you leave? ....

11.4C Context

Write: Put in suitable forms which express uncertainty or possibility.

STAFF WANTED

Decisions! Decisions!

OLDER AND WISER?
We make decisions all the time, but we ^{1}.........can....... never be certain whether we are right or wrong. The work you choose to do ^{2}........................ be suitable for you or it ^{3}........................ not. The person you marry ^{4}........................ be a perfect match or ^{5}........................ be the worst possible choice. Suppose you have saved money for the future. You ^{6}........................ invest it wisely so that it grows in value or you ^{7}........................ lose the lot in a foolish moment. You think you have a healthy diet, but the food you eat ^{8}........................ actually be very bad for you and ^{9}........................ be the cause of terrible illness. Perhaps you travel a lot by plane. All the flights you make are routine, but one of them ^{10}........................ be your last. Decisions! Decisions! But we don't learn from experience. Experience is the quality that allows us to go on making the same mistakes with more confidence!

11.5 Uses of modals to express deduction

11.5A Certainty or deduction? [> LEG 11.27, 11.32-33]

Study: ★★

1 We express certainty with *be* or any full verb: *He* ***is*** *here. He* ***lives*** *here. He* ***is leaving.***

2 We express deduction with *must be/can't be, must have been, can't/couldn't have been:*
He ***must be*** *at home. He* ***can't be*** *out. He* ***must have been*** *at home yesterday.*
or with verbs other than *be*: *He* ***must live*** *abroad. He* ***must have lived*** *abroad.*

Write: Read these sentences and write C (= Certainty) or D (= Deduction) against each one.

1 John Wright is a man of action. C
2 He was in the Galapagos ten years ago. __
3 Now he lives in an enormous house. __
4 He is writing a book. __
5 He has been writing this book since he came back from the Galapagos. __
6 He must be writing about his travels. __
7 He must have seen the giant tortoises and the iguanas on the Galapagos. __
8 He can't have seen any elephants on the Galapagos. __
9 He can't have been working very hard on his book. __
10 He must have taken a lot of photos while he was on the islands. __
11 He must have done a lot of research for his book. __
12 He must enjoy life. __

11.58 Two kinds of 'must be' [> LEG 11.33, II.46-48]

Study: ★★

1 We use *must be* in the present to express deduction [> 11.1C]:
You haven't eaten for hours. You ***must be*** *hungry!*

2 The negative of *must be* (= deduction) is *can't be,* not **mustn't be*:*
You've only just eaten. You ***can't be*** *hungry again!* (Not **mustn't be9*

3 We can also use *must (be)* to express total obligation [> 11.1A]:
This is a hospital. You ***must be*** *quiet.*

4 The negative of *must (be)* (= total obligation) is *mustn't (be)* (= prohibition [> 11.381):
You ***mustn't be*** *noisy outside a hospital.*

Write: **a** Supply *must be, can't be,* or *mustn't be.*
b Write D (= Deduction) or O (= Obligation) beside each sentence.

1 The meeting is at **10** o'clock sharp and you ......mustn't be....... late. O
2 You .... at the station ten minutes before the departure of the train. __
3 The children .... tired already! We've only been walking for ten minutes. __
4 The children .... thirsty. They haven't had a drink for hours. __
5 Did you hear that? It .... someone walking about in our garden. __
6 I don't recognize the handwriting on this envelope. It .... from anyone we know. __
7 Your handwriting .... clear, otherwise no one will be able to read it. __
8 You .... a nuisance when you're a guest in someone's house. __
9 Don't panic! We .... late for the train. It doesn't leave till **10.05.**__
10 We .... late for the train or we'll miss our connection. __

11.5C 'Must have been', 'can't/couldn't have been'; 'had to be/didn't have to be' [> LEG 11.32-33]

Study:
★★

1 We express deduction about the past with *must have been:*
You hadn't eaten for hours. You must have been hungry!

2 The negative of *must have been* is *can't/couldn't have been,* not **mustn't have been*:*
You had already eaten. You ***can't/couldn't*** *have been hungry!* (Not **mustn't have been')*

3 Must (= total obligation) is not a 'complete verb' [> 11.1B]. We use *had* to in the past:
The meeting was at 10 this morning and I had to ***be*** *there.* (Not *'must have been')*

4 The negative of *had to* is *didn't have to:*
It was a holiday yesterday, so I ***didn't have to be*** *at work.* (Not **mustn't have been**)

Write: Supply *must have been, can't/couldn't have been, have to/had to (be), didn't have to (be).*

1 He knows a lot about flying planes. He ....must have been............. a pilot when he was young.
2 Vera .... at the supermarket this morning. I didn't see her there.
3 John .... at the bank till 10, so he only arrived here five minutes ago.
4 When .... (she) .... at the hospital? – Early this morning.
5 We had enough foreign currency left at the end of the holiday, so I .... buy any more.
6 Monica knew exactly what to do. I .... tell her twice.
7 There are so many nice things for tea, I think you .... expecting us.
8 There .... an accident on South Street because the road is closed off.
9 You .... waiting long. After all, I'm only five minutes late.
10 When I was a boy we .... sitting at our desks working before the boss got in.
11 I left a message on your answer phone last night. You .... out.
12 The fire alarm went and we .... out of the building in two minutes.

11.5D Context

Write: Put in *must be/must have been, can't be/can't have been, had to be* or *didn't have to be.*

CRUNCH
CRUNCH
Walky Talkies

One of the shoes was talking!

THE MYSTERY OF THE TALKING SHOE

Tracy Evans ¹didn't have to be at work till ten, so she ignored her alarm clock. But she woke up with a start when she heard a strange sound coming from her wardrobe! What was it? It ²............................ a mouse, Tracy thought. No, it ³............................ . She knew there were no mice in her room. I ⁴............................ careful, Tracy said to herself as she opened the wardrobe. There, in front of her, was the lovely pair of wedge-shaped sandals she had bought the day before. Then she heard the sound again! 'It ⁵............................ coming from my sandals!' she cried. She picked them up and, sure enough, one of them was 'talking'! Tracy ⁶............................ at work at ten, but she still had enough time to vist Mr Lucas, her shoemaker. He removed the wooden heel and they were both amazed to see a white larva eating the wood. Mr Pope, of the Natural History Museum, solved the mystery. 'These shoes ⁷............................ *(import)* from Brazil. An insect ⁸............................ *(lay)*its eggs in the tree from which the shoes were made,' he explained.

11.6 Uses of modals for offers, requests and suggestions

11.6A Offering things and substances [> LEG 11.35]

Study: ★★

Offering: e.g. ***Would/Wouldn't you like*** *a sandwich/some coffee?*
Yes/No responses: e.g. *Yes, I'd like one/some, please. No, thank you.*

Write: Make offers for the following things and substances.
a sandwich, some coffee, a slice of toast, some potatoes, an orange, some fruit

1 ....Would you like a sandwich?........
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

11.68 Requests for things and substances [> LEG 11.36]

Study: ★★

Requesting [> 11.3A]: e.g. ***Can/Could/May/Might I*** *have a sandwich/some sugar, please?*
Yes/No responses: e.g. *Of course you can/may. No, you can't/may not, I'm afraid.*

Write: Make requests for the following things and substances.
a sandwich, some coffee, a slice of toast, some potatoes, an orange, some fruit

1 ....Can have a sandwich, please?........
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

11.6C Making suggestions, inviting actions [> LEG 11.37]

Study: ★★

Making suggestions, inviting actions: e.g. ***Would/Wouldn't you like to*** *come with us?*
Yes/No responses: e.g. *Yes, I'd like to/love to. No, I'd prefer not to, thank you.*

Write: Make suggestions/invite actions for the following situations.

1 Your friend has nowhere to stay for the night. ..Would you like to stay with me?........
2 You want your friends to join you for a meal. ....
3 You want your friend to come on an excursion. ....
4 You want your friends to have a holiday with you. ....

11.6D Requesting others to do things for you [> LEG 11.38]

Study: ★★

Requesting others to do things for you: e.g. ***Will/Would you*** *please* ***open*** *the door* ***for me****?*
Yes/No responses: e.g. *Yes, of course I will. No, I'm afraid I can't at the moment.*

Write: Make requests for the following situations. You want someone to ...

1 hold the door open for you. .Will/Would you hold the door open for me, please?......
2 dial a number for you. ....
3 translate a letter for you. ....
4 deliver some flowers for you. ....

11.6E Offering to do things for others [> LEG 11.39]

Study: ★★

Offering to do things for others: e.g. **Shall I carry** *that* **for you?**
Yes/No responses: e.g. *Can/Could you? That's very kind of you. No, thank you.*

Write: Make offers for the following situations.

1 An old lady clearly wants to put her large suitcase on the luggage rack.
..Shall I put the suitcase on the rack (for you)?..
2 A young woman is shivering and the window is open.
....
3 Your friend accidentally drops some sheets of paper on the floor.
....

11.6F Making suggestions that include the speaker [> LEG 11.40]

Study: ★★

Making suggestions that include the speaker: e.g. ***Shall we go*** *for a swim?* [> 16.1B]
Yes/No responses: e.g. *Yes, let's./Yes, let's, shall we? No, I'd rather we didn't.*

Write: Make suggestions to a friend for the following situations. You feel like ...

1 driving to the coast. .....Shall we drive to the coast?..
2 having a meal out this evening. ....
3 travelling first class. ....
4 having a holiday in Bahia. ....

11.6G Context

Write: Put in the missing requests, offers, etc.

And I'd like to send you there!

PLEASE BE NICE TO NIGEL!

'Please be nice to Nigel,' his mother said to Jenny, the baby sitter, before she went out. Jenny is doing her best.

JENNY: 1 .Would you. like something to eat, Nigel? NIGEL: No!
JENNY: 2 .... build a castle for you, Nigel? NIGEL: No!
JENNY: I'm cold. 3 .... shut the window for me? NIGEL: No!
JENNY: 4 .... like to watch TV with me, Nigel? NIGEL: No!
JENNY: 5 .... borrow your crayons, Nigel? NIGEL: No!
JENNY: 6 .... play a game together? NIGEL: No!
JENNY: 7 .... get a glass of water for you, Nigel? NIGEL: No!
JENNY: 8 .... get a glass of water for me? NIGEL: No!
JENNY: 9 .... you like to go to the moon, Nigel? NIGEL: Yes!
JENNY: And I'd like to send you there in a rocket!

11.7 Expressing wishes, etc.: 'I wish', 'if only', 'it's (high) time'

11.7A Present and past reference with 'I wish', 'if only' and 'it's (high) time'

[> LEG 11.41-43]

Study: ★★

After *(I) wish, if only, it's (high) time* and *it's (about) time,* we 'go one tense back':

1 The past tense refers to the present: ***I wish I had*** *a better watch!* (i.e. NOW)

2 The past perfect tense refers to the past: ***If only you had asked*** *me first!* (i.e. THEN)

Write: Tick the sentences that refer to 'present' or 'past'.

	present	**past**
1 I wish I had a better watch!	✓	
2 If only I knew the answer to the problem!		
3 It's high time/about time he learnt more manners!		
4 I wish you hadn't done that!		
5 If only you had phoned me yesterday!		

11.78 Expressing wishes and regrets with 'I wish' and 'if only' [> LEG 11.41-42.1-3]

Study: ★★

1 We often use *I wish* for things that might (still) happen:
I wish I knew *the answer!* (= it's possible I might find out the answer)
If only is stronger. We use it to express regret for things that can (now) never happen:
If only your mother were *alive now!* (Of course, *I wish* is also possible.)

2 We may use the simple past of *be* after *wish* and *if only,* especially in everyday speech:
I wish I was *on holiday now.* ***If only Tessa was*** *here now!*

3 If we want to be more formal, we use *were* in all persons [> 11.13B, 14.2B]:
I wish I were *on holiday now.* ***If only Tessa were*** *here!*

4 We may use the past perfect of *be* for things that can never happen:
I wish I had been *on holiday last week.* ***If only Tessa had been*** *here yesterday!*

5 We use the past or past perfect forms of other verbs:
I wish I knew *the answer to your question.* ***I wish I had known*** *then what I know now!*

Write: Express wishes and regrets about these situations. Refer to yourself where possible.

1 You're not very fit. ......I wish / If only I was/were fit/fitter!..........
2 It's very hot today. ....
3 It's raining. ....
4 You were too impatient. ....
5 You wasted a lot of time watching TV. ....
6 They don't have a lot of friends. ....
7 We didn't lock the back door! ....
8 He is abroad. ....
9 Jane has read your letter. ....
10 John didn't take your advice. ....

11.7C 'Would' and 'could' after 'I wish' and 'if only' [> LEG 11.42.4]

Study:
★★

We must use could, not would, after I and we. Compare:
I can't swim. → ***I wish I could** swim.*
We weren't together! → *I* wish we could have been together.
We sometimes use I wish you (he, she, etc.) *would(n't)* like an imperative:
(I am making a lot of noise!) → ***I wish you wouldn't** make so much noise!*
(He is making a lot of noise!) → ***I wish he would be** quiet!*

Write: Supply would, wouldn't or could.

1 I wish they ....would.................. be quiet.
2 We wish you .... drive so fast.
3 We wish we .... come to London with you.
4 I wish I .... have seen the film with them.
5 We really wish she .... change her mind and come on holiday with us.
6 If only we .... have good weather like this the whole year.

11.7D 'It's (high) time' and 'It's (about) time' [> LEG 11.41, 11.43]

Study:
★★

We use *It's time, It's high time* and *It's about time* to express present or future wishes, or to express our impatience about things that haven't happened yet:
Kim can't even boil an egg. – I know. ***It's time/high time/about time** she learnt to cook!*

Write: Respond to these sentences with It's high time or It's about time.

1 John and Julie have been engaged now for over ten years.
It's high time they got married!..
2 We haven't been out for an evening together for ages, have we?
....
3 It's very late. You should both really go now.
....
4 The boys' room is terribly untidy.
....

11.7E Context

Write: Put in the right forms for the words in brackets.

'I wish I could have my friends back!'

HAVING A WONDERFUL TIME! WISH YOU WERE HERE!
While trying to sail round the world in a small boat, Harry, Sandy and Joe were shipwrecked one night. 'I wish there (be) ^{1}....was/were..... an island nearby,' Harry said. By morning, they were washed up on to a desert island. For six months they lived on fish, nuts and fruit. One day, they saw a bottle on the shore. 'If only it (contain) ^{2}............................ a note or something!' Sandy said They opened it and a genie appeared. 'It's high time someone (open) ^{3}............................ that bottle!' the genie gasped. 'I'm so grateful, I'll give you one wish each. You first,' the genie said, pointing to Harry. 'That's easy,' Harry said. 'I wish I (be) ^{4}............................ with my family.' And (whoosh!) he disappeared. 'Me too,' Sandy said. 'If only I (can be) .... in dear old Glasgow.' And (whoosh!) off he went. 'And you, sir?' the genie asked Joe. 'I wish I (have) ^{6}............................ my friends back!' Joe said.

11.8 Expressing preferences: 'would rather' and 'would sooner'

11.8A Expressing personal preference with 'I'd rather'/'I'd sooner' [> LEG 11.44, 16.5]

Study:
★★

1 We use *would rather* and *would sooner* in exactly the same way to express preference.
We can refer to the present or the future:
***I'd rather/I'd sooner** be a builder than an architect.*
Or we can refer to the past:
*If I could choose again, **I'd rather/sooner have been** a builder than an architect.*

2 We can omit the verb in negative short answers:
*Are you corning with us? – No, **I'd rather/sooner not.***
*Would you rather have been a builder? – No, **I'd rather/sooner not (have been).***

Write 1: Supply the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

1 Which would you sooner ....be.........? A pilot or a passenger? (be)
2 My career is nearly over, but I'd much rather .... in the navy than in the army. (be)
3 If I had lived in the past, I'd sooner .... a peasant than a king. (be)
4 I'd rather .... in the eighteenth century than in the nineteenth century. (live)
5 I like my job. I'd rather .... my living as a teacher than anything else. (make)
6 I wish my job were secure. I'd sooner .... worry about it. (not have to)
7 Jim had to break the bad news to her. I know he'd rather .... do it. (not have to)

Write 2: Supply negative short answers with *I'd rather/I'd sooner* to these questions.

1 Are you coming with us? No, ...I'd rather not / I'd sooner not...
2 Would you rather have been invited to the party? No, ...
3 Do you want to catch the next train? No, ...
4 Would you rather have lived in the past than the present? No, ...

11.8B Expressing preferences about other people's actions [> LEG 11.45]

Study:
★★★

1 We can refer to other people after *I'd rather* or *I'd sooner.* Compare:
***I'd rather leave** on an earlier train.* (= I'm referring to myself)
***I'd rather Jack** (etc.) **left** on an earlier train.*

2 We use the past tense form after *I'd rather* to refer to the present or future. Compare:
***I'd rather be** happy. **I'd rather not sit** next to her.* (= now – I'm referring to myself)
***I'd rather she were/was** happy.* (= now) ***I'd rather she didn't sit** next to me.* (= now)

3 We use the past perfect form after *I'd rather* to refer to past time. Compare:
***I'd rather have been** present.* (= then – I'm referring to myself)
***I'd rather you had been** present.* (then) ***I'd rather you hadn't told me** about it.* (then)

Write: Supply the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

1 You might be late for the meeting. I'd rather you ...caught......... an earlier train. (catch)
2 I won't be home till very late. I'd sooner you .... for me. (not wait up)
3 He took a risk investing money with them. I'd rather he .... it. (not do)
4 I don't mind your borrowing my ladder, but I'd sooner you .... me first. (ask)
5 I know our daughter is enjoying herself, but I'd rather she .... here than abroad. (be)
6 I'd rather you .... present when we signed the agreement. (be)

11.8C 'I'd rather he didn't', etc. [> LEG 11.45]

Study: ★★★

We generally omit the main part of the verb in short responses:

1 negative responses: ***Frank is going to buy*** *a motorbike. – I'd rather* ***he didn't.***
I've told *everyone about it. – I'd rather* ***you hadn't.***

2 affirmative responses: ***Frank won't give up*** *his present job. – I'd rather* ***he did.***
I haven't told *anyone about it. – I'd rather* ***you had.***

3 We do not have to repeat the main verb in a complete sentence:
You always go *without me and I'd rather* ***you didn't.***

Write: Supply negative short responses or continuations to these sentences.

1 Joan wants to become self-employed. ..I'd rather/sooner she didn't.................................
2 I've told everyone about it. ....
3 Susan has moved her account to another bank. ....
4 Bill takes sleeping pills. ....
5 I often drive fast. ....
6 Frank went to live in Australia last year. ....
7 Our neighbours keep a large dog. ....
8 Our neighbours have cut down all the trees at the back of their garden. ....
9 I know you've already booked our holiday, but ....
10 Jane cycles to work every day, but ....
11 Alan retired early last year, but ....

11.8D Context

Write: Put in the missing preferences.

W.C. **Fields**

KNOW YOURSELF!

Most parents *(their children not decide)* [1] would rather their children didn't decide to join the acting profession because it is so hard to earn a living. They *(their children choose)* [2]... secure, well-paid jobs. But if you ask actors themselves, they always tell you there is nothing they *(do)*[3]... . An actor is a person who *(be)*[4]... a different man or woman. An actor *(talk, walk, and behave)* [5]... like someone else. That's what acting is about. Many actors *(be called)* .... something other than their real names. The great American comic actor Claude William Dukenfield *(be called)* .... W.C. Fields, which was the name he adopted when he became an actor. Fields was eccentric and *(live)* .... in a world in which there were no dogs or children. He used to wear a funny top hat and carry a walking-stick. He loved to pretend to be other people in real life as well. He opened bank accounts all over America using comic names. He died in 1946 and the epitaph he wrote for his tombstone clearly expressed a healthy preference for life: 'On the whole, I *(be)*[9]... in Philadelphia!'

11.9 'It's advisable ...'/'It's necessary ...'

11.9A 'It's advisable' → 'It's necessary': 'a scale of choice' [> LEG 11.47]

Study:
★★

We can say what, in our opinion, is advisable or necessary on a scale which shows how much choice there is. We use the following words to give advice or say what is necessary:

1 *Should* and *ought to* (= in my opinion it's advisable, but there is some choice):
*You **should see** a doctor. You **ought to vote** in the next election.*
(= That's my advice, but ignore it if you want to.)

2 *Had better* is stronger, even a warning: ***You'd better see** a doctor.*
(= That's my urgent advice. There may be consequences if you ignore it.)

3 *Have to, have got to* (less formal) and *must* (= in my opinion, you have no choice):
***You have to/have got to/must see** a doctor.*
(= That's the strongest advice I can give you. Don't ignore it!) [compare > 11.10A]

Write: Tick the sentences that mean 'it is/it was advisable' or 'it is/it was necessary'.

	advisable	**necessary**
1 You should listen more carefully.	✓	___
2 I must get to the meeting before 7.30.	___	___
3 I'd better hurry, or I'll be late.	___	___
4 They should have taken umbrellas with them.	___	___
5 She had to complete the test in ten minutes.	___	___
6 We ought to have stopped for a meal on the way.	___	___

11.9B 'Must', 'have to' and 'have got to' [> LEG 11.48]

Study:
★★

1 We often use *must, have to* and *have got to* in place of each other, but sometimes not.

2 We tend to prefer *must*
- when we refer to ourselves (with *I/we*): ***I** really **must weed** this garden.*
- with *you* to express urgency: ***You must phone** home at once.*
- in public notices, etc.: ***Cyclists must** dismount.*
- (= Can't you stop yourself?): ***Must you** interrupt?*
- pressing invitations or advice: ***You must come** and see us. **You must repair** that fence.*

3 We often use *have to* (or *have got to)* to refer to outside authority:
***I have (got) to pay** my road tax soon.*

Write: Supply the forms *must* or *have (got) to* which 'feel right' in these sentences.
Sometimes more than one form is possible.

1 We really ....must....................... do something about having this house decorated.
2 We .... pay this electricity bill by the end of the week.
3 You .... write and let us know you've arrived safely.
4 I .... be at my desk by 9.00 every morning.
5 We always .... clock in when we arrive at work.
6 ALL VISITORS .... REPORT TO THE DUTY OFFICER.
7 .... you always slam the door when you come in?
8 You really .... come and see the new extension to our house some day.

11.9C Expressing necessity in other tenses [> LEG 11.50-51, 11.46]

Study: ★★

1 *Must* can refer to the present or the future:
***I must speak** to him **today**. **I must speak** to him **tomorrow**.*

2 *Must* is not a 'complete verb', so we use *have to* to make up its 'missing parts' [> 11.1B]:
***I shall/will have to phone** her tomorrow.* (or ***I must phone** her tomorrow.)* (future)
***I had to spend** the day in a meeting.* (past)
***I have had to** tell you before.* (present perfect)
***I am having to/I have been having to** get up earlier this year.* (progressive forms)

3 *Had to* shows that we couldn't avoid doing something: ***I had to leave** at six.* (and I did)
Should have shows we've failed to do something: ***I should have left** at six.* (and I didn't)

Write: Use a construction with *have to* in place of the words in italics.

1 *It will be necessary for him* to try harder if he wants to win the prize. ...He will have to............
2 *It has been necessary for them* to save hard to buy their new hi-fi. ....
3 Because of the snow *she has been finding it necessary* to walk to college. ....
4 *It had already been necessary for us* to clear the office floor twice before the boss asked us to clear it again. ....
5 *It would have been necessary for me* to pay twice as much to travel first class. ....
6 *We are finding it necessary* to cut back on staff because of a shortage of orders. ....

11.9D Context

Write: Put in *will have to, must, having to, has to, should, had to, have to* and *should have.*
Use each one at least once.

ARIJABA!
The Post Office in Britain is famous for getting letters and parcels to their destinations. The problem is that we the public [1]....have to.......... observe the rules. For example, we [2]............................ put a stamp on a letter. If we don't, the recipient [3]............................ pay double. We often see the sign ALL LETTERS [4]............................ BE CORRECTLY ADDRESSED. These days, this means .... use postcodes. If you didn't use a postcode, it's no good complaining that your letter [6]............................ arrived sooner. Parcels are a problem because they [7]............................ be correctly packaged. If Aunt Sophie is going to send you a jar of your favourite jam, she .... wrap it up well. The most important thing we [9]............................ do is to address our letters and parcels legibly and correctly. This means clear handwriting and correct spelling. What we [10]............................ do and what we actually do are often miles apart. Recently, the Post Office [11]............................ deliver a letter which showed a name followed by the word ARIJABA. What is this, do you think? Arabic? Hindustani? Wrong both times! Say it out loud and you'll see it's just plain (misspelt!) English: HARWICH HARBOUR!

Arijaba?
Arijaba?
Arijaba?

Arabic? Hindustani?

11.10 'It isn't advisable ...'/'It isn't necessary ...'/'It's forbidden ...'

11.10A 'It isn't advisable' → 'It's forbidden': 'a scale of choice' [> LEG 11.54]

Study:
★★

We can say what, in our opinion, is not advisable, or what is forbidden on a scale which shows how much choice there is. We use the following words [compare > 11.9A]:

1 *Shouldn't* and *oughtn't to* (= in my opinion it isn't advisable, but there is some choice):
*You **shouldn't drive** too fast. You **oughtn't to drive** too fast.*
(= That's my advice, but ignore it if you want to.)

2 *Had better not* is stronger, even a warning: ***You'd better not lose** your passport.*
(= That's my urgent advice. There may be consequences if you ignore it.)

3 *Can't* and *mustn't* (= you have no choice: it's forbidden [> 11.3B]):
*You **can't stop** on a motorway. You **mustn't stop** on a motorway.* (= it's against the law)

Write: Match A and B to show the effect of the verbs.

A	B
1 You mustn't park near a zebra crossing. b	a) 'not advisable' – warning
2 You shouldn't eat so much chocolate cake. __	b) 'forbidden' – law
3 You can't use that footpath. It's closed. __	c) 'not advisable' – personal
4 You had better not be late for the lecture. __	d) 'not possible'

11.10B 'Mustn't', 'needn't', 'don't have to', 'haven't got to' [> LEG 11.55]

Study:
★★

1 *Must, have to, have got to* generally mean the same in the affirmative [> 11.9B].
But *mustn't* **never** means the same as *don't have to/haven't got to.*

2 *Mustn't* means 'it's forbidden' [> 11.3B, 11.5B]: *Life belts **must not be removed.*** (no choice)

3 We can use *needn't, don't have to* and *haven't got to* in place of each other to mean 'it isn't necessary': ***I needn't/don't have to/haven't got to go** to the office tomorrow.* (choice)

Write: Supply *mustn't* or *needn't/don't have to/haven't got to.*

1 You ....don't have to......... work such long hours. You won't earn any more.
2 They .... wear a uniform. It's not obligatory.
3 She .... leave the office last. She can go when she's ready.
4 You really .... waste money like that. It worries your parents.
5 Visitors .... enter the laboratories without permission.
6 We .... always wear protective clothing in the factory.
7 You .... go to the party if you don't want to. Nobody's forcing you.
8 He .... do the job today, as long as it gets done some time this week.
9 Surely we .... leave home yet. It's far too early to go to the station.
10 Passengers .... smoke in the toilets.
11 'Are you going to read the report?' – 'No, I .... It's confidential.'
12 'Are you going to read the report?' – 'No, I .... I already know what it says.'
13 You .... attend the meeting tomorrow. It's for union officials only.
14 You .... attend the meeting tomorrow. It's not important.
15 You .... forget to pay the electricity bill, or we'll be cut off.
16 We .... worry about Tom. He's just phoned to say he's all right.

11.10C 'Needn't have', 'didn't have to', 'didn't need to' [> LEG 11.57.1]

Study: ★★★

1 These sentences mean 'I went there, but it wasn't necessary':
*I **needn't have gone** to the office yesterday (but I went).*
*I **didn't have to/didn't need to** go to the office yesterday (but I went).*
(*have* and *need* are stressed in speech)

2 Compare *didn't have to* and *didn't need to,* without stress:
*I **didn't have to go** to the office yesterday. I **didn't need to go** to the office yesterday.*
(= I knew in advance it wasn't necessary to go to the office and I didn't go.)

Write: Supply *needn't have* or *didn't have to* and the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1 I needn't have phoned... the plumber. I learnt later that John had already phoned him. (phone)
2 I .... the plumber. I knew John had already phoned him. (phone)
3 You .... your umbrella after all. It hasn't rained. (bring)
4 The forecast was for fine weather so I knew I .... my umbrella. (bring)
5 I .... these clothes. I didn't know they had already been washed. (wash)
6 I .... a meal last night because we went out and the food I prepared was uneaten. (cook)

11.10D 'Shouldn't have' and 'oughtn't to have' [> LEG 11.57.2]

Study: ★★

We often use *shouldn't have (done)* or *oughtn't to have (done)* to criticize our own actions or someone else's: ***I/You shouldn't have paid/oughtn't to have paid** the plumber in advance.*

Write: Respond to these statements with *shouldn't have done that* or *oughtn't to have done that.*

1 I had to stop on the motorway. ....You shouldn't have done that......................................
2 John read your letter. ....
3 Frank and Jane sat in the sun all day. ....
4 Jane left the front door unlocked. ....
5 I borrowed your car this morning. ....

11.10E Context

Write: Put in *didn't need to, must not, shouldn't have* and *should have.*

Mr Paul Blake?

HOW TO CATCH YOUR MAN

'Candidates [1].....must not..... attempt more than four questions.' The young candidate for the law exam was very well-prepared and .... be told what to do. The results were brilliant. The paper achieved the third highest score out of 7,000 papers! But the examiners were puzzled. Mr Paul Blake [3]............................ achieved such a high score. This candidate had failed this exam three times already. Then the truth became known. The candidate was not Mr Paul Blake, as it [4]............................ been. His wife had gone instead. Mrs Alison Blake, a brilliant lawyer, had dressed up as a man. The fraud was discovered because an examiner had noticed that the candidate was visibly pregnant!

11.11 Modals to express habit: 'used to', 'will' and 'would'

11.11A The form of 'used to' [> LEG 11.59]

Study:
★★

1 *Used to* is a simple past form only. If you want to say 'I am in the habit of', you must use the simple present [> 9.1B]: ***Iget up** early every day.* (Not **I use to get up early')*

2 We often use *do* and *did* + *use* (Not *'used')* to form questions and negatives:
***Did you use to** smoke? **I didn't use to** smoke.* (Not *'Did you used to' 'I didn't used to')*
We also use *never* to form the negative: ***1 never used to** smoke. (Used not to* is rare.)

3 Note the use of *did* ***He used to** live in Manchester, **didn't he?*** (rather than *usedn't he?)*
Did you use to** live here? – Yes, **I did**./No, **I didn't. He used to** live here and **so did I.

Write: Supply the missing forms in the following.

1 She used to be a singer, ...didn't................... she?
2 He never used to have grey hair, ... he?
3 We .... enjoy physics, did we? (not/used to)
4 .... smoke when you were young? (you/used to)
5 Did you use to smoke? – Yes, I ....
6 He used to work here and so .... I.
7 Where .... live? (you/used to)
8 You .... (not/used to) eat so much.

11.11B Uses of 'used to' [> LEG 11.60-62]

Study:
★★

1 We use the simple past or *used to* to refer to past habit.
We need a time reference with the simple past [> 9.3C], but not with *used to:*
*I **collected** stamps **when I was a child.** I **used to collect** stamps (when I was a child).*
(Not *'I was collecting stamps when I was a child** [> 9.4B])

2 We use *used to* to make a contrast between past and present with expressions like:
but now ..., but not any more, but not any longer:
I used to eat** a large breakfast, **but I don't any longer.

3 *Used to* can also refer to past states:
*She **used to be** very **punctual** (but she isn't any more).*

Write: Fill in the blanks with forms of *used to* or the past progressive (e.g. *was living).*

1 We ...used to go.......... for long walks in the country when my father was alive. (go)
2 I .... getting up early when I was very young. In fact, I still don't like it. (like)
3 .... you .... eating vegetables when you were young? (like)
4 I .... drive to get to work, but I don't any longer. (have to)
5 I never .... Sundays, but I do now. (enjoy)
6 I .... a bath when you phoned me. (have)
7 She .... an employee at the post office before she started her own business. (be)
8 There .... open fields all round our town when I was a boy. (be)
9 John and I .... abroad last year. (work)
10 .... it .... here yesterday? (rain)

11.11C 'Would' in place of 'used to' and in place of the simple past [> LEG 11.61]

Study: ★★

When we are 'remembering the past', we sometimes use *would* in place of *used to.*
First we set the scene with *used to*, then we continue with *would*:
When I was a boy we always ***spent/used to spend*** *our holidays on a farm. We* ***would*** *get up at 5 and* ***we'd*** *help milk the cows. Then* ***we'd*** *return to the kitchen for breakfast.*

Write: Underline instances where we could use *would* in place of the simple past or *used to.*

From the time he was very young, Gerald used to spend all his spare time collecting birds, animals and insects of all kinds. Every morning he used to get up early and go first to the beach. There he caught small crabs and sometimes small fishes, which he put into a large jar and took home with him. On the way, he always used to go to an ruined fisherman's cottage where he was often lucky enough to find some unusual insect that he had never seen before.

11.11D 'Will/would' to describe 'usual behaviour' [> LEG 11.63-64]

Study: ★★

We sometimes use *will* in place of the simple present [> 9.1B] and *would* in place of the simple past [> 9.3C] to refer to a person's 'usual behaviour':
In fine weather ***he will often sit*** *in the sun for hours.* (= he often sits)
As he grew old, ***he would often talk*** *about his war experiences.* (= he often talked)

Write: Use a phrase with *will* or *would* in place of the words in italics.

1 She *always used to* tell us a story before we went to bed. ...would always tell.........................
2 She *still tells* us a story occasionally. ....
3 They *only used to* discuss family matters with the priest. ....
4 He's very good, you know. He *plays* with that toy for hours on end. ....
5 When he needed extra money, he *used to* work overtime. ....
6 She *doesn't* always tell the truth, I'm afraid. ....

11.11E Context

Write: Put in appropriate forms of the past, *used to, will* or *would.* Alternatives are possible.

I can feel it in your bones!

WATER, WATER, EVERYWHERE!
The thing I remember most about my childhood was my visits to my aunt Charlotte in her lovely country house. She *(be)*¹........was........ a remarkable woman by any standards. She *(be)*²........................ really skilled at water-divining and she *(find)* .... water on the most unpromising bits of land. The farmers *(love)* .... her, especially as she *(never accept)* ⁵........................ money for water-divining. 'Water *(always find)* ⁶........................ its own level,' she *(say)* ⁷........................ 'and I know exactly where that level is. Water-divining is a gift from God and you don't accept payment for that.' She had a gift for noticing changes in the weather, too. 'It's going to rain soon,' she *(say)*⁸........................, 'I can feel it in my bones,' and she *(always be)* ⁹........................ right! In her later years, she developed a bad back and *(often visit)* ¹⁰........................ her osteopath. She *(never tire)* ¹¹........................ of telling us that her osteopath *(say)*¹²........................, as he massaged her painful back, 'It's going to rain, Charlotte. I can feel it in your bones!'

11.12 'Need' and 'dare' as modals and as full verbs

11.12A 'Need' as a modal and as a full verb [> LEG 11.49]

Study: ★★

1 We use *need* as a modal (without *to* after it) mainly in the negative to mean 'it isn't necessary' [> 11.10B-C]: ***I needn't go*** *to the meeting today.* ***I needn't have gone*** *to the meeting yesterday.*

2 In the affirmative, we use *need* as a modal:
– in questions: ***Need you go*** *so soon?* ***Need you have told*** *him the truth?*
– with 'negative adverbs' (e.g. *hardly):* ***I need hardly tell*** *you how important this is.*

3 Otherwise, we generally use the full verb *need to* (used like any regular verb):
I need to/I don't need to/I needed to/I didn't need to go *to the dentist this morning.*

Write: Replace the phrases in italics with modal *need* or the full verb *need to.*

modal **full verb**

1 *Is it necessary for you to* go so soon?. ......Need you go...? ......Do you need to go...?
2 *Is it necessary for me to* wait till you return? ....
3 *It's not necessary for them to* wait. ....
4 *It wasn't necessary for you to have said* that. ....
5 *It's hardly necessary for me to* explain it. [> 13.2A] ....
6 *There is no need for him to* learn about this. ....
7 *All that is necessary for you to* do is to agree. ....
8 *I don't think there is any need for you* to explain. ....

11.12B The form of 'dare' as a modal and as a full verb [> LEG 11.65-66]

Study: ★★

1 We use *dare* as a modal (that is, without *to* after it) mainly in the negative to express lack of courage: ***I daren't tell*** *him the truth.* ***I daren't ask*** *for more money.*

2 In the affirmative, we use *dare* as a modal:
– in questions: ***Dare you do*** *it?*
– with 'negative adverbs' (e.g. *hardly):* ***I hardly dare tell*** *him what happened.*

3 We also form questions with *do/does/did*: ***Do you dare tell*** *him?* ***I don't dare tell*** *him.*

4 We can use *dare to* as a full verb: ***Do you dare to tell*** *him?* ***I don't dare to tell*** *him.*

5 And note: *I didn't like the meal ...,*
but ***I daren't say so/I daren't have said so/I didn't dare (to) say*** *so/****I dared not say*** *so.*

Write: Supply *dare, daren't, dare not have (done), didn't dare (do),* etc.

1 I ....daren't......... tell them I've just broken their favourite vase.
2 I .... tell them I had broken their favourite vase.
3 I hardly .... mention this, but you still haven't paid for those tickets.
4 .... we ask for more money after what he has just said?
5 I knew I was right, but I .... say so at the time.
6 I'm going to tell your mother what you've just said! – Just you ....!
7 She'd like to wear more unconventional clothes, but she ....
8 We didn't like the meal they gave us, but we .... said so. It would have been rude.
9 They offered me something strange to eat which I .... refuse.

11.12C Uses of 'dare' [> LEG 11.67-69]

Study:
★★

We use dare in four ways to express:

1 courage: Very few climbers have ***dared (to) attempt*** Mount *Everest* without oxygen.
Dare (to) is in the affirmative here, and this use is relatively rare.

2 lack of courage: ***I don't dare (to) tell*** the children that our holiday has been cancelled.
This use of dare (to), in the negative, is the most common.

3 challenge: ***I dare you to jump*** off that wall. (Not *I dare you jump')
We use dare only as a full verb with to for challenging. We use it in the affirmative and negative like any other verb. 'Challenging' is common in the language of children.

outrage: How ***dare you read*** my private diary! (Not *How dare you to read')
We use dare only as a modal without to when expressing outrage.

Write: What do the sentences below express? Choose **a, b, c,** or **d:**
a courage **b** lack of courage **c** challenge d outrage

1 You dare raise your voice! d
2 I dare you to put a spider in her desk. __
3 How dare you speak to me like that? __
4 He's the only person who'll dare (to) stand up to her! __
5 I wanted to ask for some time off, but I didn't dare. __
6 Jill's friends dared her to bring her pet snake to class. __
7 I daren't ask for any more money. __
8 He lost his job because he dared (to) speak out. __
9 Don't you dare do anything like that in public again! __
10 I daren't have said so at the time, but I was very bored. __
11 John never dares to stand up in public and cay what he thinks. __
12 I'm going to break the door down! – Just you dare! __

11.12D Context

Write: Combine the correct forms of dare and *need* with the verbs in brackets.

UNWELCOME FRESH AIR!
It was a routine flight from Hilo on Hawaii to Kahului 110 miles away. Suddenly, there was a tremendous noise and the top of the plane was torn away! Ninety-four passengers (not move) ^{1}dared not move, wondering what would happen next. They (not *worry*) ^{2}............................ because Robert Schornsteimer, the pilot, was firmly in control. For 25 minutes they hardly (breathe) ^{3}............................, though there was plenty of unwelcome fresh air! 'I (not open) ^{4}............................ my mouth,' one of the passengers said later. 'I hardly (tell) ^{5}............................ you how terrified I was.' The passengers embraced the pilot who had brought the plane down safely. 'I've heard of a plane flying off a roof,' joked one of them later, 'but never of a roof flying off a plane!'

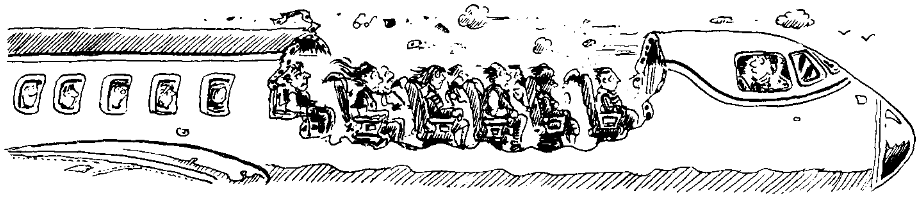

Plenty of unwelcome fresh air!

11.13 'Would/wouldn't'; 'that ... should'; 'there' + modal

11.13A 'Would' and 'wouldn't' in place of the simple present tense or 'will' future [> LEG 11.74.2]

Study: ★★

We often use *would* and *wouldn't* in place of the simple present (and sometimes in place of *will/won't*) when we want to sound less definite, or when we want to be very polite:

*That **seems** to be a good idea.* → *That **would seem** to be a good idea.*
*I **think** Friday will be OK.* → *I **would think** that Friday will be OK.*
*Thursday **isn't/won't** be convenient.* → *Thursday **wouldn't** be convenient.*

Write: Replace the verbs in italics with *would* and *wouldn't*.

1 £100 *is* rather expensive for a pair of gloves. ....would be....
2 I'm sure your proposal *isn't* acceptable to the committee. ....
3 Does my idea seem reasonable to you? – I *think* so. ....
4 This new law *doesn't seem* to be fair to pensioners. ....
5 I'm not free on Thursday, but I'm free on Friday. ....
6 She's offered to help, but I *don't imagine* she's serious. ....
7 *Does* that *seem* a reasonable price to offer for a used car? ....

11.13B 'That ... should' after verbs like 'suggest' [> LEG 11.75, App 45.3]

Study: ★★★

If we put *that* after verbs like *ask, propose, recommend, suggest,* we continue like this:

– with *should* ***I suggest that he should apply/shouldn't apply:** for the job.*
– with the simple present: ***I suggest that he applies/he doesn't apply** for the job.*
– with the 'subjunctive': ***I suggest that he apply/not apply** for the job.*

Note on the 'subjunctive': In the 'subjunctive', the base form of the verb *(be, go, run,* etc.) remains the same in all persons. The present form is rare in British English:
*I suggest **you go/he go/they*** (etc.) ***go** to the meeting tomorrow.*
The subjunctive form *were* is used in all persons in the past [> 11.7B, 14.2B].

Write: **a** Supply suitable verb forms in these sentences.
b Then mark your answers **a** (= should), **b** (= simple present) or **c** (= 'subjunctive').

1 Marion proposed that ....we should buy.... a gift for Jim who would soon be leaving the firm. (we/buy) a
2 The travel agent recommended that .... driving abroad during the holidays. (we/avoid) __
3 I suggest that .... this matter during the meeting. (he/not raise) __
4 All I ask is that .... the rules. (they/not break) __
5 What does he advise ....? (she/do) __
6 It's no good demanding that .... our performance. We're doing our best. (we/improve) __
7 I would only request that .... good care of this flat while you're living in it. (you/take) __
8 Her solicitor insisted that she .... in signing the contract. (not/delay) __
9 I suggest .... a taxi if we want to get to the meeting on time. (we/take) __
10 He asks that .... to visit his children once a week. (he/be allowed) __

11.13C 'That ... should' after adjectives like 'essential' [> LEG 11.75.3, App 44]

Study: ★★★

If we put that after adjectives like essential, urgent, vital, we continue like this:
– with should: ***It's urgent that he should send*** the information at once.
– with the simple present: ***It's urgent that he sends*** the information at once.
– with the 'subjunctive': ***It's urgent that he send*** the information at once.

Write:

a Supply suitable verb forms in these sentences.
b Then mark your answers **a** (= should), **b** (= simple present) or **c** (= 'subjunctive')

1 It's urgent that ....we should send.................................. the information now. (we/send) a
2 It's essential that .... home now. (she/return) __
3 It's vital that .... (he/be inform) __
4 I'm eager that .... present at the meeting. (she/be) __

11.13D 'There' + modal auxiliaries [> LEG 11.76]

Study: ★★★

Just as there will combine with be (there is, there was, there has been, etc. [> 10.3]), it will combine with modals:
There could be no doubt about it. ***There must be*** a mistake.
There can't have been *any doubt about it.* ***There might have been*** *a mistake.*
There never used to be *anyone living next door.* ***There might have been*** *someone outside.*

Write: Supply appropriate modal combinations. More than one answer is possible in each case.

1 There (be) a problem about this. ....There could be a problem about this..........
2 There (be) a witness present. ....
3 There (never be) a better opportunity. ....
4 (there be) a reason for this delay? ....
5 (there be) another election soon? ....
6 Why (there be) so much red tape? ....
7 Why (not there be) more university places? ....

11.13E Context

Write: Supply suitable forms of the verbs and insert could be, may be, will be, would seem.

You've been painting the ceiling!

MEDICAL DETECTIVE?

'For the time being,' Dr Grey said, 'it's important that (you take) 1.you (should) take. it easy. Immediately after a heart attack, I suggest (you get) 2............................ plenty of rest. After a month, I recommend (you begin) 3............................ taking a little exercise.' Mr Fry blinked through his glasses. 'I 4............................ dead!' he protested. 'If you don't do as I tell you, you will be,' Dr Grey said. 'It's vital that (you follow) 5............................ my advice.' 'But I've always been so active, Doctor.' 'And you 6............................ active again, but not yet. Come and see me in a fortnight.' Of course, Mr Fry didn't follow his doctor's advice. 'There 7............................ people who can sit around,' he said to his wife, 'but I can't!' He spent the morning before his next appointment painting the kitchen ceiling. In the afternoon, he visited Dr Grey. 'It .... you have been painting the ceiling!' Dr Grey said sternly. 'How can you possibly know, Doctor?' 'You've got paint on your glasses!' the doctor said.

12 The passive and the causative

12.1 General information about form

12.1A Basic forms of the passive [> LEG 12.1-3]

Study: ★★

1 In the ***active*** voice, the subject of the verb is the person or thing that does the action:
John burnt *the dinner last night.*
In the ***passive*** voice, the action is done to the subject: ***The dinner was burnt*** *last night.*

2 We form the passive with a suitable form of *be* + past participle. Only verbs which take an object ***(transitive verbs*** [>1.2B]) can go into the passive:
The dinner ***was burnt.*** (But not '*The plane was arrived.*')

3 Basic tense forms are a tense of *be* + past participle:

present:	*he writes*	→	***it is written***
past:	*he wrote*	→	***it was written***
present/past ***perfect:***	*he has/had written*	→	***it has/had been written***

4 Basic modal forms are: modal + *be/have been* + past participle:

will:	*he will write*	→	***it will be written***
may:	*he may write*	→	***it may be written***
may have:	*he may have written*	→	***it may have been written,*** etc.

5 Infinitive: *to be/to have been* + past participle [> 16.1A]:
he is/was to write → ***it is to be written/it was to have been written***

Write 1: Mark with a P those sentences which will go into the passive.

1 Someone will drive you to the airport. P
2 Goldfish live in fresh water. ___
3 The Egyptians built pyramids. ___
4 We walked for miles yesterday. ___
5 They arrived at 7 last night. ___
6 They informed me about it. ___
7 I slept till 8. ___
8 It's raining. ___
9 You must obey the rules. ___
10 He's sneezing again. ___

Write 2: Rewrite these sentences in the passive.

1 *They owe* a lot of money to the bank.
......A lot of money is owed to the bank.......................................

2 *They have proved* that there is no life on the moon.
It ....

3 *You can buy* videos like this one anywhere.
....

4 *Someone has to write* the history of the European Community one day.
....

5 *Someone may have already written* the history of the European Community.
....

6 When we arrived home, we found that *someone had broken* one of our windows.
....

7 *They have sold* their car to pay their debts.
....

8 *They hold* a meeting in the village hall once a week.
....

12.1B The passive with progressive forms: 'She is being interviewed'

[> LEG 12.3n.6]

Study: ★★

Only the present and past progressive [> 9.2B, 9.4B] are common in the passive. We form the passive with the progressive form of *be* (*am/is/are/was/were being*) + a past participle:
present progressive: *They **are interviewing** her now.* → *She **is being interviewed** now.*
past progressive: *They **were interviewing** her here.* → *She **was being interviewed** here.*

Write: Rewrite these sentences beginning with the words provided.

1 The manager always welcomes new employees.
New employees ......are always welcomed by the manager...
2 They're building a new supermarket near the church.
A new supermarket ....
3 They fought the battle in 1623.
The battle ....
4 Someone was cleaning the windows while I was there.
The windows ....
5 Someone has moved my desk!
My desk ....
6 They are taking the refugees to a camp outside the village.
The refugees ....
7 Someone had signed all the documents before I arrived.
All the documents ....
8 They were questioning us and searching our vehicle at the same time.
We .... and our vehicle ....
9 They will post our letters when the ship arrives at the next port of call.
Our letters ....
10 They are opening the case again because they're not satisfied with the verdict.
The case ....

12.1C Context

Write: Put in the correct forms, active or passive, of the verbs in brackets.

HOW THE OTHER HALF LIVES (?)
Lord Manners was a rich and famous banker. When he *(die)*^{1}........died...... recently, he *(give)* ^{2}........................ a magnificent funeral which *(attend)*^{3}........................ by hundreds of famous people. The funeral was going to *(hold)*^{4}........................ in Westminster Abbey. Many ordinary people *(line)* .... the streets to watch the procession. The wonderful black and gold carriage *(draw)* .... by six black horses. The mourners *(follow)*^{7}........................ in silence. Lord Manners *(give)*^{8}........................ a royal farewell. Two tramps were among the crowd. They *(watch)* .... the procession with amazement. As solemn music *(could hear)*^{10}........................ in the distance, one of them *(turn)*^{11}........................ to the other and *(whisper)*^{12}........................ in admiration, 'Now that's what I call really living!'.

That's what I call really living!

12.2 Uses of the passive

12.2A Uses of the passive [> LEG 12.1,12.4.1-3]

Study: ★★

1 The passive is not just a different form of the active. It has its own uses and is very common in English. It would be hard to think of the active forms of sentences like:
Rome wasn't built *in a day.* ***The origin of the universe will never be explained.***

2 We use the passive mainly in three ways:
– when we don't want to take responsibility for something:
The matter will be dealt *with soon.* (We don't know or want to say who'll deal with it.)
– when we want to focus on a happening, not who or what did it:
Our roof was damaged *in last night's storm.* (We're concerned about the roof.)
– when we want to avoid 'vague subjects' like *one, someone, they,* etc.:
The form has to be signed. (Not **Someone/One has to sign the form.**)
English spoken. (Not *'One speaks English')* ***Shoes repaired.*** (Not *'One repairs shoes')*

Write: Supply suitable active and passive forms in these sentences using the verbs in brackets. Some variations in tenses may be possible.

1 It isn't clear how far the ozone layer (damage) ....has been damaged.... by aerosol sprays. It may be possible to tell whether the hole over the Antarctic (widen) ....has widened... after the area (investigate) has been............... ——————high-flying planes.
2 These days, even the most remote places on earth (visit) .... by tourists. Package tours (can/arrange) .... for almost anywhere, from the Himalayas to the Amazonian jungle.
3 Notices such as (English/Speak) .... and (Shoes/Repair) .... are common. Sometimes they (translate) .... into different languages for the benefit of tourists.
4 We (constantly remind) .... of the way the world (become) .... smaller when events taking place in different parts of the globe (flash) .... on our television screens.
5 If you (involve) .... in a car accident and someone (hurt) ...., you (have to) .... report the matter to the police. If only the vehicles (damage) ...., drivers should exchange names and addresses.

12.2B The use of 'by' + agent (= 'doer') after a passive [> LEG 12.5]

Study: ★★

1 We use *by* only when we need to say who or what is responsible for an event:
The window **was broken** *last night.* (We don't know or want to say who or what did it.)
The window **was broken by a slate** *that fell off the roof.* (We wish to give information.)

2 We often use *by* + agent with the passive of verbs like *build, compose, damage, design, destroy, discover, invent, make* and *write* to identify who or what is/was responsible:
Who designed *St Paul's? – It* ***was designed by Christopher Wren****.*

Write: Supply passive forms with *by* + agent where necessary.

1 When Jasper Morgan died his collection of pictures (sell) ....was sold..... to raise enough money to pay his taxes. Tremendous interest in the sale (show/the general public) was shown by the general pu
2 The music that (compose/Beethoven) .... towards the end of his life is very different from his early music. The music (write) .... in extremely difficult conditions.
3 Many beautiful old buildings in cities (replace/modern ones) .... If this replacement (not control), ... it isn't very long before a city loses its character.

12.2C The passive with verbs of 'saying' and 'believing': 'It is said (that) ...'

[> LEG 12.8]

Study: ★★★

We need to be sure of our facts when we say: e.g. He ***was*** a spy ***in*** World War *II.*
If we are not sure of our facts, we can express caution by saying:
It is said (that) he was a spy in World War *II./**He was said to*** be a spy in World War *II.*
We can express caution in three ways, with:

1 It (+ passive + that-clause) with e.g. agree, believe, consider, decide, hope, know, say.
It is said (that) there is plenty of oil off our own coast.

2 There (+ passive + to be) with e.g. allege, believe, fear, know, report, say, suppose, think:
There is said to be plenty of oil off our own coast.

3 Subject (not *it*) (+ passive + *to*-infinitive) with e.g. *allege, believe, consider, know, say*:
Jane is said to know *all there is to know about chimpanzees.*

Write: Begin these sentences with It, There or a name/a noun + passive construction.

1 ...It is expected......... that prices will rise again this month. (expect)
2 .... that all the passengers had died in the crash. (fear)
3 .... to be an expert in financial matters. (suppose)
4 .... to have committed the crime. (think)
5 .... that the sea level is rising. (think)
6 .... to be a lot of coal in the Antarctic. (think)
7 .... to be honest and reliable. (consider)
8 .... to be thousands of people waiting to renew their passports. (say)
9 .... that thousands of new jobs will be created in the computer industry. (say)
10 .... to be a fall in house prices, but I haven't noticed it. (suppose)

12.2D Context

Write: Use the correct tenses and passive forms of the verbs in brackets.

A beautiful mermaid?

FISHY TALES

Mermaids (see) ^{1}have been seen by sailors for centuries. The basis of all mermaid myths (suppose) ^{2}............................ to be a creature called a Manatee: a kind of walrus! Mermaids used (to show) .... in funfairs until recently. It all began in 1817 when a 'mermaid' (buy) ^{4}............................ for $6,000 by a sailor in the South Pacific. She (eventually sell) ^{5}............................ to the great circus-owner Barnum. She (exhibit) ^{6}............................ in 1842 as 'The Feejee Mermaid'. It (say) ^{7}............................ that she earned Barnum $1,000 a week! The thousands who saw this mermaid (*must/disappoint*) ^{8}............................ . She (cleverly make) ^{9}............................ by a Japanese fisherman. A monkey's head (delicately sew) ^{10}............................ to the tail of a large salmon. The job (so skilfully do) ^{11}............................ that the join between the fish and the monkey was invisible. Real imagination (*must/require*) ^{12}............................ to see this revolting creature as a beautiful mermaid combing her golden hair!

12.3 Form and use of the causative

12.3A Form of the causative: 'have something done' [> LEG 12.10-11]

Study: ★★

1 Note the difference between these two sentences:
I had built a house. (past perfect tense = 'I did it myself' [> 9.6A])
I ***had*** a house ***built.*** (the causative = 'I arranged for it to be done' [> 12.3B])

2 We form the causative with have + noun or pronoun object + past participle.
We use the causative in different tenses and with modals:
I am having *a house* ***built****.* ***I had*** *a house* ***built****.* ***I have had*** *a house* ***built****.*
I will have *a house* ***built****.* ***I must have*** *a house* ***built****.* ***I can't have*** *a house* ***built****.* etc.

Write: Complete these sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

1 They've just had their living room .... (decorate)
2 Your car engine sounds dreadful. You ought to have it .... (look at)
3 Have you had your eyes .... recently? (test)
4 He's going to have his hair .... at the weekend. (cut)
5 Can **I** have this letter ...., please? (photocopy)
6 This letter is so important, I'm going to have it .... by a lawyer. (write)

12.3B The causative compared with the active and passive [> LEG 12.12]

Study: ★★

1 We use the **active** to describe jobs we do ourselves or when we know who's doing a job:
I'm servicing the car. ***Jack is servicing*** the car.

2 We use the **passive** to say that a job is being done for us, but we don't know or don't want to say who is doing it:
The car is being serviced. (We're focusing on the car [> 12.2A])

3 We use the **causative** to stress the fact that we are 'causing' someone to do a job for us:
I'm having the car serviced. I have had my car serviced. I'm going to have my hair cut.
Not *'I'm* going to cut *my hair'* which means 'I'm going to cut it myself'. [compare > 16.2B]
We often use the causative with verbs that have to do with services: e.g.
build, clean, decorate, develop (a film), *mend, photocopy, press, print, repair, service.*

Write 1: Supply the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

1 What are you doing? – I......'m cleaning.. the car. (clean)
2 Where's your car? – It .... at the moment. I'll collect it in an hour. (clean)
3 **I** never find time to clean the car myself, so **I** .... (clean)
4 Did you decorate the room yourselves? – No, we .... (decorate)
5 We can't use the living room. It .... at the moment. (decorate)
6 You .... They look quite worn. (must/repair your shoes)
7 My shoes .... It was an expensive job! (just repair)
8 The heel came off my shoe and **I** .... it myself. (repair)
9 'I'd like this film ....,' **I** said. 'Certainly,' the assistant said. (develop and print)
10 'Can **I** use the photocopier .... this document?' **I** asked. (photocopy)
11 Who .... the children's clothes, in this house? – Who do you think? **I** do! (mend)
12 What's happened to my report? – It .... at the moment. (photocopy)

Write 2: Today is Wednesday. Look at the notes Maria wrote yesterday and early today. Then write:
a what she had done yesterday; **b** what she is having done today;
c what she is going to have done tomorrow.

Tuesday	Wednesday (today)	Thursday
best skirt cleaned	eyes tested	a tooth extracted
two trees planted	a film developed	two teeth filled
car serviced	some furniture delivered	hair done

1a ....She had her best skirt cleaned yesterday...
b ....She's having her eyes tested today..
c ....She's going to have a tooth extracted tomorrow...
2a ....
b ....
c ....
3a ....
b ....
c ....

12.3C 'Get' in the causative: 'get something done' [> LEG **12.1I**, 12.13]

Study: ★★

We sometimes use *get* in place of *have* in the causative to say something is urgent:
***Have** that car repaired!* (causative) ***Get** that car repaired!* (more urgent causative)

Write: Use *get* in place of *have* in these sentences.

1 I must have ....I must get................. this report photocopied and sent off straightaway.
2 They're finally having .... their central heating repaired.
3 We'll be having .... the job done by a local builder.
4 Why don't you have .... that suit cleaned? It's filthy!
5 Have .... your hair cut!

12.3D Context

Write: Put in causative forms for the verbs in brackets.

... customers promptly executed!

CONSTANT MAINTENANCE!
The more you own, the more there is to go wrong. You invest in a new hi-fi system and in no time you have to *(it repair)* [1] get it repaired . You *(a new washing machine install)* [2]............................ and you have to buy expensive insurance to maintain it. You buy a car and need to *(it service)* [3]............................ regularly. You buy a camera and then spend a fortune *(films develop and print)* [4]............................ . It's not only things that need constant attention. How often we have to *(our eyes test)* [5]............................, (*our teeth fill)* [6]............................ and *(our chests X-ray)* [7]............................! But I had to smile last time I went to *(my hair cut)* [8]............................ . A bold notice in the window announced: 'All our customers promptly executed!' You certainly wouldn't need to *(any jobs do)* [9]............................ after that!

13 Questions, answers, negatives

13.1 Yes/No questions, negative statements, Yes/No answers

13.1A Yes/No questions (expecting 'Yes' or 'No' in the answer) [> LEG 13.1-3]

Study: ★

1 We make Yes/No questions from statements. In the case of *be, have* (auxiliary) and modal verbs like *can* and *must* [> 11.1A] we do this by **inversion,** that is by putting be, *have* or *can,* etc. in front of the subject: ***He is** leaving.* → ***Is he** leaving?*
***She can** drive a bus.* → ***Can she** drive a bus?*

2 With all other verbs, we form Yes/No questions with *Do* and *Does* in the simple present and *Did* in the simple past. The form of the verb is always the bare infinitive:
***We turn** left here.* → ***Do we turn** left here?*
***He works** well.* → ***Does he work** well?*
***They arrived** late.* → ***Did they arrive** late?*

Write: You want to know if ... What do you say?

1 you're late. ...Am I late?...
2 this is the London train. ...
3 your photos are ready. ...
4 John is working in the garden. ...
5 the children are studying. ...
6 Jane gives piano lessons. ...
7 Tony was enjoying himself. ...
8 they live in the south. ...
9 she should be here. ...
10 she could ask a question. ...
11 it will be fine tomorrow. ...
12 my friend will be staying. ...
13 they would like an invitation. ...
14 they often argue like that. ...
15 I run a mile every morning. ...
16 Sheila went to the lecture. ...

13.1B Negative statements [> LEG 13.2,13.4]

Study: ★

1 When a sentence contains *be, have,* or a modal like *can,* we form the negative by putting *not* after the auxiliary: *He **is** leaving.* → *He **is not** (**He isn't** or **He's not**) leaving.*
*He **can** leave.* → *He **cannot (can't)** leave.*

2 With all other verbs we use *do not (don't)* and *does not (doesn't)* after the subject in the simple present and *did not (didn't)* after the subject in the past. The verb is always a bare infinitive:
*We **turn** left here.* → *We **do not (don't) turn** left here.*
*He **works** well.* → *He **does not** (**doesn't**) **work** well.*
*They **arrived** late.* → *They **did not** (**didn't**) **arrive** late.*

Write: Say 'no', disagree or contradict with full negative statements.

1 Are you ready? ...No, I'm not ready....
2 She's right. ...
3 They're late. ...
4 You're being silly. ...
5 He's working in London. ...
6 They're playing tennis. ...
7 I'm going to fail. ...
8 She was waiting for you. ...
9 He can speak Russian. ...
10 He'll be leaving soon. ...
11 It would be a very good idea. ...
12 It looks like rain. ...
13 They always win. ...
14 They missed the last lesson. ...
15 She's always been good at sport. ...
16 You've met her. ...

13.1C Yes/No short answers [> LEG 13.5-7]

Study: ☆

1 When answering with ***Yes*** or ***No,*** we usually repeat the first word in the question:
Was James late? – Yes, he was./No, he wasn't.
Can he play chess? – Yes, he can./No, he can't.
Note: ***Are you ...? – Yes, I am./No, I'm not. Were you ...? – Yes, I was./No, I wasn't.***
where we repeat the verb, but in a different form.

2 We do not usually answer a YeslNo question in full:
Did James go out last night? – Yes, he did./No, he didn't.
rather than 'Yes, he went out last night.' 'No, he didn't go out last night.'
We do not usually answer a YeslNo question with just ***Yes*** or ***No:***
Do you like dancing? – Yes, I do./No, I don't. Not **Yes./No.** which can sound rude.

3 We can put a lot of expression into short answers and use them to give information, agree, disagree, confirm, etc. e.g.
Did you lock the back door? – ***Yes, I did./No, I didn't.*** *It's hot. –* ***Yes, it is./No, it isn't.***

Write: Answer these questions with either ***Yes*** or ***No.***

1 Are you ready? ..Yes, I am.........................
2 Is she still at college? ....
3 Are they on their way here? ....
4 Are you still learning French? ....
5 Is Carla applying for that job? ....
6 Are we staying at the same hotel? ....
7 Are you going to help me? ....
8 Was she joking? ....
9 Were they living there then? ....
10 Should I go with them? ....
11 Will you be at the meeting? ....
12 Would you do that if you were me? ....
13 Does she still write to you? ....
14 Do you like curry? ....
15 Did he tell you about the party? ....
16 Has he finished yet? ....
17 Have you ever eaten swordfish? ....
18 Has she been working here long? ....

13.1D Context

Write: Put in suitable YeslNo questions, negatives or short answers.

GUESS WHAT!

Before setting out on holiday, the Weeks family sat in their car and went through their usual quiz.

MR WEEKS: (*we/turn* ***off)*** ^{1} .Did..we..turn..off/Have..we..turned..off... the electricity?
MRS WEEKS: ***(Yes)*** ^{2}.. I turned it off myself.
MRWEEKS: (*all the taps off*) ^{3}...7
JIMMY: ***(Yes)*** ^{4}.. . I checked every one of them, dad.
SALLY: You ***(notremember)*** ^{5}...................................... my teddy-bear!
MRS WEEKS: ***(Yes)*** ^{6}.. darling. I packed him in your case.
MRWEEKS: (*there any windows open*) ^{7}...7
JIMMY: ***(No)*** ^{8}.. . I shut them all, dad.
MRS WEEKS: ***(the front and back doors/lock)*** ^{9}.. ?
MR WEEKS: ***(Yes)*** ^{10}.. . I've just locked them.

After they had been on the road for an hour, Mr Weeks suddenly turned pale and said, 'Guess what! I (*not/got*) ^{11}... my house keys. They're still in the back door!'

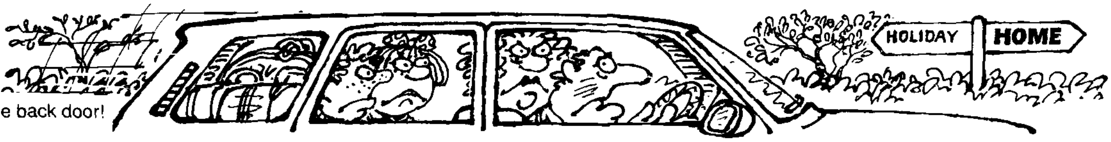

They're still in the back door!

13.2 Alternative negative forms and negative questions

13.2A Negative statements with 'negative adverbs': 'never', etc. [> LEG 13.8-10]

Study:
★★

1 We can make negative or near-negative statements with adverbs like *never, hardly, hardly ever, seldom* and *rarely* [compare > 7.4A-B, 7.8C]. *Never* is more emphatic than *not.*
Compare: *I don't drink coffee.* (negative) with: *I never drink coffee.* (emphatic negative)

2 We can't use a negative adverb with a negative verb to make a 'double negative':
I can hardly recognize him. (Not **I can't hardly recognize him.**)
Nobody phoned. (Not **Nobody didn't phone.**)

This is especially true for *no, any* and their compounds [> 4.6B]:
I've got no time. → *I haven't got any time.*
I've seen no ***one/nobody****.* → *I haven't seen* ***anyone/anybody****.*
I've bought none of them. → *I haven't bought any of them.*
I've done nothing today. → *I haven't done anything today.*
I've been nowhere today. → *I haven't been anywhere today.*

Write: Make negative or near-negative statements using the adverbs in brackets.

1 I don't go to the cinema. (never) I never go to the cinema.
2 She doesn't watch TV. (hardly ever)
3 I can't get him on the phone. (seldom)
4 They didn't greet me. (barely)
5 We don't go out. (scarcely ever)
6 We can't wait till tomorrow. (hardly)
7 We don't see our neighbours. (rarely)
8 It's not worth the trouble. (scarcely)
9 I haven't bought any eggs. (no)
10 I didn't speak to anyone. (no one)
11 I don't want any of them. (none)
12 She didn't say anything. (nothing)
13 We didn't go anywhere. (nowhere)
14 Please don't tell anybody. (nobody)
15 She doesn't understand English. (hardly)

13.2B Cancelling what has just been said: 'No, not Wednesday' [> LEG 13.12]

Study:
★★

We can cancel what we have just said with *not*:
See you Wednesday – no, ***not*** *Wednesday, Thursday.* (Not **No Wednesday**)

Write: Cancel the following by referring to the words in italics.

1 Ask *Diana.* (No,) not Diana, Josephine.
2 I'll see you at *5.*
3 The plane leaves from *London.*
4 The film you want to see is on *today.*
5 I'd like a cup of *coffee.*
6 Please pass me the *salt.*

13.2C Negative questions: 'Can't you ...?' [> LEG 13.14-16]

Study: ★★

1 In negative questions, the word order of the full form is different from the short form:
full form: ***Did he not*** *explain the situation to you?*
short form: ***Didn't he*** *explain the situation to you?*
We normally use the short form in conversation and the full form only for emphasis.

2 Depending on the stress and intonation we use, we can:
– express disbelief, surprise: ***Can't you*** *really ride a bicycle?*
– invite the answer 'Yes': ***Don't you*** *remember our holiday in Spain?*
– persuade: ***Won't you*** *please help me?*
– express annoyance: ***Can't you*** *ever shut the door behind you?*
– make exclamations: ***Isn't it*** *hot in here!*

Write: Rewrite these negative questions using short forms.

1 Am I not too early? [> 10.1B] ...Aren't I too early?...........
2 Is she not very well? ....
3 Are those answers not wrong? ....
4 Is he not waiting for you? ....
5 Are they not living in Canada? ....
6 Was she not a famous actress? ....
7 Were you not at my old school? ....
8 Are you not going to be there? ....
9 Can you not walk faster? ....
10 Could you not do this for me? ....
11 Do you not like fish? ....
12 Does she not go to church? ....
13 Did he not enjoy the film? ....
14 Have you not finished yet? ....
15 Has he not gone yet? ....
16 Have I not been invited? ....
17 Should you not let him know? ....
18 Am **I** not invited? ....

13.20 Context

Write: Put in *anything, anywhere, everyone, hardly ever, no, no one, nothing.*

NOT YETI
A Yeti is supposed to be a strange creature that lives in the Himalayas. Nearly ¹.....everyone..... has heard of Yetis, but ²........................... has actually seen one. Recently, a party of climbers went up Mount Jaonli looking for Yetis. Unlike more famous mountains, Jaonli has ³........................... been climbed. The party saw ⁴........................... Yetis ⁵........................... . There was a moment's excitement one night when a climber heard a strange, two-note sound. He rushed out of his tent and asked his Tibetan guide, Chewang Thundup, if he had heard ⁶........................... . 'No, I heard ⁷...........................,' the guide replied. 'But I just heard a strange sound,' the climber said. 'That was no Yeti,' Chewang laughed. 'It was me, blowing my nose!'

... a strange two-note sound

13.3 Tag questions and echo tags

13.3A Tag questions 1: 'It is ..., isn't it?'/'It isn't ..., is it?' [> LEG 13.17-19, 13.22.1-2]

Study: ★★

1 A tag question is a short question (e.g. *have~~~?/have you?)* that follows a statement. We form tag questions with auxiliaries *(be, have, can, may,* etc.) and *do, does, did.*

2 They are **affirmative – negative:** ***John was annoyed, wasn't he? You like fish, don't you?*** or **negative – affirmative:** ***John wasn't annoyed, was he? You don't like fish, do you?***

3 Many languages have a phrase which means 'Isn't that so?' In English, we use tags to say this, but we also use expressions like ***don't you think?, right?*** etc.

4 If our voice goes up on the tag, we are asking a real question which needs an answer:
You left the gas on, didn't↗you? – Yes, I did./No, I didn't.
You didn't leave the gas on, ↗did you? – Yes, I did./No, I didn't.

5 If our voice goes down on the tag, we want the listener to agree with us and we don't usually expect an answer: ***You locked the door, didn't↘you?*** (= I assume you did.)
You didn't lock the door, did↘you? (= I assume you didn't.)

Write: You want the listener to agree with you. Do the exercise orally, then in writing.

1 She's late, ...isn't she.................................?
2 They're on holiday, ...?
3 I'm early, ...? [> 10.1B]
4 Carla was at home, ...?
5 We were all ill, ...?
6 You've finished, ...?
7 Marc has gone out, ...?
8 I always do the wrong thing, ...?
9 Tessa works hard, ...?
10 She isn't late, ...?
11 They aren't on holiday, ...?
12 I'm not early, ...?
13 Carla wasn't at home, ...?
14 We weren't all ill, ...?
15 You haven't finished, ...?
16 Marc hasn't gone out, ...?
17 I don't often do the right thing, ...?
18 Tessa doesn't work hard, ...?

13.38 Tag questions 2: 'You painted it yourself, did you?' [> LEG 13.20-21, 13.22.3]

Study: ★★

Tag questions can also be **affirmative – affirmative.**
If our voice goes up on the tag, we mean 'Tell me more', etc.:
She's getting married, is↗she? (= I'd like to know more about it.)
If our voice goes down on the tag, we express negative feelings like disappointment, disapproval or suspicion. We don't usually expect an answer:
I'll get my money back, will↘I? (= I don't believe it.)

Write: Say the sentences under **A** aloud and match them with a statement under **B**.

A

1 You painted it yourself, did you? e
2 You couldn't give me a hand, could you?__
3 Someone broke that vase, did they?__
4 You'll give me a call, will you?__
5 So they're selling their house, are they?__
6 You didn't leave the garage open, did you?__
7 He says he's innocent, does he?__

B

a) I don't believe it.
b) Tell me more.
c) I hope you can.
d) I hope you didn't.
e) I'm impressed.
f) I hope you will.
g) I'm sorry to hear that.

13.3C Echo tags: 'Is he?'/'He is?' [> LEG 13.24-26]

Study: ★★

1 An echo tag is a response, in tag form, to an affirmative or negative statement.

affirmative	**negative**
He's resigning.	*He isn't resigning.*
– Is he? He is?	***– Isn't he? He isn't?***
– He is, isn't he?	***– He isn't, is he?***
– He is, is he?	**–**

2 If our voice goes up on the echo, we want more information:
I've just won £500! – Have you?/You have?/You haven't, have you? (= Tell me more!)

3 If our voice goes down on the echo, we confirm what we know or have guessed:
I'm afraid he's made a bad mistake. – He has, hasn't he? (= I confirm what you say.)
or we express anger, surprise, disbelief, etc.:
I've got the sack! – You haven't!/You haven't, have you?/You have, have you?

Write: Supply different echo tags in response to these statements.
Say the echo tags aloud with different intonation and describe what they express.

1 John's paying. ....Is he?....................................
2 They aren't very happy. ....
3 Suzy was 30 yesterday. ....
4 I wasn't very well last week. ....
5 He works very hard. ....
6 They don't eat much. ....
7 You shouldn't be here. ....
8 I can afford a new car now. ....
9 We can't go tomorrow. ....
10 There'll be trouble about this. ....

13.3D Context

Write: Put in appropriate question tags and echo tags.

You could have knocked me down!

YOU COULD HAVE KNOCKED ME DOWN WITH A FEATHER!

I asked for my favourite perfume at the perfume counter of a large department store. 'We don't have that, [1] .....do we.......?' the snooty assistant asked her colleague, as if I had just tried to buy a bag of onions. I was about to leave the counter when I saw a girl of about twelve slip away from her mother, seize a huge bottle of perfume from the counter and put it into her carrier bag. I gasped! 'Excuse me,' I said. 'Your daughter has just stolen a large bottle of perfume!' The mother looked at me in amazement. 'She [2]......................?' 'That's right,' I said. She turned to her daughter. 'You didn't steal that big bottle that was on display, [3]......................?' The girl nodded. 'You did, [4]......................?' 'Yes, mum,' the girl confessed. 'I've told you hundreds of times, [5]......................, that the big one on display is a *dummy'.* She angrily took the bottle from her daughter and put it back on display. 'You should always take one of the boxed ones at the back, [6]......................? You do understand that, [7]......................?' She helped herself to a boxed one and both she and her daughter disappeared into the crowd quick as a flash.

13.4 Additions and responses

13.4A Additions and contrasts: 'John can ... and I can, too/but I can't'

[> LEG 13.28-29]

Study: ★★

We can add to statements or make contrasts in the following ways:

statement	**parallel addition**	**contrast**
*John **can** speak French*	*and I **can,** too.*	*but I **can't,***
*John **can't** speak French*	*and I **can't,** either.* [> 7.7C]	*but I **can.***
*John **speaks** French*	*and **I do,** too.*	*but **I don't.***
*John **doesn't speak** French*	*and **I don't,** either.*	*but I **do.***
*John **can** speak French*	*and so **can** I.*	*but I **can't.***
*John **can't** speak French*	*and neither/nor **can** I.*	*but I **can.***
*John **speaks** French*	*and so **do** I.*	*but **I don't.***
*John **doesn't speak** French*	*and neither/nor **do** I.*	*but I **do.***

Write: Rudi and Roxanne are brother and sister. Read this information about them, then write good sentences, beginning each sentence with 'Rudi ...'.

Rudi	**Roxanne**
He can speak English, but not Italian.	She can speak English and Italian.
He plays tennis and goes skiing.	She plays tennis, but doesn't go skiing.
He doesn't like classical music.	She doesn't like classical music.
He visited London last year.	She visited Rome last year.

1 Rudi can speak English, and Roxanne can, too.
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....
11 ....
12 ....

13.48 Parallel responses: 'John can ...'/'I can, too/So can I' [> LEG 13.28-29]

Study: ★★

1 We repeat the auxiliary and if there is no auxiliary, we use *do, does* or *did*

statement	**parallel response**		
*John **can** speak French.*	***I can,** too.*	or:	*So **can** I.*
*John **can't** speak French.*	***I can't,** either.*	or:	*Neither/Nor **can** I.*
*John **speaks** French.*	*I **do,** too.*	or:	*So **do** I.*
*John **doesn't speak** French.*	***I don't** either.*	or:	*Neither/Nor **do** I.*

2 We often say *So'm I, Neither'm I, Nor'm I,* but we usually write them in full: *So am I, Neither am I, Nor am I. Neither* and *Nor* are exactly the same.

Write: People say things and you respond.

1 I can swim quite well. I can, too/So can I.
2 I can't speak Danish. ....
3 I really should study more! ....
4 I won't be at college tomorrow. ....
5 I love Spanish food. ....
6 I don't like red wine. ....
7 I once had a holiday in Ireland. ....
8 I didn't enjoy that film. ....
9 I was hoping to get home early. ....
10 I've had a terrible cold. ....
11 I haven't been very well. ....
12 I thought the concert was awful! ....

13.4C 'So have you' and 'So you have!' [> LEG 13.29.4]

Study: ★★

Note the difference between:
I've got *a rash* on *my arm and* **so *have you.*** (parallel addition)
I've got a rash on my arm. – ***So you have!*** (confirmation or surprise)

Write: Tick which statements are additions and those which show confirmation/surprise.
Then continue with similar sentences of your own.

	addition	confirmation/surprise
1 She's wearing that funny hat again! – So she is!	___	✓
2 He's doing very well at work. – So is she.	___	___
3 Maria visits us quite often. – So does Sandro.	___	___
4 Sandro looks just like his uncle. – So he does!	___	___
5 I've got something in my eye. – So you have!	___	___
6 Rosa's got a new bicycle. – So have I.	___	___
7	___	___
8	___	___
9	___	___
10	___	___
11	___	___
12	___	___

13.4D Context

Write: Put in suitable additions and responses.

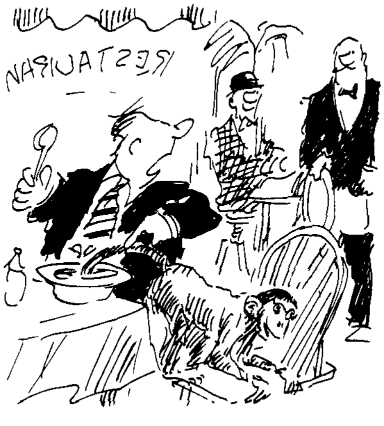

... a **monkey's** tail in my **soup!**

CRAZY STORY
'What are you having to start with?' I asked my wife. 'I don't know,' she said. 'I'm not very hungry.' '[1] Nor am I,' I answered, 'but I think I'll start with soup,' '[2].......................,' my wife said. The waiter took our order. 'My wife would like some soup and [3].......................,' I said. When the waiter brought the soup, I noticed a monkey sitting on a chair beside me. Suddenly, the monkey's tail was in my soup! 'Waiter! Waiter!' I cried. 'There's a monkey's tail in my soup!' '[4].......................!' the waiter exclaimed. 'I can't remove it,' I said. '[5].......................,' the waiter said. 'This monkey belongs to the restaurant pianist and he won't let anyone touch it.' I spoke to the pianist. 'Do you know there's a monkey's tail in my soup?' I asked. 'No,' the pianist answered, 'but if you hum it to me, I'll be glad to play it for you.'

13.5 Question-word questions (1): 'Who(m) ...?', 'What ...?'

13.5A Form of question-word questions (except subject questions [> 13.8])

[> LEG 13.30-32]

Study:
☐

The word order of question-word questions is: question-word + auxiliary + subject:

statement:	He is working.	He arrives at 8.
Yes/No question:	Is he working?	Does he arrive at *8?* [> 13.1A]
question-word:	***Why is he working?*** (Not **Why he is working?**)	***When does he arrive?*** (Not **When he arrives?**)

Write: Make two questions from each statement:
a a Yes/No question; **b** a question-word question.

1 She is arriving today. a *Is she arriving today?*
(When) b *When is she arriving?*
2 He has written a letter. a ....
(Why) b ....
3 She can help us. a ....
(How) b ....
4 They live in Jamaica. a ....
(Where) b ....
5 He arrives at **10.** a ....
(What time) b ....
6 You can't tell us. a ....
(What) b ....

13.58 'Who(m) ...?' as a question-word [> LEG 13.33]

Study:
★★

1 *Who(m)* ...?asks for the object of a sentence, usually a person's name or a pronoun:
statement: Frank met ***Alice.*** question: ***Who(m)*** did Frank meet? – ***Alice.***

2 *Who(m)* ... ?refers only to people and can be used to ask about masculine, feminine, singular or plural: ***Who(m)*** did you see? – ***Tim/Ann/The Robinsons.***

3 We still use Whom ... ?in formal English, spoken or written, but we often prefer Who ... ?in everyday style:
Whom did you meet at the party? (formal) ***Who*** did you meet at the party? (informal)

4 We often use *Who(m)* ...?in questions with verbs followed by to or for
Who(m) did you give it ***to? Who(m)*** did you buy it ***for?***

Write: Write questions using the past tense with *Who(m)* ... ?to produce the answers given.

1 you invite to your house? – The Frys. *Who(m) did you invite to your house?*
2 Jane see this morning? – Her mother. ....
3 you speak to? – The manager. ....
4 they employ? – Miss Johnson. ....
5 she buy this present for? – Her son. ....
6 John phone? – His brother. ....
7 you complain to? – The headmaster. ....
8 she write to? – Her sister. ....

13.5C 'What ...?' as a question-word [> LEG 13.34]

Study: ★★

1 What ... ? asks for a whole sentence: What are you doing? – *I'm* reading.
or for the object of a sentence: What are you reading? – 'Gone with the Wind:

2 What ... ? also combines with nouns:
What *book/books?* What *boy/boys*? What *girl/girls*? [compare Which? > 13.6B]

3 We can use *What?* on its own (What do you prefer?) or in a variety of combinations:
What('s) ... like?, *What('s)* ... called? What make ... ? What nationality?,
What ... do (for a living)?, What *time/date/year?, What('s)* ... for?,
What kind(s)/sort(s) of ...?, What colour ...?, What size ...?.

Write: Complete the questions on the left to fit the answers on the right.
Think about the combinations you can make with What's ... ? or What ... ?.

1 What ..What are you doing / looking at..........?	I'm looking at some travel brochures.
2 What ....?	I work as an assistant in a book shop.
3 What ....?	I use 'Woodland' shampoo. It's lovely.
4 What ....?	She's good-looking, but very unpleasant.
5 What ....?	Wonderful! Lots of sunshine and no rain.
6 What ....?	It's called a 'spade' in English.
7 What ....?	It's a Saab.
8 What ....?	He's Nigerian.
9 What ....?	I think they're leaving at 9.00.
10 What ....?	It's March 13th.
11 What ....?	It's for scraping paint off windows.

13.5D Context

Write: Supply questions with *Who(m)* ... ? and What ... ?.

I don't mind the risk!

TAKING RISKS

MAGISTRATE: (*What/his* name?) [1] ...What's his name?..........

POLICEMAN: James Denyer.

MAGISTRATE: Not Denyer again! If he's not in gaol, he's in and out of of this court. (*What/he/do* this time?') [2] ....

POLICEMAN: He stole 25 pence.

MAGISTRATE: (*Who(m)/steal it/from?*) [3] ....

POLICEMAN: An old lady. He took it out of her purse.

MAGISTRATE: (What *date/it?*) [4] ....

POLICEMAN: March 24th.

MAGISTRATE (to Denyer): (*What/do* that for?) [5] ....

DENYER: I'm sorry, sir. It won't happen again.

MAGISTRATE (to policeman): (*What/the* chances) [6] .... if I let him go?

POLICEMAN: It would be a risk, sir.

MAGISTRATE: Do you hear, Denyer? It would be a risk. (*What/say*) .... to that?'

DENYER: It's a risk I'd be glad to take. Honest, I don't mind the risk! (The court falls about with laughter.)

MAGISTRATE: In that case, I'd better let you go!

13.6 Question-word questions (2): 'When?', 'Where?', 'Which?', 'Whose?'

13.6A 'When ...?' and 'Where ...?' as question-words [> LEG 13.35, 13.38]

Study: ★★

1 We use *When ...?* to ask about time in the present, past or future.
The answers are usually adverbs of time or prepositional phrases:
When** is your flight? – **Tomorrow morning./At 4.

2 We use *Where ...?* to ask about place.
The answers can be whole sentences, phrases or single words:
Where** is he? – **He's over there. Over there! There!
Where ... from? asks about people and things: ***Where** are you **from**?/do you come **from**?*

Write: Read these situations. Then write questions with *When?* or *Where?*.

1 It's Jim's birthday soon. You can't remember when it is. Ask.
When is / When's Jim's birthday?

2 You like your friend's T-shirt. You'd like to know where he/she got it. Ask.
....

3 You're going on a coach trip but can't remember the departure time. Ask a friend.
....

4 Someone mentions a place called Kyzyl. You have no idea where it is. Ask.
....

13.6B 'Which ...?' as a question-word [> LEG 13.36]

Study: ★★

1 *Which* + noun asks about people: ***Which boy/boys/girl/girls** did you see?*
or things: ***Which book/books** do you prefer?* [> 4.2C and compare > 13.5C]

2 *Which* always refers to a limited choice and we don't always use a noun after it:
***Which** is the longest river in the world?* (Or: ***Which river** is the longest?)*
We also use *Which of* for two or more items: ***Which of the two/of them** do you prefer?*

3 *Which* combines with the comparative/superlative: ***Which** is **the cheaper/the cheapest?***

4 *Which* combines with *day, month* or *year* ***Which*** (or *What)* ***day*** *was it?*

5 *Which way ...?* asks for more exact information than *Where?*: ***Which way** did they go?*

Write: Complete the questions on the left to fit the answers on the right.
Think about combinations you can make with *'Which ...?'*.

1 Which film did you go to?	(We went to see) 'Star Wars'.
2 Which ....?	Oh, I like novels best.
3 Which ....?	She always uses 'Smooth' soap.
4 Which ....?	I met Jill and Sue there.
5 Which ....?	I think the Nile's the longest.
6 Which ....?	Oh, this desk is definitely the cheapest.
7 Which ....?	Of the three, I prefer the leather one.
8 Which ....?	That's easy. I'll always remember **1989**.
9 Which ....?	Oh, July is definitely the hottest.
10 Which ....?	I think they went towards the station.

13.6C 'Whose?' [> LEG 13.39]

Study: ★★

1 Whose? asks about possession. The possessor is always a person and we expect the answer to be somebody's name + *'s* (Kate's) or a possessive pronoun (mine).

2 When the possession is a thing or a substance, we can omit the noun after Whose:
Whose *(umbrella/coffee)* is this? – It's mine.

3 When the 'possession' is a person, we normally use a noun after Whose:
Whose ***son/daughter*** is *he/she*? – Kate's. Whose children are they? – The Lakers:

4 We can also phrase questions with Whose in the following way:
Whose is this umbrella? (Compare: Whose umbrella is this?)
Whose are those children? (Compare: Whose children are they?)

Write: Fill in the blanks with *Whose?* or Who?.

1 ..Who........................ does this pen belong to? – It's John's.
2 .... pencil is this? – It's Kate's.
3 .... do those books belong to? – They're both mine.
4 .... are those socks on the floor? – They're Karl's.
5 .... book is this? – It's Maria's.
6 .... gloves are these? – They're Suzanne's.
7 .... children are they? – My neighbour's.
8 .... son is he? – He's John and Jean's.
9 .... 's at the front door?
10 .... are these children? – They're Mike and Shona's from next door.

13.6D Context

Write: Put in When?, Where?, Which?. Who? or Whose?.

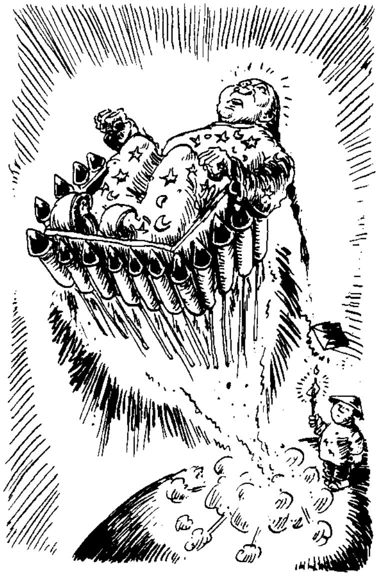

He never came back!

WHO DID WHAT AND WHEN?

What we believe depends on our view of the world. For example, if we ask, '¹.....When..... was America discovered?', most of us would think of Christopher Columbus in 1492. But Chinese children learn that Hui Shen, a Buddhist monk, got to America 1000 years earlier than Columbus. ².................... was printing invented by and ³.................... year was it invented? You immediately think of Gutenberg in 1436, but Chinese children learn that it was invented by Bi Shen in 1041. .... invention is spaghetti? It's the invention of the Italians, you will say. Wrong again. The Chinese had it before them. ⁵.................... and ⁶.................... was the compass invented? Answer: in China in 200 B.C. ⁷.................... was silk-making invented? Not in Persia, as you might think, but in China. ⁸.................... was the first country to put a man into space and ⁹.................... was he? The Soviet Union, you will say and the man's name was Yuri Gagarin. But according to the Chinese, Wan Hu made an attempt long before Yuri. ¹⁰...................., do you think? – In A.D. 1500! He sat in a chair attached to 47 rockets, holding a giant kite which would help him return to earth. He never came back!

13.7 Question-word questions (3): 'Why?', 'How?'

13.7A 'Why ...?' as a question-word [> LEG 13.37]

Study:

1 Why ...? asks for a reason and we answer with Because (Not **Why**) or a *to*-infinitive.

2 We can use What ... for? in place of Why?: What did you do that for? (= Why did you do that?)

3 We use Why *don't/doesn't* ...? (Why don't *you?/Why* doesn't *she?*) to make suggestions.

4 We may use *Why?* or *Why not?* + bare infinitive: ***Why wait** for him? **Why not wait** a bit?*

Write: Write suitable questions with *Why?* on the left to fit the answers on the right.
Think of possible combinations with Why?: Why don't ...?, Why not ... ? Why (wait) ...? etc.

1 Why ...are you still downstairs...? Because I want to watch the late-night film.
2 Why ....? That's a good idea.
3 Why ....? Because I didn't want to trouble you.
4 Why ....? I phoned to let him know I had arrived.
5 Why ....? I'm sorry I shouted at you.
6 Why ....? To find out his address.
7 Why ....? I'm already late for my appointment.
8 Why ....? All right. I'll put the job off till tomorrow.
9 Why ....? To check that I had locked the back door.

13.7B 'How ...?' as a question-word; 'How much?/How many?' [> LEG 13.40]

Study: ★★

1 We use *How?*, basically, to ask about manner:
***How** did you get on in the exam? – **Quite well**, I hope!*
How combines with *much, many*, and with adjectives and adverbs (*How far?* etc.).

2 We use How much? + uncountable to ask about quantity: How much *bread/milk/time?*
We also use How much? to refer to cost: How much does this cost? How much is it?

3 We use How many? + plural noun to ask about number: How ***many** people/books* ...?

Write: Use How much ...? or How many ...? in these sentences.

1 ..How much.... time do we have?
2 .... coffee do you drink every day?
3 .... times do I have to tell you?
4 .... did that car cost you?
5 .... people came to the meeting?
6 .... slices of bread do you want?

13.7C 'How' + adjective or adverb: 'How far?' [> LEG 13.40.2, 13.34.8, 6.16]

Study: ★★

We can use How + adjective (How long?) in place of What + noun (What length?):
***How long** is that skirt? **What length** is that skirt?*

Write: Change these What + noun questions into How + adjective questions.

1 What's the age of this building? How ...old...?
2 What's the depth of this pool? How ....?
3 What distance is Rome from here? How ......?
4 What size is your briefcase? How ....?
5 What length is this room? How ....?
6 What height is this house? How ....?

13.7D 'How long ... (for)?' and 'How long ago?' [> LEG 13.40.5]

Study: ★★

How long ...? (with or without *for*) asks about duration: ***How long** are you here (**for**)?*
How long ago? + past tense refers to a point of time: ***How long ago** did it happen?* [> 7.3A]

Write: Supply How long ... *(for)?* or How long ago?

1 ....How long...... are you here?
2 .... was the great fire of London?
3 .... did Queen Victoria die?
4 .... did the Victorian age last?

13.7E Social uses of 'How ...?' [> LEG 13.40.6]

Study: ★★

We ask questions with How ... ?for:
– introductions: How do you do?, answered by How do you do? (Not e.g. 'Fine, thanks*)
– health: *How are you? How have you been?*, answered by e.g. *Fine, thanks.*
– personal reactions: *How was the film?* (= What was the film like?)
– offers and suggestions: *How about a drink?* (= What about a drink?)

Write: Match the questions and the answers.

A	B
1 How do you do? d	a) I'd love to. That's very kind of you.
2 How are you?__	b) It was very enjoyable.
3 How have you been?__	c) Not bad, but I had a cold last week.
4 How's life?__	d) How do you do?
5 How's the garden? —	e) Yes, that's a nice idea. Let's.
6 How about going to the cinema? —	f) Coming along nicely. The tulips are just coming out.
7 How was the concert? —	g) Very well, thank you. And you?
8 How would you like to have lunch with us?__	h) Fine! How's life with you?

13.7F Context

Write: Put in the correct question forms.

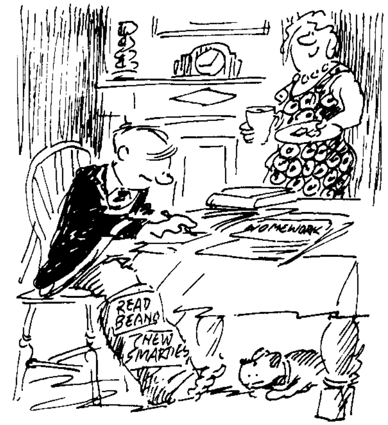

'It's a little gold mine!'

RENT-A-SPACE
My son, Len, is only twelve, but I think he's going to be an advertising tycoon. He had an accident during a football match last week and since then his leg has been in plaster. Len has been going round our local shops selling advertising space on his leg. (*'What/charge?*) ^{1}What do you charge ? I asked him. 'It depends,' he answered. ('How much *space/want?*) ^{2}............................ (How *long/want* it (for) ?) ^{3}............................ (*Want/box*) .... or just a few lines? (Want) ^{5}............................ "prime position", or not?' His plastered leg was covered with ads, so he was obviously doing well. ('How *much/make*) ^{6}............................ so far?' I asked. 'I'm not saying,' he said. (*'How/your* leg) ^{7}............................ coming on, anyway?' 'Fine, thanks,' he answered. (*'Why/you* ask?') .... 'I hope you're getting better and we can have that plaster off,' I remarked. 'I don't want it oft too soon,' he grinned. 'It's a little gold mine!'

13.8 Subject-questions: 'Who?', 'What?', 'Which?', 'Whose?'

13.8A Subject or object? [> LEG 13.41-43]

Study:
★★

1 A subject-question asks for the identity of the subject.
There is no inversion and the question has the same word order as a statement:

	subject	**verb**	**object**	**subject-answer**
statement:	Someone	paid	the waiter.	
subject-question:	Who	paid	the waiter?	John (did).

Compare a *Who(m)*-question which asks for the object of a statement [> 13.5B]:

	subject	**verb**	**object**	**object-answer**
statement:	John	paid	the waiter.	
***Who(m)*-question:** *Who(m)* did John pay?				The waiter.

2 Answers to subject-questions often echo the auxiliary verb used in the question:
Who can play the piano? – **I *can*.**/I can't.
When no auxiliary verb is present in the question, we use do, does or did in the answer:
Who wants a lift? – I do. Who won? – We did.

3 What, Which, Whose and How *much/How* many can combine with other subject-words:
What number is ...? Which boy likes ...? Whose car is ...? How many students are ...?

Write 1: Does the question-word ask for the subject or the object in each question?
Write **S** or **O** against each one.

1 Who spoke to you? S
2 Who did you speak to?__
3 Who will she leave her money to?__
4 Who'll lend you the money? —
5 What frightened you?__
6 What did she see?__
7 Which hat does he like?__
8 Which hat suits him best?__
9 Whose number did you ring?__
10 Whose telephone rang? —
11 How many people did you invite? —
12 How many people came to your party? __

Write 2: Supply suitable subject question-words on the left and suitable answers on the right.

1 ....Who.......... can play chess? ....Mary can...........
2 .... wants to have a day off? ....
3 .... broke the big glass vase? ....
4 .... 'll help tomorrow? ....
5 .... made this mark on the table? A knife ....
6 .... will make you happy? A new car ....
7 .... teacher took you for maths? ....
8 .... tie goes best with this shirt? ....
9 .... dog bit you? My neighbour's ....
10 .... dog bit you? The ....
11 .... suitcase got lost on the journey? ....

Write 3: What questions would you ask in these situations?

1 You and some other students are planning a beach party. You need someone who can play the guitar.
...Who can play the guitar? / Which of you can play the guitar?..................

2 You're entertaining some friends. You've just made another pot of coffee.
....

3 A friend has just seen a film and you want to know the story-line.
....

4 You have organized a weekend walk. Ten of the class have said they'll come, but you're worried because you want to know the exact number.
....

5 You are discussing a film with a friend. You were most impressed by one actor. What about your friend's opinion?
....

6 You're sitting chatting with friends. A chair is squeaking. You find it annoying.
....

7 You are at a party and want to go home, but someone's car is blocking your exit. You want to identify the owner of the car.
....

8 You want to identify the students who want to come with you on an excursion.
....

13.88 Context

Write: Put in the right questions and verb forms.

... the wrong Mr Berlin!

PLAY IT AGAIN, WINSTON!
(*Who/compose*) ^{1}...Who composed.. some of the most famous songs of the 20th century? The answer is Irving Berlin. *(What songs/compose)* ....? Famous ones, like *Alexander's Rag Time Band* and *White Christmas.* There is a well-known story about the famous British Prime Minister, Winston Churchill, who read in a paper that Mr Berlin was in London, so he asked his aide to invite the great man to lunch. Over lunch, Mr Churchill asked question after question. *(Which party/win)* ^{3}............................ the next American election? (*Who/be*) .... the next president of the USA? (*What/papers say)* ^{5}............................? *(Which papers/be)* ^{6}............................ the most influential? *(Which country/have)* ^{7}............................ the better political system, Britain or America? *(Whose system/Mr Berlin prefer)* ....? (*What/Mr Berlin/think*) ^{9}............................ of party politics in Britain? Mr Churchill was very disappointed with Mr Berlin's answers. Mr Berlin didn't have strong political opinions and Mr Churchill decided he was rather dull. The fact is that Mr Churchill's aide had invited the wrong Mr Berlin to lunch. Mr Churchill thought he was speaking to Isaiah Berlin, the famous philosopher, but his aide had invited Irving Berlin, the song-writer instead!

13.9 Questions about alternatives Emphatic questions with 'ever'

13.9A Questions about alternatives (1): 'Did you laugh, or cry?' [> LEG 13.44-45]

Study: ★★

We can abbreviate questions after or.
Instead of: *Did you laugh, or* ***did you cry*** *when you heard the news?*
We can say: *Did you laugh or* ***cry*** *when you heard the news?*

Write: Join these full questions with *or* to make single questions.

1 Did they listen to records? Did they go for a walk?
Did they listen to records, or go for a walk?
2 Can she dance? Can she sing? Can she play the piano?
....
3 Do you buy clothes when you need them? Do you wait for the summer sales?
....
4 Has she gone to church? Has she stayed at home?
....
5 Will you phone her? Will you wait till she rings back?
....

13.9B Questions about alternatives (2): 'Did you take it, or didn't you?' [> LEG 13.44-45]

Study: ★★

We can ask two questions, one affirmative and one negative, about the same thing without repeating the verb in full.
Instead of: ***Did* you *take* it**, or ***didn't* you *take* it?**
We can say: ***Did* you take it**, or ***didn't* you?**
or: ***Did* you or *didn't* you take it? *Did* you, or *didn't* you?**
or: ***Did*** *you take it,* ***or not****?* (Not **or no**)

Write: Rephrase each question in three ways without repeating the verb in full.

1 Do you like fish, or don't you like fish?
a Do you like fish, or don't you?
b Do you or don't you like fish?
c Do you like fish, or not?
2 Can you help me, or can't you help me?
a ....
b ....
c ....
3 Have you sent a card, or haven't you sent a card?
a ....
b ....
c ....
4 Will you phone the plumber, or won't you phone the plumber?
a ....
b ....
c ....

13.9C Emphatic questions with 'ever', etc. [> LEG 13.46-47]

Study: ★★

1 We ask emphatic questions with ***ever*** to express admiration, anger, concern, etc.
We write *ever* as a separate word from question-words. Compare:
***Where ever** did you buy that tie?* ***Wherever** you go, take your passport.* [> 1.8C]
***How ever** did you manage it?* ***However,** I managed to persuade him.* [> 7.8B]
***What ever** does she see in him?* ***Whatever** she sees in him, she'll marry him.* [> 1.9C]

2 We use *ever* after all question-words except *Which?* and *Whose?* and we often put heavy stress on it in spoken questions: ***Where 'ever** did you pick that up?*

3 We can ask questions with ***ever***:
– to get a subject or an object: ***What ever** made you late?* ***What ever** did he say?*
– in short responses: ***What ever for? Why ever not?***
or we use a phrase like *on earth* for extra emphasis: ***How on earth** did you know?*

Write: Make these questions more emphatic to express admiration, surprise, concern, etc.

1 Who gave you permission to do that? ..Who ever gave you permission to do that?.........
2 Why didn't you ask an expert to look at it? ....
3 When did they go to Iceland? ....
4 What will she say next? ....
5 Where shall I put this wet umbrella? ....
6 How do you expect me to carry all this? ....
7 How did you get into this mess? ....

13.9D Context

Write: Use forms with *ever,* etc. and ask questions about alternatives.

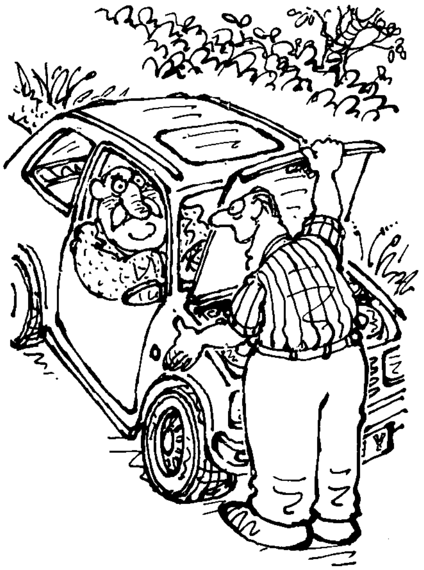

This isn't my job, you know

THE MAN I'VE BEEN WAITING FOR!
Colonel Blimp is a short-tempered man. He pays good money to his motoring organization and he expects instant service. He broke down on a lonely road recently and was ready to explode when he had to wait for two hours before help arrived. Even before the driver got out of his car, the Colonel was muttering, '*(What)*¹....What ever.... took you so long? *(What)*²............................ do we pay good money for? I don't break down often, but *(when)*³............................ I do, I expect real service.' The driver leaned out of the window. *('Have you broken down? Have you run out of petrol?)'* ⁴...'Can't start the engine!' the Colonel said sharply. 'Let's have a look at it,' the man said. *('Have you tried to start it? Haven't you tried to start it??* .... The Colonel, now red in the face, didn't reply. 'Well, *(have you? haven't you??*⁶... the man asked. 'Oh, I see, you've flooded the engine. Got a cloth?' 'Haven't you even brought a cloth?' the Colonel yelled. The man smiled. 'Oh, this isn't my job, you know. I'm just a passing motorist. I stopped because you looked as if you needed help.'

14 Conditional sentences

14.1 Type 1 conditionals

14.1A Type 1 conditionals, basic uses: 'If the weather clears, we'll go for a walk' [> LEG 14.4-6]

Study: ★★

1 We can use all present tenses after *if,* not just the simple present, for example:
*If **she finishes** work early, **she will go** home. (if* + simple present + *will)*
*If **she has finished** work by **4** o'clock, **she will go** home. (if* + present perfect + *will)*

2 We can use all future tenses in the main clauses, not just the will-future:
*If **he doesn't hurry,** the plane **will have left** by the time he gets to the airport.*

3 We use Type 1 conditionals to describe what will or won't (probably) happen:
*If **the weather clears, we'll go** for a walk.* (Not **If the weather will clear**)

Write: Supply the correct forms of the missing verbs.

1 If it ......is....... (be) fine tomorrow, we ..will go.. (go) for a picnic.
2 If I .... (have) time tonight, I .... (finish) the novel I'm reading.
3 If it .... (rain) next weekend, we .... (not able to) plant the vegetables.
4 If he .... (be leaving) at 6 o'clock, I .... (ask) him to give me a lift.
5 If she .... (have drive) all that way since this morning, ... (be) tired and hungry.
6 If they .... (have/be working) all afternoon, they .... (probably need) a cup of tea.
7 If I .... (can't/finish) the job this weekend, I .... (try) to get it done during the week.
8 If John .... (be picked) for the team, he .... (be boasting) about it for weeks!
9 If you .... (have/forget) to phone, they .... (will have/go) without you.
10 If we .... (stay) in this flat till May, we .... (will have/be living) here for twenty years.

14.1B 'If' + present + modal: 'If it's fine tomorrow, we may go for a swim' [> LEG 14.71

Study: ★★

When we use *will* in the main clause, we are expressing certainty or near-certainty:
*If the weather clears, **we'll go** for a walk.* (certain, or nearly certain) [> 11.4A]
If we do not feel 'certain' enough to use *will,* we can use another modal to say what is possible, necessary or desirable, for example:
*If it's fine tomorrow, **we may go** for a swim.* (it's possible)
*If it's fine tomorrow, **we must go** for a swim.* (it's necessary or desirable to do this)

Write: Supply the correct forms of the missing verbs, but use these modals in the main clause: *can, could, may, might, should, ought to,* or *must.* Alternatives are possible.

1 If you ......are....... (be) still ill tomorrow, you ..ought to.. stay at home.
2 If you .... (finish) work early, you .... come for a drink with us.
3 If she .... (have) too much to do, she .... ask someone to help her.
4 If he .... (not be coming) tonight, he .... come next week.
5 If he .... (have only just arrive), he .... not have heard the news.
6 If they .... (have be/waiting) longer than an hour, they .... be getting impatient.
7 If we .... (can't/go) next week, we .... manage to go the week after.

14.1C 'If + should' instead of 'if + present' [> LEG 14.8]

Study: ★★

If + should, instead of *if* + present, makes the condition more doubtful or very polite:
*If **I should** see him, **I'll ask** him to ring you.* (= *If **I see him, I'll ask** him to ring you.*)

Write: Rewrite these sentences using *should* in the if-clause.

1 If you see him, please give him this message. If you should see him, ...
2 If she asks you, please don't tell her anything. ....
3 If he phones, please say I'm out. ....
4 If the temperature falls, turn up the heating. ....
5 If you receive a letter, let me know. ....
6 If you go out, get me a paper. ....

14.1D Imperative + 'and/or' + clause: 'Fail to pay and ...' [> LEG 14.9]

Study: ★★

We can use the imperative in place of an if-clause to comment, threaten, request, etc.

1 We follow the imperative with *and* in place of an if-clause in the affirmative:
If you fail to pay, ***they'll cut off*** the electricity. →
Fail to pay ***and they'll cut off*** the electricity.

2 We follow the imperative with *or* in place of an if-clause in the negative:
If you don't stop *borrowing money*, ***you'll be*** *in trouble.* →
Stop *borrowing money*, ***or you'll be*** *in trouble.*

Write: Change these sentences to begin with an imperative.

1 If you ask me nicely, I'll mend it for you. Ask me nicely and I'll mend it for you. ....
2 If you crash my car, I'll never forgive you. ....
3 If you work late tonight, I'll pay you well. ....
4 If you don't hurry, you'll be late. ....
5 If you don't take a taxi, you'll miss your train. ....
6 If you don't stop shouting, I'll slap you. ....

14.1E Context

Write: Put in the missing verb forms.

Here's the doctor!

AN URGENT CASE

The family party was in full swing when the phone rang. Dr Craig answered it. He listened carefully for a moment, then said, 'I'll come right away.' 'Do you have to go out?' his wife asked. 'If it ^{1}........... .... an urgent case, I have to go,' Dr Craig answered. 'If I (should) ^{2}....................... late, please don't wait up for me.' Dr Craig drove into the night. If I don't hurry, he thought, I (might) ^{3}....................... too late. The thought made him drive faster. After driving for an hour, he arrived at a house. All the lights were on. If all the family is up, the doctor thought, the situation (must) .... serious. A woman opened the front door immediately. 'Thank God you've come, doctor,' she cried. 'It's my daughter.' A sleepy child of about six appeared in a nightdress. 'I told her,' her mother said, '"(go) ^{5}....................... to bed, or I'll fetch the doctor". See,' she shouted at the child. 'I've done it. Here's the doctor!'

14.2 Type 2 conditionals

14.2A Type 2 conditionals, basic uses: 'If you went by train, you would ...'

[> LEG 14.10-12]

Study: ★★

We form Type **2** conditionals with *if* + past (or *if* + *could)* + *would.*

1 We can use Type **2** conditionals in place of Type 1 to describe something that is reasonably possible. The past tense form does not refer to past time:
If you go *by train,* ***you will (you'll)get*** *there earlier.* (Type 1: reasonably possible)
If you went *by train,* ***you would (you'd)get*** *there earlier.* (Type **2,** 'more tentative')

2 We often use Type 2 conditionals to describe what is totally impossible:
If you had *longer legs,* ***you would*** *be able to run faster.* (Not *'If you would have')*
If you could run *fast,* ***you'd be*** *an Olympic champion.*

Write: Write Type **2** conditionals to match these situations.

1 **I** don't have a spare ticket. **I** can't take you to the concert.
If I had a spare ticket, I could/would take you to the concert.
2 She drinks too much coffee. She doesn't feel calm.
....
3 He can't type. He isn't able to operate a computer.
....
4 They don't understand the problem. They won't find a solution.
....
5 He sits around too much. He isn't fit.
....

14.28 'If + were/was' + 'would': 'If I were you, I would ...' [> LEG 14.13]

Study: ★★

1 We can use *were* in place of *was* after if in all persons: 'the subjunctive' [> 11.13B].
Were is formal. We also prefer *were* when expressing doubt or imagining something:
If I was *better qualified,* ***I'd apply*** *for the job. (If I was:* less formal)
If I were *better qualified,* ***I'd apply*** *for the job. (If I were:* more formal)
How ***would she be managing,*** *if* ***she were running*** *a large company?* (progressive forms)
If I were *the Queen of Sheba,* ***you would be*** *King Solomon. (were* is preferable here)

2 We use *If I were you* and *If I were in your position* to give advice. (Not **If I was**)
We can also refer to somebody else: ***If I were in Jane's position,*** *I'd look for a new job.*

Write: Write Type **2** conditionals to match these situations.

1 She is not in your position. She isn't able to advise you.
If she were in your position, she would be able to advise you.
2 **I** am in a hurry. **I** won't stay to dinner.
....
3 He's not a millionaire. He won't buy you a palace.
....
4 The weather isn't sunny. We won't stay indoors.
....
5 I am fit. **I** will go climbing.
....

14.2C 'If' + past + modal: 'If he knew the facts, he might .... [> LEG 14.14]

Study:
★★

When we use *would* in the main clause, we are expressing as much certainty as possible:
If he knew the facts, ***he would tell us*** what to do. (certain or nearly certain [> 14.1B])
If we don't feel 'certain' enough to use would, we can use another modal to say what would be possible or necessary, for example:
If he knew the facts, ***he might tell us*** what to do. (it's possible)
If he knew the facts, ***he should tell us*** *what to do.* (it's necessary)

Write: Supply the correct forms of the missing verbs. Use could, ought to, or might in the main clause.

1 If she ...were/was................. (be) here now, she ...could give............. (give) us some advice.
2 If he .... (fail) in his present job, he .... (think) about another career.
3 If you .... (can play) a musical instrument, you .... (help) with the school orchestra.
4 If they .... (have) the right qualifications, they .... (be able to) apply for better jobs.
5 If she .... (can have) some lessons, she .... (improve) her performance.
6 If we .... (run) our own business, we .... (be) more independent.
7 If John .... (go) to his home town, he .... (visit) his mother.
8 If Susan .... (borrow) your book, she .... (return) it.
9 If Frank .... (want) advice, he .... (ask) his bank manager.

14.2D Context

Write: Put in Type 2 conditionals throughout.

LYING IN THE SUN
Two tramps, Eugene and Sergio, were lying in the sun.

EUGENE: What (*we/doing*) ^{1}.would we be doing. if the sun (not shining) ^{2}............................?
SERGIO: Well, (*we/not* be) ^{3}............................ lying here for a start. But that's not the important question. The important question is: what (we do) ^{4}............................ if (*we/be*) .... rich?
EUGENE: If (*we/be*) ^{6}............................ rich, we (*can/travel*) ^{7}............................ everywhere.
SERGIO: True, but we travel everywhere already.
EUGENE: Yes, but not in style. If (*we/have*) ^{8}............................ money, our chauffeur, James, (can/drive) ^{9}............................ us round in our Rolls. Imagine, if (*we/be*) ^{10}............................ in that position! (*We/return*) ^{11}............................ to our fine mansion in the country.
SERGIO: Yes, the butler (put *out*) ^{12}............................ fresh clothes for us, the cook (prepare) ^{13}............................ a fine meal for us. We ^{14}............................ not just be eating carrots all the time.
EUGENE: Yes. If (*we/own*) ^{15}............................ a house like that, (*we/also* have) ^{16}............................ a fine swimming-pool.
SERGIO: Yes! Yes! If (*we/have*) ^{17}............................ a fine swimming-pool, (we *can/swim*) ^{18}............................ as much as we liked.
EUGENE: If (*we/be*) ^{19}............................ really really rich, (we *can/lie*) ^{20}............................ in the sun!
SERGIO: But we are lying in the sun!

Lying in **the** sun

14.3 Type 3 conditionals

14.3A Type 3 conditionals, basic uses: 'If you had gone by train, ...'

[> LEG 14.16-19]

Study: ★★

We form Type 3 conditionals with if + past perfect (or *if* + could have) + would have.
We often use Type 3 conditionals to express regret, etc. about things that can now never happen. We can use simple or progressive forms of the past perfect in the if-clause:

If I'd (= I had) ***been*** taller,	***I'd*** (= I would) ***have joined*** the police force.
If I had had any sense,	***I wouldn't have bought*** a second-hand car.
If we had gone by car,	***we would have saved*** time.
If I had been trying harder,	***I would have*** succeeded.
If I could have stopped,	***there wouldn't have been*** an accident.

Write: Comment on the following situations with if (expressing regret, etc.).

1 John ate too much birthday cake, so he was sick.
If John hadn't eaten too/so much birthday cake, he wouldn't have been sick.........

2 We came home from our holiday early because we ran out of money.
....

3 The house didn't burn down because the fire brigade came immediately.
....

4 The men were wearing protective clothing, so they were all quite safe.
....

5 I had an accident because I wasn't watching the road.
....

6 I was sweating because it was so hot.
....

7 My father didn't earn much money, so life wasn't easy for us.
....

8 I didn't enjoy school, so I didn't do very well.
....

14.3B 'If I had been you/If I had been in your position' [> LEG 14.18.1]

Study: ★★

We often use If I had been you and If I had been in your position to describe what we would have done in someone else's position:
If I had been you/If I had been in your position*, I would have accepted their offer.*

Write: Comment on these situations. Begin each sentence with If I had been ...

1 Marie paid •'200 for a dress.
If I had been Marie, I wouldn't have paid £200 for a/that dress...................

2 Franz didn't take that job he was offered.
....

3 Ali didn't study at all, so he failed his exams.
....

4 Sandra walked to work in the rain and got wet.
....

14.4 Mixed conditionals; 'unless/if ... not', etc.

14.4A Mixed tenses in conditional sentences [> LEG 14.3]

Study: ★★★

We do not always have to stick rigidly to the 'three types of conditional sentences'. There are occasions when we can use any tenses in if-clauses, depending on the context:

If I am *as clever as you say I am,* ***I would have been*** *rich by now.*	Type 1 + Type 3
If you knew *me better,* ***you wouldn't have said*** *that.*	Type 2 + Type 3
If I had had *your advantages,* ***I'd be*** *better off now.*	Type 3 + Type 2

Write: Use mixed tenses in these sentences.

1 If I ..were.................... (be) you, I .would have checked. (check) my facts before I wrote that letter.
2 If you .... (be) so hungry, you .... (not miss) breakfast.
3 If he .... (not catch) the **5.30** train, he .... (not arrive) for another two hours.
4 He .... (feel) very tired today if he .... (play) rugby yesterday.
5 If the snake bite .... (be) poisonous, you .... (feel) very ill now.
6 If I .... (be) in your position, I .... (answer) his letter by now.

14.4B 'If not' and 'unless' [> LEG 14.20]

Study: ★★★

1 We can use if ... not and unless in place of each other when we are saying 'except if'.
Unless is 'stronger' than if not and we sometimes use it in 'threats':
If you don't change your mind I won't be able to help you. (= Except if you change ...)
Unless you change your mind, I won't be able to help you. (= Except if you change ...)

2 We cannot use unless in place of if not when if not doesn't mean 'except if':
I'll be surprised ***if he doesn't win.*** (if not doesn't mean 'except if')
She'd be better company ***if she didn't complain*** so much. (if not doesn't mean 'except if')

3 We often use unless (never if ... *not*) to introduce an afterthought:
I couldn't have got to the meeting – ***unless,*** of course, I had caught an earlier train.

Write 1: Tick the sentences where we could use either if not or unless.

1 I won't do it if you don't help me. ✓
2 Unless he chooses his words more carefully, he'll be in trouble. __
3 She'd have more friends if she didn't criticise everyone so much. __
4 I'll be surprised if they don't get married one day. __
5 She couldn't have stolen the jewels unless she had had inside help. __
6 She couldn't have stolen the jewels – unless of course someone had helped her. __
7 I'd be very pleased with this car if it didn't break down all the time. __

Write 2: Supply if not or unless in these sentences. Note where you could use either.

1 (you/tell) Unless you tell / If you don't tell... me the whole story, I won't be able to help you.
2 He would be happier and healthier (he/have) .... so many worries.
3 We couldn't have caught the plane – (we/break) .... the speed limit getting to the airport.
4 (management and unions/become) .... more flexible, there'll be a lot more strikes.
5 I'll be there by 7 o'clock (I/get held up) .... in the traffic.
6 (we/have) .... more rain soon, the plants will all die.
7 (you/not warn) .... me, I would have fallen into the same trap as you.

14.4C Conjunctions we can sometimes use in place of 'if' [> LEG 14.21]

Study: ★★

We can introduce conditionals with conjunctions which do not always have exactly the same meaning as if, for example: assuming (that), even if, on (the) condition (that), provided (or providing) that, so long as, suppose and supposing:
***Assuming (that) it's** fine tomorrow, we'll go for a swim.*

Write: Rewrite these sentences using the conjunctions in brackets.

1 If you gave me $10,000, I still (not go) down a coal mine. (even if)
Even if you gave me $10,000, I still wouldn't go down a coal mine.
2 I (lend) you my book if you let me have it back by Monday. (on (the) condition (that))
....
3 If you look after it, I (let) you keep my bicycle till the weekend. (providing (that))
....
4 If you (not tell) anyone else, I'll tell you what happened. (so long as)
....
5 If it (be) a holiday on Monday, we can drive to the seaside. (assuming (that))
....
6 The children were never scolded if they (do) what they were told. (so long as)
....

14.4D Context

Write: Put in the right conditionals.

THE SECRET OF A LONG LIFE
Grygori Pilikian recently celebrated his 114th birthday and reporters visited him in his mountain village in Georgia to find out the secret of a long life. 'The secret of a long life,' Grygori said, 'is happiness. If you (be) [1]......are...... happy, you will live a long time.' 'Are you married?' a reporter asked. 'Yes,' Grygori replied. 'I married my third wife when I was 102. If you are happily married, you (live) [2]...................... for ever. But for my third wife, I (die) [3]...................... years ago.' 'What about smoking and drinking?' a reporter asked. 'Yes, they are important,' Grygori said. 'Don't smoke at all and you (feel) [4]...................... well. Drink two glasses of wine a day and you (be) [5]...................... healthy and happy.' 'If you (*can/live*) [6]...................... your life again, what (*you/do*) [7]......................?' a reporter asked. 'I would do what I have done. If I had had more sense, I (eat) [8]...................... more yoghourt!' he chuckled. 'Supposing you (*can/change*) [9]...................... one thing in your life what (*you/change*) [10]......................?' another reporter asked. 'Not much,' Grygori replied. 'So you don't have any regrets?' 'Yes, I have one regret,' Grygori replied. 'If I (know) [11]...................... I was going to live so long, I (look after) [12]...................... myself better!'

The secret is ... happiness!

Write: Add single quotation marks and other punctuation marks to these examples.

1 Where do you come from John asked
2 It's here Bill said
3 I've got a good idea Mark said
4 Is it something she asked that we all ought to know
5 As I was leaving he explained I heard someone shout
6 Don't shout at me he cried
7 John said We're late
8 We're late John said
9 What's the time Andrew asked
10 Bill said I'm hungry
11 What is it Jill asked
12 You are stupid sometimes she said
13 Where is he Tom asked
14 What a surprise she exclaimed
15 Is there anyone in she inquired
16 Which way did they go he asked
17 Tom said She's ill
18 She's ill Tom said

15.1C 'Quote within a quote' [> LEG 15.3ns.3,5]

Study: ★★★

1 If we are quoting someone else's words inside a quotation, we use a second set of quotation marks. If we have used single quotation marks on the 'outside', we use double ones on the 'inside' and vice-versa. The inside quotation has its own punctuation, distinct from the rest of the sentence:
*Ann said, 'Just as I was leaving, a voice shouted, **"Stop!".**'*
*'What do you mean, **"Are you all right?"?'** Ann asked.*

2 We can also use a second set of quotation marks when we mention the title of e.g. a book or a film: *'How long did it take you to read **"War and Peace"**?' I asked.*

3 We don't normally use quotation marks with verbs like *think* and *wonder:*
So that was their little game, he thought. *Why hasn't she written, he wondered.*

Write: Add correct punctuation marks to these examples of direct speech.

1 As I was leaving, he explained someone shouted Fire
2 Please don't keep asking me What's the time Jim said crossly
3 Have you read Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf my teacher asked
4 What do you mean Have you lost your way the stranger asked me
5 Where are they now he wondered

15.1D Context

Write: In printed dialogue, each new speech begins on a new line in a new paragraph.
Punctuate the following.

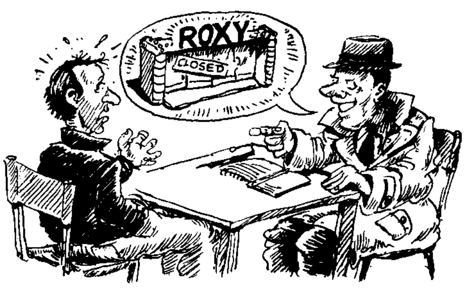

The Roxy was closed ...

INSPECTOR WILEY INVESTIGATES

1 It's all lies Boyle cried

2 You think so Inspector Wiley asked mildly

3 Think so? I know it Boyle answered sharply

4 And no doubt the inspector continued you can prove it. Where were you on Saturday night, the night of the robbery

5 I was at the Roxy with my girlfriend Boyle replied. We saw Gone with the Wind. The film lasted four hours

6 But, cried the inspector the Roxy was closed all last weekend

15.2 'Say', 'tell' and 'ask'

15.2A 'Say', 'tell' and 'ask' [> LEG 15.5-9]

Study: ★★

1 The commonest reporting verbs in both direct and indirect speech are: *say, tell* and *ask.*

2 We must always use a personal indirect object after *tell (tell somebody ...)*:
***He told me** he was tired.* (Not **told to me*) **John told his mother** he was going out.*
We can use *to me,* etc. after *say* if we want to, but we can't say **He said me** [> 1.3B]:
*'You haven't got much time,' **he said (to me).*** or: ... *he told me.* Not **he said me/he told**

3 We can use *me,* etc. after *ask* if we want to: *Are you comfortable?' **he asked (me).***

Write: Choose the correct word from those in brackets to fill the blank in each sentence.

1 He often .... things like that. (says/tells)
2 She always .... me her troubles. (says/tells)
3 The children always .... me if they can go out to play. (tell/ask)
4 They .... me to leave. (said/asked)
5 'Don't do that!' she .... to them. (said/told/asked)
6 'They've arrived,' she .... (said/told/asked)
7 'How are you both?' she .... (told/asked)
8 I .... that I didn't know what to do. (said/told/asked)
9 She .... me she didn't know what to do. (said/told/asked)
10 They .... if I knew what to do. (said/told/asked)
11 The nurse .... him whether he needed anything else. (said/told/asked)
12 Did he .... you where you came from? (say/ask)
13 Did she .... you where she had put my books? (say/tell)
14 The policeman .... us where we were going. (said/told/asked)
15 He didn't .... me how long the job would take. (say/tell)
16 'There's no match on Saturday.' – 'Who .... so?' (says/tells/asks)
17 'You were right. Those curtains look terrible!' – 'I .... you so!' (said/told/asked)
18 When I was introduced to the Princess, she .... a few words to me. (said/told)
19 That little boy's very bad. He .... a lot of lies. (says/tells)
20 'How much are those bananas?' – 'I've got no idea. Go and .... the price.' (say/tell/ask)

15.28 Fixed expressions with 'say', 'tell' and 'ask' [> LEG 15.7.2]

Study: ★★

There are many common expressions with *say, tell* and *ask,* for example:
say: *say a few words, say so, say no more, say nothing, say your prayers*
tell: *tell a lie, tell a story, tell you so, tell the time, tell the truth*
ask: *ask after someone, ask (for) a favour, ask a question, ask the price*

Write: Supply the missing phrases with *say, tell* and *ask.*

1 Don't say ....'I told you so'........ now that the worst has happened.
2 Don't offer to buy it. .... first.
3 You've told me more than I need to know. ....
4 If you need money, why don't you .... a loan?
5 Don't tell them anything. ....
6 'Who ....?' – 'I say so!'
7 When did your son learn to ....?
8 I did it. I cannot ....

15.3 Indirect statements with tense changes

15.3A Common indirect speech forms [> LEG 15.12-13, 9.5]

Study:
★★

We tend to use past tenses in indirect speech because we are reporting past events, so we use the past tense of reporting verbs *(he said (that) ... he told me (that)).* How we report is a matter of common sense and we can mix tenses if we want to. We can say:
Jim says he's read *Tony's book and* ***didn't understand*** *it.* (= then, when he read it)
Jim said he'd read *Tony's book and* ***doesn't understand*** *it.* (= now), etc.
But what commonly happens is that present attracts present and past attracts past, so we would probably say: ***Jim said he'd read*** *Tony's book and* ***didn't understand*** *it.*
We move the reported clauses 'one tense back'. A useful general rule is:
'present becomes past and past becomes past perfect'.

Write: Report these statements with *said* (except **13**) moving the clauses 'one tense back'.

DIRECT SPEECH STATEMENTS	INDIRECT SPEECH STATEMENTS
present becomes past	
1 MAC: I need a holiday.	Mac said (that) he needed a holiday.
2 SUE: I'm not wasting my time.	....
present perfect becomes past perfect	
3 TOM: I've had some good news.	....
4 PAM: I've been sleeping.	....
past becomes past or past perfect (past perfect is often optional)	
5 LOU: I went home early.	....
6 JAN: I was waiting for you.	....
past perfect does not change	
7 JOE: I had eaten earlier.	....
8 PAT: I had been waiting for you.	....
modal 'present' becomes 'conditional' or 'past'	
9 TIM: I will see you later.	....
10 DOT: I can speak French.	....
11 KIM: I may arrive later.	....
'shall' with a future reference becomes 'would'	
12 RON: I shall speak to him.	....
'shall' in offers and suggestions becomes 'should' [> 15.5B]	
13 MEG: Shall I speak to him?	Meg asked whether ....
'past' or 'conditional' modals do not change	
14 TED: I could help you.	....
15 ANN: I might see him.	....
16 JIM: I would enjoy that.	....
'perfect' modal forms do not change	
17 SAM: I must have fainted.	....
18 DON: I couldn't have said that.	....
19 NED: I needn't have gone there.	....
20 LYN: I ought to have helped her.	....
'should' (= 'it's advisable') doesn't change	
21 LEE: I should go to the dentist's.	....
'should' used in place of 'would' in conditionals becomes 'would'	
22 DAN: If I were you I should get legal advice.	....

'must' (= necessity in the past) does not change, or becomes 'had to'

23 PAUL: I must catch an early train. ....

24 JILL: I must speak to you. ....

'must' (= necessity in the future) does not change, or becomes 'would have to'

25 BILL: I must leave tomorrow. ....

26 JANE: I must work till late. ....

'must' (= deduction or possibility) does not change.

27 PHIL: John must be a fool. ....

'mustn't' (= prohibition) does not change, or becomes 'couldn't'

28 JEAN: I mustn't eat meat. ....

29 JEFF: They mustn't give up. ....

15.38 Pronoun and adverb changes in indirect speech [> LEG 15.12-13]

Study: ★★

1 Pronouns change (or not) depending on the view of the reporter:
'I'll send you a card, Sue.' (actual words spoken by Ann)
Ann told Sue she'd send her a card. (reported by someone else)
Ann said/told me she would send me a card. (reported by Sue)
I told Sue ***(that) I'd send her a card.*** (reported by Ann)

2 Time and place changes: Adverb changes depend on context, e.g.
now → *immediately/then*
today → ***that day***
tonight → ***that night,*** etc.
It is not always necessary to make these changes, especially in spoken indirect speech.
'I'll see you tonight,' he said. → ***He said he would see me tonight.***

15.3C Context

Write: Turn each direct-speech statement into indirect speech with tense changes.

Nuts and water without the nuts

JUST WHAT THE DOCTOR ORDERED!

'I've conducted a number of tests,' Dr Grey said.

1 Dr Grey said (that) she had conducted a number of tests.......

'I must put you on a very strict diet,' she told me.

2 ....

'You're putting on a lot of weight,' she said.

3 ....

'You have gained 5.5 kilos in six months,' she added.

4 ....

'You gained 10 kilos last year,' she reminded me.

5 ....

'You will get very fat if you go on like this,' she told me.

....

'You should eat very little,' she said.

7 ....

'So I'll have to live on nuts and water,' I said nervously.

8 ....

'You can live on nuts and water without the nuts,' she said.

9 ....

15.4 Indirect questions with tense changes

15.4A Indirect Yes/No questions: 'He asked me if I was ready' [> LEG 15.17-18]

Study: ★★

1 We don't use quotation marks or question marks in indirect questions:
He asked me if (or *whether*) *I was ready.*

2 Tense changes: 'Present becomes past and past becomes past perfect', but [> 15.3A]:
***'Are you** ready?'* → *He asked (me) if/whether **I was** ready.*
If we are reporting a question that has just been asked, we can say:
***'Are you** ready?' – 'What did John ask you?' – 'He asked me if/whether **I'm** ready.'*

3 The inversion [> 13.1A] in the direct question changes to statement word order:
***'Are you** ready?'* → *He asked (me) if/whether **I was** ready.*
A reported tag question [> 13.31 also changes to statement word order:
'You're ready, aren't you?' → *He asked (me) if/whether **I was** ready.*

4 We use *if* or *whether* after *ask, want to know, wonder, (not) know, didn't say/tell me.*

Write: Report these Yes/No questions moving the clauses 'one tense back'.

1 'Are you hungry?' She asked us ...if/whether we were hungry...
2 'Are you enjoying yourself?' He wanted to know ....
3 'Do you always go to church on Sunday?' He wondered ....
4 'Have you seen John recently?' She asked me ....
5 'Has Debbie been working here long?' He wanted to know ....
6 'Did you study hard for the exam?' She wondered ....
7 'Will Ted and Alice be at the party?' She asked us ....
8 'Will you be coming to the concert or not?' He wanted to know ....
9 'You like Italian food, don't you?' She asked me ....
10 'You don't like Italian food, do you?' She wanted to know ....

15.4B Indirect question-word questions: 'He asked me why I went there' [> LEG 15.19-20]

Study: ★★

The inversion after a question-word in a direct question changes to statement word order in the reported question and, if necessary, the tense is changed at the same time:
*'Why **haven't you** finished?'* → *He asked (me) why **I hadn't** finished.*
*'When **did you go** there?'* → *He asked (me) when **I went*** (or ***had gone)*** *there.*

Write: Report these question-word questions moving the clauses 'one tense back'.

1 'What's the weather like?' She asked me ....what the weather was like..........
2 'What does Frank do for a living?' I wanted to know ....
3 'Why is Maria crying?' She wondered ....
4 'What kind of holiday has Marco had?' You wanted to know ....
5 'How long have you both been living here?' They inquired ....
6 'Where did they go last week?' She wanted to know ....
7 'Who were you looking for?' He asked me ....
8 'When will lunch be ready?' You didn't tell me ....
9 'Which countries will John be visiting?' You didn't say ....
10 'How can I solve the problem? I wanted to know ....

15.4C Indirect subject-questions [> LEG 15.21-22]

Study: ★★

A direct subject-question has the same word order as a statement [>13.8A]:
***John paid** the waiter.* → ***Who paid** the waiter?* (Not **Who did pay the waiter?')*
We keep the same word order when we report a subject-question, though, if necessary, we change the tense:
*'**John paid** the waiter.'* → *He asked (me) **who (had) paid** the waiter.*

Write: Report these subject-questions moving the clauses 'one tense back' only where necessary.

1 'Who's next please?' She wanted to know ....who was next...
2 'What makes a noise like that?' He wondered ....
3 'Which of you is waiting to see me next?' The doctor asked ....
4 'Whose composition haven't we heard yet?' The teacher asked us to tell her ....
5 'Who left this bag here?' Tell me ....
6 'What caused the accident?' Can you explain ....
7 'Which newspaper carried the article?' I'd like to know ....
8 'Whose painting will win the competition?' I haven't any idea ....
9 'Which firms have won prizes for exports?' This article doesn't say ....
10 'Which number can be divided by three?' The teacher asked ....

15.4D Context

Write: Put in the correct forms and tenses of the numbered verbs.

BURNING THE CANDLE AT BOTH ENDS

The nurse asked me if I *(be)*¹......was.......... next and she led me into Dr Grey's surgery. Dr Grey smiled at me and asked *(what the problem be)* ²........................ I'm a young man and am not the sort of person she has to see very often! I told her I *(be)*³........................ feeling rather run down. She asked me if I *(keep)*⁴........................regular hours and I said I *(have not)* ⁵........................ . She wanted to know why I (*not/keep*) ⁶........................ regular hours and I said I ***(be)***⁷........................out with friends almost every evening. Dr Grey then wanted to know how I *(spend)*⁸........................ my time and I *(tell)*⁹........................her I *(go)* ¹⁰........................to parties mostly. The doctor asked if I (*not/have*) ¹¹........................ the chance to recover during weekends and I *(tell)* ¹²........................ her that my party-going *(be)*¹³........................even worse during the weekends! She asked me if I *(smoke)*¹⁴........................ . When I said I did, she asked how many cigarettes a day I *(smoke)* ¹⁵........................ . She raised her eyebrows when I answered! Then she asked me if I *(take)*¹⁶........................ any exercise and I answered that I (*not/have*) ¹⁷........................ time for that sort of thing. 'You're burning the candle at both ends, Mr Finley,' she told me. 'Rest is the only cure for you. You've really got to slow down.' She looked at me wistfully before I left her surgery and added, 'but I do envy you the life you've been living!'

Burning the candle at both ends

15.5 Uses of the *to*-infinitive in indirect speech

15.5A Reporting the imperative: 'He reminded me to post the letter' [> LEG 15.24]

Study:
★★

1 We report the imperative with suitable verbs + to-infinitive. The reporting verb matches the function of the imperative (asking, telling, advising, etc. [> 9.10A, 16.3C]), e.g.
'Remember to post the *letter,'* he asked me. becomes: ***He reminded me*** to post the letter.

2 When we report a negative imperative, we put not or never before the to-infinitive:
'Don't wait,' he said. → *He asked me* ***not to*** *wait.* (Not **to not** or **to don't**)
'Never do that again,' he said. → *He told us* ***never to*** *do that again.* (Not **to never**)

Write: Report the following using the simple past of the verbs in brackets.

1 'Wait for me,' I said to him. (tell)
I told him to wait for me.

2 'Go on holiday when the weather gets warmer,' she told him. (advise)

3 'Keep out of this room at all times,' she said to them. (warn)

4 'Remember to post those letters,' he said to me. (remind)

5 'Don't go into my study,' he said to them. (ask)

6 'Don't wait for me,' I said to him. (tell)

7 'Don't go on holiday yet,' she told him. (advise)

8 'Don't ever enter this room,' she said to them. (warn)

15.5B Offers, suggestions, requests for advice: 'He asked if he should ...' [> LEG 15.24.2]

Study:
★★

This is how we report offers and suggestions with *shall* or *should* [> 11.6E,F]:
– direct offer or suggestion: '***Shall I*** *phone her?'* '***Should I*** *phone her?'*
– reported with *if* or *whether*: *He wanted to know* ***if/whether he should*** *phone her.*
– reported with *whether to*: *He wanted to know* ***whether to*** *phone her.* (Not **if to**)

Write: Report each question in two ways.

1 'Shall I fax the information to them?' She asked *if/whether she should fax the information to them. She asked whether to fax the information to them.*

2 'Should I leave a message for her?' He asked

3 'Shall I heat the food for you?' She asked him

4 'Should I phone him now?' He wanted to know

5 'Shall I invite them to dinner?' She wanted to know

15.5C Requests for advice with question-words: 'He wanted to know how ....

[> LEG 15.24.2, 16.24]

Study: ★★

This is how we report requests for advice with question-words:
– direct request for advice: ***How shall I*** repair it? ***How should I*** repair it?
– reported with question-word + should: He wanted to know ***how he should*** repair it.
– reported with question-word + to-infinitive: He wanted to know ***how to*** repair it.
We can use a *to*-infinitive after all question-words (*how to, when to*, etc.) except *why*:
He wanted to know ***why he should*** *wait.* (Not **He wanted to know why to wait.**)

Write: Report each request in two ways, where possible

1 'When should I be at the station?' She asked when she should be at the station.....
......She asked when to be at the station. ....
2 'Where shall we have our meeting?' They asked ....
....
3 'Which should I choose?' He asked ....
....
4 'Who(m) shall I ask?' She wanted to know ....
....
5 'What should I do?' He asked me ....
....
6 'Why should I pay this bill?' She wanted to know ....
....
7 'Whose car should I borrow?' He wanted to know ....
....
8 'Why should I be punished?' She asked ....
....

15.5D Context

Write: Put in the correct forms.

SNOW FROM CHICAGO

It's a welcome gift.'

A GIFT FROM CHICAGO

It had been a particularly bad winter in Chicago. Nearly forty inches of snow had fallen in a fortnight. Railway workers at Chicago station didn't know (*what/do*) [1]...what to do..... with it. The foreman (advise them/ shovel) [2]............................ it into huge mountains to keep the platforms clear. He (*tell/not* leave) [3]............................ any snow on the platforms because it was dangerous for passengers. But it was an impossible task! Suddenly, one of the workers had a bright idea. 'I know (*how/get* rid) [4]............................of it,' he said. 'Let's load it onto this freight train. We can send it south to Mississippi and New Orleans. It'll just melt away.' The next day five tons of snow arrived in Memphis, Tennessee. 'It's a welcome gift,' a railway worker said. 'We know (*what/do*) .... with it here. We'll send what we can to the children's playground. Some of us have never seen snow before!'

15.6 When we use indirect speech

15.6A Interpreting direct speech [> LEG 15.13n.2, 15.25, App 45]

Study:
★★★

1 Indirect speech commonly occurs in continuous paragraphs of reported language, not in unrelated sentences. To hold it together, we use phrases like: ***she went on to say, he continued, he added that.*** We also vary the reporting verbs: ***he observed, she noted, they remarked,*** etc. Yes/No answers or adverbs like *Well* are common in direct speech, but they disappear when we report them.

2 We don't apply 'rules' mechanically when we are reporting; we have to interpret what we hear or read, so we often use reporting verbs like ***exclaim, insist, suggest,*** etc.:
'You really must let me pay the bill,' Andrew said. can be 'interpreted' as:
Andrew insisted on paying the bill.

Write: Interpret these examples of direct speech, then re-express them as indirect speech.

1 'Why don't we go sailing?' Diana said.
........Diana suggested (that) we (should) go sailing........

2 'You've just won a lottery!' Tom said.
'Really?' Jennifer exclaimed.
....
....

3 'More money should be spent on education,' Frank observed.
'Yes, I agree,' Gillian answered.
....
....

4 'I don't think you should take up wind-surfing at your age,' John said.
'I feel it's a sport that will suit all ages,' Jenny replied.
'But it requires great physical strength,' John said.
'And who told you I was short of that?' Jenny said.
....
....
....
....

5 'Don't go too near the lions' cage,' mother said.
'But I want to see the lions close up,' Billy answered.
'Isn't this close enough?' mother asked.
'No,' Billy replied.
'I'm sorry, Billy, but you can't go any closer than this.'
'But I want to,' Billy insisted.
'Well, you can't.'

No, you can't go any nearer...

....
....
....
....
....
....

6 'You really must keep to your diet, Mrs Flynn, if you're serious about losing weight,' Dr Grey said.
'You have been keeping to it, haven't you?'
'Well, I ... er ...,' Mrs Flynn muttered.
'Have you or haven't you?'
'Well, I have occasionally had a bit extra.'
'What do you mean, "a bit extra"?'
'Oh – a cream cake or two.'

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

7 'You did enjoy the film, didn't you?' Sandra asked.
'I'm not sure,' Sam answered.
'I thought Gloria Gleam's performance was fantastic!'
'Well, I didn't like it at all,' Sam replied.
'Didn't you really?' Sandra replied.

....
....
....
....
....

15.6B Context

Write: Put in the missing words.

The lady left in disgust

SECOND-HAND GOODS
It's a sad fact that people steal from hotels. Recently I interviewed Mr David Wills, the manager of a large hotel, and he [1]...told..... me that all kinds of things, large and small, [2]...................constantly stolen. Mr Wills told .... that a check [4].................. made on a person's room as soon as they *(leave)*[5].................. it, but unless someone had walked off with a wardrobe, he *(advise)*[6].................. the staff (*not/make*) [7].................. a fuss. 'What is even more surprising,' Mr Wills [8].................. 'is the things people leave behind – anything from wooden legs to false teeth!' He then .... on to tell me a story about a snobbish lady who *(recently check out)* [10].................. . She *(object)*[11].................. that her bill *(be)* [12].................. too high, but paid it nevertheless. Just as she *(leave)* [13].................., the phone rang and the cashier answered it. He then [14].................. the lady that a hotel bathrobe was missing from her room. The lady expressed great surprise and [15].................. that the hotel maid must have packed it in by mistake. 'But the maid has just reported the bathrobe missing,' the cashier [16].................. . Handing over the bathrobe, the lady left in disgust. 'Who wants a second-hand bathrobe, anyway?' she said, as she made her way to a taxi complaining that hotel service *(be)* [17].................. not what it used to be.

16 The infinitive and the '-ing' form

16.1 The bare infinitive and the *to*-infinitive

16.1A Forms of the infinitive [> LEG 16.1-3]

Study: ★★

1 We often use the base form of a verb *(go)* as an infinitive. We call this the **bare infinitive** because we use it without *to.* We must distinguish it from the **to-infinitive,** where we always use *to* in front of the base form of the verb *(to go).* The most common use of the bare infinitive is after modal verbs *He may/can* (etc.) *go* [> 11.1A-B].

2 Forms of the infinitive:

	active	passive
present infinitive	*(not) (to) ask*	*(not) (to) be asked*
present progressive infinitive	*(not) (to) be asking*	–
perfect or past infinitive	*(not) (to) have asked*	*(not) (to) have been asked*
perfect/past progressive infinitive	*(not) (to) have been asking*	–

Write: Using the verbs in brackets, supply the appropriate forms of the infinitive: *be doing, be done, do, have been doing, have been done,* or *have done.*

1 We can ....leave.............. soon. (leave)
2 I don't know what Mark's doing. He may .... in his room. (study)
3 She's a slow worker! I could .... the job twice in the time she's taken. (do)
4 Why were you waiting here? You should .... round the corner. (wait)
5 I promise you your order will .... today. (send)
6 'How was that table scratched?' – 'It must .... when it was being moved.' (do)

16.1B 'Let', 'make', 'would rather/sooner' and 'had better' [> LEG 16.4-5]

Study: ★★

1 We use the imperative form *Let's* (= Let us) + bare infinitive for making suggestions:
Let's take a taxi! Let's take a taxi, shall we? Do let's take a taxi. [> 11.6F]
The negative is: *Let's not (take a taxi).* Or: *Don't let's (take a taxi).*

2 *Let* as a full verb (= 'allow') is always followed by a noun or pronoun + bare infinitive:
*I won't let **you/him**, etc. go. Don't let the children annoy you. They won't let us speak.*

3 *Make* (= compel) is followed by a bare infinitive in the active: *She made them work hard.*
It is followed by a *to*-**infinitive** in the passive: *They were made to work hard.*

4 We use the bare infinitive after *would rather (not), would sooner (not), had better (not):*
I'd rather be told the truth. You'd better not go near the edge. [> 11.8A]

Write: Supply suitable infinitive forms for the verbs given in brackets.

1 Let's ....go... to the cinema. (go)
2 Let's .... out long. (not stay)
3 Let's .... , shall we? (go out)
4 Don't let's .... home yet. (go)
5 Let XYZ .... a triangle. (be)
6 Let me .... that letter for you. (post)
7 They didn't let her .... jeans. (wear)
8 He made me .... the mess. (clear up)
9 That T-shirt makes you .... younger. (look)
10 I was made .... floors. (scrub)

11 I'd rather .... for a walk in the rain than .... nothing at all. (go, do)

12 I'd rather .... anything if you don't mind. (not have)

13 I don't really want to see that play. I'd sooner .... at home. (stay)

14 You'd better .... what you think. (not say)

15 It's late. I think we'd better .... (go)

16.1C The infinitive with or without 'to' after 'help' and 'know' [> LEG 16.7]

Study: ★★

1 We may use a bare infinitive or a *to*-infinitive after a few verbs like help and know.
The use of a *to*-infinitive is more formal:
Mother ***helped me (to) do*** my homework.
We do not usually omit to after not
How can I ***help my children not to worry*** about their exams?

2 We sometimes use help without a noun or pronoun object:
Everyone in the village ***helped (to) build*** the new Youth Centre.

3 We have a noun or pronoun object after know:
I've never ***known her (to) be*** late before. I've never ***known her not (to) be*** late.
We use to in the passive: He ***was known to have/to have had*** a quick temper as a boy.

Write: Join or rewrite the sentences below using the words given.

1 I found this book. The librarian helped me.
The librarian ....helped (me) (to) find this book...

2 I have to fill in this job application form. Can you help me?
Can you ....?

3 You mustn't worry so much. I can help you.
I can help ....

4 People know him to be a very generous man.
He ....

5 He's a ruthless businessman. He is known for that.
He's known ....

6 She's never on time.
I've never known ....

16.1D Context

Write: Put in the correct forms of the verbs.

He had had a brilliant idea.

ONE CUBE OR TWO?

When we were at school as children we were (*make/wear*) ¹made to wear indoor shoes inside the school building. The teachers would never (let *us/wear*) ²............................ our outdoor shoes at all and they (make *us/change*) .... in the changing rooms from the moment we entered the building. I'd never known teachers (be) ⁴............................ more strict about any other school rule. The trouble was that my indoor shoes really (make *me/suffer*) .... because they were so tight. (*'Let/expand*) ⁶............................ our shoes!' a fellow sufferer suggested. He had had a brilliant idea. We put plastic bags inside our shoes and poured water into the bags. We sealed the bags carefully and put our shoes into the freezer. Of course the ice (make the *shoes/expand*) .... and they were a pleasure to wear. This clever idea (help *me/get*) .... through my schooldays with less discomfort and I have never forgotten it!

16.2 The bare infinitive or the '-ing' form; the *to*-infinitive

16.2A Verbs of perception: 'Watch him draw/drawing' [> LEG 16.9.2-3]

Study: ★★

1 We can use a noun or pronoun object + the bare infinitive or *-ing* after these verbs:
feel, hear, listen to, look at, notice, observe, perceive, see, smell, watch [compare > 16.6B].

2 The bare infinitive generally refers to the complete action:
*I **watched a pavement artist draw** a portrait in crayons.* (i.e. from start to finish)

3 The *-ing* form generally refers to an action in progress:
*I **watched a pavement artist drawing** a portrait in crayons.* (i.e. I saw part of the action)

4 We often use *hear, observe, perceive* and *see* in the passsive + *-ing* or a *to*-infinitive:
*They **were seen waiting.** They **were seen to climb** through the window.*

Write: Join these pairs of sentences, deciding when to use a bare infinitive or *-ing.*

1 She crossed the road. I saw her.
I saw ....her cross the road...
2 She was crossing the road. I caught sight of her.
I noticed ....
3 Something's burning. I can smell it.
I can smell...
4 They sang a song. I listened to them.
I listened ....
5 She was shouting at the children. I heard her.
I heard ....
6 The robbers were waiting near the bank. They were seen.
The robbers were seen ....

16.28 'Have' + object: 'Have the next patient come in' [> LEG 16.10.1-2]

Study: ★★

1 When we cause someone to do something for us, we use *have* + object + bare infinitive:
***Have the next patient come** in, please.* [compare > 12.3B]
We may also use *have + know, have +believe: I'll **have you know** I'm the company secretary.*

2 We use *have* + object + *-ing* to refer to intended results, and unintended consequences:
*I'll **have you speaking** English in no time. You'll **have the neighbours complaining.***

Write: Use the bare infinitive or the *-ing* form after *have* in these sentences.

1 Have him .... his car round the back. (bring)
2 'I will not have students .... on the walls of this college,' the principal said. (draw)
3 I'll have you .... I'm a qualified accountant. (know)
4 He had her .... he was a millionaire. (believe)
5 We have people .... us up all hours of the day and night. (ring)
6 The film had them .... right from the first few minutes. (laugh)
7 He's an excellent piano teacher. He'll have you .... in about a year. (play)
8 I'll have the plumber .... the central heating boiler. (look at)
9 The sergeant had all the recruits .... like real soldiers inside a month. (march)
10 He had never had anything like that .... to him before. (happen)

16.2C '(Not) to', 'so as (not) to', 'in order (not) to' [> LEG 16.2, 16.12-18]

Study: ★★

1 We use to, so as to and in order to to express purpose [compare > 1.10A]:
I went to France ***to learn*** French. **I** went to France ***so as to/in order to learn*** French.
We can also use the *to*-infinitive (not **so* as to* **in* order to') to express sequence:
We came home after our holidays ***to find*** the house neat and tidy. (= and found)

2 We use not to for alternatives:
I went to France ***not to learn*** Spanish, ***but to learn*** French.

3 We use so as not to and in order not to to express 'negative purpose' (Not **to* not'):
I shut the door quietly ***so as not to/in order not to wake*** the baby.

4 We use the *to*-infinitive after many verbs like appear, arrange, hope, 'd like, and want
*He **told me to phone** home. I **hope to see** you soon. I **want to travel** abroad.*
Note the difference in meaning between these negatives:
*He **didn't tell me** to phone home. He **told me not to phone** home.*

Write: Use to, so as to, in order to in these sentences. Alternatives are sometimes possible.

1 I went to town ....to do/in order to do/so as to do...... some shopping. (do)
2 He covered the floor with a sheet .... paint on it. (not splash)
3 I got out some more chairs for the other guests .... on. (sit)
4 Can you arrange for me .... the doctor tomorrow? (see)
5 We came home .... the house had been burgled. (find)
6 She left home .... (never return)
7 I'd like .... to the States for a holiday one year. (go)
8 We would like .... at your party. (have been)
9 Mr Smith wants .... you later. (see)
10 He appears .... all about our arrangement. (have forgotten)
11 The keeper told us .... the monkeys. (not feed)
12 She told us to feed the hens. She .... the horses. (not tell us/feed)

16.2D Context

Write: Put in the correct forms of the infinitive or *-ing.*

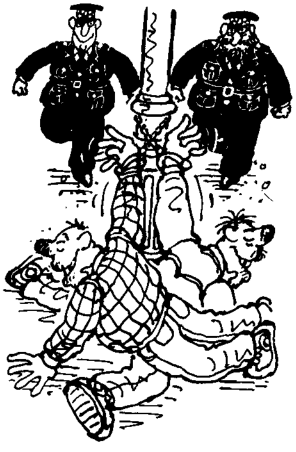

Go **left!** *Go* right!

THIS WAY! THAT WAY!
In a split second, when no one was paying attention, the two prisoners escaped from the back of the police van. They were handcuffed to each other. It was minutes before a policeman saw them (run) ^{1}..... ...... down the street. 'We'll follow,' two policemen said. 'Have the driver (bring) ^{2}............................ the van to the end of the road. Tell him (not let) ^{3}............................ them get away. If we're not careful, we'll have the whole neighbourhood (complain) ^{4}............................ that we've been careless.' The prisoners were still running side by side. The policemen saw them (race) ^{5}............................ up the hill and (disappear) ^{6}............................ round a corner. 'We'll never catch them now!' one of them said. 'I told you (not leave) ^{7}............................ them unattended.' The prisoners were running at top speed. Suddenly, they saw a lamp post in front of them 'Go left! Go right' they each shouted at the same time. They ran on either side of the lamp post. It just took time for the police (find) ^{8}............................ them, lying on the pavement, unhurt, dazed, and with silly grins on their faces.

16.3 Verb (+ noun/pronoun) + *to*-infinitive

16.3A 'He can't afford to buy it' [> LEG 16.19, App 46]

Study: ★★

Some verbs are followed only by a to-infinitive, not by *-ing* or that ...:
e.g. *can('t)* afford, aim, apply, fail, hasten, hurry, manage, offer, prepare, refuse, seek:
He can't afford to buy a car. (Not **He* can't afford *buying/He* can't afford that ...*).

Write: Rewrite these sentences to begin with the words in italics.

1 He'd like to buy a car. He can't afford it. ......He can't afford to buy a car......
2 I didn't pass my driving test. I failed. ......
3 He'll pay for all of us. He's offering. ......
4 Can you move the desk on your own? Can you manage ......?
5 He wants to join the army. He's just applied. ......
6 Apologize to her? I refuse. ......

16.3B 'I want (you) to speak to him' [> LEG 16.20, App 46.1]

Study: ★★

We use a to-infinitive after these verbs:
ask, beg, choose, expect, hate, help [> 16.1C], like, love, need, prefer, want, wish:
I want to speak to the manager. (= I will speak to the manager)
Or we can use a noun or pronoun before the infinitive:
I want you to speak *to the manager.* (= You will speak ...) Not (**I want that you ...**)

Write: Complete these sentences so that they refer to other people.

1 I don't want to speak to the manager. I want ...you to speak to him......
2 She doesn't expect to pay. She expects ......
3 I don't want to write to them. I'd like ......
4 I don't want anyone to know about it. I'd hate ......
5 You won't listen to me. How many times do I have to ask ......?
6 I can't do the job myself. I need ......
7 We can't move it. Perhaps you can help ...... [> 16.1C]

16.3C 'He advised me to take out a loan' [> LEG 16.21]

Study: ★★

These verbs always have an object before the *to*-infinitive:
advise, allow, entitle, forbid, invite, order, remind, (it) takes, teach, tell, warn:
My bank manager ***advised me to take*** *out a loan.* [compare > 15.5A]

Write: Complete these sentences using an object + to-infinitive after the verbs.

1 Take out a loan. My bank manager advised ......me to take out a loan......
2 She didn't peel the potatoes. You didn't tell ......
3 We work hard. Our teacher taught ......
4 The soldiers fired. The officer ordered ......
5 You can apply for free travel. This certificate entitles ......
6 The public should not approach this man. The police have warned ......
7 My wife and I play tennis. My boss invited ......

16.3D 'I know him to be an honest man' [> LEG 16.22]

Study: ★★★

We can use that or a *to*-infinitive after these verbs to refer to people or things:
believe, consider, discover, find, imagine, know, prove, suppose, think, understand.
Instead of: ***People know (that) he is*** *an honest man.*
We can say: ***People know him to be*** *an honest man.*

Write: Rewrite these sentences using a *to*-infinitive instead of that.

1 People know that he is an honest man. People know him to be an honest man.
2 I imagine that he works very hard. ....
3 I believe that she is guilty. ....
4 I found that the job was too difficult. ....
5 We discovered the claim was false. ....
6 I know that she has an interest in the company. ....

16.3E 'I agreed to accept their offer' [> LEG 16.23]

Study: ★★

We can use that or a *to*-infinitive after these verbs:
agree, arrange, claim, choose, decide, expect, hope, pretend, promise, swear, threaten, wish.
Instead of: ***I agreed that I would accept*** *their offer.*
We can say: ***I agreed to accept*** *their offer.*

Write: Rewrite these sentences using a *to*-infinitive after the verbs.

1 I agreed that I would accept the offer. I agreed to accept the offer.
2 I hope that I will succeed. ....
3 I expect that I will hear from you ....
4 He claimed that he had met me. ....
5 I arranged that I should be there. ....
6 She pretended that she didn't know me. ....

16.3F Context

Write: Put in the correct forms of the verbs.

HOW TO GET RID OF RATS
When I was a young man, working in Malaya, my boss gave me a difficult job to do. The roof of his house had become infested with rats and he (want/I get rid *of*) ^{1}wanted me to get rid of them for him. I tried everything: rat poison, cats, even a mongoose, but I (*fail/move*) ^{2}............................ them. Then a friend of mine (*advise/ I* use) ^{3}............................ a python. I (considered *this/be*) ^{4}............................ my last chance and (*agree/try*) ^{5}............................ it. My friend brought me a box in which he had trapped a young python, about six feet long. We (*manage/get*) ^{6}............................ the box into the roof and then released the python. The effect was amazing! The rats disappeared in no time! It (*prove/be*) ^{7}............................ a wonderful solution. But then we didn't know (*what/do*) ^{8}............................ with the python. I couldn't (*bear/shoot*) ^{9}............................ this superb creature. It (*take/six* of us an hour/ get) ^{10}............................ it into the box and then we returned it to the jungle.

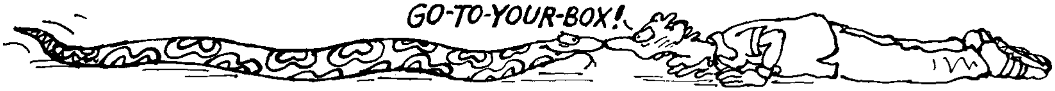
GO-TO-YOUR-BOX!

.. didn't know what to do with the python

16.4 Adjectives and nouns + to-infinitive

16.4A Adjective + 'to': 'It was kind (of him) to help us' [> LEG 16.26-31, App 44]

Study:
★★

We can use a to-infinitive after adjectives in a variety of ways, for example:

1 We use a personal subject *(he, she,* etc.), or we use *it* with adjectives like these:
clever, foolish, generous, good, polite, right/wrong, rude, selfish, silly, wicked.
Instead of: ***He was kind*** *(enough)* ***to help*** *us.* ***She was silly not to buy*** *it.*
We can say: ***It was kind*** *(of him)* ***to help*** *us.* ***It was silly*** *(of her]* ***not to buy*** *it.*
We can also say: ***He was so good/kind*** (etc.) ***as to help*** *us.*

2 We use only a personal subject *(he, she, it* or name) with these adjectives:
afraid, anxious, ashamed, careful, curious, eager, fit, free, frightened, glad, keen, sorry:
John is eager to please. (Not '*It is eager to*') ***I'm sorry to have troubled*** *you.*

3 We use a personal subject or *it,* but not *of him,* etc. (> 1 above) with these adjectives:
agreeable, amusing, boring, difficult, easy, hard, impossible:
John is easy to please. It is easy to please John.

Write: Rewrite the sentence or join the pairs of sentences beginning with the word(s) given.

1 He was foolish. He left the firm.
He was foolish to leave the firm.
2 You want to ask for more money. You would be stupid if you don't.
You would be ....
3 Ring me later. Would you be so good?
Would you .... ?
4 Open the window. Would you be good enough?
Would you .... ?
5 He worked out the answer. It was clever of him.
It was ....
6 They don't take any part in local life. It's silly of them.
It's ....
7 We can't refuse their invitation. It would look rude.
It would ....
8 She worked overtime. Wasn't it good of her?
Wasn't it .... ?
9 He's eager. He wants to help us in any way he can.
He's ....
10 I was careful. I didn't offend them.
I was ....

16.4B Adjectives with 'too/enough': 'too weak/not strong enough to' [> LEG 16.32]

Study:
★★

1 *Too* before an adjective means 'excessively' [> 7.6A, 7.7B]:
He ***isn't strong.*** *He* ***can't lift*** *it.* → *He* ***is too weak to lift*** *it.* (Not '*very weak to*')

2 *Enough* after an adjective means 'to the necessary degree'. It combines two ideas:
He ***is strong.*** *He* ***can lift*** *it.* → *He's* ***strong enough to lift*** *it.*
He ***is weak.*** *He* ***can't lift*** *it.* → *He* ***isn't strong enough to lift*** *it.*

Write: Join these pairs of sentences twice: **a** with enough **b** with too.

1 I'm not strong. I can't lift it. a I'm not strong enough to lift it. b I'm too weak to lift it.
2 I'm not rich. I can't afford one. a .... b ....
3 She's not old. She can't drive a car. a .... b ....
4 I wasn't interested. I didn't watch the film. a .... b ....
5 The pie is very hot. I can't eat it. a .... b ....
6 The film was boring. I didn't watch it. a .... b ....

16.4C Noun + *to*-infinitive: 'My decision to wait was wise' [> LEG 16.33-37]

Study: ★★

1 Some nouns are related to verbs which are followed by a *to*-infinitive.
They may have a different form from the verb: *I* ***decide*** to → it's my ***decision*** to;
or they may have the same form as the verb: *I* ***wish*** to → it's my ***wish*** to.

2 Some nouns are related to adjectives which are followed by a *to*-infinitive.
They usually have a different form from the adjective:
I am ***determined*** to → my ***determination*** to; *I* am ***eager*** to → my ***eagerness*** to.

Write: Rewrite these sentences beginning with a noun phrase.

1 I decided to wait, which was wise. My decision to wait was wise.
2 He refused to help, which surprised us. His ....
3 She failed to get into college, which disappointed her parents. Her ....
4 I'm pleased to be with you. It's a ....
5 They were eager to help, which pleased me. Their ....
6 I was determined to pass the test and that helped me. My ....
7 I was willing to co-operate and this was appreciated. My ....

16.4D Context

Write: Supply the correct *to*-infinitive combinations.

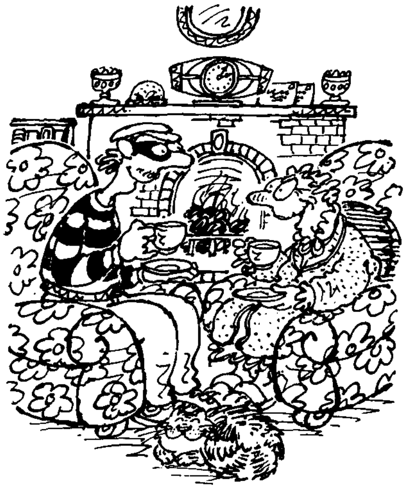

A most incompetent burglar!

THE BRAVE OLD LADY AND THE HOPELESS CROOK

Mrs Johns, a 75-year-old widow, woke up with a start. Peering into the darkness, she was astonished (see) [1]....to see...... a man in her room. It was easy (see) [2]........................ he was a burglar. At first, she was too afraid (move) [3]........................ . Then she plucked up her courage and said, 'We must talk about this over a cup of tea. Would you be so kind (help me) [4]........................ downstairs?' To her surprise, the man meekly obeyed. He was eager (help) [5]........................ and anxious (please) .... the old lady. He prepared the tea and said he was sorry (have disturbed) [7]........................ her. He was too frightened (*run* away) .... After a cup of tea, he said he would be glad (give) .... Mrs Johns his name and address and left empty-handed. Of course, Mrs Johns informed the police, who commended her for her bravery. Later, during the trial, the judge said it was his duty (send) [10]........................ the man to prison, describing him as the most incompetent burglar he had ever met!

16.5 The '-ing' form

16.5A Basic information about the '-ing' form [> LEG 16.38-40, 2.16.5]

Study:
★★

We use the *-ing* form in three ways:

1 We use it as a *verb* (called a **participle):** *He is **playing.** She is **writing.*** etc. [> **9.28,** 9.4B]
***Walking** in the park yesterday, I saw a bird **building** a nest.* [> 1.11-12]
(= I was walking. + The bird was building a nest.)

2 We use the *-ing* form as an *adjective:*
I need some {*hot* / ***boiling***} *water.* (= water which is hot) (= water which is boiling) [> 2.2A]

3 We use the *-ing* form as a noun (called a **gerund):**
I like {*coffee.* / ***swimming.*** (i.e. 'the act of swimming')}
With a few exceptions, we use the *-ing* form (gerund) like any other noun.

Write: Supply gerund forms for the words in brackets. (For spelling, [> 9.2A])

A1 The gerund as an uncountable noun in general statements [> 3.5A]

1 ....Dancing...................... is fun. (dance)
2 .... tall is an advantage. (be)
3 .... tall is an advantage. (not be)
4 What I like is .... (ride)
5 I enjoy .... (read)
6 .... makes me tired. (drive)
7 .... able to drive is a disadvantage. (not be)
8 .... keeps you fit. (run)
9 I like .... (cycle)
10 .... is a difficult profession. (act)

A2 The gerund as an uncountable noun with 'some', 'a lot of' 'a little', etc. [e.g. > 10.7A]

1 He does a lot of .... (read)
2 Did you do any ....? (iron)
3 I did some .... this morning. (shop)
4 I do very little .... these days. (swim)
5 There's no .... my decision (regret)
6 I heard a lot of .... last night. (shout)
7 There's more .... in the streets. (fight)
8 We all enjoy a bit of .... (sing)
9 We all need a little .... (encourage)
10 I've done enough .... for today. (garden)

A3 The gerund as an uncountable noun after prepositions [> 16.7D]

1 This is used for .....cutting....... metal. (cut)
2 What can you do besides ....? (dig)
3 I'm against .... (box)
4 I'm always hungry after .... (sleep)
5 Try to work without .... a noise. (make)
6 What do you know about ....? (compute)
7 I'm not interested in .... (garden)
8 She's above .... (argue)
9 Since .... I've done nothing. (retire)
10 Taste it before .... (complain)

A4 The gerund as an uncountable noun after adjectives and possessives [compare >16.6C-D]

1 Quick .... saved us. (think)
2 Her quick .... saved us. (think)
3 Your .... to help hurt him. (refuse)
4 His .... doesn't matter. (not know)
5 I like your .... (violin play)
6 The meat will be fine with slow .... (cook)
7 We had some tough .... (train)
8 His .... woke us up. (shout)
9 Their .... delighted everyone. (sing)
10 Try deep .... (breathe)

A5 The gerund as an uncountable noun after 'no' in prohibitions [compare > **11.381**

1 No ..parking... (park)
2 No .... (camp)
3 No .... (wait)
4 No .... (smoke)
5 No .... (trespass)
6 No .... (fish)

A6 The gerund as a countable noun in the singular and plural

1 He owns ..a painting.. by Hockney. (paint)
2 He owns several .... by Hockney. (paint)
3 .... is priceless.(Leonardo drawing)
4 Are there many ....? (Leonardo drawing)
5 I have .... of Tosca. (new recording)
6 There was .... on the door. (banging)
7 There was .... of bells. (ringing)
8 I have three .... of this. (recording)
9 There's .... on the left. (turning)
10 There are three .... to the right. (turning)

A7 The gerund after 'the', 'this' and 'these'

1 Who does the cooking in this house? (cook)
2 Have you done the ....? (shop)
3 The .... of rubbish is forbidden. (burn)
4 This .... is hard to read. (write)
5 These .... are expensive. (draw)
6 I've taken the wrong .... (turn)
7 The .... of wine is difficult. (make)
8 Have you heard this .... of Bach? (record)
9 The .... of Picasso are wonderful. (paint)
10 These .... are valuable. (record)

A8 The gerund followed by an object

1 He's good at .... bikes. (repair)
2 .... fruit is good for you. (eat)
3 .... a car costs money. (run)
4 I hate .... the washing-up. (do)
5 He enjoys .... orders. (give)
6 .... holes is hard work. (dig)
7 Do you mind .... places? (change)
8 .... beds is boring. (make)
9 What do you know about .... maps? (make)
10 You should avoid .... rules. (make)

A9 Perfect gerund forms, active [> 16.6A]

1 I'm sorry for ....having disturbed........ you. (have disturb)
2 I didn't take it. I deny .... it. (have take)
3 I'm annoyed about .... all that money. (have lose)
4 I appreciate .... me (your have help)
5 I enjoy .... with you. (have work)

A10 Perfect gerund forms, passive [> 16.6A]

1 That explains his having been fired from his job. (his have fire)
2 I don't mind .... above me. (his have promote)
3 I resent .... (have dismissed)
4 He's surprised at .... (have find out)
5 She's angry at .... abroad. (have post)

16.5B Context

Write: Put in the correct forms.

IT TAKES YOUR BREATH AWAY!

The art of (cook) ^{1}.... .... requires the use of garlic. Of course, the (eat) ^{2}....................... of garlic is not generally approved of. (Work) ^{3}....................... beside someone who has eaten garlic is as bad as (sit) ^{4}....................... beside someone who smokes. But while (smoke) ^{5}....................... is definitely bad for you, there is no doubt that (eat) ^{6}....................... garlic is good for the health. We are likely to see more 'No (smoke)' ^{7}....................... signs, but we won't see any 'No (breathe)' .... signs for garlic eaters! (Cultivate) ^{9}....................... and (export) ^{10}....................... garlic has become big business now that so many people use it for (flavour) ^{11}....................... meat and (add) ^{12}....................... to different dishes. People often buy it when they do the (shop) ^{13}....................... . You don't have to deny (use) ^{14}....................... it or (*have/eat*) ^{15}....................... it. (Be) ^{16}....................... a garlic eater is something to be proud of and shows you enjoy good (live) ^{17}....................... . The story of garlic is a breathtaking success!

A breathtaking success!

16.6 Verb + the '-ing' form

16.6A 'I deny taking it' [> 16.41-44]

Study: ★★

1 Some verbs are followed only by the *-ing* form, not by a to-infinitive: e.g.
admit, appreciate, avoid, consider, delay, deny, detest, dislike, enjoy, explain, fancy, feel like, finish, forgive, can't help, imagine, it involves, keep, mention, mind, miss, pardon, postpone, practise, prevent, recall, resent, resist, risk, stop [> 16.8C] *suggest, understand.*

	verb + present '-ing' form	verb + perfect/past '-ing' form
active:	*I **deny/denied taking** it.*	*I **deny/denied having taken** it.*
passive:	*He **resents/resented being accused.***	*He **resents/resented having been accused.***

2 After the verbs *come* and *go,* we often use the *-ing* form relating to outdoor activies: e.g.
climbing, driving, fishing, riding, sailing, shopping, skiing, walking, water-skiing:
*Why don't you **come sailing** with us? Let's **go sailing!*** (Not **to sail/for sail(ing)**)

3 The *-ing* form can follow *need* and *want:*
*He **needs encouraging**. It **wants mending**.*

Write: Supply any suitable verb in a suitable form.

1 Our neighbours are very considerate. They avoid .....making..... a lot of noise.
2 Just imagine .... in a country where it is always warm and sunny!
3 The police questioned me at some length and I didn't enjoy ....
4 What does the job involve? – It involves .... the engine apart.
5 I missed an interesting programme on TV last night. I really mind .... it.
6 We often go .... during the weekend. Would you like to come .... with us?
7 Look at the state of those windows! They really need ....!
8 Our front gate is falling to pieces. It really wants ....

16.6B 'Start him working' [>LEG 16.41-44]

Study: ★★

1 These verbs are followed by *-ing* [but compare > 16.2A]: *hear, keep, smell, start, stop, watch:*
*When are you going to **start working?***
But if we want to refer to someone else, we use a direct object after the verb:
*When are you going to **start him*** *(John,* etc.) ***working?***

2 These verbs always have a direct object: *catch, find, leave, notice, observe, perceive, see:*
*I'd better not **catch you doing** that again!*

Write: Match A and B.

A	B
1 It's difficult to keep them _f_	a) sheltering in the barn.
2 I think that's enough to start her __	b) coming from the forest.
3 I could smell smoke __	c) worrying again.
4 The police caught him __	d) opening the safe.
5 The searchers found the boy __	e) thinking about the problem.
6 They left us __	f) working all the time.
7 Will you please stop __	g) shouting in the distance.
8 I can hear someone __	h) changing TV channels.

16.6C 'We appreciate your helping us' [> LEG 16.45.2]

Study: ★★★

We can use a possessive *(my, John's)* + *-ing* after these verbs:
appreciate, avoid, consider, defer, delay, deny, enjoy, postpone, risk, suggest:
We ***appreciate your*** *(John's,* etc.) ***helping*** *us.* (Not *"We appreciate you helping"*)

Write: Match A and B.

A	B
1 We very much appreciate f	a) my leaving till the next day.
2 He strongly denied __	b) their meeting that afternoon.
3 We enjoyed __	c) her taking more responsibility.
4 The chairman suggested __	d) the band's playing very much.
5 I agreed to delay __	e) our postponing the question till later.
6 He should consider __	f) your helping us.

16.6D 'I can't imagine my mother('s) approving' [> LEG 16.45.3]

Study: ★★★

These verbs are followed by *-ing* on its own or by a direct object or possessive + *-ing*:
detest, dislike, escape, excuse, fancy, forgive, hate, imagine, it involves, like, love, mention, mind, miss, pardon, prevent, resent, resist, understand, can't bear, can't face, can't help:
a *I can't* ***imagine my mother approving!*** **c** *I can't* ***imagine my mother's approving!***
b *They* ***resented me winning*** *the prize.* **d** *They* ***resented my winning*** *the prize.*

Write: Complete the following using either a direct object or a possessive + *-ing*.

1 I can't excuse her not answering our invitation.
2 You must pardon ....
3 Would you mind ....?
4 I can't bear ....!
5 They can't prevent ....
6 Please forgive ....
7 I really miss ....
8 Fancy ....!

16.6E Context

Write: Put in the correct forms.

A FLYING START!
Gillian Forbes is only 17 and she has just got her pilot's licence. She is the country's youngest girl pilot. 'How do you feel, Gillian?' I asked her after her test. 'Wonderful!' Gillian cried. 'I enjoy *(fly)* .... more than anything in the world. I can't imagine *(let)*[2]........................ a week pass without spending some of my time in the air.' 'What started *(you/fly)* [3]........................?' I asked. 'I just love *(travel)*[4]........................ in planes. I started *(learn)*[5]........................ to fly when I was very young.' 'Would you consider *(fly)*[6]........................ as a career?' 'I might, but I've got to pass my school exams now. There are some things you can't avoid *(do)*[7]........................!' 'Excuse *(me?/my?/ask)* [8]........................,' I said, 'but does everyone in your family approve of *(you?/your?/fly)* ....?' 'Of course!,' Gillian exclaimed. 'I can't imagine *(anyone?/anyone's?/disapprove)* [10]........................ . Can you?' 'Of course not!' I said. 'What's your greatest ambition now?' 'I want to learn to drive a car!' Gillian said with a big smile.

I want to learn to drive a car!

16.7 Adjectives, nouns and prepositions + '-ing'

16.7A Adjectives + '-ing' form (gerund) or *to*-infinitive [> LEG 16.47, 4.12-13]

Study: ★★

We can use *-ing* or a *to*-infinitive after a great many adjectives and some nouns [> 4.3A]:
***To lie** in the sun/**Lying** in the sun is **pleasant**. → It's **pleasant to lie/lying** in the sun.*

Write: Use the to-infinitive and the *-ing* form in the following sentences.

1 It's difficult ......finding / to find.......... somewhere to live nowadays. (find)
2 It's awkward .... a friend that you don't like the way she dresses. (tell)
3 It isn't very nice .... you're useless. (be told)
4 It isn't easy .... work these days. (find)
5 It was kind of her .... you like that. (help)
6 It was fun .... to the north of Scotland. (drive)
7 It was just a piece of luck .... a restaurant open so late at night. (find)
8 It's a pleasure .... a surprise party for someone. (arrange)

16.7B Adjective + '-ing' form (participle) [> LEG 16.47]

Study: ★★

We use some adjectives with a personal subject (Not **it**) + *-ing*:
*I am **busy**. + I am **working**. → I am **busy working**.* (Not **to work**)

Write: Join the following sentences.

1 John gets bored. He watches TV all the time. John gets bored watching TV all the time.
2 Sylvia is frantic. She is getting ready for the wedding. ....
3 I got tired. I waited so long for an answer. ....
4 Jane's occupied. She's making lists. ....
5 We're busy. We're decorating our house. ....

16.7C Common expressions followed by '-ing' [> LEG 16.49]

Study: ★★

We use *-ing* after common expressions like ***It's no good*** and ***it's (not) worth:***
*It's **no good complaining** about it.*

Write: Join the following sentences starting with the words in italics.

1 Don't complain about it. ***It's no good.***...........It's no good complaining.................................
2 Don't worry about it. ***It's just not worth*** it. ....
3 Don't try to persuade him. ***There's no point in*** it. ....
4 Why apologize? ***What's the use of*** it? ....
5 I owe a lot of money. ***There's nothing worse than*** that. ....

16.7D Preposition + '-ing' [> LEG 16.50-54, Apps 27-30]

Study: ★★

We use *-ing* after prepositions, not a *to*-infinitive [> 16.5A3]:
*He left the restaurant **without paying**.* (Not **without to pay**)

Write: Complete these sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

D1 Preposition + '-ing'

1 He left without .... (pay)
2 Don't punish him for .... (shout)
3 Open it by .... (pull)
4 She succeed after .... again. (try)

D2 Adjective + preposition,+'-ing'

1 I'm interested in .... (act)
2 We're bored with .... cards. (play)
3 I'm sorry for .... (complain)
4 He's fond of .... (sail)
5 We're keen on .... (ride)
6 I was afraid of .... you. (disturb)
7 She's clever at .... (sew)
8 I'm worried about .... the train. (miss)
9 I'm surprised at .... you in. (find)
10 You're very slow at .... (understand)

D3 Verb + preposition + '-ing' [compare > 8.6B-D]

1 I advise you against ...doing......... that. (do)
2 She believes in .... hard. (work)
3 They accuse him of .... (steal)
4 Excuse me for .... you. (disturb)
5 I must congratulate you on .... (pass)
6 You can't blame me for .... (try)
7 They insisted on .... (enter)
8 I prevented them from .... (enter)
9 Thank you for .... (help)
10 I apologize for .... (interrupt)
11 Who'll compensate me for ....time? (lose)
12 They charged him with .... money. (steal)
13 We aim at .... in this business. (succeed)
14 I often dream about .... you again. (see)
15 Everything depends on .... it right. (get)
16 Begin by .... nicely. (ask)

16.7E The '-ing' form after 'to' as a preposition [> LEG 16.56]

Study: ★★

To is part of the infinitive in *I want **to go** home*, but it is a preposition in *object to, be used to*, etc. and we use a noun or *-ing* after it: *I object **to noise**, I object **to smoking***.

Write: Join the following sentences.

1 I do all my own shopping. I'm used to it. ...I'm used to doing all my own shopping........
2 I live on my own. I'm accustomed to it. ....
3 I don't like to be kept waiting. I object to it. ....
4 I'll see you soon. I look forward to it. ....
5 He writes begging letters. He's resorted to it. ....
6 I'm criticized. I'm resigned to it. ....

16.7F Context

Write: Put in the correct forms.

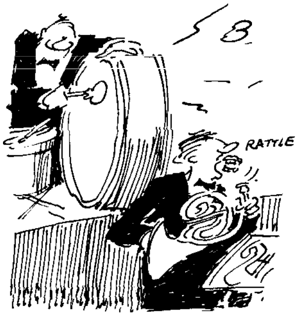

... a loud burst on the drums!

A CASE OF THE SHAKES!

It's hard (appreciate) ^{1}to appreciate some of the problems of (play) ^{2}........................ in an orchestra, especially if you're not a musician. While the orchestra is busy (play) ^{3}........................, all kinds of things are going on. Recently, my friend John, a horn player, told me about his experiences (play) ^{4}........................ with the Philharmonic. One day, without even (whisper)^{5}........................ a word, he got up in the middle of a performance of 'The Marriage of Figaro' and moved to another seat. After the performance, the drummer, who played behind him, insisted on (find) .... out why John had moved. John said that he didn't object to (sit) ^{7}........................ in front of the drummer: he was used to (sit) ^{8}........................ in this position, but often, after a loud burst on the drums, he couldn't prevent his teeth from (rattle)^{9}........................ and couldn't play the horn!

16.8 The *to*-infinitive or the '-ing' form?

16.8A Verb + *to*-infinitive or '-ing': no change in meaning: 'begin to read/reading [> LEG 16.57]

Study: ★★★

1 We can use a *to*-infinitive or the *-ing* form without a change in meaning after:
attempt, begin, can't bear, cease, commence, continue, intend, omit, start [> 16.6B]:
*I **can't bear to see/seeing** people suffering.*

2 We do not use the *-ing* form after the progressive forms of *begin, cease, continue, start*:
*I'm **beginning to realize** how difficult this is.* (Not '*I'm beginning realizing*')

3 Stative verbs like *know* and *understand* cannot be used with an *-ing* form after *begin, cease, continue*: *I **began to understand** the problem.* (Not '*began understanding*')

Write: Supply the correct forms. Give two forms where both are possible.

1 You must begin ...to work/working.... harder. (work)
2 I was beginning .... I was wrong. (think)
3 She continued .... all through the film. (talk)
4 I had just started .... when the waiter took my plate away! (eat)
5 We intended .... to the concert, but we were both ill. (go)
6 I'm intending .... him tomorrow. (see)
7 The conductor raised his baton and the orchestra commenced .... (play)
8 You omitted .... me about it. (tell)
9 I'll never begin .... how he thinks. (understand)

16.88 Verb + *to-* or '-ing': some changes in meaning: 'I love to read/reading [LEG > 16.581

Study: ★★★

We can use *to* or *-ing* after: *dread, hate, like, love* and *prefer.* Sometimes there is a difference in meaning and sometimes there isn't. Generally, the *-ing* form refers to a situation 'in general' and the *to*-infinitive refers to a future event:

1a *I **love/like watching** TV.* **1b** *I **love/like to watch** TV.* (same meaning)
2a *I **hate disturbing** you.* (in general) **2b** *I **hate to disturb** you.* (but I'm going to)
3a *I **dread visiting** the dentist.* (in general)
3b *I **dread to think** about what has happened.* (so I try not to) (Not '*I dread thinking*')
4a *I **prefer walking** to cycling.* (in general) **4b** *I **prefer to wait** here.* (now)
5a *I'd **love sailing** if I could afford it.* (in general)
5b *I'd **love to sail** if I could afford it.* (at some time in the future)

Write: Supply the correct forms. Give two forms where both are possible.

1 I love watching/to watch.. old films. (watch)
2 I hate .... for buses. (wait)
3 I hate .... you this, but your jacket's torn. (tell)
4 I dread .... for the telephone to ring. (wait)
5 I prefer .... at home to .... at restaurants. (eat, eat)
6 What will you have? – I'd prefer .... steak, please. (have)
7 Would you like .... to the beach with us tomorrow? (come)

16.8C Verb + *to*- or '-ing': different meanings: 'remember to post/posting

[> LEG 16.591

Study: ★★

The to-infinitive and *-ing* never mean the same when used after these verbs: remember, forget, regret, try, stop, go on.

1 To refers to the present or future and *-ing* refers to the past in:

Remember to post my letter.	**I *remember posting*** your letter.
You mustn't ***forget to*** ask.	Have you ***forgotten meeting*** me years ago?
I *regret to* say **I** feel ill.	**I *regret saying*** what **I** said.

We can also refer to the 'future seen from the past': **I *remembered to post*** your letter.

2 Try to (= make an effort):	***Try to*** understand.
Try + *-ing* (= experiment):	***Try holding*** your breath for more a minute.
3 Stop to (= infinitive of purpose [> 16.2C]):	We ***stopped to buy*** a paper.
Stop + *-ing* [> 16.6]:	***Stop shouting.***
4 Go on + to (= do something different):	We ***went on to*** discuss finance.
Go on + *-ing* (= continue [> 16.7D3]):	***Go on talking.***

Write: Supply the correct forms (*to*-infinitive or *-ing*) of the verbs in brackets.

1a I remember .... Paris when I was very young. (visit)
1b Please remember .... the door on your way out. (lock)
1c Did you remember .... Jim last night? (phone)
2a I shall never forget .... taken to see the Moscow State Circus. (be)
2b Don't forget .... how many are coming on Saturday. (find out)
2c I forgot .... to the chemist's on my way home. (go)
3a We all tried .... him, but he just wouldn't listen to any of us. (stop)
3b If you want to stop coughing, why don't you try .... some water? (drink)
4a She got annoyed because her husband stopped .... in every shop window. (look)
4b Just stop .... and listen for a moment. (talk)
5a If we hadn't turned the music off they'd have gone on .... till morning. (dance)
5b She got a degree in Physics and then went on .... a course in Applied Maths. (take)
6a I regret .... you that there's been an accident. (tell)
6b He regretted .... in the same job for so long. (stay)

16.8D Context

Write: Put in the correct forms.

BEWARE OF THE LETTERBOX

Letterbox Finger

SNAP!

Postmen have stopped (deliver) [1]....delivering... letters to the new houses in our area. They object to the letterboxes on the front doors. They hate (push) [2]............................ letters through them, because the letterboxes snap shut. If you try (push) [3]............................ a letter through, you can't get your fingers out! You try (push) [4]............................ a letter into one of these boxes and see what happens! You quickly regret (have) [5]............................ tried! They have been designed to stop burglars (open) [6]............................ your front door from the outside, but postmen dread (use) [7]............................ them as well. The painful condition known as Letterbox Finger is just as bad as Housemaid's Knee or Tennis Elbow!

Index

A

a/an: 3.1-2: general statements 3.1A; the 'plural' of *afan* 3.1B; with countable nouns: *he's a doctor, it's a Rembrandt* 2.3A, 3.1C; with uncountables used as countables: *a coffee,* etc. 2.3C-D; 'first mention' 3.2A; compared with *one,* with numbers, etc. 3.2B; *twice a day* 3.2C; illness *(a cold)* 3.2D; with abbreviations *(an M.A.)* 3.3B; *no* in place of *not afan* 5.3C; *at a party* 8.2A; *a painting* 16.5A6
abbreviations: *the BBC,* etc. 3.3B
able to: and *can/could* 11.2, 11.3D
about: preposition/particle 8.1A; and *on, around* 8.3A; *it's about time* 11.7D; *How/What about ...?* 13.7E; + *-ing* 16.5A3, 16.7D3
about to: *be about to* 9.9B-C
above: preposition/particle 8.1A; and *over, on top of* 8.5A; + *-ing* 16.5A3
abstract nouns: 3.5A
according to: and *by* 8.3A
accustomed to: + *-ing* 16.7E
across: preposition/particle 8.1A; and *over, through* 8.3A
active voice: 12.1A; compared with the passive and causative 12.3B; *sorry for having disturbed you* 16.5A9
adjectival clauses: see relative pronouns and clauses
adjectives: 6.1-5: formation 6.1A-C; position 6.2; *a young man* and *the young* 6.3A; *he looks good* 6.4A, 10.4A-B; word order 6.4B-D; comparison of adjectives 6.5A-B; *-ing* form *(boiling water)* 2.2A, 16.5A; *she's American* or *she's an American* 3.1C; *the large one(s)* 4.2B-C; *it's nice to see you* 4.3A; compared with *-ly* adverbs 7.1C; 'absolute adjectives' 7.5A; after *very* and *extremely,* etc. 7.6; after *be* 10.1-2; after *seem,* etc. 10.4A-B; after *get,* etc. 10.4C; *it's vital that ... should* 11.13C; *How* + adjective 13.7C; adjective + *to*-infinitive 16.4A-B, 16.7A; adjective + *-ing* 16.7A-B; adjective + preposition 16.7D; and see demonstrative adjectiveslpronouns, ***-ed/-ing*** forms, possessive adjectives, word formation
admit: *admit it to me* 1.3B; + *-ing* 16.6A
adverbial clauses: 1.8-10; introduction 1.8A; of time 1.8A-B; of place 1.8C; of manner 1.8D; of reason 1.9A; contrast 1.9B-C; of purpose 1.1OA-B; of result 1.10C; of comparison 1.10D; and participle constructions 1.11B
adverb particles: words used as prepositions or particles 8.1A-B; particular particles and prepositions 8.3-5; after verbs 8.7-8
adverbsladverbials: 7.1-8: of manner 7.1A-B; *friendly/in a friendly way* 7.1C; time 7.2; adverbial phrases of duration 7.3; frequency 7.4; degree 7.5; intensifiers 7.6; focus adverbs *(even,* etc.) 7.7; viewpoint *(naturally)* 7.8A; connecting *(however)* 7.8B; *little does he realize* 7.8C *he plays well* 6.4A; usual position in a sentence 1.1A, 7.2A, 7.4; with verb tenses: 9.2B, 9.3C, 9.4B, 9.5A-B, 9.6A-C, 9.7A-B, 9.8A-B; in indirect speech 15.3B
adverbs of degree: 7.5
adverbs of frequency: 7.4, 9.1B, 9.2B, 9.4B, 9.5A, 9.6A
adverbs of manner: 1.1A, 7.1
adverbs of place: 1.1A, 15.3B
adverbs of time: 1.1A, 7.2, 9.3C, 13.6A, 15.3B
advise: someone *about* 8.6C; + *that ... should* 11.13B; *someone (not) to* 15.5A, 16.3C; *advise against* 16.7D3
afraid: *I'm afraid so* 4.3C; *(very) much afraid* 7.6A; *seems to be afraid* 10.4B; *afraid to* 16.4A; *afraid of* + *-ing* 16.7D2
after: preposition/particle 8.1A; conjunction 8.1C; clauses of time: 1.5A, 1.8A-B, 9.6A; *after looking* 1.11B, 16.5A3, 16.7D; and *afterwards* 7.2C, 8.3A
again: connecting adverb 7.8B
against: preposition 8.1B; *fight against* 8.3A
ago: *ago, since* and *for* 7.3A; with simple past 9.3C, 9.5D; *How long ago?* 13.7D
agree: + *to/with* 8.6; *it is agreed* 12.2C; *agree to/that* 16.3E
agreement: see concord
all: 5.1A; and *both* 5.5; and *a/the whole* 5.6A; and *everyone/everybody, everything* 5.6B; *all day* 9.4B, 9.5B, 9.6B
allowed to: and *can/could/may/might* 11.3; *allow you to* 16.3C
almost: 7.4
along: preposition/particle 8.1A; *Come along* 8.8A
a lot (of): 2.4B, 5.1-2; and *much/many* 5.4A-B; *a lot better* 7.5D; *do a lot of reading* 16.5A2
already: and *yet* 7.2C; with the present perfect 9.5A; with the past perfect 9.6A
also: *not only ... but ... also* 1.4; and *as well* 7.7D
although: contrast clauses 1.9B
always: 7.4; with progressive tense 9.2B, 9.4B
among: preposition 8.1B; and *between* 8.4A
amount: *an amount of* 5.1A
and: in compound sentences 1.4; *go and* 9.10D; *and I can, too* 13.4A; *Fail to pay and ...* 14.1D
another 5.7A, *another of* 5.7C-D
answers: questions, answers, negatives 13.1-9; and see short answers
any: with countable and uncountable nouns 2.3C, 2.4B, 5.1-3; as the 'plural' of *afan* 3.1B, 5.3A; *not any* and *no* 5.3C, 13.2A; *I don't want any* 4.3B; *any of* 5.2A, 5.7C-D; *any good, any better* 7.5D; *do any reading?* 16.5A2
anybody/anyone/anything: 4.6B-C, 13.2A; *anyone* and *you* 4.2A; with imperatives 9.10B
any-compounds: 4.6B-C, 9.10B; 13.2A
any longer: and *any more* 11.11B
anywhere: conjunction, clauses of place 1.8C; and *nowhere* 13.2A
apostrophe ***s*** and ***s*** apostrophe: 2.2B, 2.8, 4.4B, 13.6C; *if I were in Jane's position* 14.2B; and see genitive
appear: 9.1C, 10.3C, 10.4A-B, 16.2C
aren't I: 10.1B
around: and *about* 8.3A
arrange: *arrange to* 16.2C; *arrange to/that* 16.3E
articles: 3.1-6; see ***a/an, the,*** zero
as: conjunction 8.1C; time 1.8A, 9.4B; manner 1.8D; reason 1.9A; contrast 1.9B; comparison 1.10D, 4.1B; preposition: 8.1C, and *like* 8.4A
as ... as: clauses of comparison: *as I am/as me* 1.1OD, 4.1B; *as (much) as you like* 5.4B
as if: clauses of manner 1.8A,D
ask: + *for* 8.6B; + *that ... should* 11.13B; in direct speech 15.1; and *say, tell* 15.2A-B; in indirect questions 1.5C, 15.4; *ask someone (not) to do something* 15.5A, 16.3B; suggestions 15.5B-C
as soon as: clauses of time 1.5A, 1.8A-B, 9.6A
assuming (that): 14.4C

as though: clauses of manner 1.8D
as well: *not only ... 1.4;* and *too* 7.7D
at: preposition *8.1* B; *at noon, at 10 o'clock* 3.6A, 7.2A, 8.2B; position: *at school 3.68, at home* 8.2A, 10.2C; *good at, throw at* 8.3A; *at the back of* 8.3A; + *-ing* 16.7D2; *at all 5.38*
attempt: + *to* or *-ing* 16.8A
auxiliary verbs: position of adverbs *7.28-C, 7.4,* 7.7D; and see **be, have, do, let** and *modal auxiliaries*
avoid: + *-ing* 16.6A,C
away: adverb particle *8.1* B, 8.7A-B; *far away* 8.3A; *Go away!* 8.8A

B

back: adverb particle *8.1* B; and *at the back of, behind* 8.3A
backward(s): adverb particle *8.1* B
bad: and *badly* 6.4A; *worse/worst* 6.5C
badly: and *bad* 6.4A; adverb *7.1* A,C; intensifier *(badly needed) 7.68*
bare infinitive: 16.1-*2;* and see *infinitive*
be: as auxiliary verb: e.g. 9.1C, *9.28, 9.48,* 10.1A; as linking (full) verb 1.2C, 6.4A, *10.1-2:* imperative 10.1A; *aren't I? 10.1* B, simple present and past 10.1C, progressive forms 10.2A, *has been/had been 10.28, have been* and *have gone* 10.2C, *have been* with *since/for* 10.2D; *there* + *be* 10.3; and *seem,* etc. *10.4;* to express certainty 10.4A, 11.1C, 11.4A-B, 11.5A; *I wish I were 11.78; I'd rather be* 11.8A; in questions, answers, negatives *13.1-9;* + *as if* 1.8D; *being 1.11A,* and *having been 1.12A; it being* and *there being 1*.12B; *go to a place/be at a place* 8.2A; and see **there**
bear: *can't bear* + *-ing* 16.6D; *to* or *-ing* 16.8A
because: clauses of reason 1.9A, 13.7A; and *because of* 8.3A
become: + *of* 8.6B; replaced by *be* 10.1A; and verbs meaning *become* 10.4C
bed: *to/in bed 3.68,* 8.2A
been: see **be** and **have been**
before: prepositionlparticle *8.1A;* conjunction *8.1C:* time 1.8A-B, 9.5A, 9.6A-B; *before* + *-ing 1.118,* 16.5A3; and *in front of* 8.3A
begin: + *with* 8.6B; + *by* 16.7D3; + *to/ -ing* 16.8A
be, have, do: *10.1-7*
behind: prepositionlparticle *8.1A;* and *at the back of/back* 8.3A
being: present participle, *1.11A; he's being greedy* 10.2A; use in the passive *12.1* B
believe: *I believe so* 4.3C; + *in* 8.6A, 16.7D3; the passive with verbs of saying and believing *(it is believed ...)* 12.2C; *have you believe 16.28; believe that/you to be* 16.3D
belong: + *to* 8.6B; as stative verb *9.1C*
below: prepositionlparticle *8.1A;* and *under* 8.5A
beneath: prepositionlparticle *8.1A,* 8.5A
beside: preposition *8.1* B; and *besides* 7.8B, 8.4A, 16.5A3
better/best: 6.5C; as adverb 7.1A; *much better* 7.5D, *very much better, the very best* 7.6A; and see ***had better***
be to/be about to/be due to: *9.98-C*
between: prepositionlparticle *8.1A; between ourselves* 4.5C; *between you and me 8.1D;* and *among* 8.4A
beyond: prepositionlparticle 8.1A
bit: *a bit (of)* 2.4C, 5.1A, *5.2*
blame: + *myself* 4.5A; someone *for* 8.6C, 16.7D3
bored: and *boring 6.38;* 16.4A-B, *16.78; bored with* + *-ing* 16.7D2
both: 5.1A; and *a115.5*
breakfast: *have breakfast* 3.6A
busy: + *-ing 16.78*
but: conjunction, in compound sentences *1.4;* preposition, *but (for)* 8.4A; *... but I can't* 13.4A
buy: + *me/for me* 1.3A,C
by: prepositionlparticle *8.1A; by the time (that), by this time* clauses of time 1.8A-B, 9.6A, 9.8A-B; *by day* 3.6A; *by himself* 4.5C; and *till/until* 7.3B; and *according to* 8.3A; and *near, on* 8.4A; and *past* 8.4A; and *with, without* 8.4A; with the passive *12.28;* + *-ing* 16.7D1

C

can/could: two basic uses of modal verbs *11.1*; ability *11.2;* permission and prohibition *11.3,* 11.10A; certainty and possibility *11.4; must be/have been* and *can't be/have been* (deduction) *11.5;* requests *11.68; could* after *I wish* and *if only* 11.7C; *if you could (have)* 14.2A, 14.3A; in indirect speech *15.3-6*
capital letters: to begin sentences 1.1B; proper nouns *2.58-C, 3.1C, 3.48,* 3.5A
case: see *genitive;* and see **in case**
catch: *catch you doing 16.68*
causative: have/get something done 12.3; compare *16.28*
cease: + *to* or *-ing* 16.8A
church: *to/at/in church 3.68,* 8.2A
cinema: *the cinema* 3.4A, 8.2A; *the Globe* 3.6C
clauses: in compound sentences *1.4;* subordinate and main clause *1.5-12;* noun clauses *1.58-C;* relative clauses 1.6-7; adverbial clauses 1.8-1*0;* and participle constructions *1.11*-*12*
clothes: 2.6C
clothing: 2.4A-B
collective nouns: committee, majority, people 2.6A
colour adjectives: red is my favourite 3.5A; *the red one(s)* 4.2C and word order 6.4D
come: + *across, by* 8.6D; + *off* 8.8B *come and 9.10*D; *come true* 10.4C; *come dancing* 16.6A
comma: in direct speech *1.1* B, *15.1*; in compound sentences *1.4;* in non-defining clauses *1.78-C*
commands: see *imperatives*
commence: + *to* or *-ing* 16.8A
comparatives and superlatives: 6.5
comparison: adverbial clauses 1.10D
complements: 1.2C, 6.4A, *10.1-2, 10.4*
complex sentences: 1.5-12
compound adjectives: 6.1C
compound nouns: 2.2, 2.88; and order of adjectives 6.4C-D
compound sentences: 1.4
concord: with participles *1.12C; the government is/are* 2.6A; with *everyone ... they* 4.6C; after *none* 5.2A, 5.7C; of adjectives and nouns 6.2A
condition: *on (the) condition (that)* 14.4C
conditional sentences: 14.1-4: Type *1*: 14.1A; *if* + present + modal 14.1B; *if* + *should 14.1C;* imperative + *and/or 14.1D;* Type *2:* 14.2A; *if+ werelwas* 14.2B; *if* + past + modal 14.2C; Type *3:* 14.3A; *if* + *had been 14.38; if* + past perfect + modal 14.3C; mixed tenses 14.4A; *if notiunless 14.48;* words replacing *if* 14.4C
congratulate: someone *on* 16.7D3
conjunctions: in compound sentences *1.4;* in complex sentences 1.5-12; words that are prepositions or conjunctions *8.1C;* replacing *if* 14.4C; in indirect speech 15.3-6
connecting adverbs: however, etc. 7.8B
consider: *it is considered that* 12.2C; *consider thatihim to be* 16.3D; + *-ing* 16.6A,C
considering (that): contrast clauses *1.98*
continue: + *to* or *-ing* 16.8A

continuous tenses: see **present progressive, past progressive,** etc.
contrast: adverbial clauses 1.98-C
co-ordinating conjunctions: 1.4
could: see ***can/could***
countable and uncountable nouns: 2.3-4: how to tell the difference 2.3A; *an egg* and *egg* 2.38; *a coffee* and *coffee* 2.3C-D; *bread* and *a loaf* 2.4A; *information* 2.48; *a piece/loaf of bread* 2.4C; singular countables with ***a/an*** 3.1-2; singular or plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns with *the* 3.3-4, 3.5A; *Beans are good for you* 3.1A-B, 3.5A; *one(s)* used in place of countable nouns 4.28-C, 4.38; with quantifiers 5.1-7; *-ing* form nouns 16.5
countries: 3.6C, 4.1C
country: the country 3.4A
couple: a couple (of) 5.2A-B; *a couple more* 5.2C

D

dare: as semi-modal 11.1A; modal and full verb 11.12B-C
dates: 8.2B; *What date?* 13.5C
day: one day 3.28; *by day* 3.6A; *the next day/the other day* 5.7A; *the day before yesterday* 7.2A; *Which day?* 13.68; *that day* 15.38
days of the week: 7.2A, 8.2B
decide: it was decided that 12.2C; *decide to/that* 16.3E; *decide to/my decision to* 16.4C
defining/non-defining clauses: 1.78-C
definite article: see *the*
demonstrative adjectives/pronouns: 4.6; and see ***this/that/these/those***
deny: deny taking/having taken 16.6A,C
depend: + *on* 8.6B, 16.7D3
describe: describe it to me 1.38
dinner dinner is served 3.6A
directly: conjunction, clauses of time 1.8B
direct object: see **object**
direct speech: and indirect speech 15.1-6; punctuation of direct speech 1.1B, 15.1; interpreting direct speech 15.6
dislike: + *-ing* 16.6A,D
do: do it for me 1.3A; *as/than I do* 1.10D; + imperative 9.10A, 10.1A; as an auxiliary verb in questions, answers, negatives 13.1-9; as a full verb *(do the ironing)* 10.7, 16.5A7; *do* and *make* 10.78; *he may (do)* 11.48
double genitive: *a friend of mine* 4.48
double imperative: *(go and ...)* 9.10D
double negative: 13.2A

down: preposition/particle 8.1A, 8.7B; and *under* 8.4A; *Sit (down)!* 8.8A; *break down* 8.8B
downward(s): adverb particle 8.1B
dread: + *to* or *-ing* 16.8B
dress: + *(yourself)* 4.58
due to: and *owing to* 8.4A; *be due to* 9.98-C
during: preposition 8.1B; *during, in* and *for* 7.3C
dynamic verbs: 9.1C

E

each: 5.1A; and *every* 5.6C; + *(one) of* 5.7C-D
eager: + *that ... should* 11.13C; *eager to* 16.4A,C
early: position 6.28; as adverb 7.1A
easy: he's easy to please/it's easy to please him 16.4A; + *-ing* 16.7A
echo tags: *Is he?* etc. 13.3C; *Did you, or didn't you?* 13.98
-ed/-ing **forms:** *dancing-shoes* 2.2A; *excited/exciting* 6.3B; *quite amazing* 7.5A; *very interested, very much interested* 7.6A; *get bored* 4.5A, 10.4C; *too boring to/not interesting enough to* 16.48
either: *either ... or* in compound sentences 1.4; 5.1A; + singular noun 5.78; *either of* 5.78-D; focus adverb: *too* and *not either* compared 7.7C, 13.4A-B
elder, eldest: 6.5C
empty subject: 4.3A, 16.7A
English: English spoken 12.2A
enjoy: transitive verb: 1.2B, 4.3B, + *yourself* 4.5A, 9.10B; *quite enjoy* 7.5A; *much enjoy* 7.5D; + *-ing* 16.6A,C
enough: quantity 5.1, 16.5A2; degree 16.4B
essential: + *that ... should* 11.13C
even: focus adverb 7.7A
even if: contrast clauses 1.98; conditionals 14.4C
even though: contrast clauses 1.98
ever: hardly ever, not ... ever 7.4A-B, 9.5A, 9.6A; *Where ever?,* etc. (question) and *wherever,* etc. (conjunction) 1.8C, 13.9C
every: 5.1A; and *each* 5.6C; *every (single)* 5.7D
everybody/everyone: 4.6C; and *one* 4.2A; and *all* 5.6B; with imperatives 9.10B
everything: and *all* 5.68
everywhere: conjunction, clauses of place 1.8C

except: preposition 8.1B; *except (for)* and *but (for)* 8.4A
excited/exciting: 6.3B
exclamation mark: to end a sentence 1.18, 15.1
exclamations: as type of sentence 1.1B, in direct speech 15.1A
excuse: + *him/his -ing* 16.6D; *excuse me for* + *-ing* 16.7D3
expect: I expect so 4.3C; *expect (you) to* 16.38; *expect to/that* 16.3E
explain: explain it to me 1.3A, 8.6C; + *-ing* 16.6A
extremely: 7.68

F

fail: fail to 16.3A, *fail in* 8.6B; *failure to* 16.4C
fairly: 7.58-C
fancy: + *-ing* 16.6A,D
far: farther/further 6.5C; *far better, far prefer* 7.5D; *far away* 8.3A; *not far from* 8.4A; *How far?* 13.7C
fast: adjective/adverb 7.1A; *fast asleep* 7.68
feel: feel as if 1.8D; *feel well* 6.4A; *feel up to* 8.8D; 10.4A-B; *feel something happen/happening* 16.2A; *feel like* + *-ing* 16.6A
feminine: see **gender**
few/a *few:* 5.1, 5.4C; *a few more* 5.2C
fewer/the *fewest:* 5.1; *fewer* and *less* 5.4D
find: find it for me 1.3A,C; *find out* 8.7C; *find that/you to be* 16.3D; *find you doing* 16.68
fine: position 6.2B
finish: + *-ing* 16.6A
focus adverbs: 7.7
fond: fond of + *-ing* 16.7D2
foot/feet: 2.5C; *a six-foot hole* 6.1C
for: preposition 8.1B; *for, since* and *ago* 7.3A, 9.5A-B, 9.68, 10.2D; *for, in* and *during* 7.3C; *buy it for me* 1.3A; (= instead of/for the benefit of) 1.3C; conjunction (= because) in compound sentences 1.4A; *How long for?* 13.7D; *Who(m) ... for?* 13.58; *What (ever) for?* 13.5C, 13.9C; + *-ing* 16.5A3, 16.7D
forbid: 11.3, *forbid you to* 16.3C
forget: + *to* or *-ing* 16.8C
forgive: forgive someone for 8.6C; + *-ing* 16.6A,D
forward(s): adverb particle 8.1B; *look forward to* 8.8D, 16.7E
frankly: viewpoint adverb 7.8A
frequently: 7.4
friendly: 7.1C

from: preposition 8.1B; movement 8.2A; *away from* 8.3A; *made from* 8.5A
full: and *fully* 7.1B
full stop: to end a sentence 1.1B; with abbreviations *3.38;* in direct speech *1.18, 15.1*
further, furthest: 6.5C; see ***far***
future-in-the-past: 9.9C
future perfect simple/progressive: uses *9.80*
future progressive tense: uses, and simple future tense 9.8A; and present progressive *9.28,* 9.8A
future simple: see **simple future tense**

G

gender: *2.7;* grammatical gender 2.7A; *-ess, brother/sister* 2.7A; *neighbour 2.78;* relative pronouns 1.6A-B; and *the* 3.3A; *he/she* for animals, things, etc. *4.1C;* and adjectives 6.2A
generally: *7.4*
genitive: *of* and *'s 2.28, 2.88;* basic rules 2.8A; *'s/s'* with non-living things *(a month's salary)* 2.8C; *the butcher's,* etc. 2.8D, 3.4A; *a friend of mine/of my father's 4.48;* answering *Whose?* 13.6C; *appreciate John's helping us* 16.6C,D
geographical names: 3.6C; with prepositions 8.2A
gerund: *16.5-6;* and see ***-ing* form**
get: *get it for me* 1.3A; *get (yourself) dressed* 4.5B; *get wet 4.58,* 10.4C; *have got/have gotten* 10.5A; *get something done* (causative) 12.3C
give: + *me/to me* 1.3A; *give something away* 8.7A
glad: *glad to* 16.4A
go: *go to/be at* 8.2A; + preposition 8.6D; *go (away)* 8.8A; *go and buy* 9.10D; *have gone* and *have been* 10.2C; *go bad* 10.4C; *go sailing* 16.6A; *go on* + *to* or *-ing* 16.8C
***going* to-future:** uses 9.9A; *was going to* 9.9C
gold: and *golden* 2.2C
good: *a good deal of 5.1A; a good deal more/less* 5.2C; and *well* 6.4A, 6.5C; *better/best* 6.5C; *any good* 7.5D; *not very/too good* 7.6A; *good at* 8.3A; *good to/so good as to* 16.4A; *it's no good complaining* 16.7C
government: 2.6A; *the Government 3.48*
great: *a great deal of 5.1A*
grow: *grow old* 10.4C
guess: *I guess so* 4.3C; *guess at 8.68*

H

had better: 11.9A, *16.18;* + *not* 11.10A, *16.18*
hair: *2.48*
happen to be: 10.4A
hard: and *hardly,* adjective/adverb *7.1A-8,* 16.4A; and see ***hardly***
hardly: *hardly any* 5.1B, *5.38, hardly any more* 5.2C; and *hard* 7.1A-B; *hardly ever* 7.4A-B; *hardly* and *hardly ever* + inversion 7.8C; with *need* 11.12A; with *dare 11.128*
hate: *I hate him* 9.1B; *hate (you) to 16.38; hate him/his knowing* 16.6D; + *to* or *-ing* 16.8B
have: as auxiliary verb, e.g. *9.5-6;* as full verb, compared with *have got* (= possess) *10.5;* (= eat, enjoy, take, etc.) *10.6; have something done* (causative) *12.3;* in questions, etc. 13.1-9; *have the next patient come in* 16.2B
have been: 10.2B-D; and *have gone* 10.2C; after *would rather, would sooner* 11.8A
have to: *had to* and *must have been, didn't have to* and *mustn't have been* 11.5C; and *have got to, must 11.9; don't have to, mustn't* and *needn't 11.108; didn't have to, needn't have* and *didn't need to* 11.10C; in indirect speech *15.3-6*
having been: and *being* 1.12A
he: (and *him)* personal pronoun *4.1A-8. 2.78;* for animals *4.1C;* with *anyone/everyone* 4.6C
hear: stative verb *9.1C; I can hear 11.28; hear someone arrive/arriving* 16.2A, *16.68*
help: *Help yourself!* 9.10B; *help me (to) do 16.1C, 16.38; can't help* + *-ing* 16.6A
high: and *highly* 7.1A-B; *highly respected 7.68; it's (high) time 11.7*
home: *at home* 8.2A; *be/go home* 10.2C
hope: *I hope so* 4.3C, 9.1B; *it is hoped that* 12.2C; *hope to* 16.2A; *hope to/that* 16.3E
hospital: *to/in hospital 3.68,* 8.2A
how: question-word *13.78-E; How long? How long ago?* 7.3A, 10.2D, 13.7D; *How long?/What length?* 13.7C; *How often?* 7.4A; *How dare you! 11.12C;* conjunction (manner) 1.8D; *how to/should* in indirect speech 15.5C
however: conjunction + e.g. *much (however much,* contrast) *1.98;* connecting adverb *7.88, however* and *How ever?* 13.9C
hundred: *3.28, hundreds (more)* 5.2C

hurry: *Hurry up!* 8.8A; *hurry to* 16.3A
hyphens: *dancing-shoes* 2.2A; *a twenty-year-old man 6.1C*

I

I: personal pronoun *4.1A-8; as I am* 1.10D, 4.1B; and *we* with *shall* 9.7B, 11.1A; *aren't I?* 10.1B
if: 14.1-4; *if ... not* and *unless 14.48;* and see **conditional sentences**
if only: and *I wish, it's (high) time 11.7*
if, whether (or not): after reporting verbs 1.5C, 15.4A; *if/whether ... should 15.58*
ill: and *sick 6.28*
illnesses: 3.2D
imagine: *I imagine so* 4.3C; *imagine that/him to be* 16.3D; + *-ing* 16.6A,D
immediately: conjunction, clauses of time 1.8B; adverb *15.38*
imperatives: 1.2A, *9.10;* as type of sentence 1.1B, 15.1A; of *be* 10.1A; *Have a sandwich! 10.68; Have/Get that car repaired!* 12.3C; in conditional sentences 14.1D; in indirect speech 15.5A; *let* 16.1B
in: preposition/particle *8.1A,* 8.7B; position: *in Texas* 8.2A; *in March* 8.2B; *in, for* and *during* 7.3C; *in my eye* 8.5A; *in a blue suit* 8.5A
in case: clauses of purpose *1.108*
indefinite article: see ***a/an***
indefinite pronouns: *one* 4.2, 4.3B; *someone,* etc. *4.68-C*
indirect object: see **object**
indirect speech: *15.2-6; say, tell* and *ask* 15.2A-B; statements with reporting verb in the present 15.2C; indirect statements with tense changes 15.3A; pronoun and adverb changes *15.38;* indirect questions with tense changes *15.4;* uses of the *to*-infinitive in indirect speech *15.5;* interpreting direct speech *15.6*
infinitive: and the *-ing* form *16.1-8:* forms 16.1A; bare infinitive after *let,* etc. 16.1B; bare infinitive or *to* after *help, know 16.1C; see him come/coming* 16.2A; *have him come in 16.28;* purpose 1.10A, *so as (not) to,* etc. 16.2C; *can't afford to* 16.3A; *want to/want you to 16.38; tell him to* 16.3C; *know him to be* 16.3D; *agree to/that* 16.3E; *it's nice to see you* 4.3A, 16.4A, 16.7A; passive 12.1A; in indirect speech *15.5*
information: *2.48*
in front of: and *before* 8.3A
***-ing* form:** participle constructions *1.11-12;* gerund 2.1B; part of compound

***-ing* form** (continued)
  noun or adjective 2.2A, 16.5A; *it's nice seeing you* 4.3A; adding *-ing* to a verb 9.2A; *see him come/coming* 16.2A; *have them complaining* 16.28; uses of the gerund *(No Parking,* etc.) 16.5, 16.6A; *deny taking/having taken* 16.6A; *start (him) working* 16.68 *appreciate your helping* 16.6C; *excuse me/my asking* 16.6D; *it's pleasant lying in the sun* 16.7A; *busy working* 16.78; *no good complaining* 16.7C; preposition + *-ing* 16.7D-E; verb + *to* or *-ing?* 16.8; and see **infinitive, *-ed/ing* forms**
in order that: clauses of purpose 1.10A
in order to: 16.2C
inside: preposition/particle 8.1A
insist: + *on* 8.6B, 16.7D3; + *that ... should* 11.138; in indirect speech 15.6A
intend: + *to* or *-ing* 16.8A
intensifiers: 7.6
interested/interesting: 6.38; with *too/enough* 16.48; *interested in gardening* 16.5A3, 16.7D2
into: preposition 8.1B; movement 8.2A
intransitive verbs: 1.28; phrasal verbs 8.6-8; and the passive 12.1A
introduce: *introduce him to me* 1.38; + *(myself)* 4.5A
inversion: after negative adverbs *(never)* 7.8C; in questions 13.1-9
inverted commas: 1.1B, 15.1
invite: *invite you to* 16.3C
irregular comparison of adjectives: 6.5C
irregular plurals of nouns: 2.5C
irregular verbs: 9.38
isn't that so?: 13.3A
it: personal pronoun 4.1A; *give it to me/give me it* 1.3A; *it's obvious that* 1.58, 4.3A; *it being* 1.128; (= a boylgirl) 4.1A; *it's me* 4.1B; animals, etc. 4.1C; *it's hot* 4.3A; and *one (I'd like it/one)* 4.38; and *so* after *believe* 4.3C; *it is* and *there is* 10.3; *it's (high) time* 11.7D; *it is said that* 12.2C; *it's easy to/-ing* 16.4A, 16.7A
its: possessive 4.4A; replaced by *whose* 1.7A
it's: 10.1C
itself: 4.5A,C

J

joining words: see **conjunctions**
just: and *justly* 7.1B; adverb 7.2C, 7.7A, 9.5A; *just as* 9.48; *just about to* 9.98

K

keen: *keen to* 16.4A; *keen on* + *-ing* 16.7D2
keep: *keep it for me* 1.3C; + *-ing* 16.6A-B
kind: + *of you to* 16.4A, 16.7A; *What kind?* 13.5C
know: + *about* 8.6B; *know that* 1.58; *it is known that* 12.2C; *not know if/whether* 1.5C, 15.4A; *know him (to) be* 16.1C, 16.3D; *know about* 16.7D3; *begin to know* 16.8A

L

last: and *latest* 6.5C; and *lastly* 7.1A-B; *last night* 7.2A, 9.3C; *at last* 7.2C
late: position 6.28; comparison 6.5C; and *lately* 7.1A-8, 7.2C
latest: and *last* 6.5C
least: 5.1A; superlative 6.5C
leave: + *-ing* 16.68
less: 5.1A, *any less,* etc. 5.2C; and *fewer* 5.4D; comparative 6.5C
lesser: 6.5C
let: as auxiliary and full verb 11.6F, 16.18
like: transitive verb: *I like it* (Not **I like')* 1.28, 4.38; *I quite like* 7.5A; *I don't much like* 7.5D; as stative verb 9.1C; *Would you like?* 11.6; *would like to* 16.2C; *(would) like (you) to* 16.38; *like him/his* + *-ing* 16.6D; + *to* or *-ing* 16.8B; preposition: and *as* 8.4A
linking verbs: *be,* etc. 1.2C, 6.4A, 9.1C, 10.1-2, 10.4
little/a little: 5.1, 5.4C; *a little more/less* 5.2C; *less/least* 6.5C; and *small* 6.5C; *little does he realize* 7.8C; *do a little reading* 16.5A2
look: *he looks good* 1.2C, 6.4A, 10.4A-B; *look at, look after, look for* 8.6B; *look at him work/working* 16.2A
look forward to: 8.8D, 16.7E
lots (of): 5.1-2; and *much/many* 5.4A-B
love: as stative verb 9.1B-C; *I'd love to* 11.6C; *love (you) to* 16.38; *love him/his* + *-ing* 16.6D; + *to* or *-ing* 16.8B
luggage: 2.4A-B
lunch: *at lunch* 3.6A; *have lunch* 10.68
***-ly* adverbs:** 7.1; intensifiers *(extremely)* 7.68

M

main clause: 1.5A; **complex** sentences 1.5-12; in conditional sentences 14.1-4
majority: 2.6A; *the majority of* 5.1A, 5.2A
make: *make it for me* 1.3A; + *of, out of, from, with* 8.5A; and *become* 10.4C; *make* and *do* 10.78; *she made them work hard* 16.1B
manage to: and *can/could* 11.2; verb + *to* 16.3A
manner: adverbial 1.1A; adverbial clauses 1.8A,D; adverbs of manner 7.1
many: 5.1, 5.4B, *many more,* etc. 5.2C, *not many* 5.4A-B; *many/more most* 6.5C; *How many?* 2.3A, 13.78, 13.8A
masculine: see **gender**
matter: *no matter how,* etc. 1.9C
may/might: two basic uses of modal verbs 11.1; permission and prohibition 11.3; certainty and possibility 11.4; requests 11.68; the passive 12.1A; after *in order that, so that* 1.10A; compared with *seem* 10.4A; in indirect speech 15.3-6
me: object pronoun 4.1A-8; *give me* 1.3A; *as/than me* 1.10D, 4.1B; *between you and me* 8.1D
measures, etc.: 3.28-C, 6.1C; *What size?* 13.5C
might: see ***may/might***
mind: + *-ing* 16.6A,D; *Mind out!* 8.8B
mine/my: 4.4A-B
minority: *the minority of* 5.1A
miss: + *-ing* 16.6A,D
modal auxiliaries and related verbs: 11.1-13: the two uses of modal verbs 11.1; ability and inability 11.2; permission and prohibition 11.3, 11.10; certainty and possibility 11.4; deduction 11.5; offers, requests and suggestions 11.6; *I wish/if only/it's (high) time* 11.7; *would rather, would sooner* 11.8; 'it's advisable' 11.9; 'it isn't advisable' 11.10; habit 11.11; *need* and *dare* 11.12; *that ... should* 11.13B-C; *there might be* 11.13D; the passive 12.1A; in questions, answers, negatives 13.1-9; in conditional sentences 14.1B, 14.2C, 14.3C; in indirect speech 15.3-6; + bare infinitive 16.1
moment: *the moment,* conjunction, clauses of time 1.8B; *a moment ago* 9.3C
money: (noun) 2.48; *a/one dollar* 3.28-C
months of the year: 7.2A, 8.2B
more: quantifier 5.1A; *some more,* etc. 5.2C; comparatives 6.5
most: quantifier 5.1 A; superlatives 6.5
***Mr, Mrs, Dr,* etc.:** 3.58

much: quantifier *5.1,* 5.4B, *much less,* etc. 5.2C, *not much* 5.4A; *much/more/ most* 6.5C; *much better, much enjoy* 7.5D, *very much better* 7.6A; *How much?* 2.3A, 13.7B, 13.8A
much as: contrast clauses 1.9B
must: two basic uses of modal verbs *11.1*; *mustn't and can't* (prohibition) 11.3B, *11.10; must be/have been* and *can't be/have been* (deduction) *11.5; must be/have been* and *had to be* compared 11.5B-C; and *have (got) to 11.9; mustn't, needn't, don't have to, haven't got to* 11.10B; in indirect speech *15.3-6*
my: and *mine* 4.4A-B; *my own* 4.4C; and *the* 4.4D

N

names and titles: plurals 2.5B; with apostrophe *s* 2.8A; *a Rembrandt* 3.1C; academic titles 3.3B; *the Mr Jones* 3.4A, 3.5A; organizations, etc. 3.4B; titles: 3.5B; place names 3.6C; replaced by *the one/ones* 4.2B
nationality words: plurals 2.5C; *she's an American/American 3.1C*
near: prepositionlparticle *8.1A;* and *near/on* 8.4A; and *nearly 7.1A-B*
nearly: *nearly every* 5.6C; and *near 7.1A-B*
need/needn't: two basic uses of modal verbs *11.1*; *needn't, mustn't, don't have to, haven't got to* 11.10B; *needn't have, didn't have to* and *didn't need to* 11.10C; modal and full verb 11.12A; in indirect speech *15.3-6; need (you) to* 16.3B; *need mending* 16.6A
negative adverbs: 7.4A, 13.2A; + inversion 7.8C; with *need 11.12A*
negative questions: 13.2C, *10.1B*
negative statements: with *be, do,* etc. *13.1B;* and adverbs of frequency 7.4B; with 'negative adverbs' 7.8C, 13.2A; with *no* and *not any,* 4.6B, 5.3B-C; and tag questions *13.3*
neither: *neither ... nor* in compound sentences *1.4;* 5.1*A; neither of* as the negative of *both the* 5.5D; + singular noun 5.7B; *neither of* 5.7B-D; *Neither do I,* etc. 13.4A-B
never.. 7.4A; + inversion 7.8D; *never ... before* 9.5A, 9.6A; *never used to* 11.11A; compared with *not* 13.2A; *never to* 15.5A
news: 2.4B
next: *the next day* and *the other day* 5.7A; *next Monday* 7.2A, *9.1B*
night: *at night* 3.6A; *last night* 7.2A
no: quantifier *5.1, no more* 5.2C; and *not any* 5.3C, 13.2A; in *yes/no* short answers *13.1C; there's no regretting* 16.5A2; *No + ing* 16.5A5
nobody/no one/nothing: 4.6B-C, 13.2A; with imperatives *9.10*B
***no*-compounds:** 4.6B-C, 13.2A
no matter: conjunction + *how,* etc. 1.9C
non-definingldefining clauses: 1.7B-C
none: 4.3B, 5.1-2, 5.3C, 5.7C, 13.2A; *none of* as the negative of *all the* 5.5D
noon: *at noon* 3.6A, 7.2A, 8.2B
nor: *Nor do I,* etc. 13.4A-B; and see ***neither***
normally: *7.4*
not: *not only ... but* (compound sentences) *1.4; not so* (or *as*) *... as* (clauses of comparison) 1.10D; *not + -ing* 1.11A; *not me* 4.1B; *I believe not* 4.3C; *not much/many 5.1,* 5.4A-B; *not any, no* and *none* 5.3C; compared with *never* 13.2A; *not every* 5.6C; *not yet* 7.2B; *not ever* 7.4A; *not ... until* 7.3B, 9.8B *not very good* 7.6A; *not either* and *too* 7.7C; *I'd rather not* 11.8A; *Not Wednesday, Thursday* 13.2B; *Why (ever) not?* 13.7A, 13.9C; *... or not?* 13.9B; *not to* 15.5A, 16.1A, 16.2C; *let's not 16.1B;* and see **negative questions, negative statements**
nothing: 4.6B-C, 13.2A
noun clauses: derived from statements 1.5B; derived from questions 1.5C, *15.4, 15.58-C*
nouns: *2.1-*8; compared with verbs (*'export* and *ex'port*) *2.1C*; as modifiers *(a gold watch)* 2.2C, 6.4B-D; *she's an American* or *she's American* 3.1C; with *both* and *all* 5.5A; + *to*-infinitive 16.4C; + *-ing* 16.7A,C; and see **abstract nouns, collective nouns, compound nouns, countable and uncountable nouns, gender, genitive, number, proper nouns, word formation, *a/an, the,* zero article**
now: 7.2C, 15.3B
nowhere: 13.2A
number: *a number of* 5.2A
number (singular and plural): nouns without plural forms (uncountable) 2.3A, *2.5-6: box/boxes* 2.5A; *knife/ knives 2.58; photo/photos, foot/feet, sheep* 2.5C; *government, the public, people* 2.6A; *statistics* 2.6B; *trousers, clothes* 2.6C; *the Americans* 3.3C; plurals with apostrophe 2.8A; *beans are good for you 3.1A,* 3.5A
numbers: *a/an* and *one 3.1B; a/one hundred* 3.2B; quantity *5.1B; a twenty-year-old man 6.1C*

O

object: usual position in a sentence 1.1A; transitive and intransitive verbs 1.2B; compared with complement 1.2C; indirect and direct object *(show me that photo)* 1.3A; *tell me, say to me* 15.2A; direct object + *to (explain it to me)* 1.3B; pronouns *4.1*; *it* and *one* as objects 4.3B; object pronouns compared with reflexive 4.5A; of prepositions *8.1*; *between you and me* (Not **I*) *8.1*D; with phrasal verbs 8.6-*8;* and the passive 12.1A; asking for the object with *Who(m)?* 13.5B, 13.8A; *good at repairing bikes* 16.5A8; *start him working* 16.6B; *excuse me asking* 16.6D
object to: 8.6B, 16.7E
of: preposition *8.1B;* and *made of,* and *off, a man of 65* 8.5A; *the leg of the table/table leg* 2.2B, 2.8B; *a slice of bread* 2.4C; *of my own* 4.4C; after *some,* etc. 5.1A, 5.2A; after *both/all* 5.5C; after *each,* etc. 5.6C, 5.7C-D; *kind of you to* 16.4A; and see **genitive**
off: prepositionlparticle 8.1A; and *of* 8.5A
offers: with the imperative 9.10A, 9.10C; with modals 11.6A, 11.6E; in indirect speech 15.5B
often: *7.4,* 9.5A, 11.2D
old: *old friend/old man* 6.2B; *the old* 6.3A; *older, oldest* 6.5C; *too old to* 16.4B
omit: + *to* or *-ing* 16.8A
on: prepositionlparticle *8.1A; any money on you* 4.5C; *on a surface* 8.2A; *on Monday* 7.2A, 8.2B; and *about* 8.3A; and *by, near* 8.4A; *on your nose* 8.5A; *How on earth ...?* 13.9C
once: conjunction, time clauses 1.8A; adverb 7.2C
one: personal pronoun *4.1A;* compared with *a/an 3.1B,* 3.2B; *one day* 3.2B; and *you* (= anyone) 4.2A; *one/ones* in place of nouns 4.2B-C, 4.3B; *one's* (possessive) 4.4A; *oneself* 4.5A; *this one* and *the other one* 5.7A; after *each,* etc. 5.7D; not*'one speaks English'* 12.2A
only: *not only 1.4; only a few/a little* 5.4C; focus adverb 7.7A; *only after,* etc. + inversion 7.8C
onto: preposition *8.18*
on top of: and *above, over* 8.5A
opposite: prepositionlparticle *8.1A*
or: in compound sentences *1.4;* questions joined by *or* 13.9A-B; *... or not?* 13.9B; *Stop borrowing money, or ...!* 14.1D; and see ***either***

other: other, the other, the others, others 55.A
ought to: two basic uses of modal verbs 11.1; 'it's advisable' 11.9A; oughtn't to 11.10A,D; in indirect speech 15.3-6
out: adverb 8.1B, 8.78; and outside, out of 8.5A
out of: preposition 8.1B; movement 8.2A; made out of 8.5A; and outside, out 8.5A; and out of, out 8.5A
outside: preposition/particle 8.1A; and out of 8.5A
over: preposition/particle 8.1A; and across 8.3A; and up 8.4A; and above, on top of 8.5A
owing to: and due to 8.4A
own: my own *room/a* room of my own 4.4C

P

pair: a pair of trousers 2.6C
pardon: + *-ing* 16.6A,D
participle constructions: present: 1.11A, in place of adverbial clauses 1.118, in place of relative clauses 1.11C; being and having been 1.12A; it being and there being 1.128; agreement between participle and subject 1.12C; past constructions 1.12D; see someone coming 16.2A, 16.68, 16.6D
participles: used as adjectives (boiling water) 2.2A, 16.5A; *exciting/excited* 6.3B; past participles as adjectives 6.4C-D; busy working 16.78; not worth complaining 16.7C; and see ***-ed/-ing* forms**
particles: see **adverb particles**
partitives: a loaf of bread, etc. 2.4C
passive: 12.1-3: basic forms 12.1A; with the progressive 12.1B; uses 12.2A; with by + agent 12.28; it is said, etc. 12.2C; and the causative (have something done) 12.38; passive infinitive 16.1A; they were made to work 16.1B; *-ing* form passive 16.6A, 16.5A10
past: preposition/particle 8.1A; and by 8.4A
past participles: see **participle constructions, participles**
past perfect progressive tense: and present perfect progressive 9.68; and simple past perfect 9.6C; of be 10.2A
past perfect simple: see **simple past perfect tense**
past progressive tense: uses 9.48; and simple past 9.4C; of be 10.2A; and used to 11.118; the passive 12.18
people(s): 2.6A
permit: 11.38
person: (noun) 2.78; 1st/2nd/3rd 4.1A, 9.1A, 9.4A
personal pronouns: 4.1: subject and object 4.1A-B, 1.10D; and gender 2.7, 4.1C; after give, etc. 1.3; or reflexive pronouns 4.5C; with both and all 5.5C; between you and me (Not *I) 8.1D; There *is/It is/He* is 10.38; it is said *that/he* is said to be 12.2C; indirect speech 15.3B; he is easy to please 16.4A; start him working 16.6B; excuse me asking 16.6D
phrasal verbs: 8.6-8; and see **verbs**
piece: a piece of 2.4C
place: adverbial 1.1A; adverbial clauses 1.8A,C
place names: with zero article 3.5A, 3.6C; with prepositions 8.2A
plenty (of): 5.1-2
plural (of nouns): 2.5-6; and see **number**
point: there's no point in trying 16.7C
points of time: today, etc. 3.6A, 7.2A, 8.28; in indirect speech 15.38
police: the police 2.6A, 3.4B
possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns: replaced by whose 1.7A; 4.4; his (not) knowing 16.5A4; excuse my asking 16.6C-D
possessive case: see **genitive**
possibly: in polite requests 11.3A
prefec stative verb 9.1C; I much prefer 7.5D; prefer (you) to 16.38; + to or *-ing* 16.88
prefixes: adjectives 6.1B
preparatory subject: 4.3A, 1.58, 16.4A, 16.7A-C
prepare: prepare to 16.3A
prepositions: in relative clauses 1.6C, 1.7A; + object or reflexive pronouns 4.5C; words used as prepositions or adverb particles 8.1A-B, as prepositions or conjunctions 8.1C; movement and position 8.2A; time 8.28; particular prepositions, 8.3-5; after verbs 8.6A-D, 8.7A, 8.8D; after question-words (Who for?) 13.5B-C, 13.9C, 13.7A; + *-ing* 16.5A3, 16.7D-E
prepositions, adverb particles and phrasal verbs: 8.1-8
present participles: see **participle constructions, participles**
present perfect progressive tense: uses 9.58; and simple present perfect 9.5C; and past perfect progressive 9.68; and have been 10.2D
present perfect simple: see **simple present perfect tense**
present progressive tense: and simple present 9.1C, 9.2C; form 9.2A; uses 9.28-C; of be 10.2A; the passive 12.18
present simple tense: see **simple present tense**
pretend: + *to/that* 16.3E
prevent: + *-ing* 16.6A,D; prevent from 16.7D3
process verbs: become, etc. 10.4C
pronouns: 4.1-6; in indirect speech 15.3B; and see **demonstrative adjectives/pronouns, personal pronouns, possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns, reflexive pronouns, relative pronouns and clauses**
pronunciation: *-s/-es* plurals 2.5A, 3rd person simple present 9.1A; simple past (regular verbs, *-(e)d*) 9.3A
proper nouns: plurals 2.58-C; with apostrophe s 2.8A; with *a/an* (a *Rembrandt*) 3.1C; the Mr Jones 3.4A, Fritz Weber 3.5A; the Titanic 3.48; titles: Mr Pym, etc. 3.58; place names 3.6C; names replaced by the one/ones 4.28
propose: 11.13B
prove: prove it to me 1.38; prove that/him to be 16.3D
providing/provided (that): 14.4C
public: the public 2.6A
punctuation: sentences 1.1B; in compound sentences 1.4; in relative clauses 1.78; in direct speech 1.1B, 15.1; and see **comma, exclamation mark, full stop, question mark, quotation marks**
purpose: adverbial clauses 1.10A-B; toinfinitive 16.2C

Q

quantifiers: 5.1-7
question mark: to end a sentence 1.1B; in direct speech 1.1B, 15.1; indirect speech 1.5C, 15.4A
questions: as type of sentence 1.1B; *yes/no* questions 13.1A; *wh*-questions 13.5-9; and short answers 13.1C; questions joined by or 13.9A-B; in direct speech 1.1B, 15.1; in indirect speech 1.5C, 15.4, 15.58-C; and see **negative questions, question tags, subject-questions, *wh*-questions**
question tags: affirmativelnegative, etc. 13.3A-B; echo tags 13.3C; Did you, or didn't you? 13.98; after imperatives 9.10C; *aren't I?* 10.1B

question-word questions: 13.5-9; and noun clauses 1.5C; and see **_wh-_questions**
quite: 7.5A-C
quotation marks: 1.1B, 15.1

R

rarely: 7.8C, 13.2A
rather: 7.5C; and see ***would rather***
really: viewpoint adverb 7.8A; intensifer 7.68
reason: adverbial clauses 1.9A; with *for* 1.4
recently: 7.2C, 9.3C, 9.5A
recommend: + *that ... should* 11.138
reflexive pronouns: 4.5
refuse: *refuse to* 16.3A; *refusal to* 16.4C
regret: + *to* or *-ing* 16.8C
regular verbs: 9.3A
relative pronouns and clauses: 1.6-7; and participle constructions 1.11C
remember: *remember to* in indirect speech 15.5A; + *to* or *-ing* 16.8C
remind: *someone about something* 8.6C; *someone (not) to* 15.5A, 16.3C
report: *report it to me* 1.38; *it was reported* 12.2C
reported speech: 15.2-6; see **indirect speech**
reporting verbs: in direct and indirect speech 1.58-C, 15.1-6
requests: with modals: 11.3A, 11.6B,D; + *that ... should* 11.138; in indirect speech 15.5C
result: in adverbial clauses 1.10C; with so 1.4
risk: + *-ing* 16.6A,C
round: prepositionlparticle 8.1A

S

say: *say it to me* 1.38; *say so* 4.3C, 15.28; *it says here that* 9.1B; *it is said that* 12.2C; in direct speech 15.1; and *tell, ask* 1.58, 15.2, 15.3; *say if/whether* 15.4A
school: ***to/at*** *school* 3.68, 8.2A
sea: *the sea* 3.4A; *go to sea/be at sea* 3.68
seasons: 8.28
see: stative verb 9.1C; *I can see* 11.28; *see someone arrive/arriving* 16.2A, 16.68
seeing (that): clauses of reason 1.9A
seem: as linking verb 1.2C, 6.4A, 9.1C. 10.4A-B; + *as if* 1.8D; *it seems so* 4.3C; *there seems to be* 10.3C; *it would seem to be* 11.13A
seldom: 7.4A, 13.2A; + inversion 7.8C
sense verbs: 6.4A, 9.1C, 10.4A-B, 11.28, 16.2A
sentences: 1.1-12; word order 1.1A-8; forms of the sentence 1.1B; complete sentences 1.2A; see also **simple sentences, complex sentences, compound sentences**
sequence of tenses: reporting verb in the present 15.2C; reporting verb in the past 15.3-6; and see **conditional sentences**
several: 5.1A; *several more* 5.2C; + *times* 9.5A
sex: and grammatical gender 2.7A, 4.1
shall: modal auxiliary 9.7A; and *will* to form the future tense 9.78; two uses of modals 11.1; *Shall I?* (offers) 11.6E; *Shall we?* (suggestions) 11.6F; in indirect speech 15.3-6, 15.5B-C
shan't: and *won't* 9.78
she: (and *her*) personal pronoun 4.1A-B, 2.78; for animals, things, countries 4.1C
short: and *shortly* 7.1B
short answers: *the large one,* etc. 4.2C; with ***yes/no*** 13.1C; after tag questions 13.3; ***yes/no*** short answers with modals 11.48
should: two basic uses of modal verbs 11.1; 'it's advisable' 11.9A; *should have (done)* 11.9C; *shouldn't (have done)* 11.10A,D; *that ... should* 11.13B-C; *if you should* see *him* 14.1C; after *in case* 1.108; in indirect speech 15.3-6; 15.58-C
show: + *me/to me* 1.3A
sick: and *ill* 6.28
silly: *in a silly way* 7.1C; *don't be silly* 10.1A; *he's being silly* 10.2A; *silly to* 16.4A
simple future tense: 9.7; and future progressive 9.8A; and simple present 9.1B; and present progressive 9.28; and *going to* 9.9A
simple past perfect tense: uses 9.6A; and past perfect progressive 9.6C; of *be* 10.28; after *I wish/if only* 11.7; after *would rather* 11.88; the passive 12.1A; and the causative 12.3A
simple past tense: form and pronunciation of regular verbs 9.3A; with irregular verbs 9.38; uses 9.3C; and simple present 9.4A; and past progressive 9.4C; and present perfect 9.5D; *of be* 10.1C; after *I wish/if only* 11.7; after *would rather* 11.8B-C; and *used to* 11.11B-C; replaced by *would* 11.11D; passive 12.1A
simple present perfect tense: uses 9.5A; and progressive 9.5C; and simple past 9.5D; *have been* 10.28-D, *have gone* 10.2C; passive 12.1A
simple present tense: pronunciation and spelling (3rd person) 9.1A; uses 9.1B; and present progressive 9.1C, 9.2C; and simple past tense 9.4A; of be 10.1C; and *used to* 11.11A; replaced by *will* 11.11D; replaced by *would* 11.13A; after *suggest,* etc. 11.13B-C; passive 12.1A; after time conjunctions 1.8B; after *in case* 1.10 8
simple sentences: 1.1-3
simply: viewpoint adverb 7.7A
since: preposition 8.1B; conjunction 8.1C: clauses of time 1.5A, 1.8A, 9.5A-B, 10.2D; of reason 1.9A; *since arriving* 1.1B, 16.5A3; *since, for* and *ago* 7.3A
singular and plural (nouns): 2.5-6; see **number**
smell: stative/dynamic verb 9.1C; *smell nice* 6.4A, 10.4A-B; *smell something burning* 11.28, 16.2A, 16.6B
so: adverb: *not so ... as* 1.10D; *I believe so* 4.3C; *so far* 9.5A; *So do I* 13.4A-B; *So have you* and *So you have!* 13.4C; conjunction, in compound sentences 1.4
so as to: 16.2C; *so (kind) as to* 16.4A
so long as: 14.4C
some: with countable and uncountable nouns 2.3C, 2.48, 5.1-3; as the plural of *a/an* 3.1B, 5.3A; *I'd like some* 4.38; *some ... others* 5.7A; *some of* 5.2A, 5.7C-D; *do* some *reading* 16.5A2
somebody/someone/something: 4.68-C; with imperatives 9.10B; and passive 12.2A
some-compounds: 4.6B-C; with imperatives 9.10B
sometimes: 7.4
soon: 7.2C
sooner: see ***would rather, had better***
sorry: *sorry to* 16.4A; *sorry for* 16.7D2
so that: clauses of purpose 1.5A, 1.10A
so ... (that): clauses of result 1.10C; *so difficult was it* 7.8C
sound: *sound nice* 1.2C, 6.4A, 10.4A-B
spelling: nouns and verbs with the same spelling 2.1C; of nouns (plurals) 2.5-6; *-er/-est* to adjectives (comparison) 6.5; of adverbs of manner 7.1A; verbs (3rd person singular, simple present) 9.1A; how to add *-ing* to a verb 9.2A; regular past of verbs 9.3A
stand: *can't stand him/his* + *-ing* 16.6D; *won't stand for, stand over* 8.6D; *Stand up!* 8.8A
start: *start him working* 16.68; + *to* or *-ing* 16.8A
statements: as type of sentence 1.1B; and questions/negatives 13.1A-8; and

statements (continued)
tag questions 13.3A-B; and question-word questions 13.5A; and subject-questions 13.8; in direct speech 15.1; in indirect speech 15.2-6; see also negative statements
statistics: 2.68
stative and dynamic verbs: 9.1C
still: and yet 7.28, 9.5A
stop: stop (him) working 16.68; + to or -ing 16.8C
Street: Oxford Street 3.6C
subject: usual position in a sentence 1.1A-8; importance in a sentence 1.2A, 4.1A, 4.3A; of be, etc.1.2C; use and omission in compound sentences 1.4A; pronouns 4.1; it and one as subjects 4.3; active and passive voice 12.1A; questions asking for the subject 13.8
subject-questions: 13.8; in indirect speech 15.4C
subjunctive: were after I wish, if only 11.78; after suggest, etc. 11.13B-C; if + were 14.28
subordinate clauses: in complex sentences 1.5-12
succeed: + in 8.6A, 16.7D3
such: such ... that, clauses of result 1.10C
suddenly: 7.2C
suffixes: nouns 2.1A-B, 2.68, 3.3C; adjectives 6.1A; -(i)ly (adverbs) 7.1A
suggest: suggest it to me 1.38; + that ... should 11.138; + -ing 16.6A,C
suggestions: with modals 11.6C,F; in indirect speech 15.58; Why/Why not 13.7A; Let's 16.18
superlatives: 4.2C, 6.5
suppose: suppose so 4.3C; it is supposed that 12.2C; suppose that/him to be 16.3D; suppose/supposing (conjunction) in conditional sentences 14.4C
surprised at: 16.7D2

T

tag questions: She's late, isn't she? etc. 13.3; and see question tags
take: (it) takes (me) 10 minutes to 16.3C
taste: taste bad 1.2C, 6.4A, 10.4A-B; + of 8.6A
teach: teach you to 16.3C
tell: + me/to me 1.3A; + if/whether/when 1.5C, 15.4A-B; tell someone so 4.3C, 15.2B; tell me about 8.6C; and say, ask 1.5B, 15.2A-B; tell someone (not) to 15.5A, 16.2C, 16.3C
temporal conjunctions: 1.8A-B
tenses: see sequence of tenses and particular tenses: simple present, present progressive, etc.
terribly: 7.68
than: clauses of comparison: than I am/than me 1.10D; in comparatives 6.5; + -ing 16.7C
thank: thank you for + -ing 16.7D3
that: conjunction 1.5A-B, 4.3A, 15.2, 16.3D-E; that... should 11.13B-C; it is said that 12.2C; relative pronoun 1.6. 1.78; degree (that big) 4.6A; and see **in order that, so that, such that; this/that/these/those**
the: 3.3-4: basic uses 3.2A, 3.3A; with abbreviations (the BBC) 3.38; with nationality nouns 2.5C, 3.3C; the for specifying 3.4A, 3.5A (the cinema, the country, the sun);with unique items (the Titanic) 3.48; with some place names (the USA) 3.6C; a pain in the neck 4.4D; after a lot of 5.2A; the + adjective (the young) 6.3A; do the ironing, etc. 16.5A7
their/theirs: 4.4A
then: 1.4A, 7.2C, 15.38
there: there is, etc. 10.3: 'natural choice' 10.3A; and it is 10.38; there will be, etc. 10.3C; + modal auxiliaries (there might be, etc.) 11.13D; there is said to be 12.2C; there being 1.12B
they: personal pronoun 4.1A, 4.38; replacing everyone, etc. 4.6C
think: think that 1.58; think so 4.3C; think of 8.6B; stative verb 9.1C; Do you think I might? 11.3A; it is thought that 12.2C; in direct speech 15.1C; think that/him to be 16.3D
this/that/these/those: 4.6; + ones(s) 4.2C, 5.7A; that boy of yours 4.48; this morning 7.2A; these days 7.2C; at this time 8.2B
though: contrast clauses 1.98; though + -ing 1.11B
thousand: 3.28
through: preposition/particle 8.1A, 8.3A
till: see **until, till**
time: adverbial 1.1A; adverbial clauses 1.8A-B; time expressions 3.6A, 8.28; adverbs of time 7.2; all day, the whole night 5.6A; it's (high) time 11.7
tired: and tiring 6.38, 16.7B
to: preposition 8.1B; movement 8.2A; throw to/at 8.3A; give/explain it to me 1.3A-B; to school 3.6B, 10.2C; Who(m) ... to? 13.5B; + -ing 16.7E
today: 7.2A, 15.3B
to-infinitive: see infinitive
tomorrow: 7.2A, 9.78
too: degree: too much/many 5.1B; and very 7.6A, 7.78; too weak to 16.4B; focus adverb and not either 7.78-C, 13.4A-B; as well 1.4A, 7.7D
toward(s): preposition 8.1B
transitive verbs: 1.28; phrasal verbs 8.6-8; and the passive 12.1A
trousers: 2.6C
try: try and/try to 9.10D; + to or -ing 16.8C
turn: turn it off 8.7A; turn (it) down 8.78; turn yellow 10.4C

U

uncountable nouns and countable: 2.3-4
under: preposition/particle 8.1A; and down 8.4A; and below 8.5A
underneath: preposition/particle 8.1A; and below 8.5A
understand: stative verb 9.1C, 11.28; understand that/him to be 16.3D; + him/his doing 16.6A,D; begin to understand 16.8A
unless: and if not 14.48
until, till: conjunction 8.1C: time clauses 1.8A-B, 9.3C; and by 7.38, 9.8B; preposition 8.1B
up: preposition/particle 8.1A, 8.78, 8.8A; and over 8.4A; up till now 9.5A
upon: preposition 8.18
upward(s): adverb particle 8.1B
urgent: + that ... should 11.13C
use: what's the use of worrying? 16.7C
used to: as semi-modal 11.1A; I used to smoke 11.11A-C; I am used to + -ing 16.7E
usually: 7.4

V

verbs, verb tenses, imperatives: 9.1-10
verbs: usual position in a sentence 1.1A-B; transitive and intransitive 1.28, 8.6A; + direct/indirect object 1.3; compared with nouns (ex'port and 'export) 2.1C; followed by reflexive pronouns 4.5; with both and all 5.58; of perception 6.4A, 9.1C, 10.4A-B, 11.28, 16.2A, 16.68; verb + preposition: look at 8.6, 8.7A, 16.7D3; verb + particle: give away, write down 8.7, 8.8A-B; verb + particle + preposition: put up with 8.8D; + that should 11.138; + bare infinitive 16.1-2A; + to-infinitive 16.3; + -ing form
+ to or -ing 16.8; and see

verbs (continued)
infinitive, *-ing* form, linking verbs, process verbs, reporting verbs, stative and dynamic verbs, intransitive, transitive
very: *very few/little* 5.1B, 5.4C; *very much* 7.5D; *very, too* and *very much* 7.6A; replaced by *extremely*, etc. 7.6B
viewpoint adverbs: *frankly*, etc. 7.8A
vital: + *that ... should* 11.13C

W

want: stative verb 9.1C; *want (you) to* 1.5C, 16.2C, 16.3B; *want mending* 16.6A
want to know: 15.4
warn: *someone (not) to* 15.5A, 16.3C
wash: + *(yourself)* 4.5B
watch: *watch him draw/drawing* 16.2A, 16.6B
way: *(in) the way (that), (in) the same way (as)*, clauses of manner 1.8D; *in a friendly way* 7.1C; *Which way?* 13.6B
weights, measures: *a/one kilo* 3.2B-C; *a five-kilo bag* 6.1C
well: and *good* 6.4A
were: after *I wish, if only* 11.7B; after *I'd rather* 11.8B; subjunctive 11.13B; after *if* 14.2B
what: question-word 13.5C, *What size?* 13.7C, in subject-questions 13.8, 15.4C; *What ever?* and *whatever* (conjunction) 13.9C; *what to/should* in indirect speech 15.5C
when: conjunction, clauses of time 1.5A, 1.8A-B, 9.3C, 9.4B, 9.6A,C, 11.11B; *when trying* 1.11B; question-word: 13.6A; *When ever?* 13.9C; *when to/should* in indirect speech 15.5C
where: conjunction, clauses of place 1.8C; *wherever* 1.8C, 13.9C; question-word 13.6A; *Where ever?* 13.9C; indirect speech 15.5C
whereas: contrast clauses 1.9B
whether (or not), if: after reporting verbs 1.5C, 15.4A; *if/whether ... should* 15.5B
which: relative pronoun: 1.6, 1.7B-C; question-word: 13.6B, in subject-questions 13.8, 15.4C; *which to/should* in indirect speech 15.5C; + *one(s)* 4.2C
while: conjunction, clauses of time 1.8A, 9.4B; contrast clauses 1.9B; *while trying* 1.11B
who: relative pronoun 1.6, 1.7B-C, 4.1C; question-word 4.1A-B, 13.5B, in subject-questions 13.8, 15.4C; *Who ever?* 13.9C
whole: *a/the whole* and *all (the)* 5.6A
who(m): relative pronoun 1.6, 1.7B; question-word 13.5B; *who(m) to/should* in indirect speech 15.5C
whose: relative pronoun 1.6A, 1.7A-B; question-word 13.6C, in subject-questions 13.8, 15.4C; *whose to/should* in indirect speech 15.5C
***wh*-questions**: form: 13.5A; *Who(m)?* 13.5B; *What?* 13.5C; *When?, Where?* 13.6A; *Which?* 13.6B; *Whose?* 13.6C; *Why?* 13.7A; *How?* 13.7B-E; subject-questions 13.8, 15.4C; + *ever* 13.9C; in indirect speech 15.4B-C, 15.5C
why: question-word 13.7A; *Why ever?* 13.9C; *why ... should* in indirect speech 15.5C
wide: and *widely* 7.1A; *wide awake* 7.6B
will: and *shall* to form future tense 9.7; and *going to*-future 9.9A; modal auxiliary, 9.7-8; two basic uses of modal verbs 11.1; requests 11.6D; in place of the simple present 11.11D; the passive 12.1A; Type 1 conditionals 14.1A, 14.2A; in indirect speech 15.3-6
wish: *I wish, if only* and *it's (high) time* 11.7; + *for* 8.6B; *wish (you) to* 16.3B; *wish to/that* 16.3E; *it's my wish to* 16.4C
with: preposition 8.1A, 8.5A; and *by* 8.4A; *made with* 8.5A; and *in* 8.5A; *with me* 4.5C
without: preposition/particle 8.1A, 8.5A; and *by* 8.4A; + *it/there being* 1.12B; + *-ing* 16.7D
wonder: *I was wondering/I wonder if* 9.4B, 11.3A, 15.4A; direct speech 15.1C
won't: and *shan't* 9.7B, 9.8
wood: and *wooden* 2.2C
wool: and *woollen* 2.2C
word formation: noun endings 2.1, 2.7A; compound nouns 2.2, 2.8B, 6.4B-D; adjectives formed with suffixes and prefixes 2.2C, 6.1A-B; nationality nouns and adjectives 3.3C; compound adjectives 6.1C
word order: in sentences 1.1A-B, 1.4A; *both* and *all* 5.5B-D; adjectives 6.2, 6.4B-D; of *already, still* and *yet* 7.2B-C; adverbs of frequency 7.4; focus adverbs 7.7; of *too, as well, also* 7.7B-D; *little does he realize* 7.8C; in questions 13.1-9; in indirect questions 1.5C, 15.4, 15.5B-C
work: and *job* 2.4A; *to/at work* 3.6B
worse/worst: 6.5C, 7.6A
worth: *it's not worth worrying* 16.7C
would: two basic uses of modal verbs 11.1; offers, suggestions, requests 11.6A,C-D; future-in-the-past 9.9C; after *I wish, if only* 11.7C; and *used to* 11.11C-D; replacing the simple present (*it would seem to be*) 11.13A; in conditional sentences 14.2-4; in indirect speech 15.3-6
would like to: see ***like***
would rather/sooner: 11.8, 16.1B; *I'd rather we didn't* 11.6F, 11.8B-C; *I'd far rather* 7.5D

Y

year: *this year*, etc. 7.2A, *in 2050* 8.2B; *What/Which year?* 13.5C, 13.6B
***yes/no* questions**: 13.1A; tag questions 13.3; and noun clauses 1.5C; in indirect speech 15.4A, 15.5B
***yes/no* short answers**: see **short answers**
yesterday: 7.2A, 9.3C
yet: conjunction in compound sentences 1.4; adverb: and *still* 7.2B, 9.5A; and *already* 7.2C
you: personal pronoun 4.1A; and *one* (= anyone) 4.2A; *you yourself* 4.5C; imperatives 9.10B
your/yours: 4.4A

Z

zero article: 3.5-6; with uncountable nouns 2.3-4, 3.5A, 5.3A; with *-ing* nouns: *Swimming is good for you* 3.5A, 16.5A1; with proper nouns 3.4, 3.5; with plural countable nouns (*Beans are good for you*) 3.5A; *at dawn, dinner is ready* 3.6A; *at school/in hospital* 3.6B; as the 'plural' of *a/an* 3.1A-B, 5.3A; with place names 3.6C; with illness (*flu*) 3.2D; with abbreviations (*radar*) 3.3B

Key to exercises

1 The sentence

1.1 Sentence word order

1.1A The basic word order of an English sentence

Write 1:

1 **S** John Bailey **V** has set **O** a new high-jump record.
2 **S** The passport officer **V** examined **O** the passport.
3 **S** The dogs **V** don't like **O** these biscuits.
4 **S** The shop assistant **V** is wrapping **O** the parcel.
5 **S** The visitors **V** have seen **O** the new buildings.
6 **S** My father **V** didn't wash **O** the dishes.
7 **S** The plumber **V** is going to fix **O** the pipe.
8 **V** Will **S** the goalkeeper **V** catch **O** the ball?
9 **V** Has **S** the guest **V** enjoyed **O** the meal?
10 **S** John **V** can't play **O** the game.

Write 2:

1 **S** The children **V** slept T till 11 o'clock this morning.
2 **S** He **V** threw **O** the papers **P** into the bin.
3 **S** I **V** don't speak **O** English **M** well.
4 **S** Mrs Jones **V** hides **O** her money **P** under the bed.
5 **S** You **V** didn't pack **O** this suitcase **M** carefully.
6 **S** I **V** left **O** some money **P** on this shelf T this morning.
(*or:* T This morning **S I** **V** left **O** some money **P** on this shelf.)
7 **S** You **V** 'll have to get **O** a loan **P** from the bank.
8 **S** The phone **V/O** woke me up T in the middle of the night.
(*or:* T In the middle of the night **S** the phone **V/O** woke me up.)
9 **S** You **V** shouldn't walk **P** in the park T at night.
10 **S** You **V** should eat **O** your food **M** slowly.
11 **S** My term **V** begins T in October
12 **S** I **V** read **O** your article **M** quickly P in bed T last night
(*or:* **T** Last night **S** I **V** read **O** your article **M** quickly P in bed.)

1.1B The forms of a sentence

1 Don't spill the coffee. (C)
2 Have you seen today's papers? (Q)
3 How nice to meet you! (E)
4 Where did you put my umbrella? (Q)
5 The train arrived fifteen minutes late. (S)
6 The plane won't arrive on time. (S)
7 I can't pay this electricity bill. (S)
8 Please open the door for me. (C)
9 'Where's the nearest hotel?' he asked. (Q)
10 'I can't pay the bill!' he cried. (E)

1.1C Context

1 I parked my car in the centre of the village.
2 I saw an old man near a bus stop.
3 'What a beautiful village!' I exclaimed.
4 'How many people live here?'
5 'There are seventeen people,' the old man said.
6 'How long have you lived here?'
7 'I have lived here all my life.'
8 'It's a quiet sort of place, isn't it?'
9 'We live a quiet life here.
10 We don't have a cinema or a theatre.
11 Our school was closed five years ago.
12 We have only one shop.
13 A bus calls once a day.
14 The Romans came here in 55 B.C.
15 Since then nothing has happened.'

1.2 The simple sentence: verbs with and without objects

1.2A What is a complete sentence?

The following need ticks:
2, 5, 8, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 19, 20.

1.2B Verbs with and without objects

Possible answers for those verbs that need an object
1 contains pencils **4** ringing the doorbell
5 need a rest **7** hit him **8** beat the other team
9 opened the fridge
13 This sentence could be complete, or we could say e.g. I began my work.
16 enjoy the film?

1.2C Sentences with linking verbs like 'be' and 'seem'

Possible answers

1 tall (adjective) **2** a teacher (noun) **3** sour (adjective) **4** in the garden (phrase of place) **5** at 6.30 (phrase of time) **6** mine (possessive pronoun) **7** like his grandfather (prepositional phrase) **8** (too) loud (adjective) **9** a nice person (adjective + noun) **10** a lawyer (noun)

1.2D Context

1 My son Tim attends the local school.
2 My wife and I went to his school yesterday. (or: Yesterday, ...)
3 We spoke to his teachers.
4 We collected Tim's school report.
5 Tim's report wasn't very good.
6 His marks were low in every subject.
7 Tim was waiting anxiously for us outside.
8 'How was my report?' he asked eagerly.
9 'It wasn't very good,' I said.
10 'You must try harder.
11 That boy Ogilvy seems very clever.
12 He got good marks in all subjects.'
13 'Ogilvy has clever parents,' Tim said.

1.3 The simple sentence: direct and indirect objects

1.3A Subject + verb + indirect object + direct object: 'Show me that photo'

1 Please find them for me./Please find me them.
2 Please buy one for him./Please buy him one.
3 Please pass it to me./Please pass me it.
4 Please show it to her./Please show her it.
5 Please do it for me. (Not *Do me it*)
6 Please order one for me./Please order me one.

1.38 Verb + object + 'to' + noun or pronoun: 'Explain it to me'

1 this camera to the Customs **2** me to your friend/ your friend to me 3 what you like to me **4** this idea to you **5** his crime to the police **6** this to anyone **7** this man to me **8** this to anyone **9** this to the headmaster **10** what I told you to anyone

1.3C The two meanings of 'for'

instead of: 2, 4, 6, 7, 9
for your/my benefit: 1, 3, 5, 8, 10

1.3D Context

The following need ticks: **1** buy me an expensive uniform **5** write our parents a letter **7** lend anyone anything **8** give help to each other

1.4 The compound sentence

1.4A The form of a compound sentence

Write 1:

1 ... andcomplained about them.
2 ... but (she) didn't leave a message.
3 I can either leave now, or (I can) stay for another hour.
4 Jim not only built his own house, but (he) designed it himself as well.
5 I neither know nor care what happened to him.
6 ... very well, but (he) hasn't much experience ...

Write 2:

1 ... at the station *and* two men ...
2 Either you can give me some advice, or your colleague can.(*Either* you or your colleague can ...)
3 ... but it didn't stop.
4 ... when we called, so we left a message.
5 ... after the film, so we went straight back.
6 ... was nervous, for she wasn't used to strangers calling late at night.
7 ... in the country, but my parents ...
8 ... has been lost, or the postman has ...
9 ... was visible, and then a cloud covered it.
10 ... career woman, yet her mother ...

1.48 Context

1 and **2** and **3** and **4** as well **5** and **6** but **7** yet **8** either **9** or **10** for **11** and **12** and **13** but **14** and

1.5 The complex sentence: noun clauses

1.5A Introduction to complex sentences

1 You can tell me all about the film ...
2 ... you can help me with the dishes.
3 You didn't tell me ...
4 I walk to work every morning ...
5 ... I left a message on the answer-phone.

1.58 Noun clauses derived from statements

1 (that) he feels angry.
2 (that) she has resigned from her job.
3 (that) you don't trust me.
4 (that) you are feeling better.
5 (that) she's upset.
6 (that) he didn't get the contract.
7 (that) it's a fair price.
8 (that) you're leaving.
9 (that) she's been a fool.

1.5C Noun clauses derived from questions
1 iflwhether he has passed his exam.
2 iflwhether you can (or could) type.
3 iflwhether he will arrive tomorrow.
4 iflwhether he likes ice-cream.
5 iflwhether he was at home yesterday.
6 iflwhether I should phone her.
7 if/whether she's ready.
8 when you met her.
9 how you will manage.
10 why he has left.
11 where you live.
12 which one she wants.
13 who's at the door.
14 what he wants.

1.5D Context
1 you know ...
2 you can turn into superwoman or superman ...
3 that her baby nearly slipped under the wheels of a car.
4 she lifted the car (to save her baby).
5 that he jumped nearly three metres into the air ...
6 if you can perform such feats.
7 that you can.
8 that we can find great reserves of strength ...
9 that adrenalin can turn us into superwomen or supermen!

1.6 The complex sentence: relative pronouns and clauses

1.6A 'Who', 'which' and 'that' as subjects of a relative clause
1 ... the accountant who does my accounts.
2 ... the nurse who looked after me.
3 ... the postcards which arrived yesterday.
4 ... the secretaries who work in our office.
5 ... the magazine which arrived this morning.
6 ... the workmen who repaired our roof.

1.68 'Who(m)', 'which' and 'that' as objects of a relative clause
1 ... the accountant who(m) you recommended .../... the accountant you recommended ...
2 ... the nurse who(m) I saw at the hospital./... the nurse I saw ...
3 ... the postcards which I sent from Spain./... the postcards I sent ...
4 ... the secretaries who(m) Mr Pym employed./... the secretaries Mr Pym employed.
5 ... the magazine which I got .../... the magazine I got ...
6 ... the workmen who(m) I paid ... /... the workmen I paid ...
7 ... the dog which I saw .../... the dog I saw ...
8 ... the birds which I fed.../... the birds I fed ...

1.6C 'Who(m)', 'which' or 'that' as the objects of prepositions
I a He's the man to whom I sent the money.
b He's the man who(m)/that I sent the money to.
c He's the man I sent the money to.
2a She's the nurse to whom I gave the flowers.
b She's the nurse who(m)/that I gave the flowers to.
c She's the nurse I gave the flowers to.
3a That's the chair on which I sat.
b That's the chair whichlthat I sat on.
c That's the chair I sat on
4a He's the boy for whom I bought this toy.
b He's the boy who(m)/that I bought this toy for.
c He's the boy I bought this toy for.
5a That's the building by which I passed.
b That's the building which/that I passed by.
c That's the building I passed by.
6a They're the shops from which I got these.
b They're the shops whichlthat I got these from.
c They're the shops I got these from.

1.6D Context
1 who 2(-) 3 who 4(-)

1.7 The complex sentence: 'whose'; defining/non-defining clauses

1.7A 'Whose' + noun in relative clauses
1 ... the customer whose address I lost.
2 ... the novelist whose book won first prize.
3 ... the children whose team won the match.
4 ... the expert whose advice we want.
5 ... the witness whose evidence led to his arrest.
6 ... the woman whose house the film was made in./ ... in whose house the film was made.

1.78 Defining and non-defining clauses
Commas are necessary in these sentences:
1 My husband, who is on a business trip to Rome all this week, ...
4 The author Barbara Branwell, whose latest novel has already sold over a million copies, ...
6 The play *Cowards,* which opens at the Globe soon, ...
9 The manager, whom I complained to about the service, ...
10 Sally West, whose work for the deaf made her famous, ...

1.7C Sentences with two meanings

1 Without commas: There were other test papers, which everyone didn't fail.
With commas: There was *a* single test paper *and* everybody failed it.
2 Without commas: I have another brother or other brothers somewhere else.
With commas: I have only one brother.

1.7D Context

1 who (no commas) **2** whichtthat (no commas)
3 ..., which are commonly used, (commas)
4 ..., which are not so frequently used, (commas)
5 whichtthat (no commas) **6** whichtthat (no commas)
7 who (no commas) **8** No relative pronoun necessary; no commas **9** ..., which is situated in a very rough area of London, (commas)
10 ..., which has a terrible lounge and a tiny dining room, (commas) **11** whichtthat (no commas) *(or:* ..., which is fitted with a leaky shower. – one comma)
12 ..., which is expensive to run, (commas)
13 whichtthat (no commas) *(or:* ..., which is overgrown with weeds. – one comma) **14** ..., who are generally unfriendly, ... (commas) **15** ..., which is definitely not recommended, (commas)

1.8 The complex sentence: time, place, manner

1.8A Adverbial clauses of time (past reference)

1 ... weight *when I was ill.*
2 ... home *immediately after I arrived in the airport building.*
3 ... the letter *before she realized it wasn't addressed to her.*
4 ... burnt down *by the time the fire brigade arrived.*
5 ... gone wrong *as soon as we saw him run toward us.*

1.8B Adverbial clauses of time (future reference)

1 ... university *until I get my exam results.*
2 ... message *as soon as he phones.*
3 ... Duty Free Shop *before our flight is called.*
4 ... dead *by the time they find a cure for the common cold.*
5 ... surprise *the moment you open the door.*

1.8C Adverbial clauses of place

Possible answers
1 where the accident happened.
2 anywhere you like.
3 everywhere you go in the world.
4 wherever you can find a chair.
5 where everyone can see it.

1.8D Adverbial clauses of manner

Possible answers
1 as if it's raining.
2 as he likes *it.*
3 as though it was my fault.
4 in the way you wrote it last year.
5 the way **I** show you.

1.8E Context

1 when **2** the way (that) **3** as if **4** before
5 whichtthat **6** As **7** As soon as **8** that/which

1.9 The complex sentence: reason and contrast

1.9A Adverbial clauses of reason

Possible answers
1 Service in this hotel ought to improve *because there's been a change of management.*
2 *As the Air Traffic Controllers are on strike,* we have cancelled our holiday.
3 Could you sell your old computer to me, *seeing (that) you have no further use for it?*
4 *Since she's never in when I phone,* I'll have to write to her.
5 I've had to have the document translated, *since I can't read Russian.*

1.9B Contrast (1)

Possible answers
1 ... computer, *even though I haven't got much money.*
2 ... this morning, *even if it's raining.*
3 *Much as I'd like to help you,* I'm afraid ...
4 *While your design is excellent,* it isn't suitable ...
5 *Although I try hard to play the piano,* I don't ...
6 *Considering that Chinese is so difficult,* it's surprising ...
7 *Whereas the play was wonderful,* the film ...

1.9C Contrast (2)

Possible answers
1 *However expensive it is,* he's determined ...
2 *However hard I work,* **I** still ...
3 *However well you write,* it doesn't mean ...
4 *No matter how sorry she feels,* the damage ...
5 *No matter how much they pay us,* it will never ...
6 *No matter how many cards I send,* I always ...
7 *Whatever he tells you,* don't believe ...

1.9D Context

1 Even though/Though **2** because/as, since
3 As/Because/Since **4** even though **5** though/as
6 while **7** because **8** because/as/since **9** Because

1.10 The complex sentence: purpose, result and comparison

1.10A Adverbial clauses of purpose with 'so that' and 'in order that'

1. ... driving lessons *in order* **that/so** *that I might pass my driving test first time.*
2. ... the cinema early *in order* **that/so** *that I might not miss the beginning of the film.*
3. We stood up *in order* **that/so** *that we might get a better view* ...
4. ... a second car *in order* **that/so** *that his wife might learn to drive.*
5. ... and clearly *in order* **that/so** *that the audience might understand me.*

1.10B Adverbial clauses of purpose with 'in case'

1. ... immediately *in case you change* (or *should change) your mind.*
2. ... with you *in case you are not able* (or *should not be able) to get into the house.*
3. ... the kitchen *in case there is* (or *should be) a fire.*
4. ... train *in case there is* (or *should be) a lot of traffic on the roads.*
5. ... with me *in case I need* (or *should need) it.*

1.10C Adverbial clauses of result with 'so ... (that)' and 'such ... (that)'

1. We were *so late (that) we missed* ...
2. I was working *so hard (that) I forgot* ...
3. There was *such a delay (that) we missed* ...
4. We've had *such difficulties (that) we don't think* ...

1.10D Adverbial clauses of comparison with 'as ... as'

Possible answers

1. John works *as hard as Susan (does).*
2. John is *not so intelligent as Susan (is).*
3. This computer *does not hold as much information as that one (does).*
4. The film 'Superman 1' is *as enjoyable as 'Superman 2' (is).*

1.10E Context

1 in order that **2** which 3 so ... (that) 4 but
5 as ... as 6 in case 7 when 8 such ... (that)

1.11 The complex sentence: present participle constructions

1.11A Joining sentences with present participles ('-ing')

1. She got very worried, *thinking we had had an accident.*
2. He went to his room, *closing the door behind him.*
3. *Not hearing what he said,* I asked him to repeat it.
4. You didn't ask me for permission, *knowing I would refuse.*
5. *Not being a lawyer,* I can't give you the advice you are looking for.

1.11B The present participle in place of adverbial clauses

1. They broke this window *when trying to get into the house.*
2. *Though refusing to eat,* he admitted he was very hungry.
3. I damaged the car *while trying to park it..*
4. *While agreeing you may be right,* I still object to your argument.
5. *After looking at the map,* we tried to find the right street.
6. Don't get into any arguments *before checking your facts.*

1.11C The present participle in place of relative clauses

1 Delete *which is.* **2** Delete *who are.*
3 Delete *who is.* 4 Delete *which is.*
5 Change *which leave* to *leaving.* 6 Change *who complain* to *complaining.* 7 Change *who travel* to *travelling.* 8 Change *who work* to *working.*
9 Delete *who are.* **10** Delete *who is.*

1.11D Context

1 preparing **2** Feeling 3 As 4 commenting
5 afterlwhen 6 hearing 7 who 8 When/After
9 knowing **10** announcing

1.12 The complex sentence: perfectlpast participle constructions.

1.12A 'Being' and 'having been'

1. *Being out of work,* I spend a lot of my time at home.
2. *Being a scientist,* John hasn't read a lot of novels.
3. *Having been promised a reward,* he hopes he'll get one.
4. *Being near a newsagent's,* I went in and got a paper.
5. *Having been up all night,* they were in no mood for jokes.

1.12B 'It being' and 'there being'

1 There being no questions, the meeting ended quickly.
2 He kept helping himself to money without it being noticed.
3 He kept asking awkward questions without there being *a(ny)* reason for it.
4 It being a holiday, there were thousands of cars on the roads.
5 There being no one in, I left a message.

1.12C Agreement between present participle and subject

1 It wasn't the smell that was opening the door.
2 It wasn't the bus that was changing gear.
3 It wasn't the important papers that were burning the rubbish.

1.12D Past participle constructions

1 Lost for many years, the painting turned up at an auction.
2 Although cooked for several hours, the meat was still tough.
3 If seen from this angle, the picture looks rather good.
4 The vegetables sold in this shop are grown without chemicals.
5 When read aloud, the poem is very effective.

1.12E Context

1 When/Whenever/If **2** Looking **3** being
4 Opening **5** Although

2 Nouns

2.1 One-word nouns

2.1A Noun endings: people who do thingslpeople who come from places

1 actor **2** beggar **3** pianist **4** driver **5** Berliner
6 Athenian **7** assistant **8** liar **9** Texan
10 historian

2.1B Nouns formed from verbs, adjectives, other nouns

1 decision **2** anxiety **3** socialism **4** happiness
5 agreement **6** discovery **7** arrival
8 childhood **9** absence **10** postage **11** try (no change) **12** efficiency **13** curiosity **14** address (no change) **15** refusal **16** warning
17 mouthful **18** explanation **19** trial **20** argument

2.1C Nouns and verbs with the same spelling but different stress

1 permit **2** permit **3** increase **4** increase
5 objects **6** object **7** conduct **8** conduct
9 entrance **10** entrance **11** record **12** record
13 present **14** present **15** protest **16** protest
17 accent **18** accent **19** exports **20** export
21 escort **22** escort **23** imports **24** import

2.1D Context

1 boredom **2** communication **3** babble/babbling
4 knowledge **5** preparation **6** encouragement
7 recognition **8** solution **9** refusal **10** scientist
11 behaviour

2.2 Compound nouns

2.2A Nouns formed with gerund **('-ing')** + noun: 'dancing-shoes'

The following need ticks: 1, 3, 5, *7*

2.28 Apostrophe s ('s) or compound noun?

1 the car key **2** the doctor's surgery
3 the committee's idea **4** the pen nib
5 the computer keyboard **6** the desk top
7 King John's reign **8** Eliot's poetry **9** no one's responsibility **10** the suitcase handle **11** the front door knob **12** Scott's journey **13** the postman's bicycle **14** that cigarette stub **15** a new kitchen table **16** the horse's tail **17** the light switches
18 the boss's secretary **19** the new party policy
20 the book cover **21** Mr Jones's son
22 the factory gate **23** the garage door
24 the children's photos **25** the office phone
26 the film critic **27** a dancing teacher **28** the twins' mother **29** my brother's wife **30** a new reading lamp **31** the road surface **32** the President's secretary

2.2C Compound nouns which tell us about materials and substances

1 a plastic raincoat **2** a silk shirt **3** silkylsilken hair
4 a glass table-top **5** glassy eyes **6** a leather wallet
7 a stainless steel spoon **8** steely/steel nerves
9 a woollen pullover **10** a cotton blouse **11** a silver teapot **12** a silvery voice **13** a stone wall
14 stony silence **15** a ceramic tile **16** a nylon nailbrush **17** a leathery tongue **18** a wooden spoon

2.2D Context

1 feather wings **2** a flying machine **3** flight path
4 a champion cyclist **5** pedal power **6** pilot's seat/ pilot-seat **7** carbon fibre machine **8** south wind

2.3 Countable and uncountable nouns (1)

2.3A Countable and uncountable nouns compared

1 painting **C** **2** milk **U** **3** photos **C** **4** oil **U**
5 drawings **C** **6** Hope **U** **7** hope C **8** flour **U**
9 shirts C **10** coal **U**

2.38 Nouns which can be either countable or uncountable: 'an egg/egg'

1 onion **U** **2** fish **U** **3** eggs **C** **4** cake **U**
5 motorway **C** **6** ice **C** **7** glasses C **8** stones **C**
9 paper U **10** iron **C**

2.3C Normally uncountable nouns used as countables (1): 'a coffee/(some) coffee'

1. I'd like (some) tea/(some) coffee, please.
2. I'd like a/one coffee and two teas, please.
3. I'd like a/one beer, a/one lemonade and a/one tomato juice, please.
4. I'd like two coffees, three teas and one milk/a glass of milk

2.3D Normally uncountable nouns used as countables (2): 'oil/a light oil'

1 a light oil **2** an excellent wine **3** a traditional cloth
4 a rare wood.

2.3E Context

1 (-) **2** a/(-) **3** **a** **4** **a** **5** **a** 6 a 7 a 8 a **9** a
10 (-) **11** a **12** **a** **13** some **14** **a**

2.4 Countable and uncountable nouns (2)

2.4A Singular equivalents of uncountable nouns: 'bread/a loaf'

1 coat/jacket/dress, etc. **2** laugh
3 suitcase/bag/case, etc. **4** job **5** room/bed

2.48 Nouns not normally countable in English: 'information'

Write 1:
The following need ticks: 2, 4, 6, *7*, **8,** 12

Write 2:
1 some **2** (-) **3** any **4** a **5** the **6** some/a lot of
7 some/a lot of **8** a lot of/some/the
9 the/some/a lot of **10** a **11** a **12** some/a lot of
13 some **14** a lot of **15** (-) **16** any **17** (-)
18 a lot of/some **19** a lot of/some **20** a

2.4C Partitives: 'a piece of', etc.

1 a cube of ice **2** a bar of chocolate **3** a slice of bread **4** a sheet of paper **5** a bar of soap
6 a bottle of milk **7** a jar of jam **8** a box of matches **9** a pot of tea **10** a tube of toothpaste
11 a drop of water **12** a pinch of salt **13** a sip of tea
14 a splash of soda **15** a wisp of smoke

2.4D Context

1 a **2** (-) **3** (-) **4** (-) **5** (-) **6** (-) **7** Some
8 a lot of **9** (-) **10** (-)

2.5 Number (singular and plural) (1)

2.5A Nouns with plurals ending in -s or -es: 'friends', 'matches'

/s/	/z/	/ɪz/
1 clocks	**7** bottles	**13** addresses
2 lakes	**8** cinemas	**14** beaches
3 lights	**9** guitars	**15** offices
4 months	**10** hotels	**16** pieces
5 parks	**11** islands	**17** spaces
6 tapes	**12** smiles	**18** villages

2.58 Nouns with plurals ending in -s or -es: 'countries' 'knives'

1. These cherries are very sweet.
2. I've lost my keys.
3. These knives are blunt.
4. The leaves are turning yellow.
5. The roofs have been damaged.
6. We have three Henrys in our family.

2.5C Nouns ending in -o and some irregular plural forms

1. Which videos do you like best?
2. Which volcanoes/volcanos are erupting?
3. These are John's pet mice.
4. These teeth are giving me trouble.
5. Can you see those geese?
6. Postmen are busy all the time.
7. We're going to sell those sheep.
8. I can see salmon/some salmon in the water.
9. Which aircraft have just landed?
10. The Swiss are used to mountains.

2.5D Context

1 foods **2** cakes **3** biscuits **4** tomatoes
5 oranges **6** men **7** women **8** lives **9** cuisines
10 Japanese **11** Swiss **12** products
13 strawberries **14** peaches **15** potatoes
16 spaghetti

2.6 Number (singular and plural) (2)

2.6A Collective nouns followed by singular or plural verbs: 'government'

1 is/are **2** is/are **3** are **4** is/are **5** has/have
6 are **7** have **8** are **9** is/are **10** are **11** is/are
12 have

2.68 Nouns with a plural form + singular or plural verbs: 'acoustics'
1 are **2** is 3 are **4** is **5** is **6** are **7** Are **8** are
9 Are **10** have **11** has **12** has **13** has **14** are

2.6C Nouns with a plural form + plural verbs: 'trousers'
1 have **2** are ... They **3** does **4** these/those ... They **5** brains **6** Congratulations **7** are
8 haven't ... them **9** them **10** have
11 aren't ... are **12** don't

2.6D Context
1 is **2** are **3** show **4** is **5** is/are **6** own **7** are
8 is **9** is **10** are **11** are **12** spends/spend
13 are **14** are **15** favour/favours **16** make

2.7 Gender

2.7A Male and female word forms: 'waiter1 waitress'
1 sister **2** uncle **3** nephew **4** bachelor, spinster
5 nuns **6** cows **7** hens **8** mares **9** sow **10** ram
11 actress **12** waitress **13** prince **14** lionesses
15 goddess **16** heiress **17** heroine **18** widower
19 saleswoman **20** female **21** queens
22 bridegroom **23** daughter **24** aunt **25** nieces

2.78 Identifying masculine and feminine through pronouns: **'He/She** is a student'
1 she **2** She **3** he **4** his **5** She **6** her **7** his
8 He **9** she **10** her **11** she **12** her

2.7C Context
1 She **2** actors **3** She **4** Prince **5** she
6 princess **7** mother **8** Miss **9** she **10** Sisters

2.8 The genitive

2.8A How to show possession with 's, s' and the apostrophe (') on its own
1 This is a ***child's*** bicycle. **2** This is the ***teacher's*** pen. **3** He described the ***actress's*** career.
4 That's a ***stewardess's*** job. **5** These are the ***children's*** toys. **6** This is a ***women's*** club. **7** It's a girls'school. **8** This is the ***residents'*** lounge.
9 This is ***James's*** umbrella. **10** That is ***Doris's*** hat.

2.88 Apostrophes ('s/s'), compound noun or 'of'?
1 That's a ***man's voice.*** **2** (-) **3** That's ***the committee's decision.*** **4** It's ***no one's fault.***
5 This is a copy of ***Keats' poetry.*** 6 (-) **7** (-) **8** (-)

2.8C The use of **'s** and **s'** with non-living things: 'an hour's journey'
1 ***an hour's*** delay **2** ***two days'*** journey
7 ***seven years'*** work **8** the ***earth's*** surface
9 at ***death's door*** **10** a ***year's*** absence

2.8D Omission of the noun after **'s**
1 the hairdresser's **2** the chemist's **3** my aunt's
4 St Andrew's **5** Marks and Spencer's

2.8E Context
1 animal skins **2** a leopardskin coat **3** the earth's wildlife **4** children's clothing **5** ladies' coats
6 an actress's fur coat **7** the crocodiles' revenge
8 customers' skins

3 Articles

3.1 The indefinite article: 'a/an' (1)

3.1A General statements with **'a/an'** and zero (Ø)

1 ***Small computers aren't*** expensive.
2 ***Quartz watches don't*** last for ever.
3 I like ***a play with a message.***
4 I admire ***a politician who is*** sincere.
5 ***Big cities are*** always fascinating.
6 Even ***efficient systems*** can break down.
7 ***Road maps are always*** out of date.
8 ***Rules are*** meant to be broken.
9 A ***restaurant*** shouldn't charge too much.
10 How much ***does a car radio*** cost?
11 ***Buses leave*** here every hour.
12 How long ***do letters take*** to get here?

3.18 The 'plural form' of **'a/an'**

1 ***They're architects.***
2 Do you want ***any/some potatoes?***
3 ***Doctors need*** years of training.
4 How well can ***cats*** see in the dark?
5 Have you got ***any cats*** at home?
6 Why should ***compact discs*** be so dear?
7 I borrowed ***some compact discs.***
8 Can you lend me ***any/some compact discs?***
9 Why ***are cars*** so expensive?
10 There ***aren't any cars*** in the street.

3.1C Describing people and things with **'a/an'** + noun: 'He's a doctor'
1 He's a taxi-driver.
2 She's a Catholic.
3 He's an Englishman.
4 It's an ant.
5 It's a kind of insect.
6 She's a socialist.
7 She's a teacher.
8 She's an architect.
9 It's a Shakespeare sonnet.
10 It's a *Picasso/a Picasso* painting.

3.1 D Context
1 (-) 2 A 3 a 4 a 5 some 6 some 7 a 8 *a/(-)*
9 a/(-) **10** a/(-) Ilany 12 a **13** (-)

3.2 The indefinite article: 'a/an' (2)

3.2A the use of **'a/an'** when something is mentioned for the first time
1 a 2 the 3 an 4 The 5 **a/the** [> LEG 3.20.4]
6 the 7 the 8 a 9 the **10 a**

3.28 The difference between **'a/an'** and 'one'
1 a 2 one 3 One 4 a 5 one 6 a 7 One
8 one ... a **9** a ... one **10** a/one 11 a **12** one

3.2C 'Alan' for price, distance and frequency: **'80p** a kilo'
1 They're 90p a kilo.
2 I take them once a day.
3 We're doing 100 km an hour.
4 I/We do 45 miles a (or to the) gallon.
5 It's collected twice a week.
6 It costs £3 a litre.

3.2D 'Alan' or zero with reference to illnesses: 'a cold'
1 a 2 *a/(-)* 3 (-) 4 (-) 5 *a/(-)* 6 (-) 7 a 8 a
9 *a/(-)* 10 (-)/a

3.2E Context
1 a 2 The 3 a 4 a 5 (-) 6 (-) 7 (-) 8 one
9 a **10** a 11 the 12 the **13** the **14** the

3.3 The definite article: 'the' (1)

3.3A Form and basic uses of 'the'
1 a 2 a 3 the 4 a 5 the 6 The 7 a 8 the

3.38 'Alan', 'the' and zero in front of abbreviations: 'the **BBC'**
1 a 2 a 3 The 4 an 5 (-) 6 (-) 7 (-) 8 (-)

3.3C 'The' + nationality noun: 'the Chinese'
1 The Portuguese ... the Spanish/the Spaniards
2 The Americans ... the Russians 3 The Brazilians ... the Mexicans 4 The Germans ... the Japanese
5 The Greeks ... the Koreans 6 The British ... the Dutch

3.3D Context
1 a 2 a 3 the 4 the 5 The 6 the 7 a/the
8 a **9** a/the **10** a **11** the **12** the **13** The **14** the
15 the **16** the **17** a/the **18** The **19** a **20** The

3.4 The definite article: 'the' (2)

3.4A 'The' for specifying
1 We were looking for a place to spend *the/a* night. The place we found turned out to be in a charming village. The village was called (-) *Lods*worth.
2 An (or The) individual has every right to expect personal freedom. The freedom of the individual is something worth fighting for.
3 Yes, my name is (-) *Simpson*, but I'm not the *Simpson* you're looking for.
4 Who's at the *door*? – It's the postman.
5 When you go out, would you please go to the supermarket and get some butter.
6 I've got an appointment this afternoon. I've got to go to the doctor's.
7 We went to the theatre last night and saw Flames. It's a wonderful play.
8 We prefer to spend our holidays in the country, the mountains or by the sea.
9 We have seen what the earth looks like from the moon.
10 This is the front room. The ceiling and the/(-) walls need decorating, but the floor is in good order. We'll probably cover it with a /(-) carpet.
11 You're imagining (-) things. All your fears are in the mind.
12 Look at this wonderful small computer. The top lifts up to form *the/a* screen; the front lifts off to form *the/a* keyboard, and the whole thing only weighs 5 kilos.
13 The history of the world is the history of (-) war.
14 Is there a moon round the planet Venus?
15 What's (-) John doing these days? – He's working as a postman.
16 (-) Exercise is good for the body.
17 Could you pass me the salt, please?
18 They're building a new supermarket in the centre of our town.
19 Where's your mother at the moment? – I think she's in the kitchen.
20 If you were a cook, you'd have to work in a kitchen all day long.

3.48 **'The' to refer to things that are unique (not place names)**

1 *The Times* ... *The Washington Post* 2 *The Economist* ... *Time* magazine 3 *The New Yorker* ... *Punch* 4 the human race ... man ... the dinosaurs 5 *The Graduate* ... *Jaws* 6 the gods ... God 7 *(The) Odyssey* ... *Ulysses* 8 The United Nations ... Congress 9 the *Titanic* **10** the Navy ... the Army 11 the French Revolution 12 the President 13 President **14** the climate

3.4C Context

1 The 2 a 3 the 4 the **5** The 6 a **7** The 8the **9** an **10** the **11** an **12** an 13a **14** the 15 the

3.5 The zero article (1)

3.5A Basic uses of the zero article (8): 'Life is short'

1 (-) 2 The 3 (-) 4 the ... (-) 5 (-) 6 the 7 (-) 8the ... (-) 9(-) ... the **10** (-) ... the 11 (-) **12** the ... (-) **13** (-) **14** (-) **15** The **16** (-) ... (-) 17 (-) 18 (-) ... (-) 19 (-) 20 The ... (-) ... (-) 21 (-) ... (-) 22 (-) ... (-) 23 the 24 (-) ... (-)

3.58 **The zero article with names and titles: 'Mr Pym'**

The following need an X:

1 We use nothing if we are addressing a stranger, or *Mr* + surname if we know it. In American English, we might use *Sir.*
3 *Mrs* cannot be followed by a first name.
6 Not normal use: old-fashioned.
7 This use of *Mrs* is not generally considered polite.
9 *Sir John Falstaff.* (Title + first name (+ surname) [> 3.5B, note 4])

3.5C Context

1 (-) 2 (-) 3 (-) 4 an 5 (-) 6 the 7 The 8 a 9(-) **10** The **11** the **12** (-) **13** the **14** the 15 (-) 16 (-) 17 (-) 18 (-) 19 (-) 20 (-) 21 (-) 22 (-) 23 (-) 24 (-) 25 (-) 26 The 27 the

3.6 The zero article (2)

3.6A Zero article for parts of the day ('at dawn') and for meals ('for lunch')

1 (-) 2 (-) 3 (-) 4 (-) 5 The 6 (-) 7 (-) 8 (-) **9** the **10** a

3.68 **Zero article for e.g. 'She's at school' and 'He's in hospital'**

1 (-) 2 the 3 (-) 4 a 5 the 6 (-) 7 a 8 (-) 9(-) **10** (-) 11 (-) **12** (-) **13** the 14a **15** the **16** (-)

3.6C Zero article or 'the' with place names

1 the Dark Ages ... Medieval Europe 2 Central Asia ... the Arctic 3 Brazil ... Argentina ... the USA 4 London ... Paris ... Vienna 5 Montague Road 6 Brown's ... the Hilton 7 Bavaria ... Ohio 8 London ... Buckingham Palace 9 the Alps ... Mont Blanc **10** the Sahara **11** the Nile ... Luxor **12** Lake Geneva 13 Leoni's ... the Globe Theatre 14 Oxford Street ... Oxford Circus 15 London Bridge

3.6D Context

1 the 2 (-) 3 (-) 4 a/the 5 (-) 6 (-) 7 (-) 8 (-) 9(-) **10** (-) **11** the **12** the **13** (-) **14** the **15** the **16** the **17** (-) **18** (-)

4 Pronouns

4.1 Personal pronouns

4.1A Subject and object pronouns

1 Your parcel ... *It* 2 Jane and I ... *We* 3 that? ... *It's* 4 Jane Wilson? ... *She's* 5 a baby! ... *it* 6 cat ... *It's* **7** John ... *him* 8 Catherine ... *her*

4.1 B Subject or object pronoun?

1 me/him/her/us/them 2 Me/Him/Her/Us/Them 3 me/us 4 Me/Us 5 me/I 6 than me/I am ... I 7 I ... me/I am

4.1C Gender in relation to animals, things and countries

1 She 2 It 3 it/her 4 she/it 5 it/one **6** she/it **7** He/It 8it **9** It **10** She **11** He **12** It/She

4.1 D **Context**

1 you 2 it 3 who 4 him 5 they 6 me 7 I 8 he **9** He **10** he **11** you **12** They **13** you **14** him 15 them

4.2 'One'

4.2A 'One' and 'you'

The moment *you get* into the mountains, *you are* on *your* own. *You have* to rely on *yourself* for everything. This means *you have* to carry all *your* own food, though, of course, *you* can get pure drinking water from mountain streams. *You* won't see any local people for days at a time, so *you* can't get help if *you're* lost. *You have to* do *your* best to find sheltered places to spend the night.

4.28 'One' and 'ones' in place of countable nouns: 'Use this clean one'

1 one 2 one 3 ones 4 ones 5 one **6** ones
7 water/(-) 8 one

4.2C 'Which one(s)?' – 'This/that (one)', etc.

1 ones 2 ones (tick) 3 one (tick) 4 ones (tick)
5 one (tick) **6** ones (tick) *7* one ... one (tick)
8 *These ones* or *those ones* are possible, but it would be best to omit *ones* (tick) 9 one **10** ones

4.2D Context

1 You/One 2 ones 3 you/one 4 ones 5 one
6 one *7* one 8 you 9 you/(-) **10** one/(-)
11 one/(-)

4.3 'It' and 'one/some/any/none'

4.3A 'It' as in 'it's hot' and 'it's nice to see you'

1 It's Monday, 13th June, today.
2 It's snowing (now). It snows a lot here.
3 It was 22° Celsius in London yesterday.
4 It's 100 kilometres from here to Paris.
5 It's important to get to the meeting.
6 It's difficult making such decisions.
7 It's a pleasure to welcome you all here.
8 It's a pity that they couldn't come.

4.38 'It' and 'one' as subjects and objects: 'I like it'

1 one 2 it 3 none 4 some 5 it **6** them *7* any
8 some 9 them **10** one

4.3C 'I hope/believe/expect so'

1 Does the next train go to London? – I believe so.
2 The weather is going to improve. – I hope so.
3 Have the letters arrived yet? – I don't think so./I think not.
4 The rail strike hasn't ended. – It doesn't seem so./It seems not.
5 It's a holiday tomorrow. – Who says so?
6 There's been a terrible air disaster. – I fear so.
7 Will the democrats win the election? – I don't expect so./I expect not.

4.3D Context

1 It 2 they 3 It 4 one 5 them **6** them *7* any
8 them **9** it **10** so **11** It **12** it **13** it

4.4 Possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns ('mylmine')

4.4A Basic differences between 'my' and 'mine', etc.

1 her 2 His 3 mine 4 our 5 Yours **6** theirs
7 one's 8 his 9 her **10** its

4.48 The double genitive: 'He is a friend of mine'

1 That brother of yours 2 no friend of mine 3 a play of Shakespeare's 4 this/that problem of yours
5 a friend of ours **6** That loud music of hers
7 A friend of my sister's 8 Those neighbours of theirs 9 That radio of yours

4.4C 'My own' and 'of my own'

1 my own room/a room of my own 2 his own business/a business of his own 3 their own rooms/rooms of their own 4 its own kennel/a kennel of its own

4.4D 'The' in place of 'my', etc.: 'a pain in the neck'

1 the 2 my 3 the 4 the 5 my **6** My *7* My
8 the **9** the **10** the

4.4E Context

1 our 2 ours 3 its 4 your 5 our **6** Yours
7 your 8 hers 9 the 10 our **11** our 12 your

4.5 Reflexive pronouns ('myself')

4.5A Verbs commonly followed by reflexive pronouns: 'I enjoyed myself'

1 myself 2 yourself 3 himself **4** herself **5** itself/himself [> 4.1C] **6** oneself *7* ourselves
8 themselves 9 herself 10 himself

4.58 Verb + reflexive, or not?: 'I've dressed (myself)'

1 hide ourselves 2 washes itself 3 dress herself
4 sat ourselves down 5 got myself wet
6 woke myself up *7* got himself engaged
8 Get yourself/yourselves ready

4.5C Reflexive pronouns used after prepositions and for emphasis

Write 1:
1 himself 2 you 3 me 4 ourselves **5** herself
6 us/you/me, etc. *7* himself 8 himself

Write 2:
1 I didn't know about it *myself* till yesterday/till yesterday *myself.* (or: I *myself* didn't know about it ...)
2 The building *itself* is all right, I think./The building is all right *itself* ...
3 You can't do that *yourself/yourselves*!
4 I can't fetch it – (you) fetch it *yourself.*
5 Don't expect me to do it. Do it *yourself!*

4.5D Context

1 itself 2 ourselves 3 ourselves 4 ourselves
5 us **6** themselves *7* themselves 8 them 9 us
10 us **11** us **12** ourselves

4.6 Demonstrative adjectives/pronouns ('this', etc.) 'Some/any/no' compounds ('someone', etc.)

4.6A Different uses of 'this' and 'that'

1 Introducing someone.
2 On the phone.
3 Referring back to something that we mentioned earlier.
4 Referring to something we are talking about.
5 Meaning 'now' (these days) compared with the past.
6 Referring to someone we don't want to meet or don't like (that man).
7 Making comparisons. ('more than •'50)'
8 Telling a story or an anecdote.
9 Making it clear who we mean.
10 Showing the size of something (usually with gestures).

4.6B Uses of 'some/any/no' compounds
1 nothing 2 anything 3 no one/nobody
4 something 5 anyone/anybody 6 something/anything 7 someone/somebody/no one/nobody
8 anything 9 anyone/anybody/no one/nobody
10 anyone/anybody/no one/nobody

4.6C 'Everyone', 'anyone', etc. with singular or plural pronouns
1 their ... them 2 they 3 their 4 they
5 don't they? 6 they 7 their 8 they are
9 they think ... they'll 10 they deserve ... they don't like ... they get

4.6D Context
1 they 2 No one 3 they 4 anyone 5 that
6 nothing 7 this (or that) 8 something 9 this
10 this (or that) **11** this (or that)

5 Quantity

5.1 Quantifiers + countable and uncountable nouns

5.1A Quantifiers + countable and uncountable nouns
1 fewer A 2 less B 3 a lot of C 4 a lot of C
5 much B 6 many A 7 most of the D 8 most C
9 most C 10 a little B **11** a few A
12 Several A **13** any C **14** any C **15** enough C
16 hardly any C 17 Neither D 18 Both A
19 no C **20** no D

5.1B Quantifiers that tell us roughly how much and how many
Possible answer

1a too many eggs	**1b** too much milk
2a plenty of eggs	2b plenty of milk
3a a lot of eggs	3b a lot of milk
4a enough eggs	4b enough milk
5a a few eggs	5b a little milk
6a very few eggs	6b very little milk
7a not many eggs	7b not much milk
8a hardly any eggs	**8b** hardly any milk
9a no eggs	**9b** no milk

Possible answers
1 There are *plenty* of apples in the bowl.
2 I've got hardly any money.
3 A lot of people turned up at the meeting.
4 You've put too much salt in the sauce.
5 We've got enough time for a drink.
6 We usually get a few letters every day.

5.1C Context
1 many 2 few 3 some 4 plenty of 5 hardly any
6 enough 7 very little 8 some 9 any **10** no
11 any **12** some

5.2 General and specific references to quantity

5.2A 'Of' after quantifiers ('a lot of', 'some of', etc.)
1 a lot of G 2 a small amount of G 3 a lot of S
4 – G 5 – G 6 any of S 7 a couple of G
8 plenty of G 9 plenty of G **10** plenty of S
11 – G **12** None of S 13 – G **14** Some of S
15 a bit of G

5.2B When to use quantifiers without 'of': 'I've got a lot'
Possible answers
1 Yes, there are a couple. 2 Yes, I bought a bit.
3 Yes, we've got a lot. 4 Yes, there's plenty.
5 Yes, there were lots. 6 Yes, there's a lot.

5.2C 'More' and 'less' after quantifiers: 'some more', 'a little less'
1 much less 2 any more 3 many more
4 much less 5 Lots more 6 some more
7 plenty more 8 a lot less 9 no fewer
10 much more **11** a lot more 12 much more

5.2D Context
1 many 2 plenty of 3 millions of 4 number
5 A lot of 6 Much 7 most 8 much 9 many
10 A lot of **11** bit of 12 number of

5.3 Uses of 'some', 'any', 'no' and 'none'

5.3A 'Somelany' or zero in relation to quantity

1 (-) 2 some 3 (-) 4 some 5 some 6 any 7 (-)
8 any 9 (-) **10** some 11 (-) 12 some or any
13 (-) Some could be used here to mean **e.g.** 'money that hasn't been given to you' [> 5.38, note 4]
14 some **15** any **16** (-)

5.3B Four basic uses of 'some' and 'any'

1 some 2 some 3 some 4 Some 5 any 6 any
7 any **8 any**

5.3C 'Not ... any', 'no' and 'none'

1 There ***aren't any buses*** after ***12.30.***
2 We've got ***none.***
3 I'm ***no accountant,*** but these figures are wrong.
4 There's ***no explanation*** for this.

5.3D Other uses of 'some' and 'any'

1 f 2 e 3 b **4** g 5 d **6** c 7 a

5.3E Context

1 (-) 2 (-) 3 (-) 4 (-) 5 no 6 (-) 7 (-) 8 (-)
9 (-) **10** (-) 11 (-) **12** some (or any) **13** some
14 (-)

5.4 'Much', 'many', 'a lot of', '(a) few', '(a) little', 'fewer', 'less'

5.4A Basic uses of 'much', 'many' and 'a lot of'

1 a lot of 2 much 3 much 4 many 5 a lot of
6 many

5.4B Other common uses of 'much', 'many' and 'a lot of'

1 Much 2 Many 3 much 4 many 5 much
6 many 7 much 8 many

5.4C 'Few', 'a few', 'little', 'a little'

1 few 2 a little 3 little 4 a few 5 a few 6 a little
7 few 8 little

5.4D 'Fewer' and 'less'

1 less ... fewer (or ***less,*** informal) 2 fewer (or ***less,*** informal) 3 fewer (or ***less,*** informal) 4 less 5 less
6 less

5.4E Context

1 few 2 many 3 A lot of ***(fewer*** is also possible here, but not intended) 4 fewer 5 much 6 a little
7 a lot of ***(a little*** is also possible) 8 a few ***(a lot of*** is also possible)

5.5 'Both' and 'all'

5.5A 'Bothlboth the' and **'all/all** the' with nouns

1 Both (the) 2 All 3 All the 4 All 5 All the
6 All the 7 Both (the) 8 All 9 Both (the)
10 Both (the)

5.5B 'Both' and 'all': word order with verbs

1 The customers ***are all complaining.***
2 The patients ***both had*** appointments at 10.
3 The directors ***have both retired.***
4 Our secretaries ***can both speak*** French.
5 The customers ***should all have complained.***
6 The boys ***both had*** haircuts.
7 The pupils ***may all leave*** now.
8 The students ***all wrote*** good essays.
9 Our employees ***all work*** too hard.
10 The children ***must ali go home*** early.
11 The children here ***all learn*** German.

5.5C 'Both' and 'all': word order with pronouns

1 ***All of us*** took 2 ***Both of them*** turned 3 I know ***both of you*** 4 She's interested in ***both of them***
5 ***All of it*** went 6 She's concerned about ***all of us***
7 ***All of you*** filled

5.5D 'None of' and 'neither of'

1 None of the passengers 2 Neither of us waslwere [> 5.7C, note 2] 3 Neither of the tyres needed
4 None of us knew

5.5E Context

1 All 2 us 3 us 4 all the 5 all 6 All the 7 all
8 them 9 both/both the **10** both 11 Both
12 them 13 them 14 both 15 them

5.6 'All (the)', '(althe) whole', 'each' and 'every'

5.6A 'All (the)' compared with '(althe) whole'

1 all my hair 2 the whole situation 3 All the money
4 the whole truth 5 the whole story
6 a whole century

5.6B 'All' compared with 'everyoneleverybody' and 'everything'

1 everyone 2 Everyone 3 Everything 4 All 5 All
6 Everyone 7 Everyone ... all 8 Everything 9 all
10 everything

5.6C 'Each' and 'every'

1 every 2 each 3 every 4 every 5 each
6 every 7 eachlevery 8 everyleach 9 Eachlevery
10 each 11 each 12 every 13 each
14 every/each

5.6D Context

1 whole 2 Everyone 3 each 4 Each 5 each
6 all 7 whole 8 every 9 everything

5.7 'Another', '(the) other(s)', 'either', 'neither', 'each (one of)'

5.7A 'Another', 'other', 'others', 'the other', 'the others'

1 the other 2 the other 3 others 4 another
5 the next 6 another/the other ... the other
7 another 8 other 9 the others

5.7B 'Either' and 'neither' + singular nouns

1 Either 2 Neither 3 either 4 neither 5 either
6 neither

5.7C 'Each of', etc.

1 Another of the teaspoons 2 Neither of the roadmaps is/are 3 Any of the roadmaps 4 Either of the roads leads/lead 5 Each of the paintings
6 Neither of the boys is/are 7 either of the secretaries 8 each of the porters.

5.7D 'One of'

One can be deleted in numbers: 2, **4,** 5

5.7E Context

1 other 2 Some 3 others 4 Either 5 one 6 One
7one 8 one 9 one **10** the other

6 Adjectives

6.1 Formation of adjectives

6.1A Adjectives formed with suffixes: 'enjoylenjoyable'

1 attractive 2 manageable 3 hesitant 4 energetic
5 Victorian 6 reddish 7 boastful 8 permissible
9 humorous

6.1 B Adjectives formed with prefixes: 'possible/impossible'

1 dishonest 2 illegal 3 irresponsible
4 unimaginable **5** incapable 6 uncooked
7 impractical 8 pre-war

6.1C Compound adjectives of measurement, etc.: 'a twenty-year-old man'

1 a two-million-pound office-block 2 a seventy-year-old woman 3 a two-day conference 4 an eighty-hectare farm 5 a three-day journey 6 a five-kilo bag 7 a three-litre engine 8 a fifty-pound note
9 a twenty-mile fence 10 a fifty-kilometre tunnel

6.1 D Context

1 illegal 2 17-year-old boy 3 impossible
4 an eight-hour lesson 5 careful 6 hesitant
7 wonderful 8 energetic 9 reddish **10** setting

6.2 Position of adjectives

6.2A Form and position of most adjectives

1 is big 2 are clever 3 is hardworking 4 are busy
5 are well-behaved

6.28 Adjectives that can change in meaning before a noun or after 'be'

Write 1: 1 an old friend 2 to me by my late uncle
3 a faint line 4 heavy 5 a heavy smoker

Write 2: 1 b (fine silk), 2 b (is fine), 3 e (I'm going to be sick), 4 c (very ill) 5 d (in the early 1960s)
6 a (a sick woman)

6.2C Adjectives before and after nouns with a change of meaning

I b 2 h 3 d 4 h **5** f 6 g 7 a 8 i **9** e **10** c

6.2D Context

1 beautiful/lovely 2 young 3 lovely
4 polished/shiny 5 pleased 6 shiny/polished
7 quick-drying 8 alive 9 asleep **10** complete
11 poor 12 big 13 fresh 14 tall 15 fast

6.3 Adjectives that behave like nouns; '-ed/ing' endings

6.3A 'The' (etc.) + adjective + noun: 'the blind'

Write 1: 1 a poor man 2 unemployed people
3 a young woman 4 an elderly man
5 a sick woman 6 healthy people

Write 2: 1 The rich ... the poor 2 the unemployed
3 the deaf 4 The old **5** the injured 6 the dead
7 the elderly 8 The healthy 9 the sick
10 The blind ... the sighted

6.38 Adjectives ending in '-ed' and '-ing': 'interested/interesting'

1 We were *amazed* by the coincidence.
2 The journey was *tiring.*
3 Sylvia was *upset* by the experience.
4 The experience was *upsetting* (for us).
5 Gloria was *enchanting.*
6 Gloria was *enchanted* (by me).
7 The children were *delightful.*
8 We were *delighted* by the children.
9 The new building is *impressive.*
10 Everybody is *impressed* by the new building.

6.3C Context

1 the rich 2 the poor 3 shocked 4 embarrassed
5 the old 6 The blind 7 the sighted 8 The deaf
9 The unemployed **10** The healthy **11** the sick
12 the young 13 depressed 14 distressed
15 distressing **16** depressing **17** the living
18 the dead

6.4 Adjectives after 'be', 'seem'; word order of adjectives

6.4A 'Look good' compared with 'play well'
1 nicely 2 nice 3 badly 4 bad 5 good 6 well
7 smoothly 8 smooth

6.4B Word order: two-word and three-word nouns: 'a teak kitchen cupboard'
1 a cotton shirt 2 a cotton summer shirt 3 a wire rake 4 a kitchen clock 5 a plastic kitchen clock

6.4C Word order: past participle + noun: 'a handmade cupboard'
Possible answers:
1 a worn cotton shirt 2 a handmade cotton summer shirt 3 a broken wire rake 4 a damaged kitchen clock 5 an unused plastic kitchen clock

6.4D Word order: adjective + noun: 'a big round table'

1. a cheap white Taiwanese clock radio for my bedside table.
2. a second-hand well-maintained sports car with a low mileage.
   or a well-maintained second-hand sports car.
3. a beautiful antique English polished mahogany dining-table.
   or. a beautiful antique polished English mahogany dining-table.
4. a pair of grey and red American canvas trainers which I can use for jogging.
5. a small old stone-built country cottage.
6. a pink and white cotton summer dress for my holiday.

6.4E Context
1 Expensive Italian handmade leather shoes (or Expensive handmade Italian leather shoes)
2 beautiful old pair 3 back doorstep 4 large friendly dog (exceptionally, size comes before the general adjective here) 5 badly 6 good 7 good
8 remaining Italian shoe 9 unchewed Italian shoe
10 red fur-lined slippers

6.5 The comparison of adjectives

6.5A Common comparative and superlative forms: 'cold – colder – coldest'

1. My room's *bigger* than yours. It's the biggest in the house.
2. My room's colder than yours. It's the coldest in the house.
3. My garden's nicerthan yours. It's the nicest in the street.
4. My desk's tidierthan yours. It's the tidiest in the office.

6.5B Adjectives with two or more syllables: 'clever', 'expensive'

1. She's *happier/more* happy than I am.
   She's the happiestlmost happy person I have ever met.
2. His work was more careless than mine.
   It was the most careless (work) in the class.
3. This problem is *simpler/more* simple than that one.
   It's the *simplest/the* most simple (problem) in the book.
4. This watch is more expensive than that one.
   It's the most expensive (watch) in the shop.
5. This engine is *quieter/more* quiet than mine.
   It's the *quietest/most* quiet (engine) ever built.

6.5C Comparative and superlative forms often confused: **'older/elder'**
1 farther/further 2 oldest 3 worse 4 lesser
5 latest 6 further 7 well 8 last 9 oldest
10 smaller **11** less **12** older 13 mostlmore
14 better 15 best **16** farthestlfurthest **17** oldest
18 elder/older 19 least 20 most

6.5D Context
1 nearerlnearest (We can sometimes use superlatives for 'only two' [> LEG 6.28].) 2 biggest 3 strongest
4 further/farther (or furthestlfarthest) 5 smaller, i.e. 'of the two' (or smallest, i.e. 'I have ever seen')
6 weaker, i.e. 'of the two' (or weakest, i.e. 'I have ever seen') 7 the most violent 8 smallest
9 biggest **10** last **11** best **12** oldest

7 Adverbs

7.1 Adverbs of manner

7.1A Adverbs with and without '-ly': 'carefully', 'fast'

1 badly **2** hard **3** fast **4** better **5** airmail
6 suddenly **7** rudely **8** early **9** best **10** gladly
11 quickly **12** eagerly **13** last **14** high
15 carefully **16** late **17** bravely **18** near **19** wide
20 monthly

7.1B Two forms and different meanings: 'hard/hardly'

1 hard **2** hardly **3** last **4** lastly **5** lately **6** late
7 highly **8** high **9** justly **10** just **11** near
12 nearly

7.1C Adjectives which end in '-ly': 'friendly'

1 in a cowardly way/manner/fashion **2** quickly **3** loudly/loud **4** in a silly way/manner/fashion **5** in a lively way/manner/fashion **6** slowly **7** badly **8** in a motherly way/manner/fashion **9** in a lovely way/manner/fashion **10** carefully **11** in a sickly way/manner/fashion **12** in an unfriendly way/manner/fashion

7.1D Context

1 Last **2** important **3** early **4** carefully **5** best
6 best **7** far **8** fast **9** past **10** beautiful
11 in a silly way/manner/fashion **12** quickly
13 rapidly **14** cheap/cheaply **15** full
16 hurriedly **17** new

7.2 Adverbs of time

7.2A Points of time: 'Monday', 'this morning'

Write 1:

1	*yesterday*	today	*tomorrow*
2	*yesterday morning*	this morning	*tomorrow morning*
3	*yesterday at noon*	at noon	*tomorrow at noon*
4	*yesterday afternoon*	this afternoon	*tomorrow afternoon*
5	*yesterday evening*	this evening	*tomorrow evening*
6	*last night*	tonight	*tomorrow night*
7	*last Monday*	this Monday	*next Monday*
8	*last January*	this January	*next January*
9	*last week*	this week	*next week*
10	*last year*	this year	*next year*

Write 2:

1 She is arriving *this morning.*
2 I can see him *today.*
3 She arrived *last night.*
4 I'm expecting her *tomorrow night.*
5 I'll be home *tonight.*
6 You can make an appointment *this afternoon.*
7 You can see me *the day after tomorrow.*
8 She left *yesterday evening.*
9 You can see me *the day after tomorrow in the morning.*
10 You can come to my office *at noon/at midday (today).*
11 He left *yesterday morning.*
12 She'll phone *tomorrow afternoon.*

7.2B 'Still' and 'yet'

1 The children are *still* at the cinema.
2 I haven't met your brother *yet.*/I *haven't yet* met your brother./I *still* haven't met your brother.
3 Jim *still* works for the same company.
4 Has she phoned you *yet*? No, not *yet.*
5 The new law hasn't come into force *yet.*/The new law hasn't *yet* come into force./The new law *still* hasn't come into force.

7.2C 'Already' and other adverbs of time

1 I've *already* had it, thanks./I've had it *already.*
2 I haven't received an invitation to the party *yet.*/ I haven't *yet* received an invitation to the party.
3 I have *already* received an invitation to the party./ I have received an invitation to the party *already.*
4 Have you finished eating *yet*?/Have you *already* finished eating/finished eating *already*?
5 Haven't you finished eating *yet*?

7.2D Context

1 This week **2** yet **3** still **4** already **5** Yesterday
6 immediately **7** Then

7.3 Adverbial phrases of duration

7.3A 'Since', 'for' and 'ago'

Write 1:

1 *Since* when have ...
2 ... a week *ago.*
3 ... seven months *ago.*
4 ... haven't seen her *since (last week).*
5 ... been home *since* 1987.
6 How long *ago* did ...

Write 2:
1 ... *for* five years ...
2 ... here since 1984.
3 ... him for six years.
4 ... a letter for weeks.
5 ... a letter since last week.
6 ... jazz since I was a boy.

7.3B 'Till' (or 'until') and 'by'
1 till 2 till 3 by **4** till 5 by 6 by **7** till

7.3C 'During', 'in' and 'for'
1 during /in 2 during 3 duringlin 4 duringlin
5 duringlin 6 for 7 during 8 during 9 during
10 duringlin **11** duringlin 12 for

7.3D Context
1 ago 2 For 3 since 4 during (or in) 5 since
6 till 7 by **8** till **9** by **10** during **11** for **12** till

7.4 Adverbs of frequency

7.4A Position of adverbs of frequency ('often') in affirmatives and questions
Possible answers
1 I am generally late.
2 I was usually late for work.
3 I can always tell the difference between the two.
4 I would never have been able to find a job like yours.
5 You seldom tried hard enough.
6 You sometimes got good marks at school.
7 Are you often late?
8 Have you always lived in this town?
9 Did you ever get good marks at school?

7.48 The position of adverbs of frequency in negative statements
1 Public transport isn't always reliable.
2 He wasn't often late when he worked here.*/He* often wasn't ...
3 She doesn't usually arrive on time.*/She* usually doesn't ...
4 She sometimes doesn't arrive on time.
5 We don't normally worry if the children are late. Or We normally don't ...
6 You hardly ever phone.
7 We don't generally *complain./We* generally don't ...
8 You're sometimes not at home when I phone./You sometimes aren't ...

7.4C Adverbs of frequency at the beginning of a sentence
Ia) I often bring work home from the office.
b Often, I bring work home from the office.
2a) John normally leaves home before his wife does.
b) Normally, John leaves home before his wife does.
3a) I have frequently forgotten to lock the back door.
b) Frequently, I have forgotten to lock the back door.
4a) I *usually* know when to wake up.
b) Usually, I know when to wake up.
5a) I'm generally the one who pays the bills.
b) Generally, I'm the one who pays the bills.
6a) The traffic is often heavy in the mornings.
b) Often, the traffic is heavy in the mornings.
7a) We sometimes have power cuts.
b) Sometimes, we have power cuts.
8a) There are often complaints about the service.
b) Often, there are complaints about the service.

7.4D Context
1 Have you ever forgotten ...?
2 Don't say you never have!
3 We can't always be careful ...
4 ... most of us must occasionally have left something ...
5 ... who never forgets anything.
6 ... a year are regularly dealt with ...
7 People don't normally *carry/normally* don't carry .../Normally, people don't carry ...
8 The things people most often *lose/lose* most often
9 But sometimes there are items/there are sometimes ...
10 Can you ever imagine ... (*or:* ... and not ever claiming it?)
11 Prams and pushchairs are often lost.*/Often,* prams and pushchairs ...
12 ... people frequently forget false teeth ...
13 Yet they often *do*!/Yet often they do!

7.5 Adverbs of degree

7.5A The two meanings of 'quite'
1 The film was quite good ('less than')
2 The exhibition was quite amazing. ('completely')
3 Pam's quite wonderful! ('completely')
4 The play was quite awful. ('completely')
5 I quite enjoyed my holiday. ('less than')
6 I quite like snails. ('less than')

7.58 'Fairly'

1 quite ('complimentary')/fairly ('less complimentary')
2 quite ('completely')
3 quite ('completely')
4 quite ('complimentary')/fairly ('less complimentary')
5 quite ('completely')
6 quite ('completely')

7.5C 'Rather'

1 quite ('completely')/rather ('inclined to be')
2 quite ('completely')
3 quite ('completely')/rather ('inclined to be')
4 quite ('completely')
5 quite ('less than')/rather ('inclined to be')

7.5D 'Much', 'any', 'far' and 'a lot' as adverbs of degree

1 muchlany **2** muchlfarla lot **3** muchlfarla lot
4 muchlfar 5 any/much 6 muchlany 7 much
8 muchlfar **9** muchlany **10** muchlfarla lot

7.5E Context

Possible answers
1 quite late **2** rather tired **3** fairly middle-aged
4 rather a good meal 5 quite unaware 6 any more
7 anylmuch use **8** rather a good idea **9** quite dim

7.6 Intensifiers

7.6A 'Very', 'too' and 'very much'

Write **1:**
1 *very* ill **2** *very* much faster **3** *too* fast for me
4 *very* (or *too)* good **5** *too* expensive **6** *very* (or *very* much) mistaken 7 *very* much interested
8 *very* much **9** *very* much admired **10** the *very* best
11 *too* intelligent **12** *too* cold **13** I *very* much like
14 *very* much faster **15** *very* late **16** *too* late
17 *very* much missed **18** *too* much pocket money
19 *very* much **20** *very* much alone

Write **2:**
1 very much **2** too much **3** very **4** very much
5 very 6 very 7 too much **8** too much **9** too
10 too **11** very much **12** very or too

7.68 Adverbs in place of 'very': 'extremely happy', 'fast asleep'

Possible answers
1 awfully **2** terribly **3** greatly **4** extremely
5 terribly 6 wide 7 deeply **8** extremely **9** really
10 richly **11** painfully **12** awfully **13** terribly
14 awfully **15** terribly **16** extremely **17** extremely
18 fast **19** bitterly **20** terribly **21** badly
22 extremely **23** really **24** extremely

7.6C Context

Possible answers
1 too **2** very **3** fast **4** very much 5 painfully
6 too 7 really/very much **8** extremely
9 Much **10** richly

7.7 Focus adverbs

7.7A 'Even', 'only', 'just' and 'simply' for 'focusing'

Possible answers
1 I understood his lecture, but no one else did.
2 I listened, but I didn't take notes.
3 I didn't understand anyone else's lecture./I understood his lecture, but I didn't understand anything else.
4 Set the table in a simple manner.
5 I understood it, but with some difficulty./... but I didn't understand anything else.
6 I didn't understand anyone else's lecture./I understood his lecture, but I didn't understand anything else.
7 I understood it, but with some difficulty.

7.78 Two meanings of 'too'

1 It's too hot.
2 ... and it's hot, too.
3 ... and I went to the supermarket, too.
4 It was too far.
5 It was too expensive.
6 ... and expensive, too

7.7C 'Too' and 'not either'

1 too **2** too **3** either **4** too **5** either 6 either
7 either **8** too

7.7D 'Also' and 'as well'

1 she can *also* sing **2** I have *also* had a shower
3 he *also* writes TV scripts **4** he will *also* be tried
5 you should *also* have written 6 I *also* have to file some letters 7 I'd *also* like some sandwiches
8 he *also* owns the flat **9** we *also* export a lot
10 it's *also* too expensive

7.7E Context

1 ...she didn't leave any jewels, *either* **2** *Even* my mother was surprised **3** ... she had some rings and some lovely necklaces, *too* **4** I saw them *only* once/I *only* saw them once ... **5** ... in the bedrooms, in the bathroom, and in the attic *as well* 6 Millie was very careful and was *also* afraid of burglars 7 ... we'd better take all the food in the deep freeze, *too*
8 ... the goose was full of jewels and there were some gold coins, *too!*

7.8 Viewpoint adverbs, connecting adverbs and inversion

7.8A Viewpoint adverbs

1 d **2** c 3 b 4 e 5 a 6 f 7 h 8 g **9** i

7.8B Connecting adverbs

1 h 2 a 3 f 4 b **5** g **6** c 7 d 8 e

7.8C Inversion after 'negative adverbs', etc.

1 *Never has there been such a display of strength* by the workers.
2 *Only later did I realize* what had happened.
3 *On no account should you sign* the document.
4 *In no circumstances should you answer* the door when I'm out.
5 *So old was the papyrus,* we didn't dare to touch it.

7.8D Context

1 is 2 has there been 3 According to 4 However 5 agreeably **6** Moreover 7 In brief 8 Ultimately

8 Prepositions, adverb particles and phrasal verbs

8.1 Prepositions, adverb particles and conjunctions

8.1A Words we can use either as prepositions or as adverbs

1 Run across the road. Run across now.
2 Climb over the wall. Climb over now.
3 Come inside the house. Come inside now.
4 Go down the hill. Go down now.
5 Go up the ladder. Go up now.
6 Run past the window. Run past now.

8.1 B Words we can use only as prepositions or only as adverbs

Possible answers

1 We waited at the station.
2 We went to the beach.
3 We jumped back. (no object possible)
4 We climbed out. (no object possible)
5 We drove away. (no object possible)
6 We ran into the building.
7 We ran out of the building.
8 We went upwards. (no object possible)

8.1C Words we can use either as prepositions or conjunctions

Possible answers

1 ... before breakfast/before I have had breakfast.
2 ... after work/after I have finished work.
3 ... till 4 o'clock/till you arrive.
4 ... since Monday/since I arrived on Monday.

8.1 D Object pronouns after prepositions: 'between you and me'

1 me 2 us 3 them 4 us 5 us 6 me

8.1 E Context

1 *in* one boot (preposition) 2 *in* the afternoon (preposition) 3 *for* the day (preposition) 4 *in* his police car (preposition) 5 go *by* (particle) 6 sat *up* (particle) 7 *in* a blue car (preposition) 8 drove *past* (particle) **9** *out of* the boot (preposition) 10 *round* the town (preposition) 11 *on top of* the police car (preposition) 12 no attention *to* it (preposition) 13 *in front* of her (preposition) 14 *in* the boot (preposition) 15 *from* the boot (prepostion) 16 *of* a strange noise (preposition) 17 *in* the back of this car (preposition)

8.2 Prepositions of movement and position Prepositions of time

8.2A 'At a point', 'in an area' and 'on a surface'

1 at 2 at 3 in 4 in 5 in 6 at 7 at 8 in **9** in **10** in **11** in 12 in **13** at 14 at 15 in 16 in 17 at **18** in

8.2B Prepositions of time: 'at', 'on' and 'in'

1 at... on 2 in 3 on 4 in 5 on 6 In 7 at... at 8 At **9** in **10** in **11** on 12 At 13 at **14** in 15 on

8.2C Context

1 in 2 in 3 In 4 in 5 in **6** to 7 to 8 at 9 from **10** in **11** in

8.3 Particular prepositions, particles: contrasts (1)

8.3A Prepositions, particles etc. often confused and misused

1 on/about 2 about 3 According to 4 According to 5 by/according to 6 across/over 7 across 8 over/ across 9 across **10** through **11** throughlacross 12 across/through 13 (far) away 14 away 15 because **16** because of 17 before **18** in front of **19** before/in front of 20 after **21** afterwards 22 afterwards 23 (a)round/about 24 aroundlabout 25 (a)round 26 (a)round 27 at 28 to 29 at 30 against 31 at 32 at 33 behind/at the back 34 back 35 at the back of/behind 36 back 37 back 38 back 39 back 40 behind **41** back

8.38 **Context**

1 across 2 According to 3 at 4 away 5 in front of 6 behind 7 because 8 after 9 about **10** before **11** on (or about) 12 at 13 about

8.4 Particular prepositions, particles: contrasts (2)

8.4A Prepositions, particles, etc. often confused and misused

1 beside 2 besides 3 Besides 4 between 5 between 6 among 7 but forlexcept for 8 except (for)/but (for) 9 Except for/But for **10** except (for)/but (for) **11** but 12 by/near 13 near/not far from **14** on/by 15 On **16** past/by ***17*** *past/by* ***18*** by ***19*** *past/by* ***20*** past ***21*** by 22 by 23 by 24 withlwithout 25 downlup 26 under 27 overlunder 28 due to 29 owing to **30** owing to **31** like 32 As 33 as 34 like 35 like 36As 37As **38** like 39as **40** like **41** like

8.48 **Context**

1 As 2 without 3 due 4 pastlby 5 downlup 6 beside/by 7 among 8 between 9 by **10** like **11** except 12 without 13 by

8.5 Particular prepositions, particles: contrasts (3)

8.5A Prepositions, particles, etc. often confused and misused

1 of/out of 2 from 3 from 4 with 5 of 6 off 70n 8in **9** in **10** on **11** out of **12** out of **13** outside **14** outside 15 without **16** with 17 with **18** with 19 withlwithout 20 without **21** with 22 with 23 above/over 24 on top of 25 overlabove 26 overlabove 27 above 28 over 29 above 30 above **31** over 32 under 33 under 34 underneath/under/below 35 below 36 below/ under 37 below/under/underneath 38 under 39 with 40 without **41** with 42 in 43 in 44 with 45 of 46 of

8.58 **Context**

1 of 2 In 3 of/out of 4 of 5 off 6 overlabove **7** out of 8in **9** of **10** on top of **11** with 12 above 13 in **14** on top of 15 below **16** in/with

8.6 Phrasal verbs: Type 1, verb + preposition (transitive)

8.68 **Type** 1: **Verb + preposition + object, non-idiomatic: 'look at the camera'**

1 withlto 2 from 3 on 4 of 5 from 6 between 7 about 8 on 9 at **10** for **11** at 12 for **13** with **14** about **15** to **16** with **17** after **18** for **19** in 20 with 21 of 22 in 23 in 24 for

8.6C Type 1: **Verb + object + preposition + object, non-idiomatic: 'tell me about it'**

1 for 2 of 3 from 4 to 5 in 6 about 7 against 8 fromlinto 9 for **10** of **11** with 12 for 13 of **14** to **15** for **16** from

8.6D Type 1: **Verb + preposition + object, idiomatic: 'get over an illness'**

1 f 2i **3** c 41 **5** n **6** p 7t 8s **9** h **10** m Ila 12q 13r 14k **15** d 16b **17** g 18j **19** o 20e

8.6E Context

1 at 2 out of/from 3 at 4 from 5 for 6 in 7 in 8at **9** to **10** for Ilof 120n **13** of 14to 15 of

8.7 Phrasal verbs: Type 2, verb + particle (transitive)

8.7A Type 1 **and Type** 2 **phrasal verbs compared**

1 (-) 2 (-) 3 turn off the gas 4 (-) 5 given out the papers 6 (-) 7 Write down the information 8 (-) 9 (-) **10** (-)

8.78 **Type** 2: **Particles that extend the verb: 'write down'**

1 f 2b 3k 4n **5** j **6** p 7h 8s **9** c **10** q Ilt 12r 13e **14** o **15** d 16i 17m 181 **19** g 20a

8.7C Type 2: **Verb + particle + object, idiomatic: 'bring about a change'**

le 2i 31 4n **5** j 6f 7k **8** m 90 **10** b Ila 12d 13h **14** g **15** c

8.7D Context

1 (-) 2 (-) 3 puts a business suit *on* 4 (-)
5 put his shirt and tie *on* 6 picked the receiver *up*
7 (-) 8 (-) 9 check some figures *over* 10 (-)
11 cutting expenses *down* 12 put the meeting *off*
13 writing some notes *down* 14 (-) 15 put *down* the receiver 16 (-) 17 (-) 18 (-) 19 (-) 20 had his red shorts *on*

8.8 Phrasal verbs: (Type 3, verb + particle (intransitive) (Type 4, verb + particle (transitive)

8.8A Type 3: Verb + particle, intransitive, non-idiomatic: 'hurry up'

Possible answers
1 Come along. 2 Come away. 3 Come in.
4 Come up. 5 Go away. 6 Go in. 7 Go up.
8 Hurry along. 9 Hurry up. 10 Hurry away.
11 Sit down. 12 Sit up. 13 Stand up.
14 Come down. 15 Hurry in. 16 Go down.

8.88 Type 3: Verb + particle, intrasitive, idiomatic: 'break down'

I b 2h **3** j 4e **5** m 6f 7q 8 0 **9** c/d **10** p
I l i 12n 13a **14** l **15** k **16** c/d **17** g

8.8C Type 4: Verb + particle + preposition + object, non-idiomatic: 'walk up to the top'

Possible answers
1 The lift takes a long time to *come down from* the top floor.
2 We'd better try to *drive on to* Calcutta before sunset.
3 I *hurried over to* Tom's as soon as I heard the news.
4 *Run along to* the shop for me and get a loaf of bread.
5 It's best to *stay away from* the town centre on Friday nights.

8.8D Verb + particle + preposition + object, idiomatic: 'put up with it'

I e **2** l 3b 4t **5** i 6n **7** g 8k **9** q 10s
I I p **12** j **13** o 14a **15** r 16d 17f 18h
19 m **20** c

8.8E Context

1 put *up with* 2 lie *down* 3 stay *up* 4 come *about*
5 lie *in* 6 catch *up on* 7 looks *down on* 8 face *up to* 9 let me *in on* 10 coughed *up* **11** cheer *up*
12 look forward *to*

9 Verbs, verb tenses, imperatives

9.1 The simple present and present progressive tenses (1)

9.1A Pronunciation and spelling of the 3rd person, simple present

1 He *laughs* /s/
2 She *drops* /s/
3 She *drinks* /s/
4 She *forgets* /s/
5 He *loses* /ɪz/
6 She *manages* /ɪz/
7 He *passes* /ɪz/
8 She *rushes* /ɪz/
9 She *saws* /z/
10 He *wears* /z/
11 She *loves* /z/
12 He *sees* /z/
13 He *pays* /z/
14 She *cries* /z/

9.1 8 Uses of the simple present tense: 'I work/he works'

1 boils 2 rises 3 works 4 wear 5 eat 6 works
7 go 8 drives 9 gets **10** eat **11** leaves
12 starts **13** see 14 know ... agree **15** hope
16 says

9.1C Stative and dynamic verbs

The following need ticks: la, 2a, 3b, 4b, 5a, 6a, 6b, 7a, 7b, 8a, 8b
1b I envy **2b** I understand **3a** You know **4a** Does he seem **5b** I prefer

9.1D Context

1 Are you sitting 2 hope 3 are studying 4 have
5 does not include 6 try 7 regard 8 want

9.2 The simple present and present progressive tenses (2)

9.2A Spelling: how to add '-ing' to a verb: 'waitlwaiting'

1 making 2 eating 3 writing 4 forgetting
5 putting 6 travelling 7 catching 8 dying
9 carrying

9.28 Uses of the present progressive tense: 'I am workinglhe is working'

1 I am working (1) 2 are you drinking? (1) 3 is still waiting (I) 4 is hurrying (I) 5 are constantly panicking (4) 6 are becoming (2) 7 is John doing ... is riding (2) 8 are enjoying (1) 9 is always upsetting (4) 10 is he arriving (3) 11 is forever forgetting (4)
12 am having (2) 13 is always lying (4)
14 is running (3)

9.2C The simple present and the present progressive tenses in typical contexts

1 you take ... and sort ... you file
(Spoken or written explanation or demonstration)

2 We hope you are enjoying ... We sunbathe and go ... Next week we're going
(Letter or postcard from someone who is on holiday)

3 The action takes place ... goes up ... are sitting ... They are arguing
(Review of a play in a newspaper or on the radio)

4 The plumber is putting ... are rewiring ... is building
(Letter to, or telephone conversation with a friend)

5 I think ... you are doing ... I doubt ... knows ... you tell me
(Letter to a friend or relation in reply to a phone call or a letter)

6 Pym passes ... runs ... shoots ... pushes
(Spoken commentary on a football match on TV or radio)

9.2D Context

1 am studying 2 am working 3 don't have to 4 opens 5 closes 6 are always coming in 7 asking 8 am learning 9 enjoy/am enjoying 10 find/am finding **11** use 12 are 13 are 14 are always finding **15** think **16** love 17 miss/am missing

9.3 The simple past tense

9.3A The past form and pronunciation of regular verbs

1 waited /ɪd/ 2 cleaned /d/ 3 played /d/
4 posted /ɪd/ 5 smiled /d/ 6 stopped /t/
7 dreamt /t/, or dreamed /d/ 8 burnt /t/, or burned /d/
9 cried /d/ 10 watched /t/ **11** laughed /t/
12 obeyed /d/ 13 hurried /d/ 14 lied /d/
15 finished /t/ 16 included /ɪd/ 17 locked /t/
18 travelled /d/

9.38 Irregular past forms

1 saw 2 understood 3 knew 4 met 5 found **6** left **7** wrote **8** sold **9** was 10 had **11** kept 12 ate

9.3C Uses of the simple past tense: 'I workedlhe worked'

1 I *worked* as a civil servant *five years ago.*
2 I last playedfootball *when I was 14.*
3 The Carters *left* for their summer holiday *last night.*
4 John *arrived at* ***4.***
5 I last *saw* 'Gone with the Wind' *recently.*
6 I/We *waitedat* the airport *till they arrived.*
7 Sally *told* me/us about her engagement *when she was here.*

9.3D Context

1 claimed 2 attacked 3 was 4 had 5 chased 6 jumped 7 believed 8 called 9 set out 10 offered **11** captured 12 visited

9.4 The simple past and past progressive tenses

9.4A Irregular verbs with the same form in the present as in the past: 'putlput'

1 past 2 present 3 past 4 past 5 present 6 present or past 7 past 8 past 9 past 10 past **11** present or past 12 past 13 present 14 past

9.48 Uses of the past progressive tense: 'I was working'

1 was not listening 2 were enjoying 3 Were they playing 4 was gardening 5 Were you watching 6 was raining 7 was wondering 8 Were you still working 9 were living **10** was always doing **11** were constantly improving 12 Were you reading 13 was getting

9.4C The simple past and the past progressive in story-telling

1 It *was* just before
2 Tom *was* only 20
3 (he) *was living* with his mother (1)
4 He *was working* and *travelling* (1)
5 He *received* a mysterious letter
6 It *was addressed*
7 *... was signed ... asked*
8 as he *was dealing* ... Tom *was wondering* (3)
9 he *decided*
10 It *was* full
11 He *was just wondering* ... when a stranger *introduced* himself (2)
12 (The stranger) *said* ... when Tom *was* a baby
13 The stranger *explained* ... Bill *was*
14 Tom *was* recruited ...
15 *was already working* ... when the war *began* (2)

9.4D Context

1 was driving 2 was driving 3 saw 4 stopped 5 got out 6 was 7 looked 8 was crossing/crossed 9 went **10** noticed **11** told 12 pulled 13 pulled 14 pulled 15 thought 16 looked/was looking 17 noticed 18 gave 19 seized 20 put 21 continued

9.5 The simple present perfect and present perfect progressive

9.5A Uses of the simple present perfect tense: 'I have eaten/he has eaten'

1 have/'ve visited **2** hasl's typed **3** Have you ever eaten **4** have/'ve never quarrelled **5** haven't written **6** haven't been **7** haven't seen **8** hasl's driven **9** havel've known **10** hasl's been **11** havel've bought **12** has/'s travelled **13** Have you forgotten **14** havel've ridden **15** hasl's just flown **16** has/'s recently become **17** havel've already spoken **18** haven't drunk **19** hasn't answered **20** havel've met

9.58 The present perfect progressive tense: 'I have been eating'

1 havel've been digging **2** have you been waiting 3 havel've been standing **4** have you been learning **5** hasl's been studying **6** Have you been running? **7** have/'ve been living **8** havel've been crying **9** have the children been sleeping **10** have you been doing

9.5C The simple present perfect and the present perfect progressive compared

I a I've typed **1b** I've been typing **2a** She hasl's been cooking **2b** I've cooked **3a** We have/'ve built **3b** We havel've been building

9.5D The simple past and the simple present perfect compared

I a never read **1b** has never read **2a** had **2b** have just had **3a** Has he gone **3b** Did he go

9.5E Context

1 visited **2** told 3 asked **4** said **5** arrived **6** have been staying **7** have never visited **8** have been swimming **9** arrived **10** suggested **11** agreed **12** noticed **13** were **14** was (or informally *were)* **15** remembered **16** came **17** asked **18** waved

9.6 The simple past perfect and past perfect progressive tenses

9.6A Uses of the simple past perfect tense: 'I had worked'

1 locked/had locked ... got **2** arrived ... had finished 3 rang ... checked/had checked **4** discussed/had discussed ... wrote **5** had ... had all left **6** rang ... had already gone out **7** took ... had never seen **8** had just cleaned ... came ... shook **9** promised/had promised ... hadn't finished

9.68 Uses of the present and past perfect progressive: 'I havelhad been working'

1 had been digging **2** have been waiting (or *had been waiting* if the context is the past) 3 havelhad you been waiting **4** had been standing **5** had been studying **6** has been raining **7** had been writing **8** havelhad been ringing **9** had been painting **10** Had you been running?

9.6C The simple past perfect and past perfect progressive compared

1 had been cooking **2** had prepared **3** had been doing **4** had done **5** had done **6** had been doing

9.6D Context

1 had spent **2** had looked/had been looking 3 had not been able **4** had been **5** had been cooking **6** had prepared **7** had made **8** had baked **9** had always enjoyed/always enjoyed **10** had to **11** had lost **12** said **13** found **14** put **15** smiled **16** fished

9.7 The simple future tense

9.7A Some uses of 'will' and 'shall'

1 d **2** f **3** g **4** b **5** k 61 **7** j **8** a **9** h **10** i **11** e **12** c

9.78 'Will' and 'shall' to refer to the future

1 they'll/they will **2** They'll/They will 3 You'll/You will **4** I'll/I will/I shall **5** I will/I shall **6** you will **7** won't **8** I'll/I will/I shall **9** everything'll/ everything will **10** When'll/When will/When shall **11** They'll/They will **12** You'll/You will

9.7C Context

1 shall/will/'ll **2** shan't/won't/will not/shall not 3 shan't/won't/will not/shall not **4** will **5** shan't/won't/will not/shall not **6** will *(we shall,* but not *'My wife and I shall*') **7** shall/will/'ll **8** shall/will/'ll **9** will **10** will/shall/'ll **11** will not/won't/shan't **12** will/shall/'ll **13** will/'ll/shall **14** will/'ll/shall **15** will/'ll/shall **16** will/'ll/shall **17** will/shall

9.8 The simple future, the future progressive, the future perfect

9.8A Simple future 'I will work' and progressive 'I will be working' compared

Write 1:

1. *will be taking off* ('more polite') or *will take off* (arrangement [> 9.7B])
2. *will you be going* (referring to future time) or *will you go* (intention)
3. *you will still be working* here ('imagining')
4. They *will be sailing* (planned action) or *will sail* (more definite)
5. The President *will be meeting* (planned action) or *will meet* (more definite)
6. *will you be staying* (planned action) or *will you stay* (more definite)
7. We *will be driving* (planned action) or *will drive* (intention)
8. *will be writing* (imagining)
9. *will be circling* (imagining)
10. *will be seeing* (referring to future time) or *will see* (intention)

Write 2:
1 will you be leaving **2** we'll be leaving
3 you'll arrive **4** we'll check in **5** we'll have
6 you'll be lying *7* I'll be doing **8** we won't be sitting around

9.8B The future perfect simple and the future perfect progressive tenses
1 will have completed **2** will/shall have been waiting 3 will/shall have been living/have lived **4** will/shall have finished **5** will have left *6* will/shall have been flying *7* will have completed **8** will have been travelling/will have travelled

9.8C Context
1 will have built/will be building **2** will be circling/will circle 3 (will) probably be circling/will probably circle
4 will have established/will be establishing
5 will have increased/will be increasing *6* will be orbiting **7** will have **8** will stay/will be staying
9 will not be clearing up **10** will just be watching

9.9 'Going to' and other ways of expressing the future

9.9A Uses of the 'going to'-future compared with 'will'
1 are we going to spend **2** We're going to run out of 3 I'll stop **4** We're going to get stuck **5** We'll (or We're going to) have to walk *6* someone'll
7 It's going to rain **8** I'll wave **9** He's going to stop

9.9B 'am/is/are to', 'be about to', 'be due to'
1 are to **2** are to **3** are not to **4** is (just) about to
5 I'm (just) about to *6* is due to *7* not due to/isn't due to

9.9C The future-in-the-past
Possible answers
1 was to **2** was going to 3 would **4** was about to
5 was due to

9.9D Context
Possible answers
1 are we to do **2** We are going to/are to deliver
3 I'll just check/I'm just going to check 4 will be/is
5 are taking off/take off/are going to take off/will be taking off *6* would be/was to be/was going to be
7 would/was going to break loose **8** I'll take over

9.10 The imperative

9.10A Some uses of the imperative to express different functions
1 Do have **2** Do make **3** Do stop **4** Do hurry
5 Do try **6** Do help

9.10B The imperative to address particular people
Possible answers
1 Enjoy yourself/yourselves **2** You try **3** You make/Make ... Meg/Meg, you make **4** Somebody turn off/Turn off ... somebody **5** Nobody turn/Don't ... anybody/Don't anybody turn *6* You carry/Carry ... John! *7* Everybody sit down/Sit down, everybody
8 Everybody have/Have ... everybody **9** Don't move anybody/Nobody move!/Don't anybody move!
10 John, you/John, post/You ... John
11 Don't anybody listen/Don't listen to her, anybody!/Nobody listen to her! **12** Enjoy yourselves, children!

9.10C The imperative with question tags
Possible answers
1 Stop whistling, will you? **2** Do something useful, can't you? 3 Stop asking questions, won't you?
4 Post this letter, could you? **5** Hold this bag, would you? *6* Get me some stamps, can you? *7* Come in, won't you? **8** Take a seat, will you?

9.10D Double imperatives joined by 'and'
Possible answers

1. Come and see us soon.
2. Try and lift it./Try to lift it.
3. Sit here and wait until the doctor is ready.
4. Wait and see what will happen.

9.10E Context
1 DO **2** KEEP 3 MIND **4** ASK **5** AVOID
6 COME AND ASK **7** DON'T WASTE **8** THINK!

10 Be, Have, Do

10.1 'Be' as a full verb (1)

10.1A Some uses of the imperative of 'be': 'Be careful'

Write 1:
1 Be an angel! **2** Don't be a silly idiot! **3** Be the proud owner ... 4 Don't be a writer. 5 You be Batman and I'll be Robin.

Write 2:

1	(Do) be quiet!	Don't be noisy!
2	(Do) be careful!	Don't be careless!
3	(Do) be generous!	Don't be mean!
4	(Do) be friendly!	Don't be critical!
5	(Do) be brave!	Don't be afraid!

10.1B The use of 'aren't'
1 aren't **2** aren't **3** aren't 4 isn't 5 aren't 6 aren't 7 wasn't **8** weren't

10.1C 'Be' in the simple present and simple past
1 was **2** was ... is 3 am 4 is **5** is ... was 6 is 7 is ... was **8** are ... were 9 are ...were ... are **10** is ... is **11** are ... are 12 is **13** Is ... was... is **14** Were ... weren't ... are **15** is ... was **16** is ... was 17 was **18** is (or was)

10.1D Context
1 was **2** you're **3** aren't 4 *I'm* 5 aren't 6 You're **7** You*'re* **8** *I'm* 9 *I'm* **10** be **11** Be **12** What's **13** *I'm* **14** Don'*s* **15** be **16** Be **17** Are **18** *I'm*

10.2 'Be' as a full verb (2)

10.2A Progressive forms of 'be' for 'temporary behaviour'
The following sentences need ticks: 1, 3, 5

10.2B 'Has been', 'have been', 'had been' + adjectives and nouns
1 has/Your brother's **2** have/long've **3** have/I've 4 had/she'd 5 has/It's 6 has/She's ... has/She's 7 had/you'd **8** have/I've

10.2C 'Have been' and 'have gone'
1 has gone/he's gone **2** have beenlI've been **3** have been 4 have gone 5 have been/you've been 6 has gone/He's gone 7 has gone/He's gone **8** has been/He's been

10.2D 'Have been' with 'since' and 'for'
1 She has been waiting ...
2 I have worked/I have been working ...
3 We have lived/We have been living ...
4 How long have we been waiting ...?
5 How long has Silvia worked/been working ...?
6 How long has your brother lived/been living ...

10.2E Context
1 have gone **2** have been/They've been **3** have beenlI've been 4 have ever been/I've ever been 5 is being/She's being 6 were 7 were **8** have not been/haven't been 9 has been/She's been **10** has been/She's been **11** has been/It's been

10.3 'There' + 'be'

10.3A 'There + 'be' as a 'natural choice'
The following sentences need ticks: 1, 3, 6
2 There is a good clothes shop not far from here.
4 There was a photograph of that girl in last week's magazine.
5 There will be a new security system in operation ...
7 There is a public holiday on May 1st.
8 There will be a meeting between the two world leaders ...

10.3B 'There is', etc. compared with 'it is', etc.
1 There ... they **2** There's ... She's **3** There's ... it's 4 There'll ... He's 5 There ... It 6 There ... They 7 There's ... It's **8** There's ... It's 9 there ... it **10** there ... they

10.3C Combinations with 'there' + 'be'
1 There was **2** There are **3** Are there/Have there been ... there are/there've been – There are 4 Is there ... there is 5 There are/There will be 6 There has been/There's 7 There will be **8** There's 9 there had/has been **10** ... isn't there? **11** There seem **12** There seems/There seemed

10.3D Context
1 There had been **2** it was first opened **3** There was 4 there were 5 there were 6 They were 7 There were **8** There was **9** It was **10** There has never been **11** there never will be

10.4 Verbs related in meaning to 'be'

10.4A Certainty and uncertainty with 'be', 'seem', etc.

1 They seem (to be) very happy.
2 He seemed (to be) a genius at maths.
3 She seems to be finding the job difficult.
4 They seemed to be looking for something.
5 He seems to have been knocked out.
6 It seems (to be) very dark outside.
7 It seems to be raining very hard outside.
8 My watch seems to have stopped.

10.4B 'To be' or not 'to be'?

1 (to be) **2** (to be) **3** to be **4** (-) **5** (-) **6** (-) **7** (-) **8** (to be)

10.4C 'Process verbs' related to 'be' and 'become'

Possible answers
1 grow **2** get **3** has turned/is turning **4** goes **5** has run/is running **6** becoming **7** has come/came **8** fell **9** are wearing/have worn **10** get **11** become **12** make

10.4D Context

1 seemed/appeared **2** looked **3** smelt **4** got/became **5** seemed/appeared **6** became/got **7** seems/looks **8** feel **9** proves **10** seems

10.5 'Have' as a full verb = 'possess'; 'have got' = 'possess'

10.5A 'Have got' = 'own' and 'have got' = 'obtain'

1 have received **2** possess/own **3** possess/own **4** have obtained **5** possess/own **6** have obtained

10.5B Uses of 'have' and 'have got' to mean 'possess'

1 They have/They've got **2** I don't have/haven't got **3** Do you have/Have you got (Have you is possible, but less common) **4** My uncle had **5** I've had **6** We'll have **7** I will have had **8** she had had **9** I must have **10** he should have **11** Does your brother have/Has your brother got (Has your brother is possible but less common) **12** Will you have **13** Have you had **14** Do you have/Have you got (Have you is possible but less common)

10.5C Common uses of 'have' and 'have got'

1 Have you got/Do you have **2** have (got) **3** Have you got/Do you have **4** Have you got/Do you have **5** She has (got) **6** He has (got) **7** He has (got) **8** has (got) **9** haven't (got)/don't have **10** hasn't (got)/doesn't have **11** have you (got)/do you have **12** have (got) **13** have (got) **14** have (got) **15** has (got) on **16** had she got/did she have **17** I have (got) **18** did you last have **19** have (got) **20** has (got) **21** have (got) **22** Have you (got)/Do you have **23** have (got) **24** has (got). Note that have you is also possible, but less common, in **1**, **3**, **4** and **22.**

10.5D Context

1 to have **2** doesn't have/hasn't (got) **3** has **4** has (got) **5** has (got) **6** haven't (got)/don't have **7** has (got) **8** had (got) **9** had **10** had **11** had **12** haven't (got)/don't have

10.6 'Have' as a full verb meaning 'eat', 'enjoy', etc.

10.6A 'Have' (= 'eat', 'enjoy', etc.) compared with 'have (= 'possess')

Write 1:
1 Do you have **2** They have (got) **3** We have (got) **4** She has **5** I've just had **6** We had **7** She has (got) **8** I have **9** I don't often have **10** Have you (got) (or Do you have) **11** they had had **12** did you have

Write 2:
1 Have **2** has **3** is having **4** had **5** were having **6** have had/have been having **7** has been having (or has had) **8** had ... had **9** had had/had been having or had **10** will be having **11** will have had **12** will have had

10.6B Common 'have' + noun combinations

Write 1:
Possible answers
1 We had an awful meal at the Station Hotel.
2 I had a bad dream last night.
3 When are you going to have a haircut?
4 I have an appointment to see Mr Jay at 10.
5 Have a good trip to America!
6 We had a lovely day for the wedding.
7 You'll have a pain if you eat any more apples.
8 Our teacher has a wonderful sense of humour.

Write 2:
1 are always having fights **2** Have a look at **3** have a rest **4** have a ride **5** I had a talk to/with Jim **6** have a swim **7** have a wash **8** Have a sleep

10.6C Context

1 has (got) **2** has had **3** has (got) **4** has (got) **5** 'Has Worzel had? **6** having **7** has/is having **8** have **9** has (got) **10** has (got) **11** aren't having **12** have (got)

10.7 'Do' as a full verb

10.7A Forms and uses of 'do' as an auxiliary and as a full verb

Write 1:
1l **2**g **3**j 4h 5k 6d 7a 8f **9**m **10**c l l e
12b 13i

Write 2:
1 What are you doing? 2 ... she never does the washing up 3 No, don't do that 4 What is that flowerpot doing ...? 5 do the/their washing
6 ... when you've done that 7 How does he do it?
8 he doesn't do any reading 9 What have you done?
10 What are those suitcases doing ...? 11 I've been doing a bit of gardening 12 What's that car doing ...?
13 I've already done so.

10.78 **'Do' and 'make' compared**

do: one's best, business with someone, an experiment, research, one's hair, something for a living, an impression (= imitate), somebody a service.

make: an appointment, an arrangement, an attempt, a noise, something for a living, progress, an impression (= impress), a journey, a fortune, war.

Possible answers
1 You should always try to *do your best.*
2 I must *make an appointment* to see the dentist.
3 We *do a lot of business* with your firm.
4 We *did* a *very interesting experiment* in chemistry today.
5 *I've made an arrangement* to meet him on Thursday.
6 Mary *does research* into the causes of acid rain.
7 Mr Stuart *does my hair* once a fortnight.
8 I *made several attempts* to start the car before I phoned the garage.
9 Don't *make a noise!* We don't want to wake the children.
10 What does Tom *do for a living?* – Tom *makes toys for a living.*
11 Janet *has made excellent progress* this term.
12 He *does very funny impressions* of famous people. She *has made a good impression* in her new job.
13 Will you *do me a service* and take this to the post office?
14 He *has just made a journey* to the village where he was born.
15 You can *make a fortune* in the antiques business these days.
16 The Persians *were always making war* against the Greeks.

10.7C Context
1 did 2 don't 3 do 4 do 5 done 6 rnade
7 doing 8 do 9 make **10** do

11 Modal auxiliaries and related verbs

11.1 The two uses of modal verbs

11.1 A **The first use of modal verbs** (1)
l c 2f 3d 4a 5b 6e

11.1 8 **The first use of modal verbs** (2)
Must is not possible in the following:
2 have had to 4 had had to 5 had to
6 haven't had to 7 having to

11.1 **C The second use of modal verbs**
1 certain 2 very uncertain 3 fairly certain
4 almost certain 5 fairly certain 6 almost certain
7 fairly certain 8 very uncertain **9** almost certain

11.1 D **Context**
1 May/Can 2 must be 3 am 4 must have
5 couldn't 6 can't 7 must/can 8 have had to
9 haven't been able to 10 can/may

11.2 Uses of modals (etc.) to express ability and inability

11.2A Expressing present and past ability: 'can' and 'be able to'
1 can 2 can't 3 can 4 could/was able to ... can
5 Can ... can't 6 couldn't 7 could/was able to/ managed to 8 was able tolmanaged to 9 couldn't/ wasn't able to 10 were able tolmanaged to

11.28 **'Can/could' with verbs of perception: 'I can see'**
1 *Can* you see 2 I *can* smell 3 I *could* understand
4 *Could you* understand **5** I *can't* see **6** I *couldn't* understand

11.2C Ability in tenses other than the present and the past
1 will be able to 2 haven't been able to
3 would have been able to 4 had been able to
5 will be able to 6 being able to 7 be able to
8 had been able to

11.2D 'Can/could' in place of 'is often' and 'was often'
1 The sea *can be* 2 She *can be* 3 She *could be*
4 It *can be* 5 He *could be*

11.2E Context
1 had not been able to/had been unable to
2 could only/had only been able to 3 could
4 were able to/managed to 5 could/would be able to/would manage to 6 could/was able to/were able to
7 Can/Do

11.3 Uses of modals (etc.) to express permission and prohibition

11.3A Asking for permission with **'can', 'could',** 'may' and 'might'
Possible answers
1 Can I make myself some coffee (please)?
2 Could/May I use your/the lavatory, please?
3 I wonder if I might (possibly) see your garden?
4 Could I (possibly) make a phone call (please)?
5 Do you think I could (possibly) borrow your car?

11.3B Giving and refusing **permission/Expressing** prohibition
Possible answers
1 ***You may not*** smoke. (This notice is trying to sound polite.)
2 ***You are not allowed to*** camp or picnic here.
3 ***You are forbidden to*** fish here.
4 ***You may*** camp here.
5 This is private (property). ***You are not permitted to*** enter.
6 ***You mustn't*** lean out of the window.
7 ***You can*** leave your litter here.
8 ***You can't*** stop here.

11.3C Permission/prohibition in tenses other than present and future
1 were allowed to 2 was never allowed to 3 has only been allowed to 4 has just been allowed to
5 have not been allowed to 6 had not allowed him to

11.3D 'Can' (= ability) and 'can/could'
(= have permission, be free to)
Can is possible in the following:
2 We ***can*** go 3 She ***can*** drive 5 I ***can*** play
6 You ***can*** use

11.3E Context
Possible answers
1 Am I allowed to 2 can 3 can't 4 mustn't
5 will be allowed to 6 can't 7 could

11.4 Uses of modals (etc.) to express certainty and possibility

11.4A Certainty and possibility

Write 1:
1C 2P 3C 4P **5C** 6P 7C 8P **9C** **10P**
11C 12P 13C 14P

Write 2:
1 He ***may/might/could*** be at home now.
2 He ***may/might/could*** be at home tomorrow.
3 He ***may/might/could have been*** at home yesterday.
4 She ***may/might/could*** leave at ***9.***
5 She ***may/might/could*** leave tomorrow.
6 She ***may/might/could have*** left.
7 She ***may/might/could have*** left last night.
8 She ***may/might/could have*** left by ***9.***
9 He ***may/might/could be*** working today.
10 He ***may/might/could be*** working today.
11 He ***may/might/could have been*** working today.
12 He ***may/might/could have been*** working all day.

Write 3:
Possible answers
1 He ***may/might/could*** be at home.
2 He ***may/might/could*** have been at home.
3 He ***may/might/could*** be at home.
4 It ***may/might/could*** leave at 10.
5 It ***may/might/could*** have left at 10.
6 She ***may/might/could*** be working.
7 She ***may/might/could*** have been working.
8 She ***may/might/could*** be working.
9 She ***may/might/could*** have been working.
10 He ***may/might/could*** have had tea and toast.
11 She ***may/might/could*** have parked in the car park.
12 It ***may/might/could*** have cost £15,000.

11.4B Certain and uncertain answers to questions
Possible answers
1 (Yes,) she ***may (do).***
2 She ***might live*** in London.
3 (Yes,) he ***could have (done).***
4 He ***might have caught*** the 8.30.
5 (Yes,) they ***might be.***
6 They ***might be living*** abroad.
7 (Yes,) he ***may have (done).***
8 He ***could have finished*** work at 4.30.
9 (Yes,) ***I could (do).***
10 ***I may leave*** tomorrow.

11.4C Context
Possible answers
1 can 2 may 3 may 4 might 5 might 6 could
7 could 8 might 9 might **10** could

11.5 Uses of modals to express deduction

11.5A Certainty or deduction?

1C 2C 3C 4C **5**C 6D 7D 8D **9**D **10**D
11D 12D

11.58 Two kinds of 'must be'

1 mustn't be (O) 2 must be (O) 3 can't be (D)
4 must be (D) 5 must be (D) 6 can't be (D)
7 must be (O) 8 mustn't be (O) 9 can't be (D)
10 mustn't be (O)

11.5C 'Must have been', 'can't/couldn't have been'; 'had to be/didn't have to be'

1 must have been 2 can't/couldn't have been
3 had to be 4 did she have to be 5 didn't have to
6 didn't have to 7 must have been **8** must have been 9 can't have been **10** had to be
11 must have been 12 had to be

11.5D Context

1 didn't have to be 2 must be/must have been
3 can't be/can't have been 4 must be 5 must be
6 had to be 7 must have been imported
8 must have laid

11.6 Uses of modals for offers, requests and suggestions

11.6A Offering things and substances

Possible answers

1. ***Would you like*** a sandwich?
2. ***Wouldn't you like*** some coffee?
3. ***Would you like*** a slice of toast?
4. ***Would you like*** some potatoes?
5. ***Wouldn't you like*** an orange?
6. ***Would you like*** some fruit?

11.68 Requests for things and substances

Possible answers

1. ***Can I have*** a sandwich, please?
2. ***May I have*** some coffee, please?
3. ***Could I have*** a slice of toast, please?
4. ***May I have*** some potatoes, please?
5. ***Might I have*** an orange, please?
6. ***Could I have*** some fruit, please?

11.6C Making suggestions, inviting actions

Possible answers

1. ***Would you like to*** stay with me?
2. ***Would you like to*** join us for a meal?
3. ***Wouldn't you like to*** come on an excursion?
4. ***Would you like to*** have a holiday with us?

11.6D Requesting others to do things for you

Possible answers

1. ***Will/Would you*** hold the door open for me, please?
2. Please ***will/would you*** dial dthis number for me?
3. ***Will/Would you*** please translate dthis letter for me?
4. ***Will/Would you*** deliver some/these flowers for me, please?

11.6E Offering to do things for others

Possible answers

1. ***Shall I*** put your suitcase on the rack (for you)?
2. ***Shall I*** close the window (for you)?
3. ***Shall I*** pick those up (for you)?

11.6F Making suggestions that include the speaker

1. ***Shall we*** drive to the coast?
2. ***Shall we*** have a meal out this evening?
3. ***Shall we*** travel first class?
4. ***Shall we*** have a holiday in Bahia?

11.6G Context

1 Would you 2 Shall I 3 Will/Would you
4 Would you 5 Can I/Could I (etc.) 6 Shall we
7 Shall I 8 Will/Would you 9 Would you

11.7 Expressing wishes, etc.: 'I wish', 'if only', 'it's (high) time'

11.7A Present and past reference with 'I wish', 'if only' and 'it's (high) time'

1 present 2 present 3 present 4 past **5** past

11.78 Expressing wishes and regrets with 'I wish' and 'if only'

Possible answers

1. I wish/If only I *was/were* fit/fitter!
2. I wish/If only it *was/were* cooler!
3. I wish/If only it *wasn't/weren't* raining!
4. I wish/If only I ***had been*** less impatient/more patient!
5. I wish/If only I ***hadn't wasted*** a lot of/so much time watching TV!
6. I wish/If only they ***had*** more friends!
7. I wish/If only we ***had locked*** the back door!
8. I wish/If only he *wasn't/weren't* abroad!
9. I wish/If only she ***hadn't read*** it!
10. I wish/If only he ***had taken*** it!

11.7C 'Would' and 'could' after 'I wish' and 'if only'

1 would 2 wouldn't 3 could 4 could 5 would
6 could

11.7D 'It's (high) time' and 'It's (about) time'

Possible answers

1 It's high time they got married!
2 It's about time we went to the theatre!
3 It's high time you both left!
4 It's about time they tidied it!

11.7E Context

1 was/were **2** contained **3** opened **4** was/were **5** could be **6** had/could have

11.8 Expressing preferences: 'would rather' and 'would sooner'

11.8A Expressing personal preference with 'I'd rather'/'I'd sooner'

Write 1:
1 be **2** have been **3** have been **4** have lived **5** make **6** not have to **7** not have had to

Write 2:
1 I'd rather/sooner not. **2** I'd rather/sooner not (have been). **3** I'd rather/sooner not. **4** I'd rather/sooner not (have done).

11.8B Expressing preferences about other people's actions

1 caught **2** didn't wait up **3** hadn't done **4** asked/had asked **5** was/were **6** had been/were

11.8C 'I'd rather he didn't', etc.

1 I'd rather/sooner she *didn't*. **2** I'd rather/sooner you *hadn't*. **3** I'd rather/sooner she *hadn't*. **4** I'd rather/sooner he *didn't*. **5** I'd rather/sooner you *didn't*. **6** I'd rather/sooner he *hadn't*. **7** I'd rather/sooner they *didn't*. **8** I'd rather/sooner they *hadn't*. **9** ... I'd rather/sooner you *hadn't*. **10** ... I'd rather/sooner she *didn't*. **11** ... I'd rather/sooner he *hadn't*.

11.8D Context

1 would rather/sooner their children didn't decide
2 would rather/sooner their children chose
3 would rather/sooner do **4** would rather/sooner be
5 would rather/sooner talk, walk and behave
6 would rather/sooner be called **7** would rather/sooner have been called **8** would rather/sooner have lived **9** would rather/sooner be

11.9 'It's advisable ...'/'It's necessary ...'

11.9A 'It's advisable' —> 'It's necessary': 'a scale of choice'

1 advisable **2** necessary **3** advisable **4** advisable **5** necessary **6** advisable

11.9B 'Must', 'have to' and 'have got to'

1 must **2** have (got) to/must **3** must **4** have (got) to/must **5** have to/must always **6** MUST **7** Must **8** must

11.9C Expressing necessity in other tenses

1 He will have to **2** They have had to **3** she has been having to **4** We had already had to **5** I would have had to **6** We are having to/We have been having to

11.9D Context

1 have to/must **2** must/have to **3** has to/will have to **4** MUST **5** having to **6** should have **7** must/have to/should **8** will have to/must/should/has to **9** have to/must **10** should **11** had to

11.10 'It isn't advisable ...'/'It isn't necessary ...'/'It's forbidden ...'

11.10A 'It isn't advisable' —> 'It's forbidden': 'a scale of choice'

1b **2**c **3**d **4**a

11.10B 'Mustn't', 'needn't', 'don't have to', 'haven't got to'

1 don't have to/needn't/haven't got to
2 needn't/don't have to/haven't got to
3 doesn't have to/needn't/hasn't got to **4** mustn't
5 mustn't **6** needn't always/don't always have to
7 needn't/don't have to/haven't got to
8 needn't/doesn't have to/hasn't got to
9 needn't/don't have to/haven't got to **10** mustn't
11 mustn't **12** needn't/don't have to/haven't go to
13 mustn't **14** needn't/don't have to/haven't got to
15 mustn't **16** needn't

11.10C 'Needn't have', 'didn't have to', 'didn't need to'

1 I needn't have phoned **2** I didn't have to phone **3** You needn't have brought **4** I didn't have to bring **5** I needn't have washed **6** I needn't have cooked

11.10D 'Shouldn't have' and 'oughtn't to have'

1 You shouldn't have done that. **2** He shouldn't have done that. **3** They shouldn't have done that. **4** She shouldn't have done that. **5** You shouldn't have done that

Note: in all these *oughtn't to have done that* can also be used.

11.10E Context

1 must not **2** didn't need to **3** shouldn't have **4** should have

11.11 Modals to express habit: 'used to', 'will' and 'would'

11.1 **1A The form of 'used to'**
1 didn't 2 did 3 didn't use tolnever used to
4 Did you use to 5 did 6 did 7 did you use to
8 didn't use to/never used to

11.1 1B **Uses of 'used to'**
1 used to go 2 didn't use to (or never used to) like
3 Did you use to like 4 used to have to 5 I never used to enjoy 6 was having 7 used to be
8 used to be 9 were working 10 Was it raining?

11.1 **1C 'Would' in place of 'used to' and in place of the simple past**
The first *used to (Geraldused to spend)* sets the scene. After that, the following should be underlined: used to get up (would get up), caught (would catch), put (would put), took ((would) take), always used to go, (would always go) was often (would often be)

11.1 1D **'Will/would' to describe 'usual behaviour'**
1 would always tell 2 will still tell 3 would only discuss 4 will play 5 would work
6 won't always tell

11.1 1E **Context**
Possible answers
1 was 2 was 3 used tolwould 4 loved/used to love 5 never accepted/would never accept/never used to accept 6 will always find 7 would/used to say 8 used tolwould say 9 would always be/was always/always used to be 10 often used to visit/often visited 11 never used to tire/never tired
12 would saylsaid

11.12 'Need' and 'dare' as modals and as full verbs

11.1 2A **'Need' as a modal and as a full verb**

modal	full verb
1 Need you go ...?	Do you need to go ...?
2 Need I wait ...?	Do I need to wait ...?
3 They needn't wait ...	They don't need to wait ...
4 You needn't have said ...	You didn't need to say ...
5 I hardly need explain ...	I hardly need to explain ...
6 He needn't learn ...	He doesn't need to learn ...
7 All that you need do ...	All that you need to do ...
8 I don't think you need explain	I don't think you need to explain

11.1 2B **The form of 'dare' as a modal and as a full verb**
1 daren't/don't dare/don't dare to 2 daren'tldidn't dare/didn't dare to/dare(d) not 3 dareldare to
4 Dare we/Do we dare/Do we dare to 5 didn't dare/didn't dare to/dare(d) not/daren't 6 dare 7 daren't/doesn't dare/doesn't dare to **8** daren't have
9 daren't/didn't dare to/dared not

11.1 **2C Uses of 'dare'**
1d **2**c 3d 4a **5**b **6**c 7b 8a **9**d **10**b
I I b 12d

11.1 2D **Context**
1 dared not/did not dare (to) *move* 2 need not *have worried* 3 dared (to) *breathe* 4 didn't dare to / dare not /dared not *open* 5 need (to) *tell*

11.13 'Wouldlwouldn't'; 'that ... should'; 'there' + modal

11.13A 'Would' and 'wouldn't' in place of the simple present tense or 'will' future
1 would be 2 wouldn't be 3 would think
4 wouldn't seem 5 would be 6 wouldn't imagine
7 Would that seem

11.1 3B **'That ... should' after verbs like 'suggest'**
Possible answers
1 we should buy (a) 2 we should avoid (a) 3 he not raise (c) 4 they do not break (b) 5 she should do? (a) 6 we improve (b/c) 7 you take (blc)
8 not delay (c) 9 we take (b/c) **10** he should be allowed (a)

11.1 3C **'That ... should' after adjectives like 'essential'**
1 we should send (a) 2 she return (c) 3 he is informed (b) 4 she be (c)

11.1 3D **'There' + modal auxiliaries**
Possible answers
1 could be **2** must be 3 will never be
4 Couldn't there be 5 Might there be
6 should there be 7 can't there be

11.1 3E **Context**
Possible answers
1 you (should) take 2 you (should) get 3 you begin
4 could be 5 you (should) follow 6 will be
7 may be 8 would seem

12 The passive and the causative

12.1 General information about form

12.1A Basic forms of the passive

Write 1:
The following should have been marked P: 1, 3, 6, **9.**

Write 2:
1 A lot of money is owed to the bank.
2 It has been proved that there is no life on the moon.
3 Videos like this one can be bought anywhere.
4 The history of the European Community has to be written one day.
5 The history of the European Community may already have been written.
6 When we arrived home, we found that one of our windows had been broken.
7 Their car has been sold to pay their debts.
8 A meeting is held in the village hall once a week.

12.1B The passive with progressive forms: 'She is being interviewed'

1 New employees *are always welcomed* by the manager.
2 A new supermarket *is being built* near the church.
3 The battle *was fought* in 1623.
4 The windows *were being cleaned* while I was there.
5 My desk *has been moved!*
6 The refugees *are being taken* to a camp outside the village.
7 All the documents *had been signed* before I arrived.
8 We *were being questioned* and our vehicle *was being searched* at the same time.
9 Our letters *will be posted* when the ship arrives at the next port of call.
10 The case *is being opened* again because they're not satisfied with the verdict.

12.1C Context

1 died **2** was given **3** was attended **4** be held
5 lined **6** was drawn **7** followed **8** was given
9 watched **10** could be heard **11** turned
12 whispered

12.2 Uses of the passive

12.2A Uses of the passive

Possible answers
1 has been damaged ... has widened/is widening ... has been investigated
2 are visited ... can be arranged
3 English Spoken ... Shoes Repaired ... are translated
4 are constantly reminded ... is becoming ... are flashed
5 are involved ... is hurt ... have to ... are damaged

12.2B The use of 'by' + agent (= 'doer') after a passive

1 was sold ... was shown by the general public.
2 was composed by Beethoven ... was written
3 are being replaced by modern ones ... is not controlled

12.2C The passive with verbs of 'saying' and 'believing': 'It is said (that) ...'

1 It is expected **2** It was feared
3 (Joyce) is supposed **4** (Jack Smith) is thought
5 It is thought **6** There is thought
7 (Jim) is considered **8** There are said **9** It is said
10 There islwas supposed

12.20 Context

1 have been seen **2** is supposed **3** to be shown
4 was bought **5** was eventually sold
6 was exhibited **7** islwas said **8** must have been disappointed **9** waslhad been cleverly made
10 waslhad been delicately sewn **11** waslhad been so skilfully done **12** must have been required

12.3 Form and use of the causative

12.3A Form of the causative: 'have something done'

1 decorated **2** looked at **3** tested **4** cut
5 photocopied **6** written

12.3B The causative compared with the active and passive

Write 1:
1 I'm cleaning **2** It's being cleaned 3 I have it cleaned **4** we had it decorated
5 It's being decorated **6** must have your shoes repaired **7** have just been repaired
8 I repaired **9** (to have this film) developed and printed **10** to photocopy **11** mends
12 It's being photocopied

Write 2:

I a She had her best skirt cleaned yesterday.
b She's having her eyes tested today.
c She's going to have a tooth extracted tomorrow.
2a She had two trees planted yesterday.
b She's having a film developed today.
c She's going to have two teeth filled tomorrow.
3a She had her car serviced yesterday.
b She's having some furniture delivered today.
c She's going to have her hair done tomorrow.

12.3C 'Get' in the causative: 'get something done'

1 get **2** getting **3** getting **4** get **5** Get

12.30 Context

1 havelget it repaired **2** havelget a new washing machine installed **3** havelget it serviced
4 having/getting films developed and printed
5 havelget our eyes tested **6** (have/get) our teeth filled **7** (havelget) our chests X-rayed
8 havelget my hair cut **9** havelget any jobs done

13 Questions, answers, negatives

13.1 Yes/No questions, negative statements, Yes/No answers

13.1A YesINo questions (expecting 'Yes' or 'No' in the answer)

1 Am I late?
2 Is this the London train?
3 Are my photos ready?
4 Is John working in the garden?
5 Are the children studying?
6 Does Jane give piano lessons?
7 Was Tony enjoying himself?
8 Do they live in the south?
9 Should she be here?
10 Could she ask a question?
11 Will it be fine tomorrow?
12 Will your friend be staying?
13 Would they like an invitation?
14 Do they often argue like that?
15 Do you run a mile every morning?
16 Did Sheila go to the lecture?

13.1B Negative statements

1 No, I'm not ready.
2 No, she isn't (she's not) right.
3 No, they aren'! (they're not) late.
4 No, I'm not being silly.
5 No, he isn't (he's not) working in London.
6 No, they aren't (they're not) playing tennis.
7 No, you aren't (you're no:) going to fail.
8 No, she wasn't waiting for me.
9 No, he can't speak Russian.
10 No, he won't (he'll not) be leaving soon.
11 No, it wouldn't be a very good idea.
12 No, it doesn't look like rain.
13 No, they don't always win.
14 No, they didn't miss the last lesson.
15 No, she hasn't (she's not) always been good at sport.
16 No, I haven't (I've not) met her.

13.1C Yes/No short answers

Possible answers
1 Yes, I am. **2** No, she isn't (she's not). **3** No, they aren't (they're not). **4** Yes, I am. **5** No, she isn't (she's not). **6** Yes, we are. **7** Yes, I am.
8 No, she wasn't. **9** Yes, they were.
10 Yes, you should. **11** No, I won't.
12 No, I wouldn't. **13** Yes, she (still) does.
14 Yes, I do. **15** No, he didn't. **16** Yes, he has.
17 No, I haven't. **18** No, she hasn't.

13.1D Context

1 Did we turn off/Have we turned off **2** Yes, we did/ Yes, we have **3** Are all the taps off?
4 Yes, they are **5** haven't remembered1 didn't remember **6** Yes, we have/Yes, we did
7 Are there any windows open? **8** No, there aren't
9 Are the front and back doors locked?
10 Yes, they are **11** haven't got

13.2 Alternative negative forms and negative questions

13.2A Negative statements with 'negative adverbs': 'never', etc.

1 I *never go* to the cinema.
2 She *hardly ever watches* TV.
3 I *can seldom get* him on the phone.
4 They *barely greeted* me.
5 We *scarcely ever go out.*
6 We *can hardly wait* till tomorrow.
7 We *rarely see* our neighbours.
8 It's *scarcely worth* the trouble.
9 I *'ve bought no* eggs.
10 I *spoke to no one.*
11 I *want none* of them.
12 She *said nothing.*
13 We *went nowhere.*
14 Please *tell nobody.*
15 She *hardly understands* English.

13.28 Cancelling what has just been said: 'No, not Wednesday'

Possible answers

1 (No,) not Diana, Josephine.
2 (No,) not **5,** 5.30.
3 (No,) not London, Luton.
4 (No,) not today, tomorrow.
5 (No,) not coffee, tea.
6 (No,) not the salt, the pepper.

13.2C Negative questions: 'Can't you ...?'

1 Aren't I **2** Isn't she **3** Aren't those **4** Isn't he
5 Aren't they **6** Wasn't she **7** Weren't you
8 Aren't you **9** Can't you **10** Couldn't you
11 Don't you **12** Doesn't she **13** Didn't he
14 Haven't you **15** Hasn't he **16** Haven't I
17 Shouldn't you **18** Aren't I

13.2D Context

1 everyone **2** no one **3** hardly ever **4** no
5 anywhere **6** anything **7** nothing

13.3 Tag questions and echo tags

13.3A Tag questions 1: 'It is ..., isn't it?'/'It isn't ..., is it?'

1 isn't she? **2** aren't they? **3** aren't I?
4 wasn't she? **5** weren't we? **6** haven't you?
7 hasn't he? **8** don't I? **9** doesn't she? **10** is she?
11 are they? **12** am I? **13** was she? **14** were we?
15 have you? **16** has he? **17** do I? **18** does she?

13.38 Tag questions 2: 'You painted it yourself, did you?'

1 e **2** c **3** g **4** f **5** b 6 d 7 a

13.3C Echo tags: 'Is he?'/'He is?'

Possible answers

1 Is he? (rising tone: interest)
2 They aren't, are they? (falling tone: confirmation)
3 She wasn't was she? (rising tone: surprise, disbelief)
4 Weren't you? (rising tone: interest, sympathy)
5 He does, doesn't he? (falling tone: confirmation)
6 Don't they? (rising tone: interest)
7 I shouldn't, should I? (falling tone: confirmation)
8 You can, can you? (falling tone: disbelief)
9 Can't we? (rising tone: asks for more information)
10 There will, won't there? (falling tone: confirmation)

13.3D Context

Possible answers

1 do we? **2** has? **3** did you? **4** didn't you? or did you? **5** haven't I **6** shouldn't you?
7 don't you?

13.4 Additions and responses

13.4A Additions and contrasts: 'John can ... and I can, too/but I can't'

Possible answers

1 Rudi can speak English, and Roxanne can, too.
2 Rudi can't speak Italian, but Roxanne can.
3 Rudi plays tennis, and so does Roxanne.
4 Rudi goes skiing, but Roxanne doesn't.
5 Rudi doesn't like classical music, and neither does Roxanne.
6 Rudi visited London last year, but Roxanne didn't.
7 Rudi doesn't speak Italian, but Roxanne does.
8 Rudi didn't visit Rome last year, but Roxanne did.
9 Rudi can speak English, and so can Roxanne.
10 Rudi plays tennis, and Roxanne does, too.
11 Rudi doesn't like classical music, and Roxanne doesn't, either.
12 Rudi speaks English, and Roxanne does, too.

13.48 Parallel responses: 'John can ...'/'I can, tool So can I'

1 I can, too./So can I.
2 I can't, either./Neither (Nor) can I.
3 So should 111 should, too.
4 I won't, either./Neither (Nor) will I.
5 I do, too./So do I.
6 I don't, either./Neither (Nor) do I.
7 So did 111 did, too.
8 I didn't, either./Neither (Nor) did **I.**
9 I was, too./So was I.
10 So have 111 have, too.
11 Neither (Nor) have 111 haven't, either.
12 I did, too./So did I.

13.4C 'So have you' and 'So you have!'

1 confirmationlsurprise **2** addition **3** addition
4 confirmationlsurprise **5** confirmationlsurprise
6 addition

Possible answers

7 Jane's got flu. – So have I. (addition)
8 She's got egg on her blouse! – So she has! (confirmationlsurprise)
9 Jack's spoken to the boss. – So has Diana. (addition)
10 I've been to Russia. – So have I. (addition)
11 Sam's had a haircut at last. – So he has! (confirmationlsurprise)
12 Jenny's new coat is exactly the same as yours! – So it is! (confirmationlsurprise)

13.4D Context

Possible answers

1 'I'm not, either' or 'NeitherlNor am I' **2** 'I will, too' or 'So will I' **3** '... so would I' or '... I would, too'
4 'So there is!' **5** 'NeitherlNor can I' or 'I can't, either'

13.5 Question-word questions (1): 'Who(m) ...?, 'What ...?'

13.5A Form of question-word questions (except subject questions)

1a Is she arriving today? **b** When is she arriving?
2a Has he written a letter? **b** Why has he written a letter?
3a Can she help us? **b** How can she help us?
4a Do they live in Jamaica? **b** Where do they live?
5a Does he arrive at 10? **b** What time does he arrive?
6a Can't you tell us? **b** What can't you tell us?

13.58 'Who(m) ...?' as a question-word

1 Who(m) did you invite to your house?
2 Who(m) did Jane see this morning?
3 Who(m) did you speak to?
4 Who(m) did they employ?
5 Who(m) did she buy this present for?
6 Who(m) did John phone?
7 Who(m) did you complain to?
8 Who(m) did she write to?

13.5C 'What ...?' as a question-word

Possible answers
1 What are you doing?/What are you looking at?
2 What do you do (for a living)?
3 What (kind/make/sort of) shampoo do you use?
4 What's your boss like?
5 What was the weather like?
6 What's this (called) in English?
7 What (make/kind/sort of) car is that?
8 What nationality is Ibrahim?
9 What time are they leaving?
10 What date is it?/What's the date?
11 What's that (thing) (for)?

13.5D Context

1 What's his name? 2 What's he done this time?/ What did he do? **3** Who(m) did he steal it from? **4** What date was it? **5** What did you do that for? **6** What are the chances ... **7** What do you say ...?

13.6 Question-word questions (2): 'When?', 'Where?', 'Which?', 'Whose?'

13.6A 'When ...?' and 'Where ...?' as question-words

Possible answers
1 When is (or When's) Jim's birthday?
2 Where did you get that T-shirt, Alice?
3 When does the coach leave, Mary?
4 Where's Kyzyl?

13.68 'Which ...?' as a question-word

Possible answers
1 film did you go to?
2 books do you prefer?
3 soap does Amy use?
4 girls did you meet at the party?
5 is the longest river in the world?
6 desk is the cheapest?
7 of these three briefcases do you prefer?
8 year will you always remember?
9 month is the hottest in Italy?
10 way did the boys go?

13.6C 'Whose?'

1 Who **2** Whose **3** Who **4** Whose **5** Whose **6** Whose **7** Whose 8 Whose **9** Who **10** Whose (or Who)

13.6D Context

1 When 2 Who **3** which **4** Whose **5** Where **6** when **7** Where 8 Which **9** who **10** When

13.7 Question-word questions (3): 'Why?', 'How?'

13.7A 'Why ...?' as a question-word

Possible answers
1 are you still downstairs?
2 don't we have a party?
3 didn't you ask me to help?
4 did you ring Jack just now?
5 have you bought me these flowers?
6 have you got to ring Tony?
7 are you in such a hurry?
8 don't you leave the job till tomorrow?/Why not leave ...?
9 did you go round the back?

13.78 'How ...?' as a question-word; 'How much?/ How many?'

1 How much 2 How much **3** How many **4** How much **5** How many **6** How many

13.7C 'How ' + adjective or adverb: 'How far?'

1 How old 2 How deep **3** How far **4** How big **5** How long **6** How high

13.7D 'How long ... (for)?' and 'How long ago?'

1 How long ... (for)? 2 How long ago **3** How long ago **4** How long ... (for)?

13.7E Social uses of 'How ...?'

1 d **2** g **3** c 4 h **5** f 6 e 7 b 8 a

13.7F Context

1 'What do you charge?' or 'What (price) do you charge/are you charging?' **2** 'How much space do you want?' **3** 'How long do you want it (for)?' **4** 'Do you want a box ...?' **5** 'Do you want ...?' **6** 'How much have you made ...?' **7** 'How's your leg ...?' **8** 'Why do you ask?' or 'Why are you asking?'

13.8 Subject-questions: 'Who?', 'What?', 'Which', 'Whose?'

13.8A Subject or object?

Write 1:
1 S **2** O **3** O **4** S **5** S **6** O **7** O **8** S
9 O **10** S **11** O **12** S

Write 2:
Possible answers
1 Who can play chess? – Mary can.
2 Who wants to have a day off? – We all do.
3 Who broke the big glass vase? – I didn't.
4 Who'll help tomorrow? – I will.
5 What made this mark on the table? – A knife (made it)./A knife did.
6 What will make you happy? – A new car (will make me happy)./A new car will.
7 *Which/What* teacher took you for maths? – Mr Johnson (took us)./Mr Johnson did.
8 *Which/What* tie goes best with this shirt? – Your blue one (goes best)./Your blue one does.
9 Whose dog bit you? – My neighbour's (dog)./My neighbour's dog did.
10 *Which/What* dog bit you? – The dog which lives next door (did).
11 Whose suitcase got lost on the journey? – Janet's (suitcase) (did).

Write 3:
Possible answers
1 Who can play the guitar?/Which of you can ...?
2 Who would like some more coffee?
3 What happens in the film?
4 Who's coming? Which of you are coming? How many of you are coming?
5 Which actor impressed you the most?
6 Whose chair is squeaking? Which chair is squeaking?
7 Whose car is the blue Fiat?
8 Who's coming/Which of you are coming on an excursion with me?

13.89 Context

Possible answers
1 Who composed ...? **2** What songs did he compose? **3** Which party will/would win ...? **4** Who will/would be ...? **5** What are/were the papers saying? **6** Which papers are/were ... ? **7** Which country has/had ...? **8** Whose system does/did ...? **9** What does/did Mr Berlin think ...?

13.9 Questions about alternatives; emphatic questions with 'ever'

13.9A Questions about alternatives (1): 'Did you laugh, or cry?'

1 Did they listen to records, or go for a walk?
2 Can she dance, (or) sing, or play the piano?
3 Do you buy clothes when you need them, or wait for the summer sales?
4 Has she gone to church, or stayed at home?
5 Will you phone her, or wait till she rings back?

13.99 Questions about alternatives (2): 'Did you take it, or didn't you?'

1a Do you like fish, or don't you?
b Do you or don't you like fish?
c Do you like fish, or not?
2a Can you help me, or can't you?
b Can you or can't you help me?
c Can you help me, or not?
3a Have you sent a card, or haven't you?
b Have you or haven't you sent a card?
c Have you sent a card, or not?
4a Will you phone the plumber, or won't you?
b Will you or won't you phone the plumber?
c Will you phone the plumber, or not?

13.9C Emphatic questions with 'ever', etc.

1 Who ever **2** Why ever **3** When ever
4 What ever **5** Where ever **6** How ever
7 How ever

These answers could also be expressed with Who on earth, etc.

13.9D Context

Possible answers
1 What ever **2** What ever/on earth **3** whenever
4 'Have you broken down, or run out of petrol?'
5 'Have you tried to start it, or not?' **6** have you or haven't you?

14 Conditional sentences

14.1 Type 1 conditionals

14.1A Type 1 conditionals, basic uses: 'If the weather clears, we'll go for a walk'

1 is ... will go/will be going **2** have ... will finish **3** rains ... will not (won't) be able to **4** is leaving ... will ask **5** has driven ... will be **6** have been working ... will probably need **7** can't finish ... will try **8** is picked ... will be boasting **9** have forgotten ... will have gone **10** stay ... will have been living

14.18 'If' + present + modal: 'If it's fine tomorrow, we may go for a swim'

Possible answers

1 are ... ought to **2** finish ... could **3** has ... must **4** is not coming ... might **5** has only just arrived ... may **6** have been waiting ... must **7** can't go ... should

14.1C 'If + should' instead of 'if + present'

1 If you *should see* him ... **2** If she *should ask* you ... **3** If he *should phone* ... **4** If the temperature *should fall* ... **5** If you *should receive* ... **6** If you *should go out* ...

14.1D Imperative + 'and/or' + clause: 'Fail to pay and ... '

1. *Ask me* nicely *and* I'll ...
2. *Crash* my car *and* I'll ...
3. *Work* late tonight *and* ...
4. *Hurry, or* you'll ...
5. *Take* a taxi, *or* you'll ...
6. *Stop* shouting, *or* I'll ...

14.1E Context

1 is **2** should be **3** might be **4** must be **5** Go

14.2 Type 2 conditionals

14.2A Type 2 conditionals, basic uses: 'If you went by train, you would ...'

1. *If* I *had* a spare ticket, I *could/would take* you to the concert.
2. *If* she *didn't drink* too/so much coffee, she *would feel* calm(er).
3. *If* he *could type,* he *would be able* to operate a computer.
4. *If* they *understood* (or *they could understand)* the problem, they *would find* a solution.
5. *If* he *didn't sit around* too/so much, he *would be* fit(ter).

14.28 'If + were/was' + 'would': 'If I were you, I would ...'

Possible answers

1. *If she were in your position,* she *would be able to* advise you.
2. *If* I *wasn't/weren't* in a hurry, I *would stay* to dinner.
3. *If* he *were* a millionaire, he *would(n't)* buy you a palace.
4. *If* the weather *was/were* sunny, we *wouldn't* stay indoors.
5. *If* I *was/were* fit, I *would* go climbing.
   Or: *If* I *wasn't/weren't* fit, I *wouldn't go* climbing.

14.2C 'If' + past + modal: 'If he knew the facts, he might ...'

Possible answers

1 were (or was) ... could give **2** failed ... ought to think **3** could play ... could help **4** had ... might be able to **5** could have ... might improve **6** ran ... could be **7** went ... ought to visit **8** borrowed ... ought to return **9** wanted ... could ask

14.2D Context

1 would we be doing **2** was/were not shining **3** we wouldn't be lying **4** would we do/would we be doing **5** we were **6** we were rich **7** could travel **8** we had **9** could drive **10** we were **11** We would return **12** would put out/would be putting out **13** would prepare/would be preparing **14** would **15** we owned **16** we would also have **17** we had **18** we could swim **19** we were **20** we could lie/we could be lying

14.3 Type 3 conditionals

14.3A Type 3 conditionals, basic uses: 'If you had gone by train, ...'

Possible answers

1. *If* John *hadn't eaten* too/so much birthday cake, he *wouldn't have been* sick.
2. *If* we *hadn't run out of* money, we *wouldn't have come home* from our holiday early.
3. *If* the fire brigade *hadn't come* immediately, the house *would have burnt down.*
4. *If* the men *hadn't been wearing* protective clothing, they *wouldn't have all been* safe.
5. *If* I *had been watching* the road, I *wouldn't have had* an accident.
6. *If* it *hadn't been* so hot, I *wouldn't have been sweating.*
7. *If* my father *had earned more* money, life *would have been* easy/easier for us.
8. *If* I *had enjoyed* school, I *would have done better.*

14.38 'If I had been you/If I had been in your position'

Possible answers

1. *If 1 had been* Marie, I *wouldn't have paid •'200* for a/that dress.
2. *If I had been* Franz, *I would have taken* that job.
3. *If 1 had been in Ali's position, ! would have* studied more.
4. *If 1 had been* Sandra, I *wouldn't have walked* to work in the rain.

14.3C 'If' + past perfect + modal: 'If he had known the facts, he might have ...'

Possible answers

1 had managed ... could have driven **2** had known ... could have visited **3** had not wanted ... might have missed **4** had asked ... might have helped **5** had been ... could have stayed **6** might have been ... hadn't known **7** might have made ... had not read **8** could have had ... had not been **9** had fastened ... mightn't have been **10** mightn't have heard ... hadn't turned on **11** could have seen ... might have laughed **12** had told ... could have lent **13** could have saved ... had known **14** might have played ... had had

14.3D Context

1 had been **2** would/could/might have killed **3** had been driving **4** wouldn't have been **5** had known **6** would have kept **7** had known **8** wouldn't have been driving **9** hadn't been **10** would/might/could be *(or:* would/might/could have been)

14.4 Mixed conditionals; 'unless/if ... not', etc.

14.4A Mixed tenses in conditional sentences

Possible answers

1 If I were you ... I would have checked **2** If you are so hungry, you shouldn't have missed **3** If he didn't catch ... he won't arrive **4** He will be feeling ... if he played **5** If the snake bite had been poisonous, you'd feel **6** If I were ... I would have answered

14.48 'If not' and 'unless'

Write 1:

The following sentences need ticks: 1, 2 and 5.

Write 2:

1 Unless you tell me/If you don't tell me **2** if he didn't have 3 – unless we had broken **4** Unless management and unions become/If union and management do not become **5** unless I get held up/if I don't get held up **6** Unless we have/If we don't have **7** If you hadn't warned

14.4C Conjunctions we can sometimes use in place of 'if'

1. *Even if you gave me $10,000,* I still wouldn't go down a coal mine.
2. I'll lend you my book *on (the) condition (that) you let* me *have it back by Monday.*
3. *Providing (that) you look after it,* I'll let you keep my bicycle till the weekend.
4. *So long as you don't tell anyone else,* I'll tell you what happened.
5. *Assuming (that) it's a holiday* on *Monday,* we can drive to the seaside.
6. The children were never scolded, *so long as they did what they were told.*

14.4D Context

1 are **2** (will) live **3** would/should have died (*or:* might/could have died) **4** will feel **5** will be **6** could live **7** would you do **8** would have eaten **9** could change/could have changed **10** would you change/would you have changed **11** had known **12** would have looked after

15 Direct and indirect speech

15.1 Direct speech

15.1A Quotation marks and other punctuation marks

1. 'John's in a hurry.'
2. 'Have you been out?'
3. 'Where are my glasses?'
4. 'What a surprise!'
5. 'How are you?'
6. 'It's unbelievable!'
7. 'There's someone at the door.'
8. 'What a noise!'
9. 'When did you arrive?'
10. 'Tell me what happened.'
11. 'Don't shout at me!'
12. 'Have a cup of coffee.'
13. 'How do you like your coffee?'
14. 'Have you met Jean?'
15. 'Keep quiet!'
16. 'Stop!'
17. 'Are you all right?'
18. 'I'm waiting for a bus.'
19. 'Here's a letter for you.'
20. 'Haven't we met before'?'

Note: double quotation marks (" ... ") can, of course, also be used.

15.1B Quotation marks and 'reporting verbs'

1 'Where do you come from?' John asked.
2 'It's here,' Bill said.
3 'I've got a good idea, (or !)' Mark said.
4 'Is it something,' she asked, 'that we all ought to know?'
5 'As I was leaving,' he explained, 'I heard someone shout.'
6 'Don't shout at me!' he cried.
7 John said, 'We're late.'
8 'We're late,' John said.
9 'What's the time?' Andrew asked.
10 Bill said, 'I'm hungry.'
11 'What is it?' Jill asked.
12 'You are stupid sometimes!' she said.
13 'Where is he?' Tom asked.
14 'What a surprise!' she exclaimed.
15 'Is there anyone in?' she inquired.
16 'Which way did they go?' he asked.
17 Tom said, 'She's ill.'
18 'She's ill,' Tom said.

Note: double quotation marks can also be used.

15.1C 'Quote within a quote'

1 'As I was leaving,' he explained, 'someone shouted, "Fire!".'
2 'Please don't keep asking me, "What's the time?"!' Jim said crossly.
3 'Have you read "Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf?"?' my teacher asked.
4 'What do you mean, "Have you lost your way?"?' the stranger asked me.
5 Where are they now, he wondered.

Note: double quotation marks can also be used for single and vice versa.

15.1D Context

1 'It's all lies!' Boyle cried.
2 'You think so?' Inspector Wiley asked mildly.
3 'Think so? I know it!' Boyle answered sharply.
4 'And no doubt,' the inspector continued, 'you can prove it. Where were you on Saturday night, the night of the robbery?'
5 'I was at the Roxy with my girlfriend,' Boyle replied. 'We saw "Gone with the Wind". The film lasted four hours.'
6 'But,' cried the inspector, 'the Roxy was closed all last weekend!'

Note: Double quotation marks can also be used for single and vice versa.

15.2 'Say', 'tell' and 'ask'

15.2A 'Say', 'tell' and 'ask'

1 says **2** tells **3** ask **4** asked **5** said **6** said **7** asked **8** said **9** told **10** asked **11** asked **12** ask **13** tell **14** asked **15** tell **16** says **17** told **18** said **19** tells **20** ask

15.2B Fixed expressions with 'say', 'tell' and 'ask'

1 'I told you so' **2** Ask the price **3** Say no more **4** ask for **5** Say nothing **6** says so **7** tell the time **8** tell a lie

15.2C Indirect statements with the reporting verb in the present

1 she's going to America for six months.
2 they went to Rhodes last year.
3 she's not (or she isn't) feeling well.
4 she'll look at your work in a minute.
5 she's typed those letters.
6 we must investigate this case.
7 the last strike did no one any good.
8 turn off the electricity at the mains.
9 you have to rub down the walls.
10 she's good at flower arranging.

15.2D Context

1 are always saying **2** asked **3** said **4** told **5** says **6** asked **7** say **8** said **9** says **10** told **11** asked (or said) **12** said **13** told

15.3 Indirect statements with tense changes

15.3A Common indirect speech forms

1 Mac said *(that) he needed a holiday.*
2 Sue said *(that) she wasn't wasting her time.*
3 Tom said *(that) he had had* (or *he'd had) some good news.*
4 Pam said *(that) she had* (or *she'd) been sleeping.*
5 Lou said *(that) (s)he went* (or *had gone) home early.*
6 Jan said *(that) (s)he was* (or *had been) waiting for me/us.*
7 Joe said *(that) he had (or he'd) eaten earlier.*
8 Pat said *(that) (s)he had* (or *(s)he'd) been waiting for me/us.*
9 Tim said *(that) he would* (or *he'd) see me/us later.*
10 Dot said *(that) she could speak French.*
11 Kim said *(that) (s)he might arrive later.*
12 Ron said *(that) he would* (or *he'd) speak to him.*
13 Meg asked whether *she should speak to him.*
14 Ted said *(that) he could help me/us.*
15 Ann said *(that) she might see him.*
16 Jim said *(that) he would* (or *he'd) enjoy that.*
17 Sam said *(that) he must have fainted.*

15.3A (continued)

18 Don said *(that) he couldn't have said that.*
19 Ned said *(that) he needn't have gone there.*
20 Lyn said *(that) she ought to have helped her.*
21 Lee said *(that) (s)he should go to the dentist's.*
22 Dan said *(that) if he were me he would get legal advice.*
23 Paul said *(that) he must* (or *had to) catch an early train.*
24 Jill said *(that) she must* (or *had to) speak to me/us*.
25 Bill said *(that) he must* (or *would have to) leave tomorrow.*
26 Jane said *(that) she must* (or *would have to) work till late.*
27 Phil said *(that) John must be a fool.*
28 Jean said *(that) she mustn't* (or *couldn't) eat meat.*
29 Jeff said *(that) they mustn't* (or *couldn't) give up.*

15.3B Pronoun and adverb changes in indirect speech

No exercise here.

15.3C Context

1 Dr Grey said *(that) she had conducted a number of tests.*
2 She told me *(that) she must* (or *had to/would have to) put me on a very strict diet.*
3 She said *(that) I was putting on a lot of weight.*
4 She added *(that) I had gained 5.5 kilos in six months.*
5 She reminded me *(that) I (had) gained 10 kilos last year/the year before.*
6 She told me *(that) I would get very fat if I went on like this/that.*
7 She said *(that) I should eat very little.*
8 I said nervously *(that) I would have to live on nuts and water.*
9 She said *(that) I could live on nuts and water without the nuts.*

15.4 Indirect questions with tense changes

15.4A Indirect **Yes/No** questions: 'He asked me if **I** was ready'

1 if/whether we were hungry.
2 if/whether **I** was enjoying myself.
3 if/whether **I** (or we) always went to church on Sunday.
4 if/whether **I** had seen John recently.
5 if/whether Debbie had been working (t)here long.
6 if/whether **I** (or we) had studied hard for the exam.
7 if/whether Ted and Alice would be at the party.
8 if/whether **I** (or we) would be coming to the concert or not.
9 if/whether **I** liked Italian food.
10 if/whether **I** liked (or we liked) Italian food.

15.4B Indirect question-word questions: 'He asked me why **I** went there'

1 what the weather was like.
2 what Frank did for a living.
3 why Maria was crying.
4 what kind of holiday Marco had had.
5 how long we had both been living (t)here.
6 where they had gone last week (or the week before).
7 who I had been looking for.
8 when lunch would be ready.
9 which countries John would be visiting.
10 how I could solve the problem.

15.4C Indirect subject-questions

1 who was next.
2 what made (or makes) a noise like that.
3 which of us was waiting to see him next.
4 whose composition we hadn't heard yet.
5 who left this bag here.
6 what caused the accident?
7 which newspaper carried the article.
8 whose painting will win the competition.
9 which firms have won prizes for exports.
10 which number could/can be divided by three.

15.4D Context

1 was 2 what the problem was 3 was/had been **4** kept/had kept/had been keeping 5 hadn't/hadn't been 6 didn't keep/hadn't kept/hadn't been keeping 7 was/had been 8 I spent/had spent/had been spending 9 told 10 went/had gone/had been going 11 did not have/had not had 12 told 13 was/had been 14 smoked 15 smoked 16 took/had taken/had been taking 17 did not have/hadn't had

15.5 Uses of the *to*-infinitive in indirect speech

15.5A Reporting the imperative: 'He reminded me to post the letter'

1 I *told him to wait for me.*
2 She *advised him to go on holiday when the weather got* (or *gets) warmer.*
3 She *warned them to keep out of this* (or *that) room at all times.*
4 He *reminded me to post those letters.*
5 He *asked them not to go into his study.*
6 **I** *told him not to wait for me.*
7 She *advised him not to go on holiday yet.*
8 She *warned them never to enter this* (or *that) room.*

15.5B Offers, suggestions, requests for advice: 'He asked if he should ...'

1 ... *if/whether* she should fax the infornation to them.
... whether to fax the information to them.
2 ... *if/whether* he should leave a message for her.
... whether to leave a message for her.
3 ... *if/whether* she should heat the food for him.
... whether to heat the food for him.
4 ... *if/whether* he should phone him now.
... whether to phone him now
5 ... *if/whether* she should invite them to dinner.
... whether to invite them to dinner.

15.5C Requests for advice with question-words: 'He wanted to know how ...'

1 ... when she should be at the station.
... when to be at the station.
2 ... where they should have their meeting.
... where to have their meeting.
3 ... which he should choose.
... which to choose.
4 ... *who(m)* she should ask.
... *who(m)* to ask.
5 ... what he should do.
... what to do.
6 ... why she should pay this bill.
7 ... whose car he should borrow.
... whose car to borrow.
8 ... why she should be punished.

15.5D Context

1 what to do/what they should do 2 advised them to shovel 3 told them not to leave 4 how to get rid/ how we should get rid 5 what to do/what we should do

15.6 When we use indirect speech

15.6A Interpreting direct speech

Possible answers

1 Diana suggested (that) we (should) go sailing.
2 Tom told Jennifer (that) she had just won a lottery. She was amazed.
3 Gillian agreed with Frank when he observed that more money should be spent on education.
4 John told Jenny (that) he didn't think she should take up wind-surfing at her age. She disagreed, and said (that) she felt it was (or is) a sport that would suit all ages. When John pointed out that it required (or requires) great physical strength, Jenny asked, rather indignantly, who (had) told him she was short of that.
5 Billy's mother warned him not to go too near the lions' cage, but Billy protested that he wanted to see the lions close up. When his mother asked him if this wasn't close enough, he replied that it wasn't. She told him that she was sorry, but ordered him not to go any closer. When he continued to insist that he wanted to, she repeated the order.
6 Dr Grey told Mrs Flynn that she really must keep to her diet if she was serious about losing weight. When Dr Grey asked her if she had been keeping to it, she hesitated and muttered something in reply. After Dr Grey had repeated her question, Mrs Flynn confessed that she had occasionally had a bit extra. When asked to explain what she meant, she reluctantly admitted that she meant 'a cream cake or two'.
7 When Sandra asked Sam if/whether he (had) enjoyed the film, he replied that he wasn't sure. Sandra said she thought Gloria Gleam's performance had been fantastic, but Sam hadn't liked it at all. Sandra was surprised to hear this.

15.6B Context

1 told 2 ... are/were 3 me 4 is/was 5 leave/left
6 advised 7 not to make **8** said **9** went
10 (had) recently checked out 11 (had) objected
12 was 13 was leaving 14 told
15 said/protested, etc. 16 said/pointed out, etc.
17 was/is

16 The infinitive and the '-ing' form

16.1 The bare infinitive and the *to*-infinitive

16.1 A Forms of the infinitive

1 leave 2 be studying 3 have done
4 have been waiting 5 be sent 6 have been done

16.1 B 'Let', 'make', 'would rather/sooner' and 'had better'

1 go 2 not stay/Don't let's stay 3 go out
4 go/Let's not go 5 be 6 post 7 wear
8 clear up **9** look 10 to scrub **11** go ... do
12 not have **13** stay **14** not say **15** go

16.1C The infinitive with or without 'to' after 'help' and 'know'

1 helped (me) (to) find this book.
2 (me) (to) fill in this job application form?
3 help you not to worry so much.
4 is known to be a very generous man.
5 to be a ruthless businessman.
6 known her (to) be on time.

16.1D Context

1 made to wear **2** let us wear **3** made us change
4 (to) be **5** made me suffer **6** 'Let's expand
7 made the shoes expand **8** helped me (to) get

16.2 The bare infinitive or the '-ing' form; the *to*-infinitive

16.2A Verbs of perception: 'Watch him drawl drawing'

1 *her cross* the road.
2 *her crossing* the road.
3 *something burning.*
4 *singa* song.
5 *her shouting* at the children.
6 *waiting* near the bank.

16.28 'Have' + object: 'Have the next patient come in'

1 bring **2** drawing **3** know **4** believe **5** ringing
6 laughing **7** playing **8** look at **9** marching
10 happen (or happening)

16.2C '(Not) to', 'so as (not) to', 'in order (not) to'

1 to do/in order to do/so as to do **2** so as not to/in order not to splash **3** to sit **4** to see **5** to find **6** never to return **7** to go **8** to have been **9** to see **10** to have forgotten **11** not to feed **12** didn't tell us to feed

16.2D Context

1 running **2** bring **3** not to let **4** complaining
5 race/racing **6** disappear/disappearing
7 not to leave **8** to find

16.3 Verb (+ nounlpronoun) + *to*-infinitive

16.3A 'He can't afford to buy it'

1 He *can't afford to buy* a car.
2 I *failed to pass* my driving test.
3 He's *offering to pay for* all of us.
4 Can you *manage to move* the desk on your own?
5 He's just *applied to join* the army.
6 I *refuse to apologize* to her.

16.38 'I want (you) to speak to him'

Possible answers

1 you to speak to him.
2 her parents to pay.
3 you to write to them.
4 anyone to know about it.
5 you to listen to me?
6 two people to help me.
7 help (us) (to) move it.

16.3C 'He advised me to take out a loan'

1 me to take out a loan.
2 her to peel the potatoes.
3 us to work hard.
4 the soldiers to fire.
5 you to apply for free travel.
6 the public not to approach this man.
7 my wife and me to play tennis.

16.3D 'I know him to be an honest man'

1 People *know him to be* an honest man.
2 I *imagine him to work* very hard.
3 I *believe her to be* guilty.
4 I *found the job to be* too difficult.
5 We *discovered the claim to be* false.
6 I *know her to have* an interest in the company.

16.3E 'I agreed to accept their offer'

1 I *agreedto acceptthe* offer.
2 I *hope to succeed.*
3 I *expect to hear* from you.
4 He *claimed to have met* me.
5 I *arranged to be* there.
6 She *pretended not to know* me.

16.3F Context

1 wanted me to get rid of **2** failed to move
3 advised me to use **4** considered this to be
5 agreed to try **6** managed to get **7** proved to be
8 what to do **9** couldn't bear to shoot **10** took six of us an hour to get

16.4 Adjectives and nouns + *to*-infinitive

16.4A Adjective + 'to': 'It was kind (of him) to help us'

1 He was *foolish to leave* the firm.
2 You would be *stupid not to ask for* more money.
3 Would *you be so good as to ring* me later?
4 Would you *be good enough to open* the window?
5 It was *clever of him to work out* (or *to have worked out)* the answer.
6 It's *silly of them not to take any part in local life.*
7 It would *look rude to refuse* their invitation.
8 Wasn't it *good of her to work* overtime?
9 He's eager *to help us in any way he can.*
10 I was *careful not to offend* them.

16.4B Adjectives with 'toolenough': 'too **weak/not** strong enough to'

1a I'm *not strong enough to* lift it.
b I'm *too weak to* lift it.
2a I'm *not rich enough to afford* one.
b I'm *too poor to afford* one.
3a She *isn't old enough to drive* a car.
b She's *too young to drive* a car.
4a I *wasn't interested enough to watch* the film.
b I was *too bored* (or e.g. *uninterested) to watch* the film.
5a The pie *isn't cool enough to eat.*
b The pie is *too hot to eat.*
6a The film *wasn't interesting* (or e.g. *exciting) enough to watch.*
b The film was *too boring to watch.*

16.4C Noun + ***to*-infinitive:** 'My decision to wait was wise'

1 My *decision to wait* was wise.
2 His *refusal to help* surprised us.
3 Her *failure to get into college* disappointed her parents.
4 It's a *pleasure to be* with you.
5 Their *eagerness to help* pleased me.
6 My *determination to pass the test* helped me.
7 My *willingness to co-operate* was appreciated.

16.4D Context
1 to see **2** to see 3 to move 4 as to help me
5 to help 6 to please 7 to have disturbed
8 to run away 9 to give **10** to send

16.5 The '-ing' form

16.5A Basic information about the '-ing' form

A1 The gerund as an uncountable noun in general statements
1 Dancing **2** Being 3 Not being 4 riding
5 reading 6 Driving 7 Not being 8 Running
9 cycling **10** Acting

A2 The gerund as an uncountable noun with 'some', 'a lot of', 'a little', etc.
1 reading **2** ironing 3 shopping 4 swimming
5 regretting 6 shouting 7 fighting 8 singing
9 encouraging 10 gardening

A3 The gerund as an uncountable noun after prepositions
1 cutting 2 digging 3 boxing 4 sleeping
5 making 6 computing 7 gardening 8 arguing
9 retiring **10** complaining

A4 The gerund as an uncountable noun after adjectives and possessives
1 thinking 2 thinking 3 refusing 4 not knowing
5 violin playing 6 cooking 7 training 8 shouting
9 singing **10** breathing

A5 The gerund as an uncountable noun after 'no' in prohibitions
1 parking 2 camping 3 waiting 4 smoking
5 trespassing 6 fishing

A6 The gerund as a countable noun in the singular and plural
1 a painting **2** paintings 3 A Leonardo drawing
4 Leonardo drawings 5 a new recording
6 a banging 7 a ringing 8 recordings 9 a turning
10 turnings

A7 The gerund after 'the:, 'this' and 'these'
1 cooking 2 shopping 3 burning 4 writing
5 drawings 6 turning 7 making 8 recording
9 paintings 10 recordings

A8 The gerund followed by an object
1 repairing **2** Eating 3 Running 4 doing 5 giving
6 Digging 7 changing 8 Making 9 making
10 making

A9 Perfect gerund forms, active
1 having disturbed **2** having taken 3 having lost
4 your having helped 5 having worked

A10 Perfect gerund forms, passive
1 his having been fired **2** his having been promoted
3 having been dismissed 4 having been found out
5 having been posted

16.5B Context.
1 cooking 2 eating 3 Working 4 sitting
5 smoking 6 eating 7 smoking 8 breathing
9 Cultivating **10** exporting **11** flavouring
12 adding 13 shopping 14 using 15 having eaten
16 Being 17 living

16.6 Verb + the '-ing' form

16.6A 'I deny taking it'

Possible answers
1 making **2** living 3 being questioned 4 taking
5 having missed 6 fishing ... fishing 7 cleaning
8 mending

16.6B 'Start him working'
1f **2**c 3b **4d** 5a 6e 7h **8**g

16.6C 'We appreciate your helping us'

1f 2b 3d **4e** **5a** **6**c

16.6D 'I can't imagine my **mother('s)** approving'

Possible answers

1. I can't excuse *her not answering* our invitation.
2. You must pardon *my/me not getting up.*
3. Would you mind *Jane/Jane's practising* in the room next to yours?
4. I can't bear *him/his whistling* when I'm trying to concentrate.
5. They can't prevent *us/our escaping.*
6. Please forgive *Jim/Jim's arriving* so late.
7. I really miss *you/your bringing* me breakfast in bed.
8. Fancy *you/your meeting* Miss Smithers!

16.6E Context

1 flying 2 letting 3 you flying 4 travelling
5 learning 6 flying 7 doing 8 me (or my) asking
9 your (or you) flying? **10** anyone (or anyone's) disapproving

16.7 **Adjectives, nouns and prepositions + '-ing'**

16.7A Adjectives + **'-ing'** form (gerund) or ***to*-**infinitive

We can use *-ing* or the *to*-infinitive in all these sentences:

1 findingIto find 2 telling/to tell 3 being told/ to be told 4 findingIto find 5 helping/to help 6 driving/to drive 7 finding/to find 8 arranging1 to arrange

16.76 Adjective + **'-ing'** form (participle)

1. John gets *bored watching* TV all the time.
2. Sylvia is *frantic getting* ready for the wedding.
3. I got *tired waiting* so long for an answer.
4. Jane's *occupied making* lists.
5. We're *busy decorating* our house.

16.7C Common expressions followed by **'-ing'**

1 It's no good complaining 2 It's just not worth worrying 3 There's no point in trying 4 What's the use of apologizing? 5 There's nothing worse than owing

16.7D Preposition + **'-ing'**

D1 Preposition + **'-ing'**

1 paying 2 shouting 3 pulling 4 trying

D2 Adjective + preposition + **'-ing'**

1 acting 2 playing 3 complaining 4 sailing
5 riding 6 disturbing 7 sewing 8 missing
9 finding 10 understanding

D3 Verb + preposition + **'-ing'**

1 doing 2 working 3 stealing 4 disturbing
5 passing 6 trying 7 entering 8 entering
9 helping **10** interrupting **11** losing 12 stealing
13 succeeding 14 seeing 15 getting **16** asking

16.7E The **'-ing'** form after 'to' as a preposition

1. I'm *used to doing* all my own shopping.
2. I'm *accustomed to living* on my own.
3. I *object to being kept* waiting.
4. I *look forward to seeing* you soon.
5. He's *resorted to writing* begging letters.
6. I'm *resigned to being criticized.*

16.7F Context

1 to appreciate/appreciating 2 playing
3 playing 4 playing 5 whispering 6 finding
7 sitting 8 sitting 9 rattling

16.8 **The teinfinitive or the '-ing' form?**

16.8A Verb + ***to*-infinitive** or '-ing': no change in meaning: 'begin to readlreading'

1 to worldworking 2 to think 3 to talk/talking
4 to eat/eating 5 to go/going 6 to see/seeing
7 to play/playing 8 to tell/telling 9 to understand

16.86 Verb + to- or **'-ing':** some changes in meaning: **'I** love to readlreading'

1 watching/to watch (same meaning)
2 waiting (in general) is preferable 3 to tell
4 waiting 5 eating ... eating 6 to have 7 to come

16.8C Verb + to- or **'-ing':** different meanings: 'remember to **post/posting'**

I a visiting **1**b to lock I c to phone **2a** being
2b to find out **2c** to go 3a to stop 3b drinking
4a to look 4b talking 5a dancing 5b to take
6a to tell **6b** staying

16.8D Context

1 delivering 2 pushing 3 to push 4 pushing
5 having 6 opening 7 using

Elaine Walker
Steve Elsworth

New Grammar Practice

for Pre-Intermediate Students

with key

Longman

www.longman.com

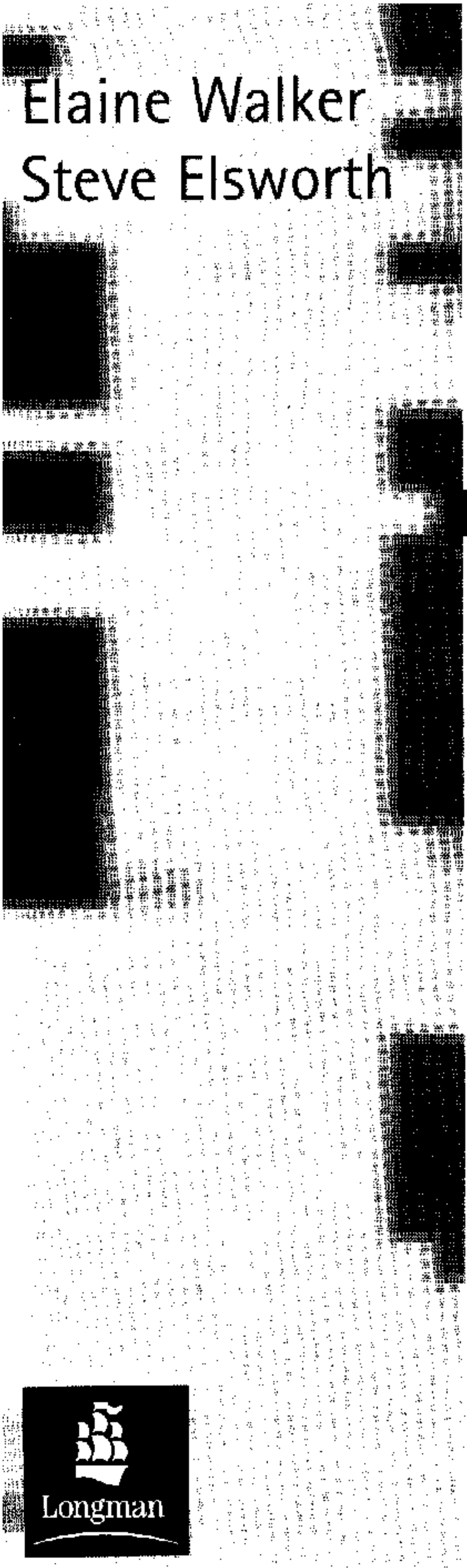

Elaine Walker
Steve Elsworth

New Grammar Practice

for Pre-Intermediate Students

with key

Longman

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate, Harlow
Essex,
CM20 2JE, England
And Associated Companies throughout the World.

www.longman.com

© Pearson Education Limited 2000

The right of Elaine Walker and Steve Elsworth to be identified as authors of this Work has been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

AH rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

ISBN 0 582 41710 4
Fifth impression 2004

Set in Slimbach

Printed in Malaysia, LSP

Illustrations by David Mostyn

Project Managed by Lewis Lansford

Additional material written by David Bowker.

Contents

To the student

NOUNS, ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

pronouns 1-2
possessives 2-5
plurals 7
the article 8-16
countables and uncountables 6,15,17-19
comparative and superlative adjectives 20-25
participial adjectives 26-27
adverbs 27-29

VERBS

The present tense
present simple and continuous 30-37

The past tense
past simple and continuous 38-48
present perfect 48-56

The future tense
present continuous as future 56-58
going to future 58-60
63-65
future simple 61-66
present simple as future 65-66

Verb formations
irregular verbs 67-70

The passive
passives 71-74

Verb formations
used to 75-77
imperative 77-78

CONDITIONALS

first conditional 79-80
second conditional 81-82
zero conditional 84-85

MODALS

modals in questions and negatives 86-87
can, could 87-88
may, might 89-90
should, must 91-92
have to 93-95

GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES

The gerund 96-100
The infinitive 101-104

REPORTED SPEECH

Direct speech 105-110
Indirect speech 111-114

SENTENCE STRUCTURE

Word order
direct and indirect object 115-116
frequency adverbs 117-118
link words 118-120

Questions and answers
making questions 121-123
short responses 124-125

Relative clauses 126-127

PREPOSITIONS **128-137**

PHRASAL VERBS **138-144**

TESTS 1-3 **145-153**

ANSWER KEY **154-168**

INDEX **169-174**

To the student

Grammar Practice for Pre-Intermediate Students gives short, clear explanations of all the main areas of English grammar, and provides practice exercises for you to do.

There are two ways in which this book can he used:

(i) in class with help from your teacher;
(ii) at home by yourself.

If you are using the book by yourself, use the Index and the Contents list to find the area that you want to study, read the grammatical explanation, and then do the exercise. To check your answers, you will need to use the edition of *Grammar Practice for Pre-Intermediate Students with Answer key.*

We hope that *Grammar Practice for Pre-Intermediate Students* helps you to improve your English.

Elaine Walker
Steve Elsworth

Nouns, adjectives and adverbs

1 Subject and object pronouns

Subject pronouns

I you he she it we you they

Object pronouns

me you him her it us you them

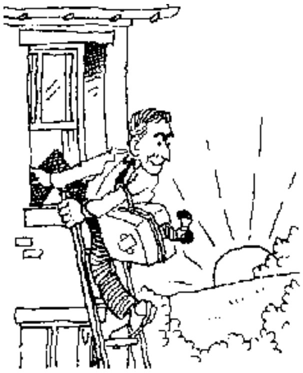

- The subject is the person or thing doing the action:
  / *left early.*
  ***She** went home.*
  We said goodbye.
- The object is the person or thing receiving the action:
  She telephoned me.
  I hit ***him.***
  We saw her.

Practice

Write the correct pronouns for these sentences.

1 ..*She*... telephoned yesterday, (she)

2 We watched .*him*... for hours, (he)

3 Hasn't .... arrived yet? (she)

4 .... don't understand. (I)

5 Are you talking to ....? (I)

6 Don't ask .... doesn't know, (she/she)

7 This is Julia: .... have known .... for years, (we/she)

8 Nobody told .... the bus was leaving, (they)

9 Why didn't .... ask .... to come? (she/they)

10 Don't ask .... Ask .... (I/he)

11 .... think .... doesn't like .... (T/hc/I)

12 .... asked .... to invite .... (they/he/we)

2 Reflexive pronouns

myself yourself himself herself itself
ourselves yourselves themselves

- The object is the same person or thing as the subject:
  1 cut myself when I was cooking.
  ***The kettle** will switch **itself** off automatically.*

Practice

Write the correct reflexive pronouns for these sentences.

1 I like to wake ..*myselff*.. up in the morning with a cup of coffee.
2 Thanks for a great party - we really enjoyed . *ourselves*.. .
3 I hate watching ....on video.
4 I'm sorry, Tony, but I haven't got enough money to pay for you. Can you pay for..........................?
5 After his accident, Philip drove..........................to the hospital.
6 We don't need a babysitter - the children can look after

7 Now, children, remember to give..........................enough time to answer all the exam questions.
8 'Should I apply for the job?' she asked...........................
9 We're planning to buy..........................a new television.
10 He hurt ....when he was playing football.

3 Possessive adjectives

- Each pronoun has a possessive adjective:

I —> my
you —> your
he —> his
she —• her

we —> our
you —> your
they --> their
it —> its

Practice

Write the correct possessive adjectives for these sentences.

1 These are ..*my*... parents. (!)
2 I've got ....watch, (he)
3 Is this............car? {you)
4 Do they like............new house? (she)

5 Have you met .... teacher? (they)

6 Who's got .... money? (I)

7 I don't like .... teacher, (we)

8 Have you got .... passport? (you)

9 He forgot .... keys, (he)

10 They changed .... hotel, (they)

11 She gave the letter to .... secretary, (she)

12 There's something wrong with .... car. (I)

13 They're having a party in .... garden, (they)

14 Where's .... pen? (I)

15 I like .... jacket. (You)

4 Possessive adjectives and pronouns

Possessive adjectives

my your his her its our your their

Possessive pronouns

mine yours his hers - ours yours theirs

- The possessive adjective is always followed by its noun:
  It's my car.
  *That's **his** mother.*
  *This is **our** house.*
- The possessive pronoun is never followed by its noun:
  *This is **mine.***
  *Give it to Peter: it's **his.***
  *The money is **ours.***

Practice

Write the correct possessive adjective or pronoun for these sentences.

1 Whose camera is this? Is it ..yours. ? (you)

2 Excuse me, those are ,.*our*.. seats, (we)

3 Is it .... suitcase or ....? (you/he)

4 Has the dog had .... food? (it)

5 They're not .... keys - they're .... (I/she)

6 I don't think its .... room: I think it's .... (you/they)

7 The police asked me for .... address. (I)

8 Have you got .... pen, or would you like to borrow .... ? (you/I)
9 .... garden is bigger than .... (they/we)
10 I think this is .... book. Oh no, it's .... (I/you)
11 The decision is .... (they)
12 The cat wants .... dinner, (it)
13 You know it's not .... money. It's .... (you/I)
14 It isn't .... car, it's .... (he/she)
15 It wasn't .... mistake, it was .... (I/they)
16 Have you met .... mother? (they)
17 .... parents say the decision is .... (she/they)
18 .... brother hasn't got a phone, so he uses .... (I/we)
19 .... car wasn't working, so I used .... (I/he)
20 .... house is smaller than .... (we/they)

5 The possessive with s

- To indicate possession for people or animals:
  a) in the singular, add *'s:*
  Anne's bike
  James's friend
  The dog's food

  b) for plurals ending in *s*, just add ':
  The boys' mother
  My pare/Us' house
  The ladies' hats

  c) for other plurals, add 's:
  The children's friends
  The women's cars

Note: ***It's*** = ***It is.*** The possessive of *it* is ***its:***
It's cold today.
Give the dog its food.

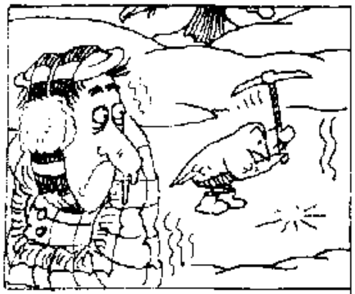

It's cold today.

Practice

Rewrite these sentences, putting the apostrophe (') where necessary. If two answers are possible, write the more likely one.

1 We talked to the boys parents for some time.
We talked to the boys' parents for some time.
We talked to the boy's parents for some time.

2 We can borrow my fathers car.
We can borrow my father's car.

3 Have you met Susans friend?

4 About sixty people use the teachers room.

5 Someone had taken Barbaras purse.

6 Something was hurting the animals foot.

7 I'm going to write to the childrens parents.

8 Jane works in my mothers office.

9 The dog doesn't like its food.

10 Mary and Pat stayed at their friends house.

11 Are you going to the secretaries meeting?

12 I put the money in the waiters hand.

13 lans suit was very expensive.

6 Countable and uncountable nouns

- Countable nouns are things that can be counted:
  a book, ***two*** *cars,* ***three*** *planes*
- Uncountable nouns cannot be counted as ***one, two, three,*** etc:
  milk, water, flour

> Exercise 17: if we want to count these things, we use ***a litre of, a kilo of,*** etc.

Note: *Bread, cheese, butter, information, news, food,* and *money* are all uncountable nouns.

>• Exercise 14 for *some* and *any.*

Practice

Write *'C* for countable, *'U'* for uncountable.

apple	*C*	cheese		information	
water	*U*	tooth		butter	
boy		car		sugar	
milk		grass		tree	
table		person		garden	
pen		road		book	
bread		chair		news	
cup		bicycle		bus	
computer		hand		wine	
money		flour		house	

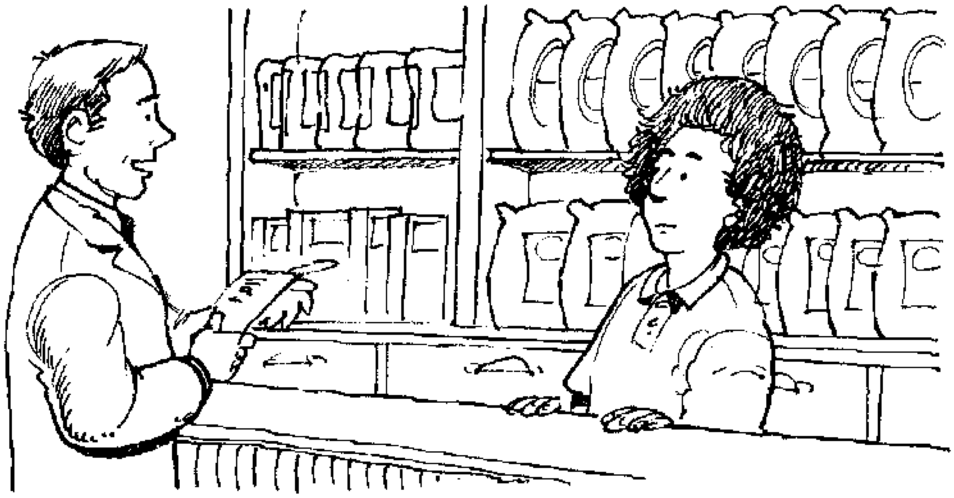

And twenty-two kilos of flour, please.

7 Singular and plural

- To make a singular noun plural, add s:
  brother —> brothers; car —> cars; house —> houses

Notes

- If the word ends in *ch, sh, x,* or s, add *es.*
  match —> matches; box —> boxes
- If the word ends in *y,* change to *ies:*
  baby —> babies; lady —> ladies
- Remember the common irregular plurals:
  men, women, children, people, teeth, feet

Practice

Write the plurals.

brother	brothers		woman	
sister			box	
match			baby	
key			person	
camera			man	
church			child	
teacher			secretary	
garden			student	
sandwich			bus	
door			cinema	
lady			foot	
gentleman			boy	
tooth			table	
restaurant			window	
house			banana	

8 The indefinite article a

- a (or *an)* is used with countable nouns (> Exercise 6) to indicate *one.*
  Can I have a cup of tea?
  I've got a daughter and two sons.
- a is not used before a plural noun (NOT *I've got a sons).*
- a is not used before uncountable nouns (NOT I *want a petrol, please).*

Practice

Write a, *an,* or nothing to complete these sentences.

1 I'd like *..a..* sandwich, please.
1 He asked me for ..-.. money.

3 They wanted .... information about the trains.
4 I'd like .... apple and .... orange, please.
5 They've got .... very big house.
6 Do you like .... fast cars?
7 We watched .... films all afternoon.
8 Have you got .... umbrella?
9 I asked for .... bread and .... cheese.
10 Are you drinking .... milk?
11 I had .... glass of water.
12 He gave me .... orange.
13 Is there .... telephone here?
14 We had .... eggs for breakfast.
15 I like .... coffee and .... tea.

9 The indefinite article *a* and the definite article *the*

- a is used with countable nouns to indicate ***one*** (>- Exercise 8):
  I've got two bikes and a car.
  She's a lawyer.
  He's a teacher.
- ***the*** is used:
  a) when a word is used a second time;
  He gave me a knife and a spoon. ***The*** *spoon was dirty.*
  I bought a pen and some paper, but I left ***the*** pen in the shop.
  b) when only one object exists:
  the *earth,* ***the*** *sun,* ***the*** *River Thames*

Practice

Write *a*, ***the,*** or no article to complete these sentences.

1 She's .*a*... journalist.
2 ..The.. moon moves slowly round the... earth.
3 .... sun is shining.
4 I'd like .... cup of coffee, please.
5 Have you got .... double room?
6 He gave me a lighter and some cigarettes but .... lighter didn't work.
7 There was .... doctor and .... nurse in the room .... nurse was sleeping.
8 She took .... sandwich and .... piece of cake, but didn't eat .... cake.
9 Yes, I work at this school. I'm .... teacher.
10 A man and two women were sitting in the car. 1 think .... man was Italian.
11 Did you see .... Pope when he came to England?
12 He offered me .... cigarette, but I refused.
13 Did you send me .... postcard when you were in Greece?
14 They had six cats and .... dog. T really liked .... dog.
15 Have you got .... match, please?
16 She sent me .... letter and .... card .... letter didn't arrive.
17 I had .... cup of tea and .... ice cream .... tea was terrible.
18 Have you met Sally? She's .... friend of mine.

10 No article or *the* before names of places

- *a* or ***the*** is **not** usually used before names of villages, towns, streets, cities, countries or continents.

She lives in Paris.
We went to India.

- ***the*** is used before names of seas, rivers, groups of islands or mountains, kingdoms, republics, deserts, plural names of countries: *the Atlantic Ocean, the River Thames, the Netherlands, the Arctic* (land and sea), *the Antarctic* (land and sea), *the Alps, the United States of America, the United Arab Emirates, the Sahara, the United Kingdom, the Nile, the Gobi Desert.*

Practice

Write the names of the places below in two columns, those with *the* and those without ***the.***

River Seine
Luxembourg
Istanbul
Pyrenees
Chile
Solomon Islands
Philippines
Sweden
Oxford Street
Bombay
South China Sea
Hamburg
Algeria
Rocky Mountains
St Lawrence River
Barcelona
People's Republic of Mongolia
Pacific Ocean

with ***the***	without ***the***
River Seme	*Luxembourg*

11 No article or definite article?

Words using no article

He doesn't like going to school.
I think she's at home now.
I usually get to work at 9.30.
Do you go to church on Sundays?
She was very tired so she went to bed early.
Did you have the baby in hospital?
Their father's in prison.

- There is usually no *a* or ***the*** before: *school, college, university, home, work, church, bed, hospital, prison, town.*

Note: We only say a or ***the*** before these words when **the building** is important and not its use:
It was a beautiful church.
The *school is very old now.*
This is not a very comfortable bed.
Is there a prison near here?
The *hospital is closing down.*

Words using ***the***

We don't very often go to the cinema.
Did you go to the disco on Saturday?
I go to the supermarket every Friday.

- We usually say ***the*** before the places we visit in a town:
  the cinema, theatre, disco, opera, post office, bank; names of shops - *baker's, grocer's, supermarket, chemist, butcher's; dentist('s), doctor('s), hairdresser('s), toilet*
  And we say ***the shopping:*** *I do* ***the*** *shopping on Mondays.*
- But we can sometimes use a before these words:
  Did you go to ***the*** *disco on Saturday?* but: *There's a new disco in town.*
  I'm going to ***the*** *bank,* but: *Does she work in a bank?*

Practice

Write the sentences, adding ***the*** where necessary.

1 Is he still in bed?
\e he still in bed?

2 Would you like to go to cinema tonight?
Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?

3 We visit him in prison about once a month.

4 Can I go home now?

5 I usually go to bank once a week.

6 Does she like it at university?

7 School is almost falling down.

8 I do all my shopping at supermarket.

9 What time do you finish work?

10 I went to hairdresser last week but my hair looks terrible.

11 Bed in this room is too small for me.

12 I don't usually go to church but my parents do.

13 He goes to doctor's regularly - he always thinks he's ill.

14 What are you going to study at college?

15 Poor James! He hates being in hospital.

12 Other words with *a, an, the* or no article

The apples are £1 **a** kilo.
I never drive more than 80 kilometres an hour.
She smokes about twenty cigarettes **a** day.

a, *an* when talking about cost, speed or how often we do something.

Can you play **the** guitar?
I love listening to **the** piano.

the with musical instruments when we talk about playing them or listening to them. But note: *I'd like to buy **a** piano.*

I usually listen to **the** radio in the mornings.
They watch television most evenings.

the with ***listen to the radio.*** No article with ***watch television.*** But note: *Have you got **a** new television? This is an expensive radio.*

English isn't too difficult to learn.
History is my favourite subject.
She plays tennis very well.
I usually have toast for breakfast.

- No article before names of academic subjects, languages, sports, meals.

Practice

Complete these sentences with *a*, *an*, ***the*** or no article.

1 She plays ..?/?<?.. piano beautifully.
2 We usually meet once .... week.
3 I enjoy studying languages but I find .... Latin quite difficult.
4 I always listen to .... radio when I get up.
5 Can your daughter play .... violin?
6 I can cycle 15 miles .... hour.
7 Do you enjoy learning .... Spanish?
8 I take the children swimming twice .... week.
9 I think you watch .... television too often.
10 Did you study .... physics at school?
11 This flat costs £100 .... week.
12 I love listening to .... saxophone.
13 The potatoes are 80 pence .... bag.
14 Can you speak .... Russian?
15 I really enjoy playing .... football at the weekends.

13 Summary

- *a, an* + singular noun;
  We are talking about one thing but it is not the only one. There is more than one of them.
- ***the*** + singular noun:
  There is only one or we are talking about a particular one. The speaker and listener know which one.

Practice

13a Complete the conversation with *a, an, **the*** or no article.

A: It's '..a.. beautiful day today. I'd like to go to ..*the*.. beach.

B: Yes, but [3]............beach is always crowded. I'd like to stay at [4]............ home and sit in 5............garden. We can have............lunch in [7]............garden.

A: But we stayed at............home a)] day yesterday. I'd like to go out. I'm going back to [9]............work tomorrow and this is [l0]............last day of my holiday.

B: Well, we could go out tonight. There's "............good film on at [12]............cinema, or we could go to [13]............theatre.

A: O.K. but [14]............theatre's too expensive. It's about £15 [15]............seat.

B: That's true. We'll go to [l6]............cinema, then. Or we could stay here and watch [17]............television.

A: Oh no, that's boring. I want to go to [1S]............cinema.

B: And this afternoon?

A: You can stay here but I think I'll go to [19]............town.

B: Can you do [2U]............shopping when you're in town?

A: Oh, all right.

13b In your notebook, add, remove or change the articles in these sentences to make them correct. Some sentences contain more than one mistake.

1 Our first lesson after the lunch is the geography.
2 I first played a baseball in USA last summer.
3 The Rome is my favourite city in Italy.
4 When I leave a university I want to be the journalist.
5 What time does bank open on Fridays?
6 I often work at the home.

14 *a, some, any*

> Exercise 6 for the difference between countable and uncountable nouns.

- a is used with singular countable nouns:
  *I'm waiting for **a** bus.*

- *some* is used in positive sentences
  a) with plural countable nouns:
  ***Some** people arrived.*
  *I'd like a loaf and **some** eggs, please.*

  b] with uncountable nouns:
  */ bought **some** milk.*
  *I'd like **some** water, please.*

- *any* is used like *some,* but in negative sentences and questions
  a) with plural countable nouns:
  *Did you meet, **any** friends in town?*
  *I didn't buy **any** eggs.*

  b) with uncountable nouns:
  *Did you buy **any** milk?*
  *I didn't have **any** water.*

- No is also used to mean *not any,* but with a positive verb form:
  *There were **no** eggs in the market.*
  *I had **no** water.*

- *some* is used in offers:
  *Would you like **some** coffee?*
  *Would you like **some** tea?*

I've got {Wouldn't you like...?)	an apple some oranges some sugar
Have you got ...? I haven't got	an apple any oranges any sugar

Practice

14 Complete the sentences with *a, an, some* or *any.*

1 Would you like..a.. cup of tea?
2 There's some.. butter in the fridge.
3 Can I make .... telephone call?
4 There weren't .... books in the house.
5 There are .... children at the door.
6 She wants .... glass of water.
7 They don't have .... friends in the village.

8 I bought .... lemonade yesterday.
9 Have you got .... watch?
10 She'd like .... new perfume.
11 We're getting .... new car soon.
12 There isn't .... shampoo in the bathroom.
13 I'd like .... apple, please.
14 The house hasn't got .... furniture.
15 Would you like .... orange juice?
16 I've got .... bananas and .... apple.
17 Did you bring .... bread?
18 I'd like .... water, please.
19 Sorry, I haven't got .... matches.
20 I asked the waiter for .... tea.

15 *something, anything; someone, anyone* (or *somebody, anybody)*

Positive

There's **someone** at the door.
I've got **something** to tell you.

Negative

I didn't know **anyone** at the party.
We didn't have **anything** to drink.

Question

Did you meet **anyone** at the club?
Do you know **anything** about this place?

Note: ***Can I have ...?, Would you like*** ...? + *something, someone:*
Would you like something to eat?
Can I have something to drink?

Practice

Circle the correct word in each sentence.

1 Is there *{something/[✓ anything])* to eat in the fridge?
2 There's *{something/anything)* about your friend Alec in the paper.
3 I met *[someone/anyone)* from your office last night.
4 I called at their house but there wasn't *{someone/anyone)* in.
5 Do you know *{someone/anyone)* in this street?

Practice

Write ***a few, a little, much*** or ***many*** to complete these sentences. Do not use ***some, any,*** or ***a lot of.***

1 There's some food, but not .*much*... drink.

2 .*A few* people arrived before the party started, but not many.

3 There's not .... food in the cupboard.

4 She hasn't got .... friends.

5 I'm sorry, I haven't got .... time.

6 The receptionist didn't give me .... information.

7 I can lend you .... money until tomorrow.

8 1 asked him to put .... milk in my coffee.

9 I've seen her .... Times this year, but not very often.

10 We only have .... petrol left.

11 She started feeling ill only .... days before the exam.

12 Not .... people come here in the winter.

13 Did they pay you .... money for working there?

14 There aren't .... towns in this part of England.

15 I didn't drink .... wine at the party.

16 There are only .... people at the beach.

17 1 didn't have .... opportunity to talk to him.

18 The bank only lent me .... money.

19 Can I ask you .... questions?

20 The journey was a short one: it didn't take .... time.

21 Only .... students are going to fail the exam.

22 I don't think .... people will come tonight.

23 1 haven't done .... work today.

24 I gave the cat .... milk.

25 1 don't think I've made .... mistakes.

17 Counting the uncountables

- It is not possible to say *one water, two flours,* etc.
  Uncountable objects are counted in two ways:
  a) in litres, kilos, etc:
  Could I have ***a kilo of*** *potatoes?*
  I need ***three litres of*** *milk.*

  b) by counting the containers that hold the uncountable noun:
  I'd like ***three bottles of*** *lemonade, please.*
  or by dividing the object into pieces, which are then counted:
  Would you like ***a piece of*** *cake?*

Practice

Write the correct word for each object.

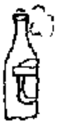
1 a ....of lemonade

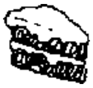
2 a ....of cake

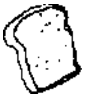
3 a ....of bread

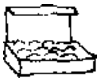
4 a ....of chocolates

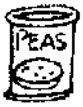

5 a ....of peas

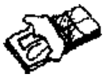
6 a ....of chocolate

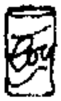
7 a ....of Coca-Cola

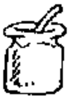
8 a ....of jam

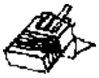
9 a ....of cigarettes

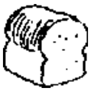
10 a ....of bread

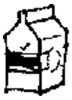
11 a ....of milk

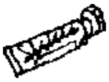
12 a ....of toothpaste

18 Comparatives *(tall, taller; comfortable, more comfortable)*

- Adjectives with one syllable *(tall, great, short,* etc.) add *er:*
  tall —>taller; great—> greater; short—> shorter

  Adjectives that end with *e* just add *r: wide* -+ *wider*

  a) If the word ends in one vowel + consonant, double the consonant:
  thin —• thinner; hot–> hotter; big —• bigger

  b] If the word ends in two vowels + consonant, do not double the consonant:
  great—> greater; poor--> poorer

  c] If the word ends in *e,* just add r:
  large —> larger

  d) Note the irregulars:
  good —> better; bad —> worse

Practice

18a Write the comparatives.

tall	*taller*
thin	
wide	
long	
good	
fat	
old	

large	
rich	
poor	
young	
big	
bad	
clean	

short	
hot	
cold	
warm	
cheap	
small	
brave	

- Adjectives with three syllables or more (*comfortable, beautiful expensive,* etc.) add *more:*
  comfortable —• more comfortable; beautiful —• more beautiful;
  expensive —> more expensive
- When making comparisons, use *than:*
  Mary's taller than John.
  John's shorter than Mary.
  The big television's more expensive than the small one.
  This chair's more comfortable than that one.

18b Write the correct comparative for these sentences.

1 The Mississippi's ..*longer than*_ the Thames, (long)

2 This hotel's . *more,comfort able than*__ the other one. (comfortable)

3 I think this shop is..that one. (good)

4 The restaurant is..the cafe, (expensive)

5 Simon's .... Mark, (old)

6 I think Scotland is .... England, (beautiful)

7 My brother's .... I am. (young)

8 1 like this school because it's .... the other one. (big)

9 Accommodation here is .... in my country. (expensive)

10 The weather here is .... at home, (cold)

11 I think you're .... your father now. (tall)

12 His homework was .... mine, (bad)

13 This film is .... the one you wanted to see. (interesting)

14 The journey is .... I thought, (long)

15 This lesson is .... the last one. (difficult)

19 Comparatives

> Exercise 18 for adjectives with one syllable, and with three syllables or more.

- Adjectives with two syllables
  a) generally use ***more-***
  careful -> ***more*** *careful; stupid* —> ***more*** *stupid; cautious* --> ***more*** *cautious*

  b) but if the adjective ends in ***er,*** *y,* ***ow,*** add **er:**
  clever-->*cleverer; friendly* —• *friendlier* (note: *y* changes to *i);*
  pretty—>*prettier;narrow*—>*narrower*

- The comparative of ***little*** is ***less,*** and of ***few*** is ***fewer:***
  I've got ***less*** *money than she has.*
  There are ***fewer*** *problems than there were before.*

Note:
It's getting hotter and hotter.
It's getting more and more dangerous.

Practice

Write the comparative of the words given to complete the sentences.
Add ***than*** where necessary.

1 He is . *more helpful than* he used to be. (helpful")

2 It was slowly getting .*hotter.* and .*hotter...* (hot)

3 I had .... time than T needed to finish the job. (little)

4 Peter gets .... and ....
all the time, (selfish)

5 You seem .... you were yesterday, (happy)

6 My chair was getting .... and
.... (uncomfortable)

7 We need .... actors for this film, (young)

8 I think that the new salesman is .... the last
one. (honest)

9 This road is .... and ....
the other one. (long/dangerous)

10 Is the new car .... the old one? (expensive)

11 This system is .... the last one we had. (easy)

12 People here are .... they are at home, (polite)

13 The man was getting .... and .... (angry)

14 The city is .... it used to be. (crowded)

15 She was feeling .... she had been earlier.
(miserable)

16 Computers are .... nowadays, (complicated)

17 I think trains are .... and ....
cars, (fast/comfortable)

18 We will have to think of a .... method, (good)

19 I'm beginning to feel .... about the results.
(hopeful)

20 She seems to be getting .... and .... (thin]

21 My new dictionary is a lot .... the last one. (useful)

22 These trousers are too wide. Do you have any that are .... ?
(narrow)

23 .... young people learn to play musical
instruments than in the past, (few)

24 The film got .... and .... until I fell
asleep! (boring)

25 I think that people who live in villages are ....
people in big cities, (friendly)

26 Her new job is a lot .... the last one. (stressful)

20 Comparatives

Check

Complete these sentences, using the comparative form of the adjectives given.

1 It's hotter.. here than in London, (hot)

2 She's .*more imaginative*.. than her brother, (imaginative)

3 He's .... than all the other students, (old)

4 Do you think Pat is .... than Brian? (intelligent)

5 This school is .... than ours, (old-fashioned)

6 The computer was .... than 1 thought. (expensive)

7 The rooms are .... than they used to be. (clean)

8 He's .... than he was a year ago. (healthy)

9 Do you think English is .... than French. (difficult)

10 He eats a lot - he's getting .... and .... (fat)

11 His face was getting .... and .... (red)

12 He was .... than T had ever seen him before. (angry)

13 Big cars are .... than small ones, (comfortable)

14 My exam was .... than I had thought, (bad)

15 The road becomes .... after four or five miles. (narrow)

16 I'm sure I'll find New York .... than Houston. (exciting)

17 I need to go to the doctor - this cough is getting .... and .... (bad)

18 He thinks Charlie Chaplin is .... than Mr Bean, (funny)

19 Their plane ticket was .... than mine because they flew on a Sunday, (cheap)

20 My son is a lot .... now that he's a teenager, (lazy)

21 *as... as*

- To say that two things or people are the same or equal:
  My *son is* ***as tall*** *as you.*
- To say that two things or people are not the same or equal:
  The second half of the football match was ***not*** *as* ***exciting*** *as the first half.*

Practice

Complete these sentences, using the adjectives in the box.

boring comfortable dangerous deep difficult
feet independent old relaxing valuable

1 This summer is not as .hot.. as last summer.
2 I hope his new book is not as *.boring...as* his last one.
3 She was afraid of flying, but I told her it's not as .... as travelling by car.
4 Don't worry. The river isn't as .... as it looks.
5 Silver isn't as .... as gold.
6 Dogs aren't as .... as cats.
7 Our new car is very fast, but it's not as .... as the old one.
8 Do you think French is as .... to learn as English?
9 Were you really born in 1980? I didn't realise you were as .... as me.
10 For me, lying on the beach is not as .... as walking in the mountains.

22 Superlatives

- Adjectives with one syllable add *est:*
  great —• greatest; small –> smallest; old —> oldest

> Exercise 18 for spelling changes.

- Adjectives with two syllables use *most:*
  careful --> *most careful; patient* --> *most patient*
  But two syllable adjectives ending in er, y or *oxv*, add est:
  clever—>*cleverest; happy* --> *happiest; pretty*-->*prettiest* (y changes to i);
  narrow --> *narrowest*
- Adjectives with three syllables or more use ***most:***
  expensive —> ***most*** *expensive; dangerous* --> ***most*** *dangerous;*
  comfortable —> *most comfortable*

Note: The irregulars:
bad --> worst
good —> best
little --> least

USE

Superlatives are used to compare one thing with several others. They are used with ***the** ... in,* or ***the** ... of;* sometimes they are used with just ***the*** ....

*This is **the** longest river in the world.*
*This is **the** most expensive car of them all.*
*This is **the** most expensive car here.*

Practice

Write the superlatives of the words given, using *in* or of where necessary.

1 This is .*the biggest building in*.. the world, (big building)
2 This is..here, (comfortable chair)
3 He bought ....the shop, (expensive flowers)
4 I think she's..the group, (good singer)
5 He's..the company, (careful driver)
6 Who's..the class? (old student)
7 It's..I've ever seen, (bad film)
8 She's..all the students, (intelligent)
9 It was..I had ever heard, (beautiful music)
10 He's..all the assistants, (helpful)
11 He's..his class, (young)
12 This is..the world, (poor country)
13 She's..I've ever met. (strange person)
14 I didn't answer..questions, (difficult)
15 Peter's..them all. (old)

23 *too, enough*

- The infinitive with **to** is often used after ***too*** + adjective, or ***not*** + adjective + *enough.*
  *It's **too** cold to swim today. (We can't swim today - it's **too** cold.)*
  *It isn't warm **enough** to go to the beach. (We can't go to the beach - it's **not** warm enough.)*

Practice

Complete these sentences using ***too*** or ***not* ... *enough.***

1 I can't walk any further - I'm *..too tired...* (tired)
2 I'm sorry. You're *.not old.enough to see this film*. (old)
3 It's .... to work here. Let's go to the library. [noisy)
4 Ian was .... to get into the swimming team. (fast)
5 Your handwriting is .... to read, (small)
6 I'm afraid we can't buy that computer. It's .... (expensive)
7 I don't think George should get the new job - he's .... (efficient)
8 Those jeans are .... to wear to the party. (dirty)
9 We couldn't talk to each other in the pub - the music was .... (loud)
10 Can you help me with this bottle? I'm .... to open it. (strong)

24 Participial adjectives *(bored/boring)*

CONTRAST

- Note the difference:
  I was bored.
  The lesson was boring.
  It is not possible to say: *The lesson was bored.*
  It is possible to say: *She was boring.*

Practice

Circle the correct word in each sentence.

1 It was a very *[interested/[✓ interesting])* performance.
2 We were all very *([✓ interested]/interesting)* in what he said.
3 It was a very *{tired/tiring)* journey.
4 We were all very *[worried/worrying).*
5 The children are *[frightening/frightened)* by the animals.

6 Why do you look so *{bored/boring)* at school?
7 It was a terribly *[excited/exciting)* day.
8 Don't look so *[worrying/worried).*
9 We had a *[tiring/tired)* trip home.
10 It was an extremely *{amused/amusing}* programme.
11 It was an *[exciting/excited)* idea!
12 It was the most *[boring/bored)* lesson I can remember.
13 We were all feeling *(tired/tiring),*
14 Didn't you think it was an *{amused/amusing)* play?
15 The last half hour was a *[worrying/worried)* time.
16 I've never been so *[frightened/frightening)* in my life.

25 Adverbs of manner

- Adverbs of manner are formed from adjectives by adding *ly:*
  quick --> quickly; polite —> politely; careful —• carefully
- Note these irregulars: ***good* -> *well; hard* -> *hard; fast --> fast; early --> early; late --> late; loud --> loud*** or ***loudly.***
  He's a good worker. He works well.
  She's a hard worker. She works hard.
  She's a fast runner. She runs fast.

Practice

Write the adverbs.

quick	*quickly*
slow	
fast	
careful	
stupid	
dangerous	
good	
hard	

clever	
nice	
bad	
intelligent	
polite	
rude	
brave	
early	

26 Comparison of adverbs

- Most adverbs are used with ***more*** and ***most:***
  slowly —> ***more*** *slowly,* ***most*** *slowly*
  dangerously--> ***more*** *dangerously,* ***most*** *dangerously*
- One-syllable adverbs add *er* and *est:*
  hard —• harder, hardest; fast-->faster, fastest; loud-->louder, loudest
- The irregular comparisons are:

well badly little	better worse less	best worst least	far	farther/ further	farthest/ furthest

Practice

Write the correct form of adverbs for these sentences.

1 She works ..*harder*.. than all the others, (hard)

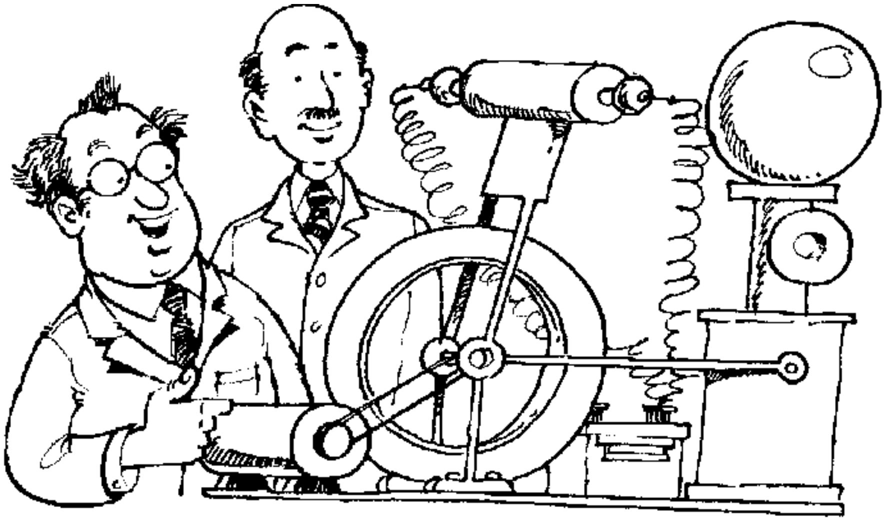

2 Of all the machines, this one works the....................... (good)

3 Couldn't you drive a bit ....? (careful)

4 I can't understand. Would you ask him to speak.....................? (clear]

5 They all behaved badly, but Pat behaved the....................... (bad)

6 John was shouting ....than everybody else, (loud)

7 I think I understand ....than the others, (good)

8 Susan climbed ....than the rest of us. (fast)

9 She gets up.....................than everybody else in the house, (early)

10 Do you think they have acted.....................? (stupid)

27 Adjectives and adverbs

Check

Complete these sentences.

1 It was .*the.best*.. driving I have ever seen, (good)

2 Peter sang ..*louder* than all the others, (loud)

3 The holiday wasn't .*as expensive*.. as the one we had last year.

4 She's a good student: she works..than the others, (careful)

5 Would you play.., please? I'm trying to sleep, (quiet)

6 Of all the people in the factory, Joan works ....(efficient)

7 The weather isn't ....as I had expected. (bad)

8 This is the..company in the world, (big)

9 She plays the piano..than anyone else in her class, (beautiful)

10 Mr Jones is..person in the village, (old)

11 Mark hit the ball very..(hard)

12 She runs..than anyone else in the team. (fast)

13 Do you think older people drive..than younger people? (slow)

14 They all dance well, but John dances.. (good)

15 This computer is nearly twice..as the old one. (expensive)

16 He doesn't ski..as his sister, (good)

17 This typewriter is..than mine, (modern)

18 1 think they both behaved very..(rude)

19 People aren't..as they used to be. (thoughtful)

20 I waited..than anyone else, (long)

Verbs

THE PRESENT TENSE

28 Present Simple

FORM

Positive		*Question*			*Negative*		
I You We They	work.	Do	I you we they	work?	I YOU We They	do not (don't)	work.
He She It	works.	Does	he she it	work?	He She it	does not (doesn't)	work.

- There is only one form of *you* in English, which is the same in singular and plural.
- Note the endings with *he, she,* and *it.* If the verb ends in *ss, sh, ch,* or *x,* add *es:*
  He finishes {finish ends in *sh)*
  She watches (watch ends in *ch)*

USE

- For something which is permanently true:
  ***I come from** France.*
  *He **doesn't speak** Spanish.*
  *We **live** in London.*
- For repeated actions or habits:
  *1 **get** up at six o'clock every day.*
  *What time **do you leave** work?*
  ***I don't see** them very often.*

Practice

Rewrite each sentence as a positive or negative sentence, or a question, according to the instructions.

1 I visit my parents very often, (negative)
/ don't visit my parents very often.

2 Does he go to school every day? (positive)
He goes to school every day.

3 She comes from Germany, (question)
Does she come from Germany?

4 She goes to work by car. (question)

5 We watch television every night, (negative)

6 He doesn't walk to work every day. (positive)

7 She plays football every Saturday, (question)

8 He washes his car every week, (question)

9 They live in Australia, (question)

10 They go to school by bus. (question)

11 Does she finish work at five o'clock? (positive)

12 He goes to the cinema on Fridays, (question)

13 I come from Africa, (negative)

14 Does he live in this street? (positive)

15 He works in a restaurant, (question)

16 She gets up at five o'clock, (question)

17 They eat a lot. (negative)

18 Does he work here? (positive)

29 Present Continuous

FORM

Positive *Question*

I am -	I'm	working.	Am	I	working?
He She is - It	He's She's It's		Is	he she it	
We You are — They	We're You're They're		Are	we you they	

Negative with ***not*** *Negative* with ***n't***

I am —	I'm	not working.	—		working.
He She is - It	He's She's It's		He She It	isn't	
We You are - They	We're You're They're		We You They	aren't	

USE

- For an action in progress now:
  *I'm **reading** a grammar book now.*
  *What **are you looking at?***
  *She **isn't eating** at the moment.*

Practice

Rewrite each sentence as a positive or negative sentence, or a question, according to the instructions.

1 She's watching television now. (question)
Is she watching television now?

2 He isn't staying at this hotel, (positive)
He's staying at thle hotel.

3 She's reading, (negative)
She isn't reading.

4 They're working, (question)

5 He's writing a letter, [question)

6 He's eating, (negative)

7 I'm not working, (positive)

8 She's studying at the moment, (question)

9 I'm sleeping, (negative)

10 You're reading my newspaper, (question)

11 She's writing a letter, (question)

12 He's talking to Mary, (question)

13 They're not playing football, (positive)

14 He's listening to the radio, (question)

15 You're playing with my football, (question)

30 Present Simple/Present Continuous

Practice -

In your notebook, write these sentences putting the verbs into the correct tense.

1 She (read) at the moment.
She's reading at the moment.

2 (You go) to work by car?
Do you qo to work by car?

3 I (not watch} television every night.
/ don't watch television every night.

4 I (not watch) television at the moment.
I'm not watching television at the moment.

5 We {see] our parents every week.
6 (You listen) to the radio now?
7 I (not get up) at seven o'clock every morning.
8 Peter (talk) to Susan now.
9 (They work) in the restaurant at the weekends?
10 She (listen) to the radio in her bedroom at the moment.
11 They (not come) to school every day.
12 (You work) now?
13 The children (go) to bed at eight o'clock.
14 1 (leave) the office every day at five.
15 I'm sorry i can't talk to you now. I (go) out.
16 (Peter and Jane work) in London at the moment?
17 (Mary and Susan drive) to the office every day?
18 We (go) to the beach now.
19 (John listen) to the radio at the moment?
20 (Your parents sit) in the garden now?
21 The film (start) every night at eight o'clock
22 They (not go) to the cinema very often.
23 (You go) into the office every month?
24 I (not study) at the moment.

31 Present Continuous: short answers

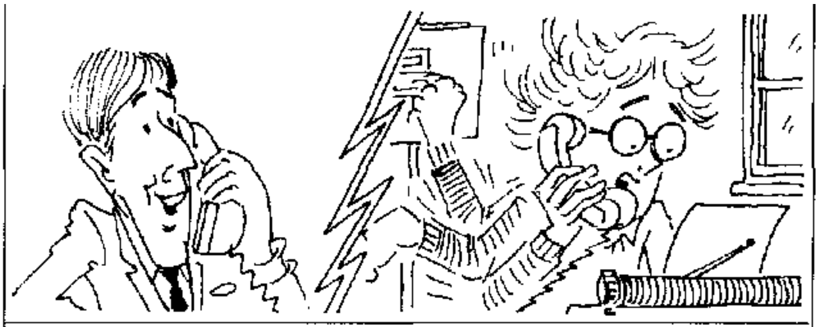

'Are you working at the moment?' 'Yes, I am.'

FORM

Positive *Negative*

Yes,	I am.	No,	I'm not.		
	he she is. it		he she 's not. it	or	he she isn't. it
	we you are. they		we you 're not. they		we you aren't, they

Notes

- Nouns —• pronouns.
  *'Are **your parents** sleeping?'*
  *'Yes, **they** are.'*
- Positive short answers do not use contractions:
  Yes, 1 am. (NOT *Yes, I'm)*
  Yes, they are. (NOT *Yes, they're)*
- Contractions are used in negative short answers.
  7s *she working?'*
  *'No, she **isn't'***

Practice

Someone is asking you questions. Write the short answers.

1 'Are you working at the moment?' 'No, I'm not.'
2 'Are your sislers working now?' 'No, they aren't.'
3 'Are your parents coming?' 'Yes ....'
4 'Is John working at the moment?' 'Yes, ...'
5 'Are they playing tennis?' 'No, ...'
6 'Are you reading this book?' 'Yes, ...'
7 'Is Mary going to school today?' 'No, ...'
8 'Is Peter listening to the radio?' 'Yes, ...'
9 'Are they doing their homework now?' 'No, ...'
10 'Is the dog sleeping?' 'Yes, ...'

32 Present Simple: short answers

FORM

Positive *Negative*

Yes,	I we you they	do.	No,	we you they	don't,
	he she it	does,		he she it	doesn't,

Notes

- Nouns * pronouns
  'Do the men want some tea?
  'Yes, **they** do.'
- Negative short answers can use the unconnected form:
  No, they ***do Jiot.*** (this is more emphatic)

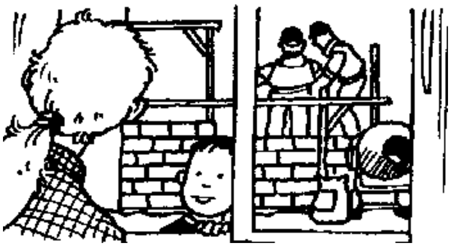

Practice

Write the short answers.

1 'Do you live here?^{1} 'Yes, I do. . . . .'

2 'Does Mary work in this office?' 'No, . . she doesn't. . . .'

3 'Does Stephen speak French?' 'No, ...'

4 'Do the teachers like your work?' 'Yes, ...'

5 'Do you understand the lessons?' 'No, ...'

6 'Do they visit you often?' 'No . . . .'

7 'Do you like France?^{1} 'Yes, ...'

8 'Do your parents live in London?' 'Yes, ...'

9 'Does your father like modern music?' 'No, ...'

10 'Does Judy drive to work?^{1} 'Yes, ...'

11 'Do your grandparents still enjoy gardening?' 'Yes, ...'

12 'Does Simon's sister work with you?' 'No, ...'

13 'Do John and Alison eat meat?' 'No, ...'

14 'Docs Tony like adventure films?' 'Yes, ...'

15 'Do you watch TV at the weekend?' 'No, ...'

16 'Does your uncle play tennis?' 'Yes . . . .'

33 Present Simple and Continuous: short forms

Check

Someone is asking you questions. Write the short answers.

1 'Are your brothers working today?' 'Yes, they are. '
2 'Do you speak Italian?' 'No, I don't. '
3 'Do you like this school?' 'Yes, ...'
4 'Do you go to school in London?' 'Yes, ...'
5 'Is your mother watching television?[1] 'Yes, ...'
6 'Do you go to school on Sundays?' 'No, ...'
7 'Are your parents staying here?' 'No, ...'
8 'Does the dog sleep in your bedroom?' 'No, ...'
9 'Do you get up at eight o'clock?' 'Yes, ...'
10 'Is Mary listening to the stereo?' 'Yes ....'
11 'Does the film start at six o'clock?' 'No, ...'
12 'Are the children playing football?' 'Yes, ...'
13 'Does Susan drive to work?' 'Yes ....'
14 Are you reading?' 'No, ...'
15 'Am I reading your paper?' 'Yes, ...'
16 'Are they doing the washing up?' 'Yes, ...'
17 'Do you come to work by bike?' 'No, ...'
18 'Is John watching television?' 'No, ...'
19 'Does Paul swim for the school team?' 'Yes, ...'
20 'Am I sitting in the right place?' 'Yes, ...'
21 'Do you like reading poetry?' 'No, ...'
22 'Do we need our coats?' 'No, ...'
23 'Are Anne and Maria waiting for the bus?[1] 'Yes, ...'
24 'Are you enjoying yourself?' 'Yes, ...'
25 'Is she coming now?' 'No, ...'
26 'Does he know London well?' 'No, ...'
27 'Do they like chicken?' 'Yes, ...'

i

THE PAST TENSE

34 Past Simple: question and negative

FORM

- The past simple question form is the same for all persons (I, ***you, he, she,*** etc.) and all verbs:

Did	*Subject*	*Infinitive*
Did	I he she it we you they	leave? go? stay?

- The past simple negative form is the same for all persons and all verbs:

Subject	***did not***	*Infinitive*
I He She It We You They	did not didn't	leave. go- stay.

USE

>- Exercise 35.

Practice

Write these sentences in the past simple, keeping them as questions or negatives.

1 Do they agree? *Did they agree?*

2 They don't drive. *They didn't drive.*

3 When do they go?..

4 Where do they work?..

5 Do you understand?..

6 I don't know..

7 He doesn't like it..

8 What do you think?..

9 She doesn't live here ....

10 How much does it cost? ....

11 When do you get up? ....

12 1 don't swim ....

13 She doesn't speak Spanish ....

14 We don't understand ....

15 When do they leave? ....

16 When does he go to school? ....

17 Do you like Germany? ....

18 When do you go out? ....

19 She doesn't smoke ....

20 He doesn't know ....

35 Past Simple: positive - regular verbs

FORM

- Regular verbs have the same form for all persons (*I*, ***you, he, she,*** etc.):

Subject	*Infinitive + ed*
I He She It We You They	stayed.

Notes

- Irregular verbs are different in the positive >• Exercise 36.
- Remember to use the infinitive without *ed* for questions and negatives

  Exercise 34.
  Did you stay? (NOT *Did you stayed?)*
- Spelling:
  - a) verbs ending in *e* add only *d:*
    I love — / loved
  - b) verbs ending in y change y to ***led:***
    I try — I tried
  - c) most verbs ending in a single vowel + single consonant change to single vowel + double consonant:
    / travel —• travelled
    We stop —• we stopped

USE

- For a past action or state. The action can be a short one:
  / ***asked*** *a question.*
  She ***missed*** *the bus.*

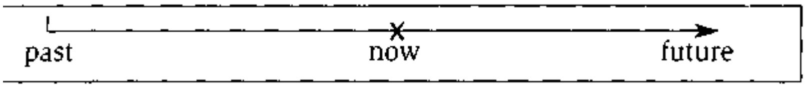

or a long one:
/ ***walked*** *for hours.*
I ***lived*** *here for years.*

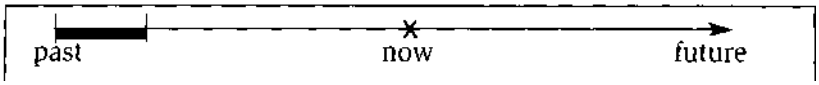

Practice

Change the verbs into the past simple, keeping them as positives, negatives, or questions.

1 He lives here. *He lived here.*
2 Do you work here? *Did you work here?*
3 I don't like the film ....
4 She hates the hotel ....
5 We don't live there ....
6 Does he play the piano? ....
7 I love Paris ....
8 He doesn't work very hard ....
9 She travels a lot ....
10 He walks everywhere ....
11 I don't study English ....
12 Do you drive to school? ....
13 I don't like him ....
14 Do you miss your parents? ....
15 We love Spain ....
16 John studies music ....
17 Where do you live? ....
18 What does he study? ....
19 Where does she work? ....
20 We don't like London ....
21 They hate waiting ....
22 They work in a factory ....

36 Past Simple: positive - irregular verbs

FORM

- Irregular verbs have the same form for all persons (I, **you, *he, she,*** etc)

Subject	*Past Simple*
I	went.
He	
She	
It	
We	
You	
They	

- Irregular verbs are irregular in the past simple in the positive only (not in the negative or question form):

go — went	*She **went** home yesterday,*
sit — sat	*I **sat** down,*
write -- wrote	*She **wrote** for hours.*

USE

Exercise 35.

Look at these irregular forms (Exercise 54 for a longer list):

go	—	went	give	--	gave
sit	--	sat	have	--	had
come	—	came	get up	--	got up
write	--	wrote	eat	--	ate
run	—	ran	drink	—	drank

Practice

Use the verbs above to complete these sentences.

1 I .*wrote...* a few letters yesterday.

2 He..............at six o'clock this morning.

3 They..............home late last night.

4 She..............a headache yesterday.

5 I was hungry so I..............some bread and cheese.

6 They came into my office and..............down.

7 We..............some water.

8 I was late so I..............to work.

9 She..............abroad last week.

10 They..............him some money.

37 Past Simple: positive

Practice

37a Write the past simple positive of these irregular verbs.

buy	*bought*	forget		see	
catch		give		sit	
choose		go		speak	
come		know		take	
do		make		tell	
drink		put		think	
eat		read		understand	

37b In your notebook, write these sentences putting the verbs into the past simple. Remember that the infinitive is used for questions and negatives.

1 I . . . . .some new clothes last week, (buy)
/ bought some new clothes last week.

2 What time . . . . .last night? (they come)
What time did they come last night?

3 I . . . . .his question, (not understand)
/ didn't understand his question.

4 I . . . . .he was wrong, (think)
5 . . . . . .a lot at the party? (you eat)
6 I . . . . .the bus this morning, (not catch)
7 I . . . . .my keys yesterday, (forget)
8 . . . . . .you about the meeting? (they tell)
9 Peter . . . . .the washing-up last night, (do)
10 They . . . . .anything at the disco, (not drink)
11 I . . . . .your suitcase in your bedroom, (put)
12 We . . . . .it was your birthday, (not know)
13 . . . . .to the office yesterday? (you go)
14 They . . . . .her a present when she left, (give)
15 We . . . . .their letters, (read)

38 Past Continuous

FORM

Positive			Question			Negative		
I He She It	was	working.	Was	I he she it	working?	I He She It	was not (wasn't)	working.
We You They	were		Were	they		We You They	were not (weren't)	

USE

To describe a past action at some point between its beginning and its end. The past continuous is often interrupted by the past simple.

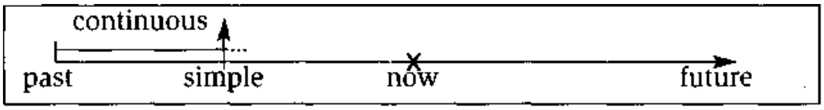

I was having a bath when the phone rang.
John arrived when I was eating.
I was listening to the radio when I had an idea.
We were playing tennis at 7 o'clock last night.

Note the difference between:
a) *When she* ***arrived,*** *we* ***had*** *dinner.*
b) *When she* ***arrived, we were having*** *dinner.*
The time order for (a) is *arriving* then *having dinner.*
The time order for (b) is *having dinner,* during which she *arrived.*

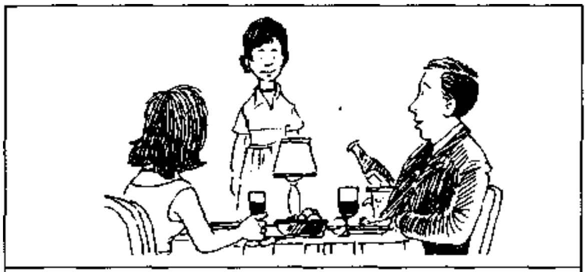

When she arrived, we were having dinner.

Practice

38a Look at these sentences and answer the questions by circling A or B.

1 When I saw them, they were playing football.

Which happened first?

A I saw them (B) they were playing football

2 When she telephoned, I was having a bath.
Which happened first?
A the telephone call B the bath

3 They were watching television when I visited them.
Which happened first?
A They were watching television B I visited them

4 I was walking into the house when I heard the noise.
Which happened first?
A I was walking into the house B I heard the noise

5 I walked into the house when I heard the noise.
Which happened first?
A I walked into the house B I heard the noise.

6 We left the party when the police arrived.
Which happened first?
A We left the party B the police arrived

7 We were leaving the party when the police arrived.
Which happened first?
A We were leaving the party B the police arrived

8 I made the beds when Joan and Ian got here.
Which happened first?
A I made the beds B Joan and Ian got here.

9 I was making the beds when Joan and Ian got here.
Which happened first.
A I was making the beds B Joan and Ian got here

10 I was getting into my car when I heard the shot.
Which happened first?
A I was getting into my car B I heard the shot

38b Complete these sentences by putting the verbs into the past continuous or the past simple.

1 I ..*was watching.,* television when the phone rang, (watch]
2 When the ambulance came, we .... him into it. (carry)
3 She .... her car when she suddenly felt ill. (drive)
4 When he saw me, he .... off the wall, (fall)

5 We............................to the radio when it suddenly stopped working, (listen)

6 Why.............................cards when he walked into the office? (you play)

7.............................you when you gave them the money? (they thank)

8.............................when you turned on the gas? (you smoke)

9 When I arrived, they.............................hello but continued working, (say)

10 When I got to the hospital, she.............................in the waiting room, (sit)

38c **In your notebook, write a question and answer in the past continuous and in the past simple.**

start raining **lie on the beach** leave the beach

'What. . . . . .you. . . . . .it. . . . . .?'

'We. . . . . .'

'What were you doing when it started raining?'

'We were lying on the beach.'

'What did you do when it started raining?'

'We left the beach.'

arrive **watch television** **turn off the television**

'What. . . . . .they. . . . . .you. . . . . .?'

'They. . . . . .'

'What were they doing when you arrived?'

'They were watching television.'

'What did they do when you arrived?'

'They turned off the television.'

see him talk to Sheila start talking to me

'What . . . . .John. . . . . .you. . . . . .?'

'He. . . . . .'

ring have a bath get out of the bath

''What. . . . . .she. . . . . .the phone. . . . . .?'

'She. . . . . .'

5 hear work in the office go straight home

'What . . . . . you . . . . . you . . . . . the news?'
'I . . . . .'

start cook the dinner run out of the house

'What . . . . . they . . . . . the fire . . . . . ?'
'They . . . . .'

fall down talk to a friend pick her up

'What . . . . . she . . . . . the child . . . . . ?'
'She . . . . .'

start work in a bank become a soldier

'What . . . . . you . . . . . the war . . . . . ?'
'I . . . . .'

39 Past Simple and Past Continuous

Practice

Write ***did,*** *was,* or ***were*** to complete these sentences.

1 I . *did.* n't like it.
2 They ..*were,* enjoying themselves.
3 . . . . you have a good time?
4 What time . . . . you leave?
5 . . . . he staying in a hotel?
6 I . . . . n't eating.
7 What . . . . you do then?
8 Why . . . . they sitting there?
9 What . . . . they doing?
10 What . . . . you say?
11 Why . . . . he working late last night?
12 They . . . . n't playing cards.
13 She . . . . n't understand.
14 I . . . . n't having a bath.
15 What . . . . the dog eating?

40 Past Simple and Past Continuous: short answers

'Were you working when I phoned you last night?' 'Yes, I was:
'Did Mary ask you to work late?' 'No, she didn't.'

FORM

Past Simple *Past Continuous*

Subject + *did*				Subject + *was/were*		
	I				I	
	he				he	was.
	she	did.			she	wasn't.
Yes,	it	didn't.		Yes,	it	
No,	we			No,	we	were.
	you				you	weren't.
	they				they	

Note: The short answer to *'Did you like it?'* is *'Yes, I did.'* (NOT *Yes, 1 liked.*

Practice

Someone is asking you questions. Write the short answers.

1 'Were you sitting here yesterday?' **'No, *.I. wasn't..* '**
2 'Did she see the accident?' 'Yes, she *did.* '
3 'Did you leave the hotel last night?' 'No,......................'
4 'Was he working when you arrived?' 'Yes,......................'
5 'Were they eating when you phoned?' 'Yes,......................'
6 'Did your father buy another car?' 'No,......................'
7 'Did you see that letter for you?' 'Yes,......................'
8 'Were your brothers sleeping when you left?' 'Yes,......................'
9 'You didn't see the accident, then?' 'No,......................'
10 'Weren't they waiting for you?' 'No,......................'
11 'Did you like the present?' 'Yes,......................'
12 'Did the children have a good time?' 'Yes,......................'
13 'Was Susan driving when you saw her?' 'No,......................'
14 'Did he speak to you?' 'Yes,......................'

15 'Did you do the washing-up?' 'Yes,
16 'Were you doing your homework when I phoned?' 'Yes,
17 'Was your father washing the car?' 'Yes,
18 'Did you understand what he was saying?' 'No,
19 'Was she leaving when you got there?' 'Yes,
20 'Did your sister lose her purse yesterday?' 'Yes,

41 Present Perfect

FORM

has/have + past participle

Positive			*Question*			*Negative*		
I We You They	have ('ve)	finished.	Have	I we you they	finished?	I We You They	have not (haven't)	finished.
He She It	has ('s)		Has	he she it		He She It	has not (hasn't)	

USE

- The present perfect describes the indefinite past:
  ***I've been** to Paris.*
  *I've **seen** this film before.*
  *They've **met** my parents.*

  The past is indefinite because the time it happened is not important, or because we do not know when it happened. Note the difference between:
  7 *went to Paris last year,* (definite time - *past simple)*
  I've been to Paris, (at some time in my life - indefinite time - *present perfect).*

- The present perfect is often used to describe personal experience:
  ***I've been** to Berlin.*
  *She's **met** a lot of famous people.*
  *I've **heard** this music before.*

- The question form is often ***Have you ever* ...?(=** in your life?)
  ***Have you ever been** to Paris?*

- The present perfect is not used with past time words ***(last night, yesterday,*** *in* ***1984,*** etc). **It** is not possible to say *I've seen him yesterday.*

Note the difference between:
*She's **gone** to Sweden.* (= and she's there now)
*She's **been** to Sweden.* {= but she isn't there now)

Practice

41a Write the correct form of the present perfect to complete these sentences.

1 ..Have you ever been.. to Rome? (you ever be)

2 ..I've seen.. this film before. (I see)

3 .... in an office, (she never work)

4 .... in an aeroplane. (I never be)

5 .... to Germany? (he ever be)

6 .... my parents? (you met)

7 .... in the theatre? (you ever work)

8 .... to all the capital cities of Europe. (she be)

9 .... this book. (I read)

10 .... that new film about aliens? (you see)

11 .... abroad, (we never be)

12 .... a British policeman before. (they never see)

13 .... in a foreign country? (they ever live)

14 .... the President, (they meet)

15 .... to Brazil. (I never be)

- 's in a verb can be short for is or *has:*
  He's tired. / It's dead. / She's thirsty. (= is)
  He's gone. / It's disappeared. / She's left. (= *has)*

Practice

41 b Are these contractions *is* or *hasl*

1 He's tired. (= is*)*

2 She's arrived ....

3 It's escaped ....

4 She's ill ....

5 He's eaten ....

6 She's worried ....

7 He's left the country ....

8 She's stopped working ....

9 He's had a cold ....

10 It's died ....

42 Present Perfect/Past Simple

Check

Write these sentences, putting the verbs into the present perfect or past simple.

1 I (read) that book three times.
I've read that book three times.

2 She (go) home three days ago.
She went home three days aqo.

3 I (meet) Mr and Mrs Shelley.

4 She (start) school in 1984.

5 I (leave) the office early last night.

6 He (see) the film before.

7 (You be) to Austria?

8 (You see) the film on TV last night?

9 When (you arrive) in London?

10 John (be) to Germany before.

11 (You read) this book before?

12 I (not see) him yesterday.

13 I never (go) anywhere by plane until now.

14 (You hear) their new record? It's the best they've ever made.

15 I (not know) about the disco last night.

43 Present Perfect + *for/since*

USE

- The present perfect + ***for/since*** is used when something started in the past and is continuing now.
  I've worked here ***for*** *six years,* (and I'm working here now)
  He's lived here ***since*** *1990.* (and he's living here now)

NOTES

- ***for*** + period of time:
  I've lived here ***for*** *six years.*
  I've worked here ***for*** *two months.*
  They've been married ***for*** *a long time.*
- ***since*** + a point in time in the past:
  I've lived here ***since*** *1987.*
  I've worked here ***since*** *February.*
  We've been friends ***since*** *we started college.*
- Note the difference between the present perfect and the past simple:
  He's worked here ***for*** *six months.* (= he's working here now)
  He worked here ***for*** *six months.* (= he's not working here now)
- It is not possible to say *He worked here since 1990.*

Practice

43a Circle ***for*** or ***since*** in each sentence.

1 I've worked here *t(fori/since)* six years.

2 I lived here *[for/since)* three months.

3 I've worked in the factory *{for/since)* 1982.

4 He's been abroad *[for/since]* five years.

5 I studied French *[for/since)* twelve years.

6 I've known her *[for/since]* 1982.

7 I've lived here *{for/since)* I was a child.

8 We've been in Paris *[for/since)* we were married.

9 I've known them *[for/since)* years.

10 We practised *{for/since)* months.

43b Write these sentences, choosing ***for*** or ***since*** and putting the verb into the past simple or present perfect as necessary.

1 I (study) medicine *[for/'since)* three years but then I stopped.
I studied medicine for three years but then I stopped.

2 She (work) for me *[for/since)* she left school.
She's worked for me since she left school.

3 I (work) in the restaurant *{for/since)* six months but then it closed.

4 I (live) here *[for/since]* I was a little girl.

5 He (be) in prison now *[for/since]* three years.

6 I (not see) him *[for/since]* he left the office.

7 I (not see) her *[for/since]* several years and then I met her again.

8 We (be) in Vienna *[for/since)* 1960.

9 I (work) here *(for/since)* seven years but it's time to leave now.

10 I (live) in England *[for/since)* 1993.

44 Present Perfect

USE

The present perfect is used to show a connection in the speaker's mind between the past and the present. This occurs in two main ways:

a) *the unfinished past*
- by referring to something that started in the past and is continuing now:
  ***I've lived** here for seven years,* (and I live here now)
  ***I've worked** here since 1994.* (and I work here now)

Exercise 43.

- or describing something that happened in an unfinished time period:
  ***I've read** two books this week.*
  *I've **seen** him twice today.*
  *She's **telephoned** three times this morning.*

b) *the indefinite past:* referring to the past with no definite time (>• Exercise 41). It is connected to the present in some way, and is often used in the following situations:

describing something that happened in the past, when the result can be seen in the present:

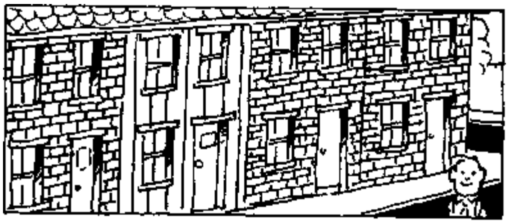

He's painted his house.

Someone's taken my wallet.

She's bought a new car.

- describing something that happened recently, often when giving 'news':
  Two men have escaped from prison in London.
  The prime minister has arrived in Australia.
- with certain words ***[just, yet, already)**:*
  He's just gone out.
  I've already told her.
  Have you done your homework yet?
- describing personal experience:
  I've been to Paris.
  He's never been abroad.
- describing personal experience with superlatives or ordinals:
  She's the most intelligent person I've met.
  This is the third time we've complained.

Practice

The sentences below belong to one or more of the categories above. Complete these sentences by putting the verbs into the present perfect.

1 She .*'?.P.?en...*\\\ for several months, (be)

2 This is the nicest restaurant I .... (see)

3 Three people .... the company this week, (leave)

4 I .... three letters already, (write)

5 We .... two holidays this year, (have)

6 There .... a revolution in San Serife. (be)

7 I .... that film, (see)

8 Someone .... your front gate! (knock down)

9 It's the first time I .... (be) here.

10 .... Indonesian food? (you ever eat)

11 .... your homework yet? (you do)

12 This is the fourth time he .... my car. (damage)

13 You .... a shave! (have)

14 She's got the best voice I .... (ever hear)

15 He .... here since eight o'clock, (be)

16 The Prime Minister .... for a meeting with the President, (ask)

17 She .... (just go out)

18 I .... (never smoke)

19 This is the first time the children .... on a plane, (be)

20 .... already .... Mary? (you see)

45 Present Perfect with *just, yet,* and *already*

Notes

- Note the position of ***just, yet,*** **and** ***already:***
  just:
  He's ***just*** *gone. / Has he* ***just*** *gone?*
  yet:
  Has she gone ***yet?*** */ Have you written that letter to Paul* ***yet?***
  already:
  She's ***already*** *left. / She's left* ***already.*** */ She's left the house* ***already.*** *Has she* ***already*** *left? / Has she left* ***already?*** */ Has she left the house* ***already?***
- ***yet*** is used only with negatives and questions:
  She hasn't phoned ***yet.***
  Has she phoned ***yet?***

Practice

In your notebook, write these sentences putting the words in brackets in the correct place. If two answers are possible, write them both.

1 I'm sorry, she's gone - she went some time ago. (already)
I'm sorry, she's already gone - she went some time ago.
I'm sorry, she's gone already - she went some time ago.

2 Have you finished? It's time to go. (yet)

3 I haven't done my homework, (yet)

4 I've told her several times that I can't come, (already)

5 You've missed her - if you hurry, you'll catch her in the street, (just)

6 Have you finished painting the house? (yet)

7 I've said that I'm not going to be here tomorrow, (already)

8 I haven't explained, (yet)

9 Have you got your passport? (already)

10 He's told me that I've got the sack, (just)

46 Present Perfect Continuous

FORM

has/have* + *been* + *verb-ing

Positive			*Question*			*Negative*		
I We You They	have ('ve)	been waiting.	Have	I we you they	been waiting?	I We You They	have not haven't	been waiting.
He She It	has (**'s**)		Has	he she it		He She It	has not (hasn't)	

USE

- Frequently used with ***how long, for*** and ***since*** (>• Exercise 43 for difference between ***for*** and ***since)***.
  I've been studying *English since I was a child.*
  How long ***have*** *you* ***been waiting?***
- To describe activities which were happening until this moment or a very short time ago:
  'You look tired.' 'Yes, ***I've been working*** *all night'*
  "Why are you so dirty?' ***'I've been playing*** *football'*

Note: this tense is not used with ***to*** *be* or with verbs that do not normally take the continuous.

Practice

Write these sentences, putting the verbs into the present perfect continuous.

1 'What (you do) today?' 'I (play) tennis.'
'What have you been doing today?' I've been playing tennis.'

2 'How long (you study) English?'

3 'Oh, David! I (look) for you!'

4 'Pat (live) here for twenty-five years.'

5 'I'm tired. We (walk) all day.'

6 'How long (you learn) to drive?'

7 'I (wait) here for ages.^{5}

8 'She's bad-tempered because she (work] too hard.

9 'They (watch) football since three o'clock.'

10 'Why (you see) your parents so much recently?'

11 'The children look exhausted. What (they do)?'

12 'She should pass the exam. She (study) for weeks.'

13 'Your mother sends her love. I (just speak) to her on the phone.

14 'I (work) here since I was eighteen.'

THE FUTURE TENSE

47 Present Continuous + time word

FORM

Present continuous (Exercise 29) + time word ***{tomorrow, next week, on Saturday, in two weeks,*** etc.):

I'm seeing them	on this Saturday in three days in two weeks' time this week/Friday next week/Friday

USE

- To talk about plans which are arranged for a particular time in the future. This construction is used very often with ***come*** and ***go,*** and with verbs like see, ***stay, visit, meet,*** etc:

  They're ***going*** *tomorrow.*

  I'm arriving *next week.*

  We're visiting *the States in three weeks.*

Notes

- Remember that a time word or expression must be used, or understood from the conversation, to make the present continuous a future.
- This is not just a 'near' future - it is possible to say: *He's coming back in ten years.*

Practice

Write these sentences in full, putting the verbs into the present continuous and supply the missing words where necessary.

1 I / see / them / Saturday.
I'm seeing them on Saturday.

2 They / come / here / three weeks.
They're coming here in three weeks.

3 I / meet / John / three o'clock.

4 What / you do / Friday night?

5 I / go / to the disco / Saturday evening.

6 We / go back / to the States / three years.

7 They / go on holiday / two days' time.

8 I / not come home / Friday.

9 You / work late / tomorrow night?

10 We / not go to school / next week.

11 He / come to see you / tomorrow.

12 Mr and Mrs Green / go away / three weeks.

13 We / have a party / Saturday.

14 I / see her again / next week.

15 You / play football / this week?

48 *going to*

FORM

Positive			*Question*			*Negative*		
I	am ('m)	going to pay.	Am	I	going to pay?	I	am not ('m not)	going to pay.
He She It	is ('s)		Is	he she it		He She It	is not (isn't) C's not)	
We You They	are ('re)		Are	we you they		We You They	are not (aren't) ('re not)	

USE

To talk about a planned future action:
***I'm going to** see my parents on Saturday.*
(This use is similar to *present continuous* time word Exercise 47.)

- To talk about something in the future which we can see as a result of something happening now:
  *Look at those clouds. It's **going to** rain.*
  *That man on the bike is **going** to fall off.*
- To make statements about the future in a neutral way:
  *Alan's **going to** finish his exams on Friday.*
  *Jenny's **going to** be five next week.*
  *I'm **going to** work for a television company.*
  (The future simple is also used for the purpose > Exercise 50.)

Practice

48a Write the correct form of ***going** to* to complete these sentences.

1 When (you] ..are you going to.. phone her?
2 (They not) ..They aren't going to.. stay very long.
3 What (you).. say to your father?
4 (I not).. pay anything.
5 (We).. play tennis tomorrow?
6 (She).. live in Mexico for a few months.
7 (The machine).. work?
8 (Your parents).. have a holiday this year?
9 (They).. borrow some money from the bank.
10 (I not).. eat there again.

48b Write the correct form of ***going** to* and use one of these verbs to complete the sentences. Use each verb once only.

finish complain fall off be miss
die «ift drive work fail

1 Look at those clouds! It 's going to rain.. .
2 Look at the sun! It.. hot today.
3 Susan's not working very hard. I think she.. her exams.
4 He's very angry. He.. to the manager.
5 It's nearly four o'clock. The lesson.. soon.
6 I don't like travelling by plane. I.. there.
7 This plan is too complicated. It (not)..
8 The President's very **ill.** I think he..
9 Watch the baby! She.. the bed!
10 This bus is very slow. I think we.. the train.

49 *going to I* Present Continuous + time word

CONTRAST

- It is often possible to use either tense:
  *I'm **seeing** them tomorrow. I'm **going to see** them tomorrow.*
- The ***going to*** future is very common, especially in conversation.
  If there is doubt about which of the two futures to use, it is better to use ***going to.***
- With the verbs ***go*** and ***come,*** it is better to use the present continuous.
- Present continuous + time word is generally used for plans arranged for a particular time in the future.

Practice

In your notebook, supply the ***going to*** or present continuous future for these sentences. If two answers are possible, write them both.

1 We . . . . . at home tonight, (stay)
We're going to stay at home tonight./We're staying at home tonight.

2 Look at the sky. It . . . . . tomorrow, (rain)
Look at the sky. it's going to rain tomorrow.

3 We . . . . . at a restaurant tonight, (eat)
4 They . . . . . to Manchester tomorrow morning, (drive)
5 I . . . . . my teeth, have a wash, and go to bed. (brush)
6 Be careful with that plate! You . . . . . it! (break)
7 My parents . . . . . with us for the weekend, (stay)
8 Who's . . . . . him the news? (tell)
9 Hurry up! We . . . . . the train! (miss)
10 How many people . . . . . today? (arrive)
11 They . . . . . Nick at 10 o'clock tomorrow, (see)
12 I . . . . . to the seaside next weekend, (go)
13 Who . . . . . to John's party later? (come)
14 Bring your hat and gloves - it . . . . . cold later tonight, (get)
15 Mary . . . . . to Barbados next Tuesday, (fly)
16 Our friends . . . . . us before the concert, (meet)
17 We . . . . . into our new house next month, (move)

50 Future Simple

FORM

Positive

I He She It We You They	will ('ll)	stay.

Question

Shall/will	I	stay?
Will	he she it	
Shall/will	we	
Will	you they	

Negative

T He She It We You They	will not (won't)	stay.

Notes

- the negative contraction = ***won't.***
- ***shall*** is not used very often now. We generally use it only as a first person question (= with / or *we)* to make suggestions and offers:
  Shall *I carry your suitcase for you?*
  Shall *we go to a restaurant ?*

USE

- For a statement of future fact. This can be
  a] certain:
  They'll be here on Saturday afternoon.
  The journey ***will take*** *six hours.*
  b) uncertain:
  I think, it ***'II rain*** *tomorrow.*
  I'm not sure he'll be there.
  Going to can also be used for this purpose > Exercise 48.
- For a sudden decision to do something (usually used with / or *we):*
  No one's offered to help? I'll do it for you!
  Wait a minute **- *I'll open*** *the door for you,*
  I think ***I'll have*** *eggs and chips please.*
- To show willingness to do or not to do something in the future (often as a promise or a threat):
  I promise I'll be there.
  I'll *never* ***speak*** *to him again.*

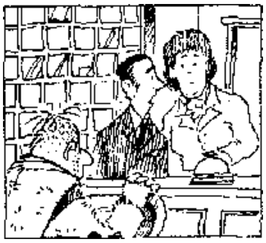

He *says he'll send the money.*

> Exercise 58 for future simple in conditional sentences.

> Exercise 53 for future simple + ***when,*** *as* ***soon*** *as,* etc.

Practice

Write these sentences, putting the verbs into the future simple.

1 I'm sure he (not be] late.
I'm sure he won't be late,

2 [I open) the window for you?
Shall I open the window for you?

3 How long (the journey take?)

4 1 suppose (she be) in London next week.

5 John (phone) your office for you.

6 (There be) a lot of people at the meeting?

7 What time (the race start?)

8 He (never agree) to your idea.

9 You (never see) your money again.

10 What's the matter? (I phone) the doctor?

11 Don't worry. I (pay) for the damage to your car.

12 (You be) at home tomorrow?

13 The company (not give) you an extra day's holiday.

14 Don't touch that! You (hurt) yourself!

15 There (not be) any newspapers tomorrow.

51 *going to-future* plan, and *will-* sudden decision

CONTRAST

- **In** conversation, *going to* is often used to indicate a future plan that has been made before the time of speaking:
  *I'm **going** to see Pat tomorrow - we arranged it this morning.*

* ***Will*** is often used to indicate a sudden decision, made at the time of speaking:
*How can we get to the airport? I know! **I'll borrow** Sue's car!*

Practice

Write the correct form of ***going to*** or ***will*** to complete the dialogue.

LAURA: What are you doing this weekend, Jan?

TANYA: I ..*'m going to see*..........(see) a new play tomorrow at the Royal Court Theatre - 'Day of the Flood'.

LAURA: Have you got the tickets yet?

TANYA: NO, I..(get) them this afternoon, actually. Would you like to come?

LAURA: Oh, thank you, that would be nice.

TANYA: OK, I..(get) you a ticket too.

LAURA: Great ... what time does it start?

TANYA: Eight o'clock, but we..(all meet) in the Green Cafe at 7.15 ...

LAURA: OK, I..(meet) you in the cafe, but, er ... I..(be) there about half-past seven.

TANYA: That's fine.

LAURA: Oh, one other thing ... I've got no money at the moment ... I ....(pay) for the ticket on Saturday. Is that OK?

TANYA: Yes, that's OK, no problem.

LAURA:..(you eat) in the cafe, or just have a cup of coffee?

TANYA: Just a coffee I think ...

9

LAURA: Look,..(we go) to a restaurant after the show? I know a very good Chinese restaurant ...

TANYA: That's a good idea - I..(phone) the others and see if they want to come too.

LAURA: Good, and then I..(book) a table ... Great! I..(see) you tomorrow.

52 *going* to and *will*

CONTRAST

- Sometimes it is possible to use either ***going to*** or w***ill,*** but at other times only one of them is correct:

going to	1 future plan - decided before time of speaking	ex **51**	**I'm** going to leave next week.
	2 future result from present evidence	ex 48	He's going to fall off his bike.
will	1 future willingness	ex 50	I won't do it.
	2 sudden decision made at time of speaking	ex 51	I'll phone her now,
	3 offer/suggestion	ex 50	Shall I open the door for you?
going to or ***mill***	1 neutral future fact[1]	ex 48 ex 50	Danny's going to be eight next week. Danny will be eight next week.
	2 first conditional[1]	ex 58	If it rains, we're going to leave. If it rains, we'll leave.
	3 *when/as soon as*, etc.[1]	ex 53	I'm going to phone when I arrive. I'll phone when I arrive.

'***will*** is more common here.

Practice

Write the correct form of ***going to, shall,*** or ***mill*** for these sentences. If two answers are possible, write the more likely one.

1 'Why is Sheila getting a passport?'
'She .*''s going to*. live in Spain for a year.'
2 'I know she ...won't. (not) agree with this idea.'
3 'I think the film .... be a big success.'
4 'I don't feel very well this morning.'
'Oh, dear .... I look after the children for you?'
5 The managing director .... sack two hundred people next month.
6 'There's someone at the door.' 'OK, I .... answer it.'
7 She .... never see her parents again.

8 'Is that your new stereo?'
'Yes, but it doesn't work. I .... to take it back to the shop.
9 I think the exam .... be quite easy.
10 'I see Hannah and Peter together a lot.'
'Yes. They .... get married.'
11 You .... probably have a really good time.
12 The dog looks ill. I think it .... be sick.
13 What (you) .... do this weekend?
14 I .... see a late-night horror film at the Odeon.
15 You don't have to walk: T .... give you a lift.
16 I've had enough of this job. I .... leave.
17 Of course we .... help you.

53 *when* + Present Simple to describe the future

FORM

when +	*present simple*	*future simple*
When As soon as Before After If / Unless	I see him.	T'll phone you.

USE

The present simple is used in clauses of time and condition (after *when, as soon as, if,* etc.) to refer to the future.

until is similar:

future simple +	***until***	+ present simple
I'll wait	until	I see him.

Notes

- Note the use of the present simple above:
(NOT *When I'll see him I'll phone you.)*
(NOT I'*ll wait until I'll see him.)*
- The present perfect can also be used with ***when,*** etc: *I'll speak to you when I've finished.*
- *Going **to*** or the imperative can be used, when appropriate, instead of the future simple: *I've decided what to do. I'm **going to** talk to him when he gets here. **Phone** me when he arrives.*

Practice

Write these sentences, putting the verbs into the future simple or present simple.

1 1 (give) it to them when they (visit) us.
/'// give it to them when they visit us.

2 T (not send) the parcel until I (hear) from you.
/ won't send the parcel until I hear from you.

3 As soon as they (phone) me, I (contact) you.

4 I (see) you before I (fly) to Paris.

5 They (send) you the money before they (leave).

6 When I (talk) to him, I (give) him your news.

7 She (visit) her parents before she (go) to the airport.

8 I (finish) this when I (be) at the office.

9 I (send) you a postcard when I (get) to Bermuda.

10 She (do) her homework before she (go) out.

11 After I (visit) the hospital, I (go) and see her parents.

12 1 (phone) Mary when we (get) to San Francisco.

13 1 (call) you as soon as we (sign) the contract.

14 He (not do) anything before you (tell) him to.

15 You (be) very surprised when you (meet) him.

VERB FORMATIONS

54 Irregular verbs

Irregular verbs are usually listed in three different columns:

Infinitive	*Past Simple*	*PastParticiple*
be have go	was had went	been had gone

Check

54a Add the missing words.

Infinitive	*Past Simple*	*Past Participle*	*Infinitive*	*Past Simple*	*Past Participle*
			dream		
				drank	
be	*was*	*been*			driven
beat	*beat*	*beaten*			eaten
	became			fell	
		begun	feel		
	bent			fought	
	blew				found
		broken		flew	
	brought		forget		
build			forgive		
burn				got	
	burst				given
		bought		went	
	caught		grow		
choose				heard	
come					hidden
	cost			hit	
		cut	hold		

Infinitive	*Past Simple*	*Past Participle*	*Infinitive*	*Past Simple*	*Past Participle*
do			hurt		
draw			keep		
	knew				
learn					
	left			shot	
		lent			shown
	let			shut	
lie			sing		
light			sit		
lose				slept	
	made				spoken
	meant			spent	
meet			stand		
	paid			stole	
		put			swum
	read			took	
ride			teach		
	ran		tell		
		said	think		
	saw			threw	
sell					understood
send				wore	
	set		win		
shine				wrote	

54b Complete these sentences, putting the verbs given into the past simple or present perfect'.

1 They *have beaten us at* football for the last five years, (beat)
2 She *became* manager of the factory in 1982. (become)

6 .... your books back already? (they bring)
7 We .... a new house last week, (buy)
8 The police .... the person who stole my purse. He's at the police station now. (catch)
9 We .... the new person for the job. (already choose)
10 Nobody .... to see me yesterday, (come)
11 It was very expensive - it .... a thousand dollars, (cost)
12 .... the washing-up yet? (you not do)
13 Someone .... into the swimming pool, (just fall)
14 I .... terrible when I woke up this morning, (feel)
15 I .... some money in the street last night, (find)

54c Complete these sentences, putting the verbs given into the present perfect or past simple.

1 .... in an aeroplane before? (you ever fly)
2 .... what I told you to do? (you already forget)
3 My parents .... me some money when I left home, (give)
4 There's nobody here - everybody .... out. (go)
5 .... when you left the dentist? (your mouth hurt)
6 I asked them to be quiet but they .... talking, (keep)
7 I .... him since we were at school together, (know)
8 1 .... a lot since 1 started coming to this school, (learn)
9 I .... him £500. (already lend)
10 The police .... me talk to Jane after she was arrested, (let)

11 We .... the beds and cleaned the rooms, (already make)

12 .... the taxi-driver yet? [you pay)

13 I carried the suitcases into the hall and .... them by the front door, (put)

14 She .... most of his books already, (read)

15 I left the house and .... quickly down the street, (run)

54d Complete these sentences, putting the verbs given into the present perfect or past simple.

1 I .... the doctor about it, but she couldn't help. (already see)

2 I'm sorry, the car's not here - I .... it. (just sell)

3 She .... you a letter three weeks ago. (send)

4 I .... the door quietly when I left, (shut)

5 She .... very well, but I didn't like the band. (sing)

6 I was so tired I .... for twelve hours, (sleep)

7 .... to John's teacher about his homework yet? (you speak)

8 I'm afraid I .... all the money, (already spent)

9 I .... in the rain and waited for the bus. (stand)

10 .... my photograph yet? (you not take)

11 Someone .... me about your new job. (just tell)

12 She .... the ball to me and I caught it. (throw)

13 I .... what he was trying to say, but Pat didn't. (understand)

14 She .... expensive clothes and drove a Mercedes. (wear)

15 I .... sixty letters asking for jobs, (already write]

THE PASSIVE

55 The passive: Present Simple and Past Simple

FORM

noun/pronoun + to be + past participle
Someone washes the car every week.
The car is ***washed*** *every week.*

They make these televisions in Japan.
These televisions ***are made*** *in Japan.*

Someone painted the house last week.
The house ***was painted*** *last week.*

They taught the children to be polite.
The children ***were taught*** *to be polite.*

USE

- The passive is used to describe actions:
  a) when we don't know who does, or did the action:
  My briefcase was stolen last night.
  (I don't know who stole it).
  b) when it is not important to know who does, or did the action:
  The cars are taken to Europe every week.
  (It doesn't matter who takes them).
  These televisions are made in Japan.
  (It doesn't matter who makes them).

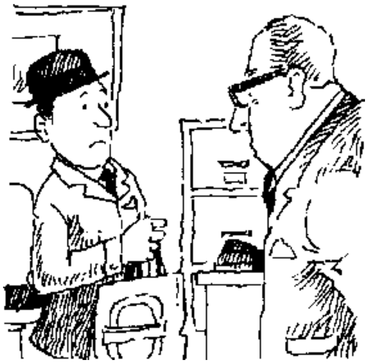

My briefcase was stolen last night.

Practice

55a Rewrite these sentences in the passive.

1 Someone broke this mirror last night.
This mirror was broken last night.

2 Someone washes the towels in the hotel every day.
The towels in the hotel are washed every day.

3 Someone built the house ten years ago.

4 They grow this fruit in very hot countries.

5 They pay the office workers weekly.

6 Someone bought all this cheese in France.

7 Someone found Emily's bike in the river.

8 Someone visits most of the prisoners once a week.

9 Someone cleans this car every week.

10 They play a lot of sport on the beach.

11 Someone stole all my best jewellery.

12 They carried the children all the way home.

13 Someone watches the palace twenty-four hours a day.

14 They leave the grapes to dry in the sun.

55b Complete the sentences with a present passive. Use the followings verbs.

ship pick drink take dry
roast prepare sell sort plant

Growing and preparing coffee

1

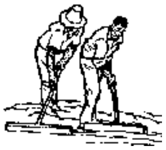

The soil *.is.prepared*

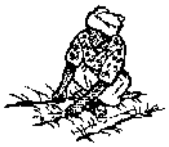

The seeds *are planted.*

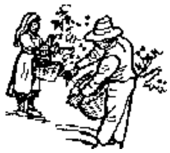

The berries
by hand.

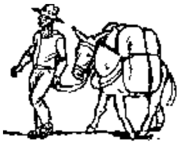

They. . . . .
to a factory.

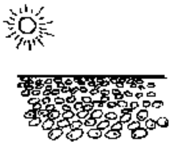

They.........................in the sun.

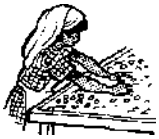

They.........................by hand.

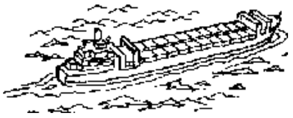

They.........................all over the world.

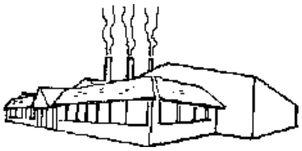

They.........................in ovens at the factory.

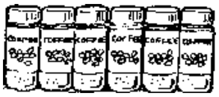

The coffee ... in the shops.

10

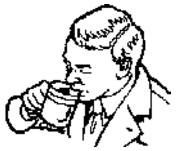

It ....in offices and homes everywhere.

55c Complete these sentences in the passive using *is*, ***are, was*** or *were* and a word from the box.

grown cut taught locked sent
explained killed given built driven

1 His father .*was killed*,. in the war.
2 The grass ..is.. never ..cut..in the winter.
3 When...............these houses...............?
4 You can't go into the school. The gates...............always............... at 4.30.
5...............these potatoes...............in your garden?
6 I.......................a beautiful gold watch.
7 We take the bus to work during the week so the car...............only ....at weekends.
8 The problem.......................to us very clearly.
9 This letter...............never...............
10 Children...............not ....any languages at primary school now.

55d Rewrite these sentences, putting the verbs in the passive.

1 My car / damage / last night, (past)

My car was damaged last night.

2 This computer / make / in the USA. (present)

This computer is made in the USA,

3 The machines / make / in Scotland, (present)

4 The President / kill / last night, (past)

5 The money / change into dollars / at the bank, (present)

6 The parcel / post / yesterday, (past)

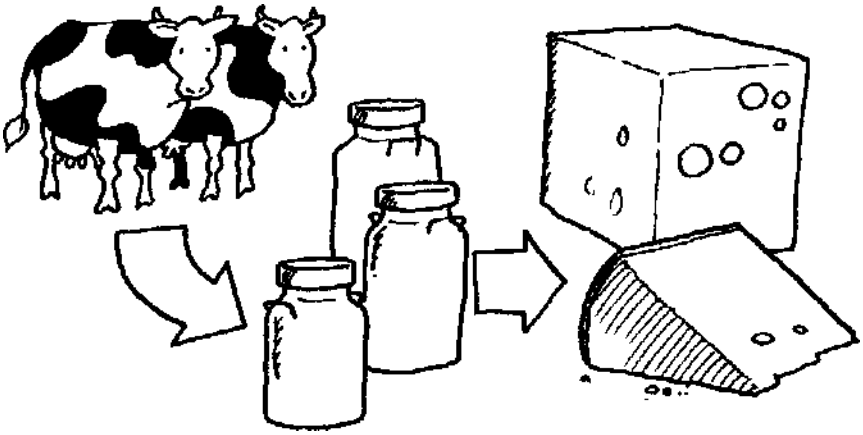

7 Cheese / make / from milk, (present)

8 The children / give / some food, (past)

9 The house / paint / every year, (present)

10 Several people / hurt / in an accident last night, (past)

VERB FORMATIONS

56 *used to*

used to indicates something that happened regularly in the past but doesn't happen now.
*I **used to** smoke.* (= I don't smoke now)
*She **used to** work for the BBC.* (= she doesn't work for the BBC now)
*He **didn't use to** like me.* (= he likes me now)

FORM

	used to	+ *infinitive*
She **I**	used to used to	live here, smoke.

Notes

- The negative is ***didn't use to*** + infinitive:
  She didn't use to smoke.
- The question form is ***did*** + subject + use ***to*** + infinitive:
  Did you use to hue here?
- The question and negative forms are not used very often.

Practice

56a Write these sentences, putting one verb into the correct form of *used to* and the other into the past simple.

1 I (smoke), but 1 (give it up) last year.

/ used to smoke, but I gave it up last year.

2 I (not like) him, but then I (change) my mind.

/ didn't- use to like him, but then / changed my mind.

3 He (live) in London before he (go) abroad.

4 I (earn) a lot of money, but then I (lose) my job.

5 I'm surprised that they (join) the tennis club. They (not like) tennis.

6 (you travel) a lot before you (get) this job?

7 I (work) in a factory before I (become) a teacher.

8 She (drive) a lot before she (have) the accident.

9 That old radio (work) before I (drop) it.

10 We (see) them every week, but then we (have) an argument.

11 I (work) in a restaurant before I (go) to college.

12 She (play) a lot of tennis before she (break) her leg.

13 We (have) a garden, but then we (move) to a different house.

14 She (live) in Wales, but then she (move) back to Scotland.

15 I (drive) a lorry before I (start) this business.

- There is another construction: ***I'm used to*** + gerund: ***to** be **used to*** doing something = to be in the habit of, to be accustomed to: *I'm **used to** working at night.* (= working at night is a normal activity for me)

Note: the difference in meaning:
***I'm used to working** at night.* (= it is normal for me to do this)
***I used to work** at night.* (= I often worked at night, some time ago)

Practice

56b Circle the correct form of *used to* or *be used to.*

1 (*I'm used to* / [✓ *I used to*]) live in London, but I moved.

2 ([✓ *They're used to*] / *They used to*) cooking for themselves when they get home from school.

3 Do you remember how *{we used to / we're used to)* listen to music all the time?

4 *[Were you used to / Did you use to)* spend hours in front of the mirror when you were young?

5 *{I'm not used to / I didn't use to)* eating this sort of food.

6 *{This is used to / This used to)* be an industrial area.

7 *{I'm used to / 1 used to)* earn more when I was a teenager than I do now.

8 The children *[didn't use to / aren't used to)* going to bed so late.

9 *[I'm not used to / I didn't use to)* driving on the left.

10 *[I used to / I'm used to)* walk to work when I was younger.

11 (/ *didn't use to / I wasn't used to)* like classical music.

12 *{I'm not used to / I didn't use to)* getting up so early.

13 *[I didn't use to / I wasn't used to)* having so much exercise.

14 *{They used to / They were used to)* take the children to school for us before their car broke down.

15 (We're *used to / We used to)* see each other every day.

57 The imperative

USE

- To give orders and instructions:
  Stop!
  Don't go!
  Turn left *at the traffic lights and then* ***turn right.***

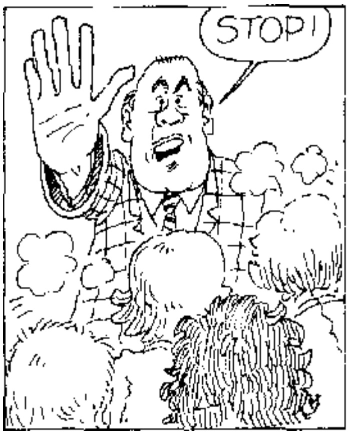

FORM

- The imperative has the same form as the infinitive:
  Wait!
  The negative is formed by adding *don't:*
  Don't wait!
  Don't stop!

Notes

- The imperative is used to give instructions in the second person, i.e. *(You)* ***wait***[1]**.** The form is the same for the singular and the plural.

  Let's is a kind of imperative for ***we:***
  Let's go.
  Let's not wait. (Note the negative.)

- The imperative is not always very polite. It is more polite to say ***Could I have*** ... or ***Would you ...***
  Give *me some bread* —* ***Could I have*** *wine bread, please?*
  Open *the door* -> ***Would you open*** *the door, please?*

- The imperative may sometimes be used for requests to people we know well, or for orders given by people in authority. It is often used when speaking to children or soldiers.

Practice

Mr and Mrs Brownridge are talking to their children, Joe and Emma.
In your notebook, write what they say.

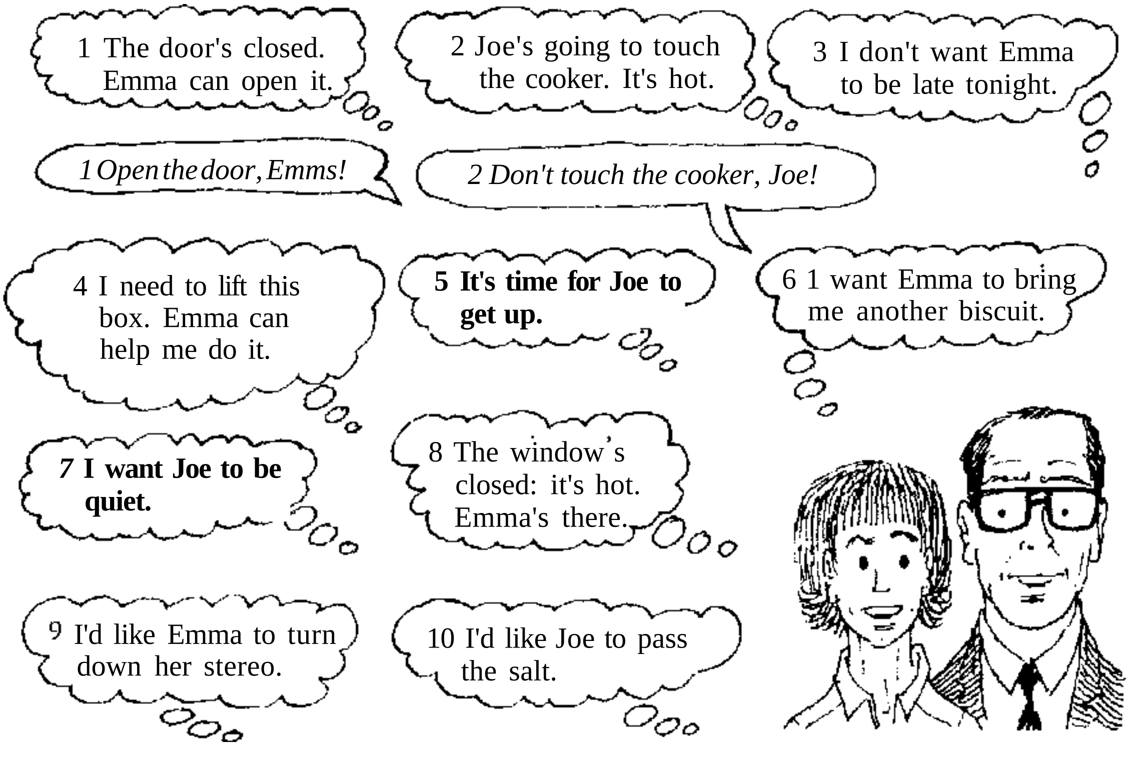
1 The door's closed. Emma can open it.
2 Joe's going to touch the cooker. It's hot.
3 I don't want Emma to be late tonight.
1 Open the door, Emms!
2 Don't touch the cooker, Joe!
4 I need to lift this box. Emma can help me do it.
5 It's time for Joe to get up.
6 1 want Emma to bring me another biscuit.
7 I want Joe to be quiet.
8 The window's closed: it's hot. Emma's there.
9 I'd like Emma to turn down her stereo.
10 I'd like Joe to pass the salt.

Conditionals

There are three main types of conditional. These are usually described as the first, second and third conditionals.

58 The first conditional

FORM

if + present simple	future
If you drop it,	it'll break.
If you come at ten,	we'll be ready.
If you phone me,	I'll pick you up at the park.

or future	*if* + present simple
It'll break	if you drop it.
We'll be ready	if you come at ten.
I'll pick you up later	if you phone me.

USE

- The first conditional refers to the future. It is used when there is a possibility that the if-event might happen.

  If it rains, we'll go to the cinema. (= It might rain: it might not)
  If the sun shines, we'll go to the beach. [= The sun might shine: it might not)

Note: ***going to*** is sometimes used in the first conditional to describe a future plan:
If it rains, we're going to visit my mother.

Practice

Write these sentences, putting the verbs in brackets into the present simple or the future simple.

1 If the train's late, we (walk).
if the train's late, well walk.

2 She (call) you if she (have) time.
She'll call you If she has time.

3 If it costs too much, I (buy) a smaller one.

4 If the doctor can't see me, I (go) somewhere else.

5 If the class (be) full, we (find) another one.

6 What will we do if the taxi (not come)?

7 Will you phone me if there (be) any problems?

8 T (ask) Peter if I (see) him tomorrow.

9 I (go) next week, if 1 (can) get a train ticket.

10 Tf T (have) to, I (complain) to the manager.

11 If he (see) me here, he (be) really angry.

12 Mary (be) worried if you don't come to the airport.

13 If it (snow) this winter, we (go) skiing.

14 I (lend) them some money if they (ask) me.

15 If you (visit) Oxford, you (see) some interesting old buildings.

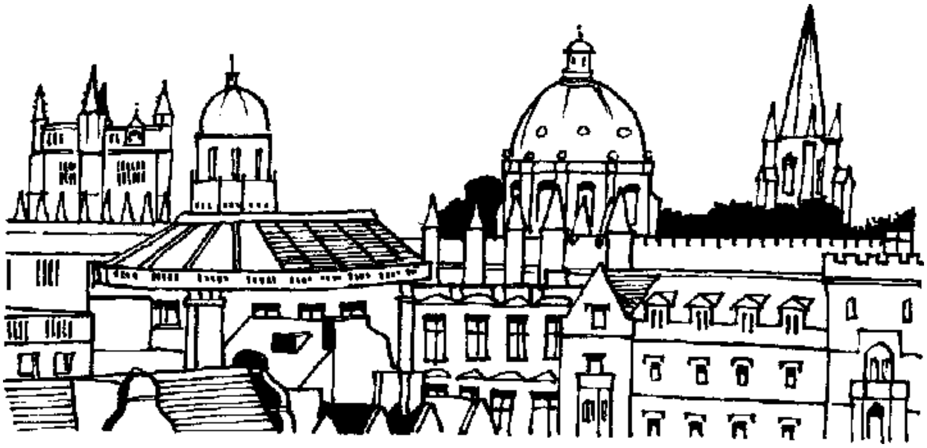

59 The second conditional

FORM

	if + past simple	***would/could/might*** + infinitive
	If T lived by the sea,	I would do a lot of swimming.
	If they asked me to work for them.	I might accept.
or	***would/could/might*** + infinitive	*if* + past simple
	I would do a lot of swimming	if I lived by the sea.
	i might accept	if they asked me to work for them.

Notes

- The 'past' here is actually the subjunctive, which is the same as the past simple except for **two** forms - ***I*** and ***he/she*** + ***were:***
  If I were you, I'd change my job.
  If John were here, he wouldn't be very happy.
- In conventional English, these two forms can be replaced by the past:
  If I was you, I'd change my job.
  If John was here, he wouldn't be very happy.
- *would* is often shortened to *'d.*

USE

- The second conditional refers to the present or future.
  The *if-event* is cither
  a] hypothetical;
  If I worked in that factory, I'd soon change things, (but I don't work in that factory)
  If I spoke French, my job would be a lot easier, (but I don't speak French)

  b) unlikely:
  If she left her husband, she might be happier, (but T don't think she's going to leave her husband)

Practice

Write these sentences, putting the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

1 If you drove more carefully, you (not have) so many accidents.
If you drove more carefully, you wouldn't have so many accidents.

2 If he (get up) earlier, he'd get to work on time.
If he got up earlier, he'd get to work on time.

3 If we (have) more time, I could tell you more about it.

4 If you (sell) more products, you'd earn more money.

5 I could help you if you (trust) me more.

6 His car would be a lot safer if he (buyj some new tyres.

7 The children would be better swimmers if they (go) swimming more frequently.

8 I wouldn't mind having children if we (live) in the country.

9 If I (be) you, I wouldn't worry about going to university.

10 If I (have) any money, I'd give you some.

11 Your parents (be) a lot happier if you phoned them more often.

12 Where would you like to live if you (not live) in Paris?

13 What would you do if you suddenly (win) half a million pounds?

14 Would you mind if I (not give) you the money I owe you today?

15 If I had to go to hospital, (not go) to this one.

60 First and second conditional

CONTRAST

Some students get confused by the difference between the first and second conditional. Look at these two sentences;
a) *If she works harder, she'll pass her exams.*
b) *If she worked harder, she'd pass her exams.*
The difference between the two sentences can be found by asking the question, 'Is she going to work harder?' In sentence a) the answer is, 'Maybe - and maybe not'. The answer to sentence b) is, 'Probably not'. The difference is the idea in the speaker's mind of what is going to happen. The if-event in a first conditional sentence is more likely to happen than the if-event in a second conditional.

Check

Circle the correct answer to the questions below.

1 'If Mary found out what was happening, she'd be very angry.'
Is Mary going to find out what's happening?
A Maybe (B)Probably not
2 'If Mary finds out what's happening, she'll be very angry.'
Is Mary going to find out what's happening?
A Maybe E Probably not
3 'If they sacked him, the factory would go on strike.'
Are they going to sack him?
A Maybe B Probably not
4 'If they sack him, the factory will go on strike.'
Are they going to sack him?
A Maybe B Probably not
5 'What would you do if someone told us to leave?
Is someone going to tell us to leave?
A Maybe B Probably not
6 'What will you do if someone tells us to leave?'
Is someone going to tell us to leave?
A Maybe B Probably not
7 'If they don't agree with me, I'll go to the director.'
Are they going to agree with me?
A Maybe B Probably not
8 'If they didn't agree with me, I'd go to the director.'
Do they usually agree with me?
A Maybe B Yes C No

9 'If I don't like your ideas, I'll say so.'

Am I going to like your ideas?

A Maybe not B Probably

10 'If I didn't like your ideas, I'd say so.'

Do I usually like your ideas?

A Maybe B Yes C No

61 Zero conditional

There is another conditional which is often called zero conditional.

FORM

if + present simple	present simple
If you press the button,	the machine switches off.
If you go in the best seats,	you get a free drink.
or present simple	*if* + present simple
The machine switches off	if you press this button.
You get a free drink	if you go in the best seats.

USE

- *If* has the same meaning as *when* here.

The zero conditional is used:

a) for instructions:
If you select reverse gear, the car goes backwards.
If the camera is on, a red light appears.

b) for general truths:
if he's got no money, he doesn't go oat.
lie always says hello if he sees you.

Practice

Put the verbs into the correct tense.

1 Water (freeze) if the temperature falls below zero.
Water freezes if the temperature falls below zero,

2 If he's angry, his face always (go) bright red.

3 If you put your money in a savings account, you (get) ten per cent interest.

4 If the microphone isn't working, you (can not) hear what he's saying.

5 The radio (not work) if the batteries are flat.

6 If there (be} only a few students, we usually close one of the classes.

7 The machine (not work) if it doesn't have enough oil.

8 If a balloon is filled with hot air, it (rise).

9 If water (boil), it changes into steam.

10 The machine stops automatically if something (go) wrong.

Modals

'Modals' are the small verbs like ***can, must,*** and ***might,*** which give certain meanings to main verbs.

FORM

There are twelve modal verbs:

can
could
may
might
shall
should
will
would
must
ought to
need (to)
dare

- Positive is formed by putting the modal between the subject and the main verb:

  We ***should*** *stay.*
  You ***ought*** *to* **go.**
  He might *come.*

- Negative is formed by adding ***not*** (or *n't)* after the modal:

  We ***shouldn't*** *stay.*
  You ***ought not*** *to come.*
  He ***might not*** *come.*

- Questions are formed by changing the position of the modal and the subject:

  Should *we stay?* ***Shouldn't*** *we stay?*
  Ought *you to go?* ***Oughtn't*** *yon to go?*
  Might *he come?* ***Mightn't*** *he come?*

Notes

- ***need can*** **be** ***needn't*** **[modal form) or** ***don't need to*** (verb form).
- Negative questions generally use *n't.* If ***not*** is used, there is a different word order:
  Shouldn't *we stay?* ***Should*** *we* ***not*** *stay?*

62 Using modals in questions and negatives

Practice

Rewrite these sentences as questions or negatives, according to the instruction given.

1 I must go to the hospital tonight, (negative)
/ mustn't go to the hospital tonight.

2 James can play the piano, (question)
Can James play the piano?

3 Peter can pay for us. (question)

4 We must go to the passport office today, (negative)

5 We can go to the bank tomorrow, (negative question)

6 You should phone the school today, (negative)

7 You can answer all the questions, (question)

8 She can pay for the lessons, (negative)

9 You can talk to Mary for me. (question)

10 Peter can check the times of the trains for us. (question)

11 We must say goodbye to Alan and Sue. (question)

12 They can stay here for a week, (negative)

13 We can buy a return ticket here, (question)

14 They should help you. (negative)

15 He can understand me. (negative question)

63 *can, could*

- ***can:* (i) *know how to, be able to:***
  J ***can*** *swim.*
  Mary ***can*** *speak French.*

  can: (ii) ***be allowed to:***
  You ***can*** *sit here.*
  My mother says I ***can't*** *go out tonight.*

- ***could: knew how to:***
  Emily ***could*** *swim when she was two.*

- ***couldn't:*** **(i)** ***wasn't able to:***
  I'm sorry, I ***couldn't*** *come yesterday.*
  I ***couldn't*** *go to work this morning.*

  could/couldn't (ii) used in the second conditional *[*> Exercise 59}
  If you gave me the money, ***could*** *I do the shopping?*

- Requests: both ***can*** and ***could*** are used in requests. ***Could*** is a little more polite:
  Can *I have a. glass of water, please?*
  Could *you open the door for me, please?*

Notes

- ***can*** refers To the future if it is followed by a time word ***{next week, tomorrow,*** etc):
  I **can** *do it for you next month.*
- In the negative: ***can*** *—** ***can't*** **or** ***cannot***
  could —* couldn't **or** ***could not.***

Practice

Complete these sentences using ***can*** or ***could.*** **If** two answers arc possible, write them both.

1 .*Could*.. n't you find John yesterday?

2 .*Can*/.*Could*. I come and see you tomorrow?

3 .... you pass me the salt, please?

4 .... you play the guitar?

5 Why ....'t the children go to the cinema tonight?

6 .... you help me with my suitcase, please?

7 .... you drive my car if you had to?

8 .... you answer the phone for me?

9 Why ....'t you come to the disco tomorrow?

10 It was very difficult to hear; I ....n't understand what she was saying.

11 .... I smoke in here?

12 We had an appointment yesterday afternoon, but he ....n't see me.

13 I .... do the job for you next year.

14 .... you tell me the time, please?

15 I ....n't find my front door key last night.

64 *may, might*

May I ask you a question?

may and ***might*** indicate present or future possibility:
*He **might** arrive soon.*
*He **may** arrive soon.*
*She **might** be angry if yon do that.*
*She **may** be angry if you do that.*

***May** I?* or ***May** we?* are used for polite requests, in the same way as ***Can** I?* or ***Can** we? {>* Exercise 63). It is a very polite form:
***May** I ask you a question?*
***May** I have a glass of water, please?*

Notes

- ***may*** is occasionally used in formal English to mean ***to be allowed to:***
  Guests may bring husbands or wives if they wish.
- ***may*** and ***might*** are usually used in question form only with / or ***we:*** other persons more often use the positive with ***Do you think ...*?:**
  *He **might** be late. —* Do you think he. **might** be late?*
- The negative of ***may*** is ***may not.*** (NOT **mayn't).**
  The negative of ***might*** **is** ***might not*** **or** ***mightn't.***

Practice

64a Rewrite these sentences using ***may*** or ***might.*** Where two answers are possible, write them both.

1 Maybe he'll get a new job.
He might/may get a new job.

2 Do you think I could have one of these cakes?
May I have one of these cakes?

3 Maybe there's some tea in the pot.

4 Would you mind if I asked you how old you are?

5 Visitors are not allowed to stay in the hospital after ten p.m.

6 Do you think I could have one of these sandwiches?

7 I think the car is in the station car park.

8 Is it all right if I use your phone?

9 Guests are allowed to wear casual dress.

10 Maybe she'll move to London.

11 There's a possibility that the show will be cancelled.

12 Maybe she'll be elected.

13 1 think that Andrew will collect the money.

14 Maybe Peter won't come to the cinema tomorrow.

15 Maybe it'll rain this afternoon.

64b Complete the telephone conversation using *may {not)* or *might {not).* Where two answers are possible, write them both.

RECEPTIONIST: Good morning, Bentley Supplies, how '........................I help you?
CALLER: '........................I speak to John Brown, please?
RECEPTIONIST: I'm afraid he isn't here this morning. Can I take a message?
CALLER: No, I need to speak to him personally. Do you know what time he ^{3}........................be back?
RECEPTIONIST: He ^{4}........................be back for an hour after lunch but he ^{5}........................make it if the traffic is bad.
CALLER: I6........................be able to call this afternoon as I have a meeting. Could you tell John that I'll phone him this evening at home?
RECEPTIONIST: Certainly. ^{7}........................I have your name please?
CALLER: Yes, it's David Marks.

65 *can, could, may, might, should, must*

- ***must/mustn't*** is stronger that ***should/shouldn't:***
  You ***must*** *take your passport when you travel abroad,* (obligation)
  / think it's going to rain. You ***should*** *take an umbrella,* (advice)

Check

65a Write the sentences, choosing one of the modals.

1 We are leaving tonight, so you *{should/must)* buy a ticket for the flight.
We are leaving tonight, so you must buy a ticket for the flight.

2 *[May/Might)* I come in?

3 David *[can/could]* cook well when he wants to.

4 'Do you think it *{can/might)* rain?'

'Yes, possibly. We don't want to get wet so I think we *(should/must)* take our raincoats.'

5 Jenny tried to carry him but she *{can't/couldn't),*

6 We *{can/might)* visit my cousin in Australia next year but we don't know yet.

7 In many countries, you *{should/must)* wear a seat belt in the car - it's the law.

8 *{Can/May)* you hold this for me, please?

9 I know they enjoy their work but they *{shouldn't/'mustn't)* work at the weekends. It's not good for them. I think they *[should/must)* spend time at home with their families.

10 The letter *{can/may)* arrive tomorrow.

65b Complete the sentences with ***can, could, may, might, should*** or ***must*** in the positive or negative.

1 Richard's only three but he ..can,, swim very well.

2 You've had that headache for two days. T think you. . . . . .go to the doctor.

3 I don't think we. . . . . .go to the beach because it . . . . .rain this afternoon.

4 I lived in Germany as a child so I. . . . . .speak German then but I . . . . .speak it now.

5 You . . . . .remember to take your passport tomorrow.

6. . . . . .you close the door, please?

7 We. . . . . .move house next year but we're not sure yet.

8 Passengers. . . . . .smoke when the plane is taking off.

9 I think you . . . . .play tennis with Sally - she. . . . . .play really well.

10 'Do you think 1. . . . . .learn some Portuguese before I go to Brazil?' 'Yes, that would be a good idea.'

11 We. . . . . .remember to pay this bill before the weekend - it's very important. If we don't, we'll have no electricity.

12 I know you like sugar but you. . . . . .eat quite so much - it's bad for you.

13 I'll be at work on Saturday so I'm afraid 1. . . . . .come to the football match with you.

14 I was listening very carefully but I. . . . . .hear what she said.

15 They don't like living in the countryside - it's too quiet. T think they . . . . .move back to the city but they don't agree.

66 *I have to be there at 9 o'clock: have* + fo-infinitive

FORM

Present

I You We They	have to	do it.
She He It	has to	

Past

I You We They She He It	had to	do it.

- The verb ***have*** + the to-infinitive.

Note: ***have*** + fo-infinitive has its own meaning and in this way it is like a modal verb. However, it does not have the form of a modal - it is an ordinary verb and we can use it in any tense. The form of the positive, negative and question is the same as for other verbs.

USE

- ***have*** + to-infinitive = It is very important to do something/It is necessary to do something.
- ***not have*** + to-infinitive = It is not necessary to do something.
- ***have*** + to-infinitive is very similar in meaning to ***must*** but we can use it for all tenses. We can say:
  We must *leave early,* or
  We ***have to*** *leave early,* but only
  We ***had to*** *leave early last night.* (We do not use ***must*** in the past.)
- ***must*** and ***have*** + to-infinitive have different meanings in the negative:
  You ***mustn't*** *stay here. It's very dangerous.*
  (= It is very important that you don't stay here.)
  You ***don't have to*** *wait for me. I can get a taxi home.*
  (= It is not necessary for you to wait for me, but you can wait if you want to.)

Practice

66a Complete the sentences with ***have*** + to-infinitive in the correct form and one of the verbs below. Use ***have*** in the present simple.

read explain shout be stop
come get up sleep talk send
open answer decide take turn

1 I .*have to be*.. at work at 9 o'clock in the morning, (positive)

2 We ..don't have to get up...early at weekends, (negative)

3 She................................all the phone calls at work, (positive)

4 .... you .... all these books for the exam? (question)

5 I .... which job I want before the end of the week. (positive)

6 You .... - I can hear you. (negative)

7 .... the hotel staff .... in the hotel? (question)

8 We .... the bus into town. We can walk, (negative)

9 She .... the shop at 9 o'clock every morning, (positive)

10 You .... quietly in the library, (positive)

11 .... I .... right at the traffic lights to get to the hospital? (question)

12 You .... it to me. i understand the problem, (negative)

13 We .... talking when the lesson starts, (positive)

14 '................................ your little sister .... to town with us?' 'Yes, she does. I'm looking after her today.' (question)

15 You .... the present by post. I will see him tomorrow and 1 can give it to him then, (negative)

66b Rewrite the sentences adding *have* + to-infinitive in the correct tense and form.

1 Did you take a taxi home?
Did you have to take a taxi home?

2 I've used the bus for the last two days.
I've had to use the bus for the last two days.

3 I do the washing once a week.

4 We didn't go to college yesterday.

5 Did you get up early this morning?

6 I'll start work next week.

7 I've always worked hard.

8 The children go to bed at 8 o'clock.

9 They don't work on Saturdays.

10 Did you take your lunch with you?

11 She worked very hard for her exam.

12 I usually cut the grass once a week.

13 She didn't cook the dinner last night.

14 Do you pay to go in?

15 I usually stay at home on Wednesdays.

66c Complete the sentences with ***mustn't*** or the correct form of ***not have to.***

1 You .*JV.uptp.'P*... smoke at petrol stations.
2 She ..*doesn't have. to.*, come if she doesn't want to.
3 We..........................miss the train. It's the last one tonight.
4 I..........................do this work tonight. 1 can do it tomorrow.
5 1..........................clean the floor today. 1 cleaned it yesterday.
6 We..........................forget to lock all the doors before we go away.
7 They..........................sit in the sun for too long. They might get burnt.
8 We..........................stay in a hotel in London. We can stay with my cousin.
9 He..........................come home too late. He's got an important day tomorrow.
10 We..........................spend too much money tonight. We've only got a little left.

Gerunds and infinitives

THE GERUND

67 The gerund

- The gerund is used like a noun:
  Smoking is bad for you.
  Do you. like watching TV?
  She's good at swimming.
- It is formed by adding *ing* to the infinitive:
  go -> going
  stay - staying
  The negative is formed by adding **not:**
  Would yon mind not smoking?

Note: the changes that are sometimes necessary:
lie — lying (ie — y)*
take — taking (single *e: c* is omitted}
sit — sitting (single vowel + single consonant — single vowel + double consonant]

Practice

67a In your notebook, write the gerund of these verbs.

do
play
travel
ride
swim
run
lie
fly
try
get

67b Fill the gaps with gerunds from the above box. Use each verb once only.

1 She likes ..*running.* every morning before breakfast.
2 After.................... my homework, I usually watch TV.
3 I enjoy.................... on the beach.
4 She doesn't like.................... with other children.
5.................... is a fast way of....................
6 She likes sport, especially.................... horses and....................
7 After.................... several times, I finally passed my exams.
8 I lay in bed and thought about.................... up.

68 *like, dislike* and other verbs + gerund

- Some verbs can be followed by a gerund or a noun, including the following:

like
dislike
prefer
love
hate
miss
finish
stop
give up
start
enjoy
begin

Note: *like, love, prefer,* and *start* are sometimes followed by the infinitive.

Practice

Write these sentences, changing the verbs into gerunds.

1 Do you like (make) cakes?
Do you like making cakes?

2 I dislike (get up) at seven o'clock every morning.

3 I started (work) here eight or nine years ago.

4 Do you prefer (travel) by plane or by ship?

5 I hate (write) 'thank you^{1} letters.

6 I gave up (drive) after I had a bad accident.

7 I miss (be) able to visit my family.

8 I love (sit) here by the sea in the evenings.

9 I think it's time to stop (play) football.

10 What time did you finish (read) last night?

11 Why don't you like (go) to discos?

12 I think I'll start (pack) my suitcase.

69 Prepositions + gerund

- When a verb follows an preposition, it takes the gerund:
  We *thought* ***about leaving*** *early.*
  1 was worried ***about getting*** *home.*
  I'm interested ***in hearing*** *more about your offer.*
  I'm tired ***of hearing*** *Ids excuses.*
  After closing *the door, he looked up and down the street.*
  Check your passport ***before leaving.***

NOTES

- Note That to can be a preposition, or part of an infinitive:
  / decided ***to leave*** *early,* ***{to*** *+ infinitive)*
  I'm looking forward ***to seeing*** *them again,* ***[to*** *+ gerund)*
- A gerund behaves like a noun. Where a gerund can be used, a noun can also be used.
  I'm looking forward to ***going*** *on holiday.*
  I'm looking fonvard to my holiday.

Practice

Complete these sentences, putting the verbs into the gerund and using one of the following prepositions. Some of them are used more than once.

about of in to after
by for on at without

1 We talked ..*about going*_ (go) to France for our holiday.
2 I look forward ....(see) you again next year.
3 She's tired ....(work) for the company.
4 I'm very happy................................my parents ....(come) home.
5................................(open) the front door, I walked slowly through it.
6 We got into the house................................(climb) through a window.
7 I'm looking forward................................(work) with you.
8 Are you interested ....(join) the committee?
9 I'm tired ....(come) to the same place every week.
10 He's very keen................................(swim) at the moment.
11 I'm worried................................Jane................................(get] to the airport on time.
12 I'm not interested................................(hear) your excuses.
13 She's very good................................(listen) to what people say.
14 This is used................................(cut) metal.
15 The car drove off................................(stop).

70 Gerunds as subjects of sentences

- Gerunds can be subjects of sentences (or objects > Exercise 67):
  ***Smoking** makes me feel sick.*
  ***Living** in a foreign country can be very difficult.*

Practice

Rewrite these sentences, starting with a gerund. You may need to change some words.

1 A good way of keeping fit is to swim every day.
Swimming every day is a good way of keeping fit.

2 It takes a long time to learn a foreign language.

3 Clean the machine more often - that will solve your problems.

4 Grow your own food. It's less expensive.

5 Give up smoking: it will make you feel better.

6 It is cheaper to go by rail than by air.

7 You are not allowed to smoke here.

8 It's not very pleasant to be in hospital.

9 It's very difficult to windsurf properly.

10 It's more difficult to speak a foreign language than to read it.

11 It is forbidden to walk on the grass.

12 One thing I can't do is swim on my back.

13 It's difficult to be polite to someone you don't like.

71 Gerunds

Check

have	study	smoke	work	live
move	get up	say	go	make
watch	help	eat	write	see
learn	look after	become	walk	go out

Write the verbs in the box in the correct form in these sentences. Use each verb once only.

1 ..*Smoking*.. is unhealthy, but a lot of people find it difficult to stop.
2 I'm fed up with .... in the city - it's too dirty and crowded.
3 I enjoy .... in the garden at weekends.
4 I have decided to stop .... in the evenings so that I can save some money for my holidays.
5 He's an artistic person - very good at .... poetry.
6 They don't like .... and go everywhere by car.
7 I'm not really interested in .... to university.
8 She's going to continue .... for another two years, until her exams.
9 They're thinking of .... house.
10 That machine? Oh, it's used for .... toasted sandwiches.
11 They've given up .... meat.
12 Before .... a teacher, he worked in advertising.
13 .... children can be very tiring.
14 We're looking forward to .... you.
15 They hate .... early in the morning.
16 Thank you for .... me organize the party.
17 They're very keen on .... how to play chess.
18 We love .... parties.
19 She left without .... goodbye.
20 .... television seems to be our national sport.

THE INFINITIVE

FORM

- Depending on the construction, infinitives are used with or without *to:*

It's time to go.
Did you. see the accident happen?

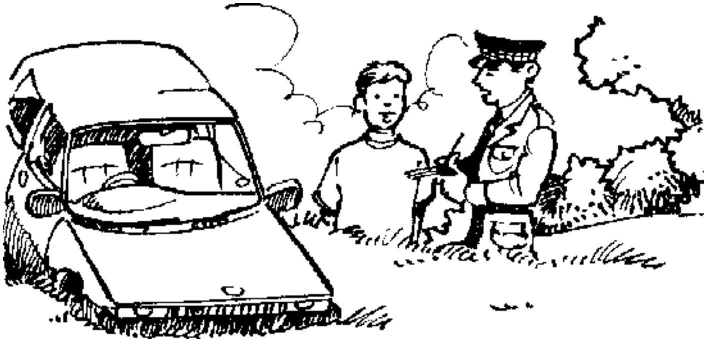

72 *to* + infinitive after certain verbs

- Certain verbs take the infinitive.

/ want to stay.
We decided ***to wait*** *for the bus.*

Note the negative:
We *decided not to wait for the bus.*

Practice

Complete the sentences, using a verb from the box. Use each verb once.

help
speak
buy
get on
stay
look after
find
telephone
go out

1 We decided *.to go.* to Spain for our holidays.
2 She learnt .... Arabic when she was a child.
3 I tried .... you but there was no answer.
4 They refused .... the plane.
5 She hopes .... a job soon.
6 Did you forget .... the bread?
7 I'm tired: I don't want .... tonight.
8 They offered .... the children for the evening.
9 They're planning .... with us for the weekend.
10 He agreed .... us with our problem.

73 *to* + infinitive to express purpose

- *to* + infinitive is used to express purpose:

I came here to see you.
I went to London to study English.
I drove to the airport to meet my parents.

Practice

Express each question and answer as one sentence, using *to* + infinitive. Note that you will need to change some words.

1 Q: Why do you go to the beach every weekend? -
A: Because I like swimming.
She goes to the beach every weekend to swim.

2 Q: Why did you move to London?
A: I wanted to find work.
He ....

3 Q: Why are you leaving home?
A: I'm going to university in Birmingham.
She ....

4 Q: Why are you having a party?
A: It's my thirtieth birthday, and I want to celebrate it.
He ....

5 Q; Why do you get up at six every morning?
A: I do my training then.
She ....

6 Q: Why are you going out?
A: I want to post a card to my mother.
He ....

7 Q: Why are you saving money?
A: We want to buy a car.
They ....

8 Q: Why are you going to Egypt?

A: We want to visit Ali's parents.

They..

9 Q: Why did you buy a new suit?

A: 1 want to wear it at the office party.

He...

10 Q: Why did you buy a video recorder?

A: We want to record the World Cup Final.

They..

74 *in order to* + infinitive, *so as to* + infinitive to express purpose

In order to + infinitive and ***so** as **to*** + infinitive are also used to express purpose.

- **in *order to*** + infinitive, can be more formal than ***to*** + infinitive:
  In order to qualify *for the award, you should be under twenty-five.*
- ***in order to*** + infinitive and ***so** as **to*** + infinitive are more common than ***to*** + infinitive before verbs like *be, have,* and *know:*
  I got up early **so** *as* **to be** *ready for John's phone call*
- To express a negative purpose, **in *order not to*** + infinitive and ***so** as **not to*** + infinitive are more common than ***not to*** + infinitive:
  He opened the door quietly **so as not to disturb** *the baby.*

Practice

Rewrite these sentences without changing their meaning, using the words in brackets. You will need to omit some words, and you may need to change the word order.

1 She put the letter in her bag because she didn't want to lose it. (so as)

5he put the letter in her bag so as not to lose it.

2 You should book your tickets early if you want to avoid disappointment.

{in order to}

You should book your tickets early in order to avoid disappointment.

3 I'll leave work at 4.30 so I won't be late, (so as)

4 Everybody stopped talking because they wanted to hear her sing.

(in order)

5 I need to watch you so T can understand what you are doing on the computer, (in order)

6 If you want to pass the exam, you will need to study very hard, (in order)

7 We don't want to waste any time, so let's start the meeting now. (so as)

8 They moved out of the city because they wanted to have a quieter life, (in order)

9 Keep the CD in its case. Then you won't damage it. (so as)

10 He waited outside the house because he wauled to see her when she came home, (so as)

Reported speech

There are two ways of reporting what a person says:

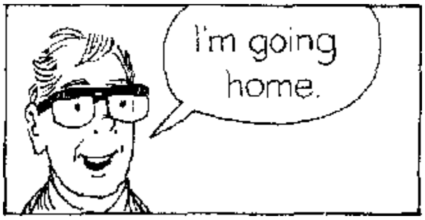
I'm going home.

Direct speech
He said, 'I'm going home.'
'I'm going home,' he said.

Indirect speech
He says he's going home.
He said he was going home.

DIRECT SPEECH

75 Writing direct speech

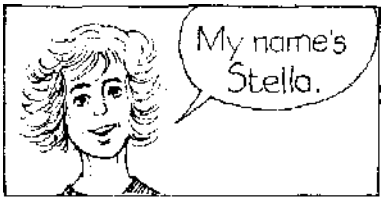
My name's Stella.

She said, 'My name's Stella.
'My name's Stella,' she said.

- Direct speech reports the exact words the speaker says. Put quotation marks ('...') before and after the speaker's statement.

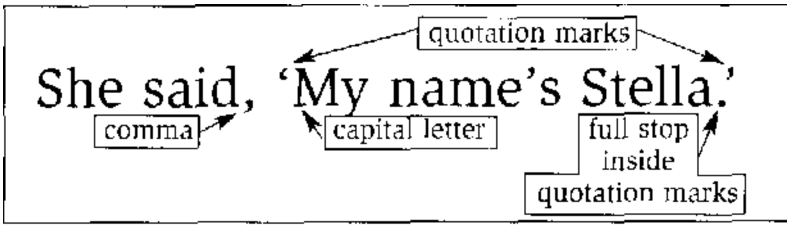
quotation marks
She said, 'My name's Stella.'
comma
capital letter
full stop inside quotation marks

Notes

The speaker's statement always starts with a capital letter.

she said can go before or after the statement, but is separated from it by a comma (,).
Commas and full stops after the statement go inside the quotation marks.
Question marks go inside the quotation marks.
Question marks are not followed by a comma:
are you?' she said.

Practice

75a Put the sentences below into direct speech, using the words given.

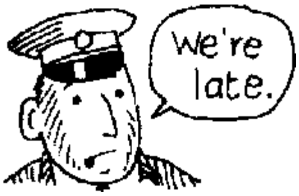

1 the bus driver

The bus driver said, 'We're late.'

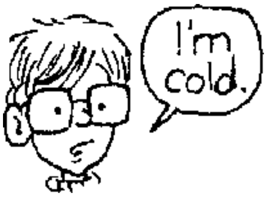

2 the little boy

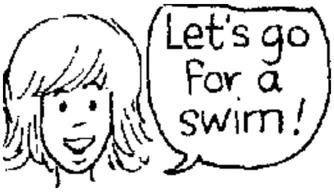
Let's go for a swim!

3 Jane

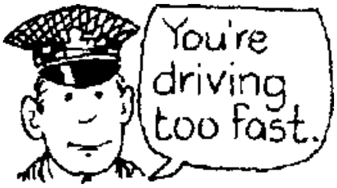
You're driving too fast.

4 the policeman

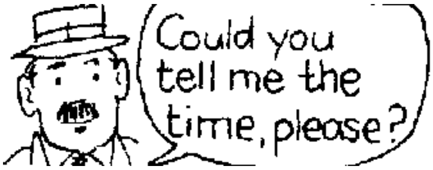
Could you tell me the time, please?

5 the old man

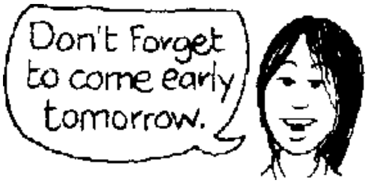
Don't Forget to come early tomorrow.

6 the teacher

....

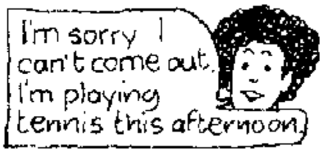
I'm sorry I can't come out. I'm playing tennis this afternoon.

7 she

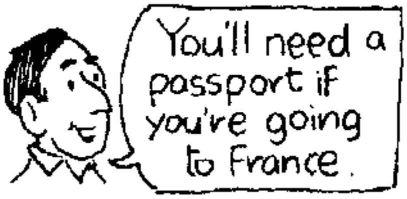
You'll need a passport if you're going to France.

8 he

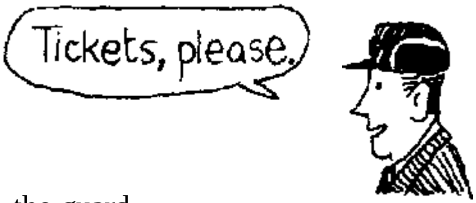
Tickets, please.

9 the guard

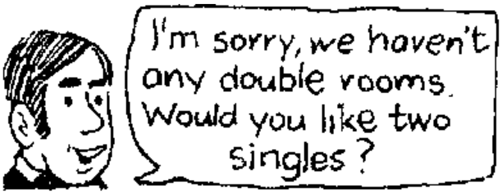
I'm sorry, we haven't any double rooms. Would you like two singles?

10 the receptionist

75b Write the sentences below using direct speech. Write each sentence twice, putting ***she said, he said,*** etc. before and after the statement.

1 Don't be late home.

My parents *said. 'Don't be late home.*
'Don't be late home,' my parents said.

2 I'd like to go out tonight.

He *said, I'd like to go out tonight.*
I'd like to go out tonight,' he said.

3 Read this book before next week.

The teacher

4 Go home and stay in bed.

The doctor

5 We're coming to visit you on Sunday.

Ruth

6 The courses cost £100 per week.

The receptionist

7 We had a lovely time.

They

8 1 want to come with you.

Danny

9	You're on the wrong train.	The ticket inspector ...
10	Can you answer the door?	My grandmother

76 *say, tell*

CONTRAST

- ***tell*** has a personal direct object (e.g. **me,** ***hint, her,*** etc. >- Exercise 79)

She ***told me*** *she was going to be late.*
'It's too late,' she ***told me.***
{We cannot say: *Ha told the weather was nice.)*

tell is not used before questions. {We cannot say: *He told me, 'Have wo met before?')*

say never has a personal direct object:

She ***said*** *she was going to he late.*
'It's too late,' she ***said.***

The indirect object {to *me, to* ***her,*** *to us,* etc. Exercise 79} is used instead.

7 don't like them veiy much,' she ***said to me*** *quietly.*
Why did he ***say*** *that* ***to*** *you?*

There are a few special phrases in which ***tell*** does not have to take a personal direct object:

tell the truth	*tell the time*
tell a lie	*tell a story*
tell lies	

Practice

76a Use the correct form of ***say*** or ***tell*** in these sentences.

1 She ..*told*.. me she didn't agree.
2 '1 think I've met you before,' he ..*said*...
3 I . . . . them I wasn't happy with their work.
4 She . . . . me a story about her parents.
5 He . . . ., 'Are you feeling OK?'
6 She smiled, and . . . . to me, 'I'm very pleased to meet you.'

7 I didn't hear: what did she ....?

8 Could you .... me the time, please?

9 They .... me they were going to a meeting.

10 T .... the policeman my address.

11 I .... I wanted to buy a magazine.

12 He .... he wasn't interested in politics.

13 Could you .... me your name again, please?

14 Do you think he's .... the truth?

15 Would you .... them to come early tomorrow?

16 If he .... that again, there'll be trouble.

17 1 .... them it was dangerous to swim there.

18 Did you .... anything to him about your problems at work?

19 .... me what happened.

20 1 think he's .... lies.

76b Circle the correct verb, *say* or *tell*, in each sentence.

1 They *[say/tell)* that they're going to London to see Frank.

2 Mark *(said/told)* us all about his holiday in Jamaica.

3 Did you *(say/tell)* Sally is coming with us?

4 The teacher *[said/told]* the class a funny story.

5 'Don't *[say/tell)* lies!' *[said/told)* James angrily.

6 How old were you when you learned to *[say/tell)* the time?

7 1 can't understand what they're *{saying/telling)* to each other.

8 I hate speaking in public. I never know what to *[say/tell).*

9 Jane always *[says/tells]* me her secrets.

10 'Do you think anyone saw us?' she *[said/told]* nervously.

INDIRECT SPEECH

77 Reported statements with no change of tense

- When the reporting verb is present, present perfect, or future, there is no change of tense in the reported statement:

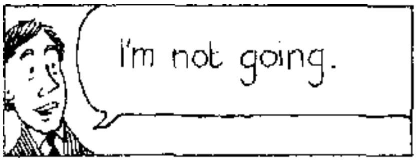
I'm not going.

= *He says **he isn't** going.*
= *He'll say he isn't going.*
= *He's said he **isn't** going.*

Note: *that* can be used after the main verb. The use of *that* is optional:
He says that he isn't going,
He says he isn't going.

Practice

Write these sentences in indirect speech, using the words given. Remember to change the pronouns where necessary.

1 'I haven't done my homework.' (she says)
She eays she hasn't done her homework.

2 'I haven't got any money.' (He'll tell you)
He'll tell you he hasn't got any money.

3 'I've seen the film before." (she says)

4 'I want to go home.' (he's already told you)

5 'T haven't seen my mother for years.' (he says)

6 'I don't know how much it costs.' (she says)

7 '1 don't like going to parties.' (she's told me)

8 'We've never been to Berlin.' (they say)

9 'I need the money to visit my parents.' (he'll say)

10 We can't come on Tuesday.' (they've told me)

11 'I'm going to visit Europe this year' (the President will announce that)

12 'I can't stand classical music' (Gemma tells me)

13 'The plane will land in half and hour.' (the pilot has just announced that)

14 'There are no tickets left for tonight's performance.' (the booking office says that)

15 'We haven't had anything to eat.' (the children say)

16 'I've already seen the play.' (he's told me)

17 'I'll come again next year.' (I've told them)

18 'I'm not feeling very well.' (Simon says)

19 'I've never been to Japan.' (Jason has just said)

20 'I'm meeting the students for lunch next week.' (she'll tell you)

21 'You'll never drive a better car.' (the advertisement claims that)

78 Reported statements with a change of tense

- When the main verb of the sentence is in the past tense, the tense in the reported statement is changed:

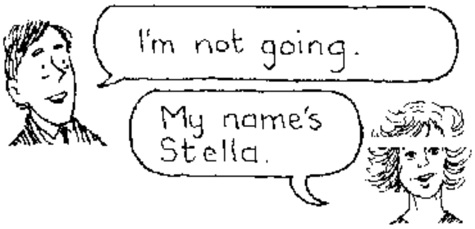
I'm not going.
My name's Stella.

= He said he *wasn't* going.
He said that he *wasn't* going.

-= She said her name *was* Stella.
She said that her name *was* Stella.

FORM

Speaker's words		*Reported statement*
present simple	—*	*past simple*
present continaous	—>	*past continuous*

Practice

Write these sentences in indirect speech, using the words given. Change the pronouns where necessary.

1 'My name's Ian.' (he said)
He said hie name was Ian.

2 *'I'm* writing a letter.' (she said)
She said she was writing a letter.

3 'I'm waiting for Jessie.[1] (she said)

4 'I don't like the idea.' (he said)

5 'The car isn't at my house.[1] (she said)

6 'The washing machine's broken.' (he said)

7 'I'm working.' (he said)

8 'We're worried about Peter.' (they said)

9 'I don't smoke.' [Megan said)

10 'I'm waiting for my exam results.' (John said)

11 'I work for an American company.' [Mrs Johnson said)

12 'I feel ill: (the little boy said)

13 'I'm watching television.' (Fiona said)

14 'I like the new house.' (Sam said)

15 'I'm washing the car." (Chloe saidj

Sentence structure

WORD ORDER

79 Direct object and indirect object

- In simple sentences the object is easy to see:
  She hit ***him.***
  They took ***the money.***
- Some verbs, however, have two objects:
  She gave ***me the book.*** (= she gave the book to me)
  the book is the real object of this sentence. It tells us **what** she gave.
  This is the direct object (D.O.)
  me is the indirect object (I.O.)

FORM

- verb + direct object + ***to*** or ***for*** + indirect object:

	D.O.		*I.O.*
Give	the money	to	him.
Buy	a present	for	your mother.

a) Some common verbs Taking ***to: bring, give, lend, pay, promise, send, show, take, tell.***

b) Some common verbs taking ***for: buy, find,*** *get,* ***make.***

verb + indirect object without ***to*** or ***for*** + direct object:

	I.O.	***D.O.***
Give	him	the money.
Buy	your mother	a present.

Note: that it is not possible to use the second form when the direct object is a pronoun (me, **her, *him, it,*** etc]. The longer construction must be used:
Give it to John. (NOT *Give John it.)*

Practice

79a Rewrite these sentences without using *to* or ***for.***

1 Give this food to your parents.
Give your parents this food.

2 Get an ashtray for me, please.
Get me an ashtray, please.

3 Have you sent a postcard to your family?

4 Did you pay the money to him?

5 Would you find a seat for my mother, please?

6 I'll get some money for you.

7 Did you tell the news to your parents?

8 I'm buying a ticket for Jenny, too.

9 Show your painting to Mr Anderson.

10 Would you take this note to your parents?

79b Rewrite these sentences in the correct order.

1 to my parents / I / it / took
/ took it to my parents.

2 they / any money / me / didn't give
*They didn't give me any money_*

3 to all / she / the car / her friends / showed

4 the students / the news / gave / I

5 did / my pen / lend / you / him?

6 bought / some flowers / my / I / parents / for

7 why / some perfume / didn't / me / bring / you?

8 some grapes and some flowers / took / Janice / we

9 his / showed / injured / me / hand / he

10 some vegetables from the garden / gave / our neighbotirs / we / to

80 Frequency adverbs with the Present Simple

FORM

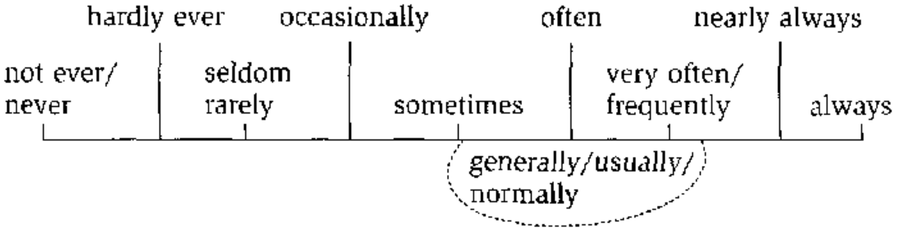
hardly ever
occasionally
often
nearly always
not ever/
never
seldom
rarely
sometimes
very often/
frequently
always
generally/usually/
normally

USE

- The adverb goes between the subject and the verb:
  I often *see them.*
  We ***rarely*** *talk to them.*
  ! ***seldom*** *go out in the evenings.*
- ***occasionally, sometimes, often, frequently,*** and ***normally*** can also be at the beginning or end of a clause:
  / see *them* ***occasionally.***
  Sometimes *we talk to each other.*
  Normally *I go out in the evenings.*

Note: ***always*** is sometimes used with present continuous to express annoyance, ***always*** goes between the auxiliary verb and the main verb:
Sams's ***always*** *borrowing my tilings without asking!*
Peter's ***always*** *complaining about his job!*

Practice

Do this exercise in your notebook. Choose the correct word and write it in its proper place in these sentences.

1 I see them nowadays - the last time we met was ten years ago. {never / often / always)
/ never see them nowadays - the last time we met was ten years ago.

2 You're lucky: we have ice cream, but we've got some today, (hardly ever / normally / nearly always)

3 Peter's playing football instead of doing his homework, (seldom / hardly ever / always)

4 We go out now - we can't afford it. (hardly ever / sometimes / frequently)

5 I don't finish work before eleven o'clock, so I see the children before they go to bed. (always / never / usually)

6 I sit here when I come to the park - it's my favourite place, (hardly ever / occasionally / always)

7 She comes here nowadays - I don't think she likes me. (seldom / frequently / nearly always)

8 We don't go there every week, but we see them quite, (seldom / often / occasionally)

9 We see them, at least once a week, (frequently / occasionally / always)

10 1 watch horror movies - I don't like them, (frequently / nearly always / hardly ever)

81 Link words: *and, but, so, then, before, after, because*

Practice

Write one of the above words in the correct place in these sentences. Use each word for two sentences. Where two answers are possible, choose the more likely one.

1 I got out of the car ..*and*.. walked into the house.
2 The weather was lovely.................. we stayed in the garden.
3.................. we went to bed, I locked all the doors.
4 The little boy was wet and cold.................. he wasn't hurt.
5 We turned off the lights and.................. left the room.
6 I had a bath.................. we played football.
7 I sat in the kitchen.................. read a book.
8 She worked hard.................. failed all her exams.
9 I do some exercises.................. I go to work in the morning.
10 They took me to hospital.................. the crash.
11 We had no money.................. the banks were closed.
12 We paid our hotel bill and.................. left.
13 I had to walk to work.................. the car wouldn't start.
14 It was very cold.................. we didn't go out.

82 Link words: *because, as, since*

Practice

Link the two sentences to make one sentence, using the word given. Don't change the order of the two original sentences. Use a comma if the link word comes at the beginning of your sentence.

1 She was very tired. She went to bed. (as)
As she was very tired, she went to bed.

2 I can't use my car. It's broken down, (because)
/ *can't use my car because it's broken down.*

3 He hasn't done any work. I don't think he'll pass the exam, (since)

4 The bus crashed. The driver fell asleep, (because)

5 It was raining. We decided not to go out. (as)

6 The climate is changing. The earth is getting warmer, (because)

7 Monday is a public holiday. We're going to spend the weekend in the mountains, (since)

8 Romeo committed suicide. He thought Juliet was dead, (because)

9 You haven't seen the cathedral yet. I'll take you there on Sunday, (as)

10 The concert was cancelled. The singer was ill. (because)

83 *both ... and, neither... nor*

- *Maria comes from Colombia. Felipe also comes from Colombia.*
  Maria ***and*** *Felipe* ***both*** *come from Colombia.* ***Both*** *Maria* ***and*** *Felipe come from Colombia.*
- *The police couldn't catch him. The army couldn't catch him.* ***Neither*** *the police* ***nor*** *the army could catch him.*

Practice

Rewrite the two sentences as one sentence using ***both ... and*** or ***neither*** ... ***nor.***

1 Greg likes surfing. Liz likes surfing.

Both Greg and Liz like surfing. Or: *Greg and Liz both like surfing.*

2 The house wasn't attractive. The garden wasn't attractive.

Neither the house nor the garden were attractive.

3 The food was terrible. The service was terrible too.

4 Angela played the piano. Lucy also played the piano.

5 Jessica wasn't at home. Chloe wasn't at home.

6 His family didn't know about his accident. His friends didn't know about his accident.

7 Eagles hunt small animals. Wolves hunt small animals.

8 The film is very funny. The book is also very funny.

9 The beach isn't far away. The shops aren't far away.

10 Japan has a lot of earthquakes. California has a lot of earthquakes.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

84 Making questions

- Questions are formed for all tenses except present simple and past simple by changing the position of the auxiliary verb ***{am, was, will,*** etc.) and the subject (I, ***you, she, he,*** etc.):

  You*'re going* —• ***Are you*** *going?*

  He ***has*** *gone* -» ***Has*** *he gone?*

- Questions are formed for the present simple and past simple by using ***do, does,*** or ***did:***

  They work here. ***Do*** *they work here?*
  She lived here. ***Did*** *she live here?*

> Exercise 28 and 34 for present simple and past simple.

Practice

84a Make questions from these statements.

1 She likes travelling
Does she like travelling?

2 They're working.
Are they working?

3 He was playing tennis.

4 She went to school today.

5 They live here.

6 She's eating at the moment.

7 They drove to the station.

8 She's reading.-

9 He had breakfast early.

10 They came today.

11 She drives to work.

12 He left this morning.

13 He was writing a letter.

14 They watched television.

15 She's at home.

16 They went home.

17 She likes horror films.

18 He's walking home.

19 They were eating ice cream.

20 They gave him the money.

84b In your notebook, make ten questions from the box below, and give the answers.

Who	
Why	are you going?
When	did they leave?
Where	is she talking to?
What	did they come here?
What time	are you looking at?
How	did it cost?
How much	

Example: *Why did they leave?*
Because they wanted to catch the train.

85 *Who asked you? Who did you ask?:* question words as subject or object

Who *drove the car?*
Who *did you see?*
What *happened?*
What *did you do?*

- ***who*** and ***what*** are sometimes the subject.
  who and ***what*** as subject + verb:
  Alison *asked* ***you.*** ***Who*** *asked* ***you?*** *Alison.*
  NOT *Who did ask you!*
- ***who*** and ***what*** are sometimes the object.
  who and ***what*** as object + question form of verb:
  You *asked* **Steve.** ***Who did you ask?*** *Steve.*
- *Who stayed* **with** *you?*
  but *Who did Jane stay* ***with?*** (Preposition at the end.)

Practice

Write the questions.

1 Who came to see you? Simon came to see me.
2 Who did Julie meet last night? Julie met Barbara.
3 What .... you .... reading? I like reading novels.
4 Who ....? Joe made the cake.
5 Who ....? Helen found the car keys.
6 What ....? A cigarette started the fire.
7 What .... you ....? I want some help.
8 Who .... you? Caroline told me.
9 Who .... with Paul? Sue stayed with Paul.
10 What .... you ....? I said nothing.
11 Who ....? David came with Mary.
12 What .... you ....? I study medicine.
13 Who ....? Linda lives with her parents.
14 Who ....? Greg opened the door.
15 What ....? Something terrible happened.

86 Short responses using *so, neither, nor*

- ***so*** + auxiliary verb + subject is used to say that something which is true about one thing or person is also true about another thing or person:
  'I can speak Spanish.'
  So can I.' (= T can speak Spanish too)
- The negative form is ***neither/nor*** + auxiliary verb + subject;
  'Mike didn't win the prize/
  Neither/Nor did Bill' {= And Bill didn't win it)
- If there is no auxiliary verb in the first sentence, ***do*** / ***does*** / ***did*** is used:
  'Leo plays tennis.'
  *'**So does** Tom.'*
  'We went to the cinema last night.'
  *So **did** we.'*

Practice

Write responses to these statements using **So** or ***Neither/Nor*** and the word in brackets.

1 I've got a cold. (I)
So have I.

2 Peter doesn't eat meat. (Steve)
Neither/nor does Steve.

3 Sarah had a baby last year. (Jo)

4 We're going away for the New Year, (we)

5 I'd like to have a pet. (I)

6 Harry hasn't finished his essay. (Paul)

7 I won't be able to go to the meeting. (I)

8 Jenny could read when she was three. (Fiona)

9 I wasn't very interested in history when I was at school. (I)

10 You should do more exercise, (you)

87 Short responses: *I think so, I hope so*

1 think I hope so are used to give a positive answer to a question, or to agree with someone without repeating what the other person said:

7s *it Tuesday today?'*
'Yes. ***I think*** *so.'* (= **I** think it is Tuesday.)
7s *it ready?'*
'I hope so.' (= **T** hope it's ready)

The usual negative forms are ***I don't think so,*** and ***I hope not:***

'Will there be many people at the meeting?'
I don't think *so.'*
7 think it's going to rain.'
I hope not.'

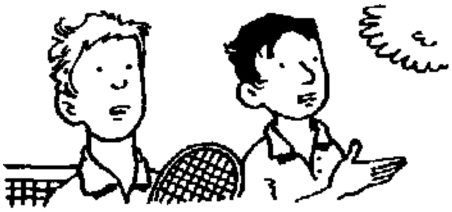

'I think it's going to rain.'

Practice

Underline the correct or most likely response.

1 'Is Auckland the capital of Australia?'
a 'I don't think so.' b 'I hope not.'

2 'I think this is going to be a fantastic party.'
a 'I hope not.' b 'I hope so.'

3 'Will I have to go into hospital?'
a 'No, I don't think so.' b 'No, I don't hope so.'

4 'Will the house be finished before next year?
a 'Yes, I think so.' b 'Yes, I hope not.'

5 'I think it's going to be sunny this weekend.'
a T think so, because I'm playing tennis on Sunday.'
b 'I hope so, because I'm playing tennis on Sunday.'

6 'Are there 31 days in July?'
a 'T hope so.' b 'I think so.'

7 'T think John's going to give a speech.^{1}
a 'I hope so. He's really boring.' b 'I hope not. He's really boring.'

8 'Do you think there will be any food at the party?^{1}
a 'I don't think so.' b 'I don't hope so.'

9 'I think we're going to be late.'
a 'Oh, dear. I think so.' b 'Oh, dear. I hope not.'

10 'Excuse me? Is there a bank near here?'
a 'I think so, but I'm not sure.' b '1 hope so, but I'm not sure.'

RELATIVE CLAUSES

Relative clauses with *who and that*

- Look at this sentence:
  The man gave me some money.

  If we want to describe the man, we can use an adjective ***[old, thin, young,*** etc):
  The old man gave me some money.

- However, sometimes the information we want to give is more complicated.
  The old man met me at the airport. He gave me some money.

  The two sentences can be combined, to show **which** old man gave me the money:
  The old man who met me at the airport gave me the money.
  who met me at the airport is a clause (a mini-sentence in the larger sentence). It is a called a relative clause because it relates to (= connects with) a noun in the larger sentence.

FORM

- Relative clauses are often indicated by ***who*** (for people) and ***that*** (for things and sometimes for people). The relative clause is placed immediately after the noun which it describes.

  I was talking to a ***person who*** *worked with my father.*

  That's the ***car that*** *crashed into our house.*

- ***who*** or ***that*** replaces the pronoun:

  I was talking to a person who worked with my father.
  (NOT ~~*I was talking to a person who he worked with my father.*~~)

  This is the man who I met in Paris.
  (NOT *This is the man who I met him in Paris)*

Practice

88 Join each pair of sentences together to make one sentence, using ***who*** or ***that.*** Write the second sentence as a relative clause.

1 This is the woman. She gave me my first job.
This is the woman who gave me my first job.

2 He picked up the book. It was on the desk.
He picked up the book that was on the desk.

3 The meal was delicious. Ben cooked it.
The meal that Ben cooked was delicious.

4 She's the woman. She telephoned the police.

5 He's the person. He wanted to buy your house.

6 We threw out the computer. It never worked properly.

7 This is the lion. It's been ill recently.

8 The man was badly injured. He was driving the car.

9 The children broke my window. They live in the next street.

10 They sold the cat. It was afraid of mice.

11 This is the chair. My parents gave it to me.

12 I've applied for the job. You told me about it.

13 We're looking for the ball. We were playing with it.

14 The man was holding the gun. We saw him.

15 I'm going to speak to the mechanic. He repaired my car.

16 The TV programme was very sad. I watched it last night.

17 The girl had red hair. I saw her.

18 That's the woman. I was telling you about her.

Prepositions

PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE

89 *at in, on*

- *at* is used for a place when the exact position is not very important:

  He was standing at the gate. ●✕
  We *were waiting at the station.* ●✕

- *on* is used when the place is seen as a line or surface:

  The cat sat on the table.

  There was a picture on the wall.

- *in* is used when the place is seen as having volume or area:

  The dog was in the car.
  My keys are in my bag.

Practice

Write *at, in,* or *on* to complete these sentences.

1 Peter's .*in*... the kitchen.
2 The money's . on. the table.
3 He was waiting .at. the station.
4 The milk's .... the fridge.
5 They sat .... the wall.
6 They made the film .... Shepperton Studios.
7 I saw them .... the station.
8 Mary's not here - she's .... the office.
9 They were sitting .... the floor.
10 The butter's .... the shelf .... the cupboard.
11 The money's .... my pocket.
12 They are all .... the garden.
13 The papers are .... my desk.
14 They are all .... the car.
15 He's not .... work today - he's .... home.

90 Prepositions of movement

to, at, or ***away from*** a place

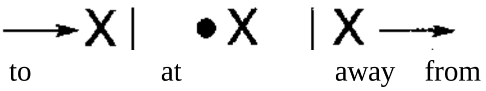

She ran ***to*** *the gate-*
She stood ***at*** *the gate.*
She walked ***away from*** *the gate.*

on, onto, or ***off*** a line or surface (a wall, table, floor, etc.)

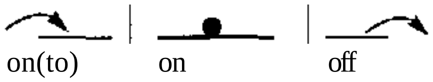

/ put *the money* ***onto*** *the table.*
The money's ***on*** *the table.*
The money fell ***off*** *the table.*

in, into, or ***out of*** a box, car, or anything with volume

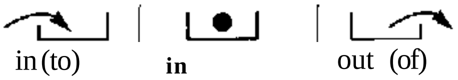

The dog jumped ***into*** *the car.*
The dog's in the car.
Take the dog ***out of*** *the car.*

Practice

Choose the correct words from the boxes to complete these sentences.

1 She was standing *%}.*_ the front door.
2 I put the matches.............. the table.
3 She got .... the car and ran .... the station.
4 The baby's going to fall.............. the table.
5 The bread's.............. the cupboard.
6 I walked .... the church and waited .... the bus stop.
7 He was lying.............. the floor.
8 She dived .... the sea.
9 They climbed .... the roof and looked down at us.
10 We walked.............. the end of the road.

91 Prepositions of position and movement

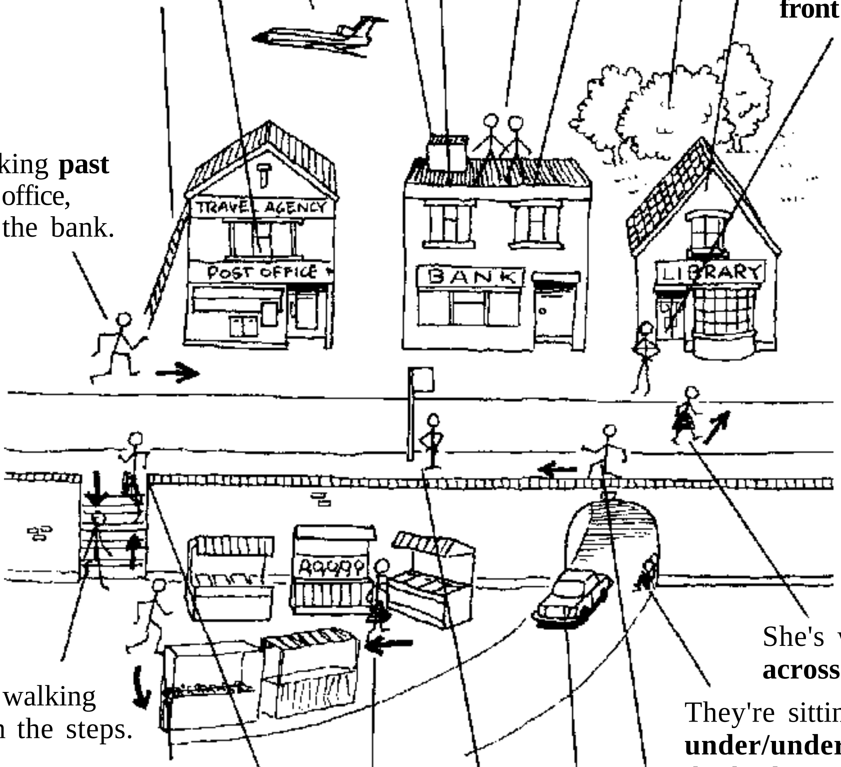

My flat's **above** the bank.

The bank is **between** the post office and the library.

They're standing **on top of** the building.

The aeroplane's flying **over** the town.

My flat is **near** the park.

The park is **behind** the library.

The post office is **below** the travel agency.

The library's **next to** the bank.

The ladder is standing **against** the wall.

He's standing **in front of** the librar

He's walking **past** the post office, **towards** the bank.

She's walking **across** the road.

He's walking down the steps.

They're sitting **under/underneath** the bridge.

He's walking **round** the market.

He's walking **along** the road.

She's walking **up** the stairs.

He's driving **under** the

She's walking **through** the market.

The bus stop is **opposite** the bank.

- Some prepositions indicate movement.
  7 *ran* ***past*** *the school.*
  He walked ***through*** *the gate.*
- Some prepositions indicate position:
  The bank is ***next to*** *the post office.*
  My house is ***opposite*** *the school.*
- Some prepositions can indicate movement or position:
  We drove ***under*** *the bridge.*
  They were standing ***under*** *the bridge.*

Practice

Write these sentences, choosing the correct word.

1 They ran *{across/opposite)* the road.
They ran across the road.

2 We had a picnic on the hill *{over/above)* the village.

3 I put the ladder *{against/up)* the wall.

4 The snake moved quietly *[through/across)* the tall grass.

5 The mouse ran quickly *{across/through)* the path.

G The cat walked slowly *[on top of/along)* the wall.

7 We sat (on *top of/along)* the cliffs and watched the sea.

8 Someone pushed a letter *[under/below]* the door.

9 She drove *[between/through)* the gates.

10 I held the parcel *(behind/past)* my back.

11 They walked *[in front of/past)* the school gate.

12 I pushed my bike *[over/above]* the bridge.

13 The bank clerk stood *(against/towards)* the wall.

14 We waited *(down/under)* a tree.

15 1 put my suitcase (on *top of/over)* the wardrobe.

92 Prepositions of position and movement

Check

Use the most suitable prepositions from Exercises 89, 90, and 91 to complete these sentences. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

1 The dog ran ., round$_t$,. the tree five or six times.
2 We flew slowly .... the suburbs of Paris.
3 I moved the baby .... the fire.
4 The police ran .... the crowd and arrested a young man.
5 If you put some money .... here, the machine will start.
6 They had nowhere to stay so they slept .... a bridge.
7 The town hall is .... the library and the museum.
8 We watched the soldiers as they walked .... our house on their way to the ship.
9 They ran out of the dressing-room .... the football pitch.
10 London is .... the south-east of England.
11 The dog stood .... the door and waited.
12 They walked hand-in-hand .... the side of the canal.
13 I didn't want my mother to see her present, so 1 held it .... my back.
14 The cat jumped .... my arms and ran away.
15 I threw the stone .... the sea.
16 The bottles fell .... the lorry and rolled .... the hill.
17 It was too dark to see so he walked slowly, holding his arms .... him.
18 I put a chair .... the door to stop anyone coming in.
19 We crawled .... a hole in the fence.

20 What have you got .... your hand?

21 The cat was sitting .... the cupboard, looking down at me.

22 I was frightened. I could see him walking .... me, with a very angry look on his face.

23 I tied the string .... my waist.

24 If you are feeling sick, you should sit .... a chair and put your head .... your knees.

25 The cat jumped out of the tree .... the roof of my car.

93 Certain verbs with *to* or *at*

- Some verbs are followed by ***to*** or *at*, and some verbs do not use a preposition:
  Listen to *me!*
  Look at *me!*
  She ***told*** *me the news.*

Practice

Write ***to,*** *at* or nothing to complete these sentences.

1 T sent the parcel . to.. her yesterday.

2 Are you going to phone .... your parents now?

3 What did you say .... them?

4 The children were terrified when he shouted .... them.

5 What did you tell .... them?

6 I took the box out of my pocket and gave it .... her.

7 We explained the problem .... the attendant.

8 I don't know why they were laughing .... us.

9 She caught the ball and threw it gently back .... me.

10 They were arrested for throwing stones .... the police.

PREPOSITIONS OF TIME

94 *at, in, on*

- *at a* point in time:
  at four o'clock, at bedtime
- *on* a day or date;
  on Monday, on July 6th, on your birthday
- *in* a period of time:
  in the morning, in April, in the summer, in 1987

Notes

- ***at*** night, «(Christmas, *at* Raster
- *on* Monday, in the morning, *on* Monday morning

Practice

Write *at, in* or *on* to complete these sentences.

1 I'll see you *.on..* Monday.
2 I met him . . . . the holidays.
3 I'll pick you up . . . . eight o'clock.
4 I'm going home . . . . four.
5 They came to visit us . . . . my birthday.
6 I can work . . . . the morning but I don't like working . . . . night.
7 Did you have a good time . . . . Christmas?
8 School finishes . . . . three o'clock . . . . Thursdays.
9 We arranged to meet . . . . seven . . . . the morning.
10 We had a party . . . . the last day of the course.
11 I often go skiing . . . . winter.
12 What time do you get back . . . . Tuesday?
13 She's going to visit her parents . . . . Easter.
14 He was born . . . . 8th June 1968.
15 Stuart can come and see you . . . . lunchtime.
16 I always send my wife flowers . . . . our wedding anniversary.
17 The conference is . . . . July.

95 *until*

Our friends are staying with us ***until*** *Sunday.* {= They are leaving on Sunday.)
Our friends stayed with us ***until*** *Sunday.* (= They left on Sunday.]

- ***until*** + the end of a period of time [past or future)
- After **until** we can use a time word or expression, e.g. ***until*** *Monday,* ***until*** *the end of the week,* or we can use a clause with a subject and verb, e.g. ***until*** *I had children,* ***until*** *this programme finishes.*
- ***until*** + present simple to talk about the future:
  I'm going to watch television ***until*** *this programme finishes.*
- ***until*** is often shortened to ***till*** in spoken English.

Practice

Rewrite the sentences, using ***until.***

1 We stayed at the party and we left at midnight.
We stayed at the party until midnight.

2 I'm watching this game. I'm going to stop watching it when it finishes.
I'm going to watch this game until it finishes.

3 They played on the beach. They stopped playing when it got dark.

4 Wait. Stop waiting when the bus stops.

5 I'm going to stay in bed. I'm going to get up at 11 o'clock.

6 We're looking round the shops. We're going to stop looking round when the rain stops.

7 I lived by the sea. I moved away from there when I was fifteen.

8 I drove. I stopped driving when we got to London.

9 You should lie down. You should get up when you feel better.

10 I'm in the office. I'm going to leave here at 6 o'clock.

96 *until, before, after*

- *before* and *after* can be followed by a noun, pronoun, clause or gerund:
  I'll see you after lunch..
  John arrived before me.
  She phoned after the party started.
  We had some coffee before starting the meeting.

Check

96a Join the sentences with *before* or *until.*

1 I should stay here. The snow stops.
/ should stay here until the snow stops.

2 I learnt to speak some Turkish. I went to Turkey.
/ learnt to speak some Turkish before I went to Turkey.

3 They stayed awake. Their daughter came home.

4 I'm going to stay here. It's time to go home.

5 I'm going to finish working. I'm sixty.

6 The meeting started. I arrived.

7 We waited. The ambulance came.

8 Are you going to carry on working at the cafe? You can find a better job.

9 I'd like to visit the Acropolis. I leave Greece.

10 He usually has a big breakfast. He goes to work.

96b In your notebook, join the phrases in the two columns using ***until, before*** or ***after*** to make eleven sentences.

4- You must stay in bod
A I felt very tired
3 I was asleep
4 We always have a good breakfast
5 We're going to buy some new skis
6 They felt lonely
7 I have a lot of studying to do
8 Who's going to wash the dishes
9 He lived with his parents
10 1 carried on looking for my ring
11 We must walk home

a my exams start
b staying awake all night
c it gets too dark
d he was thirty
e you got better
f we go on our skiing holiday
g we go to work
h the phone work me up
i I found it
j dinner
k their children left home

Examples: 1 *You must stay in bed until you get better. 1e*

2 *I felt very tired after staying awake all night, 2b*

97 Prepositions of time

Practice

Use one of these words to complete the sentences below.

during after before
through between from in

1 I waited .untill., nine o'clock and then went home.

2 If you come .... seven, we'll catch the bus that leaves at 7.05.

3 Will you come and see me .... a week or two?

4 .... the children left, the house was very quiet.

5 .... the holidays, we played tennis and did a lot of swimming.

6 I can't remember when we left the cinema: 1 think it was .... ten and half-past.

7 I was ill .... January to March.

8 We worked all .... the holidays to finish painting the boat.

Phrasal Verbs

A phrasal verb is formed when a preposition ***(up, down, in,*** etc) or an adverb ***{away, back,*** etc) is added to a verb to produce a new verb with a different meaning:

*I **get** up at eight o'clock.*

*We'll **pick** you **up** outside the station.*

*The plane **took off** very quickly.*

The meaning of a phrasal verb can be similar to the original verb:

*The car **slowed down** and then stopped.* (= similar meaning to slow)

- or it can be completely different to the original:
*I'm going to **give** up smoking.* (= different meaning to *give)*

98 Some common phrasal verbs

Practice

wake up
stand up

look after
sit down
give up

ring up
get on

Choose the correct phrasal verbs from the list above to complete these sentences.

1 The children *.get up...* at eight o'clock to have breakfast.
2 '........................!' he said. 'This is not the time for sleeping!'
3 After the crash, my legs hurt: it was very difficult to........................
4 '........................in that chair, please/ said the doctor.
5 The bus was moving too fast and I couldn't........................it.
6 Mr and Mrs Smith are going to........................the children for an hour.
7 I'm going to........................smoking tomorrow.
8 I'm going to........................the station and ask about the trains.

99 More phrasal verbs

Practice

99a Read the dialogue and underline the phrasal verbs. Write each phrasal verb in the infinitive in your notebook.

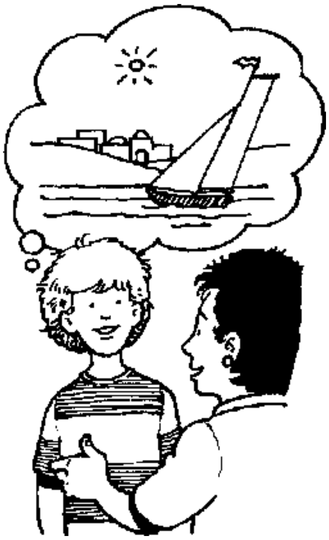

A: Oh hello. Nice to see you again. Did you have a good holiday? I was planning to ring you ur to ask you about it.

B: Yes, it was lovely. We had to set off really early because the plane took off at 6 a.m. But then we were on the beach in the sun by lunchtime.

A: Great! And what did you do most days?

B: Well, we usually slept in. It was very nice not having to get up early. And then we stayed up late at night, going out to discos and nightclubs. During the day, we usually lay on the beach or looked round the town.

A: And what about food?

B: Well, we didn't usually have any breakfast. By the time we got downstairs at the hotel, they had cleared away all the breakfast things. We tried out different restaurants for lunch and most of them were very good. The fish was particularly nice. And we usually stayed in for dinner at the hotel.

A: So what did you like best?

B: I liked everything - the beaches, the weather, the food, the night life, the people. I'd like to go back again next year so I'm saving up for it already. People book very early for that area so I must fix it up after the New Year. If I carry on saving for a few months, I'll have enough money.

99b Match the phrasal verbs from exercise 99a with these definitions. Copy the definitions with the correct phrasal verb into your notebook.

1 To test something for the first time to find out whether it is good or not. = *try out*

2 To rise into the air to start flying (usually a plane or a bird). = *take off*

3 To make the arrangements for something ....

4 To visit a place and look at the different parts of it ....

5 To stay inside somewhere, not to go out ....

6 To begin a journey ....

7 To make somewhere tidy by removing things (e.g. plates and food from a table, toys from a floor] ....
8 To continue to do something ....
9 To get out of bed ....
10 To return ....
11 To not be in bed late at night, after bedtime ....
12 To not spend some of your money, but to put it away or in a bank.

13 To leave the house/hotel to go somewhere, usually for pleasure.

14 To sleep late in the morning.
15 To telephone someone ....

100 Phrasal verbs that don't take an object

The car **broke down** on the way to hospital and we had to call for an ambulance.

Please **hurry up!** We're going to miss the train.

Look out! There's a car coming.

- Like other verbs, some phrasal verbs take an object:

Can you ***pick up*** ***that bag?***
verb object

And some phrasal verbs do not take an object:

We ***'re*** *setting off* (no object) *at 7 o'clock tomorrow morning.*
verb

- Examples of phrasal verbs that don't take an object:

to break down = to stop working (when talking about machinery)
to hurry up = to move, go, do something faster
to look oat = to take care

Practice

Complete the sentences, using the phrasal verbs in the box. Put the verbs into the correct tense and form.

get up
speak up
break down
go back
set off
hurry up
sleep in
go out
stay in
look out

1 My washing machine ..*broke down*... this morning so T had to do all the washing by hand.

2 The train leaves at 5.45 so I think we should .... at 5.00.

3 I'd like to .... tonight but I've got a lot of work to do so I should ....

4 Please .... We're going to be late.

5 Oh good. 1 don't have to .... early for work tomorrow so I can ....

6 I'm sorry but my hearing is not very good. Could you please ....?

7 ....! You're going to hit that car.

8 I had a holiday in Malaysia last year and it was beautiful. I'd love to ....

101 Phrasal verbs that take an object: separable

I looked up the new words in a dictionary.

Can you **put away** the dishes?

I **put** my glasses **down** somewhere but I can't remember where.

They've got too much money; they should **give** some of it **away.**

I don't know the answer but I must **find** it **out.**

- Many phrasal verbs take an object: *I can't* ***pick up*** *this bag.*
- We can say:

/ can't	***pick***	***up***	***this bag.***
	verb	particle	object

I can't	***pick***	***this bag***	***up.***
	verb	object	particle

The verb and the particle can separate. The particle can go before or after the object.

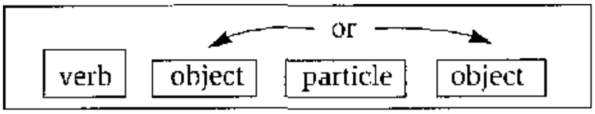

- If the object is a pronoun *{her, me,* ***it,*** etc.) it goes **before** the particle:
  I can't pick it ***up.***
  NOT I can't Dick up it.

- Examples of phrasal verbs that take an object (separable):

to look up = to find the meaning of a word in a dictionary or to find some other information in a book

to put *away* = to put something in its proper place, e.g. a cupboard or box

to put down = to put something on a surface, e.g. a table or the floor

to *give away* = to give something to someone free of charge

to find out = to find information about something

to ***turn on*** = to start a machine by putting electricity into it

to ***turn off*** = to stop a machine by stopping the supply of electricity

to work out = to solve a problem by thinking hard about it

to put off = to delay something to a later date

Practice

In your notebook, rewrite the sentences substituting the underlined words with a phrasal verb from the box. Write the sentences
a) with the object after the verb and particle;
b) with the object between the verb and particle.
(Where the object is a pronoun, you can only put it between the verb and particle.)

look up fix up give away turn on turn off
put down ring up put away work out put off

1 I usually telephone my sister at the weekend for a chat.
/ usually ring up my sister at the weekend for a chat,
I usually ring my sister up at the weekend for a chat,

2 These clothes are too small for Andrew. 1 should give them to someone else.

3 I don't know the meaning of this word. 1 must find it in the dictionary.

4 We should talk about this problem. Can we arrange a meeting?

5 Your room looks terrible, James. Why don't you put your clothes into the cupboard.

6 Would you like to put your bag on the floor?

7 This problem is really difficult. Could you help me solve it?

8 OK, we're ready. Would you start the machine, please?

9 Marie can't come. She wants to delay the meeting until Monday.

10 The machine is too noisy. Could you stop it working, please?

102 Phrasal verbs that take an object but do not separate

She was very ill last year but she has **got over** the illness now.

He **takes after** his father. He's got the same blonde hair and blue eyes and the same gentle manner.

She works in the mornings but she can't **live off** that. She must find a full-time job.

I **came across** an old photograph of you yesterday. It was taken when you were at school.

- Some phrasal verbs do not have the object between the verb and the particle. In these verbs, the verb and the particle cannot separate. They are **inseparable.** The object can only go after the verb and the particle:

  I'd like to go out tonight. Can you ***look after*** *the children?* ***(to look after*** = to take care of someone or something)

  verb particle object

We cannot say: *Can you. look the children after?*

- When the object is a pronoun, it goes after the phrasal verb in the same way: *Can you.* ***look after*** *them?*
- Examples of phrasal verbs that take an object but do not separate:

  ***to** get over* = to recover from something, e.g. an illness, the death of a relative or friend, etc. That is, to get better after something bad happens to you

  to take after = to look or behave like a parent (or older relative)

  to live off = to get money from something to pay for everything you need to live, e.g. food, clothes, transport, etc.

  to come across = to find something or meet someone by chance

Practice

Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Put the verb into the correct tense form.

take after
look round
come across
get over
live on
look after

1 He was very unhappy after his girlfriend left him but T think he is starting to . *get over*.. it now.

2 We're going on holiday next month. We must find someone to ....the cat and the plants.

3 T know you've seen the new part of the town but you should ....the old part - it's very interesting.

4 We were on our way to college when we .... some dancers. They were doing a beautiful dance in the street.

5 He's very good at sport and his mother is, too. He .... her.

6 She loves acting but she can't .... the money she earns from it. She has to do other jobs.

Test 1

Part A

Circle the correct words to complete the sentences

1 I talked to *[he/him]* yesterday.
2 I cut *[me/myself)* when I was shaving.
3 I hope you enjoyed *[yourself/you)* today.
4 Do you like *{your/yours)* new teacher?
5 I think that table is *(oar/oars).*
6 The company has decided to move *[it's/Us]* main office.
7 Mark won the *[men's/mens')* swimming championship last year.
8 Are you going to the *{engineer's/engineers')* conference?
9 Have they sent *(we/us)* an invitation?
10 If you can't find the book, you can borrow *(my/mine).*

SCORING
10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer* Score

PartB

Write *a/an,* ***the,*** *some,* or ***any*** to complete these sentences.

1 I'm reading .... very interesting book at the moment.
2 I'd like .... information about your language course, please.
3 Could you answer .... telephone, please?
4 There weren't .... letters for you this morning.
5 Would you like .... coffee?
6 Are there .... good restaurants near here?
7 I'd love to be .... astronaut.
8 Maurizio plays .... piano really well.
9 They were the first people to fly non-stop round .... world in a balloon.
10 Listen! I've got .... good news for you.

SCORING
10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score _*j*

PartC

Write ***a/an*** or ***the*** if necessary.

My sister Claire lives in ^{1}................. small stone house in ^{i}................. village in ^{J}................. Scotland. ^{4}................. house is quite old, and it has^{s}................. beautiful view of^{6}................. sea. Claire is ^{7}................. writer, so she is able to work at ^{s}................. home. Her husband Ian teaches^{v}................. philosophy at ^{l0}................. Edinburgh University, which is ^{n}................. oldest university in Scotland. Ian comes from $^{]?}$-................. USA, and they usually go there once ^{l3}................. year to visit his family. Claire and Ian have ^{14}................. daughter, Jessica, who is not yet old enough to go to ^{15}................. school.

SCORING

15 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score Q

PartD

Find the mistake in each sentence and rewrite the sentence correctly.

1 There are a lot people in the street.

2 Anyone's stolen my wallet!

3 Hurry up! We haven't got many time.

4 Are you more tall than I am?

5 if I take that job, I'll have fewer money but more time.

6 My new manager is friendlier the old one.

7 This summer is hotter as last summer.

Testi

Part A

Circle the correct words to complete the sentences

1 I talked to *[he/him]* yesterday.
2 I cut *(me/myself)* when I was shaving.
3 I hope you enjoyed *[yourself/you]* today.
4 Do you like *{your/yours}* new teacher?
5 T think that table is *(our/ours).*
6 The company has decided to move *(it's/its)* main office.
7 Mark won the *[men's/mens')* swimming championship last year.
8 Are you going to the *[engineer's/engineers')* conference?
9 Have they sent *[we/us)* an invitation?
10 If you can't find the book, you can borrow *(my/mine).*

SCORING
10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score

PartB

Write *a/an,* ***the,*** *some,* or *any* to complete these sentences.

1 I'm reading .... very interesting book at the moment.
2 Td like .... information about your language course, please.
3 Could you answer .... telephone, please?
4 There weren't .... letters for you this morning.
5 Would you like .... coffee?
6 Are there .... good restaurants near here?
7 I'd love to be .... astronaut.
8 Maurizio plays .... piano really well.
9 They were the first people to fly non-stop round .... world in a balloon.
10 Listen! I've got .... good news for you.

SCORING
10 points; Give *yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score [_]

Part C

Write ***a/an*** or *the* if necessary.

My sister Claire lives in 1.................. small stone house in 2.................. village in 3.................. Scotland. 4.................. house is quite old, and it has 5.................. beautiful view of 6.................. sea. Claire is 7.................. writer, so she is able to work at 8.................. home. Her husband Ian teaches 9.................. philosophy at 10.................. Edinburgh University, which is 11.................. oldest university in Scotland. Ian comes from 12.................. USA, and they usually go there once 13.................. year to visit his family. Claire and Ian have 14.................. daughter, Jessica, who is not yet old enough to go to 15.................. school.

SCORING

15 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score

Part D

Find the mistake in each sentence and rewrite the sentence correctly.

1 There are a lot people in the street.

2 Anyone's stolen my wallet!

3 Hurry up! We haven't got many time.

4 Are you more tall than I am?

5 If I take that job, I'll have fewer money but more time.

6 My new manager is friendlier the old one.

7 This summer is hotter as last summer.

8 Which is highest mountain in your country?

9 This test isn't as difficult the last one we did.

10 We were too tired get to the top of the mountain.

11 That film was really bored.

12 Well done! You have all worked very hardly.

13 Please could you drive more careful?

14 Have you finished your journey, or do you have to travel more far?

15 This is the worse road in the country.

SCORING
15 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer* Score LJ

TOTAL SCORE
Maximum 50 points. *Add up your score.* Total Score _J

Test 2

Part A

Circle the correct words to complete the sentences.

1 Most mornings, I *[get up/am getting up)* at 6.30.
2 Where *(do you work/are you working)* at the moment?
3 I don't understand what this word *{means/is meaning]*.
4 Who *{you saw/did you see)* at the conference last week?
5 The taxi *(arrives/'arrived)* five minutes ago.
6 I *{lived/have lived)* in Brazil since 1998.
7 We've been waiting for you *(for/since)* half an hour.
8 Look at that plane! It *(will/is going to)* crash.
9 The letters *(are/were)* posted yesterday.
10 She *(uses/used)* to be a dancer, but now she works in a bank.

SCORING

10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score

PartB

Complete the short answers.

1 Are you going to the concert? Yes..................
2 Does your father know about this? No,..................
3 Is your sister learning Spanish? Yes..................
4 Do I write clearly enough? Yes..................
5 Was the sun shining when you **left** home? No,..................
6 Did the students enjoy the lecture? Yes,..................
7 Were the cats fighting when you got up? Yes,..................
8 Am I seeing the dentist tomorrow? No,..................
9 Are you and Jo moving house? Yes,..................
10 Did you hear about Tom? No,..................

SCORING

10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score

PartC

Complete the conversation on a separate sheet of paper, putting the verbs into the correct tense and form and adding all the other words you need.

ANDY: Hello, Liz. I / not / see / you / a long time. How / you?
LIZ: Fine, thanks. What about you? What / you / do / these days?
ANDY: At / moment / I work / my parents' restaurant, but yesterday I / have / job / interview with a law firm.
LIZ: Great! How / it / go? /
ANDY: Well, unfortunately, I / a little late.
LIZ: Why?
ANDY: Well, my watch / steal / last week, when / i swim.
LIZ: Oh, dear. And / they / ask / you / many difficult questions?
ANDY: Yes, but I / think 1 / do / OK.
LIZ: So / they / offer you / job?
ANDY: 1 / not / hear / yet. They / tell me tomorrow.
LIZ: Well, good luck.

SCORING

20 points. *Take off a point for each mistake.* Score [_\

PartD

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense and form to complete the sentences.

1 I'm afraid I can't come to your party. My boss .... to dinner, (come)
2 The plane .... too low when it crashed into a mountain, (fly)
3 Simon is a journalist now, but he .... an athlete, (be)
4 .... for me! (not/wait)
5 Coffee .... in the mountains, (grow)
6 .... the report yet? (you/finish)
7 Goodbye. I .... you tomorrow, (see)
8 I .... for twelve hours last night, (sleep)
9 We .... a new car. (just/buy)
10 The new Pope .... yesterday, (choose)

SCORING

10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score _\

TOTAL SCORE

Maximum 50 points. *Add up your score.* Total Score |__|

Test 3

Part A

Circle the correct words to complete the sentences.

1 She *[won't/wouldn't)* have all these problems if she was more efficient.
2 If it *{rains/rained)*, we'll go by bus.
3 Where *[will/would)* you live if you could choose?
4 The boss always *[gets/got)* angry if people are late for work.
5 Felipe *{can't/'couldn't)* speak any English when I first met him.
6 You look tired. You *[might/should)* go to bed.
7 *{Must/Can)* you close the door, please?
8 I think it *[can/may)* rain tomorrow.
9 Our car broke down so we *{had to/must)* take a taxi.
10 You *[don't have to/mustn't)* tell anyone - it's a secret.

SCORING

10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score _\

PartB

Put the verb into either the gerund or the infinitive with *to* form.

1 Do you enjoy...............? (cook)
2 I've decided..............a new job. (look for)
3 Are you interested in..............this report? (read)
4 He borrowed my camera without ....me. (ask)
5 I've bought this new suit ....for my interview, (wear)
6..............is a very exciting sport, (ski)
7 You have to take an exam..............the course, (pass)
8 Thank you for..............us to your party, (invite)
9 Have they finished ....the new road? (build)
10 The children refused..............to bed. (go)

SCORING

10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score [_]

Part C

Write these sentences in reported speech, using the words in brackets. Change tenses and pronouns where necessary.

1 'I will look at the car this afternoon.' (The mechanic says)

2 'I'm a dentist.' (She said)

3 'We aren't going to sell our house.' (They say)

4 'Your passport is out of date, Mr Smith.' (The officer told)

5 'I'm waiting to see the doctor.' (The woman said)

6 'I love you, Anna.' (He told)

7 'My mother's coming to sec me.' (Mary says)

8 I'm looking for my sister.' (The boy said)

9 'You play the piano very well, Leo.' (The teacher told)

10 'We're having a wonderful holiday.' (They said)

SCORING

10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score

PartD

Find the mistake in each sentence and rewrite the sentence correctly.

1 Have you given to your friend the money?

2 We go often to the beach in the summer.

3 I took an umbrella so it was raining.

4 Both Jenny and Sue don't have the right qualifications.

5 Like you fishing?

6 Why they did leave?

7 'I don't like doing tests.' 'Nor I don't.'

8 'Is he going to give a long speech?' 'I don't hope so.'

9 That's the woman who she has just started working here.

10 These are the earrings that my aunt bought them for me.

SCORING

10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score

Part E

Complete the sentences with a preposition or adverb.

1 The man walked .... the hotel and asked the receptionist for a room.
2 We were waiting .... the bus stop.
3 Let's meet .... 9 o'clock.
4 I'll wait .... you're ready.
5 Have you given .... smoking?
6 Everyone laughs .... him because he's so stupid.
7 Can you look .... the children for me while I go to the shops?
8 I always feel nervous when the plane takes ....
9 I'm really tired. Do you think I could sit ....?
10 If you don't go to bed now, then you won't be able to get .... in the morning.

SCORING
10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score *[__}*

TOTAL SCORE
Maximum 50 points. *Add up your score.* **Total** Score |__|

Answer key

1 1 She 2 him 3 she 4 1 5 me 6 her ... She 7 we ... her 8 them
9 she ... them 10 me ... him 11 I ... he ... me 12 They ... him ... us

2 1 myself 2 ourselves 3 myself 4 yourself 5 himself 6 themselves
7 yourselves 8 herself 9 ourselves 10 himself

3 1 my 2 his 3 your 4 her 5 their 6 my 7 our 8 your 9 his 10 their
11 her 12 my 13 their 14 my 15 your

4 1 yours 2 our 3 your ... his 4 its S my ... hers 6 your ... theirs
7 my 8 your ... mine 9 Their ... ours 10 my ... yours 11 theirs 12 its
13 your ... mine 14 his ... hers 15 my ... theirs 16 their 17 Her ... theirs
18 My ... ours 19 My ... his 20 Our ... theirs

5 1 the boys'/the boy's 2 my father's 3 Susan's 4 the teachers' 5 Barbara's
6 the animal's 7 the children's 8 my mother's *9* (no apostrophe necessary)
10 their friend's/their friends' 11 the secretaries' 12 the waiter's 13 Ian's

6

apple	C	cheese	U	information	U
water	U	tooth	C	butter	U
boy	c	car	c	sugar	u
milk	u	grass	u	tree	c
table	c	person	c	garden	c
pen	c	road	c	book	c
bread	u	chair	c	news	u
cup	c	bicycle	c	bus	c
computer	c	hand	c	wine	u
money	u	flour	u	house	c

7

brother	brothers	lady	ladies	child	children
sister	sisters	gentleman	gentlemen	secretary	secretaries
match	matches	tooth	teeth	student	students
key	keys	restaurant	restaurants	bus	buses
camera	cameras	house	houses	cinema	cinemas
church	churches	woman	women	foot	feet
teacher	teachers	box	boxes	boy	boys
garden	gardens	baby	babies	table	tables
sandwich	sandwiches	person	people	window	windows
door	doors	man	men	banana	bananas

8 1 a 2 — 3 — 4 an, an 5 a 6 — 7 — 8 an 9 —, — 10 — 11 a 12 an
13 a 14— IS - , —

9 1 a 2 The, the 3 The 4 a 5 a 6 the 7 a, a, The 8 a, a, the 9 a 10 the
lithe 12 a 13 a 14 a, the 15 a 16 a, a, The 17 a, an, The 18 a

10

with *the*	without *the*
River Seine	Luxembourg
Pyrenees	Istanbul
Solomon Islands	Chile
Philippines	Sweden
South China Sea	Oxford Street
People's Republic of Mongolia	Bombay
Rocky Mountains	Hamburg
St Lawrence River	Algeria
Pacific Ocean	Barcelona

11 1 — 2 the cinema 3 — 4 — 5 the bank 6 — 7 The school 8 the supermarket 9 — 10 the hairdresser 11 The bed 12 — 13 the doctor's 14 — 15 —

12 1 the 2 a 3 — 4 the 5 the 6 an 7 — 8 a 9 — 10 — 11 a 12 the 13 a 14 — 15 —

13a 1 a 2 the 3 the 4 — 5 the 6 — 7 the 8 — 9 — 10 the 11 a 12 the 13 the/a 14 the 15 a 16 the 17— 18 the 19— 20 the

13b 1 Our first lesson after lunch is geography. 2 I first played baseball in the USA last summer. 3 Rome is my favourite city in Italy. 4 When I leave university I want to be a journalist. 5 What time does the bank open on Fridays? 6 1 often work at home.

14 1 a 2 some 3 a 4 any 5 some 6 a 7 any 8 some 9 a 10 some 11 a 12 any 13 an 14 any 15 some/an 16 some ... an 17 any 18 some 19 any 20 some

15 1 anything 2 something 3 someone 4 anyone 5 anyone 6 anything 7 something 8 anything 9 something 10 anyone

16 1 much 2 A few 3 much 4 many 5 much 6 much 7 a little 8 a little 9 a few 10 a little 11 a few 12 many 13 much 14 many 15 much 16 a few 17 much 18 a little 19 a few 20 much 21 a few 22 many 23 much 24 a little 25 many

17 1 bottle 2 piece 3 slice 4 box 5 tin 6 bar 7 can 8 jar 9 packet 10 loaf 11 carton 12 tube

18a

tall	taller	large	larger	short	shorter
thin	thinner	rich	richer	hot	hotter
wide	wider	poor	poorer	cold	colder
long	longer	young	younger	warm	warmer
good	better	big	bigger	cheap	cheaper
fat	fatter	bad	worse	small	smaller
old	older	clean	cleaner	brave	braver

18b 1 longer than 2 more comfortable than 3 better than 4 more expensive than 5 older than 6 more beautiful than 7 younger than 8 bigger than 9 more expensive than 10 colder than 11 taller than 12 worse than 13 more interesting than 14 longer than 15 more difficult than

19 1 more helpful than 2 hotter and hotter 3 less 4 more and more selfish 5 happier than 6 more and more uncomfortable 7 younger 8 more honest than 9 longer and more dangerous than 10 more expensive than 11 easier than 12 more polite than 13 angrier and angrier 14 more crowded than 15 more miserable than 16 more complicated 17 faster and more comfortable than 18 better 19 more hopeful 20 thinner and thinner 21 more useful than *22* narrower 23 Fewer 24 more and more boring 25 friendlier than 26 more stressful than

20 1 hotter 2 more imaginative 3 older 4 more intelligent 5 more old-fashioned 6 more expensive 7 cleaner 8 healthier 9 more difficult 10 fatter and fatter 11 redder and redder 12 angrier 13 more comfortable 14 worse 15 narrower 16 more exciting 17 worse and worse 18 funnier 19 cheaper 20 lazier

21 1 hot 2 boring 3 dangerous 4 deep 5 valuable 6 independent 7 comfortable 8 difficult 9 old 10 relaxing

22 1 the biggest building in 2 the most comfortable chair (in) 3 the most expensive flowers in 4 the best singer in 5 the most careful driver in 6 the oldest student in 7 the worst film 8 the most intelligent of 9 the most beautiful music 10 the most helpful of 11 the youngest in 12 the poorest country in 13 the strangest person 14 the most difficult 15 the oldest of

23 1 too tired 2 not old enough 3 too noisy 4 not fast enough 5 too small 6 too expensive 7 not efficient enough 8 too dirty 9 too loud 10 not strong enough

24 1 interesting 2 interested 3 tiring 4 worried 5 frightened 6 bored 7 exciting 8 worried 9 tiring 10 amusing 11 exciting 12 boring 13 tired 14 amusing 15 worrying 16 frightened

25

quick	quickly	clever	cleverly
slow	slowly	nice	nicely
fast	fast	bad	badly
careful	carefully	intelligent	intelligently
stupid	stupidly	polite	politely
dangerous	dangerously	rude	rudely
good	well	brave	bravely
hard	hard	early	early

26 1 harder 2 best 3 more carefully 4 more clearly 5 worst 6 louder 7 better 8 faster 9 earlier 10 stupidly

27 1 the best 2 louder 3 as expensive 4 more carefully 5 more quietly 6 the most efficiently 7 as bad 8 biggest 9 more beautifully 10 the oldest 11 hard 12 faster 13 more slowly 14 the best 15 as expensive 16 as well 17 more modern 18 rudely 19 as thoughtful 20 longer

28 1 1 don't visit my parents very often. 2 He goes to school every day. 3 Does she come from Germany? 4 Does she go to work by car? 5 We don't watch television every night. 6 He walks to work every day. 7 Does she play football every Saturday? 8 Does he wash his car every week? 9 Do they live in Australia? 10 Do they go to school by bus? 11 She finishes work at five o'clock. 12 Does he go to the cinema on Fridays? 13 I don't come from Africa. 14 He lives in this street. 15 Does he work in a restaurant? 16 Does she get up at five o'clock? 17 They don't eat a lot. 18 He works here.

29 1 Is she watching television now? 2 He's staying at this hotel. 3 She isn't reading. 4 Are they working? 5 Is he writing a letter? 6 He isn't eating. 7 I'm working. 8 Is she studying at the moment? 9 I'm not sleeping. 10 Are you reading my newspaper? 11 Is she writing a letter? 12 Is he talking to Mary? 13 They're playing football. 14 Is he listening to the radio? 15 Are you playing with my football?

30 1 She's reading 2 Do you go 3 I don't watch 4 I'm not watching 5 We see 6 Are you listening 7 I don't get up 8 Peter's talking 9 Do they work 10 She's listening 11 They don't come 12 Are you working 13 The children go 14 I leave 15 Tm going out. 16 Are Peter and Jane working 17 Do Mary and Susan drive 18 We're going 19 Is John listening 20 Are your

11 1 — 2 the cinema 3 — 4 — 5 the bank 6 — 7 The school 8 the supermarket 9 — 10 the hairdresser 11 The bed 12 — 13 the doctor's 14 — 15 —

12 1 the 2 a 3 — 4 the 5 the 6 an 7 — 8 a 9 — 10 — 11 a 12 the 13 a 14— 15 —

13a 1 a 2 the 3 the 4 — 5 the 6 — 7 the 8 — 9 — 10 the 11 a 12 the 13 the/a 14 the 15 a 16 the 17— 18 the 19— 20 the

13b 1 Our first lesson after lunch is geography. 2 I first played baseball in the USA last summer. 3 Rome is my favourite city in Italy. 4 When I leave university I want to be a journalist. 5 What time does the bank open on Fridays? 6 I often work at home.

14 1 a 2 some 3 a 4 any 5 some 6 a 7 any 8 some 9 a 10 some 11 a 12 any 13 an 14 any 15 some/an 16 some ... an 17 any 18 some 19 any 20 some

15 1 anything 2 something 3 someone 4 anyone 5 anyone 6 anything 7 something 8 anything 9 something 10 anyone

16 1 much 2 A few 3 much 4 many 5 much 6 much 7 a little 8 a little 9 a few 10 a little 11 a few 12 many 13 much 14 many 15 much 16 a few 17 much 18 a little 19 a few 20 much 21 a few 22 many 23 much 24 a little 25 many

17 1 bottle 2 piece 3 slice 4 box 5 tin 6 bar 7 can 8 jar 9 packet 10 loaf 11 carton 12 tube

18a

tall	taller	large	larger	short	shorter
thin	thinner	rich	richer	hot	hotter
wide	wider	poor	poorer	cold	colder
long	longer	young	younger	warm	warmer
good	better	big	bigger	cheap	cheaper
fat	fatter	bad	worse	small	smaller
old	older	clean	cleaner	brave	braver

18b 1 longer than 2 more comfortable than 3 better than 4 more expensive than 5 older than 6 more beautiful than 7 younger than 8 bigger than 9 more expensive than 10 colder than 11 taller than 12 worse than 13 more interesting than 14 longer than 15 more difficult than

19 1 more helpful than 2 hotter and hotter 3 less 4 more and more selfish 5 happier than 6 more and more uncomfortable 7 younger 8 more honest than 9 longer and more dangerous than 10 more expensive than 11 easier than 12 more polite than 13 angrier and angrier 14 more crowded than 15 more miserable than 16 more complicated 17 faster and more comfortable than 18 better 19 more hopeful 20 thinner and thinner 21 more useful than 22 narrower 23 Fewer 24 more and more boring 25 friendlier than 26 more stressful than

20 1 hotter 2 more imaginative 3 older 4 more intelligent 5 more old-fashioned 6 more expensive 7 cleaner 8 healthier 9 more difficult 10 fatter and fatter 11 redder and redder 12 angrier 13 more comfortable 14 worse 15 narrower 16 more exciting 17 worse and worse 18 funnier 19 cheaper 20 lazier

21 1 hot 2 boring 3 dangerous 4 deep 5 valuable 6 independent 7 comfortable 8 difficult 9 old 10 relaxing

22 1 the biggest building in 2 the most comfortable chair (in) 3 the most expensive flowers in 4 the best singer in 5 the most careful driver in 6 the oldest student in 7 the worst film 8 the most intelligent of 9 the most beautiful music 10 the most helpful of 11 the youngest in 12 the poorest country in 13 the strangest person 14 the most difficult 15 the oldest of

23 1 too tired 2 not old enough 3 too noisy 4 not fast enough 5 too small 6 too expensive 7 not efficient enough 8 too dirty 9 too loud 10 not strong enough

24 1 interesting 2 interested 3 tiring 4 worried 5 frightened 6 bored 7 exciting 8 worried 9 tiring 10 amusing 11 exciting 12 boring 13 tired 14 amusing 15 worrying 16 frightened

25

quick	quickly	clever	cleverly
slow	slowly	nice	nicely
fast	fast	bad	badly
careful	carefully	intelligent	intelligently
stupid	stupidly	polite	politely
dangerous	dangerously	rude	rudely
good	well	brave	bravely
hard	hard	early	early

26 1 harder 2 best 3 more carefully 4 more clearly 5 worst 6 louder 7 better 8 faster 9 earlier 10 stupidly

27 1 the best 2 louder 3 as expensive 4 more carefully 5 more quietly 6 the most efficiently 7 as bad 8 biggest 9 more beautifully 10 the oldest 11 hard 12 faster 13 more slowly 14 the best 15 as expensive 16 as well 17 more modern 18 rudely 19 as thoughtful 20 longer

28 1 I don't visit my parents very often. 2 He goes to school every day. 3 Does she come from Germany? 4 Does she go to work by car? 5 We don't watch television every night. 6 He walks to work every day. 7 Does she play football every Saturday? 8 Does he wash his car every week? 9 Do they live in Australia? 10 Do they go to school by bus? 11 She finishes work at five o'clock. 12 Does he go to the cinema on Fridays? 13 I don't come from Africa. 14 He lives in this street. 15 Does he work in a restaurant? 16 Does she get up at five o'clock? 17 They don't eat a lot. 18 He works here.

29 1 Is she watching television now? 2 He's staying at this hotel. 3 She isn't reading. 4 Are they working? 5 Is he writing a letter? 6 He isn't eating. 7 I'm working. 8 Is she studying at the moment? 9 I'm not sleeping. 10 Are you reading my newspaper? 11 Is she writing a letter? 12 Is he talking to Mary? 13 They're playing football. 14 Is he listening to the radio? 15 Are you playing with my football?

30 1 She's reading 2 Do you go 3 I don't watch 4 I'm not watching 5 We see 6 Are you listening 7 I don't get up 8 Peter's talking 9 Do they work 10 She's listening 11 They don't come 12 Are you working 13 The children go 14 I leave 15 I'm going out. 16 Are Peter and Jane working 17 Do Mary and Susan drive 18 We're going 19 Is John listening 20 Are your

parents sitting 21 The film starts *22* They don't go 23 Do you go 24 I'm not studying

31 1 'No, I'm not.' 2 'No, they aren't.' 3 'Yes, they are.' 4 'Yes, he is.' 5 'No, they aren't.^{5} 6 'Yes, I am.' 7 'No, she isn't.' 8 'Yes, he is.' 9 'No, they aren't.' 10 'Yes, it is.'

32 1 'Yes, I do.' 2 'No, she doesn't.' 3 'No, he doesn't.' 4 'Yes, they do." 5 'No, I don't.' 6 'No, they don't: 7 'Yes, I do.' 8 'Yes, they do.' 9 'No, he doesn't: 10 'Yes, she does.' 11 'Yes, they do.' 12 'No, she doesn't: 13 'No, they don't.' 14 Yes, he does.' 15 No, I don't: 16 'Yes, he does.'

33 1 'Yes, they are.' 2 'No, I don't: 3 'Yes, 1 do.' 4 'Yes, I do.' 5 'Yes, she is.' 6 'No, I don't: 7 'No, they aren't.'/'No, they're not: 8 'No, it doesn't: 9 'Yes, I do.' 10 'Yes, she is.' 11 'No, it doesn't.' 12 'Yes, they are.' 13 'Yes, she does.' 14 'No, I'm not: 15 'Yes, you are.' 16 'Yes, they are.' 17 'No, I don't: 18 'No, he isn't.'/'No, he's not.' 19 'Yes, he does.' 20 'Yes, you are.' 21 'No, I don't: 22 'No, you/we don't: 23 Yes, they are.' 24 'Yes, I am.' 25 'No, she isn't.'/'No she's not' 26 'No, he doesn't: 27 'Yes, they do.'

34 1 Did they agree? 2 They didn't drive. 3 When did they go? 4 Where did they work? 5 Did you understand? 6 I didn't know. 7 He didn't like it. 8 What did you think? 9 She didn't live here. 10 How much did it cost? II When did you get up? 12 I didn't swim. 13 She didn't speak Spanish. 14 We didn't understand. 15 When did they leave? 16 When did he go to school? 17 Did you like Germany? 18 When did you go out? 19 She didn't smoke. 20 He didn't know.

35 1 He lived here. 2 Did you work here? 3 I didn't like the film. 4 She hated the hotel. 5 We didn't live there. 6 Did he play the piano? 7 I loved Paris. 8 He didn't work very hard. 9 She travelled a lot. 10 He walked everywhere. 11 I didn't study English. 12 Did you drive to school? 13 I didn't like him. 14 Did you miss your parents? 15 We loved Spain. 16 John studied music. 17 Where did you live? 18 What did he study? 19 Where did she work? 20 We didn't like London. 21 They hated waiting. 22 They worked in a factory.

36 1 wrote 2 got up 3 came 4 had 5 ate 6 sat 7 drank 8 ran 9 went 10 gave

37a

buy	bought	forget	forgot	see	saw
catch	caught	give	gave	sit	sat
choose	chose	go	went	speak	spoke
come	came	know	knew	take	took
do	did	make	made	tell	told
drink	drank	put	put	think	thought
eat	ate	read	read	understand	understood

37b 1 bought 2 did they come 3 didn't understand 4 thought 5 Did you eat 6 didn't catch 7 forgot 8 Did they tell 9 did 10 didn't drink 11 put 12 didn't know 13 Did you go 14 gave 15 read

38a IB 2B 3 A 4 A 5B 6B 7A 8B 9A 10 A

38b 1 was watching 2 carried 3 was driving 4 fell 5 were listening 6 were you playing 7 Did they thank 8 Were you smoking 9 said 10 was sitting

38c 1 'What, were you doing when it started raining?' 'We were lying on the beach.' 'What did you do when it started raining?' We left the beach.' 2 'What were they doing when you arrived?' 'They were watching television.' 'What did they do when you arrived?' 'They turned off the television.' 3 'What was John doing when you saw him?' 'He was talking to Sheila.' 'What did John do when you saw him?' ^{c}He started talking to me.' 4 'What was she doing when the phone rang?' 'She was having a bath.' 'What did she do when the phone rang?' 'She got out of the bath.' 5 'What were you doing when you heard the news?^{1} T was working in the office.' 'What did you do when you heard the news?' 'I went straight home.' 6 'What were they doing when the fire started?' 'They were cooking the dinner.' 'What did they do when the fire started?' 'They ran out of the house.' 7 'What was she doing when the child fell down?' 'She was talking to a friend.' 'What did she do when the child fell down?' 'She picked her up.' 8 'What were you doing when the war started?' T was working in a bank.' 'What did you do when the war started?' 'I became a soldier.'

39 1 did 2 were 3 Did 4 did 5 Was 6 was 7 did 8 were 9 were 10 did 11 was 12 were 13 did 14 was 15 was

40 1 'No, 1 wasn't/ 2 'Yes, she did.' 3 'No, I didn't.' 4 'Yes, he was.' 5 ^{c}Yes, they were.' 6 'No, he didn't.' 7 'Yes, I did.' 8 'Yes, they were.' 9 'No, I didn't.' 10 'No, they weren't.' 11 'Yes, 1 did.' 12 'Yes, they did.' 13 'No, she wasn't.' 14 'Yes, he did.' 15'Yes, I did.' 16'Yes, 1 was/ 17'Yes, he was.' 18 'No, I didn't.' 19 ^{c}Yes, she was.' 20 'Yes, she did/

41a 1 Have you ever been 2 I've seen 3 She's never worked 4 I've never been 5 Has he ever been 6 Have you met 7 Have you ever worked 8 She's been 9 I've read 10 Have you seen 11 We've never been 12 They've never seen 13 Have they ever lived 14 They've met 15 I've never been

41b 1 is 2 has 3 has 4 is S has 6 is 7 has 8 has 9 has 10 has

42 1 I've read 2 She went 3 I've met 4 She started 5 1 left 6 He's seen 7 Have you been 8 Did you see 9 did you arrive 10 John's been 11 *}\ave* you read 12 I didn't see 13 I've never been 14 Have you heard 15 I didn't know . •

43a 1 for 2 for 3 since 4 for 5 for 6 since 7 since 8 since 9 for 10 for

43b 1 I studied ... for 2 She's worked .., since. 3 I worked ... for 4 I've lived ... since 5 He's been ... for 6 I haven't seen ... since 7 I didn't see ... for 8 We've been ... since 9 I've worked ... for 10 I've lived ... since

44 1 She's been 2 I've seen 3 have left 4 I've written 5 We've had 6 There's been 7 I've seen 8 Someone's knocked down 9 I've been 10 Have you ever eaten 11 Have you done 12 he's damaged 13 You've had 14 I've ever heard 15 He's been 16 The Prime Minister has asked 17 She's just gone out 18 I've never smoked 19 the children have been 20 Have you already seen

45 1 she's already gone/she's gone already 2 Have you finished yet? 3 I haven't done my homework yet. 4 I've already told her several times/ I've told her several times already 5 You've just missed her 6 Have you finished painting the house yet? 7 I've already said that 8 I haven't explained yet. 9 Have you already got your passport?/Have you got your passport already? 10 He's just told me that

46 1 have you been doing ... I've been playing 2 have you been studying 3 I've been looking 4 Pat's been living 5 We've been walking 6 have you been learning 7 I've been waiting 8 she's been working 9 They've been watching 10 have you been seeing 11 have they been doing 12 She's been studying 13 I've just been speaking 14 I've been working

47 1 I'm seeing them on Saturday. 2 They're coming here in three weeks. 3 I'm meeting John at three o'clock. 4 What are you doing on Friday night? 5 I'm going to the disco on Saturday evening. 6 We're going back to the States in/for three years. 7 They are going on holiday in two days' time. 8 I'm not coming home on Friday. 9 Are you working late tomorrow night? 10 We are not going to school next week. 11 He's coming to see you tomorrow. 12 Mr and Mrs Green are going away in/for three weeks. 13 We're having a party on Saturday. 14 I'm seeing her again next week. 15 Are you playing football this week?

48a 1 are you going to 2 They aren't going to 3 are you going to 4 I'm not going to 5 Are we going to 6 She's going to 7 Is the machine going to 8 Are your parents going to 9 They're going to 10 I'm not going to

48b 1 's going to rain. 2 's going to be hot 3 's going to fail 4 's going to complain 5 is going to finish 6 'm going to drive. 7 's not going to work 8 's going to die 9 's going to fall off 10 're going to miss

49 1 We're going to stay/We're staying at home tonight. 2 It's going to rain tomorrow. 3 We are going to eat/We're eating at a restaurant tonight. 4 They're going to drive/They're driving to Manchester tomorrow morning. 5 I'm going to brush my teeth, have a wash, and go to bed. 6 You're going to break it! 7 My parents are staying/going to stay with us for the weekend. 8 Who's going to tell him the news? 9 We are going to miss the train! 10 How many people are arriving/going to arrive today? 11 They're going to see/They're seeing Nick at 10 o'clock tomorrow. 12 I'm going to the seaside next weekend. 13 Who's coming to John's party later? 14 Bring your hat and gloves - it's going to get cold later tonight. 15 Mary's going to fly/Mary's flying to Barbados next Tuesday. 16 Our friends are going to meet/Our friends are meeting us before the concert. 17 We're moving/We're going to move into our new house next month.

50 1 he won't be late. 2 Shall I open the window 3 How long will the journey take? 4 she'll be in London 5 John will phone your office 6 Will there be a lot of people 7 What time will the race start? 8 He'll never agree 9 You'll never see your money 10 Shall I phone the doctor? 11 I'll pay for the damage 12 Will you be at home 13 The company won't give you 14 You'll hurt yourself! 15 There won't be any newspapers

51 1 'm going to see 2 'm going to get 3 'll get 4 're all going to meet 5 'll meet 6 'll be 7 I'll pay 8 Are you going to eat. 9 shall we go 10 'll phone 11 'll book 12 'll see

52 1 's going to 2 won't 3 will/is going to 4 Shall 5 is going to 6 'll 7 'll 8 'm going 9 will/is going to 10 're going to 11 'll 12 's going to 13 are you going to 14 'm going to 15 'll 16 'm going to 17 I'll

53 1 I'll give it ... they visit 2 I won't send ... I hear 3 they phone ... I'll contact you 4 I'll see you ... I fly 5 They'll send ... before they leave 6 I talk ... I'll give 7 She'll visit ... she goes 8 I'll finish ... I'm 9 I'll send

... I get 10 She'll do ... she goes 11 T visit ... I'll go 12 I'll phone ... we get 13 I'll call ... we sign 14 He won't do .,. you tell him 15 You'll be ... you meet

54a

Infinitive	*Past Simple*	*Past Participle*	*Infinitive*	*Past Simple*	*Past Participle-*
be	*was*	been	*drive*	*drove*	driven
beat	*beat*	*beaten*	*eat*	*ate*	eaten
become	became	*become*	*fall*	fell	*fallen*
begin	*began*	begun	feel	*felt*	*felt*
bend	bent	*bent*	*fight*	fought	*fought*
blow	blew	*blown*	*find*	*found*	found
break	*broke*	broken	*fly*	flew	*flown*
bring	brought	*brought*	forget	*forgot*	*forgotten*
build	*built*	*built*	forgive	*forgave*	*forgiven*
burn	*burnt/ burned*	*burnt/ burned*	*get*	got	*got*
burst	burst	*burst*	*give*	*gave*	given
buy	*bought*	bought	*go*	went	*gone*
catch	caught	*caught*	grow	*grew*	*grown*
choose	*chose*	*chosen*	*hear*	heard	*heard*
come	*came*	*come*	*hide*	*hid*	hidden
cost	cost	*cost*	*hit*	hit	*hit*
cut	*cut*	cut	hold	*held*	*held*
do	*did*	*done*	hurt	*hurt*	*hurt*
draw	*drew*	*drawn*	keep	*kept*	*kept*
dream	*dreamt/ dreamed*	*dreamt/ dreamed*	*know*	knew	*known*
drink	drank	*drunk*	learn	*learned*	*learnt/ learned*
leave	left	*left*	*shoot*	shot	*shot*
lend	*lent*	lent	*show*	*showed*	shown
let	let	*let*	*shut*	shut	*shut*
lie	*lied/lay*	*lied/laid*	sing	*sang*	*sung*
light	*lit*	*tit*	sit	*sat*	*sat*
lose	*lost*	*lost*	*steep*	slept	*slept*
make	made	*made*	*speak*	*spoke*	spoken
mean	meant	*meant*	*spend*	spent	*spent*
meet	*met*	*met*	stand	*stood*	*stood*
pay	paid	*paid*	*steal*	stole	*stolen*
put	*put*	put	*swim*	*swam*	swum
read	read	*read*	*take*	took	*taken*
ride	*rode*	*ridden*	teach	*taught*	*taught*
run	ran	*run*	tell	*told*	*told*
say	*said*	said	think	*thought*	*thought*
see	saw	*seen*	*throw*	threw	*thrown*
sell	*sold*	*sold*	*understand*	*understood*	understood
send	*sent*	*sent*	*wear*	wore	*worn*
set	set	*set*	win	*won*	*won*
shine	sftone	*shone*	*write*	wrote	*written*

54b 1 have beaten 2 became 3 began 4 blew 5 've just broken 6 Have they brought 7 bought 8 have caught/caught 9 've already chosen 10 came 11 cost 12 Haven't you done 13 's just fallen 14 felt 15 found

54c 1 Have you ever flown 2 Have you already forgotten 3 gave 4 's gone 5 Did your mouth hurt 6 kept 7 've known 8 've learnt/learned 9 've already lent 10 let 11 've already made 12 Have you paid 13 put 14 's read 15 ran

54d 1 've already seen 2 've just sold 3 sent 4 shut 5 sang 6 slept 7 Have you spoken 8 've already spent 9 stood 10 Haven't you taken 11 has just told 12 threw 13 understood 14 wore 15've already written

55a 1 This mirror was broken last night. 2 The towels in the hotel are washed every day. 3 The house was built ten years ago. 4 This fruit is grown in very hot countries. 5 The office workers are paid weekly. 6 All this cheese was bought in France. 7 Emily's bike was found in the river. 8 Most of the prisoners are visited once a week. 9 This car is cleaned every week. 10 A lot of sport is played on the beach. 11 All my best jewellery was stolen. 12 The children were carried all the way home. 13 The palace is watched twenty-four hours a day. 14 The grapes are left to dry in the sun.

55b 1 The soil is prepared. 2 The seeds are planted. 3 The berries are picked by hand. 4 They are taken to a factory. 5 They are dried in the sun. 6 They are sorted by hand. 7 They are shipped all over the world. 8 They are roasted in ovens at the factory. 9 The coffee is sold in the shops. 10 It is drunk in offices and homes everywhere.

55c 1 was killed 2 is ... cut 3 were ... built 4 are ... locked 5 Were ... grown 6 was given 7 is ... driven 8 was explained 9 was ... sent 10 are ... taught

55d 1 My car was damaged last night. 2 This computer is made in the USA. 3 The machines are made in Scotland. 4 The President was killed last night. 5 The money is changed into dollars at the bank. 6 The parcel was posted yesterday. 7 Cheese is made from milk. 8 The children were given some food. 9 The house is painted every year. 10 Several people were hurt in an accident last night.

56a 1 used to smoke ... gave it up 2 didn't use to like him ... changed 3 used to live ... went 4 used to earn ... lost 5 joined ... didn't use to like 6 Did you use to travel ... got 7 used to work ... became 8 used to drive ... had 9 used to work ... dropped 10 used to see ... had 11 used to work ... went 12 used to play ... broke 13 used to have ... moved 14 used to live ... moved 15 used to drive ... started

56b 1 I used to 2 They're used to 3 we used to 4 Did you use to 5 I'm not used to 6 This used to 7 I used to 8 aren't used to 9 I'm not used to 10 1 used to 11 I didn't use to 12 I'm not used to 13 I wasn't used to 14 They used to 15 We used to

57 1 Open the door, Emma! 2 Don't touch the cooker, Joe! 3 Don't be late tonight, Emma. 4 Help me lift this box, Emma! 5 Get up, Joe! 6 Bring me another biscuit, Emma! 7 Be quiet, Joe. 8 Open the window, Emma! 9 Turn down your stereo, Emma! 10 Pass the salt, Joe!

58 1 we'll walk 2 she'll call ... she has 3 I'll buy 4 I'll go 5 is ... we'll find 6 doesn't come 7 are 8 I'll ask ... I see 9 I'll go ... I can 10 I have to ... I'll complain 11 he sees ... he'll be 12 will be 13 it snows ... we'll go 14 I'll lend ... they ask 15 you visit ... you'll see

59 1 you wouldn't have 2 he got up 3 we had 4 you sold 5 you trusted 6 he bought 7 they went 8 we lived 9 I were/was you 10 I had 11 would be 12 you didn't live 13 won 14 1 didn't give 15 I wouldn't go

60 IB 2A 3B 4A 5B 6A 7A 8B 9A 10B

61 1 freezes 2 goes 3 get 4 can't 5 doesn't work 6 are 7 doesn't work 8 rises 9 boils 10 goes

62 1 I mustn't go to the hospital tonight. 2 Can James play the piano? 3 Can Peter pay for us? 4 We mustn't go to the passport office today. 5 Can't we go to the bank tomorrow? 6 You shouldn't phone the school today. 7 Can you answer all the questions? 8 She can't pay for the lessons. 9 Can you talk to Mary for me? 10 Can Peter check the times of the trains for us? 11 Must we say goodbye to Alan and Sue? 12 They can't stay here for a week. 13 Can we buy a return ticket here? 14 They shouldn't help you. 15 Can't he understand me?

63 1 Could 2 Can/Could 3 Can/Could 4 Can 5 can 6 Can/Could 7 Could 8 Can/Could 9 can 10 could 11 Can 12 could 13 can/could 14 Can/Could 15 could

64a 1 He might/may get a new job. 2 May I have one of these cakes? 3 There may/might be some tea in the pot. 4 May I ask you how old you are? 5 Visitors may not stay in the hospital after ten p.m. 6 May I have one of these sandwiches? 7 The car may/might be in the station car park. 8 May I use your phone? 9 Guests may wear casual dress. 10 She may/might move to London. 11 The show may/might be cancelled. 12 She may/might be elected. 13 Andrew may/might collect the money. 14 Peter may not/might not come to the cinema tomorrow. 15 It may/might rain this afternoon.

64b 1 may 2 May 3 might 4 may/might 5 may not/might not 6 may not/might not 7 May

65a 1 must 2 May 3 can 4 might ... should 5 couldn't 6 might 7 must 8 Can 9 shouldn't ... should 10 may

65b 1 can 2 should 3 should ... might/may 4 could ... can't 5 must 6 Can/Could 7 may/might 8 must not 9 should ... can 10 should 11 must 12 shouldn't 13 can't 14 couldn't 15 should

66a 1 have to be 2 don't have to get up 3 has to answer 4 Do ... have to read 5 have to decide 6 don't have to shout 7 Do ... have to sleep 8 don't have to take 9 has to open 10 have to talk 11 Do ... have to turn 12 don't have to explain 13 have to stop 14 Does ... have to come 15 don't have to send

66b 1 Did you have to take 2 I've had to use 3 I have to do 4 We didn't have to go 5 Did you have to get up 6 I'll have to start 7 I've always had to work 8 The children have to go 9 They don't have to work 10 Did you have to take 11 She had to work 12 I usually have to cut 13 She didn't have to cook 14 Do you have to pay 15 I usually have to stay

66c 1 mustn't 2 doesn't have to 3 mustn't 4 don't have to 5 don't have to 6 mustn't 7 mustn't 8 don't have to 9 mustn't 10 mustn't

67a doing; playing; travelling; riding; swimming; running; lying; flying; trying; getting

67b 1 running 2 doing 3 lying 4 playing 5 Flying ... travelling 6 riding... swimming 7 trying 8 getting

68 1 making 2 getting up 3 working 4 travelling 5 writing 6 driving 7 being 8 sitting 9 playing 10 reading 11 going 12 packing

69 1 about going 2 to seeing 3 of working 4 about ... coming 5 After opening 6 by climbing 7 to working 8 in joining 9 of coming 10 on swimming 11 about ... getting 12 in hearing 13 at listening 14 for cutting 15 without stopping

70 1 Swimming every day is a good way of keeping fit. 2 Learning a foreign language takes a long time. 3 Cleaning the machine more often will solve your problems. 4 Growing your own food is less expensive. 5 Giving up smoking will make you feel better. 6 Going by rail is cheaper than going by air. 7 Smoking is not allowed here. 8 Being in hospital is not very pleasant. 9 Windsurfing properly is very difficult. 10 Speaking a foreign language is more difficult than reading it. 11 Walking on the grass is forbidden. 12 Swimming on my back is one thing I can't do. 13 Being polite to someone you don't like is difficult.

71 1 Smoking 2 living 3 working 4 going out 5 writing 6 walking 7 going 8 studying 9 moving 10 making 11 eating 12 becoming 13 Looking after 14 seeing 15 getting up • 16 helping 17 learning 18 having 19 saying 20 Watching

72 1 to go 2 to speak 3 to telephone 4 to get on 5 to find 6 to buy 7 to go out 8 to look after 9 to stay 10 to help

73 1 She goes to the beach every weekend to swim. 2 He moved to London to find work. 3 She's leaving home to go to university in Birmingham. 4 He's having a party to celebrate his thirtieth birthday. 5 She gets up at six every morning to do her training. 6 He's going out to post a card to his mother. 7 They are saving money to buy a car. 8 They are going to Egypt to visit Ali's parents. 9 He bought a new suit to wear at the office party. 10 They bought a video recorder to record the World Cup Final.

74 1 She put the letter in her bag so as not to lose it. 2 You should book your tickets early in order to avoid disappointment. 3 I'll leave work at 4.30 so as not to be late. 4 Everybody stopped talking in order to hear her sing. 5 I need to watch you in order to understand what you are doing on the computer. 6 In order to pass the exam, you will need to study very hard. 7 So as not to waste any time, let's start the meeting now. 8 They moved out of the city in order to have a quieter life. 9 Keep the CD in its case so as not to damage it. 10 He waited outside the house so as to see her when she came home.

75a 1 The bus driver said, 'We're late.' 2 The little boy said, 'I'm cold.' 3 Jane said, 'Let's go for a swim!' 4 The policeman said, 'You're driving too fast.' 5 The old man said, 'Could you tell me the time, please?' 6 The teacher said, 'Don't forget to come early tomorrow.' 7 She said, 'I'm sorry I can't come out. I'm playing tennis this afternoon.' 8 He said, 'You'll need a passport if you're going to France.' 9 The guard said, 'Tickets, please.' 10 The receptionist said, 'I'm sorry, we haven't any double rooms. Would you like two singles?'

75b 1 My parents said, 'Don't be late home.' 'Don't be late home,' my parents said. 2 lie said, 'I'd like to go out tonight.' 'I'd like to go out tonight; he said. 3 The teacher said, 'Read this book before next week.' 'Read this book before next week,' the teacher said. 4 The doctor said, 'Go home and stay in bed.' 'Go home and stay in bed,' the doctor said. 5 Ruth said, 'We're coming to visit you on Sunday.' 'We're coming to visit you on Sunday,' Ruth said. 6 The receptionist said. The courses cost £100 per week.' 'The courses cost £100 per week,' the receptionist said. 7 They said, 'We had a lovely time.' 'We had a lovely time,' they said. 8 Danny said, 'I want to come with you.' 'I want to come with you,' Danny said. 9 The ticket inspector said, 'You're on the wrong train.' 'You're on the wrong train,' the ticket inspector said. 10 My grandmother said, 'Can you answer the door?' 'Can you answer the door?' my grandmother said.

76a 1 told 2 said 3 told 4 told 5 said 6 said 7 say 8 tell 9 told 10 told 11 said 12 said 13 tell 14 telling 15 tell 16 says 17 told 18 say 19 Tell 20 telling

76b 1 say 2 told 3 say 4 told 5 tell, said 6 tell 7 saying 8 say 9 tells 10 said

77 1 She says (that) she hasn't done her homework. 2 He'll tell you (that) he hasn't got any money. 3 She says (that) she's seen the film before. 4 He's already told you (that) he wants to go home. 5 He says (that) he hasn't seen his mother for years. 6 She says (that) she doesn't know how much it costs. 7 She's told me (that) she doesn't like going to parties. 8 They say (that) they've never been to Berlin. 9 He'll say (that) he needs the money to visit his parents. 10 They've told me (that) they can't come on Tuesday. 11 The President will announce that he's going to visit Europe this year. 12 Gemma tells me (that) she can't stand classical music. 13 The pilot has just announced that the plane will land in half and hour. 14 The booking office says that there are no tickets left for tonight's performance. 15 The children say (that) they haven't had anything to eat. 16 He's told me (that) he's already seen the play. 17 I've told them (that) I'll come again next year. 18 Simon says (that) he's not feeling very well. 19 Jason has just said (that) he's never been to Japan. 20 Shell tell you (that) she's meeting the students for lunch next week. 21 The advertisement claims (that) you'll never drive a better car.

78 1 He said (that) his name was Ian. 2 She said (that) she was writing a letter. 3 She said (that) she was waiting for Jessie. 4 He said (that) he didn't like the idea. 5 She said (that) the car wasn't at her house. 6 He said (that) the washing machine was broken. 7 He said (that) he was working. 8 They said (that) they were worried about Peter. 9 Megan said (that) she didn't smoke. 10 John said (that) he was waiting for his exam results. 11 Mrs Johnson said (that) she worked for an American company. 12 The little boy said (that) he felt ill. 13 Fiona said (that) she was watching television. 14 Sam said (that) he liked the new house. 15 Chloe said (that) she was washing the car.

79a 1 Give your parents this food. 2 Get me an ashtray, please, 3 Have you sent your family a postcard? 4 Did you pay him the money? 5 Would you find my mother a scat, please? 6 I'll get you some money. 7 Did you tell your parents the news? 8 I'm buying Jenny a ticket, too. 9 Show Mr Anderson your painting. 10 Would you take your parents this note?

79b 1 I took it to my parents. 2 They didn't give me any money. 3 She showed the car to all her friends. 4 I gave the students the news. 5 Did you lend him my pen? 6 1 bought some flowers for my parents. 7 Why didn't you bring me some perfume? 8 We took Janice some grapes and some flowers. 9 He showed me his injured hand. 10 We gave some vegetables from the garden to our neighbours.

80 1 1 never see them nowadays 2 we hardly ever have ice cream 3 Peter's always playing football 4 We hardly ever go out 5 1 never see 6 I always sit here 7 She seldom comes here 8 we see them quite often 9 We see them frequently 10 I hardly ever watch horror movies

81 1 and 2 so 3 Before 4 but 5 then 6 after 7 and 8 but 9 before 10 after 11 because/and 12 then 13 because 14 so

82 1 As she was very tired, she went to bed. 2 I can't use my car because it's broken down. 3 Since he hasn't done any work, I don't think he'll pass the exam. 4 The bus crashed because the driver fell asleep. 5 As it was raining, we decided not to go out. 6 The climate is changing because the earth is getting warmer. 7 Since Monday is a public holiday, we're going to spend the weekend in the mountains. 8 Romeo committed suicide because he thought Juliet was dead. 9 As you haven't seen, the cathedral yet, I'll take you there on Sunday. 10 The concert was cancelled because the singer was ill.

83 1 Both Greg and Liz like surfing. / Greg and Liz both like surfing. 2 Neither the house nor the garden were attractive. 3 Both the food and the service were terrible. / The food and the service were both terrible. 4 Both Angela and Lucy played the piano. / Angela and Lucy both played the piano. 5 Neither Jessica nor Chloe were at home. 6 Neither his family nor his friends knew about his accident. 7 Both eagles and wolves hunt small animals. / Eagles and wolves both hunt small animals. 8 Both the film and the book arc very funny. / The film and the book are both very funny. 9 Neither the beach nor the shops are far away. 10 Both Japan and California have a lot of earthquakes. / Japan and California both have a lot of earthquakes.

84a 1 Does she like travelling? 2 Are they working? 3 Was he playing tennis? 4 Did she go to school today? 5 Do they live here? 6 Is she eating at the moment? 7 Did they drive to the station? 8 Is she reading? 9 Did he have breakfast early? 10 Did they come today? 11 Does she drive to work? 12 Did he leave this morning? 13 Was he writing a letter? 14 Did they watch television? IS Is she at home? 16 Did they go home? 17 Does she like horror films? 18 Is he walking home? 19 Were they eating ice cream? 20 Did they give him the money?

84b Students should check their answers to this exercise with their teacher.

85 1 came to see 2 did Julie meet 3 do ... like 4 made the cake? 5 found . the car keys? 6 started the fire? 7 do ... want? 8 told 9 stayed 10 did ... say? 11 came with Mary? 12 do ... study? 13 does Linda live with? 14 opened the door? 15 happened?

86 1 So have I. 2 Neither/Nor does Steve. 3 So did Jo. 4 So are we. 5 So would I. 6 Nor/Neither has Paul. 7 Nor/Neither will I. 8 So could Fiona. 9 Nor/Neither was T. 10 So should you.

87 1 1 don't think so. 2 I hope so. 3 No, I don't think so. 4 Yes, 1 think so. 5 I hope so, because I'm playing tennis on Sunday. G I think so. 7 I hope not. He's really boring. 8 I don't think so. 9 Oh, dear. I hope not. 10 T think so, but I'm not sure.

88 1 This is the woman who gave me my first job. 2 He picked up the book that was on the desk. 3 The meal that Ben cooked was delicious. 4 She's the woman who telephoned the police. 5 He's the person who wanted to buy your house. 6 We threw out the computer that never worked properly. 7 This is the lion that's been ill recently. 8 The man who was badly injured was driving the car. 9 The children who broke my window live in the next street. 10 They sold the cat that was afraid of mice. 11 This is the chair that my parents gave to me. 12 I've applied for the job that you told me about. 13 We're looking for the ball that we were playing with. 14 The man who we saw was holding a gun. 15 I'm going to speak to the mechanic who repaired my car. 16 The TV programme that I watched last night was very sad. 17 The girl who I saw had red hair. 18 That's the woman who I was telling you about.

89 1 in 2 on 3 at 4 in 5 on 6 at 7 at 8 at 9 on 10 on ... in 11 in 12 in 13 on 14 in 15 at ... at

90 1 at 2 on/onto 3 out of ... into/to 4 off 5 in 6 out of/away from ... at 7 on 8 into/in 9 onto/on 10 to

91 1 across 2 above 3 against 4 through 5 across 6 along 7 on top of 8 under 9 through 10 behind 11 past 12 over 13 against 14 under 15 on top of

92 1 round 2 over 3 away from 4 into/through 5 in 6 under 7 between 8 past 9 onto 10 in 11 at 12 along 13 behind 14 out of 15 into/in 16 off... down 17 in front of 18 against/behind 19 through 20 in 21 on top of/on 22 towards 23 round 24 on ... between 25 onto

93 1 to 2 — 3 to 4 at/to 5 — 6 to 7 to 8 at 9 to 10 at

94 1 on 2 in 3 at 4 at 5 on 6 in ... at 7 at 8 at ... on 9 at A, in 10 on 11 in 12 on 13 at 14 on 15 at 16 on 17 in

95 1 We stayed at the party until midnight. 2 I'm going to watch this game until it finishes. 3 They played on the beach until it got dark. 4 Wait until the bus stops. 5 I'm going to stay in bed until 11 o'clock. 6 We're going to look round the shops until the rain stops. 7 I lived by the sea until 1 was fifteen. 8 I drove until we got to London. 9 You should lie down until you feel better. 10 I'm going to be in the office until 6 o'clock.

96a 1 until 2 before 3 until 4 until 5 before 6 before 7 until 8 until 9 before 10 before

96b le You must stay in bed **until** you get better. 2b I felt very tired **after** staying awake all night. 3h I was asleep **until** the phone woke me up. 4g We always have a good breakfast **before** we go to work. 5f We're going to buy some new skis **before** we go on our skiing holiday. 6k They felt lonely **after** their children left home. 7a 1 have a lot of studying to do **before** my exams start. 8j Who's going to wash the dishes **after** dinner? 9d He lived with his parents **until** he was thirty. lOi 1 carried on looking for my ring **until** I found it. lie We must walk home **before** it gets too dark.

97 1 until 2 before 3 in 4 After 5 During 6 between 7 from 8 through

98 1 get up 2 Wake up! 3 stand up 4 Sit down 5 get on 6 look after 7 give up 8 ring up

99a ring up, set off, take off, sleep in, get up, stay up, go out, look round, clear away, try out, stay in, go back, save up, fix up, carry on

99b 1 try out 2 take off 3 fix up 4 look round 5 stay in 6 set off 7 clear away 8 carry on 9 get up 10 go back 11 stay up 12 save up 13 go out 14 sleep in 15 ring up

100 1 broke down 2 set off 3 go out ... stay in 4 hurry up 5 get up ... sleep in 6 speak up 7 Look out 8 go back

101 1 I usually ring up my sister/ring my sister up 2 I should give them away. 3 1 must look it up in the dictionary. 4 Can we fix up a meeting/fix a meeting up? 5 Why don't you put away your clothes/put your clothes away? 6 Would you like to put your bag down/put down your bag? 7 Could you help me work it out? 8 Would you turn the machine on/turn on the machine, please? 9 She wants to put the meeting off/put off the meeting until Monday. 10 Could you turn it off, please?

102 1 get over 2 look after 3 look round 4 came across 5 takes after 6 live on

TEST 1

Part A

1 him 2 myself 3 yourself 4 your 5 ours 6 its 7 men's 8 engineers' 9 us 10 mine

Part B

1 a 2 some 3 the 4 any 5 some 6 any 7 an 8 the 9 the 10 some

PartC

l a **2 a** **3** - **4** The **5** a **6** the **7** a **8 —** **9 —** **10 —** **11** the **12** the **13** a **14** a **15 —**

Part D

I There are a lot of people in the street. 2 Someone's stolen my wallet! 3 Hurry up! We haven't got much time. 4 Are you taller than I am? 5 If I take that job, I'll have less money but more time. 6 My new manager is friendlier than the old one. 7 This summer is hotter than last summer. 8 Which is the highest mountain in your country? 9 This test isn't as difficult as the last one we did. 10 We were too tired to get to the top of the mountain. II That film was really boring. 12 Well done! You have all worked very hard. 13 Please could you drive more carefully? 14 Have you finished your journey, or do you have to travel farther/further? 15 This is the worst road in the country.

TEST 2

Part A

1 get up 2 are you working 3 means 4 did you see 5 arrived 6 have lived 7 for 8 is going to 9 were 10 used

PartB

1 I am 2 he doesn't 3 she is 4 you do 5 it wasn't 6 they did 7 they were 8 you aren't/you're noL 9 we are 10 I didn't

Part C

ANDY; Hello, Liz. I haven't seen you for a long time. How are you?
LIZ: Fine, thanks. What about you? What are you doing these days?
ANDY: At the moment I'm working in my parents' restaurant, but yesterday I had a job interview with a law firm.
LIZ: Great! How did it go?
ANDY: Well, unfortunately, I was a little late.
LIZ: Why?
ANDY: Well, my watch was stolen last week, when I was swimming.
LIZ: Oh dear. And did they ask you many difficult questions?
ANDY: Yes, but I think I did OK.
LIZ: So they did offer you a/the job?
ANDY: I haven't heard yet. They're going to tell me tomorrow.
LIZ: Well, good luck.

PartD

1 is coming 2 was flying 3 used to be 4 Don't wait 5 is grown 6 Have you finished 7 '11/will see 8 slept 9 have just bought 10 was chosen

TEST 3

Part A

1 wouldn't 2 rains 3 would 4 gets 5 couldn't 6 should 7 Can 8 may 9 had to 10 mustn't

Part B

1 cooking 2 to look for 3 reading 4 asking 5 to wear 6 Skiing 7 to pass 8 inviting 9 building **10** to go

PartC

1 The mechanic says (that] he/she will look at the car this afternoon. 2 She said (that) she was a dentist. 3 They say (that) they aren't going to sell their house. 4 The officer told Mr Smith (that) his passport was out of date. 5 The woman said (that) she was waiting to see the doctor. 6 He told Anna (that) he loved her. 7 Mary says (that) her mother's coming to see her. 8 The boy said (that) he was looking for his sister. 9 The teacher told Leo (that) he played the piano very well. 10 They said (that) they were having a wonderful holiday.

PartD

1 Have you given your friend the money? 2 We often go to the beach in the summer. 3 I took an umbrella because it was raining. 4 Neither Jenny nor Sue has the right qualifications. 5 Do you like fishing? 6 Why did they leave? 7 'I don't like doing tests.' 'Nor do I.' 8 'Is he going to give a long speech?' 'I hope not.' 9 That's the woman who has just started working here. 10 These are the earrings that my aunt bought for me.

Part E

1 into 2 at 3 at 4 until 5 up 6 at 7 after 8 off 9 down 10 up

Index

Note that all numbers in this index are page numbers.

A
a 8-9,13-15
a few 17
a little 17
a lot of 17
able to, be 87
active and passive 71
adjectives
  comparative 20-23,29
  superlative 24-25, 29
  participial 26
  possessive 2-3
adverbs
  comparative 28-29
  frequency 117
  of manner *27*
after 118
already 54
always 117
an 8-9, 13-15
and 118
any 15, 17
anybody 16
anyone 16
anything 16
article
  definite 9-11, 13-14
  indefinite 8-9, 13-14
  no article 10-11, 13-14
as 119
as ... as 24
at 128-129, 133-134

B
be able to 87
because 119
before 118
better/best 28
bored/boring 26
both ... and 120
but 118

C
can 86-88, 91-92
clauses,
  relative 126-127
comparative adjectives 20-23, 29
comparative adverbs 28-29

conditional, the *79-80*, 85
  first conditional 79-80, 83
  second conditional 81-83
  zero conditional 84-85
conjunctions - see link words
could 81, 86-88, 91-92
countable nouns 6, 9, 15

D
dare 86
definite article 9-11, 13-14
direct object 115
direct speech 105-110
do, does, did 121

E
ever 25

F
few, a 17
fewer 21
first conditional 79-80, 83
for
  + *present perfect* 51
  + *present perfect continuous* 55
frequency adverbs 117
future, the 56-66
  present continuous as future 56-58, 60
  going to 58-59, 60, 63-65
  future simple 61-62, 63-65, 79
  when + *present simple* 65-66

G
gerund, the 96-100
  as *subject of a sentence* 99
  prepositions + *gerund* 98
  verbs + *gerund* 97
going to 58-59, 60, 63-65

H
have to 93-95
he 1
her 1-2
hers 3-4
him 1
his 2-3
hope so/not 125

I
I 1
if 79, 84
imperative *77-78*
in 128-129, 134

indefinite article 8-9, 13-14
indirect speech 105, 113-114
indirect object 115
infinitive, the 101-104
  after certain verbs 101
  to express purpose 102-104
in order to 103-104
interested/interesting 26
irregular verbs 41, 67-70
it 1
its 3
it's 4

J
just 54

L
least 25, 28
less 21, 28
link words 119
little, a 17-18, 21-22
lot of, a 17-18

M
manner, adverbs of 27
many 17-18
may 86, 89-92
me 1
my 2
might 81, 86, 89-92
mine 3
modals 86-95
more ... than 20-21, 23
most 24-25
much 17-18
must 86, 91-92
my 2
myself 2

N
need 86
neither ... nor 120
never 117
nor 120, 124
normally 117
noun, the
  countable nouns 6, 9, 15
  uncountable nouns *6*, 15, 17, 19
  singular *7*
  plural *7*

O
object, the 115, 123, 140-144
  direct and indirect 115

object pronoun 1
occasionally 117
often 117
on 128-129, 134
ought to 86
our 2
ours 3

P
participial adjectives 26
passive, the 71-74
past continuous 43-46
past simple 38-40, 41-42, 46-47, 50
  passive 71
past tenses, the 38-48, 50
phrasal verbs 138-144
plural nouns *7*
possessive adjective 2-3
possessive pronoun 3
possessive with 's 4-5
prepositions 128-137
  of movement 129
  of place 128
  of position and movement 130, **132**
  of time 134, 137
  at, in on 128-129, 134
present continuous, 32-34, 37
  as *future* 56-58, 60
present perfect simple 48-50, 52, 54
  continuous 55-56
  + for / since 51
present simple 30-31, 33, 36-37
  as future 65-66
  passive 71-74
present tense, the 30-37
pronouns
  subject and object 1
  possessive 3
  reflexive *2*

Q
questions 121-123
  wh *questions* 122-123
  making questions 121
quotation marks 105

R
rarely 117
reflexive pronouns 2
relative clauses 126-127
reported speech 105-114
  statements 111-114

S
's 4, 49
s' 4
say/tell 109-110
second conditional 81-83
seldom 117
shall 61, 86
short answers 34-37, 47
should 91-92
simple past - see past simple
since
  + *present perfect* 51
  + *present perfect continuous* 55
singular nouns *7*
so 118, 124
some 15, 17
somebody 16
someone 16
something 16
sometimes 117
speech
  direct 105-110
  indirect or reported 111-114
statements reported 111-114
subject pronoun 1
superlative adjectives 24-25, 29
superlative adverbs 28

T
tell/say 109-110
tenses, the
  present 30-37
  past simple and continuous 38-48
  present perfect 48-56
  future 56-66
  used to 75-77
that
  + *in relative clauses* 126
  + *in reported speech* 111
the 9
  + place names 10
their 2
theirs 3
them 1
themselves 2
then 118
they 1
think so/not 125
to *after certain verbs* 133
  + *infinitive* 101-102
too 25-26

U

uncountable nouns 6, 15, 17, 19
until 135-137
us 1
used to 75-77
usually 117

V

verb, the 30-85
  irregular 41, 67-70
  phrasal 138-144
  using to *or* at 133

W

well 27
when 65
which 126
who 126
wh *questions* 122-123
will 61, 63-64
won't 61
word order 115, 118
worse/worst 28
would 81, 86

Y

yet 54
you 1
your 2
yourself 2
yourselves 3
yours 3

Z

zero conditional 84-85

Elaine Walker
Steve Elsworth

New Edition

Grammar Practice

for Elementary Students

with key

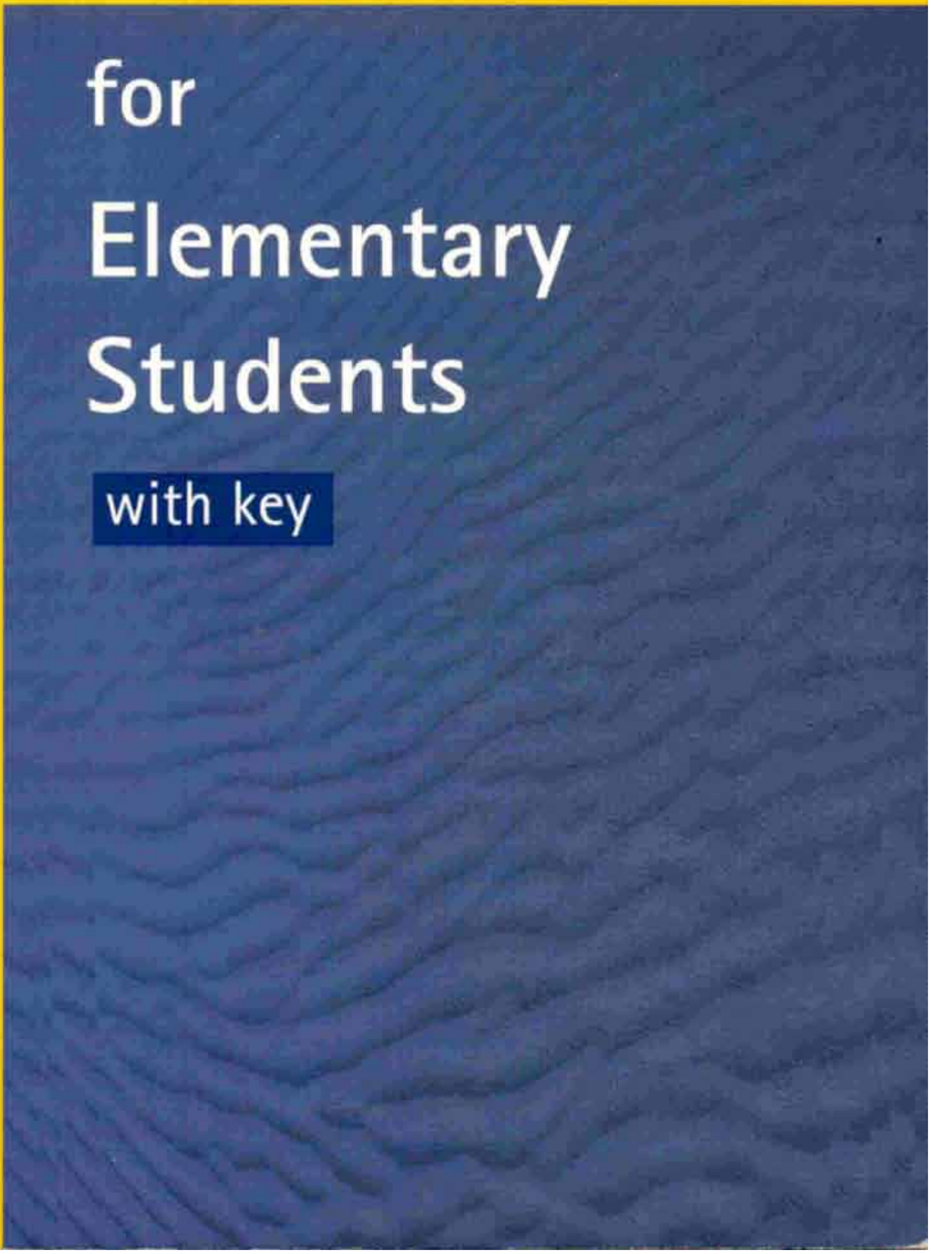

Longman

Elaine Walker
Steve Elsworth

New Edition

Grammar Practice

for Elementary Students

with key

Longman

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate
Harlow
Essex CM20 2JE
England
And Associated Companies throughout the World.

www.longman-elt.com

© Pearson Education Limited 2000

The right of Elaine Walker and Steve Elsworth to be identified as authors of this Work has been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

ISBN 0 582 41706 6

Set in Slimbach

Printed in Malaysia, PP

Illustrations by Chris Pavely

Project Managed by Lewis Lansford

Acknowledgements

Additional Material written by David Bowker.

Contents

To the Student

LANGUAGE	GRAMMAR	PAGE

STAGE I

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

cat, cats	singular and plural nouns	1
a, an	indefinite article	3
there is, there are	*there* + *to be*	4
I know her	subject and object pronouns	4
nice, big, beautiful	adjectives	6
my, your, her, his ..., 's	possessive adjectives and other possessives	7
this, that, these, those	demonstrative adjectives and pronouns	11
taller than...	comparative adjectives with *er*	13

VERBS

am, is, are	present simple tense of verb *to be*	16
has, have got	*has, have* + *got*	17
I walk to school	present simple tense	20
was, were	past simple tense of verb *to be*	28
I walked to school	past simple tense	30
go + to, for a, ...ing	constructions with *go*	37

PREPOSITIONS

at, on, in, to	prepositions of place, movement and time	39

GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES

I like swimming	*like* + gerund	42
I'd like to go the beach	*would like* + *to*-infinitive	44

SENTENCE STRUCTURE

He always gets up early	frequency adverbs with present simple	45
TEST 1		**56**

STAGE 2

NOUNS, ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

the, a, an	definite and indefinite articles	49
some, any	*some, any* with countable and uncountable nouns	52
quickly, slowly, badly	adverbs of manner	57
bigger than, more expensive than	comparative adjectives with *er* and *more*	59

LANGUAGE | GRAMMAR | PAGE

VERBS

LANGUAGE	GRAMMAR	PAGE
She is eating	present continuous tense	**63**
I'm seeing him tomorrow	present continuous as future	**71**
I'm going to see a film	*be going to* future	**73**
Stop talking! Don't walk on the grass!	the imperative	**77**
I can speak English They can't swim	modal verb *can, can't*	**79**

PREPOSITIONS

at, on, in, to, from, onto, off, into, out of	prepositions of position and movement	81

GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES

Do you like working here? I want to stay here	verb + gerund, verb + *to*-infinitive	86

SENTENCE STRUCTURE

'What's he like?'	questions and answers	**89**

TEST 2 **91**

STAGE 3

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

some, any, a few, a little, a lot of, much, many	articles and adjectives to describe quantity	94
mine, yours, hers, his ..., 's	possessive pronouns	**97**
the biggest, the most expensive, more ... than	the superlative and the comparative	100

VERBS

I've been to Australia	present perfect tense	105
She was working in the garden at 7 o'clock	past continuous tense	113
If it rains, I'll stay at home	first conditional	117
can, could, may, might, should, must	modal verbs	119

PREPOSITIONS

next to, between, in front of, above, below, over, behind, under, opposite, along, across, down, up, round, past	prepositions of position and movement	128
before, after	prepositions, conjunctions of time	131

LANGUAGE	GRAMMAR	PAGE
GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES		
Smoking is bad for you	the gerund	133
He refuses to help me	the infinitive	136
SENTENCE STRUCTURE		
I like them	word order	140
and, but, so, because	conjunctions	141
TEST 3		**143**
APPENDICES		**146**
Common irregular verbs, Basic spelling rules, Use of short forms (contractions), Common first names, Countries and nationalities		
KEY		**153**
INDEX		**170**

To the student

Grammar Practice for Elementary Students gives short, clear explanations of grammar and provides practice exercises for you to do. The book has three stages with a test at the end of each stage. Stage I is the easiest and Stage III is the most difficult.

There are two ways in which this book can be used:
i) in class, with help from your teacher;
ii) at home by yourself.

You can complete Stage I before starting Stage II or you can choose areas of grammar that you need to practise from different parts of the book. Use the Index and the Contents list to find the areas that you want to study. Then read the explanation, do the exercises and check your answers in the Key.

We hope that *Grammar Practice for Elementary Students* helps you to improve your English.

Elaine Walker
Steve Elsworth

Nouns and adjectives

1 *cat, cats:* singular and plural nouns

Plurals: *s* ending

one dog → two dog**s**
one apple → two apple**s**
one boy → two boy**s**

- To make a singular noun plural, add ***s***.

Practice

1a Complete the list, using these nouns and the pictures:

girl pencil telephone bird cup
camera banana newspaper chair spoon

1
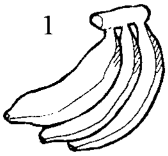

2
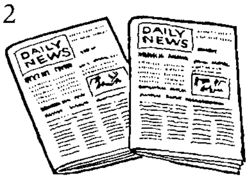

3
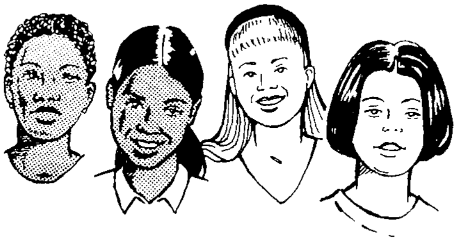

4
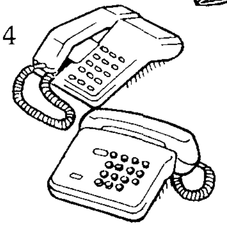

5
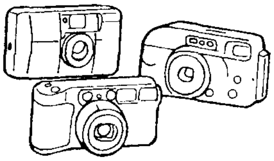

6
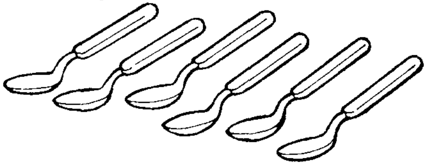

7
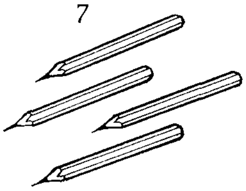

8
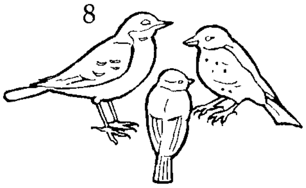

9
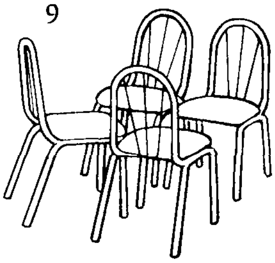

10
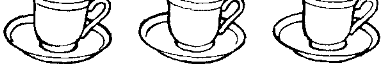

1 *three bananas*
2 *two newspapers*
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....

Plurals: other spellings

one baby → two bab**ies**

- Words ending in consonant + *y*: change *y* → ***i*** + ***es***

a mat**ch** → two match**es**
a bo**x** → two box**es**
a bru**sh** → two brush**es**
a gla**ss** → two glass**es**
a bu**s** → two bus**es**

- Words ending in ***ch***, ***x***, ***sh***, ***ss***, ***s***: add ***es***.
- We add ***es*** to a few words ending in ***o***:
  *a potat**o** → two potato**es**, a tomat**o** → two tomato**es***

Irregular plurals

a man → two men
a woman → two women
a child → two children
a person → two people
a foot → two feet
a tooth → two teeth

Practice

1b Write the plurals.

address	*addresses*
mountain	*mountains*
lorry	
waitress	
secretary	
sandwich	
child	
match	
flower	
vegetable	
family	
dictionary	

eye	
bag	
box	
school	
lunch	
city	
hotel	
watch	
animal	
fly	
bus	
man	

orange	
person	
church	
egg	
apple	
day	
boy	
glass	
dish	
beach	
dress	
foot	

2 *a, an:* indefinite article

It's **a** present.
It's **a** lovely day.

- We use ***a*** before consonants:
  *Are you **a** doctor?*

Consonants

b	f	j	m	q	t	x
c	g	k	n	r	v	y
d	h	l	p	s	w	z

Here's **an** orange.
He's **an** old man now.

- We use ***an*** before vowels:
  *I'm **an** English teacher.*

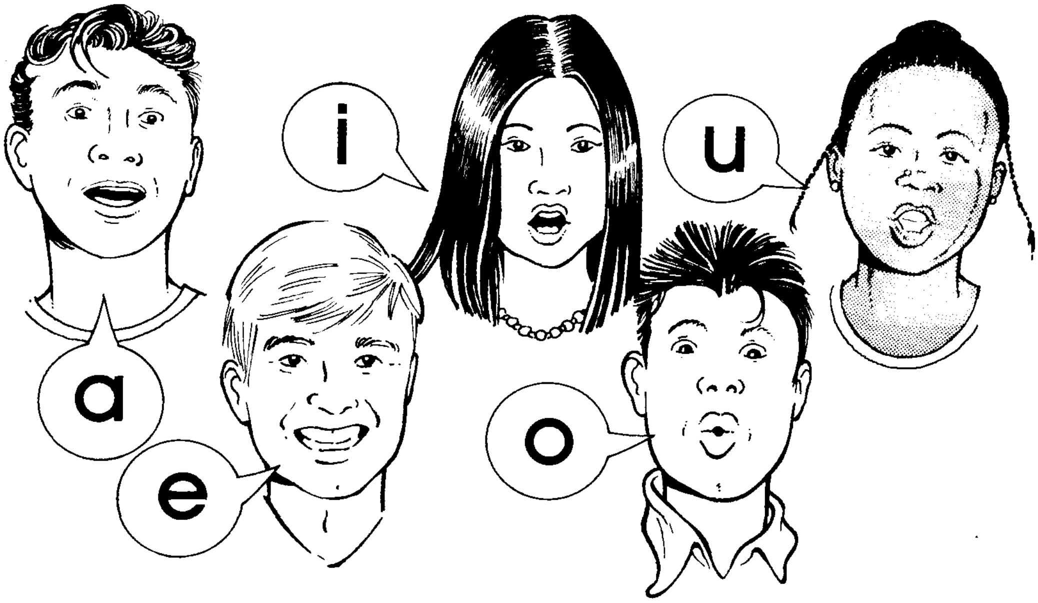

Vowels

a	e	i	o	u

Practice

2 Complete the sentences using ***a*** or ***an***.

1 It's ..a... new book.
2 She's ..an.. English teacher.
3 Are you .... student?
4 Britain is .... island.
5 They're at .... restaurant.
6 He's .... waiter.
7 It's .... ugly house.
8 Here's .... ticket for the play.
9 He's .... good worker.
10 It's not .... easy language.

3 *there is, there are*

There's a cat in the garden.
There are twenty students in the class.
Is there a hotel near here?
Are there a lot of tourists in your town?

- ***There is, there's*** + singular noun.
  There are + plural noun.
- Question forms:
  Is there ...?
  Are there ...?

Practice

3 Complete the sentences using ***there's***, ***there are***, ***is there*** or ***are there***.

1 ..*There's*.. a beach down here.
2 ..*There are*.. four girls and two boys in her family.
3 .... a train to Manchester?
4 .... a new disco near the college.
5 .... a good restaurant in this street?
6 .... two hospitals in town.
7 .... a lot of children in the pool?
8 .... three families in that house.
9 .... a television in the flat?
10 .... a big grey cloud over there.

4 *I know her:* subject and object pronouns

Subject	*Verb*	*Object*
I	see	them.
She	knows	me.
We	don't like	it.

- We also use object pronouns after prepositions:
  *Do you live with **them**?*
  *Jenny works with **him**.*

Subject pronouns

I	you	she	he	it	we	they

Object pronouns

me	you	her	him	it	us	them

Practice

4a Circle the correct pronouns.

1 Can you help *we*/[✓ *us*] with these bags?
2 [✓ *We*]/*Us* usually see *they*/[✓ *them*] at the weekend.
3 How did you teach *he/him* to read?
4 *I/Me* write to *she/her* once a month.
5 *He/Him* loved *she/her* very much but *she/her* didn't love *he/him*.
6 Why did you ask *they/them* to come? *I/Me* don't like *they/them*.
7 *I/Me* don't think *she/her* understands *I/me*.
8 Please don't wait for *we/us*.
9 Did *they/them* tell *she/her* the news?
10 Would you like to come with *I/me*?

4b Complete these sentences with ***me, you, her, him, it, us*** or ***them***.

1 I can't open this door. Could you open ..it.. for me, please?
2 Those shoes are really nice. I'd like to buy ..them...
3 'Did you see Jonathon last night?' 'No, I phoned .... but he wasn't there.'
4 I can't do this homework. Can you help ....?
5 I asked .... a question but you didn't answer ....
6 We're not ready. Please give .... some more time.
7 She speaks very quickly. I can't understand ....
8 I'm sorry about your birthday. I'm afraid I forgot about ....
9 Jill's a very nice woman. Do you know ....?
10 My parents are coming this weekend. Would you like to meet ....?
11 They're not married now. She left .... a year ago.
12 'Where's your passport?' 'I don't know. I can't find ....'
13 My mother writes to me every week but I don't write to .... very often.
14 Were you at the meeting last night? I didn't see .... there.
15 We want to help you. Please tell .... about your problems.

5 *nice, big, beautiful:* adjectives

It's a **beautiful** day.
My teacher is very **young**.
It's an **expensive** restaurant.
They're very **friendly** people.

- Adjectives usually come before nouns:
  *It's an **expensive** restaurant.*
  Adjectives can also come after the verb ***to be***:
  *My teacher is very **young**.*
- An adjective does not change. It is always the same for singular, plural, masculine and feminine nouns.
  *a **clever** girl* *clever girls*
  *a **clever** boy* *clever boys*

Practice

5 Write sentences with an adjective and a noun.

1 small / rooms

The rooms are small. They're small rooms.

2 not / long / story

It's not a long story. The story's not long.

3 happy / children

....

4 dirty / restaurant

....

5 heavy / books

....

6 cold / house

....

7 quiet / village

....

8 not / cheap / clothes

....

9 pretty / garden

....

10 difficult / language

....

6 *my, your, her, his ... :* possessive adjectives

That's **my** daughter.
Is this **your** book?
This is **her** office.
I've got **their** phone number.

Personal pronouns		*Possessive adjectives*
I	→	my
you	→	your
she	→	her
he	→	his
it	→	its
we	→	our
they	→	their

Notes

- ***my**, **your**, **her**, **his**, **its**, **our**, **their*** do not change. They are the same with singular and plural nouns:
  *Here's **my** book.* *I like **their** car.*
  *Here are **my** books.* *I like **their** cars.*
- The possessive ***its*** has no apostrophe ('):
  *The cat likes **its** food.*
  NOT ~~*The cat likes it's food*~~.

Practice

6 Complete the sentences with ***my**, **your**, **her**, **his**, **its**, **our*** or ***their***.

1 Alison is doing ..her.. homework.
2 Do you live with ..your.. parents?
3 We love .... new house.
4 He's in .... office.
5 The children are with .... grandmother.
6 I like .... new job.
7 Are you and your sister enjoying .... English classes?
8 Amsterdam is famous for .... canals.
9 She's with .... boyfriend.
10 They haven't got .... umbrellas.
11 She's in .... bedroom.
12 He's looking for .... shoes.
13 I like visiting .... friends at the weekend.
14 Are the teachers having .... meeting now?
15 Have you got .... passport?

7 *Sylvia's mother:* the possessive with *'s*

This is Derek**'s** bike.
Anne**'s** paintings are beautiful.
The doctor**'s** surgery is in that street.
That**'s** the cat's bowl.

- For people and sometimes animals, add ***'s*** for possession.

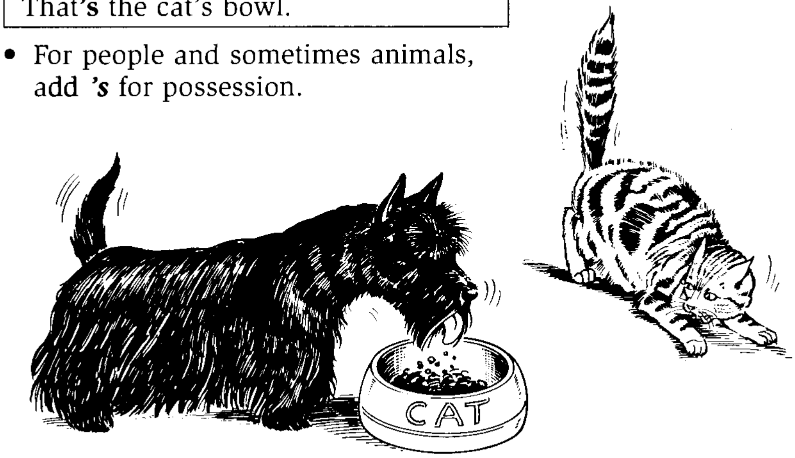

Notes

- After a singular name or noun, the possessive is always ***'s***:
  *This is Sue**'s** bag.*
  *These are Sue**'s** bags.*
- When the name is plural and ends in ***s***, add ***'***:
  *My parents**'** flat is quite small.*
  *The girls**'** bedroom is upstairs.*
- When the name is plural but does not end in ***s***, add ***'s***:
  *The children**'s** coats are here.*
  *The men**'s** toilets are closed.*
  *Emma and Paul**'s** car is outside.*
- We also use ***'s*** with time words:
  *A week**'s** holiday, today**'s** weather, yesterday**'s** newspaper*
- And we use ***s'*** with plural time words:
  *Two weeks**'** holiday*

Practice

7a Write the sentences again using the name in brackets.

1 These are her books. (Anne)

These are Anne's books.

2 Where is his coat? (Andrew)

Where is Andrew's coat?

3 Is that his car? (your brother)

....

4 It's on her desk. (the teacher)

....

5 Its dinner is here. (the dog)

....

6 Her children are at school now. (Judy)

....

7 It's her idea. (my wife)

....

8 Its leg is broken. (that bird)

....

9 His new bike is really good. (Jeff)

....

10 Here's her telephone number. (the doctor)

....

7b Write the sentences with the apostrophe (') in the correct place.

1 These are Susans keys.

These are Susan's keys.

2 I like your husbands haircut.

I like your husband's haircut.

3 Those are Robert and Sarahs children.

....

4 There is a teachers meeting on Mondays.

....

5 Are the childrens coats in the car?

....

6 The mens clothes are upstairs.

....

7 Alices mother is very ill.

....

8 We have a months holiday in the summer.

....

9 The students exams start next week.

....

10 This is my mothers dress.

....

8 Other possessives

> The bank is at the end **of** the road.
> There is a cafe at the top **of** the hill.

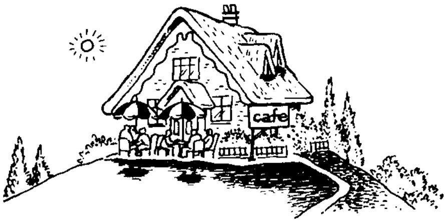

- Possession for things: noun + ***of*** + noun.
- After *the front, back, side, top, bottom, end, beginning,* we always use ***of*** + noun:
  *It's in the front **of** the car.*
  NOT ~~*It's in the car front.*~~

> Have you got the *car keys*?
> Can you close the *bathroom door*?

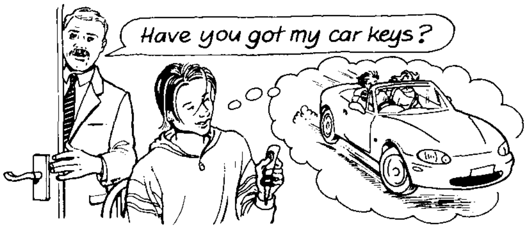
Have you got my car keys?

- With common nouns (e.g. *car, school, town, garden, kitchen, bedroom, sea, country, hotel*) ***of*** is not necessary. We usually say *the bathroom door* and NOT ~~*the door of the bathroom*~~.

Practice

8 Complete the sentences.

1 Have you got my ..car keys.. ? (keys/car)
2 There's a chair at the ..top of the garden... (garden/top)
3 Can you close the .... ? (window/bedroom)
4 The money is in my .... (room/hotel)
5 I met Sarah at the .... (gates/school)
6 They live at the .... (hill/bottom)
7 There's an old tree at the .... (house/side)
8 Where's the .... (light/bathroom)
9 We always meet at the .... (clock/town)
10 The .... (air/sea) is very good for you.

9 *this, that, these, those:* demonstrative adjectives and pronouns

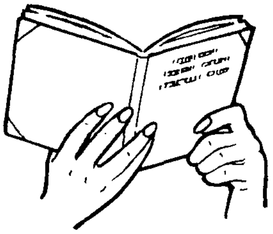

This book is really good.

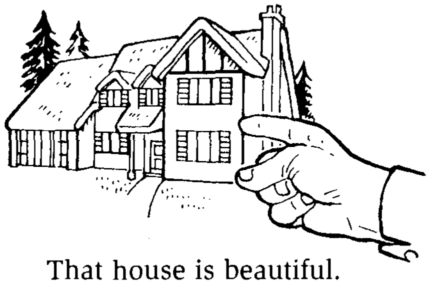

That house is beautiful.

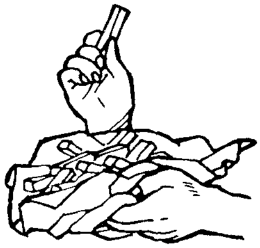

These chips are cold.

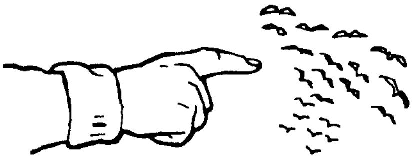

What are those birds?

- ***this, that, these, those*** + noun: demonstrative adjective.

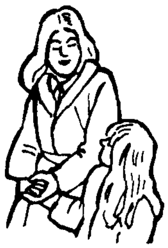

This is my mother.

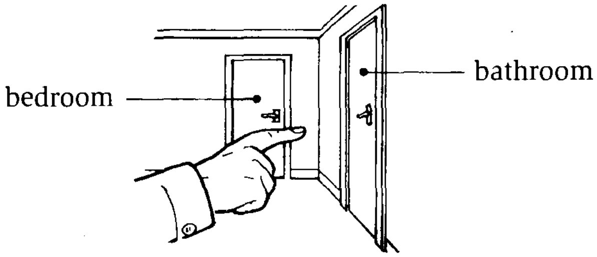

That's the bathroom.

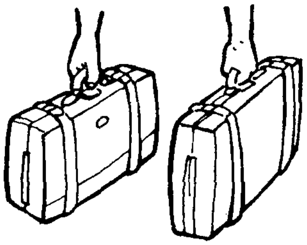

These are my cases.

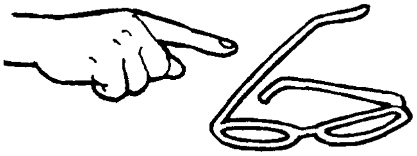

Those are my glasses.

- ***this, that, these, those*** + verb: demonstrative pronoun.

This is singular. It is used with something that is **here**, next to the speaker.

That is singular. It is used with something that is **there**, not next to the speaker. Perhaps the speaker is looking at it or pointing to it.

These is plural. It is used with things that are **here**, next to the speaker.

Those is plural. It is used with things that are **there**, not next to the speaker.

10 *taller than ... :* comparative adjectives with *er*

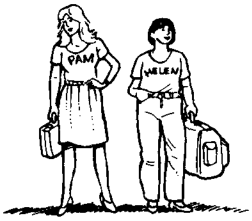

Pam is **taller than** Helen.
Pam's hair is **longer than** Helen's.
Helen's **heavier than** Pam.
Helen's **stronger than** Pam.

USE

- To compare two things.

FORM

- adjective + *er*:
  old → *old**er***
  tall → *tall**er***
  One-syllable adjectives, add ***er***.

  happy → *happ**ier***
  easy → *eas**ier***
  Two-syllable adjectives ending in ***y***, change ***y*** → ***i*** and add ***er***.

- Spelling:
  big → *big**ger***
  fat → *fat**ter***
  thin → *thin**ner***
  nice → *nice**r***
  When a one-syllable adjective ends with a vowel and one consonant, double the consonant before ***er***. For adjectives ending in ***e***, add ***r***.

- Irregular comparative adjectives:
  good → *better, bad* → *worse.*

Practice

10a Write the comparative adjective.

fast	*faster*	thin	
easy	*easier*	nice	
slow		heavy	
strong		old	
dirty		big	
small		angry	
bad		long	
happy		good	
cold		clean	
fat		short	

10b Complete these sentences using the comparative.

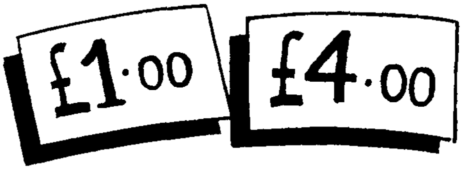

1 Vegetables *are cheaper than* meat.

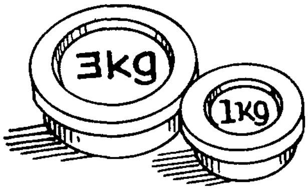

2 This bag of potatoes *is heavier than* this bag of tomatoes.

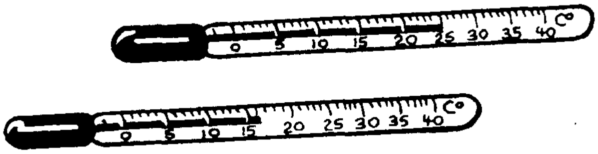
0 5 10 15 20 25 30 35 40 C°
0 5 10 15 20 25 30 35 40 C°

3 Spain .... England.

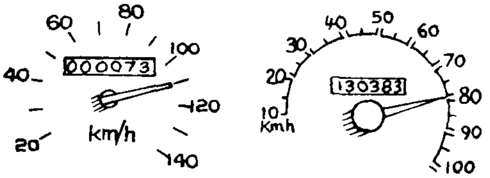
20 40 60 80 100 120 140
000073
km/h
10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100
130383
Kmh

4 This new car .... my old one.

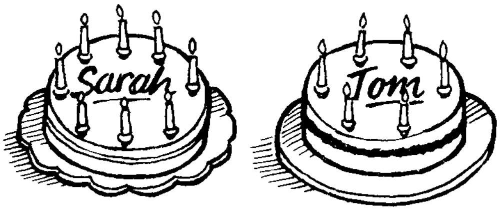

5 Sarah .... her brother.

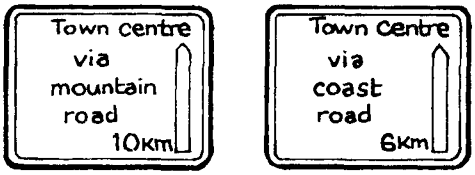
Town centre via mountain road 10Km
Town centre via coast road 6Km

6 The coast road to the town .... the mountain road.

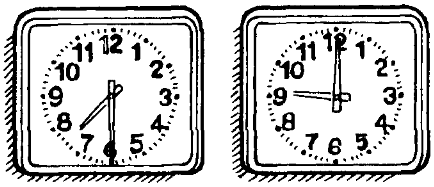

7 Her bedtime .... her older sister's.

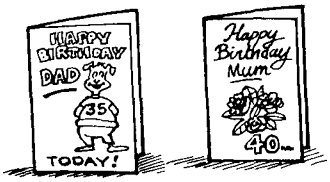

8 My father .... my mother.

10c Write sentences with comparative adjectives using words from each part of the table.

~~English~~	heavy	~~her twelve year old son~~
~~Karen~~	old	buses
My suitcase	long	the Mediterranean
My father	~~short~~	planes
Boats	~~easy~~	the Statue of Liberty
The Mississippi	fast	~~Japanese~~
The Atlantic	cold	cotton
Wool	warm	the Nile
Trains	tall	your suitcase
The Empire State building	slow	my mother

1 English *is easier than Japanese* .
2 Karen *is shorter than her twelve-year-old son* .
3 My suitcase ....
4 My father ....
5 Boats ....
6 The Mississippi ....
7 The Atlantic ....
8 Wool ....
9 Trains ....
10 The Empire State Building ....
....

Verbs

11 *am, is, are:* Present Simple tense of verb *to be*

FORM

Positive		*Negative*		
Long	*Short*	*Long*	*Short*	*Question*
I am	I'm	I am not	I'm not	Am I ... ?
You are	You're	You are not	You aren't	Are you ... ?
She is	She's	She is not	She isn't	Is she ... ?
He is	He's	He is not	He isn't	Is he ... ?
It is	It's	It is not	It isn't	Is it ... ?
We are	We're	We are not	We aren't	Are we ... ?
They are	They're	They are not	They aren't	Are they ... ?

Note: We can always use the positive short form after pronouns (*I'm, you're, she's, he's, it's, we're, they're*) but we cannot always use it after nouns.

➤ See Appendix 3 on short forms.

Practice

11a Write the short form.

1 It is a lovely day.
It's a lovely day.

2 We are not students.
We aren't students.

3 I am sorry.
....

4 She is not here today.
....

5 They are in the garden.
....

6 It is not very warm.
....

7 He is American.
....

8 I am not very well.
....

9 You are very cold.
....

10 We are late.
....

11b Complete the sentences with ***am***, ***is*** or ***are***.

1 She ..is.. in my class.
2 They ..are.. not in my office.
3 I .... from Spain.
4 He .... a good teacher.
5 How .... you?
6 .... she coming?
7 .... they at home?
8 The book .... here.
9 The class .... very big.
10 The books .... on my desk.
11 My sister and I .... leaving.
12 It .... not my pen.
13 .... English very difficult?
14 .... I right?

12 *has, have got*

FORM

Positive

I You We They	have got	(I've got) (You've got) (We've got) (They've got)
She He It	has got	(She's got) (He's got) (It's got)

Negative

I You We They	have not (haven't)	got
She He It	has not (hasn't)	got

Question

Have	I you we they	got ...?
Has	she he it	got ...?

Short answers

Yes, No,	I you we they	have. haven't.
Yes, No,	she he it	has. hasn't.

➤ See Appendix 3 on short forms.

USE

- Possession:

> She'**s got** three cats.
> **Have** you **got** a car?
> We'**ve got** three children.
> He **hasn't got** many friends.

- Illnesses:

> I'**ve got** a bad cold.
> **Has** he **got** a headache?

- Descriptions:

> He'**s got** brown hair, blue eyes and a long nose.

Note: We can also use ***have*** for possession:
*They **have** a big house.*
*Do you **have** a job?*
*I don't **have** enough money.*
But in British English ***have got*** is more common than ***have*** for possession.

Practice

12a Complete the sentences with ***has*** and ***have got***. Use the short forms ***'ve got*** and ***'s got***.

1 She ..*'s got*... a beautiful bedroom.
2 You ..*'ve got*.. a very nice bike.
3 He .... very long hair.
4 They .... two houses.
5 David .... a bad foot.
6 We .... a lot of problems.
7 Sarah .... a new car.
8 I .... a terrible headache.
9 The dog .... a broken leg.
10 Alison .... a very good job.
11 He .... a lot of friends.
12 Julie .... beautiful hair.

12b Look at the two pictures.

Picture A: Jill is in a restaurant. Picture B: Her sister Jenny is in a restaurant.

The pictures are nearly the same but there are ten differences.
Write sentences about the differences, using ***'s got*** and ***hasn't got***.

A

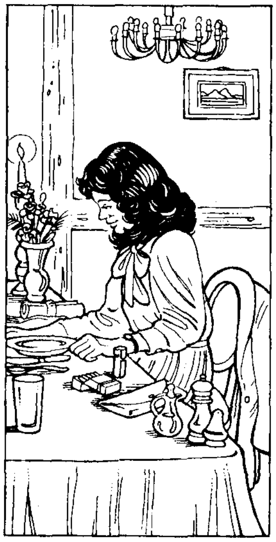

B

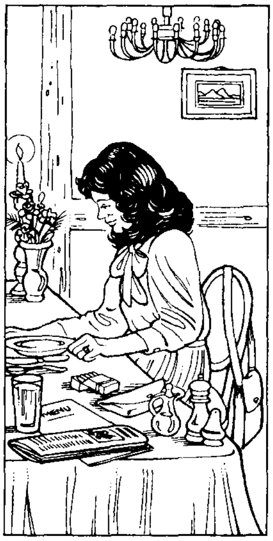

1 ..*Jill hasn't got*. a glass of water. ..*Jenny's got*.. a glass of water.
2 ..*Jill's got*... a fork. ..*Jenny hasn't got*... a fork.
3 .... a napkin. .... a napkin.
4 .... a menu. .... a menu.
5 .... a bag. .... a bag.
6 .... a coat. .... a coat.
7 .... a lighter. .... a lighter.
8 .... a watch. .... a watch.
9 .... a newspaper. .... a newspaper.
10 .... a ring. .... a ring.

12c Jack is going on holiday to France. His friend is checking that he has got everything. In your notebook, write questions about the following using ***'Have you got your ... ?'***

swimming costume umbrella travel clock camera
French phrase book passport address book ticket
French francs sunglasses

Then look at Jack's suitcase and answer the questions with ***Yes, I have.*** or ***No, I haven't.***

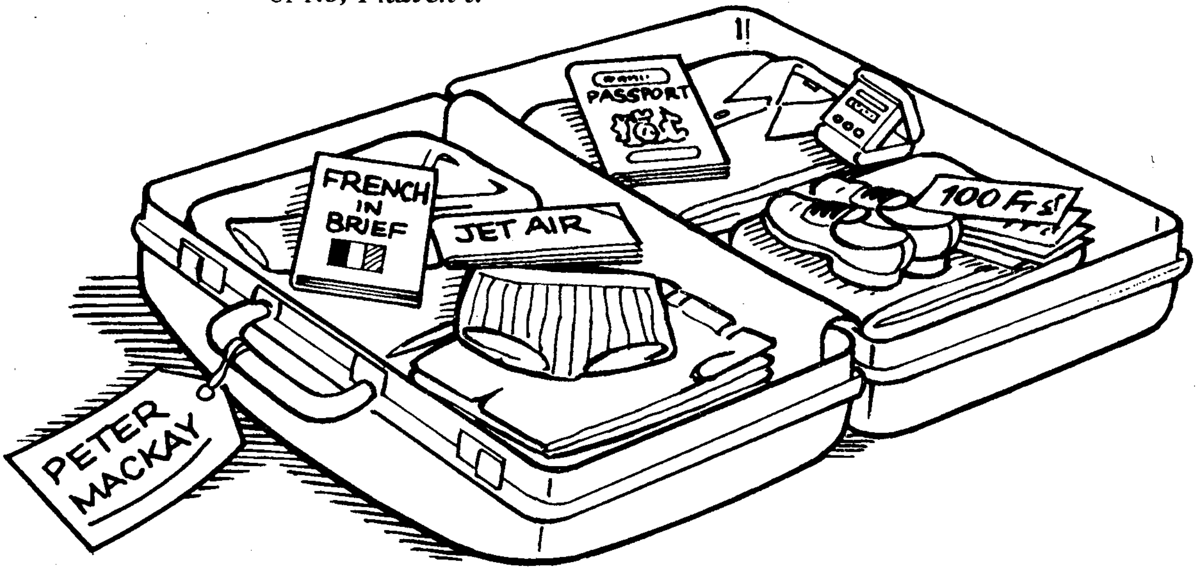

Example: 1 *'Have you got your swimming costume?' 'Yes, I have.'*
2 *'Have you got your umbrella?' 'No, I haven't.'*

12d Complete the questions and answers.

1 '..Has.. she ..got.. a sister?' 'No, she ..hasn't..'
2 '..Have.. you ..got.. a telephone?' Yes, I ..have..'
3 '........... we .... the tickets?' 'Yes, we ....'
4 '........... the town .... a theatre?' 'No, it ....'
5 '........... he .... a job?' 'No, he ....'
6 '........... your friends .... some good music?' 'Yes, they ....'
7 '........... I .... time for a cup of coffee?' 'Yes, you ....'
8 '........... your son .... a cold?' 'Yes, he ....'
9 '........... they .... a garden?' 'No, they ....'
10 '........... you .... a good hotel room?' 'Yes, we ....'

13 *I walk to school:* Present Simple tense: positive

FORM

I You We They	work.	She He It	work**s**.

- *She, he, it*: add ***s*** to the verb.

I You We They	teach.	She He It	teach**es**.

- Verbs ending in ***sh***, ***ch***, ***ss***, ***o*** or ***x***, e.g. *teach, wash, watch, go*: add ***es*** to the verb after *she, he, it*.

I You We They	carry.	She He It	carr**ies**.

- Verbs ending in consonant + *y*, e.g. *carry, study, cry*: change ***y*** → ***i*** and add ***es*** after *she, he, it*.

➤ See Appendix 2 on spelling rules.

USE

- To give a general description of a person or thing. Not for an activity happening now.
- With *think, know, understand, agree, want* (verbs that are not activities).
- With *sometimes, often, always, usually, never, occasionally* (adverbs of frequency). These adverbs usually go before the present simple verb:
  *She often **goes** there.*
  *He doesn't often **go** there.*
  *Do you sometimes **go** there?*
- With repeated times, e.g. *every Saturday, in the evening* (= every evening), *at 8 o'clock* (= at 8 o'clock every day), *in the summer* (= every summer).

Practice

13a Complete the sentences with the verb in the correct form.

1 Children ..ask.. a lot of questions. (ask)
2 I ..love.. classical music. (love)
3 You always .... my birthday. (forget)
4 She never .... to me. (listen)
5 They usually .... coffee after their evening meal. (drink)

6 I .... to work when the weather's cold. (drive)

7 My parents usually .... to our house on Sundays. (come)

8 They .... two languages at school. (learn)

9 The village shop .... at 8 o'clock in the morning. (open)

10 We .... her a diary every year. (give)

11 He often .... with his brother. (fight)

12 You never .... me with my homework. (help)

13 Big dogs .... a lot of exercise. (like)

14 He .... Arabic. (understand)

15 Lessons .... at 9 o'clock every morning. (start)

13b Complete the sentences with the verb in the correct form.

1 She .*goes*.. to college on her bike. (go)

2 A lot of birds ..*fly*.. south in the winter. (fly)

3 She .... very hard at the weekends. (study)

4 My father .... television most evenings. (watch)

5 I often .... at the cinema. (cry)

6 She .... a lot of homework in the evenings. (do)

7 A mother cat .... her kittens. (wash)

8 You .... language very well. (teach)

9 He .... the shopping for his grandmother. (carry)

10 He's very naughty – he .... other children. (push)

13c Write the sentences again, using ***she*** or ***he***.

1 I always listen to the radio in the mornings. (She)
She always listens to the radio in the mornings.

2 I take the dog for a walk every day. (He)
He takes the dog for a walk every day.

3 I usually buy all the food. (She)
....

4 I teach history and Latin. (She)
....

5 I walk to the office every day. (He)
....

6 I never wash the car. (She)

....

7 I open the building every morning. (He)

....

8 I occasionally write letters to my old school friends. (He)

....

....

9 I drink a lot of tea with my breakfast. (He)

....

10 I watch the football on television every Saturday. (She)

....

....

13d In your notebook, write sentences in the present simple about these people.

Name: (Ms) Sarah Jones
Nationality: British
Address: 3, Clapham Terrace,
London, S.W. 2.
Great Britain
Job: Bank cashier
Hobbies: I play tennis and work in the garden
Languages: French and a little Spanish

Name: (Ms) Deniz Ulgen
Nationality: Turkish
Address: Buyuk Caddesi 15,
Kizilay, Ankara,
Turkey
Job: Hotel receptionist
Hobbies: I play chess and go to concerts
Languages: English
German

Name: (Mr) Pierre Moulin
Nationality: French
Address: 15, rue du Nord,
94250 Gentilly,
Paris, France
Job: Shop manager
Hobbies: I paint and listen to music
Languages: Some English and a little Italian

Name: (Ms) Maria Protopapas
Nationality: Greek
Address: Agios Pedros 9,
Galatsi 11142
Athens, Greece
Job: School teacher
Hobbies: I go for long walks and play volleyball
Languages: Fluent English and some Arabic

Example: Sarah Jones *comes from Britain.*
She lives in London.
She works in a bank.
She often plays tennis and works in the garden.
She speaks French and a little Spanish.

Deniz Ulgen ...
Pierre Moulin ...
Maria Protopapas ...

14 Present Simple tense: questions

FORM

Do	I you we they	live ...?

Does	she he it	live ...?

- Question form: ***do, does*** + subject + infinitive.
- There is no ***s*** at the end of the verb in questions:
  *She live**s** ...* but *Does she live ...?*
  NOT *~~Does she lives~~ ...?*

Short answers

Yes,	I you we they	do.

No,	I you we they	do not. (don't)

Yes,	she he It	does.

No,	she he it	does not. (doesn't)

Practice

14a Add ***do*** or ***does*** to make questions and ***do, don't, does*** or ***doesn't*** to make short answers.

1 '..Does.. she live with her parents?' 'Yes, she ..does..'
2 '..Do.. you like your job?' 'No, I ..don't..'
3 '.................. I speak Italian well?' 'Yes, you .... '
4 '.................. you drive to work?' 'No, I .... '
5 '.................. they work hard at university?' 'Yes, they .... '
6 '.................. Alan smoke?' 'No, he .... '
7 '.................. your sister visit you very often?' 'Yes, she .... '
8 '.................. we usually give her a birthday present?'
'No, we .... '
9 '.................. you write to your parents very often?' 'No, I .... '
10 '.................. he help you very much?' 'Yes, he .... '

14b Make these sentences into questions.

1 The shop closes at 5 o'clock.

Does the shop close at 5 o'clock?

2 They go swimming every weekend.

Do they go swimming every weekend?

3 She speaks English well.

....

4 It rains a lot here in winter.

....

5 You drink a lot of tea.

....

6 I eat too much, doctor.

....

7 Tony often plays golf at the weekends.

....

8 His friends visit him most evenings.

....

14c Write the questions in the present simple.

1 Where / you / work?

Where do you work?

2 What / she / do?

What does she do?

3 Where / he / live?

....

4 What music / your husband / like?

....

5 When / she / do her homework?

....

6 Why / we / learn Latin?

....

7 Who / she / teach?

....

8 How / I / turn on the television?

....

15 Present Simple tense: negatives

FORM

I You We They	do not (don't)	like … .

She He It	does not (doesn't)	like … .

- Negative form: Subject + ***do not, does not*** + infinitive.

Note: There is no *s* at the end of the verb in the negative:
She likes … but *She doesn't like* …, NOT ~~*She doesn't likes*~~.

Practice

15 Change these sentences from the positive to the negative.

1 She works very hard.

She doesn't work very hard.

2 It usually snows here in the winter.

....

3 I like a big breakfast every morning.

....

4 The film starts very early.

....

5 He swims every morning.

....

6 They always open the windows at night.

....

7 We often see our neighbours in the garden.

....

8 Chris goes on holiday every year.

....

9 You drive very fast.

....

10 These young children learn very quickly.

....

16 Present Simple tense

Check

16a Complete the boxes. Use the verb ***work***.

Positive

I You ...... They	work.
She He It	....

Negative

...... You We They	....
She He	....

Question

Do	I you .... they	.................?
....	.... he	.................?

Short answers

Yes, No,	I you .... they	....
Yes, No,	.... he I	....

16b Complete the conversation, putting the verbs into the present simple.

A: Hello. Nice to see you. ^{1} Do you work (work) here?

B: Yes, I do. I'm the head waiter.

A: Oh good. And ^{2}....................... you .... (like) it?

B: Oh yes, I ^{3}....................... (love) it here. It's an excellent restaurant. The chef ^{4}....................... (cook) wonderful food and the waiters all ^{5}....................... (work) very hard. The only problem is that I ^{6}....................... (not/go out) in the evenings any more because I'm always busy here.

A: Ah, that's why we ^{7}....................... (not/see) you now at the club.

B: That's right. I only ^{8}....................... (have) one evening free and I usually ^{9}....................... (stay) at home then. ^{10}....................... Maria .... (go) to the club now?

A: Oh yes, she does. She ^{11}....................... (talk) about you sometimes. ^{12}....................... you (see) her?

B: No, I don't. I'm always busy and she 13........................ (not/know) about this new job. I 14........................ (telephone) her sometimes but she's always out.

A: Well, she 15........................ (go out) quite often. But I 16........................ (know) she 17........................ (want) to see you again.

B: Look at the door! It's Maria. She's coming in here.

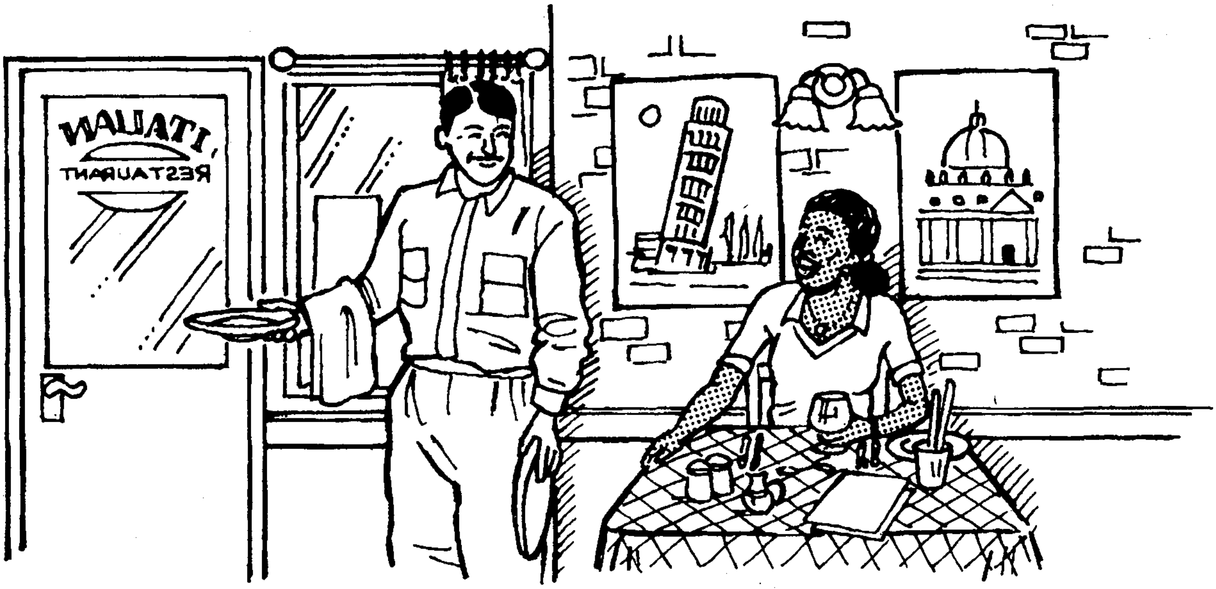

17 *was, were:* Past Simple tense of verb *to be*

FORM

	Negative		
Positive	*Long*	*Short*	*Question*
I was	I was not	I wasn't	Was I ... ?
You were	You were not	You weren't	Were you ... ?
She was	She was not	She wasn't	Was she ...?
He was	He was not	He wasn't	Was he ... ?
It was	It was not	It wasn't	Was it ... ?
We were	We were not	We weren't	Were we ... ?
They were	They were not	They weren't	Were they ... ?

Practice

17a Complete the sentences using ***was*** or ***were***.

1 He ..was.. very tired yesterday.
2 They ..were.. not very happy together.
3 You .... very angry with me last night.
4 Her doctor .... not very helpful.
5 They .... in France last summer.
6 Mr Jones .... not in the office yesterday.
7 I .... in bed all morning.
8 It .... not very warm in the swimming pool.
9 You .... not very friendly to my sister.
10 She .... a beautiful baby.
11 The children .... awake early this morning.
12 I .... not with them in the restaurant.
13 Ruth .... on holiday last week.
14 It .... a very nice letter.
15 We .... very pleased to see you.
16 Callum and his brother Josh .... here last night.

17b Complete the story, adding ***was*** and ***were***.

It ^{1}..was.. a beautiful day. The sun ^{2}..was.. hot and the sky ^{3}.............. blue. James and Wendy ^{4}.............. on the beach. They ^{5}.............. with their three children. The children ^{6}.............. in the sea. The sea ^{7}.............. a bit cold but the children ^{8}.............. very happy. There ^{9}.............. lots of other children in the sea too: some of them ^{10}.............. in the water with their parents. Wendy and James ^{11}.............. on the sand and James ^{12}.............. asleep with a book on his face. But suddenly there ^{13}.............. grey clouds all over the sky and the sun ^{14}.............. not hot any more. The beautiful weather ^{15}.............. finished and there ^{16}.............. wet picnics and wet people everywhere. A British summer holiday!

17c In your notebook, write questions and answers about the story above, using ***was*** or ***were***.

1 The weather nice?
'Was the weather nice?' 'Yes, it was a beautiful day.'
2 Where/James and Wendy?
'Where were James and Wendy?' 'They were on the beach.'
3 Where/their children?
4 Other children in the sea?
5 James and Wendy in the sea?
6 James awake?
7 What/on James' face?
8 Sunny all day?
9 The holidaymakers wet in the end?
10 Where/this beach?

17d In your notebook, write ten questions about a friend's trip to London, using the table below. Then choose a short answer for each question.

	~~the underground trains~~	~~warm~~?	
	~~the weather~~	comfortable?	
	the streets	beautiful?	Yes, it was.
	the people	friendly?	No, it wasn't.
Was	the parks	busy?	
Were	the airport	clean?	Yes, they were.
	the museums	expensive?	No, they weren't.
	the shops	good?	
	the hotel	~~fast~~?	
	the food	interesting?	

Examples: *'Were the underground trains fast?' 'Yes, they were.'*
'Was the weather warm?' 'No, it wasn't.'

18 *I walked to school:* Past Simple tense: positive

FORM

I, You He, She, It We, They	walk**ed**

- Add ***ed*** to regular verbs. The verb is the same for all persons: *I, you, she, he, it, we* and *they.*

Notes

- Spelling:

			Verbs ending in:
like	→	like**d**	***e***, add ***d***.
study	→	stud**ied**	consonant + *y*, change *y* → *i* + ***ed***
stop	→	sto**pped**	vowel + consonant, double the consonant and add ***ed***.

- *y* and *w* at the end of a word are not consonant sounds. So verbs ending in *y* or *w* do not double the consonant:

play → play**ed**

➤ See Appendix 2 on spelling rules.

USE

- We use the past simple to talk about the past.

Practice

18a Write the past simple of these verbs.

stay	*stayed*	listen		study	
rain	*rained*	love		cry	
help		wash		work	
carry		stop		start	
want		ask		live	
play		look		watch	
walk		open		like	

18b Complete these sentences in the past simple.

1 I ..*stayed*.. at home all weekend. (stay)

2 She ..*cried*.. all night. (cry)

3 It .... every day last week. (rain)

4 We .... to her very carefully. (listen)

5 He .... her very much. (love)

6 The shop .... at 5 o'clock. (close)

7 My friends .... to stay all weekend. (want)

19 Past Simple tense: positive: irregular verbs

We **saw** a good film last night.
I **bought** all my Christmas presents at the weekend.
They **had** a good time at the party.

FORM

I, You, She, He, It, We, They saw ... .

- The verb is the same for all persons: *I, you, she, he, it, we* and *they*.
- There are a lot of irregular verbs.

Practice

19 Complete the tables below.

➤ See the list of irregular verbs in Appendix 1.

Infinitive	*Past simple*
bring	*brought*
buy	bought
come	
do	
	drank
	drove
find	
	flew
forget	
get (up)	

Infinitive	*Past simple*
give	
	went
have	
know	
	left
	lost
make	
meet	
	put
	read

Infinitive	*Past simple*
run	
	saw
	shut
swim	
take	
	taught
tell	
	thought
understand	
write	

20 Past simple tense: positive

Check

20a Write these sentences in the past simple.

1 I see my parents every weekend. (last weekend)

I saw my parents last weekend.

2 Matthew always asks a lot of questions. (this morning)

....

3 They go to the mountains in the winter. (last winter)

....

4 Julie meets Tom from school every afternoon. (this afternoon)

....

5 Jenny watches a lot of television at the weekends. (on holiday)

Jen..

6 He eats a lot in the evenings. (last night)

....

7 The programme starts at 7.30 every Friday. (this morning)

....

8 I love cycling at the weekends. (when I was a child)

....

9 We always have a nice time with them. (on holiday)

....

10 The garden looks lovely in the spring. (last spring)

....

20b Complete the sentences about Kelly's morning using a verb in the past simple. Use the verbs in the box.

W.C

read get dressed leave ~~have a shower~~ turn on
brush ~~get up~~ make a cup of tea eat wash

1
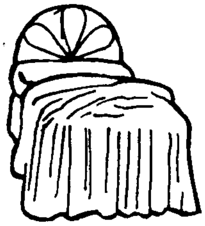

2
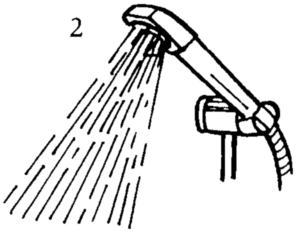

1 Kelly ..got up...
2 She ..had a shower...
3 She ....
4 She ....
5 She ....
6 She ....
7 She ....
8 She ....
9 She ....
10 She ....

3
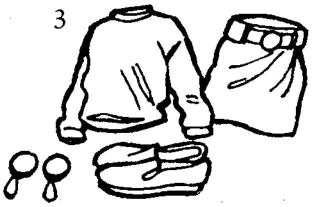

4
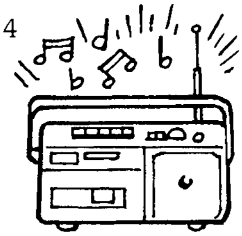

5
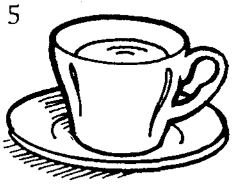

6
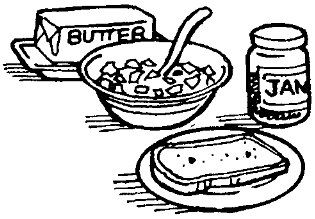

7
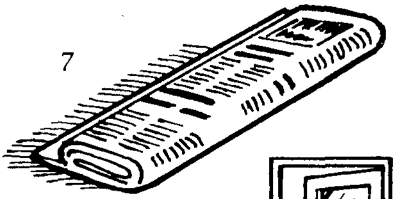

8
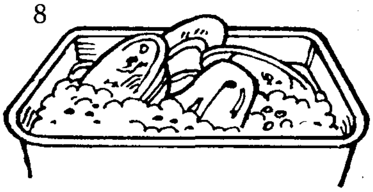

9
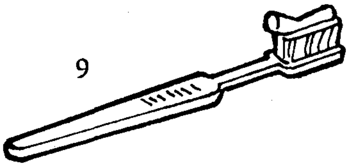

10
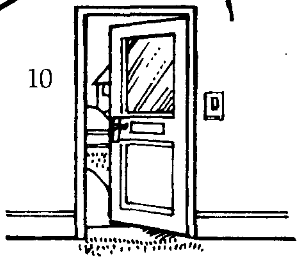

21 Past Simple tense: questions and negatives

FORM

Question

Did	*Subject*	*Infinitive*
Did	I you she he it we they	walk? go? come?

- ***Did*** + subject + infinitive for all persons and all verbs, regular and irregular.
  Did *you go … ?* ***Did*** *you walk … ?*
  NOT ~~***Did*** *you went …?* ***Did*** *you walked … ?*~~

Negative

Subject	**did not**	*Infinitive*
I You She He It We They	**did not** **(didn't)**	walk. go. come.

- Subject + ***did not*** + infinitive for all persons and all verbs, regular and irregular.
  He ***did not*** *go … .*
  NOT ~~*He* ***did not*** *went … .*~~

Practice

21 In your notebook, put these sentences into the past simple. Write them in the positive form, the question form and the negative form.

1 She gets up early in the morning.

She got up early in the morning.

Did she get up early in the morning?

She didn't get up early in the morning.

2 He teaches history at the university.

He taught history at the university.

Did he teach history at the university?

He didn't teach history at the university.

3 They leave home at 8 o'clock.
4 He stays in very good hotels.
5 You smoke a lot.
6 I look very tired.
7 We stop at Oxford.
8 The restaurant closes at 11 o'clock.
9 Pam buys a lot of clothes.
10 The birds fly away to other countries.

22 Past Simple tense: times in the past

Last night / week / month / year
Three minutes / hours / days / nights / weeks / months / years ago

Practice

22 Answer the questions using ***last*** or ***ago*** and the words in brackets.

1 When did you speak to Peter? (week)
Last week.

2 When did they buy that car? (two years)
....

3 When did we clean the windows? (six months)
....

4 When did the film start? (five minutes)
....

5 When did you see your cousin? (three years)
....

6 When did she stop smoking? (month)
....

7 When did it stop raining? (two hours)
....

8 When did they go to Australia? (year)
....

9 When did Max phone? (night)
....

10 When did you find your wallet? (half an hour)
....

23 Past Simple tense

Check

23 Complete the conversation with the verbs in the past simple.

A: Where [1] did you go (you/go) for your last summer holiday?

B: We [2] went (go) to Egypt.

A: Oh really? How interesting! [3].......................... (you/enjoy) it?

B: Oh yes, we [4].......................... . Paul [5].......................... (love) the River Nile and I [6].......................... (think) the pyramids and all the historical sights [7].......................... (be) fascinating.

A: How long [8].......................... (you/stay)?

B: For four weeks. We [9].......................... (be) there for the whole of October.

A: How nice. So you [10].......................... (have) lots of time to travel round.

B: Yes, we [11].......................... – well, quite a lot. But we only [12].......................... (see) a few places so I'd like to go again.

A: [13].......................... (you/learn) any Egyptian Arabic?

B: I [14].......................... but Paul [15]..........................n't. I [16].......................... (study) the language for a few weeks before we [17].......................... (go). I [18].......................... (find) a good Arabic language cassette in the local library and that [19].......................... (be) very helpful.

A: [20].......................... (you/talk) to the local people?

B: Not really, but I [21].......................... (know) how to order food and drink in the cafés and restaurants.

A: Well, that's good.

B: Yes it is, but I [22].......................... (want) to talk to people too so I'm still studying Arabic and I hope to go again next year.

A: Well, best of luck!

24 *go + to, for a, ...ing*

I don't **go to** work on Saturdays.
We **went to** the cinema last night.
Would you like to **go for a** walk?
I often **go for a** swim before work.
They **go sailing** at the weekends.
We **went skiing** last winter.

- ***go to*** ...: *go to England, town, the cinema.*
- ***go for a*** ...: *go for a walk, a meal, a run, a swim, a drink, a game of tennis.*
- ***go ...ing***: *go climbing, skiing, swimming, fishing, sailing, walking, riding, birdwatching.*

go + *...ing* with sports. And *go shopping*.
But we do not use *go* + *playing*. NOT ~~*We went playing tennis*~~.

Practice

24 Complete the sentences.

1

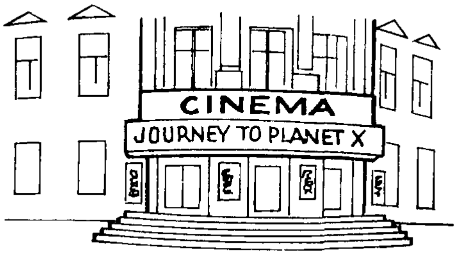

I went ..*to*.. the ..*cinema*.. last night.

2

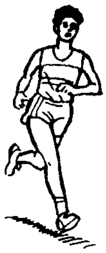

I usually go ..*for*.. a ..*run*.. in the morning.

3

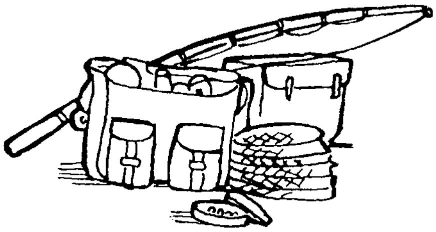

My father often goes .... at the weekends.

4

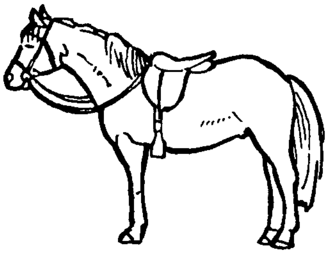

We went .... this morning.

5

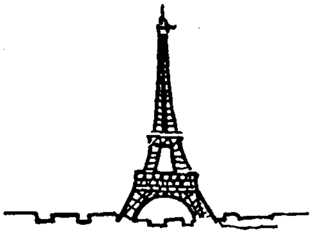

Emma went .... last week.

6

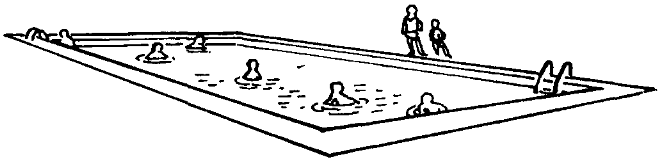

I'd like to go .... a .... this afternoon.

7

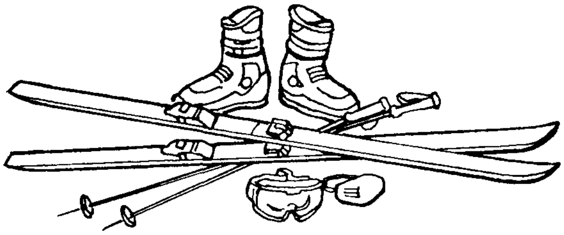

Do you go .... in the winter?

8

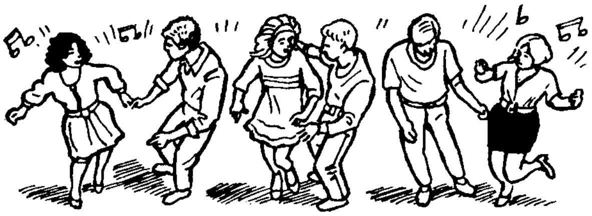

We go .... the .... on Saturday nights.

Prepositions

25 *at, on, in* as prepositions of place

I saw her **at** the bus stop.
Can I meet you **at** the cinema?

- ***at*** a place:
  ● x ***at*** *the bus stop/cinema*

Your books are **on** the table.
The painting looks nice **on** this wall.

- ***on*** a line or surface:

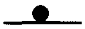

on *the table*

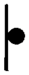

on *the wall*

Philip's **in** the kitchen.
Your bag's **in** the car.

- ***in*** a place = inside. The place is not a line or surface: it has walls or sides:

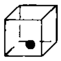

in *the kitchen/car*

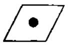

in *the garden/park/town*

And we use ***in*** with names of towns and countries: ***in*** *Britain*, ***in*** *Paris.*

Note: We say: ***in*** *a car*, ***on*** *a bus*, ***on*** *a train.*

Practice

25 Complete these sentences with ***at***, ***on*** or ***in***.

1 Do you live ..in.. Manchester?
2 He was .at.. the bus stop for half an hour.
3 Are the plates .... the cupboard?
4 Look at the example .... the board.
5 I met my girlfriend .... a party.
6 Kathy's not here – she's .... work at the moment.
7 Are my books .... that shelf?
8 My toothbrush isn't .... the bathroom. Where is it?
9 She usually sits .... the floor.
10 Is your daughter happy .... school?
11 We had breakfast .... the garden.
12 There are too many cars .... the road.

27 *at, on, in* as prepositions of time

> They finish school **at** 4 o'clock.
> The children usually have a story **at** bedtime.

- ***at*** a point in time:
  at *one o'clock, half-past five, midnight;*
  at *lunchtime, dinner-time;*
  at *the end of the lesson.*

> I saw her **on** Monday.
> My birthday's **on** 4th September.

- ***on*** a day or date:
  on *Tuesday, Thursday;*
  on *1st April, 4th June;*
  on *the first day of spring.*

> I usually work **in** the mornings.
> The weather's very nice here **in** the summer.

- ***in*** a period of time:
  in *the morning, afternoon, evening;*
  in *April, May, June;*
  in *the summer, winter;*
  in *1992.*

Notes

- ***on*** *Wednesday,* ***in*** *the afternoon,* ***on*** *Wednesday afternoon.*
- ***in*** *the morning, afternoon, evening, but* ***at*** *night.*
- ***on*** *Christmas Eve, Independence Day, Easter Sunday, but* ***at*** *Christmas,* ***at*** *New Year.*

Practice

27 Complete the sentences with ***at***, ***on*** or ***in***.

1 College starts .at.. 9 o'clock in the morning.
2 I usually go swimming .on.. Tuesdays.
3 I got up .... 7 o'clock this morning.
4 Jim came round .... Saturday afternoon.
5 The children get too many presents .... Christmas.
6 We usually take our holiday .... September.
7 They don't go out very often .... the evenings.
8 She was born in Australia .... 1952.
9 I always go and see her .... her birthday.
10 She phoned up .... the beginning of the match on TV.
11 They usually come and stay with us .... the summer holidays.
12 We moved here .... 20th October.

Gerunds and infinitives

28 *I like swimming: like, don't like* + gerund

Do you like **learning** English?
He likes **working** at home.
I don't like **driving**.

USE

- The gerund is like a noun.
  We use it after the verb ***like***.
- ***Love*** and ***hate*** also take the gerund.
  I ***love going*** to the cinema.
  *She **hates getting up** in the morning.*

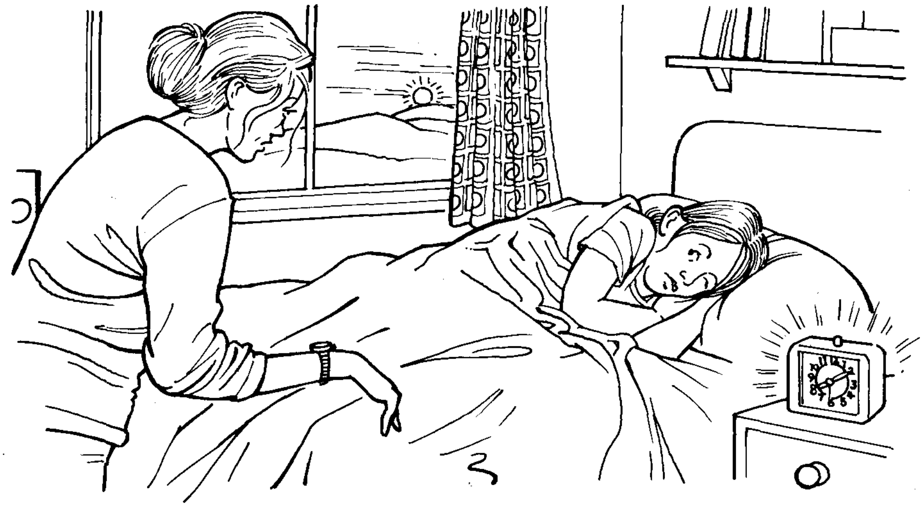

FORM

- infinitive + ***ing***:
  go → *going* *drink* → *drinking*

Notes

- No articles:
  There is no article (*the, a, an*) before a gerund:
  *I like **swimming**.*
  NOT ~~*I like the swimming.*~~
- *be* → ***being*** Do not take off the ***e***.
- Spelling:

			Verbs ending in:
come	→	*coming*	consonant + ***e***, take off the ***e***.
swim	→	*swimming*	vowel + consonant: one-syllable verbs, double the consonant.
lie	→	*lying*	***ie***, ***ie*** changes to ***y***.

Practice

28a Write the gerund of these verbs.

be	*being*
clean	*cleaning*
come	
do	
fly	
get (up)	
give	
listen	
live	

play	
smoke	
stay	
study	
swim	
teach	
watch	
work	
write	

28b Complete the following sentences using a gerund from the exercise above. Use each gerund only once.

1 My father loves ..*listening*.. to music.
2 Rosie likes .*coming*.. to our house.
3 Peter doesn't like .... the car so I usually do it.
4 Do you like .... in the sea?
5 She loves .... presents.
6 I hate .... letters.
7 Jess loves .... a mother.
8 I hate .... – the smell of cigarettes is terrible.
9 I don't like .... so I travel everywhere by train or boat.
10 My friends and I love .... ball games on the beach.
11 Joe likes .... television after a long day at college.
12 Everyone in my family hates .... on Monday mornings.
13 Does Caroline like .... young children?
14 I don't like the lessons at college but I like .... in the library.
15 Greg always hates .... his homework.
16 Trisha doesn't really like .... in an office.
17 Anne and I love .... in the countryside.
18 Felix really likes .... in good hotels.

29 *I'd like to go to the beach: would like* + *to*-infinitive

I'd like to go to the beach.
Would you **like to meet** my boss?

- ***Would like*** is a polite way of saying ***want***.
- After ***would like*** we use the ***to***-infinitive (not the gerund)

Practice

29a Complete the sentences, using a verb from the box.

ask	be	~~buy~~	come	~~have~~
pay	play	see	sit	stay

1 Would you like to ..have.. lunch with us tomorrow?
2 I'd like to ..buy.. a new pair of jeans.
3 Would you like to .... by the window?
4 I'd better leave now. I wouldn't like to .... late for the meeting.
5 Do you think Rosa would like to .... tennis with us?
6 My parents would like to .... at a new hotel.
7 We'd like to .... him a few questions.
8 Excuse me. I'd like to .... the bill now, please.
9 We're having a party on Saturday. Would you like to .... ?
10 I'd like to .... that new film tonight.

29b Complete the sentences, putting the verbs into the correct form (gerund after ***like***, see exercise 28, or ***to***-infinitive after ***would like***).

1 Do you like ..cooking..? (cook)
2 Would you like ..to go.. for a walk? (go)
3 I'd like .... you again. (see)
4 My brother likes .... to the theatre. (go)
5 Does Amber like .... with her parents? (live)
6 She'd like .... the world. (travel)
7 We'd like .... to the manager, please. (speak)
8 Do you think Francis would like .... my bike? (buy)
9 The cat likes .... mice into the house. (bring)
10 Do you like .... computer games? (play)

Sentence structure

30 *He always gets up early:* frequency adverbs with the Present Simple tense

He **always** gets up early.
I don't **often** go to the cinema.

- The adverb goes between the subject and the verb.
- In negative sentences the adverb goes between ***don't/doesn't*** and the verb.

Practice

30 Rewrite these sentences in the correct order.

1 to the mountains / never / we / go

We never go to the mountains.

2 often / she / write to me / doesn't

....

3 play football on Saturday afternoons / the boys / always

....

....

4 usually / arrives late / the bus

....

5 go to bed before 11 / often / I

....

6 never / drinks coffee in the evening / she

....

7 it / rain in the summer / often / doesn't

....

8 read books slowly / I / always

....

9 usually / my father / goes to work by bus

....

10 always / go to the beach at the weekend / we

....

TEST 1

Part A

Fill each gap with a suitable word to complete Andrew's letter to his pen-friend.

> Dear José,
>
> Thank you for your letter. It was ^{1}…………………… interesting. And thank you for the photographs. Your village looks beautiful. Now I would like to tell you a little about myself and ^{2}…………………… family. I live ^{3}…………………… a town about 40 miles (that's about 64 kilometres) from London. I've ^{4}…………………… one brother and one sister and we all ^{5}…………………… to the local school. My mother's a tourist officer and she ^{6}…………………… to London ^{7}…………………… the train every day. My father's a computer programmer and he often works ^{8}…………………… home.
>
> At the weekends I often play football with the school team. I sometimes go ^{9}…………………… at the local pool. ^{10}…………………… is a very good gym at the pool, too.
>
> I look forward to your next letter.
>
> Best wishes,
>
> Andrew

SCORING

10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score ☐

Part B

Circle the correct words to complete the sentences.

1 *Do/Does* you usually go home for lunch?

2 I start work *on/at* 9 o'clock.

3 *That/Those* dogs are very noisy.

4 What *you did/did you do* yesterday?

5 *Have you got/Do you have got* your passport?

6 Do you enjoy *to read/reading*?

7 Is your sister *older than/old than* you?

8 *There is/There are* some new books in the library.

9 Where *was/were* you last night?

10 Did you stay *at/in* home at the weekend?

SCORING

10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score ☐

Part C

Write the conversation in your notebook. Put the verbs into the correct tense and form and add all the other words you need (e.g. *a, an, at, in, and, did*).

A: You / have / nice time / London / the weekend?

B: Yes, / I. / I / stay with / old friend from school / we / have / wonderful time together. / Saturday / we / go / art gallery / the morning, / concert / the afternoon / Italian restaurant / the evening. / It / be / great weekend. / What about you? / You / have / nice weekend?

A: It / not be / very interesting. / I / stay / home / all weekend.

B: Why / you / not go out?

A: I / not feel / very well.

B: Oh. I / be / sorry about that.

A: That / be / all right. / I / be / better now.

SCORING

20 points: *Take off a point for each mistake.* Score ☐

Part D

Write the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1 brother / has / a / your / job / got?

....

2 buildings / are / this / there / beautiful / town / some / in.

....

....

3 history / mother / the / their / college / at / teaches.

....

4 music / like / the / I / evenings / listening / in / to.

....

5 her / taller / all / is / Angela / sisters / than.

....

6 lights / are / the / in / those / sky / what?

....

7 you / time / do / work / finish / what?

....

8 at / yesterday / were / not / school / they.

....

9 phone / she / me / the / not / at / weekend / did.

....

10 in / sometimes / winter / go / the / I / skiing.

....

SCORING

10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score ☐

TOTAL SCORE

Maximum 50 points: *Add up your score.* Total Score ☐

Nouns, adjectives and adverbs

31 *the* and *a, an:* definite and indefinite articles

> She's got **a** girl and **a** boy. **The** girl's ten and **the** boy's eight.
>
> He gave me **a** book and **a** cassette. I liked **the** book but I didn't like **the** cassette very much.

- ***a*** + singular noun – the first time we say the noun.
- ***a*** = one. ***a*** is not particular.

- ***the*** + singular/plural noun – the second time we say the noun.
  the is particular.

Practice

31 Complete the sentences using ***a***, ***an*** or ***the***.

1 I've got ..a... lighter and ..a... box of matches but ..the... lighter doesn't work very well.

2 There's ..a... doctor and ..a... nurse in ..the... village but ..the... doctor's getting rather old now.

3 I bought .... sandwich and .... piece of cake. .... sandwich was all right but .... cake was horrible.

4 .... woman and two men were here a few moments ago. I think .... woman wanted to see you.

5 They've got .... dog and .... cat, ... rabbit and some goldfish but the children like .... dog best.

6 He sent me two letters and .... postcard while he was on holiday. .... postcard didn't say much but .... letters were very interesting.

7 You can have .... apple or .... orange. .... apples are nice and sweet.

8 There's .... plum tree and .... peach tree in our garden. .... peach tree doesn't produce many peaches but .... plum tree produces lots of plums every year.

9 There's .... theatre and two cinemas in town but one of .... cinemas is closing down.

10 There's .... train at 2.00 and one at 3.30. .... 2.00 train takes two hours and .... 3.30 train takes .... hour and .... half.

32 The articles *a* and *the*

That's **a** nice car. Did you clean **the** car?	(the car = our car, or this car)
We've got **a** dog. Where's **the** dog?	(the dog = our dog, or the dog that lives here)
You've got **a** big garden. The dog's in **the** garden.	(the garden = our garden, or the garden at this house)
Is there **a** station in this town? **The** station is in the town centre.	(the station = the station in this town)
This is an interesting book. **The** author has some very unusual ideas.	(the author = the author of this book)
The café next to the station is open all night.	(We know which café. It is the café next to the station.)

- ***a*, *an*** + singular noun:
  *That's **a** nice car.*
  There are other nice cars and we are talking about one of them.
- ***the*** + singular or plural noun:
  the = one in particular. We are talking about a known object, person or animal. The speaker and listener know which one it is. It is not one of many. It is one in particular:
  *Did you clean **the** car?*
  We are talking about *our* car. There is only one of these.

Practice

32 Complete the sentences using ***a***, ***an*** or ***the***.

1 This is ..a.. beautiful painting. Does ..the.. artist live near here?

2 I bought ..a.. new toothbrush this morning and I can't find it. I'm sure I put it in ..the.. bathroom.

3 Can you get .... fresh cream cake when you're out? .... shop on .... corner usually sells them.

4 It's .... very nice school and .... teachers are all really hard-working.

5 'Look! There's .... cat in .... garden.'
'Yes, it's .... cat from next door.'

6 'There's .... man at .... door. He wants to see you.'

7 We stayed in .... very nice hotel. .... room was comfortable and .... food was excellent.

8 I bought Elliot .... new jacket last week but yesterday two of .... buttons came off. I'm taking it back to .... shop.

9 I had .... bath this morning but .... water was a bit cold.

10 Hannah was at .... airport, waiting for .... friend to arrive.

33 *the:* definite article

The moon looks beautiful tonight.
The sky is very grey.

- We use ***the*** when there is only one: *the moon, the sun, the sky, the sea, the weather, the earth, the world, the President of France, the capital of Great Britain.*
- We don't use ***a*** or ***the*** before most names of places: *France, London, Africa.*

Practice

33 Write the sentences, adding ***the*** where necessary.

1 Moon moves slowly round earth.

The moon moves slowly round the earth.

2 Sun is very hot today.

The sun is very hot today.

3 Did you see Pope when you went to Rome?

....

4 Sky went very grey and it started to rain.

....

5 I hope I can go round world one day.

....

6 Prince of Wales is visiting our town next week.

....

7 What is capital of Sweden?

....

8 It was very cold in sea today.

....

9 How many countries are in European Community?

....

....

10 I once met Prime Minister of Spain.

....

34 *some, any* with countable and uncountable nouns

Singular nouns

I'd like	**a** biscuit. **a** glass of milk. **a** sandwich.
	some milk. **some** bread. **some** toast.

- Countable nouns: ***a*** + singular countable noun.
  Biscuit, cup and *sandwich* are countable nouns.
  We can count them: *one biscuit, two biscuits, three biscuits.*
  Countable nouns can be singular or plural.
- Uncountable nouns:
  some + singular uncountable noun.
  Milk, bread and *toast* are uncountable nouns.
  We cannot count them.
  We cannot say: *a milk, a bread, a toast.*
  two milks, two breads, three toasts.
  Uncountable nouns are always singular.
- We can also use ***the*** before countable and uncountable nouns.

➤ See Stage 1, exercise 2 on articles.

Practice

34 Write ***C*** after the countable nouns and ***U*** after the uncountable nouns.

paper	*U*	news		coat	
coffee	*U*	job		water	
cassette	*C*	homework		tea	
information		apple		flour	
bottle		toothpaste		bread	
soup		bath		bag	
pen		salt		ball	
metal		girl		soap	
book		money		food	
rice		knife		cup	
spaghetti		egg		cat	
child		table		meat	
milk		shampoo		honey	

35 Counting the uncountables

I'd like **a glass of** water, please.
Did you buy **a bag of** sugar?

- We do not say *one water, two waters,* etc. but we can count:
  - the number of litres/kilos:
    ***a litre of** milk*
    ***two kilos of** potatoes*
  - the containers:
    ***a bottle of** water*
    ***three jars of** jam*
  - the pieces:
    ***two slices of** bread*
    ***a piece of** chocolate*
  - the item you buy:
    ***a loaf of** bread*
    ***a bar of** chocolate*

Practice

35 Choose a word from the box for each object.

tube loaf ~~bottle~~ glass bag
jar ~~tin~~ carton slice bar

1 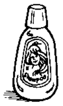
a ..*bottle*.. of shampoo

2 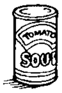

a ..*tin*.. of soup

3 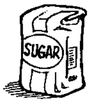

a .... of sugar

4 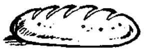
a .... of bread

5 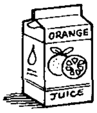

a .... of juice

6 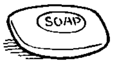

a .... of soap

7 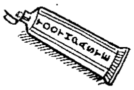

a .... of toothpaste

8 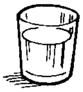
a .... of water

9 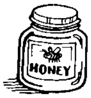

a .... of honey

10 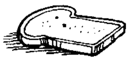
a .... of bread

36 *a, an, some*

Can I have **a** sandwich?
I usually have **an** egg for breakfast.
There are **some** eggs in the fridge.
We've got **some** bread.

- ***a, an*** + singular countable noun: *a sandwich*
- ***some*** + plural countable noun: *some eggs*
- ***some*** + uncountable noun: *some bread*

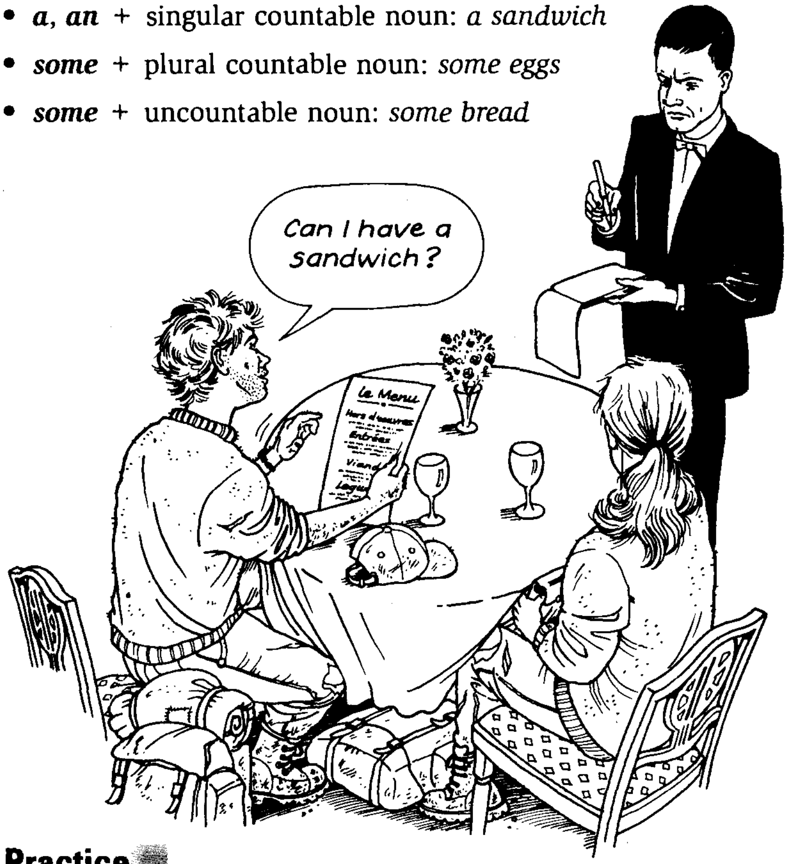

Practice

36 Complete the sentences using ***a***, ***an*** or ***some***:

1 I would like ..*some*.. soup, please.
2 Is there ..*a*.. bank near here?
3 They drank .... milk and then went to bed.
4 Would you like .... apple?
5 There's .... rice in the cupboard.
6 Did you get .... bottle of lemonade?
7 Here's .... money to buy your lunch.
8 Karen's starting .... new job next week.
9 There's .... butter in the fridge.
10 I usually have .... cup of tea in the morning.

37 *some* and *any*: positive, negative and questions

I've got	**an** orange. **some** oranges. **some** bread.

- ***some*** in positive sentences

Have you got ... Is, Are there ... I haven't got ...	**an** orange.(?) **any** oranges.(?) **any** bread.(?)

- ***any*** in questions and negative sentences

	COUNTABLE NOUNS		
	Singular	*Plural*	UNCOUTABLE NOUNS
Positive	an orange	some oranges	some bread
Negative and question	an orange	any oranges	any bread

- Offers and requests:
  We usually use ***some*** using ***Would you like ...?*** questions and ***Can I have ...?*** questions:

Would you like *Can I have*	***an** orange?* ***some** oranges?* ***some** bread?*

Practice

37a Complete the sentences using ***a***, ***an***, ***some*** or ***any***.

1 Have you got ..any.. juice in the fridge?

2 There are ..some.. letters on the floor.

3 I had .... cup of tea but I didn't have .... toast.

4 You need .... flour and .... egg.

5 I'd like .... rice but I don't want .... potatoes.

6 Would you like .... bowl of soup?

7 He gave me .... tea but he didn't put .... sugar in it.

8 There are .... nice trees in the garden but there aren't .... flowers.

9 Can I have .... glass of orange juice?

10 There are .... knives and forks on the table but there isn't .... salt or pepper.

37b Circle the correct words to complete the conversation.

A: This is [✓ *a*]/*the* nice restaurant. What's [2]*a*/[✓ *the*] food like?

B: Well, I came here last month with Jeremy and [3]*the/some* food was very good.

A: Oh good. Ah, here's [4]*the/some* waiter.

W: Good evening. Would you like to order?

A: Yes, please. Have you got [5]*some/any* fresh fish tonight?

W: Yes, we've got [6]*some/a* very good fish. The fishermen brought them in this morning.

A: Ah, good. Well, I'd like [7]*some/any* fish, please.

W: And would you like [8]*some/the* vegetables with your fish?

A: Yes, please.

W: And what about [9]*some/a* starter? There's [10]*some/any* very good vegetable soup and [11]*some/the* delicious fish soup.

A: No, thank you. I don't want [12]*some/any* soup.

W: And would you like [13]*a/the* drink?

A: Yes, I'd like [14]*a/the* glass of fruit juice before [15]*a/the* meal, please. And then can we have [16]*any/some* mineral water with the meal?

W: Yes, of course. And for you madam?

B: Well, I don't want [17]*a/the* starter but I'll have [18]*a/the* glass of fruit juice too and then I'll have [19]*a/some* spaghetti with tomato sauce.

W: Fine. Anything else?

B: Oh yes, please. I'd like [20]*a/some* bowl of salad.

W: Yes, certainly. And would you like [21]*a/some* bread?

B: Yes, please. And is there [22]*some/any* butter with the bread?

W: Yes, there is. So is that all for now?

A: Yes. I just have one question. Where's [23]*a/the* toilet, please?

W: Over there on your right.

A: Thanks.

38 *quickly, slowly, badly:* adverbs of manner

She's a slow learner. → She learns **slowly**.
She's a careful driver. → She drives **carefully**.
He's a quick worker. → He works **quickly**.

- Adjective + ***ly***:

beautiful → beautiful**ly**
careful → careful**ly**
quick → quick**ly**

- Irregulars:

good → well
hard → hard
fast → fast
late → late
early → early

Notes

- Spelling:
  y → ***ily***
  angry → *angr**ily***
  happy → *happ**ily***
- Word order:
  Adverbs of manner usually go after the verb:
  *She drives **carefully**.*
  or after the verb + object:
  *You speak Spanish **well**.*

Practice

38a Write the adverbs.

soft	softly	calm		hard	
quick	quickly	easy		sad	
angry		perfect		careful	
slow		polite		good	
nice		bad		fast	
quiet		beautiful		clear	

38b Choose an adverb from the exercise above to complete the sentences below.

1 I think you're working too ..hard... You need a holiday.
2 She sang ..beautifully...
3 You speak German .... – just like a German.

4 Please talk .... I don't want the baby to wake up.

5 She had no problems at all with the exam. She passed it ....

6 Don't drive so .... It's dangerous.

7 I understood what to do because she explained everything very ....

8 Please carry the glasses .... They were very expensive.

9 She didn't cry or scream. She just listened very .... when I told her the terrible news.

10 I asked him very .... but he refused.

38c Rewrite the sentences using a verb and an adverb.

1 They're slow workers.
They work slowly.

2 He's a dangerous driver.
He drives dangerously.

3 She's a careful writer.
....

4 I'm a loud singer.
....

5 She's a fast swimmer.
....

6 He's a bad actor.
....

7 Jill's a beautiful painter.
....

8 You're a terrible dancer.
....

9 They're good teachers.
....

10 John's a patient listener.
....

38d Circle the correct word (adjective or adverb).

1 This music is too *[✓ loud]/loudly*. We can't talk.

2 She played *bad/[✓ badly]* and she lost the game.

3 We waited *patient/patiently* for the letter but it never came.

4 Please don't be *angry/angrily* with him.

5 She asks *intelligent/intelligently* questions.

6 The children are playing together very *nice/nicely* today.

7 She's a very *warm/warmly* person and everyone likes her.

8 She surprised me when she opened the door *sudden/suddenly*.

9 You speak English very *good/well*.

10 It's *dangerous/dangerously* to swim in the sea here.

39 *bigger than ..., more expensive than ...:* comparative adjectives with *er* and *more*

This restaurant is **more expensive than** the one across the road.
Sue's **friendlier than** her sister.
Please be **more careful**.
She's five years **older than** her husband.

- One-syllable adjectives:

cheap → cheap**er**
clean → clean**er**
dark → dark**er**
big → bigg**er**

adjective + ***er than***

- Spelling:
  big → *bigger*

- Two-syllable adjectives ending in *y*:
  pre-tty (two syllables)

pretty → pret**tier**
happy → happ**ier**
dirty → dirt**ier**

adjective without ***y*** + ***ier than***

- Other two-syllable adjectives:

careful → **more** careful
worried → **more** worried

Most other two-syllable adjectives use ***more***:
more + adjective ***than***

- Adjectives of three or more syllables:
  ex-pen-sive (three syllables)
  in-tell-i-gent (four syllables)

expensive → **more** expensive
intelligent → **more** intelligent
beautiful → **more** beautiful
interesting → **more** interesting

more + adjective ***than***

- Irregular comparatives

good → better
bad → worse

Notes

- You can use ***a bit, a lot, much*** before comparatives:
  *She's **a lot happier** now.*
  *I'm **a bit older** than you.*
  *This book is **much more interesting** than the other one.*
- After ***than*** you can use ***me, you, her, him, us, them***:
  *You're taller **than me**.*
  *They arrived earlier **than us**.*

  or you can use ***I, you***, etc. + auxiliary (*am, is, are; was, were; do, does; did*, etc.):
  *You're taller **than I am**.*
  *They arrived earlier **than we did**.*

Practice

39a Write the comparatives.

happy	happier
difficult	more difficult
clean	
early	
beautiful	
soft	
intelligent	
dirty	
good	
careful	

cheap	
strong	
interesting	
hot	
warm	
expensive	
fresh	
kind	
boring	
cold	

honest	
busy	
young	
near	
funny	
easy	
bad	
late	
dangerous	
weak	

39b Complete the sentences using a comparative and ***than***.

1 She's much ..younger than.. her husband. (young)
2 It's a ..warmer.. day ..than.. yesterday. (warm)
3 The vegetables in this shop are .... the ones in the supermarket. (fresh)
4 The train is .... the bus. (expensive)
5 This new TV programme is much .... the old one. (funny)
6 Ms Davies is a .... teacher .... Mr Andrews. (good)
7 My office is .... Helen's. (near)
8 The traffic is .... it was last year. (noisy)

9 You have a .... life .... I have. (busy)

10 Drivers in this country are .... drivers in my country. (careless)

11 The exam today was .... last year's exam. (difficult)

12 She's much .... her sister. (kind)

13 The North is .... the South. (rich)

14 The students ask .... questions .... they did before. (intelligent)

15 Her second book is .... her first. (interesting)

39c Write sentences comparing the Grand Hotel and the Sea View Hotel. Use the adjectives in the box.

peaceful big small lovely ~~beautiful~~
comfortable cold cheap clean friendly
expensive warm noisy ~~central~~

Grand Hotel

The Grand Hotel is a beautiful hotel in the centre of town. It is a big hotel with 120 rooms. The rooms are all very clean, comfortable and warm but they are quite noisy because the hotel is on a main road. I found the hotel staff polite but not very friendly.

This is not the hotel for a cheap holiday. The rooms are quite expensive at around £100 per person per night for bed and breakfast.

Sea View Hotel

The Sea View Hotel is a 30-room hotel about three kilometres from the centre of town. The building is not very beautiful but the rooms have lovely views of the sea and the hotel is nice and peaceful. The rooms are not always very clean and sometimes they are a bit cold at night. But the hotel staff are always very friendly and the hotel is very cheap. It only costs £30 per person per night for bed and breakfast.

1 The Grand Hotel *is more beautiful than the Sea View Hotel.*

2 The Grand Hotel *is more central than the Sea View Hotel.*

3 The Grand Hotel ....

4 The Grand Hotel ....

5 The Grand Hotel ....

6 The Grand Hotel ....

7 The Grand Hotel ....

8 The Grand Hotel ....

9 The Sea View Hotel ....

10 The views from the Sea View Hotel ....

11 The Sea View Hotel ....

12 The Sea View Hotel ....

13 The staff in the Sea View Hotel ....

14 The Sea View Hotel ....

Verbs

40 *She is eating:* Present Continuous tense: positive

FORM

I	am →	I'm	working.
She He It	is →	She's He's It's	
We You They	are →	We're You're They're	

- Verb ***to be*** (*am, is, are*) + verb + ***ing***

USE

- To talk about something happening now.
- Use the present continuous to talk about activities in the present. Do not use it with these verbs: *like, love, hate, want, know, understand, forget, agree*. These verbs are not activities. Use the present simple with these verbs.

Note:

sit → si**tt**ing
get → ge**tt**ing
plan → pla**nn**ing
run → ru**nn**ing
stop → sto**pp**ing
come → co**m**ing
live → li**v**ing
make → ma**k**ing
die → d**y**ing
lie → l**y**ing

➤ See Appendix 2 on spelling rules.

Practice

40 Write the sentences with the verbs in the present continuous.

1 John and I ..are staying.. in a beautiful hotel. (stay)
2 Annie and Joe .are making. a cake for tea. (make)
3 Spencer .... at home today. (work)
4 I .... for a letter from my parents. (wait)
5 You .... too fast. (walk)
6 We .... our next holiday. (plan)
7 The girls .... their grandmother today. (visit)
8 She .... in her bedroom at the moment. (read)
9 I .... to listen to the radio but it's very noisy in here. (try)
10 The sun .... beautifully today. (shine)

11 The baby .... to walk now. (learn)

12 Greg's in the kitchen. He .... the dinner. (cook)

13 I .... a bit miserable today. (feel)

14 You .... too hard for this exam. (study)

15 'Where's Anne?' 'She .... a shower.' (have)

41 Present Continuous tense: questions

Am	I	working?
Is	she he it	
Are	you we they	

- Verb ***to be*** in question form + verb + ***ing***.

Short answers

Yes,	I	am.
	she he it	is.
	you we they	are.

No,	I	'm not.
	she he it	isn't.
	you we they	aren't.

Practice

41a Complete the questions and answers, adding ***am***, ***is***, ***are*** to the questions and ***am***, ***is***, ***are***, or ***'m not***, ***isn't***, ***aren't*** to the short answers.

1 '..Is.. it raining outside?' 'No, it ..isn't..'

2 '..Are.. the children playing outside?' 'Yes, they ..are..'

3 '.............. you doing your homework now?' 'Yes, I ....'

4 '.............. I hurting you?' 'No, you ....'

5 '.............. she waving to us?' 'Yes, she ....'

6 '.............. we stopping here?' 'Yes, we ....'

7 '.............. your neighbours moving out?' 'No, they ....'

8 '.............. he helping you with your homework?' 'Yes, he ....'

9 '.............. you looking at that boat?' 'Yes, I ....'

10 '.............. they planning a party?' 'No, they ....'

41b Write the questions using the present continuous.

1 What / she / do?

What's she doing?

2 You / learn / French at school?

Are you learning French at school?

3 What book / you / read?

....

4 What / we / watch?

....

5 I / speak / clearly?

....

6 Why / we / sit in the dark?

....

7 Where / they / stay?

....

8 It / snow?

....

9 Why / he / run so fast?

....

10 What / you / sell?

....

11 Why / he / shout?

....

12 Where / they / wait?

....

13 Why / she / laugh?

....

14 They / dance together?

....

15 The plane / land now?

....

42 Present Continuous tense: negatives

She He It	isn't	working.
You We They	aren't	

I	am →	I'm	not working.
She He It	is →	She's He's It's	
You We They	are →	You're We're They're	

- Contractions:
  There are two ways of contracting a negative sentence in the present continuous:
  She is not working can become:
  (a) *She* ***isn't*** *working.* or
  (b) *She****'s not*** *working.*
  Both are correct. The negative in (b) is a bit stronger than the negative in (a).

Practice

40 In your notebook, write the sentences in the negative, in two ways where possible.

1 They're buying a new car.
They aren't buying a new car.
They're not buying a new car.

2 He's learning to read.
He isn't learning to read.
He's not learning to read.

3 I'm looking for your keys.
4 We're selling the house.
5 You're working very hard.
6 He's washing the dishes.
7 They're drinking tea.
8 We're having a good time.
9 She's leaving him.
10 I'm going home now.

43 Present Continuous tense

Check

43 Complete the conversation, putting the verbs into the present continuous and completing the short answers with ***am***, ***is***, ***are (not)***.

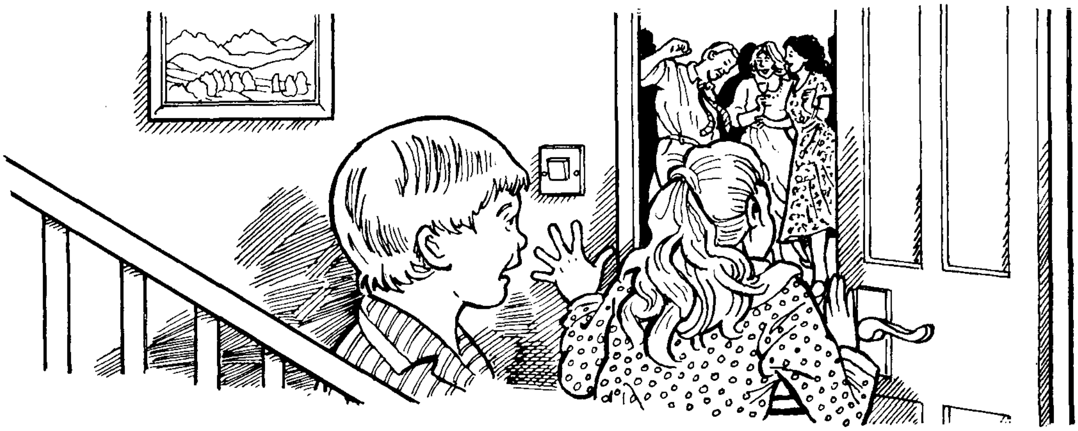

A: So what ^{1} ..*'s happening*.. (happen)? ^{2} .*Are they having*.. (they/have) a party?

B: Yes, they ^{3} ..*are*.. .

A: And what ^{4}...................................... (they/do)?

B: Well, a few of them ^{5}...................................... (dance).

A: ^{6}.. (Mum and Dad/dance)?

B: Yes, Mum ^{7}........... but Dad ^{8}........... . He ^{9}...................................
(talk) to Uncle Jack and they ^{10}...................................... (laugh) a lot.

A: Is Aunty Linda there?

B: Yes, she ^{11}........... . She ^{12}...................................... (dance) with
Brian from next door. Oh, and Dad ^{13}...................................... (give)
everyone a drink now.

A: What ^{14}...................................... (they/drink)?

B: Coffee, I think. And some of them ^{15}...................................... (drink)
juice. Mum ^{16}...................................... (not/drink) anything.

A: ^{17}...................................... (they/eat)?

B: Only crisps and nuts and some cheese.

A: And we ^{18}...................................... (not/eat) anything. It's not fair!

B: But they think we ^{19}...................................... (sleep) upstairs.

A: Oh no, they don't. They ^{20}...................................... (look) this way.
I think Dad ^{21}...................................... (come) over here.

44 Present Continuous and Present Simple tenses: contrast

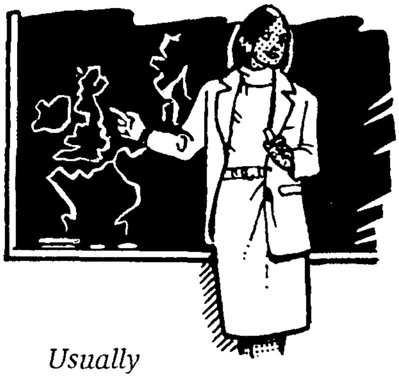

Usually

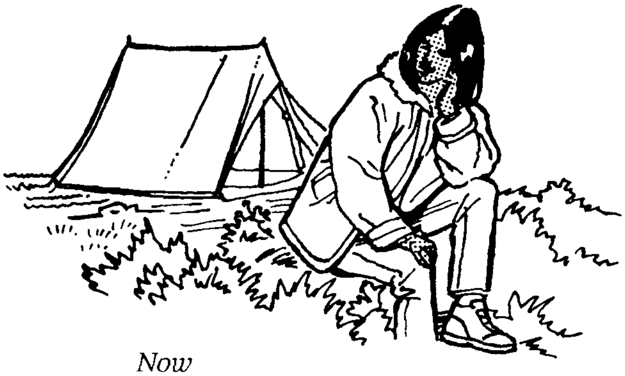

Now

Liz lives in London and teaches at a secondary school. At the moment, she's on holiday in Scotland. She's walking in the mountains and sleeping in a tent.

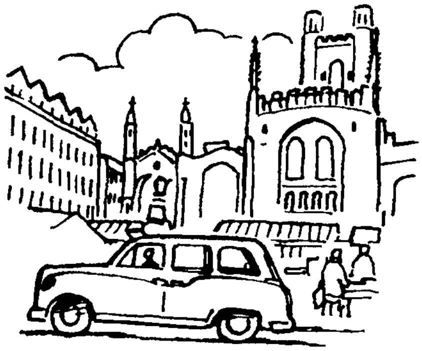

Usually

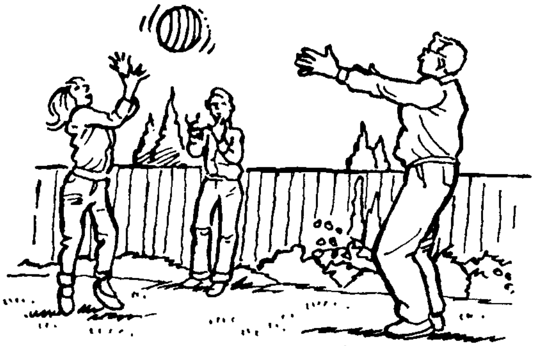

Now

Jeff lives in Cambridge and works as a taxi driver. It's Sunday now and he isn't working. He's playing with his children in the garden.

- Present continuous:
  - To talk about something happening now. Use it with activity verbs:
    *Liz **is walking** in the mountains. She **isn't teaching**.*
    *Jeff **is playing** with his children. He **isn't driving** a taxi.*
  - To talk about something that is happening for a short period of time.
    *Liz **is sleeping** in a tent this week.*
    *We come from Scotland but we**'re staying** here in London for the summer.*
- Present simple:

➤ See Stage 1, exercise 13 on the present simple.

  - To give facts, information about people and things.
  - To talk about things that are generally true or that happen again and again:
    *Liz **lives** in London.*
    *She **teaches** at a secondary school.*
    *Jeff **lives** in Cambridge.*
    *He **works** as a taxi driver.*

Practice

44a Complete the sentences, putting the verbs into the present continuous or present simple and completing the short answers.

1 Tim ..*lives*.. (live) in Manchester but he ..*'s spending*.. (spend) this month in Wales.

2 A: ..*Are you working*.. (you/work) today?
B: No, I .*'m not*.. I usually ..*work*.. (work) on Fridays but I've got the day off.

3 A: What .... (Josephine/do)?
B: She .... (be) a teacher but she
.... (not/teach) at the moment. She
.... (look) for a job.

4 A: Can I have that paper or .... (you/read) it?
B: No, I .... (not/read) it. I never ....
(read) that paper. I .... (prefer) the Daily News.

5 A: .... (this bag/belong) to you?
B: No, it ...., but I .... (know)
Anita .... (look) for her bag.

6 I .... (not/smoke) but my husband
.... He .... (try) to stop at the moment but it's not easy.

7 .... (you/remember) my friend Matthew? He
.... (stay) with me at the moment.

8 A: .... (you/speak) German?
B: No, I .... but I ....
(want) to learn. I .... (look) for a good coursebook.

9 Emma and Katie usually .... (visit) me on
Saturdays but they .... (camp) in the New Forest this weekend.

10 A: .... (Simon/help) you very much?
B: No, not usually, but he .... (help) me today.

44b Complete the conversation putting the verbs into the present continuous or present simple.

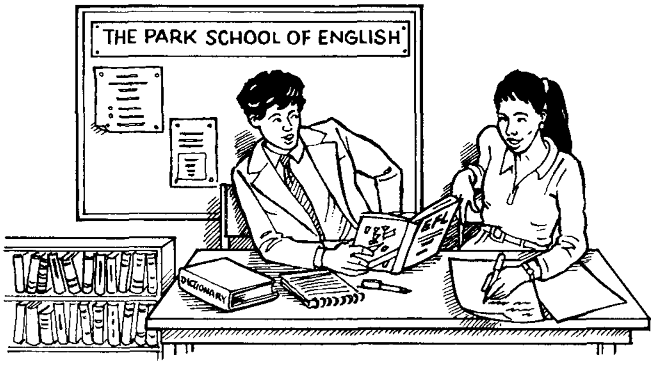
THE PARK SCHOOL OF ENGLISH
DICTIONARY
EFL

A: Where [1] *do you come* (you/come) from?

B: Brazil. What about you? Where [2] *do you come* (you/come) from?

A: Italy. I'm in London for one month.

B: Yes, me too.

A: [3].. (you/like) it here in London?

B: It's very exciting but sometimes the people [4]............................ (not/be) very friendly.

A: [5].. (you/stay) with English people?

B: Yes. I [6].. (stay) with an English family, but I [7].. (not/see) them very often. They [8].. (be) always busy.

A: I [9].. (stay) in a student hostel. That [10].. (be) much better. There are many different nationalities and we all [11].. (speak) English together.

B: Oh, that's good. And [12].. (you/study) together in the hostel in the evenings?

A: Yes, sometimes.

B: [13].. (that/be) your coursebook?

A: Yes, I [14].. (do) my homework.

B: [15].. (your teacher/give) you homework every day?

A: Almost every day. What [16]...................................... (you/do)?

B: I [17].. (write) to my parents. I [18].. (write) to them every week.

45 *I'm seeing him tomorrow:* Present Continuous tense as future

We'**re meeting** at 10 o'clock tonight.
My aunt **is coming** to stay for the weekend.
I'**m leaving** at 9 o'clock on Friday morning.
Are you **staying** here tonight?
Alan **isn't coming** with us tomorrow.

- We use the present continuous to talk about arrangements in the future: the things you write in a diary; often with verbs like *go, come, see, meet, stay, have, leave.*
- We use the present continuous with future time expressions, e.g. *tomorrow, at the weekend, next week, on Friday, next year.* (Occasionally there is no time expression. This is because the future time is clearly understood.)

Practice

45a Are the following sentences present or future? Write ***Present*** or ***Future*** after each one.

1 Where is Jack? Is he working? ..Present...
2 Are you going out tonight? ..Future..
3 That tree's growing very fast. ....
4 I'm seeing Trisha on Wednesday. ....
5 Anna's starting school on Monday. ....
6 I'm waiting for a call at the moment. ....
7 He's making some chairs for the garden. ....
8 We're getting a new car next week. ....
9 My parents are coming to stay with me this weekend.
....
10 'What languages is she learning at school?' 'She's learning French and Russian.' ....

45b Complete the sentences, putting the verbs into the present continuous.

1 ..Are you meeting.. Debbie tonight? (you/meet)
2 I ..'m not coming.. to class tomorrow. (not/come)
3 .... to work next week? (you/go)
4 My cousin .... us on Saturday. (visit)
5 I .... a special meal tonight. (make)
6 .... on Friday? (they/leave)
7 We .... there with Skybright Airlines. (fly)

8 .... at home this weekend? (you/stay)

9 We .... my niece on holiday with us. (take)

10 I .... a birthday party this year. (not/have)

11 I .... work at 6 o'clock. (finish)

12 .... to another town? (they/move)

13 We .... home tonight. (not/go)

14 Ian .... the train at 12 o'clock. (catch)

15 They .... tonight. (not/come)

45c Complete the conversation using the information in the diary. Use verbs in the present continuous and add any other words you need.

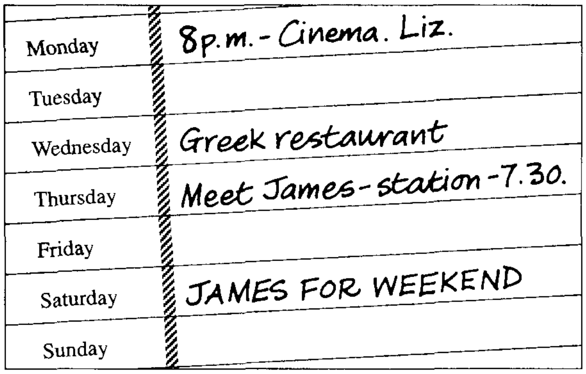

Monday	8p.m. - Cinema. Liz.
Tuesday	
Wednesday	Greek restaurant
Thursday	Meet James - station - 7.30.
Friday	
Saturday	JAMES FOR WEEKEND
Sunday	

A: What (you/do) ..are you doing.. on Monday night?

B: (I/go) ..I'm going to the cinema.. .

A: Who (you/go) .... with?

B: (I/go) ....

A: What time (you/meet) .... her?

B: At ....

A: And what about Wednesday? (you/go out) ....?

B: Yes, I .... (I/go) ....

....

A: (you/stay) .... at home on Tuesday?

B: Yes, ...

A: And Thursday?

B: I (meet) ....

A: What time (he/arrive) .... ?

B: ....

A: (he/stay) .... for the weekend?

B: Yes, ...

46 *I'm going to see a film tonight: be going to* future

FORM

Positive

I	am ('m)	going to finish.
She He It	is ('s)	
You We They	are ('re)	

- ***am, is, are going*** + ***to***-infinitive (present continuous of ***go***)

Negative

I	am not ('m not)	going to pay.
She He It	is not (isn't/'s not)	
You We They	are not (aren't/'re not)	

Question

Am	I	going to finish?
Is	she he it	
Are	you we they	

USE

- To talk about a plan or an intention: something that you have decided to do or not to do:
  *We**'re going to visit** Alice and Tim on Saturday.*
  *I**'m not going to watch** television on holiday.*
- To make a prediction: something in the present tells you what is going to happen in the future:
  *Look at that sky. It**'s going to be** a nice day tomorrow.*
- To talk about a fact in the future:
  *Danny**'s going to be** seven on his next birthday.*

Practice

46a The people in the sentences below are all thinking about their summer holidays. Complete the sentences about what they plan to do using ***'m, 're*** or ***going to ...*** . Use the verbs in the box.

travel	teach	read	~~stay~~	walk
lie	play	~~do~~	cycle	swim

1 I ..'m going to stay.. in bed all day.
2 We ..'re going to do.. the gardening.
3 I .... lots of books.
4 I .... in the sun.
5 We .... round the world.
6 I .... to Brighton on my new bike.
7 I .... lots of sport.
8 We .... English in a summer school.
9 I .... in the sea every day.
10 I .... in the mountains.

46b Kim is asking Sarah about her holiday plans. Write Kim's questions using the present continuous as future of the verb ***go***, and the ***be going to*** future with the other verbs.

1	*When are you going on holiday?*	At the beginning of next month.

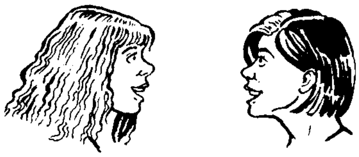

2	*And where are you going?*	To San Sebastian in Spain.
3	.... ?	No, I don't like planes.
4	So .... ?	By boat. It goes from Plymouth to Santander.
5	.... ?	Yes, we're going to take Tom's car.

6	.... ?	I am. Tom doesn't like driving abroad.
7	.... ?	No, we're not. The hotels are too expensive.
8	So .... ?	In a friend's flat. I've got a friend teaching English there.
9	And .... ?	For two weeks.
10	.... ?	No, there's no need. My friend speaks very good Spanish.

46c Complete the sentences, putting the verbs into the ***be going to*** future.

1 Jill 's going to be very pleased with her present. (be)

2 My parents are going to bring their tent with them. (bring)

3 He .... for a new job soon. (look)

4 .... the dinner tonight? (you/make)

5 Watch out! That glass .... (break)

6 He .... his driving test. (not/pass)

7 It .... hot today so we should take some bottles of water. (be)

8 .... that film on television tonight? (you/watch)

9 My brother .... in the States next year. (live)

10 We .... with friends. (not/stay) We .... a hotel. (find)

11 They .... a new swimming pool in the centre of town. (build)

12 .... another car? (they/get)

13 The sky looks very grey. It .... in a minute. (rain)

14 I .... David's parents tonight. (meet)

47 The *be going to* future and Present Continuous as future: contrast

Plans

We can use the present continuous as future and the ***be going to*** future to talk about plans. However, we use the present continuous more often when we are talking about the arrangements we have made for the future. We use the ***be going to*** future to talk about what we have decided to do:

*I'm **flying** to Brussels on Thursday.* = I have bought the air ticket.

*I'm **going to fly** to Brussels on Thursday.* = I have decided to fly there. I am talking about my intention/decision.

*We're **meeting** next Saturday.* = We have arranged when and where to meet.

*We're **going to meet** next Saturday.* = We have decided to meet next Saturday.

- Remember that we need a future time word/expression with the present continuous as future.
- With the verbs ***go*** and ***come***, the present continuous as future is more usual:

  *I'm **going** to Paris next week.*
  *I'm **going to go** to Paris next week.*

  Both these sentences are correct but the first is more usual.

Predictions

We use the ***be going to*** future to make predictions:
(a) *Look at that toast. It's **going to burn.***
(b) *Look at that toast. It's **burning.***
(a) is the correct future. (b) is not the future. It means the toast is burning now.

(a) *The grass **is going to grow** very tall in the summer.*
(b) *The grass **is growing** very tall in the summer.*
(a) is correct. (b) is not correct.
We cannot use the present continuous as future to talk about predictions.

Practice

47 In your notebook, write the sentences putting the verbs into the ***be going to*** future. Then write each sentence again with the verb in the present continuous as future where this is possible.

1 We ...... my grandmother tomorrow. (visit)

We're going to visit my grandmother tomorrow.

We're visiting my grandmother tomorrow.

2 Take your coat. It ...... cold. (be)

Take your coat. It's going to be cold.

3 We ...... an Indian meal tonight. (have)

4 We ...... a new television next week. (buy)

5 ...... tonight? (you/eat out)

6 The new government ...... a lot of problems. (have)

7 I ...... harder next year. (work)

8 We ...... at home tonight. (stay)

9 Don't worry. It .... (not/hurt)

10 Oh dear. He ...... in a minute. (cry)

48 *Stop talking! Don't walk on the grass!:* the imperative

Drive carefully.
Open the box this side.
Don't walk on the grass.
Please **do not talk** in the library.

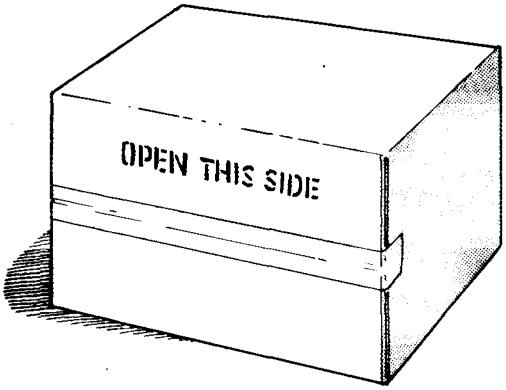

FORM

- Positive: the infinitive form of the verb.
- Negative: ***Do not, Don't*** + infinitive.

USE

- To give instructions. It is often used in written instructions, e.g. in public places, in instruction manuals, on boxes, packets, etc. Also used in spoken instructions to explain how to do something.
- To give orders, e.g. officer to soldier, teacher to pupil.

Notes

- Do not use the imperative for requests:
  NOT ~~*Give me a drink*~~. This is not very polite.
  Use ***Could you, I ... ?*** or ***Would you ...*** ?:
  Could I *have a drink, please?*
- Sometimes ***please*** is used with the imperative. ***Please*** can come at the beginning or end of the sentence:
  Please *wait here.*
  Wait here, ***please****.*
- On signs and notices, the gerund is often used for negative instructions:
  No ***smoking****.*

Practice

48 Complete the sentences using an imperative. Use the verbs in the box.

eat ~~cross~~ enter turn
~~walk~~ smoke write wash

1 ..Don't walk.. on the grass.

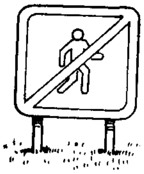

2 ..Cross.. the road at the lights.

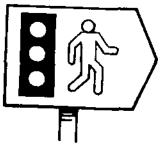

3 .... left.

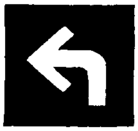

4 .... your name here.

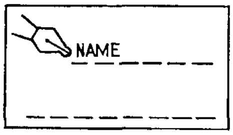

5 .... in class.

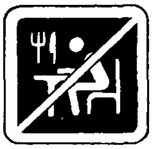

6 Please .... this room.

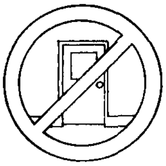

7 Please .... in this area.

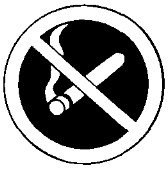

8 Please .... your hands.

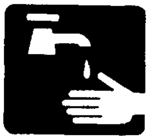

49 *I can speak English. They can't swim:* modal verb *can, can't*

FORM

Positive

I	**can** swim.
You	
She	
He	
It	
We	
They	

- Subject + ***can*** + infinitive.

Negative

I	**can't** swim. (**cannot**)
You	
She	
He	
It	
We	
They	

- Subject + ***can't, cannot*** + infinitive.
  We use ***can't*** more often than ***cannot***.

Question

Can	I	swim?
	you	
	she	
	he	
	it	
	we	
	they	

- ***Can*** + subject + infinitive.

Short answers

Yes, No,	I	**can.** **can't.** (**cannot**).
	you	
	she	
	he	
	it	
	we	
	they	

- Yes, + subject + ***can***.
  No, + subject + ***can't*** (or ***cannot***).

USE

- To talk about what someone **can** or **can't** do:
  - in the present, when it is generally true:
    I can drive *now.*
    Can you play *the piano?*
  - in the present, at this moment:
    I can help *you now.*
  - in the future, with a time expression:
    She can't come *to the party tomorrow.*

Practice

49a Complete the sentences using ***can*** or ***can't*** and one of the verbs in the box.

hear read open see ~~come~~
understand swim speak ~~drive~~ meet

1 'You can use my car.' 'Thank you very much, but I ..*can't drive*.. .'

2 I'm sorry but I ..*can't come*.. to your party on Saturday because I'm going away for the weekend.

3 Emily is only five but she .... very well. Her favourite books are adventure stories.

4 She .... three languages: Portuguese, Arabic and Italian.

5 We .... at the restaurant at 7 o'clock.

6 Could you please be a bit quieter? Your grandparents .... the television.

7 .... you .... the door for me, please?

8 I .... him very well. He speaks so quickly.

9 He has swimming lessons every week and he .... very well now.

10 Oh look, ... you .... that big bird? It's in that tree.

49b In your notebook, write the questions using ***Can you ...?***. Answer for yourself with ***Yes, I can.*** or ***No, I can't***.

1 ride a horse?
2 read music?
3 play the piano?
4 dance?
5 drive?
6 act?
7 swim?
8 speak another language?
9 run fast?
10 fly a plane?

Examples: *Can you ride a horse? Yes, I can.*
Can you read music? No, I can't.

Prepositions

50 *at, on, in, to, from, onto, off, into, out of:* prepositions of position and movement

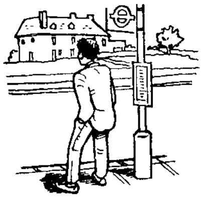

*Andrew's waiting **at** the bus stop.*

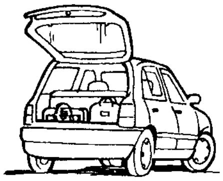

*My bags are **in** the car.*

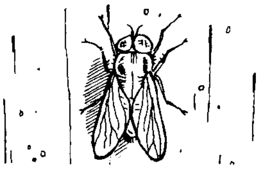

*There's a fly **on** the wall.*

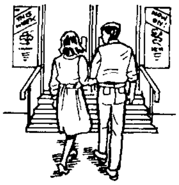

*We went **to** the cinema last night.*

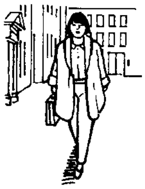

*I walked back **from** the office today.*

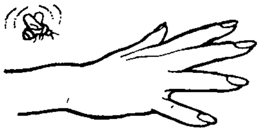

*A bee flew **onto** my arm.*

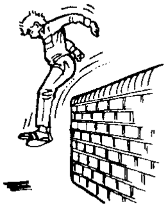

*He jumped **off** the wall.*

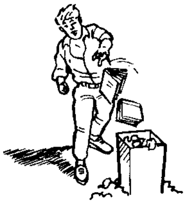

*He threw his books **into** the bin.*

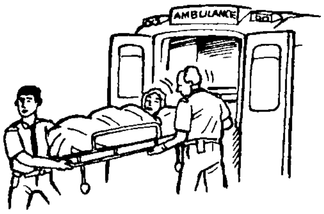

*They carried her **out** **of** the ambulance.*

➤ See Stage 1, exercise 25 on the difference between ***at***, ***on***, ***in***.

Practice

50 Which prepositions do we use with these verbs? Copy the headings into your notebook and put the verbs into the correct list.

~~drive~~	~~stay~~	arrive	take	move	fall
stop	run	work	carry	meet	park
walk	be	live	ride	come	sleep

Verbs which go with prepositions of position: at, on, in	*Verbs which go with prepositions of movement: to, from, into, out of, onto, off*
stay	drive

51 *to, at, from*

She walked **to** Simon's house.
She waited **at** Simon's house.
She walked **from** Simon's house to the cinema.

- ***to***, ***at*** or ***from*** a place:

to	at	from
⟶ X	● X	X ⟶

Practice

51 Complete the sentences using ***to***, ***at*** or ***from***.

1 Linda works *at* the post office.

2 Can you come *to* our party?

3 We arrived .... the station half an hour late.

4 I often return .... my old home town.

5 They were tired when they arrived so they caught a taxi .... the airport .... the hotel.

6 Kathy brought her daughter .... work with her yesterday.

7 We landed .... Athens airport at 5 o'clock in the morning.

8 'How did you get here?' 'I caught the train and walked .... the station.'

9 I landed .... Istanbul airport and caught the train .... Istanbul .... Ankara.

10 He travelled all night .... Paris and arrived .... the office here in London at 6.30 in the morning.

52 *onto, on, off*

Can you put the books **onto** the table?
The books are **on** the table.
Can you take the books **off** the table?

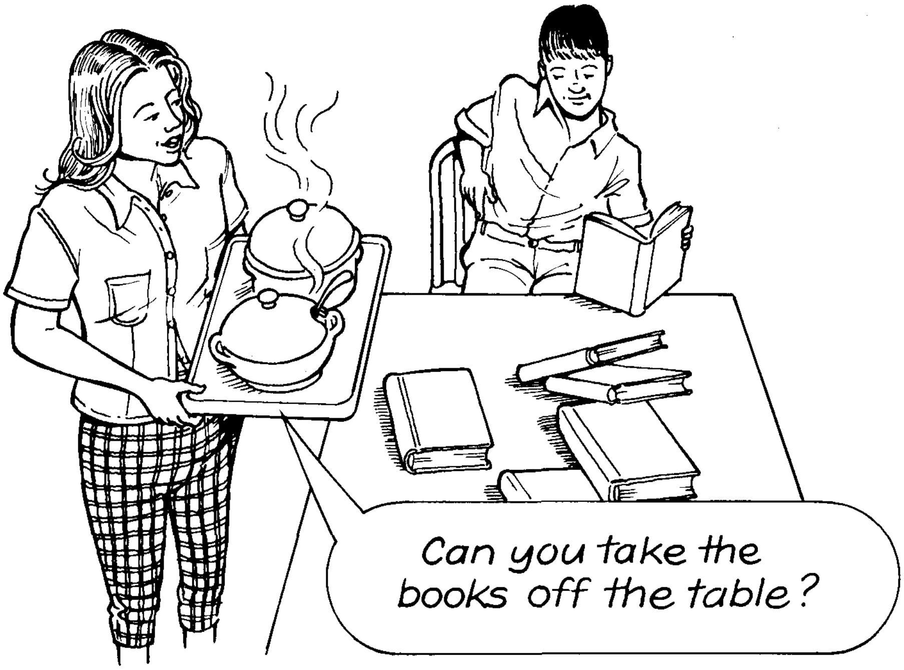
Can you take the books off the table?

- ***onto***, ***on*** or ***off*** a line or surface (*a wall, table, floor,* etc.):

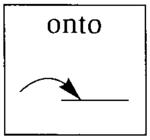

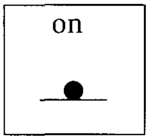

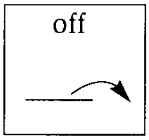

Practice

52 Complete the sentences using ***onto***, ***on*** or ***off***.

1 Can I sit ..on.. this chair?
2 I'm going to take the washing ..off.. the line.
3 Be careful. You're going to fall .... that seat.
4 She dressed and walked out .... the balcony.
5 We spent the day .... the beach.
6 The prisoners climbed .... the roof.
7 Why haven't you got any pictures .... the wall?
8 He lost control of the car and it went .... the road.
9 Don't park .... the grass.
10 He was very angry and he pushed me .... my chair.

53 *into, in, out of*

The children got **into** the car.
The children sat **in** the car.
The children got **out of** the car.

- ***into***, ***in*** or ***out of*** something with sides (*a box, a house, a car*). Also with *garden, park, field, countryside.*

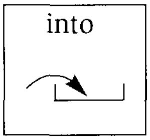

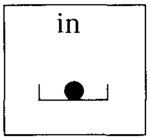

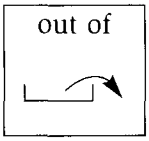

Practice

53 Complete the sentences with ***into***, ***in*** or ***out of***.

1 She's living ..in.. a flat on her own now.
2 Anne suddenly came ..into.. the room with a letter in her hand.
3 We usually meet .... the local café.
4 We moved .... our old flat because of the neighbours.
5 The plane took off and flew up .... the clouds.

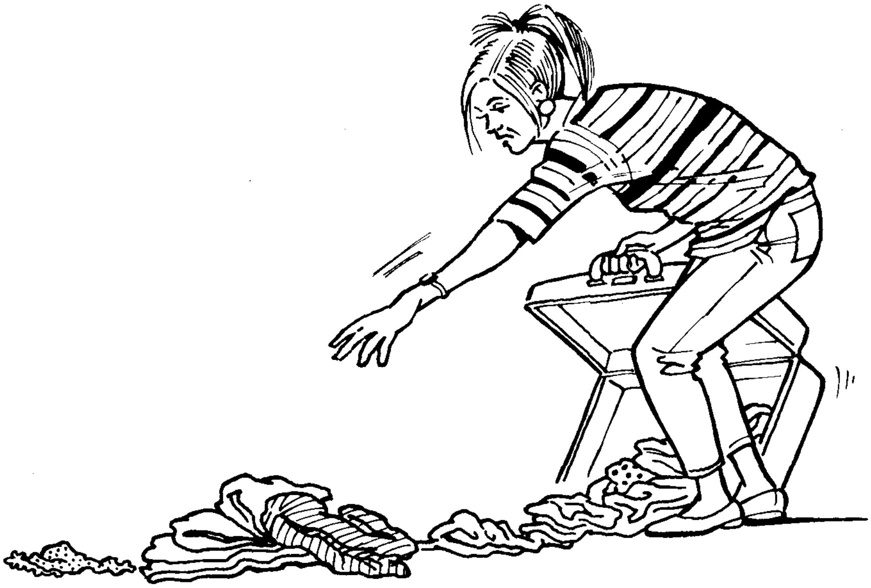

6 All my clothes fell .... my suitcase when I picked it up.
7 They carried the new sofa .... the flat.
8 At the end of the working day they all hurry .... the office.
9 Can you leave your coats .... the bedroom?
10 We can't park .... the hotel car park.

54 *to, at, from, onto, on, off, into, in, out of*

Check

54 Complete the sentences using ***to***, ***at***, ***from***, ***onto***, ***on***, ***off***, ***into***, ***in*** or ***out of***.

1 I got ..out of.. the bath when the phone rang.

2 I forgot to send a birthday card .... Helen yesterday.

3 He was very tired when he got back .... Australia.

4 We're going to stay .... a holiday apartment in Spain.

5 We stopped .... the traffic lights and the car broke down.

6 He took all the toys .... the box and left them .... the floor.

7 Our friends met us .... the airport when we arrived .... Berlin.

8 He felt very hot and so he jumped .... the beautiful, clear water.

9 We took our lunch .... the garden and ate it .... the grass.

10 When I arrived, I carried my heavy bag all the way .... the station .... the hotel.

11 I arrived .... work late this morning.

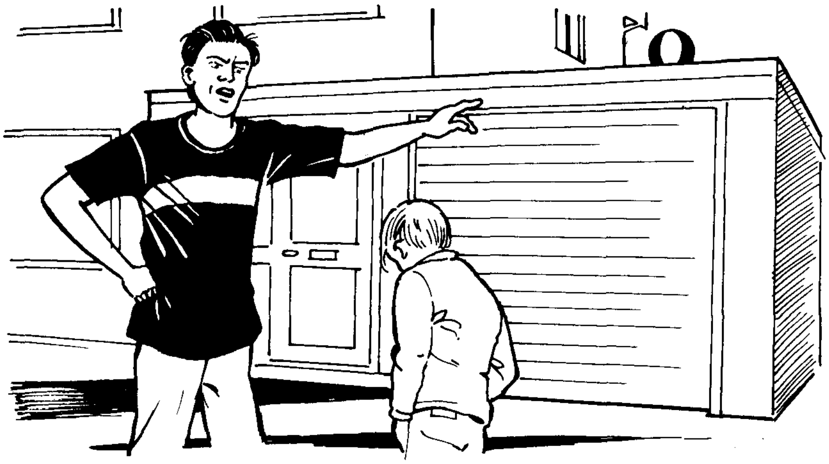

12 Why did you throw that ball .... the roof?

13 All the books suddenly fell .... the shelf.

14 It was a lovely morning so I walked .... work.

Gerunds and infinitives

55 *Do you like working here?:* verb + gerund

I go **swimming** at the weekends.
They enjoy **eating** out in the evenings.

➤ See Stage 1, exercise 28 on the gerund after *like, love, hate.*

FORM

- infinitive + ***ing***:
  e.g. *swimming, eating.*

➤ See Appendix 2 for spelling rules.

USE

- The gerund acts like a noun in a sentence. We can say:
  I enjoy tennis. verb + noun
  or
  I enjoy ***playing*** *tennis.* verb + gerund
- We can use the gerund in place of a noun after certain verbs including: *enjoy, hate, like, love, start, stop, suggest, finish, give up, miss.*

Practice

55 Complete the sentences using a verb from the box. Put the verbs into the gerund.

go cry live ~~stay~~ read
~~work~~ take smoke get up be

1 He loves ..working.. in the garden.
2 I really enjoy ..staying.. in bed on Sunday mornings.
3 Are you going to give up .... ?
4 Joe started .... to school by bike last week.
5 Sylvia suggested .... the train to Scotland as it's faster than the car.
6 I hate .... early in the morning.
7 The baby stopped .... when her mother came home.
8 She's enjoying university but she misses .... with her old friends.
9 Do they like .... in their new home?
10 I'm going to finish .... this book tonight.

56 *I want to stay here:* verb + *to*-infinitive

We tried **to phone** you.
Jamie wants **to leave** his job.

➤ See Stage 1, exercise 29a on the ***to***-infinitive after *would like.*

- We can use the ***to***-infinitive after certain verbs including: *forget, plan, remember, start, try, want, hope, decide, offer, learn, agree.*
- The verb ***start*** is also in the list of verbs taking the gerund. ***Start*** can have a noun, a gerund or an infinitive after it.

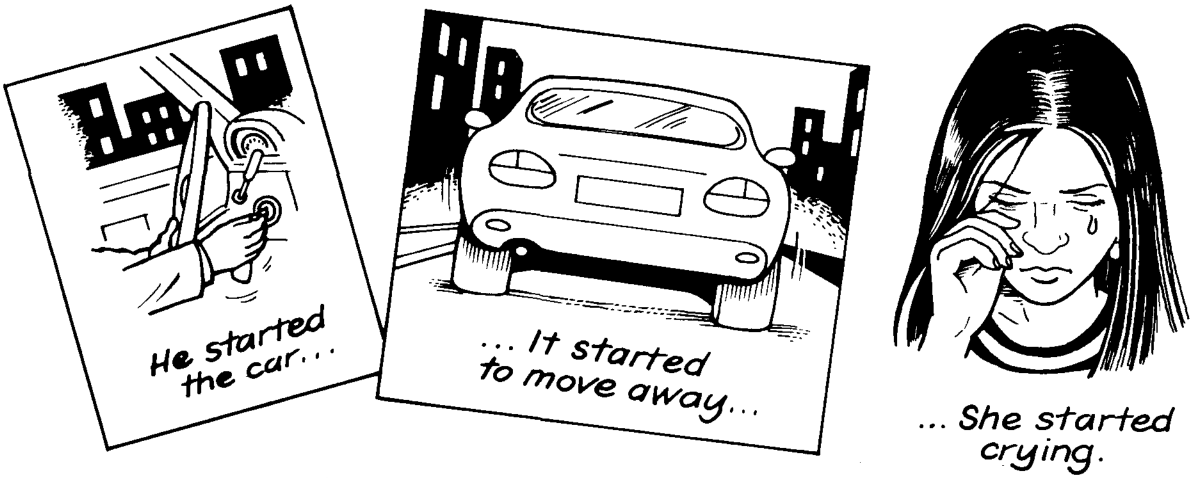
He started the car...
... It started to move away...
... She started crying.

Practice

56 Complete the sentences using the verbs from the box.
Use the *to*-infinitive.

have pay help sleep ~~do~~
post leave ~~go~~ visit drive

1 I forgot ..to do. my homework last night.
2 She's hoping ..to go.. to university next year.
3 He offered .... me but I said no because I didn't really need any help.
4 Did you remember .... those letters?
5 She decided .... her job because the pay was so bad.
6 Are you learning .... ?
7 We wanted .... a picnic but the weather was terrible.
8 We tried .... but there was a lot of noise outside.
9 We're planning .... my cousin in Australia next year.
10 He agreed .... for the broken window.

57 The gerund and the *to*-infinitive

Check

57 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the correct form (gerund or *to*-infinitive).

1 Don't forget ..to phone.. your mother. (phone)

2 I love ..being.. on my own and ..listening.. to music. (be/listen)

3 Do you want .... tonight? (go out)

4 Would you like .... to the beach this afternoon? (go)

5 I remembered .... all the doors but I forgot .... the lights. (lock/turn off)

6 Are you planning .... on holiday this year? (go)

7 He agreed .... me after I wrote him a letter. (see)

8 I enjoy .... your letters very much. (read)

9 We like .... here but we miss .... to our old friends. (live/talk)

10 I'd like .... a job with a foreign company. (get)

11 I'm going to learn .... Spanish before we go to Spain for our holidays next year. (speak)

12 Matthew suggested .... for a meal but I wanted .... at home. (go out/stay)

13 I don't like .... violent films. (watch)

14 When I was a child, I hated .... in the dark. (sleep)

15 She finished .... the book but then she decided .... another one. (write/start)

16 We're hoping .... the house next week. (finish/paint)

17 Do you miss .... in the evenings now that you have children? (go/out)

18 I am hoping .... at the factory soon. (stop/work)

19 He's very mean – he never offers .... for anything. (pay)

20 I tried .... sugar in my tea but I didn't like it. (give up/take)

Sentence structure

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

58 *wh* questions

- ***wh*** words are ***who, why, when, what, where*** and ***how***. They are placed in front of the question:
  Are you going?
  → ***When** are you going?*
  → ***Where** are you going?*
  → ***What time** are you going?* etc.

Practice

58a In your notebook, make ten questions from the table below, and give the answers.

Who	
Why	are you going?
When	did they leave?
Where	is she talking to?
What	did they come here?
What time	are you looking at?
How	did it cost?
How much	

Example: *Why did they leave?*
Because they wanted to catch the train.

58b Choose the correct word from the table to fit the space.

‘[1]................. are you watching?’ ‘James Murphy and Elisa Matthews.’

‘[2]................. are you watching them?’ ‘Because we think they are criminals.’

‘Oh? [3]................. did they do?’ ‘We think they robbed a bank.’

‘Really? [4].................?’ ‘Yesterday.’

‘[5]................. are they going now?’ ‘To London.’

‘[6]................. are they travelling?’ ‘By train.’

‘[7]................. does their train leave?’ ‘At half past three.’

‘[8]................. did they take?’ ‘About half a million dollars.’

‘[9]................. don’t you arrest them now?’ ‘Because we’re not sure.’

‘Well, good luck!’

59 *What's he like?*

What's Jim **like**? He's very clever.
What was the weather **like**? It was cold.

Practice

59 Choose the answer from the box that matches each question.

He was tall and thin.
It was really funny.
She's got long hair and glasses.
She's very nice.
They're very noisy.
~~It's very busy.~~
It's red and it's quite small.
He wasn't very friendly.
It's interesting but it's quite long.
It wasn't very difficult.

1 What's New York like?

It's very busy.

2 What's your teacher like?

....

3 What was the film like?

....

4 What does your sister look like?

....

5 What was the exam like?

....

6 What's that book like?

....

7 What are your new neighbours like?

....

8 What does your car look like?

....

9 What was your last boss like?

....

10 What did the thief look like?

....

TEST 2

Part A

A and B meet on the street. Write the conversation, putting the verbs into the correct form and adding all the other words you need.

A: Hello! / What / you / do / here in Bristol?

B: I / stay / my parents.

A: Oh, that's nice. / And how / be / Cardiff? / you / like / it there?

B: Oh yes, I. / It / be / very nice town / but I / sometimes miss / see / my friends in Bristol.

A: And what about the job?

B: Oh, that / be / very good. It / be / a lot more interesting / my last job.

A: Good.

B: Yes. So I definitely / want / stay / Cardiff. / Oh, and I / learn / drive / now too. But there / be / one problem. / I / not got / car.

A: you / buy / one?

B: Well, I can't. / I / not got / money / because I / spend / it all on driving lessons at the moment.

A: Oh well. Never mind.

SCORING

20 points: *Take off a point for each mistake.* Score ☐

Part B

Five of these sentences are correct and five are wrong. Which ones are correct and which ones are wrong?

1 They're going to get married next year.

2 Susan has a bath at the moment.

3 Please don't shout.

4 I forgot to lock the door this morning.

5 This restaurant is a lot expensiver than the one next door.

6 I don't want to stay here.

7 I can't find my bag. I'm sure I left it in a kitchen.

8 Have you got any moneys?

9 She always drives very carefully.
10 He suggested to go to the cinema.

SCORING
10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score ☐

Part C

Circle the correct words to complete the sentences.

1 We haven't got *some/any* milk.
2 She arrived *in/to* Mexico at 2 o'clock.
3 They're planning to *open/opening* a new shop next year.
4 It's very cold tonight. I think *it's snowing/it's going to snow* soon.
5 Would you like *coming/to come* to dinner tomorrow?.
6 *Don't walk/Not walk* on the grass.
7 You play tennis *very good/very well.*
8 Thank you for telling me that. You're *honester/more honest* than your brother is.
9 Zoë and Gareth *stay/are staying* in a hotel in Berlin this week.
10 I think I'm going to take that picture *out of/off* the wall.

SCORING
10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score ☐

Part D

One word is missing from each of these sentences. Rewrite the sentences with the missing word in the correct place.

1 William and David coming here tomorrow.
2 Oh dear, it's starting rain.
3 We haven't got milk.
4 I waited the bus stop for an hour.
5 Travelling by car is more dangerous travelling by plane.
6 This is beautiful picture.
7 What are you going do this afternoon?

8 Ann cooking the dinner tonight.

9 We're having a nice time and weather is lovely.

10 Can I have glass of water?

SCORING

10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score ☐

TOTAL SCORE

Maximum 50 points: *Add up your score.* Total Score ☐

Nouns and adjectives

60 *much, many, a lot of*

We haven't got **much** time.
Are there **many** restaurants in town?
There are **a lot of** new students in the class.

- ***much*** – with uncountable nouns in questions and negative sentences.
- ***many*** – with plural countable nouns in questions and negative sentences.
- ***a lot of*** – with countable and uncountable nouns, usually in positive sentences but we do sometimes use ***a lot of*** in questions and negative sentences.

Notes

- To ask about quantity, we use:
  How much + uncountable noun:
  How much *milk did you buy?*
  How many + plural countable noun:
  How many *students are there in the group?*
- In short answers, we can use ***much*** or ***many*** without a noun:
  Have you got any ... ?
  *Yes, but not **much/many**.*
  *No, not **much/many**.*

Practice

60 Complete the sentences using ***much, many*** or ***a lot of***. Use ***a lot of*** in the positive sentences only.

1 Have you got ..much.. work to do?
2 We bought .a lot of. fruit but no vegetables.
3 There isn't .... information in this book.
4 How .... children have they got?
5 He's got .... problems at the moment.
6 We saw .... beautiful birds on the walk.
7 I don't know .... people here. Do you?
8 There were .... phone calls this morning.
9 We couldn't go out because I didn't have .... money with me.
10 There aren't .... tourists here this year.
11 I don't have breakfast before work but I drink .... tea.
12 Do you smoke .... cigarettes?
13 How .... money did you spend?
14 Are there going to be .... people at the party?
15 She's ill and she's not eating .... food.

61 *a few, a little*

There are **a few** letters on the desk for you, Mrs Andrews.
I like **a little** milk in my tea, please.
Have you got any potatoes? Yes, we've got **a few**.
Do you have any homework to do? Yes, **a little**.

- ***a few*** + plural countable noun
- ***a little*** + uncountable noun

Note: In short answers, no noun is necessary after ***a few*** or ***a little***:
*'Have you got any money?' 'Yes, I've got **a little**.'*
*'Were there many people on the beach?' 'Yes, there were **a few**.'*

Practice

61 Complete the sentences using ***a few*** or ***a little***.

1 There are ..a few.. people coming to visit us tonight.
2 We've only got ..a little.. time to finish this work.
3 I took .... books with me to read on holiday.
4 Can I have just .... juice, please?
5 'Was there any food at the party?' 'Yes, there was ....'
6 I only take .... sugar in my tea because I know sugar's bad for your teeth.
7 'Did you take any photographs at the wedding?' 'Yes, I took ....'
8 I met .... friends for a meal in town last night.
9 'When you were in Africa, did you see any lions?' 'Yes, I saw ....'
10 I'm not a vegetarian but I only eat .... meat.
11 .... flowers are starting to come up in the garden.
12 I'm not sure where we're going for our holidays but I've got .... ideas.
13 I bought .... new cassettes with my birthday money.
14 'Have you got any money with you?' 'I've got ....'
15 'Is there any soap in the bathroom?' 'Yes, there's ....'

62 *some, any, much, many, a lot of, a few, a little*

Plural countable nouns

Positive

I've got	**a few** **some** **a lot of**	friends.

Negative

I haven't got	**any** **many** **(a lot of)**	friends.

Question

Have you got	**any** **many** **(a lot of)**	friends?

Uncountable nouns

Positive

I've got	**a little** **some** **a lot of**	money.

Negative

I haven't got	**any** **much** **(a lot of)**	money.

Question

Have you got	**any** **much** **(a lot of)**	money?

Practice

62 Circle the correct word or words.

1 I'm sorry but I haven't got *[✓ much]/many* time.

2 There are *a few/a little* grapes in the fridge.

3 Have you got *some/any* butter?

4 She's got *a lot of/a little* friends at school.

5 'Do you eat meat?' 'Yes, *a few/a little*.'

6 He made *a/some* lovely meal last night.
7 I met *some/any* friends of yours last night.
8 Do you write *much/many* letters?
9 We waited *a few/a little* minutes and then left.
10 How *much/many* paper do you want?
11 She speaks *a few/a little* Arabic.
12 I like fruit juice but I don't drink *some/much* milk.
13 'Have you got *some/any* spaghetti?' 'Yes, but not *much/many*.'
14 I don't have *much/many* homework to do tonight.

63 *mine, yours, hers, his, ours, theirs:* possessive pronouns

Is that my pen? No, I think it's **mine.**
Whose car is this? It's **ours**.
The red bike is **hers** and the blue one is **his**.

Possessive adjectives

my	your	her	his	its	our	their

Possessive pronouns

mine	yours	hers	his	–	ours	theirs

- A possessive adjective has a noun after it:
  *Is that **your dog**?*
  *This is **my sister**.*
- A possessive pronoun does not have a noun after it:
  *I think this pen is **yours**.*
  *'Whose coat is this?' 'It's **mine**.'*

Note: We do not use ***its*** as a possessive pronoun.

Practice

63a Rewrite the underlined words with a possessive pronoun.

1 Is that my newspaper?
Is that mine?

2 It isn't his car – it's her car.
It isn't his – it's hers.

3 This is a beautiful garden. It's a lot bigger than our garden.
....

4 I'm sorry I ate the chocolates. I didn't know they were your chocolates.

....

5 There's a cat at the window but I don't think it's your cat.

....

6 Can you give this key to Andrew and Melanie? It's their key.

....

7 She's picking up that bag but it's not her bag.

....

8 'Whose book is this?' 'It's my book.'

....

9 What a beautiful painting! Is it your painting?

....

10 Which room is his room?

....

63b Complete the sentences with the correct possessive pronouns or adjectives.

1 I quite like ..our.. house but .yours.. is nicer. (we/you)

2 I don't like ..my.. new teacher at all. What's .yours.. like? (I/you)

3 I can see .... children at the school gates but where are ....? (you/I)

4 All .... friends came to the party and .... three sisters were there too. (they/she)

5 'Is this .... money?' 'No, you put .... in ....: bag.' (I/you/you)

6 She enjoys .... job but he doesn't. He wants to change .... (she/he)

7 I want to change .... computer. I'd like to buy one like .... (I/you)

8 I'm afraid this car isn't .... My parents lend it to me sometimes but it is .... (I/they)

9 .... television has a much better picture than .... (you/we)

10 .... parents live nearby but .... live in Australia. (he/she)

64 *'s* possessive:

This is **her** jacket. *(possessive adjective)*	→	‘Whose is this?’ ‘It’s **hers**.’ *(possessive pronoun)*
BUT		
This is **Helen’s** jacket	→	‘Whose is this?’ ‘It’s **Helen’s**.’
This is my **parents’** flat.	→	‘Whose flat is this?’ ‘It’s my **parents’**.’

- We can use ***’s*** or ***s’*** with or without a noun.

➤ See Stage 1, exercise 7 on the possessive ***’s***.

Practice

64 Complete the sentences using the correct possessives.

1 ‘Have you got ..the doctor's.. phone number?’
‘No, I haven’t but Justine has. It’s in ..her.. address book.’
(the doctor/she)

2 ‘Is this .your. case?’
‘No, it’s ..Liam's.. . ..My.. case is upstairs.’ (you/Liam/I)

3 ‘Did I leave .... glasses here?’
‘No, I think they’re in .... room.’ (I/Emily)

4 ‘Is this .... office?’
‘No, it’s .... office is
down there.’ (Mr Dickinson/his secretary/he)

5 ‘Whose pen is this?’
‘It’s .... Where is ....? Haven’t you got one?’
‘Yes, but I’m looking for .... He can’t find ....’
(I/you/Andrew/he)

6 ‘.................... sister is here today.’
‘Is that .... car outside the flat?’
‘No, that’s ....’ (Jonathon/she/he)

7 ‘Where is the .... library?’
‘It’s downstairs, near the .... office.’
(students/director)

8 ‘Is this .... shopping?’
‘No, it’s ....’ (Jade/we)

65 *the biggest, the most expensive:* the superlative

I think he's **the funniest** man on television.
The first question was **the most difficult** one in the exam.
Today is **the hottest** day of the year.
This is **the best** restaurant in town.

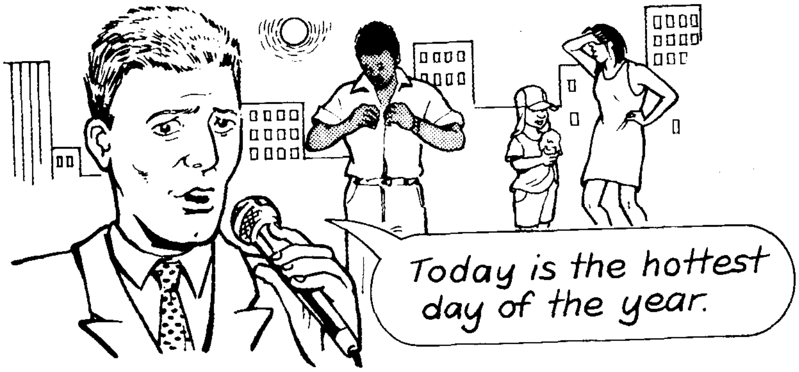
Today is the hottest day of the year.

One syllable adjectives, add ***est***:

cheap → cheap**est**
small → small**est**
hot → hott**est**

Note: Vowel + consonant, double the consonant:
hot → hottest

- Two-syllable adjectives ending in *y*, change *y* → *i* + ***est***:

happy → happ**iest**
noisy → nois**iest**
busy → bus**iest**

- Most other two-syllable adjectives, use ***most***:

boring → **most** boring
honest → **most** honest
careful → **most** careful

- Adjectives of three or more syllables, use ***most***:

beautiful → **most** beautiful
expensive → **most** expensive
interesting → **most** interesting

- Irregular superlatives:

good → best
bad → worst

Note: We usually say ***the*** before superlatives:
the *biggest in the world* or ***the*** *cleverest of them all*

Practice

65a Write the superlatives

hard	hardest	intelligent	
expensive	most expensive	lovely	
good		calm	
careless		boring	
heavy		beautiful	
young		busy	
careful		interesting	
tall		brave	
difficult		bad	
cheap		fast	
clean		patient	
angry		dirty	
dangerous		friendly	
strong		poor	
cold		honest	

65b Complete the sentences using a superlative.

1 This is the strongest case in the shop. (strong)
2 You're the friendliest person here. (friendly)
3 She's the .... student in the group. (intelligent)
4 This is the .... day of my life. (happy)
5 This is the .... hotel in town. (cheap)
6 It's the .... place in the world. (wonderful)
7 It's the .... film I've ever seen. (sad)
8 It's the .... capital city in the world. (dirty)
9 These people are the .... in the country. (poor)
10 This shop sells the .... vegetables. (fresh)
11 It's the .... programme on television. (boring)
12 This is the .... road in the country. (dangerous)
13 It was the .... time of my life. (bad)

66 Comparatives and superlatives

Matthew is **taller than** his brother.
Matthew is **the tallest** in the family.
This shop is **more expensive than** my local shop.
This is **the most expensive** shop in town.

Adjective		*Comparative*		*Superlative*
		er		est
tall	→	tall**er**	→	tall**est**
happy	→	happ**ier**	→	happ**iest**
		more		most
helpful	→	**more** helpful	→	**most** helpful
expensive	→	**more** expensive	→	**most** expensive

- Adjectives that add ***er*** in the comparative, add ***est*** in the superlative.
- Adjectives that use ***more*** in the comparative, use ***most*** in the superlative.

➤ See Stage 1, exercise 10 and Stage 2, exercise 39 on comparatives.

Practice

66 Complete the sentences using the comparative or the superlative. Use the following adjectives.

dangerous busy ~~tall~~
intelligent cold expensive

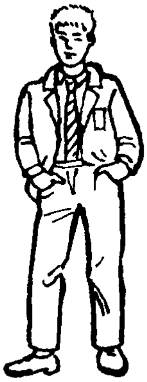

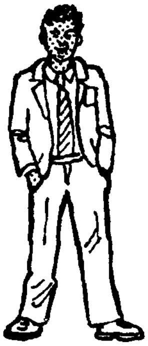

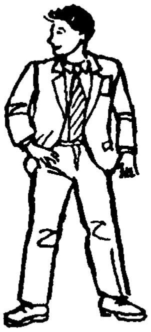

1 Jake David Louis

Jake is taller than David.

David is taller than Louis.

Jake is the tallest in the class.

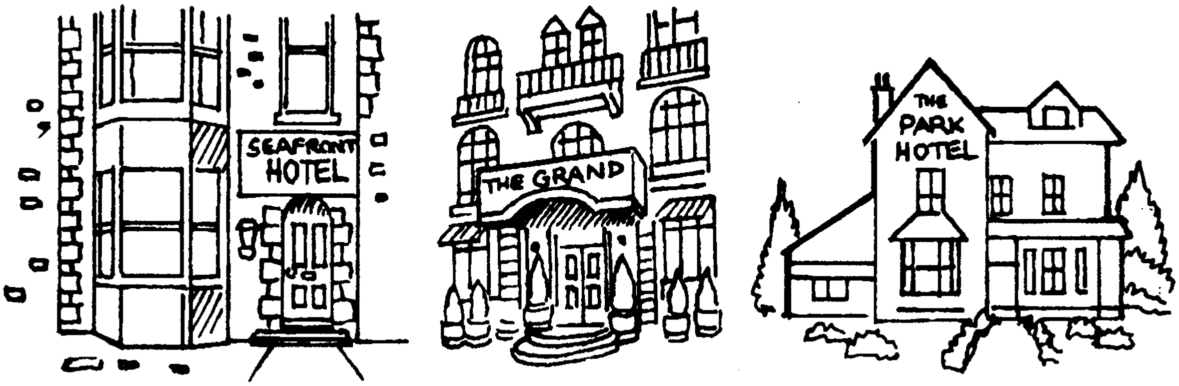
SEAFRONT HOTEL
THE GRAND
THE PARK HOTEL

2 Seafront Hotel £25 per night | Grand Hotel £100 per night | Park Hotel £55 per night

The Park Hotel .... the Seafront Hotel.

The Grand Hotel .... the Park Hotel.

The Grand Hotel .... of them all.

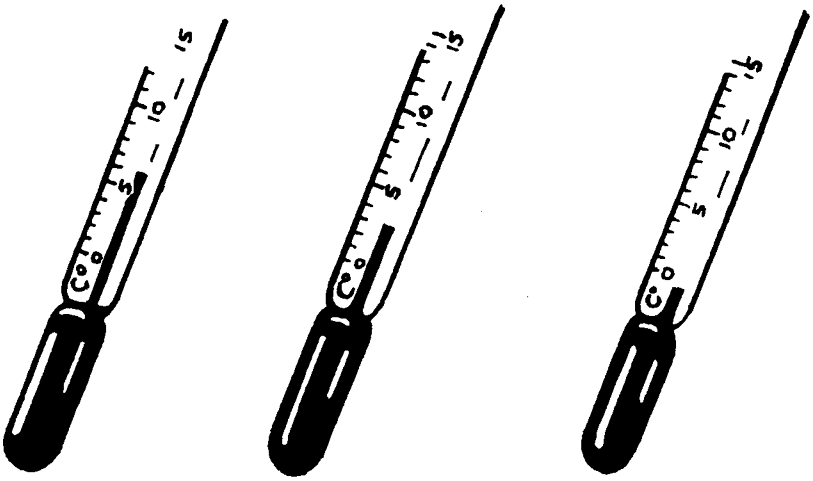

3 December | January | February

January .... December.

February .... January.

February .... month of the winter.

Result 87% Result 75% Result 95%

4 Andrea Charlotte Lola

Andrea .... Charlotte.

Lola .... Andrea.

Lola .... in the group.

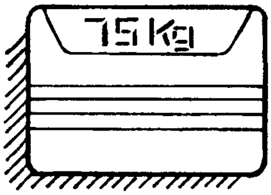

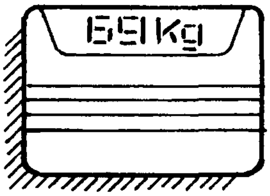

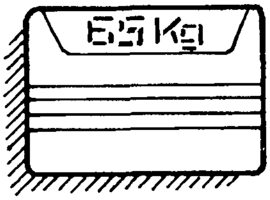

5 James Max Kieran

James .... Max.

Max .... Kieran.

James .... of them all.

Redlands Sports Centre Accident Record

Injuries this year:

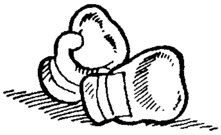

15 injuries

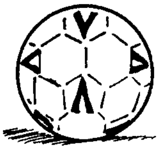

8 injuries

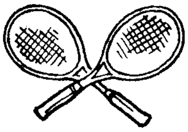

1 injury

6 Boxing .... football.

Football .... tennis.

Boxing .... sport at the centre.

Verbs

67 *I've been to Australia:* Present Perfect tense

FORM

Positive

I You We They	have ('ve)	finished.
She **He** It	has ('s)	

Negative

I You We They	haven't (have not)	finished.
She He	hasn't	

Question

Have	I you we they	finished?
Has	she he it	

Short answers

Yes, No,	I you we they	have. haven't.
	she he it	has. hasn't.

- ***has*, *have*** + past participle
- In regular verbs, the past participle and the past simple are both formed from the infinitive + ***ed***:

Infinitive		*Past simple*	*Past participle*
arrive	→	arrive**d**	arrive**d**
play	→	play**ed**	play**ed**
visit	→	visit**ed**	visit**ed**
stop	→	stop**ped**	stop**ped**

➤ For the past participle of irregular verbs, see Appendix 1.

USE

- To talk about the past with no time reference:
  *Elena **has arrived**.* (present perfect)
  *Elena **arrived** at 2 o'clock.* (past simple)

Elena has arrived.

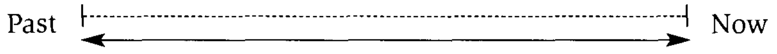

Elena arrived at 2 o'clock.

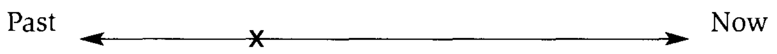

We do not say:
~~Elena~~ ~~**has arrived**~~ *~~at 2 o'clock.~~*
We do not use time words (*yesterday, last week, in the summer,* etc.) with the present perfect. When we use the present perfect, the time is not important or we do not know the time. In the same way, we do not use the present perfect to ask about time. We say:
*When **did** you **go** there?*
NOT *~~When~~* ~~**have you been**~~ *~~there?~~*

- We often use the present perfect with the past participle ***been***. We use ***been*** like the verb ***to go*** and often say ***been to***:
  *I **went** to Paris last year.* but *I**'ve been to** Paris.*
  NOT *~~I've gone to Paris.~~*
  Compare these two sentences:
  *She's **gone** to Canada.* (and she is there now)
  *She's **been** to Canada.* (but she is not there now)
- We often use ***ever*** in the question form:
  *Have you **ever** been to Greece?* (***ever*** = in your life)

Practice

67a Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect. All the verbs in this exercise are regular.

1 I ..have worked.. very hard for this exam. (work)
2 ..Has.. Molly ..answered.. your letter? (answer)
3 She likes him but she .... never .... him. (love)
4 You .... very hard. You can do better work than this. (not/try)
5 Why are the police here? What ....? (happen)
6 My cousins are coming this weekend. They .... with me before. (not/stay)
7 She .... university and .... working in London now. (finish/start)
8 Thank you for everything. You .... me a lot. (help)
9 .... you .... the dishes? (wash)
10 I .... everything to Derek and I think he understands. (explain)

11 Please stay for dinner. Oliver .... a lovely meal. (cook)

12 It's nice to see you here but why .... you .... me before? (not/visit)

13 She .... a lot in her life. (travel)

14 We .... often .... along this road. (walk)

15 .... you .... to phone your mother? (remember)

67b Complete the table below. You can use the list of irregular verbs in Appendix 1.

Infinitive	*Past simple*	*Past participle*	*Infinitive*	*Past simple*	*Past participle*
be	was	been	go		
bring	brought	brought	have		
buy			leave		
catch			make		
come			meet		
do			read		
drink			see		
drive			speak		
find			take		
forget			teach		

67c Complete the sentences with the past simple or present perfect.

1 Alison ..came.. to see me last night. (come)

2 They ..'ve opened.. a new clothes shop in town. (open)

3 Nobody .... at the party on Saturday. (dance)

4 .... you .... your new job? (start)

5 I .... this book. (not/read)

6 .... you .... to your parents? (write)

7 .... you .... well last night? (sleep)

8 Oh no! That beautiful old plate ....! (break)

9 I .... the house early this morning. (leave)

10 We .... in this town before. (stay)

11 When .... you .... the news? (hear)

12 It .... at all last week. (not/rain)

13 I .... my homework so we can go out now. (do)

14 I .... very much when I was at school. (not/learn)

15 Alice .... my letter. Perhaps she's busy. (not/answer)

67d Rewrite the sentences in full. Change the *'s* to ***is*** or ***has***.

1 She's gone to the shops.

She has gone to the shops.

2 He's very worried about his exams.

He is very worried about his exams.

3 I think Emily's a bit tired.

....

4 It's been a lovely holiday.

....

5 Joe's got a bad cold.

....

6 He's always hungry.

....

7 A new supermarket's opened in town.

....

....

8 This museum's very interesting.

....

9 The shop's open now.

....

10 What's happened?

....

67e Ann has travelled to many places. Jess is asking Ann questions about her travels. Read the example dialogue and write three similar dialogues in your notebook, using the information below.

Italy?

Italy - 1990 - two months

Australia?

Australia – ten years ago – six months

India?

India – last year – six weeks

Norway?

Norway – 1985 – one month

Example: *Jess:* *Have you ever been to Italy?*
Ann: *Yes, I have.*
Jess: *When did you go there?*
Ann: *In 1990.*
Jess: *And how long did you stay?*
Ann: *For two months.*

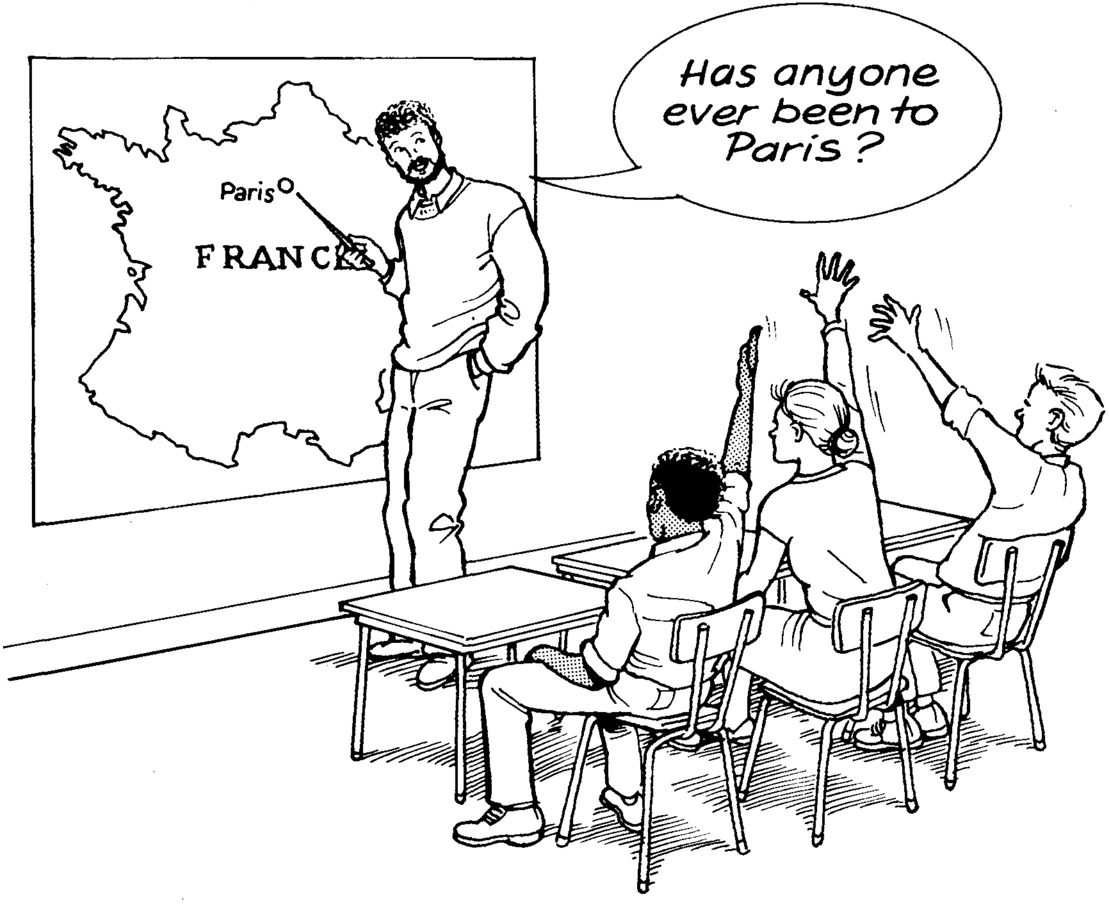
Has anyone ever been to Paris?
Paris
FRANC

68 Present Perfect tense with *for* and *since*

I'**ve lived** here **for** ten years.
We'**ve been** in the new office **since** January.
'How long **have** you **worked** here?' '**For** five years.'

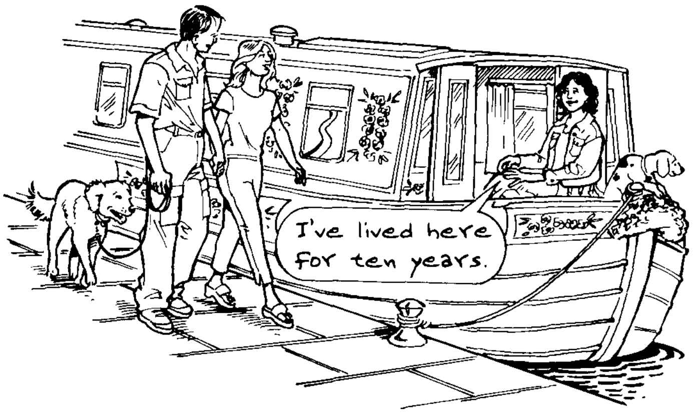
I've lived here for ten years.

- We use the present perfect with ***for*** or ***since*** to talk about something that started in the past and continues in the present:

  *I'**ve been** here* | ***since** January.*
  ***for** five months.*

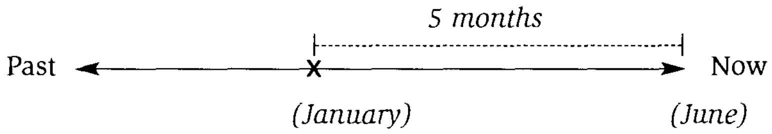
5 months
Past
Now
(January)
(June)

- ***since*** + the point in time when it started
  for + the period of time:

  *I'**ve been** here* | ***since** January.*
  ***for** five months.*

  = I came here | in January. (and I'm still here)
  five months ago.

- Note the difference:

  *I'**ve worked** for the bank **for** three years.*
  (and I still work for the bank now)

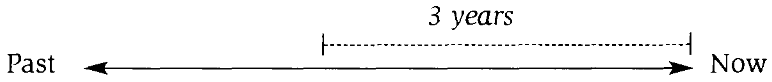
3 years
Past
Now

  *I **worked** for the bank **for** three years.*
  (but I don't work for the bank now)

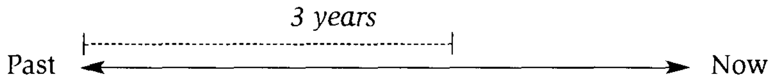
3 years
Past
Now

Note: We do not use ***since*** with the past simple.
NOT: ~~*I **worked** for the bank **since** 1988*~~.

Practice

68a Copy the table into your notebook, putting the following time expressions into the correct columns.

three months
a long time
a few hours
the beginning of the year
December
two years
two o'clock
the war started
1980
Monday
four days
six months
five weeks
my birthday
fifteen minutes
15th May

I've been here for ...	I've been here since ...
three months	*December*

68b Rewrite these sentences, putting the verbs into the present perfect or past simple and using ***for*** or ***since***.

1 She ...... here *for/since* many years and she loves it. (live)
She's lived here for many years and she loves it.

2 I ...... in a primary school *for/since* a few years but I didn't really enjoy it. (teach)
I taught in a primary school for a few years but I didn't really enjoy it.

3 He ...... in this factory *for/since* he left school. (work)
....

4 She ...... asleep *for/since* about eleven hours. I'm sure she'll wake up soon. (be)
....
....

5 I ...... tennis *for/since* two hours this morning but I lost every game. (play)
....
....

6 I ...... this bike *for/since* I was a teenager and I still use it. (have)
....

7 We ...... French at school *for/since* five years but we didn't learn very much. (study)
....
....

8 He ...... smoking *for/since* two years but then he started again. (stop)

....

9 I don't think this is news to you – you ...... about it *for/since* a long time. (know)

....

....

10 They ...... meat *for/since* they saw that film about farm animals. (not/eat)

....

....

68c Complete this extract from a job interview putting the verbs into the present perfect or past simple. Complete the short answers (***has***, ***hasn't***, ***have***, ***haven't***) and choose between ***for*** and ***since***.

A: And [1] have you taught (you/teach) English before?

B: Yes I [2]................. . I [3]................. (teach) English [✓ *for*]/*since* three years in Hong Kong and when I [5]..................................... (come back),

I [6]................. (start) teaching at the Kensington School of English and I [7]..................................... (teach) there [8]*for*/[✓ *since*] then.

A: And [9]..................................... (you/do) a course in teaching English?

B: Yes, I [10]................. . I [11]................. (do) a course before I [12]................. (go) to Hong Kong. I have the certificate here.

A: Thank you. And what about languages? A lot of the students here are Italian and Spanish. [13]... (you/ever/study) Italian or Spanish?

B: No, I [14]................., but I [15]................. (stay) in Italy [16]*for/since* a few weeks last year and I [17]................. (learn) a bit of Italian then.

A: So what languages [18]..................................... (you/study)?

B: Well, I [19]................. (do) French and German at school [20]*for/since* five years and I [21]................. (pass) the exams.

A: And [22]..................................... (you/learn) a language [23]*for/since* you [24]................. (leave) school?

B: Yes, I [25]................. (learn) to speak some Mandarin Chinese when I was in Hong Kong.

69 *She was working in the garden at 7 o'clock this morning:* Past Continuous tense

FORM

Positive

I She He It	was	working.
You We They	were	

Negative

I She He It	wasn't (was not)	working.
You We They	(were not)	

Question

Was	I she he it	working?
Were	you we they	

Short answers

Yes, No,	I she he it	was. wasn't.
	you we they	were. weren't.

USE

- To talk about a past action at some point between its beginning and end:
  *He **was working** in the garden at 7 o'clock this morning.*

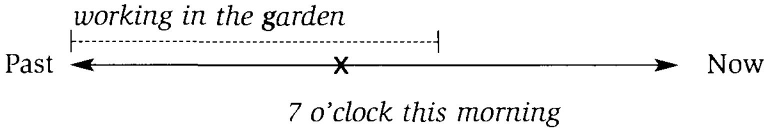
working in the garden
Past
Now
7 o'clock this morning

- An action in the past simple often happens during the activity in the past continuous:
  *They **were having** dinner when we arrived.*

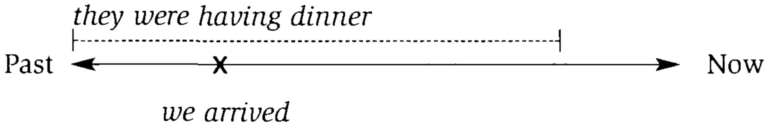
they were having dinner
Past
Now
we arrived

- Note the difference between:
  *They **were having** dinner when we arrived.*
  (They started dinner before we arrived.) and:
  *They **had** dinner when we arrived.*
  (They started dinner at the time of or just after our arrival.)

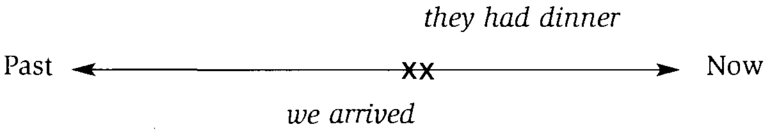
they had dinner
Past
Now
we arrived

Practice

69a A police officer is asking James about his activities yesterday. In your notebook, write the questions and answers using the verbs below the pictures.

1
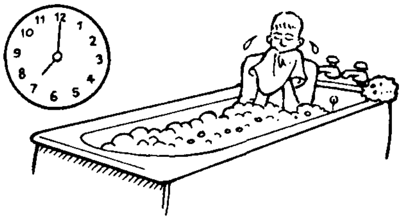
have a bath

'What were you doing at 7 o'clock?'
'I was having a bath.'

2
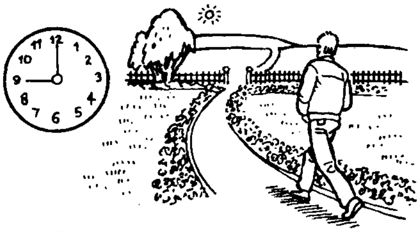
walk in the park

3
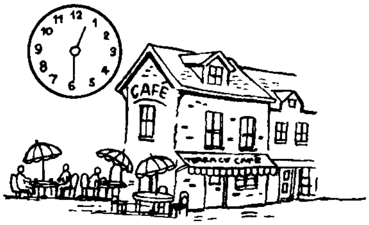
eat lunch in the Terrace Café

4
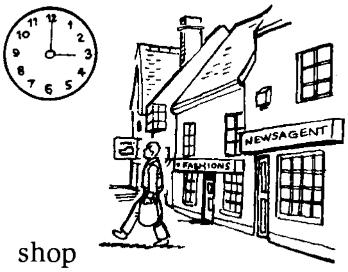
shop

5
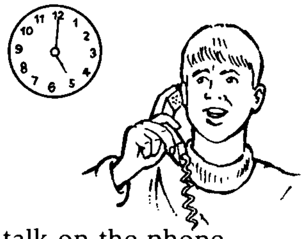
talk on the phone

6
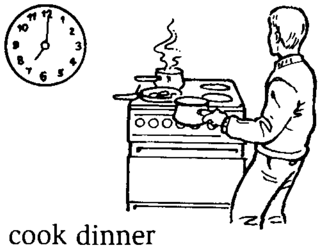
cook dinner

7
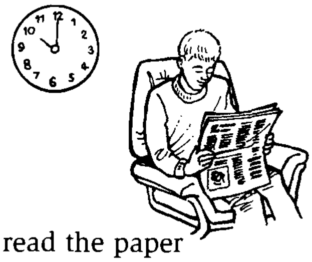
read the paper

8
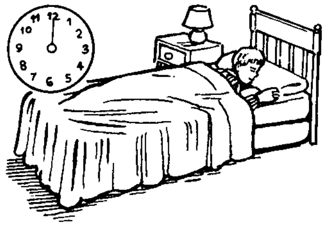
sleep

69b Complete the sentences using ***did***, ***was*** or ***were***.

1 ‘ ..Were.. you working when I rang?’ ‘No, I ..was.. n’t.’

2 ‘ ..Did.. you see me on television?’ ‘Yes, I ..did.. .’

3 ‘What .... you doing when they arrived?’ ‘I .... reading the paper.’

4 ‘.............. they working hard?’ ‘No, they ....n’t.’

5 ‘.............. she crying when you saw her?’ ‘Yes, she ....’

6 '.............. they speak to you when you met?' 'No, they ....n't.'

7 Peter .... still lying in bed so he ....n't hear the doorbell.

8 '.............. the police find the man?' 'No, they ....n't. He .... hiding in an empty building.'

9 We .... shouting to you. ....n't you hear us?

10 I .... looking for some photos when you rang but I ....n't find them.

69c Complete the sentences, putting the verbs in the past simple or past continuous.

1 They ..*were waiting*.. for me when I ..*arrived*.. at the station. (wait/arrive)

2 She ..*was swimming*.. in the sea when I ..*saw*.. her. (swim/see)

3 '.......................... they .... tennis when it .... raining? (play/start)

4 She .... when she .... the news. (cry/hear)

5 We .... home from the theatre when the police .... us. (drive/stop)

6 Everyone .... quiet when the concert .... (go/begin)

7 When she .... him, he .... quite ill. (leave/become)

8 You .... in a restaurant when I first .... you. (work/meet)

9 I .... very angry when I .... the letter. (feel/read)

10 It .... when I .... (rain/get up)

69d In your notebook, write a question and answer in the past continuous and in the past simple.

1 | lie on the beach | leave the beach | start raining |

'What ...... you ...... it ......?'

'We ......'

'What were you doing when it started raining?'

'We were lying on the beach.'

'What did you do when it started raining?'

'We left the beach.'

2

arrive	turn off the television	watch television

'What ...... they ...... you ......?'

'They ....'

'What were they doing when you arrived?'

'They were watching television.'

'What did they do when you arrived?'

'They turned off the television.'

3

see him	start talking to me	talk to Sheila

'What ...... John ...... you ......?'

'He ....'

4

ring	get out of the bath	have a bath

'What ...... she ...... the phone ......?'

'She ....'

5

go straight home	work in the office	hear

'What ...... you ...... you ...... the news?'

'I ....'

6

start	run out of the house	cook the dinner

'What ...... they ...... the fire ......?'

'She ....'

7

pick her up	fall down	talk to a friend

'What ...... she ...... the child ......?'

'She ....'

8

start	become a soldier	work in a bank

'What ...... you ...... the war ......?'

'I ....'

9

open it	play with a friend	arrive

'What ...... he ...... the parcel ......?'

'He ....'

70 *If it rains, I'll stay at home:* first conditional

If I **feel better**, I'**ll go out** tonight.
I'**ll come** and see you **if** I **have** enough time.
What **will** you **do if** you **don't find** your keys?

FORM

- (*If* + present simple,) + (future with ***will***)
  or
  (Future with ***will***) + (*if* + present simple)

  So we can say:
  *If we **run**, we'**ll catch** the train.* or
  *We'**ll catch** the train **if** we **run**.*

- When the ***if*** clause comes first, it has a comma after it. When the ***if*** clause comes second, there is no comma.
- Form of future with ***will:***

Positive

I You She He It We They	will 'll	do it.

Negative

I You She He It We They	will not won't	do it.

Question

Will	I you she he it we they	do it?

Short answers

Yes, No,	I you she he it we they	will. will not/won't.

- ***will*** + infinitive for all persons.
- The short form of ***will not*** is ***won't***.

USE

- We use the first conditional to talk about the future. We are not sure about the ***if*** event: it may happen or it may not happen.
  ***If** I **feel** better, I'**ll go out** tonight.* = (I may feel better or I may not.)
  ***If** I **don't feel** better, I'**ll stay** at home tonight.*

Practice

70a Complete these sentences, putting the verbs into the correct tense.

1 If I ..find.. your book, I ..'ll give.. it to you. (find/give)

2 She .'ll phone.. us if she .has.. any problems. (phone/have)

3 If you .... to the party, I .... with you. (go/come)

4 She .... very happy if she .... that new job. (not be/not get)

5 If you .... with us, you .... a great time. (come/have)

6 I .... for you if you .... late. (not wait/be)

7 That glass .... if you .... it. (break/drop)

8 We .... you if we .... the time. (help/have)

9 I .... Clare the news if I .... her. (tell/see)

10 We.................... in the tent if it .... (sleep/not rain)

70b Match the boxes together and in your notebook, write ten sentences in the first conditional.

she won't get a place at university

I'll do the washing up

you cook the dinner

I write it in my diary

I'm sure he'll understand

you go to bed early

~~it rains~~

I see Sylvia

the weather's nice

I won't have any money

you tell him the problem

we'll eat in the garden

I won't forget the date

~~we'll stay at home~~

you'll feel better in the morning

she fails her exam

~~I'll meet you at the station~~

~~you come by train~~

I'll give her your message

I lose my job

Examples: *If it rains, we'll stay at home.*
I'll meet you at the station if you come by train.

71 Modals: introduction

Can, ***could***, ***may***, ***might***, ***should*** and ***must*** are modal verbs. Modal verbs go before a main verb and they have a meaning of their own.

James **can** swim very well now.
Emma **could** swim when she was three.
It **may** rain tomorrow.
We **might** see you at the weekend.
You **should** go and see the doctor.
You **must** come straight home.

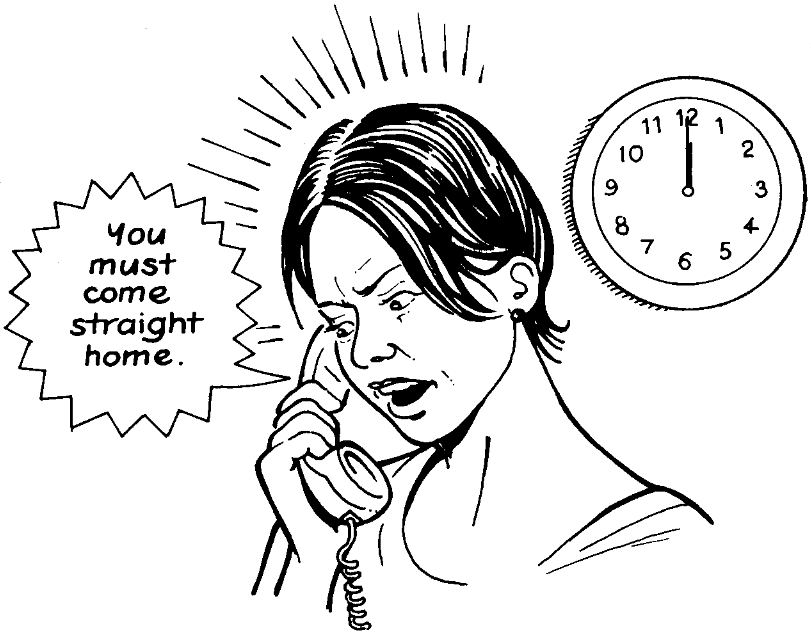
You must come straight home.
11 12 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10

FORM

- Positive:
  Subject + modal + verb
  *We **should** go now.*
  *You **must** stay.*
  *She **can** help us.*
- Negative:
  Subject + modal + ***not*** (or ***n't***) + verb
  *We **mustn't** stay out late.*
  *She **may not** come.*
- Question:
  Modal + subject + verb:
  ***Can** you drive?*
  ***Must** they leave now?*
- Short answers:
  Yes, ***No*** + subject + modal (+ ***not***, ***n't***)
  ***Yes**, I **can**.*
  ***No**, she **shouldn't**.*

72 *can, could*

I **can** help you.
She **can't** read very well.
Can you speak Portuguese?
I **could** swim when I was three.
She **couldn't** come to the party last night.
How many languages **could** you speak as a child?

Notes:

- The negative of ***can*** is ***cannot*** or ***can't***. ***Can't*** is more common.
- The negative of **could** is **could not** or **couldn't**.

➤ Also see Stage II, exercise 49 on ***can, can't***.

USE

- ***can, can't*** is present:
  *I **can** play the piano.*
  *We **can** stop working now.*
  or sometimes future:
  *She **can** come tonight.*
  *I **can't** see you tomorrow.*
- ***could, couldn't*** is past. We use it to talk about ability/knowing how to do something:
  *She **could** play the piano when she was five.*
  *She **couldn't** speak English very well when she arrived.*
- We do not use the positive form ***could*** to talk about events that happened. But we can use the negative form ***couldn't*** to talk about activities/events that were not possible:
  *She **couldn't** come to the party.* (= It was not possible for her to come to the party.)
  NOT ~~*She **could** come to the party.*~~
  *They **couldn't** eat all their dinner.* (= It was not possible for them to eat all their dinner.)
  NOT ~~*They **could** eat all their dinner.*~~
- ***can*** and ***could*** are also used in requests:
  ***Can** you help me?*
  ***Could** you open the door for me, please?*
  ***Can** I have a drink, please?*
  ***Could** we use your phone?*

  can and ***could*** are both correct in requests but ***could*** is a little more polite.

Practice

72a Complete the sentences using ***can, can't*** or ***could, couldn't*** and one of the following verbs.

hear play land understand help
~~come~~ phone drive ~~speak~~ see read

1 She ..*can speak*... three languages.

2 He ..*couldn't come*.. to the party because he had an exam the next day.

3 You .... a car without a licence.

4 Sally .... music but she

.... the violin beautifully.

5 Jack .... very well when he was younger but now he needs to wear glasses all the time.

6 I .... you with your homework now – I'm too busy.

7 I'm sorry. Could you say that again? I .... you because the children were shouting.

8 I .... British people when I first came to Britain but it's easier for me now.

9 I .... you because our phone wasn't working but it's all right now.

10 Helicopters are very useful here because they

.... anywhere.

72b Write requests using ***Can you ...?***, ***Can I ...?*** or ***Could you ...?***, ***Could I ...?***. ***Can*** and ***could*** are both correct in each sentence.

1 I want to have a drink.

Can I have a drink, please?

Could I have a drink, please?

2 I want you to open the door.

Can you open the door, please?

Could you open the door, please?

3 I want you to answer the phone.

....

....

4 I want you to give Roger a message.

....

....

5 I want to turn on the television.

....

....

6 I want you to phone me later.

....

....

7 I want to have the bill.

....

....

8 I want you to meet the children from school.

....

....

9 I want you to help me with my suitcase.

....

....

10 I want to borrow this book.

....

....

73 *may, might*

I **may** start looking for a new job.
We **might** go away this weekend.
May I use your phone?

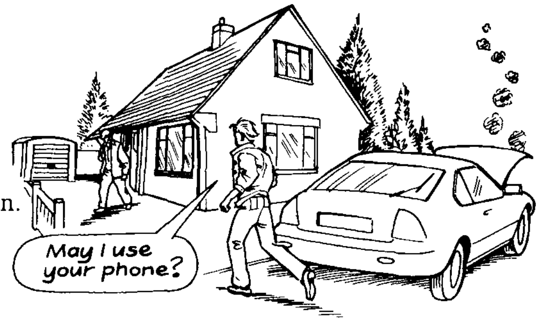
May I use your phone?

Notes

- The negative of ***may*** is ***may not***. We do not say ***mayn't***.
- The negative of ***might*** is usually ***might not***. ***Mightn't*** is possible but is not used very often.

USE

- To talk about possibility in the future:
  *They **may** leave soon.*
  *They **might** leave soon.*
  (It is possible that they will leave soon but I'm not sure.)
- To talk about possibility in the present when used with verbs that are not activities:
  *He **may** be at the office.*
  *He **might** be at the office.*
  (It is possible that he is at the office now but I'm not sure.)

- To make polite requests:
  May *I sit here?*
  May *we come in?*

  We do not generally use ***might*** to make polite requests:
  NOT ~~***Might*** *I sit here?*~~

Notes

- We can use ***May I …?*** or ***May we …?*** for polite requests but we do not use ***may*** when we ask someone to do something:
  NOT ~~***May*** *you open the door, please?*~~
- We do not generally use ***may*** or ***might*** in the question form. We only use the question form in polite requests with ***May I …?*** or ***May we …?***. We sometimes ask the question with ***Do you think …?***:
  Do you think *they* ***might*** *be here soon?*
  NOT ~~***Might*** *they be here soon?*~~

Practice

73 In your notebook, rewrite these sentences using ***may*** and ***might***:

1 It's possible that she's in bed now.

She may be in bed now.

She might be in bed now.

2 I'm sorry but I think I'll be late.

I'm sorry but I may be late.

I'm sorry but I might be late.

3 We are thinking of going to Australia for our holiday.
4 It is possible that we won't come to the party.
5 They are thinking of moving to Scotland next year.
6 I think you're probably right.
7 Is it possible for me to smoke in here?
8 I think he'll feel better tomorrow.
9 Is it possible for us to sit here?
10 I don't think the Government will win this time.
11 The factory will possibly close this year.
12 Tim isn't working very well today but it's possible that he's tired.
13 I think it's going to rain soon.
14 It's possible that the builders will finish the job at the end of the week.
15 I'll go and see Alan – it's possible that he wants some help.

74 *should*

You don't look well. You **should** go home.
He **shouldn't** eat so many sweets – it's bad for his teeth.
Should we leave now?
Do you think I **should** write to him?

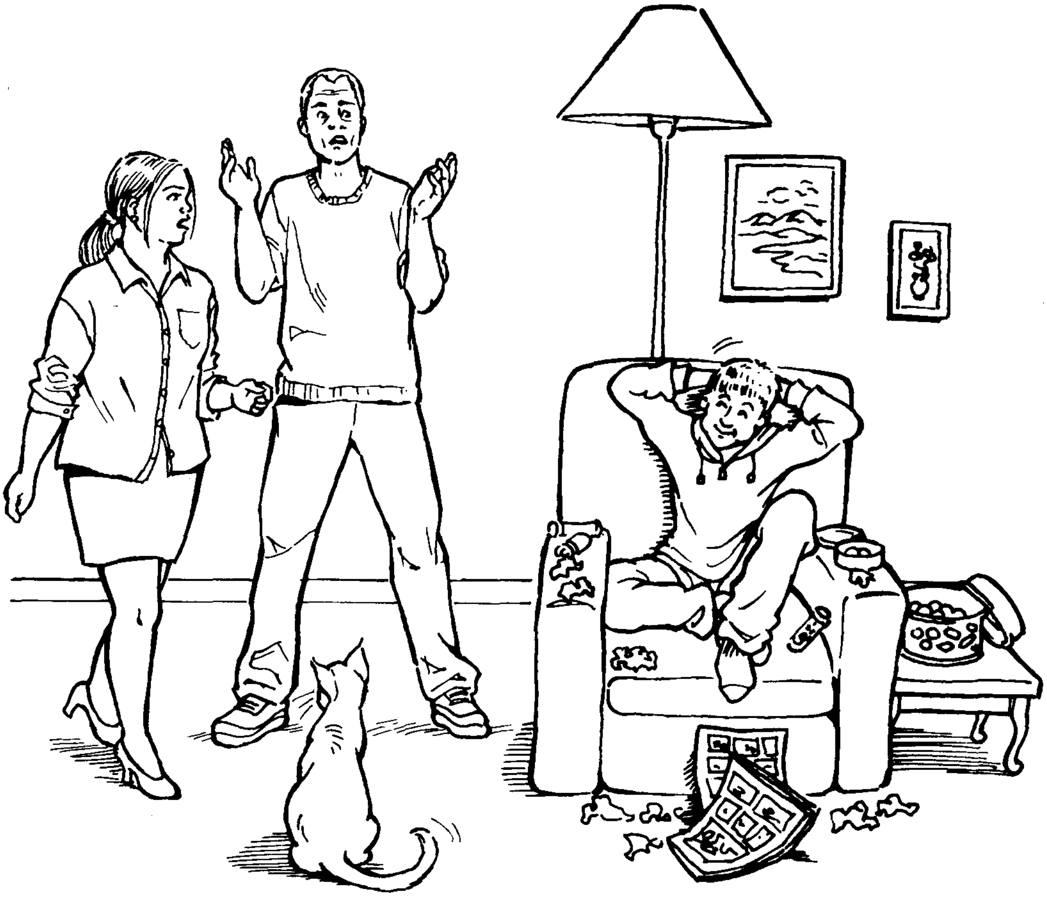

USE

- We often use ***should*** to give advice:
  You ***should*** *go home.*
  (= I think going home is the right thing for you to do.)
  He ***shouldn't*** *eat so many sweets.* (= I think eating a lot of sweets is the wrong thing for him to do.)
- We can use ***should*** to talk about the present or the future:
  We ***should*** *leave now.*
  We ***should*** *leave early in the morning.*
- We often use ***should*** with ***I think ...*** or ***Do you think ...?***:
  I think *we* ***should*** *leave.*
  Do you think *I* ***should*** *write to him?*

Practice

74a In your notebook, complete each sentence it using ***should*** and one of the boxes.

not listen to him

have a party

turn it off now

~~look for another one~~

take it to the garage

stop smoking

~~see a doctor~~

not worry so much

tell him that

not work so hard

go to bed early tonight

have a haircut

1 You look terrible. I think you ..should see a doctor..

2 'I really hate this job.' 'Well then, you...should look for another one..'

3 You've been at the office until 11 o'clock every night this week. You ....

4 It's Jane's birthday on Saturday so I think we ....

5 It's too late to play music – we'll wake up the neighbours. We ....

6 Listen to that terrible cough. She ....

7 He always gives you the wrong advice. You ....

8 The car didn't start again this morning. Do you think we ......?

9 My train leaves at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning so I ....

10 You hair's in your eyes. Don't you think you ......?

11 Everything will be all right. You ....

12 I think he's wrong but ...... I ......?

74b Complete the sentences using ***You should ...*** or ***You shouldn't ...*** and a verb from the box. A verb may be used more than once.

drink	~~eat~~	smoke	take	work	sleep

How to stay healthy

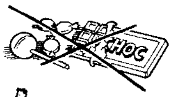

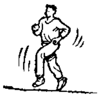

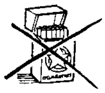

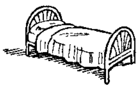

1 ..You should eat.. lots of fresh fruit and vegetables.

2 ..You shouldn't eat.. too much fat.

3 .... too many sweets.

4 .... regular exercise.

5 .... any cigarettes.

6 .... too much coffee.

7 .... for about eight hours a night.

8 .... too hard.

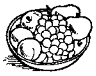

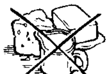

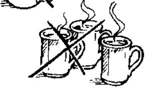

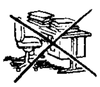

75 *must*

I **must** do some work tonight.
We **must** get up early tomorrow.
You **must not** talk during the exam.

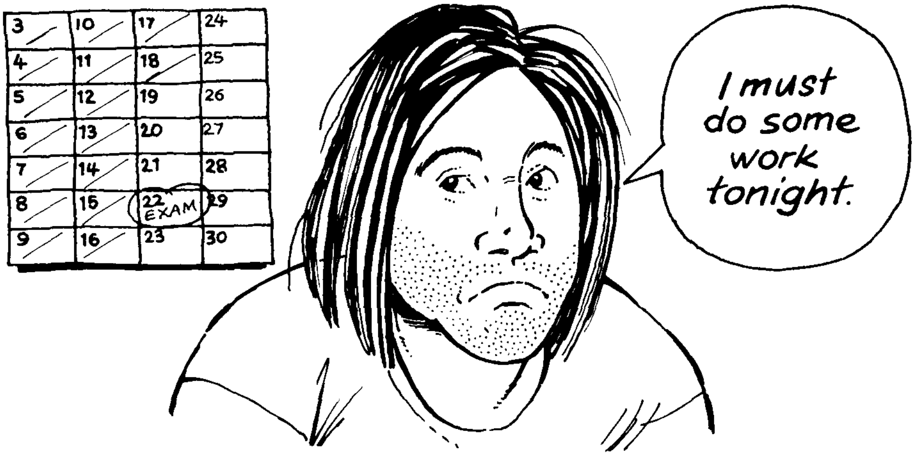

22 EXAM
I must do some work tonight.

USE

- ***must*** *do something* – it is very important to do something.
  must is stronger than ***should***:
  I ***must*** *do some work tonight.*
  (= I have work to do. It is very important that I do some tonight.)
  We ***must*** *get up early tomorrow.*
  (= It is very important to get up early tomorrow.)
  You ***must not*** *talk during the exam.*
  (= It is very important that you do not talk during the exam.)
- We can use ***must*** to talk about the present or the future:
  We ***must*** *go now.*
  We ***must*** *go soon.*

Practice

75a Rewrite the sentences using ***must*** or ***must not***.

1 It is very important for me to study hard for this exam.
I must study hard for this exam.

2 Don't talk in the library.
You must not talk in the library.

3 It is important for her to work harder.
....

4 It is necessary for them to be here at 9 o'clock.
....

5 Do not enter this room.

....

6 It is important for him to see a doctor quickly.

....

7 It is necessary for us to work all night tonight.

....

8 Please listen carefully.

....

9 It is very important that children do not leave school before 4 o'clock.

....

10 It is very important that passengers wait for the train to stop.

....

75b It is very important that Emma passes her exams. Her parents are giving her strong advice. Rewrite the sentences using ***must*** or ***must not, mustn't***.

1 Don't go out to parties.

You mustn't go out to parties.

2 Study hard for these exams.

....

3 Go to all the classes.

....

4 Do all your homework.

....

5 Don't stay out late.

....

6 Don't spend too much time with your friends.

....

7 Read all your notes again.

....

8 Don't go to bed late.

....

Prepositions

76 *next to, between, in front of, above, below, over, behind, under, opposite, along, across, down, up, round, past:* prepositions of position and movement

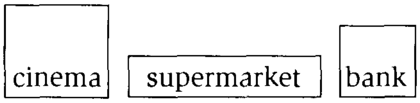
cinema
supermarket
bank

The cinema is ***next to*** the supermarket.
The supermarket is ***between*** the cinema and the bank.

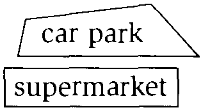
car park
supermarket

There's a car park ***behind*** the supermarket.

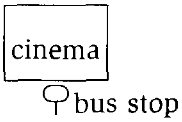
cinema
bus stop

The bus stop is ***in front of*** the cinema.

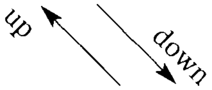

They're running ***down*** the hill.
They're walking ***up*** the hill.

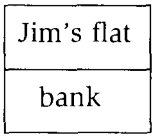
Jim's flat
bank

Jim's flat is ***above*** the bank.
The bank is ***below*** Jim's flat.

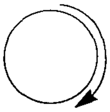

She's driving ***round*** the roundabout.

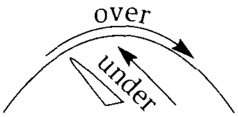

The children are walking ***over*** the bridge.
There's a boat going ***under*** the bridge.

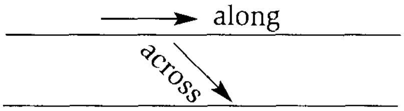
along
across

They're walking ***along*** the high street.
She's walking ***across*** the road.

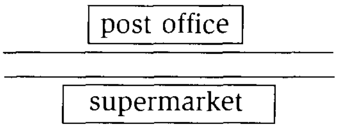
post office
supermarket

The supermarket is ***opposite*** the post office.

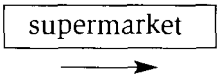
supermarket

He's walking ***past*** the supermarket.

- Prepositions of position:
  next to, between, behind, in front of, opposite, above, below.
  These prepositions usually describe position – where something is.
  They do not usually describe how something is moving. They are very often used with the verb ***to be***.

- Prepositions of movement:
  ***over*, *along*, *across*, *down*, *up*, *round*, *past*.**
  These prepositions usually describe where something is moving.
  There are therefore used with verbs of movement, e.g. *go*, *walk*, *run*.
- Some prepositions can describe position or movement:
  They're sitting ***under*** *the bridge.*
  They're walking ***under*** *the bridge.*

Practice

76a Complete the sentences using the following prepositions.

down ~~below~~ up next to opposite
past along across under between
over above behind round ~~in front of~~

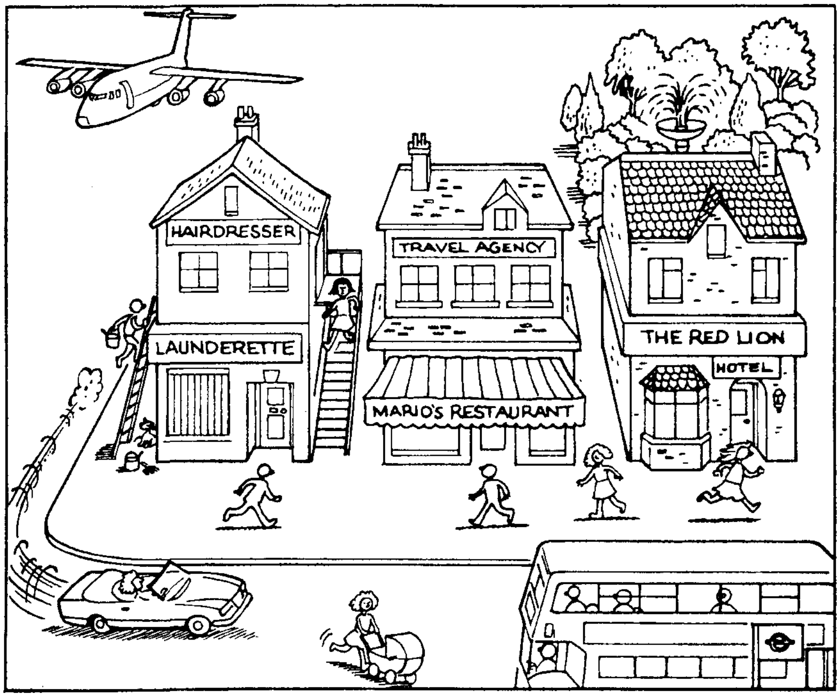

1 Mario's restaurant is ..below.. a travel agency.

2 There's a person ..in front of.. Mario's restaurant.

3 There's a dog .... the ladder.

4 A painter is climbing .... a ladder.

5 Mario's restaurant is .... a hotel called The Red Lion.

6 Someone is running .... the hotel.

7 There's a beautiful garden .... the hotel.

8 There is a bus stop .... the hotel.

9 Mario's restaurant is .... the hotel and the launderette.

10 There's a hairdresser's .... the launderette.

11 Someone is coming .... the steps from the hairdresser's.

12 There are a few people walking .... the road.

13 Someone is pushing a pram .... the road.

14 There's a car coming .... the corner.

15 There's a plane flying .... the town.

76b Complete the story using these prepositions. You may use the prepositions more than once.

around	down	out of	up
into	to	over	under

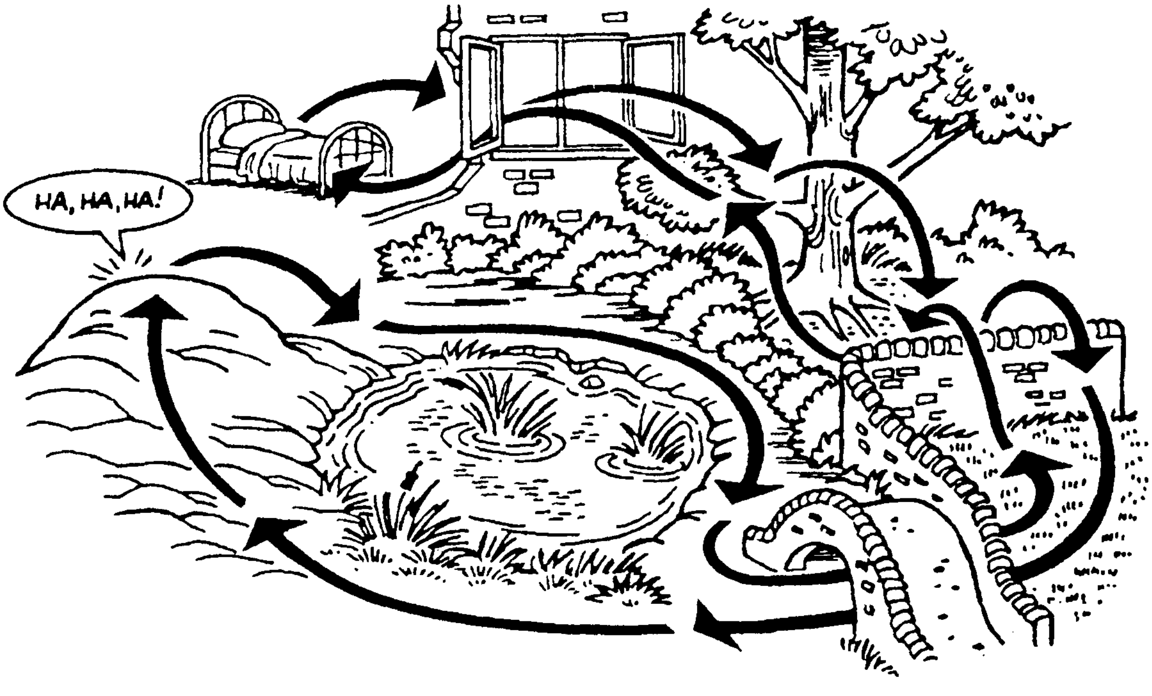

Emma heard a noise. She jumped [1] out of bed and ran [2] to the window. She couldn't see anything. She climbed [3].................. the window, [4].................. the tree and [5].................. the wall. She heard a strange noise. She ran [6].................. the bridge, [7].................. the pond and [8].................. the hill. Suddenly she heard someone laughing loudly. She ran [9].................. the hill, [10].................. the pond, [11].................. the bridge, [12].................. the wall, [13].................. the tree and back [14].................. her bedroom.

77 *before, after*

- ***before, after*** + noun, pronoun:
  *I arrived **before** Dave.*
  *You arrived **after** me.*
- ***before, after*** + clause:
  *We had dinner **before** we went out.*
  *We went out **after** we had dinner.*
- ***before, after*** + gerund:
  *I usually have a hot drink **before** going to bed.*
  ***After** having a hot drink, I usually go to bed.*
- We can use ***before, after*** to talk about the timing of events in the past or the future:
  *I went out **after** dinner.*
  *I'm going out **after** dinner.*
- We use ***before, after*** + present simple to talk about the future:
  *I'm going to learn some Portuguese **before** I go to Portugal.*

Practice

77a In your notebook, write the sentences using ***before*** or ***after***.

1 I had dinner. Then I went out. (before)
I had dinner before I went out.
Before I went out, I had dinner.

2 I'm going to finish my homework. Then I'm going to watch television. (after)
After I finish my homework, I'm going to watch television.
I'm going to watch television after I finish my homework.

3 I must save some money. Then I'm going on holiday. (before)

4 They got married. Then they moved to Australia. (after)

5 I have to clean up the house. Then my parents are going to arrive. (before)

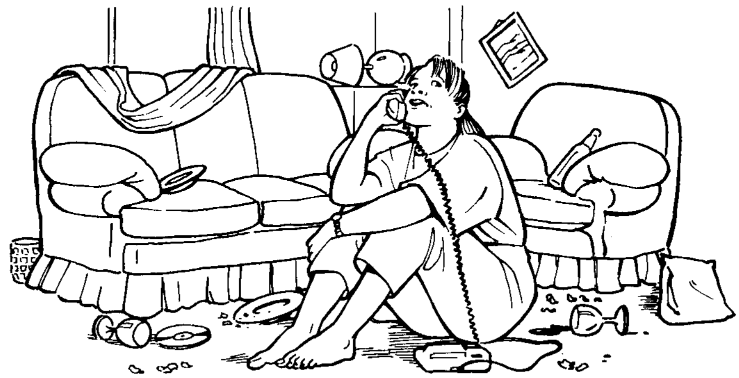

6 Her exams are going to finish. Then she's going to have a holiday by the sea. (after)
7 He could read. Then he started school. (before)
8 I got the new job. Then I had more money. (after)
9 I must phone my parents. Then I'm going to Scotland. (before)
10 He's going to come back from his holiday. Then he's going to look for a new job. (after)

77b In your notebook, write the sentences using ***before*** or ***after***. Use ***before***, ***after*** + gerund where possible. Where this is not possible, use ***before***, ***after*** + clause.

1 I usually have a bath. Then I go to bed. (before)
Before going to bed, I usually have a bath.
I usually have a bath before going to bed.
2 I get home from work. Then we have our dinner. (after)
After I get home from work, we have our dinner.
We have our dinner after I get home from work.
3 She finished school. Then she went to university. (after)
4 I want to buy a newspaper. Then I'm going to get on the train. (before)
5 My grandparents died. Then I was born. (before)
6 I have a swim. Then I like to have a hot drink. (after)
7 I worked in a nightclub. Then I had children. (before)
8 We have a big meal. Then we like to sit and watch television. (after)
9 You should do some more work. Then the exams are going to start. (before)
10 You told her the good news. Then she came round to tell me. (after)
11 I'm going to finish this job. Then I'm going to have a long holiday. (after)
12 He has to finish his work. Then he's going out. (before)
13 He's going to phone us. Then he's going to leave the house. (before)

Gerunds and infinitives

78 *Smoking is bad for you:* the gerund as subject

> **Smoking** is bad for you.
> **Teaching** is an interesting job.
> **Living** in a city can be very expensive.

FORM

- infinitive + *ing*
- Spelling:
  smoke + *ing* → smoking
  live + *ing* → living
  swim + *ing* → swi**mm**ing
  travel + *ing* → trave**ll**ing

➤ See Appendix 2 on spelling rules.

USE

- The gerund can be the subject of a sentence. It acts like a noun:
  Cigarettes are bad for you. → ***Smoking** is bad for you.*

➤ See Stage 1, exercise 28 and Stage 2, exercise 55 on gerunds.

Practice

78 Complete the sentences with a gerund using the following verbs:

~~learn~~ wake up swim take
drink play ~~make~~ read
have walk travel drive

1 ..Making. bread can be very enjoyable.
2 ..Learning.. English is sometimes very difficult.
3 .... to other countries helps you to understand different cultures.
4 .... in the sea is good exercise and it's very good fun.
5 .... alcohol and .... is very dangerous.
6 .... children changes your life completely.
7 .... in the morning is always difficult for me.
8 .... a lot of sport keeps you fit.
9 .... to work is better for you than .... the bus.
10 .... a book at night always helps me go to sleep.

79 The gerund after certain verbs

I usually finish **working** at 5.00.
We enjoy **eating** in the garden in the summer.
She loves **having** visitors.

- We can use the gerund after certain verbs. These verbs include: *enjoy, hate, like, love, start, stop, suggest, finish, give up, miss, prefer, begin, continue, remember.*
- The gerund acts like a noun: *I usually finish work at 5.00.* → *I usually finish* ***working*** *at 5.00.*

Note: The verb ***remember*** can be followed by the gerund or ***to***-infinitive but the meaning is different:
I remember ***posting*** *the letter.*
(= I am looking back now to the posting of the letter. I posted the letter first and later I remembered this.)
I remembered ***to post*** *the letter.*
(= I remembered then and therefore I did it. I remembered first and then I posted the letter.)

Practice

79 Complete the sentences with a gerund using the following verbs.

~~go out~~	be	~~work~~	have	read
play	watch	see	write	listen

1 Mel suggested ..going out.. for a meal.
2 I started ..working.. in this office when I was seventeen.
3 We like .... television on winter evenings.
4 I remember .... afraid of the dark as a young child.
5 I love .... a good book.
6 I prefer .... a shower to a bath.
7 I had to stop .... tennis when I hurt my back.
8 Do you enjoy .... to music?
9 We miss .... all our friends.
10 After I moved away, we continued .... to each other for many years.

80 The gerund after prepositions

She's good at **swimming**.
I'm thinking of **applying** for a new job.
We found the house by **using** this map.

- When we want to use a verb after a preposition, we use the gerund. It acts like a noun:
She's good at tennis. → *She's good at **playing** tennis.*

Practice

80 Complete the sentences with a gerund using the following verbs.

practise ~~take~~ go become pass
get ~~travel~~ do teach save

1 I'm worried about ..taking.. my exams.
2 I've often dreamed of ..travelling. round the world.
3 We talked about .... married one day.
4 I bought some new clothes before .... to the interview.
5 They believe in .... children to look after themselves.
6 I'm tired of .... the same job all the time.
7 She's very happy about .... all her exams.
8 Were you interested in .... a pilot when you were younger?
9 We're not very good at .... money.
10 She learnt to play the piano well by .... every day.

81 The gerund

Check

81 Complete the sentences with a gerund using the following verbs.

work do ~~sail~~ lose run buy
listen ~~swim~~ learn go ~~become~~

1 I enjoy .swimming.. and .sailing.. when I'm by the sea.
2 I think Tim's interested in ..becoming.. a lawyer.
3 .... with children is very interesting but it's also very tiring.
4 We're thinking of .... to Switzerland for our holidays.
5 I've started .... to work every morning to keep fit.

6 He doesn't say anything about the problems because he's afraid of .... his job.

7 .... a new language is a very interesting thing to do.

8 Danny has always hated .... his homework.

9 I'm tired of .... to him all the time. He never listens to me.

10 I remember .... sweets here as a child.

82 *He refuses to help me:* verb + *to*-infinitive

He refuses **to help** me.
We're planning **to have** a party next month.
I've decided **to look for** a new job.

- We use the ***to***-infinitive after certain verbs. These verbs include: *forget, plan, remember, start, try, want, hope, decide, offer, learn, agree, ask, begin, start, continue.*

➤ See Stage 2, exercise 56 on the ***to***-infinitive.

Note: ***start***, ***begin*** and ***continue*** can be followed by the gerund or the ***to***-infinitive.

Practice

82 Complete the sentences using a ***to***-infinitive, using the following verbs.

~~help~~ cook rain ~~phone~~ wake up
finish move be go look after

1 She's agreed ..*to help*.. me with the party.

2 Did you remember ..*to phone*.. your mother when you got back?

3 I'm hoping .... all my work before I go to bed.

4 She asked me .... to the cinema with her.

5 He never learnt .... when he lived with his parents.

6 Please don't forget .... me .... before you leave tomorrow morning.

7 When did you decide .... to Spain?

8 He's always wanted .... famous.

9 It was kind of her to offer .... the children.

10 It was lovely and sunny but then it started ....

83 The infinitive of purpose

I went there **to see** Jessica.
I phoned Megan **to ask** her about her holiday.

- We can use the ***to***-infinitive to give the reason why something is done.

B is the reason for A:

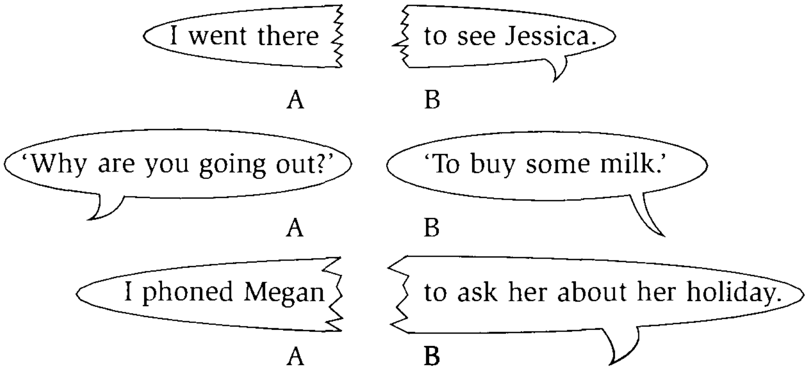
I went there
to see Jessica.
A
B
'Why are you going out?'
'To buy some milk.'
A
B
I phoned Megan
to ask her about her holiday.
A
B

Practice

83a Make eight more sentences from the boxes.

1 ~~I wrote to the school~~
2 ~~I pay him £10~~
3 He opened the fridge
4 They had a nurse
5 We're going to the café
6 She ran to the station
7 She's staying at school late
8 We stopped at the garage
9 I read the newspaper every day
10 She bought some new clothes

a to look for some food.
b to do some work.
c ~~to clean the windows~~.
d to buy some petrol.
e ~~to ask for information about their classes~~.
f to find out what is happening in the world.
g to have some lunch.
h to wear at her interview.
i to catch the train.
j to look after their sick mother.

1 *I wrote to the school to ask for information about their classes.*

2 *I pay him £10 to clean the windows.*

3 ....

....

4 ....

....

5 ....

....

6 ……………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………

7 ……………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………

8 ……………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………

9 ……………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………

10 ……………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………

83b Rewrite the sentences, using a ***to***-infinitive.

1 I wanted to find out the times of the trains and so I phoned the station.
I phoned the station to find out the times of the trains.

2 I stayed in because I wanted to watch a film on television.
I stayed in to watch a film on television.

3 I wanted to thank them for the weekend. That's why I wrote to them.

……………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………

4 She went to university. She wanted to study engineering.

……………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………

5 They had to look for work so they moved to the city.

……………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………

6 I went into town because I needed to do some shopping.

……………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………

7 We planned a meeting. We wanted to discuss the problem of traffic in the town.

……………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………

8 I'm going to write to my uncle and ask for his help.

……………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………

9 You should go to Italy if you want to improve your Italian.

....

....

10 My brother's coming this weekend. He's going to help me paint the flat.

....

....

84 The gerund and the *to*-infinitive

Check

84 Complete the sentences, putting the verbs into the gerund or the *to*-infinitive.

1 .Eating... too many sweets is bad for you. (eat)
2 Do you want ..to stay.. here tonight? (stay)
3 Daisy suggested .... a day at the beach. (spend)
4 I always enjoy .... at night. (read)
5 She's decided .... him a new watch for his birthday. (buy)
6 She's only five but she's very good at .... (read)
7 Do you like .... here alone? (live)
8 I came here .... English. (study)
9 He's agreed not .... it again. (do)
10 I hate .... for buses and trains. (wait)
11 You should learn .... Spanish if you're going to Spain. (speak)
12 .... the bath is the job I hate most. (clean)
13 Why are you so worried about .... him? (meet)
14 'Why did James phone up?' '.................. for Helen's address.' (ask)
15 The children have really missed .... in your lovely big garden. (play)

Sentence structure

WORD ORDER

85 Subject, verb, object

- Every sentence has a verb (***go***, ***stay***, ***live***, ***talk***, etc). The verb can be one word:

V V
He | goes. *She | stays.* *(present simple)*

or a group of words:

V V
They | were singing. *He | was laughing.* *(past continuous)*

- Nearly all sentences have a subject – the person or thing that 'does' the verb:

S S S
She | understands. *They | 're working.* *The baby | 's sleeping.*

- Generally, there are two types of verb:

(a) verbs that take an object:

O O O
She | hit | him. *I | like | them.* *They | took | the money.*

(b) verbs that do not take an object:

I | 'm talking. *We | 're waiting.* *She | 's sleeping.*

Note: Some verbs can be type (a) *or* type (b):

(a) *She opened the door.* (b) *The door opened.*
(a) *I'm writing a letter.* (b) *I'm writing.*

Practice

85 In your notebook, copy these sentences and label them with ***S***, ***V*** and ***O***.

S V
1 The men | are working.

S V O
2 He | 's going to write | a letter.

S V
3 I | don't understand.

4 He didn't say anything.

5 I like ice cream.

6 They left.
7 We ate breakfast.
8 I didn't take your car.
9 They're waiting.
10 She's reading a book.
11 I'm going to visit my mother.
12 She isn't going to stay.
13 We were watching television.
14 I didn't see anything.
15 I don't agree.

86 *and, but, so, because:* conjunctions

and

I went to town ***and*** *(I) did some shopping.*
positive positive

Note: It is not necessary to repeat ***I***.

but

I like living in this city ***but*** *it's very expensive.*
positive negative

They haven't got much money ***but*** *they're very happy.*
negative positive

so

*It was a very wet day (****and****)* ***so*** *we stayed at home.*
reason result

Note: We sometimes say ***and so***.

because

I didn't go to work ***because*** *I felt ill.*
result reason

Note: We sometimes start a sentence with ***because***:
Because *I felt ill, I didn't go to work.*

Practice

86 Complete the sentences using ***and, but, so*** or ***because***.

1 It was a lovely day ..so.. we decided to go out.

2 We walked to the station ..and.. caught the train.

3 I like John very much .... I don't like his brother.

4 I'd like to live somewhere by the Mediterranean .... I love the sun.

5 She enjoys learning English .... she finds it very difficult.

6 In the end, the restaurant had to close down .... very few people went there.

7 I got up .... had my breakfast.

8 I'm very busy today .... I can't come and see you.

9 It's a very interesting job .... the pay isn't very good.

10 We can't go out tonight .... we haven't got any money.

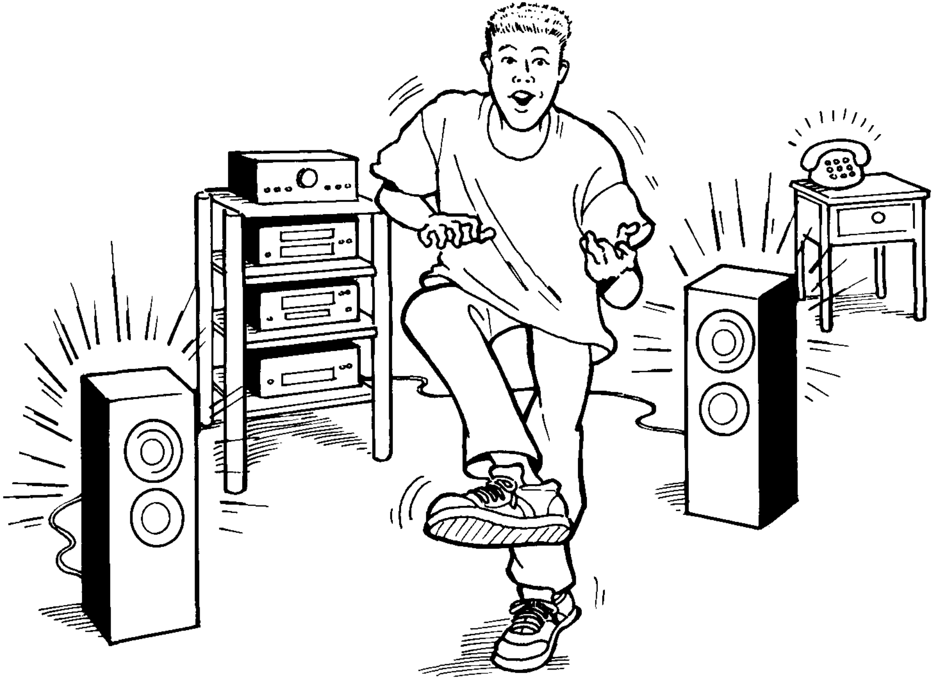

11 The music was playing very loudly .... I didn't hear the telephone.

12 He went to the theatre last night .... had a wonderful time.

13 They didn't want to walk home .... it was very dark.

14 It's a beautiful place .... the people aren't very friendly.

15 I felt very tired .... I left the party early.

TEST 3

Part A

A TV reporter is interviewing a fire officer about a fire in a hotel. Write the conversation in your notebook, putting the verbs into the correct tense and form and adding all the other words you need.

A: How long / you / be / here?

B: Since 12.30. / We / think / fire / start / at about 12.15. / A lot / the hotel guests / sleep / when / fire / start. / Fortunately, they / wake up / when they / hear / fire alarm / and they all / escape.

A: And how / fire / start?

B: We / not / know / but / we / think / one of the guests / smoke / cigarette / in bed when he / fall asleep.

A: Oh dear.

B: Yes. / Smoke / in bed / be / very dangerous. / Smokers should never / smoke / in bed.

A: Well, this is / big / and / expensive / hotel in the city. / Where / the guests / going to / stay / now?

B: Sorry. I / can't / answer / any more questions. / I / must / go back to / fire.

SCORING

20 points: *Take off a point for each mistake.* Score ☐

Part B

Circle the correct words to complete the sentences.

1 'Is that Kate's bike?' 'No, it's *my/mine*.'

2 *Swimming/To swim* is very good exercise.

3 If you *have/will have* any problems, I will help you.

4 I stayed in bed *so/because* I felt ill.

5 How *much/many* time have you got?

6 He *waited/was waiting* for me when I arrived at the airport.

7 I phoned Alice and Mary *to invite/for inviting* them to the party.

8 We *lived/have lived* here since 1999.

9 He took his umbrella *because/so* it was raining.
10 *Have you worked/Did you work* here since you left school?

SCORING
10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score ☐

Part C

Put the verbs into the correct tense and form.

1 .... a good time last weekend? (you/have)
2 I .... that film three times but I'd like to see it again. (see)
3 She .... to Mary when I saw her in town. (talk)
4 Where .... for your holidays next year? (you/go)
5 Be careful with that glass. If you drop it, it .... (break)
6 I usually .... with Joanna on Saturday nights but she's away this weekend. (go out)
7 Kevin .... anything since he got up this morning. (not/eat)
8 'Where's Annie?' 'She .... the shopping at the moment.' (do)
9 It was a beautiful morning. The sun .... and the birds .... (shine) (sing)
10 If you .... harder, you'll fail the exam. (not/study)

SCORING
10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score ☐

Part D

Find the mistake in each sentence and rewrite it correctly.

1 What is your girlfriend look like?

....

2 I ran along the footpath and above the bridge.

....

....

3 He shouldn't to be so lazy.

....

4 There are some sweets here. Are they your?

....

....

5 'Why did you go to Manchester?' 'For finding a new job.'

....

....

6 I'm thinking of buy a new car.

....

7 There isn't many food in the house.

....

8 The bus stop is in front the school.

....

9 It was raining because we decided to stay at home.

....

....

10 Can I have a little apples?

....

SCORING

10 points: *Give yourself a point for each correct answer.* Score ☐

TOTAL SCORE

Maximum 50 points: *Add up your score.* Total Score ☐

Appendices

Appendix 1 Common irregular verbs

Infinitive	*Past simple*	*Past participle*
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

The following verbs can be regular (**ed**) or irregular (**t**):

burn	burned burnt	burned burnt
dream	dreamed dreamt	dreamed dreamt
learn	learned learnt	learned learnt
smell	smelled smelt	smelled smelt

Appendix 2 Basic spelling rules

1 *y* → ***i*** before ***ed***, ***er***, ***est***, ***ly***
y → ***ie*** before ***s***
y changes to ***i*** in words ending in consonant + *y* before adding another ending.
(Consonants: *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, y, z.* Vowels: *a, e, i, o, u.*)

- Verbs in the past simple with ***she***, ***he***, ***it***:
  y → ***i*** before adding ***ed***:
  hurry → *hurr**ied***
  try → *tr**ied***

- Comparative ***er*** ending and superlative ***est*** ending:
  y → ***i*** before adding ***er*** or ***est***:
  happy → *happ**ier*** → *happ**iest***
  noisy → *nois**ier*** → *nois**iest***

- Adverbs of manner:
  y → ***i*** before adding ***ly***:
  easy → *eas**ily***
  hungry → *hungr**ily***

- Verbs in the present simple with ***she***, ***he***, ***it***:
  y → ***ie*** before adding ***s***:
  carry → *carr**ies***
  worry → *worr**ies***

- Plural nouns:
  y → ***ie*** before adding ***s***:
  baby → *bab**ies***
  lady → *lad**ies***

Note: *y* does not change to ***i*** in words ending in vowel + *y*:
play → *plays*
enjoy → *enjoyed*
boy → *boys*

2 + *e*

- Words ending in ***s***, ***ch***, ***sh*** or ***x***, add ***e*** before final ***s***:
  glass → *glass**es***   *pass* → *pass**es***
  match → *match**es***   *catch* → *catch**es***
  dish → *dish**es***   *wash* → *wash**es***
  box → *box**es***   *fix* → *fix**es***

- Words ending in consonant + ***o*** often add ***es***:
  tomato → *tomato**es***
  potato → *potato**es***
  But words ending in vowel + ***o***, add ***s***:
  radio → *radio**s***
  And abbreviated nouns ending in ***o***, add ***s***:
  kilo → *kilo**s*** (kilogramme)
  photo → *photo**s*** (photograph)

Note: Also *do* → *do**es***, *go* → *go**es***

3 $\cancel{e}$

We drop the single ***e*** at the end of a word before adding another ending:

- Before ***ing***:
  smile → *smil**ing***
  live → *liv**ing***

- Before ***ed***:
  love → *lov**ed***
  dance → *danc**ed***

- Before ***er*** and ***est***:
  nice → *nic**er*** → *nic**est***
  large → *larg**er*** → *larg**est***

Note: Verbs ending in ***ee***:
see → *see**ing***
agree → *agree**ing*** → *agree**d***
free → *free**ing*** → *free**d***

4 *g* → *gg*

Words ending in vowel + consonant, double the consonant before adding another ending:

- Before ***ing***:
  stop → *sto**pp**ing*
  swim → *swi**mm**ing*

- Before ***ed***:
  plan → *pla**nn**ed*
  rob → *ro**bb**ed*

- Before ***er*** and ***est***:
  big → *bi**gg**er* → *bi**gg**est*
  hot → *ho**tt**er* → *ho**tt**est*

Notes

- Do not double the consonant when the word ends in two vowels + consonant:
  quiet → *quieter* → *quietest*
  repeat → *repeating*
- Do not double the consonant when the syllable is not stressed:
  enter → *entering*
  happen → *happening*
  remember → *remembering*
- But when the unstressed syllable ends in ***l***, the consonant does double:
  travel → *trave**ll**ing*
- ***y*** and ***w*** are not consonant sounds at the end of a word and so they do not double:
  play → *playing*
  low → *lower* → *lowest*

Appendix 3 Use of short forms (contractions)

In spoken English, we usually use short forms (***'s***, ***'re***). It is also now quite common to use short forms (contractions) in written English.

Short forms

am	→	'm
is	→	's
are	→	're
has	→	's
have	→	've
had	→	'd
will	→	'll
would	→	'd

Note: We do not use short forms in positive short answers:
Are you Irish? Yes, I am. (NOT ~~*Yes, **I'm.***~~)
Is Alan here? Yes, he is. (NOT ~~*Yes, **he's.***~~)
But we can use the short forms in negative short answers:
No, I'm not.
No, she isn't/'s not.
No, they aren't/'re not.

1 ***is*** → ***'s***
has → ***'s***

We can use the ***'s*** short form after pronouns:
*She**'s** not here at the moment.*
(is)
*He**'s** got a bad cold.*
(has)
And we can use the ***'s*** short form after question words:
Who, What, Where, When, Why, How:
*Who**'s** coming?*
(is)
*What**'s** she got?*

(has)
We can also use the ***'s*** short form after nouns and names:
*Jane**'s** coming tomorrow.*
(is)
*The school**'s** got a new library.*
(has)

But we do not use the short form when the word ends in ***s***, ***z***, ***sh***, ***ge***, ***ch*** or ***x*** (after the sounds /s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /dʒ/, /tʃ/, /ks/):
The class is finishing now. (NOT ~~*The class's ...*~~)
The fish is very expensive. (NOT ~~*The fish's ...*~~)
My watch has broken.
This sponge is very soft.
This box is empty.
The old village has grown into a town.

2 ***are*** → ***'re***
have → ***'ve***

We can use the ***'re*** and ***'ve*** short forms after pronouns:
*They**'re** coming home tomorrow.*
*You**'re** quite right.*
*We**'ve** done all our work.*
*They**'ve** gone out.*

But we do not use the ***'re*** and ***'ve*** short forms after nouns and names or after question words. We use the full forms ***are*** and ***have***:
The students are doing their exams. (NOT ~~*The students're ...*~~)
The shops have closed now. (NOT ~~*The shops've ...*~~)
Who are you going to see? (NOT ~~*Who're ...*~~)
My mother and I are going to visit my sister in Australia.
My bags have gone.

3 Negative short forms:
not → ***n't*** (*isn't, aren't, wasn't, weren't,* etc.)
Note: *will not* → *won't*

We can use the ***n't*** short form after any pronouns, nouns or names:
*Emma is**n't** here.*
*The lectures are**n't** very interesting.*
*My sister does**n't** live with us.*

We can also shorten the negative by using the positive short form + ***not*** (*'s not, 're not, 've not*). This is not so common as the ***n't*** short form. We use it to emphasise the *not*. We can use this whenever it is possible to use **'s**, **'re**, **'ve**:
*No, they**'re not** coming.*
*He's working quite hard but he**'s not** learning very much.*

Appendix 4 Common first names

Male

Adam
Alex
Andrew/Andy
Anthony/Tony
Ben
Charles/Charlie
Daniel/Danny/Dan
David/Dave
Dominic
Gregory/Greg
Ian
Jack
James/Jim
Joe
John
Jonathon
Joseph/Joe
Kevin
Mark
Matthew
Michael/Mike
Nicholas/Nick
Oliver
Paul
Peter/Pete
Philip/Phil
Richard
Robert/Rob/Bob
Simon
Sam
Stuart
Thomas/Tom
Timothy/Tim
William/Will/Bill

Female

Alice
Amanda
Amy
Andrea
Anna
Anne
Carol
Charlotte
Chloe
Clare
Eleanor
Emily
Emma
Fiona
Gemma
Hannah
Helen
Jane
Jennifer/Jenny
Jessica/Jessie
Joanna/Jo
Karen
Kathryn/Kathy
Katy
Kelly
Laura
Megan
Pamela/Pam
Rose
Ruth
Sarah
Susan/Sue
Tanya

Appendix 5 Countries and nationalities

Country	*Nationality*
Algeria	Algerian
America	American
Argentina	Argentinian
Australia	Australian
Austria	Austrian
Belgium	Belgian
Bolivia	Bolivian
Brazil	Brazilian
Britain	British
Bulgaria	Bulgarian
Canada	Canadian
Chile	Chilean
Colombia	Colombian
Croatia	Croatian
Cuba	Cuban
Cyprus	Cypriot
Czech Republic	Czech
Denmark	Danish

Country	*Nationality*	*Country*	*Nationality*
Ecuador	Ecuadorian	Nigeria	Nigerian
Egypt	Egyptian	North Korea	North Korean
El Salvador	El Salvadorian	Norway	Norwegian
England	English	Oman	Omani
Finland	Finnish	Pakistan	Pakistani
France	French	Panama	Panamanian
Germany	German	Paraguay	Paraguayan
Greece	Greek	Peru	Peruvian
Guatemala	Guatemalan	Poland	Polish
Holland	Dutch	Portugal	Portuguese
Honduras	Honduran	Romania	Romanian
Hungary	Hungarian	Russia	Russian
India	Indian	Saudi Arabia	Saudi
Indonesia	Indonesian	Scotland	Scottish
Iran	Iranian	Serbia	Serbian
Iraq	Iraqi	South Africa	South African
Ireland	Irish	South Korea	South Korean
Israel	Israeli	Spain	Spanish
Italy	Italian	Sudan	Sudanese
Japan	Japanese	Sweden	Swedish
Jordan	Jordanian	Switzerland	Swiss
Korea	Korean	Syria	Syrian
Kuwait	Kuwaiti	Thailand	Thai
Lebanon	Lebanese	Tunisia	Tunisian
Libya	Libyan	Turkey	Turkish
Malaysia	Malaysian	Uruguay	Uruguayan
Morocco	Moroccan	Wales	Welsh
Nicaragua	Nicaraguan		

Key

In your answers, you can use the contracted or uncontracted form of verbs, e.g. ***She is coming.*** or ***She's coming***. Both of these sentences are correct. The Key does not always give the verb in both the contracted and the uncontracted forms but both forms are generally correct. There are only a few occasions when it is not possible to use a contracted form. See Appendix 3 on short forms.

STAGE 1

1a 1 three bananas 2 two newspapers
3 four girls 4 two telephones
5 three cameras 6 six spoons
7 four pencils 8 three birds 9 four chairs
10 three cups

1b

address	*addresses*
mountain	*mountains*
lorry	*lorries*
waitress	*waitresses*
secretary	*secretaries*
sandwich	*sandwiches*
child	*children*
match	*matches*
flower	*flowers*
vegetable	*vegetables*
family	*families*
dictionary	*dictionaries*
eye	*eyes*
bag	*bags*
box	*boxes*
school	*schools*
lunch	*lunches*
city	*cities*
hotel	*hotels*
watch	*watches*
animal	*animals*
fly	*flies*
bus	*buses*
man	*men*
orange	*oranges*
person	*people*
church	*churches*
egg	*eggs*
apple	*apples*
day	*days*
boy	*boys*
glass	*glasses*
dish	*dishes*
beach	*beaches*
dress	*dresses*
foot	*feet*

2 1 a 2 an 3 a 4 an 5 a 6 a 7 an 8 a
9 a 10 an

3 1 There's 2 There are 3 Is there
4 There's 5 Is there 6 There are
7 Are there 8 There are 9 Is there
10 There's

4a 1 us 2 We ... them 3 him 4 I ... her
5 He ... her ... she ... him 6 them ... I ...
them 7 I ... she ... me 8 us 9 they ... her
10 me

4b 1 it 2 them 3 him 4 me 5 you ... me
6 us 7 her 8 it 9 her 10 them 11 him
12 it 13 her 14 you 15 us

5 1 The rooms are small. / They're small rooms.
2 It's not a long story. / The story's not long.
3 The children are happy. / They're happy children.
4 The restaurant's dirty. / It's a dirty restaurant.
5 The books are heavy. / They're heavy books.
6 The house is cold. / It's a cold house.
7 The village is quiet. / It's a quiet village.
8 The clothes are not cheap. / They're not cheap clothes.
9 The garden's pretty. / It's a pretty garden.
10 The language is difficult. / It's a difficult language.

6 1 her 2 your 3 our 4 his 5 their 6 my
7 your 8 its 9 her 10 their 11 her 12 his
13 my 14 their 15 your

7a 1 Anne's 2 Andrew's 3 your brother's 4 the teacher's 5 The dog's 6 Judy's 7 my wife's 8 That bird's 9 Jeff's 10 the doctor's

7b 1 Susan's 2 your husband's 3 Robert and Sarah's 4 teachers' 5 children's 6 men's 7 Alice's 8 month's 9 students' 10 my mother's

8 1 car keys 2 top of the garden 3 bedroom window 4 hotel room 5 school gates 6 bottom of the hill 7 side of the house 8 bathroom light 9 town clock 10 sea air

9 1 that 2 These 3 That 4 This 5 those 6 this 7 These 8 Those

10a

fast	*faster*
easy	*easier*
slow	*slower*
strong	*stronger*
dirty	*dirtier*
small	*smaller*
bad	*worse*
happy	*happier*
cold	*colder*
fat	*fatter*
thin	*thinner*
nice	*nicer*
heavy	*heavier*
old	*older*
big	*bigger*
angry	*angrier*
long	*longer*
good	*better*
clean	*cleaner*
short	*shorter*

10b 1 are cheaper than 2 is heavier than 3 is warmer than 4 is faster than 5 is older than 6 is longer than 7 is earlier than 8 is younger than

10c 1 English is easier than Japanese.
2 Karen is shorter than her twelve-year-old son.
3 My suitcase is heavier than your suitcase.
4 My father is older than my mother.
5 Boats are slower than planes.
6 The Mississippi is longer than the Nile.
7 The Atlantic is colder than the Mediterranean.
8 Wool is warmer than cotton.
9 Trains are faster than buses.
10 The Empire State building is taller than the Statue of Liberty.

11a 1 It's 2 We aren't 3 I'm 4 She isn't 5 They're 6 It isn't 7 He's 8 I'm not 9 You're 10 We're

11b 1 is 2 are 3 am 4 is 5 are 6 is 7 Are 8 is 9 is 10 are 11 are 12 is 13 is 14 Am

12a 1 's got
2 've got
3 's got
4 've got
5 's got
6 've got
7 's got
8 've got
9 's got
10 's got
11 's got
12 's got

12b 1 Jill hasn't got ... / Jenny's got ...
2 Jill's got ... / Jenny hasn't got ...
3 Jill's got ... / Jenny hasn't got ...
4 Jill hasn't got ... / Jenny's got
5 Jill hasn't got ... / Jenny's got ...
6 Jill's got ... / Jenny hasn't got ...
7 Jill's got ... / Jenny hasn't got ...
8 Jill's got ... / Jenny hasn't got ...
9 Jill hasn't got ... / Jenny's got ...
10 Jill hasn't got ... / Jenny's got ...

12c 1 'Have you got your swimming costume?' 'Yes, I have.'
2 'Have you got your umbrella?' 'No, I haven't.'
3 'Have you got your travel?' 'Yes, I have.'
4 'Have you got your camera?' 'No, I haven't.'

5 ‘Have you got your French phrase book?’ ‘Yes, I have.’
6 ‘Have you got your passport?’ ‘Yes, I have.’
7 ‘Have you got your address book?’ ‘“No, I haven’t.’
8 ‘Have you got your ticket?’ ‘Yes, I have.’
9 ‘Have you got your French francs?’ ‘Yes, I have.’
10 ‘Have you got your sunglasses?’ ‘No, I haven’t.’

12d 1 Has ... got ... hasn’t
2 Have ... got ... have
3 Have ... got ... have
4 Has ... got ... hasn’t
5 Has ... got ... hasn’t
6 Have ... got ... have
7 Have ... got ... have
8 Has ... got ... has
9 Have ... got ... haven’t
10 Have ... got ... have

13a 1 ask 2 love 3 forget 4 listens 5 drink 6 drive 7 come 8 learn 9 opens 10 give 11 fights 12 help 13 like 14 understand 15 start

13b 1 goes 2 fly 3 studies 4 watches, 5 cry 6 does 7 washes 8 teach 9 carries 10 pushes

13c 1 She always listens ... 2 He takes ...
3 She usually buys ... 4 She teaches ...
5 He walks ... 6 She never washes ...
7 He opens ... 8 He occasionally writes ...
9 He drinks ... 10 She watches ...

13d Sarah Jones comes from Britain. She lives in London. She works in a bank. She often plays tennis and works in the garden. She speaks French and a little Spanish.

Deniz Ulgen comes from Turkey. She lives in Ankara. She works in a hotel. She often plays chess and goes to concerts. She speaks English and German.

Pierre Moulin comes from France. He lives in Paris. He works in a shop/manages a shop. He often paints and listens to music. He speaks some English and a little Italian.

Maria Protopapas comes from Greece. She lives in Athens. She works/teaches in a school. She often goes for long walks and plays volleyball. She speaks fluent English and some Arabic.

14a 1 Does ... does 2 Do ... don’t 3 Do ... do 4 Do ... don’t 5 Do ... do 6 Does ... doesn’t 7 Does ... does 8 Do ... don’t 9 Do ... don’t 10 Does ... does

14b 1 Does the shop close at 5 o’clock?
2 Do they go swimming every weekend?
3 Does she speak English well?
4 Does it rain a lot here in winter?
5 Do you drink a lot of tea? 6 Do I eat too much, doctor?
7 Does Tony often play golf at the weekends?
8 Do his friends visit him in hospital most evenings?

14c 1 Where do you work?
2 What does she do?
3 Where does he live?
4 What music does your husband like?
5 When does she do her homework?
6 Why do we learn Latin?
7 Who does she teach?
8 How do I turn on the television?

15 1 She doesn’t work ...
2 It doesn’t usually snow ...
3 I don’t like ...
4 The film doesn’t start ...
5 He doesn’t swim ...
6 They don’t always open ...
7 We don’t often see ...
8 Chris doesn’t go ...
9 You don’t drive ...
10 These young childrendon’t learn ...

16a *Positive*

I You We They	work.
She He It	*works*

Negative

I You We They	*do not work.* *(don't)*
She He *It*	*does not work.* *(doesn't)*

Question

Do	I you *we* they	*work?*
Does	*she* he *it*	*work?*

Short answers

Yes, No,	I you *we* they	*do.* *don't.*
Yes, No,	*she* he it	*does.* *doesn't.*

16b 1 Do ... work 2 do ... like 3 love 4 cooks
5 work 6 don't go out 7 don't see
8 have 9 stay 10 Does ... go 11 talks
12 Do ... see 13 doesn't know
14 telephone 15 goes out 16 know
17 wants

17a 1 was 2 were 3 were 4 was 5 were
6 was 7 was 8 was 9 were 10 was
11 were 12 was 13 was 14 was 15 were
16 were

17b 1 was 2 was 3 was 4 were 5 were
6 were 7 was 8 were 9 were 10 were
11 were 12 was 13 were 14 was 15 was
16 were

17c 1 'Was the weather nice?' 'Yes, it was a beautiful day.'
2 'Where were James and Wendy?' 'They were on the beach.'
3 'Where were their children?' 'They were in the sea.'
4 'Were there other children in the sea?' 'Yes, there were.'
5 'Were James and Wendy in the sea?' 'No, they weren't.'
6 'Was James awake?' 'No, he wasn't.'
7 'What was on James' face?' 'There was a book on his face.'
8 'Was it sunny all day?' 'No, it wasn't.'
9 'Were the holidaymakers wet in the end?' 'Yes, they were.'
10 'Where was this beach?' 'It was in Britain.'

17d 1 'Were the underground trains fast?' 'Yes, they were.' / 'No, they weren't.'
2 'Was the weather warm?' 'No, it wasn't.' / 'Yes, it was.'
3 'Were the streets clean?' 'No, they weren't.' / 'Yes, they were.'
4 'Were the people friendly?' 'No, they weren't. / 'Yes, they were.'
5 'Were the parks beautiful?' 'Yes, they were.' / 'No, they weren't.'
6 'Was the airport busy?' 'Yes, it was.' / 'No, it wasn't.'
7 'Were the museums interesting?. 'Yes, they were.' / 'No, they weren't.'
8 'Were the shops expensive?' 'No, they weren't. / 'Yes, they were.'
9 'Was the hotel comfortable?' 'Yes, it was.' / 'No, it wasn't.'
10 'Was the food good?' 'No, it wasn't' / 'Yes, it was.'

18a

stay	*stayed*
rain	*rained*
help	*helped*
carry	*carried*
want	*wanted*
play	*played*
walk	*walked*
study	*studied*
cry	*cried*
work	*worked*
listen	*listened*
love	*loved*
wash	*washed*
stop	*stopped*
ask	*asked*
look	*looked*
open	*opened*
start	*started*
live	*lived*
watch	*watched*
like	*liked*

18b 1 stayed 2 cried 3 rained 4 listened
5 loved 6 closed 7 wanted

19

bring	*brought*
buy	bought
come	*came*
do	*did*
drink	drank
drive	drove
find	*found*
fly	flew
forget	*forgot*
get (up)	*got (up)*
give	*gave*
go	went
have	*had*
know	*knew*
leave	left
lose	lost
make	*made*
meet	*met*
put	put
read	read
run	*ran*
see	saw
shut	shut
swim	*swam*
take	*took*
teach	taught
tell	*told*
think	thought
understand	*understood*
write	*wrote*

20a 1 I saw my parents last weekend.
2 Matthew asked a lot of questions this morning.
3 They went to the mountains last winter.
4 Julie met Tom from school this afternoon.
5 Jenny watched a lot of television on holiday.
6 He ate a lot last, night.
7 The programme started at 7.30 this morning.
8 I loved cycling when I was a child.
9 We always had a nice time with them on holiday.
10 The garden looked lovely last spring.

20b 1 Kelly got up. 2 She had a shower.
3 She got dressed. 4 She turned on the radio. 5 She made a cup of tea. 6 She ate her breakfast. 7 She read the paper.
8 She washed the dishes. 9 She brushed her teeth. 10 She left the house.

21 1 She got up early in the morning. Did she get up early in the morning? She didn't get up early in the morning.
2 He taught history at the university. Did he teach history at the university? He didn't teach history at the university.
3 They left home at 8 o'clock. Did they leave home at 8 o'clock? They didn't leave home at 8 o'clock.
4 He stayed in very good hotels.
Did he stay in very good hotels? He didn't stay in very good hotels.
5 You smoked a lot. Did you smoke a lot? You didn't smoke a lot.
6 I looked very tired. Did I look very tired? I didn't look very tired.
7 We stopped at Oxford. Did we stop at Oxford? We didn't stop at Oxford.
8 The restaurant closed at 11 o'clock. Did the restaurant close at 11 o'clock? The restaurant didn't close at 11 o'clock.
9 Pam bought a lot of clothes. Did Pam buy a lot of clothes? Pam didn't buy a lot of clothes.
10 The birds flew away to other countries. Did the birds fly away to other countries? The birds didn't fly away to other countries.

22 1 Last week 2 Two years ago 3 Six months ago 4 Five minutes ago 5 Three years ago 6 Last month 7 Two hours ago
8 Last year 9 Last night 10 Half an hour ago

23 1 did you go 2 went 3 Did you enjoy
4 did 5 loved 6 thought 7 were 8 did you stay 9 were 10 had 11 did 12 saw
13 Did you learn 14 did 15 did
16 studied 17 went 18 found 19 was
20 Did you talk 21 knew 22 wanted

24 1 to ... cinema 2 for ... run 3 fishing 4 riding 5 to Paris 6 for ... swim 7 skiing 8 to ... disco

25 1 in 2 at 3 in 4 on 5 at 6 at 7 on 8 in 9 on 10 at 11 in 12 on

26 1 at 2 to 3 in 4 to 5 at 6 at 7 in 8 - 9 to 10 in 11 at 12 at 13 to 14 - 15 in

27 1 at ... in 2 on 3 at 4 on 5 at 6 in 7 in 8 in 9 on 10 at 11 in 12 on

28a

be	*being*
clean	*cleaning*
come	*coming*
do	*doing*
fly	*flying*
get (up)	*getting (up)*
give	*giving*
listen	*listening*
live	*living*
play	*playing*
smoke	*smoking*
stay	*staying*
study	*studying*
swim	*swimming*
teach	*teaching*
watch	*watching*
work	*working*
write	*writing*

28b 1 listening 2 coming 3 cleaning 4 swimming 5 giving 6 writing 7 being 8 smoking 9 flying 10 playing 11 watching 12 getting up 13 teaching 14 studying 15 doing 16 working 17 living 18 staying

29a 1 have 2 buy 3 sit 4 be 5 play 6 stay 7 ask 8 pay 9 come 10 see

29b 1 cooking 2 to go 3 to see 4 going 5 living 6 to travel 7 to speak 8 to buy 9 bringing 10 playing

30 1 We never go to the mountains.
2 She doesn't often write to me.
3 The boys always play football on Saturday afternoons.
4 The bus usually arrives late.
5 I often go to bed before 11.
6 She never drinks coffee in the evening.
7 It doesn't often rain in the summer.
8 I always read books slowly
9 My father usually goes to work by bus.
10 We always go to the beach at the weekend.

TEST 1

Part A

1 very 2 my 3 in 4 got 5 go 6 goes/travels 7 on 8 at 9 swimming 10 There

Part B

1 Do 2 at 3 Those 4 did you do 5 Have you got 6 reading 7 older than 8 There are 9 were 10 at

Part C

A: Did you have a nice time in London at the weekend?
B: Yes, I did. I stayed with an old friend from school and we had a wonderful time together. On Saturday we went to an art gallery in the morning, a concert in the afternoon and an Italian restaurant in the evening. It was a great weekend. What about you? Did you have a nice weekend?
A: It wasn't very interesting. I stayed at home all weekend.
B: Why didn't you go out?
A: I didn't feel very well.
B: Oh. I'm sorry about that.
A: That's all right. I'm better now.

Part D

1 Has your brother got a job?
2 There are some beautiful buildings in this town.
3 Their mother teaches history at the college.
4 I like listening to music in the evenings.
5 Angela is taller than all her sisters.
6 What are those lights in the sky?
7 What time do you finish work?
8 They were not at school yesterday.
9 She did not phone me at the weekend.
10 I sometimes go skiing in the winter.

STAGE 2

31 1 a ... a ... the 2 a ... a ... the ... the
3 a ... a ... The ... the 4 A ... the
5 a ... a ... a ... the 6 a ... The ... the
7 an ... an ... The 8 a ... a ... The ... the
9 a ... the 10 a ... The ... the ... an ... a

32 1 a ... the 2 a ... the 3 a ... The ... the
4 a ... the 5 a ... the ... the 6 a ... the
7 a ... The ... the 8 a ... the ... the
9 a ... the 10 the ... a

33 1 The moon ... the earth 2 The sun
3 the Pope 4 The sky 5 the world
6 The Prince of Wales 7 the capital
8 the sea 9 the European Economic Community 10 the Prime Minister

34

paper	*U*
coffee	*U*
cassette	*C*
information	*U*
bottle	*C*
soup	*U*
pen	*C*
metal	*U*
book	*C*
rice	*U*
spaghetti	*U*
child	*C*
milk	*U*
news	*U*
job	*C*
homework	*U*
apple	*C*
toothpaste	*U*
bath	*C*
salt	*U*
girl	*C*
money	*U*
knife	*C*
egg	*C*
table	*C*
shampoo	*U*
coat	*C*
water	*U*
tea	*U*
flour	*U*
bread	*U*
bag	*C*
ball	*C*
soap	*U*
food	*U*
cup	*C*
cat	*C*
meat	*U*
honey	*U*

35 1 bottle 2 tin 3 bag 4 loaf 5 carton
6 bar 7 tube 8 glass 9 jar 10 slice

36 1 some 2 a 3 some 4 an 5 some 6 a
7 some 8 a 9 some 10 a

37a 1 any 2 some 3 a ... any 4 some ... an
5 some ... any 6 a 7 some ... any
8 some ... any 9 a 10 some ... any

37b 1 a 2 the 3 the 4 the 5 any 6 some
7 some 8 some 9 a 10 some 11 some
12 any 13 a 14 a 15 the 16 some 17 a
18 a 19 some 20 a 21 some 22 any
23 the

38a

soft	*softly*
quick	*quickly*
angry	*angrily*
slow	*slowly*
nice	*nicely*
quiet	*quietly*
calm	*calmly*
easy	*easily*
perfect	*perfectly*
polite	*politely*
bad	*badly*
beautiful	*beautifully*
hard	*hard*
sad	*sadly*
careful	*carefully*
good	*well*
fast	*fast*
clear	*clearly*

38b 1 hard 2 beautifully 3 perfectly 4 quietly
5 easily 6 fast 7 clearly 8 carefully
9 calmly 10 politely

38c 1 They work slowly.
2 He drives dangerously.
3 She writes carefully.

4 I sing loudly.
5 She swims fast.
6 He acts badly.
7 Elizabeth paints beautifully.
8 You dance terribly.
9 They teach well.
10 John listens patiently.

38d 1 loud 2 badly 3 patiently 4 angry 5 intelligent 6 nicely 7 warm 8 suddenly 9 well 10 dangerous

39a

happy	*happier*
difficult	*more difficult*
clean	*cleaner*
early	*earlier*
beautiful	*more beautiful*
soft	*softer*
intelligent	*more intelligent*
dirty	*dirtier*
good	*better*
careful	*more careful*
cheap	*cheaper*
strong	*stronger*
interesting	*more interesting*
hot	*hotter*
warm	*warmer*
expensive	*more expensive*
fresh	*fresher*
kind	*kinder*
boring	*more boring*
cold	*colder*
honest	*more honest*
busy	*busier*
young	*younger*
near	*nearer*
funny	*funnier*
easy	*easier*
bad	*worse*
late	*later*
dangerous	*more dangerous*
weak	*weaker*

39b 1 younger than 2 warmer ... than 3 fresher than 4 more expensive than 5 funnier than 6 better ... than 7 nearer than 8 noisier than 9 busier ... than 10 more careless than 11 more difficult than 12 kinder than 13 richer than 14 more intelligent ... than 15 more interesting than

39c 1 The Grand Hotel is more beautiful than the Sea View Hotel.
2 The Grand Hotel is more central than the Sea View Hotel.
3 The Grand Hotel is bigger than the Sea View Hotel.
4 The Grand Hotel is cleaner than the Sea View Hotel.
5 The Grand Hotel is more comfortable than the Sea View Hotel.
6 The Grand Hotel is warmer than the Sea View Hotel.
7 The Grand Hotel is noisier than the Sea View Hotel.
8 The Grand Hotel is more expensive than the Sea View Hotel.
9 The Sea View Hotel is smaller than the Grand Hotel.
10 The views from the Sea View Hotel are lovelier than the views from the Grand Hotel.
11 The Sea View Hotel is more peaceful than the Grand Hotel.
12 The Sea View Hotel is colder than the Grand Hotel.
13 The staff in the Sea View Hotel are friendlier than the staff in the Grand Hotel.
14 The Sea View Hotel is cheaper than the Grand Hotel.

40 1 are staying 2 are making 3 is working 4 am waiting 5 are walking 6 are planning 7 are visiting 8 is reading 9 am trying 10 is shining 11 is learning 12 is cooking 13 am feeling 14 are studying 15 is having

41a 1 Is ... isn't 2 Are ... are 3 Are ... am 4 Am ... aren't 5 Is ... is 6 Are ... are 7 Are ... aren't 8 Is ... is 9 Are ... am 10 Are ... aren't

41b 1 What's she doing?
2 Are you learning French at school?

3 What book are you reading? What are we watching?
5 Am I speaking clearly?
6 Why are we sitting in the dark?
7 Where are they staying?
8 Is it snowing?
9 Why is he running so fast?
10 What are you selling?
11 Why is he shouting?
12 Where are they waiting?
13 Why is she laughing?
14 Are they dancing together?
15 Is the plane landing now?

42 1 They aren't / They're not buying a new car.
2 He isn't / He's not learning to read.
3 I'm not looking for your keys.
4 We aren't / We're not selling the house.
5 You aren't . You're not working very hard.
6 He isn't / He's not washing the dishes.
7 They aren't / They're not drinking tea.
8 We aren't / We're not having a good time.
9 She isn't / She's not leaving him.
10 I'm not going home now.

43 1 's happening 2 Are they having 3 are 4 are they doing 5 are dancing 6 Are Mum and Dad dancing 7 is 8 isn't 9 's talking 10 are laughing 11 is 12 's dancing 13 's giving 14 are they drinking 15 are drinking 16 isn't drinking 17 Are they eating 18 aren't eating / 're not eating 19 're sleeping 20 're looking 21 's coming

44a 1 lives ...'s spending
2 Are you working ... 'm not ... work
3 does Josephine do ... 's ... isn't teaching ... 's looking
4 are you reading ... 'm not reading ... read ... prefer
5 Does this bag belong ... doesn't ... know ... 's looking
6 don't smoke ... does ... 's trying
7 Do you remember ... 's staying
8 Do you speak ... don't ... want ... 'm looking
9 visit ... 're camping
10 Does Simon help ... 's helping

44b 1 do you come 2 do you come 3 Do you like 4 aren't 5 Are you staying 6 'm staying 7 don't see 8 're 9 'm staying 10 's 11 speak 12 do you study 13 Is that 14 'm doing 15 Does your teacher give 16 are you doing 17 'm writing 18 write

45a 1 Present 2 Future 3 Present 4 Future 5 Future 6 Present 7 Present 8 Future 9 Future 10 Present

45b 1 Are you meeting 2 'm not coming 3 Are you going 4 's visiting 5 'm making 6 Are they leaving 7 're flying 8 Are you staying 9 're taking 10 'm not having 11 'm finishing 12 Are they moving 13 aren't going / 're not going 14 's catching 15 aren't coming / 're not coming

45c A: What are you doing on Monday night?
B: I'm going to the cinema.
A: Who are you going with?
B: I'm going with Liz.
A: What time are you meeting her?
B: At 8 o'clock.
A: And what about Wednesday? Are you going out?
B: Yes, I am. I'm going to a Greek restaurant.
A: Are you staying at home on Tuesday?
B: Yes, I am.
A: And Thursday?
B: I'm meeting James at the station.
A: What time is he arriving?
B: At 7.30.
A: Is he staying for the weekend?
B: Yes, he is.

46a 1 'm going to stay 2 're going to do 3 'm going to read 4 'm going to lie 5 're going to travel 6 'm going to cycle 7 'm going to play 8 're going to teach 9 'm going to swim 10 'm going to walk

46b 1 When are you going on holiday?
2 And where are you going?
3 Are you going to fly there?
4 So how are you going to get there?
5 Are you going to take a/the car?
6 Who's going to drive?
7 Are you going to stay in a hotel?
8 So where are you going to stay?
9 And how long are you going to stay for?
10 Are you going to learn (any) Spanish?

46c 1 's going to be 2 are going to bring 3 's going to look 4 Are you going to make 5 is going to break 6 's not / isn't going to pass 7 's going to be 8 Are you going to watch 9 's going to live 10 're not / aren't going to stay ... 're going to find 11 're going to build 12 Are they going to get 13 'm not going to buy 14 's going to rain 15 'm going to meet

47 1 're going to visit / 're visiting 2 's going to be 3 're going to have / 're having 4 're going to buy / 're buying 5 Are you going to eat out / Are you eating out 6 's going to have 7 'm going to work 8 're going to stay / 're staying 9 's not / isn't going to hurt 10 's going to cry

48 1 Don't walk on the grass. 2 Cross the road at the lights. 3 Turn left. 4 Write your name here. 5 Don't eat in class. 6 Please don't enter this room. 7 Please don't smoke in this area. 8 Please wash your hands.

49a 1 can't drive 2 can't come 3 can read 4 can speak 5 can meet 6 can't hear 7 Can ... open 8 can't understand 9 can swim 10 can ... see

49b 1 Can you ride a horse? Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
2 Can you read music? ...
3 Can you play the piano? ...
4 Can you dance? ...
5 Can you drive ? ...
6 Can you act? ...
7 Can you swim? ...
8 Can you speak another language? ...
9 Can you run fast? ...
10 Can you fly a plane? ...

50 Verbs + prepositions of position: stay, arrive, stop, work, meet, park, be, live, sleep.
Verbs + prepositions of movement: drive, take, move, fall, run, carry, walk, ride, come.

51 1 at 2 to 3 at 4 to 5 from ... to 6 to 7 at 8 from 9 at ... from ... to 10 from ... at

52 1 on 2 off 3 off 4 onto 5 on 6 onto 7 on 8 off 9 on 10 off

53 1 in 2 into 3 in 4 out of 5 into 6 out of 7 into 8 out of 9 in 10 in

54 1 out of 2 to 3 from 4 in 5 at 6 out of ... on 7 at ... in 8 into 9 into ... on 10 from ... to 11 at 12 onto 13 off 14 to

55 1 working 2 staying 3 smoking 4 going 5 taking 6 getting up 7 crying 8 being 9 living 10 reading

56 1 to do 2 to go 3 to help 4 to post 5 to leave 6 to drive 7 to have 8 to sleep 9 to visit 10 to pay

57 1 to phone 2 being ... listening 3 to go out 4 to go 5 to lock ... to turn off 6 to go 7 to see 8 reading 9 living ... talking 10 to get 11 to speak 12 going out ... to stay 13 watching 14 sleeping 15 writing ... to start 16 to finish painting 17 going out 18 to stop working 19 to pay 20 to give up taking

58a Students should check their answers to this exercise with their teacher.

58b 1 Who 2 Why 3 What 4 When 5 Where 6 How 7 What time 8 How much 9 Why

59 1 It's very busy. 2 She's very nice. 3 It was really funny. 4 She's got long hair and glasses. 5 It wasn't very difficult. 6 It's interesting but it's quite small.

7 They're very noisy. 8 It's red and it's quite small. 9 He wasn't very friendly. 10 He was tall and thin.

TEST 2

Part A

A: Hello! What are you doing here in Bristol?
B: I'm staying with my parents.
A: Oh, that's nice. And how's Cardiff? Do you like it there?
B: Oh yes, I do. It's a very nice town but I sometimes miss seeing my friends in Bristol.
A: And what about the job?
B: Oh, that's very good. It's a lot more interesting than my last job.
A: Good.
B: Yes. So I definitely want to stay in Cardiff. Oh, and I'm learning to drive now too. But there's one problem. I haven't got a car.
A: Are you going to buy one?
B: Well, I can't. I haven't got any money because I'm spending it all on driving lessons at the moment.
A: Oh well. Never mind.

Part B

1 ✓ 2 ✗ 3 ✓ 4 ✓ 5 ✗ 6 ✓ 7 ✗ 8 ✗ 9 ✓ 10 ✗

Part C

1 any 2 in 3 to open 4 it's going to snow 5 to come 6 Don't walk 7 very well 8 more honest 9 are staying 10 off

Part D

1 William and David are coming here tomorrow.
2 Oh dear, it's starting to rain.
3 We haven't got any milk.
4 I waited at the bus stop for an hour.
5 Travelling by car is more dangerous than travelling by plane.
6 This is a beautiful picture.
7 What are you going to do this afternoon?
8 Ann is cooking the dinner tonight.
9 We're having a nice time and the weather is lovely.
10 Can I have a glass of water?

STAGE 3

60 1 much 2 a lot of 3 much 4 many 5 a lot of 6 a lot of 7 many 8 a lot of 9 much 10 many 11 a lot of 12 many 13 much 14 many 15 much

61 1 a few 2 a little 3 a few 4 a little 5 a little 7 a few 8 a few 9 a few 10 a little 11 A few 12 a few 13 a few 14 a little 15 a little

62 1 much 2 a few 3 any 4 a lot of 5 a little 6 a 7 some 8 many 9 a few 10 much 11 a little 12 much 13 any ... much 14 much

63a 1 Is that mine? 2 It isn't his - it's hers. 3 It's a lot bigger than ours. 4 I didn't know they were yours. 5 but I don't think it's yours. 6 It's theirs. 7 but it's not hers. 8 'It's mine.' 9 Is it yours? 10 Which room is his?

63b 1 our ... yours 2 my ... yours 3 your ... mine 4 their ... her 5 my ... yours ... your 6 her ... his 7 my ... yours 8 mine ... theirs 9 Your ... ours 10 His ... hers

64 1 the doctor's ... her 2 your ... Michael's ... My 3 my ... Emily's 4 Mr Dickinson's ... his secretary's ... His 5 mine ... yours ... Andrew's ... his 6 Jonathon's ... her ... his 7 students' ... director's 8 Jade's ... ours

65a

hard	*hardest*
expensive	*most expensive*
good	*best*
careless	*most careless*
heavy	*heaviest*
young	*youngest*
careful	*most careful*
tall	*tallest*
difficult	*most difficult*
cheap	*cheapest*
clean	*cleanest*
angry	*angriest*
dangerous	*most dangerous*
strong	*strongest*
cold	*coldest*

intelligent	*most intelligent*
lovely	*loveliest*
calm	*calmest*
boring	*most boring*
beautiful	*most beautiful*
busy	*busiest*
interesting	*most interesting*
brave	*bravest*
bad	*worst*
fast	*fastest*
patient	*most patient*
dirty	*dirtiest*
friendly	*friendliest*
poor	*poorest*
honest	*most honest*

65b 1 strongest 2 friendliest 3 most intelligent 4 happiest 5 cheapest 6 most wonderful 7 saddest 8 dirtiest 9 poorest 10 freshest 11 most boring 12 most dangerous 13 worst

66 1 Jake is taller than David. David is taller than Louis. Jake is the tallest in the class.
2 The Park Hotel is more Grand Hotel is more expensive than the Park Hotel. The Grand Hotel is the most expensive of them all.
3 January is colder than December. February is colder than January. February is the coldest month of the winter.
4 Andrea is more intelligent than Charlotte. Lola is more intelligent than Andrea. Lola is the most intelligent in the group.
5 James is heavier than Max. Max is heavier than Kieran. James is the heaviest of them all.
6 Boxing is more dangerous than football. Football is more dangerous than tennis. Boxing is the most dangerous sport at the centre.

67a 1 have worked 2 Has ... answered 3 has ... loved 4 haven't tried 5 has happened 6 haven't stayed 7 has finished ... has started 8 have helped 9 Have ... washed 10 have explained 11 has cooked 12 haven't ... visited 13 has travelled 14 have ... walked 15 Have ... remembered

67b

Infinitive	*Past simple*	*Past participle*
be	*was*	*been*
bring	*brought*	*brought*
buy	*bought*	*bought*
catch	*caught*	*caught*
come	*came*	*come*
do	*did*	*done*
drink	*drank*	*drunk*
drive	*drove*	*driven*
find	*found*	*found*
forget	*forgot*	*forgotten*
go	*went*	*gone*
have	*had*	*had*
leave	*left*	*left*
make	*made*	*made*
meet	*met*	*met*
read	*read*	*read*
see	*saw*	*seen*
speak	*spoke*	*spoken*
take	*took*	*taken*
teach	*taught*	*taught*

67c 1 came 2 've opened 3 danced 4 Have ... started 5 haven't read 6 Have ... written 7 Did ... sleep 8 has broken 9 left 10 've stayed 11 did ... hear 12 didn't rain 13 've done 14 didn't learn 15 hasn't answered

67d 1 has 2 is 3 is 4 has 5 has 6 is 7 has 8 is 9 is 10 has

67e Have you ever been to Italy?
Yes, I have.
When did you go there?
In 1990.
And how long did you stay?
For two months.
Have you ever been to India?
Yes, I have.
When did you go there?
Last year.
And how long did you stay?
For six weeks.

Have you ever been to Australia?
Yes, I have.
When did you go there?
Ten years ago.
And how long did you stay?
For six months.
Have you ever been to Norway?
Yes, I have.
When did you go there?
In 1985.
And how long did you stay?
For one month.

68a

I've been here for:	I've been here since:
three months	*December*
five weeks	*1980*
a long time	*Monday*
two years	*my birthday*
a few hours	*two o'clock*
four days	*the beginning of the year*
fifteen minutes	*the war started*
six months	*15th May*

68b 1 's lived ... for 2 taught ... for 3 's worked ... since 4 's been ... for 5 played ... for 6 've had ... since 7 studied ... for 8 stopped ... for 9 've known ... for 10 haven't eaten ... since

68c 1 have you taught 2 have 3 taught 4 for 5 came back 6 started 7 've taught 8 since 9 have you done 10 have 11 did 12 went 13 Have you ever studied 14 haven't 15 stayed 16 for 17 learnt 18 have you studied 19 did 20 for 21 passed 22 have you learnt 23 since 24 left 25 learnt

69a 1 'What were you doing at 7 o'clock?' 'I was having a bath.'
2 'What were you doing at 9 o'clock?' 'I was walking in the park.'
3 'What were you doing at 12.30?' 'I was eating lunch in the Terrace Café.'
4 'What were you doing at 3 o'clock?' 'I was shopping.'
5 'What were you doing at 5 o'clock?' 'I was talking on the phone.'
6 'What were you doing at 7 o'clock?' 'I was cooking the dinner.'
7 'What were you doing at 10 o'clock?' 'I was reading the paper.'
8 'What were you doing at 12 o'clock?' 'I was sleeping.'

69b 1 Were ... was 2 Did ... did 3 were ... was 4 Were ... were 5 Was ... was 6 Did ... did 7 was ... did 8 Did ... did ... was 9 were ... Did 10 was ... did

69c 1 were waiting ... arrived 2 was swimming ... saw 3 Were ... playing ... started 4 cried ... heard 5 were driving ... stopped 6 went ... began 7 left ... became 8 were working ... met 9 felt ... read 10 was raining ... got up

69d 1 'What were you doing when it started raining?' 'We were lying on the beach.' 'What did you do when it started raining?' 'We left the beach.'
2 'What were they doing when you arrived?' 'They werewatching television.' 'What did they do when you arrived?' 'They turned off the television.'
3 'What was John doing when you saw him?' 'He was talking to Sheila.' 'What did John do when you saw him?' 'He started talking to me.'
4 'What was she doing when the phone rang?' 'She was having a bath.' 'What did she do when the phone rang?' 'She got out of the bath.'
5 'What were you doing when you heard the news?' 'I was working in the office.' 'What did you do when you heard the news?' 'I went straight home.'
6 'What were they doing when the fire started?' 'They were cooking the dinner.' 'What did they do when the fire started?' 'They ran out of the house.'
7 'What was she doing when the child fell down?' 'She was talking to a friend.' 'What did she do when the child fell down?' 'She picked her up.'
8 'What were you doing when the war started?' 'I was working in a bank.'

'What did you do when the war started?'
'I became a soldier.'
9 'What was he doing when the parcel arrived?' 'He was playing with a friend.'
'What did he do when the parcel arrived?'
'He opened it.'

70a 1 find ... 'll give 2 'll phone ... has 3 go ... 'll come 4 won't be ... doesn't get
5 come ... 'll have 6 won't wait ... 're
7 will break ... drop 8 'll help ... have
9 'll tell ... see 10 'll sleep ... doesn't rain

70b The following sentences may be in any order and the **if** clause in each sentence may come first or second:
1 If it rains, we'll stay at home.
2 I'll meet you at the station if you come by train.
3 If she fails her exams, she won't get a place at university.
4 If I lose my job, I won't have any money.
5 I'll do the washing-up if you cook the dinner.
6 If you go to bed early, you'll feel better in the morning.
7 I won't forget the date if I write it in my diary.
8 If you tell him the problem, I'm sure he'll understand.
9 If I see Sylvia, I'll give her your message.
10 If the weather's nice, we'll eat in the garden.

72a 1 can speak 2 couldn't come 3 can't drive 4 can't read ... can play 5 could see
6 can't help 7 couldn't hear 8 couldn't understand 9 couldn't phone 10 can land

72b 1 Can/Could I have a drink, please?
2 Can/Could you open the door, please?
3 Can/Could you answer the phone, please? 4 Can/Could you give Roger a message, please? 5 Can/Could I turn on the television, please? 6 Can/Could you phone me later, please? 7 Can/Could I have the bill, please? 8 Can/Could you meet the children from school, please? 9 Can/Could you help me with my suitcase, please? 10 Can/Could I borrow this book, please?

73 1 She may/might be in bed now.
2 I'm sorry but I may/might be late.
3 We may/might go to Australia for our holiday.
4 We may/might not come to the party.
5 They may/might move to Scotland next year.
6 You may/might be right.
7 May I smoke in here?
8 He may/might feel better tomorrow.
9 May we sit here?
10 The Government may/might not win this time.
11 The factory may/might close this year.
12 Tim isn't working very well today but he may/might be tired.
13 It may/might rain soon.
14 The builders may/might finish the job at the end of the week.
15 I'll go and see Alan - he may/might want some help.

74a 1 I think you should see a doctor.
2 'Well then, you should look for another one.'
3 You shouldn't work so hard.
4 I think we should have a party.
5 We should turn it off now.
6 She should stop smoking.
7 You shouldn't listen to him.
8 Do you think we should take it to the garage?
9 I should go to bed early tonight.
10 Don't you think you should have a haircut?
11 You shouldn't worry so much.
12 should I tell him that?

74b 1 You should eat lots of fresh fruit and vegetables.
2 You shouldn't eat too much fat.
3 You shouldn't eat too many sweets.
4 You should take regular exercise.
5 You shouldn't smoke any cigarettes.
6 You shouldn't drink too much coffee.

7 You should sleep for about eight hours a night.
8 You shouldn't work too hard.

75a 1 I must study hard for this exam.
2 You must not talk in the library.
3 She must work harder.
4 They must be here at 9 o'clock.
5 You must not enter this room.
6 He must see a doctor quickly.
7 We must work all night tonight.
8 You must listen carefully.
9 Children must not leave school before 4 o'clock.
10 Passengers must wait for the train to stop.

75b 1 You mustn't go out to parties.
2 You must study hard for these exams.
3 You must go to all the classes.
4 You must do all your homework.
5 You mustn't stay out late.
6 You mustn't spend too much time with your friends.
7 You must read all your notes again.
8 You mustn't go to bed late.

76a 1 below 2 in front of 3 under 4 up 5 next to 6 past 7 behind 8 opposite 9 between 10 above 11 down 12 along 13 across 14 round 15 over

76b 1 out of 2 to 3 out of 4 down 5 over 6 under 7 around 8 up 9 down 10 around 11 under 12 over 13 up 14 into

77a 1 I had dinner before I went out. / Before I went out, I had dinner. 2 After I finish my homework, I'm going to watch television. / I'm going to watch television after I finish my homework. 3 I must save some money before I go on holiday. / Before I go on holiday, I must save some money. 4 After they got married, they moved to Australia. / They moved to Australia after they got married. 5 I have to clean up the house before my parents arrive. / Before my parents arrive, I have to clean up the house. 6 After her exams finish, she's going to have a holiday by the sea. / She's going to have a holiday by the sea after her exams finish. 7 He could read before he started school. / Before he started school, he could read. 8 After I got the new job, I had more money. / I had more money after I got the new job. 9 I must phone my parents before I go to Scotland. / Before I go to Scotland, I must phone my parents. 10 After he comes back from his holiday, he's going to look for a new job. / He's going to look for a new job after he comes back from his holiday.

77b 1 Before going to bed, I usually have a bath. / I usually have a bath before going to bed.
2 After I get home from work, we have our dinner. / We have our dinner after I get home from work.
3 After finishing school, she went to university. / She went to university after finishing school.
4 Before getting on the train, I want to buy a newspaper. / I want to buy a newspaper before getting on the train.
5 My grandparents died before I was born. / Before I was born, my grandparents died.
6 After having a swim, I like to have a hot drink. / I like to have a hot drink after having a swim.
7 Before having children, I worked in a nightclub. / I worked in a nightclub before having children.
8 After having a big meal, we like to sit and watch television. / We like to sit and watch television after having a big meal.
9 You should do some more work before the exams start. / Before the exams start, you should do some more work.
10 After you told her to the good news, she came round to tell me. / She came round to tell me after you told her the good news.

11 After finishing this job, I'm going to have a long holiday. / I'm going to have a long holiday after finishing this job.
12 Before going out, he has to finish his work. / He has to finish his work before going out.
13 Before leaving the house, he's going to phone us. / He's going to phone us before leaving the house.

78 1 Making 2 Learning 3 Travelling
4 Swimming 5 Drinking ... driving
6 Having 7 Waking up 8 Playing
9 Walking ... taking 10 Reading

79 1 going out 2 working 3 watching
4 being 5 reading 6 having 7 playing
8 listening 9 seeing 10 writing

80 1 taking 2 travelling 3 getting 4 going
5 teaching 6 doing 7 passing 8 becoming
9 saving 10 practising

81 1 swimming ... sailing 2 becoming
3 Working 4 going 5 running 6 losing
7 Learning 8 doing 9 listening 10 buying

82 1 to help 2 to phone 3 to finish 4 to go
5 to cook 6 to wake ... up 7 to move
8 to be 9 to look after 10 to rain

83a 1e I wrote to the school to ask for information about their classes.
2c I pay him £10 to clean the windows.
3a He opened the fridge to look for some food.
4j They had a nurse to look after their sick mother.
5g We're going to the café to have some lunch.
6i She ran to the station to catch the train.
7b She's staying at school late to do some work.
8d We stopped at the garage to buy some petrol.
9f I read the newspaper everyday to find out what is happening in the world.
10h She bought some new clothes to wear at her interview.

83b 1 I phoned the station to find out the times of the trains.
2 I stayed in to watch a film on television.
3 I wrote to them to thank them for the weekend.
4 She went to university to study engineering.
5 They moved to the city to look for work.
6 I went into town to do some shopping.
7 We planned a meeting to discuss the problem of traffic in the town.
8 I'm going to write to my uncle to ask for his help.
9 You should go to Italy to improve your Italian.
10 My brother's coming this weekend to help me paint the flat.

84 1 Eating 2 to stay 3 spending 4 reading
5 to buy 6 reading 7 living 8 to study
9 to do 10 waiting 11 to speak
12 Cleaning 13 meeting 14 To ask
15 playing

85
S V
1 The men | are working.
S V O
2 He | 's going to write | a letter.
S V
3 I | don't understand.
S V O
4 He | didn't say | anything.
S V O
5 I | like | ice cream.
S V
6 They | left
S V O
7 We | ate | breakfast.
S V O
8 I | didn't take | your car.
S V
9 They | 're waiting.
S V O
10 She | 's reading a book.
S V O
11 I | 'm going to visit | my mother.
S V
12 She | isn't going to stay.

S V O
13 We | were watching | television.
S V O
14 I | didn't see | anything.
S V
15 I | don't agree.

86 1 so 2 and 3 but 4 because 5 but 6 because 7 and 8 so 9 but 10 because 11 so 12 and 13 because 14 but 15 so

TEST 3

Part A

A: How long have you been here?
B: Since 12.30. We think the fire started at about 12.15. A lot of the hotel guests were sleeping when the fire started. Fortunately, they woke up when they heard the fire alarm, and they all escaped.
A: And how did the fire start?
B: We don't (do not) know but we think one of the guests was smoking a cigarette in bed when he fell asleep.
A: Oh dear.
B: Yes. Smoking in bed is very dangerous. Smokers should never smoke in bed.
A: Well, this is the biggest and most expensive hotel in the city. Where are the guests going to stay now?

B: Sorry. I can't answer any more questions. I must go back to the fire.

Part B

1 mine 2 Swimming 3 have 4 because 5 much 6 was waiting 7 to invite 8 have lived 9 because 10 Have you worked

Part C

1 Did you have 2 've seen 3 was talking 4 are you going / are you going to go 5 will break 6 go out 7 hasn't eaten 8 's doing 9 was shining ... were singing 10 don't study

Part D

1 What does your girlfriend look like?
2 I ran along the footpath and over the bridge.
3 He shouldn't be so lazy.
4 There are some sweets here. Are they yours?
5 'Why did you go to Manchester?' 'To find a new job.'
6 I'm thinking of buying a new car.
7 There isn't much food in the house.
8 The bus stop is in front of the school.
9 It was raining so we decided to stay at home.
10 Can I have a few apples?

Index

The numbers in this index are page numbers.

A

a, an *3, 49–56*
above *128*
across *128*
adjectives *6–15, 94*
  comparative *13–15, 59–62 102–104, 147*
  demonstrative *11–12*
  possessive *7–10, 97–99*
adverbs *45, 57–58*
after *131–132*
along *128–130*
am, is, are *16*
and *141–142*
any *52, 55–56, 96–97*
articles *3, 49–56*
at *39–41, 81–82*

B

be *16, 28–29*
  am, is, are *16*
  was, were *28–29*
be going to future (see future) *73–77*
because *141–142*
behind *128–129*
before *131–132*
below *128*
between *128–130*
but *141–142*

C

can, can't *79-80, 119*
can, could *119-120*
comparative adjectives *13-15, 59-62, 102-104, 147*
conditional (first) *117–118*
conjunctions *141–142*
contractions *149–150*
could, can *119–122*
countable/uncountable nouns *52–53, 96*

D

definite article: the *49–51*
demonstrative adjectives and pronouns: this, that, these, those *11–12*
down *128–130*

E

er *comparative* *13–15, 59–62, 102–104,147*
est *superlative* *100–104,147*

F

few *95–97*
first conditional *117–118*
for, since *110–112*
from *81–82*
future tenses *71–77, 117–118*
  be going to *future* *73–77*
  present continuous as future *71–72*
  will *future (in the first conditional)* *117–118*

G

gerund *42–43, 86, 88, 133–136*
going to *future* (see *future*) *73–77*
go to ..., for a ..., ing *37–38*

H

have, has got *17–19*
her *4–5, 97–99*
hers *97–99*
him *4–5*
his *97–99*

I

if *117–118*
imperative *77–78*
in *39–41, 81, 84–85*
in front of *128*
indefinite article: a, an *3, 49–56*
infinitive *44, 86–88, 136–139*
ing (see *gerund*) *42, 86, 133*
into *81, 84*
irregular verbs *146*
is, am, are *16*
it *4–5, 7*
its *7*

L
linking words 141–142
little 95–97
ly *adverbs* 57–58, 147
lot, a lot of 94, 96

M
many, much 94, 96–97
may, might 119, 122–123
me 4
mine 97–99
modal verbs 79–80, 119–120
  can,can't 79–80, 119–122
  can, could 119–122
  may, might 119, 122–123
  must 119, 126–127
  should 119, 124–125
more *comparative* 59–62
most *superlative* 100–104, 147
much, many 94, 96–97
must 119, 126–127
my 7

N
names 151
next to 128
nouns 1–2, 52–53, 96
  countable/ uncountable 52–53, 96
  singular/plural 1–2

O
object/subject pronouns 4
of (*possessive*) 10
off 81–83
on 39, 41, 81–83
on to 81, 83
opposite 128
our 7
ours 97–99
out of 81, 84
over 128

P
past 128
past continuous tense 113–116
past simple tense 28–36
plural nouns 1–2
possessive adjectives 7, 10, 97–99
possessive with of 10
possessive with s 8, 99
possessive pronouns 97–99
prepositions 39–41, 81–85, 128–132
present continuous tense 63–72
present continuous as future 71–72
present perfect tense 105–112
present simple tense 20–27
present tense of to be:
  am, is, are 16
pronouns 11
  demonstrative 11
  object/subject 4
  possessive 97–99

Q
question words as subject or object 89–90

R
're *contraction* 149–150
round 128

S
's *contraction* 149
's *possessive* 8, 99
short forms 149
should 119, 124–125
simple past tense 28
simple present tense 20
since, for 110–112
singular nouns 1–2
so 141–142
some 52, 54–55, 96
spelling rules 147
subject/object pronouns 4
superlative 100–104, 147

T
the 49–51
their 7–9
theirs 97--99
them 4–5
there is, are 4
this, that, these, those 11–12
to-*infinitive* 87, 136
to (*preposition*) 81–82

U

uncountable/countable nouns	*52–53, 96*
under	***128***
up	***128***
us	***4***

V

've *contraction*	*149–150*

W

was, were	*28, 113*
will, won't (*first conditional*)	*117–118*

Y

you	*4–5, 7–9*
your	*7–9*
yours	*97–99*

Grammar Practice for Elementary Students New Edition

The highly-regarded *Grammar Practice* series now has four levels, which therefore correspond more closely to your students' ability:

Grammar Practice for Elementary Students
New! Grammar Practice for Pre-Intermediate Students
Grammar Practice for Intermediate Students
Grammar Practice for Upper Intermediate Students

Each level is clearer and more accessible with space for students to write in the book. Artwork has been added throughout to further aid comprehension. All four levels now have tests.

Grammar Practice for Elementary Students New Edition offers simple explanations and plenty of practice exercises for the main grammar points studied at elementary level. The book presents grammar in three stages, which are graded according to difficulty.

Main features:

- step-by-step grammar explanations with clear examples
- a wealth of varied practice exercises with write-in space on the page
- tests to monitor students' progress
- an index and a comprehensive contents list for easy reference
- illustrations to support exercises and increase students' understanding
- useful appendices of common irregular verbs and basic spelling rules
- for self-study, homework or use in class

Grammar Practice for Elementary Students New Edition is available both with and without the answer key.

Pearson Education
www.longman-elt.com

ISBN 058241706-6
9 780582 417069

Test ✓ Your

Prepositions

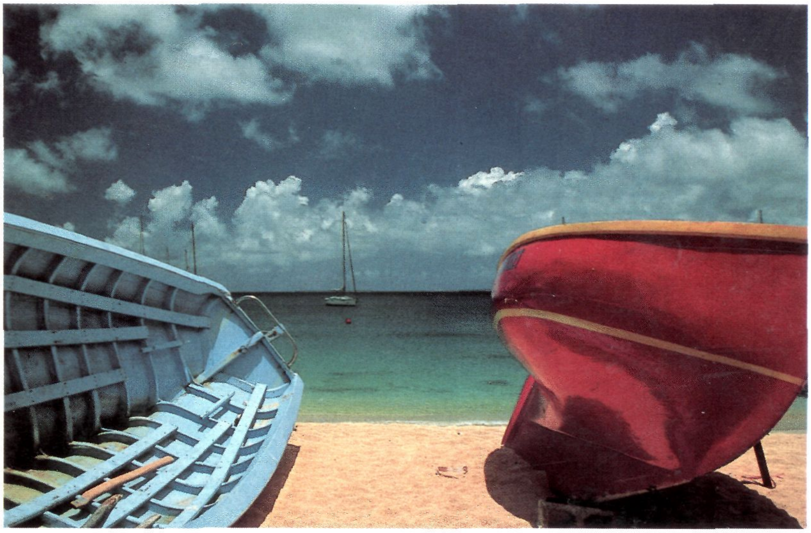

PETER WATCYN-JONES
JAKE ALLSOP

Test ✓ Your... series developed by Peter Watcyn-Jones

Test Your
Prepositions

***Test Your Prepositions* is part of the highly successful *Test Your…* series devised by Peter Watcyn-Jones. It is ideal for use in the classroom or for self-study. Special features include:**

- **approximately 950 items in carefully selected areas of use**
- **a wide variety of test-types including gap-filling, crosswords, writing captions to cartoons, jigsaw reading and completing jokes**
- **an Introduction with notes on how to use the tests**
- **a complete Answer Key.**

Test Your Prepositions provides special practice in a very difficult subject. There are tests on prepositions followed by nouns, prepositions after adjectives, verbs and nouns, as well as phrasal verbs and idioms. *Test Your Prepositions* contains 50 tests.

TEST YOUR PREPOSITIONS	***INTERMEDIATE/ADVANCED***	***950 ITEMS***

Cover photograph © Photonica/S.O.A.

PENGUIN

ISBN 0-14-080989-9
90901
9 780140 809893

Published and distributed by
Pearson Education Limited

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate, Harlow,
Essex CM20 2JE, England
and Associated Companies throughout the world.

First published by Penguin Books 1990
This edition published 2000
Second impression 2000

Copyright © Peter Watcyn-Jones and Jake Allsop 1990
Illustrations copyright © Ross Thomson 1990
All rights reserved

The moral right of the author and illustrator has been asserted

Test 49 is from *The Book of Nasty Legends* by Paul Smith and is
reproduced by permission of Routledge

Filmset in Century Schoolbook

Printed in England by Clays Ltd, St Ives plc

Except in the United States of America, this book is sold subject
to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade or otherwise, be lent,
re-sold, hired out, or otherwise circulated without the publisher's
prior consent in any form of binding or cover other than that in
which it is published and without a similar condition including this
condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser

Published by Pearson Education Limited in association with
Penguin Books Ltd., both companies being subsidiaries of Pearson Plc

CONTENTS

Introduction
To the student
Test 1 Prepositions of place 1 8
2 Choose the preposition 1: at, by, for, in 10
3 Prepositions of time 11
4 Complete the sentences 12
5 Crossword 1 14
6 What are they saying? 1 16
7 Word association 1 18
8 One word only 1 19
9 Nouns following "at" 20
10 Prepositions of place 2 22
11 Choose the preposition 2: at, about, against, from, of 24
12 Prepositions after adjectives 1 26
13 Time expressions 27
14 Rewrite the sentences 1 28
15 It's joke time 1 30
16 Nouns following "by" 32
17 Phrasal verbs (verb + preposition) 33
18 "On time" or "in time"? 34
19 Idiomatic prepositional phrases 35
20 Crossword 2 36
21 Sort out the two letters 1 38
22 Compound prepositions 1 40
23 Choose the preposition 3: in, into, on, over 41
24 Nouns following "in" 1 42
25 Rewrite the sentences 2 43
26 Prepositions after verbs 1 44
27 Phrasal verbs + preposition 45
28 One word only 2 46
29 Prepositions after nouns 48
30 Crossword 3 50
31 Prepositions after verbs 2 52
32 Choose the preposition 4: in, out, of, to, under, with 53
33 Nouns following "in" 2 54
34 Sort out the two letters 2 56
35 It's joke time 2 58
36 Headlines 60
37 Compound prepositions 2 61
38 What are they saying? 2 62
39 Prepositions after adjectives 2 64
40 Fractured newspaper article 65
41 Rewrite the sentences 3 66
42 Choose the preposition 5: after, at, in, on 68
43 Nouns following "on" 69
44 A well-known phrase or saying 70
45 Similar, but different 72
46 Word association 2 74
47 Prepositions after verbs 3 75
48 What noun follows the preposition? 76
49 One word only 3 77
50 Choose the preposition 6: by, for, of, on, to 78
Answers 81

INTRODUCTION

For the majority of students, learning English prepositions is both very difficult and very time-consuming. *Test Your Prepositions* tries to tackle this problem by providing concentrated practice on various prepositions in a stimulating and interesting way. Altogether 970 items are tested, ranging from prepositions followed by nouns to prepositions after adjectives, verbs and nouns, to prepositions of place and time to phrasal verbs and idioms.

Test Your Prepositions forms part of the Test Your Vocabulary series and, in keeping with the series, the emphasis is on variety, with tests ranging from gap-filling exercises to multiple-choice, crosswords, rewriting sentences, cartoons, word association, finding the misprints in newspaper headlines, and so on. There is even a test where the student has to fill in the missing prepositions in various jokes. (Who said learning prepositions has to be boring!)

Test Your Prepositions is for intermediate/advanced learners and can be used in class with a teacher or for self-study. To facilitate the latter, answers to the tests are included at the back of the book.

TO THE STUDENT

This book will help you to learn or consolidate a large number of prepositions. But in order for the new prepositions to become "fixed" in your mind, you will need to test yourself again and again. Here is one method you can use to help you learn these new prepositions.

1. Read the instructions carefully and try the test, writing your answers **in pencil**.
2. When you have finished, check your answers and correct any mistakes you have made. Pay special attention to the prepositions you didn't know or got wrong.
3. Try the test again 5–10 minutes later. You can cover up your answers or get a friend to test you. Repeat this until you can remember all the prepositions.
4. **Rub out your answers.**
5. Try the test again the following day. Again pay special attention to any prepositions that cause difficulty. (You might even try making up your own sentences with the "difficult" prepositions.)
6. Finally, plan to try the test at least twice within the following month. After this, most of the prepositions should be "fixed" in your mind.

Prepositions of place 1

Look at the drawing and fill in the missing prepositions in the sentences below. Choose from the following (use each once only).

above
behind
below
between
in
in front of
inside
on
opposite
to the left of
to the right of
under

1 The sofa is .... the armchair.
2 The clock is .... the mantelpiece.
3 The magazine .... the table.
4 The painting is .... the fireplace.
5 The bookcase is .... the fireplace.
6 The book is .... the vase of flowers.
7 There are lots of books .... the bookcase.
8 The coffee table is .... the sofa and the armchair.
9 The cat is .... the armchair.
10 The goldfish is .... the goldfish bowl.
11 The record-player is .... the records.
12 The clock is .... the painting.

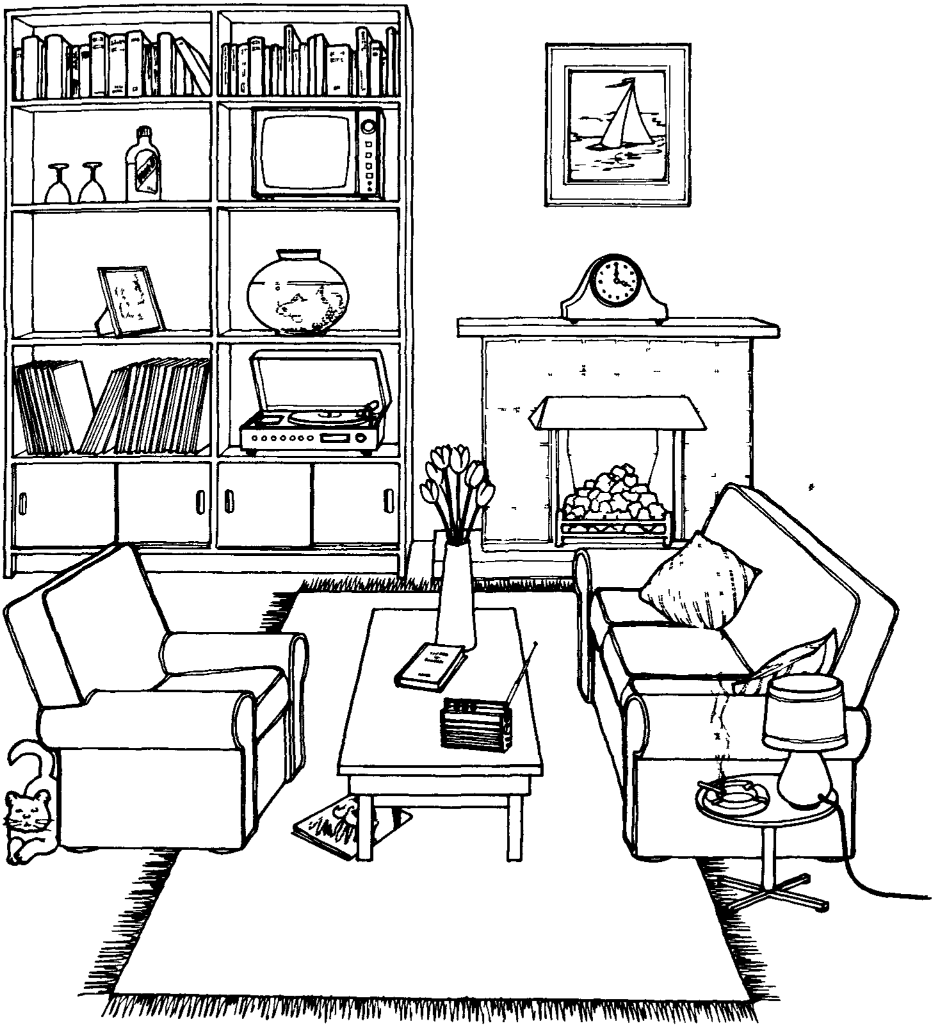

2 Choose the preposition 1: at, by, for, in

Complete the following sentences using ***at, by, for*** *or* ***in****.*

1 He sent a copy of his will to his bank .... safe keeping.

2 The house is to be sold .... auction.

3 Although I practise quite a lot, I never seem to win very often .... tennis.

4 Let Albert work it out; he has an aptitude .... figures.

5 You could tell .... a glance that he was no ordinary speaker.

6 Most people think the government is to blame .... rising unemployment.

7 Although their marriage was not a happy one, they decided to stay together .... the sake of the children.

8 There has been a sharp increase .... house prices in recent months.

9 They began to drop out of the race one .... one.

10 Do you know of a cure .... baldness?

11 She takes great pride .... her work.

12 He was the sort of person who immediately made you feel .... ease.

13 Did she give you any reason .... her behaviour?

14 I'm sorry, but I'm not .... liberty to tell you any more.

15 John's got very strange taste .... clothes, hasn't he?

16 Could you come back in half an hour? Mr Baston's .... lunch at the moment.

17 We didn't know .... certain whether they would come or not.

18 Think of a number. Now multiply it .... seven.

19 Do sit down. Mr Brown will join you .... a moment.

20 The attendance .... Saturday's meeting was very poor.

3 Prepositions of time

Read through the following and fill in the numbered blanks with a suitable preposition of time. Be careful, however, because in one or two cases no preposition is needed!

My parents met (1) .... the war: (2) .... August 1943 to be precise. My father was home (3) .... leave (4) .... the front, and he decided to spend the first week with his aunt in Liverpool. He hadn't seen her (5) .... several years, even though she had brought him up (6) .... his mother's death. Liverpool is not the most beautiful city in the world, but it can be very pleasant (7) .... summertime, especially early (8) .... the morning. (9) .... this particular morning, however, my father was in no mood to enjoy the sunrise over the Mersey. His train left Euston Station (10) .... time, at midnight, but (11) .... the time it got to Crewe, it was already three and a half hours (12) .... schedule. So he was in a bad mood and very tired (13) .... arrival at Lime Street Station. But something happened (14) .... minutes of his arrival that changed not only his mood but also his whole life. Feeling thirsty (15) .... his long journey, he decided to go and have a cup of tea in the station buffet. Typically, it was shut (16) .... that early hour. A notice on the door read "Opening hours: (17) .... 7 a.m. (18) .... 5.30 p.m. He looked at the station clock: ten (19) .... seven. The buffet should be open (20) .... now, he thought. But, knowing station buffets, he realised that he could wait (21) .... 8 or even 9 o'clock before it opened. Suddenly he noticed a pretty girl sitting on a bench. She was pouring some hot liquid from a thermos flask into a cup. Being something of a lady's man, my father (at least this is what my mother told me (22) .... some years later) sat down and said, "I've never seen such a pretty girl (23) .... all my life as you. And I haven't had a hot drink (24) .... last night. If you give me a drink of your tea, I'll marry you and look after you (25) .... the rest of your life!" Believe it or not, she smiled at him, gave him the tea, and . . . well, I wouldn't be here (26) .... now if the buffet hadn't been shut (27) .... that fateful day (28) .... August 1943.

4

Complete the sentences

Complete the following sentences Choose a suitable ending from those marked a–p

1 My brother is very conscious ...

2 He was arrested ...

3 In Britain, having more than two wives at the same time is ...

4 The police charged the man ...

5 Most children are fond ...

6 The three men were found guilty ...

7 Since the weather was so bad, we decided ...

8 He apologised ...

9 Since Mrs Smith is ill, Mr Bond is deputising ...

10 He didn't want her to go, so he tried to prevent her ...

11 Since he had missed so many lessons, he was discouraged ...

12 She takes great pride ...

13 He tried to coax her ...

14 He complimented her ...

15 He was always very nervous ...

16 To tell you the truth, I'm not very keen ...

a from taking the exam.
b on her work.
c for his bad behaviour.
d for robbing a bank.
e against going to the beach.
f for her today.
g into going to the party.
h of his big nose.
i of going to the circus.
j from leaving.
k about going to the dentist.
l with murder.
m of fraud.
n in her work.
o on going out tonight.
p against the law.

Write your answers here:

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16

5 Crossword 1

Read through the sentences below and complete the ***crossword. The*** *missing words are either adjectives or prepositions.*

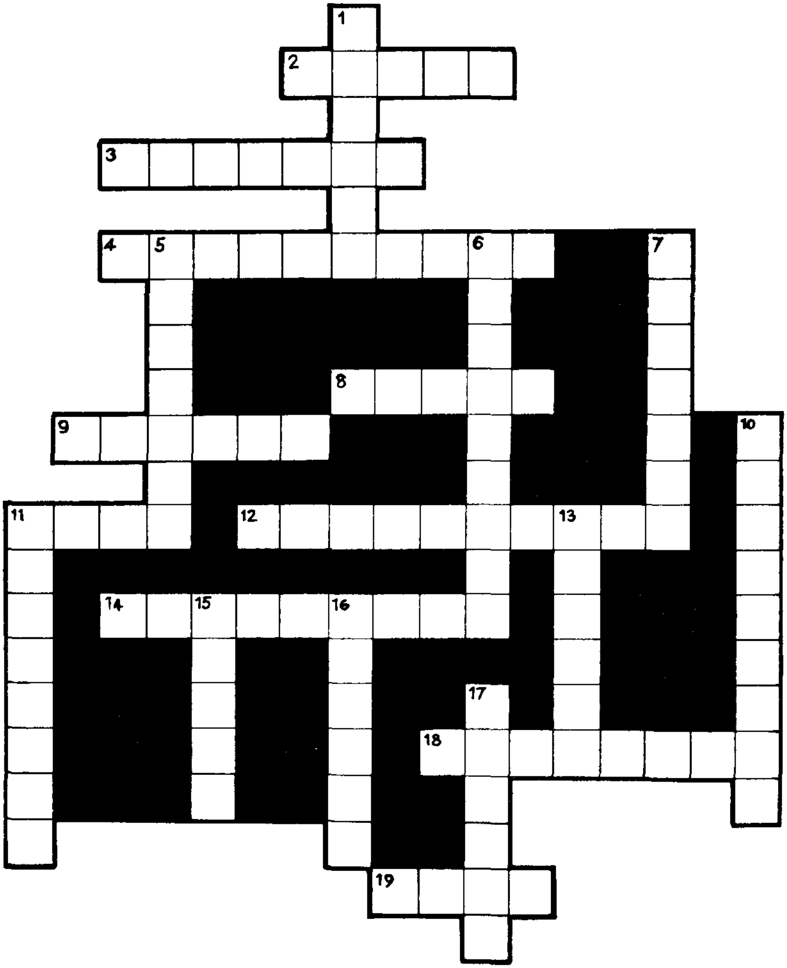
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19

ACROSS

2 We're having a party on Saturday and I'm really excited .... it (5).

3 We thought he was a confirmed bachelor, so we were really surprised when we heard that he had got .... to a Swedish au pair girl (7).

4 He found it quite difficult to drive in France at first, because he was not .... to driving on the right (10).

8 Everyone felt .... for him because he was blind (5).

9 Peter has always been .... of the dark, and that's why he sleeps with the lights on (6).

11 I'm not very .... at tennis; I always seem to lose (4).

12 The businessman had been .... in all his business deals. He hadn't once failed to get an order (10).

14 If you're not .... with the service at the hotel, then you should complain to the manager (9).

18 My sister doesn't think that guns are very .... toys for children. If she had her way, they'd all be banned (8).

19 The boss has been ill .... a cold for the past week (4).

DOWN

1 You are not allowed to be .... from school without permission (6).

5 When the children woke up on Christmas morning, they were thrilled to see the ground .... with snow (7).

6 She was so .... in her newspaper that she didn't notice me come in (9).

7 James is late again. That's .... of him. I don't think he's ever been early for anything in his entire life! (7)

10 Looking at the way Brian dances, I see what Darwin meant when he said that we were .... from apes (9).

11 I am very .... to you for all your help (8).

13 My wife is .... in French and German and also has a reasonable working knowledge of Spanish and Italian (6).

15 I'm .... of eating potatoes every day. Why can't we have rice for a change? (5)

16 Wales is .... for its male-voice choirs (6).

6 What are they saying? 1

*Supply the missing preposition(s) in each caption and then **match** it to the appropriate cartoon.*

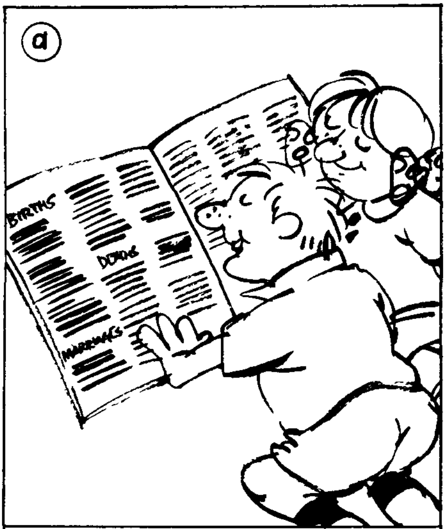
a
BIRTHS
DEATHS
MARRIAGES

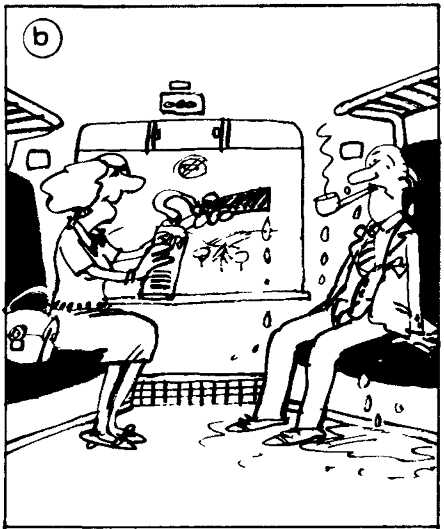

1 Why can't you hide .... a newspaper .... breakfast like other husbands?

2 What do you mean it's not that bad? I'm standing .... my husband's shoulders!

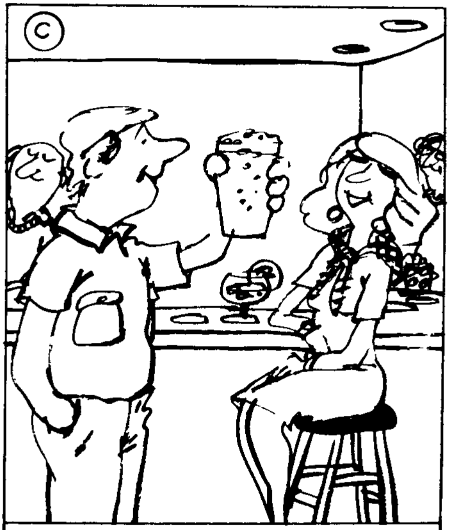

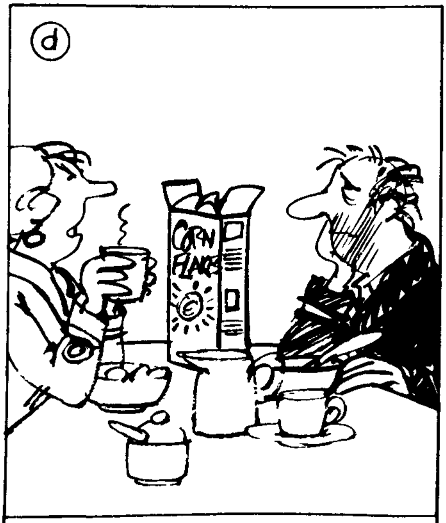
d
CORN FLAKES

3 I think we'd better apologise

4 I'm allergic

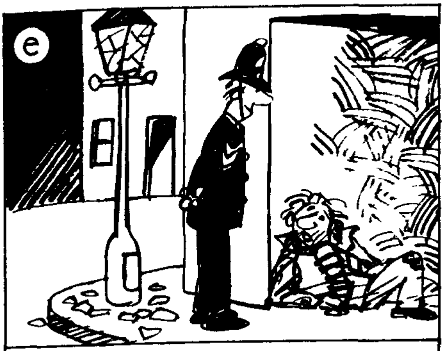

5 You used to gaze .... me like that!

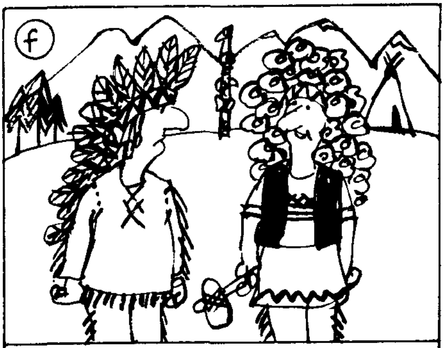

6 It's amazing .... me how people always seem to get married .... alphabetical order.

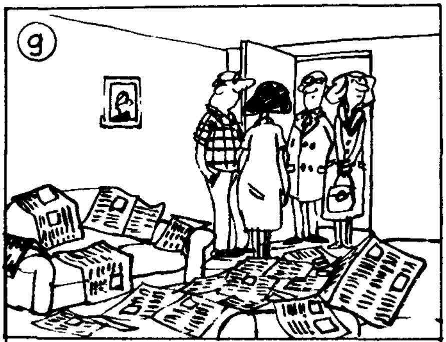

7 What do you mean you can't sleep .... the light on?

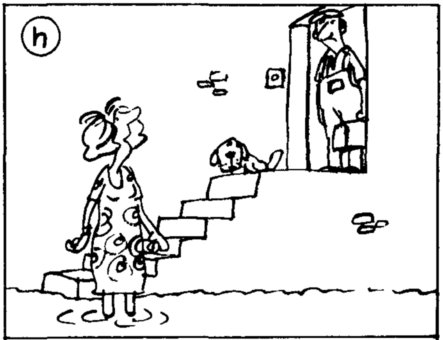

8 This is the part I don't like – having to think .... different names .... them all.

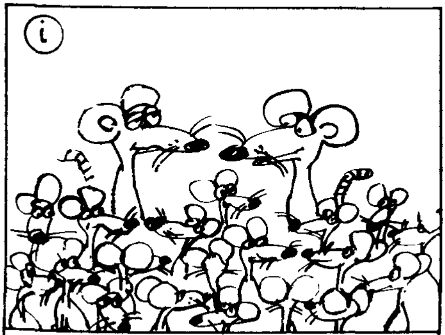

9 What a pity you haven't brought your little dog .... you. We were so looking forward ....

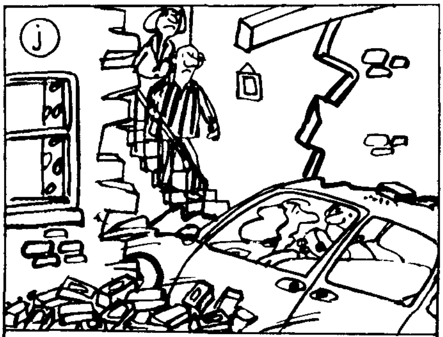

10 Do I take it you object .... my smoking a pipe?

7

Word association 1

Each of the words and phrases on the left can be associated with one of the prepositional phrases on the right. Try to match them up correctly

1 recite a poem
2 We're late!
3 What a mess!
4 very fashionable
5 I can't pay!
6 You're too young!
7 illegal
8 simultaneous
9 no clothes
10 I haven't eaten!
11 old-fashioned
12 It really hurts!
13 very early
14 a prisoner
15 It's burning!
16 gradually

a against the law
b at daybreak
c at the same time
d behind schedule
e behind the times
f by degrees
g from memory
h in agony
i in arrears
j behind bars
k in disorder
l in flames
m in the nude
n in vogue
o on an empty stomach
p under age

Write your answers here?

8

One word only 1

Read through the following and fill in the numbered blanks with one suitable word. (Most of the missing words are prepositions.)

Travel plans

I live (1) .... Sweden, but every summer I like to travel (2) .... Britain to visit my family and friends. I hate flying, so last summer I decided that for a (3) .... I would travel (4) .... bus. (5) .... to the brochure I received (6) .... the travel agency, the bus would leave Malmo (7) .... 9.30 (8) .... Friday evening and arrive (9) .... London the following Sunday at 7.30 (10) .... the morning. The journey would involve taking the boat (11) .... Trelleborg on the south (12) .... of Sweden to Travemunde (13) .... West Germany. Then we would drive (14) .... Germany, Holland and Belgium (15) .... taking another boat (16) .... Ostend (17) .... Dover. It sounded wonderful – (18) .... least (19) .... theory.

In (20) ...., the journey was a nightmare from (21) .... to finish. (22) .... begin (23) ...., I made the mistake (24) .... not reserving a berth (25) .... Trelleborg and Travemünde since it was quite impossible to sleep (26) .... to the combined singing (27) .... groups of drunk Germans and Swedes, each trying (28) .... outdo the other in (29) .... of volume and vulgarity.

Again, I had forgotten that you are not allowed to smoke (30) .... Swedish buses, which made the journey (31) .... stops seem even longer than it was (32) .... reality. It also meant that when we did eventually have a break I spent the whole time (33) .... up for the hours when I had not been able to smoke, (34) .... the result that I could not be bothered to waste valuable "smoking" time (35) .... queuing up (36) .... a meal.

(37) .... the time we reached London I was a physical and mental wreck! I had not slept or eaten properly (38) .... almost thirty-six hours and all I wanted to do was sleep. So I booked (39) .... a really shoddy hotel next (40) .... Victoria Coach Station and slept soundly (41) .... twelve hours, (42) .... the same time vowing that never again would I make the journey from Sweden (43) .... Britain by bus (44) .... fact, (45) .... that experience, flying took (46) .... a whole new dimension and far (47) .... hating it, I would now not dream (48) .... travelling any other way.

9 Nouns following "at"

Complete the table on the right by filling in the blanks in the following sentences.

1 The car came round the corner at full ....

	P			

2 I'm not exactly sure how old he is, but at a .... I'd say about forty-five.

		E	S	

3 He was a very good shot and could kill an elk at a .... of 300 metres.

	I		T				

4 We decided to leave at .... in order to get there before midday.

D			

5 He was very reluctant to do it at ...., but in the end he agreed.

				T

6 Although we had not met before, my host soon made me feel completely at ....

		M	

7 Despite what people might hope, women are still at a .... when it comes to getting a top job.

D					V			T	

8 The normal price was £25, but since I knew him, he let me have them at a ....

D		S					

9 Working in a bank isn't the most exciting job in the world, perhaps, but at .... it pays the rent.

	E	A		

10 In Britain, it is very common to put the cat out at ....

			H	

11 Between 1939 and 1945, Britain was at .... with Germany.

		R

12 At ...., after being turned down by ten publishers, he managed to get his novel accepted.

		S	

13 I'm afraid Ms Simpson's not here at the .... Could you call back later?

		M		N	

14 There was a large notice in the school cloakroom that said: COATS ARE LEFT HERE AT YOUR OWN ....

R			

15 He went out to India to experience at first .... the Indian way of life.

	A		

10 Prepositions of place 2

Shirley wrote to her friend, Linda, giving her instructions how to reach her house. Part of the letter is reproduced below. Look at the following map and fill in the missing prepositions in Shirley's letter.

When you get (1) .... the bus, start walking (2) .... the High Street (3) .... the church. (4) .... the way, you'll pass a pub called the King's Head and a telephone kiosk. Just (5) .... the telephone kiosk, (6) .... the left, there is a car park. Go (7) .... the car park and continue (8) .... the footpath that goes (9) .... Box Wood. Turn right (10) .... the signpost and walk (11) .... the river bank until you come (12) .... a bridge. Don't go (13) .... the bridge but keep on walking until you reach a cottage called 'Hillside'. (14) .... the cottage there is a narrow road that leads (15) .... a farm. Follow the road and turn left just (16) .... reaching the farm. (17) .... the end (18) .... this road there is a row (19) .... houses. I live (20) .... the middle house. It's number 10 and has a lamp-post (21) .... it. If I'm not in, go (22) .... the back, where you'll find a spare key (23) .... the front door (24) .... the right (25) .... the back door, (26) .... a flowerpot. I hope you don't get lost!

Looking forward (27) .... seeing you again.
Lots of love,
Shirley

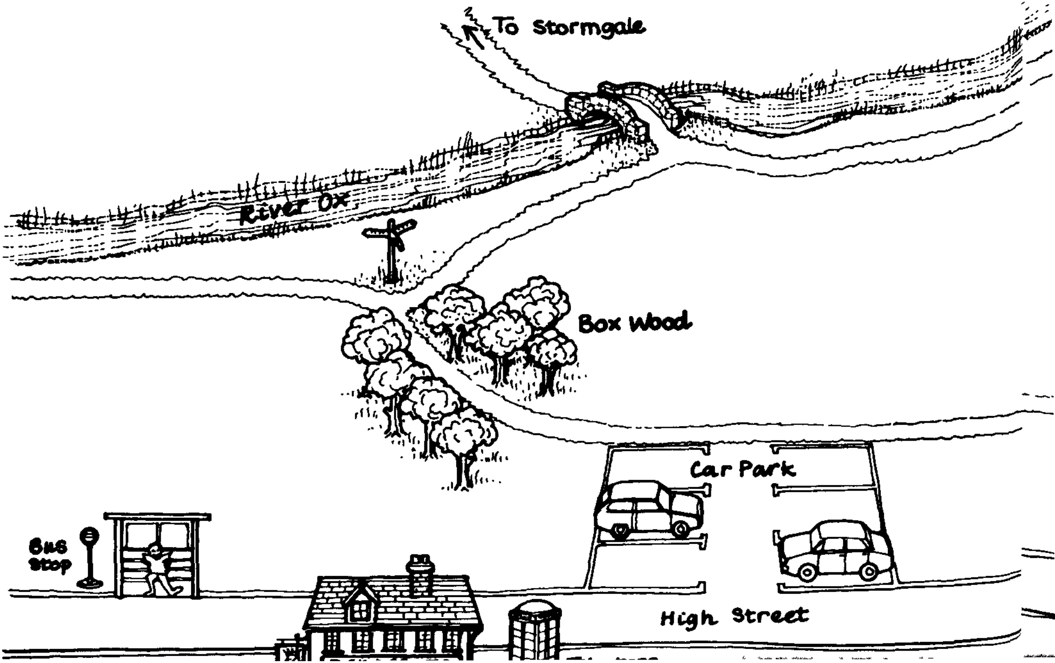

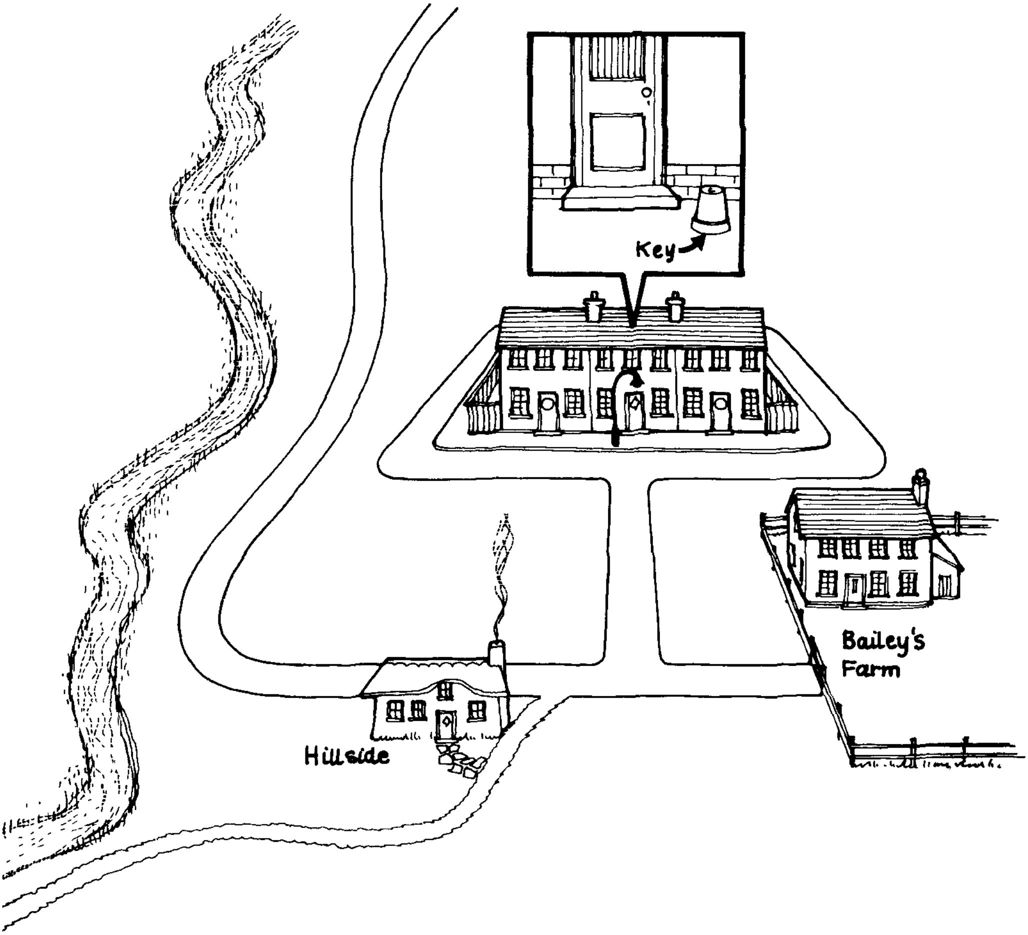
Key
Bailey's Farm
Hillside

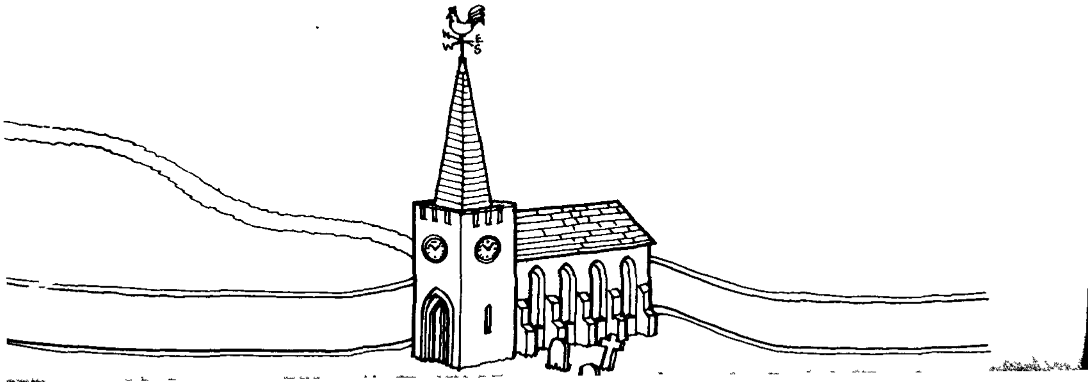
N
W
E
S

11

Choose the preposition 2: at, about, against, from, of

*Complete the following sentences using **at, about, against, from** or **of**.*

1 I don't know her exact age; I can only guess .... how old she really is.

2 She intended to post my letter, but she forgot all .... it.

3 How does a frog differ .... a toad?

4 Tall people are definitely .... an advantage at a football match.

5 It's a pity .... poor old Fred: everyone got a Christmas present except him.

6 After the war, several people were tried for crimes .... humanity.

7 I know .... experience that I do my best work early in the morning.

8 Mrs Dale says her husband neglects her. I don't know what she's worrying ....: mine never leaves me alone.

9 I am astonished .... the way my students can spend all night at the disco and still remember their prepositions next morning.

10 On May Day, in a startling departure .... tradition, the President got on a bicycle and rode round Red Square.

11 Is it possible to insure yourself .... nuclear attack?

12 Today I feel really miserable, because I cannot find anything to complain ....

13 Resulting .... their exhaustive research into the matter, scientists can now confirm that we are all getting older.

14 I bought an old car cheaply, cleaned it up and sold it next day .... a profit.

15 Before going to Africa, Graham had himself inoculated .... tetanus, yellow fever, cholera and typhoid. A week later, he died of influenza.

16 At school today, we had a long discussion .... the best way to learn a foreign language.

17 The best reason for having strict rules at school is that it gives the pupils something to rebel .... when they are older.

18 "How can I discourage my boyfriend .... trying to kiss me all the time?"
"Eat plenty of garlic."

19 Raise the gun to your shoulder, aim .... the target, and try not to kill anyone.

20 Picking your nose in public is not illegal, but it is certainly an offence .... good manners.

12

Prepositions after adjectives 1

Complete the sentences below with one of the following adjectives plus a preposition.

addicted
adequate
angry
aware
bad
capable
disqualified
distracted
eligible
expert
full
inspired
involved
jealous
notorious
sympathetic

1 Do you think politicians are .... telling lies?

2 Don't ask me to add up the bill. I'm really .... mathematics.

3 This piece of music was .... by Beethoven's Moonlight Sonata.

4 The flat wasn't very big, but it was perfectly .... our needs.

5 Never become .... cigarettes!

6 Although he wouldn't admit it, everyone could see that he was .... his wife's success.

7 He was .... the race for taking drugs.

8 My neighbour is .... pruning fruit trees.

9 "Who else was .... the crime?" the policeman asked the suspect.

10 He was nearly sixteen before he first became .... the opposite sex.

11 He tried to work but was .... the noise from the traffic.

12 Life is .... surprises, isn't it?

13 Pop groups are .... smashing up hotel rooms.

14 The teacher was .... her students for not doing their homework.

15 Although they said they were .... our cause, they were not prepared to support us officially.

16 Only unmarried women are .... membership.

13

Time expressions

The underlined expressions can be replaced by a time expression based on the word given in **CAPITAL LETTERS** *Supply the missing prepositions*

Example: We'll grow all our own vegetables in future. **ON**
We'll grow all our own vegetables from now on.

1 Most of her clothes are no longer fashionable. **DATE**

2 You really make me angry sometimes. **TIMES**

3 I hope to see you all again soon. **LONG**

4 You'll have to make your own bed in future. **ON**

5 Now and then we like to spend a weekend in the mountains. **TIME**

6 Autumn is the time when fruit like apples and pears are available. **SEASON**

7 The demonstrators occupied the square for several hours until they were eventually driven away by the police. **LENGTH**

8 Wendy said that she would like to dance, and immediately there were twenty young men offering to dance with her. **TIME**

9 We'll be in the UK, but only briefly. **LONG**

10 Nobody wanted to buy his car, so finally he had to give it away. **END**

11 Our daughter left home three years ago, and we don't know even now what happened to her. **DAY**

12 Please complete the rest of your assignments right away. **DELAY**

13 Your Aunt Kate is using the spare bedroom now ... **MOMENT**

14 ... so you'll have to sleep in the garden temporarily. **BEING**

15 I hope to see you next month. Until then, best of luck with your driving test. **MEANTIME**

16 Please be very quiet. There is an examination going on. **PROGRESS**

14 Rewrite the sentences 1

For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence using the word in **CAPITAL LETTERS** *We have given you the first word(s) of the new sentence*

Example: My father has always liked football. **INTERESTED.**

My father has always been interested in football.

1 Everyone has heard about the leaning tower of Pisa. **FAMOUS**
Pisa ....

2 This passport can be used in most countries. **VALID**
This ....

3 They didn't tell anyone they were getting married. **SECRET**
They ....

4 Are you and Jennifer related? **RELATIVE**
Is ....

5 Do you want a drink? **CARE**
Would ....

6 I lent my cousin £5. **BORROWED**
My cousin ....

7 A car crashed into a bus this morning. **COLLIDED**
A car ....

8 We didn't think she would pass the exam. **DOUBTFUL**
We ....

9 He found it hard to open the window. **DIFFICULTY**
He ....

10 Pay no attention to what she says. **NOTICE**
Take ....

11 The painting is worth £25,000. **VALUED**
The ....

12 She doesn't find her present job very interesting. **BORED**
She ....

13 He was seventy-six when he died. **AGE**
He ....

14 She lived just outside the town. **OUTSKIRTS**
She ....

15 He laughed very loudly when he saw the clown. **ROARED**
He ....

16 Our customs and theirs are not the same. **DIFFERENT**
Our ....

17 I don't feel like going out tonight. **MOOD**
I ....

18 She spent the evening alone. **HERSELF**
She ....

15 It's joke time 1

Complete the following jokes by filling in the missing prepositions.

1 *Doctor*: Did you drink your orange juice .... your bath?
Patient: .... drinking the bath, I didn't have too much room .... the orange juice.

2 *Teacher*: Where are you from?
Student: Germany.
Teacher: Which part?
Student: All .... me.

3 *Patient*: Doctor! Doctor! I think I'm a dog.
Doctor: Sit down, please.
Patient: I can't. I'm not allowed .... the furniture.

4 *Teacher*: If we breathe oxygen .... the daytime, what do we breathe .... night?
Student: Nitrogen?

5 *Patient*: I keep feeling I'm covered .... gold paint.
Psychiatrist: Don't worry, that's just a gilt complex.

6 *Teacher*: James, where are the Andes?
James: .... the end .... my armies, Miss.

7 *Hiker*: Tell me, will this path take me .... the main road?
Local: No, sir, you'll have to go .... yourself.

8 *Teacher*: What's the definition .... 'minimum'?
Student: A very small mother.

9 *Man*: I had to give up tap dancing.
Woman: Why?
Man: I kept falling .... the sink.

10 *Mother*: Brian, did you fall down .... your new trousers on?
Brian: Yes, Mum, there wasn't time to take them off.

11 *Doctor*: Good morning, Mrs Gibbs. I haven't seen you .... a long time.
Mrs Gibbs: I know, Doctor. I've been ill.

12 *Girl*: My cousin's very good .... bird impressions.
Boy: Really?
Girl: Yes. He eats worms!

13 *Patient*: Doctor, have you got anything .... my liver?
Doctor: How about some onions?

14 *Man*: My neighbours bang .... the wall .... all hours.
Friend: Doesn't that keep you awake?
Man: No, but it really interferes .... my trumpet practice!

15 *Girl*: You remind me .... the sea.
Boy: Because I'm so wild and romantic?
Girl: No, you make me sick.

16 *Father*: Johnny, I've had a letter .... your headmaster. It seems you're very careless .... your appearance.
Johnny: Am I, Dad?
Father: Yes, you haven't appeared .... school .... last term.

16 Nouns following "by"

Complete the table on the right by filling in the blanks in the following sentences.

1	I didn't mean to do it; it was by	□ C □ □ □ □ N T
2	I'm sorry, but Dr Salmon sees patients by .... only.	A □ P □ □ □ T □ □ □ □
3	By all .... bring your girlfriend with you to the party on Saturday.	□ E □ □ S
4	I'd hate to go from England to Australia by .... Just imagine being seasick for six weeks!	□ O □ □
5	He didn't have any cash, so he paid by	□ H □ □ U □
6	Hotels have to have fire escapes by	□ □ W
7	I know her by ...., but I've never actually seen her.	□ □ M □
8	Statistically, the safest way of travelling is by	A □ □
9	I usually buy my eggs by the	D □ □ □ □
10	As the troublemakers wouldn't leave the disco peacefully, they had to be removed by	□ □ R □ □
11	The announcement that the company had been taken over took all the employees by	□ U □ P □ □ □ □
12	By the ...., my name's James Samuels. I'm Miss Thompson's assistant.	□ □ Y
13	He was a doctor by	□ □ □ F □ S □ □ □ □
14	My cousin is related to the Archbishop of Canterbury by .... Her husband is the Archbishop's brother.	□ □ R R □ □ □ □
15	She was a shy, retiring person by .... who hated being the centre of attention.	□ □ T □ □ E

17

Phrasal verbs (verb + preposition)

Rewrite the following sentences using the verb in **CAPITAL LETTERS** *to replace the underlined words. You may need to rearrange the remaining words and to change the tense or the form of the verb*

Example: Who's taking care of the children? **LOOK**

Who's looking after the children?

Choose from the following prepositions:

about
across
against
at
by
for
from
in
into
on
over
round
through
to
towards
with

1 I can see that my dog really likes you. **TAKE**

2 Would you like to explain in more detail what you proposed at our last meeting? **ELABORATE**

3 Michael did not hesitate to take advantage of the chance to go to Australia. **JUMP**

4 Will I be at a disadvantage because of my age? **COUNT**

5 Where were you born and brought up? **HAIL**

6 Many people are opposed to women with small children going out to work. **HOLD**

7 The repairs we have had to do on the car have really used up a lot of our savings. **EAT**

8 Tedious as it was, I had to examine a large number of documents before I found what I was looking for. **PLOUGH**

9 She happened to find the missing pearl necklace while she was looking for something else. **STUMBLE**

10 Any money I have to spare is added to the money I am saving for my holiday. **PUT**

11 Everybody deserted John after he was arrested and put on trial for embezzlement, but his wife told him: "I will not abandon you, John, whatever happens." **STICK**

12 She decided to treat herself to the luxury of a bottle of expensive champagne to celebrate her promotion. **INDULGE**

13 During the interview, the Prime Minister tried to avoid going into detail about the part of the story that he found embarrassing. **GLOSS**

14 Everyone is full of enthusiasm for Lloyd Webber's latest musical. **RAVE**

15 I am happy to confirm that he is a man of integrity. **VOUCH**

16 Little boys know how to behave in such a way that their parents will give them what they want. **GET**

18 "On time" or "in time"?

Choose the best alternative to complete each of the following sentences.

1 We arrived just (in time/on time) to see the Queen arrive at the threatre.

2 Is it true that Simon (died of/died from) cancer?

3 I was (at the point/on the point of) going out when the telephone rang.

4 Do you remember that scene (at the end/in the end) when Richard Burton and Elizabeth Taylor have a terrific argument?

5 He may seem tough and ruthless, but (by heart/at heart) he's a kind and gentle man.

6 You know you can always come to me (at the time of/in time of) need.

7 He never travelled abroad (for fear of/in fear of) becoming ill through eating foreign food.

8 Although he says he is (friendly to/friendly with) our cause, he refuses to support it openly.

9 The mother gave her three children a bar of chocolate and told them to (divide it between/divide it among) themselves.

10 These paintings have been (in possession of/in the possession of) my family for generations.

11 My cousin is very (clever at/clever with) repairing things.

12 You're so selfish! You never (care about/care for) anyone but yourself!

13 When I was a secondary school teacher, I knew all my pupils (by name/in name).

14 You're not (angry at/angry with) being kept waiting, are you?

15 I know them both (by sight/on sight), but I've no idea what their names are.

16 Who's that standing (at the front of/in front of) Julie in the photo?

17 Hands up all those (in favour of/in favour with) going to Brighton for the annual outing.

18 The proposal was accepted (on principle/in principle), but the committee asked for further details before making a final decision.

19 (In case of/In the case of) difficulty, you can reach me at this number.

20 (In view of/With a view to) the fact that only three people have signed up for Friday's concert, I'm afraid we'll have to cancel it.

19 Idiomatic prepositional phrases

Complete the sentences below with one of the following prepositions:

at
by
from
get
in
on
out of
under
up to

Some may be used more than once

1 The boss didn't punish Kevin for coming late. He must be .... his good books.

2 He's almost dying; I'm afraid he's .... his last legs.

3 There's nothing else she can do now – the matter is completely .... her hands.

4 People told one another the news. It was passed .... word of mouth.

5 Since he won Wimbledon, everyone wants to interview him. He's .... great demand.

6 Although the police suspected him, he could prove that he was working when the crime was committed, so now he is .... the clear.

7 She's very busy at the moment; she's .... her eyes in work.

8 He came from a very poor family, so he learnt .... first hand what it was like to be hungry.

9 The police arrived just in time; they came .... the eleventh hour.

10 She rarely goes to the cinema – just once .... a blue moon.

11 They lived on only £25 a week. They lived .... a shoestring.

12 He'll never pass his exam – not .... a month of Sundays.

13 The goods were not sold openly but were available .... the counter.

14 He hasn't won yet – not .... a long chalk.

15 She never once needed to consult the manual; she had all the information .... her fingertips.

16 People arrived slowly, two or three at a time. They arrived .... dribs and drabs.

17 Stop wasting time! Get to my office .... the double.

18 I hate spiders. I get .... a cold sweat just thinking about them.

19 He's not lying. Everything he's told us so far is .... the level.

20 Crossword 2

Read through the sentences below and complete the ***crossword****. The missing words are either prepositions or nouns.*

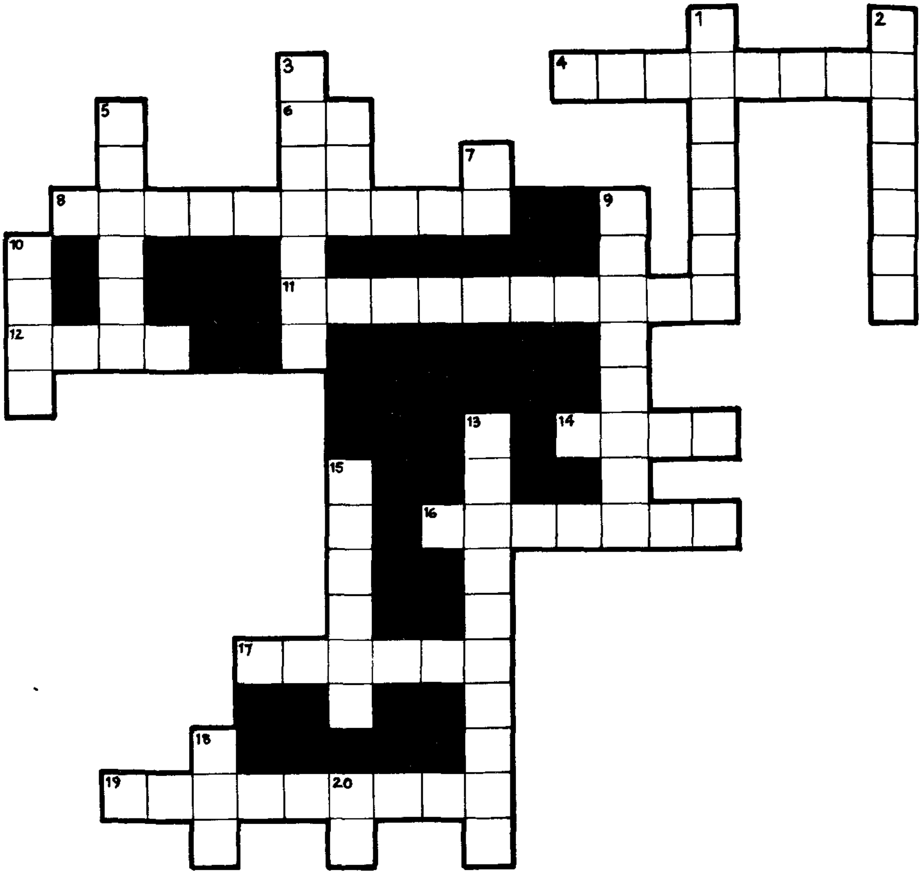
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20

ACROSS

4 There has been a sharp .... in the number of people staying on at school over the age of sixteen. There are at least 25 per cent more now than there were three years ago (8).

6 For this job you need to be fluent in French and have a good working knowledge .... at least two other European languages (2).

8 Germans have a .... for being very efficient and hard-working (10).

11 You shouldn't have any .... in getting to know people in Greece. Everyone is so friendly there (10).

12 Being tall, she had a certain advantage .... others in the team (4).

14 In some countries, companies are not allowed to do business .... South Africa (4).

16 Fighting the threat of pollution is a race .... time (7).

17 Can I have the .... for your fruit cake? (6)

19 'To be or not to be' is a famous .... from *Hamlet* (9).

DOWN

1 RSPCA stands for the Royal Society for the Prevention of .... to Animals (7).

2 Is there a great difference .... British and American English? (7)

3 What is your attitude .... foreigners? (7)

5 On his eighteenth birthday his grandfather gave him a .... for £1,000 (6).

7 Brazil is rich .... natural resources (2).

9 Does anyone have a .... to the problem? (8)

10 The verdict was death .... natural causes (4).

13 I've just heard of Tom's .... to Angela. I wonder when the wedding will be? (10)

15 Since he was a mechanic, I asked for his .... on buying a second-hand car (6).

18 Is your wife still having treatment .... asthma? (3)

20 She is heir .... the family fortune. That's probably why so many men would like to marry her (2).

21 Sort out the two letters 1

The two letters below are all mixed up. Try to sort them out. Mark the first letter 1–9 and the second one a–k. (The first part of Letter 1 has been done for you.)

☐

to your Mum and Dad.

Lots of love,

Bob

P.S.

Don't forget you're coming here

☐

in the summer.

Give my regards to your parents and write soon.

Lots of love,

Paul

☐

of things to do and so on – especially in the summer. (Lots of pretty foreign students too!) So thank your parents for me and tell them I'm really looking forward to it.

I asked Mum and Dad

☐

near Hastings, and they thought you might like to join us for two weeks – from 2-15 August. It sleeps four, so there's plenty of room. And it's only five minutes

☐

from the sea, so we could go swimming every day. It should be great fun, but it would be even better if you could be there too. So what do you say? Apart

☐

of course I'd love to join you and your parents in Fairlight. It sounds really fun. I visited Hastings once and it was a really nice place – lots

☐

out if your parents received the holiday brochures he sent, as he hasn't heard

☐

for almost three months. (Not bad for me!) What about you? Are you still going out with Pauline or have you got someone new now?

Anyway, do write some time and remember to give my love

☐

of the new Volvo. He's always liked foreign cars – especially Volvos – and keeps hinting

☐ for my birthday party on the nineteenth. (Bring Pauline, if you like!)

☐ from them yet.

Well, Bob, that's all for now. I hope you're keeping well and that you'll be able to join us

☐ with Sally. You remember Sally, don't you? She was the girl I met at Jenny's birthday party. We've been together now

☐ in the summer? Mum and Dad have hired a caravan in Fairlight - a little village

1 Dear Bob,

Sorry I've taken such a long time in answering your letter, but the truth is that I've been really busy these past few weeks

☐ from this, there's not much else to say really. Dad's got a new car - a Volvo - and Mum's just started back to work again.

By the way, Dad asked me to find

☐ With exams and everything, so I hope you understand.

My main reason for writing, however is to ask if you feel like spending a couple of weeks with us

☐ Dear Paul,

Many thanks for your letter. It was nice to hear from you at last. (I was beginning to think you'd emigrated!)

About the summer, yes

☐ for all the trouble he's gone to.

By the way, Paul, Dad's very jealous

☐ to Mum about getting a new car. But she's not interested really, so I don't think he'll persuade her.

Well, Paul, I'll stop now because I'm off to a disco

☐ about the holiday brochures and they say they haven't received them yet. (Well, you know what the post is like!) But they'll write as soon as they get them, and they asked me to tell you to thank your Dad

22

Compound prepositions 1

Complete the prepositional phrases below by choosing a word from the following list. When you have finished, try to make up a sentence using each of the phrases.

a cost
agreement
aid
answer
behalf
compensation
good terms
means
peace
pity
reference
the accompaniment
the benefit
the compliments
the influence
work

1 at .... on

2 at .... of

3 at .... with

4 by .... of

5 for .... of

6 in .... of

7 in .... with

8 in .... to

9 in .... for

10 on .... of

11 on .... with

12 out of .... for

13 to .... of

14 under .... of

15 with .... to

16 with .... of

23 Choose the preposition 3: in, into, on, over

*Complete the following sentences using **in**, **into**, **on** or **over**.*

1 Do you take pride .... your appearance, or are you just vain?

2 I tripped .... the cat and fell downstairs.

3 The film *The Magnificent Seven* was based .... a Japanese story about the samurai.

4 Don't kiss the Prince, or he might change .... a frog.

5 If you can't finish the report by Friday, please try to get it done .... the weekend.

6 Father must be .... a bad temper: he has just thrown mother out of the window.

7 All forms of travel are expensive nowadays, but, ... balance, air travel offers the best value for money.

8 Extensive research .... artificial sweeteners has shown that rats die quickly if you drop large blocks of saccharin on them.

9 There seems to be some confusion .... what Nelson actually said as he lay dying: Was it "Kiss me, Hardy" or "Kismet, Hardy"?

10 There has been a considerable improvement .... the flow of traffic since they opened the extra lanes on the M25.

11 There's no point in getting upset .... things that are beyond your control.

12 The only way to prevent children from getting .... trouble is to keep them locked up until they are twenty-one.

13 The party's new policy document puts a strong emphasis .... public ownership of basic utilities like electricity and water.

14 I am a bit weak .... science subjects, but I am trying to improve.

15 If you put as much effort .... your studies as you do .... football, you might have a chance.

16 I've been .... your essay, and I wore out three red pens making corrections.

17 Is it true that Peter is currently engaged .... writing a book about Swedish humour?

18 Do you pride yourself .... looking smart, or are you simply trying to impress me?

19 Make yourself a drink while I go and slip .... something more comfortable.

24 Nouns following "in" 1

Complete the table on the right by filling in the blanks in the following sentences.

1	The most popular game in England in the .... is cricket.	☐ U ☐ ☐ E ☐
2	This car may be old, but it's still in very good	☐ ☐ ☐ D ☐ T ☐ ☐ ☐
3	Keep away from Simon; he's in a really bad .... this morning.	☐ ☐ O ☐
4	I can't stop, I'm afraid. I'm in a	☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ Y
5	All school fees must be paid in	☐ ☐ V ☐ ☐ C ☐
6	In an .... dial 999.	☐ M ☐ R ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ Y
7	That joke was in very bad ...., Colin. You should be ashamed of yourself.	T ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐
8	You'd better take some extra money with you in .... you need to take a taxi home.	☐ A ☐ ☐
9	During the Second World War, most messages were sent in	☐ ☐ D ☐
10	What I'm about to tell you is in .... So please don't say anything to anyone else.	C ☐ ☐ F ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ C ☐
11	The secret service tried to warn the President that his life would be in .... if he carried out his plan to visit South Africa.	☐ ☐ ☐ G ☐ R
12	I'm afraid the bank can't lend you more money, Mrs Jarvis, You're already over £800 in	☐ ☐ B ☐
13	I always stay in .... until 12 o'clock on Sundays.	☐ E ☐
14	In ...., may I say how grateful I am to everyone for making today such a big success.	☐ O ☐ ☐ L ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ N
15	There's nothing wrong with drinking alcohol as long as it's done in	☐ ☐ D ☐ R ☐ T ☐ ☐ ☐

25

Rewrite the sentences 2

For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence using the word in **CAPITAL LETTERS**. *We have given you the first word(s) of the new sentence.*

Example: My father has always liked football. **INTERESTED**
My father has always been interested in football.

1 Your car is just like one I used to own. **SIMILAR**
I ....
2 He would never tell you a lie. **INCAPABLE**
He ....
3 When Mary was pregnant, all she wanted to eat was jelly. **CRAVING**
Mary ....
4 My boss seems to enjoy humiliating people. **PLEASURE**
My boss ....
5 I don't usually speak to strange men. **HABIT**
I ....
6 The interview panel thought that Sarah had a very good manner. **IMPRESSION**
Sarah ....
7 If you want to understand Yeats's poetry, you need to study Irish history. **KEY**
Irish history ....
8 Sports cars are John's great passion. **CRAZY**
John ....
9 All my friends have left me. **DESERTED**
I ....
10 My best friend is someone I can really trust. **CONFIDENCE**
I ....
11 Henry really knew how to make people laugh. **TALENT**
Henry ....
12 My father says that the moon is made of green cheese. **ACCORDING**
The moon ....
13 The people of Dolichorrhinia are noted for their long noses. **CHARACTERISTIC**
Long noses ....
14 I can recite the whole of Wordsworth's *Prelude* without looking at the book. **MEMORY**
I ....
15 We have run out of the items you want. **STOCK**
The items ....
16 It was very kind of you to help me. **GRATEFUL**
I ....
17 The way to get the best out of me is to make me work very hard. **PRESSURE**
I ....
18 All the teachers like Kate. **POPULAR**

26

Prepositions after verbs 1

Complete the sentences below with one of the following verbs plus a preposition. (Make any changes to verb tenses that may be necessary)

apologise
arrive
belong
complain
correspond
die
distinguish
experiment
hear
knock
leave
lose
pray
rhyme
suffer
vote

1 Did you .... Tom and Sally? They've decided to emigrate to New Zealand.

2 If you don't agree with the proposal, you can always .... it at the meeting.

3 It was almost midnight when we .... the station.

4 Some people find it difficult to .... an American and a Canadian.

5 The priest said he would .... us.

6 Although he had survived the battle, the soldier later .... his wounds.

7 For years, his wife had .... varicose veins.

8 Do you think people should be allowed to .... animals?

9 I don't know why, but I really hate .... cards. It puts me in a bad mood all day.

10 He .... the manager about the poor service at the restaurant.

11 Would you say that the British House of Lords .... the American Senate?

12 Do you know who this book ....?

13 Can you think of a word that .... "numb"?

14 I think there's someone .... the door.

15 He .... the organisers for his bad behaviour at the conference.

16 We .... Paris next week. We'll probably stay there for a fortnight.

27

Phrasal verbs + preposition

Complete each of the sentences using one of these adverb + preposition pairs:

around to
around for
away for
away with
back on
behind with
down to
down with
in for
in with
on at
out for
over to
up on
up to
up with

1 Did you get this booklet from a bookshop?
No, I had to write .... it.

2 Is Pat ill again? She's forever going .... some illness or other!

3 Just because I kissed you last night, don't run .... the idea that I am serious about you.

4 An outgoing Chairman always hands .... his successor at the end of the Annual General Meeting.

5 He thinks he's superior to everyone else. That's why he always talks .... people.

6 If you go into the park alone at night, watch .... muggers.

7 I've had so many other things to do lately that I've fallen .... my studies. Never mind, I'll soon catch up.

8 "When are you going to mend that broken window?"
"Don't worry, I'll get .... it one of these days."

9 I was very disappointed when I went to see Rod Stewart in concert. He certainly failed to live .... my expectations.

10 When the sky is red in the morning, it means we are .... some bad weather.

11 I've been looking .... somewhere to live, but I haven't found anything suitable so far.

12 When money is short, you have to think about cutting .... luxuries.

13 I didn't bring any money with me. If you'll pay for the meal, I'll settle .... you later.

14 My parents nag me constantly. They keep .... me to smarten myself up and get a proper job.

15 If you're going to apply for that interpreter's job, you'd better brush .... your French and German.

16 "When shall we meet for lunch?"
"Well, I'm free any time, so I'll fit .... your plans."

28 One word only 2

Read through the following and fill in the numbered blanks with a suitable preposition. Be careful, however, in some cases there may be more than one alternative; in others, no preposition is needed.

It was a very happy funeral. Even the sun shone that day (1) .... the late Henry Ground. Lying (2) .... his coffin, he was probably enjoying himself too. Once more, and (3) .... the last time (4) .... this earth, he was the centre (5) .... attention. People laughed and told (6) .... each other jokes. Relatives who had not spoken (7) .... years smiled (8) .... each other and promised to stay (9) .... touch (10) .... now on. And, (11) .... course, everyone had a favourite story to tell (12) .... Henry.

"What (13) .... the time he dressed up (14) .... gypsy costume and went (15) .... door (16) .... door telling people's fortunes? He actually made £6 (17) .... an afternoon!"

"That reminds me (18) .... the time I was having dinner (19) .... him (20) .... a posh restaurant. When the wine waiter brought the wine, he poured a drop (21) .... Henry's glass and waited (22) .... a superior expression (23) .... his face. So Henry, instead (24) .... tasting (25) .... it, the way any normal person would, dipped his thumb and forefinger (26) .... the wine (27) .... his glass. Then he put his hand (28) .... his ear and rolled his forefinger and thumb together as if he were *listening* (29) .... the quality (30) .... the wine! Then he nodded (31) .... the waiter solemnly, as if to say 'Yes, that's fine. You may serve it.' You should have seen the look (32) .... the wine waiter's face! And how Henry managed to keep (33) .... laughing, I'll never know!"

"Did you hear (34) .... the practical joke he played when he was a student (35) .... Oxford, the one (36) .... the roadmenders. Some workmen were digging a hole (37) .... the road. First, Henry went (38) .... the police and told (39) .... them (40) .... some 'students' who were digging the road up (41) .... a joke. Then he approached (42) .... the workmen, and explained (43) .... them that some students had dressed up as policemen and were coming to tell them to stop digging the hole! Well, you can imagine what happened!"

"Yes, old Henry loved to play tricks (44) .... people. Once, when he was invited (45) .... a modern art exhibition, he managed somehow to get (46) .... the gallery the day before and turn all the paintings upside down. The exhibition ran (47) .... four days before anyone noticed!"

"It's hard to believe that Henry was a Ground, when you think how different he was (48) .... his brothers."

Yes, it was difficult to believe (49) .... that he was a Ground. He was born (50) .... an unimportant but well-to-do family (51) .... the Midlands. He was the youngest (52) .... five sons. The four older boys were all successful (53) .... life. They married beautiful girls (54) .... good family, and produced children as handsome and clever as themselves. The eldest son became a clergyman; the second was appointed (55) .... headmaster (56) .... a famous public school; the third went (57) .... business and became disgustingly rich; the fourth followed (58) .... his father's footsteps and became a solicitor. But the youngest Ground, Henry, (59) .... his brothers, turned out to be a lazy good-(60) ....-nothing. (61) .... Henry, an energetic afternoon consisted (62) .... sitting (63) .... a shady tree, (64) .... a pretty companion (65) .... his side, and all the time (66) .... the world to learn the songs (67) .... the bees that buzzed (68) .... his head.

Some people whispered that his real father was not the respectable Mr Ground (69) .... all, but a wild gypsy who had come one day (70) .... the house and had swept Mrs Ground (71) .... her feet (72) .... his dancing black eyes and his wicked country ways.

(Adapted from the story "The Joker" in *The Penguin Book of Very Short Stories.*)

29

Prepositions after nouns

Complete the sentences below with one of the following nouns plus a preposition.

basis
campaign
choice
control
cruelty
excuse
fall
freedom
genius
grudge
knowledge
news
objection
opposite
strain
trouble

1 If you had a .... marrying for love or marrying for money, which would you do?

2 What is the .... "timid"? Is it "bold" or "brave"?

3 The African elephant will be extinct within twenty years if an international .... the ivory trade is not started immediately.

4 Do you have any .... my parking my car in front of your house?

5 The .... chewing gum is that it loses its flavour too quickly.

6 I know you have a cold, but that's no .... not doing your homework.

7 If you have to deal with overseas clients, a .... foreign languages is very useful.

8 Perhaps the three most important human rights are .... hunger, fear and persecution.

9 In our class, we can do as we like: our teacher has no .... us at all.

10 The RSPCA is concerned with prevention of .... animals.

11 Overweight people should not jog, because it puts a great .... their hearts.

12 Since the salmonella scare there has been a considerable .... the consumption of eggs.

13 Einstein was a real .... mathematics, but he couldn't add two and two together correctly!

14 In the dispute between the union and the management, new proposals have been put forward that should at least provide a .... discussion.

15 Vandalising public property is the only way some youngsters can express their .... society.

16 "Did you know that short people don't live as long as tall people?"
"No, I didn't. It's .... me!"

30 Crossword 3

Read through the sentences below and complete the crossword. The missing words are either verbs (in various tenses) or prepositions.

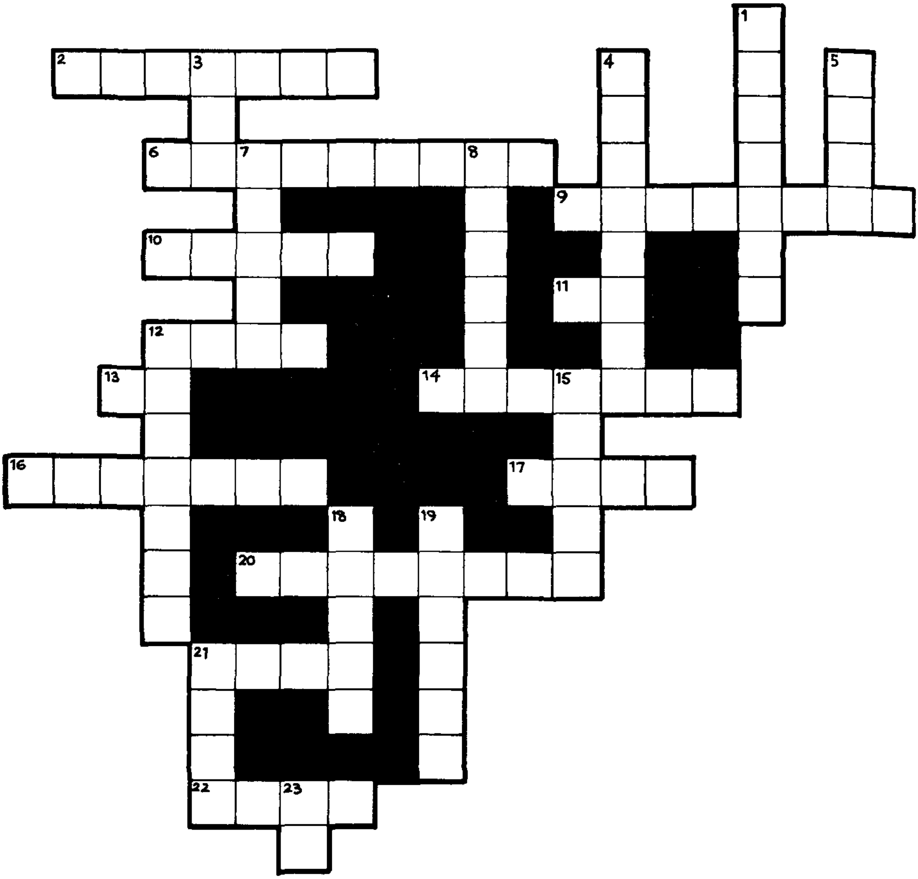
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23

ACROSS

2 David's a bit odd, isn't he? He actually .... rain to sunshine (7).

6 We .... to Australia by boat (9).

9 Stop .... at me! I'm not deaf, you know (8).

10 She shared her birthday cake .... her friends (5).

11 We congratulated her .... passing her driving test (2).

12 The driver lost control of the car and crashed .... a lamp-post (4).

13 My grandfather died .... a train accident before I was born (2).

14 Both the candidates were so well qualified that it was very difficult to choose .... them (7).

16 If you don't agree with the verdict of the court, you can always appeal .... it (7).

17 He was discharged .... the army because of ill-health (4).

20 "What do you get if you .... 14 by 12?"
"168" (8).

21 Charles must be very religious. He's always quoting passages .... the Bible (4).

22 My cousin loves writing letters. In fact he corresponds .... people all over the world (4).

DOWN

1 We went under the bridge to .... from the rain (7).

3 One of Andrew Lloyd Webber's most famous songs is "Don't Cry .... Me, Argentina" (3).

4 If it's too small, you can always go back to the shop and .... it for a larger one (8).

5 We tried to get everyone to .... in the dancing (4).

7 It doesn't matter which country you visit, people there always seem to complain .... the lack of good programmes on television (5).

8 Very few prisoners ever managed to .... from Devil's Island (6).

12 Has Michael .... you to his party on Saturday? (7)

15 You needn't .... about Bob. He'll be all right. He knows how to take care of himself (5).

18 Don't try to .... me for the accident! I wasn't even here when it happened (5).

19 She was very shy and didn't like .... with people, especially strangers (6).

21 Does the River Thames .... into the North Sea or the English Channel? (4)

23 The judge sentenced him .... six months' imprisonment (2).

31

Prepositions after verbs 2

Below are thirty-five verbs arranged alphabetically. Place each one of them under the correct preposition (five under each). When you have finished, see if you can make up sentences containing each of the verbs plus prepositions.

abstain
appeal
approve
believe
benefit
bet
coincide
collaborate
concentrate
consist
cope
decrease
dedicate
delight
depart
depend
dispose
dream
expel
flee
glance
hint
indulge
invest
marvel
object
point
quarrel
rely
respond
subscribe
sympathise
take advantage
tread
wink

AT

____
____
____
____
____

OF

____
____
____
____
____

TO

____
____
____
____
____

FROM

____
____
____
____
____

ON

____
____
____
____
____

WITH

____
____
____
____
____

IN

____
____
____
____
____

32

Choose the preposition 4: in, out of, to, under, with

*Complete the following sentences using **in, out of, to, under**, or **with**.*

1 .... luck, we should be in London by 3 o'clock.

2 Would you like to contribute .... our campaign fund?

3 It's not like John to lose his temper. It's completely .... character.

4 "You are .... arrest, sir."
"On what charge?"
"I'll think of something, sir."

5 The match resulted .... a goalless draw after extra time.

6 With increasing competition from overseas, several factories are threatened .... closure.

7 The talks broke down when the Cubans decided to pull .... negotiations and go home.

8 "Are all the preparations made?"
"Don't worry, everything is .... hand."

9 You look really .... the weather. Are you ill?

10 I told her .... her face exactly what I thought of her.

11 Christopher has started to take an interest .... girls, much to his father's relief.

12 We have a good working relationship .... the local authority.

13 The proposal to introduce a local income tax is still .... discussion.

14 The car went over the brow of the hill and was soon .... sight.

15 I was .... the impression that you had to be twenty-one to vote in general elections.

16 My neighbour's garage, which is adjacent .... my house, is full of rubbish.

17 This is supposed to be a socialist country, but it is socialist .... name only.

18 What it amounts .... is this: the word "socialist" means what the government want it to mean.

19 "Why have you got a pet African buffalo in the house?"
"I wanted something a little .... the ordinary."

20 Are you familiar .... Professor Wilhelm's work on bilingualism in parrots?

33 Nouns following "in" 2

Complete the table on the right by filling in the blanks in the following sentences

1 The detective asked the witness to describe the scene of the crime in ....

□□T□□L

2 My mother is in .... at the moment with a broken leg.

□□S□□T□□

3 This is the only known copy of the book in .... All the others were destroyed in a fire.

□X□□T□□□□

4 In my ...., *Fawlty Towers* with John Cleese was the funniest television comedy series ever made.

□□I□I□□

5 He told us that if we were ever in ...., we could rely on him for help.

□□F□□□□L□□

6 I don't dislike classical music at all. In ...., I often go to the opera.

□A□□

7 "I'll overlook it this time," said the teacher. "But remember to do your homework in ...."

□U□U□□

8 Winning £2 million on the football pools made it possible for him to live in .... for the rest of his life.

C□□□□□T

9 He didn't want anyone to recognise him, so he went to the party in ....

□□□G□I□□

10 Are you sure the projector's in ....? Everything looks very blurred to me.

F□□□□

11 Pam can't concentrate on anything these days. She's in .... again, I'm afraid.

□□V□

12 Although the soldier was obviously in great ...., he never once complained.

□□□N

13 Ask your solicitor if you're in .... about anything in the contract.

		U		T

14 I see that long hair is in .... again.

	A		H			

15 In ...., women are more sensitive than men.

G				R		

34 Sort out the two letters 2

Sunthoms Holidays have received two letters of complaint. Unfortunately, they are mixed up. Try to sort them out. Mark the first letter 1–13 and the second one a–m. (The first part of Letter 1 has been done for you.)

☐ the future then all I can say is that Sunthoms Holidays are to blame! This is the worst holiday I have ever had in my life, and I demand to get my money back. If not, I shall put the matter in the hands of my solicitor.

I look forward

☐ amongst a group of smokers despite the fact that I had specifically asked for a non-smoking seat. If I get lung cancer in

☐ future that all "extra" costs are clearly shown in your brochure.

Apart

☐ for separately! Unfortunately, our travel representative forgot to mention this fact until we were well at sea! By

☐ on the first plane so that there was a further delay in

☐ from the above, the rest of our holiday in Copenhagen was wonderful, and both my wife and I fell in love

☐ Dear Sir,

I have just returned from a holiday in Spain and all I can say is that it was a nightmare from

☐ of the city. Whatever happens, we shall certainly try to return to Copenhagen at

☐ from Sunthoms Holidays, the holiday was to include a two-day boat trip to Oslo in

☐ we had left the country. To begin with, the plane was overbooked. This meant that myself and ten other passengers were forced to go on another plane – one hour later! Unfortunately, our luggage was still

☐ some future date. (I can't say the same about Oslo!)

Yours faithfully,

Bernard Wilson

to hearing from you soon.
Yours faithfully,
Ms Pauline Wood
☐

construction, which meant that there was the constant sound of cement mixers and so on – hardly the peaceful and relaxing holiday I had been looking forward to.

My room was much smaller than I had expected and throughout
☐

the sea. Twenty-five to be exact! And what a beach. It was so polluted that it was positively dangerous
☐

with a company you could rely on. How wrong can you be!

The trouble started even before
☐

sorting out the mess when we finally arrived at the airport in Spain.

The 'luxury' hotel as advertised in your holiday brochure was still under
☐

to one's health.

Finally, on the return journey I found myself sitting
☐

Dear Sir,

I wish to make a complaint about a recent holiday to Copenhagen. According to the brochure I received
1

of the trip being seasick!

I would be grateful if you could make sure in
☐

start to finish! When I chose Sunthoms Holidays I was under the impression that I was dealing
☐

with the Tivoli Gardens. What an experience! What an atmosphere! And to think that it's in the centre
☐

my stay I never once managed to get the shower to work properly – the water was either too cold or too hot.

Another thing, in your brochure you state that the hotel is only a few minutes from
☐

Norway. However, what your brochure failed to mention was the fact that the excursion was to be paid
☐

that time it was too late to Change one's mind. And had I realised how much it was going to cost, I would certainly not have gone on it – especially since the sea was so choppy that my wife and I spent most
☐

35 It's joke time 2

Complete the following jokes by filling in the missing prepositions.

1 I've always believed .... love .... first sight ever since I looked .... a mirror.

2 BULLDOG .... SALE: Will eat anything – very fond .... children.

3 The mother kangaroo suddenly leapt .... the air and gave a cry .... pain. "Sidney!" she screamed. "How many times do I have to tell you that you cannot smoke .... bed!"

4 *Man 1*: How dare you swear .... front .... my wife!
Man 2: Why – was it her turn?

5 *Woman 1*: My husband's career is .... ruins.
Woman 2: Oh, I am sorry to hear that.
Woman 1: There's nothing wrong .... that. He's an archaeologist.

6 "What's the fastest vegetable .... the world?"
"A runner bean."

7 A sadist is someone who would put a drawing-pin .... an electric chair.

8 *Man*: What's the best way to remove paint .... a chair?
Shopkeeper: Sit down on it before it's dry.

9 *Piano tuner*: I've come here to tune your piano.
Man: But we didn't send .... you.
Piano tuner: No, but your neighbours did.

10 A teenage girl sat .... a train chewing gum and staring vacantly .... space, when suddenly an old man sitting opposite said, "It's no good talking .... me, my dear, I'm stone deaf!"

11 An old lady went .... the optician's and said: "I need a new pair .... glasses."
The optician replied: "I knew that as soon as you walked .... the window."

12 *James*: I throw myself .... everything I do.
Susan: Go and dig a large hole!

13 *Jill*: You're wearing your wedding ring .... the wrong finger.
Pam: I know. I married the wrong man.

14 *Customer*: Chemist, I'd like some poison .... mice.
Chemist: Have you tried Boots?[1]
Customer: I want to poison them – not kick them .... death!

15 If Superman's so intelligent, why does he wear his underpants .... his trousers?

16 *Mark*: I understand that the sports and social club is looking .... a treasurer.
Geoffrey: That's right.
Mark: But I thought they hired a treasurer only a few months ago.
Geoffrey: They did. That's the treasurer they're looking ....!

---

[1] A chain of chemists in Britain.

36 Headlines

The prepositional verbs in these headlines each contain a one-letter spelling mistake, e.g., HOME SECRETARY TO BOOK INTO PRISON CONDITIONS, *which should be* HOME SECRETARY TO LOOK INTO PRISON CONDITIONS. *To help you find the mistakes, here is a checklist of the wrong and right letters (given in alphabetical order):*

The wrong letters: A C D E F G L L M P P R S T V

The right letters: C C D E F G J L P P P R R R Y

1 AGRICULTURE MINISTER DRESSED ON PIGS

2 FIREMEN WARNED: DON'T PUMP TO CONCLUSIONS

3 CHICKEN BREEDER ON FRAUD CHARGE TOLD BY JUDGE: "YOU WILL HAVE TO LAY HEAVILY FOR YOUR CRIMES"

4 FINANCIAL CRISIS IN SOCIAL DEMOCRAT PARTY: LEADER FALLS ON PARTY FAITHFUL TO COME TO THE RESCUE

5 NEGOTIATIONS BETWEEN MISSIONARIES AND CANNIBAL CHIEF BREAK DOWN. "IT'S IMPOSSIBLE TO SEASON WITH THEM," SAYS CHIEF

6 VETERINARY SURGEON ACCUSED OF CRUELTY TO CATS PROTESTS: "PEOPLE LIKE TO PUSS OVER NOTHING"

7 GAMBLER CONVICTED OF MURDERING BOOKMAKER BETS FOR MERCY

8 DIRECTOR OF BLOOD BANK ON CORRUPTION CHARGE IS ACCUSED OF CONGEALING EVIDENCE FROM THE POLICE

9 PREACHER WARNS: "THOSE WHO LIVE BY THE SWORD SHALL PARISH BY THE SWORD"

10 GREENGROCER TOLD TO RESTORE SIXTEENTH-CENTURY SHOP FRONT WILL APPLE TO COUNCIL FOR A GRANT

11 HIGH-SPENDING LOCAL AUTHORITIES TOLD: "MONEY DOESN'T GLOW ON TREES"

12 CLERGYMEN FROCK TO WEMBLEY TO HEAR WORLD-FAMOUS PREACHER

13 THE RICH AND THE POOR: MEN WELL-OFF, BUT WOMEN "STILL NOT SHAVING IN NATION'S WEALTH"

14 WELFARE OFFICIALS ACCUSED OF CRYING INTO COUPLES' PRIVATE LIVES

15 NEANDERTHAL MAN MATES FROM PREHISTORIC TIMES, SCIENTIST CLAIMS

37 Compound prepositions 2

Complete the prepositional phrases below by choosing a word from the following list When you have finished, try to make up a sentence using each of the phrases

account
addition
common
exchange
favour
odds
regard
respect
the exception
the expense
the sake
virtue

1 in .... for

2 in .... with

3 in .... to

4 in .... of

5 at .... with

6 at .... of

7 with .... to

8 with .... of

9 for .... of

10 out of .... for

11 on .... of

12 by .... of

38 What are they saying? 2

Supply the missing preposition(s) in each caption and then match it to the appropriate cartoon.

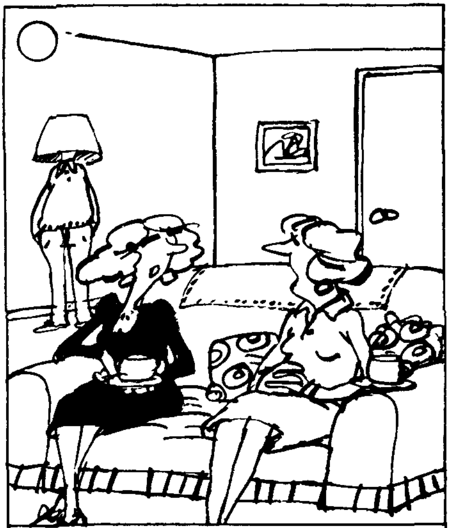

1 So much ....
"enriched ....
vitamins and energy-giving
minerals"!

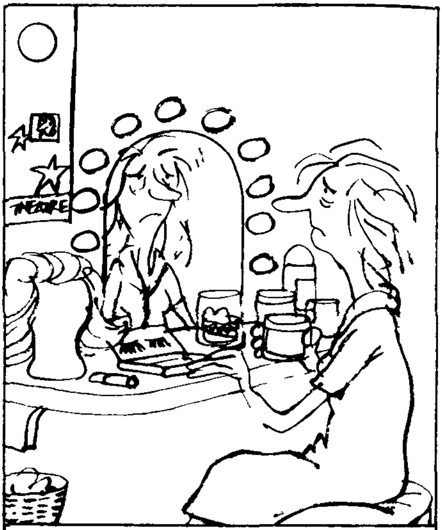

2 Are you related ....
the Smiths ....
rooms 102, 110, 120, 130 and
141 .... any chance?

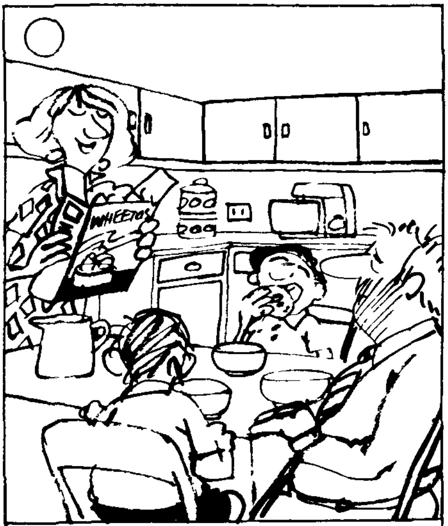

Sorry – we don't
have a menu. Just point

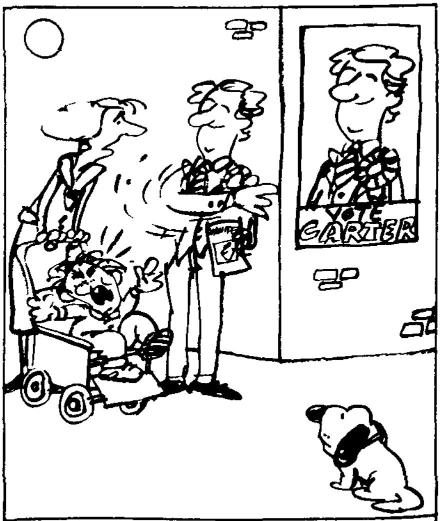

4 Arthur's always been very
sensitive . . his

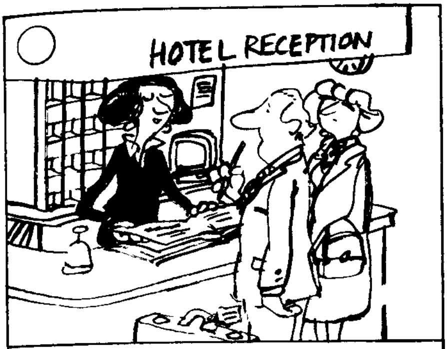
HOTEL RECEPTION

5 Actually, this is number 13. Number 14 is just .... the corner.

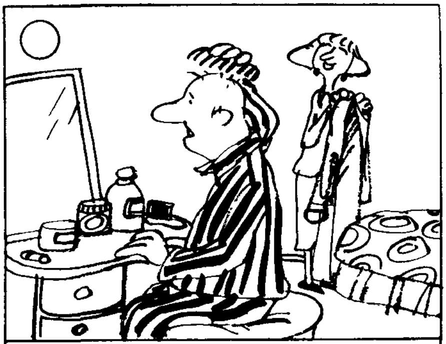

6 I've decided .... becoming a doctor – you have to wash your hands too often.

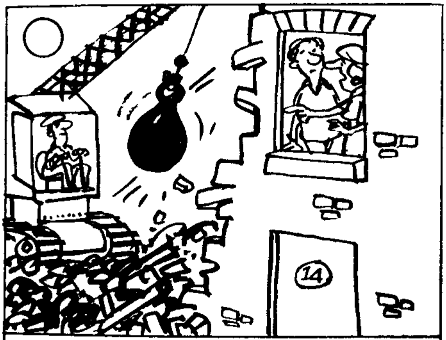

7 Living .... the past again, Harold?

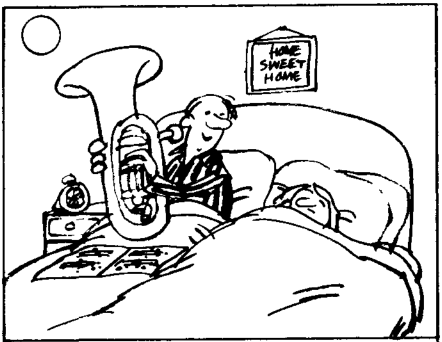
HOME SWEET HOME

8 I'm not .... my best first thing .... the morning.

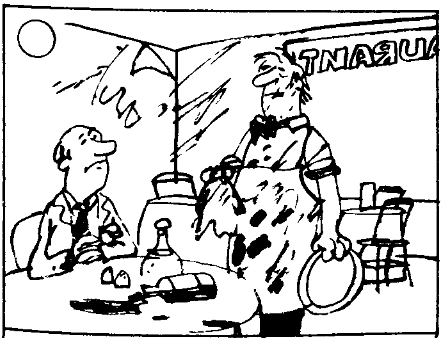

9 Is the banging .... the wall keeping you awake, darling?

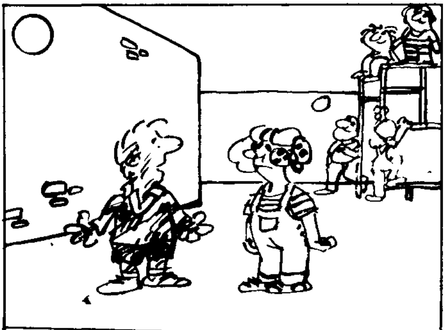

10 And, ... all, madam, my party believes .... total honesty

39

Prepositions after adjectives 2

*Complete the sentences below with one of the following **adjectives plus** a preposition*

accompanied
ahead
allergic
clever
deep
descended
envious
exempt
faced
famous
fortunate
peculiar
quick
sensitive
surprised
worthy

1 I was not very bright as a child, but I was so .... my hands that I decided to become a pickpocket.

2 Some plants are so .... pollution that they can only survive in a perfectly clean environment.

3 I am .... anyone who can play a musical instrument really well.

4 Sarah was very .... figures, so she eventually became a successful accountant.

5 For dinner we had grilled plaice and new potatoes, ... a splendid bottle of Chablis.

6 Newton was so .... thought that morning that he absent-mindedly put the egg in his pocket and dropped his watch into the boiling water.

7 The town of San Gimignano is .... its medieval towers.

8 Marsupials – animals that carry their young in a pouch – are .... the Antipodes.

9 My wife loves cats. She has six. I am .... them, so I sneeze whenever I am near her.

10 Janet! I'm .... you: eating chocolates when you're supposed to be slimming!

11 It is the ambition of every writer to complete a book .... schedule. So far, no one has achieved this.

12 According to Buradan, a perfectly logical donkey, ... two identical and equidistant piles of food, would starve to death, because it would have no logical reason for choosing one rather than the other.

13 Charles is disabled, so he is .... having a wife who is a trained nurse.

14 Darwin's theory suggests that we are all .... an ape-like creature, which seems likely in the case of my Aunt Matilda.

15 Candidates with university degrees are .... Parts 1 and 2 of the

40

Fractured newspaper article

Can you reassemble the mixed-up pieces below to get the original newspaper article? The article begins with the words:

Dr Roy Williams, a specialist in

1 all, women should realise that going

2 women's problems, says that women are far more prone to

3 from her partner will do her the world of good."

4 the dynamic businesswoman who finds it difficult to cope. Talking about the increasing consumption of alcohol by women, Dr Williams says: "First of

5 to men to help relieve the pressure

6 whatever reason, the extra responsibility of running the house will only add

7 stress than men. His claims are backed up

8 to her troubles. A helping hand

9 for a drink after work is not the answer. It's very dangerous, especially as most women are far less tolerant

10 outside, many appear to be highly successful, but in

11 on their over-stressed partners. He says: "I've done a lot of tests on men and women over

12 by new research that reveals that career women, particularly those aged between

13 risk in today's high-stress society. On the

14 twenty-six and forty-six, are more likely to suffer

15 reality, they are anxious and depressed. If a woman is feeling down for

16 the past year, and they confirm that career women are more and more at

17 from stress than their partners. The image of the typical stress victim as a middle-aged businessman has been replaced by

18 to alcohol than men." Dr Williams believes that it is up

41 Rewrite the sentences 3

For each of the sentences below write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence using the word in **CAPITAL LETTERS.** *We have given you the first word(s) of the new sentence.*

Example: My father has always liked football. **INTERESTED**

My father has always been interested in football.

1 People's race, creed or colour is not taken into account when they apply for a job with us. **IRRESPECTIVE**
Anyone ……………………………………………………………………………………

2 Many film-makers were very much influenced by *Citizen Kane*. **IMPACT**
The film ……………………………………………………………………………………

3 It is only a short walk from my house to the station. **HANDY**
My house ……………………………………………………………………………………

4 We may have to increase our prices without warning. **SUBJECT**
Our prices ……………………………………………………………………………………

5 Section Six of the Health and Safety Act forbids smoking in restaurant kitchens. **CONTRARY**
Smoking ……………………………………………………………………………………

6 She shot the intruder but only to protect herself. **SELF-DEFENCE**
She ……………………………………………………………………………………

7 The library has lost a number of books lately. **MISSING**
A number ……………………………………………………………………………………

8 I did not like the way you spoke to your sister. **DISGUSTED**
I ……………………………………………………………………………………

9 This rule has no exceptions. **EXCEPTIONS**
There are ……………………………………………………………………………………

10 Do you know the works of the poet William McGonagall? **ACQUAINTED**
Are ……………………………………………………………………………………

11 A lot more people are buying automatic cars these days. **DEMAND**
There ……………………………………………………………………………………

12 Lloyds the Butcher's and Lloyds Bank are two completely separate organisations. **CONNECTION**
Lloyds Bank ……………………………………………………………………………………

13 We have scarcely enough money to live on. **SHORT**
We ....

14 Pest species are excluded from the provisions of the Wildlife Protection Act. **APPLY**
The provisions ....

15 John knows a great deal about organic farming. **EXPERT**
John ....

16 We ran into a barn to get out of the rain. **SHELTER**
We ....

17 My bank manager and I get on together very well. **GOOD TERMS**
I ....

18 You and I have exactly the same pearl earrings. **IDENTICAL**
Your pearl earrings ....

42

Choose the preposition 5: after, at, in, on

*Complete the following sentences using **after**, **at**, **in** or **on**.*

1 "Who destroyed the Temple in Jerusalem?"
"I don't know, sir, but I expect that they will blame it .... me."

2 When the offer of a free trip to Holland was made, John was very quick .... the mark, and managed to get the first ticket.

3 Most people would jump .... the chance to spend a year in America, all expenses paid.

4 When Robin told me about his quarrel with Batman, I asked him not to involve me .... his personal affairs.

5 Was the Clifton Suspension Bridge named .... a man called Clifton Suspension?

6 If trains always leave .... schedule, why do so many of them arrive late at the other end?

7 The survivors of the *Titanic* were .... sea for several days before being rescued.

8 My husband brought me some flowers today. He must be .... something!

9 We were all very excited .... the prospect of a free trip to Paris.

10 Does it matter what a national politician does .... private as long as he performs well in his job?

11 Susan is disabled but she likes to do things for herself: she hates to be dependent .... other people.

12 .... careful consideration, the government has decided not to put up the price of ice-cream.

13 Don't you get annoyed .... people who push past you without saying "Excuse me"?

14 There's a man over there with binoculars. Do you think he's a birdwatcher, or is he spying .... us?

15 The public is taking a lot of interest .... the new courses being offered by the Open University.

16 Please, Father, may I go to the cinema with John tonight? .... all, I am twenty-three years old now.

17 Professor Jonah Newt is a specialist .... marine biology.

18 When I met my wife, it was love .... first sight. It was only later that I had second thoughts.

19 "Would you like a drink, officer?"
"Not while I'm .... duty, sir."

20 Professor Newt is absorbed at the moment .... a study of the feeding

4

Nouns following "on"

Complete the table on the right by filling in the blanks in the following sentences.

1	The soldiers had orders to shoot the deserter on	☐ I ☐ ☐ T
2	"On no .... are you to accept lifts from strangers," said the mother to her young child.	☐ C ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ T
3	We'd all better arrive on .... tomorrow; otherwise we might miss the train.	☐ ☐ M ☐
4	I see Brian's put his house on .... Mind you, I don't think it'll be very easy to sell.	☐ A ☐ ☐
5	The suspect was released from prison on	B ☐ ☐ ☐
6	Your book hasn't come yet. But it's on ...., so it should arrive by Friday.	O ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐
7	"You're going to go on a long ....," said the fortune-teller.	☐ O ☐ R ☐ ☐ ☐
8	I've put on a lot of weight lately. I think I'd better go on a .... again.	☐ ☐ ☐ T
9	All her friends were busy, so she had to go to the party on her	☐ ☐ N
10	Tonight is important. So remember, be on your best	B ☐ ☐ ☐ V ☐ ☐ ☐ R
11	Before buying anything, he sent for a sample on	☐ P ☐ R ☐ ☐ ☐ L
12	I hate planning things; it's much more fun to do everything on	☐ ☐ P ☐ L ☐ ☐
13	I never pay cash; I always buy on	☐ R ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐
14	Ms Temple isn't here this week. She's gone to Japan on	☐ ☐ S ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ S
15	Don't write to me between 1 and 16 June, as I shall be on .... then.	☐ O ☐ ☐ D ☐ ☐

44

A well-known phrase or saying

List 1 consists of a number of common expressions (sayings and proverbs). Supply the missing preposition(s) and then match the expressions to the definitions given in List 2. (Some are used more than once.)

against
before
between
from
in
into
on
out of
over
up
with
without

LIST 1

1 A bird .... the hand is worth two .... the bush.

2 It's like banging your head .... a brick wall.

3 .... the devil and the deep blue sea.

4 Have a card .... your sleeve.

5 Have several irons .... the fire.

6 An iron hand .... a velvet glove.

7 It's no use crying .... spilt milk.

8 Keep the wolf .... the door.

9 Kill two birds .... one stone.

10 Make a mountain .... a molehill.

11 .... sight, ... mind.

12 .... the frying pan and .... the fire.

13 Put the cart .... the horse.

14 The grass is always greener .... the other side.

15 There's no smoke .... fire.

LIST 2

(a) Take advantage of one action to achieve something else as well.

(b) Surrounded by problems with no escape.

(c) There must be some truth in even the most unlikely rumour.

(d) Someone who appears to treat you gently but is hard and ruthless underneath.

(e) You can only be sure of what you have at the moment; you cannot be sure of something that you might get in the future.

(f) Exaggerate, make a big fuss over something that is not very serious.

(g) Do things in the wrong order.

(h) In negotiations, to have something in reserve that you have not yet revealed.

(i) Manage to earn just enough to live on.

(j) All your efforts are getting you nowhere.

(k) You no sooner get out of one difficulty than you find yourself in another just as bad.

(l) The tendency to believe that life would be better somewhere else.

(m) We easily forget people as soon as we are no longer with them.

(n) To have a number of different interests.

(o) You should not waste time regretting things that you cannot change.

45 Similar, but different

The following sentences each contain a prepositional phrase that could easily be confused with others, e.g., on time, in time, at a time, at times. In each case only one fits the sentence.

1 I advertised several times for someone to mow the lawn for me, but .... the end I had to do it myself.

(a) in **(b)** by **(c)** at **(d)** to

2 I'm sorry I can't see you immediately, but if you'd like to take a seat, I'll be with you .... moment.

(a) for the **(b)** at the **(c)** in a **(d)** for a

3 I didn't trust the post, so I delivered the parcel .... hand.

(a) by **(b)** to **(c)** on **(d)** out of

4 We've had such a busy day! At least ten people phoned. Oh, ... the way, there's a message here for you from your brother.

(a) on **(b)** in **(c)** by **(d)** over

5 If you want to be a professional spy, you must learn to be very secretive. .... all, you must learn to listen more and speak less.

(a) In **(b)** After **(c)** At **(d)** Above

6 His name is Sebastian, but we call him Seb .... short.

(a) in **(b)** for **(c)** as **(d)** by

7 I have some important information for you, but I don't want to give it .... the phone. Do you think we could meet somewhere?

(a) by **(b)** through **(c)** on **(d)** over

8 Is everything OK, sergeant?
Don't worry, sir! Everything's .... control.

(a) under **(b)** in **(c)** on **(d)** by

9 Do you agree?
.... point, but I don't think you are completely right.

(a) To the **(b)** For a **(c)** Up to a **(d)** On the

10 I never met Joe Louis, but he was a great boxer ....

(a) by all accounts **(b)** on account **(c)** in the account
(d) according to the accounts

11 I forgot to pack any food, so we'll get something to eat .... the way back.

(a) in **(b)** all **(c)** on **(d)** by

12 The red light goes on outside the studio door to let people know that you are .... air.

(a) on the **(b)** by **(c)** in **(d)** through the

13 The auditors have been through the accounts, and they report that everything is .... order.

(a) to **(b)** on **(c)** by **(d)** in

14 Have you seen this morning's paper? There's a big picture of you .... the front!

(a) at **(b)** on **(c)** in **(d)** by

15 "The other children all call me Big Head."
"Don't be so sensitive! You mustn't take everything .... heart! Now, run down to the greengrocer's and get me three kilos of potatoes in your cap."

(a) to **(b)** by **(c)** in your **(d)** at

16 The general manager is away .... business this week.

(a) for **(b)** on **(c)** in **(d)** about

17 I've taken this watch .... pieces, and now I can't put it together again.

(a) into **(b)** to **(c)** in **(d)** out of

18 ".................. during the performance of this trick, ladies and gentlemen, do my hands actually leave my arms."

(a) On time **(b)** In no time **(c)** At no time **(d)** At times

19 There is nothing illegal about my business dealings. Everything is strictly .... board.

(a) on **(b)** above **(c)** by the **(d)** over

20 "Ah, sweet mystery of life .... I've found you!"

(a) at the last **(b)** at least **(c)** at last **(d)** at the least

46

Word association 2

Each of the words and phrases on the left can be associated with one of the prepositional phrases on the right. Try to match them up correctly.

1	He broke the law!	**(a)**	in mourning
2	Don't tell anyone else!	**(b)**	on the agenda
3	Your valuables are safe!	**(c)**	at a moment's notice
4	Everyone wants it!	**(d)**	in the flesh
5	a fugitive	**(e)**	in gaol
6	His wife just died	**(f)**	out of step
7	a satellite	**(g)**	in the lead
8	a personal appearance	**(h)**	between you and me
9	Real Madrid lost again!	**(i)**	out of focus
10	He's winning!	**(j)**	in orbit
11	industrial dispute	**(k)**	under lock and key
12	a board meeting	**(l)**	on the air
13	a radio broadcast	**(m)**	in hiding
14	The picture's blurred!	**(n)**	off form
15	What a rush!	**(o)**	in demand
16	soldiers marching	**(p)**	on strike

Write your answers here:

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16

47

Prepositions after verbs 3

Complete the sentences below with one of the following verbs plus a preposition. (Make any changes to verb tenses that may be necessary.)

abide
account
accuse
book
confine
count
cry
deal
decide
grumble
insist
refrain
surround
specialise
taste
translate

1 The teacher .... calling me Ghenghis, even though my real name is Attila.

2 Michael trained as a psychiatrist, and he now .... mental disorders of the very rich.

3 I was .... cheating in the examination, just because I had made a few notes on the back of my hand.

4 Scientists are unable to .... the sudden increase in sunspot activity, although some people believe that aerosols are to blame.

5 Footballers used to .... the referee's decision, but nowadays they are just as likely to punch him in the mouth.

6 The hotel's fire regulations have been .... eighteen languages, thereby ensuring that guests will burn to death while trying to find the version in their own language.

7 "My coffee .... garlic!"
"You're lucky, mine has no taste at all."

8 The English .... the weather, but secretly they don't mind their climate, because they love complaining.

9 I was thinking of going to live in Scotland, but when I heard that I would have to wear a kilt, I .... it.

10 If there are any personnel problems in the factory, the boss always asks his deputy to .... them.

11 "Why am I .... idiots?"
"We don't know, Father."

12 They used to say of Errol Flynn that you could .... him: he would always let you down.

13 It's no use .... spilt milk.

14 The kakapo is a rare flightless, nocturnal ground parrot. It is now .... South Island, New Zealand, which is another reason why most people have never seen one.

15 Passengers are kindly requested to .... smoking in the gangways and in the toilets.

48

What noun follows the preposition?

Complete the table on the right by filling in the blanks in the following sentences.

1 I don't mind a bit of fun, but putting salt in Grandma's coffee is beyond a .... ☐☐K☐

2 How long can you stay under .... before you have to come up for air? W☐☐☐☐

3 John is in Saudi Arabia at ...., but he should be home next week. P☐☐☐☐☐T

4 Before we were married, you said that you would love me for .... ☐V☐☐

5 The idea looks good on ...., but will it really work? ☐A☐E☐

6 The parcel that the postman threw on to my desk has FRAGILE, HANDLE WITH .... written on it. ☐☐R☐

7 The orchard is beautiful in spring, when all the fruit trees are in .... ☐☐☐SS☐☐

8 I can see from your tie that you had a boiled egg for................... . ☐☐☐☐K☐☐☐T

9 When I went down on my .... and asked her to marry me, she said I was not tall enough. ☐☐EE☐

10 I didn't get a rise: the boss said that it was out of the .... this year. ☐U☐☐☐☐☐N

11 Practical training is often known as "on the ...." training. ☐☐B

12 This encyclopedia is out of ....: it says that the present ruler of France is a Corsican. ☐☐T☐

13 When the police told him he was under .... for bigamy, my grandfather was delighted. ☐RR☐☐☐

14 The park is safe during the day, but you should not go there alone after .... ☐☐R☐

15 When you park, don't just put on the handbrake. Leave the car in .... as well. ☐EA☐

49 One word only 3

Read through the following and fill in the numbered blanks with one suitable word. Then decide if the story is true or false.

A Holiday Death

(1) .... a camping holiday (2) .... Spain, grandmother, who had been brought along (3) .... the (4) .... of the family, died suddenly (5) .... the night (6) .... natural causes. Not wanting to bury her (7) .... a foreign country, where they might never be able to visit her grave again, the family (8) .... to head (9) .... home and attempt to smuggle her (10) .... Spain and France and so (11) .... to England.

(12) .... this (13) .... mind, they rolled Grandmother's body (14) .... a carpet, tied it on to the roof rack (15) .... the car (16) .... with the camping equipment and started on their (17) ....

They drove all night and just (18) .... breakfast, they heaved a sigh of (19) .... as they crossed the border out of Spain and (20) .... France.

(21) .... this time, all the family were very tired and hungry. As a stop (22) .... breakfast sounded like a good idea, they parked the car (23) .... a side street (24) .... to a suitable café. Not wanting to leave the corpse (25) .... too long and also wishing to continue their journey as soon as possible, they ate a quick breakfast and (26) .... to the car. However, (27) .... their horror, their possessions had been stolen (28) .... the roof (29) .... the car, including the carpet and grandmother's corpse!

The strange thing is – the body never did turn (30) ....

50

Choose the preposition 6: by, for, of, on, to

*Complete the following sentences using **by, for, of, on** or **to**.*

1 I'm longing .... the summer holidays to arrive, aren't you?

2 John was about to take his wife out to dinner when it occurred .... him that he was not married.

3 You ought to be ashamed .... yourself!

4 *Hamlet* is a play .... William Shakespeare.

5 The Chairman called .... Mr Smith to second the motion.

6 You can change your job. You can move house. But marriage is .... life.

7 I'm sorry you have been expelled from the garden, Adam, but .... some extent it's your own fault.

8 What do you get if you divide 22 .... 7? A complicated number.

9 You can go to the disco tonight .... condition that you are home by 12 o'clock.

10 Because of a lack .... interest, tomorrow has been cancelled. (Notice outside a theatre)

11 She was irritated .... the way her fiancé picked his nose, so she broke it off.

12 Take advantage .... this special offer! 50 per cent off list price while stocks last!

13 Because of the increase in the number of firms offering financial services, there's a bigger demand than ever .... qualified accountants.

14 Please give my regards .... your mother, Oedipus, when you see her again.

15 "I am Polish ..b................ birth, but I have French nationality."
"What do you do for a living?"
"I'm a French polisher."

16 Congratulations .... your thirty-fifth birthday!

17 The railway police have finally arrested the man who has been responsible .... biting all the buttons off railway carriage seats.

18 With reference .... your advertisement in today's *Guardian*, I should like to apply for the post of Head Clerk in your Sales Department.

19 He went .... his own accord: nobody forced him to go.

20 Sarah is studying hard. She is intent .... getting a good degree.

Answers

TEST 1

1 opposite
2 on
3 under
4 above
5 to the left of
6 in front of
7 in
8 between
9 behind
10 inside
11 to the right of
12 below

TEST 2

1 for
2 by/at
3 at
4 for
5 at
6 for
7 for
8 in
9 by
10 for
11 in
12 at
13 for
14 at
15 in
16 at
17 for
18 by
19 in
20 at

TEST 3

1 during
2 in
3 on
4 from
5 for
6 after
7 in
8 in
9 On
10 on
11 by
12 behind
13 on
14 within
15 after
16 at
17 from
18 to
19 past
20 by
21 until
22 no preposition needed
23 in
24 since
25 for
26 no preposition needed
27 on
28 in

TEST 4

1 (h)
2 (d)
3 (p)
4 (l)
5 (i)
6 (m)
7 (e)
8 (c)
9 (f)
10 (j)
11 (a)
12 (n)
13 (g)
14 (b)
15 (k)
16 (o)

TEST 5

ACROSS
2 about
3 married
4 accustomed
8 sorry
9 afraid
11 good
12 successful
14 satisfied
18 suitable

DOWN
1 absent
5 covered
6 engrossed
7 typical
10 descended
11 grateful
13 fluent
15 tired
16 famous

TEST 6

1 (d) Why can't you hide behind a newspaper at breakfast like other husbands?
2 (h) What do you mean it's not that bad? I'm standing on my husband's shoulders!
3 (j) I think we'd better apologise to them for waking them up.
4 (f) I'm allergic to feathers, you see.
5 (c) You used to gaze at me like that!
6 (a) It's amazing to me how people always seem to get married in alphabetical order.
7 (e) What do you mean you can't sleep with the light on?
8 (i) This is the part I don't like – having to think of different names for them all.
9 (g) What a pity you haven't brought your little dog with you. We were so looking forward to seeing him again.
10 (b) Do I take it you object to my smoking a pipe?

TEST 7

1 (g)
2 (d)
3 (k)
4 (n)
5 (i)
6 (p)
7 (a)
8 (c)
9 (m)
10 (o)
11 (e)
12 (h)
13 (b)
14 (j)
15 (l)
16 (f)

TEST 8

1 in
2 to
3 change
4 by
5 According
6 from
7 at
8 on
9 in
10 in
11 from
12 coast
13 in
14 through
15 before
16 from
17 to
18 at
19 in
20 practice/reality/fact
21 start
22 To
23 with
24 of
25 between
26 owing
27 of
28 to
29 terms
30 on
31 between
32 in
33 making
34 with
35 in
36 for
37 By
38 for
39 into
40 to
41 for
42 at
43 to
44 In
45 after
46 on
47 from
48 of

TEST 9

1 speed
2 guess
3 distance
4 dawn
5 first
6 home
7 disadvantage
8 discount
9 least
10 night
11 war
12 last
13 moment
14 risk
15 hand

TEST 10

1 off
2 along/down
3 towards
4 on
5 after
6 on
7 across/over/through
8 along/down
9 through
10 at
11 along
12 to
13 over/across
14 Behind
15 to
16 before
17 At
18 of
19 of
20 in
21 outside
22 round/around
23 for
24 to
25 of
26 under/inside
27 to

TEST 11

1 at
2 about
3 from
4 at
5 about
6 against
7 from
8 about
9 at
10 from
11 against
12 about
13 from
14 at
15 against
16 about
17 against
18 from
19 at
20 against

TEST 12

1 capable of
2 bad at
3 inspired by
4 adequate for
5 addicted to
6 jealous of
7 disqualified from
8 expert at
9 involved in
10 aware of
11 distracted by
12 full of
13 notorious for
14 angry with
15 sympathetic to
16 eligible for

TEST 13

1 out of date
2 at times
3 before long
4 from now on
5 from time to time
6 in season
7 at length
8 in no time
9 not for long
10 in the end
11 to this day
12 without delay
13 at the moment
14 for the time being
15 In the meantime
16 in progress

TEST 14 (suggested answers)

1 Pisa is famous for its leaning tower.
2 This passport is valid for most countries.
3 They got married in secret.
4 Is Jennifer a relative of yours?
5 Would you care for a drink?
6 My cousin borrowed £5 from me.
7 A car collided with a bus this morning.

8 We were doubtful about her chances of passing the exam.
9 He had difficulty in opening the window.
10 Take no notice of what she says.
11 The painting has been valued at £25,000.
12 She is bored with her present job.
13 He died at the age of seventy-six.
14 She lived on the outskirts of the town.
15 He roared with laughter when he saw the clown.
16 Our customs are different from/to theirs.
17 I don't feel in the mood for going out tonight./I'm **not in the mood for going out tonight.**
18 She spent the evening by herself.

TEST 15

1 after ... After ... for
2 of
3 on
4 in ... at
5 in
6 At ... of
7 to ... by
8 of
9 in/into
10 with
11 for
12 at
13 for
14 on ... at ... with
15 of
16 from ... about ... in ... since

TEST 16

1 accident
2 appointment
3 means
4 boat
5 cheque
6 law
7 name
8 air
9 dozen
10 force
11 surprise
12 way
13 profession
14 marriage
15 nature

TEST 17 (suggested answers)

1 I can see that my dog has really taken to you.
2 Would you like to elaborate on what you proposed at our last meeting?
3 Michael jumped at the chance to go to Australia.
4 Will my age count against me?
5 Where do you hail from? (i.e., the same as "come from")
6 Many people do not hold with women with small children going out to work.
7 The repairs we have had to do on the car have really eaten into our savings.
8 Tedious as it was, I had to plough through a large number of documents before I found what I was looking for.
9 She stumbled across the missing pearl necklace while she was looking for something else.
10 Any money I have to spare is put towards my holiday.
11 Everybody deserted John after he was arrested and put on trial for embezzlement, but his wife told him, "I will stick by you, John, whatever happens."
12 She decided to indulge in a bottle of expensive champagne to celebrate her promotion.
13 During the interview, the Prime Minister tried to gloss over the part of the story that he found embarrassing.
14 Everyone is raving about Lloyd Webber's latest musical.
15 I am happy to vouch for his integrity.

TEST 18

1 **in time** "on time" means "punctually": Sally always arrived on time for work.
2 **died of** You "die of" a disease; you "die from" injuries, a wound, etc.
3 **on the point of** "at the point of" means "close to": my grandfather is at the point of death.
4 **at the end** "in the end" means "eventually": he tried the exam several times and in the end he managed to pass.
5 **at heart** "by heart" means "from memory": prepositions should be learnt by heart.
6 **in time of** "at the time of" means "at a particular point in time": I was living in Sweden at the time of my mother's death.
7 **for fear of** When the army began shooting wildly, we ran in fear of our lives.
8 **friendly to** "friendly to" something, "friendly with" someone.
9 **divide it among** "divide between" when there are two people, "divide among" when there are more than two.
10 **in the possession of** "in possession of" means "having in one's possession": since we weren't in possession of all the details, we couldn't make a decision.
11 **clever at** "clever at" is followed by a verb, "clever with" is followed by a pronoun or noun: he is clever at making things; he is clever with his hands.
12 **care about** "care for" means "like" or "want": would you care for another cup of tea?
13 **by name** He's a true Johnson in everything but in name.
14 **angry at** "angry at" something, "angry with" someone.
15 **by sight** "on sight" means "as soon as you see someone": the police had orders to shoot on sight.
16 **in front of** there's a list of contents at the front of the book.
17 **in favour of** "in favour with" means "being liked by someone" or "having their approval": you can't expect to be in favour with your teacher if you never do your homework.
18 **in principle** "on principle" means "because of set or fixed beliefs": he refused to leave a tip on principle.
19 **in case of** "in the case of" means "regarding" or "with regard to": your getting the sack was unfair, but in the case of Paul it was quite justified.
20 **in view of** "with a view to" means "with the purpose or intention of": he bought the car with a view to repairing it and reselling it later.

TEST 19

1 **in his good books** Kevin was liked by the boss.
2 **on his last legs.** He's close to death.
3 **out of her hands** *She is no longer in control.*
4 **by word of mouth** It was passed on orally rather than through writing.
5 **in great demand** He is very popular; everyone wants to talk to him.
6 **in the clear** He is no longer suspected of the crime.
7 **up to her eyes in** She is extremely busy.
8 **at first hand** He learnt directly – from his own experience – what it was like to be hungry.
9 **at the eleventh hour** They arrived just in time; at the last possible moment.
10 **once in a blue moon** She goes rarely.
11 **on a shoestring** They lived on very little money.
12 **in a month of Sundays** He will never ever pass the exam.
13 **under the counter** They were available illegally.
14 **by a long chalk** There is still a long way to go before he wins.
15 **at her fingertips** She was very familiar with her subject.
16 **in dribs and drabs** They arrived in very small numbers, not all at once.
17 **at the double** Very quickly.
18 **get in a cold sweat** I get very frightened.
19 **on the level** It is the truth.
20 **from A to Z** I know the subject extremely well.

TEST 20

ACROSS
4 increase
6 of
8 reputation
11 difficulty
12 over
14 with
16 against
17 recipe
19 quotation

DOWN
1 cruelty
2 between
3 towards
5 cheque
7 in
9 solution
10 from
13 engagement
15 advice
18 for
20 to

TEST 21

The two letters are as follows:

Letter 1

Dear Bob,
(1) Sorry I've taken such a long time in answering your letter, but the truth is that I've been really busy these past few weeks (2) with exams and everything, so I hope you understand.
My main reason for writing, however, is to ask if you feel like spending a couple of weeks with us (3) in the summer? Mum and Dad have hired a caravan in Fairlight – a little village (4) near Hastings, and they thought you might like to join us for two weeks – from 2–15 August. It sleeps four, so there's plenty of room. And it's only five minutes (5) from the sea, so we could go swimming every day. It should be great fun, but it would be even better if you could be there too. So what do you say? Apart (6) from this, there's not much else to say really. Dad's got a new car – a Volvo – and Mum's just started back to work again.
By the way, Dad asked me to find (7) out if your parents received the holiday brochures he sent, as he hasn't heard (8) from them yet.
Well, Bob, that's all for now. I hope you're keeping well and that you'll be able to join us (9) in the summer.
Give my regards to your parents and write soon.

Lots of love,

Paul

Letter 2

(a) Dear Paul,
Many thanks for your letter. It was nice to hear from you at last. (I was beginning to think you'd emigrated!)
About the summer, yes (b) of course I'd love to join you and your parents in Fairlight. It sounds really fun. I visited Hastings once and it was a really nice place – lots (c) of things to do and so on – especially in the summer. (Lots of pretty foreign students too!) So thank your parents for me and tell them I'm really looking forward to it.
I asked Mum and Dad (d) about the holiday brochures, and they say they haven't received them yet. (Well, you know what the post is like!) But they'll write as soon as they get them, and they asked me to tell you to thank your dad (e) for all the trouble he's gone to.
By the way, Paul, Dad's very jealous (f) of the new Volvo. He's always liked foreign cars – especially Volvos – and keeps hinting (g) to Mum about getting a new car. But she's not interested, really, so I don't think he'll persuade her.
Well, Paul, I'll stop now because I'm off to a disco (h) with Sally. You remember Sally, don't you? She was the girl I met at Jenny's birthday party. We've been together now (i) for almost three months. (Not bad for me!) What about you? Are you still going out with Pauline or have you got someone new now?
Anyway, do write some time and remember to give my love (j) to your mum and dad.

Lots of love,

Bob

TEST 22

1 work
2 a cost
3 peace
4 means
5 the benefit
6 aid
7 agreement
8 answer
9 compensation
10 behalf
11 *good terms*
12 pity
13 the accompaniment
14 the influence
15 reference
16 *the compliments*

TEST 23

1 in
2 over
3 on
4 into
5 over
6 in
7 on
8 into
9 over
10 in
11 over
12 into
13 on
14 in
15 into/onto
16 over
17 in
18 on
19 into
20 on

TEST 24

1 summer
2 *condition*
3 mood
4 hurry
5 advance
6 emergency
7 taste
8 case
9 code
10 *confidence*
11 danger
12 debt
13 bed
14 conclusion
15 moderation

TEST 25 (suggested answers)

1 I used to have a car that is similar to yours.
2 He is incapable of telling a lie.
3 Mary had a craving for jelly when she was pregnant.
4 My boss takes great pleasure in humiliating people
or
My boss gets a lot of pleasure out of/from humiliating people.
5 I am not in the habit of speaking to strange men.
6 Sarah made a very good impression on the interview panel.
7 Irish history is the key to understanding/an understanding of Yeats's poetry.
8 John is crazy about sports cars.
9 I have been deserted by all my friends.
10 I have confidence in my best friend.
11 Henry had a talent for making people laugh.
12 The moon is made of green cheese, according to my father.
13 Long noses are (a) characteristic of the people of Dolichorrinia.
14 I can recite the whole of Wordsworth's *Prelude* from memory.
15 The items you want are out of stock/no longer/not in stock.
16 I am very grateful to you for your help/for helping me.
17 I work best (when I am/when you put me) under pressure.
18 Kate is popular with all the teachers.

TEST 26

1 hear about
2 *vote against*
3 arrived at
4 distinguish between
7 suffered from
8 experiment on/**with**
9 losing at
10 complained to
12 belongs to
13 rhymes with
14 knocking at
15 apologised to

TEST 27

1 away for
2 down with
3 away with
4 over to
5 down to
6 out for
7 behind with
8 around to
9 up to
10 in for
11 around for
12 back on
13 up with
14 on at
15 up on
16 in with

TEST 28

1 for/on
2 in
3 for
4 on
5 of
6 no preposition needed
7 for/in
8 at
9 in
10 from
11 of
12 about
13 about
14 in
15 from
16 to
17 in
18 of
19 with
20 at/in
21 into
22 with
23 on
24 of
25 no preposition needed
26 into/in
27 in
28 to/up to
29 to
30 of/in
31 to/at
32 on
33 from
34 about/of
35 at (meaning he was a student at the university. "In" would mean that he just happened to be in the town.)
36 about
37 in
38 to
39 no preposition
40 about
41 for
42 no preposition
43 to
44 on
45 to
46 into
47 for
48 from
49 no preposition
50 into
51 from
52 of
53 in
54 of
55 no preposition
56 of/at
57 into
58 in
59 unlike
60 for
61 For
62 of
63 under(neath)/beneath
64 with (or no preposition)
65 at/by
66 in
67 of
68 around/above
69 at
70 to
71 off
72 with

TEST 29

1 choice between
2 opposite of
3 campaign against
4 objection to
5 trouble with
6 excuse for
7 knowledge of
8 freedom from
9 control over
10 cruelty to
11 strain on
12 fall in
13 genius at
14 basis for
15 grudge against
16 news to

TEST 30

ACROSS

2 prefers
6 travelled
9 shouting
10 among
11 on
12 into
13 in
14 between
16 against
17 from
20 multiply
21 from
22 with

DOWN

1 shelter
3 for
4 exchange
5 join
7 about
8 escape
12 invited
15 worry
18 blame
19 mixing
21 flow
23 to

TEST 31

AT
glance
hint
marvel
point
wink

FROM
abstain
benefit
depart
expel
flee

IN
believe
decrease
delight
indulge
invest

OF
approve
consist
dispose
dream
take advantage

ON
bet
concentrate
depend
rely
tread

TO
appeal
dedicate
subscribe
object
respond

WITH
coincide
collaborate
cope
quarrel
sympathise

TEST 32

1 With
2 to
3 out of
4 under
5 in
6 with
7 out of
8 in
9 under
10 to
11 in
12 with
13 under
14 out of
15 under
16 to
17 in
18 to
19 out of
20 with

TEST 33

1 detail
2 hospital
3 existence
4 opinion
5 difficulty
6 fact
7 future
8 comfort
9 disguise
10 focus
11 love
12 pain
13 doubt
14 fashion
15 general

TEST 34

The two letters **are as follows:**

Letter 1

(1) Dear Sir,
I wish to make a complaint about a recent holiday to Copenhagen. According to the brochure I received (2) from Sunthoms Holidays, the holiday was to include a two-day boat trip to Oslo (3) in Norway. However, what your brochure failed to mention was the fact that the excursion was to be paid (4) for separately! Unfortunately, our travel representative forgot to mention this fact until we were well at sea! By (5) that time it was too late to change one's mind. And had I realised how much it was going to cost, I would certainly not have gone on it – especially since the sea was so choppy that my wife and I spent most (6) of the trip being seasick!

I would be grateful if you could make sure in (7) future that all "extra" costs are clearly shown in your brochure.

Apart (8) from the above, the rest of our holiday in Copenhagen was wonderful, and both my wife and I fell in love (9) with the Tivoli Gardens. What an experience! What an atmosphere! And to think that it's in the centre (10) of the city. Whatever happens, we shall certainly try to return to Copenhagen at (11) some future date. (I can't say the same about Oslo!)

Yours faithfully,

Bernard Wilson

Letter 2

(a) Dear Sir,
I have just returned from a holiday in Spain and all I can say is that it was a nightmare from (b) start to finish! When I chose Sunthoms Holidays I was under the impression that I was dealing (c) with a company you could rely on. How wrong can you be!

The trouble started even before (d) we had left the country. To begin with, the plane was overbooked. This meant that myself and ten other passengers were forced to go on another plane – one hour later! Unfortunately, our luggage was still (e) on the first plane, so that there was a further delay in (f) sorting out the mess when we finally arrived at the airport in Spain.

The "luxury" hotel as advertised in your holiday brochure was still under (e) construction, which meant that there was the constant sound of cement mixers and so on – hardly the peaceful and relaxing holiday I had been looking forward to.

My room was much smaller than I had expected and throughout (h) my stay I never once managed to get the shower to work properly – the water was either too cold or too hot.

Another thing, in your brochure you state that the hotel is only a few minutes from (i) the sea. Twenty-five to be exact! And what a beach. It was so polluted that it was positively dangerous (j) to one's health.

Finally, on the return journey I found myself sitting (k) amongst a group of smokers despite the fact that I had specifically asked for a non-smoking seat. If I get lung cancer in (l) the future then all I can say is that Sunthoms Holidays are to blame! This is the worst holiday I have ever had in my life, and I demand to get my money back. If not, I shall put the matter in the hands of my solicitor.

I look forward (m) to hearing from you soon.

Yours faithfully,

TEST 35

1 in . . . at . . . into
2 for . . . of
3 into . . . of . . . in
4 in . . . of
5 in . . . with
6 in
7 on
8 from
9 for
10 on . . . into . . . to
11 (in)to . . . of . . . through
12 into
13 on
14 for . . . to
15 over
16 for . . . for

TEST 36

1 pressed on
2 jump to
3 pay for
4 calls on
5 reason with
6 fuss over
7 begs for
8 concealing from
9 perish by
10 apply for
11 grow on
12 flock to
13 sharing in
14 prying into
15 dates from

TEST 37

1 exchange
2 common
3 addition
4 favour
5 odds
6 the expense
7 regard
8 the exception
9 the sake
10 respect
11 account
12 virtue

TEST 38

1 (c) So much for "enriched with vitamins and energy-giving minerals"!
2 (e) Are you related to the Smiths in rooms 102, 110, 120, 130 and 141 by any chance?
3 (i) Sorry – we don't have a menu. Just point at/to something on my apron.
4 (a) Arthur's always been very sensitive about his bald spot.
5 (g) Actually, this is number 13. Number 14 is just round the corner.
6 (j) I've decided against becoming a doctor – you have to wash your hands too often.
7 (f) Living in the past again, Harold?
8 (b) I'm not at my best first thing in the morning.
9 (h) Is the banging on the wall keeping you awake, darling?
10 (d) And, above all, madam, my party believes in total honesty in politics.

TEST 39

1 clever with
2 sensitive to
3 envious of
4 quick at
5 accompanied by
6 deep in
7 famous for
8 peculiar to
9 allergic to
10 surprised at
11 ahead of
12 faced with
13 fortunate in
14 descended from
15 exempt from
16 worthy of

TEST 40

2, 7, 12, 14, 17, 4, 1, 9, 18, 5, 11, 16, 13, 10, 15, 6, 8, 3

TEST 41 (suggested answers)

1 Anyone can apply for a job with us irrespective of race, creed or colour.
2 The film *Citizen Kane* has had a big impact on many film-makers.
3 My house is very handy for the station.
4 Our prices are subject to increase without warning.
5 Smoking in restaurant kitchens is contrary to Section Six of the Health and Safety Act.
6 She shot the intruder in self-defence.
7 A number of books are missing from the library.
8 I was disgusted at/by the way you spoke to your sister.
9 There are no exceptions to this rule.
10 Are you acquainted with the works of the poet William McGonagall?
11 There is a big/increased demand for automatic cars these days.
12 Lloyds Bank has no connection with Lloyds the Butcher's.
13 We are short of money to live on.
14 The provisions of the Wildlife Protection Act do not apply to pest species.
15 John is an expert on organic farming.
16 We ran into a barn to shelter/take shelter from the rain.
17 I am on very good terms with my bank manager.
18 Your pearl earrings are identical to mine.

TEST 42

1 on
2 off
3 at
4 in
5 after
6 on
7 at
8 after
9 at
10 in
11 on
12 After
13 at
14 on
15 in
16 After
17 in
18 at
19 on
20 in

TEST 43

1 sight
2 account
3 time
4 sale
5 bail
6 order
7 journey
8 diet
9 own
10 behaviour
11 approval
12 impulse
13 credit
14 business
15 holiday

TEST 44

1 (e) in
2 (j) against
3 (b) Between
4 (h) up
5 (n) in
6 (d) in
7 (o) over
8 (i) from
9 (a) with
10 (f) out of
11 (m) Out of . . . out of
12 (k) Out of . . . into
13 (g) before
14 (l) on
15 (c) without

TEST 45

1 (a)
2 (c)
3 (a)
4 (c)
5 (d)
6 (b)
7 (d)
8 (a)
9 (c)
10 (a)
11 (c)
12 (a)
13 (d)
14 (b)
15 (a)
16 (b)
17 (b)
18 (c)
19 (b)
20 (c)

TEST 46

1 (e)
2 (h)
3 (k)
4 (o)
5 (m)
6 (a)
7 (j)
8 (d)
9 (n)
10 (g)
11 (p)
12 (b)
13 (l)
14 (i)
15 (c)
16 (f)

TEST 47

1 insists on
2 specialises in
3 accused of
4 account for
5 abide by
6 translated into
7 tastes of
8 grumble about
9 decided against
10 deal with
11 surrounded by
12 count on
13 crying over
14 confined to
15 refrain from
16 book into

TEST 48

1 joke
2 water
3 present
4 ever
5 paper
6 care
7 blossom
8 breakfast
9 knees
10 question
11 job
12 date
13 arrest
14 dark
15 gear

TEST 49

1 During
2 in
3 with
4 rest/remainder
5 during/in
6 of
7 in
8 decided/determined
9 for/back
10 through
11 back
12 With
13 in
14 in
15 of
16 along/together
17 journey
18 before
19 relief/joy/happiness
20 into
21 By
22 for
23 in
24 next
25 for
26 returned
27 to
28 from
29 of
30 up

The story is fal It is taken from a book called *The Book of N*

TEST 50

1 for
2 to
3 of
4 by
5 on
6 for
7 to
8 by
9 on
10 of
11 by
12 of
13 for
14 to
15 by
16 on
17 for
18 to
19 of
20 on

Practice Makes Perfect®

More Than Two Million Books Sold!

English Verbs

THIRD EDITION

Loretta Gray

TOTAL LANGUAGE STUDY PROGRAM

Learn

verb tenses in context

Apply

grammar skills to sentence building

Practice

with more than 150 goal-oriented exercises

Mc Graw Hill Education

PRACTICE
MAKES
PERFECT®

English Verbs

This page intentionally left blank

PRACTICE
MAKES
PERFECT®

English Verbs

THIRD EDITION

Loretta Gray

McGraw Hill Education

New York Chicago San Francisco Athens London Madrid
Mexico City Milan New Delhi Singapore Sydney Toronto

Copyright © 2019 by McGraw-Hill Education. All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

ISBN: 978-1-26-014376-8
MHID: 1-26-014376-7

The material in this eBook also appears in the print version of this title: ISBN: 978-1-26-014375-1,
MHID: 1-26-014375-9.

eBook conversion by codeMantra
Version 1.0

All trademarks are trademarks of their respective owners. Rather than put a trademark symbol after every occurrence of a trademarked name, we use names in an editorial fashion only, and to the benefit of the trademark owner, with no intention of infringement of the trademark. Where such designations appear in this book, they have been printed with initial caps.

McGraw-Hill Education eBooks are available at special quantity discounts to use as premiums and sales promotions or for use in corporate training programs. To contact a representative, please visit the Contact Us page at www.mhprofessional.com.

McGraw-Hil Educationl, the McGraw-Hill Education Publishing logo, Practice Makes Perfect, and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of McGraw-Hill Education and/or its affiliates in the United States and other countries and may not be used without written permission. All other trademarks are the property of their repective owners. McGraw-Hill Education is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

TERMS OF USE

This is a copyrighted work and McGraw-Hill Education and its licensors reserve all rights in and to the work. Use of this work is subject to these terms. Except as permitted under the Copyright Act of 1976 and the right to store and retrieve one copy of the work, you may not decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, reproduce, modify, create derivative works based upon, transmit, distribute, disseminate, sell, publish or sublicense the work or any part of it without McGraw-Hill Education's prior consent. You may use the work for your own noncommercial and personal use; any other use of the work is strictly prohibited. Your right to use the work may be terminated if you fail to comply with these terms.

THE WORK IS PROVIDED "AS IS." McGRAW-HILL EDUCATION AND ITS LICENSORS MAKE NO GUARANTEES OR WARRANTIES AS TO THE ACCURACY, ADEQUACY OR COMPLETENESS OF OR RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED FROM USING THE WORK, INCLUDING ANY INFORMATION THAT CAN BE ACCESSED THROUGH THE WORK VIA HYPERLINK OR OTHERWISE, AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. McGraw-Hill Education and its licensors do not warrant or guarantee that the functions contained in the work will meet your requirements or that its operation will be uninterrupted or error free. Neither McGraw-Hill Education nor its licensors shall be liable to you or anyone else for any inaccuracy, error or omission, regardless of cause, in the work or for any damages resulting therefrom. McGraw-Hill Education has no responsibility for the content of any information accessed through the work. Under no circumstances shall McGraw-Hill Education and/or its licensors be liable for any indirect, incidental, special, punitive, consequential or similar damages that result from the use of or inability to use the work, even if any of them has been advised of the possibility of such damages. This limitation of liability shall apply to any claim or cause whatsoever whether such claim or cause arises in contract, tort or otherwise.

Contents

Introduction vii

PART I **The Present Tense** **1**

Unit 1 **Simple Present** 3

Unit 2 ***Be* Verb Forms, Simple Present** 11

Unit 3 **Present Progressive (*Be* Verb + *-ing*)** 19

Unit 4 **Present Perfect** 29

Unit 5 **Present Perfect Progressive** 37

PART II **The Past Tense** **45**

Unit 6 **Simple Past** 47

Unit 7 ***Be* Verb Forms, Simple Past** 55

Unit 8 **Past Progressive (*Be* Verb + *-ing*)** 61

Unit 9 **Past Perfect** 69

Unit 10 **Past Perfect Progressive** 75

PART III **The Future Tense** **81**

Unit 11 **Simple Future** 83

Unit 12 ***Be Going To*** 89

Unit 13 **Future Progressive (*Will Be* Verb + *-ing*)** 95

Unit 14 **Future Perfect** 101

Unit 15 **Future Perfect Progressive** 107

PART IV Imperative, Passive, and Hypothetical Conditional 111

Unit 16 **Imperative** 113

Unit 17 **Passive** 117

Unit 18 **Hypothetical Conditional** 125

PART V Phrasal Verbs and Modal Auxiliary Verbs 127

Unit 19 **Phrasal Verbs** 129

Unit 20 **Modal Auxiliary Verbs** 137

PART VI Gerund and Infinitive Complements 145

Unit 21 **Gerunds** 147

Unit 22 **Infinitives** 149

Unit 23 **Gerunds or Infinitives** 153

Review Exercises 155

Appendix: Chart of Irregular Verbs 185

Glossary 191

Answer Key 193

Introduction

When you study English verbs, you must do more than search for their meanings in a dictionary. You must also learn how to conjugate them and use these conjugations appropriately. Most students begin their studies by memorizing verb forms. They learn both the verb endings for regular verbs and the more complicated forms of the irregular verbs. *Practice Makes Perfect: English Verbs* provides you with opportunities to practice conjugating more than three hundred verbs, both regular and irregular.

However, this text is more than a list of verb forms and mechanical exercises. It also presents the reasons for choosing one verb form over another. For example, you may know the dictionary meaning of *walk*, but to use this verb to refer to the future, you must understand your options; that is, you must understand the role of tense and aspect. To indicate future, you could say *I'll walk to school today*, *I'm going to walk to school today*, or *I'm walking to school today*, but not *I walk to school today*.

When most people think of *tense*, they think of time. While it is true that tense is sometimes related to present, past, and future time, this is not always the case. In the sentence *My plane leaves in twenty minutes*, the simple present tense of the verb *leave* is used to refer to future time. As well as being marked for tense, verbs are marked for aspect. Aspect provides information about whether an action, a state, or an event has been completed and how a verb is related to other verbs in a time sequence. *I study English* and *I am studying English* are both in the present tense, but they differ in aspect. The verb in the first sentence refers to a habitual action; the verb in the second sentence refers to an action that is not yet completed. To indicate both tense and aspect, *study* is said to be in the simple present and *am studying* is said to be in the present progressive. In the sentence *I had been studying for the test when the phone rang*, there are two main verbs: *study* and *ring*. They are both in the past tense; however, they differ in aspect. *Had been studying* is the past perfect progressive, whereas *rang* is just the simple past. The difference in aspect indicates that the action of studying was ongoing and prior to the action of ringing. Tense and aspect intersect in the following way.

Tense/Aspect	**present**	**past**	**future**
simple	simple present	simple past	simple future
progressive	present progressive	past progressive	future progressive
perfect	present perfect	past perfect	future perfect
perfect progressive	present perfect progressive	past perfect progressive	future perfect progressive

The form and meaning of each of these tense-aspect combinations will be described in the units of this book. Although you will study all the tenses mentioned in traditional textbooks, you will also study the concept of aspect so that you will have a deeper understanding of the grammatical meaning conveyed by the form of a verb. Thus, as you work through the material in *Practice Makes Perfect: English Verbs*, you will learn not only how to conjugate verbs but also why to use specific verb forms.

Any study of verbs would be incomplete without the inclusion of special types of verbs and complementation patterns. After you become familiar with verb conjugations, you will study phrasal verbs, modal verbs, and verb complementation (gerunds and infinitives).

This book focuses on the verbs most frequently used in English. It is appropriate for classroom use or individual study. If you are in a class, your teacher may choose to assign exercises to supplement your other coursework. If you are studying alone, you can use the Answer Key at the back of the book to check your work and decide whether you should review a chapter or go on to the next.

There are six principal parts in this book:

PART I—THE PRESENT TENSE The five units in Part I will help you learn the verb forms that constitute four different tense-aspect combinations: simple present, present progressive, present perfect, and present perfect progressive. You will practice using these forms in positive statements, negative statements, and questions. You will also learn how to form contractions with pronouns or the word *not*. A special section focuses on the verb *be*.

PART II—THE PAST TENSE The five units in Part II will help you learn four more tense-aspect combinations: simple past, past progressive, past perfect, and past perfect progressive. As in Part I, you will practice using these tense-aspect combinations and their contracted forms in positive statements, negative statements, and questions. In this part also, there is a special section focusing on the verb *be*.

PART III—THE FUTURE TENSE Part III differs from the others in that the modal *will* is introduced rather than verb endings. This part consists of five units: simple future, future progressive, future perfect, future perfect progressive, and a unit on the use of *be going to*. You will practice using the future tense-aspect combinations and their contracted forms in positive statements, negative statements, and questions.

PART IV—IMPERATIVE, PASSIVE, AND HYPOTHETICAL CONDITIONAL The three units in Part IV will help you learn to use verbs in special constructions not discussed earlier: imperative (*Be careful!*), passive (*The project was finished on time.*), and hypothetical conditional (*If I were you, I would accept the offer.*).

PART V—PHRASAL VERBS AND MODAL AUXILIARY VERBS The English language is full of phrasal verbs, which are verb-particle combinations, such as *run into* in *run into an old friend*. In the first unit of Part V, you will practice using some common phrasal verbs. The second unit of Part V focuses on modal auxiliary verbs. Although you will be introduced to modal verbs in Parts III and IV, you will learn more about the subtle shades of meaning that tense and aspect add to these verbs.

PART VI—GERUND AND INFINITIVE COMPLEMENTS Some verbs take gerunds, some take infinitive complements, and some take both. Part VI will help you learn to choose appropriate verb complements.

Following these six parts are **Review Exercises**, twenty-five exercises that can reveal your overall comprehension. And new to this edition are complementary review quizzes in the McGraw-Hill Education Language Lab app.

Practice Makes Perfect: English Verbs ends with an appendix of irregular verb forms, followed by a glossary of grammatical terms.

PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT®

English Verbs

This page intentionally left blank

PART I

THE PRESENT TENSE

Verbs in the present tense occur in four forms, each signaling a different aspect. (*Aspect* is explained in the Introduction.) Each of these forms conveys information about an action, state, or event that is relevant now.

SIMPLE PRESENT: I **study** every day.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: I **am studying** right now.

PRESENT PERFECT: I **have studied** English for two years.

PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE: I **have been studying** all day for my test tomorrow.

In the following units, you will learn about these verb forms and the reasons for using them.

This page intentionally left blank

Unit 1

Simple Present

When you refer to habitual actions, customs, and facts, use simple present verb forms.

HABITUAL ACTION: I **work** in the library.

CUSTOM: Most Americans **eat** turkey on Thanksgiving Day.

FACT: The earth **revolves** around the sun.

If you include a time reference, you can also use the simple present to indicate future time.

FUTURE ACTION: The concert **starts** in five minutes.

Except for *be* and *have*, verbs in the simple present follow this pattern:

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **verb**	we **verb**
Second Person	you **verb**	you **verb**
Third Person	he, she, it **verb + s/es**	they **verb**

As you can see, the base form of the verb is used with the subject pronouns *I*, *you*, *we*, and *they* and with the nouns these pronouns can replace. For example, *the students* takes the same verb form as *they*. An ending, either *-s* or *-es*, is added to the verb when the subject pronoun is *he*, *she*, or *it* or a noun these pronouns can replace. The *-s* ending is used most frequently. The *-es* ending is used after certain letters or letter combinations.

Letters	**Examples**
s	pass + es
sh	push + es
ch	march + es
x	box + es
o	do + es
When a verb ends in a consonant and *y*, change the *y* to *i* and add *-es*.	bury → buries

The verb *be* is described in Unit 2. In the following chart are the forms of the verb *have*:

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **have**	we **have**
Second Person	you **have**	you **have**
Third Person	he, she, it **has**	they **have**

Notice that *has* is the verb form used with *he, she, it,* and the nouns these pronouns can replace.

exercise 1-1

Complete each sentence with the simple present form of the verb in parentheses. Circle the reason that the simple present is used.

1. I ______________ (eat) lunch in the cafeteria every day but Friday.

   Habitual action **Custom** **Fact** **Future time**

2. Julia ______________ (carry) a heavy backpack to school every day.

   Habitual action **Custom** **Fact** **Future time**

3. You ______________ (speak) English well.

   Habitual action **Custom** **Fact** **Future time**

4. The state of Florida ______________ (produce) a great deal of citrus fruit.

   Habitual action **Custom** **Fact** **Future time**

5. During the holidays, we always ______________ (make) special meals.

   Habitual action **Custom** **Fact** **Future time**

6. He ______________ (watch) television every night.

   Habitual action **Custom** **Fact** **Future time**

7. My roommate ______________ (say) a prayer before he eats.

   Habitual action **Custom** **Fact** **Future time**

8. The game ______________ (begin) in an hour.

   Habitual action **Custom** **Fact** **Future time**

9. My friends and I ______________ (live) near a park.

   Habitual action **Custom** **Fact** **Future time**

10. Trees ____________ (grow) tall in the Pacific Northwest.

    Habitual action **Custom** **Fact** **Future time**

11. We ____________ (wear) traditional dress on holidays.

    Habitual action **Custom** **Fact** **Future time**

12. Most people ____________ (shake) hands when they first ____________ (meet).

    Habitual action **Custom** **Fact** **Future time**

exercise 1-2

Using the pronoun and verb provided, create your own sentences.

1. She always (make) ____.
2. I (take) ____.
3. It (give) ____.
4. They (come) ____.
5. I (use) ____.
6. He (leave) ____.
7. They (like) ____.
8. She (write) ____.
9. We (listen) ____.
10. It (contain) ____.
11. It (start) ____.
12. He (understand) ____.

Forming Negatives

To make a verb negative, add the auxiliary verb *do* and the word *not* before the main verb.

do not go   does not like

Remember that *does* is used with the pronouns *he*, *she*, and *it*. When *does* is used, the main verb has no *-s* or *-es* ending.

exercise 1-3

Make each of the following sentences negative.

EXAMPLE: I spend a lot of money.
I do not spend a lot of money.

1. He goes to school every day.
____
2. My roommate likes snakes.
____
3. You know my family.
____
4. The owner opens the store every day at 8:00.
____
5. We help our neighbors.
____
6. My friends send me letters.
____
7. I feel tired.
____
8. She speaks five different languages.
____
9. They study in the library.
____
10. We listen to pop music.
____
11. They grow tomatoes in their backyard.
____
12. This car runs well.
____

Forming Contractions

In English, verbs are often combined with other words to form contractions. These shortened forms include an apostrophe (') to indicate missing letters. It is important to learn contractions because you will often hear them in conversation or see them in informal writing. Formal writing, though, rarely contains contractions.

The auxiliary verb *do* is often combined with *not* to form a contraction. Notice that an apostrophe indicates that the letter *o* is omitted:

do + not = don't

does + not = doesn't

exercise 1-4

Rewrite the sentences in exercise 1-3 using contractions.

1. ______________________________
2. ______________________________
3. ______________________________
4. ______________________________
5. ______________________________
6. ______________________________
7. ______________________________
8. ______________________________
9. ______________________________
10. ______________________________
11. ______________________________
12. ______________________________

Forming Yes/No Questions

To form questions that can be answered yes or no (yes/no questions), begin the question with the auxiliary verb *do*. After the auxiliary verb, place the subject and the main verb.

Statement: He rides his bicycle to school.
Yes/no question: Does he ride his bicycle to school?

Statement: They ride the bus to work.
Yes/no question: Do they ride the bus to work?

exercise 1-5

Rewrite the following statements as yes/no questions.

EXAMPLE: You get tired easily.
Do you get tired easily?

1. The artist shows his work at a local gallery.
   ____
2. They meet on Thursday mornings.
   ____
3. She works hard.
   ____
4. You commute to work.
   ____
5. It seems like a good decision.
   ____
6. This work requires patience.
   ____
7. The Carsons live in a small town.
   ____
8. You don't believe my story. (Notice that *do* has already been used to indicate negation.)
   ____
9. The patient feels better.
   ____
10. The lecture ends at 5:30.
    ____
11. The plot involves many characters.
    ____
12. Most students complete the program in four years.
    ____

Forming *Wh*-Questions

Wh-questions are used to elicit specific pieces of information. They usually begin with *what, who, why, where, when, how*, or combinations such as *how much, how many*, and *how often*. When the question word is the subject of the sentence, the form of the question is similar to the form of a statement.

Statement: Max needs a new key.
Wh-question: Who needs a new key?

Statement: My foot hurts.
Wh-question: What hurts?

When the question word is any other part of the sentence, the auxiliary verb *do* comes after the question word and is followed by the subject and the main verb.

Statement: She collects butterflies.
Wh-question: What does she collect?

Statement: They live on the coast of Maine.
Wh-question: Where do they live?

exercise 1-6

Complete the following questions based on the statements provided.

EXAMPLE: The performance starts at 7:00.
When *does the performance start?*

1. The person in the back row knows the answer.
   Who ______________________________
2. She looks healthy.
   How ______________________________
3. They always go to that restaurant because they like the food.
   Why ______________________________
4. They go golfing twice a week.
   How often ______________________________
5. We turn left at the corner.
   Where ______________________________
6. The notebook costs $3.00.
   How much ______________________________

7. My mother worries too much.
   Who ______________________________

8. You exercise every day at the gym.
   How often ______________________________

9. Jerry and Carol repair computers.
   What ______________________________

10. She teaches English.
    What ______________________________

11. Mark blames other people for his problems.
    Whom ______________________________
    (*Who* may be used instead of *whom* in conversation and informal writing.)

12. Many people go to Cape Cod for their vacations.
    Where ______________________________

Unit 2

Be Verb Forms, Simple Present

The verb *be* has three different forms in the simple present: *am*, *is*, and *are*.

	Singular	Plural
First Person	I **am**	we **are**
Second Person	you **are**	you **are**
Third Person	he, she, it **is**	they **are**

exercise 2-1

Complete each sentence with the simple present form of the verb be.

1. I ____________ a student.
2. You ____________ taller than I ____________.
3. My parents ____________ on vacation.
4. Misuzu ____________ from San Francisco.
5. My roommate's name ____________ Chris.
6. They ____________ late again.
7. We ____________ ready for the test.
8. I ____________ interested in all kinds of sports.
9. It ____________ easy.
10. Your coat ____________ in the closet.
11. She ____________ the director.
12. They ____________ in class together.

The word *there* is often used with the verb *be* to acknowledge the existence of someone or something. The form of the *be* verb is based on the subject that follows it.

SINGULAR SUBJECT: There **is a concert** in the park tonight.
PLURAL SUBJECT: There **are four rooms** in the house.

exercise 2-2

Circle the verb that agrees in number with the subject that follows it.

1. There **is**/**are** someone at the door.
2. There **is**/**are** several parks in the town.
3. There **is**/**are** fifty-two cards in a deck.
4. There **is**/**are** a restroom at the end of the hall.
5. There **is**/**are** sixteen students in the class.
6. There **is**/**are** a bank on the corner of Lincoln and Ash.
7. There **is**/**are** an information booth in the lobby.
8. There **is**/**are** many specialty stores in the Mall of America.
9. There **is**/**are** still tickets available.
10. There **is**/**are** a typo on page 3.
11. There **is**/**are** a huge fountain in front of the building.
12. There **is**/**are** only one possible answer to the question.

Forming Contractions: Pronouns and *There* with *Am*, *Is*, and *Are*

Contractions are often formed by combining pronouns and the verb *be*. The word *there* can also be combined with *be*. It is important to learn these contractions because you will often hear them in conversation or see them in informal writing. However, you should avoid using them in formal writing.

Notice that an apostrophe indicates that a letter is omitted:

I + am = I'm
you + are = you're
he + is = he's
she + is = she's

we + are = we're
they + are = they're
there + is = there's
it + is = it's

exercise 2-3

Rewrite each sentence using a contraction.

EXAMPLE: He is not here today.
He's not here today.

1. She is a student.
___
2. I am an engineer.
___
3. There is a test on Tuesday.
___
4. You are next.
___
5. It is difficult.
___
6. We are from Canada.
___
7. He is a supervisor.
___
8. They are really funny.
___
9. I am sick today.
___
10. There is a package for you on the table.
___
11. He is first on the list.
___
12. It is cold in here.
___

Forming Negatives

To make the verb *be* negative, just add *not.*

am not	is not	are not
I'm not	it's not	we're not

exercise 2-4

Using contractions, make each of the sentences in exercise 2-3 negative.

1. ______________________________
2. ______________________________
3. ______________________________
4. ______________________________
5. ______________________________
6. ______________________________
7. ______________________________
8. ______________________________
9. ______________________________
10. ______________________________
11. ______________________________
12. ______________________________

Forming Contractions: *Isn't* and *Aren't*

The word *not* can be contracted with the verb forms *is* and *are.*

is + not = isn't

are + not = aren't

exercise 2-5

Complete the sentences using either isn't *or* aren't.

1. There ____________ a ball game tonight.

2. There ______________ any rooms available.

3. There ______________ a full moon tonight.

4. There ______________ any cookies left.

5. There ______________ many people here today.

6. There ______________ much time.

Forming Yes/No Questions

To form yes/no questions, begin the question with a form of the verb *be* and place the subject after it.

Statement: Nancy is a doctor.
Yes/no question: Is Nancy a doctor?

Statement: They are friendly.
Yes/no question: Are they friendly?

To form yes/no questions with *there*, place *there* after the *be* verb.

Statement: There is a gas station near the freeway.
Yes/no question: Is there a gas station near the freeway?

exercise 2-6

Rewrite the following statements as yes/no questions.

EXAMPLE: It is late.
Is it late?

1. Portland is in the state of Oregon.

____

2. Your car is in the garage.

____

3. He is in a good mood.

____

4. They are friends.

____

5. Sam is depressed.

____

6. Her computer is broken.

7. There are many items on the menu.

8. The coffee is too hot.

9. The city hall is the oldest building in town.

10. There is a bank near here.

11. The museum is open on Thursday evenings.

12. The lights are off.

Forming *Wh*-Questions

To form *wh*-questions, place the *be* verb after the question word. When the question word is the subject of the sentence, the form of the question is similar to the form of a statement.

Statement: Someone is at the door.
Wh-question: Who is at the door?

When the question word is any other part of the sentence, the subject follows the *be* verb.

Statement: She is from Colorado.
Wh-question: Where is she from?

Statement: His birthday is July 11.
Wh-question: When is his birthday?

exercise 2-7

Complete the following questions based on the statements provided.

EXAMPLE: You are twenty-two years old.
How old *are you*?

1. Kevin Lee is the editor of the local newspaper.

Who ______________________________

2. She is five feet tall.
How tall ____

3. They are visitors from another school.
Who ____

4. His roommate is at work right now.
Where ____

5. The graduation ceremony is on Saturday.
When ____

6. The house is white.
What color ____

7. That is a bike lock.
What ____

8. The scissors are in the drawer.
Where ____

9. Sandy Craig is the producer.
Who ____

10. The children are at their grandmother's house.
Where ____

11. The library is open until 8:00.
How late ____

12. They are in the cafeteria.
Where ____

This page intentionally left blank

Unit 3

Present Progressive (*Be* Verb + *-ing*)

When you refer to a temporary situation or an activity in progress, use the present progressive.

TEMPORARY SITUATION: I **am working** in the library this term.

ACTIVITY IN PROGRESS: She **is studying** right now.

If you include a time reference, you can also use the present progressive to indicate future time.

FUTURE TIME: My parents **are coming** *tomorrow*.

The present progressive consists of the auxiliary verb *be* and the *-ing* form of the main verb. The auxiliary verb is marked for tense.

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **am verb** + **ing**	we **are verb** + **ing**
Second Person	you **are verb** + **ing**	you **are verb** + **ing**
Third Person	he, she, it **is verb** + **ing**	they **are verb** + **ing**

When a one-syllable word or a word with a stressed final syllable ends in a single consonant sound, double the last letter before adding *-ing*.

One-syllable word: run → running

Word ending in a stressed syllable: admit → admitting

BUT mow → mowing [This word ends in a vowel sound.]

When a word ends with a consonant and the letter *e*, drop the *e* before adding *-ing*: come → coming. The letter *e* is not dropped from words such as *be*, *see*, and *free*.

exercise 3-1

Complete each sentence with the present progressive form of the verb in parentheses. Circle the reason that the present progressive is used.

1. I ____________ (study) English this term.

   Temporary situation **Activity in progress** **Future time**

2. We ____________ (go) home tomorrow.

   Temporary situation **Activity in progress** **Future time**

3. Right now, I ____________ (write) a letter.

   Temporary situation **Activity in progress** **Future time**

4. The bus ____________ (pull) up to the curb at this very moment.

   Temporary situation **Activity in progress** **Future time**

5. They ____________ (move) to Florida at the end of the month.

   Temporary situation **Activity in progress** **Future time**

6. The kids ____________ (act) silly right now.

   Temporary situation **Activity in progress** **Future time**

7. I ____________ (use) my friend's car today.

   Temporary situation **Activity in progress** **Future time**

8. We ____________ (eat) early tonight.

   Temporary situation **Activity in progress** **Future time**

9. The company ____________ (have) problems this year.

   Temporary situation **Activity in progress** **Future time**

10. My neighbor ____________ (mow) his lawn.

    Temporary situation **Activity in progress** **Future time**

11. I ____________ (turn) in my paper tomorrow.

    Temporary situation **Activity in progress** **Future time**

12. Steve ____________ (live) with his cousin this year.

    Temporary situation **Activity in progress** **Future time**

13. It ____________ (snow).

Temporary situation **Activity in progress** **Future time**

14. Several police officers ____________ (stand) in front of the store.

Temporary situation **Activity in progress** **Future time**

15. You ____________ (speak) too loudly.

Temporary situation **Activity in progress** **Future time**

16. The sky ____________ (grow) dark.

Temporary situation **Activity in progress** **Future time**

exercise 3-2

Complete each sentence with either the simple present or the present progressive. If you need help, review pages 3–4 and 19.

1. Jim ____________ (sell) cars for a living.
2. Jim ____________ (sell) his car to his sister.
3. I ____________ (boil) some water for tea.
4. Water ____________ (boil) at one hundred degrees centigrade.
5. We always ____________ (visit) our grandparents during the holidays.
6. This year we ____________ (visit) our grandparents during the holidays.
7. Jean ____________ (go) to a lot of movies.
8. Jean ____________ (go) to a movie today.
9. I ____________ (do) my homework right now.
10. I generally ____________ (do) my homework in the evening.

Forming Contractions: Pronouns with the Auxiliary Verb *Be*

Contractions are often formed by combining a pronoun and the auxiliary verb *be*. You will often hear these contractions in conversation or see them in informal writing, but you will rarely find them used in formal contexts.

Notice that an apostrophe indicates that a letter is omitted:

I + am = I'm moving
you + are = you're moving
he + is = he's moving
she + is = she's moving
it + is = it's moving
we + are = we're moving
they + are = they're moving

exercise 3-3

Use the pronoun and verb given to create a sentence that contains a contraction.

EXAMPLE: I, follow
I'm following in my parents' footsteps.

1. He, pay
2. It, hail
3. We, meet
4. They, lose
5. She, wait
6. You, carry
7. I, wear
8. We, read
9. She, call
10. He, sell

11. They, stay

12. I, assist

Forming Negatives

To make a present progressive verb negative, place *not* after the auxiliary verb.

am not going   is not going   are not going

exercise 3-4

Make each of the following sentences negative.

EXAMPLE: We are ordering pizza for dinner tonight.
We are not ordering pizza for dinner tonight.

1. I am buying a new car tomorrow.
2. She is studying.
3. We are leaving soon.
4. They are coming with us.
5. Carla is living with her parents.
6. I am cooking dinner tonight.
7. The band is performing tonight.
8. My mother is visiting this weekend.
9. They are sleeping.

10. We are going to the park today.

11. They are fixing the road.

12. She is quitting her job.

Forming Contractions: Pronouns with *Am Not*, *Is Not*, and *Are Not*

The following contractions can be used in conversation and informal writing:

I'm not going

He's not working
He isn't working
She's not working
She isn't working
It's not working
It isn't working

You're not working
You aren't working
We're not working
We aren't working
They're not working
They aren't working

exercise 3-5

Rewrite the sentences in exercise 3-4 using contractions.

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.
10.
11.
12.

Forming Yes/No Questions

To form yes/no questions, begin the question with the auxiliary verb *be*. After the auxiliary verb, place the subject and the *-ing* form of the main verb.

Statement: Prices are falling.
Yes/no question: Are prices falling?

exercise 3-6

Rewrite the following statements as yes/no questions.

EXAMPLE: You are finishing your paper.
Are you finishing your paper?

1. The mail carrier is delivering a package to our house.

____

2. The boat is sinking.

____

3. They are causing trouble.

____

4. He is worrying about his course grade.

____

5. Helen is publishing her autobiography.

____

6. The teacher is inviting everyone in class to a party.

____

7. The committee is announcing the winner of the contest today.

____

8. The engineer is explaining the process.

____

9. Mandy is singing at her sister's wedding.

____

10. The company is expanding.

____

11. Phil is arranging the conference.

12. The police are accusing him of the crime.

Forming *Wh*-Questions

In *wh*-questions, when the question word is the subject of the sentence, the form of the question is similar to the form of a statement.

Statement: Someone is talking on the telephone.
Wh-question: Who is talking on the telephone?

When the question word is any other part of the sentence, the auxiliary verb *be* comes after the question word and is followed by the subject and the *-ing* form of the main verb.

Statement: They are going to the store.
Wh-question: Where are they going?

Statement: He is writing a play.
Wh-question: What is he writing?

exercise 3-7

Complete the following questions based on the statements provided.

EXAMPLE: We are leaving in the morning.
When *are we leaving?*

1. They are eating pasta salad.
What ______
2. Fran is coming along.
Who ______
3. We are watching the soccer game on television tonight.
What ______
4. She is showing them some of her new paintings.
What ______
5. You are meeting the director.
Whom ______
(*Who* may be used instead of *whom* in conversation and informal writing.)

6. They are wearing special clothes because it is a holiday.

   Why ____________________

7. He is hoping for a new job.

   What ____________________

8. Something strange is happening.

   What ____________________

9. Alex and Terry are playing Scrabble.

   What ____________________

10. They are moving to Mexico.

    Where ____________________

11. Somebody is staring at us.

    Who ____________________

12. Venus Williams is winning.

    Who ____________________

This page intentionally left blank

Unit 4

Present Perfect

Use the present perfect when you want to refer to a situation that originated in the past but continues into the present or to refer to a past experience that has current relevance.

PAST SITUATION CONTINUING INTO THE PRESENT: I **have lived** in Dallas for six years.

PAST EXPERIENCE WITH CURRENT RELEVANCE: We **have traveled** to Alaska three times.

For an experience to be relevant, it is usually related to a possible future experience. In the example "We have traveled to Alaska three times," the speaker may be considering another trip. The present perfect is often used in job interviews when an employer asks a prospective employee about his or her experience: "Have you ever driven a large vehicle?" "Have you ever used a cash register?"

The present perfect consists of the auxiliary verb *have* and the perfect/passive form of the main verb. The auxiliary verb is marked for tense. The perfect/passive verb form is used to indicate either the perfect aspect or the passive voice. (The passive voice will be discussed in Part IV.) The perfect/passive form for regular verbs consists of the base form of the verb and the ending *-ed*.

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **have verb + ed**	we **have verb + ed**
Second Person	you **have verb + ed**	you **have verb + ed**
Third Person	he, she, it **has verb + ed**	they **have verb + ed**

When a one-syllable word or a word with a stressed final syllable ends in a single consonant sound, double the last letter before adding *-ed*.

One-syllable word: pet → petted

Word ending in a stressed syllable: admit → admitted

BUT sew → sewed [This word ends in a vowel sound.]

The perfect/passive forms of irregular verbs can be found in the appendix.

The following are common irregular verb patterns:

- Pattern 1: The final *d* becomes a *t*.

buil**d**	buil**t**
len**d**	len**t**
spen**d**	spen**t**

- Pattern 2: A *-d* or *-t* suffix is added. The vowel changes.

feel /fil/	felt /fɛlt/
keep /kip/	kept /kɛpt/
sell /sɛl/	sold /sold/

- Pattern 3: An *-n* or *-en* suffix is added.

eat	eaten
fall	fallen
know	known

Sometimes the vowel changes.

speak /spik/	spoken /spokɛn/
wear /wɛr/	worn /worn/

- Pattern 4: Just the vowel changes.

hold /hold/	held /hɛld/
meet /mit/	met /mɛt/
sit /sɪt/	sat /sæt/

- Pattern 5: The base form and perfect/passive form are the same.

put	put
hit	hit
cut	cut

exercise 4-1

Complete each sentence with the present perfect form of the verb in parentheses. If you are unsure of the perfect/passive form, check the chart in the appendix.

1. Pat and Tom ______________ (build) two houses this summer.
2. I ______________ (eat) already.
3. His parents ______________ (lend) him some money.
4. We ______________ (speak) to the director about our concerns.
5. The company's stock ______________ (fall).
6. You ______________ (know) me for a long time.
7. They ______________ (sell) their house.

8. It ____________ (rain) every day for a week.

9. I ____________ (keep) your secret.

10. He ____________ (spend) too much money this month.

11. The bride and groom ____________ (cut) the wedding cake.

Forming Contractions: Pronouns with the Auxiliary Verb *Have*

Contractions are often formed by combining a pronoun and the auxiliary verb *have*. You will often hear these contractions in conversation or see them in informal writing, but you will rarely find them used in formal contexts.

Notice that an apostrophe indicates the omission of the letters *h* and *a*:

I + have = I've moved
you + have = you've moved
he + has = he's moved
she + has = she's moved
it + is = it's moved
we + have = we've moved
they + have = they've moved

exercise 4-2

Use the pronoun and verb given to create a sentence that contains a contraction.

Example: I, ask
I've asked too many questions.

1. He, rent
____________________ an apartment for the summer.

2. It, work
____________________ until now.

3. We, be
____________________ friends for a long time.

4. They, lose
____________________ another game.

5. She, wait
____________________ a long time.

6. You, reach
____________________ your goal.

7. I, apply
______________________________ for a new job.

8. We, develop
______________________________ some new software.

9. She, ignore
______________________________ our advice.

10. He, find
______________________________ his keys.

11. They, go
______________________________ home.

12. I, forget
______________________________ my books.

Forming Negatives

To make a present perfect verb negative, place *not* after the auxiliary verb.

has not gone   have not gone

exercise 4-3

Make each of the following sentences negative.

EXAMPLE: We have calculated the cost.
We have not calculated the cost.

1. They have chosen a location for the conference.
____

2. She has completed her work.
____

3. We have studied our options.
____

4. I have received my test results.
____

5. You have mentioned his name before.
____

6. He has reviewed the plans.

   ____

7. It has disappeared.

   ____

Forming Contractions: *Hasn't* and *Haven't*

The following contractions can be used in conversation and informal writing:

I haven't gone
You haven't gone
He hasn't gone
She hasn't gone
It hasn't gone
We haven't gone
They haven't gone

exercise 4-4

Rewrite the sentences in exercise 4-3 using contractions.

1. ______________________________
2. ______________________________
3. ______________________________
4. ______________________________
5. ______________________________
6. ______________________________
7. ______________________________

Forming Yes/No Questions

To form yes/no questions, begin the question with the auxiliary verb *have*. After the auxiliary verb, place the subject and the perfect/passive form of the main verb.

Statement: His personality has changed.
Yes/no question: Has his personality changed?

exercise 4-5

Rewrite the following statements as yes/no questions.

EXAMPLE: She has followed the directions.
Has she followed the directions?

1. You have put the dishes away.
____

2. They have offered her a new job.
____

3. We have received good news.
____

4. He has checked the oil in the car.
____

5. Jackson has obtained a driver's license.
____

6. The new student has arrived.
____

7. Jeanette has responded to our message.
____

8. The archaeologists have discovered new fossils.
____

9. You have made your lunch.
____

10. The business has expanded.
____

11. Sarah has arranged the meeting.
____

12. The program has been successful.
____

Forming *Wh*-Questions

In *wh*-questions, when the question word is the subject of the sentence, the form of the question is similar to the form of a statement.

Statement: Michael has represented us.
Wh-question: Who has represented us?

When the question word is any other part of the sentence, the auxiliary verb *have* comes after the question word and is followed by the subject and the perfect/passive form of the main verb.

Statement: They have collected old cars.
Wh-question: What have they collected?

Statement: You have moved three times.
Wh-question: How many times have you moved?

exercise 4-6

Complete the following questions based on the statements provided.

EXAMPLE: Scott has prevented an accident.
Who *has prevented an accident?*

1. They have given computers to charities.
   What ______________________________
2. The governor has appeared on television.
   Who ______________________________
3. She has missed three games.
   How many games ______________________________
4. Dan has passed the first part of the test.
   Who ______________________________
5. You have read three of his novels.
   How many of his novels ______________________________
6. Les has painted his house green.
   What color ______________________________
7. She has sung at the White House.
   Who ______________________________
8. Something unbelievable has happened.
   What ______________________________

9. She has influenced your decision.

   Who ____

10. He has taken all of the required courses.

   Which courses ______________________________________

11. You have taught English for fifteen years.

   How many years _____________________________________

12. They have invited everyone in class to the party.

   Whom ____
   (*Who* may be used instead of *whom* in conversation and informal writing.)

Unit 5

Present Perfect Progressive

When you want to refer to an action, a state, or an event that originated in the past but is still ongoing or incomplete, use the present perfect progressive.

> ONGOING STATE: **I have been living** on a ship for three months.
>
> INCOMPLETE ACTION: **We have been organizing** this trip since May.

The present perfect progressive consists of two auxiliary verbs, *have* and *be*, and the *-ing* form of the main verb. The auxiliary verb *have* comes first, and it is marked for tense. Next comes the perfect/passive form of the verb *be—been.* The final element of the present perfect progressive is the *-ing* form of the main verb.

	Singular	Plural
First Person	I **have been verb + ing**	we **have been verb + ing**
Second Person	you **have been verb + ing**	you **have been verb + ing**
Third Person	he, she, it **has been verb + ing**	they **have been verb + ing**

exercise 5-1

Complete each sentence with the present perfect progressive form of the verb in parentheses.

1. My knee ________________________ (hurt) for a week.
2. The new policy ________________________ (cause) some confusion.
3. Janice ________________________ (exercise) for an hour.

4. I ______________________________ (drink) a lot of coffee today.

5. He ______________________________ (worry) too much.

6. She ______________________________ (earn) good grades in all her classes.

7. Her parents ______________________________ (pay) for her apartment.

8. We ______________________________ (follow) your instructions.

9. We ______________________________ (sit) here too long.

10. I ______________________________ (apply) for scholarships.

11. They ______________________________ (help) each other.

12. Temperatures ______________________________ (rise).

Forming Contractions: Pronouns with the Auxiliary Verb *Have*

Contractions can be formed by combining a pronoun and the auxiliary verb *have*. You will often hear these contractions in conversation or see them in informal writing, but you will rarely find them used in formal contexts.

Notice that an apostrophe indicates the omission of the letters *h* and *a*:

I + have = I've been living
you + have = you've been living
he + has = he's been living
she + has = she's been living
it + has = it's been living
we + have = we've been living
they + have = they've been living

exercise 5-2

Use the pronoun and verb given to create a sentence that contains a contraction.

Example: We, hope
We've been hoping for better weather.

1. He, expect
______________________________ a phone call.

2. It, change
______________________________ day by day.

3. We, develop
______________________________ a new game.

4. They, check
______________________________ their e-mail every day.

5. She, explore

_______________________ her new home.

6. You, complain

_______________________ about your sore back all day.

7. I, calculate

_______________________ my income tax.

Forming Negatives

To make a present perfect progressive verb negative, place *not* after the auxiliary verb *have*.

has not been going — have not been going

exercise 5-3

Complete each of the following sentences using the subject and verb provided.

EXAMPLE: We, fall, not
We have not been falling behind in our work.

1. He, ignore, not

_______________________ the evidence.

2. It, improve, not

_______________________ much.

3. We, commute, not

_______________________ together this year.

4. They, buy, not

_______________________ much lately.

5. She, do, not

_______________________ her work.

6. You, finish, not

_______________________ your projects on time.

7. I, ride, not

_______________________ the bus to school.

Forming Contractions: *Hasn't* and *Haven't*

The following contractions can be used in conversation and informal writing:

I haven't been going
You haven't been going
He hasn't been going
She hasn't been going
It hasn't been going

We haven't been going
They haven't been going

exercise 5-4

Rewrite the sentences in exercise 5-3 using contractions.

1. ______________________________
2. ______________________________
3. ______________________________
4. ______________________________
5. ______________________________
6. ______________________________
7. ______________________________

Forming Yes/No Questions

To form yes/no questions, begin the question with the auxiliary verb *have*. After a tensed form of *have*, place the subject, the perfect/passive form of the auxiliary verb *be* (*been*), and the *-ing* form of the main verb.

Statement: You have been tiring easily.
Yes/no question: Have you been tiring easily?

exercise 5-5

Rewrite the following statements as yes/no questions.

EXAMPLE: She has been using the new database.
Has she been using the new database?

1. You have been paying all your bills on time.

____

2. The noise has been bothering them.

____

3. Traffic has been moving slowly.

4. She has been waiting a long time.

5. They have been reducing the number of accidents.

6. The suspect has been lying.

7. You have been reading an interesting novel.

8. The government has been allowing journalists into the country.

9. She has been keeping good records.

10. They have been considering the proposal.

11. He has been staying close to home.

12. She has been making progress.

Forming *Wh*-Questions

In *wh*-questions, when the question word is the subject of the sentence, the form of the question is similar to the form of a statement.

Statement: Brad Omans has been reporting the news.
Wh-question: Who has been reporting the news?

When the question word is any other part of the sentence, the auxiliary verb *have* comes after the question word and is followed by the subject, the perfect/passive form of the auxiliary verb *be* (*been*), and the *-ing* form of the main verb.

Statement: Many people have been going to the carnival.
Wh-question: Where have many people been going?

Statement: You have been looking at something.
Wh-question: What have you been looking at?

exercise 5-6

Complete the following questions based on the statements provided.

EXAMPLE: Barbara has been studying at night.
When *has Barbara been studying?*

1. Paula has been traveling all over Asia.
Where ________________________________
2. He has been living in Miami for five years.
How long ________________________________
3. They have been searching for their lost dog.
What ________________________________
4. My grandfather has been watching the children.
Who ________________________________
5. They have been going to the Virgin Islands every spring.
How often ________________________________
6. The guide has been arranging a special tour of the ruins.
What ________________________________
7. Pei-Hsuan has been taking notes.
Who ________________________________
8. You have been attending the university since 2012.
How long ________________________________
9. They have been planning a surprise party for Marta.
What ________________________________
10. He has been talking about his new design.
What ________________________________
11. You have been feeling better lately.
How ________________________________
12. She has been standing there for two hours.
How long ________________________________

Summary of Tense-Aspect Combinations

TENSE/ASPECT	PRESENT
simple	simple present: *talk, talks*
progressive	present progressive: *am/is/are talking*
perfect	present perfect: *has/have talked*
perfect progressive	present perfect progressive: *has/have been talking*

This page intentionally left blank

PART II

THE PAST TENSE

Verbs in the past tense occur in four forms, each signaling a different aspect. (*Aspect* is explained in the Introduction.) These forms convey information about actions, states, or events that are remote in the speaker's mind. The past tense most often refers to past time.

SIMPLE PAST: I **waited** patiently.

PAST PROGRESSIVE: I **was waiting** for a bus.

PAST PERFECT: I **had waited** long enough.

PAST PERFECT PROGRESSIVE: I **had been waiting** for three hours.

In the following units, you will learn about these verb forms and the reasons for using them.

This page intentionally left blank

Unit 6

Simple Past

When you refer to past or completed actions, states, or events, use simple past verb forms.

COMPLETED ACTION: We **drove** three hundred miles.

PAST STATE: They **seemed** uneasy.

PAST EVENT: The schedule **changed**.

You can also use the simple past to refer to a hypothetical action, state, or event.

HYPOTHETICAL ACTION: If you **joined** our team, we could win the championship.

Sentences such as this one will be discussed in more detail in Part IV.

The simple past for regular verbs consists of the verb and the ending *-ed*.

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **verb + ed**	we **verb + ed**
Second Person	you **verb + ed**	you **verb + ed**
Third Person	he, she, it **verb + ed**	they **verb + ed**

For regular verbs, the simple past form and the perfect/passive form (see pages 29–30) are the same.

When a one-syllable word or a word with a stressed final syllable ends in a single consonant sound, double the last letter before adding *-ed*.

One-syllable word: plan → planned

Word ending in a stressed syllable: occur → occurred

BUT row → rowed [This word ends in a vowel sound.]

Irregular verbs have a variety of simple past forms, which can be found in the appendix.

The following are common irregular verb patterns. Some of these irregular simple past forms are the same as the perfect/passive forms.

- Pattern 1: The final *d* becomes a *t*. (Same as perfect/passive)

sen**d**	sen**t**
len**d**	len**t**
spen**d**	spen**t**

- Pattern 2: A *-d* or *-t* suffix is added. The vowel changes. (Same as perfect/passive)

feel /fil/	felt /fɛlt/
sleep /slip/	slept /slɛpt/
tell /tɛl/	told /told/

- Pattern 3a: The vowel changes. (Different from perfect/passive)

eat /it/	ate /et/
speak /spik/	spoke /spok/
know /no/	knew /nu/

- Pattern 3b: The vowel changes. (Same as perfect/passive)

hold /hold/	held /hɛld/
meet /mit/	met /mɛt/
sit /sɪt/	sat /sæt/

- Pattern 4: The base form and the simple past form are the same. (Same as perfect/passive)

put	put
hit	hit
cut	cut

exercise 6-1

Complete each sentence with the simple past form of the verb in parentheses. The first five verbs are regular; the second five are irregular.

1. We ______________ (work) hard all day.
2. The fans ______________ (wait) in line for tickets.
3. I ______________ (remember) her face.
4. He ______________ (need) a computer upgrade.
5. She ______________ (miss) class now and then.
6. They ______________ (sell) some of their land.
7. Chen ______________ (go) to work at 3:00.
8. Tim and Andrea first ______________ (meet) at a mutual friend's party.

9. I accidentally ____________ (cut) my finger.
10. Everyone at the party ____________ (wear) a costume.

exercise 6-2

Complete each sentence with either the simple past or the present perfect. Remember that the simple past indicates completion, while the present perfect indicates continued relevance. If you need help, review pages 29–30 and 47.

1. Joe and Donna ____________ (live) here in the 1990s.
2. Joe and Donna ____________ (live) here since the 1990s.
3. Maria and I ____________ (study) together for two years. We meet in the library every Wednesday night at 7:00.
4. Maria and I ____________ (study) together last year.
5. We ____________ (travel) to London in April.
6. We ____________ (travel) to many countries, but this year we're staying home.
7. I ____________ (work) for Safeway since May.
8. I ____________ (work) for Safeway in 2015.
9. He ____________ (build) many houses. He is currently building one on Madison Street.
10. He ____________ (build) a house for his sister.

Forming Negatives

To make a verb negative, add the auxiliary verb *did*, which is the simple past form of *do*, and the word *not* before the main verb.

did not believe

exercise 6-3

Make each of the following sentences negative.

EXAMPLE: I made a mistake.
I did not make a mistake.

1. He came to work on time.

____

2. My roommate liked the movie.

____

3. She understood the problem.
____

4. We took a wrong turn.
____

5. The students needed help with the homework.
____

6. The driver blamed me for the accident.
____

7. I listened to the directions.
____

8. She earned a degree in economics.
____

9. He calculated the taxes.
____

10. They complained about the weather.
____

Forming Contractions

In English, verbs are often combined with other words to form contractions. These shortened forms include an apostrophe (') to indicate missing letters. It is important to learn contractions because you will often hear them in conversation or see them in informal writing. Formal writing, though, rarely contains contractions.

The auxiliary verb *did* is often combined with *not* to form a contraction. Notice that an apostrophe indicates that the letter *o* is omitted:

did + not = didn't

exercise 6-4

Rewrite the sentences you wrote in exercise 6-3 using contractions.

1. ______________________________
2. ______________________________
3. ______________________________

4. ______________________

5. ______________________

6. ______________________

7. ______________________

8. ______________________

9. ______________________

10. ______________________

Forming Yes/No Questions

To form questions that can be answered yes or no (yes/no questions), begin the question with the auxiliary verb *did*. After the auxiliary verb, place the subject and the main verb.

Statement: He took the bus to work.
Yes/no question: Did he take the bus to work?

exercise 6-5

Rewrite the following statements as yes/no questions.

EXAMPLE: You finished your application letter.
Did you finish your application letter?

1. They elected a new president.

____

2. She delivered the report.

____

3. You expected us earlier.

____

4. Tho passed his driver's test.

____

5. The committee explored the issues.

____

6. He explained the problem.

____

7. The director had an appointment at 3:00.

____

8. You forgot the map.

____

9. The bank lent him some money.

____

10. They offered him a job.

____

Forming *Wh*-Questions

Wh-questions are used to elicit specific pieces of information. They usually begin with *what*, *who*, *why*, *where*, *when*, *how*, or combinations such as *how much*, *how many*, and *how often*. When the question word is the subject of the sentence, the form of the question is similar to the form of a statement.

Statement: Someone knocked on the door.
Wh-question: Who knocked at the door?

When the question word is any other part of the sentence, the auxiliary verb *did* comes after the question word and is followed by the subject and the main verb.

Statement: She bought a new cell phone.
Wh-question: What did she buy?

Statement: They left last night.
Wh-question: When did they leave?

exercise 6-6

Complete the following questions based on the statements provided.

EXAMPLE: He found the missing document on the top shelf.
Where *did he find the missing document?*

1. Toni Morrison wrote *Beloved.*

   Who ____________________________________

2. Patty won the contest.

   Who ____________________________________

3. He turned left.

   Which way ________________________________

4. They traveled to four different countries.

   How many countries ______________________________

5. You taught biology for thirty years.

   How long ______________________________

6. The repair cost $35.00.

   How much ______________________________

7. They stayed at the party until midnight.

   How long ______________________________

8. She ran fifteen miles.

   How far ______________________________

9. They moved to Hong Kong.

   Where ______________________________

10. They climbed to the summit.

    How far ______________________________

This page intentionally left blank

Unit 7

Be Verb Forms, Simple Past

The verb *be* has two different forms in the simple past: *was* and *were*.

	Singular	Plural
First Person	I **was**	we **were**
Second Person	you **were**	you **were**
Third Person	he, she, it **was**	they **were**

exercise 7-1

Complete each sentence with the simple past form of the verb be.

1. The test ____________ difficult.
2. You ____________ right.
3. They ____________ envious.
4. Bill ____________ ill yesterday.
5. The news ____________ good.
6. We ____________ embarrassed.
7. I ____________ ready for the exam.
8. The keys ____________ in the car.
9. It ____________ fun.
10. The house ____________ old and decrepit.

The word *there* is often used with the verb *be* to acknowledge the existence of someone or something. The form of the verb is based on the subject that follows it.

Singular subject: There **was a storm** last night.
Plural subject: There **were** twelve people in the cast.

exercise 7-2

Circle the verb that agrees in number with the subject that follows it.

1. There **was/were** a parade yesterday.
2. There **was/were** many celebrities at the rally.
3. There **was/were** a lot of traffic.
4. There **was/were** pizza for everyone.
5. There **was/were** several buildings in need of repair.
6. There **was/were** no more tickets left.
7. There **was/were** a four-hour delay.
8. There **was/were** an empty seat in the back row.
9. There **was/were** many tourists at this year's festival.
10. There **was/were** a nice breeze earlier this morning.

Forming Negatives

To make the verb *be* negative, just add *not.*

was not were not

Forming Contractions

In conversation and informal writing, you can use contractions.

was not = wasn't were + not = weren't

exercise 7-3

Complete the sentences using either wasn't *or* weren't.

1. They ____________ at home yesterday.
2. I ____________ prepared for such a long trip.
3. There ____________ any leftovers.

4. Carlos ____________ at work on Tuesday.

5. We ____________ pleased with the report.

6. There ____________ much time left.

7. Jenny and Sik ____________ in class.

8. The lights ____________ on.

9. You ____________ at the party.

10. The accident ____________ serious.

Forming Yes/No Questions

To form yes/no questions, begin the question with a form of the verb *be* and place the subject after it.

Statement: John was late.
Yes/no question: Was John late?

Statement: They were surprised.
Yes/no question: Were they surprised?

To form yes/no questions with *there*, place *there* after the *be* verb.

Statement: There was a message for Natalie on the answering machine.
Yes/no question: Was there a message for Natalie on the answering machine?

exercise 7-4

Rewrite the following statements as questions.

EXAMPLE: He was sick last week.
Was he sick last week?

1. The concert was in the park.

____

2. The road was under construction.

____

3. Everyone was on time.

____

4. The textbooks were expensive.

____

5. The job was stressful.

6. The program was a success.

7. There were many apartments for rent.

8. The parking lot was full.

9. The tickets were free.

10. The computer was on.

Forming *Wh*-Questions

To form *wh*-questions, place the *be* verb after the question word. When the question word is the subject of the sentence, the form of the question is similar to the form of a statement.

Statement: Cindy was the winner.
Wh-question: Who was the winner?

When the question word is any other part of the sentence, the subject follows the *be* verb.

Statement: They were in Mexico last week.
Wh-question: Where were they last week?

Statement: She was in the office on Tuesday.
Wh-question: When was she in the office?

exercise 7-5

Complete the following questions based on the statements provided.

EXAMPLE: The weather was good.
How *was the weather?*

1. In 1980, Jimmy Carter was the president of the United States.
Who __________

2. The trip was long and arduous.
How __________

3. His grandparents were from Brazil.

   Where ____

4. They were in the library.

   Where ____

5. The field trip was on Wednesday.

   When ____

6. The gym was open four hours on Sunday.

   How long ____

7. Many DVDs were on sale.

   What items ____

8. The traffic was bad.

   How ____

9. Seth was there.

   Who ____

10. The movie was two hours long.

    How long ____

This page intentionally left blank

Unit 8

Past Progressive (*Be* Verb + *-ing*)

When you refer to a past action, state, or event that is incomplete or in progress, use the past progressive.

Past action: In 2012, I **was working** for a large company in Houston.

Past state: I **was feeling** fine ten minutes ago.

Past event: Something strange **was happening**.

A specific time reference is often used with the past progressive. This reference is generally a prepositional phrase or another clause with a simple-past verb form.

Prepositional phrase: *By 5:00*, all the participants **were packing** their bags.

Clause: While I **was preparing** breakfast, *I heard the news on the radio.*

When you want to indicate two simultaneous ongoing actions, use the past progressive for both.

Simultaneous actions: While I **was preparing** breakfast, I **was listening** to the news.

The past progressive consists of the auxiliary verb *be* and the *-ing* form of the main verb. The auxiliary verb is marked for tense.

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **was verb + ing**	we **were verb + ing**
Second Person	you **were verb + ing**	you **were verb + ing**
Third Person	he, she, it **was verb + ing**	they **were verb + ing**

When a one-syllable word or a word with a stressed final syllable ends in a single consonant sound, double the last letter before adding *-ing*.

One-syllable word: swim → swimming

Word ending in a stressed syllable: permit → permitting

BUT show → showing [This word ends in a vowel sound.]

When a word ends with the letter *e*, drop the *e* before adding *-ing*.

exercise 8-1

Complete each sentence with the past progressive form of the verb in parentheses.

1. The customer ____________________ (be) rude.
2. The telephone ____________________ (ring) all day long.
3. While I ____________________ (wait), I ____________________ (dream) of distant places.
4. When you visited last year, they ____________________ (live) in a different apartment.
5. My roommate ____________________ (take) a nap while I ____________________ (study).
6. She ____________________ (put) on her coat when I walked in.
7. Someone ____________________ (knock) at the door just as I ____________________ (get) out of bed.
8. It ____________________ (rain) a few minutes ago.
9. They saw an accident while they ____________________ (go) to work.
10. We found old books and toys when we ____________________ (clean).

exercise 8-2

The verb forms in the following sentences are either simple past or past progressive. Decide whether the verb in each sentence indicates a complete action or an ongoing past action. If you need help, review pages 47–48 and 61.

1. He *played* the piano beautifully.

   Complete action **Action in progress**

2. He *was playing* the piano as the guests were arriving.

   Complete action **Action in progress**

3. I *was cooking* dinner when I remembered his name.

   Complete action **Action in progress**

4. I *cooked* dinner for everyone.

   Complete action **Action in progress**

5. They *were shopping* for a new lamp, but they couldn't find a nice one.

   Complete action **Action in progress**

6. They *shopped* for a lamp until they found a nice one.

   Complete action **Action in progress**

7. When we lived in the suburbs, we *commuted* to work.

   Complete action **Action in progress**

8. While we *were commuting* to work, we talked about our families.

   Complete action **Action in progress**

9. She *was working* for Apex Law Firm when she received a new job offer.

   Complete action **Action in progress**

10. She *worked* for Apex Law Firm from 1999 to 2002.

    Complete action **Action in progress**

Forming Negatives

To make a past progressive verb negative, place *not* after the auxiliary verb.

was not going were not going

exercise 8-3

Make each of the following sentences negative.

EXAMPLE: We were visiting our relatives.
We were not visiting our relatives.

1. He was attending a conference.

2. They were laughing.

3. I was complaining about the work.

4. She was helping us.

____

5. Ted was studying last night.

____

6. They were paying attention.

____

7. I was talking to myself.

____

8. You were speaking loud enough.

____

9. They were doing their homework.

____

10. We were trying hard.

____

Forming Contractions

Contractions are often formed by combining the auxiliary verb *be* and *not*. You will often hear these contractions in conversation or see them in informal writing, but you will rarely find them used in formal contexts.

Notice that an apostrophe indicates that the letter *o* is omitted:

I wasn't moving
He wasn't moving
She wasn't moving
It wasn't moving

We weren't moving
You weren't moving
They weren't moving

exercise 8-4

Rewrite the sentences in exercise 8-3 using contractions.

1. ______________________________
2. ______________________________
3. ______________________________
4. ______________________________
5. ______________________________

6. ______________________________

7. ______________________________

8. ______________________________

9. ______________________________

10. ______________________________

Forming Yes/No Questions

To form yes/no questions, begin the question with the auxiliary verb *be*. After the auxiliary verb, place the subject and the *-ing* form of the main verb.

Statement: Prices were dropping.
Yes/no question: Were prices dropping?

exercise 8-5

Rewrite the following statements as yes/no questions.

EXAMPLE: You were singing to yourself.
Were you singing to yourself?

1. The band was giving a free concert.
____

2. The light was blinking on and off.
____

3. You were watching the championship on television.
____

4. They were being careful.
____

5. It was snowing all day.
____

6. Gabe and Don were singing together.
____

7. They were closing the store.
____

8. The companies were considering a merger.

 ____

9. They were recycling most of the waste products.

 ____

10. As young children, they were always getting into trouble.

 ____

Forming *Wh*-Questions

In *wh*-questions, when the question word is the subject of the sentence, the form of the question is similar to the form of a statement.

Statement: Ken was demanding your attention.
Wh-question: Who was demanding your attention?

When the question word is any other part of the sentence, the auxiliary verb *be* comes after the question word and is followed by the subject and the *-ing* form of the main verb.

Statement: They were going to church.
Wh-question: Where were they going?

Statement: He was playing solitaire.
Wh-question: What was he playing?

exercise 8-6

Complete the following questions based on the statements provided.

EXAMPLE: The assistant was making travel arrangements.
Who was making travel arrangements?

1. They were protesting in front of the post office.

 Where ______________________________

2. Carmen was using this computer.

 Who ______________________________

3. You were watching a funny movie on television last night.

 What ______________________________

4. The committee was discussing the new plan.

 What ______________________________

5. The noise was bothering them.

 What ______________________________

6. Lev was spreading rumors.

   Who ________________________________

7. He was working at McDonald's.

   Where ________________________________

8. She was driving seventy-five mph.

   How fast ________________________________

9. He was reading a newspaper during class today.

   What ________________________________

10. They were standing in front of city hall.

    Where ________________________________

This page intentionally left blank

Unit 9

Past Perfect

Use the past perfect when you want to refer to a past action, state, or event that occurred prior to another time in the past. The more recent past time may be expressed as a prepositional phrase or as a clause in which another action, state, or event is mentioned.

PAST ACTION BEFORE PAST TIME: They **had finished** the project *by Friday.*

PAST STATE BEFORE PAST ACTION: He **had been** depressed *before he went on vacation.*

You can also use the past perfect to refer to a hypothetical action, state, or event.

HYPOTHETICAL ACTION: If they **had come** earlier, they would have received free tickets.

Sentences such as this one will be discussed in more detail in Part IV.

The past perfect consists of the auxiliary verb *have* and the perfect/passive form of the main verb. The auxiliary verb is marked for past tense. The perfect/passive verb form is used to indicate either the perfect aspect or the passive voice. (The passive voice will be discussed in Part IV.) The perfect/passive form for regular verbs consists of the base form of the verb and the ending *-ed.*

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **had verb + ed**	we **had verb + ed**
Second Person	you **had verb + ed**	you **had verb + ed**
Third Person	he, she, it **had verb + ed**	they **had verb + ed**

When a one-syllable word or a word with a stressed final syllable ends in a single consonant sound, double the last letter before adding *-ed.*

One-syllable word: pat → patted

Word ending in a stressed syllable: occur → occurred

BUT tow → towed [This word ends in a vowel sound.]

The present/passive forms of irregular verbs can be found in the appendix.

If you would like to see the common patterns that irregular verbs follow, see those listed for the present perfect on pages 29–30.

exercise 9-1

Complete each sentence with the past perfect form of the verb in parentheses. If you need help with irregular verb forms, check the appendix.

1. Before 2016, they ____________ (attend) college in Philadelphia.
2. After we ____________ (hold) a meeting, we announced our decision.
3. They ____________ (sell) most of their furniture before they moved.
4. The employees ____________ (meet) the new director already.
5. I ____________ (feel) uneasy before I gave my speech.
6. He ____________ (hit) twenty home runs before the All-Star Game.
7. We ____________ (sit) down right before the concert began.
8. She ____________ (run) three marathons by the age of twenty.
9. It ____________ (snow) so much that school was canceled.
10. She ____________ (be) there so often that everyone knew her.

exercise 9-2

Using the verbs in parentheses, complete each sentence with either the simple past or the past perfect.

1. The taxi ____________ (arrive) after he ____________ (left).
2. After we ____________ (finish) the dishes, we ____________ (go) for a walk.
3. The teacher ____________ (assign) twenty problems, but most students ____________ (complete) only fifteen of them.
4. She ____________ (be) tired because she ____________ (work) late the night before.
5. He ____________ (wear) the ring that his grandfather ____________ (give) him.
6. I ____________ (revise) a paper that I ____________ (write) a year ago.
7. She ____________ (knock) on the door before she ____________ (enter).

8. All of a sudden we ____________ (know) that we ____________ (take) the wrong exit off the freeway.

9. He ____________ (read) aloud from a new book he ____________ (receive) as a gift.

10. They ____________ (celebrate) because they ____________ (pass) all their classes.

Forming Negatives

To make a past perfect verb negative, place *not* after the auxiliary verb.

had not gone

exercise 9-3

Complete each of the following sentences with a negative form of the past perfect. Use the subject and verb provided.

EXAMPLE: He, finish
It was midnight, and *he had not finished* his paper.

1. They, meet
____________________ before.

2. It, change
Because ____________________ color, no one could see it.

3. We, consider
____________________ all the possibilities.

4. He, want
____________________ help from us.

5. She, drive
____________________ to the party.

6. You, speak
____________________ English before you came here.

7. I, sent
____________________ my application in on time.

Forming Contractions

Contractions are often formed by combining pronouns and the auxiliary verb *had* or by combining the auxiliary verb *had* and *not*. You will often hear these contractions in conversation or see them in informal writing, but you will rarely find them used in formal contexts.

Notice that an apostrophe indicates that at least one letter is omitted:

I'd gone	I hadn't gone
You'd gone	You hadn't gone
He'd gone	He hadn't gone
She'd gone	She hadn't gone
It'd gone	It hadn't gone
We'd gone	We hadn't gone
They'd gone	They hadn't gone

exercise 9-4

Rewrite each sentence in exercise 9-3 using a contraction. First, write a positive sentence; then write a negative sentence (with not*).*

EXAMPLE: He, finish
It was midnight, and he'd finished his paper.
It was midnight, and he hadn't finished his paper.

1. ______________________________
____

2. ______________________________
____

3. ______________________________
____

4. ______________________________
____

5. ______________________________
____

6. ______________________________
____

7. ______________________________
____

Forming Yes/No Questions

To form yes/no questions, begin the question with the auxiliary verb *had*. After the auxiliary verb, place the subject and the perfect/passive form of the main verb.

Statement: She had taught in Mexico before she moved here.
Yes/no question: Had she taught in Mexico before she moved here?

exercise 9-5

Rewrite the following statements as yes/no questions.

EXAMPLE: He hadn't known about the bad roads before he left.
Hadn't he known about the bad roads before he left?

1. She hadn't called before she arrived.

   ____

2. They hadn't obtained permission before they started the experiment.

   ____

3. Pat had won the first race before he ran the second race.

   ____

4. They had closed the road.

   ____

5. They had canceled the game without prior notice.

   ____

Forming *Wh*-Questions

In *wh*-questions, when the question word is the subject of the sentence, the form of the question is similar to the form of a statement.

Statement: Jackie had not studied English before coming to the United States.
Wh-question: Who had not studied English before coming to the United States?

When the question word is any other part of the sentence, the auxiliary verb *had* comes after the question word and is followed by the subject and the perfect/passive form of the main verb.

Statement: He had walked two miles before he realized his mistake.
Wh-question: How far had he walked before he realized his mistake?

exercise 9-6

Complete the following questions based on the statements provided.

EXAMPLE: Sharon had worked in Taiwan before she moved to Kuala Lumpur.
Where *had Sharon worked before she moved to Kuala Lumpur?*

1. Peggy and Mel had received job offers before they graduated.
   Who ______________________________

2. Peter had broken six track records by the age of eighteen.
   How many track records ______________________________

3. She had taught English for ten years before she went to law school.
   How long ______________________________

4. He had arrived at the gate a minute before the flight attendant closed the door to the plane.
   When ______________________________

5. They had dated for two years before they got married.
   How long ______________________________

Unit 10

Past Perfect Progressive

When you want to refer to an action, a state, or an event that originated prior to another time in the past but is still ongoing or incomplete, use the past perfect progressive.

> ONGOING STATE: I **had been having** frequent headaches, so I decided to visit a doctor.
>
> INCOMPLETE ACTION: We **had been making** plans when someone interrupted us.

You can also use the past perfect progressive to refer to a hypothetical action or event.

> HYPOTHETICAL ACTION: If they **had been paying** attention, they would have found the clues.

Sentences such as this one will be discussed in more detail in Part IV.

The past perfect progressive consists of two auxiliary verbs, *have* and *be*, and the *-ing* form of the main verb. The auxiliary verb *had* comes first, and it is marked for tense.

Next comes the perfect/passive form of the verb *be*—*been*. The final element of the past perfect progressive is the *-ing* form of the main verb.

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **had been verb + ing**	we **had been verb + ing**
Second Person	you **had been verb + ing**	you **had been verb + ing**
Third Person	he, she, it **had been verb + ing**	they **had been verb + ing**

exercise 10-1

Complete each sentence with the past perfect progressive form of the verb in parentheses.

1. I ______________________________ (work) ten-hour days, so I was very tired.
2. We ______________________________ (discuss) that issue when the supervisor walked in.
3. They ______________________________ (study) English since they came in 2017.
4. The company's profits ______________________________ (increase) until they dropped in December.
5. They ______________________________ (play) soccer together for years.
6. It ______________________________ (rain) all day, so the game was postponed.
7. The children ______________________________ (watch) television before we arrived.
8. He ______________________________ (write) newspaper editorials for twenty years.
9. Sally ______________________________ (study) since 6:00 A.M.
10. I ______________________________ (work) for the telephone company before I came here.

Forming Negatives

To make a past perfect progressive verb negative, place *not* after the auxiliary verb *had.*

had not been going

exercise 10-2

Complete each of the following sentences with the negative form of the past perfect progressive. Use the subject and verb provided.

EXAMPLE: We, expect, not
We had not been expecting your call.

1. The supervisor, assign, not
______________________________ much work lately.
2. The weather, improve, not
______________________________, so we returned home.
3. Jodi and I, follow, not

________________________________ his directions.

4. They, check, not

________________________________ the oil in their car frequently enough.

5. She, ignore, not

________________________________ the phone messages.

6. You, get, not

________________________________ to work on time.

7. I, exercise, not

________________________________, so I was feeling sluggish.

Forming Contractions

Contractions are often formed by combining pronouns and the auxiliary verb *had* or by combining the auxiliary verb *had* and *not*. You will often hear these contractions in conversation or see them in informal writing, but you will rarely find them used in formal contexts.

Notice that an apostrophe indicates that at least one letter is omitted:

I'd been going	I hadn't been going
You'd been going	You hadn't been going
He'd been going	He hadn't been going
She'd been going	She hadn't been going
It'd been going	It hadn't been going
We'd been going	We hadn't been going
They'd been going	They hadn't been going

exercise 10-3

Use the pronoun and verb given to create a sentence that contains a contraction. If not *is also given, use a negative contraction.*

EXAMPLE: We, hope
We'd been hoping for a nice day.

1. He, expect, not

________________________________ a phone call.

2. It, change

________________________________ slowly.

3. We, hope

________________________________ for good news.

4. They, look, not
______________________ in the right places.

5. She, lie
______________________ on the couch when the doorbell rang.

6. You, joke, not
______________________ about the possible danger.

7. I, think
______________________ about you when your letter arrived.

Forming Yes/No Questions

To form yes/no questions, begin the question with the auxiliary verb *have*. After a tensed form of *have* (*had*), place the subject, the perfect/passive form of the auxiliary verb *be* (*been*), and the *-ing* form of the main verb.

Statement: She had been doing all her work.
Yes/no question: Had she been doing all her work?

exercise 10-4

Rewrite the following statements as yes/no questions.

EXAMPLE: The administration had been putting pressure on the employees.
Had the administration been putting pressure on the employees?

1. You had been working too hard.
____

2. He had been living by himself.
____

3. She had been talking too loudly.
____

4. They had been waiting a long time.
____

5. The suspect had been telling the truth.
____

Forming *Wh*-Questions

In *wh*-questions, when the question word is the subject of the sentence, the form of the question is similar to the form of a statement.

Statement: Joseph had been driving when the accident happened.
Wh-question: Who had been driving when the accident happened?

When the question word is any other part of the sentence, the auxiliary verb *had* comes after the question word and is followed by the subject, the auxiliary verb *been*, and the *-ing* form of the main verb.

Statement: She had been living in St. Louis at the time.
Wh-question: Where had she been living at the time?

exercise 10-5

Complete the following questions based on the statements provided.

EXAMPLE: The band had been playing together for five years.
How long had the band been playing together?

1. Michelle had been making the arrangements.
   Who ____________________
2. He had been thinking about moving for the last few months.
   How long ____________________
3. They had been using my old computer before the new shipment arrived.
   What ____________________
4. Vladimir had been leading the discussion when the argument started.
   Who ____________________
5. They had been working on the project since June.
   How long ____________________

Summary of Tense-Aspect Combinations

TENSE/ASPECT	PAST
simple	simple past: *talked*
progressive	past progressive: *was/were talking*
perfect	past perfect: *had talked*
perfect progressive	past perfect progressive: *had been talking*

This page intentionally left blank

PART III

THE FUTURE TENSE

Verbs in the future tense occur in four forms, each signaling a different aspect. (*Aspect* is explained in the Introduction.) Each of these forms can be used to predict future actions, states, or events.

SIMPLE FUTURE: I **will work** on my project tomorrow.

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE: I **will be working** for my father next year.

FUTURE PERFECT: By the end of the winter, I **will have worked** here for five years.

FUTURE PERFECT PROGRESSIVE: On Monday, I **will have been working** with you for ten years.

In the following units, you will learn about these verb forms and the reasons for using them.

This page intentionally left blank

Unit 11

Simple Future

When you are referring to a future action, state, or event, use the simple future.

FUTURE ACTION: We **will take** our final exam on Friday.

FUTURE STATE: They **will be** late.

FUTURE EVENT: The weather **will improve**.

To form the simple future for both regular and irregular verbs, place the modal auxiliary verb *will* before the base form of the verb.

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **will verb**	we **will verb**
Second Person	you **will verb**	you **will verb**
Third Person	he, she, it **will verb**	they **will verb**

exercise 11-1

Complete each sentence with the simple future form of the verb in parentheses.

1. We _____________ (commute) to work with Megan next year.
2. The project _____________ (require) a lot of hard work and patience.
3. I _____________ (give) my report on Tuesday.
4. He _____________ (visit) his parents this weekend.
5. Dr. Kobashi _____________ (be) out of the office next week.
6. They _____________ (announce) the winners on the radio.
7. Bob _____________ (leave) next month.

8. Lilik and Rebecca ____________ (complete) their training in February.

9. I ____________ (call) you tomorrow.

10. They ____________ (expand) the airport next year.

Forming Contractions: Pronouns with the Auxiliary Verb *Will*

In English, verbs are often combined with other words to form contractions. These shortened forms include an apostrophe (') to indicate missing letters. It is important to learn contractions because you will often hear them in conversation or see them in informal writing. Formal writing, though, rarely contains contractions.

The modal auxiliary verb *will* is often combined with a pronoun to form a contraction. Notice that an apostrophe indicates that the letters *w* and *i* are omitted:

I + will = I'll
he + will = he'll
she + will = she'll
it + will = it'll
we + will = we'll
you + will = you'll
they + will = they'll

exercise 11-2

Complete each sentence with a contraction using the pronoun and the verb provided.

EXAMPLE: I, see
I'll see you in the morning.

1. They, believe

____________________ your story.

2. I, deliver

____________________ the package myself.

3. You, like

____________________ their new apartment.

4. It, end

____________________ soon.

5. He, help

____________________ us.

6. She, introduce

____________________ you.

7. We, sit

____________________ together.

Forming Negatives

To form a negative, place *not* between the modal auxiliary verb *will* and the main verb.

will not go

exercise 11-3

Make each of the following sentences negative.

EXAMPLE: You will find your book over there.
You will not find your book over there.

1. He will finish by tomorrow.

____

2. You will have a lot of fun there.

____

3. She will know the answer.

____

4. We will ignore the problem.

____

5. They will keep your secret.

____

6. He will lie to you.

____

7. I will need help with my homework.

____

8. Marian will be alone.

____

9. I will mention your name.

____

10. They will be late.

____

Forming Contractions: *Won't*

In conversation and informal writing, *will* and *not* are often contracted. The letter *i* in *will* changes to *o* in *won't*. The apostrophe indicates that at least one letter is omitted:

will + not = won't

exercise 11-4

Rewrite the sentences you wrote in exercise 11-3 using contractions.

1. ____________________
2. ____________________
3. ____________________
4. ____________________
5. ____________________
6. ____________________
7. ____________________
8. ____________________
9. ____________________
10. ____________________

Forming Yes/No Questions

To form questions that can be answered yes or no (yes/no questions), begin the question with the modal auxiliary verb *will*. After the modal verb, place the subject and the main verb.

Statement: You will be away a long time.
Yes/no question: Will you be away a long time?

exercise 11-5

Rewrite the following statements as yes/no questions.

EXAMPLE: You will know more tomorrow.
Will you know more tomorrow?

1. They will tell us on Friday.

____

2. She will report the incident.

   ____

3. You will laugh at my mistakes.

   ____

4. Mitch will need some help.

   ____

5. The noise will bother you.

   ____

6. He will lend us some money.

   ____

7. Dr. Silvis will be free at 4:00.

   ____

8. We will meet later.

   ____

9. They will use your plan.

   ____

10. Federal Express will deliver the package to our house.

    ____

Forming *Wh*-Questions

Wh-questions are used to elicit specific pieces of information. They usually begin with *what*, *who*, *why*, *where*, *when*, *how*, or combinations such as *how much*, *how many*, and *how often*. When the question word is the subject of the sentence, the form of the question is similar to the form of a statement.

> Statement: McGraw-Hill will publish his new book.
> *Wh*-question: Who will publish his new book?

When the question word is any other part of the sentence, the auxiliary modal verb *will* comes after the question word, followed by the subject and the main verb.

> Statement: The play will begin at 8:00.
> *Wh*-question: When will the play begin?
>
> Statement: The package will contain two books and a DVD.
> *Wh*-question: What will the package contain?

exercise 11-6

Complete the following questions based on the statements provided.

Example: My entire family will be there.
Who *will be there?*

1. His friends will repair his car.
Who ______________________________

2. The class will meet on Tuesdays and Thursdays.
When ______________________________

3. Rhonda will finish the report by Monday.
When ______________________________

4. It will cost $30.00.
How much ______________________________

5. They will blame me for the mistake.
Whom ______________________________
(*Who* may be used instead of *whom* in conversation and informal writing.)

6. Professor Johnson and Professor Lee will choose the scholarship winners.
Who ______________________________

7. The supervisor will be on vacation for two weeks.
How long ______________________________

8. They will complain about the mess.
What ______________________________

9. Two students from our class will lead the discussion.
Who ______________________________

10. The dance group will perform on Thursday.
When ______________________________

Unit 12

Be Going To

The phrasal modal auxiliary verb *be going to* is also used to indicate future time.

The verb *be* takes three different forms: *am*, *is*, and *are*.

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **am going to verb**	we **are going to verb**
Second Person	you **are going to verb**	you **are going to verb**
Third Person	he, she, it **is going to verb**	they **are going to verb**

Be going to is less formal than *will*.

Friend to friend: **I'm going to finish** the project by Friday.

Employee to supervisor: **I'll finish** the project by Friday.

Although sometimes *be going to* and *will* can be used interchangeably, there are two special uses. *Be going to* signals that something is imminent.

The alarm **is going to sound** in a second.

Will is used to make commitments.

I'll meet you at 5:00.

You will learn more about modal auxiliary verbs in Part V.

exercise 12-1

Complete each sentence with a form of be going to *and the main verb.*

1. This job ____________________ (be) difficult.
2. Our neighbors ____________________ (build) a new garage.

3. My roommate ______________ (buy) a new printer.
4. I ______________ (cancel) my magazine subscription.
5. Members of the Outing Club ______________ (climb) Mt. Hood.
6. We ______________ (celebrate) tonight.
7. He ______________ (call) me today.
8. Matt ______________ (come) over this evening.
9. Someone from the firm ______________ (deliver) the letter tomorrow.
10. They ______________ (elect) a new prime minister this year.

exercise 12-2

Complete each sentence with either will *or a form of* be going to. *Circle the reason that supports your answer.*

1. Watch out. It __________ fall.

   Imminent action **Commitment**

2. I __________ work for you on Friday.

   Imminent action **Commitment**

3. I __________ sit down right now.

   Imminent action **Commitment**

4. Sit down. The movie __________ start.

   Imminent action **Commitment**

5. Beth and I __________ help you next week.

   Imminent action **Commitment**

Forming Negatives

To make the phrasal modal verb *be going to* negative, just add *not* after *be.*

am not going to is not going to are not going to

exercise 12-3

Complete each of the following sentences using a negative form of be going to *and the subject and verb provided.*

EXAMPLE: He, accept
He *is not going to accept* the job offer.

1. Taxes, increase
________________________ this year.

2. It, snow
________________________ tonight.

3. We, go
________________________ to the party.

4. He, listen
________________________ to your advice.

5. She, travel
________________________ alone.

6. You, have
________________________ enough time.

7. I, forget
________________________ you.

Forming Contractions

Contractions are often formed by combining pronouns and the verb *be* or by combining the verb *be* and *not*. You will often hear these contractions in conversation or see them in informal writing, but you will rarely find them used in formal contexts.

Notice that an apostrophe indicates that a letter is omitted:

I'm going to	I'm not going to	
You're going to	You're not going to	You aren't going to
He's going to	He's not going to	He isn't going to
She's going to	She's not going to	She isn't going to
It's going to	It's not going to	It isn't going to
We're going to	We're not going to	We aren't going to
They're going to	They're not going to	They aren't going to

exercise 12-4

Complete the following sentences using contractions. For some sentences more than one form can be used.

EXAMPLE: He, appear
He's going to appear on television this evening.

1. He, come, not
______________________ with us.

2. It, rain
______________________ soon.

3. I, clean
______________________ my room tonight.

4. They, believe, not
______________________ your story.

5. She, call, not
______________________ tonight.

6. You, do
______________________ well on the exam.

7. I, cook, not
______________________ anything special.

Forming Yes/No Questions

To form yes/no questions, begin the question with a form of the verb *be* and the subject.

Statement: They are going to win.
Yes/no question: Are they going to win?

exercise 12-5

Rewrite the following statements as questions.

EXAMPLE: He is going to design a new line of clothing.
Is he going to design a new line of clothing?

1. They are going to consider your proposal.
____

2. You are going to enter the park at the north gate.

3. The doctor is going to explain the procedure.

4. We are going to explore our new neighborhood today.

5. He's going to fix it for free.

6. You are going to follow us.

7. She's going to get into trouble.

8. It's going to happen soon.

9. He's going to like this idea.

10. We're going to look for a new apartment today.

Forming *Wh*-Questions

In *wh*-questions, when a question word is the subject of a sentence, the form of the question is similar to the form of a statement.

Statement: Judy is going to assist us.
Wh-question: Who is going to assist us?

When the question word is any other part of the sentence, place a form of the verb *be* and the subject after the question word.

Statement: They are going to leave next week.
Wh-question: When are they going to leave?

Statement: He is going to park the car in the corner lot.
Wh-question: Where is he going to park the car?

exercise 12-6

Complete the following questions based on the statements provided.

EXAMPLE: They are going to cut costs by closing some plants.
How *are they going to cut costs?*

1. My cousin is going to move to Chile.
   Who ______________________________
2. She is going to earn $10.00 an hour.
   How much ______________________________
3. We are going to eat late tonight.
   When ______________________________
4. They are going to improve the roads this year.
   When ______________________________
5. You are going to develop the film tomorrow.
   When ______________________________
6. They are going to invite everyone in the neighborhood.
   Whom ______________________________
   (*Who* may be used instead of *whom* in conversation and informal writing.)
7. The legislators are going to discuss the bill on Friday.
   When ______________________________
8. He is going to live in Tokyo.
   Where ______________________________
9. My daughter is going to march in the parade.
   Who ______________________________
10. The eclipse is going to occur on Saturday.
    When ______________________________

Unit 13

Future Progressive (*Will Be* Verb + *-ing*)

Use the future progressive when you refer to an action or event that will be ongoing at some time or for some period of time in the future.

FUTURE ACTION OCCURRING FOR A PERIOD OF TIME: I **will be studying** *all night.*

FUTURE EVENT OCCURRING AT A POINT IN TIME: *At approximately 7:30,* the sun **will be sinking** behind the horizon.

The future progressive consists of the auxiliary verbs *will* and *be* and the *-ing* form of the main verb.

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **will be verb + ing**	we **will be verb + ing**
Second Person	you **will be verb + ing**	you **will be verb + ing**
Third Person	he, she, it **will be verb + ing**	they **will be verb + ing**

When a one-syllable word or a word with a stressed final syllable ends in a single consonant sound, double the last letter before adding *-ing*.

One-syllable word: plan → planning

Word ending in a stressed syllable: emit → emitting

BUT sew → sewing [This word ends in a vowel sound.]

When a word ends with a consonant and the letter *e*, drop the *e* before adding *-ing*: come → coming. The letter *e* is not dropped from words such as *be*, *see*, and *free*.

exercise 13-1

Complete each sentence with the future progressive form of the verb in parentheses.

1. Sean ____________________ (represent) us at the meeting.
2. They ____________________ (leave) at 6:00.
3. Their car ____________________ (follow) ours.
4. We ____________________ (wait) for you on the corner.
5. He ____________________ (watch) the clock.
6. They ____________________ (produce) more energy than they need.
7. The tour company ____________________ (provide) lunch.
8. It ____________________ (snow) in the mountains.
9. Look for me by the entry. I ____________________ (wear) a red hat.
10. The Copy Shop ____________________ (open) a new store downtown this year.

Forming Negatives

To make a future progressive verb negative, place *not* after *will.*

will not be flying

exercise 13-2

Complete each of the following sentences with a negative form of the future progressive. Use the subject and verb provided.

EXAMPLE: I, attend
I will not be attending the meeting.

1. They, appear
   ____________________________ on television.
2. It, start
   ____________________________ on time.
3. We, read
   ____________________________ that novel this term.

4. He, arrive

   ______________________________ in time for the party.

5. She, stay

   ______________________________ in a hotel.

6. You, live

   ______________________________ by yourself.

7. I, make

   ______________________________ much money next year.

Forming Contractions

Contractions are often formed by combining pronouns and the auxiliary verb *will* or by combining the auxiliary verb *will* and *not*. You will often hear these contractions in conversation or see them in informal writing, but you will rarely find them used in formal contexts.

Remember that an apostrophe indicates that at least one letter is omitted and that the letter *i* in *will* changes to *o* in the negative contraction *won't*:

I'll be working	I won't be working
You'll be working	You won't be working
He'll be working	He won't be working
She'll be working	She won't be working
It'll be working	It won't be working
We'll be working	We won't be working
They'll be working	They won't be working

exercise 13-3

Use the pronoun and verb given to create a sentence that contains a contraction. If not *is also given, use a negative contraction.*

Example: She, come, not
She won't be coming to the party.

1. He, joining, not

   ______________________________ us this evening.

2. It, affect

   ______________________________ everyone.

3. I, treat

   ______________________________ for dinner tonight.

4. They, need, not

_______________ any more help.

5. She, arrive, not

_______________ until midnight.

6. You, fly

Tomorrow _______________ to Honolulu.

7. I, think, not

_______________ of much besides the exam.

Forming Yes/No Questions

To form yes/no questions, begin the question with the auxiliary verb *will*. Follow *will* with the subject, *be*, and the *-ing* form of the main verb.

Statement: He will be coming along.
Yes/no question: Will he be coming along?

exercise 13-4

Rewrite the following statements as yes/no questions.

EXAMPLE: She will be playing for our team this year.
Will she be playing for our team this year?

1. I will be seeing you next week.

____

2. They will be traveling by bus.

____

3. Takamitsu will be assisting Heather.

____

4. They will be offering special packages at the end of the season.

____

5. You will be checking your e-mail daily.

____

Forming *Wh*-Questions

In *wh*-questions, when a question word is the subject of the sentence, the form of the question is similar to the form of a statement.

Statement: Debbie Little will be running for office next year.
Wh-question: Who will be running for office next year?

When the question word is any other part of the sentence, the auxiliary verb *will* comes after the question word and is followed by the subject, *be*, and the *-ing* form of the main verb.

Statement: They will be playing soccer on Sunday.
Wh-question: When will they be playing soccer?

exercise 13-5

Complete the questions below based on the statements provided.

EXAMPLE: Alison will be accompanying them.
Who *will be accompanying them?*

1. Kenji will be taking notes.
   Who ______________________________
2. The star of the show will be receiving an award.
   Who ______________________________
3. They will be sitting in the back row.
   Where ______________________________
4. You will be driving two hundred miles on your first day.
   How far ______________________________
5. She will be finishing her project in May.
   When ______________________________

This page intentionally left blank

Unit 14

Future Perfect

Use the future perfect when you want to refer to a future action, state, or event that will be completed by a specific time in the future.

FUTURE ACTION: *By next week*, she **will have completed** the course.

FUTURE STATE: *In 2025*, we **will have known** each other for twenty years.

FUTURE EVENT: The ship **will have sunk** *by then*.

The future perfect consists of the modal auxiliary verb *will*, the auxiliary verb *have*, and the perfect/passive form of the main verb. The perfect/passive verb form is used to indicate either the perfect aspect or the passive voice. (The passive voice will be discussed in Part IV.) The perfect/passive form for regular verbs consists of the base form of the verb and the ending *-ed*.

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **will have verb + ed**	we **will have verb + ed**
Second Person	you **will have verb + ed**	you **will have verb + ed**
Third Person	he, she, it **will have verb + ed**	they **will have verb + ed**

When a one-syllable word or a word with a stressed final syllable ends in a single consonant sound, double the last letter before adding *-ed*.

One-syllable word: flip → flipped

Word ending in a stressed syllable: refer → referred

BUT bow → bowed [This word ends in a vowel sound.]

The perfect/passive forms of irregular verbs can be found in the appendix.

If you would like to see the common patterns irregular verbs follow, see those listed for the present perfect on pages 29–30.

exercise 14-1

Complete each sentence with the future perfect form of the verb in parentheses. If you need help with irregular verb forms, check the appendix.

1. By the time you arrive, most guests ______________________ (leave).
2. I ______________________ (write) the report by the time you get here.
3. By 10:00 A.M., all the participants ______________________ (introduce) themselves.
4. By the time they reach Sydney, they ______________________ (fly) four thousand miles.
5. We ______________________ (eat) dinner by the time they get here.

Forming Negatives

To make a future perfect verb negative, place *not* after *will.*

will not have gone

exercise 14-2

Make each sentence negative. Be sure to use the subject and the future perfect form of the verb provided.

EXAMPLE: admit

By the time he's ninety years old, he still *will not have admitted* his mistake.

1. You, rest

   ______________________ before you meet the chair of the committee.

2. They, eat

   By the end of the fast, they ______________________ for twenty-four hours.

3. We, finish

   ______________________ our lunch by the time she arrives.

4. Mark, sleep

   ______________________ much before he makes his presentation.

5. She, save

   ______________________ enough money for college by the time classes begin.

Forming Contractions

Contractions are often formed by combining pronouns and the auxiliary verb *will* or by combining the auxiliary verb *will* and *not*. You will often hear these contractions in conversation or see them in informal writing, but you will rarely find them used in formal contexts.

Remember that an apostrophe indicates that at least one letter is omitted and that the letter *i* in *will* changes to *o* in the negative contraction *won't*:

I'll have moved	I won't have moved
You'll have moved	You won't have moved
He'll have moved	He won't have moved
She'll have moved	She won't have moved
It'll have moved	It won't have moved
We'll have moved	We won't have moved
They'll have moved	They won't have moved

exercise 14-3

Use the pronoun and verb given to create a sentence that contains a contraction. If not *is also given, use a negative contraction.*

EXAMPLE: It, change
By next year, *it'll have changed.*

1. They, complete

   By the time the director arrives, ____________________ the report.

2. He, finish, not

   By the time I return, ____________________ the work.

3. You, recover

   By the end of May, ____________________ completely.

4. They, make, not

   ____________________ much progress without our help.

5. She, give

   ____________________ the job to someone else by the time my application arrives.

Forming Yes/No Questions

To form yes/no questions, begin the question with the auxiliary verb *will*, following it with the subject, *have*, and the perfect/passive form of the main verb.

Statement: You will have completed your coursework by May.
Yes/no question: Will you have completed your coursework by May?

exercise **14-4**

Rewrite the following statements as yes/no questions.

EXAMPLE: They will have discussed the issue by the time we arrive.
Will they have discussed the issue by the time we arrive?

1. The landscape will have changed by the time he's an adult.

2. By July 11, we will have made our decision.

3. By the time you start your new job, you will have finished your degree.

4. By the time we get home, he will have called already.

5. When we get to the movie theater, the movie will have started already.

Forming *Wh*-Questions

In *wh*-questions, when the question word is the subject of the sentence, the form of the question is similar to the form of a statement.

Statement: Bruce will have resigned by the time the scandal appears in newspapers.
Wh-question: Who will have resigned by the time the scandal appears in newspapers?

When the question word is any other part of the sentence, the auxiliary verb *will* comes after the question word, followed by the auxiliary verb *have*, the subject, and the perfect/passive form of the main verb.

Statement: By the time you're fifty years old, you will have worked at the firm for twenty-five years.
Wh-question: How long will you have worked for the firm by the time you're fifty years old?

exercise **14-5**

Complete the following questions based on the statements provided.

EXAMPLE: She will have received her results by the time she leaves our office.
When *will she have received her results?*

1. By the end of the season, Nat will have become the record holder.

   By the end of the season, who ________________________

2. She will have lived in Moscow three months when her family arrives.

   How long ________________________

3. By the time he's thirty, Andy will have run sixteen marathons.

   By the time he's thirty, how many marathons ________________________

4. By the time it is built, they will have spent more than a million dollars.

   By the time it is built, how much ________________________

5. When his new book comes out, he will have written ten novels.

   When his new book comes out, how many novels ________________________

This page intentionally left blank

Unit 15

Future Perfect Progressive

When you want to refer to an ongoing action, state, or event or to a habitual action that will continue until or through a specific time, use the future perfect progressive.

HABITUAL ACTION: *In October,* we **will have been commuting** together for twenty years.

ONGOING EVENT: *By that time,* the temperature **will have been increasing** steadily for five years.

The future perfect progressive consists of three auxiliary verbs—*will, have,* and *be*—and the *-ing* form of the main verb. The auxiliary verbs *will* and *have* come first. Next is the perfect/passive form of the verb *be*—*been.* The final element of the future perfect progressive is the *-ing* form of the main verb.

	Singular	Plural
First Person	I **will have been verb + ing**	we **will have been verb + ing**
Second Person	you **will have been verb + ing**	you **will have been verb + ing**
Third Person	he, she, it **will have been verb + ing**	they will **have been verb + ing**

exercise 15-1

Complete each sentence with the future perfect progressive form of the verb in parentheses.

1. In December, we ________________________ (live) in this house for ten years.
2. By the time of our next meeting, we ________________________ (discuss) this plan for three years.
3. By the time of the recital, I ________________________ (practice) four hours a day, seven days a week.

4. When the Mariners meet the Red Sox, they ____________________ (play) on the road for six days already.

5. In June, they ____________________ (work) together for thirty years.

Forming Negatives

To make a future perfect progressive verb negative, place *not* after the auxiliary verb *will.*

will not have been going

exercise 15-2

Complete each of the following sentences with a negative form of the future perfect progressive. Use the subject and verb provided.

EXAMPLE: He, answer, not
By the end of today, *he will not have been answering* his phone for a week.

1. They, talk, not

   By Thursday, ___________________________ to each other for a week.

2. The subways, run, not

   By the end of the strike, ___________________________ for six days.

3. They, produce, not

   In January, ___________________________ that type of car for three years.

4. The dance troupe, perform, not

   At the end of the December, ___________________________ for a whole year.

5. She, work, not

   On Monday, ___________________________ for three months.

Forming Contractions

Contractions are often formed by combining pronouns and the auxiliary verb *will* or by combining the auxiliary verb *will* and *not.* You will often hear these contractions in conversation or see them in informal writing, but you will rarely find them used in formal contexts.

Remember that an apostrophe indicates that at least one letter is omitted and that the letter *i* in *will* changes to *o* in the negative contraction *won't*:

I'll have been going	I won't have been going
You'll have been going	You won't have been going
He'll have been going	He won't have been going

She'll have been going	She won't have been going
It'll have been going	It won't have been going
We'll have been going	We won't have been going
They'll have been going	They won't have been going

exercise 15-3

Use the pronoun and verb given to create a sentence that contains a contraction. If not *is also given, use a negative contraction.*

Example: The foundation, donate
By next year, the foundation *will have been donating* money to that organization for five years.

1. They, work, not

   By the end of February, ______________________ the same shift for two months.

2. They, broadcast

   By the end of this year, ______________________ for fifty years.

3. We, rent

   On Friday, ______________________ this apartment for ten years.

4. They, return

   In June, ______________________ to the same place every summer for ten years.

5. He, assist, not

   By the end of this month, ______________________ us for a full year.

Forming *Wh*-Questions

In *wh*-questions, when the question word is the subject of the sentence, the form of the question is similar to the form of a statement.

Statement: When the project is finished, Cheryl will have been working more than anybody else.
Wh-question: When the project is finished, who will have been working more than anybody else?

When the question word is any other part of the sentence, the auxiliary verb *will* comes after the question word and is followed by the subject, the auxiliary verbs *have been*, and the *-ing* form of the main verb.

Statement: By the end of December, they will have been doing business together for twenty-five years.
Wh-question: By the end of the year, how long will they have been doing business together?

exercise 15-4

Complete the following questions based on the statements provided.

EXAMPLE: At the end of the summer, the band will have been playing together for five years.
At the end of the summer, how long *will the band have been playing together*?

1. By the end of June, Anne and Derrick will have been making the schedule for five years.
   By the end of June, who ______________________________
2. By Friday, the dance contestants will have been dancing for seventy-two hours.
   By Friday, how long ______________________________
3. By the end of July, we will have been using this computer for ten years.
   By the end of July, how long ______________________________
4. By Saturday, you will have been working on this paper for a whole month.
   By Saturday, how long ______________________________
5. By the end of the year, Ron will have been keeping a journal for five years.
   By the end of the year, how long ______________________________

Summary of Tense-Aspect Combinations

TENSE/ASPECT	FUTURE
simple	simple future: *will talk*
progressive	future progressive: *will be talking*
perfect	future perfect: *will have talked*
perfect progressive	future perfect progressive: *will have been talking*

PART IV

IMPERATIVE, PASSIVE, AND HYPOTHETICAL CONDITIONAL

As you read the units that follow, you will learn to use verbs in three special constructions: the imperative, the passive, and the hypothetical conditional.

IMPERATIVE: Be careful!

PASSIVE: We were surprised by the news.

HYPOTHETICAL CONDITIONAL: If I were you, I would look for a new job.

This page intentionally left blank

Unit 16

Imperative

When you want to give instructions or directions, you can use the imperative:

INSTRUCTION: **Mix** the ingredients together.

DIRECTION: **Turn** right at the corner.

Imperatives are used for other purposes as well:

REQUEST: **Close** the window, please.

WARNING: **Watch** out!

INVITATION: **Come** over to our house tonight.

WISH: **Have** a nice time.

Using the verb in the imperative construction is easy because there are no endings. Just use the base form (the form found in the dictionary).

Because imperatives are directed toward another person or other persons, the subject *you* is understood; that is, it is not mentioned except for emphasis.

exercise 16-1

Choose a verb from the list to complete the imperative sentences.

answer	**bake**	**be**	**call**	**drive**
finish	**have**	**meet**	**open**	**turn**

1. Please ____________ the telephone.
2. ____________ a nice weekend.
3. ____________ the door, please.
4. Please ____________ quiet.

5. ______________ your work by Friday.

6. ______________ an ambulance!

7. ______________ the cookies for fifteen minutes.

8. ______________ me in the hotel lobby.

9. ______________ left at the corner.

10. ______________ safely.

Forming Negatives

To form a negative imperative, place the auxiliary verb *do* and the word *not* before the base form of the verb.

do not go

Forming Contractions: *Don't*

In informal or conversational situations, use a contraction.

don't go

exercise 16-2

Complete the following sentences using the negative form of the verb provided. Then rewrite the sentence using a contraction.

EXAMPLE: walk
Do not walk on the grass.
Don't walk on the grass.

1. Be

______________________________ late!

____

2. Run

______________________________ on the deck of the pool.

____

3. Forget

______________________________ your homework.

____

4. Lie

______________ to me.

____

5. Shout

______________ at us.

____

6. Drink

________________________________ the water.

____

7. Start

________________________________ the car yet.

____

8. Blame

________________________________ me.

____

9. Boil

________________________________ the water too long.

____

10. Break

________________________________ anything.

____

Forming Contractions: *Let's*

The contraction *let's* (for *let us*) is often used to make suggestions.

> **Let's** go to the movies.
> **Let's not** wait any longer.

The uncontracted form is used only in very formal situations—religious ceremonies, for example.

> **Let us** join together in prayer.

exercise 16-3

Use let's *or* let's not *to complete the following sentences. Use the verb provided.*

1. make
   ______________________________ something easy for dinner.
2. forget, not
   ______________________________ the tickets.
3. stay, not
   ______________________________ at the party very late.
4. call
   ______________________________ Anna and Charlie.
5. celebrate
   ______________________________ tonight.

Unit 17

Passive

The sentences that you studied in Parts I through III were in the active voice. Most of them had subjects that performed actions. In contrast, sentences in the passive voice have subjects that receive some action.

ACTIVE: **George Lucas** produced the film.

PASSIVE: **The film** was produced by George Lucas.

In passive sentences, the doer of the action is sometimes in a prepositional phrase starting with the preposition *by*, as in "by George Lucas." In other instances, there is no *by* phrase because the doer of the action is not important or is not known.

Microcomputers were used in the study.

In passive sentences, the main verb is in the perfect/passive form. You have already studied this form in Parts I, II, and III. To refresh your memory, see pages 29–30, 69, and 101. The auxiliary *be* precedes the perfect/passive form of the main verb.

Oranges **are grown** in Florida.

In the present tense, regular verbs follow this pattern:

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **am verb + ed**	we **are verb + ed**
Second Person	you **are verb + ed**	you **are verb + ed**
Third Person	he, she, it **is verb + ed**	they **are verb + ed**

Contracted forms: *I'm*, *you're*, *he's*, *she's*, *it's*, *we're*, *they're*

The pattern for regular verbs in the past tense is as follows:

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **was verb + ed**	we **were verb +ed**
Second Person	you **were verb + ed**	you **were verb + ed**
Third Person	he, she, it **was verb + ed**	they **were verb + ed**

No contracted forms

Both the modal verb *will* and the auxiliary verb *be* are used to signal the future:

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **will be verb + ed**	we **will be verb + ed**
Second Person	you **will be verb + ed**	you **will be verb + ed**
Third Person	he, she, it **will be verb + ed**	they **will be verb + ed**

Contracted forms: *I'll, you'll, he'll, she'll, it'll, we'll, you'll, they'll*

For the perfect/passive forms of irregular verbs, consult the appendix.

exercise 17-1

Complete each passive sentence with the form of the verb indicated in parentheses. Then rewrite the sentence using a pronoun and, if possible, a contraction.

EXAMPLE: The experiment *will be performed* (perform, future) tomorrow.
It'll be performed tomorrow.

1. James ____________________ (reward, future) for his work.
____

2. The students ____________________ (affect, past) by the changes in the tax law.
____

3. Newspapers ____________________ (deliver, present) daily.
____

4. Potatoes ____________________ (grow, present) in Idaho.
____

5. The winners ____________________ (announce, past) yesterday.
____

6. Your schedules ____________________ (change, future) next week.
____

7. The soccer match ____________________ (reschedule, future).
____

8. All the students in class ____________________ (invite, present) to the party.
____

9. Carmen ____________________ (blame, past) for the error.
____

10. The house ____________________ (destroy, past).
____

Progressive Verbs in the Passive Voice

Progressive verbs in the passive voice have an additional auxiliary verb *be*, which has the progressive *-ing* ending: *being*.

Present progressive verbs in the passive voice follow this pattern:

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **am being verb + ed**	we **are being verb +ed**
Second Person	you **are being verb + ed**	you **are being verb + ed**
Third Person	he, she, it **is being verb + ed**	they **are being verb + ed**

Contracted forms: *I'm*, *you're*, *he's*, *she's*, *it's*, *we're*, *they're*

Past progressive verbs are similar, but the tense of the first auxiliary *be* changes:

	Singular	**Plural**
First Person	I **was being verb + ed**	we **were being verb + ed**
Second Person	you **were being verb + ed**	you **were being verb + ed**
Third Person	he, she, it **was being verb + ed**	they **were being verb + ed**

No contracted forms

The future progressive is rarely used, so it will not be presented here.

exercise 17-2

Complete each passive sentence with the form of the verb indicated in parentheses. Then rewrite the sentence using a pronoun and, if possible, a contraction.

EXAMPLE: A new rocket *is being designed* (design, present progressive).
It's being designed.

1. This event ____________________ (broadcast, present progressive) around the world.

   ____

2. New uses for recycled materials ____________________ (develop, present progressive).

   ____

3. The luggage ____________________ (carry, past progressive) to the plane when one of the suitcases popped open.

   ____

4. The issues ____________________ (discuss, past progressive) when we arrived.

   ____

5. Your job application ____________________ (consider, present progressive).

   ____

6. Our passports ______________________ (check, past progressive) when the alarm rang.

____

7. New council members ______________________ (elect, present progressive) this year.

____

8. That store ______________________ (close, present progressive) because of safety problems.

____

9. The protestors ______________________ (ignore, past progressive) by the politicians.

____

10. Donations ______________________ (collect, present progressive) for the poor.

____

Perfect Verbs in the Passive Voice

Perfect verbs in the passive voice have two auxiliary verbs—*have*, which carries tense, and *be*, which is in the perfect/passive form *been*.

Present perfect verbs in the passive voice follow this pattern:

	Singular	Plural
First Person	I **have been verb + ed**	we **have been verb + ed**
Second Person	you **have been verb + ed**	you **have been verb + ed**
Third Person	he, she, it **has been verb + ed**	they **have been verb + ed**

Contracted forms: *I've, you've, he's, she's, it's, we've, they've*

Past perfect verbs are similar, but the form of the first auxiliary changes to *had* to indicate the past tense:

	Singular	Plural
First Person	I **had been verb + ed**	we **had been verb + ed**
Second Person	you **had been verb + ed**	you **had been verb + ed**
Third Person	he, she, it **had been verb + ed**	they **had been verb + ed**

Contracted forms: *I'd, you'd, he'd, she'd, it'd, we'd, they'd*

Future perfect verbs include the modal verb *will*, as well as the auxiliaries *have* and *be*:

	Singular	Plural
First Person	I **will have been verb + ed**	we **will have been verb + ed**
Second Person	you **will have been verb + ed**	you **will have been verb + ed**
Third Person	he, she, it **will have been verb + ed**	they **will have been verb + ed**

Perfect progressive verbs in the passive voice are extremely rare; they will not be presented here.

exercise 17-3

Complete each passive sentence with the form of the verb indicated in parentheses. Then rewrite the sentence using a pronoun and, if possible, a contraction.

EXAMPLE: The lost information *has been retrieved.* (retrieve, present perfect).
It's been retrieved.

1. My brother ______________ (promote, present perfect).
2. The jobs ______________ (assign, future perfect) by the time we arrive.
3. My parents ______________ (delay, past perfect) at the airport, so they were late.
4. The work ______________ (finish, future perfect) when the director meets with us.
5. Her first book ______________ (praised, past perfect) highly.
6. Amy and I ______________ (notify, future perfect) of any problems before we leave.
7. The arrangements ______________ (make, present perfect).
8. The job ______________ (offer, present perfect) to Laila.
9. The report ______________ (revise, present perfect).
10. The roads ______________ (improve, past perfect) since my previous visit.

Forming Negatives

To form a negative sentence, place the word *not* after the first auxiliary verb.

Examples: is not spoken, is not being written, has not been read, will not have been noticed

exercise 17-4

Make each of the following sentences negative.

EXAMPLE: The cause of the fire was discovered.
The cause of the fire was not discovered.

1. The game was canceled.
2. Rita has been fired.
3. By this time next year, the project will have been completed.
4. Some of the important issues are being discussed.
5. Our bags are being searched.
6. Your x-rays will be returned to you.
7. The recent findings are being presented to the public.
8. The cell phone had been taken from the car.
9. This computer has been used before.
10. The document is being prepared by the secretary.

Forming Questions

Passive questions are formed in two ways. For yes/no questions and for *wh*-questions in which the question word is not the subject, the first (or only) auxiliary verb begins the question and is followed by the subject.

Has the letter been sent?
When will the letter be sent?

When the question word is the subject, it begins the question and is followed by the auxiliary and main verbs.

What was sent?

exercise 17-5

Rewrite the following statements as yes/no questions.

EXAMPLE: The report was revised.
Was the report revised?

1. All questions were answered.

___

2. Everyone has been notified of the cancellation.

___

3. The basketball game will be broadcast.

___

4. The road is being repaired.

___

5. Enough evidence had been collected.

___

6. He was impressed by the report.

___

7. The costs for the project have been calculated.

___

8. Jobs are being cut.

___

9. Solutions to the problem are being explored.

____

10. The clock will be fixed tomorrow.

____

exercise 17-6

Complete the following questions based on the statements provided.

EXAMPLE: His car was stolen.
What *was stolen?*

1. Catherine Haley has been elected.
   Who ____
2. The cave was explored.
   What ____
3. Shoshona was given a scholarship.
   Who ____
4. Pineapple is grown in Hawaii.
   What ____
5. My old teacher is being honored at the special dinner tonight.
   Who ____
6. The invitations are being sent on Friday.
   When ____
7. The books were moved to the new library last year.
   When ____
8. The new lights are being installed in all the classrooms.
   Where ____
9. Thirty-two credits are required for graduation.
   How many credits ____
10. The furniture was damaged in the fire.
    What ____

Unit 18

Hypothetical Conditional

The sentences you will study in this unit have two parts: an *if* clause and a main clause. The *if* clause consists of a condition that is either slightly possible or impossible; the main clause states the consequences of the condition mentioned in the *if* clause.

SLIGHTLY POSSIBLE: If he felt better, he would come with us.

IMPOSSIBLE: If my aunt were still alive, she would be a hundred years old today.

To form a hypothetical conditional that refers to present or future time, use the simple past tense in the *if* clause; use a modal verb (either *would*, *might*, or *could*) and the base form of the main verb in the main clause.

If he **studied** more, he **would earn** better grades.

In formal English, *were* is used in the *if* clause, even following the first- and third-person singular pronouns.

If I **were** you, I would look for a job.

If she **were** here, we could leave.

To form a hypothetical conditional that refers to past time, use the past perfect in the *if* clause; use *would have*, *might have*, or *could have* and the perfect/passive form of the main verb in the main clause.

If they **had asked** earlier, I **could have** helped them.

exercise 18-1

Complete each conditional sentence with the correct form of the verb in parentheses. Each sentence refers to either present or future time. In the main clause, use would *before the base form of the verb.*

1. If I ____________ (be) the director, I ____________ (change) the policy.

2. If you ____________ (check) your e-mail more often, you ____________ (know) about the assignments.
3. If we ____________ (commute) together, the drive ____________ (cost) less.
4. If he ____________ (have) more time, he ____________ (go) to the game with us.
5. If Emma ____________ (visit) us on Thursday, she ____________ (meet) my sisters.
6. If you ____________ (mail) the package today, they ____________ (receive) it by Friday.
7. If they ____________ (lower) their prices, more people ____________ (shop) there.
8. If we ____________ (earn) more money, we ____________ (buy) a new car.
9. If he ____________ (exercise) more frequently, he ____________ (be) healthier.
10. If my grandfather ____________ (be) here, he ____________ (tell) a joke.

exercise 18-2

Complete each conditional sentence with the correct form of the verb in parentheses. Each sentence refers to past time. In the main clause, use would have *before the perfect/passive form of the verb.*

1. If it ____________ (rain), they ____________ (cancel) the game.
2. If you ____________ (be) on the roller coaster, you ____________ (be) sick.
3. If I ____________ (know) about the detour, I ____________ (take) another route.
4. If she ____________ (follow) the directions, she ____________ (be) on time.
5. If I ____________ (study) harder, I ____________ (pass) the exam.
6. If he ____________ (be) more productive, he ____________ (receive) a promotion.
7. If they ____________ (raise) tuition, the students ____________ (protest).
8. If they ____________ (repair) the car yesterday, we ____________ (leave) today.
9. If you ____________ (revise) your paper, your main points ____________ (be) clearer.
10. If I ____________ (be) the manager, I ____________ (hire) Yoshi.

PART V

PHRASAL VERBS AND MODAL AUXILIARY VERBS

As you study the units that follow, you will learn about two special types of verbs: phrasal verbs and modal auxiliary verbs. Phrasal verbs are verb-particle combinations, such as *look up* in *I'll look up his phone number*. Modal auxiliary verbs are auxiliaries that signal such meanings as obligation and possibility. Although you have been introduced to modal auxiliary verbs in previous units (*will* and *would*, for example), in Part V you will learn more about the subtle shades of meaning that tense and aspect add to these verbs.

This page intentionally left blank

Unit 19

Phrasal Verbs

Phrasal verbs are combinations of verbs and particles. Common particles include *in, on, off, up, down,* and *out.* Verb + particle combinations carry their own meanings. In other words, the verb and the particle work together to create meaning.

The plane **took off** ten minutes ago. [“left the ground”]

We **turned in** our papers. [“submitted”]

You can find the definitions of phrasal verbs in most dictionaries made for learners of English.

Phrasal verbs can appear in all the tense-aspect combinations you have studied so far. The following chart includes the tense-aspect combinations for *turn up*:

	Present	**Past**	**Future**
Simple	turn/turns up	turned up	will turn up
Progressive	am/is/are turning up	was/were turning up	will be turning up
Perfect	has/have turned up	had turned up	will have turned up
Perfect Progressive	has/have been turning up	had been turning up	will have been turning up

exercise 19-1

Complete the following chart using the correct forms of the phrasal verb go out. *Remember that* go *is an irregular verb.*

	Present	**Past**	**Future**
Simple	____________	____________	____________
Progressive	____________	____________	____________
Perfect	____________	____________	____________
Perfect Progressive	____________	____________	____________

exercise 19-2

Complete each sentence with the form of the phrasal verb indicated in parentheses.

EXAMPLE: They *took apart* (take apart, simple past) the engine.

1. The towing company ____________________ (take away, present perfect) the old car.
2. He ____________________ (put on, past progressive) his hat when the doorbell rang.
3. We ____________________ (find out, simple future) the results today.
4. I ____________________ (look up, present progressive) their phone number.
5. I ____________________ (sign up, future progressive) for four courses this term.
6. The planning committee ____________________ (put off, past perfect) the event once again.
7. Ray ____________________ (read through, future perfect) the report by Friday.
8. The publishing company ____________________ (put out, present perfect progressive) a new book every month.
9. By the end of the day, the actors ____________________ (go over, future perfect progressive) their lines for ten hours.
10. We ____________________ (take out, simple present) the trash every Thursday night.
11. The tour guide ____________________ (point out, simple past) some important sites.
12. For years, Lixing ____________________ (pay back, past perfect progressive) his loan month by month.

Phrasal Verbs in the Passive Voice

Phrasal verbs may also be used in the passive voice:

	Present	Past	Future
Simple	am/is/are picked up	was/were picked up	will be picked up
Progressive	am/is/are being picked up	was/were being picked up	NOT COMMON
Perfect	has/have been picked up	had been picked up	will have been picked up

exercise 19-3

Complete the following chart using the correct passive forms of the phrasal verb set up. *Remember that* set *is an irregular verb.*

	Present	Past	Future
Simple	____________	____________	____________
Progressive	____________	____________	NOT COMMON
Perfect	____________	____________	____________

exercise 19-4

Complete each sentence with the passive form of the phrasal verb indicated in parentheses.

EXAMPLE: The interviews *were written up* (write up, simple past) in time for the conference.

1. All the food at the party ____________________ (eat up, past perfect).
2. Our car ____________________ (block in, simple past) by another car.
3. The fire ____________________ (put out, present perfect).
4. His photograph ____________________ (blow up, simple future) and published in the local newspaper.
5. The project ____________________ (slow down, present progressive) by endless regulations.
6. Change ____________________ (bring about, simple present) only through much effort.
7. Their house ____________________ (break into, past progressive), so we called the police.
8. By next year, three new products ____________________ (bring out, future perfect).

Separable Phrasal Verbs

Phrasal verbs that take direct objects are often separable: the direct objects can be placed between the verb and the particle.

Angela **threw away** *the letter*.
Angela **threw** *the letter* **away**.

When the direct object is a pronoun, it must be placed between the verb and the particle.

Angela **threw** *it* **away**.

exercise 19-5

Rewrite the following sentences so that the direct object is between the verb and the particle. Then rewrite the sentence replacing the direct object with a pronoun.

EXAMPLE: The instructor quickly passed out the exams.
The instructor quickly passed the exams out.
The instructor quickly passed them out.

1. She brought back the books yesterday.
2. They called off the game.
3. I checked out the book on Monday.
4. I crossed out some names.
5. Someone turned off the washing machine.
6. I called up my parents last night.

7. She closed up her suitcase and put it on the scale.

8. I cleaned out my desk this morning.

9. She wrote down the number.

10. They gave away their old furniture.

11. Victor helped out his sister.

12. She took down a map and gave it to us.

Forming Negatives

You studied the ways to make verbs negative in Parts I, II, and III. Phrasal verbs follow these same patterns.

Active Voice

Tense/Aspect	present	past	future
simple	does/do not turn out	did not turn out	will not turn out
progressive	am/is/are not turning out	was/were not turning out	will not be turning out
perfect	has/have not turned out	had not turned out	will not have turned out
perfect progressive	has/have not been turning out	had not been turning out	will not have been turning out

Passive Voice

TENSE/ASPECT	PRESENT	PAST	FUTURE
simple	am/is/are not picked up	was/were not picked up	will not be picked up
progressive	am/is/are not being picked up	was/were not being picked up	NOT COMMON
perfect	has/have not been picked up	had not been picked up	will not have been picked up

exercise 19-6

Make each of the following sentences negative.

EXAMPLE: The wind blew it down.
The wind did not blow it down.

1. Jacob is writing down the address.

2. She has booted up the computer.

3. The hot weather was wearing us down.

4. The books were brought back yesterday.

5. The painting on the sidewalk has been washed off.

6. I am bringing my friend over tonight.

7. They vote down most proposals.

8. He made up the story.

9. I will print out my paper on that printer.

10. The report was turned in on time.

____

11. She set it down carefully.

____

12. They had been locked out of their car before.

____

This page intentionally left blank

Unit 20

Modal Auxiliary Verbs

Modal auxiliary verbs appear before main verbs. They are used for a number of purposes. Here are some of the most common:

INDICATE ABILITY: She **can** speak English.

GIVE ADVICE: You **should** see a doctor.

EXPRESS CERTAINTY: We **will** finish by 8:00.

INDICATE POSSIBILITY: It **may** rain tonight.

INDICATE OBLIGATION: You **must** attend the last class.

GIVE PERMISSION: You **may** use your dictionaries during the exam.

INDICATE PAST HABIT: When I was little, we **would** go swimming every day.

Unlike other verbs, modal verbs have only one form. In other words, no *-s* is added to modal verbs to indicate third-person singular.

He/she/it **can/should/will/may/must** move.

exercise 20-1

Complete each sentence with the modal auxiliary verb that provides the meaning indicated in parentheses.

1. You ____________ (certainty) receive a flight confirmation in the mail.
2. We ____________ (advice) leave in ten minutes.
3. There ____________ (possibility) be a storm tonight.
4. A notary public ____________ (obligation) sign the form.
5. Alicia ____________ (ability) draw well.

6. As a child, he ____________ (past habit) play soccer every day.

7. ____________ (permission) I borrow your pencil?

8. Pets ____________ (obligation) be on leashes.

9. I ____________ (possibility) leave work early tonight.

10. The package ____________ (certainty) be delivered by noon.

11. They ____________ (advice) be more careful.

12. ____________ (ability) you come with us on Saturday?

13. You ____________ (permission) enter the restricted area.

14. When we lived in San Diego, we ____________ (past habit) often go to the beach.

Semi-Modal Auxiliary Verbs

English also has semi-modal auxiliary verbs. They are used for many of the same purposes as modal auxiliary verbs.

INDICATE ABILITY: He **is able to** speak three different languages.

GIVE ADVICE: You **ought to** finish the report.

EXPRESS CERTAINTY: We **are going to** complete the project tonight.

INDICATE OBLIGATION: You **have to** attend the meeting.

INDICATE PAST HABIT: We **used to** play basketball together.

Unlike one-word modal verbs, most semi-modals are marked for number and tense.

I **am** able to go.	I **was** able to go.
You **have** to give a speech.	You **had** to give a speech.
We **are** going to leave.	We **were** going to leave.
They **have** to work late.	They **had** to work late.

Used to is an exception. It has only one form and always refers to the past. *Ought to* is another exception. It does not change form; however, the main verb that follows it can.

It **ought to** be easy.	It **ought to** have been easy.

exercise 20-2

Complete each sentence with the semi-modal verb that provides the meaning indicated in parentheses. Use present tense forms.

1. You ____________ (certainty) receive an award at the ceremony.

2. We ____________ (advice) exercise daily.

3. Jorge and I ____________ (past habit) play in a band.

4. We ____________ (obligation) pay our tuition by Friday.

5. Devin ____________ (ability) run the mile in five minutes.

6. I ____________ (past habit) live in New York City.

7. He ____________ (advice) take a multivitamin every morning.

8. You ____________ (obligation) have a password.

9. They ____________ (ability) help us move into our new apartment.

10. The concert ____________ (certainty) start at 8:00.

exercise 20-3

Complete each sentence with the semi-modal verb that provides the meaning indicated in parentheses. Use the past tense if possible.

1. It ____________ (certainty) rain, so we left early.

2. She ____________ (advice) have rested.

3. We ____________ (obligation) pay a service charge.

4. The teacher ____________ (ability) remember everyone's name.

5. I ____________ (certainty) go with them, but then I got sick.

6. My father ____________ (advice) have had a checkup yesterday.

7. Amber ____________ (obligation) retype her paper, because she lost her disk.

8. They ____________ (ability) hike long distances when they were young.

Combining Semi-Modals

Sometimes semi-modals can be used with other semi-modals or after some regular modals.

They **are going to have to** finish their papers by Friday. [semi-modal + semi-modal]
I **will have to** call you back later. [modal + semi-modal]

exercise 20-4

Underline the modals and circle the semi-modals in the following sentences.

1. I might be able to help you on Thursday.
2. They are going to be able to take a vacation next month.
3. She might have to quit her job.
4. You are going to have to work hard.
5. We will have to take notes at the lecture.

Forming Negatives

To make a modal negative, place *not* after it.

I should **not** eat so much at lunch.

Write the combination of *can* and *not* as one word: *cannot*. Write the other combinations as two words.

To make a semi-modal containing the verb *be* negative, place *not* directly after the *be* verb.

Our teacher is **not** going to cancel the exam.

To make a semi-modal containing the verb *have* negative, place the auxiliary verb *do* and *not* before it.

Jay **does not** have to go to class today.

exercise 20-5

Complete each of the following sentences using a negative form of the modal or semi-modal provided.

Example: We, be going to
We are not going to go to the movies tonight.

1. You, should

______________________ smoke in this restaurant.

2. We, can

______________________ escape the heat today.

3. Martin, be able to

    ____________________ find his books.

4. The supervisor, be going to

    ____________________ be happy.

5. They, may

    ____________________ stay very long.

6. You, must

    ____________________ tell anyone.

7. We, would

    When we were little, ____________________ go inside until 10:00.

8. They, will

    For some reason, ____________________ answer their phone.

9. I, have to

    Tomorrow, ____________________ get up early.

10. You, should

    ____________________ worry so much.

Forming Contractions

Contractions are commonly used in conversation and informal writing.

are + not = aren't
do + not = don't
cannot = can't
will + not = won't

is + not = isn't
does + not = doesn't
should + not = shouldn't
must + not = mustn't

May not is never contracted.

exercise 20-6

Rewrite the sentences in exercise 20-5 using contractions. If may not *appears, leave the line blank.*

1. ______________________________
2. ______________________________
3. ______________________________
4. ______________________________
5. ______________________________
6. ______________________________
7. ______________________________
8. ______________________________
9. ______________________________
10. ______________________________

Modal Perfect Verbs

Modal perfect verbs follow these patterns:

ACTIVE VOICE: modal + *have* + perfect/passive form of the verb

PASSIVE VOICE: modal + *have been* + perfect/passive form of the verb

These are some of the common uses:

EXPRESSION OF REGRET: **I should have** tried harder.

CRITICISM OF A PAST ACTION OR LACK OF ACTION: He **should have** told me. She **could have** at least called. They **ought to have** told me.

EXPRESSION OF AN EXPECTATION ABOUT AN EVENT THAT MAY NOT HAVE HAPPENED: They **should have** arrived by now.

GUESS ABOUT A PAST EVENT: The window **may have been** shattered by the wind. I **might have** met him before.

STRONG CONJECTURE ABOUT A PAST EVENT: Someone **must have** stolen my purse.

exercise 20-7

Complete each sentence with the modal perfect verb that provides the meaning indicated in parentheses.

1. I ____________ (regret, active voice) sent her a birthday card.
2. We ____________ (expectation, active voice) heard from them by now.
3. They ____________ (criticism, active voice) invited everyone in class, not just a few people.
4. The store ____________ (guess, passive voice) closed early because of an emergency.
5. The Angels ____________ (strong conjecture, active voice) won.
6. By this time, everyone ____________ (expectation, active voice) been ready.
7. You ____________ (guess, active voice) lost your wallet in the café.
8. I ____________ (regret, active voice) brought an umbrella.
9. There ____________ (strong conjecture, active voice) been an accident in this intersection.
10. The package ____________ (criticism, passive voice) delivered earlier.

This page intentionally left blank

PART VI

GERUND AND INFINITIVE COMPLEMENTS

Gerunds and infinitives are verb forms, but they are not used as the main verbs in sentences. Gerunds are formed by adding *-ing* to the base form of a verb: *running*, *talking*, *doing*. (The *-ing* form is often called the *present participle.*) Infinitives consist of two parts: the infinitive marker *to* and the base form of a verb: *to run*, *to talk*, *to do.* Gerunds and infinitives can follow main verbs.

She enjoys **playing** the guitar.

He promised **to sing** for us.

Some verbs, such as *enjoy*, are followed by gerunds. Others, such as *promise*, are followed by infinitives. But some verbs can be followed by either gerunds or infinitives.

I like **reading** mysteries.

I like **to read** mysteries.

Generally, gerunds signal that an action has happened or is especially vivid. Infinitives indicate future or hypothetical events.

This page intentionally left blank

Unit 21

Gerunds

Gerunds have four forms:

Simple: She avoids **driving** during rush hour.

Perfect: He admits **having taken** the documents.

Passive: They dislike always **being put** in the last row.

Passive perfect: I appreciate **having been given** this opportunity.

The following verbs can be followed by gerunds but cannot be followed by infinitives:

admit
appreciate
avoid
consider
delay
deny
dislike
enjoy
finish
keep
mind
miss
quit
recommend
risk
suggest

exercise 21-1

Complete each sentence with the form of the gerund indicated in parentheses.

Example: Albert considered *living* (live, simple) abroad for a year.

1. My brother and his wife delayed ____________ (have, simple) children until they were settled.
2. I miss ____________ (surprise, passive) on my birthday by my grandfather.
3. The politician denied ____________ (mention, perfect) a possible tax increase.

4. I keep ____________ (try, simple) his number, but he doesn't answer.

5. They didn't mind ____________ (invite, passive perfect) at the last minute.

6. The doctor recommended ____________ (eat, simple) more fruits and vegetables.

7. I appreciate ____________ (choose, passive perfect) as your representative.

8. The committee finished ____________ (review, simple) the applications yesterday.

9. We admitted ____________ (be, perfect) the source of the trouble.

10. He dislikes ____________ (treat, passive) as a child.

11. The tour guide suggested ____________ (stop, simple) for lunch at this restaurant.

12. Fortunately, we avoided ____________ (give, passive) a ticket.

13. For some reason, she quit ____________ (play, simple) the piano a year ago.

14. When he made the repair, he risked ____________ (damage, simple) the whole system.

15. We enjoyed ____________ (introduce, passive) to your family.

exercise 21-2

Use gerunds to answer the following questions.

Example: What sport do you like playing?
I like playing soccer.

1. What do you enjoying doing on holidays?

____

2. What have you avoided doing in the past year?

____

3. What do you dislike doing on the weekend?

____

4. What story did you like being told when you were a child?

____

5. Whom do you miss seeing whom you cannot see now?

____

Unit 22

Infinitives

Infinitives have a number of forms. These are the most common:

SIMPLE: Eva wants **to become** a lawyer.

PROGRESSIVE: They seem **to be telling** the truth.

PERFECT: He hopes **to have finished** his work by next Friday.

PASSIVE: Anna deserves **to be promoted**.

PASSIVE PERFECT: We pretended **to have been surprised**.

The following verbs can be followed by infinitives but cannot be followed by gerunds:

agree
expect
manage
pretend
choose
fail
need
promise
decide
hope
offer
seem
deserve
intend
plan
want

exercise 22-1

Complete each sentence with the form of the infinitive indicated in parentheses.

EXAMPLE: Janine managed *to find* (find, simple) an apartment on the first day of her search.

1. I plan ____________ (work, progressive) full-time next year.
2. He agreed ____________ (pay, simple) me for the photographs.
3. She hopes ____________ (earn, perfect) a raise by the end of this year.
4. The child pretended ____________ (faint, perfect).

5. Shoba deserves ____________ (hire, passive) for the new position.
6. Everyone offered ____________ (help, simple) us.
7. The announcement seems ____________ (leak, passive perfect) to the press.
8. In order to get that job, he needs ____________ (network, progressive).
9. The director expected ____________ (receive, perfect) the report by now.
10. The reporter had wanted ____________ (give, passive) a different assignment.
11. I promise ____________ (meet, simple) you there at 5:00.
12. My parents decided ____________ (stay, simple) an extra week.
13. He failed ____________ (turn in, simple) the work on time.
14. Our neighbors intend ____________ (move, simple) next year.
15. The company chose ____________ (close, simple) one of the plants.

exercise 22-2

Use infinitives to answer the following questions.

EXAMPLE: What did you expect to learn in this book?
I expected to learn about English verbs.

1. Where do you plan to go this weekend?

____

2. Where do you intend to be next year at this time?

____

3. What do you need to buy this week?

____

4. What do you want to have for dinner?

____

5. What do you expect to study next term?

____

Verbs Followed by a Noun Phrase and an Infinitive

Some verbs are followed by both a noun phrase (a pronoun or a noun and any of its modifiers) and an infinitive:

advise allow cause encourage
invite order permit persuade
require teach tell urge

exercise 22-3

Complete each of the following sentences using the noun phrase provided and the simple form of the infinitive.

EXAMPLE: us, go
The teacher encouraged *us to go* to the lecture.

1. him, exercise
   Dr. Olson advised ____________________ more frequently.
2. us, attend
   Carl invited ____________________ his piano recital.
3. my sister, ride
   My brother taught ____________________ a bike.
4. me, turn
   He told ____________________ left at the corner.
5. people, touch
   The museum guide permitted ____________________ some of the exhibits.
6. Brent and me, be
   The accident caused ____________________ more careful the next time.
7. local artists, hang
   Laura Adams allowed ____________________ their paintings in her restaurant.
8. the protesters, leave
   The police ordered ____________________.
9. me, rethink
   My parents persuaded ____________________ my plan.

10. employers, provide

The new law required ______________________ safety training.

11. Robyn, major

Mr. Pruett encouraged ______________________ in biology.

12. everyone, conserve

The president urged ______________________ energy.

Unit 23

Gerunds or Infinitives

Some verbs can be followed by either gerunds or infinitives. Sometimes there is no significant difference in meaning between a sentence with a gerund and a sentence with an infinitive.

He began **humming**.

He began **to hum**.

The most common verbs falling into this category are the following three verbs dealing with time:

begin continue start

The verb *stop*, however, is used to express two different meanings.

We stopped singing. [The singing has ended.]

We stopped to sing. [The singing has not started yet.]

After verbs dealing with emotion, the gerund is generally used to express the vividness of an action, an event, or a state or to indicate its actual occurrence. The infinitive usually indicates a future, potential, or hypothetical action, event, or state.

I usually prefer **cooking** my own food, but tonight I would prefer **to go** out.

The following verbs fall into this category:

hate like love prefer

Some verbs dealing with memory signal different time sequences, depending on whether a gerund or an infinitive is used.

I remember **locking** the door. [The door was locked; then the action of locking was remembered.]

I remembered **to lock** the door. [The remembering of a responsibility took place before the action of locking was performed.]

The following verbs fall into this category:

remember forget regret

exercise 23-1

Underline the gerund or infinitive. Circle the reason that the gerund or the infinitive is used. If either a gerund or infinitive could be used, circle "No significant change in meaning."

1. It started to rain.

   Memory of action **Vivid depiction** **No significant change in meaning**

2. I remembered to bring a lunch.

   Memory to perform action **Vivid depiction** **No significant change in meaning**

3. He regretted quitting that job.

   Memory of action **Memory to perform action** **Vivid depiction**

4. They continued to talk during the entire movie.

   Actual occurrence **Vivid depiction** **No significant change in meaning**

5. My friends and I love going to the beach.

   Memory of action **Vivid depiction** **No significant change in meaning**

6. I would hate to clean up that mess.

   Actual occurrence **Hypothetical occurrence** **Vivid depiction**

7. Laxmi remembers returning the books to the library.

   Memory of action **Memory to perform action** **Vivid depiction**

8. My neighbors like throwing huge parties.

   Actual occurrence **Vivid depiction** **Potential occurrence**

9. The car began to make strange noises.

   Actual occurrence **Vivid depiction** **No significant change in meaning**

10. I prefer to take classes at night.

    Vivid depiction **Potential occurrence** **No significant change in meaning**

Review Exercises

Use the following twenty-five review exercises to check your understanding of each of the parts of this workbook. If you are not satisfied with your results, review the appropriate chapter and do the exercise again.

Unit 1: Simple Present

exercise R-1

Complete each question or sentence based on the statement provided.

EXAMPLE: Classes begin in September.
When *do classes begin?*

He works on Sundays.

1. He doesn't ______________________________
2. Does ______________________________
3. When ______________________________
4. Who ______________________________

This laptop needs a new battery.

5. This laptop doesn't ______________________________
6. Does ______________________________

You like action films.

7. Do ______________________________
8. You don't ______________________________
9. What kind of films do ______________________________

My sister lives in Chicago.

10. Does ____

11. My sister doesn't ____________________________________

12. Where ____

The teachers meet on Friday afternoons.

13. Do ____

14. The teachers don't ____________________________________

15. When ____

Unit 2: *Be* Verb Forms, Simple Present

exercise R-2

Complete each sentence with the simple present form of the verb be. *Then rewrite the sentence using a contraction.*

EXAMPLE: I *am* from Mexico.
I'm from Mexico.

1. It __________ simple.
____

2. We __________ in a traffic jam.
____

3. There __________ a parking lot next to the restaurant.
____

4. I __________ tired today.
____

5. They __________ at home.
____

6. She __________ my sister.
____

7. You ____________ right.

____

8. It ____________ sunny this morning.

____

9. There ____________ a free concert today.

____

10. I ____________ in a hurry.

____

11. He ____________ a doctor.

____

12. You ____________ next.

____

13. They ____________ teammates.

____

14. We ____________ at home.

____

15. She ____________ busy right now.

____

Unit 3: Present Progressive (*Be* Verb + *-ing*)

exercise R-3

Complete each sentence with the present progressive form of the verb provided. If not *is also provided, place it appropriately in the sentence. Then rewrite the sentence using a contraction.*

EXAMPLE: Jason *is not going* (not go) to the party tonight.
Jason isn't going to the party tonight.

1. I ____________ (study) for a test right now.

____

2. It ____________ (not rain) anymore.

____

3. __________ you __________ (not come) to class today?

4. We __________ (move) to another apartment.

5. She __________ (watch) television tonight.

6. They __________ (not tell) anyone about the accident.

7. I __________ (clean) the kitchen tomorrow.

8. He __________ (work) overtime today.

9. You __________ (call) me tonight, right?

10. My parents __________ (not visit) this weekend.

11. Someone __________ (knock) on the door.

12. This computer __________ (not work).

13. You __________ (do) well in this course.

14. We __________ (not see) eye to eye.

15. Everything __________ (go) on sale because the store __________ (close) permanently.

Unit 4: Present Perfect

exercise R-4

Complete each sentence with the perfect/passive form of the verb provided. If not *is also provided, place it appropriately in the sentence. Then rewrite the sentence using a contraction.*

EXAMPLE: The workers *have not finished* (not finish) yet.
The workers haven't finished yet.

1. It ________________ (be) a long day.
____

2. He ________________ (live) in many countries.
____

3. Who ________________ (not complete) the assignment?
____

4. We ________________ (not have) much rain this year.
____

5. You ________________ (write) a great song.
____

6. They ________________ (not return) yet.
____

7. I ________________ (not sleep) well lately.
____

8. Lee ________________ (not give) his report.
____

9. There ________________ (not be) any accidents this year.
____

10. She ________________ (move) to another apartment.
____

11. We ________ (not know) each other very long.
____

12. It ______ (rain) all day.

____

13. They ______ (find) the perfect apartment.

____

14. Everyone ______ (hear) the news.

____

15. Who ______ (not make) a mistake?

____

Unit 5: Present Perfect Progressive

exercise R-5

Complete each question or sentence based on the statement provided.

EXAMPLE: It has been raining a long time.
Has *it been raining a long time?*

They have been discussing the problem.

1. Have ______________________________
2. They haven't ______________________________

She has been living in the same house for thirty years.

3. Has ______________________________
4. How long ______________________________

He has been waiting a long time.

5. He hasn't ______________________________
6. How long ______________________________

You have been listening closely.

7. You haven't ______________________________
8. Have ______________________________

They have been getting ready for the upcoming game.

9. They haven't ________________________________

10. Have ________________________________

They have been monitoring the situation closely.

11. Have ________________________________

12. They haven't ________________________________

We have been working together for twenty years.

13. Have ________________________________

14. How long ________________________________

15. We haven't ________________________________

Unit 6: Simple Past

exercise R-6

Complete each sentence with the simple past form of the verb in parentheses. Then rewrite the sentence in the negative, using the contraction didn't.

EXAMPLE: I *heard* (hear) the news.
I didn't hear the news.

1. The bus ____________ (leave) on time.
____

2. I ____________ (like) the movie.
____

3. Jason ____________ (remember) the password.
____

4. Sara ____________ (know) the answer.
____

5. You ____________ (tell) the truth.
____

6. I ____________ (call) my parents last night.

____

7. We ____________ (order) enough pizza for everyone.

____

8. They ____________ (sell) their house.

____

9. She ____________ (forget) my name.

____

10. We ____________ (have) enough money.

____

11. The president ____________ (attend) the conference.

____

12. It ____________ (snow) last night.

____

13. They ____________ (finish) by the deadline.

____

14. He ____________ (play) video games all day.

____

15. The whole family ____________ (go) to Disneyland.

____

Unit 7: *Be* Verb Forms, Simple Past

exercise R-7

Choose the correct verb. Then rewrite the sentence as a yes/no question.

EXAMPLE: Everyone **was/were** happy.
Was everyone happy?

1. The room **was/were** too dark.

____

2. There **was/were** an accident in front of our apartment building.

3. The students in the class **was/were** from many different countries.

4. The news **was/were** good.

5. Her parents **was/were** late.

6. The people next to you **was/were** from Australia.

7. There **was/were** empty seats on the plane.

8. Your teacher **was/were** nice.

9. The instructions **was/were** clear.

10. Everyone **was/were** healthy.

11. The flight **was/were** on time.

12. No one **was/were** ready.

13. The sidewalks **was/were** slippery.

14. The concert tickets **was/were** expensive.

15. The store **was/were** open late during the holiday season.

Unit 8: Past Progressive (*Be* Verb + *-ing*)

exercise R-8

Complete each sentence with the past progressive form of the verb in parentheses.

EXAMPLE: No one *was complaining* (complain).

1. In 2018, he ______________________ (take) classes in computer science.
2. I ______________________ (think) about you all day.
3. Nothing ______________________ (happen).
4. By 6:00 P.M., the guests ______________________ (arrive).
5. I read an interesting article while I ______________________ (wait) for you.
6. The sun ______________________ (shine) just a few minutes ago.
7. When they arrived at the gate, the other passengers ______________________ (board).
8. Three years ago, we ______________________ (live) in Hawaii.
9. The buses ______________________ (run) late yesterday.
10. You ______________________ (sleep) when I got home.
11. Everyone ______________________ (talk) about the game.
12. When we met, we ______________________ (study) for a final exam.
13. Who ______________________ (wave) at you?
14. Last year he ______________________ (work) as a ski instructor.
15. I did the dishes while I ______________________ (listen) to a podcast.

Unit 9: Past Perfect

exercise R-9

Complete each hypothetical statement with the past perfect form of the verb in parentheses. If not *is also provided, make a contraction with* not.

EXAMPLE: I wish I *hadn't forgotten* (forget, not) my glasses.

1. If Joe ____________________ (leave) home earlier, he wouldn't have missed the bus.
2. I would feel better if I ____________________ (sleep) longer last night.
3. She would have completed the project if the printer ____________________ (break, not).
4. If the plane ____________________ (be) on time, we wouldn't be in this traffic jam right now.
5. I wish it ____________________ (rain, not) all day.
6. If Marie ____________________ (feel) better, she would have come along.
7. We wouldn't have gotten lost if there ____________________ (be) more signs.
8. I wish you ____________________ (tell) me about your troubles sooner.
9. If they ____________________ (study) more, they would have earned higher test scores.
10. Lisa wouldn't have gotten the job if you ____________________ (help, not) her.
11. If you ____________________ (miss, not) the call, you might have received a job offer.
12. He wishes he ____________________ (remember) her name.
13. She would have finished her paper if there ____________________ (be, not) a power outage.
14. If we ____________________ (eat) breakfast, we wouldn't be hungry now.
15. I wish you ____________________ (say, not) that.

Unit 10: Past Perfect Progressive

exercise R-10

Use the pronoun and the past perfect progressive form of the verb given to create a sentence that contains a contraction. If not *is also given, use a negative contraction.*

EXAMPLE: (We, plan)
We'd been planning our trip for weeks.

1. (I, listen, not) ____________________ closely enough.
2. (They, work) ____________________ overtime, so they needed a rest day.
3. (You, answer, not) ____________________ your e-mail messages, so your mother was worried.
4. (It, blow, not) If ____________________ so hard, the fire wouldn't have spread.
5. (I, feel, not) ____________________ well, so I made a doctor's appointment.
6. (She, study) ____________________ hard, so she was prepared for the test.
7. (I, tell) ____________________ the truth, but no one believed my story.
8. (He, follow, not)
   For some reason, he ____________________ the directions.
9. (We, expect, not) ____________________ a visitor.
10. (They, hope) ____________________ for better results.
11. (We, snack) ____________________ all day, so we weren't hungry for dinner.
12. (It, rain) ____________________ for hours, so they canceled the soccer match.
13. (She, sneeze) ____________________ all morning, but she didn't want to leave work early.
14. (They, walk) ____________________ an hour before they noticed the dark clouds.
15. (I, wait, not) ____________________ long at all.

Unit 11: Simple Future

exercise R-11

Complete each sentence with the simple future form of the verb in parentheses. If not *is also provided, place it appropriately in the sentence. Then rewrite the sentence using a contraction.*

EXAMPLE: I *will call* (call) you later today.
I'll call you later today.

1. It ____________________ (be, not) too late when we arrive.
____

2. She ____________________ (take) the exam on Tuesday.
____

3. They ____________________ (discuss, not) politics at the dinner table.
____

4. Unless the forecast changes, it ____________________ (be) sunny next week.
____

5. We ____________________ (finish, not) the project until Friday.
____

6. I ____________________ (meet) you in an hour.
____

7. He ____________________ (change, not) his ways.
____

8. You ____________________ (tell, not) anyone my secret, will you?
____

9. They ____________________ (take) the bus to school next year.
____

10. We ____________________ (work) until 5:00 p.m.
____

11. She ____________________ (turn) twenty in March.
____

12. They ______________ (give) new students a tour on Friday.

____

13. There ______________ (be, not) any more flights today.

____

14. He ______________ (answer, not) his phone after 9:00 p.m.

____

15. I ______________ (text) you the address.

____

Unit 12: *Be Going To*

exercise R-12

Complete the following questions based on the statements provided.

EXAMPLE: We are going to meet tomorrow.
When *are we going to meet?*

1. Marianne is going to give the presentation.

Who ____

2. You are going to leave early so that you can avoid holiday traffic.

Why ____

3. Taxes are going to increase next year.

Are ____

4. He is going to fax the forms this afternoon.

When ____

5. Lesley is going to guide the tour.

Who ____

6. They are going to invite the president and the first lady.

Whom ____________________

7. Jan is going to work in Morocco.

Is ____________________

8. The trip is going to cost around $1,500.

How much ____________________

9. She is going to visit for three weeks.

How long ____________________

10. They are going to stay in Mexico City.

Where ____________________

11. They are going to arrive at 3:00.

When ____________________

12. My friends are going to fly to London for a book festival.

Why ____________________

13. The procedure is going to take forty-five minutes.

How long ____________________

14. I am going to go home this weekend.

Are ____________________

15. Rob is going to retire next year.

Who ____________________

Unit 13: Future Progressive (*Will Be* Verb + *-ing*)

exercise R-13

Use the pronoun and the future progressive form of the verb given to create a sentence that contains a contraction. If not *is also given, use a negative contraction.*

EXAMPLE: (We, go)
We'll be going home next month.

1. (We, think) ______________________ of you while you're away.
2. (They, study) ______________________ a new language.
3. (My brother, stay, not) ______________________ home very long.
4. (I, work, not) ______________________ while I'm on vacation.
5. (The company, support, not) ______________________ that project much longer.
6. (You, play, not) ______________________ in the title match if you don't train more often.
7. (She, travel) ______________________ throughout Asia next year.
8. (My friend, visit, not) ______________________ this month.
9. (We, share) ______________________ a room.
10. (Artur, rely, not) ______________________ on anyone for help.
11. (They, visit) ______________________ their relatives this summer.
12. (Amal, come, not) ______________________ with us.
13. (He, graduate) ______________________ in May.
14. (I, look, not) ______________________ over your shoulder anymore.
15. (It, get) ______________________ dark sooner.

Unit 14: Future Perfect

exercise R-14

Complete each sentence with the future perfect form of the verb in parentheses.

EXAMPLE: By the end of the week, I *will have worked* (work) ten extra hours.

1. In two months, most of the students ________________ (complete) all graduation requirements.
2. By the end of the week, you ________________ (receive) your results.
3. When we reach El Paso, we ________________ (drive) 1,400 miles.
4. In 2020, I ________________ (live) in the same place for ten years.
5. When Amanda turns thirty, she ________________ (visit) all the continents.
6. By the end of today, they ________________ (fast) for twenty-four hours.
7. When you arrive in Amsterdam, you ________________ (spend) over ten hours on an airplane.
8. By the time he retires, Brian ________________ (be) a teacher for forty-three years.
9. The storm ________________ (pass) by the time our flight arrives.
10. In three weeks, we ________________ (take) all of our final exams.
11. By Sunday, they ________________ (announce) the winners.
12. When the doctor leaves at the end of the day, he ________________ (see) twenty patients.
13. ________________ you ________________ (finish) your program by the end of the year?
14. ________________ they ________________ (prepare) the room by the time guests arrive?
15. ________________ she ________________ (start) her new business by this time next year?

Unit 15: Future Perfect Progressive

exercise R-15

Complete each sentence with the future perfect progressive form of the verb in parentheses.

EXAMPLE: By tomorrow, I *will have been looking* (look) for my watch for a week.

1. When the bus finally arrives, we ____________________ (wait) for an entire hour.
2. By 2020, the foundation ____________________ (fund) art projects for ten years.
3. By the time my sister gets here, she ____________________ (travel) for thirty-six hours.
4. When the class ends, they ____________________ (study) English for a whole year.
5. I ____________________ (blog) for ten years by the beginning of September.
6. By the time we get to the top of the mountain, we ____________________ (hike) for five hours.
7. On January 1, my parents ____________________ (live) in South Africa for five years.
8. On his birthday, Ian ____________________ (play) the guitar for twenty-five years.
9. By the end of the week, the workers ____________________ (protest) for a month.
10. When I turn forty, I ____________________ (work) for this company for seven years.
11. He ____________________ (run) for four hours when he finishes the marathon.
12. On their anniversary tour, they ____________________ (sing) together for ten years.
13. By the time they reach their destination, they ____________________ (travel) for three days.
14. By Election Day, the candidate ____________________ (campaign) hard for seven months.
15. Zac and Lexi ____________________ (meditate) for twenty hours by the end of the retreat.

Unit 16: Imperative

exercise R-16

Complete each sentence with the imperative form of the verb in parentheses. Then rewrite the sentence in the negative, using the contraction don't.

EXAMPLE: *Tell* (tell) me the news.
Don't tell me the news.

1. ____________ (call) me at work.
____

2. ____________ (play) on the grass.
____

3. ____________ (stop) here.
____

4. ____________ (buy) the newspaper today.
____

5. ____________ (look) up.
____

6. ____________(ask) questions.
____

7. ____________(walk) here.
____

8. ____________(go) over there.
____

9. ____________(talk) to me.
____

10. ____________(follow) me.
____

Unit 17: Passive

exercise R-17

Complete each sentence with the passive form of the verb indicated in parentheses.

EXAMPLE: The building *was designed* (design, past) by Frank Gehry.

1. Announcements ______________________ (post, present) daily.
2. Tourists ______________________ (give, present) free maps.
3. Governance ______________________ (share, present).
4. Old phone books ______________________ (recycle, present).
5. Names ______________________ (list, present) in alphabetical order.
6. Many jobs ______________________ (create, past) this year.
7. Important documents ______________________ (shred, past).
8. The proposal ______________________ (revise, past) twice.
9. The outside door ______________________ (lock, past) at midnight.
10. Our passports ______________________ (check, past) before we left the airport.
11. The movie ______________________ (direct, past) by Martin Scorsese.
12. The cost ______________________ (recalculate, future).
13. Your name ______________________ (call, future) when the doctor is ready to see you.
14. This topic ______________________ (discuss, future) at a future meeting.
15. Due dates ______________________ (adjust, future) as needed.

Unit 18: Hypothetical Conditional

exercise R-18

Complete each conditional sentence with the correct form of the verb indicated in parentheses. In the main clause, use would *or* would have *before the main verb.*

Example: If we *worked* (work, simple past) faster, we *would finish* (finish) on time.

1. He ____________ (do) much better if he ____________ (work, simple past) harder.
2. If I ____________ (have, simple past) the time, I ____________ (take) tennis lessons.
3. If we ____________ (meet, simple past) at four o'clock, we ____________ (have) time for a walk before dinner.
4. Camille ____________ (be) happy if we ____________ (visit, simple past) her this summer.
5. If I ____________ (be, simple past) not so tired, I ____________ (go) out with you this evening.
6. You ____________ (have) more energy if you ____________ (get, simple past) more sleep.
7. If you ____________ (shop, simple past) earlier, you ____________ (avoid) long lines.
8. If I ____________ (be) you, I ____________ (accept) the job offer.
9. They ____________ (win) if the star ____________ (play, past perfect).
10. If you ____________ (listen, past perfect) more closely, you ____________ (remember) the directions.
11. If the weather ____________ (be, past perfect) better, we ____________ (play) golf.
12. I ____________ (visit) you if I ____________ (know, past perfect) your new address.
13. If Louise ____________ (drive, past perfect) slowly, she ____________ not ____________ (have) an accident.
14. If he ____________ (pay, past perfect) his bills on time, he ____________ (have) a better credit score.
15. We ____________ (save) a lot of time if we ____________ (take, past perfect) the shortcut.

Unit 19: Phrasal Verbs

exercise R-19

Complete each sentence with the form of the phrasal verb indicated in parentheses.

EXAMPLE: I *signed up* (sign up, simple past) for a summer course.

1. Who ____________________ (turn off, simple past) the lights?
2. I ____________________ (turn in, simple future) my report tomorrow.
3. He always ____________________ (point out, simple present) my mistakes.
4. He ____________________ (pick up, past progressive) his son at school when he received a text from his best friend.
5. Someone ____________________ (break into, simple past) their apartment.
6. The lawyer ____________________ (go over, future perfect) the contract by the time we meet.
7. For years, I ____________________ (call up, present perfect progressive) my parents every Sunday morning.
8. She ____________________ (clean out, past progressive) her desk when she found the old letter.
9. The plane ____________________ already ____________________ (take off, present perfect).
10. ____________________ you ____________________ (look up, present progressive) the phone number?
11. ____________________ you ____________________ (back up, simple past) your files?
12. I ____________________ (pay off, simple future) my loan in December.
13. You finally ____________________ (take down, simple past) last year's calendar.
14. ____________________ he ____________________ (turn in, present progressive) his resignation tomorrow?
15. He ____________________(check through, perfect perfect) his luggage, but he still hasn't found his wallet.

Unit 20: Modal Auxiliary Verbs

exercise R-20

Complete each sentence with the modal or semi-modal auxiliary verb that provides the meaning indicated in parentheses.

EXAMPLE: You *may* (modal, permission) use your notes during the test.

1. We ______________________ (modal, certainty) work late today.
2. You ______________________ (modal, advice) talk to a lawyer.
3. He ______________________ (modal, possibility) be right.
4. Everyone ______________________ (modal, obligation) take the final exam.
5. She ______________________ (modal, ability) speak five different languages.
6. You ______________________ (modal, permission) use your notes during the test.
7. Back then, we ______________________ (modal, past habit) play soccer every afternoon.
8. He ______________________ (modal, advice) spend less time in front of a computer screen.
9. They ______________________ (semi-modal, certainty) come to the party, aren't they?
10. We ______________________ (semi-modal, past habit) send letters; now we talk on the phone.
11. I ______________________ (semi-modal, obligation) attend tomorrow's meeting.
12. She really ______________________ (semi-modal, advice) see a doctor.
13. He ______________________ not ______________________ (semi-modal, ability) afford such an expensive apartment.
14. Who ______________________ (semi-modal, certainty) win the World Cup?
15. We ______________________ (semi-modal, obligation) leave on Sunday.

Unit 21: Gerunds

exercise R-21

Complete each sentence with the form of the gerund indicated in parentheses.

EXAMPLE: The server recommended *ordering* (order, simple) the seafood stew.

1. They delayed ______________ (announce, simple) the winners until Saturday.
2. I finished ______________ (type up, simple) the report yesterday.
3. You'll risk ______________ (lose, simple) your job if you aren't on time every day.
4. My father quit ______________ (smoke, simple) last year.
5. Her car keeps ______________ (break down, simple).
6. She admits ______________ (take, perfect) drugs before the race.
7. Laura denied ______________ (be, perfect) at the scene of the crime.
8. They appreciated ______________ (receive, perfect) your support.
9. I miss ______________ (meet, passive) at the airport by my grandparents.
10. We mind ______________ (punish, passive) unjustly.
11. Did you enjoy ______________ (introduce, passive) to so many new people?
12. Somehow she avoided ______________ (put, passive) in an awkward position.
13. Carl appreciates ______________ (give, passive perfect) the opportunity to study abroad
14. They disliked ______________ (treat, passive perfect) so rudely.
15. He hated ______________ (interrupt, passive perfect).

Unit 22: Infinitives

exercise R-22

Complete each sentence with the form of the infinitive indicated in parentheses.

EXAMPLE: The company plans *to open* (open, simple) another factory.

1. My brother offered ____________ (help, simple).
2. The storm caused us ____________ (arrive, simple) late.
3. They agreed ____________(meet, simple) in person.
4. I hope ____________ (work, progressive) during the summer months.
5. The little boy pretended ____________ (sleep, progressive).
6. This rule seems ____________ (defeat, progressive) the purpose of education.
7. I wanted ____________ (finish, perfect) the project by now, but I had to change my plans.
8. You intended ____________ (complete, perfect) the application forms by yesterday.
9. She claims ____________ (meet, perfect) the prime minister.
10. The car needs ____________ (fix, passive).

12. He expects ____________ (reward, passive) for his efforts.

11. Everyone deserves ____________ (hear, passive).

13. The problem seems ____________ (solve, passive perfect).

14. We expected ____________ (pay, passive perfect) by now.

15. She planned ____________ (promote, passive perfect) by the time she was twenty-five.

Unit 23: Gerunds or Infinitives

exercise R-23

Underline the gerund or infinitive. Circle the reason that the gerund or the infinitive is used. If either a gerund or infinitive could be used, circle "No significant change in meaning."

1. He remembered to bring his cell phone.

   Memory to perform action **Vivid depiction** **No significant change in meaning**

2. I regretted speaking sharply to my best friend.

   Memory of action **Memory to perform action** **Vivid depiction**

3. At around five o'clock, it started to snow.

   Memory of action **Vivid depiction** **No significant change in meaning**

4. The kids loved going to the zoo.

   Memory of action **Vivid depiction** **No significant change in meaning**

5. Kevin hates to study on Friday nights.

   Actual occurrence **Potential occurrence** **No significant change in meaning**

6. Prices continued to increase last year.

   Actual occurrence **Vivid depiction** **No significant change in meaning**

7. My uncle always liked telling jokes.

   Actual occurrence **Vivid depiction** **Potential occurrence**

8. When the clown appeared on stage, everyone began to laugh.

   Actual occurrence **Vivid depiction** **No significant change in meaning**

9. I remembered giving you the password.

   Memory of action **Memory to perform action** **Vivid depiction**

10. Amy prefers to work on the weekends.

    Vivid depiction **Potential occurrence** **No significant change in meaning**

11. They stopped to ask me questions about the town.

Indication of purpose **Cessation of activity** **No significant change in meaning**

12. I didn’t forget meeting him.

Memory of action **Memory to perform action** **Potential occurrence**

13. She began painting when she was twelve.

Memory of action **Memory to perform action** **No significant change in meaning**

14. My friend doesn’t like to take elevators.

Actual occurrence **Vivid depiction** **Potential occurrence**

15. They suddenly stopped laughing.

Indication of purpose **Cessation of activity** **No significant change in meaning**

Appendix: Chart of Irregular Verbs

exercise R-24

Complete the chart with the correct perfect/passive form of the irregular verb. (Review Unit 4.)

Pattern 1	rebuild	*rebuilt*
	overspend	__________________
	bend	__________________
Pattern 2	feel	*felt*
	flee	__________________
	sleep	__________________
Pattern 3	break	*broken*
	write	__________________
	know	__________________

Pattern 4	sing	*sung*
	drink	______________
	hang	______________
Pattern 5	put	*put*
	hurt	______________
	let	______________

exercise R-25

Complete each sentence with the present perfect form of the verb in parentheses.

1. Both countries ______________ (rebuild) their economies.
2. He ______________ (feel) more energetic lately.
3. The receptionist ______________ (put) me on hold.
4. She ______________ (break) the world record twice in a row.
5. They ______________ (know) about the fire hazard for over a year.
6. You ______________ (sing) that song too many times.
7. I ______________ (read) that book already.
8. We ______________ (hear) that story before.
9. Josh ______________ (go) out with friends.
10. I ______________ not ______________ (do) my homework yet.
11. They ______________ still not ______________ (leave) for the airport.
12. Her dad ______________ not ______________ (meet) her boyfriend.
13. ______________ they ______________ (be) here before?
14. ______________ he ______________ (have) any experience in marketing?
15. ______________ you ______________ (lose) your keys again?

exercise R-26

Complete the chart with the correct simple past form of the irregular verb. (Review Unit 6.)

Pattern 1	spend	*spent*
	lend	________
	resend	________
Pattern 2	mean	*meant*
	tell	________
	keep	________
Pattern 3a	break	*broke*
	write	________
	know	________
Pattern 3b	hang	*hung*
	sit	________
	feed	________
Pattern 4	put	*put*
	quit	________
	cut	________

exercise R-27

Complete each sentence with the simple past form of the verb in parentheses.

1. The book ________ (cost) $20.00.
2. He ________ (come) to the party alone.
3. The company ________ (spend) an enormous amount on advertising.
4. The owners ________ (sell) their business.
5. I ________ (give) him your message.

6. She __________ (put) the groceries in the back seat of the car.

7. We __________ (eat) in silence.

8. They __________ (say) good night and __________ (leave).

9. I __________ (have) a headache last night.

10. You __________ not __________ (tell) me about it.

11. The politician __________ not __________ (write) his own speeches.

12. She __________ not __________ (speak) English at home.

13. __________ you __________ (know) him very well?

14. __________ they __________ (take) any notes during the lecture?

15. __________ he __________ (go) to the meeting yesterday?

APPENDIX

Chart of Irregular Verbs

Base Form	***-s* Form (Present Tense, Third Person, Singular)**	***-ing* Form (Present Participle)**	**Past Form**	***-en* Form (Past Participle)**
be	is (third-person singular) am (first-person singular) are (other person/number combinations)	being	was (first- and third-person singular) were (other person/number combinations)	been
become	becomes	becoming	became	become
begin	begins	beginning	began	begun
blow	blows	blowing	blew	blown
break	breaks	breaking	broke	broken
bring	brings	bringing	brought	brought
broadcast	broadcasts	broadcasting	broadcasted, broadcast	broadcasted, broadcast
build	builds	building	built	built
buy	buys	buying	bought	bought
choose	chooses	choosing	chose	chosen

Base Form	***-s* Form (Present Tense, Third Person, Singular)**	***-ing* Form (Present Participle)**	**Past Form**	***-en* Form (Past Participle)**
come	comes	coming	came	come
cost	costs	costing	cost	cost
cut	cuts	cutting	cut	cut
do	does	doing	did	done
dream	dreams	dreaming	dreamed, dreamt	dreamed, dreamt
drink	drinks	drinking	drank	drunk
drive	drives	driving	drove	driven
eat	eats	eating	ate	eaten
fall	falls	falling	fell	fallen
feel	feels	feeling	felt	felt
find	finds	finding	found	found
fly	flies	flying	flew	flown
forget	forgets	forgetting	forgot	forgotten
get	gets	getting	got	gotten, got
give	gives	giving	gave	given
go	goes	going	went	gone
grow	grows	growing	grew	grown
hang (suspend)	hangs	hanging	hung	hung

Base Form	***-s* Form (Present Tense, Third Person, Singular)**	***-ing* Form (Present Participle)**	**Past Form**	***-en* Form (Past Participle)**
have	has	having	had	had
hear	hears	hearing	heard	heard
hit	hits	hitting	hit	hit
hold	holds	holding	held	held
hurt	hurts	hurting	hurt	hurt
keep	keeps	keeping	kept	kept
know	knows	knowing	knew	known
lead	leads	leading	led	led
leave	leaves	leaving	left	left
lend	lends	lending	lent	lent
let	lets	letting	let	let
lie (to rest or recline)	lies	lying	lay	lain
lose	loses	losing	lost	lost
make	makes	making	made	made
meet	meets	meeting	met	met
pay	pays	paying	paid	paid
put	puts	putting	put	put
quit	quits	quitting	quit	quit

Base Form	***-s* Form (Present Tense, Third Person, Singular)**	***-ing* Form (Present Participle)**	**Past Form**	***-en* Form (Past Participle)**
read	reads	reading	read	read
ride	rides	riding	rode	ridden
ring	rings	ringing	rang	rung
rise	rises	rising	rose	risen
run	runs	running	ran	run
say	says	saying	said	said
see	sees	seeing	saw	seen
sell	sells	selling	sold	sold
send	sends	sending	sent	sent
set	sets	setting	set	set
shake	shakes	shaking	shook	shaken
show	shows	showing	showed	showed, shown
sing	sings	singing	sang	sung
sink	sinks	sinking	sank	sunk
sit	sits	sitting	sat	sat
sleep	sleeps	sleeping	slept	slept
speak	speaks	speaking	spoke	spoken
spend	spends	spending	spent	spent

Base Form	***-s* Form (Present Tense, Third Person, Singular)**	***-ing* Form (Present Participle)**	**Past Form**	***-en* Form (Past Participle)**
spread	spreads	spreading	spread	spread
stand	stands	standing	stood	stood
steal	steals	stealing	stole	stolen
take	takes	taking	took	taken
teach	teaches	teaching	taught	taught
tell	tells	telling	told	told
think	thinks	thinking	thought	thought
throw	throws	throwing	threw	thrown
understand	understands	understanding	understood	understood
wear	wears	wearing	wore	worn
win	wins	winning	won	won
write	writes	writing	wrote	written

This page intentionally left blank

Glossary

Aspect A grammatical category that provides information about the duration or completeness of an action, a state, or an event. Aspect may also provide information about actions, states, or events in relation to a specific time or to another action, state, or event.

Auxiliary verb A specialized verb that provides information about tense, aspect, or modality. *Be*, *have*, and *do* can be used as auxiliary verbs, although they can also be used as main verbs. Words such as *must*, *can*, and *may* are modal auxiliary verbs. Modal auxiliary verbs are used to signal obligation, ability, possibility, and other meanings.

Gerund The *-ing* form of a verb, functioning as a noun. Some verbs can be followed by gerunds (e.g., I enjoy **going** to concerts.).

Hypothetical conditional A grammatical structure consisting of two parts: an *if* clause that expresses an impossible or only slightly possible occurrence and a consequence clause, sometimes introduced by *then*.

Imperative A grammatical structure characterized by the presence of the base form of a verb and the absence of a subject. The subject *you* is usually not expressed (e.g., Be quiet.). Imperatives are generally used in instructions, directions, warnings, and commands.

Infinitive The base form of a verb preceded by *to*. When an infinitive follows a verb, it functions as a noun (e.g., We want **to see** you soon.).

Phrasal verb A verb + particle combination that carries a specific meaning (e.g., **Turn in** your paper.).

Pronoun Usually a single word, such as *it*, *she*, or *I*, which functions as a noun phrase. A pronoun is marked for person (first, second, or third) and number (singular or plural).

Subject (singular, plural, noncount) The noun phrase (sometimes just a single noun or a pronoun) that carries out the action or assumes the state expressed by the verb. Singular subjects refer to one entity; plural subjects refer to more than one entity. Noncount subjects are not able to be counted (e.g., furniture, sugar). A verb conjugated as third-person singular is used with a noncount noun.

Tense A grammatical category that provides information about the placement in time of an action, a state, or an event.

Voice (active and passive) The grammatical category that provides information about the way a subject is related to a verb. In the active voice, the subject generally performs an action, whereas in the passive voice, the subject generally undergoes the action.

Wh-questions Questions that elicit specific pieces of information and that are introduced by question words usually beginning with the letters *w* and *h* (e.g., *who*, *what*, *where*, *why*). The question word *how* is an exception.

Yes/no questions Questions that can be answered "yes" or "no," although other responses such as "maybe" are possible.

Answer Key

Part I The Present Tense

Unit 1 Simple Present

1-1

1.	eat	habitual action
2.	carries	habitual action
3.	speak	fact
4.	produces	fact
5.	make	custom
6.	watches	habitual action
7.	says	custom
8.	begins	future time
9.	live	fact
10.	grow	fact
11.	wear	custom
12.	shake, meet	custom

1-2

The correct subjects and verbs are provided. Other parts of the sentence may vary.

1. She always **makes** strawberry pies for the Fourth of July.
2. I **take** the garbage out every Tuesday night.
3. It **gives** me a headache.
4. They **come** to our house on Labor Day.
5. I **use** my computer every day.
6. He **leaves** in ten minutes.
7. They **like** the theater.
8. She **writes** poetry and short stories.
9. We **listen** to the baseball games on KXLE.
10. It **contains** something fragile.
11. It **starts** at 9:00.
12. He **understands** the theory.

1-3

1. He **does not go** to school every day.
2. My roommate **does not like** snakes.
3. You **do not know** my family.
4. The owner **does not open** the store every day at 8:00.
5. We **do not help** our neighbors.
6. My friends **do not send** me letters.
7. I **do not feel** tired.
8. She **does not speak** five different languages.
9. They **do not study** in the library.
10. We **do not listen** to pop music.
11. They **do not grow** tomatoes in their backyard.
12. This car **does not run** well.

1-4

1. He **doesn't go** to school every day.
2. My roommate **doesn't like** snakes.
3. You **don't know** my family.
4. The owner **doesn't open** the store every day at 8:00.

5. We **don't help** our neighbors.
6. My friends **don't send** me letters.
7. I **don't feel** tired.
8. She **doesn't speak** five different languages.
9. They **don't study** in the library.
10. We **don't listen** to pop music.
11. They **don't grow** tomatoes in their backyard.
12. This car **doesn't run** well.

1-5

1. **Does** the artist **show** his work at a local gallery?
2. **Do** they **meet** on Thursday mornings?
3. **Does** she **work** hard?
4. **Do** you **commute** to work?
5. **Does** it **seem** like a good decision?
6. **Does** this **work** require patience?
7. **Do** the Carsons **live** in a small town?
8. **Don't** you **believe** my story?
9. **Does** the patient **feel** better?
10. **Does** the lecture **end** at 5:30?
11. **Does** the plot **involve** many characters?
12. **Do** most students **complete** the program in four years?

1-6

1. Who **knows** the answer?
2. How **does** she **look**?
3. Why **do** they always **go** to that restaurant?
4. How often **do** they **go** golfing?
5. Where **do** we **turn** left?
6. How much **does** the notebook **cost**?
7. Who **worries** too much?
8. How often **do** you **exercise** at the gym?
9. What **do** Jerry and Carol **repair**?
10. What **does** she **teach**?
11. Whom **does** Mark **blame** for his problems?
12. Where **do** many people **go** for their vacations?

Unit 2 *Be* Verb Forms, Simple Present

2-1

1. am
2. are, am
3. are
4. is
5. is
6. are
7. are
8. am
9. is
10. is
11. is
12. are

2-2

1. is
2. are
3. are
4. is
5. are
6. is

7. is
8. are
9. are
10. is
11. is
12. is

2-3

1. **She's** a student.
2. **I'm** an engineer.
3. **There's** a test on Tuesday.
4. **You're** next.
5. **It's** difficult.
6. **We're** from Canada.
7. **He's** a supervisor.
8. **They're** really funny.
9. **I'm** sick today.
10. **There's** a package for you on the table.
11. **He's** first on the list.
12. **It's** cold in here.

2-4

1. **She's not** a student.
2. **I'm not** an engineer.
3. **There's not** a test on Tuesday.
4. **You're not** next.
5. **It's not** difficult.
6. **We're not** from Canada.
7. **He's not** a supervisor.
8. **They're not** really funny.
9. **I'm not** sick today.
10. **There's not** a package for you on the table.
11. **He's not** first on the list.
12. **It's not** cold in here.

2-5

1. isn't
2. aren't
3. isn't
4. aren't
5. aren't
6. isn't

2-6

1. **Is** Portland in the state of Oregon?
2. **Is** your car in the garage?
3. **Is** he in a good mood?
4. **Are** they friends?
5. **Is** Sam depressed?
6. **Is** her computer broken?
7. **Are** there many items on the menu?
8. **Is** the coffee too hot?
9. **Is** the city hall the oldest building in town?
10. **Is** there a bank near here?
11. **Is** the museum open on Thursday evenings?
12. **Are** the lights off?

2-7

1. Who **is** the editor of the local newspaper?
2. How tall **is** she?
3. Who **are** they?

4. Where **is** his roommate right now?
5. When **is** the graduation ceremony?
6. What color **is** the house?
7. What **is** that?
8. Where **are** the scissors?
9. Who **is** the producer?
10. Where **are** the children?
11. How late **is** the library open?
12. Where **are** they?

Unit 3 Present Progressive (*Be* Verb + *-ing*)

3-1

1.	am studying	temporary situation
2.	are going	future time
3.	am writing	activity in progress
4.	is pulling	activity in progress
5.	are moving	future time
6.	are acting	activity in progress
7.	am using	temporary situation
8.	are eating	future time (or activity in progress if said while eating)
9.	is having	temporary situation
10.	is mowing	activity in progress
11.	am turning	future time
12.	is living	temporary situation
13.	is snowing	activity in progress
14.	are standing	activity in progress
15.	are speaking	activity in progress
16.	is growing	activity in progress

3-2

1. sells
2. is selling
3. am boiling
4. boils
5. visit
6. are visiting
7. goes
8. is going
9. am doing
10. do

3-3

The correct subjects and verbs are provided. Other parts of the sentence may vary.

1. **He's paying** for dinner.
2. **It's hailing**.
3. **We're meeting** in the conference room.
4. Right now **they're losing** the game.
5. **She's waiting** in line.
6. **You're carrying** a heavy backpack.
7. **I'm wearing** a hat today.
8. **We're reading** the same book.
9. **She's calling** the movie theater.
10. **He's selling** his old bicycle.
11. **They're staying** at home tonight.
12. **I'm assisting** a customer right now.

3-4

1. I **am not buying** a new car tomorrow.
2. She **is not studying**.
3. We **are not leaving** soon.
4. They **are not coming** with us.
5. Carla **is not living** with her parents.
6. I **am not cooking** dinner tonight.
7. The band **is not performing** tonight.
8. My mother **is not visiting** this weekend.
9. They **are not sleeping**.
10. We **are not going** to the park today.
11. They **are not fixing** the road.
12. She **is not quitting** her job.

3-5

1. **I'm not buying** a new car tomorrow.
2. **She's not studying**. OR She **isn't studying**.
3. **We're not leaving** soon. OR We **aren't leaving** soon.
4. **They're not coming** with us. OR They **aren't coming** with us.
5. **Carla's not living** with her parents. OR Carla **isn't living** with her parents.
6. **I'm not cooking** dinner tonight.
7. The **band's not performing** tonight. OR The band **isn't performing** tonight.
8. My **mother's not visiting** this weekend. OR My mother **isn't visiting** this weekend.
9. **They're not sleeping**. OR They **aren't sleeping**.
10. **We're not going** to the park today. OR We **aren't going** to the park today.
11. **They're not fixing** the road. OR They **aren't fixing** the road.
12. **She's not quitting** her job. OR She **isn't quitting** her job.

3-6

1. **Is** the mail carrier **delivering** a package to our house?
2. **Is** the boat **sinking**?
3. **Are** they **causing** trouble?
4. **Is** he **worrying** about his course grade?
5. **Is** Helen **publishing** her autobiography?
6. **Is** the teacher **inviting** everyone in class to a party?
7. **Is** the committee **announcing** the winner of the contest today?
8. **Is** the engineer **explaining** the process?
9. **Is** Mandy **singing** at her sister's wedding?
10. **Is** the company **expanding**?
11. **Is** Phil **arranging** the conference?
12. **Are** the police **accusing** him of the crime?

3-7

1. What **are** they **eating**?
2. Who **is coming** along?
3. What **are** we **watching** on television tonight?
4. What **is** she **showing** them?
5. Whom **are** you **meeting**?
6. Why **are** they **wearing** special clothes?
7. What **is** he **hoping** for?
8. What **is happening**?
9. What **are** Alex and Terry **playing**?
10. Where **are** they **moving**?
11. Who **is staring** at us?
12. Who **is winning**?

Unit 4 Present Perfect

4-1

1. have built
2. have eaten
3. have lent
4. have spoken
5. has fallen
6. have known
7. have sold
8. has rained
9. have kept
10. has spent
11. have cut

4-2

1. He's rented
2. It's worked
3. We've been
4. They've lost
5. She's waited
6. You've reached
7. I've applied
8. We've developed
9. She's ignored
10. He's found
11. They've gone
12. I've forgotten

4-3

1. They **have not chosen** a location for the conference.
2. She **has not completed** her work.
3. We **have not studied** our options.
4. I **have not received** my test results.
5. You **have not mentioned** his name before.
6. He **has not reviewed** the plans.
7. It **has not disappeared**.

4-4

1. They **haven't chosen** a location for the conference.
2. She **hasn't completed** her work.
3. We **haven't studied** our options.
4. I **haven't received** my test results.
5. You **haven't mentioned** his name before.
6. He **hasn't reviewed** the plans.
7. It **hasn't disappeared**.

4-5

1. **Have** you **put** the dishes away?
2. **Have** they **offered** her a new job?
3. **Have** we **received** good news?
4. **Has** he **checked** the oil in the car?
5. **Has** Jackson **obtained** a driver's license?
6. **Has** the new student **arrived**?
7. **Has** Jeanette **responded** to our message?
8. **Have** the archaeologists **discovered** new fossils?
9. **Have** you **made** your lunch?
10. **Has** the business **expanded**?
11. **Has** Sarah **arranged** the meeting?
12. **Has** the program **been** successful?

4-6

1. What **have** they **given** to charities?
2. Who **has appeared** on television?
3. How many games **has** she **missed**?
4. Who **has passed** the first part of the test?
5. How many of his novels **have** you **read**?
6. What color **has** Les **painted** his house?
7. Who **has sung** at the White House?
8. What **has happened**?
9. Who **has influenced** your decision?
10. Which courses **has** he **taken**?
11. How many years **have** you **taught** English?
12. Whom **have** they **invited** to the party?

Unit 5 Present Perfect Progressive

5-1

1. has been hurting
2. has been causing
3. has been exercising
4. have been drinking
5. has been worrying
6. has been earning
7. have been paying
8. have been following
9. have been sitting
10. have been applying
11. have been helping
12. have been rising

5-2

1. He's been expecting
2. It's been changing
3. We've been developing
4. They've been checking
5. She's been exploring
6. You've been complaining
7. I've been calculating

5-3

1. He has not been ignoring
2. It has not been improving
3. We have not been commuting
4. They have not been buying
5. She has not been doing
6. You have not been finishing
7. I have not been riding

5-4

1. He hasn't been ignoring the evidence.
2. It hasn't been improving much.
3. We haven't been commuting together this year.
4. They haven't been buying much lately.
5. She hasn't been doing her work.
6. You haven't been finishing your projects on time.
7. I haven't been riding the bus to school.

5-5

1. **Have** you **been paying** all your bills on time?
2. **Has** the noise **been bothering** them?
3. **Has** traffic **been moving** slowly?

4. **Has** she **been waiting** a long time?
5. **Have** they **been reducing** the number of accidents?
6. **Has** the suspect **been lying**?
7. **Have** you **been reading** an interesting novel?
8. **Has** the government **been allowing** journalists into the country?
9. **Has** she **been keeping** good records?
10. **Have** they **been considering** the proposal?
11. **Has** he **been staying** close to home?
12. **Has** she **been making** progress?

5-6

1. Where **has** Paula **been traveling**?
2. How long **has** he **been living** in Miami?
3. What **have** they **been searching** for?
4. Who **has been watching** the children?
5. How often **have** they **been going** to the Virgin Islands?
6. What **has** the guide **been arranging**?
7. Who **has been taking** notes?
8. How long **have** you **been attending** the university?
9. What **have** they **been planning**?
10. What **has** he **been talking** about?
11. How **have** you **been feeling** lately?
12. How long **has** she **been standing** there?

Part II The Past Tense

Unit 6 Simple Past

6-1

1. worked
2. waited
3. remembered
4. needed
5. missed
6. sold
7. went
8. met
9. cut
10. wore

6-2

1. lived
2. have lived
3. have studied
4. studied
5. traveled
6. have traveled
7. have worked
8. worked
9. has built
10. built

6-3

1. He **did not come** to work on time.
2. My roommate **did not like** the movie.
3. She **did not understand** the problem.
4. We **did not take** a wrong turn.
5. The students **did not need** help with the homework.
6. The driver **did not blame** me for the accident.
7. I **did not listen** to the directions.
8. She **did not earn** a degree in economics.

9. He **did not calculate** the taxes.
10. They **did not complain** about the weather.

6-4

1. He **didn’t come** to work on time.
2. My roommate **didn’t like** the movie.
3. She **didn’t understand** the problem.
4. We **didn’t take** a wrong turn.
5. The students **didn’t need** help with the homework.
6. The driver **didn’t blame** me for the accident.
7. I **didn’t listen** to the directions.
8. She **didn’t earn** a degree in economics.
9. He **didn’t calculate** the taxes.
10. They **didn’t complain** about the weather.

6-5

1. **Did** they **elect** a new president?
2. **Did** she **deliver** the report?
3. **Did** you **expect** us earlier?
4. **Did** Tho **pass** his driver’s test?
5. **Did** the committee **explore** the issues?
6. **Did** he **explain** the problem?
7. **Did** the director **have** an appointment at 3:00?
8. **Did** you **forget** the map?
9. **Did** the bank **lend** him some money?
10. **Did** they **offer** him a job?

6-6

1. Who **wrote** *Beloved*?
2. Who **won** the contest?
3. Which way **did** he **turn**?
4. How many countries **did** they **travel** to?
5. How long **did** you **teach** biology?
6. How much **did** the repair **cost**?
7. How long **did** they **stay** at the party?
8. How far **did** she **run**?
9. Where **did** they **move**?
10. How far **did** they **climb**?

Unit 7 *Be* Verb Forms, Simple Past

7-1

1. was
2. were
3. were
4. was
5. was
6. were
7. was
8. were
9. was
10. was

7-2

1. was
2. were
3. was
4. was
5. were
6. were

7. was
8. was
9. were
10. was

7-3

1. weren't
2. wasn't
3. weren't
4. wasn't
5. weren't
6. wasn't
7. weren't
8. weren't
9. weren't
10. wasn't

7-4

1. **Was** the concert in the park?
2. **Was** the road under construction?
3. **Was** everyone on time?
4. **Were** the textbooks expensive?
5. **Was** the job stressful?
6. **Was** the program a success?
7. **Were** there many apartments for rent?
8. **Was** the parking lot full?
9. **Were** the tickets free?
10. **Was** the computer on?

7-5

1. Who **was** the president of the United States in 1980?
2. How **was** the trip?
3. Where **were** his grandparents from?
4. Where **were** they?
5. When **was** the field trip?
6. How long **was** the gym open on Sunday?
7. What items **were** on sale?
8. How **was** the traffic?
9. Who **was** there?
10. How long **was** the movie?

Unit 8 Past Progressive (*Be* Verb + *-ing*)

8-1

1. was being
2. was ringing
3. was waiting, was dreaming
4. were living
5. was taking, was studying
6. was putting
7. was knocking, was getting
8. was raining
9. were going
10. were cleaning

8-2

1. complete action
2. action in progress
3. action in progress
4. complete action

5. action in progress
6. complete action
7. complete action
8. action in progress
9. action in progress
10. complete action

8-3

1. He **was not attending** a conference.
2. They **were not laughing**.
3. I **was not complaining** about the work.
4. She **was not helping** us.
5. Ted **was not studying** last night.
6. They **were not paying** attention.
7. I **was not talking** to myself.
8. You **were not speaking** loud enough.
9. They **were not doing** their homework.
10. We **were not trying** hard.

8-4

1. He **wasn't attending** a conference.
2. They **weren't laughing**.
3. I **wasn't complaining** about the work.
4. She **wasn't helping** us.
5. Ted **wasn't studying** last night.
6. They **weren't paying** attention.
7. I **wasn't talking** to myself.
8. You **weren't speaking** loud enough.
9. They **weren't doing** their homework.
10. We **weren't trying** hard.

8-5

1. **Was** the band **giving** a free concert?
2. **Was** the light **blinking** on and off?
3. **Were** you **watching** the championship on television?
4. **Were** they **being** careful?
5. **Was** it **snowing** all day?
6. **Were** Gabe and Don **singing** together?
7. **Were** they **closing** the store?
8. **Were** the companies **considering** a merger?
9. **Were** they **recycling** most of the waste products?
10. As young children, **were** they always **getting** into trouble?

8-6

1. Where **were** they **protesting**?
2. Who **was using** this computer?
3. What **were** you **watching** on television last night?
4. What **was** the committee **discussing**?
5. What **was bothering** them?
6. Who **was spreading** rumors?
7. Where **was** he **working**?
8. How fast **was** she **driving**?
9. What **was** he **reading** during class today?
10. Where **were** they **standing**?

Unit 9 Past Perfect

9-1

1. had attended
2. had held
3. had sold
4. had met
5. had felt
6. had hit
7. had sat
8. had run
9. had snowed
10. had been

9-2

1. arrived, had left
2. had finished, went
3. had assigned, completed
4. was, had worked
5. wore, had given
6. revised, had written
7. had knocked, entered
8. knew, had taken
9. read, had received
10. celebrated, had passed

9-3

1. They **had not met**
2. it **had not changed**
3. We **had not considered**
4. He **had not wanted**
5. She **had not driven**
6. You **had not spoken**
7. I **had not sent**

9-4

1. **They'd met** before.
   They **hadn't met** before.
2. Because **it'd changed** color, no one could see it.
   Because it **hadn't changed** color, no one could see it.
3. **We'd considered** all the possibilities.
   We **hadn't considered** all the possibilities.
4. **He'd wanted** help from us.
   He **hadn't wanted** help from us.
5. **She'd driven** to the party.
   She **hadn't driven** to the party.
6. **You'd spoken** English before you came to the United States.
   You **hadn't spoken** English before you came to the United States.
7. **I'd sent** my application in on time.
   I **hadn't sent** my application in on time.

9-5

1. **Hadn't** she **called** before she arrived?
2. **Hadn't** they **obtained** permission before they started the experiment?
3. **Had** Pat **won** the first race before he ran the second race?
4. **Had** they **closed** the road?
5. **Had** they **canceled** the game without prior notice?

9-6

1. Who **had received** job offers before they graduated?
2. How many track records **had** Peter **broken** by the age of eighteen?
3. How long **had** she **taught** English before she went to law school?
4. When **had** he **arrived** at the gate?
5. How long **had** they **dated** before they got married?

Unit 10 Past Perfect Progressive

10-1

1. had been working
2. had been discussing
3. had been studying
4. had been increasing
5. had been playing
6. had been raining
7. had been watching
8. had been writing
9. had been studying
10. had been working

10-2

1. The supervisor **had not been assigning**
2. The weather **had not been improving**
3. Jodi and I **had not been following**
4. They **had not been checking**
5. She **had not been ignoring**
6. You **had not been getting**
7. I **had not been exercising**

10-3

1. He **hadn't been expecting**
2. **It'd been changing**
3. **We'd been hoping**
4. They **hadn't been looking**
5. **She'd been lying**
6. You **hadn't been joking**
7. **I'd been thinking**

10-4

1. **Had** you **been working** too hard?
2. **Had** he **been living** by himself?
3. **Had** she **been talking** too loudly?
4. **Had** they **been waiting** a long time?
5. **Had** the suspect **been telling** the truth?

10-5

1. Who **had been making** the arrangements?
2. How long **had** he **been thinking** about moving?
3. What **had** they **been using** before the new shipment arrived?
4. Who **had been leading** the discussion when the argument started?
5. How long **had** they **been working** on the project?

Part III The Future Tense

Unit 11 Simple Future

11-1

1. will commute
2. will require
3. will give
4. will visit
5. will be
6. will announce
7. will leave
8. will complete
9. will call
10. will expand

11-2

1. They'll believe
2. I'll deliver
3. You'll like
4. It'll end
5. He'll help
6. She'll introduce
7. We'll sit

11-3

1. He **will not finish** by tomorrow.
2. You **will not have** a lot of fun there.
3. She **will not know** the answer.
4. We **will not ignore** the problem.
5. They **will not keep** your secret.
6. He **will not lie** to you.
7. I **will not need** help with my homework.
8. Marian **will not be** alone.
9. I **will not mention** your name.
10. They **will not be** late.

11-4

1. He **won't finish** by tomorrow.
2. You **won't have** a lot of fun there.
3. She **won't know** the answer.
4. We **won't ignore** the problem.
5. They **won't keep** your secret.
6. He **won't lie** to you.
7. I **won't need** help with my homework.
8. Marian **won't be** alone.
9. I **won't mention** your name.
10. They **won't be** late.

11-5

1. **Will** they **tell** us on Friday?
2. **Will** she **report** the incident?
3. **Will** you **laugh** at my mistakes?
4. **Will** Mitch **need** some help?
5. **Will** the noise **bother** you?
6. **Will** he **lend** us some money?
7. **Will** Dr. Silvis **be** free at 4:00?
8. **Will** we **meet** later?
9. **Will** they **use** your plan?
10. **Will** Federal Express **deliver** the package to our house?

11-6

1. Who **will repair** his car?
2. When **will** the class **meet**?
3. When **will** Rhonda **finish** the report?
4. How much **will** it **cost**?
5. Whom **will** they **blame** for the mistake?
6. Who **will choose** the scholarship winners?
7. How long **will** the supervisor **be** on vacation?
8. What **will** they **complain** about?
9. Who **will lead** the discussion?
10. When **will** the dance group **perform**?

Unit 12 *Be Going To*

12-1

1. is going to be
2. are going to build
3. is going to buy
4. am going to cancel
5. are going to climb
6. are going to celebrate
7. is going to call
8. is going to come
9. is going to deliver
10. are going to elect

12-2

1.	is going to	imminent action
2.	will	commitment
3.	am going to	imminent action
4.	is going to	imminent action
5.	will	commitment

12-3

1. Taxes **are not going to increase**
2. It **is not going to snow**
3. We **are not going to go**
4. He **is not going to listen**
5. She **is not going to travel**
6. You **are not going to have**
7. I **am not going to forget**

12-4

1. **He's not going to come** OR **He isn't going to come**
2. **It's going to rain**
3. **I'm going to clean**
4. **They're not going to believe** OR **They aren't going to believe**
5. **She's not going to call** OR **She isn't going to call**
6. **You're going to do**
7. **I'm not going to cook**

12-5

1. **Are** they **going to consider** your proposal?
2. **Are** you **going to enter** the park at the north gate?
3. **Is** the doctor **going to explain** the procedure?
4. **Are** we **going to explore** our new neighborhood today?
5. **Is** he **going to fix** it for free?
6. **Ar**e you **going to follow** us?
7. **Is** she **going to get** into trouble?
8. **Is** it **going to happen** soon?
9. **Is** he **going to like** this idea?
10. **Are** we **going to look** for a new apartment today?

12-6

1. Who **is going to move** to Chile?
2. How much **is** she **going to earn**?
3. When **are** we **going to eat**?
4. When **are** they **going to improve** the roads?
5. When **are** you **going to develop** the film?
6. Whom **are** they **going to invite**?
7. When **are** the legislators **going to discuss** the bill?
8. Where **is** he **going to live**?
9. Who **is going to march** in the parade?
10. When **is** the eclipse **going to occur**?

Unit 13 Future Progressive (*Will Be* Verb + *-ing*)

13-1

1. will be representing
2. will be leaving
3. will be following
4. will be waiting
5. will be watching
6. will be producing
7. will be providing
8. will be snowing
9. will be wearing
10. will be opening

13-2

1. They **will not be appearing**
2. It **will not be starting**
3. We **will not be reading**
4. He **will not be arriving**
5. She **will not be staying**
6. You **will not be living**
7. I **will not be making**

13-3

1. He **won't be joining**
2. **It'll be affecting**
3. **I'll be treating**
4. They **won't be needing**
5. She **won't be arriving**
6. **you'll be flying**
7. I **won't be thinking**

13-4

1. **Will** I **be seeing** you next week?
2. **Will** they **be traveling** by bus?
3. **Will** Takamitsu **be assisting** Heather?
4. **Will** they **be offering** special packages at the end of the season?
5. **Will** you **be checking** your e-mail daily?

13-5

1. Who **will be taking** notes?
2. Who **will be receiving** an award?
3. Where **will** they **be sitting**?
4. How far **will** you **be driving** on your first day?
5. When **will** she **be finishing** her project?

Unit 14 Future Perfect

14-1

1. will have left
2. will have written
3. will have introduced
4. will have flown
5. will have eaten

14-2

1. You **will not have rested**
2. they **will not have eaten**
3. We **will not have finished**
4. Mark **will not have slept**
5. She **will not have saved**

14-3

1. **they'll have completed**
2. he **won't have finished**
3. **you'll have recovered**
4. They **won't have made**
5. **She'll have given**

14-4

1. **Will** the landscape **have changed** by the time he's an adult?
2. By July 11, **will** we **have made** our decision?
3. By the time you start your new job, **will** you **have finished** your degree?
4. By the time we get home, **will** he **have called** already?
5. When we get to the movie theater, **will** the movie **have started** already?

14-5

1. **will have become** the record holder?
2. **will** she **have lived** in Moscow when her family arrives?
3. **will** Andy **have run**?
4. **will** they **have spent**?
5. **will** he **have written**?

Unit 15 Future Perfect Progressive

15-1

1. will have been living
2. will have been discussing
3. will have been practicing
4. will have been playing
5. will have been working

15-2

1. they **will not have been talking**
2. the subways **will not have been running**
3. they **will not have been producing**
4. the dance troupe **will not have been performing**
5. she **will not have been working**

15-3

1. they **won't have been working**
2. **they'll have been broadcasting**
3. **we'll have been renting**
4. **they'll have been returning**
5. he **won't have been assisting**

15-4

1. **will have been making** the schedule for five years?
2. **will** the dance contestants **have been dancing**?
3. **will** we **have been using** this computer?
4. **will** you **have been working** on this paper?
5. **will** Ron **have been keeping** a journal?

Part IV Imperative, Passive, and Hypothetical Conditional

Unit 16 Imperative

16-1

1. answer
2. Have
3. Open
4. be
5. Finish
6. Call
7. Bake
8. Meet
9. Turn
10. Drive

16-2

1. Do not be
   Don't be late!
2. Do not run
   Don't run on the deck of the pool.
3. Do not forget
   Don't forget your homework.
4. Do not lie
   Don't lie to me.
5. Do not shout
   Don't shout at us.
6. Do not drink
   Don't drink the water.
7. Do not start
   Don't start the car yet.
8. Do not blame
   Don't blame me.
9. Do not boil
   Don't boil the water too long.
10. Do not break
    Don't break anything.

16-3

1. Let's make
2. Let's not forget
3. Let's not stay
4. Let's call
5. Let's celebrate

Unit 17 Passive

17-1

1. will be rewarded
   He'll be rewarded for his work.
2. were affected
   They **were affected** by the changes in the tax law.
3. are delivered
   They're delivered daily.

4. are grown
   They're grown in Idaho.
5. were announced
   They **were announced** yesterday.
6. will be changed
   They'll be changed next week.
7. will be rescheduled
   It'll be rescheduled.
8. are invited
   They're invited to the party.
9. was blamed
   She **was blamed** for the error.
10. was destroyed
    It **was destroyed**.

17-2

1. is being broadcast (OR broadcasted)
   It's being broadcast (OR **broadcasted**) around the world.
2. are being developed
   They're being developed.
3. was being carried
   It **was being carried** to the plane when one of the suitcases popped open.
4. were being discussed
   They **were being discussed** when we arrived.
5. is being considered
   It's being considered.
6. were being checked
   They **were being checked** when the alarm rang.
7. are being elected
   They're being elected this year.
8. is being closed
   It's being closed because of safety problems.
9. were being ignored
   They **were being ignored** by the politicians.
10. are being collected
    They're being collected for the poor.

17-3

1. has been promoted
   He's been promoted.
2. will have been assigned
   They'll have been assigned by the time we arrive.
3. had been delayed
   They'd been delayed at the airport, so they were late.
4. will have been finished
   It'll have been finished when the director meets with us.
5. had been praised
   It'd been praised highly.
6. will have been notified
   We'll have been notified of any problems before we leave.
7. have been made
   They've been made.
8. has been offered
   It's been offered to Laila.
9. has been revised
   It's been revised.
10. had been improved
    They'd been improved since my previous visit.

17-4

1. The game **was not canceled**.
2. Rita **has not been fired**.
3. By this time next year, the project **will not have been completed**.
4. Some of the important issues **are not being discussed**.
5. Our bags **are not being searched**.
6. Your x-rays **will not be returned** to you.
7. The recent findings **are not being presented** to the public.
8. The cell phone **had not been taken** from the car.
9. This computer **has not been used** before.
10. The document **is not being prepared** by the secretary.

17-5

1. **Were** all questions **answered**?
2. **Ha**s everyone **been notified** of the cancellation?
3. **Will** the basketball game **be broadcast** (OR **broadcasted**)?
4. **Is** the road being **repaired**?
5. **Had** enough evidence **been collected**?
6. **Was** he **impressed** by the report?
7. **Have** the costs for the project **been calculated**?
8. **Are** jobs **being cut**?
9. **Are** solutions to the problem **being explored**?
10. **Will** the clock **be fixed** tomorrow?

17-6

1. Who **has been elected**?
2. What **was explored**?
3. Who **was given** a scholarship?
4. What **is grown** in Hawaii?
5. Who **is being honored** at the special dinner tonight?
6. When **are** the invitations **being sent**?
7. When **were** the books **moved** to the new library?
8. Where **are** the new lights **being installed**?
9. How many credits **are required** for graduation?
10. What **was damaged** in the fire?

Unit 18 Hypothetical Conditional

18-1

1. were, would change
2. checked, would know
3. commuted, would cost
4. had, would go
5. visited, would meet
6. mailed, would receive
7. lowered, would shop
8. earned, would buy
9. exercised, would be
10. were, would tell

18-2

1. had rained, would have canceled
2. had been, would have been
3. had known, would have taken
4. had followed, would have been
5. had studied, would have passed
6. had been, would have received
7. had raised, would have protested
8. had repaired, would have left
9. had revised, would have been
10. had been, would have hired

Part V Phrasal Verbs and Modal Auxiliary Verbs

Unit 19 Phrasal Verbs

19-1

go/goes out, went out, will go out
am/is/are going out, was/were going out, will be going out
has/have gone out, had gone out, will have gone out
has/have been going out, had been going out, will have been going out

19-2

1. has taken away
2. was putting on
3. will find out
4. am looking up
5. will be signing up
6. had put off
7. will have read through
8. has been putting out
9. will have been going over
10. take out
11. pointed out
12. had been paying back

19-3

am/is/are set up, was/were set up, will be set up
am/is are being set up, was/were being set up
has/have been set up, had been set up, will have been set up

19-4

1. had been eaten up
2. was blocked in
3. has been put out
4. will be blown up
5. is being slowed down
6. is brought about
7. was being broken into
8. will have been brought out

19-5

1. She **brought** the books **back** yesterday.
   She **brought** them **back** yesterday.
2. They **called** the game **off**.
   They **called** it **off**.
3. I **checked** the book **out** on Monday.
   I **checked** it **out** on Monday.
4. I **crossed** some names **out**.
   I **crossed** them **out**.
5. Someone **turned** the washing machine **off**.
   Someone **turned** it **off**.
6. I **called** my parents **up** last night.
   I **called** them **up** last night.
7. She **closed** her suitcase **up** and put it on the scale.
   She **closed** it **up** and put it on the scale.
8. I **cleaned** my desk **out** this morning.
   I **cleaned** it **out** this morning.
9. She **wrote** the number **down**.
   She **wrote** it **down**.
10. They **gave** their old furniture **away**.
    They **gave** it **away**.
11. Victor **helped** his sister **out**.
    Victor **helped** her **out**.
12. She **took** a map **down** and gave it to us.
    She **took** it **down** and gave it to us.

19-6

1. Jacob **is not writing down** the address.
2. She **has not booted up** the computer.
3. The hot weather **was not wearing** us **down**.
4. The books **were not brought back** yesterday.
5. The painting on the sidewalk **has not been washed off**.
6. I **am not bringing** my friend over tonight.
7. They **do not vote down** most proposals.
8. He **did not make up** the story.
9. I **will not print out** my paper on that printer.
10. The report **was not turned in** on time.
11. She **did not set it down** carefully.
12. They **had not been locked out** of their car before.

Unit 20 Modal Auxiliary Verbs

20-1

1. will
2. should
3. may
4. must
5. can
6. would
7. May
8. must
9. may
10. will
11. should
12. Can
13. may
14. would

20-2

1. are going to
2. ought to
3. used to
4. have to
5. is able to
6. used to
7. ought to
8. have to
9. are able to
10. is going to

20-3

1. was going to
2. ought to
3. had to
4. was able to
5. was going to
6. ought to
7. had to
8. were able to

20-4

1. might [modal], be able to [semi-modal]
2. are going to [semi-modal], be able to [semi-modal]
3. might [modal], have to [semi-modal]
4. are going to [semi-modal], have to [semi-modal]
5. will [modal], have to [semi-modal]

20-5

1. You **should not**
2. We **cannot**
3. Martin **is not able to**
4. The supervisor **is not going to**
5. They **may not**
6. You **must not**
7. we **would not**
8. they **will not**
9. I **do not have to**
10. You **should not**

20-6

1. You **shouldn't smoke** in this restaurant.
2. We **can't escape** the heat today.
3. Martin **isn't able to find** his books.
4. The supervisor **isn't going to be** happy.
5. No contraction possible
6. You **mustn't tell** anyone.
7. When we were little, we **wouldn't go** inside until 10:00.
8. For some reason, they **won't answer** their phone.
9. Tomorrow, I **don't have to get up** early.
10. You **shouldn't worry** so much.

20-7

1. should have
2. should have
3. should have OR could have OR ought to have
4. may have been OR might have been
5. must have
6. should have
7. may have OR might have
8. should have
9. must have
10. should have been OR could have been OR ought to have been

Part VI Gerund and Infinitive Complements

Unit 21 Gerunds

21-1

1. having
2. being surprised
3. having mentioned
4. trying
5. having been invited
6. eating
7. having been chosen
8. reviewing
9. having been
10. being treated
11. stopping
12. being given
13. playing
14. damaging
15. being introduced

21-2

The verbs and possible gerunds are provided. Other parts of the sentence may vary.

1. I **enjoy visiting** my relatives.
2. I **have avoided writing** letters.
3. I **dislike doing** chores on the weekend.

4. I **liked being told** the story about the three little pigs.
5. I **miss seeing** my friend Judy.

Unit 22 Infinitives

22-1

1. to be working
2. to pay
3. to have earned
4. to have fainted
5. to be hired
6. to help
7. to have been leaked
8. to be networking
9. to have received
10. to be given
11. to meet
12. to stay
13. to turn in
14. to move
15. to close

22-2

The verbs and infinitives are provided. Other parts of the sentence may vary.

1. I **plan to go** to the park.
2. I **intend to be** right here.
3. I **need to buy** a new notebook.
4. I **want to have** a pizza.
5. I **expect to study** chemistry.

22-3

1. him to exercise
2. us to attend
3. my sister to ride
4. me to turn
5. people to touch
6. Brent and me to be
7. local artists to hang
8. the protesters to leave
9. me to rethink
10. employers to provide
11. Robyn to major
12. everyone to conserve

Unit 23 Gerunds or Infinitives

23-1

1. infinitive: to rain	no significant change in meaning
2. infinitive: to bring	memory to perform action
3. gerund: quitting	memory of action
4. infinitive: to talk	no significant change in meaning
5. gerund: going	vivid depiction
6. infinitive: to clean up	hypothetical occurrence
7. gerund: returning	memory of action
8. gerund: throwing	vivid depiction
9. infinitive: to make	no significant change in meaning
10. infinitive: to take	potential occurrence

Review Exercises

R-1

1. He **doesn't work** on Sundays.
2. **Does** he **work** on Sundays?
3. When **does** he **work**?
4. Who **works** on Sundays?
5. This laptop **doesn't need** a new battery.
6. **Does** this laptop **need** a new battery?
7. **Do** you **like** action films?
8. You **don't like** action films.
9. What kind of films **do** you **like**?
10. **Does** your sister **live** in Chicago?
11. My sister **doesn't live** in Chicago.
12. Where **does** your sister **live**?
13. **Do** the teachers **meet** on Friday afternoons?
14. The teachers **don't meet** on Friday afternoons.
15. When **do** the teachers **meet**?

R-2

1. is; **It's** simple.
2. are; **We're** in a traffic jam.
3. is; **There's** a parking lot next to the restaurant.
4. am; **I'm** tired today.
5. are; **They're** at home.
6. is; **She's** my sister.
7. are; **You're** right.
8. is; **It's** sunny this morning.
9. is; **There's** a free concert today.
10. am; **I'm** in a hurry.
11. is; **He's** a doctor.
12. are; **You're** next.
13. are; **They're** teammates.
14. are; **We're** at home.
15. is; **She's** busy right now.

R-3

1. I **am studying** for a test right now. **I'm** studying for a test right now.
2. It **is not raining** anymore. **It's** not raining anymore. OR It **isn't** raining anymore.
3. **Are** you **not coming** to class today? **Aren't** you coming to class today?
4. We **are moving** to another apartment. **We're** moving to another apartment.
5. She **is watching** television tonight. **She's** watching television tonight.
6. They **are not telling** anyone about the accident. **They're** not telling anyone about the accident. OR They **aren't** telling anyone about the accident.
7. I **am cleaning** the kitchen tomorrow. **I'm** cleaning the kitchen tomorrow.
8. He **is working** overtime today. **He's** working overtime today.
9. You **are calling** me tonight, right? **You're** calling me tonight, right?
10. My parents **are not visiting** this weekend. My parents **aren't** visiting this weekend.
11. Someone **is knocking** on the door. **Someone's** knocking on the door.
12. This computer **is not working**. This **computer's** not working. OR This computer **isn't** working.
13. You **are doing** well in this course. **You're** doing well in this course.
14. We **are not seeing** eye to eye. **We're** not seeing eye to eye. OR We **aren't** seeing eye to eye.
15. Everything **is going** on sale because the store **is closing** permanently. **Everything's** going on sale because the **store's** closing permanently.

R-4

1. It **has been** a long day. **It's** been a long day.
2. He **has lived** in many countries. **He's** lived in many countries.
3. Who **has not completed** the assignment? Who **hasn't** completed the assignment?
4. We **have not had** much rain this year. We **haven't** had much rain this year.
5. You **have written** a great song. **You've** written a great song.
6. They **have not returned** yet. They **haven't** returned yet.

7. I **have not slept** well lately. I **haven't** slept well lately.
8. Lee **has not given** his report. Lee **hasn't** given his report.
9. There **have not been** any accidents this year. There **haven't** been any accidents this year.
10. She **has moved** to another apartment. **She's** moved to another apartment.
11. We **have not known** each other very long. We **haven't** known each each other very long.
12. It **has rained** all day. **It's** rained all day.
13. They **have found** the perfect apartment. **They've** found the perfect apartment.
14. Everyone **has heard** the news. **Everyone's** heard the news.
15. Who **has not made** a mistake? Who **hasn't** made a mistake?

R-5

1. **Have** they **been discussing** the problem?
2. They **haven't been** discussing the problem.
3. **Has** she **been living** in the same house for thirty years?
4. How long **has** she **been living** in the same house?
5. He **hasn't been waiting** a long time.
6. How long **has** he **been waiting**?
7. You **haven't been listening** closely.
8. **Have** you **been listening** closely?
9. They **haven't been getting** ready for the upcoming game.
10. **Have** they **been getting** ready for the upcoming game?
11. **Have** they **been monitoring** the situation closely?
12. They **haven't been** monitoring the situation closely.
13. **Have** we **been working** together for twenty years?
14. How long **have** we **been working** together?
15. We **haven't been working** together for twenty years.

R-6

1. The bus **left** on time. The bus **didn't leave** on time.
2. I **liked** the movie. I **didn't like** the movie.
3. Jason **remembered** the password. Jason **didn't remember** the password.
4. Sara **knew** the answer. Sara **didn't know** the answer.
5. You **told** the truth. You **didn't tell** the truth.
6. I **called** my parents last night. I **didn't call** my parents last night.
7. We **ordered** enough pizza for everyone. We **didn't order** enough pizza for everyone.
8. They **sold** their house. They **didn't sell** their house.
9. She **forgot** my name. She **didn't forget** my name.
10. We **had** enough money. We **didn't have** enough money.
11. The president **attended** the conference. The president **didn't attend** the conference.
12. It **snowed** last night. It **didn't snow** last night.
13. They **finished** by the deadline. They **didn't finish** by the deadline.
14. He **played** video games all day. He **didn't play** video games all day.
15. The whole family **went** to Disneyland. The whole family **didn't go** to Disneyland.

R-7

1. The room **was** too dark. **Was** the room too dark?
2. There **was** an accident in front of our apartment building. **Was** there an accident in front of our apartment building?
3. The students in the class **were** from many different countries. **Were** the students in the class from many different countries?
4. The news **was** good. **Was** the news good?
5. Her parents **were** late. **Were** her parents late?
6. The people next to you **were** from Australia. **Were** the people next to you from Australia?
7. There **were** empty seats on the plane. **Were** there empty seats on the plane?
8. Your teacher **was** nice. **Was** your teacher nice?
9. The instructions **were** clear. **Were** the instructions clear?
10. Everyone **was** healthy. **Was** everyone healthy?
11. The flight **was** on time. **Was** the flight on time?
12. No one **was** ready. **Was** no one ready?
13. The sidewalks **were** slippery. **Were** the sidewalks slippery?
14. The concert tickets **were** expensive. **Were** the concert tickets expensive?
15. The store **was** open during the holiday season. **Was** the store open during the holiday season?

R-8

1. In 2012, he **was taking** classes in computer science.
2. I **was thinking** about you all day.
3. Nothing **was happening**.
4. By 6:00 P.M., the guests **were arriving**.
5. I read an interesting article while I **was waiting** for you.
6. The sun **was shining** just a few minutes ago.
7. When they arrived at the gate, the other passengers **were boarding**.
8. Three years ago, we **were living** in Hawaii.
9. The buses **were running** late yesterday.
10. You **were sleeping** when I got home.
11. Everyone **was talking** about the game.
12. When we met, we **were studying** for a final exam.
13. Who **was waving** at you?
14. Last year he **was working** as a ski instructor.
15. I did the dishes while I **was listening** to a podcast.

R-9

1. If Joe **had left** home earlier, he wouldn't have missed the bus.
2. I would feel better if I **had slept** longer last night.
3. She would have completed the project if the printer **hadn't broken**.
4. If the plane **had been** on time, we wouldn't be in this traffic jam right now.
5. I wish it **hadn't rained** all day.
6. If Marie **had felt** better, she would have come along.
7. We wouldn't have gotten lost if there **had been** more signs.
8. I wish you **had told** me about your troubles sooner.
9. If they **had studied** more, they would have earned higher test scores.
10. Lisa wouldn't have gotten the job if you **hadn't helped** her.
11. If you **hadn't missed** the call, you might have received a job offer.
12. He wishes he **had remembered** her name.
13. She would have finished her paper if there **hadn't been** a power outage.
14. If we **had eaten** breakfast, we wouldn't be hungry now.
15. I wish you **hadn't said** that.

R-10

1. **I hadn't been listening** closely enough.
2. **They'd been working** overtime, so they needed a rest day.
3. **You hadn't been answering** your e-mail messages, so your mother was worried.
4. If **it hadn't been blowing** so hard, the fire wouldn't have spread.
5. **I hadn't been feeling** well, so I made a doctor's appointment.
6. **She'd been studying** hard, so she was prepared for the test.
7. **I'd been telling** the truth, but no one believed my story.
8. For some reason, **he hadn't been following** the directions.
9. **We hadn't been expecting** a visitor.
10. **They'd been hoping** for better results.
11. We **had been snacking** all day, so we weren't hungry for dinner.
12. It **had been raining** for hours, so they canceled the soccer match.
13. She **had been sneezing** all morning, but she didn't want to leave work early.
14. They **had been walking** an hour before they noticed the dark clouds.
15. I **hadn't been waiting** long at all.

R-11

1. It **will not be** too late when we arrive. It **won't be** too late when we arrive.
2. She **will take** the exam on Tuesday. **She'll take** the exam on Tuesday.
3. They **will not discuss** politics at the dinner table. They **won't discuss** politics at the dinner table.
4. Unless the forecast changes, it **will be** sunny next week. Unless the forecast changes, **it'll be** sunny next week.
5. We **will not finish** the project until Tuesday. We **won't finish** the project until Friday.
6. I **will meet** you in an hour. **I'll meet** you in an hour.
7. He **will not change** his ways. He **won't change** his ways.
8. You **will not tell** anyone my secret, will you? You **won't tell** anyone my secret, will you?
9. They **will take** the bus to school next year. **They'll take** the bus to school next year.
10. We **will work** until 5:00. **We'll work** until 5:00.

11. She **will turn** twenty in March. **She'll turn** twenty in March.
12. They **will give** new students a tour on Friday. **They'll give** new students a tour on Friday.
13. There **will not be** any more flights today. There **won't be** any more flights todays.
14. He **will not answer** his phone after 9:00 p.m. He **won't answer** his phone after 9:00 p.m.
15. I **will text** you the address. **I'll text** you the address.

R-12

1. Who **is going to give** the presentation?
2. Why **are** you **going to leave** early?
3. **Are** taxes **going to increase** next year?
4. When **is** he **going to fax** the forms?
5. Who **is going to guide** the tour?
6. Whom **are** they **going to invite**?
7. **Is** Jan **going to work** in Morocco?
8. How much **is** the trip **going to cost**?
9. How long **is** she **going to visit?**
10. Where **are** they **going to stay**?
11. When **are** they **going to arrive**?
12. Why **are** your friends **going to fly** to London?
13. How long **is** the procedure **going to take**?
14. **Are** you **going to go** home this weekend?
15. Who **is going to retire** next year?

R-13

1. **We'll be thinking** of you while you're away.
2. **They'll be studying** a new language.
3. **My brother won't be staying** home very long.
4. **I won't be working** while I'm on vacation.
5. **The company won't be supporting** that project much longer.
6. **You won't be playing** in the title match if you don't train more often.
7. **She'll be traveling** throughout Asia next year.
8. **My friend won't be visiting** this month.
9. **We'll be sharing** a room.
10. **Artur won't be relying** on anyone for help.
11. **They'll be visiting** their relatives this summer.
12. Amal **won't be coming** with us.
13. **He'll be graduating** in May.
14. **I won't be looking** over your shoulder anymore.
15. **It'll be getting** dark sooner.

R-14

1. In two months, most of the students **will have completed** all graduation requirements.
2. By the end of the week, you **will have received** your results.
3. When we reach El Paso, we **will have driven** 1,400 miles.
4. In 2020, I **will have lived** in the same place for ten years.
5. When Amanda turns thirty, she **will have visited** all the continents.
6. By the end of today, they **will have fasted** for twenty-four hours.
7. When you arrive in Amsterdam, you **will have spent** over ten hours on an airplane.
8. By the time he retires, Brian **will have been** a teacher for forty-three years.
9. The storm **will have passed** by the time our flight arrives.
10. In three weeks, **we will have taken** all of our final exams.
11. By Sunday, they **will have announced** the winners.
12. When the doctor leaves at the end of the day, he **will have seen** twenty patients.
13. **Will** you **have finished** your program by the end of the year?
14. **Will** they **have prepared** the room by the time guests arrive?
15. **Will** she **have started** her new business by this time next year?

R-15

1. When the bus finally arrives, we **will have been waiting** for an entire hour.
2. By 2020, the foundation **will have been funding** art projects for ten years.
3. By the time my sister gets here, she **will have been traveling** for thirty-six hours.

4. When the class ends, they **will have been studying** English for a whole year.
5. I **will have been blogging** for ten years by the beginning of September.
6. By the time we get to the top of the mountain, we **will have been hiking** for five hours.
7. On January 1, my parents **will have been living** in South Africa for five years.
8. On his birthday, Ian **will have been playing** the guitar for twenty-five years.
9. By the end of the week, the workers **will have been protesting** for a month.
10. When I turn forty, I **will have been working** for this company for seven years.
11. He **will have been running** for four hours when he finishes the marathon.
12. On their anniversary tour, they **will have been singing** together for ten years.
13. By the time they reach their destination, they **will have been traveling** for three days.
14. By Election Day, the candidates **will have been campaigning** hard for seven weeks.
15. Zac and Lexi **will have been meditating** for twenty hours by the end of the retreat.

R-16

1. **Call** me at work. **Don't call** me at work.
2. **Play** on the grass. **Don't play** on the grass.
3. **Stop** here. **Don't stop** here.
4. **Buy** the newspaper today. **Don't buy** the newspaper today.
5. **Look** up. **Don't look** up.
6. **Ask** questions. **Don't ask** questions.
7. **Walk** here. **Don't walk** here.
8. **Go** over there. **Don't go** over there.
9. **Talk** to me. **Don't talk** to me.
10. **Follow** me. **Don't follow** me.

R-17

1. Announcements **are posted** daily.
2. Tourists **are given** free maps.
3. Governance **is shared**.
4. Old phone books **are recycled**.
5. Names **are listed** in alphabetical order.
6. Many jobs **were created** this year.
7. Important documents **were shredded**.
8. The proposal **was revised** twice.
9. The outside door **was locked** at midnight.
10. Our passports **were checked** before we left the airport.
11. The movie **was directed** by Martin Scorsese.
12. The cost **will be recalculated**.
13. Your name **will be called** when the doctor is ready to see you.
14. This topic **will be discussed** at a future meeting.
15. Due dates **will be adjusted** as needed.

R-18

1. He **would do** much better if he **worked** harder.
2. If I **had** the time, I **would take** tennis lessons.
3. If we **met** at 4:00, we **would have** time for a walk before dinner.
4. Camille **would be** happy if we **visited** her this summer.
5. If I **were** not so tired, I **would go** out with you this evening.
6. You **would have** more energy if you **got** more sleep.
7. If you **shopped** earlier, you **would avoid** long lines.
8. If I **were** you, I **would accept** the job offer.
9. They **would have won** if the star **had played**.
10. If you **had listened** more closely, you **would have remembered** the directions.
11. If the weather **had been** better, we **would have played** golf.
12. I **would have visited** you if I **had known** your new address.
13. If Louise **had driven** slowly, she **would** not **have had** an accident.
14. If he **had paid** his bills on time, he **would have had** a better credit score.
15. We **would have saved** a lot of time if we **had taken** the shortcut.

R-19

1. Who **turned off** the lights?
2. I **will turn in** my report tomorrow.
3. He always **points out** my mistakes.
4. He **was picking up** his son at school when he received a text from his best friend.
5. Someone **broke into** their apartment.
6. The lawyer **will have gone over** the contract by the time we meet.
7. For years, I **have been calling up** my parents every Sunday morning.
8. She **was cleaning out** her desk when she found the old letter.
9. The plane **has** already **taken off**.
10. **Are** you **looking up** the phone number?
11. **Have** you **backed** up your files?
12. **I will pay off** my loan in December.
13. You finally **took down** last year's calendar.
14. **Is** he **turning in** his resignation tomorrow?
15. He **has checked through** his luggage, but he still hasn't found his wallet.

R-20

1. We **will** work late today.
2. You **should** talk to a lawyer.
3. He **may** be right.
4. Everyone **must** take the final exam.
5. She **can** speak five different languages.
6. You **may use** your notes during the test.
7. Back then, we **would play** soccer every afternoon.
8. He **should spend** less time in front of a computer screen.
9. They **are going to** come to the party, aren't they?
10. We **used to** send letters; now we talk on the phone.
11. I **have to** attend tomorrow's meeting.
12. She really **ought to** see a doctor.
13. He **is** not **able to** afford such an expensive apartment.
14. Who **is going to win** the World Cup?
15. We **have to leave** on Sunday.

R-21

1. They delayed **announcing** the winners until Saturday.
2. I finished **typing up** the report yesterday.
3. You'll risk **losing** your job if you aren't on time every day.
4. My father quit **smoking** last year.
5. Her car keeps **breaking down**.
6. She admits **having taken** drugs before the race.
7. Laura denied **having been** at the scene of the crime.
8. They appreciated **having received** your support.
9. I miss **being met** at the airport by my grandparents.
10. We mind **being punished** unjustly.
11. Somehow she avoided **being put** in an awkward position.
12. Did you enjoy **being introduced** to so many new people?
13. Carl appreciates **having been given** the opportunity to study abroad.
14. They disliked **having been treated** so rudely.
15. He hated **having been interrupted**.

R-22

1. My brother offered **to help**.
2. The storm caused us **to arrive** late.
3. They agreed **to meet** in person.
4. I hope **to be working** during the summer months.
5. The little boy pretended **to be sleeping**.
6. This rule seems **to be defeating** the purpose of education.
7. I wanted **to have finished** the project by now, but I had to change my plans.
8. You intended **to have completed** the application forms by yesterday.
9. She claims **to have met** the prime minister.
10. The car needs **to be fixed**.

11. Everyone deserves **to be heard**.
12. He expects **to be rewarded** for his efforts.
13. The problem seems **to have been solved**.
14. We expected **to have been paid** by now.
15. She planned **to have been promoted** by the time she was twenty-five.

R-23

1. infinitive: to bring; memory to perform an action
2. gerund: speaking; memory of an action
3. infinitive: to snow; no significant change in meaning
4. gerund: going; vivid depiction
5. infinitive: to study; potential occurrence
6. infinitive: to increase; no significant change in meaning
7. gerund: telling; vivid depiction
8. infinitive: to laugh; no significant change in meaning
9. gerund: giving; memory of action
10. infinitive: to work; potential occurrence
11. infinitive: to ask; indication of purpose
12. gerund: meeting; memory of action
13. gerund: painting; no significant change in meaning
14. infinitive: to take; potential occurrence
15. gerund: laughing; cessation of activity

R-24

overspent, bent, fled, slept, written, known, drunk, hung, hurt, let

R-25

1. Both countries **have rebuilt** their economies.
2. He **has felt** more energetic lately.
3. The receptionist **has put** me on hold.
4. She **has broken** the world record twice in a row.
5. They **have known** about the fire hazard for over a year.
6. You **have sung** that song too many times.
7. I **have read** that book already.
8. We **have heard** that story before.
9. Josh **has gone** out with friends.
10. I **have** not **done** my homework yet.
11. They **have** still not **left** for the airport.
12. Her dad **has** not **met** her boyfriend.
13. **Have** they **been** here before?
14. **Has** he **had** any experience in marketing?
15. **Have** you **lost** your keys again?

R-26

lent, resent, told, kept, wrote, knew, sat, fed, quit, cut

1. The book **cost** $20.00.
2. He **came** to the party alone.
3. The company **spent** an enormous amount on advertising.
4. The owners **sold** their business.
5. I **gave** him your message.
6. She **put** the groceries in the back seat of the car.
7. We **ate** in silence.
8. They **said** good night and **left**.
9. I **had** a headache last night.
10. You **did** not **tell** me about it.
11. The politician **did** not **write** his own speeches.
12. She **did** not **speak** English at home.
13. **Did** you **know** him very well?
14. **Did** they **take** any notes during the lecture?
15. **Did** he **go** to the meeting yesterday

Mc
Graw
Hill
The Most Trusted Name in Education

PRACTICE
MAKES
PERFECT™

English Verb Tenses

Up Close

- *Discover the most in-depth treatment of verb meaning*
- *Eliminate errors that identify advanced ESL users as non-native speakers*
- *Practice with plenty of challenging and engaging exercises*

Mark Lester, PhD

PRACTICE
MAKES
PERFECT™

English Verb Tenses
Up Close

Mark Lester

McGraw Hill

New York Chicago San Francisco Lisbon London Madrid Mexico City
Milan New Delhi San Juan Seoul Singapore Sydney Toronto

Copyright © 2012 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

ISBN: 978-0-07-175354-8

MHID: 0-07-175354-0

The material in this eBook also appears in the print version of this title: ISBN: 978-0-07-175212-1,
MHID: 0-07-175212-9.

All trademarks are trademarks of their respective owners. Rather than put a trademark symbol after every occurrence of a trademarked name, we use names in an editorial fashion only, and to the benefit of the trademark owner, with no intention of infringement of the trademark. Where such designations appear in this book, they have been printed with initial caps.

McGraw-Hill eBooks are available at special quantity discounts to use as premiums and sales promotions, or for use in corporate training programs. To contact a representative please e-mail us at bulksales@mcgraw-hill.com.

McGraw-Hill, the McGraw-Hill Publishing logo, Practice Makes Perfect, and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of The McGraw-Hill Companies and/or its affiliates in the United States and other countries and may not be used without written permission. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. The McGraw-Hill Companies is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

TERMS OF USE

This is a copyrighted work and The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. ("McGraw-Hill") and its licensors reserve all rights in and to the work. Use of this work is subject to these terms. Except as permitted under the Copyright Act of 1976 and the right to store and retrieve one copy of the work, you may not decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, reproduce, modify, create derivative works based upon, transmit, distribute, disseminate, sell, publish or sublicense the work or any part of it without McGraw-Hill's prior consent. You may use the work for your own noncommercial and personal use; any other use of the work is strictly prohibited. Your right to use the work may be terminated if you fail to comply with these terms.

THE WORK IS PROVIDED "AS IS." McGRAW-HILL AND ITS LICENSORS MAKE NO GUARANTEES OR WARRANTIES AS TO THE ACCURACY, ADEQUACY OR COMPLETENESS OF OR RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED FROM USING THE WORK, INCLUDING ANY INFORMATION THAT CAN BE ACCESSED THROUGH THE WORK VIA HYPERLINK OR OTHERWISE, AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. McGraw-Hill and its licensors do not warrant or guarantee that the functions contained in the work will meet your requirements or that its operation will be uninterrupted or error free. Neither McGraw-Hill nor its licensors shall be liable to you or anyone else for any inaccuracy, error or omission, regardless of cause, in the work or for any damages resulting therefrom. McGraw-Hill has no responsibility for the content of any information accessed through the work. Under no circumstances shall McGraw-Hill and/or its licensors be liable for any indirect, incidental, special, punitive, consequential or similar damages that result from the use of or inability to use the work, even if any of them has been advised of the possibility of such damages. This limitation of liability shall apply to any claim or cause whatsoever whether such claim or cause arises in contract, tort or otherwise.

Contents

Preface v

1 Introduction to stative and dynamic verbs 1

2 The present tense 13

3 The past tense 29

4 The future tense 33

5 Introduction to the perfect tenses 49

6 The present perfect tense 53

7 The past perfect tense 67

8 The future perfect tense 79

9 Introduction to the progressive tenses 83

10 The present progressive tense 87

11 The past progressive tense 111

12 The future progressive tense 127

13 The perfect progressive tenses 137

Answer key 149

This page intentionally left blank

Preface

This book is a user's manual for English verb tenses. Three chapters introduce (1) stative and dynamic verbs, (2) perfect tenses, and (3) progressive tenses. Ten other chapters cover the 10 tenses of English. Each of these specific tense chapters begins with a survey of the different meanings and uses of the tense, followed by an in-depth examination of each, paying particular attention to topics that are most likely to be troublesome to nonnative speakers, including how that tense is like and unlike other tenses that have similar meanings.

Because the book is focused exclusively on verb tenses, it is able to go into much greater depth than other books intended for nonnative speakers. A particular focus of this book is on lower-frequency meanings and uses that are generally ignored in most books. For example, the discussion of the present tense identifies no fewer than seven different uses, three of which are for present time, two for past time, and two for future time. Most books discuss only one or two of these meanings.

Another example is in the treatment of the three progressive tenses. For some reason, the progressive tenses have a number of rather idiomatic uses that are rarely mentioned in most ESL books. Because most of these idiomatic uses occur in casual conversation rather than in formal writing, most advanced nonnative speakers are unaware that these uses even exist even though they are actually fairly common in conversation and often convey significant information, attitudes, and social commentaries.

How to use this book

Each chapter is designed to stand alone. If a particular verb tense is a problem for you, you can read the relevant chapter without any prerequisite with one major exception: you *should* read Chapter 1, "Introduction to stative and dynamic verbs." So many problems with verb tenses are rooted in users' not recognizing stative verbs that it seems most efficient to have a single detailed treatment of stative and dynamic verbs that can be referred to when needed rather than have a bare-bones treatment in every chapter.

The other brief chapter introductions to the families of perfect and progressive verbs (Chapters 5 and 9, respectively) might be helpful but do not need to be read if you're comfortable with the concepts. Even so, Chapters 1, 5, and 9 do have exercises to hammer home knowledge.

Any example sentence marked with **X** is incorrect English. Those sentences marked with **?** indicate questionable or not fully presentable English.

All exercises in this book are covered in the Answer key.

Introduction to stative and dynamic verbs

·1·

Not all verbs are equal when it comes to the meaning and use of verb tenses. Verbs can be divided into two families or classes: **stative** and **dynamic**. These classes very much affect our choices of which verb tense to use. As the names imply, **stative** verbs refer to ongoing, existing states or conditions that are not time bound. **Dynamic** verbs, on the other hand, refer to actions or activities that take place in a moment or limited period of time and then are completed. Dynamic verbs are time bound. For example, compare the meanings of the stative verb *own* and the dynamic verb *wash*:

Stative	Roberta owns a pickup truck.
Dynamic	Roberta is washing her truck.

The stative verb *owns* implies that Roberta's ownership of the truck is an ongoing, existing state: she has owned the truck for some time, she owns the truck now, and she will continue to own the truck for some indefinite time into the future. Her ownership of the truck is not a time-bound activity (even though, obviously, it does not last forever).

The dynamic verb *wash* is quite different: the act of washing something is necessarily a temporary, time-limited activity. Roberta started washing her truck a few minutes ago, and in a few minutes, she will have finished the act of washing her truck. Washing a truck is a time-bound activity.

Notice that the stative verb example is in the present tense. The basic meaning of the present tense is "state that has existed in the past, exists now, and will continue to exist into foreseeable future," a meaning that is quite compatible with the inherent meaning of stative verbs. However, the present tense is not compatible with the "temporary, time-limited activity" meaning of dynamic verbs. Accordingly, we cannot use the dynamic verb *wash* in the bare present tense without other qualifiers:

X Roberta washes her truck.

We can make stative verbs grammatical in the present tense by adding an adverb of frequency; for example:

Roberta washes her truck *every weekend*.

The addition of the adverb of frequency *every weekend* changes the meaning of the sentence by now making the action of the verb habitual or cyclical. Actions that are habitual or cyclical are reoccurring and are not time bound, thereby making the action of the verb compatible with the ongoing nature of the present tense. But without the added adverb of frequency, the use of present tense by itself is ungrammatical.

The dynamic verb *wash* can be used in any progressive tense because the basic meaning of the progressive tenses (action carried out in a particular moment of time) is perfectly suited for the time-limited action of dynamic verbs:

Present progressive	Roberta is washing her truck now.
Past progressive	Roberta was washing her truck when you called.
Future progressive	Roberta will be washing her truck this afternoon.

However, if we attempt to use the stative verb *own* in any progressive tense, the result is predictably ungrammatical:

Present progressive	X Roberta is owning a pickup truck.
Past progressive	X Roberta was owning a pickup truck at the time.
Future progressive	X Roberta will be owning a pickup truck when she moves to Alaska.

Note: in Chapter 10, "The present progressive tense," there is a much more detailed discussion of why nonnative speakers make so many errors by using stative verbs with the present progressive tense.

Some verbs can be used either as dynamic verbs or as stative verbs. When this happens, the two different uses of the same verb will necessarily have different meanings. Here is an example with the verb *weigh*:

Stative	The steak *weighs* a pound.

In this example, the stative verb *weigh* describes an ongoing condition, namely that the steak weighs a pound. The sentence is a factual statement not bound by time: the steak will continue to weigh a pound for the foreseeable future.

Dynamic	The butcher *is weighing* the steak right now.

In this example, the dynamic verb *weigh* expresses an action carried out at a particular moment of time, an action that is definitely time bound: the butcher started weighing the steak a few moments ago, and in a moment or two, the butcher will be finished with the action of weighing.

As we would expect, the stative verb *weigh* cannot be used in any progressive tense:

Present progressive	**X** The steak is weighing a pound.
Past progressive	**X** The steak was weighing a pound.
Future progressive	**X** The steak will be weighing a pound.

Here is a second example: *see*. The basic meaning of the verb *see* is "perceive," either physically with one's eyes or more abstractly, as in to "know" or "figure out." In both of these meanings, *see* is a stative verb:

Physically	
Present tense	I see you.
Present progressive tense	**X** I am seeing you.
Abstractly	
Present tense	I see what you mean.
Present progressive tense	**X** I am seeing what you mean.

However, there is a third, quite idiomatic meaning of *see*: "be romantically involved with someone." In this meaning, *see* is a dynamic verb:

Present tense	**X** Harriet sees a young man from her school.
Present progressive tense	Harriet is seeing a young man from her school.

Before we get into the details of how to identify stative verbs, see if you can distinguish stative and dynamic verbs in the following exercise just based on your intuitive sense of the fit between the meaning of these particular verbs and the present and present progressive tenses. If the meaning of the verb fits with the timeless, ongoing nature of the present tense, then you can reasonably guess that it is a stative verb. If the verb fits with the temporary, time-bound meaning of the present progressive tense, then you can reasonably guess that it is a dynamic verb.

EXERCISE
1·1

*Rewrite the following sentences replacing the underlined base-form verbs with both the present tense and the present progressive tense forms. Compare both forms, and decide which one seems intuitively correct. If the present tense sentence seems correct and the present progressive seems wrong, label the verb "Stative." Conversely, if the present progressive tense seems correct and the present tense seems wrong, label the verb "Dynamic." The first two are done as examples, with "***X***" indicating incorrect English and "OK" identifying a correct sentence.*

Look. It rain.
PRESENT TENSE: Look. It rains. **X**
PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE: Look. It is raining. OK
Rain is a dynamic verb.

Aunt Jane like her coffee with cream.
PRESENT TENSE: Aunt Jane likes her coffee with cream. OK
PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE: Aunt Jane is liking her coffee with cream. **X**
Like is a stative verb.

1. I count to 10.

   Present tense: ____________________

   Present progressive tense: ____________________

   ____

2. He hate having to repeat himself.

   Present tense: ____________________

   Present progressive tense: ____________________

   ____

3. We all hear what we want to hear.

   Present tense: ____________________

   Present progressive tense: ____________________

   ____

4. We want to leave after work as soon as we can.

Present tense: ______________________________

Present progressive tense: ______________________________

____

5. The company expand its product line.

Present tense: ______________________________

Present progressive tense: ______________________________

____

6. I make a reservation for our trip next week.

Present tense: ______________________________

Present progressive tense: ______________________________

____

7. Their stock portfolio consist largely of bonds and conservative stocks.

Present tense: ______________________________

Present progressive tense: ______________________________

____

8. The publisher review her latest book.

Present tense: ______________________________

Present progressive tense: ______________________________

____

9. John accept that he is going to have to relocate.

Present tense: ______________________________

Present progressive tense: ______________________________

____

10. I know the answer.

Present tense: ______________________________

Present progressive tense: ______________________________

____

Because stative verbs pose such a problem for nonnative speakers, it is important to be able to identify stative verbs when you encounter them. There are far too many stative verbs (somewhere between 100 and 200) to just memorize a list. There is also the problem that many stative verbs can also be used as dynamic verbs (with different meanings, of course), so the fact that a given verb is on the list of stative verbs does not always mean that it is being used as a stative verb in any particular sentence.

Nearly all stative verbs fall into the following five semantic categories:

Category 1: Cognition and emotion (the largest category)
Category 2: Obligation, necessity, and desire
Category 3: Ownership and possession
Category 4: Measurement
Category 5: Linking verbs with the meaning of appearance and sense perception (The term *linking verb* is explained in detail later.)

Here are some typical verbs in the five categories along with paired examples of the same verb used in the present tense and a progressive tense. The fact that the sentences are ungrammatical in the progressive tenses confirms that the verb is indeed a stative verb.

Category 1: Cognition and emotion

Examples: believe, doubt, hate, love, mean, think, understand

Present tense	I understand what you mean.
Progressive tense	**X** I am understanding what you mean.
Present tense	Sally loves being able to walk to work.
Progressive tense	**X** Sally is loving being able to walk to work.

Category 2: Obligation, necessity, and desire

Examples: desire, have to, need, prefer, promise, require, want, wish

Present tense	We have to find out what is going on.
Progressive tense	**X** We are having to find out what is going on.
Present tense	I wish I didn't have to get to work so early.
Progressive tense	**X** I am wishing I didn't have to get to work so early.

Category 3: Ownership and possession

Examples: belong, have, own, possess

Present tense	They have a small apartment near the university.
Progressive tense	**X** They are having a small apartment near the university.
Present tense	That dog belongs to our next-door neighbor.
Progressive tense	**X** That dog is belonging to our next-door neighbor.

Category 4: Measurement

Examples: consist of, contain, cost, equal

Present tense	Chain-saw fuel consists of a mixture of gas and oil.
Progressive tense	**X** Chain-saw fuel is consisting of a mixture of gas and oil.
Present tense	Two plus two equals four.
Progressive tense	**X** Two plus two is equaling four.

Category 5: Linking verbs with the meaning of appearance and sense perception

Examples: appear, be, feel, hear, look, seem, taste

Present tense	The left lane appears to be blocked.
Present progressive tense	**X** The left lane is appearing to be blocked.
Present tense	The children seem upset.
Present progressive tense	**X** The children are seeming upset.

EXERCISE 1·2

The underlined verbs in the following sentences are all stative verbs correctly used in the present tense. Decide which of the following five categories is the best fit for describing each of these stative verbs:

Category 1: Cognition and emotion
Category 2: Obligation, necessity, and desire
Category 3: Ownership and possession
Category 4: Measurement
Category 5: Linking verbs with the meaning of appearance and sense perception.
The first sentence is done as an example.

Your purchase includes a 30-day money-back guarantee.

ANSWER: Category 3: Ownership and possession

1. I doubt that we can afford to buy a new car right now.

____

2. The soup tastes way too salty.

____

3. My new car has a state-of-the-art GPS.

____

4. The decline in real estate values amounts to billions of dollars.

____

5. The new law requires all drivers to have proof of insurance.

____

6. The noise sounds like it is coming from outside.

____

7. Relatively few foreign students belong to fraternities or sororities.

____

8. The kids seem cranky this morning.

____

9. A new suit costs at least 200 dollars these days.

____

10. His sudden change of policy satisfies no one.

____

EXERCISE 1·3

The underlined verbs in the following sentences are in their base forms. Label each verb by type. If the verb is a stative verb, replace the base form with the present tense form and indicate which of the five categories of stative verbs best describes this verb. If the verb is a dynamic verb, replace the base form with the present progressive. The first two sentences are done as examples.

The branch break under the weight of the snow.

ANSWER: Dynamic: The branch is breaking under the weight of the snow.

I remember what you told me.

ANSWER: Stative: I remember what you told me.
Category 1: Cognition and emotion

1. Nature abhor a vacuum. (saying)

____

2. I suppose that the concert is at 8:00.

____

3. John fill the car with gas while we get ready to go.

____

4. Everyone recognize the need to keep our costs down.

____

5. They visit her parents in Detroit this weekend.

____

6. He deserve better treatment than that!

____

7. She belong to a book club that meets once a month.

____

8. We sell what we can’t take with us when we move.

____

9. This key fit the door to the garage.

____

10. Senator Blather announce his support for the trade agreement today.

____

Category 5, linking verbs with the meaning of appearance and sense perception, is different from the other four categories in that this category is not defined solely by meaning. It is also defined by its grammatical properties.

Linking verbs are a small (but very frequently used) group of verbs that have the unique characteristic of taking **predicate adjectives** and **predicate nominatives** as their **complements** (as opposed to **action verbs** that take **objects**). The complements always refer back to the subject, hence the term *linking* because the verb always connects or “links” the complement back to the subject. Here are some examples using the linking verb *be*:

Predicate adjective complements

Their son is quite tall for his age. (The predicate adjective *tall* refers back to the subject *their son*.)

The performance was very enjoyable. (The predicate adjective *enjoyable* refers back to the subject *the performance*.)

Predicate nominative complements

Their son is a high school student. (The predicate noun *a high school student* refers back to the subject *their son*.)

The performance was a huge success. (The predicate noun *a huge success* refers back to the subject *the performance*.)

We can divide linking verbs into two classes: stative linking verbs and dynamic linking verbs. Here are some examples:

STATIVE LINKING VERBS	DYNAMIC LINKING VERBS
appear	become
be	get
feel	grow
look	prove
seem	remain
sound	stay
taste	turn

As you can see, stative linking verbs are the verb *be* (the most commonly used verb in English) and verbs of appearance and sense perception.

Here are some examples of both classes used in the present and present progressive tenses.

The verb *be* is almost always used as a stative verb. Here is what happens when we try to use *be* in the progressive tense:

X Their son is being quite tall for his age.
X The performance was being very enjoyable.
X Their son is being a high school student.
X The performance was being a huge success.

We can use *be* as a dynamic verb in the special sense of "deliberately perform or act as"; for example:

Steven is being a total jerk.

The example sentence describes the way that Steven is acting at the moment. It does not mean that Steven is always a jerk. If we meant to say that, we would use the present tense:

Steven is a total jerk.

Here are examples of some stative and dynamic linking verbs:

Stative linking verbs

Examples: appear, taste

Present tense	The situation appears to be getting worse.
Present progressive tense	**X** The situation is appearing to be getting worse.
Present tense	The coffee tastes good.
Present progressive tense	**X** The coffee is tasting good.

Dynamic linking verbs

Examples: become, get

Present tense	**X** Sally becomes a good tennis player.
Present progressive tense	Sally is becoming a good tennis player.
Present tense	**X** The situation gets worse as time passes.
Present progressive tense	The situation is getting worse as time passes.

EXERCISE 1·4

All of the underlined verbs in the following sentences are linking verbs in their base forms. Decide whether the verbs are stative verbs or dynamic verbs, and then rewrite the verb in either its present tense or present progressive tense form as appropriate. The first two sentences are done as examples.

The job prove harder than I thought.

ANSWER: Dynamic: The job is proving harder than I thought.

He appear angry about something.

ANSWER: Stative: He appears angry about something.

1. The saw get too hot to operate.
2. His idea sound pretty good to me.
3. The weather turn bitterly cold with the wind and cloud cover.
4. The pizza look done.
5. I be ready to go whenever you are.
6. I become more and more optimistic about Aunt Mary's recovery.
7. The cloth feel too smooth to be wool.

8. His cooking taste terrible.

____

9. The company become a highly successful operation.

____

10. Uh-oh, the vegetables smell burned.

____

The present tense

·2·

The present tense has a diverse range of meanings. There are no fewer than seven distinct meanings for the present tense distributed across not only present time but also past and future time as well. Here is a brief summary of the seven different meanings divided into three groups—the first group dealing with present time, the second group dealing with past time, and the third group dealing with future time:

Present time

1. Makes assertions or generalizations about ongoing conditions or states
2. Describes existing habits or customs
3. Comments on present-time actions

Past time

4. Recounts ideas or information from the past that affects us in the present
5. Comments on or paraphrases the works of others

Future time

6. Refers to future events if those events are fixed or scheduled
7. Refers to future events in adverb clauses when the main clause uses *will*

We will now discuss the present, past, and future uses of the present tense in detail.

Using the present tense for present time

Not surprisingly, the most common use of the present tense is for the present period of time. It is critical to understand that there are two fundamentally different ways of conceptualizing what we mean by "present time": (1) the present moment of time or (2) a span or period of time that is not bound to the present moment of time; that is, the verb describes an ongoing "timeless" state or condition.

If we want to refer to the present moment of time, we do not use the present tense at all; instead, we use the present progressive. If we want to refer to a span or period of present time, we use the present tense.

Here is an example that shows the difference between the two tenses:

Present progressive	Bill is walking the dog.
Present	Bill walks to help control his blood pressure.

The implication of the present progressive sentence is that Bill is out walking at this present moment of time. The present tense sentence does not tell us what Bill is doing at the moment. It tells us that Bill takes walks for his health, but it implies nothing about what Bill is doing at the present moment. In fact, Bill might not have walked for weeks.

EXERCISE 2·1

Each pair of sentences uses the same verb in its infinitive form (in parentheses). One of the sentences uses the verb to talk about an existing present condition; the other sentence uses the verb to talk about the present moment of time. Replace the verb in parentheses with the present tense if the verb is talking about an existing condition. Replace the verb in parentheses with the present perfect if the verb is talking about the present moment of time. The first is done as an example.

treat

Doctors ~~(treat)~~ this type of infection with broad-spectrum antibiotics.

is treating

The doctor ~~(treat)~~ the infection with a broad-spectrum antibiotic.

1. I can't see you. The light (shine) in my eyes.

   The light (shine) against the paintings on the wall.

2. The kids (play) in the living room.

   The kids (play) indoors when it rains.

3. The company (publish) my first novel.

   The company (publish) works by new authors.

4. Bad news always (spread) faster than good news.

   The news (spread) all over town.

5. We (gain) weight as we get older.

   We (gain) weight on this trip.

6. The board (make) the final decision on hiring.

   The board (make) a bad mistake.

7. Conflicts about immigration always (divide) communities.

   The conflict on immigration (divide) the community into factions.

8. The garage always (check) the oil.

   The mechanic (check) the oil now.

9. John (smile) whenever he thinks about what you said.

   John (smile) at what you just said.

10. We (walk) every chance we get.

    We (walk) to the park. Want to come along?

The present tense verbs that treat the present as a "timeless" span or period of time fall into two distinct categories: (1) verbs that make assertions or generalizations about ongoing conditions or states and (2) verbs that describe habits or customs. We will discuss both ways of treating present time.

Assertions or generalizations about ongoing conditions or states. As noted in Chapter 1, verbs in English (and most other languages, for that matter) can be divided into two large families: **dynamic** and **stative**; 99 percent of all verbs belong to the dynamic family. The traditional definition of verb (a word that shows action) refers exclusively to dynamic verbs. Dynamic verbs do things; for example: *run, jump, sing, work, sleep*.

Stative verbs, on the other hand, don't really do anything. Instead, they describe conditions or states. While there are only a relative handful of stative verbs, they are among the most frequently used verbs. For example, *be* and *have* are stative verbs. Here are some examples:

Be Mary is cold.
Mary is a farmer.
Have Mary has a little lamb.
The lamb has a ribbon around its neck.

In these example sentences, the subjects (*Mary* and the *lamb*) are not doing anything. Rather, the stative verbs *be* and *have* are used to describe or tell us something about the subjects.

The reason why the distinction between dynamic and stative verbs is relevant to this discussion is that the present tenses of *all* stative verbs make assertions or generalizations about presently existing conditions or states, and as such, they must be used in the present tense because that is what the function of the present tense is: to make assertions about ongoing conditions or states. In fact, if we try to use stative verbs in the present progressive, the result is predictably ungrammatical:

Be **X** Mary is being cold.
X Mary is being a farmer.
Have **X** Mary is having a little lamb.
X The lamb is having a ribbon around its neck.

The inherently different meanings of these two types of verbs cause them to interact very differently with the present tense. The timeless meaning of stative verbs is a perfect match with the timeless meaning of the present tense. Conversely, the time-bound meaning of dynamic verbs makes them incompatible with the basic "timeless" meaning of the present tense; for example, when we use the dynamic verb *buy* in the present, the result is ungrammatical:

X John buys a truck.

As we will see, we can make this and other dynamic verbs grammatical in the present tense, but only if we use them in sentences that make "timeless" assertions or generalizations, or use the verbs to describe habitual or customary actions.

Most stative verbs can be grouped into the following six semantic categories (with examples):

Appearance: appear, be, look, seem
Cognition: believe, know, mean, think, understand
Emotions: appreciate, desire, dislike, doubt, hate, like, need, prefer, want, wish
Measurement: consist of, contain, cost, have, measure, weight
Sense: feel, hear, see, seem, smell, taste
Ownership: belong, have, own, possess

(**Note:** some verbs appear twice because they can be used with different meanings.)

EXERCISE
2·2

The underlined verbs in the following sentences are all in the present tense. The sentences that use stative verbs are grammatical; the sentences that use dynamic verbs are ungrammatical. In the space provided, write "OK" if the sentence is grammatical; write "Not OK" if the sentence is not grammatical. The first two sentences are done as examples.

I like how you have arranged your office.

ANSWER: OK

We compare the results from the two samples.

ANSWER: Not OK

1. I shake the tree to make the nuts fall off. ______________________
2. I doubt that we can get to the meeting on time. ______________________
3. The police identify the suspect. ______________________
4. His proposal sounds pretty attractive to me. ______________________
5. We arrange a meeting between the two groups. ______________________
6. I gain two pounds over the holiday. ______________________
7. We know what you mean. ______________________
8. The whole project costs more than we can afford to pay. ______________________
9. I fill the tank with gas. ______________________
10. The results in the study closely resemble the result predicted in the model. ______________________
11. When the water in the tank equals the water outside the tank, the gate will open. ______________________
12. Their lawyer explains the problem. ______________________
13. The job entails a great deal of travel. ______________________
14. I watch TV. ______________________
15. I hear what you are saying. ______________________

Dynamic verbs can also be used in the present tense, but only if one of the following two conditions on the meaning of the sentence are met: (1) the sentence makes an assertion or generalization about existing conditions or states, or (2) the sentence describes existing habits or customs. Let us take these conditions in order:

The assertions/generalizations can be of an objective, scientific nature; for example:

> The planets revolve around the sun.
> Fresh water floats on top of sea water.

They can be publicly verifiable; for example:

> The semesters at our school last 15 weeks.
> He gives private piano lessons.

They can be totally subjective personal opinions; for example:

> Kids today spend too much time playing computer games.
> Greenhouse gases cause global warming.
> Cable TV costs too much.

Notice that none of these examples of dynamic verbs is tied to a specific moment in time. All are essentially "timeless" generalizations.

Existing habits or customs. Here are some examples of verbs in this category:

> I always take my lunch to work.
> We go to the movies every chance we get.
> She normally checks her messages first thing in the morning.
> The westbound train stops here only in the morning.
> The kids usually do their homework right after school.

Verbs in this category describe a behavior that is typical or normal. It does not mean that the action is being performed at the present moment. For example:

> We usually eat dinner at my mother's house on Sunday.

This sentence does not mean that we are eating at my mother's house now. In fact, the sentence would still be a valid statement if we haven't seen my mother in a month.

One of the characteristics of this use of the present tense is that the sentence typically contains an adverb of frequency such as *usually*, *always*, *every day*, *normally*, or *every weekend*.

EXERCISE 2·3

All of the following sentences use the present tense of dynamic verbs, some sentences correctly, some incorrectly. If the sentence is grammatical, write "OK" in the space provided and then give the reason that justifies using the present tense. Use either "assertion" or "habitual." If the use of the present tense is ungrammatical, write "Not OK." The first three sentences are done as examples.

We usually start around 8:00.

ANSWER: OK habitual

I ask the same question.

ANSWER: Not OK

Cold winters kill the beetles that attack pine trees.

ANSWER: OK assertion

1. Eating too much always makes me sleepy.

2. Garlic lowers one's blood pressure.

____

3. The two parties discuss the agreement.

____

4. Research proves that listening to loud music permanently damages teenagers' hearing.

____

5. The janitor normally locks up after everyone leaves.

____

6. The flood waters spread throughout the valley.

____

7. The nurse treats the wound now.

____

8. Journalists never tell who their sources are.

____

9. The company publishes my first book.

____

10. Ravens and crows recognize people they have seen before.

____

Finally, there is a third use of the present tense that refers to present time. However, this use is completely different from the first two because this third use actually does refer to the present moment of time (unlike the other two already discussed). We can use the present tense to comment on or describe an ongoing present time action. Obviously, the situations in which we would use the present tense in this manner are highly restricted. The most common situations are sports events, demonstrations, and speech act commentaries. Here are some examples of each type:

Sports event	Here comes the pitch. Johnston swings and misses. Rodriguez is tripped in midfield. The referee blows his whistle and gives a yellow card to the defender.
Demonstration	Next, I add a cup of flour and stir in thoroughly. Finally, I close all open windows and reboot the computer.

Speech act commentary I hereby resign from the council.
We accept your offer.

We have now identified three different ways present tense verbs refer to present time:

- By making assertions or generalizations about ongoing conditions or states
- By describing presently existing habits or customs
- By commenting on present-time ongoing actions

EXERCISE 2·4

The underlined present tense verbs are all used correctly. Identify which of the three ways of using the present tense best describes the verb in each sentence using the following shorthand labels: (1) making assertions; (2) describing habits; (3) commenting on present-time actions. The first is done as an example.

The dog wants to go out for a walk.

ANSWER: (1) making assertions

1. Clothes dry a lot faster in hot weather.
2. Today I announce my candidacy for the presidency of the United States.
3. Houston, we have a problem.
4. This children's cereal contains nothing but sugar and refined carbohydrates.
5. Smith scores from 10 feet out.
6. Janet gets the weather forecast every morning before she decides what to wear.
7. My wife always reads the ending of books first.
8. I really like the food here.

9. New cars cost a fortune to repair because of all the electronics they have in them.

10. The company sends cards to all its employees at Christmas every year.

11. First, we combine all the dry ingredients together in a large bowl.

12. Many people vote for whoever promises to lower their taxes the most.

13. Every night my father locks up the house before he goes to bed.

14. The bus is late this morning.

15. The pond attracts a lot of mosquitoes.

Using the present tense for past time

We use the present tense for referring to the past in two ways: (1) recounting ideas or information from the past that affects us in the present, and (2) commenting on or paraphrasing the works of others.

Recounting ideas or information from the past that affects us in the present

Normally, when we talk or write about specific events, we do so in the past tense. For example, virtually all novels and short stories are written in the past tense. As we will see in the next section of this chapter, the basic meaning of the past tense is that the action described in the past tense is finished—over and done with.

But what if we want to talk about something that happened in the past that directly affects us in the present moment of time? Suppose, for example, that you heard on the evening news that a bad storm was predicted for your area. You could tell other people about the threatening weather in either the past tense or the present tense:

Past tense	The evening news said that a big storm was coming.
Present tense	The evening news says that a big storm is coming.

There is no real difference in meaning, but there is a difference in emphasis: the present tense version is much more immediate and urgent.

Even where there is no sense of urgency, the present tense still implies that the information is new and immediate. For example, compare the following sentences:

Past tense	I heard that you might be moving.
Present tense	I hear that you might be moving.

The use of the present tense suggests that the information is new and relevant to the speaker.

We often use the present tense in discussing older material to emphasize that the content is still relevant to us in the present time. Here are some examples:

St. Paul says, "If I have not charity I am nothing."
Darwin emphasizes that the world is not a static place.
Shakespeare says that all the world is a stage.

Commenting on or paraphrasing the works of others

When we write about the works of others, we often write in the present tense. Reviews of books, plays, movies, and TV programs are typically written in the present tense. For example, here is a brief summary of *The Milagro Beanfield War*. Notice that all of the verbs are in the present tense.

> This 1988 fable about community solidarity takes place in the small town of Milagro, New Mexico (population 426). The movie revolves around the attempt by a large corporation to buy enough land in this small town to develop a tourist resort. The main obstacle is Joe Mondragon. Joe takes water that runs by his land to irrigate a field of beans that he plants. Technically, the water is reserved for the corporation, setting in motion a conflict over water rights between the local residents and the corporation. Colorful local characters and beautiful New Mexico scenery along with an intelligent, good-natured script make this a highly successful film.

Reports and summaries are usually written in the present tense. For example, here is a summary of a company's leave policy:

> Our current leave policy makes no distinction between vacation leave, sick leave, or personal time. All employees have a base of two weeks leave in their first year with the company. For each subsequent year of continuous employment, employees gain an additional day of leave. The maximum amount of leave that can be accumulated is three weeks per year.

Using the present tense for future time

There are two different grammatical constructions in which the present tense is used to refer to future time: one in main clauses and one in dependent adverb clauses.

In main clauses, we use the present tense to refer to future events if those events are already fixed or scheduled; for example:

The full moon occurs Wednesday night.
The train departs at 11:35.
Tomorrow's *New York Times* covers the Senate race in California.
Next Tuesday is the twenty-third.
I see the dentist tomorrow at 11:00.

There is a colloquial extension of the use of the present tense for proposing a course of action; for example: "OK, here's the plan. I pick up Mary at work, you get the car, and we all meet at the restaurant." In effect, this is a tentative proposal for a schedule of future activities.

We use the present tense for asking questions about predictable future events; for example:

When does the movie start?
When is the tide full?
What day of the week is Christmas this year?
When does the kids' summer program begin?

We would not use the present tense for future events that are less than certain; for example:

X It rains tomorrow.
X I believe that Italy wins the World Cup.
X Our CEO thinks that we get the contract.

EXERCISE
2·5

In all of the following sentences, the present tense is used to refer to the future. If the usage is appropriate, write "OK." If the usage is not appropriate, write "Not OK." The first two sentences are done as examples.

Your presentation begins at 3:30.

ANSWER: OK

The senator easily wins reelection.

ANSWER: Not OK

1. The exam ends in exactly 45 minutes.
2. He washes the dishes.
3. The gates close at 10:00 tonight.
4. Susan finds the missing car keys.
5. We get off the freeway if the traffic gets any worse.
6. The moon rises just after sunset.
7. In order to be competitive, the store drops its prices.
8. When is the game?
9. Mrs. Brown returns on Monday.
10. They meet in Los Angeles next week, I believe.

The other use of the present tense for future time is in adverb clauses when the main clause uses *will* to talk about future time; for example:

> A neighbor will look after our cat, while we are away.
> main clause adverb clause
>
> I will call you if I hear anything.
> main clause adverb clause
>
> They will start work as soon as they get the necessary permits.
> main clause adverb clause

They won't win the war even if they win this battle.
main clause adverb clause

In all these examples it is very easy to see that the verb in the present tense form is referring to the future just as much as the verb in the main clause that uses *will*.

One of the characteristics of adverb clauses is that they are easily moved in front of the main clause. As a result, the present tense used for future time can come before the main clause with *will*; for example:

While we are away, a neighbor will look after our cat.
adverb clause main clause

If I hear anything, I will call you.
adverb clause main clause

As soon as they get the necessary permits, they will start work.
adverb clause main clause

Even if they win this battle, they won't win the war.
adverb clause main clause

Note that when an adverb clause is moved from its normal position following the main clause and placed in front of the main clause, the adverb clause is set off from the main clause by a comma. This use of the comma is obligatory.

EXERCISE 2·6

The following sentences contain both a main clause and an adverb clause (in either order), with blank spaces where the verbs go. Underneath each sentence are two verbs in their infinitive forms. Insert the verbs into the appropriate clauses as directed. Make sure that each verb is used in the correct form to refer to future time. The first sentence is done as an example. Hint: the adverb clause always begins with an adverb or adverb phrase (for example: when, if, before*).*

Whatever they need us to do, we will do.

main clause: do; adverb clause: need

1. If I ________________ him, I ________________ hello.

   main clause: say; adverb clause: see

2. Until they ________________ some more money, they ________________ trouble paying for it.

   main clause: have; adverb clause: save

3. We definitely ________________ if they ________________ us the job.

   main clause: accept; adverb clause: offer

4. As soon I ________________ home, I ________________ dinner.

   main clause: start; adverb clause: get

5. We ________________ a movie after we ________________ eating.

   main clause: watch; adverb clause: finish

6. Once I ________________ my check, I ________________ for a new apartment.

   main clause: look; adverb clause: get

7. The game still ________________ played, even if it ________________.

   main clause: be; adverb clause: rain

8. We ________________ ahead as planned, even though there ________________ some objections.

   main clause: go; adverb clause: be

9. Unless there ________________ a problem, we ________________ you in Denver tomorrow.

   main clause: meet; adverb clause: be

10. I ________________ to visit them next time I ________________ to Phoenix.

    main clause: try; adverb clause: go

In this section we have identified the following seven meanings and uses of the present tense (numbered for use in the following exercise):

Present time

1. Makes assertions or generalizations about ongoing conditions or states
2. Describes existing habits or customs
3. Comments on present-time actions

Past time

4. Recounts ideas or information from the past that affects us in the present
5. Comments on or paraphrases the works of others

Future time

6. Refers to future events if those events are fixed or scheduled
7. Refers to future events in adverb clauses when the main clause uses *will*

EXERCISE

2·7

Each one of the following sentences contains an underlined present tense verb. Identify which of the seven uses best describes the meaning and use of that present tense verb using the numbers previously given. The first is done as an example.

The weather seems unusually hot for this time of year. (1)

1. Hurry up! The game starts in five minutes. ______
2. Anne's white paper warns against the risk of inflation. ______
3. As Freud says, "Sometimes a cigar is only a cigar." ______
4. In his essay, Whitehill argues for a return to the gold standard. ______
5. Good advance planning saves a lot of time in the long run. ______
6. Hardship teaches self-reliance. ______
7. I usually decline getting the extended warranties on things I buy. ______
8. When we know the date, we will send out the invitations. ______
9. I hereby nominate Joe Smith for Congress. ______
10. Raising children requires a lot of patience. ______
11. We fly back to Madison on Wednesday. ______
12. My mother always saves empty plastic containers. ______
13. The goalie blocks a hard shot from the left corner. ______
14. The pilots will take off just as soon as they get clearance. ______
15. Darwin's research rests on a wealth of observational studies. ______

This page intentionally left blank

3

The past tense

The main use of the past tense is for events, conditions, or states that once existed in or during some past time but that do not exist in the present. There are two other non-past-time uses for the past tense: (1) hypothetical statements and (2) polite questions and deferential requests.

Using the past tense for past time

The past tense is used for events, conditions, or states that are now over and done with. So, for example:

> Samantha went to school at Berkeley.

This sentence not only tells us where Samantha went to school but also tells us that Samantha is no longer going to school there.

The past tense is quite broad in the sense that it can refer to variety of past-time uses; for example:

> **A single point of past time**
> The power went out at 7:15 this morning.
> I picked up the kids after school.
>
> **A span of time**
> I worked in that office from 2001 to 2006.
> The most recent ice age lasted for about 13,000 years.
>
> **Habitual or repeated events**
> We always got the *New York Times* when we lived in the city.
> They went to the same hotel every anniversary.
>
> **States or conditions that existed at some past time**
> Jason always admired his father's achievements.
> I hated having to take piano lessons when I was in grade school.

In all these different uses of the past tense, there is always the implication that it is no longer true today. Even ongoing states and conditions are tied (and limited) to the past. For example:

The children loved being read to at bedtime.

This sentence implies that the children are no longer being read to: either they have outgrown being read to or for some other reason no one reads to them anymore.

Other uses of the past tense

There are two other uses of the past tense:

- Hypothetical statements
- Polite questions and deferential requests

We will discuss these two uses of the past tense in turn.

Hypothetical statements

The past tense in modern English has inherited some of the functions of the subjective mood that existed in older forms of the language. One of these functions is making statements that are hypothetical or even contrary to fact. Needless to say, the past tense form in this subjunctive use does not mean past time; quite the contrary: this use of the subjunctive is often used to talk about the present or future (but in a tentative, hypothetical way).

The most distinctive use of the past tense for hypothetical statements is seen in constructions that preserve the historical subjunctive use of *were* instead of the expected *was*. Here are some examples:

If I were you, I would try harder.
I wish I were feeling better.
It's not as though he were guilty of a crime.
Suppose we were to quit our jobs.

If clauses have an unusual feature: all the verbs in the main clause that accompany the adverbial *if* clause must also be in the past tense. Here is an example of an *if* clause with multiple verbs in the main clause:

If I were you, I would be careful of what I said.
main clause

Both verbs in the main clause, *would* and *said*, are in the past tense. In fact, if the verbs in the main clause were in the present or future tense, the sentence would become ungrammatical:

Present tense	**X** If I were you, I am careful of what I say.
Future tense	**X** If I were you, I will be careful of what I will say.

This is the only instance in English in which the subordinate clause controls the verb tense of the main clause.

EXERCISE

3·1

Add the hypothetical if *clause* if I were you *to the following sentences, making the necessary changes to the verb tenses in the main clause. The first sentence is done as an example.*

I will tell them what they need to do.

ANSWER: If I were you, I would tell them what they needed to do.

1. I will watch what I eat.

   ____

2. I will talk only about what I know.

   ____

3. I will remind them what they agree to pay.

   ____

4. I will be worried about where I park my car.

   ____

5. I will start working only when I have enough light to see what I am doing.

   ____

Polite questions and deferential requests

The past tense also inherits another feature of the subjunctive: deference or polite indirectness. This form of the subjunctive is used in asking questions and making requests when we want to show consideration or even polite deference to the person we are talking to. The use of the past tense form signals the person we are talking to that that person has no obligation to agree to or approve our request (which is put in the form of a question). Another way to think of it is that we are signaling that we are not acting as a superior talking to a subordinate as might be the implication of a direct question in the present tense. For example, if we were talking to friends or social equals, we would probably invite them to lunch in the present tense:

> Do you want to go out for lunch?

However, if we were talking to a superior or a person we did not know well, we would probably phrase the invitation in a more indirect manner using the past tense:

Did you want to go out for lunch today?

Here is another example. We would probably ask a colleague for some time by saying:

Can you give me a minute?

But we would make the same request of a superior in the past tense:

Could you give me a minute?

We would ask equals if they were ready to leave in the present tense:

Are you ready to leave?

But we would ask a superior the same thing in the past tense:

Were you ready to leave?

EXERCISE
3·2

Here are ordinary questions that one might ask of equals. Change the questions to the corresponding polite or deferential form. The first sentence is done as an example:

Do you need to get something?

ANSWER: Did you need to get something?

1. What do you think about it?
2. Will you join us for lunch?
3. Can you stop by my office before you leave?
4. Will you be free this evening?
5. May I make an alternative proposal?

The future tense

·4·

In traditional grammar, the future tense consists of the helping verb *will* followed by a verb in its **base form**. The base form of a verb is the dictionary entry form of the verb. It is an infinitive without the *to*; for example:

> I will call you as soon as I get a chance.

In this example, *call* is in its base form. *Will* plus the base-form verb *call* is thus the future tense of *call*.

The way traditional grammar defines the future tense (helping verb plus a base-form verb) is radically different from the way that the present and past tenses are defined. The present and past tenses are defined by a change in the verb itself, either by adding an ending (-*s* in the case of the present; -*ed* in the case of the past tense) or by a change in the form of the verb, as in the case of irregular verbs. To understand the implications of the traditional definition of the future tense, we need to understand a bit about the very peculiar history of the future tense in English.

At a distant time in the past, the ancestor language of English (called Indo-European) formed the future tense as all other verb tenses: by a change in the verb itself. This future tense is related to the future tenses that survive today in most modern-day languages of Indo-European origin, for example, French, Italian, Greek, Russian, and the languages of northern India.

Later, the common Indo-European language broke apart into separate branches. The branch that ultimately leads to English is Germanic (the Germanic languages besides English are Dutch, German, and the Scandinavian languages). One of the main characteristics of the Germanic branch that sets it apart from all the other branches of Indo-European is that the future tense verb ending totally disappeared. That is, none of the Germanic languages (including English) has a verb tense form that means future time.

The disappearance of the future tense verb form in the ancestral Germanic language was probably the result of another development unique to the Germanic languages: the creation of a remarkable set of helping verbs called **modal verbs.** These modal verbs provided speakers with a more sophisticated and flexible way of talking about the future. It is entirely likely that the future verb tense form was driven into extinction by the rise of these modal verbs. The modern English forms of the modal verbs are the following: *can, may, must, shall*, and *will*.

These five verbs can all be used with infinitives to talk about the future:

I can call him later.
I may call him later.
I must call him later.
I shall call him later.
I will call him later.

We can even use the past tense forms of these verbs (except *must*, which has no past tense) to talk about the future:

I could call him later.
I might call him later.
I should call him later.
I would call him later if I were you.

As you can see, these nine verb forms allow English speakers to talk about the future in a number of highly nuanced ways—much more than a single future tense verb form would ever allow.

If all of these helping verbs have evolved to become the way that English speakers talk about future time, then why was *will* singled out by traditional grammar as "the future tense" in English? There are two reasons: (1) *will* is the closest in meaning of all nine modal forms to the meaning of the future tense in Latin (Latin is the basis of traditional grammars of English), and (2) the basic meaning of *will* is simple futurity; all of the other modal verbs have a variety of additional meanings such as necessity, possibility, and obligation. Because Latin has nothing similar to modal verbs, traditional Latin-based grammars of English simply ignored the remaining modal verbs.

In this chapter we will examine *will* because (1) it is the traditional marker of the future tense, and (2) it is by far the most common way of talking about future time. We will also examine the four nonmodal ways that English speakers commonly use to refer to future time.

Using *will* to talk about future time

We use *will* in two quite different ways: (1) prediction and (2) intention.

Will is used to make predictions about some future event, behavior, or outcome. Here are some examples:

The weatherman says that it will rain all day tomorrow.
You will feel better after a good night's sleep.

The stock market will react negatively to such bad economic news.
They will never agree to such a proposal.
Who knows how soon the volcano will erupt again?
Will the store be open on Sunday?

We can also use *will* in a somewhat different way to talk about characteristic behaviors or actions (which, of course, we predict will reoccur in the future); for example:

Sally will play with that toy all day.
They will end up arguing about politics as usual.
My father will want to pick up the check.
The market will, as usual, overreact to any unexpected development.
On vacation we will get up late every morning and go for a walk before breakfast.

Will is also used to make a statement of someone's intention to carry out some future action. This use of *will* requires an animate subject that acts volitionally to carry out a purposeful future act. Here are some examples:

I will give you a hand with that.
He will call you back as soon as he gets a chance.
I will stop by after work if it is not too late.
Jerry will never allow that to happen.
The company will petition the court for an injunction to stop the strike.

This meaning of *will* is used for requests for future actions and questions about a person's intentions or willingness to do something in the future; for example:

Will you answer the phone?
Will you set the table, please?
Will you be able to attend the meeting?
Will the union cooperate?

Will used as an expression of intention is often replaced in questions or requests by *would* as a form of respect or politeness; for example:

Will/would you help me with this?
Will/would that be OK with you?
Will/would you take care of that?
Would you like to dance?

(For a detailed discussion of polite questions and deferential requests, see Chapter 3, "The past tense.")

EXERCISE
4·1

All of the sentences that follow contain will *(or the polite form* would*) used for talking about future time. Identify whether* will/would *is used for prediction or intention. The first two sentences are done as examples.*

The traffic will be really bad when we go to the airport.

ANSWER: Prediction

I will get us some more coffee.

ANSWER: Intention

1. I think that the committee will not approve his application the way it is written now.

____

2. The maintenance staff will have finished by now.

____

3. We will certainly do our best to meet your expectations.

____

4. Would you like to leave a message?

____

5. They are so good that I think they will qualify for the World Cup this year.

____

6. I will go home the back way so you can see the river.

____

7. The lawyer thinks that they will settle out of court.

____

8. We would like some more coffee, please.

____

9. You will have a hard time selling the house in this economy.

____

10. I will think about it.

____

Other ways of talking about future time

There are four nonmodal ways to talk about future time:

- Present progressive tense
- Present tense
- *Be going to* plus base form
- *Be about to* plus base form

The present progressive and present tenses are similar in meaning, but the present progressive tense is much broader in its use than the present tense. We will discuss the present progressive tense first, then we will turn to the more restricted present tense, and finally we will discuss the differences and similarities between these two ways of talking about the future.

Present progressive tense

The present progressive tense refers to future events that arise directly (and often immediately) from present plans, arrangements, or commitments; for example:

We are continuing the presentation after lunch.
The children are going to the park this afternoon.
They are taking a taxi to the airport.
The president is making a speech here next month.
My parents are staying in Arizona this winter.

As you can see from these examples, the present progressive tense is often used with animate subjects; these subjects are the ones who make the plans, the arrangements, or the commitments that cause the future action. The present progressive can also be used with inanimate subjects, but only if the action or event is arranged, scheduled, or highly predictable; for example:

The play is opening Friday night.
According to the weather channel, it's getting warmer tomorrow.
The trains are running on a holiday schedule Monday.
The cherry trees in Washington are blooming next week.
Our team is playing at home next week.

There is one important restriction on the use of the present progressive: many stative verbs cannot be used in the present progressive. Here are some examples with stative verbs:

X We are needing to change trains at the next station.
X They are wanting to talk to us.
X The kids are feeling bad if we don't come.

We often use the present progressive for announcing imminent actions or events; for example:

We are ordering takeout; let me know what you want.
Your coffee is getting cold.
Kids, we're leaving soon.
Come to the table; we're eating in just a minute.
Hurry, the game is starting right after this commercial.
The market is opening in five minutes.

Present tense

The present tense can refer to future events, but only if those events have already been determined. It is the tense we would use for scheduled or fixed events; for example:

Jayne's wedding is June 18.
Our plane departs at 8:15.
I see the dentist next Tuesday.
They get back next week.
The plays there start at 8:30.

We cannot use the present tense for unscheduled future actions or events; for example:

X It rains tomorrow.
X They are upset if we don't get the contract.
X I come back early unless there is a problem.
X We go home soon.

The use of the present tense for future time is more restricted than the present progressive. For example, all of the following sentences in the present progressive are grammatical:

We are ordering takeout; let me know what you want.
Your coffee is getting cold.
Kids, we are leaving now.
Come to the table; we are eating in just a minute.
Hurry, the game is starting right after this commercial.
The market is opening in a few minutes.

When we use the present tense in these same examples, the results are surprisingly diverse: some (marked with **X**) are flatly ungrammatical, some (marked with **?**) are probably grammatical but sound odd, and some are perfectly grammatical:

X We order takeout; let me know what you want.
X Your coffee gets cold.
? Kids, we leave now.
? Come to the table; we eat in just a minute.
Hurry, the game starts right after this commercial.
The market opens in a few minutes.

The degree of grammaticality in using the present tense is a function of how formally the future event is scheduled. In the first two examples, there is no scheduling or planning at all; they are extemporaneous, unplanned statements about the future, and, as such, they are clearly incompatible with the present tense:

X We order takeout; let me know what you want.
X Your coffee gets cold.

The last two examples refer to formally scheduled future events:

Hurry, the game starts right after this commercial.
The market opens in a few minutes.

These are completely grammatical in the present tense.

The middle two examples are in between planned and unplanned. That is, they are not formally planned, but they are not really extemporaneous either. The borderline grammaticality of these two sentences reflects the fact that they are quasi-planned.

? Kids, we leave now.
? Come to the table; we eat in just a minute.

Here is another pair of sentences that illustrates the difference between the present and present progressive for future time:

Present	**X** I take a group picture after class.
Present progressive	I am taking a group picture after class.

Both of these sentences are talking about carrying out a future-time activity. The problem with using the present tense is that the activity is not formally scheduled. Its extemporaneous nature makes it incompatible with the present tense. Using the present tense this way is a common mistake for even advanced nonnative speakers of English.

The much tighter restrictions on the use of the present tense mean that many verbs that can be used quite normally in the present progressive for future time cannot be used in the present tense.

EXERCISE
4·2

All of the following sentences contain grammatical uses of the present progressive tense. Change each use of the present progressive into the present tense, and then determine the grammatical validity of the result. If the result is fully grammatical, write "OK." If the result is not grammatical or is distinctly odd, write "Not OK." The first two sentences are done as examples.

She is having a baby next June.

ANSWER: She has a baby next June. Not OK

She is going into the hospital next week.

ANSWER: She goes into the hospital next week. OK

1. Everyone is staying with friends until the water recedes.

   ____

2. They are moving out of the apartment at the end of the month.

   ____

3. I am waxing the car as soon as the water dries.

   ____

4. We are helping the public radio fund-raising program Saturday from noon till 4:00.

   ____

5. Loretta is presenting the keynote at this year's conference.

   ____

6. They are selling their house as soon as they get a reasonable offer.

   ____

7. The course is covering that material in the last week.

   ____

8. Because of global warming, some insurance companies are raising their flood insurance rates next year.

   ____

9. The contractor is laying the carpet as soon as he can get the pad installed.

10. I am teaching that class next semester.

The difference we have seen between present progressive and present tense carries over to situations in which both the present progressive and present tenses are grammatical. For example, compare the following sentences:

Present progressive	Our flight is leaving at 8:15.
Present	Our flight leaves at 8:15.

These two sentences mean the same thing, but there is a difference in their implications. Using the present progressive implies that this is new information: either it is new information to the person being spoken to, or the original flight departure time has been changed, and thus it is new information for everybody. If it is the latter, there is the additional implication that this new time is not firmly scheduled and is thus subject to further change.

Using the present tense implies that the flight is definitely scheduled to leave at 8:15. If this is a new time, it implies that this new time is a formal rescheduling of the original departure time, and as such we have some expectation that this departure time is reliable information.

Finally, we need to mention another, unrelated use of the present tense for future time. We use it in adverb clauses when the main clause uses *will* to indicate future time; for example:

If she pushes this button, the outdoor lights will go on.
adverb clause main clause

When he moves there next month, he will need to get new furniture.
adverb clause main clause

The adverb and main clause can be used in either order:

The outdoor lights will go on if she pushes this button.
main clause adverb clause

He will need to get new furniture when he moves there next month.
main clause adverb clause

See Chapter 2 for a detailed discussion of this rather specialized use of the present tense.

Be going to plus base form

This idiomatic construction uses some form of *be* in the present tense to express future action; for example:

I am going to take the 5:45 train.
The price of gold is going to fall dramatically.

An alternative analysis would be to describe this construction as follows:

be going plus infinitive

An infinitive consists of *to* plus a base-form verb. Obviously, either description will work. The reason that linguists prefer *be going to* plus base-form verb is that is it easy to break the construction apart between the *to* and the base-form verb, suggesting that the *to* is more like a preposition than the marker of an infinitive. Here is a brief dialogue that separates the *to* from the base-form verb:

A: Do you think George will ever retire?
B: Yes, I think he actually is going to this summer. (*Retire* is understood.)

If *to retire* were a single grammatical unit, we would not expect to separate the *to* and *retire* so easily.

Here are some more examples of this construction:

Aunt Mae and Uncle Jim are going to sell the farm.
The storm is going to hit sometime tomorrow morning.
Our mayor is going to run for Congress this fall.

When the subject is an animate noun, *be going to* plus base-form verb signals a strong intention of the subject to carry out the future action specified, almost as a statement of commitment. Here are some more examples with animate subjects:

We are going to get married.
The company is going to open a new branch in Seattle.
They are going to meet us at the park.
I am going to mow the lawn now.

With inanimate subjects, the speaker is asserting confidence that the described future event is highly likely to actually happen; for example:

It's going to start raining any minute.
The reception is going to be at her aunt's house.
His speech is going to create a lot of controversy.
The train is going to be half an hour late.

We can even use this construction with non-referential, existential subjects like *there* and *it* as long as the speaker has confidence in the validity of what is said:

There is going to be a staff meeting Friday.
It's going to be really hot tomorrow.

Be about to plus base form

This is another idiomatic construction that also uses some form of *be* in the present tense to express future action; for example:

Hurry, the light is about to change.
Let's sit down. The presentation is about to begin.
I'm about to give up.
The boat is about to leave.

The *to* in this construction also acts as a preposition rather than the marker of an infinitive because we can so easily separate the *to* and the verb; for example:

A: Are you going to quit soon?
B: Yes, I am just about to. (*Quit* is understood.)

Be about to plus base form is used to emphasize that something is on the verge of happening. It is used to emphasize the immediacy of what is going to happen in the very near future. *Be about to* plus base form can be used only with verbs that convey a strong sense of immediate action. As we would expect, this construction is most often used with verbs that have animate subjects that perform the action of the verb; for example:

John is about to look for a new job.
The company is about to open a new plant in Mexico.
Can't it wait? We're just about to leave.
The president is about to make an important announcement.
We are about to buy our first new car.

Be about to plus base form can be used with inanimate subjects, but only if there is a sense of immediacy in the sentence. The action does not need to be caused by the subject of the sentence. Here are some examples:

The house is about to go on the market.
Their job description is about to change drastically.
The field is about to be flooded for irrigation.

We can also use impersonal subjects; for example:

It's about to start raining.
There is about to be a big fight over the proposed new law.

Summary of ways of talking about the future

In this chapter we have identified the following six different ways of talking about the future:

- *Will* plus base form (prediction)

Animate	They will call us as soon as they hear anything.
Inanimate	It will take about 45 minutes to get to the airport.

- *Will* plus base form (intention)

Animate	I will take you to the airport.
Inanimate	(rarely used)

Comment: *will* plus base form is used for normal expectations about future actions or events.

- Present progressive tense

Animate	I am taking them to the airport.
Inanimate	The meeting is starting at 4:30.

Comment: with animate nouns, the present progressive refers to future events that arise directly from present plans, arrangements, or commitments. With inanimate nouns, the present progressive refers to events that are arranged or highly predictable. We often use the present progressive for announcing imminent actions or events, especially if the actions or events are new information.

- Present tense

Animate	Alice takes the kids to camp tomorrow.
Inanimate	Their flight leaves at 6:30.

Comment: the present tense is used to describe an action or event that has been scheduled or prearranged.

- *Be going to* plus base form

Animate	I'm going to give them a call right now.
Inanimate	Their flight is going to be a little late.

Comment: with animate nouns, *be going to* plus base form signals a strong intention or even commitment to carry out a future action. With inanimate nouns, *be going to* plus base form asserts confidence that the described future event will actually happen.

- *Be about to* plus base form

Animate	They are about to board their plane.
Inanimate	The plane is about to take off.

Comment: with both animate and inanimate subjects, *be about to* plus base form emphasizes the immediacy of the action of the verb.

In deciding what form to use for talking about future time, here are some things to keep in mind:

- *Will* plus base form is the default way of talking about the future. That is, we use *will* plus base form unless we have a particular reason for using one of the other forms.
- The present progressive and *be going to* plus base form are used very frequently in conversation because they both imply information that is new to the audience. For example, compare the following uses of *will* plus base form, present progressive, and *be going to* plus base form:

Will plus base form	I'll take the bus to work tomorrow.
Present progressive	I'm taking the bus to work tomorrow.
Be going to plus base form	I'm going to take the bus to work tomorrow.

All three sentences have the same basic meaning. However, they do not have the same implications. The use of *will* plus base form implies that taking the bus to work is something that the speaker does frequently so that the sentence is merely confirming a normal practice. Both the present progressive and the *be going to* plus base form, however, are announcing something that is new to the audience and/or is worth singling out for special emphasis.

Here is the opposite situation where the "new information" aspect of the present progressive and *be going to* plus base form are inappropriate. Imagine it's the end of the workday; two colleagues are leaving the office at the same time, and each says "good-bye" to the other with the following verb forms:

Will plus base form	I'll see you tomorrow.
Present progressive	I'm seeing you tomorrow.
Be going to plus base form	I'm going to see you tomorrow.

The "new information" verb forms are utterly socially inappropriate because they (incorrectly) imply that seeing the other person at work the next day is the result of some special arrangement; it is not something that just normally happens.

- The remaining two verb forms, present tense and *be about to* plus base form, are essentially special-purpose verb forms: the present tense is used solely for future events that are already scheduled or fixed; *be about to* plus base form is used to emphasize the immediacy of the future action or event.

To summarize:

- Normal expectations about future actions or events: *will* plus base form
- New information about future actions or events: present progressive or *be going to* plus base form
- Scheduled or fixed future events: present tense
- Immediate future actions or events: *be about to* plus base form

EXERCISE
4·3

Based on the previous discussion of future verb forms, identify the meaning of the underlined verb forms using the following terms: "normal expectations," "new information," "scheduled or fixed future event," "immediate future action." The first two sentences are done as examples:

I am going to go swimming as soon as we get there.

ANSWER: New information

The copy machine will automatically sort the pages.

ANSWER: Normal expectations

1. They are just about to announce the winners.

____

2. The play closes after Saturday's performance.

____

3. The days will be longer in April.

____

4. We are staying a few nights in Paris on our way back.

____

5. They are about to make a really big mistake.

____

6. The new law goes into effect tomorrow.

____

7. Remember, I present the committee's recommendations to the board on Friday.

8. Naturally, they will resist any last-minute changes.

9. I am about to leave; do you want a ride?

10. They are selling their house as soon as they can get a buyer.

EXERCISE
4·4

Based on the previous discussion of future verb forms, pick the best future-time form for the underlined verb to represent the future-time meanings that appear in parentheses. The first two sentences are done as examples.

(normal expectations) I believe that when I see it.

ANSWER: I will believe that when I see it.

(new information) We make them a new offer.

ANSWER: We are making/are going to make them a new offer.

1. (immediate future action) Careful, you sit in a wet chair.

2. (scheduled or fixed future event) The tournament begin this Saturday.

3. (new information) I need to rent a car.

4. (normal expectations) I turn the lights off when I leave the building.

5. (immediate future action) We replace the countertops in the kitchen.

6. (new information) They launch a search for the overdue hikers.

____

7. (scheduled or fixed future event) The news come on at 10:00 tonight.

____

8. (immediate future action) The storm hit the coast with heavy rains.

____

9. (normal expectations) The aides handle all the registration details.

____

10. (new information) He try a totally new approach.

____

5

Introduction to the perfect tenses

What is so "perfect" about the perfect tenses? Nothing. The use of *perfect* as a grammatical term comes from the Latin verb *perficere*, "to do something completely or to bring something to a successful completion." The modern English word *perfect* is normally used as an adjective, but we still keep one of the original Latin verb meanings of *perficere*, "to bring to a successful completion." For example, a tennis player might say, "I am trying to perfect my backhand." (Note: The verb *perfect* is even pronounced differently from the adjective *perfect*. The verb is stressed on the second syllable, "perFECT," while the adjective is stressed on the first syllable, "PERfect.") Over time the English verb *perfect* developed a secondary meaning of "to finish or complete." It is this meaning that the grammatical term *perfect* draws on: the perfect tenses have a stated or implied finishing point.

There are three perfect tenses: the **present perfect**, the **past perfect**, and the **future perfect**. All three are formed in exactly parallel manner: the appropriate present, past, or future tense form of the helping verb *have* followed by a verb in the past participle form; for example:

Present perfect	Joan has lived in Denver for five years.
Past perfect	Joan had lived in Denver for five years before she moved last May.
Future perfect	Joan will have lived in Denver for five years this May.

The most common use of the **present perfect** is for past-time actions or events whose actions or consequences continue until they are terminated, i.e., "perfected," at the present moment of time.

Joan has lived in Denver for five years.

In our example sentence, the use of the present perfect *has lived* means that Joan moved to Denver five year ago and has continued to live in Denver right up to the present moment of time.

The **past perfect** is used for some more distant past time, or past actions or events that were terminated, "perfected," at some more recent moment of past time, or by some more recent past-time event.

> Joan had lived in Denver for five years before she moved last May.

In our example sentence, the use of the past perfect *had lived* means that Joan lived in Denver for five years until she moved in May. Joan's moving in May is the more recent past-time event that terminated the action of the past perfect verb *had lived*.

The **future perfect** is used for future-time actions or events that will be terminated, "perfected," by an even more distant moment of time or defining event.

> Joan will have lived in Denver for five years this May.

In our example sentence, the use of the present perfect *will have lived* means that as of this coming May, Joan has lived in Denver for five years. *This May* is the more distant future-time expression that terminates the action of the future perfect verb *will have lived*.

EXERCISE 5·1

Underline and identify the perfect tenses in the following sentences. The first is done as an example.

We had just finished dinner when the phone rang.

ANSWER: We had just finished dinner when the phone rang.

past perfect

1. Fortunately, I had checked the weather before we started on the hike.

____

2. The storm has delayed all inbound flights.

____

3. By then, the market will have closed.

____

4. During the night, the electricity had gone out so the clocks were all wrong.

____

5. It looks as though they have already started on the project.

6. Fortunately, I had gotten some euros before I flew to Rome.

7. Some politicians have maintained friendships with members of the opposing party.

8. We hope that we will have finished by noon.

9. No one had anticipated how difficult the problem would be.

10. The resistance movement will have armed itself as soon as they heard the news.

EXERCISE 5·2

Replace the underlined infinitive verb with the perfect verb form identified in parentheses. The first is done as an example.

(past perfect) They hire extra security for the concert.

ANSWER: They had hired extra security for the concert.

1. (present perfect) I ask them to provide more information.

2. (future perfect) Surely the lake freeze by now.

3. (past perfect) We tell them about what they said.

4. (future perfect) They clear customs by now.

____

5. (present perfect) The court rule on many similar cases over the years.

____

6. (past perfect) Before they moved in, they repaint the entire apartment.

____

7. (future perfect) They invite more people than they have space for.

____

8. (past perfect) Fortunately, we adjust the insurance before the accident happened.

____

9. (present perfect) Surely, he retire by now.

____

10. (future perfect) His announcement attract a lot of attention.

____

One of the mildly unusual features of the perfect tenses is that they can be used with both stative and dynamic verbs. The basic meaning of stative verbs, states that continue over time, is a perfect match for the ongoing nature of the perfect tenses. Here are the three perfect tenses with examples of both stative and dynamic verbs:

Present perfect	
Stative	John has been a good friend.
Dynamic	John has signed the agreement.
Past perfect	
Stative	John had been in graduate school at the time.
Dynamic	John had majored in accounting before he switched to music.
Future perfect	
Stative	John will have been at the airport for hours.
Dynamic	John's plane will have landed by now.

The present perfect tense

·6·

The present perfect tense consists of a present tense form of the helping verb *have* followed by a verb in the past participle form; for example:

He has been out sick all week.
The business has expanded steadily for the past several years.
I think that I have guessed the answer.
Have you seen Harry recently?
We have had a busy day.
I've just heard the news.

The present perfect tense is used to talk about past-time events that directly affect the present. Notice that none of the previous examples actually mentions the present moment of time; they do not need to because the linkage to the present moment of time is inherent in the meaning of the present perfect. To confirm that this is the case, note what happens when we use past-time adverbs in the examples; they all become ungrammatical:

X He has been out sick all last week.
X The business has expanded steadily several years ago.
X I think that I have guessed the answer last week.
X Have you seen Harry yesterday?
X We have had a busy day last Monday.
X I've heard the news last week.

We use the present perfect tense in two different ways: the main use of the present perfect is for past-time events that have continued over past time up to the present moment of time. We will call this the **continuous** use of the present perfect.

We also use the present perfect for very recent single past-time events that directly impact the present. We will call this the **noncontinuous** use of the present perfect. We will discuss the noncontinuous use of the present perfect after we have discussed the more frequent continuous use.

The continuous use of the present perfect

Here are some examples of the continuous present perfect:

My parents have lived in their house for 30 years.
I have worked there for two years.
She has delivered papers at many major conferences.
Their company has been in business for more than 100 years.
He has owned that truck for as long as I have known him.
I haven't seen my cousin in years.

As was mentioned in Chapter 5, one of the characteristics of all the perfect tenses is that both stative and dynamic verbs can be used freely in all of them. However, there is a difference in the way that the two types of verbs are used. In the present perfect, stative verbs, because of their inherent meaning of an ongoing state or condition, always are normally used with the meaning of an unbroken span of time up to the present moment. Here are some examples of stative verbs:

I have always disliked broccoli.
Our family has always had dogs.
Americans have always loved happy endings in their movies.
John has been a close friend ever since college.
This project has cost us a small fortune.
We have always wanted to go to Hawaii.

Dynamic verbs, on the other hand, typically describe actions that are necessarily intermittent because they start and stop over a period of time. For example, we can legitimately describe the following sentence as continuous in the very real sense that Sam's voting is an activity that is repeated regularly over time, even though he can vote only when elections are held—every two years.

Sam has voted in every election since he was 18.

In the following sentence, Barbara's actions are continuous in the sense that we can imagine Barbara systematically climbing one peak after another until she has climbed them all.

Barbara has climbed every major peak in the Rockies.

In the next sentence, the speaker's infrequent use of his tuxedo still constitutes an activity that has been performed multiple times up to the present moment.

I have worn my tuxedo only three times in the past 20 years.

Here are some more examples of dynamic verbs used in the continuous present perfect:

The kids have gone to the same camp for the past four years.
Our basement has flooded every spring.
I have always parked on the street when I visit them.
Over the years, hail storms have damaged a lot of crops in the area.
She has directed more than 20 plays in her long career.
Our baseball team has won about half of its games.

EXERCISE 6·1

Determine whether the present perfect sentences that follow show a continuously ongoing state (stative verb) or sustained intermittent action (dynamic verb). The first two are done as examples.

Heavy snow has closed the road a dozen times this winter.

ANSWER: Intermittent action (dynamic)

I have always believed that hard work pays off in the end.

ANSWER: Continuously ongoing state (stative)

1. It has rained a lot this week.

   ____

2. The train has always been on time before.

   ____

3. I have never possessed a good sense of direction.

   ____

4. We have spent a lot of money getting ready for this trip.

   ____

5. Have we covered all the topics that are going to be on the final?

   ____

6. The team has never looked better than it has this season.

   ____

7. That car has passed us half a dozen times in the past hour.

   ____

8. I have always felt that his work was not sufficiently appreciated.

   ____

9. We have lost too many games this season because of poor preparation.

10. We have always eaten there when we are in town.

The noncontinuous use of the present perfect

The present perfect also allows for a noncontinuous or single-event use of the perfect tense. Here are some examples of noncontinuous uses:

The printer has just run out of ink.
The meeting has been canceled.
The committee has demanded a second vote.
The team has picked a new captain.
We have found the problem, and we can fix it in a few hours.

As you can see, all of these examples describe a onetime only action or event. There is no continuous state or repeated action across a span of time.

In the noncontinuous use of the present perfect, this single, recently completed, past-time event or action directly and immediately affects the present moment of time. This is in contrast to the normal continuous use of the present perfect, which describes a series of events or actions that span a period of past time up to the present moment. For example, compare the following:

Continuous	There have been a lot of bad accidents on the freeway lately.
Noncontinuous	There has been a bad accident on the freeway.

The first sentence with the continuous use of the present perfect describes a situation in which a number of accidents have occurred on the freeway over a span of time. The second sentence with the noncontinuous use of the present perfect describes a single recent accident on the freeway. Using the noncontinuous present perfect emphasizes that (1) the information about the accident is new (and quite possibly not previously known to the audience) and (2) this information impacts the present situation in some way; in our example, the freeway might be closed for hours.

As we would expect, the noncontinuous present perfect is closely tied to the present moment of time. If we shift the time frame of a noncontinuous present perfect sentence to a more distant point in past time, the sentence becomes ungrammatical. For example, compare the following pairs of sentences:

Present time	Their daughter has just graduated from NYU.
Past time	**X** Their daughter has just graduated from NYU last week.
Present time	I've just read your letter.
Past time	**X** I've just read your letter last night.
Present time	We have enjoyed meeting your family.
Past time	**X** We have enjoyed meeting your family yesterday.

In all these examples, the use of the noncontinuous present perfect is totally incompatible with a past-time adverb.

EXERCISE
6·2

Label the underlined present participle verb form as either continuous or noncontinuous. The first two sentences are done as examples:

The Chinese and Americans have argued about trade policies for years.

ANSWER: Continuous

The Chinese and the Americans have agreed on a new trade policy.

ANSWER: Noncontinuous

1. The company has replaced the branch manager.

____

2. We have seen several of his plays on Broadway.

____

3. He has certainly put on some weight since the last time I saw him.

____

4. The conference has arranged transportation for you.

____

5. I've found the reference I had been looking for.

____

6. I see that they have built an outdoor pool.

____

7. We have paid by credit card before whenever we have stayed here.

____

8. Wages have increased about 3 percent a year for the past 20 years.

____

9. They have finally made up their minds.

____

10. We have always used premium gas in that car.

____

To understand the meaning and function of the noncontinuous use of the present perfect, we need to contrast it with its alternative: the past tense. In many cases the noncontinuous present perfect and the past tense are interchangeable from a strictly grammatical point of view. For example, we can use the noncontinuous present perfect or the past tense equally well in the following sentences:

Present perfect	There has been a mistake on my income tax.
Past tense	There was a mistake on my income tax.
Present perfect	I've seen the final report.
Past tense	I saw the final report.
Present perfect	Elvis has left the building.
Past tense	Elvis left the building.

However, the implications of the noncontinuous and the past tenses can be quite different.

As we saw in Chapter 3, the past tense is used for events, conditions, or states that are now over and done with. To illustrate this point we used this example:

Samantha went to school at Berkeley.

The sentence not only tells us where Samantha went to school, but the use of the past tense also tells us that Samantha is no longer going to school there. The key point in understanding the difference between the noncontinuous present perfect tense and the past tense is that the past tense erects a wall between past-time events (even ones that occurred in the immediate past) and the present moment of time.

The noncontinuous present perfect, on the other hand, highlights the connection between an event in the immediate and the present moment of time. Often we use the noncontinuous present perfect to emphasize that the past-time information is new to the audience and that the information is of immediate relevance to the present moment. The following pair of sentences is a good illustration of the differences between the noncontinuous present perfect and the past tense:

Present perfect	I've lost my car keys.
Past tense	I lost my car keys.

Both sentences mean the same thing. However, the present perfect sentence implies (1) that the fact that the speaker lost the keys is new information to the audience and (2) that it is important to the present moment of time. In other words, we all need to help the speaker look for the missing car keys. The past tense is simply a neutral statement of fact about something that happened in the past. There is no necessary implication that this is new information or that the listeners should do anything about it.

Using the noncontinuous present perfect rather than the past tense is a way of telling the audience that what we are saying is new and worth paying attention to. In this sense, it is a kind of emphatic form we might choose over the more standard and expected past tense. For this reason we are more likely to use the noncontinuous present perfect in casual conversation than in writing.

EXERCISE
6·3

Determine whether the underlined verb tense is emphatic (that is, the verb tense emphasizes new and important information) or neutral (that is, the verb tense is a statement of fact). The first two sentences are done as examples.

We have fixed the problem.

ANSWER: Emphatic

We fixed the problem.

ANSWER: Neutral

1. I've got an idea.

____

2. We made a wrong turn.

____

3. The witness has admitted mistaking the date of the accident.

____

4. It has encouraged me to try again.

____

5. The electricity went out.

____

6. John has insisted on meeting with the board.

____

7. I twisted my ankle playing soccer with the kids.

____

8. We've just got an e-mail from the head office.

____

9. The news surprised everyone.

____

10. We've decided to host a party for their anniversary.

____

EXERCISE
6·4

Rewrite the underlined verb using both emphatic and neutral tenses. If it is emphatic, use the noncontinuous present perfect tense; if it is neutral, use the past tense. The first sentence is done as an example.

The senator claim that he was misquoted.
EMPHATIC: The senator has claimed that he was misquoted.
NEUTRAL: The senator claimed that he was misquoted.

1. The senator refuse to retract his statement.
   Emphatic: ____
   Neutral: ____
2. A big tree fall in the backyard.
   Emphatic: ____
   Neutral: ____
3. A reporter reveal the source of the money.
   Emphatic: ____
   Neutral: ____

4. They tell me what happened.

   Emphatic: ______________________________

   Neutral: ______________________________

5. I turn down the offer.

   Emphatic: ______________________________

   Neutral: ______________________________

6. We buy a new car.

   Emphatic: ______________________________

   Neutral: ______________________________

7. I find my car keys.

   Emphatic: ______________________________

   Neutral: ______________________________

8. The CEO saw the new sales figures.

   Emphatic: ______________________________

   Neutral: ______________________________

9. Our flight be canceled.

   Emphatic: ______________________________

   Neutral: ______________________________

10. The game end in a tie.

   Emphatic: ______________________________

   Neutral: ______________________________

The same distinction between the noncontinuous present perfect and past tenses carries over into questions. However, in questions the difference in implications between the noncontinuous present perfect and past tenses can be more significant, sometimes even amounting to a shift in meaning. For example, compare the noncontinuous present perfect and past tense versions of the same question:

Present perfect tense	Have you seen the play at the Civic Theater?
Past tense	Did you see the play at the Civic Theater?

The noncontinuous present perfect with its present-time relevancy implies (among other things) that the play is still running at the Civic Theater and the person being addressed still has a chance to see it if he or she hasn't done so already. The past tense in the second sentence definitely implies that the play's run is over and that the person being addressed has no further opportunity to see the play even if he or she wanted to.

The previous pair of sentences is a dramatic example of how distinct the implications of questions in the noncontinuous present perfect and past tenses can be. The difference between them is usually more modest. Here is a typical example:

Present perfect tense	Have you reported the accident to the police?
Past tense	Did you report the accident to the police?

The first question with the noncontinuous present perfect tense reflects a built-in expectation that reporting an accident to the police is something that people would normally do. Thus, asking the question in the present perfect conveys a tacit expectation that the answer would be "yes." The past tense question, on the other hand, is much more neutral. The past tense question does not voice the same expectation about reporting the accident to the police. It is a simple, factual question without the built-in positive implications of the noncontinuous present perfect question.

Here is a second example:

Present perfect tense	Have you ordered the pizza?
Past tense	Did you order the pizza?

The two questions have the same basic meaning. The differences in implication, however, are substantial. The first question with the noncontinuous present perfect tense implies that there was a definite plan to order pizza. The question functions as a confirmation of the fact that the pizza has already been ordered as expected: the person asking this question anticipates either of two possible answers: "yes" or "not yet."

The past tense question is much more neutral. Maybe the person ordered the pizza or maybe not—either answer is equally plausible. The use of the past tense is more like a genuine open-ended question than the present perfect version.

EXERCISE 6·5

Decide whether the following questions have affirmative or neutral expectations. The first two are done as examples.

Have you just got here?

ANSWER: Affirmative expectation

Did you just get here?

ANSWER: Neutral expectation

1. Did they find out how the fire started?

2. Has the medication helped relieve the pain?

3. Have you met everyone?

4. Did the plumber finally show up?

5. Has the jury reached a verdict?

6. Did they grow these vegetables themselves?

7. Did you remember to walk the dog before you left?

8. Have you learned anything from this experience?

9. Have they decided what they are going to do?

10. Did you drive to work this morning?

EXERCISE

6·6

Turn the following statements into questions with both affirmative and neutral expectations. If the question has an affirmative expectation, use the noncontinuous present perfect tense. If the question has a neutral expectation, use the past tense. The first sentence is done as an example.

They replied to the e-mail.

ANSWER: Affirmative expectation: Have they replied to the e-mail?

NEUTRAL: Did they reply to the e-mail?

1. The Coast Guard warned boaters about the storm.

   Affirmative expectation: ______________________________

   Neutral: ______________________________

2. The paint dried.

   Affirmative expectation: ______________________________

   Neutral: ______________________________

3. The committee adopted the proposal.

   Affirmative expectation: ______________________________

   Neutral: ______________________________

4. He buy the tickets.

   Affirmative expectation: ______________________________

   Neutral: ______________________________

5. The garage checked the battery.

   Affirmative expectation: ______________________________

   Neutral: ______________________________

6. You stayed there before.

   Affirmative expectation: ______________________________

   Neutral: ______________________________

7. She kept the receipts.

   Affirmative expectation: ______________________________

   Neutral: ______________________________

8. They responded to our offer.

   Affirmative expectation: ______________________________

   Neutral: ______________________________

9. You get enough to eat.

Affirmative expectation: ______________________________

Neutral: ______________________________

10. They started to work.

Affirmative expectation: ______________________________

Neutral: ______________________________

This page intentionally left blank

·7·

The past perfect tense

The past perfect tense consists of the helping verb *had* (the past tense of *have*) followed by a verb in the past participle form. Here are some examples:

> I called her, but she had already left for the day.
> The passes were all closed because we had had so much snow.
> The caller had already hung up by the time I answered the phone.
> I told him that I had already made up my mind.
> They bought an old house that had been built in the 1920s.

Time, the old joke goes, was invented to keep everything from happening all at once. Likewise, the past perfect tense was invented to keep two different past-time events from happening all at once. For this reason, the past perfect tense is sometimes called "the past in the past."

The two past-time events are almost always clauses—usually an independent clause and a subordinate clause, but sometimes two independent clauses. The clause in the past perfect tense describes an action or event that has been completed before the action or event in the clause in the past tense takes place. Here are some examples of both types of clauses:

Independent clause and subordinate clause

(Note that some types of independent and subordinate clauses can be in either order. That is, the clause with the past perfect tense can either precede or follow the past tense clause.)

> They sold the house after they had remodeled it extensively.
> more recent past-time event — older past-time event
>
> I had just stepped into the shower when the phone rang.
> older past-time event — more recent past-time event
>
> We got a new rug because the old one had faded so badly.
> more recent past-time event — older past-time event
>
> The landscapers removed the trees that had grown too big.
> more recent past-time event — older past-time event

Two independent clauses

They asked us to go with them, but we had already made other plans.
more recent past-time event older past-time event

I wanted to get a ride with Jim, but he had already left.
more recent past-time event older past-time event

EXERCISE 7·1

Each of the following sentences contains two past-time clauses. Underline the past perfect tense. Then label the older clause as "older past-time event" and the newer one as "more recent past-time event." The first two sentences are done as examples.

We asked them to redo the tests that had been done last week.
ANSWER: We asked them to redo the tests that had been done last week.
more recent past-time event older past-time event

We went for a drive as soon as we had finished washing the car.
ANSWER: We went for a drive as soon as we had finished washing the car.
more recent past-time event older past-time event

1. We revised the estimates that we had made earlier.
2. He went into the hospital after his temperature had reached 103 degrees.
3. They had patented the device before they put it on the market.
4. I tried to get tickets, but they had already sold out.
5. We fell into bed utterly exhausted as soon as we had eaten.
6. The sun came out for the first time in days after the storm had finally passed.
7. I knew the answer as soon as she had asked the question.
8. I had picked up a cold when I was traveling.
9. We had lived there some time before we met them.
10. The bakery stopped making the cake that everyone had liked so much.

The meaning and use of the past perfect tense is quite straightforward. The main difficulty using the past perfect tense is with sentences that contain an independent clause and an adverb clause because adverb clauses, unlike other types of clauses, can be moved around, making it more difficult to determine which clause should be in the past perfect tense and which should be in the past tense. Accordingly, we will focus the remaining discussion of the past perfect tense on sentences containing an independent clause and an adverb subordinate clause.

Let us begin by looking closely at an example of a sentence with an adverb clause:

> I had been an intern for two years before they made me a job offer.
> main clause adverb clause

The past perfect portion of the sentence in the main clause expresses the older time—the two-year period that the speaker was an intern. The past tense portion of the sentence in the adverb clause expresses a second, more recent event—the speaker's being offered a job. The whole point of using the past perfect tense is to separate this sentence, all of which takes place in the past, into two distinct past-time frames—the older time period of the internship and the more recent event of the job offer. The use of the two different tenses enables us to place the two past-time events into a clear and unequivocal chronological sequence.

Sometimes the time sequencing imposed by the two different tenses can even imply a cause and effect relationship between the two clauses. For example:

> They had had a big fight just before they broke up.
> main clause adverb clause

This sequencing leads us to think that their fight may have caused their subsequent breakup.

Adverb clauses are dependent clauses that play the role of adverbs. As with single-word adverbs, adverb clauses modify verbs by giving more information about the time, place, manner, or cause of the action of the verb. Here we are concerned only with adverb clauses that give information about time or (occasionally) cause.

In our first set of examples of past perfect tenses in adverb clauses, all of the past perfect tenses will be in the main clause:

> The driver had suffered a heart attack before the car ran off the road.
> main clause adverb clause
>
> The plane had been airborne for about two hours when the left engine quit.
> main clause adverb clause
>
> He had committed himself to the plan before he knew all the facts.
> main clause adverb clause
>
> We had repainted the house before we put it on the market.
> main clause adverb clause

One of the characteristics of adverb clauses is that they can be moved from their normal position following the main clause to a position in front of the main clause. (When we move the adverb clause in front of the main clause, the adverb clause is said to be **inverted**.)

We must separate the inverted introductory adverb clause from the main clause by a comma. (We do not use a comma to separate the main clause from the adverb clause when the adverb clause is in a position following the main clause.) Here are the previous example sentences now with the adverb clauses in inverted positions:

Before the car ran off the road, the driver had suffered a heart attack.
adverb clause main clause

When the left engine quit, the plane had been airborne for about two hours.
adverb clause main clause

Before he knew all the facts, he had committed himself to the plan.
adverb clause main clause

Before we put it on the market, we had repainted the house.
adverb clause main clause

Inverting adverb clauses has no effect on the grammatical meaning of the sentence. The only difference is in emphasis: putting the adverb clause first gives it greater relative emphasis following the general rhetorical principle that any grammatical structure moved out of its normal position (especially when it is moved to the first position in the sentence) automatically becomes more prominent.

EXERCISE
7·2

All of the following sentences contain a main clause in the past perfect tense followed by an adverb clause in the past tense. Invert the two clauses so that the adverb clause is given greater emphasis. Be sure to use a comma with the inverted adverb clause. The first sentence is done as an example.

It had stopped snowing by the time we got to airport.

ANSWER: By the time we got to the airport, it had stopped snowing.

1. We had adjusted the car seats before we started driving.

____

2. The waiter had started clearing the dishes before everyone finished eating.

____

3. The ice cream had already melted by the time we cut the cake.

____

4. The house had been empty for years when we first moved in.

____

5. We had already finished setting the table before I noticed the dirty glasses.

6. He had advertised the job opening before the position was approved.

7. The sun had risen long before we got on the road.

8. The rebels had already abandoned the fort before the soldiers arrived.

9. The rain had stopped by the time we got our tents set up.

10. I had heard the loud music even before I reached the door.

EXERCISE
7·3

Here are pairs of simple sentences in the past tense, one labeled "Older" and the other labeled "More recent." Combine the two simple sentences to produce a single sentence containing a present perfect tense in the "older" main clause and a past tense in the "more recent" adverb clause. Write two versions. In the first version, the adverb clause is in normal order following the main clause. In the second version, the adverb clause is inverted. Use the word in parentheses to help form the adverb clause. The first sentence is done as an example.

OLDER: I hid the presents.
More recent: The children got up. (*before*)
ANSWER: Normal order: I had hidden the presents before the children got up.
Inverted: Before the children got up, I had hidden the presents.

1. Older: We taped all the windows and doors.

   More recent: We started painting. (*before*)

   Normal order: ____________________

   Inverted: ____________________

2. Older: John already swam competitively.

   More recent: He went to college. (*before*)

   Normal order: ____

   Inverted: ____

3. Older: Everyone put on protective headgear.

   More recent: They went bicycle riding. (*before*)

   Normal order: ____

   Inverted: ____

4. Older: I skipped lunch.

   More recent: I had an important conference call at noon. (*because*)

   Normal order: ____

   Inverted: ____

5. Older: The lawyers totally revised their strategy.

   More recent: The court reconvened after lunch. (*before*)

   Normal order: ____

   Inverted: ____

6. Older: The cook rubbed the roast with herbs.

   More recent: He put it in the oven. (*before*)

   Normal order: ____

   Inverted: ____

7. Older: He hesitated noticeably.

   More recent: He answered the question. (*before*)

   Normal order: ____

   Inverted: ____

8. Older: They drained a lot of water out of the reservoir.

   More recent: The heavy rains came. (*before*)

   Normal order: ____

   Inverted: ____

9. Older: The company analyzed the proposal carefully.

More recent: They invested money in it. (*before*)

Normal order: ____

Inverted: ____

10. Older: They got extra car insurance.

More recent: Their son was old enough to drive. (*as soon as*)

Normal order: ____

Inverted: ____

To this point all of our examples of past perfect tenses used in sentences with adverb clauses have had the past perfect verb in the main clause. However, the past perfect verb is actually more often used in the adverb clause. Here are some examples:

We cleared off the driveway as soon as it had stopped snowing.
main clause adverb clause

My bicycle got a flat tire before we had gone two miles.
main clause adverb clause

I wasn't able to play because I had injured my leg last week.
main clause adverb clause

The janitor always locked the gym up after the team buses had departed.
main clause adverb clause

These adverb clauses can also be inverted, putting the past perfect verb in the first clause:

As soon as it had stopped snowing, we cleared off the driveway.
adverb clause main clause

Before we had gone two miles, my bicycle got a flat tire.
adverb clause main clause

Because I had injured my leg last week, I wasn't able to play.
adverb clause main clause

After the team buses had departed, the janitor always locked the gym up.
adverb clause main clause

EXERCISE

7·4

All of the following sentences contain a main clause in the past tense followed by an adverb clause in the past perfect tense. Invert the two clauses so that the adverb clause is given greater emphasis. Be sure to use a comma with the inverted adverb. The first sentence is done as an example:

I knew my wallet was on the dresser because I had put it there the night before.

ANSWER: Because I had put it there the night before, I knew my wallet was on the dresser.

1. I called them on my cell phone as soon as the plane had landed.

   ____

2. I knew the answer even before he had finished asking me the question.

   ____

3. Our team scored even before we had found our seats.

   ____

4. We hung the clothes on the line after the sun had come out.

   ____

5. We could declare a thesis topic after we had passed the qualifying exam.

   ____

6. I had to come up with a plan even before we'd had a chance to talk about it.

   ____

7. We looked for better seats after we had reboarded the bus.

   ____

8. General Lee became a college president after the Civil War had ended.

   ____

9. It functioned much better after they had repaired it.

____

10. The plane finally took off after we had sat on the tarmac for an hour.

____

EXERCISE
7·5

Here are pairs of simple sentences in the past tense, one labeled "More recent" and the other labeled "Older." Combine the two simple sentences to produce a single sentence containing a past tense in the "more recent" main clause and a present perfect tense in the "older" adverb clause. Write two versions. In the first version, the adverb clause is in normal order following the main clause. In the second version, the adverb clause is inverted. The first sentence is done as an example. (Your answers may have slightly different wording.)

MORE RECENT: Bob was able to play again. (main clause)

OLDER: He had surgery on his injured knee. (adverb clause)

ANSWER: Normal order: Bob was able to play again after he had had surgery on his injured knee.

INVERTED: After he had had surgery on his injured knee, Bob was able to play again.

1. More recent: They were eligible to play professional football. (main clause)

   Older: Their class graduated from college. (adverb clause)

   Normal order: ____

   Inverted: ____

2. More recent: The airlines instituted a new policy. (main clause)

   Older: There was a near collision on the tarmac. (adverb clause)

   Normal order: ____

   Inverted: ____

3. More recent: He was arrested. (main clause)

   Older: He lied to the grand jury under oath. (adverb clause)

   Normal order: ____

   Inverted: ____

4. More recent: Ralph quit his job and moved to Florida. (main clause)

   Older: Ralph won the lottery. (adverb clause)

   Normal order: ______________________________

   Inverted: ______________________________

5. More recent: The cloth shrunk badly. (main clause)

   Older: The cloth got wet. (adverb clause)

   Normal order: ______________________________

   Inverted: ______________________________

6. More recent: The protesters were arrested. (main clause)

   Older: The protesters disrupted a city council meeting. (adverb clause)

   Normal order: ______________________________

   Inverted: ______________________________

7. More recent: The witness was excused from testifying. (main clause)

   Older: The witness invoked her right against self-incrimination. (adverb clause)

   Normal order: ______________________________

   Inverted: ______________________________

8. More recent: Someone called the fire department. (main clause)

   Older: The residents were alerted by the smell of smoke. (adverb clause)

   Normal order: ______________________________

   Inverted: ______________________________

9. More recent: The meetings were better attended. (main clause)

   Older: They started serving refreshments. (adverb clause)

   Normal order: ______________________________

   Inverted: ______________________________

10. More recent: The dog chewed up all the furniture. (main clause)

    Older: They left for work that morning. (adverb clause)

    Normal order: ______________________________

    Inverted: ______________________________

Summary of sentences with adverb clauses

Using the past perfect tenses with sentences that contain adverb clauses is confusing for two reasons: (1) adverb clauses can be either in their normal positions after main clauses or they can be inverted, and (2) it is quite common for the past perfect tense to be used in the main clause rather than the adverb clause. Thus, there are no fewer than four possibilities for where the past perfect tense can occur:

- The past perfect tense is in a main clause in its normal initial position.
  Example: We had packed a picnic lunch before we left.
  main clause adverb clause
- The past perfect tense is in a main clause, but the main clause is in the second position following an inverted adverb clause.
  Example: Before we left, we had packed a picnic lunch.
- The past perfect tense is in the adverb clause in its normal position following the main clause.
  Example: It took a while to clean the pot because the rice had boiled over.
- The past perfect tense is in an adverb clause inverted to a position in front of the main clause.
  Example: Because the rice had boiled over, it took a while to clean the pot.

This page intentionally left blank

·8·

The future perfect tense

The future perfect tense verb form consists of *will have* (the future tense form of *have*) followed by a verb in the past perfect form. Here are some examples:

By then, everyone will have finished eating.
The office will have closed before we can get there.
They will have lived in Japan for six years this coming January.

The future perfect tense, as all of the perfect tenses, must be terminated or "perfected" by an even more distant moment of time or defining event. In the case of the future perfect tense, this more distant moment is defined by an adverb prepositional phrase (usually beginning with the preposition *by*) or by an adverb clause of time. Here are some examples:

Terminating adverb prepositional phrase
The moon will have set by midnight.
The team will have come out onto the field by now.
Amazon will have shipped our order by the end of next week.

Terminating adverb clause of time
They will have rented a place to stay before school starts in the fall.
He will have figured out the answer as soon as he gets all the clues.
The chairman will have replaced Harry before the board meets on Monday.

The future perfect tense is used to talk about future-time events or conditions that will be completed or concluded no later than some specified future time or future event; for example:

Specified future time
I will have entered all the data before the end of the day.
The kitchen will have stopped serving by 10:00.
I will have earned $5,000 by the end of the summer.
The storm will have blocked all the roads by nightfall.

Specified future event

The painters will have finished the interior before the carpets are laid.
We will have paid the developers a fortune by the time we are finished.
They will have gotten the tents up before it starts raining.
I will have graded the papers before class begins.

When we talk about future conditions, we often use stative verbs with an adverb of duration; for example:

They will have been married for 10 years this June.
adverb of duration

I will have owned my truck for two years this coming Labor Day.
adverb of duration

I will have had a cold for two weeks now.
adverb of duration

The difference between the future tense and the future perfect tense is that the future perfect tense is used to emphasize the completion of the future event. For example, compare the following sentences:

Future tense	We will have dinner by 7:00.
Future perfect tense	We will have had dinner by 7:00.

The future tense sentence implies that dinner will start by 7:00. The future perfect tense implies that dinner will be over by 7:00.

Here is another example:

Future tense	The clouds will break up by noon.
Future perfect tense	The clouds will have broken up by noon.

The future tense sentence implies that we will have at least partial sun by noon. The future perfect sentence implies that the clouds will be completely gone by noon.

Here is an example where the difference is more subtle:

Future tense	Larry will get to the office around 9:00.
Future perfect tense	Larry will have gotten to the office around 9:00.

The sentence with the future tense envisions Larry arriving at the office at or before 9:00. The sentence with the future perfect tense envisions that at or before 9:00, Larry will already have been settled in his office for some time.

In general, we can say that the future tense envisions a future event happening. The future perfect tense envisions that future event as already being completed.

EXERCISE
8·1

Rewrite the underlined infinitive verbs either as future tenses or future perfect tenses depending on how the sentence is labeled. If it is labeled "Happening," use the future tense. If it is labeled "Completed," use the future perfect. The first two sentences are done as examples.

Completed: All of the flights be grounded by the storm as of 10 p.m.
ANSWER: All of the flights will have been grounded by the storm as of 10 p.m.
Happening: The stock market collapse by the end of the year.
ANSWER: The stock market will collapse by the end of the year.

1. Completed: The two companies merge by the end of the fiscal year.

   ____

2. Happening: I think that they make me an offer soon.

   ____

3. Completed: They trace the source of the leak in a few hours.

   ____

4. Happening: The carpets fade quickly if they are not protected from the sun.

   ____

5. Completed: Surely any message they sent reach us by now.

   ____

6. Completed: Hurry, or they sell all the good seats by the time we get our orders in.

   ____

7. Happening: The doctor prescribe a different medication after seeing what happened.

   ____

8. Completed: Her heirs gain control of their estate when they turned 18.

   ____

9. Completed: The chair cut off discussion after two hours.

   ____

10. Completed: The police inform him of his rights the moment he was arrested.

    ____

This page intentionally left blank

·9·

Introduction to the progressive tenses

There are three progressive tenses: the **present progressive**, the **past progressive**, and the **future progressive**. The three progressive tenses are all formed in exactly parallel manner: the appropriate present, past, or future tense form of the helping verb *be* followed by a verb in the present participle form; for example:

Present progressive	They are working in the garden now.
Past progressive	They were working in the garden earlier.
Future progressive	They will be working in the garden this afternoon.

The basic meaning of the progressive tense is an action in progress (thus the name **progressive** tense) at a particular moment in time. The present progressive is an action in progress at the present moment or period of time. The past progressive is an action in progress at some moment or period in the past. The future progressive is an action in progress at some moment or period in the future.

EXERCISE 9·1

Underline and identify the progressive tenses in the following sentences. The first sentence is done as an example.

My parents will be staying with us this weekend.

ANSWER: My parents will be staying with us this weekend.
future progressive

1. Our company is sponsoring a number of charity auctions.

____

2. We were just admiring your garden.
3. Our pets will be going to the vet for their annual shots.
4. I am translating some technical manuals into Spanish.
5. The kids will be staying overnight at a friend's house.
6. Am I interrupting anything?
7. They will be completing their training in June.
8. I was falling asleep at my desk so I took a little walk to wake up.
9. I don't know why they are blaming me for what happened.
10. Remember, they will be relying on you.

EXERCISE
9·2

Replace the underlined verb with the progressive verb form identified in parentheses. The first sentence is done as an example.

(past progressive) The farmers load sacks of grain onto their trucks.

ANSWER: The farmers were loading sacks of grain onto their trucks.

1. (future progressive) You waste your time if you do that.

2. (present progressive) I make some coffee; would you like some?

____

3. (past progressive) The polls lean toward the incumbent candidate.

____

4. (future progressive) I teach part-time next year.

____

5. (past progressive) The heat kill all of our shade plants.

____

6. (future progressive) Their flight arrive at 9:45.

____

7. (present progressive) They refer the whole matter to their legal department.

____

8. (past progressive) I thought that they deal with the situation very well.

____

9. (future progressive) We discuss that issue at our next meeting.

____

10. (present progressive) His doctor treat the infection with a new antibiotic.

____

This page intentionally left blank

·10·

The present progressive tense

The present progressive tense consists of the helping verb *be* in a present tense form followed by a verb in the present participle *–ing* form. Here are some examples:

> Our builder is leasing some heavy equipment to clear the site.
> The heavy rain is washing ruts into our front yard.
> I am telephoning all of the committee members.
> We are going to my parents' home for Christmas.
> It seems that traffic is getting worse every month.
> I'm hoping that I could see you for a few minutes this afternoon.
> He is always coming in late to meetings.

The present progressive tense has two main meanings: (1) action in progress and (2) future. In addition, there are two idiomatic uses of the present progressive that we will discuss at the end of the chapter.

Using the present progressive for action in progress

"Action in progress" accounts for around 80 percent of the occurrences of the present progressive. The term *action in progress* refers to the fact that we use the present progressive tense to narrate or depict an action or event that takes place or "progresses" (hence the name of the tense "progressive") over some span of current time. What constitutes "some span of current time" is very broad.

The action can take place during the actual time of speaking; for example:

> I'm just calling to say hello.
> The children are opening their presents even as we speak.

Or, the action can take place over great periods of time; for example:

The Pacific plate is slowly diving under the North American plate.
The two galaxies are passing through each other over a period of millennia.

On the face of it, the present progressive tense in the sense of "action in progress" seems perfectly straightforward. In many ways it is, but it is surprisingly difficult for nonnative speakers to use correctly. In fact, advanced nonnative speakers of English probably make more errors with this meaning of the present progressive tense than with any other single verb form in English.

The problem is not in forming the present progressive correctly or in using it in appropriate situations. The main problem is that there are some aspects of the progressive tenses (the present progressive in particular) that lead nonnative speakers to use the present progressive tense with stative verbs, verbs that are incompatible with the progressive tenses.

There are two important areas of differences between dynamic verbs and stative verbs that are especially relevant to the progressive tenses: the nature of subject-verb relationships and how the two types of verbs treat time.

Subject-verb relationships

Dynamic and stative verbs enter into very different relationships with their subjects. Dynamic verbs require the subject to be the performer or "doer" of the action of the verb. For example:

Frank answered the phone.
Janet taught English in China for a few years.
Farmer Brown planted potatoes this year.

In these dynamic verb sentences, the subjects are the performers of the action of the verbs: Frank performed the action of answering the phone; Janet performed the action of teaching English; Farmer Brown performed the action of planting potatoes.

Stative verbs enter into a different kind of relationship with their subjects, describing the ongoing condition or state of their subjects; for example:

Frank has a cell phone but no landline.
Janet knows a lot about teaching English in China.
Farmer Brown owns 500 acres of land in Idaho.

None of the subjects in these examples are doing anything. Instead, the verbs are describing something about the nature or situation of the subjects: Frank's ownership of telephones is described; Janet is described as knowing a lot about teaching English in China; and Farmer Brown is described as owning land in Idaho (where he can grow his potatoes).

Sometimes, especially with mental or cognitive verbs, the subject-verb difference between stative and dynamic verbs is not obvious at first glance. Compare the following two sentences:

Betty figured out the answer to the question.
Betty knew the answer to the question.

Often with mental or cognitive verbs the difference between stative and dynamic comes down to this question: Is the subject intentionally performing the action of the verb? In the first example, Betty has actively engaged in the process of coming up with the answer to the question. The solution came about only because Betty intentionally made it happen. The second example is different. We don't necessarily choose to know things. For example, all of us have the lyrics to hundreds of idiotic pop songs from our teenage years cluttering up our brains. We would all be happy to get rid of these lyrics to free up more mental storage space if only we could.

Figure (out) is thus a dynamic verb, and *know* is thus a stative verb. When we use the two verbs in the present progressive, we see the difference in grammaticality:

Betty is figuring out the answer to the question.
X Betty is knowing the answer to the question.

Another challenge is that many verbs can be either stative or dynamic verbs depending on the way they are used. For example, the verb *appear* can be used as either a dynamic verb or a stative verb (note that both are grammatical in the past tense):

Dynamic verb	Jerome appeared in a Hollywood film.
Stative verb	Jerome appeared to be a little distracted.

In the dynamic verb sentence, *appear* means "play a role." In the stative verb sentence, *appear* means "seem to other people." As we would expect, the dynamic verb use is grammatical in the present progressive tense, while the stative verb use is not:

Dynamic verb	Jerome is appearing in a Hollywood film.
Stative verb	**X** Jerome is appearing to be a little distracted.

In the dynamic verb sentence, the subject *Jerome* is an agent performing the action of the verb *appear*. In the stative verb sentence, the same subject is not doing anything. Instead, the sentence comments on how the subject *Jerome* seems to other people.

EXERCISE
10·1

Each of the following items has two sentences, one with a stative verb and one with a dynamic verb. Relying solely on the relationship between the subject and the verb, identify which verb is the stative verb and which is the dynamic verb. The stative verb will describe the nature of the subject; the dynamic verb will carry out the action of the subject. Confirm your answers by using both sentences in the present progressive tense. The first sentence is done as an example.

The children always like to play outside.
The children always ask to play outside.

ANSWER: The children always like to play outside. **Stative**
The children always ask to play outside. **Dynamic**
Present progressive: **X** The children are always liking to play outside.
Present progressive: The children are always asking to play outside.

1. The sausages weigh two pounds.

   The butcher weighs the sausages.

   Present progressive: ____

   Present progressive: ____

2. College graduates pile up a lot of debt.

   College graduates owe a lot of money.

   Present progressive: ____

   Present progressive: ____

3. Bill has a broken toe.

   Bill has some friends over to celebrate his promotion.

   Present progressive: ____

   Present progressive: ____

4. The children appear to be ready to go.

   The situation changes by the minute.

   Present progressive: ____

   Present progressive: ____

5. The kids always turn their bedroom into a playground.

   The kids' bedroom resembles the scene of a natural disaster.

   Present progressive: ____

   Present progressive: ____

6. Her new hairstyle suits her very well.

   Her new hairstyle takes a lot of time to maintain.

   Present progressive: ____

   Present progressive: ____

7. Everyone tells me to be careful.

   Everyone needs to be careful.

   Present progressive: ______________________________

   Present progressive: ______________________________

8. The public doubts what the congressman is claiming.

   The public agrees with what the congressman is claiming.

   Present progressive: ______________________________

   Present progressive: ______________________________

9. A big payment comes due at the end of the month.

   A big problem exists in our cash flow.

   Present progressive: ______________________________

   Present progressive: ______________________________

10. The students discussed how to thank you.

    The students appreciate all that you have done for them.

    Present progressive: ______________________________

    Present progressive: ______________________________

Time

The second major difference between dynamic and stative verbs is how they relate to time. Dynamic verbs are time bound; that is, the action of the verb always takes place in real time. Accordingly, the time of a dynamic verb's action can always be expressed by an adverb of time (either an adverb prepositional phrase or an adverb clause). For example:

> Jennifer bought a leather jacket.

This is a grammatically complete sentence without any overt expression of time. However, because the action of buying a jacket must take place in time, we *always* have the option of adding an adverb of time (either an adverb prepositional phrase or an adverb clause) to specify the time of the action; for example:

> Jennifer bought a leather jacket **last week.** (adverb prepositional phrase)
> Jennifer bought a leather jacket **when she was in Denver.** (adverb clause)

Stative verbs, on the other hand, are not time bound—just the opposite. Stative verbs are not limited at all by time.

Jennifer owns a leather jacket.

In this stative sentence, the stative verb *owns* describes something about the nature or character of the subject (Jennifer). In this case the verb tells us that she has a leather jacket. When somebody owns something, that state of ownership is not time bound. Ownership is an ongoing state with no built-in time limitation. When we own something, we own it indefinitely; we own it until we decide to get rid of it or otherwise lose possession of it.

If we try to modify a stative verb with an adverb of time, we are essentially mixing two incompatible systems: the inherently unlimited time of the stative verb with the limitation of the adverb of time. The result is necessarily both ungrammatical and nonsensical:

X **Jennifer owns a leather jacket at five this afternoon.** (adverb prepositional phrase)
X Jennifer owns a leather jacket **when she goes to dinner.** (adverb clause)

EXERCISE
10·2

Each of the following items has two sentences, one with a stative verb and one with a dynamic verb. Both sentences have the same adverb of time. Relying solely on the grammaticality of the adverb of time, determine which is the stative verb and which is the dynamic verb. The stative verb sentence will be ungrammatical with the adverb of time; the dynamic verb sentence will be grammatical. Confirm your answer by using both sentences in the present progressive tense. The first sentence is done as an example.

The children detest their cold medication **when they take it.**

The children spit out their cold medication **when they take it.**

ANSWER: The children detest their cold medication **when they take it. Stative**

The children spit out their cold medication **when they take it. Dynamic**

Present progressive: **X** The children are detesting their cold medication **when they take it.**

Present progressive: The children are spitting out their cold medication **when they take it.**

1. The chest contains extra blankets and pillows **whenever it gets cold.**

We take out extra blankets and pillows **whenever it gets cold.**

Present progressive: ____

Present progressive: ____

2. I resolved the issue **in a minute.**

   Everyone recognizes the issue **in a minute.**

   Present progressive: ____

   Present progressive: ____

3. We track the paths of protons **when we are in the lab.**

   Atoms consist of protons **when we are in the lab.**

   Present progressive: ____

   Present progressive: ____

4. They seem to be reliable **all the time.**

   We check on their reliability **all the time.**

   Present progressive: ____

   Present progressive: ____

5. He finds out what the answer is **on Wednesday.**

   He understands what the answer is **on Wednesday.**

   Present progressive: ____

   Present progressive: ____

6. The new shoes fit well **every weekend.**

   I wear the new shoes **every weekend.**

   Present progressive: ____

   Present progressive: ____

7. We buy a new car **next week.**

   A new car costs more than we can afford **next week.**

   Present progressive: ____

   Present progressive: ____

8. The children love their new school **in the fall.**

   The children enter their new school **in the fall.**

   Present progressive: ____

   Present progressive: ____

9. Their new apartment looks like their old place **when they move in.**

   They plan to remodel their new apartment **when they move in.**

   Present progressive: ____

   Present progressive: ____

10. Everyone helps to rearrange the layout of our office **every Monday morning.**

    Everyone dislikes the layout of our office **every Monday morning.**

    Present progressive: ____

    Present progressive: ____

Different verb tenses interact with dynamic and stative verbs in different ways. The past tense is unusual in that it is equally accepting of both dynamic and stative verbs; for example:

Dynamic verb	Jennifer bought a leather jacket last week.
Stative verb	Jennifer owned a leather jacket when she lived in Denver.

The fact that the past tense can be freely used with both kinds of verbs is undoubtedly why most novels and other works of fiction are written in the past tense: writers can mix dynamic and stative verbs without problems of grammatical or semantic incompatibility.

The present tense will readily permit stative verbs but not dynamic verbs unless they are used in special ways; for example:

Stative verb	Jennifer owns a leather jacket.
Dynamic verb	**X** Jennifer buys a leather jacket.

We can use dynamic verbs in the present tense, but only if we use adverbs of frequency to make the action of the verb habitual or customary (and thus not time bound as dynamic verbs normally are):

Dynamic verb	Jennifer buys a leather jacket every time she goes to Italy.

We now return to the question of why it is so difficult for nonnative speakers to correct errors with stative verbs in the present progressive tense.

The answer probably lies in the unique way that the present progressive tense treats time. The very meaning of the tense name, "**progressive**," emphasizes that the whole purpose of the tense is to describe things that span (progress) across time. It would then seem that the span of time that is always implicit in the actions described in the present progressive tense would be perfectly compatible with the continuous nature of stative verbs. The fact that nonnative speakers so persistently use stative verbs in the present perfect tense shows that this idea makes sense to them.

However, this is not the case at all. The present progressive is always time limited and therefore totally incompatible with the timeless nature of stative verbs. To see why this is the case, let us look at some typical present progressive sentences (with dynamic verbs, naturally):

> Our team is really getting beat!
> We are completely revising our landscape plan.
> Did you hear that Janet Jones is running for mayor?

Note that none of these examples has any overt mention of an ending point or even of any expression of time. Instead, there is something much more subtle going on in these sentences. Whenever we use the present progressive tense, the action of the sentence exists in its own implied self-defined, self-limiting time frame. For example:

> Our team is really getting beat!

In this sentence, the action exists only as long as the game lasts.

> We are completely revising our landscape plan.

In this example, the action lasts however long it takes the speakers to revise their landscaping plan.

> Did you hear that Janet Jones is running for mayor?

In this third example, the action lasts however long Janet Jones's mayoral campaign lasts.

The most striking demonstration of the self-defined, self-limiting time frame of verbs in the present progressive is with verbs whose meaning would seem to make them inherently unlimited in terms of time. One such verb is *live*. Compare the meaning of the verb *live* in the present tense with the meaning of the same verb in the present progressive tense:

> *Present tense* The Johnstons live in San Diego.
> (Meaning: The Johnstons permanently reside in San Diego.)
>
> *Present progressive* The Johnstons are living in San Diego.
> (Meaning: The Johnstons are staying in San Diego at the moment, but it is not their permanent residence.)

Here is a second example with the verb *store*:

Present tense We store all of our equipment in a warehouse.
(Meaning: We always keep our equipment in a warehouse.)

Present progressive We are storing all of our equipment in a warehouse.
(Meaning: We are temporarily keeping our equipment in a warehouse.)

As you can see, when we change the tense of the verb from the present tense to the present progressive tense, the implicit time frame of the sentence also changes from unlimited to limited or temporary, that is, it becomes time bound.

As we have seen in this subsection on the use of the present progressive tense to express action in progress, the present progressive describes actions that span a period of time. Some nonnative speakers apparently think of this span of time as being equivalent to the "timeless" nature of tenses such as the present tense, which also describes action that spans across time. Accordingly, nonnative speakers assume that the present progressive tense, as with the present tense, is compatible with stative verbs. The difference is that the present progressive has a somewhat unusual self-limiting time frame that makes the present progressive time bound and therefore incompatible with the basic timeless meaning of stative verbs.

The key, then, for avoiding the highly persistent error of using stative verbs in the present progressive tense is twofold: (1) clearly understanding the odd way that the present progressive uses a self-limiting time frame, and (2) knowing how to reliably recognize stative verbs. This presentation suggested two specific features of stative verbs to be aware of: by far the most important is the different relationship between verb and subject. Stative verbs describe their subjects. Dynamic verbs carry out the actions that their subjects perform. The second feature of stative verbs is the incompatibility of stative verbs with most adverbs of time. Determining whether adverbs of time can be used with a verb is a helpful way of testing to see whether the verb is a timeless stative verb or a time-bound dynamic verb.

EXERCISE
10·3

*All of the following sentences are written in the present progressive tense. If the sentence is grammatical, write "OK." If the sentence is ungrammatical, mark the sentence with an "***X***" and replace the present progressive with an appropriate tense. The first two sentences are done as examples.*

The girls are adoring their new baby sister.

ANSWER: The girls **adore** their new baby sister. **X**

The actors are still stumbling over their lines rather badly.

ANSWER: The actors are still stumbling over their lines rather badly. OK

1. The baby is being hungry all the time.
2. Fortunately, we are having a laptop at our disposal.
3. I am supervising a new construction project.
4. The estimate is including all taxes and fees.
5. The kids are mowing the backyard this afternoon.
6. I am hating the fact that we are having so much trouble.
7. I don't think it is harming anyone.
8. The ceremony is beginning at 4 p.m.
9. They are all liking the company's new logo.
10. The heavy rain is ruining everyone's gardens.

EXERCISE 10·4

Replace the base-form verb in parentheses with the present progressive if possible. If the present progressive is not correct, then use the appropriate tense. The first two sentences are done as examples.

The traffic (merge) from four lanes down to just one because of an accident.

ANSWER: The traffic **is merging** from four lanes down to just one because of an accident.

I (need) to get a haircut today.

ANSWER: I **need** to get a haircut today.

1. The babysitter (warm) the kids' dinner in the oven.

____

2. The kids (want) to watch TV until bedtime.

____

3. Their approval (mean) a lot to us.

____

4. I told the waiter that we (celebrate) a birthday.

5. George (know) where the restaurant is.

6. The children (quarrel) again.

7. We (soak) all of our dirty hiking clothes in the washing machine.

8. The purse (belong) to that young lady over there.

9. The tire (seem) a little flat to me.

10. The flowers in the garden (bloom).

Using the present progressive for future time

We often use the present progressive tense to talk about the future. Here are some examples:

They are taking the night flight back.
The flood is cresting within the next few days.
We are visiting some old friends in Chicago next week.
Ray and Joan are getting married next spring.
The sun is setting tonight at 7:35.
The government is announcing the new budget on Friday.
Airline fares are going up next summer because of increasing fuel costs.
Rio is hosting the summer Olympics in 2016.

Using the present progressive for the future is like using the present progressive for present time in one important respect: we cannot use the present progressive with stative verbs. For example, compare the use of the present progressive with the dynamic verb *start* and the stative verb *include*:

Dynamic verb	The meeting is starting at 2:30.
Stative verb	**X** The meeting is including an update on the budget.

We cannot use the stative verb *include* in the present progressive because, among other things, it is not time bound. The present progressive tense requires actions that take place in real time. The verb *include* is not really a time-bound action.

EXERCISE 10·5

All of the following sentences talk about future time using will*, which can be used equally well with both dynamic and stative verbs. Rewrite each sentence, replacing* will *with the corresponding present progressive verb form. If the resulting sentence is grammatical, label the sentence "OK" and write "Dynamic." If the resulting sentence is not grammatical, mark the sentence with an "X," draw a line through the present progressive verb, and write "Stative." The first two sentences are done as examples.*

The county will hold a special election on Tuesday.

ANSWER: OK The county is holding a special election on Tuesday. **Dynamic**

We will know the results within 24 hours.

ANSWER: **X** We ~~are knowing~~ the results within 24 hours. **Stative**

1. We will hear the results of the test soon.
2. By Friday, you will need to give the animals food and fresh water.
3. Getting an upgrade will depend on how much it costs.
4. The company will launch its new product line in the fall.
5. He will undergo surgery tomorrow morning.
6. I will buy a ticket as soon as I know my dates.

7. Mr. Green will retire at the end of the school year.

____

8. My cousins will try to hike the entire north rim of the Grand Canyon this summer.

____

9. They will recognize the hotel when they get there.

____

10. They will certainly appreciate anything you can do for them.

____

In discussing the future tense in Chapter 4, we saw that we talk about the future in two main ways: (1) prediction and (2) intention. For example, compare the way the following two sentences use *will* to talk about the future:

Prediction	The reception will last until 10:00.
Intention	I will give you a call tomorrow.

The first sentence uses *will* to make a prediction about a future event. The second sentence uses *will* to express the speaker's intention to carry out an action in the future.

The same is true for using the present progressive to talk about the future. We can easily divide the earlier examples of the future-time use of the present progressive into two groups: (1) prediction and (2) intention:

Prediction
The flood is cresting within the next few days.
The sun is setting tonight at 7:35.
Airline fares are going up next summer because of increasing fuel costs.

Intention
They are taking the night flight back.
We are visiting some old friends in Chicago next week.
Ray and Joan are getting married next spring.
The government is announcing the new budget on Friday.
Rio is hosting the summer Olympics in 2016.

The key difference between prediction and intention is whether or not the subject of the sentence is the doer of the future action. In other words, if the subject is the agent that causes the future action to take place, we would classify the sentence as **intention.** However, another way to think about it is that all statements about the future are necessarily just predictions for the obvious reason that the future hasn't happened yet. However, there is an important subclass of future predictions in which the subjects are agents that intentionally cause (or at least try to cause) the future events to take place. This subclass, of course, is the group we classify as **intention**.

EXERCISE
10·6

All of the following sentences use the present progressive tense to talk about the future. Classify each sentence as prediction or intention. The first two sentences are done as examples.

I am introducing the speaker at the 1:00 session.

ANSWER: Intention

A cold front from Canada is bringing record low temperatures for the weekend.

ANSWER: Prediction

1. The contractor is starting work on the renovation tomorrow.
2. The police are closing all the roads tonight because of the storm.
3. The last flight is departing tonight at 11:30.
4. The postgame interview is starting in a few minutes.
5. The president is addressing the country tonight at 6:00.
6. We are making an offer on their house this evening.
7. Jason and Mary are launching their boat for the first time when the tide comes in.

8. We are switching phone providers as soon as our existing contract is up.

____

9. The court is hearing the case on March 27.

____

10. The hurricane is coming ashore within the next few hours.

____

The distinction between prediction and intention is important for using the present progressive because there are substantial differences in how we use the present progressive depending on whether we are talking about prediction or intention.

We will discuss the two uses of the present progressive in turn.

Using the present progressive for prediction

We typically use the present progressive for predictable events, that is, events that have been scheduled, have been planned, or are the outcome of some present action or arrangement; for example:

> The train is leaving from Grand Central Station.
> The game is starting at 12:30.
> The coach said that Norman is playing in the second half.

We cannot use the present progressive for mere personal or subjective guesses about the future. For example:

> **X** The market is falling 10 percent over the next three months.

This sentence is ungrammatical because the future behavior of the stock market cannot be scheduled, planned, or controlled by any present action or arrangement.

The description of when we use the present progressive to make predictions about future events is the same as the description of when we use the present tense to talk about the future. We have already said that we use the present tense to refer to future events if those events are fixed or scheduled.

The fact that the two tenses are virtually identical in their basic meanings would seem to imply that they are used interchangeably. Certainly in casual conversation they can be. However, the present progressive is typically used with an implication that the present tense lacks. To see the difference, compare the following two sentences:

Present tense	Delta flight 238 departs at 11:35.
Present progressive tense	Continental flight 332 is departing at 2:15.

The present tense is simply a factual statement about the Delta Airlines flight schedule. The use of the present progressive in the announcement about the Continental flight implies that information about the departure time is new or of special significance; very likely 2:15 is not the officially scheduled time but rather the newly rescheduled time for a delayed flight. When you are at an airport, public announcements of delays or gate changes are almost always given in the present progressive, calling attention to the fact that the information is new; for example:

United flight 22 to Denver is now departing from gate 35.

Here are some more examples of this typical use of the present progressive for information that is new to the recipients of the information:

The concerts are starting at 7:30 instead of 8:00 this year.
The school bus is coming 15 minutes late this week.
Because of the weather, the award presentation is moving to the gym.

We often use the present progressive to ask questions to confirm our understanding of scheduled, planned, or arranged events; for example:

Is the game starting at 1:00?
Are the children going to school tomorrow?
Is Jayne speaking at the opening meeting?

Another use of the present progressive as opposed to the present tense is for emphasis. There is no necessary implication that the information is new to the recipient, but the use of the present progressive definitely brings the information to the attention of the recipient in an urgent way; for example:

Hurry up, the game is starting in just a few minutes.
Come on. The boat is leaving in 15 minutes.
The taxi is coming in five minutes!

Using the present progressive for intention

We use the present progressive tense to make a factual statement about the subject's intention to carry out some future action. (Whether the speaker actually does carry out the future action is irrelevant.) Here are some examples:

I am working from home tomorrow.
The CEO is announcing the merger at the board meeting.
We are having some friends over for lunch tomorrow. Can you join us?
The painter is finishing the exterior this afternoon.

The present progressive is quite different from the other commonly used way of talking about the future: the helping verb *will*. *Will*, even when used with a human subject, is more likely to be a prediction or comment about the future rather than a statement of an intention to carry out a future action. For example, compare the different ways the two are used in the following pair of sentences:

Will	I'll see you tomorrow morning.
Present progressive	I am seeing you tomorrow morning.

The two sentences are completely different. *Will* is used to express a commonplace pleasantry about what will happen tomorrow. The sentence with the present progressive is not a conventional pleasantry; it is a personal commitment to carry out a specific action.

Will can be used to express commitment, but only if it is stressed; for example:

We will not let them get away with that!
I will do my very best.

However, if *will* is not stressed, there is typically no sense of emphasis or commitment. Unstressed *will*, even with a human subject, is often used for simple futurity; for example:

They will probably get in pretty late.
Nobody will want to go out tonight because we have an early flight tomorrow.
I'll see you later.

An important use of the present progressive for future time is asking yes-no questions about someone's present intention to carry out a future action. (Yes-no questions are questions that ask for only a "yes" or "no" answer.) Here are some examples:

Are you meeting anyone?
Is Cynthia calling a taxi?
Are the kids getting ready?
Is Larry thinking about going ahead anyway?

Be going to

The use of the present progressive for future time (for both prediction and intention) is greatly extended by the use of the present perfect helping verb construction *be going to* plus base-form verb. Here are two examples of this construction, the first using *be going to* for prediction and the second using it for intention:

Prediction	The weather is going to get colder next week.
Intention	The governor is going to veto the bill.

Adding the helping verb construction *be going to* does not noticeably change the meaning of present progressive. For example, compare the previous two example sentences with the same sentences used without the helping verb construction:

Present progressive plus be going to	The weather is going to get colder next week.
Present progressive tense	The weather is getting colder next week.

Present progressive plus be going to	The governor is going to veto the bill.
Present progressive tense	The governor is vetoing the bill.

There is no difference between the meanings of the two versions of the sentences. Nor is there any noticeable shift in emphasis or context between the two different versions. So, if adding *be going to* to present progressive sentences used for future time does not change meaning or emphasis, why bother doing it?

As we have already discussed, there is a general prohibition against using the present progressive tense with stative verbs. There is also a second, independent restriction against using the present progressive tense for predicting future events *unless* these events are scheduled, are planned, or are the outcome of some present action or arrangement.

When we use *be going to*, both of these restrictions are eliminated. That is, we can use *be going to* with stative verbs and we can use *be going to* for future events that are *not* scheduled, planned, or the outcome of some present action or arrangement.

Using *be going to* has the great advantage that we do not have to monitor the grammatically tricky present progressive for correctness.

Here are some examples of the first restriction: using stative verbs with the present progressive:

X The meeting tomorrow is including an update on the budget.
X They are agreeing to meet tomorrow.
X Higher prices are meaning lower sales later.

Here are the same stative verbs, but now with *be going to*:

The meeting tomorrow is going to include an update on the budget.
They are going to agree to meet tomorrow.
Higher prices are going to mean lower sales later.

As you can see, adding *be going to* makes the stative verbs completely grammatical in the present progressive.

EXERCISE
10·7

All of the following sentences incorrectly use the present progressive tense with stative verbs. Correct these sentences by adding the helping verb construction be going to. *The first sentence is done as an example.*

X She is loving her new birthday present.

ANSWER: She is going to love her new birthday present.

1. **X** She is being on the executive committee starting next week.

____

2. **X** I am having some suggestions tomorrow.

____

3. **X** Their new apartment is seeming small after they move all their furniture in.

____

4. **X** He is wanting to get a new computer if he is going to work from home.

____

5. **X** Everyone is knowing soon enough.

____

6. **X** My parents are needing some help doing the paperwork.

____

7. **X** His actions are seeming pretty silly when the results come in.

____

8. **X** They are promising to behave in the future.

____

9. **X** His grades are mattering when he applies for a job.

____

10. **X** Their CEO is agreeing to be interviewed on the record.

____

The second restriction on the present progressive is that we cannot use the present progressive for predicting future events unless those events are scheduled, planned, or the result of some present action or arrangement.

Here are some examples of present progressive sentences that fail to meet these conditions and are ungrammatical as a result:

X The weatherman said that it is raining tomorrow.
X I believe that USC is beating UCLA next week.
X The boys are hurting themselves unless they get better equipment.

When we add *be going to*, these same sentences all become fully grammatical:

The weatherman said that it is going to rain tomorrow.
I believe that USC is going to beat UCLA next week.
The boys are going to hurt themselves unless they get better equipment.

EXERCISE
10·8

All of the following sentences incorrectly use the present progressive tense to predict future events because the events described cannot be scheduled, planned, or the result of some present action or arrangement. Correct these sentences by adding the helping verb construction be going to. *The first is done as an example.*

X The favorite is winning this weekend's big horse race.

ANSWER: The favorite is going to win this weekend's big horse race.

1. **X** He is earning a lot of money when he graduates from college.

2. **X** I am passing tomorrow's test with flying colors.

3. **X** I think that the court is ruling in favor of our client.

4. **X** Many investors are sitting on the sidelines until after the new year.

5. **X** The Dow is gaining 10 percent by the end of the summer.

Idiomatic uses of the present progressive

There are two idiomatic uses of the present progressive: polite indirectness and comments on habitual behavior. These are mostly used in casual conversation rather than in formal writing.

Polite indirectness

English, as all other languages, has a number of ways of dealing with potentially awkward or embarrassing situations. One such technique is using the present progressive where we would normally expect the present tense in asking permission or expressing an opinion that might be offensive. Here are some examples, first in the present tense and then in the more polite present progressive tense:

Present	I wonder if I could take a minute of your time.
Present progressive	I am wondering if I could take a minute of your time.
Present	I think that you should reconsider your decision.
Present progressive	I am thinking that you should reconsider your decision.
Present	We hope to stay with you next week.
Present progressive	We are hoping to stay with you next week.

Comments on habitual behavior

We would normally talk about any kind of repeated or habitual action in the present tense; for example:

They leave their trash on our lawn.
He interrupts other people.
The mayor usually puts the blame for problems on somebody else.

There is an odd idiomatic use of the present progressive for commenting (quite negatively) on someone's habitual behavior. Compare the following pair of related sentences, the first in the present tense, the second in the present progressive:

Present	Carl always comes in to meetings late.
Present progressive	Carl is always coming in to meetings late.

These two sentences mean the same thing, but the sentence in the present progressive has a much more negative edge to it. The present tense sentence could be interpreted as a neutral statement of fact—that's just the way Carl is. The present progressive sentence, however, has two unmistakably negative implications: (1) Carl's coming in late is habitual, and (2) it is highly offensive (at least to this speaker).

The key to recognizing this meaning of the present progressive is the use of the adverb *always*. Here are some more examples:

> They are always leaving their trash on our lawn.
> He is always interrupting other people.
> The mayor is always putting the blame for problems on somebody else.
> Those birds are always leaving a mess on our deck.
> The tenor is always coming in half a beat late.

EXERCISE
10·9

All of the following sentences use the present progressive correctly. Identify which of the four meanings of the present progressive each sentence uses: (1) action in progress, (2) future, (3) polite indirectness, or (4) habitual behavior. The first is done as an example.

They are meeting with the contractor as soon as they can.

ANSWER: (2) future

1. I'm getting a busy signal.

____

2. We are driving my mother to see the doctor in Chicago later.

____

3. He's always taking the easy way out.

____

4. I'm hoping that I can get in to see you this afternoon.

____

5. The schoolkids are always crossing the street against the light.

____

6. The builders are putting in the new flooring on Wednesday.

____

7. Everyone is talking about how much gas costs.

____

8. I'm getting a lot of static on the phone. I'll call you right back.

____

9. They are going out to dinner tonight.

____

10. We are asking for a few minutes of your time to bring you an important message.

____

·11·

The past progressive tense

The past progressive tense consists of the helping verb *be* in a past tense form followed by a verb in the present participle *–ing* form. Here are some examples:

> We were driving downtown when the storm hit.
> The train was just pulling into the station when we got there.
> We were thinking about going out for dinner.
> I was thinking I might go camping this weekend.
> I was talking to Janet yesterday, and she told me that you were retiring.
> We were working on that project all morning!

Major use of the past progressive tense

The major function of the past progressive tense is very much like the basic function of the present progressive tense: to talk about something that takes place (i.e., "progresses") over some span of time—present time for the present progressive, past time for the past progressive. There are also a number of other, more idiomatic uses of the past progressive that we will discuss at the end of the chapter.

Another important point of similarity between the two tenses is that the past progressive (as with the present progressive) can be used only with **dynamic** verbs. (Chapter 10 has a detailed explanation of why.) Dynamic verbs are verbs whose action takes place in real time (as opposed to the inherently timeless nature of **stative** verbs). Consequently, dynamic verbs are compatible with the time-bound meaning of the past progressive tense. For example, notice that all of the examples of the past progressive given at the beginning of this chapter are dynamic verbs.

By the same token, the timeless nature of stative verbs makes them incompatible with the time-bound meaning of the past perfect tense. (Please see Chapter 1 if you need to review the characteristics of dynamic and stative verbs.) For example, the verb *like* is a typical stative verb that describes an ongoing state or condition. We cannot use this stative verb in the past progressive tense:

X I was always liking homemade ice cream.

EXERCISE
11·1

*All of the following sentences are in the past progressive tense. If the sentence uses a dynamic verb, write "OK" and put "Dynamic" above the verb. If the sentence uses a stative verb, write "**X**," draw a line through the stative verb, and write "Stative" above the verb. The first two sentences are done as examples.*

We learned that Kathy was teaching English in Singapore.

Dynamic

ANSWER: OK We learned that Kathy was teaching English in Singapore.

The company was involving us from the start.

Stative

ANSWER: **X** The company ~~was involving~~ us from the start.

1. We were knowing all along that the job would be difficult.

____

2. Because of the kitchen repairs, we were eating out a lot.

____

3. Clearly, all of the politicians were avoiding the issue.

____

4. Frank was always possessing a great sense of humor.

____

5. The kids were sleeping in a tent in the backyard.

____

6. The orchestra was consisting of a string section and some woodwinds.

____

7. I was training everyone in the office to use the new accounting software.

____

8. The government was encouraging everyone to get flu shots.

9. After it started raining, the kids were wanting to go home.

10. Everyone was needing to take a break because of the heat.

Both the past tense and the past progressive describe actions that took place in past time. The difference between the two is that the past tense treats the past-time action as a finished event—completely over and done with—whereas the past progressive treats the past-time action as an ongoing process that continues through some span of past time. For example, compare the following sentences:

Past tense	Fred mowed the lawn this afternoon. (event)
Past progressive	Fred was mowing the lawn this afternoon. (process)

The past tense sentence describes an action that was completed in the past. The past progressive sentence describes an action that was in process during the time frame of the sentence. We have no way of knowing whether or not Fred ever finished mowing the lawn. The past progressive sentence is not about what happened as a completed event; the sentence is about what was going on at or during some particular moment or period of past time.

EXERCISE
11·2

Each of the following sentences contains an underlined verb in its base form. Put the verb into its proper past tense or past progressive form according to whether the sentence describes an event (past tense) or a process (past progressive tense). The first two sentences are done as examples.

Some people talk all during the movie. (process)

ANSWER: Some people were talking all during the movie.

We collect the samples only in the early morning. (event)

ANSWER: We collected the samples only in the early morning.

1. The cold weather threaten to ruin the entire crop. (event)

   ____

2. The country slowly emerge from financial chaos. (process)

   ____

3. During the whole time, I try to get a word in edgewise. (process)

   ____

4. The company rapidly expand into Asian markets. (event)

   ____

5. As it turned out, the police record the entire conversation. (process)

   ____

6. The heavy truck traffic damage the road surfaces. (process)

   ____

7. The company represent some of the firms in the industry. (event)

   ____

8. All the noise frighten the children. (process)

   ____

9. The kids swim at the pool in the community center. (process)

   ____

10. Their lawyer advise them not to say anything about what happened. (event)

    ____

As we have seen, the past progressive functions much as does the present progressive in that they both describe actions in progress. There is, however, one way in which the two types of progressive tenses are not the same, especially when they use verbs with a strong sentence of action.

Compare the following examples of present progressive and past progressive sentences. Assume that there is no previous mention of these sentences, that is, you are seeing each sentence for the first time:

Present progressive	My parents are traveling in India.
Past progressive	My parents were traveling in India.

The present progressive sentence seems perfectly normal. However, the past progressive sentence as it stands seems unfinished or inconclusive in a way the present progressive sentence does not.

The difference is in the time of the action. Sentences in the present progressive tense take place in a time that is automatically defined: now—at the present moment of time. We always know when sentences in the present progressive tense take place: they take place *now*.

Sentences in the past progressive, however, are different. There is nothing that automatically defines when they took place in the past *unless* the producers of the sentences provide that information for us. That is why the example sentence about traveling in India seems incomplete in the past progressive. We have no way to place the trip to India in past time.

To make the sentence seem complete, we need to add what is called a "temporal frame." A temporal frame is an adverbial time expression that locates the action of the sentence in past time—either by providing a point in time or a span of time during which the action took place. Here are some examples of the same sentence with the temporal frame added (in italics):

My parents were traveling in India *recently*.
My parents were traveling in India *during my junior year*.
My parents were traveling in India *when the attack in Mumbai happened*.

The sentences with the temporal frame added now seem complete and perfectly normal. Note that the three examples of temporal frames use all three different types of adverbials:

Recently is an adverb.
During my junior year is an adverb prepositional phrase.
When the attack in Mumbai happened is an adverb clause.

All temporal frames are adverbials of time—adverbs, adverb prepositional phrases, or adverb clauses. Adverbials of time (as with most other adverbials) typically follow the verb in what is called **normal order**. One of the defining characteristics of adverbials of time (again, as with most adverbials) is that they can be moved to the beginning of the sentence in what is called **inverted order**. Here are the three example sentences again, both in normal order and in inverted order:

Adverb

Normal order	My parents were traveling in India *recently*.
Inverted order	*Recently* my parents were traveling in India.

Adverb prepositional phrase

Normal order	My parents were traveling in India *during my junior year*.
Inverted order	*During my junior year*, my parents were traveling in India.

Adverb clause

Normal order	My parents were traveling in India *when the attack in Mumbai happened.*
Inverted order	*When the attack in Mumbai happened*, my parents were traveling in India.

Note that when an adverb clause is inverted, that is, the adverb clause is moved from its normal place following the main clause to a position in front of the main clause, the inverted adverb clause is set off with a comma. Unlike in British English where the use of commas with inverted adverb clauses is optional, in American English the commas are obligatory.

EXERCISE
11·3

Each of the following sentences is in the past progressive tense. Each sentence contains an adverbial of time that functions as a temporal frame for that sentence. Underline the entire temporal frame. Confirm that your answer is correct by moving the entire temporal frame adverbial to the beginning of the sentence. (Remember, if you invert an adverb clause, be sure to use a comma.) The first sentence is done as an example.

A film crew was shooting a commercial in front of our building all morning.

ANSWER: A film crew was shooting a commercial in front of our building all morning.

CONFIRMATION: All morning, a film crew was shooting a commercial in front of our building.

1. I was listening to the radio on the way to work.

   ____

   Confirmation: ____

2. Everybody was completely on edge after what happened.

   ____

   Confirmation: ____

3. The water was flooding the lower fields after all the heavy rains.

   ____

   Confirmation: ____

4. They were performing at schools around the state during the fall.

____

Confirmation: __________________________________

5. The police were still questioning witnesses even after the trial started.

____

Confirmation: __________________________________

6. The wind was blowing faster than 100 miles an hour during the worst of the storm.

____

Confirmation: __________________________________

7. The manager was interviewing ski instructors over the Thanksgiving break.

____

Confirmation: __________________________________

8. She was working on her master's degree then.

____

Confirmation: __________________________________

9. I was just quitting for the night when the alarm sounded.

____

Confirmation: __________________________________

10. Things were looking pretty bad for our candidate before we got the new poll results.

____

Confirmation: __________________________________

Sentences with adverb clauses can be quite confusing. One thing that makes them confusing, as we have seen, is that the main clause and the adverb clause can be in either order; for example:

The teams were already playing	*by the time we got to the stadium*.
main clause	adverb clause
By the time we got to the stadium,	the teams were already playing.
adverb clause	main clause

There is a second reason why sentences with adverb clauses can be confusing. So far, all of our examples with adverb clauses have had the past perfect verb tense in the main clause and the temporal frame in the adverb clause. However, there is no grammatical requirement that the past perfect verb tense be in the main clause. It can be (and often is) in the adverb clause; for example:

I got interested in Asian art *when I was living in San Francisco.*
main clause adverb clause

And, of course, to add to the confusion, the adverb clause with the past progressive tense can also be inverted; for example:

When I was living in San Francisco, I got interested in Asian art.
adverb clause main clause

EXERCISE 11·4

This is a different type of exercise that mimics the options we have when we actually form real sentences. Each of the following sentences consists of two clauses, the first labeled "main clause" and the second labeled "adverb clause." Follow these steps to create two versions of the same sentence:

Step 1: Identify and underline the two verbs that make up the past progressive tense (hint: they can be in either clause).

Step 2: Attach the adverb clause to the end of the main clause to create a complete sentence with the adverb clause in the normal position following the main clause.

Step 3: Form an inverted version of the same sentence by attaching the adverb clause to the beginning of the sentence (hint: check the punctuation).

The first sentence is done as an example.

Main clause: I was just getting into the shower

Adverb clause: When the phone rang

ANSWER: Step 1: I was just getting into the shower

Step 2: I was just getting into the shower when the phone rang.

Step 3: When the phone rang, I was just getting into the shower.

1. Main clause: I was reading a book on my Kindle

Adverb clause: While everyone else relaxed by the pool

Step 1: ____

Step 2: ____

Step 3: ____

2. Main clause: My father suffered a minor stroke

   Adverb clause: When he was undergoing surgery

   Step 1: ____

   Step 2: ____

   Step 3: ____

3. Main clause: The troops were storing ammunition

   Adverb clause: When the big explosion happened

   Step 1: ____

   Step 2: ____

   Step 3: ____

4. Main clause: They were shutting the door

   Adverb clause: After the horse was stolen

   Step 1: ____

   Step 2: ____

   Step 3: ____

5. Main clause: The campers were packing up all their gear

   Adverb clause: When the storm finally broke

   Step 1: ____

   Step 2: ____

   Step 3: ____

6. Main clause: I got all the dishes done

   Adverb clause: While you were talking on the phone

   Step 1: ____

   Step 2: ____

   Step 3: ____

7. Main clause: The fund was investing in Swiss francs

Adverb clause: Whenever the dollar was overvalued

Step 1: ____________________

Step 2: ____________________

Step 3: ____________________

8. Main clause: We would make the kids give us their cell phones

Adverb clause: Every time they were doing their homework

Step 1: ____________________

Step 2: ____________________

Step 3: ____________________

9. Main clause: The birds were building nests

Adverb clause: Whenever they could find a protected place

Step 1: ____________________

Step 2: ____________________

Step 3: ____________________

10. Main clause: Our flights were always late

Adverb clause: When we were flying in or out of Newark

Step 1: ____________________

Step 2: ____________________

Step 3: ____________________

Idiomatic uses of the past progressive tense

There are six idiomatic uses of the past progressive. All of these idiomatic uses are much more likely to be used in casual conversation than in formal writing, and, of course, it is for just that reason that even advanced nonnative speakers are unlikely to be aware that these idiomatic uses even exist. In casual conversation, these idiomatic uses are fairly common and often convey significant information, attitudes, and social commentaries.

Here, roughly in order of frequency, are the six idiomatic uses. Each of the six will be discussed in detail with examples.

- Polite questions and requests
- Tentative suggestions
- Habitual actions
- Failed plans or actions
- Reported informal conversation
- Disclaiming previous plans or information

Polite questions and requests

I was wondering if you could help me.
We were hoping that you could join us.
Was your son finished playing with that toy?

We have seen in previous chapters that both the past tense and the progressive tense are associated with polite indirectness. It is thus no surprise that a tense that is both past and progressive is used as a polite form for questions and requests. Note that when we make requests of strangers or people that we want to show deference to, we often frame a request as a question; for example:

Were you using those chairs?

really means

We want to use those chairs; is that OK with you?

Tentative suggestions

I was thinking we might go camping this weekend.
I was wondering if it might make sense to make them an offer.
I am suggesting that we talk it over before we make a decision we will regret.

The use of the past progressive to make a suggestion signals that the person or persons making the suggestion is doing so in a tentative way that recognizes that others may have valid reasons for not agreeing with it.

Habitual actions

One meaning of the past progressive is to describe actions that were habitual at some point or period in the past. Here are some examples:

> The kids were playing football at every recess.
> I was listening to classical jazz all the time.
> The brakes were constantly pulling to the right.

There is no implication that the action that was habitual in the past continues on to the present time or will continue into the future. Instead, there is a strong implication that the habitual action is strictly limited to the past or to the past situation in which the behavior occurred.

There is an important variation in the habitual use of the past progressive in informal conversation that requires the use of the adverb *always*. Here are some examples:

> Jackson was always falling asleep in class.
> The trumpet player was always coming in a little late.
> When we lived there, people were always blocking the driveway.

Notice that all three of these sentences give examples of negative behavior. This is typical for this use of the past progressive with *always*, which signals that the speaker is quite critical of the behavior being described. The use of the past progressive with *always* implies that the behavior was deliberate and persistent rather than being the result of an accidental moment of thoughtlessness, and this implication can have a sharp edge to it.

Failed plans or actions

> We **were** going camping this weekend, but we won't be in this weather.
> I **was** planning on going home early, but it doesn't look as though I can now.
> Well, we **were** flying out tomorrow morning, but . . .

The key to recognizing this use of the past progressive is the unusually heavy stress on *was* or *were*. The meaning of this use of the past progressive is something along the lines of, "Well, this is what I/we planned to do, but it probably is not going to happen." Often, speakers will not actually finish the sentence beyond the *but* (as in the third example). Instead, they will let their voices trail off into silence with a dropping intonation so that the vowel in *but* is drawn out.

Reported informal conversation

I was talking to Bob yesterday, and he mentioned that you were retiring.
We were talking to the director, and she said the contract might not be renewed.
I was talking to him in the elevator, and he said you were changing offices.

This is a rather subtle use of the past progressive. It is a way of issuing a kind of disclaimer about how the information was obtained. It implies that the information was the result of a casual, informal, almost accidental conversation and that the source of the information was not speaking formally or on the record. It also implies that the person using the past progressive did not deliberately seek out this information.

To see the difference between normal reporting of conversation in the past tense and this use of the past progressing, compare the following conversations. Assume that John is the person doing the speaking in both sentences.

Normal reporting in past tense	Fred told me that your CEO might quit.
Past progressive tense	I was talking to Fred, and he told me that your CEO might quit.

The first sentence is essentially public information. The speaker (John) is willing to be quoted as the source of information. The second sentence is much more indirect. The speaker (John) is passing on information that he heard from Fred, but by using the past progressive tense, John is signaling that what he heard from Fred was from spontaneous, casual conversation not really meant to be taken as public information.

Disclaiming previous plans or information

Everyone was getting together after work, I think.
We were eating in the hotel as far as I know.
Terry was making her presentation at 4:00.

This is another subtle use of the past progressive for the purpose of making a disclaimer. In this case, the speaker is making a disclaimer about the accuracy of the information the speaker is about to provide. Here is an example of a situation in which this construction might be used. Suppose that someone asked you this question:

"When is Mary's flight landing?"

If you knew for a fact that it was due at 8:30 and had no reason to think it would not land then, you would probably answer in either the present tense or the present progressive (echoing the tense used in the question):

"It lands at 8:30."
"It is landing at 8:30."

Now suppose that your information was not very current or that you had some doubt about its accuracy. In that case, you would signal your uncertainty by answering in the past progressive tense:

> "It was landing at 8:30 last I heard."

Look again at the three examples at the beginning of this discussion. All of them have this implication: "Well, this was the plan, but I don't really know if it is actually going to happen or not."

EXERCISE

11.5

Each of the following sentences contains one of these idiomatic uses:

1. *Polite questions and requests*
2. *Tentative suggestions*
3. *Habitual actions*
4. *Failed plans or actions*
5. *Reported informal conversation*
6. *Disclaiming previous plans or information*

Under each sentence write the number and name of the idiomatic use that best describes the underlined use of the past progressive tense. The first is done as an example:

I **was** hoping to be done with this project by now, but . . .

ANSWER: 4. Failed plans or actions

1. Every time I met him, Uncle Albert was arguing about politics with somebody.

   ____

2. I **was** trying to get home early, but . . .

   ____

3. We were wondering if you would like to share a cab.

   ____

4. Well, we **were** hoping to sell the house, but not with the real estate market the way it is now.

   ____

5. The consultants were meeting with us at 5:00 last I heard.

   ____

6. I was thinking that we should invite the neighbors over for dinner sometime.

7. Were you still using the salad dressing?

8. The sprinkler system was always going off at the wrong times.

9. I was talking to Mr. Green recently, and he said you might be moving.

10. I was suggesting that we might reduce our asking price.

This page intentionally left blank

The future progressive tense

·12·

The future progressive tense consists of the helping verb *be* in its future tense form *will be* followed by a verb in the present participle *–ing* form. Here are some examples:

> We will be staying with some friends in Los Angeles.
> I will be waiting for you in the baggage claim area.
> The painters will be finishing up the kitchen tomorrow.
> The storm will be hitting the coast around midnight.
> Everyone will be watching the big game.
> I'll be loading the car while you check out of the motel.

Major use of the future progressive tense

The basic meaning of the future progressive tense is to talk about something that is expected to take place (i.e., "progresses") over some span of future time. There are also four other, more idiomatic uses of the future progressive tense that we will discuss at the end of the chapter.

The future progressive tense, as with the other two progressive tenses, can generally be used only with **dynamic** verbs and not with **stative** verbs.

Strangely enough, there is a special and quite limited use of the future progressive tense that does permit it to be used with some stative verbs. We will ignore this highly restricted use of the future progressive until we get to the discussion of idiomatic uses at the end of the chapter.

Here are some examples of the future progressive using both types of verbs:

> **Dynamic verbs**
> The fish will be biting after all this rain.
> I'll be working downstairs if you need me.
> It will be snowing all afternoon.

Stative verbs

X You will be loving your new kitchen when it is finished.
X They will be agreeing with you.
X I am afraid that it will be costing more than we can afford.

EXERCISE
12·1

*All of the following sentences are in the future progressive tense. If the sentence uses a dynamic verb, write "OK" and put "Dynamic" above the verb. If the sentence uses a stative verb, write "**X**," draw a line through the stative verb, and write "Stative" above the verb. The first two sentences are done as examples.*

They will be discussing the agreement for hours yet.

Dynamic

ANSWER: OK They will be discussing the agreement for hours yet.

He will be belonging to a fraternity when he is in college.

Stative

ANSWER: **X** He ~~will be belonging~~ to a fraternity when he is in college.

1. I will be seeing about it and let you know what I find out.
2. The electrician will be rewiring the kitchen on Monday.
3. Their children will be looking just like them.
4. They will not be minding it if we park in their driveway.
5. The committee will be counting votes tomorrow.
6. The team will be deserving its reputation if they can win today.
7. The kids will be playing on the swings all afternoon.
8. The dinner will not be including dessert or beverage.
9. The company will be expanding its online information system.
10. Ruth will be playing tennis this afternoon with some of her friends.

The future progressive is like the past progressive in one important way: the need to define when the action takes place by adding what is called a "temporal frame" to the sentence. (See Chapter 11 for a detailed discussion of temporal frames.) For example:

My parents will be visiting us.

This sentence seems incomplete without giving more information about the visit, either when the visit will take place (time) or how long the visit will be (duration). When we revise the sentence by adding a temporal frame (in italics), the sentence seems complete:

My parents will be visiting us *after Christmas*. (time)
My parents will be visiting us *for a couple of days*. (duration)

Temporal frames are always adverbials of time or duration; they can be adverbs, adverb prepositional phrases, or adverb clauses. Here is an example of each type in italics:

We will be backpacking in the Sierras *next week*. (adverb)
We will be backpacking in the Sierras *during spring break*. (adverb prepositional phrase)
We will be backpacking in the Sierras *while we are on vacation*. (adverb clause)

All of these adverbials of time and duration share the characteristic that they can be moved from their normal position at the end of the sentence to an **inverted** position at the beginning of the sentence; for example:

Next week, we will be backpacking in the Sierras.
During spring break, we will be backpacking in the Sierras.
While we are on vacation, we will be backpacking in the Sierras.

Note that the inverted adverb clause is followed by a comma. The use of commas with inverted adverb clauses is obligatory in American English.

EXERCISE 12·2

Each of the following sentences is in the future progressive tense and contains an adverbial of time that functions as a temporal frame for that sentence. Underline the entire temporal frame. Confirm that your answer is correct by moving the entire temporal frame adverbial to the beginning of the sentence. (Remember, if you invert an adverb clause, be sure to use a comma.) The first sentence is done as an example.

The band will be playing in Denver next Friday and Saturday.
ANSWER: The band will be playing in Denver next Friday and Saturday.
CONFIRMATION: Next Friday and Saturday, the band will be playing in Denver.

1. The principal will be judging the spelling competition at 1 p.m.

____

2. They will be living in Spain until the end of the summer.

____

3. We will be continuing the discussion after everyone finishes dinner.

____

4. We will be closing down the beach house after Labor Day.

____

5. The sales staff will be showing the apartment as soon as it is vacant.

____

6. Department heads will be meeting with the CFO every Monday morning.

____

7. They will be expecting us to begin discussions the minute we get off the plane.

____

8. I will be teaching Accounting 101 in the winter quarter.

____

9. They will be getting married after she graduates.

____

10. Maintenance will be replacing all the old carpets over the holidays.

____

Both the future tense and the future progressive are used to describe an action that will take place in future time, but the two tenses look at the future action in two very different ways: the future tense describes the action as a unitary **event** that happens at a single point in future time. The future progressive tense, however, is used to emphasize that the future action is a **process** that occurs across a span or period of future time; for example:

Future tense	We will host a reception for the sales force tomorrow.
Future progressive tense	We will be hosting a reception for the sales force tomorrow.

Even if the two sentences are talking about the same reception, the two tenses look at it in two different ways: the future tense sentence sees the reception as a single event (as opposed to all other possible events or not doing an event at all); the future progressive tense sees the reception as a process or sustained action that takes place across a period of time.

EXERCISE
12·3

Each of the following sentences contains an underlined verb in its base form. Put the verb into its proper future tense or future progressive form according to whether the sentence describes an event (future tense) or a process (future progressive). The first two sentences are done as examples.

The marketing department fund tomorrow's reception. (event)

ANSWER: The marketing department will fund tomorrow's reception.

The light fade by the time we get to the campground. (process)

ANSWER: The light will be fading by the time we get to the campground.

1. Everyone rush to get their taxes in before the April 15 deadline. (process)
2. This last payment fulfill the terms of the contract. (event)
3. Everyone check their roofs for damage as soon as this terrible wind lets up. (process)
4. The governor announce the winners of the state awards at the banquet. (event)
5. On the first day of school all the kids cling to their parents. (process)
6. Henry edit the white paper before we send it out for review. (process)
7. Everyone notice that Pat is gone. (event)
8. They fish until it gets too dark to bait their hooks. (process)

9. I grab a bite at the cafeteria before I go to the meeting. (event)

10. All the rivers overflow their banks after all this rain. (process)

Idiomatic uses of the future progressive tense

There are four idiomatic uses of the future progressive. As is typically the case with idiomatic uses, they are most common in casual conversation. Here, in order of frequency, are the four uses:

- Planned or expected future event
- Imagining how someone else feels or thinks
- Indirect invitation or request
- Ironic imaginary future

Planned or expected future event

This is a fairly common use of the future progressive, even though it is constrained to certain circumstances. We use it to talk about a future event or action that is already arranged or planned. This use is sometimes described as "the future as a matter of course." It is often used for announcements, especially announcements aboard airplanes; for example:

> We will be closing the cabin door shortly.
> We will be serving a light breakfast before we land.
> We will be cruising at an altitude of 35,000 feet.
> We will be landing in approximately 20 minutes.

In terms of basic meaning, these announcements could have been given in the future tense just as well as in the future progressive, but there is a reason why airline companies prefer the future progressive: the use of the future progressive implies that the future action is in accordance with an established plan. In other words, everything is according to schedule and under control. Compare the following examples:

Future tense	We will land in approximately 20 minutes.
Future progressive tense	We will be landing in approximately 20 minutes.

The information in the future tense sentence could be new or unexpected information. However, the information in the future progressive sentence is comfortably routine.

Here are some more examples of the future progressive that do not involve airplanes:

I'll be seeing Alice this weekend, and I will ask her then.

In this sentence, the speaker's use of the future progressive lets the listener know that the speaker's meeting with Alice has already been arranged, so it is no inconvenience for the speaker to meet with Alice.

You can recognize Ronald because he will be driving a blue Volvo convertible.

The speaker's use of the future progressive lets the listener know that he or she can count on Ronald's driving a blue Volvo convertible.

When you get to your hotel, a representative from the travel agency will be waiting for you with your tickets.

The speaker's use of the future progressive reassures the listener that the plans will be carried out in a completely predictable and orderly manner.

Imagining how someone else feels or thinks

In this use, the future progressive signals that the speaker is making a hypothetical statement about what someone else might be feeling or thinking. Here are some examples:

They will be wondering what happened to us.
John will be thinking that we have got lost.
They will be wishing they had stayed at home.
They will be worrying about the icy roads.
He will be wishing he had brought cooler clothing.

Indirect invitation or request

You will be getting hungry, I suspect.
You will be wanting to get those wet shoes off.
You will be wanting to wash up before dinner.
You will be needing some extra time.

This use of the future progressive is like the previous one in that it imagines how someone else feels, but it functions quite differently. Depending on the context, this use can be either a polite question or an indirect request. In either case, it requires the person being addressed to make a yes or no response.

Ironic imaginary future

In this use of the future progressive tense, the speaker deliberately exaggerates someone's actions or behavior to a ridiculous extreme to call attention to how remarkable that person's actual actions or behavior really were. For example, if a child who has always refused to eat any kind of vegetable one day eats a few peas without the usual fuss, a parent might make this remark:

> Next, he will be liking spinach and broccoli.

This is a way of pointing out how special it was for the child to eat the peas. (The joke here is based on the fact that even children who like most vegetables don't usually like strong-tasting vegetables such as spinach and broccoli.)

The key to recognizing this odd use of the future progressive is the word *next*, which implies an imaginary series or sequence of events: if a person does action A (eating a few peas in our example), doing A will logically lead to doing action B (eating spinach and broccoli). Because we all know that action B is remarkable or preposterous or absurd, we can see that the person's original action A is equally remarkable or preposterous or absurd.

Here is another example. Suppose that in a trial about an automobile accident, a lawyer believes that the opposing lawyer, Mr. Smith, is denying something that is true. The lawyer might say this:

> Next, Mr. Smith will be denying that the accident even happened.

This is a way of pointing out how absurd Mr. Smith's original denial is.

Here are some more examples of this use of the future progressive.

> She will be owning her own business, next.
> He will be believing in the Easter Bunny, next.
> Next, he will be wanting his own car.

One of the many odd things about this construction is that it is often used with stative verbs, which are normally totally ungrammatical when used in any progressive tenses. All of the verbs used in the five examples of this construction are stative verbs: *like, deny, own, believe*, and *want*.

EXERCISE
12·4

Each of the following sentences contains one of the four idiomatic uses of future progressive tense. Identify by number and name which of the following uses it is:

1. *Planned or expected future event*
2. *Imagining how someone else feels or thinks*

3. Indirect invitation or request
4. Ironic imaginary future

The first sentence is done as an example.

All of the men will be wearing coats and ties.

ANSWER: 1. Planned or expected future event

1. We will all be wishing we had gotten to bed earlier.
2. Next, you will be running a marathon.
3. They will be wondering where everybody went.
4. You will be wanting to get to bed soon.
5. We will be serving dinner at 8:00.
6. Everybody will be needing to take a break soon.
7. The nonstop train for Chicago will be arriving on track 12.
8. You will be wanting some hot coffee, I imagine.
9. This year we will be observing the holiday on Monday.
10. They will be wanting to have their own tennis court, next.

This page intentionally left blank

The perfect progressive tenses

·13·

The perfect progressive tenses are a combination of one of the three perfect tenses (past perfect, present perfect, future perfect) with the progressive tense.

The perfect tenses consist of the helping verb *have* (in some form: present, past, or future) followed by a verb in the past participle form. In the following examples, the verb *fade* is in the past participle form.

Present perfect	The carpet **has** faded near the windows.
Past perfect	The carpet **had** faded near the windows.
Future perfect	The carpet **will have** faded near the windows.

The progressive tense consists of the helping verb *be* in some form followed by a verb in the present participle form; for example:

> They are celebrating his birthday today.

When we combine the perfect and the progressive tenses, the perfect tense portion of the sentence consists of *have* (in one of its three forms) followed by *been* (the past participle form of *be*). *Been* plays a double role. In addition to being the past participle verb form required to form the perfect tense, *been* is at the same time the helping verb *be* required to form the progressive tense. For example:

> I have **been** working in the garden all morning.

In this present perfect progressive sentence, we can see that *been* is linked with the verb in front of it (*have*) to form the perfect tense, and it is linked with the verb following it (*working*) to form the progressive tense. We might imagine the two roles of *been* as being played by two separate superimposed verbs, one *been* forming the present perfect tense with *have* and the other *been* forming the progressive tense with *working*:

have **been**	forms the present perfect portion of the sentence
been working	forms the progressive portion of the sentence

There are three different forms that the perfect progressive can take depending on the form that the verb *have* takes: present, past, or future. Here is an example of each:

Present perfect progressive	They **have** been protesting against the new taxes.
Past perfect progressive	They **had** been protesting against the new taxes.
Future perfect progressive	They **will have** been protesting against the new taxes.

EXERCISE
13·1

Each of the following items contains a grammatically correct sentence in one of the three forms of the perfect progressive. Underline all of the verbs that make up the perfect progressive tense and identify which type of perfect progressive tense it is: present perfect progressive, past perfect progressive, or future perfect progressive. The first sentence is done as an example.

She has been introducing all the speakers at the main sessions.

ANSWER: She has been introducing all the speakers at the main sessions.
present perfect progressive

1. He had been scoring nearly half of the team's goals.
2. The painters will have been stripping off all the old paint.
3. They had been washing all the dishes by hand during the power outage.
4. I have been smelling gasoline for days.
5. She will have been studying English since she was in elementary school.
6. Fortunately, I had been keeping a good record of all our building expenses.
7. The wild pigs had been reproducing at a rapid rate.

8. Apparently, they have been posing as reporters.
9. She will have been administering the fund for more than 20 years.
10. The doctor has been prescribing an antifungal drug for me.

The perfect progressive tenses, as with the other progressive tenses, cannot be used with stative verbs. Here are examples for the three perfect progressive tenses using the stative verbs *own, like, understand*, and *sound*:

Present perfect progressive
X Roberta has been owning several sailing boats.
X I have always been liking working in the garden.
X The children have all been understanding what to do in case of fire.
X The idea of a fall vacation has always been sounding like fun.

Past perfect progressive
X Roberta had been owning several sailing boats.
X I had always been liking working in the garden.
X The children had all been understanding what to do in case of fire.
X The idea of a fall vacation had always been sounding like fun.

Future perfect progressive
X Roberta will have been owning several sailing boats.
X I will have always been liking working in the garden.
X The children will have all been understanding what to do in case of fire.
X The idea of a fall vacation will have always been sounding like fun.

EXERCISE
13·2

*All of the following sentences are in one of the perfect progressive tenses. If the sentence uses a dynamic verb, write "OK" and put "Dynamic" above the verb. If the sentence uses a stative verb, write "***X***," draw a line through the stative verb, and write "Stative" above the verb. The first two sentences are done as examples.*

The heat will be melting the butter that we left out on the table.

Dynamic
ANSWER: OK The heat will be melting the butter that we left out on the table.

They had been needing to get some gas for some time.

Stative
ANSWER: **X** They ~~had been needing~~ to get some gas for some time.

1. They have been waiting for a final decision for months.
2. Their decision to get married will have been pleasing to both families.
3. My uncle will have been fishing every day this summer.
4. They were warned that they had been exceeding their budget.
5. He had been recognizing some old friends.
6. I'm afraid that I have been lacking enough money to do it.
7. They have certainly been putting up with a lot lately.
8. Henry had been loving pistachio ice cream ever since he was a child.
9. My old suits had been fitting me again after I had lost all that weight.
10. The government had been exerting a lot of pressure on them to reform.

We will now turn to a detailed examination of the three types of perfect progressive tenses.

Present perfect progressive

The present perfect progressive consists of a present tense form of the helping verb *have* (*has* or *have*) followed by *been* and the main verb in the present participle form (–*ing*). Here are some examples:

> I have been thinking about what you said.
> They have been working on this project for weeks now.
> She has been exhibiting her work in galleries all over the world.
> The head office has really been interfering with our day-to-day operations lately.
> It has been snowing for hours.

The basic function of the present perfect progressive tense is to describe an action or condition that began in the past and has continued in an unbroken manner up to the present time and may continue on into the future; for example:

> Their family has been making wine for five generations.

This definition of the present perfect progressive is virtually the same as the definition of the present perfect tense, and, indeed, with verbs that describe ongoing action, the two tenses can be quite similar in meaning; for example:

Present perfect progressive	The kids have been watching TV all afternoon.
Present perfect	The kids have watched TV all afternoon.

There is, however, something of a difference in emphasis between the two sentences. The present perfect progressive sentence emphasizes the ongoing duration of the TV watching more than does the present perfect sentence.

We can see a real difference between the two tenses quite clearly with most action verbs; for example:

Present perfect progressive	I have been repairing the gear shift on my bike.
Present perfect	I have repaired the gear shift on my bike.

The present perfect progressive sentence describes a work still in progress, while in the present perfect sentence, the job has already been completed. In general, present perfect progressive senses always place a strong emphasis on a process being carried out over time. Present perfect sentences, on the other hand, may or may not imply action in process.

EXERCISE
13·3

Each of the following sentences contains a base-form verb (underlined). Judging by the meaning of the sentence, decide which tense is more appropriate: the present perfect progressive or the present perfect. Then replace the base-form verb with the chosen tense. The first two sentences are done as examples.

The dog chew a hole in the living room couch.

ANSWER: Present perfect: The dog has chewed a hole in the living room couch.

The dog sleep on the living room couch for years.

ANSWER: Present perfect progressive: The dog has been sleeping on the living room couch for years.

1. I made a reservation for dinner at that new restaurant.
2. Grandfather tell that story ever since I was a child.
3. Jackson injured his leg again.
4. The dean recommend her for promotion.
5. Beginning with the Industrial Revolution, the climate steadily warm.
6. The reception be canceled because of the storm.

7. My cousin restore old cars as long as I have known him.
8. The company start a new internship program you might be interested in.
9. Remind me who he is. I forgot his name.
10. It seems as though it rain forever.

The present perfect progressive tense also resembles its other parent, the present progressive. For example, compare the following two sentences:

Present perfect progressive	We have been remodeling our kitchen.
Present progressive	We are remodeling our kitchen.

At first glance, there does not seem to be any real difference between the two tenses. Both sentences describe an action (remodeling the kitchen) that is taking place over a span of present time.

The difference is in how the two tenses treat the meaning of "present time." For the present progressive, "present time" is nothing more or less than the present moment of time; it is an endless "now." The present moment of time is dimensionless: there is no earlier or later. There is no starting the remodeling process in the past; there is no movement across time to the completion of the remodeling project. The present progressive treats time as an indivisible, unitary block.

The present perfect progressive treats time in a different manner. It emphasizes that the action of the verb continues over a span of time up to the present moment.

A particularly striking demonstration of the "timeless" nature of the present progressive tense is the fact that we cannot use adverbs of time that imply duration for the simple reason that there is no duration in present progressive tense sentences. Look what happens when we attempt to add an adverbial of duration (in italics) to our example sentence:

X We are remodeling our kitchen *for the past two weeks.*
X We are remodeling our kitchen *recently.*
X We are remodeling our kitchen *ever since the tree fell on it.*
X We are remodeling our kitchen *since last week.*

These same adverbials of duration are perfectly grammatical with our example present perfect progressive sentence:

We have been remodeling our kitchen *for the past two weeks.*
We have been remodeling our kitchen *recently.*
We have been remodeling our kitchen *ever since the tree fell on it.*
We have been remodeling our kitchen *since last week.*

Past perfect progressive

The past perfect progressive tense consists of *had* (the past tense form of *have*) followed by *been* and the main verb in its present participle form (*–ing*). Here are some examples:

During that time, I had been working in real estate sales.
The painters had been stripping the old paint off the walls.
The truck had been going too fast and lost control on a curve.
The price of gold had been going up at a steady rate for months.
The Johnsons had been watering their lawn too heavily.

The past perfect progressive is used to emphasize the continuous nature of an action or event that occurred during a past period of time. There is usually an implication that the past action does not continue beyond that period of time. There can even be an implied contrast between "then" and "now." For example:

The city had been disposing of its trash by simply burying it.

The use of the past perfect progressive in this sentence strongly implies that the city is no longer disposing of its trash in that manner.

The distinction between the past perfect progressive and past perfect is similar to the distinction between the present perfect progressive and present perfect: the past perfect progressive tense emphasizes the continuous nature of the past action or event. For example, compare the following two sentences:

Past perfect progressive	We had been getting up pretty late.
Past perfect	We had gotten up pretty late.

The past perfect progressive sentence describes a pattern of past activity. The past perfect sentence describes a single past act.

With verbs that describe a continuous action, the two tenses are similar in meaning; for example:

Past perfect progressive	It had been raining all that week.
Past perfect	It had rained all that week.

The only real difference is in emphasis: the past perfect progressive sentence stresses the ongoing, continuous nature of the rain. The past perfect sentence is more neutral: it is simply stating a fact about the weather.

EXERCISE

13·4

Each of the following sentences contains a base-form verb (underlined). Judging by the meaning of the sentence, decide which tense is more appropriate: the past perfect progressive or the past perfect. Then replace the base-form verb with the chosen tense. The first two sentences are done as examples.

The team play very well until the star player was injured.

ANSWER: Past perfect progressive: The team had been playing very well until the star player was injured.

Someone unlock the pasture gate and the animals got out.

ANSWER: Past perfect: Someone had unlocked the pasture gate and the animals got out.

1. Bobbie scrape his knee playing in the park yesterday.

____

2. The company accumulate a lot of debt over the past few years.

____

3. We gave them some toys their parents have when they were children.

____

4. The crowd swell all afternoon.

____

5. My knee hurt ever since I was in that automobile accident last winter.

____

6. They lose control of the fire ever since the winds started blowing.

____

7. Demand for CDs decrease steadily for the previous 10 years.

____

8. The explosion totally disrupt the peace negotiations.

____

9. The dust hang in the air for days.

____

10. The medication finally clear up the skin rash.

____

The differences between the past perfect progressive and the past perfect are similar to the differences in the corresponding present tense forms. For example, compare the following sentences:

Past perfect progressive	We had been avoiding the issue.
Past progressive	We were avoiding the issue.

The past perfect progressive sentence spans a period of past time. The past progressive makes a "timeless" factual statement about what happened. We can readily see the difference if we add an adverbial of duration:

Past perfect progressive	We had been avoiding the issue *for some time.*
Past progressive	**X** We were avoiding the issue *for some time.*

Past progressive sentences cannot be used with adverbials of duration.

Future perfect progressive

The future perfect progressive tense consists of the future form of the verb *have* (*will have*) followed by the past participle *been* and the main verb in the progressive form (–*ing*). Here are some examples:

The opera will have been going on for four hours.
They will have been talking all night.
Thomas will have been missing his parents.
The water line will have been leaking for weeks.

There are two different uses of the future perfect progressive tense: (1) emphasize the duration of an ongoing activity or event and (2) predict actions, attitudes, or events.

Emphasize the duration of an ongoing activity or event

We use the future perfect tense to stress the continuous, unbroken span of time over which an activity or event has been going on, from some past time up to the present moment or to sometime in the near future. The emphasis on duration is so strong that the sentence must contain an adverbial of duration. Here are some examples with the adverbial of duration in italics:

> They will have been dating *for nearly a year now.*
> We will have been working on this project *for months.*
> The International Space Station will have been orbiting the earth *for 13 years.*

If the adverbial of duration is omitted, these examples become incomplete:

> **X** They will have been dating.
> **X** We will have been working on this project.
> **X** The International Space Station will have been orbiting the earth.

The differences between the future perfect progressive and the other two compound future tenses, the future perfect and the future progressive, are in line with the differences we have seen with the other two perfect progressive tenses. For example, compare the following sentences:

Future perfect progressive	They will have been living in Chicago for a year.
Future perfect	They will have lived in Chicago for a year.
Future progressive	They will be living in Chicago for a year.

The future perfect progressive and the future perfect tenses are very much alike. The main difference is that the future perfect progressive tense emphasizes the continuous duration of their stay in Chicago, while the future perfect tense is simply stating a fact.

The future progressive has a totally different meaning from the two future perfect tenses. The future progressive sentence is a statement of their intentions to live in Chicago for a year in the future.

Predict actions, attitudes, or events

The other type of future perfect progressive is used to make a prediction or express a conjecture about what someone or something is doing. (You may recall from Chapter 4 that one of the main functions of *will* is to make predictions.) This use of the future perfect progressive does not require the use of an adverbial of duration. Here are some examples:

> We should go in—my parents will have been looking for us.
> The defenders will have been strengthening the walls.
> All of our cheese will have been melting in this heat.
> The competition will not have been expecting our new plan.

EXERCISE

13·5

Each of the following sentences contains a grammatical sentence in the future perfect progressive tense. Decide which best describes the use of the future perfect progressive tense. Does it (1) comment on the duration of an ongoing activity or event or (2) predict actions, attitudes, or events? If you select the former, write "(1) Duration." If you select the latter, write "(2) Prediction." The first two sentences are done as examples. (Hint: see if there is an adverbial of duration.)

The staff will have been assisting other customers.

ANSWER: (2) Prediction

They will have been driving for nearly an hour by now.

ANSWER: (1) Duration

1. The kids will have been playing football all afternoon.
2. They will have been wondering what happened to us.
3. My father will have been working for nearly 40 years.
4. The company will have been seeking feedback from its suppliers.
5. We will have been waiting to see a doctor for nearly an hour now.
6. Everyone will have been getting ready for the big party.
7. The water will have been flooding through the town for a week.
8. The candidates will have been buying up TV advertising slots.

9. They will have been breathing a sigh of relief at the outcome.

10. I will have been living here for two years this September.

Answer key

1 Introduction to stative and dynamic verbs

1·1

1. Present tense: I count to 10. X
   Present progressive tense: I am counting to 10. OK
   Count is a dynamic verb.
2. Present tense: He hates having to repeat himself. OK
   Present progressive tense: He is hating having to repeat himself. X
   Hate is a stative verb.
3. Present tense: We all hear what we want to hear. OK
   Present progressive tense: We all are hearing what we want to hear. X
   Hear is a stative verb.
4. Present tense: We want to leave after work as soon as we can. OK
   Present progressive tense: We are wanting to leave after work as soon as we can. X
   Want is a stative verb.
5. Present tense: The company expands its product line. X
   Present progressive tense: The company is expanding its product line. OK
   Expand is a dynamic verb.
6. Present tense: I make a reservation for our trip next week. X
   Present progressive tense: I am making a reservation for our trip next week. OK
   Make is a dynamic verb.
7. Present tense: Their stock portfolio consists largely of bonds and conservative stocks. OK
   Present progressive tense: Their stock portfolio is consisting largely of bonds and conservative stocks. X
   Consist is a stative verb.
8. Present tense: The publisher reviews her latest book. X
   Present progressive tense: The publisher is reviewing her latest book. OK
   Review is a dynamic verb.
9. Present tense: John accepts that he is going to have to relocate. OK
   Present progressive tense: John is accepting that he is going to have to relocate. X
   Accept is a stative verb.

10. Present tense: I know the answer. OK

 Present progressive tense: I am knowing the answer. **X**

 Know is a stative verb.

1.2 1. 1: Cognition and emotion 2. 5: Linking verbs with the meaning of appearance and sense perception 3. 3: Ownership and possession 4. 4: Measurement 5. 2: Obligation, necessity, and desire 6. 5: Linking verbs with the meaning of appearance and sense perception 7. 3: Ownership and possession 8. 5: Linking verbs with the meaning of appearance and sense perception 9. 4: Measurement 10. 1: Cognition and emotion

1.3

1. Stative: Nature abhors a vacuum. Category 1: Cognition and emotion
2. Stative: I suppose that the concert is at 8:00. Category 1: Cognition and emotion
3. Both verbs are dynamic: John is filling the car with gas while we are getting ready to go.
4. Stative: Everyone recognizes the need to keep our costs down. Category 1: Cognition and emotion
5. Dynamic: They are visiting her parents in Detroit this weekend.
6. Stative: He deserves better treatment than that! Category 2: Obligation, necessity, and desire
7. Stative: She belongs to a book club that meets once a month. Category 3: Ownership and possession
8. Dynamic: We are selling what we can’t take with us when we move.
9. Stative: This key fits the door to the garage. Category 4: Measurement
10. Dynamic: Senator Blather is announcing his support for the trade agreement today.

1.4

1. Dynamic: The saw is getting too hot to operate.
2. Stative: His idea sounds pretty good to me.
3. Dynamic: The weather is turning bitterly cold with the wind and cloud cover.
4. Stative: The pizza looks done.
5. Stative: I am ready to go whenever you are.
6. Dynamic: I am becoming more and more optimistic about Aunt Mary’s recovery.
7. Stative: The cloth feels too smooth to be wool.
8. Stative: His cooking tastes terrible.
9. Dynamic: The company is becoming a highly successful operation.
10. Stative: Uh-oh, the vegetables smell burned.

2 The present tense

2.1

1. I can’t see you. The light (shine) in my eyes. **is shining**

 The light (shine) against the paintings on the wall. **shines**

2. The kids (play) in the living room. **are playing**

 The kids (play) indoors when it rains. **play**

3. The company (publish) my first novel. **is publishing**
The company (publish) works by new authors. **publishes**

4. Bad news always (spread) faster than good news. **spreads**
The news (spread) all over town. **is spreading**

5. We (gain) weight as we get older. **gain**
We (gain) weight on this trip. **are gaining**

6. The board (make) the final decision on hiring. **makes**
The board (make) a bad mistake. **is making**

7. Conflicts about immigration always (divide) communities. **divide**
The conflict on immigration (divide) the community into factions. **is dividing**

8. The garage always (check) the oil. **checks**
The mechanic (check) the oil now. **is checking**

9. John (smile) whenever he thinks about what you said. **smiles**
John (smile) at what you just said. **is smiling**

10. We (walk) every chance we get. **walk**
We (walk) to the park. Want to come along? **are walking**

2.2 1. Not OK 2. OK 3. Not OK 4. OK 5. Not OK 6. Not OK 7. OK 8. OK 9. Not OK 10. OK 11. OK 12. Not OK 13. OK 14. Not OK 15. OK

2.3 1. OK habitual 2. OK assertion 3. Not OK 4. OK assertion 5. OK habitual 6. Not OK 7. Not OK 8. OK habitual (also assertion) 9. Not OK 10. OK assertion

2.4 1. (1) making assertions 2. (3) commenting on present-time actions 3. (1) making assertions 4. (1) making assertions 5. (3) commenting on present-time actions 6. (2) describing habits 7. (2) describing habits 8. (1) making assertions 9. (1) making assertions 10. (2) describing habits 11. (3) commenting on present-time actions 12. (1) making assertions 13. (2) describing habits 14. (1) making assertions 15. (1) making assertions

2.5 1. OK 2. Not OK 3. OK 4. Not OK 5. Not OK 6. OK 7. Not OK 8. OK 9. OK 10. OK

2.6
1. If I see him, I will say hello.
2. Until they save some more money, they will have trouble paying for it.
3. We definitely will accept if they offer us the job.
4. As soon I get home, I will start dinner.
5. We will watch a movie after we finish eating.
6. Once I get my check, I will look for a new apartment.
7. The game still will be played, even if it rains.
8. We will go ahead as planned, even though there are some objections.
9. Unless there is a problem, we will meet you in Denver tomorrow.
10. I will try to visit them next time I go to Phoenix.

2.7 1. (6) 2. (5) 3. (4) 4. (5) 5. (1) 6. (1) 7. (2) 8. (7) 9. (3) 10. (1)
11. (6) 12. (2) 13. (3) 14. (7) 15. (4)

3 The past tense

3.1

1. If I were you, I would watch what I ate.
2. If I were you, I would talk only about what I knew.
3. If I were you, I would remind them what they agreed to pay.
4. If I were you, I would be worried about where I parked my car.
5. If I were you, I would start working only when I had enough light to see what I was doing.

3.2

1. What did you think about it?
2. Would you join us for lunch?
3. Could you stop by my office before you leave?
4. Would you be free this evening?
5. Might I make an alternative proposal?

4 The future tense

4.1 1. Prediction 2. Prediction 3. Intention 4. Intention 5. Prediction 6. Intention
7. Prediction 8. Intention 9. Prediction 10. Intention

4.2

1. Everyone stays with friends until the water recedes. Not OK
2. They move out of the apartment at the end of the month. OK
3. I wax the car as soon as the water dries. Not OK
4. We help the public radio fund-raising program Saturday from noon till 4:00. OK
5. Loretta presents the keynote at this year's conference. OK
6. They sell their house as soon as they get a reasonable offer. Not OK
7. The course covers that material in the last week. OK
8. Because of global warming, some insurance companies raise their flood insurance rates next year. Not OK
9. The contractor lays the carpet as soon as he can get the pad installed. Not OK
10. I teach that class next semester. OK

4.3 1. Immediate future action 2. Scheduled or fixed future event 3. Normal expectations
4. New information 5. Immediate future action 6. Scheduled or fixed future event
7. Scheduled or fixed future event 8. Normal expectations 9. Immediate future actions
10. New information

4.4

1. Careful, you are about to sit in a wet chair.
2. The tournament begins this Saturday.
3. I am going to need to rent a car. (Note: am needing is ungrammatical because *need* is a stative verb.)

4. I will turn the lights off when I leave the building.
5. We are about to replace the countertops in the kitchen.
6. They will launch a search for the overdue hikers.
7. The news comes on at 10:00 tonight.
8. The storm is about to hit the coast with heavy rains.
9. The aides will handle all the registration details.
10. He is trying/is going to try a totally new approach.

5 Introduction to the perfect tenses

5.1 1. had checked past perfect 2. has delayed present perfect 3. will have closed future perfect 4. had gone past perfect 5. have started present perfect 6. had gotten past perfect 7. have maintained present perfect 8. will have finished future perfect 9. had anticipated past perfect 10. will have armed future perfect

5.2

1. I have asked them to provide more information.
2. Surely the lake will have frozen by now.
3. We had told them about what they said.
4. They will have cleared customs by now.
5. The court has ruled on many similar cases over the years.
6. Before they moved in, they had repainted the entire apartment.
7. They will have invited more people than they have space for.
8. Fortunately, we had adjusted the insurance before the accident happened.
9. Surely, he has retired by now.
10. His announcement will have attracted a lot of attention.

6 The present perfect tense

6.1 1. Continuously ongoing state (stative) 2. Intermittent action (dynamic) 3. Continuously ongoing state (stative) 4. Intermittent action (dynamic) 5. Intermittent action (dynamic) 6. Continuously ongoing state (stative) 7. Intermittent action (dynamic) 8. Continuously ongoing state (stative) 9. Intermittent action (dynamic) 10. Intermittent action (dynamic)

6.2 1. Noncontinuous 2. Continuous 3. Continuous 4. Noncontinuous 5. Noncontinuous 6. Noncontinuous 7. Continuous 8. Continuous 9. Noncontinuous 10. Continuous

6.3 1. Emphatic 2. Neutral 3. Emphatic 4. Emphatic 5. Neutral 6. Emphatic 7. Neutral 8. Emphatic 9. Neutral 10. Emphatic

6.4

1. Emphatic: The senator has refused to retract his statement.
   Neutral: The senator refused to retract his statement.
2. Emphatic: A big tree has fallen in the backyard.
   Neutral: A big tree fell in the backyard.

3. Emphatic: A reporter has revealed the source of the money.
   Neutral: A reporter revealed the source of the money.
4. Emphatic: They have told me what happened.
   Neutral: They told me what happened.
5. Emphatic: I have turned down the offer.
   Neutral: I turned down the offer.
6. Emphatic: We have bought a new car.
   Neutral: We bought a new car.
7. Emphatic: I have found my car keys.
   Neutral: I found my car keys.
8. Emphatic: The CEO has seen the new sales figures.
   Neutral: The CEO saw the new sales figures.
9. Emphatic: Our flight has been canceled.
   Neutral: Our flight was canceled.
10. Emphatic: The game has ended in a tie.
    Neutral: The game ended in a tie.

6.5 1. Neutral expectation 2. Affirmative expectation 3. Affirmative expectation 4. Neutral expectation 5. Affirmative expectation 6. Neutral expectation 7. Neutral expectation 8. Affirmative expectation 9. Affirmative expectation 10. Neutral expectation

6.6

1. Affirmative expectation: Has the Coast Guard warned boaters about the storm?
   Neutral: Did the Coast Guard warn boaters about the storm?
2. Affirmative expectation: Has the paint dried?
   Neutral: Did the paint dry?
3. Affirmative expectation: Has the committee adopted the proposal?
   Neutral: Did the committee adopt the proposal?
4. Affirmative expectation: Has he bought the tickets?
   Neutral: Did he buy the tickets?
5. Affirmative expectation: Has the garage checked the battery?
   Neutral: Did the garage check the battery?
6. Affirmative expectation: Have you stayed there before?
   Neutral: Did you stay there before?
7. Affirmative expectation: Has she kept the receipts?
   Neutral: Did she keep the receipts?
8. Affirmative expectation: Have they responded to our offer?
   Neutral: Did they respond to our offer?

9. Affirmative expectation: Have you gotten enough to eat?
   Neutral: Did you get enough to eat?
10. Affirmative expectation: Have they started to work?
   Neutral: Did they start to work?

7 The past perfect tense

7.1

1. We revised the estimates that we had made earlier.
   more recent past-time event older past-time event
2. He went into the hospital after his temperature had reached 103 degrees.
   more recent past-time event older past-time event
3. They had patented the device before they put it on the market.
   older past-time event more recent past-time event
4. I tried to get tickets, but they had already sold out.
   more recent past-time event older past-time event
5. We fell into bed utterly exhausted as soon as we had eaten.
   more recent past-time event older past-time event
6. The sun came out for the first time in days after the storm had finally passed.
   more recent past-time event older past-time event
7. I knew the answer as soon as she had asked the question.
   more recent past-time event older past-time event
8. I had picked up a cold when I was traveling.
   older past-time event more recent past-time event
9. We had lived there some time before we met them.
   older past-time event more recent past-time event
10. The bakery stopped making the cake that everyone had liked so much.
   more recent past-time event older past-time event

7.2

1. Before we started driving, we had adjusted the car seats.
2. Before everyone finished eating, the waiter had started clearing the dishes.
3. By the time we cut the cake, the ice cream had already melted.
4. When we first moved in, the house had been empty for years.
5. Before I noticed the dirty glasses, we had already finished setting the table.
6. Before the position was approved, he had advertised the job opening.
7. Long before we got on the road, the sun had risen.
8. Before the soldiers arrived, the rebels had already abandoned the fort.
9. By the time we got our tents set up, the rain had stopped.
10. Even before I reached the door, I had heard the loud music.

7.3

1. Normal order: We had taped all the windows and doors before we started painting.
   Inverted: Before we started painting, we had taped all the windows and doors.
2. Normal order: John had already swum competitively before he went to college.
   Inverted: Before he went to college, John had already swum competitively.
3. Normal order: Everyone had put on protective headgear before they went bicycle riding.
   Inverted: Before they went bicycle riding, everyone had put on protective headgear.
4. Normal order: I had skipped lunch because I had an important conference call at noon.
   Inverted: Because I had an important conference call at noon, I had skipped lunch.
5. Normal order: The lawyers had totally revised their strategy before court reconvened after lunch.
   Inverted: Before court reconvened after lunch, the lawyers had totally revised their strategy.
6. Normal order: The cook had rubbed the roast with herbs before he put it in the oven.
   Inverted: Before he put it in the oven, the cook had rubbed the roast with herbs.
7. Normal order: He had hesitated noticeably before he answered the question.
   Inverted: Before he answered the question, he had hesitated noticeably.
8. Normal order: They had drained a lot of water out of the reservoir before the heavy rains came.
   Inverted: Before the heavy rains came, they had drained a lot of water out of the reservoir.
9. Normal order: The company had analyzed the proposal carefully before they invested money in it.
   Inverted: Before they invested money in it, the company had analyzed the proposal carefully.
10. Normal order: They had gotten extra car insurance as soon as their son was old enough to drive.
    Inverted: As soon as their son was old enough to drive, they had gotten extra car insurance.

7.4

1. As soon as the plane had landed, I called them on my cell phone.
2. Even before he had finished asking me the question, I knew the answer.
3. Even before we had found our seats, our team scored.
4. After the sun had come out, we hung the clothes on the line.
5. After we had passed the qualifying exam, we could declare a thesis topic.
6. Even before we'd had a chance to talk about it, I had to come up with a plan.
7. After we had reboarded the bus, we looked for better seats.
8. After the Civil War had ended, General Lee became a college president.
9. After they had repaired it, it functioned much better.
10. After we had sat on the tarmac for an hour, the plane finally took off.

7.5

1. Normal order: They were eligible to play professional football when their class had graduated from college.
   Inverted: When their class had graduated from college, they were eligible to play professional football.

2. Normal order: The airlines instituted a new policy after there had been a near collision on the tarmac.

   Inverted: After there had been a near collision on the tarmac, the airlines instituted a new policy.
3. Normal order: He was arrested after he had lied to the grand jury under oath.

   Inverted: After he had lied to the grand jury under oath, he was arrested.
4. Normal order: Ralph quit his job and moved to Florida after he had won the lottery.

   Inverted: After he had won the lottery, Ralph quit his job and moved to Florida.
5. Normal order: The cloth shrunk badly after it had gotten wet.

   Inverted: After it had gotten wet, the cloth shrunk badly.
6. Normal order: The protesters were arrested after they had disrupted a city council meeting.

   Inverted: After the protestors had disrupted a city council meeting, they were arrested.
7. Normal order: The witness was excused from testifying after she had invoked her right against self-incrimination.

   Inverted: After the witness had invoked her right against self-incrimination, she was excused from testifying.
8. Normal order: Someone called the fire department after the residents had been alerted by the smell of smoke.

   Inverted: After the residents had been alerted by the smell of smoke, someone called the fire department.
9. Normal order: The meetings were better attended after they had started serving refreshments.

   Inverted: After they had started serving refreshments, the meetings were better attended.
10. Normal order: The dog chewed up all the furniture after they had left for work that morning.

    Inverted: After they had left for work that morning, the dog chewed up all the furniture.

8 The future perfect tense

8.1

1. Completed: The two companies will have merged by the end of the fiscal year.
2. Happening: I think that they will make me an offer soon.
3. Completed: They will have traced the source of the leak in a few hours.
4. Happening: The carpets will fade quickly if they are not protected from the sun.
5. Completed: Surely any message they sent will have reached us by now.
6. Completed: Hurry, or they will have sold all the good seats by the time we get our orders in.
7. Happening: The doctor will prescribe a different medication after seeing what happened.
8. Completed: Her heirs will have gained control of their estate when they turned 18.
9. Completed: The chair will have cut off discussion after two hours.
10. Completed: The police will have informed him of his rights the moment he was arrested.

9 Introduction to the progressive tenses

9.1

1. Our company is sponsoring a number of charity auctions. **Present progressive**
2. We were just admiring your garden. **Past progressive**
3. Our pets will be going to the vet for their annual shots. **Future progressive**
4. I am translating some technical manuals into Spanish. **Present progressive**
5. The kids will be staying overnight at a friend's house. **Future progressive**
6. Am I interrupting anything? **Present progressive**
7. They will be completing their training in June. **Future progressive**
8. I was falling asleep at my desk so I took a little walk to wake up. **Past progressive**
9. I don't know why they are blaming me for what happened. **Present progressive**
10. Remember, they will be relying on you. **Future progressive**

9.2

1. You will be wasting your time if you do that.
2. I am making some coffee; would you like some?
3. The polls were leaning toward the incumbent candidate.
4. I will be teaching part-time next year.
5. The heat was killing all of our shade plants.
6. Their flight will be arriving at 9:45.
7. They are referring the whole matter to their legal department.
8. I thought that they were dealing with the situation very well.
9. We will be discussing that issue at our next meeting.
10. His doctor is treating the infection with a new antibiotic.

10 The present progressive tense

10.1

1. The sausages weigh two pounds. **Stative**
   The butcher weighs the sausages. **Dynamic**
   Present progressive: **X** The sausages are weighing two pounds.
   Present progressive: The butcher is weighing the sausages.
2. College graduates pile up a lot of debt. **Dynamic**
   College graduates owe a lot of money. **Stative**
   Present progressive: College graduates are piling up a lot of debt.
   Present progressive: **X** College graduates are owing a lot of money.
3. Bill has a broken toe. **Stative**
   Bill has some friends over to celebrate his promotion. **Dynamic**
   Present progressive: **X** Bill is having a broken toe.
   Present progressive: Bill is having some friends over to celebrate his promotion.

4. The children appear to be ready to go. **Stative**
The situation changes by the minute. **Dynamic**
Present progressive: **X** The children are appearing to be ready to go.
Present progressive: The situation is changing by the minute.
5. The kids always turn their bedroom into a playground. **Dynamic**
The kids' bedroom resembles the scene of a natural disaster. **Stative**
Present progressive: The kids are always turning their bedroom into a playground.
Present progressive: **X** The kids' bedroom is resembling the scene of a natural disaster.
6. Her new hairstyle suits her very well. **Stative**
Her new hairstyle takes a lot of time to maintain. **Dynamic**
Present progressive: **X** Her new hairstyle is suiting her very well.
Present progressive: Her new hairstyle is taking a lot of time to maintain.
7. Everyone tells me to be careful. **Dynamic**
Everyone needs to be careful. **Stative**
Present progressive: Everyone is telling me to be careful.
Present progressive: **X** Everyone is needing to be careful.
8. The public doubts what the congressman is claiming. **Stative**
The public agrees with what the congressman is claiming. **Dynamic**
Present progressive: **X** The public is doubting what the congressman is claiming.
Present progressive: The public is agreeing with what the congressman is claiming.
9. A big payment comes due at the end of the month. **Dynamic**
A big problem exists in our cash flow. **Stative**
Present progressive: A big payment is coming due at the end of the month.
Present progressive: **X** A big problem is existing in our cash flow.
10. The students discussed how to thank you. **Dynamic**
The students appreciate all that you have done for them. **Stative**
Present progressive: The students are discussing how to thank you.
Present progressive: **X** The students are appreciating all that you have done for them.

10.2 1. The chest contains extra blankets and pillows **whenever it gets cold. Stative**
We take out extra blankets and pillows **whenever it gets cold. Dynamic**
Present progressive: **X** The chest is containing extra blankets and pillows **whenever it gets cold.**
Present progressive: We are taking out extra blankets and pillows **whenever it gets cold.**
2. I resolved the issue **in a minute. Dynamic**
Everyone recognizes the issue **in a minute. Stative**
Present progressive: I am resolving the issue **in a minute.**
Present progressive: **X** Everyone is recognizing the issue **in a minute.**

3. We track the paths of protons **when we are in the lab. Dynamic**
   Atoms consist of protons **when we are in the lab. Stative**
   Present progressive: We are tracking the paths of protons **when we are in the lab.**
   Present progressive: **X** Atoms are consisting of protons **when we are in the lab.**
4. They seem to be reliable **all the time. Stative**
   We check on their reliability **all the time. Dynamic**
   Present progressive: **X** They are seeming to be reliable **all the time.**
   Present progressive: We are checking on their reliability **all the time.**
5. He finds out what the answer is **on Wednesday. Dynamic**
   He understands what the answer is **on Wednesday. Stative**
   Present progressive: He is finding out what the answer is **on Wednesday.**
   Present progressive: **X** He is understanding what the answer is **on Wednesday.**
6. The new shoes fit well **every weekend. Stative**
   I wear the new shoes **every weekend. Dynamic**
   Present progressive: **X** The new shoes are fitting well **every weekend.**
   Present progressive: I am wearing the new shoes **every weekend.**
7. We buy a new car **next week. Dynamic**
   A new car costs more than we can afford **next week. Stative**
   Present progressive: We are buying a new car **next week.**
   Present progressive: **X** A new car is costing more than we can afford **next week.**
8. The children love their new school **in the fall. Stative**
   The children enter their new school **in the fall. Dynamic**
   Present progressive: **X** The children are loving their new school **in the fall.**
   Present progressive: The children are entering their new school **in the fall.**
9. Their new apartment looks like their old place **when they move in. Stative**
   They plan to remodel their new apartment **when they move in. Dynamic**
   Present progressive: **X** Their new apartment is looking like their old place **when they move in.**
   Present progressive: They are planning to remodel their new apartment **when they move in.**
10. Everyone helps to rearrange the layout of our office **every Monday morning. Dynamic**
    Everyone dislikes the layout of our office **every Monday morning. Stative**
    Present progressive: Everyone is helping to rearrange the layout of our office **every Monday morning.**
    Present progressive: **X** Everyone is disliking the layout of our office **every Monday morning.**

10.3

1. The baby **is** hungry all the time. **X**
2. Fortunately, we **have** a laptop at our disposal. **X**
3. I am supervising a new construction project. OK

4. The estimate **includes** all taxes and fees. **X**
5. The kids are mowing the backyard this afternoon. OK
6. I **hate** the fact that we are having so much trouble. **X**
7. I don't think it is harming anyone. OK
8. The ceremony is beginning at 4 p.m. OK
9. They **all like** the company's new logo. **X**
10. The heavy rain is ruining everyone's gardens. OK

10.4

1. The babysitter **is warming** the kids' dinner in the oven.
2. The kids **want** to watch TV until bedtime.
3. Their approval **means** a lot to us.
4. I told the waiter that we **are celebrating** a birthday.
5. George **knows** where the restaurant is.
6. The children **are quarreling** again.
7. We **are soaking** all of our dirty hiking clothes in the washing machine.
8. The purse **belongs** to that young lady over there.
9. The tire **seems** a little flat to me.
10. The flowers in the garden **are blooming**.

10.5

1. **X** We ~~are hearing~~ the results of the test soon. **Stative**
2. **X** By Friday, you ~~are needing~~ to give the animals food and fresh water. **Stative**
3. **X** Getting an upgrade ~~is depending~~ on how much it costs. **Stative**
4. OK The company is launching its new product line in the fall. **Dynamic**
5. OK He is undergoing surgery tomorrow morning. **Dynamic**
6. OK I am buying a ticket as soon as I know my dates. **Dynamic**
7. OK Mr. Green is retiring at the end of the school year. **Dynamic**
8. OK My cousins are trying to hike the entire north rim of the Grand Canyon this summer. **Dynamic**
9. **X** They ~~are recognizing~~ the hotel when they get there. **Stative**
10. **X** They ~~are~~ certainly ~~appreciating~~ anything you can do for them. **Stative**

10.6

1. Intention 2. Intention 3. Prediction 4. Prediction 5. Intention 6. Intention
7. Intention 8. Intention 9. Intention 10. Prediction

10.7

1. She is going to be on the executive committee starting next week.
2. I am going to have some suggestions tomorrow.
3. Their new apartment is going to seem small after they move all their furniture in.
4. He is going to want to get a new computer if he is going to work from home.

5. Everyone is going to know soon enough.
6. My parents are going to need some help doing the paperwork.
7. His actions are going to seem pretty silly when the results come in.
8. They are going to promise to behave in the future.
9. His grades are going to matter when he applies for a job.
10. Their CEO is going to agree to be interviewed on the record.

10.8

1. He is going to earn a lot of money when he graduates from college.
2. I am going to pass tomorrow's test with flying colors.
3. I think that the court is going to rule in favor of our client.
4. Many investors are going to sit on the sidelines until after the new year.
5. The Dow is going to gain 10 percent by the end of the summer.

10.9

1. (1) action in progress 2. (2) future 3. (4) habitual behavior 4. (3) polite indirectness
5. (4) habitual behavior 6. (2) future 7. (1) action in progress 8. (1) action in progress
9. (2) future 10. (3) polite indirectness or (1) action in progress

11 The past progressive tense

11.1

Stative
1. **X** We ~~were knowing~~ all along that the job would be difficult.

Dynamic
2. OK Because of the kitchen repairs, we were eating out a lot.

Dynamic
3. OK Clearly, all of the politicians were avoiding the issue.

Stative
4. **X** Frank ~~was~~ always ~~possessing~~ a great sense of humor.

Dynamic
5. OK The kids were sleeping in a tent in the backyard.

Stative
6. **X** The orchestra ~~was consisting~~ of a string section and some woodwinds.

Dynamic
7.OK I was training everyone in the office to use the new accounting software.

Dynamic
8. OK The government was encouraging everyone to get flu shots.

Stative
9. **X** After it started raining, the kids ~~were wanting~~ to go home.

Stative
10. **X** Everyone ~~was needing~~ to take a break because of the heat.

11.2

1. The cold weather threatened to ruin the entire crop.
2. The country was slowly emerging from financial chaos.

3. During the whole time, I was trying to get a word in edgewise.
4. The company rapidly expanded into Asian markets.
5. As it turned out, the police were recording the entire conversation.
6. The heavy truck traffic was damaging the road surfaces.
7. The company represented some of the firms in the industry.
8. All the noise was frightening the children.
9. The kids were swimming at the pool in the community center.
10. Their lawyer advised them not to say anything about what happened.

11.3

1. I was listening to the radio on the way to work.
   Confirmation: On the way to work, I was listening to the radio.
2. Everybody was completely on edge after what happened.
   Confirmation: After what happened, everybody was completely on edge.
3. The water was flooding the lower fields after all the heavy rains.
   Confirmation: After all the heavy rains, the water was flooding the lower fields.
4. They were performing at schools around the state during the fall.
   Confirmation: During the fall, they were performing at schools around the state.
5. The police were still questioning witnesses even after the trial started.
   Confirmation: Even after the trial started, the police were still questioning witnesses.
6. The wind was blowing faster than 100 miles an hour during the worst of the storm.
   Confirmation: During the worst of the storm, the wind was blowing faster than 100 miles an hour.
7. The manager was interviewing ski instructors over the Thanksgiving break.
   Confirmation: Over the Thanksgiving break, the manager was interviewing ski instructors.
8. She was working on her master's degree then.
   Confirmation: Then she was working on her master's degree.
9. I was just quitting for the night when the alarm sounded.
   Confirmation: When the alarm sounded, I was just quitting for the night.
10. Things were looking pretty bad for our candidate before we got the new poll results.
    Confirmation: Before we got the new poll results, things were looking pretty bad for our candidate.

11.4

1. Step 1: I was reading a book on my Kindle
   Step 2: I was reading a book on my Kindle while everyone else relaxed by the pool.
   Step 3: While everyone else relaxed by the pool, I was reading a book on my Kindle.
2. Step 1: When he was undergoing surgery
   Step 2: My father suffered a minor stroke when he was undergoing surgery.
   Step 3: When he was undergoing surgery, my father suffered a minor stoke.

3. Step 1: The troops were storing ammunition

   Step 2: The troops were storing ammunition when the big explosion happened.

   Step 3: When the big explosion happened, the troops were storing ammunition.
4. Step 1: They were shutting the door

   Step 2: They were shutting the door after the horse was stolen.

   Step 3: After the horse was stolen, they were shutting the door.
5. Step 1: The campers were packing up all their gear

   Step 2: The campers were packing up all their gear when the storm finally broke.

   Step 3: When the storm finally broke, the campers were packing up all their gear.
6. Step 1: While you were talking on the phone

   Step 2: I got all the dishes done while you were talking on the phone.

   Step 3: While you were talking on the phone, I got all the dishes done.
7. Step 1: The fund was investing in Swiss francs

   Step 2: The fund was investing in Swiss francs whenever the dollar was overvalued.

   Step 3: Whenever the dollar was overvalued, the fund was investing in Swiss francs.
8. Step 1: Every time they were doing their homework

   Step 2: We would make the kids give us their cell phones every time they were doing their homework.

   Step 3: Every time they were doing their homework, we would make the kids give us their cell phones.
9. Step 1: The birds were building nests

   Step 2: The birds were building nests whenever they could find a protected place.

   Step 3: Whenever they could find a protected place, the birds were building nests.
10. Step 1: When we were flying in or out of Newark

    Step 2: Our flights were always late when we were flying in or out of Newark.

    Step 3: When we were flying in or out of Newark, our flights were always late.

11.5 1. 3. Habitual actions 2. 4. Failed plans or actions 3. 1. Polite questions and requests
4. 4. Failed plans or actions 5. 6. Disclaiming previous plans or information
6. 2. Tentative suggestions 7. 1. Polite questions and requests 8. 3. Habitual actions
9. 5. Reported informal conversation 10. 2. Tentative suggestions

12 The future progressive tense

Stative

12.1 1. **X** I ~~will be seeing~~ about it and let you know what I find out.

Dynamic

2. OK The electrician will be rewiring the kitchen on Monday.

Stative

3. **X** Their children ~~will be looking~~ just like them.

Stative

4. **X** They ~~will not be minding~~ it if we park in their driveway.

Dynamic

5. OK The committee will be counting votes tomorrow.

Stative

6. **X** The team ~~will be deserving~~ its reputation if they can win today.

Dynamic

7. OK The kids will be playing on the swings all afternoon.

Stative

8. **X** The dinner ~~will not be including~~ dessert or beverage.

Dynamic

9. OK The company will be expanding its online information system.

Dynamic

10. OK Ruth will be playing tennis this afternoon with some of her friends.

12.2

1. The principal will be judging the spelling competition at 1 p.m.
   Confirmation: At 1 p.m. the principal will be judging the spelling competition.
2. They will be living in Spain until the end of the summer.
   Confirmation: Until the end of the summer, they will be living in Spain.
3. We will be continuing the discussion after everyone finishes dinner.
   Confirmation: After everyone finishes dinner, we will be continuing the discussion.
4. We will be closing down the beach house after Labor Day.
   Confirmation: After Labor Day, we will be closing down the beach house.
5. The sales staff will be showing the apartment as soon as it is vacant.
   Confirmation: As soon as it is vacant, the sales staff will be showing the apartment.
6. Department heads will be meeting with the CFO every Monday morning.
   Confirmation: Every Monday morning, department heads will be meeting with the CFO.
7. They will be expecting us to begin discussions the minute we get off the plane.
   Confirmation: The minute we get off the plane, they will be expecting us to begin discussions.
8. I will be teaching Accounting 101 in the winter quarter.
   Confirmation: In the winter quarter, I will be teaching Accounting 101.
9. They will be getting married after she graduates.
   Confirmation: After she graduates, they will be getting married.
10. Maintenance will be replacing all the old carpets over the holidays.
    Confirmation: Over the holidays, maintenance will be replacing all the old carpets.

12.3

1. Everyone will be rushing to get their taxes in before the April 15 deadline.
2. This last payment will fulfill the terms of the contract.
3. Everyone will be checking their roofs for damage as soon as this terrible wind lets up.

4. The governor will announce the winners of the state awards at the banquet.
5. On the first day of school all the kids will be clinging to their parents.
6. Henry will be editing the white paper before we send it out for review.
7. Everyone will notice that Pat is gone.
8. They will be fishing until it gets too dark to bait their hooks.
9. I will grab a bite at the cafeteria before I go to the meeting.
10. All the rivers will be overflowing their banks after all this rain.

12.4 1. 2. Imagining how someone else feels or thinks 2. 4. Ironic imaginary future
3. 2. Imagining how someone else feels or thinks 4. 3. Indirect invitation or request
5. 1. Planned or expected future event 6. 2. Imagining how someone else feels or thinks
7. 1. Planned or expected future event 8. 3. Indirect invitation or request 9. 1. Planned or
expected future event 10. 4. Ironic imaginary future

13 The perfect progressive tenses

13.1

1. He had been scoring nearly half of the team's goals.
   Past perfect progressive
2. The painters will have been stripping off all the old paint.
   Future perfect progressive
3. They had been washing all the dishes by hand during the power outage.
   Past perfect progressive
4. I have been smelling gasoline for days.
   Present perfect progressive
5. She will have been studying English since she was in elementary school.
   Future perfect progressive
6. Fortunately, I had been keeping a good record of all our building expenses.
   Past perfect progressive
7. The wild pigs had been reproducing at a rapid rate.
   Past perfect progressive
8. Apparently, they have been posing as reporters.
   Present perfect progressive
9. She will have been administering the fund for more than 20 years.
   Future perfect progressive
10. The doctor has been prescribing an antifungal drug for me.
    Present perfect progressive

13.2

Dynamic
1. OK They have been waiting for a final decision for months.

Stative
2. **X** Their decision to get married ~~will have been pleasing~~ to both families.

Dynamic
3. OK My uncle will have been fishing every day this summer.

Dynamic
4. OK They were warned that they had been exceeding their budget.

Stative
5. **X** He ~~had been recognizing~~ some old friends.

Stative
6. **X** I'm afraid that I ~~have been lacking~~ enough money to do it.

Dynamic
7. OK They have certainly been putting up with a lot lately.

Stative
8. **X** Henry ~~had been loving~~ pistachio ice cream ever since he was a child.

Stative
9. **X** My old suits ~~had been fitting~~ me again after I had lost all that weight.

Dynamic
10. OK The government had been exerting a lot of pressure on them to reform.

13.3

1. Present perfect: I have made a reservation for dinner at that new restaurant.
2. Present perfect progressive: Grandfather has been telling that story ever since I was a child.
3. Present perfect: Jackson has injured his leg again.
4. Present perfect: The dean has recommended her for promotion.
5. Present perfect progressive: Beginning with the Industrial Revolution, the climate has been steadily warming.
6. Present prefect: The reception has been canceled because of the storm.
7. Present perfect progressive: My cousin has been restoring old cars as long as I have known him.
8. Present perfect: The company has started a new internship program you might be interested in.
9. Present perfect: Remind me who he is. I have forgotten his name.
10. Present perfect progressive: It seems as though it has been raining forever.

13.4

1. Past perfect: Bobbie had scraped his knee playing in the park yesterday.
2. Past perfect progressive: The company had been accumulating a lot of debt over the past few years.
3. Past perfect: We gave them some toys their parents had had when they were children.
4. Past perfect progressive: The crowd had been swelling all afternoon.
5. Past perfect: My knee had hurt ever since I was in that automobile accident last winter.
6. Past perfect progressive: They had been losing control of the fire ever since the winds started blowing.

7. Past perfect progressive: Demand for CDs had been decreasing steadily for the previous 10 years.
8. Past perfect: The explosion had totally disrupted the peace negotiations.
9. Past perfect progressive: The dust had been hanging in the air for days.
10. Past perfect: The medication had finally cleared up the skin rash.

13.5

1. (1) Duration
2. (2) Prediction
3. (1) Duration
4. (2) Prediction
5. (1) Duration
6. (2) Prediction
7. (1) Duration
8. (2) Prediction
9. (2) Prediction
10. (1) Duration

About the Author

Mark Lester (Spokane, Washington) is an experienced grammarian, ESL expert, and emeritus college professor. He was the founding chair of the ESL department at the University of Hawaii, which is considered one of the best ESL programs in the United States. He is the author of more than a dozen books, including *A Commonsense Guide to Grammar and Usage* (with Larry Beason), now in its sixth edition, and the widely used college textbook *Grammar and Usage in the Classroom*. For McGraw-Hill, Dr. Lester has authored *Practice Makes Perfect: Advanced English Grammar for ESL Learners*; *McGraw-Hill's Essential ESL Grammar*; *English Grammar Drills*; *The McGraw-Hill Handbook of English Grammar and Usage* (with Larry Beason); and *The Big Book of English Verbs* and *McGraw-Hill's Essential English Irregular Verbs* (with Daniel Franklin and Terry Yokota). Dr. Lester is Eastern Washington University professor emeritus of English and former department chair. He obtained his BA in philosophy and English literature at Pomona College and his PhD in English linguistics from UC–Berkeley. He also holds an MBA from the University of Hawaii.

EXPAND YOUR WORLD THROUGH LANGUAGE

McGRAW-HILL'S ESSENTIAL

English Irregular Verbs

A Reference for Beginning to Advanced ESL Students

MARK LESTER, PH.D. • DANIEL FRANKLIN • TERRY YOKOTA

McGRAW-HILL'S ESSENTIAL

English Irregular Verbs

This page intentionally left blank

McGRAW-HILL'S ESSENTIAL

English Irregular Verbs

MARK LESTER, PH.D. • DANIEL FRANKLIN • TERRY YOKOTA

New York Chicago San Francisco Lisbon London Madrid Mexico City
Milan New Delhi San Juan Seoul Singapore Sydney Toronto

The McGraw·Hill Companies

Copyright © 2010 by Mark Lester, Daniel Franklin, and Terry Yokota. All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

ISBN: 978-0-07-160287-7

MHID: 0-07-160287-9

The material in this eBook also appears in the print version of this title: ISBN: 978-0-07-160286-0,
MHID: 0-07-160286-0.

All trademarks are trademarks of their respective owners. Rather than put a trademark symbol after every occurrence of a trademarked name, we use names in an editorial fashion only, and to the benefit of the trademark owner, with no intention of infringement of the trademark. Where such designations appear in this book, they have been printed with initial caps.

McGraw-Hill eBooks are available at special quantity discounts to use as premiums and sales promotions, or for use in corporate training programs. To contact a representative please e-mail us at bulksales@mcgraw-hill.com.

TERMS OF USE

This is a copyrighted work and The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. (“McGrawHill”) and its licensors reserve all rights in and to the work. Use of this work is subject to these terms. Except as permitted under the Copyright Act of 1976 and the right to store and retrieve one copy of the work, you may not decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, reproduce, modify, create derivative works based upon, transmit, distribute, disseminate, sell, publish or sublicense the work or any part of it without McGraw-Hill’s prior consent. You may use the work for your own noncommercial and personal use; any other use of the work is strictly prohibited. Your right to use the work may be terminated if you fail to comply with these terms.

THE WORK IS PROVIDED “AS IS.” McGRAW-HILL AND ITS LICENSORS MAKE NO GUARANTEES OR WARRANTIES AS TO THE ACCURACY, ADEQUACY OR COMPLETENESS OF OR RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED FROM USING THE WORK, INCLUDING ANY INFORMATION THAT CAN BE ACCESSED THROUGH THE WORK VIA HYPERLINK OR OTHERWISE, AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. McGraw-Hill and its licensors do not warrant or guarantee that the functions contained in the work will meet your requirements or that its operation will be uninterrupted or error free. Neither McGraw-Hill nor its licensors shall be liable to you or anyone else for any inaccuracy, error or omission, regardless of cause, in the work or for any damages resulting therefrom. McGraw-Hill has no responsibility for the content of any information accessed through the work. Under no circumstances shall McGraw-Hill and/or its licensors be liable for any indirect, incidental, special, punitive, consequential or similar damages that result from the use of or inability to use the work, even if any of them has been advised of the possibility of such damages. This limitation of liability shall apply to any claim or cause whatsoever whether such claim or cause arises in contract, tort or otherwise.

Contents

Preface vii

The English Irregular Verb 1

▶ *Summaries of verb formation, tense usage, complementation, and phrasal verbs*

- Regular vs. Irregular Verbs 1
- Verb Forms and Tense Usage 1
  - The Six Basic Verb Forms 1
    - Base Form 1
    - Present 2
    - Past 3
    - Infinitive 4
    - Present Participle 5
    - Past Participle 5
  - Tense Formation and Usage 6
    - The Three Simple Tenses 6
    - The Three Perfect Tenses 7
    - The Three Progressive Tenses 8
    - The Intensive Tenses 9
  - The Passive Voice 10
- Verb Complements 10
  - Complement Types 12
    - Single Grammatical Element Complements 12
    - Multiple Grammatical Element Complements 13
- Phrasal Verbs 13
  - Separable and Inseparable Phrasal Verbs 14
  - The Most Common Phrasal Particles 16
  - Verbs of Motion 17
- Expressions 17

CHART *Guide to Conjugations* 18
CHART *Guide to Complements and Phrasal Verbs* 19

188 English Irregular Verbs 21

▶ *Alphabetically ordered, with conjugations, complements, phrasal verbs, and expressions*

Top 30 Verbs: *Full page of examples adjoining select conjugation/complement pages*

Irregular Verb Form Index 241

▶ *Index showing the base form of all irregular verb forms in the book*

This page intentionally left blank

Preface

McGraw-Hill's Essential English Irregular Verbs contains basic conjugations and comprehensive usage patterns for 188 irregular verbs—all the irregular verbs that you are likely to encounter in even the most extensive reading. We have excluded only archaic and rarely used verbs, like *shrive* ("offer the religious rite of confession to") and *smite* ("to attack and kill/defeat," usually encountered only in the King James Bible of 1611).

In addition to the basic conjugation of each verb, *McGraw-Hill's Essential English Irregular Verbs* provides two unique features:

- **A complete listing of the complements for each verb**

Verb complements are grammatical structures that verbs use to make correct, meaningful sentences. Irregular verbs in English have 16 basic complements, plus dozens of combinations of these. For instance, the verb *make,* when it means "force, cause," uses two complements together: an object and an infinitive. The infinitive, however, must be in its base form, that is, used without the *to* that normally accompanies an infinitive.

OBJECT + *BASE-FORM INFINITIVE* The teacher made **the students *sit quietly***.

Most English learners, even advanced ones, make the mistake of using *to* with the infinitive, because that is the more common complement. *McGraw-Hill's Essential English Irregular Verbs* and its companion, *The Big Book of English Verbs,* are the only books that provide the correct complement in a useful format.

- **A listing of the important phrasal verb constructions for each verb**

Phrasal verbs are idiomatic combinations of verbs plus adverbs or prepositions. For example, the phrasal verb *show up* can mean "to arrive," even though nothing in the meaning of *show* or *up* would lead you to expect this meaning.

Moreover, there are important grammatical differences between phrasal verbs that consist of a verb + an adverb (separable phrasal verbs) and those that consist of a verb + a preposition (inseparable phrasal verbs). If the second element in a phrasal verb is an adverb, the adverb can (and in some cases MUST) be placed after the object. If the second element is a preposition, however, it can NEVER be moved away from the verb. *McGraw-Hill's Essential English Irregular Verbs* not only gives the meaning of every phrasal verb, but also indicates which combinations are separable and which are inseparable.

A 2007 study by Harvard scientists revealed that, over the centuries, English irregular verbs have been slowly becoming regular. *Help* and *work* were once irregular verbs! The scientists predict that *wed* will probably be the next irregular verb to become completely regular: *Wed ~ wed ~ have wed* will become *wed ~ wedded ~ have wedded.* The more common irregular verbs, like *be* and *come,* will take thousands of years to become regular. In the meantime, you have *McGraw-Hill's Essential English Irregular Verbs* to help you use all of these important verbs correctly.

Mark Lester
Daniel Franklin
Terry Yokota

This page intentionally left blank

The English Irregular Verb

REGULAR VS. IRREGULAR VERBS

A **regular verb** forms its past tense and past participle by adding *-d* or *-ed* to its base form. This ending may be pronounced /d/ (*cared, happened, viewed*), /ud/ (*committed, needed, listed*), or /t/ (*mixed, searched, slipped*). See pages 3–4 for details.

An **irregular verb** forms its past tense or past participle, or both, in an unpredictable way: by adding no ending at all, by changing the vowel of the base form, by adding a different ending, or by using a combination of these methods (*let ~ let ~ have let, meet ~ met ~ have met, swim ~ swam ~ swum, blow ~ blew ~ have blown*).

A verb is irregular based on its pronunciation, not on its spelling; for example, *lay* (*laid ~ have laid*) and *pay* (*paid ~ have paid*) are regular, because they add /d/ to their base forms for their past tense and past participle—like *stay* (*stayed ~ have stayed*)—even though the *ayed* is spelled *aid.*

Compound verbs, like *overeat* (< *eat*), *outsell* (< *sell*), and *withhold* (< *hold*), form their past tenses and past participles like their root verbs; for example, *overeat ~ overate ~ have overeaten.* A few high-frequency compound verbs, like *broadcast, overcome,* and *understand,* are included in the 188 irregular verbs presented here.

VERB FORMS AND TENSE USAGE

The Six Basic Verb Forms

Six basic verb forms are used to create the entire tense system of English: base form, present, past, infinitive, present participle, and past participle. These forms are illustrated in the following chart by the regular verb *walk* and the irregular verb *fly.*

BASE FORM	walk	fly
PRESENT	walk | walks	fly | flies
PAST	walked	flew
INFINITIVE	to walk	to fly
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	walking	flying
PAST PARTICIPLE	walked	flown

See “Guide to Conjugations” on page 18.

Base Form

The base form of a verb is its form in a dictionary entry. For example, if you looked up *sang,* the dictionary would refer you to the base form *sing.*

The base form is also the source (or base) for the present (with a few exceptions), infinitive, and present participle of the verb, whether the verb is regular or irregular.

The base form is used as a verb in three ways.

(1) It follows certain helping verbs, the most important being the **modal auxiliary verbs**, or **modals** for short: *can/could, may/might, will/would, shall/should*, and *must.* (Modal verbs themselves have no base form, infinitive, present participle, or past participle; they have only present and past forms.) Note the base form of the verb *be* in the following sentences.

I may **be** a little late.
He will **be** in New York all week.
You must **be** more careful.

Other verbs followed by the base form of a verb include *dare* (with *not*), *need* (with *not*), and *help.*

We need not **be** silent on the issue.

(2) The base form is used in imperatives (commands).

Be good!
Come here, please.
Ring the bell.

(3) Less commonly, the base form is used as a complement of certain verbs.

OBJECT + *BASE-FORM INFINITIVE*	The queen made **the guests *wait*** in the hall.

A base-form infinitive is an infinitive minus the *to.* If an infinitive including the word *to* were substituted for the base-form infinitive in the example above, the resulting sentence would be ungrammatical.

✗ The queen made **the guests *to wait*** in the hall.

Present

With the sole exception of the verb *be*, the present form of all verbs, including irregular verbs, is derived directly from the base form. The main difference between the present and base forms is that the third-person singular present form adds *-s* or *-es* to the base form of the verb; all other present forms are identical to the base form.

The base form of *be* is different from all of its present tense forms.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST PERSON	I **am**	we **are**
SECOND PERSON	you **are**	you **are**
THIRD PERSON	he/she/it **is**	they **are**

Both the pronunciation and the spelling of the third-person singular present ending are predictable. If the base form ends in a sibilant sound (*s, z, x, sh, ch, tch,* or *j* (as in ***judg**e*)), the ending is pronounced as a separate syllable rhyming with *buzz*. The ending is spelled *-es,* unless the base form already ends in *-e,* in which case only *-s* is added.

BASE FORM	THIRD-PERSON SINGULAR PRESENT FORM
lose	los**es**
freeze	freez**es**
beseech	beseech**es**
catch	catch**es**

If the base form ends in a voiceless consonant sound other than a sibilant, the ending is pronounced /s/ and is spelled *-es.* The voiceless consonants are usually spelled with a *p, t, ck, k, f,* or *gh* (when pronounced /f/).

keep	keep**s**
beat	beat**s**
seek	seek**s**
take	take**s**

If the base form ends in a voiced consonant other than a sibilant or in a pronounced vowel (as opposed to a silent final *-e*), the ending is pronounced /z/ and is spelled *-s*.

forbid	forbid**s**
bend	bend**s**
dig	dig**s**
feel	feel**s**
swim	swim**s**
mean	mean**s**
prove	prove**s**
pay	pay**s**
flee	flee**s**
fly	flie**s**
throw	throw**s**
strew	strew**s**

Note that if the base form ends in *-y* without a preceding vowel, the *-y* changes to *-ie* before the *-s* ending (see *fly* above).

A few verbs have irregular third-person singular present forms.

be	**is**
have	**has**

Two verbs have irregular pronunciations in the third-person singular present form.

do	**does** (rhymes with *buzz*)
say	**says** (rhymes with *fez*)

Past

There are two types of past forms: regular and irregular.

Regular verbs form the past tense by adding *-ed* to the base form (or simply *-d* if the base form already ends in *-e*).

BASE FORM	REGULAR PAST FORM
open	open**ed**
place	place**d**

The regular past ending has three different, but completely predictable, pronunciations. If the base form ends in a /t/ or /d/ sound, the *-ed* is pronounced as a separate syllable rhyming with *bud*.

BASE FORM	PAST FORM PRONOUNCED AS A SEPARATE SYLLABLE
vote	vot**ed**
decide	decid**ed**

If the base form ends in a voiceless consonant sound other than /t/, the *-ed* is pronounced /t/. The final voiceless consonants are usually spelled with a *p, ck, k, s, sh, ch, tch, x, f,* or *gh* (when pronounced /f/).

BASE FORM	PAST FORM PRONOUNCED AS /t/
tap	tapp**ed**
attack	attack**ed**
miss	miss**ed**
match	match**ed**
cough	cough**ed**

Note that if the base form ends in a single consonant preceded by a stressed short vowel, the consonant is usually doubled to form the past: *permit ~ permitted, stop ~ stopped.*

If the base form ends in a pronounced vowel or in a voiced consonant sound other than /d/, the *-ed* is pronounced /d/. The voiced consonants are usually spelled with a *b, g, z, j, m, n, l,* or *r.*

BASE FORM	PAST FORM PRONOUNCED AS /d/
tie	tie**d**
enjoy	enjoy**ed**
kill	kill**ed**
care	care**d**

Note that if the base form ends in *-y* without a preceding vowel, the *-y* changes to *-ie* before the *-d* ending (*cry ~ cried*). Also note the spellings of the past forms of *lay* and *pay*: *laid* and *paid,* respectively.

The past forms of irregular verbs reflect older patterns of forming the past tense. These patterns have merged to such an extent that it is not practical to learn the past forms of irregular verbs on the basis of their historical patterns. Similarities exist, however, in how some irregular verbs form the past tense.

VOWEL CHANGE	ring	**rang**	sing	**sang**		
VOWEL CHANGE + **-d**	sell	**sold**	tell	**told**		
VOWEL CHANGE + **-t**	feel	**felt**	kneel	**knelt**		
	keep	**kept**	sleep	**slept**	sweep	**swept**
NO CHANGE	bet	**bet**	put	**put**	rid	**rid**

Following are the past forms of the 13 most common verbs in English, all irregular.

BASE FORM	PAST FORM
be	**was** | **were**
have	**had**
do	**did**
say	**said** (rhymes with *fed*)
make	**made**
go	**went**
take	**took**
come	**came**
see	**saw**
know	**knew**
give	**gave**
get	**got**
find	**found**

Infinitive

The infinitive of a verb consists of *to* + its base form. There are no exceptions—even the verb *be* is regular: *to be.*

BASE FORM	INFINITIVE
be	**to be**
fly	**to fly**
spend	**to spend**

Infinitives are used as complements of certain verbs.

I would like **to meet** your friend.
They invited us **to spend** the night.

Present Participle

The present participle is formed by adding *-ing* to the base form.

BASE FORM	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
be	be**ing**
do	do**ing**
fly	fly**ing**
spend	spend**ing**

Note that if a verb ends in a single consonant preceded by a stressed short vowel, the consonant is usually doubled: *bet ~ betting, dig ~ digging, forbid ~ forbidding.* If a verb ends in silent *-e,* the *-e* is dropped before the *-ing* ending: *come ~ coming, have ~ having, write ~ writing.*

The present participle is used in two ways. By far the more common is after a form of the verb *be* in the progressive tenses.

> The kids were **going** to the beach.
> I am **flying** to Chicago tomorrow.

Less common is the present participle's use as a complement of certain verbs.

> I hate **doing** the dishes every night.
> I saw Holly **speaking** with Christopher.

Past Participle

There are two types of past participles: regular and irregular.

Regular past participles are formed in exactly the same way as the regular past, that is, by adding *-ed* to the base form. To distinguish the two forms, remember that the past form can occur by itself, but the past participle almost always occurs after a form of *be* or *have.*

Like irregular past forms, irregular past participle forms are unpredictable. There is one generalization, however, that we can make about them. In older periods of English, most irregular past participles ended in *-en.* Today, about one third of irregular past participles still retain this *-en* ending. Thus, if an irregular verb form has an *-en* (or *-n*) ending, we know it is a past participle.

BASE FORM	PAST PARTICIPLE
choose	chos**en**
eat	eat**en**
fly	flow**n**
see	see**n**
speak	spok**en**

Past participles are used in three ways in English.

(1) They are used in the perfect tenses after the helping verb *have.*

> They have **flown** in from Pittsburgh for the wedding.
> We had **shut** the window earlier.
> He will have **broken** every record.

(2) Past participles are used in passive sentences after the helping verb *be.*

> Skirmishes are being **fought** at the border.
> Her play was **seen** by thousands of people.

(3) Much less common is the past participle's use as a complement of certain verbs.

> We need the car **taken** to the garage for an oil change.

Tense Formation and Usage

The term **tense** can have several different meanings, but we use **tense** to refer to any of the nine different verb constructions that result when the three logical time divisions (present, past, and future) are integrated with the three aspect categories of verbs (simple, perfect, and progressive—*simple* here means that it is not perfect or progressive). These nine tenses are illustrated in the following chart, with the first-person singular form of *fly*.

	SIMPLE	PERFECT	PROGRESSIVE
PRESENT	I fly	I have flown	I am flying
PAST	I flew	I had flown	I was flying
FUTURE	I will fly	I will have flown	I will be flying

The Three Simple Tenses

PRESENT TENSE

The most confusing feature of the present tense for English learners is that the simple present tense does not actually signify present time. Its three main uses are the following: (1) making factual statements and generalizations, (2) describing habitual actions, and (3) describing predictable future events or actions.

(1) The simple present tense is used to state objective facts that are not restricted by time.

A mile **is** 5,280 feet.
The sun **rises** in the east and **sets** in the west.

Similarly, the simple present tense is used to state facts that are true for the foreseeable future.

She **teaches** algebra.

This sentence means, "She hasn't always taught algebra, and at some point in the future, she may teach another subject. Nevertheless, it is likely that she will continue teaching algebra indefinitely." Contrast this sentence with the following one, which uses the present progressive tense.

She **is teaching** algebra.

This sentence means, "She is only teaching algebra temporarily, and she expects to teach another subject eventually."

The simple present tense is also used to make generalizations that are considered valid for the foreseeable future.

I **know** Latin and Greek.
Sneezing **spreads** germs.

(2) The simple present tense is used to describe habitual actions.

Bob **reads** his e-mail first thing in the morning.

This sentence describes what Bob normally does first thing in the morning. It does not mean that Bob is reading his e-mail now, at this very moment. The sentence would still be valid if Bob were on vacation and hadn't read his e-mail in a week.

(3) The simple present tense is often used for near-future events or actions that one expects to happen.

Our flight **leaves** at nine.
I **go** home on Sunday.

Note that the simple present tense is not used for uncertain future events. For example, it is not used to describe future weather.

> ✗ It **freezes** tonight.

PAST TENSE

The simple past tense describes an event or action that was completed before the present moment in time; that is, the event or action has already taken place. The past tense can refer to a single point in past time.

> I **mowed** the lawn yesterday afternoon.

The past tense can also refer to a span of time in the past, as long as it was completed before the present.

> Ira **sang** in the choir for nearly 30 years.

This sentence means that Ira is no longer singing in the choir at this time.

In addition, the simple past tense has inherited one of the functions of the subjunctive from older periods of English: indicating that the speaker is talking hypothetically or even contrary to fact. This hypothetical use of the past tense does NOT indicate past time. Its most common use is in IF-CLAUSES.

> If I **were** you, I **would** be sure that I **was** finished on time.

The use of *were* rather than the expected *was* survives from an old subjunctive form. Notice also that the other two verbs in the sentence are in the past tense, even though the sentence does not refer to past time.

FUTURE TENSE

The simple future tense consists of the helping verb *will* followed by the base form of the main verb.

> I **will take** a taxi to the airport.
> They **will meet** us at the restaurant.

The helping verb *will* is one of the nine modal auxiliary verbs: *can/could, may/might, will/would, shall/should,* and *must.* Although *will* is used to form the future tense, any of the other eight modals can refer to future time.

> I **can take** a taxi to the airport.
> I **could take** a taxi to the airport.
> I **may take** a taxi to the airport.
> I **must take** a taxi to the airport.

Each of the nine modals has its own range of meanings, allowing English speakers to make a number of subtly different statements about the possibility, certainty, desirability, or necessity of a future action.

The Three Perfect Tenses

The three perfect tenses consist of a form of the helping verb *have* followed by the past participle of the main verb. The present tense form of *have* is used for the present perfect, the past tense form for the past perfect, and the future tense form for the future perfect.

PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

The present perfect tense consists of *have* or *has* followed by the past participle of the main verb. This tense is used to describe an action that began in the past and has continued up to the present time, with the implication that it will continue into the future. The best way to understand the present perfect tense is to compare it to the past tense.

PAST TENSE	John **took** a bus to work for five years.
PRESENT PERFECT TENSE	John **has taken** a bus to work for five years.

According to the past tense sentence, John no longer takes a bus to work; he is retired or he uses another means of transportation to get to work. According to the present perfect tense sentence, John still takes a bus to work and is expected to continue doing so into the foreseeable future.

PAST PERFECT TENSE

The past perfect tense consists of *had* followed by the past participle of the main verb. The most common use of this tense is to emphasize that an event in the past was completed before a more recent event took place.

> My parents **had left** for the airport before my plane landed.

This sentence describes two past-time events. The first event is the parents' leaving for the airport, and the second event is the plane landing. The use of the past perfect tense makes it clear that the first event was completed before the second one occurred. Note that the events can also be stated in reverse order.

> Before my plane landed, my parents **had left** for the airport.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

The future perfect tense consists of *will have* followed by the past participle of the main verb. This tense, which is rarely used, describes a future action or event that will be completed BEFORE a second future action, event, or time. The following sentence uses the future perfect tense to describe an event completed before a second event.

> The game **will have begun** before we get to the stadium.

Note that the two events can also be stated in reverse order.

> Before we get to the stadium, the game **will have begun**.

The following sentence uses the future perfect tense to describe an action completed before a specific time in the future.

> They **will have left** the deli by one o'clock.

The Three Progressive Tenses

The progressive tenses consist of a form of the helping verb *be* followed by the present participle of the main verb. The present progressive uses the present tense of *be,* the past progressive uses the past tense of *be,* and the future progressive uses the future tense of *be.*

The progressive tenses are used to describe an action in progress (hence the name **progressive**) at some present, past, or future time.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE

The present progressive tense consists of *am, are,* or *is* followed by the present participle of the main verb. This tense can describe an action at the precise moment that the sentence is spoken.

> Turn the music down! I **am reading** a book.

The present progressive tense can also refer to a span of time that includes the present.

The Cardinals **are winning** 4–1.

In addition, the tense is often used to describe future plans or events.

We **are going** to Paris this June.
Hurry, the taxi **is coming** in ten minutes.

PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE

The past progressive tense consists of *was* or *were* followed by the present participle of the main verb. This tense refers to an action that took place at or during some time in the past, whether it occurred at a specific moment or during a span of time in the past.

I **was sitting** at my desk by 9 o'clock.
During the game, she **was knitting** a scarf.

The time in the past can be defined by another event.

We **were eating** dinner when we heard the news.

The past progressive tense can also be used in an adverbial clause.

We heard the news while we **were eating** dinner.

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE TENSE

The future progressive tense consists of *will be* followed by the present participle of the main verb. This tense describes an activity that will occur at some time in the future, whether it will occur at a specific moment or, more commonly, during a span of time in the future.

Their plane **will be leaving** at 6:35.
During the school year, I **will be spending** every weekend studying.

Often, the future time is defined by a present tense adverbial clause.

Dad **will be sitting** on a bench while we are shopping.

The Intensive Tenses

The so-called intensive tenses consist of a form of the helping verb *do* followed by the base form of the main verb. The present intensive tense is formed with *do* or *does,* and the past intensive tense is formed with *did.* There is no future intensive tense, nor is the intensive used in the progressive tenses.

The intensive tenses are used in three ways.

(1) They emphasize the fact that the action of the verb is or was actually performed.

She **does swim** for an hour every morning.
I **did read** the novel.

(2) The intensive tenses are used with *not* to form the negative of the simple present and past tenses.

They **do** not **go** to the library anymore.
We **did** not **see** Larry at the mall.

(3) The intensive tenses are used to ask simple yes/no questions.

Does the teacher **speak** loudly enough?
Did all the children **write** about their summer vacation?

The Passive Voice

In traditional grammar, verbs have **voice**. Voice is determined by whether the subject is the performer of the action of the verb (**active voice**) or the receiver of the action (**passive voice**). Compare the following sentences.

ACTIVE VOICE	The dog **bit** the man.
PASSIVE VOICE	The man **was bitten** by the dog.

In the active voice sentence, the subject (the dog) performs the action of biting. In the passive voice sentence, the subject (the man) does not perform the action of biting; instead, he is the receiver of the action. The *by* phrase is not necessary and is, in fact, usually not used.

The passive voice is easily recognized, because it uses a form of the helping verb *be* immediately followed by the past participle form of the main verb—a combination found only in passive voice sentences.

PRESENT TENSE PASSIVE	My elbow **is hurt**.
PAST TENSE PASSIVE	My elbow **was hurt**.
FUTURE TENSE PASSIVE	My elbow **will be hurt**.

The progressive tenses may be used in the passive voice, although the future progressive tense usually sounds awkward.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE PASSIVE	A movie **is being shown**.
PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE PASSIVE	A movie **was being shown**.
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE TENSE PASSIVE	? A movie **will be being shown**.

The passive voice has two primary uses.

(1) It is used to switch attention from the subject of an active voice sentence to another part of the sentence (usually, but not always, the direct object).

ACTIVE VOICE	**The authors** sent the manuscript to Marisa.
PASSIVE VOICE	**The manuscript** was sent to Marisa.
PASSIVE VOICE	**Marisa** was sent the manuscript.

(2) The passive voice is used when the performer of the verb's action is not known.

This wool was spun in Italy.
The car was stolen yesterday afternoon.

VERB COMPLEMENTS

We use the term **complement** as a collective word for all the different grammatical structures required by verbs to make a grammatical sentence. **Complement** is much broader than the term **transitive**. In traditional grammar, a transitive verb must be followed by a direct or indirect object. The term **complement**, however, includes not only objects, but predicate adjectives, predicate nouns, infinitives, several types of clauses, and several types of adverbs. A verb may require one complement or more than one complement to make a grammatical sentence. Many intransitive verbs require no complement at all, for example, the intransitive verb *wept* in *John wept*.

The verb *put* with the sense "place, set" takes the double complement OBJECT + *ADVERB OF PLACE,* illustrated by the following sentence.

I put **my keys** ***on the dresser***.

If either complement is deleted, the sentence is ungrammatical.

✗ I put ***on the dresser***.
✗ I put **my keys**.

When you use the verb *put* to mean "place, set," you must put SOMETHING (an object) SOMEWHERE (an adverb of place).

Most English verbs may be used with more than one type of complement. The choice of complement type is determined by the particular meaning of a verb. If the meaning of the verb changes, the complement type(s) may change too, and vice versa: If the complement type changes, the verb's meaning often changes.

To illustrate the interconnection between verb meaning and complement type, consider the complements for the verb *hide*.

hide *keep oneself out of sight, conceal oneself*	The kids were hiding behind the tree. The thief hid in an abandoned warehouse.
hide ____ *put out of sight, conceal*	
OBJECT	The old lady hid **her money** under her mattress. Janet hid **her face** behind the newspaper.
hide ____ *keep secret*	
OBJECT	I tried to hide **my confusion** by changing the subject.
WH-CLAUSE	They wanted to hide **what they had done**.
hide ____ *keep from being seen*	
OBJECT	A sign hid **the entrance to his office**.
PASSIVE	My iPod had been hidden by a stack of books.

There are as many entries for a verb as there are distinct meanings, four in the case of *hide*. Each entry has its own group of complements that can be used with that particular meaning, including the possibility of no complement, as in the first entry for *hide*.

If a verb is followed by a blank line (____), the verb with that particular meaning requires a complement to make the sentence grammatical. The types of complements that the meaning requires are given in small capital letters as subentries. For example, the third meaning of *hide* ("keep secret") can take either of two different complements: an OBJECT or a WH-CLAUSE (a noun clause beginning with a *wh*-word). To the right of the complement type are one or more sentences illustrating use of the complement. The words of the sentence that correspond to the complement are in bold. Using the third entry for *hide*, **my confusion** is an example of an OBJECT complement and **what they had done** is an example of a WH-CLAUSE complement. (See "Guide to Complements and Phrasal Verbs" on page 19.)

If a verb is NOT followed by a blank line, it is **intransitive**, that is, it does not require a complement to make the sentence grammatical. In this book, the intransitive meanings of a verb are listed before the meanings that require complements. In the example of *hide*, the fact that the first meaning ("keep oneself out of sight, conceal oneself") is not followed by a blank line means that the verb with this particular meaning is intransitive. In the example sentence *The kids were hiding behind the tree,* the adverbial expression *behind the tree* is not obligatory; the sentence would still be grammatical if we deleted it.

The kids were hiding.

Most of the complement types in this book will be familiar to you, but some may require further explanation. Following is a list of special terms that you will encounter in the description of complements.

THAT-CLAUSE This is a noun clause beginning with *that.*

I thought **that dinner was good, but a little too heavy**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE This term includes both present participles and gerunds (present participles modified by a possessive noun or pronoun).

Nothing beats **having lots of money in your wallet**. (PRESENT PARTICIPLE)
That beats **my trying to do it myself**. (GERUND)

WH-CLAUSE This is a noun clause beginning with a *wh*-word (*who, whom, whose, what, which, when, where, why,* and *how* (which does not actually begin with *wh*)), as well as compounds of these words (*whoever, whomever, whatever,* etc.).

Did you hear **who won the game**?
We will grow **what sells the best**.
They will drink **whatever is available**.

WH-INFINITIVE This is a noun clause beginning with a *wh*-word followed by an infinitive.

I told them **where to go**.
Dad taught us **how to tie knots**.

Complement Types

This book uses 16 basic, or single-element, complement types, which appear in bold in the example sentences. Many of these basic complement types can be combined and used together.

Single Grammatical Element Complements

ADVERB OF TIME	The fiscal year runs **from July 1 to June 30**.
ADVERB OF PLACE	He felt **in his pockets** for the key.
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The refugees fled **into the woods**.
ADVERB OF MANNER	He reads **too softly for everyone to hear**.
OBJECT	I hurt **my shoulder**.
for/in/of/to/with/etc. OBJECT	The condemned man was pleading **for his life**. The problem lies **with senior management**.
REFLEXIVE PRONOUN	I flung **myself** into jazz.
PREDICATE NOUN	Her father was **a famous artist**.
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	The moon was **bright**.
INFINITIVE	We sought **to find a better solution for the problem**.
THAT-CLAUSE	The police proved **that the driver was lying**.
WH-CLAUSE	We will soon know **who will get the job**. We will soon know **where the new office will be**.
WH-INFINITIVE	The author forgot **where to put the quotation marks**. I forget **how to change my password**.
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	I can't stand **not knowing what happened**.
PAST PARTICIPLE	We felt **overwhelmed by the experience**.
DIRECT QUOTATION	**"Good morning,"** she said. **"We're glad you're here."**

Multiple Grammatical Element Complements

The following multiple element complements are commonly used. One complement (usually the first) is in bold and the other in bold italic.

OBJECT + *ADVERB OF PLACE*	We left **the children *at home***.
OBJECT + *ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM*	He drove **us *to the station***. A policeman directed **the traffic *onto a side street***.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	The driver gave ***us* directions.** He did ***us* a big favor**.
to PARAPHRASE	The driver gave **directions *to us***.
for PARAPHRASE	He did **a big favor *for us***.
OBJECT + *PREDICATE NOUN*	The accident left **him *a broken man***.
OBJECT + *PREDICATE ADJECTIVE*	The movie left **me *confused***.
OBJECT + *INFINITIVE*	I found **the new job *to have its limitations***.
OBJECT + *BASE-FORM INFINITIVE*	I had **the kids *put away their toys***.
OBJECT + *THAT-CLAUSE*	We bet **five dollars *that you can't eat the entire cake***.
OBJECT + *WH-CLAUSE*	I told **my friends *what they should expect***.
OBJECT + *WH-INFINITIVE*	I told **my friends *what to expect***.
OBJECT + *PRESENT PARTICIPLE*	I caught **them *sleeping on the job***.
OBJECT + *PAST PARTICIPLE*	Someone must have seen **the car *stolen***.

Other combinations may be used by certain verbs. Note that OBJECT is divided into INDIRECT OBJECT and DIRECT OBJECT complements for certain verbs, like *give* and *do* above.

PHRASAL VERBS

A **phrasal verb** is a verb + particle (an adverb or preposition) combination that has a meaning different from the combined meanings of the verb and particle. For example, the verb *put* can mean "place, set," "insert," "cause to be in a certain condition/state," and "express, say." When combined with *on,* it can have several different meanings. Four of the meanings for *put on* are given here with example sentences.

deceive [someone]	Don't believe him; he's just **putting** you **on**.
dress in [clothing]	Will I need to **put** my coat **on**?
add	Uncle Nelson has **put on** quite a bit of weight.
start [something] playing	We **put on** some rock music for Dad.

None of the ordinary meanings of *put* and *on* indicate that these words used together would have the meanings above. That is why we call phrasal verbs **idiomatic**.

English abounds with phrasal verbs. In fact, there are many more phrasal verbs in English than nonphrasal verbs. Because they are idiomatic, phrasal verbs can be difficult for English learners.

Not all verb + particle combinations are phrasal verbs. In some cases, the particle is used as a preposition that doesn't change the basic meaning of the verb. *Dive for* is an example.

dive _____ *plunge quickly, lunge*

for OBJECT	The shortstop dove **for the ball**.

In the sentence above, *for* doesn't change the meaning of *dive.* For this reason, *dive for* is not considered a phrasal verb, and it is included in the Complements section instead.

Some verbs, when followed by a complement, must always be used with a particular preposition; for example, *cling* is always used with *to.*

cling ____ *adhere, hold on tightly*

to OBJECT	He clung **to the ledge** until he was rescued. The ivy was clinging **to the wall**.

Since *cling* must always be used with *to* when it is followed by a complement, *cling to* is included in the Complements section.

Separable and Inseparable Phrasal Verbs

Many phrasal verbs take no object.

catch on *become popular*	Jazz caught on in the early 1900s.
give out *wear out, stop operating*	The refrigerator gave out after 21 years.

For these phrasal verbs, the particle must be placed immediately after the verb.

Most phrasal verbs, however, take an object. For some of these, the particle can be placed after the object—away from the verb—and for others, the particle must be placed directly after the verb. There are no simple rules for determining whether the particle is placed after the verb or after the object.

Generally, if the particle is considered a preposition, it must be placed after the verb; this type of phrasal verb is called **inseparable**. However, if the particle is considered an adverb, it can, and sometimes MUST, be placed after the object; this type of phrasal verb is called **separable**. Most phrasal verbs are separable.

INSEPARABLE PHRASAL VERB	Our success **is riding on** the merger. ("depend on")
SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERB	My brother **is putting on** his coat. ("dress in")

In the first sentence, *on* is considered a preposition, and therefore it cannot be placed after the object *the merger.*

✗ Our success **is riding** the merger **on**.

In the second example, *on* is considered an adverb, and therefore it can be placed after the object *his coat.*

My brother **is putting** his coat **on**.

For separable phrasal verbs, the particle can be placed after the verb or after the object. There is an important exception, however: If the object is a pronoun, the particle MUST be placed after the object.

My brother **is putting** it **on**.
✗ My brother **is putting on** it.

You can test whether a phrasal verb is separable or inseparable by using a pronoun as its object: If the particle MUST be placed after the pronoun object, the phrasal verb is separable; otherwise, it is inseparable.

Note that if the object of a separable phrasal verb is a long noun phrase, it is better to place the particle after the verb.

Don't **throw away** the lamp that I spent four hours fixing.
? Don't **throw** the lamp that I spent four hours fixing **away**.

You can often determine whether a phrasal verb is separable by knowing whether the particle is considered an adverb or a preposition. In examples on the preceding page, *on* is used both as a preposition (*ride on*) and as an adverb (*put on*). However, some particles are almost always used as prepositions; these generally form inseparable phrasal verbs.

- across
- after
- against
- at
- between
- for
- into
- of
- to
- upon
- with

The club **leaped at** Kyle's offer.
✗ The club **leaped** Kyle's offer **at**.

Acid was **eating into** the countertop.
✗ Acid was **eating** the countertop **into**.

Some particles are almost always used as adverbs; these particles generally form separable phrasal verbs.

- ahead
- aside
- away
- back
- down
- forth
- in
- off
- out
- up

We **put off** the meeting until Friday.
We **put** the meeting **off** until Friday.
We **put** it **off**.

A young attorney **drew up** my will.
A young attorney **drew** my will **up**.
A young attorney **drew** it **up**.

Other particles are separable with some verbs and inseparable with others.

- about
- along
- around
- behind
- by
- on
- over
- through
- under

See the examples with *ride on* and *put on* on the previous page.

To indicate a separable phrasal verb, a blank line with SEP is used for the complement (object).

break ___SEP___ up	*put an end to*	Two students broke the fight up. Two students broke up the fight. Two students broke it up.

An inseparable phrasal verb is indicated by a blank line (without SEP) after the particle.

break for ____	*interrupt one's activities for*	Let's break for lunch at 12 o'clock.

A phrasal verb may have more than one particle. If there are two or more particles, the last particle is almost always a preposition with its own object. For phrasal verbs like this, the object follows the last particle.

break up with ____	*end a romance with*	Allison broke up with Todd.

The Most Common Phrasal Particles

Following is a list, with examples, of the particles most commonly used in phrasal verbs.

across			
	come across _____	*find by accident*	She **came across** her high school yearbook.
after			
	keep after _____	*nag, harass*	Mom **keeps after** us about our homework.
along			
	bring SEP along	*have [someone] come along*	Be sure to **bring** a friend **along** on the tour.
around			
	get around _____	*avoid*	He **got around** the problem by installing new software.
aside			
	cast SEP aside	*discard, throw away*	The soldier **cast aside** his rifle and ran.
at			
	leap at _____	*accept eagerly*	The class **leaped at** Hilary's offer to bake a cake.
away			
	dream SEP away	*spend [time] idly*	Let's sit on the riverbank and **dream away** the day.
back			
	cut SEP back	*shorten*	We must **cut** the shrubs **back** after they flower.
behind			
	fall behind (on _____)	*lag behind*	They **were falling behind on** the rent.
between			
	come between _____	*cause trouble between*	We can't let a silly quarrel **come between** us.
down			
	shut SEP down	*close permanently*	Management **shut** the garment factory **down**.
for			
	go for _____	*be attracted by*	She **goes for** men with beards.
forth			
	put SEP forth	*propose, suggest*	Johanna **put forth** her plan to save the black-footed ferret.
in			
	hold SEP in	*suppress*	The candidate is good at **holding** his emotions **in**.
in on			
	break in on _____	*interrupt*	I hate to **break in on** your conversation, but I'm starving.
into			
	get into _____	*be admitted to*	Our daughter **got into** medical school.
of			
	come of _____	*result from*	What **came of** your threat to retire?
off			
	run SEP off	*print, make copies of*	I **ran** several extra sets **off** for you.

on	
bring ___SEP___ **on** *cause to appear*	It's time to **bring on** the final act.
out	
leave ___SEP___ **out** *omit, exclude*	Please **leave out** the reference to Uncle Harold.
out of	
get out of ____ *avoid, escape*	She **got out of** piano lessons three weeks in a row.
over	
make ___SEP___ **over** *change the appearance of*	The programmer **made over** his cubicle with movie posters.
through	
come through ____ *survive*	The hostages **came through** the ordeal unhurt.
to	
see to ____ *take care of*	The janitor **saw to** the overturned trash cans.
under	
fall under ____ *be influenced/controlled by*	The princess **fell under** the power of the wicked queen.
up	
wind ___SEP___ **up** *bring to an end*	We **wound up** the meeting by 8 o'clock.
up on	
catch ____ **up on** *bring up-to-date about*	The assistant will **catch** the actor **up on** the news.
upon	
hit upon ____ *discover*	She **hit upon** the idea of extending Medicare to people 55 and over.
with	
bear with ____ *be patient with*	Please **bear with** me while I think this over.

Note the double particles *in on, out of,* and *up on* in the list above.

Verbs of Motion

Verbs of motion typically form many phrasal verbs with particles considered to be adverbs. This is listed as the first entry in the Phrasal Verbs section.

keep away/back/down/in/off/out/etc. *remain in a specified location*	Keep away from the edge of the bluff. My parents are coming—keep down!
keep ___SEP___ **away/back/down/in/off/out/**etc. *cause to remain in a specified location*	Can you keep the squirrels away from the corn? It's raining; keep the children in.

EXPRESSIONS

An Expressions section is often included on verb pages where space permits. The entries are common idiomatic set phrases that are especially useful to the English learner.

GUIDE TO CONJUGATIONS

① 118 ② **send** ③ **send | sends · sent · have sent** ④ ☑ IRREGULAR

⑤ **PRESENT**

I send	we send
you send	you send
he/she/it sends	they send

⑦ • *The firm sends letters by registered mail.*

⑥ **PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am sending	we are sending
you are sending	you are sending
he/she/it is sending	they are sending

• *I am sending you an e-mail.*

PAST

I sent	we sent
you sent	you sent
he/she/it sent	they sent

• *They sent us a nice note.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sending	we were sending
you were sending	you were sending
he/she/it was sending	they were sending

• *She was sending her children to a private school.*

⑧

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has sent
PAST PERFECT	… had sent

FUTURE	… will send
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be sending
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have sent

⑨ **PAST PASSIVE**

I was sent	we were sent
you were sent	you were sent
he/she/it was sent	they were sent

• *The letter was sent to the wrong address.*

1 This is the verb number.

2 This is the base form of the verb. If this were a Top 30 Verb, there would be an additional page for Complements, Phrasal Verbs, and Expressions, and both pages would have a Top 30 Verb icon at the bottom.

3 These are the principal parts of the verb: present | third-person singular present · past · past perfect (containing the past participle).

4 This indicates whether a verb may form its past and past participle regularly. Some verbs, like *shine* (No. 125), have both regular and irregular forms.

5 Five tense paradigms are shown in the table format familiar to most English learners, where row and column represent verb person and number, respectively. These five tenses were chosen because they are the most frequently used.

6 Some verbs are never used in the progressive tenses, like *know* (No. 86). For these verbs, the progressive forms are not given. We only show forms that an English learner might be expected to use in ordinary conversation or writing.

7 An example sentence is supplied for each tense shown.

8 The forms for these five tenses are displayed in single lines with no pronouns. Thus, all nine simple, progressive, and perfect tenses in the active voice are shown (see pages 6–9), plus the most frequently used passive tense.

9 Some verbs are never used in the passive voice, like *lie* (No. 92); no forms are given for these. Other verbs cannot have a personal subject in the passive voice, like *knit* (No. 85); only *it* and *they* forms are given for these. Some writers, of course, may use these personal passive forms in highly figurative or poetic senses. However, because an English learner might be led to use these forms incorrectly, we do not show them.

Some verbs are only used in the passive voice when they are part of a phrasal verb, like *dream* (No. 46). Because this is a valid use of the passive, all forms are shown for these verbs.

GUIDE TO COMPLEMENTS AND PHRASAL VERBS

1 This meaning of *give* requires no complement.

2 The blank line indicates that this meaning of *give* requires a complement. Either the single complement OBJECT or the double complement *INDIRECT OBJECT* + DIRECT OBJECT may be used.

3 The object in the example sentence is bold.

4 One element in a double complement is italicized to distinguish the two complements. The *INDIRECT OBJECT* + DIRECT OBJECT construction may have a *for PARAPHRASE*, as shown below.

5 The direct object is bold, and the indirect object is bold italic (corresponding to the italic in the complement name).

6 A passive-voice variation is often given for an example sentence.

7 This use of *give out* as a phrasal verb requires no complement.

8 This use of *give out* as a phrasal verb requires a complement. The SEP on the blank line indicates that the phrasal verb is separable (see pages 14–15).

9 This use of *give out* as a phrasal verb requires a complement. The blank line without SEP indicates that the phrasal verb is inseparable (see pages 14–15).

Complement types are not identified in the Phrasal Verbs section, since virtually every complement of a phrasal verb functions as an object of the verb, whether it is an OBJECT, REFLEXIVE PRONOUN, or PRESENT PARTICIPLE. Bold and bold italic are not used in example sentences in the Phrasal Verbs section.

The Expressions section (not shown here) includes a blank line for a required complement.

COMPLEMENTS

① **give** *yield, collapse*	The floor might give if we put that much weight on it.
give ② _____ *host*	③
OBJECT	We will give **the reception** in his honor.
④ INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	I gave ***my parents*** **a surprise party**. We gave ***the seniors*** **a graduation party**. ⑤
for PARAPHRASE	I gave **a surprise party** ***for my parents***. We gave **a graduation party** ***for the seniors***.
⑥ PASSIVE	A graduation party was given for the seniors. The seniors were given a graduation party.
give _____ *devote*	
OBJECT + *to* OBJECT	Marvin gave **his whole life** ***to the cause of justice***.

PHRASAL VERBS

give SEP **away** *betray*	A club member gave away our secret meeting place.
give in (to _____) *surrender (to [someone/something])*	After arguing for two hours, our opponents gave in. Senator Blather gave in to pressure from his colleagues.
⑦ **give out** *come to an end*	The settlers' food gave out after three weeks.
give out *wear out, stop operating*	After 203,000 miles, our 1979 Oldsmobile finally gave out.
⑧ **give** SEP **out** *distribute*	C.J. gave out the president's itinerary.
⑨ **give out** _____ *produce*	This old furnace gives out a lot of heat.
give SEP **up** *stop, cease*	Mom and Dad gave up smoking at the same time.
give SEP **up** *surrender, yield*	Within an hour, the gunman gave up two hostages. An hour later, he gave himself up.

This page intentionally left blank

188
ENGLISH IRREGULAR VERBS

Conjugations
Complements
Phrasal Verbs
Expressions

TOP 30 VERBS

The following thirty verbs have been selected because of their semantic and syntactic richness, both in their basic meanings and complements and in their phrasal verbs. A full page of example sentences provides guidance on correct usage and immediately precedes or follows the conjugation/complements page.

	Verb no.
be	3
bear	4
blow	21
break	22
bring	24
catch	31
come	37
cut	40
do	44
feel	52
find	54
get	68
give	70
go	71
have	76
hold	81
keep	83
leave	89
make	95
put	104
read	106
run	112
see	115
set	119
show	128
stand	150
strike	157
take	166
throw	173
write	188

☑ IRREGULAR

arise | arises · arose · have arisen

arise 1

PRESENT

I arise	we arise
you arise	you arise
he/she/it arises	they arise

- *He arises every morning at the same time.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am arising	we are arising
you are arising	you are arising
he/she/it is arising	they are arising

- *George is slowly arising from the sofa.*

PAST

I arose	we arose
you arose	you arose
he/she/it arose	they arose

- *I always arose before seven on school days.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was arising	we were arising
you were arising	you were arising
he/she/it was arising	they were arising

- *He was just arising when the phone rang.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has arisen
PAST PERFECT	… had arisen

FUTURE	… will arise
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be arising
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have arisen

PAST PASSIVE

Arise is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *arise* is interchangeable with *rise* in most meanings and uses. See verb No. 111.

arise *get out of bed*	I usually arise around six. Nobody arises early on weekends.
arise *stand/spring up, move upward*	The audience always arises when the president enters the room. Rebecca arose from the sofa gracefully. The dolphins arose from the water. A cloud of dust arose from the ruins. He arose out of inner-city poverty to become mayor.
arise *come into being*	The rumor arose when Rob had to appear in court. A new controversy about ethanol has arisen since the meeting.
arise ____ *originate* ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The spring arises **behind our house**. These glaciers arise **in the Alps**. Birds arose **from small specialized dinosaurs**. Prejudice arises **from ignorance and unfamiliarity**.

2 awake(n)

awake | awakes · awaked · have awaked ☑ REGULAR
awake | awakes · awoke · have awoken ☑ IRREGULAR
awaken | awakens · awakened · have awakened ☑ REGULAR

PRESENT

I awake	we awake
you awake	you awake
he/she/it awakes	they awake

- *He awakes every morning at seven.*

PAST

I awoke	we awoke
you awoke	you awoke
he/she/it awoke	they awoke

- *It awoke bad memories for me.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has awoken
PAST PERFECT … had awoken

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am awaking	we are awaking
you are awaking	you are awaking
he/she/it is awaking	they are awaking

- *He is awaking to the danger.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was awaking	we were awaking
you were awaking	you were awaking
he/she/it was awaking	they were awaking

- *They were awaking to a hot morning.*

FUTURE … will awake
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be awaking
FUTURE PERFECT … will have awoken

PAST PASSIVE

I was awoken	we were awoken
you were awoken	you were awoken
he/she/it was awoken	they were awoken

- *We were awoken by the storm.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Awake* and *awaken* have the same meanings and uses. They are similar to *wake/waken* (verb No. 179), with this difference: *Wake* is used with *up* (*Jane woke up at 7 o'clock*), but *awake, awaken,* and *waken* are not.

awake *quit sleeping*	The children awoke early.
awake *become aroused*	The crowd's anger suddenly awoke. Excitement awoke in everyone.
awake ____ *arouse from sleeping*	
OBJECT	The storm awoke **the children** early. He will awake **everybody in the house** with his snoring.
WH-CLAUSE	The commotion awoke **whoever was still asleep**.
awake ____ *stir up*	
OBJECT	The crisis has awoken **memories of the 1960s**. Sam awoke **Stella's interest in China**.
WH-CLAUSE	It awoke **what had been long forgotten**. I awoke **whatever concern he had felt**.

PHRASAL VERBS

awake from ____ *wake up out of*	Ned awoke from a sound sleep.
awake to ____ *wake up to*	Patsy awoke to the aroma of freshly brewed coffee. The corporal awoke to the sound and fury of battle.
awake to ____ *become aware of*	She awoke to the possibilities that technology offered. Dad awoke to the reality of the moment.

☑ IRREGULAR

am | are | is · was | were · have been

be

3

PRESENT

I am	we are
you are	you are
he/she/it is	they are

- *William is here.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am being	we are being
you are being	you are being
he/she/it is being	they are being

- *You are being very difficult.*

PAST

I was	we were
you were	you were
he/she/it was	they were

- *He was the manager for eight years.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was being	we were being
you were being	you were being
he/she/it was being	they were being

- *They were only being helpful.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has been
PAST PERFECT	… had been

FUTURE	… will be
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be being
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have been

PAST PASSIVE

Be is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Be* is also used as a helping verb

- to form the progressive tenses

be + PRESENT PARTICIPLE	They were driving down the wrong street.

- to form the passive voice

be + PAST PARTICIPLE	You will be arrested if you drive drunk.

be *exist*	"I think, therefore I am." [RENÉ DESCARTES] Oh, let it be.
be ____ *exist*	
there + *be* + PREDICATE NOUN	There was **a policeman** on the corner.
be ____ *have the identity, a property, or a characteristic of*	
ADVERB OF TIME	The meeting is **at ten**. My birthday is **in September**. The time is **now**.
ADVERB OF PLACE	The principal is **out of the office**. My parents have never been **to Singapore**.
PREDICATE NOUN	Greg is **a bachelor**. It is **a streetcar**. It is **I**, Mother. [FORMAL] / It's **me**, Mom. [INFORMAL]
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	Everett is **handsome and rich**. The school is **excellent**.
be ____ *must*	
INFINITIVE	You are **to report to the office**. Gary is **to be ready at seven**.

PHRASAL VERBS

NOTE: Many of the following phrasal verbs are used informally.

be against ____ *oppose*	The group is against gun control.
be along *arrive* [USED ONLY IN THE FUTURE TENSE]	Fred will be along any minute now.
be around *exist*	Dinosaurs were around for 150 million years.
be around ____ *be located*	The keys are around here somewhere.
be away *be absent*	The sales clerk is away for a moment.
be behind *lag*	He's behind in his studies.
be down *not be operating*	The server is down, and I can't get my files.

top 30 verb

3 be am | are | is · was | were · have been ☑ IRREGULAR

NOTE: Many of the following phrasal verbs are used informally.

be down *be depressed*	I asked her why she was down.
be down on _____ *be angry with*	Why are you always down on your brother?
be down with _____ *be sick due to*	Ellery is down with the flu.
be for _____ *support*	I was for Robert in the last election. I am for fixing the building up, not tearing it down.
be in *be in one's home/office*	The doctor is in.
be in *be in fashion*	Ruffles are in, pleats are out.
be in on _____ *share in*	Four seniors were in on the prank.
be into _____ *be interested/involved in*	Katrina was into gymnastics in a big way.
be off *not be at work*	The workers will be off for the next three days.
be off *not be operating*	The lights were off in the auditorium.
be off *be less*	Sales are off for the third month in a row.
be off *be wrong*	These estimates are off by 50%.
be off *not be taking place*	Tomorrow's meeting is off.
be on *be operating*	The television is on.
be on *be in effect*	I hope Saturday's party is still on.
be onto _____ *be aware of*	Oscar is onto your tricks.
be onto _____ *be about to discover*	The detective was onto something.
be out *not be inside*	You can lock the doors after everyone is out.
be out *be made public*	The news is out that Alison broke her engagement.
be out *be out of fashion*	Sitcoms are out, documentaries are in.
be out *be asleep/unconscious*	He went to bed and was out within two minutes.
be out *not be permitted*	You can eat apples, but chocolate is out.
be out and about *travel around*	Philip is out and about with his friends.
be out of _____ *no longer possess*	We're out of coffee—would you like tea?
be out (with _____) *be absent (due to [an illness])*	Half of the third graders are out with the flu.
be out (with _____) *be unable to play/work (due to [an injury, illness])*	He was out for two weeks with a bruised elbow.
be over *be finished*	The baseball game is finally over.
be through (with _____) *be finished (with [something])*	We were through with our homework by 7 o'clock.
be up *be finished*	Turn in the exam—your time is up.
be up *be more/greater*	Food prices are up seven percent.
be up *be risen, be put up*	We'll leave for Kentucky once the sun is up. The for sale sign has been up for six months.
be up and about/around *be out of bed and moving around*	I had a cold, but I was up and about on the third day.
be up for _____ *be a candidate for*	Samantha is up for class president. George is up for re-election.
be up for _____ *be available for*	The neighbor's house is up for sale again.
be up for _____ *be ready and willing for*	Are you up for a game of cards?
be up for _____ *be on trial for [a crime]*	Tori is up for armed robbery.
be up on _____ *be knowledgeable about*	Veronica is up on all the latest CD releases.
be up to _____ *be able to*	Are you up to cleaning your room today?

☑ IRREGULAR

bear | bears · bore · have borne/born

bear

4

PRESENT

I bear	we bear
you bear	you bear
he/she/it bears	they bear

- *Alice bears a lot of responsibility for this.*

PAST

I bore	we bore
you bore	you bore
he/she/it bore	they bore

- *The monk bore his suffering in silence.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has borne
PAST PERFECT	… had borne

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bearing	we are bearing
you are bearing	you are bearing
he/she/it is bearing	they are bearing

- *They are bearing up well.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bearing	we were bearing
you were bearing	you were bearing
he/she/it was bearing	they were bearing

- *We were bearing a heavy load.*

FUTURE	… will bear
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be bearing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have borne

PAST PASSIVE

I was borne/born	we were borne/born
you were borne/born	you were borne/born
he/she/it was borne/born	they were borne/born

- *The charges were borne out in today's testimony.*
- *I was born in Richland.*

NOTE: *Born* is the past participle in the sense "give birth to" in the passive voice. *Borne* is used in all other senses.

COMPLEMENTS

bear *produce fruit*	In Ecuador, apple trees bear twice a year.
bear _____ *produce*	
OBJECT	These apple trees won't bear **fruit** for three years.
bear _____ *go*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	This road bears **to the left.** Bear **right** at the next stoplight.
bear _____ *carry*	
OBJECT	"Beware of Greeks who bear **gifts.**" [VERGIL]
bear _____ *carry/move along*	
OBJECT	A strong current bore **the ship** out to sea.
bear _____ *support*	
OBJECT	The pillars bear **the weight of the roof**.
bear _____ *be accountable for*	
OBJECT	The engineers bear **a heavy responsibility for the disaster**.
bear _____ *endure*	
OBJECT	He can't bear **the pain.** He will bear **a substantial financial loss.**
for OBJECT + INFINITIVE	I can't bear **for you *to leave so soon*.**
INFINITIVE	I can't bear **to hear such a sad story**.
(it) THAT-CLAUSE	I can't bear ***(it)* that you have to leave so soon**.
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	I can't bear **hearing such a sad story**.
bear _____ *carry in one's mind*	
OBJECT	He bears **a real grudge** against them. I bear **no hard feelings** toward them.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	I bear ***him* no malice.**
against PARAPHRASE	I bear **no malice *against him*.**

top 30 verb

4 bear

bear | bears · bore · have borne/born ☑ IRREGULAR

bear _____ *give birth to*	
OBJECT	She bore **a son** in 1982. Lois has borne **three children**.
PASSIVE	Three children have been born to Lois.
bear _____ *have as a characteristic*	
OBJECT	Rory bears **a scar** on his left arm. Sasha bears **a strong resemblance** to her mother.
bear _____ *have as an identification*	
OBJECT	All three wills bore **Uncle Leland's signature**.
bear _____ *behave*	
REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + ADVERB OF MANNER	He's bearing **himself *with dignity***.
bear _____ *take care of, pay for*	
OBJECT	My parents bore **all the expenses of my college education**.
bear _____ *call for, require*	
OBJECT	The committee bears **watching**.

PHRASAL VERBS

bear down *try hard*	If you bear down, you'll get an "A" in the course.
bear down on _____ *press down on*	Bear down on the pen—you're making four copies.
bear off _____ *turn off*	Bear off the gravel road when you see a large barn.
bear on _____ *have to do with*	These observations don't bear on the matter at all.
bear SEP **out** *prove right*	The testimony will bear this out.
bear up *survive, endure*	Lila bore up well in spite of the criticism. The bridge couldn't bear up under such heavy traffic.
bear with _____ *be patient with*	Please bear with us while we discuss the matter.

EXPRESSIONS

bear arms *possess a weapon*	A citizen may bear arms to protect himself.
bear fruit *yield satisfactory results*	The discussions will hopefully bear fruit soon.
bear _____ **in mind** *consider, remember*	Our representatives should bear in mind that their decisions affect millions of people.
bear [one's] cross *endure one's troubles*	The cancer took its toll, but Nick bore his cross bravely.
bear the brunt of _____ *endure the worst part of*	The walnut trees bore the brunt of the storm.
grin and bear it *endure an unpleasant surprise with good humor*	We got laid off, and all we can do is grin and bear it.

top 30 verb

☑ IRREGULAR

beat | beats · beat · have beaten

beat 5

PRESENT

I beat	we beat
you beat	you beat
he/she/it beats	they beat

- *In the long run, you never beat the odds.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am beating	we are beating
you are beating	you are beating
he/she/it is beating	they are beating

- *I am beating some eggs.*

PAST

I beat	we beat
you beat	you beat
he/she/it beat	they beat

- *He beat the rugs outside.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was beating	we were beating
you were beating	you were beating
he/she/it was beating	they were beating

- *He was beating back a nasty infection.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has beaten
PAST PERFECT	… had beaten

FUTURE	… will beat
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be beating
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have beaten

PAST PASSIVE

I was beaten	we were beaten
you were beaten	you were beaten
he/she/it was beaten	they were beaten

- *The record was beaten by three of the swimmers.*

COMPLEMENTS

beat *pulsate, throb*	My pulse was beating rapidly. The drums were beating again.
beat ____ *strike repeatedly*	
OBJECT	I beat **the drum** in time to the music. The jockeys beat **their horses** in the final lap. The blacksmith beat **the iron** into swords. The sergeant beat **the recruits** into submission.
beat ____ *mix by stirring*	
OBJECT	Beat **the batter** with a wooden spoon.
beat ____ *defeat, win*	
OBJECT	The Phillies have beaten **the Red Sox**. You beat **the record** easily.
beat ____ *be better than*	
OBJECT	Good home cooking always beats **restaurant food**.
WH-CLAUSE	Your idea beats **what I was trying to do**.
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	Nothing beats **having lots of money in your wallet**. That beats **my trying to do it myself**.
beat ____ *confuse, puzzle*	
OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE	It beats **me** ***how anyone can understand these instructions.***
beat ____ *flap*	
OBJECT	A hummingbird beats **its wings** up to 70 times per second.

PHRASAL VERBS

beat ____ **back/down/in/out/up/**etc. *arrive at a specified location sooner than*	My sister beat me back to the station. They raced to the top of the hill, and Ben beat the others up.
beat SEP **back** *drive back*	Our platoon beat back the enemy's attack.
beat SEP **down** *cause to collapse*	The warriors beat the doors down with clubs.
beat down (on ____**)** *fall (on)*	A driving rain beat down on the stadium crowd. A blazing sun beat down on the spectators.
beat SEP **off** *drive away*	She beat the would-be robbers off with pepper spray.
beat SEP **up** *attack savagely*	Gang members beat the man up and took his car.

6 **become** become | becomes · became · have become ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I become	we become
you become	you become
he/she/it becomes	they become

- *Jackson becomes cross when he's hungry.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am becoming	we are becoming
you are becoming	you are becoming
he/she/it is becoming	they are becoming

- *The kids are becoming tired.*

PAST

I became	we became
you became	you became
he/she/it became	they became

- *The situation became a real mess.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was becoming	we were becoming
you were becoming	you were becoming
he/she/it was becoming	they were becoming

- *His old jokes were becoming quite tiresome.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has become
PAST PERFECT	. . . had become

FUTURE	. . . will become
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be becoming
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have become

PAST PASSIVE

Become is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

become ____ *grow/come to be*

PREDICATE NOUN	The recording became **a huge success**. Alice became **chair of the department**.
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	Robert became **quite friendly**. The weather became **stormy**.
WH-CLAUSE	It became **what we feared the most**. He will become **whoever he needs to be**.

become ____ *enhance the appearance of, look good on*

OBJECT	Moonlight becomes **her**. His sneering attitude really doesn't become **him**.

PHRASAL VERBS

become of ____ *happen to*	Whatever became of your plan to start your own business? I don't know what has become of Mary.

EXPRESSIONS

be becoming on ____ *look good on*	This shade of blue is very becoming on you.
becoming *attractive*	Your dress is very becoming. That is a most becoming dress you are wearing.
becoming *suitable to*	She gave a eulogy becoming the occasion of her father's funeral.

☑ IRREGULAR

befall | befalls · befell · have befallen

befall 7

PRESENT

—	—
—	—
it befalls	they befall

- *Sorrow and pain befall the broken-hearted.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

—	—
—	—
it is befalling	they are befalling

- *A financial crisis is befalling the country.*

PAST

—	—
—	—
it befell	they befell

- *Hardship befell the Jamestown colony.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was befalling	they were befalling

- *An ecological disaster was befalling the world.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has befallen
PAST PERFECT	… had befallen

FUTURE	… will befall
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be befalling
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have befallen

PAST PASSIVE

Befall is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

befall *happen (usually something bad)*	Who knows what evil things might befall? They blamed him for everything that befell.
befall _____ *happen (usually something bad)* OBJECT	A tragedy had befallen **the unfortunate family**. Who knows what terrible curse befell **them**? A catastrophic earthquake befell **the city** a few years later.

8 beget

beget | begets · begot/begat · have begotten/begot

☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I beget	we beget
you beget	you beget
he/she/it begets	they beget

- *Success begets success.*

PAST

I begot/begat	we begot/begat
you begot/begat	you begot/begat
he/she/it begot/begat	they begot/begat

- *The king eventually begat an heir.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has begotten/begot
PAST PERFECT … had begotten/begot

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am begetting	we are begetting
you are begetting	you are begetting
he/she/it is begetting	they are begetting

- *His mistakes are begetting a new crop of problems.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was begetting	we were begetting
you were begetting	you were begetting
he/she/it was begetting	they were begetting

- *The rain was begetting millions of mosquitoes.*

FUTURE … will beget
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be begetting
FUTURE PERFECT … will have begotten/begot

PAST PASSIVE

I was begotten/begot	we were begotten/begot
you were begotten/begot	you were begotten/begot
he/she/it was begotten/begot	they were begotten/begot

- *A son was finally begotten by the old king.*

COMPLEMENTS

beget ____ *father, sire*

OBJECT	Henry VIII begat **one son** by his third wife, Queen Jane.
PASSIVE	Mythological monsters were begotten by witches and demons.

beget ____ *cause to exist/happen*

OBJECT	Bad behavior only begets **trouble**. His amazingly good luck begat **envy and resentment** among his co-workers.
PASSIVE	Their successes were begotten by a lot of hard work.

☑ IRREGULAR

begin | begins · began · have begun

begin 9

PRESENT

I begin	we begin
you begin	you begin
he/she/it begins	they begin

- *He always begins breakfast with coffee.*

PAST

I began	we began
you began	you began
he/she/it began	they began

- *I began to feel uneasy.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has begun
PAST PERFECT	. . . had begun

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am beginning	we are beginning
you are beginning	you are beginning
he/she/it is beginning	they are beginning

- *It is beginning to rain.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was beginning	we were beginning
you were beginning	you were beginning
he/she/it was beginning	they were beginning

- *We were beginning to get worried.*

FUTURE	. . . will begin
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be beginning
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have begun

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was begun	they were begun

- *Therapy was begun immediately.*

COMPLEMENTS

begin *start*	His meetings never begin on time. Meetings always begin with the reading of the minutes. The trouble began when Mack called Thack a fool. When does the parade begin?
begin ____ *start [an activity, event, process]*	
OBJECT	The chairperson began **the meeting** promptly at 2 o'clock. He began **the discussion** with a joke.
INFINITIVE	I began **to fall asleep** during the long lecture. The orchestra began **to play**.
WH-CLAUSE	We only began **what absolutely had to be finished**. They began **whatever they needed to do**.
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	I began **falling asleep** during the long lecture. The orchestra began **playing.**

PHRASAL VERBS

begin by/with ____ *start a sequence/ process with*	The new owners began by firing all the managers. Career planning begins with assessing your strengths.
begin ____ by/with *start [a process, event] by [doing something first]*	Let's begin the meeting with a big thank-you to the organizers. The song begins with a reference to fields of strawberries.

EXPRESSIONS

beginner *one who is starting to learn something*	He's a beginner when it comes to woodworking.
beginner's luck *luck of an inexperienced person*	Winning my very first case was just beginner's luck.
to begin with *first of all*	To begin with, there were no eyewitnesses.

10 behold

behold | beholds · beheld · have beheld ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I behold	we behold
you behold	you behold
he/she/it beholds	they behold

- *In the book, he beholds a heavenly vision.*

PAST

I beheld	we beheld
you beheld	you beheld
he/she/it beheld	they beheld

- *They beheld the ancient tomb in silence.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has beheld
PAST PERFECT … had beheld

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am beholding	we are beholding
you are beholding	you are beholding
he/she/it is beholding	they are beholding

- *The king is beholding the newborn princess.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was beholding	we were beholding
you were beholding	you were beholding
he/she/it was beholding	they were beholding

- *The troops were beholding the massacre site.*

FUTURE … will behold
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be beholding
FUTURE PERFECT … will have beheld

PAST PASSIVE

I was beheld	we were beheld
you were beheld	you were beheld
he/she/it was beheld	they were beheld

- *A similar scene was beheld by the lunchtime crowd.*

COMPLEMENTS

behold ____ *observe, look at* [OFTEN USED IN THE IMPERATIVE]

OBJECT	Behold **your king**! No one had ever beheld **such an amazing sight**. The children in the village had never beheld **a battery-operated toy** before.

bend

PRESENT

I bend	we bend
you bend	you bend
he/she/it bends	they bend

- *He always bends the rules.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bending	we are bending
you are bending	you are bending
he/she/it is bending	they are bending

- *He is bending over backward to help you.*

PAST

I bent	we bent
you bent	you bent
he/she/it bent	they bent

- *I bent my fishhook.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bending	we were bending
you were bending	you were bending
he/she/it was bending	they were bending

- *The kids were bending clay into shapes.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has bent
PAST PERFECT	… had bent

FUTURE	… will bend
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be bending
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have bent

PAST PASSIVE

I was bent	we were bent
you were bent	you were bent
he/she/it was bent	they were bent

- *The minister's head was bent in sorrow.*

COMPLEMENTS

bend *become curved/crooked*	The road bends to the right. The trees bent in the wind.
bend *stoop, dip*	I bent to pick up the cat's water bowl. The rod bent under the heavy load.
bend *distort*	His smile bent into an ugly leer.
bend ____ *cause to curve, change the shape of* OBJECT	The archers bent **their bows**. The wind was bending **the trees**. I bent **the wire** into a hook. The magnets bend **the beam of electrons**. The rocks bend **the stream** to the far bank.
bend ____ *distort, cheat* OBJECT	The storm bent **the windmill** out of shape. Politicians bend **the rules** to suit themselves. They bent **the truth** in the run-up to war.

PHRASAL VERBS

bend backward/down/forward/etc. *lean in a specified direction*	Brad bent backward to dodge the ball. She bent down to pet the dog. The girl bent forward to get a better look.
bend SEP **back/down/over/up/**etc. *change the shape of in a specified direction*	Norvel bent the pins back into place. Adrian bent the corner of the page over.
bend over *lean down at the waist*	The class bent over to touch their toes.
bend over backward *do more than required*	The store bends over backward to please its customers.
bend to ____ *concentrate on*	After a break, Jasper bent to his studies.
bend to ____ *give in to*	He bent to the will of the voters and endorsed the plan.
bend ____ **to** *cause to give in*	Cleopatra bent Antony to her will.
be bent on ____ *be determined [to do]*	Helen was bent on going to law school.

EXPRESSIONS

bend [someone's] ear *talk excessively to*	The stranger bent my ear for 45 minutes.

12 bereave

bereave | bereaves · bereaved · have bereaved
bereave | bereaves · bereft · have bereft

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

—	—
—	—
it bereaves	they bereave

- *War bereaves us of everything we hold dear.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Bereave is never used in the progressive tenses.

PAST

—	—
—	—
it bereft	they bereft

- *Death bereft the family of financial security.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Bereave is never used in the progressive tenses.

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has bereft
PAST PERFECT	… had bereft

FUTURE	… will bereave
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	—
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have bereft

PAST PASSIVE

I was bereft	we were bereft
you were bereft	you were bereft
he/she/it was bereft	they were bereft

- *She was bereft when her husband died in an accident.*

COMPLEMENTS

bereave ______ *leave alone/desolate, especially by someone's death*

OBJECT	Death bereaves **us all**.
PASSIVE	The widow was bereft when she was only 30 years old. My grandmother was bereft in 1965, the year of my grandfather's death.
OBJECT + *of* OBJECT	The 1918 flu pandemic bereft **countless families *of their children***. Colon cancer has bereft **us *of our father***.
PASSIVE	The children were bereft ***of their parents*** when they were infants.

bereave ______ *deprive [someone] of [something]*

OBJECT + *of* OBJECT	Alzheimer's has bereft **him *of all rationality***. The economic crash bereft **us *of all our savings***.
PASSIVE	The survivors of the crash were bereft ***of all hope***.

☑ REGULAR **beseech | beseeches · beseeched · have beseeched**
☑ IRREGULAR **beseech | beseeches · besought · have besought**

beseech 13

PRESENT

I beseech	we beseech
you beseech	you beseech
he/she/it beseeches	they beseech

- *He beseeches you to be careful.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am beseeching	we are beseeching
you are beseeching	you are beseeching
he/she/it is beseeching	they are beseeching

- *I am beseeching you to change your mind.*

PAST

I besought	we besought
you besought	you besought
he/she/it besought	they besought

- *He earnestly besought her forgiveness.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was beseeching	we were beseeching
you were beseeching	you were beseeching
he/she/it was beseeching	they were beseeching

- The Times *was beseeching us to vote the mayor out.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has besought
PAST PERFECT	… had besought

FUTURE	… will beseech
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be beseeching
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have besought

PAST PASSIVE

I was besought	we were besought
you were besought	you were besought
he/she/it was besought	they were besought

- *The company was besought to not relocate their plant.*

COMPLEMENTS

beseech ______ *request urgently, beg, implore*

OBJECT	I beseech **your help in this matter**.
PASSIVE	Emergency relief was besought by all the affected cities.
OBJECT + *INFINITIVE*	I beseech **you** ***to say nothing of this matter***. The minister besought **his congregation** ***to help the needy***. "She besought **him** … ***to speak the truth***." [RUDYARD KIPLING]
PASSIVE	The senator was besought by her party ***to vote against health care reform***.

14 **beset** beset | besets · beset · have beset

☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I beset	we beset
you beset	you beset
he/she/it besets	they beset

- *Crime besets the core of many older cities.*

PAST

I beset	we beset
you beset	you beset
he/she/it beset	they beset

- *Clouds of flies beset the campers.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has beset
PAST PERFECT	… had beset

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am besetting	we are besetting
you are besetting	you are besetting
he/she/it is besetting	they are besetting

- *The enemy fleet is besetting all of our ports.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was besetting	we were besetting
you were besetting	you were besetting
he/she/it was besetting	they were besetting

- *Creditors were besetting the firm from all sides.*

FUTURE	… will beset
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be besetting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have beset

PAST PASSIVE

I was beset	we were beset
you were beset	you were beset
he/she/it was beset	they were beset

- *They were beset by a sea of troubles.*

COMPLEMENTS

beset ____ *attack from all sides* [OFTEN USED FIGURATIVELY]

OBJECT	His financial problems beset **him** constantly. Peer pressure beset **her** in her struggle to remain drug-free. She beset **her parents** with regular requests for money.
PASSIVE	All too often, the elderly are beset by multiple health problems. He was beset by self-doubt. The owl was beset by a flock of crows.

☑ IRREGULAR

bestride | bestrides · bestrode · have bestridden

bestride 15

PRESENT

I bestride	we bestride
you bestride	you bestride
he/she/it bestrides	they bestride

- *He bestrides his horse like a true equestrian.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bestriding	we are bestriding
you are bestriding	you are bestriding
he/she/it is bestriding	they are bestriding

- *The editor is bestriding two different viewpoints.*

PAST

I bestrode	we bestrode
you bestrode	you bestrode
he/she/it bestrode	they bestrode

- *He bestrode the music scene in the 1960s.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bestriding	we were bestriding
you were bestriding	you were bestriding
he/she/it was bestriding	they were bestriding

- *The hitchhiker was bestriding his backpack.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has bestridden
PAST PERFECT	… had bestridden

FUTURE	… will bestride
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be bestriding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have bestridden

PAST PASSIVE

I was bestridden	we were bestridden
you were bestridden	you were bestridden
he/she/it was bestridden	they were bestridden

- *The mountain pass was bestridden by two massive towers.*

COMPLEMENTS

bestride ____ *straddle, sit/stand astride*

OBJECT	The wreck completely bestrode **the narrow country road**. Our route bestrode **the border between the two countries**.

bestride ____ *tower over, dominate*

OBJECT	“Why, man, he doth bestride **the narrow world** like a Colossus.” [WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE, OF JULIUS CAESAR] Lately, China has been bestriding **the manufacturing sector**.

16 bet

bet | bets · bet · have bet ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I bet	we bet
you bet	you bet
he/she/it bets	they bet

- *Floyd always bets on the Yankees.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am betting	we are betting
you are betting	you are betting
he/she/it is betting	they are betting

- *I'm betting that you are right.*

PAST

I bet	we bet
you bet	you bet
he/she/it bet	they bet

- *She bet $20 on Breezy Summit to win.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was betting	we were betting
you were betting	you were betting
he/she/it was betting	they were betting

- *They were all betting that he would win.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has bet
PAST PERFECT	. . . had bet

FUTURE	. . . will bet
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be betting
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have bet

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was bet	they were bet

- *A fortune was bet by professional gamblers.*

COMPLEMENTS

bet *make a wager*	I never bet. They are always betting.
bet ____ *place as a wager*	
OBJECT	Jason bet **a fortune**. They are betting **a lot of money**.
OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE	We bet **five dollars *that you can't eat the entire cake***.
WH-CLAUSE	They will bet **whatever they can afford to lose**.
bet ____ *wager [something] with [someone]*	
OBJECT + OBJECT	I bet **Floyd *10 dollars***. He bet **me *dinner at a nice restaurant***.
OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE	We bet **Robert *that his team would finish last***. I bet **you *that you can't do it***.
bet ____ *assert [that something will/won't happen]*	
THAT-CLAUSE	The company bet **that consumers would like the new design**. Marisa bet **that the Dodgers wouldn't win**.

PHRASAL VERBS

bet on ____ *place a wager on [a contestant]*	I'm betting on the gray stallion. I'm betting on St. Louis for the convention site. I'm betting on St. Louis to be the convention site.

EXPRESSIONS

You bet! *Certainly!* [INFORMAL]	"Can you help me move this sofa?" "You bet!"

PRESENT

I bid	we bid
you bid	you bid
he/she/it bids	they bid

- *He always bids the limit.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bidding	we are bidding
you are bidding	you are bidding
he/she/it is bidding	they are bidding

- *We are bidding on a vacation condo.*

PAST

I bade/bid	we bade/bid
you bade/bid	you bade/bid
he/she/it bade/bid	they bade/bid

- *I bid $200 for the painting.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bidding	we were bidding
you were bidding	you were bidding
he/she/it was bidding	they were bidding

- *They were bidding more than they could afford.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has bidden/bid
PAST PERFECT	… had bidden/bid

FUTURE	… will bid
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be bidding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have bidden/bid

PAST PASSIVE

I was bidden/bid	we were bidden/bid
you were bidden/bid	you were bidden/bid
he/she/it was bidden/bid	they were bidden/bid

- *Twenty-five dollars was just bid.*

COMPLEMENTS

bid *offer to pay a particular price*	I never bid at auctions. John will bid when it comes on the market.
bid _____ *offer [a price] for*	
OBJECT (+ *for* OBJECT)	When bidding began on the dollhouse, Dave bid **$200**. He bid **$25 *for the rocking chair***.
on OBJECT	We are bidding **on a first edition of Jane Austen's *Emma***.
WH-CLAUSE	They will bid **whatever is necessary**.

NOTE: Only *bid* (not *bade* or *bidden*) is used as the past form in the sense "offer as a price."

bid _____ *declare one's intention to take [tricks in a card game]*	
OBJECT	I bid **two spades**.

NOTE: Only *bid* (not *bade* or *bidden*) is used as the past form in the sense "declare one's intention to take."

bid _____ *tell [a greeting]*	
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	We bade ***them* farewell**.
to PARAPHRASE	We bade **farewell *to them***.
bid _____ *urge/ask*	
OBJECT + INFINITIVE	The butler bid **the guests *to enter***. He bid **them *to be careful***.
PASSIVE	The guests were bidden ***to enter***.

PHRASAL VERBS

bid SEP **out** *offer [work] for bids from outside contractors*	The army bid out the construction of four new barracks. The ad agency bids out the production of TV commercials.
bid SEP **up** *raise [an auction price] by offering more and more money*	Luana bid the price up on the antique lamp.

EXPRESSIONS

outbid _____ *offer more than*	Laura outbid four other people for the rug.
underbid _____ *offer to do something for less than*	The new firm underbid the others by $5,000.

18 bind

bind | binds · bound · have bound ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I bind	we bind
you bind	you bind
he/she/it binds	they bind

- *Duct tape binds the parts together.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am binding	we are binding
you are binding	you are binding
he/she/it is binding	they are binding

- *We are binding the reports with staples and tape.*

PAST

I bound	we bound
you bound	you bound
he/she/it bound	they bound

- *I bound the essays before shelving them.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was binding	we were binding
you were binding	you were binding
he/she/it was binding	they were binding

- *The gears were binding against each other.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has bound
PAST PERFECT	… had bound

FUTURE	… will bind
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be binding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have bound

PAST PASSIVE

I was bound	we were bound
you were bound	you were bound
he/she/it was bound	they were bound

- *They were bound by their promises.*

COMPLEMENTS

bind *stick, become stuck*	The pulley was binding.
bind *be uncomfortably tight*	This dress is binding.

NOTE: The verb *bind,* when it takes an object, is often used with *together.*

bind ____ *wrap, cover, bandage*	
OBJECT	We bound **the package** with tape. The printer bound **the books** in red leather. The doctor bound **my ankle**.
bind ____ *fasten together*	
OBJECT	The secretary bound **the pages** with a clip.
bind ____ *cause to stick together*	
OBJECT	The glue binds **the fibers** together. The enzyme binds **the calcium ions**.
bind ____ *put an edge/border on*	
OBJECT	He bound **the rug** with cotton tape to keep the edges from raveling.
bind ____ *morally/legally obligate/restrict*	
OBJECT	My promise binds **me**. His father's will binds **the use of the property**.
bind ____ *cause to have an emotional attachment*	
OBJECT	Duty and honor bound **the company of soldiers** together.

PHRASAL VERBS

bind SEP **off** *cast off* [KNITTING]	Be sure to bind off the scarf loosely.
bind SEP **over** *hold on bail*	The judge will bind the suspect over for trial.
bind SEP **up** *tie up*	The medics bound up the soldiers' wounds. The old issues were bound up with twine.

EXPRESSIONS

be bound to ____ *be certain to* *[do something]*	It's bound to snow this afternoon. Erin is bound to be a great lawyer someday. East Junior High is bound to win the math contest.

☑ IRREGULAR

bite | bites · bit · have bitten

bite

PRESENT

I bite	we bite
you bite	you bite
he/she/it bites	they bite

- *Be careful—the dog bites.*

PAST

I bit	we bit
you bit	you bit
he/she/it bit	they bit

- *He looks like he bit into a sour lemon.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has bitten
PAST PERFECT	. . . had bitten

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am biting	we are biting
you are biting	you are biting
he/she/it is biting	they are biting

- *The fish are biting this afternoon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was biting	we were biting
you were biting	you were biting
he/she/it was biting	they were biting

- *They were biting off more than they could chew.*

FUTURE	. . . will bite
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be biting
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have bitten

PAST PASSIVE

I was bitten	we were bitten
you were bitten	you were bitten
he/she/it was bitten	they were bitten

- *I was bitten by dozens of mosquitoes last night.*

COMPLEMENTS

bite *cut with the teeth*	Does your dog bite?
bite *sting*	The mosquitoes are biting tonight. Ouch, that ointment bites.
bite *be annoying/objectionable*	His criticisms really bite!
bite *take the bait, be tricked/cheated*	The fish are biting in Big Moose Lake. Do you think the customers will bite?
bite ____ *seize/wound with the teeth*	
OBJECT	I just bit **my tongue**. The neighbor's dog bit **Thomas**.
WH-CLAUSE	The puppy was biting **whatever it could reach**.

PHRASAL VERBS

bite into ____ *sink one's teeth into*	Sammy bit into the orange and got juice all over his face.
bite (into) ____ *hurt in a stinging way*	The icy wind was biting into my face.
bite _SEP_ **off** *remove with the teeth*	Susan bit off only a morsel.
bite on ____ *chew on*	Wade bit on his lip as he decided what to do.
bite on ____ *be tricked by*	Did Dennis bite on your latest ruse?

EXPRESSIONS

be bitten by the ____ **bug** *be obsessed with*	Jayne was bitten by the tennis bug.
bite off more than [one] can chew *undertake more than one can handle*	By opening five stores last year, the owners bit off more than they could chew.
bite [one's] tongue *hold back from saying something offensive*	Sheila had to bite her tongue to keep from calling her boyfriend a stupid idiot.
bite [someone's] head off *speak very angrily to someone*	I broke the copier, and my boss bit my head off.
bite the bullet *be brave in a painful situation*	I bit the bullet and attended my ex-girlfriend's wedding.
bite the dust *die, be defeated*	How old was the cowboy when he bit the dust? My first laptop finally bit the dust.

20 bleed

bleed | bleeds · bled · have bled ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I bleed	we bleed
you bleed	you bleed
he/she/it bleeds	they bleed

- *His nose bleeds at high altitudes.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bleeding	we are bleeding
you are bleeding	you are bleeding
he/she/it is bleeding	they are bleeding

- *I'm bleeding onto my shirt.*

PAST

I bled	we bled
you bled	you bled
he/she/it bled	they bled

- *His wound bled for quite some time.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bleeding	we were bleeding
you were bleeding	you were bleeding
he/she/it was bleeding	they were bleeding

- *The company was bleeding money.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has bled
PAST PERFECT	… had bled

FUTURE	… will bleed
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be bleeding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have bled

PAST PASSIVE

I was bled	we were bled
you were bled	you were bled
he/she/it was bled	they were bled

- *He was bled dry by the blackmailers.*

COMPLEMENTS

bleed *lose blood*	Her hands and knees were bleeding.
bleed *seep, ooze*	The cut plants bled onto the rug. The newsprint is bleeding onto my hands.
bleed *lose money*	The automobile industry is bleeding at an unsustainable rate.
bleed *feel sympathy*	My heart bleeds for the widow. Her heart bleeds at her neighbor's misfortune.
bleed ____ *draw blood/fluid from* OBJECT	Doctors used to bleed **their patients** regularly. The mechanic bled **the brake line**.
bleed ____ *extort money from over time* OBJECT	Blackmailers bleed **their victims** of all their money.
bleed ____ *lose rapidly* OBJECT	Newspapers are bleeding **money** at an amazing rate.

PHRASAL VERBS

bleed off ____ *be printed so the image goes off the edge of [a page, sheet]*	The photo of the wolf bleeds off the page.
bleed off ____ *remove the contents of*	Irene bled off the air compressor.
bleed through ____ *show through [a layer]*	The dark blue is bleeding through the coat of white paint.

EXPRESSIONS

bleed ____ **dry/white** *drain of resources*	Legal fees will bleed you dry. The rock star's entourage bled him white.
bleed money *lose money rapidly*	The entire industry is bleeding money.
bleed to death *die from loss of blood*	If the doctors can't stop the bleeding, the boy will bleed to death.
bleeding heart *one who is exceptionally sympathetic toward the underprivileged*	George is a bleeding heart for the homeless.

☑ IRREGULAR

blow | blows · blew · have blown

blow

21

PRESENT

I blow	we blow
you blow	you blow
he/she/it blows	they blow

- *The wind always blows in the wintertime.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am blowing	we are blowing
you are blowing	you are blowing
he/she/it is blowing	they are blowing

- *The wind is blowing my hair.*

PAST

I blew	we blew
you blew	you blew
he/she/it blew	they blew

- *He blew up all the balloons himself.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was blowing	we were blowing
you were blowing	you were blowing
he/she/it was blowing	they were blowing

- *The fans were blowing the gas out of the chamber.*

PRESENT PERFECT	... have | has blown
PAST PERFECT	... had blown

FUTURE	... will blow
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	... will be blowing
FUTURE PERFECT	... will have blown

PAST PASSIVE

I was blown	we were blown
you were blown	you were blown
he/she/it was blown	they were blown

- *The boat was blown off course.*

COMPLEMENTS

blow *move with force*	The wind was blowing softly.
blow *force air out*	The fans were blowing at low speed.
blow *produce a sound by having air forced through it*	The horns were all blowing.
blow *explode, erupt*	The volcano blew with a huge roar.
blow *abruptly fail*	The tire blew when we were going 55 miles an hour. The fuse blew when I turned on the iron.
blow ____ *move/carry away with a current of air*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The fans were blowing **the stale air *outside***. The wind was blowing **dirt *in my eyes***. The breeze blew **the boat *onto the rocks***.
blow ____ *force air at/into/through, fill with air*	
OBJECT	John blew **his nose**. The kids were blowing **bubbles** all afternoon.
OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	Compressed air blew **the pipes *clear***. She blew **her hair *dry***.
blow ____ *produce a sound by forcing air through*	
OBJECT	The jazzman blew **the trumpet** with all his might. The referee blew **his whistle** before the ball was thrown.
blow ____ *cause to explode*	
OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	He blew **the safe *open***.
blow ____ *botch, fail to keep*	
OBJECT	I blew **the exam**. The actors blew **their lines** repeatedly. The Giants blew **a 14-point lead**.
blow ____ *waste [money]*	
OBJECT	Zack blew **his money** on gambling.
blow ____ *leave hurriedly*	
OBJECT	I'm bored—let's blow **this joint**.

top 30 verb

21 blow

blow | blows · blew · have blown ☑ IRREGULAR

PHRASAL VERBS

blow away/off/out/etc. *be carried by a current of air in a specified direction*	Janet's hat blew off.
blow ____SEP____ **away** *defeat soundly*	The visitors blew the home team away.
blow ____SEP____ **away** *affect intensely*	This new poem of yours blows me away.
blow ____SEP____ **away** *kill with a gun*	The gangsters blew the guard away.
blow down *collapse due to a strong current of air*	The shed blew down in the storm.
blow ____SEP____ **down** *cause to collapse due to a strong current of air*	The storm blew the shed down.
blow in / (into ____**)** *arrive unexpectedly (at)*	Well, look who just blew in! Three strangers blew into town on Saturday night.
blow ____SEP____ **off** *ignore, choose not to deal with*	Lanny blew off the assignment. Ramona blew off her friends and left town.
blow out *be extinguished*	The candle blew out because of the open windows.
blow out *burst suddenly*	The tire blew out, sounding like a gunshot.
blow ____SEP____ **out** *extinguish with a gust of air*	Blow the candle out and go to sleep.
blow ____SEP____ **out** *damage severely*	Chuck blew out his knee in the first game.
blow ____SEP____ **out** *defeat soundly*	The Lions blew the Tigers out in an exhibition game.
blow [oneself] out *subside*	The guests left after the storm blew itself out.
blow over *subside*	The storm blew over almost as quickly as it arrived. This crisis will blow over soon.
blow up *arrive with wind*	A storm blew up out of the southwest.
blow up *explode*	The truck blew up on contact with a mine.
blow up *lose one's temper*	The teacher will blow up if you don't be quiet.
blow ____SEP____ **up** *fill with air*	The clown blew up 20 balloons.
blow ____SEP____ **up** *cause to explode*	The soldiers blew the headquarters up with mortars.
blow ____SEP____ **up** *enlarge*	Let's blow the map up to 400%.

EXPRESSIONS

blow a fuse/gasket *become extremely angry*	Natalie blew a fuse when her secretary lost the files.
blow off (some) steam *release a pent-up emotion*	The players went to a bar to blow off some steam.
blow [one's] cool *lose one's composure*	I know you're frustrated, but don't blow your cool.
blow [someone's] mind *affect intensely*	The revelation really blows my mind.
blow [one's] (own) horn *praise oneself*	Rebecca is talented, but she never blows her own horn.
blow [one's] top/stack *speak/act very angrily*	The candidate blew his top at the nosy reporter.
blow ____ **out of the water** *destroy completely*	The new motorcycle will blow its competition out of the water.
blow the whistle (on ____**)** *report wrongdoing to authorities (about)*	A secretary blew the whistle on the accountant.
blow ____ **to bits/pieces/smithereens** *blow completely apart*	A single mortar round blew the police station to pieces.

top 30 verb

☑ IRREGULAR

break | breaks · broke · have broken

break 22

PRESENT

I break	we break
you break	you break
he/she/it breaks	they break

- *He never breaks his word.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am breaking	we are breaking
you are breaking	you are breaking
he/she/it is breaking	they are breaking

- *We are breaking for lunch now.*

PAST

I broke	we broke
you broke	you broke
he/she/it broke	they broke

- *They broke every single agreement.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was breaking	we were breaking
you were breaking	you were breaking
he/she/it was breaking	they were breaking

- *The company was just breaking even.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has broken
PAST PERFECT	. . . had broken

FUTURE	. . . will break
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be breaking
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have broken

PAST PASSIVE

I was broken	we were broken
you were broken	you were broken
he/she/it was broken	they were broken

- *The window was already broken.*

COMPLEMENTS

break *fragment, shatter*	The delicate cup broke into pieces. The waves were breaking close to the shore.
break *fail in strength/resolve/control/usability*	His health broke. His voice broke with emotion. The criminals broke under questioning. The replacement parts broke too.
break *begin/appear suddenly*	When the storm broke, I was on my bicycle. Dawn is breaking.
break *become publicly known*	The news broke this morning.
break *end suddenly*	Jasmine's fever broke last night.
break *become clear*	I hope the weather breaks soon.
break ____ *fracture, render inoperable* OBJECT	He broke **his left wrist**. They broke **my cell phone**.
break ____ *violate [a rule, agreement]* OBJECT	They broke **the rules**. We broke **our promise to them**.
break ____ *exceed, surpass* OBJECT	He was arrested because he broke **the speed limit**. They broke **the old record** by four seconds.
break ____ *make publicly known* OBJECT	The reporters broke **the news** this morning.
break ____ *disrupt, make ineffective* OBJECT	The soldiers broke **formation**. The noise broke **my concentration**. She broke **the spell**.
break ____ *stop, interrupt* OBJECT	The net broke **the trapeze artist's fall**. Esther broke **the silence** with a scream.
PASSIVE	The deadlock was broken at 3 A.M.

top 30 verb

22 break

break | breaks · broke · have broken ☑ IRREGULAR

break _____ *solve, figure out*	
OBJECT	The police broke **the case**. The scientists broke **the code**.
break _____ *give the equivalent of in smaller monetary units*	
OBJECT	Can you break **a twenty-dollar bill**?
break _____ *ruin financially*	
OBJECT	One more financial setback will break **the company**.
break _____ *tame, train to obey*	
OBJECT	The cowboys broke **the wild horses**.

PHRASAL VERBS

break away *leave suddenly*	Helene broke away from the rest of the sprinters.
break down *become inoperative/ineffective*	My car broke down at Sixth and Pine. Negotiations broke down after three days.
break down *become upset*	Seth broke down and cried at the news.
break down *give in*	Lonnie broke down and bought an MP3 player.
break ___SEP___ **down** *divide into [pieces]*	Let's break the sentence down into subject and predicate.
break for _____ *interrupt one's activities for*	Let's break for lunch at 12 o'clock.
break ___SEP___ **in** *train [an employee]*	Has Marilyn broken Mary in yet?
break ___SEP___ **in** *use [something] until it functions well*	I have to break in a new pair of shoes.
break into _____ *enter, usually by force*	Thieves broke into the pharmacy.
break into _____ *begin suddenly*	When she's really happy, Gretchen breaks into song.
break into _____ *become engaged in*	Bert broke into show business at the age of four.
break into / in on _____ *interrupt*	I'm sorry to break in on your conversation, but I must go.
break _____ **into** *divide [something] into [pieces]*	We should break the project into individual tasks.
break off *stop suddenly*	Aaron's voice broke off in mid-sentence.
break ___SEP___ **off** *discontinue*	The two nations have broken off diplomatic relations.
break out *develop*	Fire broke out in the kitchen area.
break out *be covered with*	Dave broke out in a sweat.
break out (of _____**)** *escape (from)*	The prisoners broke out of jail in the early morning.
break up *fall apart, scatter*	The partnership broke up on amicable terms. The crowd broke up after the speech.
break up *laugh hard*	Every time I hear this monologue, I break up.
break up (with _____**)** *end a romance (with)*	Have you heard? Alison broke up with Todd.
break ___SEP___ **up** *cause to laugh hard*	This monologue just breaks me up.
break ___SEP___ **up** *put an end to*	The FBI tried to break up the drug cartel. Two students broke the fight up.

EXPRESSIONS

top 30 verb

break even *achieve a balance between income and expenses*	The firm broke even in 2008.
break the ice *overcome awkwardness/formality*	The president broke the ice with a couple of jokes.

breed 23

PRESENT

I breed	we breed
you breed	you breed
he/she/it breeds	they breed

- *Uncertainty breeds indecision and delay.*

PAST

I bred	we bred
you bred	you bred
he/she/it bred	they bred

- *She bred her dogs to herd sheep.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has bred
PAST PERFECT	… had bred

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am breeding	we are breeding
you are breeding	you are breeding
he/she/it is breeding	they are breeding

- *They are breeding disease-resistant wheat.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was breeding	we were breeding
you were breeding	you were breeding
he/she/it was breeding	they were breeding

- *Their ruthless tactics were breeding resentment.*

FUTURE	… will breed
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be breeding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have bred

PAST PASSIVE

I was bred	we were bred
you were bred	you were bred
he/she/it was bred	they were bred

- *These mice were bred in a laboratory.*

COMPLEMENTS

breed *mate, produce offspring*	Many animals fail to breed in captivity. Mosquitoes breed in stagnant water. My guppies are breeding like rabbits.
breed *originate and develop*	Unhappiness breeds on itself. Fear bred in the streets of the threatened city.
breed _____ *cause to reproduce, especially for specific characteristics*	
OBJECT	They breed **show horses** on their ranch.
PASSIVE	The plants were bred to withstand an early frost.
breed _____ *raise [a child], rear, train*	
OBJECT	She bred **her daughters** to have perfect manners.
PASSIVE	William Faulkner was born and bred in Mississippi.
breed _____ *cause to happen*	
OBJECT	Familiarity breeds **contempt**. [PROVERB] Success breeds **success**.
PASSIVE	Speculation is bred by unregulated risk taking.
breed _____ *be the source/origin of*	
OBJECT	Silicon Valley breeds **innovation and technological breakthroughs**. The Midwest breeds **its share of talented musicians**.

24 bring

bring | brings · brought · have brought ☑ IRREGULAR

PHRASAL VERBS

bring SEP **about** *cause to happen*	How can we bring about change?
bring SEP **along** *have [someone] come along*	Be sure to bring a friend along on the tour.
bring SEP **around** *cause to regain consciousness*	The medic brought the injured man around.
bring SEP **around** *persuade*	They brought Andy around on going to Cancun.
bring SEP **away** *come away with [information]*	We bring valuable insights away from the speech.
bring SEP **back** *recall*	These photographs bring back lots of memories.
bring ____ **before** *cause to appear before [an authority]*	The guards brought the defendant before Judge Flynn.
bring ____ **before** *introduce for consideration by*	I brought the zoning issue before the city council.
bring SEP **down** *cause to fall*	His own mistakes brought him down.
bring SEP **forth** *give birth to, produce*	Amy expects to bring forth a healthy son. Reinforcements brought forth the historic victory.
bring SEP **forth** *make known*	The lawyer brought forth two good arguments.
bring SEP **in** *produce, earn*	The subsidiary brought in $30 million last year.
bring ____ **in on** *include [someone] in [an activity]*	The president brought them in on the decision.
bring SEP **off** *make happen, accomplish*	He brought off the biggest upset of the day.
bring SEP **on** *cause to appear*	It's time to bring on the clowns.
bring SEP **out** *cause to emerge*	A police siren brings people out into the street.
bring SEP **out** *publish, issue*	She brings out a new novel every two years.
bring SEP **over** *persuade*	Alexandra brought Gil over to our side.
bring ____ **through** *help to endure*	My sister brought her husband through.
bring ____ **to** *cause to regain consciousness*	We brought Anne to before the medics arrived.
bring SEP **together** *cause to gather*	We brought the class together for one last party.
bring SEP **up** *mention*	Jackie brought up the idea of having more parties.
bring SEP **up** *raise [a child]*	It's not easy to bring up twins. Camelia's parents brought her up to be nice.
bring ____ **up on** *provide in [someone's] childhood*	Mom brought us up on the Beatles.
bring ____ **up on / up-to-date on / up to speed on** *inform [someone] about*	Would you like to bring us up on the latest developments?

EXPRESSIONS

bring ____ **into play** *cause to be a factor*	The campaign is bringing Internet strategies into play.
bring ____ **into question** *cause to be doubted*	Reports have brought his character into question.
bring ____ **into service** *begin to use*	We will bring 30 wind farms into service by May.
bring ____ **into view** *cause to be seen*	The viewfinder brought the mountain into view.
bring ____ **to a head** *cause to reach a crisis*	The theft brings the question of security to a head.
bring ____ **to an end / a close / a climax** *end*	My new book will bring the case to a close.
bring ____ **to life** *give vitality to*	The children want to bring the puppet to life.
bring ____ **to light** *reveal*	The journalist brought the corruption to light.
bring ____ **to mind** *recall*	The reunion brought to mind all the good times we had.
bring ____ **to [someone's] attention** *make aware of*	Citizens have brought the issue to our attention.

top 30 verb

☑ IRREGULAR

bring | brings · brought · have brought

bring

24

PRESENT

I bring	we bring
you bring	you bring
he/she/it brings	they bring

- *April showers bring May flowers.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bringing	we are bringing
you are bringing	you are bringing
he/she/it is bringing	they are bringing

- *We are bringing the books with us.*

PAST

I brought	we brought
you brought	you brought
he/she/it brought	they brought

- *They brought us some good news.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bringing	we were bringing
you were bringing	you were bringing
he/she/it was bringing	they were bringing

- *They were bringing the dessert.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has brought
PAST PERFECT	. . . had brought

FUTURE	. . . will bring
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be bringing
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have brought

PAST PASSIVE

I was brought	we were brought
you were brought	you were brought
he/she/it was brought	they were brought

- *This message was brought to you by our sponsor.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *bring* generally indicates movement toward the speaker or toward the focus of attention; compare with *take* (verb No. 166).

bring ____ *carry, lead*

OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)	Who will bring **dessert**? Bring **the book *here***, please. I brought **the visitors *to their hotel***. The coupons really brought **a crowd *to the store***. You should bring **them *back***.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	He brought ***me* my dinner**. She brought ***us* the new account**. The sale brought ***them* a small fortune**.
to PARAPHRASE	He brought **my dinner *to me***. She brought **the new account *to us***. The sale brought **a small fortune *to them***.
OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE	She brought **us *whatever she could***.
WH-CLAUSE (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)	Bring **whomever you want**. Bring **whatever you can *to the picnic***.

bring ____ *cause to be in a particular state/condition*

OBJECT + *to* OBJECT	I brought **the water *to a boil***. They brought **the meeting *to a conclusion***.

bring ____ *bear as an attribute*

OBJECT	He brought **lots of experience** to the table.

bring ____ *result in*

OBJECT	The storm brought **ten inches of rain**. The drug will bring **nearly immediate relief**.

bring ____ *cause*

OBJECT + INFINITIVE	What brought **you *to apply to 8 colleges***?

bring ____ *sell for*

OBJECT	Our old car brought **$350**. The sale will bring **a lot of money**.

bring ____ *file in court*

OBJECT	He brought **charges** against the owners.

top 30 verb

25 broadcast

broadcast | broadcasts · broadcast/broadcasted · have broadcast/broadcasted

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

PRESENT

I broadcast	we broadcast
you broadcast	you broadcast
he/she/it broadcasts	they broadcast

- *He broadcasts all of their games.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am broadcasting	we are broadcasting
you are broadcasting	you are broadcasting
he/she/it is broadcasting	they are broadcasting

- *They are broadcasting the debate live.*

PAST

I broadcast	we broadcast
you broadcast	you broadcast
he/she/it broadcast	they broadcast

- *The station broadcast the show for 50 years.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was broadcasting	we were broadcasting
you were broadcasting	you were broadcasting
he/she/it was broadcasting	they were broadcasting

- *We were broadcasting from Los Angeles then.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has broadcast
PAST PERFECT	… had broadcast

FUTURE	… will broadcast
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be broadcasting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have broadcast

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was broadcast	they were broadcast

- *The news was broadcast in high definition.*

COMPLEMENTS

broadcast *transmit programming via radio/TV*

They broadcast in Latin America.
They broadcast in Spanish.
We broadcast on the FM dial in stereo.
Shhh! They're broadcasting.

broadcast *participate in a broadcast program*

She broadcasts live from Rockefeller Center.

broadcast ____ *transmit via radio/TV*

OBJECT	They broadcast **news about Asia**. We broadcast **college football games**.

broadcast ____ *communicate via radio/TV*

OBJECT	The police broadcast **a description of the suspect**. The weather bureau broadcast **a storm warning for the region**.
THAT-CLAUSE	The networks broadcast **that Senator Blather was the likely winner**. The radio broadcast **that all the major downtown freeways were closed**.
WH-CLAUSE	The stations only broadcast **what they think the public wants to hear**.

broadcast ____ *make widely known*

OBJECT	I'll broadcast **my marriage proposal** on the stadium scoreboard. Please don't broadcast **the rumor** to everyone you see.
THAT-CLAUSE	I model part-time. But I don't go broadcasting **that I do**.
WH-CLAUSE	Don't go broadcasting **why we split up**.

PRESENT

I build	we build
you build	you build
he/she/it builds	they build

- *He builds custom-made furniture.*

PAST

I built	we built
you built	you built
he/she/it built	they built

- *They just built a house near us.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has built
PAST PERFECT … had built

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am building	we are building
you are building	you are building
he/she/it is building	they are building

- *They are building a new house.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was building	we were building
you were building	you were building
he/she/it was building	they were building

- *We were building passenger cars on truck frames.*

FUTURE … will build
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be building
FUTURE PERFECT … will have built

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was built	they were built

- *Our house was built in 1996.*

COMPLEMENTS

build *increase in size/intensity*	The waves were building ever higher. Our debt was building to scary levels. Excitement is building over who will be elected.
build _____ *construct*	
OBJECT	Tommy built **the wagon** out of parts he found in the garage. We built **a deck** this summer. They are building **a communications network**. We have built **a good plan**. The prosecutor built **a strong case** against the suspect.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	They built ***us*** **a two-car garage**. We built ***them*** **a new investment package**.
for PARAPHRASE	They **built a two-car garage** ***for us***. We built **a new investment package** ***for them***.
WH-CLAUSE	We can only build **what we can afford**. They will build **whatever the marketplace wants**.
build _____ *increase*	
OBJECT	The campaign built **support** by offering free T-shirts. The company is building **their business** one store at a time.

PHRASAL VERBS

build _____ **in/into** *make [something] an integral part of*	We will build cabinets into the laundry room. The programmers built security into the server software.
build _____ **on/onto** *construct [something] as an addition to*	We built a deck onto the house this summer.
build SEP **up** *increase*	The politicians built up hope among poor people. Steven is building up leg strength by running five miles a day.
build SEP **up** *promote*	The agency built Eileen up as a pop singer.

EXPRESSIONS

build _____ **to order** *construct to individual specifications*	The woodworker builds bookcases to order. Every computer is built to order.

27 burn

burn | burns · burned · have burned
burn | burns · burnt · have burnt

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I burn	we burn
you burn	you burn
he/she/it burns	they burn

- *He really burns me up.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am burning	we are burning
you are burning	you are burning
he/she/it is burning	they are burning

- *She is burning loveletters from her ex-husband.*

PAST

I burnt	we burnt
you burnt	you burnt
he/she/it burnt	they burnt

- *We burnt oak firewood last winter.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was burning	we were burning
you were burning	you were burning
he/she/it was burning	they were burning

- *A light was burning in the window.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has burnt
PAST PERFECT	… had burnt

FUTURE	… will burn
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be burning
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have burnt

PAST PASSIVE

I was burnt	we were burnt
you were burnt	you were burnt
he/she/it was burnt	they were burnt

- *My hand was burnt by the hot plate.*

COMPLEMENTS

burn *be on fire*	Get out—the building is burning! A small fire was burning in the fireplace.
burn *be destroyed by fire*	Our apartment building burnt last night. The paper and kindling burnt quickly.
burn *give off light*	Every lamp in the house was burning.
burn *be/feel hot/painful*	Her forehead was burning. My ears were burning from the cold.
burn *become sunburned*	With her fair complexion, she burns easily.
burn ____ *set fire to, destroy by fire*	
OBJECT	We burnt **the trash** in the fireplace.
burn ____ *damage/injure by heat/fire*	
OBJECT	A spark burnt **a hole** in my pants. I burnt **my fingers**. I burnt **myself** on the stove.
burn ____ *use as fuel/energy*	
OBJECT	Most cars can burn **regular gas**. Soccer players burn **more calories** than golfers.
WH-CLAUSE	We burnt **whatever we could get our hands on**.
burn ____ *cause to feel hot*	
OBJECT	The salsa burnt **my mouth**.
burn ____ *record data on*	
OBJECT	We burnt **some new CDs**.
burn ____ *defeat, trick, cheat*	
OBJECT	The quarterback burnt **the defense** on that play.
PASSIVE	I got burnt by the dot-com crash in 2000. We were burnt in the commodities market.

PHRASAL VERBS

burn down *burn smaller and smaller*	The candle burnt down and went out.
burn _SEP_ **up** *make very angry*	That nasty remark really burns me up.

☑ IRREGULAR

burst | bursts · burst · have burst

burst

28

PRESENT

I burst	we burst
you burst	you burst
he/she/it bursts	they burst

- *He always bursts into tears.*

PAST

I burst	we burst
you burst	you burst
he/she/it burst	they burst

- *He burst all of our hopes.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has burst
PAST PERFECT	… had burst

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bursting	we are bursting
you are bursting	you are bursting
he/she/it is bursting	they are bursting

- *I'm bursting to tell you what happened.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bursting	we were bursting
you were bursting	you were bursting
he/she/it was bursting	they were bursting

- *We were just bursting after Thanksgiving dinner.*

FUTURE	… will burst
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be bursting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have burst

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was burst	they were burst

- *The dam was burst by the heavy rains.*

COMPLEMENTS

burst *break, rupture*	The balloons all burst. I was afraid that my eardrums would burst from the sudden pressure change.
burst *be filled to the breaking point*	The auditorium was bursting with students.
burst *explode* [OFTEN FIGURATIVE]	The rocket burst above the spectators' heads. The bushes are just bursting with blossoms.
burst *give way to sudden emotion*	I felt like my heart would burst. I was bursting with pride.
burst ____ *cause to break/explode*	
OBJECT	The explosion burst **the windows**. The older kids burst **all the balloons**. The hurricane burst **the retaining walls**.
burst ____ *be very eager*	
for OBJECT + INFINITIVE	We are bursting **for him *to tell us***. I am bursting **for Mary *to see what we have done***.
INFINITIVE	I'm bursting **to know what happened**. The kids are bursting **to open their presents**.

PHRASAL VERBS

burst in on ____ *interrupt suddenly*	The secretary burst in on the private meeting.
burst in/into ____ *enter suddenly*	The children burst into the room.
burst onto ____ *emerge suddenly in a location*	The singer burst onto the stage.
burst out *explode outward*	When the glass burst out, I was cut by flying shards.
burst out ____ *begin suddenly [to do]*	We all burst out laughing at the joke.
burst (out) into ____ *begin [an activity] suddenly*	After the accident, Kathleen burst into tears. When I hear bongo drums, I burst out into song.
burst out of ____ *be too big for*	She was embarrassed to be bursting out of her dress.
burst out of ____ *leave quickly*	At midnight, the partygoers burst out of the hall.
burst through ____ *break through with force*	The troops burst through the enemy line.

29 buy

buy | buys · bought · have bought

☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I buy	we buy
you buy	you buy
he/she/it buys	they buy

- *He always buys locally.*

PAST

I bought	we bought
you bought	you bought
he/she/it bought	they bought

- *We bought a new car last week.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has bought
PAST PERFECT	. . . had bought

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am buying	we are buying
you are buying	you are buying
he/she/it is buying	they are buying

- *We are buying a new TV.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was buying	we were buying
you were buying	you were buying
he/she/it was buying	they were buying

- *They were buying it on credit.*

FUTURE	. . . will buy
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be buying
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have bought

PAST PASSIVE

I was bought	we were bought
you were bought	you were bought
he/she/it was bought	they were bought

- *The house was bought in 1982.*

COMPLEMENTS

buy ____ *purchase*	
OBJECT	I bought **take-out** for dinner. We will buy **500 shares of Apex Corporation**. A dollar buys **less** than a euro does.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	I bought ***the kids*** **some new toys**. They bought ***us*** **dinner**.
for PARAPHRASE	I bought **some new toys** ***for the kids***. They bought **dinner** ***for us***.
WH-CLAUSE	Mom buys **whichever brand is cheapest**.
buy ____ *accept, believe, agree to/with*	
OBJECT	They bought **our proposal**. Will the students buy **the idea**? I don't buy **that** at all.

PHRASAL VERBS

buy into ____ *purchase shares of*	Our investment club bought into the Triangle Corporation.
buy into ____ *agree with, believe in*	I don't buy into his money-making scheme.
buy SEP ____ **off** *bribe*	The candidate changed positions; lobbyists bought him off.
buy SEP ____ **out** *purchase all assets/ interests of [a business]*	We bought out our competitors.
buy SEP ____ **up** *purchase all of*	We bought up every copy of the *Times* that had Tim's crossword puzzle in it.

EXPRESSIONS

buy ____ **for a song** *purchase cheaply*	She bought this new rocking chair for a song.
buy ____ **on credit/time** *purchase now and pay later for*	Can we buy this refrigerator on credit?
buy ____ **sight unseen** *purchase without looking at first*	My parents bought a condo in Florida sight unseen.
buy (some) time *delay an action/decision in hopes that a situation will improve*	The owner wants to buy some time while he considers all his options.

☑ IRREGULAR

cast | casts · cast · have cast

cast

PRESENT

I cast	we cast
you cast	you cast
he/she/it casts	they cast

- *The statue casts a long shadow.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am casting	we are casting
you are casting	you are casting
he/she/it is casting	they are casting

- *I am casting the play this week.*

PAST

I cast	we cast
you cast	you cast
he/she/it cast	they cast

- *He cast me in the role of the duke.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was casting	we were casting
you were casting	you were casting
he/she/it was casting	they were casting

- *We were casting off by 6 A.M.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has cast
PAST PERFECT	… had cast

FUTURE	… will cast
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be casting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have cast

PAST PASSIVE

I was cast	we were cast
you were cast	you were cast
he/she/it was cast	they were cast

- *The dice were cast.*

COMPLEMENTS

cast *throw a fishing line/net into the water*	He cast wherever he could see fish.
cast ____ *throw*	
OBJECT	The fishermen cast **their nets** off their boats. I cast **a line** to the children in the boat. The boys cast **stones** into the pond.
cast ____ *direct, focus*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE	The fireplace cast **a cheerful light** ***into the room***. He cast **a quick glance** ***at his audience***. The moon cast **its light** ***on the shimmering lake***.
cast ____ *convey*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE	Recent events cast **doubt** ***on our decision***. His actions cast **suspicion** ***on his motives***.
cast ____ *choose actors for*	
OBJECT	Roberta has already cast **the play**.
cast ____ *assign a role to*	
OBJECT + *as* OBJECT	We cast **him** ***as the hero's father***. Senator Blather cast **his opponent** ***as a reckless spender***.
OBJECT + *in* OBJECT	He cast **her** ***in the leading role***. Sally cast **Harry** ***in the role of best friend***.
cast ____ *form by pouring liquid into a mold*	
OBJECT	The foundry casts **brass bells**. We cast **wax candles** with the children.
cast ____ *deposit [a ballot, vote]*	
OBJECT	Samuel cast **his ballot** for the liberal candidate.

PHRASAL VERBS

cast SEP **aside/away/off** *discard, throw away*	Lisa cast aside her winter clothes. The boss cast off all his doubts about the new salesperson.
cast SEP **back** *direct to the past*	The retired teacher cast his thoughts back to happier days.
cast off *push away from the dock*	The cruise ship cast off at 0900 hours.
cast SEP **out** *expel*	The club cast Ollie out for failure to pay dues.

31 catch

catch | catches · caught · have caught ☑ IRREGULAR

catch _____ *draw even with, overtake* OBJECT	Their Gross Domestic Product is catching **Spain's**. I tried to catch **him** on the last lap.
catch _____ *take/get quickly* OBJECT	Norvel caught **a glimpse of himself** in the mirror. I caught **sight of Cary** on the subway platform. Try to catch **some sleep** before you leave.
catch _____ *attract and hold* OBJECT	Lori's poster will catch **everybody's attention**. The new employee caught **her eye**.

PHRASAL VERBS

catch _____ from *get [a disease] from [someone/something]*	The whole class caught the flu from Jimmy.
catch on *become popular*	The Beatles caught on after *The Ed Sullivan Show.*
catch on (to _____) *figure out, learn*	Dexter finally caught on to what Delia had meant. Cal is new at the job, but he's catching on quickly.
catch [someone]'s eye *get [someone's] attention*	I caught her eye from across the room.
catch SEP **up in** *interest/involve [someone] in*	Her husband caught her up in his latest scheme. The crowd was caught up in all the excitement.
catch _____ up (on) *bring up-to-date about*	The assistant will catch the actor up on the news.
catch up on _____ / get caught up on _____ *make oneself current about*	I hope to catch up on my reading when I retire. Tonight we can get caught up on our sleep.
catch up (to/with _____) *get even (with [someone/something])*	Will supply ever catch up to demand? The taxi caught up with the bus at Skinker Blvd.

EXPRESSIONS

be caught short *be without money when one needs it*	Bill was caught short today and couldn't pay for his lunch.
catch a whiff of _____ *smell*	I caught a whiff of sweet perfume.
catch _____ at it *discover [someone doing something wrong]*	They were sneaking cookies, and Mother caught them at it.
catch _____ dead *see at any time* [USUALLY NEGATIVE]	You wouldn't catch me dead in that place. I wouldn't be caught dead in that place.
catch _____ napping *surprise [someone who is unprepared]*	The enemy caught our platoon napping.
catch _____ off balance/guard *surprise*	The question caught Senator Blather off balance.
catch (on) fire *become ignited*	The kindling finally caught fire.
catch [one's] breath *rest after intense activity*	I just ran four miles—let me catch my breath!
catch [one's] death of cold *become sick with a severe cold*	Put on a jacket or you'll catch your death of cold.
catch _____ red-handed *discover [someone] doing something wrong*	The police caught the thief red-handed.
catch _____ with [someone's] pants down *discover [someone] in an embarrassing situation*	They were taking bribes, and investigators caught them with their pants down.
catch wind of _____ *hear about*	We just caught wind of the new energy proposal.

☑ IRREGULAR

catch | catches · caught · have caught

catch

31

PRESENT

I catch	we catch
you catch	you catch
he/she/it catches	they catch

- *The basin catches rainwater.*

PAST

I caught	we caught
you caught	you caught
he/she/it caught	they caught

- *I caught a cold over the weekend.*

PRESENT PERFECT	... have | has caught
PAST PERFECT	... had caught

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am catching	we are catching
you are catching	you are catching
he/she/it is catching	they are catching

- *I am catching the last train.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was catching	we were catching
you were catching	you were catching
he/she/it was catching	they were catching

- *The kids were catching minnows in the pond.*

FUTURE	... will catch
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	... will be catching
FUTURE PERFECT	... will have caught

PAST PASSIVE

I was caught	we were caught
you were caught	you were caught
he/she/it was caught	they were caught

- *The burglar was finally caught by the police.*

COMPLEMENTS

catch *begin to burn/operate*	The leaves and twigs finally caught. The engine coughed twice and caught.
catch *become entangled*	My sleeve caught on a hook.
catch *act as a catcher* [BASEBALL]	Molina caught in all four games of the series.
catch ____ *capture, seize, trap, snag, entangle*	
OBJECT	They caught **the thief**. We caught **some trout** for dinner. The bushes caught **my jacket**.
PASSIVE	I was caught in traffic for 45 minutes. Basil was caught in a hailstorm.
catch ____ *grasp and hold onto (physically)*	
OBJECT	I caught **the ball**.
catch ____ *understand, comprehend*	
OBJECT	I caught **the joke**. Sorry, I didn't catch **your name**.
catch ____ *discover [someone doing something wrong]*	
OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE	I caught **them *sleeping on the job***. We caught **the kids *smoking in the garage***.
PASSIVE	Zack was caught ***breaking into a car***.
catch ____ *board [a vehicle]*	
OBJECT	I have to catch **a plane**. I'll catch **a taxi** at the hotel.
catch ____ *become sick with*	
OBJECT	Everyone caught **a cold**.
catch ____ *go to see*	
OBJECT	We caught **the last performance of the day**.
catch ____ *watch, listen to*	
OBJECT	Did you catch **the game** on TV?
catch ____ *meet with*	
OBJECT	I'll catch **you** later. We will catch **him** at the meeting tomorrow.

top 30 verb

32 chide

chide | chides · chided · have chided
chide | chides · chid · have chid/chidden

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I chide	we chide
you chide	you chide
he/she/it chides	they chide

- *She chides me for being gullible.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am chiding	we are chiding
you are chiding	you are chiding
he/she/it is chiding	they are chiding

- *We are chiding them about their terrible coffee.*

PAST

I chid	we chid
you chid	you chid
he/she/it chid	they chid

- *The librarian gently chid the children.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was chiding	we were chiding
you were chiding	you were chiding
he/she/it was chiding	they were chiding

- *I was chiding him for spending all his money.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has chid/chidden
PAST PERFECT	… had chid/chidden

FUTURE	… will chide
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be chiding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have chid/chidden

PAST PASSIVE

I was chid/chidden	we were chid/chidden
you were chid/chidden	you were chid/chidden
he/she/it was chid/chidden	they were chid/chidden

- *We were chidden for missing the beginning of the meeting.*

COMPLEMENTS

chide *express disapproval/displeasure*	He is an old grouch who chides constantly. He chides about the morals of "kids these days."
chide ____ *reprimand, scold*	
OBJECT	Too many teachers chide **their students** over nothing. I chid **the people who kept talking during the movie**.
PASSIVE	We were chidden for expressing unpopular opinions.
DIRECT QUOTATION	**"Don't act like that,"** she chid. **"Well,"** the senator chid, **"we'll see about that!"**
chide ____ *goad, nag*	
OBJECT + *into* PRESENT PARTICIPLE	The manager chid **the tenants *into cleaning up the yard***. He chid **me *into doing something I didn't really want to do***.
PASSIVE	We were chid ***into filling out a questionnaire***.

☑ IRREGULAR choose | chooses · chose · have chosen

choose

PRESENT

I choose	we choose
you choose	you choose
he/she/it chooses	they choose

- *He always chooses to take Amtrak.*

PAST

I chose	we chose
you chose	you chose
he/she/it chose	they chose

- *They chose a new president.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has chosen
PAST PERFECT … had chosen

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am choosing	we are choosing
you are choosing	you are choosing
he/she/it is choosing	they are choosing

- *They are choosing someone right now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was choosing	we were choosing
you were choosing	you were choosing
he/she/it was choosing	they were choosing

- *They were choosing a new secretary.*

FUTURE … will choose
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be choosing
FUTURE PERFECT … will have chosen

PAST PASSIVE

I was chosen	we were chosen
you were chosen	you were chosen
he/she/it was chosen	they were chosen

- *My candidate was chosen.*

COMPLEMENTS

choose *make a selection*	You need to choose. They are still choosing. You may choose between lemon and cherry Danish.
choose ____ *select, opt for, prefer*	
OBJECT	Giuseppe chose **the toasted ravioli**. The delegates chose **Senator Blather**. The residents chose **pumpkin pie** over cheesecake. The bride chose **satin** for her wedding dress.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	I chose ***myself*** **a new computer**. My son chose ***his mother*** **a present**.
for PARAPHRASE	I chose **a new computer** ***for myself***. My son chose **a present** ***for his mother***.
OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN	He chose **Ralph** ***as his partner***. They chose **Sue** ***as captain***.
OBJECT + *for* PREDICATE NOUN	We will choose **Meg** ***for treasurer***. She chose **Sarah** ***for her maid of honor***.
OBJECT + *to be* PREDICATE NOUN	They chose **him** ***to be secretary***.
OBJECT + INFINITIVE	They chose **her** ***to give the keynote address***. He chose **Larry** ***to be his best man***. You should choose **Kay** ***to design your book***.
INFINITIVE	We chose **to fly to Denver**.
WH-CLAUSE	He is choosing **what to take**. We chose **where we would go on vacation**.
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	We chose **flying to Denver** over driving there.

EXPRESSIONS

choose (up) sides *form opposing teams by having captains alternately select players*	Once they chose up sides, they had to decide which team would bat first.
pick and choose *select carefully*	Co-op members can pick and choose from a wide variety of Dina's produce.

34 cleave

cleave | cleaves · cleaved · have cleaved
cleave | cleaves · cleft/clove · have cleft/cloven

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I cleave	we cleave
you cleave	you cleave
he/she/it cleaves	they cleave

- *Mica cleaves in absolutely straight lines.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am cleaving	we are cleaving
you are cleaving	you are cleaving
he/she/it is cleaving	they are cleaving

- *The boat is cleaving the waves at full speed.*

PAST

I cleft/clove	we cleft/clove
you cleft/clove	you cleft/clove
he/she/it cleft/clove	they cleft/clove

- *He clove the log in half.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was cleaving	we were cleaving
you were cleaving	you were cleaving
he/she/it was cleaving	they were cleaving

- *The war was cleaving the nation.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has cleft/cloven
PAST PERFECT	… had cleft/cloven

FUTURE	… will cleave
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be cleaving
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have cleft/cloven

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was cleft/cloven	they were cleft/cloven

- *A tunnel was cleft through the hill.*

NOTE: This irregular verb should not be confused with the unrelated regular verb *cleave (to)*, meaning "stick/adhere (to)," as in *His tongue cleaved to the roof of his mouth.*

COMPLEMENTS

cleave *split/separate, usually along natural lines*

	The best firewood cleaves with hardly any effort.
	We found some slate that clove perfectly.

cleave *move smoothly, as if splitting the air/water*

	The birds clove and swooped through the air.
	The jet clove through the clouds.

cleave ____ *cut something apart by a splitting blow*

OBJECT	We cleft **the logs** into quarters.
	They then clove **the cedar** for roof shakes.
PASSIVE	The rock had been cleft for paving stones.

cleave ____ *penetrate/pierce, as if by splitting*

OBJECT	A bolt of lightning cleft **the night sky**.
	The boat clove **the waves**, spraying water to both sides.
PASSIVE	The shield was cloven by the Viking in a single stroke.

☑ IRREGULAR

cling | clings · clung · have clung

cling 35

PRESENT

I cling	we cling
you cling	you cling
he/she/it clings	they cling

- *We cling to our beliefs as long as we can.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am clinging	we are clinging
you are clinging	you are clinging
he/she/it is clinging	they are clinging

- *He is clinging to life by a thread.*

PAST

I clung	we clung
you clung	you clung
he/she/it clung	they clung

- *He clung to them throughout the ordeal.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was clinging	we were clinging
you were clinging	you were clinging
he/she/it was clinging	they were clinging

- *The passengers were clinging to the handrails.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has clung
PAST PERFECT	… had clung

FUTURE	… will cling
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be clinging
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have clung

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was clung	they were clung

- *The story was clung to desperately.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *cling,* when not used with an object, is always followed by *together.*

cling *hold on tightly to each other*	The twins clung together under the umbrella. The socks were clinging together when I removed them from the dryer.
cling ____ *adhere, hold on tightly*	
to OBJECT	He clung **to the ledge** until he was rescued. The climbers were clinging **to the rope**. The girl clung **to her father's hand**. The ivy was clinging **to the wall**. The price stickers always cling **to the fruit**. The molecules cling **to each other**. The office was clinging **to outdated software**.
cling ____ *have a strong emotional attachment*	
to OBJECT	Believers cling **to their faith**. Elvis's fans always clung **to him** no matter what.
to WH-CLAUSE	They will cling **to whoever their prophet is**. They clung **to whatever their leader told them**.

36

clothe

clothe | clothes · clothed · have clothed
clothe | clothes · clad · have clad

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I clothe	we clothe
you clothe	you clothe
he/she/it clothes	they clothe

- *He clothes his models in the latest fashions.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am clothing	we are clothing
you are clothing	you are clothing
he/she/it is clothing	they are clothing

- *She is clothing her bridesmaids in pastel colors.*

PAST

I clad	we clad
you clad	you clad
he/she/it clad	they clad

- *She clad herself in a dressing gown.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was clothing	we were clothing
you were clothing	you were clothing
he/she/it was clothing	they were clothing

- *He was clothing the actors in medieval costumes.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has clad
PAST PERFECT	… had clad

FUTURE	… will clothe
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be clothing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have clad

PAST PASSIVE

I was clad	we were clad
you were clad	you were clad
he/she/it was clad	they were clad

- *The king was clad in beautiful ermine robes.*

COMPLEMENTS

clothe ____ *put clothes on, dress*	
OBJECT	They always clothe **themselves** in the oddest fashions.
PASSIVE	He was clad in dirty shorts and a rumpled T-shirt.
clothe ____ *cover, as with clothing*	
OBJECT	The decorators clad **the tables** with linen fabric.
clothe ____ *provide clothing for*	He could hardly feed and clothe **his own family**.
OBJECT	That store clothes **half of the people in the whole town**.
PASSIVE	The flood victims were clad by relief agencies.

come

PRESENT

I come	we come
you come	you come
he/she/it comes	they come

- *He comes here on weekends.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am coming	we are coming
you are coming	you are coming
he/she/it is coming	they are coming

- *I'm coming as fast as I can.*

PAST

I came	we came
you came	you came
he/she/it came	they came

- *They came to see you.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was coming	we were coming
you were coming	you were coming
he/she/it was coming	they were coming

- *The ships were just coming into view.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has come
PAST PERFECT	… had come

FUTURE	… will come
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be coming
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have come

PAST PASSIVE

Come is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

come *move toward the speaker*	Please come here. Don't come too close—I have a cold.
come *fare, get along*	How's Harry coming in his new job?
come ____ *arrive/appear in space/time*	
ADVERB OF TIME	The deadline has come **all too soon**.
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM (+ ADVERB OF TIME)	The car came **over the hill** at 60 miles an hour. The class came **to the chapter on ancient Rome**. They come **home *once a week***.
come ____ *extend, reach*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	Her skirt comes **below her knees**. His property comes **as far as this fence**.
come ____ *originate*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	Doris comes **from a large family**. Most malware comes **from China**.
come ____ *be available*	
ADVERB OF MANNER	The new model comes **in three colors**. The DVD player comes **ready to use**. The computer comes **without a keyboard**.
come ____ *reach a state/conclusion*	
to OBJECT	The two sides came **to an understanding**. Barney came **to his senses** at last.
INFINITIVE	I came **to like him** after all. We came **to enjoy walking to school**. The time has come **to say good-bye**.
come ____ *arrive in a particular condition*	
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	He came **ready to work**. They came **eager for the show to begin**.
come ____ *become*	
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	The steering wheel came **loose** and he lost control of the car. Sandy's dream of becoming an astronaut came **true**.

37 come

come | comes · came · have come ☑ IRREGULAR

PHRASAL VERBS

come away/forward/in/out/up/etc. *approach in a specified direction*	Marcy came up from the basement. Melinda came in through the back door.
come about *happen*	How did the agreement come about?
come across/upon ____ *find/meet by accident*	She came across her high school yearbook. We came upon a deer in the clearing.
come along *appear*	We'll ask the first person who comes along.
come along *make progress*	The project is coming along fairly well.
come (along) with ____ *accompany*	Jayne may come along with us to the grocery. These instructions came with the new monitor.
come around *recover*	I was knocked unconscious, but I soon came around.
come around (to ____**)** *agree finally (to)*	He eventually came around to my point of view.
come at ____ *attack*	Rudy came at the burglar with his fists flying.
come back *be popular again*	Smaller cars are coming back.
come between ____ *cause trouble between*	We can't let a silly quarrel come between us.
come down *decrease* [OF PRICES]	Gasoline prices are coming down.
come down *be demolished*	The historic inn will come down for urban renewal.
come down *be handed down by tradition*	Western philosophy came down to us from the Greeks.
come down to ____ *be a matter of*	The debate comes down to money.
come down with ____ *become sick with*	A third of my classmates came down with a cold.
come from ____ *be caused by*	John's problems come from his lack of control.
come in *become available, arrive*	The election results are coming in now. The new encyclopedias will come in tomorrow.
come in ____ *finish a contest*	Carrie came in second in the 100-meter dash.
come of ____ *result from*	Nothing came of my complaint to the board.
come off ____ *become separated from*	A fender came off my bike today.
come off *happen*	The dinner party came off just as we expected.
come on *be illuminated*	The streetlights come on at dusk.
come on *begin to be broadcast*	When does *Countdown* come on tonight?
come out *be made public*	The facts came out at the afternoon meeting.
come out *declare oneself*	Senator Blather came out in favor of wind farms.
come out *turn out, end up, do*	Everything came out fine in the end.
come (out) to ____ *amount to*	Your repair bill comes out to $227.46. All of Ellery's efforts came to nothing.
come out with ____ *introduce [a product]*	The company came out with three new workstations.
come through ____ *survive*	Randall came through the ordeal of boot camp.
come to *regain consciousness*	Gertie came to before the medics arrived.
come to ____ *be a matter of*	When it comes to idioms, we are the experts.
come up *increase* [OF PRICES]	Stock prices have come up over the past week.
come up *appear for consideration*	The issue comes up every few months. Did the issue of slavery come up in history class?
come up against ____ *encounter, confront*	The activists came up against a lot of opposition.
come up for ____ *be in line for*	These antique lamps don't come up for sale very often. The position comes up for election every four years.
come up with ____ *find, produce*	She came up with two quarters for the parking meter. Has the detective come up with a motive yet?

top 30 verb

☑ IRREGULAR

cost | costs · cost · have cost

cost 38

PRESENT

I cost	we cost
you cost	you cost
he/she/it costs	they cost

- *The scarves cost more than 50 dollars.*

PAST

I cost	we cost
you cost	you cost
he/she/it cost	they cost

- *That mistake cost us dearly.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has cost
PAST PERFECT	… had cost

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am costing	we are costing
you are costing	you are costing
he/she/it is costing	they are costing

- *The delay is costing us a fortune.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was costing	we were costing
you were costing	you were costing
he/she/it was costing	they were costing

- *You were costing the company a lot of money.*

FUTURE	… will cost
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be costing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have cost

PAST PASSIVE

Cost is rarely used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

cost *be expensive*	Going to college really costs. Hybrid cars cost, but so does gasoline. Lack of training costs dearly. Cheap mattresses cost in the long run.
cost ___ *have a price of*	
OBJECT	The new house cost **half a million dollars**. My books cost **$200 a semester**.
cost ___ *cause the loss of*	
OBJECT	Starvation costs **25,000 lives** a day. It cost **my job**. It cost **his self-respect**.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	The battle cost ***the army*** **a lot of good soldiers**. The accident cost ***me*** **a fortune**. The mistake cost ***us*** **the contract**.
cost ___ *cause suffering/loss to*	
OBJECT	My hesitation certainly cost **me**.

PHRASAL VERBS

cost _SEP_ **out** *estimate, set a value on/for*	I will cost the entire project out. We were costing out the Johnston contract.

EXPRESSIONS

cost a fortune *be very expensive*	It would cost a fortune to move that printing press.
cost a pretty penny *be very expensive*	I'll bet that car cost a pretty penny.
cost an arm and a leg *be very expensive*	This watch cost me an arm and a leg.

39 creep

creep | creeps · crept · have crept ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I creep	we creep
you creep	you creep
he/she/it creeps	they creep

- *Time creeps by when you're bored.*

PAST

I crept	we crept
you crept	you crept
he/she/it crept	they crept

- *Old age crept up on us.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has crept
PAST PERFECT	… had crept

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am creeping	we are creeping
you are creeping	you are creeping
he/she/it is creeping	they are creeping

- *The fog is creeping into the hollow.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was creeping	we were creeping
you were creeping	you were creeping
he/she/it was creeping	they were creeping

- *The soldiers were creeping past the guards.*

FUTURE	… will creep
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be creeping
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have crept

PAST PASSIVE

Creep is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

creep *move along close to the ground*	Bob crept away from his pursuers. The lion crept toward the antelope.
creep *move cautiously/stealthily*	We crept down the stairs. I crept into the kids' room, trying not to wake them.
creep *grow along a surface*	Weeds were creeping into the flower beds.
creep *shiver from fear/dread*	The scream made my flesh creep.
creep ____ *advance slowly*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	Daylight crept **in through the windows**. Water from the clogged drain crept **across the floor**.
creep ____ *appear gradually*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	A sense of urgency crept **through the crowd**.

PHRASAL VERBS

creep by *pass slowly*	The years crept by when Lawrence was in prison.
creep in/into ____ *enter inconspicuously*	A note of resentment crept into his voice. Negativity crept into his later writing.
creep up on ____ *advance slowly and imperceptibly toward*	The cat crept up on the mouse.

EXPRESSIONS

creep out of the woodwork *appear after being gone for a long time*	Well, look who's crept out of the woodwork—it's Percy!

cut | cuts · cut · have cut

cut

PRESENT

I cut	we cut
you cut	you cut
he/she/it cuts	they cut

- *He cuts the lawn every weekend.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am cutting	we are cutting
you are cutting	you are cutting
he/she/it is cutting	they are cutting

- *I'm cutting class today.*

PAST

I cut	we cut
you cut	you cut
he/she/it cut	they cut

- *I cut myself shaving.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was cutting	we were cutting
you were cutting	you were cutting
he/she/it was cutting	they were cutting

- *We were cutting the staff by ten percent.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has cut
PAST PERFECT	… had cut

FUTURE	… will cut
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be cutting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have cut

PAST PASSIVE

I was cut	we were cut
you were cut	you were cut
he/she/it was cut	they were cut

- *Our budget was cut substantially.*

COMPLEMENTS

cut *hurt someone's feelings*	His criticisms really cut. He really knows how to cut.
cut ____ *make an incision, separate*	
ADVERB OF MANNER	A sharp knife cuts **safely**. His ax cuts **like a razor**.
cut ____ *undergo an incision/separation*	
ADVERB OF MANNER	The dried wood cuts **easily**.
cut ____ *penetrate with a sharp object*	
OBJECT	Jill cut **her finger** on a knife.
cut ____ *sever, separate into pieces (slice, mow, pare, trim, dig, etc.)*	
OBJECT	I cut **the cake**. My husband cut **the grass** this morning. I need to cut **my fingernails**. The new barber cut **my hair**. The backhoe cut **a trench** for a new waterline.
cut ____ *make by chopping/hacking*	
OBJECT	We cut **a path** through the dense woods.
cut ____ *reduce the size/number of*	
OBJECT	They will cut **my hours** after Christmas. We have to cut **the budget**. The authors had to cut **the manuscript** by a third.
cut ____ *remove [from a group]*	
OBJECT	The coach cut **three players** from the squad. The director cut **five scenes** from the movie.
cut ____ *change direction suddenly*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	Cut **to the right** just before the railroad tracks.
cut ____ *go directly, take a shortcut*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	We can cut **across Mr. Applegate's property**. The highway cuts **through a national park**. The seniors cut **to the front of the line**.
cut ____ *dilute*	
OBJECT	That bartender cuts **whiskey** with tap water.

top 30 verb

40 cut

cut | cuts · cut · have cut

☑ IRREGULAR

cut _____ *break, stop*	
OBJECT	The storm cut **the telephone lines**. Please cut **all the noise**. He cut **the engine**.
cut _____ *skip without permission*	
OBJECT	We cut **class** to watch the inauguration.
cut _____ *record*	
OBJECT	She is cutting **a new album**.
cut _____ *fill out and issue*	
OBJECT	The secretary cut **a check for $50.23**.
cut _____ *handle* [USUALLY NEGATIVE]	
OBJECT	I can't cut **the 45-minute drive to work** anymore.
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	Tom can't cut **being a police officer** anymore.

PHRASAL VERBS

cut across _____ *transcend*	The president's economic proposal cuts across party lines.
cut back *reverse direction*	The receiver cut back to the middle of the field.
cut SEP **back** *shorten*	We must cut back the shrubs after they flower.
cut back (on) _____ *reduce*	The department cut back spending in April.
cut SEP **down** *chop/saw and cause to fall*	Our neighbors cut two elm trees down.
cut down (on) _____ *reduce*	The doctor told Ed to cut down on caffeine.
cut in *begin operating*	We pulled the crank six times before the motor cut in.
cut in *interrupt*	The reporter cut in before I finished my first sentence.
cut in *move into a line out of turn*	The motorist cut in just before his lane ended.
cut SEP **in** *mix in*	Cut in the shortening with a pastry blender.
cut in on _____ *interrupt*	The actress cut in on the director.
cut SEP **off** *interrupt*	The protester cut me off in mid-sentence.
cut SEP **off** *move suddenly in front of, block*	A driver cut me off at the curve. The policeman cut the robbers off at the bridge.
cut SEP **off** *shorten*	Gerry cut off the knotty end of the board.
cut SEP **off** *shut off*	When his car overheated, the driver cut off the engine.
cut off/out *stop suddenly, shut off*	The water heater cuts off at 120 degrees.
cut out *go away quickly*	This party is boring; let's cut out.
cut SEP **out** *eliminate*	I will cut out afternoon snacks for two weeks.
cut up *joke, clown, behave wildly*	Ken always cuts up when the teacher leaves the room.
cut SEP **up** *separate into sections with a sharp object*	Cut the mushrooms up, and then we'll add them to the sauce.

EXPRESSIONS

cut _____ **down to size** *humiliate*	His opponent cut him down to size.
cut _____ **some slack** *make an allowance for*	He wasn't feeling well, so the boss cut him some slack.
cut _____ **to the quick** *badly hurt the feelings of*	Your nasty remarks cut me to the quick.
cut [one's] teeth on _____ *learn/do as a beginner*	The journalist cut her teeth on writing obituaries.
cut SEP **short** *stop suddenly*	The president cut the press conference short.

deal | deals · dealt · have dealt **deal**

PRESENT

I deal	we deal
you deal	you deal
he/she/it deals	they deal

- *He deals in antique furniture.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am dealing	we are dealing
you are dealing	you are dealing
he/she/it is dealing	they are dealing

- *I'm dealing this hand.*

PAST

I dealt	we dealt
you dealt	you dealt
he/she/it dealt	they dealt

- *I dealt myself a bad hand.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was dealing	we were dealing
you were dealing	you were dealing
he/she/it was dealing	they were dealing

- *They were dealing illegal drugs.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has dealt
PAST PERFECT	… had dealt

FUTURE	… will deal
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be dealing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have dealt

PAST PASSIVE

I was dealt	we were dealt
you were dealt	you were dealt
he/she/it was dealt	they were dealt

- *Justice was dealt to everyone.*

COMPLEMENTS

deal *distribute cards in a game*	Who's dealing? I will deal as soon as everyone sits down.
deal *engage in bargaining/negotiation*	The union will never deal. He only deals if the price is right.
deal _____ *distribute [cards]*	
OBJECT	I will deal **five cards** to each player. He deals **the cards** until none are left.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	You dealt ***me*** **an awful hand**. He dealt ***her*** **three aces**.
to PARAPHRASE	You dealt **a bad hand *to me***. He dealt **three aces *to her***.
deal _____ *sell [illegal drugs]*	
OBJECT	He deals **marijuana** to teenagers. The gang deals **stolen prescription drugs**.
deal _____ *deliver, administer*	
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	Spike dealt ***the intruder*** **a blow to the head**. Fate dealt ***him*** **a terrible blow**. Life has dealt ***them*** **some bad times**.
to PARAPHRASE	Fate dealt **a terrible blow *to him***. Life has dealt **some bad times *to them***.

PHRASAL VERBS

deal in _____ *buy and sell*	The real estate broker deals only in commercial properties.
deal ―SEP― **in** *allow to take part*	Maurice has free time; let's deal him in.
deal ―SEP― **out** *distribute piece by piece*	Agnes dealt the cards out three at a time.
deal with _____ *behave toward, treat in a particular way*	The coach dealt fairly with his players.
deal with _____ *handle, take care of*	The board agreed to deal with financial matters later.
deal with _____ *have to do with, concern*	The article deals with early French-American customs.
deal with _____ *try to accept/reconcile*	Meg dealt with three deaths in her family last year.

42 dig

dig | digs · dug · have dug ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I dig	we dig
you dig	you dig
he/she/it digs	they dig

- *He really digs in at suppertime.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am digging	we are digging
you are digging	you are digging
he/she/it is digging	they are digging

- *I'm digging as fast as I can.*

PAST

I dug	we dug
you dug	you dug
he/she/it dug	they dug

- *They dug up a lot of information.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was digging	we were digging
you were digging	you were digging
he/she/it was digging	they were digging

- *The kids were digging in the backyard.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has dug
PAST PERFECT	… had dug

FUTURE	… will dig
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be digging
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have dug

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was dug	they were dug

- *The foundation was dug last week.*

COMPLEMENTS

dig *turn up / remove soil by hand, tool, or machine*	I have been digging all afternoon. We will dig tomorrow.
dig *search [for something]*	Nicole dug in her suitcase for the shampoo. I am digging everywhere I can think of. The accountants are really digging.
dig _____ *create [a hole] by removing soil*	
OBJECT	The road crew was digging **a trench**. The dog dug **a hole** in our front lawn. They have dug **the foundation**.
dig _____ *remove from the soil*	
OBJECT	The farmer dug **potatoes** in the field. Miners can dig **coal** from the slopes.
dig _____ *notice, understand, like* [INFORMAL]	
OBJECT	Did you dig **that crazy shirt**? I couldn't dig **all that technical talk**. Kids don't dig **classical music**.
WH-CLAUSE	Did you dig **what he was saying**? I can't dig **what the teacher is saying**. Did you dig **who was in that movie**?

PHRASAL VERBS

dig at _____ *criticize*	He's always digging at me for my conservatism.
dig down/deep *be generous*	We all must dig down to feed the poor.
dig in *start to work intensively*	There were 23 court cases to study, and the lawyers dug in.
dig in *start eating*	Supper's on the table. Dig in!
dig into _____ *investigate thoroughly*	The detectives dug into the suspect's background.
dig into _____ *start eating*	The workmen dug into the stew and biscuits.
dig __SEP__ **out** *uncover by digging*	Tim dug his car out with a snow shovel.
dig __SEP__ **out** *obtain by searching*	Let's dig out the family photo albums.
dig __SEP__ **up** *uncover by digging*	We dug 23 arrowheads up in one afternoon.
dig __SEP__ **up** *obtain by searching*	Reporters dug up a lot of information about the mayor.

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

dive | dives · dived · have dived
dive | dives · dove · have dived

dive

PRESENT

I dive	we dive
you dive	you dive
he/she/it dives	they dive

- *The market dives after bad economic news.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am diving	we are diving
you are diving	you are diving
he/she/it is diving	they are diving

- *I'm diving into the bond market.*

PAST

I dove	we dove
you dove	you dove
he/she/it dove	they dove

- *I never dove from the highest board.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was diving	we were diving
you were diving	you were diving
he/she/it was diving	they were diving

- *We were diving for lobsters.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has dived
PAST PERFECT	… had dived

FUTURE	… will dive
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be diving
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have dived

PAST PASSIVE

Dive is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

dive *plunge into water headfirst*	She dove into the pool. I dove from the 10-meter board. I dove with my eyes closed. Michael has been diving since he was four years old.
dive *go/swim underwater*	The submarine dove to 75 meters. The ducks were diving in the pond. The whale dove as soon as the boat approached. We were diving in wet suits.
dive *fall sharply and quickly*	The plane dove under the clouds. The temperature dives at nightfall. The market dove on the news.
dive ____ *plunge quickly, lunge* *for* OBJECT	The soldiers dove **for cover**. The shortstop dove **for the ball**.

PHRASAL VERBS

dive in *start doing something energetically*	We put the craft materials on the table and told the kids to dive right in.
dive into ____ *start doing energetically*	Becky dove into the new design project. New arrivals are diving right into the discussion.

do _____ *travel [a distance] / visit [a place] / spend [time]*	
OBJECT	Hikers can do **20 miles a day**. His car can do **100 miles an hour**. We will do **several museums** this afternoon. I did **three years** in the Navy.
do _____ *be right/proper* [USUALLY NEGATIVE]	
INFINITIVE	It won't do **to be late for the meeting**. It will never do **to come in over budget**.
do _____ *cause, have as an effect*	
OBJECT	The wind did **a lot of damage**.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	A nap will do ***you*** **some good**.
do _____ *create, produce, play a role in*	
OBJECT	The author is doing **a biography of Abraham Lincoln**. The artist is doing **portraits of famous people**. The actress did **three movies** last year.

PHRASAL VERBS

do away with _____ *eliminate*	I did away with my landline phone at home. The company did away with employee bonuses.
do away with _____ *murder*	He did away with three wives before he was caught.
do SEP **in** *make very tired*	Driving for three hours does me in.
do SEP **in** *cause the death/failure of, kill*	Pneumonia finally did him in. The mob tried to do in the entire police force. The politician was done in by greed.
do [someone] out of _____ *prevent [someone] from getting*	The con artist did investors out of their life's savings.
do SEP **over** *repeat*	I misspelled a word and had to do the sign over.
do SEP **over** *decorate differently*	The couple did over the living room last summer.
do SEP **up** *wrap [a package]*	Would you do up this gift for me?
do SEP **up** *fasten [clothing]*	She did up her son's coat.
do SEP **up** *decorate, dress up*	We will do up the office for the boss's birthday. Anya really did herself up for the party.
do without _____ *get along without*	We can't do without your help.

EXPRESSIONS

could do with _____ *want, need*	I could do with some ice cream right now.
do a job/number on _____ *damage, harm*	The kids really did a job on our furniture. The committee did a number on his budget proposal.
do _____ **dirty** *treat poorly*	The team did him dirty by trading him to the Lions.
do _____ **for a living** *earn money on which to live by doing*	"What does she do for a living?" "She does web design."
do the trick *be exactly what is needed*	Lowering interest rates does the trick every time. This pocketknife will do the trick.
do well to _____ *be lucky in doing*	Nancy does well to give a speech without crying. Gordon did well to escape the fire uninjured.
have to do with _____ *concern, be about*	What does my zip code have to do with my car insurance? The problem has something to do with the cable service.

☑ IRREGULAR

do | does · did · have done

do

44

PRESENT

I do	we do
you do	you do
he/she/it does	they do

• *He always does his best.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am doing	we are doing
you are doing	you are doing
he/she/it is doing	they are doing

• *I'm doing what I can.*

PAST

I did	we did
you did	you did
he/she/it did	they did

• *I did everything you asked.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was doing	we were doing
you were doing	you were doing
he/she/it was doing	they were doing

• *We were doing just fine until we had an accident.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has done
PAST PERFECT	… had done

FUTURE	… will do
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be doing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have done

PAST PASSIVE

I was done	we were done
you were done	you were done
he/she/it was done	they were done

• *The job was done in record time.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Do* is also used with the base form of a verb

- to ask questions in the simple present and past tenses

  Do you want some candy?

- to form negative statements with *not* in the simple present and past tenses

  I do not think we will win.

- to emphasize what one is saying

  I do wish Mary would attend.

do *manage, get along*	"How is your son doing in school?" "He's doing well, thanks."
do *be adequate/right*	A couple of hours will do. Ten dollars will do. Your blue suit will do for the party.
do _____ *perform, finish working on*	
OBJECT	I did **some errands** after lunch. I was just doing **my job**. We always do **the crossword puzzle** together. The kids should do **their homework** soon.
WH-CLAUSE	I did **what needed to be done**. We will do **whatever job we are assigned**.
do _____ *perform [for someone's benefit]*	
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	Do ***me*** **a favor**. He did ***them*** **a good deed**. They did ***the company*** **a real service**.
for PARAPHRASE	Do **a favor** ***for me***. He did **a good deed** ***for them***. They did **a real service** ***for the company***.
do _____ *prepare, clean, decorate, arrange*	
OBJECT	We did **the table** before the guests came. I did **a nice roast** for dinner. I did **the dishes** afterwards. My husband does **the laundry**. We did **the living room** in pale blue. She does **my hair**.

top 30 verb

45 draw

draw | draws · drew · have drawn ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I draw	we draw
you draw	you draw
he/she/it draws	they draw

- *He draws a grim picture of the economy.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am drawing	we are drawing
you are drawing	you are drawing
he/she/it is drawing	they are drawing

- *The play is drawing well.*

PAST

I drew	we drew
you drew	you drew
he/she/it drew	they drew

- *Her presentation drew a large audience.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was drawing	we were drawing
you were drawing	you were drawing
he/she/it was drawing	they were drawing

- *We were drawing up a new will.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has drawn
PAST PERFECT	… had drawn

FUTURE	… will draw
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be drawing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have drawn

PAST PASSIVE

I was drawn	we were drawn
you were drawn	you were drawn
he/she/it was drawn	they were drawn

- *The sketches were drawn by Leonardo da Vinci.*

COMPLEMENTS

draw *create a picture*	She draws beautifully. Art students must draw every day.
draw *attract an audience*	Costume dramas rarely draw well.
draw *show a handgun*	Policemen are trained to draw and aim, but hold their fire.
draw ___ *create [a picture]*	
OBJECT	The children drew **pictures of their families**. The architects have drawn **a floor plan**.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	The children drew ***them*** **pictures**. The economist drew ***us*** **a scary picture of the future**.
for PARAPHRASE	The children drew **pictures** ***for them***. The economists **drew a scary picture of the future** ***for us***.
draw ___ *create a picture of*	
OBJECT	The artist drew **the Taj Mahal**. I'd like to draw **Queen Victoria without her crown**.
draw ___ *drag, pull, extract*	
OBJECT	The teacher drew **the children** away from the window. I drew **the curtains** across the windows. The archers drew **their bows**. The nurse needs to draw **a blood sample**. He drew **the winning number**.
draw ___ *move steadily*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The robber drew **closer to his victim**. My business day was drawing **to a close**.
draw ___ *attract*	
OBJECT	Water always draws **mosquitoes**. He usually draws **a big crowd**.
draw ___ *form*	
OBJECT	Voters must draw **their own conclusions** from the debate.

PHRASAL VERBS

draw _SEP_ **up** *write, formulate*	A young attorney drew up my will. Our family drew up an evacuation plan.

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

dream | dreams · dreamed · have dreamed
dream | dreams · dreamt · have dreamt

dream 46

PRESENT

I dream	we dream
you dream	you dream
he/she/it dreams	they dream

- *He dreams of getting rich.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am dreaming	we are dreaming
you are dreaming	you are dreaming
he/she/it is dreaming	they are dreaming

- *If I'm dreaming, don't wake me up.*

PAST

I dreamt	we dreamt
you dreamt	you dreamt
he/she/it dreamt	they dreamt

- *I dreamt that I ate a giant marshmallow.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was dreaming	we were dreaming
you were dreaming	you were dreaming
he/she/it was dreaming	they were dreaming

- *I was dreaming that I was late to work.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has dreamt
PAST PERFECT	… had dreamt

FUTURE	… will dream
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be dreaming
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have dreamt

PAST PASSIVE

I was dreamt	we were dreamt
you were dreamt	you were dreamt
he/she/it was dreamt	they were dreamt

- *It was never even dreamt of 50 years ago.*

COMPLEMENTS

dream *have thoughts and images while one sleeps*	I think I was dreaming. We can all dream, can't we? I must have been dreaming.
dream *pass time idly*	Sorry, I was just dreaming.
dream ____ *have [thoughts and images] while one sleeps*	
about OBJECT	Last night I dreamt **about my grandmother**. Do rabbits dream **about carrots**? She dreamt **about Cassie and Pookie**. I never dream **about my childhood**.
THAT-CLAUSE	I dreamt **that I had gotten lost in the woods**. Cinderella dreamt **that she had met her prince**.
about PRESENT PARTICIPLE	I dreamt **about losing my job**. He dreamt **about their moving back home**.
dream ____ *imagine, wish*	
of OBJECT	We all dream **of a better future for our children**. Everyone dreams **of world peace**.
THAT-CLAUSE	Everyone dreams **that they will be rich and famous**. People always dream **that tomorrow will be better than today**.
of PRESENT PARTICIPLE	Cubs fans could only dream **of winning the World Series**. Actors always dream **of getting the big break**.
dream ____ *consider possible/proper* [ALWAYS NEGATIVE]	
of PRESENT PARTICIPLE	We wouldn't dream **of going to the party without you**. He would never dream **of eating meat**.

PHRASAL VERBS

dream SEP **away** *spend [time] idly*	Let's sit on the riverbank and dream away the day.
dream SEP **up** *invent, concoct*	Our board dreamt up a plan to avoid bankruptcy. My brother and I dream up all kinds of wacky ideas.

47 drink

drink | drinks · drank · have drunk ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I drink	we drink
you drink	you drink
he/she/it drinks	they drink

- *John drinks white wine.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am drinking	we are drinking
you are drinking	you are drinking
he/she/it is drinking	they are drinking

- *I'm only drinking green tea these days.*

PAST

I drank	we drank
you drank	you drank
he/she/it drank	they drank

- *I drank two cups of coffee.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was drinking	we were drinking
you were drinking	you were drinking
he/she/it was drinking	they were drinking

- *They were drinking in the hotel bar.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has drunk
PAST PERFECT	… had drunk

FUTURE	… will drink
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be drinking
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have drunk

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was drunk	they were drunk

- *Orange juice was always drunk at breakfast.*

COMPLEMENTS

drink *take a liquid in one's mouth and swallow it*	Is the patient able to drink? He is drinking without any trouble now. Don't try to drink too soon.
drink *consume alcoholic beverages*	Jack is drinking again. They never drink. We drink only on special occasions.
drink ____ *consume [a liquid]*	
OBJECT	I like to drink **sparkling water**. He only drinks **imported beer**. Their kids never drink **soda pop**.
WH-CLAUSE	We will drink **what is already open**. I'll drink **whatever is on tap**.
drink ____ *cause [oneself] to be in a particular state as a result of excessive alcohol consumption*	
REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + *into* OBJECT	He drank **himself *into oblivion***. The college students drank **themselves *into a stupor***.
REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + *to* OBJECT	One of my neighbors drank **himself *to death***.
REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	He drank **himself *stupid***. They drank **themselves *blind***. I drank **myself *senseless***.

PHRASAL VERBS

drink _SEP_ **away** *consume alcohol to relieve oneself of*	The lonely widower drank his troubles away.
drink _SEP_ **down** *swallow [a liquid] completely*	Mother told me to drink the syrup down in one gulp.
drink _SEP_ **in** *absorb with the mind/senses*	He drinks in knowledge like a sponge. The tourists drank in the mountain scenery. We drank in the sights and sounds of New Year's Eve.
drink to ____ *make a toast to*	Let's drink to the couple's health and happiness. I'll drink to that!
Drink up! *Start/keep drinking!*	There's more wine in the cellar. Drink up!
drink _SEP_ **up** *consume all of [a liquid]*	My teenage sons drank up all the milk.

☑ IRREGULAR **drive | drives · drove · have driven**

drive

48

PRESENT

I drive	we drive
you drive	you drive
he/she/it drives	they drive

- *He drives a blue Toyota.*

PAST

I drove	we drove
you drove	you drove
he/she/it drove	they drove

- *I drove the kids to school.*

PRESENT PERFECT . . . have | has driven
PAST PERFECT . . . had driven

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am driving	we are driving
you are driving	you are driving
he/she/it is driving	they are driving

- *I'm driving home this afternoon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was driving	we were driving
you were driving	you were driving
he/she/it was driving	they were driving

- *We were driving to Seattle.*

FUTURE . . . will drive
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE . . . will be driving
FUTURE PERFECT . . . will have driven

PAST PASSIVE

I was driven	we were driven
you were driven	you were driven
he/she/it was driven	they were driven

- *The decision was driven by the need to be more cost-effective.*

COMPLEMENTS

drive *operate a vehicle*	Who can drive? My grandmother never drives at night.
drive *move with great force/speed*	The rain was driving across the road. The army drove forward relentlessly.
drive ____ *operate [a vehicle (equipped with)]*	
OBJECT	He is driving **an old pickup truck**. We drove **a rented convertible** in Hawaii. Who can drive **a stick shift**?
drive ____ *cause to go [to a specific place]*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	I drove **the car *into the garage***. Can you drive **me *home***? The waves drove **the boat *onto the rocks***. The farmers were driving **their sheep *to pasture***.
drive ____ *press forcefully*	
OBJECT	The company drives **its sales force** hard. The jockeys drove **their horses** as hard as they could.
drive ____ *force into a specific condition/behavior*	
OBJECT + *to* OBJECT	Reading Dr. King's speeches drove **him *to a life of service***.
OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	You are driving **me *crazy***. His behavior drove **his parents *mad***.
OBJECT + INFINITIVE	The bad reviews drove **the author *to entirely revise the play***. Famine drove **the peasants *to revolt***.
drive ____ *shape, propel*	
OBJECT	National interest always drives **foreign policy**. Opposition to slavery drove **public opinion in the North**. Oil prices now drive **the value of the dollar**.

PHRASAL VERBS

drive SEP **down** *cause to decrease*	Foreclosures are driving down home prices.
drive SEP **up** *cause to increase*	Limiting oil production will drive prices up.
drive ____ **on** *cause to move forward to success*	It is the memory of my mother that drives me on.

49 eat

eat | eats · ate · have eaten ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I eat	we eat
you eat	you eat
he/she/it eats	they eat

- *He only eats cereal for breakfast.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am eating	we are eating
you are eating	you are eating
he/she/it is eating	they are eating

- *We are eating out tonight.*

PAST

I ate	we ate
you ate	you ate
he/she/it ate	they ate

- *I ate breakfast early this morning.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was eating	we were eating
you were eating	you were eating
he/she/it was eating	they were eating

- *I was eating lunch when I got the news.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has eaten
PAST PERFECT	… had eaten

FUTURE	… will eat
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be eating
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have eaten

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was eaten	they were eaten

- *Only a third of the cat food was eaten.*

COMPLEMENTS

eat *take food in one's mouth and swallow it*	The children usually eat around noon. I eat too much when I get stressed. I'll call you back, we're eating now. Let's eat!
eat ____ *consume [food]*	
OBJECT	The kids love to eat **pizza**. My wife will never eat **liver**.
WH-CLAUSE	Can we eat **what was left over from last night**? The dog eats **whatever the children drop on the floor**.
eat ____ *bear the expense of*	
OBJECT	We will have to eat **the cost overrun**. They are just going to eat **the overhead costs**. You will have to eat **the rest of the contract**.
eat ____ *make as if by eating*	
OBJECT	The paint remover ate **a hole** in my glove.

PHRASAL VERBS

eat (at) ____ *bother, annoy*	His criticisms have been eating at me all day.
eat at / away at / into ____ *wear away, corrode*	Rust was eating away at the exterior of my car. Acid was eating into the countertop.
eat in *have a meal at home*	The weather is awful. Let's eat in.
eat out *have a meal in a restaurant*	I don't feel like cooking. Let's eat out.
Eat up! *Start/keep eating!*	Dinner is getting cold. Eat up!
eat SEP **up** *bite all over*	Mosquitoes are eating the campers up.
eat SEP **up** *use up, consume, waste*	The boss's lavish lifestyle ate up the company's profit.
eat SEP **up** *enjoy greatly*	The singer told awful jokes, but the audience ate it up.
eat SEP **up** *believe [something]*	My aunt ate up everything she read in the tabloids.

EXPRESSIONS

eat ____ **out of house and home** *consume all the food in [someone's] home*	Our three sons are eating us out of house and home.

☑ IRREGULAR

fall | falls · fell · have fallen

fall 50

PRESENT

I fall	we fall
you fall	you fall
he/she/it falls	they fall

- *Night falls early this time of year.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am falling	we are falling
you are falling	you are falling
he/she/it is falling	they are falling

- *Look out! It's falling.*

PAST

I fell	we fell
you fell	you fell
he/she/it fell	they fell

- *The market fell like a rock yesterday.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was falling	we were falling
you were falling	you were falling
he/she/it was falling	they were falling

- *The snow was falling heavily.*

PRESENT PERFECT	... have | has fallen
PAST PERFECT	... had fallen

FUTURE	... will fall
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	... will be falling
FUTURE PERFECT	... will have fallen

PAST PASSIVE

Fall is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

fall *drop downward*	I fell on the ice. He fell to his knees. The valley fell in front of him.
fall *become lower/weaker/less*	The temperature has fallen into the 20s. His voice always falls at the end of his sentences. Their expectations are falling. The wind usually falls at sunset. The market fell today. Our productivity fell last quarter.
fall *be wounded/killed in battle*	Fifty thousand soldiers fell at the Battle of Gettysburg.
fall _____ *pass [into a specific state/condition], become*	
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	Dad falls **asleep** in front of the news. Ursula fell **sick** after eating potato salad at the picnic. The crowd fell **silent** as she approached the podium.

PHRASAL VERBS

fall away/back/down/in/off/out/etc. *fall in a specified direction*	The castle walls are falling down. My hat fell off when I stood up.
fall apart/through *fail, come to nothing*	Our party plans fell through at the last minute.
fall back *retreat*	The regiment fell back to the new fort.
fall back on _____ *turn back to for help*	The Dickersons fell back on their savings.
fall behind (on _____**)** *lag behind*	On the third lap, the American swimmers fell behind. The doctor fell further behind as the day went on. My roommates and I are falling behind on the rent.
fall for _____ *become strongly attracted to*	Patrick fell for Tammy on their first date.
fall for _____ *be deceived by*	We won't fall for the politician's lies anymore.
fall in with _____ *associate with*	Our son fell in with computer nerds at school.
fall off *decline, diminish*	Attendance at our church has fallen off dramatically.
fall on _____ *happen on*	Christmas falls on a Saturday this year. The meeting falls on my day off.
fall out (with _____**)** *quarrel (with [someone])*	Nick fell out with the project director.
fall under _____ *be influenced/controlled by*	The princess fell under the power of the wicked queen.
fall (up)on/to _____ *become the duty of*	Organization of the meeting fell to the secretary.

51 feed

feed | feeds · fed · have fed ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I feed	we feed
you feed	you feed
he/she/it feeds	they feed

- *He feeds the birds every day.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am feeding	we are feeding
you are feeding	you are feeding
he/she/it is feeding	they are feeding

- *I'm feeding the documents into the shredder.*

PAST

I fed	we fed
you fed	you fed
he/she/it fed	they fed

- *I fed the cat two hours ago.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was feeding	we were feeding
you were feeding	you were feeding
he/she/it was feeding	they were feeding

- *They were feeding us misinformation.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has fed
PAST PERFECT	… had fed

FUTURE	… will feed
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be feeding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have fed

PAST PASSIVE

I was fed	we were fed
you were fed	you were fed
he/she/it was fed	they were fed

- *The children were fed earlier.*

COMPLEMENTS

feed *eat*	How often do they feed? The birds were feeding on our plum tree. Lions only feed when they are hungry.
feed *supply [food/materials]*	The zookeepers feed every morning and evening. Don't feed too fast, or the shredder will jam.
feed _____ *give food to, supply materials to*	
OBJECT	We feed **the homeless** at a downtown shelter. You should only feed **the goldfish** once a week. Keep feeding **the boiler** until we have enough steam.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	Feed ***me*** **some more rope**.
to PARAPHRASE	Feed **some more rope *to me***.
feed _____ *send [an electric current, a signal]*	
OBJECT	The sensor feeds **a signal** to the computer. The station feeds **the broadcast** to a satellite.
PASSIVE	The current is fed to the circuit breaker.
feed _____ *foster, support*	
OBJECT	Resentment feeds **hostility**. Rumors are feeding **the confusion**. Music feeds **the soul**.
PASSIVE	The mind can only be fed by education.
feed _____ *supply*	
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	We fed ***the chickens*** **corn**. The company fed ***the press*** **misleading information**. The director fed ***the actress*** **her lines**. This cable feeds ***the factory*** **its power**.
to PARAPHRASE	We fed **corn *to the chickens***. The company fed **misleading information *to the press***. The director fed **the actress's lines *to her***. This cable feeds **power *to the factory***.
feed _____ *move/push [into/through an opening]*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The nurse fed **the breathing tube *into the patient's windpipe***. The tourist fed **quarters *into the vending machine***.

☑ IRREGULAR

feel | feels · felt · have felt

feel 52

PRESENT

I feel	we feel
you feel	you feel
he/she/it feels	they feel

- *My arm feels just fine, thanks.*

PAST

I felt	we felt
you felt	you felt
he/she/it felt	they felt

- *They felt sorry for her.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has felt
PAST PERFECT … had felt

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am feeling	we are feeling
you are feeling	you are feeling
he/she/it is feeling	they are feeling

- *I'm feeling tired.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was feeling	we were feeling
you were feeling	you were feeling
he/she/it was feeling	they were feeling

- *We were feeling our way through the cave.*

FUTURE … will feel
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be feeling
FUTURE PERFECT … will have felt

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was felt	they were felt

- *The loss was felt by everyone.*

COMPLEMENTS

feel ____ *perceive oneself to be*

PREDICATE NOUN
Sally felt **a complete fool**.
I felt **a victim of circumstances**.

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE
John felt **foolish**.
We all felt **sad at the news**.
The situation felt **all wrong**.
Are you feeling **better** today?
I don't feel **well**.

PAST PARTICIPLE
The team felt **defeated** after losing their best pitcher.
We felt **overwhelmed** by the experience.

feel ____ *have an emotion/opinion*

ADVERB OF MANNER
He felt **badly** about what had happened.
Robert always feels **strongly** about political issues.

feel ____ *seem*

it + *feel* + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE + INFINITIVE
It felt **good *to go to class again***.
It feels **weird *to be in the presence of so many geeks***.

feel ____ *seem to the sense of touch*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE
The water feels **too cold**.

feel ____ *search by touch*

ADVERB OF PLACE
I felt **everywhere**.
He felt **in his pockets** for the key.
She felt **under the cushions**.

feel ____ *seek by touching*

OBJECT
The burglars felt **their way** along the corridor.

feel ____ *touch in order to examine*

OBJECT
I felt **his swollen ankle**.
The detective felt **the suspect** for a gun.
She carefully felt **the dog's injured leg**.

feel ____ *be aware of, sense*

OBJECT
They felt **the impact of the explosion**.
I felt **a rock in my shoe**.
Ron felt **a pang of jealousy**.

top 30 verb

feel _____ *be aware of, sense* [continued]

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE	They felt the **boat *getting under way***. I felt **myself *getting sick***. The speaker felt **the audience *losing interest***.

feel _____ *believe, think*

OBJECT + INFINITIVE	The coach felt **the team *to be ready for the game***. John felt **them *to be completely mistaken***. I always felt **myself *to be a good sport***.
THAT-CLAUSE	I feel **that I am right about it**. We feel **that we should go ahead as planned**. Sam felt **that he deserved a bigger raise**.

feel _____ *experience, have grief/pity because of*

OBJECT	We felt **Grandma's death** keenly.

PHRASAL VERBS

feel (about/around) for _____ *seek by touching*	I felt for the light switch. She was feeling around in the dark for her glasses.
feel for _____ *sympathize with*	I really feel for the team that lost.
feel SEP **out** *find out the views of*	Senator Blather felt out the voters about the tax increase.

EXPRESSIONS

feel at home *feel comfortable/accepted*	My friends feel at home here.
feel _____ **in [one's] bones** *sense by intuition*	I feel it in my bones that he's going to hit a home run tonight.
feel like _____ *desire, want*	I feel like pizza for dinner. I feel like drinking lemonade.
feel like _____ *seem to be*	This feels like real wood. It feels like January, even though it's only September.
feel like / as if / as though _____ *believe/sense that*	I feel like it's going to rain. We feel as if we're never going to pay off the mortgage.
feel like a million (bucks/dollars) *feel physically and mentally strong*	An early-morning walk through the woods makes me feel like a million bucks.
feel like a new person *feel refreshed/renewed*	After a shower and shave, the hobo felt like a new person.
feel like death warmed over *feel very sick*	The flu made him feel like death warmed over.
feel like [oneself] *perceive oneself to be in a normal state*	After having a cold for a week, I feel like myself again.
feel no pain *be drunk*	After drinking a six pack, Meredith is feeling no pain.
feel [one's] oats *be lively*	The salesman danced a jig around the office; he's feeling his oats since he landed that big contract.
feel out of place *feel awkward*	Gordon feels out of place at wine-and-cheese parties.
feel the pinch *have too little money*	My parents want to vacation in Spain, but they're feeling the pinch.
feel up to _____ *perceive oneself to be capable of*	Do you feel up to going shopping?

top 30 verb

PRESENT

I fight	we fight
you fight	you fight
he/she/it fights	they fight

- *He always fights for the underdog.*

PAST

I fought	we fought
you fought	you fought
he/she/it fought	they fought

- *The senator fought against corruption.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has fought
PAST PERFECT	… had fought

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am fighting	we are fighting
you are fighting	you are fighting
he/she/it is fighting	they are fighting

- *I'm fighting a nasty cold.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was fighting	we were fighting
you were fighting	you were fighting
he/she/it was fighting	they were fighting

- *They were fighting a rearguard action in the hills.*

FUTURE	… will fight
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be fighting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have fought

PAST PASSIVE

I was fought	we were fought
you were fought	you were fought
he/she/it was fought	they were fought

- *The battle of Gettysburg was fought in July 1863.*

COMPLEMENTS

fight *engage in combat/argument*	It is useless to fight with City Hall. The damaged ship will never fight again. It is noble to fight for one's country. The media was fighting for access to the court transcripts. What married couple doesn't fight occasionally? She was fighting against other committee members.
fight ____ *contend/struggle against, oppose*	
OBJECT	The Spanish fought **Napoleon's armies** savagely. I am fighting **a terrible sore throat**. The company is fighting **the judge's ruling**. We will fight **the takeover bid**. The neighborhood fought **the new development**. The opposition is fighting **Senator Blather's amendment**.
WH-CLAUSE	We have fought **what we considered to be wrong**. They will fight **whomever we nominate**. We will fight **whatever forces are arrayed against us**.
fight ____ *wage, be engaged in*	
OBJECT	We are fighting **a war on poverty**. He is fighting **the good fight**. They fought **a running battle** for a week.

PHRASAL VERBS

fight back *retaliate*	She may lose the argument, but she'll find a way to fight back.
fight SEP **back** *resist, struggle against*	Ruth fought back her tears after hearing about his death.
fight SEP **off** *repel an attack by*	I'm trying to fight off a bout of the flu. The platoon fought off a much larger force.
fight on *continue to fight*	Although surrounded, Colonel Travis's men fought on.
fight SEP **out** *settle by struggle*	The rival gangs fought it out with guns. Beth and Seth fought out their differences in court.
fight over ____ *struggle to obtain*	The classmates fought over who would get the award. Jayne and Eve fought over Humphrey.

54 find

find | finds · found · have found ☑ IRREGULAR

find _____ *declare as a legal verdict* OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	The jury found **the defendant *guilty***.
find _____ *obtain* OBJECT	You must find **time to study**. Charlotte and Kathy found **an apartment** on Walnut Street. Our product found **lots of buyers** among senior citizens. Grandma finds **comfort** in her photo albums.

PHRASAL VERBS

find for _____ *decide in favor of*	The jury found for the defendant.
find out *learn the truth*	Your mother will find out. I'll search the Internet and find out for you.
find ___SEP___ **out** *learn*	I found out what makes Jason tick. What did you find out about the boss's husband?

EXPRESSIONS

find a way around _____ *discover a way to avoid [something]*	The computer engineer found a way around the error message. My attorney found a way around the regulation.
find fault (with _____**)** *discover something wrong with [someone/something]*	My landlord finds fault with everyone. The moderator found fault with both candidates' arguments.
find favor with _____ *win the approval of*	Vergil found favor with the emperor Augustus.
find it in [one's] heart / in [oneself] _____ *have the courage/compassion*	We found it in our hearts to forgive them. The voters found it in themselves to elect a black president.
find neither hide nor hair of _____ *fail to detect any sign of*	The detectives found neither hide nor hair of the suspect.
find [one's] bearings *determine where one is*	After wandering in the woods for four hours, we found our bearings.
find [one's] tongue/voice *determine what to say*	The candidate finally found her voice, but it was too late.
find [one's] way *discover the route*	We eventually found our way to the log cabin.
find [oneself] *become aware of what one wants to be/do in life*	Melanie found herself in her sophomore year of college.
find out the hard way *discover something by (usually unpleasant) experience*	Senator Blather found out the hard way how much voters oppose tax hikes.
find the/[one's] mark *discover a way to win / defeat someone*	She found her mark midway through the second period and scored four goals after that.

PRESENT

I find	we find
you find	you find
he/she/it finds	they find

- *He finds his new job interesting.*

PAST

I found	we found
you found	you found
he/she/it found	they found

- *We found a really great babysitter.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has found
PAST PERFECT	… had found

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am finding	we are finding
you are finding	you are finding
he/she/it is finding	they are finding

- *I'm finding it hard to concentrate.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was finding	we were finding
you were finding	you were finding
he/she/it was finding	they were finding

- *They were finding more support than expected.*

FUTURE	… will find
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be finding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have found

PAST PASSIVE

I was found	we were found
you were found	you were found
he/she/it was found	they were found

- *The murderer was never found.*

COMPLEMENTS

find _____ *discover, come upon by chance*

OBJECT	I finally found **my missing wallet**. The hikers found **a path back to camp**. Astronomers found **a new moon orbiting Jupiter**.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	I found ***Jane*** **a great birthday present**. We found ***the kittens*** **a nice home**.
for PARAPHRASE	I found **a great birthday present** ***for Jane***. We found **a nice home** ***for the kittens***.
OBJECT + *INFINITIVE*	I found **the new job** ***to have its limitations***. Larry found **the restaurant** ***to get a lot of repeat customers***.
OBJECT + *PRESENT PARTICIPLE*	I found **myself** ***holding my breath***. They found **the kids** ***playing in the backyard***. Harriet found **Jim** ***working in the garage***.
OBJECT + *PAST PARTICIPLE*	I found **the dog** ***covered with mud***. We found **our car** ***damaged beyond repair***. I found **myself** ***drained by the experience***.
THAT-CLAUSE	I found **that there was no simple solution**. We all find **that we get tired more easily as we get older**. Amy found **that she liked living in Montana**. I find **that the new job has its limitations.**
WH-CLAUSE	We found **what we had been looking for**. I never found **why the computer failed**. The police will find **whoever did this**.

find _____ *consider*

OBJECT + (*to be*) PREDICATE NOUN	I found **him** ***(to be) a poor listener***. The teacher found **the class** ***(to be) good students***. They found **the car** ***(to be) a piece of junk***.
OBJECT + (*to be*) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	I found **myself** ***(to be) upset with him***. We found **him** ***(to be) amused at it***. They found **the situation** ***(to be) very satisfactory***.

top 30 verb

55 fit

fit | fits · fit · have fit
fit | fits · fitted · have fitted

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

PRESENT

I fit	we fit
you fit	you fit
he/she/it fits	they fit

- *The theory fits all the facts.*

PAST

I fit	we fit
you fit	you fit
he/she/it fit	they fit

- *We fit eight people at the table before.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has fit
PAST PERFECT	. . . had fit

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am fitting	we are fitting
you are fitting	you are fitting
he/she/it is fitting	they are fitting

- *I am fitting them in as best I can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was fitting	we were fitting
you were fitting	you were fitting
he/she/it was fitting	they were fitting

- *We were fitting in very nicely, I thought.*

FUTURE	. . . will fit
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be fitting
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have fit

PAST PASSIVE

I was fit	we were fit
you were fit	you were fit
he/she/it was fit	they were fit

- *Millions of transistors were fit onto a single chip.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: For the following six meanings, *fit* is not used in the progressive tenses.

fit *be the right size and shape*	The sweater fits perfectly. Will the new rug fit in the living room?
fit *be accommodated*	How many students can fit in a phone booth? These bags won't fit in the dumpster.
fit _____ *be the right size and shape for*	
OBJECT	The new suit fits **me** perfectly. The old frame won't fit **the new picture**.
fit _____ *be appropriate/suitable for*	
OBJECT	Your hat fits **the rest of your outfit**. The class fits **my schedule** pretty well. The punishment must fit **the crime**.
fit _____ *accommodate*	
OBJECT	Can we fit **24 children** in the classroom?
fit _____ *manage to insert*	
OBJECT	We can fit **four skeins of yarn** in this box.

NOTE: For the following four meanings, *fit* may be used in the progressive tenses.

fit _____ *adjust to the right size and shape*	
OBJECT	You need to fit **the rug** to the room.
fit _____ *measure for the right size*	
OBJECT	The tailor is fitting **Dad** for a new suit.
PASSIVE	Dad was fitted for a new suit.
fit _____ *make appropriate/suitable*	
OBJECT + *to* OBJECT	Does a songwriter fit **words *to music*** or **music *to words***?
fit _____ *supply, equip*	
OBJECT + *with* OBJECT	The shipyard will fit **the boat *with everything it needs***.

PHRASAL VERBS

fit in *be in accord/harmony*	Our new neighbors fit in just fine.
fit SEP **in** *provide a place for*	The hostess will fit the two unexpected guests in.

PRESENT

I flee	we flee
you flee	you flee
he/she/it flees	they flee

- *Everyone flees from imminent danger.*

PAST

I fled	we fled
you fled	you fled
he/she/it fled	they fled

- *I never fled from a fight.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has fled
PAST PERFECT … had fled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am fleeing	we are fleeing
you are fleeing	you are fleeing
he/she/it is fleeing	they are fleeing

- *They are fleeing as fast as they can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was fleeing	we were fleeing
you were fleeing	you were fleeing
he/she/it was fleeing	they were fleeing

- *The animals were fleeing from the forest fire.*

FUTURE … will flee
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be fleeing
FUTURE PERFECT … will have fled

PAST PASSIVE

Flee is rarely used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

flee *move/run away from danger/ unpleasantness, escape*	The fish fled when my shadow fell across the pond. The deer fled when they heard the shot. The birds fled before the coming storm. The refugees fled into the woods. The soldiers were fleeing back into the trenches. The reporters had fled to the press bar. Civilians were fleeing from the rampaging soldiers.
flee *move away swiftly, vanish*	The moon fled behind the clouds. The ghostly shape fled from view. Our shadows fled before us.
flee ____ *run away from* (*from*) OBJECT	The survivors quickly fled **(from) the scene of the explosion**. The reporters fled **(from) the room** when the senator began his lengthy speech. The entire city fled **(from) the rapidly rising floodwaters**. The animals fled **(from) the burning barn**. I fled **(from) the noisy, overcrowded arena**.

57 fling

fling | flings · flung · have flung ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I fling	we fling
you fling	you fling
he/she/it flings	they fling

- *She flings her hair back if she's angry.*

PAST

I flung	we flung
you flung	you flung
he/she/it flung	they flung

- *He flung his clothes all over room.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has flung
PAST PERFECT … had flung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am flinging	we are flinging
you are flinging	you are flinging
he/she/it is flinging	they are flinging

- *The dog is flinging dirt everywhere.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was flinging	we were flinging
you were flinging	you were flinging
he/she/it was flinging	they were flinging

- *The kids were flinging toys out the car window.*

FUTURE … will fling
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be flinging
FUTURE PERFECT … will have flung

PAST PASSIVE

I was flung	we were flung
you were flung	you were flung
he/she/it was flung	they were flung

- *The protesters were flung into police vans.*

COMPLEMENTS

fling ____ *move suddenly, scatter*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Roberta flung **out of the room**.
The leaves were flinging **all over the lawn**.

fling ____ *throw recklessly*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The kids had flung **their books** ***everywhere***.
I flung **myself** ***onto the sofa***.
The rioters had flung **the furniture** ***in every direction***.
The wind was flinging **my raked leaves** ***all over the lawn***.

fling ____ *cast, throw*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

He flung **a rope** ***over a tree limb***.
The cadets will fling **their caps** ***into the air***.
I flung **a blanket** ***over the shivering children***.
The fisherman is flinging **his net** ***into the pond***.
The guards flung **him** ***into an empty cell***.
The reporter flung **his shoe** ***at the president***.

fling ____ *devote oneself entirely to*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + *into* OBJECT

I flung **myself** ***into jazz***.
We flung **ourselves** ***into the social scene***.
Freshmen tend to fling **themselves** ***into too many activities***.
Frank flung **himself** ***into his work***.

PHRASAL VERBS

fling ~~SEP~~ **around/aside/away/down/in/off/out/up/**etc. *throw in a specified direction*

The burglar flung away his loot as soon as he saw the cop.
Bill opened the car door and flung his jacket in.

EXPRESSIONS

fling caution to the wind *take a serious risk*

Harry flung caution to the wind and jumped into the lake with all his clothes on.

fling [one's] head back *tilt one's head back suddenly*

Don flung his head back and laughed.

PRESENT

I fly	we fly
you fly	you fly
he/she/it flies	they fly

- *Cathy flies to New York once a month.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am flying	we are flying
you are flying	you are flying
he/she/it is flying	they are flying

- *I am flying back tonight.*

PAST

I flew	we flew
you flew	you flew
he/she/it flew	they flew

- *I never flew in such a small plane before.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was flying	we were flying
you were flying	you were flying
he/she/it was flying	they were flying

- *The kids were flying kites in the park.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has flown
PAST PERFECT	… had flown

FUTURE	… will fly
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be flying
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have flown

PAST PASSIVE

I was flown	we were flown
you were flown	you were flown
he/she/it was flown	they were flown

- *The flags were flown at half-mast.*

COMPLEMENTS

fly *move through the air*	My hat flew into the air. The birds flew around us, screeching and squawking. The plane was flying at 36,000 feet.
fly *travel by aircraft*	Amelia Earhart was the first woman to fly solo across the Atlantic. When are you flying to Paris? Whoever thought that we could fly to the moon?
fly *wave/float in the air*	Flags were flying in the breeze. His shirttail was flying in the wind as he ran down the hill.
fly *move/spread/go/pass quickly*	The wood chips flew as the chain saw bit into the log. The door flew open, and in walked Grandmother. Rumors were flying everywhere. I'm already late for the meeting; I have to fly. My, how time flies.
fly *win acceptance*	His proposal will never fly with the voters. "Do you think the plan will fly?" "I think it will fly."
fly ____ *pilot / travel in [an aircraft]*	
OBJECT	My grandfather flew **fighter planes** in World War II. I flew **United** to Chicago.
fly ____ *transport by aircraft*	
OBJECT	We flew **the children** to England, where they would be safe. They flew **the engine** back to the manufacturer.
PASSIVE	The replacement parts were flown from Sweden.
fly ____ *cause to move through the air*	
OBJECT	Didn't you fly **paper airplanes** when you were a kid? We always fly **the flag** on Memorial Day.

PHRASAL VERBS

fly away/back/down/in/out/over/up/etc. *fly in a specified direction*	The robin flew down from its nest. The planes flew over in formation.
fly by *go quickly past*	Did you see the wild geese fly by, heading home again? January really flew by.

59 forbear

forbear | forbears · forbore · have forborne ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I forbear	we forbear
you forbear	you forbear
he/she/it forbears	they forbear

- *He forbears from talking about his wealth.*

PAST

I forbore	we forbore
you forbore	you forbore
he/she/it forbore	they forbore

- *I forbore my usual coffee after dinner.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has forborne
PAST PERFECT	… had forborne

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forbearing	we are forbearing
you are forbearing	you are forbearing
he/she/it is forbearing	they are forbearing

- *We are forbearing from taking any action.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forbearing	we were forbearing
you were forbearing	you were forbearing
he/she/it was forbearing	they were forbearing

- *The critics were forbearing in their comments.*

FUTURE	… will forbear
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be forbearing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have forborne

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was forborne	they were forborne

- *A scathing reply was forborne with difficulty.*

COMPLEMENTS

forbear *be patient/tolerant*	We know there have been some problems, but please forbear. To forbear in the face of provocation is admirable. Where someone else might seek revenge, he forbears.
forbear ____ *refrain (from), resist*	
OBJECT	I will forbear **my uncle's company** when he is in town. She forbears **mention of his name** around her ex-boyfriend.
PASSIVE	An exercise of presidential power couldn't be forborne any longer.
(*from*) PRESENT PARTICIPLE	We are forbearing **(from) saying anything about the accident**. I will forbear (**from**) **replying to your rude comments**. Only a saint would forbear (**from**) **getting angry**.

☑ IRREGULAR

forbid | forbids · forbade · have forbidden

forbid

60

PRESENT

I forbid	we forbid
you forbid	you forbid
he/she/it forbids	they forbid

- *The law forbids the sale of handguns.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forbidding	we are forbidding
you are forbidding	you are forbidding
he/she/it is forbidding	they are forbidding

- *Sally's mother is forbidding any more parties.*

PAST

I forbade	we forbade
you forbade	you forbade
he/she/it forbade	they forbade

- *The police forbade parking on the street.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forbidding	we were forbidding
you were forbidding	you were forbidding
he/she/it was forbidding	they were forbidding

- *The company was forbidding smoking in the area.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has forbidden
PAST PERFECT	… had forbidden

FUTURE	… will forbid
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be forbidding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have forbidden

PAST PASSIVE

I was forbidden	we were forbidden
you were forbidden	you were forbidden
he/she/it was forbidden	they were forbidden

- *The lawyers were forbidden to talk to the press.*

COMPLEMENTS

forbid ____ *prohibit, not allow*

OBJECT	The law forbids **the sale of alcohol to minors**. Most religions forbid **marriage between close relatives**. My parents forbid **books at the dinner table**. Lack of time forbids **further explanation**.
PASSIVE	Campfires are forbidden in this area.
OBJECT + *INFINITIVE*	I forbid **you *to talk to me like that***. Some churches forbid **priests *to marry***. Jane's mother forbade **her *to go to the party***.
PASSIVE	I was forbidden ***to take pictures there***.
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	The new law forbids **smoking in public places**. The rules of soccer forbid **tripping an opponent**. My mother forbids **watching TV before finishing homework**. Space forbids **covering all the issues**.
PASSIVE	Using a cell phone in class is strictly forbidden.

EXPRESSIONS

God/Heaven forbid! *I hope it will not happen.*	God forbid that Mark should fall asleep and have an accident. "Your ex-boyfriend is coming to the party." "Heaven forbid!"

61 forecast

forecast | forecasts · forecast · have forecast ☑ IRREGULAR
forecast | forecasts · forecasted · have forecasted ☑ REGULAR

PRESENT

I forecast	we forecast
you forecast	you forecast
he/she/it forecasts	they forecast

- *His newsletter forecasts economic disaster.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forecasting	we are forecasting
you are forecasting	you are forecasting
he/she/it is forecasting	they are forecasting

- *The weather bureau is forecasting more snow.*

PAST

I forecast	we forecast
you forecast	you forecast
he/she/it forecast	they forecast

- *The weatherman forecast rain for today.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forecasting	we were forecasting
you were forecasting	you were forecasting
he/she/it was forecasting	they were forecasting

- *Economists were forecasting a strong market.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has forecast
PAST PERFECT	… had forecast

FUTURE	… will forecast
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be forecasting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have forecast

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was forecast	they were forecast

- *Earnings were forecast to rise.*

COMPLEMENTS

forecast *make a prediction*	Who can forecast in such a turbulent economy? He is reluctant to forecast until more data is available.
forecast ____ *predict*	
OBJECT	The weather service is forecasting **heavy rain** for tonight. Most economists have forecast **a good fourth quarter**.
PASSIVE	The sudden breakup of their marriage had not been forecast by anybody.
THAT-CLAUSE	Computer models have forecast **that the earth will get warmer**. I forecast **that it will take months to sell the house**.
PASSIVE	That the dollar would weaken has long been forecast.
WH-CLAUSE	No one can truly forecast **what will happen next**. They are trying to forecast **how much rain we will get**.
forecast ____ *foreshadow*	
OBJECT	High voter turnout forecasts **trouble for the incumbents**. Scary music in a movie always forecasts **danger**.
PASSIVE	Some people think that earthquakes can be forecast by the behavior of animals.

forget | forgets · forgot · forgotten

forget

PRESENT

I forget	we forget
you forget	you forget
he/she/it forgets	they forget

- *He always forgets to put the milk away.*

PAST

I forgot	we forgot
you forgot	you forgot
he/she/it forgot	they forgot

- *I forgot his first name.*

PRESENT PERFECT	... have | has forgotten
PAST PERFECT	... had forgotten

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forgetting	we are forgetting
you are forgetting	you are forgetting
he/she/it is forgetting	they are forgetting

- *I'm always forgetting something.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forgetting	we were forgetting
you were forgetting	you were forgetting
he/she/it was forgetting	they were forgetting

- *I was forgetting what I was about to do.*

FUTURE	... will forget
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	... will be forgetting
FUTURE PERFECT	... will have forgotten

PAST PASSIVE

I was forgotten	we were forgotten
you were forgotten	you were forgotten
he/she/it was forgotten	they were forgotten

- *The incident certainly wasn't forgotten.*

COMPLEMENTS

forget *fail to remember*	Don't forget! He never forgets. They won't forget, will they?
forget ____ *fail to remember*	
OBJECT	I forgot **his e-mail address**. You must never forget **your password**. Don't forget **the flowers**.
INFINITIVE	I forgot **to water the plants**. Don't forget **to run the dishwasher**. The kids always forget **to hang their coats up**.
THAT-CLAUSE	We forgot **that we were having dinner with the Smiths tonight**. I forgot **that the meeting had been canceled**. She forgot **that she had to pick up the cat at the vet**.
WH-CLAUSE	I forgot **what I was about to say**. He forgot **where he had put his car keys**. I will never forget **where we stayed in Florida**.
WH-INFINITIVE	The author forgot **where to put the quote marks**. I forget **how to change my password**.
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	I can't forget **taking her to the hospital**. He won't soon forget **doing that**. Did he forget **running into a tree**?
forget ____ *leave behind*	
OBJECT	Darn it. I forgot **my briefcase**. Don't forget **your hat** when you leave. People always forget **things** when they get off the plane.
forget ____ *neglect, disregard*	
(*about*) OBJECT	Don't forget **(about) your friends** when you send holiday cards. Sam forgot **(about) the ice cream in the trunk**.

EXPRESSIONS

Forget it! *Disregard it.*	"Do I have to clean the bathroom?" "Forget it! I'll do it myself."

63 forgive

forgive | forgives · forgave · have forgiven ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I forgive	we forgive
you forgive	you forgive
he/she/it forgives	they forgive

- *He forgives anything his daughter does.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forgiving	we are forgiving
you are forgiving	you are forgiving
he/she/it is forgiving	they are forgiving

- *I'm forgiving part of their debt.*

PAST

I forgave	we forgave
you forgave	you forgave
he/she/it forgave	they forgave

- *I forgave him for forgetting my birthday.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forgiving	we were forgiving
you were forgiving	you were forgiving
he/she/it was forgiving	they were forgiving

- *They were always forgiving my mistakes.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has forgiven
PAST PERFECT	… had forgiven

FUTURE	… will forgive
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be forgiving
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have forgiven

PAST PASSIVE

I was forgiven	we were forgiven
you were forgiven	you were forgiven
he/she/it was forgiven	they were forgiven

- *You were forgiven for making such a mistake.*

COMPLEMENTS

forgive *pardon*	He forgives readily. She can forgive without being superior about it. I can't forgive so easily.
forgive ____ *excuse, pardon, stop feeling angry/punitive about/toward*	
OBJECT	I tried to forgive **his insensitive behavior**. Some people never forgive **even the smallest slight**.
PASSIVE	My sister was always forgiven, no matter what she had done.
OBJECT + *for* OBJECT	I forgave **Don** ***for his thoughtless remark***. Please forgive **me** ***for this interruption***.
OBJECT + *for* PRESENT PARTICIPLE	Will she forgive **him** ***for forgetting their anniversary***? Can you forgive **me** ***for being so late***? I'll never forgive **her** ***for eating the last piece of cake***.
forgive ____ *cancel payment of [a debt]*	
OBJECT	Many parents forgive **their children's loans**. The bank may temporarily forgive **interest payments on house loans**. Some schools will forgive **a percentage of student loans**.

EXPRESSIONS

Forgive and forget. [PROVERB] *Pardon an offense, and forget it ever happened.*	You could punish him forever— or just forgive and forget.

PRESENT

I forgo	we forgo
you forgo	you forgo
he/she/it forgoes	they forgo

- *He forgoes dessert when he is dieting.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forgoing	we are forgoing
you are forgoing	you are forgoing
he/she/it is forgoing	they are forgoing

- *We are forgoing our usual trip to Hawaii.*

PAST

I forwent	we forwent
you forwent	you forwent
he/she/it forwent	they forwent

- *No college student ever forwent free food.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forgoing	we were forgoing
you were forgoing	you were forgoing
he/she/it was forgoing	they were forgoing

- *The emcee was forgoing lengthy introductions.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has forgone
PAST PERFECT	. . . had forgone

FUTURE	. . . will forgo
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be forgoing
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have forgone

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was forgone	they were forgone

- *The registration fee was forgone to boost attendance.*

NOTES: (1) *Forgo* may also be spelled *forego*: *forego | foregoes · forewent · have foregone.*
(2) An archaic verb **forego** (always spelled with *e* and meaning "to go before") survives only as a present participle / adjective (as in *The* ***foregoing*** *statement was a paid political announcement*) and as a past participle (in the phrase ***foregone*** *conclusion*).

COMPLEMENTS

forgo ____ *decline the use/enjoyment of, do without*

OBJECT	We must forgo **the reception** tonight. The doctor told him that he must forgo **all fatty foods.** I forwent **the nasty response that popped into my mind.** The accused has forgone **his right to a jury trial.**
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	We must forgo **meeting you for dinner.** I couldn't forgo **seeing how the movie turned out.** We are trying to get the kids to forgo **watching so much TV.**

65 forsake

forsake | forsakes · forsook · have forsaken ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I forsake	we forsake
you forsake	you forsake
he/she/it forsakes	they forsake

- *The movie forsakes any semblance of plot.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forsaking	we are forsaking
you are forsaking	you are forsaking
he/she/it is forsaking	they are forsaking

- *You are forsaking some of your oldest friends.*

PAST

I forsook	we forsook
you forsook	you forsook
he/she/it forsook	they forsook

- *They forsook allegiance to their country.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forsaking	we were forsaking
you were forsaking	you were forsaking
he/she/it was forsaking	they were forsaking

- *The professors were forsaking their teaching duties.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has forsaken
PAST PERFECT	… had forsaken

FUTURE	… will forsake
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be forsaking
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have forsaken

PAST PASSIVE

I was forsaken	we were forsaken
you were forsaken	you were forsaken
he/she/it was forsaken	they were forsaken

- *This principle was forsaken in their greed for power.*

COMPLEMENTS

forsake ____ *abandon, desert*

OBJECT

The bridegroom forsook **all of his old habits**.
He would never forsake **Susan.**
"And forsaking **all others**, I will be faithful. . . ." [WEDDING VOW]

PASSIVE

All of his promises were forsaken.

forsake ____ *renounce, give up*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

He forsook **smoking and drinking**.
I will forsake **eating meat** for a month.
John will never forsake **riding his motorcycle**.
Because of my knee injury I have forsaken **playing tennis**.

☑ IRREGULAR **freeze | freezes · froze · have frozen**

freeze 66

PRESENT

I freeze	we freeze
you freeze	you freeze
he/she/it freezes	they freeze

- *It usually freezes by mid-October.*

PAST

I froze	we froze
you froze	you froze
he/she/it froze	they froze

- *The bank froze their assets.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has frozen
PAST PERFECT … had frozen

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am freezing	we are freezing
you are freezing	you are freezing
he/she/it is freezing	they are freezing

- *I'm freezing out here.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was freezing	we were freezing
you were freezing	you were freezing
he/she/it was freezing	they were freezing

- *They were freezing raspberries from their garden.*

FUTURE … will freeze
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be freezing
FUTURE PERFECT … will have frozen

PAST PASSIVE

I was frozen	we were frozen
you were frozen	you were frozen
he/she/it was frozen	they were frozen

- *The specimens were frozen at −70°C.*

COMPLEMENTS

freeze *harden into ice, become solid due to cold*	The muddy roads would soon freeze. The rivers all froze that dreadful winter.
freeze *become uncomfortably/ dangerously cold*	Put on a hat or your ears will freeze. Turn up the heat; the room is freezing. The mountain climbers nearly froze to death.
freeze *be at or below 32° Fahrenheit*	The weatherman says it will freeze tonight.
freeze *be preserved in a very cold place*	Girl Scout cookies freeze well.
freeze *become motionless*	The rabbits froze when they heard the hawk. His face froze when he heard us coming.
freeze *be damaged/destroyed by frost*	My petunias all froze last night.
freeze ___ *cause (the contents of) to harden into ice or other solid* OBJECT	We froze **a couple of trays of ice**. The cold snap froze **our garden hoses**.
freeze ___ *chill, make uncomfortably/dangerously cold* OBJECT	The wind was freezing **my fingers**. The driving rain froze **the crowd watching the game**.
freeze ___ *preserve in a very cold place* OBJECT	We can freeze **the leftover vegetable soup**.
freeze ___ *cause to become motionless* OBJECT	The shout froze **everyone** in the store. The peace agreement froze **the armies** in place. The accident froze **traffic** for hours.
freeze ___ *fix at a certain level* OBJECT	The Federal Reserve froze **the interest rate** today.
freeze ___ *prohibit, restrict* OBJECT	The government froze **foreign assets** today.

PHRASAL VERBS

freeze up *stop functioning*	If there is a power surge, my computer completely freezes up. I just freeze up when I have to talk to a group of people.

67 gainsay

gainsay | gainsays · gainsaid · have gainsaid ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I gainsay	we gainsay
you gainsay	you gainsay
he/she/it gainsays	they gainsay

- *He gainsays every proposal to raise taxes.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am gainsaying	we are gainsaying
you are gainsaying	you are gainsaying
he/she/it is gainsaying	they are gainsaying

- *They are not gainsaying your idea.*

PAST

I gainsaid	we gainsaid
you gainsaid	you gainsaid
he/she/it gainsaid	they gainsaid

- *They gainsaid whatever we wanted to do.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was gainsaying	we were gainsaying
you were gainsaying	you were gainsaying
he/she/it was gainsaying	they were gainsaying

- *He wasn't gainsaying the importance of the bill.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has gainsaid
PAST PERFECT	… had gainsaid

FUTURE	… will gainsay
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be gainsaying
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have gainsaid

PAST PASSIVE

I was gainsaid	we were gainsaid
you were gainsaid	you were gainsaid
he/she/it was gainsaid	they were gainsaid

- *The defendant's statement was gainsaid by three witnesses.*

COMPLEMENTS

gainsay ____ *contradict, deny, declare false* [OFTEN NEGATIVE]

OBJECT	I don't gainsay **the impact of the recession**. Nobody is gainsaying **your conclusions**. I will not gainsay **a member of the club**, even if he is wrong.
PASSIVE	The high risk is being gainsaid by informed people.
THAT-CLAUSE	I won't gainsay **that his ideas have some merit**. Even his opponents don't gainsay **that he is trying to do the right thing**. Can you really gainsay **that interest rates have fallen**?
WH-CLAUSE	No one will gainsay **what the president recommends**. I am not gainsaying **how risky the venture is**. Senator Blather will gainsay **whatever you propose**.

☑ IRREGULAR

get | gets · got · have got/gotten **get** 68

PRESENT

I get	we get
you get	you get
he/she/it gets	they get

- *He gets to sleep late on weekends.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am getting	we are getting
you are getting	you are getting
he/she/it is getting	they are getting

- *I'm getting ready now.*

PAST

I got	we got
you got	you got
he/she/it got	they got

- *We got good feedback on the proposal.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was getting	we were getting
you were getting	you were getting
he/she/it was getting	they were getting

- *The plan was getting a lot of criticism.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has got/gotten
PAST PERFECT	… had got/gotten

FUTURE	… will get
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be getting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have got/gotten

PAST PASSIVE

I was got/gotten	we were got/gotten
you were got/gotten	you were got/gotten
he/she/it was got/gotten	they were got/gotten

- *Permission was gotten from the authorities.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Get* is also used as a helping verb to form the passive voice.

get + PAST PARTICIPLE	The burglar got caught by police. I got injured playing football. Bobby got sent to the principal's office. We'll get married in October.

get _____ *receive, obtain*

OBJECT	They got **permission** to leave early. I got **a "B"** in Social Studies last quarter. I got **a traffic ticket** last night. The company got **an award for community service**. I'm getting **a busy signal**. We are getting **a new car**.
PASSIVE	Permission to leave early was gotten.

get _____ *bring*

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	Get ***me*** **a coffee**, will you? I will get ***her*** **a blanket**.
for PARAPHRASE	Get **a coffee** ***for me***, will you? I will get **a blanket** ***for her***.

get _____ *notice, understand*

OBJECT	Did you get **that smirky look on his face**? "Did you get **the joke**?" "Yes, I got **it**."
WH-CLAUSE	I got **what he was trying to say**. Did you get **how he avoided talking to us**?

get _____ *become*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	He really got **angry** about it. I got **sick** on the way back. The dogs got **loose** and headed for the barn.

get _____ *begin, start*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE	Let's get **going**.

get _____ *have the opportunity, receive permission*

INFINITIVE	We will get **to meet them at the reception**. The kids get **to stay up late tonight**.

top 30 verb

get _____ *cause/persuade [to do/be]*	
OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	Get **your hands *clean*** before coming to the table. I got **the computer screen *dirty***.
OBJECT + INFINITIVE	I got **the kids *to clean up their room***. We finally got **the truck *to start***.
OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE	I got **the kids *cleaning up their room***. It got **me *thinking about a new solution***.
OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE	I finally got **my computer *fixed***. We got **our house *painted***.
get _____ *arrive at*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	Our parents got **home** early. We can get **to the office** in 15 minutes.
get _____ *travel*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	Did you get **to Paris** last summer? I got **as far as Chicago**.
get _____ *cause to move*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	Can you get **me *to the airport*** in 30 minutes? I got **the car *out of the garage***.
get _____ *be affected/infected by*	
OBJECT	I got **the hiccups** just before I went on stage. Can you get **the flu** from a flu shot?

NOTE: For the following two meanings, *get* is used only in the present perfect tense.

get _____ *have, possess*	
OBJECT	I've got **a terrible cold**. I've only got **about $20** on me.
get _____ *must*	
INFINITIVE	I've got **to go now**. He has got **to be more careful**.

PHRASAL VERBS

get across/back/down/in/out/up/etc. *move in a specified direction*	The police ordered the crowd to get back. She opened the car door and told him to get in.
get SEP **in/out**/etc. *take/bring in a specified direction*	Did you get the firewood in? He got the cheese and crackers out.
get around/out *become known*	The news got around that they were divorced.
get around _____ *avoid*	I got around the problem by installing new software.
get away with _____ *do without being punished*	The company got away with selling pirated software.
get back to _____ *respond to*	I must get back to Anthony tomorrow.
get behind (on _____**)** *be late making payments (on [something])*	Lots of people have gotten behind on their mortgages.
get by (on/with _____**)** *manage to survive/do (with [something])*	Amos gets by on $750 a month. Our neighbors get by with just one car.
get in/into _____ *be admitted to*	Our son got into nursing school.
get out of _____ *avoid, escape*	Harold got out of doing dishes four nights in a row.
get over _____ *recover from*	Pat got over the flu in three days.
get up *rise*	It's 7 o'clock—time to get up. Please get up and get me a fork.
get _____ **up** *cause to rise*	Mom got us up before dawn.

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

gird | girds · girded · have girded
gird | girds · girt · have girt

gird

PRESENT

I gird	we gird
you gird	you gird
he/she/it girds	they gird

- *She girds the coarse robe with a thick cord.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am girding	we are girding
you are girding	you are girding
he/she/it is girding	they are girding

- *The centurion is girding his cloak before leaving.*

PAST

I girt	we girt
you girt	you girt
he/she/it girt	they girt

- *He girt himself for a fight.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was girding	we were girding
you were girding	you were girding
he/she/it was girding	they were girding

- *The army was girding itself for battle.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has girt
PAST PERFECT	… had girt

FUTURE	… will gird
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be girding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have girt

PAST PASSIVE

I was girt	we were girt
you were girt	you were girt
he/she/it was girt	they were girt

- *The Parthenon was girt by 46 pillars.*

COMPLEMENTS

gird ____ *fasten with a belt/strap/cord*

OBJECT	He girt **his sword** around his waist. We girt **all of the drapes** with blue sashes.
PASSIVE	The garment was girt tightly around her.

gird ____ *surround, encircle*

OBJECT	A deep moat girds **the castle**. Trees have completely girt **the old barn**.
PASSIVE	The city is girt by two beltways.

gird ____ *prepare [oneself/someone] [for action / a challenge]*

OBJECT + *for* OBJECT	The president is girding **the nation** ***for war***. The company girt **the employees** ***for another round of layoffs***.
(REFLEXIVE PRONOUN +) *for* OBJECT	The soldiers girt **(themselves)** ***for the summer campaign***. Toy stores are girding **(themselves)** ***for the Christmas rush***. I girt **(myself)** ***for a confrontation with my boss***.
OBJECT + *for* WH-CLAUSE	The candidate girt **his supporters** ***for what was in store***.
(REFLEXIVE PRONOUN +) *for* WH-CLAUSE	We all girt **(ourselves)** ***for whatever was to come***. Jayne girt **(herself)** ***for what might happen to her job***.
(REFLEXIVE PRONOUN +) INFINITIVE	He girt **(himself)** ***to cross the shaky footbridge***. Senator Blather is girding **(himself)** ***to run for president***. The government is girding **(itself)** ***to take action against counterfeiters***.

EXPRESSIONS

gird (up) [one's] loins *prepare oneself [for action / a challenge]*	State universities are girding their loins for cutbacks in public funding.

70 give

give | gives · gave · have given ☑ IRREGULAR

give _____ *perform*	
OBJECT	The symphony gave **a concert** last night. The band gave **a free concert** to benefit AIDS victims.
give _____ *cause to have*	
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	Loud music gives ***me*** **a headache**.
give _____ *pay*	
OBJECT	Michelle gave **$125** for her outfit.
give _____ *administer*	
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	Freddie gave ***the guard*** **a punch in the mouth**. Darla's mom gave ***her*** **some cough syrup**.
to PARAPHRASE	Darla's mom gave **some cough syrup** ***to her***.
give _____ *cause*	
OBJECT + INFINITIVE	You gave **me** ***to understand that you would support us***. He gave **Jackson** ***to believe that the problem was solved***.
give _____ *sentence to*	
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	The judge gave ***the criminal*** **30 days in jail**.
give _____ *sacrifice*	
OBJECT + *for* OBJECT	"It is sweet and right to give **your life** ***for your country***." [HORACE]
give _____ *devote*	
OBJECT + *to* OBJECT	Marvin gave **his whole life** ***to the cause of justice***.

PHRASAL VERBS

give SEP **away** *betray*	A club member gave away our secret meeting place.
give SEP **back** *return*	You'll have to give the engagement ring back.
give in (to _____**)** *surrender* *(to [someone/something])*	After arguing for two hours, our opponents gave in. Senator Blather gave in to pressure from his colleagues.
give it to _____ *scold, punish*	My boss really gave it to me when I walked in late.
give off _____ *release, emit*	The compost is giving off an earthy smell. The laptop gives off a lot of heat.
give out *come to an end*	The settlers' food gave out after three weeks.
give out *wear out, stop operating*	After 203,000 miles, our 1979 Oldsmobile finally gave out.
give SEP **out** *distribute*	C.J. gave out the president's itinerary.
give SEP **out** *make known*	Don't give out your cell phone number.
give out _____ *produce*	This old furnace gives out a lot of heat.
give SEP **up** *stop, cease*	Mom and Dad gave up smoking at the same time.
give SEP **up** *surrender, yield*	Within an hour, the gunman gave up two hostages. An hour later, he gave himself up.
give up (on _____**)** *admit failure* *(with [something])*	Sheila finally gave up on the crossword puzzle. I tried four times to reach Lisa, then gave up.
give up (on _____**)** *stop trying ([to do])*	Ainsley finally gave up on trying to convince Sam.

top 30 verb

☑ IRREGULAR

give | gives · gave · have given

give 70

PRESENT

I give	we give
you give	you give
he/she/it gives	they give

- *He gives 10% of his income to charity.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am giving	we are giving
you are giving	you are giving
he/she/it is giving	they are giving

- *I'm giving up on it.*

PAST

I gave	we gave
you gave	you gave
he/she/it gave	they gave

- *The company gave me a car to use.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was giving	we were giving
you were giving	you were giving
he/she/it was giving	they were giving

- *We were giving a party that evening.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has given
PAST PERFECT	. . . had given

FUTURE	. . . will give
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be giving
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have given

PAST PASSIVE

I was given	we were given
you were given	you were given
he/she/it was given	they were given

- *All of the employees were given entry cards.*

COMPLEMENTS

give *make a gift/donation*	How much can you give? They always give generously to the homeless shelter.
give *yield, collapse*	For the deadlock to be broken, something has to give. The floor might give if we put that much weight on it.
give ____ *make a gift of, donate*	
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	Terry gave ***Dan* a new computer**. Spanky gave ***Alfalfa* the high sign**.
to PARAPHRASE	Terry gave **a new computer *to Dan***. Spanky gave **the high sign *to Alfalfa***.
give ____ *convey physically*	
OBJECT	She gave **a little smile** at the news.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	Leo gave ***the president* a copy of the report**. She gave ***the boys* a dirty look**.
to PARAPHRASE	Leo gave **a copy of the report *to the president***. She gave **a dirty look *to the boys***.
give ____ *provide*	
OBJECT	Soy-based inks give **good results**.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	Give ***me* a chance to prove myself**. This gives ***gays and lesbians* the right to marry**. The boss gave ***his cousin* a job**.
to PARAPHRASE	The boss gave **a job *to his cousin***.
give ____ *host*	
OBJECT	We will give **the reception** in his honor.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	I gave ***my parents* a surprise party**. We gave ***the seniors* a graduation party**.
for PARAPHRASE	I gave **a surprise party *for my parents***. We gave **a graduation party *for the seniors***.
PASSIVE	A graduation party was given for the seniors. The seniors were given a graduation party.
give ____ *present*	
OBJECT	The senator is giving **a speech** on TV.

top 30 verb

go ___ *engage in [a sport/leisure activity]*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE	We plan to go **skiing** in Idaho. They went **dancing** last night.

go ___ *do [something inadvisable]* [USED ONLY IN THE NEGATIVE; INFORMAL]

PRESENT PARTICIPLE	Don't go **telling everyone about it**. We won't go **running to him with all our problems**.

go ___ *belong*

ADVERB OF PLACE	Coats go **in the closet**, not **on the floor**.

go ___ *be sent*

to OBJECT	The proposal went by e-mail **to all department heads**.

go ___ *be given/sold*

to OBJECT	The prize goes **to the lady in the blue sweater**. The antique lamp goes **to bidder No. 17**.

PHRASAL VERBS

go back/down/in/out/up/etc. *move in a specified direction*	He went back to check the furnace. Ed went out to watch the sunset.
go against ___ *oppose, be contrary to*	She'll go against the incumbent in the fall election. Dispensing birth control pills goes against his conscience.
go along with ___ *agree with*	The president went along with his staff on the issue.
go away *end*	My headache went away before lunch.
go back to ___ *date back to*	The New Year's Eve custom goes back to Druid times.
go back to ___ *resume*	It's four in the morning—go back to sleep.
go by ___ *be known as*	His real name is Meredith, but he goes by Snuffy.
go down *decrease*	The swelling has slowly gone down. The temperature went down 18 degrees in one hour.
go down *stop functioning*	Cable service went down at 9:36 this morning.
go for ___ *be attracted by*	She goes for men with beards.
go for ___ *do [an activity]*	Let's go for a swim.
go for ___ *sell for [an amount]*	How much did the dining room set go for?
go into ___ *begin a career in*	Steve went into electronics, and Stuart went into medicine.
go off *explode, fire*	The gun went off accidentally.
go off *take place, happen*	The surprise party went off as planned.
go on *be switched on*	All of a sudden, the lights went on.
go on *happen*	What went on at yesterday's meeting? What's going on?
go on (___**)** *continue ([doing])*	Forrest Gump just went on running. How long will the concert go on?
go out *be extinguished*	The lights went out one by one.
go through ___ *examine*	She went through her mail during supper.
go through ___ *spend, consume*	We go through $5,000 a month. Our son goes through two gallons of milk a week.
go under *fail*	A third of all small businesses go under.
go up *be built*	A new mall is going up on the edge of town.
go up *increase*	The stock market has gone up 225 points.
go with ___ *harmonize with*	This tie would go well with your blue suit. That paisley shirt doesn't go with anything.
go without ___ *manage without*	The prisoners went without food for nine days.

top 30 verb

☑ IRREGULAR

go | goes · went · have gone

go

71

PRESENT

I go	we go
you go	you go
he/she/it goes	they go

- *He goes to all their home games.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am going	we are going
you are going	you are going
he/she/it is going	they are going

- *I'm going now.*

PAST

I went	we went
you went	you went
he/she/it went	they went

- *We never went to Spain.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was going	we were going
you were going	you were going
he/she/it was going	they were going

- *The party was going very well.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has gone
PAST PERFECT	… had gone

FUTURE	… will go
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be going
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have gone

PAST PASSIVE

Go is never used in the passive voice. In sentences like *He is gone, gone* is a past participle functioning as an adjective.

COMPLEMENTS

go *depart, leave*	Please go. I'm going as soon as I can get packed. The seasons come and go.
go *function*	The engine won't go.
go *become worse, fail*	I think my hearing is going. For most athletes, the knees are the first thing to go.
go *be eliminated/discarded*	I'm afraid that Smith will have to go.
go *be worded/sung*	The song goes like this … la la di la la, la la di da.
go _____ *travel*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	I'm going **to Dallas** tomorrow. We are going **to lunch** now. **Where** do they go on vacation?
go _____ *proceed, move*	
ADVERB OF MANNER	The car in the left lane is going **too slow**. I'm going **as fast as I can**.
go _____ *extend, lead*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	Route 66 originally went **from Chicago to Los Angeles**. Delta goes **everywhere in the Southeast**. That door goes **to the kitchen**.
go _____ *pass*	
ADVERB OF MANNER	The evening went **too quickly**.
go _____ *progress*	
ADVERB OF MANNER	The meeting is going **well**. **How** is it going?
go _____ *be, become, turn out*	
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	The soldiers went **hungry** for days. I think the cheese has gone **bad**. How many banks have gone **bankrupt**? My e-mails to her have all gone **unanswered**.
go _____ *attend*	
to OBJECT	Dad went **to college** on the G.I. Bill. Sidney went **to Harvard Law School**. Our family goes **to church** on Sunday. Let's go **to a movie** tonight.

top 30 verb

72 grind

grind | grinds · ground · have ground ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I grind	we grind
you grind	you grind
he/she/it grinds	they grind

- *Poverty grinds everyone down.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am grinding	we are grinding
you are grinding	you are grinding
he/she/it is grinding	they are grinding

- *They are grinding their rusty swords and spears.*

PAST

I ground	we ground
you ground	you ground
he/she/it ground	they ground

- *We ground some more coffee.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was grinding	we were grinding
you were grinding	you were grinding
he/she/it was grinding	they were grinding

- *I was grinding my teeth in my sleep.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has ground
PAST PERFECT	… had ground

FUTURE	… will grind
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be grinding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have ground

PAST PASSIVE

I was ground	we were ground
you were ground	you were ground
he/she/it was ground	they were ground

- *The gear teeth were ground pretty badly.*

COMPLEMENTS

grind *crush, sharpen/smooth/press by rubbing*	The wheels of justice grind slow, but they grind exceeding fine. [PROVERB] The mill grinds continuously when the harvest comes in.
grind *clash/grate noisily*	The gears ground whenever I tried to shift. His teeth were grinding loudly. The axle wheels were grinding and squeaking.
grind ___ *crush into powder / tiny pieces*	
OBJECT	The wheel grinds **the seeds**, separating wheat from chaff. The miller is grinding **the corn** into meal. The editorial ground **the opposition's argument** to shreds.
PASSIVE	The corn is ground into meal.
grind ___ *sharpen/smooth by rubbing*	
OBJECT	We ground **all the edges** until they shone. The lens maker ground **the glass** until it was smooth.
grind ___ *rub together forcefully*	
OBJECT	He grinds **his teeth** when he gets really upset.
grind ___ *press/rub with a circular motion*	
OBJECT	He ground **the black widow spider** under his heel. They ground **the dried herbs** with their hands.
grind ___ *oppress*	
OBJECT	The tyrant ground **the colonists** with excessive taxes.

PHRASAL VERBS

grind away at ___ *work steadily on*	She ground away at her thesis.
grind ___SEP___ **down** *reduce and destroy [someone's] enthusiasm*	This job really grinds me down.
grind ___ **into** *rub into*	The workers ground dirt into the carpet.
grind on *continue, seemingly endlessly*	The Vietnam War ground on for six more years.
grind ___SEP___ **out** *produce mechanically, churn out*	The novelist grinds out a chapter a day.
grind ___SEP___ **up** *reduce to small pieces*	Bill grinds the coffee beans up very fine.

☑ IRREGULAR

grow | grows · grew · have grown

grow

PRESENT

I grow	we grow
you grow	you grow
he/she/it grows	they grow

- *He grows wheat and barley on his land.*

PAST

I grew	we grew
you grew	you grew
he/she/it grew	they grew

- *The kids grew a lot this year.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has grown
PAST PERFECT	… had grown

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am growing	we are growing
you are growing	you are growing
he/she/it is growing	they are growing

- *He is growing up.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was growing	we were growing
you were growing	you were growing
he/she/it was growing	they were growing

- *The passengers were growing angry at the delay.*

FUTURE	… will grow
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be growing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have grown

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was grown	they were grown

- *The Fair Trade coffee was grown in Mexico.*

COMPLEMENTS

grow *develop, mature*	Weeds were growing in the driveway. Many flowers won't grow in partial shade.
grow *become taller*	My, how you've grown! The kids are sure growing.
grow *become longer*	Her hair grew two inches over the summer.
grow *become bigger, expand*	Our investments have grown about eight percent a year. His reputation is growing even outside the region. The company is growing through mergers with smaller firms. The deficit has grown every year.
grow ____ *raise [plants, a crop]*	
OBJECT	We will grow **more corn** next year. We can grow **pansies** in the window boxes. It isn't good to grow **the same crop** in a field year after year.
WH-CLAUSE	We will grow **what sells the best**. They grow **whatever crops can tolerate the heat**.
grow ____ *cause to develop and flourish*	
OBJECT	We are trying to grow **the business**. The company has grown **its profits** effectively. The magazine needs to grow **its circulation**.
grow ____ *begin*	
INFINITIVE	I have grown **to like broccoli**. I had grown **to hate Senator Blather's speeches**.
grow ____ *become*	
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	The driver grew **tired** as evening approached. Ruby grew **pale** at the sight of the snake. They grew **accustomed** to the boss's angry outbursts.

PHRASAL VERBS

grow into ____ *become big enough for*	She's grown into her sister's winter coat.
grow into ____ *develop into*	Your son has grown into a fine young man. The banking problem has grown into a major crisis.
grow up to be ____ *develop into*	She has grown up to be a poised and confident woman.

74 hamstring

hamstring | hamstrings · hamstrung · have hamstrung

☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I hamstring	we hamstring
you hamstring	you hamstring
he/she/it hamstrings	they hamstring

- *His opposition hamstrings our reform efforts.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hamstringing	we are hamstringing
you are hamstringing	you are hamstringing
he/she/it is hamstringing	they are hamstringing

- *Endless delay is hamstringing our progress.*

PAST

I hamstrung	we hamstrung
you hamstrung	you hamstrung
he/she/it hamstrung	they hamstrung

- *She hamstrung the project by cutting staff.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hamstringing	we were hamstringing
you were hamstringing	you were hamstringing
he/she/it was hamstringing	they were hamstringing

- *They were hamstringing attempts to pass the bill.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has hamstrung
PAST PERFECT	… had hamstrung

FUTURE	… will hamstring
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be hamstringing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have hamstrung

PAST PASSIVE

I was hamstrung	we were hamstrung
you were hamstrung	you were hamstrung
he/she/it was hamstrung	they were hamstrung

- *Several cattle were hamstrung by wild wolves.*

COMPLEMENTS

hamstring ____ *cripple by cutting the hamstring muscle*

OBJECT	Ranchers would often hamstring **dangerous animals**.
PASSIVE	Rebellious slaves were sometimes hamstrung to keep them from running away.

hamstring ____ *hinder, make more difficult*

OBJECT	Bad weather hamstrung **the rescue efforts**. Uncertainty about final approval hamstrings **our planning**.
PASSIVE	Development of the property was hamstrung by local opposition.
WH-CLAUSE	Lack of funding hamstrung **whatever plans we proposed**. Bureaucratic inertia will always hamstring **whatever we do**.
PASSIVE	What we tried to do was hamstrung by insufficient staffing.

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

hang | hangs · hung · have hung
hang | hangs · hanged · have hanged

hang 75

PRESENT

I hang	we hang
you hang	you hang
he/she/it hangs	they hang

- *His picture hangs in the boardroom.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hanging	we are hanging
you are hanging	you are hanging
he/she/it is hanging	they are hanging

- *I'm hanging around until she returns.*

PAST

I hung	we hung
you hung	you hung
he/she/it hung	they hung

- *We hung all the ornaments on the tree.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hanging	we were hanging
you were hanging	you were hanging
he/she/it was hanging	they were hanging

- *They were hanging out at Tom's house.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has hung
PAST PERFECT	… had hung

FUTURE	… will hang
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be hanging
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have hung

PAST PASSIVE

I was hung	we were hung
you were hung	you were hung
he/she/it was hung	they were hung

- *The stockings were hung by the chimney.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The past tense and past participle form is *hung* for all meanings of *hang* except one: The form *hanged* is used for the meanings "be suspended by the neck until dead" and "suspend by the neck until dead."

hang *be suspended by the neck until dead*	He will hang for his crimes. Black Bart was finally hanged.
hang ____ *be suspended, droop*	
ADVERB OF PLACE	The gulls hung **above the fishing boats**. The smoke from the forest fire hung **in the still air**. Wet laundry hung **everywhere in the small apartment**.
ADVERB OF MANNER	The flag was hanging **limply** from the staff. His suit hangs **a little too loosely**. His head hung **in shame** after his arrest.
hang ____ *be prevalent*	
ADVERB OF PLACE	Before the battle, tension hung **in the air**.
hang ____ *suspend/fasten without support from below, let droop*	
OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE)	We've already hung **the Christmas wreath**. We hung **our wet clothing *on branches***. I hung a **bird feeder *in the oak tree*.**
PASSIVE	The bridge was hung ***from steel cables***.
hang ____ *exhibit [artwork]*	
OBJECT	They hung **her paintings** in the main gallery. I hung **the photograph** in the spring exhibition.
PASSIVE	His pictures have been hung at all the major art shows.
hang ____ *suspend by the neck until dead*	
OBJECT	They hanged **the convict** at dawn.
PASSIVE	He was hanged for his many crimes.

PHRASAL VERBS

hang around/out *loiter, linger*	Leo hung around, waiting for Josh.
hang on *wait*	Can you hang on while I take another call?
hang on to ____ *keep*	Hang on to the baby clothes; you may need them again.

have

have | has · had · have had ☑ IRREGULAR

have ____ *experience, undergo*	
OBJECT	He had **chicken pox** when he was a child. Did you have **a good time** at the party? California had **drought conditions** for several years. They are having **an argument about visitation rights**.
have ____ *keep in one's mind*	
OBJECT	Senator Blather has **an opinion about everything**. We have **doubts about the new employee**. I have **an idea for earning extra money**.
have ____ *host*	
OBJECT	The restaurant is having **a grand opening** this Saturday.
have ____ *eat, drink*	
OBJECT	Dan is having **blackberry pie** for dessert. Tim had **a refill** on his soft drink.
have ____ *be the parent(s) of*	
OBJECT	We have **two sons and a daughter**.
have ____ *study*	
OBJECT	Terry had **three years of Spanish** in high school.
have ____ *position*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE	Mark had **his hands** ***on the steering wheel.*** The graduate had **a parent** ***on either side of him.***

PHRASAL VERBS

have ____ **back/down/over/up**/etc. *invite and host [someone] at a specified location*	We had the Smiths over for dinner.
have ____ **against** *have as a reason to dislike*	She has a grudge against her ex-boyfriend.
have ____ **on** *be operating*	She has the radio on when she's at home.
have SEP **on** *be wearing*	He had on a turtleneck sweater and baggy trousers.
have SEP **out** *have removed*	I had one of my upper molars out.

EXPRESSIONS

have had it *have done/endured all that one can*	I have had it with tax auditors.
have a big mouth *gossip a lot, reveal secrets a lot*	Don't tell Joanie your troubles; she has a big mouth.
have a bone to pick (with ____**)** *have something to argue about (with [someone])*	I have a bone to pick with the editor about his changes.
have [one's] cake and eat it too / have it both ways *have the advantages of something without its disadvantages*	Denny wants to live in the country, but he wants a grocery store next door. He can't have his cake and eat it too.
have it good *be rich*	The bank executive really has it good—a Mercedes, a mansion, and a vacation home in California.
have it out (with ____**)** *settle an argument (with [someone])*	The teacher had it out with the principal.
have it that ____ *claim/say that*	Rumor has it that Glenda is getting married.
have to do with ____ *concern, involve*	The article has to do with child labor laws.

☑ IRREGULAR

have | has · had · have had

have

76

PRESENT

I have	we have
you have	you have
he/she/it has	they have

- *November only has 30 days.*

PAST

I had	we had
you had	you had
he/she/it had	they had

- *We had a really great time.*

PRESENT PERFECT	... have | has had
PAST PERFECT	... had had

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am having	we are having
you are having	you are having
he/she/it is having	they are having

- *I'm having some people over.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was having	we were having
you were having	you were having
he/she/it was having	they were having

- *We were having a lot of problems then.*

FUTURE	... will have
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	... will be having
FUTURE PERFECT	... will have had

PAST PASSIVE

Have is not used in the passive voice except in idiomatic expressions.

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Have* is also used as a helping verb to form the perfect tenses.

have + PAST PARTICIPLE	She has read all six of Jane Austen's novels.

have ____ *possess, own, contain, include*

OBJECT	Do you have **a car**? I have **enough food for everyone**. Ted has **an interesting news item for us**. Do you have **a minute**? We have **an office in Tokyo**. Does the meeting room have **a projection screen**? The department store has **mattresses on sale**. A week has **seven days**. The knitters' club has **525 members**.

have ____ *be characterized by*

OBJECT	She has **red hair**. He has **a quick temper**. My car has **a tendency to stall at stop signs**.

have ____ *must*

INFINITIVE	I have **to be at the office by 8 o'clock**. We have **to stop for gas at the next exit**. You will have **to make up your minds soon**.

NOTE: When the information in the infinitive is clear from context, *have* + INFINITIVE is often contracted to *have* + *to*. For example, *Do you have to go now?* may be contracted to *Do you have to? Have to* is sometimes pronounced /hafta/.

have ____ *cause [to do]*

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE	I had **the kids *put away their toys***. He had **me *reprint the document***. We will have **the builder *modify the deck***.
OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE	He had **his crew *working on the addition***. The comedian really had **us *laughing***. The coach had **the team *running wind sprints***.
OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE	I had **my watch *repaired***. Aunt Jenny had **her hip *replaced*** this fall. They had **the wedding reception *catered***.

77 hear

hear | hears · heard · have heard ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I hear	we hear
you hear	you hear
he/she/it hears	they hear

- *He only hears what he wants to.*

PAST

I heard	we heard
you heard	you heard
he/she/it heard	they heard

- *I heard that there was a problem.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has heard
PAST PERFECT	… had heard

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hearing	we are hearing
you are hearing	you are hearing
he/she/it is hearing	they are hearing

- *I'm not hearing anything.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hearing	we were hearing
you were hearing	you were hearing
he/she/it was hearing	they were hearing

- *They were hearing some surprising reports.*

FUTURE	… will hear
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be hearing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have heard

PAST PASSIVE

I was heard	we were heard
you were heard	you were heard
he/she/it was heard	they were heard

- *All witnesses were heard in one afternoon.*

COMPLEMENTS

hear *perceive sound by ear*	She can only hear in the middle frequencies. Sam hears pretty well for someone his age.
hear *make out words/music*	Can everybody hear, or should I turn the radio up? No one could hear while the band was playing.
hear ____ *perceive by ear*	
OBJECT	I just heard **the telephone**. We could hear **the surf** from our room.
PASSIVE	The dog's barking was heard by everyone in the building.
OBJECT + *INFINITIVE* [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]	He was heard ***to make threats***. The senator was heard ***to make promises he couldn't keep***.
OBJECT + *BASE-FORM INFINITIVE*	I heard **him** ***start the car***. We heard **the kids** ***turn on the TV***. I heard **her** ***play a Mozart piano concerto***.
OBJECT + *PRESENT PARTICIPLE*	I heard **him** ***starting the car***. We heard **the kids** ***playing in the backyard***. He heard **someone** ***talking on the phone***.
hear ____ *be told, learn*	
OBJECT	Did you hear **the news**? I heard **the final score**. John has just heard **the results of his test**.
THAT-CLAUSE	I heard **that Jim is leaving the company**. Did you hear **that they are going to have a baby**?
WH-CLAUSE	Have you heard **who won the game**? I heard **what you said**.
hear ____ *listen to the two sides in [a court case]*	
OBJECT	The judge heard **three divorce cases** this morning.

PHRASAL VERBS

hear from ____ *receive a message from*	We heard from the Ellners last week.
hear of ____ *learn of the existence of*	I've heard of hedgehogs, but I've never seen one.
hear ____ **out** *listen to everything [someone] has to say*	Simon heard her out, but he didn't change his mind.

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

hew | hews · hewed · have hewed
hew | hews · hewed · have hewn

hew

78

PRESENT

I hew	we hew
you hew	you hew
he/she/it hews	they hew

- *The gardener hews the hedges back too far.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hewing	we are hewing
you are hewing	you are hewing
he/she/it is hewing	they are hewing

- *We are hewing wood to make the fence posts.*

PAST

I hewed	we hewed
you hewed	you hewed
he/she/it hewed	they hewed

- *Settlers hewed a clearing in the woods.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hewing	we were hewing
you were hewing	you were hewing
he/she/it was hewing	they were hewing

- *The farmers were all hewing their winter firewood.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has hewn
PAST PERFECT	… had hewn

FUTURE	… will hew
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be hewing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have hewn

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was hewn	they were hewn

- *The stools were hewn out of solid pieces of wood.*

COMPLEMENTS

hew ____ *chop off / cut down / hack through with a sharp tool*
[OFTEN WITH *down*]

OBJECT	Crews hewed down **hundreds of trees** for the new roadway. Have you hewn **all the branches you need**?
PASSIVE	The saplings along the path had all been hewn and stacked.

hew ____ *make/shape by cutting/chopping*

OBJECT	We hewed **a narrow trail** along the side of the mountain. The initial attackers had hewn **an opening** in the enemy line.
PASSIVE	A path had been hewn through the jungle. The totem pole was hewn from cedar.

hew ____ *adhere/conform strictly*

to OBJECT	Candidates must hew **to the party line**. Most religions demand that you hew **to certain forms of behavior**. Many artists do not hew **to traditional forms.**

EXPRESSIONS

rough-hewn *with a rough surface/quality*	I like the rough-hewn furniture in the camp dining hall. These rough-hewn alphabets are from the 19th century.
rough-hewn *unrefined*	My neighbors are rough-hewn in appearance and speech.

79 hide

hide | hides · hid · have hidden ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I hide	we hide
you hide	you hide
he/she/it hides	they hide

- *Our cat always hides in the closet.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hiding	we are hiding
you are hiding	you are hiding
he/she/it is hiding	they are hiding

- *I'm hiding from Todd.*

PAST

I hid	we hid
you hid	you hid
he/she/it hid	they hid

- *I hid a house key outside.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hiding	we were hiding
you were hiding	you were hiding
he/she/it was hiding	they were hiding

- *They were hiding the money in offshore accounts.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has hidden
PAST PERFECT	… had hidden

FUTURE	… will hide
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be hiding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have hidden

PAST PASSIVE

I was hidden	we were hidden
you were hidden	you were hidden
he/she/it was hidden	they were hidden

- *The photos were hidden in a closet.*

COMPLEMENTS

hide *keep oneself out of sight, conceal oneself*

The dog hides whenever we get his cage.
The birds hide in the trees if there is a hawk nearby.
The kids were hiding behind the tree.
The thief hid in an abandoned warehouse.

hide ____ *put out of sight, conceal*

OBJECT	The cat had hidden **her kittens** in the attic. The burglars hid **themselves** carefully. The old lady hid **her money** under her mattress. He hid **the stolen property** in the basement. Janet hid **her face** behind the newspaper. They hid **their business losses** by altering the records.

hide ____ *keep secret*

OBJECT	I tried to hide **my confusion** by changing the subject.
WH-CLAUSE	The senator hid **who had actually made the campaign contribution**. They wanted to hide **what they had done**. Allison never hid **what she was going to do**. We all want to hide **whatever makes us look foolish**.

hide ____ *keep from being seen*

OBJECT	A sign hid **the entrance to his office**.
PASSIVE	My iPod had been hidden by a stack of books.

PHRASAL VERBS

hide out *conceal oneself for a period of time*	Jesse and Frank James hid out in Meramec Caverns.

EXPRESSIONS

hide [one's] head in the sand *ignore signs of danger*	We hid our heads in the sand when Hitler seized control of the government.
hide [one's] light under a bushel *conceal one's talents/ideas*	Share your suggestions, Donna. Don't hide your light under a bushel.

☑ IRREGULAR

hit | hits · hit · have hit

hit 80

PRESENT

I hit	we hit
you hit	you hit
he/she/it hits	they hit

- *He always hits his target.*

PAST

I hit	we hit
you hit	you hit
he/she/it hit	they hit

- *The storm hit us pretty hard.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has hit
PAST PERFECT … had hit

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hitting	we are hitting
you are hitting	you are hitting
he/she/it is hitting	they are hitting

- *I'm hitting a lot of resistance.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hitting	we were hitting
you were hitting	you were hitting
he/she/it was hitting	they were hitting

- *Prices were hitting all-time highs.*

FUTURE … will hit
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be hitting
FUTURE PERFECT … will have hit

PAST PASSIVE

I was hit	we were hit
you were hit	you were hit
he/she/it was hit	they were hit

- *Our car was hit by a pickup truck.*

COMPLEMENTS

hit *deliver a blow/setback*	Depression can hit at any time. The storm will hit sometime tomorrow morning. The shells and bombs were hitting everywhere.
hit ____ *strike, deliver a blow to*	
OBJECT	The batter hit **the pitch** sharply. I hit **the target** with the first shot. The bullet hit **him** in the left shoulder.
PASSIVE	Our oak tree was hit by lightning.
hit ____ *cause to suffer, distress*	
OBJECT	A terrible drought has hit **the entire Midwest**. A sharp sell-off hit **the market** today.
hit ____ *activate, turn on/off*	
OBJECT	He hit **the brakes** in a panic. Hit **the light switch**, will you? They always want to hit **the panic button** right away.
hit ____ *reach [a level/goal]*	
OBJECT	Do you think oil will hit **$100 a barrel**? Sales could hit **our goal of 2,000 units** this week.
PASSIVE	A new record was hit on Wall Street today.
hit ____ *arrive/appear at*	
OBJECT	We should hit **Kansas City** around noon. The tourists hit **all the souvenir shops**.
hit ____ *encounter*	
OBJECT	The pilot hit **a headwind** 120 miles from Singapore. The research was going well, then we hit **a snag**.
hit ____ *become clear to*	
OBJECT	The smell of garlic hit **me** as soon as I entered the house. The solution hit **Johanna** right after lunch.

PHRASAL VERBS

hit on/upon ____ *discover*	She hit upon the idea of extending Medicare to people 55 and over.

81 hold

hold | holds · held · have held ☑ IRREGULAR

hold _____ *consider, believe*	
OBJECT + (*to be*) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	The judge held **the defendant *(to be) blameless***. I hold **him *(to be) fully responsible for the accident***. "We hold **these truths *to be self-evident*** …" [DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE]
THAT-CLAUSE	The court held **that citizens have a right to privacy**. For years, the tobacco industry held **that cigarettes didn't cause cancer**.
hold _____ *conduct*	
OBJECT	The seniors held **a bake sale** for their class trip. We held **a seminar** for the interns. The neighbors held **a lively conversation** on the porch. They will hold **a special exhibit on pre-Columbian art**. The president will hold **a press conference** on Tuesday.
hold _____ *have as one's own*	
OBJECT	Amelia Earhart holds **the title of first woman to fly solo across the Atlantic Ocean**. My wife holds **the office of County Clerk**.
hold _____ *keep in one's mind, maintain*	
OBJECT	They held **the belief that the earth is flat**. We will hold **the memory of her** in our hearts forever.

PHRASAL VERBS

hold SEP **back/down/in/out/up**/etc. *keep in a specified position*	A police barricade held the crowd back. The auctioneer held up an antique butter churn.
hold _____ **against [someone]** *have as a reason to think poorly of [someone]*	She still holds it against him that he has never opened the door for her.
hold SEP **back** *keep secret, withhold*	The juror held back the fact that he knew the defendant.
hold SEP **down** *have and keep [a job]*	Jake holds down two jobs and takes college classes too.
hold SEP **in** *suppress*	The candidate is good at holding his emotions in.
hold off (on) _____ *delay, postpone*	She held off asking her parents for more money.
hold SEP **off** *keep away, resist*	The old woman held the robber off until police arrived.
hold on *wait*	Hold on while I dry my hands.
hold on *manage to keep one's position*	Although our team was outscored in the final period, we held on and won the game.
hold SEP **on** *secure*	A clasp holds the lid on.
hold out *last, endure*	How long will our food hold out? The settlers held out until the cavalry arrived.
hold out for _____ *insist on getting*	I don't want a cookie; I'm holding out for a cupcake. The union held out for better working conditions.
hold SEP **over** *keep for more performances*	The theater held the movie over for six more weeks.
hold _____ **together** *keep united*	It was Mom who held the family together.
hold up *remain in the same condition*	This old house is holding up pretty well. Sales of soccer balls are holding up in spite of the economy.
hold SEP **up** *delay, stop*	The discovery of human remains held up construction for two weeks.
hold SEP **up** *rob*	Three teenagers held the store up in broad daylight.
hold SEP **up** *support*	Special bolts hold up the roof of a coal mine.

top 30 verb

hold | holds · held · have held

hold

PRESENT

I hold	we hold
you hold	you hold
he/she/it holds	they hold

- *A barrel holds 55 U.S. gallons.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am holding	we are holding
you are holding	you are holding
he/she/it is holding	they are holding

- *Come on, I'm holding the door.*

PAST

I held	we held
you held	you held
he/she/it held	they held

- *She held that position for years.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was holding	we were holding
you were holding	you were holding
he/she/it was holding	they were holding

- *Susan was holding the baby.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has held
PAST PERFECT	. . . had held

FUTURE	. . . will hold
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be holding
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have held

PAST PASSIVE

I was held	we were held
you were held	you were held
he/she/it was held	they were held

- *The plane was held for transfer passengers.*

COMPLEMENTS

hold *keep one's position*

So far, our defensive line is holding.
We hope the tent holds in this wind.
The beautiful weather will hold through the weekend.
Our market share is still holding.
The senator's lead in the polls has held steady.
Please hold still.
Please hold. Your call is important to us.

hold *stay together / in one piece*

I hope this rope holds.

hold ____ *grasp*

OBJECT

I held **the hammer** in my right hand.
Please hold **the ladder** while I change the lightbulb.
Hold **my hand** while we cross the street.

hold ____ *keep steady, maintain, keep control of*

OBJECT

They will hold **their prices** at the current level.
The runners held **a five-mile-per-hour pace**.
The house had held **its value** over the years.
Will you hold **the elevator** for a minute?
The framework holds **the entire structure** together.
He needs to hold **his temper** better.
How long can you hold **your breath**?
The movie completely held **my attention**.

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The senator held **his audience *spellbound***.
The scream held **everyone *frozen in place***.
The cables hold **the tower *rigid***.

hold ____ *keep for later use*

OBJECT

The hotel will hold **the room** for us until 10 P.M.
Hold **my calls**, please.

PASSIVE

The troops were held in reserve.

hold ____ *contain, have room for*

OBJECT

The safe deposit box holds **the deed to our house**.
The tank holds **1,000 gallons**.
The auditorium can hold **400 people**.

82 hurt

hurt | hurts · hurt · have hurt

☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I hurt	we hurt
you hurt	you hurt
he/she/it hurts	they hurt

- *The scandal hurts his re-election chances.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hurting	we are hurting
you are hurting	you are hurting
he/she/it is hurting	they are hurting

- *The auto industry is really hurting.*

PAST

I hurt	we hurt
you hurt	you hurt
he/she/it hurt	they hurt

- *I hurt my knee yesterday.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hurting	we were hurting
you were hurting	you were hurting
he/she/it was hurting	they were hurting

- *Lack of money was hurting our program.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has hurt
PAST PERFECT	… had hurt

FUTURE	… will hurt
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be hurting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have hurt

PAST PASSIVE

I was hurt	we were hurt
you were hurt	you were hurt
he/she/it was hurt	they were hurt

- *He was hurt playing football.*

COMPLEMENTS

hurt *be a source of pain*	Mommy, my stomach hurts. My shoulder was hurting again. This injection may hurt a little. The loss of so many jobs has got to hurt.
hurt *be in a bad situation*	The entire economy is hurting.
hurt ____ *injure, cause pain/harm to*	
OBJECT	He hurt **his back** trying to move the refrigerator. Listening to such loud music hurts **my ears**. The new shoes are hurting **my feet**. Would it hurt **you** to wash the dishes once in a while?
PASSIVE	Her feelings were hurt by what they said.
hurt ____ *damage, harm*	
OBJECT	A high interest rate will hurt **car sales**. The unusually cold summer has hurt **vacation rentals**. Injuries have hurt **our team's chances**. The recession is hurting **sales**. Such negative criticism would hurt **anyone's self-image**.
PASSIVE	The dollar has been hurt by high oil prices.

☑ IRREGULAR

keep | keeps · kept · have kept

keep

83

PRESENT

I keep	we keep
you keep	you keep
he/she/it keeps	they keep

- *He keeps his keys in the top drawer.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am keeping	we are keeping
you are keeping	you are keeping
he/she/it is keeping	they are keeping

- *I am keeping his letters.*

PAST

I kept	we kept
you kept	you kept
he/she/it kept	they kept

- *I kept careful records of all the expenses.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was keeping	we were keeping
you were keeping	you were keeping
he/she/it was keeping	they were keeping

- *We were keeping the grandchildren for the week.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has kept
PAST PERFECT	… had kept

FUTURE	… will keep
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be keeping
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have kept

PAST PASSIVE

I was kept	we were kept
you were kept	you were kept
he/she/it was kept	they were kept

- *His antique autos were kept in immaculate condition.*

COMPLEMENTS

keep *remain in good condition, remain the same*	The yogurt will keep for days. How long will meat keep in the freezer? No secret keeps for very long. Will the work keep until tomorrow?
keep ____ *hold in one's possession, retain*	
OBJECT	We kept **all of our children's letters**. Keep **the change**. The quarterback kept **the ball**.
keep ____ *store*	
OBJECT + *ADVERB OF PLACE*	We keep **all of our cash *in a safe***. ***Where*** do you keep **the potato chips**? We're keeping **the extra envelopes *in this drawer***.
keep ____ *maintain, take care of*	
OBJECT	Everyone used to keep **a garden**. Are you going to keep **your subscription to the magazine**? You need to keep **good records**.
keep ____ *continue in an activity/position/condition*	
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	The soldiers kept **ready**. Keep **warm**! Amazingly, the children kept **quiet**.
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	Keep **working**! The people behind us kept **talking throughout the concert**. The company kept **losing money**.
keep ____ *cause to continue in an activity/position/condition*	
OBJECT + *ADVERB OF PLACE*	Keep **your hands *over your head***! I kept **my eyes *on the road***. Kids! Keep **your hands *to yourselves***. The doctor kept **Alice *in the hospital*** two days longer.
OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN	The president kept **Wilson *as ambassador to Great Britain***. The team kept **Charlie *as captain***. The new company kept **Chris *as custodian***.

top 30 verb

keep ____ *cause to continue in an activity/position/condition* [continued]	
OBJECT + *PREDICATE ADJECTIVE*	The soldiers kept **their weapons *ready***. Keep **your feet *dry***! Please try to keep **the room *clean***. The secretary kept **the file *secret***.
OBJECT + *PRESENT PARTICIPLE*	The sergeant kept **the men *digging trenches***. Keep **them *talking***! He always kept **us *laughing at his silly jokes***.
OBJECT + *PAST PARTICIPLE*	Keep **me *informed*** about the merger.
keep ____ *employ, have in one's service*	
OBJECT	The hotel keeps **a large housekeeping staff**.
keep ____ *adhere to, fulfill*	
OBJECT	John always keeps **his word**.

PHRASAL VERBS

keep away/back/down/in/off/out/etc. *remain in a specified location*	Keep away from the edge of the bluff. My parents are coming—keep down!
keep SEP **away/back/down/in/off/out/**etc. *cause to remain in a specified location*	Can you keep the squirrels away from the corn? It's raining; keep the children in.
keep after/at ____ *nag, harass*	The teacher keeps after us about our homework.
keep at/on/up ____ *continue [doing]*	You're doing a great job. Keep at it! Keep on writing—the paper's due tomorrow. It kept on snowing for two days. This report is wonderful. Keep up the good work.
keep SEP **down** *limit*	We're trying to keep our grocery bill down.
keep SEP **down** *not vomit*	When I had the flu, I couldn't keep food down.
keep ([oneself]) from ____ *prevent oneself from [doing something]*	I could hardly keep from laughing at his costume. I tried to keep myself from screaming at him.
keep [someone] from ____ *prevent [someone] from [doing something]*	His counselor kept him from using drugs.
keep SEP **in/inside** *suppress*	She kept her anger inside until he left.
keep ____ **on** *continue to employ*	The boss hopes to keep all the systems analysts on.
keep ____ **on** *continue to operate*	Derek keeps the radio on all night long.
keep SEP **on** *continue to wear [clothing]*	It's cold in here; I'll keep my coat on.
keep SEP **out** *provide protection from*	This jacket should keep out the rain and wind.
keep out of ____ *not become involved in*	My sisters are arguing, and I'm keeping out of it.
keep to [oneself] *avoid being with other people*	The author keeps to himself.
keep ____ **to [oneself]** *not tell*	Be sure to keep this to yourself.
keep SEP **up** *maintain*	It's not easy for Grandpa to keep up a large house. We have managed to keep up our family traditions. Keep your spirits up.
keep up (with ____) *stay even (with [someone/something])*	It's hard to keep up with our rich neighbors.

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

kneel | kneels · knelt · have knelt
kneel | kneels · kneeled · have kneeled

kneel

84

PRESENT

I kneel	we kneel
you kneel	you kneel
he/she/it kneels	they kneel

- *The priest always kneels before the altar.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am kneeling	we are kneeling
you are kneeling	you are kneeling
he/she/it is kneeling	they are kneeling

- *He is kneeling to reach something under the bed.*

PAST

I knelt	we knelt
you knelt	you knelt
he/she/it knelt	they knelt

- *The clergy all knelt in prayer.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was kneeling	we were kneeling
you were kneeling	you were kneeling
he/she/it was kneeling	they were kneeling

- *The soldiers were kneeling behind the wall.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has knelt
PAST PERFECT	… had knelt

FUTURE	… will kneel
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be kneeling
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have knelt

PAST PASSIVE

Kneel is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

kneel *be/rest on one's knee(s)*	Laying floor tiles kept me kneeling all afternoon. The policeman was kneeling on one knee when he fired his pistol.
kneel *show respect/submission by being/resting on one's knee(s)*	The king forced the rebels to kneel. The nuns knelt before the cross. He knelt before the king to be knighted. They all knelt in prayer.

PHRASAL VERBS

kneel down *go down on one's knee(s)*	I knelt down to pick up the kids' toys. We all had to kneel down to get through the low doorway.

85 knit

knit | knits · knit · have knit
knit | knits · knitted · have knitted

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

PRESENT

I knit	we knit
you knit	you knit
he/she/it knits	they knit

- *She knits one sweater every year.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am knitting	we are knitting
you are knitting	you are knitting
he/she/it is knitting	they are knitting

- *I am knitting a wool baby blanket.*

PAST

I knit	we knit
you knit	you knit
he/she/it knit	they knit

- *The bones knit nicely.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was knitting	we were knitting
you were knitting	you were knitting
he/she/it was knitting	they were knitting

- *He was knitting his hands together.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has knit
PAST PERFECT	… had knit

FUTURE	… will knit
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be knitting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have knit

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was knit	they were knit

- *The wall hanging was knit in Scotland.*

COMPLEMENTS

knit *create fabric/clothing by interlocking loops of yarn/thread together with needles*	She knits as a full-time occupation. A lot of people knit for charity organizations. My mother knits when she watches TV.
knit *join, grow together*	The broken bone will eventually knit and become strong. Our neighborhood gradually knit into a close community.
knit ____ *create by interlocking loops of yarn/thread together with needles*	
OBJECT	I am knitting **a wool sweater** for a child in Kazakhstan. Could you knit **a pair of socks** for me?
PASSIVE	The afghan was knit by my grandmother.
knit ____ *cause to join / grow together*	
OBJECT	The tree had knit **its roots** into a solid mass. I knit **my fingers** to form a shallow bowl. A cast may be required to knit **the broken bone** together. The major had knit **the unit** into an effective force.

PHRASAL VERBS

knit up *make a knitted item, repair by knitting*	This yarn knits up well. That scarf pattern knits up quickly. "Sleep that knits up **the ravell'd sleeve of care**." [SHAKESPEARE]

EXPRESSIONS

knit [one's] brow(s) *wrinkle one's eyebrows*	Colin knits his brow when he's thinking.

PRESENT

I know	we know
you know	you know
he/she/it knows	they know

- *He always knows what to say.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Know is never used in the progressive tenses.

PAST

I knew	we knew
you knew	you knew
he/she/it knew	they knew

- *I knew Ben in graduate school.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Know is never used in the progressive tenses.

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has known
PAST PERFECT	. . . had known

FUTURE	. . . will know
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	—
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have known

PAST PASSIVE

I was known	we were known
you were known	you were known
he/she/it was known	they were known

- *The problem was known years ago.*

COMPLEMENTS

know *be aware / have knowledge of something*	"How old is she?" "I don't know." "Do you think he knows?" "I am sure he doesn't know."
know ____ *be aware*	
about/of OBJECT (+ INFINITIVE)	We have known **about his cancer** for several months. Do you know **about his refusal *to sell the house***? I don't know **of another doctor *to call***.
know ____ *be aware of, realize, have information about*	
OBJECT	I know **the answer**. Tracy knows **a lot about my personal history**. We know **the place you mean**.
PASSIVE	His password was known only by his wife.
OBJECT + INFINITIVE	I know **him *to be an honest person***. We have known **the senator *to give better speeches***.
PASSIVE	The company has been known ***to take big risks before***.
THAT-CLAUSE	We knew **that it was going to be bad**. They should have known **that we were leaving early**. Does he know **that we are waiting**?
WH-CLAUSE	I know **what you mean**. Do the tourists know **where they are going**? Do you know **why he lied to you**? I don't know **how much it costs**.
WH-INFINITIVE	He knows **whom to ask**. Do you know **where to go**? I know **how to do it**.
know ____ *have in one's memory*	
OBJECT	Most of the actors know **their lines** well.
know ____ *be acquainted/familiar with*	
OBJECT	I knew **your father** in college. She knows **everybody in the organization**.
OBJECT + *as* OBJECT	We knew **her *as Liddy*** when we were kids.
know ____ *recognize*	
OBJECT	I'd know **his voice** anywhere.

87 lead lead | leads · led · have led ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I lead	we lead
you lead	you lead
he/she/it leads	they lead

- *He leads the accounting department.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am leading	we are leading
you are leading	you are leading
he/she/it is leading	they are leading

- *He is leading the investigation.*

PAST

I led	we led
you led	you led
he/she/it led	they led

- *Our policy led to considerable success.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was leading	we were leading
you were leading	you were leading
he/she/it was leading	they were leading

- *We were leading until the last minute.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has led
PAST PERFECT	. . . had led

FUTURE	. . . will lead
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be leading
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have led

PAST PASSIVE

I was led	we were led
you were led	you were led
he/she/it was led	they were led

- *The orchestra was led by a young German conductor.*

COMPLEMENTS

lead *guide*	I have never led before. I can't lead until I know where we are going. In a formal dance, it is customary for the gentleman to lead.
lead *be first/ahead (in a competition)*	The Giants are leading for the first time. He has led in every tournament he has played in this year.
lead ____ *be ahead of, be at the head of* OBJECT	He leads **the league** in goals scored. Senator Blather will lead **the parade**.
lead ____ *be in charge of* OBJECT	Admiral Butler is leading **the task force**. She was leading **the company** at the time.
lead ____ *go [in a direction, to a place]* ADVERB OF PLACE	This road leads **to my Uncle's farm**. The path leads **back home**. His proposal will lead **to disaster**.
lead ____ *guide, conduct* OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	A guide led **us *to the monument***. He will lead **you *wherever you want to go***.
PASSIVE	The animals were led ***back inside the barn***.
lead ____ *cause, influence* OBJECT + INFINITIVE	The weather forecast led **them *to cancel their trip***. The slow sales led **us *to drop the entire product line***.
PASSIVE	We were led ***to believe that we could get dinner here***.
lead ____ *result in* *to* OBJECT	A viral infection can lead **to pneumonia**. Four years of college leads **to a bachelor's degree**.
lead ____ *live, spend [time]* OBJECT	Our cats led **pampered lives**.

PHRASAL VERBS

lead SEP **away/back/down/in/on/out**/etc. *guide in a specified direction*	The police led the suspect away. The sergeant led the soldiers out.

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

leap | leaps · leaped · have leaped
leap | leaps · leapt · have leapt

leap

88

PRESENT

I leap	we leap
you leap	you leap
he/she/it leaps	they leap

- *Superman leaps tall buildings with ease.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am leaping	we are leaping
you are leaping	you are leaping
he/she/it is leaping	they are leaping

- *The frogs are leaping all over the place.*

PAST

I leapt	we leapt
you leapt	you leapt
he/she/it leapt	they leapt

- *He leapt at every opportunity he got.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was leaping	we were leaping
you were leaping	you were leaping
he/she/it was leaping	they were leaping

- *They were leaping out of the basket.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has leapt
PAST PERFECT	… had leapt

FUTURE	… will leap
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be leaping
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have leapt

PAST PASSIVE

I was leapt	we were leapt
you were leapt	you were leapt
he/she/it was leapt	they were leapt

- *The wall was leapt over without any difficulty.*

COMPLEMENTS

leap *jump, spring*	He leaps whenever anybody says "Boo!" The kids were all leaping with excitement. Antelope were leaping across the savannah. The fish were leaping like crazy. Our Siamese cat leapt onto Grandmother's lap. He hurt his leg. He can't leap. The defensive player leapt and intercepted the ball. The player leapt and slammed the ball into the net. I leapt as high as I could.
leap ____ *jump over* OBJECT	We had to leap **the ditch**. The horses leapt **the fence** easily. He leapt **every obstacle his opponents put in his way**.

PHRASAL VERBS

leap down/in/off/on/out/over/up/ etc. *jump in a specified direction*	The wagon slowed down, and the boys leapt off. We were leaping up and down, trying to get their attention.
leap at ____ *accept eagerly*	Max leapt at the chance to be his own boss. The club leapt at Kyle's offer to bring cupcakes.
leap out at ____ *get the immediate attention of*	The misspelled word leapt out at the proofreader.

EXPRESSIONS

leap for joy *be extremely happy*	Tad won the spelling bee, and his parents leapt for joy.
leap off the page (at ____) *be quickly noticed (by [someone])*	The typographical error leapt off the page at me. The unemployment statistics leapt off the page at her.
leap to mind *suddenly be thought of*	The author that leaps to mind is William Faulkner.
leap to [one's] feet *jump up excitedly*	The audience leapt to its feet and shouted, "Encore!"
leap to conclusions *make a hasty judgment without knowing the facts*	Until you have read the entire article, don't leap to conclusions.

89 leave

leave | leaves · left · have left

☑ IRREGULAR

leave _____ *deliver/provide before going away*	
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	They left ***you*** **a message**. I am leaving ***the waiter*** **a big tip**. We left ***the kids*** **some cookies**.
for PARAPHRASE	They left **a message** ***for you***. I am leaving **a big tip** ***for the waiter***. We left **some cookies** ***for the kids***.
leave _____ *allow/give [someone] to do*	
OBJECT + *for* OBJECT	My older sister left **the dishes** ***for me***.
OBJECT + *to* OBJECT	The boss will leave **the decision** ***to his assistant***.
OBJECT + *with* OBJECT	While I'm in Toronto, I'm going to leave **the project** ***with you***.
leave _____ *give at one's death (often by a will)*	
OBJECT + *to* OBJECT	Grandfather left **his stamp collection** ***to his granddaughter***. Mr. Plavsik left **all his money** ***to charity***.

PHRASAL VERBS

leave _____ **down/out/up**/etc. *allow to remain in a specified position*	Please leave the window up when you're finished in the room.
leave for _____ *depart in the direction of*	We will be leaving for the airport in 10 minutes.
leave off (_____**)** *stop temporarily*	Now, where did we leave off at yesterday's meeting? The staff left off trying to organize a company picnic.
leave __SEP__ **off/on** *not put off/on*	He left his jacket off in the classroom. She left her coat on because it was chilly inside.
leave __SEP__ **out (of** _____**)** *omit, exclude (from [something])*	Harry left out all references to World War Two. Mrs. Crabtree left Norman out of her will.
leave __SEP__ **on** *not switch off*	Leave the light on when you leave the room.

EXPRESSIONS

leave _____ **open** *not schedule another activity on [a day/date]*	Leave next Saturday open for the bake sale.
leave a bad taste in [one's] mouth *cause one to have a lingering bad impression*	The argument over immigration left a bad taste in my mouth.
leave no stone unturned *search everywhere, do everything possible*	The police left no stone unturned in looking for the murderer.
leave _____ **alone/be** *not disturb*	Leave me alone—I'm trying to study. We should leave the matter be for the moment.
leave _____ **out in the cold** *not keep [someone] informed*	The rest of the staff left her out in the cold with regard to the new project.
leave (some) loose ends *not finish a project, not solve a problem*	The movie rushed the ending and left some loose ends.
be left (over) *remain*	Is there any chocolate cake left? Some potato salad is left over from the picnic. Half a skein of yarn is left over from my sweater project.

top 30 verb

PRESENT

I leave	we leave
you leave	you leave
he/she/it leaves	they leave

- *He always leaves home by eight.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am leaving	we are leaving
you are leaving	you are leaving
he/she/it is leaving	they are leaving

- *I'm leaving the porch light on.*

PAST

I left	we left
you left	you left
he/she/it left	they left

- *I left you a little surprise.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was leaving	we were leaving
you were leaving	you were leaving
he/she/it was leaving	they were leaving

- *We were just leaving the garage when they called.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has left
PAST PERFECT	… had left

FUTURE	… will leave
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be leaving
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have left

PAST PASSIVE

I was left	we were left
you were left	you were left
he/she/it was left	they were left

- *Water stains were left all over the ground floor.*

COMPLEMENTS

leave *go away, depart*	We are leaving soon. When can you leave? I am not leaving until this is settled.
leave ____ *go away from, depart*	
OBJECT	Elvis has left **the building**. The train will leave **the station** at 10:13 A.M. I left **the office** early that day.
leave ____ *abandon, quit*	
OBJECT	He left **the university** in his junior year. Ray has just left **his wife**. I left **the law firm** some time ago.
leave ____ *cause/allow to remain behind*	
OBJECT	Red wine always leaves **a stain**. He left **a fortune** after his death. The surgery will leave **a little scar**.
OBJECT + *ADVERB OF PLACE*	I left **my coat** ***with the concierge***. The kids left **footprints** ***on the tile floor***. She left **her purse** ***on the park bench***.
PASSIVE	Somebody's tickets were left ***on the counter***.
leave ____ *cause/allow to remain/be in a certain state*	
OBJECT + *PREDICATE NOUN*	The accident left **him** ***a broken man***. The fire left **the building** ***a ruined shell***. The training left **the division** ***a formidable fighting force***.
OBJECT + *PREDICATE ADJECTIVE*	The movie left **me** ***confused***. We had to leave **the children** ***alone*** for a few hours. The incident left **us** ***speechless***. Please leave **the door** ***open***. Riding a bicycle leaves **Bill** ***out of breath***.
OBJECT + *PRESENT PARTICIPLE*	I left **the kids** ***finishing up their homework***. The comedian left **the audience** ***roaring with laughter***. We left **the plumber** ***ripping out the old sink***. Leave **the engine** ***running***.

top 30 verb

90 lend

lend | lends · lent · have lent ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I lend	we lend
you lend	you lend
he/she/it lends	they lend

- *The bank lends money for new cars.*

PAST

I lent	we lent
you lent	you lent
he/she/it lent	they lent

- *The bank lent them the money.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has lent
PAST PERFECT	… had lent

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am lending	we are lending
you are lending	you are lending
he/she/it is lending	they are lending

- *I am lending the truck to Anne for the weekend.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was lending	we were lending
you were lending	you were lending
he/she/it was lending	they were lending

- *The banks were not lending at that time.*

FUTURE	… will lend
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be lending
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have lent

PAST PASSIVE

I was lent	we were lent
you were lent	you were lent
he/she/it was lent	they were lent

- *The book was lent to me by a friend.*

COMPLEMENTS

lend *give money on condition of repayment (plus interest)*

Banks are not lending now.
Who can afford to lend?
Who is still lending these days?

lend ____ *allow temporary use of on condition of return/payment*

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
I lent ***Peter*** **my lawnmower**.
I can lend ***you*** **$25**.
Could I have lent ***someone*** **the library book**?

to PARAPHRASE
I lent **my lawnmower *to Peter***.
I can lend **$25 *to you***.
Could I have lent **the library book *to someone***?

NOTE: Many speakers prefer to use the verb *loan* (rather than *lend*) when referring to money. For example, they would say "The bank will *loan* you the money" rather than "The bank will *lend* you the money." Both are grammatically correct.

lend ____ *make available to*

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
The Red Cross lent ***the flood relief effort*** **its services**.

to PARAPHRASE
The Red Cross lent **its services *to the flood relief effort***.

lend ____ *add*

OBJECT + *to* OBJECT
The confetti and beads lend **gaiety *to the Mardi Gras parade***.
The bowl of fruit lends **color *to an otherwise dull painting***.

PHRASAL VERBS

lend itself to ____ *be suitable for*
The gathering room lends itself to intimate conversation.

lend __SEP__ out *allow temporary use of on condition of return*
We lent out our copy of Jane Austen's *Pride and Prejudice*.

EXPRESSIONS

lend an/[one's] ear (to ____) *listen (to [someone])*
The president is speaking; lend an ear.
"Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears."
[SHAKESPEARE]

PRESENT

I let	we let
you let	you let
he/she/it lets	they let

- *He lets us know if there is a problem.*

PAST

I let	we let
you let	you let
he/she/it let	they let

- *I let the dogs run in the backyard.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has let
PAST PERFECT	… had let

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am letting	we are letting
you are letting	you are letting
he/she/it is letting	they are letting

- *The coach is letting them try again.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was letting	we were letting
you were letting	you were letting
he/she/it was letting	they were letting

- *We were letting too many mistakes get through.*

FUTURE	… will let
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be letting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have let

PAST PASSIVE

I was let	we were let
you were let	you were let
he/she/it was let	they were let

- *Several staff members were let go recently.*

COMPLEMENTS

let _____ *allow, permit*	
OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE	The referee let **the game *continue***. We let **the kids *watch TV for a while after dinner***. Don't let **them *leave without me***. Let **me *go***!
let's _____ [CONTRACTION OF **let us**; A WAY TO SUGGEST DOING SOMETHING]	
BASE-FORM INFINITIVE	Let's **go home now**. Let's **find out what happened**. Let's **not do that**.

PHRASAL VERBS

let SEP_____ **by/down/in/off/on/out/through/up/**etc. *allow to come/go in a specified direction*	Let the children in. The bus stopped and let off two passengers. Let the dog out. Stop wrestling and let your brother up.
let SEP_____ **down** *disappoint*	Son, you've let your parents down again.
let SEP_____ **off (easy) (with** _____**)** *forgive/release (with [little/no punishment])*	The policeman let the boys off with a warning. The teacher let me off easy.
let off/out _____ *release, emit*	The teakettle let off a loud whistle.
let on _____ *pretend*	Barry is letting on that he knows about the crisis.
let on _____ *admit*	Charlotte never let on that she was my sister.
let out *end*	When does the movie let out?
let up *slow down, diminish*	The rain appears to be letting up.

EXPRESSIONS

let alone _____ *not to mention, much less*	The patient can't walk, let alone run. I don't have time to read a chapter, let alone the whole book.
let _____ **alone/be** *not disturb*	Let your sister alone. Let her be.
let _____ **go** *fire, lay off*	The company let four mechanics go last Friday.
let go/loose of _____ *release, stop gripping*	If we let go of the rope, we'll fall into the river.

92 lie

lie | lies · lay · has lain ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I lie	we lie
you lie	you lie
he/she/it lies	they lie

- *The responsibility lies with all of us.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am lying	we are lying
you are lying	you are lying
he/she/it is lying	they are lying

- *The cat is lying asleep on the couch.*

PAST

I lay	we lay
you lay	you lay
he/she/it lay	they lay

- *The ship lay at anchor for a week.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was lying	we were lying
you were lying	you were lying
he/she/it was lying	they were lying

- *The book was lying on your desk.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has lain
PAST PERFECT … had lain

FUTURE … will lie
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be lying
FUTURE PERFECT … will have lain

PAST PASSIVE

Lie is never used in the passive voice.

NOTE: The irregular verb *lie* is presented here. The regular verb *lie* (*lie | lies · lied · have lied*) means "say something that isn't true"; it may be used without an object (*The suspect is lying*) or with a THAT-CLAUSE (*She lied that her husband was home all evening*).

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verbs *lie* and *lay* are often confused, in part because the past tense form of *lie* (*lay*) is the same as the present tense form of *lay*.

INFINITIVE	PRESENT	PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	BASIC MEANING
lie	lie	**lay**	have lain	"be in a horizontal position"
lay	**lay**	laid	have laid	"put in a horizontal position"

The two verbs are historically related in an odd way: *To lay* means "to cause something *to lie.*" In other words, *lay* always requires a direct object, while *lie* is never used with a direct object.

lie *be buried*	Here lie the bones of the city's founder.
lie ____ *be located*	
ADVERB OF PLACE	The report is lying **right in front of you**. The town lies **in the Thames valley**. His few hairs lay **across his bald head**. The ocean lies **to the west**.
lie ____ *be/stay in a horizontal position*	
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	The ocean lay **flat** as far as we could see. The tablecloth lay **perfectly smooth**.
lie ____ *be/stay in a certain state/condition*	
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	The cat lay **motionless**, watching the bird. The town lay **helpless** in front of the invading army. The nurse told him to lie **still** while she examined him. The paintings had lain **hidden** in a barn for 50 years.
lie ____ *be, exist*	
in OBJECT	The confusion lies **in our conflicting goals**.
with OBJECT	The problem lies **with senior management**.
lie ____ *affect*	
on OBJECT	The wrongful conviction lies heavily **on the prosecutors**. His extramarital affair lies heavily **on his conscience**.

PHRASAL VERBS

lie ahead/around/back/behind/below/down/etc. *be/rest in a specified position*	She lay back and relaxed in the afternoon sun. I'll lie down for an hour.

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

light | lights · lit · have lit
light | lights · lighted · have lighted

light

PRESENT

I light	we light
you light	you light
he/she/it lights	they light

- *Her face lights up when she smiles.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am lighting	we are lighting
you are lighting	you are lighting
he/she/it is lighting	they are lighting

- *I am lighting a fire.*

PAST

I lit	we lit
you lit	you lit
he/she/it lit	they lit

- *I lit the candles on the birthday cake.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was lighting	we were lighting
you were lighting	you were lighting
he/she/it was lighting	they were lighting

- *Only candles were lighting the dining room.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has lit
PAST PERFECT	… had lit

FUTURE	… will light
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be lighting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have lit

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was lit	they were lit

- *The room was lit only by the fireplace.*

COMPLEMENTS

light *catch fire*	The pile of dry leaves and twigs finally lit. The smoldering coals lit with a whoosh. The damp wood never lit.
light ____ *ignite, set fire to, cause to burn*	
OBJECT	Sparks from the train lit **trash along the track**. We should light **the lantern** before it gets dark.
PASSIVE	The fire was lit by an electrical short circuit in the wall.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	I lit ***them*** **a candle**. We will light ***them*** **a fire**.
for PARAPHRASE	I lit **a candle** ***for them***. We will light **a fire** ***for them***.
light ____ *illuminate*	
OBJECT	We used torches to light **the path**. The campfire lit **the boys' faces**. The golden moon lit **the southern sky**.
PASSIVE	The street was lit by the burning buildings.
light ____ *guide with a light*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	We lit **the children *to their rooms*** with the lantern. "And all our yesterdays have lighted **fools *the way to dusty death***." [SHAKESPEARE]

PHRASAL VERBS

light up *brighten*	The black night lit up with occasional flashes of lightning. Her face lit up when she heard the news.

EXPRESSIONS

light a fire under ____ *cause to move/work faster/harder*	The coach's tirade lit a fire under his sluggish team.

94 lose

lose | loses · lost · have lost ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I lose	we lose
you lose	you lose
he/she/it loses	they lose

- *My team always loses.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am losing	we are losing
you are losing	you are losing
he/she/it is losing	they are losing

- *I am losing patience with them.*

PAST

I lost	we lost
you lost	you lost
he/she/it lost	they lost

- *I lost my glasses again.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was losing	we were losing
you were losing	you were losing
he/she/it was losing	they were losing

- *We were losing money on every transaction.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has lost
PAST PERFECT	… had lost

FUTURE	… will lose
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be losing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have lost

PAST PASSIVE

I was lost	we were lost
you were lost	you were lost
he/she/it was lost	they were lost

- *The battle was lost in the first few minutes.*

COMPLEMENTS

lose *not win, be defeated*	The team has never lost this season. The longer you gamble, the more certain you are to lose. The Patriots lost by 14 points.
lose ____ *not win, be defeated in* OBJECT	Napoleon never lost **a battle**—except the last one. You can win a battle, but still lose **the war**. I lost **my bet with Sam**.
lose ____ *be deprived of* OBJECT	We lost **some dear friends** in the war. He has lost **the use of his left hand**. The senator has lost **their support**.
lose ____ *misplace, be unable to find* OBJECT	I lost **the key to my desk**. The guide lost **his way** in the woods. I lost **my place in the book**.
PASSIVE	The mountain climbers were lost in the avalanche.
lose ____ *fail to keep/maintain* OBJECT	The cat is losing **its hair**. My watch is losing **time**. The sink has been losing **water** for days. The boat was losing **speed**. I lost **control of the motorcycle**.
lose ____ *get rid of* OBJECT	I finally lost **some weight**.
lose ____ *fail to make use of* OBJECT	The company lost **a great opportunity to expand**. Don't lose **any time** getting to the bookstore.
lose ____ *cause to be deprived of* INDIRECT OBJECT + OBJECT	His position on immigration lost ***him*** **a lot of votes**.

PHRASAL VERBS

lose out (to ____) *be unsuccessful [in a competition (with [someone])]*	I applied for the job, but I lost out to a younger applicant.

PRESENT

I make	we make
you make	you make
he/she/it makes	they make

- *She makes an excellent salary.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am making	we are making
you are making	you are making
he/she/it is making	they are making

- *I'm making some coffee.*

PAST

I made	we made
you made	you made
he/she/it made	they made

- *I made lunch for my in-laws.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was making	we were making
you were making	you were making
he/she/it was making	they were making

- *We were making pretty good time.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has made
PAST PERFECT	. . . had made

FUTURE	. . . will make
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be making
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have made

PAST PASSIVE

I was made	we were made
you were made	you were made
he/she/it was made	they were made

- *Mistakes were made at every level.*

COMPLEMENTS

make ____ *prepare, build, create, produce*

OBJECT	I am going to make **a tuna salad**. We made **a little shed for the bicycles**. I made **a bookcase** out of mahogany. My wife made **a sweater** out of merino wool. I can make **a booklet of your favorite quotations**. It's chilly in here; would you make **a fire**? We're making **plans for spring break**. The president's children make **their own beds**. Carpenters made **a hole in the wall** for a window.
PASSIVE	His masterpiece was made in 1683.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	We will make ***Thomas*** **a Halloween costume**. The florist made ***Ruth*** **a terrific centerpiece**. His company made ***us*** **some custom cabinets**.
for PARAPHRASE	His company made **some custom cabinets *for us*.**
WH-CLAUSE	I can only make **what I have supplies for**. I will make **whatever you want** for your birthday.

make ____ *do, perform*

OBJECT	Senator Blather made **a speech** at the YMCA. Make **a left turn** at the second traffic light.

make ____ *cause to happen/exist*

OBJECT	The dog made **a terrible mess** again. The two parties made **a deal**.
PASSIVE	Decisions have to be made quickly.

make ____ *cause to be, appoint, give a job/position to*

OBJECT + PREDICATE NOUN	He made **the company *a household name*.** The company made **her *vice president***. The board made **Boyd *the CEO***.
PASSIVE	Tom was made ***a captain*** in 2005.
OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	The new job made **Janet *very happy***. These paintings make the **living room *cheerful***. Long meetings after lunch make **me *sleepy***.

top 30 verb

95 make

make | makes · made · have made

☑ IRREGULAR

make ____ *force, cause*	
OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE	They made **me *do it***! The earthquake made **the windows *rattle***. The officials made **the teams *replay the game***.
make ____ *be used to produce*	
OBJECT	Cotton rags make **the best paper**.
PASSIVE	The sculpture was made entirely of driftwood.
make ____ *earn, succeed in achieving*	
OBJECT	You could make **a lot of money** doing that. We made **about 500 miles** driving today.
make ____ *amount to, total*	
OBJECT	Four quarts make **a gallon**. Three feet make **a yard**.
make ____ *arrive at*	
OBJECT	Glen will make **Phoenix** by tomorrow afternoon.
make ____ *be on time for*	
OBJECT	Do you think we can make **the 2 o'clock flight**? Three students didn't make **the deadline for submitting papers**.

PHRASAL VERBS

make away/off with ____ *steal*	The robbers made away with $3,500. They made off with my briefcase too.
make for ____ *go toward*	The soldier made for the nearest foxhole.
make for ____ *result in*	Good pitching and hitting make for a successful team.
make like ____ *pretend to be, imitate*	Dad made like a dinosaur and tromped around the room.
make out *succeed*	Gavin made out very well during the dot-com bubble.
make SEP **out** *distinguish, decipher*	I can barely make out the road in the snowstorm. The bank teller couldn't make out the signature on the check.
make SEP **out** *fill out*	Make the check out to the agency for $25.
make SEP **out** *understand*	We couldn't make out what the professor was saying.
make SEP **over** *change the appearance of*	The programmer made over his cubicle with movie posters.
make [someone] out ____ *describe [someone], usually falsely*	Dixie's parents made her out to be a perfect student.
make up *become friendly after a quarrel*	Luke and Lana finally made up after two weeks of not speaking to one another.
make up ____ *form, be the parts of*	These servers make up the backbone of our network. The task force was made up of cruisers and destroyers.
make SEP **up** *put together, prepare*	I made up a pot of chili in 30 minutes.
make SEP **up** *invent*	Gary made up a story about a dog stealing his homework.
make SEP **up** *apply cosmetics to*	The artist made her up to look like a witch. I have to make myself up before going out.
make SEP **up** *do [something] that one has missed*	Jan was sick and has to make up the test on Monday.
make up for ____ *compensate for*	How can I make up for the trouble I've caused you?

top 30 verb

☑ IRREGULAR

mean | means · meant · have meant

mean

96

PRESENT

I mean	we mean
you mean	you mean
he/she/it means	they mean

- *A warm wind means that it will rain.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am meaning	we are meaning
you are meaning	you are meaning
he/she/it is meaning	they are meaning

- *We are meaning to go to town tomorrow.*

PAST

I meant	we meant
you meant	you meant
he/she/it meant	they meant

- *I always meant to try skydiving.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was meaning	we were meaning
you were meaning	you were meaning
he/she/it was meaning	they were meaning

- *I was meaning to fix that.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has meant
PAST PERFECT	… had meant

FUTURE	… will mean
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be meaning
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have meant

PAST PASSIVE

I was meant	we were meant
you were meant	you were meant
he/she/it was meant	they were meant

- *No harm was meant.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *mean* is used in the progressive tenses only in the sense "intend, plan."

mean ____ *signify, indicate*

OBJECT	"Aloha" means **both "hello" and "goodbye"** in Hawaiian. A rainbow means **good luck**. It doesn't mean **anything**. Thanks. That meant **a lot to me**. This means **war**!
THAT-CLAUSE	The flare means **that there has been an accident**. The whistle means **that it is time to quit**. A heavy snowfall means **that there will be no school**.
WH-CLAUSE	It can't mean **what I think it means**. It means **whatever you want it to mean**.

mean ____ *intend, plan*

(*for*) OBJECT + INFINITIVE	I meant **(for) you *to do that***. He was meaning **(for) us *to finish up here***.
PASSIVE	The truck was meant ***to stay with the crew***.
INFINITIVE	We meant **to stop off and do some shopping**. They didn't mean **to do anything wrong**. I was meaning **to tell you about that**.

mean ____ *intend* [TO EXPLAIN A PREVIOUS STATEMENT]

THAT-CLAUSE	I meant **that you should wait in my office**. He meant **that he might have made a mistake**.

EXPRESSIONS

mean business *be serious*	He jokes with reporters, but he means business.
mean everything / the world to ____ *be very important to*	Jeanine's fiancé means everything to her. My environmental work means the world to me.
mean nothing to ____ *not be very important to*	Her criticism means nothing to me.
mean nothing to ____ *not make sense to*	This paragraph will mean nothing to the reader.
mean well *have good intentions*	Ed is a little eccentric, but he means well.

97 meet

meet | meets · met · have met ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I meet	we meet
you meet	you meet
he/she/it meets	they meet

- *The stationmaster meets every train.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am meeting	we are meeting
you are meeting	you are meeting
he/she/it is meeting	they are meeting

- *Excuse me, I am meeting someone.*

PAST

I met	we met
you met	you met
he/she/it met	they met

- *I never met your brother.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was meeting	we were meeting
you were meeting	you were meeting
he/she/it was meeting	they were meeting

- *We were meeting in the conference room.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has met
PAST PERFECT	… had met

FUTURE	… will meet
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be meeting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have met

PAST PASSIVE

I was met	we were met
you were met	you were met
he/she/it was met	they were met

- *We were met at the airport by the tour guide.*

COMPLEMENTS

meet *come together for a particular purpose*
We will meet next Tuesday.
"When shall we three meet again?" [SHAKESPEARE]
Can we meet for lunch tomorrow?
These same two teams will meet in the playoffs.

meet *be joined*
The hiking paths meet at the top of the hill.

meet *become acquainted, be introduced*
Our in-laws will meet in person for the first time.
It is amazing that we never met before.

meet *come into contact*
The gates have never met properly because they sag.
Their lips met tenderly.
The sliding doors met with a thud.

meet ____ *come together by arrangement*
OBJECT
I met **Carrie** for lunch today.
I can't meet **them** until next week.
with OBJECT
You will meet **with the search committee** this afternoon.

meet ____ *become acquainted with*
OBJECT
When did you first meet **your husband**?
Guess **whom** I met today!

meet ____ *fulfill, satisfy, pay*
OBJECT
I still have to meet **my undergraduate science requirement**.
Can he meet **the deadline for the grant application**?
Her organization works to meet **the needs of the homeless**.
If you meet **our demands**, no one will get hurt.
They might not be able to meet **their mortgage payment**.
PASSIVE
The terms of the agreement have not been met.

meet ____ *be present at the arrival of*
OBJECT
Someone needs to meet **the train**.
We should meet **their plane** tomorrow.
Everyone will meet **the boats** when they cross the finish line.

meet ____ *encounter, experience*
OBJECT
Our plans really met **an obstacle** today.
My great-great-grandfather met **his death** in the Great War.
The proposal met **a stone wall** in the committee hearing.

☑ IRREGULAR

mistake | mistakes · mistook · have mistaken

mistake 98

PRESENT

I mistake	we mistake
you mistake	you mistake
he/she/it mistakes	they mistake

- *He always mistakes peoples' names.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am mistaking	we are mistaking
you are mistaking	you are mistaking
he/she/it is mistaking	they are mistaking

- *You are mistaking me for somebody else.*

PAST

I mistook	we mistook
you mistook	you mistook
he/she/it mistook	they mistook

- *I mistook what he said.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was mistaking	we were mistaking
you were mistaking	you were mistaking
he/she/it was mistaking	they were mistaking

- *People were always mistaking his car for a taxi.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has mistaken
PAST PERFECT	… had mistaken

FUTURE	… will mistake
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be mistaking
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have mistaken

PAST PASSIVE

I was mistaken	we were mistaken
you were mistaken	you were mistaken
he/she/it was mistaken	they were mistaken

- *They were mistaken for spies.*

COMPLEMENTS

mistake ____ *identify incorrectly*

OBJECT + *for* OBJECT	I'm sorry, I mistook **you** ***for an employee***. Everyone mistakes **him** ***for his brother***. I must have mistaken **the olive oil** ***for the vinegar***.
PASSIVE	We were mistaken ***for another couple***.

mistake ____ *misunderstand, misjudge*

OBJECT	I totally mistook **the situation**. Did you mistake **the answer**? I badly mistook **the nature of their relationship**.
WH-CLAUSE	No one could mistake **what the candidate stood for**. I mistook **what was going on**. We must have mistaken **where they said they were going**.

99 mow

mow | mows · mowed · have mowed
mow | mows · mowed · have mown

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I mow	we mow
you mow	you mow
he/she/it mows	they mow

- *He mows the lawn on the weekends.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am mowing	we are mowing
you are mowing	you are mowing
he/she/it is mowing	they are mowing

- *I'll call you back later; I'm mowing the lawn now.*

PAST

I mowed	we mowed
you mowed	you mowed
he/she/it mowed	they mowed

- *I mowed the grass before it rained.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was mowing	we were mowing
you were mowing	you were mowing
he/she/it was mowing	they were mowing

- *She was mowing the backyard for her allowance.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has mown
PAST PERFECT	… had mown

FUTURE	… will mow
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be mowing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have mown

PAST PASSIVE

I was mown	we were mown
you were mown	you were mown
he/she/it was mown	they were mown

- *The lawn was mown just yesterday.*

COMPLEMENTS

mow *cut grass with a machine*

Someone is mowing in back of the house.
How often do you have to mow?
My neighbor can't get his lawn tractor to mow evenly.

mow ____ *cut down [grass, grain, etc.] with a machine*

OBJECT

The city hired me to mow **all of the playing fields**.
A highway crew was mowing **the roadside**.
I can't mow **the lawn** until it gets dry.
They really need to mow **their yard** more often.
In the fields, farmers were mowing, raking, and bundling **hay**.

PASSIVE

The lawn will be mown as soon as we can get to it.

PHRASAL VERBS

mow _SEP_ **down** *knock/shoot down*

An SUV swerved onto the sidewalk and mowed three pedestrians down.
Enemy snipers mowed down the entire platoon with machine guns.

☑ IRREGULAR

overcome | overcomes · overcame · have overcome

overcome

100

PRESENT

I overcome	we overcome
you overcome	you overcome
he/she/it overcomes	they overcome

- *He always overcomes his problems.*

PAST

I overcame	we overcame
you overcame	you overcame
he/she/it overcame	they overcame

- *She always overcame obstacles.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has overcome
PAST PERFECT	… had overcome

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am overcoming	we are overcoming
you are overcoming	you are overcoming
he/she/it is overcoming	they are overcoming

- *He is overcoming a serious injury.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was overcoming	we were overcoming
you were overcoming	you were overcoming
he/she/it was overcoming	they were overcoming

- *They were gradually overcoming their opposition.*

FUTURE	… will overcome
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be overcoming
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have overcome

PAST PASSIVE

I was overcome	we were overcome
you were overcome	you were overcome
he/she/it was overcome	they were overcome

- *He was overcome with emotion.*

COMPLEMENTS

overcome *prevail, fight and win*

“We shall overcome.” [GOSPEL SONG]
They have finally overcome.

overcome *be strongly affected*
[USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]

They were overcome with emotion.
The children were overcome with excitement.
Mr. Darcy was overcome by Elizabeth’s goodness.
Three firemen were overcome by smoke.

overcome ____ *prevail over, defeat, get control of*

OBJECT

The prisoners overcame **their guards**.
He overcame **all of his personal problems**.
She overcame **her addiction to cigarette smoking**.
The revised proposal overcame **the board’s initial resistance**.
Mr. Knightley eventually overcomes **his concerns about Emma’s foolishness**.

PASSIVE

The guards were overcome by the prisoners.

101 overtake

overtake | overtakes · overtook · have overtaken

☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I overtake	we overtake
you overtake	you overtake
he/she/it overtakes	they overtake

- *She overtakes her opponents one by one.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am overtaking	we are overtaking
you are overtaking	you are overtaking
he/she/it is overtaking	they are overtaking

- *Laptops are overtaking desktops.*

PAST

I overtook	we overtook
you overtook	you overtook
he/she/it overtook	they overtook

- *He overtook the leader with three laps left.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was overtaking	we were overtaking
you were overtaking	you were overtaking
he/she/it was overtaking	they were overtaking

- *A motorcycle was overtaking the convoy.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has overtaken
PAST PERFECT	… had overtaken

FUTURE	… will overtake
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be overtaking
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have overtaken

PAST PASSIVE

I was overtaken	we were overtaken
you were overtaken	you were overtaken
he/she/it was overtaken	they were overtaken

- *I was overtaken by sleep on the bus ride to the airport.*

COMPLEMENTS

overtake ____ *catch up with and pass*

OBJECT

The police overtook **the speeding car** at the next exit.
China will overtake **Japan** as the world's second-largest economy.
Do you think that digital books will overtake **traditional books**?
Internet advertising has already overtaken **TV advertising**.

overtake ____ *happen to unexpectedly*

OBJECT

A feeling of peace and contentment was overtaking **me** as I lay on the sofa.
Cancer overtook **my boss** when he was only 53 years old.

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

plead | pleads · pleaded · have pleaded
plead | pleads · pled · have pled

plead 102

PRESENT

I plead	we plead
you plead	you plead
he/she/it pleads	they plead

- *The defendant pleads innocent.*

PAST

I pled	we pled
you pled	you pled
he/she/it pled	they pled

- *He already pled his case.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has pled
PAST PERFECT … had pled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am pleading	we are pleading
you are pleading	you are pleading
he/she/it is pleading	they are pleading

- *I am pleading innocent, Your Honor.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was pleading	we were pleading
you were pleading	you were pleading
he/she/it was pleading	they were pleading

- *The prisoners were pleading with the guards.*

FUTURE … will plead
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be pleading
FUTURE PERFECT … will have pled

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was pled	they were pled

- *The case was pled before the district court.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The past tense and past participle form is ordinarily *pleaded* for all meanings of *plead* except "formally declare oneself [innocent/guilty] in court."

plead *make an emotional appeal, beg*	The women and children were pleading. Standing proudly, the men refused to plead. The convicts were pleading on their knees.
plead ____ *present/argue [a law case, one's position]*	
OBJECT	The lawyer will plead **your case**. You shouldn't plead **your own case**. The state's attorney will plead **the government's case**.
plead ____ *formally declare oneself [innocent/guilty] in court*	
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	He pled **guilty on all charges**. The gang members will plead **innocent**. **How** do you plead?
plead ____ *ask/beg*	
for OBJECT	The condemned man was pleading **for his life**.
for OBJECT + INFINITIVE	We pleaded **for them *to be careful***.
with OBJECT (+ INFINITIVE)	I'm pleading **with you**! Let me go to the concert. They pleaded **with the manager *to reconsider his decision***. I have pleaded **with Bob *to look for a better job.***
INFINITIVE	He pleaded **to come with us**. The children pleaded **to get a dog**. I pleaded **to get a bigger budget**.
plead ____ *give as an excuse*	
OBJECT	Tanya pleaded **ignorance of the law**, but got a ticket anyway. The tobacco company heads pleaded **ignorance of the addictive properties of cigarette smoking**.
THAT-CLAUSE	Scott pleaded **that he didn't have enough time to complete the assignment**. Brandon pleaded **that he didn't see the speed limit sign**.

103 prove

prove | proves · proved · have proven
prove | proves · proved · have proved

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

PRESENT

I prove	we prove
you prove	you prove
he/she/it proves	they prove

- *His experiment proves that we are right.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am proving	we are proving
you are proving	you are proving
he/she/it is proving	they are proving

- *Cal is proving to be a bit of a problem.*

PAST

I proved	we proved
you proved	you proved
he/she/it proved	they proved

- *It proved to be much more difficult.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was proving	we were proving
you were proving	you were proving
he/she/it was proving	they were proving

- *Francine was proving to be a great success.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has proven
PAST PERFECT	… had proven

FUTURE	… will prove
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be proving
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have proven

PAST PASSIVE

I was proven	we were proven
you were proven	you were proven
he/she/it was proven	they were proven

- *His guilt was never proven.*

COMPLEMENTS

prove ____ *demonstrate that something is true/correct*

OBJECT	For homework, Johanna told the students to prove **the theorem**. I can prove **my claim**.
PASSIVE	The validity of the will was proven in court.
REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + *as* PREDICATE NOUN	Sandra has proven **herself *as an astronaut***. Emily has proven **herself *as a teacher***.
OBJECT + (*to be*) PREDICATE NOUN	The lawyer proved **the defendant *(to be) an innocent bystander***. Her boyfriend's subsequent behavior proved **him *(to be) a complete loser***. Placido has proven **himself *(to be) an excellent shortstop***.
OBJECT + (*to be*) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	Our analysis proved **the plan *(to be) feasible***. Madeline has proven **herself *(to be) fearless***.
to OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE	He proved **to us *that he had been right all along***. Can they prove **to the police *that they were not involved in the crime***?
THAT-CLAUSE	In 1616, William Harvey proved **that blood circulates**. The police proved **that the driver was lying**.
WH-CLAUSE	Can they prove **who caused the accident**? I can prove **what I am saying**.

prove ____ *turn out [to be]*

(*to be*) PREDICATE NOUN	Our guide proved **(to be) a stranger to the region**. Our hotel proved **(to be) a dumpy guest house**. Her suggestion proved **(to be) a stroke of pure genius**.
(*to be*) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	The guide proved **(to be) quite unreliable**. Their claim proved **(to be) false**. Our best guess proved **(to be) totally wrong**.

put | puts · put · have put

put

PRESENT

I put	we put
you put	you put
he/she/it puts	they put

- *He always puts his car in the garage.*

PAST

I put	we put
you put	you put
he/she/it put	they put

- *I put the package on his desk.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has put
PAST PERFECT … had put

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am putting	we are putting
you are putting	you are putting
he/she/it is putting	they are putting

- *I am putting the dishes into the dishwasher.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was putting	we were putting
you were putting	you were putting
he/she/it was putting	they were putting

- *The kids were putting peanut butter on their fruit.*

FUTURE … will put
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be putting
FUTURE PERFECT … will have put

PAST PASSIVE

I was put	we were put
you were put	you were put
he/she/it was put	they were put

- *The documents were put into the safe.*

COMPLEMENTS

put ____ *place, set*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE
I always put **my keys *on the dresser***.
We put **the new rug *in the living room***.
The guards put **a barricade *across the road***.
She put **her hand *under the kitten*** to lift it.
Terry put **her knitting *aside*** and picked up a book.
The clerk put **a price of $49.99 *on the dress***.
The coach put **pressure *on the team***.

PASSIVE
The picture was put ***above the fireplace***.

put ____ *insert*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
I put **the key *into the lock*** and turned it.
We put **the note *under his door***.
The telephone company will put **a new satellite *into orbit***.
You will need to put **your car *into the garage***.

PASSIVE
The suitcases were put ***into the closet***.

put ____ *cause to be in a certain condition/state*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER
His lectures put **me *to sleep*** sometimes.
The CEO's decision put **3,000 people *out of work***.
Don't put **yourself *in danger***.
He always puts **me *in a good mood***.
I'd like to put **the old lawn mower *to good use***.

put ____ *express, say*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER
I thought he put **it *very well***.
You will need to put **your ideas *in a simpler form***.
I put **my comments *in writing***.

PASSIVE
His complaints were put ***rather rudely***, I thought.

top 30 verb

104 put

put | puts · put · have put ☑ IRREGULAR

PHRASAL VERBS

put SEP **across** *communicate successfully*	He managed to put across the complexity of the plan.
put SEP **aside** *save*	We put aside the income tax refund for our retirement.
put SEP **away** *store*	We need to put away the good silverware. Would you put the ketchup away, please?
put SEP **away** *eat/drink a lot of*	Steve can really put away the potato chips.
put SEP **down** *overcome with force, suppress*	The government put down a rebellion in the provinces.
put SEP **down** *write down*	It's important to put everything down on paper.
put SEP **down** *include on a list*	The campaign volunteer put me down as a "maybe."
put SEP **down** *find fault with, insult*	She put him down in front of all their friends.
put SEP **down** *pay as the first installment*	You can put 10% down and pay the rest in 90 days.
put forth _____ *grow* [PLANTS]	The daffodils are putting forth their blooms early.
put SEP **forth/forward** *propose, suggest*	She put forward her plan to save endangered species.
put SEP **in** *add*	Could you put in a paragraph about offshore drilling?
put SEP **in** *install*	We put in more shelves for our books.
put in for _____ *formally request*	The defendant put in for a change of venue. Drake put in for the vacant Senate seat.
put SEP **off** *repel*	Bubba's vulgar language really puts me off.
put SEP **off** *postpone*	We'll have to put the meeting off until next week.
put on _____ *pretend*	Ron put on his fake French accent, and we all laughed.
put _____ **on** *deceive [someone]*	Don't believe him; he's just putting you on.
put SEP **on** *dress in [clothing]*	Will I need to put my coat on?
put SEP **on** *add*	Uncle Nelson has put on quite a bit of weight.
put SEP **on** *present [entertainment]*	The senior class put on a musical.
put SEP **on** *apply [cosmetics]*	She puts lipstick on in the morning and after lunch.
put SEP **on** *start [something] playing/working*	We put on some rock music for Dad. Mom put a pot of coffee on for us.
put SEP **out** *extinguish*	The campers put the fire out with water from the pond.
put SEP **out** *publish, issue*	They put out 40 titles a year. The Beatles put "The White Album" out in 1968.
put out _____ *generate a lot of*	Your laptop puts out a lot of heat.
put SEP **out** *make unconscious*	The anesthesia will put you out, and you won't remember the surgery.
put SEP **through** *succeed in doing*	The new CEO put the merger through.
put _____ **through** *pay for [someone's] attendance at*	Laurie put herself through law school at Georgetown.
put SEP **up** *give lodging to*	We can put your parents up for one night. The airline put the stranded passengers up at a hotel.
put SEP **up** *offer*	Our neighbors put their house up for sale.
put SEP **up** *provide*	John put up $2,000 for the new playground.
put SEP **up** *build*	They put up a new drugstore in just four months.
put SEP **up** *nominate*	They put Renni up for a three-year term.
put up with _____ *tolerate*	Martha couldn't put up with the noise anymore.
put upon _____ *take advantage of*	I don't like to be put upon by my friends.

top 30 verb

☑ IRREGULAR

quit | quits · quit · have quit

quit 105

PRESENT

I quit	we quit
you quit	you quit
he/she/it quits	they quit

- *He usually quits around 5 o'clock.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am quitting	we are quitting
you are quitting	you are quitting
he/she/it is quitting	they are quitting

- *I am quitting next week.*

PAST

I quit	we quit
you quit	you quit
he/she/it quit	they quit

- *I quit my job last year.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was quitting	we were quitting
you were quitting	you were quitting
he/she/it was quitting	they were quitting

- *He was quitting because he needed a full-time job.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has quit
PAST PERFECT	. . . had quit

FUTURE	. . . will quit
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be quitting
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have quit

PAST PASSIVE

Quit is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

quit *stop functioning*	My cell phone just quit. The engine quits if you give it too much gas. His poor old heart finally quit.
quit *stop working at the end of a work period*	When do they quit for the day? I am getting tired. How soon can we quit? We can't quit until the next shift comes in.
quit *resign from a job*	That's it. I quit! How many people quit in the course of a month? We are moving to a new town, so I will have to quit.
quit *admit defeat, give up*	You beat me again. I quit. No matter how bad things look, we will never quit. They quit before the game was half over.
quit ____ *voluntarily stop doing [a job, school, activity]*	
OBJECT	I am going to quit **my job** at the end of the year. Tom quit **the police force** and went to law school. Mike quit **college** to join the Marines. He quit **the team** because he injured his knee.
WH-CLAUSE	You need to quit **what you are doing** and get a better job. Quit **whatever you are doing** and listen to this!
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	I have to quit **smoking so much**. The company is going to quit **paying overtime**. He can't quit **worrying about what is going to happen**.
quit ____ *leave, move away from*	
OBJECT	They quit **the suburbs** and moved into the city.

PHRASAL VERBS

quit on ____ *leave one's job without warning [someone]*	The carpenters quit on us in the middle of the renovation.
quit on ____ *stop functioning while [someone] is using it*	The lawn mower quits on me when I get into the tall grass. The furnace quit on us again.

106 read

read | reads · read · have read ☑ IRREGULAR

read ____ *learn from printed/on-screen material*

THAT-CLAUSE	I read **that the company may be up for sale**. The coach read **that we are favored to win**. We read **that the parade may be cancelled**.

read ____ *learn/interpret the meaning of*

OBJECT	I couldn't read **her face** at all. He is very good at reading **people's body language**. Economists don't always read **inflationary signals** correctly. Diplomatic experts read **the implications of every government action**.
OBJECT + *as* OBJECT	I read **his note** ***as an apology***. Everyone read **his press release** ***as an announcement of his candidacy***.

read ____ *measure and show*

OBJECT	The speedometer reads **55 miles per hour**. The thermometer reads **32 degrees Celsius**.

read ____ *state*

DIRECT QUOTATION	The sign reads, **"No shirt, no shoes, no service."**

PHRASAL VERBS

read ____ in/into *infer [additional ideas/messages] from reading*	What did you read into Senator Blather's remarks?
read SEP **off** *read aloud [a list]*	The teacher read off the names of students who had won awards.
read SEP **over/through** *read completely*	Would you read over my paper before I turn it in?
read up on ____ *study/learn by reading*	We have to read up on the current drug laws before the conference next week.

EXPRESSIONS

read between the lines *understand the intended but not explicit meaning of something said/written*	She is good at reading between the lines of politicians' speeches.
read lips *determine the words that someone is saying by watching him/her speak*	When talking to someone who reads lips, you should talk normally.
Read my lips. *Believe what I am about to tell you.*	"Read my lips: No new taxes." [PRESIDENT GEORGE H.W. BUSH]
read [someone] his/her rights *state [someone's] legal rights to [someone who has been arrested]*	The arresting officer read the suspect his rights.
read [someone] like a book *understand [someone] well*	His calm manner doesn't fool me; I can read him like a book.
read [someone] the riot act *scold severely*	When Ed came home late, his father read him the riot act.
read [someone's] mind/thoughts *understand what [someone] is thinking*	How did you know I wanted pizza for dinner? You must have read my mind.

☑ IRREGULAR

read | reads · read · have read

read

106

PRESENT

I read	we read
you read	you read
he/she/it reads	they read

- *He never reads his e-mail.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am reading	we are reading
you are reading	you are reading
he/she/it is reading	they are reading

- *Be quiet! I'm reading.*

PAST

I read	we read
you read	you read
he/she/it read	they read

- *She read nothing but short stories.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was reading	we were reading
you were reading	you were reading
he/she/it was reading	they were reading

- *I was just reading your note.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has read
PAST PERFECT	… had read

FUTURE	… will read
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be reading
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have read

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was read	they were read

- *The transcript was read aloud in court.*

NOTE: The present form of *read* rhymes with *seed*; the past forms of *read* rhyme with *bed*.

COMPLEMENTS

read *understand writing/printing*	Can any of the children read yet?
read *look at and understand the content of printed material*	I love to read. I always read on the airplane.
read ____ *speak [written/printed/on-screen words] aloud*	
ADVERB OF MANNER	She reads **beautifully**. DJ reads **with a different voice for each character**. He reads **too softly for everyone to hear**.
OBJECT	Thank you. You read **that** beautifully. Paul read **the memo** in a perfect imitation of the boss's voice.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	Can you read ***me*** **a story**? The teacher reads ***the class*** **a book** for the last 15 minutes.
to PARAPHRASE	Can you read **a story *to me***? The teacher reads **a book *to the class*** for the last 15 minutes.
PASSIVE	We were read a story every night.
read ____ *decode and get information from [a set of letters/numbers/symbols]*	
OBJECT	I can't read **her handwriting**. He taught himself to read **Old Icelandic**. The gas man came to read **the meter** this morning. Yvonne can't read **music**, but she plays beautifully. Will my computer be able to read **this file**?
read ____ *look at and understand the content of [written/printed/on-screen material]*	
OBJECT	I read **the newspaper** every morning at breakfast. He read **your e-mail** and will get back to you.
PASSIVE	*Julius Caesar* was read in every tenth-grade classroom.
WH-CLAUSE	I read **what you said about me**. You need to read **what is in the fine print** very carefully. He will read **whatever he can get his hands on**.

top 30 verb

rend

rend | rends · rent · have rent
rend | rends · rended · have rended

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

PRESENT

I rend	we rend
you rend	you rend
he/she/it rends	they rend

- *It rends my heart to see her so unhappy.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am rending	we are rending
you are rending	you are rending
he/she/it is rending	they are rending

- *We are rending cotton rags to make paper.*

PAST

I rent	we rent
you rent	you rent
he/she/it rent	they rent

- *The howling of wolves rent the night air.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was rending	we were rending
you were rending	you were rending
he/she/it was rending	they were rending

- *The grieving mourners were rending their clothes.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has rent
PAST PERFECT	… had rent

FUTURE	… will rend
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be rending
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have rent

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was rent	they were rent

- *The quiet was rent by a loud explosion.*

COMPLEMENTS

rend ____ *tear/split forcefully into pieces*

OBJECT	The trap cruelly rent **the animal's skin**. The dryer had rent **the delicate fabrics** to shreds. Carnivores' teeth are designed to rend **their prey**.
PASSIVE	The drapes were rent from top to bottom.

rend ____ *disturb/pierce with sound*

OBJECT	The wolves' howling rent **the night**.
PASSIVE	The night was rent by the wolves' howling.

rend ____ *distress, cause pain to*

OBJECT	Suspicion and doubt rent **their relationship**.
PASSIVE	Her heart was rent by the dreadful sight.

☑ IRREGULAR

rid | rids · rid · have rid

rid 108

PRESENT

I rid	we rid
you rid	you rid
he/she/it rids	they rid

- *The cat rids the barn of mice.*

PAST

I rid	we rid
you rid	you rid
he/she/it rid	they rid

- *They rid themselves of all their coats.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has rid
PAST PERFECT	… had rid

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am ridding	we are ridding
you are ridding	you are ridding
he/she/it is ridding	they are ridding

- *The store is ridding itself of unsold merchandise.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was ridding	we were ridding
you were ridding	you were ridding
he/she/it was ridding	they were ridding

- *I was ridding myself of all my junk.*

FUTURE	… will rid
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be ridding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have rid

PAST PASSIVE

I was rid	we were rid
you were rid	you were rid
he/she/it was rid	they were rid

- *We were finally rid of unwanted visitors.*

COMPLEMENTS

rid ____ *free from [someone/something not wanted]*

OBJECT + *of* OBJECT	They hoped to rid **the world *of nuclear weapons***. I can't rid **myself *of this miserable cold***. You must rid **yourself *of all debt***. They were trying to rid **the field *of all noxious weeds***. The alderman wants to rid **the city *of one-way streets***. The sheriff is trying to rid **the county *of drug dealers***. "Will no one rid **me *of this troublesome priest***?" [HENRY II, LEADING TO THE MURDER OF THOMAS BECKET IN 1170]
PASSIVE	The tent was rid ***of all mosquitoes***.

109 ride

ride | rides · rode · have ridden

☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I ride	we ride
you ride	you ride
he/she/it rides	they ride

- *He rides the bus to work every day.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am riding	we are riding
you are riding	you are riding
he/she/it is riding	they are riding

- *Our hopes are riding on the new government.*

PAST

I rode	we rode
you rode	you rode
he/she/it rode	they rode

- *I rode my bicycle to the store yesterday.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was riding	we were riding
you were riding	you were riding
he/she/it was riding	they were riding

- *He was riding in the first race.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has ridden
PAST PERFECT	… had ridden

FUTURE	… will ride
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be riding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have ridden

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was ridden	they were ridden

- *That horse was last ridden a week ago.*

COMPLEMENTS

ride *sit on a horse/bicycle/motorcycle/etc. and make it move along*	Do you know how to ride? She rides quite well. You never forget how to ride. The cowboys rode 70 miles the first day.
ride *move along in a vehicle*	He never rides when he can walk. I rode to work that day. They rode in a school bus to the meeting.
ride ____ *sit on and make move along* OBJECT	The kids were riding **their bicycles** in the park. We rented horses and rode **them** all afternoon.
ride ____ *move along in/on* OBJECT	We rode **the train** when we were in Germany. I usually ride **the bus** to work. They rode **every ride** at Disneyland.
ride ____ *be carried along on/by* OBJECT	The surfers were riding **the waves**. Investors rode **the boom in housing** for 20 years. The TV networks were still riding **the fad of reality TV**.
ride ____ *tease, nag* OBJECT	The girls are constantly riding **each other** about music. I had better get back to work. The boss is really riding **us**.

PHRASAL VERBS

ride away/down/off/out/up/etc. *move along in a specified direction*	Marvin stopped by to talk, then rode off. We rode out to the ferry landing this morning.
ride on ____ *depend on*	The company's reputation is riding on these negotiations. All his hopes are riding on being promoted to news anchor.
ride _SEP_ **out** *survive in safety*	We rode out the storm in the basement. Can our company ride out these perilous economic times?
ride up *move upward out of place*	His jeans rode up as he jogged across the parking lot.

☑ IRREGULAR

ring | rings · rang · have rung

ring

110

PRESENT

I ring	we ring
you ring	you ring
he/she/it rings	they ring

- *The bell rings on the quarter hour.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am ringing	we are ringing
you are ringing	you are ringing
he/she/it is ringing	they are ringing

- *Your alarm clock is ringing.*

PAST

I rang	we rang
you rang	you rang
he/she/it rang	they rang

- *The phone rang as I was doing dishes.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was ringing	we were ringing
you were ringing	you were ringing
he/she/it was ringing	they were ringing

- *The phone was ringing all morning.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has rung
PAST PERFECT	… had rung

FUTURE	… will ring
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be ringing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have rung

PAST PASSIVE

I was rung	we were rung
you were rung	you were rung
he/she/it was rung	they were rung

- *The church bell was rung every Sunday for years.*

NOTE: The irregular verb *ring* is presented here. The regular verb *ring* (*ring | rings · ringed · have ringed*) means "surround, form a circle around," as in *Cypress trees ring the lake.*

COMPLEMENTS

ring *make the sound of a bell*	All of the church bells were ringing. Good wine glasses will ring if you tap them.
ring *call for service by telephone/bell*	If you need help, just ring. We rang, but nobody came. Please ring for service.
ring *fill a place with sound*	The sound of cannons rang through the air.
ring *be filled with sound*	The halls rang with laughter as the students left for the holiday. After the explosion, my ears rang for half an hour.
ring ____ *cause [a bell/alarm] to sound*	
OBJECT	I knocked and rang **the doorbell**. It takes a lot of practice to ring **the big church bells**.
PASSIVE	The bells are always rung on Easter.
ring ____ *seem to be*	
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	The immigrant's story rings **true**. Harry's apology rang **hollow**.

PHRASAL VERBS

ring out *sound clearly and loudly*	Three shots rang out in the crisp autumn air.
ring _SEP_ **up** *record the price of [something] on a cash register*	The cashier rang up the cauliflower at $1.99 a head.

EXPRESSIONS

ring a bell *seem familiar*	You're right—that name rings a bell.
ring in the new (year), ring out the old *celebrate the beginning of the new year*	We ring in the new year by watching the ball drop at New York's Times Square.
ring off the hook *ring constantly*	I got nothing done this morning—the phone was ringing off the hook.

111 rise

rise | rises · rose · have risen ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I rise	we rise
you rise	you rise
he/she/it rises	they rise

- *The land slowly rises toward the hills.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am rising	we are rising
you are rising	you are rising
he/she/it is rising	they are rising

- *His temperature is still rising.*

PAST

I rose	we rose
you rose	you rose
he/she/it rose	they rose

- *The river rose until the banks overflowed.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was rising	we were rising
you were rising	you were rising
he/she/it was rising	they were rising

- *Prices were steadily rising.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has risen
PAST PERFECT	… had risen

FUTURE	… will rise
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be rising
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have risen

PAST PASSIVE

Risen is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

rise *go to a higher level*	The tide will be rising until four. The moon was just rising above the trees. A loud cheer rose from the spectators. White smoke was rising from the chimney. The Beatles rose to fame overnight. Carly rose to be CEO of a Fortune 500 company. He rose from office boy to company director.
rise *stand/get up*	All rise! [COMMAND ISSUED WHEN A JUDGE ENTERS A COURTROOM] He rose from the couch and turned off the TV. We usually rise before dawn.
rise *become greater/higher/stronger*	As we start going downhill, our speed will rise rapidly. The Roman Empire rose and fell. Stock prices rose two percent today. My income has not risen as much as inflation has. During the concert, the noise rose to unbearable levels. The hills steadily rose as we drove northward. The bread dough was rising quickly. His voice rose to a pitiful squeak. Gas prices have been rising lately. The wind rose to near gale force.

PHRASAL VERBS

rise above _____ *ignore [a bad situation]*	The legislators rose above their petty disagreements and passed an excellent bill.
rise up (against _____) *rebel/revolt (against [someone/something])*	The colonists rose up against George III and his army.

EXPRESSIONS

rise and shine *get out of bed and be energetic*	Rise and shine! We've got a big day ahead of us.
rise to the occasion *succeed in dealing with a difficult situation*	The president rose to the occasion and delivered a forceful, inspiring speech.

PRESENT

I run	we run
you run	you run
he/she/it runs	they run

- *The road runs west to the river.*

PAST

I ran	we ran
you ran	you ran
he/she/it ran	they ran

- *The children ran through the door.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has run
PAST PERFECT … had run

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am running	we are running
you are running	you are running
he/she/it is running	they are running

- *He is running in the Boston Marathon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was running	we were running
you were running	you were running
he/she/it was running	they were running

- *The program was running a little late.*

FUTURE … will run
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be running
FUTURE PERFECT … will have run

PAST PASSIVE

I was run	we were run
you were run	you were run
he/she/it was run	they were run

- *The store was run by Harry and his children.*

COMPLEMENTS

run *go by moving one's legs faster than in walking*	The kids never stop running. I try to run two miles every day. The tiger has escaped! Run!
run *flow* [OF LIQUIDS]	The Missouri River runs into the Mississippi River at St. Louis. The paint was too thin. It ran down the wall in streaks.
run *spread, move freely*	A murmur ran through the crowd. A light breeze ran through the tall grass.
run *operate, be in use/action*	The train runs three times a day. The engine is not running very smoothly. The network servers are not running.
run ____ *operate*	
OBJECT	Do you know how to run **this printing press**? She can run **any equipment in the woodworking shop**.
run ____ *manage*	
OBJECT	He runs **the local supermarket**. The church runs **a preschool program**.
run ____ *go*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	I need to run **to the bank**. We've got to run **home** for something. The ferry runs **from Modoc to Ste. Genevieve and back**.
run ____ *transport*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	Can you run **me *back to the office***? I will run **you *over to the station***.
run ____ *continue, extend*	
ADVERB OF TIME	The festival runs **for four weeks in June**. The fiscal year runs **from July 1 to June 30**. The literature class runs **every quarter**.
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	This path runs **up the bluff to Deer Pond**.
run ____ *cause to continue/extend*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	We ran **electrical conduit *under the floor***. The logging company ran **a gravel road *out to the camp***.

top 30 verb

112 run

run | runs · ran · have run

☑ IRREGULAR

run _____ *perform* OBJECT	Can you run **some errands** for me? The doctor will need to run **some tests**.
run _____ *cost* [INFORMAL] (INDIRECT OBJECT +) DIRECT OBJECT	The shipping will run **$8.95**. The trip will run ***you*** **about $500**.
run _____ *publish* OBJECT	The newspaper ran **several articles on homeless people**. Our company ran **an ad** in the July issue.
run _____ *be [at a certain level]* PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	The store is running **low** on toilet paper. We ran **late** getting to the theater.

PHRASAL VERBS

run across _____ *come upon by chance*	We ran across our cousins at the farmers' market. We ran across old photos of Great-grandfather.
run against _____ *be a candidate opposing*	Senator Blather ran against gun control. She ran against another alderman in the primary.
run along *go away*	Why don't you kids run along? Be back here in two hours.
run (around) with _____ *socialize with*	Tara runs around with her friends from high school.
run _____ **by/past** *seek advice about / approval for [something] from*	Sam ran the speech by Toby.
run ____SEP____ **down** *drain all the power from*	Stop trying to start the car; you'll run the battery down.
run ____SEP____ **down** *criticize*	Brandi ran down the rest of the group.
run for _____ *be a candidate for*	The governor is running for a fourth term.
run _____ **for** *support [someone] as a candidate for*	The party ran an unknown businessman for mayor.
run into _____ *collide with*	My sister ran into a deer on the highway.
run into _____ *meet by chance*	Janey ran into Hulga at the grocery store.
run ____SEP____ **off** *print, make copies of*	I ran off several extra sets for you.
run on _____ *use for power*	Our hybrid car runs on gasoline and an NiMH battery.
run on *continue without stopping*	The presentation of awards ran on forever.
run out *come to an end, be used up*	Time is running out, and I still have an essay to write. Our supply of helium ran out—no more balloons!
run out of _____ *use up*	Mom finally ran out of patience with us kids. They ran out of popcorn before the second show.
run over *overflow*	Quick! The bathtub is running over.
run over _____ *knock down while driving*	Her friend ran over a skunk.
run over _____ *exceed a limit*	The class was supposed to last an hour, but it ran over.
run ____SEP____ **over** *bring [something]*	Would you run the latest proposal over to my office?
run through _____ *use up*	Shane ran through his inheritance in a year.
run to _____ *amount to*	The grocery bill runs to $123.44. Homer's *Odyssey* runs to more than 12,000 lines.

top 30 verb

run ____SEP____ **up** *accumulate [debt]*	George ran up a sizable tab at the luxury hotel.
run ____SEP____ **up** *cause to increase*	Technology gains ran stock prices up. The Cobras ran up a big lead, then benched their starters.
run up against _____ *encounter*	He finally ran up against a problem he couldn't solve.

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

saw | saws · sawed · have sawed
saw | saws · sawed · have sawn

saw

PRESENT

I saw	we saw
you saw	you saw
he/she/it saws	they saw

- *He saws plywood with a special blade.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sawing	we are sawing
you are sawing	you are sawing
he/she/it is sawing	they are sawing

- *I am sawing fence posts.*

PAST

I sawed	we sawed
you sawed	you sawed
he/she/it sawed	they sawed

- *I sawed the board in half.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sawing	we were sawing
you were sawing	you were sawing
he/she/it was sawing	they were sawing

- *He was sawing as fast as he could.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has sawn
PAST PERFECT	. . . had sawn

FUTURE	. . . will saw
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be sawing
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have sawn

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was sawn	they were sawn

- *The beams were sawn nearly through.*

COMPLEMENTS

saw *cut using a saw*	We have been sawing all afternoon. I will have to saw at an angle. Look out for nails when you saw. The new blade saws smoothly.
saw *be cut using a saw*	These pine two-by-fours saw very easily.
saw *use a sawing motion*	Holmes was sawing on his violin. When he jumped off the cliff, his arms sawed up and down.
saw ______ *cut/shape using a saw* OBJECT	We are sawing **oak planks** for flooring. I will saw **the sheets of fiberglass** with a special blade. John sawed **the boards** into two-foot lengths. They have sawn **a lot of timber** this week. We were sawing **jigsaw puzzles** out of masonite.
PASSIVE	The lumber had been sawn against the grain.

PHRASAL VERBS

saw at ______ *cut back and forth using a knife/bar/etc.*	The prisoner was sawing at the window bars with a table knife.
saw SEP **down** *cut down*	The lumberjacks sawed the entire woods down.
saw SEP **off** *cut off*	She sawed off the branches that she could reach.
saw SEP **up** *cut into pieces*	Gerry sawed the board up into seven pieces of equal length.

114 say

say | says · said · have said ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I say	we say
you say	you say
he/she/it says	they say

- *He always says that he is too busy.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am saying	we are saying
you are saying	you are saying
he/she/it is saying	they are saying

- *I am not saying anything.*

PAST

I said	we said
you said	you said
he/she/it said	they said

- *She said something I couldn't understand.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was saying	we were saying
you were saying	you were saying
he/she/it was saying	they were saying

- *We were saying that it wouldn't be a problem.*

PRESENT PERFECT	... have | has said
PAST PERFECT	... had said

FUTURE	... will say
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	... will be saying
FUTURE PERFECT	... will have said

PAST PASSIVE

I was said	we were said
you were said	you were said
he/she/it was said	they were said

- *They were said to be in the oil business.*

COMPLEMENTS

say _____ *speak, put into words, express*

OBJECT	The teacher said **"hello" in Latin**. They said **nothing about it**. Would you say **your name** again, slowly?
PASSIVE	His name was said, but I didn't catch it.
INFINITIVE	He said **to go ahead without him**. The tour guide says **to be back on the bus in 15 minutes**. The recipe said **to use only the egg whites**. Her note said **to leave the back door unlocked**.
THAT-CLAUSE	They said **that they would come back later**. The law says **that everyone is presumed to be innocent**. He said **that we should expect snow**.
WH-CLAUSE	He never said **what he meant to do about the problem**. Did he say **when they were coming**?
WH-INFINITIVE	The instructions say **how to attach the handlebars**.
DIRECT QUOTATION	**"Good morning,"** she said. **"We're glad you're here."**

say _____ *show, indicate*

OBJECT	The clock says **2:15**. His expression said **it all**.
(to OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE	The tone of his voice says **that he's disappointed**. My instinct says ***to me*** **that we should really be cautious**.
WH-CLAUSE	Their veto says **what they think about the proposal**.

be said _____ *be commonly reported* [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]

INFINITIVE	She was said to be one of the best lawyers around. He is said to take forever to make up his mind.

EXPRESSIONS

have _____ **to say for yourself** *be able to say in one's favor/defense*	The defendant had nothing to say for himself. What do you have to say for yourself, young man?
say the word *give a signal*	When I say the word, jump out and shout "Happy Birthday!"
say yes/no (to _____**)** *agree/disagree (with [someone/something])*	Sarah said yes to Lucas when he proposed to her. Just say no to drugs.

PRESENT

I see	we see
you see	you see
he/she/it sees	they see

- *He sees a physical therapist once a week.*

PAST

I saw	we saw
you saw	you saw
he/she/it saw	they saw

- *I saw Marian yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has seen
PAST PERFECT	. . . had seen

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am seeing	we are seeing
you are seeing	you are seeing
he/she/it is seeing	they are seeing

- *I am seeing them at 10 o'clock.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was seeing	we were seeing
you were seeing	you were seeing
he/she/it was seeing	they were seeing

- *We were seeing some friends last night.*

FUTURE	. . . will see
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be seeing
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have seen

PAST PASSIVE

I was seen	we were seen
you were seen	you were seen
he/she/it was seen	they were seen

- *The suspect was last seen fleeing the crime scene.*

COMPLEMENTS

see *use the sense of sight*	Ray can't see anymore. You won't be able to see temporarily.
see *understand [something previously said]*	Oh, I see! [USUALLY SPOKEN EMPHATICALLY]
see *acknowledge [something previously said]*	I see. [USUALLY SPOKEN IN A LEVEL OR FALLING TONE]
see _____ *observe with one's eyes*	
OBJECT	I saw **Tom** at the grocery store. We saw **the documentary** on TV last night. **What** do you see?
PASSIVE	The star is best seen through a high-powered telescope.
OBJECT + *BASE-FORM INFINITIVE*	Sam saw **the wind** ***rip the roof off the house***. Nobody saw **the suspect** ***break into the house***.
OBJECT + *PRESENT PARTICIPLE*	We saw **Charles** ***walking to school***. I'm sorry. I didn't see **you** ***standing there***.
PASSIVE	Mary was seen ***talking to Brett***.
OBJECT + *PAST PARTICIPLE*	Someone must have seen **the car** ***stolen***. We saw **the bridge** ***swept away in the flood***.
THAT-CLAUSE	I see **that you bought a new car**. We saw in the paper **that your son is getting married**.
EMPHATIC PARAPHRASE	**You bought a new car**, I see.
WH-CLAUSE	I saw **what they are making for dinner**. Did anybody see **where the kids went**?
see _____ *understand*	
OBJECT	I see **your point**. We all see **the attractions of living in a big city**. Nobody saw **the magnitude of the risk**.
OBJECT + *INFINITIVE* [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]	He is widely seen ***to be qualified***. The judge was seen ***to favor the prosecution***.
THAT-CLAUSE	I see **that we are in big trouble**. Our lawyer saw **that they were on shaky legal ground**.
WH-CLAUSE	I see **what we should do**. No one saw **how risky the plan was**.

115 **see**

see | sees · saw · have seen ☑ IRREGULAR

see _____ *meet with, visit*	
OBJECT	I will see **the reporters** at 2 o'clock. Guess **whom** I saw today? Would you stop by and see **Aunt Tillie**?
PASSIVE	You will be seen by the next available doctor.
see _____ *seek advice/information/help from*	
OBJECT	You should see **a doctor** about that rash. Steve saw **a cancer specialist** today. Alexander is seeing **his thesis advisor** on Tuesday.
see _____ *find out*	
WH-CLAUSE	See **who's at the door**, please. Kari will see **what the congressman wants**.
see _____ *have a romantic relationship with* [USED ONLY IN THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES]	
OBJECT	Paul is seeing **a friend of mine**. She is finally seeing **someone that we all like**. Are you seeing **anyone**?
see _____ *accompany*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	Louise saw **her guests** ***to the door***. Jake saw **Mallory** ***home from the party***.
see _____ *consider*	
OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN	They saw **Laura** ***as a threat***. I see **this** ***as a golden opportunity***.
OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	We see **her** ***as inexperienced and unreliable***. The manager saw **his staff** ***as eager and energetic***. Traders will see **the economic picture** ***as unstable***.
see _____ *make sure*	
(to it) THAT-CLAUSE	See **(to it) that the lights are turned off before you leave**. We asked the janitor to see **(to it) that the boxes are removed from the hallway**.
see _____ *experience*	
OBJECT	My hometown has seen **lots of changes**. The price of milk has seen **a large increase**.

PHRASAL VERBS

see _____ **back/down/in/out/up/**etc. *accompany in a specified direction*	May I see you back to your office? The receptionist will see you out.
see about _____ *take care of*	My secretary will see about ordering new carpet.
see in *look inside*	The neighbors can see in if the drapes are open.
see _____ **off** *accompany [to a place of departure]*	I'll see you off at the train station.
see out *look outside*	The windows were papered over so we couldn't see out.
see through *look through something*	The windshield is so dirty I can't see through.
see through _____ *understand the deception in*	His wife finally saw through all his lies.
see _SEP_ **through** *bring to completion*	Glenda saw the project through.
see _SEP_ **through** *help in a difficult time*	An extra $100 a week will see us through.
see to _____ *take care of*	Would you see to the lizard in the kitchen?

top 30 verb

seek | seeks · sought · have sought

seek

PRESENT

I seek	we seek
you seek	you seek
he/she/it seeks	they seek

- *France seeks to establish trade relations.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am seeking	we are seeking
you are seeking	you are seeking
he/she/it is seeking	they are seeking

- *We are only seeking the truth.*

PAST

I sought	we sought
you sought	you sought
he/she/it sought	they sought

- *The hikers sought a safe place to camp.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was seeking	we were seeking
you were seeking	you were seeking
he/she/it was seeking	they were seeking

- *The birds were seeking suitable nesting places.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has sought
PAST PERFECT	… had sought

FUTURE	… will seek
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be seeking
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have sought

PAST PASSIVE

I was sought	we were sought
you were sought	you were sought
he/she/it was sought	they were sought

- *Voting rights were sought by women's groups for decades.*

COMPLEMENTS

seek ____ *look for*

OBJECT — Ruby was seeking **a good place for the family reunion**.
Seek **shelter** immediately when you hear the tornado siren.
We sought **anybody who could answer our questions**.

PASSIVE — A suspect in the killing is being sought by the police.

seek ____ *ask for*

OBJECT — You need to seek **professional advice**.
I am seeking **information about cell phones**.
We should seek **help on this problem**.

PASSIVE — Technical information on wind farms is being sought.

seek ____ *try, attempt*

INFINITIVE — We sought **to find a better solution to the problem**.
They are seeking **to replace their old computers**.
We never sought **to cause any problems**.
The company has always sought **to have excellent customer relations**.

seek ____ *try to get/achieve*

OBJECT — The plaintiff is seeking **damages of $2 million**.
He sought **revenge for his brother's murder**.
She sought **perfection in everything she did**.

PHRASAL VERBS

seek SEP **out** *look for and find* — The candidate sought out the best pollsters in the country.

EXPRESSIONS

Seek and ye shall find. *If you look hard enough for something, you will find it.* [BIBLE] — The farmers' market has every kind of vegetable and fruit you can think of. Just seek and ye shall find.

117 sell

sell | sells · sold · have sold ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I sell	we sell
you sell	you sell
he/she/it sells	they sell

- *Our store sells sports equipment.*

PAST

I sold	we sold
you sold	you sold
he/she/it sold	they sold

- *We sold the desk on craigslist.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has sold
PAST PERFECT	… had sold

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am selling	we are selling
you are selling	you are selling
he/she/it is selling	they are selling

- *These gadgets are selling like crazy.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was selling	we were selling
you were selling	you were selling
he/she/it was selling	they were selling

- *We were selling children's clothing at half price.*

FUTURE	… will sell
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be selling
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have sold

PAST PASSIVE

I was sold	we were sold
you were sold	you were sold
he/she/it was sold	they were sold

- *That house was sold last week.*

COMPLEMENTS

sell *be a successful product/idea*	I think that his new CD will really sell. His proposal will never sell.
sell _____ *exchange for money*	
OBJECT	I want to sell **my old computer**. He finally sold **his jewelry business**. Should we sell **the rocking chair** or give it away?
OBJECT + *for* OBJECT	She sold **the lamp** ***for $10***. ***How much*** did you sell **the table** ***for***?
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	We sold ***them*** **some lawn furniture**. Jay sold ***the dealer*** **his coin collection**.
to PARAPHRASE	We sold **some lawn furniture** ***to them***. Jay sold **his coin collection** ***to the dealer***.
OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE	He sold **us** ***just what we had in mind***. We sell **people** ***whatever kind of car they want***.
sell _____ *be given in exchange [for money]*	
for OBJECT	The Picasso painting sold **for $104 million**. The antique rolling pin sold **for $25**.
sell _____ *offer for purchase*	
OBJECT	The hardware store sells **electrical and plumbing supplies**. Our group is selling **raffle tickets**. They sell **fish sandwiches** on Friday.
PASSIVE	Gym memberships are sold by the month.
OBJECT + *for* OBJECT	The boutique is selling **scarves** ***for as little as $7***.
sell _____ *be offered for purchase*	
for OBJECT	Milk is selling **for $3.50 a gallon**.
sell _____ *successfully promote*	
OBJECT	John really knows how to sell **his vision for the company**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sell _SEP_ **off** *liquidate*	We sold off our clothing division two years ago.
sell out of _____ *sell all of*	We sold out of French Roast coffee yesterday. We are sold out of chocolate ice cream.

PRESENT

I send	we send
you send	you send
he/she/it sends	they send

- *The firm sends letters by registered mail.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sending	we are sending
you are sending	you are sending
he/she/it is sending	they are sending

- *I am sending you an e-mail.*

PAST

I sent	we sent
you sent	you sent
he/she/it sent	they sent

- *They sent us a nice note.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sending	we were sending
you were sending	you were sending
he/she/it was sending	they were sending

- *She was sending her children to a private school.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has sent
PAST PERFECT	… had sent

FUTURE	… will send
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be sending
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have sent

PAST PASSIVE

I was sent	we were sent
you were sent	you were sent
he/she/it was sent	they were sent

- *The letter was sent to the wrong address.*

COMPLEMENTS

send _____ *mail, dispatch*	
OBJECT	They forgot to send **the letter**. We will send **a car** to pick them up.
send _____ *cause to go / be carried*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	We sent **our luggage *on ahead***. I sent **the children *to bed*** early. The wizard sent **Dorothy *back to Kansas***. The accident sent **a cloud of dust *into the air***.
PASSIVE	The package was sent ***to the wrong office***.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	Send ***me* your ideas**. We sent ***them* a wedding present**.
to PARAPHRASE	Send **your ideas *to me***. We sent **a wedding present *to them***.

PHRASAL VERBS

send ___SEP___ **away/back/by/down/in/out/over**/etc. *cause to go in a specified direction*	The publisher sent my manuscript back unread. You may send the ambassador in now.
send (away/back/down/off/out/up) for _____ *summon, request*	Send for the school nurse immediately. Abby sent away for extra copies of the report. Let's send out for pizza.
send ___SEP___ **in** *submit*	Please send your application in by December 31.
send _____ **in for** *put [someone] into a contest as a replacement for*	The coach sent Hopkins in for Busam.
send ___SEP___ **off** *mail*	We sent off a present to our granddaughter.
send ___SEP___ **off** *cause to go away*	Send the children off so that we can talk privately.
send ___SEP___ **off** *say farewell to [someone leaving on a trip]*	The town sent the soldiers off with a parade.
send ___SEP___ **out** *issue, distribute*	The company sent a press release out this morning.
send _____ **out for** *cause [someone] to go on an errand to get*	I sent Billie out for some more ice cream.
send ___SEP___ **up/down** *cause to go up/down*	Good economic news sent the stock market up.

119 set

set | sets · set · have set

☑ IRREGULAR

PHRASAL VERBS

set SEP **aside/down/forward/out/up**/etc. *put in a specified position*	The logician set the problem aside and went to lunch. Our neighbors set scraps out for our dog.
set about _____ *begin*	The Scouts set about repairing the holes in the tent.
set _____ **against** *cause to disagree with*	His budget policies set the president against Congress.
set _____ **apart** *make distinctive*	His honesty and sense of justice set him apart.
set SEP **aside** *keep apart*	We set aside $200 a month for the kids' education.
set SEP **aside** *reject, nullify*	They set their differences aside and became close friends. Congress set the issue aside for the time being. The Supreme Court set aside the appellate court ruling.
set SEP **back** *delay*	The bad economy will set back our plans to expand. The president's order set genetic research back six years.
set SEP **back** *cost [someone]* [INFORMAL]	How much did the new lawn tractor set you back?
set SEP **down** *put in writing*	The secretary has set down what was said at the executive meeting.
set _____ **down to** *blame [something] on*	The boss set Hank's mistake down to inexperience and naiveté.
set SEP **forth** *announce, make known*	The church set forth its principles of equality and inclusion.
set in *begin*	Decay has already set in. With all the political commercials on TV, voter fatigue has set in.
set off/out *depart, start out*	Three hundred pioneers set off from St. Joseph, Missouri. Refugees set out in overcrowded boats for the mainland.
set SEP **off** *make distinctive*	The designer set the title off from the text below.
set SEP **off** *cause to be very emotional*	Be careful not to set Dolores off; she's already angry.
set SEP **off** *trigger, cause to make a noise*	My son set the metal detector off with his belt buckle.
set SEP **off** *cause to explode*	Quarrymen set off 150 pounds of dynamite.
set on/upon _____ *attack*	The citizens set upon the soldiers and beat them badly.
set SEP **out** *display*	The store sets out its Christmas items right after Halloween.
set SEP **out** *plant*	Don't set your tomatoes out before the last frost.
set to _____ *begin*	Farmers set to plugging the hole in the dike. Engineers set to work on the project.
set _____ **to** *order to*	My parents set me to vacuuming the dining room.
set SEP **up** *arrange*	Let's set a meeting up with the committee chairpersons.
set SEP **up** *build, erect*	Gerry set up a miniature railroad in the living room.
set SEP **up** *found, establish*	Our group set up a web-based discussion forum.
set SEP **up** *raise to power / a higher position / etc.*	Adolf Hitler set himself up as dictator.
set SEP **up** *prepare for use*	She set her mom's computer up to do e-mail.
set SEP **up** *make [someone] the target of a joke/deception*	They set me up on April Fool's Day, and I fell for it.
set SEP **up with** *arrange a date for [someone] with*	Would you set me up with your roommate?

top 30 verb

PRESENT

I set	we set
you set	you set
he/she/it sets	they set

- *The auctioneer sets a minimum bid.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am setting	we are setting
you are setting	you are setting
he/she/it is setting	they are setting

- *I am setting the alarm for 6 A.M.*

PAST

I set	we set
you set	you set
he/she/it set	they set

- *I set my chair next to the window.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was setting	we were setting
you were setting	you were setting
he/she/it was setting	they were setting

- *We were setting a new direction for the company.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has set
PAST PERFECT … had set

FUTURE … will set
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be setting
FUTURE PERFECT … will have set

PAST PASSIVE

I was set	we were set
you were set	you were set
he/she/it was set	they were set

- *The couch was set in front of the TV screen.*

COMPLEMENTS

set *sink below the horizon*
The sun will set at 6:43 tonight.
The moon was just setting below the trees in the west.
Orion was setting behind the snowy hills.

set *become solid/rigid*
The chocolate mousse never set properly.
The cement in the patio was setting nicely.
Be careful. The glue sets in just a few seconds.

set _____ *put, lay*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE
The hunters set **their guns** ***against the fence***.
I set **my foot** ***on the bottom rung of the ladder***.
She set **the novel** ***in postwar Canada***.

PASSIVE
The house was set ***well back from the road***.
The movie was set ***in Los Angeles***.
The album had been set ***on a shelf in the living room***.

set _____ *arrange, adjust*

OBJECT
The doctor set **my dislocated shoulder**.
I have set **the clock** for daylight saving time.
I set **the volume on the radio** way too high.
Last winter, we set **the thermostat** at 62 degrees.

PASSIVE
His face was set in a permanent scowl.

set _____ *establish, fix*

OBJECT
The track team set **a record for the 400-meter relay**.
The Hunt brothers tried to set **the price of silver**.
Sarah and Lucas have set **the date of their wedding**.
Graham sets **a good example for the other children**.
The real estate agent set **the price of our house** at $235,000.
We set **a fund-raising goal of $200**.

set _____ *cause to be in a certain state/condition*

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE
Lincoln set **the slaves** ***free***.
Grandpa always set **the dogs** ***loose*** after breakfast.

OBJECT + *to* PRESENT PARTICIPLE
The speech set **us** ***to thinking about harnessing the sun's energy***.

120 **sew**

sew | sews · sewed · have sewn
sew | sews · sewed · have sewed

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

PRESENT

I sew	we sew
you sew	you sew
he/she/it sews	they sew

- *We sew only sports jerseys here.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sewing	we are sewing
you are sewing	you are sewing
he/she/it is sewing	they are sewing

- *He is sewing his own Halloween costume.*

PAST

I sewed	we sewed
you sewed	you sewed
he/she/it sewed	they sewed

- *You sewed the pocket on upside down!*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sewing	we were sewing
you were sewing	you were sewing
he/she/it was sewing	they were sewing

- *I was sewing a baby blanket for charity.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has sewn
PAST PERFECT	… had sewn

FUTURE	… will sew
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be sewing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have sewn

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was sewn	they were sewn

- *All clothes by this company were sewn in the United States.*

COMPLEMENTS

sew *stitch together a garment, etc.*	Don't bother Mom—she's sewing. Aunt Rosie sews in her spare time.
sew ___ *stitch together, fasten with stitches*	
OBJECT	The seamstress can sew **a jacket** in a single day. Our neighbor sews **quilts** for a living.
PASSIVE	The costumes have already been sewn for the play.
OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE	An assistant will sew **the incision *closed***.
PASSIVE	The pockets were sewn ***shut***.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	My sister is sewing ***me* a pair of pajamas**. Birds sewed ***Cinderella* a gown to wear to the ball**.
for PARAPHRASE	My sister is sewing **a pair of pajamas *for me***. Birds sewed **a gown *for Cinderella* to wear to the ball**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sew _SEP_ **on** *attach with stitches*	Will you please sew this button on? I sewed the merit badges on for you.
sew _SEP_ **up** *stitch together*	The intern sewed the surgical patient up.
sew _SEP_ **up** *conclude [a deal, a discussion]*	Players sewed contract talks up with owners on Friday. We can sew up the entire deal by noon.

☑ IRREGULAR

shake | shakes · shook · have shaken

shake

PRESENT

I shake	we shake
you shake	you shake
he/she/it shakes	they shake

- *The windows shake when it's windy.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shaking	we are shaking
you are shaking	you are shaking
he/she/it is shaking	they are shaking

- *My hands are shaking.*

PAST

I shook	we shook
you shook	you shook
he/she/it shook	they shook

- *I shook the umbrella before I closed it.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shaking	we were shaking
you were shaking	you were shaking
he/she/it was shaking	they were shaking

- *He was shaking his head in disbelief.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has shaken
PAST PERFECT	… had shaken

FUTURE	… will shake
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be shaking
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have shaken

PAST PASSIVE

I was shaken	we were shaken
you were shaken	you were shaken
he/she/it was shaken	they were shaken

- *Everyone was badly shaken by the earthquake.*

COMPLEMENTS

shake *tremble, vibrate*	His voice shakes whenever he gets excited. The floor shakes whenever a train goes by. My legs were beginning to shake from the strain of lifting the box.
shake ___ *cause to move quickly up and down / back and forth / from side to side*	
OBJECT	The cat is shaking **its toy mouse** furiously. I shook **David** by the shoulder to wake him up. I shook **my head** vigorously, trying to get him to stop talking. We shook **the rugs** and put them back on the floor. They shook **hands** and smiled for the camera. Shake **the dressing** well before using.
shake ___ *shock, surprise, upset*	
OBJECT	The news about the accident shook **us all** badly. The sudden increase in oil prices shook **the financial markets**. Her daughter's death shook **her religious faith**.
PASSIVE	She was visibly shaken when she returned.

PHRASAL VERBS

shake _SEP_ **down/off/out/up**/etc. *cause to move quickly in a specified direction*	The gardener shook the apples down. Tip Top stood up and shook the dust off.
shake _SEP_ **down** *get money from by using threats*	The politician shook down corporations for campaign contributions.
shake _SEP_ **off** *get away from*	The car thief was unable to shake the police off.
shake _SEP_ **off** *get rid of*	It took me a week to shake off a cold.
shake _SEP_ **out** *clean by shaking*	We put fresh sheets on the bed and shook out the blankets.
shake _SEP_ **out** *straighten by shaking*	Lydia shook the shirts out before hanging them up.
shake _SEP_ **up** *mix by shaking*	I shook the salad dressing up before opening the bottle.
shake _SEP_ **up** *change greatly*	The new department head shook up the staff with a round of hiring and firing.

122 shave

shave | shaves · shaved · have shaved
shave | shaves · shaved · have shaven

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I shave	we shave
you shave	you shave
he/she/it shaves	they shave

- *He shaves every morning.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shaving	we are shaving
you are shaving	you are shaving
he/she/it is shaving	they are shaving

- *Can you get the phone? I'm shaving.*

PAST

I shaved	we shaved
you shaved	you shaved
he/she/it shaved	they shaved

- *We shaved some soap to get thin flakes.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shaving	we were shaving
you were shaving	you were shaving
he/she/it was shaving	they were shaving

- *He was shaving by the time he was 16.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has shaven
PAST PERFECT	… had shaven

FUTURE	… will shave
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be shaving
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have shaven

PAST PASSIVE

I was shaven	we were shaven
you were shaven	you were shaven
he/she/it was shaven	they were shaven

- *His head was shaven every few days.*

COMPLEMENTS

shave *cut off one's beard*

I need to shave.
Richard Nixon had such a heavy beard that he shaved twice a day.
When was the last time you shaved?

shave ____ *cut off the hair of with a razor*

OBJECT
Before the surgery, a nurse shaved **my back**.
Most women shave **their legs**.
Competitive swimmers shave **their whole bodies**.

PASSIVE
Before the makeup could be applied, his head was shaven.

shave ____ *cut a thin slice from*

OBJECT
We shaved **dark chocolate** to get chocolate curls.
Shave **the cheese** as thin as you can.

PASSIVE
Thin slices of prosciutto were shaven for the appetizers.

shave ____ *reduce slightly*

OBJECT
We have to shave **our prices** to remain competitive.
The factory shaved **costs** by turning the heat down five degrees.
The store shaved **ten cents** off the regular price.
The injury shaved **the odds of our winning**.

PASSIVE
A few seconds were shaven from the old record.

PHRASAL VERBS

shave SEP **off** *cut [from]*

He shaved off a little sliver from the edge of the table with a plane.

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

shear | shears · sheared · have sheared
shear | shears · sheared · have shorn

shear

PRESENT

I shear	we shear
you shear	you shear
he/she/it shears	they shear

- *He always shears the sheep himself.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shearing	we are shearing
you are shearing	you are shearing
he/she/it is shearing	they are shearing

- *We are shearing all this week.*

PAST

I sheared	we sheared
you sheared	you sheared
he/she/it sheared	they sheared

- *He sheared the rough edges off.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shearing	we were shearing
you were shearing	you were shearing
he/she/it was shearing	they were shearing

- *She was shearing the plants almost to the ground.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has shorn
PAST PERFECT	. . . had shorn

FUTURE	. . . will shear
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be shearing
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have shorn

PAST PASSIVE

I was shorn	we were shorn
you were shorn	you were shorn
he/she/it was shorn	they were shorn

- *The sheep were shorn last week.*

COMPLEMENTS

shear *remove fleece from sheep*	Nobody can shear all day long without getting exhausted. Are we going to shear tomorrow? We will shear until it gets too dark.
shear *break off under stress* [OFTEN WITH *off*]	The wing sheared off in the crash. A bolt sheared when we put too much weight on the press.
shear ____ *remove [hair, wool, grass, etc.] by cutting/chopping*	
OBJECT	An army barber sheared **my hair** the day I was inducted. Very few ranches shear **their own sheep** these days. They shear **the putting greens** to about half an inch.
PASSIVE	After the sheep have been shorn, the wool is weighed.
shear ____ *break off by cutting through* [OFTEN WITH *off*]	
OBJECT	The SUV swerved and sheared **a utility pole** off.
PASSIVE	The roof of the truck was shorn off in the collision.
shear ____ *deprive*	
OBJECT + *of* OBJECT	Rebels have shorn **the dictator** ***of power***. A hospital gown sheared **me** ***of all dignity***.
PASSIVE	I was shorn ***of all my money*** in the poker game.

124 shed

shed | sheds · shed · have shed

☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I shed	we shed
you shed	you shed
he/she/it sheds	they shed

- *The tree sheds its leaves all over the patio.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shedding	we are shedding
you are shedding	you are shedding
he/she/it is shedding	they are shedding

- *They are shedding their distrust of modern ways.*

PAST

I shed	we shed
you shed	you shed
he/she/it shed	they shed

- *The cats shed all over my black sweater.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shedding	we were shedding
you were shedding	you were shedding
he/she/it was shedding	they were shedding

- *The dogs were shedding as the days grew longer.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has shed
PAST PERFECT	… had shed

FUTURE	… will shed
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be shedding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have shed

PAST PASSIVE

I was shed	we were shed
you were shed	you were shed
he/she/it was shed	they were shed

- *Our coats were shed as soon as we stepped onto the plane.*

COMPLEMENTS

shed *cast off / lose fur/skin/leaves naturally*

My dog sheds in the spring and autumn.
Most reptiles shed whenever they get too big for their old skin.
Most trees in temperate latitudes shed annually.

shed ____ *cast off / lose [fur/skin/leaves] naturally*

OBJECT

Most long-haired dogs shed **a lot of fur** in the spring.
All snakes shed **their skins**.
Most shade trees shed **their leaves**.

PASSIVE

Cat hair had been shed all over the rug.

shed ____ *take off, get rid of*

OBJECT

The kids shed **their clothes** and put on their bathing suits.
I hope to shed **about ten pounds** this year.
Many people never shed **their fear of public speaking**.
You will have to shed **some of your low-performing stocks**.

PASSIVE

Their fear of foreign travel has never really been shed.

shed ____ *cause to flow/drain/slough off*

OBJECT

My new jacket sheds **water** pretty well.
Our tent didn't seem to shed **a drop of water**.
The roof is steep enough to shed **snow**.

shed ____ *let flow*

OBJECT

We shed **many tears** over her death.
The soldier shed **a lot of blood** before a tourniquet was applied.

EXPRESSIONS

shed crocodile tears *pretend that one is crying*

The banks were shedding crocodile tears for depositors who lost money.

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

shine | shines · shone · have shone
shine | shines · shined · have shined

shine 125

PRESENT

I shine	we shine
you shine	you shine
he/she/it shines	they shine

- *The sun always shines in Arizona.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shining	we are shining
you are shining	you are shining
he/she/it is shining	they are shining

- *A light is shining in the window.*

PAST

I shone	we shone
you shone	you shone
he/she/it shone	they shone

- *He shone the light right into our eyes.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shining	we were shining
you were shining	you were shining
he/she/it was shining	they were shining

- *Their eyes were shining with excitement.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has shone
PAST PERFECT	. . . had shone

FUTURE	. . . will shine
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be shining
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have shone

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was shone	they were shone

- *The spotlight was shone on the escaping prisoners.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The irregular form *shone* is used both with and without an object, except in the sense "make bright by polishing"; the regular form *shined* is used only with an object.

shine *give off / reflect light, be bright*	The stars were shining brightly. The jewels shone in the display case. The sun, reflecting from the glass building, shone in our eyes. Their swords and spears shone in the moonlight. The princess's hair shone like gold. The lighthouse shone through the mist, guiding us to port.
shine *have a bright appearance*	Fred's face was shining with joy as he ran to meet Rosemary.
shine *do very well*	Melissa shines in social studies.
shine ____ *cause to give off light*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The guide shone **his flashlight** ***into the back of the tomb***. The policeman is shining **his headlights** ***on the abandoned car***. The newspaper shone **light** ***on corruption at City Hall***.
PASSIVE	Bright lights were shone ***on the prisoners' faces*** all night long.
shine ____ *make bright by polishing*	
OBJECT	The jeweler shined **the gem** until it sparkled. I shined **my shoes** carefully before the interview.

PHRASAL VERBS

shine down/in/out/up/etc. *give off light in a specified direction*	The sun shone down on us as we walked along the beach.
shine ____ **down/in/out/up/**etc. *cause to give off light in a specified direction*	Shine the flashlight up a little higher.
shine through *be clearly shown*	Her personality really shines through in her photography.

126 shoe

shoe | shoes · shod · have shod
shoe | shoes · shoed · have shoed

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

PRESENT

I shoe	we shoe
you shoe	you shoe
he/she/it shoes	they shoe

- *He only shoes horses on the weekends.*

PAST

I shod	we shod
you shod	you shod
he/she/it shod	they shod

- *I shod their horses last fall.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has shod
PAST PERFECT	. . . had shod

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shoeing	we are shoeing
you are shoeing	you are shoeing
he/she/it is shoeing	they are shoeing

- *The blacksmith is shoeing horses this afternoon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shoeing	we were shoeing
you were shoeing	you were shoeing
he/she/it was shoeing	they were shoeing

- *People were shoeing horses in the Middle Ages.*

FUTURE	. . . will shoe
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be shoeing
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have shod

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was shod	they were shod

- *Racehorses were often shod with aluminum shoes.*

COMPLEMENTS

shoe ____ *attach protective shoes to the hooves of*

OBJECT	Horse owners must shoe **their horses** regularly. A professional blacksmith usually shoes **horses**.
PASSIVE	Your horses should be shod professionally.

shoe ____ *furnish/fit with footwear* [ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]

PASSIVE	In Hawaii, most kids are shod only in flip-flops. The peasant children were shod in flimsy leather moccasins.

PRESENT

I shoot	we shoot
you shoot	you shoot
he/she/it shoots	they shoot

- *MacInnis shoots and scores!*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shooting	we are shooting
you are shooting	you are shooting
he/she/it is shooting	they are shooting

- *The guards are shooting from the perimeter.*

PAST

I shot	we shot
you shot	you shot
he/she/it shot	they shot

- *They shot several deer this fall.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shooting	we were shooting
you were shooting	you were shooting
he/she/it was shooting	they were shooting

- *They were shooting the scene in our neighborhood.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has shot
PAST PERFECT … had shot

FUTURE … will shoot
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be shooting
FUTURE PERFECT … will have shot

PAST PASSIVE

I was shot	we were shot
you were shot	you were shot
he/she/it was shot	they were shot

- Up in the Air *was shot in St. Louis.*

COMPLEMENTS

shoot *fire a weapon*	The police were ordered to shoot if necessary. I picked up the bow and shot.
shoot *hit/kick/throw/strike a ball/puck toward a goal*	James shoots from the baseline. [BASKETBALL] Beckham shoots from just outside the penalty area. [SOCCER] Pronger shoots under the goalie's glove. [HOCKEY]
shoot *make a photograph/film*	Just point the camera and shoot. The crew is shooting in Las Vegas.
shoot ____ *fire [a gun]*	
OBJECT	Can you shoot **a rifle**? Revelers shot **pistols** into the air on New Year's Eve.
shoot ____ *strike with a bullet/arrow*	
OBJECT	An unknown assailant shot **three people**. We were shooting **tin cans** behind the barn.
PASSIVE	Somebody has been shot.
WH-CLAUSE	You can only shoot **what is in season**. Shoot **whatever moves**.
shoot ____ *photograph, film*	
OBJECT	We want to shoot **the boats in the harbor**. They were shooting **a video of the parade**.
PASSIVE	The dream sequence was shot in black and white.
shoot ____ *move very quickly*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The car shot **through the intersection**. The song shot **straight to the top of the charts**.

PHRASAL VERBS

shoot away/down/in/off/out/over/up/etc. *move very quickly in a specified direction*	The motorcycle shot away when the light turned green.
shoot for ____ *have as a goal*	Eli is shooting for a Ph.D. in environmental sciences.
shoot up *grow quickly*	The daffodils shot up overnight. Yu-chan is really shooting up.

128 show

show | shows · showed · have shown
show | shows · showed · have showed

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

PHRASAL VERBS

show SEP **around/away/down/in/out/up**/etc. *lead/guide in a specified direction*	Sam was showing the White House visitors around. A guide showed us down to the cafeteria.
show SEP **off** *display, exhibit*	The bride-to-be showed off her wedding gown.
show off *do something to attract attention*	Ronny was always showing off in front of the girls.
show up *arrive*	Ozzie showed up just in time for dinner.
show up *appear*	The Republican ratings show up as the red line on your screen.
show up *be easily seen*	His thinning hair really shows up in this photo.
show SEP **up** *outmatch, humble*	Fred showed everybody up at the math contest.

EXPRESSIONS

show [one's] face *make an appearance*	I wonder if Todd will show his face at the party tonight.
show [one's] hand *reveal one's intentions*	He never showed his hand while discussing free trade.
show [one's] teeth *act in a threatening manner*	Boyd showed his teeth whenever someone criticized his girlfriend.
show signs of ____ *give indications of*	The patient shows signs of bipolar disorder. The student is showing signs of fatigue.
show [someone] the ropes *show [someone] how to do something*	Don't worry; the secretary who's retiring will show you the ropes.
show [one's] true colors *show what one is really like*	The boss showed his true colors when he laughed about firing three employees right before Christmas.

☑ IRREGULAR **show | shows · showed · have shown**
☑ REGULAR **show | shows · showed · have showed**

show

128

PRESENT

I show	we show
you show	you show
he/she/it shows	they show

- *The picture shows a vase of sunflowers.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am showing	we are showing
you are showing	you are showing
he/she/it is showing	they are showing

- *I am showing some friends around the garden.*

PAST

I showed	we showed
you showed	you showed
he/she/it showed	they showed

- *He showed no emotion as he spoke.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was showing	we were showing
you were showing	you were showing
he/she/it was showing	they were showing

- *The movie was showing at a theater downtown.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has shown
PAST PERFECT	… had shown

FUTURE	… will show
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be showing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have shown

PAST PASSIVE

I was shown	we were shown
you were shown	you were shown
he/she/it was shown	they were shown

- *The theory was shown to be seriously flawed.*

COMPLEMENTS

show *be visible/present/presented/displayed*	The house's age is obviously showing. The buds are just beginning to show. Nothing showed on the X-rays. The wine stain doesn't show. Our visitors never showed. When is the movie showing? He never lets his feelings show.
show ____ *lead, guide*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	May I show **you *to your seats***, ladies? The receptionist will show **us *to the conference room***.
show ____ *display*	
OBJECT	You must show **your ID card** before you can enter. The car showed **signs of having been in an accident**.
PASSIVE	Her paintings have been shown all over the world.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	Show ***me* the money**. The realtor showed ***some prospective buyers* the house**. They always showed ***their employees* real consideration**.
to PARAPHRASE	Show **the money *to me***. The realtor showed **the house *to some prospective buyers***. They always showed **real consideration *to their employees***.
show ____ *demonstrate*	
OBJECT + INFINITIVE	John showed **himself *to be an excellent landscaper***. The map showed **the city *to be smaller than we had been told***.
PASSIVE	The results were shown ***to be faked***.
(OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE	The concert shows **that Louise has made enormous progress**. We showed ***them* that we were fully prepared to do the job**.
(OBJECT +) WH-CLAUSE	The X-ray showed **what had happened**. Janet showed ***me* how much we could save on insurance**.
(OBJECT +) WH-INFINITIVE	The chart showed **how much to invest**. The manual shows ***you* what to do**. Lou will show ***them* where to park**.

129 shrink

shrink | shrinks · shrank · have shrunk ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I shrink	we shrink
you shrink	you shrink
he/she/it shrinks	they shrink

- *Wool shrinks if washed in hot water.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shrinking	we are shrinking
you are shrinking	you are shrinking
he/she/it is shrinking	they are shrinking

- *Our margin of error is shrinking.*

PAST

I shrank	we shrank
you shrank	you shrank
he/she/it shrank	they shrank

- *The architect shrank the house by a third.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shrinking	we were shrinking
you were shrinking	you were shrinking
he/she/it was shrinking	they were shrinking

- *The laundry was always shrinking my shirts.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has shrunk
PAST PERFECT	… had shrunk

FUTURE	… will shrink
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be shrinking
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have shrunk

PAST PASSIVE

I was shrunk	we were shrunk
you were shrunk	you were shrunk
he/she/it was shrunk	they were shrunk

- *The deficit was shrunk significantly in the third quarter.*

COMPLEMENTS

shrink *become smaller*	Hot metal shrinks as it cools. Our budget is shrinking by the minute. Average take-home pay has shrunk over the last five years. Arctic sea ice is shrinking more every summer. My waist has shrunk a bit, thanks to my diet.
shrink ____ *cause to become smaller*	
OBJECT	He shrank **the wool sweaters** by using water that was too hot. We waterproofed the wet barrels by shrinking **them** in the sun. We are trying to shrink **our inventory of unsold goods**.
PASSIVE	Our profits have been shrunk by rising costs.
shrink ____ *try to avoid*	
from OBJECT	Most actors don't shrink **from the limelight**. The president does not shrink **from his role as commander-in-chief**.
from PRESENT PARTICIPLE	Reggie won't shrink **from telling the truth on the witness stand**. Scientists don't shrink **from examining all the data**.

PHRASAL VERBS

shrink away/back (from ____) *draw back (from [someone/something]), as in fear*	The children shrank away from the homeless man. The cats shrank back at the sight of the dogs.

☑ IRREGULAR

shut | shuts · shut · have shut

shut 130

PRESENT

I shut	we shut
you shut	you shut
he/she/it shuts	they shut

- *Sandy shuts the store by 8 P.M.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shutting	we are shutting
you are shutting	you are shutting
he/she/it is shutting	they are shutting

- *Hurry! The ushers are shutting the doors.*

PAST

I shut	we shut
you shut	you shut
he/she/it shut	they shut

- *He shut himself in his office.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shutting	we were shutting
you were shutting	you were shutting
he/she/it was shutting	they were shutting

- *The highway patrol was shutting the roads.*

PRESENT PERFECT	... have | has shut
PAST PERFECT	... had shut

FUTURE	... will shut
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	... will be shutting
FUTURE PERFECT	... will have shut

PAST PASSIVE

I was shut	we were shut
you were shut	you were shut
he/she/it was shut	they were shut

- *The gates were shut by the guard.*

COMPLEMENTS

shut *close*	The door is shutting behind him. The gate shut with a loud crash. My eyes slowly shut and I fell asleep. The lid shut on my fingers. We heard the trap shut with a snap. All government offices shut at five.
shut ____ *cause to close*	
OBJECT	I shut **the windows** and drew the curtains. President Roosevelt shut **all the banks** temporarily to prevent failures. He shut **the book** and returned it to the shelf. The Navy is going to shut **the entire shipyard**. Once inside, I shut **the umbrella**.
PASSIVE	The entrance was shut after the last worker arrived.
shut ____ *confine, pen*	
OBJECT + *ADVERB OF PLACE*	We always shut **the animals** ***in the barn*** at night. The blockade shut **the enemy fleet** ***inside the port***.
PASSIVE	The prisoners were shut ***inside a makeshift jail***.

PHRASAL VERBS

shut SEP **down** *close permanently*	Producers shut the play down after only 10 performances. The car manufacturer shut down three automotive plants.
shut SEP **in** *surround, enclose*	The cowboys shut the cattle in.
shut off *stop operating*	The motor shut off 15 minutes ago.
shut SEP **off** *turn off*	They shut off the gas before leaving on vacation.
shut SEP **off** *stop movement into and out of*	Police shut the street off during the standoff. Authorities shut off the downtown area because of a bomb threat.
shut SEP **out** *exclude*	The manager shut us out of the decision making.
shut up *stop talking* [INFORMAL]	Would you shut up and listen to me?
shut SEP **up** *lock up*	Guards shut the prisoners up in their cells.

131 **sing** sing | sings · sang · have sung ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I sing	we sing
you sing	you sing
he/she/it sings	they sing

- *He sings in the church choir.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am singing	we are singing
you are singing	you are singing
he/she/it is singing	they are singing

- *The birds are singing in the trees.*

PAST

I sang	we sang
you sang	you sang
he/she/it sang	they sang

- *She sang several songs by Bellini.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was singing	we were singing
you were singing	you were singing
he/she/it was singing	they were singing

- *The group was singing around the campfire.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has sung
PAST PERFECT	… had sung

FUTURE	… will sing
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be singing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have sung

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was sung	they were sung

- *The opera was sung in English.*

COMPLEMENTS

sing *make musical sounds with one's voice*	Do you like to sing? Everybody can learn to sing. She sings beautifully. Jeff sang at his and Susan's wedding. The birds are already singing by 5:30.
sing *make musical sounds, hum, buzz, whistle*	The engine's vibration was making some metal part sing. The telephone wires were singing in the wind. The teakettle began to sing.
sing _____ *perform [a piece of vocal music]*	
OBJECT	The choir sang **several traditional Christmas carols**. The Beatles sang **their own compositions**. Herbie sang **1960s hits** at the class reunion.
PASSIVE	The national anthem is sung before every baseball game.

PHRASAL VERBS

sing along *sing together*	Everyone at the party sang along with the music.

EXPRESSIONS

sing a different tune *have changed one's opinion*	He used to favor the death penalty; now he's singing a different tune.
sing [someone's] praises *say good things about [someone]*	Your English teacher is singing your praises.
sing the praises of _____ *say good things about [someone/something]*	The whole office is singing the praises of the new copier.
sing _____ to sleep *put to sleep by singing*	The babysitter was able to sing the baby to sleep.

☑ IRREGULAR

sink | sinks · sank · have sunk

sink 132

PRESENT

I sink	we sink
you sink	you sink
he/she/it sinks	they sink

- *Productivity sinks in the summer.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sinking	we are sinking
you are sinking	you are sinking
he/she/it is sinking	they are sinking

- *Oil production is gradually sinking.*

PAST

I sank	we sank
you sank	you sank
he/she/it sank	they sank

- *The stock market sank again today.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sinking	we were sinking
you were sinking	you were sinking
he/she/it was sinking	they were sinking

- *Our spirits were sinking by the minute.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has sunk
PAST PERFECT	… had sunk

FUTURE	… will sink
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be sinking
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have sunk

PAST PASSIVE

I was sunk	we were sunk
you were sunk	you were sunk
he/she/it was sunk	they were sunk

- *The boat was sunk in 50 feet of water.*

COMPLEMENTS

sink *go below the surface*	The ship sank in less than an hour. My boots were sinking in the soft mud. The wheels sank into the snowdrift.
sink *go down gradually*	The hot air balloon was sinking to the earth. Tired and hungry, the travelers sank to their knees. The sun was sinking in the west. The temperature sank as night fell. Senator Blather's poll numbers were steadily sinking. The value of our portfolio has sunk by 20%.
sink *become weaker*	My heart sank when I heard the bad news. The patient in Room 413 is sinking rapidly, Doctor.
sink _____ *cause to go below the surface*	
OBJECT	An explosion in the engine room sank **the fishing boat**. I sank **a shovel** into the wet ground.
PASSIVE	The barges were sunk by the storm.
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	We sank **the screws *into the wood***. The dog sank **its teeth *into my leg***.
PASSIVE	The steel supports were sunk ***in five feet of concrete***.
sink _____ *go gradually [into a certain state/condition]*	
into OBJECT	The family sank **into poverty**. The once-proud company sank **into oblivion**. His widow and orphans sank **into despair**.
sink _____ *ruin*	
OBJECT	These awful rumors could sink **the company**. The defeat sank **all our hopes for the championship**.
PASSIVE	The plans for expansion were sunk by the economic downturn.

PHRASAL VERBS

sink back *lean back and relax*	After work, I poured a drink and sank back on the sofa.
sink in *be understood*	Has Trina's desperate situation sunk in yet? The teacher's explanation will sink in eventually.

133 sit sit | sits · sat · have sat

☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I sit	we sit
you sit	you sit
he/she/it sits	they sit

- *The cat always sits by the window.*

PAST

I sat	we sat
you sat	you sat
he/she/it sat	they sat

- *We sat on a park bench in the sun.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has sat
PAST PERFECT	. . . had sat

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sitting	we are sitting
you are sitting	you are sitting
he/she/it is sitting	they are sitting

- *I'm just sitting here, waiting for somebody.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sitting	we were sitting
you were sitting	you were sitting
he/she/it was sitting	they were sitting

- *We were sitting by the fireplace.*

FUTURE	. . . will sit
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be sitting
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have sat

PAST PASSIVE

Sit is rarely used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

sit *be seated*	Never stand when you can sit. The plane can't take off until you sit and fasten your seat belt. I can't sit very long before my legs start to hurt. We trained the dog to sit on command.
sit *be in session, meet* [OF A GOVERNMENTAL BODY]	By law, the Supreme Court sits on the first Monday in October. The budget committee is sitting this afternoon. The state legislature does not normally sit during the summer.
sit ____ *be seated/located* ADVERB OF PLACE	I sat **next to him** at dinner. The flock of birds sat **on a telephone wire**. We are sitting **on the runway**, waiting to take off. The statue sits **in the center of the town square**. When I got to the office, a new computer was sitting **on my desk**. My briefcase was sitting **by the chair**, right where I had left it.
sit ____ *have enough seats for* OBJECT	Our dining room table sits **eight**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sit around *spend time idly*	We're just sitting around listening to music.
sit back *relax*	We sat back and enjoyed the show.
sit back/by *not be involved*	I refuse to sit back and do nothing when their lives are in danger.
sit SEP **down** *cause to be in a sitting position*	Momma sat us kids down and told us that Grandma had died.
sit in for ____ *replace*	The sports editor sat in for the regular news anchor last night.
sit in (on ____**)** *attend ([an event])*	The board meeting is tomorrow morning, and I'd like to sit in. Would it be okay if I sat in on your Language and Culture class?
sit on ____ *be a member of*	She sat on the jury that convicted my neighbor. Senator Blather sits on the Committee on Appropriations.
sit on ____ *delay in revealing*	The reporter is sitting on a story about the president's health.
sit SEP **out** *not participate in*	I'm going to sit this dance out.
sit through ____ *attend all of*	Do we have to sit through another boring lecture?
sit up *sit upright*	Sit up! Slouching is bad for your posture.
sit up *not go to bed*	Kristen sat up knitting half the night.
sit up *become suddenly alert*	Cassie sat up suddenly and looked at the door.

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

slay | slays · slew · have slain
slay | slays · slayed · have slain

slay 134

PRESENT

I slay	we slay
you slay	you slay
he/she/it slays	they slay

- *His jokes always slay me.*

PAST

I slew	we slew
you slew	you slew
he/she/it slew	they slew

- *The killer slew his victim in cold blood.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has slain
PAST PERFECT	… had slain

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am slaying	we are slaying
you are slaying	you are slaying
he/she/it is slaying	they are slaying

- *Storm troopers are slaying the town's inhabitants.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was slaying	we were slaying
you were slaying	you were slaying
he/she/it was slaying	they were slaying

- *My brother was slaying dragons in a video game.*

FUTURE	… will slay
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be slaying
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have slain

PAST PASSIVE

I was slain	we were slain
you were slain	you were slain
he/she/it was slain	they were slain

- *Hundreds of soldiers were slain in the attack.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: In the past tense, *slew* is ordinarily used in the sense "kill violently" and *slayed* is ordinarily used in the sense "amuse immensely."

slay ____ *kill violently*

OBJECT	Some meat processing plants slay **a thousand cows** a day.
	Serial killers slay **multiple victims** before they are caught.
PASSIVE	How many people are slain by drunk drivers every year?
	The victims were slain in their beds.

slay ____ *amuse immensely*

OBJECT	His comedy act slayed **his audiences**.
	You slay **me**, you really do!
	He can slay **a crowd** just by looking at them.

135 sleep

sleep | sleeps · slept · have slept ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I sleep	we sleep
you sleep	you sleep
he/she/it sleeps	they sleep

- *He usually sleeps seven hours a night.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sleeping	we are sleeping
you are sleeping	you are sleeping
he/she/it is sleeping	they are sleeping

- *I am not sleeping very well lately.*

PAST

I slept	we slept
you slept	you slept
he/she/it slept	they slept

- *The kids slept in a tent in the backyard.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sleeping	we were sleeping
you were sleeping	you were sleeping
he/she/it was sleeping	they were sleeping

- *Our guests were sleeping in the spare bedroom.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has slept
PAST PERFECT	… had slept

FUTURE	… will sleep
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be sleeping
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have slept

PAST PASSIVE

Sleep is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

sleep *not be awake*	We all need to sleep. I slept through the storm. He only slept a few hours last night. Be quiet; the baby is sleeping.
sleep *be inactive*	New York never sleeps. The surveillance system never sleeps. The security force never sleeps.
sleep ____ *take as a place for sleeping*	
ADVERB OF PLACE	The children sleep **in their own bedrooms**. We usually sleep **at a motel** when we visit my grandparents. When we go camping, we sleep **in an ultralight tent**. If I get home late, I sleep **downstairs** so I don't wake anybody.
sleep ____ *provide sleeping accommodations for*	
OBJECT	The suite sleeps **four adults** comfortably. The studio apartments only sleep **two people**. The lodge will be able to sleep **our entire family**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sleep in *sleep after one's normal time to rise*	Sorry, I slept in this morning. What's for lunch?
sleep SEP **off** *recover from while sleeping*	Sherri drank too much at the party and had to sleep it off.
sleep on ____ *delay a decision on*	I'll sleep on the matter and give you an answer tomorrow.
sleep through ____ *be asleep and unaware of*	Our neighbors slept through the thunderstorm.

EXPRESSIONS

sleep a wink *sleep briefly* [USUALLY NEGATIVE]	I didn't sleep a wink last night.
sleep like a baby/log *sleep long and well*	I played two hours of tennis last evening and slept like a log.

☑ IRREGULAR

slide | slides · slid · have slid

slide 136

PRESENT

I slide	we slide
you slide	you slide
he/she/it slides	they slide

- *The glass door slides easily now.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sliding	we are sliding
you are sliding	you are sliding
he/she/it is sliding	they are sliding

- *Look out! The car is sliding.*

PAST

I slid	we slid
you slid	you slid
he/she/it slid	they slid

- *The car slid into the ditch.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sliding	we were sliding
you were sliding	you were sliding
he/she/it was sliding	they were sliding

- *The kids were sliding down Prosser Hill.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has slid
PAST PERFECT	. . . had slid

FUTURE	. . . will slide
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be sliding
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have slid

PAST PASSIVE

I was slid	we were slid
you were slid	you were slid
he/she/it was slid	they were slid

- *The logs were slid down the hill.*

COMPLEMENTS

slide *slip, shift, drop*	Hang on to me—I'm sliding. The bag of groceries slid from my hand. Make sure the load doesn't slide.
slide *gradually become worse*	His reputation is beginning to slide. Our once-strong financial position was sliding.
slide ____ *move/glide smoothly over a surface*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The car slid **into a snowbank**. I slid **behind the wheel**. The canoes slid **into the water**. The truck in front of us was sliding **all over the road**. The drawer slides **on side-mounted tracks**.
slide ____ *gradually go/move [into a worse condition]*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The patient was sliding **into a coma**. The company gradually slid **into mediocrity**. The quality of dental care was sliding **downhill**. The temperature slid **into the twenties** overnight.
slide ____ *put/push/move smoothly*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	She slid the **keys *into her purse***. I slid **my hands** gently ***under the kitten*** and lifted it up. Just slide **your paper *under my office door***.
PASSIVE	The refrigerator was slid ***into place***.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	The suspect slid ***the detective*** **his driver's license**. The cook slid ***me*** **a bowl of soup**.
to PARAPHRASE	The suspect slid **his driver's license *to the detective***. The cook slid **a bowl of soup *to me***.

PHRASAL VERBS

slide around/back/down/off/out/under/up/etc. *slide in a specified direction*	We slid back down several times. The roofer lost his balance and slid off. The window easily slides up and down.
slide ~~SEP~~ **around/back/down/in/off/out/up**/etc. *cause to slide in a specified direction*	The goalie slid the puck back to a defenseman. The locksmith can't slide the bolt in and out.

137 sling

sling | slings · slung · have slung ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I sling	we sling
you sling	you sling
he/she/it slings	they sling

- *He slings mud in every campaign he's in.*

PAST

I slung	we slung
you slung	you slung
he/she/it slung	they slung

- *He slung a rope over a branch for a swing.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has slung
PAST PERFECT	… had slung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am slinging	we are slinging
you are slinging	you are slinging
he/she/it is slinging	they are slinging

- *We are slinging a hammock between these trees.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was slinging	we were slinging
you were slinging	you were slinging
he/she/it was slinging	they were slinging

- *They were slinging stones at the attackers.*

FUTURE	… will sling
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be slinging
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have slung

PAST PASSIVE

I was slung	we were slung
you were slung	you were slung
he/she/it was slung	they were slung

- *A blanket was carelessly slung across the door opening.*

COMPLEMENTS

sling ____ *hurl with a swinging motion*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The kids were slinging **rocks *at the crows in the field***. David slung **a stone *at Goliath***. Fishermen slung **their nets *over the water***.
PASSIVE	A volley of steel balls was slung ***at the attackers***.

sling ____ *place/toss carelessly/quickly*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	I slung **a sandwich and some fruit *into my backpack***. The waiter slung **some food *on the table*** and walked away. She slung **her long hair *back from her face***.
PASSIVE	Our supplies were slung ***onto the counter*** without a glance from the clerk.

sling ____ *suspend loosely*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	They had slung **a wire *from one tower to the other***.
PASSIVE	A bridge had been slung ***across the river far below***.

EXPRESSIONS

sling mud (at ____) *insult, discredit*	The candidates were slinging mud at each other throughout the debate.

PRESENT

I slink	we slink
you slink	you slink
he/she/it slinks	they slink

- *The senator always slinks from controversy.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am slinking	we are slinking
you are slinking	you are slinking
he/she/it is slinking	they are slinking

- *My dog is slinking around, looking guilty.*

PAST

I slunk	we slunk
you slunk	you slunk
he/she/it slunk	they slunk

- *He slunk back, embarrassed by his error.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was slinking	we were slinking
you were slinking	you were slinking
he/she/it was slinking	they were slinking

- *A line of dancers was slinking across the stage.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has slunk
PAST PERFECT	… had slunk

FUTURE	… will slink
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be slinking
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have slunk

PAST PASSIVE

Slink is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

slink ____ *move furtively*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The cat was slinking **closer and closer to the bird**. The homeless man slunk **from alley to alley**.

slink ____ *move sensuously/provocatively*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	Delilah slunk **toward Sampson**. The dancers were slinking **around the stage** seductively. The models slunk **down the runway**.

PHRASAL VERBS

slink around/away/off/out/etc. *slink in a specified direction*	A small animal was slinking around in the dark. The thief slunk away from the sudden light. My husband slunk off to a bar when my mother arrived.

slit

slit | slits · slit · have slit

☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I slit	we slit
you slit	you slit
he/she/it slits	they slit

- *He slits letters open with a pocketknife.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am slitting	we are slitting
you are slitting	you are slitting
he/she/it is slitting	they are slitting

- *We are slitting the material into thin strips.*

PAST

I slit	we slit
you slit	you slit
he/she/it slit	they slit

- *She slit the tape and opened the package.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was slitting	we were slitting
you were slitting	you were slitting
he/she/it was slitting	they were slitting

- *The staff was slitting the envelopes open.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has slit
PAST PERFECT	… had slit

FUTURE	… will slit
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be slitting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have slit

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was slit	they were slit

- *The victim's throat was slit.*

COMPLEMENTS

slit ____ *make a long narrow cut in*

OBJECT	Tommy slit **his thumb** on a piece of glass. A friend of mine slit **her wrists**, but we got her to the emergency room in time. The workers are slitting **a shallow trench** to lay the cable.
PASSIVE	The birds' throats are slit and then the feathers are removed.

slit ____ *cut lengthwise [into strips]*

OBJECT + *into* OBJECT	We slit **the paper *into two-inch strips*** and wrote a name on each. The prisoner slit **the sheet *into strips to be fashioned into a rope***. I slit **the cardboard *into pieces to be used as spacers***.
PASSIVE	The banana leaves had been slit ***into strips***.

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

sneak | sneaks · sneaked · have sneaked
sneak | sneaks · snuck · have snuck

sneak

140

PRESENT

I sneak	we sneak
you sneak	you sneak
he/she/it sneaks	they sneak

- *He sneaks a candy bar at bedtime.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sneaking	we are sneaking
you are sneaking	you are sneaking
he/she/it is sneaking	they are sneaking

- *The prisoners are sneaking past the guards.*

PAST

I snuck	we snuck
you snuck	you snuck
he/she/it snuck	they snuck

- *We snuck out of the meeting early.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sneaking	we were sneaking
you were sneaking	you were sneaking
he/she/it was sneaking	they were sneaking

- *I was sneaking a quick snack in the kitchen.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has snuck
PAST PERFECT	… had snuck

FUTURE	… will sneak
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be sneaking
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have snuck

PAST PASSIVE

I was snuck	we were snuck
you were snuck	you were snuck
he/she/it was snuck	they were snuck

- *Food was snuck out of the cafeteria.*

COMPLEMENTS

sneak ___ *move quietly and secretly in order not to be noticed*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	They were trying to sneak **into the game**. We had to sneak **back into the dorms** after curfew. Apparently, the prisoners had snuck **over the wall**. Someone had snuck **into the coffee room** and eaten all the donuts.

sneak ___ *take/bring quietly and secretly in order not to be noticed*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	I snuck **a recorder *into the meeting***. The kids had snuck **some cookies *out of the kitchen***. They had snuck **some friends *into the hotel pool***.
PASSIVE	Something had been snuck ***out of the secure area***.

PHRASAL VERBS

sneak along/around/away/in/out/up/etc. *sneak in a specified direction*	Nobody likes people who sneak around. The kids snuck away with a bag of candy.
sneak ___ **along/away/in/out/up**/etc. *sneak [someone/something] in a specified direction*	I wasn't invited, but my friends snuck me in.
sneak up on ___ *approach quietly and secretly*	We snuck up on Dad while he was working the crossword puzzle. Sandy snuck up on me and tapped me on the shoulder.

141 SOW

sow | sows · sowed · have sown
sow | sows · sowed · have sowed

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

PRESENT

I sow	we sow
you sow	you sow
he/she/it sows	they sow

- *Few people sow by hand anymore.*

PAST

I sowed	we sowed
you sowed	you sowed
he/she/it sowed	they sowed

- *We sowed wheat and barley this year.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has sown
PAST PERFECT … had sown

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sowing	we are sowing
you are sowing	you are sowing
he/she/it is sowing	they are sowing

- *They are sowing rumors about our candidate.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sowing	we were sowing
you were sowing	you were sowing
he/she/it was sowing	they were sowing

- *The farmers were sowing their fields this week.*

FUTURE … will sow
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be sowing
FUTURE PERFECT … will have sown

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was sown	they were sown

- *Nothing but confusion was sown by the new policy.*

COMPLEMENTS

sow *plant seeds to produce a crop*	Farmers sow in straight lines so they can weed between the rows.
sow ____ *plant/scatter (seeds)*	
OBJECT	When we sow **seeds** by hand, it is called "broadcasting." Many farmers in the United States only sow **genetically engineered seeds**. "A man reaps **what** he sows." [BIBLE]
PASSIVE	When seeds were sown by hand, birds ate half of them.
sow ____ *cause*	
OBJECT	Their rigid rules have sown **resentment**. Agitators sowed **fear** among the townspeople.
PASSIVE	Doubts about his leadership had been sown.

EXPRESSIONS

sow [one's] (wild) oats *behave wildly/recklessly in one's youth*	Gary was sowing his wild oats the summer before he started college.
sow the seeds of ____ *set in motion*	Thomas Paine sowed the seeds of the American Revolution.
sow the wind and reap the whirlwind *start trouble that becomes worse than one expected*	"They sow the wind and reap the whirlwind." [BIBLE]

☑ IRREGULAR

speak | speaks · spoke · have spoken

speak

142

PRESENT

I speak	we speak
you speak	you speak
he/she/it speaks	they speak

- *He speaks really well.*

PAST

I spoke	we spoke
you spoke	you spoke
he/she/it spoke	they spoke

- *They spoke about website design.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has spoken
PAST PERFECT	… had spoken

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am speaking	we are speaking
you are speaking	you are speaking
he/she/it is speaking	they are speaking

- *I am speaking at the luncheon this afternoon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was speaking	we were speaking
you were speaking	you were speaking
he/she/it was speaking	they were speaking

- *They were speaking French at the time.*

FUTURE	… will speak
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be speaking
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have spoken

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was spoken	they were spoken

- *English was spoken everywhere they traveled.*

COMPLEMENTS

speak *talk, say words*	Are you hurt? Can you speak? Most children start speaking before their second birthday. He was so upset he couldn't speak.
speak *have a conversation*	They need to find a place where they can speak privately. They were speaking in whispers. After their argument, they weren't speaking for months.
speak *make a public presentation*	Everybody at the conference wants to hear her speak. It takes a lot of practice to speak in public. I am not used to speaking without notes.
speak ____ *say, express*	
OBJECT	They are speaking **the truth about what happened**. He spoke **gentle words of wisdom**.
speak ____ *have a conversation with*	
to OBJECT	We spoke **to the police** about the break-in. Have you spoken **to your mother**? May I speak **to Mr. Huntleigh**?
speak ____ *talk in [a specific language]*	
OBJECT	She can speak **German and Dutch** pretty well. **How many languages** do you speak?
PASSIVE	Both English and French were spoken at the conference.

PHRASAL VERBS

speak for ____ *say something on behalf of*	I am speaking only for myself. The candidate spoke for lowering taxes. "I speak for the trees, for the trees have no tongues." [DR. SEUSS]
speak for ____ *ask for*	I'd like to speak for the last slice of cheesecake. The last copy of the book is already spoken for.
speak of ____ *speak about*	Grandpa spoke of hardships during the Great Depression.
speak out *express one's opinion*	Thomas speaks out at every meeting he attends.
speak up *speak more loudly*	Speak up! We can't hear you in the back row.
speak up for ____ *speak in support of*	She always speaks up for military families.

143 speed

speed | speeds · sped · have sped ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I speed	we speed
you speed	you speed
he/she/it speeds	they speed

- *He speeds when he gets on the freeway.*

PAST

I sped	we sped
you sped	you sped
he/she/it sped	they sped

- *The sailboat sped before the wind.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has sped
PAST PERFECT	… had sped

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am speeding	we are speeding
you are speeding	you are speeding
he/she/it is speeding	they are speeding

- *She is already speeding away.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was speeding	we were speeding
you were speeding	you were speeding
he/she/it was speeding	they were speeding

- *We got pulled over because we were speeding.*

FUTURE	… will speed
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be speeding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have sped

PAST PASSIVE

Speed is rarely used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

speed *go/move fast*	The dogs sped across the roadway. The skiers sped down the slope toward the lodge. The horses are speeding around the final turn. The rescuers were speeding to the scene of the accident.
speed *drive faster than the legal limit*	If you speed, you could lose your driver's license. He was speeding in a construction zone and had to pay a huge fine.
speed ___ *cause to go/move faster* OBJECT	We changed the rules to speed **the approval process**. Some men will try anything to speed **hair growth**. Trying to speed **an entrenched bureaucracy** is next to impossible.

PHRASAL VERBS

speed along/away/down/over/past/up/etc. *go fast in a specified direction*	An ambulance sped past with its siren blaring. Teens were speeding up and down Main Street.
speed ___ **along/away/down/over/past/up**/etc. *cause to go faster in a specified direction*	The manager tried to speed the process along. The delivery service sped the package over.
speed up *go/move faster*	Ricky sped up when he saw the police car. We tend to speed up going downhill.
speed SEP **up** *cause to go/move faster*	We really need to speed up the production line.

☑ IRREGULAR **spend | spends · spent · have spent**

spend 144

PRESENT

I spend	we spend
you spend	you spend
he/she/it spends	they spend

• *He spends too much when he eats out.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am spending	we are spending
you are spending	you are spending
he/she/it is spending	they are spending

• *We are spending too much time on this project.*

PAST

I spent	we spent
you spent	you spent
he/she/it spent	they spent

• *We spent some time with my parents.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was spending	we were spending
you were spending	you were spending
he/she/it was spending	they were spending

• *We were spending a week in Phoenix.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has spent
PAST PERFECT	… had spent

FUTURE	… will spend
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be spending
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have spent

PAST PASSIVE

I was spent	we were spent
you were spent	you were spent
he/she/it was spent	they were spent

• *A fortune was spent trying to fix the problem.*

COMPLEMENTS

spend *pay out money*	They just love to spend. We can't keep spending at this rate. They spend and spend until they are broke.
spend ____ *pay [money]*	
OBJECT	We will spend **a lot** fixing our roof. They spend **over half their income** on housing. You have to spend **money** to make money.
PASSIVE	The insurance settlement had already been spent.
spend ____ *be occupied for [a period of time]*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE	I will spend **all of next week** ***in Chicago***. The kids spent **half the summer** ***at camp***.
OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE	We spent **all week** ***working on the budget***. A horse spends **three hours a day** ***sleeping***.
PASSIVE	Last weekend was spent ***cleaning out the garage***.
spend ____ *exhaust, use up*	
OBJECT	The storm finally spent **itself** during the night. General Lee had already spent **all his reserves**.
PASSIVE	Your talent would be better spent writing textbooks.

145 spin

spin | spins · spun · have spun ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I spin	we spin
you spin	you spin
he/she/it spins	they spin

- *The disk spins at a high speed.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am spinning	we are spinning
you are spinning	you are spinning
he/she/it is spinning	they are spinning

- *The senator's office is spinning the story.*

PAST

I spun	we spun
you spun	you spun
he/she/it spun	they spun

- *I spun the wool to make yarn.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was spinning	we were spinning
you were spinning	you were spinning
he/she/it was spinning	they were spinning

- *Our wheels were spinning on the ice.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has spun
PAST PERFECT	… had spun

FUTURE	… will spin
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be spinning
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have spun

PAST PASSIVE

I was spun	we were spun
you were spun	you were spun
he/she/it was spun	they were spun

- *The bets were placed and the roulette wheel was spun.*

COMPLEMENTS

spin *whirl around quickly*	The altimeter was spinning fast. The dryer is still spinning. Your wheels will spin in this slush. The earth spins on a 23.4-degree axis. The policeman spun when he heard the shot.
spin *seem to be whirling around quickly, as if to make someone dizzy*	I have to sit down; my head is spinning. The news was enough to make your head spin.
spin _____ *cause to whirl around quickly*	
OBJECT	I spun **the propeller** to get the engine started. The drivers were spinning **their wheels** in the soft ground. I showed the kids how to spin **their new top**. The server spun **the ball** so that it bounced at an odd angle.
PASSIVE	The wheel was spun by the next contestant.
spin _____ *draw out and twist into yarn*	
OBJECT	My daughter spins **wool fleece** into yarn.
PASSIVE	The cashmere yarn had been spun by hand.
spin _____ *make a web* [OF SPIDERS]	
OBJECT	Spiders had spun **webs** in every corner.
spin _____ *interpret in a way favorable to oneself*	
OBJECT	The aides were busily spinning **the election results**. He was trying to spin **the news** to minimize the damage.
PASSIVE	The story was spun until it was unrecognizable.

PHRASAL VERBS

spin away/off/out/etc. *spin in a specified direction*	The Frisbee is spinning away toward TipTop.
spin SEP **away/off/out/**etc. *cause to spin in a specified direction*	He spun himself away from the computer.
spin off *separate and fly away from something that is spinning*	The fan blade may spin off if you don't tighten it.
spin SEP **off** *create a separate company from part of an existing one*	The chemical company spun off its herbicide division.

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

spit | spits · spit · have spit
spit | spits · spat · have spat

spit

146

PRESENT

I spit	we spit
you spit	you spit
he/she/it spits	they spit

- *Our cat spits when she sees a dog.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am spitting	we are spitting
you are spitting	you are spitting
he/she/it is spitting	they are spitting

- *The victim is spitting blood.*

PAST

I spit/spat	we spit/spat
you spit/spat	you spit/spat
he/she/it spit/spat	they spit/spat

- *He coughed and spit into his handkerchief.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was spitting	we were spitting
you were spitting	you were spitting
he/she/it was spitting	they were spitting

- *They were spitting watermelon seeds.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has spit/spat
PAST PERFECT	. . . had spit/spat

FUTURE	. . . will spit
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be spitting
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have spit/spat

PAST PASSIVE

I was spit/spat	we were spit/spat
you were spit/spat	you were spit/spat
he/she/it was spit/spat	they were spit/spat

- *The words were spat in utter contempt.*

COMPLEMENTS

spit *force something [often, saliva] from one's mouth*

Rinse out your mouth and spit, please.
People who chew tobacco have to spit constantly.
I have such a bad taste in my mouth that I'm spitting all the time.

spit *be very angry*

He was spitting angrily.
The defendant was spitting with sudden rage.

spit *rain/snow lightly*

It's spitting outside; you'd better wear a raincoat.

spit ____ *force from one's mouth*
OBJECT

The diner spit **a chicken bone** across the table.
Aaron accidentally spit **a mouthful of soda** all over the floor.

spit ____ *throw out [liquid, fire]*
OBJECT

The engine was spitting **oil**.
The pan was so hot that it spit **cooking oil** on my hand.
The bonfire was spitting **sparks** high into the night air.

spit ____ *say/express angrily*
OBJECT

The man spit **abuse** at the crowd.
He spat **an oath** and slammed the door.
The man spat **an incoherent warning** at the children.

147 split

split | splits · split · have split

☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I split	we split
you split	you split
he/she/it splits	they split

- *Pine always splits along the grain.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am splitting	we are splitting
you are splitting	you are splitting
he/she/it is splitting	they are splitting

- *The couple next door is splitting.*

PAST

I split	we split
you split	you split
he/she/it split	they split

- *We split the cost equally.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was splitting	we were splitting
you were splitting	you were splitting
he/she/it was splitting	they were splitting

- *I was splitting enough wood to last all winter.*

PRESENT PERFECT	... have | has split
PAST PERFECT	... had split

FUTURE	... will split
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	... will be splitting
FUTURE PERFECT	... will have split

PAST PASSIVE

I was split	we were split
you were split	you were split
he/she/it was split	they were split

- *The prize was split among the winning contestants.*

COMPLEMENTS

split *separate/divide into parts*	My lips were splitting from the sun. The ice was heaving and splitting. The trail splits at the top of the ridge. The class split into three groups.
split *end a marriage/relationship*	My cousin and his wife are splitting after five years. Jayne got into a fight with her boyfriend and they decided to split. Do you think they will split after what happened? This issue could cause the Republican Party to split.
split ____ *cause to separate/divide into parts*	
OBJECT	We split the **logs** for firewood. Would you split **the English muffins** and toast them? They split **the searchers** into small groups so they could cover more ground.
PASSIVE	Diamonds are still split by hand. The atom was first split in 1932.
split ____ *share/divide among participants*	
OBJECT	We need to split **the workload** more fairly. Investors will split **the profits** in proportion to the size of their investment. Rhonda split **a pizza** with Stan. If we get the winning ticket, we will split **the prize** equally.
PASSIVE	Overtime hours must be split among all workers.
WH-CLAUSE	The group split **what they had earned**. We will split **whatever we win**. They decided to split **however much money they get**.

PHRASAL VERBS

split SEP **up (into ____)** *divide (into [groups, etc.])*	He split the class up into three groups according to height.
split SEP **off** *separate*	The forum moderator split the topic off from the main thread.
split off (from ____) *separate (from [someone/something])*	Icebergs are splitting off from glaciers at an alarming rate.

☑ IRREGULAR **spread | spreads · spread · have spread**

spread 148

PRESENT

I spread	we spread
you spread	you spread
he/she/it spreads	they spread

- *He spreads peanut butter on his bagels.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am spreading	we are spreading
you are spreading	you are spreading
he/she/it is spreading	they are spreading

- *The city is spreading into the valley.*

PAST

I spread	we spread
you spread	you spread
he/she/it spread	they spread

- *We spread a blanket on the grass.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was spreading	we were spreading
you were spreading	you were spreading
he/she/it was spreading	they were spreading

- *They were spreading rumors about the senator.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has spread
PAST PERFECT	… had spread

FUTURE	… will spread
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be spreading
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have spread

PAST PASSIVE

I was spread	we were spread
you were spread	you were spread
he/she/it was spread	they were spread

- *The seeds were spread by a mechanical applicator.*

COMPLEMENTS

spread *move/extend outward*	Bad news spreads like wildfire. The floodwater was spreading by the minute. Violence is spreading in much of the world.
spread ____ *extend [over/to an area]*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The ripples spread **across the pond**. Elm disease has spread **through the upper Midwest**. The impact of deflation spread **throughout the economy**. The city is spreading **in all directions**. The forest fire spread **to several hilltop villages**.
spread ____ *cause to move/expand outward*	
OBJECT	He is always spreading **rumors**. The senator hopes to spread **the blame for the mistake**.
PASSIVE	Malaria is spread by one type of mosquito.
spread ____ *open/stretch out*	
OBJECT	The bird spread **its wings**.
spread ____ *distribute*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	He spread **the map** ***across the hood of the car***. Spread **the jam** ***on every corner of the bread***. The eruption spread **dust** ***over hundreds of square miles***. They spread **the payments** ***over five years***.
PASSIVE	Protective cloths had been spread ***across the floor***.

PHRASAL VERBS

spread _SEP_ **around** *publicize*	They spread the news around that her campaign staff had been fired.
spread out *scatter*	The rescuers spread out to search the mountainside.

EXPRESSIONS

spread it on thick *exaggerate praise/blame*	The car salesman was really spreading it on thick.
spread [oneself] too thin *do too many things at once*	Between work and volunteer activities, Emma has spread herself too thin.

149 spring

spring | springs · sprang · have sprung ☑ IRREGULAR
spring | springs · sprung · have sprung ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I spring	we spring
you spring	you spring
he/she/it springs	they spring

- *He springs out of bed in the morning.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am springing	we are springing
you are springing	you are springing
he/she/it is springing	they are springing

- *Crocuses are springing up everywhere.*

PAST

I sprang/sprung	we sprang/sprung
you sprang/sprung	you sprang/sprung
he/she/it sprang/sprung	

- *The door sprang open.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was springing	we were springing
you were springing	you were springing
he/she/it was springing	they were springing

- *Dolphins were springing out of the water.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has sprung
PAST PERFECT	… had sprung

FUTURE	… will spring
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be springing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have sprung

PAST PASSIVE

I was sprung	we were sprung
you were sprung	you were sprung
he/she/it was sprung	they were sprung

- *The trap was sprung by a raccoon.*

COMPLEMENTS

spring ___ *jump/move suddenly*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	I sprang **out of my chair** and ran to the door. The soldiers sprang **up** when the captain came into the room. We sprang **to the ropes** before the boat could pull away. The car sprang **forward**, nearly hitting us. The car door sprung **open** and Fred jumped out.
spring ___ *suddenly appear*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	A dog suddenly sprang **out of the fog**. Jack sprang **out the front door** and greeted us warmly. The robbers sprang **out of nowhere**. Tears sprang **from his eyes**. A cry sprang **from her throat**.
spring ___ *cause to snap shut*	
OBJECT	An opossum sprang **the trap**.

PHRASAL VERBS

spring for ___ *pay for*	I'll spring for a new coat for you.
spring up *begin, be started*	A wonderful friendship sprang up between us. A new fast-food restaurant sprang up on the corner.
spring up *begin to grow*	Flowers and weeds are springing up in the garden.

EXPRESSIONS

spring a leak *begin to leak*	Our boat sprang a leak in the middle of the lake.
spring into action *become suddenly active*	After Amber read his letter, she sprang into action.
spring to mind *be thought of*	Which president springs to mind when I say "father of our country"?

☑ IRREGULAR

stand | stands · stood · have stood

stand

PRESENT

I stand	we stand
you stand	you stand
he/she/it stands	they stand

- *The treasurer stands by the CEO.*

PAST

I stood	we stood
you stood	you stood
he/she/it stood	they stood

- *We all stood for the national anthem.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has stood
PAST PERFECT … had stood

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am standing	we are standing
you are standing	you are standing
he/she/it is standing	they are standing

- *I am standing in the checkout lane.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was standing	we were standing
you were standing	you were standing
he/she/it was standing	they were standing

- *We were standing for hours at the reception.*

FUTURE … will stand
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be standing
FUTURE PERFECT … will have stood

PAST PASSIVE

I was stood	we were stood
you were stood	you were stood
he/she/it was stood	they were stood

- *The pictures were all stood along the wall.*

COMPLEMENTS

stand *be/get in an upright position*

Please stand.
Everyone stood when the funeral procession went by.
By the end of the game, we were all standing and cheering.

stand *remain undisturbed*
[OF FOOD, LIQUID]

Let the tea leaves stand for a few minutes.
The custard needs to stand until it is at room temperature.
The mixture should stand until all the liquid is absorbed.

stand *remain as is*

The committee's original recommendation stands.
The judge let the lower court's ruling stand.
That tradition has stood since the school began.

stand ____ *cause to be in an upright position*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

She stood **the dolls *against the dresser***.
The librarian stood **the books *on the shelf***.
Stand **the children *in front of a mirror***.
Stand **the rugs *in the corner***, please.
We stood **the flagstaff *in a big pot***.

PASSIVE

The palm plants were stood ***along the garden wall***.

stand ____ *be located*

ADVERB OF PLACE

The church stands **at the corner of Waterman and Kingshighway**.
A rake and hoe stood **against the fence**.
The train is standing **at the station**.
He was standing **just outside the door**, waiting for us.
The town stands **on a little hill overlooking the bay**.

stand ____ *step to and remain [in a certain place]*

ADVERB OF PLACE

Stand **over there**, please.
I stood **to the side** and let them pass.
We all stood **on the grass** so that the ambulance could get by.

stand ____ *be [in a certain condition]*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

He stood **firm in his opposition to the plan**.
I stand **ready to help**.
The house stood **empty** for many years.

top 30 verb

150 stand

stand | stands · stood · have stood

☑ IRREGULAR

stand ____ *tolerate, endure* [USUALLY USED IN QUESTIONS OR NEGATIVE STATEMENTS]	
OBJECT	How do you stand **the pressure**? I can't stand **the suspense**. No one can stand **his superior attitude**.
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	How can you stand **listening to that nonsense**? Wine grapes can't stand **being in poorly drained soil**. I can't stand **not knowing what happened**.
stand ____ *be of a specified height*	
OBJECT	Tim stands **six foot four**. The horse stands **15 hands at the withers**.

PHRASAL VERBS

stand apart/aside/back/off/etc. *stand in a specified position*	Max stood aside and let the medics by. We stood back so that we wouldn't get hurt.
stand around *loiter, be idle*	They stood around with their hands in their pockets.
stand at ____ *be at a specified amount/number*	The bid stands at $250. Our team's record stands at 11–4.
stand by *be near and ready if needed*	He asked me to stand by in case his car wouldn't start.
stand by *stand near but not involve oneself*	Three people stood by and watched the robbery take place.
stand by ____ *support, defend*	She stood by her husband throughout his illness.
stand for ____ *represent*	"U.S.A." stands for "United States of America."
stand for ____ *tolerate* [USUALLY NEGATIVE]	We won't stand for your nonsense any longer.
stand in for ____ *take the place of, act for*	Would you stand in for me at next Tuesday's meeting?
stand out *be distinctive*	Because of his height, Don really stands out in a crowd.
stand over ____ *keep close watch on*	I can't get any work done if you're standing over me.
stand up *prove to be true/good*	This idea won't stand up under scrutiny.
stand ____SEP **up** *fail to keep a date with*	Lori stood him up again.
stand up for ____ *support, defend*	When Nancy was criticized, her coach stood up for her. My parents always stood up for immigrants' rights.
stand up to ____ *resist, refuse to be treated badly by*	The candidate stood up to the lies on talk radio.

EXPRESSIONS

stand a chance (of ____) *have a chance of*	Does your team stand a chance of winning?
stand corrected *admit that one is wrong*	I stand corrected; there are two *m*'s in *recommend.*
stand head and shoulders above ____ *be far superior to*	Their book stood head and shoulders above the competition.
stand in [someone's] way *oppose/obstruct [someone]*	She beat every candidate who stood in her way to the nomination.
stand on [one's] own two feet *be independent, not need anyone's help*	Son, it's time for you to get your own apartment and stand on your own two feet.
stand [one's] ground *maintain one's position while being attacked*	The politician stood his ground in spite of accusations by the opposition party.
stand still for ____ *tolerate* [USUALLY NEGATIVE]	Senator Blather won't stand still for criticism of his immigration policy.
stand to reason *be sensible/reasonable*	It stands to reason that interest rates are low in a recession.

top 30 verb

steal | steals · stole · have stolen

steal

PRESENT

I steal	we steal
you steal	you steal
he/she/it steals	they steal

- *Our dog steals food from the cats' dishes.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am stealing	we are stealing
you are stealing	you are stealing
he/she/it is stealing	they are stealing

- *I am stealing an idea from you—okay?*

PAST

I stole	we stole
you stole	you stole
he/she/it stole	they stole

- *Someone stole my wallet at the gym.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stealing	we were stealing
you were stealing	you were stealing
he/she/it was stealing	they were stealing

- *They were stealing into the kitchen for cookies.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has stolen
PAST PERFECT	… had stolen

FUTURE	… will steal
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be stealing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have stolen

PAST PASSIVE

I was stolen	we were stolen
you were stolen	you were stolen
he/she/it was stolen	they were stolen

- *The car was stolen right out of the garage.*

COMPLEMENTS

steal *take something that doesn't belong to one without paying for it / without permission*	"Thou shalt not steal." [BIBLE] Fagin forced the children to steal. Even though he was starving, Oliver refused to steal.
steal ____ *take without paying for / without permission*	
OBJECT	Somebody stole **my son's bicycle**. He claimed that they had stolen **his idea**.
PASSIVE	iPods are stolen out of backpacks every day.
steal ____ *take/borrow while acknowledging the fact* [OFTEN USED HUMOROUSLY]	
OBJECT	Can I steal **your husband** for a few minutes? I need to steal **a few minutes of your time**. Can I steal **your chair**?
steal ____ *move quietly/secretly*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The thieves stole **into the garage** and took some tools. We stole **into the boss's office** for a surprise birthday party. The cavalry stole **behind Union lines** and attacked from the rear.
steal ____ *get/win in a tricky manner*	
OBJECT	Sam felt that Bob had stolen **Martha's affections**.
steal ____ *take secretly and slyly*	
OBJECT	He managed to steal **a look at the classified documents**. I stole **a kiss** when we had driven for a mile.

PHRASAL VERBS

steal away/down/in/out/up/etc. *move quietly/secretly in a specified direction*	My aunt stole away and cried.

EXPRESSIONS

steal [someone's] thunder *say/do what [someone else] intended to say/do, thereby lessening his/her impact*	Her opponent stole her thunder by appearing on TV an hour before she did.
steal the show *receive more attention than anyone else at an event*	A young tap dancer named Dulé Hill stole the show.

152 stick

stick | sticks · stuck · have stuck

☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I stick	we stick
you stick	you stick
he/she/it sticks	they stick

- *The store sticks labels on fruit.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sticking	we are sticking
you are sticking	you are sticking
he/she/it is sticking	they are sticking

- *The glue isn't sticking very well.*

PAST

I stuck	we stuck
you stuck	you stuck
he/she/it stuck	they stuck

- *A nurse stuck a bandage on Lynda's knee.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sticking	we were sticking
you were sticking	you were sticking
he/she/it was sticking	they were sticking

- *My shoes were sticking to the floor.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has stuck
PAST PERFECT	… had stuck

FUTURE	… will stick
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be sticking
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have stuck

PAST PASSIVE

I was stuck	we were stuck
you were stuck	you were stuck
he/she/it was stuck	they were stuck

- *A note was stuck on my door while I was gone.*

COMPLEMENTS

stick *remain fixed in place*	The drawer is still sticking. Our wheels stuck in the soft earth. I'm afraid the proposal is stuck in committee. The transmission has stuck in first gear. If you throw enough dirt at somebody, some of it will stick. Snow was sticking on the ground. Our pants were sticking to the plastic seats.
stick _____ *attach, fasten, fix*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE	We stuck **a patch *on the tire*.** I stuck **some pictures *on the wall*.** They stuck **the interns *in a dingy basement office*.**
PASSIVE	He was stuck ***in a dead-end job*.**
stick _____ *poke, pierce, thrust*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE	The nurse stuck **a thermometer *in his mouth*.** The cowboy stuck **a cigarette *behind his ear*.** The little boy stuck **a pin *into the balloon*.** The workers stuck **their hands *in their pockets*.**
PASSIVE	Political signs had been stuck ***on the lawn*.**

PHRASAL VERBS

stick down/in/out/up/etc. *extend in a specified position*	My toes were sticking out from under the quilt. The lid was sticking up on the jewelry box.
stick SEP_____ **away/back/down/in/on/out/up/**etc. *thrust/attach in a specified location*	Margaret stuck the report back in the drawer. I'll stick the stamps on at the post office. He stuck his tongue out at the teacher.
stick around *remain nearby*	I asked Barb to stick around until I started my car.
stick by _____ *remain loyal to*	Sara stuck by him through thick and thin.
stick out *be distinctive*	That lime green shirt of his really sticks out.
stick SEP_____ **out** *endure*	Bob quit his new job after a week; he couldn't stick it out.
stick to _____ *adhere to*	Everyone should stick to the point being discussed.
stick SEP_____ **up** *rob*	Two masked men stuck up a gas station last night.
stick up for _____ *defend*	Mom always stuck up for us kids.

PRESENT

I sting	we sting
you sting	you sting
he/she/it stings	they sting

- *That antiseptic really stings.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am stinging	we are stinging
you are stinging	you are stinging
he/she/it is stinging	they are stinging

- *My hands are still stinging.*

PAST

I stung	we stung
you stung	you stung
he/she/it stung	they stung

- *The smoke from the grill stung our eyes.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stinging	we were stinging
you were stinging	you were stinging
he/she/it was stinging	they were stinging

- *Sweat bees were stinging everyone at the picnic.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has stung
PAST PERFECT	… had stung

FUTURE	… will sting
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be stinging
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have stung

PAST PASSIVE

I was stung	we were stung
you were stung	you were stung
he/she/it was stung	they were stung

- *The swimmers were stung by jellyfish.*

COMPLEMENTS

sting *hurt by pricking/piercing the skin*	Wasps will sting if you get too close to their nest. Careful—those plants sting if you even brush them. The insects sting when the wind dies down.
sting *feel a sharp tingling/burning pain*	My skin is stinging. Our throats were stinging from the exhaust. My hands stung from the vibrations.
sting *cause emotional pain*	His criticisms stung at first. Malicious gossip stings terribly. Man, what he said really stings!
sting ____ *hurt by pricking/piercing the skin of*	
OBJECT	A bee just stung **me**.
PASSIVE	The kids who were playing in the sandbox were stung by ants.
sting ____ *cause a sharp tingling/burning pain to*	
OBJECT	The medicine stung **my throat**. The sunblock stung **my eyes**. The cold stung **my ears and hands**.
PASSIVE	My ears and hands were stung by the cold.
sting ____ *cause emotional pain to*	
OBJECT	Unjust criticism stings **a writer**. Being ridiculed would sting **anyone**.
PASSIVE	I was stung by her malicious attack. We were stung by how quickly they reacted.

154 stink

stink | stinks · stank · have stunk ☑ IRREGULAR
stink | stinks · stunk · have stunk ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I stink	we stink
you stink	you stink
he/she/it stinks	they stink

- *The barn really stinks.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am stinking	we are stinking
you are stinking	you are stinking
he/she/it is stinking	they are stinking

- *The durian is stinking up our apartment.*

PAST

I stank/stunk	we stank/stunk
you stank/stunk	you stank/stunk
he/she/it stank/stunk	they stank/stunk

- *The whole economic situation stank.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stinking	we were stinking
you were stinking	you were stinking
he/she/it was stinking	they were stinking

- *The dead skunk was stinking to high heaven.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has stunk
PAST PERFECT	… had stunk

FUTURE	… will stink
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be stinking
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have stunk

PAST PASSIVE

Stink is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

stink *give off a strong, unpleasant smell*	The alley stank like an open sewer. When tissue swells and stinks, it may be a sign of gangrene. His breath stank from cheap tobacco. You need to take out the garbage before it starts to stink.
stink *be worthless / very bad*	The movie stinks. No one liked it. The proposed merger stinks and will probably end up in court. I think the plan stinks and should be junked. The company's reputation stinks because of what they did.

PHRASAL VERBS

stink SEP **up** *fill with a strong, unpleasant smell*	Will hamsters stink up the house?

EXPRESSIONS

stink up the joint/place *perform very badly*	Our team really stunk up the joint tonight.
stink to high heaven *give off an extremely unpleasant smell*	When broccoli goes bad, it stinks to high heaven.

☑ REGULAR **strew | strews · strewed · have strewed**
☑ IRREGULAR **strew | strews · strewed · have strewn**

strew

PRESENT

I strew	we strew
you strew	you strew
he/she/it strews	they strew

- *A flower girl strews petals down the aisle.*

PAST

I strewed	we strewed
you strewed	you strewed
he/she/it strewed	they strewed

- *We strewed the dance floor with chalk.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has strewn
PAST PERFECT … had strewn

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am strewing	we are strewing
you are strewing	you are strewing
he/she/it is strewing	they are strewing

- *The wind is strewing leaves on the patio.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was strewing	we were strewing
you were strewing	you were strewing
he/she/it was strewing	they were strewing

- *The woman was strewing flowers on his grave.*

FUTURE … will strew
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be strewing
FUTURE PERFECT … will have strewn

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was strewn	they were strewn

- *The puppy's food was strewn all around the kitchen.*

COMPLEMENTS

strew ____ *scatter, spread untidily*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE	The storm had strewn **paper and trash *everywhere*.** The rebels were strewing **mines *throughout the valley*.** An explosion strew **concrete and metal *over a four-block area*.**
PASSIVE	Newspapers and magazines were strewn ***around the living room*.**

strew ____ *be scattered/littered over*

OBJECT	A carpet of leaves strewed **the pathway**, making it impossible to see. Rusting cars and trucks strewed **the front yard.**

strew ____ *cover [a surface] by scattering [with something]*

OBJECT + *with* OBJECT	His parents have strewn **their dining room table *with potted plants*.** Our neighbors are strewing **their lawn *with wrought iron furniture*.** The author strewed **her novel *with clues to the killer's identity*.**
PASSIVE	The beach was strewn ***with rotting wood*.**

156 stride

stride | strides · strode · have stridden ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I stride	we stride
you stride	you stride
he/she/it strides	they stride

- *He strides in like he is on a mission.*

PAST

I strode	we strode
you strode	you strode
he/she/it strode	they strode

- *The cowboys strode into the town square.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has stridden
PAST PERFECT	. . . had stridden

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am striding	we are striding
you are striding	you are striding
he/she/it is striding	they are striding

- *The horses are striding along at a fast clip now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was striding	we were striding
you were striding	you were striding
he/she/it was striding	they were striding

- *They were striding as though they were on parade.*

FUTURE	. . . will stride
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be striding
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have stridden

PAST PASSIVE

Stride is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

stride *walk with long steps*	He doesn't walk, he strides. The boys were pretending to stride like soldiers. He was striding so fast that he was almost running.
stride ____ *walk briskly* ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	He strode **across the room** in two quick steps and jerked open the door. They strode angrily **down the street and into the mayor's office**. The delegation strode **past us**, grim faced, not looking to the left or right.

PHRASAL VERBS

stride along/away/down/in/out/up/etc. *stride in a specified direction*	He was striding along, muttering to himself. Leon glared at the boss, then strode away. The captain strode up and shook my hand.

☑ IRREGULAR strike | strikes · struck · have struck
☑ IRREGULAR strike | strikes · struck · have stricken

strike

PRESENT

I strike	we strike
you strike	you strike
he/she/it strikes	they strike

- *The idea strikes us as promising.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am striking	we are striking
you are striking	you are striking
he/she/it is striking	they are striking

- *The flu is striking everyone.*

PAST

I struck	we struck
you struck	you struck
he/she/it struck	they struck

- *She struck her foot on a chair.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was striking	we were striking
you were striking	you were striking
he/she/it was striking	they were striking

- *The union was striking at midnight.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has struck/stricken
PAST PERFECT	… had struck/stricken

FUTURE	… will strike
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be striking
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have struck/stricken

PAST PASSIVE

I was struck/stricken	we were struck/stricken
you were struck/stricken	you were struck/stricken
he/she/it was struck/stricken	they were struck/stricken

- *He was suddenly struck by a brilliant idea.*

COMPLEMENTS

strike *attack, cause sudden damage/injury*

An earthquake struck this morning in northern California.
Disaster struck when the ferry capsized in heavy seas.
The killer has struck again.
Many snakes hiss before they strike.

strike *refuse to work until one's demands are met*

The maintenance workers voted to strike.
We will strike if our demands are not met.
They are striking for better health benefits.

strike ____ *hit forcefully*

OBJECT

A falling tree limb struck **me** on the shoulder.
The van struck **several parked cars**.
He struck **the ball** with his head.
Sunshine struck **the mirror**, temporarily blinding me.

PASSIVE

The Pinkston family was struck by tragedy today.
We were all struck by the coincidence.

strike ____ *occur to*

OBJECT

A great idea just struck **me**.
The solution to the problem struck **him**.

it + *strike* + OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

It struck **us *that our problem had been solved***.
It strikes **me *that you are taking an unnecessary risk***.
It struck **everyone *that it was getting very late***.

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN

NOTE: The predicate noun refers to the subject, not the object.

The attack struck **the policeman *as a suicide bombing***.
He struck **her *as an honest man***.
His scheme struck **us *as a stupid idea***.

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

NOTE: The predicate adjective refers to the subject, not the object.

Thomas struck **her *as nice but a little strange***.
The proposal struck **me *as promising***.
Their children struck **us *as well-behaved***.

top 30 verb

157 strike

strike | strikes · struck · have struck ☑ IRREGULAR
strike | strikes · struck · have stricken ☑ IRREGULAR

strike ______ *reach/achieve [an agreement, compromise]*	
OBJECT	The two sides finally struck **a deal**. You must strike **the right balance between compassion and assertiveness**.
PASSIVE	A compromise on the budget was finally struck.

PHRASAL VERBS

strike back/down/out *attack in a specified direction*	The hero struck back with his mighty sword.
strike ___SEP___ **back/down/out** *hit in a specified direction*	Roger struck Steve down with a blow to the head.
strike ___SEP___ **down** *invalidate [a law]*	The Supreme Court struck down the gay marriage ban as unconstitutional.
strike ___SEP___ **off** *remove*	The secretary struck off the names of those who hadn't paid dues.
strike off/out (for ______) *set out (to [someplace])*	Thousands struck out for California in search of gold.
strike on ______ *realize suddenly*	The author struck on the idea of setting the novel in colonial America.
strike out *fail*	Brandy struck out trying to convince the boss to give her a raise.
strike ___SEP___ **up** *begin*	Ben struck up a conversation with the receptionist. Sadie and Sally struck up a friendship at school.

EXPRESSIONS

strike a balance (between ______) *compromise (between [two things])*	She manages to strike a balance between her work and her family.
strike a bargain/deal *reach agreement*	The union and the company struck a bargain at the eleventh hour.
strike a chord (with ______) *sound familiar to [someone]*	Those words strike a chord with me; what song are they from?
strike a happy medium *find a satisfactory compromise*	She speaks French and I speak English, so we struck a happy medium and watched a French film with English subtitles.
strike a nerve *cause a strong negative reaction*	Your insensitive comment about immigration really struck a nerve.
strike ______ funny *seem humorous/odd to*	It strikes me funny that they dropped charges against the politician.
strike home *make sense*	His advice to save for a rainy day really strikes home.
strike it rich *become suddenly wealthy*	They struck it rich in the real estate business.
strike [one, two, … twelve / midnight] [OF A CLOCK] *indicate the hour by a certain number of sounds*	The clock struck one, and the mouse ran down. [NURSERY RHYME]
strike pay dirt *become suddenly successful*	The Mars rover has struck pay dirt: It has discovered evidence of water on the planet.
strike [someone's] fancy *appeal to [someone]*	Miss Elizabeth Bennet struck Mr. Darcy's fancy.
strike while the iron is hot *do something while one has the opportunity*	The economy is booming, and the board recommends that the company strike while the iron is hot.

top 30 verb

☑ IRREGULAR

string | strings · strung · have strung

string 158

PRESENT

I string	we string
you string	you string
he/she/it strings	they string

- *He strings Christmas lights in the trees.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am stringing	we are stringing
you are stringing	you are stringing
he/she/it is stringing	they are stringing

- *The kids are stringing beads.*

PAST

I strung	we strung
you strung	you strung
he/she/it strung	they strung

- *I strung the bows for the children.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stringing	we were stringing
you were stringing	you were stringing
he/she/it was stringing	they were stringing

- *We were stringing shells for a wall hanging.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has strung
PAST PERFECT	… had strung

FUTURE	… will string
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be stringing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have strung

PAST PASSIVE

I was strung	we were strung
you were strung	you were strung
he/she/it was strung	they were strung

- *My tennis racket was strung too tight.*

COMPLEMENTS

string ___ *hang/stretch [in a line]*

OBJECT	We used to string **popcorn and cranberries** on our Christmas tree. The fishermen strung **lines** in the channel. The decorating committee wanted to string **lanterns** in the hall.
PASSIVE	A trip wire had been strung across the path.

string ___ *thread (on a line/cord)*

OBJECT	Kids love to string **different shapes of uncooked pasta**. When we catch fish, we string **them** on a line.
PASSIVE	The beads were strung to make simple necklaces.

string ___ *put strings on [a racket, bow, musical instrument]*

OBJECT	You can't string **a tennis racket** by hand. It takes a great deal of strength to string **a powerful bow**.
PASSIVE	The instruments were all strung by a professional musician.

PHRASAL VERBS

string _SEP_ **along** *keep [someone] hoping for romance / a reward*	Jenny strung Reggie along for several months before telling him to get lost. He strings employees along by promising raises that they never get.
string _SEP_ **out** *prolong*	The professor was stringing out his lecture on quantum gravity.
string _SEP_ **up** *hang by the neck*	An angry mob strung the cattle thieves up in the town square.

159 strive

strive | strives · strove · have striven
strive | strives · strived · have strived

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

PRESENT

I strive	we strive
you strive	you strive
he/she/it strives	they strive

- *He strives to do his very best.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am striving	we are striving
you are striving	you are striving
he/she/it is striving	they are striving

- *He is striving to succeed.*

PAST

I strove	we strove
you strove	you strove
he/she/it strove	they strove

- *We strove to get the job finished on time.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was striving	we were striving
you were striving	you were striving
he/she/it was striving	they were striving

- *Everyone was striving to beat the deadline.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has striven
PAST PERFECT	… had striven

FUTURE	… will strive
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be striving
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have striven

PAST PASSIVE

Strive is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

strive ___ *make a great effort, try very hard*

INFINITIVE	You must always strive **to improve yourself**.
	We always strove **to get the kids to school on time**.
	Successful companies constantly strive **to make their products better**.
	If you don't strive **to succeed**, you will surely fail in the long run.
	The whole team was striving **to be the best in the league**.

strive ___ *fight, struggle*

for OBJECT	We strive **for peace and freedom**.
against OBJECT	The activists are striving **against poverty and injustice**.

☑ IRREGULAR

swear | swears · swore · have sworn

swear 160

PRESENT

I swear	we swear
you swear	you swear
he/she/it swears	they swear

- *He swears that he knew nothing about it.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am swearing	we are swearing
you are swearing	you are swearing
he/she/it is swearing	they are swearing

- *They are swearing that they are innocent.*

PAST

I swore	we swore
you swore	you swore
he/she/it swore	they swore

- *The witness swore to tell the truth.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was swearing	we were swearing
you were swearing	you were swearing
he/she/it was swearing	they were swearing

- *The soldiers were swearing and yelling at us.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has sworn
PAST PERFECT	… had sworn

FUTURE	… will swear
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be swearing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have sworn

PAST PASSIVE

I was sworn	we were sworn
you were sworn	you were sworn
he/she/it was sworn	they were sworn

- *The appropriate oaths were sworn during the ceremony.*

COMPLEMENTS

swear *use offensive language, usually in anger*	He swore under his breath. Please don't swear around the children. It was enough to make one swear!
swear ____ *promise, vow, pledge, state very seriously*	
OBJECT	I swore **a solemn promise**. Peter swore **his undying love to Héloïse**. The nobles all swore **their allegiance to the king**.
PASSIVE	The oath was sworn and witnessed.
INFINITIVE	I swear **to do it**. Criminals always swear **to never commit another crime**. He swears **to mend the error of his ways**. "I swear **to tell the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth**." [COMMON COURTROOM OATH]
THAT-CLAUSE	I swear **that we were not the cause of the accident**. The defendant swore **that he only shot in self-defense**. The kids all swore **that they didn't let the dog out**. "I do solemnly swear **that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States….**" [OATH OF OFFICE]

PHRASAL VERBS

swear at ____ *curse at*	He swore at me when I told him to leave the room.
swear by ____ *have great faith in*	Trudy swears by yoga.
swear _SEP_ **in** *administer an oath to*	The Chief Justice of the Supreme Court swears in the President of the United States. The witness was sworn in by the bailiff.
swear off ____ *promise to quit*	Randi has sworn off dieting.

EXPRESSIONS

swear ____ **to secrecy** *cause to promise not to repeat a secret*	Annette swore me to secrecy about her background.
swear to it *be absolutely certain about something* [USUALLY NEGATIVE]	I wouldn't swear to it, but I think Elvis is still alive.

161 sweat

sweat | sweats · sweated · have sweated
sweat | sweats · sweat · have sweat

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I sweat	we sweat
you sweat	you sweat
he/she/it sweats	they sweat

- *He sweats heavily when he exercises.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sweating	we are sweating
you are sweating	you are sweating
he/she/it is sweating	they are sweating

- *I am really sweating tomorrow's exam.*

PAST

I sweat	we sweat
you sweat	you sweat
he/she/it sweat	they sweat

- *They sweat so much they felt faint.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sweating	we were sweating
you were sweating	you were sweating
he/she/it was sweating	they were sweating

- *We were all sweating by the time we finished.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has sweat
PAST PERFECT	… had sweat

FUTURE	… will sweat
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be sweating
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have sweat

PAST PASSIVE

I was sweat	we were sweat
you were sweat	you were sweat
he/she/it was sweat	they were sweat

- *The wrestlers were sweat until they got down to 190 pounds.*

COMPLEMENTS

sweat *perspire*	I always sweat when I work out. Everyone in the hot office was sweating like crazy. He sweats so much that he has to change his clothes after lunch.
sweat *form drops of water on its surface*	The bottles of water began to sweat. The plaster walls were actually sweating in the humid air. The cheese is sweating and needs to be refrigerated.
sweat *be worried/nervous*	The police let him sweat overnight. Don't sweat. Everything will be okay. They are going to make him sweat until he tells what happened.
sweat ____ *cause to perspire through exertion*	
OBJECT	The coach wants to sweat **the football players** at every practice. The training session had sweat **everybody**.
PASSIVE	The horses were sweat by the trainers and then allowed to slowly cool off.
sweat ____ *be worried/nervous about*	
OBJECT	Noel was sweating **the job interview**. Everyone sweats **the final exam**.
over OBJECT	Maureen sweat **over her English literature grade**. Ruth was sweating **over the upcoming conference in Montreal**.
sweat ____ *work very hard on*	
over OBJECT	The winner sweat **over the wording of his acceptance speech**. Jeffrey sweat all last week **over his essay**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sweat _SEP_ **off** *lose [an amount of weight] by exercising*	Angie sweat off 22 pounds in two months.

EXPRESSIONS

sweat blood *work very hard*	She was willing to sweat blood for a spot on the Olympic team.
sweat bullets *be extremely worried/nervous*	Poor Leroy was sweating bullets outside the principal's office.

☑ IRREGULAR

sweep | sweeps · swept · have swept

sweep 162

PRESENT

I sweep	we sweep
you sweep	you sweep
he/she/it sweeps	they sweep

- *He sweeps the leaves into the gutter.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sweeping	we are sweeping
you are sweeping	you are sweeping
he/she/it is sweeping	they are sweeping

- *She is sweeping the front porch.*

PAST

I swept	we swept
you swept	you swept
he/she/it swept	they swept

- *The Giants swept the three-game series.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sweeping	we were sweeping
you were sweeping	you were sweeping
he/she/it was sweeping	they were sweeping

- *The incoming tide was sweeping across the bay.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has swept
PAST PERFECT	… had swept

FUTURE	… will sweep
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be sweeping
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have swept

PAST PASSIVE

I was swept	we were swept
you were swept	you were swept
he/she/it was swept	they were swept

- *The room was swept this morning.*

COMPLEMENTS

sweep ____ *clean with a broom/brush*

OBJECT	You need to sweep **the kitchen floor**. I'll sweep **the carpet** in the entryway.
PASSIVE	The garage has already been swept.

sweep ____ *clear away*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The archaeologist carefully swept **dirt *from the bones***. The waiter swept **the crumbs *onto a tray***.
PASSIVE	The trash had been swept ***into a pile in the corner***.

sweep ____ *carry along in a continuous motion*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The cook swept **a greasy cloth *over the lunch counter***. The current swept **the boat *onto the rocks***. The mud slide swept **the house *off its foundation***.
PASSIVE	We were swept ***out to sea*** by the offshore winds.

sweep ____ *pass over in a continuous motion*

OBJECT	The guard's eyes swept **the room**. The politician's glance swept **the crowd**.

sweep ____ *move quickly*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The rumor swept **through the crowd**. A gust of rain swept **down the empty street**.

sweep ____ *search*

OBJECT	The volunteers swept **the woods**, looking for the lost children. Technicians swept **the office** for hidden electronic devices.
PASSIVE	The crime scene has already been swept.

sweep ____ *win all that can be won in*

OBJECT	Our party swept **the fall election**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sweep along/down/in/off/out/past/up/etc. *sweep in a specified direction*	The queen swept in with all her attendants. The motorcade swept past.
sweep SEP **along/aside/away/back/in/off/out/past/up**/etc. *sweep [something] in a specified direction*	The Russian revolution swept the old system away overnight. His election swept in a host of governmental reforms. The tornado swept up everything in its path.

swell

swell | swells · swelled · have swelled
swell | swells · swelled · have swollen

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I swell	we swell
you swell	you swell
he/she/it swells	they swell

- *My ankles swell if I stand too long.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am swelling	we are swelling
you are swelling	you are swelling
he/she/it is swelling	they are swelling

- *The wood is swelling from all the moisture.*

PAST

I swelled	we swelled
you swelled	you swelled
he/she/it swelled	they swelled

- *The sails swelled in the wind.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was swelling	we were swelling
you were swelling	you were swelling
he/she/it was swelling	they were swelling

- *Naturally, her parents were swelling with pride.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has swollen
PAST PERFECT	… had swollen

FUTURE	… will swell
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be swelling
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have swollen

PAST PASSIVE

I was swollen	we were swollen
you were swollen	you were swollen
he/she/it was swollen	they were swollen

- *The river was swollen by weeks of rain.*

COMPLEMENTS

swell *become larger/stronger, expand*

My hands swelled from the heat.
The crowd in front of the gate was swelling by the minute.
The orchestra music was swelling and the lights dimmed.
The balloon swelled and began to lift.

swell ____ *cause to become larger/stronger, cause to expand*

OBJECT
The snowmelt had swollen **all the lakes**.
The bad news swelled **the rumors about layoffs**.
The pump quickly swelled **the balloons** to full size.

PASSIVE
My lymph nodes were swollen.

swell ____ *become filled [with an emotion]*

with OBJECT
Ebenezer's heart swelled **with the Christmas spirit**.
Tiny Tim swelled **with gratitude**.
The cyclist was swelling **with confidence** after winning the Tour de France.

☑ IRREGULAR

swim | swims · swam · have swum

swim

164

PRESENT

I swim	we swim
you swim	you swim
he/she/it swims	they swim

- *He swims three times a week.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am swimming	we are swimming
you are swimming	you are swimming
he/she/it is swimming	they are swimming

- *The kids are swimming in the pool.*

PAST

I swam	we swam
you swam	you swam
he/she/it swam	they swam

- *I swam competitively in college.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was swimming	we were swimming
you were swimming	you were swimming
he/she/it was swimming	they were swimming

- *My head was swimming from her perfume.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has swum
PAST PERFECT	… had swum

FUTURE	… will swim
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be swimming
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have swum

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was swum	they were swum

- *The English Channel was first swum in 1875.*

COMPLEMENTS

swim *travel through water by moving one's arms and legs*	Look at me! I'm swimming. Do you know how to swim? I could swim before I could ride a bicycle.
swim *be dizzy*	The cocktails make my head swim. After the accident, my head swam and my ears rang. They gave me so many different directions that my head was swimming.
swim ____ *travel through water by moving one's arms and legs*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	Let's swim **out to the reef**. The fish swam **into the net**. We had swum **clear across the lake**. The kids like to swim **under the dock**.
swim ____ *cross by swimming*	
OBJECT	Salmon can swim **most of the Columbia River**. A few people have swum **the Strait of Messina**. The kids are trying to swim **the length of the pool** under water.
swim ____ *seem to be whirling*	
ADVERB OF PLACE	After he drank the punch, the room swam **before his eyes**.
swim ____ *be completely covered with* [USED ONLY IN THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES]	
ADVERB OF PLACE	The lettuce was practically swimming **in salad dressing**.

PHRASAL VERBS

swim along/around/away/in/off/out/up/etc. *swim in a specified direction*	The kids were swimming around in the pond. After we fed the dolphins, they swam off.

EXPRESSIONS

sink or swim *fail or succeed*	Donna has a new job, and we are wondering if she will sink or swim.
swim against the current/tide *act in a way opposite to others*	I swam against the tide in high school—and often got punished for it.

165 swing

swing | swings · swung · have swung ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I swing	we swing
you swing	you swing
he/she/it swings	they swing

- *Watch out—the door swings toward you.*

PAST

I swung	we swung
you swung	you swung
he/she/it swung	they swung

- *He swung his racket and missed.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has swung
PAST PERFECT	. . . had swung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am swinging	we are swinging
you are swinging	you are swinging
he/she/it is swinging	they are swinging

- *You are swinging the bat too late.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was swinging	we were swinging
you were swinging	you were swinging
he/she/it was swinging	they were swinging

- *The kids were swinging on vines.*

FUTURE	. . . will swing
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be swinging
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have swung

PAST PASSIVE

I was swung	we were swung
you were swung	you were swung
he/she/it was swung	they were swung

- *The heavy beam was swung into place.*

COMPLEMENTS

swing *sway/rock back and forth*	The gate was swinging in the wind. The earthquake caused the chandeliers to swing. The dancers were swinging in time to the music.
swing *change suddenly*	His moods were swinging more and more wildly. Opinion polls were swinging all over the map.
swing *strike at something in a sweeping motion*	The batter swings and misses. The tired boxers were swinging wildly. A good golfer swings with his hips, not just with his arms.
swing ___ *move ([something]) in a sweeping motion*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The cowboy swung **into the saddle**. The children swung **onto the wagon**. I swung **into the driver's seat**.
OBJECT	He swung **the bat** and drove the ball into left field. Biff swung **a punch** when the referee wasn't looking. He swung **the golf club** and topped the ball.
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	I swung **my leg *over the top rail*** and jumped. Larry swung **his suitcase *onto the bed***. She swung **her arm *around my shoulder***. The kids swung **the rope *over a limb***.
swing ___ *influence decisively*	
OBJECT	The senator thought his ad could swing **the election**. We hoped to swing **enough undecided voters** to win.

PHRASAL VERBS

swing around/down/in/off/out/etc. *swing in a specified direction*	The cowboy swung down from the saddle. The path swings off to the right at the top of the hill.
swing ___SEP___ **around/down/in/off/out/**etc. *swing [something] in a specified direction*	The knight swung his sword around, and everyone stepped back.
swing by/over *visit briefly*	Susan will swing by if she has a chance.
swing by/over ___ *visit briefly*	I'll swing by Grandma's on the way to the store. Can you swing over to the grocery and buy some milk?

PRESENT

I take	we take
you take	you take
he/she/it takes	they take

- *He always takes the bus to work.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am taking	we are taking
you are taking	you are taking
he/she/it is taking	they are taking

- *He is taking a long time.*

PAST

I took	we took
you took	you took
he/she/it took	they took

- *Someone took the last cup of coffee.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was taking	we were taking
you were taking	you were taking
he/she/it was taking	they were taking

- *We were taking the bus to New York.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has taken
PAST PERFECT	… had taken

FUTURE	… will take
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be taking
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have taken

PAST PASSIVE

I was taken	we were taken
you were taken	you were taken
he/she/it was taken	they were taken

- *All of the seats were already taken.*

COMPLEMENTS

take ____ *grasp, take possession of*	
OBJECT	He took **his daughter's hand**.
PASSIVE	Our ID cards were taken by the police.
take ____ *get, obtain*	
OBJECT	Frank took **a job at the radio station**. Gerry took **a jar of olives** from the refrigerator.
take ____ *carry, transport*	
OBJECT	You should always take **your passport** when you travel. Take **an umbrella** in case it rains. Can you take **the kids** with you? I usually take **my lunch**.
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	Would you take **these books** ***to the library***? Amos took **the package** ***to the post office.*** This bus takes **riders** ***to the stadium.***
take ____ *bring, lead*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	Bill is taking **Fran** ***to the dance***. This path takes **you** ***to the top of Buttimer Hill.***
take ____ *travel by [a vehicle, route]*	
OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)	We can take **the elevator or the stairs**—you choose. My parents once took **the Queen Mary**. Let's take **the scenic route**. We took **Route 66** ***from Chicago to Los Angeles.*** The kids took **a shortcut** ***through the woods.*** They took **the bus** ***home.***
take ____ *move to [a position]*	
OBJECT	Gentlemen, please take **your seats**. The two teams are taking **the field**.
take ____ *engage in [an activity]*	
OBJECT	Let's take **a 10-minute break**. Thomas always takes **an afternoon nap**. We took **a nice walk in the park**. I took **a class in income tax preparation**.

166 take

take | takes · took · have taken ☑ IRREGULAR

take _____ *eat, drink, swallow*	
OBJECT	I'll take **a black coffee and two donuts**, please. I took **an aspirin** for my headache.
take _____ *capture, win*	
OBJECT	After a brief fight, the soldiers took **the fort**. The Cards took **three out of four games** from the Mets.
take _____ *subscribe to, rent*	
OBJECT	They take **several newspapers and magazines**. We took **an apartment in the city**.
take _____ *steal*	
OBJECT	Somebody took **my wallet**. People often take **newspapers** without paying for them.
take _____ *require, use up*	
OBJECT + INFINITIVE	It took **a long time *to repair the leak***. It takes **$50 *to fill the truck with gas***. They took **two days *to drive to Dallas***. It takes **a lot of courage *to go skydiving***.
take _____ *endure, suffer*	
OBJECT	Football players take **a lot of physical punishment**. I can't take **this heat and humidity**.
take _____ *make by photography*	
OBJECT	Uncle Cecil took **pictures** during the family reunion.
take _____ *interpret*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER	She took **my joke *seriously***.

PHRASAL VERBS

take ___ SEP ___ **along/aside/away/down/in/out/up/**etc. *bring/carry/lead/transport in a specified direction*	Grandmother took us along to the store. The elevator takes you down to the parking garage.
take ___ SEP ___ **down** *write down, record*	The officer took down his address and phone number.
take ___ SEP ___ **down** *dismantle*	Volunteers took the political signs down afterwards.
take ___ SEP ___ **for** *mistake for*	Betty took me for my older brother.
take in _____ *attend, visit*	We could eat at Lombardo's and take in a movie. Today we'll take in the zoo and the art museum.
take ___ SEP ___ **in** *give shelter to*	My husband takes in stray cats from the neighborhood.
take off *leave, depart*	Our plane will take off at 3:05 P.M.
take off *become very active/successful*	Sales of used cars have taken off like a rocket.
take ___ SEP ___ **off** *remove [clothing, etc.]*	The players took off their helmets.
take ___ SEP ___ **off** *deduct*	The dealer took 50% off because the table was scratched.
take ___ SEP ___ **on** *hire*	My company took 30 new employees on in March.
take ___ SEP ___ **on** *undertake*	Sorry, I just can't take on another project.
take ___ SEP ___ **out** *remove*	The surgeon took Dad's gallbladder out.
take ___ SEP ___ **over** *begin managing*	A recent college graduate took over the programming department.
take to _____ *become fond of*	Khalil has really taken to calligraphy. Susan has taken to Leonard in a big way.
take up _____ *fill, occupy*	Your printing presses are taking up the whole basement! Meetings took up the governor's entire afternoon.
take ___ SEP ___ **up** *become interested in*	Stephanie has taken up knitting.

top 30 verb

teach | teaches · taught · have taught

teach

PRESENT

I teach	we teach
you teach	you teach
he/she/it teaches	they teach

- *He teaches computer science.*

PAST

I taught	we taught
you taught	you taught
he/she/it taught	they taught

- *I taught in Spain for a year.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has taught
PAST PERFECT	… had taught

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am teaching	we are teaching
you are teaching	you are teaching
he/she/it is teaching	they are teaching

- *I am teaching Introduction to Physics again.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was teaching	we were teaching
you were teaching	you were teaching
he/she/it was teaching	they were teaching

- *They were teaching him to play baseball.*

FUTURE	… will teach
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be teaching
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have taught

PAST PASSIVE

I was taught	we were taught
you were taught	you were taught
he/she/it was taught	they were taught

- *English was taught beginning in the earliest grades.*

COMPLEMENTS

teach *instruct professionally*	I have been teaching for ten years. Her sister teaches at Osaka University. I would like to teach.
teach ____ *provide training/instruction in [a skill, topic]*	
OBJECT	He teaches **martial arts.** I would like to teach **English.** Experience teaches **moderation in all things.**
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	She taught ***them* the names of the constellations.** He taught ***first-year students* world history.** I taught ***myself* the basics of geometry.**
to PARAPHRASE	She taught **the names of the constellations *to them*.** He taught **world history *to first-year students*.** I taught **the basics of geometry *to myself*.**
teach ____ *provide training/instruction to*	
OBJECT	Kathy teaches **seventh graders.** She only teaches **graduate students.** He teaches **management trainees.**
OBJECT + INFINITIVE	I taught **the kids *to drive*.** The army taught **them *to be disciplined*.**
PASSIVE	We were taught ***to think for ourselves*.**
(OBJECT +) WH-INFINITIVE	Their religion teaches **how to act.** The class teaches ***students* how to write a résumé.** The book taught ***investors* what to look for in a stock.**
teach ____ *provide [a particular philosophy/knowledge] to*	
(OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE	History teaches **that the pen is mightier than the sword.** My parents taught ***us* that hard work never hurt anyone.** The instructor taught ***the class* that a 60-40 mixture of stocks and bonds is best.**

EXPRESSIONS

teach ____ a lesson *show [someone] the correct way to behave*	His mother taught him a lesson on the value of money by making him work for his allowance.

168 **tear** tear | tears · tore · have torn

☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I tear	we tear
you tear	you tear
he/she/it tears	they tear

- *He tears stamps off envelopes.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am tearing	we are tearing
you are tearing	you are tearing
he/she/it is tearing	they are tearing

- *Be careful—you're tearing your shirt.*

PAST

I tore	we tore
you tore	you tore
he/she/it tore	they tore

- *The ligament tore with a "popping" sound.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was tearing	we were tearing
you were tearing	you were tearing
he/she/it was tearing	they were tearing

- *The kids were tearing into the chocolate brownies.*

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has torn
PAST PERFECT … had torn

FUTURE … will tear
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be tearing
FUTURE PERFECT … will have torn

PAST PASSIVE

I was torn	we were torn
you were torn	you were torn
he/she/it was torn	they were torn

- *A huge hole was torn in the building by the explosion.*

NOTE: The irregular verb *tear,* which rhymes with *care,* is presented here. The regular verb *tear,* which rhymes with *deer,* means "cry."

COMPLEMENTS

tear *rip, come apart*	Darn it! My new jeans are tearing. The canvas will tear if there is a high wind.
tear ____ *cause to rip / come apart*	
OBJECT	I tore **the envelope** trying to open it. A big gust of wind tore **our only sail**.
PASSIVE	The documents had been torn in shipping.
tear ____ *make/punch [a hole, opening] in*	
OBJECT	The artillery fire tore **a huge gap** in our right flank.
PASSIVE	A hole was torn in his shield by a spear.
tear ____ *move with force/speed*	
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The kids tore **out of the room**. The horses tore **around the last curve**.
tear ____ *damage [a muscle, ligament] by overstretching*	
OBJECT	Dirk tore **his rotator cuff** playing tennis. Soccer players often tear **muscles in their knees**.
PASSIVE	His shoulder was torn lifting weights.
tear ____ *damage greatly* [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]	
OBJECT	The country was torn by war and famine.

PHRASAL VERBS

tear around/away/down/off/out/etc. *move with force/speed in a specified direction*	The limousine tore away from the curb. The neighbor's dog always tears out after moving cars.
tear _SEP_ **apart/away/down/off/out/up/** etc. *pull in a specified direction*	Tear the coupons apart and organize them. Carpenters tore up the old carpet.
tear into ____ *begin to do/eat/etc. forcefully*	Jackie is tearing into remodeling the kitchen. The girls really tore into the peanut butter.
tear into ____ *scold severely*	The boss tore into an employee who was late.
tear _SEP_ **up** *reject*	The manager tore up the singer's contract and offered her 10 times the money.

PRESENT

I telecast	we telecast
you telecast	you telecast
he/she/it telecasts	they telecast

- *They telecast in English and Spanish.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am telecasting	we are telecasting
you are telecasting	you are telecasting
he/she/it is telecasting	they are telecasting

- *We are now telecasting soccer games live.*

PAST

I telecast	we telecast
you telecast	you telecast
he/she/it telecast	they telecast

- *The station first telecast in 1983.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was telecasting	we were telecasting
you were telecasting	you were telecasting
he/she/it was telecasting	they were telecasting

- *The network was telecasting the World Series.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has telecast
PAST PERFECT	… had telecast

FUTURE	… will telecast
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be telecasting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have telecast

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was telecast	they were telecast

- *The first TV programs were telecast before World War II.*

COMPLEMENTS

telecast *broadcast by television*

When did the station first telecast in color?
No station can telecast until it gets FCC approval.
The station is telecasting live from Civic Center.

telecast ____ *broadcast by television*

OBJECT	Many networks telecast **reality programs** because they are very inexpensive to produce.
	Networks are required to telecast **a certain number of public service programs**.
	A local station telecasts **a "To Your Health" feature** during the 10 o'clock news.
PASSIVE	The royal wedding was telecast live around the world.

170 **tell** tell | tells · told · have told ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I tell	we tell
you tell	you tell
he/she/it tells	they tell

- *He tells people what they want to hear.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am telling	we are telling
you are telling	you are telling
he/she/it is telling	they are telling

- *I'm telling the whole world that I love you.*

PAST

I told	we told
you told	you told
he/she/it told	they told

- *I told the truth.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was telling	we were telling
you were telling	you were telling
he/she/it was telling	they were telling

- *We were just telling them what happened.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has told
PAST PERFECT	… had told

FUTURE	… will tell
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be telling
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have told

PAST PASSIVE

I was told	we were told
you were told	you were told
he/she/it was told	they were told

- *The children were told that they could stay up late.*

COMPLEMENTS

tell *reveal secret/confidential information*	Please don't tell. I will never tell.
tell *have a definite effect*	The long hours are beginning to tell. The constant battering by the artillery was starting to tell.
tell *know the outcome/result* [USED IN QUESTIONS AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES]	Who can tell? I certainly can't tell.
tell _____ *put into words, express*	
OBJECT	I told **the truth**, but he was telling **a flat-out lie**. He told **a story about growing up in Greece**.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	I told ***the kids*** **a ghost story**. Who wants to tell ***them*** **the bad news**?
to PARAPHRASE	I told **a ghost story** ***to the kids***. Who wants to tell **the bad news** ***to them***?
tell _____ *inform*	
OBJECT + *THAT*-CLAUSE	We need to tell **them** ***that the trip has been canceled***. I told **everyone** ***that we were engaged***.
PASSIVE	The press had been told ***that the senator was ill***.
OBJECT + *WH*-CLAUSE	The consultant told **us** ***what we should do***. I told **them** ***how much it would cost***.
OBJECT + *WH*-INFINITIVE	The taxi driver told **us** ***where to go***.
PASSIVE	The staff was told ***what to expect***.
tell _____ *order, command*	
OBJECT + INFINITIVE	I told **her** ***to return the book as soon as she could***.
PASSIVE	They had been told ***to stay inside during the storm***.
tell _____ *recognize, determine with certainty* [USUALLY WITH *can* OR *could*]	
THAT-CLAUSE	I couldn't tell **that anything had happened**. Can you tell **that we remodeled the kitchen**?
WH-CLAUSE	Can you tell **who it is**? I can't tell **what went wrong**.

PHRASAL VERBS

tell _SEP_ **off** *scold, criticize*	She told my brother off for not keeping his room clean.

think

PRESENT

I think	we think
you think	you think
he/she/it thinks	they think

- *He thinks that the movie begins at 7:45.*

PAST

I thought	we thought
you thought	you thought
he/she/it thought	they thought

- *I thought long and hard about it.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has thought
PAST PERFECT	. . . had thought

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am thinking	we are thinking
you are thinking	you are thinking
he/she/it is thinking	they are thinking

- *Don't rush me—I'm thinking.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was thinking	we were thinking
you were thinking	you were thinking
he/she/it was thinking	they were thinking

- *They were thinking that the worst had happened.*

FUTURE	. . . will think
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be thinking
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have thought

PAST PASSIVE

I was thought	we were thought
you were thought	you were thought
he/she/it was thought	they were thought

- *The accident was thought to have been caused by pilot error.*

COMPLEMENTS

think *use one's mind, reason*	Think twice before you do anything. "I think, therefore I am." [RENÉ DESCARTES]
think ____ *believe, expect*	
THAT-CLAUSE	I thought **that dinner was good, but a little too heavy**. Do they think **that the flight will leave on time**?
think ____ *consider, judge*	
OBJECT + (*to be*) PREDICATE NOUN	The reviewer thought **the book *(to be) a bit of a dud***. The public thought **Clark *(to be) a dashing hero***.
PASSIVE	At first, Truman was thought ***(to be) a failed president***.
OBJECT + (*to be*) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	Everyone thought **Thomas *(to be) promising***. They thought **the idea *(to be) ready to present to the board***.
PASSIVE	The car was thought ***(to be) quite overpriced***.
OBJECT + INFINITIVE	I thought **him *to have more sense than that***.
PASSIVE	He was thought ***to own several Renoirs***.
think ____ *remember* [USED IN QUESTIONS AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES, OFTEN WITH *can* OR *could*]	
of OBJECT	I can't think **of the girl's name**.
INFINITIVE	Did you think **to lock the back door**? Who thought **to bring some insect repellent**?
WH-CLAUSE	We couldn't think **what his name was**. I couldn't think **where we were supposed to meet the group**.
WH-INFINITIVE	I couldn't think **what to say**. Aunt Polly couldn't think **where to turn next**.
think ____ *contemplate, consider*	
of/about OBJECT	The board was thinking **of Rex for secretary**. She thinks **about him** all the time.
of/about PRESENT PARTICIPLE	Anne was thinking **of asking Wentworth to the concert**. We were thinking **about ordering Chinese for dinner**.

PHRASAL VERBS

think SEP **over** *consider carefully*	I need to think your proposal over before making a decision.
think SEP **up** *invent, plan*	We thought up a better way to manage inventory. They thought up a clever way to trick Bart and Jacob.

172 thrive

thrive | thrives · thrived · have thrived
thrive | thrives · throve · have thriven

☑ REGULAR
☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I thrive	we thrive
you thrive	you thrive
he/she/it thrives	they thrive

• *The senator thrives on controversy.*

PAST

I throve	we throve
you throve	you throve
he/she/it throve	they throve

•

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has thriven
PAST PERFECT … had thriven

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am thriving	we are thriving
you are thriving	you are thriving
he/she/it is thriving	they are thriving

• *The children are thriving in their new school.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was thriving	we were thriving
you were thriving	you were thriving
he/she/it was thriving	they were thriving

• *Despite the economy, our business was thriving.*

FUTURE … will thrive
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE … will be thriving
FUTURE PERFECT … will have thriven

PAST PASSIVE

Thrive is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

thrive *flourish, prosper*	These plants thrive in a warm, moist climate. Children need stability to thrive. A company needs capital to thrive. The young lettuce plants throve in spite of the hard frost last week.
thrive ____ *flourish/prosper [because of]*	
on OBJECT	People can thrive **on a vegetarian diet**. I thrive **on hard work**. Swindlers thrive **on people who want to make money without working.**

☑ IRREGULAR

throw | throws · threw · have thrown

throw

PRESENT

I throw	we throw
you throw	you throw
he/she/it throws	they throw

- *He throws great parties.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am throwing	we are throwing
you are throwing	you are throwing
he/she/it is throwing	they are throwing

- *I am throwing an informal reception for them.*

PAST

I threw	we threw
you threw	you threw
he/she/it threw	they threw

- *I threw another log on the fire.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was throwing	we were throwing
you were throwing	you were throwing
he/she/it was throwing	they were throwing

- *He was throwing rocks into the pond.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has thrown
PAST PERFECT	… had thrown

FUTURE	… will throw
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be throwing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have thrown

PAST PASSIVE

I was thrown	we were thrown
you were thrown	you were thrown
he/she/it was thrown	they were thrown

- *A rope was thrown to the people in the canoe.*

COMPLEMENTS

throw *toss/hurl a projectile*	He doesn't throw with much force. I couldn't throw because I had injured my shoulder. If you want to play baseball, you have to learn how to throw.
throw ____ *toss, hurl*	
OBJECT	Kids love to throw **rocks**. The mob started throwing **bricks**. The pitcher could throw **the ball** sidearm.
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	My sister threw **her coat *on the sofa***. Josh threw **the report *on my desk***.
throw ____ *propel suddenly and forcefully*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The explosion threw **me *to the ground***. Someone threw **a chair *against the wall***. The cook threw **the pizza dough *high into the air***.
PASSIVE	The driver was thrown ***into the ditch***.
throw ____ *direct, cast*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The actor threw **a dirty look *at the people talking in the front row***. The lantern threw **light *around the barn***.
PASSIVE	All of our resources were thrown ***into the project***.
throw ____ *toss, give*	
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	He threw ***the dog* a bone**. Throw ***me* that notebook**, will you?
to PARAPHRASE	He threw **a bone *to the dog***. Throw **that notebook *to me***, will you?
throw ____ *host [an event]*	
OBJECT	The church threw **a potluck dinner**.
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	We threw ***my sister* an engagement party**. They are going to throw ***us* a going-away party**.
for PARAPHRASE	We threw **an engagement party *for my sister***. They are going to throw **a going-away party *for us***.

top 30 verb

173 throw

throw | throws · threw · have thrown ☑ IRREGULAR

throw ____ *put suddenly [in a place, condition]* OBJECT + *into* OBJECT	The sheriff threw **the suspects *into jail*.** His remarks threw **the audience *into hysteria*.**

PHRASAL VERBS

throw SEP **around/aside/back/down/in/off/out/up/**etc. *toss/hurl in a specified direction*	The players were throwing a Frisbee around. Would you throw the ball back? He threw his head back and laughed. He threw his book bag down.
throw SEP **around** *spend [money] freely*	He throws money around like it grows on trees.
throw SEP **away** *discard, get rid of*	Don't throw the lamp away; I'm going to fix it.
throw SEP **in** *interject*	Jan threw in the idea of working at a soup kitchen.
throw SEP **in** *add as an extra*	They will throw in a medium pizza for free.
throw SEP **off** *mislead, fool*	His foreign accent threw the police off.
throw SEP **on** *put on in haste*	I'll throw on a jacket and be ready to go.
throw SEP **out** *discard, get rid of*	We won't throw the plastic out; we'll recycle it instead.
throw SEP **out** *expel*	The teacher threw him out for using profanity.
throw SEP **out** *reject*	The judge will throw the convict's testimony out.
throw SEP **out** *offer*	Dave is always throwing out suggestions.
throw SEP **together** *put together in haste*	Let's throw together some pasta for supper. We can throw a scale model together in a week.
throw up *vomit*	He threw up on the way home from the ballpark.
throw SEP **up** *build quickly*	A developer threw up a flimsy apartment building on the corner.

EXPRESSIONS

throw ____ **a curve** *surprise [someone]*	The company threw us a curve by switching medical insurance plans.
throw a fit/tantrum *display anger*	Johnny throws a fit when I ask him to wash his hands.
throw [a lot of / some] light on ____ *clarify, give details about*	Scientists threw some light on the human genome.
throw cold water on ____ *discourage*	The committee threw cold water on our ideas for reducing waste.
throw ____ **for a loop** *shock/confuse [someone]*	The program glitch threw the programmers for a loop.
throw good money after bad *waste even more money on something*	Frank threw good money after bad by buying 100 more shares of the worthless stock.
throw in the sponge/towel *quit, give up*	The firm is throwing in the towel after losing its three biggest customers.
throw [one's] hands up *quit in despair*	After losing eight straight Solitaire games, Dad threw his hands up and decided to read the newspaper.
throw [one's] weight around *use one's power excessively*	Mid-level managers love to throw their weight around when the boss is gone.
throw [oneself] into ____ *involve oneself in [something] eagerly*	Paul threw himself into basketweaving.
throw the book at ____ *charge [someone] with as many crimes as possible*	The district attorney threw the book at the alleged child molester.

top 30 verb

☑ IRREGULAR thrust | thrusts · thrust · have thrust

thrust 174

PRESENT

I thrust	we thrust
you thrust	you thrust
he/she/it thrusts	they thrust

- *He thrusts the note in his pocket and sighs.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am thrusting	we are thrusting
you are thrusting	you are thrusting
he/she/it is thrusting	they are thrusting

- *Someone is always thrusting a petition at you.*

PAST

I thrust	we thrust
you thrust	you thrust
he/she/it thrust	they thrust

- *I thrust through the crowd frantically.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was thrusting	we were thrusting
you were thrusting	you were thrusting
he/she/it was thrusting	they were thrusting

- *A rodent was thrusting through the undergrowth.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has thrust
PAST PERFECT	… had thrust

FUTURE	… will thrust
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be thrusting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have thrust

PAST PASSIVE

I was thrust	we were thrust
you were thrust	you were thrust
he/she/it was thrust	they were thrust

- *A gun was thrust into my hand.*

COMPLEMENTS

thrust ____ *push forward suddenly*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The soldier thrust **a sword *through his shield***. Batman thrust **his elbow *into the villain's stomach***. The host thrust **the children *into the limelight***.
PASSIVE	My head was thrust ***into a barrel of water***. Fame had been thrust ***on her*** at an early age.

thrust ____ *move forward forcefully*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	A tugboat was thrusting **through the waves**. Her scream thrust **through the still night air**.

thrust ____ *jut, extend out*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	A long wharf thrust **into the river**. A diving board thrust **over the water**.

PHRASAL VERBS

thrust back/down/in/out/up/etc. *move forcefully in a specified direction*	The boy's tongue thrust out as he sighted down the barrel. Daffodils were thrusting up on the first warm day of spring.
thrust ~~SEP~~ **aside/away/back/down/in/out/up**/etc. *push suddenly in a specified direction*	The police thrust the protesters aside. He opened his briefcase and thrust the report in.

175 tread

tread | treads · treaded · have trod/trodden ☑ IRREGULAR
tread | treads · trod · have trod/trodden ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I tread	we tread
you tread	you tread
he/she/it treads	they tread

- *He treads lightly for such a big man.*

PAST

I trod	we trod
you trod	you trod
he/she/it trod	they trod

- *The soldiers trod along the muddy path.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has trod/trodden
PAST PERFECT	… had trod/trodden

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am treading	we are treading
you are treading	you are treading
he/she/it is treading	they are treading

- *The diplomat is treading lightly in negotiations.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was treading	we were treading
you were treading	you were treading
he/she/it was treading	they were treading

- *The visitors were treading a path across our lawn.*

FUTURE	… will tread
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be treading
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have trod/trodden

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was trod/trodden	they were trod/trodden

- *The snow in town was trodden into a dirty slush.*

COMPLEMENTS

tread ____ *walk, go on foot*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The column of soldiers trod slowly **along the road**.
	"Fools rush in **where Angels fear to tread**." [ALEXANDER POPE]
	Dejectedly, he slowly trod **up the long staircase**.
	Don't tread **on the new lawn**.
ADVERB OF MANNER	We trod **slowly** to keep from sinking into the soft ground.
	The children are treading **carefully** past the sleeping dogs.
	We need to tread **quietly** so as not to wake the children.
	"I have spread my dreams beneath your feet; Tread **softly** because you tread on my dreams." [W.B. YEATS]

tread ____ *act cautiously*

ADVERB OF MANNER	The company has to tread **lightly** or risk legal action.
	The judge warned the prosecutor to tread **carefully**.

tread ____ *wear (a path), trample*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE	We trod **a path *out to the mailbox***.
	The deer had trod **a route *through the forest***.
PASSIVE	A muddy trail had been trod ***across the tile floor***.

☑ IRREGULAR

understand | understands · understood · have understood

understand 176

PRESENT

I understand	we understand
you understand	you understand
he/she/it understands	they understand

- *He understands the situation perfectly.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am understanding	we are understanding
you are understanding	you are understanding
he/she/it is understanding	they are understanding

- *We are understanding each other better now.*

PAST

I understood	we understood
you understood	you understood
he/she/it understood	they understood

- *They understood only a few words.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was understanding	we were understanding
you were understanding	you were understanding
he/she/it was understanding	they were understanding

- *They weren't understanding his Italian very well.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has understood
PAST PERFECT	… had understood

FUTURE	… will understand
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be understanding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have understood

PAST PASSIVE

I was understood	we were understood
you were understood	you were understood
he/she/it was understood	they were understood

- *The tour guide was easily understood.*

COMPLEMENTS

understand *know the meaning of something*

Do you understand?
He is too young to understand.

understand ___ *comprehend, know the meaning of*

OBJECT	The doctor understood **the nature of the patient's symptoms**. Do you understand **this equation**? Nobody could understand **the cockney slang used in the movie**.
PASSIVE	The assembly instructions must not have been understood.
WH-CLAUSE	I understood **what he was trying to say**. Did you understand **where we were going**? We need to understand **how much this is going to cost**.
WH-INFINITIVE	Do you understand **whom to call if you have a problem**? I understand **what to do**. Do you understand **where to pick up your passengers**?

understand ___ *know what makes [something] work/happen*

OBJECT	It takes students a long time to really understand **evolution**. Does anyone understand **the stock market**? Almost no one understands **credit and default swaps**.
PASSIVE	The role of washing hands to control disease was not understood at the time.
WH-CLAUSE	Do you understand **what drives the global economy**? Even third graders understand **why the sun seems to rise in the east and set in the west**.

understand ___ *know and be sympathetic to the feelings/attitudes of*

OBJECT	My boyfriend doesn't understand **me**. I don't think the director understood **Lady Macbeth** very well. Older people never understand **the younger generation**.

understand ___ *get the idea/notion* [OFTEN AS A POLITE FORM OF IMPLIED QUESTION]

OBJECT + *INFINITIVE*	I understand **you *to be a student at Santa Cruz***. We understand **them *to be having lunch with us***. I understand **the apartment *to be available***.
THAT-CLAUSE	I understand **that you are applying for a job with us**. We understand **that the flight may be delayed**. It is understood **that the parents will have joint custody**.

177 uphold

uphold | upholds · upheld · have upheld ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I uphold	we uphold
you uphold	you uphold
he/she/it upholds	they uphold

- *The firm upholds its tradition of service.*

PAST

I upheld	we upheld
you upheld	you upheld
he/she/it upheld	they upheld

- *The court upheld the lower court ruling.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has upheld
PAST PERFECT	… had upheld

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am upholding	we are upholding
you are upholding	you are upholding
he/she/it is upholding	they are upholding

- *The Marines are upholding centuries of tradition.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was upholding	we were upholding
you were upholding	you were upholding
he/she/it was upholding	they were upholding

- *We were upholding our end of the bargain.*

FUTURE	… will uphold
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be upholding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have upheld

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was upheld	they were upheld

- *The ruling was upheld by the appellate court.*

COMPLEMENTS

uphold ____ *confirm/support [a decision, opinion]*

OBJECT
The courts will usually uphold **lower court rulings** unless there is a demonstrable error of fact or law.
The whole committee upheld **the ruling of the subcommittee**.
The Supreme Court upheld **the plaintiff** in *Brown v. Board of Education.*

PASSIVE
The decision was upheld unanimously by the appeals court.

uphold ____ *maintain [a custom, practice]*

OBJECT
John upheld **the family tradition** by joining the Navy.
Sadly, the school has not been able to uphold **its superior image**.
The new CEO vowed to uphold **the company's reputation for fiscal responsibility**.

PASSIVE
The honor of the Corps had been upheld.

☑ IRREGULAR

upset | upsets · upset · have upset

upset

PRESENT

I upset	we upset
you upset	you upset
he/she/it upsets	they upset

- *The new development upsets all our plans.*

PAST

I upset	we upset
you upset	you upset
he/she/it upset	they upset

- *The president's decision upset the voters.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has upset
PAST PERFECT	. . . had upset

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am upsetting	we are upsetting
you are upsetting	you are upsetting
he/she/it is upsetting	they are upsetting

- *I'm sorry that I'm upsetting you.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was upsetting	we were upsetting
you were upsetting	you were upsetting
he/she/it was upsetting	they were upsetting

- *The weather was upsetting our arrangements.*

FUTURE	. . . will upset
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be upsetting
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have upset

PAST PASSIVE

I was upset	we were upset
you were upset	you were upset
he/she/it was upset	they were upset

- *Naturally, we were quite upset by what happened.*

COMPLEMENTS

upset ____ *knock over*

OBJECT	The dogs upset **some potted plants** on the patio. The waiter upset **a bottle of wine** as he was clearing the table.
PASSIVE	A whole gallon of paint had been upset.

upset ____ *cause to be disturbed/worried/unhappy*

OBJECT	The hotel clerk's rudeness really upset **us**. Thunderstorms upset **the dogs** terribly. Spicy food always upsets **my stomach**. He delights in upsetting **the administrators**.
PASSIVE	The parents were upset at the news of the school's closure.

upset ____ *disturb the order/working of*

OBJECT	The kids are really good at upsetting **my daily routine**. The rain upset **our plans for a trip to the beach**. Global warming is upsetting **many delicate ecosystems**. The collapse of the credit market has upset **the normal balance of supply and demand for housing**.
PASSIVE	The orderly transfer of power was totally upset by the prince's unexpected death.

upset ____ *win a surprising victory over*

OBJECT	The Jets upset **the Colts** in Superbowl III. Harry Truman upset **Thomas Dewey** in the 1948 presidential election.

EXPRESSIONS

upset the apple cart *ruin something*	Grady upset the apple cart by telling Louise about the surprise party.

179 wake(n)

wake | wakes · waked · have waked ☑ REGULAR
wake | wakes · woke · have woken ☑ IRREGULAR
waken | wakens · wakened · have wakened ☑ REGULAR

PRESENT

I wake	we wake
you wake	you wake
he/she/it wakes	they wake

- *He usually wakes at seven.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am waking	we are waking
you are waking	you are waking
he/she/it is waking	they are waking

- *He's waking the neighbors with his lawn mower.*

PAST

I woke	we woke
you woke	you woke
he/she/it woke	they woke

- *I woke just before the alarm went off.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was waking	we were waking
you were waking	you were waking
he/she/it was waking	they were waking

- *The birds were always waking us at dawn.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has woken
PAST PERFECT	… had woken

FUTURE	… will wake
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be waking
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have woken

PAST PASSIVE

I was woken	we were woken
you were woken	you were woken
he/she/it was woken	they were woken

- *We were woken in the middle of the night by a dog barking.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Wake* and *waken* have the same meanings and the same general uses. They are similar to *awake/awaken* (verb No. 2), with this difference: *Wake* is used with *up* (*Jane woke up at 7 o'clock*), but *awake, awaken,* and *waken* are not.

wake *quit sleeping*	We need to be quiet because the children wake so easily. The patient began wakening from the anesthetic. In the springtime, I wake long before I need to get up.
wake ____ *arouse from sleeping*	
OBJECT	Wake **the children** at eight if they are not up already. Don't wake **me** unless it is an emergency. His snoring would wake **the dead**.
PASSIVE	I was woken by the sound of dripping water.
WH-CLAUSE	The thunderstorm woke **whoever was sleeping**.
wake ____ *stir up*	
OBJECT	Spring woke **the slumbering land**. The injustice woke **a feeling of outrage in the entire community**. His good fortune wakened **feelings of envy in the little village**.

PHRASAL VERBS

wake up *become aware of what is happening*	I hope he wakes up before it's too late. Fritz woke up after the heart attack and started exercising and eating right.
wake SEP **up** *cause to become aware of what is happening*	The advisor woke the mayor up to the danger of rising water. This report will wake citizens up to the importance of alternative energy sources.

EXPRESSIONS

wake up and smell the coffee *become aware of what is happening*	The world has changed, and we must wake up and smell the coffee.

☑ IRREGULAR

wear | wears · wore · have worn

wear

180

PRESENT

I wear	we wear
you wear	you wear
he/she/it wears	they wear

- *He always wears a coat and tie.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am wearing	we are wearing
you are wearing	you are wearing
he/she/it is wearing	they are wearing

- *I am wearing a skirt and sweater to the concert.*

PAST

I wore	we wore
you wore	you wore
he/she/it wore	they wore

- *She wore her little black dress to the party.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was wearing	we were wearing
you were wearing	you were wearing
he/she/it was wearing	they were wearing

- *What were they wearing?*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has worn
PAST PERFECT	… had worn

FUTURE	… will wear
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be wearing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have worn

PAST PASSIVE

I was worn	we were worn
you were worn	you were worn
he/she/it was worn	they were worn

- *In those days, white was never worn after Labor Day.*

COMPLEMENTS

wear *remain in good condition after much use*	That fabric won't wear very well. The carpet in the hall will wear for years.
wear ____ *have/carry on one's body*	
OBJECT	The kids wear **jeans** most of the time. Politicians felt it necessary to wear **flag pins**. Men are required to wear **ties** when meeting with clients. Mary wears **bifocals** now.
PASSIVE	Casual clothing is worn nearly everywhere.
WH-CLAUSE	The tribe only wore **what they themselves produced**. I give up; wear **whatever you want to**.
wear ____ *have [a certain hairstyle]*	
OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER	She wore **her hair *off the shoulder***. He wore **his hair *in a ponytail***.
PASSIVE	Her hair was worn ***in a huge Afro***.
wear ____ *have [a certain facial expression]*	
OBJECT	He was wearing **a silly grin** when he made the announcement. His face wears **a permanent scowl**. Why are you wearing **such a sad face**?
wear ____ *damage/erode gradually, usually by friction*	
OBJECT	Wagon wheels wore **ruts** along the Oregon Trail. The Mississippi River wore **a new channel** east of Kaskaskia.
PASSIVE	A path had been worn through the forest.

PHRASAL VERBS

wear ____ SEP **down** *make weak/tired*	The 12-hour days are wearing the staff down.
wear off *go away gradually*	The effects of the painkiller wore off after a few hours.
wear on *continue, pass*	The meeting wore on into the early hours of the morning. It got more cloudy as the day wore on.
wear out *become exhausted/useless*	The tires have worn out on my pickup truck.
wear ____ SEP **out** *use until exhausted*	Our son has worn out his winter coat.
wear ____ SEP **out** *exhaust, tire out*	Shopping all day with his wife wore him out.

181 **weave**

weave | weaves · wove · have woven ☑ IRREGULAR
weave | weaves · weaved · have weaved ☑ REGULAR

PRESENT

I weave	we weave
you weave	you weave
he/she/it weaves	they weave

- *She weaves baskets from birch bark.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am weaving	we are weaving
you are weaving	you are weaving
he/she/it is weaving	they are weaving

- *The children are weaving simple placemats.*

PAST

I wove	we wove
you wove	you wove
he/she/it wove	they wove

- *The spider wove a web across the doorway.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was weaving	we were weaving
you were weaving	you were weaving
he/she/it was weaving	they were weaving

- *They were weaving a wool rug.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has woven
PAST PERFECT	… had woven

FUTURE	… will weave
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be weaving
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have woven

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was woven	they were woven

- *These wall hangings were woven by hand.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The regular past form *weaved* is used only in the sense "move in and out / side to side"; *wove* and *woven* are used in all other senses.

weave *pass threads/strips/etc. over and under one another to form something*	They are teaching the students how to weave. Children learn by watching their mothers weave. In some cultures, only men weave.
weave *move in and out / side to side*	A red SUV weaved through the bridge traffic.
weave ____ *pass [threads/strips/etc.] over and under one another [to form something]*	
OBJECT	They wove **palm fronds** to make a thatched roof. I wove **my fingers** to make a step for her. We wove **the reeds** into a simple boat.
weave ____ *form by passing threads/strips/etc. over and under one another*	
OBJECT	The mill wove **beautiful linen tablecloths**. Every society on earth has woven **some kind of basket**. The women wove **a crown from flowers they had picked**.
PASSIVE	A crude filter was woven from plant stalks.
weave ____ *combine to make a whole*	
OBJECT	A good story weaves **a number of plot lines**. The poem weaves **the themes of love and loss in 19th-century England**.
weave ____ *make by combining into a whole*	
OBJECT	"Oh! what **a tangled web** we weave When first we practice to deceive." [SIR WALTER SCOTT]
PASSIVE	Wagner's operas are woven from many musical themes.
weave ____ *form [a web]* [OF A SPIDER]	
OBJECT	A spider wove **a beautiful web** between those two trees.

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

wed | weds · wed · have wed
wed | weds · wedded · have wedded

wed

182

PRESENT

I wed	we wed
you wed	you wed
he/she/it weds	they wed

- *His opera weds two different traditions.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am wedding	we are wedding
you are wedding	you are wedding
he/she/it is wedding	they are wedding

- *The composer is wedding folk and rock music.*

PAST

I wed	we wed
you wed	you wed
he/she/it wed	they wed

- *They wed as soon as they graduated.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was wedding	we were wedding
you were wedding	you were wedding
he/she/it was wedding	they were wedding

- *He was wedding the design to other brochures.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has wed
PAST PERFECT	… had wed

FUTURE	… will wed
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be wedding
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have wed

PAST PASSIVE

I was wed	we were wed
you were wed	you were wed
he/she/it was wed	they were wed

- *The couple was wed by her family's minister.*

COMPLEMENTS

wed *marry*

When did they wed?
John and Marcia wed after a tumultuous engagement.
My parents wed in Hawaii when Dad was in the Navy.

wed ____ *marry*

OBJECT — She wed **her childhood sweetheart**.
Whom did she finally wed?
My father wed **my mother** in 1982.

wed ____ *perform the marriage ceremony for*

OBJECT — I have wed **hundreds of people** over the years.
Reverend Gerry wed **your parents**.

PASSIVE — They were wed in the garden, if I remember correctly.

wed ____ *unite, join closely*

OBJECT — Fusion cuisine weds **cooking styles from all over the world**.
The building weds **Spanish and modernist styles**.
His art weds **realism and postmodernism**.

183 weep

weep | weeps · wept · have wept ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I weep	we weep
you weep	you weep
he/she/it weeps	they weep

- *He always weeps at weddings.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am weeping	we are weeping
you are weeping	you are weeping
he/she/it is weeping	they are weeping

- *She is weeping uncontrollably.*

PAST

I wept	we wept
you wept	you wept
he/she/it wept	they wept

- *They wept when they heard the news.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was weeping	we were weeping
you were weeping	you were weeping
he/she/it was weeping	they were weeping

- *The children were all weeping.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has wept
PAST PERFECT	… had wept

FUTURE	… will weep
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be weeping
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have wept

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was wept	they were wept

- *No tears were wept for him.*

COMPLEMENTS

weep *shed tears, cry*	You have to take time to weep. The whole family was weeping during the service. She wept every time she thought of the accident.
weep *give off drops of liquid*	The walls were weeping in the humid air. Aloe plants weep if you cut them. The damp air weeps when it comes into contact with the cold metal.
weep ____ *shed [tears]* OBJECT	Weep **no tears** for me. He wept **bitter tears** for what he had done.
PASSIVE	Endless tears were wept over such a senseless death.

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

wet | wets · wet · have wet
wet | wets · wetted · have wetted

wet

PRESENT

I wet	we wet
you wet	you wet
he/she/it wets	they wet

- *She always wets her lips before she speaks.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am wetting	we are wetting
you are wetting	you are wetting
he/she/it is wetting	they are wetting

- *She is wetting her hair to keep it from blowing.*

PAST

I wet	we wet
you wet	you wet
he/she/it wet	they wet

- *He wet his fingers before taking the ball.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was wetting	we were wetting
you were wetting	you were wetting
he/she/it was wetting	they were wetting

- *They were wetting the tent to make it cooler.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has wet
PAST PERFECT	… had wet

FUTURE	… will wet
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be wetting
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have wet

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was wet	they were wet

- *Once the insulation was wet by the storm, it was useless.*

COMPLEMENTS

wet ____ *moisten, dampen*

OBJECT	The barber always wets **my hair** before he cuts it. You should wet **the cork** before putting it back in the bottle. Lightly wet **the metal** with oil so the engine won't smoke.
PASSIVE	The oily pavement had been wet by the mist, making it slippery.

wet ____ *urinate in/on*

OBJECT	The baby always wets **his diaper** at the most inconvenient time. We will need to change his pajamas; he wet **them** again. One of the kids wet **the bed**.

PHRASAL VERBS

wet SEP **down** *put water on*	After every game, they wet the infield down.

EXPRESSIONS

wet [one's] whistle *take a drink*	Thirsty? Here's some lemonade for you to wet your whistle.

185 win

win | wins · won · have won ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I win	we win
you win	you win
he/she/it wins	they win

- *He wins most card games he plays.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am winning	we are winning
you are winning	you are winning
he/she/it is winning	they are winning

- *We're winning!*

PAST

I won	we won
you won	you won
he/she/it won	they won

- *I won first place in the math contest.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was winning	we were winning
you were winning	you were winning
he/she/it was winning	they were winning

- *They were winning most of their games.*

PRESENT PERFECT	... have | has won
PAST PERFECT	... had won

FUTURE	... will win
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	... will be winning
FUTURE PERFECT	... will have won

PAST PASSIVE

I was won	we were won
you were won	you were won
he/she/it was won	they were won

- *The election was won by superior organization.*

COMPLEMENTS

win *be victorious in a contest/competition*

I never win.
They could win if they played their very best.
Who's winning?

win ____ *be victorious in [a contest, competition]*

OBJECT

Alice and Albert won **the dance competition**.
Barack Obama won **the 2008 presidential election**.
Heather always wins **the argument**.

PASSIVE

The game was won in the last minute.

win ____ *receive as the result of a contest/conflict/bet*

OBJECT

We won **a week's vacation in Hawaii**.
After bitter fighting, they finally won **the fortress**.
They hope to win **the Rose Bowl** this year.
I almost won **the jackpot in last week's Lotto**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

You could win ***yourself*** **a prize**.
The victory won ***us*** **a little more time**.
Excellent coaching won ***them*** **the championship**.

for PARAPHRASE

You could win **a prize** ***for yourself***.
The victory won **a little more time** ***for us***.
Excellent coaching won **the championship** ***for them***.

win ____ *gain [affection, support, admiration, etc.]*

OBJECT

Ministers have to win **a congregation's respect**.
The comedian won **the audience's applause**.
Their goal was to win **the hearts and minds of the people**.
Faint heart never won **fair lady**. [PROVERB]

PHRASAL VERBS

win out *be finally victorious*

It took six months, but our proposal won out.

win SEP **over** *convert, persuade*

The president won congressional leaders over to his point of view.

☑ IRREGULAR
☑ REGULAR

wind | winds · wound · have wound
wind | winds · winded · have winded

wind

186

PRESENT

I wind	we wind
you wind	you wind
he/she/it winds	they wind

- *The path winds across the hills for miles.*

PAST

I wound	we wound
you wound	you wound
he/she/it wound	they wound

- *She wound the cloth around her head.*

PRESENT PERFECT	. . . have | has wound
PAST PERFECT	. . . had wound

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am winding	we are winding
you are winding	you are winding
he/she/it is winding	they are winding

- *The press conference is winding down.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was winding	we were winding
you were winding	you were winding
he/she/it was winding	they were winding

- *She was winding the clock with a key.*

FUTURE	. . . will wind
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	. . . will be winding
FUTURE PERFECT	. . . will have wound

PAST PASSIVE

I was wound	we were wound
you were wound	you were wound
he/she/it was wound	they were wound

- *The rope was wound around a tree trunk.*

NOTE: The verb *wind*, which rhymes with *kind*, is presented here; its irregular past form *wound* rhymes with *sound*. The regular verb *wind*, which rhymes with *sinned* and means "make out of breath," is rarely used.

COMPLEMENTS

wind ____ *coil, move in twists and turns*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	We wound **in and out through the trees**. The path wound **around the hill**. Vines wound **around the old oak tree**. The river winds **through a maze of canyons**. The wire wound **across the ceiling and out the window**.

wind ____ *wrap, cover by circling*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	To make an electromagnet, wind **wire** ***around an iron core***. He wound **his shirt** ***over his fist*** and broke the window. I wound **the rope** ***around my waist*** and began to climb down. She wound **her arms** ***around her daughter*** and consoled her.
PASSIVE	Her long hair had been wound ***into a coil on her head***.

wind ____ *tighten the spring of*

OBJECT	Did you remember to wind **the clock**? Wind **the top** and put it on the floor.
PASSIVE	In old cars, the starter was wound by hand.

wind ____ *wrap around a center/core*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	We wound **the videotape** ***to where the game started***. She is winding **the yarn** ***into a center-pull ball***.
PASSIVE	The film had been wound ***to the end of the reel***.

PHRASAL VERBS

wind along/around/down/up/etc. *twist in a specified direction*	The creek winds along for several miles.
wind down *come slowly to an end*	The party was winding down by midnight.
wind down *relax*	Mike was beginning to wind down after a hectic day at work.
wind up *end*	The conference is scheduled to wind up at noon. The acrobat wound up in the hospital with a broken leg. They wound up living in Paris for the rest of their lives.
wind __SEP__ **up** *bring to an end*	Let's wind this meeting up, okay?

187 wring wring | wrings · wrung · have wrung ☑ IRREGULAR

PRESENT

I wring	we wring
you wring	you wring
he/she/it wrings	they wring

- *He wrings his hands when he's nervous.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am wringing	we are wringing
you are wringing	you are wringing
he/she/it is wringing	they are wringing

- *I'm wringing out my soaked trousers.*

PAST

I wrung	we wrung
you wrung	you wrung
he/she/it wrung	they wrung

- *Betty wrung Alice's hand excitedly.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was wringing	we were wringing
you were wringing	you were wringing
he/she/it was wringing	they were wringing

- *The farmer was wringing the chickens' necks.*

PRESENT PERFECT	… have | has wrung
PAST PERFECT	… had wrung

FUTURE	… will wring
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	… will be wringing
FUTURE PERFECT	… will have wrung

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was wrung	they were wrung

- *The towel was wrung out until it stopped dripping.*

COMPLEMENTS

wring *writhe*

His hands were wringing compulsively.
My hands wrung uncontrollably as we waited for the verdict.

wring ____ *break by twisting forcibly*

OBJECT
Many ancient societies executed criminals by wringing **their necks**.
Every Saturday, my grandmother wrung **a chicken's neck** for Sunday dinner.

PASSIVE
The dancer Isadora Duncan's neck was wrung by her own scarf in a freak automobile accident.

wring ____ *obtain/extract by exerting pressure*

OBJECT + *from* OBJECT
The police wrung **a confession *from the suspect***.
The union wrung **new contract terms *from the company***.

PASSIVE
A few concessions were wrung ***from the mayor's office***.

PHRASAL VERBS

wring SEP **out** *squeeze and twist to force liquid out of*

I wrung the dishcloth out and wiped the kitchen counter.
Wring out the clothes before you hang them up to dry.
The bathing suits were wrung out and spread on the patio chairs.

EXPRESSIONS

wring [one's] hands *twist/squeeze one's hands in distress*

The boss was wringing his hands as he announced the layoffs.
The widow was wringing her hands and weeping.

☑ IRREGULAR

write | writes · wrote · have written

write 188

PRESENT

I write	we write
you write	you write
he/she/it writes	they write

- *He never writes anymore.*

PAST

I wrote	we wrote
you wrote	you wrote
he/she/it wrote	they wrote

- *Jane Austen wrote* Emma *before 1816.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has written
PAST PERFECT ... had written

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am writing	we are writing
you are writing	you are writing
he/she/it is writing	they are writing

- *I am writing as fast as I can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was writing	we were writing
you were writing	you were writing
he/she/it was writing	they were writing

- *He was writing a letter to Georgiana.*

FUTURE ... will write
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be writing
FUTURE PERFECT ... will have written

PAST PASSIVE

I was written	we were written
you were written	you were written
he/she/it was written	they were written

- *The letter was written to a family friend.*

COMPLEMENTS

write *form letters/words with a pen/pencil/etc.*
Please write neatly.
His arthritis made it hard for him to write.

write *compose and send a letter*
People don't write nearly as much as they used to.
I'll write when I have a chance.

write ____ *compose and send [a letter]*

OBJECT
John and Abigail Adams wrote **each other** frequently.
Senator Blather wrote **his constituents** every three months.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
George wrote ***Marcia* a touching letter**.

to PARAPHRASE
George wrote **a touching letter *to Marcia***.

write ____ *compose [a text, work]*

OBJECT
Donizetti apparently wrote ***The Elixir of Love*** in three weeks.
Mark Twain wrote **hilariously funny letters to the editor**.
Hilary wrote **poetry** in Ascona one summer.
We are writing **a rebuttal to the biased newspaper article**.

write ____ *put in writing*

OBJECT
I wrote **a check for $40**.
The doctor wrote **a prescription for an antibiotic**.
Please write **your name and address** in the space provided.

write ____ *express/communicate in written form*

(OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE
Darwin wrote **that species evolve over the course of generations through natural selection**.
He wrote ***me* that they might move back to California**.

(OBJECT +) WH-CLAUSE
She wrote **how the product should be introduced**.
Sam wrote ***his parents* what he thought of the camp food**.

DIRECT QUOTATION
"There was never a good war," wrote Benjamin Franklin, **"or a bad peace."**

top 30 verb

188 write

write | writes · wrote · have written ☑ IRREGULAR

PHRASAL VERBS

write (away/off) for ____	*request in writing*	Andy wrote away for the new seed catalogs.
write SEP **down**	*make a note/record of*	The secretary wrote down everything the boss said. Gerry wrote the lyrics down while they were still fresh in his mind.
write SEP **in**	*vote for [someone] by writing [his/her] name in a special place on a ballot*	Every election, someone writes Alfred E. Newman in for president.
write SEP **off**	*give up on, cancel*	The bank wrote off the $8,000 loan.
write SEP **off**	*consider lost/hopeless/ etc.*	The hotel manager wrote off the missing towels. Many fans write the Cubs off before September. Our company had to write off several bad debts last year.
write SEP **off**	*deduct from one's taxes*	We wrote the computer off as an itemized deduction.
write SEP **out**	*spell out [a number, abbreviation]*	Write out "621" as "six hundred twenty-one." Be sure to write out all abbreviations.
write SEP **up**	*compose [a text, an article], often from notes*	It will take me two hours to write up the minutes of the meeting. Harper finally wrote up his review of the best pizza restaurants in St. Louis.
write SEP **up**	*prepare a written/printed copy of*	The sales clerk will write your order up.

Irregular Verb Form Index

This index includes all irregular forms of the 188 irregular verbs in this book: the irregular past forms, as well as the irregular third-person singular present forms used by a few verbs.

A form followed by an asterisk (*) is a past form that is spelled like the base form of the verb; except for *read,* the past form is also pronounced like the base form.

am **be** 3
are **be** 3
arisen **arise** 1
arose **arise** 1
ate **eat** 49
awoke **awake** 2
awoken **awake** 2

bade **bid** 17
beat* **beat** 5
beaten **beat** 5
became **become** 6
become* **become** 6
been **be** 3
befallen **befall** 7
befell **befall** 7
began **begin** 9
begat **beget** 8
begot **beget** 8
begotten **beget** 8
begun **begin** 9
beheld **behold** 10
bent **bend** 11
bereft **bereave** 12
beset* **beset** 14
besought **beseech** 13
bestridden **bestride** 15
bestrode **bestride** 15
bet* **bet** 16
bid* **bid** 17
bidden **bid** 17
bit **bite** 19
bitten **bite** 19
bled **bleed** 20
blew **blow** 21
blown **blow** 21
bore **bear** 4
born **bear** 4
borne **bear** 4
bought **buy** 29
bound **bind** 18
bred **breed** 23
broadcast* **broadcast** 25
broke **break** 22
broken **break** 22
brought **bring** 24
built **build** 26
burnt **burn** 27
burst* **burst** 28

came **come** 37
cast* **cast** 30
caught **catch** 31
chid **chide** 32
chidden **chide** 32
chose **choose** 33
chosen **choose** 33
clad **clothe** 36
cleft **cleave** 34
clove **cleave** 34
cloven **cleave** 34
clung **cling** 35
come* **come** 37
cost* **cost** 38
crept **creep** 39
cut* **cut** 40

dealt **deal** 41
did **do** 44
does **do** 44
done **do** 44
dove **dive** 43
drank **drink** 47
drawn **draw** 45
dreamt **dream** 46
drew **draw** 45
driven **drive** 48
drove **drive** 48
drunk **drink** 47
dug **dig** 42

eaten **eat** 49

fallen **fall** 50
fed **feed** 51
fell **fall** 50

felt **feel** 52
fit* **fit** 55
fled **flee** 56
flew **fly** 58
flown **fly** 58
flung **fling** 57
forbade **forbid** 60
forbidden **forbid** 60
forbore **forbear** 59
forborne **forbear** 59
forecast* **forecast** 61
foregoes **forego** 64
foregone **forego** 64
forewent **forego** 64
forgave **forgive** 63
forgiven **forgive** 63
forgoes **forgo** 64
forgone **forgo** 64
forgot **forget** 62
forgotten **forget** 62
forsaken **forsake** 65
forsook **forsake** 65
forwent **forgo** 64
fought **fight** 53
found **find** 54
froze **freeze** 66
frozen **freeze** 66

gainsaid **gainsay** 67
gave **give** 70
girt **gird** 69
given **give** 70
goes **go** 71
gone **go** 71
got **get** 68
gotten **get** 68
grew **grow** 73
ground **grind** 72
grown **grow** 73

had **have** 76
hamstrung **hamstring** 74
has **have** 76
heard **hear** 77
held **hold** 81
hewn **hew** 78

hid **hide** 79
hidden **hide** 79
hit* **hit** 80
hung **hang** 75
hurt* **hurt** 82

is **be** 3

kept **keep** 83
knelt **kneel** 84
knew **know** 86
knit* **knit** 85
known **know** 86

lain **lie** 92
lay **lie** 92
leapt **leap** 88
led **lead** 87
left **leave** 89
lent **lend** 90
let* **let** 91
lit **light** 93
lost **lose** 94

made **make** 95
meant **mean** 96
met **meet** 97
mistaken **mistake** 98
mistook **mistake** 98
mown **mow** 99

overcame **overcome** 100
overcome* **overcome** 100
overtaken **overtake** 101
overtook **overtake** 101

pled **plead** 102
proven **prove** 103
put* **put** 104

quit* **quit** 105

ran **run** 112
rang **ring** 110
read* **read** 106
rent **rend** 107
rid* **rid** 108
ridden **ride** 109
risen **rise** 111
rode **ride** 109
rose **rise** 111
run* **run** 112
rung **ring** 110

said **say** 114
sang **sing** 131
sank **sink** 132
sat **sit** 133
saw **see** 115
sawn **saw** 113
seen **see** 115
sent **send** 118

set* **set** 119
sewn **sew** 120
shaken **shake** 121
shaven **shave** 122
shed* **shed** 124
shod **shoe** 126
shone **shine** 125
shook **shake** 121
shorn **shear** 123
shot **shoot** 127
shown **show** 128
shrank **shrink** 129
shrunk **shrink** 129
shut* **shut** 130
slain **slay** 134
slept **sleep** 135
slew **slay** 134
slid **slide** 136
slit* **slit** 139
slung **sling** 137
slunk **slink** 138
snuck **sneak** 140
sold **sell** 117
sought **seek** 116
sown **sow** 141
spat **spit** 146
sped **speed** 143
spent **spend** 144
spit* **spit** 146
split* **split** 147
spoke **speak** 142
spoken **speak** 142
sprang **spring** 149
spread* **spread** 148
sprung **spring** 149
spun **spin** 145
stank **stink** 154
stole **steal** 151
stolen **steal** 151
stood **stand** 150
strewn **strew** 155
stricken **strike** 157
stridden **stride** 156
striven **strive** 159
strode **stride** 156
strove **strive** 159
struck **strike** 157
strung **string** 158
stuck **stick** 152
stung **sting** 153
stunk **stink** 154
sung **sing** 131
sunk **sink** 132
swam **swim** 164
sweat* **sweat** 161
swept **sweep** 162
swollen **swell** 163
swore **swear** 160
sworn **swear** 160
swum **swim** 164
swung **swing** 165

taken **take** 166
taught **teach** 167
telecast* **telecast** 169
thought **think** 171
threw **throw** 173
thriven **thrive** 172
throve **thrive** 172
thrown **throw** 173
thrust* **thrust** 174
told **tell** 170
took **take** 166
tore **tear** 168
torn **tear** 168
trod **tread** 175
trodden **tread** 175

understood **understand** 176
upheld **uphold** 177
upset* **upset** 178

was **be** 3
wed* **wed** 182
went **go** 71
wept **weep** 183
were **be** 3
wet* **wet** 184
woke **wake** 179
woken **wake** 179
won **win** 185
wore **wear** 180
worn **wear** 180
wound **wind** 186
wove **weave** 181
woven **weave** 181
written **write** 188
wrote **write** 188
wrung **wring** 187

This page intentionally left blank

ABOUT THE AUTHORS

Mark Lester is an experienced grammarian, ESL expert, and professor emeritus of Eastern Washington University. He was the founding chairperson of the ESL department at the University of Hawaii, considered one of the best ESL programs in the United States. He is the author of more than a dozen books, including *Grammar and Usage in the Classroom,* one of the most widely used college grammar textbooks in the country. Mark obtained a B.A. in Philosophy and English Literature at Pomona College and a Ph.D. in Linguistics from the University of California–Berkeley. He also holds an M.B.A. from the University of Hawaii.

Daniel Franklin and **Terry Yokota** are the producers of McGraw-Hill's *Big Book of Verbs* series and are experts at creating effective language acquisition texts.

Daniel obtained a B.A. in Latin at Eastern Illinois University and did graduate work in linguistics at Harvard University. He is coauthor of four books in the *Big Book of Verbs* series (English, German, Italian, and Latin).

Terry obtained a B.A. and M.A. in Spanish Language and Literature at Washington University in St. Louis. She is coauthor, with Mark and Daniel, of *The Big Book of English Verbs.*

Together, Daniel and Terry have edited and produced references, grammars, and textbooks for learners of Chinese, English, French, Italian, Latin, German, Polish, Russian, and Spanish.

behind
below
beneath
beside
beyond
but (also conj.)
by
circa
concerning
considering
excepting
excluding
following
for (also conj.)
from
given

ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS LIST

150 prepositions

INCLUDING
370 sample sentences
200 quiz questions
with answers
illustrated

JOSEF ESSBERGER

English Prepositions List

© Josef Essberger 2009

EnglishClub.com
23 King Street
Cambridge CB1 1AH
England, UK
http://www.englishclub.com

First Edition 2000
Second Edition (revised) 2005
Third Edition (revised and extended) 2007
Third Edition (revised and extended) 2007
Fourth Edition (revised) 2009
All rights reserved

This ebook is distributed in the universal PDF format.

Printing: this ebook will print out on A4 (297 x 210mm) or
American Letter size (11 x 8.5in) paper

Viewing: this ebook may be viewed on PC or Macintosh computers

More ebooks available at www.esldepot.com:

Top 20 Business Vocabulary (Josef Essberger)
Lists of selected words in different areas of British and American business vocabulary. (For learners)

Phrasal Verbs in Context (Matt Errey)
Lists of phrasal verbs, with example sentences, notes and quizzes with answers. (For learners)

CALL for You (Rolf Palmberg)
An introduction to CALL (Computer Assisted Language Learning) methodology with 10 original CALL lesson plans and free access to 10 CALL programs. (For teachers)

Developing EFL Learners' Vocabulary Awareness (Rolf Palmberg)
15 original lesson plans with step-by-step instructions, answers and teaching notes. Freely photocopiable. (For teachers)

Contents

Introduction 5
Why 150 prepositions? 6

1 One-word Prepositions 7
with sample sentences

2 Complex Prepositions 29
with sample sentences

3 Illustrations 33
Prepositions of place 33
Prepositions of time 34

4 Quizzes (with answers) 35
One-word prepositions 36
Complex prepositions 45
Prepositions of place 51
Prepositions of time 52
One-word and complex prepositions 53

Introduction

This ebook contains a list of most English prepositions in use today.

The first section lists "one-word prepositions" (for example ***before***, ***into***, ***on***). The second section lists "complex prepositions" (phrases of two or more words that function like one-word prepositions, for example ***according to***, ***but for***, ***in spite of***).

The name "preposition" (pre + position) means "place before". Prepositions usually come before another word, usually a noun or noun phrase:

- noun
- pronoun
- noun phrase
- gerund (verb in -ing form)

If a ***preposition*** does not come before **another word**, it is still closely linked to another word:

- **Who** did you talk ***to***?
- ***To*** **whom** did you talk?
- I talked ***to*** **Jane**.

Many prepositions can also be adverbs:

- They are ***in*** the kitchen. ***preposition***
- Please come **in**. **adverb**

A few prepositions can also be conjunctions:

- Everyone came ***but*** Tara. ***preposition***
- I asked her **but** she didn't answer. **conjunction**

Abbreviations used in this ebook:
conj. = conjunction
UK = *mainly* British English
US = *mainly* American English

This ebook is written in British English.

Why 150 prepositions?

It is not possible to produce a definitive list of English prepositions. That means that nobody can create a list of prepositions and say: “Here are all the prepositions in the English language – no more and no fewer.” Why? Because complex prepositions can theoretically be added to the language at any time. This ebook lists all 94 one-word prepositions (which are unlikely to change or be added to) and 56 complex prepositions (which may possibly be added to as the language evolves). This total of 150 prepositions is comprehensive at the time of writing, and represents all the prepositions currently found in a good English dictionary such as the *Concise Oxford Dictionary*.

One-word Prepositions

aboard	• We went aboard the boat. • Is there a doctor aboard the plane?
about	• What do you think about Mary? • Let’s talk about something different. • I’ve just read a book about President Kennedy. • The lion was pacing about its cage.
above	• We are flying above the clouds. • We live in the hills, 1,000 metres above sea-level. • It’s only two degrees above freezing point. [+2ºC] • Who came above you in the test results?
across	• We drove across the desert. • The dog ran across the road. • There is a bridge across the river.
after (also conj.)	• We had lunch [1pm] after the meeting [11am]. • Let’s meet the day after tomorrow.
against	• Did you vote for or against the suggestion? • He put his bicycle against the wall.
along	• We walked along the beach for two miles. • There are trees along the road. • The toilet is along the corridor.
alongside	• Their boat came alongside our boat. • Team A worked alongside Team B during construction.
amid	• I couldn’t hear her amid the noise.
amidst (poetic)	• We were lost amidst the trees.

among **amongst** (UK)	• Is there a doctor among us? • There were secret police among the crowd. • I was amongst strangers. I didn’t know anyone.
anti	• He seems to be anti my idea. • Some people are anti everything.
around	• We walked around the town for an hour. • They all sat around the camp fire. • There is a big fence around the house. • He was born around 1570. • Let’s meet around 7pm.
as (also conj.)	• He is working as a waiter. • The risk is as nothing compared to the profit. • Ram is as tall as Anthony.
astride	• She sat astride the horse.
at	• He is at school. • We first met at a party. • Let’s start the meeting at 9 o’clock. • He started work at 17 (years of age). • We are aiming at sales of $1,000,000.
atop (poetic)	• The church is situated atop a hill.

bar	• Everyone came bar Angela. • He is the best bar none.
barring	• Barring rain, we'll play tennis tomorrow.
before (also conj.)	• We had lunch [1pm] before the meeting [3pm]. • We met the day before yesterday. • She was before me in the queue. • I would rather die before doing that.
behind	• There is a police car behind us. It's following us. • We have a garden behind our house. • The child was hiding behind the tree. • I am behind your project. I will support it. • Vonica finished behind Shirley in the race. • She is behind the other children in her class.
below	• Much of Holland is below sea-level. • There is a family in the flat below us. • The temperature is 5 degrees below freezing point. [-5ºC] • I came below Vonica in the test. • You can buy it if it's below $50.
beneath	• Our garage is beneath our house. • The tunnel runs beneath the sea. • Laurence is beneath the General Manager. • It was beneath his dignity to do that.
beside	• The river runs beside our house. • James was sitting beside Miriam.
besides	• What shall we have besides coffee?

between	• Tara was sitting between Ram and Ati. • Between you and me, I think she's crazy. • I can meet you between 1pm and 2pm.
beyond	• Can you see someone in the distance, beyond that house? • This is too difficult. It's beyond me. • The meeting continued beyond midnight.
but (also conj.)	• Everyone came but Andrea.
by	• We came by car. • Fireworks were invented by the Chinese. • He was shot by a professional killer. • It happened by accident. • He lost the race by five seconds. • The room is 10 metres by 6 metres. • We must finish by Tuesday. • We were sitting by the window. • By my calculation he must be 73.

circa	• He died circa 1270.
concerning	• Your teacher talked to me concerning your homework. • I have some questions concerning your decision.
considering	• Considering the poor quality, I think the price is too high. • I think I must be going, considering the time.
counting	• There were four people, or five counting the baby. • That makes $70, not counting the tax.
cum	• I have a study-cum-bedroom. • She is a kind of secretary-cum-receptionist.

despite	• We went swimming despite the cold water. • He passed the test despite being ill.
down	• They ran down the hill. • The post office is down the road. • They have had many wars down the years.
during	• He fell asleep during the meeting. • I want to go swimming during the weekend. • I was bored during the whole film.

except	• You can have any colour except blue. • They all came except Stephen.
excepting	• I can eat anything excepting pork. • Excepting Jo, everyone was present.
excluding	• It costs $70, excluding $10 for delivery. (Total = $80.) • We open every day excluding Christmas Day.

following

- We had coffee following lunch.
- He couldn’t work following his illness.

for (also conj.)

- This is for you.
- Do you want to go for a walk?
- You use a corkscrew for opening bottles.
- Cigarettes are bad for you.
- I’m saving for a new car.
- Is this the road for Rome?
- They passed me over for John.
- Is this the train for Cambridge?
- I bought it for $10.
- We worked for three hours.
- Keep walking for two kilometres.

from

- Where do you come from?
- This letter is from my wife.
- I bought this car from Henry.
- They prevented me from entering.
- My car is different from yours.
- We worked from Monday to Wednesday.
- Paper is made from wood.
- It can cost anything from $5 to $15.
- The police took my driving licence from me.
- He died from overwork.

given	• He is in very good health, given his age. • Given the time, you ought to leave now.
gone (UK)	• It’s certainly gone 11 o’clock. It must be 11.30. • He’s gone 50. He must be nearly 60 years old.

in	• Monkeys live in the jungle. • John is the man with his hand in his pocket. • I live in an apartment. • She lives in Bangkok. • Tara was born in 1977. • Trains were invented in the nineteenth century. • I'll come back in two weeks. • Let's meet in the morning. • There are 60 seconds in a minute.
including	• The price is \$70 including \$10 for delivery. (Total = \$70.) • There were four of us, including the baby.
inside	• It was dark inside the tunnel. • My modem is inside my computer. It's an internal modem.
into	• John went into that shop. • If you heat ice it turns into water. • We cut the cake into ten pieces. • Five into ten makes two.

less	• 10 less 3 = 7.
like	• She is like her sister. • She sings like a bird. • It’s not like John to complain. • Do it like this. • I feel like swimming. • It looks like rain. • I want something cold, like iced-coffee.

minus	• 10 minus 3 = 7. • The temperature is minus 30 degrees centigrade.

near	• The school is near the post office. • It’s 20 December. We are very near Christmas Day.
notwithstanding	• Notwithstanding the low price, I don’t want it. • They went swimming, notwithstanding the rain. • They went swimming, the rain notwithstanding.

of	• I live in the house at the end of the road. • Where is the key of the car? • Do you like the work of Shakespeare? • What was the cost of this book? • He lives in the City of Westminster. • It was kind of you to help me. • This is the cause of the problem. • He died of cancer. • Most tables are made of wood. • Can I have a cup of coffee? • I know some of these people. • I don’t know any of these people. • He lives south of London. • He lives in the south of London.
off	• Please take your shoes off the table. • Keep off the grass. • It fell off the table and broke. • They live in a street off Fifth Avenue.
on	• Please don’t put your shoes on the table. • The picture is on page 7. • We live on a busy road. It’s very noisy. • She is sunbathing on the beach. • Is there water on the Moon? • I need a book on bio-chemistry. • My birthday is on Monday. • I start work on 7 May. • Let’s meet on the weekend. (US) • I’ll see you on Christmas Day. • You must be on time. • He broke his leg on getting out of the car.
onto (US) *see* **on to**	• The cat jumped onto the chair. • The police are onto us. (slang)

opposite

- There is a post office opposite my house.
- She sat opposite him and looked into his eyes.

outside

- I don’t live in London. I live outside London.
- It was very cold outside the car.
- This is outside my scope.

over

- We are flying over the mountains.
- Put the blanket over the bed.
- The cat jumped over the wall.
- Let’s discuss it over dinner.
- The king ruled over the country for many years.
- The town is just over the border.
- It cost over $50. It was $53.25.
- There is rain over the whole country.
- It took over an hour to do my homework.
- The population has increased over the past twenty years.
- Can you stay with us over Christmas?

past	• I saw you yesterday when we drove past your school. • The post office is just past the police station. • Don’t work past your bed-time. • This is difficult. It’s past me. • It’s nearly ten minutes past five. 5.09 to be precise.
pending	• We cannot supply you pending payment. • Pending his return, we can do nothing. • There were many arguments pending the negotiations.
per	• The speed limit is 70 miles per hour. • The carpet costs $10 per square metre.
plus	• 2 plus 2 = 4. • There will be three of us, plus the baby.
pro	• Are you pro capital punishment? • He is generally pro new ideas.

re	• Re: your letter dated 21 May • I want to talk you re the proposed meeting.
regarding	• I would like to speak to you regarding my homework. • Regarding John, let’s talk later.
respecting	• I would like to speak to you respecting my homework. • I am writing to you respecting our latest products.
round	• I live round the corner. • They all sat round the fire. • There is a hedge round the house.

save (formal)	• All save Mrs Jones were present.
saving (formal)	• Saving yourself, nobody thanked me.
since (also conj.)	• I haven’t seen Josef since Monday. • Mr Brown has worked in a bank since 1985.

than (also conj.)	• He is a writer than whom there is no finer. • Your car is bigger than my car.
through **thru** (US)	• The train goes through a tunnel. • I can see light through the keyhole. • You have been through a difficult experience. • You went through a red light. • The error occurred through my own stupidity. • They worked Monday through Thursday. [US]
throughout	• It is raining throughout the whole country. • He worked throughout the day, and most of the night.
till (also conj.)	• I work from 9am till 5pm. • Please wait till I come.
to	• Could you give this to Kob? • My car does 10 miles to the litre. • To his surprise, the door was open. • The museum is open from Monday to Friday. • The time is ten to five. [4.50]
touching	• Touching your homework, I think we need to speak.
toward (US) **towards** (UK)	• He drove off toward(s) the mountain. • I'd better go. It's getting toward(s) midnight. • He contributed $100,000 toward(s) the new building. • It's the first step toward(s) peace. • He has a positive attitude toward(s) his work.

under	• The mouse ran under the chair. • The bucket is under the sink. • Submarines can travel under water. • We drove under a bridge. • I have a T-shirt under my pullover. • Who do you work under? Who is your boss? • I am under orders from the President. • What is the subject under discussion? • Under the company rules, we can’t do that. • Please buy it if it’s under $50.
underneath	• The nurse put a pillow underneath his head. • There is a big cellar underneath our house.
unlike	• That’s very unusual. It’s unlike Andrea to be so rude. • This problem is unlike any we have met before.
until (formal, also conj.)	• They continued the meeting until 11pm. • Please wait until I come.
up	• Jack and Jill ran up the hill. • There is a post office up the street.
upon (formal)	• Please don’t put your shoes upon the table. • There are now no dinosaurs upon Earth. • I need a book upon bio-chemistry. • We met upon a Monday. • He broke his leg upon getting out of the car.

versus	• He was the judge in the case of Gore versus Bush. • We should choose peace versus war.
via	• We flew from Paris to Bangkok via Dubai.

with	• Do you live with your parents? • He’s been with EnglishClub.com for two years. • I discussed it with her. • With your permission, I’d like to go. • If you mix red with yellow you get orange. • Muriel is the girl with black hair. • Do you want to come with us? • I made this chair with my own hands. • You’ll forget her with time.
within	• There is a modem within the computer. • I will finish within 30 minutes. • He lives within 10 miles of his work. • It’s not within my power to help you.
without	• I want trousers without buttons. • I came without my wife because she is working. • He watched without speaking.
worth	• This car is worth $10,000.

Complex Prepositions

according to	• According to John, Mary was late. I believe John.
ahead of	• Anthony is ahead of Rachel in the race. He'll win. • We have a long day ahead of us. Let's get going!
à la (from French)	• It's a TV show à la CNN. Same style, similar content.
along with	• Do you want some pork along with the chicken?
apart from	• Nobody objected apart from you, so we did it.
as for	• As for Matt, he will arrive later.
aside from	• I have another car aside from this one. Both are red.
as per	• We must work strictly as per the law.
as to	• As to your behaviour, I think you were wrong.
as well as	• You should telephone as well as write, just to be sure.
away from	• The cat ran away from the dog and escaped.
because of	• We can't play tennis because of the rain.
but for	• It's your fault! But for you, I'd have been on time.
by means of	• You open a door by means of its handle.
close to	• My car is close to your car. About two cars away.
contrary to	• Contrary to expectations, the euro fell in value.
depending on	• We'll play tennis tomorrow, depending on the rain.

due to	• The cancellation was due to the rain. There was no other reason. •
except for	• Everyone was present, except for Mary. She stayed at home.
forward of	• He was sitting forward of me in the plane. I could just see the back of his head.
further to	• Further to your letter, I have spoken to Mr Brown.
in addition to	• There were two people in addition to me. So that made three of us.
in between	• He is in between the two opinions. He wants to compromise.
in case of	• You can phone me in case of need. Day or night.
in face of	• He reacts bravely in face of danger.
in favour of	• I am not in favour of your idea. It won't work.
in front of	• You can park your car in front of my house. • I couldn't see the film because the woman in front of me was wearing a big hat.
in lieu of	• I don't have any dollars. Can I pay euro in lieu of dollars?
in spite of	• We went swimming in spite of the cold water.
instead of	• We don't have any tea. Would you like coffee instead of tea?
in view of	• In view of your illness, we will wait for a week.

irrespective of	• I don’t like it, irrespective of what you say. • Irrespective of the price, I don’t want it. Price isn’t everything.
near to	• There is a restaurant near to my office. Just two minutes away. •
next to	• The school is next to the bank. Between the hotel and the bank.
on account of	• Don’t worry on account of me. Think about yourself.
on behalf of	• I’m calling you on behalf of Mr Brown. I represent him in legal matters.
on board	• Is there a doctor on board this plane?
on to (UK) *see* **onto**	• The cat jumped on to the chair.
on top of	• The cat is sitting on top of the television.
opposite to	• There is a tree opposite to the house. Straight across the road.
other than	• Sorry, we’re out of whisky. But we have every drink other than whisky.
out of	• Take your hands out of your pockets and help me! • He went out of the room to smoke a cigarette. • We’re out of eggs. Shall I buy some?
outside of	• They stopped outside of the city to check the map before entering.
owing to	• We didn’t go swimming, owing to the cold weather.

preparatory to	• I made a graph preparatory to the meeting, so everything was ready.
prior to	• I never spoke French prior to living in France. But I learned quickly after coming to France.
regardless of	• I don’t want it, regardless of the price. Even if it’s free, I just don’t want it.
save for	• Everyone came, save for Lek who had to work.
thanks to	• Thanks to Shirley, we arrived on time. •
together with	• I’d like chicken please, together with vegetables.
up against	• We are up against a powerful enemy.
up to	• There was a shop here up to 1990. But it closed that year.
up until	• We worked up until they came. Then we stopped.
vis-à-vis (from French)	• I prefer Jaguar cars vis-à-vis BMW cars. • I need to speak to you vis-à-vis your homework.
with reference to	• With reference to your comments, I’ll reply soon. • I am writing with reference to your order.
with regard to	• I’d like to speak to you with regard to your work.

Some Prepositions of Place

on

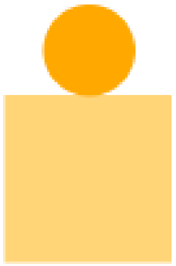

above

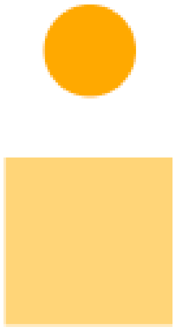

over

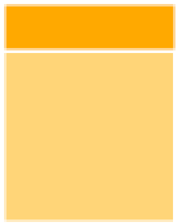

in front of

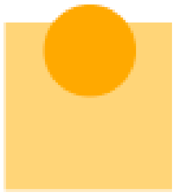

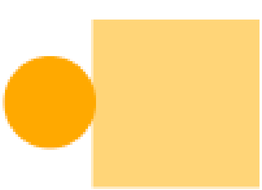

beside

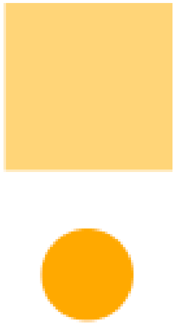

below

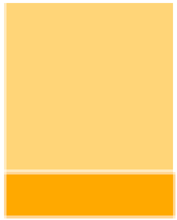

under

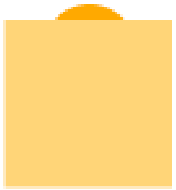

behind

There is a cup **on** the table.
The helicopter hovered **above** the house.
The police placed a sheet **over** the body.
He stood **in front of** the door and rang the bell.
Ram sat **beside** Tara in the cinema.
A small stream runs **below** that bridge.
He put the key **under** the doormat.
He put his hands **behind** his back.

Some Prepositions of Time

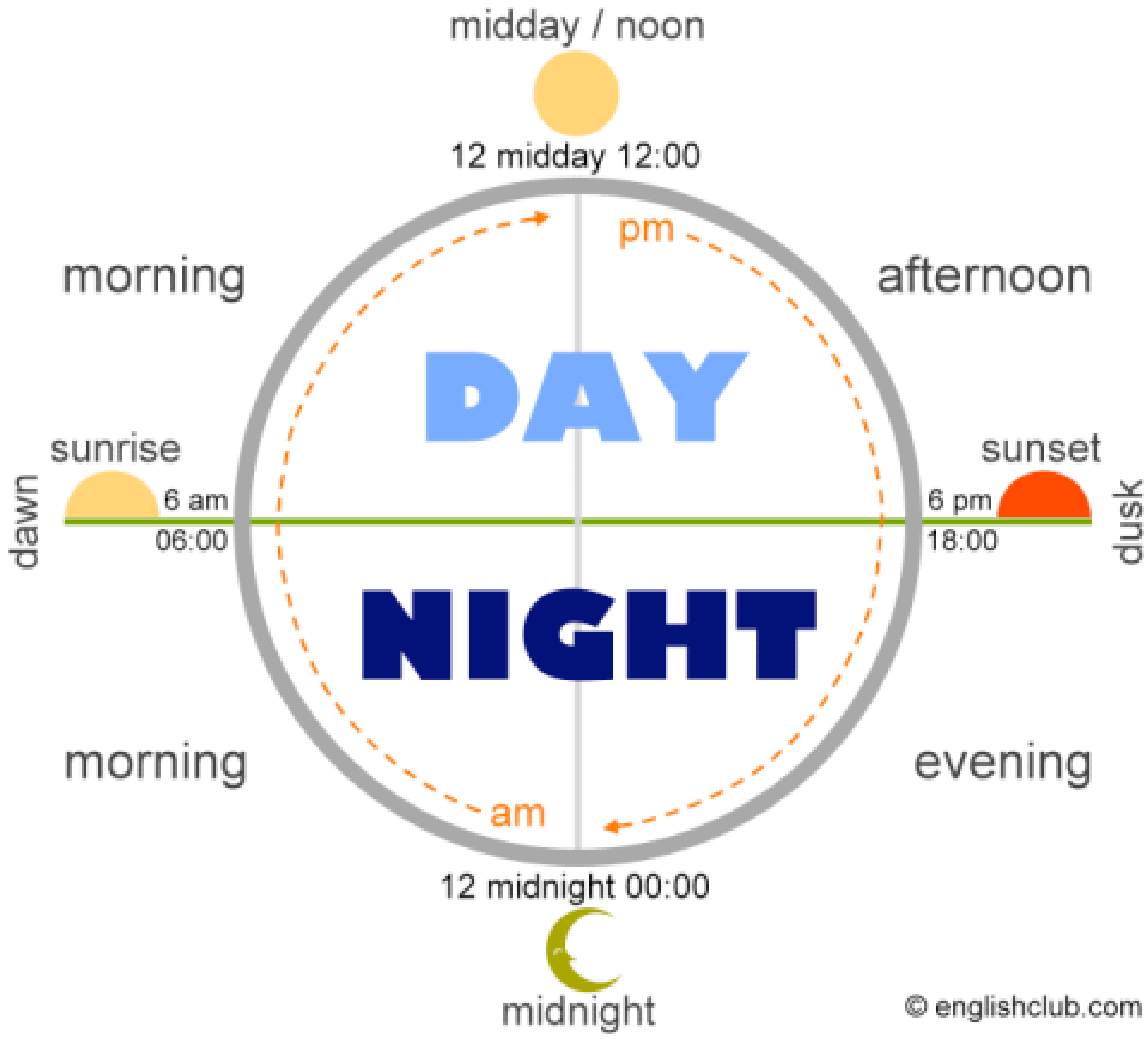
midday / noon
12 midday 12:00
pm
morning
afternoon
DAY
sunrise
dawn
6 am
06:00
sunset
6 pm
18:00
dusk
NIGHT
morning
evening
am
12 midnight 00:00
midnight
© englishclub.com

He has coffee **in** the morning, tea **in** the afternoon and wine **in** the evening.
I work **during** the morning/afternoon/evening/day/night.
Let's meet **at** 6pm.
The clock strikes twelve **at** midday/noon/midnight.
The condemned man was shot **at** sunrise/dawn.
The street lights come on **at** sunset/dusk.
We can see the stars **at** night.

Quizzes

Try the quizzes on the following pages to check your understanding. In general there is only one possible answer to each question. The answers are shown at the end of each quiz.

- One-word prepositions
- Complex prepositions
- Prepositions of place
- Prepositions of time
- One-word and complex prepositions

If you like, you can use the chart below to record your progress. If you don't get 10 out of 10 for one quiz the first time, revise your prepositions and try again later a second time, and a third time if necessary!

Quiz		**My Score out of 10**		
		1st time	2nd time	3rd time
1	One-word prepositions			
2	One-word prepositions			
3	One-word prepositions			
4	One-word prepositions			
5	One-word prepositions			
6	One-word prepositions			
7	One-word prepositions			
8	One-word prepositions			
9	One-word prepositions			
10	Complex prepositions			
11	Complex prepositions			
12	Complex prepositions			
13	Complex prepositions			
14	Complex prepositions			
15	Complex prepositions			
16	Prepositions of place			
17	Prepositions of time			
18	One-word and complex prepositions			
19	One-word and complex prepositions			
20	One-word and complex prepositions			

Quiz 1 One-word prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 10 __________ 3 = 7.
a) pro b) against c) less

2 2 __________ 2 = 4.
a) despite b) plus c) circa

3 All __________ Mrs Jones were present.
a) off b) save c) given

4 Are you __________ capital punishment?
a) outside b) pro c) without

5 __________ rain, we'll play tennis tomorrow.
a) Barring b) Over c) Plus

6 Did you vote for or __________ the suggestion?
a) throughout b) by c) against

7 Everyone came __________ Angela.
a) by b) bar c) during

8 Everyone came __________ Andrea.
a) but b) amid c) inside

9 __________ the time, you ought to leave now.
a) Given b) Astride c) Cum

10 He broke his leg __________ getting out of the car.
a) till b) like c) upon

Answers: 1c, 2b, 3b, 4b, 5a, 6c, 7b, 8a, 9a, 10c

Quiz 2 One-word prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 He couldn't work __________ his illness.
a) following b) by c) as

2 He died __________ 1270.
a) circa b) on c) outside

3 He fell asleep __________ the meeting.
a) circa b) during c) off

4 He passed the test __________ being ill.
a) despite b) inside c) behind

5 He seems to be __________ my idea.
a) since b) anti c) as

6 He was shot __________ a professional killer.
a) throughout b) with c) by

7 He was the judge in the case of Gore __________ Bush.
a) gone b) despite c) versus

8 He's __________ 50. He must be nearly 60 years old.
a) till b) by c) gone

9 I am __________ your project. I will support it.
a) despite b) behind c) unlike

10 I am writing to you __________ our latest products.
a) respecting b) inside c) cum

Answers: 1a, 2a, 3b, 4a, 5b, 6c, 7c, 8c, 9b, 10a

Quiz 3 One-word prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 I came __________ my wife because she is working.
a) outside b) amid c) without

2 I can eat anything __________ pork.
a) up b) excepting c) until

3 I couldn’t hear her __________ the noise.
a) under b) amid c) pending

4 I don’t live in London. I live __________ London.
a) outside b) since c) saving

5 I have a T-shirt __________ my pullover.
a) considering b) under c) of

6 I have some questions __________ your decision.
a) concerning b) inside c) up

7 I think I must be going, __________ the time.
a) opposite b) minus c) considering

8 I want to talk you __________ the proposed meeting.
a) re b) atop c) down

9 I would like to speak to you __________ my homework.
a) worth b) to c) regarding

10 I’d better go. It’s getting __________ midnight.
a) down b) toward(s) c) as

Answers: 1c, 2b, 3b, 4a, 5b, 6a, 7c, 8a, 9c, 10b

Quiz 4 One-word prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 Is this the train __________ Cambridge?
a) over b) for c) astride

2 Is there water __________ the Moon?
a) on b) with c) up

3 It fell __________ the table and broke.
a) of b) off c) like

4 It is raining __________ the whole country.
a) throughout b) till c) via

5 It took __________ an hour to do my homework.
a) except b) on c) over

6 It was dark __________ the tunnel.
a) than b) inside c) on

7 It's 20 December. We are very __________ Christmas Day.
a) past b) near c) about

8 It's not __________ my power to help you.
a) within b) except c) with

9 Jack and Jill ran __________ the hill.
a) like b) with c) up

10 Mr Brown has worked in a bank __________ 1985.
a) alongside b) beside c) since

Answers: 1b, 2a, 3b, 4a, 5c, 6b, 7b, 8a, 9c, 10c

Quiz 5 One-word prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 Muriel is the girl __________ black hair.
a) plus b) outside c) with

2 __________ his return, we can do nothing.
a) Behind b) Pending c) Onto

3 Please wait __________ I come.
a) till b) since c) cum

4 Ram is as tall __________ Anthony.
a) as b) than c) with

5 __________ yourself, nobody thanked me.
a) Onto b) Considering c) Saving

6 She is a kind of secretary-__________-receptionist.
a) cum b) inside c) at

7 She sat __________ the horse.
a) worth b) of c) astride

8 She sat __________ him and looked into his eyes.
a) opposite b) off c) at

9 She sings __________ a bird.
a) than b) like c) per

10 Tara was sitting __________ Ram and Ati.
a) from b) between c) worth

Answers: 1c, 2b, 3a, 4a, 5c, 6a, 7c, 8a, 9b, 10b

Quiz 6 One-word prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 Team A worked __________ Team B during construction.
a) alongside b) except c) throughout

2 That makes $70, not __________ the tax.
a) within b) counting c) opposite

3 That’s very unusual. It’s __________ Andrea to be so rude.
a) opposite b) since c) unlike

4 The cat jumped __________ the chair.
a) less b) inside c) onto

5 The error occurred __________ my own stupidity.
a) like b) through c) thoughout

6 The meeting continued __________ midnight.
a) beyond b) as c) unlike

7 The river runs __________ our house.
a) beside b) up c) astride

8 The speed limit is 70 miles __________ hour.
a) per b) on c) around

9 The temperature is __________ 30 degrees centigrade.
a) less b) in c) minus

10 The tunnel runs __________ the sea.
a) over b) counting c) beneath

Answers: 1a, 2b, 3c, 4c, 5b, 6a, 7a, 8a, 9c, 10c

Quiz 7 One-word prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 There is a big cellar __________ our house.
a) until b) on c) underneath

2 There is a big fence __________ the house.
a) in b) cum c) around

3 There were four of us, __________ the baby.
a) including b) inside c) within

4 There were secret police __________ the crowd.
a) among b) concerning c) except

5 They all sat __________ the fire.
a) via b) down c) round

6 They continued the meeting __________ 11pm.
a) until b) in c) along

7 They ran __________ the hill.
a) aboard b) down c) worth

8 They went swimming, __________ the rain.
a) at b) minus c) notwithstanding

9 This car is __________ $10,000.
a) counting b) worth c) unlike

10 This is difficult. It's __________ me.
a) until b) than c) past

Answers: 1c, 2c, 3a, 4a, 5c, 6a, 7b, 8c, 9b, 10c

Quiz 8 One-word prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 This is the cause __________ the problem.
a) on b) of c) off

2 __________ his surprise, the door was open.
a) To b) On c) At

3 __________ your homework, I think we need to speak.
a) Touching b) Aboard c) Behind

4 Trains were invented __________ the nineteenth century.
a) at b) since c) in

5 We are aiming __________ sales of $1,000,000.
a) to b) at c) on

6 We are flying __________ the clouds.
a) above b) gone c) except

7 We cut the cake __________ ten pieces.
a) onto b) into c) above

8 We drove __________ the desert.
a) aboard b) across c) concerning

9 We flew from Paris to Bangkok __________ Dubai.
a) at b) between c) via

10 We had lunch __________ the meeting.
a) astride b) bar c) after

Answers: 1b, 2a, 3a, 4c, 5b, 6a, 7b, 8b, 9c, 10c

Quiz 9 One-word prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 We met the day __________ yesterday.
a) before b) despite c) versus

2 We open every day __________ Christmas Day.
a) excluding b) anti c) gone

3 We walked __________ the beach for two miles.
a) under b) along c) outside

4 We went __________ the boat.
a) since b) aboard c) worth

5 We worked __________ Monday to Wednesday.
a) in b) from c) at

6 What do you think __________ Mary?
a) about b) off c) via

7 What shall we have __________ coffee?
a) minus b) of c) besides

8 You can buy it if it's __________ $50.
a) below b) among c) notwithstanding

9 You can have any colour __________ blue.
a) until b) to c) except

10 Your car is bigger __________ my car.
a) as b) than c) for

Answers: 1a, 2a, 3b, 4b, 5b, 6a, 7c, 8a, 9c, 10b

Quiz 10 Complex prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 _______________ John, Mary was late. I believe John.
a) According to b) Further to c) Forward of

2 Anthony is _______________ Rachel in the race. I think he'll win.
a) aside from b) ahead of c) on board

3 _______________ Matt, he will arrive later.
a) As for b) Out of c) Up to

4 _______________ your behaviour, I think you were wrong.
a) As per b) Up until c) As to

5 _______________ expectations, the euro fell in value.
a) Next to b) In favour of c) Contrary to

6 Do you want some pork _______________ the chicken?
a) along with b) out of c) thanks to

7 Don't worry _______________ me. Think about yourself.
a) apart from b) on top of c) on account of

8 Everyone came, _______________ Lek who had to work.
a) save for b) away from c) as for

9 Everyone was present, _______________ Mary. She stayed at home.
a) in face of b) out of c) except for

10 _______________ your letter, I have spoken to Mr Brown.
a) Forward of b) Further to c) Next to

Answers: 1a, 2b, 3a, 4c, 5c, 6a, 7c, 8a, 9c, 10b

Quiz 11 Complex prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 He is _______________ the two opinions. He wants to compromise.
a) in between b) up to c) instead of

2 He reacts bravely _______________ danger.
a) up until b) in face of c) further to

3 He was sitting _______________ me in the plane.
a) on board b) out of c) forward of

4 I am not _______________ your idea. It won't work.
a) in favour of b) thanks to c) away from

5 I am writing _______________ your order.
a) away from b) up to c) with reference to

6 I don't have any dollars. Can I pay euro _______________ dollars?
a) opposite to b) in lieu of c) in spite of

7 I don't like it, _______________ what you say.
a) up against b) close to c) irrespective of

8 I don't want it, _______________ the price. Even if it's free.
a) away from b) prior to c) regardless of

9 I have another car _______________ this one. Both are red.
a) aside from b) out of c) by means of

10 I made a graph _______________ the meeting, so all was ready.
a) except for b) on top of c) preparatory to

Answers: 1a, 2b, 3c, 4a, 5c, 6b, 7c, 8c, 9a, 10c

Quiz 12 Complex prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 I never spoke French _______________ living in France.
a) in front of b) prior to c) depending on

2 I prefer Jaguar cars _______________ BMW cars.
a) out of b) in case of c) vis-à-vis

3 I'd like chicken please, _______________ vegetables.
a) because of b) on behalf of c) together with

4 I'd like to speak to you _______________ your work.
a) up against b) in front of c) with regard to

5 I'm calling you _______________ Mr Brown. I represent him.
a) on behalf of b) contrary to c) in between

6 _______________ your illness, we will wait for a week.
a) In lieu of b) In view of c) Next to

7 Is there a doctor _______________ this plane?
a) on board b) on top of c) but for

8 It's a TV show _______________ CNN. Same style, similar content.
a) up to b) à la c) save for

9 It's your fault! _______________ you, I'd have been on time.
a) But for b) As to c) In favour of

10 My car is _______________ your car. About two cars away.
a) on behalf of b) close to c) up until

Answers: 1b, 2c, 3c, 4c, 5a, 6b, 7a, 8b, 9a, 10b

Quiz 13 Complex prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 Nobody objected _______________ you, so we did it.
a) apart from b) opposite to c) as well as

2 Sorry, no whisky. But we have every drink _______________ whisky.
a) up against b) other than c) as per

3 Take your hands _______________ your pockets and help me!
a) ahead of b) out of c) due to

4 _______________ Shirley, we arrived on time.
a) Out of b) Thanks to c) On board

5 The cancellation was _______________ the rain. No other reason.
a) close to b) on to c) due to

6 The cat is sitting _______________ the television.
a) on top of b) on to c) as well as

7 The cat jumped _______________ the chair.
a) in case of b) other than c) on to

8 The cat ran _______________ the dog and escaped.
a) away from b) thanks to c) with regard to

9 The school's _______________ the bank. Between the hotel and bank.
a) in front of b) next to c) on account of

10 The woman _______________ me was wearing a big hat.
a) further to b) as to c) in front of

Answers: 1a, 2b, 3b, 4b, 5c, 6a, 7c, 8a, 9b, 10c

Quiz 14 Complex prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 There is a restaurant _______________ my office. Two minutes away.
a) except for b) near to c) preparatory to

2 There is a tree _______________ the house. Straight across the road.
a) forward of b) in lieu of c) opposite to

3 There was a shop here _______________ 1990. It closed that year.
a) up to b) aside from c) in face of

4 There were two people _______________ me. So that made three.
a) as for b) on board c) in addition to

5 They stopped _______________ the city to check the map.
a) but for b) outside of c) contrary to

6 We are _______________ a powerful enemy.
a) up against b) save for c) on behalf of

7 We can’t play tennis _______________ the rain.
a) as for b) other than c) because of

8 We didn’t go swimming, _______________ the cold weather.
a) on behalf of b) owing to c) with reference to

9 We don’t have any tea. Would you like coffee _______________ tea?
a) out of b) instead of c) by means of

10 We have a long day _______________ us. Let’s get going!
a) up until b) ahead of c) but for

Answers: 1b, 2c, 3a, 4c, 5b, 6a, 7c, 8b, 9b, 10b

Quiz 15 Complex prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 We must work strictly _______________ the law.
a) on board b) apart from c) as per

2 We went swimming _______________ the cold water.
a) in spite of b) as well as c) in case of

3 We worked _______________ they came. Then we stopped.
a) up until b) ahead of c) depending on

4 We'll play tennis tomorrow, _______________ the rain.
a) on behalf of b) by means of c) depending on

5 We're _______________ eggs. Shall I buy some?
a) out of b) in spite of c) owing to

6 _______________ your comments, I'll reply soon.
a) On board b) By means of c) With reference to

7 You can park your car _______________ my house.
a) in between b) save for c) in front of

8 You can phone me _______________ need. Day or night.
a) in case of b) in front of c) up against

9 You open a door _______________ its handle.
a) in spite of b) up to c) by means of

10 You should telephone _______________ write, just to be sure.
a) as for b) as well as c) depending on

Answers: 1c, 2a, 3a, 4c, 5a, 6c, 7c, 8a, 9c, 10b

Quiz 16 Prepositions of place

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 Don't stand __________ the television. I can't see!
a) on b) in front of c) above

2 Come and sit __________ me so that I can hear you better.
a) beside b) under c) on

3 From the plane we could see people in the fields __________ us.
a) beside b) below c) above

4 You'll have to turn round to see it. It's __________ you.
a) behind b) in front of c) over

5 The dead man was lying __________ the ground.
a) behind b) in front of c) on

6 Careful you don't scratch the table! Better put a cloth __________ it.
a) above b) beside c) over

7 It's dark where the road goes __________ a railway bridge.
a) on b) behind c) under

8 He looked up at the ceiling __________ him.
a) above b) under c) below

9 You can sit __________ that chair. Nobody is sitting there.
a) in front of b) on c) above

10 The police car came first. The president was in the car __________ it.
a) behind b) on c) under

Answers: 1b, 2a, 3b, 4a, 5c, 6c, 7c, 8a, 9b, 10a

Quiz 17 Prepositions of time

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 Let's meet __________ the evening and then go for a drink.
a) at b) in c) behind

2 Does your boss visit the office __________ the morning or afternoon?
a) in b) at c) on

3 I like to get up __________ sunrise and go for a run.
a) at b) on c) in

4 It's very quiet in this street __________ the day.
a) during b) at c) beside

5 Does the sun rise __________ dawn or at dusk?
a) at b) in c) on

6 What do you normally do __________ the evening?
a) in b) at c) on

7 Mary starts work __________ 9.30am and finishes after 6pm.
a) in b) during c) at

8 The sun is usually highest __________ noon.
a) during b) in c) at

9 The traffic is very bad __________ the morning and afternoon.
a) at b) on c) during

10 Most people sleep __________ night but I have to work.
a) during b) at c) in

Answers: 1b, 2a, 3a, 4a, 5a, 6a, 7c, 8c, 9c, 10b

Quiz 18 One-word and complex prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 ____________ Ati, the film was good. But in my opinion it was boring.
a) Except for b) From c) According to

2 I have all my books ____________ my dictionary, which I left at home.
a) regardless of b) through c) except for

3 He ran very fast and won the race ____________ 10 seconds.
a) by b) on c) instead of

4 Nok bought her book ____________ $20 but mine cost me $25.
a) for b) in c) save for

5 Who did you buy it ____________? Have they got any more?
a) of b) from c) out of

6 It's always your fault if you hit the car ____________ you.
a) on board b) in front of c) since

7 The ticket costs $5 ____________ age. No special price for children.
a) inside b) close to c) regardless of

8 Their meal arrived, ____________ a free bottle of wine.
a) astride b) according to c) together with

9 Oil doesn't mix ____________ water. It stays separated.
a) with b) further to c) at

10 It was good ____________ her to help. She has her own problems.
a) forward of b) off c) of

Answers: 1c, 2c, 3a, 4a, 5b, 6b, 7c, 8c, 9a, 10c

Quiz 19 One-word and complex prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 That's typical of Tina. It's just ____________ her to complain.
a) like b) until c) concerning

2 I can't talk now. But we can talk about it ____________ dinner tonight.
a) over b) on to c) within

3 Come ____________ 9 o'clock. Any time from 8.30 to 9.30 is ok.
a) around b) throughout c) up to

4 If the sea rises, some countries will be ____________ sea-level.
a) pending b) outside of c) below

5 Everybody came at 9am, ____________ Neil who came at 10am.
a) apart from b) underneath c) up against

6 There is a good view from my hotel because it is ____________ a hill.
a) in b) except c) on top of

7 She started to walk ____________ the man, but he followed her.
a) down b) away from c) out of

8 They sat ____________ each other in the cinema and held hands.
a) below b) next to c) via

9 There are 31 days ____________ December.
a) in b) on c) into

10 I sat in the back, ____________ the driver. Andrea sat in front.
a) in face of b) to c) behind

Answers: 1a, 2a, 3a, 4c, 5a, 6c, 7b, 8b, 9a, 10c

Quiz 20 One-word and complex prepositions

Choose the most suitable preposition (a, b or c) to fill the blank.

1 ____________ the rain, they did not play tennis.
a) Worth b) Owing to c) On behalf of

2 Can I have fish ____________ chicken? Chicken makes me sick.
a) across b) instead of c) together with

3 There were ten people ____________ the meeting.
a) at b) on c) on board

4 The ticket is $5 or $10, ____________ your age. How old are you?
a) above b) out of c) depending on

5 I work ____________ Dr Hudson. I will have to ask him for permission.
a) since b) under c) as for

6 After his wife died he went ____________ a very bad time.
a) with b) through c) preparatory to

7 There was a good film ____________ television last night.
a) in b) as to c) on

8 You should take paper ____________ a pen. They don’t have either.
a) as b) as well as c) except for

9 Do I have to pay tax ____________ this charge? Or is it included?
a) in addition to b) onto c) counting

10 I’m phoning ____________ your recent order.
a) opposite b) in between c) with reference to

Answers: 1b, 2b, 3a, 4c, 5b, 6b, 7c, 8b, 9a, 10c

More at www.esldepot.com:

Ebooks for ESL Learners

English Prepositions List
by Josef Essberger

Top 20 Business Vocabulary
by Josef Essberger

CVs, Resumes and Covering Letters
by Josef Essberger

Phrasal Verbs in Context
by Matt Errey

Ebooks for ESL Teachers

CALL for You
by Rolf Palmberg

Developing EFL Learners' Vocabulary Awareness
by Rolf Palmberg

Lucy Pollard's Guide to Teaching English
by Lucy Pollard

Games for learning English

Word Up Board Game
by Matt Errey

MAKING HEADWAY

Phrasal Verbs and Idioms

Advanced

as a drum
literature.

Graham Workman

Oxford University Press

Contents

Foreword 4

Introduction 5

Introductory unit 7

11

1 In good hands 15

2 Floating voters 20

3 Arts review 25

4 Going by appearances 31

5 Money! Money! Money! 35

6 Crime doesn't pay 40

7 Selling like hot cakes 46

8 Crisis? What crisis? ***52***

9 Happily ever after 58

10 It takes all sorts 64

11 Proverbs 70

Tapescript section 77

Answer key 85

Foreword

Students of English realize very early on in their learning career that prepositions present a problem. They collocate with nouns, adjectives, past participles, and verbs, without rules or logic. Students simply have to learn that ***interested*** is followed by ***in,*** and ***good*** is followed by ***at,*** and ***go home*** has no preposition. Multi-word verbs, or phrasal verbs as they are often referred to, present a very special problem. English can make verb and particle (preposition or adverb) combinations easily and freely. The word ***particle*** has been used throughout this book, in order to avoid having to make the adverb/preposition distinction (to most students, the word after the verb in a multi-word verb is always a preposition). Multi-word verbs exist throughout the language. They express everyday actions such as ***Turn on the light;*** they can also have a variety of meanings such as ***Things worked out well, We worked out the problem, She worked out in the gym, I've never been able to work him out,*** and ***The final price works out at £10.***

Given the complexity of the area, the surprise is that learners are very keen to master it. They seem to sense that multi-word verbs are a vital component of English, and spoken English in particular. There is also the feeling that an understanding of common idioms will increase their comprehension, though most students instinctively avoid trying to produce them. The best time to address these areas is at upper-intermediate and advanced levels, when students already have a certain grammatical and lexical foundation.

This books goes a long way to helping students to unravel the complexity of multi-word verbs, preposition and adverb collocations, and idiomatic expressions. Students will find staged guidance in understanding the systems, and are given a variety of exercise practice in recognition and production. ***Phrasal Verbs and Idioms*** will find its place in self-access centres, for learners to study on their own; and teachers will welcome the texts, listenings, explanations, and exercises, which have clear aims and are highly accessible for thorough classroom exploitation.

John and Liz Soars

Series editors

Introduction

Who this book is for

This book is for students who are studying *Headway* Advanced or any other coursebook at a similar level. It can also be used by students who are preparing for Cambridge CAE or CPE examinations.

How the book is organized

The materials in each unit are organized around themes such as personal relationships, money, describing people, health, reviewing books and films, etc. The units are free-standing and can therefore easily be used to supplement a range of coursebooks. As with *Phrasal Verbs and Idioms Upper-Intermediate*, the book is designed to present multi-word verbs in context and illustrate how they are used.

The book contains over 120 multi-word verbs. They have been selected according to the theme of each unit, as well as level of difficulty and usefulness. Practice exercises are provided for consolidation work. Idiomatic expressions which relate to the theme of the unit are also presented and practised.

How to use the book

To the teacher

1 We recommend you use the Introductory unit before any other units in the book. All the units contain enough material for approximately 90 minutes of classroom work.

2 Units 1–10 follow a pattern:

The Preparation section is designed as a brief lead-in to the theme of the unit, not lasting more than five minutes.
The Presentation is usually a listening or reading text, followed by Checking Understanding, an activity where the multi-word verbs introduced are matched with specially written definitions.
The Drills provide controlled oral practice of the new multi-word verbs. They can be used after the Checking Understanding activity, or later, as revision. The drills can be played on cassette, or the teacher can read them aloud in class.
The Practice section provides controlled and semi-controlled practice activities for the multi-word verbs introduced in the unit. There are also exercises designed to encourage students to explore the collocations of

some multi-word verbs. This section includes practice exercises for idiomatic expressions.

How multi-word verbs work provides practice in identifying the different types of multi-word verbs, and looks at the general meaning of some particles when used with certain verbs.

The section What's the answer? is designed to check that students have understood the important differences between some of the multi-word verbs. It can be used as **a** game or revision activity.

The Jokes provide some light relief. They are related to the theme of the unit and sometimes illustrate humorous uses of multi-word verbs.

The Speaking section is designed to provide freer practice of the new multi-word verbs and idiomatic expressions, and gives students the opportunity to use them to talk about their own experiences and ideas. It is sometimes connected to the writing task which follows. This section can be used in a subsequent lesson after students have had time to revise and absorb the new language in the unit.

The Writing section provides further consolidation of the language covered in the unit, and is probably best set as homework.

Unit 11 is an exception to this pattern. It deals exclusively with Proverbs.

At the back of the book, the Tapescript is a useful reference point for students to consult. The Answer key provides answers to all the exercises, useful definitions for the idiomatic expressions, and helpful guidance on collocation.

3 It is important that students are given some activities for revising the multi-word verbs they learn in the book. The Drills section can be used, and a simple revision activity is for students in pairs to test each other using the definitions in Checking understanding. Some multi-word verbs and idioms can be used in a Find ***someone who...*** activity as a warmer at the start of a lesson. Pairs of students can devise clues for a multi-word verb crossword which can then be used to test other students. Students can be asked to act out some of the dialogues on tape, and their spoken and written errors with multi-word verbs can be used in a ***Grammar Auction*** game.

To the student working independently

1 Read and listen to the presentation reading and listening texts, using the cassette and the tapescripts. Then do the exercises which follow.

2 Test yourself by listening and responding to the drills on the cassette. Alternatively, use the tapescript of the drills – you can cover up the answer and see if you produce the right response.

3 Work through the written exercises in the book and check your answers in the Answer key.

4 Find a friend to practise the spoken exercises with, or write out what you would say.

5 Do the free writing activities and then find someone who can correct them.

Introductory unit

What are multi-word verbs?

Multi-word verbs are verbs that combine with one or two particles (a preposition and/or an adverb), for example:

The letters BBC stand for British *Broadcasting* Corporation.
(verb + preposition)

This milk tastes awful. I think it's gone off.
(verb + adverb)

She couldn't attend the *meeting* so *Helen stood in* for *her.*
(verb + adverb + preposition)

If the addition of the particle(s) changes the meaning of the verb in some way, it is usually called a phrasal verb, because it has an idiomatic meaning – the phrase means something different from its component parts. There are many different types of phrasal verb; in this book. we call all combinations of verb + particle(s) *multi-word* verbs.

Literal or non-literal meaning?

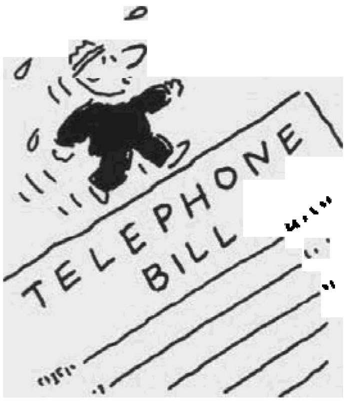

Literal meaning

Look at the following example:
He ran up the hill.

Here the meaning of the verb and the particle have not changed.
He ran up = He ran + up (in the direction of the top of the hill)

Non-literal meaning

Sometimes the addition of the particle(s) creates a multi-word verb that has a completely different meaning from its components. It has idiomatic meaning.

He ran up a large telephone bill.

In this sentence, *to* run *up* = to increase the amount of money you owe.

1 The first three example sentences on this page all have multi-word verbs with non-literal meaning. What do they mean? Use a dictionary if necessary.

Look at the multi-word verbs below. Write L next to them if they have a literal meaning and N if they have a non-literal meaning. If the meaning is non-literal, say what it is. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Example
☐ *She entered the room,* ***put down*** *her bag, and sat on the chair.*
☐ *The army has* ***put down*** *the rebellion after a long struggle.*
(*to put something down* = to defeat or suppress something)

a. ☐ She *turned* the exam paper *over* and read all the questions.
b. ☐ They have *broken off* their engagement.
c. ☐ He was very tired and soon *dropped off* in front of the TV.
d. ☐ While repairing the TV aerial he *fell through* the roof.
e. ☐ She always *stood up for* her brother if anyone criticized him.
f. ☐ He *turned* the idea *over* in his mind all day but couldn't make a decision.
g. ☐ She *broke off* a piece of chocolate and gave it to him.
h. ☐ The plan to build a new road *fell through* due to lack of money.
i. ☐ We all *stood up for* the President when he entered the room.
j. ☐ This plant must be dead. All the leaves have *dropped off*.

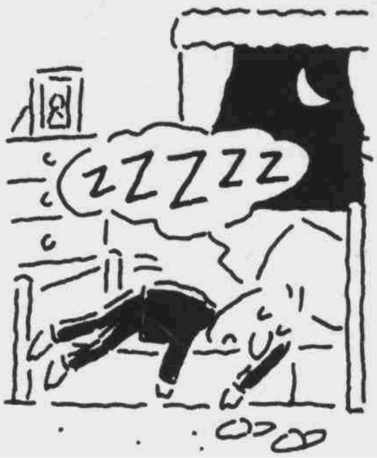

– ***Doctor, I can't get to sleep at night.***
– ***Try lying on the edge of the bed – you'll soon drop off.***

Semi-literal meaning
Some multi-word verbs have a semi-literal meaning. The basic meaning of the verb remains the same, but the particle adds an extra meaning.

Look at this example:
After stopping for fuel in New York, the plane ***flew on*** *to Los Angeles.*

Here, the particle *on* gives the idea of continuing to fly. Look at these further examples where *on* has the same general meaning of *continuing with something.*

I thought of leaving my job, but my boss persuaded me to ***stay on.***
We thought the ship would stop and pick us up, but it ***sailed on.***
The road conditions were dreadful, but we decided to ***drive on.***
We camped near a village for a few days and then decided to ***move on.***
The soldiers ***fought on*** *despite heavy casualties.*

Some particles have the same general meaning when they form both semi-literal and non-literal multi-word verbs. For example, the particle *out* gives the meaning of *something stopping completely.*

a. *This species of bird* ***died out*** *in the 19th century.*
= the species became extinct, it stopped existing
b. *The room was so hot and* **airless** *she* ***passed out.***
= she fainted, she stopped being conscious

In a. the verb has semi-literal meaning; the basic meaning of the verb 'die' has not changed. In b. the verb has non-literal meaning: *to pass out*

= to faint, to lose consciousness. However, in both cases the general meaning of the particle *out* remains the same.

Knowing the general meaning of some particles when used with certain groups of verbs can help with learning and remembering them.

The same particle can have *different* general meanings when used with different groups of verbs.

3 Look at the multi-word verbs below. Write S if they have semi-literal meaning, and N if they have non-literal meaning.

a. ☐ He jumped into his car and *drove off.*
b. ☐ The plane *took off* on time.
c. ☐ I tried to stop the thief but he *ran off.*
d. ☐ They got into the boat and *sailed off* into the sunset.
e. ☐ We *set off* for the coast early in the morning.
f. ☐ The thieves *made off* when they saw a policeman.

What is the general meaning of the particle *off* when used with the group of verbs above?

4 What is the general meaning of the particle *off* when used with the group of verbs below?

a. Can you *switch off* all the lights when you leave?
b. Management and unions have decided to *break off* negotiations.
c. I was **talking** to her on the phone when we were *cut off.*
d. The meeting has been *called off.*
e. I must *ring off.* I think *I* can smell something burning in the kitchen.
f. I'd better *sign off* now or **I'll** miss the post.

Multiple meanings

The same multi-word verb can have two or more different meanings.

5 **Match the different meanings of *pick* up with the definitions below.**

1 Oh dear, I think I've *picked* up a cold.
2 I picked *up* some Chinese while I was in Beijing.
3 He was *picked* up for drink-driving yesterday morning.
4 What time shall I *pick* you *up?*
5 Fortunately the economy is starting to *pick up*.
6 While she was in the bar, two men tried to pick her up,

a. *to* improve or recover
b. to collect someone by *car* or coach
c. to make casual acquaintance with someone, often with *a* view to having a sexual relationship
d. to learn something without difficulty or special study
e. to catch an illness
f. to arrest someone

Someone and/or *something*

Some multi-word verbs can be used to talk about people and things without any difference in meaning.

Example

I asked her to marry me but *she turned me down,*
The committee fumed *down my* application.

to turn someone/something down = to refuse or reject someone/something
In this book, this is shown by *someone/something* appearing with the verb.

Some multi-word verbs have *a* different meaning when they are used about people and when they are used about things.

Example

We've got a *spare room so we can put* you *up for the night.*
to put someone up = *to* give someone a place to sleep

The landlord has put *our rent up again.*
to put something up = to raise the price or cost of something

When there is a difference in meaning like this, it will be shown with only someone or something, whichever is appropriate.

6 Work in groups. Try to think of as many different meanings as possible for the following multi-word verbs: to go *off* and *to blow up*. Then check your answers with a dictionary or the Answer key.

Collocation

Some words are regularly used together. This is collocation. For example, to run up (i.e. to increase the amount of money you owe) collocates with these words: a bill, a debt, an account, an overdraft, and a deficit.

He's *run up* enormous debts.
The company *ran up* a considerable deficit.
She's always *running up* an overdraft.

A good dictionary can help with collocation, since it will give examples of words that are often used with certain verbs. It will show that sales, orders, sterling, the economy, and someone's health, can all pick up (= to improve or recover). Similarly, an idea, a plan, a project, an arrangement, a scheme, and a proposal, can *fall through* (= to be abandoned or fail to be completed).

It is important to know which words or phrases collocate with multi-word verbs. For example, *to go off* = to go bad. It is possible to say that milk, eggs, meat and fish have gone *off*. But it is not possible to use this multi-word verb with bread, vegetables or other kinds of food – they do not collocate,

7 Which of the words can he used with the multi-word verbs below? Up to three items can be correct.

1 They have called off
a. the excursion.
b. the football match.
c. the 6.50 train to Oxford.
d. their subscription to the magazine.

2 What time did ... break up?
a. the party
b. the film
c. the journey
d. the meeting

Multi-word verbs are frequently used in everyday spoken and written English, and they usually have an informal style. In more formal contexts, some multi-word verbs can be replaced by Latin-based verbs with a similar meaning.

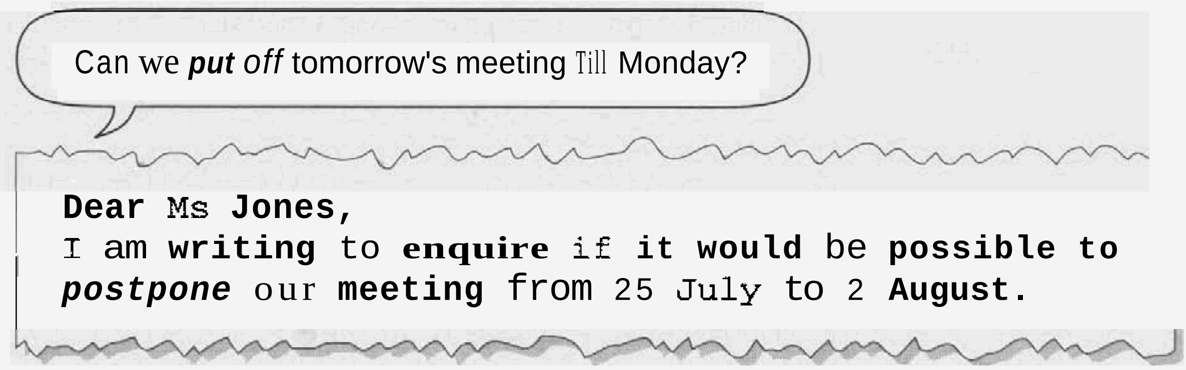

Can we *put off* tomorrow's meeting till Monday?

Dear Ms Jones,
I am writing to enquire if it would be possible to *postpone* our meeting from 25 July to 2 August.

There is often no single word which can replace the multi-word verb, and an expression with a similar meaning has to be used.

> Dear John,
> We're coming to Luton next week – can you *put us up* for the night?

> Hello, this is Mr Bell of Hall Associates. I'm calling about this year's conference. Will the organizers be making arrangements to ***provide*** *accommodation* for our sales representatives?

It is important to be careful with equivalent expressions for multi-word verbs, because there can be differences of style. Multi-word verbs are often less formal.

Multi-word verbs most often have a neutral style, and sometimes there is little difference in the degree of formality between multi-word verbs and their equivalents:

I've **picked up** *a cold.* = *I've* **caught** *a cold.*

Every multi-word verb has a rule for word order, and multi-word verbs which have more than one meaning can have several word order rules. Most multi-word verbs belong to one of four basic types.

The four basic types

Type 1 multi-word verbs: intransitive + inseparable

Type 1 multi-word verbs are intransitive (i.e. they do not take an object). Verb and particle cannot be separated.

The room was so hot and airless that she **passed out.**
He was very tired and soon **dropped off.**

In this book, Type 1 multi-word verbs are written without *someone* or *something* to show they are intransitive and inseparable: *to pass out.*

Type 2 multi-word verbs: transitive + separable

Type 2 multi-word verbs are transitive (i.e. they take an object). Verb and particle can be separated.

She's always **running up** *bills.*
Management and unions have **broken** *negotiations* **off.**

If an object pronoun (me/you/him/her/it/us/them) is used, the particle must come after the object pronoun.

switch off	**the light**	
switch	the light	off
switch	it	off

In this book, Type 2 multi-word verbs are written with *someone* and/or *something* between the verb and the particle to show they can be separated: *to switch something off.*

Type 3 multi-word verbs: transitive + inseparable

Type 3 multi-word verbs are transitive (i.e. they take an object), Verb and particle cannot be separated.

Can you look after the children while we are away?
I've gone off Peter since he was so rude to me.

The object pronoun always comes after the particle.

look **after**	the children them

Type 3 multi-word verbs are written with *someone* and/or *something* after the particle to show that they are transitive and inseparable: *to look after someone/something.*

Type 4 multi-word verbs: transitive + 2 inseparable particles

Type 4 multi-word verbs are transitive (i.e. they take an object). **Verb and particles cannot be separated.**

Her brother's so rude that I don't know why she always stands up for him.
Don't let me interrupt you; please carry on with your work.

Type 4 multi-word verbs are written with *someone* and/or *something* after the two particles: *to stand up for someone/something.*

8 **Look at the following sentences and decide if the multi-word verbs are Type 1, Type 2, Type 3, or Type 4.**

a. I can't put up with this rudeness any longer.
b. This meat has gone off.
c. I'll pick you up tomorrow morning.
d. CIA stands for Central Intelligence Agency.
e. I can't find my keys. Can you help me look for them?

f. Our plan to emigrate to Australia has fallen through.
g. He drove off very quickly.
h. Could you stand in for me at the meeting?
i. The union has decided to call off the strike.
j. The two countries have broken off diplomatic relations.

More than one type

A few multi-word verbs can behave like Type 1 *and* Type 4:

Shall I carry on with what I was saying? (Type 4)
Yes, please carry on. (Type 1)

A few others behave like Type 1 *and* Type 2:

Did they close the factory down? (Type 2)
Yes, it closed down a month ago. (Type 1)

When a multi-word verb behaves like this, it will be shown in this book by the use of brackets.

carry on (with something) *close (something) down*

9 Put the following multi-word verbs under the headings below. Where a verb can behave like both types, classify it under both headings.

to hit (someone) back
to put someone up
to run out (of something)
to look for something
to stand up for someone
to get on (with something)
to drop off
to ring (someone) back

Type 1	Type 2	Type 3	Type 4

Dictionaries contain a lot of information about the meaning, collocation, word order and style of multi-word verbs. Use a dictionary to help you answer the questions below.

10 What is the difference between:

a. *to bring someone up* and *to bring something up?*
b. *to look something up* and *to look someone up?*
c. *to give up* and *to give something up?*
d. *to make up* and *to make something up?*
e. *to turn in* and *to turn someone in?*

1

In good hands

Preparation

Work in pairs. Look at the diagram below. Add two connected words to each of the categories.

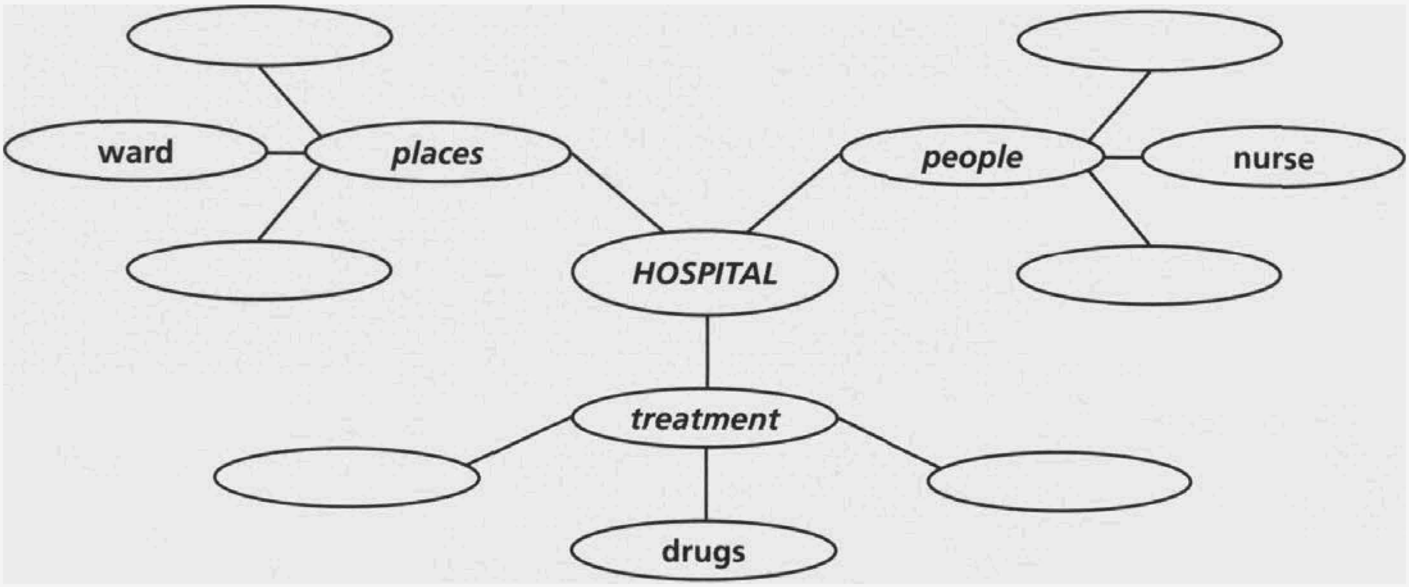
ward
places
people
nurse
HOSPITAL
treatment
drugs

Presentation

T.1a

Listen to a doctor talking to a nurse in a hospital ward. They are discussing four patients. Make notes about the patients in the box below. Then compare your notes with your partner.

1 Mr Harris	
2 Mr Stephens	
3 Mr Spencer	
4 Mr King	

Checking understanding

Match the multi-word verbs in A with the definitions in B. If necessary, **listen to the tape again, or** look **at Tapescript 1a** on **page 77.**

A	B
1 to come through something	a. to feel mentally or physically capable of doing something
2 to build something/someone up	b. to disappear gradually until it no longer exists or has any effect
3 to go ahead (with something)	c. to cause an illness or pain to occur
4 to fight someone/something off	d. to increase the strength, size, or intensity of someone/something
5 to wear off	e. to survive or to recover from a serious illness or situation
6 to bring something on	f. to proceed with something
7 to feel up to (doing) something	g. to overcome or defeat someone/something unpleasant and threatening
8 to try something out (on someone)	h. to test something to see if it is useful or effective

Drills

T.1b

Listen to the sentences **on** the **tape. Use** the **prompts you** hear **to make** sentences with the **same** meaning.

Example

Her **enthusiasm** began **to disappear.** *(wear off)*

Her *enthusiasm began to* **wear** *off.*

Practice

1 **Complete the following sentences, using** the multi-word **verbs** from this unit.

a. **My cousin was in a serious car accident last week. Fortunately, he ___ it** with **only minor injuries.**

b. **I'm taking lots of vitamin C** to **help me** ___ this cold.

c. **We had intended to go out last night, but we were** *so* **tired we** didn't ___ it, **so we stayed** at home.

d. Many **nervous breakdowns are** by **stress.**

e. The company **was** finally **given** permission to ___ **with production of the new** drug.

f. The dentist **told** me **that** when the effect of the **anaesthetic** ___ , I might feel **a** little **pain.**

g. **Before you buy a second-hand** *car.* **you** should **always** ___ **it** ___

h. I still feel **very weak** after **my illness.** I **think** I need some vitamins to **help** me **my** strength ___

2 Work in pairs. You and your partner are discussing your neighbours' and friends' illnesses and medical problems. Read through the incomplete dialogue below. Then use the correct tense of the verbs in brackets, and your own ideas, to carry on the conversation.

Example

A Do you ... (*feel up to*) ... dinner?

A *Do you feel up to going out to dinner?*

B No. not really. My teeth still feel funny and ... (*wear off*).

B *No, not really. My teeth still feel funny and the anaesthetic hasn't worn off yet.*

A Hello. How are you today?

B Not brilliant. I ... (*not feel up to*) ... going to work this morning. I've been feeling funny for days. and I'm still trying to ... (*fight off*) ...

A Oh dear. I'm sorry to hear that. Is your sister feeling better?

B Yes, she's over the worst now, The pain ... (*wear off*).

A Oh good. By the wag, have you heard about David Smith at number 37?

B Yes, isn't it dreadful? And he's so young, poor thing, Have they decided to operate?

A Yes, ... (*go ahead* with) ...

B What about Jenny next door? How did her operation go?

A Fine. She ... (come through) ... , but it'll take her a long time ... (*build up*) ...

B Talking of hospitals, did you see that programme on TV the other day about those doctors who ... (*try out*) ... a new drug and it ... (*bring* on) ... a horrible reaction in the patients?

A Don't tell me! All this talk of illness is making me feel ill.

Collocation

3 Which of the words can be used with the multi-word verbs? Up to three items may be correct.

1 He managed to fight off
- a. his debts.
- b. the enemy.
- c. the pain.
- d. his wound.

2 She didn't feel up to
- a. making a long journey.
- b. working in the garden.
- c. falling in love.
- d. recovering.

3 They decided to go ahead with
- a. the wedding.
- b. their relationship.
- c. the project.
- d. their plan.

4 **He came** through

a. **a cold.**
b. his **injuries.**
c. **two world wars.**
d. the **crisis.**

5 a. The **infection**
b. The **wound**
c. The **excitement**
d. **The pain**

started *to* wear off.

Idiomatic expressions

4 Look **at the following** idiomatic **expressions from** Tapescript 1a on **page** *77.* What **do you** think **they mean?**

a. to **be up and** about
b. to **be** over the **worst**
c. to **be in** *good* **hands**
d. to take *a* turn **for the worse/the better**
e. Old habits **die** hard,
f. to **be on** the **safe side**

Think of your **own** examples for each of them.

How multi-word verbs work

5 **through**

Work with a partner. Look at the multi-word verbs in the sentences below. What do **you** think they mean?

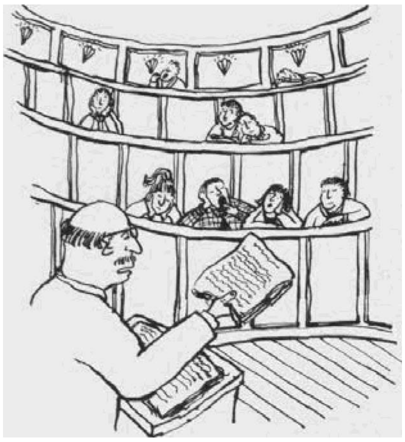

a. **She** has had **a** long **and difficult life. She has** *lived* **through two world wars** and **a** revolution.
b. It **was** a horrible and **painful experience.** I **never** want **to** *go* **through** anything like that **again.**
c. **Dr** Jones's **lectures** are long and boring. I refuse **to sit** *through* **any** more of them.
d. **He's a** very heavy **sleeper.** If **a** fire **alarm** started **ringing,** I'm **sure he** would *sleep through* it.
e. We both felt much **better** after we **had sat down** and *talked through* **all** our **problems.**

What *is* the **general** meaning **of** the particle *through* **in the examples** above?

6 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions below.

a. What can help people live through a difficult time?
b. You are in a cinema/theatre, watching a very boring film/play. Do you sit through it or leave? Why?
c. Why is it a good idea to talk through a problem with somebody else?

What's the answer?

What is the difference between *to come through something* and *to fight something off*?

Jokes

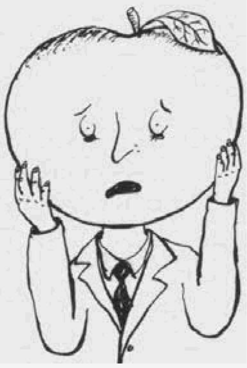

- *Doctor, I've swallowed a roll of film.*
- *Let's hope nothing develops.*

- *Doctor, I think I'm an apple.*
- *Come and sit down. Don't worry, I won't bite you.*

Speaking

Work in pairs. One of you is a patient in hospital, the other is a visitor, Ask your partner how he/she feels, what kind of treatment is being given, and what the doctor has said. Ask questions about the other patients in the hospital ward as well. Use the multi-word verbs and idiomatic expressions from this unit.

Example
Visitor Hello, *how are you today?*
Patient I *feel much better. The doctor says I'll be up and about by the end of the week.*

Writing

Write a short story based on the outline below. Tell the story in the past tense and add a suitable ending. Try to use some of the verbs and expressions from this unit.

A young soldier is wounded and captured by the enemy during a war. He is taken to hospital and has an operation. He nearly dies, but eventually he recovers. While he is in hospital, he makes friends with one of the nurses. They fall in love, and she decides to help him escape ...

2 Floating voters

Preparation

Work in **pairs.** Discuss the following **questions.**

- What do you **think a** 'floating voter' is?
- What are some of the things **that** influence how **people** vote **at an** election?

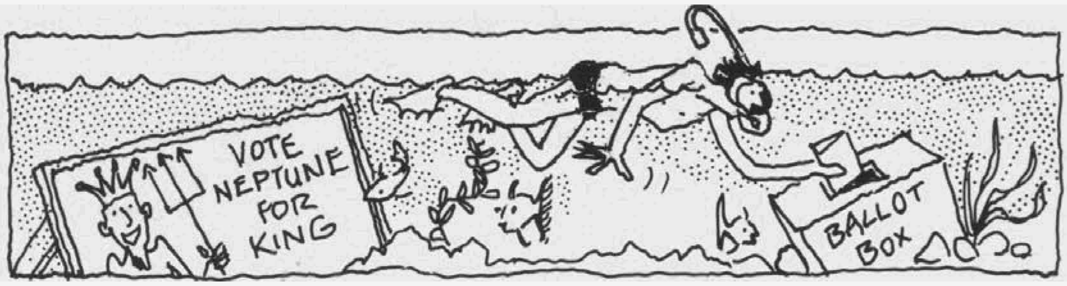

Presentation

Look **at** the headlines below. With **a partner,** try to **work out** the **meaning** of the multi-word verbs.

'PM is not up to the job' says Opposition

MINISTER TRIED TO COVER UP ILLEGAL DEALS

GOVERNMENT TO BRING IN NEW ENVIRONMENTAL LAWS

CHANCELLOR FACES UP TO PROBLEMS OF THE ECONOMY

GOVERNMENT T[redacted] CRACK DOWN ON TAX VASION

NEW CAMPAIGN TO WIN OVER FLOATING VOTERS

Committee puts forward new energy proposals

MINISTER TO STAND DOWN AFTER CORRUPTION ROW

GOVERNMENT GOES BACK ON ELECTION PROMISES

Checking understanding

Match the multi-word verbs in **A with** the definitions in B.

A	B
1 **to be up to (doing) something**	a. **to introduce a** law, **rule** or system
2 **to** cover something **up**	b. to **break** a promise **or** agreement
3 to **blow over**	c. **to be capable of doing something, be of a good enough standard**
4 **to bring something in**	d. **to resign** from an **important position, often in favour of** somebody **else**
5 to **face up** to something	e. **to have the courage to** accept **and deal** with **something** difficult
6 to **crack down** on someone/ something	f. **to hide** something **bad,** such **as a wrong** action
7 to *win* **someone** over	g. **to take strong action against something illegal, or against people who do** not **obey certain** rules or **laws**
8 to **put something forward**	h. **to cease to arouse interest, to be** forgotten
9 **to stand down**	i. **to persuade someone to support or agree with you**
10 **to** go **back** on **something**	j. **to offer** an **idea or** proposal for **consideration**

Drills

T.2

Listen **to the sentences on** the **tape. Use** the **prompts you hear** to **make** sentences with the same meaning.

Example
He isn't good enough to do the job. *(be up to)*
He isn't *up to (doing) the job.*

Practice

1 **Rewrite** the **following sentences** so that they have similar **meaning,** using the multi-words **verbs from** this **unit.**

- *a.* **A** new **law** on **smoking in public** places has been introduced.
- b. The government **tried** to hide *its* involvement in the **gun-running** scandal.
- c. It is rumoured that the Prime **Minister will** resign before the next election.
- d. Everybody *is* **talking** about the seriousness of the problem, but I think **it will** soon **be** forgotten.
- *e.* The **police** are **beginning to get tough** with young criminals.

f. That's an excellent plan. Are you submitting it to the Committee?
g. The government seems unable to accept or deal with the problems created by its own policies.
h. The new man is well-qualified, but he isn't able to do the job properly.
i. The new government promised not to raise taxes, but it did.
j. Election campaigns are designed to persuade more people to vote for a particular party.

VOTE LORD SUTCH
POLLING STATION
GUIDANCE FOR VOTERS

Collocation

2 Which of the words can be used with the multi-word verbs? Up to three items may be correct.

1 The manager tried to cover up
  a. the fortune.
  b. the scandal.
  c. the mistake.
  d. the crime.

2 The police are cracking down on
  a. criticism.
  b. promotion.
  c. traffic offences.
  d. drug smuggling,

3 One should never go back on
  a, one's word
  b. a plan.
  c. an agreement.
  d. a promise.

4 Some people can't face up to
  a, their children.
  b. their responsibilities.
  c. their problems.
  d. the truth.

5 The government is bringing in a new
  a. law.
  b. measure.
  c. policy.
  d. Prime Minister.

6 Who stood down yesterday?
  a. The maths teacher.
  b. The typist.
  c. The Chairman.
  d. The Chancellor.

7 She put forward several
a. mistakes.
b. suggestions.
c. complaints.
d. proposals.

8 He simply isn't up to
a. exam standard.
b. the job.
c. resignation.
d. the task.

3 Work with your partner. Discuss the questions below, Use the multi-word verbs you have learnt in this unit.

a. Give two reasons why someone might want to resign from an important position.
b. Think of a scandal that someone has tried to hide from the public.
c. What are some of the ways in which politicians try to win support?
d. What do you think the government or police should be stricter about in your country?
e. What new laws would you like the government to introduce?

Idiomatic expressions

4 Look at the following statements made during an election campaign. What do you think the expressions in italics mean?

a. The government is *out of step* with public opinion.
b. The Minister said he wanted to keep an *open mind* on the issue of subsidizing the public transport system.
c. The government has been turning *a blind* eye to corruption within its own party.
d. People have accused the government of being *out of touch* with what is really going on in the country.
e. The outcome of the election *hangs in the* balance. 'It's very close,' said one commentator, 'No one can say which side will win.'

Which of these expressions has a negative connotation? Which has a positive connotation?

5 Complete the following sentences, using the idiomatic expressions from the exercise above.

a. I don't want to decide until I know all the facts. I want to ____
b. He's seriously ill, We don? know if he will live or die. His life ____
c. I haven't read any articles on this subject for five yews, so I ____ with recent developments.
d. The boss knew his employees were being dishonest, but he did nothing about it. He ____
e. Her opinions on this matter are ____ with those of the majority of people,

How multi-word verbs work

Type 1 multi-word verbs are intransitive (i.e. they do not **take** an **object) and inseparable.**

Type 2 multi-word verbs are transitive (i.e. they **take** an **object) and separable.**

6 Decide **if the multi-word verbs in the following** sentences **are Type 1 or Type 2.**

- a. **The government will bring in** new legislation **to tackle** the **problem.**
- b. He will return to **public** life when the **scandal has** blown **over.**
- c. They are **putting forward new and radical proposals in their election** manifesto.
- d. **She** failed to **win over the rebels in her own party.**
- e. **She** tried **to cover up** her involvement **in** the plan **to** sell arms **illegally.**
- f. She **has decided** to stand down **as leader of** the **party.**

What's the answer?

1 What **is** the **opposite** of *to go back on* **your** *word?*
2 What **is** the **opposite** of *to be out of touch with something?*
3 **What is the** difference between the **following:**
   a. *to bring something in* **and** *to* **put** something *forward?*
   b. *to stand down* and *to resign?*

Joke

Sir Winston Churchill was making a public speech when a woman suddenly shouted out: 'If you were my husband, I'd give you poison.' Churchill replied: 'Madam, if I were your husband, I would take it.'

Speaking

Work in **groups of three. You are publicity writers who have been hired to write a pamphlet for the New Environment Party. Discuss the key issues** and **slogans** you **want to** use in **the** pamphlet. Think **of** *ways* of **criticizing the other parties and encouraging people** to **vote for** you.

Writing

Write the text for the pamphlet, using the multi-word verbs and expressions from this unit.

3 Arts review

Preparation

Work in pairs. Look **at** the list of **types** of **books and films below,** Choose **two** or three **categories,** and **discuss** what **you like or dislike about them.**

- SCIENCE FICTION
- WESTERN
- DOCUMENTARY
- THRILLER
- ROMANCE
- HORROR
- CRIME
- COMEDY

For Three Men The Civil War Wasn't Hell. It Was Practice!
CLINT EASTWOOD
"THE GOOD, THE BAD & THE UGLY"
LEE VAN CLEEF
ELI WALLACH
FRANKENSTEIN
The ORIGINAL HORROR SHOW!
COLIN CLIVE · MAE CLARKE
JOHN BOLES · BORIS KARLOFF
WAYNE'S WORLD
SOMMERSBY

Presentation

T.3a

Listen **to this radio interview.** Two **people are discussing a book,** *a* **play, and a film. Make notes** on **what they thought was good and** bad **about** each of them. Then compare **your notes with your partner.**

	Positive	**Negative**
Book One *Hot Summer*		
Play *The Tempest*		
Film *Suburban* **Blues**		

Checking understanding

Match the multi-word verbs in A with the definitions in B. If necessary, listen to the interview again or look at Tapescript 3a on page 78.

A	B
1 to bring something out	a. to succeed, to be successful (e.g. an attempt, plan or idea)
2 to make of someone/something	b. to have an impression of someone/something
3 to go on	c. to reach an expected standard
4 to come off	d. to discourage someone from liking someone/something
5 to turn out to be someone/something	e. to communicate or convey something clearly
6 to put someone off someone/something	f. to be understood clearly (e.g. a message or idea)
7 to live up to something	g. to publish or introduce something onto the market
8 to come across	h. to be discovered to be someone/something (eventually)
9 to put something across	i. to happen

Drills

T.3b

Listen to the sentences on the tape. Use the prompts you hear to make sentences with the same meaning.

Example

What did you think of that film on TV last night? *(make of)*

What did you make *of that film on TV last* night?

Practice

1 Rewrite the sentences below, using multi-word verbs from this unit. Make *any* necessary changes to the structure of the sentences.

a. Susan Shaw published a slim volume of poetry last year,
b. Our attempt to climb the mountain in winter didn't succeed.
c. Her behaviour was so strange that I didn't know what to think of her,
d. The author conveyed her ideas in very simple language,
e, I couldn't understand what was happening at the beginning of the film.
f. I thought the message of the play wasn't very clear.
g. The newspaper reviews discouraged people from seeing the play.
h. I expected the music to be wonderful, but it wasn't very good,
i. At the end of the film we discover that the hero is an American spy.

2 **Work** with **a** partner. Discuss whether the following sentences **are** correct or not, and **why,**

a. The film came off.
b. Her attempt **to break** the world record didn't come off.
c. His message didn't come **across** very **clearly.**
d. The **book *came* across** very clearly.
e. I made of it **a** strange film.
f. What do you make of capital **punishment?**
g. What do you **make** of this **article** on **capital punishment?**

Idiomatic expressions

3 What do you **think** the following expressions in italics mean?

a, The **stage** production ***was* absolutely fantastic.** *It* was ***out** of **this world.***
b. He was portrayed as a really gentle person in **the** film, **so I** thought it **was completely** *out of character* for him to shoot his best friend.
c. I **had mixed** *feelings* **about it. I loved** the **photography,** but the **acting was dreadful.**
d. Don't **ask** me **what** the **film was** about because I couldn't *make* head or *tail* of *it.*

How would you express the same ideas in your **own language?**

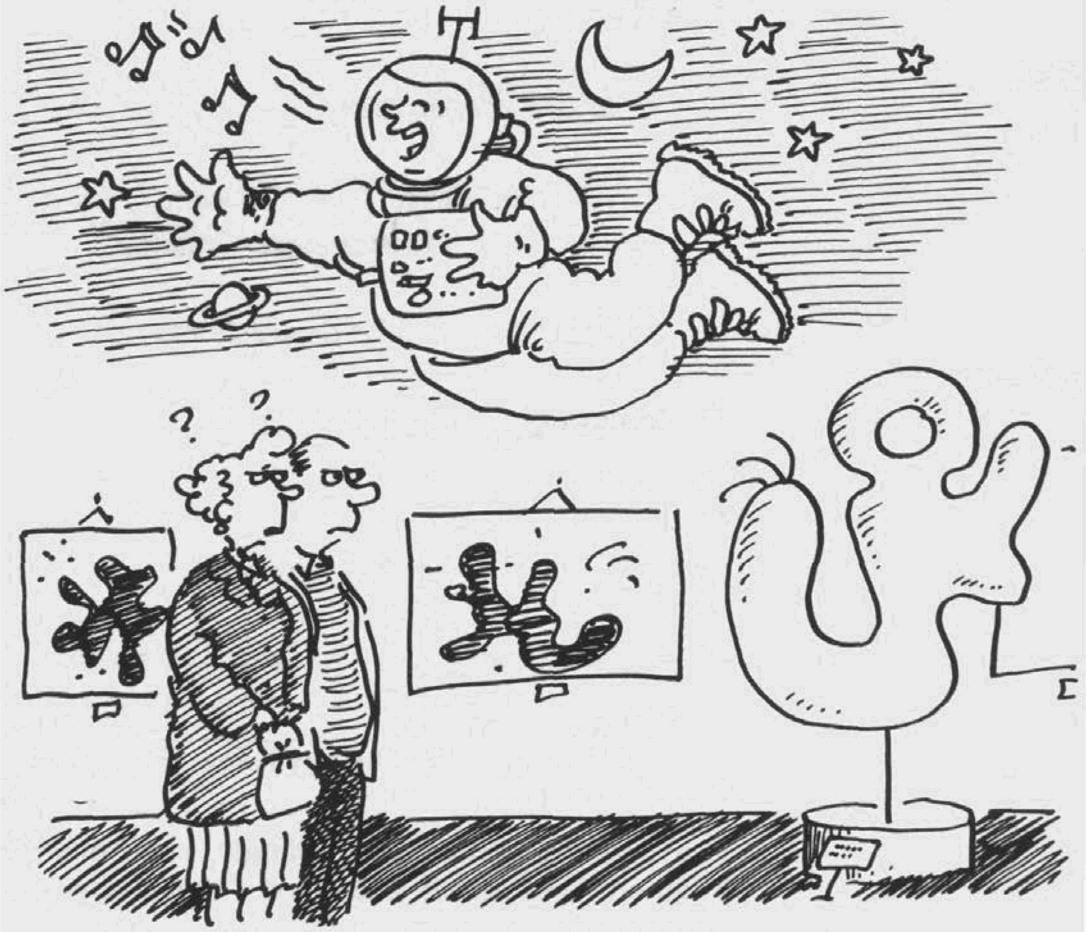

His singing is out of this world.

'What do **you make of it?'**
'I can't make head or tail of it.'

Role-play

4 Work in pairs. One of you is a theatre critic, the other is the editor of an arts magazine. Read the notes for your role, and spend some time thinking about what you will say. Then act out the conversation with your partner.

Theatre Critic

You are the theatre critic of ***Swinging***, a lively arts magazine. You saw the musical ***Heaven and After*** and made some notes while watching. Your editor is telephoning you to find out what you thought of the production.

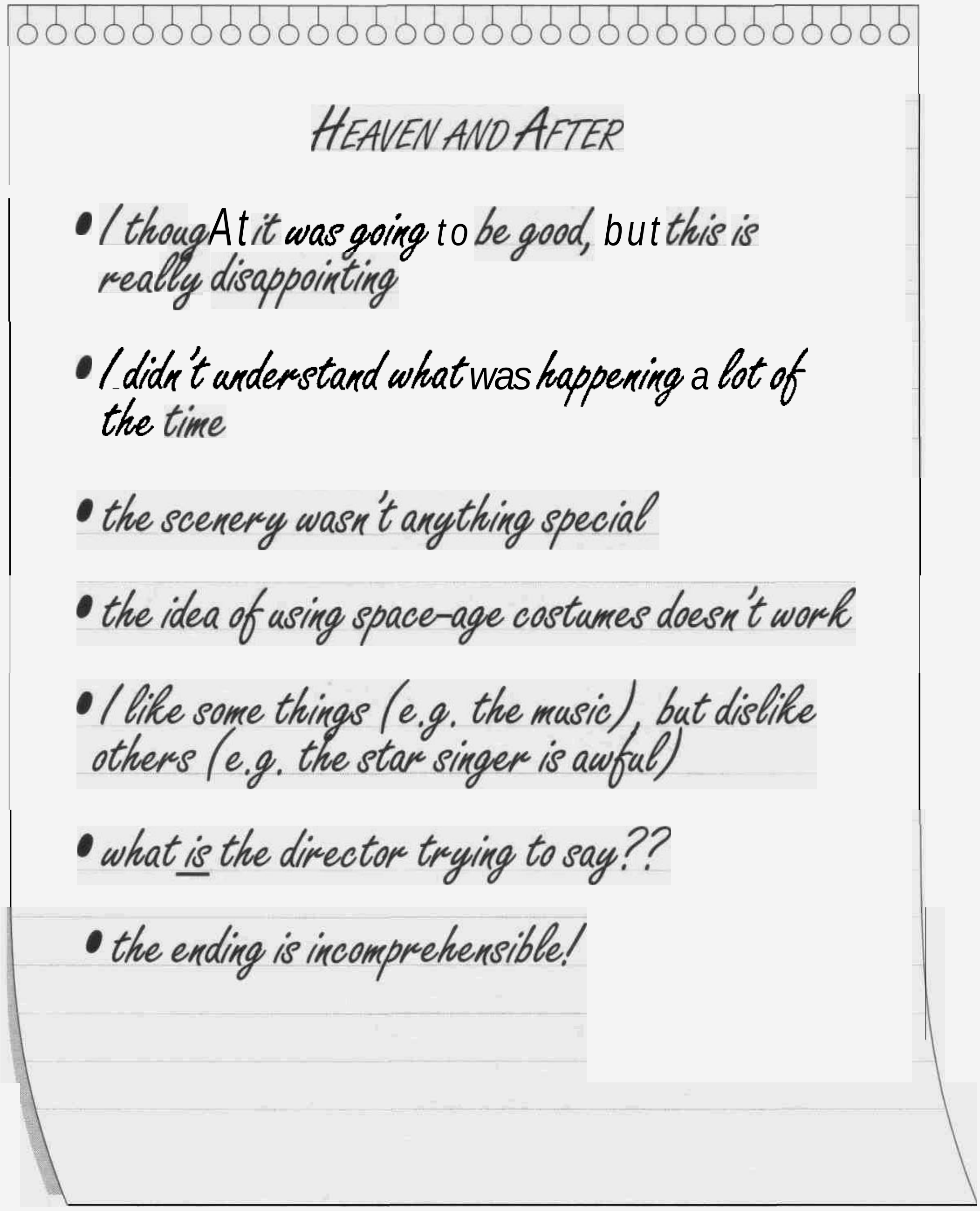

HEAVEN AND AFTER

- I thought it was going to be good, but this is really disappointing
- I didn't understand what was happening a lot of the time
- the scenery wasn't anything special
- the idea of using space-age costumes doesn't work
- I like some things (e.g. the music), but dislike others (e.g. the star singer is awful)
- what is the director trying to say??
- the ending is incomprehensible!

Use the expressions in the box below to help you.

live up to   have mixed feelings   can't make head or tail of it
go on   put across   come off   out of character

Editor

You are the editor of **Swinging,** a lively arts magazine. You are also the parent of the female star of a musical called **Heaven and After.** You want a good review for the production. You are telephoning the theatre critic to persuade **him/her** to write a good review.

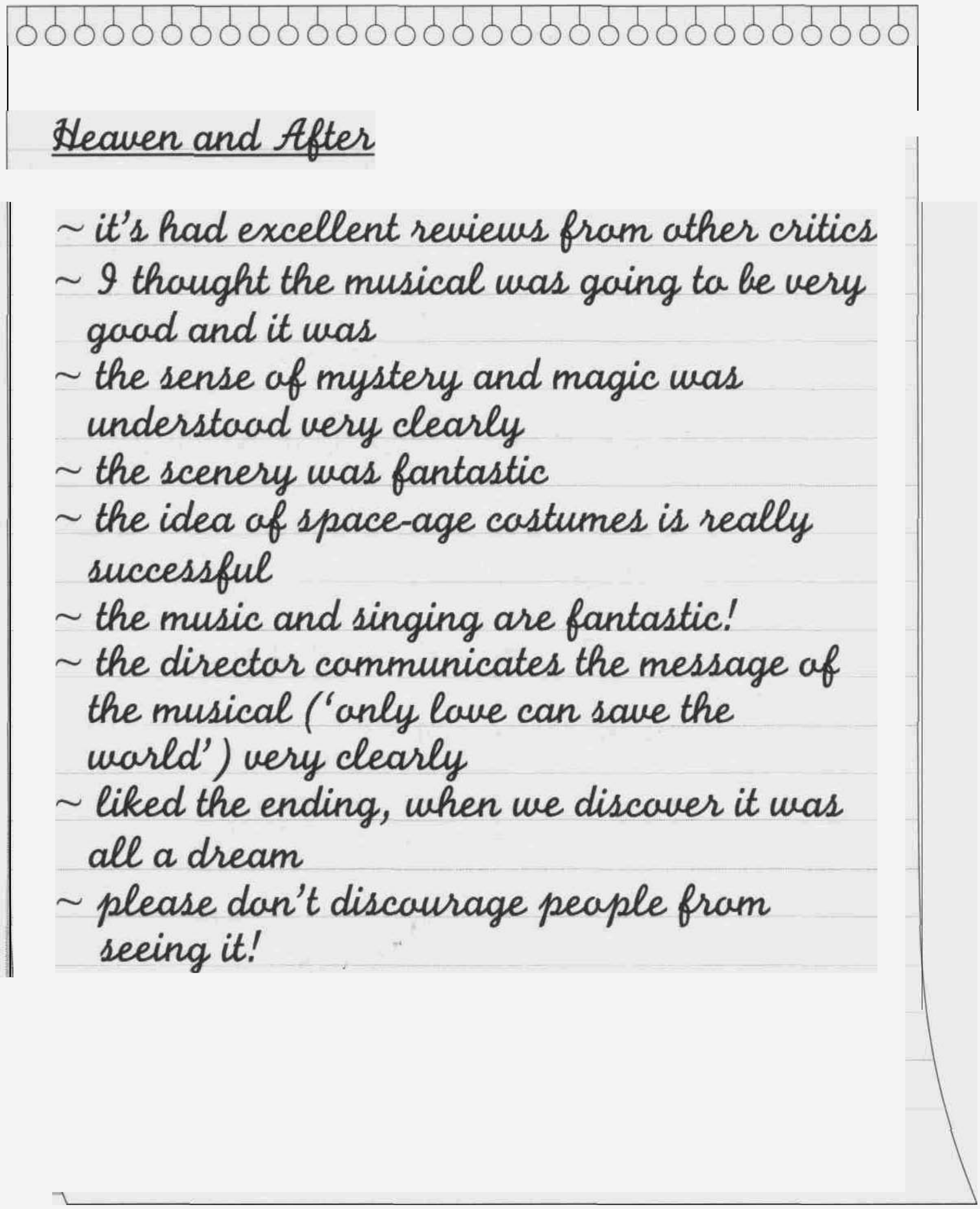

Heaven and After

~ it's had excellent reviews from other critics
~ I thought the musical was going to be very good and it was
~ the sense of mystery and magic was understood very clearly
~ the scenery was fantastic
~ the idea of space-age costumes is really successful
~ the music and singing are fantastic!
~ the director communicates the message of the musical ('only love can save the world') very clearly
~ liked the ending, when we discover it was all a dream
~ please don't discourage people from seeing it!

Use the expressions in the box below to help you.

live up to   come off   put someone off   come across   put across
out of this world   turn out to be

How multi-words verbs work

Some multi-word verbs can be made into nouns by combining the infinitive of the verb stem with the particle.

For example, the verb *to write something up* means *to* produce *a* written report on something, usually from notes. Therefore if someone writes a review about a play or a film in a newspaper, it is called a write-up. Note that the stress is usually on the first part of the word and it is often hyphenated *('write-up)*.

5 Complete the sentences below with nouns formed from the multi-word verbs in italics.

a. He wrote up an excellent review of the film in The Times.
The film had an excellent ___ in The Times.

b. All the tickets for the show are sold out.
The show is a ___.

c. The play is about the way in which their marriage gradually *breaks up.*
The play is about the gradual ___ of their marriage.

d. The film is about three men who *break out* of prison.
The film is about a prison ___

e. She used to be a famous singer, and now she wants to *come back* and be famous again.
She is trying to make a ___ .

What's the answer?

What is the difference between:

a. *to put something across* and *to* come *across?*
b. *to* put something *off* and *to put someone* off *doing something?*

Joke

A young composer had written two pieces of music and he asked the great Rossini to listen to both of them and say which one he preferred. The young man began to play the first piece, but after a short time Rossini interrupted. 'You need not play any more,' he said, 'I prefer the other one.'

Speaking

Think of a film, play or book you have seen or read recently, Tell your partner what it was about, and what you thought of it,

Writing

Write a review for *Swinging* magazine of a book, a play or a film. Say what it was about, what ideas the writer or director was trying to put across, and what you thought of it, using multi-word verbs and expressions from this unit.

4

Going by appearances

Preparation

Work in pairs. Discuss the following questions.

- When you meet someone for the first time, what do you notice most: their clothes? voice? facial expression?
- What do these things tell you about the person?

Presentation

Work in pairs. One of you read text A, and the other read text B. Find out what happened, and why, Then exchange information.

A

Last week, Mss Alice Woolf, aged 65, was tricked into *handing over* all her savings to a smooth-talking doorstep salesman who said he was selling burglar alarm systems. 'I was completely *taken in,*' she said. 'I know it was foolish to let him *talk me into* giving him all my savings, but he seemed such a nice man. He *came across* as completely honest. But I won't make the same mistake again. Once bitten, twice shy.'

When asked if she thought the man would be caught, she replied, 'I don't think he'll *get away with* it. I'm sure the police will catch him sooner or later.'

B

The police are looking for a well-dressed young man who has been *passing himself off* as a doorstep salesman. Last week. he tricked an elderly lady into giving him all her money as a deposit far a burglar alarm system.

A police spokesman said, 'Unfortunately, it's quite easy for dishonest people to make a living doing this kind of thing. I suppose we all tend to *go by* appearances, and very often it's not easy to *see through* a clean-shaven. well-spoken young man in a good suit, and with a pleasant manner. Appearances can be deceptive, and not everyone is a good judge of character. My advice to people is not to *hand over* any money until they have checked people's references and made sure they belong to a reputable organization. Meanwhile we'll do our best to catch the man who took Mrs. Woolf's savings.'

Checking understanding

Work with a partner. Try to work out the meaning of the multi-word verbs in italics in the texts. Then match the verbs in A with the definitions in B.

A	B
1 to hand something over	a. to persuade someone to do something
2 to take someone in	b. to deceive or trick someone
3 to talk someone into doing something	c. to pretend that someone/something is someone/something else
4 to come across as something	d. to give something to someone so that they control or own it
5 to get away with something	e. to give the impression of having a particular characteristic
6 to pass someone/something off as someone/something	f. to judge according to something
7 to go by something	g. to see the true nature of someone/something despite a deceptively pleasant appearance
8 to see through someone/something	h. to escape being punished or criticized for something

Drills

T.4

Listen to the sentences on the tape. Use the prompts you hear to make sentences with the same meaning.

Example

You shouldn't base your judgements on the way people dress. (go by)

You shouldn't go by the way people dress.

Practice

1 **Complete the sentences, using multi-word verbs from this unit,**

a. My sister is a very good judge of character. She can ____ people immediately if they try to deceive or trick her.

b. He escaped from the country by ___ *as* a tourist.

c. I lent him some money because he seemed an honest person, but after that I never saw him again. I soon realized I ___

d. Don't ___ his appearance. He may look nice but he's completely untrustworthy.

e. When I first met him he ___ as a very indecisive person who didn't know his own mind.
f. The salesman ___ buying a new washing-machine, although my old one was fine.
g. The robber told him to ___ the keys to the safe.
h. The robbers laughed when the bank manager said: 'You won't ___ this. The police will catch you one day.'

2 One of the sentences below is correct. All the others have one mistake in them. Change the sentences so that they are all correct.

a. No, you can't have the money. I refuse to hand over.
b. She came across to be a very decisive person.
c. They got away several serious crimes.
d. He passed off himself as a policeman.
e. You should have seen him through immediately.
f. I was never taken in by his lies.
g. He talked me into sign the cheque.
h. I never go with first impressions.

3 Work in pairs. Take turns asking and answering the questions below. Use the multi-word verbs in brackets.

1 Do you ever base your judgement of people on first impressions? Why?/Why not? *(go by)*
2 What impression do you think you give of yourself when you meet someone for the first time? *(come across as)*
3 What do you think is the best way to avoid being tricked or deceived by people? *(take someone in)*
4 Has someone ever persuaded you to do something that you regretted later? If so, what was it? *(talk someone into)*
5 Imagine you could pretend to be someone else for a whole day. Who would you choose to be? Why? *(pass yourself off as)*

Idiomatic expressions

4 Work with a partner. Discuss the meaning of the following expressions.

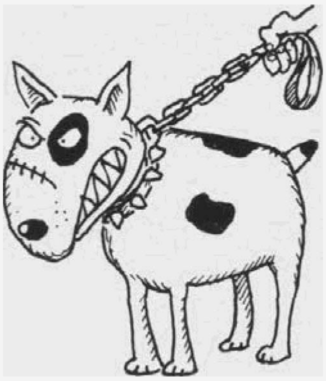

a. Once bitten, twice shy.
b. Appearances can be deceptive.
c. Honesty is the best policy.

How would you express the same ideas in your own language?
Do you agree that *Honesty is the best policy*? Why?

How multi-word verbs work

5 *into*

The particle into can be used with some verbs to give the idea of persuading or forcing someone to do something.

The multi-word verbs below have the following form: verb + someone + into. Using the verbs in brackets, rewrite the following sentences so that they have similar meaning. Make any necessary changes to the structure of the sentences.

Example
His boss made him resign.
(force into)
His boss forced him into resigning.

1 She persuaded me to buy a new coat. *(talk into)*
2 The robbers made the bank manager think they were genuine customers. (trick into)
3 The Mafia frightened him so much that he remained silent. (*frighten* into)
4 She had to sell her house in order to pay off her debts. (*force* into)
5 The government was made to feel so ashamed that it took action. (*shame into)*

Now think of your own example sentences for these multi-word verbs.

What's the answer?

What is the opposite of to *talk someone into doing something?*

Joke

– ***How did you know he was a ghost?***
– ***I saw through him immediately.***

Speaking and Writing

Work in pairs. Plan and write a leaflet giving people advice on how to deal with doorstep salesmen. Warn them of the dangers and give at least five 'Golden Rules' to follow. Remember to use the multi-word verbs and expressions you have learnt in this unit.

Writing

Use the multi-word verbs and expressions you have learnt in this unit to write a story which ends with the following words:

It *was only then he realized that he had been completely taken* in.

5 Money! Money! Money!

Preparation

Work in pairs. Briefly discuss one or more of the statements below, saying why you agree or disagree with it.

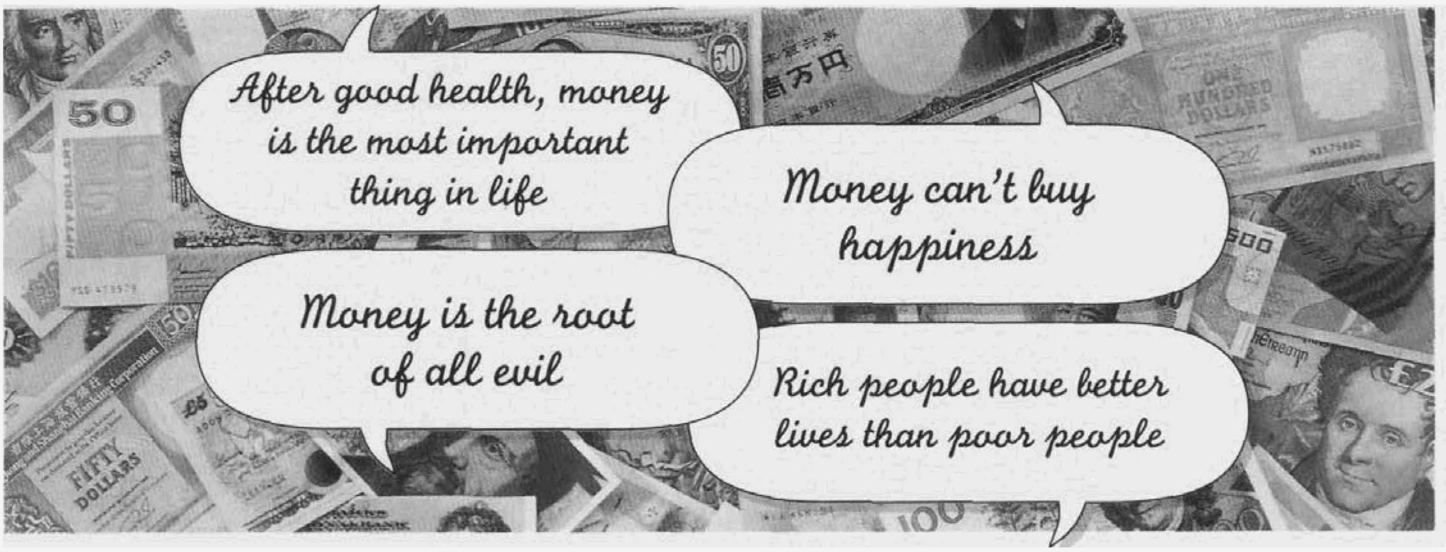
After good health, money is the most important thing in life
Money can't buy happiness
Money is the root of all evil
Rich people have better lives than poor people

Presentation

T.5a

You are going to hear five people talking about money. First, discuss with your partner what you think they will say. Next, listen and make notes. Then compare your notes with your partner.

1 Self-made woman

2 Rich woman

3 Bankrupt businessman

4 Unemployed person

5 Middle-aged regular saver

Checking understanding

Match the multi-word verbs in A with the definitions in B. If necessary, listen to the interview again, or look at Tapescript 5a on page 79.

A	B
1 to set out to do something	a to save something so you can use it later
2 to put something down to something	b. to depend on someone/something as a source of income
3 to come into something	c. to manage to survive (on something) despite difficulties
4 to live off someone/something	d. to inherit something (especially money)
5 to pay something off	e. to consider something to be the result of something else
6 to keep up with someone/something	f. to begin with the intention of achieving something
7 to fall back on someone/something	g. to return to someone/something for support, when other things have failed
8 to get by (on something)	h. to progress or rise at the same rate as someone/something else
9 to put something by	i. to repay a debt

Drills

T.5b

Listen to the sentences on the tape, Use the prompts you hear to make sentences with the same meaning,

Example

He intended to win a gold medal. *(set out to)*

He set out to win a gold medal.

Practice

1 Rewrite the following sentences so that they have similar meaning. using the multi-word verbs from this unit. Make any changes necessary to the structure of the sentences.

a. Many pensioners have to survive on very little money.
b. He calculated it would take him three years to clear all his debts.
c. She accumulated a great deal of money by saving a little every week.
d. His uncle died and left him a fortune.
e. She decided she wanted to start her own business.

f. If I ever get into financial difficulties, I know I can always rely on my brother for help.
g. She supports herself with the money she gets from selling her books.
h. She thought she was a success because she had been lucky.
i. The cost of living is going up all the time, but my salary isn't.

Work in pairs. Complete the sentences below without letting your partner see what you have written. Then take turns trying to guess what the other person has written.

a. If I came into a lot of money, I'd...
b. One thing I have set out to do, and have achieved, is...
c. If I earned a salary which didn't keep up with inflation, I'd...
d. I could get by on very little money provided that...
e. I put the increase in crime down to...

Idiomatic expressions

3 Look at Tapescript 5a on page 79 and find the idiomatic expressions which mean the following:

a. to have hardly enough money or food to live on
b. money is not easily obtained (a saying)
c. to become less rich and have a lower social status
d. to live reasonably well without getting into debt
e. to spend money freely as if it were in endless supply
f. a time when you might need money

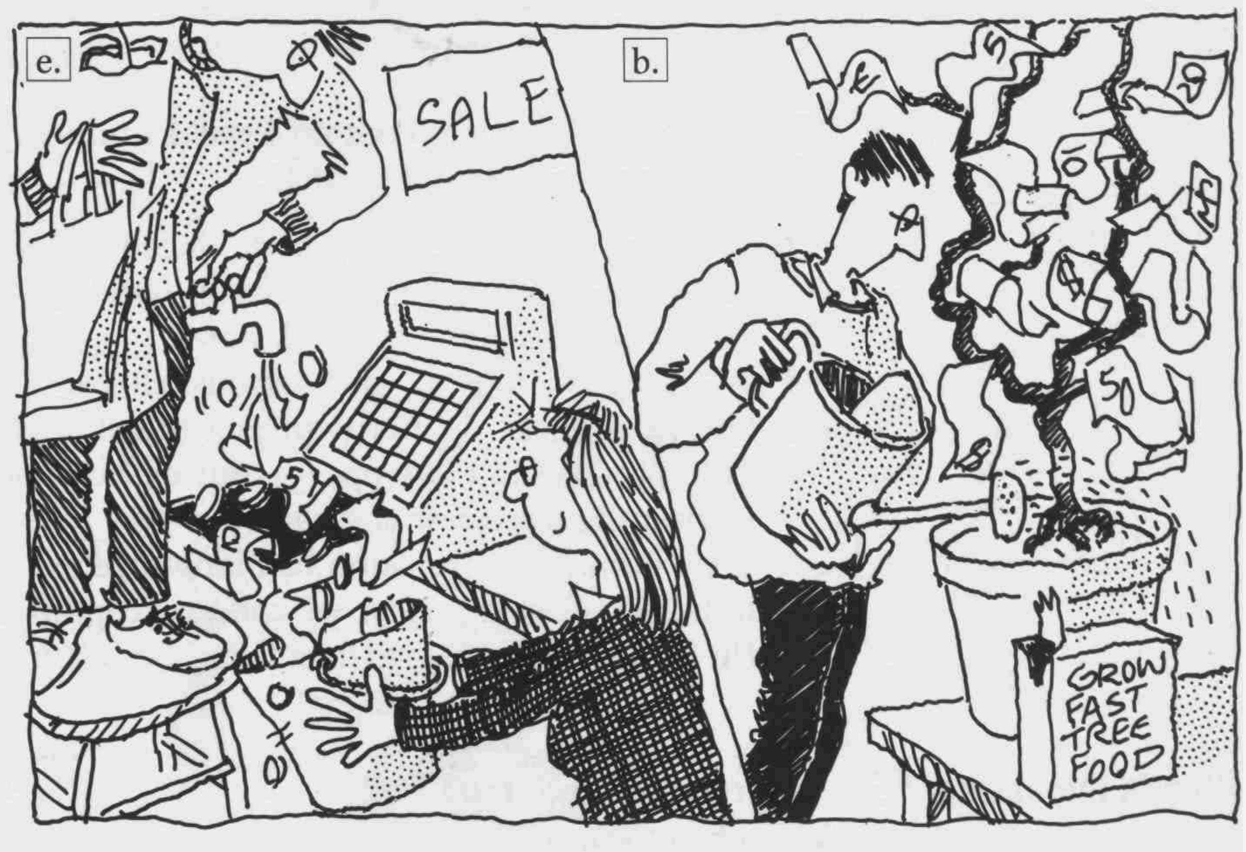

How would you express b. and e. in your own language?

Role-play

4 Work in pairs. Choose one of the situations below. One of you play the role of interviewer. Then change situations and roles. Use the multi-word verbs and expressions from the box.

live from hand to mouth
be in the red
come into something
pay something off
live off something
get by on something
put something down to something
fall back on something
set out to do something
money doesn't grow on trees

Situation 1

You used to have a very poorly paid job, but then you inherited a great deal of money. Describe how your life has changed and what you have decided to do with the money.

Situation 2

You are a self-made man/woman. Describe your poor background, your decision to become rich, your attitude towards money, and how you explain your success.

How multi-word verbs work

Type **4** multi-word verbs are always transitive (i.e. they take an object) and have two particles which are inseparable.

5 The following sentences contain Type 4 multi-word verbs from units 1–5. Fill in the missing second particle.

1 The company has decided to go ahead   the new building project.
2 I don't feel up   seeing anyone tonight.
3 The police are going to crack down ___ illegal gambling.
4 We must face up ___ our responsibilities.
5 She went back   her word not to tell anybody.
6 The speech didn't live up   our expectations.
7 During the interview she came across ___ efficient and decisive.
8 They got away   using bad language.
9 Inflation is rising so fast we cannot keep up   the cost of living.
10 He fell back   his savings when he lost his job.

What is the opposite of :
a. to be in the red?
b. to come/go down in the world?

Joke

– *My uncle is so mean with money that he refuses to let his children go to school.*

– ***Why?***

– ***Because they have to pay attention!***

Speaking and Writing

Look at the **picture** story below with your **partner.** Practise **telling** it **with** the **multi-word verbs and expressions from** the **box.** Then write the story.

live from hand to mouth
make ends meet
set out to **do** something
put **his success** down to
be well off
***go* up** in **the world**
spend money **like water**
put something by for a **rainy** day
live off something
be in the red
come down in the world
fall back on someone/something
pay something off
to get **by** on **something**

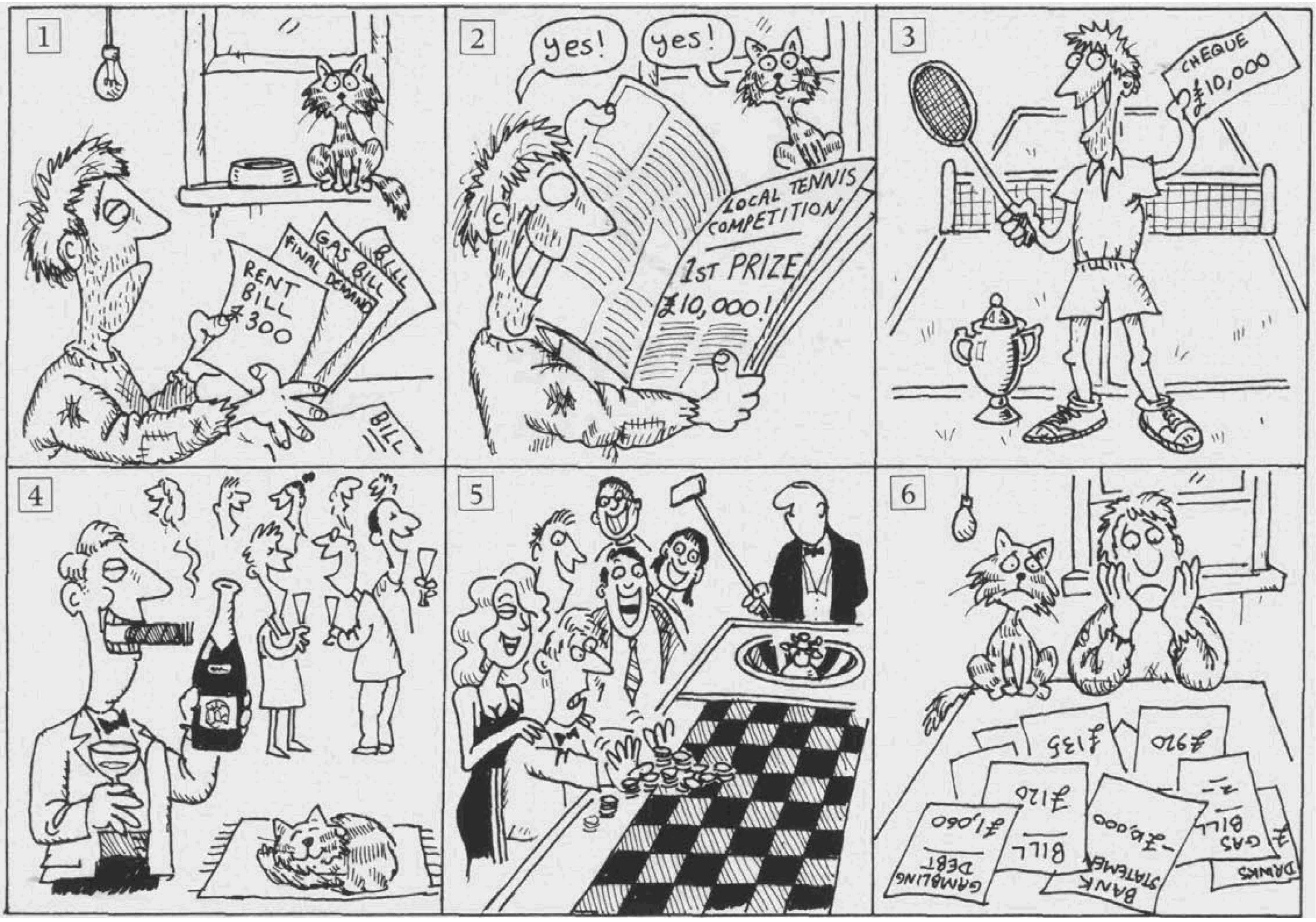
1
RENT BILL £300
GAS BILL FINAL DEMAND
BILL
BILL
2
yes!
yes!
LOCAL TENNIS COMPETITION
1ST PRIZE £10,000!
3
CHEQUE £10,000
4
5
6
£135
£920
£120
BILL
-£6,000
GAS BILL
£1,060
GAMBLING DEBT
BANK STATEMENT
BANKS

6 Crime doesn’t pay

Preparation

Work in **pairs.** Read the comment **below** and then discuss **how far** you **agree or disagree** with it. **Explain why.**

‘Crime **doesn't pay** because you always get **caught in** the **end.**'

Presentation

Read the newspaper **articles** below and **discuss** them **with your partner.** Then try to work out the **meaning of** the **multi-word** verbs in **italics.**

THE STRAIGHT AND NARROW

The literary world was *taken aback* yesterday when the famous author, Arnold Swift, was found guilty of stealing copies of his latest novel from a bookshop. The magistrate said that he would let *him* off lightly with a £50 fine, but warned him that any further offences would result in a more serious punishment. The novel is called *Keeping to the straight and narrow.*

BREAKDOWN IN LAW AND ORDER

A police spokesman said yesterday that law and order is *breaking down* in some inner-city areas. He was speaking after a night in which two riots had *broken out* and several serious crimes had been ‘At present, *too* many people think they can commit a crime and get away with it,’ he said.

BOMB BLAST

A bomb *went off* in a central car park in the early hours of yesterday morning. Police *sealed off* several streets and *carried out* a detailed search of the area. It appears the bomb was intended for a busy shopping centre nearby.

HARDENED CRIMINALS

Two men who escaped from prison by hiding inside a cement mixer were recaptured last night when they *gave themselves up* to the police. It seems that the two men, who were described as hardened criminals, had been unable to get very far because of the quick-drying cement that had stuck to their feet The prison authorities have said they will *set up* a committee to look into security at the prison.

CAUGHT RED-HANDED

Yesterday, Gregory Brush, 24, was convicted of the attempted robbery of a paint factory in Leeds. It was reported that he fell into a large drum of red paint while trying to escape with the money. He was rescued by a nightwatchman and *gave himself up* when police arrived to arrest him. He *owned up* to the crime and pleaded guilty at his trial.

Checking understanding

Match the **multi-word verbs** in **A with** the **definitions in** B.

A	B
1 to give oneself up (to **someone)**	a. to prevent people **getting in or out of** an area or **building by closing** all the **entrances**
2 to own **up (to doing** something)	**b.** to surprise or shock someone with something contrary to expectation
3 to take someone **aback**	c. to **explode, detonate,** or **ignite,** to **make** a **sudden loud noise**
4 to **let someone** off (with something)	**d.** to begin suddenly, usually in an unpleasant **and** violent **way**
5 to set something up	**e.** to admit or confess to **a** crime or *to doing something* **wrong**
6 to carry something out	**f.** to fail, ***cease*** or collapse because of a problem or disagreement
7 to go off	**g.** to **establish something, to** make the arrangements and preparation for something to **start**
8 to **seal** something off	h. **to punish someone** lightly or not **at** all (informal)
9 to **break down**	**i.** to allow oneself to **be arrested or captured**
10 to break out	**j.** to perform or **conduct** something

Drills

T.6

Listen to the **sentences** on the **tape. Use** the **prompts** you hear to **make** sentences **with** the **same meaning.**

Example

We **were** shocked and **surprised by** his **rude** reply. ***(take aback***

We *were **taken aback*** by *his **rude reply.***

Practice

1 Read the **newspaper extracts below. Substitute, where appropriate, the** multi-word verbs from **this** unit.

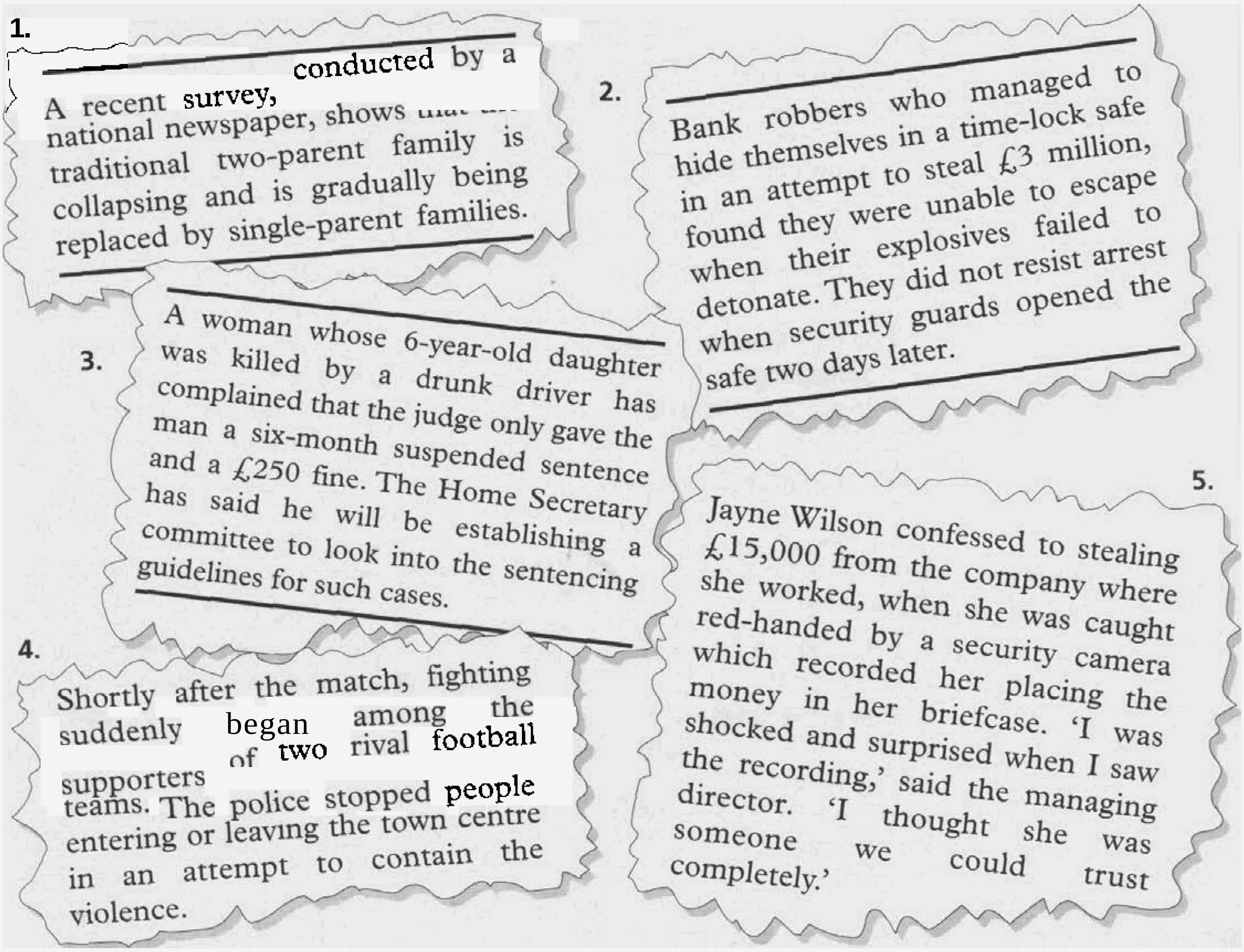

1. A recent survey, conducted by a national newspaper, shows that the traditional two-parent family is collapsing and is gradually being replaced by single-parent families.

2. Bank robbers who managed to hide themselves in a time-lock safe in an attempt to steal £3 million, found they were unable to escape when their explosives failed to detonate. They did not resist arrest when security guards opened the safe two days later.

3. A woman whose 6-year-old daughter was killed by a drunk driver has complained that the judge only gave the man a six-month suspended sentence and a £250 fine. The Home Secretary has said he will be establishing a committee to look into the sentencing guidelines for such cases.

4. Shortly after the match, fighting suddenly began among the of two rival football supporters teams. The police stopped people entering or leaving the town centre in an attempt to contain the violence.

5. Jayne Wilson confessed to stealing £15,000 from the company where she worked, when she was caught red-handed by a security camera which recorded her placing the money in her briefcase. 'I was shocked and surprised when I saw the recording,' said the managing director. 'I thought she was someone we could trust completely.'

Collocation

2 Which of the **words** can be used **with** the multi-word **verbs? Up** to **three** items **may** be correct.

1 The **judge let** him off with
- **a.** *a* warning.
- b. **a suspended** sentence.
- c. the **death** penalty.
- d. **a** two-year prison sentence.

2 They have set up
- **a.** a business.
- b. **a** birthday **party.**
- c. *an* inquiry.
- d. **a** research team.

3 They have carried out
- a. an experiment.
- b. a committee.
- c. an inquiry.
- d. a test.

4
- a. The alarm clock
- b. The fireworks
- c. The gun
- d. The telephone

went off.

5
- a. **A** new film
- b. **A** flu epidemic
- c. **A** fire
- d. **An** argument

has broken out.

6
- a. Peace talks
- b. The holidays
- c. Negotiations
- d. Community relations

have broken down.

3 Work with a partner. Discuss the following questions, using the multi-word verbs from the box below.

let off give oneself up own up to break down break out
go off take aback

1 What time does your alarm clock start ringing in the morning?
2 Your friend has been involved in a petty crime. It is probable the police will catch him. What would you advise him to do?
3 If you discovered something surprising or shocking about someone you have known for a long time, what would your reaction be ? Give an example.
4 What can cause riots to start suddenly?
5 Which of the following people would you punish lightly or not at all?
   a. a poor woman caught stealing food from **a** supermarket
   b. someone caught stealing small items from work
   c. a student travelling on a bus without a ticket
   d. a 13-year-old boy caught breaking into a parked car
6 Can you think of examples of people who have been punished lightly for crimes they committed? If so, what were they?

Idiomatic expressions

4 **Work with a partner. Look at the expressions in italics and discuss what they mean. How would you express the same idea in your own language?**

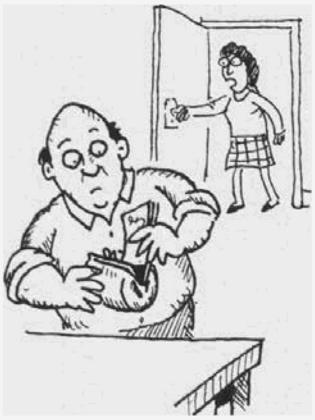

a. I caught *him red-handed.* When I entered the room I saw him taking the money from my purse.
b. He had *kept to the straight and narrow* all his life. so we were taken aback when we heard he had committed a serious crime.
c. It was a case of *poetic justice.* While the burglar was away on holiday someone broke into his house and stole everything.
d. The judge's responsibility is to ensure that a suitable punishment is given. In other words, *the punishment should fit the crime.*
e. When the man was found not guilty of killing the children, the local people *took the law into their own hands.* They set fire to his house and forced him to leave the area.

5 **Work in small groups. Discuss the questions below.**

1 A man tries to steal some money from your bag, You catch him red-handed. What do you do?
2 How important is it that people in public life, such as politicians, keep to the straight and narrow in their private lives?
3 What is your reaction when you hear about a case of poetic justice?
4 Why is it so important that the punishment should fit the crime? What is the result if it doesn't?
5 When, if ever, is it right to take the law into your own hands?

How multi-word verbs work

6 ***off***

What is the general meaning of the particle *off* when used with the verbs below?

a. They *let off* some fireworks to celebrate.
b. Price increases *sparked off* violent protests,
c. The bomb *went off* without warning.
d. The assassination *triggered off* a civil war.
e. The bomb *was set off* by remote control from a safe distance,

What's the answer?

What is the difference between *to set up an investigation,* and *to carry out an investigation?*

Joke

A set of traffic lights has been stolen from a road junction in Hampstead. A police spokesman said. 'Some thieves will stop at nothing.'

A woman is to appear in court charged with murdering a man who had killed her husband and baby daughter in a drink-driving accident. The man had been allowed to go free, with a five-year driving ban and a fine of £250. The woman, shocked by the light punishment, went to the man's house and, after an argument, shot him dead. She then went to the police and admitted killing him.

Work in pairs. Try to think of as many reasons as possible why the woman should be found guilty or not guilty of murder. Decide what you think the result of the trial should be. Then discuss your ideas with the rest of the group.

A riot was caused by a controversial judgement, in which an apparently guilty man was allowed to go free. Write a newspaper article with the following headline:

COURT CASE SPARKS OFF CITY RIOT

Cover the following points in the article, and use the multi-word verbs and expressions from the box below.

- the result of the court case
- why people were angry
- the shocked reaction of the authorities
- the sudden start of the riot
- how police tried to contain the riot
- the collapse of law and order
- cases of violence and looting
- the sounds of guns firing
- the need for an investigation into the riot

let off   break down   carry out   break out   take aback   go off
seal off   set up
the punishment should fit the crime   to take the law into one's own hands   to catch someone red-handed

7 Selling like hot cakes

Preparation

Work in pairs. Using the list below, discuss which things most influence you when you buy something. Then put them in order of importance.

the price	the packaging	the brand name
the quality	the advertising	if it is fashionable

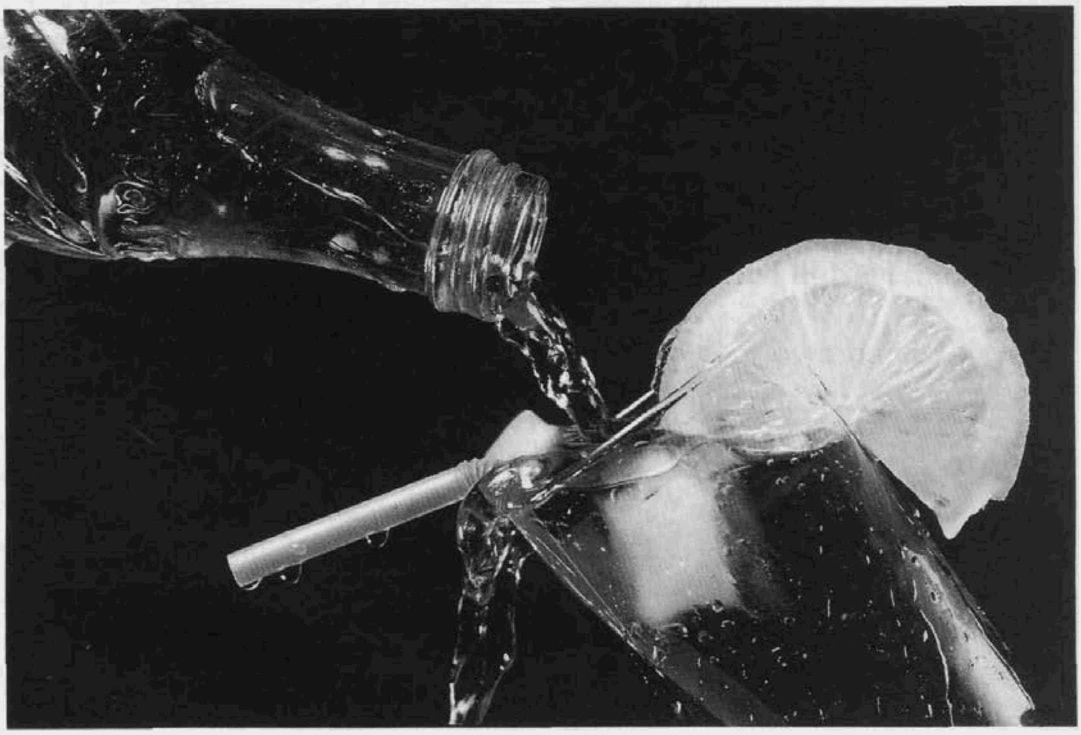

Presentation

T.7a

Listen to a reporter talking to the director of the company that makes *Bubble Up* and Fizzy *Cola.* Then discuss with your partner if the statements below are true or false, and why.

1 *Bubble* Up was an immediate success.
2 The plans for advertising Fizzy *Cola* have changed.
3 The company is doing better this year than last year.
4 The company may *go* bankrupt.
5 The company will definitely do better in the future.

Match the multi-word verbs in **A** with the definitions in B. If necessary, listen to the interview again, or look at Tapescript 7a on page 81.

A	**B**
1 to catch on	a. to withdraw from an agreement or arrangement
2 to pick up	b. to gain control or possession of something
3 to fall through	c. to be abandoned or fail to be completed (e.g. a plan or arrangement)
4 to come up with something	d. to increase, improve or recover (e.g. economy or business)
5 to take someone on	e. to decrease in amount or number
6 to fall off	f. to employ someone
7 to lay someone off	g. to become popular or fashionable
8 to back out (of something)	h. to produce an idea, suggestion or solution
9 to take (something) over	i. to dismiss someone because there is no work (usually temporarily)

Listen to the sentences on the tape. Use the prompts you hear to make sentences with the same meaning.

Example
This new hairstyle has become popular. *(catch on)*
This new hairstyle has caught on.

1 Read the dialogue and replace the words in italics with multi-word verbs.

A Hello, Bill, how's the car business doing at the moment?
B Not very well, I'm afraid. Our sales *are decreasing* at the moment, and our latest model hasn't *proved to be very popular*. We've also had to *withdraw from* a new project to build a family car. What about you?
A Our export figures weren't very good at the start of the year, but now they're starting to *improve* and we need to *employ* extra staff. In fact, we're thinking of *taking control of* another business.
B Lucky you! Our company is thinking of *dismissing* some of its staff until things get better. By the way, what happened about that design problem you were telling me about?
A Fortunately one of our team managed to *produce* a brilliant solution to the problem – otherwise the whole project would have *been abandoned.*

Collocation

Which of the words can be used with the multi-word verbs below? Up to three items may be correct.

1 She came up with
a. an interesting idea.
b. a serious complaint.
c. a useful suggestion.
d. the right answer.'

2 a. The new fashion
b. The Prime Minister
c. The idea
d. The song
is catching on.

3 a. The plan
b. The search
c. The scheme
d. The project
has fallen through.

4 a. The rain
b. His love
c. Investment
d. Production
is falling off.

3 Write suitable endings for the following sentences.

a. They decided to back out of buying the house when they found out...
b. She took over the company because...
c. The plan to build a new tunnel fell through because...
d. The new fashion didn't catch on because...
e. Sales started to pick up after...
f. Two hundred workers were laid off because...
g. The number of people who want to become nurses is falling off because...
h. Scientists have come up with an idea for...
i. The company took me on when I told them...

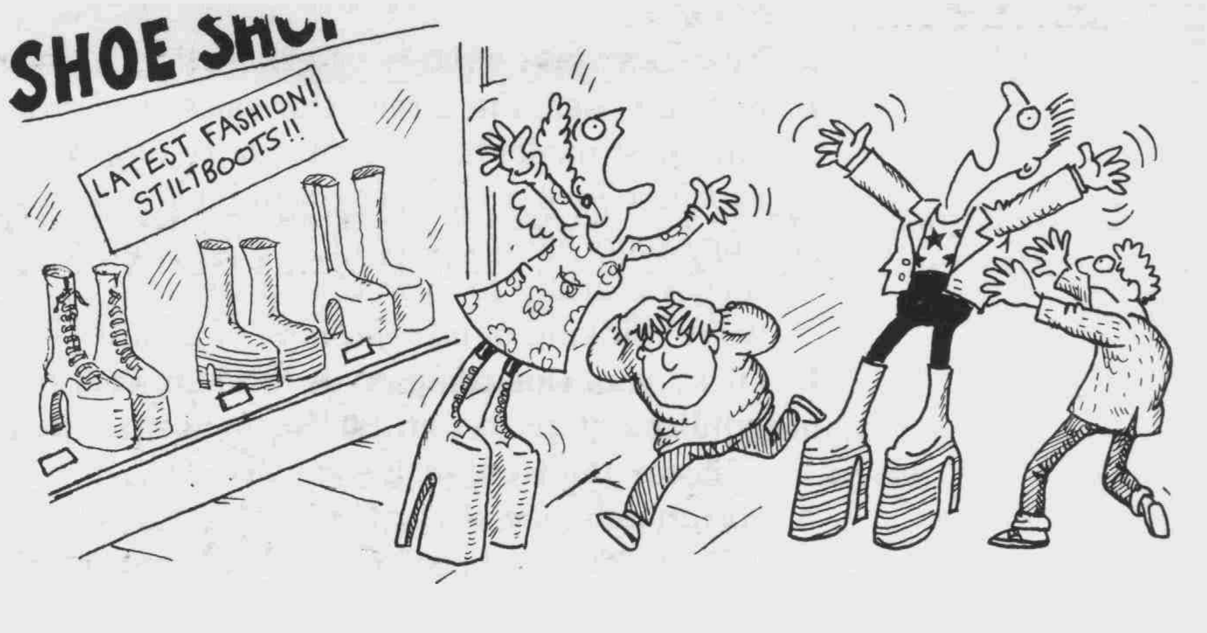

4 Look at Tapescript 7a on page 81 and work out the meaning of the nouns below. Then use them to complete the newspaper headlines.

turnover **downturn** **takeover** upturn

ECONOMIC NEWS IN BRIEF

a. _______ IN ECONOMY WILL INCREASE UNEMPLOYMENT

b. SWEET MANUFACTURER MAKES ________ BID FOR RIVAL COMPANY

c. COMPANY'S ANNUAL ________ RISES BY £30M

d. OPTIMISTIC CHANCELLOR PREDICTS ________ IN ECONOMY

Idiomatic expressions

5 Look at Tapescript 7a on page 81. Find the expressions which mean the following:

a. to begin something badly
b. to sell quickly to many eager customers
c. to start from zero or with nothing
d. to be ruined financially
e. to keep out of debt or difficulty

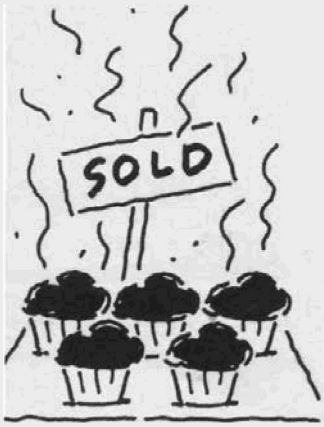

Using the expressions you found above, what would you say in the following situations?

1 There is an economic recession and you think that a lot of companies will go out of business.
2 You are a supporter of a football club. At the beginning of the football season the team lost all their matches,
3 An engineer designs a new type of engine but then finds it doesn't work. He decides to start again with a completely different design.
4 The company you work for is only just managing to avoid financial difficulties.
5 Your friend has written a novel and it has become very popular. Everyone is buying it.

Now think of further examples using some of these expressions. For example, can you think of something that is selling extremely well at the moment? Can you think of something that started very badly?

Role-play

6 Work in pairs. One of you is the Director of a fashion company, the'other is a fashion designer. Read the notes for your role below, and spend some time thinking about what you will say, and the multi-word verbs and expressions you could use in the role-play. Then act out the conversation with your partner.

Director of fashion company
Your company is not doing well at the moment and you are worried it may go bankrupt. Tell your fashion designer about the latest sales figures, the economic recession, the failure of recent projects, and the need to reduce the number of staff. Find out if he/she has any ideas for helping to save the company.

Fashion designer
You work for a fashion company. The Director has asked to see you about the bad financial position of the company. Try to think of positive things to say about the company, the economy, and your new ideas. Try to think of solutions to the problems the company is facing.

How multi-word verbs work

7 *out*

The particle *out* can be used with some verbs to give the idea of something stopping completely. Look at the sentences below and say what it is that has stopped.

Example
The company backed out of the project.
= The company's participation in the project stopped.

a, The engine was working all right but then it suddenly *cut out.*
b. After two years at university he decided to *drop out.*
c. She had to *pull out* of the competition because of a leg injury.
d. The shop has *sold out* of that style of jumper.
e. This species of bird *died out* in the nineteenth century.
f. They used to be good friends but they *fell out* last summer.

What's the opposite of the following:

1 sales are *falling* off
2 to get off to a *bad* start
3 a *downturn* in the economy
4 *to lay someone off*

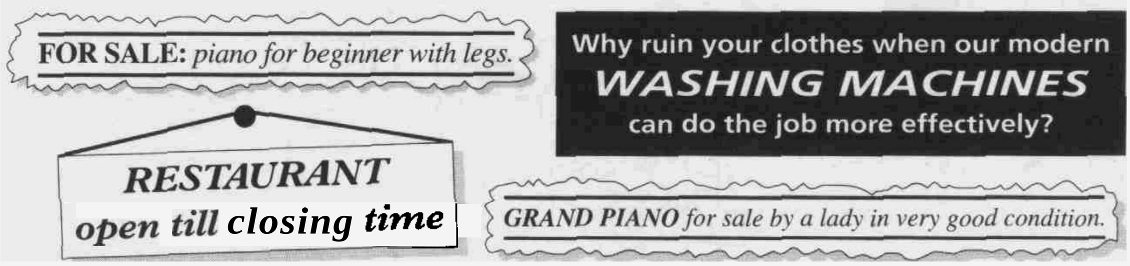

FOR SALE: *piano for beginner with legs.*

Why ruin your clothes when our modern *WASHING MACHINES* can do the job more effectively?

RESTAURANT
open till closing time

GRAND PIANO *for sale by a lady in very good condition.*

Speaking and Writing

1 Look at the picture story with your partner. Practise telling the story before you write it. You can decide what happens in picture 12. How do you think the story ends?

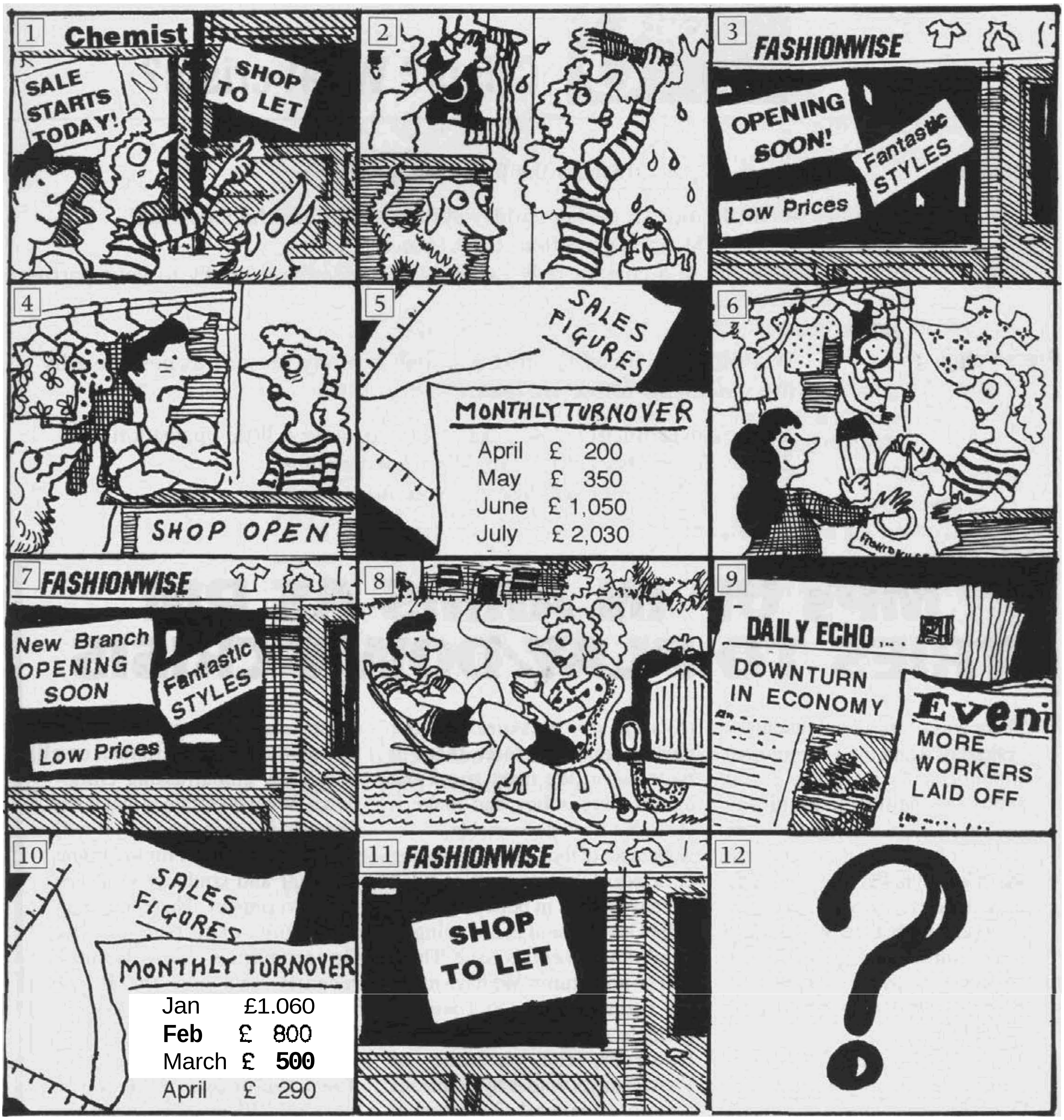
1
Chemist
SALE STARTS TODAY!
SHOP TO LET
2
3
FASHIONWISE
OPENING SOON!
Fantastic STYLES
Low Prices
4
SHOP OPEN
5
SALES FIGURES
MONTHLY TURNOVER
April £ 200
May £ 350
June £ 1,050
July £ 2,030
6
7
FASHIONWISE
New Branch OPENING SOON
Fantastic STYLES
Low Prices
8
9
DAILY ECHO
DOWNTURN IN ECONOMY
Eveni
MORE WORKERS LAID OFF
10
SALES FIGURES
MONTHLY TURNOVER
Jan £1.060
Feb £ 800
March £ 500
April £ 290
11
FASHIONWISE
SHOP TO LET
12
?

2 Now write the story. Remember to use the multi-word verbs and expressions you have learnt in this unit.

8 Crisis? What crisis?

Preparation

Work in pairs. Discuss the following questions.

- In the British parliamentary system, what are the following?
  MP, PM, the Opposition, the Cabinet
- Think of a current political crisis and describe it briefly to your partner.

Presentation

Work in pairs. Read the text and find as many reasons as possible why the statements below are false,

1 The Government's policy has met with only a little opposition.
2 The Government is prepared to show flexibility.
3 The Government will lose the vote on Wednesday.
4 There is no crisis.

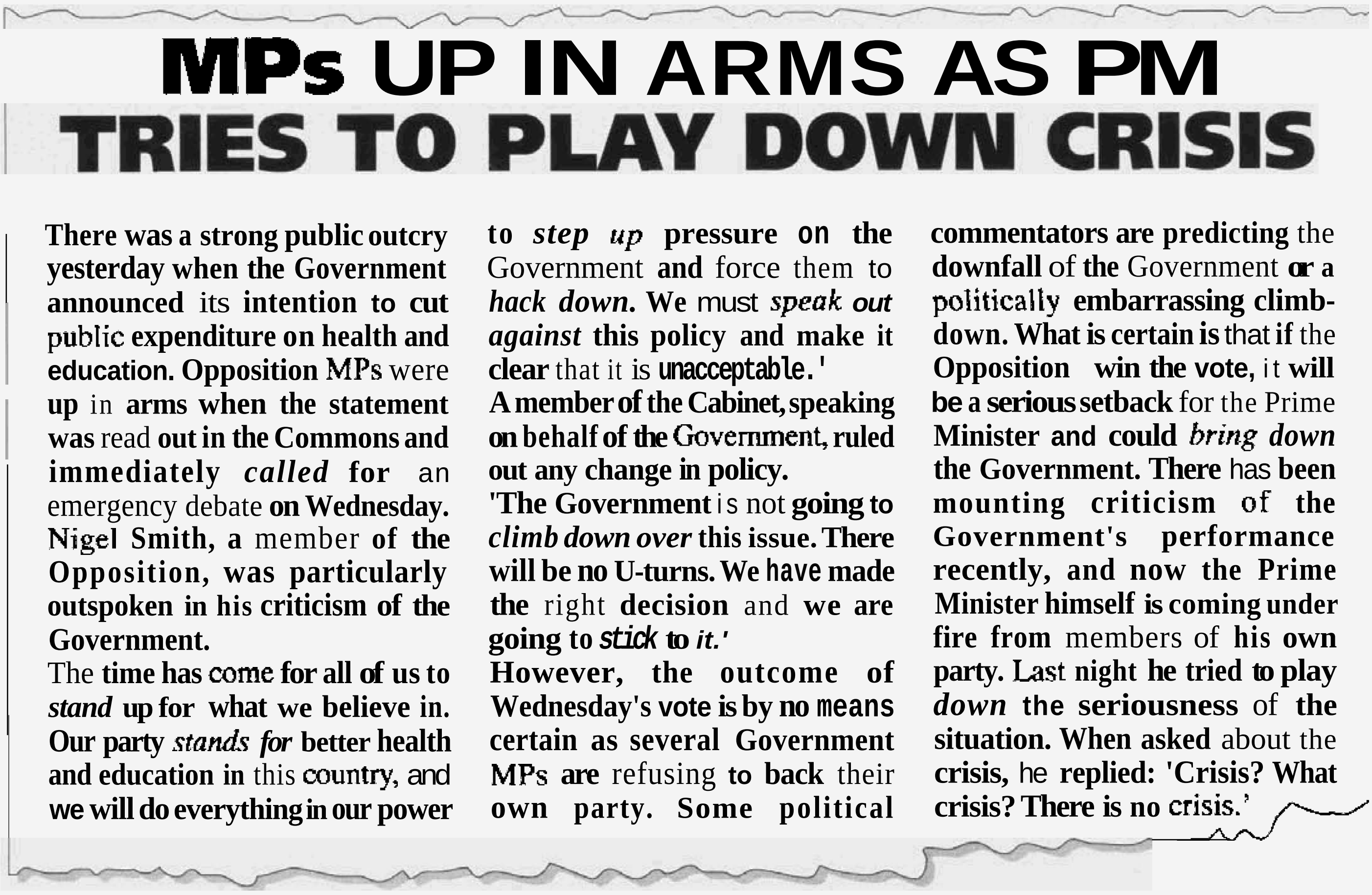

MPs UP IN ARMS AS PM TRIES TO PLAY DOWN CRISIS

There was a strong public outcry yesterday when the Government announced its intention to cut public expenditure on health and education. Opposition MPs were up in arms when the statement was read out in the Commons and immediately *called* for an emergency debate on Wednesday. Nigel Smith, a member of the Opposition, was particularly outspoken in his criticism of the Government.

The time has come for all of us to *stand* up for what we believe in. Our party *stands for* better health and education in this country, and we will do everything in our power to *step up* pressure on the Government and force them to *back down*. We must *speak out against* this policy and make it clear that it is unacceptable.'

A member of the Cabinet, speaking on behalf of the Government, ruled out any change in policy.

'The Government is not going to *climb down over* this issue. There will be no U-turns. We have made the right decision and we are going to *stick* to *it.*'

However, the outcome of Wednesday's vote is by no means certain as several Government MPs are refusing to back their own party. Some political commentators are predicting the downfall of the Government or a politically embarrassing climb-down. What is certain is that if the Opposition win the vote, it will be a serious setback for the Prime Minister and could *bring down* the Government. There has been mounting criticism of the Government's performance recently, and now the Prime Minister himself is coming under fire from members of his own party. Last night he tried to play *down* the seriousness of the situation. When asked about the crisis, he replied: 'Crisis? What crisis? There is no crisis.'

Match the multi-word verbs in **A** with the definitions in B.

A

1 to call for something
2 to stand up for someone/something
3 to stand for something
4 to step something up
5 to back down/climb down (over something)
6 to speak out (against something)
7 to stick to something
8 to bring someone/something down
9 to play something down

B

. to increase or intensify the speed, degree, quantity or quality of something
b. to continue to support something, not abandon or change something
c. to defend someone/something that is under attack
d. to express your views forcefully and publicly
e. to represent certain ideas or attitudes
f. to make something appear less important than it really is
g. to demand something
h. to cause someone/something to lose power or be defeated
i. to admit you are wrong in an argument or dispute and agree to do what someone wants you to do

Listen to the sentences on the tape. Use the prompts you hear to make sentences with the same meaning.

Example
We are demanding a change in the law. *(call for)*
We *are calling for a change in the law.*

Practice

1 Work in pairs. Read the newspaper extracts below. Then rewrite them, using the multi-word verbs from the boxes.

call for bring down stand for back down step up

Yesterday, the Opposition claimed it is the only party that represents social justice and the needs of ordinary people. They have increased pressure on the Government recently by demanding a general election this summer. They believe they will defeat the Government unless it admits it is wrong over its new economic policy.

climb down over play down speak out against stick to

Despite pressure from the Opposition, the Government has announced it will not withdraw its new economic policy. They say they will continue with the policy because it is the right one. Several political commentators believe the Government is trying to make the crisis appear less serious than it really is. If the economic situation does not improve soon, some Government MPs may begin to criticize their own party openly.

Collocation

2 Which of the words can be used with the multi-word verbs below? Up to three items may be correct.

1 We want to bring down
- a. this corrupt regime.
- b. this football team.
- c. this new law.
- d. this building project.

2 We will step up
- a. security.
- b. our election campaign.
- c. taxes.
- d. expenditure.

3 The wrong multi-word verbs have been used in the political speech below. Correct them.

Our political party *speaks out against* equality and justice. We will never be afraid to stand *up for* corruption and inequality. We will always *play down* the weakest members of society. We want the government to *stick* to its policy of cutting expenditure on health and education. The government has tried to *step* up the present crisis by saying the situation isn't very serious, but we know what the truth is. That is why we are *climbing down over* an immediate general election.

4 Some nouns and adjectives come from multi-word verbs. Look at how the following are used in the text on page 52. Discuss with your partner what you think they mean.

a. a strong public *outcry*
b. he was particularly *outspoken* in his criticism
c. the *outcome* of Wednesday's vote
d. the *downfall* of the Government
e. a politically embarrassing *climb-down*
f. a serious *setback* for the Prime Minister

Now use the words above to complete the following sentences:

1 She's a very critic of the government. She's not afraid to say what she thinks.
2 What do you think will be the of the general election?
3 There was a general when the government announced its intention to reduce pensions.
4 Nobody was sorry to see the ___ of the dictator.
5 Although the Minister said he would not abandon his policy, he was finally forced into a humiliating .
6 The poor results in the local elections have been a serious for the government.

Idiomatic expressions

5 What do you think the following expressions mean?

1 to be up in arms (over/about something)
2 to make a U-turn (in something)
3 to come under fire

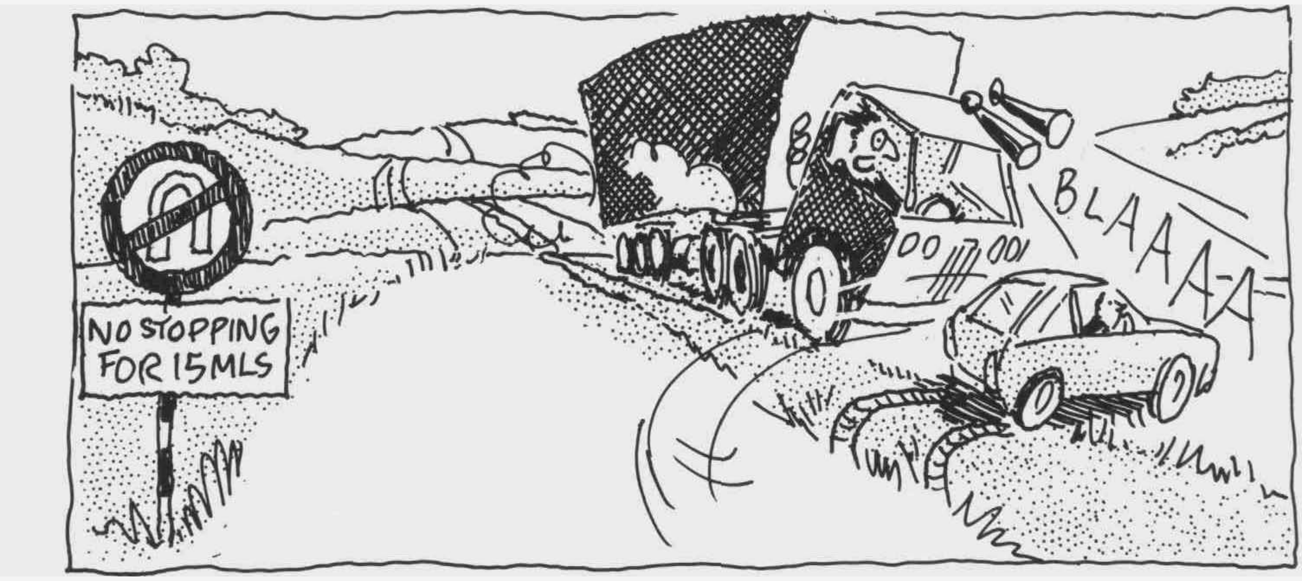

Think of examples for the following:

a. Situations in which people are up in arms about something.
b. Situations in which someone makes a U-turn.
c. Someone who has come under fire recently.

Role-play

6 Work in pairs. One of you is a TV interviewer, the other is a spokesperson for the Opposition. Read the notes for your role below, and spend some time thinking about what you will say, and how you can use the multi-word verbs and expressions from this unit. Then act the interview out,

Interviewer

The Government says it intends to cut public expenditure on health and education. During the interview try to find out the following:

- ☐ what the Opposition party represents
- ☐ why the Opposition is so angry about the Government's policy
- ☐ how the Opposition will increase pressure on the Government
- ☐ who will win next Wednesday's vote

Make the following points about the Government's position:

- ☐ the Government says it will not change its policy
- ☐ the Government says the situation is not serious and there is no crisis

Spokesperson for the Opposition

The Government says it intends to cut public expenditure on health and education. During the interview, make the following points:

- ☐ your party represents justice, equality, better health and better education
- ☐ you are going to increase pressure on the Government
- ☐ you are demanding a national debate on education and health
- ☐ you want the Government to change its policy
- ☐ the situation is more serious than the Government says it is
- ☐ MPs are criticizing the PM
- ☐ your ultimate aim *is* to defeat the Government

How multi-word verbs work

7 down

The particle *down* can be used with some verbs to give the idea of either defeat or suppression.

The scandal eventually brought down the government. (defeat)
The government is trying to hold down inflation. (suppression)

Look at the following sentences and say if the idea of either defeat or suppression is being expressed, or if it is a mixture of both.

a, The proposal was *voted down* at the meeting.
b. The management has climbed *down* in its negotiations with the unions.
c. The police are going to *crack down* on drug pushers.
d. The army was called in to *put down* the rebellion.
e. She tried to make her opinion known but she was *shouted down.*

What is the difference between *to stand for something* and *to stand up for someone/something*?

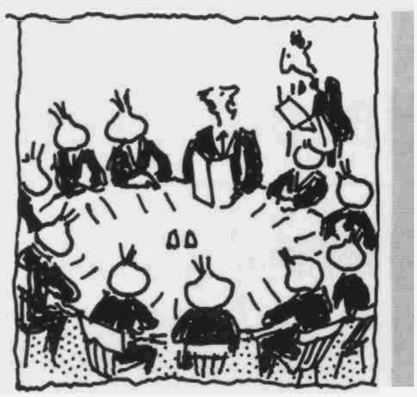

A certain Prime Minister, who had a reputation for looking down on the members of the Cabinet, decided to take all of them out for a meal in a restaurant. The Prime Minister began by ordering fish.
'And the vegetables?' asked the waiter.
'Oh, they'll have fish too,' replied the Prime Minister.

The Party Manifesto below was produced by the Government before the last general election. You think the Government has broken all its election promises. Discuss with your partner what you will say in a letter of complaint to your MP.

PARTY MANIFESTO

Our party represents social justice and good economic management.

Vote for us and if we are elected we will:

- *increase public expenditure*
- *fight for the old and sick people in our society*
- *publicly condemn any examples of corruption*
- *increase security against terrorist attacks*
- *always tell you the truth about any situation – no matter how bad it is*
- **NOT** *raise taxes*
- **NOT** *change our policies*

VOTE FOR US
THE PARTY YOU CAN TRUST

Write the letter of complaint to your MP. Remember to use the multi-word verbs and expressions you have learnt in this unit.

9 Happily ever after

Work in pairs. Discuss the following questions.

- What makes some relationships between couples break up?
- What qualities do you think are needed for a lasting relationship?

Listen to two people, Helen and then George, talking about their marriages. Then discuss with your partner the questions below.

1 How did they meet their partners?
2 What did they think of their partners when they first met them?
3 What did their parents think of their partners?
4 How did Helen and George feel about marrying their partners?
5 Why did their marriages succeed or fail?

Match the multi-word verbs in **A** with the definitions in B. If necessary listen to the cassette again or look at Tapescript 9a on page 82.

A

1 to fall for someone
2 to take to someone/something
3 to stand by someone
4 to let someone down
5 to look on someone as something
6 to see in someone/something
7 to make up/to make it up (with someone)
8 to grow apart (from someone)
9 to make up for something
10 to split up

B

a. to compensate for something
b. to become friends again after an argument
c. to provide help or support for someone when they are in trouble
d. to fall in love with someone
e. to consider someone as something
f. to find a particular quality in someone/something
g. to disappoint someone, often by breaking a promise or agreement
h. to end a relationship or marriage
i. to begin to like someone/something
j. to develop separate interests and become gradually less close to someone

Listen to the sentences on the tape. Use the prompts you hear to make sentences with the same meaning.

Example
I consider you to be someone I can trust. *(look on as)*
I look on you as someone I can trust.

1 In the conversations below, write the statements or questions for **A** that produced the responses for B.

Example

A Do you ***think the two of you will ever split up?***

B No, I think we'll stay together for the rest of our lives.

1 **A** ______________________________________

B Thank you for saying that. I consider you to be my best friend as well.

2 **A** ______________________________________

B Yes, she really helped me when I was in trouble.

3 **A** ______________________________________

B Good, I'm glad to hear the two of you are friends again.

4 **A** ______________________________________

B Well, you could start by saying sorry.

5 **A** ______________________________________

B No, after forty years we're still very close to one another.

6 **A** ______________________________________

B Yes, I know. It's always a mistake to rely on him.

7 **A** ______________________________________

B Have they? That's really surprising. I thought they were such a happy couple.

8 **A** ______________________________________

B Yes, I was really surprised. I thought she wouldn't like skiing at all.

9 **A** ______________________________________

B I hope you're right, because I think I've fallen in love with him.

10 **A** ______________________________________

B I agree. I don't understand why she thinks he is special or interesting.

Work in pairs. Take turns to ask and answer the questions below. Try to use the multi-word verbs from the box.

look on someone as something fall for someone
make it up stand by someone let someone down
grow apart make up for something split up

1 What is your idea of a good friend?
2 Who do you consider to be your best friend and why?
3 When was the last time someone disappointed you? What happened?
4 If you disappointed someone, how would you try to compensate for it?
5 What do you think are the most common reasons for people separating?

How multi-word verbs work

There are four basic types of multi-word verbs:

Type 1: intransitive and inseparable
Type 2: transitive and separable
Type 3: transitive and inseparable
Type 4: transitive and two inseparable particles

3 Look at the 10 multi-word verbs in italics in Tapescript 9a on page 82. How many of them can you categorize according to the four types? Which ones do not fit these patterns? Remember that some multi-word verbs can be more than one type.

Idiomatic expressions

4 Work with your partner. Discuss what you think the following expressions in italics mean.

1 It was ***a turning-point*** in my life.
2 He proposed to me completely ***out of the blue.***
3 Life is full of ***ups and downs.***
4 I started ***to have second thoughts*** about it.
5 I started to see her ***in a different light.***
6 There has to be ***give and take*** in a relationship.

Now discuss the following points with your partner:

- examples of when you might need some give and take in a relationship
- why relationships have their ups and downs
- an important decision that you had second thoughts about
- something that has been a turning-point in your life
- someone or something that has made you see things in a different light

5 Work with your partner. Match expressions 1-6 to the pictures below. Then discuss how you would express the same ideas in your own language.

1 Love is blind
2 to be over the moon
3 to see the world through rose coloured spectacles
4 to have your head in the clouds
5 to be on cloud nine
6 to have your feet (firmly) on the ground

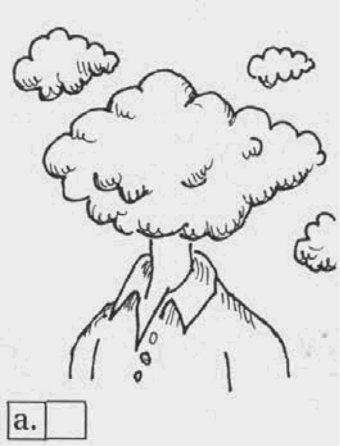

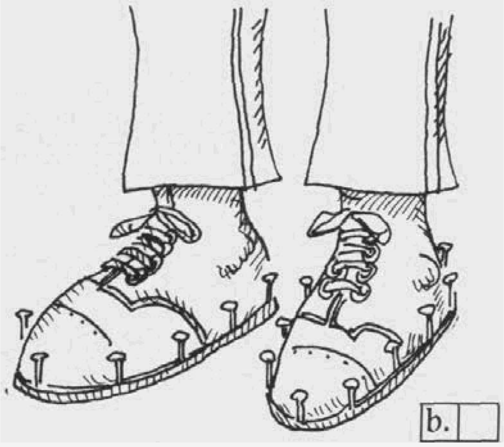

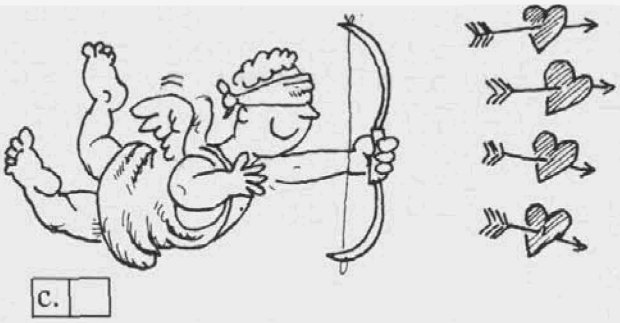

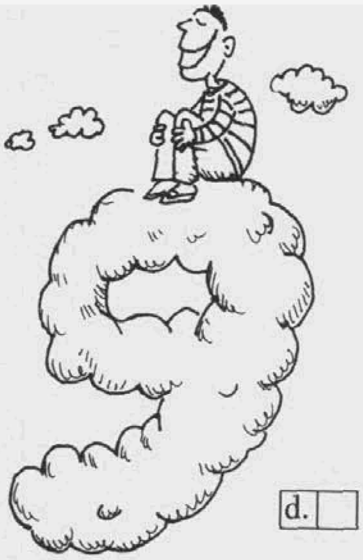

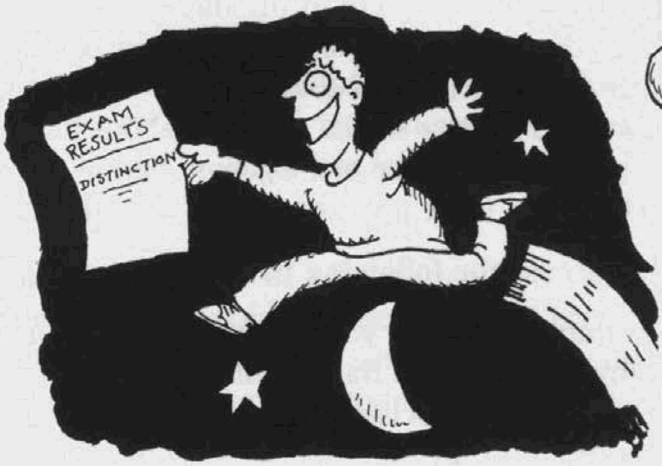

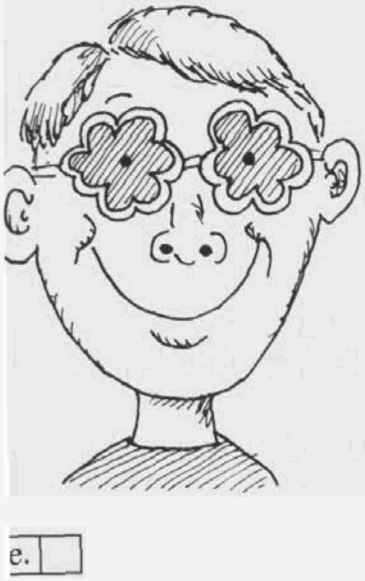

What is the difference between

1 *to fall for someone* and *to take to someone?*
2 *to make* **up** *for something* and *to make* **up?**

'What are you complaining about? You married me for better or for worse, didn't you?'
'Yes, but the worse is much worse than I expected.'

'What do you have in common with your husband?'
'We got married on the same day.'

Work in pairs. Each study one problem situation below. Then take turns to describe the problem situation to your partner, and discuss the advice you would give. Try to use the multi-word verbs and expressions from this unit.

Student A *Problem situation*
You have a young sister who sees the world in a very naive and idealistic way Last week she met a young man on a blind date and immediately fell in love with him. She says he is the ideal man for her; but you cannot understand what she finds wonderful or attractive about him. Your parents do not like him. Yesterday he unexpectedly asked her to marry him and she accepted. She is extremely happy but you think she is too young and naive.

What should she do?

Student B *Problem situation*
A friend of yours, Tom, has a very difficult relationship with his girlfriend. One moment their relationship is very good, and the next it is very bad. They often have arguments because neither of them will compromise about anything. Although in the end they are always friends again, you think the problem is that recently they have become less close to one another. Tom has told you he met someone else last week, and liked this person very much. He now feels differently about his girlfriend, and is thinking of ending their relationship. But he knows his girlfriend depends on him for help and support, and doesn't want to disappoint her.

What should he do?

When you have finished, report back to the rest of the class. Say if you agreed or disagreed with the advice that was given.

Either:
A friend has written to you with one of the problems above. Write a letter of reply, giving advice and using the multi-word verbs and expressions in this unit.

Or:
Write a story called 'The Blind Date'. Try to use the multi-word verbs and idiomatic expressions you have learnt in this unit.

10 It takes all sorts

Preparation

Work in pairs. Discuss the **questions below.**

- **What** *do* you **understand by the expression** *It takes* ***all*** **sorts** to ***make*** **a** ***world?***
- **Describe** someone **you consider** to **be** strange or eccentric.

Presentation

T.10a

Listen to **descriptions** of three **people. Make notes** on what **is strange about** them. Then compare your **notes with your** partner.

1 ______________________________

____

2 ______________________________

____

3 ______________________________

____

Match the multi-word verbs in **A** with the definitions in B. If necessary, listen to the tape again, or look at Tapescript 10a on page **83.**

A

1 to be getting on for something
2 to take to doing something
3 to liven (something) up
4 to go on about somone/something
5 to pick on someone
6 to stand up to someone
7 to show off
8 to stand out
9 to drop out (of something)

B

a. to begin to do something as a regular habit
b. to be noticeable, conspicuous
c. to defend oneself against the attacks or demands of someone more powerful
d. to try to impress people by making one's abilities very obvious, usually from pride or vanity
e. to select someone repeatedly for criticism, punishment or blame
f. to be nearly a certain age or time, to be growing old
g. to make something more interesting, exciting and lively
h. to stop participating in a course of study, a competition or society
i. to keep talking about the same thing, usually to an annoying extent

Listen to the sentences on the tape. Use the prompts you hear to make sentences with the same meaning.

Example
He didn't complete medical school. ***(drop out)***
He dropped out of medical school.

1 Complete the sentences, using multi-word verbs from this unit.

a. The party was very dull so we tried to ___ by getting everyone to dance.
b. He started a three-year drama course, but he after two months and found a job in a hotel.
c. I don't like him because he is so vain. He's always ___ in front of other people.
d. He decided to his boss and refuse to accept his demands.
e. Although my grandmother eighty, she still goes for a three-mile walk every morning before breakfast.
f. She believed the boss was her because he never criticized anyone else in the office.
g. Her way of dressing made her in a crowd.
h. He never used to touch alcohol, but recently he has drinking in the pub all night.
i. She kept her operation. It was very boring because we had heard it all before.

2 One of the sentences below is correct. All the others have one mistake in them. Change the sentences so that they are all correct.

a. She tried to live up the discussion by saying somethig controversial.
b. If he's always picking on you, you should stand up for him.
c. She gets on for ninety.
d. He makes himself stand up in a crowd by showing off.
e. He shouldn't have made the mistake of dropping out of college.
f. They're always going about the state of the economy.
g. She's taken to play golf at the weekends.

3 Work in pairs. Discuss the statements and questions below. Use the multi-word verbs from this unit.

a. How old is your oldest relative?
b. What would you do if someone was always selecting you for criticism or punishment?
c. How would you make a party more interesting and lively?
d. Have you ever felt you didn't want to complete a particular course? If so, why? What happened?
e. Think of someone who is always trying to draw attention to themselves in an obvious way. What do you think of this person?
f. Think of someone who is always talking about somethig in an annoying way.
g. Have you adopted any new habits recently? If yes, what are they?

Idiomatic expressions

4 1 Read your own star sign description, and those of other people you know. Discuss with your partner if they are accurate or not.

2 Try to guess which star signs belong to other people in your class.

Your Stars

Aquarius (JANUARY 20 – FEBRUARY IS)
You are practical and realistic about what is important in life – you have your feet firmly on the ground. You are intelligent and love thinking up new ideas but you sometimes *have a memory like a sieve*. Once you have made a promise, you never *go back on it*. You like change, and often wear outrageous clothes that make you stand out in a crowd.

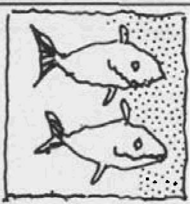

Pisces (FEBRUARY 19 – MARCH 20)
You are sensitive, imaginative and creative, but also very emotional – your heart rules your head. You are not ambitious or materialistic and often have your head in the clouds. You are indecisive because you don't always *Know your own mind*, but you are good at *putting yourself in other people's shoes*.

Aries (MARCH 21 – APRIL 20)
You are a born leader and like to dominate people. You are very active and rather impulsive, so you tend to do things *on the spur of the moment*. You lose your temper very easily, but you get over it quickly and can be quite charming. You're not good at following other people's advice, but you're quick to give advice to them.

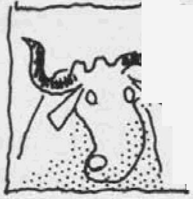

Taurus (APRIL 21 – MAY 20)
You are practical, reliable, and determined. You have a *mind of your own* so it is very difficult to make you do something you don't want to. This means you can be stubborn at times. You like the security that comes from routine so you don? like change. You are loyal and generous to your friends and will stand by them whenever possible.

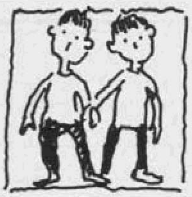

Gemini (MAY 21 – JUNE 20)
You are intelligent, interested in everything, and have an excellent general knowledge. You think and talk fast and you are full of restless energy. You are versatile and good at doing several things at the same time. You have a strong sense of humour and often *have your friends in stitches*. You are sociable, get bored easily and love change.

Cancer (June 21 – July 21)

You are very sensitive and easily hurt. If someone says an unkind word to you, you *rake it to heart*, but you are also very forgiving. Your family life is very important to you. You are sincere in love, but often take things too seriously. You are a loyal friend and have a good memory, but you can be moody sometimes.

Leo (July 22 – August 21)

You have a confident and attractive personality, but you tend to be proud. You like to *be in the public eye* and you are easily flattered. You love the sun and are very generous – indeed, you *have a heart of gold*. You like to organize other people, and you are quick to stand up for someone who you think is being attacked.

Virgo (August 22 – September 21)

You are quiet and shy and don't like crowds. You tend to be a loner and *keep yourself to yourself*. You are a perfectionist – you want everybody and everything to be perfect and this makes it difficult for people to live up to pour high standards. You prefer to play a supporting role at work and in relationships.

Libra (September 22 – October 22)

You are sympathetic, tolerant and a good listener, so when a friend needs *a shoulder to cry on*, they turn to you, Love is important for you and you are always falling for people. However, you are indecisive. You spend a long time weighing up all the possibilities before you make up your mind.

Scorpio (October 23 – November 21)

You have strong likes and dislikes and tend to *see things in black and white*. As a result, you tend to make instant judgements and rarely change your mind about things or people. You are ambitious, but love is more important to you than success. You are very secretive and hide your true feelings. If you are hurt you always take revenge.

Sagittarius (November 22 – December 20)

You are friendly, extrovert, and outspoken. You rebel against authority and have a tendency to *speak your mind* when it would be better to remain silent. You hate pretence and deception. You are intelligent and like to show off your knowledge to other people. You love travel and danger and you have a hot temper.

Capricorn (December 21 – January 19)

You are a strong-minded person who rakes life and work very seriously. Your talent and determination make you successful and you usually *get to the top*. In your relationships you are faithful and loyal, but you are also possessive and like to be in control. You are very cautious and tend to bottle up your feelings rather rhan release them.

5 Look at the horoscopes again. Discuss with your partner the meaning of the idiomatic expressions in italics.

6 Work with your partner. Discuss the points below.

1 Name three people who are often *in the public eye.*
2 Name three people who have *got to the top* in their profession.
3 Name someone who is not afraid to *speak their mind.*
4 When was the last time someone *had you in stitches?*
5 What have you done *on the spur of the moment* recently?
6 Do you have a *shoulder to cry on* when you are upset? If yes, who is it?

How multi-word verbs work

into

What is the general meaning of the particle *into* in the examples below?

1 When she heard the news she *burst into* tears.
2 One moment he was calm and reasonable, and the next moment he *flew into* a rage and started shouting at everyone.
3 He used to be a charming man but in later life he *turned into* a very unpleasant person.
4 She *settled into* the routine of her new job very quickly.
5 He *got into* the habit of watching TV every afternoon.

What are the two different meanings of *to take to* in these sentences?

a. I *took to* him immediately.
b. I *took to* playing golf every Saturday morning.

My cross-eyed teacher at school had to give up teaching.
Why?
Because he couldn't control his pupils.

> Dear Sir,
> I understand that next Monday's flight to Rome is fully booked, but I would like to have a seat with a good view if anyone drops out.

Write a description of someone who you think is strange or eccentric. Give details of their appearance, character, habits, and opinions. Try to use the multi-word verbs and expressions you have learnt in this unit.

11 Proverbs

Preparation

Work in pairs.

Discuss what you think the three proverbs below mean.

When in Rome, do as the Romans do

Birds of a feather flock together

All that glitters is not gold

What other English proverbs do you know? Explain what they mean.

Reading

Read the text and then answer the questions which follow.

Proverbs are popular short sayings of a moral or practical nature. To qualify as proverbs, the sayings must be old and contain some kind of enduring wisdom. They are used to give a word of advice or warning, or to make a wise general comment on a particular situation.

Obviously some proverbs are easier to understand than others. Those which say directly what they mean in straightforward language present the fewest problems,

The more you have, the more you want.

It's easy to be wise after the event.

In these examples there is no need to look for a truth beyond the literal sense of the words, because the proverb is itself a generalized truth. With other proverbs, however, it is necessary to transfer the specific meaning to a more general situation before it can be fully appreciated.

A stitch in time saves nine.

Here the proverb refers to mending clothes. If you mend a small tear with a few stitches immediately, you avoid the necessity of mending a large tear later on. In other words, prompt action at an early stage can prevent more serious trouble developing in the future.

As for the origin of proverbs, they probably date back to the time when wisdom was transmitted by story or song. Some can be traced back to early Greek and Latin sources, but it is difficult to say with any certainty where others originated, because they were often translated from language to language.

Shakespeare is the greatest literary source of sayings and proverbs in English, though no one is certain how many of them were the product of his own thought, and how many were part of the oral tradition of his time.

Neither a borrower nor a lender be.

All that glitters is not gold,

These, and the sayings and proverbs of other major authors of the past, have entered the language and become part of the culture because of their universal appeal or truth.

A thing of beauty is a joy forever. (John Keats)

A little learning is a dangerous thing. (Alexander Pope)

However, some proverbs are much more widely used than others. Indeed, the acceptance and rejection of proverbs throughout the ages can be seen as a history of the changes that have occurred in the manners, morals, and social development of a country. For example, the proverb *A stitch in time saves nine* is not used very frequently now, and sounds rather old-fashioned because few people spend their time mending clothes in today's throwaway society – they just go out and buy new ones. But even if people do not use proverbs very much in their daily lives, almost everybody knows them. Some are so well-known that it is only necessary to say the first part of the proverb – the rest will be understood immediately.

When in Rome ... (do as the Romans do)

Birds of a feather ... (flock together)

If your first language is not English and you try to use proverbs, you run the risk of sounding rather artificial and unnatural, especially if you over-use them or produce them in inappropriate *contexts*. You also have to be word perfect when you use them, *because they* are fixed expressions. Perhaps the most natural way to introduce them into a conversation is to say

Well, you know what they say ...

You may decide not to use them actively but it is certainly worth learning them for recognition purposes, and they can provide you with an insight into the culture of the country. In the words of the philosopher and scientist Francis Bacon

"The Genius, Wit and Spirit of a Nation are discovered in its Proverbs."

---

1 Why are some proverbs more difficult to understand than others?
2 Why is it sometimes difficult to find the origin of a proverb?
3 Why are some proverbs more often used than others?
4 What advice is given about proverbs?

1a.

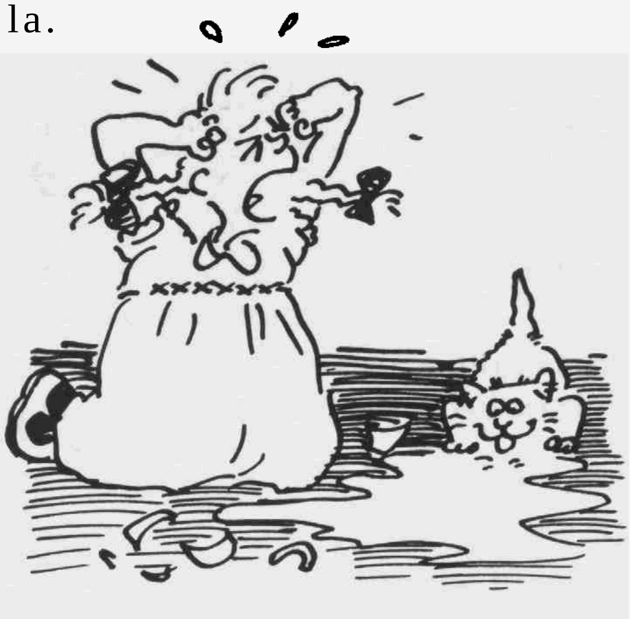

1b.

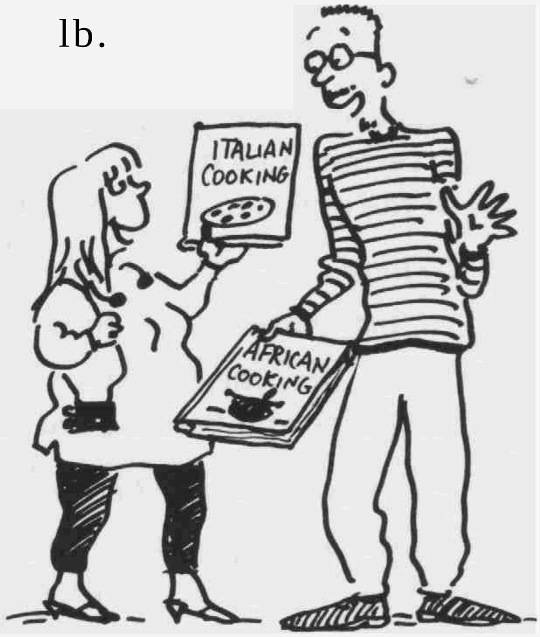

Sort the following words into well-known proverbs. The first word has been given in each case.

a. crying milk it's use over no **spilt**

It's ______________________________

b. is life the spice variety of

Variety ______________________________

c. eat cake it can't you have and your

You ______________________________

d. the pudding proof the of the eating in is

The ______________________________

How would you express the same ideas in your own language?

1c.

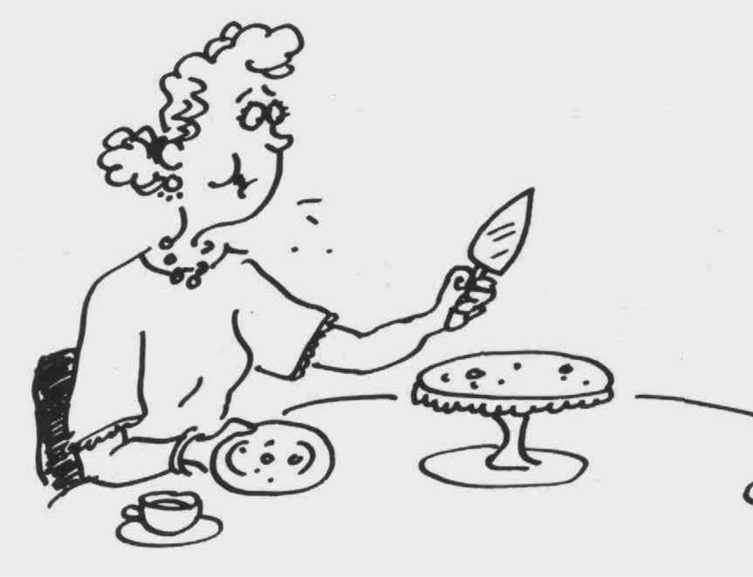

1d.

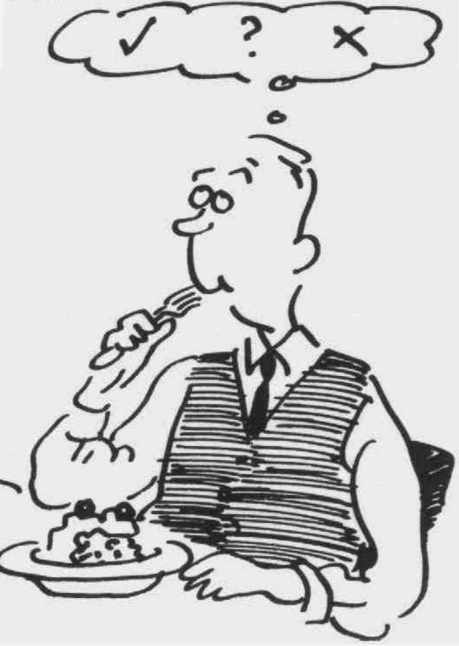

2 Match the two halves of the proverbs below. The first one has been done for you.

1 When in Rome,
2 If you want a thing done properly,
3 It takes all sorts
4 Where there's a will,

5 All work and no play
6 If at first you don't succeed,
7 Laugh and the world laughs with you,
8 Two's company,
9 When the **cat's** away,

a. three's a crowd.
b. try, try, try again.
c. there's a way.
d. weep and you weep alone.
e. makes Jack a dull boy.
f. do it yourself.
g. do as the Romans do.
h. the mice will play.
i. to make a world.

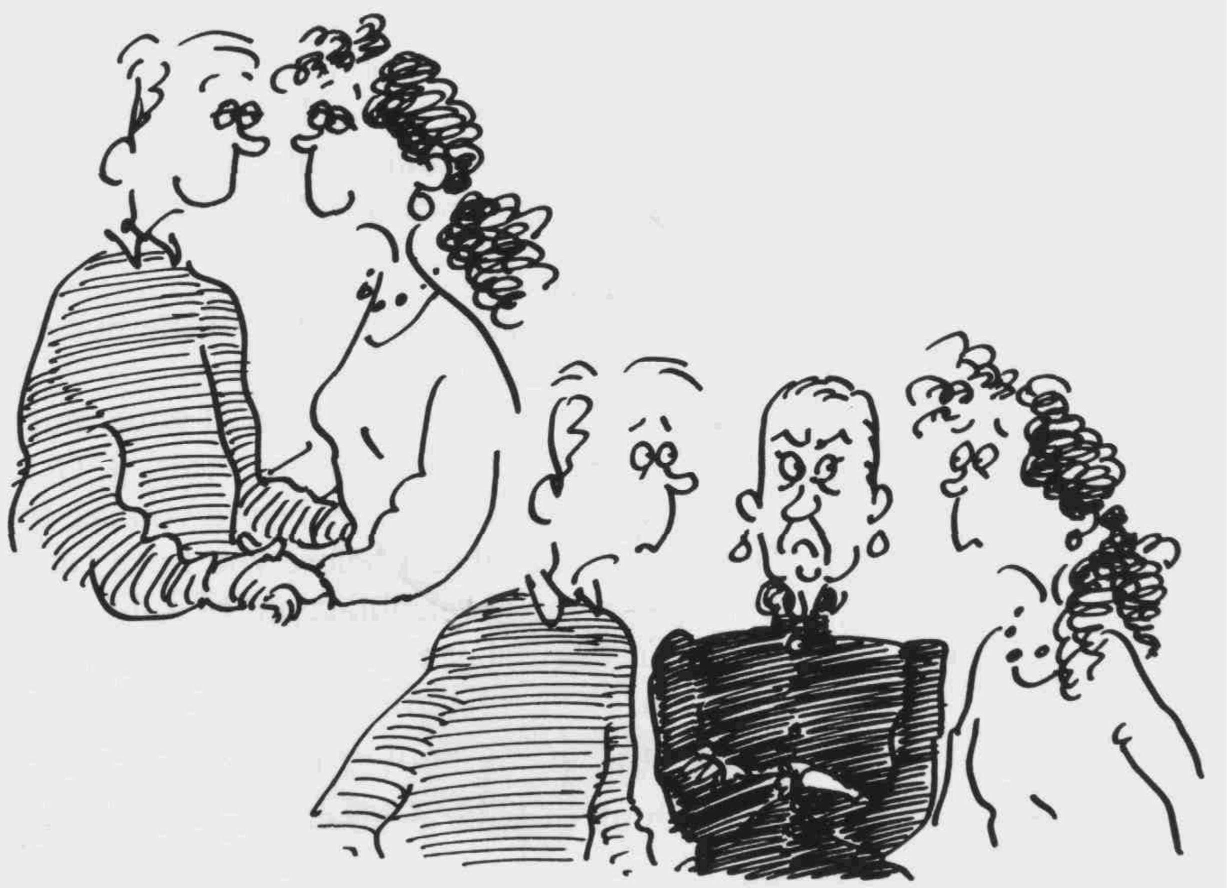

3 Some sayings are so well-known that it is only necessary to say the first **part** of the sentence.

Example
– Are you coming to the party on Friday night?
– No, I want to revise for my exams.
– Well, you know what they say, '***All*** work ***and no play...***'

Work with your partner. Make similar short dialogues in which you use only the first part of the sayings from exercise 2.

English proverbs and their international equivalents

The meaning of some proverbs is common to many different cultures. Some of these can be translated literally from one language to another, but with some proverbs the same meaning is expressed in different ways.

4 Match the English proverbs below with their international equivalents. (F = French; G = German; I = Italian; S = Spanish; T = Turkish)

English proverbs

1 You can't have your cake and eat it.
2 A leopard never changes its spots.
3 Don't cross your bridges before you come to them.
4 Give him an inch and he'll take a mile.
5 You're making a mountain out of a molehill.
6 Don't count your chickens before they're hatched.
7 Don't put the cart before the horse.
8 A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.
9 It's the last straw that breaks the camel's back.
10 You scratch my back and I'll scratch yours.

International equivalents

a. Don't put the bridle on the tail of the horse. (G)
b. One hand washes the other. (G)
c. You can't have your barrel full of wine and your wife drunk. (I)
d. A wolf loses its hair but not its vices. (I, G)
e. Don't roll up your trousers before you see the river. (T)
f. Don't sell the bearskin before you have caught it. (F)
g. You're making an elephant out of a fly. (G)
h. Better an egg today than a hen tomorrow. (I)
i. Give him your little finger and he'll take your hand. (G)
j. It's the last drop that makes the glass overflow. (S)

Can you think of other examples?

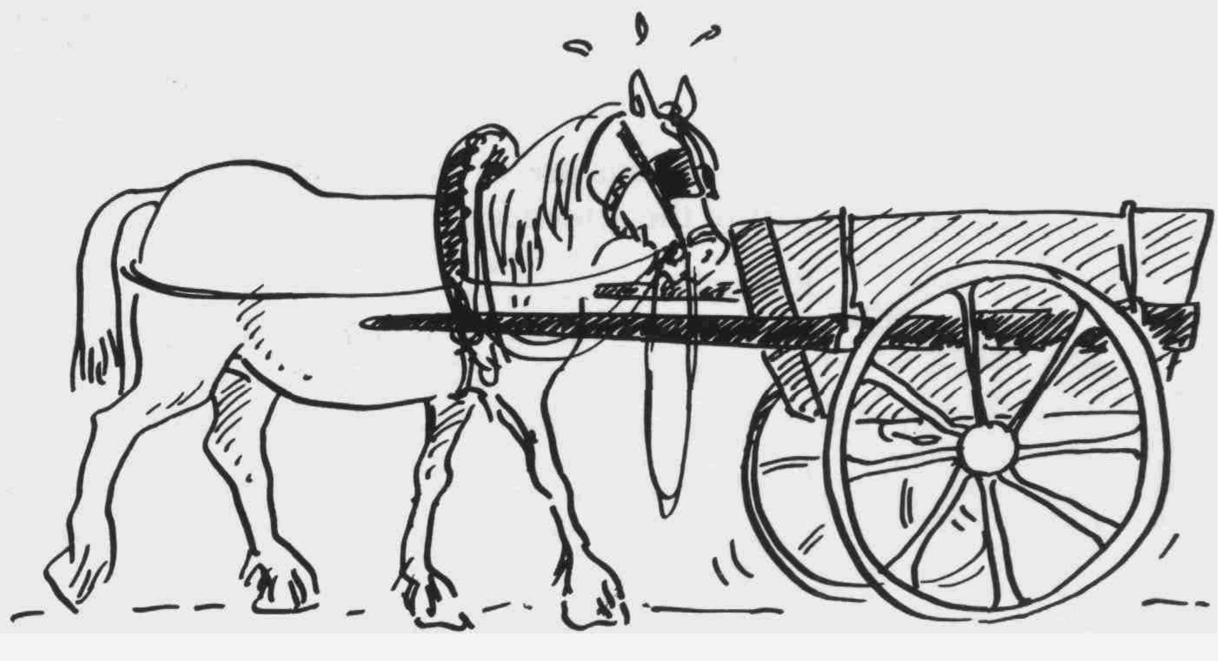

5 Some proverbs have the same meaning, while others seem to contradict one another. Look at the examples below and group them into pairs of proverbs which have the same meaning and pairs of proverbs which contradict one another.

1 Moderation in all things.
2 He who hesitates is lost.
3 Out of sight, out of mind.
4 Enough is as good as a feast.
5 There's no arguing about tastes.
6 Look before you leap.
7 Absence makes the heart grow fonder.
8 Many hands make light work.
9 One man's meat is another man's poison.
10 Too many cooks spoil the broth.

Similar meaning:	Opposite meaning:

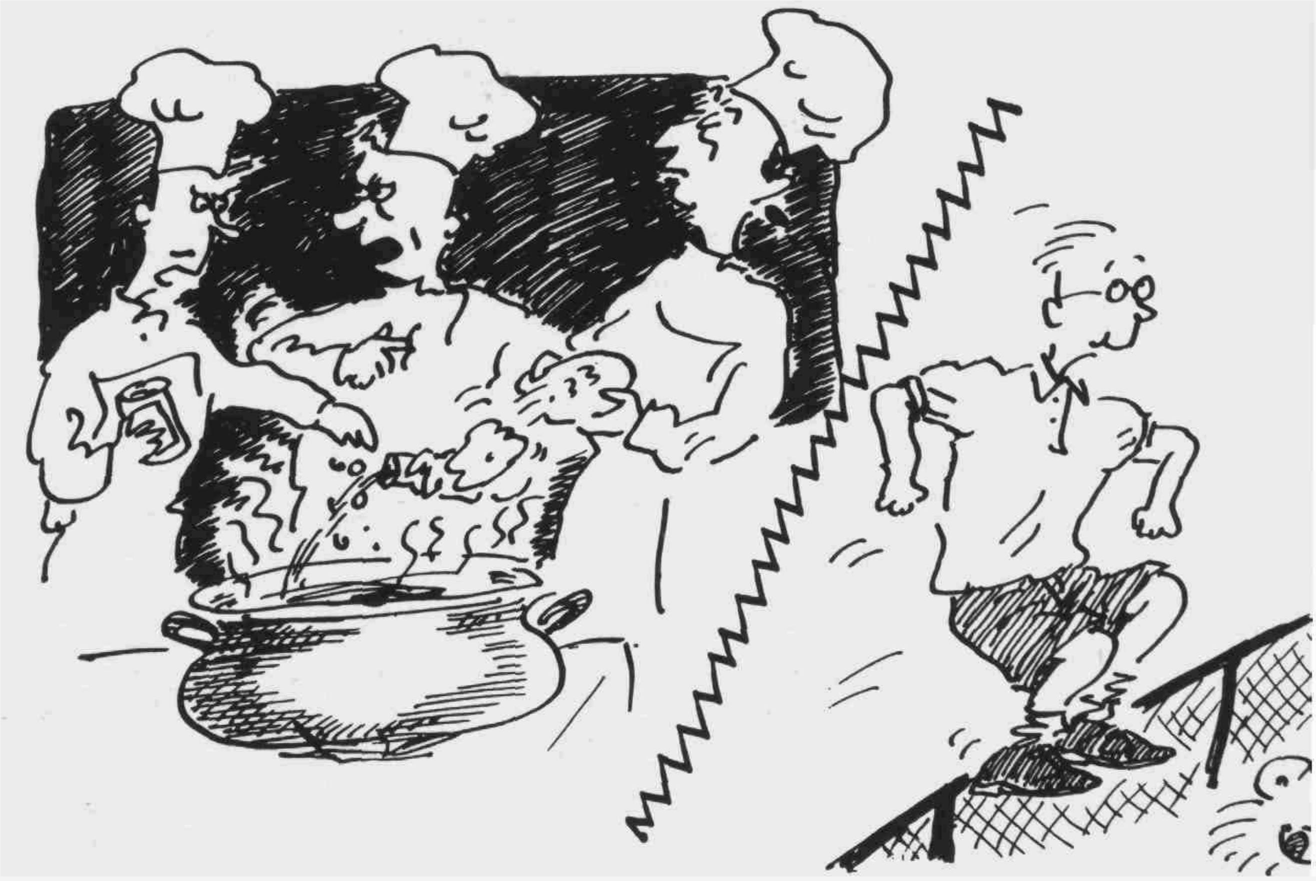

Listen to the situations on the tape. Give an appropriate proverb for each of them.

> *During a performance at a theatre, there was a power cut and all the lights suddenl [illegible] nt out. A man on stage stepped forward and apologized. Then he asked everyone in the audience to put their hands up in the air. They did so – and to their great surprise, the lights came back on.*
> *'How did you do that?' someone asked,*
> *'Very simple,' he replied. 'Many hands make light work.'*

1 Work with your partner. Think of a dialogue which illustrates one of the proverbs in this unit. Act it out without saying the proverb. The rest of the class must provide the appropriate proverb

2 Which of the proverbs in this unit will you remember? Why?

Write a story that illustrates, or ends with, a proverb from this unit.

Unit 1

Tapescript 1a

D: Doctor **N:** Nurse

D Good morning, nurse. How are things on the ward today?

N Very quiet at the moment, doctor.

D How's Mr Harris getting on?

N He's fine. He had his operation early this morning and he's still under the anaesthetic at the moment, but it seems he's *come* through it very well,

D Good, I think he'll need at least a week to *build* up his strength, but after that he should be up and about pretty quickly. How's Mr Stephens?

N The surgeons decided to go *ahead* with the operation last night, and at first we were rather worried – we thought he wasn't going to *come* through it. but he seems to be over the worst now and his condition is stable.

D Well, he's in *good* hands. and I'm sure you'll do an excellent job of looking after him. I think we may need to give him some antibiotics to *fight off* any possible infection. And Mr Spencer?

N I'm afraid he took a turn for the worse in the night. He died early this morning.

D I see. Have his relatives been informed?

N *Yes. they* have.

D What about Mr King? Has there been any change?

N There's been an improvement in his condition, but he's in pain when the effect of the drugs he's taking starts to *wear off*. and he says he's had some attacks of breathlessness.

D Has he told *you what brings* them *on?*

N No. but I know he hasn't given up smoking. Old habits die hard, I suppose... At the moment he says he doesn't *feel up to doing* anything – he just wants to lie in bed and rest, Should he keep on taking the tablets?

D Yes. for the moment – it's best to be on the safe side. But we'd like to *try out* a new course of treatment *on* him, I think I'll go and have a word with him now...

Tapescript 1b

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again, using the multi-word verb prompts, The first one has been done for you.

1 Would you like to test this new product?
(try out)
Would you like to try out this *new product?*

2 She survived a very serious illness.
(come through)
She came through a very serious illness.

3 I'm trying to get rid of a cold at the moment.
(fight off)
I'm trying to fight *off a cold at* the *moment.*

4 The pain is beginning to disappear.
(wear off)
The pain is beginning to wear *off.*

5 They've decided to proceed with the treatment.
(go ahead with)
They've decided to go *ahead with* the *treatment.*

6 Reading in a poor light can cause headaches,
(bring on)
Reading in a poor light *can* bring on *headaches.*

7 I'm too tired to see anybody today.
(feel up to)
I don't feel up to *seeing anybody today.*

8 You must strengthen your muscles.
(build up)
You must build *up* your *muscles.*

Unit 2

Tapescript 2

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again, using *the* multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 The government has introduced new drinking laws.
(*bring* in)
The government has brought in new drinking laws.
2 The government hasn't kept its election promises.
(*go back on*)
The government has gone back on its election promises.
3 The whole matter will soon be forgotten.
(*blow over*)
The whole matter will soon blow over.
4 The government tried to hide the truth.
(*cover up*)
The government tried to cover up the truth.
5 She proposed a solution to the problem.
(put *forward*)
She put forward a solution to the problem.
6 The police are being stricter with drivers who break the speed limit.
(*crack down on*)
The police are cracking down on drivers who break the speed limit.
7 Following allegations of corruption, the chairman decided to resign.
(*stand down*)
Following allegations of corruption, the chairman stood down.
8 This candidate hasn't got the right qualities for the job.
(*be up to*)
This candidate isn't up to the job.
9 The Prime Minister said we must all accept our responsibilities.
(*face* up *to*)
The Prime Minister said we must all face up to our responsibilities.
10 He persuaded many people to support him.
(win *over*)
He won many people over.

Unit 3

Tapescript 3a

P: Presenter **J:** Julia

P Hello, and welcome to *Arts Review*. In today's programme we'll be talking about Sheila Gold's latest novel, *One Hot Summer*, the new production of *The Tempest* at the National Theatre, and the new John Allen film. Here to discuss them with me is Julia Webb.

J Hello.

P First, the writer Sheila Gold, She's just *brought* out her latest novel, One Hot *Summer*. It's about a young girl who goes to spend the summer with her uncle and later discovers his true identity. What did you *make of* it, Julia?

J I thought it was quite an enjoyable book in places. but the storyline was very complicated, so it wasn't a complete success.

P *Yes*, it took me a long time to work out precisely what was *going on*. What did you *make of* the ending?

J I thought the so-called 'surprise' ending didn't work – it just didn't come *off*. The fact that her uncle *turns out* to be her real father wasn't a surprise at all.

P So this wasn't a story that made you want to go and read more of her novels.

J No. I'm afraid it wasn't. In fact, it put *me off* reading any more of her work.

P So let's move on to Joanne Passman's new production of *The* Tempest. It's had excellent write-ups in the press. What were your impressions? Did it live *up to* your expectations?

J Yes, it certainly did. I was expecting something special, but this was more than that – it was superb? I thought the sense of mystery and magic *came across* very powerfully.

P I agree completely. I think it's by far her best production and I'm sure it will be a huge success.

J Yes. it's definitely a production not to be missed.

P And finally. let's talk about John Allen's new film. Suburban *Blues*.

J Mm ... I found it amusing at times. but dark and melancholy at others, so it wasn't at all clear what message he was trying to put across.

P *Yes*, it's had very mixed reviews.

J I thought the music and the photography were out of this world, but as for the storyline, well, I couldn't make head or tail of it. And the hero's behaviour at the end was completely out of character.

P Yes, I had mixed feelings about it, too. And there, I'm afraid, we'll have to leave you till next week.

Tapescript 3b

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again, using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 I didn't understand what was happening.
(go on)
I didn't understand what was going on.
2 She's very good at conveying her ideas.
(put across)
She's very good at putting across her ideas.
3 The plan for saving the company was excellent, but it didn't succeed.
(come off)
The plan for saving the company was excellent, but It didn't come off.
4 They're going to publish a new edition of her poems.
(bring out)
They're going to bring out a new edition of her poems.
5 The reviews discouraged me from reading the book.
(put off)
The reviews put me off reading the book.
6 The play wasn't as good as I thought it would be.
(live up to)
The play didn't live up to my expectations.
7 The message of the play was understood very clearly.
(come across)
The message of the play came across very clearly.
8 What was your impression of him?
(make of)
What did you make of him?
9 In the end they discovered he was the murderer.
(turn out)
In the end he turned out to be the murderer. **OR**
In the end it turned out that he was the murderer.

Unit 4

Tapescript 4

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again. using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 I was completely deceived by his charming manner.
(take *in*)
I was completely taken in by his charming manner.
2 I never base my judgements on first impressions.
(go by)
I never go by first impressions.
3 She could see what kind of man he was immediately.
(see *through)*
She saw through him immediately.
4 She pretended to be an American tourist.
(pass off)
She passed herself off as an American tourist.
5 She gave the impression of being a very kind person.
(come across as)
She came across as (being) a very kind person.
6 He persuaded me to lend him some money.
(talk into)
He talked me into lending him some money.
7 You won't escape being punished for this!
(get away with)
You won't get away with this!
8 The police told him to give them the gun.
(hand *over)*
The police told him to hand over the gun.

Unit 5

Tapescript 5a

1 A self-made woman

I come from a very poor background. My parents never had any money so we literally lived from hand to mouth. That's probably why I set out to become rich before I was thirty. I found a job in a company, and when I'd saved up enough money I started up my own business. What do I *put* my success *down to?* Hard work. You have *to* work hard for what you want in this life.

2 A rich woman

I'm fortunate because I *came into* a lot of money when my aunt died and left me everything. I invested the money and now I *live off* the interest. I suppose I'm what you would call well-off – but money isn't everything. Sometimes it creates more problems than it solves.

3 A bankrupt businessman

At one time I was extremely well-off, but then came the stock market crash and I lost everything. I had no money *to* pay *off* my debts and I was declared bankrupt. What did I learn from this experience! Fitly. money doesn't grow on trees, and secondly. when you lose everything you find out who your real friends are – they're the ones who stay with you when you come down in the world.

4 Unemployed person

The last job I had was so badly paid that I couldn't make ends meet on my salary, and as a result I was always getting into debt. Everything was becoming more expensive all the time but my salary stayed the same, so I couldn't *keep up with* the cost of living. My bank account was in the red and I had no savings *to fall back on*. And then I lost my job. Now things are really hard and I have to get by on less than £50 a week. I know they say money can't buy happiness, but I'd rather be rich and unhappy than poor and unhappy.

5 A middle-aged regular saver

Some people spend money like water, but not me – I believe in saving up for a rainy day. I *put by* a little money every week. You see, you have to think about the future when you're my age. When you're young you don't need *money* but when you're *old*, *you* can't live *without* it.

Tapescript 5b

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again, using the multi-word verb prompts, The first one has been done for you.

1 I've repaid all my debts,
(pay off)
I've paid off my debts.
2 I save a little money every week.
(put by)
I *put by a little money every week.*
3 He inherited a fortune when his father died.
(come *into)*
He came into a fortune when his father died.
4 She survives on a very small income.
(get by on)
She gets by on a very small Income.
5 She gets all her money from her parents.
(live off)
She lives off her parents.
6 My salary isn't rising as fast as inflation.
(keep up *with)*
My salary isn't *keeping up with inflation.*
7 We thought her bad behaviour was the result of stress.
(put something down to)
We put her *bad behaviour down to stress.*
8 I know I can always ask my parents for help if I'm ever in trouble.
(fall back on)
I know I *can* always *fall back on my parents if I'm ever in* trouble.
9 She intended *to* become the best tennis player in the world.
(set out to)
She set out to become the best tennis player In *the world.*

Unit 6

Tapescript 6

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again, using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 The police prevented anyone entering or leaving the area.
(seal off)
The police sealed off she area.
2 She established an organization to help young offenders.
(set up)
She set *up* an *organization to help* young *offenders.*
3 He confessed to stealing the money.
(own up to)
He owned up to stealing the money.
4 His boss only gave him a warning.
(let off)
His *boss* let him *off with a warning.*
5 He let the police arrest him.
(give oneself up)
He gave himself up to the police.
6 They want to conduct a medical examination.
(carry *out)*
They *want to* carry *out a medical examination.*
7 The bomb exploded at four in the afternoon.
(go off)
The bomb went off at four in *the afternoon.*
8 After two years of peace, war suddenly began.
(break out)
After two years of peace, war broke out.
9 Negotiations between management and unions have collapsed.
(break down)
Negotiations *between management* and *unions have broken down.*
10 *I* was surprised by *her* change *in* attitude.
(take aback)
I was taken aback by *her change* in *attitude.*

Unit 7

Tapescript 7a

P: Presenter **S:** Sally (radio reporter)
J: Joanne (a company director)

P In today's programme, we'll be looking at how companies *are* doing during these difficult times of recession. Our reporter, Sally Green. went *to* talk to Joanne *Wade*, director of a soft drinks company.

S So. Joanne, can you tell me how your individual products are doing?

J Well. we brought *out Bubble Up* over a *year ago and* initially it got off to a bad start, but after an intensive advertising campaign the idea of the drink *caught on* and then sales *picked* up very quickly, It's now our most successful product and is selling like hot cakes.

S I understand you're planning to bring out a new drink called *Fizzy Cola.*

J Yes, that's right. It should be on the market next summer. though we're a little behind schedule at the moment. We were going to build the advertising campaign around a famous pop star, but unfortunately that *fell through*. So we had *to* abandon the whole idea and start from scratch.

S What will the new approach be?

J We've come up with the idea of using a successful athlete instead. That way we should attract people who like sports.

S And how is the company itself doing in these difficult times of recession?

J Well. last year our annual turnover was £25 million and *we took on* extra staff. but this year sales have *fallen off*. so we've had to lay *off* a hundred workers. We've also decided *to back out of an* expensive project to produce *a* new kind of chocolate drink.

S A lot of companies have gone to the wall because of the downturn in the economy. Do you think your company is in any danger?

J No, I don't. Things are difficult for everyone at the moment, but we're managing to keep our heads above water. In fact, if things improve a little we may *take* over another company.

S And what about the future?

J We're hoping for an upturn in the economy, If this happens. then sales might start to *pick* up, but *no* one can be certain. At the moment it's a question of wait and see.

Tapescript 7b

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 We employ extra staff at Christmas.
(take on)
We take on extra staff at Christmas.
2 She produced several excellent ideas.
(come up with)
She came up with several excellent ideas.
3 He gained control of *the company.*
(take over)
He took over the company.
4 The economy is improving.
(pick up)
The economy is picking up.
5 The demand for our product is decreasing.
(fall off)
The demand for our product is falling off.
6 The government has withdrawn from the project.
(back out of)
The government has backed out of the project,
7 The company has temporarily dismissed three hundred workers.
(lay off)
The company has laid off three hundred workers.
8 The plan to build another airport was abandoned.
(fall through)
The *plan to build another airport fell through.*
9 Her ideas have become really popular.
(catch on)
Her ideas *have really caught on.*

Unit 8

Tapescript 8

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again. using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 The Opposition has increased its attacks on the government.
(step up)
The Opposition *has stepped up its* attacks on the *government.*
2 The aim of the rebels is to defeat the government.
(bring down)
The aim of *the rebels is to bring down the* government.

3 The Opposition Party is demanding a general election.
(call *for*)
The Opposition Party is calling for a general election.

4 We must defend our democratic rights!
(stand up *for*)
We must stand up for our democratic rights!

5 What does your political party represent?
(*stand for*)
What does your political party stand for?

6 We must express our views forcefully against the war.
(speak *out*)
We must speak out against the war.

7 We will not abandon our policy.
(stick *to*)
We will stick to our policy.

8 The government is reducing the *importance* of the latest unemployment figures.
(play *down*)
The government is playing down the latest unemployment figures.

9 The government has admitted it was wrong.
(*back down OR* climb *down*)
The government has backed down. OR
The government has climbed down.

Unit 9

Tapescript 9a

I: Interviewer **H:** Helen

I How did you meet your husband?

H It was on a blind date, actually. A friend invited me to meet someone she knew. She said he was very nice, so I went along, and as soon as I met him, I *fell for* him. I thought he was wonderful. We started to go out with one another, and then I invited him home to meet my parents, and they *took* to him immediately – they thought he *was* a lovely person.

I So meeting him *was* an important event?

H Oh, yes. it was a turning-point in my life. You see, whereas I'd always had my head in the clouds, he was very practical and realistic – he had his feet firmly on the ground.

I Do you remember when he asked you to marry him?

H Yes, very clearly. We were walking in the park and he proposed to me completely out of the blue. I really wasn't expecting it.

I How did you feel about marrying him?

H I was over the moon. I thought it was the most wonderful thing that could ever have happened to me.

I And do you still feel that *way* today?

H Oh, yes, we're devoted to one another.

I What do you think has made your marriage such a success?

H The fact that we've always supported and helped one another. I've always stood by him. and he's never *let* me *down* once. We're a partnership.

I *So* you never have any arguments?

H Well, we have our ups and downs now and then – everybody does – but I know that underneath it all we were made for each other.

I: Interviewer **G:** George

I How did you meet your wife?

G We worked for the same company. She was about the same age as me, and she struck me as a very nice person. As time passed I came to *look on* her as a friend. We spent some time together and then we started going out with one another.

I What did your parents think of her?

G When I introduced her to my mother she said she couldn't understand what I *saw* in her. She thought she was very ordinary and not at all the right person for me.

I Do you think your mother's opinion influenced you in any way?

G I think it made me have second thoughts about marrying her, but we still got married a few months later.

I What was life like after you got married?

G Things were all right for a while but then we began to quarrel. We always kissed and *made up* in the end. but there were still problems between us.

I Why was that?

G I think the main thing was that we weren't really suited to one another. After we got married *we* started to see one mother in a different light. We spent less and less time together, we became interested in different things. and gradually we grew *apart.*

I What happened then?

G We started having terrible arguments and I behaved very badly towards her. I tried to *make* up for it, but she couldn't forgive me. In the end we split *up.* I suppose it was inevitable really.

I And how did this experience affect you?

G I think it changed my outlook on life. I certainly don't see it through rose-coloured spectacles any more.

I Would you marry again?
G I would, but it would have to be the right person, *and* there would have to be a lot more give and take. Otherwise I don't think it would work,

Tapescript 9b

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again, using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 When I was in trouble she gave me help and support.
(*stand by*)
When I was in trouble she stood by me.
2 I have always considered you to be my closest friend.
(*look on as*)
I have always looked on you as my closest friend.
3 I'm depending on you, so don't disappoint me!
(*let down*)
I'm depending on you, so don't let me down!
4 The children liked her the moment they met her.
(*take to*)
The children took to her the moment they met her.
5 She fell in love with her skiing instructor.
(*fall for*)
She fell for her skiing instructor.
6 I don't understand what she finds attractive about him.
(*see in*)
I don't understand what she sees in him.
7 She tried to compensate for the trouble she had caused.
(*make up for*)
She tried to make up for the trouble she had caused.
8 After a year they ended their relationship.
(*split up*)
After a year they split up.
9 I think we've become less close to one another.
(*grow apart*)
I think we've grown apart.
10 They had an argument but later they became friends again.
(*make up*)
They had an argument but later they made up. OR
They had an argument but later they made it up.

Unit 10

Tapescript 10a

1 Aunt

My aunt's getting on for sixty, and she's always been a very dynamic sort of person, but recently she's started to behave in a rather strange way. A few months ago she took up karate and judo, and now she's taken to riding a powerful motorbike everywhere she goes. Last week she turned up at my sister's birthday party dressed in a leather jacket with *Hell's Angels* written on the back. 'I've come to liven things up,' she said, and immediately began dancing wildly to loud rock music. My sister found it rather embarrassing.

'I wish she'd act her age,' she said. 'She behaves as if she were sixteen rather than sixty.' But it doesn't bother me at all. It takes all sorts to make a world.

2 Art Teacher

I remember my art teacher because she was always *going on about* Van Gogh's paintings. In fact, they were the only thing she ever talked about and in the end we got rather tired of hearing about them. And for some strange reason we were never allowed to use yellow in our pictures. If we did, she'd stamp her feet and shout: 'That's yellow! I won't have yellow in my class!'

But the main reason I remember her is that she used to pick on my best friend at school. She always chose her to punish or humiliate in front of the other pupils. On one occasion she said. 'Look at this girl's work. It's the worst in the class!' And then she suddenly started laughing. My poor friend put up with this for a whole year. and then one day she decided to stand up to her. 'Stop picking on me!' she said. 'And if I want to use yellow in my pictures, I will!' With that, my art teacher burst into tears and from that day on we could use any colours we liked.

3 Cousin

The strangest person I know is my cousin. He was an only child, and was used to being the centre of attention, so he tended to *show off* a lot in front of other people. I can't say he changed very much when he grew up, On his eighteenth birthday he shaved off all his hair and started wearing a safety-pin through his nose. I suppose he thought it would make him *stand out* in a crowd. He went to university but *dropped* out after only one week – he said he wanted to graduate from the university of life. The last thing I heard, he was trying to join a circus.

Tapescript 10b

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again, using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you,

1 She must be nearly ninety.
(get en for)
She must he getting on for ninety.
2 His strange clothes made him very noticeable.
(stand out)
His *strange* clothes *made him* stand *out.*
3 Why is the boss always criticizing me?
(pick on)
Why is the bass always picking on me?
4 She decided to confront: her boss.
(stand *up to)*
She decided to stand up to her boss.
5 He tried to make the party more exciting and lively.
(liven up)
He tried to liven up the party.
6 She's always trying to impress people.
(show off)
She's always showing off.
7 He's always talking about his lib in the army.
(go *on about)*
He's *always* going on *about his* life *in* the *army.*
8 He's started corning home late at night.
(take to)
He's taken to coming home late at night.
9 She withdrew from the course.
(drop *out)*
She dropped out of the course.

Unit 11

Tapescript 11

Listen to the situations on tape and give an appropriate proverb for each of them.

1 Your friend thinks that a piece of modern sculpture is beautiful. You think it is very ugly. You can't agree about it.
2 You take a job as a hotel receptionist and you meet some very strange people. At first you are rather surprised and shocked, but then you learn to accept It.
3 You are very angry because a friend has made a joke about you. Your friend thinks you're over-reacting.
4 Your friend accidentally breaks an expensive present and is very upset about it. You tell your friend not to be unhappy about something that cannot be changed.
5 You always go on holiday with your friend to the *same* place every year. Your friend is bored with this place and says it would be more interesting to visit many different places.
6 You see your friend in the park having a romantic conversation with someone. You decide it would be better not to start talking to your Mend in these circumstances.
7 You make a mistake at work. All your colleagues tell you what you should have done. You think it is easy For them to say this after the result is known.
8 Your boyfriend or girlfriend is going abroad for several months. You are afraid that he or she will forget you while he or she is away,
9 You are having difficulties finding a job. You believe that if you are determined, you will eventually find one.
10 Your boss is very strict and will be away at a conference for two weeks. You t h i i this will be a good opportunity to have some fun at work.

Answer key

Introductory unit

1 *to stand for something* = *to* be an abbreviation for something

to go off = to go bad, become sour or rotten (e.g. drink or food)

to stand in for someone = to *take* the place of someone who is absent

2
- a. L
- b. N *to break something off* = to discontinue something, to end something abruptly
- c. N to drop *off* = to fall asleep
- d. L
- e. N to *stand* up for *someone/something* = to defend someone/something that is under attack
- f. N *to turn something* over in your *mind* = to consider something carefully and *at* length
- g. L
- h. N *to fall through* = to be abandoned or fail to be completed (e.g. *a* plan or arrangement)
- i. L
- j. L

3
- a. S
- b. N *to* take *off* = to leave the ground and begin flying
- c. S
- d. S
- e. N to *set off* = to begin a journey
- f. N *to make off* = to leave in a hurry, often in order *to* escape

With this group of verbs the particle *off* gives the idea of departure or movement *away from somewhere.*

4 With this group of verbs the particle *off* gives the idea of *disconnection* or *stopping* something.

5 1 c. 2 d. 3 f. 4 b. 5 a. 6 c.

6 Some meanings of *to go off*:

1 This milk has *gone off.* (= *to* go bad, turn sour)
2 The bomb went *off* without warning. (= to explode)
3 The alarm clock *went off at* six o'clock. (= to make a sudden ringing noise)
4 I liked him at first, but now I've *gone off* him. (= to stop liking someone)
5 All the lights suddenly *went off.* (= to stop operating)
6 The demonstration *went off* smoothly. (= to take place, happen)

Some meanings of *to blow up*:

1 They *blew* up the bridge. (= to destroy something with explosives)
2 The car *blew* up. (= to explode)
3 She *blew up* the photograph. (= to enlarge)
4 The affair has been *blown* up by the media. (= to exaggerate)
5 He *blew up* his car tyres. (= to inflate)
6 A storm is *blowing up.* (= to develop)

7 1 *to call something off* = to cancel an arrangement or special event.
All the items here can be cancelled, but only a. and b. are correct. c. Wrong. This is not a special event. d. Wrong

2 *to break* up = to come to an end, involving people separating or leaving in different directions. All the items here can come *to* an end, but only a. and d. are correct. b. Wrong. A film is not a group of people. c. Wrong.

8 a. Type 4 b. Type 1 c. Type 2 d. Type 3
e. Type 3 f. Type 1 g. Type 1 h. Type 4
i. Type 2 j. Type 2

9 Type 1: *hit back, run out, get on, drop off, ring back*
Type 2: *hit someone back, put someone up, ring someone back*
Type 3: *look for something*
Type 4: *run out of something, stand up for someone, get on with something*

10 Some of these verbs have multiple meanings.

a. *to bring someone up* = to raise a child
to bring something up = to mention something or introduce it for discussion

b. *to look something up* = to find information in a reference book
to look someone up = to visit someone informally (informal).

c. *to give up* = to admit defeat
to give something up = to stop doing something

d. *to make up* = to become friends again after an argument
to make something up = to invent something (e.g. a story, an excuse)

e. *to turn in* = to go to bed (informal)
to turn someone in = to hand someone over to the police (informal)

Unit 1 In good hands

Presentation

Possible answers:

People: surgeon, anaesthetist, physiotherapist
Places: operating theatre, out-patient clinic, X-ray department
Treatment: surgeon, transplant, radiation, physiotherapy

Checking understanding

1 e. 2 d. 3 f. 4 g. 5 b. 6 c. 7 a. 8 h.

Practice

1 a. came through b. fight off c. feel up to
d. brought on e. go ahead f. wears off/wore off
g. try it out h. build my strength up

Collocation

3 1 a. Wrong. You can only *fight off* something that is attacking or threatening you. b. Correct
c. Wrong. You can't *fight off* pain by yourself – you need the help of drugs or medicine to do it.
d. Wrong

2 a. Correct b. Correct c. Wrong. Falling in love is something that happens naturally and does not require a sustained effort. If you don't *feel up to* doing something, then you don't have the necessary energy or desire to do something. d. Wrong. Recovering from an illness is a natural process that does not require a sustained mental and physical effort.

3 a. Correct b. Wrong. You *go ahead with* a plan or an arrangement, or something for which permission has been requested. c. Correct d. Correct

4 a. Wrong. A cold is not a serious illness. But you can *get over* a cold or *fight off* a cold. b. Wrong. An injury is not a serious illness or situation, but the result of an accident. c. Correct d. Correct

5 a. Wrong. b. Wrong. Only feelings and sensations can *wear off*, e.g. enthusiasm, tiredness, pain, depression, strangeness, etc. c. Correct d. Correct

Idiomatic expressions

4 a. *to be up and about* = to recover from an illness and be in good health
b. *to be over the worst* = to start to improve after an illness
c. *to be in good hands* = to be looked after or cared for very well
d. *to take a turn for the worse/better* = to become suddenly worse/better during an illness
e. *Old habits die hard* = it is difficult to give up a habit you have had for a long time
f. *to be on the safe side* = to do something as a precaution in case something unexpected or unpleasant happens

How multi-word verbs work

5 a. *to live through something* = to experience and survive difficult times (e.g. war, famine)
b. *to go through something* = to experience, endure, or suffer something unpleasant (e.g. an operation, a lot of pain)
c. *to sit through something* = to remain seated until something, often unpleasant or boring, is completely finished (e.g. a meeting, a film)
d. *to sleep through something* = to remain completely asleep despite noise or disturbance
e. *to talk something through* = to discuss a problem or idea completely until an agreement is reached

The particle *through* can be used with some verbs to give the idea of completing something, e.g. to complete an experience (*live through, go through*), to complete a period of time (*sit through, sleep through*), or to complete a discussion (*talk through*).

6 Possible answers

a. The help of relatives and friends, religion, prayer.
b. You might leave because you are wasting time and sitting near the door, or you might stay because you paid for the ticket and you are not sitting near the aisle.
c. To get a different perspective, or because a problem shared is a problem halved.

What's the answer?

To *fight something off* is about defeating something, e.g. a cold or an infection. To *come through something* is about surviving something, e.g. an operation.

Unit 2 Floating voters

Preparation

floating voter = someone who is not a fixed supporter of any political party.

Checking understanding

1 c. 2 f. 3 h. 4 a. 5 e. 6 g. 7 i. 8 j. 9 d. 10 b.

Practice

1 a. A new law on smoking in public places has been brought in.
b. The government tried to cover up its involvement in the gun-running scandal.
c. It is rumoured that the Prime Minister will stand down before the next election.
d. Everybody is talking about the seriousness of the problem, but I think it will soon blow over.
e. The police are beginning to crack down on young criminals.
f. That's an excellent plan. Are you putting it forward to the Committee?
g. The government seems unable to face up to the problems created by its own policies.
h. The new man is well-qualified, but he isn't up to doing the job properly.
i. The new government promised not to raise taxes, but it went back on its promise.
j. Election campaigns are designed to win over more people to a particular party.

Collocation

2 1 a. Wrong. You *cover up* some kind of wrongdoing, such as a crime or error. b. Correct c. Correct d. Correct
2 a. Wrong. You *crack down* on something that breaks a rule or law. b. Wrong. Promotion is a good thing. c. Correct d. Correct
3 a. Correct b. Wrong. A plan is an intention, not a promise or agreement. c. Correct d. Correct
4 a. Wrong. You *face up to* something that is hard and difficult to accept, such as a responsibility or task, so you have to face up to the *responsibility* of having children. b. Correct c. Correct d. Correct
5 a. Correct b. Correct c. Correct d. Wrong. You can only *bring in* a new law, rule or system.
6 a. Wrong. You *stand down* from a position of power or importance. b. Wrong c. Correct d. Correct
7 a. Wrong. You *put forward* something such as a plan, scheme or solution so that it can be considered. b. Correct c. Wrong d. Correct
8 a. Correct b. Correct c. Wrong. You *are up to* a standard or task. d. Correct

3 Possible responses:

a. Someone might want to *stand down* because they can't *face up to* their responsibilities, they *are not up to* the job, or because they tried to *cover up* something wrong but were discovered.
b. President Nixon tried to *cover up* his involvement in the Watergate scandal.
c. They try to *win* people *over* by saying they will *bring in* new laws and *crack down on* corruption, by *putting forward* popular policies, and by saying they will not *go back on* their election promises.
d. I think the police should *crack down on* drug pushers.
e. I would like the government to *bring in* more laws to protect the environment.

Idiomatic expressions

4 a. *to be out of step with something* = not to be in agreement, harmony or conformity with something
b. *to keep an open mind* = to avoid forming an opinion or making a decision about something until all the facts are known
c. *to turn a blind eye to something* = to pretend not to notice something that would normally be criticized or punished

d. *to be out of touch* with something = to have no recent knowledge or information about something
e. to *be/hang in the balance* = to be undecided, at a critical point

Expression c. has a negative connotation, expression b. has a positive connotation.

5 a. I want to keep an open mind.
b. His life hangs/is hanging in the balance.
c. I am out of touch with recent developments.
d. He turned a blind eye.
e. Her opinions on this matter are out of step with those of the majority of people.

How multi-verb words work

6 a. Type 2 b. Type 1 c. Type 2 d. Type 2
e. Type 2 f. Type 1

What's the answer?

1 to keep your word/promise
2 to be/keep in touch with something
3a. to bring *something* in = to introduce a law, rule or system. but *to put something forward* = to offer an idea or proposal
3b. The meaning is similar, but you can only *stand down* from a position of power or importance.

Unit 3 Arts review

Presentation

One Hot *Summer*
Positive pints: quite enjoyable in places.
Negative points: storyline was complicated, so it took a long time to work out what was going on: surprise ending didn't work. it didn't *come off*; not a surprise when uncle *turns out* to be the real father; the book *put* her *off* reading any more of her work.

The Tempest
Positive points: had excellent write-ups in the press: it was superb; sense of mystery and magic *came across* very powerfully: JoannePassman's best production by far; sure it will be a huge success.

Suburban Blues
Positive points: amusing at times; the music and photography were out of this world.
Negative points: dark and melancholy at times: not clear what message John Allen was trying to put across; it's had mixed reviews in the press; storyline was impossible to understand – couldn't make head or tail of it: hero's behaviour at the end was out of character.

Checking understanding

1 g. 2 b. 3 i. 4 a. 5 h. 6 d. 7 c. 8 f. 9 e.

Practice

1 a. Susan Shaw brought out a slim volume of poetry last year.
b. Our attempt to climb the mountain in winter didn't come off.
c. Her behaviour was so strange that I didn't know what to make of her.
d. The author put across her ideas in very simple language.
e. I couldn't understand what was going on at the beginning of the film.
f. I thought the message of the play didn't come across very clearly.
g. The newspaper reviews put people off seeing the play.
h. I expected the music to be wonderful, but It didn't live up to my expectations.
i. At the end of the film it turns out that the hero is an American spy/the hero turns out to be an American spy.

2 a. Incorrect. *To come off* is used to talk about the success of a specific idea. plan or attempt,
b. Correct.
c. Correct.
d. Incorrect. To *come across* is used to talk about the communication of an idea or message. not about a whole book.
e. Incorrect. To make of *something* is usually used as a question (e.g. What do you make of *it?*) or in a negative statement (e.g. I didn't know what to make of it).
f. Incorrect. You don't form an impression of capital punishment.
g. Correct.

Idiomatic expressions

3 a. *out of this world* = fantastic, marvellous
b. out of *character* = something not typical of a person's usual behaviour
c. to *have mixed feelings about something* = to have both negative and positive Feelings about somethiig

d. *I can't make head or tail or it* (informal expression) = I can't understand it at all

How multi-word verbs work

5 a. The film had an excellent write-up in The Times.
b. The show is a sell-out.
c. The play is about the gradual break-up of their marriage.
d. The film is about a prison break-out.
e. She is trying to make a comeback.

What's the answer?

1 A writer or director puts across ideas, but the ideas *come across* to the reader or audience. *To* put *something* across is Type 2, separable and transitive. *To come* across is Type 1, intransitive and inseparable.
2 *To put something* off = to postpone something (Type 2), but to put *someone off doing something* = to discourage someone from doing something.

Unit 4 Going by appearances

Checking understanding

1 d. 2 b. 3 a. 4 e. 5 h. tic. 7 f. 8 g.

Practice

1 a. see through b. passing himself off c. had been taken in d. go by e. came across f. talked me into g. hand over h. get away with

2 a. No, you can't have the money. I refuse to hand it over.
b. She came across as a very decisive person.
c. They got away with several serious crimes.
d. He passed himself off as a policeman.
e. You should have seen through him immediately.
f. Correct
g. He *talked me into signing the cheque.*
h. I never go by first impressions.

3 Possible answers:
1 No, I never *go* by first impressions because I think they are usually wrong.
2 I probably come across as rather shy.
3 I think you shouldn't go by appearances, otherwise you can be easily taken *in*.

4 My brother *talked me into* having a holiday with him and it was *a* disaster.
5 I would *pass myself off as* a famous film star so I could visit Hollywood.

Idiomatic expressions

4 a. *Once bitten, twice* shy. = if one is deceived or has an unpleasant experience, one is more careful the next time
b. *Appearances can be deceptive.* = the way something looks does not always reflect its true nature
c. *Honesty is the* best policy. = dishonesty may seem more profitable for a short time, but in the long run there are more advantages in being honest

How multi-word verbs work

5 1 She talked me into 'buying a new *coat,*
2 The robbers tricked the bank manager into thinking they were genuine customers.
3 The Mafia frightened him into remaining silent.
4 She was forced into selling her house in order to pay off her debts.
5 The government was shamed into taking action.

What's the answer?

to talk someone out of doing something

Unit 5 Money! Money! Money!

Checking understanding

1 f. 2 e. 3 d. 4 b. 5 i. 6 h. 7 g. 8 c. 9 a.

Language note: *to* live *off someone* can sometimes have a negative connotation, e.g. *He lives* off *his parents* suggests he is unreasonably dependent on them for his income,

Practice

1 a. Many pensioners have to get by on very little money.
b. He calculated it would take him three years to pay off all his debts.
c. She accumulated a great deal of money by putting by a little every week.
d. His uncle died and he came into a fortune.
e. She set out to start her own business.
f. If I ever get into financial difficulties, I know I can always fall back on my brother for help.

g. She lives off the money she gets from selling her books.
h. She put her success dawn to luck.
i. My salary isn't keeping up *with* the cost of living.

2 Possible answers

a. ...I'd invest it and live off the interest.
b. ...to learn to play the piano well.
c. ...I'd look for another job.
d. ...I didn't have to support other people.
e. ...the increase in unemployment.

Idiomatic expressions

3 a. to live from hand to mouth
b. money doesn't grow on trees
c. to come/go down in the world
d. to make ends meet
e. to spend money like water
f. a rainy day

How multi-word verbs work

5 1 with 2 to 3 on 4 to 5 on 6 to 7 as
8 with 9 with 10 on

What's the answer?

a. to be in the black
b. to come/go up in the world

Unit 6 Crime doesn't pay

Preparation

Crime doesn't pay = crime does not provide you with any real profit 'because you are usually caught and punished in the end.

Checking understanding

1 i. 2 e. 3 b. 4 h. 5 g. 6 j. 7 c. 8 a.
9 f. 10 d.

Practice

1 1 A recent survey, *carried* out by a national newspaper, shows that the traditional two-parent family is breaking down and is gradually being replaced by single-parent families.

2 Bank robbers who managed to hide themselves In a time-lock safe in an attempt to steal £3 million. found they were unable to escape when their explosives Failed to go *off*. They *gave* themselves *up* when security guards opened the safe two days Iater.

3 A woman whose 6-year-old daughter *was* killed by a drunk driver has complained that the judge *let the man off* with *a* six-month suspended sentence and *a* €250 he. The Home Secretary has said he will be *setting up* a committee to look into the sentencing guidelines for such cases.

4 Shortly after the match, fighting suddenly *brake* out among the supporters of two rival football teams. The police *sealed off* the town centre In an attempt to contain the violence.

5 Jayne Wilson *owned up* to stealing £15,000 from the company where she worked. when she was caught red-handed by a security camera which recorded her placing the money in her briefcase. 'I was *taken aback* when I saw the recording.' said the managing director. 'I thought she was someone we could trust completely.'

Collocation

2 1 a. Correct b. Correct c. Wrong. This *is* the severest punishment possible. d. It depends en how serious the crime was. It Is correct if the crime was very serious and the punishment is less than expected. It is wrong if the crime was not serious.
2 a. Correct b. Wrong. You set *up* an organization or group of people to fulfil a task. c. Correct d. Correct
3 a. Correct b. Wrong. A committee is something you set up or establish. c. Correct d. Correct
4 a. Correct b. Correct c. Correct d. Wrong. A telephone cannot go *off*, i.e. ignite or detonate.
5 a. Wrong. A film is not something that st—— suddenly and violently, like a war or a fire. b. Correct c. Correct d. Correct
6 a. Correct b. Wrong. This meaning of to *break down* is only used about the Failure of relationships and communication between people. c. Correct d. Correct

3 Possible responses:

1 My alarm clock *goes off* at 6 a.m.
2 I would advise him to *give himself up* to the police and own *up* to the crime.

3 I would be *taken aback*. For example, if someone I thought was honest turned out to be a liar.
4 Injustice can cause riots to *break out*.
5 I would *let off* lightly the poor woman and the student.

Idiomatic expressions

4 a. *to catch someone red-handed* = to discover someone in the act of doing something wrong
b. *to keep to the straight and narrow path/way* = to live in an honest way, in conformity to strict moral and religious principles, not getting involved with criminal or immoral activities (of Biblical origin)
c. *poetic justice* = when someone is rewarded or punished in a perfectly suitable way, especially when it happens by chance
d. *the punishment should fit the crime* = the punishment should be suitable for the crime, not too severe or too lenient
e. *to take the law into your own hands* = to punish someone yourself according to your own ideas of justice, usually using force and breaking the law

How multi-word verbs work

6 The particle *off* is used with these verbs to give the idea of starting an explosive or violent reaction.

a. *to let something off* = to cause something to explode (e.g. bomb, gun, cannon)
b. *to spark something off* = to cause something violent to start (e.g. war, argument, debate, controversy, strike)
c. *to go off* = to explode, detonate, or ignite, to make a sudden loud noise (e.g. bomb, alarm)
d. *to trigger something off* = to cause something violent to start (e.g. war, fight, strike, debate, crisis)
e. *to set something off* = to cause something to explode (e.g. fireworks, explosives)

What's the answer?

To set up an investigation is to establish or start an investigation. *To carry out* an investigation is actually to do the investigation itself.

Unit 7 Selling like hot cakes

Presentation

1 False. Initially it got off to a bad start. It was only after an intensive advertising campaign that the drink *caught on* and sales *picked up*.
2 True. The plan *fell through*. They had to start again from scratch.
3 False. Last year the company *took on* extra staff, but this year sales have *fallen off* and they have had to *lay off* a hundred workers. They also decided to *back out of* an expensive project to produce a new kind of chocolate drink.
4 False. The company is keeping its head above water and may *take over* another company.
5 False. If there is an upturn in the economy then sales might *pick up*, but no one can be certain.

Checking understanding

1 g. 2 d. 3 c. 4 h. 5 f. 6 e. 7 i. 8 a. 9 b.

Practice

1 are falling off caught on back out of pick up take on taking over laying off come up with fallen through

Collocation

2 1a. Correct b. Wrong. You can only *come up with* something that is inventive, such as a suggestion, idea or solution. c. Correct. d. Correct
2a. Correct. b. Wrong. Only things which can become fashionable, such as a new idea, method, fashion, tune, or pastime, can *catch on*. c. Correct. d. Correct.
3 a. Correct b. Wrong. Only something such as a plan or arrangement can *fall through*. But we can say 'the search has been abandoned/*called off*'. c. Correct d. Correct
4 a. Wrong b. Wrong. Only things that can decrease in amount or number, such as sales, exports, economic growth, investment etc., can *fall off*. c. Correct d. Correct

3 Possible answers:

a. ...it was haunted.
b. ...she wanted to run it more efficiently.

c. ...it was too expensive.
d. ...the colours were too bright.
e. ...they cut prices.
f. ...of a fall in demand.
g. ...of the poor pay and working conditions.
h. ...cleaning the atmosphere.
i. ...I could double their profits.

4 *turnover* = the value of the goods or services that a company sells during a particular period of time
downturn = a decrease in the level. rate or success of something
takeover = the act of taking control of a company by buying it or a majority of its shares
upturn = an improvement in something

a. downturn b. takeover c. turnover d. upturn

Idiomatic expressions

5 a. to get off to a bad start
b. to sell like hot cakes
c. to start (something) from scratch
d. to go to the wall
e. to keep one's head above water

Possible answers:

1 I think a lot of companies will go to the wall.
2 The team got *off* to a *bad* start at the beginning of the season.
3 He decided to start again from scratch.
4 Our company is just managing to keep its head above water.
5 My friend's novel is selling like hot cakes.

How multi-word verbs work

7 a. The engine stopped working.
b. He stopped studying.
c. She stopped taking part in the competition.
d. The shop has stopped selling the jumpers because there aren't any more.
e. The species has stopped existing.
f. They have stopped being good friends.

What's the answer?

1 sales are picking up
2 to get off to a good/flying start
3 an upturn in the economy
4 to take someone on

Unit 8 Crisis? What crisis?

Presentation

1 There has been a *strong public outcry;* Opposition MPs were up in arms and calling for an emergency debate: they will do everything possible to make the Government back down: some Government MPs are refusing to back the Government.
2 They have ruled out any changes in policy; they are not going to *climb down:* there will be no U-turns: they will *stick* to their decision.
3 The outcome is by no means certain: the downfall of the Government is only a prediction; the Government can avoid defeat by backing *down*.
4 The PM is coming under fire from his own MPs: he is trying to *play down* the crisis.

Checking understanding

1 g. 2 c. 3 e. 4 a. 5 i. 6 d. 7 b. 8 h. 9 f.

Practice

1 Yesterday the Opposition claimed it is the only party that *stands for* social justice and the needs of ordinary people. They have *stepped up* pressure on the Government recently by *calling for* a general election this summer. They believe they will *bring down* the Government unless it *backs down over* its new economic policy.

Despite pressure from the Opposition. the Government has announced it will not *climb down* over its new economic policy. They say they will *stick to* the policy because it is the right one. Several political commentators believe the Government is trying to play *down* the crisis, If the economic situation does not improve soon, some Government MPs may begin to *speak out* against their own party.

Collocation

2 1 a. Correct b. Wrong. You can only *bring down* something that is in a position of power, such as a government or dictator, not a football team, law. or project. c. Wrong d. Wrong
2 a. Correct b. Correct c. Wrong, You can step *up* things such as attacks and production. because you increase the quantity of something. and you can *step up* things like security, pressure, and a campaign because

these are things that you can intensify with extra effort and attention. But you cannot *step up* prices. taxes or expenditure because this is easily done and does not require extra effort. d. Wrong

3 Our political party *stands* for equality and justice. We will never be afraid to *speak out against* corruption and inequality. We will always stand up for the weakest members of society. We want the government to *back/climb down over* its policy of cutting expenditure on health and education. The government has tried to *play* down the present crisis by saying the situation isn't very serious, but we know what the truth is. That is why we are *calling for* an immediate general election.

4 a. *an outcry* = an expression of strong disapproval or anger about something by the public or the media
  b. *to be outspoken* = to express one's opinions or criticisms without worrying about the reaction or disapproval of other people
  c. an outcome = the result of something
  d. *the downfall of someone/something* = the ruin or failure of someone/something that is powerful
  e. a *climb-down* = the act of admitting one is wrong and agreeing to accept the demands of someone else
  f. *a setback* = an event that puts someone or something in a worse position than before.

1 outspoken 2 outcome 3 outcry 4 downfall
5 climb-down 6 setback

Idiomatic expressions

5 1 *to be up in arms (over/about something)* = to be very angry and protest about something because one is strongly opposed to it
  2 *to make a U-turn (in something)* = to *make* a complete change in policy, direction, thinking. action. etc.
  3 *to* come *under fire* = to be criticized strongly

How multi-word verbs work

7 a, defeat b. defeat c. suppression d. defeat/suppression e. suppression

What's the answer?

to stand for something = to represent something, but *to stand up for someone/something* = to defend someone/something that is under attack

Unit 9 Happily ever after

Presentation

Helen

1 She met her future husband on a blind date.
2 She *fell* for him immediately. She thought he was wonderful.
3 Her parents thought he was a lovely person and *took* to him immediately.
4 She was over the moon. She thought it was the most wonderful thing that could ever have happened to her.
5 They are devoted to one another. They have always supported and helped one another. She has always stood *by* him. and he's never let *her down*. They are made for each other.

George

1 He met his wife at work.
2 He thought she was very nice and he gradually came to *look* on her as a Friend.
3 His mother couldn't understand what he *saw in* her, she thought she was very ordinary and not the right person for him.
4 He had second thoughts about it, but still got married a few months later.
5 They weren't really suited to one another. They saw one another in a different light after getting married. They *grew* apart, they had terrible arguments, he behaved badly and she couldn't forgive him. They *split up*.

Checking understanding

1 d. 2 i. 3 c. 4 g. 5 e. 6 f. 7 b. 8 j.
9 a. 10 h.

Practice

1 Possible answers:
  1 I look on you as my best friend.
  2 Did she stand by you?/She always stands by her friends.
  3 We've made (it) up.
  4 How can I make up for what I've done?
  5 Have the two of you grown apart over the years?
  6 He let me down again last night.
  7 They've split up.
  8 She really took to skiing.

9 I think he's fallen for you.
10 I don't understand what she sees in him.

2 Possible answers:

1 A good friend is someone who will *stand by* you in times of trouble, who will never *let you down*, and who will try to *make it up* with you if you have an argument.
2 I *look on* my sister as my best friend.
3 My brother *let me down*. He said he would take me with him to Paris but he didn't.
4 If I *let someone down*, I'd try to *make up for* it by doing something especially nice for them.
5 I think a lot of people *split up* because they *grow apart*, or they *fall for* someone else.

How multi-word verbs work

3 Type 1: grow apart, make up, split up
Type 2: let someone down
Type 3: fall for someone, take to someone/something, stand by someone, see in someone/something
Type 4: make up for something.

To look on someone as something is different.
To make it up and *to make it up with someone* are fixed expressions.

Idiomatic expressions

4 1 *a turning-point in something* = a moment when a very important change takes place
2 *out of the blue* = completely unexpected, without warning
3 *ups and downs* = a mixture of good and bad moments, happiness and sadness, success and failures, etc.
4 *to have second thoughts about something* = to have doubts about a decision one has made
5 *to see something in a different/new/fresh light* = to see something differently, e.g. as it appears in a particular situation
6 *give and take* = compromise, a willingness to do what someone else wants in order to reach a satisfactory result

5 1c. *Love is blind* = someone who is in love cannot see the faults of the loved one
2f. *to be over the moon* = to be very happy, delighted (informal)
3e. *to see the world through rose-coloured spectacles* = to see things as better or more pleasant than they actually are
4a. *to have your head in the clouds* = to be a dreamer, to be out of touch with reality, to have one's thoughts on other things
5d. *to be on cloud nine* = to be very happy (informal)
6b. *to have one's feet (firmly) on the ground* = to be practical and realistic

What's the answer?

1 *to fall for someone* = to have strong romantic feelings of love and attraction, but *to take to someone* = to begin to like someone
2 *to make up for something* = to compensate for something, but *to make up* = to become friends again

---

Unit 10 It takes all sorts

Preparation

It takes all sorts to make a world = the world is made of many sorts of people, and one should be tolerant of the differences

Presentation

1 Aunt: Although she's *getting on for* sixty, she recently took up karate and judo; has *taken to* riding a powerful motorbike; wears a leather jacket with *Hell's Angels* on the back; turned up at a party and danced wildly to rock music in order to *liven it up*; she doesn't act her age.
2 Art Teacher: She was always *going on about* Van Gogh's paintings; never allowed anyone to use the colour yellow; *picked on* speaker's best friend at school; burst into tears when a pupil *stood up to* her.
3 Cousin: He tends to show off; at eighteen shaved his hair off and started wearing a safety-pin through his nose; *dropped out of* university after one week in order to graduate from the university of life; wants to join a circus.

Checking understanding

1 f. 2 a. 3 g. 4 i. 5 e. 6 c. 7 d. 8 b. 9 h.

Practice

1 a. liven it up
b. dropped out
c. showing off
d. stand up to

- e. is getting on for
- f. picking on
- g. stand out
- h. taken to
- i. going on about

2 a. She tried to liven up the discussion by *saying* something controversial.
- b. If he's always picking on you, *you* should stand up to him.
- c. She is getting on for ninety.
- d. He makes himself stand out in a crowd by showing off.
- e. Correct
- f. They're always going on about the state of the economy.
- g. She's taken to playing golf at *the* weekends.

3 Possible responses:
- a. He/She is getting on *for* ...
- b. If someone was always *picking* on me I would *stand* up *to* them.
- c. I'd *liven it up* by dancing or playing loud rock music.
- d. I *dropped* out of studying Chinese because I found it too difficult.
- e. My cousin is always showing *off*.
- f. My brother is always going on *about* cars.
- g. I've *taken to* getting up earlier in the morning.

idiomatic expressions

5 1 *to have a memory like a sieve* = to have a bad memory, forget things easily
2 *to know one's own mind* = to know what one wants and have clear opinions
3 *to put oneself in someone's shoes* = *to* imagine what it is like to be in someone else's position or situation
4 *on the spur of the moment* = suddenly and without thinking
5 *to have a mind of your own* = to have a strong and independent character. not be easily influenced by others
6 *to have someone in stitches* = to make someone laugh uncontrollably
7 *to take something to heart* = to be greatly affected or *upset* by something
8 *to be in the public eye* = to be on TV and in the newspapers frequently, known by everyone
9 *to have a heart of gold* = to be very kind and generous
10 *to keep oneself to oneself* = to live quietly and not mix with other people
11 *a shoulder to cry on* = a person who listens to someone's problems and offers sympathy and understanding
12 *to see things in black and white (terms)* = to see things in a simple and uncomplicated way, not appreciating important details or complexities
13 *to speak one's mind* = to say clearly and openly what one thinks without fear
14 *to get to the top* = *to* achieve *the greatest success*, reach the most important position

How multi-word verbs work

7 The particle into can be used with some verbs to describe a process of change from one state to another.

What's the answer?

In sentence a., *to take to* = to begin to like someone/something.
In sentence b., *to take to* = to begin to do something as a habit or pastime.

Unit 11 Proverbs

Preparation

When in Rome do as the Romans do = when someone is away from home. they should adapt to the local customs
Birds of a feather flock together = people who have similar interests. tastes or character are often found together
All that glitters is not gold = do not judge something by its attractive appearance, *as* appearances can be deceptive

Reading

1 Some proverbs say what they mean in a simple and direct way, but with others you have to find a more general meaning from the literal meaning.
2 Because they were often translated from language to language.
3 Because of social development and the changes in manners and morals.
4 Do not overuse them. try to use them in appropriate contexts, and use them with complete accuracy.

Presentation and Practice

1 a. It's *no use crying over split milk* = there is no use being upset about something that cannot be changed. what's done cannot be undone

b. *Variety is the spice of life* = the chance to do different things and meet different people makes life more interesting and enjoyable

c. *You can't have your cake and eat it* = you have to choose between two things, you cannot have both

d. *The proof of the pudding is in the eating* = the only way to tell the real value of something is by putting it into practice or use

2 2 f.

3 i. *It takes all sorts to make a world* = the world is made of many sorts of people. and one should be tolerant of the differences

4 c. *Where there's a will there's a way* = If someone is determined to do something, they will find a way of doing it

5 e. *All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy* = someone who works all the time without any form of recreation becomes dull and uninteresting

6 b.

7 d.

8 a. *Two's company, three's a crowd* = If two people are happy together, it's better not to introduce the presence of a third person

9 h. *When the cat's away the mice will play* = when the person in authority is absent, the other people can do as they like and perhaps misbehave

4 1 c. 2 d. 3 e. 4 i. 5 g. 6 f. 7 a. 8 h. 9 j. 10 b.

A leopard never changes its spots = people cannot change their basic character or nature

Don't cross *your bridges before you come to them* = don't worry about things before they happen, as they may not happen

Give him an inch and he'll take a mile = if you agree to someone's demands in a small way. they will take advantage of you and want more

You're making a mountain out of a molehill = you're treating something as difficult or a serious problem when it is not

Don't count your chickens *before they're hatched* = *don't* be certain of success until it happens

Don't put the cart before the horse = don't do things in the wrong order

A bird in the hand is worth *two in the bush* = it is better to be content with what one has than to reject it in the hope of getting something better, as this may not happen

It's the last straw *that breaks the camel's back* = an additional small problem that makes an already difficult situation intolerable

You scratch my back and I'll scratch yours = if you help me or do me a Favour, I'll help you

5 Similar meaning: 1 and 4, 5 and 9

1 *Moderation in all* things = one should avoid extremes

4 Enough *is as good as a feast* = enough is as good as a large quantity of something. so one should have seasonable needs

5 There's *no arguing about tastes* = everybody has different likes and dislikes. and taste is a personal thing. so it is a waste of time to argue about it

9 *One man's meat is another man's poison* = what is good or pleasing to one person may be bad or unsuitable for another

Contradictory meaning: 2 and 6, 3 and 7, 8 and 10

2 *He* who hesitates *is lost* = if someone does not make up their mind quickly, they can lose any chance of success

6 *Look before you* leap = consider something carefully before taking action

3 *Out of sight. out of* mind = someone or something that is not seen is soon forgotten

7 *Absence makes the heart grow fonder* = *one* feels more affection for someone when they are absent

8 Many *hands make* light work = the more people there are to do a task, the easier it is and the more quickly it is finished

10 *Too* many *cooks spoil the* broth = if too many people are involved in doing the same thing, It is spoilt because different people will want to do it differently.

Listening

Possible answers:

1 There's no arguing about tastes, OR
One man's meat is another man's poison.

2 It takes all sorts to make a world.

3 You're making a mountain out of a molehill.

4 It's no use crying over spilt milk.

5 Variety is the spice of life.

6 Two's company, *three's* a crowd.

7 It's easy to be wise after the event.

8 Out of sight, out of mind.

9 Where there's a will, there's a way. OR
If at first you don't succeed, try, try, try again.

10 While the cat's away. the mice will play.

Making Headway is a supplementary series for teachers and students of English. It is designed to complement the *Headway* coursebooks, but can also be used with other main coursebooks.

The titles in the series come in pairs, and cover two consecutive levels, from pre-intermediate to advanced.

Titles have been selected with a view to meeting the needs and interests of students. At the lower levels, the books are very practical and help learners to function in an English-speaking environment. At the higher levels, more specialized interests and needs are catered for,

Phrasal Verbs and Idioms

This book is for adult advanced learners who want to study and learn to use English multi-word verbs and idiomatic expressions. The book

- introduces multi-word verbs and idioms in lively and memorable contexts
- provides work designed to encourage learners to explore collocation
- is ideal for class work, self-study, or a combination of both
- contains twelve self-standing units, tapescripts, and an explanatory answer key

ISBN 0-19-435542-X

9 780194 355421

MAKING HEADWAY

Phrasal Verbs and Idioms

Upper-Intermediate

as a drum
literature.

Graham Workman

Oxford University Press

Making Headway
Upper-Intermediate

Phrasal Verbs and Idioms

Graham Workman

Oxford University Press

Oxford University Press
Great Clarendon Street. Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford New York
Athens Auckland Bangkok Bogota
Bombay Buenos Aires Calcutta
Cape Town Dar es Salaam Delhi
Florence Hong Kong Istanbul Karachi
Kuala Lumpur Madras Madrid
Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi Paris
Singapore Taipei Tokyo Toronto

and associated companies in
Berlin Ibadan

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are trade marks of
Oxford University Press

ISBN 0 19 435509 8

© Oxford University Press 1993

First published 1993
Third impression 1996

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system. or transmitted. in any form or by any means. electronic. mechanical. photocopying. recording, or otherwise. without the prior written permission of Oxford University Press.

This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not. by way of trade or otherwise, be lent. resold. hired out. or otherwise circulated without the publisher's prior consent in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition including this condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

Typeset by Wyvern Typesetting Limited.
Bristol

Printed in Malta by Interprint

Acknowledgements

Illustrations by
Kevin Baverstock
Caroline Church
David Murray
Nigel Paige
Bill Piggins

Location photography by
Rob Judges

The publishers would like to thank the following for their permission to reproduce photographs:

Barnaby's Picture Library
Channel 4 News
Format Partners Photo Library
Impact Photos Ltd
Network Photographers
The Telegraph Colour Library Ltd

Contents

Foreword 4

Introduction 5

Introductory unit 7

1 Getting down to work 13

2 Looking round a flat 19

3 Healthy body, healthy mind 24

4 A place of your own 29

5 Getting away from it all 33

6 Family relationships 38

7 You are what you wear 43

8 A narrow escape 48

9 Getting on in life 53

10 A nightmare journey 59

11 What's in the news? 64

12 Across a crowded room 70

Tapescripts 76

Answer key 88

Foreword

Students of English realize very early on in their learning career that prepositions present a problem. They collocate with nouns. adjectives. past participles, and verbs, without rules or logic. Students simply have to learn that ***interested*** is followed by ***in,*** and ***good*** is followed by ***at.*** and ***go home*** has no preposition. Multi-word verbs, or phrasal verbs as they are often referred to, present a very special problem. English can make verb and particle (preposition or adverb) combinations easily and freely. The word ***particle*** has been used throughout this book, in order to avoid having to make the adverb/preposition distinction (to most students. the word after the verb in a multi-word verb is always a preposition). Multi-word verbs exist throughout the language. They express everyday actions such as ***Turn on the light:*** they can also have a variety of meanings such as ***Things worked out well. We worked out the problem. She worked out in the gym, I've never been able to work him out.*** and ***The final price works out at £10.***

Given the complexity of the area. the surprise is that learners are very keen to master it. They seem to sense that multi-word verbs are a vital component of English, and spoken English in particular. There is also the feeling that an understanding of common idioms will increase their comprehension, though most students instinctively avoid trying to produce them. The best time to address these areas is at upper-intermediate and advanced levels, when students already have a certain grammatical and lexical foundation.

This book goes a long way to helping students to unravel the complexity of multi-word verbs, preposition and adverb collocations. and idiomatic expressions. Students will find staged guidance in understanding the systems, and are given a variety of exercise practice in recognition and production. ***Phrasal Verbs and Idioms*** will find its place in self-access centres, for learners to study on their own: and teachers will welcome the texts, listenings, explanations, and exercises. which hare clear aims and are highly accessible for thorough classroom exploitation.

John and Liz Soars
Series editors

Introduction

Who this book is for

This book is for students who are studying Headway Upper-Intermediate or any other coursebook at a similar level. It can also be used by students who are preparing for Cambridge FCE examinations.

How the book is organized

The materials in each unit are organized around themes such as work, health. holidays, accommodation, family relationships, etc. The units are relatively free-standing and can therefore be used to supplement existing coursebooks. The book is also designed to provide students with an idea of how multi-word verbs work. so there is some advantage in working through the units systematically. Some of the later units recycle multi-word verbs used in earlier units.

The book contains over 200 multi-word verbs. They have been selected according to the theme of each unit, as well as level of difficulty and usefulness. Four main types of multi-word verb are introduced, and various types of practice exercises are provided for consolidation work.

How to use the book

To the teacher

1 Use the Introductory unit before any other units in the book. This should take about 45–60 minutes of classroom time. All the remaining units contain enough material for approximately 60–90 minutes of teaching.

2 The units follow a reasonably consistent pattern:

The **Preparation** section is designed as a *brief* lead in to the theme of the unit, not lasting more than five minutes.
The **Presentation** is usually a listening or reading text, followed by an exercise in which multi-word verbs are matched with their definitions.
The **Drills** provide controlled oral practice of the new multi-word verbs. but they can also be used as prompts for later revision work, or written controlled practice.
The **Practice** section gives students the opportunity to use the multi-word verbs to talk about their own experiences and ideas. There are also practice exercises for prepositions and idiomatic expressions.
How multi-word verbs work deals with the systems of multi-word verbs and the meaning of some particles.

What's the answer? is designed to check that students have understood the important differences between a few multi-word verbs. It can be used as a game or revision activity.

The Jokes provide some light relief. They are related to the theme of the unit and illustrate some humorous uses of multi-word verbs.

The Writing section provides further written consolidation of the language covered in the unit.

3 It is important that students are given some activities for revising the multi-word verbs they learn in the book. One simple revision activity is to put students into pairs and tell student A to read the definitions of some the multi-word verbs while student B says what the multi-word verb is. Alternatively, some multi-word verbs can be put into a ***'Find someone who'*** activity as a warmer for the start of a lesson (e.g. 'Find someone who sets off for school very early in the morning'). Students can be asked to act out some of the dialogues on the tape, and their spoken or written errors with multi-word verbs can be used in a ***Grammar Auction*** game.

To the student working independently

1. Read and listen to the presentation reading and listening texts. using the cassette and the tapescripts. Then do the exercises which follow.
2. Test yourself by listening and responding to the drills on the cassette. Alternatively, use the tapescript of the drills – you can cover up the answer and see if you produce the right response.
3. Work through the written exercises in the book and check your answers in the Answer key.
4. Find a friend to practise the spoken exercises with, or write out what you would say.
5. Do the free writing activities and then find someone who can correct them.

Introductory unit

What are multi-word verbs?

Multi-word verbs are verbs that combine with one or two particles (a preposition **and/or** an adverb).

*I'm **looking for** my keys. Have you seen them?*
(verb + preposition)

***Look out!** There's a car coming!*
(verb + adverb)

*A snob is someone who **looks down on** people of a lower social class.*
(verb + adverb + preposition)

If the addition of the **particle(s)** changes the meaning of the verb, it is usually called a *phrasal verb* because it has the meaning of a phrase. However, there are so many **different** types of phrasal verbs that it is easier to call all combinations of verb + **particle(s)** *multi-word verbs.*

Literal or non-literal meaning?

Literal **meaning**
Look at the following example, where the verb and particle keep their separate literal meaning.

*He **looked up** and saw a plane.*

Here the meaning of the verb and the particle have not changed.

*He **looked up*** = He looked + up (in the direction of the sky).

Non-literal meaning
Sometimes the addition of the **particle(s)** creates a multi-word verb that has a different meaning.

*He **looked up** all the new words in the dictionary.*
In this sentence, *look up* = to **find** information in a reference book.

1 The first three example sentences on this page all have multi-word verbs with non-literal meanings. Look at them and decide what they mean.

to look for **someone/something** = ____________________
to look out = ____________________
to look down on someone = ____________________

2 Look at the verbs below. Write L next to them if they have a literal meaning and N if they have a non-literal meaning. If the meaning is non-literal, say what it is. For example:

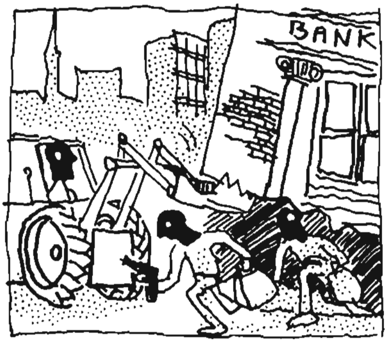

L *He **held up** the World Cup and everybody cheered.*
N *Armed robbers **held up** the bank and escaped with £50,000.*
(to hold up = to rob a place or person, usually with a gun)

a. ☐ He *ran out of* the building to escape the fire.
b. ☐ We've *run out of* coffee. Would you like tea instead?
c. ☐ He *looked through* the window to see if she was at home.
d. ☐ She *put* her bag *on* the desk and opened it.
e. ☐ The police are *looking into* the cause of the accident.
f. ☐ The car *went over* the cliff and crashed into the sea.
g. ☐ Can you *look through* my homework to see if it's correct?
h. ☐ He *put* the radio *on* so he could listen to the news.
i. ☐ She *looked into* the room but couldn't see him.
j. ☐ Can you *go over* your explanation once more, please?

Semi-literal meaning

The meaning of some multi-word verbs is completely different from the separate literal meanings of the verb and particle.

*I want to **give up** smoking.* = I want to stop smoking.

However, some multi-word verbs have a semi-literal meaning: the basic meaning of the verb remains the same, but the particle adds its own particular meaning.

*We decided to **drive on**.* = We decided to continue driving.

In this example, the particle *on* gives the idea of *continuing with something.*

The meaning of particles

Some particles can have a general meaning when combined with a certain group of verbs. For example, the particle *round* can be used to give the meaning of *visiting someone informally.*

*You can **call round** any time. We'll always be pleased to see you.*
*Would you like to **come round** on Saturday? We'll be in all day.*
*Let's **ask** Ann and Mark **round** for a meal next week.*
*I'll **drop round** and see him on my way home from work.*
*She isn't here at the moment. She's **gone round** to see the woman next door.*

3 What is the general meaning of the particle *over* in all the examples below?

*The wind was so strong it **blew over** the garden wall.*
*As he entered the room he **tripped over** and fell onto the floor.*
*The car **knocked over** a man on a bicycle.*

*She placed her bicycle carefully against the wall but it **fell over**.*
*Our cat was **run over** by a lorry last week.*
*The little girl **pushed** him **over** and he fell onto some glass.*

The frequency and style of multi-word verbs

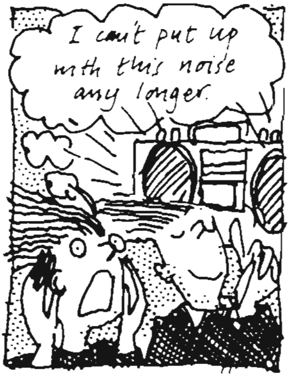
I can't put up with this noise any longer.

(informal spoken English)

Multi-word verbs are frequently used in everyday spoken English and they usually have an informal style. Quite often there is no single word which has exactly the same meaning as the multi-word verb, but for some of them there is a Latin-based verb which has an equivalent meaning. However, these Latin-based verbs tend to be used in more formal contexts.

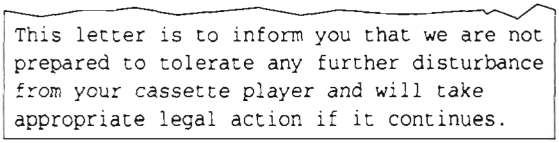

This letter is to inform you that we are not prepared to tolerate any further disturbance from your cassette player and will take appropriate legal action if it continues.

(formal written English)

When a more formal style is required, as in an official report or announcement, non-literal multi-word verbs are usually replaced with more formal words and expressions. However, sometimes there is little difference in the degree of formality between multi-word verbs and their equivalents.

*I've **picked up** a cold. = I've **caught** a cold.*

Multiple meanings

The same multi-word verb can have several different meanings:

1 I finally *worked out* the answer to the problem.
2 I am fit and strong because I *work out* in the gymnasium for an hour every day.
3 I *worked out* how much it would cost me to travel across Europe by train.
4 He's a very strange person. I can't *work* him *out*.

4 Match the different meanings of *work out* in the sentences above with the definitions below.

a. to do physical exercises
b. to understand someone
c. to calculate something
d. to find a solution to something

Word order

Each multi-word verb has its own rule for word order. Multi-word verbs which have more than one meaning can have several word order rules. Some descriptions of these rules are too complex to be useful, but there are four basic types which cover most multi-word verbs.

The four basic types

Type 1 multi-word verbs
Some multi-word verbs are intransitive (i.e. they don't take an object). We can use these multi-word verbs in a sentence on their own or continue the sentence in any way we like in order to add further information:

*John **called round**.*
*John **called round** last night.*
*John **called round** to see you.*
*John **called round** because he wanted to borrow some sugar.*

It is impossible to separate the verb and the particle.

Not ~~John called last night round~~.
Not ~~John called to see you round~~.

Type 1 multi-word verbs: intransitive + inseparable

Type 1 multi-word verbs are written in a dictionary with nothing after them (i.e. without *someone* or *something*) to show they are intransitive and inseparable: *to call round.*

Type 2 multi-word verbs
Type 2 multi-word verbs are transitive (i.e. they take a direct object) and separable (i.e. it is possible to separate the verb and the particle). For example, these two sentences have the same meaning:

*He **looked up** the word in the dictionary.*
*He **looked** the word **up** in the dictionary.*

If an object pronoun is used (*me/you/him/her/it/us/them*), the particle must always come after the object pronoun:

*He **looked** it **up**.* *Not* ~~He looked up it~~.

In other words, you have to separate the verb and the particle when you use an object pronoun.

Type 2 multi-word verbs: transitive + separable

look up	the word	
look	the word	up
	it	

Type 2 multi-word verbs are written with *someone* and/or *something* between the verb and the particle to show they can be separated: *to look something up.*

5 Write your own example sentences with the following Type 2 multi-word verbs.

to work something out	to switch something off
to turn something on	to run someone over
to ask someone round	to fill something in

Use both noun objects and pronoun objects to show that the particle can be separated from the verb.

*I **worked out** the meaning of the word from context. I **worked it out**.*

Type 3 multi-word verbs
Type 3 multi-word verbs are transitive and it is impossible to separate the verb and the particle by the noun object or the pronoun object:

*I'm **looking for** my keys.* *Not* ~~I'm looking my keys for~~.
I'm ***looking for*** *them.* *Not* ~~I'm looking them for~~.

Type 3 multi-word verbs: transitive + inseparable

look for	my keys them

Type 3 multi-word verbs are written with *someone* and/or *something* after the particle to show that they are transitive and inseparable: *to look for someone/something.*

6 Look at the following sentences and decide if the multi-word verbs are Type 1, Type 2, or Type 3.

a. I haven't got time to read your report now, so I'll look through it later.
b. The children woke up several times in the night.
c. I don't like getting up very early in the morning.
d. It's very dark in here. Can you put the light on, please?
e. I work out in a gymnasium because it helps to reduce stress.
f. She went over it several times but I still didn't understand.
g. The wind was so strong it almost blew me over.
h. I think the committee should look into it.
i. I'm afraid I've broken the vase. I knocked it over while I was polishing the table.
j. On Saturday we'll drop round to see if you need anything.

Type 4 multi-word verbs
Type 4 multi-word verbs are always transitive and have two particles which are inseparable.

*He looks **down on** other people.*	*Not* ~~He looks down other people on~~. *Not* ~~He looks other people down on~~.
*He **looks down on** them.*	*Not* ~~He looks down them on~~. *Not* ~~He looks them down on~~.

Type 4 multi-word verbs: transitive + two inseparable particles

Type 4 multi-word verbs are written with *someone* and/or *something* after the two particles: *to look down on someone.*

Someone* and/or *something

Some multi-word verbs can be used to talk about people (*someone*) and things (*something*) without any difference in meaning. In a dictionary these verbs have *someone/something* after them. However, some multi-word verbs change their meaning depending on whether they are talking about people or things. For example, *to get on with someone* and *to get on with something* are not the same:

*Do you **get on with** your neighbours?* = Do you have a good relationship with your neighbours?

*How are you **getting on with** your studies?* = What progress are you making with your studies?

More than one type

A few multi-word verbs can behave like Type 1 *and* Type 4:

How do you get on with your boss?	(Type 4)
We get on very well.	(Type 1)
How are you getting on with your studies?	(Type 4)
I'm getting on very well at the moment.	(Type 1)

A few others can behave like Type 1 *and* Type 3:

He tripped over and hurt his knee.	(Type 1)
He tripped over the carpet.	(Type 3)

7 Put the following multi-word verbs under the headings below.

to get on (with something)
to hold something up
to run out (of something)
to fall over (something)
to put up with someone/something
to get on (with someone)
to push someone/something over
to come round

Type 1	**Type 2**	**Type 3**	**Type 4**

1

Getting down to work

Preparation

Work in pairs. Do you have any of the following study problems? If you do, discuss them with your partner.

In class

- ☐ It's difficult to concentrate.
- ☐ You can't follow the lesson.
- ☐ You don't like the subject.
- ☐ Other students are much better than you.
- ☐ Other problems (What?)

Outside class

- ☐ You have nowhere quiet to study.
- ☐ You lack self-discipline.
- ☐ It's difficult to begin studying.
- ☐ You don't have enough time.
- ☐ Other problems (What?)

Presentation

George had problems with studying, so he wrote to a magazine problem page for advice. Find out what his study problems are and tell your partner about four of them.

Dear Marjorie

I'm having problems with my studies at school. I find it difficult to get down to work in the evenings and I can't concentrate on anything at the moment. I spend most of my time listening to records or watching TV instead of doing my homework. The other students in my class are much better than I am and I have difficulty in keeping up with them. I sometimes have problems with following the lessons as well. I can't always take down the important things my teacher says because I write so slowly. She has told me that I'm falling behind with my studies. I'm not good at writing essays and I usually hand in my homework late because I put off doing it until the last minute. So I often have to invent silly excuses to explain why I haven't done the work. I'm sure I'm not going to get through my final exams in June. I scraped through the mock exams last February with 54% – all the other students passed with flying colours. I'm now so far behind that I don't know how I'm going to catch up with them. My teacher spent some time going through my homework with me but she found so many mistakes that I felt even more depressed. What do you suggest I do?

Yours desperately

George

Work with your partner. Underline the multi-word verbs in the letter and try to work out what they mean.

Checking understanding

1 Match the multi-word verbs in A with the definitions in B.

A	B
1 to get down to doing something	a. to be behind with something, not at the level expected
2 to keep up with someone/something	b. to start work on something
3 to take something down	c. to postpone, to decide to do something at a later date
4 to fall behind (with something)	d. to pass an exam or test
5 to hand something in	e. to check that something is correct, to examine something
6 to put something off	f. to reach the same standard or position as someone else
7 to get through (something)	g. to give something to someone in a position of authority
8 to scrape through (something)	h. to remain at the same standard or position as someone else
9 to catch up (with someone/something)	i. to record in writing what someone is saying
10 to go through something	j. to pass an exam but with a very low grade

2 Look at the pictures. How are the horses doing? Complete the sentences below, using multi-word verbs.

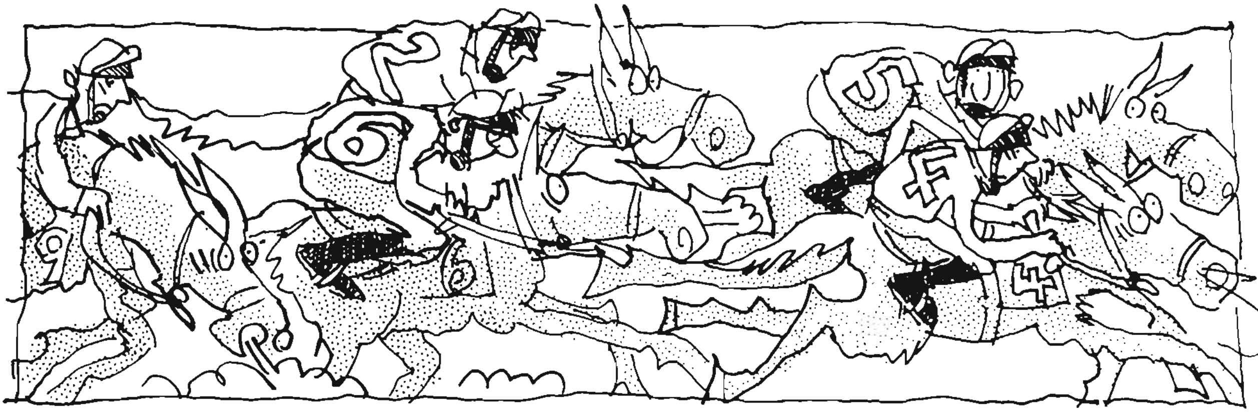

1 Number 9 is ________ .

2 Number 6 is ________ number 2.

3 Number 5 is ________ number 4.

Drills

T.1

Listen to the sentences on the tape. Replace the verbs in each sentence with a multi-word verb from this unit, and repeat the sentence. After a pause you will hear the correct multi-word verb. After another pause you will hear the whole sentence.

Practice

1 Ask your partner the questions below. Try to use the multi-word verbs from this unit in your questions and answers.

A *How are you* ***getting on with*** *your studies?*
B *At the moment I'm* ***falling behind*** *a little, so I'll have to work harder to* ***catch up with*** *the rest of the class.*

a. How are you getting on with your studies?
b. What things do you write down in lessons?
c. Do you always do your homework immediately?
d. How do you check there are no mistakes in your work before you give it to your teacher?
e. How do you think you will do in your future exams?

2 Fill in the gaps below.

to have difficulty ________ (do*ing*) something
to have problems ________ (do*ing*) something
to concentrate ________ (do*ing*) something

to be good/quite good
not good/bad ________ (do*ing*) something
awful/hopeless

3 Use the phrases in the boxes above to write some sentences about yourself. Then discuss them with your partner. Find out how many things you have in common.

A *I'm good at using computers and learning languages. What are you good at?*
B *I'm quite good at using computers, but I have problems with learning languages. I have difficulty in remembering the grammar rules!*

Idiomatic expressions

4 What does *The other students passed with flying colours* mean?
How would you say the same thing in your own language?

5 Work with your partner. Look at the expressions in *italics* and work out what they mean. Do you have similar expressions in your own language?

The written exam was difficult, but the oral exam was *a piece of cake.*
It will be easier if we work on this exercise together. *Two heads are better than one.*
Her teacher told her that if she wanted to catch up with the rest of the class and pass her exams, she would have to *burn the midnight oil* for several weeks.
I passed the exam *by the skin of my teeth.* The pass mark was 50% and I got 51%.
When I went to school the teachers used to make us *learn* poems *by heart.*
On one occasion I *learnt* a whole speech *parrot fashion* – I didn't understand a word of it.

6 Now discuss the following questions:

- What exams have you passed by the skin of your teeth or with flying colours?
- How useful is it to learn things parrot fashion?
- What things did you learn by heart at school? Can you still remember them?
- What are the arguments for and against learning things by heart?
- What do you think is a good way to learn multi-word verbs and idiomatic expressions?

How multi-word verbs work
The particle *through* can be used with some verbs to give the idea of *reading something* (sometimes quickly) in order to find information.

go through something
read through something
look through something

The particle *through* can also be used with some verbs to give the idea of *completing something*, such as an exam or test.

scrape through something
get through something
sail through something (to succeed in something without any difficulty)

Through can also be used to describe completing a process of thought.

think something through (to consider something in detail in order to understand it completely and then make a decision or take action)

The particle *down* can be used with some verbs to give the idea of *recording something in writing.*

write something down/put something down
(to write or type words or numbers)

get something down
(to manage to write down what someone is saying, usually with difficulty)

copy something down
(to write down something that is spoken or displayed)

note something down
(to make short notes about something so they can be referred to later)

7 Write the correct idiomatic expression under each of the pictures.

a. It's very easy!

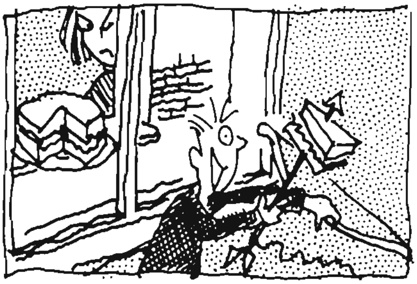

b. Let's do this together!

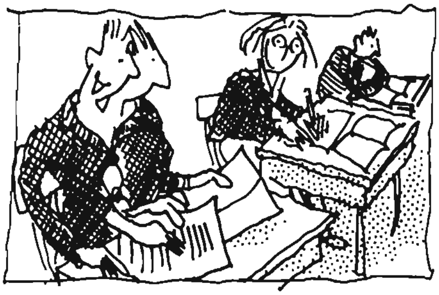

c. Exams soon!

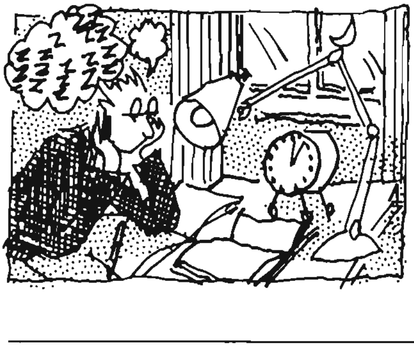

d. Fantastic!

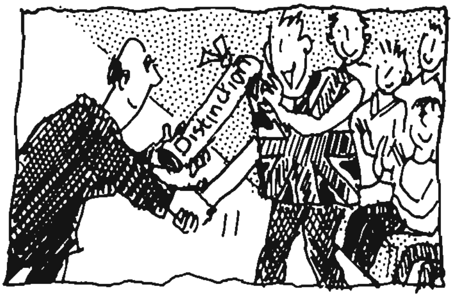

8 Complete the sentences below with suitable multi-word verbs. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

ADVICE ON DOING EXAMS

Many people don't ______ their exams or only manage to ______ them with a very low grade because they make two simple mistakes: they often choose the wrong questions to answer and they don't plan their essays in sufficient detail. So here is some advice.

1 When you get your exam paper, ______ all the questions before you choose which ones you want to answer
2 When you have done this, ______ on a spare piece of paper any relevant ideas that come to mind.
3 Next, ______ what you want to say in your essay before you begin writing.
4 Make a plan and then start your essay.

This advice does not guarantee you will ______ all your exams without any difficulties at all, but it will help you to avoid making major mistakes.

What's the answer?

What is the difference between *to keep up with* and *to catch up with*?

Jokes

Teacher *Smith, you should have been here at nine o'clock!*
Smith *Why, what happened?*

Mother *How are you getting on with your exams?*
Son *Not bad. The questions are easy. It's the answers I have problems with!*

Speaking

Work with your partner. Take turns to use rolecards A and B. Give yourself time to prepare your role and think about the multi-word verbs and expressions you might use.

Rolecard A

You have the following problems with your studies:
- difficulty in starting to study
- problems with doing homework
- the level of the other students in your class
- lack of progress
- worries about the exams in June
- any other problems

Talk to your partner and ask for advice.
You can decide to accept the advice that he or she gives: *Yes, that's a good idea.*
Or you can reject it: *That's easier said than done.*

Rolecard B

Your partner is going to tell you about his or her problems with studying.
Give as much helpful advice as you can.
When giving advice, you can say:
Have you tried . . . + ***ing****?*
Why don't you try . . . + ***ing****?*

Writing

Write a letter replying to the one on page 13. Give George advice about his study problems. Remember to sound encouraging!

2 Looking round a flat

Preparation

Work in pairs. Discuss the following questions.

- How would you improve the decoration of your classroom?
- Look at the picture of the flat below. What changes would you make to improve it?

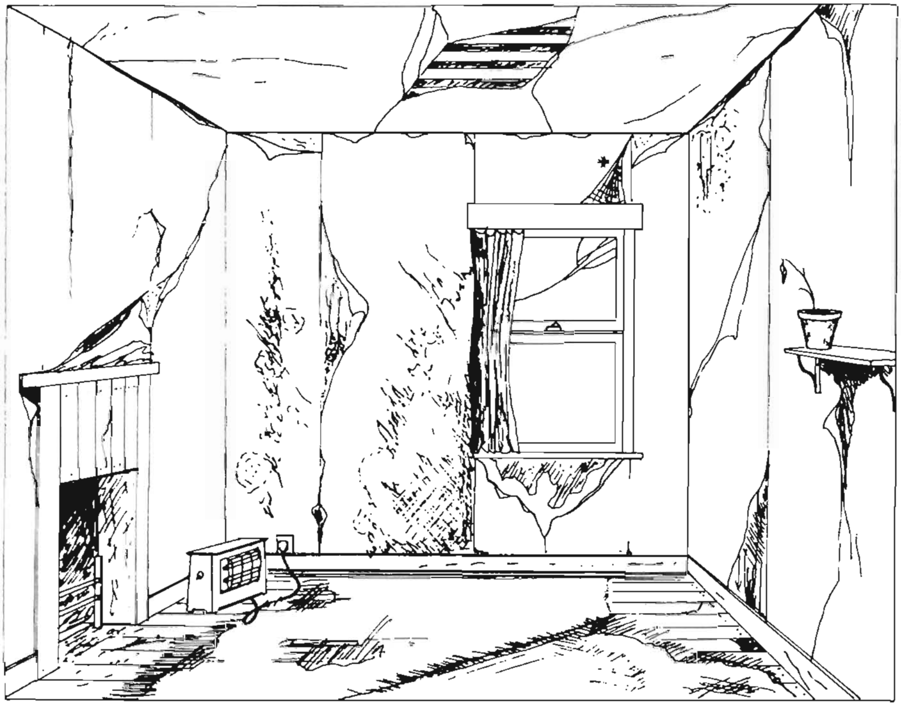

FLAT
FOR SALE
One-bedroom flat, needs some attention, lots of potential, convenient location, vacant possession. Available now.

Presentation

Ann saw the advertisement for the flat above. She contacted the estate agent and asked to look round it. He showed her round it the following day.

- What do you think Ann will say when she looks round the flat?
- What do you think the estate agent will say?

T.2a

Now listen to their conversation and answer the following questions.

1 What needs doing to the flat?
2 Does she decide to buy it?

Checking understanding

put something in
talk something over
take something out
move in
put something up
throw something out
come off
see to something
do something up
think something over

1 Replace the words in *italics* in the sentences below with the multi-word verbs in the box. The first one has been done for you.

a. Nothing has been done to this flat for a long time. It needs new curtains and a new carpet. The doors and walls also need painting. It needs doing up (*decorating/renovating*).
b. The wallpaper was very old and _________ (*wasn't sticking to/attached to*) the walls.
c. The fireplace was old and ugly, so they _________ (*removed it*).
d. The house was cold and damp, so they had central heating _________ (*installed*).
e. There was nowhere to put any books, so they decided to _________ (*fix in place*) some shelves.
f. The carpets were old and full of holes, so he _________ (*disposed of them by putting them in the dustbin*).
g. There was a serious problem with the roof. The rain was coming in and making everything wet. It needed _________ (*repairing/dealing with*) immediately.
h. Before I make a decision I need to talk to my husband about it and see what he thinks. I must _________ (*discuss it*) with him.
i. We would like to _________ (*start living there*) as soon as possible.
j. It's a good idea, but I need time to _________ (*consider it carefully*) before I make a decision.

◀ **T.2a**

2 Now listen to the tape again and check your answers.

Drills

T.2b

You are looking round the flat with Ann. Agree with everything she says, using the multi-word verbs in the prompts.

Practice

T.2c

1 The picture opposite shows a house in good condition. Listen to a description of how the house used to look before it was done up. Make notes and then report back on the changes that have been made.

Example
The roof has been seen to.

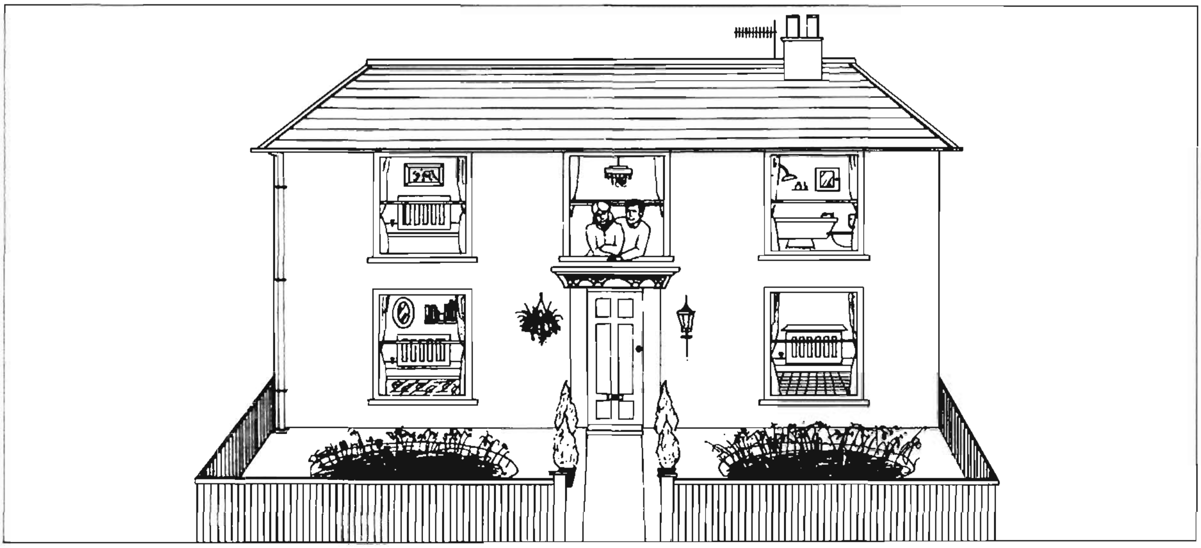

need + gerund

This construction is passive in meaning.

*The roof needs **seeing to**. = The roof needs **to be seen to**.*

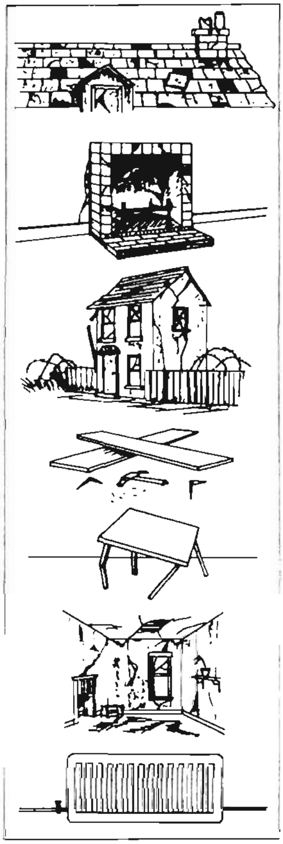

2 Complete the sentences below. The first one has been done for you.

a. That ugly fireplace needs *taking out.*
to be taken out.

b. The house ______________________
____

c. Those shelves ______________________
____

d. That old table ______________________
____

e. The flat ______________________
____

f. The central heating ______________________
____

Idiomatic expressions

3 What do the following expressions mean? When would you use them?

1 Home, sweet home.
2 An Englishman's home is his castle.
3 Make yourself at home.
4 It's home from home.

How would you express the same ideas in your own language?

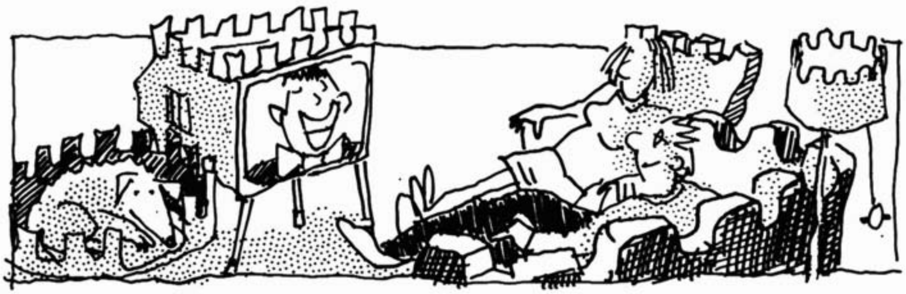

4 Complete the following sentences with a suitable idiomatic expression.

a. Come in and have a seat. I want you to feel you can behave as if you were in your house. So ________ while I make a cup of tea.
b. They made me feel very welcome. It was like being in my own house. It was ________.
c. He had enjoyed travelling round the world and seeing different places, but at last he had returned. He walked towards his house and thought '________'
d. I can do what I want in my own house. You know what they say. ________.

How multi-word verbs work

5 Replace the noun objects with pronoun objects (*it/them*) in the following sentences.

Shall I fill in this form? → Shall I fill it in?

a. I'd like to talk over my financial position.
b. Did you throw out those old newspapers?
c. They've decided to put off the wedding.
d. We're going to do up the kitchen.
e. I'd like more time to think over your offer.
f. I didn't take down his telephone number.
g. Did you hand in your homework?
h. Can you help me put up these pictures?

6 Now decide which words are stressed in the sentences with pronoun objects. Practise saying them. What is the stress rule in these examples?

T.2d

7 Now listen and check your answers.

What's the answer?

What's the difference between *to take something out* and *to throw something out?*

Jokes

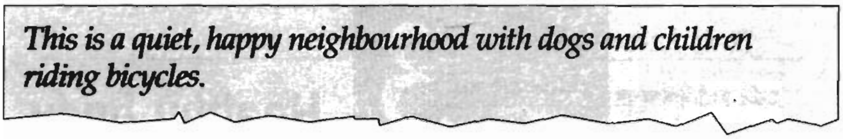

This is a quiet, happy neighbourhood with dogs and children riding bicycles.

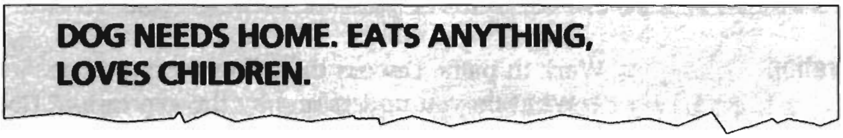

DOG NEEDS HOME. EATS ANYTHING, LOVES CHILDREN.

Speaking

1 The estate agent is showing another client round the flat. Practise the dialogue with your partner, using the prompts below.

	Estate agent	Client	
①	*Describe the flat – it's not in perfect condition!*	*Comment on the wallpaper and the old carpet.*	②
③	*Agree the flat needs decorating. Say it would look nice with new shelves, curtains, etc.*	*Say the flat is cold and damp, and the fireplace is ugly.*	④
⑤	*Say central heating could be installed.*	*Comment on the hole in the ceiling and the broken window.*	⑥
⑦	*Say that repairs will be done.*	*Say you are interested in the flat but need to discuss it with someone.*	⑧
⑨	*Say he or she can occupy the flat immediately.*	*Say you need time to consider it.*	⑩
⑪	*Say other people are interested in it.*	*Say you will get back to him, and thank him for his help. Say goodbye.*	⑫

2 *There's no place like home.* Do you agree? Why? Discuss with your partner.

Writing

Ann talked to her husband Tony about the flat and they discussed whether or not they should buy it. Write the dialogue, using language from this unit.

3 Healthy body, healthy mind

Preparation

Work in pairs. Discuss the following questions.

- What do you understand by the expression 'Healthy body, healthy mind'?
- Look at the picture. Why do you think these patients want to see the doctor?

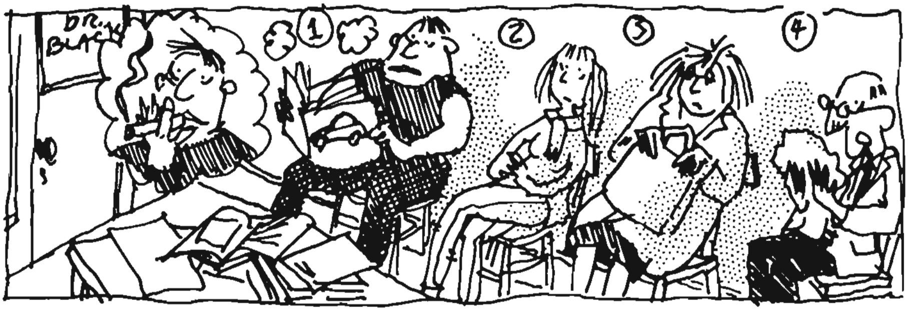

Presentation

T.3a

Listen to the four patients talking to the doctor. Make notes about each of them under the headings below.

Patient	Symptoms	Diagnosis	Treatment
1 Mr Rich Brown			
2 Ms Teresa Green			
3 Mrs Lily White			
4 Mr Ivor Rose			

Checking understanding

T.3b

I've picked up a cold.
I've caught a cold.

Listen to the sentences with the multi-word verbs in A. Match the verbs in A with the definitions in B.

A	B
1 to get over something	a. to increase in weight or size
2 to come/go down with something	b. to recover from an illness, shock, or surprise
3 to get through an amount of something	c. to develop the symptoms of an illness or disease
4 to pick something up	d. to use a quantity of something such as food or money
5 to cut something out	e. to reduce something, to consume less of something
6 to put on an amount of something	f. to develop an interest in something as a hobby or profession
7 to take something up	g. to recover consciousness
8 to cut down (on) (something)	h. to stop doing/using something
9 to pass out	i. to catch an illness
10 to come round	j. to faint, to lose consciousness for a short time because of lack of food or air, or because of shock

Drills

T.3c

Listen and respond to the prompts.

Practice

Idiomatic expressions

1 The following expressions were used in the conversations with the doctor. What do you think they mean?

1 That's easier said than done.
2 to feel off colour
3 to burn the candle at both ends
4 to take it easy
5 to be/feel worn out
6 to be/feel run down
7 to feel under the weather
8 to feel as right as rain

2 Which of the expressions in 1 could you use in the following situations?

a. Your friend has been working very hard and you think she needs a rest.
b. You're at work but you don't feel very well and you want to go home.
c. Someone gives you advice which is very difficult to follow.
d. You want to tell your friend she'll soon recover from her illness.
e. Your friend is looking tired. He works during the day and stays up late at night.

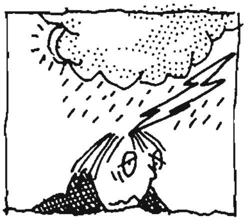

3 Work in pairs. Take turns to ask and answer the questions below. Try to use the multi-word verbs and expressions from this unit.

a. Do you smoke? If yes, how many cigarettes do you smoke a day?
b. Have you ever tried stopping or reducing the amount you smoke?
c. Have you changed your eating habits recently (for example, reduced the amount of fatty food you eat, or gone on a diet)?
d. Would you consider doing any of the following activities to keep fit?
☐ jogging ☐ aerobics ☐ cycling ☐ golf ☐ other
e. Are you ever out of breath? If yes, when?
f. Do you ever feel worn out or run down? If yes, when?
g. Have you ever fainted? If yes, explain what happened.
h. When was the last time you did not feel well? What was wrong with you?
i. When did you last have a cold? How long did it take you to recover from it?
j. How healthy do you think you are?

out of
*I'm always **out of** breath.*
*My husband is **out of** work.*

Work with your partner. Discuss how you would use *out of* with the words in the box.

danger condition touch reach sorts the question

4 Look at how these expressions are used in the sentences below and opposite. Try to work out what they mean.

a. After the car accident we all thought she was going to die, but she is recovering and is now *out of danger.*
b. I haven't taken any exercise for a long time, so I'm probably *out of condition.*

c. I haven't read any medical books or articles on the subject for a long time, so I'm *out of touch* with recent developments.
d. You must always put pills and medicines somewhere *out of reach*, such as on a high shelf, so that children can't get hold of them. They might think they are sweets and eat them.
e. I'd like to go to the party, but I'm feeling *out of sorts*. I think it's better if I go to bed with a hot water bottle.
f. At the moment, an operation on his leg is *out of the question*. It is far too dangerous and probably wouldn't be a success anyway.

5 Now think of your own sentences, using the expressions above.

How multi-word verbs work
down

I think you should try to ***cut down (on)*** *the amount you smoke.*

The particle *down* can be used with some verbs to give the idea of reducing something (decreasing in strength, size, or intensity):

The radio is very loud. Can you ***turn*** *it* ***down****, please?*

6 Work with your partner. Say what you think the following multi-word verbs mean and give examples of when you would use them.

slow down	bring something down	calm down	die down
cool down	quieten down		

7 In the following sentences, the multi-word verbs are all mixed up. Correct them.

a. This soup is too hot to eat. I'll wait for it to *slow down*.
b. The government is trying to *calm down* the rate of inflation.
c. You are driving too fast. Please *quieten down*.
d. Don't get so angry! Just *bring down*.
e. Can you ask the children to *die down*? They are making so much noise I can't hear myself think!
f. The wind blew strongly for several hours but then it started to *cool down*.

What's the answer?

1 What is the difference between:

a. *to pick up* a disease and *to go down with* a disease?
b. *to wake up* and *to come round?*
c. *to be worn out* and *to be run down?*

2 What is the opposite of *to pass out?*

Jokes

– Doctor, can you help me out?
– Certainly. Which way did you come in?

– Doctor, I snore so loudly that I keep myself awake. What can I do?
– Sleep in another room.

– Doctor, I'm having trouble with my breathing.
– We'll soon put a stop to that.

– Doctor, I keep seeing double.
– Sit on the couch, please.
– Which one?

Speaking and writing

1 Work with your partner. Practise telling the story of Mr Brown. Use multi-word verbs and expressions from this unit.

2 Now write the story of Mr Brown. Use the following multi-word verbs and expressions.

out of condition
to put on (an amount of something)
to get through (an amount of something)
to cut something out
to cut down (on) (something)
to take something up
to be/go on a diet
to give something up
out of breath
to knock someone down
to come round
out of danger

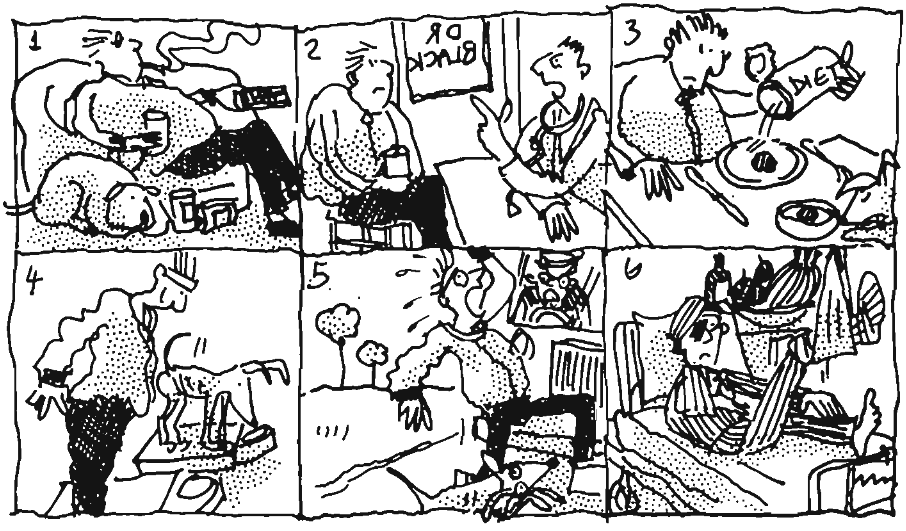

4 A place of your own

Preparation

Work in pairs. Discuss the following question.

- What are the advantages and disadvantages of living away from home when you are a student?

Presentation

1 Tony is a student. He has recently moved into his own flat. He wrote to his friend Paul to tell him about it. When you have read Tony's letter, answer the questions below.

Dear Paul,

I've done it! I've got a place of my own at last! I found it through an agency a couple of weeks ago. I was looking through the paper, when I came across an advertisement for flats, so I gave the agency a ring and went to see what they had. I saw several good flats, but I couldn't make up my mind about them. Then I saw one I really liked. I was in two minds about taking it because the rent was rather high, but I thought it was time I became more independent of my parents, and I'm sure I was getting on their nerves – they said they couldn't put up with the noise from my stereo system any longer! So I moved out and here I am in my own flat!

It's in the suburbs on the outskirts of London, and it's very convenient for the shops. It's on the second floor and consists of a bedroom, a living room, a kitchen, and a bathroom. It's nothing out of the ordinary, but it's in quite good condition.

I moved in last week and I've already put up some shelves and new wallpaper in the living room. At present the kitchen is painted dark brown and has a small window, so it needs brightening up. I haven't finished doing up the bedroom yet. I'm going to convert it into a study and paint it blue so that it will go with the curtains my mother has promised to give me. There's a lovely view from the window – it looks out onto the garden, which I share with four other people.

I get on well with the people living above me, but unfortunately I'm not on good terms with the landlord at the moment. We had an argument about sticking pictures on the wall – he said it would damage the wallpaper. And the people below me say they are fed up with the noise from my stereo!

The good thing is that I've got somewhere I can call my own. I can easily put you up any time you're in London. So don't hesitate – you can drop in any time.

All the best,

Tony.

PS I'm thinking of having a house-warming party at the end of the month, so if you'd like to come, drop me a line or give me a call.

a. How did Tony find the flat?
b. Why did he decide to take it?
c. What are his plans for the flat?
d. What offer does he make?
e. What invitation does he make?

2 Now underline the multi-word verbs in the letter and try to work out what they mean.

Checking understanding

Match the verbs in A with the definitions in B.

A	B
1 to look through something	a. to give someone accommodation
2 to come across someone/something	b. to have a view of somewhere
3 to put up with someone/something	c. to visit someone informally, to pay a casual visit
4 to move out (of somewhere)	d. to match or suit, to make a good combination (for example, of colours)
5 to brighten something up	e. to read something quickly and briefly
6 to look (out) onto something	f. to find something or meet someone by chance
7 to go with something	g. to leave accommodation and take everything with you, to vacate a house or flat
8 to put someone up	h. to make something brighter, less dull, and more full of light
9 to drop in (on someone)	i. to tolerate something, to accept something unpleasant or difficult without complaining

Drills

T.4

Listen and respond to the prompts.

Practice

1 Fill in the gaps below.

I live _________ (a) my own _________ (b) the suburbs _________ (c) the outskirts of London. My flat is _________ (d) the second floor and it's _________ (e) good condition. It consists _________ (f) four rooms and is very convenient _________ (g) the shops. The bedroom looks out onto a garden, which I share _________ (h) four other people. I want to convert the bedroom _________ (i) a study. I found the flat _________ (j) an agency.

Idiomatic expressions

2 Complete the following sentences so that they illustrate the meaning of the idiomatic expressions in Tony's letter.

Party Invitation

Example
I thought the play was nothing out of the ordinary, but my friends thought it was great.

a. He really gets on my nerves. He is always . . .
b. I'm not on good terms with the people who live next door . . .
c. I'm fed up with my job because . . .
d. She was in two minds about accepting the job in America because . . .
e. She couldn't make up her mind about the party. On the one hand . . .

3 Work in pairs. Ask your partner to describe where he or she lives. Try to use multi-word verbs, particles, and idiomatic expressions in your questions and answers.

How multi-word verbs work

up

4 The particle *up* can be used with some verbs to give the idea of improving something:

I haven't finished ***doing up*** *the bedroom yet.*

Look at the sentences and say what you think the verbs in italics mean.

a. I'm going to work in Paris next year, so I really need to *brush up* my French. I studied it at school several years ago but I think I've forgotten a lot of it.
b. Her job is to *train up* people to become clerks or accountants.
c. He didn't know very much about computers, so he decided to *read up on* the subject in preparation for his job interview.
d. He was told that if he wanted to continue working for the company he would have to *smarten up* his appearance.
e. She managed to *build up* the reputation of the company in a very short time.

What's the answer?

1 What is the difference between *to put someone up* and *to put something up?*
2 All the multi-word verbs below are connected in some way. What is the connection?

drop in (on someone)	drop by	drop round	drop over	
call in (on someone)	call by	call round	call over	call (on someone)

Jokes

– Some people say you are indecisive. Do you think you have difficulty in making up your mind?
– Well, yes and no.

You asked me to drop you a line, so here it is:

Speaking and writing

1 Look at the picture story with your partner. Practise telling the story before you write it. You can decide what happens in picture 12. How do you think the story ends?

2 Do you like the story? Why? How much truth is there in it?

3 Now write the story. Try to use some of the following multi-word verbs and expressions.

to be fed up with
to put up with
to look out onto
to get on someone's nerves
to look through
to come across

to be in two minds
to think over
to make up one's mind
to move out/in

to do up
to see to
to throw out
to put up
to put in

1

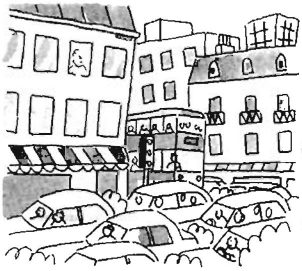

2

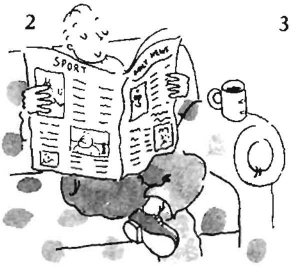
SPORT
DAILY NEWS

3

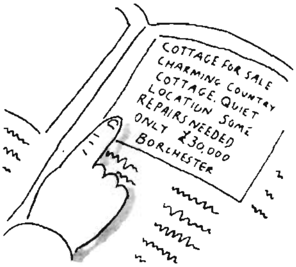
COTTAGE FOR SALE
CHARMING COUNTRY COTTAGE. QUIET LOCATION. SOME REPAIRS NEEDED
ONLY £30,000
BORCHESTER

4

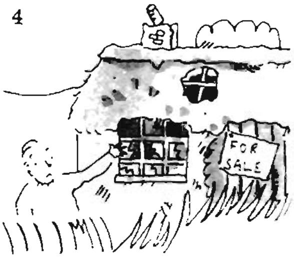

5

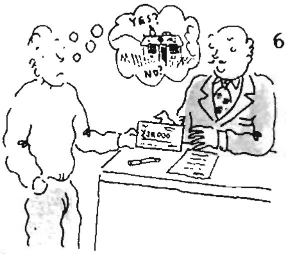
YES?
NO?
£30,000

6

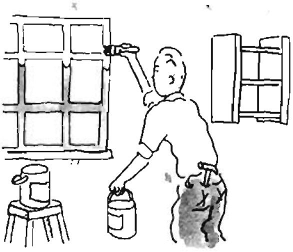

7

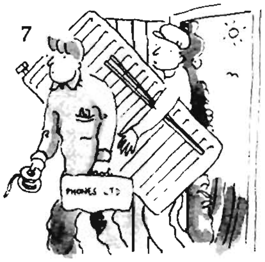

8

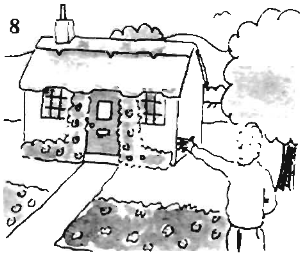

9

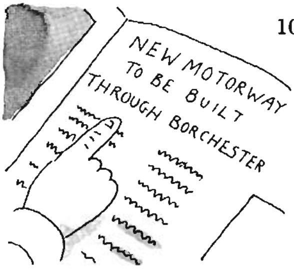
NEW MOTORWAY TO BE BUILT THROUGH BORCHESTER

10

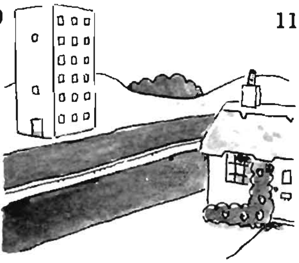

11

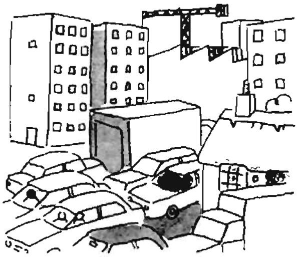

12

5 Getting away from it all

Preparation

Work in pairs. Discuss the following questions.

- What is your idea of an ideal holiday?
- How important are holidays to you?

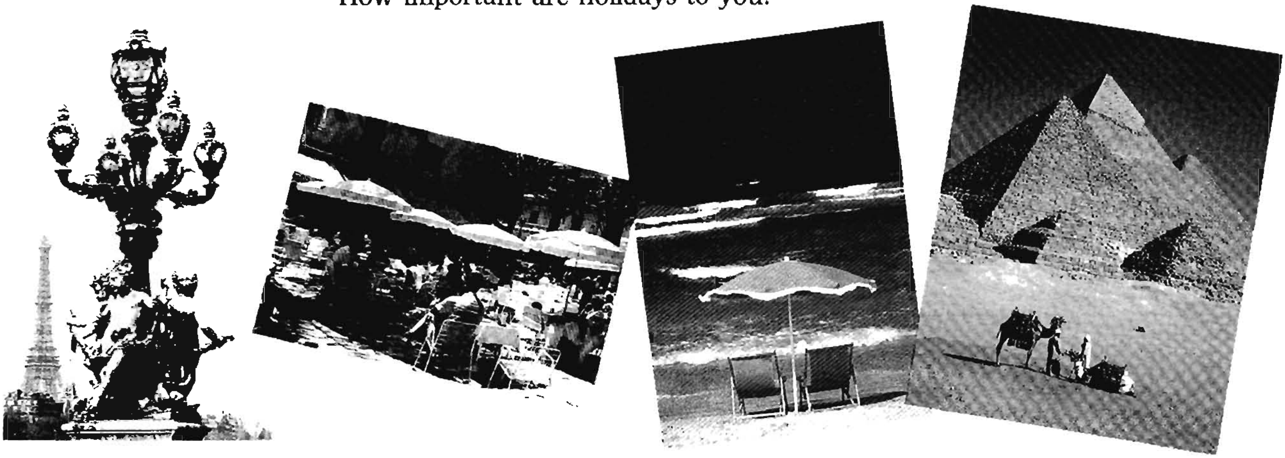

Presentation

T.5a

1 You are going to hear four people talking about their last holiday and the importance of holidays in their lives. Make notes in the grid below.

	Last holiday	Importance of holidays
Jean		
Andy		
Susan		
Sheila		

◀ T.5a

2 Listen again to check your answers.

Checking understanding

T.5b

Listen to the sentences with the multi-word verbs in A. Then match the verbs in A with the definitions in B.

A	B
1 to take off	a. to leave a hotel after paying the bill
2 to pick someone up	b. to break one's journey for a short time
3 to drop someone off	c. to leave the ground and begin flying
4 to get away	d. to walk round a place in order to see what it is like
5 to check out	e. to have a holiday
6 to set off	f. to drive someone where they want to go and leave them there
7 to get back	g. to begin a journey
8 to touch down	h. to collect someone by car or coach, to stop and give someone a lift
9 to look round (somewhere)	i. to land after a flight
10 to stop off	j. to arrive back at the place you started from

Drills

T.5c

Listen and respond to the prompts.

Practice

1 You are on holiday in Rhodes. Your travel representative leaves you a note giving details of an excursion to the nearby island of Symi. Fill in the missing words opposite.

Trip to the island of Symi

Hi there!

The arrangements for tomorrow's trip to the island of Symi are as follows:

The coach will ______ *us* ______(a) *at 7.00 a.m. outside the post office – so remember to set your alarm clock! It will take us to Rhodes harbour and then we'll catch the ferry to the island of Symi. When we get there, another coach will* ______ *us* ______ (b) *and take us to the main town. We will have about two hours to* ______ (c) *the shops and have lunch.*

At 3.00 p.m. we'll ______ (d) *for the village of Pixos. At 5.00 we'll catch the ferry again and we'll* ______ (e) *to Rhodes harbour at about 7.00. Another coach will* ______ *us* ______ (f) *and we'll* ______ (g) *somewhere for a meal on the way back.*

The coach will ______ *us* ______ (h) *at the post office around 10.00, so you'll probably* ______ (i) *to your apartment about 10.15.*

See you tomorrow, Sharon

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the holiday below.

Student A

You have booked a holiday in Lindos on the island of Rhodes. Phone up the travel agent and check the travel details. Use the multi-word verbs below.

take off
drop off
pick up
get back
get to
stop off
check in/out

Student B

You work in a travel agency. A customer rings up to check his/her travel details. Use the information and the multi-word verbs below.

take off
pick up
look round
check in/out
stop off
drop off
touch down
get back

Island: Rhodes / Holiday resort: Lindos

1 *what time plane depart?*
2 *direct flight to Rhodes?*
3 *when arrive Rhodes?*
4 *journey to hotel?*
5 *hotel booking arrangements?*
6 *return journey details?*
7 *when collect tickets?*

ISLAND: RHODES HOLIDAY RESORT: LINDOS

Note time difference = two hours.

Journey details

Flight departs Heathrow Saturday 08.00.
Plane arrives in Athens at 13.00. It stops on the way for 24 hours (sightseeing time).
Plane departs again on Sunday at 16.00.
Plane lands in Rhodes at 16.45.
Passengers collected by coach at 17.15.
Coach leaves them at hotel in Lindos at 18.30.
Must register at hotel before 21.00.

Return journey details

Must leave hotel by 11.00.
Coach collects passengers at 12.00.
Plane leaves 16.00.
Plane lands Heathrow 17.30.
Office open: Monday – Saturday 9.00–6.00.

◀ T.5a

3 Fill in the gaps below. Then listen to Sheila again to check your answers.

a. to look forward ________ doing something

b. to suffer ________ something

c. to complain ________ something ________ someone

d. to insist ________ something

e. to succeed ________ something

f. to be disappointed ________ something

g. to be (dis)satisfied ________ something

h. to be angry ________ something/________ someone

Idiomatic expressions

4 What do you think the following expressions mean?
How would you say the same thing in your own language?

1 It's just a stone's throw away.
2 Travel broadens the mind.
3 to get away from it all

How multi-word verbs work

Type 1 multi-word verbs are intransitive (they do not take an object).
We set off very early in the morning.

Type 3 multi-word verbs are transitive (they take an object).
*Can I **look through** your newspaper?*

5 Decide if the multi-word verbs below are Type 1 (intransitive) or Type 3 (transitive).

a. It took him a long time to *get over* his cold. ________

b. Your tie doesn't *go with* your shirt. ________

c. The plane *touched down* without any problems. ________

d. What time will you *get back* tonight? ________

e. Can you *see to* the radio? It isn't working. ________

f. Shall we *stop off* and see Paul on our way home? ________

g. He *came round* two hours after the operation. ________

h. It's good to *get away* at least once a year. ________

i. She *passed out* when she heard the news. ________

j. Did you *come across* anything interesting in the newspaper? ________

back

The particle *back* is often used with verbs to give the meaning of *someone or something returning to the place where he/she/it was before.*

What time will you ***be back*** *tonight?*

It can also be used to give the idea of reciprocating an action, that is, repeating a similar action.

I've received a letter inviting us to a party. Shall I ***write back*** *and accept the invitation?*

6 Work with your partner. Look at the verbs below and think of sentences to illustrate what they mean. Say if the verbs have the idea of *returning* or *repeating a similar action* (reciprocating).

- ring/phone/call someone back
- put something back
- pay something back
- play something back
- give something back
- drive (someone) back
- take something back
- send something back
- walk back
- shout back
- fly back
- turn back

What's the answer?

1 What is the opposite of the following?

to check out of a hotel ________

to pick someone up ________

to take off ________

to set off for somewhere ________

2 What is the difference between *When do you go back?* and *When do you get back?*

3 What is the difference between *to get back* and *to turn back?*

Jokes

Come to British Airways!
Breakfast in London!
Lunch in New York! Luggage in Nairobi!

(Graffiti on a poster advertising British Airways)

WE SEND YOUR LUGGAGE EVERYWHERE

(A badly translated sign above a check-in desk at an airport)

Writing

Write a description of the worst holiday you have ever had. Include details about the journey and the accommodation. Remember to use some of the multi-word verbs and idiomatic expressions from this unit.

6 Family relationships

Preparation

Work in pairs. Discuss the following questions.

- In what ways are you similar to or different from other people in your family?
- Do you think parents should be strict or easy-going?

Presentation

T.6a

Read and/or listen to the following three interviews and answer the questions.

1 What kind of relationship do the children have with their parents?
2 Are the parents strict?
3 According to the mother, what is it like being a parent and what is a good parent?

Interview with 16-year-old daughter Helen

Interviewer How do you get on with your parents?

Helen I think I get on with them very well, really. We don't always see eye to eye on some things, like boyfriends – they don't always approve of them – but on the whole they're very understanding. If I had a personal problem, I think I could confide in them, and if I was ever in trouble I know I could rely on them to help me.

Interviewer How strict are your parents?

Helen Well, my Dad's quite strict about staying out late at night, but I can usually get round him. If I'm nice to him, he lets me come home a bit later. My Mum's always telling me to tidy up my bedroom and put things away after I use them, and I have to do some of the housework. But if I compare them with other parents I know, they aren't very strict.

Interviewer And who are you most like in your family?

Helen Oh, I think I take after my mother. Everybody says we're both very independent and strong-willed. I like to have my own way a lot of the time, but I'm not spoilt. I don't always get my own way. And my parents always tell me off if I do anything wrong.

Interview with 17-year-old son David

Interviewer How do you get on with your parents?

David I look up to them because I know they've worked hard to bring us up properly.

Interviewer How strict are your parents?

David They can be very strict at times. I told my Dad I wanted a motorbike, but he said it was out of the question – it was too dangerous. My mother is strict about keeping things tidy. I can't get out of doing the washing up and things like that, unless I'm very busy.

Interviewer How do you get on with your sister?

David I never agree with what she says, so we are always arguing. We've never been very close, but I get on all right with her. I think I'm much closer to my mother.

Interview with mother

Interviewer What's it like being a parent?

Mother Bringing up children is very difficult. You always worry about them. You have to be very patient and put up with a lot – like noise and even criticism. And you can't always get through to them – sometimes they just won't listen. But the advantages of being a parent outweigh the disadvantages. The main thing is to enjoy your children while they are young because they grow up so quickly nowadays.

Interviewer How strict are you with your children?

Mother I suppose I'm reasonably strict. They can't do what they like and get away with it, and I tell them off when they do something wrong.

Interviewer And what is the secret of being a good parent?

Mother I think you have to give them confidence and let them know you love them. And you have to set a good example through your own behaviour, otherwise they won't look up to you.

Interviewer And what do you want for your children in the future?

Mother I want them to be happy, and I want them to look back on their childhood as a very happy time in their lives.

Checking understanding

Work in pairs. Try to work out from the context the meaning of the multi-word verbs in *italics* in the passage. Then match the verbs in A with the definitions in B.

A	B
1 to get round someone	a. to respect and admire someone, to have a very good opinion of someone
2 to take after someone	b. to escape being punished for something
3 to tell someone off (for doing something)	c. to think about something that happened in the past
4 to look up to someone	d. to reprimand, to speak severely to someone because they have done something wrong.
5 to bring someone up	e. to persuade someone to let you do or have something, usually by flattering them
6 to get out of doing something	f. to raise a child, to look after a child until it is adult and try to give it particular beliefs and attitudes
7 to get through to someone	g. to resemble a member of your family in appearance or character
8 to grow up	h. to avoid having to do something
9 to get away with something	i. to succeed in making someone understand the meaning of what one is saying
10 to look back (on something)	j. to become more adult and mature

Drills

T.6b

Listen and respond to the prompts.

Practice

1 Fill in the gaps below.

a. to dis/approve ________ someone/something
b. to confide ________ someone
c. to rely ________ someone
d. to compare someone/something ________ someone/something
e. to (dis)agree ________ someone/something
f. to argue ________ someone ________ something
g. to worry ________ someone/something
h. to listen ________ someone/something

Idiomatic expressions

2 What do you think the following expressions mean?

1 to see eye to eye (with someone) (on something)
2 to have/get one's own way
3 to be close to someone
4 to be the black sheep of the family
5 to take someone's side

Now decide which expressions you could use in the sentences below.

a. The problem is that her parents never stop her doing anything that she wants to do. She's become a very spoilt child as a result.
b. My family is very ashamed of my brother and never talk about him. He was expelled from school and has been in prison twice.
c. Whenever I had an argument with my mother or father, I could always rely on my grandparents to support me.
d. My father and I usually agree about most things, but when it comes to politics we have completely different views.
e. I can talk to my sister about my problems because I know she will understand me and share my feelings.

3 Work with your partner. Take turns asking and answering the questions opposite. Try to use the multi-word verbs and expressions in the box in your answers, as well as the verbs above.

Example
A *How do you get on with the other people in your family?*
B *I don't get on with my sisters very well, but I'm very close to my mother. I feel I can confide in her.*

bring up
get on with
get away with
have one's own way
look back on
look up to
grow up
see eye to eye
tell off
take after
get round
be close to

a. What kind of relationship do you have with the people in your family?
b. Are you similar to anyone in your family?
c. Do you have the same opinions as other members of your family?
d. Where did you spend your childhood?
e. Who took care of you when you were very young?
f. Did you have a strict upbringing?
g. When were you reprimanded as a child/teenager?
h. Were you able to do what you wanted all the time?
i. Who did you admire and respect when you were a child/teenager?
j. When you think about the past, what do you remember?

4 Work with a different partner. Use the multi-word verbs and idiomatic expressions you have learnt to describe your relationship with one of the following people.

grandparent
brother/sister
teacher
neighbour
uncle/aunt
boss
parent
cousin

How multi-word verbs work

5 *Match a sentence in A with one in B, and mark the stress. Then practise saying the questions and answers. The first one has been done for you.*

A	**B**
1 Do you respect your parents?	**a. No, he got away with it.**
2 Do you like David?	**b. No, I can't get through to him.**
3 Did he do the washing up?	**c. No, he puts up with it.**
4 Does he listen to you?	**d. No, he got out of it.**
5 Was he punished for the crime?	**e. No, I must get down to it.**
6 Have you done the homework?	**f. No, I don't get on with him.**
7 Has he complained about the noise?	**g. Yes, I look up to them.**

What is the stress rule for multi-word verbs that have two particles?

What's the answer?

1 What is the difference between *to grow up* and *to bring someone up*?

2 What is the opposite of *to look up to someone*?

3 What is the noun of a. and adjective of b?

a. to bring up (→ noun) She had a very strict ________ .
b. to grow up (→ adjective) He doesn't behave in a very ________ way.

Jokes

Mother Tell your boyfriend he must bring you back here by ten o'clock tonight – and not a minute later!
Daughter Oh, mother! I'm not a child any longer.
Mother I know. That's why I want you back here by ten.

Pupil Sir, can you be told off for something you haven't done?
Teacher Of course not.
Pupil Oh, that's good, because I haven't done my homework.

One day a boy came home from school and his mother heard him use a very bad word. She was very angry.

'Where did you learn that word?' she asked.
'From Chaucer,' he replied.
'Well, don't play with Chaucer any more,' she said.

(Note: Chaucer was a famous medieval writer.)

Speaking

Work in pairs. Discuss *one* of the following questions.

- Should boys and girls be brought up in exactly the same way?
- What are the advantages and disadvantages of being an only child?

Writing

Using the multi-word verbs and idiomatic expressions you have learnt in this unit, write about a relationship which has had an important influence on you.

7 You are what you wear

Preparation

How important are clothes to you?
Look at the picture below. Describe what you think is happening and why.

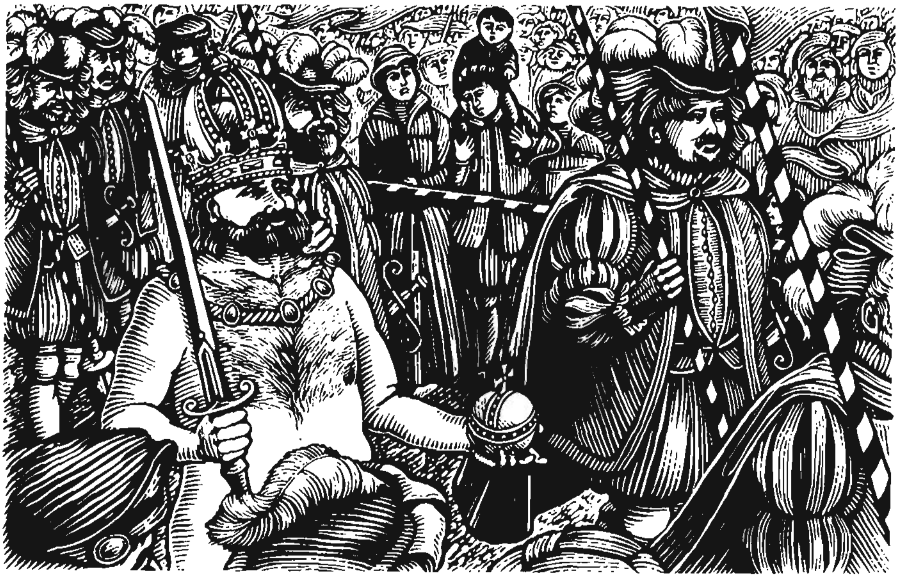

Presentation

T.7a

Listen to the story of the Emperor's new clothes. Make a note of the multi-word verbs that are used and what you think they mean. Then discuss the questions below with a partner.

a. Why did the Emperor want the two men to make the clothes?
b. Why did the Emperor send his old and honest minister to see the two men?
c. Why did one of the two men ask the Emperor to try on the invisible clothes?
d. Why didn't anyone say the Emperor was wearing nothing?
e. Why did the Emperor go through with the procession?
f. Why was the little boy the first person to say 'The Emperor has nothing on'?
g. Why did the Emperor carry on with the procession?
h. What do you think the story is trying to say?

Checking understanding

Look at how the multi-word verbs are used in the listening text on page 81. Then match the verbs in A with the definitions in B.

A	B
1 to take something off	a. to dress oneself in clothes or jewellery
2 to have (got) (something) on	b. to put on a piece of clothing to see if it fits and looks nice
3 to try something on	c. to do something difficult or unpleasant
4 to carry on (with something)	d. to fasten something (a button or a zip)
5 to go through with something	e. to continue with something, in spite of difficulties or interruptions
6 to wear out	f. to be wearing a piece of clothing
7 to dress up	g. to remove clothes, to undress
8 to put something on	h. to put on clothes without difficulty because they aren't too small
9 to do something up	i. to wear smart clothes for a special occasion
10 to get into something	j. to become useless because it has been used so often

Drills

T.7b

Listen and respond to the prompts.

Practice

1 Fill in the gaps opposite.

Tim is seventeen and at the moment he doesn't care very much ________ (a) anything except clothes. He's only interested ________ (b) what is ________ (c) fashion. He spends most of his money ________ (d) brightly coloured shirts and tight trousers. He is very proud________ (e) them and most people comment ________ (f) them when they see him. He has no difficulty ________ (g) finding the clothes he wants because he works in a boutique. He thinks he has very good taste in clothes, but his mother thinks he looks awful. 'It's all a question of taste,' he says, 'and there's no arguing about tastes, is there?'

2 Work with a partner. Take turns telling one another the story of the Emperor's clothes. The following prompts may help.

- the Emperor
- the two dishonest men
- the magical clothes
- making the clothes
- the Emperor sends his minister
- the minister's visit
- the Emperor's visit
- the Emperor tries on the clothes
- the procession
- the little boy

T.7c

3 Listen to four situations in which people are talking about clothes. Decide what the situation is and who is talking.

4 Put the following expressions in the sentences below.

6 EGGS
6 EGGS
6 EGGS
BEST BEFORE MAY 1893
DODO
EGGS
FRESH EGGS

out of fashion out of luck out of this world out of stock out of date

a. I'm sorry, madam, we don't have any of these jumpers in size 14. We're completely ________ . I don't think we'll be getting any more of them till next year.
b. I'm afraid you're ________ , sir. We've sold all the tickets for the plays you would like to see.
c. It was the best play I've ever seen. The production was absolutely fantastic. It was ________ .
d. I can't use this passport any more. It's ________ . I'll have to get a new one.
e. He doesn't worry about his appearance or what is in fashion. He always wears clothes that are ________ .

Idiomatic expressions

5 Look at the expressions below. Which ones are similar in meaning? How would you express the same idea in your own language?

1 A wolf in sheep's clothing.
2 There's no arguing about tastes.
3 Beauty is only skin deep.
4 You can't go by appearances.
5 One man's meat is another man's poison.
6 Beauty is in the eye of the beholder.

Which of the above expressions could you use in the following situations?

a. You think a piece of modern sculpture is ugly but your friend thinks it's beautiful.
b. Your sister is in love with a man who seems very nice and friendly, but you think that underneath he's a horrible, selfish person who only wants her money.
c. You meet someone who gives the impression of being very poor. You find out later that in fact this person is very rich.
d. You meet an attractive looking person who seems very nice, but you later find out this person is unkind and unfriendly.

How multi-word verbs work

up

The particle *up* can be used with some verbs to give the idea of completion:

*We'd better **drink up**. The bar closes in five minutes.*

In this sentence, *drink up* = finish drinking. Several verbs use *up* in this way.

eat up	tidy up	wash up	dry up	clean up	clear up

6 Use the multi-word verbs above to correct the following sentences.

a. Look at all these dirty dishes. I really don't feel like doing them. Could you eat them up?
b. My room looks like a bomb hit it. I can't find anything. I must dry it up.
c. 'Tidy up all your vegetables or you won't grow big and strong,' my mother used to tell me.
d. After the party her friends offered to help her wash up the mess.
e. I'll wash the dishes if you clean them up.

What's the answer?

1 Write down the opposite of the following.

- out of fashion ________
- out of date ________
- out of luck ________
- out of stock ________
- to take something off ________
- to do something up ________

2 What is the difference between *to go through with something* and *to carry on with something?*

3 What is the difference between *to take off* and *to take something off?*

Jokes

Man in clothes shop Can I try on that suit in the window?

Shop assistant No sir, you'll have to use the changing-room like everyone else.

Interviewer Is it true you had nothing on when those photos were taken?

Film star Oh, no. I had the radio on.

Writing

Write the story of *Cinderella.* Here are some notes to help you.

- Cinderella's mother dies. Her father decides to marry again.
- Her stepmother is cruel and her stepsisters are ugly and horrible.
- She is treated badly and has to do all the housework.
- Her clothes become very poor and old.
- Everyone is invited to attend a ball at the palace.
- The two stepsisters discuss what to wear. They can't decide. Cinderella helps them.
- Cinderella can't go to the ball. She has nothing to wear.
- Her fairy godmother appears and arranges for her to go to the ball.
- Her dress is very beautiful. She must return before midnight.
- She dances with the prince. He falls in love with her.
- At 12 o'clock Cinderella leaves quickly, leaving behind a glass shoe.
- The prince decides to marry the person who can wear the shoe.
- The shoe is too small for the two ugly sisters.
- The shoe fits Cinderella. She marries the prince.

Begin the story *Once upon a time . . .* Write it in the past tense and end the story with *. . . and they lived happily ever after.* Try to include the multi-word verbs and idiomatic expressions in the box.

to make up one's mind
to tidy up
to clean up
to wear out
to dress up
to put something on
to take something off
to try something on
in/out of fashion
to go with something
out of this world
to get into something

8 A narrow escape

Preparation

Think about the question below.

– Have you ever been in a frightening situation?

Tell the class what happened.

Presentation

Read the text below and find the answers to the questions.

1 What is known about how the fire started?
2 How did the residents escape the fire?

Hotel blaze escape drama

A blaze swept through a hotel in London yesterday, leaving damage estimated at £200,000. Some of the residents staying in the hotel at the time were able to escape via the roof onto adjoining premises.

At present it is not known how the fire started. It seems the fire *broke out* in the early hours of the morning. The fire alarm *went off* at around 2.00 a.m. It is thought it was *set off* by smoke coming from one of the bedrooms on the first floor. The fire spread quickly from the first floor to the second floor. The fire-brigade were *called in* immediately, and firefighters were on the scene within fifteen minutes, but by this time the hotel was already in flames. They fought the blaze and managed to get it under control, though it took them two hours to *put* the fire *out*.

Senior Fire Officer Mike Jones, who was in charge of the operation, said, 'It's a miracle no one was hurt. We had to break down several doors to rescue some of the residents from their rooms. Our people did a wonderful job. Two of them are suffering from smoke inhalation, but it doesn't look too serious at the moment.'

Mrs Lunnon, a resident, said, 'I never want to *go through* an experience like that again. Everywhere was on fire. I'm just so relieved the firefighters succeeded in getting to us so quickly. Without their help we wouldn't have *got out*.'

Another resident, Mr Dale, said, 'I heard the alarm *go off* and then people started screaming. It was very frightening. My wife and I had a narrow escape. We managed to *get out* of the building just in time – as we left the third floor it burst into flames! We could hear people *calling out* for help, but we couldn't do anything to help them.'

The hotel manager said, 'The fire probably started by accident. Perhaps someone was smoking in bed, forgot to *put out* their cigarette, and accidentally set fire to the bedclothes. Some people are very careless, and things can catch fire very easily.'

A policeman said, 'We will be *looking into* the causes of the fire. We think it started by accident, though at this stage we don't want to *rule* anything *out*.'

Checking understanding

Look at the text and try to work out from the context the meaning of the multi-word verbs in *italics*. Then match the verbs in A with the definitions in B.

A	B
1 to break out	a. to cause something to start working or happening
2 to go off	b. to experience or suffer something unpleasant
3 to set something off	c. to begin suddenly, usually something unpleasant
4 to call someone in/out	d. to leave, to escape
5 to put something out	e. to exclude something, to decide something is impossible
6 to go through something	f. to shout loudly in order to attract someone's attention
7 to get out (of somewhere)	g. to extinguish something, to stop something burning
8 to call out	h. to ask someone professional to come and provide help
9 to look into something	i. to operate, making a sudden loud noise
10 to rule something out	j. to investigate something

Drills

T.8

Listen and respond to the prompts.

Practice

1 Fill in the gaps below. Then check your answers with the text of the hotel blaze escape.

SENIOR FIRE OFFICER'S REPORT

We received an emergency call at 2.15 a.m. which said the Grove Hotel was ______ (a) fire. We were ______ (b) the scene within fifteen minutes. The first and second floors of the hotel were ______ (c) flames when we arrived. But we succeeded ______ (d) getting the fire ______ (e) control after two hours. I was ______ (f) charge of the whole operation. Two of our people are still in hospital suffering ______ (g) the effects of smoke inhalation.

At the moment it appears that the fire started ______ (h) accident, but it is not clear why the fire spread so quickly or why the third floor burst ______ (i) flames.

Idiomatic expressions

2 Look at the following idiomatic expressions and say what you think they mean.

*I **had a narrow escape** this morning. I was cycling to work when a lorry knocked me off my bike. The driver stopped and got out to see if I was all right. He was **as white as a sheet** and I was **shaking like a leaf**. Fortunately I had landed on some grass and wasn't hurt.*

Have you ever had a narrow escape? If yes, describe what happened.

3 Work with your partner. Describe what is happening in the pictures below and say what you think will or might happen next. Use the multi-word verbs, idiomatic expressions, and prepositions in this unit.

a.

Comment on the smoke detector, the curtains, what you think the woman will do, what might happen next.

b.

Comment on the cigarette, the bedclothes, the hotel fire alarm, what might happen next.

c.

Comment on the man in the car, the petrol on the road, what might happen next.

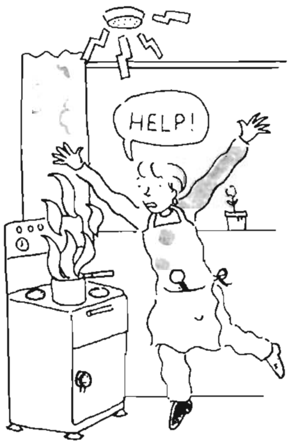

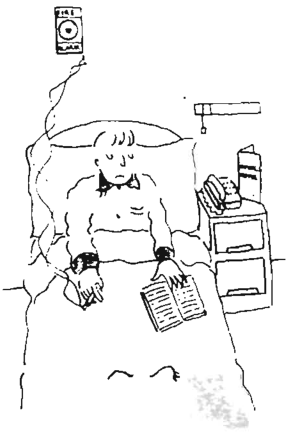

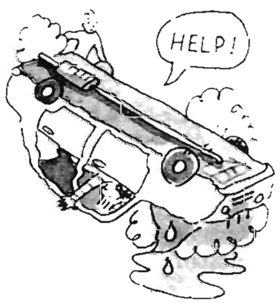

4 Work with your partner. Write a brief news item for the two pictures below. Read it out to the rest of the class.

1

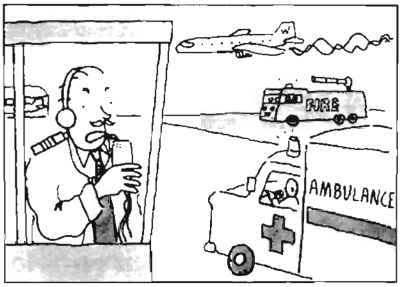

2

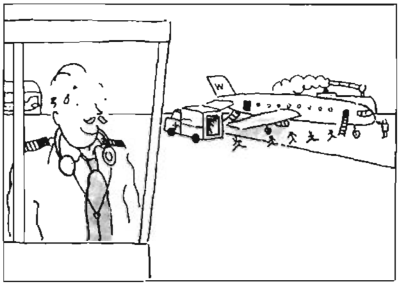

burst into

5 *It burst into flames* means 'It suddenly started burning'.

To burst into is often used to describe changing emotional states. How would you say the following?

He suddenly started crying.

She suddenly started laughing.

He suddenly started singing.

The audience suddenly began to applaud.

Give a situation where each of these things might happen.

How multi-word verbs work

6 Decide if the following multi-word verbs are Type 1, 2, or 3.

a. The fire alarm went off at 2.00 a.m.

b. He set off the fire alarm.

c. They called in the fire brigade.

d. People were calling out for help.

e. They put out the fire very quickly.

f. We went through a terrible experience.

g. Fortunately everyone got out safely.

h. A fire has broken out on the first floor.

i. We must look into this very carefully.

j. We can't rule out the possibility that the fire was started deliberately.

out

7 1 The particle *out* can be combined with verbs to indicate *movement from somewhere inside to somewhere outside* (*to get out, to check out of somewhere, to go out*), or to a *location outside the home* (*to move out*).

Say what you think the following multi-word verbs mean, and give examples of when you would use them.

to eat out
to stay out
to invite someone out
to take someone out
to camp out

2 The particle *out* can also be used with verbs to give the idea of excluding something (*to rule something out, to cut something out*).

Say what you think the following multi-word verbs mean and give examples of when you would use them.

to leave someone/something out
to shut someone/something out
to keep someone/something out

What's the answer?

1 What is the opposite of *by accident?*
2 What is the opposite of *under control?*
3 What is the difference between *to be in control* and *to be under control?* e.g. 'The situation is under control' and 'The police are in control of the situation'.
4 What is the difference between *to go off* and *to set something off?*
5 What is the difference between *to set off* and *to set something off?*

Jokes

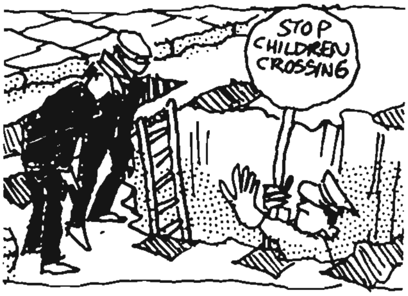

A hole has appeared in Westminster Road. The police are looking into it.
(From a newspaper report)

'Can you put the cat out?'
'Why? Is it on fire?'

Writing

Write a story called 'A narrow escape'. Try to use the multi-word verbs, expressions, and particles from this unit.

9

Getting on in life

Preparation

Work in pairs. Discuss the following questions.

- What is your idea of a good job?
- Have you ever had a job you didn't like? What happened?

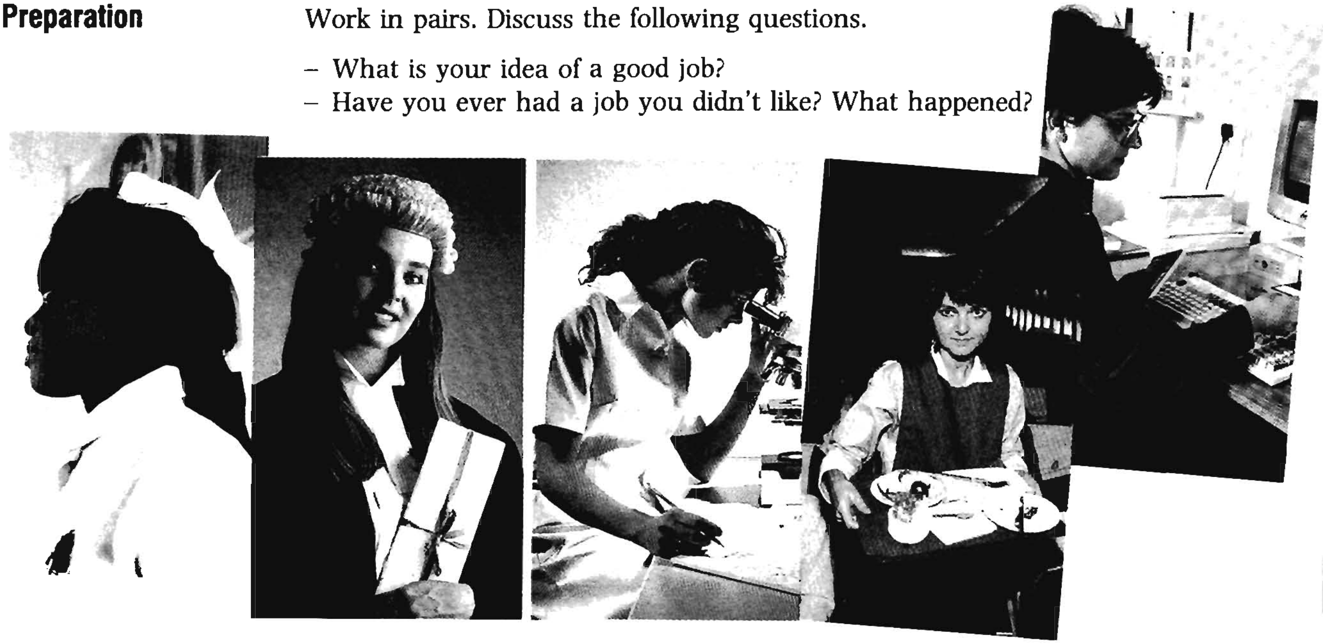

Presentation

T.9a

Listen to two people, Jeremy and Angela, describing how they came to choose their careers. Make notes while you listen. Then work with your partner. Decide if the following statements are true (T) or false (F) and explain why.

a. ☐ Jeremy was made unemployed because the company wanted to save money.
b. ☐ The company went out of business because of the poor economic climate.
c. ☐ Jeremy was offered several jobs in other similar companies but he rejected them.
d. ☐ Jeremy's application to a small magazine was successful.
e. ☐ Angela's father wanted her to be ambitious.
f. ☐ She needed special training to do her job as a secretary.
g. ☐ She had to spend a lot of time doing her job.
h. ☐ She couldn't live on her salary.
i. ☐ A few things about her job depressed her.
j. ☐ She chose law as her career.

Checking understanding

Look at the listening text on page 83 and try to work out the meaning of the multi-word verbs from the context. Then match the verbs in A with the definitions in B.

A	B
1 to cut back (on) (something)	a. to learn something without difficulty or special study
2 to close (something) down	b. to make someone feel depressed
3 to turn someone/something down	c. to close something (a factory or organization) temporarily or permanently
4 to take someone on	d. to manage to survive and have a satisfactory life
5 to get on	e. to use or require a certain amount of time, effort, or space
6 to pick something up	f. to employ someone
7 to take up an amount of something	g. to choose something as one's career
8 to get by (on something)	h. to refuse or reject someone/something
9 to get someone down	i. to reduce something, especially to save money
10 to go in for something	j. to succeed, to be successful in one's job

Drills

T.9b

Listen and respond to the prompts.

Practice

1 Fill in the gaps below. The last one is the name of a profession.

Originally I worked _________ (a) a school teacher, but I applied _________ (b) a grant to study medicine at university and was accepted _________ (c) the course. I specialized _________ (d) mental disorders, and then started my present job. I believe completely _________ (e) what I am doing. I never take any time _________ (f) work, and I am totally committed _________ (g) my clients. I have to listen very carefully _________ (h) what they say, and I sometimes explain _________ (i) them what I think the problem is. Sometimes they start to depend _________ (j) me too much. What is my job? Oh, I forgot to tell you. I am a _________ (k).

Idiomatic expressions

2 Look at how the following expressions are used in the listening text. What do you think they mean? How would you say number 4 and 6 in your own language?

1 to get on in life/the world
2 to be cut out for something
3 to refuse (something) point-blank
4 That's the last straw!
5 to make one's way in the world
6 The world is one's oyster.

Use the expressions above to complete the following sentences.

a. After four weeks of working in a school, he realized he wasn't _________ teaching. He didn't have enough patience.
b. Although she worked hard and was ambitious, she didn't _________ . Perhaps she was just unlucky.
c. She was young, intelligent, free, and rich. The world _________ .
d. Sarah's two young children had behaved badly all day, so when they threw their dinner on the floor, she said '_________' and immediately put them to bed.
e. The Director was rather shocked when she refused his offer _________. He wasn't used to receiving _________ refusals.

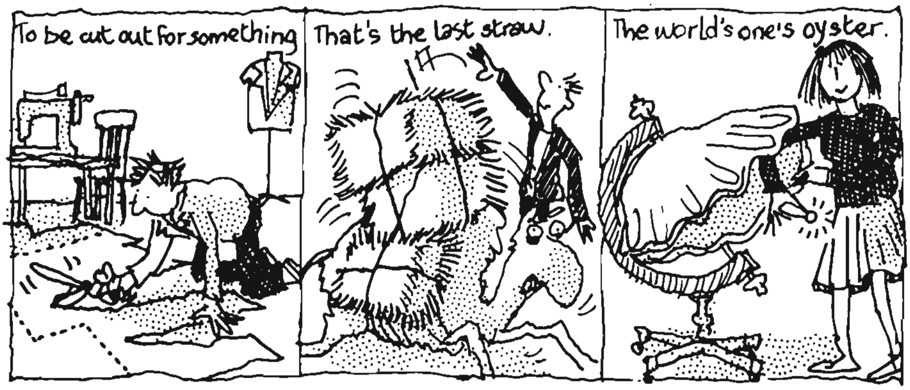
To be cut out for something
That's the last straw.
The world's one's oyster.

3 Work with your partner. Take turns interviewing one another, using the questions below. Try to use the following multi-word verbs and expressions in your questions and answers.

cut out for
take on
pick up
go in for
turn down
take up
get by
apply for
get someone down
get on (in life/the world)
be accepted onto/for

Example

A *What profession do you think you are **cut out for**?*
B *I think I'm **cut out for** acting because I like speaking in public.*

a. Which of these jobs are you most/least suited to? Why?

☐ business management
☐ administrative work
☐ teaching
☐ social work
☐ acting
☐ nursing
☐ secretarial work
☐ academic work

b. What made you choose your present career or course of study?
c. What kind of things make you feel depressed at work or at school?
d. What aspects of your work or study require most time?
e. How important is it to be successful in life? Why?
f. How important is it to have a job that pays a lot of money? Why?
g. Have you acquired any new skills recently?
h. Where did you learn them?

T.9c

4 Listen to seven people talking about their work. What are their jobs?

How multi-word verbs work

5 It is possible to say 'We must cut back' without including an object in the sentence. However, if the object is included, we can add another particle:

*We must **cut back on** expenditure.*

With this particular multi-word verb the particle *on* is optional. The same is true of *to cut down (on) (something)*:

*I must **cut down on** the amount of chocolate I eat.*

Here are some more multi-word verbs which can be used with or without an object (they can behave like Type 1 or Type 4):

She's falling behind.
She dropped in.
Shall we carry on?
I get by.
How are you getting on?
They've moved out.
I never look back.
We don't get on.

However, if these verbs take an object, they *always* need another particle. Supply the missing particles in the sentences below.

a. I'm falling behind ________ my work at school.

b. How are you getting on ________ your studies?

c. She dropped in ________ us last weekend.

d. We've moved out ________ our flat.

e. Please carry on ________ what you were saying.

f. I often look back ________ my childhood.

g. I can't get by ________ less than £50 a week.

h. Stephen doesn't get on ________ his maths teacher.

What's the answer?

1 When some shops *close down* they have a sale in order to sell all their remaining goods. What is this sale called?

________________ **SALE**

2 *To close (something) down* and *to shut (something) down* mean the same thing. What multi-word verbs have the opposite meaning?

3 So far this book has covered over twenty-five multi-word verbs with the particle *up*. Fill in as many as you can in the diagram.

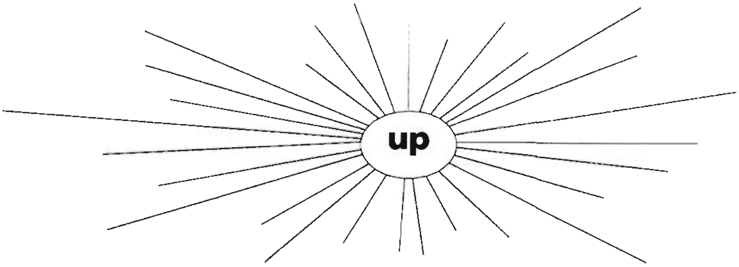

Jokes

Q How much training do you need to do to become a rubbish collector?
A *None. You pick it up as you go along.*

Q How many psychiatrists do you need to change a light bulb?
A *Only one, but the light bulb must really want to change.*

Speaking

Work with your partner. Choose a job and decide how you can describe it without saying what the job is. Try not to 'give the game away' by making it too easy. Read your description to the rest of the class. They must guess what the job is. They can also ask you questions about it.

Speaking and writing

Work with your partner. Look at the picture story and practise telling it. Discuss what multi-word verbs and idiomatic expressions you can use. Then write the story together.

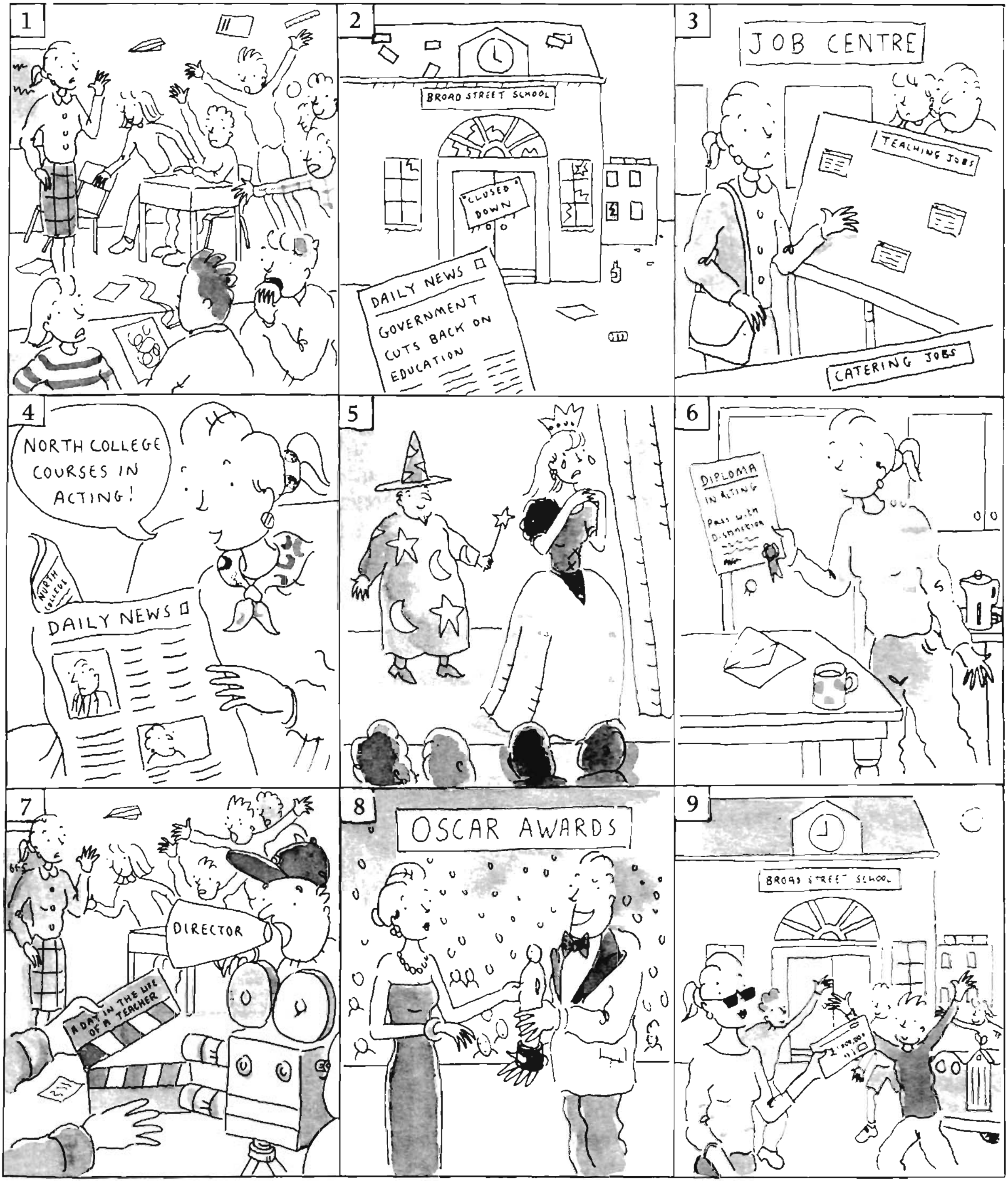
1
2
BROAD STREET SCHOOL
CLOSED DOWN
DAILY NEWS
GOVERNMENT CUTS BACK ON EDUCATION
3
JOB CENTRE
TEACHING JOBS
CATERING JOBS
4
NORTH COLLEGE COURSES IN ACTING!
NORTH COLLEGE
DAILY NEWS
5
6
DIPLOMA IN ACTING
Pass with Distinction
7
DIRECTOR
A DAY IN THE LIFE OF A TEACHER
8
OSCAR AWARDS
9
BROAD STREET SCHOOL

10 A nightmare journey

Preparation

Look at the question below. Tell the class about it.

– What is the worst journey you have ever made? What happened?

Presentation

Put the following seven paragraphs in the correct order.

My nightmare journey

a. 'Aren't we going to run out of petrol quite soon?' I said. 'No, don't worry, there's plenty left,' he said. Five minutes later the car came to a standstill. We were out of petrol. Martin told me not to worry and said he was sure there was a petrol station somewhere nearby. He got out of the car and walked off. Much to my surprise, he came back ten minutes later with a can full of petrol. He put the petrol in the tank, got in, and we drove off. I felt more relaxed now, and thought that everything would be all right. Two miles later the car broke down.

b. Martin switched on the windscreen wipers, but we couldn't see the road very well. A few minutes later we couldn't make out anything because the rain was so heavy. I warned him about the dangers of driving on wet roads, but instead of slowing down, he speeded up. He said it was getting late. Fortunately, we finally found the street where my interview was to take place. Martin turned to me and said, 'Better late than never'. As he said this, a car pulled out in front of us without warning. Martin managed to swerve just in time to avoid hitting it – but he ran into a parked car instead. The parked car was beyond repair – it was a complete write-off.

c. The following weekend Martin picked me up at 8.30 a.m. He said his alarm clock hadn't gone off and he had overslept, so we set off later than we had planned. My mother was quite excited by the idea of my going to London for an interview, and she came to the front door to see us off. Unfortunately, it was the rush hour, and we were held up in a traffic jam for the next thirty minutes, but eventually the road was clear and we headed for the motorway. I noticed we were short of petrol and pointed this out to Martin.

d. I didn't panic, but I could feel the nervous tension building up in my stomach. 'Don't worry,' he said, 'I know what's wrong with it. I'll fix it in no time at all.' An hour later he was still under the car trying to repair it – but without success. Then another car pulled up next to us and the driver asked if we needed any help. He asked where we were heading for and, when we told him, he pointed out we were going in the wrong direction. He repaired the car, we thanked him for helping us, and we set off again. I don't know how it happened, but instead of arriving in London we ended up in Manchester.

e. The worst journey I have ever made was the time when I had to go to London for a job interview. I was living in York, in the north of England, at the time and my car was under repair. I planned to go by train, but a friend called Martin said, 'No, don't go by train. You know how unreliable they are. They never run on time. I'm going to London next week, so I can give you a lift.' I told him I had to be at the interview by 3.00 o'clock without fail. He assured me we would arrive in time. 'Don't worry,' he said. 'We'll be there in no time.'

f. Martin got out of the car and told the other driver he was responsible for the accident. The other driver blamed Martin for what had happened. I left them arguing and went in for my interview. I apologized for being five minutes late, but they said it was all right because the interviewer hadn't arrived yet. When he came in, I recognized him – it was the man who had pulled out in front of us. I didn't get the job.

g. Martin told me not to worry. He said he knew a quick route to London from Manchester that would reduce our journey time by half. This sounded too good to be true, but I tried to believe him. He said that if we drove fast, we would make up for lost time. To some extent this was true, because he did drive faster, but unfortunately a police car caught up with us and told us to pull over to the side of the road. The policeman fined him for speeding and we drove off. We continued our journey. We were near London when it started to rain.

Checking understanding

Look at how the following multi-word verbs are used in the text. Then match the verbs in A with the definitions in B.

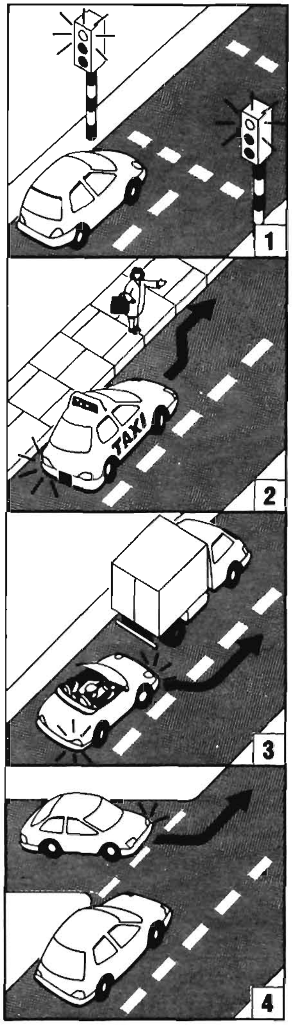

A	B
1 to break down	a. to manage to see or read something
2 to pull over	b. to have no more of something
3 to hold someone/something up	c. to find yourself in a place or situation that you had not intended
4 to pull out	d. to delay someone or something
5 to see someone off	e. to move or travel towards somewhere
6 to end up somewhere	f. to stop working because of mechanical failure (of a vehicle or machine)
7 to pull up	g. to to accompany someone to a place of departure and say goodbye
8 to head for somewhere	h. to slow down and stop a vehicle
9 to run out (of something)	i. to drive a vehicle into a different or faster lane (in order to overtake)
10 to make something out	j. to move a vehicle closer to the side of the road either to stop or to allow other vehicles to pass

Drills

T.10

Listen and respond to the prompts.

Practice

1 Look at the pictures above. Match them with the three multi-word verbs below.

pull over/pull out/pull up

1 ________ 2 ________ 3 ________ 4 ________

2 Fill in the gaps below.

I remember the day I passed my driving test. My driving instructor complimented me ________ (a) my driving skills and congratulated me ________ (b) passing my test the first time I took it. It started to rain and he warned me ________ (c) the dangers of driving in wet conditions. I thanked him ________ (d) all his help and drove off. Then I had an accident. A car pulled out in front of me and I crashed into it. The driver of the other car blamed me ________ (e) the accident and refused to apologize ________ (f) what had happened although it was completely his fault.

3 Put one word in each of the spaces below and then check your answers with the text.

a. I have to report to the police station on 2 March ________ fail.
b. I can't use my car at the moment. It's in the garage ________ repair.
c. The engineer tried to fix the machine, but ________ success.
d. I asked the mechanic what was wrong ________ my car engine and he said I needed a new one. He said it was so old it was ________ repair.
e. The terrorist bomb exploded ________ warning.

4 Work with a partner and retell the story of the nightmare journey, using the pictures below.

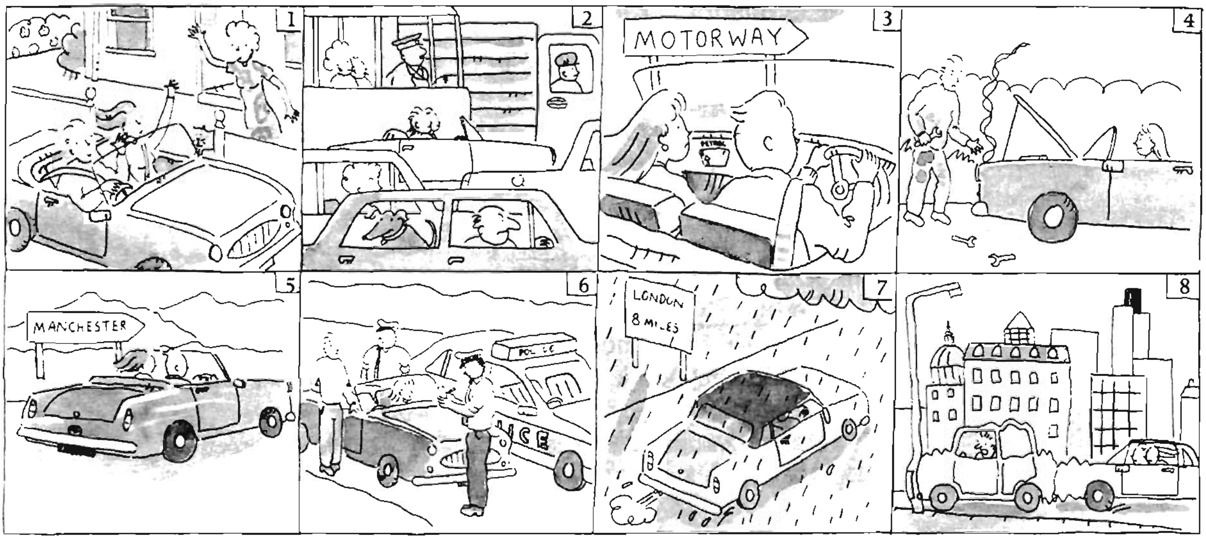

Time expressions

5 Discuss what the following time expressions mean.

The trains never run *on time*.
He assured me we would arrive *in time* for the interview.
He swerved *just in time* to avoid hitting the car.
I'll fix it *in no time at all*.

Now put one time expression in each of the sentences below.

a. The plane wasn't delayed. It took off _________ .
b. We arrived _________ to hear the beginning of the concert.
c. I thought it would take her a long time to complete this exercise, but she finished it _________ .
d. I'm afraid we weren't _________ to save him.
e. The bomb exploded immediately after we left the building – we left _________ .

Idiomatic expressions

6 Discuss what the following expressions mean, and think of situations when you would use them.

1 to make up for lost time
2 My patience is running out.
3 I'll keep my fingers crossed for you.
4 Better late than never.
5 It's better to be safe than sorry.

How multi-word verbs work

up

Instead of slowing down, he decided to ***speed up****.*

The particle *up* can be used with some verbs to give the idea of an increase in quantity or intensity:

We must ***hurry up*** *or we're going to be late.*

7 Complete the following sentences with multi-word verbs that use the particle *up*.

a. I can't hear the radio. Can you _________ , please?
b. The cost of living is _________ all the time.
c. I'm afraid this is a very bad line and I can't hear what you're saying. Can you _________ , please?
d. This soup isn't very hot. Shall I _________ ?
e. You're still very weak after your illness. I think you need to _________ your strength before you go back to work.
f. The airline company was losing money, so it was forced to _________ prices.

off
*The policeman got into his car and **drove off**.*

The particle *off* can be used with some verbs to give the idea of movement away from somewhere:

*He gave me the money for the books but he **walked off** before I could give him his change.*

8 Complete the following sentences with multi-word verbs that use the particle *off*.

a. The plane was meant to leave at 6.00 a.m. but it didn't _________ until 9.00 a.m.
b. At the end of the film the two lovers got into a boat and _________ into the sunset.
c. The small boy took my purse from my bag and _________ before I could catch him.
d. The next morning we _________ on our journey to see the Himalayas.
e. I would like to jump on a plane and _________ to somewhere exotic and warm.
f. He jumped onto his horse and _________ at speed.

What's the answer?

What is the difference between *to be short of something* and *to be out of something?*

Jokes

A traffic policeman noticed that a driver was knitting while driving along. He got on his motorbike, caught up with the driver and shouted, 'Pull over!' The driver shouted back, 'No, a pair of socks'.

Policeman Why were you speeding?
Driver Well, officer, my brakes are so worn out that I wanted to get home before I had an accident.

Writing

Using the multi-word verbs, idiomatic expressions, and prepositions you have learnt in this unit, write a description of the worst journey you have ever made.

11 What's in the news?

Preparation

Work in pairs. Discuss the following questions.

- How often do you listen to the news on TV/radio? What does it depend on?
- What news items do you remember from recent weeks? Why?

Presentation

T.11a

Look at the incomplete news headlines below. See if you can predict what they will be about. Then listen to the news headlines. Fill in the missing words and take notes on each of the news items.

1 Thieves ______ at the Royal Gallery

2 **Ship ______ at sea near the Sussex Coast**

3 Three men ______ of Brixton prison

4 PLANE ______ IN JUNGLE

5 Chemical factory ______

6 **SEVERE WEATHER ______ TOWNS IN THE NORTH**

7 *Damaged plane ______ safely*

Checking understanding

Look at the multi-word verbs in the tapescript on page 86. Then match the verbs in A with the definitions in B. Note that *to pick someone up* occurs twice but with different meanings.

A	B
1 to pick someone up	a. to escape from a place where one is a prisoner
2 to pick someone up	b. to catch or arrest someone
3 to cut out	c. to succeed in stealing something and escaping with it
4 to blow (something) up	d. to be ready to provide help or take action if it is needed
5 to make off	e. to explode, to destroy something with explosives
6 to break into somewhere/to break in	f. to stop working (of an engine or machine)
7 to cut something/someone off	g. to enter a building or room illegally or by force
8 to get away with something	h. to isolate something or someone from something
9 to break out (of somewhere)	i. to rescue someone from danger, especially from the sea
10 to stand by	j. to leave in a hurry, especially to escape from other people

Drills

T.11b

Listen and respond to the prompts.

Practice

1 Fill in the gaps below.

'What's ________ (a) the newspaper today?'

'It says here that crime is ________ (b) the increase, a man has been put ________ (c) trial for murder, two English passengers were ________ (d) board a plane that came down in Brazil, and two escaped prisoners are still ________ (e) the run from the police.'

'Oh, and what's ________ (f) TV tonight?'

2 Here is a news report on two of the men who broke out of prison. Fill in the gaps below. Then listen to the report and check your answers.

The two men who broke out of Brixton Prison yesterday, John Ross and Steven Blake, were described as 'dangerous criminals' by the police.

Last year Ross was arrested ________ (a) armed robbery and charged ________ (b) a variety of crimes, including assault and car theft. A court found him guilty of all the charges and he was sentenced ________ (c) four years in prison. Blake was accused ________ (d) robbing a jeweller's shop in Knightsbridge and causing serious bodily harm, but there was insufficient evidence to convict him ________ (e) the crime. He was also suspected ________ (f) being involved in a bank robbery in Hertford. However, he was found guilty of breaking into offices and stealing over £10,000. He was sentenced ________ (g) three years in prison.

3 Work with your partner. Use the multi-word verbs and prepositions above to talk about the pictures opposite. Say what you think has happened, is happening, and might or will happen next. Then choose one of the pictures and produce a small news item to read aloud to the rest of the class.

1

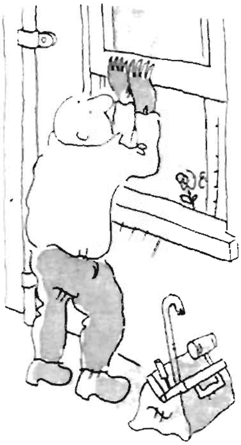

2

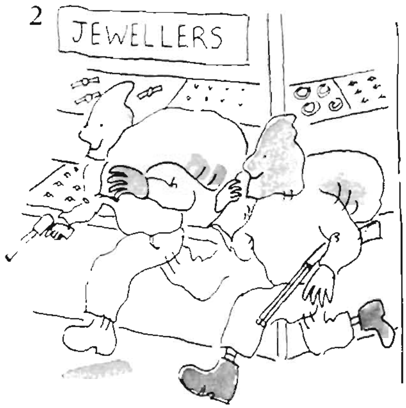

3

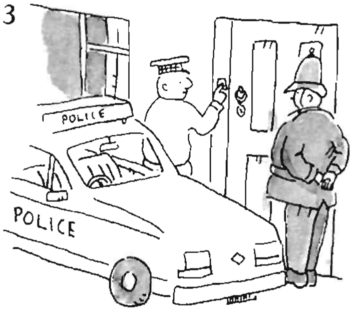

4

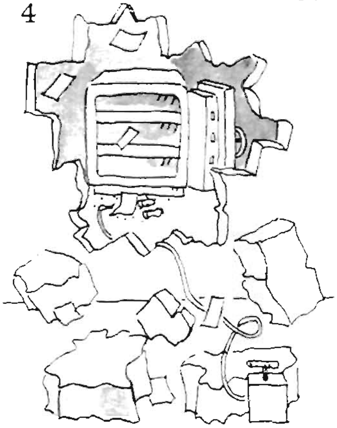

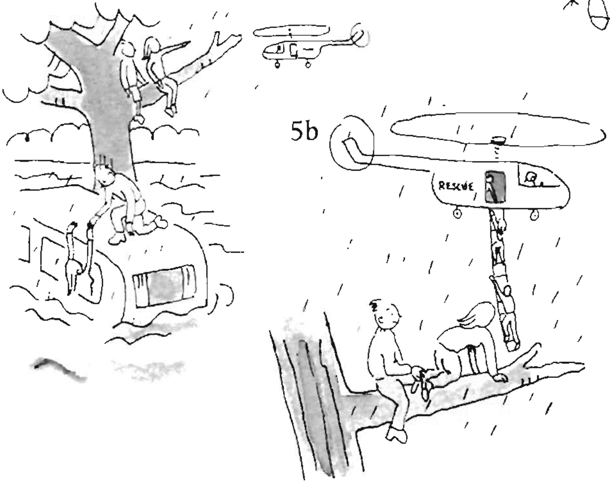

5a

5b

6

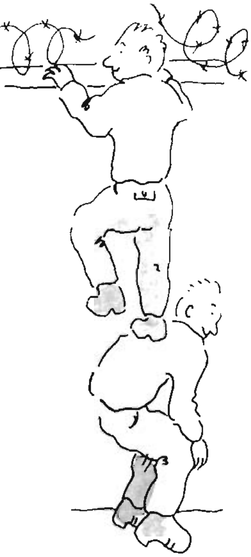

Idiomatic expression

4 *Crime doesn't pay.* What does this expression mean? Do you agree? Why?

Multi-word verbs as nouns and adjectives

Some multi-word verbs can be used to make nouns and adjectives. They are usually made by combining the infinitive of the verb stem with the particle. If your car *broke down* on the motorway you could say:

I had a ***breakdown*** *on the motorway, so I called the* ***breakdown*** *service.*

Similarly, the verb *to get away* (= to escape) can be used to form a noun or an adjective:

The robbers made their ***getaway*** *in a blue car. The next day the police found the* ***getaway*** *car a short distance from the scene of the crime.*

The stress is normally on the first part of the word (**'break***down*, **'get***away*).

5 Nouns and adjectives that derive from multi-word verbs are sometimes used in newspaper headlines. Complete the ones below.

a. Someone *broke in* and stole several paintings from the Royal Gallery last night.

______ AT ROYAL GALLERY

b. Many cars were *held up* for over three hours on the M25 motorway.

THREE HOUR ________ ON M25

c. Three prisoners have *broken out* of Brixton Prison.

________ **AT BRIXTON PRISON**

d. The government wants to *cut back* on the amount it spends on defence.

DEFENCE _______ ANNOUNCED

e. Someone has invented a new switch which makes dangerous machines *cut out* if they become too hot. The invention will save many lives.

NEW _____ SWITCH WILL SAVE LIVES

What's the answer?

1 What is the difference between *to blow up* and *to blow something up*?
2 *To pick someone/something up* can have several meanings. How many can you think of?

Jokes

A nervous plane passenger heard the following announcement while waiting for his flight:
'Will passengers please prepare for their final departure.'

Nervous plane passenger *How often do planes of this type crash?*
Flight attendant *Only once.*

Speaking and writing

Look at the picture story with your partner and practise telling it. Discuss what multi-word verbs and expressions you can use. Now write the story.

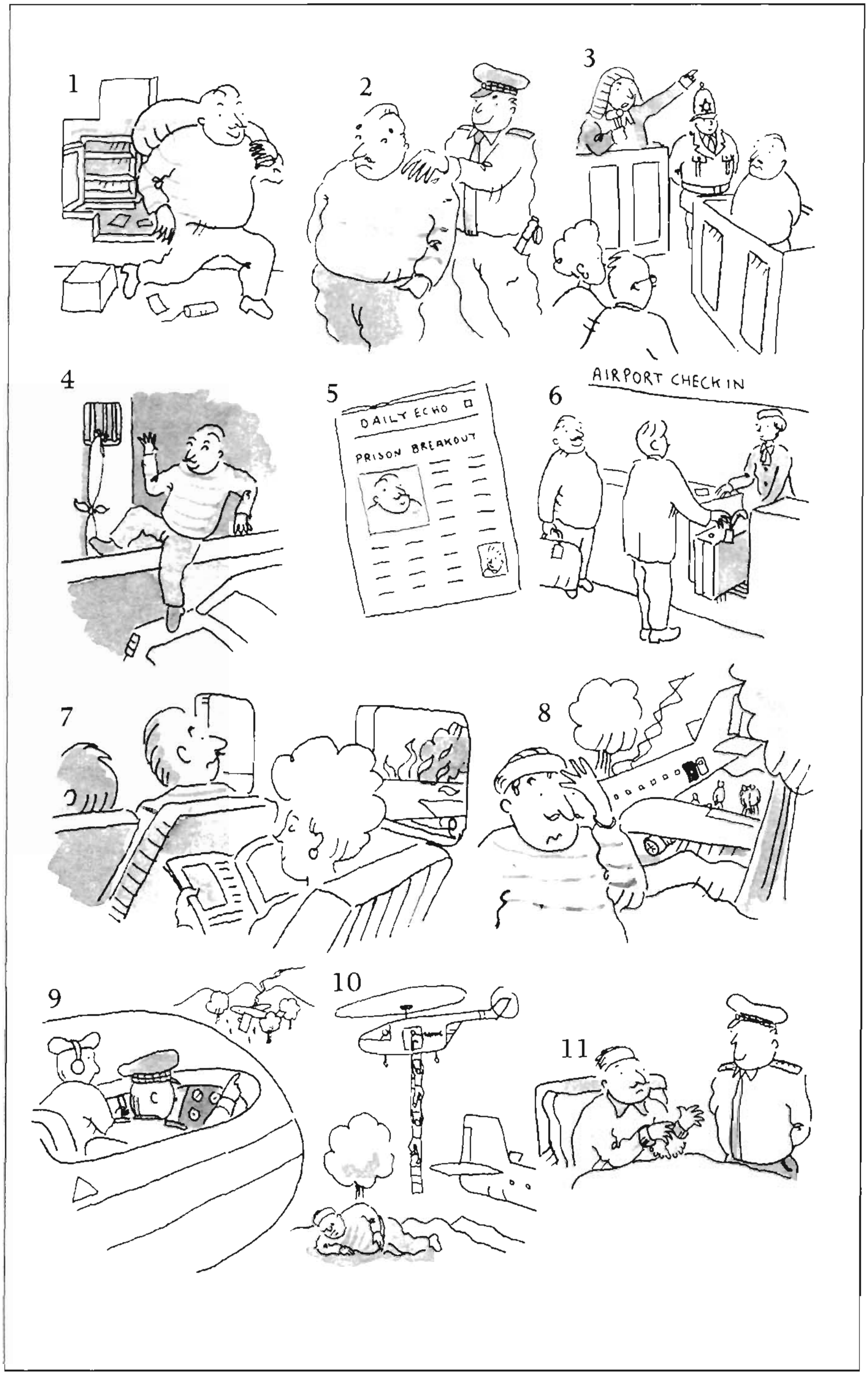
1
2
3
4
5
DAILY ECHO
PRISON BREAKOUT
6
AIRPORT CHECK IN
7
8
9
10
11

12 Across a crowded room

Preparation

Work in pairs. Discuss the following questions.

- Do you believe in love at first sight? Why?/Why not?
- What vocabulary do you know for describing the different stages of a relationship (at the beginning you *get to know someone*, etc.)?

Presentation

1 The pictures below are in the wrong order. Discuss them with your partner and think about a possible order. The first one has been done for you.

1 a.

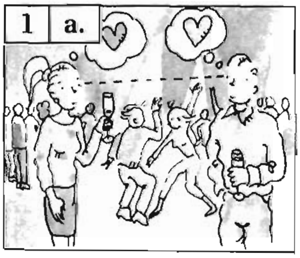

b.

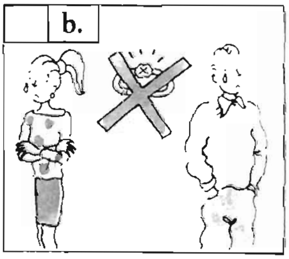

c.

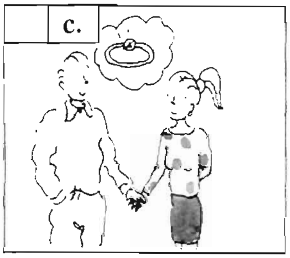

d.

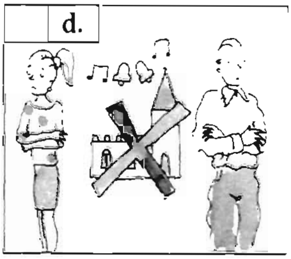

e.

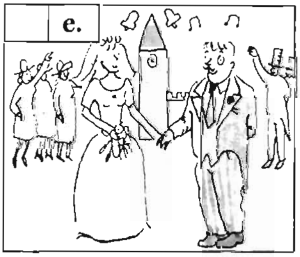

f.

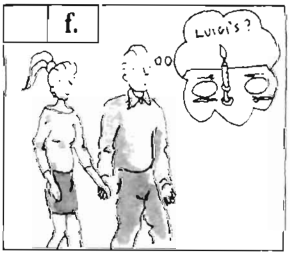

g.

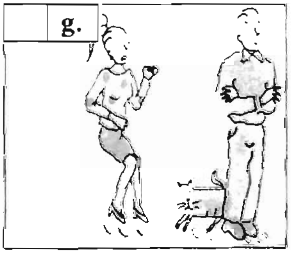

h.

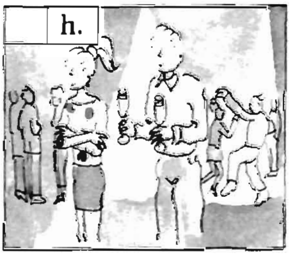

i.

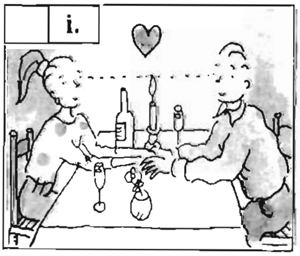

j.

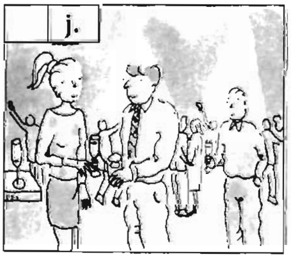

k.

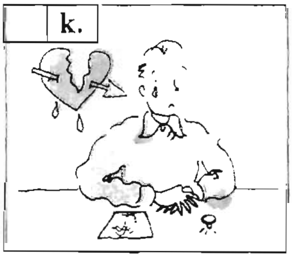

l.

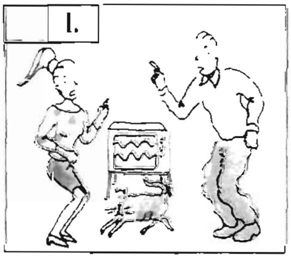

2 Now read the story and put the pictures in 1 in the correct order. Write the relevant multi-word verbs and idiomatic expressions under each of the pictures. Then discuss their meaning with your partner.

ACROSS A CROWDED ROOM

It was love at first sight. I saw her standing on the other side of a crowded room sipping a glass of wine. Our eyes met. I walked over to her and said, 'You seem to be on your own. Can I join you?'

She smiled and said yes. At first she came across as rather shy, but as I got to know her better I found out she was an open and confident person who was easy to get on with. At the end of the party I said I would like to see her again and asked her out for a meal the following week.

I took her out to a small Italian restaurant in Soho. After talking for a while, we found out that we had a lot in common – in fact, we seemed to have the same interests and tastes in everything. She smiled at me when I spoke to her, and when our eyes met this time I knew that I was head over heels in love with her. I thought that she was falling in love with me, too. We started going out with each other, and after some time we got engaged and decided to live together. We were both very happy and made plans to settle down and get married the following year.

However, it wasn't long before things started to go wrong. She seemed less affectionate and loving as the weeks passed, and I started to feel she was going off me. She criticized me all the time. 'Why are you always going on at me?' I asked.

In the end I wondered if we were suited to one another. I was keen on hard rock and she was fond of classical music. I was interested in sport and she was interested in politics. We finally fell out over a TV programme. We had a terrible row, broke off our engagement, and called off the wedding. A week later she moved out. I was heartbroken, and it took me a long time to get over it.

A few months later I heard she was engaged to a man who worked in local government. They got married, but after two years their marriage broke up and they got divorced.

I tell you this because last night I went to a party and I was drowning my sorrows when I saw her standing on the other side of the room sipping a glass of wine. I saw a man walk over to her and I heard him say, 'You seem to be on your own. Can I join you?'

Checking understanding

Match the verbs in A with the definitions in B.

A	B
1 to come across as something	a. to stop liking someone (informal)
2 to ask someone out somewhere	b. to start to live a stable, regular life in one place (perhaps after buying a house or getting married)
3 to go out with someone	c. to give the impression of having a particular characteristic
4 to settle down	d. to cancel something (an arrangement or event)
5 to go off someone	e. to discontinue something, to bring something to an abrupt end
6 to go on at someone	f. to spend time with someone socially, often to have a romantic relationship
7 to fall out (with someone) (over something)	g. to come to an end
8 to break something off	h. to have an argument with someone and stop being friendly with them
9 to call something off	i. to keep complaining about something to someone (informal)
10 to break up	j. to invite someone to go out somewhere (to a restaurant or theatre)

Drills

T.12a

Listen and respond to the prompts.

Practice

1 Jane is very upset. Her friend, Mary, has come to visit her. Look at their conversation below. Replace the words in *italics* with multi-word verbs.

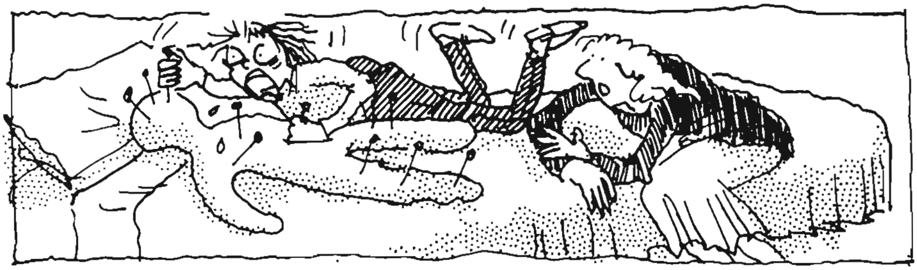

Mary What's the matter, Jane? Have you *had an argument with* Paul again?

Jane Yes, you could say that . . .

Mary Well, it takes two to have an argument. What was it about this time?

Jane He said I was always *complaining and criticizing* him.

Mary Is it true?

Jane Well, in a way, yes. But I was feeling insecure because I thought he was *starting to dislike* me.

Mary How long have you been *seeing* one another?

Jane Nearly a year now. But yesterday I *discovered* he's been *having a relationship with* someone else.

Mary Oh, so what did you do?

Jane I told him, and he said he wanted to *end* our relationship.

Mary But I thought you were planning to get married in June?

Jane We've *cancelled* it.

Mary Well, I'm sorry to hear the two of you have *ended your relationship.*

Jane I think it'll take me a long time to *recover from* this.

Mary Well, perhaps it's for the best. You were never really happy with him. And after all, there are plenty more fish in the sea!

T.12b

Listen to the dialogue to check your answers.
What does the last sentence of the dialogue mean? Why does Mary say it?
How would you express the same idea in your own language?

Particles

2 There are six mistakes in the text below. Find them and correct them.

> I used to be very keen at football, but I lost interest in it when I met my best friend's sister. At first I was only fond on her, but later on I fell in love to her. We had a lot on common and thought about getting married. I was engaged with her for six months, but in the end she got married with someone else.

3 Work with your partner. Take turns asking one another the questions below. Try to use multi-word verbs in your questions and answers.

a. What impression do you think you give of yourself when you first meet people?
b. Imagine someone is always criticizing you. What would you do or say?
c. Would you have a relationship with someone your parents didn't approve of?
d. If you have a relationship with someone, how important is it that you both have a lot in common (that you are both keen on sport, for example)?
e. What kind of things make you stop liking someone?
f. What would make you end a relationship with someone?
g. When do you think is the right time to live a more quiet, stable life and get married?
h. Do you agree with the saying 'It's love which makes the world go round'? Why?/Why not?
i. Some people say 'True love never dies'. Do you agree? Why?/Why not?

Idiomatic expressions

4 Find the expressions in the text which mean the following:

1 to fall in love with someone the first time you see them
2 to be completely or deeply in love
3 to try to forget your troubles and disappointment by drinking alcohol

5 What do you think the following expressions mean?

1 the eternal triangle
2 an old flame
3 a one-sided relationship
4 There's no love lost between them.
5 a love–hate relationship

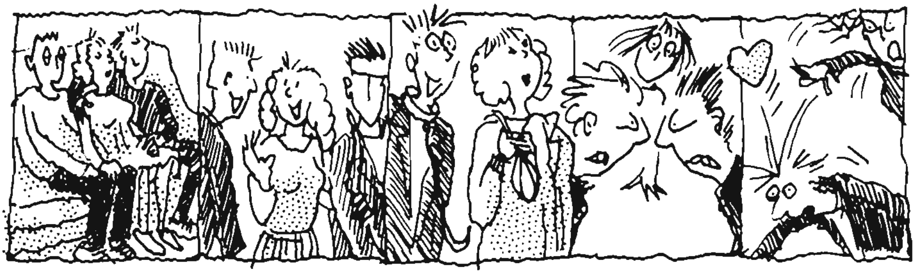

How multi-word verbs work

off

The particle *off* can be used with some verbs to give the idea of stopping or cancelling something:

*They **broke off** their engagement and **called off** the wedding.*

6 Complete the following sentences with multi-word verbs that use the particle *off*.

a. Can you ________ all the lights when you go to bed, please?
b. Hello, operator. I was talking to someone and we were ________ . Can you try to re-connect us, please?
c. There isn't time to have the meeting today, so we will have to ________ till next week.
d. It's been lovely talking to you on the phone, but I must ________ because there's someone at the front door. I'll call you again next week. Bye.
e. I wish they would make up their minds one way or the other. Yesterday they said the wedding was on, but now they've had another argument and say the wedding ________ .

What's the answer?

What is the difference between the following:

1 *to break something off* and *to break up?*
2 *to put something off* and *to call something off?*
3 *to call something off* and *to break something off?*

Jokes

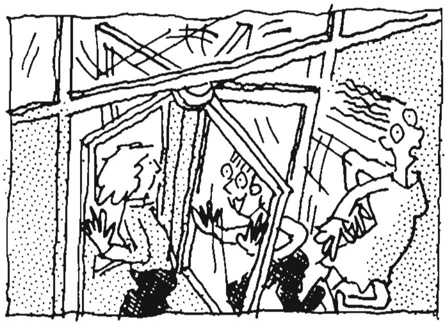

He met her in a revolving door and has been going round with her ever since.

Mother A postcard came for you this morning, but there's no message on it.
Son Oh, yes, it's from my new girlfriend. She must be on holiday.
Mother How do you know it's from her? It's completely blank.
Son Because we're not on speaking terms at the moment.

Writing

Look at how the time expressions below are used to sequence the events in the story 'Across a crowded room'.

At first after a while after some time the following year
However, it wasn't long before as the weeks passed in the end

Using these time expressions, as well as the multi-word verbs, idiomatic expressions, and prepositions you have learnt in this unit, write a description of *either*:

– a romantic play, book, or film that you know,
or
– the development of a romantic relationship.

Tapescript section

Unit 1

Tapescript 1

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again. using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 Can I give you my homework tomorrow?
(hand in)
Can I hand in my homework tomorrow?

2 Can you check my homework to see if there are any mistakes?
(go through)
Can you go through my homework to see if there are any mistakes?

3 Could we postpone our meeting until tomorrow?
(put off)
Could we put off our meeting until tomorrow?

4 I must begin work.
(get down to)
I must get down to work.

5 I didn't pass the exam.
(get through)
I didn't get through the exam.

6 I passed my history exam with only 54%.
(scrape through)
I scraped through my history exam with only 54%.

7 Can I write down your name and address?
(take down)
Can I take down your name and address?

8 She's remaining at the same level as the other students in class.
(keep up with)
She's keeping up with the other students in class.

9 Everyone in class is making progress with their studies, but I'm getting worse and worse.
(fall behind)
Everyone in class is making progress with their studies, but I'm falling behind.

10 I must try to reach the same level as the other students in my class.
(catch up with)
I must try to catch up with the other students in my class.

Unit 2

Tapescript 2a

EA: Estate agent A: Ann

EA Well, this is the flat. It's vacant at the moment. I'm afraid the previous owners didn't *look after* it very well, so it's not in perfect condition.

A Mmm . . .

EA As you can see, it's in need of some decoration and repair. There are four rooms altogether: kitchen, living room, bedroom, and bathroom. This is the living room. It hasn't been decorated recently.

A Yes, it certainly needs *doing up* . . . All the wallpaper is *coming off* the walls, and it's very cold and damp. How is the flat heated?

EA Well, there's an open fireplace, but it could be *taken out* and central heating could be *put in*.

A Mmm . . . It's not very large. I suppose I could *put up* some shelves for books and things. Do the carpets come with the flat?

EA Yes, though as you can see, they are rather old and don't add much value to the property.

A Yes, I agree. I think they all need *throwing out*, to be honest. What's that up there? Is that a hole in the ceiling?

EA Oh, yes, I'm afraid it is. I didn't notice that the last time I was here.

A Well, that will definitely need *seeing to* before it does any damage to the property.

EA Yes, of course. But I do think the flat has potential. It could look very good if it's *done up* nicely.

A Well, I'm certainly interested. Obviously I'll need to *talk it over* with my husband. You say it's vacant. Does that mean we could *move in* immediately?

EA Yes, the flat's empty so you could *move in* when you're ready.

A Well, I'll certainly *think it over* and if we decide to make an offer I'll call you tomorrow. Thank you for showing me round the flat.

EA No trouble, Mrs Jones. We hope to hear from you tomorrow then. Goodbye.

A Goodbye.

Tapescript 2b

Listen to the sentences. Then agree with them, using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 This room looks terrible. It really needs decorating.
(do up)
Yes, it needs doing up.
2 Look, the wallpaper isn't sticking to the walls.
(come off)
Yes, it's coming off the walls.
3 That fireplace is very ugly. We could remove it.
(take out)
Yes, we could take it out.
4 The flat doesn't have any central heating. We must install it.
(put in)
Yes, we must put it in.
5 There are no shelves or cupboards. We could fix some to the walls.
(put up)
Yes, we could put some up.
6 There's a lot of rubbish in this room. It needs putting in the dustbin.
(throw out)
Yes, it needs throwing out.
7 The cooker doesn't work. It needs repairing.
(see to)
Yes, it needs seeing to.
8 We must discuss this before we decide.
(talk over)
Yes, we must talk it over.
9 We could start living here immediately.
(move in)
Yes, we could move in immediately.
10 We must consider it carefully before we decide.
(think over)
Yes, we must think it over.

Tapescript 2c

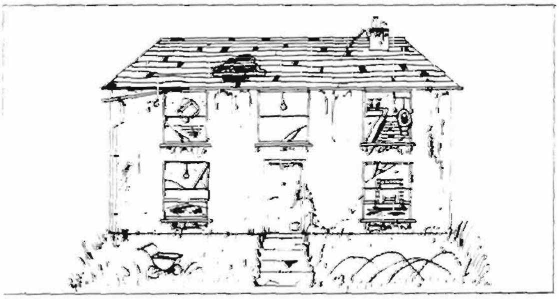

Here's a description of the house before it was done up.

Well, the roof's in a bad condition and needs repairing.
There's an old fireplace but there's no central heating.
The carpets downstairs have holes in them and there are no shelves or curtains.
The bathroom needs decorating and the bath itself is old-fashioned and rather ugly.
The old windows need replacing.
The outside walls of the house are cracked, so they need some attention.
The garden is in a terrible condition and it doesn't have a fence.
A new television aerial's needed.
And at the moment nobody's living there.

Tapescript 2d

a. I'd like to talk it ȯver.
b. Did you throw them ȯut?
c. They've decided to put it ȯff.
d. We're going to do it u̇p.
e. I'd like more time to think it ȯver.
f. I didn't take it dȯwn.
g. Did you hand it i̇n?
h. Can you help me put it u̇p?

Unit 3

Tapescript 3a

Doc: Doctor
RB: Mr Rich Brown **T:** Ms Teresa Green
LW: Mrs Lily White **IR:** Mr Ivor Rose

1

Doc Hello, Mr Brown. And how are you?
RB Well, I haven't been feeling very well recently. I get out of breath very easily when I climb stairs or walk short distances, and last week I started getting pains in my chest.
Doc Mm. I see. Do you smoke?
RB Yes, I *get through* about 30 cigarettes a day.
Doc That's rather a lot. Have you tried giving up?
RB I have, doctor, but I can't break the habit.
Doc Well, I think you should at least try to *cut down on* the amount you smoke. What about your eating habits? Have you *put on* any weight recently?
RB Yes, I'm a little overweight at the moment. You see, I eat in cafés most of the time and I tend to drive everywhere because of my job. I sell sports equipment.
Doc Well, it sounds as if you're out of condition. I think you need to take some regular exercise.

RB What, you mean *take up* jogging?

Doc Well, jogging or something like that, but the most important thing is, I think you need to lose some weight, so I want you to go on a diet.

RB Go on a diet?

Doc Yes, it's particularly important that you *cut out* fatty foods. What about alcohol? How much do you drink?

RB About two or three pints of beer in the evenings.

Doc I think you need to *cut out* drinking completely for the next few months.

RB That's easier said than done, doctor.

Doc I agree, but if you don't change your lifestyle, you could be in trouble . . .

2

Doc Hello, Teresa. And what seems to be the problem?

T Well, I'm not feeling very well at the moment. I'm preparing for exams and I've been staying up late at night studying. This morning I got out of bed very early to do some more work, and I *passed out*. My flatmate found me on the floor. I *came round* after a few seconds.

Doc Mm. Have you had any other symptoms?

T Well, I have been feeling a bit off colour and sometimes I get splitting headaches. What do you think is wrong with me?

Doc Well, it sounds as if you've been burning the candle at both ends. You've probably been overdoing it and you're overtired. I don't think it's anything to worry about, but I think you should take it easy for a while and try to get enough sleep.

T Yes, I haven't been getting much sleep lately.

Doc I'll give you something to help you relax in the evenings. And just try to have a few early nights.

T Thank you, doctor.

3

Doc Hello, it's Mrs White, isn't it?

LW That's right, doctor.

Doc What can I do for you?

LW Oh dear. I'm always tired, doctor – I'm absolutely worn out at the end of the day.

Doc Are you eating regular meals?

LW Well, I don't really have time to eat – I'm too busy with the children. And we don't have much money for food because my husband's out of work.

Doc It sounds to me as if you're a bit run down. I'll write out a prescription for some extra iron and vitamins, and I'd like you to come back in a couple of weeks so I can see how you're getting on.

LW Thank you, doctor.

4

Doc Hello, Mr Rose. How are you feeling?

IR I feel a bit under the weather. I've got a headache and I ache all over.

Doc Mm. You've probably *picked something up*. Let me see. Yes, you're running a temperature. I think you're *going down with* flu.

IR How long will it take me to *get over* it? You see, I need to get back to work as soon as possible.

Doc About four or five days. I'll write out a prescription for some pain killers for you. Take these tablets three times a day after meals. Meanwhile, my advice is to go to bed with a hot water bottle and drink lots of fluids. After a few days you should feel as right as rain.

Tapescript 3b

1 How long will it take me to *get over* it?
2 I think you're *going down with* flu.
3 I *get through* about 30 cigarettes a day.
4 You've probably *picked something up.*
5 It's particularly important that you *cut out* fatty foods.
6 Have you *put on* any weight recently?
7 What, you mean *take up* jogging?
8 I think you should try to *cut down on* the amount you smoke.
9 I *passed out*. My flatmate found me on the floor.
10 I *came round* after a few seconds.

Tapescript 3c

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again, using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 Achoo! Oh dear. I think I'm starting to catch a cold.
(come down with)
Achoo! Oh dear. I think I'm coming down with a cold.
2 I think I caught my cold from Jim.
(pick up)
I think I picked up my cold from Jim.
3 It took me a week to recover from my last cold.
(get over)
It took me a week to get over my last cold.
4 I really must reduce the amount I smoke.
(cut down on)
I really must cut down on the amount I smoke.
5 I smoke 20 cigarettes a day.
(get through)
I get through 20 cigarettes a day.
6 My weight has increased recently.
(put on)
I've put on weight recently.

7 I must stop eating chips.
(*cut out*)
I must cut out eating chips.
8 I've started playing golf as a hobby.
(*take up*)
I've taken up golf as a hobby.
9 I think I'm going to faint.
(*pass out*)
I think I'm going to pass out.
10 I recovered consciousness a few seconds later.
(*come round*)
I came round a few seconds later.

Unit 4

Tapescript 4

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again, using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 I can't tolerate that noise any longer!
(*put up with*)
I can't put up with that noise any longer!
2 You can visit us any time.
(*drop in on*)
You can drop in on us any time.
3 We leave our flat on Friday.
(*move out*)
We move out on Friday.
4 Can I quickly read your history notes?
(*look through*)
Can I look through your history notes?
5 The curtains don't match the wallpaper.
(*go with*)
The curtains don't go with the wallpaper.
6 Could you let me sleep in your house on Saturday night?
(*put up*)
Could you put me up on Saturday night?
7 I found by accident an old love letter you sent me two years ago.
(*come across*)
I came across an old love letter you sent me two years ago.
8 These flowers will help to make the room look brighter.
(*brighten up*)
These flowers will help to brighten up the room.
9 From my bedroom window I can see a garden full of flowers.
(*look out onto*)
My bedroom window looks out onto a garden full of flowers.

Unit 5

Tapescript 5a

1
I: Interviewer J: Jean

I Hello. I work for Sun Tour holidays and I'm interviewing people about their last holiday. Would you mind answering a few questions for our survey?
J No, not at all.
I Thank you. Firstly, could you tell me about your travel arrangements? Did you experience any difficulties in reaching your destination?
J Well, our plane didn't *take off* on time. It was delayed five hours, so we didn't get to Cyprus until three in the morning and we were very tired when we got there. But there was a coach at the airport waiting to *pick us up* and it *dropped us off* at the hotel in time for breakfast, so that was all right.
I And how was the hotel?
J Well, we were a little disappointed with the room. It didn't have a balcony and it *looked out onto* some rather ugly, noisy streets, but the beach was *just a stone's throw away* – it only took us a couple of minutes to get there.
I And how important are holidays to you?
J Oh, we always look forward to going on holiday. We always make sure we *get away* at least once a year.

2
I: Interviewer A: Andy

I Could you tell me first about your travel arrangements? Did you have any problems with them?
A We had no problems flying out, but coming back was awful. We *checked out* of the hotel early Saturday morning and *set off* for the airport by taxi. We were supposed to *get back* to London in the afternoon, but our plane didn't *touch down* until Sunday at four in the morning, so we were absolutely worn out when we got home.
I Oh, and why was there such a delay?
A Technical difficulties, they said. Something wrong with the engine.
I And apart from that, how was the rest of the holiday?
A Oh, it was great. I took up windsurfing and I want to go back and do it again next year.
I And how important are holidays to you?
A I think they're important. You need a change, you need to see somewhere different. *Travel broadens the mind*, doesn't it?

3

I: Interviewer S: Susan

I And what was your last holiday like?

S Marvellous, absolutely marvellous. We went to Rome and we met up with some very nice people from Manchester. We *looked round* the city together and saw all the sights – the Colosseum and St. Peter's . . . And on the way back to England we *stopped off* in Paris and spent a couple of days there. We had a marvellous time.

I And how important are holidays to you?

S Oh, it's good to *get away from it all* and forget all your worries and problems, even if it's only for a few days.

4

I: Interviewer S: Sheila

I So could you tell me about your last holiday?

S It was a complete disaster, and it was a pity, because I was really looking forward *to* it. The plane didn't *take off* on time – it was delayed six hours! The flight was awful – I suffered *from* air-sickness all the way. My hotel room was small and dirty. I complained *about* it *to* the manager and I insisted *on* having a different room, and I even succeeded *in* getting one, but it was just the same!

I Goodness, it sounds terrible.

S I was really disappointed *with* the beach – it was ugly and miles from the hotel. No, the whole thing was a complete disaster. In the end I couldn't wait to *get back* home.

I So you weren't at all satisfied *with* your holiday?

S No, I wasn't. I'd never go back there again!

I And how important are holidays to you?

S Very. I love visiting beautiful places. That's why I was so angry *about* the holiday and *with* the man who booked it for me.

I Yes, I'm sure you were. Which company did you book your holiday with?

S Sun Tour Holidays.

I Oh . . .

Tapescript 5b

1 Our plane didn't *take off* on time. It was delayed five hours.

2 But there was a coach at the airport waiting to *pick us up* and it *dropped us off* at the hotel in time for breakfast.

3 We always make sure we *get away* at least once a year.

4 We *checked out* of the hotel early Saturday morning and *set off* for the airport by taxi.

5 We were supposed to *get back* to London in the afternoon.

6 Our plane didn't *touch down* until Sunday at four in the morning.

7 We *looked round* the city together and saw all the sights – the Colosseum and St. Peter's.

8 On the way back to England we *stopped off* in Paris and spent a couple of days there.

Tapescript 5c

Listen to the sentences. Decide what you would say in each situation, using multi-word verbs from this unit. The first sentence has been done for you.

1 You are at the airport and you want to know what time the plane departs. What do you say?
What time does the plane take off?

2 You are going on a coach trip with some friends and you want to know what time it starts. What do you say?
What time do we set off?

3 Your friend is giving you a lift in her car. You want her to let you out at the station. What do you say?
Can you drop me off at the station?

4 Your friend is going out and you want to know what time she will return. What do you say?
What time will you get back?

5 You want your friend to collect you by car at 6.00 o'clock. What do you say?
Can you pick me up at 6.00 o'clock?

6 You are staying at a hotel and you want to know what time you have to vacate your room. You go to the receptionist. What do you say?
What time do I have to check out?

7 You are on a plane flying to Madrid and you want to know what time the plane lands. What do you say?
What time does the plane touch down in Madrid?

8 You are going to Oxford to see a play and you want to know if there will be time to see the town. What do you say?
Will there be time to look round the town?

9 You are on your way home with a friend. You want to suggest that you both go into a bar for a drink. What do you say?
Shall we stop off for a/and have a drink?

10 Last summer you did extra work for your boss instead of going on holiday. He asks you if you would like to do the same thing this year. You think you need to have a holiday this summer. What do you say?
I think I need to get away this summer.

Unit 6

Tapescript 6b

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again, using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 I have always admired and respected my father.
(look up to)
I have always looked up to my father.

2 The little boy said he wanted to be a train driver when he was older.
(grow up)
The little boy said he wanted to be a train driver when he grew up.

3 She's very similar to her mother – they are both very intelligent.
(take after)
She takes after her mother. They are both very intelligent.

4 I often think about my childhood.
(look back on)
I often look back on my childhood.

5 I can't make her listen to me or understand what I'm trying to say.
(get through to)
I can't get through to her.

6 When her mother died, she was raised by her aunt.
(bring up)
When her mother died, she was brought up by her aunt.

7 How can we avoid going to my brother's party?
(get out of)
How can we get out of going to my brother's party?

8 He was not punished for using bad language at home.
(get away with)
He got away with using bad language at home.

9 At first her father wouldn't let her go to the all-night party, but in the end she persuaded him to let her go.
(get round)
She got round her father.

10 She reprimanded him for breaking the window.
(tell off)
She told him off for breaking the window.

Tapescript 6c

Listen to the problems. Try to answer the questions, using a multi-word verb from this unit.

1 You want your boss to give you a day off work. What would you do?
Try to get round him or her.

2 Your boss wants you to do some extra work, but you are very busy. What would you do?
Try to get out of doing it.

Unit 7

Tapescript 7a

The Emperor's new clothes

Many years ago there was an Emperor who spent all his time and money on *dressing up* in expensive clothes. He loved riding round in his wonderful garments so that everybody could see him. He didn't care about his country very much because he was much more interested in what was in or out of fashion. His palace was full of wardrobes containing clothes he had worn only once.

One day two dishonest men appeared at the palace and said they could make beautiful clothes which had magical properties. Only clever people would be able to see them – they would be invisible to anyone who was stupid or not good at their job. The Emperor thought this was an excellent opportunity to find out who was wise and who was foolish in his kingdom, and whether or not people were suitable for their jobs. He gave the two men a large sum of money and told them to start work immediately.

The two men were given gold and silver thread (which they put in their pockets and kept for themselves) and they started making the clothes. They pretended to work hard all day and night, though of course there was nothing on their weaving machines – they were empty! Soon everyone in the city knew about their work and the magical properties of the clothes they were making, and they all wanted to find out if their neighbours were stupid or not.

After several weeks the Emperor wanted to know how they were getting on. How much progress had they made? When would the clothes be ready? He decided to send an old and honest minister, who was certainly clever and good at his job, to visit the two men.

The minister entered the room where the two men were working. They looked very busy – they were cutting and sewing with great energy – but to his horror, he couldn't see what they were working on! It was as if they were cutting the air with large scissors and sewing it together!

'Ah, we're so pleased you've come', said one of the men. 'The work is going well, as you can see, and it should be finished by the end of the week.' And the man showed him the different colours and patterns of the materials as if they were in front of his eyes. The minister blinked and could still see nothing. 'Goodness!' he thought to himself. 'I must be stupid! I can't see a thing! I must be careful not to let anyone find out or they will think I'm stupid and I will lose my job.'

'Oh, marvellous!' he said. 'What beautiful colours! What wonderful patterns! I've never seen anything like it!' He returned to the Emperor and told him the clothes were the most beautiful he'd ever seen. The Emperor sent a second minister and the same thing happened. So he made up his mind to go and see the clothes for himself, taking all his ministers with him.

On entering the room, the Emperor found the two men looking very proud of themselves. 'We've finished,' they said. 'Here you are. What do you think of them? Aren't they the most beautiful clothes you've ever seen?' The Emperor saw nothing. The men acted as if they were holding clothes, and all the ministers smiled and nodded and commented on the patterns and designs – but he saw nothing. 'I must be stupid!', thought the Emperor. 'Everyone else can see them – but I can't. Nobody must find out!'

'Yes, these are beautiful clothes indeed!' said the Emperor. 'What wonderful colours and designs!'
'Would you like to *try them on?*' said one of the men. 'We need to see if they fit. We must check they are not too big or too small.'
So the Emperor *took off* his clothes and *put on* the invisible clothes. He had no difficulty in *getting into* them. He stood in front of the mirror and said 'Yes, they fit perfectly.' And all the ministers around him agreed.

'Look, your majesty,' said one of the men, 'You have forgotten to *do up* one of the buttons.'
'Oh, yes,' said the Emperor with an embarrassed laugh. 'I didn't see it.' And he pretended to *do up* the button.
'These clothes will last forever,' said one of the men. 'They'll never *wear out.*'

Then one of the ministers suggested there should be a procession through the city so that everyone could see the Emperor's new clothes and admire them. There was no way out for the Emperor because he knew he could not refuse. He would have to *go through with* it.

The next day the procession took place and everyone shouted and cheered. 'What wonderful clothes!' they all said to one another. 'How well the colours go with the Emperor's crown!' But one small boy said 'Look! The Emperor *has nothing on*! – he isn't wearing any clothes!' The people around the boy heard this and started whispering, and soon everybody was saying 'He's *got nothing on*!' The Emperor heard them, but he thought 'I must not stop. I must *carry on* or it will ruin the procession.' So he continued walking along even more proudly than before, with his ministers helping to carry his invisible clothes.

(Adapted from Hans Andersen's fairy tale)

Tapescript 7b

Listen to the sentences. Decide what you would say in the following situations.

1 It's very cold outside and your friend is about to leave without a coat. What do you say?
You'd better put a coat on.

2 You have been invited to an important dinner party. You are not sure if you need to wear very smart clothes or not. What do you say?
Do I need to dress up for the occasion?

3 A man comes to your house to repair the TV. His shoes are very dirty. You want him to remove them before he comes in. What do you say?
Could you take your shoes off, please?

4 You are in a clothes shop and you see a nice pair of trousers. You are not sure if they are the right size or if they'll suit you. What do you say to the shop assistant?
Can I try these trousers on, please?

5 You can't fasten the button on your shirt. You ask for help. What do you say?
Can you do this button up for me, please?

6 You look at your shoes and you see there are holes in them. What do you say?
My shoes are worn out/My shoes are wearing out.

7 You have been asked to make a speech in front of a large audience. At the last moment you feel very nervous and decide you can't do it. What do you say?
I can't go through with it.

8 You're trying to put on some shoes but they are too small for you. What do you say?
I can't get into these shoes.

9 You are asked if you want to continue studying at college or leave and find a job. You want to continue your studies. What do you say?
I want to carry on with my studies.

10 You saw a thief in a green jumper and blue jeans. The police ask you what he was wearing. What do you say?
He had on a green jumper and blue jeans.

Tapescript 7c

1

W1: Woman 1 **W2**: Woman 2

W1 Well. what do you think of this one?

W2 Mm. It doesn't really *go with* the colour of your jumper. Why don't you *try on* the red skirt?

W1 OK . . . Goodness. I can't *get into* it. And if I do. I won't be able to *do the buttons up*. It's no good. I'll have to go on a diet.

W2 What about this one? I think this is fantastic! You'll look *out of this world* in it.

W1 Do you think so?

2

M: Man **A**: Shop assistant

A Hello. can I help you?

M Yes. please. I'd like to *try on* these trousers.

A Of course. sir. The changing rooms are just over there.

3

H: Husband **W**: Wife

W Aren't you going to get changed?

H No. I'm going like this.

W You can't go looking like that.

H Well I'm not going to *dress up* just to have dinner with my parents.

W That's not the point. That shirt's filthy. and it's *worn out*. Look. it's got holes in it. *Take it off* and *put on* that one I gave you for Christmas.

4

W: Woman **A**: Shop assistant

W Excuse me. I can't *get my foot into* this shoe. Can I *try on* a size 6?

A I'm afraid you're *out of luck*. madam. We're completely *out of stock* in that particular size.

Unit 8

Tapescript 8

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again. using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 Can you extinguish that cigarette. please?
(put out)
Can you put out that cigarette. please?

2 The alarm bell started ringing.
(go off)
The alarm bell went off.

3 I shouted his name loudly but he didn't hear me.
(call out)
I called out his name but he didn't hear me.

4 The police are investigating the accident.
(look into)
The police are looking into the accident.

5 Come quickly – a fire has started!
(break out)
Come quickly – a fire has broken out!

6 He experienced a lot of pain.
(go through)
He went through a lot of pain.

7 He started the fire alarm by accident.
(set off)
He set off the fire alarm by accident.

8 The government has said that tax cuts are not possible.
(rule out)
The government has ruled out tax cuts.

9 The prisoners escaped through the window.
(get out)
The prisoners got out through the window.

10 I think we should ask for the help of a doctor.
(call in)
I think we should call in a doctor.

Unit 9

Tapescript 9a

Jeremy

At the moment I have a very good. well-paid job that I enjoy doing. but it hasn't always been like this.

Several years ago I used to work as a salesman for a small company that specialized in making motor components for the car industry. It was the sort of job where you had to be committed to your product. you had to believe in it and do everything possible to sell it. But times were hard. and a lot of companies were going out of business. so our company started to *cut back* on the number of people it employed in order to save money – fortunately. I wasn't one of them – but in the end it had to *close down*. and I found myself out of work for the first time in my life. I applied for several jobs in similar companies. but I wasn't successful – every one of them *turned me down*.

Then one day I was looking through the paper and I came across an advertisement for courses that specialized in journalism. I filled in an application form. sent it off. was accepted onto the course. studied hard. passed my exams, and became a qualified journalist. I then wrote to a small magazine for the car industry, attended an interview along with dozens of other applicants and, to my surprise, they *took me on*. The magazine grew in size and popularity, I moved from writing articles to being sub-editor, and this year I became the editor, so I suppose I've been lucky really.

Angela

When I was young my father always told me how important it was to *get on* in life and be a success. 'You must make something of your life,' he used to say. I think he wanted me to be a doctor or an engineer or something like that. And I can remember how disappointed he was when I left school early and started work as a secretary.

It was a small, badly-run company, and when I went there they told me the job wasn't difficult and I would soon *pick it up*. At the beginning I liked the job, but as time passed the work started to *take up* more of my time and I found I was working late in the evenings and even at weekends. And in addition to this I had to put up with poor working conditions and a low salary – I earned just enough to *get by* – and there were no promotion prospects at all. All this really *got me down*. And then I started to wonder if I was really cut out for this kind of work – it didn't really suit me or my particular abilities.

Then one day – I remember I'd been working very hard that month and had put in a lot of extra hours – I went to see my boss to ask for some time off work. I needed to visit my mother, who wasn't well at the time. I have to say that I didn't get on with my boss very well. Anyway, he refused point-blank. He said it was out of the question and he didn't want to hear another word. I tried explaining but I just couldn't get through to him. He wouldn't listen. So I walked out of the office, and as far as I was concerned, that was it, that was the last straw. The next day I handed in my resignation, and I said to myself I would never put myself in that kind of position again. I decided to return to studying and *go in for* law. I graduated from London University and now I'm starting to make my way in the world. As my father used to say, 'The world is my oyster'.

So was my father right? Is it important to *get on* in the world? Well, in some ways it is, but it depends on how you measure success and what you want to get out of life. After all, there are other things in life besides work.

Tapescript 9b

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again, using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 The company has employed extra staff.
(take on)
The company has taken on extra staff.
2 I've decided to make a career in medicine.
(go in for)
I've decided to go in for medicine.
3 She survives on a very small income.
(get by)
She gets by on a very small income.
4 He didn't accept my offer of help.
(turn down)
He turned down my offer of help.
5 The factory will have to reduce production.
(cut back on)
The factory will have to cut back on production.
6 The bad working conditions depress me.
(get me down)
The bad working conditions get me down.
7 The company has stopped doing business.
(close down)
The company has closed down.
8 I learnt some Arabic while I was in Cairo.
(pick up)
I picked up some Arabic while I was in Cairo.
9 She wants to be a success in her job.
(get on)
She wants to get on in her job.
10 Writing reports uses a lot of my time.
(take up)
Writing reports takes up a lot of my time.

Tapescript 9c

1

I'm often on duty at weekends, especially if there is a football match or a demonstration. I'm there to see things don't get out of control. I think you have to be cut out for this type of work because it isn't easy and can be dangerous. You serve the public and you're there to protect them, but they don't always appreciate what you're trying to do. The pay and conditions are all right, which is a good thing because you can't go on strike.

2

Sometimes I'm on duty all night and it isn't easy to take time off work. The salary isn't very good – I can get by on it – but I'd never go on strike, because it's my job to look after people and I know they depend on me. Sometimes you have to put up with bad working conditions but you know that what you're doing is an extremely worthwhile job.

3
Well, basically I pick people up and I drop them off. I take them where they want to go to and that's it.

4
You have to be cut out for this kind of work, otherwise you shouldn't go in for it. You have to learn a lot of things by heart, and you can suffer from nerves throughout the whole of your professional life. You are often out of work and you have to be very ambitious and lucky to get on, but if you do, the world's your oyster.

5
You have to be good at getting on with people, and you have to remain calm at all times – you must never panic. You need some training for this job, but some things you can pick up quite quickly. It's exciting to stop off in exotic places and look round for a few days, but sometimes the work can be very routine and the pay is average.

6
You have to work long hours, and you can be on call twenty-four hours a day, but it's wonderful to be able to use your knowledge to help people and relieve suffering. I think people tend to look up to you as a result.

7
Like all professionals, you have to be committed to what you're doing. I'm at work very early in the morning to set things up so that everything is ready when the day starts. The work takes up a lot of my time, especially preparation time and going through people's work and correcting it. The poor pay sometimes gets me down, but I believe in what I'm doing and that's the most important thing.

Unit 10

Tapescript 10

Listen to the sentences. Decide what you would say in each situation, using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 You look in the fridge and see there is no milk. What do you say?
(run out of)
We've run out of milk.

2 You arrive late for a meeting because you were delayed in a traffic jam. What do you say?
(hold up)
I'm sorry I'm late. I was held up in a traffic jam.

3 You want to know if your parents will come with you to the airport to say goodbye when you leave. What do you say to them?
(see off)
Will you see me off at the airport?

4 Your friend is reading a letter but the handwriting is not very clear. She asks you to try and read one of the words for her. You try but you can't. What do you say?
(make out)
I'm sorry, I can't make it out.

5 You are talking to someone at a motorway restaurant. He tells you he is driving north. You want to know what his destination is. What do you say?
(head for)
Where are you heading for?

6 You're in a taxi and you want the driver to stop outside the bank. What do you say?
(pull up)
Can you pull up outside the bank, please?

7 You're in your car on the motorway and it stops working. You phone a garage for help. What do you say?
(break down)
My car has broken down on the motorway. Can you help me, please?

8 You want the driver of another car to move his car closer to the side of the road so that you can pass in your car. What do you say?
(pull over)
Can you pull over, please?

9 You are in your friend's car and you see another car begin to move out in front of you. You want to warn your friend. What do you say?
(pull out)
Watch out! That car's going to pull out!

10 You are in your friend's car and your friend isn't driving very carefully. You are frightened the journey will end with you both in hospital. What do you say?
(end up)
If you don't drive more carefully, we'll end up in hospital.

Unit 11

Tapescript 11a

Here is the seven o'clock news. First, the news headlines.

- Thieves *break in* at the Royal Gallery
- Ship goes down at sea near the Sussex coast
- Three men *break out* of Brixton prison
- Plane comes down in jungle
- Chemical factory *blows up*
- Severe weather cuts off towns in the north
- Damaged plane touches down safely

Now here is the news in detail.

Thieves break in at the Royal Gallery

Last night thieves *broke into* the Royal Gallery and *got away with* paintings worth over a quarter of a million pounds. The break-in happened around 11.00 o'clock in the evening, but was not discovered until the early hours of the morning. At present it is not known how the thieves got into the building, though a security guard is helping the police with their enquiries.

Ship goes down at sea near the Sussex coast

A ship has gone down at sea off the south coast of England following an explosion in its engine room. The ship was carrying a cargo of wood and was heading for Liverpool. The fire spread rapidly and was soon out of control. However, all the crew were *picked up* safely by the rescue services.

Three men break out of Brixton prison

Three men *broke out of* Brixton prison this morning. They overpowered a prison officer and escaped by climbing over the wall. They were seen *making off* in a red car that was waiting for them outside the prison. One of the men was later picked up by the police, but the other two men are still on the run. Police have warned the public not to approach these men, as they may be armed and dangerous.

Plane comes down in jungle

A plane with two English passengers on board has come down in dense jungle in Brazil. It seems that one of the engines *cut out* while the plane was heading for Rio de Janeiro, and the pilot was forced to make a crash landing in the jungle. A rescue team is now searching for survivors.

Chemical factory blows up

News is coming in of an explosion at a chemical processing plant in Luton. It seems that part of the factory *blew up* and a fire has broken out. Although the fire is dying down and the situation is under control, the fire brigade say they won't be able to put it out completely for several hours.

Severe weather cuts off towns in the north

Severe weather conditons in the north of England have *cut off* several towns and villages. Many roads are impassable due to heavy falls of snow. Supplies of food are being flown into some villages by helicopter.

Damaged plane touches down safely

A plane had to make an emergency landing at Heathrow this morning when one of its doors blew off. Shortly after taking off an explosion was heard and the plane had to turn back to Heathrow. The emergency services were *standing by* in case of a crash landing, but the plane touched down safely.

'I never want to go through an experience like that again!' said the passenger who had been sitting next to the door. 'I don't think I'll ever get over the shock of seeing the door come off and a drop of 1,000 metres beneath me!'

Tapescript 11b

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again, using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 The engine keeps stopping.
(cut out)
The engine keeps cutting out.

2 The survivors were rescued from the sea by helicopter.
(pick up)
The survivors were picked up by helicopter.

3 Don't touch it! It might explode!
(blow up)
Don't touch it! It might blow up!

4 He was arrested by the police for possessing drugs.
(pick up)
He was picked up by the police for possessing drugs.

5 The police are ready for action in case there is trouble.
(stand by)
The police are standing by in case there is trouble.

6 Someone entered our house illegally at the weekend.
(break into)
Someone broke into our house at the weekend.

7 Our village was isolated by a snowstorm for a week.
(*cut off*)
Our village was cut off by a snowstorm for a week.

8 He's escaped from prison again.
(*break out*)
He's broken out of prison again.

9 The robbers succeeded in stealing over £100,000.
(*get away with*)
The robbers got away with over £100,000.

10 I tried to stop the thief, but he escaped on a motorbike.
(*make off*)
I tried to stop the thief, but he made off on a motorbike.

Unit 12

Tapescript 12a

Listen to the sentences. Then say the sentences again, using the multi-word verb prompts. The first one has been done for you.

1 The concert has been cancelled.
(*call off*)
The concert has been called off.

2 Stop criticizing me all the time!
(*go on at*)
Stop going on at me all the time!

3 He's invited her to the cinema.
(*ask out*)
He's asked her out to the cinema.

4 Julie is having a relationship with a man from France.
(*go out with*)
Julie is going out with a man from France.

5 He gives the impression of being rather aggressive.
(*come across as*)
He comes across as rather aggressive.

6 Their marriage has ended.
(*break up*)
Their marriage has broken up.

7 Michael has had an argument with Tony and isn't talking to him.
(*fall out with*)
Michael has fallen out with Tony.

8 I want to have a stable life, buy a house, and get married.
(*settle down*)
I want to settle down.

9 They have ended their relationship.
(*break off*)
They have broken off their relationship.

10 I'm starting to dislike him.
(*go off*)
I'm starting to go off him.

Tapescript 12b

M: Mary **J:** Jane

M What's the matter, Jane? Have you *fallen out with* Paul again?
J Yes, you could say that . . .
M Well, it takes two to have an argument. What was it about this time?
J He said I was always *going on at* him.
M Is it true?
J Well, in a way, yes. But I was feeling insecure because I thought he was *going off* me.
M How long have you been *going out with* one another?
J Nearly a year now. But yesterday I *found out* he's been *going out with* someone else.
M Oh, so what did you do?
J I told him, and he said he wanted to *break off* our relationship.
M But I thought you were planning to get married in June?
J We've *called it off.*
M Well, I'm sorry to hear the two of you have *broken up.*
J I think it'll take me a long time to *get over* this.
M Well, perhaps it's for the best. You were never really happy with him. And after all, there are plenty more fish in the sea!

Answer key

Introductory unit

1 *to look for someone/something* = to try to find someone/something
to look out = (to tell someone) to be careful (usually imperative)
to look down on someone = to consider someone inferior

2 a. L
b. N *to run out of something* = to have no more of something
c. L
d. L
e. N *to look into something* = to investigate something
f. L
g. N *to look through something* = to read something. usually quickly
h. N *to put something on* = to cause something electrical to begin working
i. L
j. N *to go over something* = to repeat something in order to teach or learn it

3 The particle *over* in all the example sentences suggests the idea of something falling or being pushed to the ground. The particle *down* can have almost the same meaning with all these verbs except for *trip over*.

4 1 d. 2 a. 3 c. 4 b.

6 a. Type 3
b. Type 1
c. Type 1
d. Type 2
e. Type 1
f. Type 3
g. Type 2
h. Type 3
i. Type 2
j. Type 1

7

Type 1	**Type 2**	**Type 3**	**Type 4**
run out fall over come round	hold something up push someone/something over	fall over something	get on with something run out of something put up with someone/something get on with someone

Unit 1 Getting down to work

Checking understanding

1 1 b. 2 h. 3 i. 4 a. 5 g. 6 c. 7 d. 8 j. 9 f. 10 e.

2 1 Number 9 is falling behind/not keeping up with the others.
2 Number 6 is keeping up with number 2.
3 Number 5 is catching up with number 4.

Practice

2 to have difficulty *in* (*doing*) something
to have problems *with* (*doing*) something
to concentrate *on* (*doing*) something
to be good/quite good
not good/bad at (*doing*) something
awful/hopeless

Idiomatic expressions

4 *to pass with flying colours* = to pass an exam with high marks

5 *a piece of cake* = something that is very easy to do (informal)

Two heads are better than one. = More ideas or solutions will be produced if you work with someone else rather than on your own.
to burn the midnight oil = to work or study late into the night
by the skin of my teeth = to just manage to do something (but nearly fail)
to learn something by heart = to learn something so that you can remember it perfectly. word for word. Another way of saying this is 'to commit something to memory'.
to learn something parrot fashion = to repeat words or ideas without understanding their meaning. It has a strongly negative connotation. We can also say 'to parrot something'.

How multi-word verbs work

7 a. a piece of cake
  b. Two heads are better than one.
  c. burn the midnight oil
  d. pass with flying colours

8 get through. scrape through
  1 go/look/read through
  2 note/write/put down
  3 think through
    get through

What's the answer?

To catch up with something or someone means that you are behind and making an effort to be at the same level. but *to keep up with* something or someone means you are already at the same level but making an effort to remain in that position.

Unit 2 Looking round a flat

Presentation

1 The whole flat needs doing up:
  - it needs decorating
  - new wallpaper needs to be put up
  - central heating could be put in
  - the old carpets need throwing out
  - the hole in the ceiling needs seeing to.

2 Ann doesn't decide to buy it. She wants time to think it over and then talk it over with her husband.

Checking understanding

1 a. doing up
  b. was coming off
  c. took it out
  d. put in
  e. put up
  f. threw them out
  g. seeing to
  h. talk it over
  i. move in
  j. think it over

Practice

1 – The roof has been seen to.
  – The old fireplace has been taken out and central heating has been put in.
  – The old carpets downstairs have been thrown out.
  – New shelves and curtains have been put up.
  – The bathroom has been done up and a new bath has been put in.
  – The old windows have been taken out and new ones have been put in.
  – The outside walls of the house have been seen to.
  – The garden has been seen to and a new fence has been put up.
  – A new television aerial has been put up.
  – Some people have moved in.

need + gerund

2 b. needs seeing to/needs to be seen to
  c. need putting up/need to be put up
  d. needs throwing out/needs to be thrown out
  e. needs doing up/needs to be done up
  f. needs putting in/needs to be put in

Idiomatic expressions

3 1 *Home, sweet home:* used to show pleasure when one is returning home after a period of absence.
  2 *An Englishman's home is his castle:* no one can enter an Englishman's home without permission and nobody can tell him how to behave there.
  3 *Make yourself at home:* an invitation to someone to make themselves comfortable and behave as if they were in their own home.
  4 *It's home from home:* a place as pleasant and comfortable as one's own home.

4 a. make yourself at home
  b. home from home
  c. Home, sweet home
  d. An Englishman's home is his castle.

How multi-word verbs work

5 a. I'd like to talk it over.
  b. Did you throw them out?
  c. They've decided to put it off.
  d. We're going to do it up.
  e. I'd like more time to think it over.
  f. I didn't take it down.
  g. Did you hand it in?
  h. Can you help me put them up?

6 Stress rule: With Type 2 multi-word verbs the particle is stressed when it is separated from the verb.

What's the answer?

to take something out = to remove something, but *to throw something out* = to dispose of it.

Speaking

2 *There's no place like home* = home is the best place, nowhere else is like it.

Unit 3 Healthy body, healthy mind

Preparation

Healthy body, healthy mind = physical health and mental health go together.

Presentation

Mr Brown Symptoms: he gets out of breath easily, pains in his chest
Diagnosis: out of condition, eats badly, smokes and drinks too much
Treatment: regular exercise – take up jogging, cut down on smoking, cut out fatty foods and drink
Ms Green Symptoms: she passed out, she came round after a few seconds, feeling off colour and splitting headaches
Diagnosis: she's been burning the candle at both ends, not getting enough sleep
Treatment: take it easy for a while, something to help her relax in the evenings
Mrs White Symptoms: she's always tired and worn out
Diagnosis: she's run down
Treatment: extra iron and vitamins
Mr Rose Symptoms: feels under the weather, headache, aches all over, running a temperature
Diagnosis: picked up something, going down with flu
Treatment: tablets three times a day, go to bed with a hot water bottle, drink fluids

Checking understanding

1 b. 2 c. 3 d. 4 i. 5 h. 6 a. 7 f. 8 e. 9 j. 10 g.

Practice

Idiomatic expressions

1 1 something that is easy to talk about but difficult to do
2 to feel slightly ill
3 to work hard during the day and stay up late at night in order to get everything done, usually resulting in mental and physical exhaustion
4 to relax and not do very much
5 to be extremely tired
6 to be exhausted and unwell due to overwork or illness
7 to feel unwell
8 to feel completely well or healthy again after recovering from an illness or shock

2 a. 5, 7, and 4 b. 2 and 7 c. 1 d. 8 e. 6 and 3

4 a. someone who is ill but not expected to die, in a safe situation or place
b. not in good physical form, not physically fit
c. not in regular communication with something or someone and therefore without recent information or knowledge
d. too far away to get
e. to feel slightly unwell, not in one's usual good state of health
f. impossible, not to be discussed at all, not worth considering

How multi-word verbs work

6 *to slow down* = to move or happen more slowly
to bring something down = to reduce something
to calm down = to become less angry, excited, or lively
to die down = to become less intense
to cool down = to become cooler or more calm
to quieten down = to become less noisy

7 a. cool down
b. bring down
c. slow down
d. calm down/cool down
e. quieten down
f. die down

What's the answer?

1 a. *to pick up* a disease is about the moment of catching it; *to go down with* a disease is about the development of the symptoms and suffering from it.
b. *to wake up* = to become conscious after being asleep; *to come round* = to recover consciousness after fainting, being knocked out, or under anaesthetic.
c. *to be worn out* = to be extremely tired, say, after a day at work; *to be run down* = to be exhausted and unwell because of too much work, or illness.

2 The opposite of *to pass out* is *to come round.*

Unit 4 A place of your own

Presentation

a. He found it through an agency. He came across an advertisement for flats while he was looking through the newspaper.
b. He took it because he liked it. He was getting on his parents' nerves and he wanted to be more independent.
c. He's going to convert the bedroom into a study and paint it blue.

d. He offers to put his friend up any time he is in London.
e. He invites his friend to a house-warming party.

Checking understanding

1 e. 2 f. 3 i. 4 g. 5 h. 6 b. 7 d. 8 a. 9 c.

Practice

1 a. on b. in c. on d. on e. in f. of g. for h. with i. into j. through

4 **How multi-word verbs work**
a. *to brush up (on) something* = to improve knowledge or skills that have not been used for a while
b. *to train someone up* = to teach someone how to do something so that they reach a certain standard
c. *to read up (on) something* = to improve one's knowledge of something by reading a lot about it
d. *to smarten something up* = to make a place or person look neater and tidier
e. *to build something up* = to improve or develop something

What's the answer?

1 *to put someone up* = to give someone accommodation, but *to put something up* = to fix something in place (a picture, for example)
2 They all mean 'to pay a short informal visit', although *drop round/call round/drop over/call over* suggest an informal visit from someone who lives locally. All of them can be used intransitively, except for *to call on someone*, which must have an object.

Unit 5 Getting away from it all

Checking understanding

1 c. 2 h. 3 f. 4 e. 5 a. 6 g. 7 j. 8 i. 9 d. 10 b.

Practice

1 a. pick us up
b. pick us up
c. look round
d. set off
e. get back
f. pick us up
g. stop off
h. drop us off
i. get back

Idiomatic expressions

4 1 *It's just a stone's throw away.* = a very short distance from something
2 *Travel broadens the mind.* = experience of different places makes you more willing to accept and tolerate other people's beliefs and customs.
3 *to get away from it all* = to escape all one's daily worries and problems (by taking a holiday)

How multi-word verbs work

5 a. Type 3
b. Type 3
c. Type 1
d. Type 1
e. Type 3
f. Type 1
g. Type 1
h. Type 1
i. Type 1
j. Type 3

6 Reciprocating (repeating a similar action)

ring/phone/call back Mike phoned and asked you to phone him back later.
play something back After we made the recording, we played it back to check it sounded all right.
shout back He shouted at me so I shouted back at him.

What's the answer?

1 to check in at/to a hotel
to touch down
to drop someone off
to get back from somewhere

2 *to go back* = to begin a return journey
to get back = to arrive somewhere you started from
When do you go back? = When do you begin your return journey?
When do you get back? = When do you arrive at the place you started from?

3 *to get back* = to arrive at/return to where you started from after completing your journey, e.g. *He left New York on Monday, flew to England, stayed a few days and got back to New York on Friday.*
to turn back = to return before completing a journey, e.g. *His plane left New York for England, but on the way it had engine problems, so it had to turn back. It didn't reach England.*

Unit 6 Family relationships

Presentation

1 They get on well with their parents.
2 Helen says her father is quite strict; David says their parents can be very strict; and the mother says they are reasonably strict.
3 The role of a parent is not easy because it involves a lot of worry. Children sometimes criticize their parents and sometimes won't listen to them. Good parents give their children love and confidence and they also set a good example.

Checking understanding

1 e. 2 g. 3 d. 4 a. 5 f. 6 h. 7 i. 8 j.
9 b. 10 c.

Practice

1 a. to dis/approve *of* someone/something
b. to confide *in* someone
c. to rely *on* someone
d. to compare someone/something *with/to* someone/something
e. to (dis)agree *with* someone; *with/about* something
f. to argue *with* someone *about* something
g. to worry *about* someone/something
h. to listen *to* someone/something

Idiomatic expressions

2 1 *to see eye to eye* = to agree completely, have the same opinion
2 *to have/get your own way* = to do what you want to do, often against the advice of others. Most often used in relation to children.
3 *to be close to someone* = to like someone very much, have similar attitudes and emotions
4 *to be the black sheep of the family* = someone whose conduct is considered to be a disgrace to the family
5 *to take someone's side* = to support someone

a. The problem is that she *has/gets her own way* all the time.
b. My brother has always been *the black sheep* of the family.
c. My grandparents always *took my side.*
d. My father and I don't *see eye to eye* on politics.
e. I *am very close to* my sister.

5 1 g. 2 f. 3 d. 4 b. 5 a. 6 e. 7 c.

What's the answer?

1 *to grow up* = to become adult and mature. It is a Type 1 multi-word verb.
to bring someone up = to raise someone. It is a Type 2 multi-word verb.
2 to look down on someone
3 a. She had a very strict upbringing.
b. He doesn't behave in a very grown-up way.

Unit 7 You are what you wear

Presentation

a. So he could find out if other people were stupid or not and if they were good at their jobs. He also loved dressing up in beautiful clothes.
b. He wanted to know how they were getting on, and he wanted to send someone he could trust, so he chose a minister who was clever and good at his job.
c. He wanted to see if they were the right size.
d. They were pretending they could see the clothes because they didn't want to appear stupid and not good at their jobs.
e. Because there was no way out. He was pretending he could see the clothes too, because he thought everyone else could see them.
f. The innocent little boy simply described what he saw. In contrast to the adults, he was able to tell the truth because he had no fear of appearing stupid and had nothing to lose.
g. He didn't want to ruin the procession.
h. The story is saying many things:
- People are too ready to accept what they think they ought to believe.
- They don't trust their own common sense.
- They are afraid to appear foolish.
- People in positions of power are easily deceived and don't want to lose their jobs.

Checking understanding

1 g. 2 f. 3 b. 4 e. 5 c. 6 j. 7 i. 8 a.
9 d. 10 h.

Practice

1 a. about b. in c. in d. on e. of f. on g. in

4 a. out of stock b. out of luck c. out of this world
d. out of date e. out of fashion

Idiomatic expressions

5 1 *a wolf in sheep's clothing* = Someone who pretends to be friendly in order to hide selfish or bad intentions.
2 *There's no arguing about tastes.* = Everybody has different likes and dislikes, and taste is a very personal thing, so it is a waste of time to argue about it.
3 *Beauty is only skin deep.* = A beautiful appearance can hide very different qualities.
4 *You can't go by appearances.* = You can't judge someone by the way they dress, behave, or look.

5 *One man's meat is another man's poison.* = What is good or pleasing to one person may be bad or unsuitable for another.
6 *Beauty is in the eye of the beholder.* = Different people have different opinions about what is beautiful.

Numbers 2 and 5 are similar. And numbers 3. 4. and 6 are similar.

a. 2/5/6 b. 1 c. 4 d. 3/4

How multi-word verbs work

6 a. wash them up b. tidy it up c. Eat up
d. tidy up clear up/clean up e. dry them up

What's the answer?

1 – in fashion
– up to date/modern
– in luck
– in stock
– to put something on
– to undo something

2 *to go through with something* = to decide to do something, although it may be difficult or unpleasant; but *to carry on with something* = to continue with something you are already doing, despite difficulty or interruptions
3 *to take off* = to leave the ground and begin flying (Type 1, intransitive)
to take something off = to undress (Type 2, transitive)

Unit 8 A narrow escape

Presentation

1 No one knows how the fire started. The hotel manager thought it was probably an accident. Perhaps someone was smoking in bed and fell asleep.
2 Some residents escaped via the roof and some were rescued by firefighters.

Checking understanding

1 c. 2 i. 3 a. 4 h. 5 g. 6 b. 7 d. 8 f. 9 j. 10 e.

Practice

1 a. on b. on/at c. in d. in e. under f. in g. from h. by i. into

Idiomatic expressions

2 *to have a narrow escape* = to be very close to danger or something terrible but manage to escape
to be/go as white as a sheet = to be very pale in the face, especially because of illness or great fear
to shake life a leaf = to tremble with fear or great anxiety

3 a. The saucepan is *on fire*. The fire has *set off* the smoke detector. The woman is *calling out* for help. She will probably *call in* the fire brigade. The fire might spread to the curtains. She might try to *put out* the fire with an extinguisher.

b. The man is falling asleep. His cigarette might set fire to the bedclothes. A serious fire might *break out*. The smoke might *set off* the fire alarm. If the hotel fire alarm *goes off*, the fire brigade will be *called in*. The hotel will probably be in flames before they arrive. The hotel residents may need to *get out* of the building. The police will *look into* the causes of the fire.

c. The man is trapped and *calling out* for help. He is *going through* a terrible experience. The petrol might *burst into flames*. Someone in the street will probably *call in* the police and fire brigade. If the car is *on fire* when they arrive *on the scene*, they will try to *put it out*.

4 A plane was in serious trouble this morning when it tried to land at Heathrow. A fire *broke out* in one of its engines and soon the whole wing was *in flames*. The emergency services were *called out* and the plane made an emergency landing. The fire brigade soon had the situation *under control* and succeeded in *putting out* the fire before it spread to the rest of the plane. 'We *had a narrow escape*,' said one passenger. 'I never want to *go through* another experience like that again,' said another. Flight engineers are now *looking into* the cause of the fire.

burst into

5 to burst into tears/laughter/song/applause

How multi-word verbs work

6 a. Type 1
b. Type 3
c. Type 2
d. Type 1
e. Type 2
f. Type 3
g. Type 1
h. Type 1
i. Type 3
j. Type 2

out

7 1 *to eat out* = to eat at a restaurant instead of at home
to invite someone out = to ask someone to go with you to a play, party, etc.
Note It is more formal than 'to take someone out'.
to camp out = to sleep outdoors in a tent
to stay out = to remain away from home, especially when you are expected to be there
to take someone out = to invite and accompany someone to a place of entertainment or recreation and pay for them

2 *to leave someone/something out* = not include someone/something in an activity or group
to keep someone/something out = to prevent someone/something from entering a place or being there
to shut someone/something out = to prevent someone/something from entering a place by shutting a door or window

What's the answer?

1 on purpose
2 out of control
3 'The police are in control' means the police are controlling the situation, i.e. *to be in control* = to control something. 'The situation is under control' has a passive meaning, i.e. the situation is being controlled by someone.
4 *to go off* is Type 1 and intransitive, e.g. an alarm bell starts ringing by itself;
to set something off is Type 2 and transitive, e.g. someone causes something else to start happening
5 *to set off* is Type 1, intransitive and means 'to begin a journey'.

Unit 9 Getting on in life

Presentation

a. False. The company *cut back on* other staff to save money. He lost his job when the company *closed down*.
b. True. It *closed down* because times were hard.
c. False. The companies *turned him down*.
d. True. They *took him on*.
e. True. He wanted her to *get on in life*.
f. False. She was told she would soon *pick it up*.
g. True. It *took up* a lot of her time.
h. False. She earned enough money to *get by*.
i. False. Everything about her job *got her down*.
j. True. She decided to *go in for* law.

Checking understanding

1 i. 2 c. 3 h. 4 f. 5 j. 6 a. 7 e. 8 d.
9 b. 10 g.

Practice

1 a. as b. for c. onto/for d. in e. in f. off
g. to h. to i. to j. on k. psychiatrist

Idiomatic expressions

2 1 *to get on in life/in the world* = to be successful, to improve one's financial and social status
2 *to be cut out for something* = to have the right qualities and abilities for a job, to be naturally well suited for something. Note We can say 'I'm not cut out for teaching' or 'I'm not cut out to be a teacher'.
3 *to say something point-blank* = to say something directly, even rudely, without any explanation or apologies
4 *That's the last straw!* = an additional problem to an already difficult situation which makes it intolerable. As a result you take action (e.g. you complain, resign, lose your temper, etc.). The complete expression is 'It is the last straw that breaks the camel's back'.
5 *to make one's way in the world* = to be successful (same as 1 above)
6 *The world is one's oyster.* = you can do anything, go anywhere (because you are young, successful and/or rich).

a. cut out for b. get on in life/the world
c. was her oyster d. That's the last straw!
e. point-blank; point-blank.

4 1 policeman 2 nurse 3 taxi-driver 4 actor
5 flight attendant 6 doctor 7 school teacher

How multi-word verbs work

5 a. with b. with c. on d. of e. with
f. on g. on h. with

What's the answer?

1 CLOSING DOWN SALE
2 *to start (something) up* (to start up a business)
to open (something) up (to open up a shop)
3 look
hold
give
pick
wake
get
keep
catch
put
take
brighten
do
brush
train
read
smarten
build
bring
grow
dress
drink
eat
tidy
wash
dry
clean
clear
make

Unit 10 A nightmare journey

Presentation

1 e. 2 c. 3 a. 4 d. 5 g. 6 b. 7 f.

Checking understanding

1 f. 2 j. 3 d. 4 i. 5 g. 6 c. 7 h. 8 e.
9 b. 10 a.

Practice

1 1 pull up 2 pull over 3 pull out 4 pull out

2 a. on
b. on
c. about/of
d. for
e. for
f. for (something)

3 a. without fail
b. under repair
c. without success
d. wrong with, beyond repair
e. without warning

Time expressions

5 *on time* = to be punctual, to happen at the right time (e.g. a train that leaves at the time given on a timetable). If something is not on time, it is late.
in time = to be early enough to do something. If something does not happen in time, it is too late to do something.
just in time = to have only just enough time to do something
in no time (at all) = very quickly, soon

a. on time b. in time/just in time
c. in no time at all d. in time e. just in time

Idiomatic expressions

6 1 *to make up for lost time* = to make a special effort to compensate for time lost earlier
2 *My patience is running out.* = My patience is nearly exhausted.
3 *I'll keep my fingers crossed for you.* = to wish someone good luck and success in an interview or exam
4 *Better late than never.* = It's better that something should happen late or arrive late rather than not at all.
5 *It's better to be safe than sorry.* = It's better to be careful and avoid danger rather than take risks.

How multi-word verbs work

7 a. turn it up
b. going up
c. speak up
d. warm it up/heat it up
e. build up
f. put up

8 a. take off
b. sailed off
c. ran off
d. set off
e. fly off
f. rode off

What's the answer?

to be short of something = not have enough of something (food, money, time)
to be out of something = to have nothing left

Unit 11 What's in the news?

Checking understanding

1 b. (or 1 i.) 2 i. (or 2 b.) 3 f. 4 e. 5 j.
6 g. 7 h. 8 c. 9 a. 10 d.

Practice

1 a. in b. on c. on d. on e. on f. on

2 a. for b. with c. to d. of e. of f. of g. to

3 Picture 1 He's *breaking into* a house. He might *get away with* some valuable things or he might get *picked up* by the police and *charged with robbery*.
Picture 2 They've just *held up* a jeweller's shop. They are going to *make off* in a car. They might *get away with* the jewels.
Picture 3 Perhaps the police are going to *arrest someone for* a crime. Perhaps someone has *accused him of* something, or he is going to be *charged with* something. The man might try to *make off.*
Picture 4 Someone has *broken into* a bank and *blown up* the safe. They *got away with* the money.
Picture 5 Some people have been *cut off* by floods. The emergency services were *standing by* and now they are *picking up* the people. The people have *been through* a frightening experience.
Picture 6 Perhaps these two men were *put on trial* for robbery, *convicted of* the crime, and *sentenced to* several years in prison. Now they are trying to *break out* of prison. Perhaps they will *make off* in a stolen car. They will be *on the run* from the police.

Idiomatic expression

4 *Crime doesn't pay* = crime does not provide you with any real profit because you are usually caught and punished in the end.

5 a. BREAK-IN b. HOLD-UP c. BREAKOUT
d. CUTBACK e. CUT-OUT

What's the answer?

1 *to blow up* = to explode. Type 1, intransitive
to blow something up = to destroy something with explosives. Type 2, transitive

2 *to pick someone/something up* = 1 to catch an illness 2 to collect someone/something 3 to arrest someone 4 to rescue someone

Unit 12 Across a crowded room

Presentation

1 1 a. 2 h. 3 f. 4 i. 5 c. 6 g. 7 l. 8 b. 9 d. 10 k. 11 e. 12 j.

Checking understanding

1 c. 2 j. 3 f. 4 b. 5 a. 6 i. 7 h. 8 e. 9 d. 10 g.

Practice

1 fallen out going on at going off going out with found out going out with break off called . . . off broken up get over

There are plenty more fish in the sea. = There are plenty of other people to meet. This is often said to try to comfort (usually unsuccessfully!) someone who has just lost a partner.

2 keen on fond of in love with her in common engaged to married to

Idiomatic expressions

4 1 love at first sight 2 to be head over heels in love 3 to drown your sorrows

5 1 *the eternal triangle* = a situation of emotional conflict in which two men love the same woman, or two women love the same man
2 *an old flame* = a former boyfriend or girlfriend, someone with whom you once had a romantic relationship
3 *a one-sided relationship* = a relationship in which one of the two people feels and does much more than the other
4 *There's no love lost between them* = two people or groups who greatly dislike one another
5 *a love–hate relationship* = a relationship in which there are strong feelings of both love and hate

How multi-word verbs work

6 a. turn off/switch off b. cut off c. put it off d. ring off e. is off

What's the answer?

1 *to break up* is used intransitively: 'The marriage broke up'. It is a Type 1 multi-word verb. *To break something off* is similar in meaning but it is used to suggest someone has taken action to end something. It is used transitively: 'She broke off the relationship'. It is a Type 2 multi-word verb.
2 *to put something off* = to postpone something: *to call something off* = to cancel something
3 *to break off* = to discontinue something that is actually happening or already exists (an engagement), whereas *to call off* is to cancel something that is planned for the future

Making Headway is a supplementary series for teachers and students of English. It is designed to complement the *Headway* coursebooks, but can also be used with other main coursebooks.

The titles in the series come in pairs, and cover two consecutive levels, from pre-intermediate to advanced.

Titles have been selected with a view to meeting the needs and interests of students. At the lower levels, the books are very practical and help learners to function in an English-speaking environment. At the higher levels, more specialized interests and needs are catered for.

Phrasal Verbs and Idioms

This book is for adult upper-intermediate learners who want to study and learn to use English multi-word verbs, prepositions, and idiomatic expressions. The book

- deals systematically with the four basic types of multi-word verbs
- introduces verbs and idioms in lively and amusing contexts
- is ideal for class work, self-study, or a combination of both
- contains thirteen self-standing units, tapescripts, and an answer key

[redacted]
МОСКВА, МЯСНИЦКАЯ, 6. ТЕЛ.928-3567
360899
MHDW UP-INT PHRAS V&I
НОВАЯ ЦЕНА | СТАРАЯ ЦЕНА
40.00 40000

Ideal for self-study

Oxford **Word Skills**

Idioms and Phrasal Verbs

Advanced

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

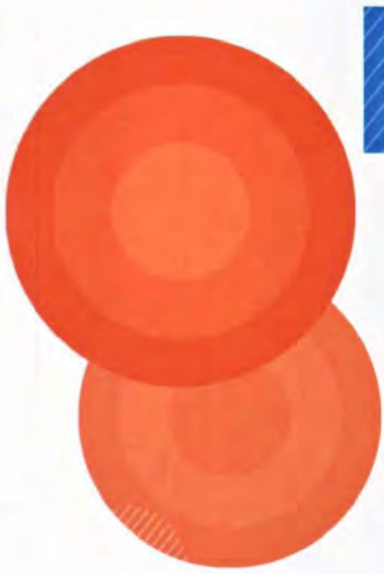

OXFORD

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2011

The moral rights of the authors have been asserted

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2011
2015 2014 2013 2012 2011
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

ISBN: 978 0 19 462013 0

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material: p.54 Unit 16 Exercise 1, p.88 Unit 27 Exercise 1, p.143 Unit 53 Exercise 1, and p.160 Unit 59 Exercise 1 based on an exercise from *Oxford Idioms Dictionary for Learners of English* 2nd edition, ISBN 9780194317238 © Oxford University Press. Reproduced by permission.

Source: pp.10-11 *Oxford Idioms Dictionary for Learners of English* 2nd edition, ISBN 9780194317238

Cover illustration by: Carol Verbyst.

Illustrations by: Chris Davidson pp.43, 153; Colin Elgie pp.9, 162; Clive Goddard pp.40, 114, 132, 148; Andy Hammond p.112; Sarah Kelly pp.12, 28, 33, 144; Harry Venning pp.10, 107

We would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce the following photographs: Alamy pp.26 (woman/Andres Rodriguez), 37 (Dundee Photographics), 47 (Ted Horowitz), 49 (Alex Segre), 50 (sandy young), 58 (Edd Westmacott), 60 (Kablonk! RF/Golden Pixels LLC), 136 (male witness in court/Ilene MacDonald), 136 (radio/Gary Roebuck), 138 (woman and carer/Clarissa Leahy/Cultura); Getty Images pp.8 (PhotoAlto/Sigrid Olsson/PhotoAlto Agency RF Collections), 18 (man with pipe/Matthias Clamer/Riser), 18 (woman with straight hair/Peter Augustin/Stone+), 18 (woman with curly hair/Bob Thomas/ Photographer's Choice), 18 (man with hat/Margo Silver/Taxi), 19 (Echo/ Cultura), 20 (David Fischer/Photodisc), 24 (Comstock Images), 25 (Thomas Northcut/Photodisc), 26 (rollercoaster/Robin Smith/Stone), 30 (Mark Lewis/The Image Bank), 35 (Richard Ross/Photodisc), 36 (Stockbyte), 38 (Zero Creatives/Cultura), 44 (PhotoAlto/Alix Minde/PhotoAlto Agency RF Collections), 51 (Fuse), 56 (family meal/Gallo Images-Hayley Baxter/ Photodisc), 62 (Jamie Grill/Iconica), 67 (Jamie McDonald - The FA), 68 (Jacobs Stock Photography/Digital Vision), 74 (DreamPictures/The Image Bank), 78 (Scott Barbour), 80 (Yellow Dog Productions/The Image Bank), 82 (Richard Osbourne/Photographer's Choice), 85 (Blend Images/ Colin Anderson), 93 (David Oliver/Taxi), 96 (Comstock Images), 109 (Hill Creek Pictures/UpperCut Images), 110 (Photodisc), 111 (couple/Digital VisionPhotodisc), 111 (man/Alexander Nicholson/Stone), 119 (Kate Powers/ Taxi), 121 (Mark Lewis/Photographer's Choice), 134 (Image Source), 138 (Bank of England./Jeremy Walker/Stone), 149 (miners/Tyler Stableford/ Stone), 149 (climbers/Jimmy Chin/Aurora), 150 (Rachel Watson/Riser), 151 ('For Sale'/Cocoon/Photodisc), 151 (woman/David Laurens/PhotoAlto Agency RF Collections); iStockphoto.com pp.21 (Ayron/shino-b), 21 (Carmen/moneca), 56 (chef icons/Tzu-Lan Hsieh), 65 (Lise Gagne); Photolibrary.com pp.97 (White), 99 (image100), 101 (Norbert Michalke/ imagebroker.net), 117 (Pixtal Images), 140 (Corbis); Rex Features pp.59, 66 (Glyn Thomas), 79, 87, 136 (policewoman); Royalty-free pp.21 (Kim/ David Buffington/Blend Images), 21 (Princess/Radius Images), 125 (David Chasey/Photodisc)

Artwork sourced by: Suzanne Williams/Pictureresearch.co.uk

The authors and publishers would like to thank the teachers and students from Argentina, Brazil, Czech Republic, France, Greece, Indonesia, Italy, Norway, Serbia, and Poland who helped with the development of this book.

They would also like to thank: Rachel Godfrey, Carol Tabor, and Michael Terry for their valuable comments on early drafts of the text; and Suzanne Williams for the picture research.

Ahashare.com

Contents

Introduction 5
Abbreviations 7

Introduction to idioms and phrasal verbs

1 I can understand idioms 8
2 Idiom and metaphor 10
3 Introduction to phrasal verbs 12
4 I can use phrasal nouns and adjectives 14
Review 16

People

5 I can describe character 18
6 I can describe people's behaviour 20
7 I can talk about relationships 22
8 I can talk about families 24
9 I can describe my emotions 26
10 I can describe physical actions 28
Review 30

Everyday life

11 I can talk about money 34
12 I can talk about wealth and poverty 36
13 I can talk about health 38
14 I can talk about driving and journeys 40
15 I can talk about eating 42
16 I can talk about study 44
17 I can talk about work 46
18 I can talk about business 1 48
19 I can talk about business 2 50
Review 52

Events

20 I can describe a family meal 56
21 I can describe a music festival 58
22 I can describe a date 60
23 I can describe a family wedding 62
24 I can talk about reunions 64
25 I can describe a football match 66
26 I can describe a conference 68
Review 70

What's in the news?

27 I can talk about the media 74
28 I can talk about crime 76
29 I can describe a demonstration 78
30 I can talk about politics 80
31 I can talk about conflict 82
32 I can talk about celebrity 84
33 I can describe extreme weather 86
Review 88

Communication

34 I can talk about communicators 92
35 I can use the language of discussion 94
36 I can talk about presentations 96
37 I can talk about meetings 98
38 I can use idioms for commenting 100
39 I can use idioms for emphasis 102
Review 104

Human behaviour

40 I can talk about honesty 108
41 I can talk about competition 110
42 I can talk about humour 112
43 I can express criticism 114
44 I can understand and give advice 116
45 I can talk about problems 118
46 I can describe different attitudes 120
47 I can talk about decision-making 122
48 I can talk about risk-taking 124
Review 126

Styles of language

49 I can use informal spoken idioms 130
50 I can use common spoken responses 132
51 I can understand more formal idioms 134
52 I can use idioms in a legal context 136
53 I can use more formal prepositional verbs 138
54 I can understand idioms in written English 140
Review 141

Types of idiom

55 I can understand metaphors in phrasal verbs 144
56 I can use idiomatic noun phrases 146
57 I can use prepositional idioms 149
58 I can use similes 152
59 I can use fixed phrases with two key words 154
60 I can use sayings and proverbs 156
Review 158

Idioms – some interesting histories 162
Answer key 163
Answer key to review units 180
List of spotlight boxes 188
Word list / Index 189
Key words 202

Introduction

Idioms and Phrasal Verbs

Idioms and Phrasal Verbs forms part of the *Oxford Word Skills* vocabulary series. It is a series of two books for students to learn, practise, and revise everyday English idioms and phrasal verbs.

Intermediate:	intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)
Advanced:	advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)

There are over 1,000 new idioms and phrasal verbs in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each book contains 60 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are one to three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately, usually on the same page. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of four to nine units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- an answer key for all the exercises
- an answer key for the review units
- a list of the spotlight boxes
- a list of all the idioms and phrasal verbs taught, with a unit reference to where each item appears
- a separate list of key words with unit references
- a page featuring the histories behind some of the idioms in the book (👁 look on the website **www.oup.com/elt/wordskills** for more).

What are idioms and phrasal verbs? Why teach them together?

Idioms are usually defined as groups of words whose meaning is different from the individual words. So, *under the weather* has nothing to do with the literal meaning of 'the weather'; it means 'feeling ill'. If you *sweep something under the carpet*, you try to keep something secret; and if you *put someone in the picture*, you give them the information they need to understand a situation. As these examples illustrate, in some idioms the meaning can be almost impossible to guess out of context, while others are more transparent.

Phrasal verbs consist of two and occasionally three words: a base verb and at least one particle (preposition or adverb). Many phrasal verbs are idiomatic: in other words, the meaning of the verb and particle is different from the base verb on its own. For example, the meanings of *give up* and *give in* are quite different from the meaning of *give*. As with idioms, some phrasal verbs are more transparent then others, e.g. *stand up* and the most common meaning of *stand* are very similar in meaning, as are *sit down* and *sit*. In other words, phrasal verbs can be seen as a type of idiom, although they are often singled out for specific attention in language-teaching materials.

Putting idioms and phrasal verbs together has a linguistic rationale, but perhaps an even greater pedagogic one. A relatively short passage of text – a practical necessity in most language-teaching materials – does not normally produce nine or ten naturally occurring phrasal verbs, but it can easily yield that number if the target language includes both phrasal verbs and idioms. This makes it easier to present the target language in continuous text rather than disconnected sentences, and gives learners more opportunity to see the expressions being used naturally, and to use them themselves in a realistic way.

Which idioms and phrasal verbs are included?

When people think of idioms, they tend to think of the more imaginative and colourful examples: *kick the bucket, have a bone to pick with someone, full of beans, be barking up the wrong tree,* etc. These vivid expressions can be extremely difficult to understand, so they are often the ones that teachers are called upon to explain in the classroom. It is also undeniably true that idioms – especially the more vivid ones – hold a particular fascination for some learners. However, there are thousands of idioms, less exotic and often more transparent than the ones above, which are of a higher frequency and probably greater value to the vast majority of learners. Here are some typical examples:

bear sth in mind, get your own way, by far, come in handy, fair enough, a happy medium, have your doubts about sth, hours on end, I thought as much, if all else fails, in all probability, last but not least, leave it at that, life's too short, little by little, no wonder, not necessarily, odds and ends, on the surface, play a part in sth, rightly or wrongly, so what?, take it personally, that's life, the sooner the better, to put it mildly, two years running, use your head, you'll be lucky.

Some of these will appear so mundane that they often pass unnoticed as idioms. In some cases the meaning may be quite easy to guess, especially in context, but the same concept may be expressed in a different way in the learner's mother tongue, so these expressions need to be learnt, and are equally deserving of our attention.

In both books, we have concentrated on high-frequency idioms and phrasal verbs which are likely to be of greatest value to learners in everyday English. To this end, you will find some vivid and colourful examples, but the majority are closer to the list above.

One final note on selection. Dictionaries do not always agree on what constitutes an idiom: *hold the line* is listed as an idiom in one dictionary, but a collocation in another. The same is true for *under the influence, be on sb's side, at risk from sth, come to no harm,* etc. Equally, a phrase listed as an idiom in one dictionary may have a separate headword entry in another, e.g. *lost cause, lame duck.* Our criterion for inclusion in this series is that an item has to be listed as an idiom in at least one of the following ELT dictionaries (and they are almost always in more than one):

Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary
Oxford Wordpower Dictionary
Oxford Idioms Dictionary for learners of English
Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English
Macmillan English Dictionary for Advanced Learners
Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary
Collins COBUILD Advanced Learner's English Dictionary

How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New idioms and phrasal verbs are presented through different types of text, including dialogues, tables, and visuals. The meaning of the new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Important or additional information is included in the 'spotlight' boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the presentation for five to ten minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice-versa. This is a simple, quick, and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.

- You will often notice the heading ABOUT YOU or ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY. This indicates a personalized exercise which gives learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these in their notebooks, but they make ideal pair-work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up.

To extend page 162, which gives the histories behind a number of idioms in this book, go to the website **www.oup.com/elt/wordskills** to find a regular feature. You and your students should find this interesting.

How can students study alone?

- Choose the topics that interest you. You don't need to do the units in any particular order.
- Each page will probably take you about 20–25 minutes. Firstly, spend at least ten minutes studying the presentation, which may be a text, a dialogue, a table, etc. Use the glossaries to help you understand the meaning of new items. Practise saying the idioms and phrasal verbs a few times to help you remember them.
- Keep a notebook where you can write down the new idioms and phrasal verbs with the meaning and an example sentence to help you remember them. If you are using a bilingual dictionary, you could also add a translation.
- Do the exercises in pencil: then you can rub them out, and do them again in a few days' time. Check your answers in the answer key on pages 163–79. At the end of many units you will find a section called ABOUT YOU or ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY. This gives you an opportunity to use the vocabulary more freely to write in your notebook about yourself, your country, etc.
- You can usually **test yourself** on the new vocabulary. Look at the idioms and phrasal verbs in the glossaries and tables, and cover the meanings. See if you can remember the meanings. You can do this when you have finished the exercises, or several days later as a way of revising the idioms and phrasal verbs.
- You can use the further practice exercises in the review sections which follow each module. Either do them immediately after a unit, or do them a few days later as a form of revision.
- We think it is probably better for you to do one unit at a time on a regular basis, e.g. two or three times a week, rather than study irregularly but try to do a lot of units at the same time.
- If you haven't got a good dictionary in English, we recommend *The Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*. You may also be interested in two specialist dictionaries: *Oxford Idioms Dictionary for learners of English* and *Oxford Phrasal Verbs Dictionary for learners of English*.
- Go to the website **www.oup.com/elt/wordskills** to find a regular feature on the origins of a number of idioms in the book.

Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are used:

N	noun
V	verb
ADJ	adjective
ADV	adverb
PL	plural
OPP	opposite
SYN	synonym
INF	informal
FML	formal
sth	something
sb	somebody
etc.	You use 'etc.' at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren't going to say them all.
i.e.	that is
e.g.	for example

1 I can understand idioms

Idioms are fixed or semi-fixed phrases, and many of them are difficult to understand.

The situation is improving, but we're ***not out of the woods*** *yet.*	**not out of the woods** INF not yet free from difficulties or problems.
I'll probably ***take a back seat*** *and let Marco do most of the work.*	**take a back seat** deliberately become less actively involved in sth, and stop trying to control things.
My heart sank *when I saw the hotel room they'd given us.*	**my heart sank** used to tell sb that you suddenly felt sad or worried about sth.

Idioms are particularly common in spoken English. Some are easier to understand, but you will need to learn many of them as fixed phrases.

'It's an expensive restaurant. **Having said that**, the food is very good.'

'... and then **the next thing I knew**, the cat had jumped out of the window ...'

'Pete and Sue have split up. ~ Mmm. **I thought as much**.'

Glossary

having said that	used to say that sth is true despite what you have just said.
the next thing I knew	used to say that sth happened very quickly and unexpectedly.
I thought as much	used to say you are not surprised that sth is true.

The glossaries and tables in this book will also show you that some idioms have a choice of words or a particular style. (See Units 49–54 for more on style.)

Idiom	Meaning	Special feature
Will they lose? ~ ***More than likely.*** *She can't do the gardening. ~ I'd be* ***more than happy*** *to help her.*	very likely. very happy.	a choice of words with different meanings: **more than likely/happy/ready**, etc.
I'd be hard pressed to *name all the countries in Europe.*	find it very difficult to do sth.	a choice of synonyms: **be hard pressed/pushed/put to do sth.**
I think Ann ***got out of bed on the wrong side*** *this morning.*	used to say that sb is in a bad mood.	the style is HUMOROUS.

Most of all, you need to be aware that idioms come in all shapes and sizes (= are of many different types), and they are not always obvious. When you read a text, look for possible idioms and check in a good dictionary to see if you are right.

I asked Sue about her essay and she just ignored me.

~ Yes, I think it's a bit of **a sore point** because she got a very low mark for it.

Oh dear. I **put my foot in it**, then.

~ No, **it serves** her **right**. She **didn't do a stroke of work**, so don't **take it personally**. She'll just have to work harder next time.

Glossary

a sore point	sth that makes you upset, angry, or embarrassed when sb mentions it.
put your foot in it	INF accidentally say sth that embarrasses, upsets, or annoys sb.
it serves sb right (for doing sth)	used to say that you think sb deserves sth unpleasant that happens to them.
not do a stroke of work	INF not do any work at all.
take it/sth personally	feel that a failure is your fault, or feel offended by sth/sb.

1 Which idioms are suggested by these pictures?

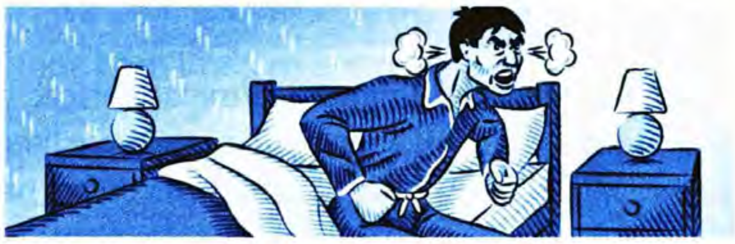
1

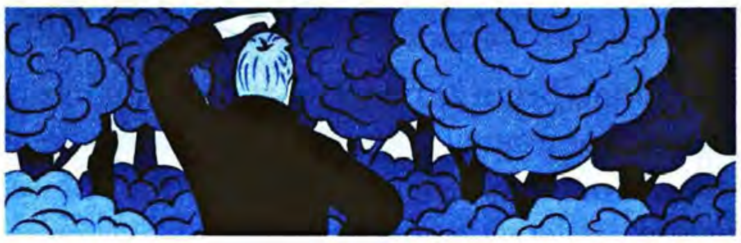
2

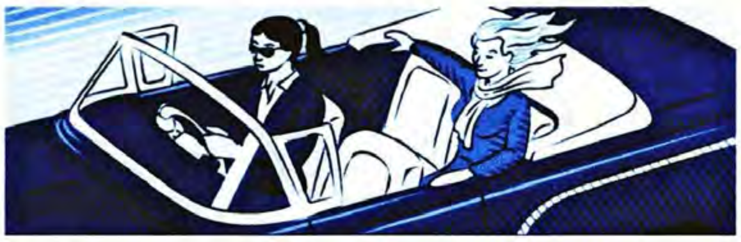
3

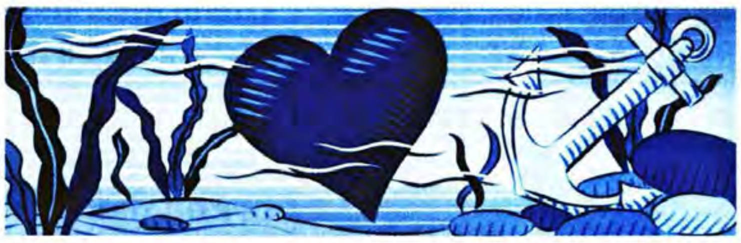
4

2 Complete the sentences with words from the box. Then underline the full idioms.

having pushed serves stroke foot more sore thing much personally woods ✓

- ▸ There's been a slight improvement in his health, but he's not out of the woods yet.
1 Is Karen still upset about you taking her dress? ~ Yes, I'm afraid it's a point.
2 My brother hasn't done a of work all day; he's so lazy.
3 The seat collapsed under me, and the next I knew, I was on the floor.
4 You didn't say that I was upset with her, did you? ~ Yes, I'm afraid I put my in it.
5 New York is incredibly exciting. said that, it's very expensive these days.
6 I was than happy to help, but she wanted to do it on her own.
7 We'll be hard to finish this work by the end of the day.
8 Sam lost the race. ~ I thought as . He looked very dejected.
9 They made Mandy repeat the test. ~ Good. It her right for trying to cheat.
10 Donna wasn't very nice to me. ~ Don't take it . She's just in a bad mood.

3 Look at the idioms in bold in these sentences, then use a good dictionary to find out what special features they have (choice of words, grammar, or style). Write at the end, or in your notebook.

- ▸ He **landed on his feet** with that job at the bank. Could also be 'fall on your feet'.
1 It won't be easy; you've just got to **hang on in there**.
2 **If my memory serves me correctly**, the first moon landing was in 1969.
3 My sister's just bought a new car. Basically, it's just **keeping up with the Joneses**.
4 He's unreliable at the best of times, but forgetting my birthday was **the last straw**.
5 You may **rest assured that** we will do everything we can to help.

4 Read the text then answer the questions.

On the first morning we met our instructor, Kevin, and he made it clear we were going to hit the ground running. We had to build a raft and then sail it down a river; he said it would sort out the sheep from the goats. That made me feel very uneasy, but I put a brave face on it. The next day was even worse – abseiling down a cliff – but I was determined not to throw in the towel. By the third day I was beginning to realize we were all in the same boat, and probably all feeling equally vulnerable. That made me feel much better, and by the end of the week I'd also realized that Kevin's bark was worse than his bite. I survived.

1 The text contains six idiomatic phrases that are being used figuratively. Underline them.
2 Match the phrases with these explanations:
  a admit you've been defeated and stop trying.
  b distinguish the able people from the less able people.
  c he is not as aggressive as he sounds.
  d start doing something and proceed quickly and successfully.
  e be in the same difficult situation.
  f pretend you feel confident and happy when you do not.

2 Idiom and metaphor

Many idioms begin as phrases with a literal meaning, which then develop a figurative/metaphorical meaning. For example, somebody can be in the driving seat (of a vehicle), which means they are literally in control of the vehicle. When we use the phrase metaphorically, we mean the person is in control of a situation. Other examples are:

They've decided to ***wait for the dust to settle.***	Literal meaning: 'wait to be able to see more clearly'. Metaphorical meaning: 'wait for an unsettled situation to become calm'.
I'm sure we're ***on the right track.***	Literal meaning: 'on the right road, path, or track'. Metaphorical meaning: 'acting in a way that will bring a desired result'. OPP **on the wrong track.**

Metaphors from particular areas of activity can sometimes describe particular thoughts, ideas, etc. For example, boxing expressions often describe people in difficult situations:

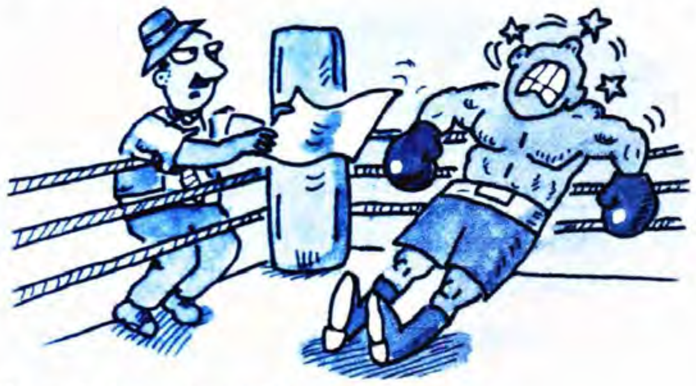

The minister is on the ropes now.
INF = having serious problems and likely to fail.

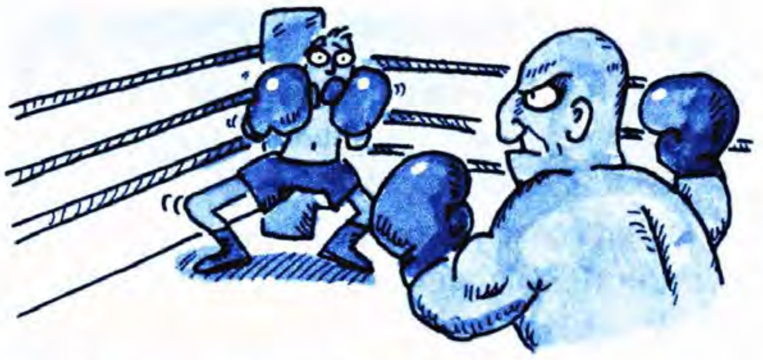

The boss found himself in a tight corner.
INF = in a difficult situation. SYN in a tight spot INF.

Idioms derived from card games are sometimes connected to keeping plans and ideas hidden.

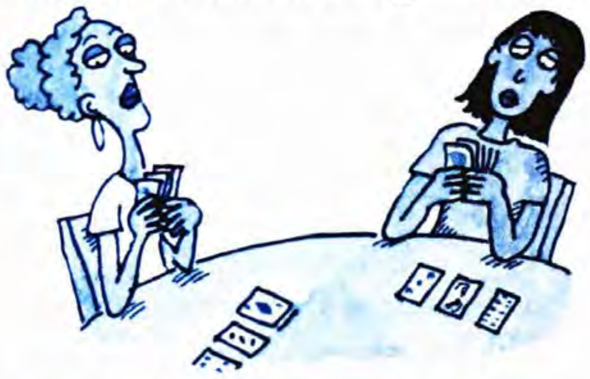

She plays her cards close to her chest.
= keeps her plans or ideas secret.

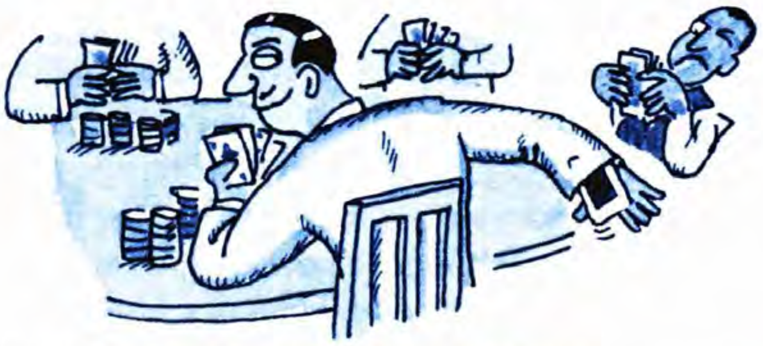

I think he's got something up his sleeve.
= has a plan or idea he will keep secret until needed.

With some idioms, the literal meaning has become lost over time, and we only use the metaphorical meaning. For example, in the past a blacksmith was a person who made things out of iron. He had to strike (= hit) the iron while it was still hot in order to bend it into the shape he wanted. From this we get the idiom strike while the iron is hot = make use of an opportunity immediately because now is the best time to do it.

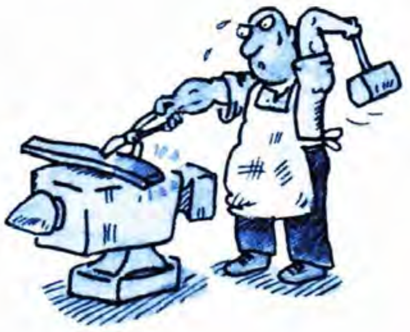

The idiom have a chip on your shoulder (= be sensitive about or feel offended by sth, as a result of sth that happened in your past) comes from a 19th-century American custom. If a boy wanted to fight, he would put a piece of wood on his shoulder; he fought against the first person who knocked the piece of wood off.

You can find the histories behind some of the idioms in this book on page 162 (look on the website www.oup.com/elt/wordskills for more).

1 Complete the sentences.

1 It'll take a while to finalize the plans, but I think we're on the right now.
2 Katrina hasn't told us everything. I think she's still got something up her .
3 That boy has a on his shoulder about his height. I don't know why it bothers him.
4 I think we should wait for the to settle before we decide what to do.
5 After the recent criticism, I think she's in quite a tight .
6 I don't understand why he always plays his cards so close to his .

2 Rephrase these situations using a suitable idiom.

▶ She's got a secret plan. She's got something up her sleeve.
1 She's in control of the situation.
2 I'm sure we're doing the right things.
3 Now is the time to do it; don't wait.
4 Wait until the situation is much clearer.
5 The company is doing badly and is likely to fail.
6 She's in a difficult situation right now.
7 He always seems to think the world has treated him unfairly.
8 She always keeps her ideas secret.

3 What is the common idea linking the idioms with 'head' and the common idea linking the idioms with 'heart'? And what is the meaning of the final idiom?

have your head screwed on
lose your head
use your head

break sb's heart
take sth to heart
not have the heart to do sth

I let my heart rule my head. =

4 Where do you think these idioms come from? Put them in the correct column below.

be on the same wavelength
bite the bullet
beat a hasty retreat
take the wind out of sb's sails
be in the saddle
get your wires crossed
learn the ropes
keep a tight rein on sth/sb

Ships and sailing	**Radio and telecommunications**	**Horse riding**	**Weapons and war**

5 Thinking about the literal meaning of the idioms in Exercise 4, can you now match the idioms with their metaphorical meanings?

▶ bite the bullet force yourself to do sth unpleasant or difficult that you have been avoiding.
1 be in a position of control or responsibility.
2 learn how to do a particular job.
3 think in a similar way.
4 go away quickly from an unpleasant place or situation.
5 make sb less confident by saying or doing sth unexpected.
6 control sth/sb carefully or strictly.
7 become confused by what sb is saying because you think they are talking about sth else.

3 Introduction to phrasal verbs

A phrasal verb consists of a base verb and one or two particles (adverbs or prepositions).

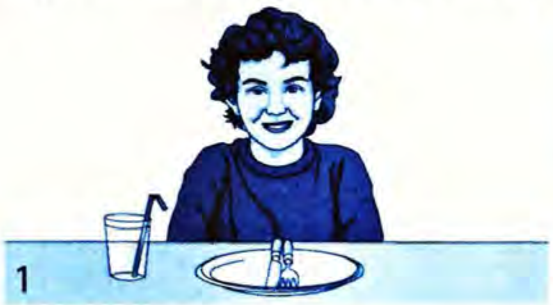
1

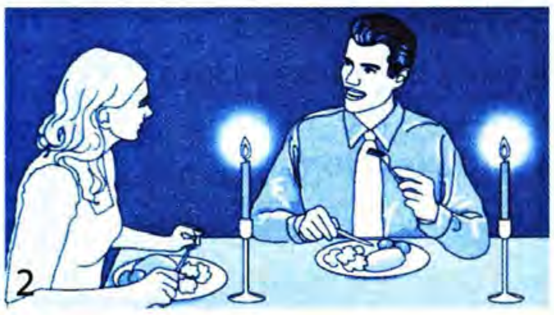
2

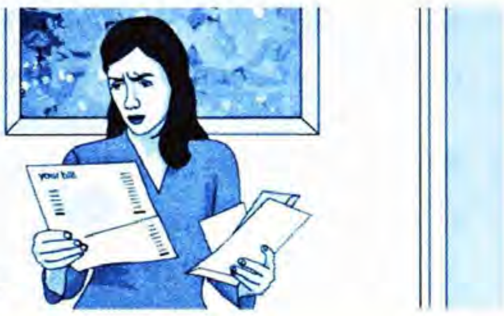
3

MEANING

Some particles extend the meaning of the base verb:

Eat up your supper.[1] 'Up' here adds the idea of eating all of something.

Some particles create a new meaning, but still with a connection to the base verb:

Let's eat in this evening.[2] = eat at home this evening.

Some particles change the meaning of the base verb from literal to figurative:

These big bills are eating into my savings.[3] = using up my money.

GRAMMAR

Some phrasal verbs are intransitive, i.e. they don't take an object:

We got up early to watch the sun come up. = rise.

Many phrasal verbs are transitive, i.e. they take an object. Transitive phrasal verbs are of two types: separable and inseparable. With separable phrasal verbs, the object can usually go before or after the particle; with inseparable phrasal verbs, the object must go after the particle. Dictionaries often show the difference like this:

tear sth up

Here, 'sth' comes between the verb and particle. This shows you that the object can go before or after 'up':

Don't tear up the letter. / Don't tear the letter up. = destroy it by tearing it to pieces.

But note that, if the object is a pronoun, it must go between the verb and particle:

Don't tear it up. (NOT *Don't ~~tear up it~~.*)

There are also a small number of phrasal verbs where the object always goes before the particle:

I showed the students around the school. (NOT *I ~~showed around the students~~.*)

take against sb/sth

Here, 'sb/sth' comes after the verb and particle. This shows you that the object cannot go between 'take' and 'against'; it must go after the particle:

He took against Sam after that. = started to dislike Sam. (NOT *He ~~took Sam against~~.*)

DIFFERENT FORMS, DIFFERENT MEANINGS

With some phrasal verbs, a difference in grammatical structure indicates a difference in meaning.

*The plane **put down** in a field.*	**put down** (intransitive) land.
*1 I'll **put** your number **down** here.* *2 The cat had to **be put down**.*	**put sth down** 1 write sth, especially a name or number, on a piece of paper or a list. 2 (usually passive) kill an old or sick animal with a drug.
*Don't **put yourself down** so much!*	**put yourself/sb down** criticize yourself or sb else in front of other people.
*I **put** my name **down for** the day trip to the seaside.*	**put sb / sb's name down for sth** write sb's name on a list so that they can take part in sth.
*I **put** her anger **down to** stress.*	**put sth down to sth** believe sth is caused by sth.

OTHER POINTS

As some of the examples on page 12 illustrate, some phrasal verbs have two particles (an adverb and a preposition), and some phrasal verbs can be used with another phrase or clause.

put sb up to sth INF	*She's usually very good; Danny must have **put** her **up to** it.*	encourage or persuade sb to do sth wrong or stupid.
talk sb into / out of (doing) sth	*I tried to **talk** her **out of** resigning, but she went ahead.*	persuade sb to do / not to do sth.
count on sb to do sth	*I'm **counting on** you **to** help us.*	trust sb to do sth.
work out + *wh* clause	*I can't **work out what** this means.*	find the answer to sth.

1 Circle the correct word.

1 If you've got time, I could show you *in* | *around* the old part of the city.
2 The service was slow and the bill was incorrect. I put it down *for* | *to* poor management.
3 You'd better tear that cheque *up* | *out* into small pieces so that no one can cash it.
4 Do you fancy going to the pizza place, or shall we just eat *into* | *in* as usual?
5 I don't feel I can really count *on* | *in* Alec to do the work in the way we agreed.
6 We were planning a big barbecue and Aiden put me down *for* | *on* making the salads.
7 I haven't got much work, so payments on the house are eating *in* | *into* my savings.
8 You'll never succeed in business if you keep putting yourself *down* | *up* all the time.

2 Complete the definitions.

1 *She took against me* means 'she began to me for no particular reason'.
2 *He put me up to it* means 'he encouraged me to do something '.
3 *The helicopter put down near the river* means 'the helicopter near the river'.
4 *She talked me out of leaving* means 'she me not to leave'.
5 *The dog was put down* means 'the dog was by an injection'.
6 *She put my address down* means 'she down my address'.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct particle.

1 I worked what he meant.
2 The sun came at 5.00.
3 Show us the exhibition.
4 Don't count him for help.
5 Put his name on the list.
6 I tore the note deliberately.
7 What do you put it to?
8 He talked me buying the car.

4 Here are some phrasal verbs which do not appear on page 12. Underline the phrasal verb and its object. Check your answers on page 164 before you do Exercise 5.

▸ The man in the bureau de change did me out of about €10.
1 In the mountains you have to watch out for snakes.
2 It's crucial to stand out against discrimination, especially in the workplace.
3 They weren't supposed to be there, but the police let both of them off.
4 We were having a meeting when the cleaner burst in on us.
5 He married the girl I was in love with; I try very hard not to hold it against him.

5 Using the context to guess the meanings, write the verbs in Exercise 4 next to the definitions.

▸ stop sb from having sth that they should have, especially in a dishonest way. do sb out of sth.
1 be careful of sth or sb.
2 suddenly enter a room and interrupt something that is happening.
3 say or show publicly that you oppose sth.
4 feel angry with sb for sth that they have done in the past.
5 give sb little or no punishment for sth they did wrong.

4 I can use phrasal nouns and adjectives

A Phrasal nouns

Phrasal nouns are sometimes formed from phrasal verbs, e.g. **take off** (of a plane) and the related noun **take-off**, **look on** and **onlooker**. Nouns formed from phrasal verbs may be hyphenated, e.g. **passer-by**, or may be written as one word, e.g. **breakout**.

Police are interviewing **passers-by** who witnessed the **breakout** at Hyde Prison last night.

Onlookers watched in shock as the thief stole a police car and made a quick **getaway** from the scene of the crime …

The government has been forced into a **climbdown** after the revelations of a **cover-up** …

There was a sharp **intake** of breath from the public gallery during the judge's **summing-up** …

Following the **outbreak** of violence, the police have requested **backup** from the army.

Glossary

breakout	an escape from prison by a group. **break out** (**of sth**) v.
getaway	1 an escape or quick departure, especially from the scene of a crime. 2 a short holiday. **get away** v.
climbdown	an act of admitting that you were wrong. **climb down** v.
cover-up	a course of action taken to hide a mistake or illegal activity from the public. **cover sth up** v.
intake	an act of taking sth in, especially breath, food, etc. **take sth in** v.
summing-up	a legal statement made by a judge, magistrate, or lawyer which gives a summary of the evidence in a court. **sum up** v.
outbreak	a sudden start of violence, war, disease, etc. **break out** v.
backup	extra help or support you can get if necessary. **back sb/sth up** v.

spotlight *passer-by, bystander, onlooker*

A **passer-by** (PL **passers-by**) is someone who is walking past something by chance, especially when something unexpected happens. **pass by sb/sth** v. A **bystander** is someone who watches what is happening, e.g. an accident, without taking part. **stand by** v. SYNS **onlooker**, **look on** v.

1 Rewrite the sentences, forming phrasal nouns from the phrasal verbs.

1 Will the union climb down? Will there ?
2 Did the police cover up the facts? Was ?
3 We asked someone who was passing by. We .
4 Someone broke out of prison last night. There .
5 The judge summed up briefly. The .
6 Will the team back us up? Will ?

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable phrasal noun.

1 When the men had been fighting for a few minutes, we realized there were about a dozen watching them.
2 Most people would benefit from a reduction in the of salt in their diet.
3 This move represents a over plans to change the school meals policy.
4 Security cameras showed that during the prison , the guards did nothing.
5 The party was really boring; we made a quick and went to a club instead.
6 If Marianne can't look after the dog this weekend, I've got my uncle as .
7 The authorities are extremely worried about the threatened of flu this winter.
8 I stopped a and asked him to call the police.

B Adjectives formed from phrasal verbs

Throwaway society contributes to global warming

Breakaway republic holds first elections

FRENCH TEAM WINS **KNOCKOUT** COMPETITION

DOCTOR'S MANNER DESCRIBED AS **'OFF-PUTTING'**

MONTHS LATER, FLOOD RECOVERY STILL **ONGOING**

Outspoken critic of government loses job

WATERED-DOWN PLANS FOR BROADBAND SPEEDS

SUPERVISORS DECIDE ON FATE OF **LEFTOVER** LIBRARY FUNDS

Worn-out mums dream of more support from dads

Glossary

throwaway	(of goods) produced cheaply and intended to be thrown away after use (also **throwaway society**). **throw sth away** v.
breakaway	(of a group, organization, or part of a country) having separated from a larger group or part. **break away from sb/sth** v.
knockout	A **knockout** competition is one in which players or teams continue competing until there is only one winner left. **knock sb out** (**of sth**) v.
off-putting	INF If sb or sth is **off-putting**, they are strange or unpleasant, in a way that prevents you from liking them. **put sb off** v.
ongoing	continuing to exist or develop. **go on** v.
outspoken	saying what you think, even when it upsets people. **speak out** (**against sth**) v.
watered down	A **watered-down** plan, statement, etc. is weaker and less powerful than it was originally. **water sth down** v.
worn out	1 (of a person) very tired because they have been working hard. 2 (of a thing) too old or damaged to be used. **wear sb/sth out** v.
leftover	remaining after you have finished or used what you want or need, e.g. ***leftover** food*. **leftovers** PL N. **be left over** (**from sth**). v

3 True or false? Write T or F.

1 *Ongoing* talks are finished.
2 An *outspoken* critic says very little.
3 *Worn-out* shoes are useless.
4 *Leftover* food can be eaten later.
5 An *off-putting* manner is a good thing.
6 If you lose a *knockout* round, you're out.
7 A *watered-down* comment is less powerful.
8 A *throwaway* product is valuable.

4 Complete the dialogues using a phrasal verb, noun, or adjective.

1 Did your team get through the first stage? ~ No, they .
2 Is Bess having a rest? ~ Yeah, that was a long walk. She's completely .
3 The article isn't as strongly worded as it was. ~ No, it's been .
4 What's for dinner? ~ I think there are some from lunchtime.
5 She coughed throughout your performance. ~ I know, I found it really .
6 Why did they form a group? ~ They were unhappy with the way things were.
7 He's strongly against fox-hunting. ~ That's right; he has often .
8 Have the discussions come to an end yet? ~ No, they're still .

Review: Introduction to idioms and phrasal verbs

Unit 1

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out an expression. What is it?

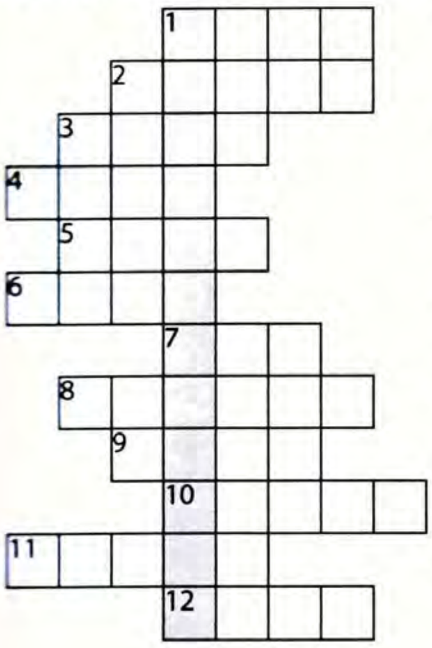

1 If you put your in it, you say something embarrassing by accident.
2 If you say, 'it serves you ', you mean that the person deserves the unpleasant thing that has happened to them.
3 If you say, 'the thing I knew', you're going to describe something very surprising that happened after that moment.
4 If something is a point for you, it makes you feel upset, annoyed, or embarrassed if someone mentions it.
5 If you got out of bed on the wrong today, you're in a bad mood.
6 If you're trying to up with the Joneses, you're trying to have all the possessions and achievements that your friends or neighbours have.
7 If you the ground running, you start doing something and proceed quickly and successfully.
8 If you haven't done a of work, you've done no work at all.
9 If your is worse than your bite, you aren't really as unkind or angry as you seem.
10 If your heart , you suddenly feel sad or worried about something.
11 If you throw in the , you give up on a problem and admit you are defeated by it.
12 If you take a back , you become less active and stop trying to control things.
The expression in the grey squares is .

Unit 2

1 Match 1–10 with a–j.

1 That man's got a real chip on his
2 I can't understand him; we aren't on the same
3 I had to beat a hasty
4 The announcement took the wind out of my
5 It's nothing personal: you really mustn't take it to
6 I think he must have some trick up his
7 This idea isn't working. I think we're on the wrong
8 She's the boss and she likes to be in the driving

a seat.
b heart.
c sleeve.
d retreat.
e shoulder.
f track.
g sails.
h wavelength.

2 Complete the idioms.

ABOUT YOU

1 I tend to play my close to my .
2 I like to while the iron's hot.
3 If I'm in a tight , I generally ask for help rather than trying to deal with things on my own.
4 I've got my head on when it comes to finance.
5 I occasionally let my rule my .
6 If someone criticizes me, I tend to take it to .

3 Are the sentences in the questionnaire in Exercise 2 true about you, sometimes true, or not true? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

Unit 3

1 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

▶ The school organized the visit, and I put my name down for it .
1 That was a stupid thing to do. Who put you up ?
2 If you go to the market, watch out .
3 I'm very willing to give you a hand; you know you can count .
4 It wasn't her fault but he still took it .
5 The boys were just being stupid, so the policeman let them off with .
6 This is a very complicated sentence. I can't work out what .

2 Rewrite the part of the sentence in italics, using a phrasal verb that keeps a similar meaning. Make any other additions that are necessary.

▶ They are *trusting* us to help them. counting on
1 The helicopter had to *land* in a field.
2 The sun *rose* just after six o'clock.
3 The children *finished* their dinner.
4 He *criticizes himself* a lot.
5 We had to have our dog *killed*.
6 She just *started to dislike* me; I don't know why.
7 We decided to *have dinner at home* last night.
8 He *persuaded me to go*.

Unit 4

1 What related phrasal nouns and adjectives are formed from these phrasal verbs? Write them in the correct column below.

pass by ✓ speak out look on water sth down break out (of war) wear sth out
sum up go on (= continue) stand by (of a person) put sb off (= distract)

Phrasal verb	**Phrasal noun**	**Phrasal verb**	**Phrasal adjective**
pass by	passer-by		

2 Agree with the first speaker in each dialogue, using a suitable phrasal verb, noun, or adjective.

▶ The government tried to hide their mistakes, didn't they? ~ Yes, there was a cover-up .
1 Weren't your team eliminated? ~ Yes, I'm afraid they were .
2 We didn't eat everything, did we? ~ No, we've still got some salad.
3 The minister was lying, wasn't he? ~ Yes, it was obviously a . He's finished.
4 The police will be there to support you. ~ Yes, they'll provide plenty of .
5 You always have a holiday, don't you? ~ Yes, I like to every year.
6 You must've been exhausted after that work. ~ Yes, I was .

5 I can describe character

A What are they like?

☆
Star Theatre

For the Love of Alice – Cast List

Gideon Beck: Ex-army major, **loves the sound of his own voice**; **doesn't suffer fools gladly**. Thought to be **tough as old boots**. Very protective of daughter, Alice.

Alice Beck: Attractive and charming **on the surface**, Alice likes to **play it cool** with men, but **deep down**, she's quite shy. Loves her father, but very much **under** his **thumb**.

Jocelyn Beck: Gideon's wife. **Has a quick temper**; friends think she's **mad as a hatter**.

Andrew Elder: Neighbour, in love with Alice. Sadly, **thick as two short planks**.

Glossary

like/love the sound of your own voice	DISAPPROVING talk too much, usually without listening to other people.
not suffer fools gladly	not be polite or patient with people you think are less intelligent than you.
(**as**) **tough as old boots**	INF very strong and able to bear pain, criticism, etc. without complaining.
on the surface	when you consider obvious things. OPP **deep down**.
play it cool	INF hide your feelings so that you appear calm and controlled.
under sb's thumb	controlled or influenced by sb.
have a quick temper	become angry easily and often.
(**as**) **thick as two short planks**	INF (of a person) very stupid.

spotlight *mad*

She's (as) mad as a hatter. INF = strange or crazy. SYN **barking** (**mad**) INF.
He's mad keen on Alice. INF = likes her very much.
I was hopping mad. INF = very angry.

1 Circle the correct word.

1 Keep out of the new boss's way; apparently he's got a very *quick* | *fast* temper.
2 *Low* | *Deep* down, Joe's a true romantic. It just doesn't look that way on the *surface* | *top*.
3 That was a really crazy thing to do. ~ Yeah, I thought she was *barking* | *hopping* mad.
4 You'll find that Mr Waters doesn't suffer fools *gladly* | *happily*, so watch what you say.
5 She's a very dominant woman; she certainly has her husband under her *finger* | *thumb*.
6 My aunt's *rough* | *tough* as old boots, so I'm sure she'll get through the operation.

2 Complete the second sentence so that it paraphrases the first.

1 My brother's furious about the money. In other words, he's ______ mad.
2 John's really stupid. In other words, he's thick as ______.
3 Ella didn't show Luis her true feelings. In other words, she played ______.
4 Ana adores horse-riding. In other words, she's ______ it.
5 Don just talks and never listens. In other words, he loves the sound of his ______.
6 I love Caz, but she's crazy. In other words, she's mad ______.
7 Mona does everything Pete tells her to. In other words, she's under ______.
8 Grandad can put up with anything. In other words, he's tough ______.

B Noun phrases describing character

Idiom	**Meaning**
*My sister goes to bed at exactly 10.30 every night; she's **a creature of habit**.*	**a creature of habit** a person who likes to do the same thing at the same time on a regular basis.
*Most of the group are very quiet – we need **a live wire** like Jez to get us talking.*	**a live wire** a person who is lively and full of energy and enthusiasm.
*We could do with **a bright spark** here to bring in new ideas.* *Some **bright spark** left the door unlocked! How stupid.*	**a bright spark** INF 1 a lively and intelligent person. 2 IRONIC = a person who has done sth stupid.
*She always asks Dad for help with cash because she knows he's **a soft touch**.*	**a soft touch** INF a person from whom you can easily get money because they are kind or easy to deceive.
*I don't know if Ash would be right for the job; he's a bit of **an unknown quantity**.*	**an unknown quantity** a person or thing whose qualities are abilities are not yet known.
*Mrs Andrews runs the business and people think she's **the salt of the earth**.* *Drug dealers are **the scum of the earth**.*	**the salt of the earth** a good, reliable, honest person. OPP **the scum of the earth** INF, INSULTING a person or group considered to be extremely unpleasant or evil.
*He's tough, ambitious, and he's **nobody's fool** – he's our best hope as a manager.*	**nobody's fool** a person who is too clever to be tricked by other people. SYN **no fool**.
*I hate dealing with Rupert; he's **a nasty piece of work**.*	**a nasty piece of work** a person who is unpleasant, unkind, or dishonest.
*He's a bit of **a cold fish**. He hardly every speaks to us or even smiles.*	**a cold fish** DISAPPROVING a person who shows little emotion or seems unfriendly.
*If he said he would help you, I'm sure he will; he's **a man of his word**.*	**a man/woman of his/her word** a person who always does what he/she has promised to do.

3 Are these descriptions positive or negative? Write P or N.

1 He's a live wire.
2 She's a nasty piece of work.
3 He's the salt of the earth.
4 She's a woman of her word.
5 She's nobody's fool.
6 Which bright spark left the light on?
7 She's a cold fish.
8 He's the scum of the earth.

4 Complete the descriptions of Angela's colleagues. Then circle the full idioms.

Andy Crocker is a great boss: hardworking, honest, and a man of his (1) . He's a real family man too and he adores his kids. They only have to ask for something and they get it; he's a (2) touch.

Mrs Bolton's been here for years and she's now approaching retirement. She's the salt of the (3) , and will do anything for Andy. But things have to be done in a particular way – 'Mrs Bolton's Way'; she's a (4) of habit.

Mandy O'Neill is new in this department, so at the moment she's a bit of an (5) quantity. She used to be in sales, and my friend Sally says she's a bright (6) and (7) fool. I'll reserve judgement on her till I get to know her better.

Tim Richards – What can I say? I just can't stand him. I don't trust him at all; I think he's a nasty (8) , actually.

5 ABOUT YOU Can you think of five people that you know who could be described by any of the idioms in the table? Write in your notebook, or talk to another student.

6 I can describe people's behaviour

A Selfless behaviour

Best mum competition

[Please write your application in not more than 120 words.]

All mums **have** the family's **best interests at heart**, and **will go out of their way to** help their kids, but what makes a great mum? Well, ours has all the qualities. When things went wrong and Dad left us, Mum **went to great lengths to hold** the family **together**. She **was always there for** us, but trusted us to make our own decisions. When we needed **a shoulder to cry on**, it was Mum we **turned to**, not our friends. But what **sets** her **apart from** the other mums is her concern for others. She**'s** always **giving** someone or other **a helping hand**. We **thank our lucky stars** that she's our mum! (Patti, 16)

Glossary

have sb's (**best**) **interests at heart**	care about sb and want to improve their situation.
go out of your way (**to do sth**)	do sth that you do not have to do and that involves making a special effort to help or please sb.
go to great lengths to do sth	try in a determined way to achieve sth.
hold sth together	keep a group of people, a marriage, etc. united in difficult circumstances.
be there for sb	be available and supportive if sb wants to talk to you or needs your help.
a shoulder to cry on	a person who gives you sympathy.
turn to sb/sth	go to sb/sth for help or advice.
set sb apart (**from sb**)	make sb different from or better than others.
give/lend (**sb**) **a helping hand**	help sb.
thank your lucky stars	feel very grateful and lucky about sth.

1 Put the words in order and add one more word.

▸ them | way | out | help | she | went | of | to She went out of her way to help them.
1 help | lengths | dad | to | them | went | to
2 writing | our | given | helping | we | were | a | with
3 hold | managed | their | they | to | marriage
4 best | have | heart | she | doesn't | your | at
5 healthy | I'm | stars | I | thank | my | that
6 on | a | she | to | needs | shoulder

2 Write a phrase with the same meaning as the words in italics.

▸ They *helped me* with the housework. gave me a helping hand
1 Who would you *seek advice from* if you had a problem?
2 Her positive attitude *makes her different* from her colleagues.
3 She needs a *sympathetic person to talk to about her problems*.
4 She is always *available to talk to if I need help*.
5 Dad always *makes a special effort* to keep them amused.
6 My sister *tried very hard* to get the medicine I needed.
7 I *am so grateful* that I have such a great family.
8 Somehow Mum managed to *keep the family united*.

3 ABOUT YOU What would you write in a best mum, best dad, best sister, or best brother competition? Write in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B Selfish behaviour

Do you suffer from selfish or bossy siblings?

KIM ► Yeah, my sister always wants to **have things her own way**, so I have to **put my foot down** with her. She thinks she can **twist** me **round her little finger**, but she can't!

AYRON ► My brother's very **sure of himself** and he**'ll stop at nothing** to get what he wants. He**'d walk all over** my parents if he had the chance.

CARMEN ► When we were kids, my older sisters used to **push** me **around** and **pick on** me because I was small. It took me years to learn to **stick up for myself**.

PRINCESS ► My sister **never lifts a finger** to help around the house; she just **takes it for granted that** we'll clear up after her. If it weren't for me, her room would be disgusting!

Glossary

have things/it (all) your own way	get or do what you want, even when other people want sth different (also **have/get your own way**).
put your foot down	INF use your authority to stop sb doing sth.
sure of yourself	OFTEN DISAPPROVING very confident.
stop at nothing	do anything to get what you want, without caring about its effect on others.
walk all over sb	INF treat sb badly by always doing what you want to do.
push sb around	give sb orders in a rude or unpleasant way.
pick on sb	treat sb unfairly by blaming or criticizing them.
stick up for sb/yourself	support or defend sb/yourself.
not lift a finger (to do sth)	INF do nothing to help sb.
take it for granted (that ...)	expect sth to happen because it usually does. (Also **take sb for granted** be so accustomed to sb that you don't appreciate them.)

spotlight Persuading people

If you can **twist sb round your little finger** INF, you can persuade them to do anything you want. If you **get round sb**, you persuade them to do what you want, often by being nice to them. If you **win sb over**, you get their support by persuading them you are right.

4 True or false? Write T or F.

1 If someone can *stick up for* themselves, they can defend themselves.
2 If someone *won't lift a finger*, they probably have an injury.
3 If someone *takes you for granted*, they can persuade you to do anything they want.
4 If someone *wins you over*, they have persuaded you that they are right.
5 If you *have things all your own way*, you do what everyone else wants.
6 If you will *stop at nothing*, you won't do anything to help.

5 Complete the dialogues.

1 Jun has no self doubts and is very confident. ~ Yes, she's very .
2 Dad refused very firmly to let us stay out late. ~ Yes, he put .
3 She criticizes me, but not the others. It's not fair! ~ Yes, I think she's you.
4 He tells me what to do and he's horrible about it. ~ Yes, he around.
5 Li's only nice to me because she wants my help. ~ She's just trying to you.
6 I can make her do anything. ~ Yes, you can twist .
7 She's really bossy and I hate it. ~ Well, don't let her you!
8 Ed only wants to do what he wants. ~ Yes, he just wants to way.

7 I can talk about relationships

A Being married

How to make your marriage work

You think you**'re made for each other**, you **tie the knot**,
then the hard work begins!

- You have to **meet** your partner **halfway** – compromise is everything. Don't let things like finance or household chores **drive a wedge between** you.
- If you're upset with each other, should you try to **clear the air** or **walk away**? Remember that things said **in the heat of the moment** can be hard to forgive later. On the other hand, if you walk away, you may **be storing up** problems for the future. My advice is: go for a short walk to calm down, then you can discuss the matter sensibly.
- Don't **live in each other's pockets**. You'll need to give each other space in the marriage.
- All marriages **go through a bad patch**; use laughter to keep things in perspective.

Glossary

be made for each other	INF be perfect partners.
tie the knot	INF get married. SYN **get hitched** INF.
meet sb halfway	reach agreement with sb by giving them part of what they want.
drive a wedge between people	make the relationship between two people or groups suffer. (👁 See page 162.)
clear the air	improve a difficult or tense situation by talking about it.
walk away	leave a bad situation.
in the heat of the moment	at a time when you are too angry or excited to think carefully.
store sth up	do sth that will make a problem worse in the future.
live in each other's pockets	be too emotionally close or spend too much time together.
go through a bad/sticky patch	INF experience a difficult period in your life.

1 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

1 Talking cleared the air between us.
2 I said it in the heat of the moment.
3 We're going through a sticky patch.
4 They're made for each other.
5 They tied the knot last Saturday.
6 We agreed to meet each other halfway.
7 It drove a wedge between us.
8 They're living in each other's pockets.

2 Put the words in order and add one word.

▸ of | it | I | the | moment | said | in | the I said it in the heat of the moment.
1 for | Dom | are | Janet | other | and | each
2 they | think | hitched | do | you | will ?
3 be | trouble | could | later | storing | for | you .
4 argument | walk | an | easy | it | isn't | to | from .
5 marriage | a | through | went | bad | their .
6 each | they're | other's | in | living .

3 ABOUT YOU Look at the advice in the text at the top. Do you agree with all the points? Why/why not? Write in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B Being single

Is it fun being single?

DOZYJOE Yes! You're free – nothing**'s holding you back** and no one's nagging you because the dishes **are piling up** in the sink. You can **do as you please** any time, day or night.

RUDY Not for me. I'm bored and lonely. Yes, you **answer to** no one, but **I'd far sooner** be in a loving relationship. **I'd give anything to** meet the right person.

BELLA My previous boyfriend **messed** me **around**; I felt he **let** me **down** badly, and I was really hurt. Now that I**'ve finished with** him, the thought of going through the same thing again **doesn't bear thinking about**. I don't want another distressing **break-up**.

Glossary

hold sb back	stop sb being as successful as they should be.
pile up	increase in quantity or amount.
do as you please	be able to do whatever you like. SYN **please yourself**.
answer to sb (**for sth**)	have to explain your actions or decisions to sb.
mess sb around/about	treat sb badly, especially by changing your mind a lot or breaking promises.
let sb down	not help or support sb as they had hoped or expected.
finish with sb	end a romantic relationship with sb.
not bear thinking about	be too shocking or unpleasant to think about.
break-up	the ending of a relationship or marriage. **break up** (**with sb**) v.

spotlight Expressing wishes

I'd (far) sooner be married. = I would (much) prefer to be married.
I'd give anything to meet her. = I would very much like to meet her.
I'd give my right arm to have Anya back. = I would very much like to have Anya back.

4 Write the opposite using an idiom or phrasal verb.

- ▸ I can do whatever I want. OPP I can't do as I please / please myself.
1 Her boyfriend treated her really well. OPP Her boyfriend .
2 I don't have to explain my actions to my boss. OPP I have to .
3 There's less and less work. OPP The work .
4 I've just started going out with Pilar. OPP I've just .
5 He didn't stand in the way of my success. OPP He .
6 She gave me the help I was hoping for. OPP She .

5 Complete the texts with one word in each case. Then underline the full idioms, phrasal verbs, or phrasal nouns.

Danny was quite possessive, so when I (1) with him, I was relieved that at last I could do (2) I pleased. But not long after the (3) of the relationship I was terribly lonely, and I regretted what I'd done. Now I'd give (4) to have him back.

I feel guilty about Donna. I know I (5) her down badly, and I'm sure she was sick of me (6) her about. But the truth is, I'd far (7) be single and be able to please (8) in what I do. And getting married just doesn't (9) thinking about; I'm far too selfish.

I'm sure there's a little sign above my head that says, 'I want to get married'! I'd give my right (10) to meet Mr Right!

6 ABOUT YOU Which speaker at the top of the page do you agree with most, and why? Or do you have a different point of view? Write in your notebook, or talk to another student.

8 I can talk about families

A Why do families argue?

What is it about **your own flesh and blood**? I've got two sisters. They used to **fight like cat and dog** when they were kids, and **there's little love lost between them** now. But as soon as an outsider criticizes either of them, they immediately **close ranks** and **turn on** them. It's a bit the same with me and my wife. When we're together we argue, but when we're apart, we're **miserable as sin**. How do you **account for** that? I guess living **on top of** each other doesn't help, and I'm sure we **take** each other **for granted** a lot of the time. But families are strange!

Glossary

your own flesh and blood	a person or people that you are related to.
fight like cat and dog	(of two people) often have angry fights.
there's little/no love lost between them	= they don't like each other.
close ranks	If people **close ranks**, they join together to protect themselves, especially when they are being criticized.
turn on sb	attack sb suddenly and unexpectedly.
(as) **miserable as sin**	INF used to emphasize that sb is very unhappy.
account for sth	be the explanation or cause of sth.
take sb for granted	be so accustomed to sb that you don't appreciate them.

spotlight *on top of sb/sth*

They live on top of each other. = very close to each other (which often causes problems).
He gets commission on top of his salary. = in addition to his salary.
The books were piled on top of one another. = on, over, or covering one another.

1 Replace the words in italics with an idiom or phrasal verb that keeps a similar meaning.

1 When she left him, he was *so unhappy*.
2 *In addition to* all the family problems, he's split up with his girlfriend.
3 You can't abandon them: they're *members of your family*.
4 She *suddenly attacked* me for no reason.
5 His surname's different from his brother's. How do you *explain* that?
6 Living *so close to* one another is a problem.
7 My brothers *argue bitterly* all the time.
8 *They don't like each other.*

2 Complete the sentences.

1 Is it true we fight more with our own ______ and blood? If so, why?
2 Did you ever fight like cat and ______ with any of your brothers or sisters?
3 Do you think members of your family would close ______ if criticized?
4 Do you ever feel your family are living on ______ of each other?
5 Have any members of your family ever turned ______ you? If so, why?
6 Do you ever ______ any of your family for granted? If so, who?

3 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B Being a middle child

Middle child syndrome

Being the middle child of three can **result in** 'middle-child syndrome'. The firstborn often gets the most attention and **is put on a pedestal**; the last to be born is the baby and tends to **get away with murder**. The middle child, though, can feel neglected, **squeezed out** by their siblings, and **starved of** attention. Some studies **have backed** this **up**, suggesting that middle children who feel **left out** may **distance themselves from** others and become loners. It is important, therefore, that parents **make a point of lavishing** attention **on** the middle child and praising their achievements. And on the positive side, studies show that the middle child is often more creative and artistic than the others.

Glossary

result in sth	cause a particular situation to happen.
put sb on a pedestal	admire sb so much that you do not see their faults.
get away with murder	INF do whatever you want without being stopped or punished.
squeeze sb out	(usually passive) If sb is **squeezed out**, they are no longer included in sth that they were previously involved in.
starve sb/sth of sth	(usually passive) If you are **starved of sth**, you do not have enough of sth that you need.
back sth/sb up	support sth/sb; say that what sb says or writes is true.
leave sb out	not include sb.
distance yourself from sth	become less involved or connected with sth.
make a point of doing sth	make a special effort to do sth.
lavish sth on sb	give a lot, often too much, of sth to sb.

4 One word is missing. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

▸ It can result / serious problems. in
1 They lavish far too much money their children.
2 There's a danger that they will their son on a pedestal.
3 She's very naughty; they let her get with murder.
4 Since the divorce, he's distanced from his family.
5 No wonder the child was unhappy; she was of attention.
6 Try to a point of praising your middle child's creativity.

5 Complete this story of one middle child.

It's true that the firstborn is put on a (1) ________ and the third child gets away with (2) ________, but in my case it didn't (3) ________ in me becoming an underachiever. Quite the opposite. I made a (4) ________ of ensuring that I wasn't squeezed (5) ________ or (6) ________ of attention. In fact, I craved attention and fought really hard to excel in everything. I became an overachiever.

Now, I don't feel left (7) ________ by my parents. We have a very good relationship and I feel they (8) ________ me up in everything I do. Mind you, they still (9) ________ more attention on my younger sister than me. But I don't mind that now.

6 ABOUT YOU Are you the middle child of three, or do you know any middle children? If so, is there any truth in what the text says? Write in your notebook, or talk to another student.

9 I can describe my emotions

A An emotional rollercoaster

A rollercoaster

Since I found out that I was pregnant, I've been on an emotional rollercoaster[1]: my mood seems to change **for no apparent reason**. One minute I'm **on top of the world**, the next I'm **at the end of my tether**, or **crying my eyes out** at some silly romantic movie. I'm so short-tempered – the slightest thing **winds** me **up**. A guy in the office was tapping on the radiator earlier, and I just **went off the deep end** and **screamed my head off** at him. Poor man – I have since apologized. Pregnancy **has stirred up** feelings I didn't know existed! It's such a new experience; I guess I just need time to **take** it all **in**.

Glossary

for no apparent reason	without an obvious cause.
on top of the world	very happy or proud. OPP **down in the dumps** INF.
at the end of your tether	having no patience or energy left to deal with a difficult situation. SYN **at your wits' end**.
cry your eyes/heart out	INF cry in an uncontrolled way and be unable to stop.
wind sb up	INF make sb angry or upset.
go off the deep end	INF suddenly become very angry or emotional.
scream/laugh/shout your head off	scream/laugh/shout very loudly.
stir sth up	make sb feel or think sth, e.g anger, fear, memories.
take sth in	accept sth as real or true (*I can't **take it** all **in***).

1 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

► I'm feeling really fed up. DOWN I'm feeling really down in the dumps.
1 The news is so bad that I can't believe it. TAKE
2 The boy was making a lot of noise. HEAD
3 She couldn't stop crying. EYES
4 I can't deal with the situation; I'm so upset. TETHER
5 He got angry and lost his temper. DEEP
6 The news made everyone angry. STIR
7 Please don't make her angry. WIND
8 I'm feeling extremely happy. WORLD

2 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions. Then write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 What kinds of things in life tend to wind you ?
2 What makes you feel down in the ?
3 Do you ever feel at your wits' ? If so, why?
4 When did you last laugh your head , and why?
5 When did you last go off the end at someone, and why?
6 Do you ever feel incredibly positive for no reason?
7 What memories would it up to see your old school?
8 Which single thing would make you feel on of the world right now?

B Keeping emotions under control

Dealing with office disputes

As head of department, I have to deal with disputes between employees, and I absolutely cannot **take sides**. I try to involve both parties in the dispute, but ensure that I keep any meeting **on an even keel**. **That's easier said than done**, especially if they**'re dying to have a go at** each other. Someone like Zoe, for instance, tends to **rub** her colleagues **up the wrong way**, and **flares up** at the slightest provocation. So, first I spend time alone with her, **cooling** her **down**, then I bring in whoever she has upset. It's a stressful job, and I have to **keep** my emotions **in check**. When I go home, I can **pour my heart out** to my husband: he doesn't mind at all!

Glossary

on an even keel	happening in a calm way, with no sudden changes or disturbances.
that's easier said than done	= that's a good idea, but difficult to achieve.
be dying to do sth / for sth	INF want to do or have sth very much.
have a go at sb	INF attack or criticize sb.
rub sb up the wrong way	INF do or say sth that annoys or offends sb.
flare up	1 suddenly become angry (as above). 2 (of a fire) suddenly start burning more brightly.
cool (**sb**) **down**	become or make sb calmer and less excited. SYN **calm** (**sb**) **down**.
keep sth/sb in check	control sth/sb.
pour your heart out (**to sb**)	tell sb all your problems or feelings. OPP **bottle up your feelings/emotions**.

spotlight *side*

I can't take sides in their argument. = support one person or group and not another.
I'm on your side in this matter. = agree with you and support you.
She always sides with my brother. = agrees with him and supports him.

3 Write sentences using words from each column.

She rubs ✓	side	in check.
He poured	said	on this issue.
Don't take	sides	the wrong way. ✓
He must keep	up	out to me.
Whose	me up ✓	than done.
That's easier	his heart	a coffee.
Don't bottle	for	are you on?
I'm dying	his anger	your feelings.

She rubs me up the wrong way.

4 Complete the dialogues. Then circle the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

1 Has all the chaos subsided at home? ~ Yes, we're back on an again.
2 Does your brother support you? ~ No, he always with my sister. It's not fair!
3 You seemed angry at the meeting. ~ Yeah, it took me ages to down afterwards.
4 Did your boss speak to you about being late? ~ Yes, he had a me again.
5 Did you enjoy meeting Louis? ~ Oh yes, I'd been to meet him for ages.
6 I thought he was going to explode. ~ Yeah, but somehow he kept his temper in .
7 Why were they fighting? ~ Well, violence up very easily in that area.
8 He needs to calm down. ~ Well, that's easier . He's incredibly upset.
9 Don't you like Cheryl? ~ She's OK but she just rubs me .
10 I feel so tense inside. ~ That's because you your feelings.

10 I can describe physical actions

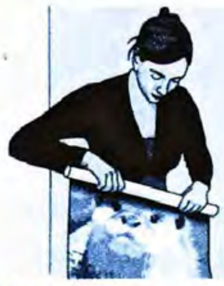
She rolled the picture up.

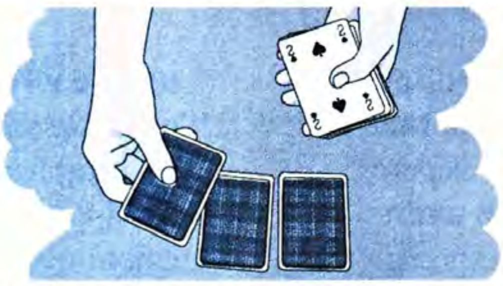
She dealt the cards out.

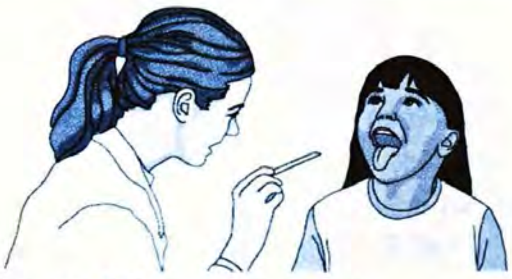
She stuck her tongue out.

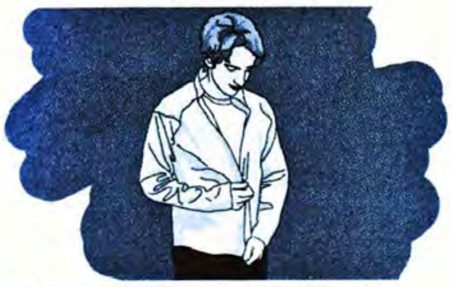
He zipped his jacket up.

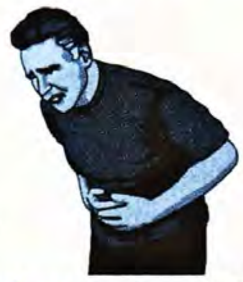
He doubled up in pain (also be doubled up). SYN double over.

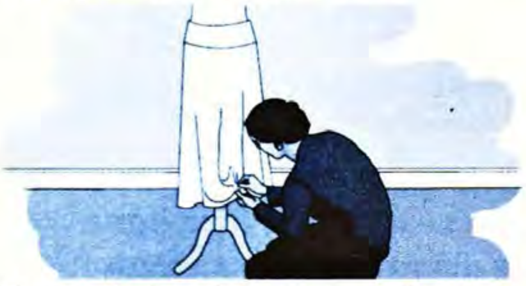
She took the skirt up. OPP let sth down.

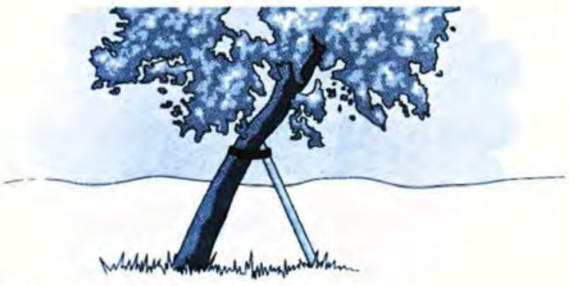
We propped the tree up.

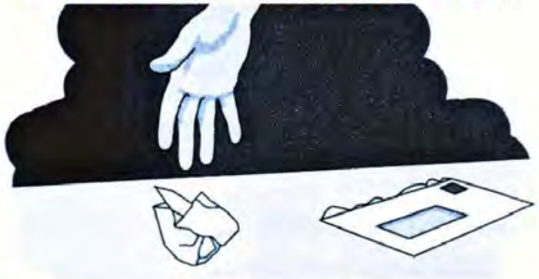
I screwed the letter up.

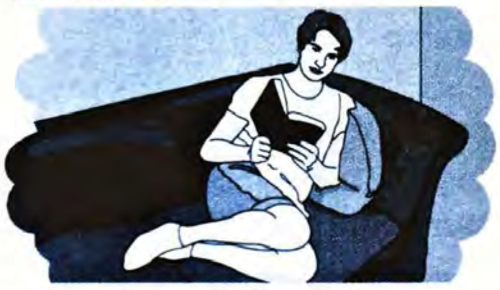
She curled up on the sofa.

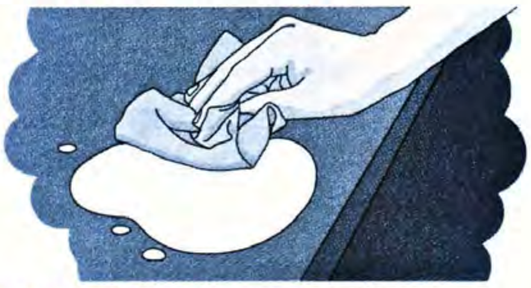
I mopped up the spilt milk.

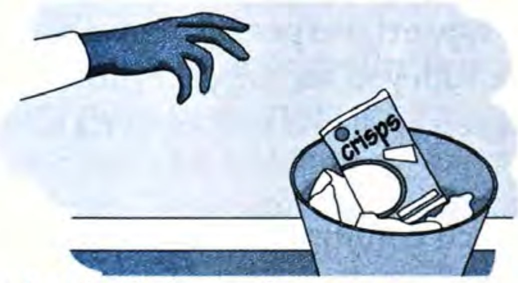

I chucked the packet away INF. SYN chuck sth out INF.

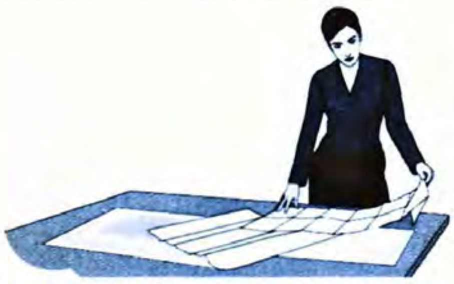
She spread the map out on the desk.

Some of these phrasal verbs also have figurative meanings.

Example	**Meaning**
The business is in a bad state; we'll have to ***roll our sleeves up*** *and get on with it.*	**roll your sleeves up** start doing a difficult or unpleasant job.
Judge Wallis ***dealt out*** *tough penalties for people driving without a licence.*	**deal sth out** give a punishment to a person or group. SYN **hand sth out**.
She hates her job, but she'll have to ***stick it out*** *until the end of the year.*	**stick it/sth out** INF continue to do sth to the end, even though it is boring or difficult.
The new Italian Prime Minister ***took up*** *his post at the weekend.*	**take sth up** start a new job or have a new responsibility.
The government is ***propping up*** *the ailing car industry. Do you agree with that?*	**prop sth up** support sth that is in difficulty. SYN **shore sth up**.
I made a mess of the exam last time, so I don't want to ***screw*** *it* ***up*** *this time.*	**screw sth up** SLANG do sth badly or spoil sth. **screw-up** N.
When she sang, we ***curled up*** *with embarrassment.*	**curl up** INF become very embarrassed.
We just have a few things to ***mop up*** *before signing the contracts.*	**mop sth up** complete or end sth by dealing with a few final details.

1 Tick the logical sentence ending.

1 Jack's trousers need letting down: *he's growing fast* ☐ *I bought a size too big for him* ☐.
2 Could you chuck this out – *that cupboard will do fine* ☐ *we don't need it any more* ☐.
3 She screwed up the notes and *put them in the bin* ☐ *put them in her folder* ☐.
4 I've tried propping the photo up but *it keeps falling off* ☐ *it keeps falling over* ☐.
5 When you've rolled up the rug, *it'll need hoovering* ☐ *it can go in the lorry* ☐.
6 Zip your bag up or *someone might steal it* ☐ *someone might steal your wallet* ☐.
7 The cat curled up on the chair and *fell asleep* ☐ *scratched me* ☐.
8 He was doubled up – I think *he was in pain* ☐ *he was in danger* ☐.

2 True or false? Write T or F.

1 If you prop something up, it's because it isn't stable.
2 If you spread something out, you get rid of it.
3 If you zip something up, it means it was closed before.
4 If you let something down, it's because it was too long.
5 If you screw up an exam, it means you make a mess of it.
6 If you have to mop some juice up, it's because you spilt it.
7 If you're doubled over, you might be laughing or in pain.
8 If you curl up, it means you stretch your body.
9 If you take up a pair of trousers, you make them shorter.
10 If you mop up the details of something, you forget about them.

3 The same word is missing in each pair of sentences. Write it in.

1 a I'll have to ______ this skirt up.
b She's hoping to ______ up her new job by Christmas.
2 a There are a few details to ______ up before we end the meeting.
b Why didn't anyone ______ up this water that's all over the floor?
3 a I just ______ up when she said all those embarrassing things about me.
b I'd had an awful day, so I just went home and ______ up in front of the TV.
4 a That little boy ______ out his tongue at me. What bad manners!
b It was an awful job, but I ______ it out for six months.
5 a The judge decided to ______ out a heavy sentence for the robbery.
b Can you ______ the playing cards out? I've hurt my hand.
6 a Time to ______ our sleeves up and get down to work, I think.
b You'd better ______ your trousers up if you're going for a walk on the beach.
7 a I can't see why the government should ______ up such a useless industry.
b I tried to ______ the fence up with some large stones, but eventually it fell over.
8 a It's a really important meeting, so make sure you don't ______ it up!
b What made him ______ up that note from the boss?

4 Complete the sentences using a phrasal verb from page 28 in a logical way.

▸ I think we can get the carpet in the car if we roll it up
1 I've got another six months with this awful project. I hope I can
2 We need to see all the photos at the same time, so you'll need to
3 This skirt's too short, but it's easy enough to
4 That document's really important – why on earth did you
5 There's a lot of work to be done, so it's time to
6 There's a lot of water on the floor. Could you
7 He was so weak he kept falling over. I had to
8 When my brother did that awful dance at the wedding, I just

Review: People

Unit 5

1 Read the text, then answer the questions.

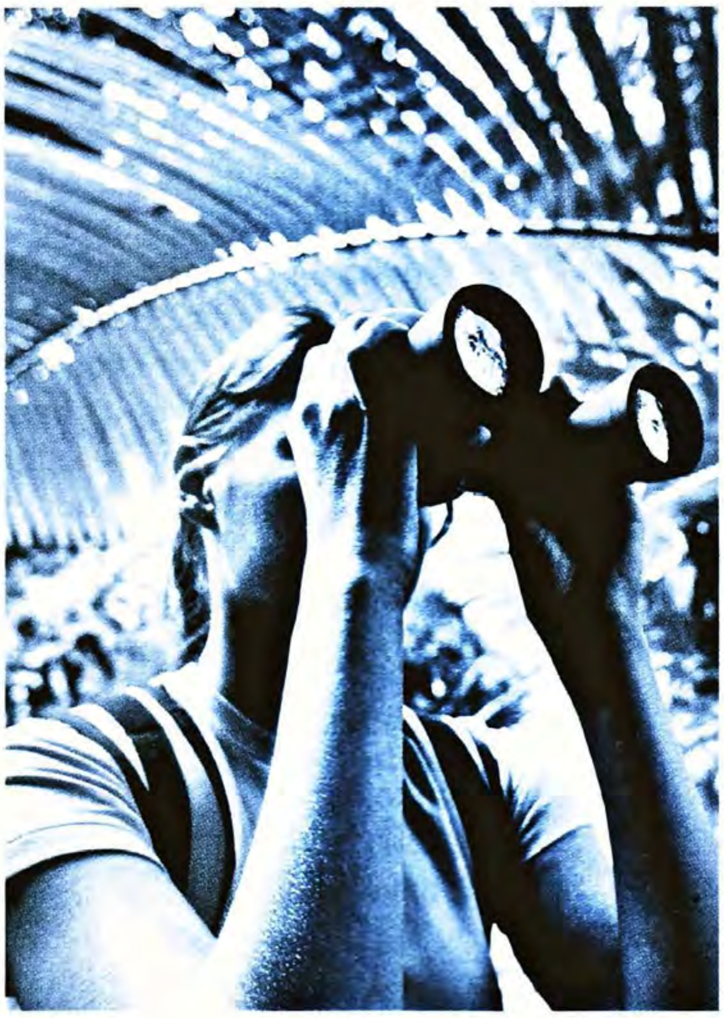

AMAZON ADVENTURE

As group leader, you have to choose four volunteers from the list below to accompany you on a three-week trek down the Amazon. It will be hot, difficult, and you're not sure what to expect. You need people with initiative, who will also work well as a team. Which four would you choose and why? And why wouldn't you choose the other six?

Amy: a bright spark

Syd: tough as old boots

Mandy: a cold fish

Ollie: an unknown quantity

Don: nobody's fool

Clive: likes the sound of his own voice

Bill: thick as two short planks

Brenda: salt of the earth

Isabel: doesn't suffer fools gladly

Alec: a creature of habit

I would choose

I wouldn't choose the others because

2 Complete the phrases being defined.

1 hopping		very angry.
2 have a quick		become angry quickly and often.
3 a nasty	of work	a very unpleasant person.
4 a live		someone who is lively and full of energy.
5 a soft		someone you can easily get money from because they're kind.
6 mad as a		strange or crazy.
7 under sb's		completely controlled by somebody else.
8 play it		hide your feelings so that you appear calm and controlled.

Unit 6

1 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

1 He never does anything to help. FINGER
2 She'll do anything to get what she wants. STOP
3 They tried very hard to help us. LENGTHS
4 Her generosity is what makes her different. SET
5 Call me if you need a sympathetic friend. SHOULDER
6 My sister assumes I'm always there to help her. GRANTED

2 Complete the sentences.

1 Does anyone ever pick you for no reason?
2 Do you think you can stick for yourself in most situations?
3 Can anyone twist you round their little ?
4 Who do you to when you need a to cry on?
5 Who do you usually ask when you need someone to lend you a helping ?
6 Does anyone ever put their down to stop you getting what you want?
7 Can you remember a time when you went out of your to help someone?
8 Is there anyone you sometimes for granted?

3 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.**

Unit 7

1 Complete the conversation.

ANA I hear that Tina has (1) with Graham. I'm amazed – they've been together for a couple of years, haven't they?
DOM Yeah, but I think the (2) was pretty inevitable, actually.
ANA Why's that?
DOM Well, they've been going through a sticky (3) for a while now, and to be honest I don't think they're really (4) for each other.
ANA Well, Graham's not an easy person. He likes to please (5) what he does, and frankly, he's not the kind of guy to (6) someone halfway.
DOM Exactly. I think Tina felt he'd (7) her around long enough, and in the end, she decided to walk (8) from the whole thing. I don't blame her.

2 Rewrite each sentence, starting with the words given. Keep the meaning the same.

► He's going to have to compromise with her.
He's going to have to meet her halfway .
1 It happened at a time when they were too angry or excited to think carefully.
It happened in the heat .
2 It was money which caused them to disagree and argue so much.
It was money which drove .
3 It would be much nicer if you came alone.
I'd far .
4 They're just spending too much time together.
They're just living in each .
5 I hear they've decided to get married.
I hear they've decided to tie .
6 I'd love to meet George Clooney.
I'd give .

Unit 8

1 Tick the correct sentence ending.

1 There's no love lost between us: a) we're great friends. ☐ b) we just don't get on. ☐
2 He always makes a point of helping; a) why is he so selfish? ☐ b) why is he so kind to us? ☐
3 They started playing and left Michael out: a) that made him sad. ☐ b) that made him feel special. ☐
4 Dan backed me up because a) he knew I was wrong. ☐ b) he knew I needed support. ☐
5 Service was on top of the main charges, a) which made it more expensive. ☐ b) which wasn't so bad. ☐
6 They always close ranks when a) there's an external threat. ☐ b) they're higher up. ☐
7 She turned on me; a) I had expected that. ☐ b) I hadn't expected that. ☐
8 They take Mum for granted, and a) they shouldn't do that. ☐ b) she likes it. ☐

2 Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of the word in capitals. Keep the same meaning.

► She didn't include me in the plans. LEAVE She left me out of the plans.
1 Shan became less involved in the group. DISTANCE
2 I gave my son a lot of praise. LAVISH
3 Dara doesn't get any affection from her parents. STARVE
4 He's a close relative of mine. FLESH
5 She behaved badly and never got caught. MURDER
6 Those kids argue all day long. CAT

Unit 9

1 Are you happy or unhappy about these situations? Write H or U.

1 I'm at the end of my tether.
2 She's on my side.
3 He wound me up.
4 The news stirred up anxiety.
5 I'm on top of the world.
6 He had a go at me.
7 I'm feeling a bit down in the dumps.
8 He went off the deep end.

2 Complete the idioms and phrasal verbs being defined.

1	scream your	off	scream very loudly.
2	that's	said than done	= that's a good idea, but difficult to achieve.
3		your heart out	tell sb all your problems and feelings.
4	take		support one person and not another.
5		sb up the wrong way INF	do or say sth that annoys sb.
6	for no	reason	without an obvious cause.
7	cry your	out	cry in an uncontrolled way.
8	be	to do sth INF	want to do sth very much.

Unit 10

1 Use a phrasal verb to describe what you can see in each picture.

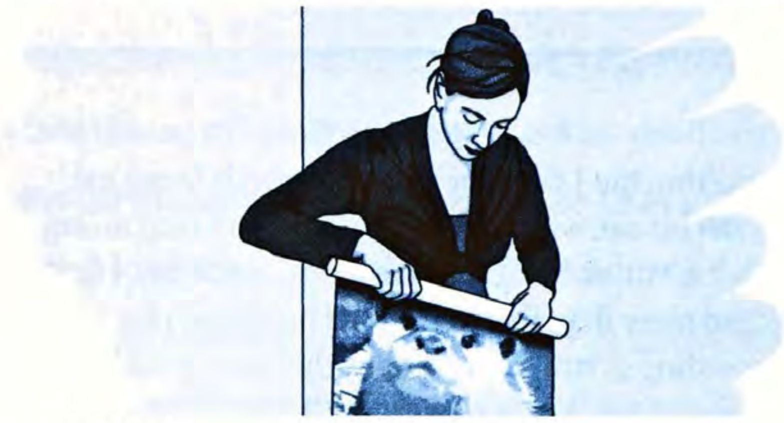

1 She's

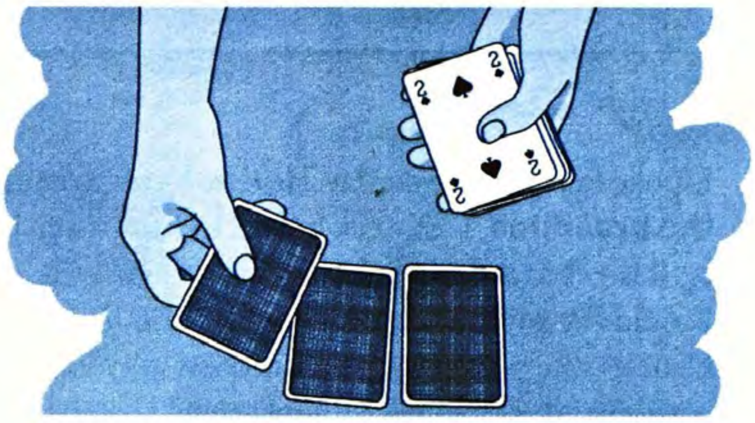

2 She's

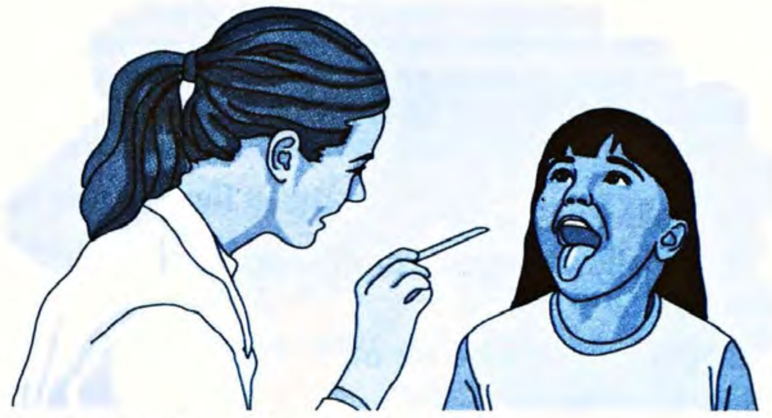

3 She's

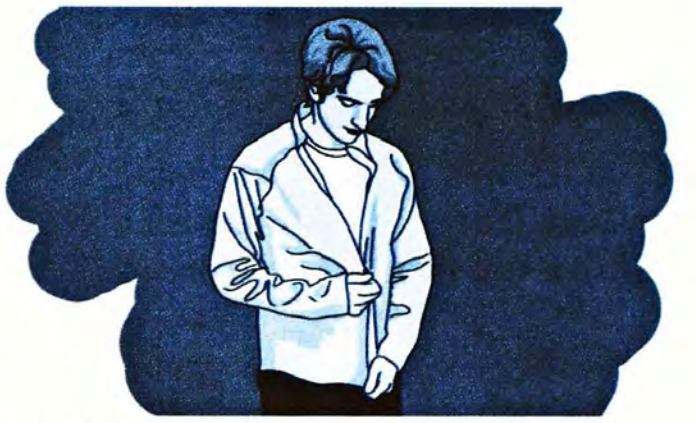

4 He's

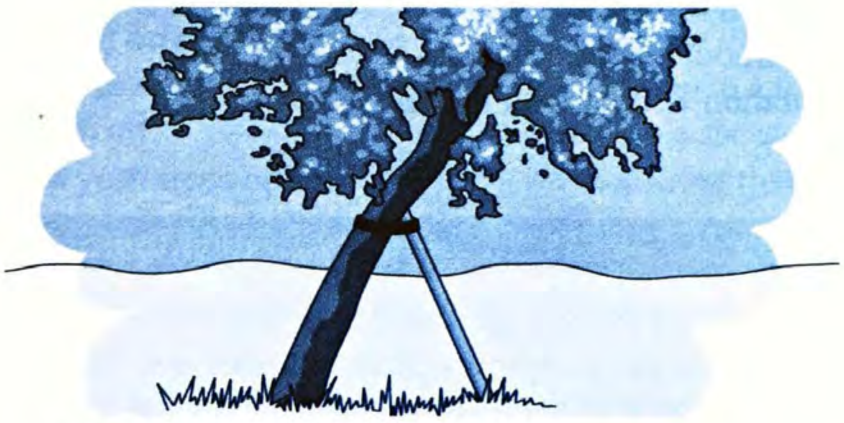

5 Somebody has

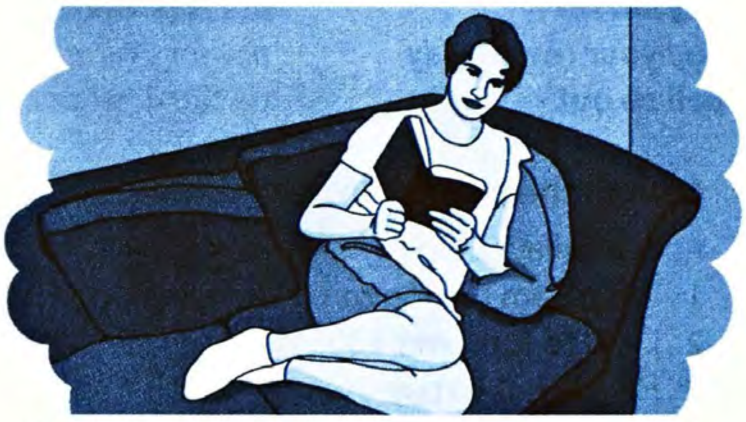

6 She's

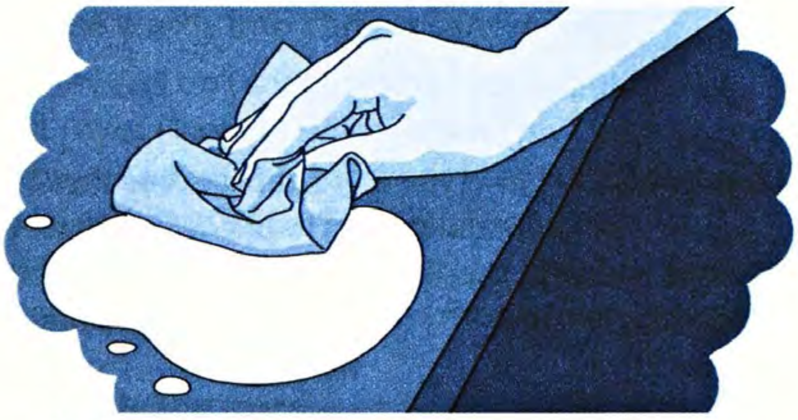

7 I'm

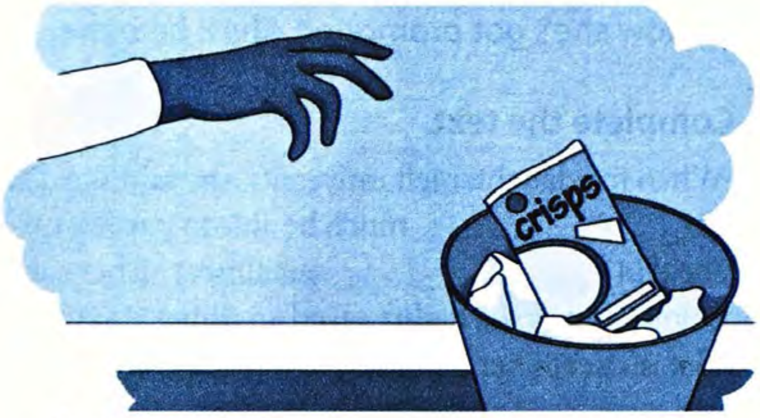

8 I'm

2 Circle the correct definition.

1 If you **prop up** a company, you *help a company in difficulty* | *inherit it*.
2 If you **roll up your sleeves**, you *stop doing sth* | *start a difficult task*.
3 If you **screw sth up**, you *make a mess of it* | *forget how to do it*.
4 If you **curl up** with sth, you become very *angry* | *embarrassed*.
5 If you **stick sth out**, you *continue to do sth difficult or boring* | *you work hard at sth*.
6 If there are a few things to **mop up**, there are a few things to *remember* | *complete*.

11 I can talk about money

A Financial worries

Hi Dad

I spoke to Martin yesterday. He'd be too embarrassed to tell you this, but I think he's **pretty much** living **on the breadline**. Last week he had to **fork out** a lot of money **on** his car, which he badly needs, and next month he**'ll be** even **worse off** when his rent goes up. The thing is, I don't think he's got much to **fall back on**. I said I could **lay my hands on** about £200 to help out, but he'll need more than that to **pay off** his debts. I know he desperately wants to **pay his own way**, but would you be willing to **bail** him **out** just this once, or at least have a word with him - without saying I'd spoken to you? Thanks.

Love Tracey

Glossary

pretty much/well	INF almost.
on the breadline	very poor; with very little money to live on.
fork sth out (**on sth**)	INF spend a lot of money on sth, usually money you don't want to spend. SYN **pay sth out**.
be worse off	be poorer, unhappier, etc. than before. OPP **be better off**.
fall back on sth	have sth to use when in difficulty (in this case money).
lay/get your hands on sth	find or get sth that you want or really need.
pay sth off	finish paying money that is owed for sth.
pay your (**own**) **way**	pay for everything yourself without relying on others.
bail sb out	rescue sb from a difficult situation, usually with money.

1 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

▸ I've always paid my ~~only~~ way. *own*
1 Where am I going to lay my hand on $5,000?
2 I had to fork over £30 just to get into the club.
3 He still has to pay out most of his debts.
4 A lot of families are living on the breadqueue.
5 If she spends her salary, she'll have no money to fill back on.
6 Now she's got promotion, she'll be better on.

2 Complete the text.

When my daughter left university, she said she'd soon be able to pay (1) her debts, and then she'd (2) much be able to pay her own (3) . But things didn't work out like that. After she'd (4) out almost all her salary on rent, travel, and food, she was (5) off than before; and as she hadn't saved anything at university, she had nothing to (6) back on – nothing, that is, except her parents. We were naturally the ones who had to (7) her out.

3 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences. Then decide if you agree with them. Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 You should always your debts as soon as possible.
2 Once you leave home, you should way.
3 If you need to hands on some money fast, you should borrow it from a member of your family. That's what families are for: to out when things are difficult.
4 Governments should give more to people who are on .

B Financial investment

TOP TIPS for investing in the stock market

- Don't invest more than you can afford, or you could **land yourself in** trouble.
- Don't invest **off your own bat** – seek proper financial advice first.
- **Err on the side of caution** if you don't **have** a lot of **money to play with**.
- Don't let all the jargon **put** you **off** – you'll pick it up **as time goes by**.
- Once you've bought stocks, **hold on to** them for a while. Fast trading can be expensive.
- Don't forget to **add on** the fees you will have to pay: this could **come to** 3 or 4 per cent.
- Don't expect your investments to **bear fruit** immediately – you need patience.
- Remember shares go down as well as up, so go into it **with your eyes open**.

Glossary

land sb/yourself in sth	INF get sb/yourself into a difficult situation.
off your own bat	INF If you do sth **off your own bat**, it is your idea and you do it without help from others.
err on the side of caution	be careful and not take many risks.
have money/time, etc. **to play with**	have enough money/time, etc. for doing sth.
as time goes by	as time passes.
hold on to / onto sth	keep sth; not give or sell sth to sb else.
add sth on (**to sth**)	include sth extra. **add-on** N.
come to sth	add up to a total amount (*The bill **came to** £50*).
bear fruit	have a successful result.
with your eyes open	knowing that there could be problems in a situation.

spotlight *put sb off (sth)*

The accident put her off driving. = made her dislike it (as above).
It's too late to put him off. = postpone or cancel the arrangement I made with him.
Don't put me off when I'm working. = disturb or distract me.

4 Put the words into correct sentences.

1 the | err | on | should | side | you | caution | of
2 it | eyes | went | I | with | open | my | into
3 he | an | own | his | account | bat | off | opened
4 could | himself | in | trouble | he | land
5 she | her | to | shares | held | on | oil
6 play | don't | much | with | money | we | to | have

5 Complete the texts.

'The shares were going to cost me just under £800, but once you (1) on the broker's fee at 2 per cent, and the management fee, it (2) to a bit more than £800.'

'My broker told me not to expect shares to bear (3) immediately, but he said they would go up as time (4) by, and that would give me more money to (5) with.'

'I knew the shares were a bit risky and that (6) me off. I'm afraid I always (7) on the side of caution; that's my nature. My cousin is the complete opposite. He invested £5,000 entirely off his own (8) , with no financial advice at all.'

12 I can talk about wealth and poverty

A Wealth

You may think that some people **have more money than sense**, and in my brother's case, you'd be right. He's a city trader **living life in the fast lane**, and he **thinks nothing of** spending £1,000 just on a night out. Michelin-star restaurants **don't come cheap**, and when you **splash out on** expensive wines as well, a meal alone can **cost an arm and a leg** – and that's before he's even **set foot inside** the casino. As far as he's concerned, **money's no object**, and he can lose vast sums in **a matter of seconds**. Would I fancy living **in the lap of luxury** like him? No, not really.

Glossary

have more money than sense	have a lot of money and spend it stupidly.
live life in the fast lane	If sb **lives life in the fast lane**, they live a life full of activity and excitement.
think nothing of (doing) sth	consider an activity to be normal that most people would think was difficult, unusual, etc.
not come cheap	= be expensive.
splash out (on sth)	INF spend an unusually large sum of money on sth.
cost an arm and a leg	INF be very expensive.
set foot in/on/inside sth	enter a place.
money is no object	used to say that sb has a lot of money and can buy what they want.
in the lap of luxury	in the easy and comfortable conditions that result from being wealthy.

spotlight *a matter of ...*

A matter of seconds/minutes/days, etc. is used to emphasize how short a period of time is.

*The books you ordered should arrive in **a matter of days**.*

*It was only **a matter of minutes** before he returned.*

1 True or false? Write T or F.

1 If you *think nothing of doing something*, it means you are not interested in it.
2 If *money is no object*, you are able to spend a lot.
3 If you say '*in a matter of weeks*', you are saying that something will take quite a long time.
4 If you *splash out on something*, you take care of how much you are spending.
5 If you live *in the lap of luxury*, you live in very comfortable conditions.
6 If you *live life in the fast lane*, you are always moving from one place to another.

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 Why did she buy that ugly big house? ~ Because she's got more money than .
2 I'll bet that boat was expensive. ~ Yes, it was. It cost an arm and a .
3 Did you have to wait a long time? ~ No, just a of minutes.
4 Why are you saving up? ~ I'm going to out on a luxury holiday in New York.
5 School books are expensive, aren't they? ~ Yes, they don't cheap.
6 You've been to the Ritz before, haven't you? ~ No, I've never foot in the place.

3 ABOUT YOU Would you enjoy life in the fast lane? Would you like to live in the lap of luxury? Why/why not? When was the last time you splashed out on something? What was it? Write in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B Poverty

I met Don at a centre for homeless people. He**'d been living beyond his means** and found himself **in arrears with** his rent. Then he lost his job and **got caught up in** a downward spiral that led to him becoming homeless. His only real possession was a guitar, with which he managed to earn a bit of money from busking, but he **was living from hand to mouth**. He told me he knew of a room **going cheap** somewhere in Paddington, and if he could just **put aside** a bit of money, he might be able to **put down a deposit**. Sadly though, **the last I heard**, Don had been arrested for stealing. His prospects are not good **to say the least**, but **it's the same old story** for many people like him living on the streets.

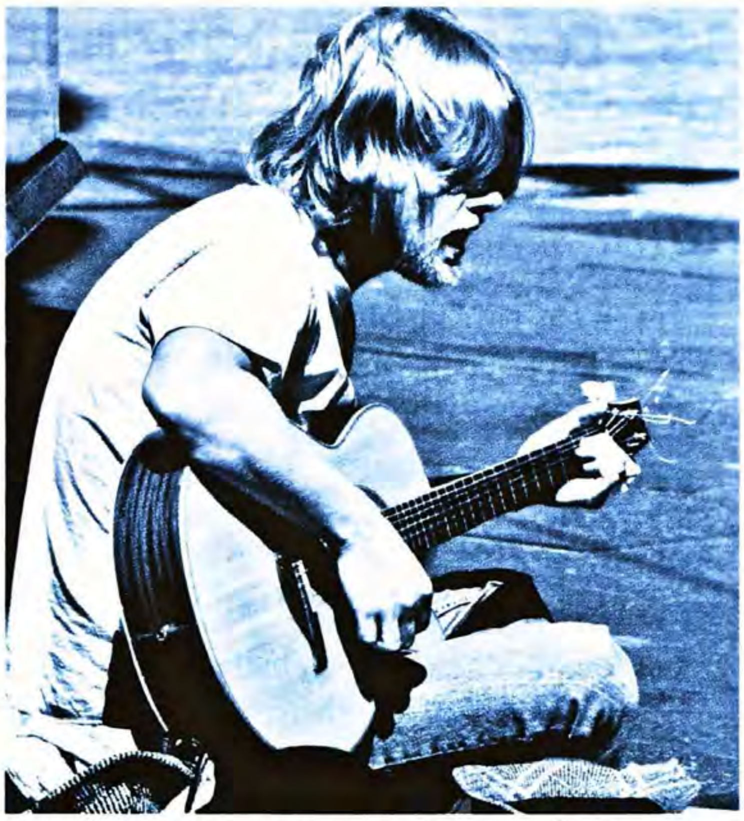

Busking: playing music in the street for money.

Glossary

live beyond your means	spend more money than you earn.
be/get caught up in sth	become involved in sth which may cause problems.
live from hand to mouth	have just enough money or food to stay alive.
going cheap	If sth is **going cheap**, it is available at a lower price than usual.
put sth aside	save or keep sth for future use.
put down a deposit	pay some money to reserve sth, before paying for it in full.
the last I heard	used to give the most recent news you have about sth.
to say the least	used to say you could have described sth in a much stronger and more extreme way.
it's the same old story	used to say that the present bad situation has often happened before.

spotlight *in arrears (with sth)*

If you are **in arrears with** your rent or other payments, you are late paying the money that you owe. This phrase is slightly formal; a more informal way to say it is *I got behind with the rent / my payments.*

4 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

- You should always put some money ‸ in case of emergencies. aside
1 I heard she got with her mortgage payments; she owes over €1000.
2 They've been living from hand mouth for months now.
3 As soon as he gets any money, he wastes it; it's the same story.
4 He's lucky to be alive, say the least.
5 I bought these shoes because they were going.
6 Where's Joe? ~ The last heard, he was in Scotland.
7 He's been living his means.
8 You have to put a deposit if you want to keep the flat.

5 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep the same meaning.

- That's the most recent news I have of him. LAST That's the last I heard of him.
1 He got involved in something illegal. CAUGHT
2 He's late paying his rent. ARREARS
3 I'm saving €100 a month. ASIDE
4 She paid a £25 deposit. PUT
5 This happens over and over again. STORY
6 She's spending more than she earns. MEANS

13 I can talk about health

A A nasty bug

LAURA Steph, are you OK? **You're not your usual self** today.

STEPH No, I'm a bit **off-colour**, actually. I **felt like death warmed up** when I woke up this morning. I had a splitting headache, and I thought I was going to **throw up**. I just **keeled over** and nearly **passed out**!

LAURA Oh, no! Poor you. Do you want something for your headache?

STEPH It's OK; I took some tablets and it's just starting to **wear off**. I really hope I**'m** not **coming down with** flu.

LAURA Well, there's a nasty bug **going round** at the moment - you could have **picked** it **up** anywhere. You'd better **take things easy** for a day or two.

Glossary

you're not your usual/normal self	you're not looking or behaving as you usually do.
off-colour	INF looking or feeling ill. SYN **under the weather** INF.
feel/look like death warmed up	INF feel or look very ill or tired.
throw up	vomit; be sick.
keel over	INF fall over, especially when you feel ill.
pass out	faint; lose consciousness for a short time. SYN **black out**. OPP **come round**.
wear off	(of a pain, feeling, or effect) gradually disappear or stop.
come/go down with sth	get one of the common illnesses (flu, a cold, etc.).
go round	spread from person to person. (A rumour can also **go round**.)
pick sth up	INF catch an infectious illness. (Also **pick up a bug** INF. **bug** = bacterium or virus.)
take things/it easy	relax and avoid working hard or doing too much.

1 Circle the correct answer.

1 If you're **under the weather**, you are *depressed* | *off-colour*.
2 If you think you're going to **throw up**, you should go to *bed* | *the bathroom*.
3 If you **pass out**, you *know* | *don't know* what is happening around you at that moment.
4 If you think you're **coming down with** something, you're starting to feel *tired* | *unwell*.
5 If you **pick up** a virus, you *become ill* | *feel better*.
6 If you **keel over**, you will definitely *fall over* | *black out*.

2 One word is missing in each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

1 I banged my elbow last week, and the pain is only just starting to off now.
2 I had a terrible night, and I feel like death warmed this morning.
3 I think I'm coming with a cold. What shall I take for it?
4 Her face went white as a sheet and she suddenly blacked; it was terrifying.
5 If you're feeling a bit under the weather, you'd better it easy today.
6 He's not his self today. What's the matter with him?

3 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences. Then write your answers in your notebook, or discuss with another student.

1 When did you last feel under the ? What was wrong with you?
2 Have you ever blacked out and then round in front of a lot of people?
3 Is there a bug round where you live at the moment?
4 If you're feeling -colour, do you always take things ?

B Major and minor illness

… After the operation Dad seemed to be **on the mend**, but he suddenly **took a turn for the worse** and started to **go downhill. It was touch-and-go** for a while, but the doctors reassured us that he **would pull through**. He's doing OK now, **touch wood**, …

… I woke up **feeling out of sorts** and my eyes were incredibly itchy. When I looked in the mirror, I saw that they **had swollen up**, and I also noticed **I'd come out in** a rash on my neck. After a while, the swelling **went down**, but the rash **hasn't gone away**. I'd better see the doctor and **get** it **checked out**. **Better safe than sorry**. …

Glossary

on the mend	INF getting better after an illness or injury.
take a turn for the worse/better	suddenly become worse/better.
go downhill	get worse in health, quality, etc.
it is touch-and-go (**whether**)	INF = it's very uncertain whether sth will happen or not.
pull through (**sth**)	get better after a life-threatening illness or operation.
feel/be out of sorts	feel/be ill or bad-tempered.
swell up	(of part of the body) become bigger in size. OPP **go down**.
come out in sth	become covered in spots or a rash.
go away	disappear.
check sth out	find out if sth is safe, correct, or acceptable.

spotlight Sayings

I think my back is OK now – touch wood! Said in order to avoid bad luck; the speaker will often touch something made of wood when they say this.

Let's get some malaria tablets – better safe than sorry. = it is wiser to act safely than to act carelessly and later regret it. Also **… to be on the safe side**.

4 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

1 She's on the mend.
2 He didn't pull through the operation.
3 I've come out in spots.
4 It's touch-and-go at the moment.
5 She's feeling out of sorts.
6 The symptoms have gone away.
7 She's going downhill.
8 Mum's taken a turn for the better.

5 Complete the dialogues.

1 You'd better ask the doctor about that. ~ Yes, you're right. Better safe than .
2 Is the dog any better? ~ No, it downhill very quickly, and I'm afraid it died.
3 Shall I bring some bandages on holiday? ~ Yes, just to be on the safe .
4 Have you got over the operation? ~ Mmm, things seem to be fine now – touch .
5 It was a bee sting, wasn't it? ~ Yes. It started to up immediately.
6 I've got a mark on my skin. ~ Probably nothing, but you'd better get it out.
7 I've still got this cough. ~ Yes, it can take ages for these things to go .
8 I see the swelling on your arm has down now. ~ Yes, it's much better, thanks.
9 I hear Bryn was in a really bad accident. ~ Yes, it was touch-and- for a while.
10 Your mum had a nasty fall, didn't she? ~ Yes, but fortunately she's on the now.

14 I can talk about driving and journeys

A Driving irritations

- You come out of a shop to find that another car **has** double-parked and **blocked** you **in**.
- You're in a steady stream of traffic, but there's always someone trying to **cut in** in front of you.
- Someone **flags** you **down**. You **pull over** to help, but all they want is directions!
- You know that **getting from A to B** is two kilometres **as the crow flies**, but after going round various one-way systems, you end up driving ten.
- A friend asks for a lift into town. You know the traffic **is murder** at this time of the day, and they want you to **drop** them **off** in the most difficult place.
- You have an important appointment and you**'re cutting it fine**, but the person in front of you insists on driving **at a snail's pace**.
- You are **miles from anywhere** (and lost), and there are no signposts giving directions.

Glossary

block sb/sth in	stop sb from moving their car out of a place.
cut in (on sth/sb)	(of a vehicle or driver) move suddenly in front of another vehicle, leaving little space between the two vehicles.
flag sb down	signal to a driver to stop by waving at them.
pull over	move to the side of the road to stop or let sth pass.
get from A to B	travel from one place to another.
as the crow flies	in a straight line.
be murder	INF (of a situation) be difficult and unpleasant.
drop sb off	stop driving so that a passenger can get out of your car.
cut it/things fine	INF leave yourself only a very short amount of time to do sth.
at a snail's pace	very slowly.
miles from anywhere	INF in the countryside, a long way from a town.

1 Complete the text.

It's only two miles from home to my office as the (1) ______ flies, but the traffic in town is always (2) ______ in the mornings, and everything moves at a (3) ______ pace. I was (4) ______ it fine on that morning as I had to (5) ______ a neighbour off at the station before getting to work for an early meeting. In my impatience I (6) ______ in on the person in front of me when I was trying to overtake. Unfortunately, a policeman saw what happened and (7) ______ me down. I (8) ______ over, worrying about what he'd say. Luckily it was just a caution.

2 Replace the words in italics with an idiom or phrasal verb that keeps the same meaning.

1 I want to *travel from one place to another* as quickly as possible.
2 The traffic is *extremely unpleasant* during the rush hour.
3 *In a straight line*, it's about two miles to the motorway from here.
4 Another car *parked too close and prevented me from driving away*.
5 If you want to get there by 7.00, you're *not leaving yourself much time*.
6 The village is *in the countryside and a long way from town*.

3 ABOUT YOU How would you feel, and how would you react, if you were in the situations at the top of the page? Write in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B A metaphorical journey

Some idioms derived from roads and transport describe progress, or the lack of it, and the future.

Duncan feels that if the company can **step up a gear**, then a couple of years **further down the road**, who knows? They could be one of the biggest firms in the south west.

Now the council**'s given** us **the green light** for the shopping and leisure centre, let's hope the new development **will** really **put** Barnwood **on the map.**

It's **the end of the road** for Ken's little corner shop now the supermarket has opened next door. The shop**'s** barely **ticking over**, and at 70, poor Ken**'s running out of steam**.

Colin**'s gone off the rails** recently and I've already given him one warning. I had enough problems with Rob last month, so I don't want to have to **go down that road again** with Colin.

Glossary

step/move up a gear	start working more effectively or faster (also **in top gear** = working very fast and effectively).
(**further**) **down the road**	INF used to talk about the future and what might happen.
give (**sb/sth**) **the green light**	give (sb/sth) permission to start sth. (See spotlight.)
put sth/sb on the map	make sth/sb famous or important.
the end of the road/line	the point at which sth can no longer continue in the same way.
tick over	(usually used in the progressive) (of a business) keep working, without producing or achieving much. (See spotlight.)
run out of steam	lose your energy and enthusiasm. (See spotlight.)
go off the rails	INF start behaving in a wild or unacceptable way.
go down that road	take a particular course of action.

spotlight Literal meanings

When a car **is ticking over**, the engine is running but the car is not moving. The **green light** refers to a traffic light (green = go). Early trains were powered by steam engines; this became a source of several idioms, such as **run out of steam**.

4 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

1 We've been given the green light.
2 The company is barely ticking over.
3 He's run out of steam.
4 It will put us on the map.
5 They've moved up a gear.
6 She's gone off the rails.

5 Answer the questions.

1 What do you have to move up in order to work faster?
2 What light do you need to go forwards?
3 What is a car doing if the engine is running but it's not moving?
4 What have you reached if something can no longer continue?
5 What does a person go off when they start behaving wildly?
6 What do you run out of when you lose your enthusiasm for something?

6 Paraphrase the sentences on the left, starting with the words you are given.

1 They've given us permission to start. They've given us .
2 We won't take that course of action. We won't go .
3 It will make us famous. It will put .
4 We're finished as a company. Our company has reached .
5 We're starting to work faster. We're stepping .
6 We might feel differently in the future. We might feel differently further .

15 I can talk about eating

A What shall we have?

Shall we **grab a bite to eat**? ~ Yeah, I'm starving - **I could eat a horse**!

Would you like some more lasagne? ~ No, thanks. It was delicious but **I'm full up**.

Jo just **picks at** her food. ~ Yeah, she **eats like a bird**. She's on some strange diet.

Gosh, that fish soup smells fabulous. ~ Yeah, it**'s making my mouth water**.

Aren't there any **leftovers**? ~ No, the boys **polished** them **off**.

How did you hear about this restaurant? ~ Just **by word of mouth**.

What a great meal. ~ Yes, it was lovely. Anyway, we'd better be going. I**'ll settle up**.

How was dinner? ~ I left it in the oven and it **was burnt to a crisp**, unfortunately.

Glossary

a bite (**to eat**)	INF a small meal (**grab**/**have a bite** (**to eat**)).
be full (**up**)	have had enough to eat.
pick at sth	eat only small amounts of food because you are not hungry.
make your mouth water	If food **makes your mouth water** it looks or smells so good you want to eat it immediately. ADJ **mouth-watering**.
leftovers	PL N food remaining from a meal after you have eaten (**be left over** (**from sth**)).
polish sth off	INF finish sth, especially food, very quickly.
by word of mouth	through people telling each other and not through newspapers, advertisements, etc.
settle up (**with sb**)	pay what you owe on a bill or an account.
burn sth to a crisp/**cinder**	cook sth for too long or with too much heat, so that it burns.

spotlight Idioms with *horse*

I could eat a horse! = I'm very hungry.
She eats like a horse. = eats a lot. OPP **eat like a bird**.

1 One word is wrong in each sentence. Cross it out and write the correct word.

► The cake was delicious but I'm completely ~~filled~~ up, thanks. full
1 There was some chocolate in the fridge but Sam cleaned it all off.
2 If you manage to catch the waiter's eye, we can set up with him.
3 I'm absolutely starving – I could eat a house!
4 We might try and grab a mouth to eat before the cinema.
5 I can't eat this toast – it's burnt to a chip!
6 Just talking about that dish Mum made is making my taste water.
7 He's got an enormous appetite; he eats like a mouse!
8 I get all my new clients by word or mouth.

2 Complete the dialogues. You may need more than one word.

► Are you very hungry? ~ Yes, I could eat a horse!
1 She hardly eats anything, does she? ~ No, she just her food.
2 Would you like some more pie? ~ No, I really couldn't. I'm .
3 Did you eat everything up? ~ No, look in the fridge. I think there are some .
4 Do you advertise your restaurant? ~ No, all our customers come .
5 Jon's very greedy. ~ Yeah, but his sister's the opposite. She eats .
6 Shall we pay the bill? ~ Yeah, but don't worry. I'll .
7 It's nearly lunchtime. ~ Yeah, let's go and grab .

B Metaphors

	*This new phone's **the best thing since sliced bread**!*	**the best/greatest thing since sliced bread** sth you think is excellent.
	*She thinks the world of him; he**'ll have her eating out of his hand**.*	**have sb eating out of your hand** make sb like you so much they agree to everything you say.
	*If this plan fails, I**'ll have egg on my face**.*	**have egg on your face** be embarrassed because sth you tried to do went wrong.
	*My last job was hard enough but this one is awful – it's **out of the frying pan, into the fire**!*	**out of the frying pan,** (**and**) **into the fire** used to say that sb who was in a bad situation is now in an even worse situation.
	*That boy's a real **couch potato**!*	**couch potato** INF a person who spends too much time watching TV.
	*He'll never cope in that job. He**'s bitten off more than he can chew**.*	**bite off more than you can chew** try to do too much or do sth that is too difficult.
	*She tells lies and then acts as if **butter wouldn't melt in her mouth**.*	**butter wouldn't melt** (**in sb's mouth**) used to say that sb looks innocent, kind, etc. but really they are not.
	*He's one of these businessmen who**'s got a finger in every pie**.*	**have a finger in every pie** INF be involved and influential in a lot of different activities.
	*I shouldn't have left her, but it's no use **crying over spilt milk**.*	**cry over spilt milk** waste time worrying about sth that has already happened and that cannot be changed.
	*He's 65 but he's still **full of beans**.*	**full of beans** having a lot of energy.

3 Match the idioms with the topics in the box.

energy TV having influence regret ✓ looking foolish
events getting worse seeming innocent being overambitious

► cry over spilt milk regret
1 have egg on your face
2 butter wouldn't melt
3 a couch potato
4 have a finger in every pie
5 bite off more than you can chew
6 full of beans
7 out of the frying pan, into the fire

4 Complete the sentences with an appropriate idiom from the table above.

► He can lie but look completely sweet and innocent. Butter wouldn't melt (in his mouth).
1 It's a wonderful invention; in fact, it's .
2 She's taken on too much work; in fact, she's .
3 I know she'll do whatever he wants; he's got her .
4 There's nothing you can do to put it right, so it's no use .
5 If the new scheme doesn't work, the politicians will have .
6 He's in front of the TV all day long; he's just .
7 I thought things were bad, but then this happened! Out .
8 She recovered quickly from the operation and now she's .

16 I can talk about study

DEZI I wasn't very good at English when I started, but **it wasn't for want of trying**. I worked really hard **night after night**, but I **couldn't make head or tail of** the grammar, and it really **held me back**. Then one day things just seemed to make sense, and I started **showing signs of** improvement. My teacher says it's all part of the learning process. I hope she's right.

MATTEI For a long time I did **next to nothing**, until my teacher told me one day that if I didn't **pull my socks up**, I'd fail my English exams and then **I'd have nothing to show for** three or four years' studying. So, I decided to **turn over a new leaf**. I really began to **apply myself**, and I'm pleased to say I've just passed my university exams **with flying colours**.

ORLA One of my problems is that I make silly mistakes in my writing, and I only just **scraped through** my last exam. My teacher**'s** always **telling me off** for this, and says I should check my work carefully **as a matter of routine**. She's right, because if I don't **cut out** the errors, **I'll be marked down** in the next exam.

URSULA I went to the States three summers **running**, and that helped me a lot. My English **came on in leaps and bounds** as a result.

Glossary

it is not for want/lack of trying	used to say that sb is trying hard even though they are not successful.
night after night	every night for a period of time.
hold sb back	stop sb being as successful as they should be.
show signs of sth	show that sth seems to be happening, e.g. ***show signs of*** *improvement/ recovery*, etc.
next to nothing	almost nothing.
pull your socks up	INF used to tell sb that they are not doing well and must work harder.
have nothing / something / little / a lot to show for sth	have achieved nothing / something / little / a lot as a result of sth that you have done.
turn over a new leaf	change your life by stopping a bad habit or becoming a better person.
apply yourself	work hard on sth; give your full attention to something.
with flying colours	very well; with a very high mark/grade.
scrape through sth	succeed in doing sth with difficulty, especially passing an exam.
tell sb off	INF talk angrily to sb for doing sth wrong.
as a matter of routine/course	as a habit; as the usual way of doing sth.
cut sth out	stop doing sth, especially sth wrong.
mark sb down	reduce the mark/grade given to sb in an exam.
two weeks / three years / four times etc. **running**	two weeks / three years / four times etc., one after another.
come on	improve.
in/by leaps and bounds	very quickly; in large amounts.

spotlight Not understanding

If you **can't make head or tail of sth** INF, you are completely confused by it. You can also say that something **goes over your head** if you don't understand it.

1 Is the speaker pleased or unhappy with these situations? Write P or U.

1 The teacher marked me down.
2 I'll have to pull my socks up.
3 My English is coming on.
4 I've cut out the errors.
5 My pronunciation is holding me back.
6 I passed with flying colours.
7 The grammar goes over my head.
8 My son has turned over a new leaf.

2 Complete the dialogues. Then circle the whole idiom or phrasal verb.

► Was the dictionary expensive? ~ No, it was second hand, so it cost next to nothing .
1 Did she get through the exam? ~ Yes, she passed with flying .
2 Ben's not doing well at school, is he? ~ No, but it's not for want .
3 Was the teacher annoyed with you? ~ Yes, she told .
4 Did you understand the lecture? ~ No, I'm afraid it went over .
5 He's got to work harder, hasn't he? ~ Yes, he needs to himself.
6 Is the writing preventing him from getting better? ~ Yes, it's definitely holding .
7 Are the boys getting better? ~ Yes, they're showing improvement .
8 Is Mariko actually doing some work now? ~Yes, she turned over a .
9 How did you do in the exam? ~ Badly. I think they down for my spelling.
10 Can you understand this article? ~ No, I can't make head .
11 Did you check your spelling? ~ Yes, I use the spelling checker on the computer as a matter .
12 Is Gary working hard enough? ~ No, he'll have to pull his .

3 Replace the words in italics with an idiom or phrasal verb that keeps a similar meaning.

► I was *given a lower grade* in the exam for lack of clarity. marked down
1 His English is *getting better.*
2 I can't *understand this at all.*
3 She worked *every night for a long period of time.*
4 This dictionary cost me *hardly anything*.
5 I *only just passed* my exams.
6 His lack of qualifications is *stopping him from being more successful*.
7 I need to *stop making* these silly mistakes if I want to improve.
8 My brother went to Japan three years *ago, and again two years ago, and again last year*.
9 I could do well, but I need to *work harder*.
10 She's worked hard at her tennis and she's progressing *very quickly*.

4 Complete the sentences.

1 Has a teacher ever you off in class? If so, what for?
2 Has a teacher ever told you that you need to pull your up? If so, why?
3 Have you passed any exams with colours? If so, which ones?
4 Do you feel your English:
  a) is coming in leaps and ?
  b) is showing of getting worse?
5 When you're studying, are there certain things you always do as a of routine?
6 Do you feel you have a lot to for the years you've been learning English?

5 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to Exercise 4 in your notebook, or ask another student.

17 I can talk about work

A How to do well at work

Tips to help you get on at work

- ☐ First, you need to **get your foot in the door**.
- ☐ Learn to **take things in your stride** whatever happens.
- ☐ Don't **pin your hopes on** others. If necessary, have the courage to **go it alone**.
- ☐ Don't **put all your eggs in one basket** – try to **keep your options open**.
- ☐ **Keep in with** your colleagues – you may need their support.
- ☐ **Keep your ear to the ground** – you hear important things **on the grapevine**.
- ☐ If you can **make a name for yourself**, things will get easier.
- ☐ Always **keep your feet on the ground**.

Glossary

get your/a foot in the door	get your first opportunity to work for an organization or business, which could later bring you success.
take sth/things in your stride	accept and deal with sth difficult without letting it worry you.
pin (all) your hopes on sb/sth	hope that sb will help you or that sth will happen because all your plans depend on this.
go it alone	do sth without help from anyone.
put all your eggs in one basket	rely on only one thing for success, having no other possibilities if sth goes wrong. OPP **keep your options open**.
keep in with sb	INF stay friends with sb because you think you will benefit from it.
keep your ear to the ground	make sure you find out about recent developments in a particular situation.
on the grapevine	by talking in an informal way to other people.
make a name for yourself	become well known and respected by many people.
keep your feet on the ground	have a sensible and realistic attitude.

1 Cover the glossary. Then form complete idioms from the key words.

▸ pin | hopes pin your hopes on sb/sth
1 take | stride
2 get | foot | door
3 keep | ear | ground
4 put | eggs | basket
5 keep | feet | ground
6 make | name

2 Complete the text.

Sandra got her (1) in the door when she was very young, and once she started at Berwick's, she took everything in her (2) and quickly made a (3) for herself. She was offered jobs in other cities, but wanted to keep her (4) open by staying in London where she could keep her ear to the (5) and wait for something really exciting to come up. She was (6) her hopes on getting a top job with C&M, and when she heard on the (7) that they wanted someone to run the Singapore office, she applied for it and got it. In a couple more years, she'll have enough experience to go it (8) if she wants to, but I know she has continued to (9) in with her old colleagues at Berwick's, so who knows where she'll end up.

3 ABOUT YOU Which is the best single piece of advice in the text at the top? Do you disagree with any of it? Write your answers or talk to another student.

B The production line

I've been at Benhams **close on** twenty years. People now just think of me as **part of the furniture**. I **got the push** from my first job in a solicitor's office – **my face didn't fit**. Then I came here, and was lucky to meet Cynthia, who **took** me **under her wing** and showed me **the tricks of the trade** – things I now **pass on** to the younger girls. Some would say it's a **dead-end job**, and it's true that it's not a career, but standing at a machine eight hours a day still **takes some doing**. The bosses don't **throw their weight around** with me either; they know I always do a good day's work, and that's enough for me.

Glossary

close on	(used with time, age, distance, etc.) almost; very nearly *(He's **close on** 60).*
part of the furniture	A person who is **part of the furniture** is so familiar to you that you no longer notice them.
sb's face doesn't fit	used to say that sb won't get or keep a job because they are not the kind of person that the employer wants.
take sb under your wing	look after sb who has less experience than you.
the tricks of the trade	the clever ways of doing things in a particular job.
pass sth on (**to sb**)	give sth to sb else (in this case, knowledge of the job), especially after receiving it yourself.
dead-end job	a boring job with no hope of promotion.
take some doing	INF be difficult to do, or involve a lot of effort or time.
throw your weight around/about	INF tell people what to do in a bossy way.

spotlight Being dismissed

There are several informal idioms that mean to be dismissed from a job.
I got the push/boot/elbow. OR *They gave me the push/boot/elbow.*

4 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

1 You need someone to show you the tricks of the business.
2 I've been there all my life, so I'm some of the furniture.
3 It's a hard job and it'll make some doing.
4 The boss tells me what to do, and I pass it through to the others.
5 It was lucky for me that Mary took me under her arm and helped me.
6 Simone has worked here close by ten years.
7 He was lazy, so he got the pull.
8 He's very bossy and likes to throw his size about.

5 Complete the dialogues with one or two words.

1 It's a tough job. ~ Yes, it'll take .
2 They didn't like you, then. ~ No, my face didn't .
3 He uses his position in an aggressive way. ~ Yes, he likes to throw his .
4 There are no real prospects for Jun at the office. ~ No, it's a dead .
5 They haven't sacked you, have they? ~ Yes, I got the .
6 I'm finding it difficult. ~ Don't worry. You'll soon learn of the trade.
7 Does Maurice always help newcomers? ~ Yes, he takes them under .
8 Roy's been there since the company started. ~ Yeah, he's part of the .

18 I can talk about business 1

A A company in trouble

Government refuses to **shore up** ailing van company LEV

HOPES RISE OF A **MANAGEMENT BUYOUT** OF LEV

MANAGEMENT BUYOUT **FALLS THROUGH**

Buyer for stricken LEV company emerges **at the eleventh hour**

FUTURE OF LEV SECURED, **THANKS TO** WESTRUN AND £5M GOVERNMENT **BAILOUT**

FUTURE OF LEV **HANGS IN THE BALANCE** ONCE AGAIN

LEV takeover **on the verge of** collapse

Westrun **pulls out of** proposed takeover of LEV

Unions warn government not to **stand aside** and watch 850 jobs **go to the wall**

Glossary

shore sth up	help to support sth that is weak or going to collapse. SYN **prop sth up**.
management buyout	a situation in which the managers of a company gain control by buying most of its shares. **buy sb out** V.
fall through	If a deal or plan **falls through**, it does not happen.
at the eleventh hour	at the last possible moment.
thanks to sb/sth	used to say that sth has happened because of sb/sth.
bailout	an act of giving money to a business, economy, etc. to save it from collapse. **bail sb out** V.
hang in the balance	If the future of sth **hangs in the balance**, it is uncertain.
on the verge of (doing) sth	very near to the moment when sth happens or sb does sth.
pull out (of sth)	withdraw from an arrangement; stop being involved in sth. **pull-out** N.
stand aside	not get involved in sth.
go to the wall	INF (of an organization) fail because of lack of money.

1 Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of the word in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.

1 The deal isn't going to happen now. FALL
2 We survived because of the government. THANKS
3 Michael White is about to resign. VERGE
4 There are fears that the company could fail. WALL
5 A management buyout emerged at the last possible moment. HOUR
6 Their future looks uncertain. HANGS
7 The government will rescue them financially. BAIL
8 The company had withdrawn from the deal. PULL

2 Complete the text.

The proposed management (1) .... of Wilson Dowling was (2) .... in the balance last night, as it emerged that the government was threatening to (3) .... of the deal altogether. Originally the government had agreed to support the management team with a £20m rescue package, and promised that it would not (4) .... aside and let the 200-year-old company (5) .... to the wall. However, last night that deal was on the (6) .... of falling (7) .... It seems the transport minister is now concerned that the £20m (8) .... will not be sufficient, and the government might have to (9) .... up the company with a much larger rescue package.

19 I can talk about business 2

A A success story

When I started selling my cheese, I thought I was being paid **the going rate**, but I soon realized that supermarkets **were playing** one supplier **off against** another to get the lowest price. So, I decided to **cut out the middleman** and sell direct to the public. As it happens, I **was in the right place at the right time** because local street markets were gaining in popularity, and my decision soon **paid off** – the business was **a roaring success**. **In a short space of time** I trebled my income, but I made sure I didn't **rest on my laurels**. I **ploughed** the profits **back into** the company and expanded, and I'm proud to say that five years on, the company **is** still **going strong**.

Glossary

the going rate (**for sth**)	the usual amount paid for goods and services.
play sb off against sb	make two people or groups compete with each other in order to give yourself an advantage.
cut out the middleman	sell your produce directly to the public instead of selling it to a retailer (the **middleman**), who then sells it to the public.
be in the right place at the right time	be somewhere at a time when you can take advantage of an opportunity.
pay off	INF (of a plan or action) be successful and bring good results.
a roaring success	INF a great success.
in/within a short space of time	before much time has passed.
rest on your laurels	be so satisfied with your achievements that you stop trying to achieve more. (👁 See page 162.)
plough sth back (**in/into sth**)	put money made as a profit back into a business in order to improve it.
be going strong	INF be doing well and being successful.

1 Tick the correct sentences. Cross out the words which are not necessary in the incorrect sentences.

1 We were profitable within a short space of the time.
2 Profits were down so we decided to cut out of the middleman.
3 They tried to play us off against one another.
4 It's important you don't rest up on your laurels.
5 We were fortunate to be in the right place at the right time.
6 The company has been going on strong for years.
7 We made healthy profits last year so we ploughed them all back into the company.
8 She hasn't been getting the going pay rate for her work.

2 Complete the idiom or phrasal verb in each sentence.

1 If we sell direct to the public, we can cut out the .
2 Sometimes you just need to be in the right place .
3 The company started doing well within a short .
4 We've been very profitable, but we mustn't rest .
5 The business has been a roaring .
6 I don't want to be overpaid, but I expect to be paid the going .
7 Changing the marketing policy was tough at first, but eventually it paid .
8 The company has been very successful, and after 20 years it's still going .

B Reasons for failure

In retrospect, things started to go wrong even when we were doing quite well.

- You need to **keep one step ahead of** your competitors; we didn't do that.
- We had the opportunity to expand, but we were complacent and **missed the boat**.
- We **deluded ourselves into** thinking we would never go bankrupt.
- Overseas producers started **flooding the market** with cheap goods, and we couldn't compete.
- When things got difficult we tried **cutting corners**; it proved a **false economy**.
- When we realized we **were in deep water**, it took us ages to **cut our losses** and **sell up**.
- Looking back, I think our staff structure was **top-heavy**.

Glossary

in retrospect	when thinking about a past event or situation from the perspective of the present.
keep/stay one step/jump ahead of sb	keep an advantage over sb, especially your competitors.
miss the boat	miss an opportunity to do sth.
delude yourself (**into doing sth**)	choose to believe sth that is not true.
flood the market	produce sth in such large quantities that competing products suffer.
cut corners	DISAPPROVING do sth in the easiest, cheapest, or quickest way in order to save time or money.
false economy	an action that is intended to save money but which actually costs you more.
be in / get (**sb**) **into deep water**	be in / get (sb) into a serious or difficult situation.
cut your losses	stop doing sth that you can see is going to be unsuccessful before the situation gets worse.
sell up	sell most of what you own, especially your house or business.
top-heavy	having too many people in senior positions and not enough workers.

3 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 It was a great opportunity but I'm afraid we missed the *train* | *boat*.
2 *In* | *By* retrospect, it was not the right decision.
3 We've always tried to keep one *step* | *jump* ahead of our competitors.
4 I'm afraid the company was *top-heavy* | *too heavy*.
5 Selling the other shop was a *false* | *wrong* economy.
6 We could be in deep *waters* | *water* if we don't increase our sales.
7 It's a big mistake to cut *a corner* | *corners*.
8 In the end we decided to cut our losses and *sell up* | *sell out*.

4 Answer the questions.

1 If you have missed the boat, what have you missed exactly?
2 Why would someone want to cut their losses?
3 If you use the phrase 'in retrospect', what are you talking about?
4 How would you probably feel if your main competitor flooded the market?
5 If you were in deep water, would you want to get out of it?
6 What are two obvious ways to cut corners if you run a café?

B Companies fighting back

Companies profiting from recession

City analysts **were caught on the hop** yesterday when the Big Deal DIY chain announced that profits were up by 5 per cent. It is thought that DIY **is making a comeback** during the recession as people **do up** their own homes rather than **bringing in** the professionals.

Also doing rather well is the bicycle manufacturer Raleigh. Bicycle sales **had fallen off** in recent decades, and after **being in the doldrums** for a number of years, Raleigh had to **slim down** considerably. However, they too **are bucking the trend** as more people give up their cars and opt for bicycles instead. The company is now hoping to **branch out** in an attempt to get new customers, as well as **win back** some old customers.

Glossary

catch sb on the hop	INF surprise sb by doing sth they are not expecting.
make a comeback	If sth **makes a comeback**, it becomes popular and successful again. **come back** v (e.g. ***come back*** *into fashion*).
do sth up	repair and decorate a room or building.
bring sb in	ask sb to do a particular job or be involved in sth.
fall off	decrease in quantity or quality.
be in the doldrums	(of a business) not be growing or doing well. (👁 See page 162.)
buck the trend	succeed in doing sth where most others are failing.
branch out (into sth)	start to do a new activity, especially in business.
win sb/sth back	get or have again sb/sth that you had before.

spotlight Food and dieting metaphors

Verbs related to food and dieting are used metaphorically in business.
The firm had to slim down. = cut the number of jobs and become smaller.
Rising oil costs are eating into *our profit.* = using up a part of our profit.

3 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

1 We're winning back customers.
2 They've made a comeback.
3 It's eating into our profit.
4 We're branching out.
5 We'll have to slim down.
6 They're in the doldrums.
7 We've bucked the trend.
8 Quality has fallen off.

4 Complete the dialogues using one of these phrases in each response.

slim down   comeback   catch somebody on the hop   buck the trend
bring sb in   do sth up   in the doldrums   branch out ✓   fall off

▸ Will he continue just doing what he's good at? ~ No, he's decided to branch out.
1 Did you solve the computer problem yourselves? ~ No,
2 Were you expecting the sudden fall in sales? ~ No,
3 Has the quality stayed the same? ~ No,
4 Is the company doing any better? ~ No,
5 Has the company kept all its workers? ~ No,
6 Have they had the same poor results as others? ~ No,
7 Did you get professional decorators? ~ No,
8 Long hair is out of fashion, isn't it? ~ No,

22 I can describe a date

Blind Date

A friend of both Luisa and David decided that they might like each other, so arranged for the two of them to meet and have dinner at a restaurant.

Luisa

Preparation: The dress **I'd had in mind** was perfect, but at the last minute I noticed it had a mark on it so I **rushed around** trying to find something else, getting **all hot and bothered** in the process. I was pretty **wound up** by the time the taxi **called for** me!

First impressions: David appeared to have **bags of** confidence and was good fun. And really handsome – **I couldn't take my eyes off him**.

What was the conversation like? Great. The waitress came several times to take our order – we were **chatting away** quite happily and it was a long time before we **got round to** looking at the menu.

Will you meet again? We swapped phone numbers. **As far as I could tell**, he seemed keen!

David

Preparation: This being a **blind date**, I wanted to **make an impression**, but I decided to keep it casual.

First impressions: When Luisa arrived at the restaurant she **was a bundle of nerves**, and she seemed unhappy about something. But she soon **snapped out of it** and started to enjoy herself.

What was the conversation like? Fine. Luisa was shy at first but gradually **came out of her shell** and we talked about our friends, travelling, **and the like**. In fact, the time just **flew by**.

Will you meet again? I've got her number, but I don't think romance **is on the cards**.

Glossary

have sth/sb in mind	know the type of thing/person you want for a particular purpose.
rush around/round	try to do sth or a lot of things in a short space of time.
(**all**) **hot and bothered**	INF feeling anxious and under pressure.
wound up	INF anxious and worried. If you **wind sb up** INF, you deliberately do or say sth to make them angry or upset.
call for sb	meet sb at their home in order to take them somewhere. If you **pick sb up**, you go in your car to collect sb from their home or another place.
bags of sth	INF a lot of sth.
chat away	talk in a relaxed way.
get round to (**doing**) **sth**	find the time to do sth.
as far as I can/could tell	used to say that you think sth may be true but there may be facts you do not know.
blind date	a meeting between two people who have never met to spend some time together and see if a romantic relationship develops.
make an impression (**on sb**)	make sb notice and admire you.
be a bundle/bag of nerves	be very nervous.
snap out of it	INF stop being unhappy, upset, etc.
come out of your shell	be less shy and more confident with people.
and the like	and similar things.
fly by	If a period of time **flies by**, it passes very quickly. SYN **flash by**.
be on the cards	INF be likely to happen.

spotlight *eye*

I couldn't take my eyes off him. = I found him so attractive that I watched him all the time.
I couldn't look her in the eye. = I couldn't look at her directly because I was embarrassed or ashamed.

1 Are these good signs or bad signs on a date? Write G or B.

1 They chatted away.
2 She wound him up.
3 Time just flew by.
4 He couldn't take his eyes off her.
5 She didn't come out of her shell.
6 They had bags of fun.
7 The taxi picked her up late.
8 She left feeling hot and bothered.
9 She made an impression on him.
10 Another date isn't on the cards.

2 Change one wrong letter in each sentence.

▸ I've been ~~g~~ushing around all day getting ready for my date tonight. rushing
1 How did your bland date go last night?
2 She seemed to enjoy herself, as far as I could sell.
3 It was fantastic; the time just blew by. It was midnight before we knew it.
4 What exactly do you have in mine for us to do this afternoon?
5 OK, I'll fall for you at about 5.00, so please be ready to leave.
6 I know you're upset, but it's time you slapped out of it and got on with your life.

3 Complete the dialogues. You may need more than one word.

▸ Did Isobel seem happy? ~ Yes, as far as I could tell .
1 Did Anna realize you had lied to her? ~ Yes, I couldn't look her .
2 Did the date go well? ~ Yeah, but I was a of nerves before meeting him.
3 Did you manage to write that email to Sam? ~ No, I just didn't get it.
4 Could you give me a lift to the airport? ~ OK, I'll in half an hour.
5 She was gorgeous, wasn't she? ~ Yes, Freddy couldn't take her.
6 Was he easy to talk to? ~ Oh, yeah, we quite happily for hours.

4 Cross out one unnecessary word in each line.

… I went on a blind ▸ ~~first~~ date last night with a guy called Eric. I don't know
what I had in the mind, but it certainly wasn't Eric. I was a bit shocked,
because when he picked me all up at the station, he looked a complete mess, and
as far as I could tell him, he was still wearing the clothes he'd been gardening
in and hadn't got him round to making himself look presentable. But I can
say that he had big bags of personality – a bit too much, in fact, because
by the time we got to the restaurant, he'd managed to get wind me up with his
extreme views on women's rights, equality, and the same like. I can't say that
the evening flew well by: time seemed to drag interminably, particularly as Eric
chatted himself away while I sat there like a fool. He took me to the station and said he'd
like to meet again. At that point I couldn't look at him in the eye because for me
another date was not on the playing cards. What a relief to get home!

5 Complete the sentences using words from the box. There are more words than you need.

runs dates do call make wound in pick bundle come

1 Do people often go on blind in your country?
2 If you went on one, would you be relaxed, a bit up or a of nerves?
3 If you go on a first date, what's the best way to an impression on the person?
4 Are you shy, and if so, what would make you out of your shell?
5 Should the man for the woman at her home, or just meet her somewhere?

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

23 I can describe a family wedding

weddingblog.com

Marisa's wedding POSTED BY Shania on May 18th

When my sister's boyfriend, Glyn, finally **popped the question** – and she said 'yes' – the family decided that Marisa's **big day** would be one she would never forget. Dad said, '**the sky's the limit** – you're to have **nothing but** the best.' Marisa just wanted to get a wedding dress **off the peg**, but Mum **wouldn't hear of** it, and she ended up in a handmade gown which nearly **broke the bank**.

The ceremony was beautiful and **went off without a hitch**. Then, at the reception, it was Dad's big moment – he got up to **propose a toast to** Marisa and Glyn, and you could see he **was speaking from the heart**. Unfortunately, though, his emotions **got the better of him** and we couldn't **shut** him **up**. He **went on and on about** his beautiful little girl, then talked about Glyn **in glowing terms**, and ended up by saying how having grandchildren would be **the icing on the cake**! Poor Marisa had her head in her hands at this point. He finally had to stop when Mum **broke down in tears**, which was lucky because it was getting rather embarrassing! But actually, I think that speech really **made** Marisa's **day**.

Glossary

pop the question	INF ask sb to marry you.
the sky's the limit	INF there is no limit to what sb can spend, achieve, etc.
nothing but	only.
off the peg	(of clothes) made to a standard size and not made especially for you. (Sth that is **off the shelf**, e.g. computer software, can be bought immediately and is not designed or made especially for you.)
won't/wouldn't hear of sth	refuse to accept a suggestion or an offer.
break the bank	INF If sth **breaks the bank**, it costs a great deal of money.
go off	(of an organized event) happen in a particular way. (**It went off without a hitch** = it happened and nothing went wrong.)
propose a toast (**to sb**)	ask people to wish sb happiness and success by raising their glasses and drinking. (You **raise your glass to sb.**)
(**speak**) **from the heart**	(speak) in a very sincere way (also **from the bottom of your heart**).
get the better of sb	If your emotions **get the better of you**, they are too strong to control, and you behave in a way that you do not want to.
shut sb up	IMPOLITE make sb stop talking or making a noise.
go on and on (**about sth**)	talk about sth for a long time in a boring way.
in glowing terms	in a very positive way. (If you speak **in glowing terms** about sb, you **are singing their praises.**)
the icing on the cake	an additional thing that makes a good situation even better.
break down (**in tears**)	lose control of your emotions and start crying.

spotlight Idioms with *day*

It's Laura's big day tomorrow. = a very important day (often a wedding day).
Winning the cup made my day. = made me feel very happy.
It's not every day you go to a wedding. = it's a very unusual or special event.

1 Match the sentence halves.

1 Then he proposed a toast
2 It's not every day
3 He went on and on about the food
4 He sang her praises
5 The fact that the sun shone all day
6 He bought his suit off the peg
7 His emotions got the better of him
8 When he popped the question

a was just the icing on the cake.
b and spoke about her in glowing terms.
c and he broke down in tears.
d you go to a wedding with 500 guests.
e until eventually we shut him up.
f she was thrilled and said 'yes'.
g and asked us to raise our glasses.
h so it wouldn't break the bank.

2 Circle the correct word or phrase.

1 She's feeling very nervous because it's her *large* | *big* day tomorrow.
2 I bought some new software for my computer off the *shelf* | *peg*.
3 If you let your feelings get the *best* | *better* of you, you won't be able to finish the speech.
4 We had nothing *only* | *but* praise for the way the reception was organized.
5 We can spend whatever we feel like – the sky's the *top* | *limit*!
6 When Chris *popped* | *popped out* the question, did he give her the ring?
7 They had a rehearsal the day before the wedding, and it went *out* | *off* without a hitch.
8 I offered to help with the decorations, but they *wouldn't* | *didn't* hear of it.

3 Put the words in order and add one more word.

► for | nothing | we | best | kids | want | the | our We want nothing but the best for our kids.
1 heart | she | spoke | the | really
2 day | good | the | really | my | weather
3 shelf | medicine | get | the | you | can | this
4 room | on | tidying | on | mum | and | about | my
5 icing | on | winning | the | was | the
6 lottery | win | day | it's | every | you | the
7 happy | raise | please | glasses | the | to | couple
8 hitch | off | the | a | ceremony | without

4 Complete the sentences using a word from the left and a word from the right. You may need to change the form of the words.

bottom sky glow big
break hear break shut

bank heart up of
tears limit day terms

1 I didn't expect him to get upset, but he just down in .
2 In the speech, she talked about her daughter in . It was lovely.
3 I tried to them , but they wouldn't stop shouting; I was really annoyed.
4 It's a very nice restaurant, but it won't the . The set menu's only €12.
5 I offered to help tidy up after the party, but they wouldn't it.
6 It rained a lot, but nothing was going to spoil Maxine and Gervase's .
7 I would like to thank you from the of my for all your kindness.
8 After his success at the national games, the is the for this young athlete.

5 ABOUT YOU Think about a member of your family whose wedding you attended. Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 Whose big day was it?
2 Do you know who popped the question, and where?
3 Did anyone propose a toast? If so, who, and to whom?
4 Did they sing someone's praises? If so, whose?
5 Did anyone break down in tears? If so, who and why?
6 Did the wedding go off without a hitch? If not, what happened?

24 I can talk about reunions

A School reunions

GEMMA ▸ It's my school reunion, twenty years on … should I go or not?

LOFTY ▸ **There's nothing worse than** a school reunion for reminding you of bad childhood memories. You're **under no obligation to** go, so if you're in any doubt, don't go. Personally, **I wouldn't be seen dead** at one; it would just **bring out the worst in** me.

CASS ▸ If you're nervous about **taking the plunge** and walking in on your own, why not **get in touch with** a few old friends and go together? Then **there's safety in numbers**.

LINA ▸ I went to one last year and **had a whale of a time!** It was a great chance for us all to **catch up. Go for it!** You'**ve got nothing to lose**.

Glossary

there's nothing worse / better / more exciting, etc. **than …**	used to emphasize how bad/good/exciting something is.
under an obligation to do sth	forced to do sth for legal or moral reasons. OPP **under no obligation to do sth**.
I wouldn't be seen dead …	INF used to say you wouldn't do a particular thing or go to a particular place because it would be embarrassing.
bring out the best/worst in sb	make sb show their best/worst qualities.
take the plunge	INF decide to do sth difficult or important after thinking about it for a long time.
get in touch (**with sb**)	speak or write to sb, especially after a long time.
there's safety in numbers	SAYING being in a group makes you safer or makes you feel more confident.
have a whale of a time	INF have a lot of fun.
catch up (**with sb or with/on sth**)	find out about things that have happened.
go for it!	EXCLAMATION used to encourage sb to do sth or try very hard.
have (**got**) **nothing to lose**	If you **have nothing to lose**, you should try something because even if it fails, it will not make your situation any worse.

1 Complete the sentences.

1 I haven't spoken to Damien for years; I must try and ______ in touch with him.
2 Always walk home with someone else: remember that there's ______ in numbers.
3 It's a dreadful club – I wouldn't be seen ______ in there.
4 In the end I ______ the plunge and asked her out; fortunately she said 'yes'.
5 After weeks of worrying, I did go to the reunion and had a whale of a ______.
6 There's nothing ______ than bumping into your old enemy at a school reunion.

2 One word is missing in each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

Ten years after I left school, Marco Tomasi got in with me and said he touch
wanted to meet and up on what I'd been doing. I used to go out with 1
him, and something about him always out the worst in me, so I wasn't 2
keen. I knew that I was under obligation to see him again, especially after 3
the way he'd behaved. But in the end I decided that I had to lose, and my 4
sisters said, 'Look – what's the worst that can happen? Go it!' Thinking that 5
is safety in numbers, I invited them along, but they refused. In the end, 6
I met him for dinner one evening and to my surprise, we had a of a time. 7

B Overheard at the reunion

Look who's here! It's Gemma – wow, she **looks a million dollars**!

Look, I know we**'re** all **pushing 40**, but that outfit Marilee's wearing **puts years on** her.

Don't look now, but that man over there is an ex-boyfriend of mine. I **was glad to see the back of** him, I can tell you.

Poor Clara – she used to be a model and now she**'s all skin and bones**. I guess time just **catches up with** you!

Look at Marco – he obviously **keeps in trim**. I wonder if he's married? Oh, he seems to be with Gemma. Maybe they're more than **just good friends**!

Glossary

look who's here!	used when sb arrives and you are surprised.
look a million dollars	INF (of a person) look very good or very attractive.
be pushing 40, **50**, etc.	INF be nearly 40, 50, etc.
put years on sb	INF used to say that sth makes sb seem much older than they are. OPP **take years off sb**.
don't look now	used to tell sb to look at sb else, but not immediately because you do not want that person to know you are discussing them.
be glad to see the back of sb	INF be happy when sb leaves because you do not like them.
be (**all**) **skin and bones**	INF be very thin in an unattractive or unhealthy way.
catch up with sb	begin to have an effect on sb. (Compare with page 64.)
keep in trim	stay in healthy physical condition. OPP **be out of shape**.
just (**good**) **friends**	used to emphasize that two people are not having a romantic relationship.

3 Circle the correct answer.

1 If someone looks a million dollars, they *are rich* | *look great*.
2 If your clothes put years on you, they make you look *older* | *younger*.
3 If you're glad to see the back of someone, you *enjoy* | *don't enjoy* their company.
4 If you're just good friends, you *are* | *aren't* in a romantic relationship with someone.
5 If someone is pushing fifty, they are *over* | *under* fifty.
6 If you're keeping in trim, you're *in good shape* | *out of shape*.
7 If your age is catching up with you, you're feeling *older* | *younger*.
8 If someone is all skin and bones, they look *attractive* | *terrible*.

4 Complete the dialogues with a word or phrase.

1 Well, who's here! It's Olivia! ~ Wow, she obviously in trim.
2 Don't look , but Anna's looking awful. ~ Yeah, she's all skin and .
3 Don's overweight and it's put on him. ~ Yes, he really looks out of .
4 Well, we're all 50, aren't we? ~ Yeah, time is catching with us all.
5 Suri's looking a dollars. ~ I think that hair colour years her.
6 Is Martin going out with Naomi? ~ I don't think so. She says they're just good .

5 ABOUT YOU Have you been to a school reunion? If so, what was it like? Or would you like to go to one in the future? Why / Why not? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

25 I can describe a football match

A How the media saw it

The decision by the Liverpool manager to leave key players **on the bench** and **gamble on** youth didn't **pay off** at Stamford Bridge yesterday. Chelsea **brushed aside** a Liverpool team that was way **below par**, and should have won more easily than the 2-1 score suggests. Lampard and Ballack gave Chelsea a 2-0 lead, and although Liverpool **hit back** in the second half, they were never really **in contention**. With Manchester United's game **rained off** last night, this win means that Chelsea **have gained ground on** the league leaders, but there is still **a long way to go.**

Glossary

on the bench	A player who is **on the bench** for a match is a substitute.
gamble on sth/sb	take a risk with sth/sb, hoping you will be successful.
pay off	INF (of a plan or action) be successful and bring good results.
brush sb/sth aside	treat sb/sth as unimportant.
hit back	start to perform well against a team that has been in the lead.
in contention (for sth)	having a chance of success; in a position to win sth.
rained off	If an event is **rained off**, it is postponed because of rain.
gain ground (on sb)	gradually get closer to sb you are competing with.
a long way to go	a lot more to do before you are successful.

spotlight Expressions with *par*

The team were below par today. = less good than usual or expected.
We're on a par with Arsenal. = about the same level/standard as Arsenal.

1 Circle the correct answer.

1 The game was rained *out* | *off* last night.
2 The team is still *in* | *on* contention.
3 We're gaining *ground* | *speed* on the leaders.
4 The team was *below* | *under* par today.
5 He brushed *away* | *aside* my comments.
6 We're on *par* | *a par* with the others.

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 Did they score first? ~ Yes, but we back ten minutes later.
2 Is he in the starting eleven? ~ No, he's on the .
3 Do you think you'll win the title? ~ I don't know. There's still a long to go.
4 Did they play well? ~ No, I thought we were way below .
5 Are they still playing tonight? ~ No, it's been rained .
6 Why aren't Coles and Low playing? ~ The manager's gambling the younger players.

3 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.

1 We're about the same standard as Everton. PAR
2 The coach treated the comments as unimportant. BRUSH
3 We have a chance of winning the title. CONTENTION
4 He's confident the strategy will work. PAY
5 We're catching the league leaders. GROUND
6 Is he going to risk Palmer tonight? GAMBLE

B How the fans saw it

Chelsea fans

'I thought we **eased off** and **let** them **off the hook** in the second half.'

'I'm disappointed we didn't **go all out for** a third goal.'

'A win's a win, and now we're **within striking distance of** Man United.'

Liverpool fans

'We had to **dig deep**, but we **fought back** well in the second half.'

'We **held our own** for half an hour, but we were always going to **come off worse** with that team.'

'We**'re out of the running** for the league now. I think our manager**'s lost the plot**.'

Glossary

let sb off the hook	INF allow sb to get out of a difficult situation.
go all out for sth	make a big effort to achieve sth.
within striking distance (of sb/sth)	near enough to reach or attack sb/sth or to achieve sth.
dig deep	use all your effort.
fight back	work hard to achieve or oppose sth, especially in a situation where you are losing.
hold your own (against sb)	compete equally against sb, especially sb stronger than you, in a competition or difficult situation.
come off worse	lose a fight, competition, etc., or suffer more compared with others.
be in / out of the running (for sth)	have some/no chance of being successful in sth.
lose the plot	INF no longer understand a situation or how to deal with it.

spotlight *ease off*

If a player or team **eases off**, it usually means they try less hard (as above). If something unpleasant or annoying **eases off**, it becomes less strong, e.g. *The rain **is easing off**. The pain **will ease off** soon.*

4 Are you pleased or unhappy with your team? Write P or U.

1 We dug deep.
2 We let them off the hook.
3 We lost the plot.
4 We're in the running.
5 We held our own.
6 We fought back.
7 We came off worse.
8 We're within striking distance.

5 Complete the text.

The conditions were terrible at the start of the game and they had a much bigger side, so we (1) off worse in the early exchanges. But the guys (2) deep and once the rain (3) off I felt we pretty much (4) our own. In fact, in the second half, we were the ones going all (5) for the winning goal. Unfortunately it never came, and some people may say we let them off the (6) in the end. But I still thought it was a good performance, and if we win on Saturday we'll be within (7) distance of second place, so we're definitely still in the (8) for the title.

26 I can describe a conference

¹delegates

Feedback from the 10th International Memory Conference, York

+ A terrific conference. The time just **flashed by** and I **came away with** a wealth of ideas. You can give yourselves **a pat on the back**!

+ I really enjoyed the weekend. I met some delegates[1] who I didn't **see eye to eye with**, but that's given me plenty of **food for thought**. Thanks from one very satisfied delegate!

+ I was impressed with the standard of speakers – Jim Rose really **opened** my **eyes** with his talk, and he was brilliant at answering questions **off the cuff**. Plus I got the chance to hear about the latest research, which had been my aim **all along**.

+ Thank you. You **lined up** some great speakers. I really appreciated the way they **bridged the gap between** theory and practice, and managed to **cater for** all sorts of participants. And the accommodation on the university campus was **second to none**.

– I was disappointed at the lack of opportunity to **bounce ideas off** one another. We needed more time to **feed** our ideas **back** to the organizers while the conference was still going on.

– A couple of events were swapped but we were not told about it, so I **missed out on** Jim Rose's apparently excellent talk. Instead, I sat through a terrible talk in the Great Hall where the speaker really didn't **know his stuff**. And we needed wireless facility – it would be worth **bearing in mind** for next year.

Glossary

flash by	If time **flashes by**, it goes very quickly. SYN **fly by**.
come away with sth	leave a place with new knowledge or ideas or a particular impression.
a pat on the back	INF praise for something you have done well.
see eye to eye with sb	share the same views as sb about sth.
food for thought	an idea that makes you think about sth seriously and carefully.
open sb's eyes (to sth)	make sb realize the truth about sth.
all along	all the time; from the beginning.
line sb/sth up	arrange for sb to be available for an event or arrange for an event to happen.
bridge the gap/gulf/divide (between ...)	reduce the differences between two things or groups of people.
cater for sb/sth	provide the things that a person or a situation requires.
second to none	as good as the best; excellent.
bounce ideas off sb	discuss ideas with other people to get their opinion and make a decision.
feed (sth) back (to sb)	give information or opinions about sth to sb, especially so that it can be improved. **feedback** N.
miss out (on sth)	lose the opportunity to have or to do sth.
know your stuff	INF know a lot about a particular subject or job.
bear sth in mind	remember an important piece of information that could be useful in the future.

spotlight Idioms with *off*

He speaks well off the cuff. = without planning it first; spontaneously.
She said a number off the top of her head. = without careful thought or checking the facts.
His talk was a bit off the wall. = INF unusual; slightly crazy.

1 Circle the correct word.

1 If you're speaking off the *cuff* | *wall*, you are speaking spontaneously.
2 If a school is second to none, it is *the best* | *second best*.
3 If you've known something all along, you've known it *for a while* | *from the beginning*.
4 If you bear something in mind, you remember some information to use *now* | *later*.
5 If you say something off the top of your head, you do it *without* | *after* thinking carefully.
6 If you don't get the chance to do something you enjoy, you *miss it out* | *miss out on it*.
7 If something gives you food for thought, you *eat* | *think about* it.
8 If someone makes you realize the truth about something, they open your *ears* | *eyes* to it.

2 Complete the sentences with a word or phrase that has the opposite meaning of the words in italics.

► Did she *criticize* you for your talk, or did she give you a pat on the back ?
1 Was it a fairly *sensible* talk, or was it a bit ?
2 Had she *planned* what she was going to say, or did she just speak ?
3 Will you just *ignore what people said*, or will you bear ?
4 Did they *say nothing* to you after your talk, or did they give you some ?
5 Did the time pass *slowly* or did it ?
6 Have you found out about it *recently*, or have you known about it ?

3 Complete the dialogues.

1 A Do you get on well with your boss?
B No, we don't really see to , unfortunately.
2 A I was sorry to out on the chance to hear Professor Quentin.
B Yes, he's a great speaker, and he really his stuff.
3 A Do you know who they've got up to open the conference?
B Not yet. But it's hard to find someone who can for the interests of everyone in the audience.
4 A How did the discussion go?
B Fantastic! It was a great opportunity to ideas off each other.
5 A I thought my talk went OK.
B It was far better than that – you should give yourself a on the back.
6 A When I fed to the organizers, I told them I wasn't happy about the venue.
B Let's hope they that in mind for next time.

4 Order the words to make sentences.

1 and | between | the | must | rich | bridge | we | gap | poor
2 the | to | see | I | didn't | with | eye | eye | teacher
3 important | eyes | my | she | things | more | opened | to
4 new | a | away | lot | with | ideas | came | we | of
5 my | off | an | top| I | answer | head | gave | the | of
6 back | on | a | organizers | pat | the | the | deserve

5 ABOUT YOU Think about the last time you listened to a speaker giving a talk. Circle the correct word, then write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 Did the time go slowly, or did it flash *back* | *by*?
2 Did the speaker *tell* | *know* his/her stuff?
3 Was the talk very conventional, or a bit off the *cuff* | *wall*?
4 Did the speaker cater *for* | *with* the whole audience?
5 Did it give you food for *thinking* | *thought*?
6 Did you come *away* | *along* afterwards with any new ideas?

Review: Events

Unit 20

1 Complete the dialogues. You may need more than one word.

- ► Is Milly a good cook? ~ No, she can't cook to save her life .
- 1 Goodness, it was a mess. ~ Yes, it looked like a bomb .
- 2 Who's going to carry on after you? ~ Edward said he would take .
- 3 Have you tested it yet? ~ No, but we're going to try next week.
- 4 I only made a little mistake. ~ Yes, it was stupid of Don to make a big thing .
- 5 It's a tiny bathroom. ~ I know, there's no room to swing .
- 6 Did anyone disapprove? ~ Yes, the managing director raised an .
- 7 Will the new plans be similar? ~ Yes, something along .
- 8 I expect you're pleased you don't have to go. ~ Yeah, it's a weight .

2 Complete the idiom or phrasal verb being defined.

1	**like** INF	a lot, e.g. *practise like* .
2	**can't do sth to** **your life** INF	can't do sth at all, or only very badly.
3	**pull sth** INF	succeed in doing sth that is difficult.
4	**out** INF	too anxious or tired to be able to relax.
5	**pitch** **(with sb/sth)** INF	join in and help other people with an activity.
6	**(sth) up**	serve food onto plates for a meal.
7	**a big** INF	is something that is very important. If something isn't important, we say 'it's no big '.
8	**tried and**	successfully used or relied on in the past.

Unit 21

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 put up
2 come
3 set up
4 have
5 leave
6 make
7 keep
8 take

a your doubts about something
b something behind
c a tent
d the easy way out
e camp
f an eye on something
g in handy
h do with something

2 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals, in the correct form. Keep the meaning the same.

- ► Could you watch my bag for me? EYE Could you keep an eye on my bag for me?
- 1 It rained very heavily. TIP
- 2 I found the book by chance. STUMBLE
- 3 We got very wet. SKIN
- 4 We made good use of that tin opener. COME
- 5 I got very tired. WEAR
- 6 The band were very popular. BOMB
- 7 We can manage with two assistants instead of three. MAKE
- 8 I'm a bit uncertain about Jeremy. DOUBTS

Unit 22

1 Tick the correct ending.

1 She was lovely, and I (a) couldn't look her in the eye. ☐ (b) couldn't take my eyes off her. ☐
2 It was a very noisy place, which (a) wasn't what I had in mind. ☐ (b) wasn't on the cards. ☐
3 The date went well, (a) as far as I could tell. ☐ (b) as far as it goes. ☐
4 I should never have agreed to go with Luis because (a) he just snapped out of it. ☐ (b) he just winds me up. ☐
5 Mai was a bag of nerves at first, but later she a) came out of her shell. ☐ b) wound me up. ☐
6 I was so embarrassed when he mentioned his wife that (a) I couldn't take my eyes off him. ☐ (b) I couldn't look him in the eye. ☐
7 We were going for a meal, and Hari (a) called for me at the station. ☐ (b) picked me up at the station. ☐
8 It's been hectic – I've been (a) rushing round all day. ☐ (b) getting round to it all day. ☐

2 Complete the conversation about Anna's evening out.

tami So Anna, how did your (1) date go last night?
anna Well, I was a (2) of nerves for days beforehand. But anyway, Andy (3) me up at the station, and we went straight to the restaurant that he'd booked.
tami So what was he like to look at?
anna Not bad at all! He was quite attractive and had (4) of confidence too. He talked a lot to start with, but then he was good at asking questions, and I started to come out of my (5) . In fact, he was very easy to talk to – we (6) away for hours and the time just (7) by.
tami So do you think you'll see him again?
anna I hope I (8) a good enough impression on him. We swapped mobile numbers and he said he'd ring. Yeah, I reckon a second date is on the (9) !

Unit 23

1 Complete the crossword.

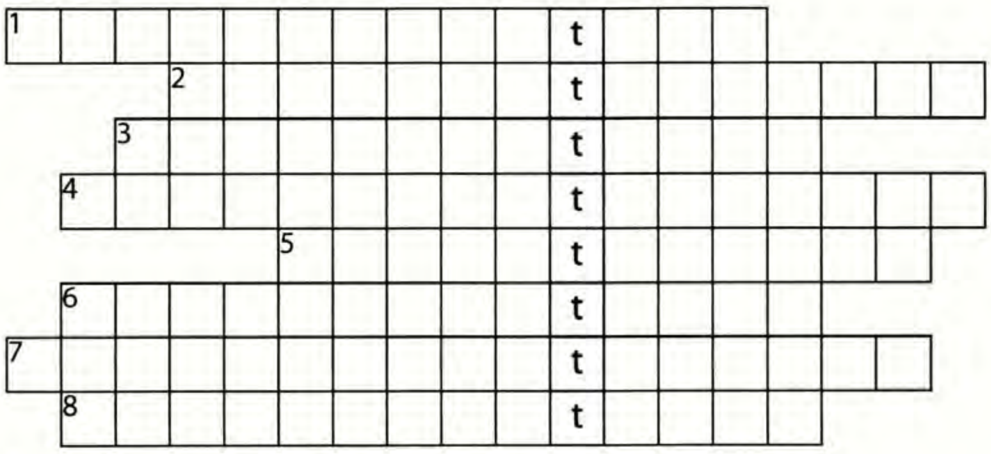

1 Ask someone to marry you. (3,3,7)
2 You can spend, achieve, or do anything. (3,4,3,5)
3 Ask people to wish someone happiness or success by raising their glasses and drinking. (7,1,5)
4 Speak in a very sincere way. (5,4,3,5)
5 Cost a great deal of money. (5,3,4)
6 (Speak about someone) in a very positive way. (2,7,5)
7 Something that makes a good situation even better. (3,5,2,3,4)
8 If your emotions you, they are too strong to control. (3,3,6,2)

2 Complete the dialogues with a single word.

1 Did you have the suit specially made? ~ No, I got it off the .
2 Did it all go smoothly? ~ Yes, it went off without a .
3 Did you offer to help? ~ Yes, but she wouldn't of it.
4 He went on and on. ~ I know, you just can't shut him .
5 You must have been thrilled to win. ~ Yes, it really made my .
6 Did she start crying? ~ Yes, she broke down in .
7 Did her uncle say nice things about her? ~ Yes, he was singing her .
8 Is it the wedding tomorrow? ~ Yes, it's the big .

Unit 24

1 Complete the paraphrases. You may need more than one word.

1 If someone's nearly fifty, you could say that they're fifty.
2 If someone's extremely thin, you might say that they're all skin .
3 If someone's looking wonderful, you might say they look a .
4 If an outfit makes someone look older, you might say it puts them.
5 If you're trying to encourage someone to do something, you might say, 'Go !'
6 If someone has become too fat, you might say they're out .

2 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- She's exceedingly thin. BONES She's all skin and bones.

1 We had a lot of fun. WHALE
2 I must contact Stephanie. TOUCH
3 They can't force you to do it. OBLIGATION
4 I'll be happy when he leaves. BACK
5 We're not in a romantic relationship. GOOD
6 I would never go to that place. DEAD
7 A day on the beach is as good as anything. NOTHING
8 I just want to find out the latest news. CATCH

Unit 25

1 Complete the definitions of these idioms and phrasal verbs with a single word.

1 If you *dig deep* in a game, you use all your .
2 If you *hold your own*, you compete .
3 If you *are out of the running*, you have chance of being successful.
4 If you *brush someone aside*, you treat them as .
5 If rain *eases off*, it becomes less .
6 If you are *on a par* with someone, you are at the same .
7 If you *gamble on* someone, you take a with them.
8 If a player is *on the bench*, he or she is a .

2 Complete the sentences on the right with a single word, so that they have the same meaning as the sentences on the left.

1	The game was postponed because of rain.	The game was rained .
2	We still have a chance of winning.	We are still in .
3	We're getting closer.	We're gaining .
4	We weren't very good today.	Today we were below .
5	We tried a new system but it didn't work.	We tried a new system but it didn't pay .
6	We allowed them to get out of that situation.	We let them off the .
7	In the second half, we didn't try as hard.	In the second half, we eased .
8	He doesn't know what he's doing.	He's lost the .

Unit 26

1 Complete the conversation.

tony I thought it was a good conference, didn't you? City Hall was excellent.

sian Yeah, as a venue it's (1) to none.

tony And they'd (2) up some interesting speakers as well.

robin Yeah. My only criticism is that the sessions were a bit short and time just seemed to (3) by. I felt we (4) out on the opportunity to ask questions at the end of the sessions and (5) ideas off one another.

tony Mmm. And one or two of the talks were maybe a bit academic; they didn't (6) the gap between theory and practice very successfully.

sian I know, but it's difficult to (7) for everyone, and some people want the academic background. Still, I learnt a lot of new stuff – I just don't read enough these days.

robin No, me neither. I certainly (8) away with some interesting new ideas. So, all in all, a good conference.

2 Complete the idioms being defined. You will find one of the words for each idiom in the box.

wall pat cuff food head stuff bear come ✓ eye

▸ *come* **away** *with* **sth** = leave somewhere with a particular impression or knowledge.
1 **something in** = remember an important piece of information that could be useful in the future.
2 **a on the** = praise for something you have done well.
3 **off the of your** = without careful thought or checking the facts.
4 **for** = an idea that makes you think seriously and carefully.
5 **your** = be well informed about a particular subject or job.
6 **the** = unusual; slightly crazy.
7 **see to** = share the same views as someone about something.
8 **the** = without planning it first.

27 I can talk about the media

A Scandal

BBC under pressure to sack presenter

Politicians **are putting pressure on** the BBC **to** remove chat-show host Bob Aldred, after a story **leaked out** that he uttered racist remarks following his Saturday show. The comments were made **off the record**, and colleagues feel they have **been blown out of proportion**. However, Aldred is **a household name**, and any comments that could **stir up** controversy and **cast doubt on** the integrity of the BBC would be very damaging. Friends hope the incident will quickly **blow over**, but critics argue that the BBC has been left with no option. 'This story won't **go away**,' said one MP. 'The BBC must act now to **stamp out** any possible accusation of racism, and **the sooner the better**.'

Glossary

put pressure on sb (to do sth)	force or try to persuade sb to do sth; that person is then **under pressure**.
leak out	(of secret information) become known to the public.
off the record	used for saying that a remark is not official or intended to be made public. OPP **on the record**.
blow sth (up) out of (all) proportion	make sth seem much worse or more dangerous than it really is.
a household name	a name known to everyone; a famous person.
stir sth up	try to cause arguments or problems.
cast doubt(s) on sth	make people feel less certain about sth.
blow over	If a difficult situation **blows over**, people stop talking about it and soon forget about it.
go away	disappear.
stamp sth out	get rid of sth that is wrong or dangerous, often with force.
the sooner the better	as soon as possible.

1 Circle the correct answer.

1 If you **cast doubt on something**, you make other people feel *more / less* certain about it.
2 If a situation **blows over**, people *start / stop* worrying about it.
3 If a comment is made **on the record**, it *is / isn't* intended to be made public.
4 If information **leaks out**, it becomes *known / official*.
5 If you **stamp something out**, you *put your foot on it / get rid of it*.
6 If a problem **goes away**, it *disappears / moves somewhere else*.

2 Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of the word in capitals. Keep the same meaning.

▸ We need to get rid of prejudice. STAMP We need to stamp out prejudice.
1 He tried to make her change her mind. PRESSURE
2 His comments weren't intended to be made public. RECORD
3 We need to do this, and as soon as possible. SOONER
4 He's known to everyone. HOUSEHOLD
5 The secrets have become known recently. LEAK
6 People will soon forget about the incident. BLOW
7 She made it seem much worse than it was. PROPORTION
8 His comments have caused a lot of anger. STIR

B Opinions about the press

'Newspapers print all sorts of allegations, many of then untrue, but **mud sticks**, and the unfortunate victims **bear the brunt of** it.'

'Some newspaper stories may **not ring true**, but generally journalists **go to great lengths to** check their facts and ensure their stories are accurate.'

'**If it weren't for** the press, a lot of things would **be swept under the carpet** and might never **come out into the open**.'

'Newspapers sometimes **overstep the mark**, but they also **speak out against** social injustice, so I tend to **have mixed feelings** about them.'

Glossary

bear the brunt of sth	suffer the worst part of sth unpleasant.
not ring true	If sth **doesn't ring true**, you don't believe it, even though you cannot explain why.
go to great lengths (**to do sth**)	try in a determined way to achieve sth. (If you will **go to any lengths** (**to do sth**), you are so determined to achieve sth that you would act in an extreme way if necessary.)
if it weren't/wasn't for sb/sth	used to say who or what is preventing sth from happening (***If it weren't for*** *the press, …* = Without the press, …).
sweep sth under the carpet	try to keep sth a secret, especially sth you have done wrong.
come out in/into the open	(of sth that was previously secret) become known. SYN **come to light**.
overstep the mark	upset sb by doing or saying more than you should. SYN **go too far**.
speak out (**against sth**)	state your opinions in public, especially in order to protest against or defend sth.
have mixed feelings about sth/sb	feel both positive and negative about sth/sb.

spotlight Sayings about truth

Two contradictory sayings are often used when discussing the press:

Mud sticks. = People remember the bad things they hear about someone, even if they are later shown to be false.

There's no smoke without fire. = If something bad is said about something, it usually has some truth in it.

3 Same or different? Write S or D.

1	They'll go to great lengths to find out.	They'll go to any lengths to find out.
2	They've gone too far.	They've overstepped the mark.
3	I have mixed feelings about it.	I have bad feelings about it.
4	There's no smoke without fire.	Mud sticks.
5	The facts will come out in the open.	The facts will come to light.
6	We know it because of John.	If it weren't for John, we wouldn't know it.

4 Complete the dialogues.

1 Is the information still secret? ~ No, it's all out in the now.

2 Are you sure it's the right thing to do? ~ No, I've got feelings, actually.

3 Will you support the protest? ~ Yes, we have to out against the government.

4 Do you believe the story? ~ You know what they say: there's no smoke .

5 Will the government tell us? ~ No, they'll sweep it .

6 Do you believe what they're saying? ~ No, it doesn't ring .

7 Who has suffered the most criticism? ~ Well, Amelia's borne the of it.

8 Did he try to find out? ~ Yes, he went to great to discover the truth.

28 I can talk about crime

A Robbery

Robbery in broad daylight leaves shop owner stunned

Police **are on the lookout for** two men who **held up** a shop in Weston yesterday and stole £2,000. The two **were lying in wait for** the owner, Rob Hadley, when he returned to the shop shortly after 2 p.m. Mr Hadley was held **at gunpoint** while the men took money from the till and the flat above the shop. They **made off with** the money along Ship Street and escaped across the common. Mr Hadley said he was stunned by the attack. A police spokesperson, Ann Tandy, said they **were stepping up** their campaign to get guns off the streets **in the wake of** the robbery. 'We **will crack down** hard **on** anyone caught **in possession of** firearms,' said Tandy. 'We need to **nip** this **in the bud**.'

Glossary

in broad daylight	at a time of day when it is not dark or beginning to get dark (often used when you are surprised to see sth at this time of day).
be on the lookout for sb/sth	INF be looking carefully for sb/sth in order to find them.
hold sth up	use violence to steal from a shop, bank, etc.
lie in wait (**for sb**)	hide while waiting to surprise, attack, or catch sb.
at gunpoint	while being threatened with a gun.
make off with sth	steal sth and hurry away with it in order to escape.
step sth up	increase the amount or speed of sth.
in the wake of sth	coming soon after or following sth.
crack down (**on sth**/**sb**)	INF try harder to prevent an illegal activity and deal severely with those caught doing the activity. **crackdown** N.
in possession of sth	FML having or owning sth, often sth that is illegal or important.
nip sth in the bud	INF stop a bad situation from becoming worse by taking action at an early stage of its development.

1 Circle the logical answer(s). Sometimes both answers may be logical.

1 The police were lying in wait for *the robbers* | *their colleagues*.
2 We want to nip *roller skating* | *under-age drinking* in the bud.
3 They made off with the *money* | *jewels*.
4 She was in possession of *her clothes* | *secret information*.
5 They're having a crackdown on *shopping* | *gambling*.
6 The company want to step up their *idea* | *production*.

2 Write in the missing prepositions.

1 lie wait somebody
2 be the lookout somebody
3 broad daylight
4 gunpoint
5 the wake something
6 make off something
7 possession something
8 nip something the bud

3 Complete the text. Then circle the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

Early yesterday morning the police received a tip-off about a robbery at the post office in Denton. They were (1) in wait for the robbers when they arrived on the scene, and caught them as they attempted to (2) off with the money. Both men were charged with robbery and being in (3) of an illegal firearm. One of the police officers said that in the (4) of several robberies in the area, they had been on the (5) for these two men, and their arrest was a further success in their campaign to (6) down on armed robbery in the area.

B Crime stories in the news

Police **press charges against** MP

Duke vows to **clear** his **name**

GOVERNMENT TO **TIGHTEN UP** GAMBLING LAWS

Police **go on the offensive**

YOUNGSTERS
BEING LED ASTRAY

Reporter **goes under cover**

Plan to **phase out** complicated police forms

POLICE **TIPPED OFF**
BY GANG MEMBER

Knife crime **on the up**

Accused athlete
in the clear

POLITICIANS MUST **CLEAN UP THEIR ACT** SAY PUBLIC

Glossary

press charges (against sb)	officially accuse sb of committing a crime.
clear sb's name	prove that sb did not do sth that they were accused of.
tighten sth up	make a law, rule, or system more strict.
go on the offensive	begin to take action against sb who is attacking or criticizing you, or sth you think is undesirable.
lead sb astray	be a bad influence on sb and make them do sth silly or criminal.
go/be under cover	pretend to be sb else in order to find out secret information.
phase sth out	gradually stop using sth over time. OPP **phase sth in**.
tip sb off	give sb a warning or secret information. **tip-off** N.
on the up	increasing (as above), or improving, e.g. *Business is **on the up**.*
in the clear	no longer believed to be guilty of sth bad or illegal.
clean up your act	INF start behaving in a more moral and responsible way.

4 Match 1–6 with a–f.

1 tip
2 lead
3 press
4 clear
5 go
6 clean

a your name
b on the offensive
c up your act
d somebody off
e charges
f somebody astray

5 Circle the correct answer.

1 If you **phase something in**, you introduce something *immediately / gradually*.
2 If somebody is **in the clear**, they *are found innocent / have escaped*.
3 If crime is **on the up**, it is *increasing / at its highest point*.
4 It you **tighten up** a law, you *change it / make it stricter*.
5 If you **tip somebody off**, you give them *money / a warning*.
6 If you **clean up your act**, you behave *more responsibly / in a more organized way*.

6 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.

1 They're going to gradually discontinue the scheme. PHASE
2 The policeman pretended to be a criminal. COVER
3 He was a bad influence on the boy. ASTRAY
4 She wants to prove that she's innocent. CLEAR
5 The police have accused him of committing the crime. PRESS
6 They are beginning to take action against him. OFFENSIVE

29 I can describe a demonstration

A A news report

An estimated **turnout** of 50,000 demonstrators **from all walks of life joined forces** yesterday in the capital for an anti-government rally. The protesters **made their way** along the river to St John's Square, **calling on** the government **to bring an end to** poverty and injustice. Many local businesses **had boarded up** their premises amid fears of attack. Despite threats of violence beforehand, however, the march was allowed to **go ahead**. **In the event**, it **passed off** quite peacefully, although a smaller protest by about fifty demonstrators **was broken up** by the police, and a number of arrests were made.

CLEAN
MAKE POVERTY HISTORY
People before profit
WORLD'S #1
Christian Aid

Glossary

turnout	the number of people who attend an event. **turn out** v.
from all walks of life	A crowd **from all walks of life** consists of many different types of people (your **walk of life** is your background, job, etc.).
join/combine forces	work together to achieve sth.
make your way	(with adverbial phrase) move or get to a particular place.
call on sb to do sth	officially ask sb or an organization to do sth.
bring/put an end to sth	stop sth happening.
board sth up	cover the windows or door of a building with wooden boards to protect it or stop sb entering.
go ahead	happen; take place. **go-ahead** N (*The march was given the* ***go-ahead***).
in the event	as it actually happened (used especially when things did not happen as expected).
pass off	take place and be completed in a particular way (*The protest* ***passed off*** *peacefully / smoothly / without incident*). SYN **go off**.
break sth up	make a group of people leave a place or stop doing sth.

1 Complete the paraphrase on the right with one or two words.

1 How many were at the march?	What was the ?
2 Let's work together on this.	Let's forces on this.
3 They moved towards the square.	They their way towards the square.
4 The windows were covered in boards.	The windows were .
5 Will the protest still take place?	Will the protest still ?
6 As it happened, we lost.	In the , we lost.
7 The protest was stopped and we had to leave.	The police up the protest.
8 They were from many different backgrounds.	They were from all of .

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 What do the protesters want? ~ They're on the government to stop imports.
2 Were there any problems at the meeting? ~ No, it was fine; it peacefully.
3 Will the march take place? ~ Oh, yes, they've been given the from the police.
4 What are the people's demands? ~ They want the leaders to an to the war.
5 Was the turnout as you expected? ~ No. event, there were a lot more people.
6 Did you work in isolation? ~ No, we joined with another team, which was great.
7 How did you get to the demonstration? ~ We made on foot.
8 Did the weather affect the march? ~ Yes, fewer people than we'd hoped.

B The protesters' views

WHAT IF IT WAS YOU?
hri
de Justi

People need to **stand up for** what they believe in – and today we did. We definitely **got our message across**; we can't **back down** now. We**'re pressing ahead with** plans for further marches, which could **pave the way for** a coordinated international campaign.

We organized a **sit-in** in front of the embassy, but the police broke it up.

The police **cordoned off** part of the square and ordered us to stay there for reasons of safety. In fact, we were just **being fenced in** so that the press couldn't talk to us.

The authorities **shut down** our website, but we managed to **spread the word** by phone.

Glossary

stand up for sb/sth	support and defend sb/sth.
back down (**on sth**)	admit that you are wrong or have lost an argument.
press ahead (**with sth**)	continue doing sth in a determined way.
pave the way (**for sth**)	create a situation which makes it easier for sth to happen.
sit-in	a protest in which people sit down and refuse to leave a place until their demands are listened to. **sit in** V.
cordon sth off	stop people from getting into an area by surrounding it with the police or by putting a barrier round it.
fence sb in	(often passive) 1 surround sb with a fence. 2 restrict sb's freedom. SYN **hem sb in**.
shut sth down	stop a machine, business, etc. from operating. **shutdown** N.

spotlight Communicating information

If you **get your message across** (**to sb**), you succeed in communicating with other people. You may need to **spread the word**, i.e. tell a lot of people about something, or **put the word out about sth** INF. The opposite is to **keep sth to yourself**, i.e. keep it secret.

3 Circle the correct answer. Both answers may be possible, but have a different meaning.

1 The demonstrators organized *a sit-in* | *a fence-in* to protest about students' fees.
2 The government is trying to *spread* | *put* the word about climate change.
3 This is secret information: please keep it *for* | *to* yourself for the time being.
4 I don't know why the police *cordoned off* | *fenced in* that particular area.
5 I don't think the protesters can *back down on* | *press ahead with* this issue.
6 The company was trading illegally, so the police shut it *off* | *down*.

4 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.

1 They will never admit they were wrong. BACK
2 Don't tell anyone about it. KEEP
3 We will certainly proceed with our plans. PRESS
4 He always defended his beliefs. STAND
5 Why did they put a barrier round the café? CORDON
6 How will we tell everyone? SPREAD
7 The talks made the reforms possible. PAVE
8 It's very hard to explain what we mean. MESSAGE

30 I can talk about politics

A Forthcoming election

PM under fire

The prime minister **has come under fire** during this election campaign for being slow to respond to events, but he was **quick off the mark** this morning. In a speech in Dover, he claimed that the Opposition's tax policies didn't **add up**, and that they **were plucking** numbers **out of the air**. Meanwhile, the Opposition were trying to **capitalize on** the latest bad unemployment figures, which clearly illustrated, in their view, that the only thing which could **stop the rot** was a change of government. They also **talked up** the latest opinion-poll figures, which now put them **neck and neck** with the government. **In the final analysis** it **will** just **boil down to** who the voters choose to believe.

Glossary

come/be under fire	be criticized severely for sth you have done.
quick/slow off the mark	fast/slow in reacting to a situation. (See page 162.)
add up	INF seem reasonable or logical (used mainly in a negative sense, e.g. *His story doesn't **add up***).
pluck sth out of the air	say a name, number, etc. without giving it any thought.
capitalize on sth	gain a further advantage for yourself from a situation.
stop the rot	stop a bad situation from getting worse.
talk sth up	describe or discuss sth in a way that makes it sound better than it is.
neck and neck	(of two people or groups) level with each other in a race or competition.
in the final analysis	used to state a basic truth after everything has been discussed and considered.
boil down to sth	If a situation or problem **boils down to** one thing, that thing is the main point in the situation, or the main cause of the problem.

1 Cover the glossary, then complete the definitions.

1 If you are *neck and neck* with somebody, you are with them.
2 If you *capitalize on* something, you gain an for yourself.
3 If someone's ideas don't *add up*, they don't seem .
4 If you *stop the rot*, you stop a situation from continuing.
5 If you are *slow off the mark*, you are slow in to something.
6 If you *come under fire*, you are being for something you've done.
7 If you *pluck* a figure *out of the air*, you say a figure without .
8 If you *talk something up*, you make it sound than it is.

2 Write one word in each space.

The government came under (1) once again this morning, this time from doctors who feel it has been (2) off the mark in reacting to the recent outbreak of swine flu. One doctor summed up the feelings of many when he said that the government was good at talking (3) its response and making it sound fine, but the truth was somewhat different. 'The solution for this problem requires time, effort, and money. But in the (4) analysis, it all (5) down to money. The figures given by the government are just (6) out of the air, and it isn't ready to spend the necessary amount.'

B Political scandal

WAR OF WORDS CONTINUES

Last night, politicians from all sides were still engaging in **a war of words** over the scandal surrounding MPs' expenses. Some were claiming the newspaper revelations had been **a** long overdue **wake-up call**, and several MPs were quoted as saying it was an opportunity for parliament to **put its house in order**. However, one senior government figure **was not giving an inch**. He said journalists had been too quick to **jump on the bandwagon**, and that MPs who had not broken any rules deserved to **be given the benefit of the doubt**. But with the press **having a field day**, this story is likely to **run and run**, and it doesn't **bode well for** parliament's languishing reputation.

Glossary

a war of words	a bitter argument between groups over a period of time.
put your house in order	make necessary changes or improvements in your business, way of life, etc.
not give/budge/move an inch	INF refuse to change an opinion, decision, etc.
jump/climb on the bandwagon	INF, DISAPPROVING join others in doing or saying sth that is popular and fashionable in order to make yourself popular.
give sb the benefit of the doubt	treat sb as if their behaviour is honest or correct, even though you are not certain that it is.
have a field day	(often used of the media) be given the opportunity to do sth you enjoy, especially when it causes trouble for sb else.
run and run	If sth is likely to **run and run**, it is likely to continue for a long time. (We often say sth *looks set* ***to run and run*** = looks likely to.)
bode well/ill for sb/sth	FML be a good/bad sign for sb/sth.

spotlight *wake-up call*

The literal meaning of **a wake-up call** is an arranged telephone call to wake you up at a particular time. Metaphorically, it is an event that makes you realize there is a problem that must be tackled (as above).

3 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 We need to *put* | *settle* our own house in order first.
2 Too many people are waiting to *climb* | *jump* on the bandwagon.
3 The journalists are *making* | *having* a field day with this.
4 I think we should *leave* | *give* her the benefit of the doubt.
5 They want him to change his mind but he won't *move* | *give* an inch.
6 The newspapers are still having a war of *ideas* | *words* over this issue.
7 After the latest problems, this should be a wake-up *call* | *ring* for parliament.
8 This new scandal looks set to *run and run* | *race and race*.

4 Complete the sentences. You will find one of the words for each idiom or phrasal verb in the box.

field benefit jump bode set ✓ wake-up inch war house

▸ The row about pensions looks set to run and run.
1 We should put our own ______ in ______ before we criticize others.
2 I don't know if it's true, but we'll give him the ______ of the ______ for now.
3 You're just like a politician: you'll ______ on the ______ at the first opportunity.
4 Journalists will ______ a ______ day when they get hold of this story.
5 The attack was a ______ for us to take the terrorists seriously.
6 There's been criticism of the policy, but the prime minister won't ______ an ______.
7 We had the usual ______ of ______ in parliament today, mostly about nothing.
8 The opinion poll is disastrous for the government, and doesn't ______ for their future.

31 I can talk about conflict

A A community in conflict

Fate of Charmy Wood **hangs in the balance**

Environmental groups **are locked in battle** with the council over the proposed new bypass through parts of Charmy Wood. Opponents of the scheme believe the town **can ill afford to** lose an area of natural beauty, and a bypass will just **open the floodgates to** further development. The council remain adamant that there is **a crying need for** the bypass to keep traffic out of the town centre, and they say they cannot **free up** any other land. Council leader Val Moran believes the protesters are **out of step with** the majority, and says the council **will stand firm** and **press on with** the new road. It seems that both sides **are poles apart**, and it is highly unlikely that the council can **meet** the protesters **halfway**.

Glossary

hang in the balance	If sth **hangs in the balance**, its future is uncertain.
be locked in battle/ dispute, etc.	(of two people or groups) be involved in a dispute or argument to which there is no obvious solution. SYN **be at loggerheads**.
can ill afford (to do) sth	used to say that sb should not do sth because it will cause problems.
open the floodgates (to sth)	If an action or decision **opens the floodgates**, it allows a lot of things to happen that weren't previously possible.
a crying need for sth	a great and urgent need for sth.
free (sb/sth) up	make sb/sth available for a particular purpose.
out of step (with sb)	having ideas that are different from other people's.
stand firm	refuse to change your opinion.
press on (with sth)	continue doing sth in a determined way. SYN **press ahead (with sth)**.
be poles apart	(of two people or groups) be widely separated in interests and ideas.
meet sb halfway	reach partial agreement with sb, or give sb part of what they want.

1 Cover the glossary and complete the definitions.

1 If you are *out of step* with others, you have ideas from them.
2 If you are *at loggerheads* with someone, you are involved in a with them.
3 *A crying need* for something is an need for something.
4 If you *open the floodgates* to something, you make it for it to happen.
5 If you *press ahead* with something, you with it.
6 If you *meet someone halfway*, you give them .

2 Replace the underlined parts of the text in a way that keeps a similar meaning.

Residents of Denway Lane ► are currently involved in a battle with Paul Hobbs, head teacher of Denway School. Mr Locke wants to (1) make available a large part of the playing fields for development in order to fund a new laboratory. Residents say schools (2) cannot afford to give up valuable green space in a built-up area, and (3) are refusing to change their opinions, despite pressure from Mr Locke, who has vowed to (4) continue with his plans. With the two sides (5) having such different views, it is hard to see how they can (6) find a compromise. The future of the playing fields may (7) be uncertain for some time.

► are locked in
1
2
3
4
5
6
7

B War metaphors

Some phrases with military origins are used figuratively to talk about conflict situations.

The government has been engaged in **a running battle** over the introduction of identity cards, and now ministers are threatening to **break ranks** and **side with** the Opposition.

Council leader Bryn Jones **will be** directly **in the firing line** now the council has finally decided to **bite the bullet** and raise car parking charges in the town by as much as 15 per cent.

The Union **is sticking to its guns** in demanding a 7 per cent pay rise, but in the current economic climate it could **be fighting a losing battle**.

Having a foot in both camps has not helped my supervisor: he has recently been attacked by both shop-floor workers and senior management.

Glossary

a running battle	an argument that continues over a long period of time.
break ranks	(of a member or members of a group) stop supporting the group of which you are a member. (If you **close ranks**, you join together closely to defend yourselves, especially when being criticized by others.)
side with sb	agree with sb and support them in an argument.
be in the firing line	be in a position where people can criticize or blame you.
bite the bullet	INF force yourself to do sth difficult or unpleasant that you have been avoiding.
stick to your guns	INF continue to have a particular opinion about sth even though others are saying that you are wrong.
fight a losing battle	try to do sth that will probably fail.
have/keep a foot in both camps	be involved with two different or opposing groups.

spotlight Literal meanings

In the past, soldiers were given a bullet to bite on during a medical operation without an anaesthetic; from this we get **bite the bullet**. When soldiers **close ranks**, they move closer together to defend themselves. A soldier or gunner is required to keep in position – **stick to his guns** – and not surrender.

3 Cover the glossary. Then complete the idioms with words associated with war.

1 a running
2 bite the
3 stick to your
4 have a foot
5 fight a losing
6 be in the firing

4 Rewrite the sentences using a suitable idiom or phrasal verb, without changing the meaning.

1 One councillor won't support his own party. One councillor has .
2 He's involved with both parties. He's got a .
3 They've had an argument over this for ages. They've had a .
4 He'll make the tough decision and raise taxes. He'll .
5 The minister is supporting the Opposition. The minister is .
6 She's not going to change her mind on this. She's .
7 He's trying but it won't be successful. He's fighting .
8 The minister is likely to be criticized. The minister is in .

32 I can talk about celebrity

A Instant fame

Britain's got talent – but should it remain hidden?

Large TV audiences prove that talent shows are compulsive viewing Who will **rise to the occasion**? Who will **go to pieces**? But whilst these shows are an opportunity for instant fame, it can **come at a price**. When people are plucked from obscurity and acquire fame **beyond their wildest dreams**, it can **go to their head**. Many of these 'instant stars' quickly **fall by the wayside**, and the public can be very fickle: **building somebody up** one minute, then **knocking them down** the next. Perhaps we should **tread** more **carefully** rather than allow a single audience reaction to **make or break** a young performer.

Glossary

rise to the occasion	do well in a difficult situation.
go to pieces	become so upset or nervous that you cannot do sth as well as you should.
at a price	involving an unpleasant consequence (**come at a price**).
beyond your wildest dreams	better than anything you could have imagined.
go to sb's head	If success or praise **goes to sb's head**, it makes them feel more important than they really are, and they usually suffer as a result.
fall by the wayside	not be successful or effective any longer.
tread carefully	be very careful about what you do or say.
make or break sb/sth	be the thing which makes sb/sth either a great success or a complete failure. (Also as ADJ *a* ***make-or-break*** *situation*.)

spotlight *build up*

If you **build sb up**, you talk about them in a positive way so that people are impressed by them. If you then **knock sb down**, you are negative about them. If you **build up sb's hopes**, you make them think something good is going to happen when in fact it is very unlikely.

1 Is the speaker sounding positive or negative about Mel? Write P or N.

1 Success went to Mel's head.
2 Mel went to pieces.
3 This is beyond Mel's wildest dreams.
4 Mel rose to the occasion.
5 Mel's fallen by the wayside.
6 They built up Mel's hopes.

2 Complete the sentences.

1 This could be a make-or- performance for Jessica.
2 Winning the competition was beyond my dreams.
3 It's a big challenge for Connie, but I'm sure she'll to the occasion.
4 Ravi was too young to cope with fame, and the money went to his .
5 As soon as I got up on stage I just went to and couldn't sing. It was horrible.
6 The press built him up, and then him down; that happens so often.

3 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.

1 A lot of actors fail and give up. WAYSIDE
2 We must be very careful what we say. TREAD
3 He was successful but it wasn't all pleasant. PRICE
4 It was better than anything I could've imagined. DREAMS
5 Holly was too nervous and she performed badly. PIECES
6 I'm sure Jason will perform very well on the night. RISE

B In the public eye

Jodie separation shock

Jodie Webb faced the press last night after news **got out** that her four-year marriage to actor Des Miles **had reached the end of the line**. In an emotional statement, Jodie said they **had done their utmost** to keep the marriage alive, but being **in the public eye coupled with** long periods of separation **had taken its toll**. Despite the news, her agent predicted that Jodie would **bounce back from** this current **setback**, and was determined it shouldn't **cast a shadow over** the release of her latest film. Jodie made a plea for fans to leave her in peace, before **fighting her way through** the crowd and into the back of a waiting car.

Glossary

get out	(of secrets or information) become known to the public. SYN **leak out**.
(**reach**) **the end of the line**/**road**	(reach) the point at which sth can no longer continue in the same way.
do/**try your utmost**	try as hard as you possibly can.
in the public eye	well known to many people through the media.
couple sth with sth	(usually passive) combine sth with sth (***coupled with sth*** = combined with sth).
take its toll (**on sb**/**sth**) / **take a heavy toll** (**on sb**/**sth**)	have a bad effect on sb/sth; cause damage, suffering, etc.
bounce back (**from sth**)	become confident, healthy, or successful again after having problems.
setback	a difficulty or disappointment that prevents progress or makes a situation worse. **set sb back** v.
cast a shadow (**over sth**)	make sb feel less happy or hopeful about sth.
fight your way (**through**/ **past sb**/**sth**)	move with difficulty through a crowd of people or through/past an obstacle.

4 Tick the correct answer(s). One, two, or three may be correct.

1 He always   his utmost to help.
tries ☐ makes ☐ does ☐
2 The injury has cast a   over her future.
shadow ☐ shade ☐ spell ☐
3 She fought her way   the crowd.
along ☐ past ☐ through ☐
4 The accident has taken   on him.
its toll ☐ a heavy toll ☐ a long toll ☐
5 This disappointment has really   her back.
settled ☐ driven ☐ set ☐
6 I think they've reached the end of the   .
line ☐ road ☐ path ☐

5 One word is missing in each line of the text. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

Although actress Corinne Black had tried her ∧ to keep it secret, the ▸ utmost
news out last night that she was being treated for a form of skin cancer. 1
As she struggled to fight her through the crowds at a charity gala, 2
she admitted to waiting reporters that being in the public had 3
made life difficult for her recently, and coupled the birth of her second 4
child only eleven months ago, the illness had her back quite 5
considerably, and taken a heavy on her. Despite this, she said 6
she was determined to back as soon as possible, and her condition 7
would certainly not a shadow over her son's first birthday next month. 8

33 I can describe extreme weather

A Disaster headlines

HURRICANE **RIPS THROUGH** WESTERN FLORIDA

Thousands evacuated as fire **takes hold** in Alicante province

HOUSES **SWEPT AWAY** BY FLOOD WATERS

Climate change **wreaks havoc on** coral reefs worldwide

Survivors **caught up in** north Indian floods **come to terms with** loss of homes

ETHIOPIA **IN THE GRIP OF** SEVERE DROUGHT

Coal mine **caves in** following flood, but no **lives lost**

BUSH FIRES IN SOUTHERN AUSTRALIA **WIPE OUT** WHOLE TOWNS

Glossary

rip through sth	move forcefully and rapidly through sth.
take (a) hold	become very strong and difficult to remove or stop.
sweep sth away	(often passive) (of floods, a tornado, etc.) completely destroy sth.
wreak havoc (on sth)	cause a lot of damage, destruction, or confusion.
be/get caught up in sth	become involved in sth undesirable.
come to terms with sth	gradually accept a difficult or unpleasant situation.
in the grip of sth	experiencing sth unpleasant that cannot be stopped.
cave in (on sb/sth)	(of a roof, wall, etc.) collapse and fall.
lose your life	be killed. **loss of life** N.
wipe sth/sb out	(often passive) destroy or get rid of sth/sb completely.

1 One word is wrong in each sentence. Cross it out and write the correct word at the end.

► My grandfather lost ~~the~~ life during the great storm of 1987. his
1 It's hard to get to terms with the loss of whole communities.
2 A South American civilization was wiped off by earthquakes 3,800 years ago.
3 The tornado is wreaking damage on all parts of the region.
4 The roof caved down, and the people below were lucky to survive.
5 Many tourists have been caught up on the forest fires in California.
6 As the fire started to make hold, people ran to escape the flames.

2 Complete the text with an idiom or phrasal verb from the box in the correct form.

caught up　come to terms ✓　sweep sth away　wreak havoc
rip through　cave in　loss of life　in the grip

Texans are counting the cost and beginning to ► come to terms with the devastation caused by bad weather: the state of Texas is (1) of the worst winter for twenty years. Fierce winds have (2) central Texas this week, and several tornadoes have (3) on a line of small towns in their path. Local resident Clint Vaughn saw his home (4) by rising floodwater. 'It came so fast, we barely had time to get out; we almost got (5) in the destruction; I stood with my mouth open as the roof of the house just (6) . It was terrifying,' Vaughn said. 'Astonishingly, there has been no (7) , but many have been injured and the hospitals are full to overflowing.'

B Heavy snow

The heavy and unexpected snowfall in recent days has had serious consequences.

Motorists **heading for** the city centre on the A36 **were caught unawares** as traffic **came to a standstill**. Trapped in their cars for hours, they were finally rescued and **towed away**.

Supplies of salt and grit for the roads **are running low**, which may **put lives at risk**.

Some rural areas **have been** completely **snowed in** and villages temporarily **cut off**.

Children **have been turned away** from schools due to teacher shortages, and workplaces have been closed **for the foreseeable future**.

Snow is still falling **thick and fast**, so the Met Office is advising people to stay at home.

Glossary

head for sth	move towards a place. SYN **make for sth**.
catch sb unawares	happen in a way that sb was not expecting and was not prepared for.
come to a standstill/halt	slowly stop completely. SYN **grind to a standstill/halt**.
tow sb/sth away	(of a driver or car) pull another car using a rope or chain.
run low	If your supply of sth **is running low** or you **are running low on** sth, you only have a little left.
at risk (**of/from sth**)	in danger of sth unpleasant or harmful happening (**put lives at risk**).
be snowed in	be unable to leave a place because of heavy snow.
be cut off	be unable to leave a place or receive visitors or services from outside.
turn sb away	refuse to allow sb to enter a place.
for the foreseeable future	for the period of time when you can predict what is going to happen, based on present circumstances.
thick and fast	happening very quickly and in large amounts or numbers.

3 Write in the missing preposition or adverb.

1 We were turned ______ from the factory.
2 They were snowed ______ for days.
3 The cottage was cut ______ .
4 Make ______ the nearest exit quickly.
5 Luckily, no lives were put ______ risk.
6 Traffic ground ______ a standstill.
7 The cars were towed ______ .
8 It will last ______ the foreseeable future.

4 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.

► The snow is falling heavily. FAST The snow is falling thick and fast.
1 The train gradually stopped. STANDSTILL
2 We couldn't contact anyone. CUT
3 They removed the car and took it to the police station. TOW
4 I went towards the hospital. HEAD
5 They refused to let us in the building. TURN
6 There is hardly any food left. LOW
7 We'll be cut off for some time. FORESEEABLE
8 I didn't expect so much snow. UNAWARES

Review: What's in the news?

Unit 27

1 Put the dominoes in the correct order to make a joined sequence of idioms. Write the correct order of dominoes below.

ring true	A household →	name.	Under →	pressure.	Off the

1	the mark	Go to great	7	record	Blow sth up out of
2	ring true	A household	8	doubt on sth	The sooner
3	pressure.	Off the	9	lengths	Sweep sth
4	the better	Bear	10	to light	It doesn't
5	all proportion	Cast	11	the brunt of sth	Overstep
6	under the carpet	Come	12	name.	Under

2 ,12 ,3 , , , , , , , , ,

2 Complete these opinions about stories in the press.

1 'I think the protesters are just   up trouble; things are perfectly all right as they are.'
2 'This is a huge scandal for the government, and it won't just blow   if the Prime Minister takes no action. He's hoping it will all   away, but it won't.'
3 'Every day new information leaks   , and if it   for the press, we wouldn't know any of it. It's a disgrace.'
4 'We've known for years that things were bad, but now everything is out in the   , it's even more shocking than expected. The politicians have really   the mark.'
5 'It's time we put   on our leaders to reform the laws on privacy, and the   the better as far as I'm concerned.'
6 'I used to have mixed   about the government, but now I'm sure they've been covering things up. I voted for them because I thought they would   out corruption, but we now see that quite the reverse has happened. I'm very shocked.'

Unit 28

1 A word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

▸ Police are ⁄ up the search for the missing teenager. stepping
1 The thief was arrested in of a considerable amount of jewellery.
2 Certain companies need to clean up act with regard to tax evasion.
3 When journalists go cover, they can put themselves in considerable danger.
4 The gang were just in wait for Richards; he didn't stand a chance.
5 The opposition party is going the offensive over European legislation.
6 Police in Leeds are the lookout for a gang of bicycle thieves.
7 The manager was held up gunpoint and forced to hand over the cash.
8 An enquiry has been ordered in the of the explosion at the power plant.

2 Complete the dialogues. You will find one of the words for each idiom or phrasal verb in the box.

crack up name ✓ tip clear astray bud daylight

▸ Did he prove he was innocent? ~ Yes, he was able to clear his name .
1 Who gave the police the information? ~ They were by a shopkeeper.
2 The older boys are a bad influence on Sam. ~ Yes, they're him .
3 Was the burglary at night? ~ No, it was in , but no one saw anything.
4 The police won't press charges. ~ That's right. He's completely .
5 Is the crime rate rising? ~ Yes, it's .
6 They should stop it before it gets worse. ~ Yes, they should it .
7 We need to deal with burglary more severely. ~ Yes, we need to on it.

Unit 29

1 Using the verbs in the box in the correct form, complete the texts about an anti-war demonstration seen from different perspectives.

turn out pave stand up bring pass off spread cordon off call on
board up make break up

DEMONSTRATOR The demonstration was an opportunity for us to (1) for what we believe in and (2) the word to as many people as possible. We hope this will (3) the way for further demonstrations in the future.

POLICE The protesters (4) their way along Prince Street, but we (5) part of Parliament Square for security reasons.

ANTI-WAR POLITICIAN The protesters were exercising their democratic right to protest by (6) the government to (7) an end to this pointless war.

PRO-WAR POLITICIAN The protesters claimed there would be massive support for this demonstration, but fewer than 5,000 (8) , so it was both a failure and a huge waste of police resources.

ONLOOKER The police had to (9) one or two fights between pro- and anti-war demonstrators, but in general it seemed to (10) quite peacefully.

SHOPKEEPER If they want to demonstrate, why don't they go to a public park? I lost money because I had to close my shop and (11) the windows.

Unit 30

1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

▸ They're talking / the latest opinion-poll results, but in fact they're terrible. up .
1 The truth about politics is that it all boils to a matter of trust.
2 I'm prepared to give them the of the doubt – but it's the last time.
3 I thought they would compromise, but they wouldn't an inch.
4 In the analysis, we have no choice but to vote against the government.
5 It's high time the party put its own in order.
6 The minister just the figures out of the air; it was obviously nonsense.
7 I wanted to believe her, but her story just didn't up.
8 We definitely need to capitalize this success while we can.

2 Complete the sentences, using idioms from the table in the correct form. You can move horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.

COME	UNDER	QUICK	MARK	HAVE
A	FIRE	OFF	THE	A
WAR	OF	WORDS	DAY	FIELD
NECK	AND	CLIMB	ON	THE
STOP	NECK	WELL ←	BODE	BANDWAGON
THE	ROT	A	WAKE-UP	CALL

► The results of the opinion polls don't bode well for the government.

1 The press have heard rumours about illegal activities in the Independent Party; they will with that.

2 The results of these local elections should act as for the government.

3 The results were incredibly close: the two candidates are running .

4 Car manufacturers will in the press today for continuing to ignore government calls for better safety.

5 Tensions have been heightened between the two countries because of over territorial disputes.

6 To regain its global status, the city must try to which has set in over the last few years.

7 The candidate saw that voters were increasingly interested in green issues, and as a result, we saw him . It's deeply cynical of him.

8 The government has been surprisingly in introducing new climate change legislation.

Unit 31

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

1	We can ill afford to do nothing.	Our best solution would be to do nothing.
2	Shall we meet them halfway?	Shall we accept some of their demands?
3	I'm sure they'll close ranks on this.	I'm sure they won't support their party on this.
4	I think they'll bite the bullet.	I think they'll break ranks.
5	We need to stand firm on this.	We need to stick to our guns on this.
6	Our future hangs in the balance.	Our future is looking more secure.
7	They're at loggerheads over this.	They're locked in dispute over this.
8	We're in the firing line.	We're fighting a losing battle.

2 Circle the correct word.

1 If the law is passed, it will *release* | *open* the floodgates for thousands of people to request compensation.

2 They've been locked in battle for months, and they're still poles *apart* | *away*.

3 On this issue, the government is out of *pass* | *step* with the voters.

4 There is a *running* | *crying* need for improvement in train services.

5 If we can get extra staff, it will free us *up* | *out* to concentrate on the key problems.

6 I didn't expect him to *side* | *keep* with the director. I feel very let down.

7 We have no choice but to press *ahead* | *over* with the scheme, despite the protests.

8 He's trying to keep a foot in both *camps* | *sides*, but it won't work.

Unit 32

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out a word. What is it?

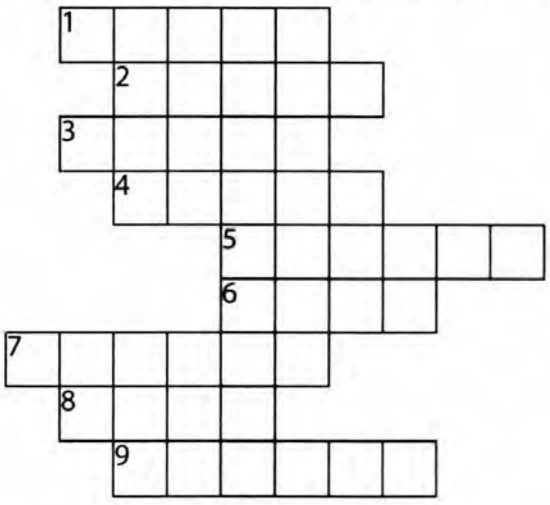

1 Most people don't realize that fame comes at a : a complete lack of privacy.
2 One TV appearance alone has the power to make or a new performer.
3 The press is happy to young people up, but just as happy to knock them down.
4 When people are fragile, we need to carefully and handle them sensitively.
5 The group are remarkably resilient, and after this setback I'm sure they will back.
6 Let's hope that she overcomes her nerves and can to the occasion on Saturday.
7 Anyone who is in the eye will tell you that it's not all fun and games.
8 The scandal described in the magazine will a shadow over his career.
9 Winning the competition would be my wildest dreams.
The word in the grey squares is .

2 There is one word too many in each line. Cross it out.

► As the money disappeared, all their promises fell ~~down~~ by the wayside.
1 Having so many children has taken its heavy toll on her health. She's exhausted.
2 Smoking is coupled with obesity greatly increases heart problems.
3 Winning the competition has clearly gone up to her head. She's unbearable.
4 We had to fight for our way past the hundreds of people outside the theatre.
5 I can't promise anything, but I will certainly try to my utmost to do it by tonight.
6 My sister went to the pieces when I told her the cat had died. She really loved it.

Unit 33

1 Complete the idiom or phrasal verb in each sentence.

1 The train slowed down and eventually ground to a .
2 Another earthquake will put more lives at .
3 The road will remain closed for the foreseeable .
4 The hurricane will wreak when it hits the coast.
5 Once the forest fires take a , they are almost impossible to stop.
6 The people are still coming to with the loss of their homes.

2 Read the text, then replace the underlined phrases with idioms and phrasal verbs.

► coming to terms with
1
2
3
4 .
5
6
7

People are still ► accepting the idea of the heaviest snowfall in the United Kingdom for many years. Thousands of motorists driving home yesterday afternoon were (1) very surprised to find themselves in difficulty as the snow fell (2) quickly and heavily, and traffic on several motorways (3) stopped completely. Many cars had to be (4) pulled away by trucks, and the emergency services have warned that conditions could get worse. In the countryside, many people were (5) unable to leave their homes because of the snow this morning and couldn't get to work, and in parts of Wales, whole villages are (6) isolated by the snow. The meteorological office say we are now (7) experiencing the coldest winter on record.

34 I can talk about communicators

A Good communicators

Good communicators are people who:

- are first of all good listeners, and really **take in** what others have to say.
- make sure their body language **isn't at odds with** what they are saying.
- **pick up on** little things that are important to people, such as important names or dates.
- **keep** people **in the picture** about things.
- know when to distribute information **on a need-to-know basis**.
- don't **get** people's **backs up** by being rude, aggressive, dismissive, etc.
- **win** people **over** rather than make demands.
- are prepared to **open up to** people, so that others will open up to them.

Glossary

take sth in	understand, absorb, and remember new facts and information.
be at odds with sth	be in conflict with sth; contradict sth.
pick up on sth	notice sth and perhaps react to it.
on a need-to-know basis	so that sb is told only what they need to know and only when they need to know it.
get sb's back up	INF annoy sb.
win sb over/round (to sth)	get sb's support or approval by persuading them you are right or sth is right.
open up (to sb)	talk about what you really feel and think.

spotlight Giving people information

If you **put sb in the picture**, you give them the information they need to understand a situation. If you **keep sb in the picture**, you continue to give them the necessary information. SYN **keep sb posted (about/on sth)**. If you **get the picture**, you understand a situation that somebody is describing to you.

1 Cover the glossary, then answer the questions.

1 If someone puts you in the picture, what do they do?
2 Are you pleased if someone keeps you posted?
3 If someone gets your back up, how do you feel?
4 If you win someone over, what does that involve?
5 If you say to someone that you get the picture, what does it tell them?
6 If you've picked up on something, what have you done?
7 If you open up to someone, what do you do?
8 If what someone says is at odds with what they do, are you pleased?

2 Complete the final word in each dialogue.

1 Did you understand everything? ~ No, I couldn't take it all .
2 Do you want to know what's happening? ~ Yes, could you keep me ?
3 Do you find him annoying as well? ~ Yes, he really gets my back .
4 Do you have all the details? ~ No, but Jane will put me in the .
5 Do you give them much information? ~ Only on a need-to-know .
6 They will need persuading. ~ Don't worry. Pete will soon win them .

3 ABOUT YOU What are the three most important points at the top of the page? Which are you good at or bad at? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B A poor communicator

HOLLY Do you think Jonathan will use our ideas in the advertising campaign?

JAKE I think he's **mulling** them **over**, but **reading between the lines** I'd say 'maybe'.

HOLLY He doesn't **give** much **away**, does he?

JAKE No. He doesn't **let** anyone **in on** what he's thinking. He prefers to **keep things to himself**, which is probably why we end up **getting the wrong end of the stick** so often.

HOLLY Doesn't it **occur to** him that it's very frustrating to **be kept in the dark** like this?

JAKE No. **It makes no odds** to him what people think. Or if he does care, he doesn't **let on**.

Glossary

mull sth over	spend time thinking carefully about a plan or proposal.
read between the lines	look for or discover a meaning that is suggested rather than actually stated.
give sth/sb away	make known sth that sb wants to keep secret.
let sb in on sth	INF allow sb to share a secret, or know what only a few people know.
get (hold of) the wrong end of the stick	INF understand sth in the wrong way.
occur to sb	(of an idea or a thought) come into sb's mind.
it makes no odds	INF used to say that sth makes no difference or is not important.
let on (to sb about sth)	INF tell sb sth, especially sth you have been keeping secret.

spotlight Keeping information back

If you **keep sth to yourself**, you don't tell others about it. If you **play/hold/keep your cards close to your chest**, you keep your plans or ideas secret. If you **keep sb in the dark**, you don't tell them something because you want to keep it secret from them.

4 Do you know? Write 'yes', or 'perhaps', or 'no'.

1 He plays his cards close to his chest.
2 He gave it away.
3 I'm reading between the lines.
4 He let on.
5 It didn't occur to him to tell me.
6 He let me in on it.
7 He kept me in the dark.
8 I got the wrong end of the stick.

5 Rewrite the sentences starting with the words given.

▸	I haven't told people about the project.	I've kept the project to myself.
1	I don't tell other people my ideas.	I keep my cards .
2	I completely misunderstood what he meant.	I got .
3	It should've stayed a secret but I told someone.	I gave .
4	I wanted to think about it.	I wanted to mull .
5	I didn't tell her because I didn't want her to know.	I kept .
6	He didn't tell me exactly but I knew what he meant.	I read .
7	I don't realize that I'm being secretive.	It doesn't .
8	I don't care what people think.	It makes .

35 I can use the language of discussion

A Winning the argument

In a heated discussion, how annoyed are you by people who: very/quite/not at all

- want to win the argument **at all costs**?
- **play devil's advocate** all the time?
- constantly **butt in** when you're trying to speak?
- **beat about the bush** all the time instead of **getting to the point**?
- always seem to **miss the point** of what people are saying?
- always want to **have the last word**?
- just want to argue **for the sake of it**?
- refuse to **back down** and admit they are wrong?

Glossary

at all costs	used to say that something must be done, however difficult it is. SYN **at any cost/price**.
play devil's advocate	pretend to disagree with sb in order to start an argument or discussion.
butt in	interrupt sb.
beat about the bush	discuss sth in an indirect way, without saying what you really want to say. (👁 See page 162.)
get to the point	stop talking about unimportant details and say what is most important.
miss the point	not understand the main thing that sb is trying to say.
have the last/final word (on sth)	win an argument by making the last statement or final decision on sth.
for the sake of it	If you do sth **for the sake of it**, you do it because you enjoy it, not because you want to achieve anything else.
back down (on sth)	admit that you are wrong or have lost an argument.

1 Is the meaning similar or different? Write S or D.

1	She always has the final word.	She always butts in.
2	He wants to win at all costs.	He wants to win at any price.
3	She never gets to the point.	She always misses the point.
4	He keeps butting in when I'm talking.	He keeps interrupting when I'm talking.
5	He loves to play devil's advocate.	He often argues for the sake of it.
6	She doesn't beat about the bush.	She never backs down.

2 Complete the sentences.

1 I never get a chance to finish what I'm saying, because he keeps in.
2 Mr Ellis explained it carefully, but Anya still completely the point.
3 Stop about the bush and get to the of what you're trying to say.
4 However much you argue with her, she always has to have the final .
5 Even if you prove he's wrong, he still won't down.
6 I don't think she disagreed with you. She was just playing advocate because she enjoys arguing for the of it.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers in the questionnaire at the top of the page, or talk to another student. Do you do any of these things?

B Discussion topics

Do you believe in **life after death**?

Are exams **a necessary evil**?

In life, **we get what we deserve**. Discuss.

Does **the end** ever **justify the means**?

We all have to **play a part in** the fight against crime. Do you agree?

Giving women equal pay may be **politically correct**, but is it **going too far?**

Why do some teenagers **go off the rails**, while others don't?

We still haven't **got to grips with** traffic congestion and pollution. Why not?

Is it true that **you can't teach an old dog new tricks**?

Glossary

life after death	a state of existence that some people believe continues after death.
a necessary evil	an unwelcome thing that we have to accept.
you get what you deserve	used to say you think sb has earned the bad things that happen to them.
the end justifies the means	SAYING bad or unfair methods of doing sth are acceptable if the result of the action is good or positive.
play a part in sth	be actively involved in sth.
politically correct	(abbreviated to **PC**) used to describe carefully chosen language or behaviour that won't upset or offend anybody. **political correctness** N.
go too far	say or do sth which is considered too extreme.
go off the rails	INF start behaving in an unacceptable way that shocks or upsets people.
get to grips with sth	start to deal with a difficult task, problem, or situation.
you can't teach an old dog new tricks	SAYING you can't make people change their methods and ideas when they have used or held them for a long time.

4 Complete the text.

We have CCTV (closed circuit television) everywhere these days. Has it (1) too far? I believe the increase in the number of cameras is simply a symptom of the dangerous society we live in. If cameras help to reduce crime, then as far as I'm concerned, we have to get to (2) with the idea and accept that the end (3) the means. Basically, we get what we (4) . I know that's not the (5) correct view, as CCTV is seen as an infringement of our personal liberty, but we all have to play a (6) in reducing crime, and if CCTV helps us to do that, then it's a necessary (7) .

5 Respond to each situation with a suitable idiom.

- ▶ It seems an extreme solution. ~ Yes, but the end justifies the means .
- 1 Can he change his ways after all this time? ~ No, you .
- 2 Is it right for us to suffer for these mistakes? ~ Yes, we .
- 3 I don't like prisons, but we can't do without them. ~ Yes, they're .
- 4 Do people live on after they die? ~ No, I don't believe in .
- 5 Their response was excessive. ~ Yes, they've .
- 6 We're not supposed to say, 'she's only a housewife'. ~ No, it's not .
- 7 Traffic congestion is a really urgent problem. ~ Yes, we'll have to .
- 8 His son's started missing school and hanging around in a gang. ~ Yes, he's really .

6 ABOUT YOU What's your opinion on the discussion topics at the top of the page? And CCTV? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

36 I can talk about presentations

Excellence
Quality

A Advice on giving a presentation

- You owe it to your audience to prepare thoroughly, so don't just **wing it**.
- Decide on just two or three main messages that you want them to **come away with**.
- **Draw on** your own experience: this will give the talk greater credibility.
- If you're worried about anything in the talk, **run** it **by** someone you know first.
- Arrive with plenty of **time to spare** and make sure all the equipment **is set up** and in good working order. This will help to **put** your **mind at rest** before you start.
- Start with something to **make** people **sit up and take notice**; laughter often helps to **loosen up** an audience. They want the talk to succeed, and they will be **rooting for** you.

Glossary

wing it	INF do sth without preparation or plans.
come away with sth	leave a place with new knowledge or ideas or a particular impression.
draw on sth	use experience, knowledge, or a supply of sth that you have gained over time.
run sth by sb	tell sb your ideas so that they can give their opinion.
time/money/room, etc. **to spare**	more than enough time/money/room, etc.
set sth up	make a piece of equipment ready to use.
put sb's mind at rest/ease	stop sb feeling worried.
make sb sit up (**and take notice**)	do sth surprising or impressive that makes sb pay attention to you.
loosen sb up	make sb more relaxed (also **loosen up** become more relaxed).
root for sb	(usually in progressive tenses) support and encourage sb in a competition or a difficult situation. (Also **cheer sb on** shout encouragement at sb in a competition.)

1 Tick the words in italics which are possible. One, two, or three may be correct.

1 I don't have a great deal of *help* ☐ *time* ☐ *money* ☐ to spare.
2 Did you come away from the talk with any *ideas* ☐ *thoughts* ☐ *advice* ☐?
3 It would be wise to run your *speech* ☐ *idea* ☐ *plan* ☐ by your boss first.
4 Could you help me set up this *PC* ☐ *car* ☐ *armchair* ☐?
5 This time I had to draw on my *savings* ☐ *experience* ☐ *friends* ☐.
6 If you talk to your sister, it'll put her mind at *ease* ☐ *safety* ☐ *rest* ☐.

2 Complete the questions.

1 If you had to give a speech, would you prepare thoroughly, or just try to it?
2 Would you start with something that would make the audience up and take , or begin in a more low-key way?
3 Is it advisable to your speech by someone else to see what they think?
4 Do you agree that you should always try to up the audience with humour?
5 If you were giving a talk, would you want your friends/colleagues in the audience, rooting you?
6 What kinds of things can you do to set your at rest before you get up to speak?

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B How not to give a presentation

We had to **sit through** Rob's disastrous presentation to the group today. We were overloaded with information, and he completely **lost sight of** the main points; he should **have pared** it **down**. He thought a good powerpoint would compensate for poor presentation skills, but **nothing could have been further from the truth**. Most of the time he spoke too slowly (one or two people **were nodding off**). Then Dr Eisner asked him a tricky question and you could see the panic **set in**. When Elaine asked about projected sales, he **jumped in** before she'd finished, and they ended up **at cross purposes**. He was hoping it would be the presentation **of his life**, but instead, he ended up **a nervous wreck**.

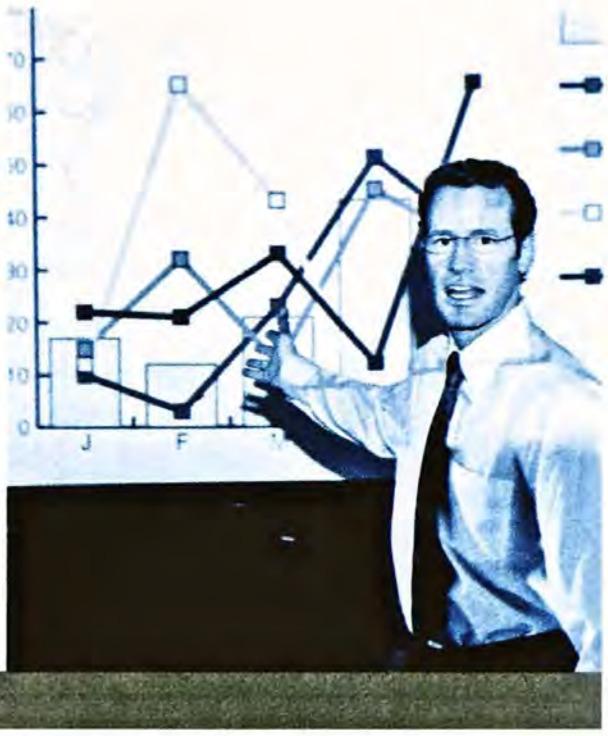

Glossary

sit through sth	stay till the end of a speech, performance, etc. that you think is boring or too long.
lose sight of sth	stop considering sth and forget about it.
pare sth down	reduce the size or amount of sth, especially with lots of small reductions.
nothing could be further from the truth	used to emphasize that sth is definitely not true.
nod off	INF fall asleep for a short time while sitting in a chair.
set in	If sth unpleasant **sets in**, it starts to have an effect which could continue for a long time. (*Panic/The rain/The winter* ***set in***.)
jump in	interrupt sb while they are talking. SYN **butt in**.
(**talk**) **at cross purposes**	If two people are (**talking**) **at cross purposes** they think they are talking about the same thing, but in fact they are not.
a nervous wreck	INF a person who is very upset and worried.

spotlight *of your life*

The phrase **of your life** is used to emphasize that something is the best or worst that you have experienced. It follows a noun or a noun phrase.

He gave the speech ***of his life***. = the best speech he has given.

I had the fright ***of my life***. = the most frightening experience ever.

4 Positive or negative? Write P or N.

1 They're talking at cross purposes.
2 No one nodded off.
3 She gave the talk of her life.
4 Her nerves started to set in.
5 We had to sit through the presentation.
6 He didn't lose sight of his aims.

5 Complete the conversations. Then underline the full phrasal verbs and idioms.

1 A I got the shock of my ______ today.
B Why? What happened?
A Well, I had to sit ______ a dreadful meeting on government borrowing this morning, and unfortunately I happened to ______ off for a few minutes. But this afternoon I discovered that someone had posted a video of me snoring on YouTube!

2 A I thought the new accountant was OK, but nothing could be further from the ______.
B What do you mean?
A Well, he dominated the meeting and ______ in every time I tried to speak.

3 A How did your talk go?
B Well, I was a nervous ______ beforehand, but I'd run it by my boss, and he'd helped me to ______ it down so it was a lot clearer and shorter. He reminded me not to lose ______ of my main points, and I think in the end it went quite well.

37 I can talk about meetings

A First meetings

How did your first meeting go?

OLGA When I met my new boss, it wasn't exactly **a meeting of minds**. I didn't know what to **make of** him really, and **to start with**, I just had to **play it by ear**. But we're OK now.

JACEK My new host family are fantastic! We got on really well **right from the word go**. They welcomed me **with open arms**, and I **felt at home** almost immediately.

KARIN I met my boyfriend on the Internet and I reckoned we'd **be on the same wavelength**. But as I was driving to meet him in person, **my heart was in my mouth**. He was lovely, though, and I **was** immediately **struck by** his quirky sense of fun.

Glossary

a meeting of minds	a situation in which people have similar ideas and opinions.
make sth of sb/sth	understand or regard sb/sth in a particular way.
play it by ear	deal with a situation by reacting as things happen, rather than having a plan.
(**right**) **from the word go**	(right) from the beginning.
with open arms	If you welcome or greet sb **with open arms**, you welcome them in a very affectionate and enthusiastic way.
(**feel**) **at home**	(feel) comfortable and relaxed.
be on the same wavelength	INF (of two or more people) think in a similar way about sth.
my heart was in my mouth	used to say you felt very nervous or frightened about sth.
be struck by sb/sth	INF be impressed by or interested in sth.

spotlight *to start with*

To start/begin with can mean 'at the beginning' (as above), but it can also be used to emphasize a list of points to support an argument e.g. *The hotel was awful.* ***To start with****, the room was dirty, then the service … .* SYN **for a start**.

1 True or false? Write T or F.

1 If you *play it by ear*, you start out with a clear plan of what you want to do.
2 If there's *a meeting of minds* between you and your boss, you understand each other.
3 If you liked your job *from the word go*, it means you liked it from the beginning.
4 If you're *on the same wavelength* as a colleague, you think in a similar way.
5 If you*'re struck by* a new colleague's personality, you don't like them.
6 If *your heart is in your mouth*, you're feeling very worried about something.

2 Complete the dialogues. You may need more than one word.

1 Did you feel relaxed with them? ~ Yes, they really made me feel .
2 Were they pleased to see you? ~ Yeah, they welcomed me .
3 Did you know what she meant? ~ Well, to I didn't, but then I got it in the end.
4 Mrs Esposito was very odd, wasn't she? ~ Hmm, I didn't know what to make .
5 I bet he was nervous before the presentation. ~ Yes, his heart .
6 Will you just see how things go? ~ I think that's best. I'll just play .
7 Why were you fed up? ~ Well, for , the room was cold, then I couldn't hear what anyone was saying. In the end, I just sat and doodled.
8 Did you have a good rapport with them? ~ Yes, we got on from .

3 ABOUT YOU Can you remember any first meetings with people? Who were they with, and how did they go? Write your answer in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B Badly run meetings

The chairperson may be responsible when a meeting goes badly. Here's why:

- Participants are allowed to arrive **in dribs and drabs**.
- They don't know what's happening because the chairperson **has thrown together** the agenda at the last minute, and **has**n't **laid down** clear rules for the conduct of the meeting.
- Without firm guidance from the chair, one or two people may **hold the floor** and **ramble on** for ages, and as a result, the meeting **runs over** with nothing achieved.
- Poor time management may mean people **rush into** decisions, or that decisions **are left hanging**.
- One person at the meeting (often the chairperson) **forges ahead with** their own agenda, **to the detriment of** the meeting and the other participants.

Glossary

in dribs and drabs	gradually and in small amounts or numbers.
throw sth together	make or produce sth in a hurry.
lay sth down	officially state rules, principles, etc. that people must obey or follow.
hold the floor	speak during a discussion, especially for a long time so that nobody else can speak.
ramble on	INF speak about sth for a long time in a boring or confusing way.
run over	continue for longer than planned.
rush into sth	do sth without thinking carefully about it first.
leave sth hanging	fail to make a definite decision or statement about sth.
forge ahead (**with sth**)	make strong and steady progress with sth.
to the detriment of sth/sb	resulting in harm or damage to sth/sb.

4 Write sentences using words from each column.

I threw ✓	on	and drabs
They arrived	was left	so others can't speak
Don't rush	ran	some lunch ✓
We're forging	together ✓	a decision
The situation	into	with the plans
She rambled	in dribs	for hours
The meeting	the floor	hanging for days
Don't hold	ahead	over by half an hour

I threw together some lunch.

5 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep the same meaning.

▸ The meeting went on longer than it should have. RUN *The meeting ran over.*
1 The measures will harm patient care. DETRIMENT
2 The chairperson informed us of the rules of the meeting. LAY
3 Dad wouldn't stop talking about the wedding. ON
4 Don't make your mind up too quickly. RUSH
5 The money was released very gradually. DRIBS
6 They produced a video in a hurry. THROW
7 We're making excellent progress with the project. AHEAD
8 I don't want to leave the situation unresolved. HANG

38 I can use idioms for commenting

A Commenting on a situation

Mrs Aswad told me **in no uncertain terms** what she thought of Amina Baba.

It**'s common knowledge** Dima's a member of the Communist party. **Contrary to popular belief**, however, his wife isn't.

It's my car **in name only**. **To all intents and purposes**, it belongs to my son.

He agreed to consider an operation on his eye, but only **as a last resort**.

Mac said we'd get fourteen in the minibus **at a push**, but **strictly speaking** it's only supposed to hold twelve.

All things being equal, I'd rather go to university near where I live.

Glossary

in no uncertain terms	clearly and directly.
be common knowledge	be sth that everyone knows.
contrary to popular belief	used to emphasize that what you are saying is the opposite of what many people think.
in name only	If sth exists **in name only**, it is officially described in a particular way, but the description is not really true.
to all intents and purposes	used to say that although sth is not exactly true or accurate, the effect is the same as if it were true or accurate.
as a last resort	used to say you will do sth only after trying everything else to solve a problem. SYN **if all else fails**.
at a push/pinch	INF If you can do sth **at a push/pinch**, you can do it, but only with difficulty.
strictly speaking	= being completely correct and accurate.
all (other) things being equal	used when saying what you would normally choose unless there were special facts to consider.

1 Cover the glossary, then complete the last word of each idiom.

- ► as a last resort
- 1 in no uncertain
- 2 to all intents and
- 3 all other things being
- 4 contrary to popular
- 5 strictly

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 Is it your flat? ~ In only. My brother lives there most of the time.
2 Would you rather give the job to a woman? ~ Yes, all other things being .
3 Can we get three in the back of the car? ~ Yes, at a .
4 Are you retired? ~ No, I'm still working, to popular belief.
5 Do people know about their engagement? ~ Yes, it's common now.
6 Are they living separately? ~ Yes, to all and purposes.

3 Rewrite the sentences using idioms from above. Keep the meaning the same.

► If there's no reason not to, I'll vote for Cal. All things being equal, I'll vote for Cal.
1 He told me very clearly what he thought of me.
2 Everyone knows they're married.
3 We can only just get six people round the table.
4 I'll sell the car if there's no other solution.
5 To be completely accurate, a tomato is a fruit.
6 Most people think he's Welsh, but it's not true.

B Expressing an attitude

They'll be lucky to find a restaurant open at this time of night.

She's clever, **I'll give you that**, but I don't trust her.

I think we should help Grandad – **it's the very least we can do**.

I have to work this weekend, **worse luck**! Still, I'm on holiday next week, **thank goodness**.

They all filed in, and **last but not least** came John.

I thought it was **a bit late in the day** for the woman to complain about the shoes: she's worn them for two months!

He can go and live in Las Vegas **for all I care**.

It's all very well for him **to** say it's not important, but I've worked hard on this project.

Glossary

you'll/they'll, etc. **be lucky**	INF used to tell sb/others that what they want probably will not happen.
I'll give you that	INF used to admit that sth is true, even though you do not like it, or do not agree with things related to it.
it's the (**very**) **least I can do**	INF used to say you are willing to do sth, and feel you should probably do more.
worse luck!	INF used to show that you are disappointed or annoyed about sth.
thank goodness	used to say that you are relieved and pleased about sth.
last but not least	used when mentioning the last person or thing in a group in order to say that they are as important as the others.
(**a bit**) **late in the day**	too late to take action. (The speaker is usually annoyed.)
for all sb cares	INF used to say that a person is not worried about or interested in what happens to sb/sth.
it's/that's all very well (**for sb**) (**to do sth**)	used to show your irritation with a comment that sb has made.

4 Cross out the wrong answer, then underline the full idiom in each sentence.

1 I'll give you a hand tomorrow – it's the *least* | *little* I can do.
2 They all got here – last *and* | *but* not least was Tom.
3 I won't be able to see them, *worse* | *worst* luck.
4 They were better than us. ~ Yeah, *I* | *I'll* give you that.
5 I felt it was a bit *late* | *later* in the day for her to call off the party.
6 I'm hoping to leave work early today. ~ You'll *have* | *be* lucky.
7 It's all *quite* | *very* well for the teacher to say the test was easy - she didn't have to do it.
8 I could be seriously ill for *all* | *everything* she cares.

5 Express the ideas on the left starting with the words given.

▸ Say it's now too late for Bill to cancel.	It's a bit late in the day for Bill to cancel.
1 Say you're disappointed you have to stay in.	I have to .
2 Say you're relieved that Kara arrived safely.	Kara arrived .
3 Tell Ken you'll help him, and wish you could do more.	I'll help you – .
4 Say you're not bothered if Miles decides to live abroad.	Miles can live .
5 Admit that the weather is better in Spain.	The weather .
6 Tell someone they probably won't find a taxi.	You'll .

39 I can use idioms for emphasis

A Adding emphasis

These idioms go within a sentence, or are added at the end, to emphasize what is being said.

It's **by far** the best film Almodovar has made.

My brother sometimes leaves his bike in the hall **for weeks on end**.

I think we are **well and truly** lost.

Dartmouth is the best place to stay **without a doubt**.

Max was here a minute ago, then he disappeared – **just like that**.

The owner of the shop was very helpful, and gave us a free map **into the bargain**.

My next-door neighbour is **ever such a** kind woman.

He's **not just any** doctor – he's a top surgeon.

He hasn't eaten all day, so **no wonder** he's hungry.

I've spent £200 this week **as it is**.

Glossary

by far	(used with comparative and superlative adjectives or adverbs) by a large amount. SYN **far and away**.
for hours/days/weeks on end	used for emphasizing how long sth continues.
well and truly	INF completely.
without (a) doubt	used to emphasize an opinion.
just like that	INF suddenly, without warning or explanation.
into the bargain	in addition to the things already mentioned.
ever such (a) / ever so	INF (used before adjectives/adverbs) very; really.
not just any	used to say that sb or sth is not ordinary, but is especially good or important.
no wonder	used to emphasize the fact that sth is not surprising.
as it is	already (used to express concern that an amount or number will increase further).

1 Replace the word(s) in italics with an idiom that keeps a similar meaning.

1 He recommended a place to stay, and gave me a lift there *as well.*
2 Happily the war is now *completely* over.
3 They were *very* grateful for our help.
4 She is *easily* the best student in the class.
5 He didn't sleep well, so *it's not surprising* he's tired now.
6 They kept me waiting for a reply for days *and days.*

2 Add an idiom to emphasize what is being said. Rewrite the sentence with the idiom in the correct place.

▸ He said he had a problem, and left. He said he had a problem and left, just like that.
1 It's the best part of town.
2 He gave me a discount, and wrapped it up nicely.
3 Karoly's a generous guy.
4 Unfortunately the party was over when we arrived.
5 I think it's her most interesting novel.
6 I've been back there three times today; I don't want to go again.
7 She ate some seafood that was off, so she's feeling ill.
8 It's silk. It's the finest silk you can buy.

B Exaggeration

Some idioms give a more colourful and emphatic description of a situation or someone's state. They are often informal, and more commonly used in spoken English.

Neutral message	Exaggerated message
Rodney is better than the rest of us at maths.	*Rodney is **streets ahead of** the rest of us at maths.* INF = much better than the rest. SYN **head and shoulders above sb** INF.
My cousin is lazy.	*My cousin **doesn't do a stroke of work**.* INF = does no work at all.
The two boys get on well.	*The two boys **get on like a house on fire**.* INF = like each other very much.
I didn't know what to say.	*I **was lost for words**.* = was so surprised or shocked that I didn't know what to say.
There was some trouble at the party.	***All hell broke loose** at the party.* INF = sth happened which caused people to get angry and start fighting or arguing.
I stayed out of his way.	*I **avoided him like the plague**.* = INF was determined to keep away from him completely.
I was surprised when he said he was going abroad.	*I **couldn't believe my ears** when he said he was going abroad.* INF = was extremely surprised.
Transport groups are angry about the increased fares.	*Transport groups are **up in arms about** the increased fares.* INF = extremely angry. Also **up in arms over sth**.
We'll have to work hard to get the show ready on time.	*We'll have to **pull out all the stops** to get the show ready on time.* INF = make the greatest effort possible.
I'd like to be in his position.	***I'd give my right arm to** be in his position.* INF = would do anything.
Dad was angry about me staying out late and told me off.	*My dad **came down on me like a ton of bricks**.* INF = was extremely angry with me and told me off severely. (It could also mean to punish sb severely.)
She talks a lot.	*She **doesn't half** talk a lot!* INF **not half** is used to emphasize a statement or opinion.

3 Cover the table above. Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 I avoided them like the
2 I couldn't believe my
3 She was lost for
4 We'll have to pull out all the
5 They get on like a house on
6 He came down on her like a ton of
7 All hell broke
8 He doesn't do a stroke of

a work.
b stops.
c plague.
d loose.
e words.
f fire.
g ears.
h bricks.

4 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals to emphasize what is being said.

▸ They get on well. FIRE They get on like a house on fire.
1 She'd love to go waterskiing. ARM
2 They'll have to work hard. PULL
3 They're very angry over it. ARMS
4 I was surprised when I heard the news. EARS
5 They're much better than me. STREETS
6 That boy does nothing. STROKE
7 She really told him off. BRICKS
8 I didn't go anywhere near her. PLAGUE
9 These guys work hard. HALF
10 There was a lot of trouble. HELL

Review: Communication

Unit 34

1 The same word is missing from each pair of sentences. Write it in.

1 a Could you me posted, please?
b They wanted to us in the dark about the results.
2 a She knew I was getting married, but she didn't on to Jimmy.
b I wish they'd me in on the secret; it's very frustrating!
3 a I'd like a couple of days to mull their offer.
b She tried hard to win him , but he refused to be persuaded.
4 a He got of the wrong end of the stick.
b I tend to my cards close to my chest.
5 a His actions are at with what he says.
b It makes no to me when we leave.
6 a That woman really puts my back !
b I'd like you to open to me and tell me what's wrong.
7 a You'll be told a need-to-know basis.
b She's very observant; she picked up a tiny detail in the painting.
8 a I decided it was time to put him in the about the new plans.
b I'd be grateful if you could keep me in the as things develop.

2 Put the words in order and add one more word.

► the | stick | we | the | got | wrong | of We got the wrong end of the stick.
1 it | take | can't | all | I
2 idea | the | like | our | lines | he | doesn't | reading
3 could | me | it | occurred | she | that | wrong | be
4 we | odds | it | him | makes | to | lose | if
5 her | she | chest | to | her | plays | close
6 to | a | it's | so | secret | it | yourself

Unit 35

1 Correct the mistakes where necessary. Be careful: some sentences are correct.

1 If you vote for that party, you'll take what you deserve.
2 I agreed with the speaker, but it took him ages to get round the point.
3 He used to be a model citizen, but for some reason, he got off the rails.
4 That's all very well, but I think you're missing the point completely.
5 Look, stop beating about the bushes and tell me what you know!
6 It's a hard lesson to learn, but the ending justifies the means.
7 I've come to realize that stress at work is a necessary devil.
8 That woman complains just for the sake of it.
9 I have several friends who believe in live after death.
10 Nobody has really got to grips with the problems of the national football team.
11 It's no good trying to persuade her; you can't teach an old cat new tricks.
12 Why do you always try to save the last word?

2 Read the text, then replace phrases in the text with the items below.

My sister Alicia hates arguing, especially with our brother Freddie; she will avoid it wherever possible ✓. What she finds most irritating is that Freddie likes to disagree with her just for the sake of it, and when he gets very animated, she tells him his behaviour is excessive. She also uses language which is meant to avoid offending anyone, and that really annoys Freddie. Another thing she hates is his habit of interrupting when she's speaking, and the fact that he always wants to win the argument. Still, Alicia is also quite determined, and if she thinks she's making a valid point, she won't accept that she has lost the argument.

- at all costs wherever possible
1 play devil's advocate
2 he's gone too far
3 politically correct
4 butting in
5 have the last word
6 back down

Unit 36

1 Choose the best ending to follow each phrasal verb on the left.

1 draw on
2 set up
3 come away with
4 sit through
5 nod off
6 butt in
7 loosen up
8 pare down

a some equipment
b before someone has finished speaking
c what you are going to say
d for a few minutes
e all your experience
f some good ideas
g a dull talk
h the audience

2 Complete the dialogues. You may need more than one word.

1 It's definitely not true, is it? ~ No, nothing could be further .
2 Was there some misunderstanding? ~ Yes, we were at purposes.
3 Has Jim's advice stopped them worrying? ~ Yes, it's put their minds .
4 You must've been very worried. ~ Yes, I was a nervous .
5 He didn't prepare the talk at all, did he? ~ No, he just it, as usual.
6 Did you get there early? ~ Yes, I had about fifteen minutes to .
7 That car nearly hit him. ~ Yes, it must have given him the fright .
8 Did they come to support you? ~ Oh yes, they were all for me.

Unit 37

1 Rewrite the sentences, starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- The situation was not resolved. The situation was left hanging .
1 We have the same way of thinking. We're on .
2 They were very happy to see me. They welcomed me with .
3 I'll react to things as they happen. I'll play .
4 I felt incredibly nervous. My heart was .
5 We had exactly the same ideas. It was a meeting .
6 He just made the dish in a hurry. He just threw .

2 Complete the crossword. Which phrasal verb is spelt out in the grey squares?

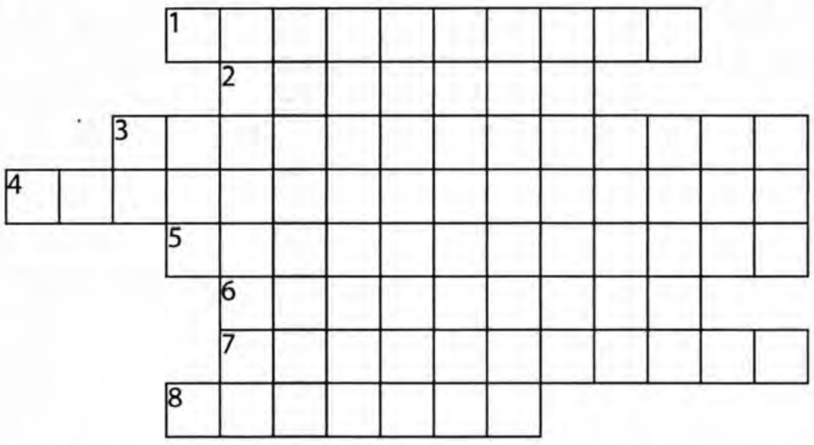

1 Make strong and steady progress with something. (5,5)
2 If you state officially that people must obey rules/principles, you rules/ principles. (3,4)
3 If something happens from the very beginning, you can also say it happens (4,3,4,2)
4 Gradually, or in small amounts or numbers. (2,5,3,5)
5 Speak during a discussion, especially for a long time so that nobody else can speak. (4,3,5)
6 If something results in harm or damage to something, we can also say it happens to the of something. (9)
7 at the beginning. (2,5,4)
8 continue for longer than planned. (3,4)
The phrasal verb in the grey squares is .

Unit 38

1 Complete the definitions with one or two words.

1 If you do something *as a last resort*, you do it because all other methods or solutions have .
2 If you say something has happened '*a bit late in the day*', you probably feel .
3 If you say '*thank goodness*' when someone arrives, it means that you are they have got there.
4 If a country is a democracy *in name only*, it means that country is democratic.
5 If someone says what they think of you *in no uncertain terms*, they tell you .
6 If you say '*that's all very well for her to say*', you are expressing at what she has said.
7 If someone says, 'you can leave *for all I care*', it means he is in what you do next.
8 If someone says, 'I'm meeting Bernard later, *worse luck*', it means they are about meeting him.

2 Complete the sentences with the most suitable idiom from the box.

I'll give you that thank goodness in no uncertain terms at a push it's the least I can do
worse luck to all intents and purposes contrary to popular belief

1 He wasn't happy, and he told us so .
2 I'd like to go with you, but I've got to go to the dentist's, .
3 There's not much space, but we could put the sofa in that corner .
4 You were right about the food being poor, .
5 I can't drive you home, but I'll take you to the bus station – .
6 His name is Falcone, but , he isn't Italian, and has never been to Italy in his life.
7 It was a terrible journey, but we got there in the end, .
8 Originally it was my brother who bought the flat, but I'm living there and paying the mortgage and all the bills, so , it's mine.

Unit 39

1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

- ► He's ever ‸ a nice man. such
- 1 I hadn't expected him to say that, and I was just lost words.
- 2 It's far the best DVD player you can buy.
- 3 I made a mistake, and she came on me like a ton of bricks.
- 4 They're giving away free drinks, so wonder the bar is full.
- 5 A digital radio is the best one for you to get a doubt.
- 6 My sister doesn't phone me for weeks end.
- 7 They sent me a new printer, and a replacement cartridge the bargain.
- 8 This is just any champagne; this is the best.

2 Complete the dialogues. The second speaker uses more exaggeration.

► A Their relationship is over, isn't it?
B Yes, it's well and truly over.

1 A He's terribly lazy.
B Yes, he never of work.
2 A She seemed annoyed about the contract.
B Yeah, she was up in it.
3 A I like Milos.
B Yes, he's so nice.
4 A They're good friends, aren't they?
B Yes, they get on like fire.
5 A Martin's a much better candidate.
B I agree, he's above the rest.
6 A So you'd really like to meet her?
B You bet. I'd give just to speak to her.
7 A It's astonishing news, isn't it?
B I know – I ears.
8 A He's made a big effort with this contract.
B Yes, he's stops.

40 I can talk about honesty

A Why do people tell lies?

I was **scared to death** of telling the truth about my past; I knew people would disapprove.

I decided to **keep** the truth **from** my mum to **spare her feelings**.

I didn't **let on to** my friends that I'd lost my job; I didn't want to **lose face**, I guess.

In retrospect, I realize that I just couldn't **face up to** the truth about my addiction: that's why I lied.

I made a terrible decision at work, and then tried to **cover** it **up** and prevent the facts from **coming to light**. It was stupid of me.

Glossary

scared to death	INF very frightened. (Also **scare sb to death** make sb very frightened. SYN **scare the life/the living daylights out of sb** INF.)
keep sth from sb	avoid telling sb sth.
spare sb's feelings	be careful not to do or say anything that may upset sb.
let on (**to sb** / **about sth**)	INF talk about sth that is intended to be secret.
lose face	be regarded by others as stupid or wrong as a result of sth you have said or done. (If you **save face**, you avoid being regarded as stupid or wrong.)
face up to sth	accept and deal with sth that is difficult or unpleasant.
come to light	become known to people.

spotlight Hiding information

These phrasal verbs refer to action taken to hide the truth about something bad, illegal, embarrassing, etc.

Politicians tried to cover up the scandal. **cover-up** N.

The boy stole the chocolates but his parents hushed it up.

1 Complete the sentences.

1 I didn't tell her the truth because I wanted to her feelings.
2 People will be very angry if this information comes to .
3 I knew they were getting married but I didn't let to anyone.
4 I didn't tell him what actually happened because I was scared to .
5 It was a scandal in the village. They tried to it up, but everyone knew.
6 My grandfather was very ill, but the rest of the family the truth from him.
7 I think she lied because it was easier than up to the truth.

2 Use an idiom or phrasal verb to explain why the underlined people lied in these situations. Use a different idiom or phrasal verb in each answer.

► The boy was very ill, but his parents didn't tell him. They wanted to keep it from him.
1 Ann had a bruise on her face, but her best friend told her it looked OK.
2 Mary knew her best friend was pregnant, but she kept it secret.
3 A young boy lost his strict father's expensive watch, but denied it.
4 Joe couldn't read or write, but he told people he'd forgotten his glasses.
5 Doctors said she wouldn't walk again, but she refused to believe it.

B Who are more honest?

Men or Women?

'My wife Marcia **goes red as a beetroot** whenever she tells a lie, and that **gives the game away**. She's worried that if she tells a lie, she'll **have** it **on her conscience**, and she can't **live with** that. But **when it comes to glossing over** the truth, she's pretty good at that!'

'When my husband Jeremy comes home late after a football match, he often tells me **a pack of lies** about why he's late. He thinks he can **pull the wool over** my **eyes**, but I **see through** him immediately (I know he's been to the pub). And if I dare to say, 'Oh, come on – **I wasn't born yesterday**!' he gets quite upset.'

Glossary

go (as) red as a beetroot	have red cheeks because you are embarrassed.
give the game away	reveal sth that is intended to be a secret (often by accident).
have sth on your conscience	feel guilty because of sth you did or didn't do.
live with sth	accept sth unpleasant that you cannot change.
when it comes to (doing) sth	on the subject of sth.
gloss over sth	ignore sth or avoid saying sth, or treat it as unimportant.
a pack of lies	INF a story that is completely untrue.
pull the wool over sb's eyes	INF trick sb by giving them the wrong information.
see through sb/sth	realize that sb is not telling the truth, or that sth is not true; understand the truth about a situation.
I wasn't born yesterday	INF = I'm not stupid enough to believe what you say. SYN **pull the other one** INF.

4 One word is either missing or wrong in these sentences. Add the missing word or correct the mistake.

1 He wouldn't lie because he'd have it in his conscience.
2 When it comes helping others, my parents are fantastic.
3 It was a ridiculous story – look, I wasn't yesterday.
4 Of course, as soon as she mentioned your name, she gave the game up.
5 That girl told me packs of lies.
6 He's always trying to pull the wool over my ears.
7 His wife will never come back, and he finds that very difficult to live.
8 Unfortunately, when I made up the story, my aunt looked through it immediately.

5 Replace the words in italics with an idiom or phrasal verb that keeps the same meaning.

1 It's a horrible situation, but we'll just have to *accept* it.
2 Mark's story was *completely untrue*.
3 If I don't tell them the truth, I'll *feel guilty*.
4 When I mentioned Claude's name, Pam *looked very embarrassed*.
5 It's not very sensible to *ignore or avoid* the facts.
6 *On the subject of* lying, the headmaster takes it very seriously.

6 ABOUT YOU Do you think men are more honest than women? Do you think men are better liars? Write your answer in your notebook, or talk to another student.

41 I can talk about competition

A Who will win 'Dancing Stars'?

Corinne and Jason **set the pace** from week one, and **forged ahead** of the rest. They **slipped up** a bit in their first dance last week, but they're still going to **take some beating**.

Pam and Mike are the **dark horses** in this competition. They**'ve been gaining ground** week by week, and I think they might **be keeping something up their sleeve**.

Alex and Sylvia are **neck and neck** with Pam and Mike. Now the competition **is hotting up**, the smallest thing could **tip the balance in** one couple's **favour**. It's impossible to say who**'ll come out on top**.

Glossary

set the pace	establish a standard or rate that others have to try to achieve.
forge ahead (**with sth**)	make strong and steady progress with sth.
slip up	INF make a careless mistake. **slip-up** N.
take some beating	INF If sb **will take some beating**, it means they are very good and it will be hard for sb else to do better. SYN **be hard to beat**.
gain ground (**on sb**)	gradually get closer to people you are competing with. SYN **catch up** (**with sb**).
keep/have sth up your sleeve	keep a plan or idea secret until you need it.
hot up	INF become more exciting or show an increase in activity.
tip the balance (**in sb's favour**)	give a slight advantage to sb.
come out on top	be more successful than the others.

spotlight Idioms from horse racing

A dark horse was a racehorse that nobody knew anything about. Now it refers to a person who other people know very little about, especially one who might achieve something that you don't expect. Two horses that are **neck and neck** in a race are level with each other. Now we also use it about two people or two teams in a race or competition.

1 Are the meanings similar or different? Write S or D.

1	They're setting the pace.	They're neck and neck.
2	They'll take some beating.	They'll be hard to beat.
3	They're gaining ground.	They're catching up.
4	The competition is hotting up.	The competition is slipping up.
5	They're forging ahead.	They're gaining ground.

2 Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of the word in capitals. Keep the same meaning.

► They're making great progress. FORGE They're forging ahead.
1 They're level with each other. NECK
2 They're catching up. GROUND
3 It could give you a slight advantage. BALANCE
4 The race is getting more exciting. HOT
5 She'll take some beating. HARD
6 He could surprise us. HORSE
7 She made a mistake. SLIP
8 I think he has a secret plan he's holding back. SLEEVE

B And the winner is….

I think the result was **in the balance** right up to that last dance, but we **gave it our all** and in the end it just **came down to** the judges' decision. The whole competition has been brilliant, and winning it is just **a dream come true**.

Well, we **gave** it **our best shot**, but it wasn't quite good enough. I thought we could **pull** it **off** with that last dance, but it wasn't to be. Maybe we **paid the price for playing it safe** – I don't know. Anyway, it was **a close thing**, and when I **look back on** the competition as a whole, I'm proud of what we've achieved.

Glossary

in the balance	If the result of sth is **in the balance**, it is uncertain.
give it your all	make the maximum possible effort.
come down to sth/sb	If a situation **comes down to sth**, that thing is the most important factor.
a dream come true	INF sth that happens which you have wanted for a long time.
give sth your best shot	INF try as hard as you possibly can in doing sth.
pull sth off	INF succeed in doing sth that is difficult.
pay the price for (doing) sth	suffer as a result of bad luck, a mistake, or sth you have done.
play (it) safe	not take any big risks.
look back (on sth)	think about a past event.

spotlight *a close thing/shave/call*

A close thing is a situation in which success or failure is equally possible.

A close shave/call is when you just manage to avoid a dangerous situation or accident.

3 Complete the last word in each dialogue.

1 You did everything you could. ~ Yes, I gave it my best .
2 You didn't take too many risks? ~ No, we decided to play it .
3 How much do you want to win? ~ It would be a dream come .
4 You nearly had an accident then. ~ Yes, it was a close .
5 Are you confident about the result? ~ Yes, I still think we can pull it .
6 Could either of them win? ~ Yes, I think it's still in the .

4 Complete the text.

I remember when Federer played Nadal at Wimbledon. They (1) it their all for over three hours of brilliant tennis and it all came (2) to the final fifth set. In the end Nadal (3) off an incredible victory, but (4) back on it, I think Federer will feel he paid the (5) for only succeeding with one of the thirteen break points that he had. For Nadal, it was his first Wimbledon title, and a (6) come true.

5 ABOUT YOU Have the sentences been true for you in a competition, or for a team you support? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

Winning it was a dream come true. Winning the championship was a dream come true. I'd been practising for months.
I gave it my best shot but it wasn't quite good enough.
I was amazed I pulled it off.
Looking back on it, I paid the price for …

42 I can talk about humour

A Funny or not funny?

TYPES OF HUMOUR

- You**'re pulling** my **leg**!
- He**'s having** you **on**!
- She said it **tongue in cheek**.
- She loves **practical jokes**.

FUNNY

- I **laughed my head off**.
- We **were in stitches**.
- They **had a good laugh about** it.

NOT FUNNY

- The joke **fell flat**.
- It **got beyond a joke**.
- A broken leg is **no laughing matter**.

Glossary

pull sb's leg	INF tell sb sth which is not true, as a joke. SYN **have sb on** INF.
a practical joke	a trick which is intended to surprise sb or make them look silly, often involving physical actions (you **play a practical joke on sb**).
tongue in cheek	If you say sth (**with**) **tongue in cheek** or **with your tongue in your cheek**, you are not being serious and mean it as a joke.
laugh your head off	INF laugh loudly and for a long time. SYN **be in stitches** INF.
have a good laugh (**about sth**)	find sth very funny and amusing.
fall flat	If a joke **falls flat**, no one laughs at it.
be/**get**/**go beyond a joke**	If a situation **has got beyond a joke**, it has become annoying or worrying.
no laughing matter	sth which is too serious to make jokes about.

1 Answer the questions with 'yes' or 'no'.

1 If someone is pulling your leg, should you believe them?
2 If something is beyond a joke, is it very funny?
3 If someone puts a frog in your bed, is that a practical joke?
4 If someone says something tongue in cheek, are they being serious?
5 If someone is having you on, are they telling you something which is true?
6 If you are in stitches, are you laughing?

2 Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep the meaning the same.

1 They all found it very amusing.	They all had a good .
2 You're having me on.	You're pulling .
3 No one laughed at her jokes.	Her jokes fell .
4 She was saying it as a joke.	She was saying it tongue .
5 It's no longer a laughing matter.	It's gone .
6 He laughed his head off.	He was in .

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 Do you ever play practical jokes on people? If so, what kind?
2 Do you often have people on? If so, what about?
3 Do you often say things tongue in cheek? If so, who to?
4 Do you ever tell jokes that fall flat? Can you remember any?
5 When was the last time you had a good laugh?

B Humorous idioms

Idioms are quite often used for ironic or humorous effect.

Idiom and example	Meaning
Where did he get those CDs? *~ I think they* ***fell off the back of a lorry****.*	If you say sth **has fallen off the back of a lorry**, you mean it is probably stolen.
I can jump over that gate. *~* ***Famous last words****.*	**famous last words** SAYING used when you think sb is being too confident about sth that is going to happen or that they are going to do.
Is he always that silly? *~ Yes. I'm afraid* ***the lights are on but no one's home****.*	**the lights are on but no one's** / **nobody's home** used to say that sb is stupid.
When was the last time he had a bath? *~* ***I dread to think****.*	**I dread to think** = I'm afraid to think about that question as the answer might be too terrible or unpleasant.
For reasons best known to himself*, my father's bought a house next door to a zoo.*	**for reasons best known to himself**/**herself** etc. used to say that you don't know or understand why sb has done sth.
I'm off to bed. I need my ***beauty sleep****.*	**beauty sleep** sleep that you need in order to feel healthy and look attractive.
Did Dr Fellows explain what to do? *~ Yes. But it was* ***as clear as mud****.*	(**as**) **clear as mud** = very hard to understand.
Matthew said he would help us. *~ Oh dear. That's* ***the kiss of death****, then.*	**the kiss of death** an action or situation that will bring bad luck or spoil an activity.
Where's Alfie? *~* ***A call of nature****, I think.*	(**a**/**the**) **call of nature** a need to go to the toilet.
My sister thinks she can paint the whole house in a weekend. *~ Goodness.* ***What planet is she on****?*	**What planet is he**/**she on?** used to say that sb's ideas are not realistic or practical (also **sb is** (**living**) **on another planet**).

4 Correct the mistake in each sentence, and write the correct word at the end.

1 I can do it. ~ Yeah, famous lost words.
2 Where did you get that? ~ It fell off the back of a train.
3 He's a bit stupid, isn't he? ~ Yeah, the lights are on but no one's here.
4 I need to get my beautiful sleep. See you in the morning.
5 Marty doesn't think we'll have to pay for drinks. ~ Gosh. What plane is he on?
6 That explanation was as clean as mud.
7 Marcel walked home in bare feet – for reasons better known to himself.
8 Where's your mum? ~ A cry of nature, I think.

5 Respond to the first speaker. Include a suitable idiom in your answer.

▸ He's taking ages to fill in that form. ~ Yeah, the lights are on but no one's home.
1 His flat's always dirty. How often does he clean it? ~
2 I didn't understand a word of that explanation, did you? ~
3 Why do you always go to bed so early? ~
4 My brother is bringing boring old Malcolm to my party. ~
5 Why are those radios so cheap? ~
6 The boss told me he thinks we all like working late. ~ ?
7 He thinks he can beat all the girls easily. ~
8 Where has Cathy gone? ~

43 I can express criticism

A Online complaints blog

CA
CHEAP-AIR

I hate Cheap Air!

ANTON ▸ I'm **sick to death of** being treated like a second class citizen. At check-in, they managed to **squeeze** a cool €130 **out of** me just to board the plane – it was **daylight robbery**. And frankly, the attitude of the staff **is beyond me**, but I reckon they're badly treated so they just **take** it **out on** the passengers.

JEZEBEL ▸ It said in the paper they're going to start charging for hand luggage!! If that isn't **a rip-off**, I don't know what is … but **I wouldn't put it past** them!

RUDY ▸ All those adverts of smiling passengers – why do we all **fall for** it every time? Listen, people, if you're so fed up with them, why don't you **vote with your feet**?

Glossary

sick to death of sth/sb	INF very annoyed or unhappy about sth that has lasted a long time. SYN **sick to the back teeth of sth/sb**.
squeeze sth out of sb	get sth by putting pressure on sb.
daylight robbery	INF used to say you think sth is much too expensive.
be beyond sb	INF be impossible for sb to understand or imagine.
take sth out on sb	be unpleasant to sb or punish them for sth that is not their fault, often because you are angry or upset.
a rip-off	INF If sth is **a rip-off**, it is more expensive than it should be. **rip sb off** V.
I wouldn't put it past sb (to do sth)	INF used to say you wouldn't be surprised if sb did sth bad or unusual because it would be typical of them.
fall for sth	be tricked into believing sth that is not true. SYN **be taken in by sth/sb**.
vote with your feet	show that you do not support or agree with sth/sb by not going somewhere or by walking away.

1 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 The plane ticket's gone up by 3 per cent – it's *daytime* | *daylight* robbery.
2 Did you manage to *squeeze* | *squash* the truth out of Jake?
3 The students voted with their *feet* | *legs* and abandoned the lecture hall.
4 I'm just sick to *death* | *the back teeth* of working sixty hours a week.
5 Jenny may not invite either of us – I wouldn't put it *beyond* | *past* her.
6 Did you really believe I would fall *to* | *for* that old trick?

2 Complete the dialogues.

▸ They refused to come to the meeting. ~ That's right, they voted with their feet .
1 I know she's capable of stealing. ~ Yeah, I wouldn't .
2 It was a ridiculous price to charge. ~ I know, it was a .
3 How can they charge so much? ~ I know, it's daylight .
4 It's shocking that she lied about it. ~ Yeah, it's why she would do that.
5 I'm amazed that he fooled you. ~ I know, I can't believe that I it.
6 You must be tired of all the travelling. ~ Too right; I'm sick .
7 So they made you pay another €20. ~ Yeah, they me.
8 He shouted at me but I'd done nothing wrong. ~ Yeah, he was fed up and took it you.

3 ABOUT YOU Have you ever had any problems with bad companies? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B Is criticism acceptable?

SONIA So how did the interview go, David?

DAVID Well, **no disrespect to** the interviewers, but I found them quite aggressive **to put it mildly**.

SONIA **To be fair**, that's their job, isn't it? You say what you think, and they **pull** it **to pieces**. That's what interviews are like – you shouldn't **take it personally**.

DAVID OK, that's **fair enough**, but I didn't expect the chairman to **jump down** my **throat** every time I opened my mouth. The thing is, I**'m all for** healthy discussion, but he just seemed to **have a bee in his bonnet** about expenses claims.

SONIA Well, it probably isn't very wise to **argue the toss** with any interviewer, **let alone** the company chairman. Better luck with your next interview!

Glossary

no disrespect (**to sb**)	used when you are going to criticize sb and do not want to seem rude or offend them.
to put it mildly / and that's putting it mildly	used to say that you could have used much stronger words to describe sth.
to be fair	used when you are defending yourself or sb/sth against criticism. SYN **let's be fair**.
pull/tear sb/sth to pieces	INF criticize sb or their ideas very severely. SYN **pull/tear sb/sth to shreds**.
take sth personally	let yourself get upset about sth that sb has said or done.
fair enough	INF used to say that something seems reasonable, but you do not agree with it completely.
jump down sb's throat	INF react very angrily to sb in an unfair way.
be all for sth / for doing sth	believe strongly that sth should be done. OPP **be dead set against sth**.
have a bee in your bonnet	INF think or talk about sth all the time and think that it is very important.
argue the toss	INF continue to argue against a decision, especially when it is too late to change it or it is not very important.
let alone	used to say that sth is even less suitable or possible than another unsuitable or unlikely thing.

4 Cross out one word in each sentence which is not necessary.

1 There isn't enough food for the four of us, let us alone the rest of the class.
2 If you want to leave school, be fair enough, but don't expect any help from me.
3 She didn't mean to upset you; don't take it out personally.
4 I'm all in for people contributing ideas, but we've got to make a decision very soon.
5 Mum is all dead set against us moving to the country, and I can understand why.
6 I only said I thought he could do better, but he jumped in down my throat!

5 One word is missing in each line of text. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

My dad has a / in his bonnet about me and my studies. I want to become ▸ bee
a musician, but he's set against that. We had a row about it last night – 1
it was my fault, I should know better than to argue the with him late at 2
night. The thing is, disrespect to Dad, but I feel that I should give it a go, 3
and be fair, it is my life! I gave him a couple of reasons why I should 4
leave college, and of course he completely pulled my arguments to, 5
and that's it mildly! He wants me to study law, just as he did, but it 6
really doesn't interest me, and I think he takes that. And if I don't make it 7
as a musician, I still won't get a job in the City, alone become a lawyer. 8

44 I can understand and give advice

A How to survive a plane crash

- Watch the flight attendant's safety demonstration: ignore it, and you could **be missing out on** vital information about how to brace yourself should the plane crash. And read the safety card in front of your seat; even if you fly often, **it does no harm to** be reminded.
- It **makes sense to** keep your seat belt on **at all times**, especially if you fall asleep.
- **Take note of** the nearest emergency exits. Count the rows between them and your seat.
- **In the event of** a crash, speed is **of the essence**. Stay calm and don't **get swept along** with the hysteria. **Keep your wits about you**; you**'ll stand a better chance of** surviving.

Glossary

miss out (**on sth**)	lose the opportunity to have or do sth.
make sense (**to do sth**)	be a sensible thing to do.
at all times	(used especially in instructions, announcements, etc.) always.
take note (**of sth**)	pay attention to sth and be sure to remember it.
in the event of sth	if sth happens.
of the essence	necessary and very important.
sweep sb along	If a situation or feeling **sweeps you along**, you are so involved in it that you forget about other things.
keep your wits about you	be aware of what is happening around you and ready to act and think quickly (also **keep your head**).
stand a chance of (**doing**) **sth**	have the possibility of succeeding in sth.

spotlight Advice

These phrases are used to suggest that someone should do something:
It does/would do no harm to ask for help.
There's no harm in asking for more time to finish the work.
It wouldn't hurt to take an umbrella with you.

1 Correct one word which is wrong in each sentence.

1 Keep your wit about you.
2 In an event of fire, leave quickly.
3 Don't miss out of this opportunity.
4 You stay a good chance of winning.
5 There's no hurt in asking her.
6 It makes sensible to do it now.
7 Take note for what he says.
8 It wouldn't harm to try it.

2 Complete the advice for nervous fliers.

Fear of flying is surprisingly common. The important thing is not to let yourself get (1) along by your own fear, and to (2) your head while on the plane at all (3) . When you step onto the plane, it would do (4) to let the air crew know you are feeling nervous; they may help to reassure you. Be sure to listen and take (5) of the safety tips they give before take-off. Whenever you start to feel panicky, positive thinking is of the (6) : calm yourself by imagining that rather than being in the air, you are in a crowded living room. In the (7) of turbulence during the flight, bear in mind that this is very common and not dangerous. And lastly, don't avoid air travel – you could be (8) on some wonderful adventures!

B Advice on sleeping

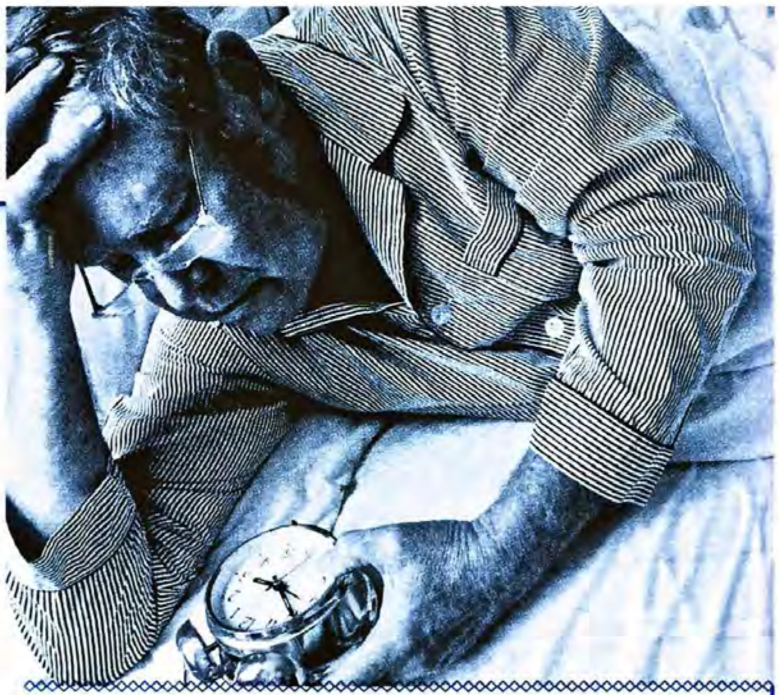

COFFEEGEEK ► I can't sleep at night; I just lie there looking at the moon. ☹ HEEELP!

JOJO ► Hi. I'm no expert **by any stretch of the imagination**, but **it stands to reason that** sleeping in complete darkness promotes better sleep. Shut your curtains or blinds!

ALI ► **I've been in the same boat** as you, so I **feel for** you. My dad says that **if all else fails**, read the most boring book you can find. And don't **get worked up about** not sleeping – it only makes things worse.

YI ► My advice – **for what it's worth**! If you're lying there for hours, **you could do worse than** put on a relaxation CD, with the sounds of the ocean.

GINNIE23 ► **Your best bet** is to avoid caffeine and alcohol – especially alcohol, because it **keeps** you **from** falling into a deep sleep. Hope this helps.

Glossary

(**not**) **by any stretch of the imagination**	used to say strongly that sth is not true, even if you try to imagine it.
it stands to reason (**that …**)	= it is obvious or logical (that …).
be in the same boat	INF be in the same difficult situation.
feel for sb	have sympathy for sb.
if all else fails	used to say that if other methods do not succeed, there is one last thing you can try. SYN **as a last resort**.
get worked up (**about sth**)	INF get very excited, angry, or upset about sth (also **work yourself up** (**about sth**)).
for what it's worth	INF used to emphasize that sth is only your opinion or suggestion, and you are not sure how helpful it is.
you could do worse than	used to advise sb to do or try sth.
your best bet	INF the thing that gives the best chance of success.
keep sb from doing sth	prevent sb from doing sth.

3 One word is missing in each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

1 We've both just had pay cuts, so really we're in the boat.
2 OK, the plates are dirty, but don't get so up about it. I'll wash them later.
3 What it's worth, I don't share your views on child rearing.
4 I find that taking these pills me from feeling nervous.
5 Look, it stands to that no sensible person would buy that car.
6 You couldn't describe him as clever by any of the imagination.
7 You know that if all fails, you can always stay in my house.
8 If you're eating out, you do worse than the North China restaurant.

4 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

► If you want my opinion, he's useless. WORTH For what it's worth, he's useless.
1 I have great sympathy for her at this time. FEEL
2 We're both in a difficult situation. BOAT
3 The best thing you can do is to say nothing. BET
4 Try not to become over-excited about the plan. WORKED
5 It's not a bad idea to stay in a B and B. WORSE
6 As a last resort, you can refuse to work. FAIL

5 ABOUT YOU Write your own advice about getting a good night's sleep in your notebook, or talk to another student. Use *for what it's worth, your best bet, you could do worse than, if all else fails*.

B Advice on sleeping

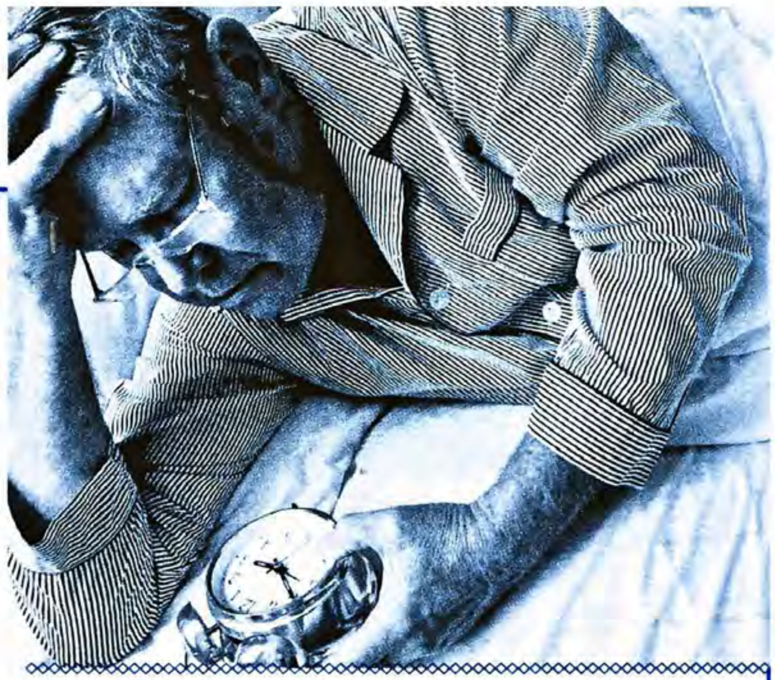

COFFEEGEEK ▸ I can't sleep at night; I just lie there looking at the moon. ☹ HEEELP!

JOJO ▸ Hi. I'm no expert **by any stretch of the imagination**, but **it stands to reason that** sleeping in complete darkness promotes better sleep. Shut your curtains or blinds!

ALI ▸ **I've been in the same boat** as you, so I **feel for** you. My dad says that **if all else fails**, read the most boring book you can find. And don't **get worked up about** not sleeping – it only makes things worse.

YI ▸ My advice – **for what it's worth**! If you're lying there for hours, **you could do worse than** put on a relaxation CD, with the sounds of the ocean.

GINNIE23 ▸ **Your best bet** is to avoid caffeine and alcohol – especially alcohol, because it **keeps** you **from** falling into a deep sleep. Hope this helps.

Glossary

(**not**) **by any stretch of the imagination**	used to say strongly that sth is not true, even if you try to imagine it.
it stands to reason (**that …**)	= it is obvious or logical (that …).
be in the same boat	INF be in the same difficult situation.
feel for sb	have sympathy for sb.
if all else fails	used to say that if other methods do not succeed, there is one last thing you can try. SYN **as a last resort**.
get worked up (**about sth**)	INF get very excited, angry, or upset about sth (also **work yourself up** (**about sth**)).
for what it's worth	INF used to emphasize that sth is only your opinion or suggestion, and you are not sure how helpful it is.
you could do worse than	used to advise sb to do or try sth.
your best bet	INF the thing that gives the best chance of success.
keep sb from doing sth	prevent sb from doing sth.

3 One word is missing in each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

1 We've both just had pay cuts, so really we're in the boat.
2 OK, the plates are dirty, but don't get so up about it. I'll wash them later.
3 What it's worth, I don't share your views on child rearing.
4 I find that taking these pills me from feeling nervous.
5 Look, it stands to that no sensible person would buy that car.
6 You couldn't describe him as clever by any of the imagination.
7 You know that if all fails, you can always stay in my house.
8 If you're eating out, you do worse than the North China restaurant.

4 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

▸ If you want my opinion, he's useless. WORTH *For what it's worth, he's useless.*
1 I have great sympathy for her at this time. FEEL
2 We're both in a difficult situation. BOAT
3 The best thing you can do is to say nothing. BET
4 Try not to become over-excited about the plan. WORKED
5 It's not a bad idea to stay in a B and B. WORSE
6 As a last resort, you can refuse to work. FAIL

5 ABOUT YOU Write your own advice about getting a good night's sleep in your notebook, or talk to another student. Use *for what it's worth, your best bet, you could do worse than, if all else fails*.

45 I can talk about problems

A Problem solving

Thinking through a problem

- Is it a genuine problem, or just **a storm in a teacup**?
- If it's real, what's the root cause? Is it a person? Someone who **has a chip on their shoulder** for example, or someone **digging their heels in** and refusing to compromise?
- How big is the problem? Can you **sort** it **out** easily, or will you **have your work cut out**?
- How will you solve it? **Take the bull by the horns**, or **sit tight** for the moment?

Whatever you do, be clear about your course of action. Don't **fall into the trap of** doing neither one thing nor the other. Consider all the options, make your decision, and then **act on** it.

Glossary

think sth through	consider everything that could happen in a situation.
a storm in a teacup	a lot of anger and worry about sth unimportant.
have a chip on your shoulder	INF be sensitive about or feel offended by sth, as a result of sth that happened in your past. (See Unit 2.)
dig your heels in / dig in your heels	refuse to do sth or change your mind about sth.
have your work cut out	INF have a very difficult task or job to do.
take the bull by the horns	face a difficult situation in a very direct and confident way.
sit tight	stay where you are, without taking any action.
fall into the trap (of doing sth)	make a mistake that many people make.
act on/upon sth	take action as a result of a decision, advice, or information.

spotlight Meanings of *sort sth out*

I'll sort out the problem. = deal with it and solve it (as above).
The study's a mess. Could you sort it out? = tidy it.
I need to sort out the insurance. = arrange it successfully.

1 Form six idioms using words from the box. You need to add more words to most of them.

dig storm horns fall chip sit bull teacup tight heels shoulder trap

2 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.

▸ I spent the day tidying up the office. OUT I spent the day sorting out the office.
1 He made the mistake of doing everything himself. TRAP
2 She's made her choice; she must do something about it. ACT
3 He thinks the world is against him. CHIP
4 I would stay where you are and do nothing. SIT
5 He's refusing to change his mind. HEELS
6 She has to consider what might happen. THINK
7 It will be a difficult task for you. CUT OUT
8 I was asked to deal with the problem. SORT
9 It's a lot of fuss about nothing. STORM
10 He's going to confront the situation directly. HORNS

B A teenage problem

ELLE Jonathan's got important exams **coming up**, and his girlfriend**'s** just **finished with** him. He**'s in a terrible state** – I don't know what to do. He**'s** even **off his food**.

SIAN Come on, it's **not the end of the world**; he'll **get over** it.

ELLE But with these exams **hanging over** his **head**! In his present **frame of mind**, he'll fail.

SIAN I don't think so. Jonathan's a bright boy. **At the end of the day** I'm sure he**'ll pull himself together** and **sail through** his exams.

ELLE I don't know. Teenage relationships and school exams: what **a recipe for disaster**!

Glossary

finish with sb	end a romantic relationship with sb.
be in a (**terrible**) **state** (**about sth**)	be very anxious (about sth).
be off your food	not want to eat, usually because you are ill or upset.
not the end of the world	INF not the worst thing that could happen.
get over sth	recover from sth such as a disappointment or illness.
hang over sb / sb's head	If sth difficult or unpleasant **is hanging over you / your head**, you are thinking and worrying about it.
frame of mind	the way you think or feel about sth at a particular time.
at the end of the day	INF used to introduce a fact that remains true when everything else has been considered.
pull yourself together	regain control of your feelings and behave calmly.
sail through sth	pass an exam, test, etc. without any difficulty.
a recipe for disaster	a thing that is likely to cause sth bad to happen.

spotlight Meanings of *come up*

The race is coming up at 6 p.m. = is going to happen in the near future (as above).
The subject came up in conversation. = was mentioned or discussed.
Your number came up, so you've won. = was chosen.

3 Complete the dialogues. You may need more than one word.

- ▸ Will she be upset if she fails? ~ Yes, but it's not the end of the world .
- 1 Won't he eat anything? ~ No, he's food.
- 2 Do you think he'll pass the exam easily? ~ Oh yes, he'll it.
- 3 Is she very anxious about the tests? ~ Yes, she's about them.
- 4 The disappointment won't last. ~ I know. He'll it.
- 5 This will cause all sorts of problems. ~ I know. It's a disaster.
- 6 Has Lisa ended the relationship? ~ Yes, she's him.
- 7 Did they discuss the new bus route? ~ Yes, the subject up.
- 8 He must control his feelings and stay calm. ~ Hmm, he needs to together.

4 Complete the text.

Charlotte hasn't been in the most positive (1) of mind recently. She's got an interview (2) up next week for a job at the BBC. She's had it (3) over her for almost a month and she's in a real (4) about it. It's silly really, because I'm sure she'll (5) through the interview. And even if she doesn't, it's not the end of the (6) . I know Charlotte's a very talented girl, and at the end of the (7) , that's what matters.

46 I can describe different attitudes

A A positive attitude

My brother's always loved surfing; he **lives and breathes** it. When he's out on the waves, he**'s** really **in his element**. Mum thinks he spends too much time surfing and not enough studying, but he just says, '**life's too short** to waste time worrying'.

I took Martin skiing a couple of years ago and he absolutely **threw himself into** it and **took to** it **like a duck to water**. When we're on the slopes **there's no stopping** him till the sun goes down. He **gets** a bit **carried away** at times!

Lia's take on life is that good things generally **come her way**; she **writes off** any bad events **as** isolated incidents. It seems that **luck is on her side**.

Glossary

live and breathe sth	spend much of your time doing sth you love.
be in your element	be very happy and comfortable in a situation.
throw yourself into sth	begin to do sth with energy and enthusiasm.
take to sth like a duck to water	learn a new skill quickly and easily.
there's no stopping sb	used to say that it is impossible to prevent sb from doing sth.
get carried away	INF become so excited or involved in sth that you lose control of your feelings or actions.
come your way	happen to you or become available to you.
write sth off (**as sth**)	decide that sth is a failure and not worth doing anything about.
luck is on your side	If **luck is on your side**, things happen the way you want them to.

spotlight Sayings about life

Life's too short. INF = Don't waste time doing unimportant things.
Life goes on. INF = Even though sb has had a bad experience, the rest of life goes on unchanged.
That's life! INF = You have to accept disappointments as part of life.

1 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

1 They said my eyesight will never be the same. Well, this is life, I guess.
2 If you don't get the job, write the experience out as bad luck.
3 Once she starts work in the garden, she's no stopping her.
4 He's obsessive about work and throws him into it.
5 She'd never played chess before, but she looked to it like a duck to water.
6 He got the job easily; I'd say that luck's by his side.

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 You've made far too much food for us! ~ Sorry, I just got .
2 I've got to read through 200 emails on my computer. ~ Leave them! Life !
3 How did Hari's skiing lesson go? ~ Great! He took to it .
4 I had my chances in the game. ~ Yeah, but you lost. I guess luck .
5 Mark's obsessive about fishing, isn't he? ~ Yes, he lives it.
6 So you've put your disappointment behind you. ~ Yeah, life , doesn't it.
7 Would you want the job? ~ Well, if the chance my , I'd take it.
8 Was she happy doing the cooking? ~ Yes. She's in her in the kitchen.

B Negative thinking

Avoid these types of negative thinking!

- DON'T **dwell on** the negatives when something goes wrong in your life.
- DON'T **put yourself down** for minor **slip-ups**. Just accept them and move on.
- DON'T **jump to** negative **conclusions**. Wait and see how things **pan out**.
- DON'T **bury your head in the sand**. **Face up to** your problems; it helps in the long run.
- DON'T allow negative thoughts to **run through your mind**, or you will start to see everything **in a bad light**. Stay POSITIVE.
- DON'T set yourself goals which you can't **live up to**, such as 'I must get 100 per cent in the test'.

Glossary

dwell on/upon sth	spend time thinking about sth difficult or unpleasant.
put yourself down	criticize yourself in front of other people.
slip-up	a small mistake. **slip up** V.
jump to conclusions	make a decision about sth too quickly, before having all the facts. SYN **leap to conclusions**.
pan out	INF (of events or a situation) develop in a particular way.
bury your head in the sand	refuse to admit that a problem exists, or refuse to deal with it.
face up to sth	accept and deal with sth that is difficult or unpleasant.
run through sth	pass quickly through sth. (Sth can **run through your mind**.)
in a good/bad light	If you see sth **in a good/bad light**, it seems good/bad to you.
live up to sth	do as well as other people expect you to.

3 Is the meaning similar or different? Write S or D.

1	Don't bury your head in the sand.	Face up to the problem.
2	Let's see how the situation pans out.	Let's see how the situation develops.
3	She dwells on her mistakes.	She ignores her mistakes.
4	I can't live up to their expectations.	I can't be as good as they expect.
5	It was just a silly slip-up.	It was just a silly fall.
6	He always leaps to conclusions.	He always gets to the end.
7	Try not to see it in a negative way.	Try not to see it in a bad light.
8	Don't put yourself down.	Don't be so self-critical.

4 Complete the texts.

BILL I don't know why, but I have a habit of always seeing things in a bad (1) . It's awful at night: I keep waking up with all these negative thoughts (2) my mind. Most of my worries are to do with work. At last week's meeting, for example, I (3) up with some sales figures – only a tiny mistake, but I spent the rest of the meeting (4) on it, so I didn't really contribute anything at all. I think my boss has very high expectations of me, and I just can't (5) up to them.

MONICA I saw Derek with that blonde girl again today. Maybe I'm just (6) to conclusions, but he seems really keen on her. I guess I'll just have to (7) up to the fact I'm not his special one – let's face it, I'm no great beauty. Delia says I'm always (8) myself down and that's why Derek isn't interested. She says I should cheer up, and just see how things pan (9) . Easier said than done.

5 ABOUT YOU What advice would you give Bill and Monica in Exercise 4? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student. Use language from the glossary.

47 I can talk about decision-making

A Decision-making styles

People make decisions in different ways. Some **weigh up** their options carefully, which is sensible as long as you don't **lose sight of** what's important. Others, **rightly or wrongly,** just follow their **gut feeling.** A surprising number **go for** the first available option and **rush into** a decision, regardless of its importance. People who don't trust their own judgement may **turn to** others, or **go with** the majority view, while those who **have a mind of their own** may not consult anyone at all. Then, of course, there are people who either **lack the courage of their convictions,** or worry so much about making the 'wrong' decision, that they can't make any decision.

Glossary

weigh sth up	consider the good and bad aspects of sth before reaching a decision about it.
lose sight of sth	stop considering sth; forget about sth.
rightly or wrongly	used to say that sth is true, whether people think it is a good thing or bad thing.
gut feeling/reaction/instinct	INF a feeling that sth is right, even if you cannot explain why.
rush into sth	do sth quickly without thinking about it first (also **rush headlong into sth**).
turn to sb/sth	go to sb/sth for help and advice.
go with sth	accept or agree to a decision, a plan, or an offer.
have a mind of your own	have your own opinions and make your own decisions without being influenced by others.
have/lack the courage of your convictions	be / not be brave enough to do what you feel is right.

spotlight *go for sth*

I always go for fish in a restaurant. INF = choose fish ('choose sth' as above).
The painting went for £100. = was sold for £100.
There were three people going for the job. INF = trying to get the job.

1 Write 'yes' or 'no'.

1 If you say something is true rightly or wrongly, is it true?
2 If you are weighing something up, have you already made a decision?
3 If something went for a large amount, has it been stolen?
4 If you lack the courage of your convictions, are you able to do what you feel is right?
5 If you have a mind of your own, are you easily influenced by other people?
6 If you lose sight of something, have you stopped thinking about it?

2 Complete the sentences.

1 When you have to make a decision, do you usually things up carefully, or are you in the habit of headlong into a decision without giving it much thought?
2 Do you think you often for the easiest option when making a decision?
3 Do you base a lot of your decisions on your own feeling or instinct?
4 Who do usually to when you need advice?
5 If you asked five people for their opinion before making a decision, would you normally with the consensus?
6 If you think something is the right thing to do, do you usually have the courage ?

3 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B Individual decisions

I once saw a boy steal some chocolate from a shop, and I **turned a blind eye**. Now I **draw the line at** any kind of stealing. If it happened again, I would **step in** and do something.

Yesterday it **was a toss-up** between a noisy crowded train journey, or driving for two hours on a boring motorway. I chose the train as **the lesser of two evils**.

I **was in two minds about** a holiday. I normally go away, but I really needed the money for some new furniture. In the end I decided to **give** the holiday **a miss**.

I **put up with** the fact that my girlfriend was a bit unreliable, but when she arrived an hour late for dinner on my birthday, that was **the final straw**. I finished with her.

Glossary

turn a blind eye (**to sth**)	pretend not to see or notice sth, usually sth bad.
step in	become involved in a difficult situation to help or make it stop.
be a toss-up	INF used for saying that you do not know which of two things to choose, or which of two things will happen. **toss up** v.
the lesser of two evils	the less unpleasant of two unpleasant choices.
be in two minds (**about sth** / **doing sth**)	be unable to decide (about sth / doing sth).
give sth a miss	INF decide not to do sth that you usually do.
put up with sth/sb	accept sth/sb unpleasant in a patient way.
the final/**last straw**	the last in a series of bad actions or events that makes it impossible for you to accept a situation any longer.

spotlight Idioms with *draw*

If you **draw the line** (**at sth**), you set a limit on what you will allow or accept. If you **draw a line under sth**, you decide that something is finished and you stop thinking about it. If you **draw lots**, you make a decision by writing the choices on pieces of paper, putting these into a container, and selecting one at random.

4 Match 1–6 with a–f.

1 I decided to give it
2 She turned a blind
3 We decided to draw
4 It was the final
5 I decided to draw a line
6 It was the lesser

a straw.
b of two evils.
c under it and move on.
d a miss.
e eye to it.
f lots to see who would go.

5 Complete the sentences.

1 If I had a cold, I would probably my English class a miss.
2 If I saw someone dropping litter, I would probably turn a to it.
3 If I saw a mother hitting a child, I would in and say something.
4 I couldn't up with a boyfriend/girlfriend/partner who smoked.
5 If it was a -up between going for a walk and having a swim, I'd go for a walk.
6 When I'm in two about buying something, I usually don't buy it.
7 If it's a choice between cleaning or ironing, I'd say ironing is the lesser of .
8 I agree that people can protest, but I would the line at any form of violent protest.

6 ABOUT YOU Would you make the same decisions as the speakers at the top of the page and in Exercise 5? Why / why not? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

48 I can talk about risk-taking

A What kind of risks do you take?

Are you one of life's gamblers?	**Yes / No / Not sure**
I never **put money on** a horse, a race, or anything like that.	______
If I was investing money, I'd probably **hedge my bets** and **split** it **up**.	______
There's no excuse for taking risks when you're driving.	______
I'm always prepared to **stick my neck out** if someone asks my opinion.	______
When people threaten to do things, I rarely **call their bluff**.	______
I'm not the kind of person to **get myself into** difficult situations.	______
In life, I think I tend to **play it safe** most of the time.	______
Would I **risk my neck** to save someone else? That's a difficult one.	______

Glossary

put money on sth	bet money on a horse, team, etc. in a race or game.
hedge your bets	reduce the risk of losing by choosing several possibilities instead of just one.
split sth up	divide sth into smaller parts.
there's no excuse for (doing) sth	= there's no acceptable reason for doing sth (used in reference to behaviour which you think is very bad).
stick your neck out	INF take a risk by doing or saying sth that may be criticized or proved to be wrong.
call sb's bluff	tell sb to do what they are threatening to do because you don't believe they intend to do it or are brave enough to do it.
get yourself into sth	become involved in a difficult situation, often without intending to.
play (it) safe	avoid taking any big risks.
risk your neck	risk being killed or injured in order to do sth. SYN **risk life and limb**.

1 Match the verbs on the left with the endings on the right.

1 stick
2 risk
3 call
4 split
5 hedge
6 play

a someone's bluff
b your bets
c it safe
d your neck
e your neck out
f something up

2 Complete the sentences.

1 Most people would say nothing in that situation, but my brother is always prepared to ______ his neck ______ and say what he thinks.
2 I'm always very careful not to ______ myself ______ debt. To be honest, there's ______ for people spending money they haven't actually got.
3 I wanted a photo of the shark, but I wouldn't risk ______ and ______ trying to get it.
4 He threatened me saying he had a gun, but I called his ______ and he had nothing.
5 I wasn't sure who would win, so I ______ my bets and ______ money on two of them.
6 If you have money to invest, accountants often advise you to ______ it safe and ______ the money up into different investments such as shares, property, and a pension.

3 ABOUT YOU How would you respond to the statements at the top of the page? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B Risk-takers

Why do people take risks?

Recent research **sheds** some **light on** this and suggests it may **be down to** the psychological **make-up** of a person. It seems that 60 per cent of risk-takers are 'sensation seekers': people who **seek out** and **thrive on** novel and exciting experiences. This does **not necessarily** involve risk, but it is a common by-product. Sensation-seekers are more **at risk from** drink or drugs, and more likely to **take a chance on a long shot**; they are less likely to **err on the side of caution**. However, not all risk-taking is bad. Mankind has only evolved by taking risks; without it we would stagnate.

Glossary

shed/cast/throw light on sth	help to explain sth by providing new information about it.
be down to sb/sth	be caused by a particular person or thing.
make-up	the different qualities or things that combine together to form sth. **make sth up** v.
seek out sth/sb	try to find sth/sb.
thrive on sth	enjoy sth so much that it makes you a happier or healthier person.
not necessarily	used to say that sth is possibly true but not definitely true.
take a chance (on sth)	decide to do sth knowing it may be the wrong choice.
a long shot	an attempt that is unlikely to succeed, but may be worth trying.
err on the side of caution	be prepared to miss an opportunity rather than take a risk.

spotlight Idioms with *risk*

If you are **at risk from/of sth**, you are in danger of something unpleasant or harmful happening.

If you **run the risk of sth**, you put yourself in a situation in which something bad could happen.

If you **do sth at your own risk**, you do it even though you have been warned of the dangers.

4 Replace the word(s) in italics with an idiom or phrasal verb that keeps a similar meaning. The first letter has been given to help you.

1 She *loves* work. t
2 It's *composed* of four parts. m
3 The mistake was *caused by* Jim. d
4 Does he *actively look for* adventure? s
5 I would *be careful rather than take a risk.* e
6 Can you *help by explaining* any of this? s
7 It's *unlikely to succeed but we can try it.* a l
8 Is it a big problem? ~ *It could be, but that's not certain.* N

5 Complete the sentences.

1 Do you think you out novel and exciting experiences?
2 Do you on new challenges or do you prefer familiar things?
3 Is being a 'sensation seeker' part of your psychological - ?
4 Would you normally a chance on a shot?
5 Are you at from anything dangerous in your daily life?
6 Would you the risk of losing a lot of money in order to win a lot?

6 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to Exercise 5 in your notebook, with your reasons, or talk to another student.

Review: Human behaviour

Unit 40

1 The same word is missing in each pair of sentences. Write it in.

1 a The information was hushed to protect the doctor.
b She tried to cover it , but we found out.
2 a You nearly scared me death!
b It's hard to face up the truth.
3 a It was clearly untrue about the money, but I didn't let that I knew.
b I told a lie, but I don't want to have that my conscience.
4 a She couldn't gloss the truth any longer.
b You can't pull the wool my eyes!
5 a The government announcement was an attempt to save .
b Neither side is prepared to lose in the dispute.
6 a When it to looking after children, she's brilliant.
b We'll have to hope this information never to light.

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 Why didn't you tell her the truth? ~ It was wrong not to, but I wanted to her feelings.
2 Did he know his father was in prison? ~ No, his mother it from him for years.
3 It's always difficult to give bad news. ~ Yes, it's tempting just to over the truth.
4 Don't mention the surprise party to Alice. ~ No, we mustn't give the away.
5 Why did she scream? ~ Well, you scared the living out of her!
6 Do you feel responsible for the job losses? ~ Of course I do; it's very hard to with.

Unit 41

1 Complete the definitions.

1 If something is *a close shave*, you manage to a dangerous situation.
2 If you *slip up*, you make a .
3 If you are *forging ahead*, you are making quickly.
4 If you *play it safe*, you don't take .
5 If you *pull something off*, you in doing something .
6 If something *tips the balance in your favour*, it gives you a slight over somebody.
7 If the result is *in the balance*, it is not yet .
8 If you *look back on something*, you think about a .
9 If you are *neck and neck* with someone, you are with them.
10 If you are *gaining ground on* someone, you are with them.
11 If you *give something your all*, you as much as possible.
12 If a game or race starts *hotting up*, it becomes more .

Unit 45

1 One word is wrong in each sentence. Find the mistake and correct it.

1 I don't know why he's so aggressive; he's got a real fish on his shoulder.
2 This problem could get worse, so we'd better take the cow by the horns.
3 I'm afraid he's not going to compromise now; he's digging his toes in.
4 She's very bright, so I'm sure she'll fly through this exam.
5 He's getting very worked up about it, but it's just a storm in a saucer.
6 He won't change his mind easily; you'll have your job cut out to persuade him.
7 They've stepped into the trap of thinking it would be easy.
8 If we just sit loose, this problem might blow over.

2 Replace the words in italics with an idiom or phrasal verb, using the words in the box in the correct form. Keep a similar meaning.

sort food dig ✓ pull come get act world sail

► She's stubborn; I think she'll *refuse to change her mind.* dig her heels in
1 He made a decision but then didn't *do anything about* it.
2 It was a big disappointment and she still hasn't *recovered from* it.
3 You've got to *control your feelings and act more calmly*.
4 *It's not the worst thing that could happen.*
5 She'll *pass* the exam *easily*.
6 He *hasn't felt like eating* for a few days.
7 I'm sure the subject *was discussed* at the meeting.
8 We've got to *deal with* this problem.

Unit 46

1 Is the speaker feeling positive, or being critical of herself? Write P or C.

1 I get carried away.
2 I dwell on things.
3 I took to it like a duck to water.
4 I buried my head in the sand.
5 I threw myself into it.
6 I faced up to it.
7 I put myself down.
8 I was in my element.
9 I couldn't live up to it.
10 Luck's always on my side.

2 Complete each sentence in two different ways, starting with the words given.

1 He doesn't let these things worry him because
- life's too .
- life goes .

2 She doesn't think about things carefully enough.
- She jumps to .
- She gets carried .

3 Once he's got an idea,
- there's no .
- he throws .

4 When she has a problem,
- she buries .
- she faces .

Unit 47

1 Complete the texts. You will find one of the words for each idiom or phrasal verb in the box.

rush step minds rightly courage draw turn sight straw put✓ weigh toss

Some decisions I've had to make in the last year:

- I couldn't ▸ put up with the flat I was living in any longer – it was really horrible, but I had to (1) whether a move would be wise, given that I might be changing my job at the same time. I was in (2) about whether to start looking around when, one day, the flat was broken into and my laptop was stolen. That was the (3) , so that same day, I went and found a new place to rent.
- There was this problem with my job, as I said. I'd been working all hours of the day and night, admittedly for a lot of money, but I'd completely (4) of the important things in life: family, friends, personal happiness. (5) wrongly, I (6) a decision and got a job providing support for elderly people in their homes. I'd always wanted to do something for the community, and you have to have the (7) . I don't regret it at all.
- In the summer, my brother was in trouble over some small debts, and eventually he (8) me for help. I worried about it for days; it was a (9) as to whether I should get Dad to (10) and sort him out financially, but in the end, I lent him the money myself. Hopefully he'll be able to (11) under his problems and keep better track of his finances in future.

Unit 48

1 Read the definitions and complete the idioms and phrasal verbs.

▸ something that probably won't succeed, but is worth trying: a long shot
1 make a problem easier to understand: shed on sth
2 decide to do something, knowing that it might be the wrong thing to do: take a on sth
3 not take any risks at all: play it
4 ask someone to do what they are threatening to do, because you believe they don't intend to do it: call sb's
5 become involved in a tricky situation without intending to do so: get yourself sth
6 do something very dangerous, especially something that might injure or kill you: risk your
7 bet on a horse, race, etc: money on sth
8 be caused by a particular person or thing: be to sb/sth

2 Write in the missing prepositions or adverbs.

1 My brother's a real risk-taker: he thrives dangerous sports like hang-gliding.
2 Personally I'm a very cautious person, and I always err the side caution.
3 Parking is allowed here, but purely the customer's own risk.
4 I'm sticking my neck here, but I think Barton will win the next election.
5 Millions of people around the world will be risk from extreme weather in the future.
6 My sister is not the kind of person to seek adventure; on the contrary.
7 The conference aims to throw light how to manage financial risk.
8 The advisory committee is made of experts in risk management.

49 I can use informal spoken idioms

A A range of opinions

The majority of idioms range from neutral to informal. The examples here are all informal, and used mostly in spoken English.

A What did you make of the new soap opera?
B I **was glued to** it.
C Mmm. **Nothing to get excited about.**
D Didn't see it. It**'s not my idea of fun**.

A Do you think we'll win?
B Yeah, it**'s in the bag**.
C I think we**'re in with a chance**.
D Maybe, but it**'ll take some doing**.

A Was he upset by the criticism?
B **Far from it.**
C It's **water off a duck's back** to him.
D Oh, I think he **felt** a bit **hard done by**.

Glossary

be glued to sth	be paying all your attention to sth.
nothing to get excited about	sth that is not particularly good or interesting. SYN **nothing to write home about**.
not be your idea of fun	not be sth that you enjoy, though others might enjoy it.
be in the bag	If sth **is in the bag**, you are sure to get it or achieve it.
be in with a chance (**of doing sth**)	have the possibility of succeeding or achieving sth.
take some doing	be difficult to do, or involve a lot of effort or time.
far from it	used to say that the opposite of what sb says is true. SYN **quite the opposite/reverse**.
(**like**) **water off a duck's back**	used to say that sth, especially criticism, has no effect on sb.
feel/be hard done by	feel/be unfairly treated.

1 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 Moira felt a bit hard done *by* | *for* when her boss criticized her.
2 Was Harry unhappy about the exam paper? ~ *Far from it.* | *Quite the opposite.*
3 I was *glued* | *stuck* to that programme about elephants last night.
4 Are you sure you'll get that contract? ~ Yeah, it's in the *packet* | *bag*.
5 What did you think of the book? ~ Nothing to *write home about* | *get excited about*.
6 You can say what you like to him. ~ Yeah, it's like water off a duck's *beak* | *back*.

2 Respond to the questions using idioms from above, and using the information in brackets to guide you.

▸ Did you watch the programme? ~ Yes, I was glued to it. (yes, I was fascinated by it)
1 Do you fancy going to the opera? ~ (not the sort of thing you like)
2 Were you disappointed with the result? ~ (not at all)
3 Do you think he'll win? ~ (he has a possibility of winning)
4 What did you think of the film? ~ (not very good at all)
5 Were you upset? ~ (yes, I was unfairly treated)
6 Do you think you'll succeed? ~ (it'll require a lot of effort)
7 Were you upset by the criticism? ~ (you're not affected by it)
8 Will she get the job? ~ (yes, it's a certainty)

B Say it another way

Idioms often give you an opportunity to say something in a slightly different way.

Do you fancy a coffee?

I wouldn't say no.

What time are you going? … Danny?

I'm sorry, I **was miles away**.

We'd better **make a move** or we**'ll be pushed to** get there on time.

I asked him if he could help with the arrangements but he **didn't want to know**.

I can't see what else to do, so let's **leave it at that**.

You won some money last time, but I wouldn't **push your luck**.

Dad was **none too pleased** about me borrowing the car.

When we go to the gym, Michael just **does his own thing**.

Glossary

I wouldn't say no	= yes, please.
be miles away	be thinking about sth else.
make a move	leave a place.
be (**hard**) **pushed to do sth**	have (a lot of) difficulty in doing sth.
not want to know	refuse to listen or get involved.
leave it at that	do or say nothing more.
push your luck	take more risks than are sensible.
none/not too pleased	annoyed.

spotlight *thing(s)*

Thing(s) occurs in many idioms, e.g.:
He likes to do his own thing. = likes to do what he wants or what interests him.
You must be seeing things. = must be imagining you can see things that aren't there (also **be hearing things**).

3 Find a mistake in each sentence. Cross out any unnecessary words, or write the correct words at the end.

▶ If they offered me a free flight, I wouldn't say ~~not~~. no
1 I think we'll be hardly pushed to get home by seven o'clock.
2 I asked her if we could wait in here, but she didn't want to know it.
3 We'd better make a move on, or we'll miss our train.
4 Let's give him one more try, then leave it at this.
5 He was very helpful last time, but you shouldn't push the luck.
6 There's no one at the door; you must hear things.

4 Replace the part of the response in italics with an idiom that keeps a similar meaning.

▶ Is she going to open another shop? ~ Maybe, but she's *taking a big risk*. pushing her luck
1 What did Pat say? ~ Er … I'm sorry, I was *thinking about something else*.
2 Is that a deer outside the window? ~ You must be *imagining it*.
3 Shall we try talking to her again? ~ No, let's *say nothing more*.
4 Would you like a coffee? ~ Hmm, *that would be nice*.
5 Do you want another cup of tea? ~ No, I'd better *go*.
6 Does he do the same as the rest? ~ No, he just does *what interests him*.
7 How did she react when you told her? ~ She was *annoyed*.
8 Can you finish it today? ~ I think *that will be difficult*.

50 I can use common spoken responses

A Making positive noises

In the responses below, the main stress falls on the underlined syllable.

I've brought my umbrella.	**Just as well**.
Do you mind me coming this early?	No, **not in the least**.
Shall we go?	Yeah, **ready when you are**.
How's the course going?	**So far, so good**.
We could take the train.	**That's an idea**.
Is it a difficult game?	No, **there's nothing to it**.
Sorry, I didn't give you the money for my sandwich.	It's OK. **Forget it**.
It's a public holiday, so everything will be closed.	Mmm, **that figures**.
Has the scheme been a success?	Yes, **very much so**.
I've got Friday off.	**Lucky you**.

Glossary

(it's/that's) just as well	it is lucky that sth has or hasn't happened, otherwise there would be problems.
not in the least	used to emphasize the answer 'no'. SYN **not at all**.
ready when you are	INF used to tell sb that you are ready to do sth with them whenever they are ready.
so far, so good	INF used to say things have been successful up to now.
that's an idea	INF used to reply in a positive way to a suggestion.
there's nothing to it	INF = it's very easy.
forget it	INF used to tell sb not to worry about sth.
that figures	used to say that sth seems logical and reasonable.
very much so	INF used to emphasize your agreement or approval.
lucky you	INF used to say you think sb is lucky to have or do sth.

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 You must be happy in the new place.
2 Will I be able to do it?
3 I think we should go.
4 Was he worried about it?
5 We could buy him a watch.
6 I took the laptop out of the car.
7 Can I pay you for the tickets?
8 How's your French class going?

a Ready when you are.
b That's just as well.
c That's an idea.
d So far, so good.
e Yes, very much so.
f No, not in the least.
g Yeah, there's nothing to it.
h No, forget it.

2 Complete the dialogues with a suitable idiom.

1 I'm going to spend a week in the south of France. ~ Wow, .
2 Do you mind if we work in the library? ~ No, .
3 If she's coming by bus, she won't be here until six. ~ Yeah, .
4 Are you getting on OK? ~ Yeah, .
5 How much do I owe you for the meal? ~ It's OK. .
6 I'm not sure if I'll be able to use this new software. ~ Don't worry. .
7 I'll be away for a couple of days, so I've locked the windows. ~ Yeah, .

B Negative or angry responses

Are you coming for an early morning swim? ~ **No fear**.

I don't want to go out with you this evening. ~ **Please yourself**.

Can I have this chocolate? ~ **Don't you dare**!

Michael never thanks people for things. ~ **That's a load of rubbish**!

I'm going to the dentist this afternoon. ~ Ooh, **rather you than me**.

I want to get tickets for that concert. ~ **You'll be lucky**.

You've eaten all the biscuits! ~ **So what?**

Marianne? ~ Oh, **now what?**

Val says she'll be late. ~ **That's not my problem**.

Glossary

no fear	INF used to say that you definitely do not want to do sth. SYN **no way**.
please yourself	INF used to tell sb you are annoyed and do not care what they do.
don't you dare	INF used to tell sb strongly not to do sth.
that's/what a load of rubbish/nonsense	INF, IMPOLITE used to say that you think sth is untrue or stupid.
rather you/him, etc. **than me**	INF used to say that you would not like to do sth that sb else is going to do.
you'll be lucky	INF used to tell sb that what they want probably will not happen.
so what?	INF used to say you think sth is not important, especially after sb has criticized you for it. SYN **what of it?**
now what?	INF used when you are annoyed because sb is always asking you questions or interrupting you. SYN **what is it now?**
that's not my problem	INF = I don't care about sth that is sb else's problem (also **that's his/her**, etc. **problem** = they must solve their own problems.)

3 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 You've put on weight. ~ *So what?* | *Now what?*
2 I don't want to go. I'd rather stay here. ~ *That's not my problem.* | *Please yourself.*
3 I'm going to tell Dan you went out with Tony. ~ *No fear.* | *Don't you dare!*
4 I've got too many things to do. ~ *That's your problem.* | *That's not my problem.*
5 Minus 10 degrees and I'll be sleeping in a tent tonight! ~ *You'll be lucky.* | *Rather you than me.*
6 Your English pronunciation sounds funny. ~ *What of it?* | *So what?*

4 Read what people say to Sam. Write Sam's responses. (Sam is lazy and in a bad temper.)

► I don't think I'll come to the concert tonight. ~ Sam: 'Please yourself !'
1 I'm going to pass all my English exams. ~ Sam: ' .'
2 Are you going on that ten kilometre walk? ~ Sam: ' .'
3 Can I finish your drink? ~ Sam: ' !'
4 Your girlfriend's a lot younger than you. ~ Sam: ' ?'
5 I always forget to set my alarm clock and then I oversleep. ~ Sam: ' .'
6 I'm going to attend extra English classes. ~ Sam: ' .'
7 Sam! Sam! Come over here! ~ Sam: ' ?'
8 Everyone says you have a very bad temper. ~ Sam: ' !'

51 I can understand more formal idioms

Formal spoken English

Some idioms are commonly heard in more formal spoken contexts such as parliamentary debates, television and radio broadcasts, ceremonies, lectures, and so on.

With all due respect to the Prime Minister, it is the people of this country who have, **in large part**, suffered **at the hands of** his government, and I am sure they will want to **take issue with** his last remark.

Thousands of people gathered to **pay their respects to** the many local servicemen who **laid down their lives for** their country.

Terrorists still **hold sway** in many of the rural areas and **therein lies** the problem. They have already **laid waste to** much valuable farmland, and we could be facing yet another drought. Any hopes that this awful situation might **be at an end** look premature.

James Maplin's groundbreaking research not only **gave rise to** his highly esteemed books and **set the seal on** a glittering academic career, it also put us **on the threshold of** a major breakthrough in the treatment of Parkinson's Disease. I now **have the honour of** introducing Professor Maplin …

I would like to **pay tribute to** the young police officer who, **paying no heed to** his own safety, went to the help of our daughter and saved her from certain death. It was an act of considerable bravery, way **beyond the call of duty**, and we will forever **be in his debt**.

Glossary

with (all due) respect (to sb)	used as a polite formula when you are going to disagree with sb.
in large part	to a great extent. SYN **in large measure**.
at the hands of sb	because of sb's actions (*they suffered/died* ***at his hands***).
take issue with sth/sb (over/about sth)	start disagreeing or arguing with sb about sth.
pay your respects (to sb)	show your respect for sb by visiting them, going to their funeral, attending a memorial service, etc.
lay down your life (for sb/sth)	die in order to protect or save sb/sth.
hold sway	have power or influence over a group of people or a region.
therein lies sth	used to indicate the result or consequence of a situation or an action.
lay waste to sth	completely destroy a place or area.
be at an end	If sth **is at an end**, it has finished.
give rise to sth	cause sth to happen or exist.
set the seal on sth	make sth definite or complete.
on the threshold of sth	at the beginning of sth.
have the honour of doing sth	be given the opportunity of doing sth that makes you feel proud.
pay tribute to sb	say or do sth to show your respect and admiration for sb.
pay heed to sb/sth	give careful attention to sb/sth (**pay no heed to sb/sth** give no attention to sb/sth).
beyond the call of duty	(of an action) performed with greater courage or effort than is usual or expected.
be in sb's debt	feel grateful to sb for their help, kindness, etc. (also **be in debt to sb**).

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 have
2 pay
3 take
4 give
5 hold
6 set
7 lay down
8 lay

a rise to something
b the seal on something
c waste to something
d the honour of doing something
e tribute to somebody
f issue with somebody
g sway
h your life for something

2 The same word is missing in each pair of sentences. What is it?

1 a Many have suffered the hands of the militia.
  b The fighting could be an end.
2 a The two young men came and their respects to their father.
  b Carl no heed to the warnings he had received.
3 a Thousands down their lives.
  b The army waste to large parts of the territory.
4 a I would like to take issue your comments about local residents.
  b respect, sir, I don't believe your suggestion will be acceptable.
5 a We were very much their debt for their help in winning the election.
  b Humans are large part responsible for the global warming crisis.

3 Which word is missing in each definition?

1 If you *lay waste to* something, you it.
2 If you are *on the threshold of* something, you are at the of something.
3 We use *with all due respect* when we are going to with someone.
4 If something *gives rise to* something, it causes it to .
5 If you *take issue with* somebody, you with them.
6 If you *have the honour of* doing something, you have the opportunity to do something which makes you feel .

4 Replace the words in italics with a more formal idiom that has a similar meaning.

▸ She *showed her admiration for* him in her farewell speech. paid tribute to
1 We could be *at the beginning* of a new era.
2 Many people have suffered *because of* the rebels.
3 The army still *has power* over much of the country.
4 Dr Ellis *took no notice of* the calls for his resignation.
5 The disease spread *to a great extent* because of poverty.
6 So many soldiers *died* in the two world wars.
7 I will always *feel grateful to him*.
8 They *damaged or destroyed* large areas of the town.
9 That is where I *disagree* with the council leader.
10 The fireman's bravery was *more than we should expect of anyone*.

5 Complete the texts.

With all due (1) , this is where I take (2) with the Prime Minister because this government has not taken any decisive action, and therein (3) the problem. It was the government's failure to control lending which gave (4) to this crisis in the first place, and now the Prime Minister calmly tells us that our problems could be at an (5) . What nonsense!

The brigade gathered to pay their (6) to the officer who (7) down his life in order to save the lives of others. One soldier who survived as a result of the officer's gallantry paid this special (8) to Corporal Ben Williams. 'I had the (9) of serving under Corporal Williams, and for those of us who are here today, in large (10) because of his bravery, we salute you.'

52 I can use idioms in a legal context

A Reporting a court case

Idioms commonly found in a legal context tend to be more formal.

RADIO REPORT Mr Ryan, **of no fixed abode**, appeared before magistrates having been charged with **breach of the peace**. **Under oath**, Mr Ryan denied that he had been causing a disturbance or that he had attempted to attack …

WITNESS STATEMENT On the day **in question** I encountered Mr Ryan at the entrance to the supermarket. He was clearly **under the influence** and was being abusive, so I **took the liberty of** trying to move him. He did **not take kindly to** this, and started to punch me. However, **by virtue of** my size, and being sober, I was able to restrain him.

POLICE STATEMENT We are now working **in conjunction with** the council to reduce drinking in public places, but are not yet **at liberty to** say precisely what steps will …

Glossary

of no fixed abode	FML = having no permanent home.
breach of the peace	LEGAL the crime of noisy or violent behaviour in a public place.
under/on oath	LEGAL having made a formal promise to tell the truth in a court of law.
in question	FML The **day**, **man**, etc. **in question** is the day, man, etc. being discussed (in this case the day of the alleged crime).
under the influence	having had too much alcohol.
take the liberty of doing sth	FML do sth without permission.
not take kindly to sth/sb	FML find it difficult to accept sth/sb because they annoy you.
by virtue of sth	FML because of sth; as a result of sth.
in conjunction with sb/sth	FML together with sb/sth.
at liberty (**to do sth**)	FML having permission to do sth.

1 Paraphrase the phrases in italics in more everyday English. Look at the example first.

▸ What does it mean, *he didn't take kindly to it?* It means he was very annoyed by it.
1 What do they mean, *he was of no fixed abode*?
2 What did he mean by *under the influence*?
3 What's meant by speaking *under oath*?
4 What did she mean, *by virtue of her experience*?
5 What's *breach of the peace*?
6 What does he mean, *he's not at liberty to tell us*?

2 Complete the sentences.

1 He's been found guilty of   of the peace.
2 If you drive while under the   , you could get into trouble.
3 The authorities did not take   to my criticism.
4 The newspaper is not at   to publish the names before the trial.
5 If you give evidence in a court of law, remember that you are under   .
6 The official wasn't there, so I   the liberty of consulting the prisoner's notes.
7 They are funding the development in   with the local council.
8 On the day in   , I didn't see the two men leave the house.

B Read the small print

Fairfax vindicated in court decision

In his **summing-up**, the local magistrate acknowledged that Fairfax Ltd may have violated **the spirit of the law**, but they had acted fully **in accordance with the letter of the law**. He said that although Mrs Wilson refused to pay the money demanded by Fairfax Ltd **in good faith**, she had **entered into** an agreement with the company **of her own free will**, and must **abide by** it. Sadly, it was her failure to read **the small print** in that agreement which **had been her undoing**. He therefore ruled that Fairfax Ltd had not tried to obtain money **under false pretences**, and were entitled to claim what rightfully belonged to them.

Glossary

summing-up	LEGAL a statement made by a judge, magistrate, or lawyer that gives a summary of the evidence in a court. **sum up** v.
in accordance with sth	FML in a way that follows a rule or sb's wishes.
in good faith	believing that what you are doing is right.
enter into sth	FML take part in a formal arrangement, activity, or discussion.
of your own free will	freely and willingly and not in response to force.
abide by sth	obey a rule, decision, instruction, etc.
the small print	the details of sth, often in a contract, that are written in small letters and may include conditions that limit your rights.
be sb's undoing	be the cause of sb's failure.
under false pretences	If you do or get sth **under false pretences**, you do or get it by tricking or deceiving people.

spotlight The law

The spirit of the law is the real meaning or intention of a law, even if the way it is written does not express this. **The letter of the law** is the exact words that are used in a law rather than its general meaning.

3 Complete the sentences.

1 He followed the letter of the law, but I believe it was against the of the law.
2 If you into an agreement with someone, you have to by it.
3 When you are signing a contract, it is very important to read the print.
4 The burglar left fingerprints at the scene of the crime; that was his .
5 Mary had no idea the document was a forgery; she signed it in good .
6 He can't complain; he went there of his own free .
7 The judge will up the evidence tomorrow in court.
8 It is claimed the man obtained the money under false .

4 Paraphrase the sentences on the left using more formal or legal language. Start with the words given.

► It was the reason why he failed.	It was his undoing .
1 He wanted to do it; no one made him.	He did it of .
2 She did exactly what the law says.	She followed the .
3 He got the money by tricking her.	He got the money under .
4 He did exactly what Mrs Hart wished.	He acted in .
5 The judge explained when going over the evidence.	The judge explained in his .
6 Miles did it because he thought it was right.	Miles did it in .
7 I wish I hadn't taken part in the discussion.	I wish I hadn't .
8 They promised to obey the rules.	They promised to .

53 I can use more formal prepositional verbs

The majority of phrasal verbs are either neutral or informal in style. A small number of prepositional verbs, however, range from neutral to formal, and are used more commonly in written English or more formal spoken English. In most cases, this is because the base verb is more formal, e.g. *allude*, *engage*, etc.

If multinational companies **adhere to** the European Court's decision, they may have to **dispose of** assets which will **deprive** them **of** significant sources of income.

Britain is having to **contend with** an ageing population, the implications of which could **impinge upon** almost all of us in one way or another over the next 20 to 30 years.

In the past the company **prided itself on** being a major employer in the area, but last week it reluctantly agreed to **dispense with the services of** three of its regional managers.

Banks are **resigning themselves to** the fact that they will **be subjected to** much closer scrutiny if the government **embarks upon** its plan of tighter financial regulation.

Jonathan Brannon's solicitor **alluded to** the fact that he and his ex-wife **were** still **engaged in** a dispute over the ownership of their former home.

A spokesperson said he did not **subscribe to** the view that the club's action **had amounted to** unfair dismissal.

Glossary

adhere to sth	obey a law, rule, agreement, etc. SYN **abide by sth**.
dispose of sth/sb	get rid of sth that you no longer want or cannot keep.
deprive sb of sth	prevent sb from having, using, or doing sth.
contend with sth	have to deal with a problem or difficult situation.
impinge on/upon sb/sth	have an effect on sb/sth, usually in a negative way. SYN **impact on sb/sth**.
pride yourself on sth/on doing sth	be proud of sth / doing sth.
dispense with sb's services	stop employing sb or dismiss sb from their job.
resign yourself to sth	accept sth unpleasant that cannot be changed or avoided.
subject sb to sth	(often passive) make sb suffer or experience sth unpleasant.
embark on/upon sth	start to do sth new or difficult.
allude to sth	refer to sth indirectly.
be engaged in sth	take part in sth; be involved in sth (also **engage in sth**).
subscribe to sth	agree with an idea, opinion, or theory.
amount to sth	be the same as or equal to something else.

spotlight verb + *on/upon*

The choice between *on* and *upon*, e.g. *embark **on/upon***, is often one of style: *upon* is generally more formal than *on*. Other examples include:

She wouldn't enlarge on/upon her remarks. = say more about them.

He called on/upon the government for more support. = asked the government.

They didn't wish to dwell on/upon the consequences. = spend time thinking about something difficult or unpleasant.

1 Choose the most suitable ending (a–h) for each of the sentence beginnings (1–8).

1 They have dispensed with
2 You must abide by
3 I don't subscribe to
4 They were deprived of
5 She's about to embark on
6 There are risks in disposing of
7 We had to contend with
8 They have called on

a food and water.
b a number of problems.
c nuclear waste.
d her services.
e the terms of the contract.
f other countries for assistance.
g that theory.
h a new career.

2 A preposition is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

▸ The suggested changes will not impinge greatly ⁁ people's lives. on
1 I don't subscribe that point of view at all.
2 When are they aiming to embark the new project?
3 They were deprived even the most basic essentials.
4 We had to contend sub-zero temperatures.
5 My mother prides herself her cooking.
6 Even without interest, the repayments amount a large sum of money.
7 Are they still engaged discussions?
8 After the death of her husband, Martha resigned herself a lonely existence.

3 Complete the sentences with verbs from the box in the correct form.

subject resign deprive dispose amount impinge adhere engage

1 If you put the plants in that corner, they will be   of light.
2 Investors have   themselves to the fact that profits have fallen in value.
3 When the animal dies, the vet will   of the body.
4 Many of the prisoners were   to torture.
5 I've been   in a lengthy dispute with the tax office.
6 Whether he resigned or was sacked, it   to the same thing.
7 Any cuts in this department will   upon the rest of the organization.
8 Competitors must   to the rules, otherwise they will be disqualified.

4 Replace the parts of the sentences in italics with a more formal prepositional verb that keeps a similar meaning.

▸ The people have *had to do without* basic human rights. been deprived of
1 I asked her to *say a bit more about* her theory.
2 I have never *held* the view that punishment is an effective deterrent.
3 The court has called upon member states to *stick with* their decision.
4 We may have to *deal with* uncompromising attitudes on both sides.
5 The managers are going to *get rid of* some clerical staff.
6 Let's not *think any more about* past problems.
7 His decision to resign *is the same thing as* an admission of failure.
8 The group *are proud of* their attention to detail.

5 Rewrite the sentences on the left using a more formal prepositional verb.

▸ Let's not think about this any more. Let's not dwell on this .
1 We no longer need these old files. We can   .
2 It won't have an effect on my decision It won't   .
3 He had to go through a tough interview. He was   .
4 She's proud of her loyalty. She   .
5 Will they do what is stated in the rules? Will they   ?
6 She mentioned your comments indirectly. She   .

54 I can understand idioms in written English

FOR SALE £1500 o.n.o.

Situations Vacant

| This area is strictly **out of bounds** |

Lyncombe Road, 3-bed house, **UNDER OFFER**

The policyholder must notify us **in the event of** any change in occupancy. Upon receipt of this notice we **reserve the right to** amend the terms and conditions of this insurance.

Students will only receive a discount **on production of** a valid ID card.

There is no service charge and tipping is **at** your **discretion**.

We look forward to hearing from you **at your earliest convenience**.

To whom it may concern
I have known Margaret Bond for over ten years, and in that time she …

1203
KEEP YOUR DISTANCE

Glossary

for sale	available for sb to buy; **o.n.o./ono** = or nearest offer.
situations vacant	the title of a section in a newspaper where jobs are advertised.
out of bounds	If a place is **out of bounds**, you are not allowed to go there.
under offer	If a house is **under offer**, sb has agreed to buy it.
in the event of sth	= if sth happens.
reserve the right to do sth	= make use of a formal right to do sth if necessary.
on production of sth	when you show sth.
at sb's discretion	according to what sb decides or wishes to do.
at your earliest convenience	FML = at the earliest suitable time for you.
To whom it may concern	FML used at the beginning of a notice or document (e.g. a personal reference) when it is not addressed to a particular person.
keep your distance	make sure you are not too near sb/sth.

1 Complete the sentences.

1 Please notify your local authority in the   of any change in your circumstances.
2 The management reserves the   to refuse admission.
3 Passengers will only be allowed on the platform on   of a valid ticket.
4 You can't go in there. The sign clearly says 'out of   '.
5   sale: 2008 Ford Mondeo, in excellent condition. £4,000 ono.
6 We look forward to hearing from you at your earliest   .
7 I believe the apartment for sale is now   offer.
8 Bail is granted at the   of the court.

2 Cover the glossary and answer the questions.

1 What does 'o.n.o.' mean?
2 What might be 'under offer', and what does it mean?
3 What kind of thing would you find under 'situations vacant'?
4 What would you find written under 'to whom it may concern'?
5 What might be 'at your discretion' in a café or restaurant?
6 Where would you see a 'keep your distance' sign?

Review: Styles of language

Unit 49

1 Complete the answers to the questions below using idioms from the table. You can move horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.

I	I	WAS	MILES	THING
WOULDN'T	SAY	NO	AWAY	OWN ↑
IT'S	IN	HE'S	DO →	HER ↑
NONE	THE	GLUED	LEAVE	IT
TOO	BAG	TO	IT	AT
PLEASED	FAR	FROM	IT	THAT

- ▸ Would she like to come on a walk? ~ No, she'd rather do her own thing .
- 1 Is he enjoying the film? ~ Yes, .
- 2 Would you like a sandwich or something? ~ Hmm, .
- 3 What happened when she saw the mess? ~ Well, she was .
- 4 Are you sure you've got the job? ~ Yeah, .
- 5 I think that's the best we can do. ~ Fine, let's .
- 6 So, what do you think we should do? ~ Pardon? Oh, sorry, .
- 7 Did she accept that she was wrong? ~ No, .

2 Match the opposites.

- ▸ He's decided to stay here. OPP f
- 1 He said it was really exciting. OPP
- 2 He loves doing it. OPP
- 3 He's unlikely to succeed. OPP
- 4 He won't take risks. OPP
- 5 He'll find it easy. OPP
- 6 He joins in with the crowd. OPP
- 7 He listened carefully. OPP

- a He pushes his luck all the time.
- b He didn't want to know.
- c He does his own thing.
- d He'll be hard pushed to do it.
- e He's in with a chance.
- f He's going to make a move. ✓
- g He said it's nothing to write home about.
- h It's not his idea of fun.

Unit 50

1 Tick the correct stimulus from speaker A to match the response from speaker B.

1 A *I'm going to clean out the dustbin.* ☐ *I'm going out for dinner.* ☐
B Rather you than me.

2 A *I've won some money on the lottery.* ☐ *I hope I win the lottery.* ☐
B You'll be lucky.

3 A *Are you frightened of the dark?* ☐ *Are you going out in the dark?* ☐
B No fear.

4 A *How's the new job?* ☐ *Is it far to the office?* ☐
B So far, so good.

5 A *Is the new restaurant nice?* ☐ *Is the climb very difficult?* ☐
B No, there's nothing to it.

6 A *Would you like a coffee?* ☐ *Is it OK if I don't come with you tonight?* ☐
B Please yourself.

7 A *Did you enjoy the film?* ☐ *What did you think of the film?* ☐
B Very much so.

2 Correct one mistake in each dialogue.

1 Can I take the car tonight? ~ You don't dare!
2 Shall we make a move? ~ Ready as you are.
3 They say the club's going to close down. ~ What's a load of rubbish!
4 I've bought some extra food for tonight. ~ Just so well; Maki and Lita are coming.
5 It's after 6.00 – he must have gone home. ~ Yeah, this figures.
6 I've got to tell Martin I don't want to see him again. ~ Rather you or me.

Unit 51

1 Rewrite the sentences on the left using a more formal phrase.

► The fault lies to a great extent with the boss.	The fault lies in large part with the boss .
1 We're at the beginning of a new era.	We're on .
2 He didn't listen to my advice.	He paid .
3 They died for their country.	They laid .
4 I'm sorry but I have to disagree with you.	With all .
5 The soldiers completely destroyed the town.	The soldiers laid .
6 She showed a huge amount of courage.	She went beyond .

2 Put the words in order and add one word.

► disagree | due | you | with | all | I | with With all due respect, I disagree with you.
1 to | our | widow | we | respects | the
2 further | to | could | rise | problems | delays
3 over | issue | expenses | I | took | her | the | claim
4 died | soldiers | to | he | had | tribute | the | who
5 meeting | honour | President | we | the | of | the
6 government | hands | has | the | of | suffered | country | the | this

Unit 52

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out a phrase. What is it, and what does it mean?

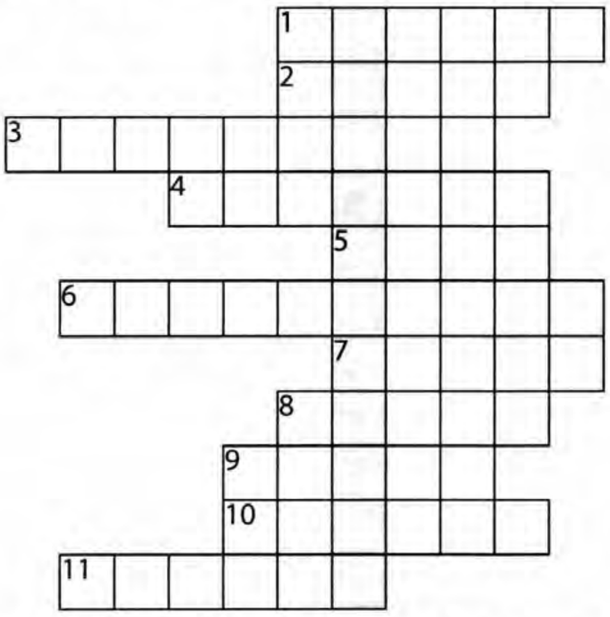

1 Not take to something = not want to accept a situation because it annoys you.
2 into an agreement = take part in an official agreement.
3 A = a statement in court, given by a judge, magistrate, or lawyer, which provides a shortened version of the evidence.
4 Your = the thing that causes you to fail at something.
5 Under = having made a formal promise to a court of law to tell the truth.
6 In with someone's wishes = in a way that fulfils someone's wishes.
7 Of no abode = having nowhere permanent to live.
8 Under pretences = by tricking or deceiving someone.
9 The small = the details in a document which affect your rights.
10 Follow the of the law = interpret the law very literally and follow its precise wording.
11 of the peace = noisy or violent behaviour in a public place.

The phrase in the grey squares is .

Unit 53

1 Put the dominoes in the correct order to make a joined sequence of idioms. Write the correct order of dominoes below.

of money. | I called → upon him. | He didn't enlarge → upon it. | I dispensed

1	the evidence	You must abide
2	of money	I called
3	to an ordeal	We embarked on
4	upon it.	I dispensed
5	the crime	He deprived her
6	herself on it	It amounted
7	an adventure	She alluded to
8	with his services	She resigned
9	to very little	They were subjected
10	by the decision	She prides
11	herself to failure	He disposed of
12	upon him.	He didn't enlarge

2 ,12 ,4 , , , , , , , , , ,

2 Circle the correct word. In some sentences both words may be correct.

1 The results were terrible, but they decided not to *dwell / impinge* on them for long.
2 Mr Ellis *referred / alluded* to the crime in a very roundabout way, but he refused to *enlarge / call* upon it.
3 Many local people have *contended / resigned* themselves to a second-rate rubbish collection service, and furthermore have to *dispense / contend* with litter in the streets for weeks on end.
4 Rankin was *deprived / disposed* of his freedom, but he still *took part / engaged* in illegal activities.
5 We *call / embark* upon the government to *adhere / abide* to the agreed regulations.

Unit 54

1 True or false? Write T or F. If the meaning is false, write the true meaning.

Phrase	Meaning?	T/F	True meaning
▸ in the event of fire	= when you are building a fire	F	if a fire happens / if there is a fire
1 situations vacant	= empty accommodation		
2 at your discretion	= according to the law		
3 to whom it may concern	heading seen on a personal reference for a job		
4 out of bounds	= out of control		
5 O.N.O.	= or new offer		
6 at your earliest convenience	= as soon as you are able to do something		
7 keep your distance	= stay close to something		

55 I can understand metaphors in phrasal verbs

Literal meaning	**Metaphorical meanings**
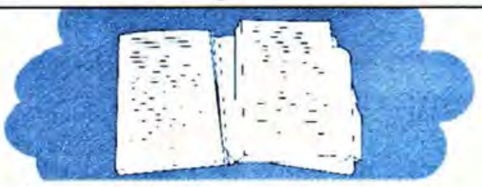 *The book**'s falling apart**.*	*Things went downhill and her marriage* ***fell apart****.* = had so many problems that it was impossible to continue existing (a relationship / sb's world **falls apart**).
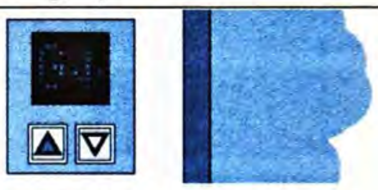 *This lift **is going down**.*	*Their standards* ***have gone down*** *in recent months.* = become worse in quality. *The computer system* ***has gone down****.* = stopped working temporarily.
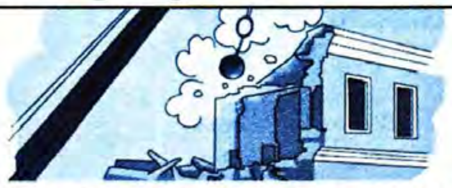 *The building **is being knocked down**.*	*She* ***knocked*** *the price* ***down*** *by 15 per cent.* INF = reduced the price by 15 per cent. **knockdown** ADJ (***knockdown*** *prices*).
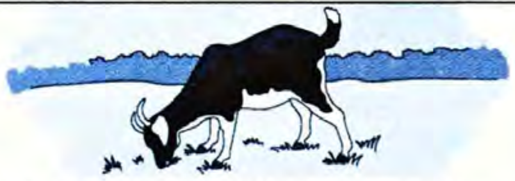 *Goats **feed on** grain and grasses.*	*Terrorism* ***feeds on*** *fear.* = becomes stronger because of fear. (**feed on sth** is often DISAPPROVING.)
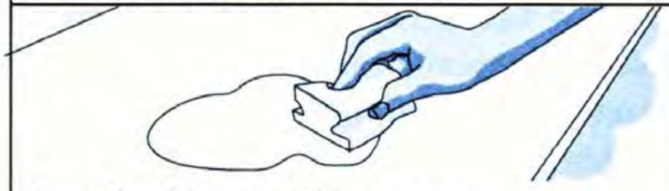 *I **soaked** it **up** with a sponge.*	*We wandered around,* ***soaking up*** *the atmosphere.* = absorbing it into our senses, body, and mind (***soak up*** *the sun*).
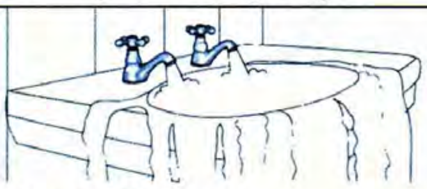 *The water **spilled over**.*	*The violence could* ***spill over*** *into neighbouring areas.* = spread and begin to affect other areas. *His emotions* ***spilled over*** *after his big win.* = he was unable to control his emotions.
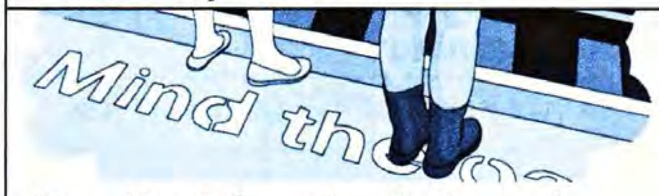 ***Stand back*** *from the platform edge.*	*You should* ***stand back*** *and consider your future.* = think about it as if you are not involved in it.
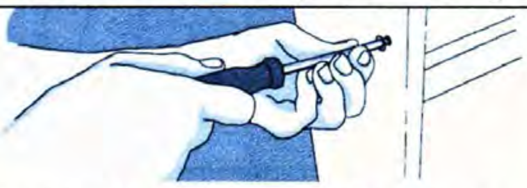 *You need to **tighten up** the screws.*	*Airlines need to* ***tighten up*** *rules on baggage allowance.* = make rules stricter or harder to avoid.
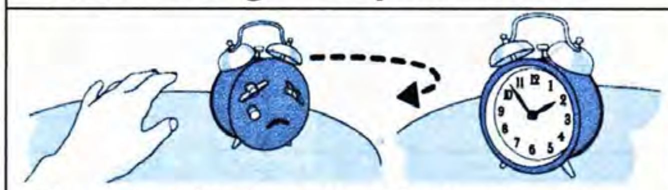 ***Turn*** *the clock* ***around/round****.*	*They* ***turned*** *the failing company* ***round****.* = made it successful again. *They can* ***turn*** *repairs* ***around*** *in a few days.* = complete them in a few days.
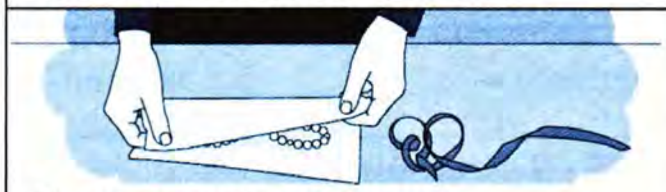 *She **wrapped** it **up** for me.*	*The police have* ***wrapped up*** *the enquiry.* = INF completed the enquiry (also ***wrap up*** *a meeting / a deal*).

1 Tick the sentences which refer to a physical action.

1 If you go to the market late, they usually knock things down by quite a lot. ☐
2 I hardly touched the bookshelf, but it just fell apart. ☐
3 Turn it round so that we can't see the label on it. ☐
4 I think that just about wraps up the meeting for today. See you tomorrow. ☐
5 Stand back and let these people go by. ☐
6 The oil was everywhere, but they tried to soak it up with a cloth. ☐
7 I'm afraid I can't answer your query right now; the computer's just gone down. ☐
8 I was boiling the milk and forgot about it. It spilled over and made a terrible mess. ☐

2 The same word is missing in each pair of sentences. Write it in.

1 a These rules need to be up.
b Once the screws are up, it'll be safe.
2 a The computer system suddenly down yesterday.
b After Mr Austin left, standards at the company really down.
3 a Trouble over into the next region.
b Her emotions over and she broke down in tears.
4 a I managed to knock them to €150, which was great.
b The lift was going when it suddenly stopped.
5 a Do you think they'll be able to the firm around?
b They work very fast; they can around a big repair in 24 hours.
6 a The police decided to wrap the investigation.
b Wander around and just soak the atmosphere of the town.
7 a What exactly do baby fish on?
b Current government policies on fear of the recession.

3 Write sentences using words from each column.

Let's tighten	back	the regulations
The standard's gone	down	and think about it
They knocked	apart	the shopping centre
Just stand	on	since she lost her job
Her life has fallen	up	in recent years
The towel soaked	up	insects
They feed	down	the moisture

4 Complete the Words of Wisdom with a suitable phrasal verb.

Words of Wisdom

- 'When you are confused about life, (1) and reflect on your past.'
- 'When you are really tense, go outside, (2) the sun and meditate for a while.'
- 'If your relationship is (3) , you both need to seek advice from an expert.'
- 'To (4) a failing business , you often need to change the person in charge.'
- 'Jealousy (5) insecurity. Don't let yourself worry; be open with your partner.'
- 'Poor sleep at night can mean that the previous day's problems (6) to the next.'
- 'When money is short, standards tend to (7) in business. Don't let this happen.'

5 ABOUT YOU Look at the Words of Wisdom in Exercise 4. Do you agree or disagree with them? Write your answers in your notebook giving your reasons, or talk to another student.

56 I can use idiomatic noun phrases

A Bad news stories

Dictionaries may show these noun phrases as idioms or as separate entries, e.g. *lame duck* may be entered as a noun (**lame duck**), or an idiom at the entry for **lame**.

… The mayor claims that the row over his financial dealings is **a storm in a teacup**, and that he has been a victim of **a hatchet job** in the Daily Globe. He strongly denies any **conflict of interest** between his political role and his business dealings, though many are pointing **the finger of suspicion** in his direction …

… While the academic books department of the company is not yet **a lost cause**, sharply falling sales are a big concern. The company has recently spent €50,000 to give them **a fighting chance** of survival, but that is **a drop in the ocean** compared to what is needed …

… Plans to use part of **the green belt** for a new bypass have been **a** political **hot potato** for many years, and with the current council leader virtually **a lame duck**, this may not be the right time to pursue them.

Glossary

a storm in a teacup	a lot of anger or worry about sth that is not important (also **a fuss about nothing**).
a hatchet job (on sb/sth)	INF a strong written attack on sb or their work.
a conflict of interest	a situation in which sb has two different jobs or roles, and this may affect their ability to choose or act fairly in either.
the finger of suspicion	If **the finger of suspicion** is pointing at sb, they are suspected of committing a crime or being responsible for sth bad.
a lost cause	sth that has no chance of succeeding.
a fighting chance	a chance to achieve sth if you work very hard at it.
a drop in the ocean	a very small amount that will have little or no effect.
the green belt	an area of protected land around a city where building is not allowed.
a hot potato	an issue that causes angry debate and is difficult to deal with.
a lame duck	a person who is no longer successful or effective in a particular role.

1 Is the meaning similar or different? Write S or D.

1 The project can never succeed now.	The project's a lost cause.
2 The row's just a storm in a teacup.	The row's just a lot of fuss about nothing.
3 He wants to build on the green belt.	He wants to build on the park near the town centre.
4 The offer was a drop in the ocean.	The offer hardly made any difference.
5 The article was a hatchet job.	The article was very complimentary.
6 There's no conflict of interest there.	There was no fighting there.

2 Complete the dialogues. You will need more than one word.

► They're not allowed to build on that open space. ~ No, it's in the green belt .
1 I've a strong feeling that he's guilty. ~ Yeah, is pointing at him.
2 I think they just might succeed. ~ I agree, they've got .
3 Nobody wants to tackle the budget problems. ~ Yes, it's a bit of .
4 $10,000 won't help the company at all. ~ No, it won't, it's just .
5 She's a politician but also has shares in the firm. ~ Yeah, I think there's .
6 The prime minister's hopeless and he'll lose the election. ~Yes, he's .
7 They're getting upset about nothing. ~ I know. It's just .
8 There's no hope that the business will recover. ~ No, sadly it's .

B Better news stories

Inspection gives financial service industry **a clean bill of health**

NEW TENNIS CLUB GETS NADAL'S **SEAL OF APPROVAL**

Car rally hailed **a roaring success**

NEW CHILDREN'S CENTRE WILL PROVIDE **'A HEAD START** IN LIFE'

Cricket win is **a shot in the arm** for New Zealand

Trade in endangered species **'a thing of the past'**

Working mothers can achieve **a happy medium**

Audiences wowed by **thrills and spills** of Winter Olympics

U-TURN ON IMMIGRATION POLICY

Glossary

a clean bill of health	a statement that sb is healthy or that an organization is operating correctly or is in good condition.
a/the seal of approval	a statement that gives a positive opinion of sth that sb has done.
a roaring success	an event or project that is extremely successful.
a head start	an advantage that helps you to be successful.
a shot in the arm	sth that quickly gives you more energy, confidence, etc.
a thing of the past	a thing that no longer exists or happens.
a/the happy medium	a way of doing sth that is between two extreme positions or is satisfactory to everyone.
thrills and spills	INF an exciting mix of dangerous activities.
a U-turn	a sudden or complete change of policy or opinion. SYN **a volte-face**.

spotlight French phrases

Many French phrases, e.g. **a volte-face**, are used in English. **A coup d'état** is the sudden overthrow of a government by force or by revolution. **A faux pas** is an embarrassing mistake.

3 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 The plan will give the company a shot
2 The race had all the thrills and
3 You have to find a happy
4 Some say that loyalty at work is a thing
5 The business has been given a clean
6 The children were given a head
7 They did a complete volte-
8 The boss gave our plan the seal

a of the past.
b start by having private lessons.
c of approval, so we start next week.
d face and began to oppose the war.
e in the arm which will improve profits.
f medium between work and play.
g spills we expected.
h bill of health.

4 Put the words in order and add one word.

► fair | the | spills | of | the | and | enjoy Enjoy the thrills and spills of the fair .
1 roaring | birthday | the | was | party | a .
2 on | turn | did | the | policy | government | a | the .
3 a | find | he's | to | medium | trying ?
4 bill | get | hope | to | health | we | a | of .
5 in | a | has | there | been | d'état | Birania .
6 shot | a | the | company | our | needs | in .
7 interview | at | terrible | made | the | I | a | faux .
8 the | of | letter-writing | is | past | a ?

C Colours

Do you know your colour idioms?

Are you **the black sheep of the family**?

Would you be happy if you had **green fingers**? Why / why not?

If you were given **the red-carpet** treatment, would you be pleased?

Have you ever had **a black eye**? How come?

Do you enjoy dealing with **red tape**?

Is it ever justifiable to tell **white lies**?

If you ended up with **a white elephant**, what could you do with it?

What would be **a golden opportunity** for you?

Have you ever bought anything on **the black market**?

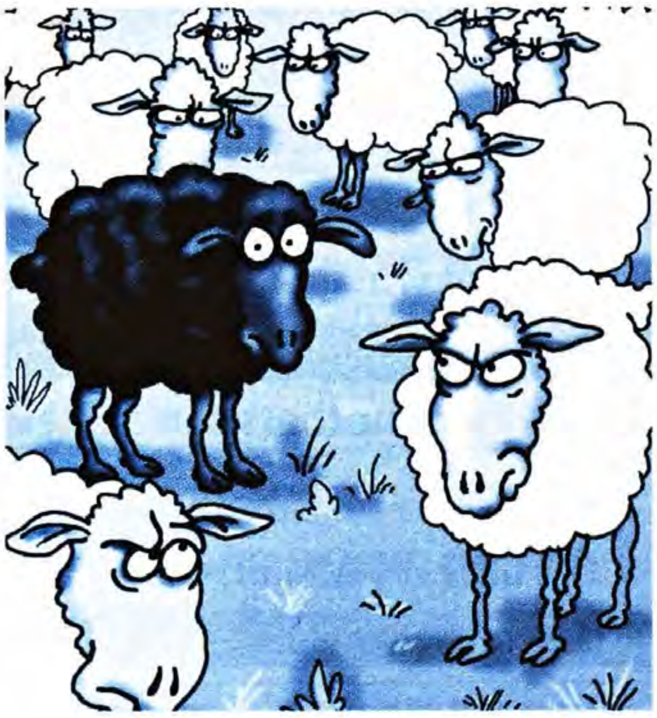

Glossary

the black sheep (of the family)	a person who is different from the rest of the family and who is considered bad or embarrassing.
green fingers	A person with **green fingers** is good at making plants grow.
the red carpet	a very special welcome given to an important visitor (***the red-carpet** treatment*; *put out **the red carpet***).
a black eye	a bruise around your eye caused by an accident or sb hitting you.
red tape	official rules or procedures that seem unnecessary and cause delays.
a white lie	a lie told to avoid making sb else upset.
a white elephant	a thing that is completely useless or no longer needed, and may have cost a lot of money.
a golden opportunity	a specially good chance to do sth. (**The chance of a lifetime** is the opportunity to do sth that you will not be able to do again.)
the black market	the illegal buying and selling of goods or currency that are officially controlled and hard to obtain.

5 Are the colours correct? Change any that are wrong.

▸ the ~~white~~ market black

1 a gold opportunity
2 a black lie
3 the red carpet treatment
4 a blue eye
5 a pink elephant
6 the black sheep of the family
7 brown fingers
8 red tape

6 Complete the sentences with a colour idiom.

1 He didn't buy the TV legally. I think he got it on .
2 I walked into a door, and the next morning I had .
3 When my long-lost brother came to visit, we put out .
4 She grows these vegetables herself; she's got .
5 He's been given a round-the-world ticket – it's .
6 They built a new shopping centre but no one goes there; it's just .
7 We never talk about my cousin Donald. He's .

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions at the top of the page in your notebook, or talk to another student.

57 I can use prepositional idioms

A Book titles

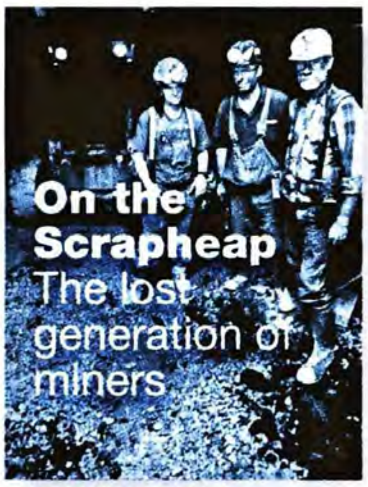
On the Scrapheap
The lost generation of miners

IN THE NICK OF TIME
A daring adventure on Everest

Under One Roof
Families in the crowded inner city

Behind Closed Doors
How big business really works

From the Horse's Mouth
Testimonies of wartime courage

Out of the Ordinary
Children with special talents

Within your Rights
A guide to workplace legislation

Computing Essentials **in Plain English**

Good Health Guide
Answers **at your fingertips**

Strictly **by the Book**
A parent's guide to child-rearing

Glossary

on the scrapheap	INF If sb/sth is **on the scrapheap**, they are no longer wanted or useful.
in the nick of time	INF just in time to prevent sth bad from happening.
under one roof	in the same home. SYN **under the same roof**.
behind closed doors	without the public knowing what is happening.
(**straight**) **from the horse's mouth**	INF Information coming **from the horse's mouth** comes from sb who is directly involved.
out of the ordinary	unusual or different.
(**be**) **within your rights**	(have or) having the moral or legal authority to do sth.
in plain English	simply and clearly expressed.
at your fingertips	near you or available for you to use immediately.
by the book	If you do sth **by the book**, you follow rules and instructions in a strict way.

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

1	He told me what happened himself.	I heard about it from the horse's mouth.
2	Something unusual happened.	Nothing out of the ordinary happened.
3	What happened in private?	What happened behind closed doors?
4	She's within her rights to do that.	She's right to do that.
5	It needs to be written in plain English.	It needs to be written in correct English.
6	We got out in the nick of time.	We got out in no time at all.

2 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

▶ The enquiry was held in private. DOORS The enquiry was held behind closed doors.
1 I haven't got the facts readily available. FINGERTIPS
2 I didn't see anything unusual. ORDINARY
3 We do everything in the correct way. BOOK
4 We arrived at the very last minute. TIME
5 Twelve people are living together in the flat. ROOF
6 Hundreds of workers will lose their jobs. SCRAPHEAP
7 You have the authority to claim for this. RIGHTS
8 She expressed the ideas clearly and simply. PLAIN

B A conversation

JO Has Helmut seen anything of Katrina recently?

JIM Well, apparently she rang him **out of the blue** the other day, hoping he was free for dinner. And in fact, he was **at a loose end**, but he told her he was **up to his eyes in** work.

JO Very wise. So did she want to meet up **for old times' sake**, do you think?

JIM **In all probability**, yeah. But **between you and me**, I think he'd be **off his head** to go back to her.

JO Too right. That relationship was a disaster **right from the outset**. And **in his heart of hearts**, he knows that.

Glossary

out of the blue	unexpectedly; without warning.
at a loose end	having nothing particular to do.
up to your eyes in sth	INF having a lot of sth to do or deal with.
for old times' sake	so that you can remember a happy time in the past.
in all probability	= it is very likely.
between you and me	used when you are telling sb sth that you do not want anyone else to know. SYN **between ourselves**.
(**right**) **from/at the outset**	from/at the very beginning. SYN (**right**) **from/at the word go** INF.
in your heart (**of hearts**)	used for talking about true or secret feelings.

spotlight Phrases with *head*

You must be off your head. INF = crazy. SYN **out of your mind** INF.
The talk went over my head. = was too difficult for me to understand.
I was covered from head to toe in dust. = all over my body.

3 Complete the phrases with the correct prepositions.

1 _______ all probability
2 _______ you and me / _______ ourselves
3 _______ your mind / _______ your head
4 _______ head _______ toe
5 _______ a loose end
6 _______ the outset / _______ the word go

4 Complete the sentences using the phrases from Exercise 3.

1 You paid €100 for that shirt? You must be _______ !
2 I got caught in a thunderstorm and I was completely soaked _______ .
3 Why don't you come over this evening, if you're _______ .
4 I would say that _______ , we should be home before the weekend.
5 He thinks he's got the job, but _______ , his chances are slim.
6 It was clear _______ that the idea wasn't going to work.

5 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions. Then write your answers to the questions in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 When did you last get a call from an old friend out of the _______ ? Who was it?
2 Are you at a loose _______ this weekend? If so, what might you do?
3 Are you up to your _______ in work at the moment?
4 Have you watched a TV programme recently that went over your _______ ?
5 Do you ever listen to pieces of music for old times' _______ ?
6 Did you enjoy studying English right from the word _______ ? Why?/Why not?

C States

I want it **off my hands**.

The lights are **on the blink**.

It's **on its last legs**.

I can't keep it **on the road**.

The interior's not **in** very **good nick**.

My temper sometimes **gets** me **into hot water**.

I'm **in the doghouse** at home.

I feel **on edge** the whole time.

I'm **in a rut** at work.

I'm **at a crossroads**. What next?

Glossary

on the blink	INF (of electrical equipment) not working properly.
in good/excellent/bad nick	INF in good/excellent/bad condition.
on the road	(of a car) in good condition so that it can be legally driven. OPP **off the road**.
on its last legs	INF If sth is **on its last legs** it is going to stop functioning very soon.
in the doghouse	INF, often HUMOROUS If you are **in the doghouse**, sb is annoyed with you because you have done sth wrong.
on edge	tense, nervous, or irritable. (If you are **on tenterhooks**, you are anxious because you are waiting to find out about sth.)
in a rut	living or working in a situation that never changes. (👁 See page 162.)
at a/the crossroads	at a point in your life when you must make an important decision.
be in/get (sb) into hot water	INF be in or get (sb) into trouble.

spotlight ***hands***

The children are off my hands. = no longer my responsibility.
Inflation is getting out of hand. = difficult or impossible to control.
A nurse will be on hand *at the event.* = available to help.

6 Tick the phrases which are informal.

1 No one was on hand to help.
2 My son's in hot water at work.
3 The car's off the road at the moment.
4 The flat's in very bad nick.
5 The project will be off my hands soon.
6 I'm on tenterhooks about the results.
7 The TV's on the blink again.
8 This old radio is really on its last legs.

7 Circle the correct preposition.

1 My life is *at* | *on* a crossroads at the moment.
2 I once went to a party which got out *of* | *off* hand.
3 I don't feel I'm *on* | *in* a rut at the moment.
4 My computer is *on* | *in* its last legs.
5 My car/bike is *in* | *on* excellent nick.
6 My TV/MP3 player is *on* | *in* the blink.
7 I'm *in* | *on* edge at the moment, waiting for news of something.
8 I wish someone was constantly *on* | *in* hand to help me with my English.

8 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 7 true for you? If not, change them so that they are true. Write your answers in your notebook or tell a partner.

58 I can use similes

A Similes with *(as)* ... *as* ...

My mother struggled a bit after her accident, but she's **fit as a fiddle** now.

I didn't think Leo would know, but he gave me the answer **quick as a flash**.

Come on, you can do this – it's **as easy as pie**.

I'm not sleeping on that bed again – it's **as hard as nails**!

That young niece of yours is **bright as a button**.

I was quite worried when I saw Kate; she was **white as a sheet**.

I love my little brother – he's **daft as a brush** and he makes me laugh.

The captain stayed **cool as a cucumber** in spite of all the pressure.

Lucy's **thin as a rake**. She needs to put on a bit of weight.

Do you want to borrow my suitcase? It's **good as new**.

Glossary

(as) **fit as a fiddle**	fit and in good health (**fiddle** INF a violin).
(as) **quick as a flash**	very quickly.
(as) **easy as pie**	very easy.
(as) **hard as nails**	very hard and uncomfortable.
(as) **bright as a button**	(usually of a child or young person) very bright and intelligent.
(as) **white as a sheet**	looking very ill or very frightened.
(as) **daft as a brush**	very silly.
(as) **cool as a cucumber**	very calm and controlled, especially in a difficult situation.
(as) **thin as a rake**	very thin.
(as) **good as new**	in very good condition, as it was when it was new.

spotlight Similes

A simile is a phrase that compares one thing with another thing, and many are formed with ***as*** + adjective + ***as*** + noun. These are used to emphasize the adjective (e.g. if a child is **as good as gold**, they are very good). In spoken English, the first ***as*** is often omitted.

1 Correct the final word in each sentence.

▸ Jemima's little girl's as bright as a ~~sheet~~. button
1 He picked out the correct pictures as quick as a fiddle.
2 We had to sit down but the sofa was hard as pie.
3 My mother's in her 70s but she's fit as a flash.
4 He'd heard the bad news, but he came into work cool as a brush.
5 The tests are easy as new.
6 She's nice to the customers, but she's daft as a cucumber.

2 Answer the questions with a simile with the opposite meaning.

▸ It was incredibly difficult, wasn't it? No, it was easy as pie .
1 Was it comfortable to sit on? No, .
2 Did she get very excited? No, .
3 Did he look well? No, .
4 Isn't David's little girl a bit slow at school? No, .
5 I believe he's in very bad health, isn't he? No, .
6 Hasn't Lilia put on weight? No, .

B Similes with *like*

We can also make comparisons using **like**. These similes can be used for humorous or ironic effect.

I know what my wife's thinking – I can **read** her **like a book**.

We tried these new pills on the dog and they **worked like a dream**.

Don't mention the government to my uncle; it**'s like a red rag to a bull**.

Of course, as soon as I told Martha the news, it **spread like wildfire**.

I tried to explain it all to Dan, but it **was like banging my head against a brick wall**.

My father**'s like a bull in a china shop**, so don't ask him to deal with a sensitive problem.

I can't leave work early; my boss **watches me like a hawk**.

Asking Barry to pay for anything **is like getting blood out of a stone**.

We'll never find that contact lens – it**'s like looking for a needle in a haystack**.

I thought this jacket would be too big, but it **fits like a glove**.

Glossary

read sb like a book	be able to understand easily what sb is thinking or feeling.
work/go like a dream	work very well.
be like a red rag to a bull	be likely to make sb very angry.
spread like wildfire	(of news, etc.) become known by more and more people very quickly.
be (**like**) **banging your head against a brick wall**	INF be frustrating because you are making no progress in what you are trying to do.
be like a bull in a china shop	be careless in the way you move or insensitive in your behaviour.
watch sb like a hawk	watch sb very carefully.
be like getting blood out of a stone	be almost impossible to obtain.
be like looking for a needle in a haystack	be almost impossible to find.
fit (**sb**) **like a glove**	be the perfect shape or size for sb.

3 Circle the correct answer.

1 If someone watches you like a hawk, they watch you *from a distance* | *carefully*.
2 If something is like getting blood out of a stone, it is *difficult to obtain* | *likely to be valuable*.
3 If somebody can read you like a book, they know what you are *doing* | *thinking*.
4 If someone is like a bull in china shop, they're *strong and careful* | *clumsy and careless*.
5 If something fits like a glove, it *fits perfectly* | *is a bit tight*.
6 If something works like a dream, it works *well* | *well for a short period then fails*.
7 If something is like looking for a needle in a haystack, it is very *difficult to find* | *interesting*.

4 Complete the sentences using the pictures to help you.

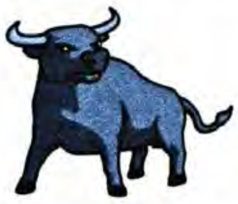
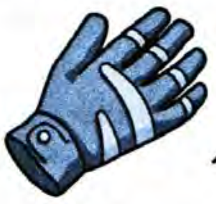
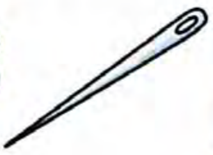
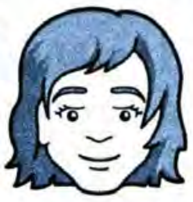
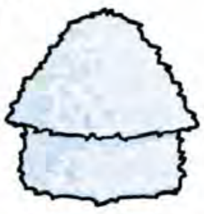
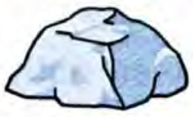
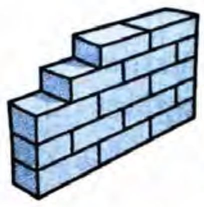
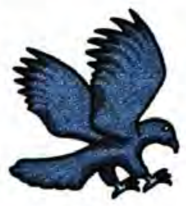

1 My mother watches me like a .
2 I was amazed – Mary's skirt fitted me like a .
3 Getting Jerome to say thank you is like getting blood out of a .
4 Mention the word 'feminism' to her and it's like a red rag to a .
5 Finding that one earring will be like looking for a in a .
6 Dealing with those children is just like banging your against a .

59 I can use fixed phrases with two key words

A Sound patterns

Dictionaries may enter these phrases as idioms or collocations. The meaning is sometimes clear, e.g. **scrimp and save**, and sometimes idiomatic, e.g. **bread and butter**. However, the combination of words is not obvious, so you will need to learn these expressions.

There are rooms above the café where you can stay. They're fairly **cheap and cheerful**, and I noticed a bit of **wear and tear** on the furniture when we were there recently. But they can't afford to spend much on the rooms as well as the café, which is their real **bread and butter**.

My local team has been beaten **fair and square** in their last four games, so there's rather an atmosphere of **doom and gloom** around the club at the moment.

Ciaran **was born and bred** in the west of Ireland. His family were poor and his parents had to **scrimp and save** to provide for them all. It was hard for his mother, who was very **prim and proper**, but for most families it **was** just **part and parcel of** growing up in that area.

Glossary

cheap and cheerful	not of great quality, but enjoyable and good value.
wear and tear	small marks and damage that appear over time as a result of normal use.
bread and butter	a person or company's main source of income.
fair and square	in an honest way and without any doubt.
doom and gloom	a feeling that a situation is very bad and without hope.
be born and bred …	used to say where sb was born and grew up.
scrimp and save	spend money only on what is absolutely necessary.
prim and proper	very careful about your appearance and behaviour, and easily shocked by what other people do or say.
be part and parcel (of sth)	be an aspect of sth that has to be accepted.

spotlight Sound patterns

A common feature of fixed phrases joined by *and* is that the first or last sounds in the two words are the same, e.g. ***prim** and **pr**oper*, ***d**oom and **gl**oom*.

1 Complete the phrases.

1 scrimp and
2 born and
3 doom and
4 cheap and
5 wear and
6 prim and
7 fair and
8 part and

2 Complete the fixed phrase in the sentences.

1 He was and in Paris, but lives in Cannes nowadays.
2 There's bound to be some and on these boots after six months.
3 We lost the match and ; I have no complaints.
4 A lot of families have to and to buy things in a recession.
5 The economic prospects are not great, but it's not all and .
6 He makes a bit of money from music, but accountancy is his real and .
7 Injuries are and of being a professional sportsman.
8 It's not luxurious, but our local hotel is and , and a nice place to stay.

3 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE Do you have similar phrases in your language? If so, do some of them also have sound patterns similar to these?

B Paired words and repeated words

Does he clean that car every day? ~ Yes, it's **his pride and joy**.

Have they chosen good colour schemes? ~ Er … actually, I think they're a bit **hit and miss**.

Did you buy anything at the auction? ~ Nothing much – just a few **bits and pieces**.

Is your boss always like that? ~ Yes. Basically, **divide and rule** is the way he operates.

Is Helena making progress? ~ Yes, her English has come on **in leaps and bounds**.

Did he give a speech? ~ Yes, but thankfully it was **short and sweet**.

Did you enjoy the conference? ~ Yes, **all in all** I think it was very successful.

Will Carol move to the city? ~ No, she's a country girl **through and through**.

Glossary

sb's pride and joy	a person or thing that gives sb great pleasure or satisfaction.
hit and miss	unpredictable; sometimes succeeding and sometimes failing.
bits and pieces/bobs	INF small individual things of no great value. SYN **odds and ends**.
divide and rule	a way of controlling people by encouraging them to fight and argue among themselves.
in/by leaps and bounds	quickly or by a large amount (usually used when talking about sb's progress).
short and sweet	not long or complicated.
all in all	having considered everything. SYN **all things considered**.
through and through	used to say that sb has all the qualities of a particular type of person.

spotlight Repetition

There are many phrases, such as **all in all**, which use the same word twice: **little by little** (= gradually), **step by step** (= moving slowly from one stage to the next), **day by day** (= in small slow stages as each day passes), **head to head** (= competing directly), etc.

4 Find six phrases using words from the box.

leaps short divide odds hit pride sweet joy ends rule bounds miss

5 Complete the sentences with a suitable fixed phrase. Keep a similar meaning.

▸	My eyes gradually got used to the lights.	My eyes got used to the lights little by little .
1	I'm taking a few small things of no value.	I'm taking a few .
2	Some of her ideas are good, some are not so good.	Her ideas are a bit .
3	He's made a huge amount of progress.	He's come on .
4	The letter was simple and concise.	The letter was .
5	It was a great success, everything considered.	It was a great success .
6	We'll be competing directly with them.	We'll be competing .
7	That boat's the thing that gives him most pleasure.	That boat is his .
8	Everything about her is Irish.	She's Irish .
9	We must do this carefully from one stage to the next.	We must do this .
10	His policy is to get them fighting among themselves.	His policy is .

60 I can use sayings and proverbs

A Words of wisdom

A number of common sayings give advice, or say something that is often thought to be true.

TEN Words of Wisdom

	Meaning
Nothing ventured, nothing gained.	You have to take risks if you want to achieve sth.
People (who live) in glass houses shouldn't throw stones.	People who have faults should not criticize other people for having the same faults.
A leopard cannot change its spots.	People can't change their character, especially a bad character.
Too many cooks spoil the broth.	If too many people are involved in sth, it won't be done well. (**Broth** is a soup.)
Strike while the iron is hot.	Make use of an opportunity immediately.
You can't teach an old dog new tricks.	You can't make people change their ideas, ways of working, etc. when they've had them a long time.
You can't make an omelette without breaking eggs.	You can't achieve sth important without a few problems or unpleasant effects.
(There's) no time like the present.	Now is the best time to do sth, not in the future.
Many hands make light work.	A job is made easier if a lot of people help.
One good turn deserves another.	You should help sb who has helped you.

1 Answer the questions.

1 Which two idioms are saying something very similar about people's character?
/
2 Which two idioms appear to be saying completely opposite things?
/
3 Which two idioms express the importance of taking action now?
/
4 Which two idioms talk about the way we behave towards others?
/

2 Which idiom best summarizes each of these situations?

1 It will be difficult setting up a new business, but why not give it a try?
2 If we want to move forward, we must cut costs and get rid of some staff.
3 Maria did my shopping for me, so I said I'd help her with her homework.
4 If everyone lends a hand, we can clean up the flat in an hour or so.
5 My mum's overcooked vegetables all her life; she won't change now.
6 It took us a long time to clean the flat because we all got in each other's way.
7 He complains about me smoking, but I've seen him with a packet of cigarettes!
8 Let's buy that flat now, before prices start to go up.

3 ABOUT YOU Which idioms express the best advice or the most truth, in your opinion? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B First part only

There are some sayings where you only need to say the first part. The second part (shown in brackets below) is usually omitted. When you just say the first part, your voice often rises on the final word.

Saying	**Example**	**Meaning**
when in Rome (do as the Romans do)	*They use chopsticks here.* *~ Well,* ***when in Rome*** *…*	In a foreign country or unfamiliar situation, you should behave in the same way as the people around you.
a bird in the hand (is worth two in the bush)	*I had an offer of £200 for my bike, but I think I'll wait for a better offer.* *~ Well,* ***a bird in the hand*** *…*	It is better to have sth that you can be certain of than to risk losing it by trying to get sth much better.
two's company (three's a crowd)	*Can I come with you and Mel?* *~ No,* ***two's company*** *…*	People in a romantic relationship don't want a third person with them.
better the devil you know (than the devil you don't)	*Would you like a new boss?* *~ Not really.* ***Better the devil you know*** *…*	Someone you don't like but know may be better than somebody you don't know who might be worse.
an eye for an eye (and a tooth for a tooth)	*If a gang member is beaten up, the rest take revenge. It's* ***an eye for an eye****.*	Used to say that you should punish sb by doing to them what they have done to you.
don't count your chickens (before they're hatched)	*I'm sure I'll get that job.* *~* ***Don't count your chickens*** *…*	Don't be too confident about a future event before it has happened.
the grass is always greener (on the other side of the fence)	*My life seems so boring compared with my sister's.* *~ Well, as they say:* ***the grass is always greener****…*	Used to say that people always think others are in a better situation than they are.
the spirit is willing (but the flesh is weak)	*Do you fancy a game of squash?* *~ Well,* ***the spirit's willing*** *…*	Used for telling sb that you would like to do sth but do not have the energy or strength to do it.
birds of a feather (flock together)	*Everyone here is rich.* *~ Well,* ***birds of a feather*** *…*	People of the same sort are usually found together.

4 Match 1–6 with a–f.

1 The grass is always greener	a before they're hatched.
2 The spirit's willing	b is worth two in the bush.
3 Two's company	c on the other side of the fence.
4 Don't count your chickens	d flock together.
5 Birds of a feather	e three's a crowd.
6 A bird in the hand	f but the flesh is weak.

5 Which saying best summarizes each of these situations?

1 If they attack us, we attack them. It's as simple as that.
2 You say the exam was easy, but you haven't got the results yet.
3 I don't like the present leader, but the next might be even worse.
4 Now we're in Poland, we're meant to kiss friends three times.
5 Jane and her boyfriend don't want a younger sister following them around.
6 I've got a well-paid job, but Ingrid's job sounds much more interesting.

6 ABOUT YOU Is there much truth in any of the sayings in the table? Do you particularly agree or disagree with any of them? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

Review: Types of idiom

Unit 55

1 Match the verbs in the box with their literal and metaphorical meanings below.

stand back fall apart spill over wrap sth up

1 break into pieces.
2 cover something, e.g. by putting paper or cloth round it.
3 move away from something, especially something dangerous.
4 think about a situation as if you are not involved in it.
5 spread and begin to affect other areas.
6 have so many problems that it is impossible to continue.
7 finish something.
8 accidentally flow out of a container.

2 Complete the phrasal verb in each sentence.

1 You just need to up the two screws on either end.
2 This company is in such a mess, it will take a genius to it around.
3 He's too close to the situation. He needs to back and be more objective.
4 These birds mostly on worms and small insects.
5 Trouble started in the main square, then over into the neighbouring streets.
6 They down the old factory to make way for a new supermarket.
7 They can't answer our query right now: their computers have down.
8 I up my girlfriend's present last night, and gave it to her this morning.

Unit 56

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 a lame
2 a happy
3 a black
4 a white
5 a drop
6 a clean
7 a fighting
8 a head

a elephant
b start
c bill of health
d in the ocean
e medium
f duck
g eye
h chance

2 Complete the texts.

John Denham's new film has been a roaring (1) ………… with the public, and has even earned the (2) ………… of approval from most of the critics. This is just the (3) ………… in the arm the British film industry was looking for, and Denham is sure to get the red-(4) …………treatment when he arrives at the Vienna Film Festival later today.

…………

The (5) of suspicion is again pointing at MPs who continue to hold influential posts in business while working as MPs. The issue has been a hot (6) for years, and critics believe that it must create a (7) of interest. However, in an interview yesterday, a senior minister dismissed the allegations as a (8) in a teacup.

3 Complete the idioms in the questions.

1 Is there anything you would buy on the market?
2 In what circumstances would you tell a lie?
3 Is letter-writing a of the past?
4 Have you ever missed a opportunity?
5 Do you often get annoyed by tape?
6 How important is it to protect the belt?
7 Is promotion of organic food just a about nothing?
8 Is the attempt to halt global warming a cause?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to Exercise 3 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

Unit 57

1 Cross out the noun or noun phrase which does not follow the words in italics.

1 Someone or something is *at*:
a) your fingertips b) the outset c) all probability d) a crossroads
2 Someone or something is *in*:
a) a rut b) closed doors c) plain English d) the doghouse
3 Someone or something is *on*:
a) its last legs b) edge c) tenterhooks d) the blue
4 Someone or something can be *out of*:
a) their heart b) their mind c) the ordinary d) hand
5 Someone or something can be *on the*:
a) scrapheap b) road c) nick of time d) blink

2 Complete the idioms with adjectives from the box.

last deep closed good plain old loose same

1 behind doors
2 under the roof
3 in English
4 on its legs
5 for times' sake
6 at a end
7 in water
8 in very nick

3 Complete the definitions.

- If something is *on its last legs*, it is old and will probably stop working soon .

1 If something goes *over your head*, it is .
2 If something is *on the blink*, it isn't .
3 If something is *out of the ordinary*, it is .
4 If someone is *in hot water*, they are .
5 If you are *at a loose end*, you have .
6 If someone is *off their head*, they are .
7 If something is *in good nick*, it is .
8 If something is true *from the word go*, it is .

Unit 58

1 Change one letter in each sentence to create correct similes.

- ▶ She's as bright as a ~~m~~utton, and doing brilliantly at school. button
- 1 He got back from the expedition looking thin as a cake.
- 2 We must get a new bed; this one's as hard as rails to sleep on.
- 3 Look at this wetsuit – it hits like a glove.
- 4 I'd ask him to pay, but it's like getting flood out of a stone.
- 5 She won't do as I say. It's like banging your head against a brick hall.
- 6 He thinks I don't understand him, but I can lead him like a book.
- 7 Raising the subject of politics is like a red bag to a bull with him.
- 8 The boy was as white as a sheep, and I was worried he might faint.

2 Complete the sentences using a simile.

- 1 If a rumour gets around fast, it spreads .
- 2 If something is hard to find, it's like looking for needle .
- 3 If something is in very good condition, it's as good .
- 4 If someone is very calm under pressure, they're as cool .
- 5 If someone is very clever, they're bright .
- 6 If something is very simple, it's easy .
- 7 If someone is suspicious of you, they might watch you .
- 8 If someone responds very fast, they answer you as quick .

Unit 59

1 Put the dominoes in the correct order to make a joined sequence of idioms. Write the correct order of dominoes below.

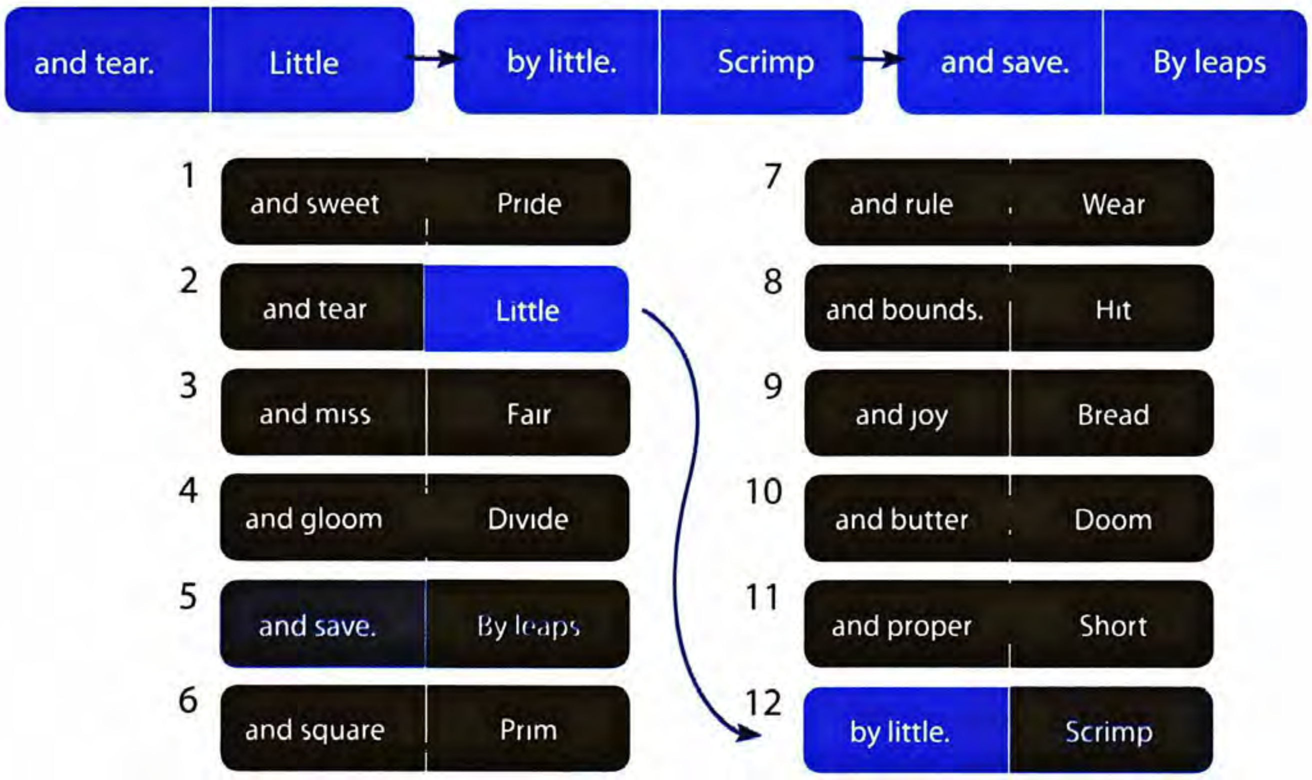

and tear.
Little
by little.
Scrimp
and save.
By leaps
1
and sweet
Pride
2
and tear
Little
3
and miss
Fair
4
and gloom
Divide
5
and save.
By leaps
6
and square
Prim
7
and rule
Wear
8
and bounds.
Hit
9
and joy
Bread
10
and butter
Doom
11
and proper
Short
12
by little.
Scrimp

2 ,12 ,5 , , , , , , , , , ,

2 Are the sentences true or false? Write T or F.

1 If someone's prim and proper, they are careful about what they say or do.
2 If you're going to buy a few bits and bobs, you're being very specific.
3 If you have to scrimp and save, you need to be careful with money.
4 If someone was born and bred in Thailand, they spent their childhood there.
5 If you're worried about your bread and butter, you're hungry.
6 If you explain something step by step, you explain the whole thing quickly.
7 If someone's a city person through and through, they are most at home in the city.
8 If life is all doom and gloom for someone, they're very happy at the moment.
9 If your phone service is quite hit and miss, it needs to be improved.
10 If two teams go head to head, they compete with each other.

Unit 60

1 Write your answers.

▶ What can't you count before they're hatched? Your chickens.
1 What can't a leopard change?
2 What should you strike while it's hot?
3 What can't you teach an old dog?
4 What happens with too many cooks?
5 What's the advantage of many hands?
6 What shouldn't people in glass houses do?

2 Here are the second parts of some idioms that are often omitted when we speak. Write the first part.

▶ Birds of a feather flock together.
1 before they're hatched.
2 , three's a crowd.
3 , do as the Romans do.
4 , but the flesh is weak.
5 than the devil you don't.
6 on the other side of the fence.
7 is worth two in the bush.
8 and a tooth for a tooth.

Idioms – some interesting histories

How did English idioms come into use? Here we show the meanings behind some idioms, and how some of them developed.

beat about the bush (Unit 35)
This phrase refers to a technique used for hunting. Some hunters in the forest beat the trees or bushes to scare the birds or animals, which were then shot by other hunters as they tried to escape. **Beating about the bush** was therefore a preparation for catching the birds or animals, but without actually achieving it. If people **beat about the bush**, they keep talking, but without getting to the main point.

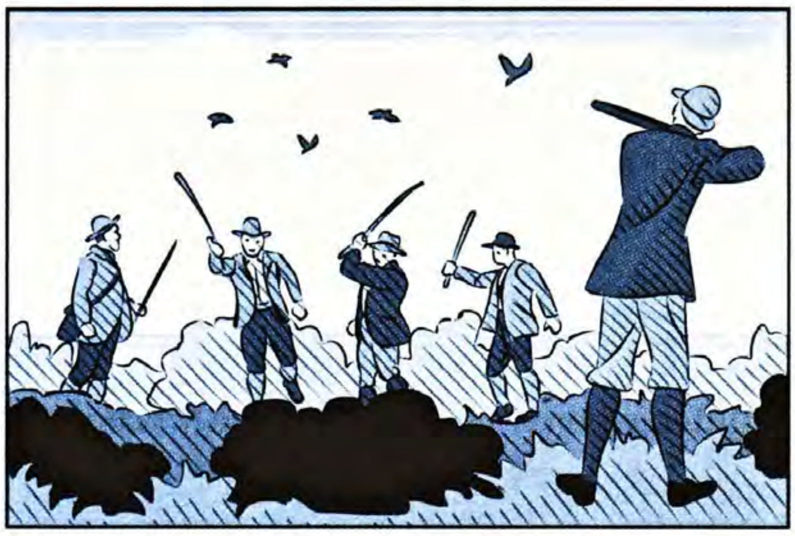

be in the doldrums (Unit 18)
The doldrums is a 19th-century expression meaning a state of inactivity or laziness. Sailors used it to refer to certain areas of the ocean near the Equator where lack of wind made it difficult to sail. A business that is **in the doldrums** is not doing well.

drive a wedge between people (Unit 7)
A **wedge** is a piece of wood or metal with one thin end and one thick end; you use it to keep two things apart or to split wood. If you **drive a wedge between** two people, you make them start disliking or feeling suspicious of each other.

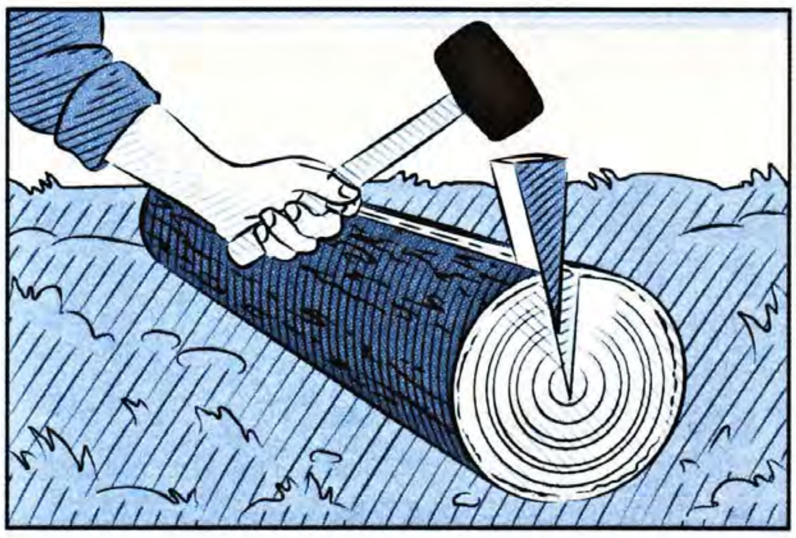

in a rut (Unit 57)
A **rut** is a deep track made by a wheel in muddy ground which it is then difficult to get the vehicle out of. If you are **in a rut**, you are living or working in a situation that never changes.

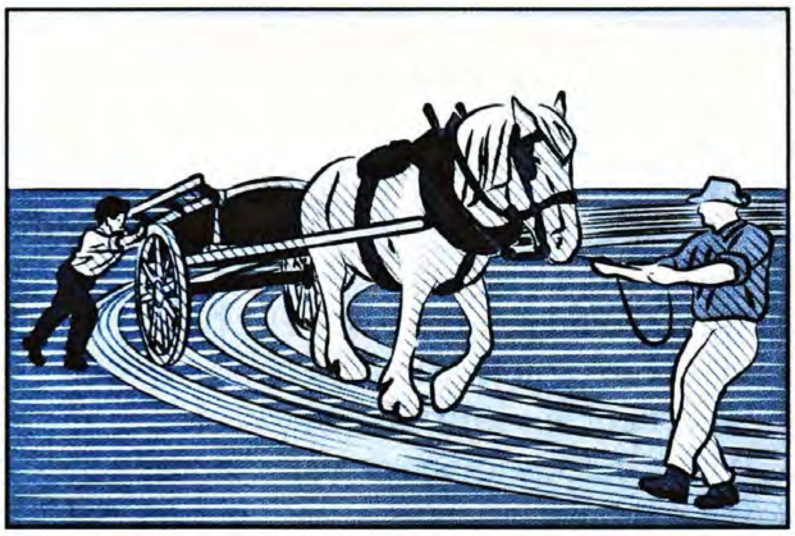

quick/slow off the mark (Unit 30)
In athletics, the **mark** is the starting point in a race, or the line that indicates it, so someone who is **quick off the mark** makes a quick start. You can also describe someone as being **quick** or **slow off the mark** when they are quick or slow in responding to a situation.

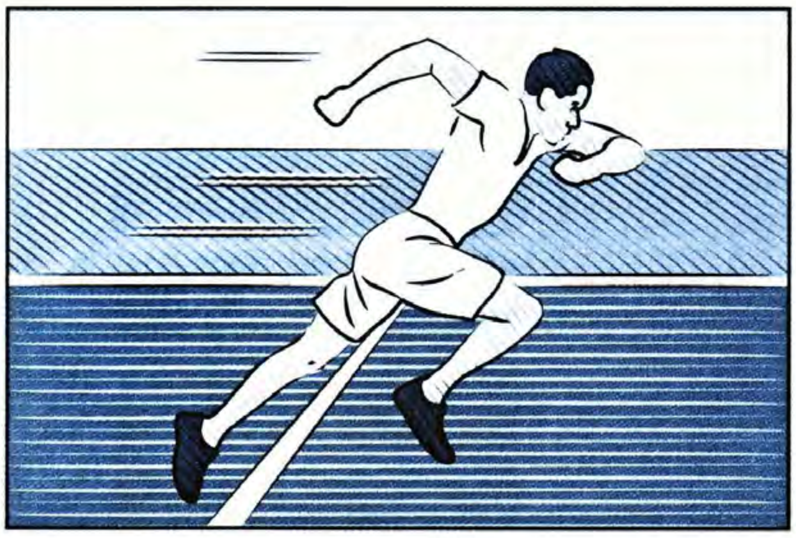

rest on your laurels (Unit 19)
Laurel leaves were used in Roman times to make a crown for the winner of a race or competition. If you **rest on your laurels**, you enjoy your success, but stop trying to improve your performance.

Look at our website for more:
www.oup.com/elt/wordskills

Answer key

Unit 1

1

1 get out of bed on the wrong side
2 not out of the woods
3 take a back seat
4 my heart sank

2

1 sore (a sore point)
2 stroke (hasn't done a stroke of work)
3 thing (the next thing I knew)
4 foot (put my foot in it)
5 Having (Having said that)
6 more (more than happy)
7 pushed (we'll be hard pushed to …)
8 much (I thought as much)
9 serves (it serves her right for …)
10 personally (take it personally)

3

1 The style is INFORMAL, and *on* is optional. (= continue doing sth in a determined way, even though it is difficult)
2 **if my memory serves me correctly** could also be **if my memory serves me well/right**. (used for saying that you think you have remembered sth correctly)
3 **keeping up with the Joneses**: the style is INFORMAL and usually DISAPPROVING. (= trying to have all the possessions and social achievements that your friends and neighbours have)
4 **the last straw** could also be **the final straw**, or even **the straw that breaks the camel's back**. (= the last in a series of bad events, that makes it impossible for you to accept a situation any longer)
5 **rest assured** (**that**) is FORMAL. (= be completely certain or confident (that))

4

1 hit the ground running, sort out the sheep from the goats; put a brave face on it; throw in the towel; were all in the same boat; Kevin's bark was worse than his bite.
2 a throw in the towel
  b sort out the sheep from the goats ('separate the sheep from the goats' is also possible)
  c Kevin's bark was worse than his bite
  d hit the ground running
  e were all in the same boat
  f put a brave face on it

Unit 2

1

1 track
2 sleeve
3 chip
4 dust
5 corner/spot
6 chest

2

1 She's in the driving seat.
2 I'm sure we're on the right track.
3 Strike while the iron is hot.
4 Wait for the dust to settle.
5 The company is on the ropes.
6 She's in a tight corner/spot (right now).
7 He has / He's got a chip on his shoulder.
8 She plays her cards close to her chest.

3

The common idea with the **head** idioms is of using your brain or intelligence. The common idea linking the **heart** idioms is emotions or feelings.
have your head screwed on INF be able to make sensible decisions.
lose your head become unable to act in a calm, sensible way.
use your head think carefully so that you understand sth or avoid making a mistake.
break sb's heart make sb feel extremely unhappy. (When used without further explanation, the reference is to sb ending a romantic relationship.)
take sth to heart be very affected or upset by sth that sb has said or done.
not have the heart to do sth not be able to do sth because you know that it will upset sb else.
I let my heart rule my head = I act according to what I feel, rather than doing what I think is sensible.

4

Ships and sailing: take the wind out of sb's sails, learn the ropes
Radio and telecommunications: be on the same wavelength, get your wires crossed
Horseriding: be in the saddle, keep a tight rein on sth/sb
Weapons and war: bite the bullet, beat a hasty retreat

5

1 be in the saddle
2 learn the ropes
3 be on the same wavelength
4 beat a hasty retreat
5 take the wind out of sb's sails
6 keep a tight rein on sth/sb
7 get your wires crossed

Unit 3

1

1 around
2 to
3 up
4 in
5 on
6 for
7 into
8 down

2

1 dislike
2 wrong/stupid/bad
3 landed
4 persuaded
5 killed
6 wrote

3

1 out
2 up
3 around/round
4 on
5 down
6 up
7 down
8 out of

4

1 watch out for snakes
2 stand out against discrimination
3 let both of them off
4 burst in on us
5 hold it against him

5

1 watch out for sth or sb
2 burst in on sb
3 stand out against sth
4 hold sth against sb
5 let sb off

Unit 4

1

1 Will there be a union climbdown / a climbdown by the union?
2 Was there a police cover-up?
3 We asked a passer-by.
4 There was a breakout from prison last night. OR There was a prison breakout last night.
5 The judge gave a brief summing-up. OR The judge's summing-up was brief.
6 Will the team give us / provide backup? OR Will backup be provided by the team? OR Will we get backup from the team?

2

1 bystanders/onlookers
2 intake
3 climbdown
4 breakout
5 getaway
6 backup
7 outbreak
8 passer-by

3

1 F 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 F

4

1 were knocked out
2 worn out
3 watered down
4 leftovers
5 off-putting
6 breakaway
7 spoken out against it
8 ongoing

Unit 5

1

1 quick
2 Deep, surface
3 barking
4 gladly
5 thumb
6 tough

2

1 hopping
2 two short planks
3 it cool
4 mad keen on
5 own voice
6 as a hatter
7 his thumb
8 as old boots

3

1 P 2 N 3 P 4 P 5 P 6 N 7 N 8 N

4

1 word (a man of his word)
2 soft (a soft touch)
3 earth (the salt of the earth)
4 creature (a creature of habit)
5 unknown (an unknown quantity)
6 spark (a bright spark)
7 nobody's/no (nobody's/no fool)
8 piece of work (a nasty piece of work)

Unit 6

1

1 Dad went to **great** lengths to help them.
2 We were given a helping **hand** with our writing.
3 They managed to hold their marriage **together**.
4 She doesn't have your best **interests** at heart.
5 I thank my **lucky** stars that I'm healthy.
6 She needs a shoulder to **cry** on.

2

1 turn to
2 sets her apart
3 shoulder to cry on
4 there for me
5 goes to great lengths / goes out of his way
6 went out of her way / went to great lengths
7 thank my lucky stars
8 hold the family together

4

1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F

5

1 sure of herself
2 his foot down
3 picking on
4 pushes you
5 get round
6 her round your little finger
7 walk all over
8 have/get his own

Unit 7

1

1 G 2 B 3 B 4 G 5 G 6 G 7 B 8 B

2

1 Janet and Dom (Dom and Janet) are **made** for each other.
2 Do you think they will **get** hitched?
3 You could be storing **up** trouble for later.
4 It isn't easy to walk **away** from an argument.
5 Their marriage went through a bad **patch**.
6 They're living in each other's **pockets**.

4

1 messed her around/about
2 answer to my boss
3 is piling up
4 finished / broken up with Pilar
5 held me back
6 let me down

5

1 finished (finished with him)
2 as (do as I pleased)
3 break-up (break-up)
4 anything / my right arm (I'd give anything / my right arm to)
5 let (let her down)
6 messing (messing her about)
7 sooner (I'd far sooner)
8 myself (please myself)
9 bear (doesn't bear thinking about)
10 arm (I'd give my right arm to)

Unit 8

1

1 (as) miserable as sin
2 On top of
3 your own flesh and blood
4 turned on
5 account for
6 on top of
7 fight like cat and dog
8 There's little/no love lost between them.

2

1 flesh
2 dog
3 ranks
4 top
5 on
6 take

4

1 They lavish far too much money **on** their children.
2 There's a danger they will **put** their son on a pedestal.
3 She's very naughty; they let her get **away** with murder.
4 Since the divorce, he's distanced **himself** from his family.
5 No wonder the child was unhappy; she was **starved** of attention.
6 Try to **make** a point of praising your middle child's creativity.

5

1 pedestal
2 murder
3 result
4 point
5 out
6 starved ('deprived' is also possible)
7 out
8 back
9 lavish

Unit 9

1

1 The news is so bad that I can't take it in.
2 The boy was screaming/laughing/shouting his head off.
3 She was crying her eyes out.
4 I'm at the end of my tether.
5 He went off the deep end.
6 The news stirred up a lot of anger.
7 Please don't wind her up.
8 I'm (feeling) on top of the world.

2

1 up
2 dumps
3 end
4 off
5 deep
6 apparent
7 stir
8 top

3

1 He poured his heart out to me.
2 Don't take sides on this issue.
3 He must keep his anger in check.
4 Whose side are you on?
5 That's easier said then done.
6 Don't bottle up your feelings.
7 I'm dying for a coffee.

4

1 even keel (on an even keel)
2 sides (sides with)
3 cool (cool down) / calm (calm down)
4 go at (had a go at)
5 dying (I'd been dying to)
6 check (kept his temper in check)
7 flares (flares up)
8 said than done (that's easier said than done)
9 up the wrong way (rubs me up the wrong way)
10 bottle up (bottle up your feelings)

Unit 10

1

1 he's growing fast
2 we don't need it any more
3 put them in the bin
4 it keeps falling over
5 it can go in the lorry
6 someone might steal your wallet
7 fell asleep
8 he was in pain

2

1 T 2 F 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 T 8 F 9 T 10 F

3

1 take
2 mop
3 curled
4 stuck
5 deal ('hand' is correct in (a), but would be unnatural in (b))
6 roll
7 prop/shore
8 screw

4

1 stick it out
2 spread them out
3 let it down
4 chuck it away / chuck it out / screw it up
5 roll our sleeves up
6 mop it up
7 prop him up
8 curled up (with embarrassment) OR doubled up/over (with laughter)

Unit 11

1

1 lay my ~~hand~~ **hands**
2 fork ~~over~~ £30 **out**
3 pay ~~out~~ **off**
4 on the ~~breadqueue~~ **breadline**
5 to ~~fill~~ back on **fall**
6 be better ~~on~~ **off**

2

1 off
2 pretty
3 way
4 forked/paid
5 worse
6 fall
7 bail

3

1 pay off
2 pay your own
3 lay your, bail you
4 the breadline

4

1 You should err on the side of caution.
2 I went into it with my eyes open.
3 He opened an account off his own bat.
4 He could land himself in trouble.
5 She held on to her oil shares.
6 We don't have much money to play with.

5

1 add
2 comes/came
3 fruit
4 went
5 play
6 put
7 err
8 bat

Unit 12

1

1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F

2

1 sense
2 leg
3 matter
4 splash
5 come
6 set

4

1 got **behind** with
2 living from hand **to** mouth
3 the same **old** story
4 **to** say the least
5 going **cheap**
6 The last **I** heard
7 living **beyond** his means
8 put a deposit **down** / put **down** a deposit

5

1 He got caught up in something illegal.
2 He's in arrears with his rent.
3 I'm putting aside €100 a month.
4 She put down a £25 deposit.
5 It's the same old story.
6 She's living beyond her means.

Unit 13

1

1 off-colour
2 the bathroom
3 don't know
4 unwell
5 become ill
6 fall over

2

1 starting to **wear** off now
2 death warmed **up**
3 coming **down** with a cold
4 blacked **out**
5 **take** it easy
6 his **usual/normal** self

3

1 weather
2 come
3 going
4 off, easy

4

1 G 2 B 3 B 4 B 5 B 6 G 7 B 8 G

5

1 sorry
2 went
3 side
4 wood
5 swell
6 checked
7 away
8 gone
9 go
10 mend

Unit 14

1

1 crow
2 murder
3 snail's
4 cutting
5 drop
6 cut
7 flagged
8 pulled

2

1 get from A to B
2 murder
3 As the crow flies
4 blocked me in
5 cutting it fine
6 miles from anywhere

4

1 G 2 B 3 B 4 G 5 G 6 B

5

1 a gear
2 a green light
3 ticking over
4 the end of the road
5 the rails
6 steam

6

1 the green light
2 down that road
3 us on the map
4 the end of the road
5 up a gear
6 down the road

Unit 15

1

1 Sam ~~cleaned~~ it all off **polished**
2 we can ~~set~~ up with him **settle**
3 I could eat a ~~house~~ **horse**
4 grab a ~~mouth~~ to eat **bite**
5 burnt to a ~~chip~~ **crisp/cinder**
6 making my ~~taste~~ water **mouth**
7 eats like a ~~mouse~~ **horse**
8 by word ~~or~~ mouth **of**

2

1 picks at
2 full / full up
3 leftovers
4 by word of mouth
5 like a bird
6 settle up
7 a bite / a bite to eat

3

1 looking foolish
2 seeming innocent
3 TV
4 having influence
5 being overambitious
6 energy
7 events getting worse

4

1 the best thing since sliced bread
2 bitten off more than she can chew
3 eating out of his hand
4 crying over spilt milk
5 egg on their face(s)
6 a couch potato
7 of the frying pan, (and) into the fire
8 full of beans

Unit 16

1

1 U 2 U 3 P 4 P 5 U 6 P 7 U 8 P

2

1 colours (with flying colours)
2 of trying (it's not for want of trying)
3 me off (told me off)
4 my head (it went over my head)
5 apply (apply himself)
6 him back (it's … holding him back)
7 signs of (showing signs of)
8 new leaf (turned over a new leaf)
9 marked me (marked me down)
10 or tail of it (can't make head or tail of it)
11 of course / of routine (as a matter of course / of routine)
12 socks up (pull his socks up)

3

1 coming on
2 make head or tail of this
3 night after night
4 next to nothing
5 scraped through
6 holding him back
7 cut out
8 running
9 apply myself
10 in/by leaps and bounds

4

1 told
2 socks
3 flying
4 a) on, bounds; b) signs
5 matter
6 show

Unit 17

1

1 take sth in your stride
2 get your foot in the door
3 keep your ear to the ground
4 put all your eggs in one basket
5 keep your feet on the ground
6 make a name for yourself

2

1 foot
2 stride
3 name
4 options
5 ground
6 pinning
7 grapevine
8 alone
9 keep

4

1 tricks of the ~~business~~ **trade**
2 ~~some~~ of the furniture **part**
3 it'll ~~make~~ some doing **take**
4 pass it ~~through~~ to the others **on**
5 under her ~~arm~~ **wing**
6 close ~~by~~ ten years **on**
7 he got the ~~pull~~ **push/boot/elbow**
8 throw his ~~size~~ about **weight**

5

1 some doing
2 fit
3 weight around/about
4 -end job
5 push/elbow/boot
6 the tricks
7 his wing
8 furniture

Unit 18

1

1 The deal has fallen / is going to fall through.
2 We survived thanks to the government.
3 Michael White is on the verge of resigning.
4 There are fears that the company could go to the wall.
5 A management buyout emerged at the eleventh hour.
6 Their future hangs in the balance.
7 The government will bail them out.
8 The company had pulled out of the deal.

2

1 buyout
2 hanging
3 pull out
4 stand
5 go
6 verge
7 through
8 bailout
9 shore / prop

3

1 G 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 B 7 G 8 B

4

1 we brought someone/somebody in
2 it caught us on the hop
3 it has fallen off
4 it's in the doldrums
5 it's slimmed down
6 they've bucked / they're bucking the trend
7 we did it up ourselves
8 it's making a comeback / it's coming back into fashion

Unit 19

1

1 a short space of ~~the~~ time
2 cut out ~~of~~ the middleman
3 *Correct.*
4 rest ~~up~~ on your laurels
5 *Correct.*
6 going ~~on~~ strong
7 *Correct.*
8 the going ~~pay~~ rate

2

1 middleman
2 at the right time
3 space of time
4 on our laurels
5 success
6 rate
7 off
8 strong

3

1 boat
2 In
3 *Both are correct.*
4 top-heavy
5 false
6 water
7 corners
8 sell up

4

1 An opportunity to do something.
2 Because they don't want a situation that is becoming unsuccessful to get worse.
3 The past. / A past event.
4 Annoyed or upset.
5 Yes, because I'd be in trouble.
6 *Most likely answers are*: cut back on staff, sell poorer quality food/drinks.

Unit 20

1

1 S 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 D

2

1 ~~do~~ a big thing **make**
2 take ~~out~~ any more **up**
3 stresses me ~~up~~ **out**
4 something ~~down~~ those lines **along/on**
5 like a bomb has ~~exploded~~ it **hit**
6 raised an ~~eyelash~~ **eyebrow**

3

1 It's no big deal if you can't do it.
2 The office looked like a bomb had hit it.
3 We need something on these lines.
4 They made a big deal/thing of / out of it.
5 John's taken over the cooking from me.
6 This table takes up too much room/space.

4

1 my first thought was to **buy** in a lot
2 Look – it's no **big** deal!
3 some of her **tried** and tested recipes
4 start **trying** out new things
5 pitch **in** and give me a hand
6 shopping **like** mad
7 I was so **stressed** out I had to go
8 organized and **clear** up the cooking stuff
9 as I **went** along
10 she took **over** from me in the kitchen
11 dished everything **up**, it looked fabulous

5

1 out, tried
2 save their life
3 as you
4 pitch
5 top
6 make a

Unit 21

1

We set up camp near a lake.
They rolled up late as usual.
Try not to tire yourself out.
The cash came in handy.
You should go easy on the cakes.
Don't take the easy way out.

2

1 wore herself out/was worn out/tired herself out
2 came in handy/useful
3 rolled up
4 put it up
5 keep an eye
6 easy on
7 make do
8 it behind

3

1 G 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 B

4

1 the rain held **off**
2 it just **tipped** down
3 being **soaked** to the skin
4 stumbled **on**/**across** an incredible band
5 going **down** a storm
6 kicked **off** with an amazing version
7 the high **point** came when they
8 went down pretty **well** too
9 putting **on** a real show

Unit 22

1

1 G 2 B 3 G 4 G 5 B 6 G 7 B 8 B
9 G 10 B

2

1 bl~~a~~nd **blind**
2 ~~s~~ell **tell**
3 ~~b~~lew **flew**
4 mine **mind**
5 ~~f~~all **call**
6 s~~l~~apped **snapped**

3

1 in the eye
2 bag/bundle
3 round to
4 pick you up / call for you
5 his eyes off
6 chatted away

4

1 had in ~~the~~ mind
2 picked me ~~all~~ up
3 could tell ~~him~~
4 got ~~him~~ round to
5 had ~~big~~ bags
6 to ~~get~~ wind me up
7 the ~~same~~ like
8 flew ~~well~~ by
9 chatted ~~himself~~ away
10 look ~~at~~ him
11 on the ~~playing~~ cards

5

1 dates
2 wound, bundle
3 make
4 come
5 call

Unit 23

1

1 g 2 d 3 e 4 b 5 a 6 h 7 c 8 f

2

1 big
2 shelf
3 better
4 but
5 limit
6 popped
7 off
8 wouldn't

3

1 She really spoke **from** the heart.
2 The good weather really **made** my day.
3 You can get this medicine **off** the shelf.
4 Mum **goes**/**went** on and on about tidying my room.
5 Winning was the icing on the **cake**.
6 It's **not** every day you win the lottery.
7 Please raise **your** glasses to the happy couple.
8 The ceremony **went** off without a hitch.

4

1 broke, tears
2 glowing terms
3 shut, up
4 break, bank
5 hear of
6 big day
7 bottom, heart
8 sky, limit

Unit 24

1

1 get
2 safety
3 dead
4 took
5 time
6 worse

2

1 and **catch** up on
2 always **brought** out the worst
3 under **no** obligation
4 I had **nothing** to lose
5 Go **for** it!
6 **there** is safety
7 a **whale** of a time

3

1 look great
2 older
3 don't enjoy
4 aren't
5 under
6 in good shape
7 older
8 terrible

4

1 look, keeps
2 now, bones
3 years, shape
4 pushing, up
5 million, takes years off
6 friends

Unit 25

1
1 off
2 in
3 ground
4 below
5 aside
6 a par

2
1 hit
2 bench
3 way
4 par
5 off
6 on

3
1 We're on a par with Everton.
2 The coach brushed the comments aside.
3 We are in contention for the title.
4 He's confident the strategy will pay off.
5 We're gaining ground on the league leaders.
6 Is he going to gamble on Palmer tonight?

4
1 P 2 U 3 U 4 P 5 P 6 P 7 U 8 P

5
1 came
2 dug
3 eased
4 held
5 out
6 hook
7 striking
8 running

Unit 26

1
1 cuff
2 the best
3 from the beginning
4 later
5 without
6 miss out on it
7 think about
8 eyes

2
1 off the wall
2 off the cuff
3 it in mind
4 feedback
5 flash by / fly by
6 all along

3
1 eye to eye
2 miss, knows
3 lined, cater
4 bounce
5 pat
6 back, bear

4
1 We must bridge the gap between rich and poor.
2 I didn't see eye to eye with the teacher.
3 She opened my eyes to more important things.
4 We came away with a lot of new ideas.
5 I gave an answer off the top of my head.
6 The organizers deserve a pat on the back.

5
1 by
2 know
3 wall
4 for
5 thought
6 away

Unit 27

1
1 less
2 stop
3 is
4 known
5 get rid of it
6 disappears

2
1 He put pressure on her to change her mind. OR He put her under pressure …
2 His comments were off the record. OR His comments weren't intended to be on the record.
3 We need to do this, and the sooner the better.
4 He's a household name.
5 The secrets have recently leaked out.
6 The incident will soon blow over.
7 She blew it (up) out of (all) proportion.
8 His comments have stirred up a lot of anger.

3
1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 S

4
1 open
2 mixed
3 speak
4 without fire
5 under the carpet
6 true
7 brunt
8 lengths

Unit 28

1
1 the robbers
2 under-age drinking
3 *Both are logical.*
4 secret information
5 gambling
6 production

2
1 in, for
2 on, for
3 in
4 at
5 in, of
6 with
7 in, of
8 in

3
1 lying (lying in wait for)
2 make/run (make/run off with)
3 possession (in possession of)
4 wake (in the wake of)
5 lookout (had been on the lookout for)
6 crack (crack down on)

4
1 d 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 b 6 c

5
1 gradually
2 are found innocent
3 increasing
4 make it stricter
5 a warning
6 more responsibly

6
1 They're going to phase the scheme out. OR … phase out the scheme.
2 The policeman went under cover (as a criminal).
3 He led the boy astray.
4 She wants to clear her name.
5 The police are pressing / have pressed charges (against him).
6 They are going on the offensive (against him).

Unit 29

1

1 turnout
2 join/combine
3 made
4 boarded up
5 go ahead
6 event
7 broke
8 walks of life

2

1 calling
2 passed/went off
3 go-ahead
4 bring/put, end
5 In the
6 forces
7 our way
8 turned out

3

1 a sit-in
2 spread
3 to
4 *Both are possible.*
5 *Both are possible.*
6 down

4

1 They will never back down.
2 Keep it to yourself.
3 We will certainly press ahead with our plans.
4 He always stood up for his beliefs.
5 Why did they cordon off the café?
6 How will we spread the word?
7 The talks paved the way for the reforms.
8 It's very hard to get our message across.

Unit 30

1

1 level ('equal' is also possible)
2 advantage
3 reasonable/logical
4 bad
5 reacting/responding
6 criticized/attacked
7 thinking
8 better

2

1 fire
2 slow
3 up
4 final
5 boils
6 plucked

3

1 put
2 *Both are correct.*
3 having
4 give
5 *Both are correct.*
6 words
7 call
8 run and run

4

1 house, order
2 benefit, doubt
3 jump, bandwagon
4 have, field
5 wake-up call
6 give/budge/move, inch
7 war, words
8 bode well

Unit 31

1

1 different
2 dispute
3 urgent
4 possible
5 continue/proceed
6 part of what they want

2

1 free up
2 can ill
3 standing firm
4 press on / press ahead
5 (being) poles apart / (being) at loggerheads / (being) locked in battle
6 meet each other halfway
7 hang in the balance

3

1 battle
2 bullet
3 guns
4 in both camps
5 battle
6 line

4

1 broken ranks
2 foot in both camps
3 running battle over this (for ages)
4 bite the bullet and raise taxes
5 siding with the Opposition
6 sticking / going to stick to her guns (on this)
7 a losing battle
8 the firing line

Unit 32

1

1 N 2 N 3 P 4 P 5 N 6 N

2

1 break
2 wildest
3 rise
4 head
5 pieces
6 knocked

3

1 A lot of actors fall by the wayside.
2 We must tread carefully.
3 He was successful, but it came at a price. OR His success came at a price.
4 It was beyond my wildest dreams.
5 Holly went to pieces.
6 I'm sure Jason will rise to the occasion (on the night).

4

1 tries, does
2 shadow
3 past, through
4 its toll, a heavy toll
5 set
6 line, road

5

1 news **got**/**leaked** out
2 fight her **way** through
3 in the public **eye**
4 coupled **with** the birth
5 had **set** her back
6 taken a heavy **toll** on her
7 determined to **bounce** back
8 not **cast** a shadow

Unit 33

1

1 hard to ~~get~~ to terms **come**
2 wiped ~~off~~ by earthquakes **out**
3 wreaking ~~damage~~ on **havoc**
4 roof caved ~~down~~ **in**
5 caught up ~~on~~ the forest fires **in**
6 started to ~~make~~ hold **take**

2

1 in the grip
2 ripped through
3 wreaked havoc
4 swept away
5 caught up
6 caved in
7 loss of life

3

1 away
2 in
3 off
4 for
5 at
6 to
7 away
8 for

4

1 The train came/ground to a standstill.
2 We were cut off.
3 They towed the car away to the police station.
4 I headed for the hospital.
5 They turned us away from the building.
6 The food is running low. OR We're running low on food.
7 We'll be cut off for the foreseeable future.
8 I was caught unawares by the snow. OR The snow caught me unawares.

Unit 34

1

1 They give you information you need.
2 Yes, you are (it means they keep you up-to-date with information).
3 Angry or annoyed.
4 Persuading them that you are / something is right.
5 That you understand the situation.
6 Noticed something, a detail perhaps (and you may have acted on it).
7 You tell them what you are thinking or feeling.
8 No.

2

1 in
2 posted ('informed' is also possible)
3 up
4 picture
5 basis
6 over/round

4

1 no
2 yes
3 perhaps
4 yes
5 no
6 yes
7 no
8 no

5

1 I keep my cards close to my chest.
2 I got the wrong end of the stick.
3 I gave it away.
4 I wanted to mull it over.
5 I kept it to myself. OR I kept her in the dark.
6 I read between the lines.
7 It doesn't occur to me that I'm being secretive.
8 It makes no odds to me what people think.

Unit 35

1

1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D

2

1 butting
2 missed
3 beating, point
4 word
5 back
6 devil's, sake

4

1 gone
2 grips
3 justifies
4 deserve
5 politically
6 part
7 evil

5

1 can't teach an old dog new tricks
2 get what we deserve
3 a necessary evil
4 life after death
5 gone too far
6 politically correct / PC
7 get to grips with it
8 gone/going off the rails

Unit 36

1

1 time/money
2 ideas/thoughts
3 *All are correct.*
4 PC
5 savings/experience
6 ease/rest

2

1 wing
2 sit, notice
3 run
4 loosen
5 for
6 mind

4

1 N 2 P 3 P 4 N 5 N 6 P

5

1 life (the shock of my life), through (sit through), nod (nod off)
2 truth (nothing could be further from the truth), jumped/butted (jumped/butted in)
3 wreck (a nervous wreck), pare (pare it down), sight (lose sight of)

Unit 37

1

1 F 2 T 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 T

2

1 at home
2 with open arms
3 start/begin with
4 of her
5 was in his mouth
6 it by ear
7 a start
8 the word go

4

They arrived in dribs and drabs.
Don't rush into a decision.
We're forging ahead with the plans.
The situation was left hanging for days.
She rambled on for hours.
The meeting ran over by half an hour.
Don't hold the floor so others can't speak.

5

1 The measures will be to the detriment of patient care.
2 The chair laid down the rules of the meeting.
3 Dad rambled on about the wedding.
4 Don't rush into it / anything / a decision.
5 The money was released in dribs and drabs.
6 They threw together a video. OR They threw a video together.
7 We're forging ahead with the project.
8 I don't want to leave the situation hanging.

Unit 38

1

1 terms
2 purposes
3 equal
4 belief
5 speaking

2

1 name
2 equal
3 push/pinch
4 contrary
5 knowledge
6 intents

3

1 He told me what he thought of me in no uncertain terms. OR He told me in no uncertain terms what he thought of me.
2 It's common knowledge that they're married.
3 We can get six people round the table at a push/pinch. ('only just' fulfils the same function as 'at a push/pinch')
4 I'll sell the car as a last resort / if all else fails.
5 Strictly speaking, a tomato is a fruit.
6 Contrary to popular belief, he's not Welsh.

4

1 ~~little~~ (it's the least I can do)
2 ~~and~~ (last but not least)
3 ~~worst~~ (worse luck)
4 ~~I~~ (I'll give you that)
5 ~~later~~ ((a bit) late in the day)
6 ~~have~~ (you'll be lucky)
7 ~~quite~~ (it's all very well)
8 ~~everything~~ (for all she cares)

5

1 stay in, worse luck
2 safely, thank goodness
3 it's the (very) least I can do
4 abroad for all I care
5 is better in Spain, I'll give you that
6 be lucky to find a taxi

Unit 39

1

1 into the bargain
2 well and truly
3 ever so
4 by far / far and away / without (a) doubt
5 no wonder
6 on end

2

1 It's by far / far and away / without (a) doubt the best part of town.
2 He gave me a discount, and wrapped it up nicely into the bargain.
3 Karoly's ever such a generous guy.
4 Unfortunately the party was well and truly over when we arrived.
5 I think it's without (a) doubt / by far / far and away her most interesting novel.
6 I've been back there three times today as it is; I don't want to go again.
7 She ate some seafood that was off, so no wonder she's feeling ill.
8 It's not just any silk. It's the finest silk you can buy.

3

1 c 2 g 3 e 4 b 5 f 6 h 7 d 8 a

4

1 She'd give her right arm to go waterskiing.
2 They'll have to pull out all the stops.
3 They're up in arms over/about it.
4 I couldn't believe my ears when I heard the news.
5 They're streets ahead of me.
6 That boy doesn't do a stroke of work.
7 She came down on him like a ton of bricks.
8 I avoided her like the plague.
9 These guys don't half work hard.
10 All hell broke loose.

Unit 40

1

1 spare
2 light
3 on
4 death
5 hush/cover
6 kept/hid
7 facing

2

1 She wanted to spare her feelings.
2 She didn't want to let on to people.
3 He was scared to death. OR His father scared him to death.
4 He didn't want to lose face. / He wanted to save face.
5 She couldn't face up to it.

4

1 ~~in~~ his conscience **on**
2 when it comes **to** helping
3 I wasn't **born** yesterday
4 gave the game ~~up~~ **away**
5 ~~packs~~ of lies **a pack**
6 pull the wool over my ~~ears~~ **eyes**
7 difficult to live **with**
8 my aunt ~~looked~~ through it **saw**

5

1 live with
2 a pack of lies
3 have it on my conscience
4 went (as) red as a beetroot
5 gloss over
6 When it comes to

Unit 41

1

1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 D

2

1 They're neck and neck.
2 They're gaining ground.
3 It could tip the balance in your favour.
4 The race is hotting up.
5 She'll be hard to beat.
6 He's a dark horse.
7 She slipped up. / She made a slip-up.
8 I think he's got something up his sleeve. OR … has something up his sleeve. OR … has kept something up his sleeve.

3

1 shot
2 safe
3 true
4 shave/call
5 off
6 balance

4

1 gave
2 down
3 pulled
4 looking
5 price
6 dream

Unit 42

1

1 no
2 no
3 yes
4 no
5 no
6 yes

2

1 laugh
2 my leg
3 flat
4 in cheek
5 beyond a joke
6 stitches

4

1 famous ~~lost~~ words **last**
2 fell off the back of a ~~train~~ **lorry**
3 but no one's ~~here~~ **home**
4 my ~~beautiful~~ sleep **beauty**
5 What ~~plane~~ is he on? **planet**
6 as ~~clean~~ as mud **clear**
7 for reasons ~~better~~ known to himself **best**
8 a ~~cry~~ of nature **call**

5

1 I dread to think.
2 No, it was (as) clear as mud.
3 I need my beauty sleep.
4 That's the kiss of death, then.
5 They fell off the back of a lorry.
6 What planet is he on?
7 Famous last words.
8 A call of nature, I think/expect.

Unit 43

1

1 daylight
2 squeeze
3 feet
4 *Both are correct.*
5 past
6 for

2

1 put it past her
2 rip-off
3 robbery
4 beyond me
5 fell for / was taken in by

6 to death of it / to the back teeth of it
7 squeezed another €20 out of OR squeezed it out of
8 out on

4

1 let ~~us~~ alone
2 ~~be~~ fair enough
3 take it ~~out~~ personally
4 all ~~in~~ for
5 ~~all~~ dead set
6 jumped ~~in~~ down

5

but he's **dead** set against that
argue the **toss** with him
The thing is, **no** disrespect to Dad
and **to**/**let's** be fair
pulled my arguments to **pieces**/**shreds**
and that's **putting** it mildly
I think he takes that **personally**
won't get a job in the City, **let** alone become

Unit 44

1

1 your ~~wit~~ about you **wits**
2 ~~an~~ event of fire **the**
3 miss out ~~of~~ **on**
4 ~~stay~~ a good chance **stand**
5 no ~~hurt~~ in asking **harm**
6 makes ~~sensible~~ to **sense**
7 note ~~for~~ what **of**
8 wouldn't ~~harm~~ to **hurt**

2

1 swept
2 keep
3 times
4 no harm
5 note
6 essence
7 event
8 missing out

3

1 we're in the **same** boat
2 get so **worked** up
3 **For** what it's worth
4 pills **keeps** me from
5 stands to **reason** that
6 by any **stretch** of the imagination
7 if all **else** fails
8 you **could** do worse

4

1 I feel for her at this time.
2 We're both in the same boat.
3 Your best bet is to say nothing.
4 Try not to get worked up about the plan.
5 You could do worse than stay in a B and B.
6 If all else fails, you can refuse to work.

Unit 45

1

dig your heels in OR dig in your heels
a storm in a teacup
take the bull by the horns
fall into the trap of doing sth
have a chip on your shoulder
sit tight

2

1 He fell into the trap of doing everything himself.
2 She's made her choice; she must act on it.
3 He's got a chip on his shoulder.
4 I would sit tight (and do nothing).
5 He's digging his heels in. OR He's digging in his heels.
6 She has to think through what might happen. OR … to think it through.
7 You'll have your work cut out.
8 I was asked to sort out the problem. OR … sort the problem out.
9 It's a storm in a teacup.
10 He's going to take the bull by the horns.

3

1 off his
2 sail through
3 in a (terrible) state
4 get over
5 recipe for
6 finished with
7 came
8 pull himself

4

1 frame
2 coming
3 hanging
4 state
5 sail
6 world
7 day

Unit 46

1

1 ~~this~~ is life **that's**
2 write the experience ~~out~~ **off**
3 ~~she's~~ no stopping her **there's**
4 throws ~~him~~ into it **himself**
5 she ~~looked~~ to it **took**
6 luck's ~~by~~ his side **on**

2

1 carried away
2 's too short
3 like a duck to water
4 wasn't on your side
5 and breathes
6 goes on
7 came, way
8 element

3

1 S 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 D 7 S 8 S

4

1 light
2 running through
3 slipped
4 dwelling
5 live
6 jumping/leaping
7 face
8 putting
9 out

Unit 47

1

1 yes
2 no
3 no
4 no
5 no
6 yes

2

1 weigh, rushing
2 go
3 gut
4 turn
5 go
6 of your convictions

4

1 d 2 e 3 f 4 a 5 c 6 b

5

1 give
2 blind eye
3 step
4 put
5 toss
6 minds
7 two evils
8 draw

Unit 48

1

1 e 2 d 3 a 4 f 5 b 6 c

2

1 stick, out
2 get, into, no excuse
3 life, limb
4 bluff
5 hedged, put
6 play, split

4

1 thrives on
2 made up
3 down to
4 seek out
5 err on the side of caution
6 shed light on
7 a long shot
8 Not necessarily

5

1 seek
2 thrive
3 make-up
4 take, long
5 risk
6 run ('take' is also possible)

Unit 49

1

1 by
2 *Both are correct.*
3 glued
4 bag
5 *Both are correct.*
6 back

2

1 No, it's not my idea of fun.
2 Far from it. / Quite the opposite. / Quite the reverse.
3 Yes, he's in with a chance.
4 It was nothing to write home about / nothing to get excited about.
5 Yes, I felt hard done by.
6 Yes, but it'll take some doing.
7 No, it's (like) water off a duck's back (to me).
8 Yes, it's in the bag.

3

1 be ~~hardly~~ pushed **hard**
2 didn't want to know ~~it~~
3 make a move ~~on~~
4 leave it at ~~this~~ **that**
5 push ~~the~~ luck **your**
6 must ~~hear~~ things **be hearing**

4

1 miles away
2 seeing things
3 leave it at that
4 I wouldn't say no
5 make a move
6 his own thing
7 none too pleased / not too pleased
8 I'll be (hard) pushed to do that

Unit 50

1

1 e 2 g 3 a 4 f 5 c 6 b 7 h 8 d

2

1 lucky you
2 not at all / not in the least
3 that figures
4 so far, so good
5 Forget it
6 There's nothing to it
7 just as well

3

1 So what?
2 *Both are correct.*
3 Don't you dare!
4 *Both are correct.*
5 Rather you than me.
6 *Both are correct.*

4

1 You'll be lucky.
2 No fear. / No way.
3 Don't you dare!
4 So what? / What of it?
5 That's your problem. / That's not my problem.
6 Please yourself. / Rather you than me.
7 Now what? / What is it now?
8 That's/What a load of rubbish/nonsense!

Unit 51

1

1 d 2 e 3 f 4 a 5 g 6 b 7 h 8 c

2

1 at
2 paid
3 laid
4 with
5 in

3

1 destroy
2 beginning
3 disagree
4 happen/exist
5 disagree
6 proud/happy

4

1 on the threshold
2 at the hands of
3 holds sway
4 paid no heed to
5 in large part/measure
6 laid down their lives
7 be in his debt / be in debt to him
8 laid waste to
9 take issue
10 beyond the call of duty

5

1 respect
2 issue
3 lies
4 rise
5 end
6 respects
7 laid
8 tribute
9 honour
10 part/measure

Unit 52

1

1 It means he had no permanent home.
2 It means drunk, or having had too much alcohol.
3 It means having made a formal promise to tell the truth in a court of law.
4 It means because of her experience.
5 It means noisy or violent behaviour in a public place.
6 It means he's not free or allowed to tell us.

2

1 breach
2 influence
3 kindly
4 liberty
5 oath
6 took
7 conjunction
8 question

3

1 spirit
2 enter, abide
3 small
4 undoing
5 faith
6 will
7 sum
8 pretences

4

1 his own free will
2 letter of the law
3 false pretences
4 accordance with Mrs Hart's wishes
5 summing up
6 good faith
7 entered into the discussion
8 abide by the rules

Unit 53

1

1 d 2 e 3 g 4 a 5 h 6 c 7 b 8 f

2

1 subscribe **to** that point of view
2 embark **on/upon** the new project
3 deprived **of** even the most
4 contend **with** sub-zero temperatures
5 prides herself **on** her cooking
6 amount **to** a large sum
7 engaged **in** discussions
8 resigned herself **to** a lonely existence

3

1 deprived
2 resigned
3 dispose
4 subjected
5 engaged
6 amounts/amounted
7 impinge
8 adhere

4

1 enlarge on/upon
2 subscribed to
3 abide by / adhere to
4 contend with
5 dispense with the services of
6 dwell on/upon
7 amounts to
8 pride themselves on

5

1 We can dispose of these old files.
2 It won't impinge on/upon my decision. OR It won't impact on my decision.
3 He was subjected to a tough interview.
4 She prides herself on her loyalty.
5 Will they adhere to the rules? OR Will they abide by the rules?
6 She alluded to your comments.

Unit 54

1

1 event
2 right
3 production
4 bounds
5 For
6 convenience
7 under
8 discretion

2

1 or nearest offer
2 Usually a flat or house, and it means someone has agreed to buy it.
3 Job advertisements.
4 A personal reference or a public notice.
5 Giving a tip.
6 On the back of a lorry, van, car, etc.

Unit 55

1

Sentences referring to a physical action are: 2, 3, 5, 6, 8.

2

1 tightened
2 went
3 spilled
4 down
5 turn
6 up
7 feed

3

Let's tighten up the regulations.
The standard's gone down in recent years.
They knocked down the shopping centre.
Just stand back and think about it.
Her life has fallen apart since she lost her job.
The towel soaked up the moisture.
They feed on insects.

4

1 stand back
2 soak up
3 falling apart
4 turn, around/round
5 feeds on
6 spill over
7 go down

Unit 56

1

1 S 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 D

2

1 the finger of suspicion
2 a fighting chance
3 a hot potato
4 a drop in the ocean
5 a conflict of interest
6 a lame duck
7 a storm in a teacup / a fuss about nothing
8 a lost cause

3

1 e 2 g 3 f 4 a 5 h 6 b 7 d 8 c

4

1 The birthday party was a roaring **success**.
2 The government did a **U**-turn on the policy.
3 He's trying to find a **happy** medium.
4 We hope to get a **clean** bill of health.
5 There has been a **coup** d'état in Birania.
6 Our company needs a shot in the **arm**.
7 I made a terrible faux **pa**s at the interview.
8 Letter-writing is a **thing** of the past.

5

1 a ~~gold~~ opportunity **golden**
2 a ~~black~~ lie **white**
3 *Correct.*
4 a ~~blue~~ eye **black**
5 a ~~pink~~ elephant **white**
6 *Correct.*
7 ~~brown~~ fingers **green**
8 *Correct.*

6

1 the black market
2 a black eye
3 the red carpet
4 green fingers
5 a golden opportunity / the chance of a lifetime
6 a white elephant
7 the black sheep (of the family)

Unit 57

1

1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 D

2

1 I haven't got the facts at my fingertips.
2 I didn't see anything out of the ordinary.
3 We do everything by the book.
4 We arrived in the nick of time.
5 Twelve people are living under one roof. / … under the same roof.
6 Hundreds of workers will be on the scrapheap.
7 You are within your rights to claim for this.
8 She expressed the ideas in plain English.

3

1 in
2 between
3 out of, off
4 from, to
5 at
6 at/from, from

4

1 out of your mind / off your head
2 from head to toe
3 at a loose end
4 in all probability
5 between you and me / ourselves
6 at/from the outset / from the word go

5

1 blue
2 end
3 eyes
4 head
5 sake
6 go

6

The following phrases are informal: 2, 4, 7, 8.

7

1 at
2 of
3 in
4 on
5 in
6 on
7 on
8 on

Unit 58

1

1 ~~fiddle~~ **flash**
2 ~~pie~~ **nails**
3 ~~flash~~ **fiddle**
4 ~~brush~~ **cucumber**
5 ~~new~~ **pie**
6 ~~cucumber~~ **brush**

2

1 it was (as) hard as nails
2 she was (as) cool as a cucumber
3 he looked/was (as) white as a sheet
4 she's (as) bright as a button
5 he's (as) fit as a fiddle
6 she's (as) thin as a rake

3

1 carefully
2 difficult to obtain
3 thinking
4 clumsy and careless
5 fits perfectly
6 well
7 difficult to find

4

1 hawk
2 glove
3 stone
4 bull
5 needle, haystack
6 head, brick wall

Unit 59

1

1 save
2 bred
3 gloom
4 cheerful
5 tear
6 proper
7 square
8 parcel

2

1 born and bred
2 wear and tear
3 fair and square
4 scrimp and save
5 doom and gloom
6 bread and butter
7 part and parcel
8 cheap and cheerful

4

1 leaps and bounds
2 short and sweet
3 divide and rule
4 odds and ends
5 hit and miss
6 pride and joy

5

1 bits and pieces / bits and bobs / odds and ends
2 hit and miss
3 by/in leaps and bounds
4 short and sweet
5 all in all / all things considered
6 head to head
7 pride and joy
8 through and through
9 step by step
10 divide and rule

Unit 60

1

1 A leopard cannot change its spots. / You can't teach an old dog new tricks.
2 Too many cooks spoil the broth. / Many hands make light work.
3 Strike while the iron is hot. / (There's) No time like the present.
4 People who live in glasshouses shouldn't throw stones. / One good turn deserves another.

2

1 Nothing ventured, nothing gained.
2 You can't make an omelette without breaking eggs.
3 One good turn deserves another.
4 Many hands make light work.
5 You can't teach an old dog new tricks. ('A leopard cannot change its spots' would not be as suitable here, as the sentence is about a way of doing sth, not character.)
6 Too many cooks spoil the broth.
7 People who live in glass houses shouldn't throw stones.
8 Let's strike while the iron is hot.

4

1 c 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 d 6 b

5

1 (It's) An eye for an eye (and a tooth for a tooth).
2 Don't count your chickens (before they're hatched).
3 Better the devil you know (than the devil you don't).
4 When in Rome … (do as the Romans do).
5 Two's company (three's a crowd).
6 The grass is always greener (on the other side of the fence).

Answer key to review units

Introduction to idioms and phrasal verbs

Unit 1

1

1 foot
2 right
3 next
4 sore
5 side
6 keep
7 hit
8 stroke
9 bark
10 sinks
11 towel
12 seat

The expression in the grey squares is 'fixed phrases'.

Unit 2

1

1 e 2 h 3 d 4 g 5 b 6 c 7 f 8 a

2

1 cards, chest
2 strike
3 corner/spot
4 screwed
5 heart, head
6 heart

Unit 3

1

1 to it
2 for pickpockets/thieves/cheats, etc.
3 on me
4 out on her
5 a warning
6 it means

2

1 put down
2 came up
3 ate up
4 puts himself down
5 put down
6 took against
7 eat in
8 talked me into going

Unit 4

1

Phrasal verb	Phrasal noun
look on	onlooker
break out	outbreak
sum up	summing-up
stand by	bystander

Phrasal verb	Phrasal adjective
speak out	outspoken
water sth down	watered down
wear sth out	worn out
go on	ongoing
put sb off	off-putting

2

1 knocked out
2 leftover
3 cover-up
4 backup
5 get away
6 worn out

People

Unit 5

1

I would choose Amy (a bright spark), Syd (tough as old boots), Don (nobody's fool), and Brenda (salt of the earth).

I wouldn't choose the others because on a difficult demanding journey you probably wouldn't want Ollie (an unknown quantity), or Bill (thick as two short planks, so not very bright). Alec (a creature of habit) would find it difficult not knowing what to expect every day, and Mandy (a cold fish) would not be good company. Clive (likes the sound of his own voice) might become irritating, and Isabel (doesn't suffer fools gladly) might cause friction in the group.

2

1 mad
2 temper
3 piece
4 wire
5 touch
6 hatter
7 thumb
8 cool

Unit 6

1

1 He never lifts a finger (to help).
2 She'll stop at nothing (to get what she wants).
3 They went to great lengths to help us.
4 Her generosity is what sets her apart.
5 Call me if you need a shoulder to cry on.
6 My sister takes me for granted.

2

1 on
2 up
3 finger
4 turn, shoulder
5 hand
6 foot
7 way
8 take

Unit 7

1

1 finished
2 break-up
3 patch
4 made
5 himself
6 meet
7 messed
8 away

2

1 of the moment
2 a wedge between them
3 sooner you came alone
4 other's pockets
5 the knot
6 anything / my right arm to meet George Clooney

Unit 8

1

1 b 2 b 3 a 4 b 5 a 6 a 7 b 8 a

2

1 Shan distanced herself from the group.
2 I lavished praise on my son.
3 Dara is starved of affection (by her parents).
4 He's my own flesh and blood.
5 She got away with murder.
6 Those kids fight like cat and dog (all day long).

Unit 9

1

1 U 2 H 3 U 4 U 5 H 6 U 7 U 8 U

2

1 head
2 easier
3 pour
4 sides
5 rub
6 apparent
7 eyes/heart
8 dying

Unit 10

1

1 She's rolling up a picture.
2 She's dealing out cards.
3 She's sticking her tongue out. OR She's sticking out her tongue.
4 He's zipping up his jacket.
5 Somebody has propped the tree up.
6 She's curled up on the sofa.
7 I'm mopping up some water.
8 I'm throwing something away.

2

1 help a company in difficulty
2 start a difficult task
3 make a mess of it
4 embarrassed
5 continue to do sth difficult or boring
6 complete

Everyday life

Unit 11

1

1 play
2 goes
3 fork
4 bail
5 landed
6 fall
7 bear
8 put

3

1 his own way
2 err, caution
3 own bat
4 comes
5 worse off
6 paid, off
7 his eyes
8 the breadline

Unit 12

1

1 in the lap of luxury
2 (him) an arm and a leg
3 more money than sense
4 was going cheap
5 puts (some) money aside
6 set foot in/inside that nightclub

2

1 object
2 least
3 heard
4 arrears
5 lane
6 story
7 mouth
8 means

Unit 13

1

Groups with possible titles

Feeling unwell: out of sorts, under the weather, off-colour

Getting better: on the mend, pull through, take a turn for the better ('come round' would also be possible here)

Lose/gain consciousness: pass out, black out, come round

2

1 It's touch-and-go whether he'll survive.
2 He started to throw up.
3 She (suddenly) took a turn for the worse.
4 I think he's going downhill.
5 It won't go away.
6 Check it out – to be on the safe side.

Unit 14

1

1 She dropped me off at 3.00.
2 I was cutting / had cut it fine.
3 He's running/run out of steam.
4 It's five miles as the crow flies.
5 She drives at a snail's pace.

2

1 ticking
2 murder
3 gear
4 road
5 blocked

Unit 15

1

1 beans
2 egg
3 milk
4 eating
5 butter, mouth
6 bitten, chew

2

1 I'm full up
2 I could eat a horse
3 settle up
4 (By) word of mouth
5 leftovers
6 grab/have a bite
7 's a couch potato
8 is making my mouth water OR looks mouth-watering

Unit 16

1

9, 6, 1, 11, 5, 7, 3, 8, 10, 2

2

1 through
2 for
3 off
4 on
5 out
6 back

Unit 17

1

1 Don't throw your weight around/about.
2 I heard about it on the grapevine.
3 Don't put all your eggs in one basket.
4 When I started the job, Bill took me under his wing.
5 He got his foot in the door of the firm.
6 They gave me the boot/elbow.
7 Keep your ear to the ground.
8 He keeps his feet on the ground.

Unit 18

1

1 verge
2 buyout
3 stand
4 shore
5 eat
6 hop
7 trend
8 win
9 comeback
10 bailout
11 slim

The idiom in the grey squares is 'go to the wall'. (If a company **goes to the wall**, it fails because of lack of money.)

Unit 19

1

1 space
2 success
3 corners
4 deep
5 retrospect
6 laurels
7 boat
8 flooded
9 sell
10 step/jump

Events

Unit 20

1

1 had hit it
2 over
3 it out
4 (out) of it
5 a cat
6 eyebrow
7 those / these / the same lines
8 off my shoulders / off my mind

2

1 mad/crazy
2 save
3 off
4 stressed
5 in
6 dish
7 deal, deal
8 tested

Unit 21

1

1 c 2 g 3 e 4 a 5 b 6 h 7 f 8 d

2

1 It tipped down.
2 I stumbled on/across the book.
3 We got soaked to the skin.
4 That tin opener came in handy/useful.
5 I wore myself out. OR I was worn out.
6 The band went down a bomb.
7 We can make do with two assistants instead of three.
8 I have my doubts about Jeremy.

Unit 22

1

1 b 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 a 6 b 7 b 8 a

2

1 blind
2 bag/bundle
3 picked
4 bags
5 shell
6 chatted
7 flew/flashed
8 made
9 cards

Unit 23

1

1 pop the question
2 the sky's the limit
3 propose a toast
4 speak from the heart
5 break the bank
6 in glowing terms
7 the icing on the cake
8 get the better of

2

1 peg
2 hitch
3 hear
4 up
5 day
6 tears
7 praises
8 day

Unit 24

1

1 pushing
2 and bones
3 million dollars
4 years on
5 for it
6 of shape

2

1 We had a whale of a time.
2 I must get in touch with Stephanie.
3 You're under no obligation to do it.
4 I'll be happy to see the back of him.
5 We're just good friends.
6 I wouldn't be seen dead in that place.
7 There's nothing better than a day on the beach.
8 I just want to catch up on/with the latest news.

Unit 25

1

1 effort
2 equally
3 no
4 unimportant
5 strong
6 standard/level
7 risk ('chance' is also possible)
8 substitute ('reserve' is also possible)

2

1 off
2 contention
3 ground
4 par
5 off
6 hook
7 off
8 plot

Unit 26

1

1 second
2 lined
3 flash/fly
4 missed
5 bounce
6 bridge
7 cater
8 came

2

1 bear something in mind
2 a pat on the back
3 off the top of your head
4 food for thought
5 know your stuff
6 off the wall
7 eye to eye
8 off the cuff

What's in the news?

Unit 27

1

2, 12, 3, 7, 5, 8, 4, 11, 1, 9, 6, 10, 2

2

1 stirring
2 over, go
3 out, weren't/wasn't
4 open, overstepped
5 pressure, sooner
6 feelings, stamp

Unit 28

1

1 in **possession** of
2 clean up **their** act
3 go **under** cover
4 **lying** in wait
5 going **on** the offensive
6 **on** the lookout
7 held up **at** gunpoint
8 in the **wake** of

2

1 tipped off
2 leading him astray
3 broad daylight
4 in the clear
5 on the up
6 nip it in the bud
7 crack down

Unit 29

1

1 stand up
2 spread
3 pave
4 made
5 cordoned off
6 calling on
7 bring
8 turned out
9 break up
10 pass/go off
11 board up

Unit 30

1

1 boils **down** to
2 the **benefit** of the doubt
3 they wouldn't **give**/**budge**/**move** an inch.
4 In the **final** analysis
5 put its own **house** in order
6 just **plucked** the figures
7 just didn't **add** up
8 to capitalize **on** this success

2

1 have a field day
2 a wake-up call
3 neck and neck
4 come under fire
5 a war of words
6 stop the rot
7 climb on the bandwagon
8 quick off the mark

Unit 31

1

1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 D 7 S 8 D

2

1 open
2 apart
3 step
4 crying
5 up
6 side
7 ahead
8 camps

Unit 32

1

1 price
2 break
3 build
4 tread
5 bounce
6 rise
7 public
8 cast
9 beyond

The word in the grey squares is 'celebrity'.

2

1 taken its ~~heavy~~ toll
2 Smoking ~~is~~ coupled with
3 gone ~~up~~ to her head
4 fight ~~for~~ our way
5 try ~~to~~ my upmost
6 went to ~~the~~ pieces

Unit 33

1

1 halt/standstill
2 risk
3 future
4 havoc
5 hold
6 terms

2

1 caught unawares
2 thick and fast
3 ground/came to a halt/standstill
4 towed away
5 snowed in
6 cut off (by the snow)
7 in the grip of

Communication

Unit 34

1

1 keep
2 let
3 over
4 hold
5 odds
6 up
7 on
8 picture

2

1 I can't take it all **in**.
2 Reading **between** the lines, he doesn't like our idea.
3 It occurred **to** me that she could be wrong.
4 It makes **no** odds to him if we lose.
5 She plays her **cards** close to her chest.
6 It's a secret, so **keep** it to yourself.

Unit 35

1

1 you'll ~~take~~ what you deserve **get**
2 get ~~round~~ the point **to**
3 he ~~got~~ off the rails **went / has gone**
4 *Correct.*
5 stop beating about the ~~bushes~~ **bush**
6 the ~~ending~~ justifies **end**
7 a necessary ~~devil~~ **evil**
8 *Correct.*
9 believe in ~~live~~ after death **life**
10 *Correct.*
11 teach an old ~~cat~~ new tricks **dog**
12 try to ~~save~~ the last word **have**

2

1 disagree with her just for the sake of it
2 his behaviour is excessive
3 meant to avoid offending anyone
4 interrupting
5 to win the argument
6 accept that she has lost the argument

Unit 36

1

1 e 2 a 3 f 4 g 5 d 6 b 7 h 8 c

2

1 from the truth
2 cross
3 at rest/ease
4 wreck
5 winged
6 spare
7 of his life
8 rooting

Unit 37

1

1 We're on the same wavelength.
2 They welcomed me with open arms.
3 I'll play it by ear.
4 My heart was in my mouth.
5 It was a meeting of minds.
6 He just threw the dish together. OR He just threw something together.

2

1 forge ahead
2 lay down
3 from the word go
4 in dribs and drabs
5 hold the floor
6 detriment
7 to start/begin with
8 run over

The phrasal verb in the grey squares is 'ramble on'.

Unit 38

1

1 failed / not worked / not succeeded
2 annoyed/irritated
3 relieved and pleased
4 not really / not truly
5 clearly/directly
6 irritation/annoyance
7 not interested
8 annoyed/unhappy

2

1 in no uncertain terms
2 worse luck
3 at a push
4 I'll give you that
5 it's the least I can do
6 contrary to popular belief
7 thank goodness
8 to all intents and purposes

Unit 39

1

1 lost **for** words
2 It's **by** far the best
3 came **down** on me
4 so **no** wonder
5 to get **without** a doubt
6 for weeks **on** end
7 cartridge **into** the bargain
8 This is **not** just any / is**n't** just any

2

1 does a stroke
2 arms about/over
3 ever
4 a house on
5 head and shoulders
6 my right arm
7 couldn't believe my
8 pulled out all the

Human behaviour

Unit 40

1

1 up
2 to
3 on
4 over
5 face
6 comes

2

1 spare
2 kept
3 gloss
4 game
5 daylights
6 live

Unit 41

1

1 avoid
2 mistake
3 progress
4 risks
5 succeed, difficult
6 advantage
7 decided
8 past event
9 level
10 catching up
11 try
12 exciting

Unit 42

1

1 clear as mud
2 a call of nature
3 pull someone's leg
4 tongue in cheek
5 laugh your head off
6 falls flat
7 the kiss of death
8 I dread to think

Unit 43

1

1 put
2 rip
3 fair
4 all
5 take
6 squeeze ('get' would also be correct)
7 robbery
8 toss

Unit 44

1

1 miss
2 makes
3 harm
4 wits
5 stand
6 worth
7 bet
8 event
9 fails

Unit 45

1

1 a real ~~fish~~ on his shoulder **chip**
2 take the ~~cow~~ by the horns **bull**
3 digging his ~~toes~~ in **heels**
4 she'll ~~fly~~ through **sail**
5 a storm in a ~~saucer~~ **teacup**
6 have your ~~job~~ cut out **work**
7 ~~stepped~~ into the trap **fallen**
8 just sit ~~loose~~ **tight**

2

1 act on
2 got over
3 pull yourself together
4 It's not the end of the world.
5 sail through the exam
6 has been off his food
7 came up
8 sort out

Unit 46

1

1 C 2 C 3 P 4 C 5 P 6 P 7 C 8 P
9 C 10 P

2

1 short, on
2 conclusions, away
3 stopping him, himself into it
4 her head in the sand, up to it

Unit 47

1

1 weigh up
2 two minds
3 final/last straw
4 lost sight
5 Rightly or
6 rushed into
7 courage of your convictions
8 turned to
9 toss-up
10 step in
11 draw a line

Unit 48

1

1 light
2 chance
3 safe
4 bluff
5 into
6 neck
7 put
8 down

2

1 on
2 on, of
3 at
4 out
5 at
6 out
7 on
8 up

Styles of language

Unit 49

1

1 he's glued to it
2 I wouldn't say no
3 none too pleased
4 it's in the bag
5 leave it at that
6 I was miles away
7 far from it

2

1 g 2 h 3 e 4 a 5 d 6 c 7 b

Unit 50

1

1 I'm going to clean out the dustbin.
2 I hope I win the lottery.
3 Are you going out in the dark?
4 How's the new job?
5 Is the climb very difficult?
6 Is it OK if I don't come with you tonight?
7 Did you enjoy the film?

2

1 ~~You don't~~ dare **Don't you**
2 Ready ~~as~~ you are **when**
3 ~~What's~~ a load of rubbish **That's/what**
4 Just ~~so~~ well **as**
5 ~~this~~ figures **that**
6 you ~~or~~ me **than**

Unit 51

1

1 the threshold of a new era
2 no heed to my advice ('no attention' would also be correct but less formal)
3 down their lives for their country
4 due respect, I have to disagree with you
5 waste to the town
6 the call of duty

2

1 We **paid** our respects to the widow.
2 Delays could **give** rise to further problems. OR Problems could **give** rise to further delays.
3 I took issue **with** her over the expenses claim.
4 He **paid** tribute to the soldiers who had died.
5 We **had** the honour of meeting the President.
6 The country has suffered **at** the hands of this government. or This country has suffered **at** the hands of the government.

Unit 52

1

1 kindly
2 enter
3 summing-up
4 undoing
5 oath
6 accordance
7 fixed
8 false
9 print
10 letter
11 Breach

The phrase in the grey squares is 'in good faith'. (If you have done something **in good faith**, you have done it believing that it is right.)

Unit 53

1

4, 8, 11, 1, 10, 6, 9, 3, 7, 5, 2

2

1 dwell
2 *Both are correct*, enlarge
3 resigned, contend
4 deprived, *both are correct*
5 call, adhere (NOT 'abide ~~to~~')

Unit 54

1

1 F. It is the title of a newspaper section where jobs are advertised.
2 F. It means according to what you decide or want to do.
3 T
4 F. It means you are not allowed to go in a particular place.
5 F. It means 'or nearest offer'.
6 T

Types of idiom

Unit 55

1

1 fall apart
2 wrap sth up
3 stand back
4 stand back
5 spill over
6 fall apart
7 wrap sth up
8 spill over

2

1 tighten
2 turn
3 stand
4 feed
5 spilled
6 knocked ('pulled' is also possible)
7 gone
8 wrapped

Unit 56

1

1 f 2 e 3 g 4 a 5 d 6 c 7 h 8 b

2

1 success
2 seal
3 shot
4 carpet
5 finger
6 potato
7 conflict
8 storm

3

1 black
2 white
3 thing
4 golden
5 red
6 green
7 fuss
8 lost

Unit 57

1

These noun phrases do not follow the words in bold:

1 c ~~all probability~~
2 b ~~closed doors~~
3 d ~~the blue~~
4 a ~~their heart~~
5 c ~~nick of time~~

2

1 closed
2 same
3 plain
4 last
5 old
6 loose
7 deep
8 good

3

1 too difficult for you to understand
2 working well
3 unusual
4 in trouble
5 nothing particular to do
6 crazy
7 in good condition
8 true from the beginning

Unit 58

1

1 ~~c~~ake **rake**
2 ~~r~~ails **nails**
3 ~~h~~its **fits**
4 ~~f~~lood **blood**
5 ~~h~~all **wall**
6 ~~l~~ead **read**
7 ~~b~~ag **rag**
8 shee~~p~~ **sheet**

2

1 like wildfire
2 a, in a haystack
3 as new
4 as a cucumber
5 as a button
6 as pie
7 like a hawk
8 as a flash

Unit 59

1

5, 8, 3, 6, 11, 1, 9, 10, 4, 7, 2

2

1 T 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 F
9 T 10 T

Unit 60

1

1 Its spots.
2 The iron.
3 New tricks.
4 They spoil the broth.
5 They make light work.
6 Throw stones.

2

1 Don't count your chickens
2 Two's company
3 When in Rome
4 The spirit's willing
5 Better the devil you know
6 The grass is always greener
7 A bird in the hand
8 An eye for an eye

List of spotlight boxes

Unit	Title of spotlight box	Page
4A	*passer-by, bystander, onlooker*	14
5A	*mad*	18
6B	Persuading people	21
7B	Expressing wishes	23
8A	*on top of sb/sth*	24
9B	*side*	27
11B	*put sb off (sth)*	35
12A	*a matter of…*	36
12B	*in arrears (with sth)*	37
13B	Sayings	39
14B	Literal meanings	41
15A	Idioms with *horse*	42
16	Not understanding	44
17B	Being dismissed	47
18B	Food and dieting metaphors	49
20	*a big deal, a big thing*	56
21A	*put sth up, set sth up*	58
21B	Describing successful events	59
22	*eye*	60
23	Idioms with *day*	62
25A	Expressions with *par*	66
25B	*ease off*	67
26	Idioms with *off*	68
27B	Sayings about truth	75
29B	Communicating information	79
30B	*wake-up call*	81
31B	Literal meanings	83
32A	*build up*	84
34A	Giving people information	92
34B	Keeping information back	93
36B	*of your life*	97
37A	*to start with*	98
40A	Hiding information	108
41A	Idioms from horse racing	110
41B	*a close thing/shave/call*	111
44A	Advice	116
45A	Meanings of *sort sth out*	118
45B	Meanings of *come up*	119
46A	Sayings about life	120
47A	*go for sth*	122
47B	Idioms with *draw*	123
48B	Idioms with *risk*	125
49B	*thing(s)*	131
52B	The law	137
53	verb + *on/upon*	138
56B	French phrases	147
57B	Phrases with *head*	150
57C	*hands*	151
58A	Similes	152
59A	Sound patterns	154
59B	Repetition	155

Word list / Index

Here is an index of all the idioms and phrasal verbs, in alphabetical order according to the first word. The numbers are unit numbers. (If you cannot remember the first word, see the list of key words on page 202.)

(as) bright as a button 58
(as) clear as mud 42
(as) cool as a cucumber 58
(as) daft as a brush 58
(as) easy as pie 58
(as) fit as a fiddle 58
(as) good as new 58
(as) hard as nails 58
(as) mad as a hatter 5
(as) miserable as sin 8
(as) quick as a flash 58
(as) thick as two short planks 5
(as) thin as a rake 58
(as) tough as old boots 5
(as) white as a sheet 58
abide by sth 52, 53
account for sth 8
act on sth 45
add sth on (to sth) 11
add up 30
add-on 11
adhere to sth 53
all (other) things being equal 38
all along 26
all hell breaks loose 39
all in all 59
all things considered 59
all very well 38
allude to sth 53
along those / the same lines 20
amount to sth 53
an eye for an eye (and a tooth for a tooth) 60
an unknown quantity 5
and the like 22
answer to sb (for sth) 7
apply yourself 16
argue the toss 43
as a last resort 38, 44
as a matter of routine/course 16
as far as I can/could tell 22
as I see it 1
as it is 39
as the crow flies 14
as time goes by 11
at a loose end 57
at a price 32
at a push/pinch 38
at a snail's pace 14
at a/the crossroads 57
at all costs 35
at all times 44
at any cost/price 35
at cross purposes 36
at gunpoint 28
at home 37
at liberty (to do sth) 52
at risk (of/from sth) 33, 48
at sb's discretion 54
at the eleventh hour 18
at the end of the day 45
at the end of your tether 9
at the hands of sb 51
at the outset 57
at your earliest convenience 54
at your fingertips 57
at your wits' end 9
avoid sb like the plague 39
back down (on sth) 29, 35
back sb/sth up 4, 8
backup 4
a bad/sticky patch 7
bags of sth 22
bail sb out 11, 18
bailout 18
barking (mad) 5
be (all) skin and bones 24
be (hard) pushed to do sth 1, 49
be (like) banging your head against a brick wall 58
be a toss-up 47
be a weight off your shoulders/mind 20
be all for sth / for doing sth 43
be at an end 51
be at loggerheads 31
be at odds with sth 34
be beyond sb 43
be born and bred … 59
be common knowledge 38
be cut off 33
be dead set against sth 43
be down to sb/sth 48
be dying to do sth / for sth 9
be engaged in sth 53
be full up 15
be glad to see the back of sb 24
be glued to sth 49
be going strong 19
be hard pressed/put/pushed to do sth 1
be hard to beat 41

be in a (terrible) state 45
be in sb's debt 51
be in stitches 42
be in the bag 49
be in the doldrums 18
be in the driving seat 2
be in the firing line 31
be in the right place at the right time 19
be in the saddle 2
be in the same boat 44
be in two minds (about sth / doing sth) 47
be in with a chance (of doing sth) 49
be in your element 46
be in / get (sb) into deep water 19
be in / get (sb) into hot water 57
be in/out of the running (for sth) 25
be left over (from sth) 4, 15
be like a bull in a china shop 58
be like a red rag to a bull 58
be like getting blood out of a stone 58
be like looking for a needle in a haystack 58
be locked in battle / a dispute, etc. 31
be lost for words 39
be made for each other 7
be miles away 49
be murder 14
be off your food 45
be on sb's side 9
be on the cards 22
be on the lookout for sb/sth 28
be on the same wavelength 2, 37
be out of shape 24
be part and parcel (of sth) 59
be pushing 40, 50, etc. 24
be sb's undoing 52
be seeing/hearing things 49
be snowed in 33
be struck by sb/sth 37
be taken in by sth 43
be there for sb 6
(be) within your rights 57
be worse/better off 11
be/feel hard done by 49
be/feel out of sorts 13
be/get caught up in sth 12, 33
be/get/go beyond a joke 42
bear fruit 11
bear sth in mind 26
bear the brunt of sth 27
beat a hasty retreat 2
beat about the bush 35
beauty sleep 42
behind closed doors 57
below par 25
better safe than sorry 13
better the devil you know (than the devil you don't) 60
between ourselves 57
between you and me 57
beyond the call of duty 51
beyond your wildest dreams 32
a/the big day 23
a big deal 20
a bird in the hand (is worth two in the bush) 60
birds of a feather (flock together) 60
(a bit) late in the day 38
a bite (to eat) 15
bite off more than you can chew 15
bite the bullet 2, 31
bits and pieces/bobs 59
black eye 56
black market 56
black out 13
black sheep (of the family) 56
blind date 22
block sb/sth in 14
blow over 27
blow sth (up) out of (all) proportion 27
board sth up 29
bode well/ill for sb/sth 30
boil down to sth 30
bottle up your feelings/emotions 9
bounce back (from sth) 32
bounce ideas around 26
bounce ideas off sb 26
branch out (into sth) 18
breach of the peace 52
bread and butter 59
break away from sb/sth 4
break down (in tears) 23
break out = start suddenly 4
break out (of sth) = escape from prison 4
break ranks 31
break sb's heart 2
break sth up 29
break the bank 23
break up (with sb) 7
breakaway 4
breakout 4
break-up 7
bridge the gap/gulf/divide (between ...) 26
a bright spark 5
bring/put an end to sth 29
bring out the best/worst in sb 24
bring sb in 18
bring sth out 24
broad daylight 28
brush sb/sth aside 25
buck the trend 18
build sb up 32
build up sb's hopes 32

a bundle/bag of nerves 22
burn sth to a crisp/cinder 15
burst in on sb 3
bury your head in the sand 46
butt in 35, 36
butter wouldn't melt (in sb's mouth) 15
buy sb out 18
buy sth in 20
buyout 18
by far 39
by the book 57
by virtue of 52
by word of mouth 15
bystander 4

call for sb 22
call of nature 42
call on sb to do sth 29
call on/upon sb 53
call sb's bluff 48
calm (sb) down 9
can ill afford (to do) sth 31
can't do sth to save your life 20
can't make head or tail of sth 16
capitalize on sth 30
cast a shadow (over sth) 32
cast doubt(s) on sth 27
cast light on sth 48
catch sb on the hop 18
catch sb unawares 33
catch up (with/on sb/sth) = find out about news 24
catch up = move closer to level of others 41
catch up with sb = begin to have an effect on sb 24
cater for sth 26
cave in (on sb/sth) 33
chance of a lifetime 56
chat away 22
cheap and cheerful 59
check sth out 13
cheer sb on 36
chuck sth away/out 10
clean bill of health 56
clean up your act 28
clear (sth) up 20
clear sb's name 28
clear the air 7
climb down 4
climb on the/any bandwagon 30
climbdown 4
a close thing 41
a close shave/call 41
close on 17
close ranks 8, 31
a cold fish 5
come at a price 32
come away with sth 26, 36
come back 18
come down on sb like a ton of bricks 39
come down to sth 41
come down with sth 13
come in all shapes and sizes 1
come in handy/useful 21
come off worse 25
come on 16
come out in sth 13
come out in/into the open 27
come out of your shell 22
come out on top 41
come round 13
come to a standstill/halt 33
come to light 27, 40
come to sth 11
come to terms with sth 33
come to grips with sth 35
come up = (of the sun) rise 3
come up = be chosen 45
come up = be mentioned or discussed 45
come up = happen 45
come your way 46
come/be under fire 30
come/go down with sth 13
comeback 18
conflict of interest 56
contend with sth 53
contrary to popular belief 38
cool (sb) down 9
cordon sth off 29
cost an arm and a leg 12
couch potato 15
count on sb to do sth 3
a coup d'état 56
couple sth with sth 32
coupled with 32
cover sth up 4, 40
cover-up 4, 40
crackdown 28
crack down (on sth/sb) 28
a creature of habit 5
cry over spilt milk 15
cry your eyes/heart out 9
a crying need for sth 31
curl up (with embarrassment) 10
curl up = sit in a rounded position 10
cut corners 19
cut in (on sb/sth) 14
cut it/things fine 14
cut out the middleman 19
cut sth out 16
cut your losses 19

a dark horse 41
day by day 59

daylight robbery 43
dead-end job 17
deal sth out = distribute cards 10
deal sth out = give a punishment 10
deep down 5
delude yourself (into doing sth) 19
deprive sb/sth of sth 53
dig deep 25
dig your heels in 45
dish (sth) up 20
dispense with sb's services 53
dispose of sth/sb 53
distance yourself from sth 8
divide and rule 59
do as you please 7
do sb out of sth 3
do sth at your own risk 48
do sth up 18
do your own thing 49
do/try your utmost 32
don't count your chickens (before they're hatched) 60
don't look now 24
don't you dare 50
doom and gloom 59
double up/over 10
down in the dumps 9
down the road 14
draw a line under sth 47
draw lots 47
draw on sth 36
draw the line (at sth) 47
a dream come true 41
drive a wedge between people 7
a drop in the ocean 56
drop sb off 14
dwell on/upon sth 46, 53

ease off = become less strong 25
ease off = try less hard 25
easier said than done 9
eat in/up/into 3
eat into sth 3, 18
eat like a bird 15
eat like a horse 15, 58
eat sth up 3
embark on/upon sth 53
engage in sth 53
enlarge on/upon sth 53
enter into sth 52
err on the side of caution 11, 48
ever such (a) / ever so 39

face up to sth 40, 46
fair and square 59
fair enough 43
fall apart = (of a relationship) fail 55
fall apart = break into pieces 55
fall back on sth 11
fall by the wayside 32
fall flat 42
fall for sth 43
fall into the trap (of doing sth) 45
fall off 18
fall off the back of a lorry 42
fall through 18
false economy 19
famous last words 42
far and away 39
far from it 49
a faux pas 56
feedback 26
feed sth back (to sb) 26
feed on sth = (of an animal) eat 55
feed on sth = become stronger 55
(feel) at home 37
feel for sb 44
feel/look like death warmed up 13
fence sb in 29
fight a losing battle 31
fight back 25
fight like cat and dog 8
fight your way (through/past sb/sth) 32
fighting chance 56
finger of suspicion 56
finish with sb 7, 45
fit (sb) like a glove 58
flag sb down 14
flare up = (of a fire) burn more brightly 9
flare up = become angry 9
flash by 22, 26
flood the market 19
fly by 22, 26
food for thought 26
for reasons best known to himself/herself/etc. 42
for a start 37
for all sb cares 38
for external use only 53
for no apparent reason 9
for old times' sake 57
for sale 54
for the foreseeable future 33
for the sake of it 35
for what it's worth 44
forge ahead (with sth) 37, 41
forget it 50
fork sth out (on sth) 11
frame of mind 45
free (sb/sth) up 31
from all walks of life 29
from head to toe 57

from the (bottom of your) heart 23
from the horse's mouth 57
from/at the outset 57
from/at the word go 37, 57
full of beans 15
(further) down the road 14
fuss about nothing 56

gain ground (on sb) 25, 41
gamble on sth/sb 25
get (hold of) the wrong end of the stick 34
get a/your foot in the door 17
get away 4
get away with murder 8
get behind with sth 12
get carried away 46
get from A to B 14
get hitched 7
get in touch (with sb) 24
get on like a house on fire 39
get out 32
get out of bed on the wrong side 1
get over sth 45
get round sb 6
get round to (doing) sth 22
get sb's back up 34
get (sb) into hot water 57
get sth across 29
get the better of sb 23
get the picture 34
get the push/boot/elbow 17
get to grips with sth 35
get to the point 35
get what you deserve 35
get worked up (about sth) 44
get your hands on sth 11
get your message across 29
get your own way 6
get your wires crossed 2
get yourself into sth 48
getaway 4
give (sb/sth) the green light 14
give it your all 41
give rise to sth 51
give sb the benefit of the doubt 30
give sth a miss 47
give sth your best shot 41
give sth/sb away 34
give the game away 40
give your right arm (to do sth) 7, 39
give/lend (sb) a helping hand 6
gloss over sth 40
go ahead 29
go all out for sth 25
go along (*in* as you go along) 20
go away 13, 27
go down = become worse in quality 55
go down = move to a lower position 55
go down = stop working temporarily 55
go down with sth 13
go down a bomb/storm 21
go down that road 14
go down well 21
go downhill 13
go easy on sth 21
go for it! 24
go for sth = be sold for sth 47
go for sth = choose sth 47
go for sth = try to get sth 47
go it alone 17
go like a dream 58
go off (without a hitch) 23, 29
go off the deep end 9
go off the rails 14, 35
go on 4
go on and on (about sth) 23
go on the offensive 28
go OTT 20
go over the top 20
go out of your way to do sth 6
go over your head 16
go (as) red as a beetroot 40
go round 18
(go through) a bad/sticky patch 7
go to great/any lengths (to do sth) 6, 27
go to pieces 32
go to sb's head 32
go to the wall 18
go too far 27, 35
go/be under cover 28
go with sth 47
go-ahead 29
going cheap 12
going rate (for sth) 19
golden opportunity 56
grab/have a bite to eat 15
green belt 56
green fingers 56
grind to a standstill/halt 33
gut feeling/reaction/instinct 47

hand sth out 10
hang (on) in there 1
hang in the balance 18, 31
hang over sb 45
happy medium 56
hatchet job (on sb/sth) 56
have a bee in your bonnet 43
have a chip on your shoulder 2, 45
have a field day 30
have a finger in every pie 15
have/keep a foot in both camps 31

have a go at sb 9
have a good laugh (about sth) 42
have a lot/something/little/nothing to show for sth 16
have a mind of your own 47
have a quick temper 5
have a whale of a time 24
have egg on your face 15
have things/it (all) your own way 6
have mixed feelings about sth/sb 27
have money/time, etc. to play with 11
have more money than sense 12
have nothing to lose 24
have sb eating out of your hand 15
have sb on 42
have sb's (best) interests at heart 6
have sth on your conscience 40
have sth up your sleeve 2, 41
have sth/sb in mind 22
have the honour of doing sth 51
have the last/final word (on sth) 35
have your doubts about sth 21
have your head screwed on 2
have your work cut out 45
have/lack the courage of your convictions 47
having said that 1
head for sth 33
head and shoulders above sb 39
head start 56
head to head 59
hedge your bets 48
hem sb in 29
hit and miss 59
hit back 25
hit the ground running 1
hold off 21
hold on/onto sth 11
hold sb back 7, 16
hold sb/sth up 28
hold sth against sb 3
hold sth together 6
hold sway 51
hold the floor 37
hold your cards close to your chest 2, 34
hold your own (against sb) 25
hopping mad 5
(all) hot and bothered 22
hot potato 56
hot up 41
hours/days/weeks on end 39
a household name 27
hush sth up 40

I could eat a horse 15
I couldn't believe my ears 39
I dread to think 42
I thought as much 1
I wasn't born yesterday 40
I wouldn't be seen dead 24
I wouldn't put it past sb (to do sth) 43
I wouldn't say no 49
I'd (far) sooner do sth 7
I'd give anything to do / for sth 7
I'll give you that 38
if all else fails 38, 44
if it weren't/wasn't for sb/sth 27
if my memory serves me correctly/well/right 1
impact on sb/sth 53
impinge on/upon sth/sb 53
in a good/bad light 46
in a rut 57
in a tight corner/spot 2
in accordance with sth 52
in all probability 57
in arrears 12
(in) broad daylight 28
in conjunction with 52
in contention (for sth) 25
in dribs and drabs 37
in glowing terms 23
in good faith 52
in good/excellent/bad nick 57
in large part/measure 51
in name only 38
in no uncertain terms 38
in plain English 57
in possession of sth 28
in question 52
in retrospect 19
in stitches 42
in the balance 41
in the clear 28
in the doghouse 57
in the event 29
in the event of sth 44, 54
in the final analysis 30
in the grip of sth 33
in the heat of the moment 7
in the know 26
(in) the lap of luxury 12
in the nick of time 57
in the public eye 32
in the same boat 1
in the wake of sth 28
in top gear 14
in your heart (of hearts) 57
in/by leaps and bounds 16, 59
in/within a short space of time 19
intake 4
into the bargain 39
it does / would do no harm to do sth 44
it is not for want/lack of trying 16

it is touch-and-go (whether) 13
it makes no odds 34
it serves sb right (for doing sth) 1
it stands to reason (that) 44
it wouldn't hurt to do sth 44
it's/that's all very well (for sb) (to do sth) 38
(it's/that's) just as well = it's lucky sth happened 50
it's no big deal 20
it's not every day 23
it's the (very) least I can do 38
it's the same old story 12

join/combine forces (with sb) 29
jump down sb's throat 43
jump in 36
jump to conclusions 46
jump/climb on the/any bandwagon 30
just (good) friends 24
just like that 39

keel over 13
keep a tight rein on sth/sb 2
keep an eye on sth/sb 21
keep in trim 24
keep in with sb 17
keep sb from doing sth 44
keep sb in the dark 34
keep sb in the picture 34
keep sb posted (about/on sth) 34
keep sth from sb 40
keep sth to yourself 29, 34
keep sth/sb in check 9
keep up with the Joneses 1
keep your cards close to your chest 2, 34
keep your distance 54
keep your ear to the ground 17
keep your feet on the ground 17
keep your head 44
keep your options open 17
keep your wits about you 44
keep/stay one step/jump ahead of sb 19
kick off 21
knock sb down 32
knock sb out (of sth) 4
knock sth down = destroy 55
knock sth down = reduce the price 55
knockout 4
know your stuff 26

lame duck 56
land on your feet 1
land sb/yourself in sth 11
last but not least 38
late in the day 38
laugh your head off 42
lavish sth on sb 8
lay sth down 37
lay down your life (for sb/sth) 51
lay waste to sth 51
lay/get your hands on sth 11
lead sb astray 28
leak out 27, 32
leap to conclusions 46
learn the ropes 2
leave it at that 49
leave sb out 8
leave sth behind 21
leave sth hanging 37
leftover 4
leftovers 4, 15
a leopard cannot change its spots 60
let alone 43
let on (to sb about sth) 34, 40
let's be fair 43
let sb down 7
let sb in on sth 34
let sb off (with sth) 3
let sb off the hook 25
let sth down 10
let your heart rule your head 2
lie in wait (for sb) 28
life after death 35
life goes on 46
life's too short 46
like crazy 20
like mad 20
like/love the sound of your own voice 5
(like) water off a duck's back 49
line sb/sth up 26
little by little 59
live and breathe sth 46
live beyond your means 12
live from hand to mouth 12
live in each other's pockets 7
live life in the fast lane 12
live up to sth 46
a live wire 5
live with sth 40
locked in battle/dispute, etc. 31
a long shot 48
a long way to go 25
look a million dollars 24
look back (on sth) 41
look like a bomb has hit it 20
look on 4
look sb in the eye 22
look set to run and run 30
look who's here! 24
loosen sb up 36
loosen up 36
lose face 40
lose sight of sth 36, 47

lose the plot 25
lose your head 2
lose your life 33
loss of life 33
lost cause 56
love the sound of your own voice 5
luck is on your side 46
lucky you 50

mad keen on sb/sth 5
make a big deal/thing (out) of sth 20
make a move 49
make a name for yourself 17
make a point of doing sth 8
make an impression (on sb) 22
make do (with sth) 21
make for sth 33
make of sth/sb 37
make off with sth 28
make or break sb/sth 32
make-or-break ADJ 32
make sb sit up (and take notice) 36
make sb's day 23
make sense (to do sth) 44
make sth up 48
make your mouth water 15
make your way (to somewhere) 29
make-up 48
a man/woman of his/her word 5
management buyout 18
many hands make light work 60
mark sb down 16
a matter of minutes/days etc. 12
meet sb halfway 7, 31
a meeting of minds 37
mess sb around/about 7
miles from anywhere 14
miss out (on sth) 26, 44
miss the boat 19
miss the point 35
money is no object 12
mop sth up = clear up a spilt liquid 10
mop sth up = complete sth by dealing with details 10
more than likely/happy/ready, etc. 1
mouthwatering 15
move up a gear 14
mud sticks 27
mull sth over 34
my heart was in my mouth 37
my heart sank 1

a nasty piece of work 5
a necessary evil 35
neck and neck 30, 41
a nervous wreck 36
next to nothing 16
night after night 16
nip sth in the bud 28
no disrespect (to sb) 43
no fear 50
no laughing matter 42
no room to swing a cat 20
no time like the present 60
no way 50
no wonder 39
nobody's/no fool 5
nod off 36
none/not too pleased 49
not at all 50
not be able to take your eyes off sb 22
not be your idea of fun 49
not bear thinking about 7
(not) by any stretch of the imagination 44
not come cheap 12
not do a stroke of work 1, 39
not give/budge/move an inch 30
not half 39
not have the heart to do sth 2
not hear of sth 23
not in the least 50
not just any 39
not lift a finger (to do sth) 6
not necessarily 48
not out of the woods 1
not ring true 27
not see eye to eye with sb 26
not suffer fools gladly 5
not take kindly to sth/sb 52
not the end of the world 45
not want to know 49
nothing but 23
nothing could be further from the truth 36
nothing to get excited about 49
nothing to it 50
nothing to write home about 49
nothing ventured, nothing gained 60
now what? 50

o.n.o. (or nearest offer) 54
occur to sb 34
odds and ends 59
of no fixed abode 52
of the essence 44
of your life 36
of your own free will 52
off colour 13
off the cuff 26
off the peg 23
off the record 27
off the road 57
off the shelf 23

off the top of your head 26
off the wall 26
off your hands 57
off your head 57
off your own bat 11
off-putting 4
on a need-to-know basis 34
on a par with sb 25
on an even keel 9
on edge 57
on hand 57
on its last legs 57
on production of sth 54
on tenterhooks 57
on the bench 25
on the blink 57
on the breadline 11
on the grapevine 17
on the mend 13
on the record 27
on the right/wrong track 2
on the road 57
on the ropes 2
on the scrapheap 57
on the surface 5
on the threshold of sth 51
on the up 28
on the verge of (doing) sth 18
on those/the same lines 20
on top of sb/sth 8
on top of the world 9
one good turn deserves another 60
ongoing 4
onlooker 4
open the floodgates (to sth) 31
open up (to sb) 34
open your eyes (to sth) 26
out of bounds (to/for sb) 54
out of hand 57
out of step (with sb) 31
out of the blue 57
out of the frying pan (and) into the fire 15
out of the ordinary 57
out of thin air 30
out of your mind 57
outbreak 4
outspoken 4
over your head 57
overstep the mark 27

a pack of lies 40
pan out 46
pare sth down 36
part of the furniture 17
pass by sb/sth 4
pass off 29
pass out 13
pass sth on (to sb) 17
passer-by 4
a pat on the back 26
pave the way (for sb/sth) 29
pay (no) heed to sb/sth 51
pay off 19, 25
pay out 11
pay sth off 11
pay the price for (doing) sth 41
pay tribute to sb 51
pay your (own) way 11
pay your respects (to sb) 51
PC 35
people (who live) in glass houses shouldn't throw stones 60
phase sth in/out 28
pick at sth 15
pick on sb 6
pick sb up 22
pick sth up 13
pick up on sth 34
pile up 7
pin (all) your hopes on sth/sb 17
pitch in (with sb/sth) 20
play (it) safe 41, 48
play a part in sth 35
(play) a practical joke (on sb) 42
play devil's advocate 35
play it by ear 37
play it cool 5
play sb off against sb 19
play/hold/keep your cards close to your chest 2, 34
please find enclosed 53
please yourself (used to tell sb you are annoyed) 50
please yourself = do whatever you like 7
plough sth back (in/into sth) 19
pluck sth out of the air 30
poles apart 31
polish sth off 15
political correctness 35
politically correct (PC) 35
pop the question 23
pour your heart out (to sb) 9
a practical joke 42
press ahead (with sth) 29, 31
press charges (against sb) 28
press on (with sth) 31
pretty much/well 11
pride yourself on sth / on doing sth 53
prim and proper 59
prop sth up = support sth in difficulty 10, 15
prop sth up = support sth physically 10
propose a toast 23
pull out (of sth) 18, 21

pull out all the stops 39
pull over 14
pull sb's leg 42
pull sth off 20, 41
pull the wool over sb's eyes 40
pull the other one 40
pull through 13
pull your socks up 16
pull yourself together 45
pull/tear sb/sth to pieces/shreds 43
pull-out 18
push ahead 31
push sb around 6
push your luck 49
put a brave face on sth 1
put all your eggs in one basket 17
put down (a deposit) 12
put down = (of a plane) land 3
put lives at risk 33
put money on sth 48
put pressure on sb 27
put sb down for sth 3
put sth down to sth 3
put sb in the picture 34
put sb off (sth) = make sb dislike sth 4, 11
put sb off = cancel an arrangement 11
put sb off = disturb/distract sb 11
put sb on a pedestal 8
put sb up to sth 3
put sth aside 12
put sth down = kill an old or sick animal 3
put sth down = write sth 3
put sth on = provide or produce 21
put sth up = build sth 21
put sth/sb on the map 14
put the word out (about sth) 29
put up with sb/sth 47
put years on sb 24
put your (own) house in order 30
put your foot down 6
put your foot in it 1
put your mind at rest/ease 36
put yourself/sb down 3, 46

quick/slow off the mark 30
quite the opposite/reverse 49

rained off 25
raise an eyebrow at sth 20
ramble on 37
rather you/him, etc. than me 50
(reach) the end of the line/road 14, 32
read between the lines 34
read sb like a book 58
ready when you are 50
a recipe for disaster 45
red carpet (treatment) 56
red tape 56
reserve the right to do sth 54
resign yourself to sth 53
rest assured that 1
rest on your laurels 19
result in sth 8
(right) from the word go 37, 57
(right) from/at the outset 57
rightly or wrongly 47
rip sb off 43
rip through sth 33
a rip-off 43
rise to the occasion 32
risk life and limb 48
risk your neck 48
a roaring success 19, 56
roll sth up 10
roll up 21
roll your sleeves up 10
root for sb 36
rub sb up the wrong way 9
run and run 30
run low (on sth) 33
run out of steam 14
run over 37
run sth by sb 36
run the risk of sth 48
run through sth 46
run through your mind 46
a running battle 31
rush around/round 22
rush into sth 37, 47

sail through sth 45
save face 40
sb's bark is worse than their bite 1
sb's face doesn't fit 17
sb's pride and joy 59
scare sb to death 40
scare the life/living daylights out of sb 40
scared to death 40
scrape through sth 16
scream/shout/laugh your head off 9, 42
screw sth up = make a mess of sth 10
screw sth up = squeeze sth into a ball 10
scrimp and save 59
seal of approval 56
second to none 26
see through sb/sth 40
seek out sth/sb 48
sell up 19
set foot in/on/inside somewhere 12
set in 36
set sb apart (from sb) 6

set sb back 32
set sth up = place sth somewhere 21
set sth up = make equipment ready to use 36
set the pace 41
set the place alight 21
set the seal on sth 51
setback 32
settle up (with sb) 15
shed/cast/throw light on sth 48
shore sth up 10, 18
short and sweet 59
a shot in the arm 56
a shoulder to cry on 6
shout your head off 9, 42
show sb around 3
show signs of sth 16
shut sb up 23
shut sth down 29
shutdown 29
sick to death of sth/sb 43
sick to the back teeth of sth/sb 43
side with sb 9, 31
sing sb's praises 23
sit in V 29
sit-in N 29
sit through sth 36
sit tight 45
situations vacant 54
slim down 18
slip up V 41, 46
slip-up N 41, 46
snap out of it 22
so far so good 50
so what? 50
soak sth up = absorb sth into the senses 55
soak sth up = absorb a liquid 55
soaked to the skin 21
a soft touch 5
a sore point 1
sort out / separate the sheep from the goats 1
sort sth out = arrange sth 45
sort sth out = deal successfully with sth 45
sort sth out = tidy sth 45
spare sb's feelings 40
(speak) from the heart 23
speak out (against sth) 4, 27
spill over = (of emotions) come out 55
spill over = overflow 55
spill over = spread and affect sth else 55
the spirit is willing (but the flesh is weak) 60
splash out (on sth) 12
split sth up 48
spread like wildfire 58
spread sth out 10
spread the word 29
squeezed out 8
squeeze sth out of sb 43
stamp sth out 27
stand a chance of (doing) sth 44
stand aside 18
stand back = move away from sth 55
stand back = think about a situation 55
stand by 4
stand firm 31
stand out against sth 3
stand up for sth/sb 29
starve sb/sth of sth 8
step by step 59
step in 47
step sth up 28
stick sth out = continue to do sth to the end 10
stick sth out = extend sth further than sth else 10
stick to your guns 31
stick up for sb/yourself 6
stick your neck out 48
stir sth up = cause problems 27
stir sth up = make people feel strong emotions 9
stop at nothing 6
stop the rot 30
store sth up 7
a storm in a teacup 45, 56
streets ahead of sb 39
(straight) from the horse's mouth 57
stress sb out 20
stressed out 20
strictly speaking 38
strike while the iron is hot 2, 60
stumble on/across sth 21
subject sb to sth 53
subscribe to sth 53
sum up 4, 52
summing-up 4, 52
sure of yourself 6
sweep sb along 44
sweep sth away 33
sweep sth under the carpet 27, 40
swell up 13

take a back seat 1
take a chance (on sth) 48
take a heavy toll (on sb/sth) 32
take a turn for the worse/better 13
take against sb/sth 3
take (a) hold 33
take issue with sth/sb (over/about sth) 51
take it for granted (that ...) 6
take it/sth personally 1
take its toll (on sb/sth) 32
take note (of sth) 44
take over (from sb) 20

take sb for granted 6, 8
take sb under your wing 17
take sides 9
take some beating 41
take some doing 17, 49
take sth in = understand sth 34
take sth in = absorb sth into the body 4
take sth in = accept sth as real and true 9
take sth/things in your stride 17
take sth out on sb 43
take sth over 18
take sth personally 43
take sth to heart 2
take sth up 10
take the bull by the horns 45
take the easy way out 21
take the liberty of doing sth 52
take the plunge 24
take the wind out of sb's sails 2
take things/it easy 13
take to sth like a duck to water 46
take up sth 20
take years off sb 24
takeover 18
(talk) at cross purposes 36
talk sb into / out of (doing) sth 3
tear sb/sth to pieces/shreds 43
talk sth up 30
tear sth up 3
tell sb off 16
thank goodness 38
thank your lucky stars 6
thanks to sb/sth 18
that figures 50
that's a load of rubbish/nonsense 50
that's an idea 50
that's life 46
that's not my problem 50
that's your/his/her, etc. problem 50
the best/greatest thing since sliced bread 15
the end of the line/road 14, 32
the end justifies the means 35
the final/last straw 1, 47
the grass is always greener (on the other side of the fence) 60
the high/low point of sth 21
the icing on the cake 23
the kiss of death 42
the lap of luxury 12
the last I heard 12
the lesser of two evils 47
the letter of the law 52
the lights are on but no one's / nobody's home 42
the next thing I knew 1
the salt of the earth 5
the scum of the earth 5
the sky's the limit 23
the small print 52
the sooner the better 27
the spirit of the law 52
the straw that broke the camel's back 1
the tricks of the trade 17
the way I see it 1
there's no excuse for sth 48
there's little/no love lost between them 8
there's no harm in doing sth 44
there's no smoke without fire 27
there's no stopping you/him, etc. 46
(there's) no time like the present 60
(there's) nothing to it 50
there's nothing worse/better/more exciting, etc. than 24
there's safety in numbers 24
therein lies sth 51
thick and fast 33
thing of the past 56
think nothing of sth / doing sth 12
think sth out 26
think sth through 45
thrills and spills 56
thrive on sth 48
through and through 59
throw in the towel 1
throw light on sth 48
throw sth away 4
throw sth together 37
throw up 13
throw your weight around/about 17
throw yourself into sth 46
throwaway 4
tick over (of a business) 14
tick over (of a car) 14
tie the knot 7
tighten sth up = make rules stricter 28, 55
tighten sth up = make sth tighter 55
time/money/room, etc. to spare 36
tip down 21
tip-off 28
tip sb off 28
tip the balance 41
tire sb out 21
to all intents and purposes 38
to be fair 43
to be on the safe side 13
to begin with 37
to put it mildly 43
to say the least 12
to start/begin with 37

to the detriment of sb/sth 37
to whom it may concern 54
tongue in cheek 42
too many cooks spoil the broth 60
top-heavy 19
toss up 47
touch wood 13
tread carefully 32
tried and tested 20
try sth out 20
turn a blind eye (to sth) 47
turn on sb 8
turn out 29
turn over a new leaf 16
turn sb away 33
turn sth round/around = complete a task in a particular time 55
turn sth round/around = reverse sth 55
turn to sb/sth 6, 47
turnout 29
twist sb round your little finger 6
two weeks / three years / four times, etc. running 16
two's company (three's a crowd) 60

under an/no obligation to do sth 24
under false pretences 52
under offer 54
under one roof / the same roof 57
under pressure 27
under sb's thumb 5
under separate cover 53
under the influence 52
under the weather 13
under/on oath 52
up in arms about/over sth 39
up to your eyes in sth 57
use your head 2
a U-turn 56

very much so 50
a volte-face 56
vote with your feet 43

wait for the dust to settle 2
a wake-up call 30
walk all over sb 6
walk away 7
a war of words 30
watch out for sth 3
watch sb like a hawk 58
water off a duck's back 49
water sth down 4
watered-down 4
wear and tear 59
wear off 13
wear sb out 4, 21
wear sth out 4
weigh sth up 47
well and truly 39
what is it now? 50
what of it? 50
what planet is he/she on? 42
when in Rome (do as the Romans do) 60
when it comes to (doing) sth 40
a white elephant 56
a white lie 56
win sb over/round (to sth) 6, 34
win sb/sth back 18
wind sb up = make sb angry 9, 22
wind sth up = bring sth to an end 21
wing it 36
wipe sb/sth out 33
with (all due) respect (to sb) 51
with flying colours 16
with open arms 37
with your eyes open 11
within striking distance 25
within your rights 57
without (a) doubt 39
work out (+ *wh*) 3
work yourself up (about sth) 44
work/go like a dream 58
worn out (of people) 4, 21
worn out (of things) 4
worse luck 38
wound up 22
wrap sth up = complete an enquiry, meeting, etc. 55
wrap sth up = wrap sth in paper 55
wreak havoc (on sth) 33
write sth off (as sth) 46

you can't make an omelette without breaking eggs 60
you can't teach an old dog new tricks 35, 60
you could do worse (than) 44
you get what you deserve 35
you'll/he'll, etc. be lucky 38, 50
your best bet 44
your own flesh and blood 8
your usual/normal self 13

zip sth up 10

Key words

If you cannot remember the first word of an idiom, look here for other key words that are used in the idiom. The numbers are unit numbers

abode 52
accordance 52
act 28
advocate 35
afford 31
ahead 19
air 7, 30
alight 21
all 38, 41, 43
all out 25
alone 17, 43
analysis 30
any 39
anything 7
anywhere 14
apart 31
approval 56
arm 7, 12, 39, 56
arms 37, 39
arrears 12
assured 1
astray 28
away 49

back ADJ 1
back N 24, 26, 34, 42
back seat 1
back teeth 43
bad light 46
bad patch 7
bag 22, 49
balance 18, 31, 41
bandwagon 30
bank 23
bargain 39
bark 1
basket 17
bat 11
battle 31
beans 15
bear 7, 41
beating 41
bed 1
bee 43
beetroot 40
begin 37
behind 21
belief 38
believe 39
belt 56
bench 25
benefit 30
best 24
best bet 44
best shot 41
best thing 15
bet 44
bets 48
better 13, 23, 24, 27
better off 11
beyond 12, 42, 43
big deal 20
bill 56
bird 15, 60
bit much 49
bite 1, 15
blind 47
blink 57
blood 8, 58
blue 57
bluff 48
boat 1, 19, 44
bobs 59
bomb 20, 21
bones 24
bonnet 43
book 57, 58
boot 17
boots 5
born 40
bothered 22
bounds 16, 54, 59
brave face 1
bread 15
breadline 11
break 32
breaking 60
breathe 46
bred 59
brick wall 58
bricks 39
bright 58
broad daylight 28
broke 1
broth 60
brunt 27
brush 58
bud 28
budge 30
bull 45, 58
bullet 2, 31
bush 35
but 23
butter 59
button 58

cake 23
call 30, 41, 51
camel's back 1
camps 31
cards 2, 22, 34
care 38
carefully 32
carpet 27, 40, 56
cat 8, 20
caught up 12, 33
cause 56
caution 11, 48
chance 44, 48, 49, 56
change 60
charges 28
cheap 12
check 9
cheek 42
cheerful 59
chest 2, 34
chew 15
chickens 60
china shop 58
chip 2, 45
cinder 15
clear 28, 42
closed doors 57
colour 13
colours 16
combine 29
comes 40
common 38
company 60
concern 54
conclusions 46
conjunction 52
conscience 40
considered 59
contention 25
convenience 54
convictions 47
cooks 60
cool 5, 58
corner 2

corners 19
correct 35
correctness 35
cost 35
count 60
courage 47
course 16
cover 28, 53
crazy 20
crisp 15
cross purposes 36
crossed 2
crossroads 57
crow 14
crowd 60
cry 6
cucumber 58
cuff 26
cut 33

daft 58
dare 50
dark 34
date 22
day 23, 30, 38, 45
daylight 28
daylights 40
days 12, 39
dead 24, 43
deal 20
death 13, 35, 40, 42, 43
debt 51
deep end 9
deep water 19
deposit 12
deserve 35
detriment 37
devil 60
devil's advocate 35
disaster 45
discretion 54
dispute 31
disrespect 43
distance 25, 54
divide 26
do 21
dog 8, 35, 60
doghouse 57
doing 17, 49
doldrums 18
dollars 24
door 17
doors 57
doubt 27, 30, 39
doubts 21
down 48
downhill 13
drabs 37
dread 42
dream 58
dreams 32
dribs 37
driving seat 2
duck 46, 56
duck's back 49
dumps 9
dust 2
duty 51
dying 8

each other 7
ear 17, 37
ears 39
earth 5
ease 36
easy 13, 21, 58
easy way 21
eat 15
eating 15
economy 19
edge 57
egg 15
eggs 17, 60
elbow 17
element 46
elephant 56
eleventh 18
emotions 9
enclosed 53
end 9, 14, 29, 32, 34, 35, 39, 45, 51, 57
ends 59
engaged 53
English 57
equal 38
essence 44
even keel 9
event 29, 44, 54
every 23
evil 35
evils 47
excited 49
excuse 48
external 53
eye 21, 26, 32, 47, 56, 60
eyebrow 20
eyes 9, 11, 22, 26, 40, 57

face 1, 15, 17, 40
fails 38, 44
fair 43
faith 52
false 52
far 22, 27, 35, 39, 50
fast 33
fast lane 12
fear 50
feather 60
feeling 47
feelings 9, 27, 40
feet 1, 17, 43
fence 60
fiddle 58
field day 30
figures 50
final analysis 30
final straw 1, 47
final word 35
fine 14
finger 6, 15
fingers 56
fingertips 57
fire 15, 27, 30, 39
firing line 31
firm 31
fish 5
fit V 17
fit ADJ 58
flash 58
flat 42
flesh 8, 60
flock 60
floodgates 31
floor 37
flying colours 16
food 45
fool(s) 5
foot 6, 12, 17, 31
forces 29
foreseeable 33
free will 52
friends 24
fruit 11
frying pan 15
full 15
fun 49
furniture 17
further 36
future 33

gained 60
game 40
gap 26
gear 14
give 7, 30, 38
glad 24

gladly 5
glass houses 60
gloom 59
glove 58
glowing terms 23
glued 49
go N 9
go V 13, 37, 57
goats 1
good 50, 58
good friends 24
good light 46
good turn 60
goodness 38
granted 6, 8
grapevine 17
grass 60
greatest thing 15
green light 14
greener 60
grip 33
grips 35
ground 1, 17, 25, 41
gulf 26
gunpoint 28
guns 31

habit
half 39
halfway 7, 31
halt 33
hand 6, 12, 15, 57, 60
hands 11, 51, 57, 60
handy 21
hanging 37
hard 1, 41, 49, 58
harm 44
hasty 2
hatter 5
havoc 33
hawk 58
haystack 58
head 2, 9, 16, 26, 32, 42, 44, 46, 57, 58
health 56
heap 57
hear 23
heard 12
hearing 49
heart 1, 2, 6, 9, 23, 37, 57
heat 7
heavy toll 32
heed 51
heels 45
hell 39
helping hand 6
here 24
high point 21
hit 20
hitch 23, 29
hitched 7
hold 33
home 37, 42, 49
honour 51
hook 25
hop 18
hopes 17, 32
horns 45
horse 15, 41
horse's mouth 57
hot 2, 60
hot water 57
hour 18
house 30, 39
hurt 44

icing 23
idea 49, 50
ideas 26
ill 31
imagination 44
impression 22
in 17
in order 30
inch 30
influence 52
instinct 47
intents 38
interest 56
interests 6
into 48
iron 2, 60
issue 51

job 17, 56
joke 42
Joneses 1
joy 59
jump 19
just 39, 50
justifies 35

keel 9
keen 5
kindly 52
kiss 42
knew 1
knot 7
know N 26
know V 49
knowledge 38

lack 16
lane 12
lap 12
large 51
last N 12
last ADJ 38
last legs 57
last straw 1, 47
last word 35
late 38
laugh 42
laughing 42
laurels 19
law 52
leaf 16
leaps 16, 59
least 12, 38, 50
left over 4, 15
leg 12, 42
legs 57
lengths 6, 27
lesser 47
letter 52
liberty 52
lie N 56
lies N 40
lie V 51
life 12, 20, 29, 33, 36, 40, 46, 48, 51
lifetime 56
lift 6
light 14, 27, 40, 46, 48
light work 60
lights 42
like 22
limb 48
limit 23
line 14, 31, 32, 47
lines 20, 34
little finger 6
living daylights 40
load 50
loggerheads 31
look 24
lookout 28
loose 57
lorry 42
lose 24
losing battle 31
losses 19
lost 8, 39
lots 47
love 4, 8
low 33
low point 21

luck 38, 49
lucky 38, 50
lucky stars 6
luxury 12
mad 5, 20
made 7
map 14
mark 27, 30
market 19, 56
matter 16, 42
means 12, 35
measure 51
medium 56
meet 22
melt 15
memory 1
mend 13
message 29
middleman 19
mildly 43
miles 49
milk 15
million dollars 24
mind 20, 22, 26, 36, 45, 46, 47, 57
minds 37
minutes 12
miserable 8
miss 47, 59
mixed feelings 27
moment 7
money 11, 12, 48
more exciting 24
mouth 12, 15, 37
move V 30
move N 49
much 50
mud 42
murder N 8, 14
nails 58
name 17, 27, 28, 38
nature 42
necessarily 48
neck 48
need 31
needle 58
need-to-know 34
nerves 22
new 58
new leaf 16
new tricks 35, 60
next thing 1
nick 57
no 49
no one 42
nobody 42
none 26
nonsense 50
normal self 13
note 44
nothing 6, 12, 16, 24, 50, 56
now 50
numbers 24
oath 52
object 12
obligation 24
occasion 32
ocean 56
odds 34
off 45
offensive 25
offer 54
old dog 35, 60
old times 57
omelette 60
on 42, 46
o.n.o. 54
open ADJ 11
open N 27
open arms 37
opportunity 56
opposite 49
options 17
ordinary 57
other one 40
OTT 20
outset 57
own 8, 25, 47
pace 41
par 25
parcel 59
part 35, 51, 59
past 43, 56
patch 7
PC 35
peace 52
pedestal 8
peg 23
personally 1, 43
picture 34
pie 15, 58
piece 5
pieces 32, 43, 59
pinch 38
place 19
plague 39
plain 57
planet 42
planks 5
play 11
please 7
pleased 49
plot 25
plunge 24
pockets 7
point 1, 8, 21, 35
popular belief 38
possession 28
posted 34
potato 15, 56
practical joke 42
praises 23
present 60
pressure 27
pretences 52
price 32, 35, 41
pride 59
print 52
probability 57
problem 50
production 54
proper 59
proportion 27
public eye 32
purposes 36, 38
push 17, 38
pushed 1, 49
pushing 24
put 43
quantity 5
question 23, 52
quick 58
quick temper 5
rag 58
rails 14, 35
rake 58
ranks 8, 31
rate 19
reaction 47
reason 9, 44
reasons 42
record 27
red 40, 58
rein 2
resort 38, 44
respect 51
respects 51
rest 36
retreat 2
retrospect 19
reverse 49
right ADJ 1, 19
right N 54

right arm 7, 39
right track 2
rights 57
ring 27
rise 51
risk 33, 48
road 14, 32, 57
robbery 43
Romans 60
Rome 60
roof 57
room 20
ropes 2
rot 30
routine 16
rubbish 50
rule 59
run 30
running 1, 16, 25
rut 57

saddle 2
safe 13, 41, 48
safe side 13
safety 24
said 1
sails 2
sake 35, 57
sale 54
salt 5
same 44
same boat 1
same lines 20
sand 46
sank 1
save 20, 59
say no 49
scrapheap 57
screwed on 2
scum 5
seal 51
seat 1, 2
see 1
seeing 49
self 13
sense 12, 44
separate cover 53
serves 1
services 53
set 43
settle 2
shadow 32
shape 24
shapes 1
shave 41
sheep 1, 56
sheet 58
shelf 23
shell 22
shop 58
short 46
short space 19
shot 41, 48
shoulder 2, 45
shoulders 20, 39
show 16
shreds 43
side 1, 9, 13, 46
sides 9
sight 36, 47
signs 16
sin 8
sit up 36
sizes 1
skin 21, 24
sky 23
sleep 42
sleeve 2
sleeves 10
sliced bread 15
small print 52
smoke 27
snail 14
snowed in 33
socks 16
sooner 7, 27
sorry 13
sorts 13
sound 5
space 19
spare 36
spark 5
speaking 38
spills 56
spilt milk 15
spirit 52
spoil 60
spot 2
spots 60
square 59
stands 44
standstill 33
stars 6
start 37, 56
state 45
steam 14
step 19, 31
stick N 34
sticks V 27
sticky patch 7
stone 58
stones 60
stopping 46
storm 21
story 12
straw 1, 47
stretch 44
stride 17
striking distance 25
stroke 1, 39
strong 19
struck 37
stuff 26
success 19, 56
suffer 5
surface 5
suspicion 56
sway 51
sweet 59
swing 20

tail 16
take 52
taken in 43
tape 56
teach 35, 60
teacup 45, 56
tear V 59
tears N 23
teeth 43
tell 22
temper 5
tenterhooks 57
terms 23, 33, 38
terrible 45
tested 20
tether 9
that 39, 49
there 6
thick 5
thin 58
thin air 30
thing 1, 15, 20, 41, 49
things 38, 49, 59
think 42
thinking 7
thought N 26
thought V 1
three 60
threshold 51
throat 43
thumb 5
tight 45
tight corner 2

tight rein 2
tight spot 2
time 11, 19, 24, 57, 60
times 44, 57
toast 23
toe 57
toll 32
ton 39
tooth 60
top 8, 9, 20, 26, 41
top gear 14
toss 43
toss-up 47
touch 5, 13, 24
tough 5
towel 1
track 2
trade 17
trap 45
treatment 56
trend 18
tribute 51
tricks 17, 35, 60
trim 24
true 27, 41
truly 39
truth 36
trying 16
turn 13, 60
two evils 47

unawares 33
uncertain terms 38
undoing 52
unknown 5
up 28
use 53
useful 21
usual self 13
utmost 32

vacant 54
ventured 60
verge 18
virtue 52
voice 5

wait 28
wake 28
walks 29
wall 18, 26
want 16, 49
warmed up 13
waste 51
water 15, 19, 46, 49, 57
wavelength 2, 37
way 6, 9, 11, 21, 25, 29, 32, 46, 50
wayside 32
weak 60
weather 13
wedge 7
weeks 39
weight 17, 20
well 21, 38, 50
whale 24
white 58
wildest 32
wildfire 58
will 52
willing 60
wind 2
wing 17
wire 5
wires 2
wits 9, 44
woman 5
wonder 39
wood 13
woods 1
wool 40
word 5, 15, 29, 35
word go 37, 57
words 30, 39, 42
work 1, 5, 39, 45
worked up 44
world 9, 45
worse 1, 13, 24, 25, 44
worse off 11
worst 24
worth 44
wreck 36
write 49
wrong 1, 34
wrong track 2
wrong way 9
wrongly 47

years 24
yesterday 40

Idioms and **Phrasal Verbs**

Extend your Oxford Word Skills – learn all the idioms and phrasal verbs you need to know at Intermediate and Advanced levels.

- See how idioms are used naturally in spoken and written English.
- Learn the phrasal verbs you need to know for the major exams.
- Practise using the idioms and phrasal verbs as you learn them, and revise what you've learned.
- Look online for fascinating information on the history of idioms – with regular updates.
- Part of the Oxford Word Skills series.

HIGHLY COMMENDED
HRH
The Duke
of Edinburgh
ESU English Language
Book Award 2009

Ideal for self-study

For advanced learners

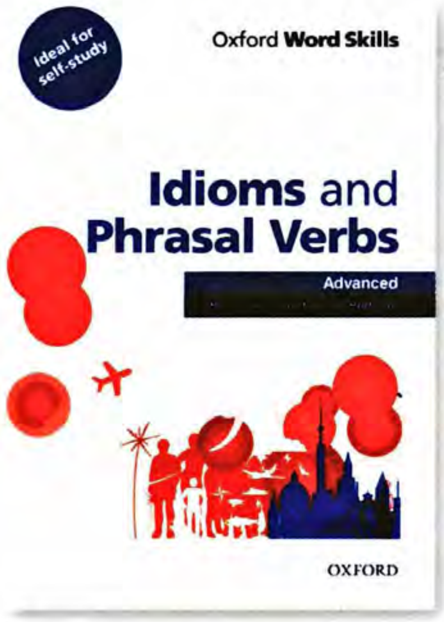
Ideal for self-study
Oxford Word Skills
Idioms and Phrasal Verbs
Advanced
OXFORD

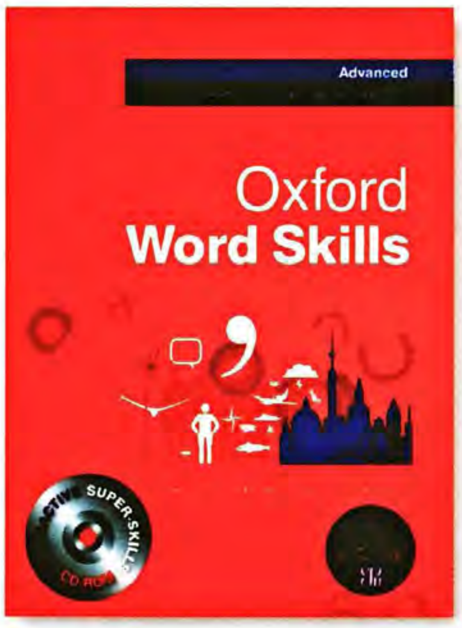
Advanced
Oxford
Word Skills
ACTIVE SUPER-SKILLS CD-ROM

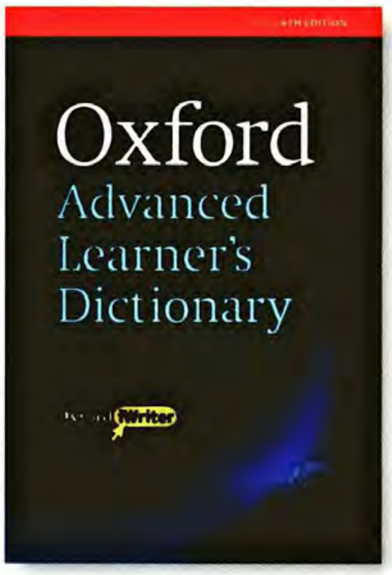
Oxford
Advanced
Learner's
Dictionary
Writer

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

www.oup.com/elt/wordskills

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt

for all your testing needs online go to

oxfordenglishtesting.com

CEFR
C2
C1
B2

ISBN 978-0-19-462013-0

Ideal for self-study

Oxford **Word Skills**

Idioms and Phrasal Verbs

Intermediate

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

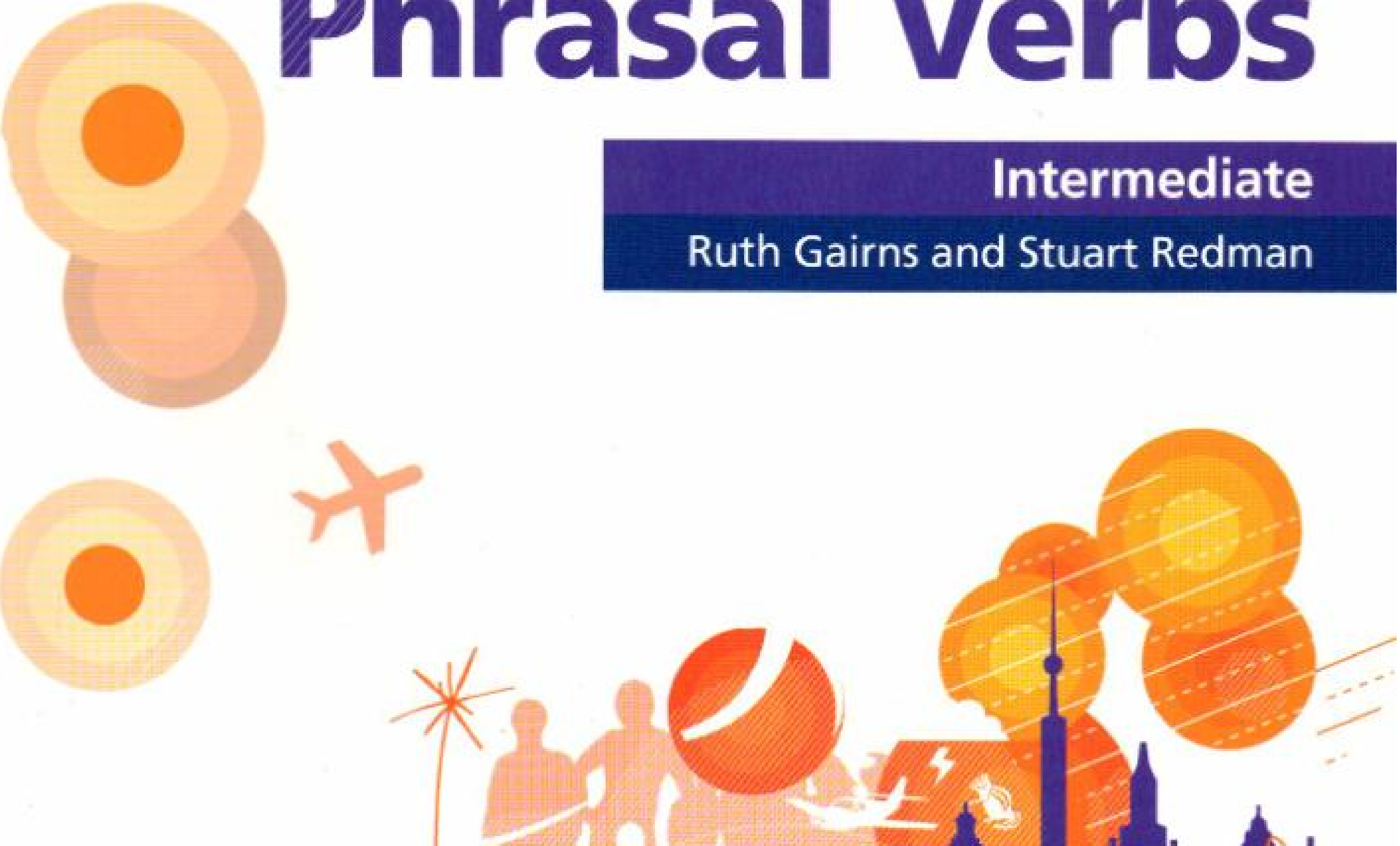

OXFORD

Oxford **Word Skills**

Idioms and Phrasal Verbs

Intermediate

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2011

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2011
2015 2014 2013 2012 2011
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

ISBN: 978 0 19 462012 3

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material: p.12 Extracts from *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*; p.101 Adapted extract from 'A new goal for football stars: to spread love of languages' by Richard Garner, 8 October 2008 from *The Independent*. Reproduced by permission.

Sources: p.124 adapted from www.dearmrsweb.com.

Illustrations by: Chris Davidson pp.57, 76; Colin Elgie p.144; Clive Goddard 17, 45, 47, 52, 110, 118; Sarah Kelly 14, 19, 24, 42, 43, 74, 79, 126, 132; Harry Venning 20, 58, 130.

Cover illustration by: Carol Verbyst.

The authors and publisher would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce the following photographs: Alamy pp.9 (Mark Andersen/RubberBall), 29 (Lisa F. Young), 31 (Photosindia Batch5/PhotosIndia.com LLC), 39 (Ben/David J. Green - Lifestyle), 39 (Emily/DMAc), 41 (Picturenet/Picturenet), 61 (Steve Nagy/Design Pics Inc.), 64 (couple/Gino's Premium Images), 64 (terraced street/Greg Balfour Evans), 65 (Erik Isakson/Tetra Images), 68 (couple/moodboard), 69 (Radius Images), 70 (Yuri Arcurs/INSADCO Photography), 73 (Leosceptic/AKP Photos), 80 (Chloe/81a), 80 (Luke/Chris Rout), 82 (Jo Ann/MatthiolaC), 82 (blond 23/foodfolio), 87 (IE006/Image Source), 89 (Ralph Henning), 95 (Frank and Helena/Cultura RM), 96 (Peter Titmuss), 97 (duck/D. Hurst), 99 (Charles Stirling (Travel)), 102 (Plattform/Johner Images), 125 (Mark Boulton), 134 (Black Forest/Matthias Dietrich), 134 (skiing/Cultura/Philip Lee Harvey), 134 (broken marriage/artpartner-images.com), 134 (dog/lantapix); Construction Photography p.113 (Damian Gillie); Getty Images pp.18 (Kraig Scarbinsky/Digital Vision), 32 (Chris Ryan/OJO Images), 33 (Barry Austin Photography/Riser), 51 (Hill Street Studios/Blend Images), 60 (Digital Vision), 62 (Susan Wides/UpperCut Images), 63 (rubberball), 71 (Stockbyte), 83 (Photodisc/Marshall Gordon/Cole Group), 84 (Thinkstock Images/Comstock Images), 94 (Justin Lightley/Photographer's Choice RF), 97 (woman photo/Digital Vision), 98 (Adam Burto/Robert Harding World Imagery), 100 (Melissa Majchrzak/MLS via Getty Images), 101 (Phil Cole), 112 (Takuya Matsunaga/Aflo), 115 (John Lund/Marc Romanelli/Blend Images); image100 p.30 (woman); iStockphoto.com pp.78 (Mike Cherim), 82 (Kima/Niko Guido), 97 (woman illustration/Janne Ahvo), 105 (Crazy cat/Regina Makhonko), 105 (Erin/Jim Snyder), 105 (Leroy/shino-b), 106 (David Mingay); Photolibrary.com p.66 (Peter Gridley); Royalty-free pp.26 (Chris King), 68 (woman/Gareth Boden), 73 (Moonlover/Photodisc), 73 (Stargirl/Digital Vision), 73 (Discoman/Photodisc), 73 (Amal/Digital Vision), 73 (Indy/Image Source), 97 (man/Photodisc)

Artwork sourced by: Pictureresearch.co.uk

The authors and publishers would like to thank the teachers and students from Argentina, Brazil, Czech Republic, France, Greece, Indonesia, Italy, Norway, Serbia, and Poland who helped with the development of this book.

They would also like to thank Maggie Baigent, Rachel Godfrey, Carol Tabor, Michael Terry, and Scott Thornbury for their valuable comments on early drafts of the text; and Suzanne Williams for the picture research.

For About You answers, they would like to thank Leticia Ansaldi, Eleni Babaliouta, Abd ul-Qadir Dar'ouzy, Karla Dědková, Raquel Montaleão, Carla Montebello, Silvia Santinelli, Melanie Steyn, Eva Trubacova, Mayra Aixa Villar, and Maria Wenger.

Ahashare.com

Contents

Introduction 5
Abbreviations 7

Introduction to idioms and phrasal verbs

1 What are idioms? 8
2 Types of idiom 10
3 Finding idioms in a dictionary 12
4 The grammar of phrasal verbs 14
5 Core meanings 1 16
6 Core meanings 2 18
7 Different meanings of phrasal verbs 20
Review 22

Thinking, learning, and knowledge

8 I can follow classroom language 26
9 I can talk about learning 28
10 I can talk about exams 30
11 I can talk about ability and progress 32
12 I can talk about thought processes 34
13 I can talk about knowledge and skills 35
Review 36

Communicating with people

14 I can talk about getting in touch 39
15 I can describe ways of saying things 40
16 I can talk about phoning 41
17 I can use short spoken phrases 42
18 I can use phrases with *say*, *tell*, and *see* 44
19 I can use common spoken responses 46
20 I can understand and leave messages 48
21 I can say what I think 50
22 I can talk about jokes that go wrong 52
Review 54

People and relationships

23 I can describe actions 58
24 I can talk about my family 60
25 I can talk about different generations 62
26 I can talk about neighbours 64
27 I can describe my feelings 66
28 I can describe romantic relationships 68
29 I can describe annoying habits 70
30 I can talk about astrology 72
Review 74

Everyday topics

31 I can describe the weather 78
32 I can talk about sleep 79
33 I can talk about spending and saving 80
34 I can talk about diets and cooking 82
35 I can understand crime reporting 84
36 I can talk about work experience 86
37 I can describe a small business 88
38 I can talk about shopping 90
Review 91

Out and about

39 I can describe social activities 94
40 I can describe outdoor activities 96
41 I can talk about holidays 98
42 I can talk about team sports 100
43 I can talk about situations on the road 102
Review 104

Concepts

44 I can say what I want or need 107
45 I can discuss plans and arrangements 108
46 I can talk about likes and interests 109
47 I can describe damage and repair 110
48 I can say how things begin and end 112
49 I can talk about time 114
50 I can talk about numbers 116
51 I can talk about problems and solutions 118
52 I can give advice 120
Review 121

Language

53 I can use link phrases 125
54 I can use fixed phrases with two key words 126
55 I can use prepositional phrases 128
56 I can use phrasal verbs as commands 130
57 I can use verb-based idioms 132
58 I can use key verbs: *get* 134
59 I can use key verbs: *take* and *look* 136
60 I can use key verbs: *come* and *go* 138
Review 140

Idioms – some interesting histories 144
Answer key 145
Answer key to review units 166
List of spotlight boxes 175
Word list/Index 176
Key words 187

Introduction

Idioms and Phrasal Verbs

Idioms and Phrasal Verbs forms part of the *Oxford Word Skills* vocabulary series. It is a series of two books for students to learn, practise, and revise everyday English idioms and phrasal verbs.

Intermediate:	intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)
Advanced:	advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)

There are over 1,000 new idioms and phrasal verbs in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each book contains 60 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are one or two pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately, usually on the same page. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of five to nine units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- an answer key for all the exercises
- an answer key for the review units
- a list of all the idioms and phrasal verbs taught, with a unit reference to where each item appears
- a separate list of key words with unit references
- a page featuring the histories behind some of the idioms in the book (👁 look on the website www.oup.com/elt/wordskills for more).

What are idioms and phrasal verbs? Why teach them together?

Idioms are usually defined as groups of words whose overall meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words. So, *over the moon* has nothing to do with the literal meaning of 'the moon'; it means 'extremely happy or excited'. An organization that *changes hands* passes from one owner to another; and if you are *in someone's way*, you are stopping them from moving or doing something. As these examples illustrate, in some idioms the meaning can be almost impossible to guess out of context, while others are more transparent.

Phrasal verbs consist of two and occasionally three words: a base verb and at least one particle (preposition or adverb). Many phrasal verbs are idiomatic; in other words, the meaning of the verb and particle is different from the base verb on its own. For example, the meanings of *give up* and *give in* are quite different from the meaning of *give*. As with idioms, some phrasal verbs are more transparent than others, e.g. *stand up* and the most common sense of *stand* are very similar in meaning, as are *sit down* and *sit*. In other words, phrasal verbs can be seen as a type of idiom, although they are often singled out for specific attention in language-teaching materials.

Putting idioms and phrasal verbs together has a linguistic rationale, but perhaps an even greater pedagogic one. A relatively short passage of text – a practical necessity in most language-teaching materials – does not normally produce nine or ten naturally occurring phrasal verbs, but it can easily yield that number if the target language includes both phrasal verbs and idioms. This makes it easier to present the target language in continuous text rather than disconnected sentences, and gives learners more opportunity to see the expressions being used naturally.

Which idioms and phrasal verbs are included?

When people think of idioms, they tend to come up with imaginative and colourful examples: *kick the bucket, have a bone to pick with someone, full of beans, be barking up the wrong tree*, etc. These vivid expressions can be extremely difficult to understand, so they are often the ones that teachers are called on to explain in the classroom. It is also undeniably true that idioms – and especially the more vivid ones – hold a particular fascination for some learners. However, there are thousands of idioms, less exotic and often more transparent than the ones above, which are of a higher frequency and probably greater value in everyday English to the vast majority of learners.

These are typical examples:
it depends, in the end, have had enough of sth/sb, at the last minute, give my love to sb, first of all, it's no good (doing sth), by the way, get hold of sb, keep in touch, do your best, to a certain extent, get on sb's nerves, here you are, as usual, see how it goes, yes and no, I beg your pardon, make fun of sb, have second thoughts about doing sth, can't wait (to do sth), all over the place, make the most of sth, cover the cost (of sth), all of a sudden, cost a fortune.

In fact, some of these will appear so mundane that they often pass unnoticed as idioms. In some cases the meaning may be quite easy to guess, especially in context, but the same concept is often expressed in a different way in the learner's mother tongue, so these expressions need to be learnt, and are equally deserving of our attention.

At the intermediate / upper-intermediate level, we have concentrated on idioms and phrasal verbs which are likely to be of greatest value to learners in everyday English. To this end, you will find some vivid and colourful examples, but the majority are closer to the list above.

One final note on selection. Dictionaries do not always agree on what constitutes an idiom: *hold the line* is listed as an idiom in one dictionary, but a collocation in another. The same is true for *cross your legs, be careful with money, have an early / a late night*, etc. Our criterion for inclusion in this series is that an item has to be listed as an idiom in at least one of the following ELT dictionaries (and they are almost always in more than one):

Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary

Oxford Wordpower Dictionary

Oxford Idioms Dictionary for learners of English

Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English

Macmillan English Dictionary for Advanced Learners

Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary

Collins COBUILD Advanced Learner's English Dictionary

How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New idioms and phrasal verbs are presented through different types of text, including dialogues, tables, and visuals. The meaning of the new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Important or additional information is included in the 'spotlight' boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the presentation for five to ten minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice versa. This is a simple, quick, and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.

- You will often notice the heading ABOUT YOU or ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY. This indicates a personalized exercise which gives learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these in their notebooks, but they make ideal pair-work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by native and proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world.
- To extend page 144, which gives the histories behind a number of idioms in this book, go to the website **www.oup.com/elt/wordskills** to find a regular feature. You and your students should find this interesting.

How can students study alone?

- Choose the topics that interest you. You don't need to do the units in any particular order.
- Each page will probably take you about 20–25 minutes. Firstly, spend at least ten minutes studying the presentation, which may be a text, a dialogue, a table, etc. Use the glossaries to help you understand the meaning of new items. Practise saying the idioms and phrasal verbs a few times to help you remember them.
- Keep a notebook where you can write down the new idioms and phrasal verbs with the meaning and an example sentence to help you remember them. If you are using a bilingual dictionary, you could also add a translation.
- Do the exercises in pencil; then you can rub them out, and do them again in a few days' time. Check your answers in the answer key on pages 145–65. At the end of many units you will find a section called ABOUT YOU or ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY. This gives you an opportunity to use the vocabulary more freely to write in your notebook about yourself, your country, etc. You will find some possible answers in the answer key, written by native and proficient non-native speakers of English. You may find it interesting to compare your answers with theirs.
- You can usually **test yourself** on the new vocabulary. Look at the idioms and phrasal verbs in the glossaries, and cover the meanings. See if you can remember the meanings. You can do this when you have finished the exercises, or several days later as a way of revising the idioms and phrasal verbs.
- You can use the further practice exercises in the review sections which follow each module. Either do them immediately after a unit, or do them a few days later to help you revise the idioms and phrasal verbs.
- If you haven't got a good dictionary in English, we recommend *The Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*. You may also be interested in two specialist dictionaries: *Oxford Idioms Dictionary for learners of English* and *Oxford Phrasal Verbs Dictionary for learners of English*.
- Go to the website **www.oup.com/elt/wordskills** to find a regular feature on the histories behind a number of idioms in this book.

Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are used:

N	noun
V	verb
ADJ	adjective
ADV	adverb
PL	plural
OPP	opposite
SYN	synonym
INF	informal
FML	formal
sth	something
sb	somebody
etc.	You use 'etc.' at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren't going to say them all.
i.e.	that is
e.g.	for example

1 What are idioms?

1 An idiom is a phrase with a meaning that is often difficult to understand by looking at the individual words. For example, it isn't easy to guess the meaning of the idiom **lose face**, but seeing it in context will help you to understand it:

*He could **lose face** if other people see that he got everything wrong.*	**lose face** be less respected or look stupid because of sth you have done.

Here are more examples:

*The teacher **turned a blind eye to** some of the children's bad behaviour.*	**turn a blind eye (to sth)** pretend not to see or notice sth, usually sth bad.
*My uncle just arrived **out of the blue**.*	**out of the blue** INF suddenly and unexpectedly.

2 Not all idioms are so difficult to guess. Many phrases that are easier to understand are still listed as idioms in dictionaries because they have a fixed form which you need to know and learn:

*We could see lights **in the distance**.*	**in the distance** far away, but able to be seen or heard.
*I ring my mother every day **without fail**.*	**without fail** always.
***If all else fails**, I'll have to sell the car.*	**if all else fails** used to say what sb can do if nothing else they have done is successful.

3 Most idioms have a fixed form. For example, if a name **rings a bell**, it means it is a name that sounds familiar to you. The idiom is *ring a bell*, but not *ring ~~the~~ bell*. However, with some idioms alternative words *are* possible:

*Do you want to go out? ~ **That/It depends**.*	**that/it depends** used to say that you are not certain about something because other things have to be considered.
*I would **steer/stay clear of** that place; it's not very safe.*	**steer/stay clear of sth/sb** take care to avoid sth or sb, because it or they may cause problems.
***Why on earth** are you shouting? Be quiet!* ***How on earth** did he pass the exam? He did no work at all.*	**why/how/where/who**, etc. **on earth** INF used to emphasize a question when you are angry or surprised, or cannot think of an obvious answer.

Sometimes additional words can be used within an idiom, especially to change the emphasis:

*She **was in a** terrible **state**, so I decided to stay and look after her.*	**be in / get into a state** INF be/become anxious or upset. (*Terrible* here means 'extreme', so 'she was extremely anxious'.)
*It **makes** a lot of **sense** to buy now while houses are cheap.*	**make sense** be a practical and logical thing to do. (*A lot of* here adds emphasis.)

4 Idioms are very common in spoken English, and dictionaries show when they are particularly informal. In this book, informal idioms are labelled 'INF', like this: **be in / get into a state** INF.
Here are more examples:

***How come** you're here so early?*	**how come** INF used to ask the reason for something which is surprising. (Notice the word order after **how come** is in statement form, although it is a question.)
*I had to run **like mad** to catch the bus.*	**like mad** INF very fast, hard, much, etc. SYN **flat out** INF.

5 To sum up, idioms:

- are phrases which are often difficult to understand out of context;
- usually have a fixed form;
- are very common in spoken English, and many are informal.

1 Circle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are correct.

1 We should *steer* | *stay* clear of those people; they're dangerous.
2 Who *in* | *on* earth is that?
3 We will *lose face* | *lose our face* if we just accept their lowest offer.
4 Does it matter if we're late? ~ *It* | *That* depends.
5 I could hear the drums *in distance* | *in the distance*.
6 Have you heard of a place called Dinster? ~ Er, it rings a *bell* | *noise*.

2 The words or phrases in the box are missing from the sentences below. Where do they go? Write them at the end.

on earth   out of the blue ✓   if all else fails   a lot of   like mad   terrible   without fail

► Our cousin arrived ⁄ just after we got home last night. out of the blue
1 He was in a state last night when he heard about the accident. ....
2 How is your sister going to buy a car if she hasn't got any money? ....
3 It makes sense to give up sweet things if you are overweight. ....
4 My brother loves that car, and he cleans it every day. ....
5 The police came after us, so we ran. ....
6 He's in a bad situation, but he can always work for his father. ....

3 Replace the underlined word(s) with a word or phrase that has a similar meaning.

► Her name sounds familiar. rings a bell
1 I'm going to stay clear of that part of town in future. ....
2 We had to work like mad to finish the project. ....
3 Do you think he'll stay? ~ It depends. ....
4 They arrived suddenly and unexpectedly. ....
5 I could see the church far away. ....
6 He felt he would look stupid if he refused to go in the icy water. ....

4 Complete the last word in each sentence or dialogue. Then underline the full idiom.

► I got this cheque for $300 out of the blue.
1 Promise me you'll post this letter without ....
2 Do you know Alan Davies? ~ The name rings a ....
3 He always buys the cheapest trainers. ~ Really? I don't think that makes a lot of ....
4 The boys shouldn't be in there, but I'm just going to turn a blind ....
5 After her dog died, she was in a terrible ....
6 I can't get out; the door is locked. ~ How .... ?

5 In this short text Leona is talking about last night. The idioms are shown in bold. Try to guess what they mean, then check in a dictionary.

> I **was in two minds about** going to Paul's last night — it's a long way to his place. But **in the end** I decided to go, and it'**s a good thing that** I did because Mike and Jean couldn't go, so there were only three of us. A friend of Paul's called Malcolm was there — he was **a good laugh**, and apparently, he'**s rolling in money**.

1 be in two minds (about doing sth) = ...
2 in the end = ...
3 be a good thing (that) = ...
4 a good laugh INF = ...
5 be rolling in money INF = ...

2 Types of idiom

There are many different types of idiom. The following extract from a story includes some typical patterns. Read it, then look at the table below.

> We left camp **bright and early** to **take advantage of** the good weather, but by the afternoon we were getting tired, so I asked Simon which was the quickest way back.
>
> '**Don't ask me**,' he said.
>
> 'It's all right,' said Magnus. 'I know the way back from here. It's **a piece of cake**.'
>
> **Famous last words!** We followed him in one direction for half an hour, before he **changed his mind** and set off in another direction. But by five o'clock, Simon and I were fed up with walking round in circles. Even Magnus agreed we **were getting nowhere** and announced that we were lost.
>
> 'Well, **in that case**, we should give Tim a ring,' I said. Tim Collier was **in charge of** our group and I knew he'd be furious that we'd got lost. But we were deep in a valley and there was no signal on my mobile, so we couldn't **get through**. Just then, Simon realized where we were. **Thank heavens** for that, I thought. We followed him up a steep path, and at the top we could see we were only **a stone's throw** from the main road, which **more or less** took us back to camp. We finally got there just before seven.
>
> As we passed Tim, I tried to **laugh** it **off**. 'Ah, well, **better late than never**, eh?'
>
> 'You **were supposed to** be back by five,' he said. And with that, he marched off.

Type of idiom	Example	Meaning
1 verb-based idioms	**take advantage of sth** **change your mind** **get nowhere** **be supposed to do sth**	make good use of sth. change your decision or opinion about sth. make no progress, or have no success. If you **are supposed to do sth**, you should do it because sb told you to do it, or because it is your responsibility to do it. SYN **be meant to do sth.**
2 prepositional phrases	**in that case** **in charge** (**of sb/sth**)	used to say what will happen, or what you will do, as a result of a particular situation. having control or command (of sb/sth).
3 noun phrases	**a piece of cake** **a stone's throw**	INF a thing that is very easy to do. a short distance. (👁 See page 144.)
4 sayings/proverbs	**famous last words** **better late than never**	used when you think sb is speaking with too much confidence about sth that they think will happen. = it is better to arrive late than not at all.
5 fixed phrases with two key words, usually joined by *and* or *or*	**bright and early** **more or less**	early in the morning. almost or approximately.
6 idiomatic phrasal verbs	**get through** (**to sb**) **laugh sth off**	make contact with sb by phone. joke about sth to show you think it is not serious or important.
7 exclamations or short spoken phrases	**don't ask me** **thank heavens**	INF used to say that you don't know the answer to sth. SYN **search me** INF. used to say you are pleased and relieved about sth.

1 Circle the correct answer.

1 I'm here. ~ Well, better late than *ever* | *never*, I suppose.
2 We got up *quick* | *bright* and early because we had to catch the seven o'clock train.
3 It looked a bad injury, but Matt just laughed it *off* | *away*, saying it didn't hurt.
4 The teacher who is in *charge* | *responsibility* of the boys must stay with them at all times.
5 Don't worry. Everything's under control. ~ Yeah, famous last *phrase* | *words*.
6 You should take *care* | *advantage* of being in Canada to practise your English.

2 Complete the idioms in this conversation. They are all from page 10.

A OK. I'm going now.
B Fine. By the way, did you get (1) __________ to your mother?
A Yes. She's fine, but she asked me to get some things from the chemist for her.
B Oh well, there's one in the shops near the park.
A Great. In that (2) __________ I can walk.
B Oh yes, it's just a stone's (3) __________ from here.
A Would you like to come into town afterwards?
B No, I'd better not. I'm (4) __________ to be at my sister's at four, and it's more or (5) __________ half past two now.
A OK, but if you change your (6) __________, just text me.

3 Replace the underlined words and phrases with idioms that have a similar meaning.

▸ Who is responsible for the sales department? in charge of
1 What's wrong? ~ I'm not making any progress with this essay. __________
2 How was your exam? ~ Easy. __________
3 When's Ben arriving? ~ I've no idea. He never tells me anything. __________
4 The kids got back safely. ~ Oh, I'm so relieved to hear that. __________
5 Did you try phoning? ~ Yes, but I couldn't contact him. __________
6 Is the bank far? ~ No, it's only a short distance from here. __________

4 Identify the types of idioms in bold in these sentences and write the correct number in the spaces provided. Then look up the meanings in the answer key on page 145.

▸ There were lots of keys, but we found the right one by **trial and error**. Type 5
1 You can't **live on** £50 a week. __________
2 She's just lost $1000. ~ **Good grief!** __________
3 The food here is quite good **in the main**. __________
4 It was a completely new job, so it took me a while to **find my feet**. __________
5 They say **absence makes the heart grow fonder**. I'm not sure I believe it, though. __________
6 I'm afraid that wars happen – it's **a fact of life**. __________

5 It can be difficult to identify an idiom, and know where it begins and ends. Underline the idioms in the dialogue below. (You will check the meanings in the next exercise.)

pam I ▸ can't stand sitting next to Nigel – he's always making fun of me. Would you swap places with me?
livy No way! He gets on my nerves too – all those stupid jokes. Oh, no, he's here!
nigel Hi, girls. Do you want to hear a joke?
pam No. Get lost, Nigel! You're a pain in the neck! Just go away!

6 Complete the table with the idioms you underlined. Then look up the meanings on page 145.

Spoken phrase	Verb-based idiom	Noun phrase	Phrasal verb
1 __________	▸ can't stand	1 __________	1 __________
2 __________	1 __________		
	2 __________		
	3 __________		

3 Finding idioms in a dictionary

Where are idioms explained?

Dictionaries don't always enter idioms in the same place, or in the same way. Read the introduction to your dictionary to discover where to find idioms. In the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*, idioms are explained after the symbol IDM▸. For example, the idiom **in vain** is in the IDM section after the main meanings of the word **vain**.

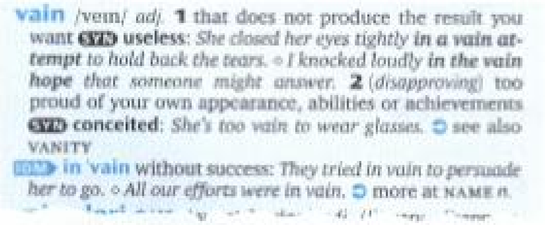

vain /veɪn/ *adj.* **1** that does not produce the result you want SYN **useless**: *She closed her eyes tightly* ***in a vain attempt*** *to hold back the tears.* ◦ *I knocked loudly* ***in the vain hope*** *that someone might answer.* **2** (*disapproving*) too proud of your own appearance, abilities or achievements SYN **conceited**: *She's too vain to wear glasses.* ➔ see also VANITY

IDM▸ **in ˈvain** without success: *They tried in vain to persuade her to go.* ◦ *All our efforts were in vain.* ➔ more at NAME *n.*

If there is more than one idiom, they are listed in alphabetical order (not including grammatical words such as *a, the, sb/sth, his, her,* etc.). So, with idioms listed at the word *way,* you will find **all the way** before **by the way** (*a* before *b*).

Which word in an idiom do I look up?

There isn't one simple rule, but in the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* most idioms are explained at the first *meaningful* word in the idiom (noun, verb, adjective, or adverb). For example, with these idioms, you need to look up the underlined word:

on purpose N **pull sb's leg** V **it's a long story** ADJ **once in a blue moon** ADV

With most idioms, there is also cross-referencing. For example, if you look up **blue** to find the meaning of **once in a blue moon**, there will be a reference telling you to look up **once**. (See also page 144.)

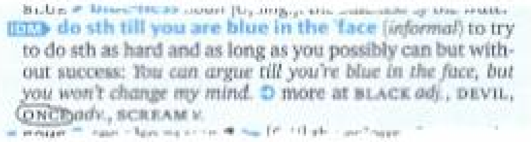

IDM▸ **do sth till you are blue in the ˈface** (*informal*) to try to do sth as hard and as long as you possibly can but without success: *You can argue till you're blue in the face, but you won't change my mind.* ➔ more at BLACK *adj.*, DEVIL, ONCE *adv.*, SCREAM *v.*

However, some common verbs, e.g. *have* and *go,* and some common adjectives, e.g. *good*, have so many idioms that they cannot be listed in one place. In this case, the dictionary tells you to look up the next noun, verb, adjective, etc. in the idiom. For example, if you look up *have* to find the meaning of the idiom **have sth in common (with sb)**, you will see this:

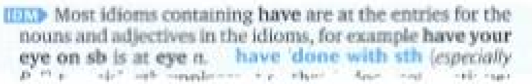

IDM▸ Most idioms containing **have** are at the entries for the nouns and adjectives in the idioms, for example **have your eye on sb** is at **eye** *n.* **have ˈdone with sth** (*especially*

To find the meaning of **have sth in common**, you need to look up *common*:

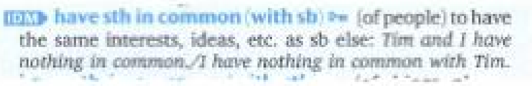

IDM▸ **have sth in common (with sb)** (of people) to have the same interests, ideas, etc. as sb else: *Tim and I have nothing in common./I have nothing in common with Tim.*

[Extracts from *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*, 8th edition.]

What information can I find?

- Dictionaries explain the meaning of an idiom and sometimes give an example.
- Most idioms can be used in spoken English and informal written English, but a dictionary will tell you if an idiom is especially *informal, formal, humorous, old-fashioned*, and so on. It will tell you if an idiom is more common in British English (BrE) or North American English (NAmE).
- Dictionaries will show you if one word in an idiom can be replaced by another with the same meaning, e.g. **it/that depends.**

These exercises are based on the way idioms are listed in the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*. Other dictionaries may not enter idioms in the same way, or at the same place.

1 Which word should you look up to find the meaning of these idioms? (Think carefully before you answer 6 and 7.)

▸ **if you ask me** (Look up *ask*.)
1 **(at) any moment** ______
2 **catch sb's eye** ______
3 **out of breath** ______
4 **it's early days** ______
5 **not just yet** ______
6 **go public** ______
7 **be a good thing (that)** ______

2 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? They contain idioms from page 12 and Exercise 1, so you may have to use a dictionary.

1 If you do something **on purpose**, it is your intention to do it. ______
2 If you **catch somebody's eye**, you do something stupid and somebody else notices. ______
3 If something is going to happen **at any moment**, it is going to happen very soon. ______
4 If you **pull somebody's leg**, you play a joke on them, usually by telling them something that isn't true. ______
5 If somebody is **out of breath**, they are dead. ______
6 If you do something **once in a blue moon**, you do it once a month. ______
7 If you **go public**, you tell people about something that is a secret. ______
8 If you do something **in vain**, you do it successfully. ______
9 If you say '**by the way**', you are going to say something that is not directly connected to what you have just been talking about. ______
10 If you say '**it's a long story**' to someone, you want them to sit down so that you can explain the story with all the details. ______

3 The idioms in bold have one word that can be replaced by another without changing the meaning. Look them up in your dictionary and write the idiom again using the alternative word.

▸ Are you going? ~ **It depends.** That depends.
1 We've got a fantastic Italian restaurant **on the doorstep**. ______
2 He arrived **at the last minute**, as usual. ______
3 She **was a bag of nerves** before her exam. (Look up *nerve*.) ______
4 Please **send my love to** Grace. (Look up *love*.) ______
5 He's very angry, so just **keep out of his way**. (Look up *way*.) ______
6 The company is always looking for **new blood**. (Look up *blood*.) ______

4 Does your dictionary label the style of the idioms in these sentences? What label does it use?

▸ Could I borrow the car? ~ **No chance**. informal
1 **As regards** a solution to the problem, we're a long way off. ______
2 She's a very attractive woman. ~ **I'll say**. ______
3 We'll see you soon. **Lots of love**, Terry. ______
4 I think these DVDs might have **fallen off the back of a lorry**. ______
5 Put your coat on or you'll **catch your death of cold**! ______
6 I've never had an accident on my motorbike – **touch wood**! ______
7 I'm sorry, we**'re fresh out of** coffee. ______
8 I'm ringing **with reference to** your advertisement in today's newspaper. ______

4 The grammar of phrasal verbs

Phrasal verbs consist of a verb, e.g. *put*, *take*, *show*, and one or two particles, e.g. *off*, *out*, *by*, *up*, etc. These are the three main types of phrasal verbs.

1 Phrasal verbs with no object ('intransitive')

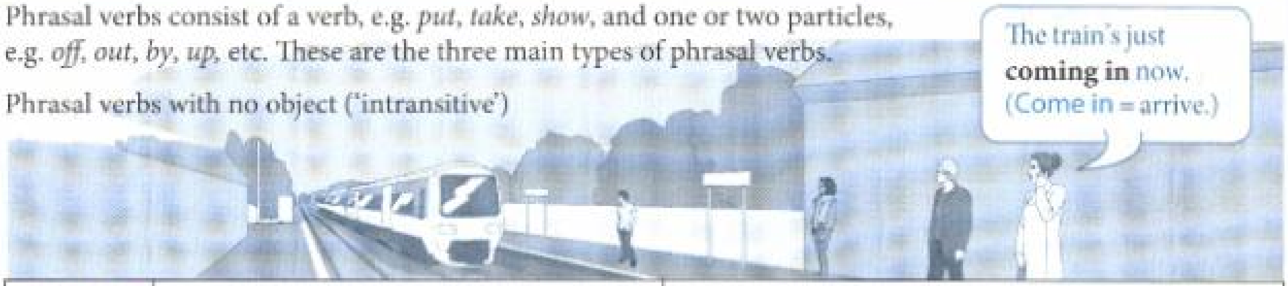

The train's just **coming in** now. (Come in = arrive.)

check in	*I have to **check in** before 8.00.*	go to a desk in an airport or hotel and tell an official that you have arrived.
look up	*Business was bad, but now things **are looking up**.*	INF (of a business, sb's situation, etc.) get better.
show up	*She didn't **show up** till the next morning.*	INF arrive in a place where sb is waiting for you.

2 Phrasal verbs which can be separated by an object ('transitive, separable')

She **wrote** his name **down** in her notebook. (Write sth down = write sth on paper.)

look sth up	*I had to **look** the word **up**.*	look for information in a book or online.
make sth up	*I didn't want to see him, so I **made up** an excuse and left.*	invent a story or an explanation for sth.
try sth on	*I **tried** the jacket **on** but it was too small.*	put on a piece of clothing to see if it fits or looks good on you.

With these transitive verbs, you can usually put the object before or after the particle.
*She **wrote** **his name** **down**.* OR *She **wrote down** **his name**.*

If the object is a long phrase, it will usually come after the phrasal verb.
*She **wrote down** **everything she could remember about him**.*

If the object is a pronoun, e.g. *him*, *her*, *it* must go between the verb and the particle.
*She **wrote** **it** **down**.* NOT *~~She wrote down it.~~*

3 Phrasal verbs which cannot be separated by an object ('transitive, inseparable')
These may have one or two particles.

He **looked after** the baby. NOT ~~He looked the baby after.~~
(Look after sb/sth = take care of or be responsible for sb/sth.)

look into sth	*I complained to the airline, and they**'re looking into** it.*	investigate and try to discover the facts about sth, e.g. a crime, a problem.
come across sth/sb	*I **came across** the word in an article.*	meet sb or find sth by chance.
stand for sth	*What does WWW **stand for**?*	represent or mean (WWW **stands for** World Wide Web).
go out with sb	*Marisa**'s going out with** Tom's brother.*	spend time with sb and have a romantic relationship with them.
cut back on sth	*I must **cut back on** sweets to try and lose weight.*	reduce the amount of sth that you eat, spend, use, etc.

spotlight Intransitive and transitive verbs

Some verbs can be both intransitive and transitive, but a difference in structure indicates a difference in meaning: e.g. **look up** = get better, but **look sth up** = look for information in a book or online; **take off** = (of a plane) leave the ground, but **take sth off** = remove a piece of clothing.

spotlight Phrasal verbs in dictionaries

Dictionaries usually list phrasal verbs after the entry for the main verb and any idioms.

They show you if a verb takes an object (*sb/sth*). If the phrasal verb is separable, you will find *sb/sth* between the verb and the particle, e.g. **make sth up**.

If the verb and particle are inseparable, you will see *sb/sth* after the particle, e.g. **look after sb/sth**.

1 Tick ✓ the sentences which are correct.

1 He wrote a few words down. ______
2 He wrote down. ______
3 Did he write down her address? ______
4 Don't write it down yet. ______
5 I've cut back on smoking. ______
6 I'm trying to cut back on. ______
7 She's cut chocolate back on. ______
8 There are easy ways to cut back on it. ______

2 *It* is missing in some of these sentences. Where does it go?

▸ If you don't know the meaning, look ‸ up in the dictionary.
1 Someone has stolen our car, and the police are looking into at the moment.
2 It wasn't a true story; I'm sure he just made up.
3 They said they'd be here early, but they didn't show up till 9.00.
4 Can I ask you about your cat? Who looks after when you go on holiday?
5 I don't know what MP3 stands for. Do you?
6 I hadn't seen the website before; I came across yesterday on the Internet.
7 If you try on and it's too big, you could always give it to me.
8 The train was delayed but it finally came in at midday.

3 Organize the words into sentences and add one word.

▸ cut | to | should | sugar | you | try | back You should try to cut back **on** sugar.
1 5.00 | can | you | check | at | ______
2 look | you | could | the | number ? ______
3 today | daughter | after | friend's | I'm | my ______
4 David's | out | he's | going | sister ______
5 Cable | CNN | Network | stands | News ______
6 this | like | try | would | to | you | skirt ? ______

4 Rewrite the sentences using a phrasal verb from page 14. The meaning must stay the same.

▸ I found the information by chance on the Internet. I came across the information on the Internet.
1 She wasn't happy, but now things are getting better. ______
2 The committee investigated the cause of the problem. ______
3 I didn't know the answer, so I invented something. ______
4 The train's arriving on platform five. ______
5 We can reduce the electricity we use. ______
6 What do the letters FAQ represent? ______
7 I had to check the meaning in a dictionary. ______
8 Our meeting was at 5.00, but Sue never arrived. ______

5 ABOUT YOUR DICTIONARY Use your dictionary to find out if these verbs are transitive or intransitive, and separable or inseparable. In your notebook, write a sentence example for one meaning of the verb.

▸ put back put sth back (transitive, separable) e.g. I put the book back on the shelf.

rub out, go in for, settle down, take after, take back, fall out with

5 Core meanings 1

A *On*

Some particles can express a particular meaning when they are used with certain verbs. For example, **on** can indicate continuation.

Example	Meaning
*The meeting **dragged on** for hours.*	**drag on** continue for too long.
*I **carried on** painting while the light was still good.*	**carry on (doing sth)** continue with an activity for a period of time.
*Michael's very annoying – he **keeps on** taking my pens.*	**keep on doing sth** repeat sth many times, often in an annoying way.
*Be quiet and **get on with** your work.*	**get on with sth** continue doing sth, often after an interruption.
*The weather was great, so we **stayed on** for a couple more days.*	**stay on** continue enjoying yourself, studying, or working in a place, often after others have left.
*We **drove on** for several kilometres.*	**drive on** continue driving.

spotlight *go on* (see also page 65)

The traffic noise goes on all night. = continues without changing.
He went on (and on) about his car. = talked about his car for a long time in a boring way.
Let's go on to Exercise 2. = pass from doing the first exercise to doing the next exercise. SYN **move on to sth.**

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 Pat went home but I stayed on
2 I was angry because I kept on
3 We had a coffee, then got on with
4 The company can't go on
5 The lecture dragged on
6 The teacher told us to move on
7 He's always going on about
8 We weren't tired, so we carried on

a his collection of DVDs. No one's interested.
b some more work.
c like this; we're losing too much money.
d to the next section of the text.
e until the party finished.
f making the same mistake.
g for a few more miles.
h for ages; everyone was bored.

2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a phrasal verb from the box in the correct form.

drag on   go on   go on to   carry on ✓   keep on   drive on   stay on   go on and on   get on with

▸ We played cards in the garden and just continued until it got dark. carried on
1 He is always interrupting me; it's very annoying.
2 We've talked enough about this. Let's move on to the next item on the list.
3 Some students leave at sixteen, while others continue for two more years.
4 I thought it would be a short speech, but it continued for almost an hour.
5 The train service is getting worse and worse; we can't continue like this.
6 She talked for hours about her boyfriend – I nearly fell asleep.
7 When the children have gone to school, I can do the housework.
8 The petrol station was closed, so we continued to the next one.

B *Off* and *around*

Off sometimes adds a meaning of departure or separation. **Around** can add the meaning, 'with no particular purpose or aim'. **About** and **around** are interchangeable in the examples below.

'My sister was going skiing and I went to the airport to **see** her **off**. But when we got there it was snowing heavily, and the plane couldn't **take off**, so we had to come home. By the morning the snow was very deep, and we **were cut off** from the rest of the village.'

'I **went off** to do some shopping, and left my husband **messing about with** his motorbike while the boys **lazed around** in the garden. When I got back, there were tools **lying around** everywhere, and Mike and the boys had disappeared.'

'There were some boys **hanging around** the school entrance, and one or two were **messing about with** other pupils' bikes, so I told them to **clear off**.'

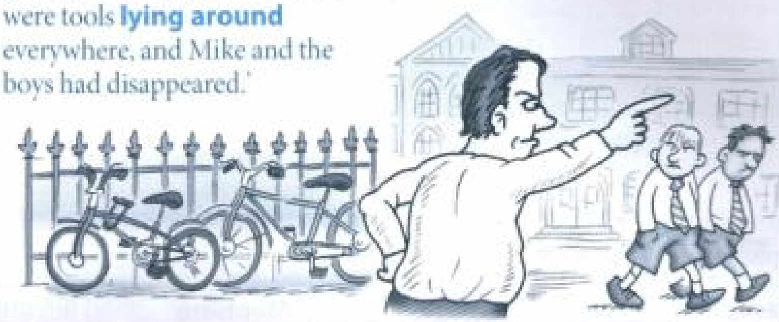

Glossary

see sb off	go to an airport, station, etc. with sb in order to say goodbye to them.
take off	(of a plane) leave the ground.
cut sth off	(often passive) separate sth from sth else, so it is difficult to leave or enter. (**Cut sth off sth** remove sth from sth larger by cutting it.)
go off	leave a place, especially in order to do sth.
mess about/around (with sth)	INF 1 spend time doing sth or repairing sth in a relaxed way (Text 2). 2 do sth or use sth in a careless or annoying way (Text 3).
laze around/about	relax, enjoy yourself, and do nothing.
lie around/about	(of a number of things) be left in a place, usually untidily or where they shouldn't be.
hang around/about	INF spend time in a place doing nothing.
clear off	INF go away (often used angrily as a command).

3 Write six more sentences using words from the table.

He leaves his shoes lying ✓	off around	at the airport.
I saw my dad		the street corner.
We lazed		until 7.00.
The town was cut		and leave her alone.
We didn't take		by the flood water.
She told me to clear		by the pool.
The boys often hang		on the floor. ✓

▸ He leaves his shoes lying around on the floor.

....

....

....

....

....

....

4 Complete the sentences with a suitable verb in the correct form.

1 After the concert, there were lots of people .... around, waiting for taxis.
2 My husband spends most of the weekend .... about on the river with his boat.
3 We .... a branch off the tree because it was getting too big.
4 My son always leaves his CDs .... around in the living room.
5 He .... off to buy a paper, but he'll be back in a minute.
6 My brother's leaving for Singapore tomorrow, so we're all going to .... him off.
7 A lot of teenagers just .... around the centre of town: they have nothing better to do.
8 I don't like that boy following me. I wish he'd .... off.

6 Core meanings 2

A *Up and through*

When **up** is used with certain verbs, it doesn't change the meaning of the verb, but emphasizes the idea of completing or finishing something. The verbs in the text are separable.

Karen made her son **eat up** his breakfast and **drink up** his milk before he went to school. Then, as soon as he'd left, she **cleared** the breakfast things **up** and put the dirty stuff in the dishwasher. Today, she was also going to wash the floor, but then she remembered she**'d used up** the floor cleaner the previous day, so she **tidied up** the living room instead.

Through sometimes suggests going from the beginning to the end of something. The verbs below are inseparable.

Example	Meaning
I'd like to go through the homework.	look at, check, or discuss sth carefully.
His father has lived through two wars.	experience and survive sth very difficult.
I flicked through his new book.	look through sth quickly, without reading it.
I looked through your report yesterday.	look at the pages of sth, reading it only in part.
I managed to sleep through the storm.	continue sleeping while there is a lot of noise around you.

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 I picked up the book and flicked through ____
2 My grandfather lived through ____
3 We sat down and went through ____
4 I managed to sleep through ____
5 I had to clear up ____
6 Please don't use up ____
7 I couldn't eat up ____
8 I offered to tidy up ____

a all the milk from the fridge.
b the first few pages.
c the noise of my neighbour's party.
d the sugar that was on the floor.
e years of depression.
f all the rice; she gave me too much.
g her desk.
h the report together.

2 Complete the sentences with suitable verbs.

1 After the party we had to ____________ up all the mess that people had left.
2 I ____________ through the brochure while I was waiting, but I only read part of it.
3 I'd ____________ up all my travel tickets, so I had to buy some more.
4 The teacher usually ____________ through the exercises when we've finished them.
5 My mother makes me ____________ my room up every week.
6 Many of these people have had to ____________ through years of civil war.
7 OK. ____________ up your coffee and we can go.
8 The music was really loud, but Jake ____________ through it without waking up.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 Do you normally go through homework in class?
2 When did you last tidy up your bedroom?
3 Do you ever sleep through the alarm clock?
4 Do you always clear up as soon as you've finished a meal?
5 Do you often flick through magazines without buying them?

B Back

In phrasal verbs, the particle **back** usually has the meaning of returning somewhere, or returning something to a place.

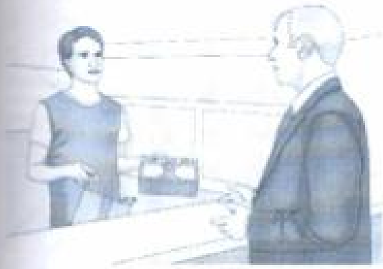

The radio was faulty so I took it back to the shop.

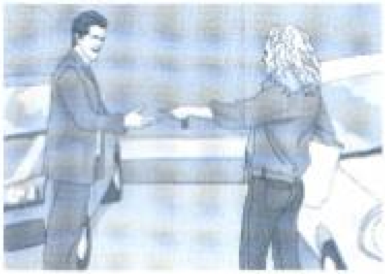

She took his car key by mistake, but gave it back this morning.

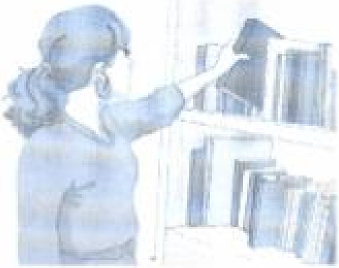

She read a few pages then put the book back on the shelf.

Example	**Meaning**
If you borrow that brush, please bring it back.	return to this place with sth that you have taken or borrowed.
I'll go there by bus, and Jim can bring me back.	return sb to a place, usually by car.
The books were damaged so I sent them back.	return sth by post, messenger, waiter, etc.
He rang at 2.00. I said I'd phone him back later.	return sb's phone call. SYN **ring sb back.**
Dad lent me the money, but I've paid him back.	return to sb the money that you borrowed from them.

spotlight *get back*

When do you get back? = return, especially to your home or workplace.
Can we get the money back? = have something returned to you.
I woke up and couldn't get back to sleep. = return to an earlier state, situation, etc.

4 Tick ✓ the most likely answers. One, two, or three may be possible.

1 The jumper wasn't right, so I .... it back to the shop.
took ☐ rang ☐ sent ☐ got ☐
2 I was out when he called me this morning, so I'll have to .... him back.
ring ☐ get ☐ bring ☐ phone ☐
3 When you've finished with the books, please .... them back.
take ☐ pay ☐ bring ☐ put ☐
4 If your train arrives more than an hour late, you .... half your money back.
take ☐ ring ☐ get ☐ pay ☐
5 I borrowed the books yesterday and .... them back to Pat this morning.
gave ☐ put ☐ took ☐ rang ☐
6 The shirts weren't the ones I ordered, so I .... them back.
gave ☐ sent ☐ took ☐ put ☐

5 Complete the dialogues with the correct verb.

1 Did you complain about the steak? ~ Yes, the waiter .... it back to the kitchen.
2 Did Angela phone? ~ Yes, but I was out, so I'll .... her back later.
3 Did you have to borrow the money? ~ Yes, but I can .... it back easily.
4 Do you pay a deposit when you move in? ~ Yes, but you .... it back when you leave.
5 Did you go there by train? ~ Yes, but my uncle .... me back in his car.
6 The injury affected him a lot. ~ Yes, he never .... back to the same level of fitness.
7 I'm leaving soon. ~ OK, fine. What time do you .... back?
8 Do you want to borrow this book? ~ Yes, please. I'll .... it back to you tomorrow.

7 Different meanings of phrasal verbs

Many phrasal verbs can have more than one meaning.

Go off

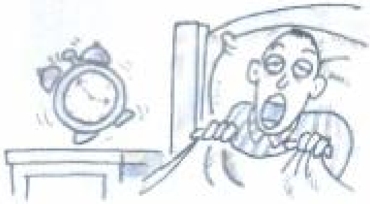

The alarm goes off at 5.00. = rings.

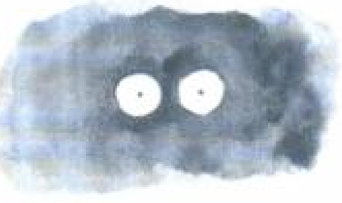

The lights suddenly went off. = stopped working.

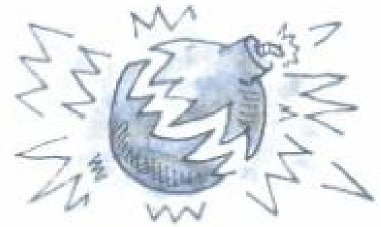

The bomb went off. = exploded.

Put sth on

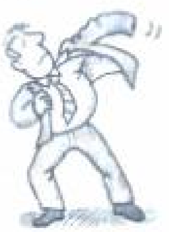

I put my best suit on. = dressed myself. OPP take sth off.

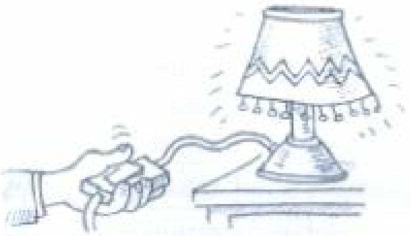

He put the light on. SYNS turn sth on, switch sth on.

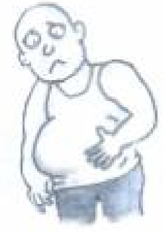

I put on a lot of weight last year. = became fatter.

Break down

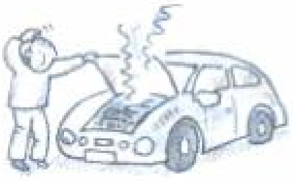

The car broke down. = stopped working.

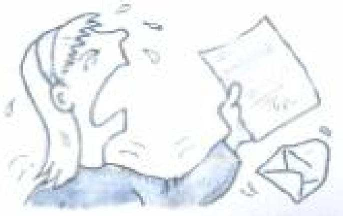

She broke down at the news. = started crying.

Go down

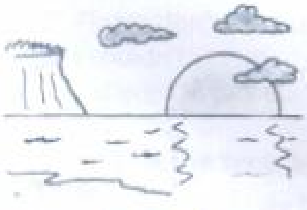

The sun's going down. = disappearing below the horizon. OPP come up.

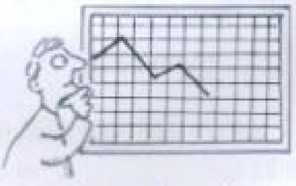

Prices went down by 10 per cent. = became lower. OPP go up.

Do sth up

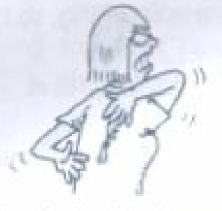

I can't ***do*** *this zip up.* = fasten.

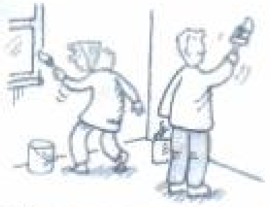

They're doing the flat up. = redecorating.

Turn up

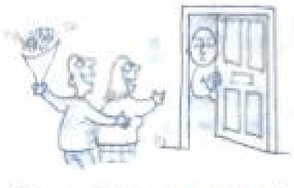

When did they turn up? = arrive.

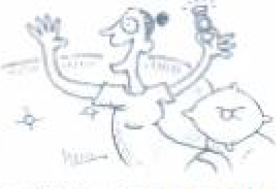

Look! My ring's turned up! = be found by chance.

Tie sb up

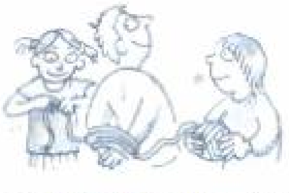

They tied him up. = tied his arms so that he couldn't move.

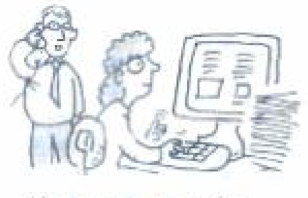

She's tied up at the moment. = very busy (used in the passive).

1 Tick (✓) the answers which are possible. One, two, or all three may be correct.

1 He's put on *about five kilos* ☐ *a lot of weight* ☐ *fat* ☐.
2 Did you hear the *fire alarm* ☐ *television* ☐ *car alarm* ☐ go off?
3 I'm hoping that the *temperature* ☐ *price of meat* ☐ *age limit* ☐ will go down.
4 She's very young and she can't do her *shoes* ☐ *jacket* ☐ *socks* ☐ up yet.
5 The *taxi* ☐ *car* ☐ *train* ☐ broke down on the way back from the mountains.

2 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

▸ We sat and watched the sun ~~come~~ down over the horizon. *go*
1 I see Beverley's got on a few kilos again; her diet's not working, is it? ______
2 Could you put the lights down? I can't see a thing in here. ______
3 I don't know what's happened to my keys; I hope they turn out. ______
4 We've decided to make the living room up; Pat's going to do the painting. ______
5 She was tidied up this week, so I made an appointment to see her next Monday. ______
6 When I heard what had happened to the animals, I broke away and cried. ______
7 They tied me out and ran off with the money. ______
8 The zip on my coat has broken and I can't do it on. ______

3 Complete the email.

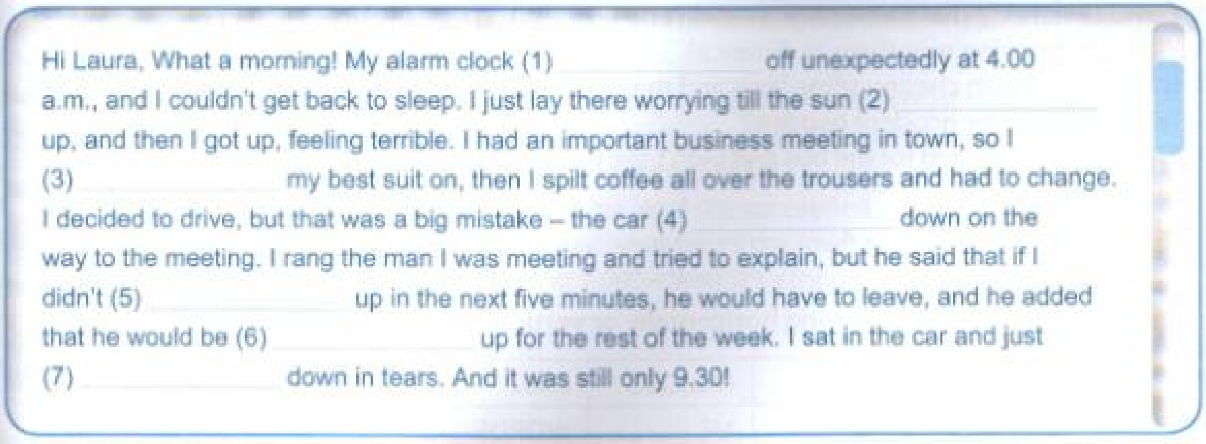

Hi Laura, What a morning! My alarm clock (1) ______ off unexpectedly at 4.00 a.m., and I couldn't get back to sleep. I just lay there worrying till the sun (2) ______ up, and then I got up, feeling terrible. I had an important business meeting in town, so I (3) ______ my best suit on, then I spilt coffee all over the trousers and had to change. I decided to drive, but that was a big mistake – the car (4) ______ down on the way to the meeting. I rang the man I was meeting and tried to explain, but he said that if I didn't (5) ______ up in the next five minutes, he would have to leave, and he added that he would be (6) ______ up for the rest of the week. I sat in the car and just (7) ______ down in tears. And it was still only 9.30!

4 Replace the underlined words with a suitable phrasal verb in the correct form.

1 What time did they arrive in the end? ______
2 My hands were so cold I couldn't fasten the buttons on my coat. ______
3 I'm worried about my gas bill; I've heard the prices are increasing again. ______
4 Excuse me, Mr Salter, but are you busy at the moment? ______
5 We're planning to redecorate the flat before we move in. ______
6 There was a terrible bang, and we realized that a bomb had exploded. ______
7 Has the missing dog been found yet? ______
8 He just started crying for no reason I could understand. ______

5 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 6.)

1 Do car alarms ______ off very often where you live?
2 Do you tend to ______ weight on at certain times of the year? If so, when?
3 Have you ever been in a car that ______ down late at night? If so, what happened?
4 Is your home newly decorated, or would you like to ______ it up?
5 What happens if you ______ up late for class?
6 Are prices generally ______ down, up, or staying the same at the moment?

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

Review: Introduction to idioms and phrasal verbs

Unit 1

1 Complete the definitions.

1 If someone arrives *out of the blue*, it means they arrive .... and unexpectedly.
2 If you're driving *like mad*, it means you're driving ....
3 If you ring your mother every morning *without fail*, it means you .... ring your mother in the morning.
4 If someone thinks they have *lost face*, it means they feel that they look .... because of something they have done.
5 If someone is *in a terrible state*, it means they are feeling very ....
6 If you *turn a blind eye* to something, it means you pretend not to .... it.

2 One word is missing in each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

1 A How you're still doing that grammar exercise? ....
  B Because when I checked my answers I realized they didn't sense. ....
2 A Ooh, that awful David Leventon – just steer of him! ....
  B David Leventon? That name rings a – didn't he go to prison for burglary? ....
3 A What's happening over there in distance? ....
  B It looks like a man chasing some boys and they're running flat. ....
4 A How earth did the accident happen? ....
  B She was running mad for the bus and didn't see the cyclist. ....

Unit 2

1 Find answers to the clues by moving horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.

GET	HEAVENS	DON'T	FAMOUS	LAST
NOWHERE	THANK	ASK	ME	WORDS
OF	CAKE	EARLY ↑	BETTER	NEVER
PIECE	BRIGHT →	AND	LATE	THAN
A	LESS	A	CHANGE	YOUR
MORE	OR	STONE'S	THROW	MIND

▸ Very early in the morning. bright and early
1 You say this when you don't know the answer to something. ....
2 Almost or approximately. ....
3 You might say this when someone has arrived late. ....
4 Only a short distance away. ....
5 Used to say you are pleased and relieved about something. ....
6 An informal phrase meaning 'very easy'. ....
7 You say this when you think someone is too confident that something is going to happen.
....
8 Change your decision or opinion about something. ....
9 Make no progress, or have no success. ....

2 Complete the words in the sentences. Then underline the full idiom in each one.

1 If something is generally true, you can also say it's true in the m__________ .
2 Do you agree with the saying that absence makes the heart grow f__________ ?
3 'Good g__________ !' is quite a common exclamation to express surprise.
4 If somebody gets on your n__________ , you find them very irritating.
5 Many people think that trial and e__________ is a good way of learning.
6 We all have to face disappointments; that's a fact of l__________ .

Unit 3

1 Replace the underlined words with an idiom that includes the word in capital letters. The meaning must stay the same.

▸ It was lucky that he left early. THING a good thing
1 Mo and I see each other very rarely. MOON __________
2 She was just playing a joke on me. LEG __________
3 I've got a market very close to my flat. DOORSTEP __________
4 We need some new members in the club. FRESH __________
5 She's planning to tell everyone the secret. PUBLIC __________
6 I am writing about the advertisement. REFERENCE __________

2 Cross out one unnecessary word in each line.

1 He said the watch had fallen off the back part of a lorry. I was right not to trust him.
2 She's made good progress at work, but it's still too early days. We'll see what happens.
3 A beautiful blue silk shirt caught up my eye in the shop window.
4 I think she just said it on her purpose to annoy me. And she succeeded.
5 I'd better go or I'll be late. Oh, and by in the way, what time's the meeting tomorrow?
6 Why were you in your pyjamas in the street at 1.00? ~ Well, it's a long time story.

Unit 4

1 Read the sentences on the left. Circle the phrase on the right which expresses the meaning most accurately.

1 We need to cut back on coffee.	*drink less coffee | stop drinking coffee*
2 I'm looking after the children.	*looking for them | taking care of them*
3 She tried it on.	*put on a piece of clothing | made an effort*
4 He takes after his father.	*looks after him | behaves like him*
5 The girls have fallen out.	*they've had a row | they've had an accident*
6 What does it stand for?	*represent | show*

2 Complete the dialogues with a suitable phrasal verb.

1 There's a mistake here. ~ That's OK, it's in pencil. I'll __________ it __________ .
2 Did you find the book by chance? ~ Yes, I __________ it in a second-hand bookshop.
3 Is business getting better? ~ Yes. Things have started to __________ recently.
4 Were the two girls late? ~ Yes. They didn't __________ until 9.30.
5 What time should we be at the airport? ~ We're meant to __________ __________ an hour and a half before take-off.
6 He didn't invent the story, did he? ~ Yes, he just __________ it __________ .
7 Is that her boyfriend? ~ Yes. They've been __________ each other for months.
8 I don't know what this word means. ~ Well, __________ it __________ , then.

Unit 5

1 Put the words in the correct order and add one more word.

▸ the | at | uncle | I | my | off | station I saw my uncle off at the station.
1 on | illness | about | and | she | went | her ________
2 in | was | Brenda | garden | messing | the ________
3 the | was | deep | by | cut | village | snow ________
4 lunchtime | working | children | the | carried | until ________
5 club | outside | boys | the | hanging | the | were ________
6 a | of | lying | there | lot | was | money ________

2 Complete the dialogues using a phrasal verb.

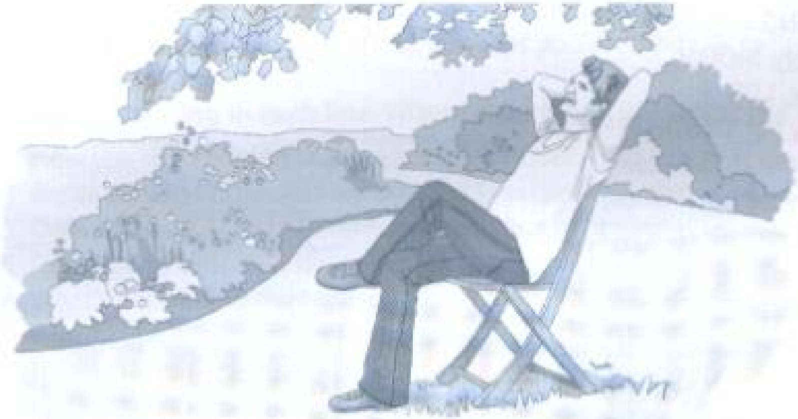

1 A Did you have a relaxing time?
B Yes, I just ________ in the garden. It was lovely.
2 A Did she interrupt your work?
B Yes, and I really needed to ________ ________ with my project.
3 A Why are you going to the airport?
B I'm going to ________ my brother ________ .
4 A He's very boring, isn't he?
B Yes, he's always ________ ________ about his job.
5 A Is Ella very untidy?
B Definitely! She leaves all her clothes ________ .
6 A Jenny's very annoying.
B Yes, she ________ losing things – it drives me mad.
7 A Was it a good play?
B Well, the acting was OK, but it just ________ ________ for hours.
8 A Did you leave the party late?
B Yes, I ________ after it finished to help clear up.

Unit 6

1 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 When you go to John's, would you *bring* | *put* my coat back home, please? I left it there.
2 Come on, eat *up* | *out* that salad; it's good for you.
3 The room was a terrible mess and it took me ages to *clear* | *tidy* it up.
4 I paid him too much, but I'm sure I'll *pay* | *get* it back if I ask for it.
5 Did you *live* | *go* through the list and discuss everything?
6 She took a book from the shelf and *looked* | *flicked* through it.

2 Rewrite the sentences using a phrasal verb. Use the words in capital letters.

▸ If you borrow the key, please return it. BACK If you borrow the key, please put it back.
1 Please put everything in order in the office. UP ……
2 I'll have to return these trousers to the shop. BACK ……
3 When do you think he'll return from lunch? BACK ……
4 I looked quickly at the magazine. THROUGH ……
5 Maggie rang – she wants you to return her call. BACK ……
6 Did you check the figures? THROUGH ……

Unit 7

1 Complete the phrasal verbs.

1 When the sun …… down, it's getting near the end of the day.
2 If someone …… up at 7.00, it means they arrive at 7.00.
3 If you …… on weight, it means you get heavier.
4 If you're …… up at work, it means you're busy.
5 If someone's …… their living room up, it means they're decorating it.
6 If your car …… down on the way home, it means you can't get home.
7 If an alarm …… off, it makes a loud noise.
8 If you …… your coat up, it means you fasten the buttons of your coat.
9 If someone …… down, it means they start crying.
10 If the lights suddenly …… off, it means the room goes dark.
11 If your salary …… down, it means you'll earn less money.
12 If something …… up, it means you find it by chance.

2 Complete the crossword. Replace the words in italics in the clues with a phrasal verb.

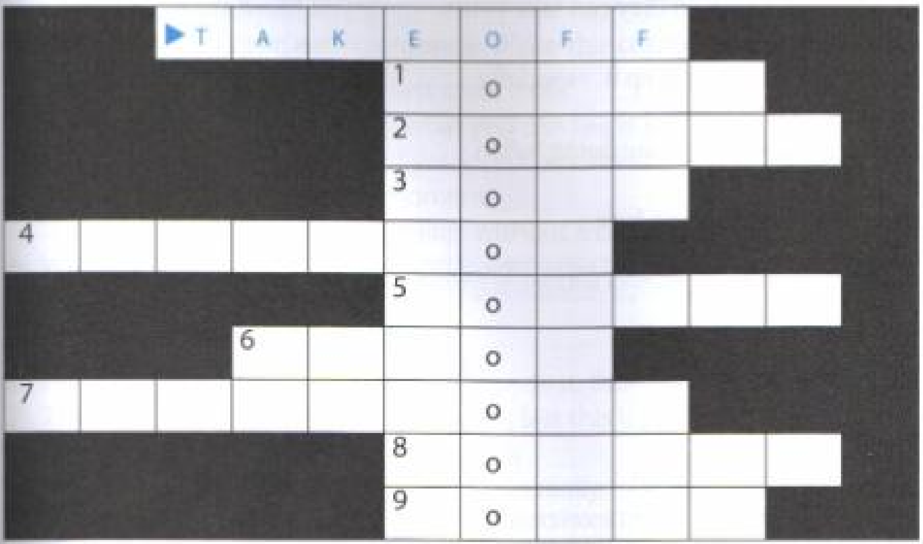

▸ I was told to *remove* my shoes as soon as I went in the building.
1 The bomb landed, but luckily it didn't *explode*.
2 Do you think the prices will *fall* before the end of the year?
3 They always tell you to *fasten* your seat belt when you get on the plane.
4 Could you *turn on* the lights, please? It's a bit dark in here.
5 Did you watch the sun *rise* this morning? It was beautiful.
6 I *got dressed in* an old pair of boots and a raincoat and went for a walk.
7 The photocopier in our office *stopped working*, so I couldn't send him the documents.
8 My flat has been *redecorated* in bright colours.
9 Why did the lights suddenly *stop working* in the middle of the evening?

8 I can follow classroom language

A Teachers' instructions

Teachers often use certain idioms and phrasal verbs when they give instructions in class.

First of all, let's **go over** the homework.
You can **leave out** Exercise 2.
If you make a mistake, **rub** it **out**.
Take it in turns to read the dialogue.
Pascal, **swap places with** Marcel, please.
Finish it **off** at home and **hand it in** tomorrow.
Put all the books **away** before you leave.
OK, let's **call it a day**.

Glossary

first of all	before doing anything else.
go over/through sth	look at, check, or discuss sth carefully.
leave sth out	not do sth, e.g. an exercise (**leave sb out** = not include sb).
rub sth out	remove marks made by a pencil, chalk, etc. using a rubber.
take it in turns	do sth one after another so that everyone has an opportunity to do it (also **take turns at sth**).
swap places (**with sb**)	take sb's seat or position so they can take yours.
finish sth off	do the last part of sth.
put sth away	put sth where you usually keep it, especially after using it.
call it a day	INF decide to stop what you are doing (often work).

spotlight *hand sth in/out/round*

If you **hand sth in**, you give something to a person in authority, e.g. a teacher or the police.

If you **hand sth out**, you give something to each person in a group, e.g. *Hand out the books.* SYN **give sth out**.

If you **hand sth round**, you pass something, especially food or drink, to people in a group: *Lars, could you hand the cakes round, please?*

1 Complete the phrases below using words in the box.

it　of　it　a day　places　over something　all　in turns　something out

call .... swap .... take ....
go .... hand .... first ....

2 Complete the teacher's instructions.

Silvia, first of (1) ...., could you (2) .... out these worksheets, please? Thanks. Now everyone, I want you to do the first exercise and we'll go (3) .... the answers when you've finished. If you use pencil, you can rub (4) .... the answers afterwards, and do it again later. Marco, I know you have to leave in a minute, so why don't you finish it (5) .... at home and hand it (6) .... to me tomorrow?

3 Complete the last word in each sentence.

1 If you want to talk to Joe, we'll have to swap ....
2 After you've used the CD player, remember to put it ....
3 Paul, you can't use the computer all the time; you'll have to take it in ....
4 I think we've done enough; let's call it a ....
5 If you can't do one of the questions, just leave it ....
6 As it was our last lesson, the teacher made cakes for the class and handed them ....

B Teachers' advice

At different times, teachers have given me the following advice.

If you're doing an English course, **take** it **seriously**.

Do written work **in rough** first, then it doesn't matter if you **cross** something **out**.

Practising with classmates will help you to **build up** your confidence.

If you're not sure of the meaning of a word, **look** it **up** rather than guess.

It's no good writing things in a notebook if you don't **go back** and study them again.

What you learn in class is just **the tip of the iceberg**. You need to study **at home** as well.

Glossary

take sth seriously	think that sth is important and should be given careful attention.
look sth up	look for information about sth in a reference book or online.
in rough	If you write sth **in rough**, you do it for a first time without worrying about mistakes because you will write it correctly later.
cross sth out	In this sentence, *it* is **crossed out**: *Look it something up.*
it's no good (doing sth)	= it will have no positive result (doing sth). SYN **it's no use (doing sth)**.
go back (to…)	return to a person, place, subject, or activity.
build sth up	increase or develop sth over a period of time (**build up confidence / strength / a reputation**, etc.).
the tip of the iceberg	only a small part of a much larger problem or matter.
at home	in your own house or flat.

4 Correct the mistake in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

1 If you see a mistake, you can just cross it off. ________
2 I think it's a real problem, and what you can see is just the top of the iceberg. ________
3 It's no use to study grammar if you don't practise it. ________
4 *My brother's in home at the moment.* ________
5 It's not good trying to learn English without a dictionary. ________
6 When you've finished the text, get back to the beginning and read it again. ________

5 Complete the sentences.

1 I always write essays in ________ first, then I copy them out later.
2 They think they've solved the problem, but this is just the tip of the ________ .
3 My name was on the list, but somebody ________ it out – I don't know why.
4 When I studied English at school, I didn't really ________ it seriously.
5 I wrote the answers quickly, then I went ________ and checked them carefully later.
6 It's no ________ telling him to work harder. He just won't listen to you.
7 He missed last term with a serious illness, and he'll need time to ________ up his strength.
8 Give me the dictionary and I'll ________ it up.

6 ABOUT YOU Do you do any of the things suggested at the top of the page? Is it all good advice or is there any bad advice, in your opinion? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

9 I can talk about learning

A How to make progress

Dos and don'ts

- Don't be embarrassed about speaking: the main thing is to **make yourself understood.**
- Don't be afraid to make mistakes: you learn from **trial and error.**
- The classroom is an opportunity to practise speaking, so **make the most of** it.
- There are certain things, such as irregular verbs, that you can **learn by heart.**
- **Saying** something **out loud** can help you to practise the pronunciation and remember it.
- Don't miss lessons, or you**'ll get behind with** your work and find it difficult to **catch up.**
- Don't **give up. Stick at** it and you'll **get there** in the end.

Glossary

dos and don'ts	things you should and shouldn't do.
make yourself understood	speak in a way that others can understand.
trial and error	a way of solving a problem by trying several possibilities and learning from your mistakes.
make the most of sth	enjoy sth or use sth as much as you can.
learn sth (off) by heart	learn sth by reading or hearing it repeatedly until you remember it exactly.
(say/read sth) out loud	(say/read sth) so that others can hear it.
get behind (with sth)	not do sth on time, and then have more to do later.
catch up (with sb)	reach the level of others who are more advanced.
give up	stop trying to do sth, or accept that you cannot do sth.
stick at sth	continue with sth even though it is difficult.
get there	achieve sth after a period of work or effort.

1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

▸ At school, we had to learn certain poems / heart. by
1 My pronunciation isn't very good, but I manage to make understood. ....
2 It'll take me a long time to become a doctor, but I'll there eventually. ....
3 He was ill for ages, and unfortunately he got behind his studies. ....
4 It's your only chance, so make the most it. ....
5 I missed several lessons, so now I have to up with the others in the class. ....
6 The teacher started the lesson with a long list of and don'ts. ....

2 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 3.)

1 Can you usually .... yourself understood in English?
2 Have you tried to learn certain things by ....? If so, what?
3 Do you say words out .... to help you to remember them?
4 Do you always .... the most of your time in class?
5 Do you ever .... behind with any of your studies?
6 Do you think trial and .... is a good learning method?
7 If you start something, do you generally .... at it?
8 Have you ever started a course and then .... up?

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student. Which is the best piece of advice in the *Dos and don'ts* above?

B A learning process

As I had planned a holiday in Spain, I decided to **brush up on** my Spanish before I went, and I enrolled on a local evening course. At first I had to **rack my brains** to remember anything, and I couldn't **make sense of** the grammar, so it was very hard to **keep up with** the other students. Then, after a while, things started **coming back to** me, and I realized there were lots of words **on the tip of my tongue**. But some of the new vocabulary wouldn't **sink in** – words just **went in one ear and out the other**. When you work hard all day, it's not easy to **keep your mind on** a difficult subject in the evening. But I stuck at it, and I began to **pick** things **up** more quickly. All I have to do now is **keep it up**.

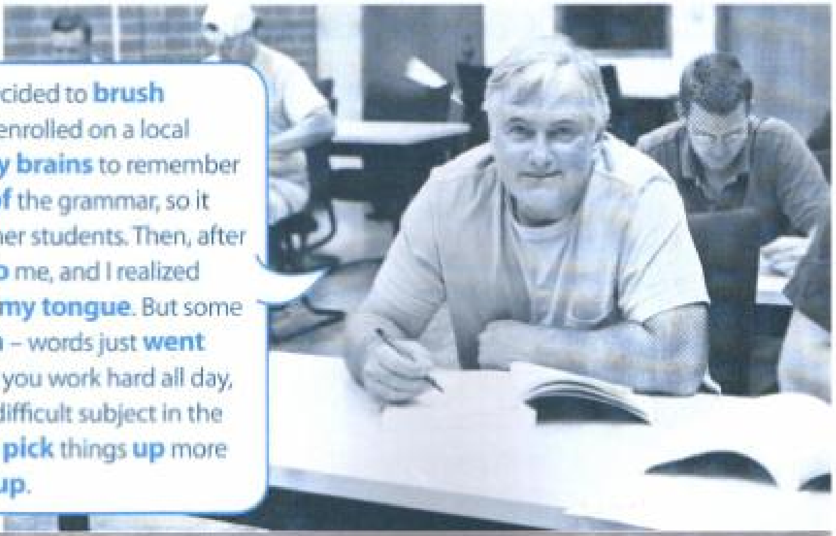

Glossary

brush up on sth / **brush sth up**	improve your knowledge or skill in sth, especially when you have not used it for a period of time. (👁 See page 144.)
make sense of sth	manage to understand sth.
keep up (**with sb**)	make progress at the same speed as others.
sink in	(of information or experiences) be remembered or understood.
keep your mind on sth	continue to concentrate on sth.
pick sth up	learn sth without making a big effort.
keep it up	continue to do sth as well as you are doing it now.

spotlight Remembering and forgetting

If you **rack your brains** (or **brain**), you try hard to remember something.
If information **comes back to** you, you remember it.
If a word or name is **on the tip of your tongue**, you are sure you know it, but you can't remember it at that moment.
If information **goes in one ear and out the other**, you forget it quickly.

4 Complete the six phrases using words in the box.

the tip in one ear your brains sense of something of my tongue it up and out the other your mind on something

rack ....
keep ....
go ....
on ....
make ....
keep ....

5 Complete the sentences.

1 I often find that I have words .... the tip of my ....
2 I often have to .... my brains to remember things I've learnt recently.
3 I think I'm doing really well in English, but I need to .... it up.
4 I'm bad at languages. New words go in one .... and out the ....
5 I'm good at languages. I can usually .... things up quite quickly.
6 I find it quite hard to .... sense of the Present Perfect in English.
7 If I don't write down new words as I learn them, they don't sink ....
8 I need to brush .... on irregular English verbs.
9 When I practise speaking, I find that lots of words .... back to me.

6 ABOUT YOU Read the sentences in Exercise 5 again. Which ones are true for you? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

10 I can talk about exams

A Revising for an exam

Thursday: my last chance to revise for my economics exam. I've worked hard to try and **get on top of** this subject. Not only have I **got into the habit of** reading the business pages in the newspapers, but I also spent the holidays **going through** all my lecture notes. I know it's important not to **get** too **bogged down**, so I decided not to study everything but just try and **work out** which questions might **come up** – and concentrate on those. I also went through some past papers with a friend, which was really useful. Now, I'm just **keeping my fingers crossed** for tomorrow – but the truth is, I can only **do my best**, and **it's not the end of the world** if I fail. Anyway, I'd better **get down** to some work.

Glossary

get on top of sth	manage to control or deal with sth. SYN **get to grips with sth**.
get into the habit of doing sth	develop a particular habit.
go through sth	look at or study notes, papers, etc. SYN **go over sth**.
get bogged down (in sth)	INF become so involved with the details of sth that you can't make any progress.
work sth out	solve a problem by considering the facts.
come up	If a question, number, name, etc. **comes up**, it is selected and appears somewhere (in this case, in an exam paper).
keep your fingers crossed	hope for good luck or success.
it's not the end of the world	INF = it's not the worst thing that could happen.
get down to sth	begin to do sth and give serious attention to it.

spotlight Idioms with *best*

If you **do your best** or **try your best** or **do something to the best of your ability**, you try as hard as possible to achieve something.

To wish someone luck for an exam, you can say **(The) best of luck!**

1 Cross out one wrong word in each sentence.

▸ It's not the ~~last~~ end of the world.
1 I must get to the grips with this.
2 You can only do to your best.
3 Keep both your fingers crossed!
4 I did it up to the best of my ability.
5 Best of the luck!
6 He works it out answers to problems.

2 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 3.)

1 Do you find it easy to .... down to studying in the evening?
2 Do you always do things to the best of your .... ?
3 Do you ever get .... down in details when you're working?
4 Do you go .... your notes when revising for an exam?
5 Do you ever try to guess which topics will .... up in an exam?
6 Is it a good idea to get into the .... of studying regularly?
7 What's the best way to get on .... of a subject?
8 Do you ever feel it'll be the end of the .... if you fail an exam?

3 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B What happens on exam day?

- The night before an exam, I **stay up** late and revise. ____
- Outside the exam room, I **steer clear of** other students who are in a panic. ____
- I **keep one eye on** the clock during the exam so that I don't **run out of** time. ____
- I try to **stick to** the question. ____
- If I **get stuck** on a question, I **miss** it **out** and go on to an easier one. ____
- If my mind **goes blank**, I **breathe in** and **out** slowly to calm myself. ____
- I **read through** my answers at the end to check that they **make sense**. ____

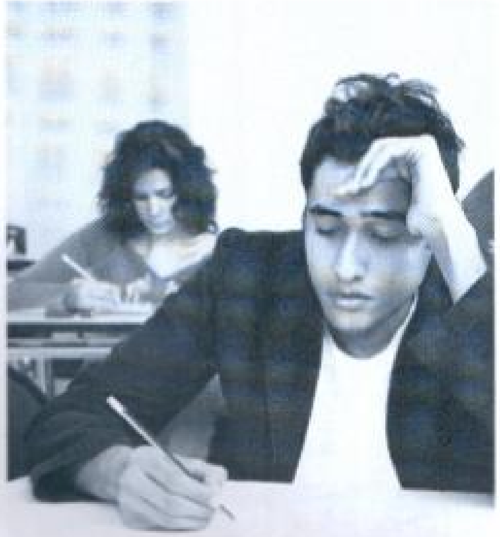

Glossary

stay up	go to bed later than usual.
steer/stay clear of sb/sth	take care to avoid sb/sth.
keep/have one eye on sth	look at or watch sth while doing sth else.
run out of sth	use all of sth and have no more left.
stick to sth	talk or write about one particular thing only. SYN **keep to sth**.
get stuck (on sth)	not be able to continue with sth because it is too hard.
miss sth out	not include sth, or fail to include sth. SYN **leave sth out**.
go blank	If your mind **goes blank** you are unable to remember the answer to a question.
breathe in	take air into your lungs. OPP **breathe out**.
read through sth	read sth to check details and look for mistakes.
make sense	have a clear meaning; be logical and easy to understand.

4 Circle the correct answer(s). Both words may be correct.

1 I *stayed* | *continued* up late last night to finish an essay.
2 Most candidates fail because they don't *keep* | *stick* to the questions.
3 I was in such a panic my mind just went completely *black* | *blank*.
4 Try to keep an *ear* | *eye* on the time during a test so that you finish every question.
5 I finished the letter and then I *went* | *read* it through carefully to check the spelling.
6 I got *stuck* | *delayed* on one question, so I *missed* | *left* it out.

5 One word is missing in each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

I know it was very silly, but I ⁄ up very late last night, and ▸ stayed
through my notes, so this morning I was really tired. I got to the 1 ______
exam feeling very stressed, and I tried to in and out slowly to 2 ______
help myself relax, but I could feel my going blank. Eventually, 3 ______
I looked at the questions, but none of them sense; I was in 4 ______
such a state. Of course, I didn't keep one on the clock and 5 ______
unfortunately, I ran of time. And as a result of that, I had to 6 ______
out the last question completely, so I knew there was not much 7 ______
chance that I would pass. I steered of my friends as I left the room. 8 ______

6 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in the text at the top true about you? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

11 I can talk about ability and progress

A Assessing students

University lecturer Peter Rose gives his honest opinion of some of his students.

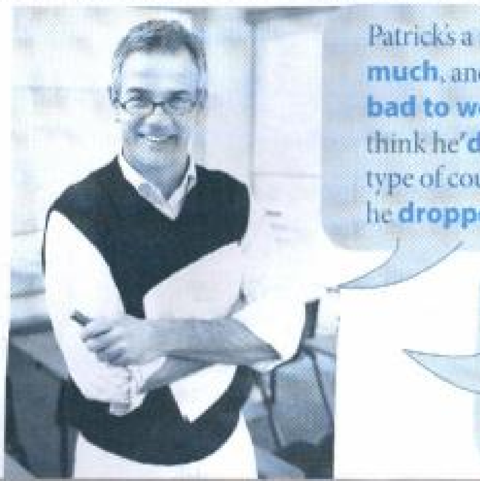

Patrick's a nice guy, but his work **isn't up to much**, and frankly things have **gone from bad to worse** as the term has progressed. I think he**'d be better off** doing a different type of course, and it wouldn't surprise me if he **dropped out** at the end of the year.

By comparison, Charlotte is **in her element** here. She's bright, she can **think on her feet**, and she's confident in her own ability. She'll **go far**.

With Erin, **it's early days**. At the beginning of term I felt she **sat back** too much and let others do all the talking. But now she's starting to **come up with** more of her own ideas.

Glossary

not be up to much	INF not be very good.
go from bad to worse	(of a bad condition or situation) become even worse.
be better off (**doing sth**)	used to suggest that sb should do sth differently.
drop out (**of sth**)	leave school or college without finishing your studies.
by comparison	used for talking about ways in which two people or things are different.
in your element	doing what you are good at and enjoy.
think on your feet	be able to think and react to things very quickly.
go far	be successful in the future.
it's early days	= it's too soon to know how sb/sth will develop.
sit back	relax, especially by not doing anything or not getting involved.
come up with sth	produce ideas or a solution to sth.

1 Cross out the wrong word.

1 think on your *foot* | *feet*
2 by *compare* | *comparison*
3 go from bad to *worse* | *worst*
4 be *better* | *best* off doing something
5 it's *early* | *earlier* days
6 *on* | *in* your element

2 Organize the words into sentences and add one word.

▸ his | on feet | can | he He can think on his feet.
1 she | her | far | career | in | will ____
2 was | element | I | at | my | university ____
3 came | good | she | ideas | with | some ____
4 sat | did | and | he | nothing ____
5 college | drop | did | why | she | of | ? ____
6 to | went | from | worse | it ____

3 Complete the sentences. Then underline the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

1 Most of the group are making good progress. By ____, Sam is quite slow.
2 The new waiter is doing quite well at the moment, but it's ____ days.
3 It used to be quite a good school, but it's not ____ to much now.
4 I hated university, so I ____ out at the end of the first year, and got a job.
5 Oscar's not very good at ____ on his feet; he needs time to organize his ideas.
6 I think she'd be ____ off living at home at her age.

8 Assessing the lecturer

Here, the same students give their opinion of Peter Rose.

PATRICK: He's OK, and he **knows his stuff**, but he's not very encouraging. I always **do my best**, but he **doesn't think much of** me.

ERIN: At first I thought he **was** a bit **out of touch**, and he wasn't very friendly, but maybe we just **got off on the wrong foot**. He thought I **wasn't pulling my weight**, when in fact I was just too shy to say anything. But now I like him a lot more.

CHARLOTTE: I'm **getting on** well, and that's largely **thanks to** Peter Rose. He really motivates me and **brings out the best in** me.

Glossary

know your stuff	INF know a lot about a particular subject.
do your best	try as hard as possible to achieve sth.
get on	make progress.
thanks to sb/sth	used to say that sb/sth is responsible for sth.
bring out the best/worst in sb	make sb behave in the best or worst way that they can.
be out of touch (with sth)	not know or understand recent ideas in a particular subject or area.
get/start off on the wrong foot	INF make a bad start at a relationship.
pull your weight	work as hard as everyone else in a job or activity.

spotlight *think the world of sb/sth, not think much of sb/sth, etc.*

These idioms express a high or low opinion of somebody or something:
We don't think much of the boys. = We have a low opinion of them.
He thinks the world of his niece. = He feels great love or affection for her.
She thinks a lot of Patricia. = She has a high opinion of her.

4 Complete the idioms with a suitable verb.

▸ be .... out of touch
1 .... on the wrong foot
2 .... your stuff
3 .... your best
4 .... the world of someone
5 .... the best in someone
6 not .... much of something
7 .... your weight

5 Complete the dialogues.

1 How are you .... on? ~ Quite well, actually. I got good marks last term.
2 Is she good at her subject? ~ Not really. She's a bit .... of touch.
3 Did she like the course? ~ No, she didn't think .... of it.
4 What's the problem with Eric? ~ He's just not .... his weight.
5 Is Mr Hall a good teacher? ~ Oh yes, he knows his ....
6 Did Nadia pass the exam? ~ Yes, ... to her uncle; he helped her a lot.
7 What went wrong between you and the teacher? ~ We started off on the wrong ....
8 Good luck. ~ Thanks. I'll .... my best.

12 I can talk about thought processes

What do you think? How do you think?

I'm often surprised by events. I need to **think ahead** more. ☐

I accept other people's opinions too easily. I need to **think for myself** more. ☐

If I have a problem, I like to **talk it over** with friends or family. ☐

If I have a problem, I prefer to **think it over** on my own. ☐

I do things **on the spur of the moment**. I don't think before I **make up my mind**! ☐

I'm not very good at **thinking straight** in stressful situations. ☐

I always **think twice** before lending people money. ☐

I sometimes **think back to** my time at primary school. ☐

Glossary

think ahead (**to sth**)	think about a future event and plan for it.
think for yourself	form your own opinions rather than simply believing what other people say.
talk it/sth over	discuss sth with sb, especially to help you make a decision.
think it/sth over/through	think carefully about the possible results of sth.
on the spur of the moment	suddenly; without planning in advance.
make up your mind	decide.
think straight	(often used in the negative) think in a clear and logical way.
think twice	think very carefully about sth or before doing sth because you know about the possible dangers and problems.
think back (**to sth**)	think about things that happened in the past.

1 One word is missing after *think* in each sentence. Write it at the end.

1 I couldn't think; I was nervous and everyone was looking at me. ……………
2 We must think and decide where we're going for our holidays this year. ……………
3 He needs to think himself rather than go along with everyone else. ……………
4 When I think to my school days, I realize how unhappy I was. ……………
5 If you have a burglar alarm, it makes burglars think about breaking in. ……………
6 Could you give me a few days to think over? ……………

2 Complete the sentences.

1 I've got a chance to work abroad, but I'd like to think it …………… first.
2 Do you ever think …………… to the time you spent in Kenya?
3 We offered Maria the job but she wants to talk it …………… with her family.
4 I was under so much stress that I just wasn't thinking ……………; I was very confused.
5 I can't make up my …………… what to wear to the party tomorrow.
6 Don't listen to what other people say – think for …………… .
7 I just accepted the offer on the …………… of the moment. I wish I hadn't now.
8 After his accident, he'll think …………… before driving quite so fast.

3 ABOUT YOU **Are the sentences at the top of the page true for you? Write your own answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.**

13 I can talk about knowledge and skills

A Did you understand the lecture?
B No, I couldn't **take it in**. I was too tired.

A Are you **any good at** maths?
B No, I **haven't got a head for** figures.

A What was her name again?
B I'm afraid it**'s slipped my mind**.

A He's a taxi driver, isn't he?
B Yes, he **knows** London **like the back of his hand**.

A Did Dave really make that chair himself?
B Yeah, well, he's **good with his hands**.

A I've never used this computer before.
B It's OK once you **get the hang of** it.

A Is it OK for Sam to use that machine?
B Yes, sure. He **knows what he's doing**.

A Do you fancy a game of chess?
B Well, I'm a bit **out of practice** but I'll **give** it **a try**.

Glossary

take it/sth in	fully understand and remember what you hear, see, or read.
have got a (good) head for sth	be naturally good at doing calculations, remembering facts, etc.
slip your mind	If sth **slips your mind**, you forget it, or forget to do it.
know sth like the back of your hand	INF know a place very well.
get the hang of sth	INF learn or begin to understand how to do sth.
know what you are doing	INF have experience in doing sth and understand it fully.
out of practice	less good at doing sth than you used to be, because you haven't done it for some time.
give sth a try	make an attempt to do sth.

spotlight Idioms with *good*

Are you any good at art? = able to draw/paint well.
I'm no good at skiing. = unable to ski well.
He's good with his hands. = able to use his hands well.
He's no good with people. = unable to deal with people well.

1 Cross out one wrong word in each sentence.

1 I'm a bit out of the practice these days.
2 She knows what that she's doing.
3 Would you like to give to it a try?
4 Are you no any good at making things?
5 I'm no much good at maths.
6 I meant to do it but it slipped out my mind.
7 She knew it like the back side of her hand.
8 Are you any good with for electrical things?

2 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 3.)

1 Are you good ______ your hands?
2 Have you got a good ______ for figures?
3 Do you find it easy to take ______ a lot of factual information?
4 Which town do you know like the ______ of your hand?
5 Are you any ______ at cooking? If not, are you prepared to ______ it a try?
6 Do other people's birthdays ever slip your ______?
7 Do you think it's easy for a beginner to get the ______ of skiing?
8 Do you cycle much these days, or are you ______ of practice?

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

Review: Thinking, learning, and knowledge

Unit 8

1 Tick (✓) the correct meaning.

1 If you *put something away*, you:
  a) hide it where others cannot find it. ☐
  b) put it where you usually keep it, after using it. ☐
2 If you *hand something round*, you:
  a) pass something, such as sandwiches, to people in a group. ☐
  b) stand in a circle with a group of people, holding hands. ☐
3 If you *build up something*, you:
  a) make or construct it. ☐
  b) increase or develop it. ☐
4 If you *take something in turns*, you:
  a) do something one after another so everyone has a chance to do it. ☐
  b) do something by moving round in a circle. ☐
5 If you *hand something in*, you:
  a) give it to each person in a group. ☐
  b) give it to a person in authority. ☐
6 If you *cross something out*, you:
  a) remove it with a rubber. ☐
  b) put a line through it, usually because it is wrong. ☐

2 Rewrite the sentences using an idiom or phrasal verb which includes the word in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.

▸ She drew a line through his name. CROSS *She crossed out his name.*
1 It's just a small part of a larger problem. ICEBERG ……………
2 Make sure you check your work carefully. OVER ……………
3 OK, let's stop now. DAY ……………
4 Mark, sit in Eve's seat, then Eve can sit in yours. SWAP ……………
5 It's a waste of time if you don't listen. GOOD ……………
6 He's working hard on the course. SERIOUSLY ……………
7 Before we do anything else, turn to page 45. ALL ……………
8 You can omit Exercise 3. LEAVE ……………

Unit 9

1 Complete the definitions.

1 *Make sense of something* means to manage to …………… something.
2 *Keep your mind on something* means to continue to …………… on something.
3 *Stick at something* means to continue with something even though it is …………… .
4 If something is *on the tip of your tongue*, it means you …………… it, but can't …………… it at that moment.
5 If you *pick up* a language, it means you …………… it without making a lot of …………… .
6 If something *goes in one ear and out the other*, it means you …………… it quickly.

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 A How's the Italian course going?
  B Oh, I've been so busy recently that I'm (1) …………… behind with my studies. I'm going to spend a few evenings this week trying to (2) …………… up with the rest of the class.
  A Well, try and (3) …………… it up – it would be a shame to give (4) …………… now.

2 A I don't feel I'm making much progress on the photography course. There's a lot of information and it just doesn't seem to sink (5) __________ .
B Well, a lot of it is about trial and (6) __________ , isn't it?
A Yes, I suppose I'll (7) __________ there in the end.
3 A When you were at school, did you have to learn poetry by (8) __________ ?
B Oh, yes. Actually I was (9) __________ my brains this morning to try and remember a poem I learnt as a child. I'm sure it will (10) __________ back to me later today.

Unit 10

1 Complete the crossword.

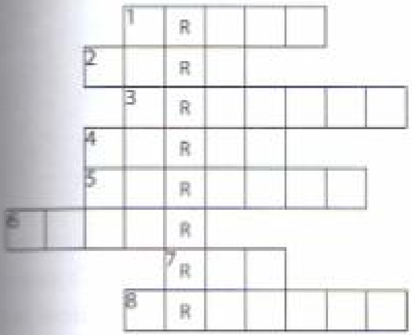

1 get to __________ with something = manage to deal with something
2 __________ something out = solve a problem by looking carefully at the facts
3 keep your fingers __________ = hope that something will be successful
4 it's not the end of the __________ = it's not the worst thing that can happen
5 go __________ something = look at or discuss something carefully
6 __________ clear of someone = avoid someone because meeting them may cause problems
7 __________ out of something = have none of something left
8 __________ in = take air into your lungs

2 Rearrange the words into sentences, and add one word.

▸ sense | doesn't | this | really | question This question doesn't really **make** sense.
1 the | blank | exam | mind | my | just | in __________
2 question | the | decided | I | miss | to | first __________
3 read | but | the | sense | I | didn't | it | letter __________
4 her | the | to | did | she | it | of | ability __________
5 work | some | down | I | must | to | now __________
6 too | down | I | detail | bogged | in | much __________

Unit 11

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 She's come up ____
2 He doesn't know ____
3 I passed the test, thanks ____
4 The teacher was really out ____
5 Things went from bad ____
6 You have to think ____
7 I don't think much ____
8 She'd be better off ____

a to worse.
b doing a different subject.
c his stuff.
d of his work.
e on your feet.
f with a great idea.
g to my teacher.
h of touch.

2 Read the email from a mother who is worried about her son. One word is missing in each line. Where does it go, and what is it?

… and I'm really worried about Sam; he's talking about dropping ⁄ of ▸ out ________
university. The thing is, it's days, and he needs time to get to know 1 ________
the teachers. I'm worried that he has got on the wrong foot with one 2 ________
of them; she's accused him of not pulling weight. I know that Sam 3 ________
appears to back and not say anything, but it doesn't mean he's lazy. 4 ________
He's so different from Mary. Her tutor the world of her, and it's clear 5 ________
that she's in element at Oxford and is enjoying it enormously. She 6 ________
always does her, whatever she's involved in, and I know that 7 ________
she'll far and have a brilliant career. And that really makes it 8 ________
harder for Sam. He needs a good teacher to bring the best in him. I 9 ________
hope he gets better with his studies after the Christmas holidays. 10 ________

Unit 12

1 Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1 She'll need some time to think about the situation before ________ up her mind.
thinking ☐ doing ☐ making ☐

2 If I were in your position I would think ________ about buying that motorbike.
back ☐ twice ☐ straight ☐

3 Before accepting the job, I'd like some time to think ________
for myself ☐ ahead ☐ it over ☐

4 He's very dependent on his parents; he needs to think ________ more.
for himself ☐ it over ☐ twice ☐

5 I've decided to talk it ________ with my husband and see what we can do.
back ☐ over ☐ up ☐

6 I couldn't think ________ because too many people were talking.
twice ☐ ahead ☐ straight ☐

Unit 13

1 Agree with A's questions in the dialogues using a word from the box in each response.

take good ✓ back doing hands practice good slipped

▸ A Does he deal with children well?
B Yes, he's good with children ________.

1 A She knows this area really well, doesn't she?
B Yes, she ________.

2 A She's not a very skilful cook, is she?
B No, she's ________.

3 A You forgot the appointment, didn't you?
B Yes, it ________.

4 A Was it hard to understand and remember all the information?
B Yes, I couldn't ________.

5 A You're very good at making things, aren't you?
B Yes, I'm ________.

6 A It's ages since you played the piano, isn't it?
B Yes, I'm ________.

7 A Andrew's very good at investing money, isn't he?
B Yes, he certainly ________.

14 I can talk about getting in touch

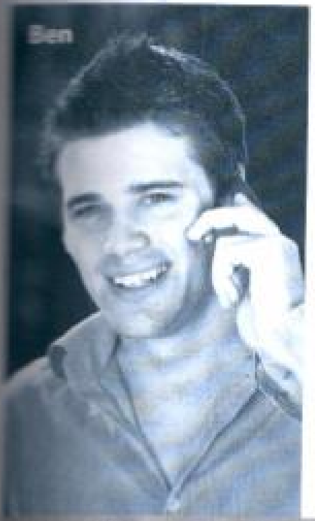

BEN Have you **broken the news** to the family yet?

EMILY Well, I**'ve been in touch with** most of them, but I can't **get hold of** Uncle Nick.

BEN No, I **have**n't **heard from** him for a while either. Try **giving** his office **a ring**.

EMILY I did, but he's not there at the moment, so I've had to **drop him a line**.

BEN OK. So, shall I **keep quiet about** your move until it**'s common knowledge**?

EMILY Yes, please. I don't want anyone to feel they**'ve been kept in the dark**.

BEN Sure. I promise I **won't breathe a word**.

Ben's cousin, Emily

Glossary

break the news	be the first to tell sb about some important news.
get hold of sb	INF find or make contact with sb by email or phone.
hear from sb	be contacted by sb by email, phone, or letter.
give sb a ring	INF phone sb. SYN **give sb a call**.
drop sb a line	INF write a short letter or email to sb.
keep quiet (**about sth**)	say nothing about sth.
be common knowledge	be sth that everyone knows.
keep sb in the dark	If you **keep sb in the dark**, you don't tell them about sth important.
not breathe a word (**about/of sth**)	not tell anyone about sth that is secret. SYN **not say a word** (**about sth**).

spotlight *in touch*

If you **are in touch with sb**, you are in contact with them by speaking or writing to them. If you **get in touch with sb**, you make contact with them. If you **keep in touch with sb**, you continue to have contact with them. If you **lose touch with sb**, you no longer have contact with them.

1 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 Have you been *in* | *on* touch with Romi?
2 Who *dropped* | *broke* the news to Mina?
3 Don't *say* | *breathe* a word to the kids.
4 Have you heard *by* | *from* Mari recently?
5 I said we'd give Irina a *call* | *ring*.
6 I'll drop Vincent a *line* | *call*.

2 Complete the dialogues. Then underline the full idiom in each dialogue.

1 You mustn't say anything. ~ Don't worry, I'll keep ______ about it.
2 He's upset because we ______ him in the dark. ~ Well, that's understandable.
3 Have you got in ______ with Michael since last week? ~ No, not yet.
4 Do they know you're getting married? ~ Yes, I ______ the news last night.
5 Have you told the class you're having a baby? ~ Yes, it's common ______ now.
6 Have you tried to get ______ of the manager? ~ Yes, I ______ her a ring earlier.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 Which do you use most to get in touch with friends: phone, text, or email?
2 If you thank someone for a present, do you give them a ring or drop them a line?
3 How often do you hear from friends who live in a different town?
4 How often do you get in touch with friends in other countries?
5 Do people find you difficult to get hold of sometimes? If so, why?

15 I can describe ways of saying things

My boss treats me like a child: she's always **talking down to** me.

I shouldn't have mentioned Joey's girlfriend; I think I **put my foot in it**.

Ann **gets** things **across** clearly – and she's the only person who **talks sense** around here.

My teacher's got a very quiet voice; I wish he'd **speak up**.

My sister's very direct and always **speaks her mind**, but at least she never talks about people **behind their backs**.

My daughter **answers** me **back** when I'm annoyed with her. I'm always **telling** her **off for** being so cheeky!

My colleague talks non-stop! You **can't get a word in edgeways**.

Glossary

talk down to sb	talk to sb as if they are less intelligent or important than you.
put your foot in it	INF say or do sth that makes sb embarrassed or upset.
get sth across (**to sb**)	succeed in making sb understand sth.
talk sense	say things that are sensible and correct. OPP **talk nonsense**.
speak up	speak more loudly.
speak your mind	say exactly what you think in a very direct way.
behind sb's back	without sb knowing about it. OPP **to sb's face**.
answer (**sb**) **back**	reply rudely to sb who has more authority than you.
tell sb off (**for sth / for doing sth**)	INF speak angrily to sb for doing sth wrong.
not get a word in edgeways	not be able to say anything because sb else is talking too much.

1 Would you be happy or unhappy in these situations? Write H (happy) or U (unhappy).

1 You ask a child to do something and he answers you back. ____
2 You get advice from a lawyer who talks a lot of sense. ____
3 Someone tells you off for riding your bike through the park. ____
4 You're asked to explain a grammar rule and you manage to get it across. ____
5 Someone talks about you behind your back. ____
6 You go and see a doctor who talks down to you. ____
7 You're in a meeting with your boss and you can't get a word in edgeways. ____
8 You're talking to one of your neighbours and you put your foot in it. ____

2 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 3.)

1 If you can't hear your teacher, do you ask him/her to ____________ up?
2 Is there anyone in your family who tends to ____________ nonsense?
3 Have you ever put your ____________ in it when talking to a friend?
4 Do you prefer people to criticize you to your ____________, or behind your ____________?
5 With a group of strangers, would you always speak your ____________?
6 Have you ever ____________ someone off for dropping rubbish in the street?
7 Do you ever have problems getting your meaning ____________ in English?
8 Is it hard to get a word in ____________ with anyone you know? Who?

3 ABOUT YOU **Write answers to the questions in Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.**

16 I can talk about phoning

A Did you **get through to** the complaints department?
B Well, when I rang the first time, I **got cut off**, so I called again. Then someone kept me **hanging on** for ages, and in the end I **hung up**.

A Could I speak to Mr Howey, please?
B **Hold the line**, please, while I **put** you **through** … I'm sorry, he can't take your call at the moment. If you leave your number, he'll **get back to** you later.

A Have you **charged up** your mobile?
B Yes, but I've still got to **top** it **up** before I ring Howard. My phone calls **are costing a fortune**.

Glossary

get through (**to sb**)	succeed in speaking to sb on the phone.
cut sb off	(usually passive **be**/**get cut off**) stop or interrupt sb's phone conversation by breaking the connection.
put sb through	make a phone connection that lets sb speak to sb else.
get back to sb	phone or speak to sb later, especially to give a reply.
charge sth (**up**)	If you **charge (up)** your mobile, you plug it to a supply of electricity until enough is stored in its battery.
top up (**your mobile**)	pay more money so that you can make more calls.
cost a fortune	INF be very expensive. SYN **cost the earth** INF.

spotlight *hang on, hang up, hang up on sb*

If you **hang on** INF or **hold on**, you wait for a short time (also, in phone calls, **hold the line**). If you **hang up**, you end a phone call and put the phone down. If you **hang up on sb** INF, you end a phone conversation suddenly without saying goodbye.

1 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 There was no answer, so I *hung up* | *hung up on him*.
2 I was on the phone to the bank when I *cut off* | *got cut off*.
3 Did you manage to *get* | *put* through to the accommodation officer?
4 She asked me to *hang* | *hold* on, then they played some horrible music.
5 It's so expensive to use your mobile abroad; it costs *the earth* | *a fortune*.
6 Hang on a minute; I've just got to *fill* | *top* up my mobile before we go out.

2 Complete the dialogues. Then underline the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

1 Could I speak to Mark Lawton, please? ~ Hold the ______ – I'll try and put you ______ .
2 Have you plugged in your mobile? ~ Yeah, but it'll take half an hour to ______ it up.
3 Did you ______ through to Joe? ~ Yes, but he was in a bad mood and he hung up ______ me.
4 Did she ask you to ______ on? ~ Yes, but it was costing a ______ so I hung ______ .
5 Did you manage to speak to Mrs Arkle? ~ Yes, briefly, but we got cut ______ .
6 Are you busy? ~ I'm afraid so, but I promise I'll get ______ to you by the end of the day.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 When did you last get cut off during a call?
2 Do you have to top up your mobile, or do you have a monthly plan?
3 Have you ever hung up on someone? Who, and why?
4 Are there certain people you ring who you can never get through to?

17 I can use short spoken phrases

These short idiomatic phrases are commonly used in particular situations in spoken English.

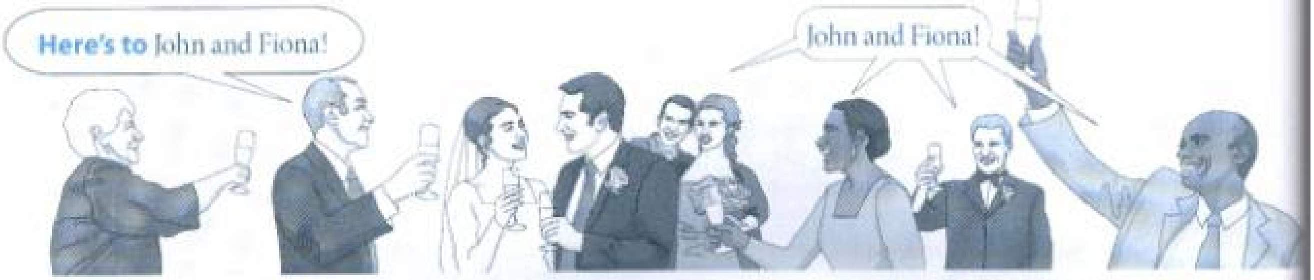
Here's to John and Fiona!
John and Fiona!

Come on! **Hurry up!**
OK, I'm coming!

OK, everyone. **Time's up.**
Oh no, I haven't finished.

We can't go on like this.
I know.

I'll pour your coffee. **Say when.**
That's fine. Thanks.

Here you are.
Thanks a lot.

Did you understand what he said?
Sort of.

Shall we go there later?
Yeah, **why not?**

What's up?
Steve's late, **as usual.**

OK, **here goes.** Wish me luck.
Don't worry, you'll be fine.

How come the shop's closed?
I don't know. It should be open.

Do I pay weekly or monthly?
It's up to you.

Well, see you soon.
Yes, **all the best.**

Guess what? We won.
Oh, that's brilliant!

Glossary

here's to sb/sth	used to wish sb health or success as you lift a glass and drink to them.
hurry up	do sth more quickly because there isn't much time.
time's up	used in exams and competitions to tell people there is no more time left.
I know	used to agree with somebody or to say you feel the same way.
say when	INF used to ask sb to tell you when you should stop pouring their drink or serving their food because they have enough.
here you are	INF used when you are giving sth to sb. SYN **there you are/go.**
sort of	INF to some extent, but in a way that is not easy to explain. SYN **kind of.**
why not?	used to agree to a suggestion. (It can also be used to make a suggestion: ***Why not*** *phone her?*)
what's up?	INF = what's the matter?
as usual	as happens most of the time. SYN **as always.**
here goes	INF used when you are telling people you are just going to do sth exciting, dangerous, etc., e.g. go down a ski slope.
how come ...?	INF used to ask the reason for sth. (Notice the word order in the question: ***How come*** *you're early?*)
all the best	INF 1 used when you are saying goodbye to sb (as above). SYN **take care.** 2 used to wish sb luck, happiness, etc. SYN **good luck.**
guess what?	INF used before telling sb sth interesting or surprising.

spotlight *be up to sb*

We use this expression to say that something is somebody's decision or responsibility, and usually with the pronoun *it*.
Shall we stay in or go out? ~ It's up to you. = it's your decision.
It's up to the government to decide this. = it's their responsibility.

1 Complete the dialogues.

1 What time shall we leave? ~ It's ______ to you.
2 How ______ we had to pay? ~ I don't know. I thought it was free.
3 Shall we go out tonight? ~ Yeah, why ______?
4 We must talk to Peter about this. ~ Yes, I ______. You're absolutely right.
5 ______ up, or we'll miss the bus. ~ Yes, all right. I'm coming.
6 What time did you go to bed last night? ~ Oh, 10.30, as ______.
7 Could you follow his map? ~ Yes, sort ______.
8 Say ______. ~ Yeah, that's plenty, thanks.
9 What's ______? ~ Oh, I've put my mobile somewhere and I can't find it.
10 ______ what? It's snowing! ~ I don't believe it!

2 What do you say in the situations below? Use the phrases in the box.

Guess what? Here goes. Say when. All the best Hurry up! What's up? Here you are. Time's up.

1 Your friend is being very slow. ______
2 You're pouring some juice for someone and you don't know how much he wants.
______
3 You're a teacher. It's the end of a test. Tell the class. ______
4 You're going to tell your friend you've passed your exam. ______ I passed.
5 Your friend is looking very worried about something. ______
6 You turn and speak quietly to a friend as you stand up to give an important speech.
______
7 Your friend is going to take his driving test. ______
8 Your brother asks you for some cash and you hand it to him. ______

3 Replace the underlined phrase with an idiom that has a similar meaning.

1 Did you understand? ~ Sort of. ______
2 Where's Chris? ~ In bed, as always. ______
3 OK, here you are. ~ Thanks. ______
4 What's the matter? ~ I don't feel well. ______
5 How many people shall we invite? ~ You decide. ______
6 See you next week. ~ Yeah, take care. ______

4 Complete each speech bubble with a suitable idiom.

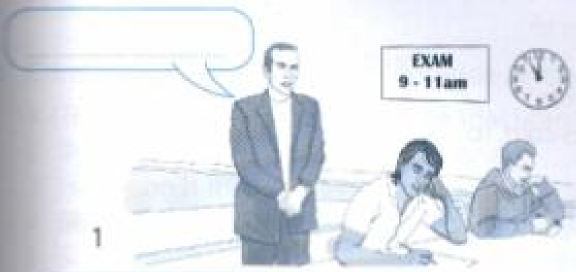

1

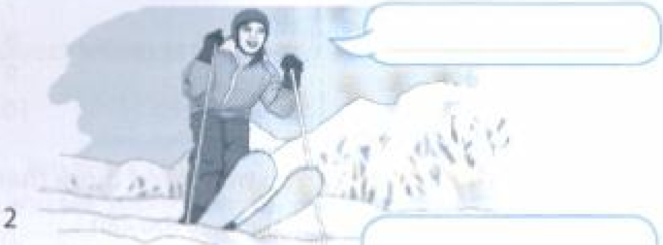
2

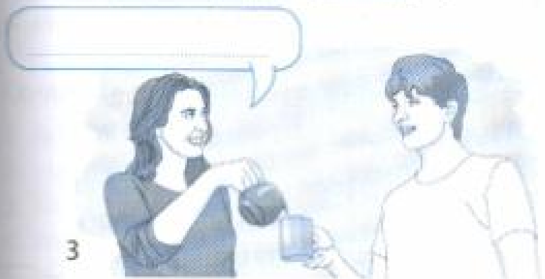
3

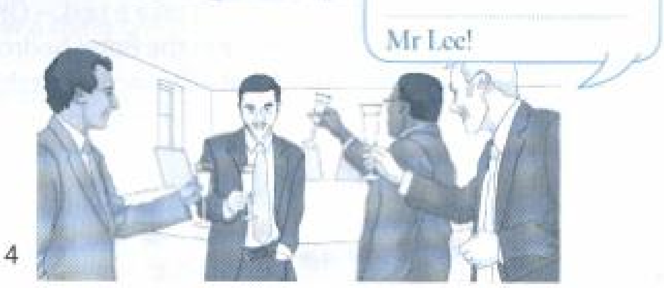

4

5 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE How would you translate the idioms on page 42 into your own language? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student who speaks your language.

18 I can use phrases with *say*, *tell*, and *see*

A *Say* and *tell*

	Example	Meaning
SAY	*Are you planning to leave your job?* *~ **I'd rather not say** at the moment.*	**I'd rather not say** is a polite way to say you don't want to give sb some information.
	Do you want a coffee? *~ **I wouldn't say no**.*	**I wouldn't say no** (**to sth**) INF used to say you would like sth, or to accept sth you are offered.
	That was a really awful exam. *~ **You can say that again**!*	**you can say that again** INF = I agree with you completely.
	Did you speak to Mr Ellis? *~ Yes. **I have to say**, he was very rude.*	**I have to say** (**that**) / **I must say** (**that**) INF used for emphasizing an opinion.
	We need a new carpet in the hall. *~ OK, **whatever you say**.*	**whatever you say** used to agree with sb's suggestion, even if you don't like it, because you don't want to argue about it.
	***Tell me**, how was your trip to Dubai?* *~ Well, it was hot, **to say the least**.*	**tell me** INF used before asking a question. **to say the least** used to say that you could have expressed sth in a much stronger way.
TELL	*Is Andrea getting married?* *~ **That would be telling**.*	**that would be telling** INF used to say that you can't give some information because it is secret.
	Is it going to rain tomorrow? *~ **I couldn't tell you**.*	**I couldn't tell you** INF used to tell sb that you do not know the answer to their question.
	You were right – the train was at 6.00. *~ You see? **I told you so**!*	**I told you** (**so**) INF = I warned you about sth; you didn't listen but now you can see I was right.
	Did you enjoy the play? *~ **To tell you the truth**, it was boring.*	**to tell you the truth** INF used to say what you really feel or think.

1 Complete the phrases with *say* or *tell* in the correct form.

1 .... me, why did he leave?
2 I .... you so!
3 You can .... that again!
4 I'd rather not ....
5 That would be ....
6 Whatever you ....
7 I have to .... , it was great.
8 To .... you the truth, I was wrong.
9 I couldn't .... you.
10 It was cold, to .... the least.

2 Complete the dialogues. You may need more than one word.

1 Goodness, it's really hot in here. ~ You can .... ! I can't stand it.
2 I think the best thing would be to take a taxi. ~ OK, ... say. I don't mind.
3 I shouldn't have left the money in the hotel bedroom. ~ Well, I told .... !
4 How was the journey? ~ Well, it was uncomfortable, to ....
5 .... me, how much do you earn? ~ I'd .... That's my business.
6 How much is a litre of olive oil? ~ I couldn't .... ; I don't do the shopping.
7 Shall we have something to eat? ~ Hm, I wouldn't .... I'm really hungry.
8 Are you seeing Henry tonight? ~ To tell .... , I don't really like him, so no.
9 How did you enjoy the show? ~ Well, I have .... , it was very entertaining.
10 Who's going to be in the next Bond movie? ~ Ah, that would .... !

B See

I need more help with the horses.	OK, **I'll see what I can do**, but I've got to go now. **See you later**.
Could I have the morning off? **You see**, my brother's arriving from Cairo.	Yeah, **I don't see why not**.
Who's the oldest in your class?	Hmm, **let's see** … It must be Angelo.
Mark thinks I should join a gym.	Well, you could try it and **see how it goes**.
I'm not sure I want to go to the wedding.	Oh, it'll be wonderful – **you'll see**.
Have you finished the painting?	Yes, **see for yourself**.

Glossary

I'll see what I can do	= I'll try to help.
you see	INF used when you are explaining sth.
I don't see why not	INF used to say 'Yes' when sb asks for sth.
let's see / **let me see**	INF used to say that you are thinking, or trying to remember sth.
see how it goes	INF used to say that you will decide about a situation after letting it develop for a short time. SYN **see how things go**.
you'll see	INF used to tell sb that they will find out you were right about sth.
see for yourself	used to tell sb to look at sth to check that what sb has said about it is true.

spotlight Greetings

Phrases with *see* are commonly used when saying goodbye to someone you know, especially when you expect to see them again soon, e.g. **see you later** / **tomorrow** or simply **see you! See you around** or **see you soon** are used if you are not sure when you will see the person again.

3 Correct the mistake in each sentence. Write the correct idiom at the end.

1 There isn't much time, but I'll see that I can do. ....
2 Bye, Flora! ~ Bye, Angie – seeing you! ....
3 How long is it since we met? ~ Well, let's me see … Ten years, I think. ....
4 She hasn't cleaned the car, has she? ~ Yes, just go and see yourself! ....
5 Shall I invite Jamie for dinner? ~ I don't see why no. ....
6 I'm hoping the plan will succeed, but we'll see how a thing goes. ....

4 Complete the dialogues. You will need more than one word.

1 Is it OK if I leave my bike here? ~ Yeah, I don't ....
2 Have you put up the new fence yet? ~ You can see .... – it looks great.
3 I'd better go now. ~ OK – .... around!
4 I'm not sure I'll pass this test. ~ Oh, come on, it'll be fine – you ....
5 How far is it to the city centre? ~ Er … .... – it must be about two kilometres.
6 I'm not sure she's the right person for the job. ~ Well, let's see how ....
7 I really need someone to help me with the furniture. ~ OK, well, I'll ....
8 Why were you late? ~ Well, I woke up late ...., and by then the traffic was bad.

19 I can use common spoken responses

A Short responses

Shall we get the bus?
Yeah, **if you like**.

Thanks a lot.
Not at all.

I'm bored with this.
Yeah, **same here**.

How are you?
Not bad.

Did you say you'd go?
Not exactly. I said I might.

I've forgotten your book.
Never mind.

Where shall we go?
I'm not bothered.

Was the day a success?
Er, **yes and no**.

Can I borrow this?
Sure, **go ahead**.

It's at Platform Five.
I beg your pardon?

Glossary

if you like	INF used to agree with sb's suggestion to do sth.
not at all	used as a polite reply when sb thanks you. SYN **you're welcome**.
same here	INF = the same thing is also true for me (or we sometimes say *me too*).
not bad	INF quite good (also **not too bad**).
not exactly	used when you are correcting sth that sb has said.
never mind	used to tell sb not to worry or be upset.
I'm not bothered	= it's not important to me. SYN **it's all the same to me**.
yes and no	used when you cannot give a clear answer to sth.
go ahead	often used to give sb permission to do sth or use sth.

spotlight *I beg your pardon* FML

When you say **I beg your pardon?** with a rising voice, you are politely asking somebody to repeat what they have just said. SYNS **Sorry?** (or **I'm sorry?**).

With a falling voice, you are saying sorry, e.g. for pushing someone (*I beg your pardon – I didn't see you there.*). SYN **I'm very/terribly sorry**.

1 Is the meaning similar or different? Write S or D.

1 Not at all. | Not exactly.
2 I'm not bothered. | It's all the same to me.
3 Not at all. | You're welcome.
4 Me too. | Same here.
5 Never mind. | I don't mind.
6 I'm very sorry. | I beg your pardon.

2 Replace the underlined words and phrases with idioms that have a similar meaning.

1 How are you? ~ Fine.
2 I've got two brothers. ~ Yeah, me too.
3 Do you want to eat out tonight? ~ Yeah, that's fine by me.
4 I'm afraid I can't go tonight. ~ It doesn't matter.
5 Thanks a lot. ~ Not at all.
6 Ooh! That's my foot! ~ I beg your pardon.
7 Was the holiday a success? ~ In some ways it was.
8 Shall we have pasta or rice? ~ It's all the same to me.
9 Could I borrow this pen? ~ Yes, of course.
10 What's the title of the play? ~ Sorry?

B Exclamations

An exclamation is a sound, a word, or a short phrase which you say when you are surprised, angry, impressed, etc. When written down it has an exclamation mark (!).

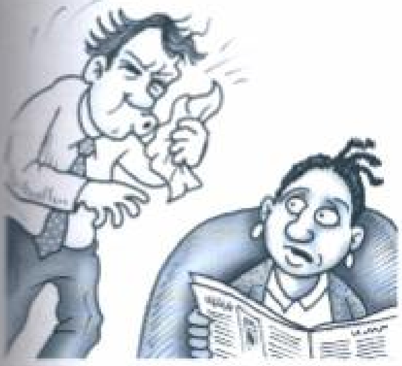

Bless you!

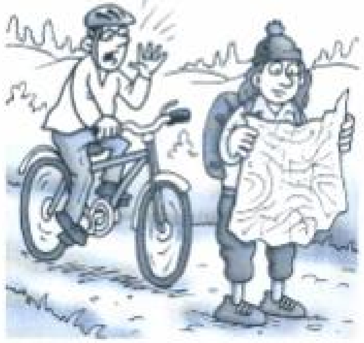

Mind out! SYN **Watch out!**

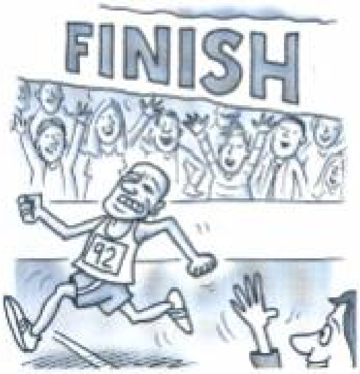

Well done!

She's got eight children. ~ You're joking!	INF used to express surprise. SYN **You're kidding!** INF
I saw Jamie smoking, and he's only twelve. ~ Good grief!	used to express shock or surprise. SYNS **Good heavens! Goodness me!**
I missed the last train home. ~ Bad luck!	used to express sympathy. SYN **Hard luck!**
It's my maths exam this afternoon. ~ Good luck!	used to wish sb success with sth, e.g. an exam. SYN **(The) best of luck!**
Have you got a new girlfriend? ~ Mind your own business!	a rude way to tell sb not to ask questions about sth private. SYN **It's none of your business!**
We need more honesty from politicians! ~ Hear, hear!	a way of saying you strongly agree with someone.

spotlight More idioms with *goodness*

The use of *goodness* in these idioms developed so that people could avoid using the word God, which some people found offensive.

Where's Tom? ~ Goodness knows! = I don't know (emphatic).

I got the job. ~ Thank goodness! used to show you are relieved.

I've lost the key again. ~ For goodness sake! used to show you are annoyed or impatient.

3 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 Is your sister married? ~ That's *not* | *none* of your business!
2 We must improve housing for the poor. ~ *Here! Here!* | *Hear! Hear!*
3 That boy's cycling really fast. ~ Yes, *watch out!* | *mind out!*
4 The cinema was full and I couldn't get in. ~ Oh, *best of luck!* | *hard luck!*
5 There were sixty students in my class. ~ *Good grief!* | *You're kidding!*
6 The train fares are going up again. ~ *For goodness sake!* | *Goodness knows!*

4 Complete the responses with a suitable exclamation.

1 We lost the tennis match in the end. ~ Oh, ... !
2 How much money do you earn? ~ .... ! I'm not telling you.
3 It's my job interview tomorrow at the BBC. ~ .... ! I hope you get it.
4 I won first prize in the competition. ~ .... !
5 Ninety per cent of my class failed the exam. ~ .... ! That's shocking.
6 What's the capital of Mali? ~ .... ! Actually, I'm terrible at geography.
7 I'm going to sneeze … ah … ah ... atishoo! .... !
8 I finally got a letter to say I don't have to leave my flat. .... ! That's great.

20 I can understand and leave messages

A Informal written messages

Carlos

Really sorry, but could you possibly **put** the rubbish **out**? **By the way**, Joanne rang – she said it was **something to do with** dinner tomorrow.

Must dash, Stuart

Hello Anne

Bad news I'm afraid – I can't meet you for lunch **after all**. Something's **cropped up** at work – an important meeting, and I can't **get out of it**. But **have you got anything on** tomorrow lunchtime? Perhaps we can **get together** then. **Give my love to** Larry.

Claire

Glossary

put sth out	take sth out of your house and leave it outside.
by the way	used when you add a new topic into a conversation.
something to do with	= something connected to or involved with.
(I) **must dash**	= I must go quickly because I'm in a hurry.
after all	used when sth is different from what you expected.
crop up	happen or appear, especially when it is not expected.
get out of sth	avoid doing sth you should do or said that you would do.
have (**got**) **sth on**	have an arrangement to do sth.
get together	meet socially, or in order to discuss sth.

spotlight Sending greetings to other people

When you are talking or writing to someone, you can ask them to give a greeting from you to someone else. Referring to friends or family, you can say: *Give my love to Sam* or *Give Sam my love*; referring to someone you know less well, say: *Give my regards to Sam* or *Remember me to Sam.*

1 Cross out one wrong letter, and write the correct word at the end.

▸ Sorry, something's c~~h~~ropped up. cropped
1 I can't let out of this. ....
2 Sorry, I must bash – I'm late. ....
3 I can't come tonight after ill. ....
4 Did you cut the rubbish out? ....
5 Shall we bet together tonight? ....
6 Have you hot anything on tonight? ....
7 Please give my dove to Lilia. ....
8 Oh, by the day, when's the party? ....

2 Complete the messages.

Hi Jenny

Thanks for your message. I'm afraid something's (1) .... up tonight, and I've got things (2) .... every evening this week, but let's get (3) .... some time soon. (4) .... me to Alec. Love, Judy

Hi Gianna

Bad news – I didn't get the job (5) .... all. Well, I'll get over it. Oh, (6) .... the way, did you know Ali's moving next week? Isn't that great? Give my (7) .... to Erno. Love Anne

Lauren

Sorry, there's a meeting on Tuesday, and I can't (8) .... out of it. It's (9) .... to do with salaries, so I have to go. Anyway, please give my (10) .... to the rest of the team. Speak soon, Martin.

B Informal voice messages

Hi, it's me. I'm just **popping out** for half an hour – I've got to **drop** Mum **off** at the station and do a bit of shopping. I'll be back by 6.00 **at the latest**. OK, bye.

Lucy, hello – it's Dad – I thought I'd just **call by** and see you around lunchtime. I've got a meeting **just round the corner from** you. Let's have a chat then. OK, bye.

Hi Anton, it's Paddy – thought **it was about time** I gave you a ring. **What have you been up to?** Anyway, can you **ring me back** when you've got a moment? Cheers!

Hi, it's me. Look, I'**m** completely **snowed under** with work, and I don't think I'll be able to **get away** before 9.00. And then Mac and I were thinking of having supper together if we **feel up to** it, so don't **wait up for** me, will you? Bye.

Glossary

pop out	INF go somewhere for a short time.
drop sb/sth off	take sb/sth to a place by car and leave them/it there.
at the latest	no later than the time or date mentioned. OPP **at the earliest**.
it's about time	used to say that you think sb should do sth very soon.
What have you been up to?	INF = What have you been doing?
ring sb back	1 phone sb who has called you (as above). 2 ring sb again.
call by	make a short visit to see sb as you pass. SYNS **drop by, call in**.
(just) round the corner	nearby (**round the corner from** a place = very near to the place).
be snowed under	have too much work to deal with.
get away (from sb/sth)	succeed in leaving a place or a person.
feel up to (doing) sth	have the strength or energy to do sth.
wait up (for sb)	not go to sleep until sb comes home.

3 Complete the dialogues.

1 Minnie's very boring, isn't she? ~ Yes, I kept trying to get ______ from her at the party.
2 Did you get the message from Nic? ~ Yes. That reminds me, I must ring him ______ .
3 Have you written the report yet? ~ No, I won't finish until Friday at the ______ .
4 I've got to ______ out and buy some food. ~ Yes, it's ______ time you did something!
5 What are you ______ to tonight? ~ Oh, I'm going to a party. Don't ______ up for me.
6 It would be lovely to see you again. ~ OK, well I'll ______ by one evening after work.

4 Rewrite the sentence using the word in capital letters. The meaning must stay the same.

▸ He's just gone out for a few minutes. POP He's just popped out for a few minutes.
1 What's she been doing recently? UP ______
2 Meet me no later than 5.00. LATEST ______
3 Could you give me a lift to the doctor's? DROP ______
4 I'll try to leave work by 7.00. GET ______
5 I'm not sure I have the energy to do it. UP ______
6 It's very close to where I'm staying. CORNER ______
7 I've got too much work at the moment. SNOWED ______
8 I'll come and see you on my way home. CALL ______

21 I can say what I think

A Giving opinions

What do you make of Mrs Nesbeth?

She seems nice, and her old boss **thought highly of** her.

How was the film?

I **didn't think much of** it, **to be honest**.

What do you think of the new doctor?

Not much. **For one thing**, he's a bit rude.

But that's **beside the point**, isn't it? So long as he's good at his job.

He's the best politician we've got.

Yeah, **without a doubt**.

Dogs are wonderful companions.

Yes, **I couldn't agree more**.

The government's made a big mistake, **as far as I'm concerned**.

Well, **up to a point**, but **in the long run** it won't make any difference.

Glossary

What do you make of sb/sth?	= What's your impression of sb/sth?
think highly / a lot of sb/sth	have a very good opinion of sb/sth. OPP **not think much of sb/sth**.
to be honest	used when telling sb what you really think.
for one thing	used to introduce one or more reasons for sth.
without (a) doubt	used for emphasis to mean 'very definitely'.
I couldn't agree more	= I strongly agree.
as far as I'm concerned	used to introduce your own opinion about sth.
in the long run	not immediately, but at a time in the future. SYN **in the long term**.

spotlight *point*

Point often occurs in idioms used in discussions.
That's beside the point. = not relevant to the thing being discussed.
That's true up to a point. = to some degree but not completely.

1 Complete the dialogues. Then underline the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

1 I don't think ________ of this fish. ~ To ________ honest, it was very cheap.
2 What do you ________ of the new boss? ~ As far as I'm ________, he's the best we've had.
3 If you work hard, you can achieve anything. ~ That's only true ________ to a point.
4 He's a really nice man. ~ But that's beside the ________ – he's no good at his job.
5 I know the manager thinks ________ of him. ~ Yes, I couldn't ________ more.
6 Why didn't you like the hotel? ~ Well, for one ________, our room wasn't very clean.

2 Correct one word which is wrong in each sentence. Write the correct idiom at the end.

▸ Travel broadens the mind. ~ Well, that's true up to ~~the~~ point. up to a point
1 As far that I'm concerned, we don't learn from the past. ________
2 For be honest, I'd be happier if the police didn't carry guns. ________
3 I don't think more of our public transport. ________
4 Most people think lot of our Prime Minister. ________
5 In the large run, we'll need different fuel for cars. ________
6 With a doubt, we're too dependent on computers. ________

3 ABOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree with the statements in Exercise 2? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B Pros and cons

A I've got to write an essay on the **pros and cons** of social networking sites.

B Well, I suppose it's a good way to keep in touch with friends.

A Yes, but you can meet new people too. That's the best thing about them **if you ask me**.

B Yeah, **to some extent**, but **for the most part**, I think face-to-face relationships are most likely to last. And **the thing is**, you don't know if strangers are telling you the truth online.

A Yes, **you've got a point**. But that's also true if you're speaking to someone face to face.

B **Fair enough**, I accept that. But **even so**, I still prefer talking to people face to face. Anyway, these sites are **here to stay** whether we like them or not.

Glossary

pros and cons	the advantages and disadvantages of sth.
if you ask me	INF in my personal opinion.
to some extent	used to say that sth is only partly true. SYNS **to a certain extent**, **in some ways**.
for the most part	in general. SYNS **by and large**, **on the whole**.
the thing is	used for emphasizing what you think is the most important point.
you've got a point	used to say that you think sb has made a reasonable statement.
fair enough	INF used to show you understand and accept what sb says.
even so	despite that.
here to stay	If sth is **here to stay**, it is generally accepted and has become part of life.

4 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S (same) or (D) different.

1	That's true, by and large.	That's true to some extent.	
2	On the whole, we agree with him.	For the most part, we agree with him.	
3	If you ask me, it's a big mistake.	In my opinion, it's a big mistake.	
4	The reason is, he's talking nonsense.	The thing is, he's talking nonsense.	
5	What he says is fair enough.	What he says is here to stay.	
6	It's true, but even so, it's not fair.	It's true, but despite that, it's not fair.	

5 One word is missing from each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

A What are the and cons of buying a flat? (1)
B Well, some ways it's easier to rent than to buy. (2)
A I know, but so, your own home eventually increases in value. (3)
B You've got a, that's true. But once you buy a flat, it's harder to move. (4)
And for the part, it's cheaper to rent than to buy. (5)
A Fair, that's an important point. (6)
B And the thing, you don't have to decorate it or worry about repairs. (7)
A To a certain that's true, but people like to choose their own decor. (8)
So, you ask me, owning is far better in the long run. (9)

22 I can talk about jokes that go wrong

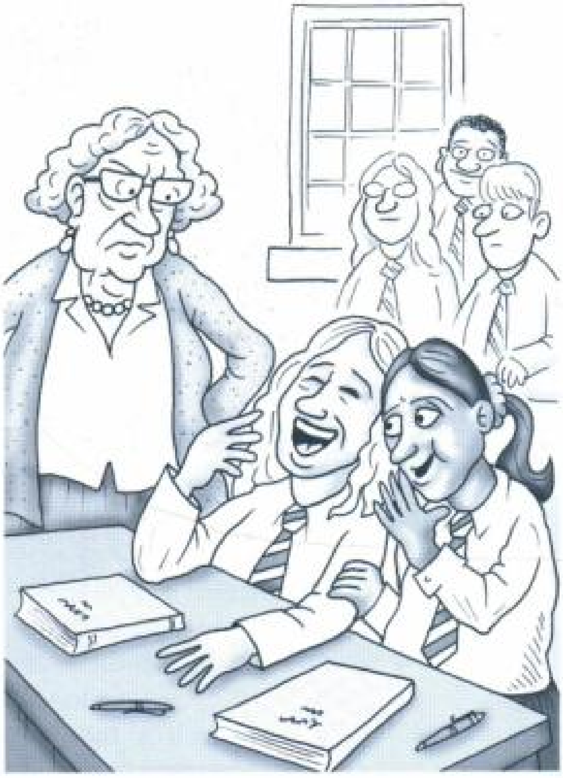

'I said something to Tina in class and she **burst out laughing**. Then the teacher **told** her **off**.'

'I was **pulling his leg** when I said he'd lose the game, but he **took it the wrong way**.'

'The other contestants **made fun of** Max's singing, but I just **felt sorry for** him. Anyway, Max **had the last laugh** because he won the competition for the most original act!'

'I played a trick on my dad, but it **went wrong.** I put salt in the sugar bowl; I only **did it for a laugh**, but he **hit the roof**.'

'I don't know why they're always **laughing at** Mary – she's very nice.'

'Matthew tried to **make a joke of** the fact that I was upset, which was very silly of him.'

'For a laugh, I told my sister that I'd seen her boyfriend with another girl. The trouble is she **can't take a joke**, so we**'re not on speaking terms** at the moment.'

'He was trying to be funny, but he just **made a fool of himself**.'

'I thought he was making a joke, so I laughed – but I'd **got the wrong end of the stick**. It wasn't a joke at all – he was being completely serious.'

Glossary

burst out laughing	suddenly start laughing out loud.
tell sb off (**for sth** / **for doing sth**)	INF speak angrily to sb because they have done sth wrong.
pull sb's leg	INF play a joke on sb, often by telling them sth which isn't true.
take sth the wrong way	be upset by a comment which is not intended to be unkind.
make fun of sb	laugh at sb or make others laugh at them, usually in an unkind way. SYN **laugh at sb**.
feel/be sorry for sb	feel sadness and pity for sb.
have the last laugh	be successful or win an argument in the end, when other people thought it was impossible.
go wrong	develop badly and cause problems.
(**do sth**) **for a laugh**	(do sth) as a joke.
hit the roof	INF become very angry.
not be on speaking terms	not be prepared to be friendly towards each other, usually because an argument.
make a fool of yourself	do sth that makes others think you are stupid. (If you **act**/**play the fool**, you behave in a stupid way in order to make other people laugh.)
get (**hold of**) **the wrong end of the stick**	INF understand sth wrongly.

spotlight Expressions with *joke*

If you **make a joke of something**, you laugh at something which is serious or important, and not funny.
If you **can take a joke**, you are able to laugh at a joke about yourself and not get upset.
If you **get a joke**, you understand it. When people tell us a joke we don't understand, we often reply:
Sorry, I don't get it.

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 Don't pull ……
2 Don't make fun ……
3 Don't feel sorry ……
4 Don't laugh ……
5 Don't make a fool ……
6 Don't make a joke ……
7 Don't take it ……
8 Don't tell ……

a of him.
b of yourself.
c of it.
d his leg.
e him off.
f the wrong way.
g at him.
h for him.

2 The same word is missing in each pair of sentences (a and b). Write it in.

1 a It all went …… .
b She took it the …… way.
2 a He …… a joke about it.
b He …… a fool of himself.
3 a I feel sorry …… her.
b I did it …… a laugh.
4 a He can't take a …… .
b I didn't get the …… .
5 a I had the last …… .
b They often …… at him.
6 a He …… the wrong end of the stick.
b I don't think she …… the joke.

3 Circle the correct answer.

1 He made a joke about my driving, but when I passed my test, I had the *final* | *last* laugh.
2 We had an argument and I'm afraid we're not on *speaking* | *talking* terms.
3 I didn't think it was a very funny joke, but everyone else *burst* | *burst out* laughing.
4 She thought I was serious, when, in fact, I was just pulling her *hair* | *leg*.
5 We thought we were doing the right thing, but it all *became* | *went* wrong.
6 I don't know how she misunderstood, but she just got the wrong *part* | *end* of the stick.
7 When my mother saw the mess we'd made she hit the *roof* | *ceiling*.
8 He thinks he's funny, but mostly he's just making *a fool of himself* | *himself a fool*.

4 Complete the sentences on the right, keeping the meaning similar. You will need more than one word.

1 He did it as a joke.	He did it for …… .
2 She can laugh at herself.	She can take …… .
3 He was being silly.	He was acting …… .
4 Why are they laughing at him?	Why are they making …… ?
5 He misunderstood me.	I'm afraid he got the wrong …… .
6 Her mother was angry with her.	Her mother told …… .
7 They suddenly started laughing.	They burst …… .
8 She got very angry.	She hit …… .

5 Read each situation, then write a sentence to comment on each one.

▸ It was a joke but she thought I was being serious. She took it the wrong way.
1 I told them a funny joke, but they just looked at me. ……
2 He kept running around the room with a saucepan on his head. Nobody else thought it was funny.
……
3 I said we already had 18 chairs and we needed 24, but he thought I meant we needed 18 plus 24 – in other words, 42. ……
4 We had an argument and she got really angry with me. Now she won't talk to me.
……
5 I was planning to take the train but Bob said there were no trains in the winter. Then I realized he was only joking. ……
6 My aunt had a hard life, and my mother was always very sympathetic towards her.
……

Review: Communicating with people

Unit 14

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 get hold ____
2 drop someone ____
3 give someone ____
4 keep ____
5 keep quiet ____
6 keep someone ____
7 don't breathe ____
8 lose ____

a in touch
b a ring
c touch with someone
d in the dark
e of someone
f a word
g a line
h about something

Unit 15

1 Complete the text.

There's a man I sometimes meet at the gym who I find really annoying. The thing is, he likes to dominate the conversation, and I find that I can never get a word in (1) ____________ . I do my best to get my point of view (2) ____________ , but he just ignores everything I say. You always have the feeling that he thinks you're much less knowledgeable or interesting than him, and that he's talking (3) ____________ to you. And what's really annoying is that he (4) ____________ nonsense most of the time anyway. The other thing about him is that he's very direct, and as a result he can seem rather rude, which sometimes upsets people. In fact, the other day, his girlfriend (5) ____________ him ____________ for offending someone. But perhaps he just feels it's better to say things to your (6) ____________ rather than (7) ____________ your back.

Unit 16

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out another word. What is it?

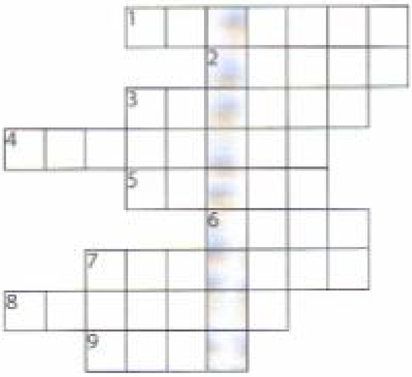

1 I can't give you the answer now, but I'll ____________ ____________ to you later today with the figures. (3, 4)
2 I spoke to a friend in China for an hour, and the call cost the ____________ !
3 Could I speak to Mrs Baker? Yes, ____________ , please, and I'll see if she's free. (4, 2)
4 Can I ____________ my mobile, please? The battery's flat. (6, 2)
5 I've got to ____________ ____________ my mobile or I won't be able to make any calls. (3, 2)
6 She was very rude: she ____________ up on me in the middle of the call.
7 I tried ringing Danny but I couldn't get ____________ : his phone was engaged.
8 The phone company did some work on my landline and it cost a ____________ .
9 Hold the ____________ please, and I'll try and put you through.
The word in the grey squares is ____________ .

Unit 17

1 Cross out the wrong word; write the correct word at the end.

1 Could you pass me the crisps, please? ~ Sure, here you have. ______
2 I'm not going to class today. ~ Really? Why no? ______
3 Has he brought his dictionary? ~ No, he's forgotten it, as usually. ______
4 You look upset – who's up? ~ Oh, it's my cat; she's very ill. ______
5 Come on, hurry on, we've got to be there by nine o'clock. ______
6 Guess that? The president is coming to visit our school. ______
7 Have some juice. ~ Lovely. ~ Just tell when. ~ That's enough. ______
8 I think it's your turn to drive. ~ Why come? I drove last time. ______
9 OK, class, that's it. Time's over. ~ Oh, no, I haven't finished! ______
10 See you after my holiday. ~ Yeah, all the better. ______
11 Was the restaurant very expensive? ~ Yeah, kind off. ______
12 Shall we go to an Indian restaurant? ~ I don't mind; it's up for you. ______

Unit 18

1 True or false? Write T or F.

1 If you say *To tell you the truth*, you are going to say what you really think. ______
2 If you say *I'd rather not say*, you mean you don't know the answer to something. ______
3 If you say *I'll see what I can do*, you're telling someone that you're going to try and help them. ______
4 If you say *See you around*, you mean that you will see the person later that day. ______
5 If you say *Let's see*, you are giving yourself time to think or remember something. ______
6 If you say, *I told you so*, it means that you had warned someone about something and they didn't pay attention to you. ______
7 If you answer a question with *That would be telling*, it means you are going to give the person the information they want. ______
8 If you say *I couldn't tell you*, you mean you don't know the answer to something. ______

2 Complete the last word of each idiom, and then underline the full idiom in each dialogue.

1 I thought she was awful. ~ You can say that ______ .
2 Is the pizza restaurant any good? ~ Well, I like it, but go and see for ______ .
3 Do you think it will work? ~ I'm not sure, but let's see how it ______ .
4 Was it wet? ~ Yes, and very cold to say the ______ .
5 Would you like a coffee? ~ Yeah, I wouldn't say ______ .
6 Can we go in now? ~ Yeah, I don't see why ______ , but don't make a noise.
7 Could I come on Thursday? ~ Er, let me ______ . Yes, that's fine.
8 What are you going to do with the money? ~ Well, to be honest, I'd rather not ______ .

Unit 19

1 Correct one mistake in each answer. Write the correct idiom at the end.

1 I've had some bad news; I didn't get that flat. ~ Oh, hard lucky. I am sorry. ______
2 Are you selling your flat? ~ I'm not telling you – it's not of your business! ______
3 Manuel's got a new girlfriend. ~ Good heaven! ______
4 Thanks so much for your help. ~ No at all. ______
5 Shall we have pasta or a pizza? ~ It's all the same for me. You decide. ______
6 How long will we have to stay here? ~ Goodness knows it! ______
7 How are you, Manuel? ~ Oh, no bad, thanks. ______
8 I can't come tomorrow. ~ Oh, don't mind. We'll go another day. ______

2 Find answers to the clues by moving horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.

YOU'RE	MIND	HEAR	HEAR	GO
JOKING	YOUR	BLESS	YES	AHEAD
BUSINESS	OWN	YOU	AND	NO
I'M	IF	YOU	LIKE	THANK
NOT	I	BEG	NOT	GOODNESS
BOTHERED	PARDON	YOUR	AT	ALL

- ▸ You say this politely when someone thanks you for something. Not at all.
- 1 You say this when someone sneezes. ……
- 2 You say this when you give someone permission to do something. ……
- 3 You say this when you are very relieved about something. ……
- 4 You say this when you are surprised. ……
- 5 You say this when you are agreeing with something someone has said. ……
- 6 You say this when you are saying sorry to someone. ……
- 7 You say this when you mean 'I don't care'. ……
- 8 You say this when someone is trying to find out private information that you don't want to give them. ……
- 9 You say this to agree to someone's suggestion. ……
- 10 You say this when you can't give a very clear answer to certain types of question. ……

Unit 20

1 Tick (✓) the correct column.

	Yes	No
1 *Call by* means 'give someone a ring'.	☐	☐
2 *What have you been up to?* means 'What have you been doing?'.	☐	☐
3 *Crop up* means 'continue'.	☐	☐
4 *Get out of something* means 'do something that you promised to do'.	☐	☐
5 *Wait up for someone* means 'not go to bed until someone else comes home'.	☐	☐
6 *I've got something on tonight* means 'I'm doing something tonight'.	☐	☐
7 *Remember me to your father* means 'Ask your father to remember me'.	☐	☐
8 *Drop someone off* means 'take someone somewhere in your car'.	☐	☐
9 *Six at the latest* means 'no later than six o'clock'.	☐	☐
10 *I'm popping out* means 'I'm staying out'.	☐	☐

2 Complete the sentences using a word from the left and a word from the right.

wait after up to about must get my

to do time together love up dash all

1 I'm in a terrible hurry – sorry, I …… …… . See you tomorrow!
2 She was going to be late, so she told her mother not to …… …… for her.
3 Emily wants to talk to you; I think it's something …… …… with the wedding.
4 I think it's …… …… we were leaving. Thanks for a lovely dinner.
5 I've had a tiring day so I don't really feel …… …… going out tonight.
6 We must try and …… …… one evening – when are you free?
7 If you see Jamie tonight, will you give him …… …… ? I really miss him.
8 The film didn't start till 8.00, so we could have got to the cinema on time …… …… .

Unit 21

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out an idiom. What is it?

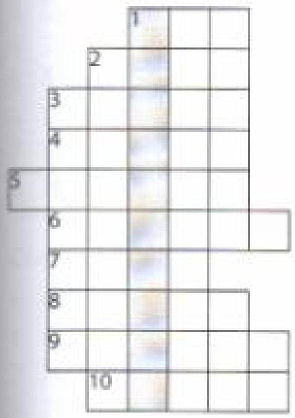

1 As __________ as I'm concerned, the risk is too great.
2 What did you __________ of his talk? ~ I thought it was brilliant, actually.
3 What you say is true, up to a __________.
4 We need more nurses. ~ I couldn't __________ more; you're absolutely right.
5 That's true to a certain __________, but don't forget how much it would cost.
6 She says eating meat is wrong, but to be __________, I'd find it hard to give it up.
7 What are the __________ and cons of living in a student hostel?
8 He was without __________ one of the best leaders our country has ever had.
9 She's been a marvellous employee; her bosses have always thought __________ of her.
10 I could never be a pilot; for one __________, I'm terrified of flying.
The idiom in the grey squares is __________.

Unit 22

1 Find answers to the clues by moving horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.

TAKE	HIT	MAKE	FUN	OF
A	THE	ROOF	BURST	SOMEONE
JOKE	PULL →	SOMEONE'S ↓	OUT	TELL
NOT	TERMS	LEG	LAUGHING	SOMEONE
ON	SPEAKING	FOR	A	OFF
ACT	THE	FOOL	LAUGH	☺

- Play a joke on someone by telling them something that isn't true. pull someone's leg
1 Behave in a silly way to try and make people laugh. __________
2 Criticize someone angrily for doing something wrong. __________
3 Laugh at someone, often in an unkind way. __________
4 An informal way to say 'become very angry'. __________
5 Not prepared to be friendly with each other after an argument. __________
6 Be able to laugh at a joke about yourself and not get upset. __________
7 Another way of saying 'as a joke'. __________
8 Start laughing suddenly and out loud. __________

23 I can describe actions

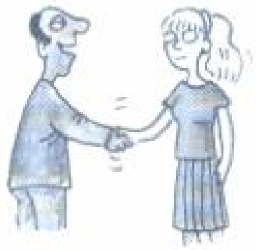

1 They're shaking hands.

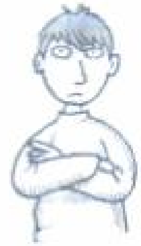

2 His arms are folded.

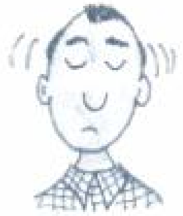

3 He's shaking his head (= 'No'). OPP nod your head (= 'Yes').

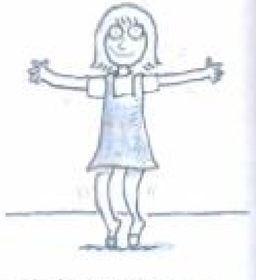

4 She's standing on tiptoe.

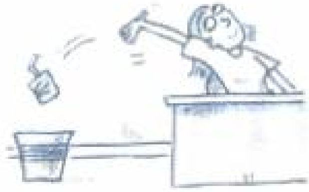

5 She's throwing the carton away.

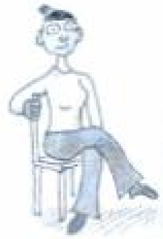

6 She's got her legs crossed.

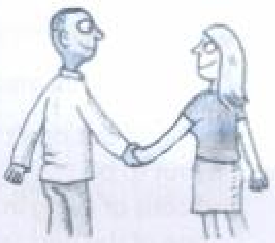

7 They're walking hand in hand (also they're holding hands).

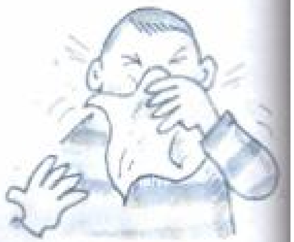

8 He's blowing his nose.

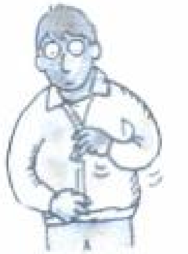

9 He's doing his jacket up.

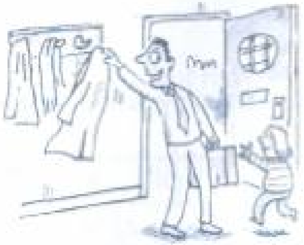

10 He's hanging his jacket up.

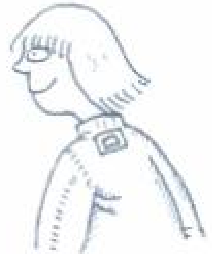

11 She's put her jumper on inside out.

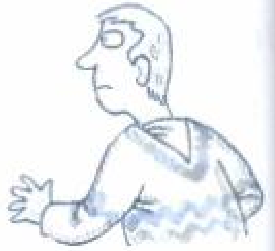

12 He's put his jumper o back to front.

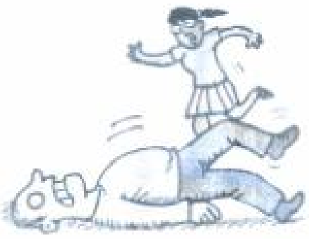

13 He's just fallen over.

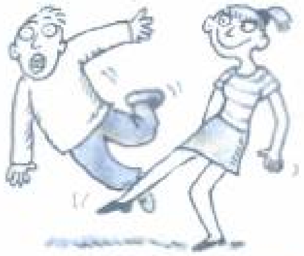

14 She's tripped him up.

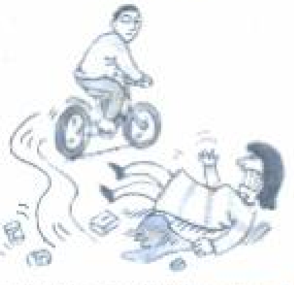

15 The cyclist knocked her over.

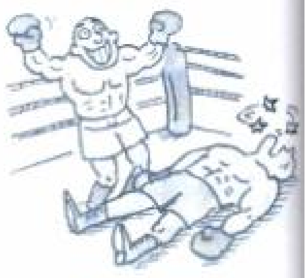

16 He's knocked him out.

spotlight Phrasal verbs with *knock*

If you **knock sb over/down**, you hit them and make them fall to the ground (see Picture 15).
If you **knock** a building **down**, you destroy it by breaking the walls.
If you **knock sb out**, you make them become unconscious (see Picture 16); or you make them fall asleep, e.g. *The drugs knocked him out.*

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 Don't cross ____
2 He sat with his arms ____
3 Do your ____
4 They've knocked the building ____
5 My top was inside ____
6 I fell ____
7 Blow ____
8 Hang it ____

a over on the grass.
b down.
c folded.
d your nose.
e up behind the door.
f your legs.
g coat up.
h out.

2 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

► She sat down and crossed her ~~arms~~. legs
1 I think he's nodding his hand. ____
2 He's wearing his T-shirt front to back. ____
3 They're shaking hand. ____
4 The little boy can't do out the buttons on his shirt. ____
5 The drugs completely knocked me over. ____
6 She told the children to fold their hands. ____
7 That stupid boy tripped me down. ____
8 She felt over on the ice. ____

3 Complete the sentences.

1 I didn't fall over – she pushed me and ____ me over!
2 He ____ me up when I was running for the ball, and I fell on my face.
3 I saw your sister and her boyfriend in the park, and they were walking hand in ____.
4 I think you've got your skirt on back to ____.
5 Where can I ____ up my coat? ~ There's a hook behind that door.
6 You'll be able to see through that window if you stand on ____.
7 The children sat on the floor with their legs ____, waiting for the teacher.
8 Please don't throw the newspaper ____; I haven't read it yet.

4 Use an idiom or phrasal verb to explain what the people are doing, or have done, in these situations.

► I think he's saying 'yes'. He's nodding his head.
1 They're meeting for the first time. ____
2 She doesn't want those old magazines. ____
3 I think he might have a cold. ____
4 The label is showing on his T-shirt. ____
5 I think she's saying 'no'. ____
6 He hit me and I was unconscious for a minute. ____
7 He can only just see over the wall. ____
8 Maybe they're boyfriend and girlfriend. ____

5 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 Do people usually shake hands when they meet?
2 Do people nod their head to mean 'yes'?
3 Is it rude to blow your nose in public?
4 Do young people often hold hands in public places?
5 Do women ever walk hand in hand in your country?
6 Have you ever been knocked out by anyone?
7 Have you ever been knocked over by a bicycle or motorbike?
8 What was the last thing you threw away?

24 I can talk about my family

A Father and son

I **take after** my father. We're both tall – that **runs in the family** – and we both have a passion for the outdoor life. I **was brought up** on a farm and always **looked up to** my father, so it was no surprise when I **followed in** his **footsteps** and joined him on the family farm. Basically farming is **in my blood**, and it's been **our way of life** for five generations. Working with Dad is great. He **knows** the business **inside out**, and enjoys **showing** me **the ropes**. And from his **point of view**, he likes to have someone younger with new ideas – even if they aren't that good!

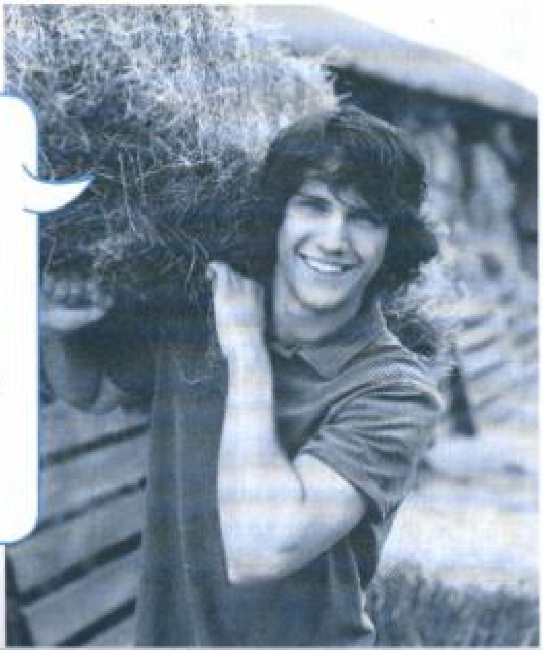

Glossary

take after sb	look or behave like an older member of your family.
run in the family	be found very often in a family.
bring sb up	care for and teach a child until they are an adult (also **bring sb up to do sth**).
look up to sb	respect and admire sb.
follow in sb's footsteps	do the same job or activity as sb else who did it before you.
in your blood	If sth is **in your blood**, it is a strong part of your character.
a way of life / sb's way of life	the behaviour and customs that are typical of a person or a group.
know sth inside out	have a lot of knowledge of sth (also **know what you are talking about**).
show sb the ropes	INF show sb carefully what to do and how to do it. (👁 See page 144.)
point of view	a way of looking at a situation; an opinion.

1 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

1 He hopes to follow .... my footsteps.
2 She has a different point .... view.
3 My sister takes .... my mum.
4 Politics is .... my blood.
5 Baldness seems to run .... my family.
6 It's a different way .... life.

2 Complete the text.

My father was a classical pianist. He knew the works of Mozart inside (1) .... and performed them all over the world. He (2) .... me up to love music as well; it seems to be something that (3) .... in our family. However, I eventually (4) .... in my mother's footsteps and became a doctor, and, *by coincidence, it was my uncle (my mother's brother) who showed me the* (5) .... when I got my first job in a hospital in London.

3 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 4.)

1 Where were you .... up as a child?
2 Who do you most .... after in your family?
3 Would you like to follow in anyone's .... ?
4 Is there anyone you particularly .... up to in your family?
5 Is there a physical characteristic that .... in your family?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B Sisters

When my mother **gave birth to** twins, I don't suppose she knew what she was **letting herself in for**. Although I'm **nothing like** Elle, we were equally horrible. If she pulled my hair, I **got my own back** by hiding her favourite doll; she always **burst into tears** when I did that. And then we **grew into** even more difficult teenagers. We **stayed out** late, and were always **getting into trouble** at school **for** smoking, wearing make-up, or just being lazy. Our poor mother tried to **turn a blind eye to** some of our behaviour, but it wasn't easy. Then, by some miracle, we **grew up**. We're both quite nice now!

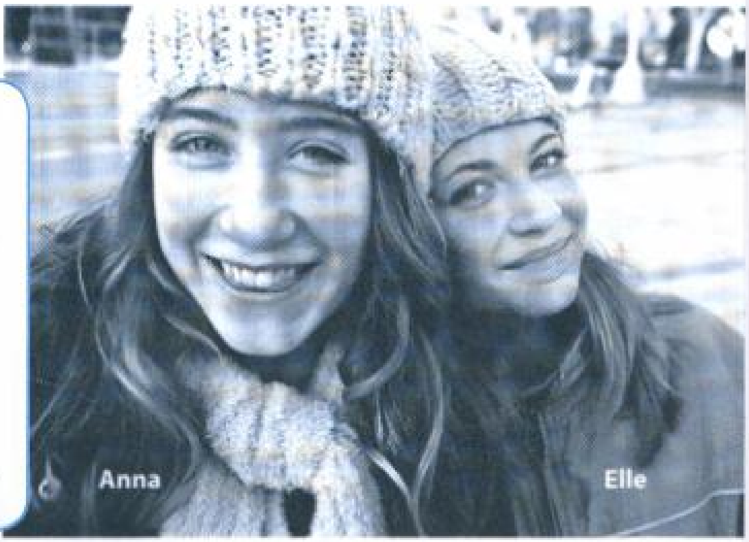

Glossary

give birth (to sb)	produce a baby.
let yourself in for sth	INF involve yourself in sth that will probably be unpleasant or difficult.
nothing like sb/sth	completely different from sb/sth (also **not anything like sb/sth**).
get your own back (on sb)	INF do sth unpleasant to sb in return for sth unpleasant they did to you.
burst into tears	suddenly start crying.
grow into sth	gradually develop into a particular kind of person.
get into trouble (for sth)	get into a situation in which you may be punished.
turn a blind eye (to sth)	pretend not to see or notice sth, usually sth bad (in this case, so that she didn't have to do anything about it).
grow up	develop into an adult.

spotlight *stay out/in, stay up*

If you **stay out**, you continue to be away from your home, especially late at night. If you **stay in**, you stay at home and don't go out. And if you **stay up**, you go to bed later than usual.

5 Put the words in the correct order and add one missing word.

▸ turned | it | she | eye | to | a — She turned a **blind** eye to it.
1 she | why | tears | into | did | ?
2 my | I'll | back | get | her | own
3 birth | she | twins | to | has
4 school | trouble | at | I | got | often
5 watch | he | to | up | a | late | film
6 handsome | he's | man | a | grown | young
7 she | brothers | is | nothing | her
8 yourself | what | in | you | let | have | ?

6 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 7.)

1 Where did you grow …………… ?
2 Did your parents let you stay …………… late to watch TV when you were young?
3 As a teenager, could you stay …………… late when you were with friends?
4 Do/Did your parents ever turn a …………… eye to things you do/did?
5 Do/Did you ever …………… into trouble at school? If so, what for?
6 Do you remember getting your own …………… on someone for something horrible they did to you?

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

25 I can talk about different generations

A The young about the old

'The older generation are always **going on about** young people. They seem to think we**'re to blame for** everything that goes wrong in the world. Why can't they **leave us alone**?'

'It's true older people **are** a bit **out of touch when it comes to** things like technology, but **on the whole** I think they're probably more open-minded than they used to be.'

'Many older people **are set in their ways**, and that can make them a bit narrow-minded.'

'I sometimes **feel** more **at ease with** older people because they're not trying to impress you. I think maybe it's easier to **be yourself** as you get older.'

Glossary

go on (**about sth/sb**)	talk about sth/sb for a long time, especially in a boring or complaining way.
be to blame (**for sth**)	be responsible for sth bad. SYN **be at fault**.
leave sb alone	stop annoying sb.
be out of touch (**with sth**)	not know or understand what is happening in a particular subject or area.
when it comes to sth / **doing sth**	= when you are talking about sth / doing sth.
be set in your ways	have attitudes and habits for a long time that you don't want to change.
feel/be at ease (**with sb**)	feel comfortable and relaxed (with sb).
be yourself	act naturally.

spotlight *on the whole*

There are various idioms we can use to introduce a generalization:

On the whole }
In general } *people become more conservative as they get older.*
By and large }

1 Correct the mistake in each sentence. Write the correct idiom at the end.

1 By the whole I enjoyed it. ....
2 Just leave me lone and go away. ....
3 She's largely with fault. ....
4 In generally I don't eat breakfast. ....
5 He's very settled in his ways. ....
6 I feel in ease with them. ....
7 I'm out from touch with computers. ....
8 Who is for blame? ....

2 Rewrite the sentences starting with the words given. The meaning must stay the same.

1 I feel relaxed with Liz and Clive.	I feel at ....
2 Just act naturally.	Just be ....
3 She's to blame.	She's at ....
4 He has very fixed attitudes.	He's very set ....
5 Stop annoying me.	Leave ....
6 I'm not good with numbers.	I'm not good when it ....
7 I don't know much about politics now.	I'm out of ....
8 Don't keep talking about it.	Don't go ....

B The old about the young

'Young people **get up to** all sorts of things nowadays. Parents probably **give in to** them too much, and let them **get away with** things. But in general, they're all right.'

'**More and more** young people still **live off** their parents in their late 20s and early 30s. They should be **standing on their own two feet** at that age.'

'I sometimes find it difficult to **get through to** young people. We seem to **be worlds apart**. Maybe I'm just **behind the times**.'

'I never **take offence** when young people say old people are boring. I felt exactly the same when I was young.'

Glossary

get up to (sth)	INF do sth, especially sth you shouldn't do.
give in (to sb)	stop fighting or arguing with sb and accept you can't win.
get away with sth	not be punished for sth you have done wrong.
more and more	in increasing numbers or at an increasing rate.
live off sb	rely on sb else to provide you with food, money, etc.
stand on your own two feet	not need the help of other people; live or act independently.
get through to sb	make sb understand what you are trying to say.
be worlds apart	be completely different in attitudes, opinions, etc.
behind the times	old-fashioned in your ideas, methods, etc.
take offence (at sth)	feel upset or hurt (by sth).

3 One word is missing. What is it, and where does it go?

▸ The kids always ask for sweets, and in the end I usually ‸ in. give
1 He doesn't understand what I say; I just can't through to him. ______
2 She made a mistake but she was lucky; she got with it. ______
3 The area is becoming more and dangerous. ______
4 What have the children been getting to? ______
5 They're worlds – they have absolutely nothing in common. ______

4 Complete the dialogues. You may need more than one word.

1 I've learnt to be independent. ~ That's right, you can now stand on your ______.
2 Does Joe still ______ off his parents? ~ Yes, they pay for everything. And he's 40!
3 He's a bit old-fashioned. ~ I agree: he's a bit behind ______.
4 The brothers are completely different. ~ Yes, it's strange: they're worlds ______.
5 Was she upset at what you said? ~ No, I don't think she took ______.
6 There's no point in arguing with him. ~ Yes, it's easier just to ______.

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 Did your parents give in to you very much when you were younger?
2 Did you get away with things at school when you were younger?
3 Do you ever find it difficult to get through to your parents/children?
4 Do you still live off your parents?
5 Do you think you and your parents are/were worlds apart?

26 I can talk about neighbours

A Getting on with the neighbours

We live **next door to** a young family. When we first **moved in** we invited them for tea to **break the ice,** and, since then, we'**ve got along** well. We **have** a lot **in common**, and they're always willing to **help out**. One day I **got locked out**, and Millie, the wife, **gave** me **a lift** to my husband's office to get a spare key. On the other side there's an old lady living **all by herself** who doesn't **get out and about** much. It's so sad: she needs someone to **keep** her **company**.

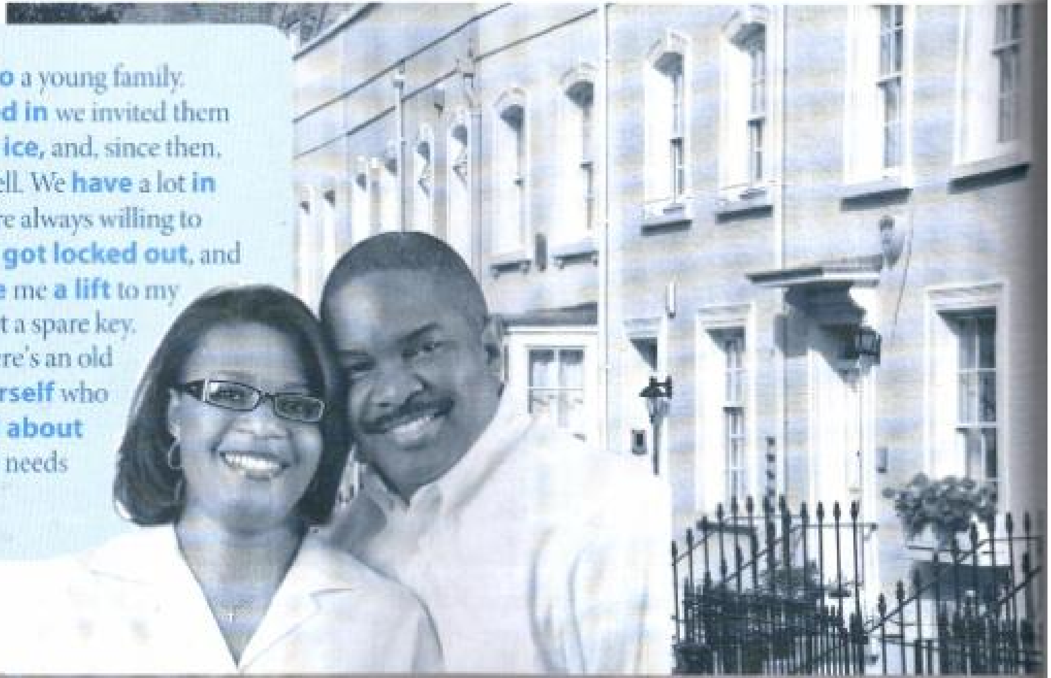

Glossary

next door (**to sb/sth**)	in the next house or flat.
move in	start living in a new house or flat. OPP **move out**.
break the ice	say or do sth that makes people feel more relaxed, e.g. at the beginning of a party.
get along	have a friendly relationship (also **get along with sb**). SYN **get on well** (**with sb**).
have sth in common	have similar interests (also **have sth in common with sb**).
help (**sb**) **out**	help sb in a difficult situation. SYN **lend sb a hand**.
lock sb out/in	lock a door so that sb cannot get out or in.
give sb a lift	take sb somewhere in your car.
all by yourself	completely alone ('all' adds emphasis). SYN **on your own**.
get out and about	go to places where you can meet people.
keep sb company	go or be with sb so that they are not alone.

1 Good or bad? Write G or B.

1 We have a lot in common. ____
2 You get along with your neighbour. ____
3 Someone gave you a lift. ____
4 You got locked in. ____
5 Your friend offers to keep you company. ____
6 A noisy neighbour has just moved in. ____
7 You can't get out and about for a month. ____
8 Someone helps you out with your studies. ____

2 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 3.)

1 Do you live all ____________ yourself? If not, who with?
2 What do you have ____________ common with the people next ____________ to you?
3 How would you break the ____________ if you had new neighbours?
4 Do you have any elderly neighbours? Do you ever ____________ them company?
5 Have any of your neighbours ____________ you a lift? If so, where to?
6 Have you ever got ____________ out of your house and asked a neighbour for help?
7 Which of your neighbours do you get ____________ well with, and why?
8 Do your neighbours ever lend you a ____________ with things?

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B Throwing a party

Planning to **throw a party**? Here's how to stay **on good terms with** your neighbours!

- Make sure you **let** the neighbours **know** you're having a party, and more or less how long it will **go on**. If you like, **invite** them **round**.
- When it starts to get late, **turn** the music **down** to an acceptable level.
- Keep the windows closed when the party is **in full swing**.
- When the party **is coming to an end**, ask your guests to leave quietly, and not to **stand around** outside chatting. You don't want to **run the risk of** waking your neighbours up.
- If it all goes well, thank the neighbours afterwards for **putting up with** any noise.

Glossary

throw a party	have a party for your friends, family, etc.
on good/bad terms (with sb)	having a good/bad relationship with sb.
let sb know sth	tell sb about sth.
invite sb round	INF ask sb to come to your home.
turn sth down	reduce the volume of sth. OPP **turn sth up**.
in full swing	at the stage when there is the most activity.
come to an end	finish (also **bring sth to an end**).
stand around/about	stand somewhere not doing anything.
run the risk of (doing) sth	do sth that could have a bad result.
put up with sth/sb	accept sth/sb that is unpleasant, without complaining.

spotlight *go on*
(see also page 16)

How long did the party go on? = How long did it last?

What's going on? = What's happening?

Oh, go on – you can do it! used to encourage someone to do something.

4 Write sentences using words from each column.

She ✓	me	around outside.
It was	come	on all night.
The guests	invited ✓	of upsetting people.
The party	in full	up with the noise.
Who	stood	the music up?
They couldn't	went	swing by 11.00.
They ran	turned	us around. ✓
When did it	put	know if you can come.
Please let	the risk	to an end?

▸ She invited us around.

1 ……………………

2 ……………………

3 ……………………

4 ……………………

5 ……………………

6 ……………………

7 ……………………

8 ……………………

5 Complete the text. Then underline the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

My next-door neighbour decided to (1) …………………… a party last weekend. Unfortunately, we're on bad (2) …………………… because the last time he invited some people (3) …………………… , they all stood (4) …………………… outside making a lot of noise, and we had to complain. This time, however, he (5) …………………… us know in advance about the party, and he told us it wouldn't (6) …………………… on after midnight. I looked out of the window at about 11.30 to see what was going (7) …………………… , and it was really quiet – he must have turned the music (8) …………………… , and he actually brought the party to an (9) …………………… soon afterwards, which was great.

27 I can describe my feelings

A Describing fear

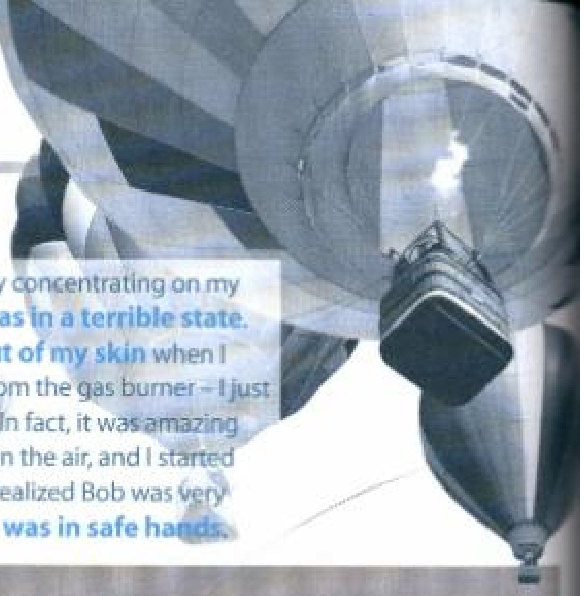

When Bob first suggested we went up in his hot-air balloon, it never **crossed my mind** that I would be nervous. But on the morning of the flight, I was starting to **get butterflies in my stomach**. And by the time we were **on board** and **were about to** take off, I **was shaking like a leaf**. I tried to **take my mind off** it by concentrating on my breathing, but I **was in a terrible state**. And I **jumped out of my skin** when I heard the noise from the gas burner – I just **couldn't help** it. In fact, it was amazing once we were up in the air, and I started to **calm down**. I realized Bob was very experienced and I **was in safe hands**.

Glossary

get/have butterflies in your stomach	feel very nervous before doing sth.
on board	on a ship, plane, hot-air balloon, etc.
be about to do sth	be going to do sth very soon.
shake like a leaf	shake a lot because you are frightened or nervous.
be in a state	INF be very anxious or upset (also **be in a terrible state**).
jump out of your skin	INF make a sudden movement out of fear.
can't help (**doing**) **sth**	used to say that sb cannot stop or avoid doing sth.
calm down / **calm sb down**	become or make sb become more relaxed.
be in safe hands	be with sb who will look after you very well.

spotlight Idioms with *mind*

It never crossed my mind that we would lose. = I never thought that we would lose. (Often used in negatives.)
You've got a lot on your mind. = There are a lot of things that you are thinking and perhaps worrying about.
Going to the gym took my mind off the exams. = made me stop thinking and worrying about them.

1 Rewrite the sentences, correcting the mistakes.

1 I've got flies in my stomach. ……………………………………
2 She's about for leave. ……………………………………
3 He ran out of his skin. ……………………………………
4 He's got something at his mind. ……………………………………
5 She won't help making mistakes. ……………………………………
6 Don't worry, you're on safe hands. ……………………………………

2 Complete the text.

I've got a big exam tomorrow and I know I'll be in a terrible (1) ………………… when I wake up. I get so nervous – I just (2) ………………… help it. It has crossed my (3) ………………… once or twice that I should really do something about it, and find a way to help myself (4) ………………… down. The only thing that seems to (5) ………………… my mind off it is food, unfortunately! But I know that tomorrow, I'll be outside the exam room, shaking like a (6) …………………, as usual.

3 Complete the questions. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 4.)

1 Have you got a lot ………………… your mind at the moment?
2 When did you last get butterflies in your …………………, and why?
3 Do you feel nervous when you're ………………… to go on a journey? Why?
4 If someone was ………………… board a plane and feeling very nervous, what would you suggest to ………………… them down?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B A range of feelings

If …	it means
If you**'re having the time of your life**, INF	you're enjoying yourself very much.
If you**'re thrilled to bits**, INF	you're very happy and excited about sth. SYN **be over the moon** INF (👁 see page 144). **to bits** INF = very much.
If you**'re in the mood** (**for sth**),	you feel you would like to do sth. e.g. *I'm not **in the mood for** shopping today.*
If you **go red** (**in the face**),	your face becomes red because you are embarrassed.
If you **lose your temper** (**with sb**),	you get very angry (with sb). OPP **control your temper**.
If sb's behaviour **makes you sick**, INF	it makes you very angry and upset.
If you**'re bored to tears**, INF	you're very bored. SYN **bored stiff** INF.
If you're feeling **on edge**,	you're feeling nervous and unable to relax.
If you **get cold feet** about a decision, INF	you suddenly become nervous about sth you have planned to do.
If you **don't know whether to laugh or cry**,	you feel upset about sth bad that has happened but can also see there is sth funny about it.
If it **breaks your heart** to see or do sth,	you're extremely upset about it. e.g. *It would **break my heart** to move from this old house.*
If you're feeling **down in the dumps**, INF	you're feeling depressed.

5 Match 1–8 with a–i. Do the sentences express positive or negative feelings? Write P or N at the end.

▸ It broke f
1 I wasn't in the ____
2 She saw Louis and just went ____
3 I don't know why she's down ____
4 We were thrilled ____
5 I just felt ____
6 The children had the time ____
7 We were bored ____
8 I completely lost ____

a to tears. ____
b in the dumps at the moment. ____
c of their lives at the adventure playground. ____
d red in the face. ____
e on edge for some reason. ____
f my heart to see my son leave home. N
g mood for going to a party. ____
h my temper with him. ____
i to bits about the wedding. ____

6 Complete the texts. Then underline the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

Poor Jasmine's got her driving test tomorrow and she's terrified. I hope she doesn't get cold (1) ____ and not turn up for the exam.

I hate flying, so when I got to the airport I was really on (2) ____. And then they announced a four-hour delay on the flight. I didn't know whether to laugh or (3) ____.

Gemma was feeling a bit down in the (4) ____ and definitely not in the (5) ____ for a sad movie, so we went to a jazz café instead. It was fantastic – we had the time of our (6) ____ and laughed all the way home.

The man next door is really irritating; he's always leaving his rubbish just outside my front door, and it (7) ____ me sick. Whenever I see him I ask him to move it, and then he does; but I find it very hard to (8) ____ my temper when I'm talking to him.

28 I can describe romantic relationships

A Young love

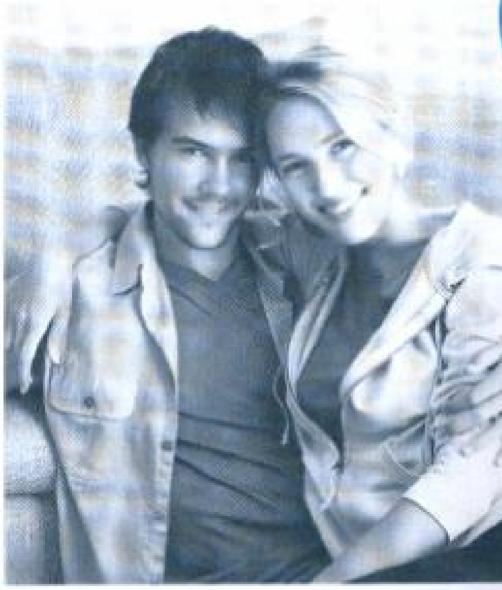

Ask Claire's advice

SUE: I was very flattered when Chris started **chatting** me **up** at a party because I didn't think I'd **be his type**. But we really **hit it off**, and then started seeing a lot of each other. The thing is, though, his mother **thinks the world of** him and has done everything she can to **come between us** and try to **split us up**. I'd be so upset if we **broke up** because of her – I'm just **crazy about** him.

CLAIRE REPLIES: Start by **putting yourself in** his mother's **shoes**. She can see you've both **fallen in love** and she probably thinks she's losing her son **for good**. Be patient, and try to make friends with her – it's the only solution.

Glossary

chat sb up	INF talk to sb in a friendly way because you are attracted to them.
be your type	INF be someone with the qualities that you find attractive.
hit it off	INF form a good relationship on first meeting (also **hit it off with sb**).
think the world of sb	INF feel great love or affection for sb.
come between people	cause an argument or difficulty between people.
split people up	cause two people to stop having a relationship.
break up	stop having a relationship (also **break up with sb**). SYN **split up** (**with sb**).
crazy about sb	INF very much in love with sb. SYN **mad about sb** INF.
put yourself in sb's shoes	imagine you are in the same situation as sb. SYN **put yourself in sb's place**.
fall in love	start to love each other (also **fall in love with sb**, SYN **fall for sb** INF).
for good	for ever.

1 Tick (✓) the correct phrases. Be careful: one, two, or all three may be correct.

1 I think she's *fallen in love* ☐ *mad about* ☐ *fallen for* ☐ him.
2 I won't let anyone *come between* ☐ *split up* ☐ *break up* ☐ us.
3 Why don't you try and put yourself in his *shoes* ☐ *eyes* ☐ *place* ☐?
4 Do you think Max and Jan will *hit off it* ☐ *hit it off* ☐ *fall for each other* ☐?
5 I'm not sure he will *be Lucy's type* ☐ *chat Lucy up* ☐ *come between Lucy* ☐.
6 She *is crazy about* ☐ *is mad about* ☐ *thinks the world of* ☐ him.

2 Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb or idiom.

1 He's a terrible liar; I hope she leaves him and never comes back. ……………………
2 He really loves his little niece. ……………………
3 She's not the kind of person I find attractive. ……………………
4 We met at a conference and we really got on very well. ……………………
5 I wish you would imagine you were in my situation. ……………………
6 He seemed attracted to me and talked to me in the bar. ……………………
7 It's sad, but they've decided to separate. ……………………
8 They're very much in love with each other. ……………………

B Enduring love

BETTY: Alf **took his time** to **ask** me **out**, but it was **love at first sight** for me, and I **couldn't wait** to get married. It's not all been easy though. You have to **put up with** each other's bad habits; and Alf has a few. But we've **stuck together**, and we're very happy.

ALF: It took me a while to **pluck up the courage to** ask Betty out, but we had lots in common and we **built on** that. Plus we worked hard at our relationship. With some young couples nowadays it seems that if anything **goes wrong**, one of them **walks out**. And lots of couples just seem to **drift apart**.

Glossary	
take your time	do sth without hurrying.
ask sb out	invite sb to go somewhere because you want to start a romantic relationship with them.
love at first sight	love or attraction that you feel for sb when you see them for the first time.
can't wait / can hardly wait	If sb **can't** or **can hardly wait** for sth, they are very excited about it.
put up with sth/sb	accept sth/sb that is unpleasant, without complaining.
stick together	INF (of two or more people) stay together and support each other.
pluck up (the) courage (to do sth)	make yourself do sth even though you are afraid to do it.
build on sth	use sth as the basis on which to develop and make progress.
go wrong	develop badly and cause problems.
walk out (on sb)	INF leave sb you are having a relationship with.
drift apart	(of two or more people) slowly become less close or friendly.

3 Write the last word in each sentence.

1 It was great at first, then things started to go ________.
2 There's no hurry; take your ________.
3 The important thing in our relationship is that we've stuck ________.
4 I'm going to ask her out if I can pluck up the ________.
5 I saw her at a concert and it was love at first ________.
6 We enjoyed the same things, and that gave us something to build ________.
7 I'm meeting Gordon after work this evening. I can hardly ________.
8 Everyone thought they were in love, then one day, he just walked ________.

4 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 5.)

1 Do you believe in ________ at first sight? Why / why not?
2 Have you ever found it difficult to ________ up the courage to ask someone ________? When, who with, and why?
3 What are the main reasons why relationships ________ wrong?
4 Do you know many couples who have ________ together for a long time?
5 Which bad habits do you find difficult to ________ up with?

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 4 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

29 I can describe annoying habits

A Brad's annoying habits

Amy:

I love Brad, but some things about him **get on my nerves**!

- He **keeps on** leaving his clothes **all over the place**.
- He doesn't do **his fair share of** the housework.
- He's always **showing off** in front of our friends.
- He spends ages **messing around** on the computer.
- He tells the same jokes **over and over again**.

But I have to **take into account** the fact that he lived **on his own** for years. Being married is completely different – you need a bit of **give and take**.

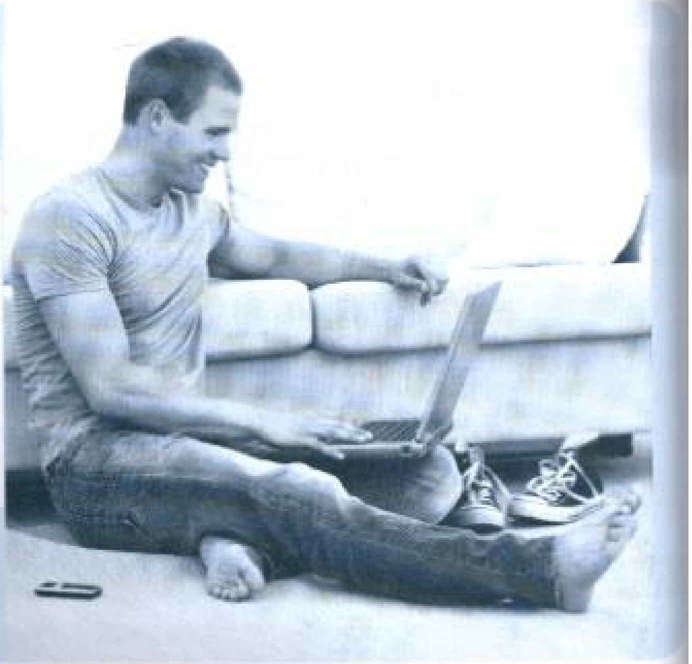

Glossary

get on sb's nerves	INF annoy sb; make sb angry.
keep (on) doing sth	continue doing sth, often in an annoying way.
all over the place	in a very untidy state.
your fair share of sth	a fair and reasonable amount of sth (often used about work).
show off	try to impress people by showing them how clever you are. (A person who does this is a **show-off**.)
mess around/about	spend time in a relaxed way without a real purpose.
over and over again	many times; repeatedly. SYN **again and again**.
take sth into account	consider sth, especially when you are making a decision.
on your own	alone. SYN **by yourself**.
give and take	INF a situation in which you do things or compromise for other people, and they do things or compromise for you.

1 Circle the correct word.

1 She's messing *along* | *around* upstairs.
2 I said it *out* | *over* and over again.
3 I'll have to *take* | *make* it into account.
4 The papers are all *about* | *over* the place.
5 She's a terrible *show-up* | *show-off*.
6 I keep *on* | *in* forgetting to post it.
7 He tried to do it *by* | *on* his own.
8 He does his *right* | *fair* share of the work.

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable phrasal verb or idiom.

1 He loves being the centre of attention – he's always ______________ .
2 It was terribly untidy; there were books and magazines ______________ .
3 You have to listen to other people's opinions; there has to be some ______________
4 Did she get help with that, or did she do it ______________ ?
5 She's had health problems this year, so when we make a plan we should ______________
6 They still don't understand, although I've explained it ______________ .
7 My phone keeps ringing but then there's no one there; it's really ______________
8 We spent a relaxing weekend on the boat, just ______________ .

B Amy's annoying habits

Brad:

I love Amy, but these things **drive me round the bend**!

- She**'s** always **putting me down** in front of other people, or making jokes **at my expense**.
- She**'s** always **tidying** my things **away**, then I can't find them; it **drives** me **up the wall**.
- When she doesn't want to discuss something important, she just **changes the subject**.
- She **changes her mind** about what to wear, then **bites** my **head off** if I get impatient.
- She always **puts off** paying bills till **the last minute**.

But even though we have our **ups and downs**, I love her very much, and it **cheers me up** to see her face every morning.

Glossary

put sb down	INF say things to make a person look stupid or silly.
at sb's expense	against sb, so that they look silly.
tidy sth away	put sth where it is kept in a drawer, cupboard, etc., so that it cannot be seen.
change the subject	start talking about sth different.
change your mind	change your decision or opinion.
bite sb's head off	INF answer sb in a very angry way.
put off doing sth / put sth off	delay doing sth until a later time or date.
the last minute/moment	the latest possible time before sth happens.
ups and downs	a mix of good times and bad times.
cheer sb up	make sb happier (**cheer up!** = be happy).

spotlight Expressing anger

These are two informal ways of saying that something or someone makes you angry, upset, or frustrated:

Her behaviour drives me up the wall.

All this rain drives me round the bend.

3 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S (same) or D (different).

1 She got very angry with me. | She bit my head off. ____

2 He's always putting me down. | He's always trying to make me do something later. ____

3 He sent her a present to cheer her up. | He sent her a present to make her happy. ____

4 Why did you change the subject? | Why did you change your mind? ____

5 It all happened at the last minute. | It all happened at that moment. ____

6 I put my appointment off till Friday. | I changed my appointment to Friday. ____

4 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

▸ The noise makes me really upset. WALL The noise drives me up the wall.

1 I love putting everything in order. AWAY ____

2 We've had plenty of good times and bad times. UPS ____

3 They all had a good laugh at me. EXPENSE ____

4 Should we delay buying the car? PUT ____

5 Don't get angry with me! BITE ____

6 The kids are driving me up the wall. BEND ____

5 ABOUT YOU Look again at Sections A and B. In your notebook, write six things that other people do which drive you up the wall, or talk to another student.

30 I can talk about astrology

A Horoscopes

ARIES
21 March – 20 April

Something **is getting in the way of** your happiness. **So far**, you**'ve kept** your feelings **to yourself**, but **there's no time to lose** – **confide in** that important person in your life. Don't **sit around** doing nothing, **or else** you may regret it.

TAURUS
21 April – 21 May

Today's the day for a big change. You know **your heart isn't in** your work, and it's time to do something else with your life. **If the worst comes to the worst**, you can **count on** your friends to help you **find your feet**.

Glossary

get in the way of sth	prevent or stop sth from happening.
so far	until now.
keep sth to yourself	not tell anyone else about sth.
(**there's**) **no time to lose**	used for telling sb to hurry.
confide in sb	tell sb secrets because you feel you can trust them.
sit around	INF spend time doing nothing active or useful. SYN **sit about**.
or else	if not (used to say that there will be a bad result if sth does not happen).
your heart isn't in sth	you are not very interested in or excited about sth you are doing.
if the worst comes to the worst	if the worst possible situation happens.
count on sb/sth	depend on sb/sth; rely on sb/sth.

spotlight Idioms with *feet*

If you **find your feet**, you become confident in a new situation, especially one that is difficult to start with. If you **have** or **keep your feet on the ground**, you have or maintain a sensible, practical attitude to life.

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 There's no time ____
2 If the worst comes ____
3 I don't think we can count ____
4 It's obvious that her heart ____
5 Take the money now, or ____
6 You can't just sit ____
7 Don't let your work get ____
8 I'm sure you'll find ____

a isn't in the job.
b else you might forget about it.
c around all day at home worrying.
d in the way of your happiness.
e to lose.
f your feet very quickly.
g to the worst, I'll leave.
h on Maggie to help us.

2 Rewrite the sentence using the word in capitals. The meaning must remain the same.

▸ Is she reliable? COUNT Can you count on her?
1 I can tell Molly any secrets I have. CONFIDE ____
2 Until now, nobody has arrived. FAR ____
3 Keep a sensible attitude to life. GROUND ____
4 If things get really bad, will you help me? WORST ____
5 Don't spend time doing nothing all day! AROUND ____
6 He'll soon become confident in his new job. FEET ____
7 She didn't tell anyone the news. HERSELF ____
8 He's not excited about this project. HEART ____

B Do you believe in horoscopes?

MOONLOVER Do I **believe in** horoscopes? Yes, I do – most of mine **come true**!

STARGIRL Yes I do, but we mustn't let them **take over** our lives.

DISCOMAN **Not any longer.** Just think about it. Every Aries in the world having the same thing happen to them every day? **Come on!**

AMAL **I dare say there's something in it … you never know**, do you?

INDY NO!! **Life's too short** to waste on reading that nonsense.

LEOSCEPTIC Are they true? It's **anyone's guess. I just** read them **for fun**, and I think most people are too sensible to **base** their lives **on** horoscopes.

Glossary

believe in sth	feel certain about the truth or existence of sth.
come true	If a wish, hope, or prediction **comes true**, it really happens.
take over sth	take control of sth.
not any longer / no longer	used to say that sth that was true before is not true now.
come on!	used to show that you do not believe sth that sb has said. (The stress is on the 'on'.)
I dare say	used when you are saying that sth is possible.
there's something in it/sth	used to say that there are true facts or acceptable ideas in what sb says. OPP **there's nothing in it/sth.**
you never know	INF used to say that you can't be certain of sth.
life's too short	INF = don't spend your time doing things or worrying about things that are unimportant.
anyone's guess	INF sth that nobody can be certain about.
(just) for fun	because sth is enjoyable, and for no other reason.
base sth on sth	use an idea or fact as the starting point from which other things can develop.

3 Cross out one wrong word. Write the correct word at the end.

▸ Do you believe ~~on~~ magic? in
1 She said things were getting worse, and I dare said that is true. ______
2 I love my new job, but I have to say it's taken out my life. ______
3 Have you based your decision in the information in the paper? ______
4 I went to an evening class just for funny, and it was great. ______
5 The weather was so awful that we couldn't stay there no longer. ______
6 You think he's going to lend you $500? Come in! He'll never do that. ______

4 Complete the dialogues. Then underline the complete idioms or phrasal verbs.

1 Do you think he'll win the election? ~ Well, you never ______ . He might!
2 Can he really predict the future? ~ Of course not. What he told me didn't come ______ .
3 Do you believe ______ ghosts? ~ I used to, but not any ______ .
4 Are you concerned about the future? ~ No, life's ______ short to worry about that.
5 I think he's got a very good idea there. ~ Yes, there's ______ in it.
6 Do you think they'll win the championship? ~ Who knows! It's anyone's ______ .

5 ABOUT YOU Do you read your horoscopes? If so, do you believe in them? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

Review: People and relationships

Unit 23

1 Write down five more things that people are doing in the picture; then answer the questions.

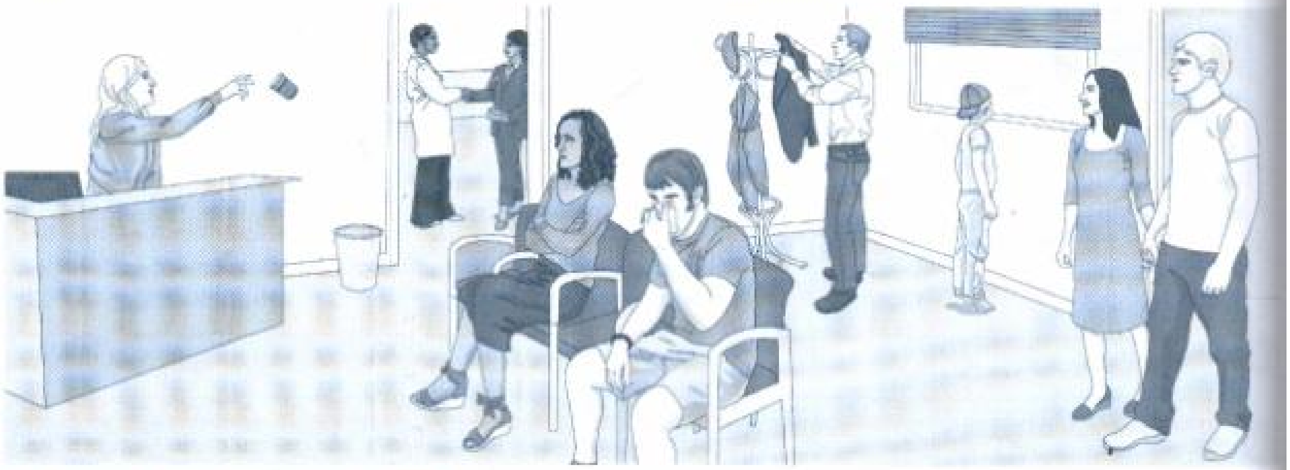

▸ *A man is hanging up his jacket.*

1 Has the woman sitting down got her legs crossed? ....
2 Has she got her arms folded? ....
3 Has anyone fallen over? ....
4 Is anyone doing their coat up? ....
5 Is the boy wearing his cap back to front? ....
6 Is the man in the white coat shaking his head? ....

Unit 24

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 show ....
2 follow ....
3 get ....
4 burst ....
5 turn ....
6 give ....
7 run ....
8 take ....

a into trouble with the police
b someone the ropes
c a blind eye to something
d in the family
e into tears
f in someone's footsteps
g after someone
h birth

2 Complete the text.

My father (1) .... up in a small town in Ireland. He was (2) .... up by his grandparents because his parents both died when he was quite young. My father really (3) .... up to his grandfather, and always wanted him to feel proud of his grandson. For that reason, perhaps, he never got into serious (4) .... as a child, and rarely (5) .... out late in case his grandparents worried about him. I'm afraid I'm (6) .... like my father in that respect – I never come home before midnight when I go out. But then we live in a city and it's a completely different way of (7) .... Also, I know the place inside (8) ...., so my parents don't worry about me.

Unit 25

1 Complete the sentences using a word from the left and a word from the right in the correct form.

live stand get take give feel
get be ✓ go leave be

touch ✓ alone in on yourself feet
through off offence away ease

- ▸ If you are ______ out of touch ______ with something, you no longer have recent knowledge or information about it.
- 1 If you ______ ______ someone, it means you depend on someone else for the money or food you need.
- 2 If you ______ ______ to someone, it means you stop arguing with them and accept that you can't win.
- 3 If someone ______ ______ about a subject, it means they talk about it so much that people become bored.
- 4 If someone asks you to ______ them ______, it means they want you to stop annoying them.
- 5 If you ______ at ______ with someone, you are comfortable and relaxed when you are with them.
- 6 If someone ______ ______ with a crime, it means they aren't punished for what they have done.
- 7 If you can ______ on your own two ______, it means you are independent and can look after yourself.
- 8 If you ______ ______ at something somebody says, it means you are hurt or upset by it.
- 9 If you act naturally, it means you can ______ ______.
- 10 If you can't ______ ______ to someone, it means you can't make them understand what you want to say.

Unit 26

1 Complete the dialogues.

1 Can you tell me if you decide to have the party? ~ Yes, I'll ______ you know immediately.
2 Are you going to help them? ~ Yes, I said I'd ______ them a hand.
3 Did you have to walk to the station? ~ No, Edwin gave me a ______.
4 Did anyone help you with the cleaning? ~ No! I did it all by ______!
5 The music's a bit loud. ~ Yeah, sorry, I'll ______ it down a bit.
6 They share a lot of interests, don't they? ~ Yes, they have a lot in ______.
7 Shall we ask her to come for lunch? ~ Yes, I told her we'd ______ her round sometime.
8 I've finally found a new flat. ~ Excellent! So when are you ______ in?

2 Cross out one wrong word in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

1 He's a really annoying neighbour; I don't know how you put out with him. ______
2 You don't want to run the risk in being on bad terms with the people next door. ______
3 Did the meeting come to an end naturally, or did you have to take it to an end? ______
4 Since she's been ill, she's not been able to get round and about much. ______
5 How about the people upstairs – are you getting long with them now? ______
6 She doesn't have many friends so I try to help her off whenever I can. ______
7 He's on his own a lot, so he'd love it if you held him company sometimes. ______
8 We played a game at the beginning to break an ice and it really worked. ______

Unit 27

1 Complete the dialogues.

1 Didn't you realize he would be angry? ~ No, it never .... my mind.
2 She looked very anxious before the test. ~ Yes, she was in a terrible ....
3 Those fireworks gave me a shock. ~ Me too. I nearly jumped out of my ....
4 Were you a bit nervous before the interview? ~ Well, I felt a bit on .... , but not too bad.
5 Was the office party boring? ~ Not at all. We had the time of our ....
6 You must have been delighted to win. ~ Yes, I was .... to bits.
7 Are they going now? ~ Yes, they're .... to leave.
8 Was the lecture interesting? ~ No, I was bored to ....

2 Complete six more idioms by using a word from the left and a picture from the right.

over stomach go ✓
shake cold whether
break

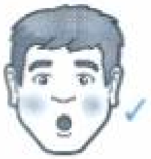

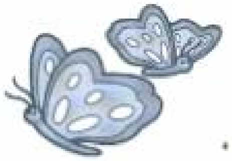
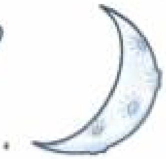
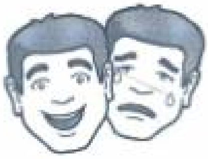
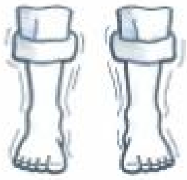
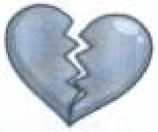
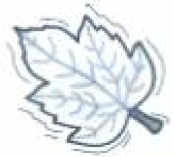

▶ go red

Unit 28

1 Complete the crossword using the clues. The letters in the grey squares spell out a word. What is it?

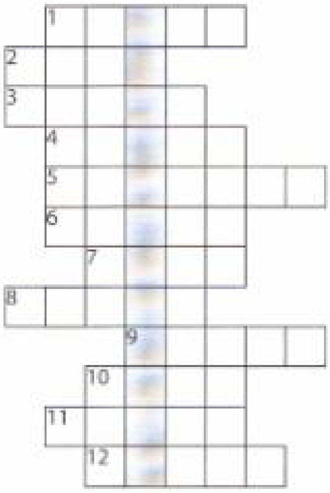

1 It was a case of love at .... sight.
2 He's very pleasant, but he's not my .... I prefer more mature men.
3 He would do anything for his wife; he thinks the .... of her.
4 Has Jake fallen for Amanda, do you think? ~ Yes, he's .... about her.
5 I wouldn't like anything to come .... us.
6 Whatever happens, my parents will always .... together; they'd never break up.
7 Has he left her for .... ? ~ Yes, he'll never come back.
8 If anything goes .... between them, they sit down and talk about the problem.
9 Try putting yourself in your friend's .... – how do you think she's feeling?
10 He saw me sitting alone and tried to .... me up – but then my boyfriend turned up!
11 We made a good start in our marriage and managed to .... on that.
12 It's very sad; I never thought they would .... up, but they have.

Unit 29

1 Complete the definitions.

1 *drive someone up the wall* = make someone very __________ .
2 *cheer someone up* = make someone __________ than they were.
3 *keep on doing something* = __________ doing something.
4 *get on someone's nerves* = make someone __________ .
5 *bite someone's head off* = answer someone in a very __________ way.
6 *change your mind* = change your __________ or decision.

2 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the phrasal verbs and idioms in the table. You can move horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.

GIVE	OVER	SHOW	BY	PUT
AND	AND	OFF	MYSELF	SOMETHING
TAKE	OVER	AGAIN	THE	OFF
UPS →	AND ↓	MINUTE	LAST	TAKE
ROUND	DOWNS	THE	CHANGE	SOMETHING
THE	BEND	SUBJECT	ACCOUNT	INTO

▸ We've had our ups and downs __________ , but in general we have a very happy marriage.
1 I didn't want to talk about sport, so I tried to __________ .
2 He waited until __________ before deciding what the team would be.
3 In a relationship you need some __________ for it to be successful.
4 Your situation is different from the others, so I'll __________ when I make my decision.
5 He leaves all the lights on all the time – it drives me __________ .
6 The little boy kept saying the same thing __________ .
7 We can't have the party on Saturday, so we're going to __________ until later in the year.
8 He likes to __________ on the tennis court, especially when girls are watching.
9 Dad wanted to help me fix the car, but I said I'd prefer to do it __________ .

Unit 30

1 Complete the phrase that is being defined.

1 If you ' __________ in something', you are certain that something exists.
2 'There's no time to __________ ' is used to tell somebody to hurry.
3 If something is OK 'so __________ ', it is OK until now.
4 If you 'keep your feet on the __________ ', you keep a sensible attitude to life.
5 If 'your __________ isn't in something', you're not very interested or excited about it.
6 If a wish or hope ' __________ true', it really happens.
7 If you do something 'just for __________ ', you do it for pleasure, and for no other reason.
8 If you 'find your __________ ', you become confident and know what to do in a situation.

2 Complete the horoscope.

GEMINI
22 May – 21 June

Work has taken (1) __________ your life in recent months, but it mustn't get in the (2) __________ of your personal life over the next two weeks, or (3) __________ you could miss a great opportunity. Someone (a member of the opposite sex) has been (4) __________ something to themselves for a long time, but not (5) __________ longer: and I dare (6) __________ you know who I'm talking about! They are going to confide (7) __________ you, and – you never (8) __________ – it could be the beginning of an important stage in your life. Don't miss it.

31 I can describe the weather

The day will **start off** with a bit of sunshine, but you'll need to **make the most of** it because it'll soon **cloud over**, and by lunchtime **the chances are** we'll all get a shower. The rain may **die out** in the south, where it could even **brighten up** during the afternoon, but further north there will be more showers **here and there**. If you were hoping for better things tomorrow, I'm afraid you're **out of luck**, and Friday could be the third wet day **in a row**. **Looking on the bright side**, though, things may **pick up** by the weekend.

Glossary

make the most of sth	enjoy sth while you have the opportunity.
cloud over	become cloudy.
the chances are (that) …	it is likely/probable (that) …
die out	gradually disappear and stop completely.
brighten up	improve and become brighter (usually with more sunshine).
here and there	in various places.
out of luck	unlucky. OPP **in luck**.
in a row	one after the other.
look on the bright side	be optimistic; think positively.
pick up	improve; get better.

spotlight *start off, start out*

Start off and **start out** both mean 'begin to happen, or begin doing sth', e.g. *We started off/out after breakfast and arrived at lunchtime.*

We often use **start out** to talk about something beginning in one way and developing in another way: *I started out as a vet, then went into business.*

We use **start off** when we talk about something beginning in a particular way: *Let's start off with a review of last week's work.*

1 Choose the correct answer.

1 Even when things are really bad, Harry still looks on the *bright* | *brighter* side.
2 The centre is quiet now, but the *probabilities* | *chances* are it'll soon be busy.
3 We were *in luck* | *out of luck*: we had five cold, wet days in a *line* | *row*.
4 There's plenty of snow for skiing, so let's make *more* | *the most* of it.
5 We are expecting a few showers *there and here* | *here and there* this afternoon.
6 The rain is quite heavy at the moment, but it'll soon *die out* | *die off*.
7 Business was slow at first, but I'm sure it'll *get up* | *pick up* soon.
8 Shall we *start off* | *start out* with soup?

2 Complete the text with suitable words.

We decided to go down to the coast, and were hoping for good weather. We (1) .... off early to avoid the rush hour and also to (2) .... the most of the day. The weather forecast said it had been raining (3) .... and there during the night, but luckily it had (4) .... out by the morning, and it (5) .... up as we got nearer Brighton. It was actually quite sunny when we arrived. Unfortunately it soon (6) .... over again, and by the afternoon it was pouring with rain. Yet again, we were (7) .... of luck.

32 I can talk about sleep

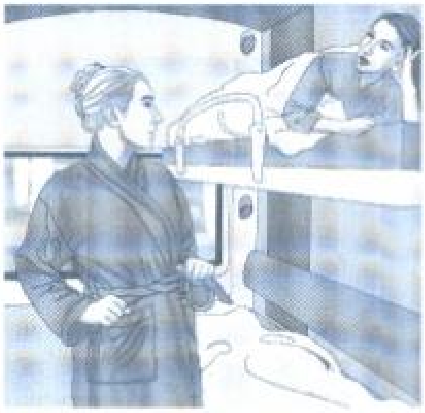

A Morning, Kasha – did you sleep well?

B Yeah, I **had a** really **good night**, thanks – I **fell asleep** immediately. How about you?

A Awful – I **didn't sleep a wink**. Well, that's not entirely true. I eventually managed to **drop off**, but I spent most of the night **tossing and turning**.

B Yeah, I had a similar problem **the night before last**. I was **wide awake** for ages because I was **worried sick about** work.

A Yeah well, never mind. We'll be back home tonight, so we can both **have an early night** and **a lie-in** tomorrow if we want.

Glossary

have a good/bad night	have a night during which you sleep well/badly.
fall asleep	begin to sleep. SYN **drop off** (**to sleep**).
not sleep a wink	INF not sleep at all. OPP **sleep like a log** INF.
toss and turn	be unable to sleep, or sleep badly, changing your position in bed all the time.
the night before last	If today is Saturday, **the night before last** is last Thursday night, i.e. two nights ago.
wide awake	completely awake. OPP **fast asleep** = in a deep sleep.
worried sick (**about sth/sb**)	INF extremely worried about sth/sb.
have an early / **a late night**	go to bed earlier/later than usual.
have a lie-in	INF stay in bed later than usual in the morning. **lie in** V.

1 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

▸ I was already ~~wide wake~~ before I had to get up this morning. wide awake
1 I sometimes drop out on long train journeys. ______
2 I didn't wink a sleep last night. ______
3 I've had several later nights this week. ______
4 I never fall to sleep watching television. ______
5 I made a lie-in this morning. ______
6 If I don't fall asleep quickly, I turn and toss for hours. ______
7 I had a very good sleep the night before the last. ______
8 I'm worry sick about my English. ______

2 Write the opposite using an idiom. More than one answer may be possible.

1 I slept all night. ______
2 I got up at the usual time. ______
3 I wasn't worried at all. ______
4 I didn't move all night. ______
5 I was fast asleep. ______
6 I managed to stay awake. ______
7 I slept badly. ______
8 I went to bed later than usual. ______

3 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 1 true for you? If not, change them so that they are true and write them in your notebook, or talk to another student.

▸ I was already wide awake before I had to get up this morning. No, I was fast asleep.

33 I can talk about spending and saving

A Different kinds of spender

← Chloe's very **careful with money**. She's not very **well off**, but she makes sure she's never **in the red**, so if she can't afford something, she just **saves up for** it. She **pays off** her credit card debt immediately, and when times are bad, she just **cuts back on** her spending.

→ The way he behaves, you'd think Luke was **rolling in money**, but he isn't. He finds it hard to **make ends meet**, he**'s** often **in debt**, and he won't admit that he's **hard up**. Some of the time, he **lives off** his parents and I'm sure he never **pays them back**.

Glossary

careful with (your) money	spending money only when it is necessary.
well off	having a lot of money. OPP **badly off**.
in the red	having spent more money than you have in the bank. OPP **in the black**. (See page 144.)
save up (for sth)	keep money so that you can use it later.
cut back on sth	reduce the amount of sth that you spend, use, etc.
rolling in money/it	INF having a lot of money.
make ends meet	manage to buy the things you need with the money you have or earn.
be in debt	owe money to sb.
hard up	INF not having much money.
live off sb	rely on sb else to provide you with food, money, etc.

spotlight Phrasal verbs with *pay*

I paid off my debts. = finished paying the money I owed.
She paid me back. = gave me the money that she had borrowed from me.
I paid in £1000. = put £1000 into my bank account. OPP **take out**.

1 Correct the mistakes with the particles.

1 I'm afraid I'm at the red. ……
2 I cut back in my spending. ……
3 Pay out the money you borrowed. ……
4 He's been on debt for years. ……
5 How will he pay over his debts? ……
6 Go to the bank and pay the cheque on. ……
7 She's absolutely rolling on money. ……
8 You have to save out for it. ……

2 Complete the sentences.

1 I take money …… of my account once a week.
2 I'm not very …… with money; I just spend whatever I have.
3 I find it very difficult to …… back on my spending.
4 Doctors live comfortably and are …… off, but nurses are …… off.
5 Most elderly people are quite …… up.
6 Young people live …… their parents till they are about 18.
7 People who are …… in money have to pay higher taxes.
8 Lawyers find it difficult to make …… meet.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Are the sentences in Exercise 2 true about you and your country? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B Money in adverts

Saving for a rainy day?

Look at our new savings account.

Air travel:
don't **get ripped off**
– come to
webtravel.co.uk.

Students:
keep your head above water!
Buy
Student Finance Magazine.

Pay for your
electricity online
and we'll **take** 2% **off**.

You've **run up a debt** *and are worried about it?*

We can help.

Don't **run out of** money abroad:
take
traveller's cheques.

How to **get your money's worth** when hiring a builder:
read our factsheet and **it won't cost** you **a penny**.

VISIT
SOUTH AFRICA
on a shoestring!

Our insurance will
COVER THE COST OF
dental work.

Glossary

save for a rainy day	save money for a time when you really need it.
rip sb off	INF cheat sb by charging too much money for sth. **rip-off** N.
keep your head above water	just manage to survive in a difficult situation, especially one in which you don't have enough money.
take sth off sth	make sth cheaper by a certain amount.
run up a debt/bill	If you **run up a debt** or **bill**, you owe sb a lot of money.
run out of sth	use all of sth and have no more left.
get your money's worth	get the full value of the money you have spent.
not a penny	no money at all. (**It didn't/won't cost a penny.**)
on a shoestring	INF using very little money.
cover the cost (of sth)	provide enough money to pay for sth.

4 Correct one wrong letter in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

- ▸ If you're lucky, they'll ~~m~~ake 10 per cent off your bill. take
- 1 Are you able to cover the post of the transport yourself?
- 2 The concert was disappointing; I didn't feel I'd got my honey's worth.
- 3 Be careful; you don't want to rub up a huge bill for the wedding.
- 4 The taxi driver knew we weren't locals, and we got nipped off.
- 5 It's not always easy to keep your lead above water when you're a student.
- 6 We ran out on money and had to go to the cash machine at the bank.
- 7 Mum said it would be expensive, but it didn't cost a jenny.
- 8 I've always believed you should save for a rainy way.

5 Rewrite the sentence using the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

- ▸ The shopkeeper made it cheaper by €20. OFF The shopkeeper took €20 off.
- 1 He runs the café with little money. SHOESTRING
- 2 I didn't expect him to cheat me like that. RIP
- 3 Keep your money till you really need it. RAINY
- 4 It's hard to survive with the money I've got. WATER
- 5 It was absolutely free. PENNY
- 6 The insurance paid for the hospital. COST
- 7 Did you get good value for money? WORTH
- 8 I haven't got any dollars left. RUN

34 I can talk about diets and cooking

A Going on a diet

NAME Jo Jones
CURRENT WEIGHT 90 kg
TARGET WEIGHT 60 kg

Hi, **I'm going on a diet** – starting tomorrow! I'm worried that if I see a packet of biscuits, I'll just **give in** and eat **one after another**. Please help.

[blond23]

Hi Jo. **If I were you, I'd** just **cut down on** everything sugary. And **whatever you do**, don't **go without** breakfast – it's the most important meal of the day. Remember to do some exercise to **burn up** the calories. Good luck!

[Kima]

Jo, **make sure** you eat lots of fruit, vegetables, and brown rice; **fill yourself up with** them before you eat anything else. The rule is, if you**'re starving**, eat fruit! All the best!

Glossary

go/be on a diet	try to get thinner by eating a limited range of food.
give in (to sth)	If you **give in to sth**, you can't say 'no' to sth you want.
one after another	first one, then the next, etc. SYN **one after the other**.
cut down (on sth)	reduce the amount of sth that you eat, use, etc., or do sth less often.
go without sth	live without sth that you need or would like to have.
burn sth up	use up energy in your body by being physically active.
fill yourself up (with sth)	eat enough food so you no longer feel hungry.
be starving	INF be extremely hungry.

spotlight Giving advice

You can use these phrases when you are giving advice:

If I were you, I'd cut down on bread. = in your situation, I would …

Whatever you do, avoid cheese. used with a warning to sb not to do sth.

Make sure you drink plenty of water. = take the action necessary.

1 Complete the sentences with words from the box. (There are more words than you need.)

in up be another go burn other cut go starving

1 He ate them one after ______ .
2 Don't give ______ to the desire to smoke.
3 What's for dinner? I'm ______ .
4 You need to ______ up the calories.
5 He just fills himself ______ with cakes.
6 Try and ______ without sugary drinks.
7 Have you ______ down on hamburgers?
8 Why don't you ______ on a diet?

2 Circle the correct word. (You will complete the sentences in Exercise 3.)

1 If you want to go *in* | *on* a diet, try to eat ______ .
2 If I *were* | *am* you, I *wouldn't* | *won't* eat ______ .
3 *Whatever* | *Wherever* you do, don't forget to ______ .
4 *Make* | *Get* sure you take ______ .
5 If you're *starving* | *staring*, don't *fill* | *fit* yourself up with ______ .
6 Try to cut *out* | *down* on drinks like ______ .

3 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences in Exercise 2, giving advice to someone who wants to lose weight. If possible, discuss your answers with another student.

B Kitchen tips

All you need to know from kitchenhelp.com

- Freeze an onion before you **chop** it **up**[1]: that way, you won't cry.
- Fish smells can stay on pots and pans used in cooking. If you have a pan that smells, put some tea in it, **turn up** the heat till it boils, then **throw** it **out**. That will **get rid of** the smell.
- Garlic skins **come off** easily if you warm them before peeling. Or put the garlic under a flat knife and hit it with your hand: the skin opens and you can **get** the garlic **out** easily.
- You can **make use of** leftover cold rice by **heating** it **up** in the microwave with a little water. Then add it to a soup: it's a great way to **turn** leftovers **into** something new.

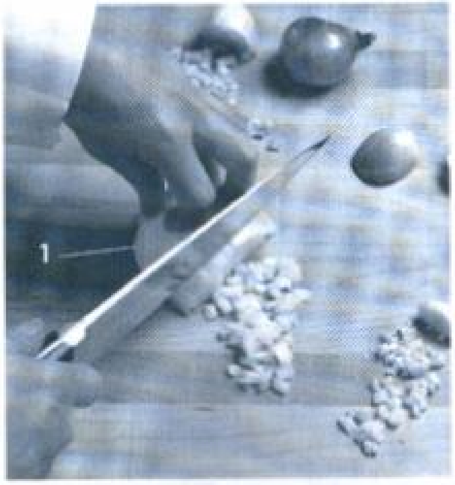

Glossary

chop sth up	cut sth into small pieces.
turn sth up	increase the heat or sound of sth. OPP **turn sth down**.
throw sth out	put sth that you do not want in the dustbin, down the sink, etc.
come off	If sth will **come off**, you can remove it.
get sth out (**of sth**)	take sth from inside the place where it normally is.
make use of sth	use sth for a particular purpose.
heat sth up	make sth become warm or hot. (**cool down** = become cool, e.g. *Let the vegetables* ***cool down*** *before you eat them.*)
turn sth into sth	make sth become sth different.

spotlight *get rid of sth/sb*

If you **get rid of sth/sb**, you take action in order to be free of it/them.
Open the door to get rid of the smell. = so that the smell will go away.
Let's get rid of this stale bread. = throw it out.
I got rid of the chef; he was terrible. = made him leave.

4 Respond to the question in each dialogue using a word from the box in the correct form.

get ✓ throw come heat rid turn use

▸ Did you tell that terrible waiter to leave? ~ Yes, I got rid of him.
1 Was the oven temperature too low? ~ Yes, I had to ______.
2 The dish wasn't very warm, was it? ~ No, I had to ______.
3 Can you remove the mark from the saucepan? Yes, it'll ______ easily.
4 Did you throw that coffee out? ~ Yes, I got ______.
5 What did you do with all those eggs? ~ I managed to ______; I made a cake.
6 Did you put that awful cake in the bin? ~ Yes, I ______.

5 Rewrite the sentences in the correct order, adding one more word.

▸ up | I | so | was | the | food | cold | it The food was cold, so I heated it up.
1 pears | throw | don't | those | please ______.
2 he | chop | needs | the | to | onions ______.
3 the | out | get | I | olives | jar | couldn't | the ______.
4 down | please | you | the | oven | could ______?
5 the | turned | I | a | tomatoes | soup ______.
6 too | let | cool | it's | if | hot | it ______.

35 I can understand crime reporting

The Morning News

Thieves **get away with** antiques valued at €1m

The City Museum was the scene of a major crime last night when thieves **tricked** a security guard **into** believing they were a new team of cleaners … [read more]

Hold-up at city bank

Two armed men **held up** a city bank yesterday, holding the bank manager prisoner for an hour as they searched for cash. They then **ran off with** €100,000 … [read more]

Break-in at Simpson's Hotel

Police searched **in vain** last night for two men who **broke into** Simpson's Hotel. [read more]

NEWS IN BRIEF

Burglar **caught red-handed**

Police warn residents to **be on the lookout for** thieves

Children 'as young as six' **getting into trouble with** the police

Internet crime **on the rise**

Speeding driver **let off** with warning

Man accused of murder **beaten up** in prison

Drug dealer **behind bars**

Glossary

get away with sth	do sth bad and not be punished for it.
trick sb into sth / doing sth	persuade sb to do sth by making them believe sth which is not true.
hold up sth/sb	rob or try to rob a place or a person by threatening violence. **hold-up** N.
in vain	without success.
break in/into sth	enter a building by force, usually to steal sth. **break-in** N.
catch sb red-handed	catch sb while they are committing a crime. (👁 See page 144.)
be on the lookout for sb/sth	INF pay attention in order to see, find, or avoid sb/sth.
get into trouble (with sb)	get into a situation where you may be punished.
on the rise	increasing. SYN **on the increase**.
let sb off	not punish sb, or punish them less than expected.
beat sb up	attack sb by hitting or kicking them many times.
behind bars	INF in prison.

spotlight Phrasal verbs and idioms with *run*

He ran off with my handbag. = stole it and left quickly.
She ran away from home. = left home secretly to escape from sb or sth.
The prisoner is on the run. = trying to hide or escape from the police.

1 Circle the correct particle.

1 The police searched the area *in* | *on* vain for the suspects.
2 Two young men are thought to be *at* | *on* the run after escaping from prison last night.
3 His life started to go wrong after he ran *away* | *off* from home at the age of 16.
4 The number of burglaries is *in* | *on* the rise in certain parts of the country.
5 The thief tricked the old couple *into* | *in* giving him their bank details.
6 I don't think that we will get *away* | *around* with telling lies for very long.
7 The poor man was beaten *out* | *up* outside the pub.
8 Police are *in* | *on* the lookout for two men in their twenties.

2 Write the last word in each sentence.

1 I know the thieves escaped, but are they still on the ____________ ?
2 If they carry on behaving so anti-socially, they'll soon get into ____________ .
3 Sadly, our efforts to find the person who stole the jewellery were in ____________ .
4 Everyone at the bank was very shocked to hear about last night's break-____________ .
5 What do you think she was running away ____________ ?
6 The crime figures haven't fallen; on the contrary, they're on the ____________ .
7 It was a silly mistake and the police caught him red-____________ .
8 The boys took his mobile phone, but at least they didn't beat him ____________ .

3 Rewrite the sentence using the word in capitals. The meaning must remain the same.

▸ They threatened violence and stole from the bank. HOLD They held up the bank.
1 Dan will be punished for this. TROUBLE ____________
2 He committed the crime but wasn't punished. AWAY ____________
3 The police are looking for two thieves. LOOKOUT ____________
4 The escaped murderer is now back in prison. BARS ____________
5 They caught the boy but did not punish him. LET ____________
6 She left home to escape from her father. RUN ____________
7 The barman was attacked by the gang. BEAT ____________
8 We looked for the ring without any success. VAIN ____________

4 One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?

Minor crime is certainly ‸ the increase in some on
villages; a few teenagers have been into trouble 1 ____________
with the police. Residents have been the lookout 2 ____________
for any bad behaviour. When one boy into the 3 ____________
village shop at night, he was red-handed, but the 4 ____________
police just let him with a severe warning. I don't 5 ____________
think he should have been able to away with it. 6 ____________
But last night two men tricked a resident letting 7 ____________
them into his house; they then ran with some 8 ____________
very valuable things, and they are still on run. 9 ____________
I think that people like that should be bars. 10 ____________

36 I can talk about work experience

A A positive experience

ALAN When you started your apprenticeship, I didn't think you'd **get through** it.

TOM No, neither did I. Working **all hours** for **next to nothing** was hard, and some of the time I wasn't really sure I **was up to** it.

ALAN Yes, I remember old Wilson **giving** you **a hard time** when you **got behind with** work. But you wouldn't have **made it** without him, would you?

TOM No, you're right. He **stood by** me all those years, and I certainly **have** him **to thank for** the fact that I'm now fully qualified.

Glossary

get through sth	manage to complete a difficult task or deal with a difficult situation.
all hours	If you work **all hours**, you work most of the time or for long periods.
next to nothing	almost nothing (in this case, almost no money).
be up to sth	be skilled or strong enough physically or mentally to do sth.
give sb a hard time	INF make a situation difficult for sb, often by making them work hard or by asking them lots of difficult questions.
get behind (**with sth**)	not do sth on time, then have more to do later.
stand by sb	support or be loyal to sb, even in a difficult situation.
have sb to thank (**for sth**)	used when you are saying who is responsible for sth, usually for sth good.

spotlight *make it*

Make it is a common idiom and can be used in different situations:
He'll never make it as a teacher. = be successful in a career (as above).
I can't make it tomorrow. = be present at a particular time or place.

1 Positive or negative? Write P or N.

1 She got through it. ……
2 He made next to nothing. ……
3 I wasn't up to it. ……
4 He got behind. ……
5 They stood by me. ……
6 She made it as a doctor. ……

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 Can you …… it on Wednesday? ~ Yes, I'm free all day.
2 Did you finish the work? ~ Yeah, we eventually …… through it.
3 Is she a difficult boss? ~ Well, she's given me quite a hard …… .
4 Did he …… it as an engineer? ~ He did, and he has his uncle to …… for that.
5 Has your boss helped you? ~ Yes, he's always …… by me.
6 Why did Matthew leave? ~ He just wasn't …… to the job, so they dismissed him.

3 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

1 The teacher thinks I'm lazy and she's been giving me hard time. ……
2 That poor boy earns next nothing. ……
3 I'm sure she'll make as a nurse; she's very caring. ……
4 She's started to behind with her work, and it's affecting everyone. ……
5 I'm working hours at the moment; I never have a day off. ……
6 The picnic was great, and we have my brother thank for that. ……

B A negative experience

After university, I **was turned down** by lots of companies before I **was** finally **taken on** by a firm selling farm machinery. I thought it was a **nine-to-five** job but I was wrong. I had to work all hours, and my boss **was** constantly **checking up on** me to make sure I was **hard at it**. **To make matters worse**, we **were dealing with** some difficult farmers. Once I realized that I **wasn't cut out for** the job, I decided to **hand in my notice.** But before I had a chance, they **gave** me **the sack** – they realized I was hopeless!

Glossary

turn sb down	say 'no' to sb when they apply for sth or offer sth.
take sb on	employ sb.
nine-to-five	relating to normal and regular working hours (also as ADV: *work **nine to five***).
check up on sb	watch sb to make sure they are doing their job.
hard at it	INF working hard.
to make matters/things worse	to make a bad situation even worse.
deal with sb/sth	1 do business with sb (as above). 2 take the necessary action to resolve sth, e.g. ***I deal with** customer complaints.*
be cut out for sth / to do sth	INF have the necessary qualities and ability for / to do sth (*He's not **cut out for** teaching / **to be** a teacher*).
hand in your notice	formally tell your employer that you are leaving your job.
give sb the sack	tell an employee that they can no longer work for you because of bad work, their behaviour, etc.

4 Cross out the wrong word. Write the correct word at the end.

1 It's basically a nine-for-five job. ……
2 Why did they give him a sack? ……
3 Is he checking up against you? ……
4 We deal on lots of banks. ……
5 I've been hard with it all day. ……
6 To make matters worst, I failed. ……

5 Agree with the first speaker's comment, but use a different idiom or phrasal verb.

▸ It's regular working hours, isn't it? ~ Yeah, it's a nine-to-five job.
1 They rejected you! ~ Yes, they …… .
2 She's resigned, hasn't she? ~ Yes, she …… yesterday.
3 They've employed more people. ~ Yes, they've …… two drivers.
4 Have they dismissed her? ~ Yes, they …… last week.
5 Has she been watching you at work? ~ Yes, she …… on me all the time.
6 He didn't have the ability for that job. ~ No, he wasn't …… for it.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers in your notebook or ask another student.

Have you ever …
… been turned down for anything?
… had a nine-to-five job?
… handed in your notice?
… had someone checking up on you?
… had to do something you weren't cut out for?

37 I can describe a small business

A Taking over a restaurant

> Friends thought we **were out of our minds** when we **took over** the restaurant in the High Street. It had been **a going concern** at one time, but **had changed hands** three times in recent years, and on each occasion **had gone out of business**. Someone wanted to **turn** it **into** a baker's, but the deal **fell through** and we **took** it **on**. It needed money spent on it, and we had to **take out** a loan to **bridge the gap**, but we got the business **up and running** very quickly. We **took on** a very good chef, promoted the restaurant widely, and worked day and night to **make a go of** it. We still **have a long way to go**, but we're optimistic.

Glossary

be out of your mind	INF be mad or crazy.
take sth over	get control of sth or responsibility for sth.
a going concern	a business or activity that is making a profit.
change hands	pass from one owner to another.
go out of business	stop operating as a business because there is no more money.
turn sth (from sth) into sth	make sth become sth different.
fall through	fail or not happen.
take out sth	make a financial or legal arrangement with a company, bank, etc. (***take out a loan/insurance***).
bridge the gap	reduce the difference between two things (in this case between the money they have and the money they need).
up and running	(of a business or system) working and being used.
make a go of sth	INF make sth successful.
have a long way to go	need to make more progress before achieving sth.

spotlight *take sth on, take sb on*

If you **take sth on**, you decide to do it or be responsible for it.
If you **take sb on**, you employ them.

1 Match 1–6 with a–f.

1 bridge ___
2 take over ___
3 change ___
4 take on ___
5 go out of ___
6 take out ___

a insurance
b hands
c a new employee
d the gap
e a company
f business

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

▸ The company is doing well, so we'll need to take ‸ more staff. on
1 We didn't have the money, so we had to take a loan. ___
2 It's not easy to run a café, but they think they can make go of it. ___
3 The shop is making money; they sold it as a concern. ___
4 We're negotiating the deal now, but it could still fall. ___
5 I decided to on the job because I wanted a new challenge. ___
6 You must be out of your to lend money to Karl; he's very unreliable. ___
7 We're doing quite well, but we still have a long to go. ___
8 They soon got the business and running. ___
9 It used to be a shoe shop, but it's been into a chemist's. ___

B Living off the land

Sam Wall had always wanted to **opt out of the rat race**, so when a small farm **came up for sale**, he **handed in his notice** at the bank, and moved his family to the countryside. He thought they could grow their own food and become self-sufficient. Sadly, Sam **was living in a dream world**. He didn't have the skills for farming, and soon found himself **cutting corners** in order to **make ends meet**. It proved to be **a vicious circle** and things gradually **went from bad to worse**. Eventually he was forced to **sell up** and move back to the city.

FOR SALE
SOLD
FIRST-CLASS ARABLE LAND

Glossary

opt out (of sth)	choose not to do sth or take part in sth.
the rat race	a stressful way of life in which people compete for wealth and power.
come up	happen or appear.
for sale	being offered for sb to buy.
hand/give in your notice	formally tell your employer that you are leaving your job.
be (living) in a dream world	have ideas or hopes that are not practical.
cut corners	do sth in the easiest and cheapest way, usually badly.
make ends meet	manage to buy the things you need with the money you have or earn.
a vicious circle	a situation in which one problem causes another problem which then makes the first problem worse.
go from bad to worse	(of a bad situation) get even worse.
sell up	sell your home, business, etc., often when leaving the area.

3 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 They tried to cut *corners* | *edges*.
2 She *gave* | *handed* in her notice.
3 He opted *out of* | *away from* the rat race.
4 It's a *violent* | *vicious* circle.
5 I saw a house *to* | *for* sale.
6 We can make ends *manage* | *meet*.
7 I decided to sell *up* | *off* and move away.
8 It went from bad to *worse* | *worst*.

4 Complete the idioms.

1 hand in your ____________
2 a vicious ____________
3 make ends ____________
4 the rat ____________
5 go from bad to ____________
6 be living in a dream ____________

5 Complete the text.

My father always says I'm living in a (1) ____________ world if I imagine I can just (2) ____________ out of the rat (3) ____________ whenever I want. The truth is, our situations are very different. He has responsibilities, so he can't just hand in his (4) ____________ and sell (5) ____________ ; he has to consider the rest of the family. But I don't need a job with lots of money to make (6) ____________ meet. If something came (7) ____________ , like the chance to live on a boat for a year, I'd take it.

38 I can talk about shopping

Shopping and you

Have you ever tried to **get** your money **back** on something you bought?

Do you like to buy new things as soon as they go **on sale**?

Do you ever **send off for** things **rather than** buy them in shops?

Do you always **shop around** to get the best price for something?

Do you often buy goods which are **on special offer**?

When did you last **splash out on** something to wear? What did you buy?

When you last bought a present, did the shop **wrap** it **up** nicely for you **for nothing**?

Do your local shops often sell **sell out of** things, e.g. bread?

Glossary

get sth back	If you **get your money back**, the money you have paid is returned to you.
on sale	available to be bought, especially in a shop.
send off/away for sth	order sth by post or on the Internet.
rather than	instead of; in place of.
shop around (for sth)	go to several shops before you decide what particular thing to buy.
on (special) offer	on sale at a lower price than normal for a short time.
splash out (on sth)	INF spend a lot of money on sth.
wrap sth up	cover sth, e.g. a present or parcel, completely in paper.
for nothing	for free; without any payment.
sell out (of sth)	If a shop **sells out of sth**, it has no more of that particular thing left to sell.

1 Write sentences using words from each column.

I didn't get	off	back
They've sold	the gift	milk
I sent	on	on a new coat
She splashed	my money	for bargains
The wine is	out of	for a book
He wrapped	out	special offer
I always shop	for	up for me
I got the bike	around	nothing

I ……………………………… .

They ……………………………… .

I ……………………………… .

She ……………………………… .

The ……………………………… .

He ……………………………… .

I ……………………………… .

I ……………………………… .

2 Replace the underlined words with another word or phrase with a similar meaning.

1 I don't think I'll be able to get a refund on the holiday. ………………

2 We bought the medium size instead of the large one this time. ………………

3 When will that computer game be available in the shops? ………………

4 He spent a lot of money on presents for his nephews. ………………

5 I saw some nice shoes in a catalogue so I ordered them by post. ………………

6 Are the CDs cheaper this week? ………………

7 Did you go to different shops for the wedding present? ………………

8 I was amazed, but she provided the delivery service free. ………………

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions at the top of the page, or ask another student.

Review: Everyday topics

Unit 31

1 Replace the underlined words and phrases with idioms or phrasal verbs that have the same meaning. Write your answers in the spaces below, using the first words to help you.

It's going to 1) become cloudy, and, according to the weather forecast, 2) it is likely that it will rain before lunchtime. Fortunately, the rain will 3) gradually disappear in the afternoon, and then I think it may 4) become brighter. I'm afraid we may be 5) unlucky at the weekend; they say we're going to have three days 6) running of wet weather, but things will 7) improve by the middle of next week. Let's 8) be optimistic.

1 cloud ....

2 the ....

3 die ....

4 brighten ....

5 out ....

6 in ....

7 pick ....

8 look ....

Unit 32

1 Using all the words, form eight idioms from the word square.

wide	have	like	and	last
not	toss	fall	a wink	a lie-in
sleep	worried	a log	awake	sick
the night	turn	sleep	before	asleep

Unit 33

1 Complete the dialogues.

1 A Hi, Jen – how's things?

B Well, OK, but I'm worried about my financial situation. I'm a bit hard (1) .... at the moment and finding it hard to make (2) .... meet.

A Oh, dear. Look, come and stay with me for a week or two – it won't (3) .... you a penny.

B That's very kind, but I can't come and (4) .... off you – that's not fair.

A Well, it's up to you. But I could lend you some money – just (5) .... me back when you're earning more.

B I appreciate that, and I'll think about it. But in the meantime, I'll just have to (6) .... back on my spending.

2 A Where are you going for your holidays this year?

B Well, I'm saving (7) .... for a fortnight in the Canary Islands in September. Hey, would you like to come?

A That would be fantastic, but I really can't afford it at the moment.

B Well, I tell you what – if you can (8) .... the cost of your travel, I'll pay for the accommodation.

A Really? Brilliant! I'll be really (9) .... with my money for the next few months.

Unit 34

1 Complete the text.

My favourite meal

Posted by *Mad Matt* on 3 January 2010

One dish I absolutely adore is roast duck, and I make it quite often. First, I (1) __________ up the oven to the maximum temperature, then I put the duck in until the skin starts to go crisp. Meanwhile I (2) __________ up some vegetables such as carrots and potatoes into large chunks. After half an hour, I turn the oven (3) __________ and put the vegetables in as well (but not with the duck, because it is too fatty). I let them both cook for 45 minutes, then take the duck out and let it (4) __________ down slightly (I prefer it warm rather than hot). Then I serve it on top of the vegetables.

When you've eaten the duck, don't get (5) __________ of the bones. You can turn them (6) __________ a delicious soup just by adding vegetables, herbs, water, and seasoning, and cooking it very gently for two hours. You can also (7) __________ good use of the fat from the duck to fry potatoes, so don't throw that (8) __________ either.

One final piece of advice is not to serve roast duck if your dinner guests are (9) __________ a diet or trying to (10) __________ down on fattening food. They won't thank you for it!

Unit 35

1 Write sentences using words from each column.

He won't get	up	with the police.
They broke	away	my wallet.
They beat him	on	a shop.
They caught	for	the run.
They're on the lookout	trouble	with the robbery.
The thief ran off	him	quite badly.
She could get into	into	red-handed.
The prisoner is still	with	the robbers.

2 Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first.

▸ The boys escaped without being punished. In other words, they got away with it.
1 They threatened the cashier and demanded money. In other words, it was a __________.
2 They did it without success. In other words, they did it in __________.
3 The men will spend ten years in prison. In other words, they will spend ten years behind __________.
4 They entered the building using force. In other words, there has been a __________.
5 Crime is increasing. In other words, it's on __________ __________.
6 She left the house to escape from her parents. In other words, she ran __________ __________.
7 They didn't punish him for what he did. In other words, they __________ __________.
8 He could get into a situation where he will be punished. In other words, he could get __________ __________.

Unit 36

1 Cross out one wrong or unnecessary word in each line of the text.

My workplace difficulties

I haven't been very successful in the workplace. In one job, I worked all ► ~~long~~ hours,
and I had a difficult boss who was always checking it up on me; it made work very
hard. She kept on telling me that she didn't think I was up to for the job, and I felt
that she never gave me any support at all. To make the matters worse, my other
colleagues weren't very kind, and they didn't really stand up by me either.
Eventually, I decided that I'd had enough, and I handed them in my notice and
started to look for another job. I was taken down on as a medical secretary, but it
was harder than I'd thought, and I realized that I wasn't really cut off out for it.
And in fact, at the end of the first month, they gave to me the sack.

2 Write the last word in the sentence.

1 I wanted the job, but I didn't have enough experience so they turned me ....
2 I don't really like working nine to ....
3 I looked for another job because my boss was giving me a really hard ....
4 My success is really because of my parents: I have them to ....
5 My sister loves her job, but she earns next to ....
6 There's a meeting tomorrow at 7.30 a.m. Do you think you can make .... ?

Unit 37

1 You own a company. Are the following events good news or bad news? Write G or B.

1 Workers hand in their notice. ....
2 Your company is a going concern. ....
3 A business deal falls through. ....
4 You take people on. ....
5 You start cutting corners. ....
6 You take over another company. ....
7 You make a go of it. ....
8 You are in a vicious circle. ....

2 Complete the sentences with the correct particle.

1 He thinks I must be .... of my mind to work with my uncle.
2 They want to turn the shop .... a café.
3 She has taken .... a lot of responsibility in her new job.
4 The new business will be .... and running soon.
5 I believe the house is .... sale.
6 If an opportunity comes .... , I'm going to take it.

Unit 38

1 Complete the dialogues.

1 Did you have to pay for the repair? ~ No, they did it .... nothing.
2 Did you buy that in a shop? ~ No, I had to .... off for it.
3 Couldn't you get any tickets for the match? ~ No, they'd completely .... out.
4 Did you buy that coat today? ~ Yes, it was on special ....
5 Did you get a present for Magda? ~ Yes, could you .... it up for me?
6 Are you taking that skirt back to the shop? ~ Yes, I want to .... my money back.
7 Why did you get the black necklace .... than the red one? ~ It goes with more things.
8 Do you always shop .... before you buy anything? ~ Yes, I like a bargain.

39 I can describe social activities

A A good night out

… and after a hard week, I was hoping for **an early night**, but I **ran into** an old friend who was in town for the weekend, and he was keen for **a night out**. So, we **popped in** for a drink at The Blue Room, then went on to a seafood restaurant **just round the corner**. Seafood's **not my cup of tea** usually, but I quite enjoyed it. I offered to **go halves**, as I always do when I **eat out** with a friend, but Cal insisted on paying as I said I'd **put** him **up** for the night. We **ended up** in a bar until one, so it **turned out to be** quite **a late night** after all …

Glossary

an early night	a night when you go to bed earlier than usual. OPP **a late night**.
run into sb	meet sb you didn't plan to meet. SYN **bump into sb**.
a night out	an evening you spend out of the house enjoying yourself (also **a day out**).
pop in	make a quick visit to see sb or do sth (also **pop over/round**).
(**just**) **round the corner**	nearby; not far away. SYN **close by**.
not sb's cup of tea	INF not what sb likes or is interested in.
go halves	(of two people) share the cost of sth.
eat out	eat in a restaurant (**eat in** = eat at home).
put sb up	let sb stay at your home for a short period.
end up (**somewhere or doing sth**)	find yourself in a place or doing sth, without having planned it.
turn out (**to be sth**)	happen in a particular way, especially one that you did not expect.

1 Complete the dialogues.

1 Is there a post office close .... ? ~ Yeah, it's just .... the corner.
2 Shall we .... in and see Mandy? ~ Er, I think she might be busy.
3 I .... into an old school friend yesterday. ~ Really? Who was that?
4 Were you expecting cold weather? ~ Yes, but it .... out to be very warm.
5 Did you go to the beach? ~ No, we .... up by the lake instead.
6 Did you have a nice day .... yesterday? ~ Yes, we went for a walk in the country.
7 Have you been to the Jazz Café? ~ Yes, it's not really my cup of ....
8 I've got nowhere to stay tonight. ~ Oh, that's OK, I can .... you up.

2 Circle the correct answer. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 3.)

1 How often do you have an early *evening* | *night*?
2 How often do you eat *out* | *away*?
3 Do you normally go *half* | *halves* when you go out with a friend?
4 Are there restaurants just round the *bend* | *corner* from your home?
5 How often do you put people *up* | *in* for the night?
6 When was the last time you had a night *out* | *over*?

3 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B Not such a good night out

I didn't **feel like** going out, but Malcolm **talked** me **into** it: a club in the square had recently **changed hands** and he thought we should **try** it **out**. It was already busy when we arrived and they were only letting people in **one at a time**, but Malcolm managed to **jump the queue** – something he's very good at. Inside, we were **packed in like sardines**. As usual Malcolm **pushed in** to get a drink, but this time a barman **took exception to** his behaviour. Malcolm started to argue, which **was asking for trouble**, and in the end they **threw** us **out**. In future, I think I'll **keep away from** that place – and from Malcolm!

Glossary

feel like (doing) sth	want (to do) sth.
talk sb into (doing) sth	persuade sb to do sth.
change hands	pass from one owner to another.
try sth/sb out	test sth or sb to see what they are like.
one at a time	separately; individually.
jump the queue	go ahead of other people who have been waiting longer. SYN **push in**.
packed in like sardines	crowded so closely together that there is no space to move.
take exception to sth	be angry about sth and object to it strongly.
be asking for trouble	INF be doing sth that will probably cause problems.
throw sb out	force sb to leave a place. SYN **chuck sb out** INF.
keep away from sb/sth	avoid going near sb/sth.

4 Choose the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 They let us in one at a *go* | *time*.
2 We were making too much noise and they *threw* | *chucked* us out.
3 She didn't want to go but I talked her *up to it* | *into it*.
4 The Tube was very busy and we were packed in like *sandwiches* | *sardines*.
5 Why did she *make* | *take* exception to your clothes?
6 I was in a hurry, so I tried to *push in* | *jump the queue*.

5 Complete the sentences.

1 Do you ______________ like going out tonight?
2 They ______________ us out of the club because we weren't members.
3 Sarah had a terrible time yesterday, so don't mention it; that's ______________ for trouble.
4 It makes me very angry when people try to ______________ the queue.
5 I would ______________ away from that part of town if I were you; it's quite dangerous.
6 Amy's got a new hairdresser; I thought I'd try him ______________ to see if he's any good.
7 I didn't want to go, but she talked me ______________ it.
8 It used to be an awful place, but it changed ______________ last year, and has really improved.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 Do people often talk you into doing things? If so, what kind of thing?
2 Have you ever seen someone being thrown out of a place? If so, where?
3 Has a place near you recently changed hands? If so, what?
4 Do you ever jump the queue? Do you get angry when others push in?
5 Are there any parts of your city that tourists should keep away from?
6 What do you feel like doing this evening?

40 I can describe outdoor activities

A A walk in the country

I can't **keep up with** Josh – I just get **out of breath** – so when he suggested going for a walk, I only agreed to go if we could take my sister Michelle along as well, knowing she would **slow** us **down**. Anyway, we set off, and **sure enough**, after about ten minutes, Michelle started **falling behind**, and Josh was shouting at her, 'Come on! **Get a move on**! You**'re holding** us **up**!' She tried to **run after** us and **catch** us **up**, but eventually she shouted that she**'d had enough of** Josh's military march, and **all of a sudden** she **turned round** and headed home. I was quietly pleased.

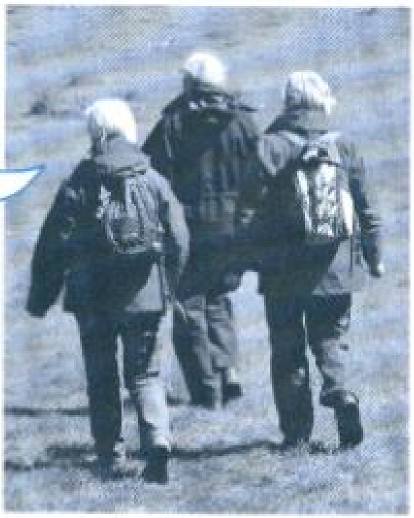

Glossary

keep up (with sb)	move at the same speed as sb else.
out of breath	breathing fast and with difficulty.
slow sb down	make sb go/walk more slowly.
sure enough	used to say that sth happened as expected.
fall behind (sb/sth)	move more slowly than other people you are with.
get a move on	INF = hurry up.
hold sb/sth up	cause a delay or make sb/sth late.
run after sb/sth	run to try to catch sb/sth.
catch sb up / catch up with sb	reach sb who is ahead of you by going faster.
have had enough of sth	used when sth is tiring or annoying you, and you want it to stop (***I've had enough of*** *this terrible weather!*).
all of a sudden	quickly and unexpectedly.
turn round/around	change direction and face the other way.

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 This weather's awful. I've had ____
2 We ran to catch ____
3 Sorry I'm late; I was held ____
4 I heard a shout, so I turned ____
5 He got slower and slower and fell ____
6 I was slowed ____
7 He ran ____
8 He shouted at us to get ____

a round and then I saw the man fall.
b a move on.
c enough of it.
d up with the others.
e behind the rest of the runners.
f up in traffic for an hour.
g after the man who had stolen his briefcase.
h down by the strong winds.

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 A Where's Alex?
B Well, he hurt his ankle and that held us ____ for a while. In the end, Leslie and I walked on and Alex started to ____ behind. I haven't seen him for two hours.

2 A What happened?
B Well, I was playing football in the garden with some friends, including my brother, Chris, who's a bit of an idiot, and all of a ____ there was a loud crash. I ____ around and someone had kicked the ball through the kitchen window. ____ enough, it was Chris.

3 A How are your swimming lessons going?
B Well, I'm getting better, but I'm still out of ____ after only 50 metres. My teacher's trying to slow me ____, but I want to ____ up with the rest of the class.

B Swimming

I love swimming – your stories

I **look forward to** the evenings when I can go down to the river and have a swim. It's really helped me **get into shape**.

Swimming **didn't come easy to** me; I had to **work at** it. But it's just **a question of** practice, and **little by little** I'm getting better, which is great.

I adore swimming – it just **comes naturally to** me. I **took it up** seriously after my accident and it's **done me** a lot of **good**.

Last year I decided to **go in for** a two-kilometre charity swim. It was great exercise and it helped to know it **was for a good cause**.

Glossary

look forward to (doing) sth	be thinking with pleasure about sth that is going to happen, or sth that you are going to do.
not come easy/easily (to sb)	be difficult for sb to do.
work at sth	make an effort over a period of time to do sth well.
be a question of (doing) sth	If sth **is a question of** practice, luck, etc., that is all you need for it to happen. SYN **be a matter of (doing) sth.**
little by little	slowly, gradually. SYN **bit by bit.**
come naturally (to sb/sth)	be natural and easy for sb to do.
take sth up	start or learn to do sth, especially for pleasure.
do sb good	have a helpful or useful effect on sb.
go in for sth	take part in a competition or take an exam.
be for/in a good cause	be a good thing to do because it helps others.

spotlight *shape*

If you **get into shape**, you become physically fitter as a result of taking exercise and eating healthy food. If you are **in good shape**, you are physically fit; if you are **out of shape** you are not fit.

3 Circle the correct answer.

1 If you do something in a good cause, it means it will help *you* | *other people*.
2 If something doesn't come easily, it means *it's hard to learn* | *you can't find it*.
3 If you plan to get into shape, it means that at the moment you're *in shape* | *out of shape*.
4 If you do something bit by bit, it means you do it *less and less* | *little by little*.
5 If you go in for a race, it means you *enter the race* | *win the race*.
6 If you take up a sport, it means you *enjoy it* | *start doing it*.

4 Complete the texts.

My sister's an amazing tango dancer. She (1) .... it up when she was very young, and at first it didn't (2) .... easy to her. However, bit (3) .... bit she became more confident, and now she's the local champion. She's going in (4) .... a national competition next month, and I'm really (5) .... forward to seeing her perform.

It's strange, but my twin and I are quite different when it comes to sport. Everything (6) .... naturally to Charlie, and as a result he's in good (7) .... But I'm a bit overweight, and for me it's really a (8) .... of having to work (9) .... any sport I try. It helps if I feel it's doing me (10) .... , I suppose, but I'd rather sit and watch him!

5 ABOUT YOU What is your swimming story? Write it in your notebook, using vocabulary from the page. If possible discuss with another student.

41 I can talk about holidays

A A touring holiday

Holidays in Britain

JOE SMITH: We try to **get away** in winter and go somewhere warm, but this year we decided to stay in England; and it **turned out to be** a great success. We didn't plan anything **in advance** – we just **set out** in the car, **took our time**, and **stopped off** whenever we found somewhere nice. After ten days we'd been **all over the place**. **Getting around** was so easy with few tourists about, and, it being **out of season**, we never had a problem finding a hotel. In fact, I **got** more **out of** this holiday than one where I just sit on a beach.

Glossary

turn out (to be)	happen in a particular way that is often unexpected.
in advance (of sth)	before sth happens or is expected.
set out	leave a place and start a journey. SYN **set off**.
take your time	do sth without hurrying.
stop off	make a short visit somewhere during a longer trip.
all over the place	in or through all parts of a place; everywhere.
get around	move from one place to another. SYN **get about**.
out of season	at the time of year when few people go on holiday.
get sth out of sth	get pleasure or benefit from sth. (It can also be used in a negative sense, e.g. *I didn't* **get** *much* **out of** *the course.*)

spotlight *get away*

If you plan to **get away**, it means you are planning to have a holiday (as above). **Get away (from a place)** can also mean to succeed in leaving a place, e.g. *I won't be able to get away from work before 6 p.m.* If you **get away from sb/sth**, you escape from a person or a place, e.g. *He got away from the police by jumping over a wall.*

1 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 We'll stop *of* | *off* for a night on the way.
2 The hotel turned *up* | *out* to be very nice.
3 They set *out* | *off* while it was still dark.
4 It was easy to get *around* | *about*.
5 He got *away* | *out* from the police.
6 I can't *leave* | *get away from* work now.

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

▸ I like to go to the coast out ⁄ season, when it's quiet. *of*
1 There's no hurry – take time. ....
2 We set after breakfast so that we would get there in time. ....
3 I don't have long holidays, but I like to get at least once a year. ....
4 We expected lots of tourists, but it turned to be very quiet. ....
5 It was a very educational holiday, and I got a lot of it. ....
6 During the time I was there, I travelled all the place. ....

3 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 4.)

1 Do you usually get .... more than once a year?
2 Do you often take holidays out of .... when it's quieter?
3 Do you usually book your holiday .... advance?
4 When you're on holiday, how do you usually .... around?
5 Do you often stop .... for a night on your way to a place?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B A riding and camping holiday

Last year I **went away** on my own, so this year I thought it would **make a change** to go with a group. I chose a camping and riding holiday in France with four other people. I'm not very good at **roughing it**, and although I'd ridden **once or twice** before, I'd never spent a week **on horseback**. But I thought, 'Why not?' **As it happened**, the camping was very enjoyable. Everyone **did their bit** with the cooking, and riding's a great way to see the countryside. You get **off the beaten track** so easily, and it's lovely being out **in the open air**. It **did** me **good**, and I'd certainly go again.

Glossary

go away	have a holiday.
make a change	used to say that an activity is enjoyable because it is different from what you usually do.
rough it	INF live with only basic shelter and necessities for a short time.
once or twice	a few times.
on horseback	riding on a horse.
as it happens/happened	used when you comment on sth that is unexpected, or sth connected with what sb else has just said.
do your bit	do an equal amount of a task or job as others.
off the beaten track	far away from buildings and other people.
in the open air	(used in a positive sense) outside; not in a building.
do sb good	have a useful and positive effect on sb.

5 Circle the correct answer.

1 If you **do your bit**, it means you do *an equal amount* | *a bit* of a task that others are doing too.
2 If a place is **off the beaten track**, it is *near* | *not near* where people live.
3 If you **rough it**, you sleep somewhere like *in a tent* | *in an expensive hotel*.
4 If something **makes a change**, it means *you change something* | *it is different from usual*.
5 If something **does you good**, it means *you like it* | *it has a positive effect on you*.
6 If you like being **in the open air**, you are *happy* | *unhappy* to be outside.

6 Complete the text. Then underline the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

I invited my cousin to go on holiday because I thought it would (1) .... her good to (2) .... away somewhere nice for a couple of weeks. It would also make a (3) .... for me to go away with someone else. She was delighted, but she really wanted to go somewhere where we'd be off the beaten (4) ...., and out in the open (5) .... most of the time. As it (6) ...., I was thinking exactly the same thing. I'd been to west Wales (7) .... or twice before, and I'd already made enquiries about renting a cottage on the coast.

7 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 8.)

1 Are you happy to go .... on holiday on your own?
2 Do you like going off the .... track when you're on holiday?
3 Do you really enjoy being out in the .... air?
4 Do you like roughing .... when you go on holiday?
5 Have you ever spent much time .... horseback?
6 Do you feel holidays .... you good, or do you find them tiring?

8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

42 I can talk about team sports

A A football match

'the toss' / 'toss a coin'

Brampton were **at full strength** for their last home match, which **kicked off** at the earlier time of 2.30 p.m. Despite **losing the toss** and playing against the wind in the first half, Camborne United **got off to a better start**. They scored after ten minutes and were **on top** for most of the first half. Then, ten minutes into the second half, a United player **was sent off** for a terrible foul on the goalkeeper. Brampton **took advantage of** the extra man and scored an equalizer, and **came close to** adding the winner on several occasions. But despite **being cheered on** by a fanatical home crowd, Brampton had to **settle for** a draw.

Glossary

at full strength	playing with all the best members of your team. OPP **below strength**.
kick off	(of a football or rugby match) start. **kick-off** N.
lose the toss	guess wrongly which side of a coin will face upwards when it lands on the ground (see picture). OPP **win the toss**.
get off to a good/better/bad start	start sth well/better/badly.
on top	in control or leading others (in this case being the stronger team).
send sb off	order a player who has broken a rule to leave the field and not return.
take advantage of sth	make a good use of an opportunity.
come close to sth / to doing sth	almost do sth.
cheer sb on	shout in order to encourage sb in a game, race, etc.
settle for sth	accept sth that is not as good as you wanted.

1 Combine the words and phrases to make six idioms or phrasal verbs.

kick win take cheer at full send advantage of something
off somebody on somebody off the toss strength

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 Do you think we can win? ~ I doubt it. I'd ………… for a draw.
2 Are we playing our best team? ~ No, we're not at ………… strength.
3 What time does the match ………… off? ~ Three o'clock.
4 Did we come ………… to scoring? ~ Not really. The other team were ………… top.
5 What happened to Kearney? ~ The referee ………… him ………… for fighting.

3 Complete the text.

I'm not really interested in football, but my boyfriend was playing so I went along to (1) ………… him on. The game didn't (2) ………… off to a great start for me because it (3) ………… off half an hour late, and by then I was freezing. My boyfriend, who was captain, then (4) ………… the toss, but that didn't really matter. What did matter was that our goalkeeper was (5) ………… off for kicking one of their players, and the other team really took (6) ………… of that. In the end, they beat us 5–0. My boyfriend was not happy!

B Sport and language learning

International footballers teach on the field and in the classroom

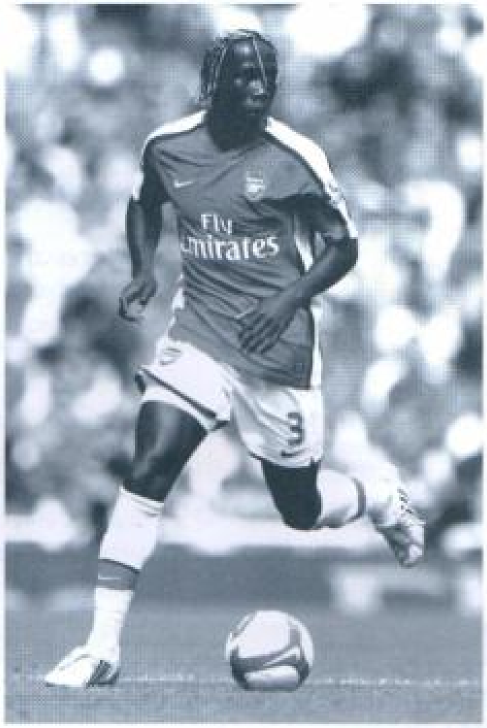

At a time when many pupils **have had enough of** languages, one class of students is full of enthusiasm. Why? The answer may **be something to do with** their teacher – French International footballer Bacary Sagna. The Arsenal right-back is **taking part in** a project to **liven up** language teaching. **To begin with**, pupils spend 45 minutes with Sagna in the classroom learning French, and **in return** they have 45 minutes trying to **get the better of** him on the football field. And after six weeks, the pupils play on Arsenal's ground in a game refereed in French. The idea **is catching on** fast: 74 schools have now **signed up to** the scheme, and teachers believe it**'s making a** big **difference**.

Glossary

have had enough of sth	used when sth/sb is tiring or annoying you, and you no longer want to do it.
be/have sth to do with sth/sb	be connected with sth/sb.
take part (in sth)	participate; join with other people in an activity. OPP **take no part in sth**.
liven sth up	make sth more interesting and exciting.
to begin with	first; at first. SYN **to start with**.
in return (for sth)	in exchange for sth or as payment for sth.
get the better of sb/sth	defeat or be stronger than sb/sth.
catch on	INF become popular or fashionable.
sign up (for/to/with sth)	agree formally to take part in sth.
make a difference (to sth/sb)	have an effect (on sth/sb). OPP **make no difference / not make any difference**.

4 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

▸ Ray Clements is something ⁁ do with the national team. to
1 I'm not going to any more lessons: I've had of English. ....
2 We played well, but they the better of us in the end. ....
3 Mariko teaches me Japanese, and in I teach her English. ....
4 They have both signed for the evening course in Italian. ....
5 She was injured so she no part in the race. ....
6 A few new students may help to liven the lessons. ....
7 I can't play today: begin with, I haven't got my boots with me. ....
8 Rock-ball is an interesting new sport, but do you think it will catch? ....

5 Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom or phrasal verb from above.

1 Over 1000 people want to participate in the race. ....
2 They changed the rules to make things more exciting. ....
3 This new sport could become fashionable. ....
4 His job is connected with sports education. ....
5 He changed the team but it didn't have any effect. ....
6 At first we didn't speak very much. ....

43 I can talk about situations on the road

A Driving long distances

When I have to drive long distances, I usually:

- **fill** the car **up** with petrol the day before I travel.
- **load up** the car the night before if necessary.
- **set off** early to avoid rush-hour traffic.
- **stick to** motorways if I can, in order to **get from A to B** as quickly as possible.
- only **break my journey** for 10–15 minutes **at a time**.
- **look out for** any **short cuts** when I'm on minor roads.
- take a map **just in case** I get lost.

Glossary

fill sth up (with sth)	make sth completely full (with sth) (also just **fill up** = fill the car with petrol).
load (sth) up	put a large quantity of things or people onto or into sth.
set off	start a journey (especially a long journey). SYN **set out**.
stick to sth	continue doing or using sth and not change it.
get from A to B	go from one place to another.
break your journey	stop for a short time during a journey.
at a time	on each occasion.
look out for sth/sb	keep a watch for sth/sb.
a short cut	a quicker way to get somewhere (you **take a short cut**).
(just) in case	because of the possibility of sth happening.

1 Make six sentences using words from each column.

We set	up	somewhere to eat
I loaded	to	short cut
I usually stick	a	journey
Let's break	off	the car
We can take	out for	main roads
Please look	the	early

2 Complete the sentences.

1 We'll have to .... the car up with petrol before we get on the motorway.
2 I took some sandwiches just in .... I got hungry.
3 We can go along the main road, or take a short .... through the park.
4 I never drive for more than two hours at a .... before I take a break.
5 My parents .... off after breakfast, so they should be here by lunch.
6 We need to start looking .... for road signs to the town centre.
7 I usually take the motorway: it's the quickest way to get from .... to ....
8 If the weather's really bad, I usually .... to the inside lane of the motorway.

3 ABOUT YOU Read the sentences at the top of the page again. Do you do these things when you drive long distances? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

B Problems on the roads

The cars started to **slow down** in front of us, and eventually everything **ground to a halt**.

We **broke down in the middle of nowhere**, and had to **call out** the emergency services.

The car was beginning to **speed up**, so it **didn't stand a chance of** stopping in time.

The police **went after** him because he **jumped the lights**.

The driver **pulled out** without looking, and nearly **knocked** someone **over**.

The taxi started to **pull in**, then suddenly it **drove off** again. I was furious.

Glossary

slow down	go more slowly. OPP **speed up**.
grind to a halt	slowly stop completely. SYN **grind to a standstill**.
break down	(of a car, bus, etc.) stop working.
in the middle of nowhere	a long way from towns or buildings.
call sb out	phone for sb, e.g. a doctor or a plumber, to come and help you.
stand a chance (of sth / of doing sth)	If you **stand a chance of doing sth**, it is possible that you will succeed in doing it (often used in the negative).
go after sb	run after or chase sb in order to catch them.
jump the lights	drive through a red traffic light without stopping.
pull out	(of a car or driver) move away from the side of the road or a queue of cars and into the traffic. OPP **pull in / pull over** move to the side of the road and stop.
knock sb over/down	hit sb and make them fall to the ground.
drive off	(of a car or driver) leave; start moving away.

4 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 It was an emergency so we had to *ask* | *call* out the fire brigade.
2 He was driving so fast, the cyclist didn't *hold* | *stand* a chance.
3 Finally the traffic ground to a *halt* | *standstill*.
4 Why did the police *go* | *get* after him?
5 I broke down in the *centre* | *middle* of nowhere.
6 It's illegal to *jump* | *rush* the lights.

5 Finish each sentence with the correct particle.

1 Why did the car break ____________?
2 He just knocked me ____________.
3 She got in the car and drove ____________.
4 The lights were red, so I slowed ____________.
5 We slowly began to speed ____________.
6 I saw Paul by the road, so I pulled ____________.

6 Complete the text.

It all happened very fast. A red car in front of me hit another driver's wing mirror, but drove (1) ____________ without stopping and (2) ____________ the lights. Then, in my rear view mirror, I saw a police car (3) ____________ out from behind me and go (4) ____________ it. The guy in the red car was driving like a madman. A van coming in the opposite direction tried to pull (5) ____________ to avoid the red car, but it didn't (6) ____________ a chance. The red car crashed into the van, then (7) ____________ over a cyclist waiting at the junction.

7 ABOUT YOU Have you seen or experienced any of the problems on the road at the top of the page? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

Review: Out and about

Unit 39

1 One word is missing in each line of dialogue. What is it, and where does it go?

A How was your ⁁ out last Saturday? ▸ night
B Well, I had a cold so I didn't really feel going out, 1 ______
but Connie talked into it, and we went for a meal 2 ______
at the pizza place just the corner from home. 3 ______
B Oh, is it good? I was thinking of it out. 4 ______
A The food was OK, but we were packed like sardines. 5 ______
B Yeah, the thing is, if you eat on a Saturday night, 6 ______
you're asking trouble – it's always busy. 7 ______
A Yeah. Anyway, we bumped Susie when we were 8 ______
leaving and ended back at her flat. I didn't get 9 ______
home till 2.00, so I had a pretty late after all. 10 ______

2 Complete the sentences. The meaning must stay the same as in the sentence on the left.

▸ Is it OK if I stay at your house tonight? Could you put me up tonight ?
1 Shall we go to a restaurant? Shall we eat ______ ?
2 The owner told us to leave immediately. The owner threw ______ .
3 He pushed in front of people. He jumped ______ .
4 I don't like that sort of music. That music isn't ______ .
5 Shall we pay for ourselves? Shall we go ______ ?
6 That shop now has a new owner. That shop has changed ______ .
7 He was very angry about Martin's comments. He took ______ .
8 I wouldn't go anywhere near her. I would keep ______ .

Unit 40

1 Complete the dialogues.

1 Are you going to watch the swimming? ~ Yes, of course. I'm looking ______ to it.
2 Do you find ball games difficult? ~ Yes, they don't ______ easy to me.
3 Do you enjoy riding? ~ Yes, and I think it's doing me a lot of ______ .
4 Are the two boys fit? ~ Yes, they're both in good ______ .
5 Come on. Get a ______ on. ~ I'm sorry, I can't go any faster.
6 He ran ______ the boys who stole the bag. ~ Really. Did he catch them?
7 When did you start getting ______ of breath? ~ It just happened all of a ______ .
8 Are you going to stop for a rest? ~ Yes, you go on. I'll ______ up with you later.

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

▸ Tell the children to get a move ⁁. We're going to be late! on
1 I asked him to slow because I couldn't walk that fast. ______
2 I'm not very fit, so I soon fell the others. ______
3 She was holding everyone so they went on without her. ______
4 He suddenly turned and walked in the opposite direction. ______
5 Golf doesn't come naturally to me; I have to work it. ______
6 I've decided to go in that competition. ______
7 She took swimming to get into shape. ______
8 Louis was going so fast that I couldn't keep with him. ______

Unit 41

1 Complete the texts with words from the box.

away good season happens get advance around beaten air rough

Holidays

Start a conversation

CRAZY CAT Hi, I'm hoping to (1) .... away for a month travelling in Europe this summer, but I haven't got much to spend. At the same time, I don't want to (2) .... it too much. Any suggestions?

ERIN Hi, Crazy. First thing is to book your flight a long time in (3) .... ; that will save you loads of money. And if you can travel out of (4) .... , do so – it's much cheaper in June than August. As it (5) .... I'm free in June and hoping to travel in Europe. Would you like a travelling companion? Let me know!

LEROY How about a camping trip? Camp sites these days are really comfortable. That way, the accommodation is cheap, and you'll be in the open (6) .... , which will do you (7) .... If you manage to get off the (8) .... track, you'll find more bargains in the quiet places – AND you'll get (9) .... from all those other tourists! Use public transport to get (10) .... – you know it makes sense. Have a great time.

Unit 42

1 Finish each sentence.

1 At the beginning of a game, you use a coin to find out which team wins the ....
2 If a player has to leave the field for breaking a rule, they have been ....
3 If you shout to encourage your team, you are .... them ....
4 If you have all your best players playing, you are at full ....
5 If you don't join in with something, you take .... in it.
6 If something catches on, it becomes ....

2 Rewrite the sentences starting with the words given. The meaning must stay the same.

1 It has had an effect. It has made ....
2 Anyone can participate. Anyone can take ....
3 His job is connected with sport. His job is something to ....
4 We almost won. We came ....
5 I'm tired of training. I've had ....
6 It will make it more interesting. It will liven ....
7 I've enrolled for an English course. I've signed ....
8 We started very well. We got ....

Unit 43

1 Complete the advice sheet.

Top Tips for New Drivers

- Slow (1) ______________ ! Many new drivers go too fast. Remember, if you're driving slowly you (2) ______________ a better chance of avoiding an accident if anything unexpected happens.
- Remember to check your seat belt, mirror, etc. before you pull (3) ______________ from the side of the road into traffic.
- Don't drive if you're feeling sleepy. If necessary, (4) ______________ your journey and have a coffee.
- Be prepared for anything on long journeys if you're alone. Make sure you (5) ______________ the car up with petrol, and take a mobile phone with you, just in (6) ______________ you break (7) ______________ in the middle of (8) ______________ .
- Also, on long journeys, check the oil and tyre pressure before you set (9) ______________ .
- If your mobile rings, don't answer it. Wait until it is safe to (10) ______________ in to the side of the road and then answer the call.

2 Find answers to the clues by moving horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.

A	JUMP	THE	SOMETHING →	UP
SHORT	CUT	LIGHTS	LOAD ↑	PULL
SPEED	GRIND	TO	A	OVER
UP	NOWHERE	GO	HALT	OUT
IN	OF	AFTER	CALL	SOMEONE
THE	MIDDLE	SOMEONE	DRIVE	OFF

▸ Put a lot of things or people on to something, in a car, etc. *load something up*

1 start moving away in a car ______________

2 drive through a red light without stopping ______________

3 a long way from any building or houses ______________

4 phone for a plumber, doctor, etc. to come and help you ______________

5 go more quickly ______________

6 run or chase after something to try to catch them ______________

7 slowly stop completely ______________

8 move to the side of the road to stop ______________

9 a quicker way to get somewhere ______________

© Oxford University Press 201

44 I can say what I want or need

Tell us about you!

I **could do with** some new clothes.

I know I could work harder **if need be**.

I couldn't **do without** my mobile.

I don't usually **feel like** going out in the evenings.

I'**m dying to** get my own flat.

I sometimes **set my heart on** things I know I can't have.

I could **make do with** a smaller car, but I'd rather not.

I **couldn't care less** about money.

I believe you can't always **pick and choose** in life.

Glossary

could do with sth	INF used to say that you need or want to have sth.
if need be	if necessary.
do without sth/sb	manage or survive without sth/sb.
feel like sth / doing sth	want sth or want to do sth (usually used about everyday things, e.g. ***I feel like*** *a drink / going out*).
be dying to do sth / for sth	INF want to do sth or want sth very much.
set your heart on sth	want sth very much (usually used about a possession, e.g. a gold ring, or a long-term goal, e.g. becoming a doctor).
make do (**with sth**)	manage with sth that isn't really good enough.
couldn't care less	INF used to say, often rudely, that you don't think sth/sb is important or worth worrying about. SYN **don't give a damn** INF.
pick and choose	choose only the things you like and want.

1 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

1 I could go and collect them from the station if the need be.
2 Their daughter has put her heart on having her own horse.
3 Do you feel like go out this evening?
4 He'll have to take any job he can get; he can't pick and select.
5 Now they have a baby, they can do with a bigger flat.
6 I'm dying for to have something to eat.

2 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capital letters. The meaning must stay the same.

▸ Football isn't important to me. CARE I couldn't care less about football.
1 I want a rest now. FEEL
2 I really need a good dictionary. COULD
3 Can you manage with this small map? MAKE
4 You can't always have what you want. PICK
5 I really want to see his new girlfriend. DYING
6 I must always have my address book with me. DO
7 We can take the car if necessary. NEED
8 She desperately wants a career in music. HEART

3 ABOUT YOU Read the sentences at the top of the page again. Are they true for you? If not, change them so they are true.

▸ I **could do with** ~~some new clothes~~. a new tennis racket

45 I can discuss plans and arrangements

Is the wedding **going ahead** as planned?

No, they've **put** it **off** until the spring.

They've **brought** the game **forward** to Saturday.

Yes, but they've **put** the kick-off **back** to five o'clock. It's really **messed up** my plans.

I've got something **on** this Friday, so I'll have to **call off** our meeting.

That's OK – Bob can't **make it** either. Shall we **fix** something **up** for next week?

You're not **looking ahead to** next year already, are you?

Yes. I'm hoping to go to India, if all **goes according to plan**.

Glossary

go ahead	If sth **goes ahead**, it happens or proceeds (also **go ahead with sth**).
bring sth forward	move sth to an earlier time. OPP **put sth back**.
mess sth up	1 spoil sth or have a bad effect on sth (as above). 2 do sth badly, e.g. *I **messed up** the exam.* SYN **muck sth up** INF (1 and 2).
have (got) sth on	INF have an arrangement to do sth.
call sth off	cancel sth that has been arranged, so it doesn't happen.
make it	manage to do sth or be somewhere.
fix sth up	arrange for sth to happen.
look ahead (to sth)	think about what is going to happen in the future.
go according to plan	happen in the way you intend and expect.

spotlight *put sth off, put sth back*

Both verbs mean to change something to a later time or date: *The meeting was today, but I've put it back / put it off till Friday.*

We also use **put sth off** when we delay something we don't want to do: *I need to go to the dentist, but I keep putting it off.*

1 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 The exam has been *put back* | *put off* till Thursday.
2 I'm fairly sure the festival will *go ahead* | *look ahead* as planned.
3 The game has been *called off* | *put off* until next Wednesday.
4 Shall we *fix up* | *mess up* a meeting for Friday week?
5 Mike and Angela have split up, so they've *called off* | *put back* the wedding.
6 Changing the dates has really *messed up* | *mucked up* my plans.

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 They want to go ________ with the meeting. ~ Oh, that'll really muck ________ my plans.
2 Where will you be next week? ~ In Peru, if everything goes ________ to plan.
3 Six o'clock is a bit early for dinner! ~ Yes, that's why they've ________ it back till eight.
4 She thinks about the past too much. ~ Yes, she should be ________ ahead to the future.
5 Have you written your essay yet? ~ No, I keep putting it ________ ; it's a very hard subject.
6 No one can ________ it on Saturday. ~ OK, let's ________ the party forward to Friday.
7 Have you rung Gill? ~ Yes, we're going to try and ________ something up for the weekend.
8 Have you got anything ________ tonight? ~ No, the game's been called ________ .

46 I can talk about likes and interests

My personal tastes

I used to be **mad about** chips, but I've completely **gone off** them now. ______

I've always **had a sweet tooth**. ______

My dad's **really into** camping, but it's **not my thing**. ______

I **couldn't bear** classical music as a teenager, but it **grows on you**. ______

Most clubs and bars are **too** loud **for my liking**. ______

My life **revolves around** my family. ______

I don't understand people who just **live for** their work. ______

Glossary

mad about sth/sb	INF liking sth/sb very much.
go off sth	INF stop liking sth that you liked in the past.
have a sweet tooth	INF like food that contains a lot of sugar.
be (really) into sth	INF be very interested in sth, especially as a hobby.
not sb's thing	INF not what sb likes or is interested in. SYN **not sb's cup of tea**.
I can't bear (doing) sth	= I hate (doing) sth. SYN **I can't stand (doing) sth.**
grow on sb	If sth or sb **grows on you**, you begin to like it/them more.
too … for my liking	If sth is **too** loud, bright, etc. **for your liking**, you don't like it because it's too loud, bright, etc.
revolve around sb/sth	have sb/sth as the most important part.
live for sth	consider sth to be the most important thing in your life.

1 Complete the sentences. Keep the meaning the same as in the sentences on the left.

▸ I'm not interested in fashion. — Fashion's not my thing.
1 She hates big cities. — She can't ______.
2 I don't like football. — Football's not my cup ______.
3 He lives for his work. — His life revolves ______.
4 I don't like meat any more. — I've gone ______.
5 I love anything with sugar in it. — I've got a ______.
6 They really like it. — They're mad ______.

2 Complete the dialogues with one word.

1 Do you watch war films? ~ No, they're too violent for my ______.
2 Do you like Indian food? ~ I used to, but I've ______ off it recently.
3 Are you ______ rock music? ~ Not at all. I can't ______ it.
4 Jazz isn't my ______ of tea. ~ No, it's not really my ______ either.
5 He likes her a lot, doesn't he? ~ Yes, he's ______ about her.
6 I didn't think you liked modern art. ~ I didn't, but it ______ on you.
7 All he thinks about is surfing. ~ Yes, his whole life ______ around it.
8 She's totally dedicated, isn't she? ~ Yes. She just ______ for gymnastics.

3 ABOUT YOU Read the sentences at the top of the page again. Are they true for you? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

47 I can describe damage and repair

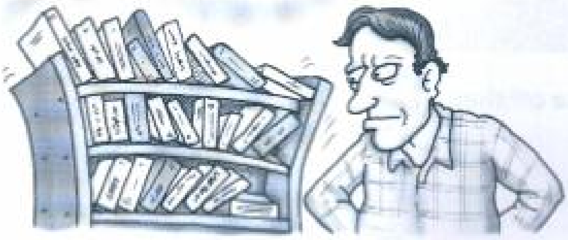

The bookcase **was falling to pieces** but I managed to **put** it **together** again.

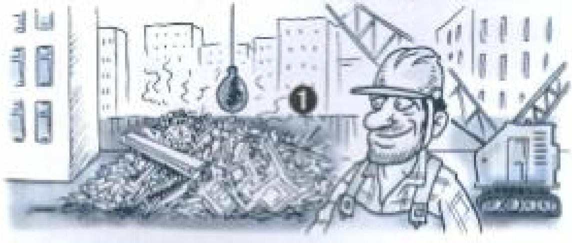

They **knocked** the building **down**[1]; now they're going to **put up** a block of flats **in** its **place**.

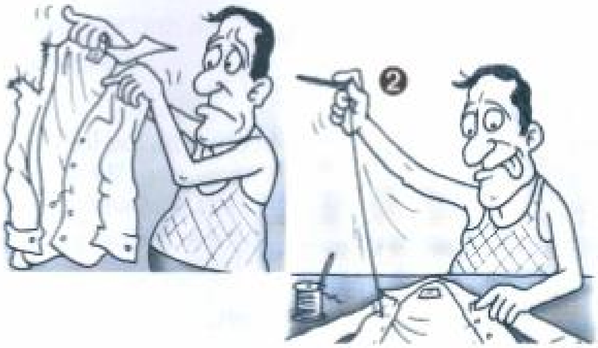

My shirt **was torn to bits** in the washing machine. I tried to **sew** it **up**[2], but in the end I had to **throw** it **away**.

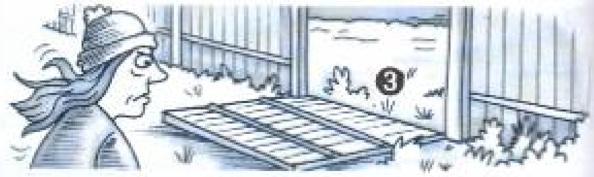

Part of the fence **has blown down**[3] in the wind. I hope I can **put** it **up** again.

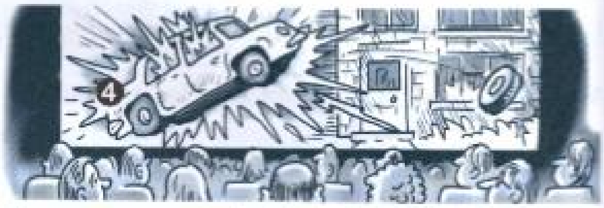

There was a scene in the film where a car **blew up**[4] and the house next to it **burnt down**.

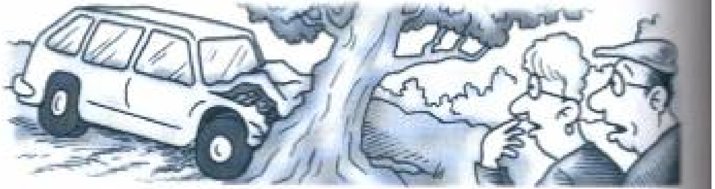

The car **ran into** a tree. Fortunately no one was hurt, but the car was a **write-off**.

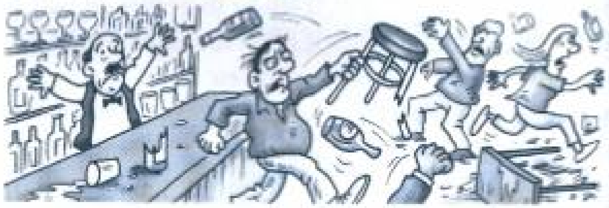

Two young guys stopped outside the bar, **broke** the door **down** and **smashed** the place **up**. It was terrible for the owners, who had just spent a lot of money **smartening** it **up**.

Glossary

put sth together	make or mend sth by joining all the different parts.
put sth up	construct sth such as a building, fence, some shelves, etc.
in sth/sb's place	instead of sth/sb (also **in place of sth/sb**).
throw sth away	get rid of sth that you no longer want. SYN **throw sth out**.
burn down	be destroyed by fire (also **burn sth down**).
run into sth/sb	hit sth/sb with a car, bus, etc. SYN **crash into sth/sb**.
write-off	a car, bus, etc. that has been so badly damaged that it cannot be repaired. **write sth off** v.
break sth down	make sth fall down or open by hitting it hard. SYN **smash sth down**.
smash sth up	destroy sth deliberately (because you want to do it).
smarten sth/sb up	make a place or a person look more attractive.

spotlight *to pieces/bits*

The chair is falling to pieces. = starting to break. SYN **fall to bits / fall apart** (see picture 1).
The chair has fallen to pieces. = it has now broken.
He picked up the paper and tore it to pieces. = destroyed it by tearing it into small pieces. SYN **tear sth to bits**.
Sometimes **to pieces** and **to bits** are used for emphasis and not meant literally (as in the reference to the shirt in picture 3).

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 He ought to smarten ......
2 The car had to be written ......
3 The wind blew the tree ......
4 You should throw these eggs ......
5 She tore the letter to ......
6 The document was old; it just fell ......
7 The chair broke, but I managed to put it ......
8 They got into a fight and smashed the room ......

a pieces.
b apart.
c together.
d himself up.
e up.
f down.
g off.
h away.

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 What happened to the old flats? ~ They .... them down and rebuilt them.
2 Why is she living in a hotel? ~ Oh, her house burnt .... in the forest fires.
3 Where's Mike? ~ He's out in the garden, smashing .... some boxes.
4 I hear his car is a .... ~ Yes, he .... into a wall. Fortunately he wasn't hurt.
5 This table's .... to bits. ~ Never mind, Bob will be able to put it .... again.
6 We need another shelf in the study. ~ Well, I could put one .... if you like.
7 Did the police have to break into the flat? ~ Yes, they had to break the door ....
8 This sheet is torn .... bits. ~ Well, why don't you .... it away?

3 Cross out one word which is not correct.

1 Our neighbour was burnt down his garden shed.
2 I'm going to get a new desk: this one is falling down to pieces.
3 It was very old, so when I picked it up, it just fell to apart in my hands.
4 Suddenly there was a very loud noise and the oil tank blew it up.
5 The dog got hold of my bag and tore it up to pieces.
6 We knocked the garage down and in its place of it we built a small studio.
7 If you don't want those CDs, why don't you just throw them out off?
8 The firemen smashed out the door down so that they could rescue the baby.

4 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

► I joined all the separate parts of the shelves again. PUT I put the shelves together again.
1 The building was destroyed by fire. DOWN ....
2 The damage to the car couldn't be repaired. WRITE ....
3 Can't you get rid of those papers? AWAY ....
4 They had to destroy the building. KNOCK ....
5 The book broke into separate parts. BITS ....
6 The motorcyclist hit a brick wall. CRASH ....
7 I repaired the hole in my pocket. SEW ....
8 I sold the chair and put a sofa there instead. ITS ....

5 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

Our house was a terrible mess when we first moved in. In the kitchen, the cupboards were all falling (1) .... and the room was really dirty. The first job was to clean everything up and (2) .... out all the rubbish which the previous owners had left. Then Mark put some new cupboards (3) .... and we were able to unpack our things. In the living room, we had to smarten everything (4) .... : that meant cleaning and redecorating. The curtains were dirty and torn in places, but they were very pretty, so I washed them and spent the afternoon (5) .... them up. There was also an ugly wardrobe in the bedroom which took up a lot of space, so we got rid of it. And in its (6) .... , Mark (7) .... up some shelves and a small cupboard. At last it was starting to feel like home.

48 I can say how things begin and end

A Different beginnings and endings

I **started off** the race quite well, but I couldn't **keep** it **up** and eventually I **came in fifth**.

She **set out to** write a short story, but **finished up with** a best-selling novel.

The fire **broke out** in the basement.

Have they **put** it **out** yet?

The business **closed down** last month.

They were mad to **set** it **up** anyway.

I recently **took up** golf, but I had to **give** it **up** because of a bad back.

Glossary

start sth off	begin doing sth (also **start off** begin to happen).
keep sth up	continue sth at the same high level.
come in (first, second, etc.)	finish a race in a particular position.
finish (up) with sth	have sth at the end.
break out	(of a fire, a fight, or a war) start.
put sth out	stop sth burning.
close down	(of a business activity) close permanently because it is making no money (also **close sth down**).
take sth up	start or learn to do sth, especially for pleasure.
give sth up / give up doing sth	stop doing sth you have done for a period of time.

spotlight Phrasal verbs with *set*

If you **set out to do sth**, you begin a job or task to achieve a particular aim (as above).

If you **set sth up**, you start a business, organization, etc. e.g. *I set up the new company two years ago.*

1 Do these sentences describe something that is beginning or ending? Write B or E.

1 Eddie has taken up golf. ……
2 Pedro came in first. ……
3 Lennie set up the café in 2008. ……
4 War has broken out. ……
5 Anna gave up running last year. ……
6 Alec put his cigarette out. ……

2 Write the correct particle.

1 When he first became manager, he set …… to make a lot of changes.
2 Mike set …… the company in 2006, but had to close it …… because of the recession.
3 I took …… tennis because I needed more exercise, but I gave it …… soon afterwards.
4 A fire broke …… in the warehouse, but they managed to put it …… quite quickly.
5 People didn't eat much at the party, so we finished …… with lots of leftover food.
6 It was a good race and Pam started …… quite well. Unfortunately she couldn't quite keep it ……, and in the end I think she came …… third.

B A new beginning

'The 1960s shopping centre was a disaster. It's hard to imagine how it **came about** in the first place, but the council decided to **knock** the whole thing **down** and **start from scratch** with a new development. There were problems **early on**, and it took ages to **get** the project **off the ground**, but the architects finally **came up with** a design that everyone liked. Now, two years later, the centre is really **taking shape**. **Judging by** the look of it, I feel that the designers **started out with** some good ideas, but have **ended up** with something of a compromise. It's quite attractive, but architecturally it doesn't **break** any **new ground**.'

Glossary

come about	happen (often used of sth that is surprising or hard to explain).
knock sth down	destroy a building by breaking the walls.
(start) from scratch	(start) from a new beginning. (See page 144.)
early on	soon after the beginning.
get sth off the ground	If you **get a project off the ground**, you make it start happening successfully. A project can also **get off the ground**.
come up with sth	produce ideas or a solution to sth.
take shape	develop and become more organized and complete.
judging by/from sth	used to say what you think, based on what you have seen, heard, or learnt.
start out with sth	start doing sth with a particular intention.
end up	finish in a situation or place that you didn't expect to be in.
break new ground	do sth that hasn't been done before.

3 Circle the correct answer.

1 Most of the problems happened early *in* | *on*.
2 It took us a couple of years to get the company off the *ground* | *land*.
3 We started *out* | *up* with the aim of creating a youth club.
4 The main part of the sports centre is now taking *form* | *shape*.
5 They're going to knock *down* | *over* all the old houses.
6 I don't know who *went* | *came* up with this idea, but it won't work.
7 Where did you end *up* | *out* last night?
8 He joined the army but I don't know how that came *about* | *off*.

4 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capital letters. Keep the meaning the same.

1 I'm starting my essay from the beginning. SCRATCH ……………………………… .
2 The problems occurred soon after the beginning. EARLY ……………………………… .
3 Based on his story, the boys are innocent. JUDGING ……………………………… .
4 They've done something completely new. BREAK ……………………………… .
5 The house is developing and looking more finished. SHAPE ……………………………… .
6 How did these changes happen? COME ……………………………… ?
7 They've destroyed the offices. KNOCK ……………………………… .
8 I'm sure they'll find a solution. COME ……………………………… .

49 I can talk about time

A Personal time

About me	About you
I often get up **at the crack of dawn.**	
I can get ready to go out **in no time.**	
I go to the doctor **once in a blue moon.**	
I go horse-riding **from time to time.**	
Most of my clothes are a bit **out of date.**	
One day I'm going to travel round the world.	
I'm happy living where I am **for the time being.**	
I do most things **on impulse.**	
I **live from day to day**; I don't think about the future.	

Glossary

at the crack of dawn	INF very early in the morning.
once in a blue moon	INF hardly ever; very rarely. (👁 See page 144.)
out of date	1 old-fashioned (as above). 2 without the most recent information, e.g. *These figures are* ***out of date.***
one day	at some time in the future.
on impulse	without thinking about sth before you do it. SYN **on the spur of the moment.**
live from day to day	live without thinking about what will happen in the future.

spotlight Idioms with *time*

You will find many idioms with *time* in your dictionary:

in no time very quickly or very soon (also **in next to no time**).

from time to time sometimes, but not regularly or often.

for the time being for now and the immediate future.

1 Match the idioms with their opposites.

at the crack of dawn in next to no time for the time being
out of date on impulse once in a blue moon

1 fashionable OPP ……
2 late at night OPP ……
3 planned in advance OPP ……
4 very often OPP ……
5 very slowly OPP ……
6 forever OPP ……

2 Complete the sentences.

1 I buy CDs on the …… of the moment.
2 Hang on, I'll be ready in …… time.
3 This technology is …… of date.
4 I got up at the crack of …… .
5 One ……, I'll learn to play the piano
6 She sees him once in a …… moon.
7 I visit them from …… to …… .
8 She just lives from …… to …… .

3 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences at the top of the page true for you? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

4 ABOUT YOUR DICTIONARY Look up the word *time* in your dictionary and read through the idioms at the end of the entry. Make a note of any new idioms you find interesting, and think how you would translate them into your own language.

B Doing things at the right time

The other day I **fixed up** a meeting with the staff for 10 o'clock. I was there at ten **on the dot**, and almost everyone else was there **in good time**; everyone, that is, except Kevin. He **kept us waiting** for twenty minutes, then **turned up** with his usual excuse that he**'d been held up** on the train. He does this **over and over again**, and it's the same with his work: he only gets things done **right at the last minute**. I've spoken to him about all this, but I**'m** just **wasting my breath**. It's **only a matter of time** before he has to leave.

Glossary

the other day	recently; a few days ago.
fix sth up	arrange for sth to happen.
on the dot	at exactly the time you mentioned or arranged. (👁 See page 144.)
in good time	before the time you need to be somewhere or do sth.
keep sb waiting	make sb wait for you.
turn up	arrive (often used when sb arrives late or doesn't arrive at all).
hold sb up	(usually passive) cause a delay or make sb late.
over and over again	many times; repeatedly. SYN **time and time again.**
(right) at the last minute	at the latest possible time.
waste your breath	say things that sb doesn't listen to or take notice of.
(only) a matter of time	used to say that sth will definitely happen, but you don't know when.

5 Replace the underlined words and phrases with an idiom or phrasal verb that has a similar meaning.

▸ I'd like to get to the airport before the time we need to be there. in good ________ time.
1 She's very punctual – always gets to the office at 9 a.m. exactly. on ________
2 I've told him repeatedly, and it's getting on my nerves. ________ again
3 He made me wait. kept ________
4 Have you arranged your appointment yet? ________ up
5 He cancelled his trip just before it was too late. ________ minute
6 I don't often get delayed on my way to work. ________ up
7 I saw my cousin very recently, just by chance. the ________
8 What time did she arrive last night? ________ up

6 Complete the sentences. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 7.)

1 Do you normally arrive in good ________ for school, college, or work?
2 Do you ever ________ people waiting? If so, when?
3 Do you often ________ up late for social arrangements? If so, when?
4 Do you ever do things at the last ________? If so, what?
5 Do you often get held ________ on your way to somewhere? If so, when?
6 Do you ever give people advice, but feel you're wasting your ________?

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6 in your notebook, or ask another student.

50 I can talk about numbers

A Quantities, amounts, and times

'If you **count up** all the passwords I have for websites, it's probably about ten **in all**.'

'I **added up** all the hours I had spent at the office and **took away** my lunch breaks: it **came to** an amazing 66 hours a week.'

'I **lost count of** the number of visitors we had, but it must have been **as many as** 50.'

'I would pay €20 for a haircut **at the very most**.'

'We had **dozens of** requests for brochures, and **quite a few** orders as a result.'

'Mila **counted out** €100,000 in €10 notes. **Round about** ten of the notes were badly torn.'

Glossary

in all	as a total. SYN **in total**.
add sth up	If you **add up** five and four and three, you get twelve.
take sth away	If you **take** four **away** from ten, you get six.
come to sth	add up to a total amount.
as many as	used before a number to show how large and surprising it is.
at the (very) most	not more than, and probably much less than. OPP **at the (very) least**.
dozens of sth	INF a lot of people or things (**a dozen** = twelve).
quite a few / a lot (of sth)	a fairly large amount or number (of sth).
round about	approximately.

spotlight *count*

If you **count sth up**, you count all the people or things in a group. If you **lose count (of sth)**, you forget the number you have counted so far before you have finished counting. If you **count sth out**, you put things down, one by one, as you count them, e.g. when you count money.

1 Find the end of each idiom or phrasal verb.

atthemost|inallattheveryleastquiteafewaddupintotallosecountroundabout

2 Put the sentences in order and add one missing word.

▸ sixty | and | were | cups | I | the | out | there *I counted out the cups, and there were sixty.*
1 the | saw | in | we | dozens | rabbits | fields
2 Dubai | friends | has | few | she | quite | in
3 guests | of | the | lost | we | of | number
4 flight | costs | the | least | at | very | $900
5 €50 | the | that | we | came | surprised | were | bill
6 seven | from | get | you | if | three | away | you | four

3 Complete the dialogues.

1 Eighty people came to the party in ………… . ~ Really? As ………… as that! I'm amazed.
2 Why are you counting ………… those beans? ~ Oh, Dad! Now you've made me ………… count.
3 I'm planning to invite ………… about 20 people. ~ Yes; thirty ………… the most.
4 What did it cost, ………… total? ~ It ………… to £50.80.
5 Did you add all those numbers ………… ? ~ Yes, then I ………… away 10% and got 60.
6 If you count ………… all the residents, there are 600. ~ Really? That's ………… a lot.

B Numbers in idioms

	Example	Meaning
1	*I had* ***one or two*** *ideas about the plans.*	**one or two** a few.
1	*We went through the points* ***one by one****.*	**one by one** one at a time (i.e. first one, then the next, then the next, etc.)
1st	*She* ***puts*** *her children* ***first****.*	**put sb/sth first** consider sb/sth to be more important than anyone or anything else.
2	*He saw Carrie in a café with Andrew and* ***put two and two together****.*	**put two and two together** guess the truth from what you see or hear.
2nd	*I* ***was having second thoughts*** *about the flat.*	**have second thoughts** change your opinion after thinking about sth again.
3rd	*His two previous marriages failed, so he's hoping it will be* ***third time lucky****.*	**third time lucky** used when you have failed to do sth twice and hope it will succeed the third time.
10	***Ten to one*** *they'll miss the bus again.*	**ten to one** very probably.
50	*Let's* ***go fifty-fifty*** *on dinner at Carlo's.*	**go fifty-fifty** share the cost of sth equally.
100	*I'm not* ***a hundred per cent*** *sure.*	**one** / **a hundred per cent** completely.
100 110	*Every player* ***gave a hundred per cent****.* *Every player* ***gave a hundred and ten per cent****.*	**give a hundred** (**and ten**) **per cent** put as much effort into sth as you can (**and ten** adds emphasis here).
1m	*Did you think he would marry her?* ~ ***Never in a million years!***	**never in a million years** used for emphasizing how impossible it seems that sth could ever happen.

spotlight *in his twenties*

He's in his twenties. = between 20 and 29.
She's in her early thirties. = between 31 and 33.
We're in our mid-fifties. = between 54 and 56.
I'm in my late sixties. = between 67 and 69.

4 Write in the correct numbers.

1 She's thirty in a year or two, so she's in her late ....
2 Did you expect to win the prize? ~ Never in a .... years; it was a big surprise.
3 I'd failed the first two interviews, so it was a case of .... time lucky, fortunately.
4 I've met the director on .... or .... occasions and he's very friendly.
5 He does his best – he always gives a .... per cent.
6 I had thought it would be a nice house to live in, but I'm having .... thoughts.
7 I saw her suitcase and the plane tickets and put .... and .... together.
8 Look, the bill's a bit expensive; why don't we go .... - .... ?

5 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals.

1 I'm not completely certain where he is. A HUNDRED ....
2 He'll very probably be late. TEN ....
3 She changed her mind about the flat. SECOND ....
4 He must be round about forty-five. FORTIES ....
5 They did the first question, then the next, and so on. ONE ....
6 He thinks his work is more important than anything. FIRST ....
7 Shall we share the cost of the petrol? FIFTY ....

51 I can talk about problems and solutions

A At home

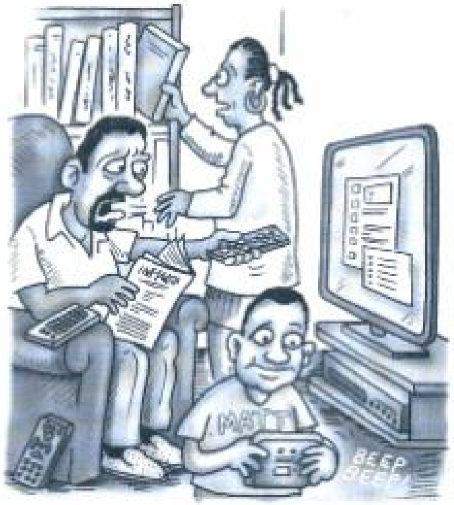

I **haven't a clue** how to work this DVD player.
~ Let's ask Matt. He'll do it **in no time**.

The room's in a mess. There are books and CDs **all over the place**.
~ Don't worry. I'll **sort** them **out**.

I've been doing housework all morning, and **my back's killing me**.
~ You need a nice hot bath. That'**ll do the trick**.

Do you think these trousers **have had it**?
~ Yes, and anyway, they're **a bit on the small side** for you now.

Dan's always **in such a hurry to** finish things.
~ Well, he shouldn't be. He needs to **take his time** and relax.

Glossary

not have a clue	INF used to emphasize that you do not know sth. SYNS **not have the faintest idea** INF, **have no idea** INF.
in no time	so soon or so quickly that it is surprising (also **in next to no time**).
all over the place	in a very untidy state.
sort sth out	arrange sth in a tidy and organized way.
my back/feet etc. **is/are killing me**	INF my back hurts, my feet hurt, etc.
do the trick	INF resolve a problem.
have had it	INF If sth **has had it**, it is in a very bad condition and is no longer useful.
(**a bit**) **on the small/big side**	INF slightly too small/big (also **a bit on the heavy/expensive side**, etc.).
in (**such**) **a hurry to do sth**	impatient to do sth.
take your time (**over sth**)	do sth without hurrying.

1 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

1 The boys sorted everything out.
2 Those shoes are on the small side.
3 I got there in next to no time.
4 My legs are killing me.
5 The food was all over the place.
6 The thick socks did the trick.

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

1 Were you in hurry to finish?
2 The books were over the place.
3 He told me to take time.
4 The TV has it: it's hopeless.
5 We got there no time.
6 Who's that ? ~ I haven't clue.

3 Replace the underlined words with an idiom that keeps a similar meaning.

1 He is always impatient to get things done.
2 I bought a jacket but I think it's slightly too small.
3 It's a long walk to my place, but they got here surprisingly quickly.
4 After the walk, my feet were really hurting.
5 Put some milk on the stain and leave it; that'll solve the problem.
6 What time does the train leave? ~ I don't know.
7 The children's clothes were in a very untidy state.
8 I spent the afternoon organizing and tidying up all the papers.

B At work

We'**ll be rushed off our feet** this month.

That's OK. I know a couple of people who can **help** us **out**.

Work'**s getting on top of me** at the moment.

That's because you think about it too much. You need to learn to **switch off**.

I'm worried I'**ll be out of my depth** in this new job.

Look, just take it **one step at a time** – you'll be fine.

Steve thinks he'**s in with a chance of** getting that job.

Yes, and I'**ve put in a good word for** him – that should help.

We can't work any harder – we're already **at full stretch**.

Yes, but we've got more orders **piling up**.

Glossary

be rushed/run off your feet	be extremely busy.
help sb out	help sb, especially in a difficult situation.
get on top of sb	be too much for sb to manage or deal with.
switch off	INF stop thinking about sth.
be out of your depth	be in a situation (often a job) that is too difficult for you to understand or manage.
one step at a time	slowly; gradually.
be in with a chance (of doing sth)	INF have the possibility of succeeding or achieving sth.
put in a (good) word (for sb)	say positive things to another person about sb, to help them get a job, etc.
at full stretch	If sb is working **at full stretch**, they are working as hard as possible.
pile up	become larger in quantity or amount.

4 Match 1–6 with a–f.

1 Work often piles up ___
2 He's been working too hard, and ___
3 It won't be easy to get the job, but ___
4 We're already at full stretch, so ___
5 We'll get there as long as ___
6 The club might accept him as a member if ___

a he's in with a chance.
b we take it one step at a time.
c at this time of the year.
d it's getting on top of him.
e you put in a good word for him.
f we can't provide anything else.

5 Complete the last word in each sentence. Then underline the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

1 It's been terrible today. We've been rushed off our ___.
2 Can she win? ~ Yes, I think she's in with a ___.
3 Don't hurry. Just take it one step at a ___.
4 We can't produce any more; we're already at full ___.
5 If things get really difficult, Alex said he would help us ___.
6 Is she doing OK? ~ No, to be honest, I think she's out of her ___.
7 She worries about things all the time. ~ Yes, her problem is that she can't switch ___.
8 Will he get promotion? ~ Yes, I think he will, if I put in a good ___.

52 I can give advice

MARK The university I want to go to has **turned** me **down**: they said I wasn't good enough to study journalism. Now I'm not sure if I want to go to university at all.

TINA **If I were you**, Mark, I'd say to myself: 'OK, **in that case** I'll go to another university and prove I can **make the grade**.'

COLIN Mark, stop **feeling sorry for yourself**; there's more to life than a university degree. **In your shoes**, I'd go out and earn some money.

JED Well, **that's life**, Mark. But if the university thinks you aren't good enough to do journalism, maybe you'**d be better off** applying for something else. **Good luck**.

LISA Mark, you have to **take** a number of things **into account**, but you **could always** do your exams again and apply to the same university next year.

Glossary

turn sb down	say 'no' to sb when they apply for sth or offer sth.
if I were you	used to introduce advice (also **if I were in your place/position/shoes, I'd** …).
in that case	if that is the situation; if that happens or has happened.
make the grade	reach the necessary standard and be successful.
feel sorry for yourself	be unhappy for yourself.
in your shoes	in your situation (followed by *I would / I'd* …).
that's life	used to say that sth is disappointing but you must accept it.
be better off (doing sth)	used to suggest that sb should do sth differently.
good luck	INF used to wish sb success with sth. SYN **(the) best of luck**.
take sth into account	think about sth carefully before making a decision. SYN **take sth into consideration**.
can/could always	used for making a suggestion.

1 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 Don't feel sorry *for* | *with* yourself.
2 If I were in your *shoes* | *place*, I'd go.
3 I'm sure you'll make the *mark* | *grade*.
4 Take it all into *account* | *consideration*.
5 She'd be better off *to work* | *working*.
6 You *can* | *could* always go next year.

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 She doesn't want to sell her car, but she needs the money. ~ Well, that's ....
2 Is it a difficult decision? ~ Yes, there's a lot to take into ....
3 I get my results today. ~ Really? .... of luck.
4 My boss wants to reduce my salary. ~ Well, in that ...., I would leave.
5 I'm in a terrible situation. ~ Oh come on, stop feeling .... for yourself.
6 Did they offer you the job? ~ Yes, but I .... it down.

3 ABOUT YOUR OPINION Read about Penny's situation, then complete the idioms in the first part of each sentence, and finish each one with different advice.

PENNY (secretary) 'I like my job, but the money's not very good. I've been offered a job with more money, but I'm not sure if it will be very interesting. What should I do?'

ABOUT YOU

1 Penny, if I ...., I'd ....
2 Penny, in your ...., I'd ....
3 You .... always ....
4 I think you'd be .... off ....

Review: Concepts

Unit 44

1 Complete the sentences with words from the box. Then write your answers about yourself in the column on the right.

dying feel do care need do set could ✓ pick

Write down:	ABOUT YOU
▸ something you could do with.	more time to sleep in the morning
1 one thing you own that you couldn't ______ without.	______
2 something you couldn't ______ less about.	______
3 something you've ______ your heart on.	______
4 something you ______ like doing at the moment.	______
5 a situation in which you can't ______ and choose.	______
6 something you're ______ to do soon.	______
7 something you could sell, if ______ be.	______
8 something you could make ______ with.	______

Unit 45

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out a phrase. What is it?

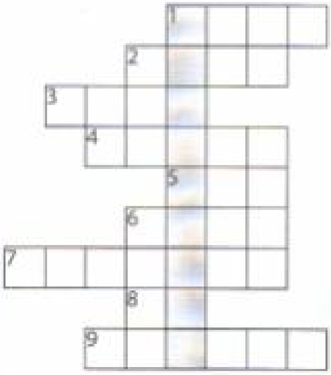

1 If you do a piece of work very badly, you ______ it up.
2 If you cancel something that has been arranged, you ______ it off.
3 If you think about what is going to happen in the future, you ______ ahead.
4 If you make a plan and it goes ______, it means it happens.
5 If you delay something and move it to a later time, you ______ it back.
6 If things happen in the way you expected, they go according to ______.
7 If you move something to an earlier time, you bring it ______.
8 If you've got something ______, it means you have arranged to do something.
9 If something spoils your plans or has a bad effect on them, it ______ them up.
The phrase in the grey squares is ______.

Unit 46

1 Agree with each speaker, using the word in capitals to complete the sentence.

▸ I'm not very keen on aerobics. INTO ~ No, I'm not really into it either.
1 I don't like this music. MAD ~ No, I ______.
2 I don't enjoy going to the gym very much. TEA ~ No, it's ______.
3 I learnt to like abstract art after a while. GROWS ~ Yes, it ______.
4 I used to love shopping, but not any more. OFF ~ No, I've ______.
5 This soup is very spicy. LIKING ~ Yes, it's ______.
6 I hate white shoes. BEAR ~ I agree. I ______.

Unit 47

1 Put the verbs into the correct column in the table below.

sew sth up tear sth to pieces burn sth down put sth together smarten sth up write sth off
fall apart smash sth up fall to bits put sth up break sth down crash into sth

DAMAGE or DESTRUCTION		REPAIR or CONSTRUCTION	

2 Complete the sentences using idioms and phrasal verbs from the box in the correct form.

blow up blow down throw sth away
tear sth to bits write sth off fall to pieces

1 The tree in the back garden ________________ in the wind.
2 The boy was so angry with his school report that he ________________.
3 After the accident the insurance company decided to ________________ the car.
4 There was a bomb in the car. Two people were injured when it ________________.
5 When she sat on the chair it just ________________; it was quite funny, actually.
6 We don't need these old magazines. Why don't we ________________?

Unit 48

1 The same word is missing in each pair of sentences (a and b). Write it in.

1 a I think we'll have to start ________ scratch.
  b *Judging ________ the design, it's going to be a very modern building.*
2 a Who ________ up with that brilliant idea?
  b Who ________ in last in the race?
3 a How did the fire ________ out?
  b The latest dictionary will ________ new ground.
4 a When did your brother ________ up the company?
  b The planners ________ out to improve the traffic situation.
5 a I made good progress at first, but I couldn't keep it ________.
  b We thought about going to a French restaurant, but we ended ________ in a pizzeria.
6 a Did they manage to put ________ the fire?
  b When we started ________, we knew we would need more money.

2 Tick (✓) the answers which are possible. Be careful: one, two, or all three may be possible.

1 Last year they ________________ a business which has been very successful.
  set out ☐ set up ☐ set off ☐
2 When did the ________________ break out?
  lesson ☐ fire ☐ war ☐
3 The building project ________________.
  is taking shape ☐ breaks new ground ☐ is getting off the ground ☐
4 I eventually decided to ________________ golf.
  take up ☐ give up ☐ start out ☐
5 The shop had to be ________________.
  put out ☐ knocked down ☐ closed down ☐

Unit 49

1 **Find answers to the clues by moving horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.**

OVER	FOR	ON	THE	SPUR
AND	THE	ON	OUT	OF
OVER	TIME	THE	OF	THE
AGAIN	BEING	DOT	DATE	MOMENT
AT	IN	GOOD	TIME	MINUTE ↑
THE	DAWN	AT →	THE →	LAST
CRACK	OF	IN	NO	TIME

- ▸ At the last possible time when something should happen. At the last minute.
- 1 At the exact time which was mentioned or arranged. ....
- 2 Another way to say 'time and time again'. ....
- 3 Old-fashioned. ....
- 4 On impulse; without thinking about something before acting. ....
- 5 Very early in the morning. ....
- 6 For now and the immediate future. ....
- 7 Very quickly or very soon. ....
- 8 Before the time when you need to be somewhere or do something. ....

2 **Complete the sentences using a word from the left and a word from the right in the correct form.**

waste time keep hold
once fix turn last

up breath moon time
minute waiting up up

- 1 We waited for hours, and eventually he .... at midnight, without an excuse or apology.
- 2 I'm sorry I'm so late, but there was a problem on the train and we got .... for an hour.
- 3 We had an appointment at 4.00, but the manager .... us .... until 4.30.
- 4 I managed to book my plane ticket at the ...., which was very lucky.
- 5 We meet up for a meal .... in a blue .... – probably every couple of years.
- 6 I see Larry from .... to .... – he seems quite well these days.
- 7 It would be lovely to see you; let's try to .... something .... for the weekend.
- 8 It's no good telling her not to marry him – you're just .... your ....

Unit 50

1 **Use the numbers in the box to help you to complete the sentences. You will need the number and one more word in each sentence.**

3rd 1✓ 100 2nd 1,000,000 50 dozens 30s

- ▸ They let us through one by one.
- 1 He's not the most skilful player, but he always gives a .... cent.
- 2 You mustn't pay for everything. Let's .... – ....
- 3 I thought it would be a good idea to get a car, but now I'm having ....
- 4 There were .... people at the gallery – at least 20 or 30.
- 5 I've failed my driving test twice, so I'm hoping it will be .... lucky.
- 6 She had Marcus six years ago when she was 26, so she must be in her ....
- 7 I never thought in a .... I'd become Managing Director one day.

2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a phrase that has a similar meaning. The first word has been given to help you.

1 There were approximately fifteen. round ………
2 We had twenty-five students altogether. in ………
3 If you subtract five, we'll have 21 left. take ………
4 I don't know exactly how many, but a fairly large number. quite ………
5 If you include Mike and Chloe, the total is 15. it ……… 15.
6 I'm almost sure he'll forget his homework. ten ………
7 He saw the ring on her finger and guessed the truth. put ………
8 There should be 50 as an absolute maximum. at ………

Unit 51

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out a phrase. What is it?

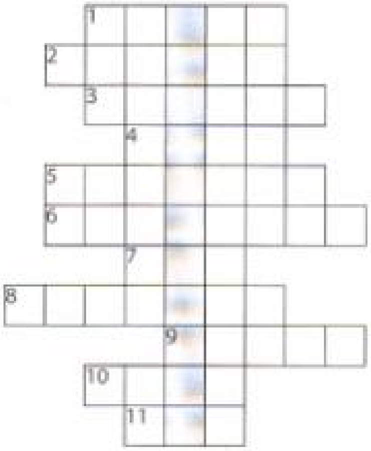

1 That will solve the problem. = That will do the ……… .
2 I've been extremely busy. = I've been ……… off my feet.
3 You have the possibility of succeeding. = You are in with a ……… .
4 In a very untidy state. = All ……… the place.
5 Using everything that is available. = At full ……… .
6 I haven't a clue. = I haven't the ……… idea.
7 The work is too much for me to manage. = The work is getting on ……… of me.
8 My back hurts. = My back is ……… me!
9 I'm in a situation which is too difficult for me to handle. = I'm out of my ……… .
10 I'm taking things slowly. = I'm taking things one ……… at a time.
11 This washing machine can't be repaired. = This washing machine has ……… it.

The phrase in the grey squares is ……… .

Unit 52

1 Complete Mr Web's letter of advice. Then underline the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

Dear Mr Web,

My neighbours have a ten-year-old son. When he gets home from school, he comes straight to our house. He's a nice boy, but he won't go home and some evenings he even has dinner here. I think his parents both work and don't seem worried about him or want to take responsibility for him. What do you advise me to do? Rhona

Dear Rhona

Poor boy! Well, if I (1) ……… you, I would try and think about things from his point of view. Perhaps he's feeling (2) ……… for himself, and he probably feels he would be better (3) ……… with your family than at home. Think about it: in his (4) ……… , would you want to sit around an empty home? He might be afraid, and that would be perfectly natural. You (5) ……… always try giving him some little jobs to do, helping you around your home. And you need to take into (6) ……… the fact that his parents work, and maybe they don't realize that he is lonely. In that (7) ……… , the best thing would be to talk to them gently about it.

The best of (8) ……… .

Mr Web

53 I can use link phrases

'We've lived here **ever since** we got married. It took ages to find the right place, then **at last** we saw this one. We liked it because it's modern, and there's parking for two cars **as well**. Unfortunately, it's near a busy road, but we still bought it **in spite of** that. We had to buy furniture **as soon as** we moved in, and our bed didn't arrive for weeks; **in the meantime**, we slept on the floor! We've been here six years now. **On the one hand** I'd like a bigger house, but **on the other**, we've got great neighbours here, and we can't really afford to move. It looks **as if** we'll stay, but **even if** we sold, we wouldn't move far.'

Glossary

ever since	continuously from the time or event mentioned.
at last	finally, after problems or delays.
in spite of	If you do sth **in spite of** another fact, it is surprising that the other fact didn't stop you doing it. SYN **despite**.
as soon as	at the moment that, or as quickly as possible after. SYN **the minute** (**that**).
in the meantime	in the period of time between two times or events.
on the one hand … **on the other** (**hand**)	used to introduce different points of view, especially when they are opposites.
as if	used for saying how sth or sb appears. SYN **as though**.
even if	used for saying that what follows *if* makes no difference, e.g. ***Even if** we run, we'll be late.*

spotlight *as well, in addition*

We use **as well** and **in addition** when we are adding information. **As well** is more informal than **in addition**. Notice the position of these expressions.

The house is very spacious, and it's close to my parents as well.

The flat is beautifully furnished. In addition, it is in a good location.

1 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 I've worked here *ever since* | *even if* I left school.
2 Pete's train was an hour late, so *in the meantime* | *on the one hand* we went for a coffee.
3 It sounds *as if* | *as though* Patty is enjoying herself in India.
4 I'll let you know *as soon as* | *the minute* I hear anything.
5 He's already told me that *even if* | *as if* he's offered the job, he won't accept it.
6 We decided to go on *despite* | *in spite of* the cost.

2 Complete the sentences with suitable link phrases.

1 I really liked Sophie .... I met her. She was very funny, but we had so much in common ....
2 It took us all day, but .... I found the pair of shoes I wanted.
3 She's been at home .... she had the baby.
4 There are some black clouds coming over, and it looks .... it's going to rain.
5 .... Marie would love to spend more time at home with her family, but .... , I think she would really miss the satisfaction she gets from her job. .... , of course, she may not have enough money to live on.

54 I can use fixed phrases with two key words

There are many idiomatic phrases in English where two words are joined by a conjunction, which is usually *and*. The order of the words is almost always fixed (*come and go*, NOT ~~*go and come*~~), and in many cases the two words are near synonyms or opposites, or words with a repeated sound pattern, e.g. *fast and furious*.

The pain in my arm ***comes and goes****.*

Example	**Meaning**
Joined by *and*	
The pain in my arm ***comes and goes****.*	**come and go** be present for a short time, then go away, then return, and so on.
We can't do anything about it now. We'll just have to ***wait and see*** *what they decide.*	**wait and see** delay action until you know what is going to happen.
We need to see the ***facts and figures*** *before making a decision.*	**facts and figures** accurate and detailed information.
The action is really ***fast and furious*** *at the beginning of the film.*	**fast and furious** (of films, games, shows, etc.) full of rapid action and quick changes.
I've been ***up and down*** *the road, but I can't see them.*	**up and down** the road = along the road in both directions.
You're up ***bright and early*** *this morning.*	**bright and early** early in the morning.
I love the ***peace and quiet*** *of the countryside.*	**peace and quiet** calm and silence, especially in contrast to a noisy environment.
First and foremost *we need to book the hotel.*	**first and foremost** used for emphasizing the main point or the most important reason for sth.
I've been going ***backwards and forwards*** *all day.*	**backwards and forwards** from one place to another and back again, many times.
Do you see them much? *~* ***On and off****, but not a great deal.*	**on and off** used to say that something happens a few times, then stops for a period, then starts again, and so on. SYNS **off and on**, **now and then**.
I'm ***sick and tired*** *of all this rain.*	**sick and tired of sth** very unhappy about sth.
Joined by *for* or *or*	
She told me what he said ***word for word****.*	**word for word** using exactly the same words.
We'll get the money ***one way or another****.*	**one way or another** / **the other** INF using one of several possible methods, although you don't know yet which one.
The books will be here in three weeks, ***give or take*** *a few days.*	**give or take** used to say that the number you have just stated is nearly correct, but not exactly.
I'll find another job ***sooner or later****.*	**sooner or later** at some point in the future.

spotlight *lovely and …*

This informal expression is used when you are emphasizing that something is good because of the quality mentioned:

It's lovely and warm by the fire.   *This water is lovely and cold.*   *It was lovely and quiet without the children.*

1 Complete the phrases.

1 first and ....
2 sick and ....
3 sooner or ....
4 facts and ....
5 one way or ....
6 give or ....
7 on and ....
8 word for ....
9 peace and ....
10 fast and ....

2 Combine the words from the three boxes to make nine idioms. (You can use *and*, *or*, and *for* more than once.)

come one way lovely wait bright word now backwards fast

and or for

see early forwards furious word warm another then go

1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....

3 Use one of these words in each sentence below, then complete the phrase.

one way sick now bright give backwards up wait peace word first ✓

▶ First .... and foremost .... we have to find somewhere to live.
1 She only read it once but she was able to repeat it .... for ....
2 They're not giving out the results yet, so we'll have to .... and ....
3 He had to get up .... and .... to catch the seven o'clock train.
4 I've been helping Sandra, and I've been going .... and .... all day.
5 We still see them .... and ...., but not as much as we used to.
6 People are getting really .... and .... of the terrible pollution from the factory.
7 I'm not sure where the house is, but we'll find it .... or ....
8 We looked .... and .... the road, but there was no one there.
9 You pay £30 for a meal, ... or .... a few pounds.
10 I've got a house in the mountains, and I go there for the .... and ....

4 Rewrite the sentences using a phrase from the opposite page. Keep the meaning the same.

▶ I only see him occasionally. — I only see him now and then.
1 We need to see more detailed information. — We need to see the f.......... .
2 The first half of the game was very quick. — The first half was f.......... .
3 She repeated his exact message. — She repeated it w.......... .
4 I'm very unhappy about all this snow. — I'm s.......... of it.
5 There's no noise in the garden. — The garden is l.......... .
6 I don't know how, but I'll find them. — I'll find them o.......... .
7 I get a pain for a bit and then it stops. — The pain c.......... .
8 I'll paint the room at some point in the future. — I'll paint the room s.......... .
9 This water's great – it's straight from the fridge. — This water is l.......... .
10 I meet my old friends now and then. — I meet my old friends o.......... .

5 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE Do you have similar phrases in your language? How would you translate the phrases on the left-hand page? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student who speaks your language.

55 I can use prepositional phrases

A Opposites

Simon said I was **out of tune**, but I think I was the only one singing **in tune**.

In theory the plan sounds great, but I don't think it'll work **in practice**.

The doctor's **off duty** right now, but he'll be back **on duty** at six.

The phones were **in working order** yesterday, but already two are **out of order**.

I don't know if he pushed her **by accident**, or whether he did it **on purpose**.

The crowd was getting **out of control**, but the police now have the situation **under control**.

Glossary

out of tune	singing or playing the wrong musical notes. OPP **in tune**.
off duty	(of nurses, police officers, etc.) not working at a particular time. OPP **on duty**.
by accident	in a way that is not planned or organized. OPP **on purpose**.
in theory	used to say what should happen or be true (often used when it doesn't happen or isn't true).
in practice	used to say what really happens and what is really true.
in working order	(of a machine) functioning properly. OPP **out of order**.
out of control	impossible to manage or control. OPP **under control**.

spotlight *in/out of tune*, etc.

A number of other prepositional phrases form opposites in this way:
Tomatoes are in season now. = growing in large amounts and ready to eat now. OPP out of season.
I was in luck – there was one ticket left. = lucky. OPP out of luck.
The lion was just in sight. = able to be seen. OPP out of sight.

1 Write in the correct preposition(s).

1 The idea sounds good .... theory.
2 I'm sure she did it .... accident.
3 Is everything .... control?
4 He took my pen .... purpose.
5 I'm afraid the machine's .... order.
6 She's not at work; she's .... duty.

2 What are the opposites of these phrases?

1 under control | ....
2 off duty | ....
3 by accident | ....
4 in luck | ....
5 in tune | ....
6 out of order | ....

3 Complete the sentences with the correct word.

1 I don't like eating fruit when it is out of ....
2 The group were singing out of ....; it sounded horrible.
3 We saw the fox for a minute, then it disappeared out of ....
4 They repaired the machines yesterday, so everything should be in working ....
5 There was fighting in the street, but the police now have the situation .... control.
6 It's an interesting proposal in ....; but will it work in .... ?

B A range of prepositional phrases

I spoke to the solicitor **on the phone** this morning. She said they needed confirmation **in writing**, but promised to acknowledge it **by return of post**.

I questioned the two boys **at length**. **In the end**, I decided that the books had been taken **by mistake**, although the only people who know **for certain** are the two boys themselves.

Remember that you can speak to a counsellor **in confidence**, so if you have anything **on your mind**, come and see us **at once**.

… Yeah, we had the tree cut down. I couldn't get to the shed very easily because the tree was **in the way**, and it looked **out of place** …

Glossary

on the phone	1 by phone (as above). 2 using the phone now.
in writing	in the form of a letter, document, etc.
by return (of post)	in the next available post (usually the next day).
in confidence	If you talk to sb **in confidence**, they agree not to tell anyone else what you have said.
on your mind	If you have sth **on your mind**, you are thinking and perhaps worrying about it.
at once	immediately. SYN **straight away**.
at length	for a long time and in detail.
in the end	finally.
by mistake	If you do sth **by mistake**, you do it accidentally.
for certain	without doubt. SYN **for sure**.
in the/sb's way	stopping sb from moving or doing sth.
out of place	not suitable for the place or situation sth is in.

4 Circle the correct preposition.

1 I can't see the television – you're *in* | *on* the way.
2 We think they're safe, but no one knows *by* | *for* certain.
3 The head teacher spoke to the students *in* | *at* length.
4 You can speak to your doctor *by* | *in* confidence.
5 I can't say *for* | *with* sure, but I think I'll be there around 7.00.
6 They need an answer *by* | *in* writing.
7 I rang the doctor and they said he would come *in* | *at* once.
8 There wasn't anything good on at the cinema, so *at* | *in* the end we stayed at home.

5 Complete the dialogues.

1 Will they send the forms to you? ~ Yes, by return ………………………… .
2 Has he got something on his ………………………… ? ~ Yes, I think he's worried about his health.
3 Did he take the coat by ………………………… ? ~ Oh yes, he thought it was his.
4 Is Liselotte free? ~ No, she's on the ………………………… at the moment.
5 Was it a fairly quick conversation? ~ No, I spoke to them at ………………………… .
6 Did the ambulance take long? ~ No, it came straight ………………………… .
7 Those pictures look out of ………………………… there. ~ I agree. They'd look better on the other wall.
8 Did you move the table? ~ Yes, we had to; it was in the ………………………… .

56 I can use phrasal verbs as commands

Certain intransitive phrasal verbs are commonly used as spoken commands in conversation, e.g. *Go away! Get off!* This is also true of some transitive phrasal verbs, e.g. *Put it down! Take it off!* These verbs also have other meanings: see the table below.

Verb	Meaning as a command	Other meanings
Get out!	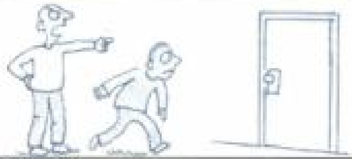	• (of a piece of information) become known after being secret until recently: *The news* ***got out****.*
Come on!	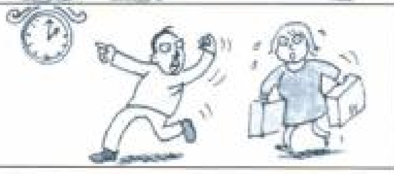	• make progress: *Your French is* ***coming on*** *very well.* • begin: *I've got a cold* ***coming on****.*
Go away!	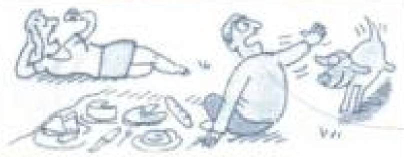	• (of a problem) stop existing; disappear: *The pain has finally* ***gone away****.* • leave home, especially for a holiday: *I'm* ***going away*** *for a few days.*
Get off!	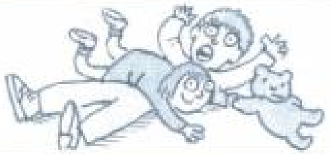	• leave the place where you work at the end of the day: *I* ***get off*** *work early on Fridays.* • leave on a journey: *We'd like to* ***get off*** *before the traffic gets heavy.*
Get in!	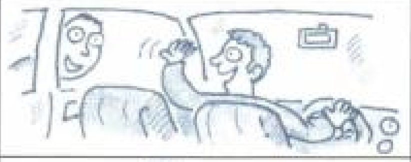	• be accepted to study at a school, university, etc.: *I didn't* ***get in*** *to university when I left school, but I went two years later.* • arrive at a place: *The bus won't* ***get in*** *till 1.00.*
Sit up (straight)!	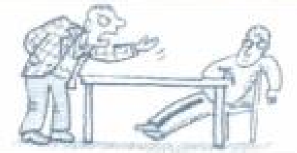	• not go to bed until later than usual: *We* ***sat up*** *for hours watching TV.*
Pick it up!	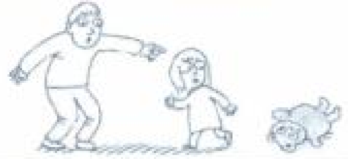	• learn sth without making a big effort: *She* ***picked up*** *some basic French on holiday.* • go and get sth; collect sth: *Could you* ***pick*** *my dry cleaning* ***up****, please?*
Put it down!	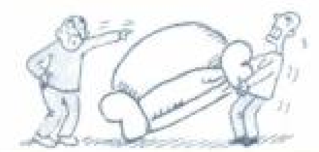	• write sth: *I* ***put*** *the appointment* ***down*** *in my diary.* • kill an animal because it is old or sick (often passive): *The animal had to be* ***put down****.*
Hold on (tight)! SYN **Hang on!**	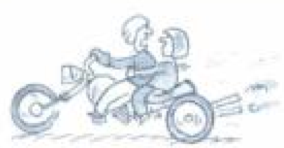	• wait: *Can you* ***hold on*** *a minute?* SYN **hang on**. • continue doing sth even though it is very difficult to do so: *They managed to* ***hold on*** *till the ambulance arrived.* SYN **hang on**.
Fill it in!	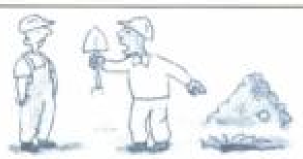	• write the necessary information on a document: *Just* ***fill in*** *your name and address.* • use your time doing sth unimportant while waiting for sth: *I'm* ***filling in*** *time until 6.00.*

1 Match 1–9 with a–i.

1 The problem won't go ____
2 Could you fill this form ____
3 I put his name ____
4 She picked a few words ____
5 If you don't go ____
6 Are you going to sit ____
7 We had to hold ____
8 When does the train ____
9 How did the information get ____

a out so quickly?
b up listening to the CD.
c up all night?
d down on the list.
e in and give it back, please?
f away, I'll scream.
g get in?
h away.
i on till help arrived.

2 Circle the correct words in the definition.

1 'The cat was put down' means the vet had to *treat the cat* | *end the cat's life*.
2 'I get off work at 4.00' means I *leave* | *get to* the office at 4.00.
3 'My headache's gone away' means my headache has *got better* | *got worse*.
4 'She sat up for hours' means she *went* | *didn't go* to bed at the usual time.
5 'He had to fill in time' means he had to *write something* | *wait for something to happen*.
6 'Did you go away last week?' means 'Did you go *out* | *on holiday* last week?'

3 Use a suitable spoken command to complete the sentences.

▸ I'll give you a lift to school: get in ____!
1 Don't leave your coat on the floor: ____, please!
2 We don't want you to come with us, so please ____!
3 You aren't allowed in this room: ____!
4 Don't walk so slowly! ____, hurry up!
5 That vase you're holding is very valuable: please ____ immediately!
6 Quick, ____! This is our stop!

4 Complete the dialogues.

1 A Come ____! We'll be late!
B Just hang ____ a minute; I've got to go and get my coat. Anyway, there's no great hurry; Dad's train doesn't get ____ till 7.00.
2 A What's wrong?
B I don't feel too good. I've got a very bad headache coming ____.
A Oh, can I do anything?
B No, please just go ____ and leave me alone.
3 A Is Matthias doing the management course this summer?
B He's a bit upset, actually; he heard today that he hadn't got ____; the course is full.
4 A How's your Italian coming ____?
B Oh, not bad. That week I spent in Rome was great; I picked ____ a lot of vocabulary.

5 What would you say in these situations? Write your answer using a phrasal verb.

▸ A child is holding a big, angry-looking cat. Put the cat down ____!
1 Ask your friend if she's making progress with her English. How ____?
2 Your friend is going near the dry cleaning shop, and you have some trousers that need to be collected. Could ____?
3 Ask your friend if he's having a holiday this summer. Are ____?
4 Ask the ticket inspector the time your train arrives in Paris. When ____?
5 You're on a bus with a child, and the driver is going very fast. What do you say to the child? Hold ____!
6 You want to know what time your friend finishes work. What ____?

57 I can use verb-based idioms

Many idioms consist of a verb + (adjective/preposition) + noun.

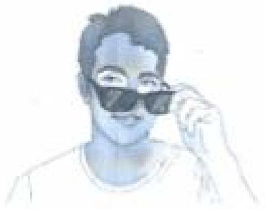

He's really caught the sun. INF = his face has become red or brown from being in the sun.

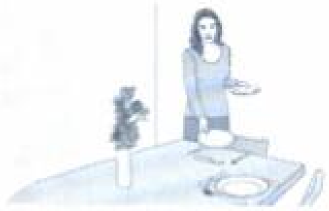

She's laying the table. = putting knives, forks, etc. on the table for a meal.

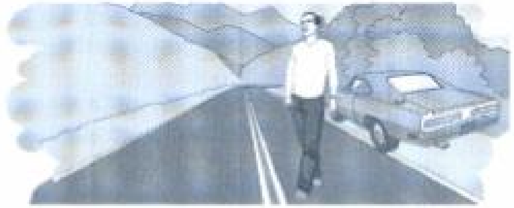

I need to stretch my legs. INF = go for a short walk after sitting for some time.

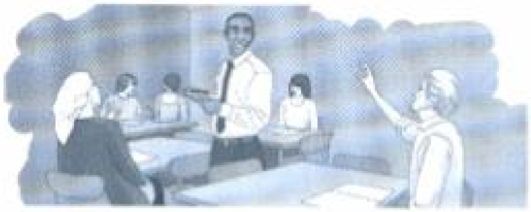

I tried to catch *the waiter's* eye. = attract his attention.

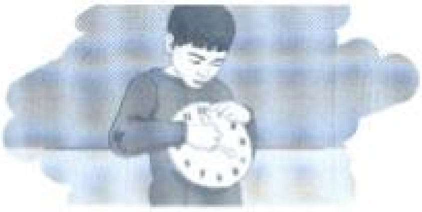

Can he tell the time *yet?* = read the time from a clock.

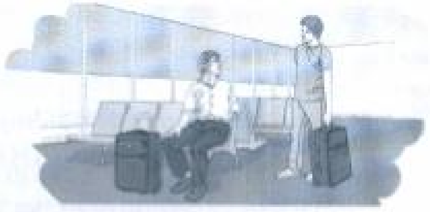

Come on, let's make a move. INF = begin to leave the place where we are.

Example	Meaning
*You're **missing the point**. I'm not against war; I'm saying this war is wrong.*	**miss the point** not understand the main idea of what sb is saying.
*She'll have to work very hard to **make up for lost time**.*	**make up for lost time** do sth quickly or do more than usual because you couldn't do it before.
*When he started singing, I'm afraid it was hard to **keep a straight face**.*	If you **keep a straight face** you don't laugh or smile even though you find sth funny.
*Could I **pick** your **brain** on a grammar problem?*	**pick sb's brain** (or **brains**) INF ask sb questions because you want to find out more about sth.
*This discussion is hopeless: we're just **going round in circles**.*	**go round in circles** do or discuss sth without making any progress.
*I said I'd **give** him **a hand** when he moved his stuff.*	**give**/**lend** (**sb**) **a hand** (**with sth**) help sb with sth.
*I'm tired – **I've been on the go** all day.*	**be on the go** INF be very active and busy.
*She **has a thing about** fish: she won't eat it unless it has no bones.*	**have a thing about sth**/**sb** INF have a strong liking for or dislike of sth/sb.
*Why don't you **stay the night** at our flat?*	**stay the night** sleep at sb's house for one night.
*Darren believes in **speaking his mind**, and that can upset people.*	**speak your mind** say exactly what you think in a very direct way.

1 Cross out the mistake in each sentence and correct it.

▸ I'm just going out to stretch my leg. Legs
1 We've had to make up for losing time.
2 I've been trying to catch the nurse's eyes for ages.
3 Could you lend me an arm with this suitcase?
4 I think we're going round in a circle.
5 It's late – I'd better do a move.
6 We've been on the going since 7 o'clock this morning.
7 My brother is sleeping the night at my uncle's house.
8 She couldn't keep her face straight.
9 When did you learn to say the time?
10 I need some ideas. Could I pick your mind for a few minutes?

2 Is the speaker pleased, annoyed, or could it be either? Write P, A, or E.

1 We made up for lost time.
2 I managed to pick her brains.
3 He completely missed the point.
4 I think I caught the sun today.
5 Nobody has laid the table.
6 She gave me a hand with the washing up.
7 I've been on the go all day.
8 We've been going round in circles all morning.

3 Answer the questions.

▸ What do you do if you give someone a hand? You help them.
1 Why would you pick someone's brains?
2 If you have a thing about beards, what do you feel?
3 What do you start doing if you can't keep a straight face?
4 If someone lays the table, what do they do?
5 If you've been on the go, what's been happening?
6 What are you doing if you speak your mind?
7 What happens if you catch the sun?
8 What happens if you miss the point?

4 Complete the missing verb in each sentence, in the correct form.

1 Don't worry; if you miss the last train, you can always ______ the night with us.
2 It was so funny, I couldn't ______ a straight face.
3 Do you think you could ______ me a hand with the housework?
4 I was trying to ______ the teacher's eye, but she was very busy.
5 He ______ the table while I was cooking.
6 I did explain it carefully, but I'm afraid he ______ the point.
7 The train leaves in twenty minutes – we ought to ______ a move or we'll miss it.
8 I don't often ______ my mind, but I was just so angry.
9 He went outside to ______ his legs.
10 I think you've ______ the sun on the back of your neck.

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers in your notebook, or ask another student.

1 Who lays the table in your home, and why?
2 Do you catch the sun easily?
3 Do you have a thing about anything in particular? If so, what?
4 Do you generally speak your mind?
5 When did you last stay the night at a friend's place?
6 Do people ever pick your brains? If so, what about?

58 I can use key verbs: *get*

A Positive idioms with *get*

Get through
First Certificate:
five practice tests

WALKING
in the
BLACK FOREST
– where to **get away from it all**

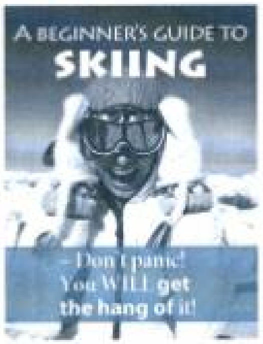
A BEGINNER'S GUIDE TO
SKIING
– Don't panic!
You WILL **get the hang of it!**

How to **get ahead** *in business*
IN TEN EASY STEPS

Get over
a broken marriage
and live again

Get into
ADVERTISING

10 Ten ways to
get the most out of
your day

Get rid of your bad habits –
and **get on with your life!**

You *and*
your **dog**

– **get the upper hand** today!

Glossary

get through sth	reach a good enough standard to pass a test.
get away from it all	INF go on holiday to a place where you can relax.
get the hang of sth	INF learn how to do or use sth.
get ahead	be successful and do better than other people in a career.
get over sth	feel normal again after having an unpleasant experience, e.g. an illness or a divorce.
get into sth	start a career in a particular profession.
get the most out of sth	get the maximum benefit or pleasure from sth (also **get sth / a lot out of sth**).
get rid of sth	take action so that you no longer have sth that you do not want.
get on with your life	stop worrying about sth that has happened and start living a normal life again.
get the upper hand	gain an advantage over sb so that you are in control of a situation.

1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

▸ I wasn't expecting to get ^ the exam, but I did. through
1 Stop worrying and just get on your life – you're only 21! ....
2 You need to get the hand when your business is under attack. ....
3 I can't get the hang making chips; mine are always too greasy. ....
4 After months of hard work, she just wanted to get away from all. ....
5 My brother showed me how to get the most of my computer. ....
6 What's the best way to get of rats? ....

2 Complete these book titles with a suitable verb from above.

1 Ten things you never learned at college: how to .... in business and beat your rivals
2 101 ways to .... your ex-boyfriend
3 A handbook for junior doctors: how to .... the exams
4 How to .... a career in TV
5 What to do when your enemy gets ....
6 Calling all slimmers! How to .... that fat stomach!
7 Healthy escapes: .... it all by the Red Sea
8 Manage your stress and get .... your life

B Relationships with *get*

What are your cousins like? And do you get on?

I've got a cousin who**'s getting on** for forty, but I only **got to know** him quite recently. We **get along** really well, though, and now we **get together** regularly for a chat.

I've got a cousin who **is getting along** really well in his business and earning lots of money, whereas I find it quite hard to **get by** on my salary. He tells me I should **get out of** teaching and work for him.

My cousin's a nightmare. He always **got his own way** as a child, and then later he **got mixed up with** a gang and ended up in prison.

Glossary

be getting on for …	be nearly a particular age, time, or number.
get to know sb	meet sb a number of times and become friends.
get together (with sb)	meet sb socially or in order to discuss sth.
get by	have enough money to buy what you need, but no more.
get out of sth	stop doing sth or being involved in sth.
get your own way	get or do what you want, although other people may want sth different.
get mixed up with sb	INF become involved with sb who is a bad influence on you (also **get mixed up in sth**).

spotlight *get on, get along*

Both **get on** and **get along** can be used with these meanings. **Get on** is more common.

1 *We get on/along well.* = have a friendly relationship. Also **get on/along with sb**, e.g. *I get on/along with her very well.*

2 *He's getting on/along well at school.* = making good progress.

3 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

1	Did you and Zoe get on?	Did you and Zoe get along?	______
2	How did he get mixed up with them?	How did he meet them?	______
3	He always gets his own way.	He always gets what he wants.	______
4	We often get together in town.	We often meet socially in town.	______
5	She gets by on $10 a day.	She gets about $10 a day.	______
6	I got to know Sam last year.	I became friends with Sam last year.	______
7	My grandmother's getting on for sixty.	My grandmother's over sixty.	______
8	How did you get on with her?	How did you get to know her?	______

4 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 5.)

1 How did you get to ______ your best friend?
2 How often do you get ______ with all your relatives for a meal?
3 How are you getting ______ in your career or with your studies?
4 Do you get your own ______ most of the time, or do you give in to others?
5 Who do you get ______ with best in your family? Why?
6 Have you ever got mixed ______ in something and then regretted it? If so, what?

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 4 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

59 I can use key verbs: *take* and *look*

A *Take*

FORUM Do you hate your boss?

- I've got a Liverpool accent, and my boss is always **taking** me **off** in front of my colleagues. My dad says, 'Just **take no notice of** him', but it really upsets me.
- I asked my boss if I could **take** a day **off** to go to a funeral. She just screamed 'NO-O-O!'. I **was** really **taken aback**.
- Anyone who disagrees with my boss is **taking his life in his hands**. He just goes mad. One day when he was really angry with me, I told him to **take it easy**. What a mistake.
- When my boss told me he was cutting my salary by 15 per cent, I protested. He just said, '**Take it or leave it**'. I **wasn't** going to **take** that **lying down**, so I rang my lawyer.
- He **took against** me the minute we met. But I'm not worried; I can **take care of myself**.

Glossary

take sb off	copy the way sb speaks or behaves, to entertain people.
take (no) notice of sb	pay (no) attention to what sb says.
take (time) off	have a particular amount of time away from work.
be taken aback	be shocked or surprised.
take your life in your hands	put yourself in danger (usually of death; in this example, the speaker is joking).
take it easy	INF used to tell sb not to be angry or worried.
take it or leave it	used to say that you do not care if sb accepts your offer or not.
not take sth lying down	not accept a bad situation without a fight or protest.
take against sb	INF begin to dislike sb, often without a good reason.
take care of yourself	If you can **take care of yourself**, you don't need anybody else to protect you.

1 Cross out one wrong word. Write the correct word at the end.

▸ As usual, she took no notice ~~to~~ what I said. of
1 It's your decision: you can take it and leave it. ....
2 He's strong; he knows how to take care for himself. ....
3 She was really upset, so I told her to take her easy. ....
4 You need to be careful. You might be taking your live in your hands. ....
5 They said we weren't needed any more. I was really taken back. ....
6 The government decision is wrong, and we won't make it lying down. ....
7 I don't know why he took again her, but she was really upset about it. ....
8 I asked my boss for a few days of because my daughter was ill. ....

2 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

1 Just relax and calm down. EASY ....
2 He put himself in a dangerous situation. LIFE ....
3 He copies the way his boss speaks. OFF ....
4 I was really shocked by the job cuts. ABACK ....
5 She's experienced and can protect herself. CARE ....
6 She wasn't at work today because she was ill. OFF ....

B *Look*

What kind of person are you?	*About you*
Do you **look back on** your childhood as the happiest time of your life?	....
Do you **look on the bright side** when you're in a difficult situation?	....
Do you **look up to** people who are in positions of power?	....
Do you **look out for** other people when they need help?	....
Would you **look the other way** if you saw someone stealing from a shop?	....
Can you **look** people **in the eye** and tell them the truth all the time?	....
Do other people often **look to** you for advice?	....
Do you always try to **look your best** when you go out?	....
Do you **look young for your age**?	....

Glossary

look back on sth	think about sth in your past.
look on the bright side	be cheerful or positive about a bad situation.
look up to sb	respect and admire sb. OPP **look down on sb**.
look out for sb	take care of sb and make sure they are treated well.
look the other way	ignore sth bad that is happening and not try to stop it.
look sb in the eye	look straight at sb, especially to show that you are being honest.
look to sb	hope or expect to get help, advice, etc. from sb.
look your best	look as attractive as possible.
look young for your age	look as though you are younger than you really are.

3 Complete the phrases.

1 look out .... your friend
2 look .... best
3 look young for your ....
4 look up .... someone
5 look on the .... side
6 look someone in the ....
7 look .... on your childhood
8 look .... someone for advice
9 look the other ....
10 look .... on someone you don't respect

4 Complete the dialogues using the phrases from Exercise 3 in the correct form.

1 I don't think he's telling the truth. ~ No, he couldn't look ....
2 Mandy's a very positive person. ~ Yes, she always looks ....
3 I'll get my hair cut before my interview. ~ Good, you need to look ....
4 They don't show Bill any respect. ~ No, they look ....
5 You think a great deal of your mother, don't you? ~ Yes, I really look ....
6 Do you know, that man is nearly 40. ~ I don't believe it! He looks ....
7 People are suffering in the cold. ~ Yes, and the government is just looking ....
8 Does he ask his father if he needs help? ~ Yes, he always looks ....

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questionnaire, or talk to another student.

60 I can use key verbs: *come* and *go*

A *Come*

What's all that noise? ~ It's the new neighbours – they've been **coming and going** all day.

Why is she so good at Arabic? ~ I don't know; it just **comes naturally to** her.

How did the accident happen? ~ I don't know. When I **came to**, I was in hospital.

How**'s** your dancing **coming along**? ~ Quite well, actually – I feel I**'ve come a long way**.

Was it a good match? ~ Well, it was a bit dull to start with, but it **came to life** in the second half.

I see they're buying a flat. ~ Yes, they recently **came into** a lot of money.

He had so many plans and ambitions. ~ Yes, how sad that they all **came to nothing**.

How did he die? ~ It's a mystery, but I'm sure the truth will **come out** eventually.

Glossary

come and go	arrive at a place and then leave it, repeatedly.
come naturally to sb	be natural and easy for sb to do.
come to	become conscious again. SYN **come round**. OPP **pass out**.
come along	improve or develop in the way that you want. SYN **come on**.
come a long way	improve a lot or make a lot of progress.
come to life	start to become exciting and lively.
come into sth	If you **come into** money, it becomes yours when sb dies, especially a relative.
come to nothing	be unsuccessful or have no successful result.

spotlight *come out*

Come out has several meanings:

1. *The true story came out at the trial.* = became known (as above).
2. *The book comes out next week.* = becomes available to buy or see (also used of films, CDs, etc.).
3. *After the rain, the sun came out.* = appeared.

1 Circle the correct answer.

1. If a CD comes out, it is *unsuccessful* | *available* in the shops.
2. If someone comes to, they become *conscious* | *unconscious*.
3. If skiing comes naturally to you, you *find it easy to do* | *think it is a natural activity*.
4. If you come into money, you *win it* | *receive it from someone who has died*.
5. If a plan comes to nothing, it *costs you nothing* | *doesn't succeed*.
6. If a story comes to life, it *becomes exciting* | *seems realistic*.

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

1. They're moving house, so they'll be coming and over the next few days. ....
2. She's worked very hard at skating, and she's certainly come a way. ....
3. When the news finally came, nobody could believe it. ....
4. After the operation, it was an hour before he finally came and started talking. ....
5. Imagine it: a warm evening, music, and then the moon came – it was so romantic! ....
6. The pain was terrible – so bad that I out. When I came round, I was on the floor. ....
7. If I ever come any money, I'm going to give it all away. ....
8. Our vegetable garden is coming well, and we'll soon be eating salad and beans. ....

B *Go*

What are your plans for this weekend?

If everything **goes according to plan**, I'll **go down to** Brighton to stay with friends.

My wife usually decides what we do, and I just **go along with** it.

Dad wants to take us bowling, and **whatever he says goes**.

I've only got £20, and that **won't go far** …

My friend**'s been going through** a bad time, so I**'m going round to** his place to see him.

I think I**'m going down with** flu – I'll probably stay in.

I**'m** supposed to be **going out with** my boyfriend, but he never rings me. I hope he **hasn't gone off** me.

Glossary

go according to plan	happen in the way that you intend.
go down/up to somewhere	go to a place further south/north from where you are.
go along with sth	agree to do sth that sb else wants to do or wants you to do.
what/whatever sb says goes	used for saying that a particular person has the power to decide what happens in a situation.
not go far	used for saying that you can't buy very much with a particular amount of money.
go through sth	experience sth difficult or unpleasant.
go round (**to** …)	visit sb or go to a place that is near.
go down with sth	become sick or ill with sth.
go out (**with sb**)	spend time with sb and have a romantic relationship with them.
go off sb/sth	stop liking sb/sth that you liked in the past.

3 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 Marcia's started going out ______
2 I used to like pasta, but I've gone ______
3 Things didn't go according ______
4 I'm hoping to go down ______
5 I feel awful; I must be going ______
6 She's very dominant; whatever she says ______
7 The money I earn doesn't go ______
8 Joe suggested the plan and we just went ______

a to the coast at the weekend.
b goes.
c down with something.
d far these days.
e along with it.
f off it recently.
g with my brother.
h to plan.

4 Complete the sentences.

1 Things are better now, but I went ______ a bad time last summer.
2 If I'm not busy on Sunday, I might go ______ to my friend's for a chat.
3 If everything goes ______ to plan, I'll be going abroad this summer.
4 I might go ______ to the north coast later this month.
5 How long has Alice been going ______ with Gareth?
6 I usually go ______ with whatever my friends want to do at the weekends.
7 $20 doesn't go ______ if you're going out for the evening where I live.
8 I used to love staying out late, but as I've got older, I've gone ______ it.

Review: Language

Unit 53

1 **Are these link words talking about time, making a contrast, or giving extra information? Complete the table.**

on the other hand   as well   at last   even if   ever since
in spite of   in addition   as soon as   in the meantime

TIME	CONTRAST	EXTRA INFORMATION

2 **Complete the sentences in a suitable way.**

1 I ordered a sandwich and ________________ as well.
2 On the one hand, living alone means you can do what you like, but on the other, ________________.
3 They only met in the summer, but they're obviously in love with each other. It looks as if ________________ next year.
4 Even if ________________, I still don't think he'll pass his exams.
5 I'll telephone you as soon as I ________________.
6 She remained quite cheerful in spite of ________________.
7 We waited and waited, and at last ________________.
8 He's been very unhappy ever since ________________.

Unit 54

1 **Complete the sentences below using phrases from the table. You will find them by moving horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.**

BRIGHT	AND	AND	THEN	PEACE	AND
GIVE	EARLY	NOW	SICK	WARM ↑	QUIET
OR	UP	AND	AND	AND ↑	←LOVELY
TAKE	LATER	DOWN	TIRED	FORWARDS	AND
SOONER	OR	WORD	FOR	WORD	BACKWARDS

▶ I went for a swim and the water was lovely ________ and ________ warm ________.
1 She's sure to find out the truth of the matter ________ ________ ________.
2 My boss complains all the time. I'm ________ ________ ________ of listening to him!
3 I looked ________ ________ ________ the road, but I couldn't see the car.
4 We spent the morning going ________ ________ ________ to the shops.
5 I only meet him ________ ________ ________, usually at his mother's.
6 She repeated what the policeman had told her ________ ________ ________.
7 The plane tickets cost about $400, ________ ________ ________ a few dollars.
8 We got up ________ ________ ________ today, ready for our long journey.
9 My life is so stressful! I just need some ________ ________ ________.

Unit 55

1 Write the words below in the correct column.

theory mistake accident writing purpose length certain
duty once the phone sure return of post season

IN	ON	AT	BY	FOR

2 Replace the underlined words with a prepositional phrase using words from the box.

duty length certain ✓ purpose end order mind control tune

▸ We knew without any doubt who was responsible. for certain
1 The child was running around wildly.
2 He didn't break the mirror intentionally.
3 She was singing all the wrong notes.
4 That policeman is not working today.
5 The coffee machine's not working.
6 Finally, we got to the theatre.
7 He spoke about the situation for a long time.
8 I've got a lot of things that I'm thinking about.

Unit 56

1 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals and making any necessary changes. The meaning must stay the same.

▸ What time do you leave work tonight? OFF What time do you get off work tonight?
1 Have you completed the application form? FILL
2 I collected my dry cleaning at 4.00. UP
3 She applied to university but she wasn't successful. IN
4 Hurry up; we're going to be late. COME
5 She is making good progress with her painting. COME
6 Do you know when the train arrives? GET
7 The pain in my leg has disappeared. GO
8 I wrote it in my address book. PUT
9 Could you wait a couple of minutes? ON
10 Don't stand on that chair! OFF

Unit 57

1 Complete the sentences using a word from the left and a word from the right in the correct form.

lay catch speak be
give keep make tell

time go move mind
face sun hand table

1 The dinner's nearly ready – could you ………… the …………, please?
2 The little boy was playing his violin so badly; it was hard to ………… a straight ………….
3 She's been on the beach for hours; she's really ………… the ………….
4 It's nearly midnight, so I'd better ………… a ………… . I've got a busy day tomorrow.
5 She's really tired. I think she's ………… on the ………… since six this morning.
6 We need to move the bookcase. Could you ………… me a ………… with it?
7 On some websites you are able to ………… your ………… and really say what you think about important issues.
8 I didn't learn to ………… the ………… until I was about seven.

2 Circle the correct word.

1 go round in circles = work hard at something without making *mistakes* | *progress*.
2 pick sb's brain = ask someone questions because you want to *get to know them* | *find out information*.
3 make up for lost time = do something *quickly* | *slowly* because you *couldn't do it before* | *have plenty of time*.
4 catch sb's eye = *look sb in the eye* | *make somebody look at you*.
5 miss the point = not *understand* | *hear* the main part of what someone is saying.
6 stretch your legs = *move your legs* | *go for a short walk* after sitting for some time.

Unit 58

1 Replace the underlined parts of the sentences using a phrasal verb with *get*, and any other words that are necessary to keep the meaning the same.

▸ I'd like to stop being in the army. I'd like to get out of the army.
1 They have a good relationship. …………
2 I'm sure he's good enough to pass the exam. …………
3 It took her some time to recover from the shock. …………
4 I don't know how she started a career in journalism. …………
5 We often meet socially for a coffee in the morning. …………
6 She can't manage financially on £100 a week. …………
7 I think he benefited a lot from the course. …………
8 I think she's making good progress. …………

2 Complete the definitions of these idioms and phrasal verbs, then underline the full idiom or phrasal verb in each sentence.

1 If it is getting on for midnight, it is ………… midnight.
2 If you get the upper hand, you gain an ………… over somebody.
3 If you get ahead in your career, you are ………….
4 If you get your own way, you do what ………….
5 If you get the hang of something, you ………… it.
6 If you get mixed up in something, you become involved in something which is ………….

Unit 59

1 Are the sentences positive or negative? Write P or N.

1 Mike always looks on the bright side. ……
2 Alain looks down on his neighbours. ……
3 Daisy can't look you in the eye. ……
4 Rebecca looks out for people. ……
5 Rafa takes against people. ……
6 Jorge looks up to his parents. ……
7 Joe won't take things lying down. ……
8 You take your life in your hands when David's driving. ……

2 Replace the underlined parts of the sentence using an idiom or phrasal verb with *take* or *look*.

► She pays no attention to anything he says. takes no notice of
1 I often think about the past. ……
2 Just calm down and relax. ……
3 She appears much younger than she is. ……
4 He has always respected and admired her grandfather. ……
5 I was really shocked and surprised when she said that. ……
6 Whenever there's a problem, he just pretends not to see it. ……

Unit 60

1 Circle the correct answer.

1 I'm happy to *come* | *go* along with whatever my sister decides.
2 Alex lost his job, and then he was ill. He's been *going* | *coming* through a bad time.
3 I used to like Sean, but I've *come* | *gone* off him because he's been horrible to my sister.
4 My brother will make the final decision. Whatever he says, *comes* | *goes*.
5 My cousin Leila is good at all ball games: they just *come* | *go* naturally to her.
6 Margaret Compton's latest book *comes* | *goes* out next month.

2 Complete the crossword. All the answers are idioms or phrasal verbs with *come* or *go*. The letters in the grey squares spell another phrasal verb. What is it?

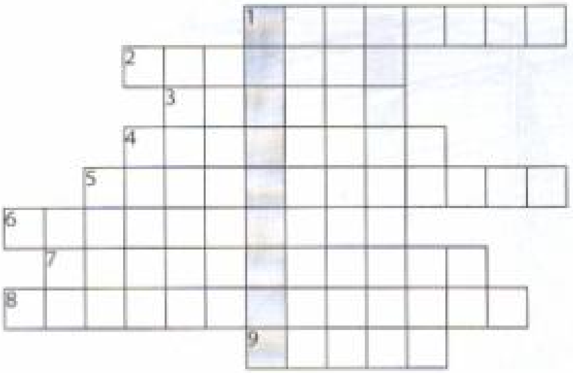

1 When the sun …… , it appears from behind a cloud. (5,3)
2 I'm planning to …… to see my neighbour this evening. (2,5)
3 She fainted, and it was a few minutes before she finally …… . (4,2)
4 After his father died, he …… a lot of money. (4,4)
5 You've made so much progress with your English – you've really …… . (4,1,4,3)
6 The show was boring at first, but it …… when the dancers came on. (4,2,4)
7 We were hoping to see Rome and Venice, but things didn't …… to plan. (2,9)
8 All his dreams of starting a business sadly …… in the end. (4,2,7)
9 €10 doesn't …… in an expensive city like Paris. (2,3)

Idioms – some interesting histories

How did English idioms come into use? Here we show the meanings behind some idioms, and how some of them developed. Look at our website www.oup.com/elt/wordskills for more.

a stone's throw (Unit 2)
A stone's throw is the distance that you can throw a stone – in other words, only a short distance from where you are standing.

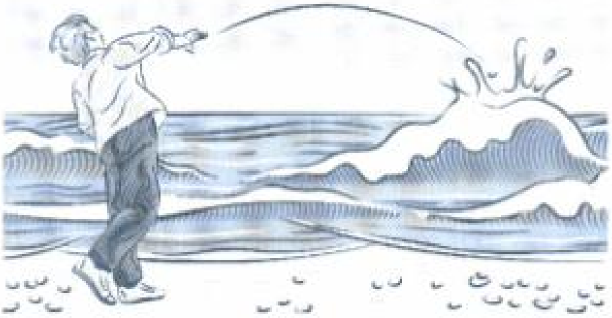

be over the moon (Unit 27)
In early use, the idiom was to 'jump' over the moon. It spread because of its use in the children's nursery rhyme (= poem):

Hey, diddle, diddle,
The cat and the fiddle,
The cow jumped over the moon.

It means, be extremely happy about something.

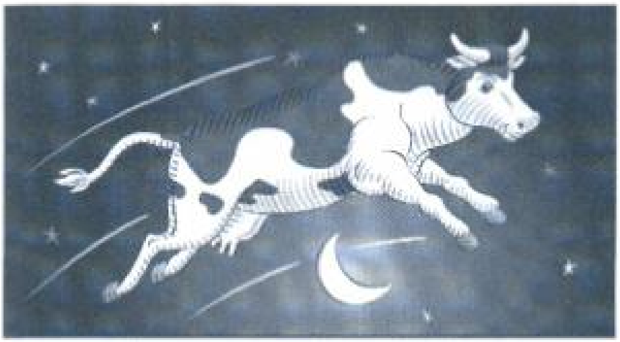

brush sth up / brush up on sth (Unit 9)
You could improve the appearance of something like a silk hat or a woollen coat by brushing it. Nowadays, the idiom expresses the idea of improving a skill that you have not used for a long time, e.g. speaking a foreign language.

catch sb red-handed (Unit 35)
If someone was **caught red-handed**, they had blood on their hands after murdering someone or poaching (= killing birds and animals illegally on another person's land). Nowadays if someone is **caught red-handed**, they have been caught while doing something wrong or illegal.

in the red OPP **in the black** (Unit 33)
In bank accounts, if you owed money (i.e. you were in debit), the amount was written in red ink; amounts of money actually in your account were written in black.

on the dot (Unit 49)
On the dot refers to a traditional clock face. The minutes are marked as dots, which the minute hand covers as it moves round the clock.

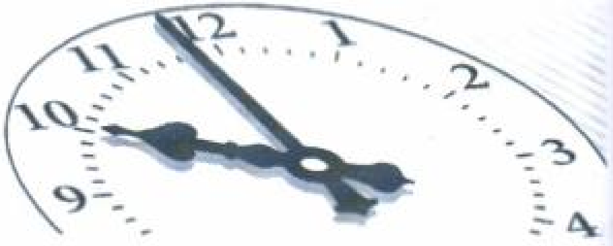

once in a blue moon (Units 3, 49)
The moon is obviously not blue, and it rarely looks blue; this phrase suggests that if something happens **once in a blue moon**, it rarely or never happens.

show sb the ropes (Unit 24)
In the past, sailing ships had many ropes of different kinds, and sailors had to learn how to handle them. If someone **shows you the ropes**, they teach you a skill or show you how something is done.

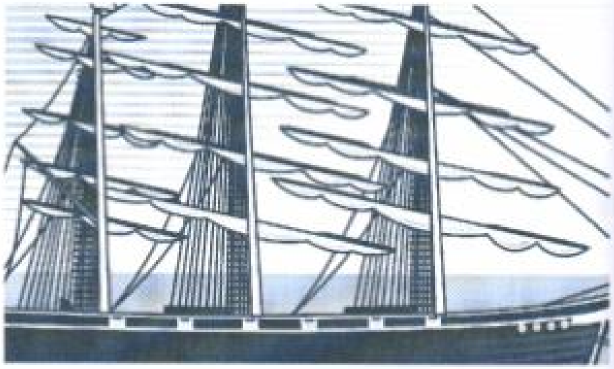

start from scratch (Unit 48)
The origin of this phrase is to do with sport. People used to scratch a line on the ground as the starting point of a race, or to show where boxers had to stand at the beginning of a match. It now means to start something again from the beginning, probably because the previous work you did on it was no use.

Answer key

Unit 1

1

1 *Both are correct.*
2 on
3 lose face
4 *Both are correct.*
5 in the distance
6 bell

2

1 He was in a **terrible** state
2 How **on earth** is your sister
3 makes **a lot of** sense
4 every day **without fail**
5 we ran **like mad**
6 situation, but **if all else fails** he can

3

1 steer
2 flat out
3 That
4 out of the blue
5 in the distance
6 lose face

4

1 fail (without fail)
2 bell (rings a bell)
3 sense (makes a lot of sense)
4 eye (turn a blind eye)
5 state (was in a terrible state)
6 come (How come?)

5

1 be unable to decide what you think about sth, or whether to do sth or not
2 after a period of time
3 be lucky that
4 amusing and fun to be with
5 have a lot of money

Unit 2

1

1 never
2 bright
3 off
4 charge
5 words
6 advantage

2

1 through
2 case
3 throw
4 supposed/meant
5 less
6 mind

3

1 getting nowhere
2 A piece of cake.
3 Don't ask me. / Search me.
4 thank heavens
5 get through to
6 stone's throw

4

▸ Type 5 (**trial and error** a way of solving a problem by trying several possibilities and learning from your mistakes; see also Unit 9.)
1 Type 6 (**live on sth** have a particular amount of money to buy the things you need to live.)
2 Type 7 (**Good grief!** used to express surprise, shock, or annoyance; see also Unit 19.)
3 Type 2 (**in the main** mostly; in general.)
4 Type 1 (**find your feet** If you **find your feet**, you become confident in a new situation, especially one that is difficult to start with.)
5 Type 4 (**absence makes the heart grow fonder** used to say that when you are away from someone you love, you love them even more.)
6 Type 3 (**a fact of life** something difficult or unpleasant that cannot be changed and that you have to accept.)

5

making fun of
swap places (with)
No way!
gets on my nerves
Get lost
a pain in the neck
go away

6

Spoken phrase

No way! = definitely not.
Get lost! a rude way of telling someone to go away.

Verb-based idiom

make fun of sb laugh at sb or make others laugh at them, usually in an unkind way; see also Unit 22.
swap places (with sb) take sb's seat or position so they can take yours; see also Unit 8.
get on sb's nerves annoy sb.

Noun phrase

a pain in the neck INF a person or thing that you find annoying.

Phrasal verb

go away used to tell sb to leave a place or person; see also Unit 56.

Unit 3

1

These answers are based on the Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary.

1 moment
2 catch
3 breath
4 early
5 just
6 public
7 thing

2

1 T 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 F
9 T 10 F

3

These answers are based on the Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary.

1 on **our** doorstep
2 at the last **moment**
3 a **bundle** of nerves
4 **give** my love to
5 **stay** out of his way
6 **fresh** blood

4

These answers are based on the Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary.

1 formal
2 old-fashioned, informal
3 informal
4 BrE, informal, humorous
5 old-fashioned, informal
6 BrE, saying
7 informal, especially NAmE
8 formal

Unit 4

1

The correct sentences are: 1, 3, 4, 5, 8.

2

1 the police are looking into **it** at the moment
2 I'm sure he just made **it** up.
3 *Correct.*
4 Who looks after **it** when you go on holiday
5 *Correct.*
6 I came across **it** yesterday on the Internet
7 If you try **it** on and it's too big
8 *Correct.*

3

1 You can check **in** at 5.00.
2 Could you look **up** the number? OR Could you look the number **up**?
3 I'm **looking** after my friend's daughter today.
4 He's going out **with** David's sister.
5 CNN stands **for** Cable News Network.
6 Would you like to try this skirt **on**? OR Would you like to try **on** this skirt?

4

1 She wasn't happy, but now things are looking up.
2 The committee looked into the cause of the problem.
3 I didn't know the answer, so I made something up.
4 The train's coming in on platform five.
5 We can cut back on the electricity we use.
6 What do the letters FAQ stand for?
7 I had to look up the meaning (in a dictionary). OR look the meaning up
8 Our meeting was at 5.00, but Sue never showed up.

5

rub sth out (transitive, separable) e.g. *I made a mistake, so I rubbed it out.*
go in for sth (transitive, inseparable) e.g. *She went in for the Stage 5 piano exam.*
settle down (intransitive, inseparable) e.g. *They want to get married and settle down.*
take after sb (transitive, inseparable) e.g. *I take after my father: we're both very talkative.*
take sth back (transitive, separable) e.g. *The watch didn't work, so I took it back.*
fall out with sb (transitive, inseparable) e.g. *I fell out with him because he told me a lie.*

Unit 5

1

1 e 2 f 3 b 4 c 5 h 6 d 7 a 8 g

2

1 keeps on
2 go on to
3 stay on
4 dragged on
5 go on
6 went on and on
7 get on with
8 drove on

3

I saw my dad off at the airport.
We lazed around by the pool.
The town was cut off by the flood water.
We didn't take off until 7.00.
She told me to clear off and leave her alone.
The boys often hang around the street corner.

4

1 hanging
2 messing
3 cut
4 lying
5 went / has gone
6 see
7 hang
8 clear

Unit 6

1

1 b 2 e 3 h 4 c 5 d 6 a 7 f 8 g

2

1 clear ('tidy' is also possible)
2 flicked ('looked' is also possible)

3 used
4 goes
5 tidy ('clear' is also possible)
6 live
7 Drink
8 slept

3

Answers from a Czech person.

1 Yes, we always go through homework in class.
2 I'm afraid I can't remember when I last tidied up my bedroom!
3 Yes, I do often sleep through the alarm clock.
4 Yes, of course I do.
5 No, as I consider it rather impolite.

4

1 took, sent
2 ring, phone
3 take, bring, put
4 get
5 gave, took
6 sent, took

5

1 took
2 ring/phone/call
3 pay
4 get
5 brought
6 got
7 get
8 bring/give

Unit 7

1

1 about five kilos / a lot of weight
2 fire alarm / car alarm
3 *All are possible.*
4 shoes/jacket
5 *All are possible.*

2

1 I see Beverley's ~~got~~ on a few kilos again **put**
2 Could you put the lights ~~down~~ **on**
3 I hope they turn ~~out~~ **up**
4 We've decided to ~~make~~ the living room up **do**
5 She was ~~tidied~~ up this week **tied**
6 I broke ~~away~~ and cried **down**
7 They tied me ~~out~~ **up**
8 I can't do it ~~on~~ **up**

3

1 went
2 came
3 put
4 broke
5 turn
6 tied
7 broke

4

1 turn up
2 do up
3 going up
4 tied up
5 do up
6 gone off
7 turned up
8 broke down

5

1 go 2 put 3 broke 4 do 5 turn 6 going

6

Answers from a New Zealander.

1 We live in a quiet cul-de-sac and never hear car alarms going off.
2 I put on weight during the winter months because it's too cold to go for walks.
3 Once our car broke down at about 10.30 p.m. We rang the AA [Automobile Association] and had to wait half an hour before they came and towed us to the nearest garage.
4 Our home is only 10 years old, but we've started doing it up. So far the ceiling has been painted.
5 If I'm late for class (which is very rare), my students get on with some work or use the time for group discussion.
6 Petrol prices are going up, and that affects the prices of everything else.

Unit 8

1

call it a day
swap places
take it in turns
go over something
hand something out
first of all

2

1 all
2 give/hand
3 over/through
4 out
5 off
6 in

3

1 places
2 away
3 turns
4 day
5 out
6 round

4

1 cross it ~~off~~ **out**
2 ~~top~~ of the iceberg **tip**
3 no use ~~to study~~ grammar **studying**
4 My brother's ~~in~~ home **at**
5 it's ~~not~~ good **no**
6 ~~get~~ back to the beginning **go**

5

1 rough
2 iceberg
3 crossed
4 take
5 back
6 good/use
7 build
8 look

6

Answers from a British person.

1 When I was studying French I took it very seriously.
2 Yes, it's good to look up words you don't know. But it's also good to see if you can work them out from the context.

3 Now students can prepare their written work on their computers, which is quicker than writing it in rough first.
4 I agree. But it's easy to forget to look back at your notebook.
5 Yes, it's always good to practise speaking with your classmates to build up your confidence.
6 Yes, what you learn in class is only the tip of the iceberg. You go on learning all your life.

Unit 9

1

1 make **myself** understood
2 I'll **get** there eventually
3 got behind **with** his studies
4 make the most **of** it
5 now I have to **catch** up with
6 list of **dos** and don'ts

2

1 make
2 heart
3 loud
4 make
5 get
6 error
7 stick
8 given

3

Answers from a Greek person.

1 I usually make myself understood in English.
2 I've tried to learn phrasal verbs and idioms by heart.
3 I sometimes say words out loud to remember them.
4 I always try to make the most of my time in class.
5 I sometimes get behind with my studies.
6 Trial and error is a good learning method.
7 I generally stick at everything I start.
8 I haven't given up a course.

Best piece of advice: Don't be embarrassed about speaking: the main thing is to make yourself understood.

4

rack your brains
keep your mind on something
go in one ear and out the other
on the tip of my tongue
make sense of something
keep it up

5

1 on, tongue
2 rack
3 keep
4 ear, other
5 pick
6 make
7 in
8 up
9 come

6

Answers from a Brazilian person.

I often find that I have words on the tip of my tongue when I've slept badly and I'm tired.

I'm quite good at languages and I can usually pick things up quite quickly, above all when reading foreign magazines and novels.

I need to brush up on difficult English phrasal verbs; if I don't use them I tend to forget them.

Unit 10

1

1 I must get to ~~the~~ grips with this.
2 You can only do ~~to~~ your best.
3 Keep ~~both~~ your fingers crossed!
4 I did it ~~up~~ to the best of my ability.
5 Best of ~~the~~ luck!
6 He works ~~it~~ out answers to problems.

2

1 get
2 ability
3 bogged
4 over/through
5 come
6 habit
7 top
8 world

3

Answers from a Czech person.

I have to get down to studying in the evening because I'm a distance student, and I'm at work during the day.

I always try to do my best.

Sometimes I do get bogged down in details when I'm learning something new.

I go through my notes shortly before an exam; it isn't as time-consuming as reading a textbook.

It's impossible to guess which topics will come up in an exam; there are usually about a hundred of them for each exam at our university.

If you don't get into the habit of studying regularly, you probably won't be able to pass all the necessary exams before the end of a term.

Feel enthusiasm – I can easily get on top of subjects I like.

I never feel it'll be the end of the world if I fail an exam because I can try each exam three times.

4

1 stayed
2 *Both are correct.*
3 blank
4 eye
5 read
6 stuck, *both are correct.*

5

1 **read** through my notes
2 tried to **breathe** in and out
3 feel my **mind** going blank
4 none of them **made** sense
5 keep my **eye** on the clock
6 I ran **out** of time
7 **miss/leave** out the last question
8 steered **clear** of my friends

6

Answers from a British person.

1 Yes, I always stay up late revising on the night before an exam.
2 I like to be alone and quiet just before an exam, but that's not often possible.
3 I try to keep my eye on the clock, but I find that difficult to do if I'm really concentrating on what I'm writing.
4 Yes, I do try to stick to the question, but I'm not good at doing so.
5 If I get stuck on a question I usually try to write something, even if I know it's not answering the question. I should probably just move on instead.
6 It's a good idea to breathe in and out slowly if your mind goes blank.
7 I never have enough time to read through my answers at the end.

Unit 11

1

1 foot
2 ~~compare~~
3 ~~worst~~
4 ~~best~~
5 ~~earlier~~
6 ~~on~~

2

I She will **go** far in her career.
2 I was **in** my element at university.
3 She came **up** with some good ideas.
4 He sat **back** and did nothing.
5 Why did she drop **out** of college?
6 It went from **bad** to worse.

3

1 comparison (By comparison)
2 early (it's early days)
3 up (it's not up to much)
4 dropped (dropped out)
5 thinking (thinking on his feet)
6 better (be better off)

4

1 start off / get off
2 know
3 do
4 think
5 bring out
6 think
7 pull

5

1 getting
2 out
3 much
4 pulling
5 stuff
6 thanks
7 foot
8 do

Unit 12

1

1 think **straight**
2 think **ahead**
3 think **for** himself
4 think **back**
5 think **twice**
6 think **it** over

2

1 over/through
2 back
3 over
4 straight
5 mind
6 yourself
7 spur
8 twice

3

Answers from a Czech person.

No. I like to think ahead.
It's sometimes good to accept other people's opinions, but I mostly prefer thinking for myself.
I like to solve my problems on my own, but I sometimes consult my close friends.
I try to avoid doing things on the spur of the moment.
That's right. I always tend to start panicking.
Yes, I always think twice before doing anything important.
I hardly ever think back to my time at primary school.

Unit 13

1

1 I'm a bit out of ~~the~~ practice these days.
2 She knows what ~~that~~ she's doing.
3 Would you like to give ~~to~~ it a try?
4 Are you ~~no~~ any good at making things?
5 I'm no ~~much~~ good at maths.
6 I meant to do it but it slipped ~~out~~ my mind.
7 She knew it like the back ~~side~~ of her hand.
8 Are you any good with ~~for~~ electrical things?

2

1 with
2 head
3 in
4 back
5 good, give
6 mind
7 hang
8 out

3

Answers from a New Zealander.

1 I'm good with my hands, especially making and fixing things, e.g. sewing, basic furniture repairs, etc.

2 I've got a good head for figures. Maths was my best subject at high school.
3 I used to be able to take in a lot of factual information but the older I get the less I remember.
4 I know Christchurch like the back of my hand. It's a great place to live and work.
5 I'm pretty good at cooking Kiwi food, but I also love giving Asian food a try.
6 I remember most of my family's birthdays.
7 It must be easier to get the hang of it if they have a good instructor.
8 Yes, I cycle a lot, and so I never get out of practice.

Unit 14

1

1 in
2 broke
3 *Both are correct.*
4 from
5 *Both are correct.*
6 line

2

1 quiet (keep quiet about it)
2 kept (kept him in the dark)
3 touch (got in touch with)
4 broke (broke the news)
5 knowledge (it's common knowledge)
6 hold (get hold of), gave (gave her a ring)

3

Answers from a Norwegian person.

1 I'm a phone person. I use email occasionally, and I only use texting when something is really urgent.
2 I usually give people a ring to thank them. I try to drop them a line as well, because that's what I was taught to do as a child, but I sometimes forget.
3 Quite frequently.
4 Sometimes a lot, sometimes less. I ring friends and family abroad about once a month, but email is a good way to keep in touch with friends abroad.
5 Yes, they do! Mainly because we've moved house a lot. But when I got married, I kept my surname as my middle name, before my husband's surname, as a way for people to be able to find me.

Unit 15

1

1 U 2 H 3 U 4 H 5 U 6 U 7 U 8 U

2

1 speak
2 talk
3 foot
4 face, back
5 mind
6 told
7 across
8 edgeways

3

Answers from a Syrian person.

1 Yes, I do if the teacher is friendly enough.
2 No, there isn't.
3 No, I haven't as far as I remember.
4 I prefer the former as long as it's objective and not too personal.
5 No, I wouldn't. I tend to be reserved in such situations.
6 No, I haven't.
7 Yes, I sometimes do. It happens when I don't know the exact vocabulary.
8 Yes, it is with some people – those who I consider to be egocentric.

Unit 16

1

1 hung up
2 got cut off
3 get
4 *Both are correct.*
5 *Both are correct.*
6 top

2

1 line (hold the line), through (put you through)
2 charge (charge it up)
3 get (get through to), on (hung up on)
4 hang/hold (hang/hold on), fortune (costing a fortune), up (hung up)
5 off (got cut off)
6 back (get back to)

3

Answers from an Italian person.

1 It happened when I was having an interesting conversation on my mobile and I was a bit annoyed.
2 I have to top up my mobile two or three times a year.
3 Yes, I have. It usually happens when someone phones me to try to advertise their products and sell them to me.
4 No, luckily I don't have that problem.

Unit 17

1

1 up
2 come
3 not
4 know
5 Hurry
6 usual/always
7 of
8 when
9 up
10 Guess

2

1 Hurry up!
2 Say when.
3 Time's up.
4 Guess what?
5 What's up?
6 Here goes.
7 All the best.
8 Here you are.

3

1 Kind of.
2 as usual
3 there you are / there you go
4 What's up?
5 It's up to you.
6 all the best

4

1 Time's up.
2 Here goes!
3 Say when.
4 Here's to

Unit 18

1

1 Tell
2 told
3 say
4 say
5 telling
6 say
7 say
8 tell
9 tell
10 say

2

1 say that again
2 whatever you
3 you so
4 say the least
5 Tell, rather not say
6 tell you
7 say no
8 you the truth
9 to say
10 be telling

3

1 I'll see ~~that~~ I can do **I'll see what I can do**
2 ~~seeing~~ you! **see you**
3 let's me see **let's see** OR ~~let's~~ me see **let me see**
4 see yourself **see for yourself**
5 I don't see why ~~no~~ **I don't see why not**.
6 see how ~~a thing goes~~ **see how things go**

4

1 see why not
2 for yourself
3 see you
4 'll see
5 let's see / let me see
6 it goes / things go
7 see what I can do
8 you see

Unit 19

1

1 D 2 S 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 S

2

1 Not bad. / Not too bad.
2 same here
3 if you like
4 Never mind.
5 You're welcome.
6 I'm very / terribly sorry.
7 Yes and no.
8 I'm not bothered.
9 go ahead
10 I beg your pardon?

3

1 none
2 Hear! Hear!
3 *Both are correct.*
4 hard luck!
5 *Both are correct.*
6 For goodness sake!

4

1 bad luck! / hard luck!
2 Mind your own business! / That's none of your business!
3 Good luck! / Best of luck!
4 Well done!
5 Good grief! / Good heavens! / Goodness me!
6 Goodness knows!
7 Bless you!
8 Thank goodness!

Unit 20

1

1 ~~let~~ **get**
2 bash **dash**
3 ~~ill~~ **all**
4 ~~cut~~ **put**
5 ~~bet~~ **get**
6 ~~hot~~ **got**
7 dove **love**
8 day **way**

2

1 cropped
2 on
3 together
4 Remember
5 after
6 by
7 love/regards
8 get
9 something
10 regards/love

3

1 away
2 back
3 earliest
4 pop, about
5 up, wait
6 call/drop

4

1 What's she been up to recently?
2 Meet me at 5.00 at the latest.
3 Could you drop me off at the doctor's?
4 I'll try to get away from work by 7.00.
5 I'm not sure I feel up to it.
6 It's (just) round the corner from where I'm staying.
7 I'm snowed under (with work) at the moment.
8 I'll call by (and see you) on my way home.

Unit 21

1

1 much (don't think much of), be (to be honest)
2 make (make of), concerned (as far as I'm concerned)
3 up (up to a point)
4 point (beside the point)
5 highly / a lot (thinks highly / a lot of), agree (I couldn't agree more)
6 thing (for one thing)

2

1 As far ~~that~~ I'm concerned **as**
2 ~~For~~ be honest **To**
3 I don't think ~~more~~ of **much**
4 think **a** lot of
5 In the ~~large~~ run **long**
6 ~~With~~ a doubt **Without**

3

Answers from a British person.

1 As far as I'm concerned we should learn from the past, in order to avoid the repetition of bad things.
2 It's better if the police don't carry guns, as they can be used in error and can get into the hands of criminals.
3 I agree. We need more efficient trains, and we need more buses in rural areas.
4 I don't agree. People don't seem to think much of him.
5 Yes, in the long run we'll need renewable fuels or energy for cars.
6 We may be dependent on them, but they have advanced our knowledge in a very valuable way.

4

1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S

5

1 What are the **pros** and cons
2 Well, **in** some ways
3 I know, but **even** so
4 You've got a **point**
5 And for the **most** part
6 Fair **enough**
7 And the thing **is**
8 To a certain **extent**
9 So, **if** you ask me

Unit 22

1

1 d 2 a 3 h 4 g 5 b 6 c 7 f 8 e

2

1 wrong
2 made
3 for
4 joke
5 laugh
6 got

3

1 last
2 speaking
3 burst out
4 leg
5 went
6 end
7 roof
8 a fool of himself

4

1 laugh
2 a joke
3 fool
4 fun of him
5 end of the stick
6 her off
7 out laughing
8 the roof

5

1 They didn't get it. / No one got the joke.
2 He made a fool of himself. / He was making a fool of himself.
3 He got the wrong end of the stick.
4 We're not on speaking terms.
5 He was pulling my leg.
6 My mother felt sorry for my aunt (because she had a hard life).

Unit 23

1

1 f 2 c 3 g 4 b 5 h 6 a 7 d 8 e

2

1 nodding his ~~hand~~ **head**
2 wearing his T-shirt ~~front to back~~ **back to front**
3 shaking ~~hand~~ **hands**
4 do ~~out~~ the buttons **up**
5 knocked me ~~over~~ **out**
6 fold their ~~hands~~ **arms**
7 tripped me ~~down~~ **up**
8 she ~~felt~~ over **fell**

3

1 knocked
2 tripped
3 hand
4 front
5 hang
6 tiptoe
7 crossed
8 away

4

1 They're shaking hands.
2 She's throwing them away. OR She's throwing away some old magazines.
3 He's blowing his nose.
4 He's wearing his T-shirt inside out. OR He's got his T-shirt on inside out.
5 She's shaking her head.
6 He knocked me out.
7 He's standing on tiptoe.
8 They're holding hands.

5

Answers from an Argentinian person.

1 Yes, but in Argentina, when you meet a friend, you also kiss him or her on both cheeks.
2 Yes, they do.
3 No, it isn't. But, if possible, you don't do it in public.
4 Yes, absolutely.
5 No, women never walk hand in hand in Argentina.
6 No, I haven't.
7 No, I haven't.
8 Some sheets of writing paper.

Unit 24

1

1 in 2 of 3 after 4 in 5 in 6 of

2

1 out 2 brought 3 runs 4 followed 5 ropes

3

1 brought 2 take 3 footsteps 4 look 5 runs

4

Answers from a Czech person.

1 As a child, I was brought up in a small town.
2 I most take after my elder sister.
3 I think I would like to follow in my mother's footsteps.
4 I particularly look up to my husband.
5 I'm not aware of a physical characteristic that runs in our family.

5

1 Why did she **burst** into tears?
2 I'll get my own back **on** her.
3 She has **given** birth to twins.
4 I often got **into** trouble at school.
5 He **stayed** up late to watch a film. or
He **stayed** up to watch a late film.
6 He's grown **into** a handsome young man.
7 She is nothing **like** her brothers.
8 What have you let yourself in **for**?

6

1 up 2 up 3 out 4 blind 5 get 6 back

7

Answers from a New Zealander.

1 I grew up in Christchurch, New Zealand. We had a big house with six bedrooms, a huge garden, and a goat.
2 We didn't have TV when I was young, and we were never allowed to stay up late.
3 I was allowed to stay out until 10 p.m., which I thought was far too early.
4 My parents didn't turn a blind eye because they had no idea what we got up to!
5 I was always in trouble at school. I used to break all the rules I could, without it getting back to my parents e.g. not wearing my school hat, riding my bike in the school grounds, etc.
6 I tried to get my own back on one of my sisters and one of my brothers but it didn't seem to bother them at all.

Unit 25

1

1 By the whole **On**
2 Just leave me ~~lone~~ **alone**
3 largely ~~with~~ fault **at**
4 In ~~generally~~ **general**
5 ~~settled~~ in his ways **set**
6 ~~in~~ ease with them **at**
7 out ~~from~~ touch **of**
8 Who is ~~for~~ blame? **to**

2

1 I feel at ease with Liz and Clive.
2 Just be yourself.
3 She's at fault.
4 He's very set in his ways.
5 Leave me alone.
6 I'm not good when it comes to numbers.
7 I'm out of touch with politics now.
8 Don't go on about it.

3

1 can't **get** through to him
2 she got **away** with it
3 becoming more and **more** dangerous
4 been getting **up** to
5 They're worlds **apart**

4

1 own two feet
2 live
3 the times
4 apart
5 offence
6 give in

5

Answers from a British person.

1 No, my parents never gave in to me.
2 No, I was regularly given punishments!
3 I've always been able to get through to both my parents and my children.
4 No. I'm far too old for that!
5 No, we've always understood each other.

Unit 26

1

1 G 2 G 3 G 4 B 5 G 6 B 7 B 8 G

2

1 by
2 in, door
3 ice
4 keep
5 given
6 locked
7 on/along
8 hand

3

Answers from a Greek person.

1 I live with my husband.
2 We work in the same school.
3 I would make them a cake.
4 No.
5 Yes. To school.
6 No.
7 The neighbours to the right. We have the same interests.
8 Cooking.

4

1 It was in full swing by 11.00.
2 The guests stood around outside.
3 The party went on all night.
4 Who turned the music up?
5 They couldn't put up with the noise.
6 They ran the risk of upsetting people.
7 When did it come to an end?
8 Please let me know if you can come.

5

1 throw/give/have (throw/give/have a party)
2 terms (on bad terms)
3 round (invited some people round)
4 around (stood around)
5 let (let us know)
6 go (go on)
7 on (what was going on)
8 down (turned the music down)
9 end (brought the party to an end)

Unit 27

1

1 I've got ~~flies~~ in my stomach. **butterflies**
2 She's about ~~for~~ leave. **to**
3 He ~~ran~~ out of his skin. **jumped**
4 He's got something ~~at~~ his mind. **on**
5 She ~~won't~~ help making mistakes. **can't**
6 Don't worry, you're ~~on~~ safe hands. **in**

2

1 state
2 can't
3 mind
4 calm
5 take
6 leaf

3

1 on
2 stomach
3 about
4 on, calm

4

Answers from a Brazilian person.

1 Not really. I'm quite relaxed.
2 About five months ago, when I had to do a presentation in front of a big audience.
3 I always feel nervous when I'm about to go on a journey because I'm afraid of flying.
4 I would tell them to watch a movie and do some deep breathing. It always works for me.

5

1 g N 2 d N 3 b N 4 i P
5 e N 6 c P 7 a N 8 h N

6

1 feet (get cold feet)
2 edge (on edge)
3 cry (I didn't know whether to laugh or cry)
4 dumps (down in the dumps)
5 mood (in the mood for)
6 lives (had the time of our lives)
7 makes (makes me sick)
8 control (control my temper)

Unit 28

1

1 mad about / fallen for
2 come between
3 shoes/place
4 hit it off / fall for each other
5 be Lucy's type / chat Lucy up
6 *All are correct.*

2

1 for good
2 thinks the world of
3 my type
4 hit it off
5 put yourself in my shoes/place
6 chatted me up
7 split up / break up
8 mad about / crazy about

3

1 wrong
2 time
3 together
4 courage
5 sight
6 on
7 wait
8 out

4

1 love
2 pluck, out
3 go
4 stuck
5 put

5

Answers from a Brazilian person.

1 I don't think so. I believe in attraction at first sight. Love takes time to develop.
2 Yes, I've always found it difficult. And since I have never had good results taking the initiative, I've decided not to do it anymore.
3 That's a tricky one. Maybe because people find they have nothing or little in common, or they lose respect for each other. There are so many possible reasons.
4 No, not many, but I know a few.
5 People smoking near me (I'm allergic), neighbours playing loud music, and people answering mobile phones at the cinema.

Unit 29

1

1 around
2 over
3 take
4 over
5 show-off
6 on
7 on
8 fair

2

1 showing off
2 all over the place
3 give and take
4 on her own / by herself
5 take that into account
6 over and over again / again and again
7 getting on my nerves
8 messing around/about

3

1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S

4

1 I love tidying things/everything away.
2 We've had plenty of ups and downs.
3 They all had a good laugh at my expense.
4 Should we put off buying the car?
5 Don't bite my head off!
6 The kids are driving me round the bend.

5

Answers from a British person.

It drives me mad when my flatmates keep changing channels on the television.

I also get annoyed when they don't do their fair share of the housework.

It especially drives me mad when they leave dirty plates and cups in the sink. Why don't they put them straight in the dishwasher?

I feel upset when my sister's boyfriend puts her down in front of other people.

I hate it when my boss bites my head off before hearing why something has happened.

Unit 30

1

1 e 2 g 3 h 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 d 8 f

2

1 I can confide in Molly.
2 So far, nobody has arrived.
3 Keep your feet on the ground.
4 If the worst comes to the worst, will you help me?
5 Don't sit around all day. / Don't spend time sitting around all day.
6 He'll soon find his feet in his new job.
7 She kept the news to herself.
8 His heart's not in this project. / His heart isn't in this project.

4

1 dare ~~said~~ that is true **say**
2 it's taken ~~out~~ my life **over**
3 based your decision ~~in~~ **on**
4 just for ~~funny~~ **fun**
5 couldn't stay there ~~no~~ longer **any**
6 Come ~~in~~! **on**

4

1 know (you never know)
2 true (come true)
3 in (believe in), longer (not any longer)
4 too (life's too short)
5 something (there's something in it)
6 guess (anyone's guess)

5

Answer from a South African person.

I read my horoscope when I happen to see it in a magazine. It's good for a bit of fun, but I don't believe in it for a minute.

Unit 31

1

1 bright
2 chances
3 out of luck, row
4 the most
5 here and there
6 die out
7 pick up
8 start off

2

1 started
2 make
3 here
4 died
5 picked/brightened
6 clouded
7 out

Unit 32

1

1 ~~drop out~~ **drop off**
2 ~~wink a sleep~~ **sleep a wink**
3 ~~later nights~~ **late nights**
4 ~~fall to sleep~~ **fall asleep**
5 ~~made a lie-in~~ **had a lie-in**
6 ~~turn and toss~~ **toss and turn**
7 ~~before the last~~ **before last**
8 ~~worry sick~~ **worried sick**

2

1 I didn't sleep a wink. / I was wide awake all night.
2 I had a lie-in.
3 I was worried sick.
4 I was tossing and turning all night. / I tossed and turned all night.
5 I was wide awake.
6 I managed to drop off (to sleep). / I managed to fall asleep.
7 I slept like a log. / I had a good night.
8 I had an early night.

3

Answers from a Czech person.

1 I always have problems dropping off when travelling by train.
2 No, I had a very good night last night.
3 Yes, I have had three very late nights this week.
4 I hardly ever fall asleep watching television.
5 This morning I had a lie-in. I usually get up late at weekends.
6 Whenever I have problems I toss and turn and cannot fall asleep.
7 If only I could always have such a good sleep as the night before last.
8 I am worried sick, and not only about my English.

Unit 33

1

1 I'm afraid I'm ~~at~~ the red. **in**
2 I cut back ~~in~~ my spending. **on**
3 Pay ~~out~~ the money you borrowed. **back**
4 He's been ~~on~~ debt for years. **in**
5 How will he pay ~~over~~ his debts? **off**
6 Go to the bank and pay the cheque ~~on~~. **in**
7 She's absolutely rolling ~~on~~ money. **in**
8 You have to save ~~out~~ for it. **up**

2

1 out
2 careful
3 cut
4 well, badly
5 hard
6 off
7 rolling
8 ends

3

Answers from a New Zealander.

1 I don't take money out of my account once a week. I use my credit card as much as possible so I can get air points with Air New Zealand.
2 I'm quite careful with my money. I save as much as possible so I can sometimes afford to do special things.
3 I enjoy the challenge of cutting back on my spending from time to time, e.g. seeing how cheaply I can make a delicious meal instead of eating out or getting takeaways.
4 Senior doctors and specialists are well off. Nurses are underpaid and often try to get a pay rise.
5 Some elderly people are hard up, some are well off, but most would be somewhere in between.
6 A lot of young people live with their parents for longer than 18 years because it's cheaper than renting a flat, and Mum does all the cooking, washing, and cleaning for them.
7 People who are rolling in money have to pay higher taxes, but not enough in comparison with the average person.
8 Lawyers don't usually have any problem making ends meet.

4

1 the ~~p~~ost of the transport **cost**
2 my ~~h~~oney's worth **money**
3 to ru~~b~~ up a huge bill **run**
4 we got ~~n~~ipped off **ripped**
5 keep your lead above water **head**
6 ran out o~~n~~ money **of**
7 it didn't cost a jenny **penny**
8 save for a rainy way **day**

5

1 He runs the café on a shoestring.
2 I didn't expect him to rip me off like that.
3 Save (your money) for a rainy day.
4 It's hard to keep my head above water.
5 It didn't cost a penny.
6 The insurance covered the cost of the hospital.
7 Did you get your money's worth?
8 I've run out of dollars.

Unit 34

1

1 another
2 in
3 starving
4 burn
5 up
6 go
7 cut
8 go

2

1 on
2 were, wouldn't
3 Whatever
4 Make
5 starving, fill
6 down

3

Answers from a British person.

1 If you want to go on a diet, try to eat lots of fresh fruit and vegetables.
2 If I were you, I wouldn't eat so much cheese.
3 Whatever you do, don't forget to drink lots of water.
4 Make sure you take plenty of exercise.
5 If you're starving, don't fill yourself up with biscuits.
6 Try to cut down on drinks like fizzy lemonade.

4

1 turn it up
2 heat it up
3 come off
4 rid of it
5 make use of them
6 threw it out

5

1 Please don't throw **out** those pears. OR … throw those pears **out**.
2 He needs to chop **up** the onions. OR … chop the onions **up**.
3 I couldn't get the olives out **of** the jar.
4 Could you turn the oven **down**, please? OR … turn **down** the oven, please.
5 I turned the tomatoes **into** a soup.
6 If it's too hot, let it cool **down**. OR Let it cool **down** if it's too hot.

Unit 35

1

1 in
2 on
3 away
4 on
5 into
6 away
7 up
8 on

2

1 run
2 trouble
3 vain
4 in
5 from
6 increase/rise
7 handed
8 up

3

1 Dan will get into trouble for this.
2 He got away with the crime.
3 The police are on the lookout for two thieves.
4 The escaped murderer is now behind bars.
5 They let the boy off.
6 She ran away from home to escape from her father.
7 The barman was beaten up by the gang. OR The gang beat up the barman.
8 We looked for the ring in vain. OR We looked in vain for the ring.

4

1 been **getting** into trouble
2 been **on** the lookout
3 one boy **broke** into
4 he was **caught** red-handed
5 the police just let him **off**
6 able to **get** away with it
7 tricked a resident **into** letting
8 they then ran **off** with
9 they are still on **the** run
10 should be **behind** bars

Unit 36

1

1 P 2 N 3 N 4 N 5 P 6 P

2

1 make
2 got
3 time
4 make, thank
5 stood
6 up

3

1 giving me **a** hard time
2 next **to** nothing
3 make **it** as a nurse
4 to **get** behind
5 working **all** hours
6 my brother **to** thank for that

4

1 a ~~nine-for-five~~ job **nine-to-five**
2 give him a sack **the**
3 checking up against you **on**
4 deal ~~on~~ lots of banks **with**
5 hard ~~with~~ it all day **at**
6 make matters worst **worse**

5

1 turned me down
2 handed in her notice
3 taken on
4 gave her the sack
5 checks up / has been checking up
6 cut out

6

Answers from a Brazilian person.

Yes, for some job positions.
Not really. I'm a teacher, so my working hours are quite different.
Yes I have – the last time I quit a job.
My boss does that all the time.
No. I've always worked as a teacher, and I'm really cut out for that.

Unit 37

1
1 d 2 e 3 b 4 c 5 f 6 a

2
1 we had to take **out** a loan
2 they think they can make **a** go of it
3 they sold it as a **going** concern
4 it could still fall **through**
5 I decided to **take** on the job
6 must be out of your **mind** to lend money to Karl
7 we still have a long **way** to go
8 got the business **up** and running
9 it's been **turned** into a chemist's

3
1 corners
2 *Both are correct.*
3 out of
4 vicious
5 for
6 meet
7 up
8 worse

4
1 notice
2 circle
3 meet
4 race
5 worse
6 world

5
1 dream
2 opt
3 race
4 notice
5 up
6 ends
7 up

Unit 38

1
I didn't get my money back.
They've sold out of milk.
I sent off for a book.
She splashed out on a new coat.
The wine is on special offer.
He wrapped the gift up for me.
I always shop around for bargains.
I got the bike for nothing.

2
1 my money back
2 rather than
3 on sale
4 splashed out
5 sent off/away for them
6 on (special) offer
7 shop around
8 for nothing

3
Answers from a Czech person.
Yes, I have, and I've got it back.
Yes, I do, especially clothes and shoes.
Yes, I do. I prefer to use the Internet to buy electronic gadgets and furniture.
Yes, I browse the Internet first.
No, only when I need them.
It was a year ago. I bought a very nice and very expensive leather jacket.
Yes, it was a huge bunch of flowers in a small shop.
No, never.

Unit 39

1
1 by, round
2 pop
3 ran/bumped
4 turned
5 ended
6 out
7 tea
8 put

2
1 night
2 out
3 halves
4 corner
5 up
6 out

3
Answers from a Norwegian person.
1 I wish I could more often! When my husband is away on business, I take a book to bed for an early night.
2 My husband and I don't eat out often because it's hard to find a babysitter, but we eat out as a family most weekends.
3 Yes, I go halves when I eat out with a friend.
4 Yes, there are several, including a Chinese restaurant.
5 A couple of times a month. We get a lot of family coming to stay with us.
6 When my mum came to stay we went out for a meal; that was about three weeks ago.

4
1 time
2 *Both are correct.*
3 into it
4 sardines
5 take
6 *Both are correct.*

5
1 feel
2 threw/chucked
3 asking
4 jump
5 keep
6 out
7 into
8 hands

6

Answers from an Argentinian person.

1 Sometimes my children ask me little favours, such as driving them to their friends' or buying them a new computer game.
2 No.
3 Yes, a bakery. The first owner retired and sold the shop to a younger couple.
4 No, I am patient and wait for my turn. I get extremely angry when others push in – it's not fair.
5 Yes, some neighbourhoods are more dangerous than others.
6 Nothing much. I plan to relax after a long working day.

Unit 40

1

1 c 2 d 3 f 4 a 5 e 6 h 7 g 8 b

2

1 up, fall
2 sudden, turned, Sure
3 breath, down, keep

3

1 other people
2 it's hard to learn
3 out of shape
4 little by little
5 enter the race
6 start doing it

4

1 took
2 come
3 by
4 for
5 looking
6 comes
7 shape
8 question/matter
9 at
10 good

5

Answers from a Czech person.

Every year I spend my summer holiday at the seaside as I love swimming. I have never had to work at swimming – it just came to me naturally. I am sure swimming must do everybody good. It helps people of any age stay in shape.

Unit 41

1

1 off
2 out
3 *Both are correct.*
4 *Both are correct.*
5 away
6 *Both are correct.*

2

1 take **your** time
2 We set **off**/**out** after breakfast
3 get **away** at least once a year
4 turned **out** to be
5 got a lot **out** of it
6 all **over** the place

3

1 away 2 season 3 in 4 get 5 off

4

Answers from a New Zealander.

1 We try to get away every long weekend (four to six times a year). Often it's only a short distance, e.g. one or two hours from home. In addition, we usually have two weeks at Christmas to travel round New Zealand.
2 Last year we took a holiday out of season and stayed in motels in camping grounds. We enjoyed it so much; we'll certainly do it again.
3 We book holidays in advance if we're travelling overseas. If we're travelling in New Zealand, we prefer to take a risk and hope we find somewhere nice to stay. So far, so good.
4 We usually get around in our car. We've got a station wagon, so there's plenty of room for luggage for only two people.
5 If we're travelling a long distance we stop off about halfway, but we usually book that accommodation in advance.

5

1 an equal amount
2 not near
3 in a tent
4 it is different from usual
5 it has a positive effect on you
6 happy

6

1 do (do her good)
2 go (go away) ('get' is also possible: get away)
3 change (make a change)
4 track (off the beaten track)
5 air (in the open air)
6 happens/happened (as it happens/happened)
7 once

7

1 away
2 beaten
3 open
4 it
5 on
6 do

8

Answers from a Norwegian person.

1 No, not really. I'd never plan to go away on holiday alone. I've been with friends, though.
2 Yes. We don't like package holidays. We try to find places away from the tourist areas.
3 Yes, very much so. We like to get into the country or go to the seaside.

4 No, I'm not a tent person! I like to go home to a comfortable bed. I used to rough it when I was a student, but those days are gone!
5 No, I haven't.
6 Holidays really do me good.

Unit 42

1

kick off
win the toss
take advantage of something
cheer somebody on
at full strength
send somebody off

2

1 settle
2 full
3 kick
4 close, on
5 sent, off

3

1 cheer
2 get
3 kicked
4 lost
5 sent
6 advantage

4

1 I've had **enough** of English
2 they **got** the better of us
3 in **return** I teach her English
4 signed **up** for the evening course
5 she **took** no part in the race
6 help to liven **up** the lessons
7 **to** begin with
8 do you think it will catch **on**

5

1 take part
2 liven things up
3 catch on
4 something to do
5 make a/any difference
6 To begin with / To start with

Unit 43

1

We set off early.
I loaded up the car.
I usually stick to main roads.
Let's break the journey.
We can take a short cut.
Please look out for somewhere to eat.

2

1 fill
2 case
3 cut
4 time
5 set
6 out
7 A, B
8 stick

3

Answers from a Syrian person.

No, I don't. I fill it up on the way.
Yes, I do. I don't want to rush on the day of travel.
Yes, I try to do that. No one wants to get stuck in traffic or arrive late.
No, I don't.
I do it for five to ten minutes almost every hour.
No, I don't. I focus on driving safely.
Yes, I do – when I have one.

4

1 call
2 stand
3 *Both are correct.*
4 go
5 middle
6 jump

5

1 down
2 down/over
3 off
4 down
5 up
6 in/over

6

1 off
2 jumped
3 pull
4 after
5 in/over
6 stand
7 knocked

7

Answers from a Brazilian person.

I've definitely had some problems on the road. Two months ago I was driving along a road unaware that the speed limit was 100 kph. As I'd left home late, I speeded up so that I would manage to arrive at my appointment on time. A police officer made me pull over and gave me a $100 fine. To make matters worse, my car broke down five miles away from the police station and I had to call out the emergency services and pay another $100. As it's said: it never rains, but it pours!

Unit 44

1

1 if ~~the~~ need be
2 has ~~put~~ her heart **set**
3 feel like ~~go~~ out **going**
4 pick and ~~select~~ **choose**
5 they ~~can~~ do with **could**
6 I'm dying for ~~to have~~ something to eat. OR I'm dying ~~for~~ to have something to eat.

2

1 I feel like a rest now.
2 I could do with a good dictionary.
3 Can you make do with this small map?
4 You can't always pick and choose.
5 I'm dying to see his new girlfriend.
6 I can't do without my address book.
7 We can take the car if need be.
8 She has set her heart on a career in music.

3

Answers from a Brazilian person and a Czech person.

1 I could do with the latest electronic gadgets.

2 I run my own business and so I work unsocial hours six days a week. I know I couldn't work harder. If I did, I'd go crazy.
3 I couldn't do without my laptop and email.
4 I usually feel like going out in the evening, especially if I can sleep late the next day.
5 I'm dying to get my own flat.
6 I don't let myself set my heart on things I know I can't have.
7 I could make do without a car, but I'd rather not.
8 I do care about money. It enables me to do things I enjoy, such as eating out in nice restaurants, getting nice clothes, and travelling.
9 I believe you can't always pick and choose in life.

Unit 45

1

1 *Both are correct.*
2 go ahead
3 put off
4 fix up
5 called off
6 *Both are correct.*

2

1 ahead, up
2 according
3 put
4 looking
5 off
6 make, bring
7 fix
8 on, off

Unit 46

1

1 She can't bear/stand big cities.
2 Football's not my cup of tea.
3 His life revolves around his work.
4 I've gone off meat.
5 I've got a sweet tooth.
6 They're mad about it.

2

1 liking
2 gone
3 into, bear/stand
4 cup, thing
5 mad
6 grows
7 revolves
8 lives

3

Answers from a South African person.

Although I don't like chips as much as I used to, I still enjoy eating them sometimes.

Yes, this is true for me, and my figure has paid the price!

I like camping as long as it is in relative comfort, for instance, at a campsite with hot, running water!

Classical music has grown on me too. I used to think it was quite interesting; now I love it.

Oh, quite so. Some of them make conversation too difficult.

Well, that sounds a little extreme. My family is central, but I try to balance all my interests.

I understand them because my work also sometimes threatens to swallow me up! However, I think they're making a big mistake.

Unit 47

1

1 d 2 g 3 f 4 h 5 a 6 b 7 c 8 e

2

1 knocked
2 down
3 up
4 write-off, ran/crashed
5 fallen/falling, together
6 up
7 down
8 to, throw

3

1 Our neighbour ~~was~~ burnt down
2 this one is falling ~~down~~ to pieces
3 it just fell ~~to~~ apart in my hands.
4 the oil tank blew ~~it~~ up.
5 tore it ~~up~~ to pieces.
6 in ~~its~~ place of it we built a small studio
7 why don't you just throw them out ~~off~~?
8 The firemen smashed ~~out~~ the door down

4

1 The building burnt down.
2 The car was a write-off. OR The car had to be written off.
3 Can't you throw away those papers? OR … throw those papers away?
4 They had to knock down the building. OR … knock the building down.
5 The book fell to bits.
6 The motorcyclist crashed into a brick wall.
7 I sewed up the hole in my pocket.
8 I sold the chair and put a sofa in its place.

5

1 apart
2 throw
3 together/up
4 up
5 sewing
6 place
7 put

Unit 48

1

1 B 2 E 3 B 4 B 5 E 6 E

2

1 out
2 up, down
3 up, up
4 out, out
5 up
6 off, up, in

3

1 on
2 ground
3 out
4 shape
5 down
6 came
7 up
8 about

4

1 I'm starting my essay from scratch.
2 The problems occurred early on.
3 Judging by/from his story, the boys are innocent.
4 They've broken new ground.
5 The house is taking shape.
6 How did these changes come about?
7 They've knocked down the offices. OR They've knocked the offices down.
8 I'm sure they'll come up with a solution.

Unit 49

1

1 out of date
2 at the crack of dawn
3 on impulse
4 once in a blue moon
5 in next to no time
6 for the time being

2

1 spur
2 no / next to no
3 out
4 dawn
5 day
6 blue
7 time, time
8 day, day

3

Answers from a Czech person.

1 No, I never get up at the crack of dawn! I love to have a lie-in.
2 I'm not able to do so as I am a very slow person.
3 No, I always do my best to have a regular check-up.
4 I'm sorry to say that I've never ridden a horse.
5 That's true. I hate fashion and I love shopping in second-hand shops. I definitely prefer feeling comfortable to being dressed up according to the latest fashion.
6 Yes, I hope so.
7 That's right. Nevertheless I can imagine myself living in another country without any problems.
8 No, I'm not that type of person.
9 I always think about the future. I could never live from day to day.

5

1 on the dot
2 over and over again / time and time again
3 kept me waiting
4 fixed up
5 at the last minute
6 held up
7 the other day
8 turn up

6

1 time
2 keep
3 turn
4 minute
5 up
6 breath

7

Answers from a New Zealander.

1 I do more than arrive in good time! I prefer to get to work nice and early so my day can start in a relaxed way.
2 I never keep people waiting unless something totally out of the ordinary stops me arriving early.
3 I don't turn up late for social arrangements because it's considered impolite.
4 I seldom do things at the last minute. I normally do things well ahead of time.
5 I sometimes get held up if the Director of Studies wants to discuss something with me, but my class is able to continue without me for a few minutes.
6 I don't feel as if I'm wasting my breath when I give advice, because my students are very keen to learn.

Unit 50

1

in all | at the very least | quite a few | add up | in total | lose count | round about

2

1 We saw dozens **of** rabbits in the fields.
2 She has quite **a** few friends in Dubai.
3 We lost **count** of the number of guests.
4 The flight costs $900 at **the** very least.
5 We were surprised that the bill came **to** €50.
6 If you **take** three away (OR **take** away three) from seven, you get four. OR If you **take** four away from seven you get three.

3

1 all/total, many
2 out, lose
3 round, at
4 in, came
5 up, took
6 up, quite

4

1 twenties
2 million
3 third
4 one, two
5 a hundred / a hundred and ten
6 second
7 two, two
8 fifty-fifty

5

1 I'm not a hundred per cent certain where he is.
2 Ten to one he'll be late.
3 She had second thoughts about the flat.
4 He must be in his mid-forties.
5 They did the questions one by one.

6 He puts his work first.
7 Shall we go fifty-fifty on the petrol?

Unit 51

1

1 G 2 B 3 G 4 B 5 B 6 G

2

1 in **a** hurry
2 were **all** over the place
3 take **my** time
4 has **had** it
5 **in** no time
6 I haven't **a** clue

3

1 in (such) a hurry
2 (a bit) on the small side
3 in (next to) no time
4 killing me
5 do the trick
6 haven't (got) a clue / haven't (got) the faintest idea / 've no idea
7 all over the place
8 sorting out

4

1 c 2 d 3 a 4 f 5 b 6 e

5

1 feet (rushed off our feet)
2 chance (is in with a chance)
3 time (one step at a time)
4 stretch (at full stretch)
5 out (help us out)
6 depth (out of her depth)
7 off (switch off)
8 word (put in a good word)

Unit 52

1

1 for
2 *Both are correct.*
3 grade
4 *Both are correct.*
5 working
6 *Both are correct.*

2

1 life
2 account/consideration
3 Best
4 case
5 sorry
6 turned

3

1 were you
2 shoes/place/position
3 can/could
4 better

Answers from a British person.

1 Penny, if I were you, I'd try to find out more about the new job.
2 Penny, in your shoes, I'd take the job with more money. It could lead to other things.
3 You could always ask your present boss for a pay rise.
4 I think you'd be better off doing an interesting job, even if the money's not very good.

Unit 53

1

1 ever since
2 in the meantime
3 *Both are correct.*
4 *Both are correct.*
5 even if
6 *Both are correct.*

2

1 as soon as / the minute (that), as well
2 at last
3 ever since
4 as if / as though
5 On the one hand, on the other (hand), In addition

Unit 54

1

1 foremost
2 tired
3 later
4 figures
5 another / the other
6 take
7 off
8 word
9 quiet
10 furious

2

come and go
one way or another
lovely and warm
wait and see
bright and early
word for word
now and then
backwards and forwards
fast and furious

3

1 word for word
2 wait and see
3 bright and early
4 backwards and forwards
5 now and then
6 sick and tired
7 one way or another
8 up and down
9 give or take
10 peace and quiet

4

1 facts and figures
2 fast and furious
3 word for word
4 sick and tired
5 lovely and quiet
6 one way or another / the other

7 comes and goes
8 sooner or later
9 lovely and cold
10 on and off / off and on

Unit 55

1

1 in
2 by
3 under
4 on
5 out of
6 off

2

1 out of control
2 on duty
3 on purpose
4 out of luck
5 out of tune
6 in working order

3

1 season
2 tune
3 sight
4 order
5 under
6 theory, practice

4

1 in
2 for
3 at
4 in
5 for
6 in
7 at
8 in

5

1 of post
2 mind
3 mistake
4 phone
5 length
6 away
7 place
8 way

Unit 56

1

1 h 2 e 3 d 4 b 5 f 6 c 7 i 8 g 9 a

2

1 end the cat's life
2 leave
3 got better
4 didn't go
5 wait for something to happen
6 on holiday

3

1 pick it up
2 go away
3 get out
4 come on
5 put it down
6 get off

4

1 on, on, in
2 on, away
3 in
4 on, up

5

1 How is your English coming on?
2 Could you pick my trousers up (for me)? OR pick up my trousers (for me)
3 Are you going away this summer?
4 When does the train get in to Paris?
5 Hold on (tight)!
6 What time do you get off work?

Unit 57

1

1 make up for ~~losing~~ time **lost**
2 catch the nurse's ~~eyes~~ **eye**
3 lend me ~~an arm~~ **a hand**
4 going round ~~in a circle~~ **in circles**
5 I'd better ~~do~~ a move **make**
6 been on the ~~going~~ since 7 o'clock **go**
7 ~~sleeping~~ the night **staying**
8 keep ~~her face straight~~ **a straight face**
9 learn to ~~say~~ the time **tell**
10 Could I pick your ~~mind~~ **brain/brains**

2

1 P 2 P 3 A 4 E 5 A 6 P 7 E 8 A

3

1 To get some ideas or information.
2 You either like them very much, or you dislike them.
3 You start laughing.
4 They put the plates, knives, forks, etc. on the table ready for a meal.
5 You've been very busy.
6 You're giving your opinion in a very direct way.
7 Your skin becomes red or tanned.
8 You don't understand the main point of what someone has been saying.

4

1 stay
2 keep
3 give/lend
4 catch
5 laid
6 missed
7 make
8 speak
9 stretch
10 caught

5

Answers from an Italian person.

1 I usually do it because I'm the first back home after work.
2 Yes, but I use a lot of suncream to avoid sunburn.
3 I can't stand eating lamb because my mum made me eat it very often when I was a child.
4 Well, I try not to do that unless I am with my husband or my dearest friends; anyway, I always try to be tactful, and not too direct.
5 When I was a university student. It was fun.
6 I would like my students to do that but it rarely happens.

Unit 58

1

1 get on **with** your life
2 get the **upper** hand
3 get the hang **of** making chips

4 get away from **it** all.
5 get the most **out** of my computer.
6 get **rid** of rats

2

1 get ahead
2 get over
3 get through
4 get into
5 the upper hand
6 get rid of
7 get away from
8 on with

3

1 S 2 D 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 D 8 D

4

1 know
2 together
3 on/along
4 way
5 on/along
6 up

5

Answers from a Brazilian person.

1 We met in college and immediately hit it off.
2 Hardly ever. Only on special occasions, such as weddings and Christmas.
3 I'm doing well, I believe. I'm always trying to improve my skills, though.
4 Not as often as I'd like. I give in to others more frequently than I should.
5 No one in particular. I don't have much in common with anyone in my family.
6 Not that I can recall.

Unit 59

1

1 you can take it ~~and~~ leave it **or**
2 he knows how to take care ~~for~~ himself **of**
3 I told her to take ~~her~~ easy **it**
4 taking your ~~live~~ in your hands **life**
5 I was really taken ~~back~~ **aback**
6 we won't ~~make~~ it lying down **take**
7 I don't know why he took ~~again~~ her **against**
8 I asked my boss for a few days ~~of~~ **off**

2

1 Just (relax and) take it easy.
2 He took his life in his hands.
3 He takes off his boss. OR He takes his boss off.
4 I was really taken aback by the job cuts.
5 She's experienced and can take care of herself.
6 She took a day off (work) today because she was ill.

3

1 for
2 your
3 age
4 to
5 bright
6 eye
7 back
8 to
9 way
10 down

4

1 me/you in the eye
2 on the bright side
3 your best
4 down on him
5 up to her
6 young for his age
7 the other way
8 to him for help/advice

5

Answers from a British person.

1 I was a happy child, but I've been happiest as an adult with my own children.
2 Yes, I'm an optimistic person, and I'm usually able to look on the bright side.
3 I used to look up to people in positions of power, but I don't any more. They often don't impress me at all.
4 I know I should look out for other people who need help, but I sometimes fail to do so.
5 If the person seemed to be hungry or in need, I might look the other way.
6 I really believe in telling the truth and I can usually look people in the eye when I do.
7 People occasionally look to me for advice – usually this would be my daughters, but sometimes my colleagues.
8 Yes, I do try to look my best when I go out.
9 Unfortunately I don't look young for my age!

Unit 60

1

1 available
2 conscious
3 find it easy to do
4 receive it from someone who has died
5 doesn't succeed
6 becomes exciting

2

1 coming and **going** over the next few days
2 come a **long** way.
3 finally came **out**, nobody could believe it
4 he finally came **to**/**round** and started talking
5 the moon came **out** – it was so romantic
6 so bad that I **passed** out
7 come **into** any money
8 coming **along**/**on** well

3

1 g 2 f 3 h 4 a 5 c 6 b 7 d 8 e

4

1 through
2 round
3 according
4 up
5 out
6 along
7 far
8 off

Answer key to review units

Introduction to idioms and phrasal verbs

Unit 1

1

1 suddenly
2 very fast
3 always
4 stupid/silly
5 anxious/upset
6 see/notice

2

1 How **come**, **make** sense
2 steer **clear** of him, rings a **bell**
3 in **the** distance, running flat **out**
4 How **on** earth, running **like** mad

Unit 2

1

1 don't ask me
2 more or less
3 better late than never
4 a stone's throw
5 thank heavens
6 a piece of cake
7 famous last words
8 change your mind
9 get nowhere

2

1 main (in the main)
2 fonder (absence makes the heart grow fonder)
3 grief (Good grief!)
4 nerves (gets on your nerves)
5 error (trial and error)
6 life (a fact of life)

Unit 3

1

1 once in a blue moon
2 pulling my leg
3 on my doorstep
4 fresh blood
5 go public
6 with reference to

2

1 the back ~~part~~ of a lorry
2 it's still ~~too~~ early days
3 caught ~~up~~ my eye
4 on ~~her~~ purpose
5 and by ~~in~~ the way
6 it's a long ~~time~~ story

Unit 4

1

1 drink less coffee
2 taking care of them
3 put on a piece of clothing
4 behaves like him
5 they've had a row
6 represent

2

1 rub it out
2 came across
3 look up ('pick up' would also be possible)
4 show up ('turn up' would also be possible)
5 check in
6 made it up
7 going out with
8 look it up

Unit 5

1

1 She went on and **on** about her illness.
2 Brenda was messing **about/around** in the garden.
3 The village was cut **off** by deep snow.
4 The children carried **on** working until lunchtime.
5 The boys were hanging **around/about** outside the club.
6 There was a lot of money lying **around/about**.

2

1 lazed around / lazed about / messed around / messed about
2 get on
3 see my brother off
4 going on
5 lying around / lying about
6 keeps on
7 dragged on
8 stayed on

Unit 6

1

1 bring
2 up
3 *Both are correct.*
4 get
5 go
6 *Both are correct.*

2

1 Please tidy up the office / tidy the office up.
2 I'll have to take these trousers back (to the shop) / take back these trousers.
3 When do you think he'll get back from lunch?
4 I flicked through the magazine.

5 Maggie rang – she wants you to phone/ring/call her back.
6 Did you go through / look through the figures?

Unit 7

1

1 goes
2 turns
3 put
4 tied
5 doing
6 breaks
7 goes
8 do
9 breaks
10 go
11 goes
12 turns

2

1 go off
2 go down
3 do up
4 switch on
5 come up
6 put on
7 broke down
8 done up
9 go off

Thinking, learning, and knowledge

Unit 8

1

1 b 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 b

2

1 It's just the tip of the iceberg.
2 Make sure you go over your work carefully.
3 OK, let's call it a day.
4 Mark, swap places with Eve.
5 It's no good if you don't listen.
6 He's taking the course seriously.
7 First of all, turn to page 45.
8 You can leave out Exercise 3. OR You can leave Exercise 3 out.

Unit 9

1

1 understand
2 concentrate/focus
3 difficult/hard
4 know, remember
5 learn, effort
6 forget

2

1 getting
2 catch
3 keep
4 up
5 in
6 error
7 get
8 heart
9 racking
10 come

Unit 10

1

1 grips
2 work
3 crossed
4 world
5 through
6 steer
7 run
8 breathe

2

1 My mind just **went** blank in the exam.
2 I decided to miss **out** the first question.
3 I read the letter but it didn't **make** sense.
4 She did it to the **best** of her ability.
5 I must **get** down to some work now.
6 I **get** bogged down in too much detail. OR I **get** much too bogged down in detail.

Unit 11

1

1 f 2 c 3 g 4 h 5 a 6 e 7 d 8 b

2

1 it's **early** days
2 got **off** on the wrong foot
3 pulling **his** weight
4 appears to **sit** back
5 Her tutor **thinks**
6 she's in **her** element
7 does her **best**
8 she'll **go** far
9 to bring **out** the best
10 gets **on** better

Unit 12

1

1 making
2 twice
3 it over
4 for himself
5 over
6 straight

Unit 13

1

1 knows it like the **back** of her hand
2 no **good** at it
3 **slipped** my mind
4 **take** it in
5 good with my **hands**
6 out of **practice**
7 knows what he's **doing**

Communicating with people

Unit 14

1

1 e 2 g 3 b 4 a 5 h 6 d 7 f 8 c

Unit 15

1

1 edgeways
2 across
3 down
4 talks
5 told him off
6 face
7 behind

Unit 16

1

1 get back
2 earth
3 hold on
4 charge up
5 top up
6 hung
7 through
8 fortune
9 line

The word in the grey squares is 'telephone'.

Unit 17

1

1 here you ~~have~~ **are/go**.
2 Why ~~no~~? **not**
3 as ~~usually~~ **usual/always**
4 ~~who's~~ up? **what's**
5 hurry ~~on~~ **up**
6 Guess ~~that~~? **what**
7 Just tell when **say**
8 ~~Why~~ come? **How**
9 Time's ~~over~~ **up**
10 all the ~~better~~ **best**
11 kind ~~off~~ **of**
12 it's up ~~for~~ you **to**

Unit 18

1

1 T 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 T

2

1 again (You can say that again)
2 yourself (see for yourself)
3 goes (see how it goes)
4 least (to say the least)
5 no (I wouldn't say no)
6 not (I don't see why not)
7 see (let me see)
8 say (I'd rather not say)

Unit 19

1

1 hard ~~lucky~~ **luck**
2 It's ~~not~~ of your business **none**
3 Good ~~heaven!~~ **heavens**
4 ~~No~~ at all **Not**
5 It's all the same ~~for~~ me **to**
6 Goodness knows it
7 ~~no~~ bad **not**
8 ~~don't~~ mind **never**

2

1 Bless you.
2 Go ahead.
3 Thank goodness.
4 You're joking.
5 Hear! Hear!
6 I beg your pardon.
7 I'm not bothered.
8 Mind your own business.
9 If you like.
10 Yes and no.

Unit 20

1

1 No
2 Yes
3 No
4 No
5 Yes
6 Yes
7 No
8 Yes
9 Yes
10 No

2

1 must dash
2 wait up
3 to do
4 about time
5 up to
6 get together
7 my love
8 after all

Unit 21

1

1 far
2 make
3 point
4 agree
5 extent
6 honest
7 pros
8 doubt
9 highly
10 thing

The idiom in the grey squares is 'fair enough'.

Unit 22

1

1 act the fool
2 tell someone off
3 make fun of someone
4 hit the roof
5 not on speaking terms
6 take a joke
7 for a laugh
8 burst out laughing

People and relationships

Unit 23

1

A man is hanging up his jacket / hanging his jacket up, a boy is standing on tiptoe, a doctor is shaking hands with someone, a couple are holding hands, the receptionist is throwing something away, a man is blowing his nose, a woman is sitting with her legs crossed and her arms folded.

1 yes 2 yes 3 no 4 no 5 yes 6 no

Unit 24

1

1 b 2 f 3 a 4 e 5 c 6 h 7 d 8 g

2

1 grew
2 brought
3 looked
4 trouble
5 stayed
6 nothing
7 life
8 out

Unit 25

1

1 live off
2 give in
3 goes on
4 leave (them) alone
5 feel (at) ease
6 gets away
7 stand (on your own two) feet
8 take offence
9 be yourself
10 get through

Unit 26

1

1 let
2 lend
3 lift
4 myself
5 turn
6 common
7 invite
8 moving

2

1 put ~~out~~ with him **up**
2 run the risk ~~in~~ **of**
3 ~~take~~ it to an end **bring**
4 ~~round~~ and about **out**
5 getting ~~long~~ with them **along**
6 help her ~~off~~ **out**
7 ~~held~~ him company **kept**
8 break ~~an~~ ice **the**

Unit 27

1

1 crossed
2 state
3 skin
4 edge
5 lives
6 thrilled
7 about
8 tears

2

have/get butterflies in your stomach
over the moon
I didn't know whether to laugh or cry
get cold feet about sth
it breaks your heart (to see or do sth)
shake like a leaf

Unit 28

1

1 first
2 type
3 world
4 crazy
5 between
6 stick
7 good
8 wrong
9 shoes
10 chat
11 build
12 split

The word in the grey squares is 'relationship'.

Unit 29

1

1 angry/frustrated/upset
2 happier
3 continue
4 angry/annoyed
5 angry
6 opinion

2

1 change the subject
2 the last minute
3 give and take
4 take it into account
5 round the bend
6 over and over again
7 put it off
8 show off
9 by myself

Unit 30

1

1 believe
2 lose
3 far
4 ground
5 heart
6 comes
7 fun
8 feet

2

1 over
2 way
3 else
4 keeping
5 any
6 say
7 in
8 know

Everyday topics

Unit 31

1

1 over
2 chances are
3 out
4 up
5 of luck
6 a row
7 up
8 on the bright side

Unit 32

1

wide awake, have a lie-in, sleep like a log, toss and turn, the night before last, not sleep a wink, worried sick, fall asleep

Unit 33

1

1 up
2 ends
3 cost
4 live
5 pay
6 cut
7 up
8 cover
9 careful

Unit 34

1

1 turn/heat
2 chop
3 down
4 cool
5 rid
6 into
7 make
8 out
9 on
10 cut

Unit 35

1

He won't get away with the robbery.
They broke into a shop.
They beat him up quite badly.
They caught him red-handed.
They're on the lookout for the robbers.
The thief ran off with my wallet.
She could get into trouble with the police.
The prisoner is still on the run.

2

1 hold-up
2 vain
3 bars
4 break-in
5 the rise / the increase
6 away from home
7 let him off
8 into trouble

Unit 36

1

checking ~~it~~ up on me
I was up to ~~for~~ the job
To make ~~the~~ matters worse
stand ~~up~~ by me either
I handed ~~them~~ in my notice
I was taken ~~down~~ on as a medical secretary
I wasn't really cut ~~off~~ out for it
they gave ~~to~~ me the sack

2

1 down
2 five
3 time
4 thank
5 nothing
6 it

Unit 37

1

1 B 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 G 7 G 8 B

2

1 out
2 into
3 on
4 up
5 for
6 up

Unit 38

1

1 for
2 send
3 sold
4 offer
5 wrap
6 get
7 rather
8 around

Out and about

Unit 39

1

1 feel **like** going out
2 talked **me** into it
3 just **round** the corner
4 thinking of **trying** it out
5 packed **in** like sardines
6 eat **out** on a Saturday night
7 you're asking **for** trouble
8 we bumped **into** Susie
9 ended **up** back at her flat
10 a pretty late **night** after all

2

1 Shall we eat out?
2 The owner threw us out.
3 He jumped the queue.
4 That music isn't my cup of tea.
5 Shall we go halves?
6 That shop has changed hands.
7 He took exception to Martin's comments.
8 I would keep away from her.

Unit 40

1

1 forward
2 come
3 good
4 shape
5 move
6 after
7 out, sudden
8 catch

2

1 to slow **down**
2 fell **behind** the others
3 holding everyone **up** so they went on
4 turned **round/around** and walked
5 I have to work **at** it
6 to go in **for** that competition
7 She took **up** swimming
8 keep **up** with him

Unit 41

1

1 get
2 rough
3 advance
4 season
5 happens
6 air
7 good
8 beaten
9 away
10 around

Unit 42

1

1 toss
2 sent off
3 cheering them on
4 strength
5 no part
6 popular/fashionable

2

1 a difference
2 part
3 do with sport
4 close to winning
5 enough of training
6 it up
7 up for an English course
8 off to a good start

Unit 43

1

1 down
2 stand
3 out
4 break
5 fill
6 case
7 down
8 nowhere
9 off/out
10 pull

2

1 drive off
2 jump the lights
3 in the middle of nowhere
4 call someone out
5 speed up
6 go after someone
7 grind to a halt
8 pull over
9 a short cut

Concepts

Unit 44

1

1 do
2 care
3 set
4 feel
5 pick
6 dying
7 need
8 do

Answers from a British person.

1 I couldn't do without a car.
2 I couldn't care less about looking younger than I am.
3 I've set my heart on a holiday walking with friends.
4 At the moment I feel like reading my book – it's very gripping!
5 You can't pick and choose how wealthy you become.
6 I'm dying to go to the coast soon, to walk along a wild and windswept beach.
7 If need be I could sell the jewellery my mother-in-law left to me – but I'd much rather not.
8 I could make do with a smaller car.

Unit 45

1

1 mess ('muck' is also possible)
2 call
3 look
4 ahead
5 put
6 plan
7 forward
8 on
9 messes

The phrase in the grey squares is 'make plans'.

Unit 46

1

1 No, I'm not mad about it either.
2 No, it's not my cup of tea either.
3 Yes, it grows on you.
4 No, I've gone off it too / as well.
5 Yes, it's too spicy for my liking too / as well.
6 I agree. I can't bear them either.

Unit 47

1

DAMAGE or DESTRUCTION
tear sth to pieces
burn sth down
write sth off
fall apart
smash sth up
fall to bits
break sth down
crash into sth
REPAIR or CONSTRUCTION
sew sth up
put sth together
smarten sth up
put sth up

2

1 blew down
2 tore it to bits
3 write off
4 blew up
5 fell to pieces
6 throw them away

Unit 48

1

1 from
2 came
3 break
4 set
5 up
6 out

2

1 set up
2 fire / war
3 *All are possible.*
4 take up / give up
5 knocked down / closed down

Unit 49

1

1 on the dot
2 over and over again
3 out of date
4 on the spur of the moment
5 at the crack of dawn
6 for the time being
7 in no time
8 in good time

2

1 turned up
2 held up
3 kept us waiting
4 last minute
5 once in a blue moon
6 time to time
7 fix something up
8 wasting your breath

Unit 50

1

1 hundred per
2 go fifty-fifty
3 second thoughts
4 dozens of
5 third time
6 early thirties
7 million years

2

1 round about
2 in all/total
3 take away
4 quite a few/lot
5 comes to
6 Ten to one
7 put two and two together
8 at the (very) most

Unit 51

1

1 trick
2 rushed
3 chance
4 over
5 stretch
6 faintest
7 top
8 killing
9 depth
10 step
11 had

The phrase in the grey squares is 'I have no idea'.

Unit 52

1

1 were (if I were you)
2 sorry ('s feeling sorry for himself)
3 off (would be better off)
4 shoes/place/position (in his shoes/place/position)
5 could/can (could always)
6 account/consideration (take into account/consideration)
7 case (In that case)
8 luck (The best of luck)

Language

Unit 53

1

TIME
at last
ever since
as soon as
in the meantime
CONTRAST
on the other hand
even if
in spite of
EXTRA INFORMATION
as well
in addition

2

Possible answers.

1 a cup of coffee / a bowl of soup
2 it can be lonely / you have to pay all the bills
3 they'll get married
4 he works really hard
5 get home / get the information / know the answer
6 all her problems / her poor health
7 he turned up / the train arrived
8 his wife left him / he lost his job

Unit 54

1

1 sooner or later
2 sick and tired
3 up and down
4 backwards and forwards
5 now and then
6 word for word
7 give or take
8 bright and early
9 peace and quiet

Unit 55

1

IN
theory writing season
ON
purpose duty the phone
AT
length once
BY
mistake accident return of post
FOR
certain sure

2

1 out of control
2 on purpose
3 out of tune
4 off duty
5 out of order
6 In the end
7 at length
8 on my mind

Unit 56

1

1 Have you filled in the application form? OR Have you filled the application form in?
2 I picked up my dry cleaning at 4.00. OR I picked my dry cleaning up at 4.00.
3 She didn't get in to university. OR She applied to university but she didn't get in.
4 Come on, we're going to be late.
5 Her painting is coming on well.
6 Do you know when the train gets in?
7 The pain in my leg has gone away.
8 I put it down in my address book.
9 Could you hold/hang on for a couple of minutes?
10 Get off that chair!

Unit 57

1

1 lay, table
2 keep, face
3 caught, sun
4 make, move
5 been, go
6 give, hand
7 speak, mind
8 tell, time

2

1 progress
2 find out information
3 quickly, couldn't do it before
4 make somebody look at you
5 understand
6 go for a short walk

Unit 58

1

1 They **get on well** / **get along well**.
2 I'm sure he's good enough to **get through** the exam.
3 It took her some time to **get over** the shock.
4 I don't know how she **got into** journalism.
5 We often **get together** for a coffee in the morning.
6 She can't **get by** on £100 a week.

7 I think he **got a lot out of** the course. OR I think he **got the most out of** the course.
8 I think she's **getting on/along well**.

2

1 nearly/almost (is getting on for)
2 advantage (get the upper hand)
3 successful / doing well (get ahead)
4 you want (get your own way)
5 learn how to do it (get the hang of something)
4 bad or wrong (get mixed up in something)

Unit 59

1

1 P 2 N 3 N 4 P 5 N 6 P 7 P 8 N

2

1 look back on
2 take it easy
3 looks young for her age
4 looked up to
5 taken aback
6 looks the other way

Unit 60

1

1 go
2 going
3 gone
4 goes
5 come
6 comes

2

1 comes out
2 go round
3 came to
4 came into
5 come a long way
6 came to life
7 go according
8 came to nothing
9 go far

The phrasal verb in the grey squares is 'come along'.

List of spotlight boxes

Unit	Title of spotlight box	Page
4	Intransitive and transitive verbs	15
4	Phrasal verbs in dictionaries	15
5A	*go on*	16
6B	*get back*	19
8A	*hand sth in/out/round*	26
9B	Remembering and forgetting	29
10A	Idioms with *best*	30
11B	*think the world of sb/sth, not think much of sb/sth*, etc.	33
13	Idioms with *good*	35
14	*in touch*	39
16	*hang on, hang up, hang up on sb*	41
17	*be up to sb*	42
18B	Greetings	45
19A	*I beg your pardon*	46
19B	More idioms with *goodness*	47
20A	Sending greetings to other people	48
21A	*point*	50
22	Expressions with *joke*	52
23	Phrasal verbs with *knock*	58
24B	*stay out/in, stay up*	61
25A	*on the whole*	62
26B	*go on*	65
27A	Idioms with *mind*	66
29B	Expressing anger	71
30A	Idioms with *feet*	72
31	*start off, start out*	78
33A	Phrasal verbs with *pay*	80
34A	Giving advice	82
34B	*get rid of sth/sb*	83
35	Phrasal verbs and idioms with *run*	84
36A	*make it*	86
37A	*take sth on, take sb on*	88
40B	*shape*	97
41A	*get away*	98
45	*put sth off, put sth back*	108
47	*to pieces/bits*	110
48A	Phrasal verbs with *set*	112
49A	Idioms with *time*	114
50A	*count*	116
50B	*in his twenties*	117
53	*as well, in addition*	125
54	*lovely and …*	126
55A	*in/out of tune*, etc.	128
58B	*get on, get along*	135
60A	*come out*	138

Word list / Index

Here is an index of all the idioms and phrasal verbs, in alphabetical order according to the first word. The numbers are unit numbers. (If you cannot remember the first word, see the list of key words on page 187.)

(a bit) on the big/small side 51
a (good) laugh 1
a bag/bundle of nerves 3
a fact of life 2
a going concern 37
a laugh 1
a matter of time 49
a night/day out 39
a pain in the neck 2
a piece of cake 2
a short cut 43
a stone's throw 2
a vicious circle 37
a way of life / sb's way of life 24
a/one hundred per cent 50
absence makes the heart grow fonder 2
act/play the fool 22
add sth up 50
after all 20
again and again 29
all by yourself 26
all hours 36
all of a sudden 40
all over the place (= everywhere) 41
all over the place (= in an untidy state) 29, 51
all the best 17
an early / a late night 39
answer (sb) back 15
any moment 3
anyone's guess 30
as always 17
as far as I'm concerned 21
as if 53
as it happens/happened 41
as many as 50
as regards 3
as soon as 53
as though 53
as usual 17
as well 53
ask sb out 28
at a time 43
(at) any moment 3
at full stretch 51
at home 8
at last 53
at length 55
at once 55
at sb's expense 29
at the (very) least 50
at the (very) most 50
at the crack of dawn 49
at the earliest 20
at the last minute/moment 3
at the latest 20
at the least 50
at the most 50
back to front 23
backwards and forwards 54
bad luck! 19
badly off 33
base sth on sth 30
be (living) in a dream world 37
be (really) into sth 46
be a good thing (that) 1, 3
be a matter of (doing) sth 40
be a question of (doing) sth 40
be about to do sth 27
be asking for trouble 39
be at fault 25
be better off (doing sth) 11, 52
be bored to tears 27
be common knowledge 14
be cut out for sth / to do sth 36
be dying to do sth / for sth 44
be for/in a good cause 40
be fresh out of sth 3
be getting on for ... 58
be in debt 33
be in the mood (for sth) 27
be in touch (with sb) 14
be in two minds about sth 1
be in with a chance (of doing sth) 51
be in / get into a state 1, 27
be meant to do sth 2
be on the go 57
be on the lookout for sth/sb 35
be out of touch (with sth) 11, 25
be out of your depth 51
be out of your mind 37
be over the moon 27
be rolling in money 1
be rushed/run off your feet 51
be set in your ways 25
be snowed under 20
be starving 34
be supposed to do sth 2

be taken aback 59
be thrilled to bits 27
be tied up 7
be to blame (for sth) 25
be up to sth 36
be up to you/him/her, etc. 17
be worlds apart 25
be your type 28
be yourself 25
be/go on a diet 34
be/have sth to do with sth/sb 20, 42
be/keep sb in the dark 14
beat sb up 35
behind bars 35
behind sb's back 15
behind the times 25
believe in sth 30
beside the point 21
best of luck 10, 19, 52
better late then never 2
bit by bit 40
bite sb's head off 29
bless you! 19
blow (sth) up 47
blow down 47
blow your nose 23
bored stiff 27
break down (= start crying) 7
break down (of a vehicle = stop working) 7, 43
break in/into sth 35
break new ground 48
break out (of a fire, fight, etc. = start) 48
break sth down 47
break the ice 26
break the news 14
break up (with sb) 28
break your heart 27
break your journey 43
break-in 35
breathe in/out 10
bridge the gap 37
bright and early 2, 54
brighten up 31
bring out the best/worst in sb 11
bring sb up (to do sth) 24
bring sth back 6
bring sth forward 45
bring sth to an end 26
brush sth up / brush up on sth 9
build on sth 28
build sth up 8
bump into sb 39
burn (sth) down 47
burn sth up 34
burst into tears 24
burst out laughing 22
by accident 55
by and large 21, 25
by comparison 11
by mistake 55
by yourself 29
by return (of post) 55
by the way 20
call by 20
call in 20
call it a day 8
call sb out 43
call sth off 45
calm down / calm sb down 27
can always 52
can't bear (doing) sth 46
can't help (doing) sth 27
can't stand (doing) sth 2, 46
can't wait / can hardly wait 28
careful with money 33
carry on (doing sth) 5
catch on 42
catch sb red-handed 35
catch sb up / catch up with sb 40
catch sb's eye 3, 57
catch the sun 57
catch your death of cold 3
change hands 37, 39
change the subject 29
change your mind 2, 29
charge sth up 16
chat sb up 28
check in 4
check up on sb 36
cheer sb on 42
cheer sb up 29
cheer up! 29
chop sth up 34
chuck sb out 39
clear off 5
clear sth up 6
close by 39
close down 48
cloud over 31
come a long way 60
come about 48
come across sth/sb 4
come along 60
come and go (= be present then go away) 54
come and go (= arrive then leave) 60
come back to sb 9
come between sb (and sb) 28
come close to sth / to doing sth 42

come in (= arrive) 4
come in (first, second, etc.) 48
come into sth 60
come naturally (to sb/sth) 40, 60
come off 34
come on! (= hurry up!) 56
come on (= improve / make progress) 56, 60
come on (of an illness = begin) 56
come on! (= showing disbelief) 30
come out (= appear, e.g. the sun) 60
come out (= become available to buy or see) 60
come out (= become known) 60
come round 60
come to 60
come to an end 26
come to life 60
come to nothing 60
come to sth 50
come true 30
come up (= happen or appear) 10, 37
come up with sth 11, 48
confide in sb 30
cool down 34
cost a fortune 16
cost the earth 16
could always 52
could do with sth 44
couldn't care less 44
count on sb/sth 30
count sth out 50
count sth up 50
cover the cost (of sth) 33
crash into sth/sb 47
crazy about sth 28
crop up 20
cross sth out 8
cross your legs 23
cross your mind 27
cut back on sth 4, 33
cut corners 37
cut down (on sth) 34
cut sb off 16
cut sth off (sth) 5

deal with sth/sb 36
die out 31
do sb good 40, 41
(do sth) for a laugh 22
do sth to the best of your ability 10
do sth up (= fasten) 7, 23
do sth up (= renovate) 7
do the trick 51
do without sth/sb 44
do your best 10, 11
do your bit 41
don't ask me 2
don't give a damn 44
dos and don'ts 9
down in the dumps 27
dozens of sth 50
drag on 5
drift apart 28
drink sth up 6
drive off 43
drive on 5
drive sb round the bend 29
drive sb up the wall 29
drop by 20
drop off (to sleep) 32
drop out (of sth) 11
drop sb a line 14
drop sb/sth off 20

early on 48
eat in 39
eat out 39
eat sth up 6
end up (somewhere / doing sth) 39, 48
even if 53
even so 21
ever since 53

facts and figures 54
fair enough 21
fair share 29
fall apart 47
fall asleep 32
fall behind (sb/sth) 40
fall for sb 28
fall in love with sb 28
fall out with sb 4
fall over 23
fall through 37
fall to bits 47
fall to pieces 47
fall/come off the back of a lorry 3
famous last words 2
fast and furious 54
fast asleep 32
feel like sth / doing sth 39, 44
feel sorry for yourself 52
feel up to (doing) sth 20
feel/be at ease (with sb) 25
feel/be sorry for sb 22
fingers crossed 10
fill in time 56
fill sth in (= fill sth completely) 56
fill sth in (= write on a form) 56
fill sth up (with sth) 43
fill yourself up (with sth) 34
find your feet 2, 30

finish (up) with sth 48
finish sth off 8
first and foremost 54
first of all 8
fix sth up 45, 49
flat out 1
flick through sth 6
fold your arms 23
follow in sb's footsteps 24
for a laugh 22
for certain 55
for fun 30
for good 28
for goodness sake! 19
for nothing 38
for one thing 21
for sale 37
for sure 55
for the most part 21
for the time being 49
from scratch 48
from time to time 49
get (hold of) the wrong end of the stick 22
get a joke 22
get a move on 40
get about 41
get ahead 58
get along (= make progress) 58
get along (with sb) (= have a friendly relationship) 26, 58
get around 41
get away (from sb/sth) (= succeed in leaving sb or a place) 20, 41
get away (= go on holiday) 41
get away from it all 58
get away with sth 24, 35
get back 6
get back to sb 16
get back to sth 6
get behind (with sth) 9, 36
get bogged down (in sth) 10
get by 58
get cold feet 27
get down to sth 10
get from A to B 43
get hold of sb 14
get in (= be accepted to study at a school, etc.) 56
get in (= arrive) 56
get in (= enter a vehicle) 56
get in the way of sth 30
get in touch (with sb) 14
get into shape 40
get into sth 58
get into the habit of doing sth 10
get into trouble (for sth) 24
get lost! 2
get mixed up in sth 58
get mixed up with sb 58
get nowhere 2
get off (= leave a bus, train, etc.) 56
get off (= leave on a journey) 56
get off (= leave work with permission) 56
get off to a good/better/bad start 42
get on (= make progress) 11, 58
get on (with sb) (= have a friendly relationship) 26, 58
get on for 58
get on sb's nerves 2, 29
get on top of sb 51
get on top of sth 10
get on with sth 5
get on with your life 58
get out (= leave a place) 56
get out (of information = become known) 56
get out and about 26
get out of sth (= stop doing sth) 58
get out of sth (= avoid a responsibility) 20
get over sth 58
get rid of sth 34, 58
get sth across (to sb) 15
get sth back 6, 38
get sth off the ground 48
get sth out (of sth) (= remove sth) 34
get sth out of sth (= benefit from sth) 41, 58
get stuck (on sth) 10
get the better of sb/sth 42
get the hang of sth 13, 58
get the most out of sth 58
get the upper hand 58
get there 9
get through (to sb) (= make contact by phone) 2, 16
get through to sb (= make sb understand) 25
get through sth (= complete a task) 36
get through sth (= pass a test) 58
get to grips with sth 10
get to know sb 58
get together (with sb) 20, 58
get up to (sth) 25
get your money's worth 33
get your own back (on sb) 24
get your own way 58
get/have butterflies in your stomach 27
get/start off on the wrong foot 11
give a hundred (and ten) per cent 50
give and take 29
give birth (to sb) 24
give in (to sb) 25
give in (to sth) 34
give my love to sb 20

give my regards to sb 20
give or take 54
give sb a hard time 36
give sb a lift 26
give sb a ring/call 14
give sb my love 20
give sb the sack 36
give sth a try 13
give sth back 6
give sth out 8
give sth up / give up doing sth 48
give up (= stop trying to do sth) 9
go according to plan 45, 60
go after sb 43
go ahead 19
go ahead (with sth) 45
go along with sth 60
go away (= leave home for a holiday) 41, 56
go away! (used to tell sb/sth to leave) 56
go away (of a problem = stop existing) 56
go back (to …) 8
go blank 10
go down (= become lower) 7
go down (of the sun = disappear) 7
go down to … 60
go down with sth 60
go far 11
go fifty-fifty 50
go from bad to worse 11, 37
go halves 39
go in for sth 4, 40
go in one ear and out the other 9
go off (= explode) 7
go off (= ring) 7
go off (= leave) 5
go off (of lights, etc. = stop working) 7
go off sb/sth 46, 60
go on (= continue without changing) 5
go on (= last) 26
go on (= happen) 26
go on (about sth/sb) 5, 25
go on to sth 5
go on! (used for encouragement) 26
go out of business 37
go out with sb 4, 60
go over sth 8, 10
go public 3
go red (in the face) 27
go round (to…) 60
go round in circles 57
go through sth (= check sth carefully) 6, 8, 10
go through sth (= experience sth difficult) 60
go without sth 34
go wrong 22, 28
good at sth 13
good grief! 2, 19
good heavens! 19
good luck 52, 19
good with sb 13
good with your hands 13
goodness knows! 19
goodness me! 19
grind to a halt/standstill 43
grow into sth 24
grow on sb 46
grow up 24
guess what? 17
hand in your notice 36, 37
hand in hand 23
hand sth in 8
hand sth out 8
hand sth round 8
hang around/about 5
hang on (= continue doing sth difficult) 56
hang on (= wait) 16, 56
hang on (= keep holding sth) 56
hang sth up 23
hang up 16
hang up on sb 16
hard at it 36
hard luck! 19
hard up 33
have (got) sth on 20, 45
have a (good) head for sth 13
have a good/bad night 32
have a lie-in 32
have a long way to go 37
have a sweet tooth 46
have a thing about sth/sb 57
have an early / a late night 32
have had enough of sth/sb 40, 42
have had it 51
have no idea 51
have sb to thank (for sth) 36
have second thoughts 50
have sth in common 3, 26
have the last laugh 22
have the time of your life 27
have/keep your feet on the ground 30
hear from sb 14
hear! hear! 2, 19
heat sth up 34
help sb out 26, 51
here and there 31
here goes 17
here to stay 21
here you are 17
here's to sb/sth 17

hit it off (with sb) 28
hit the roof 22
hold hands 23
hold on (= wait) 16, 56
hold on (tight) (= keep holding sth) 56
hold on (= continue doing sth difficult) 56
hold sb up 49, 40
hold the line 16
hold up sth (= rob) 35
hold-up 35
how come? 1, 17
hurry up 17
I beg your pardon 19
I couldn't agree more 21
I couldn't tell you 18
I dare say 30
I don't see why not 18
I have to / must say (that) 18
I know 17
(I) must dash 20
I told you (so) 18
I wouldn't say no 18
I'd rather not say 18
I'll say 3
I'll see what I can do 18
I'm not bothered 19
(I'm) sorry? 19
I'm very/terribly sorry 19
if I were in your place/position/shoes 52
if I were you 34, 52
if need be 44
if the worst comes to the worst 30
if all else fails 1
if you ask me 3, 21
if you like 19
in (next to) no time 49, 51
in (such) a hurry to do sth 51
in a row 31
in addition 53
in advance (of sth) 41
in all 50
in case 43
in charge (of sb/sth) 2
in confidence 55
in full swing 26
in general 25
in good time 49
in luck 31, 55
in his twenties, etc. 50
in no time 49, 51
in place of sth/sb 47
in practice 55
in return (for sth) 42
in rough 8
in safe hands 27
in season 55
in shape 40
in sight 55
in some ways 21
in spite of 53
in sth/sb's place 47
in that case 2, 52
in the black 33
in the distance 1
in the end 1, 55
in the long run 21
in the long term 21
in the main 2
in the meantime 53
in the open air 41
in the red 33
in the/sb's way 55
in theory 55
in total 50
in tune 55
in vain 3, 35
in working order 55
in writing 55
in your blood 24
in your element 11
in your shoes 52
inside out 23
invite sb round 26
it/that depends 3
it's a long story 3
it's about time 20
it's all the same to me 19
it's early days 3, 11
it's no good (doing sth) 8
it's no use (doing sth) 8
it's none of your business! 19
it's not the end of the world 10
judging by/from sth 48
jump out of your skin 27
jump the lights 43
jump the queue 39
(just) for fun 30
(just) in case 43
(just) round the corner 20, 39
keep a straight face 57
keep away from sb/sth 39
keep in touch (with sb) 14
keep it up 9
keep on doing sth 5, 29
keep quiet (about sth) 14
keep sb company 26
keep sb waiting 49
keep sth to yourself 30

keep sth up 48
keep to sth 10
keep up (with sb) 9, 40
keep/have one eye on sth 10
(keep your) fingers crossed 10
keep your head above water 33
keep your mind on sth 9
keep/control your temper 27
keep/stay out of sb's way 3
kick off v 42
kick-off n 42
kind of 17
knock sb out 23
knock sb over/down 23, 43
knock sth down 23, 47, 48
know sth inside out 24
know sth like the back of your hand 13
know what you are doing 13
know what you are talking about 24
know your stuff 11

laugh at sb 22
laugh sth off 2
lay the table 57
laze around/about 5
learn sth (off) by heart 9
leave sb alone 25
leave sb out 8
leave sth out 8, 10
lend/give (sb) a hand (with sth) 26, 57
let sb know 26
let sb off 35
let sb/yourself in for sth 24
let's see / let me see 18
lie around/about 5
lie in 32
life's too short 30
like mad 1
little by little 40
live for sth 46
live from day to day 49
live off sb/sth 25, 33
live on sth 2
live through sth 6
liven sth up 42
load (sth) up 43
lock sb in/out 26
look after sb/sth 4
look ahead (to sth) 45
look back on sth 59
look down on sb 59
look forward to (doing) sth 40
look into sth 4
look on the bright side 31, 59
look out for sb (= take care of sb) 59
look out for sth/sb (= keep trying to find sb/sth) 43
look sb in the eye 59
look sth up 4, 8
look the other way 59
look through sth 6
look to sb 59
look up 4
look up to sb 24, 59
look young for your age 59
look your best 59
lose count (of sth) 50
lose face 1
lose touch (with sb) 14
lose your temper (with sb) 27
lose/win the toss 42
lots of love 3
love at first sight 28
lovely and warm/quiet/cold 54

mad about sb (= in love with sb) 28
mad about sth/sb (= liking sb/sth very much) 46
make a change 41
make a fool of yourself 22
make a go of sth 37
make a joke of sth 22
make a move 57
make a/some/any/no difference 42
make do (with sth) 44
make ends meet 33, 37
make fun of sb 2, 22
make it (= be present) 36, 45
make it (= be successful) 36
make it (= survive) 36
make of sb/sth 21
make sense (= be practical) 1
make sense (= have a clear meaning) 10
make sense of sth (= manage to understand sth) 9
make sth up 4
make sure 34
make the grade 52
make the most of sth 9, 31
make up for lost time 57
make up your mind 12
make use of sth 34
make you sick 27
make yourself understood 9
mess around/about (with sth) 5
mess around/about 29
mess sth up 45
mind out! 19
mind your own business! 19
miss sth out 10
miss the point 57
more and more 25
(more than) your fair share of sth 29

more or less 2
move in 26
move on to sth 5
move out 26
muck sth up 45
must dash 20
my back/feet etc. is/are killing me 51
never in a million years 50
never mind 19
new/fresh blood 3
next door (to sb/sth) 26
next to nothing 36
nine to five 36
no chance 3
(no) good at sth 13
no time to lose 30
no way! 2
nod your head 23
not (too) bad 19
not a penny 33
not any longer / no longer 30
not at all 19
not bad 19
not be on speaking terms 22
not be up to much 11
not breathe/say a word (about/of sth) 14
not come easy (to sb) 40
not exactly 19
not get a word in edgeways 15
not go far 60
not have a clue 51
not have the faintest idea 51
not just yet 3
not know whether to laugh or cry 27
not my thing 46
not sb's cup of tea 46
not sleep a wink 32
not take sth lying down 59
not think much of sb/sth 11, 21
(not) think straight 12
not your cup of tea 39
nothing like sb/sth 24
now and then 54
off duty 55
off the beaten track 41
on (special) offer 38
on a shoestring 33
on and off / off and on 54
on board 27
on duty 55
on edge 27
on good/bad terms with sb 26
on horseback 41
on impulse 49
on offer 38
on purpose 3, 55
on sale 38
on the big/small side 51
on the dot 49
on the increase 35
on the one hand … on the other (hand) 53
on the phone (= by phone) 55
on the phone (= using the phone) 55
on the rise 35
on the run 35
on the spur of the moment 12, 49
on the tip of your tongue 9
on the whole 21, 25
on the/your doorstep 3
on tiptoe 23
on top 42
on your mind 27, 55
on your own 26, 29
once in a blue moon 3, 49
once or twice 41
one after another / the other 34
one at a time 39
one by one 50
one day 49
one or two 50
one step at a time 51
one way or another 54
(only) a matter of time 49
opt out (of sth) 37
or else 30
out loud 9
out of breath 3, 40
out of control 55
out of date 49
out of luck 31, 55
out of order 55
out of place 55
out of practice 13
out of season (= when few people go on holiday) 41
out of season (= not growing or ready to eat) 55
out of shape 40
out of sight 55
out of the blue 1
out of tune 55
over and over again 29, 49
packed in like sardines 39
pass out 60
pay sb back 6, 33
pay sth in 33
pay sth off 33
peace and quiet 54
phone sb back 6
pick and choose 44

pick sb's brain 57
pick sth up (= collect sth) 56
pick sth up (= learn sth without effort) 9, 56
pick sth up (= take sth from a lower level) 56
pick up (= improve) 31
pile up 51
pluck up (the) courage (to do sth) 28
point of view 24
pop in/over/round 39
pop out 20
pros and cons 21
pull in 43, 45
pull out 43
pull over 43
pull sb's leg 3, 22
pull your weight 11
push in 39
put in a (good) word (for sb) 51
put off doing sth 29
put sb down 29
put sb through 16
put sb up 39
put sb/sth first 50
put sth away 8
put sth back (= postpone sth) 45
put sth back (= return sth to its place) 6
put sth off 29, 45
put sth on (= become fatter) 7
put sth on (= dress yourself) 7
put sth on (= make sth start working) 7
put sth out (= leave sth outside) 20
put sth out (= stop sth burning) 48
put sth together 47
put sth up 47
put two and two together 50
put up with sb/sth 26, 28
put your foot in it 15
put yourself in sb's shoes/place 28

quite a few / a lot (of sth) 50

rack your brain(s) 9
rather than 38
read sth through 10
remember me to sb 20
revolve around sb/sth 46
(right) at the last minute 49
ring a bell 1
ring sb back 6, 20
rip sb off 33
rip-off 33
rolling in money/it 33
rough it 41
round about 50
round the corner 20, 39
rub sth out 4, 8
run after sb/sth 40
run away (from somewhere) 35
run in the family 24
run into sb (= meet sb by chance) 39
run into sth/sb (= hit sb in a car, bus, etc.) 47
run off with sth 35
run out of sth 10, 33
run sth up 33
run the risk of doing sth 26

same here 19
save for a rainy day 33
save up (for sth) 33
say when 17
see for yourself 18
see how it goes 18
see how things go 18
see sb off 5
see you (later/around/soon) 18
sell out (of sth) 38
sell up 37
send off/away for sth 38
send sb off 42
send sth back 6
send/give my love to sb 3
set off 41, 43
set out 41, 43
set out to do sth 48
set sth up 48
set your heart on sth 44
settle down 4
settle for sth 42
sew sth up 47
shake hands 23
shake like a leaf 27
shake your head 23
shop around (for sth) 38
show off 29
show sb the ropes 24
show up 4
show-off 29
sick and tired 54
sign up (for/to/with sth) 42
sink in 9
sit about/around 30
sit back 11
sit up (= not go to bed) 56
sit up (= sit in an upright position) 56
sleep like a log 32
sleep through sth 6
slip your mind/memory 13
slow down 43
slow sb down 40
smarten sth/sb up 47
smash sth down 47

smash sth up 47
so far 30
something to do with 20
sooner or later 54
sorry? 19
sort of 17
sort sth out 51
speak up 15
speak your mind 15, 57
speed up 43
splash out (on sth) 38
split sb up 28
split up (with sb) 28
stand a chance (of sth / of doing sth) 43
stand around/about 26
stand by sb 36
stand for sth 4
stand on your own two feet 25
(start) from scratch 48
start off (= begin in a particular way) 48
start off/out (= begin doing sth) 31
start out (= begin with an intention) 48
stay in 24
stay on 5
stay out 24
stay the night 57
stay up 10, 24
stay/steer clear of sb/sth 1, 10
stick at sth 9
stick to sth (= write/talk about one thing) 10
stick to sth (= continue doing sth and not change it) 43
stick together 28
stop off 41
straight away 55
stretch your legs 57
sure enough 40
swap places with sb 2, 8
switch off 51
switch sth on 7
take (no) notice of sb 59
take (time) off 59
take a joke 22
take advantage of sth 2, 42
take after sb 4, 24
take against sb 59
take care 17
take care of yourself 59
take exception to sth/sb 39
take it easy 59
take it/sth in 13
take it in turns 8
take it or leave it 59
take money off 33
take no part (in sth) 42
take off 5
take offence (at sth) 25
take out (a loan/insurance) 37
take over sth 30
take part (in sth) 42
take sb off 59
take sb on 36, 37
take shape 48
take sth away 50
take sth back 4, 6
take sth in 13
take sth into account 29, 52
take sth into consideration 52
take sth off 7
take sth on 37
take sth out (of a bank account) 33
take sth over 37
take sth seriously 8
take sth the wrong way 22
take sth up 40, 48
take the lead 42
take your life in your hands 59
take your mind off sth 27
take your time 28, 41, 51
talk down to sb 15
talk it/sth over 12
talk nonsense 15
talk sb into (doing) sth 39
talk sense 15
talk sth over 12
tear sth to bits/pieces 47
tell me, … 18
tell sb off (for sth / for doing sth) 15, 22
tell the time 57
ten to one 50
thank goodness! 19
thank heavens 2
thanks to sb/sth 11
that would be telling 18
that/it depends 1
that's life 52
(the) best of luck 10, 19, 52
the chances are (that) 31
the last minute 29
the last moment 29
the middle of nowhere 43
the minute (that) 53
the night before last 32
the other day 49
the rat race 37
the thing is 21
the tip of the iceberg 8
there is nothing in it 30

(there's) no time to lose 30
there is something in sth 30
there you are/go 17
think a lot of sb/sth 11
think ahead (to sth) 12
think back (to sth) 12
think for yourself 12
think highly / a lot of sb/sth 21
think on your feet 11
think it/sth over/through 12
think straight 12
think the world of sb 11, 28
think twice 12
third time lucky 50
throw a party 26
throw sb out 39
throw sth away 23, 47
throw sth out 34, 47
tidy sth away 29
tidy sth up 6
tie sb/sth up 7
time and time again 49
time's up 17
to a certain extent 21
to be honest 21
to begin/start with 42
to bits 27
to make matters/things worse 36
to say the least 18
to sb's face 15
to some extent 21
to tell you the truth 18
too … for my liking 46
top up (your mobile) 16
toss and turn 32
touch wood 3
trial and error 2, 9
trick sb into sth / doing sth 35
trip sb up 23
try sth on 4
try sth/sb out 39
try your best 10
turn a blind eye (to sth) 1, 24
turn around/round 40
turn out (to be) 41, 39
turn sb down 36, 52
turn sth down 26, 34
turn sth (from sth) into sth 34, 37
turn sth on 7
turn sth up 26, 34
turn up (= arrive) 7, 49
turn up (= be found) 7

under control 55
up and down 54
up and running 37
up to a point 21
ups and downs 29
use sth up 6

wait and see 54
wait up (for sb) 20
(walk) hand in hand 23
walk out (on sb) 28
waste your breath 49
watch out! 19
well done! 19
well off 33
what do you make of sb/sth? 21
what have you been up to? 20
what/whatever sb says goes 60
what's up? 17
whatever you do 34
whatever you say 18
when it comes to sth / doing sth 25
why not? 17
why (how, where, who, etc.) on earth 1
wide awake 32
with reference to sth 3
without (a) doubt 21
without fail 1
word for word 54
work at sth 40
work sth out 10
worried sick (about sth/sb) 32
wrap sth up 38
write sth down 4
write sth off 47
write-off 47

yes and no 19
you can say that again 18
you never know 30
you see 18
you/they, etc. can/could always … 52
you'll see 18
you're joking! 19
you're kidding! 19
you're welcome 19
you've got a point 21
your fair share of sth 29
your heart isn't it sth 30

Key words

If you cannot remember the first word of an idiom, look here for other key words that are used in the idiom. The numbers are unit numbers.

A 43
aback 59
ability 10
about 26, 27, 50
absence 2
accident 55
account 29, 52
addition 53
advance 41
advantage 2, 42
after 20
again 18, 29, 49
age 59
agree 21
air 41
all 8, 19, 50
alone 25
always 17, 52
another 34
apart 47
arms 23
ask 2, 3, 21, 39
asleep 32
awake 32
away 39, 55, 58

B 43
back 3, 13, 15, 23
backwards 54
bad 11, 19, 37
badly 33
bars 35
bear 46
beaten 41
before 32
beg 19
begin 42
behind 15, 25, 35
bell 1
bend 29
beside 21
best 10, 11, 17, 19, 52, 59
better 2, 11, 52, 00
between 28
birth 24
bit 40, 41
bite 29
bits 27, 47
black 33
blame 25
blank 10
bless 19
blind 1, 24
blood 3, 24
blow 23
blue 1, 3, 49
board 27
bog 10
bored 27
bothered 19
brain(s) 5, 9
break 48, 26, 14, 27, 43
breath 3, 40, 49
breathe 14
bridge 37
bright 2, 31, 54, 59
burst 24, 22
business 19
butterflies 27

cake 2
call N 14
call V 8
care N 17, 59
care V 44
case 2, 43, 52
catch 35, 3, 57,
cause 40
certain 55
chance N 3, 43, 51
chances N 31
change 41
change V 2, 29, 37, 39
charge 2
choose 44
circle N 37
circles N 57
clear 1, 10
close 39, 42
clue 51
cold ADJ 27
cold N 3
common 3, 14, 26
company 26
comparison 11
concern 37
concerned 21
confidence 55
cons 21
consideration 52

control 55
corner 20, 39
corners 37
cost N 33
cost V 16
count 50
courage 28
cover 33
crack 49
crazy 28
cross 10, 23, 27
cry 27
cup 39, 46
cut N 43
cut V 37
cut out 36

damn 44
dare 30
dark 14
dash 20
date 49
dawn 49
day 8, 33, 39, 49
days 3, 11
death 3
debt 33
depend 1, 3
depth 51
die 44
diet 34
difference 42
distance 1
don't 2, 44
don'ts 9
done 19
door 26
doorstep 3
dos 9
dot 49
doubt 21
down ADV 27, 54
downs N 29
dozens 50
dream 37
drive 29
drop 14
dumps 27
duty 55

ear 9
earliest 20
early 2, 3, 11, 32, 48, 54
earth 1, 16
ease 25
easy 40, 59
edge 27
edgeways 15
element 11
else 30
end N 1, 10, 22, 26, 55
ends N 33, 37
enough 21, 40, 42
error 2, 9
even 21, 53
ever 53
exactly 19
exception 39
expense 29
extent 21
eye 1, 3, 10, 24, 57, 59

face 1, 15, 27, 57
fact 2
facts 54
fail 1
faintest 51
fair 21, 29
fall 3, 28, 32, 47
family 24
famous 2
far 11, 21, 30, 60
fast 54, 32
fault 25
feel 39, 44, 52, 20, 25, 22
feet 2, 11, 25, 27, 30, 51
few 50
fifty-fifty 50
figures 54
fill 56
find 2, 30
fingers 10
first 8, 28, 50, 54
five 36, 50
flat 1
fold 23
follow 24
fonder 2
fool 22
foot 11, 15
footsteps 24
foremost 54
fortune 16
forwards 54
fresh 3
front 23
fun 2, 22, 30
furious 54

gap 37
general 25
give 29, 54

go 37, 57
going 37
good 2, 8, 13, 19, 28, 40, 41, 49, 51, 52
grade 52
grief 2, 19
grind 43
grips 10
ground 30, 48
guess N 30
guess V 17
habit 10
half 39
halt 43
halves 39
hand N 13, 23, 26, 53, 57, 58
hand V 36, 37
hands 13, 23, 27, 37, 39, 59
hang 13, 58
happen 41
hard 36, 19, 33
have (in *had it*) 51
head 13, 23, 29, 33
hear 2, 19
heart 2, 9, 27, 44
heavens 2, 19
help 27
here 17, 19, 31
highly 21
hold N 14
hold V 23, 16
hold-up 35
home 8
honest 21
horseback 41
hours 36
how 1, 17
hundred 50
hurry 51
ice 26
iceberg 8
idea 51
impulse 49
in 30
increase 35
inside 23, 24
into 46
it 30, 33
joke N 22
joke V 19
journey 43
judge 48
jump 27, 39, 43
just 3
kick-off 42
kid 19
kill 51
kind 17
know 17, 26, 27, 30, 58
knowledge 14
large 21, 25
last 2, 3, 22, 29, 32, 49, 53
late 2, 32
later 54
latest 20
laugh N 1, 22
laugh V 22, 27
lay 57
lead 42
leaf 27
least 18, 50
leave 59
leg N 3, 22
legs N 23, 57
lend 26, 57
length 55
less 2
let 26
lie 59
lie-in 32
life 2, 24, 27, 30, 52, 58, 59, 60
lift 26
lights 43
like 19
liking 46
line 14, 16
little 40
log 32
long 3, 21, 37, 60
longer 30
look 31, 59
lookout 35
lorry 3
lose 1, 14, 27, 30, 50, 00
lost 2, 57
lot 11, 21, 50
loud 9
love 3, 20, 28
lovely 54
luck 10, 19, 31, 55, 52
lucky 50
mad 1, 28, 46
main 2
many 50
matter N 40, 49
matters N 36
meant 2
meantime 53

memory 13
middle 43
million 50
mind N 1, 2, 9, 12, 13, 15, 27, 29, 37, 55, 57
mind V 19
minute 3, 29, 49, 53
miss 57
mistake 55
mixed 58
moment 3, 12, 29, 49
money 1, 33
mood 27
moon 3, 27, 49
more 25, 29, 2
most 9, 31, 50, 58
move 40, 57
much 11, 21
myself 29

naturally 40, 60
neck 2
need 44
nerves 2, 3, 29
never 2, 19, 30
news 14
next 26
night 32, 39, 57
nine 36, 50
no 18, 19
nod 23
nonsense 15
nose 23
nothing 24, 30, 36, 38, 60
notice 36, 37, 59
now 54
nowhere 2, 43

off 28, 33, 54, 59
offence 25
offer 38
on 20, 45, 54
once 3, 41, 49, 55
one 21, 50
open 41
order 55
other 34, 49
out 26
over 29, 49
own 24, 26, 29

pack 39
pain 2
pardon 19
part 21, 42
party 26
peace 54
penny 33
per cent 50
phone 55
pick 44, 57
piece N 2
pieces N 47
place N 28, 29, 41, 47, 51, 52, 55
places N 2, 8
plan 45, 60
pluck 28
point 21, 24, 57
position 52
post 55
practice 13, 55
pros 21
public 3
pull 3, 22, 11
purpose 3, 55

question 40
queue 39
quiet 14, 54
quite 50

race 37
rack 9
rainy 33
rat 37
rather 38
red 27, 33
red-handed 35
reference 3
regards 3, 20
return 42, 55
rid 34, 58
ring N 14
ring V 1
rip-off 33
rise 35
risk 26
roll 1, 33
roof 22
ropes 24
rough N 8
rough V 41
round 5
row 31
run V 24, 26, 51
run N 21, 35
running 37
rush 51

sack 36
safe 27
sale 37, 38
same 19

sardines 39
save 33
say 3, 14, 17, 18, 30
scratch 48
season 41, 55
second 50
see 18, 54
send 3
sense 1, 9, 10, 15
seriously 8
set 25
shake 23, 27
shape 40, 48
share 29
shoes 28, 52
shoestring 33
short 30, 43
show 24
show-off 29
sick 27, 32, 54
side 31, 51, 59
sight 28, 55
since 53
skin 27
sleep 32
slip 13
snow 20
something 20, 30, 50
soon 53
sooner 554
sorry 19, 22, 52
sort 17
speak 15, 22, 57
spite 53
spur 12, 49
stand 2, 25, 43, 46
standstill 43
start N 42
start V 11, 48
starve 34
state 1, 27
stay 1, 3, 10, 21, 57
steer 1, 10
step 51
stick 22
stiff 27
stomach 27
stone 2
story 3
straight 12, 55, 57
stretch N 51
stretch V 57
stuck 10
stuff 11
subject 29
sudden 40
sun 57
supposed 2
sure 34, 40, 55
swap 2, 8
sweet 46
swing 26

table 57
take 29, 54
talk 15, 24
tea 39, 46
tear V 47
tears N 24, 27
tell 18, 57
telling 18
temper 27
ten 50
term N 21
terms N 22, 26
thank V 2, 19, 36
thanks N 11
then 54
theory 55
there 9, 17, 31
thing 1, 3, 21, 46, 57
things 18, 36
think 11, 12, 21, 28
third 50
though 53
thoughts 50
thrilled 27
throw 2, 26
tie 7
time N 17, 20, 27, 28, 30, 36, 39, 41, 43, 49, 50, 51, 57, 59
times N 25
tip 8, 9
tiptoe 23
tired 54
tongue 9
too 46
tooth 46
top 10, 42, 51
toss N 42
toss V 32
total 50
touch N 11, 14, 25
touch V 3
track 41
trial 2, 9
trick 51
trouble 24, 39
true 30

truth 18
try N 13
try V 10
tune 55
turn V 32
turns N 8
twenties 50
twice 12, 41
two 50
type 28

under 55
understood 9
up ADV 11, 17, 20, 21, 37, 54
up to sb 17
up to sth 36
upper 58
ups N 29
use 8, 34
usual 17

vain 3, 35
vicious 37
view 24

wait 28, 49, 54
wall 29
waste 49
water 33
way 2, 3, 20, 22, 24, 30, 37, 54, 55, 59, 60
ways 21, 25
weight 11
well 19, 33, 53
what 17
whatever 34, 60, 18
when 17
whole 21, 25
why 17
wide 32
wink 32
without 44
wood 3
word N 14, 15, 51, 54
words N 2
working 55
world 10, 11, 28, 37
worlds 25
worried 32
worse 11, 36, 37
worst 11, 30
worth 33
write-off 47
writing 55
wrong 11, 22, 28

years 50
yes 19
yet 3
young 59
yourself 12, 18, 25, 26, 30

Idioms and **Phrasal Verbs**

Extend your Oxford Word Skills – learn all the idioms and phrasal verbs you need to know at Intermediate and Advanced levels.

- See how idioms are used naturally in spoken and written English.
- Learn the phrasal verbs you need to know for the major exams.
- Practise using the idioms and phrasal verbs as you learn them, and revise what you've learned.
- Look online for fascinating information on the history of idioms – with regular updates.
- Part of the Oxford Word Skills series.

Ideal for self-study

For intermediate and upper-intermediate learners

HIGHLY COMMENDED
HRH
The Duke
of Edinburgh
ESU English Language
Book Award 2009

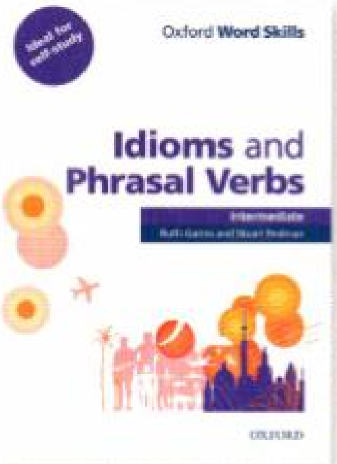
Ideal for self-study
Oxford Word Skills
Idioms and Phrasal Verbs
Intermediate
Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman
OXFORD

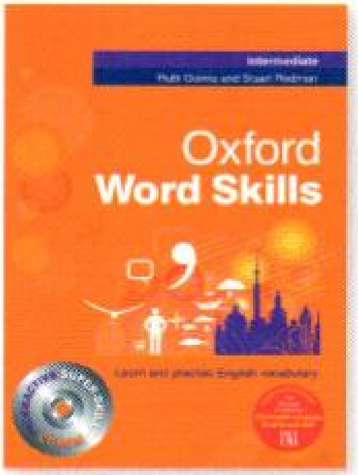
Intermediate
Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman
Oxford
Word Skills
Learn and practise English vocabulary

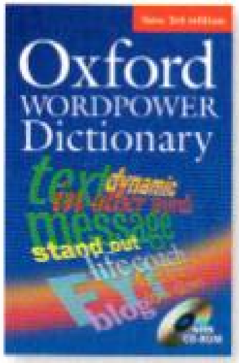
New 3rd edition
Oxford
WORDPOWER
Dictionary
text
dynamic
message
stand out
lifecoach
blog
with CD-ROM

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

www.oup.com/elt/wordskills

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt

for all your testing needs online go to

oxfordenglishtesting.com

CEFR
C1
B2
B1

ISBN 978-0-19-462012-3

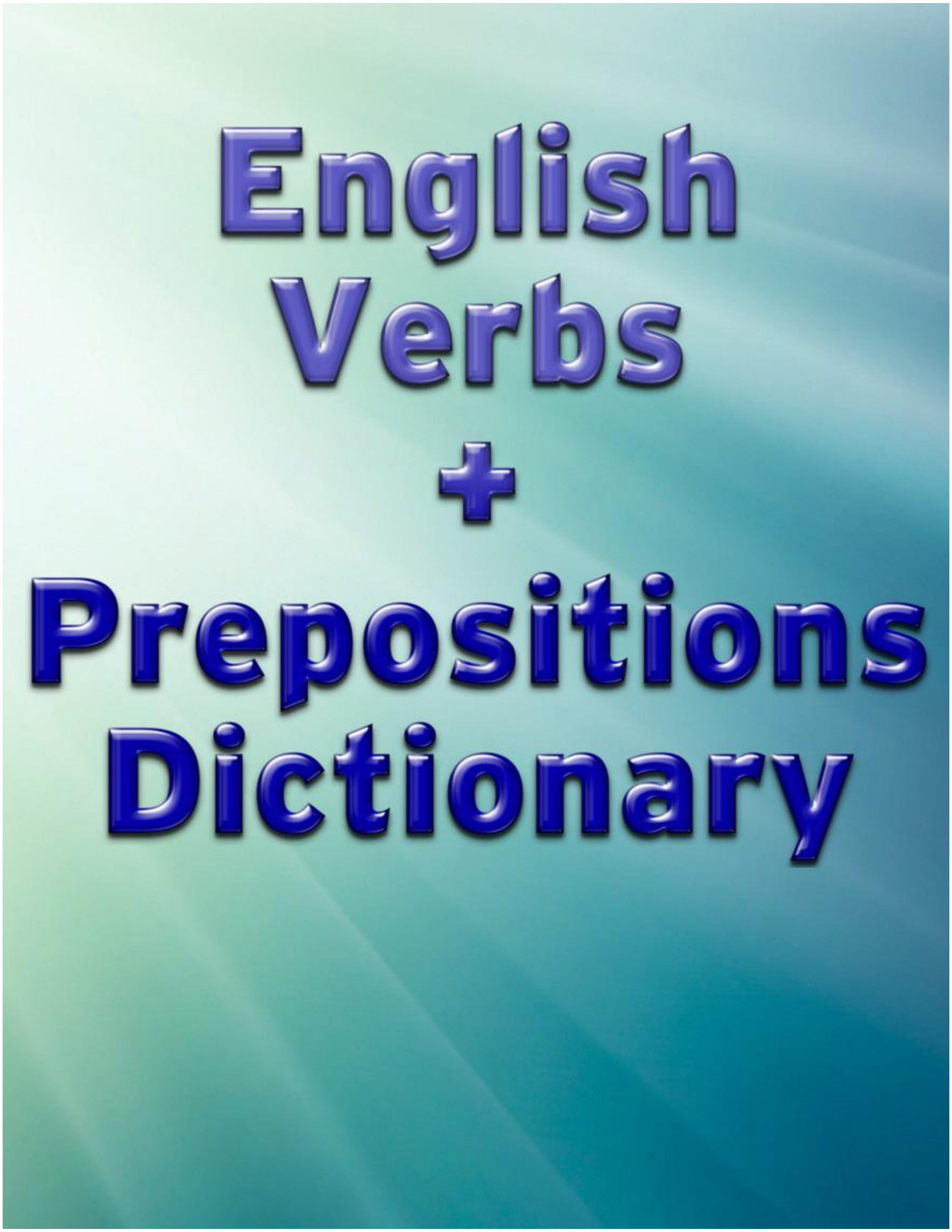

English Verbs + Prepositions Dictionary

www.espressoenglish.net

© Shayna Oliveira, 2012

Why study verbs + prepositions?

Prepositions are one of the most difficult things to master in the English language. They provide the "links" between the main words (nouns, verbs, and adjectives), but many English students have a hard time knowing **which preposition to use** in each situation.

This uncertainty can lead to lack of confidence and being afraid to speak – or speaking with lots of pauses as you try to think of the correct preposition.

Unfortunately, it's not easy to give specific **rules** for when to use each preposition – but most verbs have a preposition that usually goes together. Some verbs can go with multiple prepositions, and sometimes the preposition makes a difference in the meaning of the phrase.

You can use this dictionary for **learning typical verb-preposition combinations,** as well as for reference. Each entry has an example sentence and any notes or explanations that could help you understand better.

The best way to remember these combinations of verbs and prepositions is not only to study the list… but also to **create your own example sentences!** Putting the verb + preposition combination into practice immediately helps you memorize it more easily.

If you have questions, please send me an e-mail at help@espressoenglish.net

Good luck with your English studies!

Shayna Oliveira

English Teacher
www.EspressoEnglish.net

© Shayna Oliveira, 2012

Verb + Preposition	Example Sentence	Notes
account for	How do you **account for** the differences between the two financial reports?	To "account for" is to explain or provide a reason
accuse (someone) of (something)	Dan **accused** Henry **of** stealing money from the company.	To "accuse" is to say that someone did something bad
adapt to	When I moved to a different country, it was hard for me to **adapt to** the new culture.	
add (something) to (something)	I **added** some salt **to** the soup to give it more flavor.	
adjust to	After I got divorced, I had to **adjust to** life as a single man.	
admire (someone) for (something)	I **admire** Joanne **for** her dedication.	
agree on (topic)	My teacher and I **agree on** the importance of listening practice.	You agree ON a noun: We agree on politics. We don't agree on religion.
agree to (do something)	She **agreed to** make cookies for the party.	You agree TO a verb
agree with (someone)	I **agree with** you.	You agree WITH a person
apologize to (someone) for (doing something)	Barbara **apologized to** her boss **for** being late to the meeting.	
apply to (a university / program)	I **applied to** the top university in the country - but I didn't get in.	
apply for (a job / scholarship)	Sandra **applied for** a marketing job at a multinational company.	
approve of	My parents don't **approve of** my new boyfriend.	
argue with (someone) about (something)	I **argued with** my business partner **about** how much to invest in advertising.	To argue is to have a verbal conflict. The noun form is "argument" and we also say "have an argument with (someone)"
arrange for (someone) (to do something)	We'll **arrange for** a babysitter to take care of the kids.	
arrest (someone) for (something)	Pat was **arrested for** driving without a license.	To "arrest" is when the police take a person into the police station because they are suspected of some crime.

© Shayna Oliveira, 2012

		This is often in the passive voice: "(Someone) was arrested for…"
arrive at (a place)	By the time we **arrived at** the train station, our train had already left.	
arrive in (a city, country)	I'll be **arriving in** Berlin on Thursday.	
ask (someone) about (someone/topic)	She **asked** them **about** their plans for the holiday.	You ask someone ABOUT (a topic)
ask (someone) for (something)	I **asked** my classmate **for** a pencil.	You ask someone FOR (a noun)
ask (someone) to (do something)	The teacher **asked** me **to** make copies of the worksheet.	You ask someone TO (a verb). Never say "I asked to him…"
base on	Our conclusions are **based on** scientific research.	
be accustomed to	I'm from Ecuador, so I'm not **accustomed to** the cold weather!	"I'm accustomed to" is the same as "I'm used to"
be/get acquainted with	At the conference, I got **acquainted with** various leaders in the industry.	
be addicted to (something)	The rock star was **addicted to** heroin.	You can also say you're "addicted to" interests (like music or sports) - it's not only for drugs and alcohol!
be afraid of	My 5-year-old daughter is **afraid of** the dark.	"Afraid of" is the same as "scared of"
be angry at/with (someone) for (something)	Bob is **angry at** his son **for** driving his car without permission - and crashing it.	
be annoyed at/with (someone) for (something)	I'm **annoyed at** my husband **for** forgetting to wash the dishes.	Notice that after "annoyed/angry at someone for…" the verb is in the –ING form.
be anxious about (something)	Everyone in the class is **anxious about** the final exam.	
be associated with	There are a number of risks **associated with** the surgery.	
be aware of	I'm not **aware of** any problems.	
be blessed with	We've been **blessed with** good health and stable jobs.	To be "blessed with" something is to have received something good / positive, which you're thankful for.
be bored with	I'm **bored with** the	

	classes I'm currently taking.	
be capable of (something)	This technology is **capable of** changing the world.	
be cluttered with (something)	The spare room is **cluttered with** my sister's half-finished art projects.	"Cluttered" means there are too many objects in the space, and it's disorganized.
be committed to	Our organization is **committed to** improving education in the community.	
be composed of	The group is **composed of** doctors and lawyers.	
be concerned about	I'm **concerned about** the increasing violence in this neighborhood.	
be connected to/with	Less education is **connected with** higher unemployment.	
be content with	The employees weren't **content with** the salary adjustments - they wanted a bigger raise.	
be dedicated to	Veronica is very **dedicated to** her job. She always does her best work.	
be devoted to	Frank is a great father; he's so **devoted to** his family.	
be disappointed in/with (someone/ something)	We were **disappointed in** our son when he failed three classes.	
be discouraged by	I'm **discouraged by** the poor results of the marketing campaign.	
be done with (something)	I'm **done with** my work - time to go home.	
be dressed in	The robbers were **dressed in** black.	
be engaged in (something)	The company is **engaged in** a legal battle with one of their competitors.	"Engaged in" is like "involved in"
be engaged to (someone)	My brother is **engaged to** a woman he met while traveling. They're getting married next month.	If you are "engaged to" someone, it means you are going to get married to that person
be envious of	I'm **envious of** my sister's success.	

© Shayna Oliveira, 2012

be equipped with (something)	This building is **equipped with** a solar power system.	
be excited about	We're **excited about** our upcoming trip around the world.	
be exposed to	The children of smokers are **exposed to** secondhand smoke.	
be faced with (problem / dilemma / decision)	My family didn't have health insurance, and we were **faced with** enormous medical bills after my father got sick.	
be faithful to	He's **faithful to** his wife - he wouldn't get involved with another woman.	
be familiar with	Sorry, I'm not **familiar with** that computer program. I've only used it once.	
be famous for	That musician is **famous for** her poetic song lyrics.	
be filled with	The stores were **filled with** shoppers during the week before Christmas.	
be finished with	Don't throw away the newspaper - I'm not **finished with** it yet.	
be fond of	I'm quite **fond of** peppermint tea. I drink it almost every day.	To be "fond of" something means you especially like it, you have an emotional connection to it.
be frightened by	My dog was **frightened by** the fireworks, and hid under the bed.	
be frightened of	Alex never talks to women because he's too **frightened of** rejection.	
be grateful to (someone) for (something)	I'm **grateful to** Sally **for** helping me find a new apartment.	
be guilty of (a crime)	The director was found **guilty of** sexual harassment.	"Guilty" is the opposite of "innocent"
be happy about (something)	My family wasn't **happy about** my decision to drop out of college.	
be innocent of (something)	I believe she's **innocent of** the charges - she doesn't seem like a criminal.	
be interested in (something)	I'm **interested in** photography.	
be interested in	Kevin keeps asking me	If you are "interested in" someone, it

© Shayna Oliveira, 2012

(someone)	out to lunch, but I'm not really **interested in** him.	usually means you have romantic interest in that person
be involved in (something)	Ten politicians were **involved in** the scandal.	
be involved with	Sorry, I don't have any information - I'm not **involved with** that project.	
be jealous of	All my colleagues are **jealous of** me because I have the biggest office.	
be known for (something)	Thailand is **known for** its beautiful beaches.	
be limited to	This scholarship is **limited to** applicants from low-income families.	
be made from (something)	Wine is **made from** grapes.	We use "made from" when there is a transformation in the process of making the final product
be made of (material)	This table is **made of** wood.	We use "made of" when talking about the material (wood, metal, plastic, etc.)
be married to (someone)	My cousin is **married to** a dancer.	
be opposed to	Many of the students are **opposed to** the new school policy.	
be patient with (someone)	The teacher was very **patient with** me when I couldn't understand the exercise.	
be pleased with	Are you **pleased with** the results of the project?	
be polite to (someone)	The woman wasn't very **polite to** me when I asked her for directions.	
be prepared for	I didn't study, so I wasn't **prepared for** the test.	
be proud of	I'm **proud of** my daughter - she graduated with the highest grades in her class.	
be relevant to	Why are you talking about that? It's not **relevant to** this discussion.	
be responsible for	I'm **responsible for** training new employees.	
be satisfied with	I wasn't **satisfied with** the quality of that product.	
be scared of	My wife is **scared of**	

	spiders.	
be terrified of	I'm **terrified of** enclosed spaces - I can get panic attacks in an elevator.	"Terrified" means EXTREMELY scared or afraid
be thankful for	We're **thankful for** everyone who volunteered to help with the program.	
be tired of (doing something)	I want to buy a car. I'm **tired of** taking the bus.	
beg for	My ex-boyfriend **begged** me **for** another chance, but I said the relationship was over.	To "beg" is to ask repeatedly with a lot of emotion
believe in	Do you **believe in** magic?	
belong to	No, that motorcycle's not mine. It **belongs to** my brother.	
benefit from	The local population will **benefit from** the new hospital.	
blame (someone) for (something)	He **blamed** the other driver **for** the car accident.	
blame (something) on (someone)	She **blamed** the mistakes in the article **on** the editors.	
boast about	I hate talking to Ronald because he's always **boasting about** how much money he makes.	"Boasting" means to talk about something arrogantly
borrow (something) from (someone)	I **borrowed** a dress **from** my sister.	"Borrow" is the opposite of "lend" (when you borrow, you receive the object temporarily)
care about (someone / something)	Our company **cares about** the environment.	
care for (someone)	Rachel is **caring for** her 95-year-old grandmother.	It's also common to say "taking care of" a person
don't care for (something)	I **don't care for** Mexican food. It's too spicy for me.	"I don't care for it" means "I don't like it very much."
cater to (group of people)	Most of the restaurants in this area **cater to** tourists.	"Cater to" means to be specialized towards that group of people
charge (someone) for (something)	The restaurant **charged** us **for** the water - I thought it was	In this case, "charge" means to require money for a product or service

	complimentary!	
charge (someone) with (something)	He was **charged with** assault with a deadly weapon.	In this case, "charge" means when someone is formally accused of a crime
choose between (someone/ something) and (someone/ something)	I'm trying to **choose between** Australia **and** New Zealand for my next vacation.	
collide with	Eight people were injured when a bus **collided with** a car.	
come from	The world's best chocolate **comes from** Belgium.	
comment on	A number of people **commented on** my new haircut.	
communicate with (someone)	The company needs to **communicate with** customers.	
compare (someone /something) to/with (someone/ something)	Organic food is expensive **compared to** non-organic food.	
compete with	Pepsi launched a new type of soda to **compete with** Coca-Cola.	
complain about	We **complained about** the slow service in the restaurant.	
complain to (someone) about (something)	We **complained to** the manager **about** the slow service in the restaurant.	
compliment (someone) on (something)	George **complimented** Erica **on** her ability to speak French.	
concentrate on	We're trying to do too many things; we need to **concentrate on** one project at a time.	
confess to	The scientist **confessed to** lying about the results of his research.	To "confess" is to admit that you did something wrong, or reveal a secret
confuse (someone/ something) with (someone/	You're **confusing** a laptop **with** a netbook - they're two different types of computers.	

something)		
congratulate (someone) for/on ([doing] something)	We **congratulated** Vanessa **on** her promotion.	
consent to (something)	The director **consented to** the employees' proposal.	
consist of	My CD collection **consists of** jazz and classic rock music.	
contribute to (something)	Stress can **contribute to** various health problems.	
convict (someone) of (something)	He was **convicted of** child abuse.	When someone is "convicted," it means they are found guilty of a crime
convince (someone) to	My wife **convinced** me **to** take dance lessons.	
cope with	Psychologists can help people **cope with** tragedies.	"Cope with" means to deal with something and emotionally process it - usually a negative thing
count on	I'm **counting on** you to finish the work by tomorrow.	"Count on" is like "depend on"
cover in/with	The mountains are **covered with** snow.	
crash into	A drunk driver **crashed into** a tree near my house.	
cure (someone) of (something)	The antibiotics **cured** her **of** the infection.	"Cure of" is used with diseases, but can also be used with bad habits - "Working as a journalist cured me of my tendency to procrastinate."
deal with	How do you **deal with** an annoying co-worker?	
decide against	When I needed money, I considered selling my car, but in the end I **decided against** it.	If you "decide against" something, you decide NOT to do it
decide between (someone/ something) and (someone/ something)	I'm trying to **decide between** buying a motorcycle **and** saving up the money for a car.	
decide on	The government is going to **decide on** the proposed new law next week.	

dedicate (something) to (someone)	I'd like to **dedicate** this performance **to** my mother, who has always helped and inspired me.	
depend on	I'll be there in 20-30 minutes, **depending on** the traffic.	Avoid the common error of saying "depend in" or "depend of" - it's always "depend on"!
derive (something) from (something)	Many medicines are **derived from** natural products like plants.	
deter (someone) from (something)	Difficulties with organic chemistry class **deterred** me **from** becoming a doctor.	
differ from	New Year's traditions **differ from** country to country.	
disagree with (someone / something)	I **disagree with** the decision to close down the program.	
disapprove of	Religious groups **disapprove of** that TV show; they say it's offensive.	
discourage (someone) from (something)	They **discouraged** us **from** visiting Paris, saying it was extremely expensive.	
discriminate against	He's racist - he **discriminates against** black and Hispanic people.	
discuss (something) with (someone)	We need to **discuss** these problems **with** the boss.	
distinguish between (someone/ something) and (someone/ something)	Cashiers need to know how to **distinguish between** real **and** counterfeit bills.	
distract (someone) from (something)	The loud music **distracted** me **from** my work.	
dream about/of	I **dream about** becoming a famous singer someday.	If talking about dreams (hopes) for the future, you can say "dream about" or "dream of." If talking about a dream you had when you were sleeping, use only "dream about"
elaborate on (something)	Could you **elaborate on** that last point? I'd like to know more.	
escape from (a place)	Three prisoners **escaped from** the jail last night.	

© Shayna Oliveira, 2012

exchange (something) for (something)	I **exchanged** the small shirt **for** a medium.	
exclude (someone) from (something)	He **excluded** them **from** the meeting.	
excuse (someone) for (something)	Please **excuse** me **for** interrupting.	
expel (someone) from (a place)	He was **expelled from** university for using drugs.	"Expel" means someone was forced to leave a group, school, or company - usually because they did something bad
experiment on	Scientists are **experimenting on** monkeys to develop new medicines.	
explain (something) to (someone)	The doctor **explained** the procedure **to** me in detail.	Never say "He explained me the procedure."
feel about	How do you **feel about** the new company policy?	
feel like	I don't **feel like** going out to a nightclub. I'd rather relax at home tonight.	"I don't feel like doing it" means "I don't want to do it; I'm not in the mood for doing it"
fight about	My kids are **fighting about** whose turn it is to use the computer.	You "fight about" the topic of the conflict
fight against	This organization is **fighting against** discrimination and injustice.	You "fight against" your opponent (when it's a person or an idea/thing/etc.)
fight for	After the accident, he was **fighting for** his life.	You "fight for" something you approve of, or you want to have
fight with	The protestors are **fighting with** the police.	You "fight with" your opponent (only when it's a person)
forget about (something)	Oh no! I **forgot about** the meeting - now I'm going to be late.	You "forget about" a noun
forget to (do something)	I'm cold - I **forgot to** bring my jacket.	You "forget to" a verb
forgive (someone) for (something)	I **forgave** him **for** taking my camera without asking permission.	
gaze at	She sat on the beach, **gazing at** the ocean.	"Gaze" means to look at something for a long time and in a contemplative way
get back from (a place)	I just **got back from** the gym - I need to take a	"Get back from" is the same as "return from"

© Shayna Oliveira, 2012

	shower	
get rid of	I **got rid of** some old clothes that I don't wear anymore.	"Get rid of" means to throw away or give away
get used to	I'm a relaxed person, so it was hard for me to **get used to** the fast pace of New York City.	
give (something) to (someone)	I **gave** the keys **to** Pamela.	You can also say "I gave Pamela the keys."
glare at	Rita **glared at** her husband when he started chatting with a beautiful woman at the club.	"Glare" means to look at someone/something angrily
graduate from (a place)	He **graduated from** Harvard University in 1986.	
grieve for	He's **grieving for** his mother, who died just a few days ago.	"Grieve" means to be sad about a loss - usually a death
grumble about (something)	My husband is **grumbling about** how early we need to get up to catch our 6 AM flight.	"Grumble" is like "complain"
happen to	What **happened to** your car? Did you get in an accident?	
harp on	The salesman was **harping on** all the wonderful benefits of the product.	"Harp on" means to emphasize something strongly (and rather annoyingly)
hear about	Did you **hear about** the bank robbery that happened last night?	"Hear about" is used for knowing about the details of a situation
hear from (someone)	My cousin is traveling and doesn't have much internet access, so I haven't **heard from** her lately.	
hear of	I've never **heard of** that movie.	"Hear of" is used for hearing just a mention of something (no details)
help (someone) with (something)	She really **helped** me **with** the problem.	
hide (something) from (someone)	I **hid** the cookies **from** my kids so they wouldn't eat them before dinner.	
hinge on	The success of this project **hinges on** teamwork and collaboration.	"Hinge on" is like "depend on" - it means teamwork and collaboration are ESSENTIAL to the success
hope for (noun)	I'm **hoping for** good	

hope to (verb)	weather this weekend. My husband and I are **hoping to** go camping.	
insist on	I thought the company website was great, but my boss **insisted on** redesigning it.	
insure against	My car is **insured against** theft.	
interfere in (something)	Don't **interfere in** the situation if you don't know all the facts.	"Interfere in" means to get involved in something that you shouldn't
interfere with (something)	The flight delay **interfered with** our travel plans.	"Interfere with" means to add an obstacle that delays or prevents something from happening
introduce (someone/ something) to (someone/ something)	I'd like to **introduce** you **to** a friend of mine from college.	
invest in	The city is **investing** thousands of dollars **in** improving public transportation.	
invite (someone) to	She **invited** me **to** her birthday party.	
joke about	Chris is always **joking about** how bad he is at sports.	"Joke about" is to talk about it with humor, in a funny/comedic way
jot down (something)	I **jotted down** a few notes during the presentation	"Jot down" is the same as "write down" - jot means "to write quickly"
keep (someone/ something) from (doing something)	A password **keeps** people **from** accessing your account.	"Keep someone from doing something" is the same as "prevent someone from doing something"
know about	He **knows** a lot **about** computers.	
laugh about	Our travel disaster was annoying at the time, but we **laughed about** it later.	You "laugh about" a situation
laugh at	When I said something stupid, everyone **laughed at** me.	You typically "laugh at" a person (although sometimes "laugh at" is used for a situation - "I laughed at her reaction to the news."
learn about	I like **learning about** other cultures.	
lend (something) to (someone)	I **lent** a book **to** my friend six months ago, and he hasn't given it back yet.	"Lend" is the opposite of "borrow." When you lend something, you give it to someone else temporarily

listen to	I usually **listen to** music on my mp3 player while I exercise.	
long for	I **long for** a job in which I have more flexible hours!	To "long for" something means you REALLY want something
look at	I **looked at** the pictures from Jason's vacation.	
look forward to	I'm **looking forward to** having lunch with you next week.	"Look forward to" means you are happy or excited for something in the future.
matter to (someone)	We can take the 8 AM or the 11 AM train - it doesn't **matter to** me.	
meet with (someone)	I **met with** the department manager to discuss the project.	
mistake (someone/ something) for (someone/ something)	My sister looks like a famous actress, so people always **mistake** her **for** a celebrity.	
object to	I **object to** the idea that stay-at-home moms are lazy. They work really hard!	If you "object to" something, it means you oppose it or strongly disagree with it
participate in (something)	Representatives from 15 countries will **participate in** the conference.	
pay for	I **paid** $100 **for** this perfume.	
plan on	We **plan on** attending the party.	"Plan on" is followed by the -ING form of the verb
praise (someone) for (something)	He **praised** me **for** my creative solution to the problem.	
pray for	I'm **praying for** you to feel better soon.	
prefer (something) to (something)	I **prefer** swimming **to** biking.	
prepare for	The sports team is **preparing for** the tournament next month.	
present (someone) with (something)	The company **presented** Randy **with** an award for excellent service.	
prevent (someone/ something) from	Computer problems **prevented** me **from** finishing my work yesterday.	

© Shayna Oliveira, 2012

(doing something)		
prohibit (someone) from (doing something)	Employees are **prohibited from** smoking inside the office.	
protect (someone) from (something)	Wearing a bicycle helmet can **protect** you **from** serious head injuries.	
provide (someone) with (something)	We **provided** all the children **with** computers.	
punish (someone) for (something)	I **punished** my teenage daughter **for** going to a party without my permission.	
quarrel with (someone) about/over (something)	We **quarreled with** the hotel receptionist about the extra charges on our bill.	"Quarrel" is the same as "argue" (have a verbal conflict)
react to	Environmental groups are **reacting to** the city's plans to build a new shopping center in the middle of the park.	
recover from (something)	She stayed home from work because she's still **recovering from** pneumonia.	
refer to (something)	Please **refer to** the diagram on page 15.	
related to	The website has information on various topics **related to** pregnancy.	"Related to" is also used for family members - "I'm related to a famous actor. He's my cousin."
rely on	You can't **rely on** other people to make you happy.	"Rely on" is like "depend on"
remind (someone) of (something)	You **remind** me **of** my sister - you have a similar personality.	
remind (someone) to (do something)	I **reminded** my husband **to** buy some milk at the store on the way home from work.	
reply to	I'll **reply to** your e-mail later today.	
rescue (someone) from (something)	The coast guard **rescued** the fisherman **from** the sinking boat.	
respond to	The film director **responded to** the criticisms about his latest movie.	
result in (something)	The advertising campaign **resulted in** hundreds of new customers for the company.	
save (someone) from (something)	The fireman **saved** the child **from** the burning building.	
scold (someone) for	The teacher **scolded** the	To "scold" is to reprimand or criticize

([doing] something)	student **for** coming to class late.	someone for doing something wrong
search for	I'm **searching for** a two-bedroom apartment in the city center.	You can use "searching for" or "looking for"
separate (something) from (something)	I **separated** last year's documents **from** this year's documents.	
share (something) with (someone)	I **shared** the food **with** my brother.	
shout at	My mother **shouted at** me when I left a big mess in the kitchen.	To "shout" is to yell, to speak very loudly. You can also say "yell at"
show (something) to (someone)	I **showed** my new cell phone **to** all my friends.	
smile at (someone)	She **smiled at** me.	
speak to/with (someone) about (someone / something)	I **spoke with** my son's teacher **about** his behavior in school.	Both "to" and "with" can be used after "speak," but "with" implies more of a two-way conversation. If the conversation is only one way, use "to" - "The president spoke to an audience of 5,000."
specialize in (something)	I'm a biologist. I **specialize in** the study of tropical plants.	
spend (money/time) on	I **spent** $300 **on** this backpack because I wanted one that was really high-quality.	
stand for	NATO **stands for** the North Atlantic Treaty Organization.	
stare at	When I dyed my hair bright green, a lot of children **stared at** me.	"Stare" means to look at something intensely for a long time
stem from	The current health crisis **stems from** lack of nutritional education.	"Stem from" is like "originate in"
stop (someone) from (doing something)	I **stopped** the child **from** playing with the scissors.	
subject (someone) to (something)	I was **subjected to** verbal abuse from my boss in my previous job - that's why I quit.	
subscribe to	I don't **subscribe to** any magazines - I just read them online.	
substitute (something) for	You can **substitute** chicken **for** beef in this	

(something)	recipe.	
succeed in (doing something)	She **succeeded in** running a marathon in under 4 hours.	
suffer from	My aunt **suffers from** arthritis.	
suspect (someone) of (something)	He is **suspected of** planning a terrorist attack.	
take advantage of (someone/ something/ situation)	With low interest rates, many people **took advantage of** the opportunity to buy a house.	If you "take advantage of" someone, it has a negative connotation - you are using that person for your own benefit. If you "take advantage of" a situation, it can be negative, but it can also be neutral - as in the example sentence.
take care of	I'm **taking care of** my neighbors' dog while they're traveling this weekend.	
talk to/with (someone) about (topic)	I need to **talk with** you about plans for next year.	Similar to "speak to/with"
tell (someone) about (something)	Caroline **told** us **about** her trip to South Africa.	
thank (someone) for (something)	**Thank** you **for** helping me with my homework.	
think about	I'm **thinking about** taking piano lessons.	
think of	He **thought of** a great way to increase sales.	
translate (something) into (a language)	We need to **translate** this document **into** Italian.	
travel to (somewhere)	We're **traveling to** Moscow by train.	
trust (someone) with (something)	I **trust** her **with** my car - she's a careful driver.	
turn into	The city is going to **turn** this old church **into** a museum.	"Turn into" means to transform
use (something) for (-ING) / to (infinitive)	I **use** vitamins **to** give me more energy.	
vote against	That senator **voted against** a law proposing stricter measures for gun control.	"Vote against" means you oppose it, you vote NO

vote for	I'm going to **vote for** Janet for president.	"Vote for" means you support it, you vote YES
vouch for (someone / something)	I can **vouch for** him - he's an honest and dependable guy.	If you "vouch for" someone/something, it means you recommend it because you have experience with it
wait for (someone/something)	I can't leave yet because I'm **waiting for** my wife to finish putting on her makeup.	
warn about	They **warned** us **about** the poisonous snakes in the forest.	
waste (money/time) on	I **wasted** $10 **on** a flashlight that didn't even work.	
work for (a company / person)	I **work for** a car dealership.	
work on (a project / task)	We're **working on** a new project.	
worry about	My grandmother always **worries about** my safety.	
write about	The journalist **wrote about** the election.	
write to (someone)	Make sure to **write to** your grandparents and thank them for the gift.	
yap about	The secretaries were **yapping about** the newest episode of the TV show.	To "yap" is to talk or chat in an annoying way
yearn for	The poor children are **yearning for** a better life.	"Yearn for" is like "long for" - it means you really want something, with a lot of emotion

© Shayna Oliveira, 2012

Topics in
English
Linguistics

TiEL 60-1

Renaat Declerck
In cooperation with Susan Reed
and Bert Cappelle

The Grammar of the English Verb Phrase

Volume 1: The Grammar of the English Tense System

A Comprehensive Analysis

Mouton de Gruyter

The Grammar of the English Verb Phrase
Volume 1: The Grammar of the English Tense System

Topics in English Linguistics
60-1

Editors

Bernd Kortmann
Elizabeth Closs Traugott

Mouton de Gruyter
Berlin · New York

The Grammar of the English Verb Phrase

Volume 1:

The Grammar of the English Tense System

A Comprehensive Analysis

by

Renaat Declerck

in collaboration with Susan Reed and Bert Cappelle

Mouton de Gruyter
Berlin · New York

Mouton de Gruyter (formerly Mouton, The Hague)
is a Division of Walter de Gruyter GmbH & Co. KG, Berlin.

♾ Printed on acid-free paper which falls within the guidelines
of the ANSI to ensure permanence and durability.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Declerck, Renaat.
The grammar of the English tense system : a comprehensive analysis / by Renaat Declerck in cooperation with Susan Reed and Bert Cappelle.
p. cm. – (The grammar of the English verb phrase ; v. 1)
(Topics in English linguistics ; 60.1)
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN-13: 978-3-11-018589-8 (hardcover : acid-free paper)
ISBN-10: 3-11-018589-X (hardcover : acid-free paper)
1. English language – Tense. 2. English language – Grammar.
I. Reed, Susan, 1959– II. Cappelle, Bert, 1975– III. Title.
PE1301.D36 2006
425'.62–dc22
2006020424

ISBN-13: 978-3-11-018589-8
ISBN-10: 3-11-018589-X
ISSN 1434-3452

Bibliographic information published by Die Deutsche Bibliothek

Die Deutsche Bibliothek lists this publication in the Deutsche Nationalbibliografie;
detailed bibliographic data is available in the Internet at <http://dnb.ddb.de>.

© Copyright 2006 by Walter de Gruyter GmbH & Co. KG, 10785 Berlin
All rights reserved, including those of translation into foreign languages. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher.

Cover design: Martin Zech, Bremen.
Typesetting: META Systems GmbH, Wustermark.
Printed in Germany.

Acknowledgements

Susan Reed and Bert Cappelle have offered me substantial assistance in writing this book. I want to thank them specially. I also wish to thank the various people who have contributed to the writing of the book by commenting on an earlier draft of one or more chapters. In alphabetical order they are: Griet Beheydt, Ilse Depraetere, Raphael Salkie, Elizabeth Traugott, Naoaki Wada, and Christopher Williams.

Table of contents

Acknowledgements V
Table of contents VII

Chapter 1. Introduction 1
Chapter 2. Towards a theory of tense and time 91
Chapter 3. The absolute use of the present tense 171
Chapter 4. The absolute past tense 193
Chapter 5. The absolute use of the present perfect 209
Chapter 6. The present perfect *vs* the preterite in clauses without temporal adverbials 315
Chapter 7. Absolute tense forms referring to the post-present 335
Chapter 8. Temporal domains and relative tenses: theoretical foundations 361
Chapter 9. Temporal subordination in the various time-zones 441
Chapter 10. Two tense systems with post-present reference 529
Chapter 11. Tense choice determined by temporal focus 571
Chapter 12. Preterite *vs* present perfect in clauses with temporal adverbials 589
Chapter 13. Adverbial *when*-clauses and the use of tenses 635
Chapter 14. Adverbial *before*-clauses and *after*-clauses 685

Glossary 759
References 831
Index 833

1. Introduction

I. General introductory remarks 4
1.1 Aims and scope of the work 4
1.2 Symbols and conventions 5
1.3 The illustrative material 6
1.4 The structure of the book 8

II. General linguistic terminology 12
1.5 ‘Situation’, ‘actualization, ‘actualize’ 12
1.6 Phrases 12
1.7 Clause, predicate 13
1.8 Sentences 13
1.9 Alternative definitions of ‘verb phrase’ 15
1.10 Tensed *vs* nontensed verb forms 15
1.11 ‘Present’ and ‘perfect’ nonfinite forms 17
1.12 Lexical verbs *vs* auxiliaries 18
1.13 Transitive *vs* intransitive lexical verbs 20

III. Meaning categories expressed by verb forms 22
A. Tense 22
1.14 Introduction 22
1.15 The formation of the present tense 23
1.16 The formation of the past tense 23
1.17 The formation of the other tenses 24
1.18 The meanings of tenses: expressing temporal relations 25
1.19 Special uses of tenses 27
B. Aspect 28
1.20 Introduction 28
1.21 Perfective aspect 30
1.22 Imperfective aspect 31
1.23 Habitual aspect 33
1.24 Repetitive *vs* semelfactive aspect 35
1.25 Aspectual form *vs* aspectual meaning 37
1.26 Perfect aspect? 37
C. Mood and modality 38
1.27 Definition of mood and modality 38

IV. The precise meanings and uses of ‘situation’ and ‘actualization’ 40
1.28 Definition of ‘situation’, ‘actualize’ and ‘actualization’ 40
1.29 Situation: meaning (denotation) versus reference 40
1.30 Terminological conventions for speaking about situations 42
1.31 Terminology used to refer to situation types and verb classes 45
1.32 Situation types 47

V. Abstract situation types: ontological aspect 49
1.33 Introduction 49
1.34 Ontological feature 1: ‘static’ versus ‘dynamic’ 51
1.35 Ontological feature 2: ‘agentive’ versus ‘nonagentive’ 53
1.36 Ontological feature 3: ‘homogeneous’ versus ‘heterogeneous’ 55
1.37 Ontological feature 4: ‘durative’ *vs* ‘punctual’ 57
1.38 Ontological feature 5: [± transitional] 59
1.39 Ontological feature 6: ‘telic’ *vs* ‘atelic’ 60
1.40 Ontological feature 7: [± evolving] 65

VI. Classifications of situation types 66
1.41 Introduction 66
1.42 Classification 1: states, actions, events and processes 66
1.43 Classification 2: Vendler’s taxonomy 70

VII. Actualization aspect: ‘bounded’ *vs* ‘nonbounded’ 72
1.44 Definition of (non)bounded situations/clauses 72
1.45 ‘Nonbounded actualization’ = ‘homogeneous actualization’ 74
1.46 (Non)boundedness and duration adverbials 75
1.47 (Non)boundedness *vs* (a)telicity 77
1.48 (Un)bounding clause constituents 79

VIII. The aspectual interpretation of a clause 81
1.49 Aspectual interpretation 81

IX. Summary of chapter 1 83
1.50 Parts I and II 83
1.51 Part III 83
1.52 Part IV 84
1.53 Part V 85
1.54 Part VI 87
1.55 Part VII 88
1.56 Part VIII 88

Abstract

The aim of this book is to describe the workings of the system of special verb forms used in English to locate situations in time. In this introductory chapter we lay the terminological and conceptual groundwork which is necessary before we embark on our grammatical description of the English tense system. Our concern is to provide precise definitions of the basic linguistic terms that will be used and to explain the conceptual apparatus that will be adopted both in this volume and in subsequent volumes dealing with the English verb phrase. (The definitions of the terms and concepts used in the book are brought together in an extensive glossary at the end of the book.)

Part I (= sections 1.1−1.4) first gives some preliminary notes on this work's aims, contents, notational conventions, and the like.

In part II (= sections 1.5−1.13) we briefly define our basic linguistic terms, such as 'situation', 'verb phrase', 'verb form', etc. Since this study is intended as the first part of a multivolume grammar, it seems necessary to us to make explicit the way in which we use such terms, despite the fact that readers will already be familiar with most of them, in order to avoid possible misunderstandings.

Part III (= sections 1.14−1.27) is a brief overview of tense and two other areas of meaning that can be expressed by the use of verb forms in English and that interact with tense: the system of grammatical aspect and the system of mood and modality.

In part IV (= sections 1.28−1.32) we take a closer look at the term 'situation'. By this term we mean whatever can be expressed by a sentence (more accurately, by a 'clause'), and for which the utterer has in mind a particular 'actualization' in the extralinguistic world. If situations are the semantic category expressed by clauses, it is necessary to examine what semantic categories are expressed by smaller linguistic units, like verbs and verb phrases, which are often also said to refer to 'situations' in the linguistic literature.

Part V (= sections 1.33−1.40) addresses the properties by which these latter semantic categories (which we call 'situation-templates') can be classified into different types. This section is concerned with 'ontological aspect' (perhaps better known as 'lexical aspect'), which involves such oppositions as 'static' versus 'dynamic', 'agentive' versus 'nonagentive', 'telic' versus 'atelic', 'homogeneous' versus 'heterogeneous', etc.

In part VI (= sections 1.41−1.43), some of these oppositions are used to distinguish four different types of situation proper: states, actions, events and processes.

Part VII (= sections 1.44−1.48) introduces the notion 'actualization aspect'. This third kind of aspect, apart from grammatical aspect and ontological aspect, pivots on the distinction between 'boundedness' and 'nonboundedness', having to do with whether or not a (telic or atelic) situation is represented or interpreted as reaching a terminal point.

In part VIII (= section 1.49) we describe how the aspectual interpretation of a clause may arise through an interaction of the three different kinds of aspect.

Part IX (= sections 1.50−1.56) gives a summary of this first chapter.

I. General introductory remarks

1.1 Aims and scope of the work

1.1.1 The goal we had in mind when embarking on this work was to write a Grammar of the English tense system which was at the same time a scientific study and a work which could be used as a reference grammar by linguists and students of English with a basic knowledge of descriptive linguistics and a fairly advanced proficiency in English. Difficult as it is to reconcile these two purposes with each other, we have attempted to write a grammar that comes up to this double expectation.

The scientific nature of this work means that this is not just another grammar of English meant to be used as a handbook and basically restricting itself to bringing together a number of relevant data which have been revealed and studied in the linguistic literature on the English tense system. It is meant to be a thorough study of that tense system, based on a wealth of old and new observations, and offering a coherent framework revealing the relations between the observations, accounting for them, and ultimately predicting most of them. The framework is a revised version of the 'descriptive theory' presented in Declerck (1991). Although it is presented without unnecessary formalization, it is a rigid framework which could easily be formalized and used in formal approaches like formal semantics or computational linguistics.

In order to render the work, which deals with a complex subject matter, as accessible as possible, we have made great efforts to set out the principles in a very precise and detailed way. The work abounds in cross-references to other sections and contains an extensive index which should enable the readers who wish to look something up (for example, a term, definition, rule or principle) to find quickly what they are looking for. Needless to say, the cross-references and the index, as well as the extensive glossary, are also meant to realize our second goal, viz. to provide a grammar that can be used as a reference work by scholars and by students with some knowledge of descriptive linguistics and of English grammar.

1.1.2 The kind of English treated is Standard British English (including both written and spoken registers). However, there is a link to American English on the (rare) occasions when the two languages make different choices in connection with a particular principle of the English tense system.

1.1.3 Grammars are typically written without systematic references to the linguistic literature (unless they are added to a quotation or are really unavoidable), and without discussion of conflicting analyses. This also applies to this grammar, even though it aims to be a linguistic study as well as a grammar. As a linguistic study, the book is an exploration of how one framework can account for tense in English, rather than a comparative study of other analyses or a comparison of our analysis with the analyses of other authors. Because of this, unless a particular analysis or argument is specifically attributable to one author, there are few references to competing analyses, or to the huge number of books and articles dealing with tense in English. However, a selective bibliography listing some of the literature that we consider basic to the study of tense can be found at the end of the book.

1.2 Symbols and conventions

The following symbols will be used in the following ways:

(a) Braces (= {...}) will be used to indicate alternative possibilities, separated from each other by a slash. (e.g. *If I {was / were} your father, I would be proud of you.*)

(b) Square brackets will be used to separate the relevant clause in an example from its context, as in the following example:

[Michael thought things over.] Rose had helped him after he {had left / left} his wife. [Perhaps she would help him again now.]

In a case like this we are only interested in the sentence that is not within square brackets. The bracketed sentences are just added to provide the context that is necessary for a correct interpretation of the sentence under discussion.

(c) An asterisk before a sentence or constituent can indicate not only syntactic ungrammaticality but also semantic-pragmatic unacceptability:

*The man died for the next two hours.

(d) A superscript question mark will be used similarly to indicate that a sentence or constituent is questionable for a grammatical or semantic-pragmatic reason. A double superscript question mark indicates an even higher degree of questionability.

I have never {worked / $^{?}$been working} on a dissertation.

This time tomorrow I {will / $^{??}$am going to} be driving to London.

(e) The sign # is put before forms that are not ungrammatical or unacceptable but do not express the meaning that is intended in the clause or sentence under discussion. For example, in 1.46.1, the following example is given to illustrate that a nonbounded representation of a situation is incompatible with an inclusive duration adverbial. (The sentence is grammatical on another reading, viz. 'It lasted an hour before John was speaking'.)

John was speaking in an hour.

(f) Small capitals in an example identify the word receiving the nuclear accent of the clause, or (in most cases) an extra heavy contrastive accent.

[“Bill was the one who wrote this note.” – “No.] PETE wrote it.”

(g) In the text, technical terms that are introduced for the first time are printed in small capitals (in blue).

An ABSOLUTE TENSE is a tense that relates the time of a situation directly to the temporal zero-point.

(h) Italics will be used for four purposes: (i) for comments added to examples, (ii) in example sentences that are incorporated into the main text, (iii) to emphasize a word in the text, and (iv) to indicate the relevant word(s) in a numbered example.

In *John saw the house before I saw it*, both past tense forms are arguably absolute past tense forms. *(Both situations are interpreted as factual.)*

We claim that there *is* a future tense in English, though many linguists argue otherwise. *(example sentence)* I saw the house before John *had seen* it. *(The past perfect in the before-clause expresses' not-yet-factuality': John had not seen the house yet when I saw it.)*

(i) Lexical items in a comment (which is italicized) are underlined.

I know that he will do it if you let him. *(Will do establishes a post-present domain, while let expresses simultaneity in it.)*

(j) Real quotations are placed within double quotation marks. Single quotation marks are used to indicate concepts, paraphrases, word strings, etc.

(example sentence) “Bill was the one who wrote this note.” – “No. PETE wrote it.”

John staid there for four years is a ‘bounded sentence’, i. e. a sentence which represents the situation referred to as coming to an end at some point.

1.3 The illustrative material

Some of our examples are constructed; the remainder are drawn from computerized corpora, from the World Wide Web (see below) or from personal reading. The latter are followed by an indication of the source. As far as computerized corpora are concerned, the following abbreviations are used:

BNC	British National Corpus of English
BR	Brown University Standard Corpus of Present-day American English
COB-S	Cobuild Corpus of English (UK, spoken)

COB-W	Cobuild Corpus of English (UK, written)
LOB	the Lancaster-Oslo-Bergen Corpus
SEU	the Survey of English Usage Corpus of Written English.
TLS	a corpus of articles that appeared in the *Times Literary Supplement* in 1997
WSJ	a corpus of articles that appeared in the *Wall Street Journal* in 1989
www	texts from the Worldwide Web, especially from UK sources

As to the www-examples, we have carefully checked that they are indeed examples occurring in texts produced by native speakers. All the examples have also been judged by one or more speakers whose native language is 'Standard British English'. No examples that sounded odd have been included. As to the system of reference to the examples used, we have decided not to mention the full source but only to mark them as '(www)'. The reasons for this are the following. First, explicit reference to the websites in question would reduce the readability of the text, since such a reference easily takes up a complete line. Secondly, because websites come and go, we could never be sure that the reference would still be valid at the time the reader might want to surf to it. Finally, those who wish to check examples can always google them.

The following abbreviations refer to the following books, articles or plays:

AVON	L. M. Montgomery. *Anne of Avonlea.* (electronically available through the Gutenberg project)
BAXT	David Baxter. 'Will somebody please say something?' *Plays and Players*. 1967. 27–64.
BM	David Lodge. *The British Museum is falling down*. London: Penguin. 1989.
CHUZ	Charles Dickens. *Martin Chuzzlewit*. Harmondsworth: Penguin. 1969.
CP	David Lodge. *Changing places*. London: Penguin. 1978.
CRES	N. F. Simpson. *The Cresta run*. London: Fabers & Fabers. 1966.
DOC	Colin Dexter. *The daughters of Cain*. London: Macmillan. 1994.
FFFP	Agatha Christie, *4.50 from Paddington*, London: Fontana. 1970.
FORG	Edgar Wallace. *The forger*. London: Pan Books. 1960.
GLME	Hendrik Poutsma. *A grammar of late modern English. Part I: The sentence. Second Half: The composite sentence*. Groningen: Noordhoff. 1929.
GREEM	Kingsley Amis. *The green man*. St Albans: Panther Books. 1971.
HORN	Norbert Hornstein. 'As time goes by: a small step towards a theory of tense.' *Montreal Working Papers in Linguistics* 5 (1975): 73–112.
JUMP	Tom Stoppard. *Jumpers*. London: Faber & Faber. 1972.
LBW	Colin Dexter. *Last bus to Woodstock*. London: Pan Books. 1977.

LOD	Ruth Rendell. *Lake of darkness*. London: Arrow Books. 1981.
LSW	Colin Dexter. *Last seen wearing*. London: Pan Books. 1977.
MAR	Frank Marcus. ‘Mrs. Mouse are you within?’ *Plays and Players*, July 1968. 29–40.
NICH	Peter Nichols. *A day in the death of Joe Egg*. London: Faber & Faber. 1967.
NMDT	Ruth Rendell. *No more dying then*. London: Arrow Books. 1971.
OSIN	P. D. James. *Original sin*. London: Faber & Faber. 1994.
PIN	David Pinner. *Dickon*. Harmondsworth: Penguin. 1967.
SCRLT	N. Hawthorne. *The scarlet letter.* (electronically available through the Gutenberg project)
SOA	Colin Dexter. *The secret of annexe 3*. London: Pan Books. 1987.
TCIE	Eva Edgren. *Temporal clauses in English*. Uppsala: Almqvist & Wiksell. 1971.
TOCC	Doris Lessing. *This was the old chief's country.* London: Triad Grafton. 1951.
TSM	Ruth Rendell. *Talking to strange men*. London: Arrow Books. 1987.
TTR	Franz Kafka. *The Trial*. Translated by Willa and Edwin Muir. Harmondsworth: Penguin. 1971.
WTBS	Joe Orton. *What the butler saw.* London: Methuen. 1971.

As far as the spoken corpus examples are concerned, sometimes very minor alterations have been made in the interests of easier intelligibility. These include the insertion of commas, some suppression of hesitation signals such as *er*, and ‘correction’ of small production errors where the intended utterance is obvious, such as the amendment of *you'll only buy able to buy* to *you'll only be able to buy.*

1.4 The structure of the book

The book falls roughly into three parts: chapters 1 and 2 provide essential background to the study of tense; chapters 3 to 11 gradually build up a picture of the function of tenses in discourse in English; finally, chapters 12 to 14 provide a more detailed analysis of some of the interactions between tenses and time adverbials in English. Below we give a thumbnail sketch of the contents of each chapter.

In Chapter 1 we define our basic terms and explain those concepts and distinctions that underlie our description of the function of tense in English discourse. We provide definitions of basic linguistic terms such as ‘verb phrase’ or ‘situation’ as we will use them, and give a brief overview of the three main areas of grammaticalized verbal meaning which interact with one another, namely tense, mood / modality and aspect. We go on to explain our view of what sorts of things can be denoted or referred to by a verb, a verb phrase, a clause or an utterance. Finally we explain the concepts associated with what is traditionally considered to be lexical aspect (for example the contrast between a 'state verb' and a 'dynamic verb') and introduce the category of 'actualization aspect' (which contrasts with both grammatical aspect and lexical aspect and involves a single contrast, viz. that between boundedness and nonboundedness).

Chapter 2 lays the foundation proper of our description of tense in English. There is a brief discussion of what is meant by 'tense', with reference to the main issues surrounding the number and nature of tenses in English (for example, the question of whether English has a future tense). We introduce those concepts necessary to describe the way in which tenses are used to locate situations in time relative to speech time and to each other, for example the concept of 'situation time', and the concept of 'orientation time' (or 'time of orientation') – roughly speaking, a 'known' time to which a situation time can be related by a tense. The elements of the framework of the tense theory used in this book are outlined here. These include, centrally, the notions of 'time spheres', 'time zones', and 'temporal domains'. Time spheres and time zones have to do with the way in which tenses in English divide up time. The concept of temporal domain accounts for the way in which temporal relations between situation times are expressed by tenses, or not, as the case may be. (See chapter 8).

Chapters 3 to 7 deal with the meaning and use of the four 'absolute' tenses – roughly speaking, those tenses which relate the time of a situation directly to speech time. Chapters 3 to 5 address, respectively, the present tense, the past tense and the present perfect, and Chapter 6 examines some of the differences between the past tense and the present perfect. In Chapter 7 we take a look at the fourth absolute tense, the future tense, and also at other verb forms that can locate a situation time in the future.

In Chapter 8, we fill in the detail of the theoretical framework on which our description of tense rests. This framework distinguishes between temporal location as it is represented by tenses, temporal location expressed by temporal adverbials and pragmatically implied temporal location. Time as it is represented by tenses is divided into two time-spheres – past and present – and four time zones – past, pre-present, present and post-present. The framework that we propose shows how the four absolute tenses mentioned above establish temporal domains in one of those time zones and how these domains can or cannot (depending on the time zone in question) be 'expanded' by the use of 'relative' (or in some cases 'pseudo-absolute') tenses which relate one situation time to another, rather than to speech time. The final part of Chapter 8 considers some of the interpretive strategies that regulate interpretation of temporal relations when clauses with absolute tenses follow one another and there is no linguistic indication of the temporal relation between them. Specifically, it considers the way in which the (non)boundedness of the situations concerned guides interpretation of the temporal relationships between them.

Chapter 9 looks in more detail at the different sets of relative tenses used to expand a temporal domain, according to whether the domain is centred in the past time zone, the pre-present time zone, the present time zone, or the post-present time zone.

Chapter 10 takes a closer look at the use of tenses to locate situation times in the future, or, to be more precise, in a temporal domain which is centred in the post-present zone. The set of tenses which can be used to establish post-present temporal domains, but which do not relate situations to one another, make up the 'Absolute Future System'. These include not only the future tense but also certain other forms, such as the future perfect or the simple present when it refers to scheduled future events (e. g. *The train arrives at six*). However, when a temporal domain is centred in the post-present, there is another set of tenses which relate situation times either to the central situation time of the domain or to one another. This set of tenses makes up the 'Pseudo-t_0-System', so-called because the central time of the domain is treated as a 'pseudo-t_0' (roughly, a pseudo-speech-time). Thus, in *He will arrive when you are in London*, *will arrive* is a tense form from the Absolute Future System (which establishes a post-present temporal domain) whereas *are* is a tense form from the Pseudo-t_0-System (which expresses simultaneity within the post-present temporal domain in question.) The two systems have different distributions, and the chapter is devoted to a description of the contexts in which each system is either possible, obligatory or excluded.

In Chapter 11, the notion of 'temporal focus' is introduced. This concerns cases in which it is possible to choose between two or more tenses to represent the temporal location of the same situation, depending on whether the temporal focus is on one (represented) time or another. (For example, we may say *We moved to Brighton because it was by the sea* or *We moved to Brighton because it is by the sea*). The choice may be between two (or more) tenses which locate the situation in different time zones or it may be between tenses which locate it within the same time zone. We discuss what difference the choice of temporal focus may make to the interpretation of the discourse.

Chapters 12 to 14, as mentioned above, deal with the interaction of temporal adverbials and the tense of the clause in which the adverbial functions. Chapter 12 explores further the topic which was addressed in chapter 6, viz. the contrast between the past tense and the present perfect when they establish domains in the past zone and the pre-present zone, respectively. The two tenses differ in their co-occurrence with certain types of time adverbial. The relevant categories of time adverbial are described, followed by a discussion of their co-occurrence with the past tense and the present perfect. Chapters 13 and 14 look at the semantics of the temporal adverbs *when*, *before* and *after* and the consequences of these semantics both for the adverbial clauses they introduce and for the temporal relationship between the adverbial clause situation and the head clause situation.

II. General linguistic terminology

1.5 'Situation', 'actualization', 'actualize'

We will use SITUATION as a cover term for the various possible types of contents of clauses, i. e. as a cover term for anything that can be expressed in a clause, namely an action, an event, a process or a state (see 1.42). Unless it is necessary to distinguish between these possibilities, we will speak of '**the situation referred to**'.[1] The verb ACTUALIZE will be similarly used as a cover term for the predicates that are typically associated with one of these situation types. Thus, when it is irrelevant whether a clause refers to the performance of an action, the happening of an event, the development of a process or the existence of a state, we can say that the clause in question refers to the ACTUALIZATION of a situation. In this way it is easier for us to make generalizations about clauses and their reference to situations.

It is important to note that *actualize* will be used as an intransitive verb (similar to *happen*). This is a deviation from the normal use of the word, which is mostly used as a transitive verb. Thus, we will say that *John is building a house* expresses that the situation of John building a house 'is actualizing' (rather than that the situation 'is being actualized'). We adopt this convention because we need a verb that functions in a parallel way to 'happen' but without the implication that the situation is always an event (rather than a state, action or process). A sentence referring to a state (e. g. *Bill is clever*) also represents a situation as actualizing.

1.6 Phrase

A prototypical PHRASE is a group of words forming a unit and consisting of a HEAD or 'nucleus' together with other words or word groups clustering around it. If the head of the phrase is a noun, we speak of a NOUN PHRASE (NP) (e. g. *all those beautiful houses built in the sixties*). If the head is a verb, the phrase is a VERB PHRASE (VP). In the following sentence the VP is in italics and the verb head is underlined:

Jill *prepared us a couple of sandwiches.*

A phrase is only potentially complex. In other words, the term is also used to refer to 'one-word phrases', i. e. nonprototypical phrases that consist of a head only. Thus the sentence *Jill smokes* is a combination of a noun phrase and a verb phrase.

---

[1] There are several other terms that are similarly used as cover-terms in the linguistic literature: 'event', 'state of affairs', 'eventuality', 'process'.

1.7 Clause, predicate

Leaving aside nonfinite clauses (i. e. infinitival, participial and gerundival clauses), a prototypical CLAUSE is a combination of a 'subject' – typically a noun phrase – and a 'predicate'. The predicate – sometimes called PREDICATE CONSTITUENT to distinguish it from 'verb phrase' – minimally contains the verb phrase. Thus, in *Jill prepared us a couple of sandwiches*, the VP *prepared us a couple of sandwiches* functions as 'predicate', as does *smokes* in *Jill smokes*. The PREDICATE of a clause can be roughly defined as 'what is said (or asked) about the subject'. In other words, the predicate constituent comprises all the constituents of a clause except the subject. A clause, then, is a linguistic unit made up of, minimally, a noun phrase and a verb phrase. In this basic clause, the noun phrase functions as subject (and thus, for example, in English controls the feature of number on the verb) and the verb phrase (VP) functions as predicate. However, the predicate constituent may contain other elements in addition to the VP. These constituents – usually prepositional phrases or adverbial phrases – express optional rather than necessary information (see below). Thus, in *Tim killed three spiders last night*, the adverbial *last night* belongs to the predicate constituent but not to the VP, unless it gives important new information. Out of context, the sentence can be paraphrased 'Tim killed three spiders. He did so last night.'

1.8 Sentence

1.8.1 A SENTENCE is a linguistic unit that can be used as an independent utterance. It is a clause or a combination of clauses that does not function as a constituent of a larger syntactic construction and can therefore be fully analysed syntactically without reference to what precedes or follows. In speech, a sentence is normally delimited by pauses and marked by a falling or rising tone at the end. The following examples illustrate this definition:

> Bill hasn't arrived yet. *(pronounced with falling tone)*
>
> [Because it was getting late] she wondered whether her son hadn't missed the train. *(pronounced with falling tone at the end)*
>
> What did you say you wanted? *(pronounced with rising tone)*

Although the prototypical sentence is made up of one or more clauses, which means it prototypically contains one or more verb phrases, verbless utterances are often treated as 'verbless sentences'. Since this book is entirely devoted to tense, which is a grammatical category that can only be expressed by verb forms, verbless utterances like *Good evening*, *Much ado about nothing*, *Yes*, *What a shame!*, etc., will be disregarded.

If a sentence consists of two or more clauses, all but the head clause may be introduced by a conjunction, such as *because* and *whether* in the second example above. A conjunction forms part of the overall sentence, but not of the clause which it introduces.

1.8.2 A sentence is COMPLEX if it consists of a '**head clause**' (also known as 'superordinate clause') and at least one '**subclause**' (also known as 'subordinate clause', 'dependent clause' or 'embedded clause'). The HEAD CLAUSE is the clause on which a given subclause is syntactically and semantically dependent. A head clause may be a clause that does not syntactically depend on any other clause, but it may also be a subclause of another head clause. If it is a syntactically independent clause, it can also be referred to as the MATRIX, i. e. the highest clause in the inverted tree structure representing the syntactic structure of a sentence. Thus, in

> I know that he was at home when the accident happened.

the clause *that he was at home* is at the same time the head clause of *when the accident happened* and the subclause depending on the head clause *I know*, which is the matrix clause of the entire complex sentence.[2]

A SUBCLAUSE is a clause that is a syntactic constituent of, or depends on, another clause (and can therefore seldom be used on its own). Most subclauses have a function that is typically associated with a noun (phrase), an adjective (phrase) or an adverb (phrase). We speak of NOMINAL CLAUSES (or NOUN CLAUSES), ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES and ADVERBIAL CLAUSES accordingly.

> The man *who lives next door* is looking at our house. *(adjectival clause)*
>
> I don't know *if I can believe that* [because my sister denies it]. *(nominal clause)*
>
> I'll help you *if I have time*. *(adverbial clause)*

Subordinate clauses (= subclauses) are normally introduced by such connectors as *after*, *although*, *as*, *as if*, *as soon as*, *because*, *before*, *if*, *once*, *provided* (*that*), *since*, *that*, *though*, *unless*, *when*, *where*, *in case* (*that*), *in order that*, etc. We call them SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS. Before a nominal clause, the conjunction *that* is often dropped (e. g. *I said you could trust me*). In that case we speak of a ZERO-CONJUNCTION.

---

[2] 'Head clauses' are also often referred to as 'main clauses'. However, in connection with complex sentences consisting of more than two clauses the term 'main clause' is potentially ambiguous: does it mean 'head clause' or 'matrix'? The head clause supporting a subclause may itself be a subclause depending on another head clause. It seems odd to use the term 'main clause' to refer to a clause which is at the same time head clause and subclause. For that reason we will not use the term 'main clause' in this work.

1.9 Alternative definitions of ‘verb phrase’

In 1.7 we have defined the VP as that part of the predicate constituent that does not contain optional adverbials. (In many cases the predicate consists of a VP only.) We will stick to this definition in this work. However, it may be useful to know that some linguistic works use the term in a different sense. Some use it in the sense of our ‘predicate (constituent)’, i. e. to refer to the sum of all those constituents of the clause that do not belong to the subject NP. Others use the term in a much narrower sense, to denote no more than the MAIN VERB and any auxiliaries accompanying it. Thus seen, the VP of He *may have been reading a book* is *may have been reading* (rather than *may have been reading a book*). In the present work a string like *may have been reading* or *will read* will be referred to as a ‘verb form’. A VERB FORM consists either of a verb (in the form of a participle or infinitive) plus one or more auxiliaries (e. g. *will see*, *would have seen*) or of a (usually inflected) verb only (as in *They take drugs*, *John smokes*).

1.10 Tensed *vs* nontensed verb forms

1.10.1 As far as English is concerned, only finite verb forms are TENSED. The term FINITE (which means ‘limited’) refers to a verb form that is marked for tense and potentially also for other grammatical categories like mood, person and number. (These markings limit the possibilities of using the form). For example:

> works *(marked for tense, mood, person and number: present tense, indicative mood, third person, singular)*
>
> drank *(marked for tense and mood only: past tense, indicative mood) (unmarked for person and number)*

The form *works* is more limited in applicability than *drank*, since it cannot be used, say, with a plural subject. *Drank* can be used in a wider range of grammatical environments, but it cannot be used in a situation in which a present tense form is required. Being marked for tense apparently stands out as a necessary defining feature of finite verb forms in English.

1.10.2 Because of the crucial importance of being marked for tense, finite verb forms are by definition indicative forms. Compare:

> They *were* in the kitchen.
>
> John wished he *were* somewhere else.

In the first example, *were* is an indicative form because it is tensed: it is a past tense form locating the time of the state referred to in the past. In the second example, *were* is a subjunctive form. Though traditionally called ‘PAST SUBJUNCTIVE’ (because of the formal contrast with the ‘PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE’ *be* and the fact that it has the same form as the past indicative form *were*), the subjunctive form *were* is not tensed, because it does not express or imply any temporal relation between the time of the situation referred to (= John’s being somewhere else) and the time of speech.

1.10.3 In later chapters we will distinguish between ‘**absolute**’ and ‘**relative**’ **past tense** forms (see especially 8.23–32). The former relate the time of a situation directly to the ‘TEMPORAL ZERO-POINT’ t_0 (which is usually the time of speech – see 2.4), whereas the latter relate it to another ‘ORIENTATION TIME’. Thus, *John suddenly complained that he felt ill* is analysed as having an absolute tense form *complained*, which locates the complaining in the past (relative to the time of speech), and a relative tense past form *felt*, which represents the situation of John feeling ill as simultaneous with the situation referred to by *complained*. It might seem as if the past subjunctive *were* did the same job in *John wished he were somewhere else*, but this is not true: whereas a relative past tense form can only express simultaneity with a past time of orientation,[3] the past subjunctive can express simultaneity with any time of orientation, irrespective of whether it is past, present or future. Compare:

> John {said / says / will say} that Bill *was* ill. *(It is only after said that was is interpreted as a relative past tense expressing simultaneity. After says and will say, Bill was ill is interpreted as expressing that Bill’s illness is anterior to the present or future time of saying.)*
>
> John {wished / wishes / will wish} he *were* somewhere else. *(In all three cases the subjunctive form were is interpreted as expressing simultaneity.)*

It is clear from these examples that a relative past tense still has an ‘absolute tense’ component (see 1.18) in its semantics: the time of orientation with which a relation of simultaneity is expressed must form part of a ‘temporal domain’ (see 2.15) which is past with respect to the temporal zero-point.[4] The past subjunctive does not share that semantic characteristic. This means that in spite of expressing simultaneity, the subjunctive *were* is not a relative *tense* form. Since, obviously, it is not an absolute tense form either (i. e. it does not relate its situation to the temporal zero-point), it can only be treated as an ‘untensed’ form. In this respect it resembles nonfinite verb forms, i. e. infinitives, participles and gerunds.

---

[3] This formulation is a simplification. As we will see in 8.12, the semantics of a relative past is that it expresses simultaneity with a time of orientation in a past temporal domain (or in a ‘pseudo-past subdomain’ – see 9.9.1).

[4] As will become clear in 8.15, saying that a temporal domain is past relative to the zero-point means that the ‘central time of orientation’ of the domain is past relative to the zero-point.

1.10.4 ‘Marked for tense’ or ‘tensed’ does not simply mean ‘carrying temporal information’. Nonfinite verb forms may have a ‘perfect’ form, i. e. express anteriority (e. g. *have eaten*, *having eaten*). The point is that the time of orientation to which they relate the time of their situation does not have to be the temporal zero-point. It is criterial of tensed forms that they encode information concerning the relation of the time of a situation to the temporal zero-point t_0 (which is usually the time of speech – see 2.4), whether that relation is direct (as in absolute tenses) or indirect (as in relative tenses). Subjunctive forms and nonfinite forms do not share this characteristic. They are therefore treated as UNTENSED (TENSELESS) forms.

1.11 ‘Present’ and ‘perfect’ nonfinite forms

1.11.1 There are two formal types of infinitives, illustrated by *eat* and *have eaten* and traditionally referred to as PRESENT INFINITIVE and PERFECT INFINITIVE. These labels should not suggest that infinitives are tensed in the same way as the present tense, the present perfect, the past perfect etc. are tensed: infinitives are tenseless – see 1.10.4. However, it is true that the present and perfect infinitives usually express simultaneity and anteriority respectively: in *He seems to be ill* and *He seems to have been ill*, the being ill is located simultaneous with or anterior to the time of the head clause situation, respectively. We will therefore stick to the traditional labels ‘**present infinitive**’ and ‘**perfect infinitive**’ and consider them based on the form of the infinitive, while keeping in mind (a) that ‘present’ and ‘perfect’ here have nothing to do with tense, and (b) that on their default interpretation the present and perfect infinitives express simultaneity and anteriority (to the time of the head clause situation), respectively.

1.11.2 Similarly, there are two participle forms in English: the so-called PRESENT PARTICIPLE and the PAST PARTICIPLE. Like ‘present infinitive’ and ‘perfect infinitive’, these labels are not quite felicitous because ‘present’ and ‘past’ suggest a distinction of tense, whereas participles are tenseless (like the other nonfinite forms). This means that present and past participles are not present or past tense forms, and that they do not necessarily refer to present or past time respectively. Consider for example the present participle *causing* in the following sentences:

> Any hotel guests causing a disturbance *tonight* will be asked to leave tomorrow.
>
> The hotel guests causing a disturbance *at the moment* will be asked to leave immediately.
>
> The hotel guests causing a disturbance *last night* will be asked to leave today.

In each of these examples, the situation of asking those causing a disturbance to leave is located in the future. The situation of their causing a disturbance, however, is interpreted as lying in the future in the first case, in the present in the second, and in the past in the third.

1.11.3 Like the infinitive and the participle, the gerund has two forms (e.g. *walking* versus *having walked*), which we will label 'PRESENT GERUND' and 'PERFECT GERUND', respectively. The perfect gerund always expresses anteriority, whereas, depending on the context, the present gerund can be interpreted in terms of simultaneity, anteriority or posteriority:

> I confirm *being* over 18 years of age. (www) *(simultaneity reading)*
>
> Social workers confirmed *being* overwhelmed by child protection work. (www) *(simultaneity reading)*
>
> [He seems to have been unaware of his sisters,] which appears to confirm *being orphaned* at an early age. (www) *(anteriority reading)*
>
> John has admitted {*making* / *having made*} a mistake last week. Now he regrets {*doing so* / *having done so*}. *(anteriority reading)*
>
> Certainly, it would have been hard to find anyone in the early 1960s who would have anticipated him *making* such a blunder. (www) *(posteriority reading)*

1.12 Lexical verbs *vs* auxiliaries

1.12.1 Verbs can be classified in many different ways. The first distinction is between those verbs that have a full set of forms and those that do not. This distinction coincides roughly with the distinction between LEXICAL VERBS (or FULL VERBS) and AUXILIARIES (or AUXILIARY VERBS). These two groups show differences on various levels (formal, semantic and syntactic). The following offer some illustrations:

> *(lexical verbs)* type, look for, cost, develop, begin, stand
>
> *(auxiliaries)* must, should, can, might, be [V-ing], be [V-en], ought to

1.12.2 LEXICAL VERBS, as their name suggests, have a lexical meaning, that is, a meaning that is denotational (extralinguistic) rather than grammatical (intralinguistic). They are verbs like *burst*, *run*, *change* and *contain*, which refer to situations types of different kinds (events, actions, processes or states – see 1.42). Lexical verbs are sometimes called 'FULL VERBS', a term which is used to indicate that they are syntactically 'fully-fledged' verbs (e.g. they can combine with auxiliaries but can also do without them), that they have a full system of verb forms (called 'CONJUGATION' – e.g. *walk*, *walks*, *walked*, *walking*) and that they are semantically rich in that they evoke a set of concepts of things, persons and circumstances which are needed for a correct understanding of the verb.

Lexical verbs form an 'open' (i. e. unlimited, productive) group. For example, as the world around us changes, new verbs are coined to express new ways to interact with it, such as *google* ("to search the Web using the search engine *Google* for information on a person or thing"):

> I didn't know what a cosmopolitan was in the drinks world so I *googled* it and it said something about it being for tarts. (www)

When we *googled* the combination *I googled it* on 19 March 2003, no fewer than 473 links came up, indicating that this verb has found its way into the English language. On 24 September 2003 *I googled it* produced 1,420 links (and *googled* produced 38,100). Other additions are *webcast* and *spam* (*the web*). New verbs also appear on the scene to express concepts that could already be expressed by other lexical items. Phrasal verbs (particle verbs), especially, provide a rich source of contributions to the expanding lexical stock of English, as testified by recent creations like *dumb down* (= 'reduce the intellectual content or capabilities of'), as in *They dumbed him down to make Jess seem smarter* (www), *gross (someone) out* (= 'revolt') or *ralph (one's food) up* (= 'throw up').

1.12.3 AUXILIARIES have little or no lexical meaning. They are 'helper' verbs, in the sense that they help to form complex verb forms. In doing so they express either a grammatical notion (like 'passive', 'progressive' or 'tense') or one or more modal ideas. This is not to say that auxiliaries are devoid of meaning, but their meanings are more schematic (i. e. more 'skeletal', more 'abstract', less 'full') than those of lexical verbs.

Within the auxiliaries we can make a distinction between two classes: GRAMMATICAL AUXILIARIES and MODAL AUXILIARIES. The former, which are sometimes referred to as 'primary auxiliaries', have a purely grammatical function:

(a) the 'TENSE AUXILIARY' *have*, which is used in forming perfect tense forms;
(b) the 'ASPECT AUXILIARY' *be*, which is used for building progressive verb forms;
(c) the 'VOICE AUXILIARY' *be*, which is used in the passive;
(d) the 'PERIPHRASTIC AUXILIARY' *do*, which is used as a 'dummy' (pro-form) when a VP that does not contain an auxiliary (e. g. *love her*) is used in a construction that requires one (e. g. *I don't love her*, *Do you love her?*, *I do love her*, etc.)

Next, there are the 'MODAL AUXILIARIES': *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *must*, *shall*, *should*, *ought to*, *will*, and *would*. These auxiliaries express special shades of meaning, such as volition, possibility, permission, necessity, intention, obligation, expectation, inference, ability, determination, etc. The modal auxiliaries differ semantically from the first group in that they add lexical meaning rather than fulfil a grammatical function. However, they still have less concrete, and hence more widely applicable, meanings than most lexical verbs.[5] This wider applicability explains why auxiliaries form a relatively small set when compared with lexical verbs.

1.12.4 Because an auxiliary does not have a full lexical meaning, it cannot be used without a main (lexical) verb, except in 'CODE', where the auxiliary is used as pro-form for an entire verb phrase (as in *John will not be sleeping, but I will*). In other words, an auxiliary cannot be the only or last verb form in the VP (except in 'code'). In the following example the main verbs are italicized while the auxiliaries are underlined:

> ["What did he do last night?"] – "He {*studied* / *worked* / may have *slept* / *could / *had to / *would}."

1.12.5 Unlike lexical verbs, auxiliaries have the so-called 'NICE-PROPERTIES'. 'NICE' is an acronym (coined by Huddleston 1976) consisting of the initial letters of the terms *negation*, *inversion*, *code* and *emphasis*. The reference is to the four cases in which the English VP requires an auxiliary. If there is no auxiliary, the 'PERIPHRASTIC AUXILIARY' *do* has to be added. In that case we say that the lexical verb requires 'DO-SUPPORT'. In other words, the statement that 'auxiliaries have the NICE-properties' means that they do not combine with the periphrastic auxiliary *do* in clauses made negative by the use of *not*, in clauses involving subject-auxiliary inversion, in code (see 1.12.4) and in cases of emphasis. By contrast, clauses without an auxiliary need '*do*-support' (i. e. the insertion of *do*) in these four cases. Compare:

> He went / He didn't go / Did he go? / Yes he did / He DID go.
>
> He will go / He won't go / Will he go? / Yes he will / He WILL go.

1.13 Transitive *vs* intransitive lexical verbs

1.13.1 To be used grammatically in a normal declarative clause, lexical verbs require one or more 'ARGUMENTS': a subject, sometimes called the 'external argument' (because it does not belong to the predicate constituent), and possibly one or more 'internal arguments', usually called COMPLEMENTS, such as a direct object (e. g. *I hit him*), indirect object (e. g. *I gave him a kite*), subject complement (e. g. *Bill is ill*), object complement (e. g. *We called him a fool*), prepositional object (e. g. *I looked into the question carefully*). Verbs that can only take a subject argument are called 'INTRANSITIVE VERBS'. Verbs that also take one or more nominal complements are called 'TRANSITIVE VERBS', except if the complement in question is a subject complement (e. g. *Bill is a nurse*), in which case the verb is a 'copula' or 'linking verb' (see immediately below).

---

[5] This is a generalizing statement. Some full (= lexical) verbs also have little lexical meaning (semantic content), e. g. *seem, be, appear* (as a copula), *look* (as a copula), etc. Moreover, some full verbs like *want* are on the way to becoming auxiliaries in that they have a contracted form (*I wanna go to Italy*), which is characteristic of auxiliaries, not of full verbs. The full verbs *be* and *have* also allow contraction, as in *He's fine* or *He's nothing to say*. This means that the distinction between auxiliaries and full verbs is not always sharp: they form a scale with prototypical auxiliaries (like *must*) at one end and prototypical lexical verbs (like *walk*) at the other end.

1.13.2 The term 'transitive verb' does not cover one-complement verbs like *be*, *seem*, *become*, etc. which are LINKING VERBS or COPULAS or COPULAR VERBS. These verbs are not followed by a direct object but by a SUBJECT COMPLEMENT. A subject complement says something about the referent of the subject, i. e. it either ascribes a characteristic to that referent or identifies the person or entity in question.

John is *a plumber.*
He seems *a reliable man.*
The chairman is *that man over there.*
This wine tastes *sour.*

III. Meaning categories expressed by verb forms

There are four systems of the verb phrase which grammaticalize meaning, but only three will prove relevant to the discussion of tense, namely tense itself, grammatical aspect, and mood / modality. (The category that is not relevant to tense is voice.) These three areas of grammatical meaning interact with one another and therefore need to be considered together. Apart from them, this chapter also pays attention to 'lexical aspect' and 'actualization aspect' because these systems of meaning often interact with tense, and are therefore essential to any complete discussion of tense.

A. Tense

1.14 Introduction

1.14.1 We should make a careful distinction between 'tense' and 'time'. TIME is an extralinguistic category. That is, it exists independently of language. TENSE is a linguistic concept: it denotes the form taken by the verb to locate the situation referred to in time, i. e. to express the temporal relation between the time of the situation in question and an 'orientation time' which may be either the 'temporal zero-point' (which is usually the time of speech – see 2.4) or another orientation time that is temporally related to the temporal zero-point. For example, in the sentence *John confessed that he had stolen the money* the past tense form *confessed* locates the time of the confession in the past, i. e. in a time-zone which lies completely before the zero-point. The past perfect form *had stolen* expresses that the theft was committed before the confession. The time of the confession is thus the orientation time to which the time of the theft is represented as anterior by the past perfect. In sum, verb forms are tense forms if they relate a situation time directly or indirectly to the zero-point.

1.14.2 The traditional NAMES for the tenses in English are:

(a) 'Present tense', e. g. *I live here.*
(b) 'Past tense' or 'preterite', e. g. *I made a mistake.*
(c) 'Future tense', e. g. *I will do it.*
(d) 'Present perfect', e. g. *We haven't met yet.*
(e) 'Past perfect' or 'pluperfect', e. g. *I hadn't expected this.*
(f) 'Conditional tense', e. g. *We would soon find out.*
(g) 'Conditional perfect', e. g. *She would have left by then.*

Three points should be borne in mind here. First, only indicative forms are tensed – see 1.10. Second, all tenses have nonprogressive and progressive forms: *I live here* and *I'm living here* are both sentences in the present tense. Thirdly, when the verb form is a complex form involving one or more auxiliaries, it is the first auxiliary (the so-called OPERATOR) that is marked for tense, not the main verb. For example:

John {is / was / has been / will be} blamed for the accident.

He {doesn't / didn't / won't} know the answer.

In this context, 'marked for tense' is to be interpreted as 'morphologically expressing reference to a past or nonpast 'temporal domain'' – see 2.33–35 and 2.41–46.

He promised he *would have left* by tomorrow. *(Would have left is a 'conditional perfect tense' form. It is the form as a whole that expresses the meaning of the conditional perfect tense. However, the element of 'pastness' in its meaning is expressed exclusively by the operator would, which is the past tense form of will.)*

1.15 The formation of the present tense

The forms of the present tense of all verbs except *be* and *have* are homophonous with the STEM of the verb (e. g. *underline*), except in the third person singular (e. g. *underlines*). (The stem is that part of the verb that remains constant in the different forms of the verb, e. g. *unravel* in *unravels*, *unravelled*, *unravelling*.) The stem of the verb can also be used as a present infinitive (which is the citation form of the verb used as an entry in dictionaries).

1.16 The formation of the past tense

The regular past tense indicative form consists of the stem of the verb and a suffix usually written as *-ed*. The fact that the addition of the suffix is sometimes accompanied by a minor spelling adjustment to the stem is not considered as relevant. Verbs that form their past tense this way are called WEAK VERBS or REGULAR VERBS.

play – played; love – loved; cry – cried; equip – equipped; picnic – picnicked

However, there are quite a few verbs in English that are IRREGULAR VERBS or STRONG VERBS. These verbs do not form their past tense by the addition of a suffix (mostly written as *-ed*) to the stem, but by various other means, most of which are illustrated by the following examples:

bend – bent, lend – lent, send – sent, spend – spent

creep – crept, keep – kept, sweep – swept, weep – wept

bleed – bled, breed – bred, feed – fed, speed – sped

blow – blew, grow – grew, know – knew, throw – threw
bind – bound, find – found, grind – ground, wind – wound
drink – drank, shrink – shrank, sink – sank, stink – stank
dig – dug, fling – flung, hang – hung, swing – swung
bear – bore, swear – swore, tear – tore, wear – wore
fit – fit, hit – hit, set – set, cut – cut

The list of strong verbs is to be found in most standard grammars and dictionaries.[6]

1.17 The formation of the other tenses

1.17.1 Many people hold that there are only two tenses in English, viz. the present and the past, because this is the only distinction that is expressed morphologically, i. e. by means of verb endings (or substitutive forms in the case of strong verbs). However, there is no a priori reason for assuming that tense can only be expressed morphologically, and not also by the use of auxiliaries – see 2.7. The tense forms other than the present tense and the past tense are all complex tense forms. In a complex tense form the first auxiliary (= the operator) is morphologically in the present or past tense.

1.17.2 In a complex tense form, the tense auxiliary functioning as operator may be either *have* or *will*. Both can appear in their present or past tense form:

I have done it. *(present perfect tense: '[have + PRESENT] + past participle')*

I had done it. *(past perfect tense: '[have + PAST] + past participle')*

I will do it. *(future tense: '[will + PRESENT] + present infinitive')*

[I promised that] I would do it. *(conditional tense: '[will + PAST] + present infinitive')*

I will have done it by 5 p.m. *(future perfect tense: '[will + PRESENT] + perfect infinitive')*

[I promised that] I would have done it by 5 p.m. *(conditional perfect tense: '[will + PAST] + perfect infinitive')*

The four tenses involving a form of *have* can be grouped together as PERFECT TENSES.

---

[6] For some linguists, 'strong verb' and 'irregular verb' do not cover the same concept, nor do the terms 'weak verb' and 'regular verb'. For these linguists, past tense forms like *set*, *spent*, *put*, *sat*, etc. are both strong and irregular. Past tense forms like *slept*, *dreamt*, *burnt*, etc. are considered to be irregular but not strong: they are weak because they are built by the addition of a dental suffix, but they are irregular in that the vowel of the stem is replaced by another vowel.

1.17.3 In the first person, both singular and plural, the auxiliary *shall* is possible as a (rather formal and less usual) alternative to the future tense auxiliary *will*. This distribution also holds for *shall* and *will* in the future perfect and for the nonmodal uses of the conditional tense forms *should* and *would* in the conditional tense and the conditional perfect.

1.18 The meanings of tenses: expressing temporal relations

1.18.1 Four tenses can be used to relate the time of the situation referred to directly to the temporal zero-point (moment of speech):

> It *is* hot outside. *(present tense)*
>
> Alex *thought* about his future. *(past tense)*
>
> *Have* you *ever* been to Vienna? *(present perfect)*
>
> Prudence *will retire* in a month. *(future tense)*

We will refer to tenses that express a direct temporal relation with the temporal zero-point as ABSOLUTE tenses.

1.18.2 Tenses that express a single temporal relation between the time of the situation referred to and an ORIENTATION TIME other than the zero-time will be referred to as RELATIVE TENSES. They express one of the following temporal relations:

(a) ANTERIORITY: the time of the situation is represented as preceding the orientation time (e. g. *He said he had got up early*).

(b) SIMULTANEITY: the time of the situation is represented as coinciding with the orientation time (e. g. *He said he didn't feel well*). (See 2.17.1 for evidence that simultaneity expressed by a tense form always means coincidence.)

(c) POSTERIORITY (or futurity): the time of the situation is represented as following the orientation time (e. g. *He said he would save us*).

1.18.3 Tenses like the future perfect (e. g. *will have left*) and the conditional perfect tense (*would have left*) express two temporal relations at once: the time of the situation is represented as anterior to an orientation time which is itself represented as posterior to another time. In the case of the future perfect this 'other time' is the temporal zero-point. This means that the future perfect is an ABSOLUTE-RELATIVE tense: it relates the time of its situation to a time of orientation – this is the relative component – which is itself related to the zero-point – this is the absolute component in the meaning of the future perfect. In the case of the conditional perfect, by contrast, neither of the orientation times with which a temporal relation is expressed is the temporal zero-point. This means that the semantics of this tense consists of two relative components. We will therefore call it a COMPLEX RELATIVE tense.

Next to absolute-relative tenses and complex relative tenses, there are also a few (nameless) tenses that are even more complex, because they involve three temporal relations:

> For four months now John *has been going to have finished* his novel by today, [but it is not finished yet.] *(= 'For four months now John has said that he was going to have finished his novel by today.')*
>
> Tomorrow Bill *will have been going to pay* me *back* for three weeks [but I still have not seen a penny]. *(= 'Tomorrow it will be three weeks that Bill has been saying that he is going to pay me back.')*

1.18.4 We can conclude that absolute and relative tenses express a single temporal relation, while absolute-relative tenses and complex relative tenses express two relations, and some tenses even express three relations. These various types of tenses have different semantic structures.

1.18.5 Apart from this, it should be noted that tenses that are basically used as absolute tenses can sometimes fulfil the function of relative tenses. In their default use these tense forms are absolute tense forms: they relate the time of the situation referred to directly to the temporal zero-point. However, the same forms can also relate the time of a situation to a post-present (= future) orientation time which is treated *as if it were* the temporal zero-point. In that case the tense forms function like relative tense forms. Because they relate the time of their situation to an orientation time which is a 'PSEUDO-ZERO-POINT', i. e. a time treated as if it were the zero-point, these tense forms will be called PSEUDO-ABSOLUTE tense forms – see 9.17 for a fuller explanation. For example, compare:

(1) John *was* thirsty last night.
John *has been* thirsty all morning.
John *is* thirsty.
John *will be* thirsty this afternoon [if he eats those crisps].

(2) [Next time you see him John will again say that] he *was* thirsty the night before.
[Next time you see him John will again say that] he *has been* thirsty all morning.
[Next time you see him John will again say that] he *is* thirsty.
[Next time you see him John will again say that] he *will be* thirsty in the afternoon.

The four verb forms in (1) are absolute tense forms: they relate the time of John's being thirsty directly to the time of speech. In (2), the same verb forms relate the time of John's being thirsty to a future orientation time (the time of *will say*), which, as far as the use of tenses is concerned, is treated as if it were the time of speech. The four verb forms are now used like relative tenses.

Because they express a temporal relation with a future 'pseudo-zero-point' – this is their semantics – we can refer to them as 'pseudo-absolute' tense forms. Such tense forms have the *form* of absolute tenses but the *function* of relative tenses.

1.19 Special uses of tenses

1.19.1 In **modal sentences**, some of the indicative tenses (viz. the past, the past perfect, the conditional tense and the conditional perfect) do not express the usual temporal relations. Compare:

> He thinks I *didn't know* his number. *(nonmodal past tense expressing that the subclause situation actualized before the time of speech)*
>
> I wish I *didn't know* his number. *(modal past) (The subclause situation is not related to speech time but to the time of the head clause situation: it is represented as simultaneous with the orientation time indicated by I wish. In addition to expressing this temporal relation, the past tense also represents the situation as contrary-to-fact: it implies that I do know his number. This is why it is called a 'modal' past.)*

The following are similar, except that the modal past perfect expresses anteriority rather than simultaneity:

> I wish you *hadn't told* me the truth.
>
> [What is wrong with him?] He looks as if he *had seen* a ghost!

In conditional sentences like the following, all the tense forms are used for a modal reason, viz. to express unreality. None of them locates its situation in the past.

> I *wouldn't be* here if I *didn't love* you.
>
> If you *had come* tomorrow instead of today, you *wouldn't have found* me at home.

In conditionals of the type illustrated by the last example, the pluperfect (= past perfect) is sometimes replaced by a 'DOUBLE PLUPERFECT', i. e. by '*had* + perfect infinitive'.

> [I've often said to people probably feeling bitter in my own way sometimes I have sat and thought] I'd have coped better if he *had have been* in a wheelchair. (COB-S)
>
> *Had* he *have lost* this frame, it would have been all over for him. (said by a BBC commentator during a televised snooker contest)

This use of the double pluperfect is typical of an informal spoken style and will not be further discussed in this book.

1.19.2 Some tenses have one or more METAPHORICAL USES: they are used to represent a particular time *as if* it were another time. The present tense, for example, can be used to refer not only to the present, but also to the past and to the future. For example, in narration we often find a switch from the past tense to the 'historic present':

> One day, my youngest was sat in the garden brushing her rabbit when up *comes* Oscar. There *are* a few of us in the garden and we *watch* with some trepidation. […] (www)

Under certain conditions, the present tense can also locate a situation in the future:

> I'm leaving in a few hours.
>
> [Hurry up!] The train leaves at 5.37.

B. Aspect

1.20 Introduction

1.20.1 In linguistics – and now we are not referring to English only – the term GRAMMATICAL ASPECT refers to the possibility of using special grammatical forms (more specifically: verb forms) to express various meanings which have to do with how the speaker wants to represent the internal temporal structure of a situation.

Semantically, aspects are different ways of viewing the internal constitution of an actualizing situation. These different ways are expressed by different markers on the verb (i. e. suffixes, auxiliaries or a combination of the two, as in the English progressive form), although not all languages have a marker for every one of the aspectual meanings. In principle, a speaker may use a special verb form to refer to a situation in its entirety (PERFECTIVE aspect), or he may use forms which represent it as beginning (INGRESSIVE or INCHOATIVE aspect), or as ongoing (PROGRESSIVE aspect), or as ending (EGRESSIVE aspect).[7] (As we will see, the latter three options represent the possibilities of IMPERFECTIVE aspect.) The speaker may also use a form which specifically represents the situation as actualizing once (SEMELFACTIVE aspect) or a form which represents the situation as a 'hypersituation' consisting of a repetition of the same situation (ITERATIVE or REPETITIVE aspect). The speaker may in principle also make use of a form which expresses HABITUAL aspectual meaning. (A habit is a situation type that is characteristic of the referent of the subject NP over an extended period of time. Sentences like the following receive a habitual interpretation: *John smokes a pipe*, *Bill can be very clever*, *She {will / would} often go to church*, *Karen used to like toads* – see also 1.23).

---

[7] Ingressive aspect is also called 'inceptive' aspect. Progressive aspect is also referred to as 'continuous' aspect. And egressive aspect can also be labelled 'terminative' aspect.

In English, there are only two aspects that are systematically expressed by special verb markers, viz. progressive and nonprogressive aspect:[8]

> I'm writing a book. *(progressive aspect: the situation is represented as ongoing, i. e. as being in its 'middle')*
>
> I go to the office by car. *(nonprogressive aspect: the reference is to a situation (in this case: a habit) as a whole)*

In sum, what we are concerned with when we speak about grammatical aspect in English is the pairing of the progressive form with progressive meaning and the pairing of the nonprogressive form with nonprogressive meaning. Compare:

> I wrote an essay last night.
>
> I was writing an essay last night [when Henry came in].

In the first sentence, the use of the nonprogressive form *wrote* indicates that the speaker views the situation of writing an essay as complete. (Furthermore, since this situation lies in the past, we know that the essay was complet*ed* – in 1.21.2 we will come back to the subtle distinction between representing a situation as *complete* and representing it as *completed*.) In the second example, the use of the progressive auxiliary *be* (and the suffix *-ing*) indicates that the speaker wants to represent the situation of writing an essay as ongoing (rather than as complete) at the time referred to by the *when*-clause, which functions as 'VANTAGE TIME' – see 1.22.5.

Since grammatical aspect is the grammatical expression of a particular meaning, an aspectual label can be applied both to a particular meaning and to the grammatical form expressing it. Thus, in *John was walking home* the 'PROGRESSIVE FORM' expresses 'PROGRESSIVE MEANING', while in *John walked home* the 'NONPROGRESSIVE FORM' expresses 'NONPROGRESSIVE MEANING'.

1.20.2 In section 1.33.1 we will see that, apart from *grammatical aspect*, there is also so-called LEXICAL ASPECT, which we will also refer to as ONTOLOGICAL ASPECT. The latter category (also called 'AKTIONSART') has to do with the way the lexical material in the verb phrase determines one or more inherent characteristics of a kind of situation, for example, whether this situation is (conceived of and represented as) durative or punctual (compare, for example, *run* with

---

[8] As noted in 1.23.1, there are a couple of auxiliaries that can under certain conditions be used to express habitual meaning, viz. *can*, *could*, *will*, *would* and *used to*, but these can be disregarded here because there are heavy constraints on their use and (especially) because (except for *used to*) their unmarked use is not to express habituality.

arrive). A third sort of aspect, to be distinguished from both grammatical and ontological aspect, is what we will call ACTUALIZATION ASPECT, which has to do with whether the actualization of the situation referred to is represented as 'BOUNDED' (i. e. as reaching an endpoint) or not. For example, [*If this tank starts leaking,*] *twenty litres of petrol will run onto the floor* represents the actualization of the situation referred to as bounded – the situation will come to an end when the twenty litres in the tank have run out of it – whereas [*If this tank starts leaking,*] *petrol will run onto the floor* does not. Note that in these examples it is the (actually bounded or nonbounded) nature of the referent of the subject NP that is responsible for the difference in boundedness of the situations as they are represented by the two clauses. It will be clear from this that actualization aspect is not a question of how a verb phrase describes a kind of situation. Rather, it is a question of how a clause represents the actualization of a situation. (Both ontological aspect and actualization aspect are determined by the choice of lexical material, the former on the level of the verb phrase, the latter on the level of the clause.)

In the following subsections we will give a brief overview of the different aspectual meanings that can be expressed grammatically in naturally language (but most of which are expressed differently in English). This means that in these subsections we will be concerned with grammatical aspect only.

1.21 Perfective aspect

1.21.1 In English, there is PERFECTIVE ASPECT when the verb form used reflects the fact that the speaker wants to refer to the actualization of a situation in its entirety, i. e. that he views the situation as if it were a temporally unstructured whole. This means that he does not refer to the situation as having an internal structure (with a beginning, middle and end). For example:

> I wrote an essay last night.
> I will write an essay tomorrow.

In these sentences, *wrote* and *will write* convey a perfective meaning. However, we prefer not to call them 'perfective verb forms' (as some grammars do) because nonprogressive forms do not always express perfective meaning. Thus, *wrote* does not receive a perfective interpretation in [*They decided to write a letter. Jane dictated*] *while Mary wrote*. We will therefore refer to the form *wrote* as a 'NONPROGRESSIVE' verb form (even if its interpretation is progressive, as in the above example).

1.21.2 Perfective meaning is often defined in terms of reference to a *complete* situation. There is nothing wrong with this as long as one is aware of the fact that *complete* is a term which applies to 'telic' situations only,[9] and which does not necessarily mean the same thing as *completed* (i. e. finished). The two notions only coincide for telic situations that are completely over at the time of speech and are referred to as a whole (e. g. *He crossed the street)*. In sentences like *Here comes the winner!*, *Owen races towards the goal!* or *I will write a novel*, the situations are not yet completed at the time of speech, but they are referred to in their entirety. In *At the time I was writing a novel* [*which was published a year later*], it is clear that the novel-writing must have been completed at some time, otherwise the novel could not have been published; however, the situation that the speaker actually refers to with *I was writing a novel* is not a complete situation but a situation in progress – the reference is only to (some part of the) 'middle' of the situation (see 1.22.4).

1.22 Imperfective aspect

1.22.1 IMPERFECTIVE ASPECT means that the speaker uses a verb form which explicitly refers to part of the internal temporal structure of the situation, i. e. a verb form which does not refer to the complete situation, but only to its beginning, middle or end. For example:

> I *was writing* an essay when Henry came in. *(= 'I was in the middle of writing an essay …')*

There are in principle three kinds of imperfective aspect, depending on whether the speaker focuses on the beginning, the end or the middle of the situation. We speak of 'ingressive', 'egressive' and 'progressive' aspect, respectively. (However, as we will see, in English only progressive aspect qualifies as a grammatical category.)

1.22.2 There is INGRESSIVE ('inceptive', 'inchoative') aspect when the verb adopts a special form (suffix or auxiliary) which restricts the reference to the beginning of a situation, i. e. which represents the situation as just beginning. In English there is no special verb form (suffix or auxiliary) conveying this meaning. Instead, English makes use of an 'aspectual' lexical verb (or 'ASPECTUALIZER') such as *begin, start, commence*, which is a 'full verb' (i. e. a normal verb with a full conjugation rather than an auxiliary) placed before the verb phrase describing the situation (e. g. *She began to cry*). The fact that English needs such a separate aspectual verb means that we cannot speak of 'ingressive aspect' in English. As was stressed in section 1.20.1, grammatical aspect is a pairing of a meaning and a particular form of the verb. In English the second of these two elements is lacking when ingressive meaning is expressed.

---

[9] As we will see in section 1.39, 'telic' means that the verb phrase represents a type of situation as tending towards an inherent point of completion (e. g. *run a mile*), whereas 'atelic' means that this is not the case (e. g. *run fast*).

1.22.3 The same is true where the expression of‘egressive’ meaning is concerned. There is EGRESSIVE (‘terminative’) aspect when the verb takes on a special form (suffix or auxiliary) which restricts the reference to the end of a situation, i. e. which makes it clear that the speaker is focusing his attention on the terminal part of the situation only. Again, English lacks such a special verb form to convey this meaning. Egressive meaning is expressed by the addition of an aspectualizer (aspectual lexical verb) such as *stop, finish, break off, cease*, etc. to the verb phrase describing the situation (e. g. *He finished painting the wall*).

It should be noted that these egressive aspectual verbs are not quite identical in meaning. For example, although *He finished painting the wall* refers to the actual terminal phase of painting the wall, *He stopped painting the wall* does not – in fact it ‘implicates’ that the situation of painting the wall was aborted before the completion stage was attained.[10] So, terminative lexical verbs refer to the termination (= the coming to an end) of a situation but not necessarily to the completion (= finishing) of a situation. (As we will see in 1.39, a situation can be completed only if it is of the ‘telic’ kind, i. e. if it has a natural point of completion.)

1.22.4 Finally, there is PROGRESSIVE (‘durative’, ‘continuous’) aspect when the speaker uses a special verb form, viz. the ‘progressive form’, to express progressive meaning, i. e. to focus on the middle of the situation or on some (punctual or durative) part of the middle of the situation. In English, progressive aspect does exist, since there is a progressive form (built with *be* V-*ing*). For example:

---

[10] An aspect of meaning (or rather interpretation) is an ‘IMPLICATURE’ (or is ‘IMPLICATED’) if it does not follow from the semantics of the construction or the lexical items (= words) used but rather from the context, from pragmatic knowledge of the world, or from “principles of conversation” which are conventionally observed by “cooperative” speakers and hearers (Grice 1975). For example, *Clear away the glasses!* is by implicature interpreted (and meant to be interpreted) as an instruction to clear away *all* the glasses that are relevant in a particular context. However, like all implicatures induced by conversational principles, this aspect of meaning (*the* = ‘all the’) can be cancelled. This is the case, for example, in *Clear away the glasses, except those that are not empty*, and also in *The person who cleared away the glasses overlooked those on the window-sill*. The ways in which implicatures arise have been traced by Grice (1975) to four major principles, which he calls “Maxims”. These ‘GRICEAN MAXIMS’ are rules of conversation which are conventionally observed by “cooperative” speakers and hearers. Grice’s Maxims have been refined in later publications, for example in Levinson (2000), which has given rise to more complicated pragmatic principles, but we have preferred not to refer to these in this book. Grice’s less refined description of the principles of conversation will do for our purposes.

I was reading a book.

Since then I've been working hard on my dissertation.

This time tomorrow I'll be flying to Morocco.

I'm still studying the case.

As is clear from these examples, it is irrelevant whether the speaker views the situation as past, pre-present (= lying in a period leading up to t_0 – see 2.35), present or future. What matters is that he presents a view of the situation as if from within the situation, that is, from within the interval during which the whole situation takes place. In other words, progressive aspect requires that the speaker assumes a 'VANTAGE TIME' from which he views the situation as in progress ('ongoing'). This vantage time may be either punctual, as in *At 7 p.m. I was still working*, or a durative interval, as in *From 2 to 4 I was reading a book*. According to the kind of tense that is used, it may vary as to its location in time:

I was reading a book. *(The situation was in progress at some past time of orientation, functioning as vantage time.)*

Since then I've been working hard on my dissertation. *(The situation, which started before the temporal zero-point t_0, is still in progress at t_0, which functions as vantage point.)*

This time tomorrow I'll be flying to Morocco. *(future vantage time)*

I'm still studying the case. *(t_0 functions as vantage point.)*

Since a progressive representation implies that the speaker disregards the beginning and end of the situation, the relation between the actual beginning and end of the implied full (= complete) situation and the beginning and end of the interval functioning as 'window' (vantage time) on the situation is irrelevant: the two beginnings or endpoints may or may not coincide. Thus, *From two to four I was reading a book* just expresses that the situation referred to in the clause was in progress (though possibly with minor interruptions) throughout the period indicated. My actual reading of the book may have begun at or before two o'clock and may have ceased at four or later, but none of this is relevant to the progressive interpretation of the sentence.

1.22.5 As we have seen, English verbs have no special forms to refer exclusively to the beginning or end of a situation. The only special aspectual form which (at least some) English verbs can adopt is the progressive form (*be* + V-*ing*). This means that in English, imperfective aspect (as defined in 1.22.1) coincides with progressive aspect, in the sense that progressive meaning is the only kind of imperfective meaning that can be expressed grammatically by a special verb form. Thus in *I was writing an essay* [*when Henry came in*.], *was writing* is interpreted as 'was in the middle of writing'. However, in the same way as a nonprogressive verb form can sometimes be used in a sentence receiving a progressive interpretation (see 1.21.1), a sentence receiving a perfective interpretation (= reference to the entire situation) may sometimes make use of a progressive verb form, as in [*Oh, there you are!*] *What have you been doing?*

1.23 Habitual aspect

1.23.1 There is HABITUAL aspect when the verb takes on a special form (suffix or auxiliary) to describe the situation as characteristic of the referent of the subject NP over a certain period of time. English has a special form to express habituality in the past: the semi-auxiliary *used to*. The auxiliary *would* can also express this meaning, but it can express various other meanings besides this. Both *used to* and *would* can create the idea of a past habit involving repeated actualizations of a dynamic situation, but only *used to* can refer to a past habit which does not involve dynamic subsituations:[11]

> He {*would* often *come* / *used to come*} and talk to her when he had finished working.
>
> As a child, Edith {*used to be* / **would be*} afraid of mice.

Will can be used similarly to refer to a present repetitive habit, constituting 'characteristic behaviour':

> [This is our precious beagle Fletcher. (...)] On the weekends, he *will sleep* until 11 am and he *will* actually *make* little huffing noises at us if we try to wake him up sooner. (www)

It is curious that *used to* and *will* / *would* (as markers of habituality) are traditionally included in the treatment of 'modal' auxiliaries. As far as we can see, the meaning they express is not modal but aspectual.

Can and *could* are two other auxiliaries which can express something like a habitual meaning, but they are mostly used for quite different purposes.

> John *can* be very tired when he comes home from work. *(= 'It {sometimes / often} happens that John is very tired when he comes home.')*
>
> When I was young, winters *could* be much colder.

1.23.2 The auxiliaries *will*, *would* and *used to* are the only fully grammaticalized expressions of habitual aspect (which is a pairing of form and meaning) in English. Otherwise, habitual meaning is normally expressed by a nonprogressive verb form, often in combination with a repetitive adverb like *habitually*, *usually*, *normally*, etc.:

---

[11] (Non)habitual aspect is a form of grammatical aspect because it is expressed by means of the form of the verb (viz . the use of a special auxiliary and / or suffix). Moreover, repetitive habitual aspect is a form of grammatical aspect in that it means that the speaker is concerned with the internal temporal structure of the situation: the situation is represented as consisting of several subsituations of the same kind. Nonrepetitive habitual aspect lacks this second feature.

> At the time I *was*n't yet *attracted* by girls. I simply *ignored* them.
>
> I *don't drive* to work. I *take* the bus or *walk*.
>
> John {habitually / mostly / usually} *skips* breakfast because he *gets up* too late.

In the latter two examples, the habit referred to is located at t_0 and is not represented as restricted in time, so that it is interpreted as a PERMANENT HABIT. However, a habit including t_0 can also be represented as restricted in time (i. e. as temporary) by the use of the progressive form. In that case the accompanying adverbial, if any, is a durative time adverbial rather than a repetitive one:

> We *aren't eating* any beef these days because pork is exceptionally cheap.
>
> She*'s sleeping* on the veranda while this hot weather lasts.

The use of a progressive form here leads to a habituality reading of a particular kind: the situation is conceived of as repetitive and as forming a TEMPORARY HABIT. (This does not mean, however, that the progressive itself is a marker of habitual aspect. In the above examples, it still expresses imperfective aspect and the 'repetitive habit' interpretation arises largely via common sense reasoning and 'knowledge of the world' – for example, we know that people do not normally eat uninterruptedly for several days.)

1.23.3 A habit is a state (viz. a characteristic) which may or may not involve repetition: *I used to love that kind of music* versus *I used to go to the cinema three times a week*. Because a habit is a state, and states are 'homogeneous' (i. e. they hold at every time in the course of their existence – see 1.36), none of the instantiations of a REPETITIVE HABIT need actually be in progress at the time at which the habit as a whole is located. Thus, both *We take a walk after breakfast* and *We're taking a walk after breakfast these days* can be uttered (to express a habit) at any moment of the day: for these sentences to be true it is not necessary that the speaker should actually be walking at speech time. (As we will see in 3.1.1, the present tense locates the habit at the time of speech.)

1.24 Repetitive *vs* semelfactive aspect

1.24.1 There is REPETITIVE (or ITERATIVE) grammatical aspect when the verb takes on a special form (suffix or auxiliary) to describe a situation as repeating itself on one or more occasions or as consisting of a number of subsituations of the same kind. In English, which does not have special verb-marking for this meaning, and thus does not have formal iterative aspect, repetitive meaning is expressed by other means, such as the use of a repetitive adverbial (e. g. *repeatedly*, *over and over*), a frequency adverbial (e. g. *sometimes*, *often*) or a plural or collective subject or complement NP accompanied by a nonprogressive tense form.

The murderer *repeatedly* coshed his victim on the head.

I *sometimes* see her off at the station.

Betty writes {*poems* / *poetry*}.

Over 1,000 people have visited the exhibition so far.

However, when the reference is to a punctual (nondurative) situation, an iterative reading can arise through the use of a progressive verb form. (Again, this does not mean that the progressive itself is a marker of iterative aspect.)

All the time I was speaking John *was nodding* assent. *(repeated movements of the head)*

Someone *was tapping* on the window.

He *was jumping up and down*.

The mechanism used here to represent a punctual situation as repeating itself is to use a form (viz. the progressive) which requires the situation to be durative. The only means of resolving the apparent contrast between punctuality and durativeness is to assume that there is a durative 'HYPERSITUATION' consisting of a number of repeated punctual 'SUBSITUATIONS'.

The same meaning of 'repetition on one occasion' can be expressed by a repetition of an intransitive verb:

He jumped and jumped and jumped.

1.24.2 The opposite of repetitive meaning is SEMELFACTIVE or NONREPETITIVE meaning. There is a semelfactive meaning when the reference is to a single individual actualization of a situation. This can either be referred to as a whole (e. g. *I had a walk last night*) or (provided it is durative) as 'ongoing' (e. g. *I was having a walk* or *I felt confused* [*when he said that*]).

1.24.3 The term 'iterative' is sometimes used in a narrower sense than 'repetitive'. 'Iterativeness' is then defined as the description of a situation as repeating itself on a particular occasion, i. e. the representation of a situation as consisting of the successive occurrence of several instances of identical subsituations. The sentence *Bill knocked at the front door* allows this interpretation (as well as a semelfactive one). This sense only represents one type of repetitiveness. There is a repetitive meaning not only if a situation repeats itself on the same occasion – in which case the repetition causes the instances of the situation to be 'subsituations' of a single 'hypersituation' – but also if there is repetition of the same kind of situation on different occasions (e. g. *I've only been in this town three times*; *I sometimes called on her when I needed help*). In this work we will apply the labels 'repetitive' and 'iterative' to both these interpretations. It should be borne in mind, however, that it is only on the first interpretation – the situation is represented as a hypersituation consisting of similar subsituations – that the definition of grammatical aspect as the representation of the internal temporal structure of the situation referred to is satisfied.

1.24.4 As pointed out in 1.23, reference to a repetitive situation leads to the idea of 'REPETITIVE HABIT' if the repeated actualization of the situation is seen as characteristic of the referent of the subject NP over an extended period of time, as in *My sister spends her holidays at the seaside*. This shows that aspectual meanings are not mutually exclusive. This conclusion is also illustrated by *Sharon is paying her bills on time these days*, which represents the situation referred to as progressive, repetitive and forming a temporary habit. That is, the progressive form implies that the durative situation consists of repeated instances of the punctual situation of Sharon paying a bill on time. This durative overall situation is interpreted as forming a habit which is characteristic of Sharon. Due to the meaning of the progressive and the presence of *these days*, this habit is interpreted as a temporary habit.

1.25 Aspectual form *vs* aspectual meaning

Grammatical aspect has been defined as the use of aspectual verb forms or auxiliaries to express aspectual meanings. We have seen that English is very poor where special aspectual verb forms are concerned. The only possibilities are the progressive form (to express progressive meaning), the auxiliaries *will* and *would* (to express repetition of a situation as forming a present or past habit) and the semi-auxiliary *used to* (referring to a past habit). This does not mean, however, that the other aspectual meanings are irrelevant to English. It is simply that they have to be expressed in ways other than by the use of special suffixes or auxiliaries.

1.26 Perfect aspect?

1.26.1 Apart from the aspects referred to above, some linguistic works also speak of 'perfect aspect' in English. This term is introduced to capture the observation that when one of the English perfect tenses is used, the situation referred to is often viewed from a particular *perspective*, namely from the perspective of the time when a result yielded by, or the relevance of, an anterior situation expressed by the perfect form is perceptible. In this terminology, *I have had a walk* expresses perfect aspect, because it can suggest something like 'I'm feeling rather {tired / hot / cold} now', 'That explains my being wet', etc. – present results which are not hinted at by *I had a walk*, which is therefore claimed not to express 'perfect aspect'.

However, the concept 'PERFECT ASPECT' is suspect, for two reasons. Firstly, the 'perspective' referred to above is a temporal viewpoint, i. e. a 'time of orientation' (see section 2.14) to which the situation expressed by the verb phrase *have a walk* is anterior. The expression of anteriority to a time of orientation is a question of tense, not of aspect. Secondly, the concept 'perfect aspect' does not conform to our definition of aspect, because the selection of a perfect or nonperfect tense is not a question of different ways of representing the internal temporal constitution of a situation. While we admit that the present perfect implies some kind of 'current relevance' (see 5.35), we see no reason for treating this as a kind of aspect.

1.26.2 In some linguistic works the term 'perfective aspect' is used to indicate the idea of current relevance which is said to be the core meaning of what we call the 'perfect tenses'. Similarly, nonperfect tenses (such as the preterite) are claimed to express 'imperfective aspect'. Apart from the fact that we treat the present perfect, past perfect, future perfect and 'conditional' perfect as tenses, not aspects (see 1.26), it should be evident that the perfective / imperfective distinction as we have defined it does not coincide with the distinction between perfect tenses and other tenses. Consider:

> John *has been painting* his house. *(The verb form is in the present perfect tense and implies the idea of a present result – John's house is partly painted now – but it expresses progressive (imperfective) aspect: the telic situation is not referred to in its entirety: it is represented as in progress, and hence as incomplete.)*
>
> After her death we found fragments of a novel that she *had been writing*. *(The verb form is in the past perfect tense and implies current relevance at the time of her death: the work had resulted in the existence of a partly finished novel. However, the verb form expresses progressive (imperfective) aspect: the writing of the novel is not represented as complete: she was still in the middle of writing the novel when she died.)*

In short, 'perfect' is a category pertaining to tense, while 'perfective' is a category pertaining to aspect. Since tense and aspect are linguistic categories of a totally different kind, we should be careful not to confuse the terms 'perfect' and 'perfective'.

C. Mood and modality

1.27 Definition of mood and modality

1.27.1 The term MODALITY is used to refer to a semantic category that comprises two types of meaning: the representation of the speaker's assessment of the likelihood that a PROPOSITION (i. e. the content of a clause) is true (or that the situation referred to by a proposition actualizes), and the representation of one of the factors affecting the (non)actualization of the situation referred to, such as (un)willingness, (im)possibility, (in)ability, obligation, necessity, advisability, permission, prohibition, volition, etc. Modality which has to do with the truth of the utterance is called EPISTEMIC MODALITY. The other type is referred to as NONEPISTEMIC (or ROOT) modality. This type comprises both modality which has to do with the speaker's attitude towards the actualization of a situation (e. g. *You must pay me back now!*), and modality which has to do with other factors affecting the (non)actualization of the situation referred to, such as the presence or absence of willingness (e. g. *I won't help you if you don't pay me*), possibility (e. g. *Aerosols can explode*) or ability (e. g. *John can swim*).

1.27.2 Modality, which has to do with meaning, should be distinguished from MOOD, which is a grammatical (formal) category. It refers to the systematic use of lexical verb forms not preceded by a modal auxiliary to express particular kinds of modal meaning. English has three moods, viz. the indicative, the imperative and the subjunctive. These moods reflect different ways in which a clause may function in communication.

I {left / am leaving / will leave} early. *(indicative)*

Shut up! *(imperative)*

[An athlete must have a balanced diet], *be* she resting or training. *(subjunctive)*

Apart from these moods, modality in English is especially expressed by the use of modal auxiliaries (*must*, *would*, etc.) and modal adverbs (*possibly*, *certainly*, etc.).

IV. The precise meanings and uses of 'situation' and 'actualization'

1.28 Definition of 'situation', 'actualize' and 'actualization'

As noted in 1.5, we will use SITUATION as a cover term for the various possible types of contents of clauses, i. e. as a cover term for anything that can be expressed by a clause, namely an action, an event, a process or a state. Unless it is necessary to distinguish between these possibilities, we will speak of 'the situation referred to'. The verb ACTUALIZE will be similarly used as a cover term for the predicates that are typically associated with one of these situation types. Thus, when it is irrelevant whether a clause refers to the performance of an action, the happening of an event, the existence of a state, etc. we can say that the clause in question refers to the actualization of a situation.

In 1.5 it has been stressed that we will use *actualize* as an intransitive verb (similar to *happen*). Thus, we will say that *John is painting his house* expresses that the situation of John painting his house 'is actualizing' (rather than that the situation 'is being actualized').

1.29 Situation: meaning (denotation) versus reference

1.29.1 To explain the notions 'denotation' and 'reference' with respect to the verb and the verb phrase, we will start by drawing an analogy with nouns and noun phrases.

A noun like *boy* has a lexical meaning. The paraphrase 'young male human being' is an attempt at describing this. The noun can be used as the head of a noun phrase (e. g. the noun *boy* is the head of the noun phrase *the boy*). Such a noun phrase has both a meaning and (if it is used in an utterance) a referent. The meaning (or DENOTATION) of the noun phrase results from a combination of the lexical meaning of *boy* and the grammatical meaning of the definiteness marker *the*. The REFERENT (which comes into the picture only when the NP is used in a spoken or written utterance) is a particular boy who the 'utterer' (speaker or writer) assumes the addressee (hearer or reader) can identify on 'receiving' (hearing or reading) the noun phrase *the boy*.

In a similar way, a verb like *walk* has a denotation (lexical meaning). This denotation can be called a SIMPLE SITUATION-TEMPLATE because by combining other constituents (minimally a subject) with the verb we can build a clause denoting a situation, as in *John walked* or *John walked to the church*. A 'simple situation-template' (denoted by a verb) can be turned into an ENRICHED SITUATION-TEMPLATE by the addition of one or more complements or adverbials to the verb. Multi-word predicate constituents like *walk to the church* or *walk* *to the church at five p.m. yesterday* denote a situation-template which contains more information than the simple situation-template denoted by *walk*. The denotation of such a complex predicate constituent is determined in the first instance by the meanings of the verb and of the other components of the predicate constituent (as defined in 1.7) and the semantic relations between them.

If a verb, VP or predicate constituent is uttered, it has a referent, which is an **ABSTRACT SITUATION TYPE**. By ‘abstract’ we mean that there is no reference to an actualizing situation: an abstract situation type is a mental construct, a type of situation as it is conceptualized by the speaker without reference to any concrete actualization. Thus, *run slowly*, *be tall*, *increase*, etc. refer to different abstract situation types.

1.29.2 A clause is a combination of a subject NP and a predicate constituent which minimally contains a VP (verb phrase).[12] The denotation of a clause is a situation. When the clause is uttered, it is used to refer to something. (A referent of a linguistic expression is something whose existence in the / an extralinguistic world is asserted or questioned.) The referent of the clause is then the actualization of the situation in question.[13]

1.29.3 What has been said so far is summarized in the following chart:

linguistic expression	*denotation of the linguistic expression*	*referent of the linguistic expression when uttered*
verb (e. g. *walk*)	simple situation-template	abstract type of situation
verb phrase (e. g. *walk to the church)*	enriched situation-template	abstract type of situation
predicate constituent (e. g. *walk to the church merrily on Sundays*)	further enriched situation-template	abstract type of situation
clause (e. g. *On Sundays they walk to the church merrily.*)	situation	actualization of the situation

---

[12] As noted in 1.7, we analyse a prototypical clause as consisting of a subject NP and a predicate constituent. The latter consists of the verb phrase (VP) and the optional adverbial(s), if any. The VP consists of the verb form (= verb + auxiliaries, if any) + the complements (= direct object, indirect object, subject complement, object complement, prepositional object (= object of a prepositional verb) + necessary adverbial(s), if any). Thus in *John put the book on the table this morning*, the subject NP is *John*, the VP is *put the book on the table*, and the predicate constituent is *put the book on the table this morning*.

[13] Some nonfinite clauses do not have a referent, e. g. the infinitive clause in *For John to do that is unthinkable*. Other nonfinite clauses do have a referent (because they assert actualization), e. g. the participle clause in *Jumping over the fence, I hurt my ankle*. As this is not the place to go into the question under what conditions a nonfinite clause has a referent, we will only consider finite (tensed) clauses in this section. Imperatives too will be disregarded.

1.29.4 In this section the above distinctions are further illustrated. Informally, we can say that the clause *A stranger accosted me yesterday* ‘describes an action’. However, we can also say that the VP *accosted me* ‘describes an action’, and that the verb *accost* ‘describes an action’. In order to speak precisely we need the distinctions made in the previous section:

(a) The verb *accost* **denotes** a **simple situation-template**. In isolation, the verb **refers to** an abstract (i. e. mentally conceived but not actualizing) situation type.
(b) The untensed verb phrase *accost me* **denotes** an **enriched situation-template**. This enriched template represents one possibility allowed for by the simple template: accosting me is a semantic subtype of accosting. The untensed predicate constituent *accost me yesterday* denotes an even more enriched situation-template. In isolation, a predicate constituent does not **refer to** actualization: like the verb *accost*, the predicate *accost me yesterday* does not by itself refer to an instance of actualization. The **referent** of a predicate constituent is an abstract situation type.
(c) The finite (tensed) clause *A stranger accosted me yesterday* **denotes** a **situation**. We can think of this denotation (i. e. the semantic meaning of the clause) as something which is computed from the combination of the denotations of the predicate constituent *accosted me yesterday* and the subject. When the clause is uttered, it has a referent: it **refers to** a particular **actualization** of the situation.

It is worth noting that a clause does not always have a referent in the actual (real) world: it can also refer to (i. e. assert, deny, question or hypothesize) actualization in a nonfactual world, such as a future or counterfactual world. Thus, the conditional clause *If John had written a poem last night* … makes a supposition about the actualization of a situation (viz. the situation of John writing a poem) in a counterfactual world.

1.30 Terminological conventions for speaking about situations

1.30.1 The above distinctions are important, and we really need to make them if it is to be clear what exactly we are talking about. However, it is virtually impossible to do full justice to them in a linguistic text and maintain readability. This is not unusual in linguistics. The following example should make this clear in connection with another concept. In a discussion about the meaning of the past tense in a sentence like *John wrote a poem last night* the following formulation is perfectly correct, but too cumbersome to be used repeatedly:

> The past tense locates the time of actualization of the situation referred to at a specific past time (specified by *last night*.)

This is normally simplified to one of the following:

> The past tense locates the time of the situation referred to at a specific past time (specified by *last night*.)
>
> The past tense locates the situation referred to at a specific past time (specified by *last night*.)

In a similar way, some of the terms introduced in this chapter will often be used in a 'sloppy' way in this work. However, this sloppy use is by no means arbitrary. It observes the following conventions:

(a) Using the term verb phrase (VP)

Strictly speaking, a verb phrase is a phrase (group of words) with a verb as head. Thus, the clause *John presumably left the house* contains the VP *left the house*. (Together with the adverb *presumably*, the VP forms the 'predicate constituent', i. e. that part of the clause that is not the subject – see section 1.7.) However, in *John presumably left*, the VP contains no lexical material besides the verb *left*. This form does not consist of a group of words (= a phrase), but for simplicity it is normally treated as 'the VP of the sentence'. Similarly, in *John left*, the predicate constituent only consists of *left*. In this case the verb form *left* constitutes not only the VP but also the predicate constituent of the sentence.

When using the term 'verb phrase' we will not normally need to distinguish between one-word VPs and multi-word VPs. So we will generally use the term *verb phrase* to cover both possibilities.

(b) Using the term situation-template

In a similar way, there are not many contexts in which it is necessary to distinguish carefully between a 'simple situation-template' (expressed by a verb) and an 'enriched situation-template' (expressed by a VP or a longer predicate constituent). So we will use 'situation-template' to cover the two possibilities.

(c) Using the terms situation and refer to

Strictly speaking, a verb phrase denotes a situation-template and (if uttered) refers to an abstract type of situation, whereas a finite clause denotes a situation and (if uttered) refers to the actualization of that situation. However, for convenience we will generally use the terms 'situation' and 'refer to' in a simplified sense. Thus, we will often use 'situation' as an abbreviation of 'actualization of the situation denoted'. In this sense we can speak of 'the situation referred to by a clause'. (As noted in 1.29.2, the referent of a finite clause is not really a situation but one or more actualizations of a situation. However, it is seldom necessary to make this distinction explicitly.)

In addition, there will be many contexts in which we will use 'situation' in the sense of 'situation-template'. It was argued in 1.29.1 above that verb phrases denote situation-templates rather than situations: whereas *John walked home* refers to (the actualization of) a situation, *walk* denotes a situation-template: it is the simple template underlying more enriched situation-templates like *walk home, walk home slowly*, *walk with a limp*, etc. However, in what follows we will sometimes simplify this (as long as no misunderstanding is possible) and speak of the VP (or verb) denoting situations or even referring to situations. This sloppy use of 'situation' and 'referring' will also be made in connection with nonfinite clauses that do not refer to actualization but denote a kind of situation, such as the subject clauses of *Betraying one's friends is unforgivable* and *For John to betray his friends is unthinkable*. Strictly speaking, such nonfinite clauses denote an enriched situation-template and refer to a situation type rather than to the concrete actualization of a situation. However, it is handy if we can speak of 'the situation referred to by *For John to betray his friends*'.

In sum, while the finer distinctions reflected by the more complex terminology are essential, we will use simplified formulations when it is not really necessary to use the more correct but more complex and cumbersome formulations.

1.30.2 In conclusion, verb phrases can only denote rather abstract schemata for situations, which we call 'situation-templates', and, if uttered, refer to abstract situation types, whereas clauses denote situations and, when they are finite and used in an utterance, refer to particular actualizations of situations. That is, *walk* and *walk to the church* each denote a schematic sort of situation, which has particular semantic characteristics so that it can be classified, for example, in Vendlerian terms (see 1.43 below) as an 'activity' in the first case and an 'accomplishment' in the second case. But both lack some information (such as a subject and a tense) necessary to denote a situation proper, and consequently neither can be used to refer to any particular instance of actualization, whereas *John walked to the church*, having a location in time and a subject, denotes a complete situation and can be used to refer to an actualizing situation. However, we will follow common practice in talking of 'situations' where 'situation-templates' or 'situation types' would be more appropriate, and 'reference' where 'denotation' would be more correct, so that we will talk of both clauses and verb phrases as 'referring to situations'. For example, we will say that *walk to the church* 'refers to a telic situation', even though VPs cannot denote situations, still less refer to actualizations of situations.

1.31 Terminology used to refer to situation types and verb classes

1.31.1 Situations can, for some purposes, be grouped according to the way in which the situation unfolds in time, its internal constitution – does it consist of one unchanging state, for example, or does it consist of various different phases? – and certain other criteria that have to do with beginnings, middles and ends of situations. The point of grouping situations in this way is that this enables us to make interesting linguistic generalizations, as will become clear as this and the following chapters proceed. Two common classifications of sorts of situations (i. e. situation types) will be discussed in detail in 1.42 and 1.43 below. For the moment, we are concerned with the terminology we need to make the distinctions underlying these classifications.

We often find in the literature such terms as ‘PUNCTUAL SITUATION’ to describe a situation which is perceived as having no duration (i. e. as taking up just a point in time) – for example the situation represented by *Jill jumped* or *Norbert knocked*. Similar terms are ‘STATIC SITUATION’ (which refers to a situation that is perceived as being a state, such as the situation represented by *Jill was ill*) and ‘DURATIVE SITUATION’ (which refers to a situation that is perceived as having a certain duration, such as the situation represented by *Jill walked*). Another grouping is that of ‘HOMOGENEOUS situations’, like that referred to by *Jill was in Jutland*. This sentence represents a situation which is felt to be completely uniform, so that any moment of Jill’s being in Jutland is just like any other moment of her being in Jutland. NONHOMOGENEOUS situations are, naturally enough, referred to as ‘HETEROGENEOUS situations’. An example of such a situation is that represented (= referred to) by *Jill planted a juniper bush*, in which we discern various phases rather than an unchanging state. (Roughly speaking, we expect that Jill will be doing different things at different moments of planting the bush.)

As well as applying such labels to situations (and to the clauses denoting them), the literature also applies these labels to the verbs or verb phrases which typically refer to a particular group of situations. We read of ‘punctual verbs’, ‘durative verbs’, etc., by which is meant ‘verbs that typically refer to punctual situations’, ‘verbs that typically refer to durative situations’ and so on. However, the literature is not completely consistent. Thus, next to the somewhat opaque term ‘punctual verb’, we find the more accurate and transparent term ‘transitional event verb’ (sometimes ‘change of state verb’), used to refer to verbs which always or typically refer to situations which constitute a transition from one state into another – for example, *die* or *burst*. In what follows, when we wish to refer to a category of verbs that are associated with a particular sort of situation, we will speak of ‘punctual situation verbs’, ‘durative situation verbs’ and so on, following the pattern of ‘transitional event verb’ (which, however, we shall adapt to 'transitional situation verb', since not all situations that constitute a transition from one state to another are events, in our terms).[14] This move is intended to arrive at a more consistent nomenclature, and to provide a pattern on which new terms that we will need to introduce can be modelled in such a way that their meaning is as transparent as possible: the term 'heterogeneous situation verb' should, we hope, be transparent in a way that 'heterogeneous verb' might not be. Of course, in some cases, the meaning of 'situation' is contained inside another term, notably in the case of 'state', 'event', 'action' and 'process' (see 1.42 below). This means that next to category names like 'punctual situation verb' we will also be using such terms as 'state verbs', 'event verbs', and so on.

1.31.2 It should also be borne in mind that when people speak about 'situation' they often mean 'representation of a situation (by a clause)'. This may create confusion, because one and the same real-world situation can sometimes be represented in different ways. Thus, *John drank beer* and *John drank a glass of beer* can both be uttered with reference to the same (actualization of the) situation, but *John drank beer* represents the situation as 'atelic' and 'homogeneous', whereas *John drank a glass of beer* represents it as 'telic' and 'heterogeneous'.[15] This means that it is not the situations themselves that are (a)telic or (non)homogeneous, but the situations as they are denoted by clauses. A similar example is the use of 'punctual'. Though we normally speak of 'punctual situations' (i. e. situations that are perceived as lasting no longer than a moment), it is sometimes the representation rather than the situation itself that is punctual. Thus, the same real-world action can be described using *yank* or *pull*. In the former case, a punctual situation verb is used, and the situation is represented as punctual; in the latter case, a durative situation verb is used, and the situation is represented as taking place over (perhaps a very short) time. Thus, if the VP is made progressive (*The girl behind her was* {*yanking* / *pulling*} *her braids*), we get a repetitive meaning in the case of *yank*: the situation is represented as consisting of several sharp movements; in the case of *pull*, the situation representation is vague between repetitive and continuous, but, because *pull* represents a situation as nonpunctual, it is at least possible to get a representation of one continuous movement, an interpretation which is not possible with *yank*, e. g. *The girl behind her was leaning back as far as*

---

[14] For example, according to the terminology introduced in section 1.42.3 below, the verb *stop* as used in *The man stopped to light a cigarette* does not refer to an 'event' but to an 'action'.

[15] As we will see in section 1.39, 'telic' means that the situation is represented as tending towards an inherent point of completion, whereas 'atelic' means that it is not. 'Homogeneous' means that the same linguistic expression can be used to represent the situation as a whole as well as to represent parts of it. 'Heterogeneous' means 'nonhomogeneous'.

she could and {$^{?}$*yanking / pulling*} *her braids in an attempt to drag her out of the quagmire.*

However, it would clearly complicate our terminology too much if it systematically reminded the hearer of the fact that we are talking about the representation of a situation rather than about the situation itself. ‘Punctual situation’ and ‘punctual situation verb’ are terms that are both transparent and not too complex. Substituting ‘punctual situation-representation’ and ‘punctual situation-representation verb’ for them would reduce the readability of the text. (Replacing the simplified term ‘punctual situation verb’ by the quite correct ‘verb denoting a simple template for a punctual situation’ would have an even worse effect.) We will therefore neglect the distinction between ‘situation’ and ‘situation-representation’ as long as there is no particular reason to pay attention to it.

1.32 Situation types

1.32.1 As noted in 1.29.1, any verb or verb phrase denotes a situation-template. The nature of the template is determined by the lexical contents of the verb (phrase) in question. For example, *know* represents the situation referred to as having the features [+ static], [− agentive], [+ homogeneous], [− transitional], [+ durative], [− telic] and [− evolving] − see sections 1.34−40 below.[16] These various features are inherent in the lexical meaning (lexical semantics) of the verb *know* and form part of a mode of categorization which in the linguistic literature is known as ‘Aktionsart’, ‘lexical aspect’, or ‘ontological aspect’. This category will be examined in detail in sections 1.33−40. (At this point we are only concerned with the terminological implications of such distinctions.)

Because the above features are inherent in the lexical meaning of the verb *know*, they are present in any predicate constituent using *know* as head of its verb phrase. The features are therefore typical, not only of the simple situation-template of the verb *know* but also of all more enriched situation-templates using this verb (i. e. VPs and more complex predicate constituents). Moreover, features such as [± static], [± agentive], [± homogeneous], [± transitional], [± durative], [± telic], etc.[17] can also be applied to what situation-templates refer to, viz. situation types. In fact, since ‘situation’ is often used sloppily to talk about an abstract situation type, people often talk of ‘static situations’ rather than ‘static situation-templates’ or ‘static situation types’.

---

[16] There is a certain hierarchy in this list of features. For example, [+ static] automatically entails all the other features mentioned. However, this observation is not important at this point of the discussion.

[17] The meaning of the ± sign is not ‘more or less’ but ‘either + or −’, i. e. the feature may or may not be present.

1.32.2 In the linguistic literature the term ‘situation type’ is often used in a sense different from ‘abstract type of situation’, viz. to refer to types of actualizing situations as they are denoted by clauses. For example, Lyons’ (1977) categorization of situation types into states, actions, processes (= developments) and events − see 1.42 below − is often applied to actualizing situations on the plea that the nature of a category can be determined by any constituent of the clause, including the subject. Thus, depending on the nature of the subject referent, which may be [+ human] or [− human], the actualizing situation referred to by a clause using *break* is said to be either an ‘action’ (i. e. a dynamic situation whose actualization is caused by a consciously acting agent, as in *John broke the window*) or an ‘event’ (i. e. a dynamic situation which simply happens, without there being an identifiable agent, as in *The key broke in the lock)*.

In order to avoid any confusion it would be advisable to apply the label ‘type of situation’ to the referent of a verb, verb phrase or predicate constituent only. In other words, it would be ideal if ‘type of situation’ were short for ‘abstract type of situation’. The term ‘type of actualizing situation’ could then be applied to the referent of a full clause. However, this distinction is often ignored in the literature.

1.32.3 In what follows we will examine the features and typology that can be discerned within each of these sets of types.

V. Abstract situation types: ontological aspect

1.33 Introduction

1.33.1 In order to understand the meaning and use of certain tenses and of (non)progressive forms, it is necessary to classify templates for describing situations on the basis of whether or not they represent the situation as having particular ontological features, such as 'static', 'durative', etc.[18] The set of features that are attributed to a situation by the verb phrase representing it are said to constitute a kind of 'aspect', i. e. a particular way of representing a situation in terms of its internal constituency. This kind of aspect is known as AKTIONSART, LEXICAL ASPECT or ONTOLOGICAL ASPECT. It is the expression of inherent characteristics, such as (non)staticness, (non)durativeness, etc., of a kind of situation as it is linguistically represented by a verb phrase that has not yet been marked for progressive or nonprogressive aspect. (By 'inherent' we mean that the kind of situation necessarily has the features in question, irrespective of the context in which it is used.) The proviso in connection with (non)progressive aspect is necessary because, as we will see in 1.49, grammatical aspect may sometimes overrule the ontological aspect of the unmarked verb phrase. Thus, while walking is typically conceived of as dynamic, the sentence *John walks to work* is interpreted as referring to a state (more specifically, a habit, i. e. a type of situation that is characteristic of the referent of the subject NP over an extended period of time – see 1.23). This static interpretation is due to the use of the nonprogressive form of the present tense: the corresponding progressive sentence *John is walking to work* denotes a dynamic situation.

1.33.2 Some of the lexical-aspect features of a verb, VP or predicate constituent are purely a question of representation (e. g. the feature 'slow movement' in *walk slowly*), whereas others are more closely linked to the ontological status of the situation type in the real world. The latter possibility is illustrated by the verb *drive* (when used as a one-word verb phrase), which can only be the linguistic representation of a situation having the features [– static], [+ agentive], [+ homogeneous], [– transitional], [+ durative], [– telic]. (We will examine each of these features below.) Similarly, the situation type referred to by *hit the target* is inherently dynamic (nonstatic), punctual (nondurative) and noniterative; *write a book* represents a kind of situation as necessarily dynamic, durative, nonhomogeneous (= consisting of phases of a different kind) and telic (= tending towards a necessary point of completion – see 1.39 below); *be a man* refers to a type of situation that is inherently static, durative, homogeneous (= unchanging throughout its duration) and atelic (= not telic). However, the features [± telic] and [± homogeneous] are a mere question of linguistic representation, since the verb phrases *drink*, *drink gin* and *drink a glass of gin* can in principle all be used in sentences describing one and the same real-world actualization of a situation. Thus, if John claims to be a teetotaller but I saw him drink a glass of gin last night, I can report what I saw him do by means of *John drank last night!*, *John drank gin last night!* or *John drank a glass of gin last night!*. (The former two sentences represent the situation as atelic (= not tending towards a necessary point of completion – see 1.39.1) and homogeneous, the third represents it as telic and nonhomogeneous.)

---

[18] An ontology is a philosophical theory of what there is in the world, i. e. of the fundamental nature of reality.

1.33.3 Not all the inherent characteristics of the representation of a type of situation are included in the category of ontological aspect. Swimming is only possible in water (or another liquid), but we will not consider the feature [± in liquid] as one of our ontological features. Neither will we distinguish a feature referring to the number of participants in the situation, though that number is essential to some types of situation, such as playing bridge. The inherent characteristics of (the representation of) a kind of situation that we include in our category of ontological aspect are those that are grammatically relevant. For example, the features [± dynamic] and [± agentive] help to determine the possibility of using the verb phrase in the progressive form. The distinction [± telic] is relevant to the use of temporal adverbials – compare *I walked a mile {in / *for} one hour* with *I walked {*in / for} one hour*. But features like [+ in liquid] or [+ four participants] do not have any linguistic relevance (at least in English) and are therefore not included in our set of (grammatically relevant) ontological features. Neither is the feature [± iterative], which is a true ontological feature but will be disregarded because it is not grammatically relevant, i. e. it does not determine any grammatical rule or distinction. (An ITERATIVE VERB is one which represents a kind of situation as consisting of a rapid repetition of subsituations of the same kind, such as *hammer*, *twinkle*, *stutter, rattle, stammer*, etc. While *draw* is a noniterative verb, *doodle* is an iterative one.) Note that when we say that the feature [± iterative] is not grammatically relevant, because it does not determine any grammatical rule or distinction, we are referring to the ontological feature [± iterative], not to iterative grammatical aspect – see 1.24 – nor to the fact that clauses may get an iterative reading as a result of grammatical combinations, such as the combination of punctual Aktionsart with progressive aspect, as in *John was kicking the ball.*

1.33.4 In the next sections we will discuss the various ontological features that determine lexical aspect in English. In doing so we will point out that some of the features can be applied not only to the verb, VP or predicate, but also to clauses and to situations represented by clauses.

1.34 Ontological feature 1: 'static' versus 'dynamic'

1.34.1 A STATIC SITUATION (or STATE) is a situation which is conceived of (and represented) as existing (rather than as being done, taking place or developing) and as being unchanging and hence homogeneous throughout its duration. A static kind of situation is not agentive (i. e. when there is actualization, it is not performed or instigated by an agent – see section 1.35 below) and is not conceived of as needing an input of energy to continue. Situations that are not static are called NONSTATIC or DYNAMIC situations. Such a situation may be punctual (momentary) or durative. A durative dynamic situation is conceptualized as consisting of a number of stages ('slices'), each of which is considered as being slightly different from the previous stage. (Thus, a situation of walking consists of stages which are slightly different because the walker is constantly changing the position of his body and moving forward.) This means that durative dynamic situations involve change and therefore as a rule require a continuous input of fresh energy in order to continue. Punctual dynamic situations too require an input of energy to actualize. For example:

> Bill was a rich man. *(static)*
>
> John is walking. *(dynamic and durative) (The situation requires a continuous input of energy and is conceived of as made up of a number of temporal stages which are similar to each other.)*
>
> Bill will reach the top in a minute. *(dynamic and punctual) (The situation requires an input of energy in order to actualize.)*

1.34.2 The labels 'static' and 'dynamic' are ontological features. They do not directly refer to actualization and are therefore, strictly speaking, not applicable to situations or clauses. As explained before, they distinguish between two kinds of 'situation-template'. However, for the sake of convenience, we will extend the use of 'static' and 'dynamic', so that they apply to the following three cases. Firstly, the labels will be applied to the verb phrases lexicalizing the situation templates in question. Thus, *is a boy* will be said to be a 'static verb phrase', while *walk a mile* is a dynamic one. Secondly, 'static' and 'nonstatic' will also be applied to the abstract situation type referred to. Thus, Kim's being a boy is a 'static situation', or a 'state'. Thirdly, the terms will also be applied to the clauses and sentences used to refer to a concrete actualization of a situation type. Thus, *Kim is a boy* can be called a 'static situation sentence'.

1.34.3 Certain verbs can only be used to refer to a state. We refer to them as STATIC SITUATION VERBS or STATE VERBS. (Some people speak of VERBS OF STATE.) Examples of static situation verbs are: *seem*, *contain*, *know*, *consist of*. The verb *be* can be used both in a static and in a dynamic way, depending on whether the situation which it helps to describe is agentive or not (see section 1.35 for a definition of 'agentive'). For example, *be tall* refers to a state, while *be careful* can refer either to a state, as in *You can rely on him, he's careful*, or to an action (which is by definition agentive and therefore nonstatic), as in *I'm being careful this time*, which is interpreted something like 'This time I'm taking the necessary precautions'. In this agentive meaning, *be careful* is a DYNAMIC VERB PHRASE.

1.34.4 One special type of state is the type that we refer to as 'habitual'. A HABIT is a situation that typically involves repetition and is characteristic of the referent of the subject for an extended period of time. Since a characteristic is by definition a state, habits belong to the ontological class of static situations. We call a habit TEMPORARY if the period during which the characteristic exists is explicitly represented as restricted (as in *He has not played well recently*); otherwise we speak of a PERMANENT HABIT, even when there are pragmatic restrictions on the duration of the habit, as when we are ascribing the habit to a particular person. (Thus, *John walks to work* expresses a permanent habit, even though this habit is pragmatically restricted to that part of John's lifetime during which he works. By contrast, *John is walking to work these days* represents the habit as temporary.)

John is difficult to speak to these days. *(temporary habit)*

We are eating in the kitchen [while the living room is being redecorated]. *(temporary habit)*

William is afraid of the dark. *(permanent habit)*

John walks to work, but Bill takes the bus. *(permanent habits)*

There are two things that need stressing here. Firstly, contrary to what is sometimes written in the linguistic literature, a habit is not a characteristic of a period of time; it is a characteristic of the referent of the subject which lasts for a more or less extended period of time. Secondly, the observation that a habit typically involves repetition does not mean that the subsituations referred to or implied have to be dynamic. Sentences like *William is afraid of the dark* and *Andy is our centre forward* do not imply anything dynamic, but what distinguishes them from nonhabitual sentences like *William is tall* or *My mother is dead* is that they have a sense of repetition – in fact, typical behaviour – which the latter do not have. The sense of repetition concerns an unlimited set of occasions: whenever William is confronted with the dark, he is afraid. Similarly, *Andy is our centre forward* implies a set of relevant occasions (games) on which the question of his position in the team is relevant. By contrast, *William is tall* and *My mother is dead* simply refer to a permanent characteristic, without evoking a number of instantiations on relevant occasions. In this case there is no idea of typical behaviour. It is in keeping with this that

William used to be afraid of the dark and *Andy used to be our centre forward* are quite acceptable, whereas *William used to be tall* and *My mother used to be dead* are not – at least not in the world as we know it. (As we saw in 1.23, *used to* is a grammatical marker of past habituality.)

The use of 'habit' to refer to an instantiated characteristic without dynamic subsituations (as in *William is afraid of the dark*) runs counter to the everyday use of the word. Phrases like *have the habit of* or *be in the habit of* can only be followed by a complement clause referring to a repetitive situation consisting of a number of dynamic subsituations. Still, the term 'habitual' is quite common to express what the four above examples have in common. Since there does not appear to exist a better cover term, it seems best to follow the existing convention, even though it may seem rather counterintuitive when there are no dynamic subsituations involved.

1.35 Ontological feature 2: 'agentive' versus 'nonagentive'

1.35.1 A situation is AGENTIVE if any actualization of it is caused (i. e. performed or instigated) by an agent. The AGENT is the entity that is responsible for the actualization of the situation, in the sense that it actually does something that induces the situation to actualize. The following examples refer to instances of actualization of an agentive situation:

John hit Bill on the nose.

She's walking home now.

An agent is typically animate, especially human. However, as speakers, we also routinely attribute agentivity to nonhuman animate beings and sometimes even to inanimate entities:

Our dog bit the postman and *the Post Office* is suing us.

The computer virus destroyed all our files and sent copies of itself to everyone on our mailing list.

1.35.2 As already noted, a state is by definition nonagentive. Thus, *Bill is an old man* does not imply that Bill does something in order to achieve the effect of being an old man. Events (i. e. dynamic situations that simply happen without implying a performer or instigator) and processes (i. e. dynamic situations that are developments) are also nonagentive:

A stone came loose from the slope and fell down. *(events)*

The accident happened around midnight. *(event)*

This species of fungus is in danger of dying out. *(process)*

The door was opening slowly. *(process)*

By contrast, actions are by definition agentive:

> Bill was opening the door.
>
> Unwittingly, Jimmy {*killed* / *was killing*} the goose that laid the golden eggs.

1.35.3 Linguists often include the feature ‘INTENTIONALITY’ – i. e. the idea that an action is performed {consciously / volitionally / deliberately / intentionally} – in their definition of agentivity. Thus, the *Routledge Dictionary of Language and Linguistics* (Bussmann 1996: 11) defines ‘agent’ as the “semantic role (thematic relation) of the *volitional* initiator or causer of an action” (our emphasis), and Brinton (2000: 279) writes: “These sentences [e. g. *Orlando cooled the water*, *Orlando made the water cool*, *Orlando caused the water to become cool*] are AGENTIVE, involving a human agent who *intentionally* brings about a change in state in an entity” (our italics).

However, this definition of agentivity as involving intentionality may cause a problem. We have argued that agentivity is the main feature distinguishing actions (which are performed) from states (which just hold), and events (which just happen) and processes (which develop). If intentionality is part of agentivity (and agentivity is criterial to actions), we are not able to talk about unintentional actions. But it would appear that actions can be unintentional: you can do something accidentally, or under the influence of drugs, hypnosis, etc. This distinction between intentional and unintentional actions might seem linguistically irrelevant, but this is not always the case. In combination with adverbs like *always*, *forever*, *constantly*, *continuously*, etc. a repetitive habit can be linguistically represented as consisting of actions that are either deliberate or nonintentional. Compare:

> Jim always says something disturbing and spoils the fun.
>
> Jim is always saying something disturbing and spoiling the fun.

For most speakers, at least, *spoils the fun* can only refer to an intentional action, while *is spoiling the fun* can be interpreted as representing the action as unintentional and non-agent-controlled, i. e. as an ‘INCURABLE HABIT’. This is a habit – a state seen as characteristic of Jim – which consists of a repetition of a kind of action which Jim perhaps cannot help performing: he does not necessarily intend to spoil the fun but inevitably does so because of the disturbing nature of his utterances (which are determined by his character rather than by his volition).

On the other hand, it is clear that the default case is for an action to be both agentive and intentional. Intentionality is a strong implicature of agentivity: failing an indication to the contrary, agentive situations will be taken to be deliberate. It is therefore unnecessary to add [± intentional] as a separate feature to the list of relevant ontological features that help to distinguish between the major situation types. In general, [+ intentional] can be taken to follow from [+ agentive], unless there is an indication to the contrary.

1.36 Ontological feature 3: 'homogeneous' versus 'heterogeneous'

1.36.1 A durative situation is conceived of as HOMOGENEOUS if it is conceived of as consisting of parts which are all of the same kind as the situation as a whole. Otherwise it is NONHOMOGENEOUS (or HETEROGENEOUS). The distinction is not applicable to punctual situations.

1.36.2 There are two types of HOMOGENEOUS SITUATIONS. Firstly, any static situation is homogeneous because a state by definition remains unchanged throughout its duration. Secondly, a dynamic situation is homogeneous if it is conceptualized as consisting of a number of stages ('slices') which are subsituations of the same kind as the situation as a whole. In this case it is possible that a concrete actualization of the situation type involves one or more intermissions or accidental gaps, but this does not alter our fundamental way of conceptualizing the situation as a homogeneous situation. Thus the following examples refer to the actualization of a homogeneous situation:

Bill is a reliable worker. *(static, hence homogeneous)*

John roamed the streets last night. *(dynamic, homogeneous)*

Helen practised her stilt-walking in the wood this morning. *(dynamic, homogeneous)*

The latter sentence is not false if Helen occasionally stopped to have a rest or to have a talk with someone she met. Failing an indication to the contrary, practising one's stilt-walking is conceptualized as a homogeneous situation. Possible intermissions are disregarded because they do not affect the essential nature of the kind of situation.

1.36.3 An example of a HETEROGENEOUS SITUATION is drawing a circle. There is no portion (stage, slice) of the situation of drawing a circle that is itself an instance of drawing a circle. (Every portion is an instance of drawing *part of* a circle, which is a different situation type from drawing a complete circle.)

As a further illustration, consider the following:

John drank beer. *(homogeneous)*

John drank five glasses of beer. *(heterogeneous)*

It is characteristic of a homogeneous predicate constituent that it can denote not only the 'situation-template' (see 1.29.1) for a situation as a whole but also the template for relevant portions of that situation. (Portions consisting of, or including, intermissions or accidental gaps are not relevant.) Thus, if *John drank beer* is a correct representation of what John did from 2 to 4, it is also a correct representation of what he did from 2 to 3, or from 2.30 to 3.30, etc. However, if *John drank five glasses of beer* is a correct representation of what

John did from 2 to 4, it cannot also be a correct representation of what he did between 2 and 3, or between 2.30 and 3.30, etc. Unlike *drank beer*, the verb phrase *drank five glasses of beer* therefore denotes a heterogeneous situation-template.

1.36.4 In the above paragraphs we have attributed the ontological feature [± homogeneous] to situation-templates denoted by verbs, verb phrases or longer predicate constituents. However, for ease of reference we will also apply the term to situation types and sentences. Thus, *drink beer* will be said to refer to a 'HOMOGENEOUS (TYPE OF) SITUATION' and *John drank beer*, which refers to an actualization of a homogeneous situation, will be called a 'HOMOGENEOUS SENTENCE'.

In 1.48.1 it will be noted, though, that the (non)homogeneous nature of a situation as denoted by a sentence need not always be due to the [± homogeneous] nature of the situation-template. It may also be due to the quantificational status of the subject NP, to the use of the progressive form (which expresses a kind of 'grammatical aspect'), or to another ontological-aspectual meaning without formal expression, such as progressive meaning without progressive marker or habitual meaning coming from outside the predicate constituent. In all these cases (non)homogeneity is not a question of the lexical aspect expressed by the verb, VP or more complex predicate constituent. For example, while *Water ran out of the cistern* denotes a situation which is conceived of (and represented) as homogeneous, *Three litres of water ran out of the cistern* denotes a heterogeneous situation: no part of this situation can be described by the same sentence. Similarly, while *John wrote a book* is heterogeneous, *John was writing a book* is homogeneous: the sentence can be used to refer to (the actualization of) a situation as well as to any (relevant) part of that situation. And in *Every evening, I would have a glass of port while Sylvia drank a glass of beer*, the second clause has a habitual, and thus homogeneous reading. In sum, the feature [± homogeneous] is not only an ontological characteristic of particular situation-templates (denoted by verbs, verb phrases or predicate constituents) and of the situation types they refer to. It is also a feature characterizing entire clauses, because the source of the (non)homogeneity can be found in the quantificational status of the subject or in the presence or absence of the progressive form or of a formally unmarked progressive or habitual reading.

While (non)homogeneity induced by the nature of the subject can probably still be treated as a question of lexical aspect, (non)homogeneity induced by the use of a (non)progressive form is definitely a question of 'grammatical aspect', not lexical aspect. The use of the progressive form (establishing reference to a 'middle part' of the situation only – see 1.22.4) automatically results in a homogeneous representation of the situation. Thus, the progressive verb phrase *will be drinking five glasses of beer* (which can only be felicitously used if the number of glasses is determined before the situation starts) represents the situation referred to as homogeneous: if *will be drinking five glasses of beer* can be used to refer to a whole situation, it can also refer to parts of that situation. However, in this case [± homogeneous] is not an ontological feature because the choice between a progressive and a nonprogressive form is not a choice between different lexical items. This has as a consequence that in section 1.42, where we define various 'situation types' on the basis of different ontological (lexical) features, we will not consider *drink* and *be drinking* as denoting templates for different situation types: in both cases the situation type is an 'action', i. e. a dynamic situation which is not a change of state and whose actualization is caused by a consciously acting agent.

1.37 Ontological feature 4: 'durative' *vs* 'punctual'

1.37.1 Situations are conceived of as having a certain duration (= DURATIVE) or as needing no more than a moment to actualize (= PUNCTUAL, NONDURATIVE, MOMENTARY):

> They're printing my book. *(durative situation)*
>
> I knocked at the door. *(punctual situation)*

1.37.2 A durative kind of situation normally requires the use of a DURATIVE SITUATION VERB PHRASE,[19] while a punctual kind of situation always requires the use of a PUNCTUAL SITUATION VERB PHRASE. However, there does not appear to be a perfect correlation between punctual situation verb phrases and punctual actualizations of situations. There are two problematic areas. To begin with, on the level of actualization, duration may be the result of repetition. This renders it possible for a punctual situation verb to be used in a clause that is interpreted as referring to a durative actualizing situation:

> Someone was knocking at the door. *(repeated knocks)*
>
> The monkey jumped up and down for several minutes. *(repeated jumps)*
>
> Exactly 14 people stabbed the victim. *(punctual on a simultaneous reading – the 14 people stabbed the victim at the same time – but durative on the consecutive interpretation)*
>
> So far the serial killer has murdered six prostitutes. *(durative on the normal, i. e. consecutive, interpretation)*

---

[19] The word *normally* is necessary here because, as noted immediately below, duration may result from repetition, and the idea of repetition can be due to the plurality of the subject, as in *A lot of people entered the church*. In this case the sentence denoting a durative situation does not contain a durative situation VP.

For ease of reference we will include the situations represented in such sentences in the class of durative situations. (When a more precise label is required, we will speak of a 'durative hypersituation consisting of (consecutive) punctual subsituations'.)

Since the idea of 'durative hypersituation consisting of punctual subsituations' can only be triggered by the progressive form or by a constituent of the sentence which is not the verb itself, it does not play a part in the definition of durative ontological aspect as denoted by a verb denoting a simple situation-template. Thus, in the following sentences, all of which refer to situations that are durative because they are repetitive, the verb used is a 'punctual situation verb':

> I shot five soldiers in less than a minute. *(The idea of repetition is induced by the combination of the plural object NP and the durational adverbial – compare: *I shot a soldier in less than a minute. In order for the adverbial to make sense, a series is required to make the situation durative.)*
>
> One after the other, the ramblers reached the top of the hill. *(The idea of repetition is induced by the plurality of the subject NP and the duration-implying phrase one after the other.)*
>
> Someone was frantically knocking on the back door. *(Repetition is signalled by the use of the progressive form.)*

The above sentences refer to situations which are durative hypersituations consisting of a series of punctual subsituations. Of course, there is no durative hypersituation if there are a number of punctual situations which all actualize at the same time, as in one interpretation of *The fifty people present nodded*. This sentence refers to (the actualization of) a durative hypersituation if the fifty people present nodded one after the other. On the interpretation that the fifty people present nodded at the same time, there is no durative hypersituation, only one punctual situation involving a multiple-referent subject (similar to the situation referred to in *We reached the top at 5.37*, which is treated as a single punctual situation).

1.37.3 The second reason why there is not a perfect correlation between punctual situation-templates (denoted by verbs, verb phrases or more complex predicates) and punctual actualizations of situations is that (as noted in section 1.38.1) verbs like *die* or *kill* can be used to refer either to a punctual transition or to the durative preparatory phase leading up to the transition in question:

> *He died* versus *He was dying*.
>
> *He died instantly* versus *He died slowly.*
>
> *She killed him* versus *She was killing him* or *She killed him slowly.*

Since the durative reading arises only in a suitable context (e. g. in the presence of a durational adverb) or when the progressive form is used, it does not seem to be warranted to classify *die*, *kill*, etc. as possibly belonging to the class of durative situation verbs. We will therefore include these TRANSITIONAL SITUATION VERBS into the class of punctual situation verbs but distinguish between a (punctual) TRANSITION READING and a (durative) PREPARATORY PHASE READING.

1.37.4 Verb phrases denoting a punctual type of situation cannot co-occur with a duration adverbial, except if repetition is implied or if a duration adverbial can be used to expresses the duration of the resultant state (i. e. the state resulting from the performance of the action).

> *Jill reached the church for three hours. *(This is unacceptable because, in the world as we know it, Jill's reaching the church is a single punctual actualizing situation, which could not last for three hours.)*
>
> The clown jumped up and down for several minutes. *(repeated jumps)*
>
> Mother has just left for two hours. *(Acceptable only on the reading that her absence* [*i. e. the resultant state*] *will last for two hours.)*

1.38 Ontological feature 5: [± transitional]

1.38.1 A situation may or may not – this is the meaning of the ± sign – be a transition. A situation is (represented as) a TRANSITION if it consists in a single transition, conceived of as punctual, from one state into another. Verbs like *die*, *open*, *kill*, *pick up*, etc. refer to such a transition. For example, in *John died two weeks ago*, the TRANSITIONAL SITUATION VERB *die* refers to the punctual transition from the state of being alive to the state of being dead. The sentence *Jim suddenly stopped* [*to light a cigarette*] expresses a punctual transition from motion to standstill. In *Our lives changed drastically after that*, the situation referred to is not a transition because it is not punctual. No matter how quick the change was (felt to be), the evolution was more continuous (less abrupt) than the transitions referred to by *stop* and *die* in the preceding examples.

Transitional situations are often the culmination of a preparatory phase. This phase may or may not be explicitly referred to in the sentence in which the transitional situation verb phrase is used. Compare:

> Last week John suddenly died. *(Suddenly rules out the idea of preparatory phase.)*
>
> Last week John was dying. *(Because of the progressive form, the sentence refers to the preparatory phase only.)*
>
> Last week John died. *(Without an indication to the contrary, the hearer will assume that there probably was a preparatory phase of some length, but this is a question of pragmatic interpretation. The sentence itself asserts the transition only.)*

1.38.2 According to the definition adopted here, a transition is always conceived of as punctual. This rules out what in every-day language could be referred to as 'gradual transitions', like the ones referred to in the following examples:

The situation is deteriorating.

The child is still growing.

The music was fading out.

In our terminology, such sentences refer to a 'process', i. e. a durative change of state (see 1.42.5 below).

The definition of 'transition' as a punctual change of state reflects the fact that in a progressive sentence the transition itself never forms part of the 'middle part' of the situation that is picked out by the progressive form. Thus, *John was dying* refers to the preparatory phase leading up to John's death but cannot include the transition itself in its reference. If it did, we could not explain why *John was dying* does not actually say that John died. It is only the context that can make it clear whether or not the transition actualized:

When we found him, John was dying. [But he pulled through in hospital.]

John wrote this poem when he was dying. [We keep it in a frame next to his ashes.]

The fact that the transition cannot form part of the 'middle part' of the situation referred to by the progressive form is due to the fact that the transition itself is the possible end of the process. The end of a situation never forms part of the 'middle part' that is being referred to by a progressive form – see 1.22.4.

1.39 Ontological feature 6: 'telic' *vs* 'atelic'

1.39.1 A situation type (referred to by a situation-template) is said to be TELIC when the verb phrase describing it represents the situation as tending towards a natural (inherent) point of completion, i. e. a necessary terminal point, without which the situation is not complete and at which it naturally comes to an end. In sentences like *John pushed his mountain bike into the garage*, *Betty ran three miles*, *Mr Harris is writing another book* or *Hyacinth sang a line of the aria*, the verb phrase each time represents a type of situation as telic, because it involves reference to a point of completion beyond which the situation (as described by the verb phrase) cannot continue. Thus, once Hyacinth has sung a line of the aria, the situation as described by the VP *sang a line of the aria* is complete and cannot continue, irrespective of how many more lines of the aria Hyacinth goes on to sing.

A situation-template is ATELIC if it does not represent the kind of situation referred to as telic. In other words, 'atelic' means 'nontelic'. Thus, in sentences like *John drove the car* or *Betty ran*, the verb phrase represents its situation as atelic, because it does not refer to a natural (inherent, automatic) point of completion.

1.39.2 It is important to see that there is a difference between conceptualizing an abstract *kind* of situation as *tending towards a natural point of completion* and representing an *actualizing* situation as *reaching a terminal point* (whether this is a natural point of completion or not). The former is a question of ontological aspect, in this case telicity, the latter a question of 'actualization aspect', in this case 'boundedness' (see section 1.44). Both *John drank vodka on his birthday* and *John drank a bottle of vodka on his birthday* represent the actualization of the situation referred to as bounded (i. e. as having come to and end, as reaching a terminal point), but the latter contains a telic verb phrase (because *drink a bottle of vodka* implies a natural point of completion, viz. when the bottle is empty) whereas the former does not (because *drink vodka* does not indicate a boundary). In both *John wrote a book* and *John was writing a book* the reference is to the actualization of a situation that is of the telic kind, i. e. which involves a development towards a natural point of completion, but only the former sentence represents the actualization of the situation as bounded (in this case: as having come to an end, hence as 'completed'). In other words, the ontological aspect category [± telic] has to be distinguished not only from the grammatical aspect category [± progressive] but also from the actualization aspect category [± bounded].

1.39.3 Because (a)telicity has nothing to do with actualization, we can apply the terms *telic* and *atelic* to situation-templates (denoted by verbs, verb phrases and other, more complex, predicate constituents) and, in a derived use, to the situation types distinguished on the basis of the (a)telicity of the template used, but strictly speaking not to sentences (which, if we are still 'strictly speaking', are used to refer to the actualization of a kind of situation). The following are examples of atelic and telic verbs and verb phrases:

> *atelic:* write, write letters, drink, drink whisky, drink some whisky, drink (some) glasses of whisky
>
> *telic:* write a letter, write three letters, drink a glass of whisky, drink three glasses of whisky

1.39.4 Although it is situation-templates and situation kinds, not clauses and actualizing situations, that are telic or atelic, it will occasionally be difficult to avoid speaking of TELIC CLAUSES or TELIC SITUATIONS, because 'clause with a telic situation-template' and 'actualization of a situation referred to by a clause involving a telic situation-template' are very unwieldy expressions. Thus, for reasons of readability, expressions like 'sentences representing a situation as durative and agentive, and containing a telic VP' will be simplified to 'sentences that are durative, agentive and telic'. Still, one should always keep in mind that only the former formulation is really accurate.

1.39.5 It follows from the definition of (a)telicity that the distinction does not apply to punctual situation verb phrases (e. g. *tap on the window*, *explode*, *hit a man*): only a durative situation verb phrase can represent a situation as *tending towards* (i. e. implying a development towards) a natural (inherent) point of completion. A development is by definition durative (otherwise it is a transition – see 1.38.2).

1.39.6 One reliable *test* to distinguish between telic and atelic verb phrases is to try using the gerund form of the verb phrase as direct object of *complete* or *finish*, which refer to the natural point of completion of an action. Only telic verb phrases can be used in this way. (It should be noted, however, that not all telic VPs can depend on both *complete* and *finish*. There are constraints on the use of *complete* which entail that we cannot always substitute *complete* for *finish*. This is not relevant to the reliability of the test, though: if a VP can depend on either *complete* or *finish*, it is a telic VP.)

> ["What did you do last night?"] – "I finished {repairing the roof / *repairing}. *(Repair the roof is a telic VP while repair is atelic.)*
>
> It was 11.30 p.m. when I completed {writing the report / *writing}. *(Write the report is a telic VP while write is atelic.)*
>
> He {stopped / *finished / *completed} being their leader in 1988. *(Be their leader is an atelic VP.)*

Unlike *finish* and *complete*, the verb *stop* refers to an arbitrary endpoint. It can therefore be followed by an atelic verb phrase. If it is followed by a telic one, *stop* is by implicature interpreted as referring to a provisional endpoint preceding the natural point of completion:

> I stopped reading the book at five. *(implicates that I had not finished reading the book when I stopped reading it)*

This test also reveals that 'pseudo-transitive' verbs (like *eat*, *smoke*, *read*, etc.) are treated as telic even if they have no object NP if the speaker conceives of the action as having a natural point of completion:

> It was 11.30 when I finished reading. *(The speaker has a specific book, letter, poem, etc. in mind.)*
>
> [Dinner was served at 8.] We finished eating at 9.30.

1.39.7 Another test is that only telic verb phrases can follow strings of the type *It {took / will take} me an hour to …* (which measure the duration of the actualizing situation up to its inherent point of completion). Compare:

> It took John twenty minutes to run a mile. *(telic verb phrase)*
>
> ?It took John an hour to run. *(atelic verb phrase) (If judged acceptable, the only possible interpretation is 'It took John an hour to reach the point of beginning to run'. There is no reading in which the duration of the running itself is measured.)*
>
> It will take Bill a long time to read that book. *(telic verb phrase)*

> ?It will take Bill a long time to read books. *(atelic verb phrase) (If acceptable, the sentence can only be interpreted as 'It will last a long time before Bill starts reading books'. There is no reading in which the duration of the situation of reading books itself is measured.)*

1.39.8 We have already stressed that (a)telicity is not a characteristic of sentences (since the nature of the subject does not play a part in making the distinction)[20] but of verbs and verb phrases. In fact, various constituents of the verb phrase can determine the (a)telic nature of the situation-template. For example, *walk* is an atelic verb, but *walk a mile* and *walk for two hours* are telic situation-templates. In the latter examples, the 'TELICIZING' constituents (*a mile*, *for two hours*) 'measure' the length of the conceptualized type of situation. Measuring the duration of a situation naturally means considering it from beginning to end. A verb phrase involving a measure phrase therefore naturally represents a kind of situation as having a point of completion, i. e. as telic. (At least, this is the case as long as there is no reference to actualization, i. e. as long as the VP is used in isolation, as an infinitival form, and not as the inflected VP of a tensed clause – see below). In *write a book*, the 'TELOS' (point of completion) is implied rather than indicated by a phrase with a definite meaning, but there is measuring in the sense that a book is typically conceived of as having an end and as constituting a unit of writing. In this case the idea of a 'telos' is what Grice (1975) calls a 'conventional' (= noncancellable) pragmatic implicature of the infinitival VP *write a book*.

From a pragmatic point of view, there are only two kinds of verb phrase that can measure a type of situation. One is exemplified by *write a book* or *build a wall*, in which the point of completion is conventionally implicated, but remains indefinite (i. e. writing a book and building a wall take up a specific amount of time, but the precise duration differs according to the length of the book or the size of the wall and is unspecified when the verb phrase *write a book* or *build a wall* is used). The other kind of measuring VP consists of verb phrases which specify the exact location of the point of completion in time or space, as when we use a verb phrase like *walk for two hours* (which involves an adverbial indicating a specific duration), *walk a mile* (which involves an indication of specific distance) or go *into the church* (which involves an adverbial specifying a goal that is reached).

If the speaker uses a telic VP in a clause referring to the present or future, the point of completion is not yet reached at speech time. This means that reference to the precise length (i. e. duration or distance) of the situation, as in

---

[20] Not only in *John walked* but also in *Three people walked* the VP is atelic. It is irrelevant to this whether the three people walked together or one after another. Since *walk* is atelic, the situation of the third person walking has no inherent point of completion, and so the cumulative hypersituation of three people walking cannot have an inherent point of completion either.

She is walking for two hours, is pragmatically only possible if the speaker knows in advance what the length of the situation is going to be. This is a very important point, which is often neglected because the vast majority of examples adduced to illustrate claims in connection with (a)telicity are in the past tense. A sentence in the past tense typically refers to a 'bounded' situation, more particularly to a situation whose actualization terminated before the time of speech. This is the case irrespective of whether the VP is telic (e. g. *John went to London on his birthday*) or atelic (e. g. *John was in London on his birthday*). Conclusions drawn from examples in the past tense therefore often concern boundedness rather than telicity. To illustrate the (a)telic nature of a situation-template it is therefore better to use the VP in a present tense sentence in the progressive form. Examples with a telic VP like *John is running two miles*. [*He is nearly half-way now.*] or *John is running for 45 minutes*. [*He is nearly half-way now.*] are then only acceptable if the speaker knows in advance what the length of the complete situation is going to be. Only in that case is it pragmatically possible for him to use a telic VP specifying the precise length (i. e. duration or distance) of the conceptualized kind of situation (whose actualization is represented as still incomplete).

On a higher level than the VP, viz. on the level of the clause (which refers to actualization), the indication of the full length of a situation can also be the result of measuring the situation when the endpoint of the actualization is reached, as in *He had walked for two hours* [*before he reached the village*]. However, what is measured here is not a kind of situation but a particular instance of actualization. As we will see in section 1.48.2, when an adverbial like *for two hours* is the result of this kind of measuring, it renders the clause (and the actualizing situation referred to) bounded, but it does not affect the atelic nature of the kind of situation denoted by the VP (*walked*). In other words, *for two hours* is then a 'bounding' constituent, but not a telicizing one. A measure phrase is telicizing only if it indicates the pre-determined length of a kind of situation. In that case the speaker is able to indicate that length because he knows in advance what it is going to be, as in the following:

John *will walk a mile* tomorrow.

John *was walking a mile* when he had a heart attack.

John *was walking for two hours* when he had a heart attack.

In these examples *a mile* and *for two hours* indicate the natural terminal point of a pre-determined telic situation type: the description of the kind of situation is not *walk* (which is atelic) but *walk a mile* or *walk for two hours*.

1.40 Ontological feature 7: [± evolving]

1.40.1 A verb phrase may or may not represent a type of situation as EVOLVING, i. e. as gradually developing. Compare:

> John drew a circle. *(The situation is represented as dynamic, agentive and telic, but not as evolving.)*
>
> The situation deteriorated. *(dynamic, nonagentive, atelic, and evolving)*

Evolving situations (e. g. growing, getting dark, diminishing) are always (conceived of as) dynamic, durative, nonagentive and consisting in a gradual change. The latter feature means that each stage of an evolving situation is similar to the preceding stage, except that it usually represents a higher or lower value on a scale. Prototypical verbs denoting an evolving situation are *change* and *develop* (in their intransitive use, i. e. when they are nonagentive). They imply movement on an implicit scale.

1.40.2 Punctual situations are by definition not evolving, because any evolution takes time. States are not evolving either, because an evolution involves change, while states are by definition unchanging throughout their duration.

1.40.3 In section 1.33.1 it was noted that grammatical aspect can sometimes overrule ontological aspect. We saw that *John was writing two letters* is homogeneous, although *John wrote two letters* is not. In the same way, the progressive form can sometimes change [− evolving] into [+ evolving]. Compare *John died*, which represents a situation that is a punctual transition (and hence not evolving) with *John was dying*, which represents the situation as evolving, i. e. as nonstatic, nonagentive and gradually developing.

VI. Classifications of situation types

1.41 Introduction

On the basis of the ontological features identified in section 1.33–40 various types of situation-templates can be discerned. These ontological features can also be used to distinguish the various abstract situation types referred to by the linguistic expressions (verbs, VPs and predicate constituents) denoting these situation-templates. Moreover, we can also apply the ontological features to concrete actualizations of situations (and to the linguistic expressions – i. e. clauses – referring to them). This is because the actualization of a situation is referred to by a clause, which consists of a subject and a predicate constituent. As we have seen, the subject can help to determine some of the ontological features, e. g. (non)homogeneity – see 1.36.4 – or durativity – see 1.37.2. Otherwise the ontological features necessary to distinguish between the types of situation are determined by elements in the predicate constituent. It is therefore perfectly possible to build a classification of situation types on the basis of the ontological features distinguished in sections 1.33–40 under the heading of 'ontological aspect'.

Apart from the fact that each ontological distinction (e. g. 'static' versus 'dynamic') by itself divides all situations into two types, there are two well-known typologies which are based on more than one ontological distinction. One is Lyons' (1977) classification of situations into 'states', 'actions', 'processes' and 'events'; the other is Vendler's (1967) classification of situations into 'states', 'activities', 'accomplishments' and 'achievements'. In the following subsections we will briefly examine these two classifications.

1.42 Classification 1: states, actions, events and processes

In this section we introduce a categorization of situation kinds which reflects our intuitive distinction between different kinds of actualization (determined by the choice of verb, verb phrase, predicate constituent and subject of the clause). The division in question is that between 'states', 'actions', 'processes' and 'events' – a fourfold distinction proposed by Lyons (1977). The conclusion of the discussion will be that this is an extremely useful classification, provided we slightly adapt some of Lyons's definitions – see 1.42.5.

1.42.1 A STATE (STATIC SITUATION) is a kind of situation which is conceived of as existing (rather than as being done, taking place or developing) and as homogeneous (because unchanging) throughout its duration. A state is not agentive (i. e. when there is actualization, it is not performed or instigated by an agent – see section 1.35 above) and is not conceived of as needing a continuous input of energy to continue.

1.42.2 Situations that are not static are called NONSTATIC or DYNAMIC. A dynamic situation may be (conceived of as) either punctual (e. g. knocking) or durative (e. g. building something). In the latter case, the dynamic situation is conceptualized as consisting of a number of stages ('slices'), each of which may be different from (though possibly of the same kind as) the previous stage. This means that durative dynamic situations involve change and therefore as a rule require a continuous input of fresh energy in order to continue.

> Bill was a teacher. *(static)*
>
> I need more money. Everything costs so much. *(static situations)*
>
> I believe he is right. *(static situations)*
>
> John walked in the wood this morning. *(dynamic: the situation is conceived of as made up of a number of temporal stages which are similar to each other but are essentially different: at every new stage John has moved a bit forward and his body is in a slightly different position.)*
>
> Bill will write a novel. *(Writing a novel is a dynamic situation.)*

1.42.3 Within the class of nonstatic (dynamic) situations, we will distinguish between actions, events and processes. ACTIONS differ from the latter two situation types in that they actualize under the control of an agent (e. g. *John dug a hole*), whereas the latter do not (e. g. *John fell off the ladder*; *The population diminished rapidly*). An EVENT is a dynamic kind of situation which is not controlled by an agent but just happens (e. g. bursting, exploding, falling off a ladder, snowing). As is clear from these examples, an event may be (conceived of as) punctual or durative. A PROCESS (e. g. changing, getting dark, diminishing) is also dynamic and nonagentive, but is always (conceived of as) durative and involving incremental change that implies a scale of some sort. This means that each stage of a process is similar to the preceding stage, except that it usually represents a higher or lower value on a scale. While prototypical process verbs like *change* or *develop* just imply movement on an implicit scale, process verbs like *increase* or *decrease* emphasize that the subsequent stages of the process correspond with different quantificational values on the scale, each value being placed just above or below the value of the preceding stage.[21]

1.42.4 Certain verbs can only be used with reference to a dynamic (nonstatic) kind of situation (i. e. an action, event or process), unless they are used in a sentence that receives a habitual interpretation.[22] Such verbs are commonly called ‘dynamic verbs’. However, we will stick to the convention introduced in 1.37.2 (in connection with punctual / durative) and speak of ‘dynamic situation verbs’ and ‘dynamic situation verb phrases’, which are more consistent and more transparent terms than ‘dynamic verbs’ and ‘dynamic verb phrases’.

---

[21] In the (especially philosophically or logically oriented) linguistic literature the term *process* is sometimes used in a different sense, viz. in the sense of our cover-term 'situation'. A sentence like *John is walking* is then considered as a process (rather than as an action in progress). We will not follow this convention.

Verbs which in their default meaning (i. e. without habitual meaning and without being put in the progressive form) refer to a process, action or event will be called PROCESS VERBS, ACTION VERBS and EVENT VERBS, respectively. The following are some illustrations:

(process verbs) change, grow, mature, die, widen, slow down, improve, thicken, deteriorate, strengthen, diminish, darken, deepen, develop, increase

(action verbs) walk, read, drink, look at, write, eat, abandon, ask, play

(event verbs) explode, burst, take place, rain, occur, happen, break down, snow, befall

1.42.5 The above classification is based on the ontological features [± static], [± evolving] and [± agentive]. A STATE is a static situation (see section 1.34.1). An ACTION is an agentive dynamic situation (e. g. digging a hole); an EVENT is a nonagentive nonevolving dynamic situation (e. g. falling off a ladder); a PROCESS is a nonagentive evolving dynamic situation (e. g. becoming dark). This means that this ontologically based classification can be represented by the following chart:

	static	evolving	agentive
state	+	–	–
action	–	–	+
process	–	+	–
event	–	–	–

In this chart all the relevant distinctive features are referred to. Other ontological features need not be mentioned because they either follow from the three that are exploited or do not help to clarify the classification. Thus, it is not useful to mark the four situation types for the distinctions (a)telic and (non)homogeneous because (a) all states are atelic and homogeneous, and (b) all three nonstatic situation types may or may not be telic or homogeneous. Similarly, it is superfluous to refer to the feature [± transitional], since states and processes are always nontransitional, whereas actions and events may or may not be transitional. (As noted in 1.38.1, a situation is transitional if it consists in a single transition, conceived of as punctual, from one state into another.) And it would also be redundant to refer to the feature [± durative], since states and processes are always durative, whereas actions and events may or may not be. In sum, the only features that are relevant are those that set off one situation type from all the others, i. e. those for which only one situation type is marked as [+ *feature*]. Thus, only states are [+ static], only processes are [+ evolving] and only actions are [+ agentive].[23]

---

[22] In section 1.23.3 we have argued that a habit is a kind of characteristic, and hence a state.

It is also important to keep in mind that this classification is exclusively based on ontological features. As we will see in 1.49.1, progressive aspect can overrule the classification (e. g. whereas *I am always careful* denotes a state, *I am being careful* denotes an action), but [± progressive] is not an ontological feature and is therefore immaterial to the ontological classification.

1.42.6 The four types of situation distinguished in the preceding sections are the same as those distinguished by Lyons (1977). However, the definitions differ in a number of ways. Firstly, Lyons does not mention the feature [± evolving]. Secondly, whereas Lyons seems to allow for agentive processes and agentive events (referring to agentive processes as ‘activities’ and agentive events as ‘acts’) we shall assume that all agentive dynamic situations are actions, and that processes and events are always nonagentive. This adaptation is necessary to clarify Lyons’ distinctions, which are not clearly defined in his text. Lyons’ (1977: 483) account says: “If a dynamic situation is extended in time, it is a process; if it is momentary, it is an event; and, if it is under the control of an agent, it is an action.” This suggests that the three dynamic situation types − processes, events and actions − are mutually exclusive and that all dynamic situations that are under the control of an agent are actions. (The inference that the three are mutually exclusive is strengthened by the fact that Lyons talks about “states on the one hand, and events, processes and actions on the other” [p.483].) However, Lyons goes on to talk of agentive processes (which are ‘activities’) and agentive events (‘acts’), which makes it clear that, if all agentive situations are actions, then the three types of situation cannot be mutually exclusive, and that some actions are processes and some actions are events. This, though, prompts the question: what do we mean when we say that a situation is a process or an event? If a process is agentive, it is an activity, so when we say merely ‘process’, do we mean *only* a nonagentive process? But then what is the point of having the term ‘process’ include agentive and nonagentive situations if it is only ever interpreted as referring to nonagentive situations? Because of the puzzling nature of this categorization, we have simply borrowed from Lyons what we believe to be the essential distinctions that he makes. We base the typology on the major distinction between stative and dynamic situations, as well as on the distinctions between agentive and non-agentive dynamic situations and between evolving and nonevolving dynamic situations.

---

[23] Of course, the border-line between these situation types is sometimes rather fuzzy. In *Sit still!* the situation referred to is arguably both static and agentive. However, it remains a fact that the chart correctly denotes the features which distinguish between prototypical states, actions, processes and events.

1.43 Classification 2: Vendler's taxonomy

1.43.1 Vendler (1967) distinguishes between 'states', 'activities', 'accomplishments' and 'achievements'. The criterial ontological features here appear to be [± durative] and [± telic] (although Vendler himself does not use the terms 'telic' and 'atelic'). In Vendler's analysis, all situations can be classified by means of these two features:

	durative	telic	example
state	−	−	*know the answer*
activity	+	−	*dance, walk*
accomplishment	+	+	*build a house*
achievement	−	+	*win the game, die*

1.43.2 It will be clear that we disagree with this categorization on a number of points. Firstly, we do not accept that states are by definition nondurative. In our opinion, states are by definition durative, though a sentence denoting a state can pick out a point from it (e. g. *Yes, I knew the answer at 3 p.m.* [*In fact, I knew it much earlier.*]) because states are by definition homogeneous. (Note that homogeneity presupposes duration.) Secondly, we do not accept the definition of 'achievement' as a punctual telic situation. In our opinion only durative situations can be telic, i. e. tend towards a natural point of completion (culmination point). A verb phrase like *win the game* or *die* denotes a punctual transitional event which is the culmination point of a telic situation, but it does not denote the telic situation itself.

If we were to incorporate Vendler's terms into our theory, we would have to redefine them. A STATE would be defined as having the feature [+ static]. The ontological features [+ homogeneous], [+ durative], [− evolving], [− transitional], [− telic] and [−agentive] would automatically follow from this. An ACTIVITY would be defined as a situation that is (represented as) nonstatic (dynamic), durative and atelic (e. g. walking, thinking, knitting socks). The feature [+ homogeneous] would automatically follow from [− telic]. An ACCOMPLISHMENT would be defined as a situation that is represented as telic (e. g. walking a mile, thinking for an hour, climbing a hill, typing out a report). The features [+ dynamic], [+ heterogeneous] and [+ durative] would automatically follow from this. An ACHIEVEMENT would be defined as a transitional situation (e. g. winning the game, finding a lost ring, dying, reaching the top). Because a transition is by definition punctual, and states are by definition durative, our achievements would automatically be dynamic. They would also be neither telic nor atelic: the feature [± telic] is not applicable to punctual situations, because 'telic' means that the situation is 'tending towards a natural point of completion', which presupposes that it is durative.

In sum, if we were to use Vendler's terms, we would redefine them as follows:

	static	telic	durative	transition
state	+	–	+	–
activity	–	–	+	–
accomplishment	–	+	+	–
achievement	–	not applicable	–	+

1.43.3 Note that neither in Vendler's classification nor in our adapted version of it is there room for situations that are both nondurative and nontransitional, such as knocking on the door, hitting someone, firing a shot, etc. This means that a Vendlerian classification will only work if it is supplemented with a category having the following features:

	static	telic	durative	transition
???	–	not applicable	–	–

1.43.4 Because the problems engendered by Vendler's classification we will work with a different categorization in this book, viz. the fourfold distinction between states, actions, events and processes made in 1.42.

VII. Actualization aspect: ‘bounded’ *vs* ‘nonbounded’

An actualizing situation is (represented as) bounded if the clause referring to it represents the situation as *reaching* a (natural or arbitrary) terminal point, i. e. as coming to an end. Otherwise it is nonbounded.

1.44 Definition of (non)bounded situations/clauses

1.44.1 As we have seen, ontological aspect concerns the lexical representation of kinds of situations – (non)static, (non)durative, (a)telic, etc. (see 1.33) – while grammatical aspect refers to the grammatically expressed distinction between ways of looking at the internal temporal structure of a situation. (In English, the only relevant grammatical aspects concern the distinction between progressive and nonprogressive representations of situations and habitual aspect expressed by auxiliaries like *used to* or *would* – see 1.25.) We now come to a third kind of ‘aspect’, which is not concerned with how an abstract *type of* situation (corresponding to a situation-template) is conceptualized and lexicalized, nor with the question how the internal temporal structure of a particular situation is grammatically represented, but rather with a distinction between two possible ways of representing or interpreting a particular instance of *actualization* of a situation. On this level of ACTUALIZATION ASPECT we must distinguish between BOUNDED and NONBOUNDED representations of actualizing situations. An actualizing situation is (represented as) bounded if the clause referring to it represents the situation as *reaching* a (natural or arbitrary) terminal point, i. e. as coming to an end. Otherwise it is nonbounded.

> Tonight I will drink champagne! *(nonbounded: no reference to a terminal point)*
>
> Tonight I will drink five glasses of champagne! *(bounded: the action will terminate when the fifth glass is empty)*
>
> Tonight I will drink a lot of glasses of champagne! *(nonbounded: since the number of glasses is not specified, there is no reference to a terminal point: I may in principle drink any number of glasses of champagne.)*

The above three sentences can all be used to announce the same situation. This means that the actualization of a situation is not inherently bounded or nonbounded; it is *represented as* bounded or nonbounded by a particular clause. For this reason we will adopt the practice of applying the labels *bounded* and *nonbounded* both to clauses and to situations. (By ‘situation’ we really mean ‘actualization of a situation as represented by the utterance of a clause.) A BOUNDED SITUATION is a situation whose actualization is represented as bounded by a clause. A BOUNDED CLAUSE is a clause which represents the actualization of a situation as bounded. If the clause constitutes a sentence, we can also speak of a BOUNDED SENTENCE.

In the linguistic literature, 'not bounded' is more often referred to as 'unbounded' than as 'nonbounded'. There is in principle nothing wrong with this – the prefix *un-* can mean 'not', as in *unaware*, *unbeaten*, *unavoidable*, etc. – but in 1.48 we will discern a category 'unbounding clause constituent' (which renders a bounded clause to which it is added nonbounded). The *un-* of *unbounding* is the same as in *undo*, *unfasten*, *unbuckle*, *undress*, etc. To avoid any confusion about the precise meaning of *un-* we will use *un-* in the latter sense only, and thus speak of 'unbounding' and 'nonbounded'.

1.44.2 In some cases (non)boundedness is a question of *interpretation* rather than *representation*. A clause like *John was in the library* is normally understood as 'meaning' that John is no longer in the library at the time of speech. However, this meaning is only implicated (i. e. invited for pragmatic reasons): it can be cancelled by the context, as in *Two minutes ago John was in the library, so you will probably find him there.*[24] In sum, *John was in the library* is a nonbounded linguistic *representation* of (the actualization of) a situation but is, in the default case, *interpreted* as referring to a bounded situation. When it is crucial to distinguish between these two, we will refer to the former as 'L-BOUNDED' (i. e. linguistically represented as bounded) and to the latter as 'W-BOUNDED' (i. e. pragmatically interpreted as bounded in the world that is being referred to). However, since interpretation is usually determined by representation, the default meaning of 'bounded' is 'represented as bounded', i. e. 'L-bounded'. Unless we are explicitly distinguishing between interpretation and representation, a sentence like *John was in the library* will be referred to as 'nonbounded' rather than as 'L-nonbounded'.

Because (non)boundedness can be a question of interpretation rather than representation, there are sentences that allow both readings:

> The miner walked through the tunnel inspecting the seam.

This sentence may or may not be taken to mean that the miner reached the end of the tunnel. The interpretation is bounded or nonbounded accordingly.

---

[24] This boundedness implicature of the past tense is due to the Gricean Maxim of Relation (better known as the Maxim of Relevance). Other things being equal – more specifically: if the clause is not couched in a piece of discourse about the past – the present is more relevant to the speaker than the past. This means that a situation whose actualization time includes the time of speech will not normally be represented as lying in the past. By locating a situation in the past when the discourse is not currently 'about' the past, the speaker suggests that it is a past situation, not a present one. Thus, when used in isolation, *Two minutes ago John was in the library* suggests that the proposition 'John be in the library' *only* applies in the past and not in the present, i. e. that the situation is no longer actualizing at the time of speech.

(Remember that ‘nonbounded’ means ‘not represented and/or interpreted as bounded’.)

1.45 ‘Nonbounded actualization’ = ‘homogeneous actualization’

A clause that does not represent the actualization of a situation as bounded (and which is thus nonbounded) invariably represents (the actualization of) its situation as both durative and homogeneous, whereas a durative bounded clause automatically represents the situation referred to as heterogeneous. (The feature [± homogeneous] is not applicable to nondurative clauses.)

As noted in section 1.36, ‘homogeneous’ here means that the actualizing situation is (represented as) remaining essentially unchanged from beginning to end. This means that the same description (clause) can be used to refer to the (actualization of the) situation as a whole and to any (representative) part of it.[25] Thus, any clause that represents a particular situation as nonbounded can also be used to refer to portions of that situation. For example, if we can use the clause *John was walking in the woods* to report what John was doing from 2 to 4 p.m., we can also use this clause to report what he was doing between 2 o’clock and 3, or to report what he was doing from 2.30 to 3.30, etc. In other words, the tensed proposition is true at any (relevant, i. e. representative) portion of the interval taken up by its actualization.

Bounded clauses, on the other hand, refer to heterogeneous situations. That is, if the clause can be used to denote the actualization of a situation as a whole, it cannot be used to refer to any part of this actualization. Thus, if we can use *John wrote six letters* to report what kept John occupied from 2 to 4, we cannot use the same sentence to report what kept him occupied between 2 and 3, or to report what kept him occupied from 2.30 to 3.30, etc.

The distinction between bounded and nonbounded clauses is similar to the distinction between count and mass nouns. Like bounded clauses, count nouns (e. g. *table*, *printer*) represent their referents as delimited; neither nonbounded clauses nor mass nouns (e. g. *water*, *honesty*) represent their referents as having boundaries. It follows that both bounded situations and countable entities are heterogeneous (nonhomogeneous), whereas nonbounded situations and uncountable (= mass) entities are both homogeneous. The difference between bounded clauses and count nouns, and between nonbounded clauses and mass nouns, is the kind of bounding: the actualizing situations referred to by bounded clauses have temporal boundaries, whereas count nouns usually refer to entities that have spatial boundaries (although they may also refer to a restricted quantity or amount). In connection with (representations of) actualization, ‘(non)bounded’ means ‘represented as (non)bounded *in time*’.

---

[25] Many situations involve ‘gaps’ that are not drawn attention to. For example, We *walked for three hours* does not imply that we did not stop once to have a rest. Naturally, such gaps are not representative parts of the situation.

In sum, nonbounded situations or clauses are always homogeneous and bounded situations or clauses are always heterogeneous.

1.46 (Non)boundedness and duration adverbials

1.46.1 A formal test to distinguish between bounded and nonbounded clauses is the addition of a particular type of duration adverbial. A NONINCLUSIVE DURATION ADVERBIAL (answering the question *For how long?*) can be added (barring a repetitive interpretation) to nonbounded clauses only, while (barring an inchoative interpretation) an INCLUSIVE DURATION ADVERBIAL (answering the question *Within what time?*) can only be added to bounded clauses. For example:

John was speaking. *(nonbounded)*

John was speaking for hours. *(nonbounded + noninclusive duration adverbial)*

#John was speaking in an hour. *(nonbounded + inclusive duration adverbial) (Note that in an hour should be read as measuring the temporal distance between the beginning and end of John’s speaking. Only in that sense is it an inclusive duration adverbial. If in an hour measures the temporal distance between a contextually given time of reference and the beginning of John’s speaking, it is not an inclusive duration adverbial and the sentence may be judged acceptable. The sentence is certainly impeccable if we replace in an hour by within an hour and front it: Within an hour John was speaking. This receives an inchoative interpretation: ‘It was at most an hour before John was speaking, i. e. before John began speaking’.)*

Similarly:

John ran a mile. *(bounded)*

John ran a mile in an hour. *(bounded + inclusive duration adverbial)*

#John ran a mile for hours. *(bounded + noninclusive duration adverbial) (The sentence is ungrammatical on a nonrepetitive reading. It is relatively acceptable on the reading ‘For hours on end John repeated the action of running a mile’ because in this reading the overall situation is nonbounded because the number of times that John ran a mile remains vague.)*

1.46.2 In the linguistic literature, the (im)possibility of collocating with a (non)inclusive adverbial is usually considered to be a test for (a)telicity rather than (non)boundedness: it is claimed that telic VPs and atelic VPs are only compatible with inclusive and noninclusive adverbials, respectively. That there is some truth in this becomes clear when we consider VPs in isolation. *Walk three miles* is a telic VP, and in isolation the VP *walk three miles in an hour* makes sense, while *walk three miles for an hour* does not. Similarly, *be upset* is an atelic VP, and we can easily conceptualize *be upset for an hour* as a kind of situation, but not *be upset in an hour* (barring an inchoative interpretation). However, there are also examples in which an inclusive adverbial combines with an atelic VP:

> Within the last week John has been at home only three times.
>
> Within the last week John hasn't been at home at all.

In these examples the VP is not telic,[26] but the situation (which is a hypersituation consisting of a series of subsituations) is bounded because the speaker 'MEASURES' it: he is concerned with the number of actualizations there have been in the period identified by the inclusive adverbial. Self-evidently, 'measuring' a situation means considering it from beginning to end. Nonbounded (actualizations of) situations cannot be measured.

It is in keeping with this that the presence of a *within*-adverbial does not entail boundedness in sentences whose purpose is not to measure a (hyper)situation:

> Within three weeks after his accident he was out of hospital.
>
> Downslope of the vents, there have been some dramatic changes within the last few weeks. (www)
>
> Oral presentations are in general within the last few weeks of the semester you are registered. (www)

In sentences like these, the *within*-adverbial is used as a time-specifying adverbial rather than an inclusive duration adverbial.

In sum, it is true that, in isolation, only telic VPs are compatible with an inclusive adverbial. But it is not true that inclusive adverbials cannot be found in sentences that do not involve a telic VP. An inclusive duration adverbial can be added not only to clauses with a telic VP but also to clauses which do not have a telic VP but 'measure' a (hyper)situation.

It is also important to see that the rationale of the test is not that a nonbounded clause cannot *contain* an inclusive adverbial but rather that an inclusive adverbial cannot *be added to* a nonbounded clause. This means (amongst other things) that if an inclusive adverbial has been added to a bounded clause with a telic VP, we can still render that bounded clause (including the adverbial) nonbounded by making the verb form progressive:

---

[26] As pointed out in footnote 20, the VP of a sentence referring to a hypersituation consisting of a number of atelic subsituations following each other cannot be telic, because the last subsituation is atelic. This was argued as follows: "Not only in *John walked* but also in *Three people walked* the VP is atelic. It is irrelevant to this whether the three people walked together or one after another. Since *walk* is atelic, the situation of the third person walking has no inherent point of completion, and so the cumulative hypersituation of three people walking cannot have an inherent point of completion either."

I am going to walk three miles in an hour.

I was walking three miles in an hour [when I sprained my ankle].

The first example is a bounded sentence with a VP that is telic because the length of the walk is pre-determined – see 1.39.8. In the second example, the VP is also telic because the distance is again pre-determined – it has been determined before the walking started – and because *in an hour* forms part of the situation-template (VP). However, the sentence is L-nonbounded because the progressive form *was walking* only refers to some middle part of the actualization of the situation and disregards its possible terminal point.

1.47 (Non)boundedness *vs* (a)telicity

1.47.1 The bounded versus nonbounded distinction is often identified with the telic versus atelic distinction (discussed in section 1.39). However, there is clear evidence that these two distinctions represent two quite different parameters. (A)telicity is a question of verb phrases (situation-templates – see 1.29.1) whereas (non)boundedness is a question of clauses. Put differently, (a)telicity has to do with whether the speaker *conceptualizes* a *kind* of situation as *having* a natural point of completion or not, whereas (non)boundedness has to do with whether the speaker *represents* the *actualization* of a situation as *reaching* an (inherent or arbitrary) endpoint or not. A VP like *run five miles* is telic (because *five miles* implies a natural point of completion), but it can be used both in a bounded clause (*Bill ran five miles*) and in a nonbounded one (*Bill was running five miles*). This shows how grammatical aspect can interact with ontological aspect to determine actualization aspect: *run five miles* is a telic VP, but since the progressive form only refers to a portion of the middle part of the actualizing situation, the sentence does not represent the actualization of the situation as bounded, i. e. as reaching the natural point of completion. (In fact, since the sentence *Bill was running five miles* only makes a statement about a portion of the middle part of the actualizing situation and not about the actualization as a whole, it leaves vague whether or not the natural point of completion was eventually reached in the actual world.)

The reason why (non)boundedness is often confused with (a)telicity is that both pairs involve the homogeneous versus heterogeneous distinction discussed in 1.36. Telic and atelic verb phrases refer to abstract types of situations and are heterogeneous and homogeneous expressions, respectively. Bounded and nonbounded clauses refer to concrete actualizations of situations and are heterogeneous and homogeneous expressions, respectively. The difference between the two becomes clear when a heterogeneous (telic) verb phrase is used in a homogeneous (nonbounded) clause, as in *Bill was running his usual five miles* [*when he sprained his ankle*]. As is clear from this example, 'telic' means 'nonhomogeneous' on the level of situation-templates (i. e. descriptions of conceptualized types of situations) whereas 'bounded' means 'nonhomogeneous' on the level of clauses (i. e. descriptions of actualizations of concrete situations).

1.47.2 In a sentence like *I will answer these three letters tomorrow*, the type of situation is represented by the verb phrase as telic (i. e. tending towards a natural point of completion) but one might wonder whether the actualization of the situation is represented as bounded (i. e. reaching the point of completion). Boundedness is a question of actualization, but a sentence in the future tense refers to a situation that has not yet actualized. A future situation may be intended or expected to actualize in a particular way (i. e. as bounded or nonbounded), but the speaker can never be quite certain that the situation is actually going to actualize in this way. It does not follow, however, that it would be appropriate to say that *I will answer these three letters tomorrow* is a nonbounded sentence. The correct way of interpreting the facts is to say that the sentence refers to a 'possible world' which is not the actual world but a future imagined world. In this world, the situation is represented as bounded. This conclusion is supported by the following data:

> I *will answer* these three letters when he rings tomorrow [and then I shall post them]. *(This has to be interpreted as predicting the actualization of a situation which reaches a terminal point.)*
>
> I *will be answering* these three letters when he rings tomorrow [and then I shall post them].

The first sentence is interpreted as something like 'I will answer these three letters immediately after he rings tomorrow [and then I shall post my letters of reply]'. By contrast, the second example in principle allows two interpretations. One is that the progressive form is chosen to express a 'matter-of-course' future interpretation (see 7.7), in which case the situation of writing three letters is bounded and the *and*-clause sounds quite natural. In this reading, the *when*-clause situation does not interrupt the answering of the letters but precedes it (as in the first example). The second interpretation is a progressive reading. This means that the *when*-clause situation is taken to occur during the answering of the letters, which is therefore represented as nonbounded. In this reading the addition of the *and*-clause is rather odd because there is no implication that the letter-answering situation is terminated. (Because *answer three letters* is a telic VP, saying that the situation is terminated is equivalent to saying that the letters are answered, i. e. that the situation is completed).

In sum, a sentence in the future tense can also represent the actualization of a situation as bounded, but then in a projected possible world which is not yet factual at t_0.

1.48 (Un)bounding clause constituents

1.48.1 Any argument constituent of a clause can in principle add the idea of a right temporal boundary (= terminal point) and thus render the clause L-bounded (= linguistically represented as bounded – see 1.44.2) or leave it L-nonbounded:[27]

> {A litre / three litres} of water will run out of this tap. *(L-bounded: the boundary is specified by the quantifier in the subject NP, which indicates a precise quantity)*
>
> {Water / litres of water} will run out of this tap. *(L-nonbounded) (Note that run out of the tap is anyhow an atelic VP. This means that the subject NP cannot determine (a)telicity, although it can determine (non)boundedness.)*
>
> Bill read {a poem / three poems}. *(L-bounded: the boundary is specified by the quantified count NP functioning as direct object)*[28]
>
> Bill read poetry. *(L-nonbounded: the unquantified mass NP functioning as direct object does not specify a boundary)*
>
> The Belgian athlete Puttemans ran the 5,000 metres at the Olympic Games in Moscow. *(L-bounded because the VP is telic and the situation is located at a past time.)*
>
> Bill handed out the Labour Party badge to {a party activist / 112 party activists / every party activist present}. *(L-bounded: the boundary is specified by the indirect object)*
>
> Bill handed out the Labour Party badge to party activists. *(L-nonbounded because the number of activists is not specified)*

1.48.2 Adverbials that indicate duration or distance and which ‘measure’ (see 1.46.2) the actualization of a situation, either beforehand or at (or after) the terminal point of the actualization, may or may not have an L-bounding effect:

> I am going to run the marathon for another twelve years. *(L-bounded: the reference is to a repetitive hypersituation whose terminal point is specified by the definite duration adverbial for another twelve years)*
>
> I am going to run the marathon for many more years. *(L-nonbounded: because of the indefiniteness of many more, the duration adverbial for many more years indicates a period of indefinite length and therefore does not specify the terminal point of the period (though it implies the existence of a terminal point); this means that*

---

[27] All the examples below are nonprogressive, because the progressive form as a rule renders the representation of the situation nonbounded. This follows from the fact that the progressive form as a rule picks out a moment or interval from the middle of a situation and disregards its end.

[28] In this example and the following one, the use of the past tense implicates that the situation is not continuing at t_0 and therefore induces a W-bounded reading. However, this does not alter the fact that the situations are L-nonbounded, i. e. not linguistically represented as bounded.

the actualization of the repetitive situation, whose duration is indicated by the adverbial, is not represented as L-bounded, though it is pragmatically interpreted as 'W-bounded' — see 1.44.2 — because everybody knows that there is an age at which people are no longer able to run a marathon.)

Until a couple of years ago I knew the answer to that question. *(L-bounded: the until-adverbial specifies the endpoint of the actualization of the situation.)*

[Melissa drove, and] John sulked from France to the Hungarian border. *(L-bounded by the adverbial, which specifies both temporal boundaries of the actualization of the situation.)*

John was in his study from two to five. *(similar)*

[He isn't a prolific writer.] He's only published three novels in eleven years. *(L-bounded because of the inclusive adverbial in eleven years, which specifies a period leading up to speech time, and because of the fact that the speaker measures the number of subsituations making up the repetitive hypersituation.)*

1.48.3 In the previous section it was pointed out that *I am going to run the marathon for many more years* is L-nonbounded because of the indefiniteness of the duration adverbial. However, the sentence to which the adverbial is added (viz. *I am going to run the marathon*) is itself L-bounded if it refers to the complete actualization of a single telic situation. This means that the addition of *for many more years* to *I am going to run the marathon* has an UNBOUNDING effect because it induces a nonbounded-repetitive interpretation. This follows from the fact that *for many more years* does not refer to, or imply, a well-defined endpoint of the actualization of the repetitive hypersituation.

1.48.4 In its basic use, viz. when it serves to reduce the reference to the middle of the situation only, the progressive form also has an unbounding effect. Thus, unlike *I read a poem last night*, which is L-bounded, *Last night I was reading a poem* [*when John called me up*] is L-nonbounded, because the progressive form excludes the end of the situation from the reference.

VIII. The aspectual interpretation of a clause

1.49 Aspectual interpretation

1.49.1 The aspectual interpretation of a clause depends on an interaction between ontological aspect (see 1.33), grammatical aspect (see 1.20) and actualization aspect (see 1.44).

An example of interaction between ontological aspect and grammatical aspect is the interpretation of sentences like *He is being a fool* (= 'He is behaving foolishly'). The verb *be* usually refers to a state, and static ontological aspect is normally incompatible with progressive aspect. When *be* is nonetheless used in the progressive form, the progressive grammatical aspect overrides the static ontological aspect and results in a dynamic (nonstatic) representation of the situation.

An example of interaction between ontological aspect, grammatical aspect and actualization aspect is the interpretation of the actualization of situations described by sentences with a telic verb phrase and progressive aspect. This interpretation is determined by the second of the following regularities:

> telic verb phrase + nonprogressive aspect → L-bounded clause *('L-bounded' means 'linguistically represented as bounded – see 1.44.2.)*
>
> telic verb phrase + progressive aspect → L-nonbounded clause

In other words, a telic verb phrase (e. g. *draw a circle*) represents a situation as having (and tending towards) a natural and necessary point of completion. The use of a nonprogressive form in the description of an actualization of this situation results in an L-bounded representation of the situation (e. g. *Jenny drew a circle on the blackboard*): the actualization of the situation is represented as coming to an end when the inherent point of completion is reached. However, the use of the progressive form (e. g. *Jenny was drawing a circle on the blackboard*) means that the natural terminal point is not referred to: the speaker only refers to (some part of) the middle of the situation. It follows that, though the situation is still telic, its actualization is not represented as L-bounded: the (actualization of the) situation is not represented as actually reaching a terminal point.

1.49.2 The regularity 'telic + progressive → L-nonbounded' forms part of the more general rule that clauses involving a progressive form that truly expresses progressive meaning automatically represent the actualization of the situation referred to as nonbounded (since progressive aspect means that no reference is made to the end of the situation – see 1.48.4).[29] This actually provides us with a test for checking the (non)bounded character of nonprogressive sentences:

(a) If we make a nonbounded nonprogressive clause progressive, this has no effect on the nonbounded character of the clause. Thus, the nonbounded sentence *Bill slept in the attic* remains nonbounded when we substitute *was sleeping* for *slept*.
(b) If we make a bounded nonprogressive clause progressive, it loses its bounded character. Thus, whereas *Bill ran the 100 metres* is bounded, *Bill was running the 100 metres* is nonbounded. (In both cases, however, the VP is telic.)
(c) It follows that a nonprogressive clause must be nonbounded if its truth follows from the truth of the corresponding progressive clause. For example, the fact that we can infer the truth of *John drank coffee* from the truth of *John was drinking coffee* means that *John drank coffee* is a nonbounded clause.

By contrast, a nonprogressive clause is L-bounded if its truth does not follow from the truth of the corresponding progressive clause. For example, we cannot infer the truth of *John drew a triangle* from the truth of *John was drawing a triangle*. (The former is true only if John drew a complete triangle, whereas the latter was true as soon as John started drawing the triangle.) It follows that *John drew a triangle* must be a bounded clause.[30]

Needless to say, the above test relies on the fact that L-nonbounded and L-bounded clauses are homogeneous and heterogeneous expressions, respectively – see section 1.44 above.

---

[29] An exception to this is the 'explanatory-resultative' use of the progressive present perfect, as in *You've been fighting!*, where the speaker refers to some unintended side effect (such as a black eye, or torn clothes) of a situation that has come to an end – see section 5.19.1. In fact, in applying this test it is best to disregard clauses in the present perfect tense altogether, because, in order to account for the 'continuative' interpretation of *I've {been living / lived} here for 5 years now* we need to distinguish between the 'factual full situation' (which leads up to t_0) and the 'potential full situation' (which extends into the post-present) – see 5.9. The factual full situation is bounded by t_0 whereas the potential full situation is nonbounded. This means that in present perfect tense clauses, the progressive form does not represent the situation as nonbounded if by 'situation' we mean the factual full situation.

[30] It is well-known that a similar test is often used to identify (a)telicity rather than (non)-boundedness. However, it has been shown in 1.39 that (a)telicity is a question of VPs, not clauses, and that it is not situations but situation-templates that can be telic or atelic. The categories applying to situations and clauses (= linguistic representations of situations) are 'bounded' and 'nonbounded'. (This does not alter the fact, though, that in nonprogressive clauses the (a)telic nature of the VP is one of the strongest factors determining the (non)boundedness of the sentence using the VP in question.)

IX. Summary of chapter 1

1.50 Parts I and II

Our concern in chapter 1 has been to provide definitions and explanations of the basic linguistic terms and the conceptual apparatus that will be used in this and subsequent volumes. In part I, after providing information about notational conventions to be used, and the sources of our data, we have given a chapter-by-chapter outline of the content of the book. We went on, in part II, to define some general linguistic terms as we shall use them. Note, especially, that for us, the VP will be that part of the predicate constituent that does not contain optional adverbials (the predicate constituent of a clause being everything but the subject noun phrase). Two terms are both fundamental and are used in a very particular way here. **Situation** refers to anything that can be denoted by a clause. Events, states, processes etc. are all types of situations. **Actualization** refers to the taking place or being in place of situations. Where possible, instead of saying that events 'take place', states 'hold', processes 'are ongoing' etc., we will say that situations 'actualize' – irrespective of the type of situation involved.

1.51 Part III

1.51.1 Part III looked at three areas of meaning grammaticalized in the verb phrase: tense, mood and modality, and grammatical aspect. We saw that **tenses** (as individual realizations of the abstract category **tense**) express the temporal relation between the time of a situation and an **orientation time** which may be either the **temporal zero-point** (t_0), which is usually speech time, or another orientation time that is temporally related (directly or indirectly) to the temporal zero-point. There are **absolute tenses**, which relate the time of a situation directly to t_0, and there are **relative tenses**, which express a relation (e. g. of anteriority) of a situation time to an orientation time other than t_0. There are also **absolute-relative tenses** (e. g. the future perfect) which combine these two functions. The conditional perfect (*would have left*) and some nameless tense forms (e. g. *was going to have left*) are **complex relative tenses**, expressing more than one temporal relation. Some tense forms have the form and semantics of absolute tenses except that the orientation time to which they relate the situation time is not t_0 but another time treated as if it were t_0. We call these **pseudo-absolute tense forms**.

1.51.2 Our overview of **grammatical aspect** began by looking at aspectual meaning in general. Grammatical aspect is the formal expression (by means of a special suffix and/or auxiliary) of an aspectual meaning that has to do with the way the speaker views the internal temporal structure of a situation. For example a speaker may view a situation as just beginning, focusing on the initial part of it (**ingressive** or **inchoative** aspectual meaning) or he may view the situation as a **hypersituation** which consists of repeated subsituations, as in *She tapped a few times on the elephant's head*. This is **iterative** or **repetitive** aspectual meaning. (In this work we will refer to the repetition of what is seen as the same situation as iterative or repetitive aspectual meaning even when the repetitions are seen as taking place on different occasions and do not form a hypersituation, as in *I've only been in this town three times*). **Grammatical aspect** is the pairing of these meanings with specific forms of the verb. Different aspectual meanings are grammaticalized in different languages. In English, although many sorts of aspectual meaning can be expressed by, for example, aspectual verbs (as in *It began to rain*), only two sorts of aspectual meaning are grammaticalized. The first is **progressivity.** Progressive aspect combines the progressive form, *be* + V-*ing* (e. g. *It is raining*), with the meaning 'focus on the middle part of the situation'. The second sort of aspectual meaning that is grammaticalized is **habituality** (e. g. *When I was a child, my mother would buy chocolate for us every Friday*), though the expression of grammaticalized habituality is restricted to verb forms involving one of the auxiliaries *will*, *would* or *used to*.

1.51.3 The third system of the verb phrase introduced in part III is **modality.** Modality is a semantic category which covers two main areas of meaning. The first has to do with the speaker's assessment of the likelihood of actualization (in the past, present or future) of a situation. This is called **epistemic modality,** since it is concerned with the truth of propositions or utterances. The second has to do with factors affecting the likelihood of actualization of situations (such as obligation, willingness, permission, ability, etc.). This is called **nonepistemic** or **root modality.** In English, modality is most often expressed by a modal auxiliary verb such as *must*, *will*, *may*, *can*, etc.

1.52 Part IV

In part IV, we discussed the question of what units of language refer to situations, and conversely, what it is that verbs, clauses etc. refer to. Verbs, verb phrases and other, more complex, predicate constituents, we saw, **denote** rather abstract entities which we call '**situation-templates**'. Clauses, which involve subjects as well as predicate constituents, denote fully-fledged situations.

The **referents** of the linguistic expressions denoting situation-templates are abstract **types of situations** (or '**situation types**'). The **referent** of a (finite) clause is a/the **actualization** of a situation.

However, most of the time we do not really have to make a strict distinction between denotation and reference, nor between situation-templates and situations or between abstract situation types and concrete actualizing situations. This means that we can, and will, often talk of clauses and even verb phrases as 'referring to situations'.

1.53 Part V

1.53.1 In part V we saw how **ontological aspect** (or **Aktionsart**, or **lexical aspect**) distinguishes different situation-templates according to the semantic features that are automatically conferred on the template by the choice of lexical verb and its complements. (Because it is the lexical verb that counts, progressive or nonprogressive meaning does not play a part in lexical aspect.) While grammatical aspect is clearly concerned with the internal temporal structure of a situation, lexical aspect is much more loosely concerned with this. For example, an important feature is that of (**non**)**agentivity** (i. e. agentivity or nonagentivity, which we can write as [± agentive]). A situation-template is agentive if it entails an agent that (virtually always intentionally) causes the situation to actualize. (Compare: *Sylvia shouted* and *Sylvia breaks windows*, which are both agentive, with *Sylvia looks determined* and *The window broke*, which are nonagentive). Agentivity is only indirectly to do with how the situation is seen as unfolding in time, in that it may affect the possibility of using the progressive, and of using verb phrases in certain ways. (Compare: *Sylvia's breaking windows with her fellow protesters tomorrow* (agentive) with **Sylvia's looking determined tomorrow* (nonagentive)).

1.53.2 The other features – all binary, like (non)agentivity – that play a role in lexical aspect are briefly repeated here. A situation-template may be **static** or it may be **nonstatic** (**dynamic**). A static situation-template is one which refers to a situation type that involves no change and requires no energy in order to continue actualizing. Such situations include **habits** (as implied by the template *walk to work every day*). Conversely, a type of situation referred to by a dynamic situation-template involves change and requires an input of energy in order to actualize or to continue actualizing. The term 'static' is extended to situations and to clauses which contain a static verb phrase. (The same, naturally, applies to the term 'dynamic'). Verbs which only denote static situations are called **static situation verbs** or **state verbs**, and verbs which only denote dynamic situations are called **dynamic situation verbs**.

1.53.3 The feature [± homogeneous] also belongs to the realm of lexical aspect but only in a limited way. The meaning of homogeneity is most easily explained by considering types of situations. **Homogeneous** situation types are ones in which every portion of the situation can be described in the same way as the whole situation (for example *drink beer*). **Nonhomogeneous**, or **heterogeneous**, types of situations are made up of parts which are each different from the whole (for example *drink a glass of beer*, in which no single part of the situation constitutes a full instance of drinking a glass of beer).

Some of the information which determines the (non)homogeneity of a concrete actualization of a situation is lexical information found in the situation-template, and in some cases the (non)homogeneity of a clause can even be fully determined by the situation-template. However, apart from the fact that the nature of the subject NP may affect the interpretation of the actualization of a situation as homogeneous or not, it is often not possible to decide on the homogeneity of a situation unless we know whether or not the clause referring to it receives a progressive interpretation. This in turn, of course, is often dependent on grammatical aspect. Thus, if we take the telic situation-template represented by *drink a glass of beer*, it may be involved in the representation of (the actualization of) a situation as nonhomogeneous as well as one which is homogeneous: *Sylvia drank a glass of beer* represents its situation as nonhomogeneous, *Sylvia was drinking a glass of beer* focuses purely on the activity in progress and represents the actualization of the situation referred to as homogeneous. (In addition, a habitual interpretation may also alter the homogeneity value of a situation, since a habit is a kind of state, and habituality may be indicated by elements outside the predicate constituent, as in *Elephants are intelligent*, where the repetitive-habitual aspect of meaning is induced by the generic plural subject NP.) In sum, (non)homogeneity is ultimately a feature of clauses referring to actualizing situations, but it can be determined by the nature of the situation type, or/and by the (non)progressive or (non)habitual aspectual interpretation that is assigned to the clause.

1.53.4 An important distinction made at the level of situation-templates – but, like most of the distinctions discussed here, a distinction which is often applied by extension to clauses and to situations – is that between **punctual** and **durative** situation-templates. Punctual situation-templates imply a situation which is conceived of as taking up no measurable time, or lasting just a moment, while durative situation-templates imply a situation conceived of as extending over an appreciable interval. Verbs that are typically used to refer to punctual situations are called ‘punctual situation verbs’, but even such verbs may sometimes be involved in the reference to durative situations. This happens most notably when a punctual situation verb is used in a clause that is interpreted as referring to the repetition of a punctual situation, so that the repetitions constitute a durative **hypersituation**. For example, *Sylvia smashed a window* is interpreted as referring to a punctual situation, but *Sylvia smashed twenty windows* is normally interpreted as referring to a durative situation composed of multiple instances of window-smashing rather than as a single punctual situation of smashing twenty windows simultaneously.

1.53.5 A situation-template (and hence, informally, a situation) may be **transitional** or **nontransitional**. A transition consists of a (punctual) change from one state to another. In *open the window* the situation-template involves the window undergoing a transition from the state of being closed to the state of being open (as a result of some sort of agency). In *Meg opened the window* the entire transition is referred to; in *Meg was opening the window* only the **preparatory phase** leading up to the actual transition.

1.53.6 A situation-template is **telic** if it denotes a type of situation which is represented as tending towards an inherent terminal point, without which the situation is not complete and at which it naturally comes to an end. An example is *Sylvia {drank / was drinking} a glass of beer*. Otherwise, it is **atelic**, for example *Sylvia {drank / was drinking} beer.*

1.53.7 Finally, a situation-template may be **evolving** or **nonevolving**. A situation that is [+ evolving] is one involving a gradual process of change that is not represented as caused by an agent, for example *The beer was fermenting*.

1.53.8 Of course, in any given situation-template we will be able to discern one value or the other (i. e. a plus or a minus) for most if not all of the features discussed above. Thus a situation-template like *break a window* can be characterized as [+ agentive], [+ dynamic], [+ telic], [+ transitional] and [− durative]). (Since the template is punctual, the features [± evolving] and [± homogeneous] do not apply).

1.54 Part VI

In part VI we explained how we can use different combinations of lexical aspect values, in combination with information from subject NPs, to divide into broad types the situations denoted by whole clauses. The two most frequently used categorizations of situation types are those described by Lyons (1977) and Vendler (1967), or variations on these. Because we have some reservations about Vendler's categorization, we are adopting (our own version of) Lyons' taxonomy. This divides situations into four types: states, actions, events and processes. These can all be distinguished from one another by reference to just three parameters (i. e. three features of lexical aspect): [± static], [± evolving] and [± agentive]. As shown in the chart in section 1.42.5, states are static, nonevolving and nonagentive; actions are nonstatic, nonevolving but agentive; processes are nonstatic, evolving and nonagentive; and events are nonstatic, nonevolving and nonagentive.

1.55 Part VII

1.55.1 In part VII we introduced '**actualization aspect**', i. e. the distinction between **boundedness** and **nonboundedness**. An actualizing situation may or may not be represented as coming to an end, i. e. as reaching a (natural or arbitrary) terminal point. It will be clear that boundedness is essentially concerned with the **right temporal boundary** of the actualizing situation, and it turns out that many elements may provide this boundary. For example, the object NP determines, respectively, the boundedness and nonboundedness of the (actualizations of the) situations represented by *Sylvia broke a window last night* and *Sylvia broke windows last night*. (In the latter example, although we can assume that in the extra-linguistic world Sylvia stopped breaking windows, there is no linguistic specification of a terminal point.) In some cases, boundedness is merely an implicature arising from the Gricean Maxims of conversation or from our knowledge of the world. In that case we speak of **W-boundedness**, in contrast with linguistically indicated **L-boundedness**.

1.55.2 We should distinguish on the one hand between (non)boundedness and (non)homogeneity and on the other hand between (non)boundedness and (a)telicity. While [+ bounded] and [− homogeneous] pick out identical sets of situations, and [− bounded] and [+ homogeneous] do likewise (so that it is not, for example, possible to have a situation which is [+ bounded] and [+ homogeneous]), the two features nevertheless refer to different aspects of those situations. (Non)boundedness refers to whether or not the actualization of the situation reaches a terminal point, while (non)homogeneity refers to whether or not the internal consistency of the situation is uniform, i. e. whether any (relevant) part of the actualizing situation is representative of the whole situation. The same symmetry does not exist when it comes to (non)boundedness and (a)telicity. It is possible for a telic situation-template (e. g. *climb over the wall*) to be used in a clause which represents the actualization of a situation as bounded (e. g. *She climbed over the wall*) and in one which represents the situation as nonbounded (e. g. *She was climbing over the wall*). This is because telicity deals with whether or not a type of situation is represented as *having* an inherent terminal point (which is a point of completion) whilst boundedness deals with whether or not an actualizing situation is represented as actually *reaching* a terminal point (which, depending on whether the situation is telic or atelic, may or may not be a point of completion).

1.56 Part VIII

Finally, in part VIII, we saw that the three different types of aspect (viz. ontological aspect, grammatical aspect and actualization aspect) interact so as to determine the aspectual meaning of a given sentence. For example, progressive meaning, whether grammatically expressed or not, always produces nonboundedness, irrespective of whether the situation-template is telic (as in *I'm going to write a book*) or atelic (as in *This time next year I'll be writing poetry*).

2. Towards a theory of tense and time

I. Introduction 93
2.1 Tense *vs* time 94
2.2 'Orientation time' and 'situation time': provisional definitions 95
2.3 Tenses 95
2.4 Temporal zero-point (t_0) 97
2.5 Nonfinite clauses are tenseless 98
2.6 Progressive tenses? 99
2.7 Theoretical discussion: does English have more than two tenses? 100
2.8 Does English have a 'future tense'? 102
2.9 Future tense forms *vs* 'futurish' tense forms 106
2.10 Does English have a present perfect tense? 108
2.11 More on the notion of temporal zero-point (t_0) 110
2.12 Full situation *vs* predicated situation 113
2.13 Time of the predicated situation *vs* time of the full situation 116
2.14 Orientation time 117
2.15 The semantics of tenses: temporal domains 119
2.16 Kinds of temporal relations 121
2.17 Expanding a temporal domain: expressing T-relations 123
2.18 Temporal relations that are not linguistically expressed: W-relations 125

II. Special uses of tense forms 128
2.19 Modal uses of tenses 128
2.20 Shifts of temporal perspective 129
2.21 Universal sentences 130

III. The role of temporal adverbials 132
2.22 Definition and basic classification of 'temporal adverbials' 132
2.23 The function of a time-specifying adverbial 134
2.24 Situation-time adverbial 136
2.25 Orientation-time adverbial 137
2.26 Multiple-orientation-time-adverbial 137
2.27 The relation between one Adv-time and another 137
2.28 Durative time-specifying adverbials referring to the present 138
2.29 Adv-time-simultaneity 139
2.30 Punctual Adv-times and durative bounded situations 140
2.31 The role of pure duration adverbials 142
2.32 Summary of section III 144

IV. The present and past time-spheres 147
2.33 The conceptualization of 'time-spheres' 147
2.34 Defining the time-spheres 148
2.35 Present time-sphere zones 148

2.36 Visual representation of time-spheres and zones 149
2.37 Absolute zones 149
2.38 Past *vs* pre-present 150
2.39 The length of the time-spheres and zones 151
2.40 Present time-sphere tenses *vs* past time-sphere tenses 152

V. Temporal domains 153
2.41 Absolute *vs* relative tenses 153
2.42 Temporal domain 153
2.43 Unexpanded domain 155
2.44 Absolute and relative past tenses 155
2.45 Past (time-sphere) tenses 156
2.46 Present (time-sphere) tenses 156
2.47 Absolute-relative tenses 156
2.48 Terminology: relative *vs* absolute-relative tenses 157
2.49 Temporal subordination or (temporal) binding 157
2.50 Temporal subdomain 158

VI. Summary 161
2.51 The basic terminology of tense 161
2.52 What counts as a tense? 162
2.53 Full situation and predicated situation 164
2.54 What is (and is not) expressed by tenses 164
2.55 Special uses of tenses 166
2.56 Types of temporal adverbials 167
2.57 The conceptualization of time that tenses encode 168
2.58 Establishing and expanding temporal domains 169

I. Introduction

Chapter 1 provided some general terminological and conceptual background preparatory to looking at tense in English. In chapter 2 we set out the fundamental elements of a theory of tense and time.

In part I (2.1–18), we briefly discuss the distinction between tense and time, and the distinction between tense, tenses and tense forms. We provide working definitions of three related temporal concepts: 'orientation time', 'situation time', and 'temporal zero-point' ('t_0'), which is nearly always speech time. These crucial concepts, whose provisional definitions are refined later on, enable us to describe how a situation can be temporally related to another situation or to the temporal zero-point by the use of a particular tense. In part I, we also touch on various general questions about tenses in English, including the question whether English has only two tenses – the present and the past tense – and whether it has a future tense. Part I further introduces some more key distinctions. We distinguish between 'full situations' and 'predicated situations', noting that only predicated situations are relevant when we discuss how tense forms locate situations in time. We distinguish between 'absolute tenses' and 'relative tenses', which jointly play a role in the definition of what we call a 'temporal domain' (a notion that is discussed more fully in part V). Finally, we distinguish between 'T(ense)-relations', 'Adv(erbially indicated)-time-relations' and 'W(orld)-relations', referring to whether a situation time is temporally linked to another time by direct linguistic means (tenses or temporal adverbials) or not (in which case the interpretation of temporal relations is largely based on the hearer's knowledge of the world).

In part II (2.19–2.21), we mention some special uses of tenses, such as the modal past, as in *I wanted to ask you a favour*, uses involving a so-called 'shift of temporal perspective', including the well-known 'historic(al) present' as in *Suddenly this man walks in …*, and the present tense in universal sentences, as in *Two and two is four.*

Part III (2.22 – 2.32) is concerned with the various kinds of interactions between tenses and temporal adverbials, and, especially, those between types of situations and temporal adverbials. For example, we argue that the representation of a durative bounded situation can combine with a punctual time adverbial (e. g. *At seven o'clock he ate a three-course dinner*) only on a special interpretation.

Part IV (2.33–2.40) is devoted to the way in which the English tense system divides up time into what we refer to as the 'present time-sphere' and the 'past time-sphere', the former of which is further divided into three separate 'time-zones'.

In part V (2.41–2.50) we take a closer look at the concept of 'temporal domain'. As pointed out above, this concept involves the distinction between absolute and relative tenses, which are used to link a situation time to the temporal zero-point or to another orientation time, respectively. For example, in a sentence like *John said he had worked hard*, a past temporal domain is established by the past tense, which linguistically represents the time of John saying something as anterior to t_0 and which is therefore an absolute tense. The past domain is then expanded by the past perfect, which linguistically represents the time of the 'working hard' situation as anterior to the time of the saying situation and which is therefore a relative tense.

Finally, part VI provides a summary of the chapter.

2.1 Tense *vs* time

A tense is the pairing of a morpho-syntactic form with a meaning, the meaning being the specification of the temporal location of a situation. Thus, in the future tense, the form '*will* + present infinitive' is paired with the meaning 'location after speech time'. A tense relates the temporal location of a situation to the temporal zero-point – usually speech time – or to some other known time which is itself related either directly or indirectly to the temporal zero-point.

As we have seen in chapter 1, it is important not to confuse tense with time. Time is an extralinguistic category, i. e. it exists independently of language. (So, many million years ago time existed – and we refer to it in sentences like *This rock was formed many million years ago* – but there were not human creatures nor languages yet.) The term 'tense' is a linguistic concept: it has to do with the phenomenon that a language has different verb forms corresponding to the different ways in which a speaker can locate the actualization of a given situation in time. More specifically, 'tense' refers to the role of specific verb forms in a given language to locate situations in time.[1] That is, as a grammatical category, tense consists of the combination of grammatical form and meaning. Since the only way to locate a situation in time is to take a point in time whose location is known, and then locate the situation in relation to this point, this means that any tense linguistically expresses the temporal relation between the time of actualization of a situation and some other time, which may be the temporal zero-point (which is normally the moment of speech) or some other 'time of orientation' (i. e. time to which another time is related by a tense –

---

[1] A more refined definition will be given in section 2.13.2, after some technical notions have been introduced. We will say there that tense is 'the grammatical expression of the temporal location of the actualization of a predicated situation'.

see 2.2), such as the time of another situation. Thus, in the sentence *John said that Bill had left*, the past tense form *said* locates the actualization of the situation of John speaking at a time which is conceived of as a past time, i. e. as a time of orientation (or 'orientation time') which lies completely before the moment of speech. The past perfect form *had left* expresses that Bill's leaving actualized before John's utterance; the time of the latter situation is thus the orientation time to which the time of Bill's leaving is represented as anterior.

2.2 'Orientation time' and 'situation time': provisional definitions

Provisionally, an orientation time is a time to which the time of a situation can be related by a tense form. A situation time is also an orientation time.

Any time to which the time of a situation can be temporally related by a tense is an ORIENTATION TIME. The time of a situation can always function as the orientation time to which the time of another situation is temporally related by a tense. For this reason we could refer to the time of a situation as the 'situation orientation time', but to keep things simple we will use the term SITUATION TIME. This is the time of a situation as it is located in time by a tense form (i. e. as it is temporally related to speech time or to another orientation time) and to which the time of another situation can be temporally related by a tense form. (The word *can* makes it clear that a situation time need not be an actual orientation time: it may also be a potential one, as in the independent sentence *John left*.)[2] See 2.14 for a more elaborated technical definition of 'situation time'.

2.3 Tenses

A tense expresses a tense structure. A tense structure is a blueprint for one particular way of locating a situation in time. The structure expresses the temporal relation(s) between the situation time and one or more orientation times. For every tense structure that can be expressed, we can talk of a matching tense. A tense form may be an inflected main verb or a main verb plus one or more auxiliaries.

---

[2] In one-clause sentences the situation time never functions as orientation time. An example of an orientation time which is not a situation time is the time indicated (in the sense explained in 2.16.1) by *at five* in *John will already have left at five*.

2.3.1 The various grammatical expressions of location in time which constitute the linguistic category 'tense' are 'tenses'. A TENSE is the linguistic expression of a particular temporal meaning by a particular form (a 'tense form'). In English, as in most languages that have tense, this is a form of the verb. The particular temporal meaning expressed by a tense is a TENSE STRUCTURE. This is the temporal structure (minimally involving a situation time, an orientation time and a temporal relation between them) which represents a specific way of locating a situation in time. We will argue that each tense has an invariant meaning. It follows that there are as many tenses as there are tense structures that can be expressed by tense forms of the verb. Thus, in English, *does*, *has done*, *had done*, *will do*, *will have done*, etc. are all verb forms expressing different tenses. Tenses represent a pairing of form and meaning.

2.3.2 A TENSE FORM can be either a simple or a complex verb form. That is, it may consist of one constituent (the main verb) only or be a phrase involving one or more auxiliaries next to the main verb. We can distinguish the following possibilities:

(a) 'verb stem + present or past tense morpheme' (*helps*, *helped*)
(b) '[verb stem of perfect tense auxiliary + present or past tense morpheme] + past participle' *(has helped, had helped)*
(c) '[verb stem of future tense auxiliary + present or past morpheme'] + present infinitive' *(will help, would help)*
(d) '[verb stem of future tense auxiliary + present or past morpheme] + perfect infinitive' *(will have helped, would have helped)*
(e) combinations involving both the perfect tense auxiliary and the future tense auxiliary *will* and/or the 'futurish' (see 2.9) semi-auxiliary *be going to* (e. g. *has been going to help, would have been going to help*, etc.).

These five kinds of expressions of tense will all be referred to as 'tense forms'. Every one of them can be interwoven with the progressive marker '*be* + V-*ing*', which expresses progressive aspect, not tense (see 2.6).

2.3.3 The most common tenses in English are traditionally indicated by the following terms:

(a) the present tense: *I live here / I am living here.*
(b) the past tense (or preterite):[3] *I lived there / I was living there.*

---

[3] In Am. E. the term *preterite* is spelled *preterit*.

(c) the future tense: *I'll go there / I'll be going there.*

(d) the present perfect: *I've lived here / I've been living here for ages.*

(e) the past perfect (or pluperfect): *I had lived there / I had been living there for ages.*

(f) the future perfect: *I will have left by then / By then she will have been living in London for some time.*

(g) the conditional tense: *We would soon find out / The next day he would be working on his thesis.*

(h) the conditional perfect: *She would have left by then / By then she would have been living in London for some time.*

However, there are other tenses, indicating more complex structures, for which there are no traditional names. Examples of these are the 'complex relative' (see 1.18.3) tenses expressed by the tense forms in the following sentences:

> [The council already adopted one version last month. The landlords spend [sic] a fortune to [...] wipe out that plan.] So this Tuesday night the council *will be going to do* a second plan, as a compromise. (www)
>
> You'*ve been going to pay* me back for ages [but I still haven't seen a penny].
>
> [The bottom line is what Celtic did to me last Monday is not the way to treat people who have done what I have done for the club. They stabbed me in the back when] they said they *had been going to sack* me anyway. [I can't understand why they said that. No one ever said it to my face.] (COB)

Moreover, we will argue that there are actually two past tenses in English: the 'absolute past tense' and the 'relative past tense' (see especially 8.23–32).

2.4 Temporal zero-point (t_0)

The temporal zero-point is the time from which all the temporal relations expressed by a tense ultimately take their starting point. It is usually speech time. Thus in *He had left when I arrived*, the structure of the past perfect tells us that *had left* locates the leaving relative to (more specifically, prior to) a time which is itself located relative to (more specifically, prior to) speech time. English treats t_0 as punctual.

By TEMPORAL ZERO-POINT or ZERO-TIME (abbreviation: t_0) we mean the time which is the ultimate 'origin' of all the temporal relations expressed by the temporal structure of a tense, i. e. the only time in a tense structure that is not itself represented as dependent on another (more basic) time. It is the only time that is given ('assumed known') whenever a sentence is uttered. In English, the temporal zero-point is nearly always the encoding time, i. e. the time of uttering or writing the message. (Exceptions will be dealt with in 2.11.1.) Another feature of English is that it conceives of t_0 as punctual (nondurative).

2.5 Nonfinite clauses are tenseless

Because nonfinite verbs carry no indication of their (ultimate) temporal relation to t_0, they can never be said to be tensed. However, a situation denoted by a nonfinite clause is interpreted as temporally related to some other time in the context (as simultaneous with it, for example, in the case of a present participle, or as anterior to it, for example, in the case of a past participle).

It follows from our definition of tense and tenses in 2.1 and 2.3 that nonfinite clauses must be treated as tenseless (untensed), because they lack the present or past tense morpheme and therefore fail to express present or past time reference. (They can express simultaneity or anteriority, but that is a different matter – see 1.11.1.) Only finite verb forms are tense forms. Nonfinite forms do not belong to the tense system, in which all the temporal relations expressed ultimately find their origin in the temporal zero-point (which is usually the moment of speech – see section 2.4). Though nonfinite verb forms express one temporal relation, they do not express a full tense structure which necessarily hinges on the temporal zero-point (t_0). A nonfinite verb form simply relates the time of the situation referred to to some other, contextually given, time. The latter is mostly the time of the head clause situation, but (since t_0 is always given) it may also be the temporal zero-point:

The workers *downing* tools will be fired. *(The present participle downing expresses no more than simultaneity with another time, which may be the present (= time of speech) or a future time.)*

My late grandfather hated *walking* under a hot sun. *(The gerund form walking is interpreted in terms of simultaneity with the past time indicated by hated.)*

I {admit / admitted / will admit} *having been* in love with her. *(The gerund form having been expresses anteriority to the time of the head clause situation, irrespective of the latter's location in time.)*

Some people *taken in* by these confidence tricksters will lose everything they own. *(The past participle taken in means 'having been taken in' and expresses anteriority either to the time of the head clause situation or to the time of speech.)*

He claims to *have been* there. *(The 'perfect infinitive' expresses anteriority to the head clause situation.)*

The lack of tense morphology and the fact that when the participle expresses simultaneity with a time other than t_0, it does not formally indicate the (past, future, etc.) nature of the time to which the time of its situation is temporally related, constitute solid evidence that participles are tenseless, even though they are either ‘perfect’ or ‘present’ in form, depending on whether the one relation they express is or is not that of anteriority. The same is true of the other nonfinite forms, viz. infinitives and gerunds. (In other words, verb forms are only tense forms if the main verb or the tense auxiliary involves an inflectional tense morpheme expressing a direct relation with t_0.)[4]

2.6 Progressive tenses?

There are no progressive tenses – progressivity has to do with aspect, not tense – but there are progressive *verb forms* when progressive aspect combines with a tensed form. *She was climbing* contains a progressive past tense form.

2.6.1 The difference between the progressive form and the nonprogressive form is a matter of grammatical aspect rather than tense. Thus, both *walked* and *was walking* are past tense forms. The labels ‘progressive tenses’ and ‘nonprogressive tenses’ will therefore be avoided in this grammar. On the other hand, we will use phrases like ‘the past progressive’, etc., which refer to *verb forms* encoding both tense and aspect, but which do not confuse the different conceptual natures of tense and aspect.

2.6.2 Some grammars speak of the ‘continuous form’ or ‘*be* + *-ing*’ instead of the ‘progressive form’. The nonprogressive form is sometimes referred to as the ‘simple form’, but this is potentially confusing because ‘simple past’ and ‘past simple’ are more frequently used to denote forms like *said*, *was saying*, *went*, *was going*, *lived*, etc. In this use of the term, ‘simple’ distinguishes *said*, etc. from more complex forms like *had said*, *would say* and *would have said*.

In order to avoid confusion, we will not use ‘simple past’ in the latter sense: a form like *said* or *was saying* will be referred to as a ‘past tense form’ or ‘preterite’. Similarly, we will call *said* a ‘nonprogressive past tense form’ rather than a ‘simple past tense form’. And for the sake of simplicity, we will use only the former of the terms ‘progressive’ and ‘continuous’.

---

[4] This also applies to ‘relative tenses’, which express a relation in a ‘temporal domain’ – see 2.15.3. Such tenses (e.g. the past perfect) contain an inflectional tense morpheme revealing the temporal location of the temporal domain relative to t_0.

2.7 Theoretical discussion: does English have more than two tenses?

On the view that only forms marked for tense by inflectional morphemes qualify as tenses, English has only two tenses: past and present. There is also a view that the fact that English has two temporal perspectives, past and present (reflected in the morphological facts) supports the two-tense analysis. However, there is no *a priori* reason why complex (multi-word) forms should not be considered to be tense forms, and the fact that English has two temporal perspectives reflects (or is reflected in) the fact that it has two *sets* of tenses, not that it has only two tenses.

2.7.1 There are many linguists who disagree with the view (expressed in 2.3.1) that there are as many tenses as there are temporal structures represented by tense forms. These people hold that there are only two tenses in English, viz. the present and the past, because this is the only distinction that is expressed by inflectional morphemes (especially by suffixes, i. e. verb endings). However, there is no *a priori* reason for assuming that tense can only be expressed by bound (= inflectional) morphemes and not by free morphemes (viz. tense auxiliaries). On the contrary, there are several reasons why the view that English has only two tenses should not be adopted.

2.7.2 The claim that there are only two tenses in English is mainly based on two observations. The first is that the inflectional tense morphology of the verb only reveals a distinction between an inflected and an uninflected form. The inflected form (mostly realized as *-ed*) is used in the forms *walked*, *had walked*, *would walk* and *would have walked*, which are therefore all referred to as realizations of 'the past tense'. The uninflected form (i. e. the form without the past tense morpheme) is used in the forms *walks*, *has walked*, *will walk* and *will have walked*, which are therefore all referred to as realizations of 'the present tense'. The second observation underlying the claim that English has only two tenses is that there are only two temporal perspectives in English, viz. the past and the nonpast (present). What is meant by this is that English treats the distinction between past and nonpast as more important than the distinction between present and nonpresent (the latter including both the past and the future) or between future and nonfuture (the latter including both the past and the present). However, this view is essentially based on the observation that English tense forms show either past or nonpast morphology, so it is not clear to us in what way the second observation is different from the first.

However this may be, it is doubtful whether either of these observations necessarily leads to the claim that there are only two tenses in English. To begin with, the observation that there are basically two temporal perspectives can lead us to conclude that there are two sets or kinds of tenses, but does not warrant the conclusion that there are only two tenses. (In French, where the future is morphologically marked, so that we must recognize the existence of a future tense in addition to a present and a past tense, we also find that there exist basically two temporal perspectives: past and nonpast. The nonpast perspective is therefore typical of a *set of tenses*, one of which is the future tense.) In other words, the observation that English and French (and most languages that have tense) treat the distinction of past and nonpast as being of greater importance than the distinction of present and nonpresent or future and nonfuture supports the view that the tenses in these languages are better subclassified into 'past tenses' *vs.* 'nonpast tenses' than into 'present tenses' *vs.* 'nonpresent tenses' or 'future tenses' *vs.* 'nonfuture tenses',[5] but does not provide any evidence for the claim that these languages make use of only two tenses.

As to the observation that the inflectional tense morphology of the verb only reveals a distinction between past and present, there is no evidence that only inflectional morphology is criterial to the designation of a form as a tense form. It is well-known that it is often the case that one and the same meaning is expressed morphologically in one language and by means of an independent morpheme in another. The definite article is a free morpheme in English, but it is a suffix in Swedish. Many languages use suffixes to express relations which are expressed by means of prepositions in English. Why should we not accept that some tenses can be expressed by inflectional morphemes while others make use of free morphemes (= auxiliaries) such as *will*? This question becomes particularly pertinent when we observe that in some cases an inflectional indication of tense has developed from an auxiliary. The modern French future tense suffix is a case in point: Latin originally had a 'synthetic' (i. e. inflectionally marked) future (e. g. *cantabo* – 'I will sing'); later on this was replaced by the 'periphrastic' (= multi-word) or 'analytic' structure *cantare habeo* (literally: 'I have to sing'), which itself ultimately agglutinated and developed into the modern French synthetic future *chanterai*. The French present perfect (*j'ai chanté*) has similarly originated as a periphrastic verb phrase which came to function as a marker of the perfect, but unlike the future, it has not been subject to synthesis but has remained analytic. These examples from French show that whether a tense is marked by an inflectional morpheme added to the verb stem or by a special auxiliary (e. g. *will*) is the result of a historical development determined by arbitrary factors that have nothing to do with the essence of the phenomenon of tense itself: the morphological changes were not accompanied by semantic changes, i. e. they did not alter the ways in which the tense forms located situations in time. It is therefore unwarranted to claim that tenses can only be marked by an inflectional morpheme (e. g. *-(e)s* or *-ed*) and not by a free morpheme such as an auxiliary (e. g. *will*).

---

[5] Languages that have future and nonfuture tenses have a tense or set of tenses to refer to the future and a tense or set of tenses to refer to whatever is not future, i. e. the present and the past. Hopi and Dyirbal are instances of such languages in which the basic distinction made by the tense system is between the future and the nonfuture. We do not know of any languages that have a tense system based on the distinction between the present and the nonpresent. If such languages exist, they use the same tense form(s) to refer to the past and to the future, both of which are 'nonpresent'.

2.7.3 Apart from the fact that they do not involve a particular inflectional tense morpheme, the present perfect and the future tense are often excluded from the English tense system on the basis of the claim that instead of expressing tense, they express 'perfect aspect' and 'future (or: predictive) modality', respectively. Sections 2.8 and 2.10 will be devoted to a refutation of this double claim.

2.8 Does English have a 'future tense'?

A sentence that locates a situation in the future is always 'modal' inasmuch as it is by definition nonfactual and involves a (to varying degrees) subjective judgement about the likelihood of the future situation's actualizing. However, in many cases, '*will* + present infinitive' is used primarily to express the future temporal location of the situation referred to. The fact that this can be the main purpose of the form justifies its status as a tense form. We distinguish between 'pure future' uses of *will*, 'prediction' uses of *will*, and 'predictability' uses of *will*, according to the degree of subjectivity involved in the use of the form. All are instances of future tense. Predictability *will* takes a future time as the evaluation time for a statement about (usually) the present or the past. (For example, *Don't worry, he will have taken a taxi home* is equivalent to 'It will become clear when we know the facts that he {has taken / took} a taxi home'.)

2.8.1 The claim that THE FUTURE "is not a tense at all, but a mode" (Cygan 1972: 9) is unwarranted, because it is an overstatement. The future tense is often used for no other apparent purpose than to locate the time of a situation in the future. We will argue that in *The train will arrive at 7.32* the form *will arrive* serves primarily to locate the train's arrival in time and therefore satisfies the definition of a tense form given in 2.3.1. This is not to say that we do not recognize the fact that the future tense has modal aspects of meaning, more specifically 'not-yet-factuality-at-t_0' and subjectivity. Whatever is still to actualize is not yet a fact at t_0. 'Not-yet-factual at a given time' is a modal notion. An utterance about a situation that has not yet held is also of necessity "a subjectively modalized utterance: a prediction rather than a statement" (Lyons

1977: 815). True as this may be, the presence of elements of epistemic modality in *will* do not alter the fact that, in the above example *The train will arrive at 7.32*, the primary aspect of meaning of *will*, and the basic reason for its use, is that it locates the situation referred to in the future. Since this function of *will* satisfies the definition of 'tense' given in 2.3.1, and '*will* + present infinitive' satisfies the definition of 'tense form' given in the same section, we claim that there *is* a future tense in English.

Because a future situation is by definition not-yet-factual-at-t_0, and because any sentence about the future must to some extent be an expression of the speaker's (subjective) judgement or belief, there is always an element of epistemic modality in the meaning of the future tense: no use of *will* is purely temporal. However, some uses are close to it because they do not appear to involve subjectivity, i. e. they do not clearly express a judgement on the part of the speaker. These very low subjectivity uses of *will* to locate a situation in the future will therefore be called 'pure future' (see 2.8.2) and will be taken as evidence that *will* in all its uses in which the situation is located in the future, is a future tense, but with instances of use varying in the degree of (remaining) modal meaning.

2.8.2 Self-evidently, the modal idea 'not-yet-factual-at-t_0' is invariably present when there is reference to the future. However, the implication of subjectivity, i. e. of speaker's judgement, can vary considerably. We can roughly distinguish between '**PURE FUTURE**', '**PREDICTION**' and '**PREDICTABILITY**'. Pure future is the least subjectified, because it comes closest to a statement of plain fact. That is, the speaker just locates the time of a situation in the future without there being a clear implication that it is his own expectation, volition or conclusion that the situation is going to actualize in the future:

> The seventh annual European Biotech Crossroads – "Biotech Nantes 2003" – *will be held* at the Cité des Congrès conference centre, Nantes, France, on September 25–26. (www)
>
> The inquest *will be* the first official public hearing in Britain to examine the circumstances surrounding the death of the princess and her boyfriend. (www)

'Prediction' and 'predictability' involve a (respectively weaker and stronger) sense of expectation based on deductive or inductive reasoning. The following sentence can help to make the distinction clear:

(1) If there's a knock at the door, it'll be the milkman.

This sentence can be interpreted in two ways, depending on whether the *if*-clause is interpreted as expressing an 'open condition' or 'closed condition'. (A condition is open if it is treated as one which may or may not be fulfilled in the future; it is closed if the speaker treats its fulfilment as a fact. In the latter case the *if*-clause is normally echoic.) The two readings of (1) can be paraphrased as follows:

(2) It is possible that there will be a knock at the door. If so, I predict that it'll be the milkman.

(3) You tell me there's a knock at the door. If so, it is predictable that it is the milkman.

On reading (2), the speaker of (1) uses the future tense to make a prediction about the future; on interpretation (3), he uses *will* to express the predictability of a conclusion concerning a present situation. The epistemic aspect of meaning is clearly strongest in reading (3). 'Prediction' concerns an assumption about the actualization of a situation in the future (or, in the case of *would*, actualization at a time posterior to the time of making the prediction). 'Predictability' is a more strongly epistemic notion in that it concerns the speaker's assumption of the strong plausibility of a conclusion. This conclusion usually concerns the past or present, seldom the future. (In 2.8.3 it will be argued that this statement only seemingly contradicts the claim — made in 2.8.1 — that predictability *will* is also an instance of future tense *will*.) Whereas in sentences with a first person subject in which *will* expresses pure future or prediction, *shall* can be substituted for *will*, it is not as a rule possible to substitute *shall* for first-person *will* when *will* expresses predictability:

["Who wrote this incomprehensible nonsense?" — "I did. It may be incomprehensible, but it's not nonsense.] I {*will* / **shall*} have used too many difficult words, as usual."

So, prediction *will* is closer to pure future *will* than to predictability *will*.

In practice, the distinction between 'prediction' and 'predictability of a future situation' is often difficult to make. If the reference is to a specific future situation, both prediction and predictability concern a statement that is based on a present expectation. Though one could say that the expectation in question is based on evidence in the case of predictability, whereas it need be no more than an assumption in the case of prediction, it may actually be hard to distinguish between the two interpretations. Consider the following sentence:

(4) If you don't do your homework, you *will* fail the exam.

There is certainly a case for treating *will* as a prediction form here, since we can use *shall* in the corresponding first person sentence:

(5) If I don't do my homework, I *shall* fail the exam.

However, apart from the prediction reading 'If you don't do your homework, I assume that you will fail the exam', (4) can also be interpreted as 'If you don't do your homework, it is predictable that you will fail the exam' (= predictability). There is no clear-cut borderline between these interpretations.

In conclusion, our 'future tense' will cover not only the 'pure future' interpretation but also the 'prediction' sense and the 'predictability' meaning of *will*.

2.8.3 It is clear from 2.8.1 and 2.8.2 that we agree that there is an epistemic modal aspect of meaning in the future tense,[6] and that we assume that *will*-forms with the weak or strong epistemic connotation of pure future, prediction or predictability can all be treated as future tense forms. In doing so we follow Declerck (1991: 87), who argues that the use of *will* for predictability – a use which is traditionally treated as modal rather than temporal – can in fact be analysed as the use of future tense *will* in order to put the 'temporal focus' on a future time of evaluation. The idea of 'temporal focus' will be dealt with at length in 11.1–3, but is in fact clear from the following examples:

> I spoke to the foreigner in French because he *didn't understand* English. *(The foreigner presumably still does not understand English, so the speaker could have used doesn't understand. Using the past tense, however, he focuses on the time when he spoke to the foreigner rather than on* t_0*.)*
>
> Bill finally saw the town, which *lay* in a wide valley. *(The town still lies in that valley, but putting the temporal focus on the past time when Bill saw the town is a means of representing things as Bill experienced them, i. e. from his point of view.)*
>
> I {need / will need} a stamp for this envelope. *(With will need the speaker focuses on the future time when he will make the envelope ready to be sent off.)*

These examples show that tense forms can reflect a choice, not only of temporal location of a situation relative to another time, but also of point of view (temporal focus). Predictability *will* can be explained similarly as a result of putting the temporal focus on a future time of evaluation:

> They will be across the border by now.
>
> *(when the bell rings)* That will be the milkman.
>
> This car will have cost a good deal, I suppose.

These uses of *will* can be explained as cases in which the temporal focus is shifted from the present to the future. Instead of simply claiming that a situation is actualizing at t_0, the speaker suggests that it will become apparent in the future that the situation was actualizing at his present t_0. That is, the speaker takes a future time of orientation (rather than t_0) as the time at which the truth of the statement is evaluated. Needless to say, the idea of a future evaluation time is essential to these uses of *will*. Sentences like those above are not interpreted as asserting a fact, but rather as expressing a belief which is expected to be confirmed in the future. *That'll be the milkman* implies something like 'as you will see when you open the door'. Such a temporal, rather than modal, analysis of *will* accords with the fact that the French future tense, which does not involve the use of an auxiliary, can be used in exactly the same way: *Ce sera le laitier* ['It will be the milkman'].

---

[6] Epistemic modality has to do with the speaker's expression of the degree to which he thinks a statement is true. A statement can be represented, e. g. as likely (*He may well do it*), as possible (*He might do it*), as contrary-to-fact (*He might have done it*). The epistemic modality expressed by the future tense is the idea 'not-yet-factual at t_0' (see 14.4.2): the future situation is not yet a fact at t_0, when the prediction is made.

2.9 Future tense forms *vs* 'futurish' tense forms

Some forms in English have dual time reference: forms such as *be about to*, or the present progressive in *I'm leaving in a minute*, or, in some of its uses, *be going to* refer to the time of an implied present state (which is one from which a future outcome can be predicted) as well as to the time of a future situation. It is the actualization of the future situation which is the outcome predictable from the present state. Only the future situation – the one associated with the lexical verb – is actually referred to. Such verb forms establish a future domain but are not future tense forms. We call them futurish forms. '*Be going to* + verb' may be a futurish form and it may be a future tense form, depending on whether it has 'pure future' time reference or also implies a present state. (There is no clear cut-off point between the two uses.)

2.9.1 Apart from the future tense, which (from a temporal point of view) does no more than locate a situation in the future and which therefore has 'single time reference' (i. e. future time reference only), there are also verbal expressions which would seem to effect 'dual time reference', viz. a combination of future time reference and present time reference. Such expressions will be referred to as FUTURISH tense forms. These forms link the future actualization of a situation to a particular kind of present state. For example:

> [I have bought a computer because] I am going to write a novel. *(= 'I have the present intention of writing a novel in the future.')*
>
> [Look at those clouds!] There is going to be a storm in a minute. *(= 'There are signs in the present that there will be a storm soon.')*
>
> I'm leaving in a minute. *(= 'There is a present arrangement for me to leave in a minute.')*
>
> [Look at her!] She is about to faint. *(= 'You can see now that she will faint in the very near future'.)*
>
> The Queen is to leave for Canada tomorrow. *(= 'There is an official decision that the Queen will leave for Canada tomorrow.)*

In the last three examples, the forms *am leaving*, *is about to faint* and *is to leave* will not be treated as lexical realizations of the future tense. However, they are ‘futurish’ forms because they clearly locate the situation of leaving or fainting in the future (and in doing so establish a future ‘temporal domain’ − see 2.15).

As to *be going to*, this auxiliary has two uses when it is used in the present tense: one as a futurish form, in which its primary meaning has to do with present factors, such as present intention, as in *I’m going to pick the lock*, and one as a future tense form, in which its primary meaning is simply future time reference, as in *Tomorrow the weather’s going to be better than it’s been today.* In the first function it parallels other futurish forms like *am leaving*, whose primary meaning is present time reference. In the second function it parallels *will* (as future tense auxiliary), which simply expresses future time reference − see 2.9.2. The only difference is that *be going to* is less grammaticalized as a marker of future tense than *will* is, since it is more frequently found with predominantly present time reference. (Though there are clear enough examples of futurish *be going to* and clear enough examples of future tense *be going to*, there are of course intermediate cases that do not fall so clearly into the one or the other sort of *be going to*.)

The observation that futurish forms link the future actualization of a situation to a present state and therefore have ‘dual time reference’ does not mean that they refer to two different situations (one present, the other future). Only lexical verbs can denote situations. All the futurish forms contain only one lexical verb, which refers to the situation that is located in the future. In this respect a sentence like *I’m going to help her* differs from (the semantically similar) *I intend to help her*, which involves two lexical verbs and therefore refers to two different situations.

2.9.2 In English, the prototypical realization of the future tense involves *will* (or, in the first person, *shall*). However, as we have seen above, the auxiliary *be going to* can sometimes also express ‘pure future’, which means that we must recognize ‘*be going to* + present infinitive’ as a possible (albeit less prototypical) realization of the future tense. In the following examples there is no real difference of meaning between *will* and *be going to*:

> Tomorrow there {*will be* / *is going to be*} frost in the northern part of England.
>
> {*Will* she *be* / *is* she *going to be*} there? I wonder.
>
> How many of these animals {*will survive* / *are going to survive*} winter is anybody’s guess.

Our decision to treat such *be going to*-forms as (less prototypical) lexical realizations of the future tense is in keeping with (some of) the literature: in spite of the fact that *be going to* and *will*/*shall* are not always interchangeable, some researchers have argued that they do have the same basic temporal meaning. After investigating the use of the future tense and the *go*-future in a variety of languages, Fleischman (1982: 97) concludes that her findings “militate strongly in favour of regarding the *go*-paradigm as a legitimate future-tense form”. Haegeman (1989: 291) similarly argues “that at the level of sentence meaning *be going to* and *shall/will* are equivalent, and that the difference between them is to be found in the constraints they impose on the processing in context of the utterance in which they occur”.

The claim that the *will/shall* future tense is more prototypical than the *be going to* future tense accords with the following observations. First, in Standard English, the future perfect is nearly always formed with *shall* and *will*, very seldom with *be going to* (as future tense form) and never with a futurish form. Compare:

John {will take / is going to take / is taking / is about to take} the bus in five minutes.

John {will have taken / ?is going to have taken / *is having taken / *is about to have taken} the bus by the time we reach his office.

Secondly, *shall* and *will* are the auxiliaries that combine with a progressive infinitive to form progressive future tense forms. Progressive future tense forms built with *be going to* are very seldom used and are restricted to an informal register:

This time tomorrow I {will / ??am going to} be driving to London.

2.9.3 In sum, we will work with the following assumptions:

(a) There does exist a future tense in English. This tense has future time reference only.
(b) English also has ‘futurish’ forms. These have dual time reference in the sense that, semantically, they link the future actualization of a situation to a present state.
(c) The prototypical realization of the future tense is by means of *will / shall*. A secondary, less prototypical realization of the future tense is by means of *be going to*. The latter can also be used as part of a futurish form.

2.10 Does English have a present perfect tense?

Some authors consider that the English present perfect is not a separate tense, but is rather a combination of another tense (present or past) and an aspectual meaning component of ‘current relevance’. However, since we analyse the present perfect as having a tense structure different from that of the present tense or the past tense, we consider it to be a tense in its own right. The present perfect locates a situation in the pre-present zone while the past tense locates it in the past zone. The claim that the present perfect has a different temporal structure from the past tense is supported by the fact that the two tenses behave differently with certain adverbs. (In chapter 6 it will be shown that certain adverbials referring to a time that is connected to the present combine with the present perfect but not with the past tense, and that adverbials referring to a bygone time that is dissociated from the present combine with the past tense but not with the present perfect.)

2.10.1 It is often claimed that a form like *has arrived* is not a *present perfect tense* form but rather expresses 'perfect aspect'. In this view there is no present perfect tense in English. The so-called 'present perfect' is claimed to be a combination of a genuine tense (the present tense for some, the past tense for others – see below) and a special kind of aspect, viz. 'perfect aspect', which is expressed by *have … -en*. The meaning of 'perfect aspect' is defined in terms of 'current relevance' (i. e. the anterior situation referred to by *have … -en* is still relevant at the time to which it is represented as anterior), which is sometimes narrowed down to 'resultant state': *John has arrived* represents John's arrival as still relevant at t_0, or expresses the resultant state 'John is here'. This definition of the present perfect is essentially aspectual: the perfect focuses on the fact that the situation is finished and on the ensuing resultant state (in the same way as the progressive focuses on the middle of a situation).

It is striking, however, that there is no unanimity as to which 'genuine' tense – present or past – is realized by forms like *has come*. Whereas some linguists (e. g. Palmer 1988: 35) claim that the present perfect is a combination of the present tense with 'perfect aspect' (or 'perfect phase'), others (e. g. Comrie 1985: 78) claim that the present perfect realizes the same temporal structure as the preterite and differs from the latter only in that it also expresses 'perfect aspect' (defined as 'current relevance'). These claims cannot both be true. In fact, we will argue in 5.1–2 that the present perfect minus 'perfect aspect' yields neither the temporal schema of the present tense nor that of the preterite. The present perfect realizes a temporal structure of its own, and should therefore be considered a tense in its own right.

2.10.2 In 2.33–37 we will argue that the preterite, the present perfect tense and the present tense locate the time of the situation referred to in three different 'time-zones', viz. the 'past', the 'pre-present' and the 'present'. (The past is conceived of as lying completely before t_0 and as disconnected from it; the pre-present is conceptualized as a period leading up to t_0; the present zone is restricted to t_0 itself.) Since these are three different ways of locating a situation in time, the three forms represent three different tenses – see the definition of 'tense' and 'tense forms' in 2.1 and 2.3.

The choice between locating a situation in the past and locating it in the pre-present is determined by whether the speaker is concerned with 'THEN' or 'NOW'. Concern with NOW is equivalent to 'current relevance' – see 5.35, (but not necessarily to 'present result' – see 5.36). We therefore agree with the claim that the present perfect expresses current relevance, but do not see this as evidence for the claim that the present perfect is not a tense. The present perfect is a tense because, by locating a situation in the pre-present rather than the past or present, it expresses a temporal structure which is different from the semantic structure of any other tense.

The above view is consistent with the fact that the past tense, the present perfect tense and the present tense differ as to their compatibility with adverbs like *still* or *already*. This shows that the meaning of the present perfect is neither 'past tense + current relevance' nor 'present tense + current relevance'.

It was five o'clock. John {was still / *has still been} in his office.

It is five o'clock. John {is still / *has still been} in his office.

It was five o'clock. John {was already / *has already been} in his office.

It is five o'clock. John {is already / has already been} in his office. *(If the present perfect is substituted for the present tense, we do not arrive at a meaning which is a combination of the meaning of the present tense and current relevance. Rather, the time reference of the clause is completely different: John's being in his office precedes speech time rather than coinciding with it.)*

Clearly, the present perfect has a temporal meaning (semantic structure) of its own.

2.11 More on the notion of temporal zero-point (t_0)

Although the temporal zero-point (t_0) is nearly always speech time, in certain contexts it is possible for the speaker to choose the decoding time as t_0. (For example, this is the case when a road sign reads *You are now entering Washington County*). Whether t_0 is the encoding time or the decoding time, English treats it as a point (rather than an interval). Thus, durative situations cannot be located in their entirety at t_0.

2.11.1 In 2.4 we have defined t_0 as the time which is the ultimate 'origin' of all the temporal relations expressed by the temporal structure of a tense, i. e. the only time in a tense structure that is not itself represented as dependent on another (more basic) time. We have said that t_0 is the only time that is always given ('assumed known') when a sentence is uttered. We have also noted that in English the temporal zero-point is nearly always the encoding time, i. e. the time of uttering or writing the message. In this section we will explain why t_0 is only ‘nearly always’ the encoding time: when the time of decoding (= hearing or reading) the message is later than the encoding time, it is possible for the speaker to choose the decoding time as temporal zero-point.[7] The following are some typical examples in which the speaker makes use of the latter possibility:

(a) Suppose you go to someone’s office and find a note on his door saying *I am in room 21*. In this case the time referred to by the present tense is not the time when the message was written but the time at which the message was expected to be read and interpreted. (If the note said *I have gone to room 21* the same remark would be applicable.) Road signs of the kind *You are now leaving East Sussex* constitute similar examples.

(b) Most newspaper articles are written the day before the newspaper is on sale to the public, or earlier. In such cases, writers may use a tense system in which t_0 is not the time when the articles are written but the time of publication.

> At the time of going to press, the two parties *were* still not decided as to whether the meeting should take place. (www) *(If t_0 were the author’s speech time, the appropriate form would be* *are still not decided**.)*

The following example shows that this choice of t_0 is not obligatory:

> At time of going to press, this software (named ‘PaTrAS’) *is* in the final stages of testing and should be available to a small group of users for field trials early in the new year. (www)

However, t_0 has to be the decoding time if there is a temporal adverb whose interpretation is shifted to the point of view of the reader. Thus, if someone dies on 23 July this may be reported (in a text written the same day for publication on 24 July) as *Yesterday X died*, but not as **Yesterday X dies*. Note that in this case the journalist selects as t_0 the official date of publication, since it is expected that most of the public are going to read the paper that day. Whoever reads the paper after that date must therefore compute the absolute deictic indications of time (i. e. the deictic adverb *yesterday* and the deictic tense form *died*) from the temporal standpoint of this publication time.

---

[7] This double possibility concerning the choice of t_0 (temporal deictic centre) runs parallel with the double choice that is sometimes possible in connection with the spatial deictic centre. For example, verbs like *come* and *bring* allow the spatial deictic centre to lie either with the speaker or with the addressee:

(i) “*Come* and stay for the weekend and *bring* the children.” – “Thanks, we’d love to *come*. Can we *bring* the dog too?”

In the first sentence, *come* and *bring* imply movement towards the speaker’s deictic centre. In the reply they imply movement towards the addressee’s deictic centre.

(c) Similarly, pre-recorded radio or TV programmes may take the hearing time as t_0:

The programme you *are* now *listening* to *was recorded* yesterday.

The sound you *have* just *heard* is the mating call of the lesser spotted otter.

(d) The writer of a letter may take the time of decoding as t_0. Thus, in a letter which is written and sent before Christmas but which is expected to reach its destination only after Christmas, we may read such sentences as *I hope you had a nice Christmas.*[8]

(e) The author addressing the reader of a book may take as t_0 the stage in the book where the reader has arrived.

Mention *has been* already *made* more than once, of a certain Dragon who swung and creaked complainingly before the village alehouse door. (CHUZ)

(f) Descriptions of travel itineraries may also take the time of reading as t_0.

Florence to Rome. This morning our local guide *takes* us on a walking tour to see the Duomo, Giotto's Belltower, Basilica of Santa Croce and Piazza della Signoria. Time to shop for silver and gold and see a demonstration of Florentine leathercraft, before we *continue* to the fabled city of Rome. Tonight a walking tour of this ancient city *includes* Piazza Navona, the Trevi Fountain the Pantheon and Piazza Venezia. (www)

Here, the reader is supposed to imagine himself (at the time of reading) on the trip, experiencing the itinerary as it unfolds.

(g) Stage directions are typically written in the present tense. Here, t_0 is the time when the play actualizes (i. e. the time when it is read, rehearsed, acted, recalled in memory ...). The same is true of sentences in which a character in a play is asking the audience to show patience or to applaud. For example, it would sound very silly if Shakespeare had written such lines in the future tense, locating the request in the future from his own deictic centre, so to speak.

In examples like these, absolute deictic temporal adverbials (i. e. adverbials like *now, yesterday, two days ago, today, tomorrow, the day after tomorrow*, which are interpreted as defining a time interval relative to t_0) are also related to the time of decoding the message.

2.11.2 In the real world, actions like speaking, writing, reading, etc. take up a certain time. Still, as a linguistic concept, t_0 is conceived of as a point in time in English. Evidence for this is that durative situations cannot be located in their entirety at t_0. A sentence like **You threaten me* cannot be used to locate a single (nonhabitual) situation at t_0: we have to use *You're threatening me* instead. In the latter sentence the progressive form does not refer to the situation as a whole but rather to a point in the middle of the situation. It is this point that is located at t_0 – see section 3.1.1 for more details.

---

[8] In Latin it was customary to use 'epistolary tenses' when writing letters. In this tense system, t_0 is the time of reception, and the past tense is used for any situation preceding this time, i. e. even for situations holding at the time of writing the letter. Thus we read sentences of the type *I was writing to you to tell you that* ... (where English would use *I am writing to you to tell you that* ...).

2.12 Full situation *vs* predicated situation

When we say that a clause is used to refer to a situation, we have to distinguish between the 'full situation' and the 'predicated situation. The full situation is the complete situation that the speaker implies (or the hearer infers) has actualized, is actualizing or will actualize, however long it turns out to be or to have been. The predicated situation is the part of the full situation which is actually referred to in the clause used. The predicated situation – the linguistically indicated situation – and the full situation – the inferred situation – may coincide with one another, or the predicated situation may be shorter than the full situation.

The latter possibility is only available when the situation is represented as homogeneous. (In that case, an utterance that is true of the whole situation is also true of any part of the situation.) If a situation is bounded, as, for example, the situation represented in *Meg sat in the chair for ten minutes,* it is nonhomogeneous and the length of the predicated situation is the same as the length of the full situation.

2.12.1 When referring to a situation we must distinguish between the 'full situation' and the 'predicated situation'. The FULL SITUATION is the complete situation as it actualizes in whatever 'possible world' (e. g. the actual world or the not-yet-factual future world) is being referred to; the PREDICATED SITUATION is that part of the full situation (possibly all of it) about which an assertion is made (or a question is asked) in the sentence. As is clear from *Ten minutes ago John was in the library* (which does not exclude the possibility that John is still there), it is the predicated situation rather than the full situation that is located in time by the use of the tense form. That is, the above sentence expresses no more than that John was in the library ten minutes ago. In the real world, John may have been there for a much longer time, i. e. the full situation almost certainly lasted much longer (and indeed may still continue at t_0), but the sentence does not make a claim about this. It only makes a claim about the predicated situation, i. e. that part of the full situation that coincides with the time indicated by *ten minutes ago*. This means that when we are concerned purely with the contribution of the tense form to the interpretation of the sentence, the full situation is irrelevant. What a tense form locates in time (i. e. what a tensed clause *represents*) is the predicated situation.

The predicated situation (= the linguistically indicated situation) and the full situation (= the inferred situation) may coincide with one another, or the predicated situation may be shorter than the full situation. The latter possibility is only available when the situation is represented as homogeneous. (In that case, an utterance that is true of the whole situation is also true of any part of the situation – see 1.36.4). If a situation is 'bounded' (see 1.44), like, for example, the situation represented in *Meg sat in the chair for ten minutes,* it is nonhomogeneous and the length of the predicated situation is the same as the length of the full situation. That is, the speaker cannot say *Meg sat in the chair for ten minutes* and mean the hearer to infer that she sat there for longer. This is because of the fact that the situation has an end, and the length of time it took to reach that end are clearly communicated. The same applies to *Meg threw the chair*: both the fact that the situation has an end and the length of time it takes to reach that end are communicated linguistically, but here they are communicated implicitly via the meaning of *throw the chair.* It is in the nature of throwing a chair that the situation takes a few seconds at most and ends when the chair has been thrown. Because this end is part of the meaning of 'throw the chair', the speaker can only expect the hearer to infer the normal time it takes to reach that end – say, a couple of seconds – unless he specifies otherwise. If the speaker wants the hearer to understand that the chair-throwing went on for several minutes (Meg threw the chair, picked it up, threw it again etc.) this must be clear from the context, either implicitly – for example *They competed as to who could hit the target most often with a piece of furniture. Jim threw the coffee table and Meg threw the chair* – or explicitly – *Meg threw the chair over and over at the spider, but she never managed to squash it.*

To sum up: since a bounded situation must take up a finite amount of time, it is necessary for the hearer to supply the amount of time taken up in order to reach a satisfactory interpretation. The hearer will assume a default length of situation associated with the lexical item(s) involved unless a different length of situation is specified (or otherwise made clear). That is, the clause used to represent a situation as bounded cannot imply a full situation longer than the situation actually referred to in the clause. Since the situation actually referred to in the clause is the predicated situation, it is inevitable that when a situation is represented as bounded, the length of the full situation will be the same as the length of the predicated situation.

2.12.2 It follows that it is only when the clause represents the situation as homogeneous that the predicated situation can be shorter than the full situation. As noted in section 1.36.4, a situation is represented as homogeneous if the clause representing it can be used not only to refer to the full situation but also to refer to parts of that situation. Homogeneous situations are either ‘atelic’ situations or ‘telic’ situations which are (intended to be) interpreted as progressive whether or not a progressive verb form is used. (For the definition of ‘(a)telic’, see 1.39). Thus, in all of the following examples the situations are represented as homogeneous:

At 5 p.m. I was at home. *(atelic situation represented as being in progress at the ‘vantage time’ indicated by* *at 5 p.m.**)*

At 5 p.m. I *was walking* home. *(idem)*

The sun *was shining*, birds *were singing* in the branches overhead, and the city *was* generally at ease with itself. *(similar, except that the vantage time is not referred to in the sentence itself)*

[Saturday had come at last. Jane was sitting on a low limb of an apple tree. It was a sunny June afternoon.] Flowers *bloomed*, birds *sang*, butterflies *flitted* everywhere. (www) *(The dynamic situations are interpreted as being in progress in spite of the fact that nonprogressive forms are used.)*

At that time I *walked* to work. *(= At that time I was in the habit of walking to work.) (A habit is a state: it denotes what is characteristic of the referent of the subject NP over an extended period of time.)*

The following is similar, except that the relevant verb form is a relative tense form:

[John said that] he was ill. *(The time of saying is much shorter than the time of the full situation of John being ill. Yet the two times are interpreted as simultaneous with each other. This is possible because* *he was ill* *is homogeneous: this makes it possible for the time of the predicated situation of John being ill, which is represented as coinciding with the time of saying, to be a proper subinterval of the time of the full situation of John being ill.)*

When the actualization of a situation is represented as bounded (see 1.44), the predicated situation coincides with the full situation and the clause is automatically nonhomogeneous (see 1.45):

I wrote two letters this morning. *(Because it is bounded, this sentence can only be a true description of the full situation; it cannot be used to represent any subpart of the full situation.)*

[John said that] at that very moment he {was writing / *wrote} a book. *(The time of saying is much shorter than the time of writing the book. The sentence is fine with* *he was writing a book* *because the progressive form represents the telic situation as homogeneous. The sentence is ungrammatical with* *he wrote a book* *because this clause represents the situation as bounded and hence as nonhomogeneous. If this is the case, the predicated situation coincides with the full situation. Since the full* *situation of writing a book necessarily takes up more time than the situation of saying something, it is impossible for the time of the predicated (= full) situation to coincide with the time of the saying.)*

2.13 Time of the predicated situation *vs* time of the full situation

2.13.1 The distinction between 'full situation' and 'predicated situation' leads to a further distinction between the 'TIME OF THE FULL SITUATION' and the 'TIME OF THE PREDICATED SITUATION'. The latter is the (durative or punctual) time interval taken up by the predicated situation. It is the latter notion that we have in mind when we speak of 'SITUATION TIME' (see 2.2) in connection with tenses.[9]

> [You can come tomorrow if you like.] I'll be at home. *(It is possible that the speaker is at home at t_0 and will continue to be at home until and including tomorrow. However, the statement I'll be at home does not say anything about t_0: the predicated situation is located exclusively in the future. In other words, the interval taken up by the actualization of the full situation is irrelevant. What counts is the representation of the situation: will be represents the predicated situation as future. Other parts of the full situation, such as that coinciding with t_0, are not being referred to.)*

2.13.2 It is important to see that by 'time of the predicated situation' (= situation time) and 'time of the full situation' we mean 'time of *the actualization* of the predicated situation' and 'time of *the actualization* of the full situation', respectively. This is especially relevant when the reference is to the future:

> John {will / is going to / is to} be in Berlin tomorrow.

Every one of these verb forms locates the (predicated) time of the situation of John being in Berlin in the future: in each case the *actualization* of the predicated situation is located in the future. The fact that there is also a present aspect of meaning – there is a sense of present prediction, present intention, present decision – is irrelevant to this. It only means that reference to the future has an aspect of present modality (more specifically: 'not-yet-factuality at t_0' – see 7.4), but this is unrelated to the definition of 'tense' as the grammatical expression of the temporal location of the actualization of a (predicated) situation.[10]

---

[9] This definition of 'time of the situation' (introduced in Declerck 1991a) is called 'topic time' in Klein (1992, 1994).

[10] It follows that the predicated situation in *John will leave* is not a prediction – the prediction is the speech act. The predicated situation is '[future [John leave]]', so what is future is not the situation of making a prediction but just the time reference that the

2.14 Orientation time

Any time that can provide the 'known' time (or one of the known times) required for the expression of the temporal relation(s) encoded in a tense form is an 'orientation time'. For example, the past perfect has a structure which places the (time of actualization of the) situation earlier than some other time which is itself earlier than some other time. It requires two orientation times. Thus, in *I had left before the elephant arrived* the time of the arrival of the elephant provides the orientation time before which my leaving takes place, and speech time provides the orientation time before which the arrival of the elephant takes place. There are five types of orientation time: t_0, situation times, unspecified orientation times (times which are recoverable from the context), Adv-times and implicit orientation times (times which are implicit in the structure of temporal conjunctions. An example of the latter can be found in *I will have left before the elephant arrives*. *Before* is analysed as meaning 'before the time at which'. This means that our example is paraphrasable 'I will have left before the time at which the elephant arrives'. This in turn means that the time of my leaving is analysed, not as located anterior to the elephant's arrival, but as located anterior to a time simultaneous to which the elephant will arrive. It is thus located prior to an implicit orientation time – the time simultaneous to which the elephant will arrive – rather than anterior to a situation time – the time of actualization of 'The elephant will arrive'.

Any time capable of functioning as the origin of a temporal relation expressed by a tense form will be called an ORIENTATION TIME. There are five types of orientation time:

(a) The TEMPORAL ZERO-POINT is one kind of orientation time: in sentences like *I left yesterday*, the orientation time to which the time of the predicated situation is related (as anterior) is t_0. Tenses that relate the time of a predicated situation directly to t_0 are called ABSOLUTE TENSES (see 2.41). The temporal zero-point is the most basic (unmarked) orientation time in the English tense system, as it is the only orientation time that is by definition given (assumed known).

(b) An orientation time may also be a SITUATION TIME, i. e. the 'time of a predicated situation' (as defined in sections 2.12–13 above): in *John said that Bill had left*, the past tense form *said* represents the time of its predicated situation as anterior to t_0, whereas the past perfect form *had left*

---

use of *will* effects. The prediction part is not involved in the predication; it just modalizes the predication (as based on the speaker's expectation concerning the future).

represents the time of its predicated situation as anterior to the time of the predicated situation of *said*. This shows that an orientation time may be the time of a predicated situation: the orientation time to which the time of Bill's leaving is related by *had left* is the time of the head clause situation. For ease of reference, we call an orientation time which is the time of a predicated situation a 'situation time'. Since the (punctual or durative) time of a predicated situation can always serve as the origin of a temporal relation, any time of a predicated situation is an orientation time.[11]

John stayed in the kitchen after he had finished his dinner. *(t_0 functions as the orientation time to which the situation time of John staying in the kitchen is represented as anterior, and this latter situation time is the orientation time to which the situation time of John finishing his dinner is represented as anterior.)*

This example allows us to make the following two generalizations. First, a situation time may or may not be a 'binding time', i. e. a time to which the situation time of another situation is temporally related by a tense (see 2.49). For example, the situation time of *stayed* is a binding orientation time, but the situation time of *had finished* is not. Second, an orientation time may or may not be a 'bound time', i. e. a time which is temporally related by a tense to another orientation time (see 2.49). Thus, the situation times of *stayed* and *had finished* are bound situation times, but t_0 is not.

(c) A third type of orientation time is an UNSPECIFIED ORIENTATION TIME: in *Bill had left*, the time of the predicated situation is represented as anterior to an unspecified orientation time which (in the prototypical use of the past perfect – see, however, 9.18.3) is understood as being anterior to t_0. An unspecified orientation time is an orientation time which forms part of the tense structure of a tense, but which is neither t_0 nor the time of a predicated situation which is referred to in the sentence itself. However, for a full understanding of the sentence it is necessary that this orientation time be identifiable (given) in some way. For example, the unspecified orientation time may be the time of a predicated situation referred to in the linguistic context, as in [*It was no longer dark when she woke up*.] *Bill had left the room*. Here, *she woke up* provides the unspecified orientation time to which Bill's leaving is anterior. The following tense forms also imply an unspecified orientation time:

We must hurry up or the train *will have left*. *(The unspecified orientation time to which the situation time of leaving is represented as anterior is interpreted as being the time of our reaching the platform.)*

---

[11] In fact, as we will see in 2.50.1–2, a situation time is always the 'central orientation time' of either a temporal domain or a 'subdomain' within a temporal domain.

He *had got up* early that morning. *(This could be the first sentence of a novel. In that case the unspecified orientation time is not immediately recoverable, in the same way as the referent of he is not. Starting a novel this way, with a sentence containing one or more 'unbound variables', is an often used rhetorical device.)*

(d) A fourth type of orientation time is an (otherwise unspecified) time 'contained in' an **ADV-TIME** (= a time indicated by a time adverbial), as in *At that time Bill had (already) left the room*. (In section 2.23.1 we will go into the special way in which a time adverbial indicates an orientation time by 'containing' it in terms of either inclusion or coincidence.)

(e) A final type of orientation time is an **IMPLICIT ORIENTATION TIME**. This is an orientation time which is implicit in the semantics of a temporal conjunction:

By the time Bill had left the room it was too late to act. *(Had left represents the leaving as anterior to the implicit orientation time referred to by the time in the phrasal conjunction by the time (that).)*

I will read the book before I pass it on to you. *(The present tense form pass on represents its situation as simultaneous with an orientation time which is implicit in the conjunction before. The meaning of the conjunction before can be paraphrased 'before the time that'. In this paraphrase, the implicit orientation time is lexicalized by the NP the time – see 14.2 for a full discussion.)*

He is always very nervous when he is about to play. *(The situation of playing is located posterior to the implicit orientation time lexicalized by the time in the paraphrase 'at the time at which', which represents the temporal structure of when – see 13.3.1–2.)*

2.15 The semantics of tenses: temporal domains

The semantics of a tense are found in the structure of temporal relations that the tense represents. These relations hold between the situation time (= time of the predicated situation) that is to be located by the tense and one or more orientation times. The tense structure may specify a relation between the situation time and t_0. Such tenses are absolute tenses.

Other tenses express tense structures which specify the relation of the situation time to an orientation time other than t_0. These are relative tenses. Although relative tenses do not relate a situation time directly to t_0, their structure does specify the nature of the temporal domain in which the situation time is located, and the nature of the temporal domain (past or post-present, for example) is determined by how the orientation time that establishes the domain is located relative to t_0.

An absolute tense establishes a temporal domain. Relative tenses expand a temporal domain that has already been established. Thus, in the two-sentence text *Meg jumped with surprise. She had just seen the elephant.*, the (absolute) past tense of *jumped* establishes a past temporal domain and the (relative) past perfect tense of *had seen* expands that domain by specifying a relationship of anteriority in a past domain, leading to the interpretation that the seeing is anterior to the jumping.

2.15.1 The SEMANTICS OF A TENSE is the tense structure expressed by the tense form. This structure consists of orientation times and temporal relations holding between them. For example, the structure of the future tense consists of two orientation times, viz. t_0 and the situation time, and the temporal relation 'situation time posterior to t_0'. The structure of the future perfect (*will* + perfect infinitive) involves three orientation times (viz. t_0, an intermediate orientation time and the situation time) and two temporal relations (viz. 'situation time anterior to intermediate orientation time' and 'intermediate orientation time posterior to t_0'). Thus, in *At five o'clock John will already have left* the tense form *will have left* represents John's leaving as preceding the intermediate orientation time indicated (in the special sense defined in 2.23.1) by *at five o'clock* and represents this intermediate orientation time as future with respect to t_0.

A tense structure can also consist of a single relation between the situation time and another orientation time plus information about the temporal location of the latter orientation time. Thus, the semantics of the past perfect is 'situation time anterior to another orientation time in a past temporal domain' – see section 9.1.

2.15.2 We speak of an ABSOLUTE TENSE when the tense in question relates the situation time directly to t_0 by locating that situation time in one of the 'absolute time-zones' – see 2.37 below. In *John {was / has been / is / will be} happy*, the preterite, the present perfect, the present tense and the future tense locate the situation time in the past, the pre-present, the present and the post-present (= future), respectively.

2.15.3 We speak of a RELATIVE TENSE when the tense in question specifies a particular temporal relation between the situation time and an orientation time other than t_0. In *John said that he had been ill*, the past perfect form *had been* is a relative tense form because its situation time is represented as anterior to the situation time of the absolute tense form *said*. The relation between the situation time of *had been* and t_0 is not expressed. (In the above example, we can deduce that the situation time of *had been* is anterior to t_0, but this is not always the case. Consider, for example, the sentence *Yesterday John said that* *he would help us tomorrow, after he had finished his article*. This sentence can be true irrespective of whether the finishing of the article actualizes before, at or after t_0 – see also 8.24.1 below.)

In addition to specifying one temporal relation (to an orientation time other than t_0), a relative tense also reveals the temporal nature of the domain (see 2.15.4) to which the relation belongs. (This distinguishes relative tenses from nonfinite verb forms, which also express one temporal relation.) Thus, the semantics of the past perfect is 'situation time anterior to an orientation time in a past domain'. (The nature of the domain – in this case: past – is determined by the absolute time-zone in which the situation time establishing the domain (= the 'central orientation time' of the domain – see 8.15) is located.)

2.15.4 A TEMPORAL DOMAIN is a set of orientation times which are temporally related to each other by means of tenses. At least one of these orientation times is a situation time (since any tense form locates a situation in time). A domain is normally established by an absolute tense form and expanded by one or more relative tense forms. For example:

> John *said* he *was* tired because he *had worked* hard all day and that he *would go* to bed early.

Here all the tenses locate their situation times in the same past domain. This is established by the preterite form *said*, which is therefore an absolute tense form. The other tense forms are relative tense forms: *was* [*tired*] represents its situation time as simultaneous with the situation time of *said*, *had worked* represents its situation time as anterior to the situation time of *was* [*tired*] and *would go* relates its situation time as posterior to the situation time of *said*. For more details, see 9.1–6.

2.16 Kinds of temporal relations

The temporal relations established by tenses ('T-relations') must be distinguished from those established by inferencing from the linguistic and nonlinguistic context ('W-relations'). For example, in *Meg went to the doctor. She felt ill.*, we have an absolute past tense in each sentence and these tense forms do not express a temporal relation between the two situations. However, our knowledge of the world leads us to infer that Meg went to the doctor because she felt ill and that therefore the situation described in the second sentence began before and continued during the situation described in the first sentence. A third type of temporal relation is that which holds between the time indicated by a temporal adverbial and a situation time. This will be called an 'adv-time relation'. We may also note the temporal relation between the time of the full situation and the time of the predicated situation (= the situation time). The former 'contains' the latter in terms of either inclusion or coincidence. When a situation is nonhomogeneous (bounded), the time of the full situation coincides with the situation time; when the situation is homogeneous (nonbounded), the time of the full situation may coincide with or include the situation time.

The temporal interpretation of sentences has to take into account different kinds of temporal relations.

2.16.1 To begin with, we must distinguish between relations linguistically expressed by tenses, relations linguistically expressed by adverbials, and temporal relations that are not linguistically expressed but play a part in interpretation. We will refer to them, respectively, as T-RELATIONS (with 'T' standing for 'tense'), ADV-TIME-RELATIONS (with 'ADV-TIME' standing for 'adverbially indicated time') and W-RELATIONS (with 'W' standing for 'world', since W-relations are understood as holding in the world referred to, without being linguistically expressed, although the evidence used to infer W-relations may well be linguistic.) For example:

> Ian met Sybil yesterday afternoon. *(There is an Adv-time-relation between the time of Ian meeting Sybil and the time interval indicated by yesterday afternoon: the former is included in the latter – see 2.23.1.)*
>
> When she *had* first *met* him, he had been wearing a blue T-shirt and shorts. *(The situation time of the when-clause is interpreted as W-simultaneous with the situation time of the head clause, but it is not represented as T-simultaneous with the latter because the tense form used is not met but had met – see 13.10.1.)*

2.16.2 Another kind of temporal relation which plays a role in temporal interpretation is the 'containment relation' between the time of the full situation and the situation time: the time of the full situation CONTAINS the situation time in terms of either inclusion or coincidence. In bounded clauses, the time of the full situation coincides with the situation time, whereas in nonbounded clauses it may either coincide with or include the situation time.

> Yesterday John ran two miles before breakfast. *(The sentence is bounded because the VP is telic and nonprogressive – see 1.47. A bounded sentence is 'nonhomogeneous' – see 1.45, which means that the time of the full situation coincides with the situation time.)*
>
> At five a.m. John was already running his usual two miles before breakfast. *(The sentence is nonbounded because of the progressive form. A nonbounded sentence is homogeneous, which means that the time of the full situation can include the situation time. This is the case here: because the situation time coincides with the punc-*

tual Adv-time indicated by *at five a.m.**, the situation time must also be punctual, and must therefore be included in – i. e. form part of – the time of the full situation.)*

[“What was John doing from 5 to 5.30?”] – “From 5 to 5.30 John was running his usual two miles before breakfast.” *(The sentence is nonbounded because of the progressive form and because* *from 5 to 5.30* *is not new information. Because a nonbounded sentence is homogeneous, the time of the full situation may or may not coincide with the situation time. There are therefore two cases in which the reply may be true: (a) John started running at 5 and completed his two-mile run at 5.30; (b) He ran throughout the period from 5 to 5.30 but started earlier than 5 and/or stopped running after 5.30.)*

The containment relation between the time of the full situation and the situation time is a W-relation, but whether that containment relation is interpreted as a relation of inclusion or coincidence is partly determined by a linguistic factor. That linguistic factor is the L-(non)boundedness of the clause, which corresponds with a (non)homogeneous meaning. The L-(non)boundedness of the clause depends on the L-(non)boundedness of the constituents functioning as arguments to the verb and / or the use of the (non)progressive form – see 1.46–48.

2.17 Expanding a temporal domain: expressing T-relations

A situation time may be T-related to an orientation time in one of three different ways: it may be located simultaneous to, posterior to or anterior to the orientation time. The T-relation of simultaneity is always one of strict coincidence, not overlap or inclusion. In *Meg said that she was feeling ill*, the W-relation between the situation of saying and the situation of feeling ill is a simultaneity relation which involves overlap or inclusion: we assume that the feeling ill started before the saying and that it continues during and probably after the saying. But the simultaneity expressed by the tense form *was feeling* – the T-relation – is strict coincidence. The two situation times are punctual and coincide. When a situation is located anterior to an orientation time it may be located at a certain distance before the orientation time or it may lead right up to the orientation time. In the same way, a situation located posterior to an orientation time may be located some time after the orientation time or may start immediately after it.

2.17.1 A tense form can relate a situation time to an orientation time in three different ways. Firstly, there is T-SIMULTANEITY if the situation time is linguistically represented as simultaneous with the orientation time. T-simultaneity is by definition a relation of strict coincidence. This is in keeping with the distinction between ‘situation time’ (= time of the predicated situation) and ‘time of the full situation’. In [*John said*] *he was feeling ill*, the past tense form *was feeling* represents its situation time as coinciding with the situation time of *said*. The situation time of *was feeling* is not the time of the full situation: it is the time of the predicated situation, i. e. that part of the time of the full situation that coincides with the situation time of *said*.

The claim that T-simultaneity has to be defined in terms of strict simultaneity (coincidence) rather than overlap is based on empirical evidence, more specifically on the way we interpret sentences like the following:

(6) [On leaving the classroom] John *told* me that he *believed* that Bill *was brooding* over something.

The unmarked interpretation of this sentence is that the situations of telling, believing and brooding are all simultaneous with each other. When we consider the times of the full situations, we see that all three of them are durative. The tense forms *believed* and *was brooding* are relative past tense forms expressing T-simultaneity (see 9.3.1): the brooding is represented as T-simultaneous with the believing, and the believing is represented as T-simultaneous with the telling. The time of the telling is specified by the adverbial *on leaving the classroom*. Now, if T-simultaneity were to be defined in terms of overlap between two full situations, (6) would allow the interpretation that Bill’s brooding was not simultaneous with John’s telling (and hence with the time of leaving the classroom): according to this definition, the telling could overlap one interval of the believing, while the brooding could overlap another (completely different) one, so that there would be no overlap between the brooding and the telling. This definition of T-simultaneity would therefore allow the reading in which the brooding was W-posterior to the telling. However, this interpretation is obviously not available in (6). What is available is the reading in which the brooding, the believing and the telling are all actualizing at the time indicated by *on leaving the classroom*.[12] This can only be explained if T-simultaneity is defined as strict coincidence between situation times. Since the situations of believing and brooding are interpreted as nonbounded (and hence homogeneous – see 1.45), their situation times can be proper subintervals of the times of their full situation. So, even if the time of the full situation of Bill brooding does not completely coincide with the time of the full situation of John believing, and the time of the full situation of John believing does not completely coincide with the time of John’s telling, the three situation times do coincide with each other. T-simultaneity must therefore be defined as coincidence between situation times, not as an overlapping relation between the times of full situations.

---

[12] Because *believed* and *was brooding* can in principle be interpreted as absolute rather than relative tense forms, the sentence does not rule out the (pragmatically unlikely) interpretation in which the believing precedes the telling, and whether the believing precedes the telling or not, the brooding precedes the believing – see section 8.25 for a fuller discussion. However, we are not concerned with this secondary interpretation here.

Further evidence that T-simultaneity has to be defined in terms of strict simultaneity (coincidence) rather than overlap is the fact that it is impossible to represent a bounded durative situation as T-simultaneous with a (more or less) punctual situation time, even if the former situation overlaps the latter in real time:

> John said that he {*built / was building} a house.

There is no problem using *was building*, because this represents the situation as homogeneous, so that a relation of coincidence can be expressed between the time of the situation referred to by *said* and any time of the situation referred to by *was building* – see also 2.30.

2.17.2 The second possible T-relation that a tense can express is T-ANTERIORITY. Here the situation time is represented as preceding the orientation time in either of two ways. Either the situation time lies at some distance before the orientation time (as in *I knew I had locked the door*) or it begins before the orientation time and leads up to it (as in *I told them that we had been friends since we first met*).[13]

2.17.3 Finally, there is T-POSTERIORITY if the situation time is represented as following the orientation time, as *He said he would do it the next day*. The situation time may then start from the binding orientation time onwards (as in *He said that from then onwards he would treat me as a friend*) or be separated from it (as in *He said he would do it the next day*).[14]

2.18 Temporal relations that are not linguistically expressed: W-relations

T-relations are temporal relations, expressed by tenses, between the times of predicated situations (i. e. situation times) and orientation times. W-relations are temporal relations, inferred from contextual information or pragmatic knowledge, between the times of full situations and orientation times. W-simultaneity occurs when at least one point of one full situation coincides in time with any point of another full situation: strict coincidence of the times of the entire situation is not necessary.

---

[13] The first possibility is the past domain counterpart of either the past tense or the present perfect on an ‘indefinite’ (see 5.5.1) interpretation, while the second is the past domain counterpart of the present perfect on a ‘continuative’ (see 5.5.1) interpretation: the past tense and the ‘indefinite present perfect’ locate the situation time at some distance before t_0, while the ‘continuative present perfect’ represents it as covering an entire period leading up to t_0.

[14] As noted before, a ‘binding orientation time’ is an orientation time to which the situation time of a situation is temporally related by a tense (see 2.49).

2.18.1 A situation may be interpreted as simultaneous, anterior or posterior to another situation without this being expressed by a tense form or temporal adverbial. In that case the temporal relations are not tense relations (T-relations) or adverbially indicated relations (Adv-relations), but simply temporal relations that are inferred to exist in the real world (or in whatever world is being referred to) on the basis of the context or of the hearer's pragmatic knowledge of the world in question. We will refer to such temporal relations as WORLD RELATIONS (W-RELATIONS).

> ["What were they doing?"] – "Betty was reading the paper, Bill was watching TV and Jeremy was sleeping on the sofa." *(The three past tense forms are absolute tense forms which do no more than locate the three situation times in the past. In other words, none of them expresses T-simultaneity. However, it is clear from the context that the three situation times must be interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other.)*
>
> When they had first visited the house, they hadn't noticed the wet patch on the ceiling of the kitchen. *(The past perfect tense forms both represent their situation time as T-anterior to an unspecified past orientation time. The relation of W-simultaneity that is understood to exist between the two situations is not expressed by the tense forms.)*
>
> John told me he was involved in an accident in France. *(The two absolute past tense forms merely locate their situation times in the past – see 1.10.3. Pragmatic knowledge tells us that John's accident must be understood as W-anterior to his telling me about it.)*

2.18.2 Unlike simultaneity expressed by a tense form (= T-simultaneity), W-simultaneity is not a semantic relation but a pragmatic one. In other words, while T-simultaneity forms part of the semantics of, for example, the relative past tense (see 2.17), W-simultaneity is to be inferred from a combination of linguistic information, the linguistic and nonlinguistic context, and other pragmatic knowledge. It follows (a) that W-simultaneity is largely a question of pragmatic *interpretation* rather than linguistic *representation*, and (b) that W-simultaneity is less rigidly defined than T-simultaneity: whereas the latter is equivalent to coincidence, W-simultaneity can, according to context, be interpreted as coincidence, overlap or inclusion. In other words, two time intervals are W-simultaneous the moment they have one point of time in common. This is clear from the following examples, in which all the tense forms are absolute preterites:

> Suddenly somebody fired a gun. I heard it. *(The two punctual situations coincide with each other, at least in our everyday understanding of the actual world.)*
>
> I met John yesterday. He was walking to work. *(The full situation of John's walking includes the punctual situation of my meeting John.)*
>
> Whereas Mary was painting the front door, I was working in the garden. *(The two full situations may either coincide or overlap: one situation may have started at, before or after the beginning of the other situation, and either of them may have ended at, before or after the end of the other situation. The two situations are W-simultaneous in the sense that they have at least one point of time in common.)*

As is clear from the comment added to these examples, a temporal W-relation holds between times that are 'the time of a full situation' – see sections 2.12–13 – rather than between situation times (= the times of predicated situations). This is logical, since W-relations are not linguistically represented, and full situations are not either (except if the situation time is represented as bounded, in which case the situation time coincides with the time of the full situation – see section 2.12.2.) 'Situation time', by contrast, is a linguistic concept, which is needed to explain how a situation is located in time by a tense form. In other words, both 'W-relation' and 'full situation' refer to nonlinguistic concepts, in the sense that they have to do with pragmatic interpretation and not (or not exclusively) with linguistic representation. By contrast, 'T-relation' and 'situation time' are the names of linguistic concepts, which have to do with the way tense forms represent the temporal location of a situation.

II. Special uses of tense forms

In sections 2.15–17 we have pointed out the 'normal' uses of tenses as either absolute tenses (establishing a temporal domain) or relative tenses (expressing a T-relation in a domain.) In this section we will have a brief look at some special uses of tenses which are clearly distinguishable from the normal uses.

2.19 Modal uses of tenses

Past and past perfect tense forms can be used to express tentativeness or unreality. The tentativeness may be social, as in *I wondered if you might like this book* or it may concern the likelihood of actualization of a situation, as in *If you wanted to, you could write a book*. (Note that in the first of these, the past tense *wondered* is a literal past tense – it has past time reference.) Both tentativeness and unreality are standardly expressed by past (perfect) tense forms in conditional sentences, as in the counterfactual *If I were President, I would cancel third world debt.*

The past tense and the past perfect can be used to express such modal concepts as tentativeness or unreality:

(a) With some verbs of volition the past tense can be used to represent a present wish or hope as more tentative (diffident, indirect, polite) than the present tense would do.

I *wanted* to ask you a favour.

[Will we see each other at the dance tonight?] I *hoped* you might be there.

(b) Some verbs of volition can be used in the past perfect tense in order to express unreality, i. e. nonactualization of an initial expectation, intention, etc.

I had {wanted / meant / hoped / expected / intended} to be in London today. *(implies: but I'm not)*

(c) In *that*-clauses depending on a form of the verb *wish* and in clauses introduced by *if only* or *would that*, the past tense or the past perfect can be used in order to express unreality (counterfactuality). In that case these tenses do not realize their normal tense structures but (apart from expressing counterfactuality) merely express T-simultaneity and T-anteriority, respectively.

I {wish / wished / had wished / will probably wish} I *didn't know* his number. *(modal past; the situation time in question is T-simultaneous with the situation time of the head clause.)*

I {wish / wished / had wished / will probably wish} I *had* never *met* him. *(modal past perfect; the situation time in question is T-anterior to the situation time of the head clause.)*

(d) The past tense can be used to add a tentative meaning to the *if*-clause of a conditional sentence:

I'd be happy if you *did* that for me. *(modal past: the reference is not to the past but to future actualization, which is represented as tentatively possible.)*

I'd be surprised if she *arrived* on time. *(more tentative than I'll be surprised if she arrives on time)*

(e) Under certain conditions, either the past tense or the past perfect can be used in a conditional clause so as to represent fulfilment of the condition as counterfactual:

If I *was* a rich man, I would travel a lot. *(modal past: the reference is not to the past but to the present, which is represented as counterfactual (unreal).)*

If he *had been* here today, he would have been very happy. *(modal past perfect: the reference is not to the past but to the present, and the actualization of the situation is represented as counterfactual.)*

(f) There are still other environments in which a modal past or modal past perfect can be used. For example:

He looks as if he *had seen* a ghost. *(modal past perfect, expressing counterfactuality as well as T-anteriority)*

2.20 Shifts of temporal perspective

When the temporal location of a situation is obvious from the context, it is possible for a speaker to represent a situation as lying in one time-zone whilst *apparently* locating it in another time-zone. In that way, by relying on the hearer to establish the temporal location from the context, the speaker combines correct time-reference with the connotations of location in a different time-zone. For example, *The train leaves at eight* represents a post-present situation as if it is already the case, thus emphasizing that the future is in this case seen as already fixed.

There is a SHIFT OF TEMPORAL PERSPECTIVE if a tense is selected, not in order to locate a situation time in a particular time-zone (e.g. the present or the past – see section 2.37) but in order to represent it *as if* lying in that time-zone. The following illustrate two different typical cases:

> And a week later I'*m* on Rupert's lawn again. And who should come squealing and bellowing through the hedge but Bill. And *does* he *ask* about my trip to America? No. *Does* he *want* my story of the upside down helicopter flight over Central Park? Or the Watneys Red Barrel ride over Niagara? (...) Not him. He'*s jabbering* about his brand-new putty-knife, *shrieking* about his broken fretsaw and intent on introducing me to every single socket in the socket-set his dad got him for passing O-level French twenty years ago. (www) *(This use of the present tense, which is called the 'historic present' or 'historical present' is a way of describing past situations vividly, as if they were happening here and now – see 3.3.1.)*
>
> The soldiers {leave / are leaving} tomorrow.

In the latter example, a future situation is represented as if it were actualizing at t_0. This use of the present tense is a means of expressing that the speaker thinks that there can be no doubt about the future actualization of the situation. The temporal domain that is established is a post-present one, but it is established as if it were a present domain. Evidence that it is really a post-present domain is the presence of *tomorrow* and the possibility of adding an adverbial *when*-clause: *The soldiers are leaving tomorrow when they have finished their job*. Such an addition is not possible to the corresponding sentence establishing a present domain: compare *The soldiers are now leaving* with **The soldiers are now leaving when they have finished their job*.)

2.21 Universal sentences

An apparently special use of the present tense is found in 'universal' sentences, which refer to a state which holds at all times. (Such sentences may cite universal truths or they may refer to permanent characteristics (including habits).) For example: *Elephants never forget*. However, these are actually not special uses of the present tense, since they refer to homogeneous situations and thus locate a punctual situation time – which represents the time of a representative punctual section of the full situation – simultaneous with speech-time, in accordance with the meaning of the present tense.

2.21.1 Sentences in the present tense sometimes refer to a state which holds at all times or at every time in the existence of the referent of the subject. Such sentences are called UNIVERSAL (or GNOMIC) sentences.

> Two and two is four.
>
> The sun rises in the east.
>
> Is Greenland a continent of its own?

Gnomic sentences that predicate a typical characteristic of a kind (species) are also called GENERIC SENTENCES.

{A / The} horse is a four-footed mammal.

Horses do not eat meat.

Habitual sentences that predicate a typical and permanent (nontemporary) characteristic of an individual are also sometimes called generic.

Bill's cat chases bikes.

Most of us walk to work.

2.21.2 In fact, gnomic sentences in the present tense do not really represent a special use of this tense, because they are quite in keeping with our definition of T-simultaneity in terms of strict coincidence (see 2.17 and 8.17.1). Like habitual sentences, gnomic sentences express a characteristic. As pointed out in section 1.34.4, a characteristic is a state, and states are by definition homogeneous. To illustrate this with a nongnomic example: if *John was in the kitchen* can be truly predicated of the entire interval that John spent in the kitchen, it can also be truly predicated of the various subintervals making up this interval. In the gnomic sentence *Two and two is four*, the situation time is located at t_0. Since 'is located at' means 'is represented as T-simultaneous (i. e. coinciding) with', and since t_0 is conceived of as punctual in English (see 2.4), the situation time (= time of the 'predicated situation' – see 212.) is a punctual subinterval of the time of the full situation. The fact that the predicated situation is punctual does not prevent the situation from being interpreted as gnomic and making a statement about the full durative situation. The fact that we conceive of a state as unchanging and homogeneous renders that interpretation possible.

In sum, in gnomic clauses – and also in habitual and progressive clauses – the use of the present tense means that the situation time is punctual, because it is represented as T-simultaneous (i. e. coinciding) with t_0, which is conceived of as punctual. However, the fact that such clauses represent their situation time as punctual does not prevent them from being pragmatically *interpreted* as referring to a durative situation. This is because the situation time is only a point included in a longer, homogeneous situation. The temporal *interpretation* of a clause usually concerns the time of the full situation rather than the situation time only (which is a quite abstract concept). The full temporal interpretation of a clause is not exclusively determined by the choice of tense and Adv-time: pragmatic considerations (i. e. contextual information, knowledge of the world and accepted principles of conversation) are often as important as the semantics of the tense and the Adv-time (if any).

III. The role of temporal adverbials

2.22 Definition and basic classification of 'temporal adverbials'

We distinguish three types of adverbial that give temporal information. 'Time-specifying' adverbials (e.g. *at six o'clock*) temporally locate an orientation time (which may be a situation time) by specifying a particular time (an 'Adv-time') which may be punctual or durative and which contains (i.e. coincides with or includes) the orientation time. Pure duration adverbials (e.g. *for six hours*) specify the length of time occupied by a full situation, but do not locate it in time. Bifunctional adverbials (e.g. *from six to eight*) both temporally locate a situation time and specify the length of the corresponding full situation. Thus in *Meg watched the elephant from six to eight*, the temporal adverbial locates the situation time (the time of the predicated situation) at the time indicated by 'from six to eight' and measures the (time of the) full situation (as taking up two hours).

The term TEMPORAL ADVERBIAL will be used here in the wide sense of 'adverbial that has to do with time'. This covers the following three types:

2.22.1 TIME-SPECIFYING ADVERBIALS locate an orientation time in time by indicating a specific ADV-TIME ('adverbially indicated time') which 'CONTAINS' the orientation time in question in terms of inclusion or coincidence – see 2.23.1:

John was here {yesterday / at five o'clock}.

The Adv-time that is indicated by a time-specifying adverbial may itself be durative or punctual. This leads to a second distinction, between DURATIVE TIME-SPECIFYING ADVERBIALS, which specify a durative Adv-time, and PUNCTUAL TIME-SPECIFYING ADVERBIALS, which refer to a nondurative time, i.e. a moment or point in time. In both cases the relevant orientation time is contained (in terms of inclusion or coincidence) in the Adv-time. In the case of a punctual Adv-time the containment relation has to be a relation of coincidence; with a durative Adv-time it can also be inclusion.

John left at five. *(punctual Adv-time coinciding with the situation time)*

John had already left at five. *(punctual Adv-time coinciding with the unspecified orientation time to which the situation time is T-anterior)*

John was in London at five. *(punctual Adv-time coinciding with the situation time; the situation time is included in the time of the full situation)*

John left yesterday. *(durative Adv-time including the punctual situation time)*

John was in London yesterday. *(durative Adv-time containing the durative situation time in terms of inclusion – John was in London at or for some time yesterday – or coincidence – John was in London all day yesterday)*

2.22.2 PURE DURATION ADVERBIALS do not identify an Adv-time but only specify duration, more specifically the duration of the full situation.

John was here for a couple of hours. *(pure duration adverbial: it specifies the duration of John's visit but offers no clue as to when it took place)*

As will be noted in 2.31.1, a pure duration adverbial specifies the duration of the full situation and not of the situation time (except indirectly, when the two happen to coincide – see 2.31.2.) Thus in, *Today John is in London for most of the day*, the situation time is punctual (because it coincides with t_0 – see 2.21.2) and *for most of the day* indicates the (pre-determined) duration of the full situation of John being in London.

Needless to say, it is important to distinguish carefully between pure duration adverbials and durative time-specifying adverbials. Durative time-specifying adverbials indicate the Adv-time containing the situation time but do not necessarily specify the duration of the situation time (as in *John had a walk yesterday*), whereas pure duration adverbials specify the duration of the full situation but do not specify its time, i. e. the precise temporal location of the situation time in the absolute zone in which the tense places it (e. g. *John walked for three hours*).

2.22.3 BIFUNCTIONAL TEMPORAL ADVERBIALS have a double function: they function as time-specifying adverbial and duration adverbial at the same time. For example:

["What were you doing from Monday to Thursday?"] – "I was abroad from Monday to Thursday." *(The adverbial specifies the time as well as the duration of the predicated situation. The latter may happen to coincide with the full situation but is more likely to be a portion of it.)*

["When were you abroad?"] – "I was abroad from Monday to Thursday." *(The adverbial specifies the time as well as the duration of the predicated situation. Because the adverbial gives the information that is asked for, the Gricean Maxim of Quantity stipulates that the duration indicated must be the duration of the full situation. In other words, in this W-bounded reading, the situation time coincides with the time of the full situation.)*

They were together the whole morning.

It rained heavily all afternoon.

I've been waiting for her for two hours now. *(For two hours now indicates the duration of the predicated situation, which is also the 'factual full situation', i. e. the full situation as it has actualized up to now – see 2.31.2. Because the situation time fills the entire period leading up to now, the adverbial also specifies the relevant pre-*

present period. In doing so it functions as a time-specifying adverbial: the Adv-time is the period up to now, which contains the situation time, in this case in terms of coincidence.)

As is clear from the last example, duration adverbials are always bifunctional if they are ‘anchored’ to t_0 by *now*.

2.23 The function of a time-specifying adverbial

As we have seen, a time indicated by a time-specifying adverbial (an Adv-time) contains the situation time (or other orientation time) whose temporal location it specifies. The situation time may be shorter than the Adv-time (i. e. it is included in it) or it may be exactly the same length (i. e. it coincides with it). In either case we can speak of ‘Adv-time-simultaneity’. When the Adv-time is punctual, the situation time is necessarily included in a punctual time and must therefore itself be punctual. A durative situation can be represented as simultaneous with a punctual Adv-time provided that the situation is homogeneous (nonbounded). (The situation time is then the time of a punctual portion of the situation which is representative of the whole situation.) The fact that a progressive clause can combine with an adverbial specifying a punctual Adv-time means that a progressive clause represents the predicated situation as a punctual situation which is representative of the longer full situation.

2.23.1 As we have seen, tenses only express (one or more) T-relations between orientation times. (One of these orientation times is necessarily a situation time, viz. the time of the situation referred to by the tensed clause.) This means that tenses do not express a T-relation between a situation time and the time specified by an adverbial. However, as noted in section 2.16.1, there is an ‘Adv-time-relation’ between an adverbially specified time interval (henceforth: ADV-TIME) and an orientation time. This relation is a relation of ‘containment’. CONTAINMENT covers two possibilities:

(a) *inclusion:* the included orientation time is shorter than the Adv-time; it may coincide with the beginning or end of the Adv-time or with some middle part of the Adv-time.
(b) *coincidence:* the contained orientation time coincides with the Adv-time. In other words, the boundaries of the Adv-time coincide with the boundaries of the contained orientation time.

In both cases the contained orientation time is simultaneous with the Adv-time in a well-defined sense. In 2.29 we will call this relation ‘ADV-TIME-SIMULTANE-

ITY', which is to be distinguished from T-simultaneity (expressed by certain tenses) and W-simultaneity (which is a question of interpretation in context).

2.23.2 The following sentences illustrate the two kinds of Adv-time-simultaneity, viz. inclusion and coincidence.

> John left yesterday. *(The past tense form left locates its situation time in the past time-sphere. Its exact location there is specified by yesterday, which specifies a durative Adv-time which includes the situation time of John leaving.)*
>
> John had already left yesterday. *(Let us consider the reading 'John left before yesterday'. The past perfect form had left then represents its situation time as T-anterior to a past orientation time. This past orientation time is an unspecified orientation time – see 2.14. However, the precise location of the unspecified orientation time in the past time-sphere is indicated by yesterday, which refers to a durative Adv-time containing the unspecified orientation time prior to which John left.)*
>
> John left at four o'clock. *(At four o'clock indicates a punctual Adv-time which coincides with the situation time of John leaving.)*
>
> ["Where was John during the lecture?"] – "John was in the library during the lecture." *(During the lecture denotes an Adv-time which coincides with the situation time of John being in the library: the interpretation is that John was in the library throughout the lecture. In other words, the time of the predicated situation is exactly as long as the time interval indicated by during the lecture. Obviously the time of the full situation of John being in the library may be considerably longer than this.)*
>
> [It can't have been John you saw yesterday.] He was in India yesterday. *(Yesterday denotes an Adv-time which either includes the situation time of John being in India (in which case the interpretation is that John was in India for some time yesterday, but not all day) or coincides with the situation time (in which case the interpretation is that John was in India all day yesterday). In the latter interpretation, the time of the full situation of John being in India may extend beyond the boundaries of the Adv-time: the sentence is true, e.g. if John has been in India for the past week.)*
>
> By four o'clock John will have left. *(The Adv-time denoted by four o'clock contains (in the sense of: coincides with) the unspecified orientation time to which the situation time is T-anterior and which is itself T-posterior to t_0.)*

2.23.3 The following sentence is similar to *John left at four o'clock* above:

> John was reading at four o'clock. *(At four o'clock indicates a punctual Adv-time which coincides with the situation time of John reading.)*

Examples like this naturally raise the question of whether this analysis entails that the situation referred to by a clause with a progressive verb phrase and a punctual time-specifying adverbial is represented as punctual. The answer is that it does. The situation represented by the progressive tense form is the situation time. This situation time is punctual because it is contained in (in the sense of: coincides with) the punctual Adv-time. This analysis accords with the fact that *John was reading at four o'clock* is not a suitable answer to *When* *was John reading?*, unless there was only one moment that John was reading and that moment coincided with four o'clock. That is, if John's reading took up a certain time, the reply *John was reading at four o'clock* is not false, but it is pragmatically unacceptable because it is insufficiently informative. The Gricean Maxim of Quantity sees to it that (except in special contexts) the question *When was John reading?* is interpreted as asking information about the length of the full situation. An answer like *John was reading from 2 p.m. to 4* is a suitable reply to this, because it specifies an Adv-time that is long enough to be able to contain (coincide with) a situation time that is the time of the full durative situation. An answer like *John was reading at four o'clock* is not normally a suitable reply to *When was John reading?* because it is not sufficiently informative: it specifies an Adv-time that is punctual and therefore cannot contain (coincide with) a situation time that is the time of the full situation, except in the very unlikely case that John's reading took up just one moment. In other words, *When was John reading?* asks for a specification of the complete period when John was reading, while *John was reading at four o'clock* normally only specifies a point in the course of that period.

Of course, the fact that such a clause with a progressive verb phrase and a punctual time-specifying adverbial represents its situation time as punctual does not prevent such a clause from being pragmatically *interpreted* as referring to a durative situation. This is because the progressive form implies that the situation time is only a portion of a longer, homogeneous situation. Our knowledge of the world too tells us that reading is not normally a punctual situation. As explained in 2.21.2, the full temporal interpretation of a clause is not determined by the choice of tense and Adv-time only: the interpretation is based on pragmatics as well as semantics.

2.24 Situation-time adverbial

In a given context, a temporal adverbial may contain (i. e. by inclusion or coincidence) a situation time, an orientation time other than a situation time, or several orientation times (usually situation times). We refer, respectively, to 'situation-time adverbials', 'orientation-time' adverbials' and 'multiple-orientation-time adverbials'.

A time-specifying adverbial denoting an Adv-time which contains the situation time (in either of the senses described in 2.16.2, viz. inclusion or coincidence) will be called a SITUATION-TIME ADVERBIAL.

I left there yesterday. (*Yesterday* *is a situation-time adverbial because the Adv-time that it denotes includes the situation time, i. e. the time of my leaving.)*

2.25 Orientation-time adverbial

An ORIENTATION-TIME ADVERBIAL is a time-specifying adverbial denoting an Adv-time which contains (in either of the two senses) an orientation time other than a situation time.

> At five o'clock John had already left. *(At five o'clock specifies an Adv-time which contains the unspecified orientation time to which John's leaving is represented as T-anterior.)*
>
> [I don't know how people will react to the next news bulletins, but] right now only two of the guests are going to interrupt their holiday tomorrow because of the approaching tornado. *(Now is an orientation-time adverbial, tomorrow is a situation-time adverbial. The orientation time contained in (= coinciding with) 'now' is* t_0*.)*
>
> She intends to come at six, when most people will have left. *(The when-clause is used here as a relative clause in which when has an adverbial function: when means 'at which time' and functions as orientation-time adverbial in the relative clause. That is, when does not specify (contain) the situation time (i. e. the time of the people leaving) but the implicit orientation time to which the situation time is T-anterior.)*

2.26 Multiple-orientation-time-adverbial

A MULTIPLE-ORIENTATION-TIME ADVERBIAL denotes an Adv-time which contains more than one orientation time. (The orientation times in question are usually situation times.)

> Yesterday John left before Bill arrived. *(Before Bill arrived, which means 'at a time before Bill arrived', is a situation-time adverbial in the head clause: it denotes an Adv-time which includes the situation time of John's leaving. Yesterday, which indicates an interval including both the situation time of John's leaving and the situation time of Bill's arrival, is a multiple-orientation-time adverbial.)*

2.27 The relation between one Adv-time and another

When there is more than one time-specifying adverbial, the various adverbially specified time intervals are normally related to each other in terms of containment (i. e. inclusion or coincidence). The situation time is contained in the shortest of these intervals. (Remember that an Adv-time interval may be durative or punctual.)

> I left at 5 a.m. in the morning on Tuesday last week. *(The situation time is contained in the Adv-time specified by at 5 a.m., which is included in the Adv-time specified*

> *by in the morning, which is itself included in the Adv-time specified by on Tuesday, which in its turn is included in the Adv-time specified by last week.)*

Exceptionally, we can find a combination of a time-specifying adverbial specifying (= containing) a situation time and an adverb referring to t_0 as a 'time of evaluation':

> Now there will be no water left for the rest of the day. *(This is interpreted something like 'Now that X has actualized, there will be no water left for the rest of the day'.)*
>
> At present we have answered two-thirds of these letters.

2.28 Durative time-specifying adverbials referring to the present

Adverbials like *today, at present, these days*, etc. denote a durative Adv-time which includes t_0. The temporal zero-point resembles a punctual Adv-time in that it contains (in the sense of 'coincides with') the situation time of the clause. This means that a predicated situation that is located at t_0 must be punctual, hence that the full situation has to be either punctual or homogeneous. This is illustrated by the grammaticality of *At this very moment I'm writing a letter* versus the ungrammaticality of **At this very moment I write a letter*: the situation time can only be located at (i. e. represented as coinciding with) t_0 if it is punctual, and in the case of writing a letter this condition is only satisfied if the durative situation is represented as homogeneous by the use of the progressive form. This is also true when there is a durative adverbial like *today, these days*, etc. The situation time again coincides with t_0, which is a point of time that is included in the Adv-time denoted by the durative adverbial. For example:

> [As you can see,] we're eating on the verandah today.

The temporal interpretation of this sentence is determined by the following factors: (a) The progressive form represents the (full) situation as homogeneous; (b) The present tense represents the situation time as T-simultaneous with t_0; (c) Because t_0 is punctual, the situation time must be punctual too: this follows from the definition of T-simultaneity as being a relation of strict coincidence (see 2.17); (d) Because *today* indicates a longer period including t_0, and because the situation time is understood as forming part of a longer homogeneous full situation, the time of the full situation will be interpreted as coinciding with a durative subinterval of the Adv-time indicated by *today* (or even with the Adv-time as a whole, but this is pragmatically unlikely).

If, in the same sentence, the Adv-time is indicated by *these days*, the factors determining the full temporal interpretation of the sentence (*We're eating on the verandah these days*) are the following: (a) The full situation is homogeneous because it is a temporary habit: as noted in 1.23.3, a habit is a state and, unless it involves a 'bounding adverbial' (see 1.48.2) like *from 3 to 5*, the representation of a state is by definition homogeneous; (b) The present tense represents the situation time as T-simultaneous with t_0; (c) Because t_0 is punctual, the situation time must be punctual too (cf. the definition of T-simultaneity): the time of the predicated situation (= situation time) is therefore a 'moment-of-a-habit'; (d) Because *these days* indicates a longer period including t_0, and because the situation time is pragmatically understood as forming part of a longer homogeneous full situation (of which it may be any moment, including the initial and terminal points), the time of the full situation is interpreted as coinciding with the Adv-time indicated by *these days*.

2.29 Adv-time-simultaneity

Adv-time simultaneity is unlike W-simultaneity in that it is linguistically expressed and it is unlike T-simultaneity in that it is not expressed by a tense and it allows for a relation of proper inclusion as well as one of strict coincidence, though it does not allow for mere overlap. When there is more than one Adv-time in a clause, the relation between the Adv-times is also one of Adv-time simultaneity – i. e. proper inclusion or coincidence.

In the previous sections we have seen that an Adv-time can contain a situation time, or t_0, or another orientation time. This containment relation, which may be either inclusion (provided the Adv-time is durative) or coincidence, is a kind of simultaneity relation. However, it is not T-simultaneity, since the containment relation does not form part of the semantics of any tense, and it is not W-simultaneity, since it is not a question of pragmatic interpretation. Like T-simultaneity, it is a linguistic relation: it is inherent in the English language system that the temporal information provided by an adverbial specifying an Adv-time is always interpreted in terms of simultaneity (containment). In section 2.16 we have therefore distinguished between three kinds of simultaneity: T-simultaneity (expressed by some tense forms), W-simultaneity (which is a question of interpretation-in-context) and Adv-time-simultaneity. The last is the relation of containment between an Adv-time and a situation time, t_0 or another orientation time.[15]

---

[15] Because an Adv-time by definition contains a situation time, Adv-time-simultaneity is the only possible temporal relation between the contained orientation time and the containing Adv-time. There is no such a thing as 'Adv-time-anteriority' or 'Adv-time-posteriority'. That is, the relation between the contained orientation time and the containing Adv-time cannot be such that the orientation time precedes or follows the Adv-time. When we speak of anteriority or posteriority, what we have in mind can only be a T-relation or a W-relation.

If there is more than one Adv-time, as in *He left at 4 p.m. on 1 May 1999*, the relation between the various Adv-times is also Adv-time-simultaneity: *1999* includes *on 1 May*, which includes *at 4 p.m*. It is the last (i. e. shortest) of these Adv-times that contains the situation time.

2.30 Punctual Adv-times and durative bounded situations

When a durative situation is bounded, it is (by definition) nonhomogeneous and therefore the situation time cannot be a punctual portion of the time of the full situation. Rather, the situation time has the same duration as the time of the full situation. This means that a durative bounded situation cannot be located at a punctual time (such as t_0 or *at five o'clock*). However, a durative bounded situation may be referred to in a clause containing a punctual adverb as long as the description of the situation can be interpreted as inchoative or terminative. (For example, *The elephant will have a bath at four* locates the beginning of the bathing, not the entire process, at four o'clock).

2.30.1 When a durative situation is represented as L-bounded or interpreted as W-bounded, the situation time coincides with – i. e. has the same length as – the time of the full situation (because a bounded situation is by definition heterogeneous – see 1.45). It goes without saying that such a durative situation time cannot coincide with t_0 or with a punctual Adv-time, and cannot be contained in an Adv-time that is shorter than the time of the full situation.

> *I write a book. *(A bounded durative situation cannot coincide with* t_0*.)*
>
> I am writing a book. *(Here the full situation is homogeneous, so that the situation time can be a punctual portion of the time of the full situation. That punctual situation time can be represented as coinciding with* t_0*.)*
>
> *I wrote a book at five o'clock. *(Ungrammatical because a bounded durative situation cannot coincide with (or otherwise be contained in) a punctual Adv-time.)*
>
> I was writing a book at five o'clock. *(Here the full situation is homogeneous, so that the situation time can be a portion of the time of the full situation. Since that portion can be punctual, the situation time can be represented as coinciding with the punctual Adv-time.)*

2.30.2 The constraint that a durative bounded situation time cannot be contained in (= coincide with) a punctual Adv-time does not automatically render any combination of a punctual adverbial with a bounded description of a durative situation ungrammatical. If the adverbial specifies a past or future point of time, the combination is often grammatical on a special interpretation, viz. a *partly inchoative* or *partly terminative* reading. Compare:

At seven o'clock he was eating a three-course dinner. *(This sentence is fine on a coincidence interpretation because the progressive form represents the telic situation as nonbounded and homogeneous, which means that the situation time can be a punctual portion of the time of the full situation and can therefore be represented as coinciding with the punctual Adv-time denoted by* at seven o'clock*.)*

At seven o'clock he ate a three-course dinner. *(This sentence is ungrammatical if it is to express that the situation time coincided with the punctual Adv-time, because the nonprogressive form of a telic verb phrase represents the durative situation as bounded (and therefore as heterogeneous), which means that the situation time is also the time of the full situation, which is durative and therefore cannot coincide with a punctual Adv-time. However, when such a sentence is uttered by a cooperative speaker, a cooperative hearer will look for a suitable reading and assume the 'partly inchoative' interpretation 'He ate a three-course dinner and started doing so at seven o'clock'. Note that we speak of a 'partly inchoative interpretation' because '(purely) inchoative interpretation' means that only the beginning of the actualization is referred to. This is not the case in this example: the sentence asserts the actualization of the full situation. What is inchoative about it is that the time adverbial specifies only the beginning of the situation.)*

John came to the station at 4. *(The most suitable interpretation here is a 'partly terminative' one: 'John came to the station and arrived there at four'.)*

At 8 p.m. John will come here. *(Ambiguous between an inchoative reading – John will leave (somewhere) at 8 p.m. to come here – and a terminative reading – John will arrive here at 8 p.m. (having come from somewhere).)*

It should be noted that a partly inchoative or terminative reading is not automatically possible when a punctual Adv-time is combined with a durative-bounded description of a situation. Compare:

At five o'clock I wrote a letter.

*At five o'clock I wrote a book.

Only the former of these is acceptable on a partly inchoative reading. Given the minimal difference between the examples, it must be something pragmatic that blocks the partly inchoative reading of the second sentence. However, it is not at all clear what the blocking factor is. Granted that *at five o'clock* is pragmatically odd as a starting time for such a large enterprise as writing a book, a particular *day* should not sound absurd and yet the following are also completely unacceptable on an inchoative interpretation:

On 27th September I wrote a book. *(only acceptable if I wrote a complete book on 27th September)*

At the end of September I wrote a book. *(similar; there is no acceptable partly inchoative reading)*

2.31 The role of pure duration adverbials

2.31.1 Whereas a time-specifying adverbial indicates a (punctual or durative) Adv-time which contains the situation time of the situation referred to, a PURE DURATION ADVERBIAL like *for two weeks* only measures (i. e. indicates the length of) an interval of time. The interval in question is the time of the full situation, not the time of the predicated situation (i. e. the length of the situation time), unless the two coincide (see 2.16.2).

> John told us that he was working in Portsmouth for two weeks. *(The situation time indicated by was working coincides with the (almost punctual) situation time indicated by told. For two weeks indicates the length of the full situation of John working in Portsmouth. In other words, for two weeks belongs to the description of the full situation: at the time of John's speaking, the situation of John-working-in-Portsmouth-for-two-weeks was in progress. Notice that the fact that the speaker knows about the length of the situation means that the situation must have been pre-determined, i. e. planned in advance.)*
>
> *(telephone conversation with somebody travelling through France)* ["Where are you today?"] – "Today I'm here in Rennes until six. [At six I'm leaving for Paris.]" *(The situation time is that part of the time of the speaker's being in Rennes that coincides with* t_0*. The adverbial until six indicates the duration of the remaining part – the part following* t_0 *– of the full situation of the speaker's being in Rennes. This knowledge is available to the speaker only if the full situation has been scheduled in advance. In other words, the adverbial forms part of the description of the full situation: what is going on at* t_0 *is the speaker's-being-in-Rennes-until-six. The situation time can be a punctual subinterval (of that full situation) which coincides with* t_0 *because I'm here in Rennes until six represents its situation as homogeneous: at any point between* t_0 *and six the speaker can truly say I am here in Rennes until six. Today refers to the whole of 'what counts as today' (here, roughly the working day); this Adv-time includes* t_0 *as well as the situation time coinciding with* t_0*.)*
>
> I am only in my office for two hours. *(The situation time (= time taken up by the predicated situation) is that part of the time of the full situation that coincides with* t_0*. The adverbial for two hours indicates the (pre-determined) duration of the full situation and belongs to the description of that situation.)*
>
> John had come for two hours. *(For two hours can only indicate the duration of the time of the full situation. The only possible readings that are in keeping with this are 'John had come and stayed for two hours' or 'John had come with the intention of staying for two hours'.)*

2.31.2 There are a couple of cases in which the situation time coincides with the time of the full situation. In these cases a pure duration adverbial measures not only the length of the time of the full situation but also the length of the situation time.

(a) The situation time and the time of the full situation coincide if the situation is L-bounded (see 1.44). In that case the predicated situation is represented as heterogeneous (see 1.45), which means that it is incompatible with a time-specifying adverbial indicating an Adv-time that is shorter than the situation time (because the Adv-time has to either include the situation time or coincide with it – see 1.46.2). Compare:

I worked on my thesis for five and a half years. *(The situation time coincides with the time of the full situation because the duration-measuring adverbial represents the situation as bounded, i. e. as reaching a terminal point.)*

*Last week I worked on my thesis for five and a half years. *(The duration-measuring adverbial for five and a half years represents the situation as bounded, which means that the situation time is also the time of the full situation. The sentence is pragmatically unacceptable because the Adv-time specified by last week is too short to contain a situation time that lasts for five and a half years.)*

When I was in my twenties, I worked on my thesis for five and a half years. *(This time the Adv-time is long enough to contain the situation time.)*

(b) In clauses in one of the perfect tenses, the period indicated by a duration adverbial with *for* again coincides with the time of the full situation. In addition, this period may sometimes be interpreted as being the period that leads up to t_0 or to a past or post-present binding orientation time.[16] Compare:

For the past two years she has worked intermittently for various companies. *(The situation of working intermittently for various companies took up the whole of the past two years, i. e. the entire two-year period up to t_0.)*

{**For* / in} the past two years she has worked once or twice. *(For cannot be used because there is no reference to a situation of working once or twice which lasts throughout the two-year period up to now.)*

However, in some sentences (in one of the perfect tenses) the *for*-adverbial only indicates the length of the time of the full situation:

Have you ever been abroad *for longer than two weeks* [since you came to live here]? *(The relevant 'period up to orientation time' in which the present perfect tense locates one or more situation times is a 'period up to t_0'. The for-adverbial indicates the duration of these situations (if any), not the length of the period leading up to t_0.)*

[When I went to Australia] I had been away for longer than two days only twice in my life. *(The relevant 'period up to a past orientation time' presupposed by the past perfect is a period leading up to the past situation time of the when-clause. The for-adverbial specifies the duration of the full situations corresponding with the two situation times that are located in this period.)*

Under certain conditions a perfect tense can receive a 'continuative' interpretation, i. e. the reading in which the full situation starts before some orientation time and continues up to (and into) the orientation time in question, as in *I'd been waiting for her for two hours [before she finally arrived]* – see 5.3.2. In that case the period whose length is specified by the durational adverbial is the time of the full situation (which is interpreted as containing the orientation time in question – see 5.3.2). This 'time of the full situation' is the time of actualization of the situation in the actual world. However, such a continuative interpretation does not exclude the possibility that the situation will continue in the (not-yet-factual) future world: *I've lived here since 1998* suggests that the situation may well continue after t_0. The function of a *for*-adverbial accompanying a 'continuative present perfect' (= the representation, by means of a clause in the present perfect, of a situation as starting before t_0 and as still actualizing at t_0) is to specify the duration of the FACTUAL FULL SITUATION, i.e. the full situation covering the period up to t_0 plus t_0 itself, but leaves open the possibility that the actualization will continue in the (not-yet-factual) post-present, in other words that the POTENTIAL FULL SITUATION is longer than the factual one.

---

[16] As noted before, a 'binding' orientation time is an orientation time to which a situation time is temporally related by a tense (see 2.49).

> I've been waiting for her for two hours now. *(For two hours now indicates the length of the factual full situation, i.e. the full situation as it has actualized up to now. Nothing is said about the length of the potential full situation.)*
>
> In two weeks' time Maggie will have been in prison for exactly three years. *(For exactly three years specifies the length of the full situation up to the time (point) indicated by in two weeks' time. This situation is assumed to be a factual situation. The sentence leaves it vague whether or not this factual full situation will potentially extend beyond the post-present point indicated by in two weeks' time. Only world knowledge can tell us this, i.e. can tell us whether Maggie is due to serve exactly three years or more.)*

2.32 Summary of section III

We have distinguished three types of adverbial that give temporal information. **Time-specifying adverbials** (e.g. *at seven o'clock*) temporally locate an orientation time (which may be a situation time) by specifying a particular time (an **Adv-time**) which may be durative or punctual and which contains (i.e. coincides with or includes) the orientation time. **Pure duration adverbials** (e.g. *for seven hours*) specify the length of time occupied by a full situation, but do not locate it in time. **Bifunctional adverbials** (e.g. *from six to eight*) both temporally locate a situation time and specify the length of the corresponding full situation. Thus in *Sam worked in the garden from six to eight*, the temporal adverbial locates the situation time (the time of the predicated situation) at the time indicated by *from six to eight* and measures the (time of the) full situation (as taking up two hours). To sum up: time-specifying adverbials locate orientation times (including situation times), pure duration adverbials measure the length of the time of a full situation, and bifunctional adverbials simultaneously locate a situation time and specify the length of the corresponding full situation time.

As we have seen, a time indicated by a **time-specifying adverbial** (= an Adv-time) **contains** the situation time (or other orientation time) whose temporal location it specifies. The situation time may be shorter than the Adv-time (i. e. it is included in it) or it may be exactly the same length (i. e. it coincides with it). In either case we can speak of **Adv-time-simultaneity**. Adv-time-simultaneity differs from W-simultaneity in that it is linguistically expressed and it is unlike T-simultaneity in that it is not expressed by a tense and it allows for a relation of proper inclusion as well as one of strict coincidence, though it does not allow for mere overlap. When there is more than one Adv-time in a clause, the relation between the Adv-times is also one of Adv-time-simultaneity – i. e. proper inclusion or coincidence.

When the Adv-time is punctual, the situation time, in order to be included in the Adv-time, must of necessity be punctual. A durative situation can be represented as simultaneous with a punctual Adv-time provided that the situation is homogeneous (nonbounded). (The situation time is then the time of a punctual portion of the situation which is representative of the whole situation.) The fact that a progressive clause can combine with an adverbial specifying a punctual Adv-time means that a progressive clause represents the predicated situation as a punctual situation which is representative of the longer full situation. When a durative situation is bounded, it is (by definition) nonhomogeneous and therefore the situation time cannot be a punctual portion of the time of the full situation. Rather, the situation time has the same duration as the time of the full situation. This means that a durative bounded situation cannot be located at a punctual time (such as t_0 or *at five o'clock*). However, a durative bounded situation may be referred to in a clause containing a punctual adverb as long as this adverb can be interpreted as indicating the beginning or end of the full actualizing situation. For example, *We'll have lunch at one p.m.* locates the beginning of the situation of having lunch, not the entire situation, at one o'clock. (This does not alter the fact that the speaker envisages the entire situation as actualizing in the future.)

In a given context, a time-specifying or bifunctional adverbial may contain (i. e. by inclusion or coincidence) a situation time, an orientation time other than a situation time, or several orientation times (usually situation times). We speak, respectively, of **situation-time adverbials**, **orientation-time adverbials** and **multiple-orientation-time adverbials**.

As we have seen, a **pure duration adverbial** measures the time of the full situation. In *Midge said that the baby was crying for two hours*, the predicated situation expressed by *the baby was crying for two hours* must be punctual because it is T-simultaneous with the (more or less) punctual situation time indicated by *said*. However, the full, i. e. the implied, situation is measured as lasting for two hours. Usually the time of the full situation is longer than the time of the predicated situation and so the duration adverbial *only* measures the time of the full situation, but in some cases, notably when the situation is explicitly bounded, the situation time coincides with the time of the full situation. In those cases, of course, the adverbial time indirectly also measures the predicated situation.

IV. The present and past time-spheres

2.33 The conceptualization of 'time-spheres'

English tenses appear to reflect a mental division of time into past and nonpast. The main evidence for this is that all tenses carry either a past or a nonpast (present) tense morpheme. There is no future tense morpheme. We will represent this division of time as involving two time-spheres: a past time-sphere and a present time-sphere.

In English, the use of tenses implies a conceptual division of time into two 'time-spheres': the PRESENT TIME-SPHERE and the PAST TIME-SPHERE. (Note that a time-sphere is a length of time and should not be visualized as something spherical (round).)

The claim that English speakers conceptualize linguistic time as divided into two, not three (viz. past, present and future), time-spheres is based on several observations. Firstly, all the tenses make use of an inflectional tense morpheme which expresses either past or nonpast.[17] There is no inflectional future tense morpheme in English: the future tense is formed with the help of the present tense form of an auxiliary (*will*), i. e. a 'free' morpheme rather than a 'bound' one. Thus, *will do* (which realizes 'PRESENT + *will* + *do*') contains a present tense inflectional morpheme, and *would do* (which expresses 'PAST + *will* + *do*') contains a past tense inflectional morpheme. Secondly, it is in keeping with this that the future tense use of *shall* and *will* has developed from their use as forms expressing *present* nonepistemic modality (more specifically, some kind of volition). Thirdly, in order to temporally relate a situation time to a future situation time, English uses the same tense system as it uses to temporally relate a situation time to t_0: compare *I am ill* with [*Next time, he will pretend that*] *he is ill*, and *He has left* with [*I will do it when*] *he has left* (see 7.6.2). This means that English treats a future situation time which functions as a starting point for the temporal location of other situation times as a 'pseudo-t_0'. This accords perfectly with the view that the post-present is a portion ('zone' – see 2.35) of the present time-sphere. (Note that this argument is not refuted by the observation that the present tense can also refer to the past, viz. in the 'historic present' use. The point is that in [*Next time, he will pretend that*] *he is ill* and [*I will do it when*] *he has left*, the forms *is* and *have left* cannot be replaced with *will be* and *will have left*, respectively, while a historic present form can always be replaced by a past tense form. This means that the use of the present tense with future time reference is normal and obligatory in the above examples, whereas the use of the present tense with past time reference is special and optional.)

---

[17] If the tense form consists of more than one verb form, the tense morpheme is always to be found in the first auxiliary (the so-called 'operator' of the tense form).

2.34 Defining the time-spheres

The past time-sphere lies wholly before t_0, while the present time-sphere includes t_0 and extends either side of it for an indefinite amount of time.

2.34.1 The PAST TIME-SPHERE is conceived of as a timespan of indefinite length which lies wholly before t_0 and is disconnected from t_0. The absolute tense locating a situation time in the past time-sphere is the preterite (past tense). (As explained in 2.41, an absolute tense is a tense that relates a situation time directly to t_0 and not to another orientation time.)

> I left the house around midnight. *(Left locates its situation time in the past time-sphere, which is defined in direct relation to t_0.)*

2.34.2 The PRESENT TIME-SPHERE (or NONPAST TIME-SPHERE) is conceived of as a timespan of indefinite length which includes t_0.

2.35 Present time-sphere zones

The present time-sphere is conceived of here as containing the present zone, which coincides with t_0, the pre-present zone, which leads up to t_0, and the post-present zone, which begins immediately after t_0. To locate a situation in one of these zones, we use the present tense, the present perfect or the future tense (or a futurish tense) respectively.

The zero-time (t_0) is taken to divide the present time-sphere into three ZONES. The portion of the present time-sphere that precedes t_0 is the PRE-PRESENT ZONE; the portion that coincides with t_0 is the PRESENT ZONE; and the portion that follows t_0 is the POST-PRESENT ZONE (or 'future zone'). It should be stressed that these three zones follow each other without overlap. This means that the post-present starts from t_0 but does not include it, and that the pre-present leads up to t_0 but does not include it. (In 5.2 it will be shown that the latter claim does not run counter to the observation that the present perfect receives a 'continuative' interpretation in *We've been living here for six weeks now*.)

To locate situations in these three zones we use the present perfect, the present tense and the future tense (or a 'futurish form' – see 2.9), respectively. Each of these tenses shows present (nonpast) morphology.

I *have* already *spoken* to John. *(Have spoken is a present perfect tense form locating its situation time somewhere in the pre-present zone.)*

I *am* very happy with her. *(Am locates its situation time at t_0.)*

I {*will* / *am going to*} *be* there tomorrow. *(Not only will be but also am going to be locates the situation time in the post-present. As noted in 2.13, the situation time is the time of the actualization of the predicated situation, not the time of anticipation of that actualization.)*

2.36 Visual representation of time-spheres and zones

The linguistic conceptualization of time in terms of time-spheres and zones can be represented as in Figure 2.1. In this diagram the time line is represented as consisting of two time-spheres. The dotted line in the middle of the time line is meant to represent the fact that there is felt to be a break between the two time-spheres. (There is a slight but hard to avoid technical problem with this diagram: it makes the pre-present look as though it is more recent, i. e. closer to t_0, than the past. That this impression is false is stressed in 2.39.)

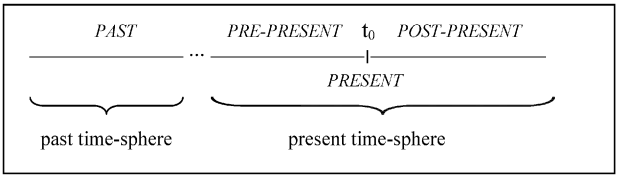

Figure 2.1. Linguistic conceptualization of the time line in English.

2.37 Absolute zones

The past time-sphere is conceived of as consisting of a single zone (the past time-zone). To locate a situation in the past time-zone we use the past tense. The four zones (pre-present, present and post-present plus past) that are defined in direct relation to t_0 are called the ‘absolute’ zones. The tenses used to locate situations in these absolute zones are referred to as ‘absolute tenses’.

Whereas the present time-sphere is automatically divided into three zones by t_0, the past time-sphere consists of a single time-zone, which is defined as lying completely before t_0 and as disconnected from t_0. The past time-sphere and the three present time-sphere zones together constitute the set of ABSOLUTE ZONES (or ABSOLUTE TIME-ZONES), i. e. the four time-zones that are defined in direct relation to t_0. (Note that ‘zone’ is equivalent to ‘time-sphere’ where the past is concerned and equivalent to ‘portion of the time-sphere’ where the pre-present, present and post-present are concerned.) (To a layman, the use of ‘time-zone’ to refer to t_0 may seem odd, because t_0 is conceived of as punctual, but the concept ‘punctual interval’ is well-established in the literature on tense.)

2.38 Past *vs* pre-present

Situation times that precede t_0 can in principle be located either in the pre-present zone or in the past time-sphere, but the choice depends on whether the speaker’s ‘temporal focus’ is on the present or on the past.

There is a generally accepted intuition that the use of the present perfect in English implies that the speaker is somehow concerned with the present (see 5.1.3). In our tense model this is reflected in the claim that the time of a situation referred to by a present perfect is not located in the past, but rather in the ‘pre-present’. Situation times that precede t_0 can in principle be located either in the pre-present zone or in the past time-sphere, but the choice depends on whether the speaker’s ‘temporal focus’ (see 11.1) is on the present or on the past. This explains why the present perfect is incompatible with adverbials like *yesterday*, *two weeks ago*, etc., which place the temporal focus on the past. The choice of temporal focus is more important than the notion of ‘current relevance’, because only the former has to do with the location of the predicated situation in time. Since tense is the grammaticalization of locating a situation in time by means of a verb form (see 2.1), adverbials of past time are incompatible with the present perfect, even if there is an idea of current relevance. This is clear from the following examples:

[I know what Paris looks like.] I *have visited* it several times.

[I know what Paris looks like.] I {*visited* / **have visited*} it several times two years ago.[18]

2.38.1 To avoid any misunderstanding, we would like to point out that a situation can be viewed as past even when it is represented as contained in an Adv-time (= adverbially indicated time interval) that also includes t_0, as in *I had a copious breakfast today*. In this case the speaker has the situation time (which here coincides with the time of the full situation) in mind, which is a past situation time, even though it is included in a larger Adv-time which also includes t_0. Here, as in other cases, the tense form does not relate the situation time to the Adv-time, but rather to an orientation time (in this case: t_0, since *had* is an absolute past tense form).

2.39 The length of the time-spheres and zones

The present zone coincides with t_0 and is thus punctual. However, the length of the other zones is purely a matter of how they are conceptualized on a given occasion. (Compare *The elephant has just arrived* with *The Asian elephant has been worshipped for centuries*.) The interval between a past situation and t_0 does not determine whether the situation is located in a past time-zone or in a pre-present time-zone. (Compare *The elephant has just arrived* and *The elephant arrived just a moment ago*.)

Except for the present zone, which is by definition conceived of as punctual (see 2.35), the length of the time-spheres and the zones cannot be defined in terms of objective time. Everything depends on how the speaker conceptualizes time. For example, the pre-present can be conceived of either as very short (e. g. *I have just seen him*) or as stretching indefinitely far back (e. g. *The earth has existed for billions of years*), while the past time-sphere may be conceived of as distant from t_0 (e. g. *Things were different in ancient Rome*) or as almost reaching up to it (e. g. *The phone rang a minute ago*). It follows that one and the same situation can often be conceptualized either as lying in the past time-sphere or as lying in the pre-present (compare *I met Ann just now* with *I have just met Ann*). This is in keeping with the observation (made in 2.36) that the past time-sphere is not conceptualized as more distant from t_0 than the pre-

---

[18] The constraint that the present perfect is incompatible with a past temporal focus is typical of English. It does not hold for other Germanic languages, like Dutch and German. Thus, the German and Dutch equivalents of **I have seen him yesterday* are perfectly grammatical: *Ich habe ihn gestern gesehen*; *Ik heb hem gisteren gezien*.

present zone. (The past time-sphere is conceived of as *separated* from the present time-sphere, whereas the pre-present zone forms part of it, but the actual distance between the situation time and t_0 is immaterial to this conceptualization.)

2.40 Present time-sphere tenses *vs* past time-sphere tenses

The past tense, the past perfect, the conditional tense, and the conditional perfect typically locate situation times in the past time-sphere. The present tense, the present perfect, the future tense and the future perfect typically locate situation times in the present time-sphere.

There are four tenses that typically represent a situation time as belonging to the past time-sphere. We call them the **PAST (TIME-SPHERE) TENSES**: the past tense, the past perfect, the conditional tense (realized as '*would* + infinitive') and the conditional perfect (realized as '*would have* + past participle'). These tenses all involve a past tense inflectional morpheme.

The other four tenses typically represent a situation time as lying in the present time-sphere. We call them the **PRESENT (TIME-SPHERE) TENSES**: the present tense, the present perfect, the future tense and the future perfect. These tenses all involve a present tense inflectional morpheme.

V. Temporal domains

2.41 Absolute tenses *vs* relative tenses

We have seen that an absolute tense relates a situation time directly to t_0, whereas a relative tense relates a situation time to an orientation time other than t_0.

2.41.1 An ABSOLUTE TENSE relates a situation time directly to t_0. English has four absolute tenses: the present tense, the absolute past tense,[19] the present perfect and the future tense. They locate the situation time in the present, past, pre-present and post-present time-zone, respectively.

A RELATIVE TENSE relates a situation time to an orientation time other than t_0, i. e. to another situation time, an unspecified orientation time (see 2.14.c), an (otherwise unspecified) time contained in an Adv-time (see 2.14.d) or an implicit orientation time (see 2.14.e). Thus, the past perfect is a relative tense, because it relates its situation time as anterior to an orientation time which is not t_0. For example, in *John said he had worked hard*, the past perfect represents the situation time of *had worked hard* as T-anterior to the situation time of *said*. The relative tense does not itself relate the time of working to t_0, even though we can usually deduce that the working, as well as being T-anterior to the time of John's saying, is also W-anterior to t_0. (However, this is not always the case, witness the fact that the situation referred to by *had cleaned* is interpreted as W-posterior to t_0 in *He said he would do it tomorrow after he had cleaned the floor.*)

2.41.2 While the four absolute tenses are always realized by the four forms referred to above, it will be argued below that the same forms may sometimes also have the function typical of relative tenses. This occurs either (in one case, that of the past tense) because there are two homonymous tenses or (in a second case, namely when a post-present domain is expanded) because the semantics of the set of absolute tenses is 'hijacked' for use in a relative manner.

2.42 Temporal domain

A temporal domain consists of various orientation times (situation times or not) which are temporally related to one another. Only the orientation time which establishes the

---

[19] It will be argued in 2.44 that English has two past tenses: an absolute one and a relative one.

domain is directly related to t_0. Together, they form a set whose relations we can represent in a diagram.
A temporal domain is typically established by an absolute tense (locating a situation time in a particular time-zone) and is expanded by relative tenses. In *Meg will buy a bike that has loads of gears* the future tense form *will buy* establishes a post-present domain. The present tense form *has* expands that temporal domain because it relates the situation time of the bike having loads of gears to the situation time of Meg's buying a bike. Specifically, it locates the having simultaneous to the buying. That is, the present tense in this sentence is used as a relative tense – it does not relate the situation time to t_0 but to another orientation time, in this case the situation time located by the future tense main clause.
A temporal domain need not be expanded: it may consist just of a single situation time, as in *Meg bought a bike.*

2.42.1 A TEMPORAL DOMAIN is a set of orientation times which are temporally related to each other by means of tenses. Since a domain is always established by a tense form and every tense form refers to a situation time, at least one of the orientation times in the set is a situation time. As we will see, a domain sometimes also contains an orientation time which is not a situation time, such as the unspecified orientation time to which the situation time of *had got up* is represented as anterior in *He had got up early that morning* when this sentence is used as the first sentence of a novel.

An absolute tense form always establishes a domain. This means that a domain can only be expanded by relative tense forms. Thus, in

(1) John *said* he *was* tired because he *had worked* hard all day and that he *would go* to bed early.

the reference is to a past domain. This is established by the past tense form *said*, which is therefore an absolute tense form. The other tense forms are relative tense forms: *was [tired]* represents its situation time as T-simultaneous with the situation time of *said*, *had worked* represents its situation time as T-anterior to the situation time of *was [tired]* and *would go* represents its situation time as T-posterior to the situation time of *said*. See Figure 2.2.

2.42.2 When representing a temporal domain by means of a diagram, we will observe the following *conventions*. The domain is represented by a Venn-diagram because it is a set of orientation times (related to each other by the tense forms). The 'central orientation time' (= the situation time establishing the domain – see 8.15) is the only orientation time which is placed on the time line, since it is the only orientation time that is directly related to t_0. A vertical

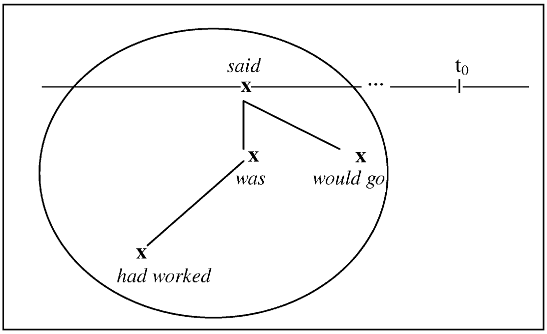

Figure 2.2. The tense structure of *John said that he was tired because he had worked hard all day and that he would go to bed early.*

line is used to represent the relation of T-simultaneity, whereas a slanting line represents either T-anteriority or T-posteriority. A situation time that is T-anterior to another orientation time is located to the left of the latter; a situation time that is T-posterior to another orientation time is located to the right of the latter. All orientation times and situation times are represented by a cross (or ‘x’), irrespective of whether they are durative or punctual.

2.43 Unexpanded domain

A temporal domain is UNEXPANDED if it consists of just one situation time: the set of orientation times forming the domain is a singleton. This is the case in *He left at five and I will leave at eight*, where both tense forms establish a domain of their own, which is not further expanded – see Figure 2.3.

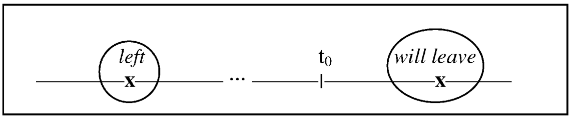

Figure 2.3. The tense structure of *He left at 5 and I will leave at 8.*

2.44 Absolute and relative past tenses

As is shown in Figure 2.2, English has an ABSOLUTE PAST TENSE, which establishes a past domain, and a RELATIVE PAST TENSE, which expresses T-simultaneity in a past domain. The semantics of the absolute past tense is: ‘The situation time is located in the past time-sphere (defined relative to t_0)’; the semantics of the relative past tense is: ‘The situation time is represented as T-simultaneous with an orientation time in a past domain’.[20] Arguments for this distinction are adduced in 8.23–32.

2.45 Past (time-sphere) tenses

The past (time-sphere) tenses comprise (a) the absolute past tense (creating a past domain), (b) the relative tenses expressing a single T-relation in a past domain, viz. the past tense (T-simultaneity), the past perfect (T-anteriority), the ‘conditional’ tense (T-posteriority), and (c) the ‘complex relative’ (see 1.18.3) tenses expressing two or more relations in a past domain at once, viz. the ‘conditional perfect’ tense (*would have* V-*en*), as well as such (nameless) tenses as are built with *had been going to*, *would be going to*, *would have been going to*, *had been going to have* V-*en*, *would be going to have* V-*en* and *would have been going to have* V-*en*. All these tenses have in common that they show past tense inflectional morphology.

2.46 Present (time-sphere) tenses

These comprise the present tense, the present perfect, the future tense and the absolute-relative tenses (see the next section). They all show present tense inflectional morphology.

2.47 Absolute-relative tenses

An absolute-relative tense is a tense which both establishes a domain and indicates a relation in it. In English, the absolute-relative tenses are the future perfect (*will have* V-*en*) – see Figure 2.4 – and such (nameless) present time-sphere tenses as are built with *has been going to* or *will be going to* (and, at least theoretically, *has been going to have* V-*en* and *will have been going to have* V-*en*.)

---

[20] This is actually a simplification. In section 10.2 we will see that a post-present binding orientation time may be treated as if it were t_0, i. e. as a ‘pseudo-t_0’, and that in that case we can speak of a ‘pseudo-past time-zone’ and ‘pseudo-past subdomains’. A pseudo-past subdomain is established by a ‘pseudo-absolute’ past tense and expanded by the relative tenses typical of (true) past domains:

(i) [Even if there are witnesses to the hold-up we are planning] they will no doubt say to the police that they *didn’t notice* what *was going on*.

In this example, *didn’t notice* is a pseudo-absolute past tense form establishing a pseudo-past subdomain in the post-present domain established by *will say*; *was going on* expresses T-simultaneity in that pseudo-past subdomain – see section 10.2.2. It follows that the correct definition of the semantics of the relative past tense is: ‘The situation time is T-simultaneous with an orientation time in a (pseudo-)past (sub)domain’.

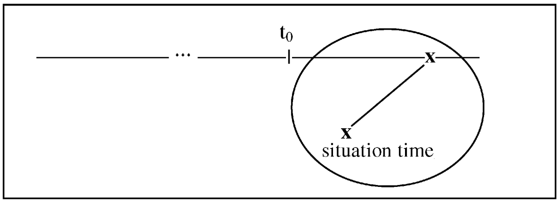

Figure 2.4. The tense structure of the future perfect.

2.48 Terminology: relative tenses *vs* absolute-relative tenses

The terms 'relative tense' and 'absolute relative tense' are not used in a uniform manner in the linguistic literature. For example, Comrie (1985) applies the label 'relative tense forms' to nonfinite verb forms (which express a single temporal relation with a contextually given orientation time – see 1.10.4), and refers to the past perfect as an 'absolute-relative tense' – a label which we reserve for the future perfect and for forms built with *will be going to* (see 2.47). We do not follow this practice. In section 1.10.4 we argued that nonfinite clauses are untensed, i. e. that only finite verb forms are tense forms.

2.49 Temporal subordination or (temporal) binding

A relative tense, by definition, requires the presence of some other orientation time in order to locate the time of the situation expressed by the relative-tense clause. (For example, such an orientation time is missing in *Meg had bought a bike*, rendering the clause difficult to interpret, while in *Meg said that she had bought a bike* we have a clearly accessible orientation time – the time of Meg's saying – to which the relative tense, the past perfect, can relate its situation.) We say that the situation time located by a relative tense is 'temporally bound' by (or 'subordinated' to) the orientation time from which the temporal location of the situation time takes its starting point. (In the example above, the situation time of the buying is located by starting at the time of saying and locating the buying anterior to it.) In the same way, we talk of 'binding orientation times' and 'bound situation times'.

When a situation time is T-related to another orientation time in a domain, we have TEMPORAL SUBORDINATION or TEMPORAL BINDING. Thus, in *John said he would do it*, the situation time of *would do* is 'temporally bound by' (or: 'temporally subordinated to') the situation time of *said*. (We know this because the conditional tense, in its purely temporal use, can only be used as a relative tense representing its situation time as T-posterior to another orientation time in a past domain. In other words, the conditional tense is the grammaticalization of the expression of T-posteriority in a past domain.) In this case the BOUND SITUATION TIME is the time of the predicated situation described by [*he*] *would do* [*it*], whereas the BINDING ORIENTATION TIME is the time of the predicated situation described by [*John*] *said*.

2.50 Temporal subdomain

The situation time which establishes a temporal domain is the 'central orientation time' of the domain. When a temporal domain is expanded, each situation time (if any) that is introduced into the domain is itself the central orientation time of a domain-within-a-domain, which we call a 'temporal subdomain', even if that domain is not expanded. Thus in *Meg said she bought a bike* the situation time of *she bought a bike* is the central orientation time of an unexpanded domain, whilst in *Meg said she bought a bike that didn't have any brakes*, the situation time of *bought* is the central orientation time of a domain which is expanded by the bound situation time of the relative clause *that didn't have any brakes*. In a past zone, tenses function in exactly the same way in temporal subdomains as in the temporal domains which they expand – i. e. the rules for relating situation times by means of tenses are recursive in a past zone. The same does not necessarily go for the three zones that make up the present time-sphere, but we nevertheless find that specific sets of tenses for expressing the set of temporal relations in a domain are re-used in other zones, so that the total number of tenses required to express temporal relations in all the temporal zones is very small.

2.50.1 A 'temporal domain' has been defined as a set of orientation times, containing at least one situation time – see 2.42. The set may consist of no more than one situation time, in which case the set is a singleton and we speak of an 'unexpanded' (see 2.43) domain. A set may also be an EXPANDED DOMAIN, in which case it contains several orientation times, each of which is related to another by a tense relation. In the same way as any multiple set contains subsets, which may be singletons, an expanded temporal domain contains subdomains, which may be unexpanded subdomains. That is, when we expand a temporal domain, each situation time that is introduced into the domain creates a TEMPORAL SUBDOMAIN, whose 'central orientation time' (i. e. the orientation time from which the first T-relations in the subdomain start) is the newly introduced situation time.[21] It is important to see that the tenses used to express T-relations in a past subdomain are exactly the same as those used to express T-relations in the overall past domain. Consider, for example, the following:

> Bill *said* something. (*Said creates a past domain which is not further expanded.)*
>
> Bill *said* that some day I *would lose* my job. (*Said creates a past domain which is further expanded: would lose expresses T-posteriority within the domain; would lose creates a past subdomain which is not further expanded.)*
>
> Bill *said* that some day I *would lose* the job that I *had had* for over twenty years. (*Would lose expresses T-posteriority within the overall past domain established by said and creates a past subdomain; had had expresses T-anteriority in the subdomain created by would lose, thus expanding it; the new subdomain created by had had within the subdomain created by would lose is not further expanded.)*
>
> Ryan *said* Sheila *had told* him that she *would resign* if she *didn't get* her way. (*Said creates a past domain. Had told expresses T-anteriority in it and creates a subdomain. In this subdomain, would resign expresses T-posteriority and creates a new, smaller, subdomain. Within this subdomain didn't get expresses T-simultaneity and in doing so creates a further subdomain.)*

Figure 2.5 represents the tense structure of the last example.

2.50.2 There are some interesting theoretical conclusions to be drawn from this. First, in section 2.14 we defined 'orientation time' as 'any time capable of functioning as the origin of a temporal relation expressed by a tense form' and pointed out that it follows that a situation time (= the time of a predicated situation) is always an orientation time. We can now reformulate this and say that a situation time is always the central orientation time of a domain or subdomain. Secondly, the tenses expanding a subdomain of a past domain are exactly the same as those expanding the overall past domain: both past domains and past subdomains use the past perfect for T-anteriority, the conditional tense for T-posteriority and the past tense for T-simultaneity. This means that we need only a very limited number of tenses to build quite complex past domains, since the rules for expanding a past domain apply recursively to each of the subdomains. The same thing is not necessarily true of domains in the present time-sphere, but it will be shown in chapter 9 that the expansion of

---

[21] In 2.42.2 we wrote that "The central orientation time is the only orientation time which is placed on the time line, since it is the only orientation time that is directly related to t_0." It is clear that this remark only applies to the central orientation time of an overall domain, not to the central orientation time of a subdomain.

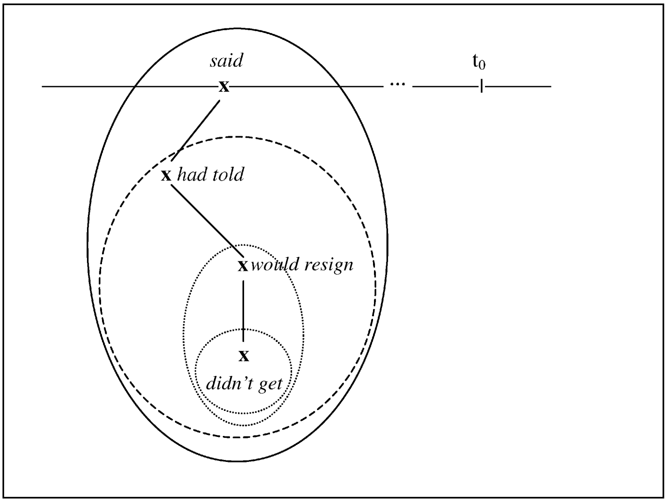

Figure 2.5. The tense structure of *Ryan said Sheila had told him that she would resign if she didn't get her way.*

pre-present and post-present domains is also governed by a limited number of rules. (Present domains cannot be expanded because a tense form relating a situation time to t_0 is by definition an absolute tense form, which therefore establishes a domain of its own – see 9.14.)

VI. Summary

2.51 The basic terminology of tense

We started this chapter with some basic terminology and definitions. These included terms such as 'tense', 'temporal zero-time', 'orientation time', etc. Below we review the definitions that have been given.

2.51.1 **A tense** is the pairing of a particular verbal form with a meaning, the meaning being the specification of the temporal location of a situation. A tense relates the temporal location of a situation to the temporal zero-point (see below), which is usually speech time, or to some other known time which is itself related either directly or indirectly to the temporal zero-point. A **tense form** may be an inflected main verb or a main verb plus one or more auxiliaries. Thus, in the future tense, the form '*will* + present infinitive' is paired with the meaning (here slightly simplified) 'location after speech time'.

2.51.2 Every tense expresses a **tense structure**. A tense structure is a blueprint for one particular way of locating a situation in time. The structure expresses the temporal relation between a situation time (see below) and a 'known' time, which we call an **orientation time**. If the orientation time is not speech time, the tense structure also characterizes the orientation time by reference to its ultimate (not necessarily direct) relation to speech time. For example, the past perfect locates a situation time prior to an orientation time which in turn either (a) directly precedes speech time or (b) is ultimately related to a time that precedes speech time. We will only consider the simpler case of (a) here. In *Meg announced that the elephant had arrived* the time of Meg's announcement provides the orientation time before which the elephant's arrival took place, and that orientation time itself precedes (= is past relative to) speech time.

2.51.3 Any time that can provide the known time required for the expression of the temporal relation(s) encoded in a tense form is an **orientation time**. There are five types of orientation time: t_0, situation times, 'unspecified' orientation times (which are recoverable from the context), (otherwise unspecified) orientation times contained in an Adv-time, and 'implicit' orientation times (= times which are implicit in the structure of temporal conjunctions). An example of the last can be found in *I left before the elephant had arrived*. *Before* is analysed as meaning 'before the time at which'. This means that our example is paraphrasable 'I left before the time at which the elephant had (already) arrived'. This in turn means that the time of the elephant's arrival is analysed, not as located posterior to my leaving, but as located anterior to an implicit time that is W-posterior to the time of my leaving. It is thus located prior to an implicit orientation time – the time that is explicit in the paraphrase 'before the *time* at which' – rather than prior to a situation time.

2.51.4 The **temporal zero-point** (t_0) is the time from which all the temporal relations expressed by a tense ultimately take their starting point. It is usually speech time. Although the temporal zero-point is nearly always speech time, in certain contexts it is possible for the speaker to choose the decoding time as t_0. (For example, this is the case when a road sign reads *You are now entering Washington County*). Whether t_0 is the encoding time or the decoding time, English treats it as a point (rather than an interval). Thus durative situations cannot be located in their entirety at t_0.

2.52 What counts as a tense?

2.52.1 We have examined various issues in connection with the number of tenses in English. We have seen that every tense ultimately involves the relation of a situation time to the temporal zero-point. Because nonfinite verbs (such as the gerund *riding* or the perfect infinitive *having ridden*) carry no indication of their (ultimate) temporal relation to t_0, they cannot be said to be tense forms. However, a situation denoted by a nonfinite clause is interpreted as temporally related to some other time in the context (as simultaneous with it, for example, in the case of a present participle, or as anterior to it, for example, in the case of a past participle).

2.52.2 Sometimes, too, there is confusion about whether we can talk of 'progressive tenses'. There are no progressive tenses – progressivity has to do with aspect, not tense. However, there are progressive verb forms when progressive aspect combines with a tensed form.

2.52.3 Another debate about the number of tenses that exist in English concerns the fact that the only temporal information that is encoded in verbal inflections is past *vs* present, or nonpast. For example, *likes* and *will* are morphologically present, or nonpast, and *liked* and *would* are morphologically past. Thus, on the view that tenses must be distinguished by inflectional morphemes, English has only two tenses: past and present. There is also a view that the fact that English has two temporal perspectives, past and present (reflected in the morphological facts) supports the two-tense analysis. However, we have argued above that there is no *a priori* reason why complex (multi-word) forms should not be considered to be tense forms, and the fact that English has two temporal perspectives reflects (or is reflected in) the fact that it has two *sets* of tenses, not that it only has two tenses.

2.52.4 A related issue concerns the question whether English has a future tense. A sentence that locates the actualization of a situation in the future is always 'modal' inasmuch as the actualization is by definition not-yet-factual at t_0 and involves a (to varying degrees) subjective judgement about the likelihood of the future situation's actualizing. However, in many cases, '*will* + present infinitive' is used primarily to express the future temporal location of the situation referred to. We have argued that the fact that this can be the main purpose of the form justifies its status as a tense form. In addition, we argue that for every tense structure that can be expressed, we can talk of a matching tense. Thus, because the form '*will* + present infinitive' (e.g. [*Meg*] *will like* [*the elephant*]) expresses a structure which for the moment we can simplify as 'situation time posterior to speech time' and the present tense form (e.g. [*Meg*] *likes* [*the elephant*]) expresses the structure (again, temporarily simplified) 'situation time simultaneous with speech time' we claim that these are two different tenses.

2.52.5 We distinguish between 'pure future' uses of *will*, 'prediction' uses of *will*, and 'predictability' uses of *will*, according to the degree of subjectivity involved in the use of the form. (Predictability *will* takes a future time as the evaluation time for a statement about (usually) the present or the past. For example, *Don't worry, he will have taken a taxi home* is equivalent to 'It will become clear when we know the facts that he {has taken / took} a taxi home'.) All are instances of future tense. However, we have seen that there are other forms which have future time reference which require a more complex analysis.

2.52.6 Some forms in English have dual time reference: forms such as *be about to*, or the present progressive in *I'm leaving in a minute*, or, in some of its uses, *be going to*, evoke both the time of an implied present state (which is one from which a future outcome can be predicted) and the time of a future situation. (It is the actualization of the future situation which is the outcome predictable from the present state.) Only the future situation – the one associated with the lexical verb – is actually referred to. Such verb forms establish a future domain but are not future tense forms. We call them **futurish forms**. '*Be going to* + verb' is a future tense form if it has pure future time reference and is a futurish form if it also implies a present state. (There is no clear cutoff point between the two uses.)

2.52.7 Finally, in our discussion of what counts as a tense we have considered the case of the present perfect. Some authors consider that the English present perfect is not a separate tense, but is rather a combination of another tense (present or past) and an aspectual meaning component, viz. 'current relevance'. However, we analyse the present perfect as having a tense structure different from that of the present tense or the past tense and consider it to be a tense in its own right. The present perfect locates a situation in the pre-present 'zone' (see 2.57.2) while the past tense locates it in the past zone. The claim that the present perfect has a different temporal structure from the past tense is supported by the fact that the two tenses behave differently with certain adverbs.

(In chapter 6 it will be shown that certain adverbs connected to the present combine with the present perfect but not with the past tense, and past time-reference adverbs dissociated from the present combine with the past tense but not with the present perfect.)

2.53 Full situation and predicated situation

A very important distinction that we have made is that between the ‘full situation’ and the ‘predicated situation’. When a clause is uttered, the full situation is the complete situation that the speaker implies (or the hearer infers) has actualized, is actualizing or will actualize, however long it turns out to be or to have been. The predicated situation is the part of the full situation which is actually located in time by the tense used. The predicated situation – the linguistically indicated situation – and the full situation – which is often inferred – may coincide with one another, or the predicated situation may be shorter than the full situation. It is the time of the actualization of the predicated situation that we have in mind when we speak of **situation time** in connection with tenses. (For example, when we say that a tense relates a situation time to an orientation time.)

2.54 What is (and is not) expressed by tenses

Here we have discussed absolute and relative tenses, semantically expressed and pragmatically implied temporal relations, and special uses of tenses.

2.54.1 As we have seen, the semantics of a tense are found in the structure of temporal relations that it represents. The tense structure may simply specify a relation between the situation time and t_0. Such tenses are **absolute tenses**. An example is the past tense in *Meg jumped* when this sentence is used in isolation. Other tenses express tense structures which specify the relation of the situation time to an orientation time other than t_0. These are **relative tenses**. An example is the past perfect in *She had just seen the elephant*.

2.54.2 An absolute tense establishes a ‘temporal domain’ (see further below), and relative tenses expand a temporal domain that has already been established. (In fact, as well as pure absolute tenses and relative tenses, English has **absolute-relative tenses**, such as the one used in *By Friday, the elephant will have arrived*. These both establish a temporal domain and express a temporal relation within it.)

2.54.3 Although relative tenses do not relate a situation time directly to t_0, their structure does specify the temporal nature of the temporal domain in which the situation time is located, and the nature of the temporal domain (past or post-present, for example) is determined by the location relative to t_0 of the orientation time that establishes the domain. For example, the tense structure of the past perfect specifies that the situation time is located anterior to an orientation time which is in a domain established by a past orientation time – i. e. a past domain.

2.54.4 As an example of the way a temporal domain is established and expanded, consider the two-sentence text *Meg jumped. She had just seen the elephant*. Here, the past tense form *jumped* establishes a past temporal domain. The tense structure of the past perfect sees to it that *had seen* is interpreted as locating the situation time of the second clause anterior to the situation time of the first clause, and this means that the second clause expands the temporal domain established by *jumped* by relating a new situation time to the one that is already in the domain.

2.54.5 We have stressed that the temporal relations established by tenses (**T-relations**) must be distinguished from those established by inferencing from the linguistic and nonlinguistic context (**W-relations**). For example, in *Meg went to the doctor. She felt ill.*, we have an absolute past tense in each sentence and these tense forms do not express a temporal relation between the two situations. However, our knowledge of the world leads us to infer that Meg went to the doctor because she felt ill and that therefore the situation described in the second sentence began before and continued during the situation described in the first sentence. A third type of temporal relation is that which holds between the time indicated by a temporal adverbial and a situation time. This will be called an **Adv-time relation**. We may also note the temporal relation between the time of the full situation and the time of the predicated situation (the situation time). The former contains the latter either in terms of inclusion or in terms of coincidence. When a situation is nonhomogeneous (bounded), the time of the full situation coincides with the situation time; when the situation is homogeneous (nonbounded), the time of the full situation may coincide with or include the situation time.

2.54.6 A situation time may be T-related to an orientation time in one of three different ways: it may be located simultaneous to, posterior to or anterior to the orientation time. The T-relation of simultaneity is always one of strict coincidence, not overlap or inclusion. When **T-simultaneity** is expressed between the situation times of clauses which refer to situations which are assumed to differ in length, we should remember that it is the time of the predicated situation, not the time of the full situation, that is involved in T-relations. Thus in *Meg said that she felt ill*, we argue that the second past tense is a relative past tense expressing T-simultaneity in a past domain (see below), and that the T-simultaneity holds between the punctual situation time of the complement clause and the punctual situation time of the head clause, even though the implied full situation of *she felt ill* is durative. When a situation is located anterior to an orientation time it may be located at a certain distance before the orientation time or it may lead right up to the orientation time. In the same way, a situation located posterior to an orientation time may be located some time after the orientation time or may start immediately after it.

2.54.7 As we have seen, T-relations are temporal relations expressed by tenses, between the times of predicated situations (i. e. situation times) and orientation times. W-relations are temporal relations, inferred from contextual information, between the times of full situations and orientation times. **W-simultaneity** occurs when any point of one full situation coincides in time with any point of another full situation: strict coincidence of the times of the entire situations is not necessary.

2.55 Special uses of tenses

2.55.1 We have pointed out that some uses of tenses either are or appear to be at odds with the core meaning of the tense. To begin with, there are 'modal' uses of tense. Past tenses (including the past perfect and the conditional tense) can be used to express tentativeness or unreality. The tentativeness may be social, as in *I thought you might like this book*, or it may concern the likelihood of actualization of a situation, as in *If you wanted to, you could write a book*. Both tentativeness and unreality are standardly expressed by past tenses in conditional sentences, as in the counterfactual *If I were President, I would cancel third world debt* and the tentative *It would be a great help if she gave me the recipe*.

2.55.2 The second special use of tenses that we mentioned involves a **shift of temporal perspective**. When the temporal location of a situation is obvious from the context, it is sometimes possible for a speaker to represent the situation as lying in one time-zone whilst *apparently* locating it in another time-zone. In that way, by relying on the hearer to establish the temporal location from the context, the speaker combines correct time reference with the connotations of location in a different time-zone. For example, *The train leaves at eight* represents a post-present situation as if it is already the case, thus emphasizing that the future is in this case seen as already fixed.

2.55.3 An apparently special use of the present tense is found in 'universal' sentences, which refer to a state which holds at all times. Such sentences may cite universal truths or they may refer to permanent characteristics (including habits). For example: *Elephants never forget*. However, these are actually not special uses of the present tense, since characteristics are states and hence homogeneous situations and the present tense thus locates a punctual situation time – which represents the time of a representative punctual section of the full situation – simultaneous with speech-time, in accordance with the meaning of the present tense (viz. 'The situation time is T-simultaneous with the zero-point').

2.56 Types of temporal adverbials

2.56.1 We have distinguished three types of adverbial that give temporal information. **Time-specifying adverbials** (e. g. *at six o'clock*) temporally locate an orientation time (which may be a situation time) by specifying a particular time (an **Adv-time**) which may be punctual or durative and which contains (i. e. coincides with or includes) the orientation time. **Pure duration adverbials** (e. g. *for six hours*) specify the length of time occupied by a full situation, but do not locate it in time. **Bifunctional adverbials** (e. g. *from six to eight*) both temporally locate a situation time and specify the length of the corresponding full situation. Thus in *Meg watched the elephant from six to eight*, the temporal adverbial locates the situation time (the time of the predicated situation) at the time indicated by 'from six to eight' and measures the (time of the) full situation (as taking up two hours). To sum up: time-specifying adverbials locate orientation times (including situation times), pure duration adverbials measure the length of the time of a full situation, and bifunctional adverbials simultaneously locate a situation time and specify the length of the corresponding full situation time. Below we review what has been said about the first two of these types of temporal adverbial.

2.56.2 As we have seen, a time indicated by a **time-specifying adverbial** (= an Adv-time) 'contains' the situation time (or other orientation time) whose temporal location it specifies. The situation time may be shorter than the Adv-time (i. e. it is included in it) or it may be exactly the same length (i. e. it coincides with it). In either case we can speak of **Adv-time-simultaneity.** Adv-time-simultaneity is unlike W-simultaneity in that it is linguistically expressed and it is unlike T-simultaneity in that it is not expressed by a tense and it allows for a relation of proper inclusion as well as one of strict coincidence, though it does not allow for mere overlap. When there is more than one Adv-time in a clause, the relation between the Adv-times is also one of Adv-time-simultaneity – i. e. proper inclusion or coincidence.

2.56.3 When the Adv-time is punctual, the situation time, in order to be included in the Adv-time, must of necessity be punctual. A durative situation can be represented as 'Adv-time-simultaneous' with a punctual Adv-time provided that the situation is homogeneous (= nonbounded). (The situation time is then the time of a punctual portion of the situation which is representative of the whole situation.) The fact that a progressive clause can combine with an adverbial specifying a punctual Adv-time means that a progressive clause represents the predicated situation as a punctual situation which is representative of the longer full situation. When a durative situation is bounded, it is (by definition) nonhomogeneous and therefore the situation time cannot be a punctual portion of the time of the full situation. Rather, the situation time has the same duration as the time of the full situation. This means that a durative bounded situation cannot be located at a punctual time (such as t_0 or *at five o'clock*). However, a durative bounded situation may be referred to in a clause containing a punctual adverb as long as the description of the situation can be interpreted as inchoative or terminative. (For example, *The elephant will have a bath at four* locates the beginning of the bathing, not the entire situation, at four o'clock.)

2.56.4 In a given context, a time-specifying or bifunctional adverbial may contain (i. e. by inclusion or coincidence) a situation time, an orientation time other than a situation time, or several orientation times (usually situation times). We refer, respectively, to **situation-time adverbials**, **orientation-time adverbials** and **multiple-orientation-time adverbials**.

2.56.5 As we have seen, a **pure duration adverbial** measures the time of the full situation. In *Meg said that the elephant was bathing for two hours*, the predicated situation expressed by *the elephant was bathing for two hours* must be punctual because it is T-simultaneous with the (more or less) punctual situation time indicated by *said*. However, the full, i. e. the implied, situation is measured as lasting for two hours. Usually the time of the full situation is longer than the time of the predicated situation and so the duration adverbial *only* measures the time of the full situation, but in some cases, notably when the situation is explicitly bounded, the situation time coincides with the time of the full situation. In those cases, of course, the adverbial time indirectly also measures the predicated situation.

2.57 The conceptualization of time that tenses encode

2.57.1 We have discussed the way in which tenses in English appear to encode a specific way of dividing up time. First, English tenses reflect a division of time into past and nonpast. The main evidence for this is that all tenses carry either a past or a nonpast tense morpheme. There is no future tense morpheme. We represent this division of time as involving two time-spheres: a **past time-sphere** and a **present time-sphere**. The past time-sphere lies wholly before t_0, while the present time-sphere includes t_0 and extends on either side of it for an indefinite amount of time. The past tense, the past perfect, the conditional tense, and the conditional perfect typically locate situations in the past time-sphere. The present tense, the present perfect, the future tense and the future perfect typically locate situations in the present time-sphere.

2.57.2 Second, the two time-spheres contain **zones** (or 'time-zones'). The present time-sphere is conceived of as containing the 'present zone', which coincides with t_0, the 'pre-present zone', which leads up to t_0, and the 'post-present zone', which begins immediately after t_0. The past time-sphere is conceived of consisting of a single zone (the 'past time-zone'). To locate a situation in one of these four **absolute zones** we use the present tense, the present perfect, the future tense (or a futurish form) and the past tense, respectively – i. e. the four absolute tenses. Situation times that precede t_0 can in principle be located either in the pre-present zone or in the past time-sphere: the choice depends on whether the speaker's **temporal focus** is on the present or on the past.

2.57.3 The present zone coincides with t_0 and is thus punctual. However, the length of the other zones is purely a matter of how they are conceptualized on a given occasion. (Compare *The elephant has just arrived* with *The Asian elephant has been worshipped for centuries*). The length of the interval between a 'bygone' situation and t_0 does not determine whether the situation is located in a past time-zone or in a pre-present time-zone. (Compare *The elephant has just arrived* and *The elephant arrived just a moment ago*).

2.58 Establishing and expanding temporal domains

2.58.1 A temporal domain consists of a set of various orientation times (situation times or not) which are temporally related to one another. (When the domain consists of just one orientation time, we speak of an **unexpanded domain**). Only the orientation time which establishes the domain is directly related to t_0. The use of an absolute tense always establishes a temporal domain. A relative tense, by definition, requires the presence of some other orientation time in order to locate the time of the situation expressed by the relative-tense clause. To express this relationship, we speak of **temporal binding** or **temporal subordination**: the situation time of the relative-tense clause is temporally bound by the orientation time from which it takes its temporal location.

2.58.2 The situation time which establishes a temporal domain is the **central orientation time** of the domain. When a temporal domain is expanded, each situation time that is introduced into the domain (if any) is itself the central orientation time of a domain-within-a-domain, which we call a **temporal subdomain**, even if that domain is not expanded. Thus in *Meg said she bought a bike* the situation time indicated by *bought* is the central orientation time of an unexpanded subdomain, whilst in *Meg said she bought a bike that didn't have any brakes*, the situation time indicated by *bought* is the central orientation time of a subdomain which is expanded: the situation time of the relative clause, indicated by *didn't have*, is T-simultaneous with the situation time of *she bought a bike*.

2.58.3 As explained at greater length in chapter 8, we argue that in English, in addition to the absolute past tense, there exists a homonymous **relative past tense** whose semantics is 'T-simultaneity with (= coincidence with) an orientation time in a past domain'. This means that the set of relative tenses for the past time-sphere consists of the relative past tense, the past perfect, the conditional tense and the 'complex relative' tenses such as the conditional perfect. There are no forms specific to relative tenses in the present time-sphere. It is not possible to expand a present temporal domain and the expression of temporal relations in both the pre-present zone and the post-present zone depends on re-using forms whose core meaning is something other than the expression of a temporal relation in a present time-sphere domain.

Directly related to this, we find that in a past zone, tenses function in exactly the same way in temporal subdomains as in the temporal domains which they expand – i. e. the rules for relating situation times with past time-sphere tenses are recursive. The same does not go for the two present time-sphere zones that can be expanded, but we nevertheless find that specific sets of tenses for expressing the set of temporal relations in a domain are re-used in other zones, so that the total number of tenses required to express temporal relations in all the temporal zones is very small.

3. The absolute use of the present tense

I. The basic meaning and use of the absolute present tense 173
3.1 The present tense establishing a present domain 173

II. The present tense as part of the ‘Special Present Time-sphere System’ 176
3.2 Definition 176
3.3 The historic present 176
3.4 The present tense expressing combined past and present time reference 178
3.5 The present tense as unmarked tense 179
3.6 Pre-present situations represented as if present 180
3.7 The nonprogressive present in *wh*-questions expressing a suggestion 181
3.8 The nonprogressive present referring to a pre-determined post-present situation 181
3.9 The progressive present referring to an arranged future situation 183
3.10 Constraints on the use of the present tense with post-present time reference 184
3.11 The present tense substituting for a ‘continuative perfect’ 188

III. Summary 190

Abstract

While chapters 1 and 2 provided the conceptual foundations for a theory of the tense system in English, the present chapter, addressing the present tense, is the first in a series of chapters that use this theory to describe in detail how tenses are used in English discourse.

In part I we describe the most basic use of the present tense, which is to establish a present domain, as in *I wish you a merry Christmas* or *I am working*.

In part II (3.2–3.11) we discuss some special uses of the present tense. Many of these involve a 'shift of temporal perspective'. Such a shift is clear in the case of the 'historic present', where a past situation is represented as if it were happening at the time of speech. We also address several other cases, particularly those in which present tense forms are used for situations which are to be interpreted as actualizing in the future, e. g. *The sun sets at 9.36 tomorrow* or *I'm staying at the Gardners' next week*.

Part III provides a summary of the chapter.

I. The basic meaning and use of the absolute present tense

3.1 The present tense establishing a present domain

The meaning of the absolute present tense is that the situation time (i. e. the time of the predicated situation) coincides with t_0. Since t_0 is a point, the situation time is a point. If the full situation is punctual, the situation time coincides with the time of the full situation and the full situation is located at t_0. If the full situation is durative and heterogeneous, we cannot locate the situation time at t_0. If the full situation is durative and homogeneous, then the situation time can be a punctual subinterval of the time of the full situation and that punctual subinterval can be located at t_0. *I live here* locates a punctual subinterval of the full situation of 'living here' at t_0. Similarly, we can say *I'm making a wheelchair at the moment* or *I use a wheelchair* (both referring to homogeneous situations) but not **I make a wheelchair at the moment* (because the reference is to a heterogeneous situation).

3.1.1 In its basic use, the absolute present tense establishes a present 'temporal domain' (see 2.15.4) by locating its situation time as coinciding with t_0, which (at least in English) is by convention conceived of as punctual (i. e. lasting no longer than a moment) – see section 2.4. (The zero-time thus resembles a punctual Adv-time in that the situation time coincides with it. However, a punctual Adv-time differs from t_0 in that it needs to be specified by a time adverbial whereas t_0 does not because it is 'given' whenever we speak.) Since the situation time coincides with t_0 and t_0 is punctual, the situation time must be punctual too. This means that the relation between the situation time and the time of (actualization of) the full situation must be of one of the following two types.

(a) One possibility is that the full situation is punctual (and therefore has to be represented as punctual). In that case the situation time coincides with the time of the full situation and is therefore punctual too.

[Now watch closely.] I *hit* the nail once with a hammer.

Such an inherently punctual situation cannot be represented as in progress. If the progressive form is used (which represents the situation as durative), the interpretation is an iterative one: *I am hitting the nail (*once) with a hammer.* (The progressive form *am hitting* is also possible in special contexts, e. g. when the speaker is commenting on slow motion pictures, or when the virtually punctual situation is ‘frozen’ in its middle, as in *In this photograph I’m hitting a nail with a hammer*.)

Sometimes a full situation which has a certain (restricted) duration in the actual world is represented as if it were punctual. This is the case, for example, in nonprogressive present tense sentences expressing a PERFORMATIVE SPEECH ACT:

> I wish you a merry Christmas. *(This is a ‘performative sentence’, i. e. it is by uttering this sentence that the speaker performs the speech act of wishing the hearer a merry Christmas.)*
>
> I *pronounce* you man and wife.
>
> I *declare* the meeting closed.
>
> [You can start looking for another vocalist for the band.] I *quit*.

In these examples the full situation (and hence the situation time) is represented as if it were punctual. (This does not mean that all these situations are inherently punctual, i. e. that they cannot be represented as durative. This is clear from the fact that their progressive counterparts yield an ‘in progress’ reading rather than an iterative interpretation:

> I *am pronouncing* you man and wife. *(= ‘I am in the process of pronouncing you man and wife’.)*

Needless to say, such a progressive sentence is not interpreted as performative.)

(b) The second possibility for the situation time to coincide with t_0 is when the situation time is conceived of as constituting a proper subpart of the time of the full situation. This possibility requires that the predicated situation (see 2.12.1) is representative of the durative full situation, in other words that the clause referring to the full situation is homogeneous. As noted in 1.36, a sentence is homogeneous if it can be used to describe not only the situation as a whole but also relevant portions of it.

> I am working. *(homogeneous: if I am working for a certain time, then I am working is a suitable description of any part of the situation that coincides with a t_0.)*
>
> My wife is in the shop. *(similar)*
>
> She is a clever woman. *(similar)*
>
> Right now I {am reading / *read} a book. *(Unlike the progressive form, the nonprogressive form represents the telic situation as bounded and hence as nonhomogeneous – see section 1.45. Since the nonprogressive sentence describing the durative full situation is not homogeneous, the situation time cannot be punctual. This renders the sentence ungrammatical because only punctual situation times can coincide with t_0.)*

In sum, when we say *John is in the kitchen*, strictly speaking, we only predicate something about a point in time. However, the W-interpretation in terms of a situation that lasts for a longer time is very 'real' and is no doubt the one that most people would indicate when asked to indicate what (temporal) information is conveyed by such a sentence. This shows that there is a considerable input of pragmatics even when we process the temporal information of very 'basic' sentences – something we have already pointed out in 2.18.

3.1.2 Since an absolute present tense form expresses no more than that the situation time coincides with t_0, and since the situation time may be either the time of the full situation (if the situation is punctual) or a punctual subinterval of the full situation (if the situation is conceived of as homogeneous), the present tense does not say anything about the length of the (actualization of the) full situation in the real world. It can therefore be used irrespective of whether the full situation is viewed as punctual or durative.

> Here comes the winner! *(The situation time is punctual while the full situation has a certain (limited) duration. The sentence is therefore treated as homogeneous.)*
>
> It's drizzling. *(The full situation is durative and represented as homogeneous; the situation time is punctual because it coincides with t_0.)*
>
> He works as a history teacher at the local boys' school. *(The full situation is a permanent habit.)*
>
> Our teacher speaks Swedish fluently. *(The full situation is a permanent ability, which is a kind of characteristic state.)*
>
> I like every kind of perfume. *(The full situation is a permanent characteristic.)*

The full situation is interpreted as having maximal duration in 'universal sentences' (expressing an eternal truth – see 2.21):

> The sun sets in the west.
>
> Ice melts at zero degrees Centigrade.
>
> Paris lies on the Seine.

II. The present tense as part of the ‘Special Present Time-sphere System’

In English it is possible – in well-defined contexts – to use the set of present time-sphere tenses to refer to situations that are understood to actualize in the past, the pre-present or the post-present.

3.2 Definition

We will use the term ‘SPECIAL PRESENT TIME-SPHERE SYSTEM’ to refer to a systematic use of present-time-sphere tenses which is special in that the present tense is used, not because the situation referred to actualizes (or is actualizing) at t_0, but for another reason. (We speak of ‘system’ because the other present time-sphere tenses – present perfect and future tense – are involved as well – see 3.3.2.) In the various usages of the Special Present Time-sphere System, the choice of the present tense represents a ‘shift of temporal perspective’ (see 2.20) or is motivated by the fact that the present tense is the unmarked tense in the English tense system, i. e. the tense with the simplest semantics and forms. In the following sections we examine the most typical uses of the present tense in the Special Present Time-sphere System.

3.3 The historic present

The historic present locates the situation time of a past situation in the present for dramatic effect. The hearer knows that the situation is in the past although it is represented as if it were present.

3.3.1 In the HISTORIC PRESENT, a past situation is represented as if it were a present situation. This use is therefore an example of a ‘shift of temporal perspective’ (see 2.20). The historic present is generally assumed to be a means of describing a past situation vividly, as if it were actualizing in the speaker’s and hearer’s here-and-now.

> So yesterday we’*re* all sitting on the couch in the living room when Dexter *walks* in through the door holding a still live bird in his mouth. And he then *proceeds* to toss it around and kill it in front of us. […] That cat is insane. (www)
>
> Suddenly a man in uniform *takes* me by the arm and *asks* me what I’*m doing* there.

> So this drink *turns up* at the counter in a plastic cup. It'*s* murky and *looks* horrible as [if] it'*s got* some kind of mocha colored whipped cream on top that'*s* all flat and falling into the drink. (www)

We frequently find such sentences in the historic present intermixed with past tense sentences and combining with adverbials indicating a past Adv-time. Such co-occurrence is not surprising because the felicitous use of the historic present depends, of course, on its being clear that the time reference of the present tense is past.

> Suddenly the door swings open and a man rushes into the room. He snatches Maud's handbag from her hand and disappears through the French windows. We *were* so flabbergasted that he *was gone* before any one of us *reacted*.
>
> Last week I'm watching 'Newsnight' on television when suddenly there's a terrific explosion. You'll never believe this, but my whole TV-set *was gone*; it *had*, as they say, '*imploded*'.
>
> So *last week* I'm with a client, discussing the finer points of navigating a new release of their flagship web application. We *had come* to easy consensus on virtually every aspect of the design save one, and the group around the table *was* pretty evenly divided on just how the function should be implemented on the page. (www)
>
> So *yesterday*, we're just driving home and we see the Brazil Nut so we stop and chat. She *was* pleased to see us, well Tallboy in particular, because she *needed* someone who was au fait with things electric. The lawnmower *wasn't working* properly, the handles should come up as soon as it switches on and is pulled backwards. Tallboy isn't one to refuse a mending challenge, so once the shopping has been unloaded and put away, we wander over. (www)

As is clear from these examples, the sentences in the past tense usually belong to the 'background', not to the 'foreground' (= the 'backbone' of the story). That is, they do not normally belong to the narrative clauses that move the story forwards.

3.3.2 The historic present is actually only one tense in a special system, in which T-anteriority is expressed by the present perfect and T-posteriority by the future tense (or by a futurish form – see 2.9).

> Do you know what John *did* to me the other day? Well, just as I *was leaving* for the office, he comes in and tells me I've won on the pools and some big chap is going to come and pay me over a million pounds. I nearly *fainted* on the spot. And two minutes later he tells me it's all a hoax and I haven't won anything at all.
>
> Well before going into the clothes I *got* this bright idea, I will go to the magazines and get a hair style magazine first. So I *did*. Well I *was looking* at clothes, I *sat* the magazine down on the rack. Totally forgetting about it. Well I *got* disgusted about the clothing selection and just *decided* to leave. As I *was walking out* I *reached* in my pockets to get my keys, so I *was* kind of standing just outside the doors. This gentleman (if you want to call him that) approaches me, and says 'Did you enjoy

> the magazines, miss?’ Baffled by his question, I turn to him and say ‘Excuse me?’ He grabs my shirt and starts searching me, and tells me the cops are on the way. I am very mad at this point I swear a lot, jerk away and I leave crying. […] I go home and decide that I am going to call Wal-Mart. So I call and demand to speak to a manager. (www)

However, the fact (referred to in 3.3.1) that speakers sometimes alternate between present zone tenses and past zone tenses has the (very interesting) effect that anteriority to a situation referred to by a clause with a historic present tense form can be expressed by means of a past perfect form, and that posteriority can be expressed by means of a conditional tense form:

> So, Bob Dylan *had* just *finished* singing with The Byrds which was the back of the Mr. Tambourine album – whatever that thing was called – and this girl and I are talking and here comes Bob Dylan. So I figure I owe him a favour because he’***d fed*** us, y’know, so I *said* to the girl, ‘Look over there! Isn’t that where he is? – he’s going over there’. […] So she goes away with her baby and … (www)
>
> Then he wanders away from the microphone and the other people on stage *started* hugging and kissing him. So there I am, on stage, packed hall, TV cameras in my face, singing with the band. I *was thinking* to myself “where the fuck is he, HELP!”. But no, he *wasn’t coming* back to the mic, so I continue singing hoping that I ***wouldn’t forget*** the words to a song I ***hadn’t heard*** for years. I then *went* over to the guitarist and *got* him to sing a few lines with me, and of course by then I *was* really *getting* into it and *took* control of the stage. (www)

3.3.3 The use of the historic present is conventionalized in synopses of novels or plays, in historical summaries, tables of date, references to publications, etc.

> That night Cinderella *goes* to the ball in the clothes the fairy has given her.
>
> It is then that David Copperfield *decides* to run away from his horrible stepfather.
>
> The Book of Exodus *relates* how the Israelites *leave* Egypt, pursued by the Pharaoh, and *wander* through the desert for many years.
>
> May 1940 – Hitler *invades* Belgium and the Netherlands.
>
> February 1944 – Belgium *is* still an occupied country.
>
> In his review of my book, C.N. Smith *writes* that he fails to see the relevance of …

3.4 The present tense expressing combined past and present time reference

When a past situation is reproduced (visually or orally) at the zero-time, formulaic usage may use the present tense to refer to the reproduction rather than to the original situation, while simultaneous reference to the past situation nevertheless takes place via the reference to the reproduction.

3.4.1 There are some cases in which the speaker can use the present tense to refer to a past situation because this situation is somehow made visible in the present. Captions underneath a photograph or painting representing a historical situation form a typical example:

> *(caption underneath a photograph showing President Carter in Ireland)* President Carter *meets* the Irish Prime Minister in Dublin.
>
> *(caption)* The Queen visits Saint Mary's college in 1991.

This use of the present tense need not be analysed as a 'shift of temporal perspective' from the past to the present because the situation described is in a certain sense present in the reader's here-and-now. (Remember that t_0 may sometimes be the time of decoding the message rather than the time of coding it – see 2.11.1.)

3.4.2 As another illustration, we can refer to cases where a TV sports commentator is commenting on a replay of some event. Here too, the speaker may shift between past time reference and present time reference, but the use of the present is different from the 'classic' case of story-telling: the commentator may revert to the present tense because he or she is referring to a scene effectively actualizing at the present moment even if both commentator and viewers know it 'really' occurred some seconds or minutes ago. The commentator's shift from a past to a present frame of reference in 'REPLAY COMMENT' (= comment on a replay) does not involve the representation of some past situation *as if* it were present. Instead, television creates a set of conditions where the situation 'really obtains' both in the past and in the present, and where the shifts back and forth from a past to a present frame of reference are therefore warranted by the double location of the situation on the 'real' time line.

3.5 The present tense as unmarked tense

In a few very clearly defined contexts, the present tense may be used when it is not important to give explicit information about the temporal location of a situation.

In some cases the choice of the present tense is motivated by the fact that the present tense is the unmarked tense in the English tense system, i. e. the tense with the simplest semantics and forms. A typical example of such a use of the present tense as unmarked tense is to be found in a standard joke style:

> Two atoms *are sitting* next to each other and chatting, and the first atom *says* "You know, I lost an electron yesterday." "Are you sure?" *asks* its friend. The first atom *smiles*. "Yes," it *says*. "I'm positive." (www)

Newspaper headlines provide another illustration:

> *(Brighton)* Man *bites* leopard. Both now in hospital.
>
> Two gangsters *escape* from the Old Bailey.
>
> Typhoon *ravages* East Malaysia.

It is typical of headlines that a simplified language is used: marked forms are generally replaced by unmarked ones. The omission of articles (marking definite or indefinite reference) and of the linking verb *be* forms part of this process, and so does the use of the present tense when the reference is really to a past situation.

3.6 Pre-present situations represented as if present

When news has recently been received, the source of the news (e. g. the telling or the hearing) can be referred to using a verb in the nonprogressive present tense.

The nonprogressive present tense can be used to refer to a pre-present speech act that is still relevant at t_0. This shift of temporal perspective is only possible with verbs of communication, i. e. verbs referring to the encoding, the reception, or the mental decoding of the message.

> I *hear* you're going to buy a new car.
>
> Gayle O'Connor, our division's immediate past chair, *writes* that she will be presenting two programs to the Legal Services Corporation-Access to Justice Foundation. (www)
>
> I *learn* from your letter that you are not happy with your position.
>
> They *tell* me you've just been to Greece.
>
> I *am informed* that your contribution is long overdue.
>
> I *see* there's been another earthquake in Turkey.
>
> I {*gather* / *understand*} he left the firm rather suddenly.

This use of the present tense is conventionalized to the point that in most of the examples above, a present perfect would sound decidedly odd, if not quite bizarre. In some cases the present tense has simply become standard. For example *They have told me* … is hardly acceptable if *they* does not have identifiable referents, because in that case *They tell me* … is formulaic.

The present tense has the following common uses to refer to the post present:

(1) The nonprogressive present may be used in a *wh*-question to suggest an action or ask advice about a future action (*What on earth do we do now?*) – see 3.7.
(2) The nonprogressive present may be used to refer to a post present situation which is predetermined (*The funeral is on Friday*) – see 3.8.
(3) The progressive present may be used to represent a situation as resulting from a present plan or arrangement (*I'm having dinner with them tonight*) – see 3.9.

3.7 The nonprogressive present in *wh*-questions expressing a suggestion

Some *wh*-questions using a nonprogressive present tense form either make or ask for a suggestion concerning a post-present course of action. (The reference may be to the near or more distant future.)

> Why don't we go home? *(negative rhetorical question expressing a positive suggestion)*
>
> Why don't you have a little nap, [and you'll feel better]? *(id.)*
>
> Who do I ask for [when I get there?] *(positive question asking for a suggestion)*
>
> What do we do [if this turns out to be true]? *(id.)*

3.8 The nonprogressive present referring to a pre-determined post-present situation

3.8.1 Situations that are expected to actualize in the post-present (future) are sometimes referred to in the present tense. In that case the choice of tense represents a shift of temporal perspective: a situation time which is to be interpreted as a post-present situation time is represented as if it were a present one. This shift of perspective has semantic import, which is slightly different according to whether the present tense form is nonprogressive or progressive. In this section we will deal with the former possibility.

What we will call the NONPROGRESSIVE PRESENT (= the nonprogressive version of a present tense form) is used when the post-present situation is felt to be completely determined by circumstances that already exist at t_0. The nonprogressive present therefore represents the future situation as absolutely certain to actualize, i. e. as inevitable. It implies that the speaker feels that he has no control over the actualization of the post-present situation.

> The sun *sets* at 9.36 tomorrow.
>
> The plane *leaves* from Heathrow.
>
> Do that and you *lose* your pocket money! *(By representing the post-present situation as if it were a present one, the speaker makes the threat more forceful than he would do if he used the future tense, which would merely express a prediction.)*

However, a nonprogressive present tense form cannot be used if the post-present situation is of a kind that is not felt to be completely pre-determined.

> *It snows tomorrow. *(The weather is not felt to be pre-determined.)*
>
> *John falls down the stairs next week. *(Unacceptable unless there is a present plan to make John fall down the stairs next week which is felt to be a plan that cannot fail.)*

3.8.2 The following are some typical cases in which a nonprogressive present form is used to refer to a post-present situation which is felt to be pre-determined and certain:

(a) The nonprogressive present is used in statements about the calendar.

> Next year Whit Sunday *falls* on 11 May.
>
> [Above shows the first lunar month for 2004.] Chinese New Year *falls* on January 22, 2004. (www)
>
> Tuesday of next week *is* 21st August.

(b) The nonprogressive present is used to express that a post-present situation is the result of a definite plan, agreement or arrangement which already exists at t_0 and which is regarded as unalterable.

> [We have reached an agreement with the landlord.] He *moves out* in at the beginning of the week and we *move in* during the weekend.
>
> The wedding *is* on Saturday May 24th at 11:30 am, [so we suggest out of town guests arrive on Friday night and sleep in.] (www)
>
> Most of the academic people that have attended the conference *leave* tonight.
>
> The chairman *retires* at the end of the year.
>
> What *do* we do after the performance? *(said e. g. by a theatre usher inquiring about their duties)*

The use of the nonprogressive present in timetable announcements (where the subject is mostly inanimate) can be treated as belonging here:

Today flight 106 *takes off* at 11.45 p.m.

[During the summer 2003 the gallery will host an exhibition of pen and ink drawings by New York artist Elisabeth Condon.] The show *opens* on Friday, June 20th at 6:30 p.m. [The artist will give a slide show and lecture at 7:30 p.m.] (www)

Compare:

[Reminder to people planning on going to the FFA basketball tournament:] the bus *leaves* at 1:30 tomorrow. (www) *(This is a simple statement of fact: the post-present situation is seen as unalterable, inevitable, because absolutely predetermined.)*

The bus *will leave* at 1:30 tomorrow. *(This is merely a prediction: the speaker just says what he believes will happen.)*

(c) The nonprogressive present is used if the post-present actualization of the situation is felt to be certain because it results from a habitual or regular pattern that already exists at t_0.

The *delivery* van *calls* again tomorrow. *(The use of the nonprogressive present tense is fine, e. g. if the van always comes on the same day every week and 'tomorrow' is such a day.)*

Dinner *is* served at seven. [See that you're on time.] *(This can be said by someone who has not received specific information about the time of dinner today but knows that it is standard routine that dinner is served at seven every day.)*

[There is no need to hurry.] The gates of the park only *open* in about fifty minutes. *(The speaker can say this confidently if the gates always open at the same time.)*

Where *do* I find John? *(This can be uttered by a speaker who wants to find John and who indirectly asks for help – 'Where will I find John?' – by asking a question meaning 'Where does one find John whenever one wants him?' or 'Where does one find John {on a day like this / at this time of the day / etc.}?')*

In most of these examples the reference is to a regular pattern which results from a timetable repeating itself. The same is true of the following:

The bus *leaves* at 4 (which is in half an hour) – it always does.

Class 4b *has* geography in room 341 on Wednesdays. *(refers to a number of timetabled situations rather than to a specific event)*

3.9 The progressive present referring to an arranged future situation

When a post-present situation is referred to by the PROGRESSIVE PRESENT (i. e. the progressive form of the present tense), it is represented as resulting from a present plan or arrangement.

I'*m staying* at the Gardners' next week.

Next they'*re playing* a cello sonata by Bach.

We'*re working* late tomorrow evening.

He'*s going* to Iraq next week.

This use of the progressive differs from the 'arranged future' use of the nonprogressive present (referred to in 3.8.2) in that it implies that the referent of the subject NP has control over (the actualization of) the situation. This means that the progressive present implies less certainty than the nonprogressive present: it refers to a present plan which may possibly still be altered, while the nonprogressive present denotes a plan or arrangement that is regarded as unalterable. It also means that the progressive present suggests that it is the referent of the subject NP who is responsible for the plan or arrangement, whereas the nonprogressive present suggests that it is somebody else or circumstances.

I'*m visiting* them tonight. *(= my personal planning)*

I *visit* them tonight. *(= It has been arranged (by some authority) for me to visit them tonight.)*

Margaret *is dining* out tonight.

?Margaret *dines* out tonight. *(This sentence sounds strange in isolation because it suggests that someone else has decided that Margaret should dine out tonight.)*

Margaret *dines* out with the French ambassador tonight. *(This is more readily contextualizable, because the engagement can more easily be seen as somehow having been made for Margaret, if not literally by another person then by the circumstances of, say, her position as foreign secretary.)*

3.10 Constraints on the use of the present tense with post-present time reference

There are four constraints on the use of the present tense with post-present time reference. Informally, these are:

(1) It must be clear from the context that the reference is to the future and not the present.

(2) The nonprogressive present cannot be used for post-present situations that are not predetermined (**It rains tomorrow*).

(3) The progressive present can only refer to post-present situations that are intentional and have a human agent (*The dog's going to the vet tomorrow* means 'I'm taking the dog to the vet tomorrow').

(4) There may be constraints on the interpretation of a present tense form referring to the future when that form is used in combination with an epistemic modal adverb

like *perhaps, possibly, probably*, etc. In such cases it may be unclear whether the judgement implicit in the adverb is attributable to the subject referent or to the speaker.

3.10.1 CONSTRAINT 1: Since the basic meaning of the present tense is location of a situation time at t_0, its use with post-present reference is only acceptable if it is clear from a time adverbial, from the context or from pragmatic knowledge that the situation referred to should be interpreted as lying in the post-present. Compare:

> We go to the local pub. *(The only interpretation out of context is in terms of a present habit.)*
>
> Tomorrow we go to the local pub. *(Post-present reference is imposed by tomorrow.)*
>
> John is travelling to Greece. *(can be interpreted as referring to the present or as forming part of a present arrangement concerning the future)*
>
> John is travelling to Greece next month. *(post-present reference only)*
>
> We're having roast beef for lunch. *(Unless uttered during lunch, this sentence can only refer to the post-present. In that case the post-present reference is pragmatically clear, since the hearer can see that the speaker is not actually having lunch.)*

When the progressive present is used with post-present reference and the post-present time of actualization is not specified by a temporal adverbial or by the context, the reference is normally to the near future.

> *(said while Mr Snowdon is getting up in the morning)* Mr Snowdon is leaving for New York. *(suggests 'today')*
>
> *(said during the tea break)* I'm taking Cheryl out to the cinema. *(suggests 'today', or 'within the next week or so', not 'in two years' time')*
>
> Is anyone coming to dinner?

This 'near future' interpretation follows from the Gricean Maxim of Relation (relevance): in general, the present (= the speaker's here-and-now) is more relevant to the speaker than the past, pre-present or post-present. It follows that the recent past and the near future are also felt to be more relevant than the remote past or distant future. So, if there is no explicit indication of a distant future time, a present tense form referring to the post-present will be interpreted as referring to the immediate or near future rather than to a more distant time.

3.10.2 CONSTRAINT 2: The use of the nonprogressive present to refer to a post-present situation is only possible with reference to a situation that can be represented as completely pre-determined by some (often unnamed) authority or (often unspecified) circumstances. It is especially common with verbs of directional or inchoative movement.

The plane takes off in fifteen minutes.

The delegation {leaves for / arrives in} Paris tonight.

The state verb *be* also allows this use if there is pre-determination:

We're in Vienna tonight. *(pre-determined by arrangement or scheduling)*

I am {busy / engaged / at the office} all day tomorrow. *(idem)*

Our daughter is here next week. *(idem)*

Our daughter is eighteen next week. *(not scheduled, but still pre-determined because it means 'Our daughter turns eighteen next week'.)*

*I'm in good spirits all day tomorrow. *(not pre-determinable, for pragmatic reasons)*

*The boy is as tall as his father in a few years' time. *(The speaker may be convinced of this, but the sentence remains a prediction. The situation is not pre-determined.)*

Other state verbs are not normally used this way because what they refer to cannot easily be seen as pre-determined:

I {will know / *know} the answer tomorrow.

[You should buy it now.] Tomorrow it {will cost / *costs} a fifth more.

We {will have / *have} fresh bread this afternoon. [The delivery van comes around midday.]

However, there may be contexts in which states referred to by verbs other than *be* can be treated as pre-determined. In those cases the nonprogressive present tense can be used. For example, if you look at the table of 'prices over months' in a travel brochure, and see that in May a particular holiday apartment costs € 400 and in June it costs € 600, you can easily say *Next month it costs 50 % more.*

3.10.3 CONSTRAINT 3: Because of its 'personal arrangement' meaning, the use of a progressive present with post-present time reference is restricted to sentences expressing an intentional situation performed by an agent (i. e. sentences describing an action or a process under the control of an agent).

I think he {is leaving / *is coughing / *is sneezing / is going to cough / is going to sneeze} in a minute.

The bomb {will explode / *is exploding / is going to explode} any minute now.

These miners are going down at ten.

*The sun is going down at ten.

He {is opening a new shop / *is dying in an accident} next week.

*It's raining tomorrow morning.

The (normally human) agent need not always be the subject of the sentence. Sometimes it is implicit.

> [We have a lot of fun events coming up.] First of all, Fall Recruitment *is starting* soon. [We are hoping to add many new faces to the sorority.] (www) *(This is roughly equivalent to: 'We are starting Fall Recruitment soon'.)*
>
> Concert and Chamber Choirs, be reminded that rehearsals *are beginning* this Saturday for you all. (www)

3.10.4 CONSTRAINT 4: Because of the special meaning of a present tense with post-present time reference, there may be constraints on the interpretation of such a present tense form in combination with adverbs like *perhaps, possibly, maybe, probably*, etc. Such epistemic modal adverbs express the degree to which the speaker is sure of the truth of what he is saying. However, these adverbs have a certain scope, and it is not always clear what is in that scope and what is not. This may lead to ambiguity (or at least vagueness) between various interpretations. A sentence like *Jim's probably leaving tomorrow* can be interpreted in four ways:

(a) One reading of *Jim's probably leaving tomorrow* is 'I am not sure Jim {intends / has arranged} to leave tomorrow, but he probably {does / has}.' *(= 'Jim probably has the intention of leaving tomorrow'. Probably here expresses the speaker's lack of certainty concerning the existence of an arrangement or intention on Jim's part.)*

(b) Another interpretation of *Jim's probably leaving tomorrow* is 'Jim hasn't fully decided whether he will leave tomorrow, but he says he will probably decide to do so.' *(= 'Jim has half-arranged, or half-intends, to leave tomorrow, but nothing is definitive yet. However, he is likely to confirm the arrangement or intention.' Probably here expresses Jim's lack of certainty as to whether he really intends to leave tomorrow.)*

(c) A third reading of *Jim's probably leaving tomorrow* is 'Jim {intends / has arranged} to leave tomorrow, and I think he probably will.' *(There is no doubt that there is a present intention or arrangement on Jim's part, but fulfilment is uncertain. Probably expresses the speaker's expectation that Jim will carry out the intention or arrangement.)*

(d) Finally, *Jim's probably leaving tomorrow* can also mean 'Jim {intends / has arranged} to leave tomorrow, and he says he probably will.' *(There is no doubt that there is a present intention or arrangement on Jim's part, but fulfilment is uncertain. Probably expresses Jim's expectation to carry out the intention or arrangement.)*

In (a) and (c), *probably* expresses the speaker's assessment of likelihood, while in (b) and (d) it expresses the subject referent's assessment. In (a) and (b), the likelihood concerns the existence of a present 'pre-determining factor' (in this case: intention or arrangement); in (c) and (d) it concerns the post-present actualization of the pre-determined situation. However, not all four interpretations (a)–(d) are always available:

> Perhaps the train leaves at five. *(The only possible reading is (a), i.e. 'It is possible that the train is scheduled to leave at five'. Reading (c) – 'The train is scheduled to leave at five and I think it will perhaps do so.' – is not available because perhaps has scope over the entire sentence (including the verb expressing the scheduling). The other two readings do not arise because the referent of the subject is nonhuman: a train cannot have the intention or expectation to do something.)*
>
> Maybe he's leaving tomorrow. *(Maybe has wide scope. This rules out readings (c) and (d). Reading (a) – 'It is possible that he has arranged to leave tomorrow' – is quite plausible, whereas reading (b) – 'He has half-arranged, or half-intends, to leave tomorrow, but nothing is definitive yet' – is not normally expressed this way. (It can be expressed by He's maybe leaving tomorrow, but many people consider this on the periphery of grammatical acceptability.))*
>
> ?He's perhaps leaving tomorrow. *(For those who find this sentence acceptable, it allows reading (a) – 'I think it is possible that he has arranged to leave tomorrow' – as well as reading (b) – 'He says that perhaps he's leaving tomorrow', i.e. 'He has it half in mind to leave tomorrow'. Readings (c) and (d) – 'He has arranged to leave tomorrow and {I think / he thinks} it is possible that he will actually do so' – are not readily available out of context, but are presumably possible in a suitable context.)*
>
> I'm probably leaving tomorrow. *(It is difficult to find a context in which reading (a) – 'I am not sure I {intend / have arranged} to leave tomorrow, but I probably {do / have}' – makes sense, for the speaker knows better than anyone else whether or not he has arranged something. Out of context, the only plausible readings are therefore (b) – 'I haven't fully decided yet' – and (c) – 'I have decided, but I'm not sure about the actualization'. Reading (d) here coincides with (c) because the referent of the subject is also the speaker.)*

3.11 The present tense substituting for a 'continuative perfect'

The head clause of a *since*-adverbial referring to a 'period up to t_0' is usually in the present perfect. But occasional examples can be found in which the the present tense is used. In that case there is special focus on the present continuation of the situation that leads up to now.

As we will see in 12.11, a *since*-adverbial referring to a 'period up to t_0' normally combines with a present perfect in the head clause. This present perfect often yields a 'continuative' interpretation, i. e. the reading that the full situation is still continuing at t_0. This is the case, for example, in sentences like *He has been sleeping since he's been here* or *I have been afraid ever since I came to live here*. However, it will be noted in 12.11.5, that the present tense can sometimes be found instead of the present perfect if the speaker focuses on the present continuation of a (permanent or temporary) habit whose beginning is specified by the *since*-construction.

> [It was a daunting experience but a good boost for my learning process.] Since then I *am* a little more relaxed in front of the crowds. (www) (*since then = 'since and because of that experience'; Compare: Since then I've been a little more relaxed…*)
>
> [I am by origin catholic but also went through the born-again stage with the Assembly of God for 2 years.] Since then I *am* back to being a catholic but with many different beliefs. (www) *(Compare: {From that time onwards / For the last three years} I {have been / *am}* back to being a catholic.)

It should be noted, however, that not all native speakers find the use of the present tense with a *since*-adverbial grammatical.

III. Summary

3.12.1 The meaning of the absolute present tense is that the situation time coincides with t_0. Since t_0 is a point, the situation time is a point. If the full situation is punctual, the situation time coincides with the time of the full situation and the full situation is located at t_0. If the full situation is durative and homogeneous (i. e. nonbounded), then the situation time (i. e. the time of the predicated situation) is a punctual subinterval of the time of the full situation and that punctual subinterval is located at t_0. *I live here* locates a punctual subinterval of the full situation, which is the (homogeneous) state of 'living here', at t_0. If the full situation is durative and heterogeneous, we cannot locate the situation time at t_0. This is because, when the clause refers to a durative heterogeneous situation, the situation time and the time of the full situation coincide. Obviously, a durative situation time cannot coincide with a point (and as we have seen in chapters 1 and 2, tense-indicated simultaneity is a relation of exact coincidence). *I'm making a wheelchair at the moment* and *I use a wheelchair* are both impeccable because they locate a punctual situation time at t_0. That the situation time is punctual is due to the fact that the durative (actualizations of the) situations (of being in the process of a making a wheelchair or of being in the habit of using a wheelchair) are homogeneous. However, **I make a wheelchair at the moment*, which refers to a heterogeneous (bounded) situation is not acceptable, because the situation time cannot be represented as punctual.

3.12.2 In English it is possible – in well-defined contexts – to use the set of present time-sphere tenses to refer to situations that are understood to actualize in the past, the pre-present or the post-present. One special use of present time-sphere tenses is what is commonly called the 'historic present'. The historic present represents the location of the situation time of a past situation as if it were in the present, for dramatic effect. (The historic present can only be used when it is evident that the actual location of the situation time is in the past). For example *So there we were, and Tommy goes "Oooh, that's nice"*.... Although we talk of the historic 'present', the present tense in this use is indeed part of a set of tenses used to locate a situation or a set of situations in the past time-sphere as though they were in the present time-sphere. For example, in *So there we were, and Tommy has still not seen anything he likes, and the shops are about to close* ..., it is the present perfect *has (not) seen* which sets up the use of the 'Special Present Time-sphere System': the present tense *are (about to)* occurs as a continuation of the use of this system. When a present time-sphere tense form inaugurates the use of the Special Present Time-sphere Tense System, it effects a 'shift of temporal perspective' (see 2.20).

3.12.3 There are some cases in which the speaker can use the present tense to refer to a past situation because this situation is somehow made visible in the present. Captions underneath a photograph representing a historical situation (e. g. *The Queen visits Saint Mary's college in 1991*) form a typical example. 'Replay comment' in the present tense forms another.

3.12.4 In a few very clearly defined contexts, the present tense may be used when it is not important to give explicit information about the temporal location of a situation. Newspaper headlines provide an illustration: *Israel strikes back*.

3.12.5 When news has recently been received, the source of the news (e. g. the telling or the hearing) can be referred to with the help of a verb in the nonprogressive present tense: *I hear you're going to buy a new car.*

3.12.6 The present tense has some common uses to refer to the post-present. As regards the nonprogressive present, we have discussed *wh*-questions suggesting an action or asking advice about a future action (*What do we do now?*) and clauses referring to a post-present situation which is seen as predetermined (*The funeral is on Friday*). As regards the progressive present, we have seen that it can be used to represent a situation as resulting from a present plan or arrangement (*I'm having dinner with them tonight*).

There are four constraints on the use of the present tense with post-present time reference. Informally, these are:

(a) It must be clear from the context that the reference is to the future and not the present.
(b) The nonprogressive present cannot be used for post-present situations that are not predetermined (**It rains tomorrow*).
(c) The progressive present can only refer to post-present situations that are intentional and have a human agent (*The dog's going to the vet tomorrow* means 'I'm taking the dog to the vet tomorrow').
(d) There may be constraints on the interpretation of a present tense form referring to the future when that form is used in combination with an epistemic modal adverb like *perhaps, possibly, probably*, etc. In such cases it may be unclear whether the judgement implicit in the adverb is attributable to the subject referent or to the speaker.

3.12.7 The head clause of a *since*-adverbial referring to a 'period up to t_0' is usually in the present perfect. But occasional examples can be found in which the the present tense is used. In that case there is special focus on the present continuation of the situation that leads up to now. For example: *Since then I am a little more relaxed in front of the crowds.* (www) However, not all native speakers judge this use of the present tense grammatical.

4. The absolute past tense

I. Introduction 195
4.1 The semantics of the absolute past tense 195
4.2 Bygone situations: ‘W-bygone’ *vs* ‘T-bygone’ 196
4.3 The implicature of discontinuation 197
4.4 The nonprogressive past *vs* the progressive past 199

II. Uses of the absolute past tense 200
4.5 Concern with THEN is clear from the context 200
4.6 The past tense used to focus on the ‘when?’ of the situation 201
4.7 The past tense used for ‘actualization focus’ 204
4.8 The past tense contrasting what is W-bygone with what is not 206

III. Summary 207

Abstract

In this chapter we continue our description of the meaning and use of the four 'absolute' tenses in English, i. e. the tenses that relate the time of the situation referred to directly to the temporal zero-point (which is usually the time of speech). One such tense, the absolute present tense, was dealt with in chapter 3; in the present chapter, we discuss the absolute past tense.

The absolute past tense is used to represent a situation as actualizing at a specific past time. Contrary to the present perfect (see chapter 5), the past tense is used when the speaker is not thinking of the present. We argue that this does not necessarily mean that, in the extralinguistic world, the situation referred to is completely over at the temporal zero-point, although there is usually a strong suggestion (technically, an 'implicature') that it is completely over.

The rule that the past tense is used when the speaker is concerned with THEN rather than with NOW implies that the past tense has to be used when the speaker focuses on a particular past time at which the situation actualized or on another aspect of the past situation.

A comparison between the past tense and the present perfect, both of which can be used to refer to a 'bygone' situation, is reserved for chapter 6.

I. Introduction

4.1 The semantics of the absolute past tense

The semantics of the absolute past tense is its tense structure: the situation time is located in the past time-sphere. (The past tense itself does not give information as to where exactly the situation time is located in the past time-sphere.) The absolute past tense always establishes a past domain.

The absolute past tense is used to locate a situation time in the past time-sphere and in doing so create a past domain. As noted in 2.10.2, the past time-sphere is conceived of as disconnected from the present time-sphere (which comprises the pre-present, the (punctual) present, and the post-present). The fact that the speaker locates the situation time in the past rather than in the pre-present therefore means that he is not thinking of t_0 when he utters his sentence. That is, he is not concerned with NOW but rather with THEN, i. e. with a specific past time, which may be either definite, as in *I met him last week*, or indefinite, as in *We don't know when this pyramid was built*. ('Indefinite' means 'not assumed to be identifiable to the hearer'.) It follows that using the past tense is the rule when the speaker is primarily concerned with the past situation itself rather than with its possible relation to the present.

It is important to see that for an adequate (interpretable) use of the past tense it is not necessary that the 'anchor time' THEN should be definite (in the sense that the hearer is assumed to know exactly which time it is). All that is necessary is that an anchor time (= a THEN) should be given or be retrievable. Whether or not that anchor time is definite is irrelevant. For example, *There was a princess who felt very lonely* is not fully interpretable in isolation because there is no specific past time to anchor the situation time to. But *Once upon a time there was a princess who felt very lonely* is fully interpretable because *once upon a time*, which has indefinite reference, provides the anchor time. Similarly, adverbials like *one day*, *one sunny morning*, *a long time ago*, etc. are fully indefinite but license the use of the past tense because they refer to a specific past time.

4.2 Bygone situations: 'W-bygone' *vs* 'T-bygone'

A situation is W-bygone if it is completely over at t_0. Both *I did it* and *I have done it* refer to W-bygone situations. A situation is T-bygone if the situation time is represented as bygone by the tense form used.
The fact that a situation time is represented as T-bygone does not always mean that the full situation has to be over at t_0. Thus, it does not follow from *Five minutes ago Meg was washing an elephant* that the washing must have stopped before t_0.

4.2.1 We will refer to a situation which is completely over at t_0 in the actual world (or in the fictional world referred to) as a W-BYGONE situation. Since the reference is to a real-world situation, a W-bygone situation is always a 'full situation' – see 2.12.

The label 'past situation' will not be used in this sense, because bygone situations may under certain conditions be located in the pre-present (*I have closed the door*) rather than in the past (*I closed the door*). By 'past situation' we will mean a W-bygone situation whose situation time is located in a past domain. The name 'finished situation' is not suitable as an alternative to 'W-bygone situation' either, because 'finished' is applicable to telic situations only – see 1.39.6 – whereas W-bygone situations may be referred to by VPs which are either telic (*John told me a story*) or atelic (*John was a nice guy; I was reading poetry*).

4.2.2 A situation whose situation time is located completely before t_0 by a tense is a T-BYGONE situation. Since the reference is to how a situation is located in time by a tense, a T-bygone situation is a 'predicated situation' rather than a 'full situation' – see 2.12. In *ten minutes ago John was working in the garden*, the predicated situation (i. e. that portion of the full situation that coincides with the time indicated by the adverbial) is completely over at t_0 (i. e. T-bygone), but the full situation may still be continuing.

4.2.3 For ease of reference, we will speak of 'BYGONE' situations rather than 'W-bygone' or 'T-bygone' situations when it is not necessary to make the distinction explicitly or when the distinction is difficult to make. An example of the latter possibility is when we make statements like the following:

> Under certain conditions either the past tense or the present perfect can be used to locate a bygone situation in time. *(What a tense locates in time is the time of a predicated situation, i. e. a 'situation time', not the time of a full situation. In this sense the preterite represents the situation as T-bygone. At the same time, however,*

the use of the past tense entails (if the sentence is bounded) or implicates (if the sentence is nonbounded – see 1.44.2) that the full situation is over at t_0. The unmarked W-interpretation of a sentence in the past tense is therefore that the situation is W-bygone.)

4.2.4 It is often claimed that a situation that is described in the past tense cannot be still actualizing at t_0. That this is not correct appears from examples like the following:

> ["Where is John?" – "I don't know. But look in the kitchen]. He *was* there two minutes ago. [Perhaps he is still there."]

The use of the past tense here means no more than that the speaker claims that two minutes ago it was the case that the static situation was (then) holding. This claim does not exclude the possibility that the situation was actualizing at other times too, nor that it is still actualizing at t_0. In other words, when uttering *He was there two minutes ago* the speaker just focuses on that part of the situation that is simultaneous with the 'anchor time' (see 4.1) indicated by *two minutes ago*. He does not make any claims about other parts of the situation or about the situation as a whole. In technical terms, what is located in the past is not the time of the full situation but the situation time (the time of the predicated situation), which is punctual here because it is contained in the punctual Adv-time denoted by *two minutes ago*. ('Containment' here means 'coincidence' – see 2.23.1.) In this case the situation time is represented as past (and hence as T-bygone), but this does not exclude the possibility that the full situation is not W-bygone.

4.3 The implicature of discontinuation

Though the fact that a situation time is represented as T-bygone does not always mean that the full situation has to be over at t_0, homogeneous clauses in the past tense do implicate this if they do not form part of a stretch of discourse about the past.

4.3.1 If the full situation is homogeneous (nonbounded – see 1.45) and there is no adverbial or contextual indication that the situation time (= the time of the predicated situation) is not the time of the full situation, the absolute past tense implicates that the full situation is completely over at t_0 – see 1.44.

> There was somebody in the kitchen. *(implicates that this is no longer the case)*

This IMPLICATURE OF DISCONTINUATION follows from the Gricean Maxim of Relation (Relevance).[1] Unless they form part of a stretch of discourse about the past, statements about the present are more relevant than statements about the past. It follows that a situation that includes t_0 should be located in the present, not in the past. Hence, if the speaker uses the past tense, this is interpreted as a sign that he cannot locate the situation in the present, i. e. that the reference is to a situation which is completely over.

> I lived in a flat for ten years. *(implicates that I am not living in a flat any more)*
>
> John was an excellent centre forward. *(implicates that this is no longer the case, e. g. because John's capacities have diminished as a result of age or injuries, or because John does not play football any more, or now plays as goalkeeper, or as centre forward for another team, etc.)*

As is typical of implicatures, this interpretation of discontinued full situation can be cancelled or blocked (= prevented from arising) by the context:

> ["If you can't bear Norman's habits, why did you move in with him?"] – "I *liked* him. Still do, for that matter. [It's just his habits I can't stand."] *(The implicature of discontinuation evoked by I liked him is cancelled by the addition of Still do.)*

Compare:

> When he was a baby, Sam *had* white hair. *(suggests that he no longer has white hair)*
>
> When he was a baby, Sam already *had* red hair. *(It is difficult for the implicature of discontinuation to arise because already tends to block it.)*
>
> When he was a baby, Sam *had* white hair. [Now he's eleven, and his hair is still white. It gets him noticed.] *(The implicature of discontinuation is cancelled by the second sentence.)*

4.3.2 It is important to note that if a situation is linguistically *represented* as L-bounded (rather than merely *pragmatically interpreted* as W-bounded because of the above mentioned implicature), that situation is by definition referred to as a whole. In that case the situation time coincides with the time of the full situation (see 2.12.1), so that locating the situation time in the past time-sphere (by means of the ‘absolute past tense’ – see 2.44) is tantamount to locating the full situation in the past. In such sentences the idea of discontinued situation is more than pragmatically implicated: it is linguistically asserted.

---

[1] An aspect of meaning (or rather interpretation) is an 'implicature' (or is 'implicated') if it does not follow from the semantics of the construction or the lexical items (= words) used but rather from the context, from pragmatic knowledge of the world, or from "principles of conversation" which are conventionally observed by "cooperative" speakers and hearers (Grice 1975). For example, *Clear away the glasses!* is by implicature interpreted (and meant to be interpreted) as an instruction to clear away *all* the glasses that are relevant in a particular context. However, like all implicatures induced by conversational principles, this aspect of meaning (*the* = 'all the') can be cancelled. This is the case, for example, in *Clear away the glasses, except those that are not empty*, and also in *The person who cleared away the glasses overlooked those on the window-sill.*

The most relevant principles of conversation are discussed in Grice (1975), where they are called 'Maxims' (hence the term 'Gricean Maxims'). The 'Maxim of Relation' (now more often referred to as the Maxim of Relevance) stipulates that a cooperative speaker will only say things that are relevant at the given point of the discourse.

> [“How far did John walk?”] – “He walked three and a half miles.” *(The combination of the telic VP walk three and a half miles and nonprogressive aspect results in a bounded representation – see 1.49.1. Because of this, the situation time is interpreted as being the time of the full situation – see 2.12.2. Since the past tense locates the situation time in the past, it follows that the entire situation is interpreted as lying in the past, i.e. that the situation of John walking three and a half miles cannot be interpreted as continuing into the present.)*
>
> I wrote him a letter last night. *(similar)*

4.4 The nonprogressive past *vs* the progressive past

As noted in 1.22.4, the difference between the nonprogressive form and the progressive form is not a distinction that has to do with tense but an aspectual distinction: the main reason for using these forms is to express ‘nonprogressive’ and ‘progressive’ aspect, respectively (see 1.21–22 for an explanation of these terms.) Thus, both *walked* and *was walking* are past tense forms. Because these verb forms also express the absence or presence of progressive aspect, we will call them examples of the ‘NONPROGRESSIVE PAST’ and the ‘PROGRESSIVE PAST’, respectively, wherever this aspectual distinction is relevant.

It was noted in 3.8–9 that the nonprogressive present and the progressive present have a special shift-of-perspective use in which they establish a future domain rather than a present one: *He {leaves / is leaving} tomorrow.* This special use has a past counterpart, but we do not need to be concerned with it in the present discussion of the absolute past tense, because past tenses expressing posteriority can only be used as relative tenses, as in *He said he {left / was leaving} the next day*, where (from a purely temporal point of view) *left* and *was leaving* are equivalent to *would leave*, which is a relative tense form. (This is not to say that this use of the past tense is restricted to subordinate clauses. Under certain conditions it is also found in independent clauses:)

> [John was very nervous.] The game *was starting* in a few minutes now. *(free indirect speech)*

II. Uses of the absolute past tense

Needless to say, in this volume we only deal with the nonmodal uses of the past tense.

The situation time of a bygone situation can in principle be located either in the pre-present zone (by the use of a present perfect form) or in the past time-sphere (by the use of the past tense). As will be further explained in chapter 7, the speaker chooses the former possibility if he is somehow thinking of t_0 while referring to the bygone situation; otherwise he uses the past tense. In the latter case he is not concerned with NOW but with THEN. In what follows we will investigate the factors that can induce or reveal the speaker's concern with THEN.

4.5 Concern with THEN is clear from the context

A speaker using the absolute past tense is concerned with a past time (THEN) rather than with the present (NOW). This concern is sometimes clear from the context.

The speaker's concern with a past time is obvious when the sentence forms part of a text (or stretch of spoken discourse) which only uses past time-sphere tenses (i. e. the past tense, the past perfect, the conditional tense or the conditional perfect). In this case the 'discourse topic' to which the bygone situations relate clearly concerns THEN rather than NOW. (By 'discourse topic' we mean what a stretch of discourse, i. e. spoken or written text, is about.)

> We *embarked* at *dawn*, when it *was* still relatively dark. None of us *said* a word. We all *felt* nervous and afraid.
>
> ["How *did* you get here so fast?"] – "I *managed* to catch a bus five minutes after you rang, then there *was* a train due as I *arrived* at the station. I just *had* time to buy a ticket and I *jumped* onto the train as the doors *were closing*. When I *got* to Brussels I *was* really lucky because the tube trains had been running late, but one *arrived* just as I *got* to the platform, and then when I *got out* at your tube station I *ran* all the way here." *(Though the reply as a whole is an explanation of the speaker's unexpectedly early presence at speech time, the speaker uttering the reply is essentially concerned with what he had to do to manage to reach the addressee so quickly. In each of the clauses in the past tense, the speaker is concerned with one particular situation forming part of the past sequence of situations resulting in his early arrival.)*

4.6 The past tense used to focus on the 'when?' of the situation

For a good temporal understanding of a clause in the absolute past tense the minimal requirement is that the hearer be aware of the existence of a specific past time at which the situation actualized. For a full temporal interpretation it is often necessary that that specific time should also be definite (identifiable) to the hearer. Past times may be identifiable in various ways. In each case the use of the past tense (rather than the present perfect) is obligatory.

4.6.1 The speaker will use the past tense if he is concerned with the question of *when* a bygone situation actualized. This is automatically the case if the sentence involves an adverbial referring to a specific past time, such as *last week, a week ago, then, the other day, yesterday, at the time, in 1989, on Tuesday, earlier this summer* ...

> John {*left* / *has left} his wife last week.
>
> It was then that things {*started* / *have started} going wrong.

4.6.2 Questions beginning with *when* normally use the past tense rather than the present perfect, because *When ...?* normally means that the speaker is concerned with THEN rather than NOW:

> {When / at what time} {*did those incidents take place* / *have those incidents taken place}?
>
> When {*did he arrive* / *has he arrived}?
>
> When {*did you see* / *have you seen} her house for the first time?

These examples should be compared with the following:

> ["I don't believe you. You always lie to me." — "That's not true.] When *have* I ever *lied* to you?"

In this example, the message is that there do not exist any occasions on which the speaker lied to the addressee. The question does ask 'when?', because one could answer 'last week', but it is also rhetorical since it assumes that the addressee cannot provide such an instance, and it thus means 'I don't believe that you can cite any instance – I don't believe that one exists.' This means that the speaker is not concerned with the THEN of a particular situation or set of situations but with the question whether the kind of situation referred to has or has not actualized (in a period leading up to t_0). This kind of meaning is typically expressed by the present perfect – see 6.5.4.

4.6.3 For a full temporal understanding of a clause using the past tense to focus on a particular past time it is usually necessary that the time in question should be identifiable to the hearer, or at least that the hearer should be familiar with the existence of such a time. Out of context, a sentence like *Bill ran away* is rather pointless from a communicative point of view because the hearer does not know what time or occasion the speaker is referring to. This means that a speaker using the past tense has a specific past time in mind. (As noted in 4.1, this 'anchor time' need not be definite in the technical sense of the word. The time referred to by the past tense in *We don't know when this pyramid was built* is specific but not definite, i. e. not assumed to be identifiable to the hearer. The same is true in past tense sentences introduced by indefinite adverbials like *once upon a time*, *one winter morning*, *a long time ago*, etc. Still, in most cases the specific past anchor time is also definite.)

There is a similarity here between the use of the preterite and the use of a definite NP. If used in isolation, a sentence like *Did the man water the plants?* presupposes some shared knowledge. To fully understand this sentence, the hearer must check his memory stock, not only for suitable referents for the NPs *the man* and *the plants* but also for a suitable occasion (time) for the situation to have taken place. Similarly, a question like *Did John lock the door?* cannot be answered with *Yes* or *No* if it is not clear to the addressee what time is referred to as the time at which John may or may not have locked the door. It should also be noticed that *Mary did not lock the door* is not equivalent to *Mary never locked the door*: unlike the latter sentence, *Mary did not lock the door* asserts that Mary did not lock the door on some specific past occasion.

As noted in 4.1, the semantics of the past tense is such that it tells us no more than that the situation referred to is located in the past time-sphere. Further temporal information can be given in the form of a time adverbial, whether definite (*two years ago*, *just before Bill came in*) or indefinite (*some years ago*). However, it may also be deducible from the context or from pragmatic knowledge. The following are some typical examples of this.

(a) Place adverbials may imply a past time, viz. the time when the relevant person or entity was at the place in question.

I knew him in the *army*. *(= when I was in the army)*

I met her at a *conference* in Oxford. *(= when we were at a conference in Oxford)*

[I know he had the book before it was published.] I sent a proof copy to him *in Zimbabwe*. *(= when he was in Zimbabwe or when I was in Zimbabwe)*

Place adverbials of this kind offer sufficient information for the hearer to be able to deduce the temporal location of the situation in the past. (This information reveals the speaker's focus on a past THEN, even though it may not be very precise. As with other indications of the temporal location of a past situation, a place adverbial may sometimes give only a very general idea of when the situation actualized. All that is required is that the situation can be located with sufficient precision for the purposes of the discourse. Thus *I learned to swim in Australia* uttered when the hearer knows that the speaker was in Australia between the ages of twenty and twenty-five is sufficiently precise to convey the message 'I was already an adult when I learned to swim', and this may be the main point that the speaker wishes to communicate by using the adverbial.)

(b) There may be other constituents in the clause that are pragmatically linked with a particular past time.

["I haven't got any cash left."] – "I gave all mine to the milkman". *(Reference to the milkman implies 'this morning' in the default case, assuming that the milkman comes every morning.)*

Did the ferry bring any visitors to the island? *(implicit time: when the ferry came to the island, as it does (e.g. around noon) every day)*

(c) If there are no constituents in the sentence indicating or suggesting a specific past time, such a time may still be recoverable from the linguistic or extralinguistic context.

Did you *switch* off the lights? *(implicit time: when we left)*

I couldn't resist buying this book. *(The hearer is expected to interpret the temporal location as being the specific time when the speaker was in the bookshop. This time does not have to be identifiable (definite) to the hearer; it needn't be identifiable to the speaker either, because the speaker may have forgotten the exact time when he bought the book. All that is required is that the speaker and hearer take it as given that there was an occasion of buying the book.)*

In some cases past time reference is pragmatically inferrable from the immediate situation of speaking. Thus, if I see you with a broken leg, I can ask the question *How did you break your leg?* The fact that you have broken it, hence that there was a time when you broke it, is 'given' (assumed known) information. It is therefore natural to use the past tense to ask for further information about the incident.

(d) That the reference is to a particular past time may be clear from people's general pragmatic knowledge of the world. For example, we can use historical events or shorthand references to historical events as a means of providing an adequately precise location in time for a situation (and at the same time often giving more information about the circumstances of the situation). For example, we can say *My ancestors arrived here with William the Conqueror* or *My family lost everything under Idi Amin.*

4.6.4 In sum, for a temporal understanding of a clause in the past tense the minimal requirement is that the hearer be aware of the existence of a specific past time at which the situation actualized. For a full temporal interpretation it is often necessary that that specific time should also be definite (identifiable) to the hearer.

In most contexts, using a past tense without there being an identifiable time of actualization is as inappropriate as using a (formally) definite noun phrase without there being an identifiable referent. (Note that for a referent to be 'identifiable', i. e. for an NP to be definite, it is sufficient that the hearer be familiar with, or be able to assume, the existence of the referent, even if the mere use of the NP is not sufficient for the hearer to pick out the referent from a given set, as in *The police still don't know who the murderer is*, where *the murderer* is an 'attributive definite NP' in the sense of Donnellan (1966).) The necessity of there being a specific, preferably definite, past time at which the situation time is located explains why the sentence *John went for a stroll*, when uttered in isolation, automatically invites the question 'when?'. The information answering this question may be given by a specific (definite or indefinite) time adverbial in the sentence itself (e. g. *three days ago, a long time ago*). If there is no such adverbial, the necessary temporal information must be available from the linguistic or extralinguistic context in which the sentence is used or from the pragmatic knowledge that is shared by the speaker and the hearer.

4.7 The past tense used for 'actualization focus'

'Actualization focus' means that the speaker is only concerned with one of the aspects of the bygone situation, such as why, where, how, etc. the situation actualized. In that case he uses the past tense, not the present perfect. It should be noted, however, that question words like *why, where,* etc. do not automatically entail actualization focus and can therefore in some cases combine with the present perfect.

4.7.1 Sometimes the reason why the speaker uses the past tense (rather than the present perfect) to describe a bygone situation is that he is *only* concerned with one of the aspects of the bygone situation, such as why, where, how, etc. the situation actualized, or who was involved in it. This idea of past ACTUALIZATION FOCUS includes the concept of focus on a particular past time (THEN) discussed in 4.6. In the present section we will concentrate on the other cases in which actualization focus induces the use of the absolute past tense. The following provide some typical examples:

> [I have *bought* so many clocks in Switzerland that] I can't remember which town I *bought* that one in. *(The speaker is only concerned with the question 'where?'.)*

["Someone has sent me *an* anonymous letter."] — "I think it *was* Lisa who *sent* it." *(The speaker is only concerned with the question 'Who sent it?'.)*

Please tell *me* how you *did* it.

[I know he's back.] What I'd like to know is WHY he *came back*.

In cases like these there is actualization focus on the past: the speaker focuses on some aspect of the past actualization of the situation (rather than on the structure of the world at t_0, as is the case when the present perfect is used.)

4.7.2 It is important to see that question words like *why, where,* etc. do not automatically entail actualization focus. There are three cases in which they are followed by the present perfect because the conditions for using the present perfect are satisfied. The first is if there is a 'continuative' meaning (see 5.4.1) to be expressed, as in *Why have you been living in such a small house?* The second is when the meaning to be expressed is that of an 'indefinite perfect' (see 5.4.1), as in *Why have you never taken a holiday abroad yet?,* or of a 'constitution perfect' (see 5.4.1), as in *Who's been in here recently?*, *How many times have you met him since then?*, etc. The third is when the speaker is primarily concerned with the present result or relevance of the bygone situation:

Where have you hidden the ring? *(What the speaker wants to know is where the ring is now.)*

Why have you come back? *(The speaker is concerned both with the fact that the hearer is back and with the reason for his coming back.)*

[He said to Blackie: "Have you taken my private diary?" – "Of course not Mr Gerard. Isn't it in your right-hand desk drawer?" – "If it were I should hardly be asking for it." – "I made it up to date on Monday afternoon and put it back in the drawer. I haven't seen it since." – "It was there yesterday morning.] If you haven't taken it you had better discover who *has*. [I presume you accept that looking after my diaries is part of your responsibility."] (OSIN)

[Mary sat down on the stairs. "Where is he then?" she said. (...) Alan told her how things were.] "Who *have* you *checked* with? [The Bruces? The Smails? The Willoughbys? The Cartwrights?". At each name Alan nodded. "I phoned them. And the police are going round."] (LOB)

4.7.3 There is also actualization focus on the past in sentences which provide further details about an already mentioned bygone situation, or which explain the past origin of such a situation:

["How do you know she changed her will?" – "I have been making enquiries.] It *was* not difficult. [Everybody in the village knows all about it."] *(The sentence It was not difficult provides further information about the already mentioned situation of the speaker making enquiries.)*

["He's not with us any more." – "You mean] he *left* the company?" — "No, he *had* a heart attack and *died*."

In many cases the speaker uses a present perfect to introduce a bygone situation and then switches to the past tense when he gives further information about it – see also 6.2.1:

> I *have* already *made* the acquaintance of the local doctor. His car *broke down* in front of the house and he *asked* if he could use our telephone.
>
> Joan *has moved* out of the building. She *said* she couldn't stand living on her own any more.

4.7.4 There is also actualization focus on the past when the speaker just wants to inform the hearer of the *fact that* the situation actualized, without representing it as part of the structure of the world at t_0:

> A doctor friend of mine *told* me that you don't need to take vitamins if you eat a balanced diet.
>
> You know, I nearly *forgot* about my wife's birthday.

4.8 The past tense contrasting what is W-bygone with what is not

The speaker uses the past tense rather than the present perfect if he wishes to contrast a bygone situation with a present one, as in *The firm is no longer what it was.*

The past tense will also be used when the speaker explicitly contrasts a bygone situation with a present one.

> This *country* is no longer the economic superpower that it {*was* / ??*has been*}.
>
> Things aren't what they {*were* / ??*have been*}.
>
> He isn't half the man he *was* before the stock market crash. *(The present perfect is totally ruled out by the presence of the adverbial referring to a definite past time.)*

In this context we may also refer to sentences like the following:

> I *didn't know* you were a teacher.

This sentence means something like 'I didn't know you were a teacher until you told me so (or: until I found out) just now'. A contrast is thus established between the past and the present. Similar examples are:

> [Gosh! *That* girl is a regular tiger.] I *had* no idea she could be so brave.
>
> I never *thought* she was spying on us. *(implies: but now I know better)*

III. Summary

4.9.1 A (full) situation which is located anterior to t_0 is a **bygone situation**. (See further below). There are two absolute tenses that may be used to refer to such a situation: the absolute past tense and the present perfect tense. The semantics of the absolute past tense is the location of a situation time in the past time-sphere, creating a temporal domain. The past time-sphere is conceptualized as disconnected from the present time-sphere. The semantics of the present perfect tense is the location of a situation time in the pre-present zone. The pre-present zone is in the present time-sphere and therefore connected to NOW. The fact that the speaker has the choice of using the present perfect or the past tense to refer to a bygone situation means that when a speaker chooses to use an absolute past tense, he is choosing to focus on the past exclusive of the present, i. e. on THEN and not NOW.

4.9.2 We distinguish between **W-bygone** situations and **T-bygone** situations. A situation which is conceived of as completely over at t_0 is a W-bygone situation (i. e. one which world knowledge tells us is over at t_0). A situation whose situation time is located either in the past time-sphere or in the pre-present zone (i. e. anterior to t_0) is a T-bygone situation (i. e. one whose location is established by a tense). W-bygone situations are full situations, since they are situations as we conceive of them in the extralinguistic world. T-bygone situations are 'predicated situations', since it is only the time of predicated situations that tenses locate (see 2.12.1). A situation may be T-bygone and not W-bygone, as when the past tense is used to refer to a situation that is still continuing at t_0. (For example: *John was in the pub* [*when I passed it five minutes ago, so I expect you can find him there*].) However, in the absence of such a context triggering the idea that the situation is continuing at t_0, the absolute past tense in itself gives rise to an **implicature of discontinuation**, i. e. the idea that the full situation is over at t_0. This implicature clearly arises in *Meg swore a lot when she was younger*, but is cancelled in *Meg swore a lot when she was younger – and she still does*.

4.9.3 Under what circumstances is a speaker likely to be concerned with THEN rather than with NOW when locating a bygone situation, and thus to prefer the past tense to the present perfect for establishing a domain? We mentioned three general cases. (The dividing lines between these are necessarily somewhat artificial – a given use of the absolute past tense could easily fit all three cases at once.) First, a stretch of discourse which already uses past time-sphere tenses to locate situations in the past time-sphere is clearly concerned with THEN, so that in order to establish a new domain introducing a bygone situation, the speaker is more likely to use an absolute past tense than a present perfect tense. Second, the speaker's focus is definitely on THEN rather than

NOW if there is **actualization focus** on a bygone situation. That is, if the speaker is concerned, not with the existence, or not, of a bygone situation (in which case the present perfect may be preferred, depending on how the speaker conceives of the situation) but with questions about when, where, how, etc. a situation actualized. One typical case is when the speaker gives more information about a bygone situation whose existence has already been introduced. The third case in which the speaker uses the past tense rather than the present perfect is that in which the speaker explicitly contrasts the present with the past, as in *He is no longer the powerful leader that he was*.

4.9.4 For the successful interpretation of a clause in the past tense, the hearer must be able to treat as 'known' the time at which the bygone situation is located. Compare: *Meg has ridden on an elephant* with *Meg rode on an elephant*. The first of these sentences can be used without any indication of when it was that Meg rode on an elephant. The speaker does not have to provide any information to help the hearer to anchor the time of Meg's riding the elephant to any 'known' time in the past. We only know that the situation time is located before speech time. The second sentence would make a rather odd utterance in the absence of further temporal information, since its successful interpretation requires that the hearer can identify some known time at which the situation actualized. The known time need only be sufficiently specified for the purposes of the discourse. For example, in *I couldn't resist buying this book*, the time is 'known' because the existence of *a* time of buying can be (and here is) treated as inherent in the situation of possessing the book. Thus that time, whenever it was, can be treated as 'known', even though the hearer may have no more information about when it was than that it was during the speaker's (book-buying) lifetime.

5. The absolute use of the present perfect

I. The semantics of the present perfect 212
5.1 Introduction 212
5.2 The semantics and the T-interpretations of the present perfect 214

II. The temporal W-interpretations of present perfect clauses 218
5.3 Introduction 218
5.4 The three W-interpretations of clauses in the present perfect 222
5.5 Further arguments for distinguishing between three W-interpretations 229
5.6 Summary of the meaning(s) and W-readings of the present perfect 233

III. More on the continuative reading of the perfect 235
5.7 The 'factual full situation' *vs* the 'potential full situation' 235
5.8 Conditions for the continuative W-interpretation 236
5.9 Factors triggering a continuative interpretation 238

IV. More on the indefinite reading of the perfect 241
5.10 Further remarks on the indefinite reading 241
5.11 The indefinite reading and temporal adverbials 242
5.12 Indefinite readings of negative present perfect sentences 245
5.13 The 'experiential perfect' use of the indefinite perfect 245
5.14 The indefinite perfect used to express 'hot news' 247
5.15 The resultative reading of the indefinite present perfect 248
5.16 The 'recency reading' of the indefinite present perfect 249

V. More on the up-to-now reading of the perfect 251
5.17 Functional types of up-to-now reading 251
5.18 The unmarked up-to-now reading 252
5.19 The constitution readings 255
5.20 The specificational function of the constitution reading 259
5.21 Two-clause specificational sentences combining two readings 263
5.22 Summary of part V 269

VI. The relation between the W-readings and (non)progressive aspect 271
5.23 (Non)progressive aspect and a continuative nonhabitual reading 271
5.24 (Non)progressive aspect and a continuative habitual reading 271
5.25 The indefinite reading and (non)progressive aspect 273
5.26 The unmarked up-to-now reading and (non)progressive aspect 277
5.27 The nonquantificational constitution reading and (non)progressive aspect 279
5.28 The duration-quantifying constitution reading and (non)progressive aspect 282
5.29 The number-quantifying constitution reading and (non)progressive aspect 283

VII. Factors influencing the choice of temporal W-interpretation 287
5.30 The indefinite reading versus the continuative interpretation 287

5.31 The up-to-now reading versus the continuative reading 289
5.32 The up-to-now reading versus the indefinite interpretation 291

VIII. Factors blocking the location of a situation in a 'period up to now' 295
5.33 Introduction 295
5.34 Reference to entities that no longer exist 295
5.35 Verb of creation + definite 'effected' object NP 298

IX. 'Current relevance' and 'present result' 301
5.36 The present perfect and current relevance 301
5.37 The present perfect and the idea of present result 301

X. Summary 308

Abstract

In this chapter we discuss the present perfect tense as it is used to locate a ‘T-bygone’ situation in time. As we saw in the previous chapter, this is also the function of the absolute past tense, but we argue that a speaker using the present perfect tense is concerned with NOW rather than with THEN – see chapter 7 for a separate treatment of the choice between these two tenses.

Part I (= sections 5.1–5.2) deals with the semantics of the present perfect. We argue that the core meaning conveyed by the present perfect is ‘The situation time is located in (i. e. is contained by) the pre-present time zone’. This meaning is compatible with two ‘T-readings’, namely the readings on which the situation time is, respectively, included in or coincident with a time span that is thought of as starting before and leading up to ‘now’. (Compare, for example, *I have already met that man and I have been working in the garden*).

In part II (= sections 5.3–5.6), we discuss three interpretations with respect to the time of the ‘full’ (rather than the ‘predicated’) situation, referring to them as ‘W(orld)-interpretations’ – the ‘indefinite’, the ‘continuative’ and the ‘up-to-now’ interpretations. On the indefinite reading, the time of the full situation lies at some distance from t_0. On the continuative reading the full situation lasts throughout the pre-present and is still continuing at t_0. On the up-to-now reading the full situation fills the entire pre-present but does not include t_0. These three W-readings are distinguished according to the way adverbials and aspectual, contextual and pragmatic factors interact with the (ambiguous) semantics of the present perfect to yield a particular temporal relationship between the time of the predicated situation, the time of the full situation and the time of the pre-present time zone. In section 5.6 we then provide an interim summary of the core meaning of the present perfect, its two related T-readings concerning the temporal location of the predicated situation, and the three W-interpretations concerning the temporal location of the full situation.

Parts III (= sections 5.7–5.9), IV (= sections 5.10–5.16) and V (= sections 5.17–5.22) zoom in, respectively, on the continuative W-interpretation, the indefinite W-interpretation (including the so-called ‘experiential perfect’ use, the ‘hot news’ reading, the ‘resultative reading’ and the ‘recency’ reading), and the up-to-now interpretation. Within the last we distinguish between an ‘unmarked up-to-now W-reading’, which can have an ‘explanatory-resultative’ function, and a ‘constitution W-interpretation’, which has a ‘specificational’ function and is concerned with the situational constitution of the pre-present. We include a discussion of two-clause structures, like the ‘*It’s been X amount of time since Y*’ type of construction.

In part VI (= sections 5.23–5.29) we discuss the interplay between grammatical aspect (progressive vs nonprogressive verb forms) and the various W-readings.

Part VII (= sections 5.30–5.32) is concerned with multiple W-readings that exist for some clauses using the present perfect.

In part VIII (= sections 5.33–5.35) we have a look at two cases in which the use of the present perfect is excluded on semantic grounds: when there is reference to entities that no longer exist (e. g. *My late uncle {was / *has been} a commercial traveller*), and when a verb of creation is combined with a definite ‘effected’ object NP (e. g. *John {wrote / *has written} this poem*).

In part IX (= sections 5.36–5.37), finally, we discuss our view on the notions of ‘current relevance’ and ‘present result’, which are often associated with the present perfect in the linguistic literature – justly in the case of the former notion, and less so in the case of the latter.

A summary of chapter 5 is provided in part X (section 5.38).

I. The semantics of the present perfect

The present perfect locates the situation time in the pre-present, i. e. in that portion of the present time-sphere that precedes t_0 (without including it). The pre-present thus 'contains' the situation time in terms of inclusion or coincidence. The pre-present may be indicated adverbially or may remain implicit. The fact that the speaker chooses the present perfect (rather than the past tense) to locate a W-bygone situation in time means that he is concerned with NOW (rather than with THEN).

5.1 Introduction

5.1.1 We will argue that the function of the present perfect is to locate a situation in the pre-present zone (i. e. in that portion of the present time-sphere that precedes t_0 – see 2.35). The semantics of the present perfect is therefore: 'The situation time is located in the pre-present zone of the present time-sphere'. In other words, the pre-present CONTAINS the situation time in terms of inclusion or coincidence.[1] It is important to keep in mind that the pre-present zone is conceived of as leading up to t_0 without including t_0 (see 2.35). The theoretical necessity of this analysis will be corroborated by the discussion below.

5.1.2 As noted in 2.39, the pre-present zone is an interval which is conceptualized, not a zone whose length is determined in any objective way. If the clause contains a time-specifying adverbial, as in *I haven't seen him since last week*, the pre-present zone is taken to be the Adv-time (i. e. the interval indicated by the time-specifying adverbial). If there is no time-specifying adverbial, the pre-present is interpreted as the shortest possible time span leading up to t_0 that is in keeping with the semantics and pragmatics of the clause and its context (see also 5.1.6 below). Thus, *I have already had lunch* will be interpreted as meaning that the pre-present is that *part of today* which began when I started having lunch and which leads up to t_0, and not, say, a period starting a week ago (because lunch is eaten every day).

5.1.3 To locate a 'T-bygone' (see 4.2) situation in time, the speaker can in principle choose between the past tense and the present perfect. Generally speaking, this choice is determined by whether the speaker is concerned with (some aspect of) the bygone situation itself or with the structure of the world at t_0: a speaker who uses the present perfect is thinking of NOW, not of THEN – see chapter 6. Whereas the past tense requires that the speaker should place the 'temporal focus' (see 11.1) on the past, the present perfect is a sign that the speaker is primarily concerned with the present. In fact, the observation that the present perfect reveals a concern with NOW is the main reason for our claim that a distinction needs to be made between a pre-present and a past time-zone, and that the present perfect locates a situation time in the present time-sphere (more specifically, in the pre-present zone) rather than in the past time-sphere.

---

[1] Note that in this respect the pre-present is no different from the other nonpresent absolute time-zones: when an orientation time is located in the past or post-present, the past or post-present time-zone also contains the situation time in terms of either inclusion or coincidence. For example, compare *He left yesterday* (= inclusion) with *He was living in the country until now* (= coincidence), and *He will leave tomorrow* (= inclusion) with *From now onwards you will have free access to the internet* (= coincidence).

The speaker's concern with NOW, which is a consistent feature of the present perfect, carries with it a requirement that the situation referred to, or a result produced by it, should be deemed relevant at t_0 and should therefore form part of the speaker's t_0-world – see 5.37.

5.1.4 As we will see, locating a situation time in the pre-present zone is compatible with more than one interpretation of the relation between the time of the full situation and t_0. When a situation time is located in the pre-present zone, the time of the full situation may be W-bygone, as in *He's been to Spain*, or it may lead up to t_0 without including it, as in *Where have you been?*, or it may be interpreted as including t_0, as in *I've been living here for three months now.* There are various factors (such as the type of time-specifying adverbial used, if any) that help to determine these interpretations.

5.1.5 Locating a situation time in the pre-present means locating it in a time span that is conceived of as beginning before t_0 and leading up to t_0 but not including it. As we will see, the time of the full situation may sometimes be interpreted as including t_0, but the situation time (= the time of the predicated situation – see 2.12–13) never includes t_0.

The use of the present perfect therefore requires that the speaker should have a pre-present period (period up to t_0)[2] in mind. In many cases the idea of a pre-present period is evoked by an adverbial of the type *since 1970, up to now, so far*, etc.

I have visited Rome twice {since 1996 / since I was born}.

So far nothing has happened.

He's been abroad for the last three weeks.

In such examples the adverbial denotes an Adv-time leading up to t_0. (An *Adv-time* is an adverbially specified time span which 'contains' the situation time in terms of either inclusion or coincidence – see 2.23.1.)

---

[2] Throughout this chapter, 'period up to t_0' or 'period up to now' should be interpreted as 'pre-present period', i. e. as a period which leads up to t_0 but does not include it.

5.1.6 When there is no time-specifying adverbial or context specifying the length of the pre-present, the pre-present remains 'IMPLICIT'. In that case it is normally interpreted as the shortest time span leading up to now that is relevant to the discourse and is in keeping with the semantics and pragmatics of the sentence and its context.

Have you seen my car keys? *(This only makes sense if interpreted as maximally indicating a period 'since I last used the car' – so usually, 'in the last few hours' or 'since I got in yesterday'.)*

Have you had breakfast yet? *(The implicit period leading up to now is 'today'; an answer like Yes, I did three weeks ago would therefore be quite inappropriate, as it would imply that breakfast is eaten only once in a period of at least three weeks.)*

John has already visited Tokyo. *(The time span leading up to now may be contextually identified as, for example, the particular journey through Japan which John is making at this moment; otherwise it will be interpreted as John's lifetime.)*

I've been waiting for him. *(The length of the period leading up to* t_0 *will be clear from the context. If it is said by a mother waiting for her son at the gates of the school, it will be a relatively short time. If it is said by someone waiting for a sailor to come home, it is likely to be the time since the sailor left.)*

Have you seen John? *(e.g. {since you arrived at the party / in the last twenty minutes})*

Have you been to the Van Gogh exhibition? *(since it has been open to the public)*

5.2 The semantics and the T-interpretations of the present perfect

The semantics of the present perfect is: 'The pre-present contains the situation time in terms of inclusion or coincidence. This semantics allows two 'T-interpretations'. Firstly, on the 'before now' T-interpretation, the situation time is included in the pre-present and covers a portion of the pre-present that is not adjacent to t_0. For example: *I have already met that man*. Secondly, on the 'co-extensive' T-interpretation, the situation time is co-extensive with the pre-present and therefore leads up to t_0. For example, in *I have been working in the garden*.

5.2.1 In the tense model used here, the CORE MEANING (= semantics) of the present perfect is its tense structure: 'The situation time is located in the pre-present zone of the present time-sphere'. In 5.1.1 we saw that this is equivalent to 'The pre-present contains the situation time'. Since 'containment' means either inclusion or coincidence, this means that from a tense-structural (= semantic) point of view there are two possibilities: either the situation time fills the entire (subjectively conceived) period up to now or it is included in it. Since the pre-present is defined as the time-zone which forms part of the present time-sphere and precedes t_0 in the sense that it leads up to t_0 but does not include t_0, these two possibilities can be formulated as follows: either the situation time is conceived of as leading up to t_0, i. e. as stopping just before t_0 but without any temporal space between the right bound of the situation time and t_0, or the situation time is conceived of as lying at a certain distance from t_0. (Note that all this is a matter of conceptualization rather than of what is the exact temporal location of the situation relative to t_0 in the real world. When a person comes back from somewhere I can ask him *What have you been doing?* or *Where have you been?* In the real world there has to be some interval (however short) between the situation referred to and my asking the question, but that interval is linguistically irrelevant: it does not prevent the situation time as being conceived of as leading up to t_0.)

Within the two T-interpretations allowed by the semantics of the present perfect, we can distinguish three 'temporal W-interpretations': the 'indefinite reading' (i. e. the full situation comes to an end before t_0), the 'continuative reading' (i. e. the time of the full situation includes t_0) and the 'up-to-now reading' (i. e. the terminal point of the full situation is adjacent to t_0).

5.2.2 In sum, the semantics of the present perfect is 'The pre-present contains the situation time'. Since 'containment' means either inclusion or coincidence, this means that the present perfect is semantically (= tense-structurally) ambiguous between two meanings (which we will refer to as T-INTERPRETATIONS):

(a) The 'BEFORE NOW' T-interpretation: the situation time is included in the pre-present and covers a portion of the pre-present that is not adjacent to t_0. This meaning is realized, for example, in *I have already spoken to that man.*

(b) The 'CO-EXTENSIVE' T-interpretation: the situation time is co-extensive with the pre-present and therefore leads up to t_0. This meaning is realized, for example, in *I have been working in the garden.*

In both (a) and (b), the beginning of the pre-present zone can be indicated by adverbials like *since then*, *within the last three weeks*, etc. If there is no such adverbial, the pre-present zone is conceptualized as the shortest period up to t_0 that is in keeping with the semantics and pragmatics of the clause and its context (see 5.1.6).

It should be clear from the above paragraphs that, unlike the situation time (i. e. the time of the 'predicated situation' – see 2.12–13), the time of the full situation does not play a part in the semantics of the present perfect, nor in the ensuing two T-interpretations. It does play a part, however, in the definition of the three TEMPORAL W-INTERPRETATIONS that can be assigned to present perfect clauses. These will be discussed in section 4, where we will distinguish between the '*indefinite reading*' (i. e. the full situation comes to an end before t_0), the '*continuative reading*' (i. e. the time of the full situation includes t_0) and the '*up-to-now reading*' (i. e. the terminal point of the full situation is adjacent to t_0). The last two W-readings are illustrated by the following examples, in which *I have been working in the garden* each time receives a co-extensive T-interpretation but receives two different W-interpretations:

> ["What have you been doing for the last hour?"] – "I *have been working* in the garden."
>
> I *have been working* in the garden [*for* two *hours* now, and I still haven't finished.]

In the first example, *I have been working in the garden* may be uttered by someone who has just come inside (and has therefore stopped working in the garden), whereas in the second example it is uttered by somebody who is still working in the garden. This means that within the co-extensive (= 'situation time up to now') meaning two different temporal interpretations of the location of the full situation relative to t_0 are possible. (We will speak of the 'up-to-now reading' and the 'continuative reading', respectively.) These readings are W-interpretations: they belong to the same semantic type of present perfect and are triggered by factors having to do with the linguistic or extralinguistic context. Moreover, they refer to the location of the time of the *full* situation relative to t_0.

5.2.3 In sum, as far as temporal interpretation is concerned, we have to distinguish between the following three levels:

(a) The CORE MEANING of the present perfect is its semantics, i. e. the tense structure which it expresses. This core meaning is: 'The situation time is contained in the pre-present'. The pre-present is that zone of the present time-sphere that is conceptualized as starting before t_0 and leading up to it, without including it.

(b) There are two 'T-INTERPRETATIONS' which are in keeping with the semantics of the present perfect. They have to do with the location of the situation time (= the time of the 'predicated situation' – see 2.13) relative to t_0. These T-interpretations are: 'The situation time lies wholly before t_0' (= 'situation time before now') and 'The situation time is co-extensive with the pre-present' (= 'situation time up to now'). The existence of these T-interpretations follows naturally from the fact that the statement *The situation time is contained in the pre-present* can mean either 'The situation time is included in the pre-present' or 'The situation time coincides with the pre-present'.

(c) As far as the full situation is concerned, there are three TEMPORAL W-INTERPRETATIONS: the 'indefinite reading' (i. e. the full situation comes to an end before t_0), the 'continuative reading' (i. e. the time of the full situation includes t_0) and the 'up-to-now reading' (i. e. the terminal point of the full situation is adjacent to t_0). These will be discussed in 5.3–4 below.

5.2.4 Later on in this chapter we will explain that the present perfect has not only one core meaning, two T-interpretations and three W-interpretations, but also (at least in its 'up-to-now' W-interpretation) two functional readings, one of which allows further possible readings. Figure 5.1 gives an overview of all these 'meanings' (in the nontechnical sense of the word). (What is not mentioned in this table is that, as we will see, it is sometimes possible to distinguish a few *usage types* within a given W-interpretation. Thus, the so-called 'resultative perfect', 'hot news perfect' and 'perfect of experience' are all (nontemporal) W-readings which are assigned to certain present perfect sentences that receive the indefinite temporal W-interpretation – see 5.13–16.)

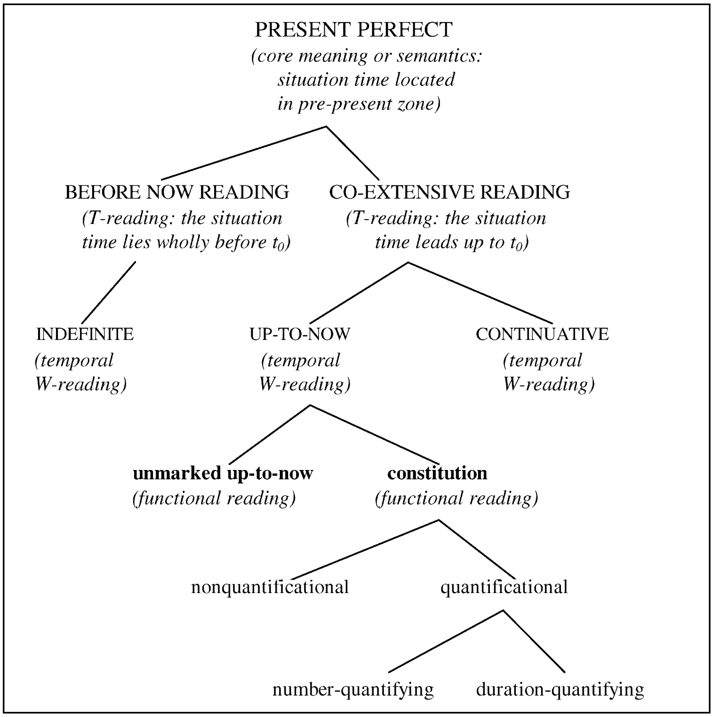
PRESENT PERFECT
(core meaning or semantics: situation time located in pre-present zone)
BEFORE NOW READING
(T-reading: the situation time lies wholly before t_0)
CO-EXTENSIVE READING
(T-reading: the situation time leads up to t_0)
INDEFINITE
(temporal W-reading)
UP-TO-NOW
(temporal W-reading)
CONTINUATIVE
(temporal W-reading)
unmarked up-to-now
(functional reading)
constitution
(functional reading)
nonquantificational
quantificational
number-quantifying
duration-quantifying

Figure 5.1. The various readings of clauses in the present perfect.

II. The temporal W-interpretations of present perfect clauses

5.3 Introduction

Since the situation time may coincide with the pre-present or be included in it, and since the time of the full situation can similarly contain the situation time in terms of coincidence or inclusion, there are in principle four possibilities as far as the W-relation between the time of the full situation and the pre-present time-zone is concerned. In practice, however, clauses in the present perfect can only receive three different temporal W-interpretations concerning the location of the full situation relative to the pre-present: an ‘indefinite’, ‘continuative’ or ‘up-to-now’ reading. The reading is ‘indefinite’ if the time of the full situation does not lead up to the endpoint of the pre-present zone, as in *Meg has already washed the elephant*. The reading is ‘continuative’ if the time of the full situation is taken to include t_0, as in *Meg has been washing the elephant for half an hour now*. The reading is an ‘up-to-now’ interpretation if the full situation covers the entire pre-present but does not include t_0, as in *Where have you been?* (addressed to someone who has just come in).

5.3.1 Whereas the T-interpretations of a clause in the present perfect concern the location of the situation time (= time of the predicated situation) relative to t_0, the temporal W-interpretations concern the relation between the time of the ‘full situation’ (see 2.16.1) and t_0. Such a temporal W-interpretation depends in part on the semantics of the tense (i. e. on the location of the situation time in the tense structure) but also on other factors, such as ontological aspect (Aktionsart), grammatical aspect, actualization aspect (bounded *vs* non-bounded – see 1.44.1), time-specifying adverbials, duration adverbials, and other contextual and pragmatic factors. This is true of all W-interpretations. Thus, the temporal W-interpretation of *At five o’clock I was working* involves (at least) the following elements: (a) The situation time is located in the past time-sphere; (b) The situation time coincides with the Adv-time (= at five o’clock); (c) The time of the full situation is not represented as bounded and is longer than the situation time.

5.3.2 A situation time may in principle either coincide with the time of the full situation or be a subpart of it – remember the discussion of *Ten minutes ago John was in the library; perhaps he still is* in 1.44.2. In other words, irrespective of the tense used, the time of a full situation ‘contains’ the situation time in terms of inclusion or coincidence. (Inclusion requires the clause to be homogeneous, i. e. the full situation must not be represented as bounded – see

1.44.2.) When the present perfect is used, the pre-present similarly contains the situation time in terms of inclusion or coincidence. We can conclude from these statements that there are four theoretical possibilities as to the temporal relation between the pre-present zone and the time of the full situation.

(a) The first possibility is that the situation time coincides with the time of the full situation and is included in the pre-present. In that case the clause receives a 'BEFORE NOW' T-interpretation. This allows only one temporal W-interpretation, viz. that in which the time of the full situation lies entirely before t_0 in the pre-present. This possibility is illustrated by the following:

> [Nobody can enter the house, because] I have locked the door and hidden the key. *(The full situations are interpreted as lying wholly before* t_0*.)*

Because it is typical of this temporal W-reading that the precise temporal location of the situation in the pre-present zone remains indefinite, we call this the INDEFINITE READING of the present perfect (or, more correctly, of the clause in the present perfect).

(b) The second theoretical possibility is that the situation time coincides with the pre-present zone and is included in the time of the full situation. (The latter is only possible if the full situation is homogeneous and hence non-bounded – see 1.45.) In this case the full situation not only fills the entire period leading up to t_0 but also extends beyond it. That is, the full situation also includes t_0 and possibly part of the post-present, though the present perfect itself does not say anything about the post-present (nor, directly, about the inclusion of t_0, because it is the situation time, not the time of the full situation, that is relevant to the semantics of a tense). This possibility leads to a temporal W-interpretation which is traditionally referred to as the CONTINUATIVE READING. For example:

> Ian's been living in Lincoln since 1998. *(continuative reading: the sentence is W-interpreted as implying that Ian is still living in Lincoln)*
>
> For two months now there has been a famine in this country. *(= 'There has been a famine throughout the pre-present, and it is still continuing.')*

(c) The third theoretical possibility is that the situation time coincides with the time of the full situation and with the pre-present zone. This leads to the temporal W-interpretation that the time of the full situation fills the entire period leading up to t_0 but does not include t_0. We refer to this as the UP-TO-NOW READING. (In this label, 'up-to-now' has the same meaning as in 'period up to now': in the same way as a pre-present period leads up to t_0 but does not include it, the up-to-now reading of a clause means that the full situation is taken to lead up to t_0 but without including t_0.) For example:

> *(said to someone who has just come in)* Where *have you been*?
>
> [Representative Jo Ann Emerson recently announced Dec. 13 as the day traffic is anticipated to cross the new Bill Emerson Memorial Bridge. "We couldn't be more excited about this," said MoDOT District Engineer Scott Meyer.] "We'*ve been telling* the public the bridge would be opened by the end of the year [and we are very pleased to finally have an anticipated date for the bridge completion."] (www)

(d) The fourth theoretical possibility is that the situation time is included in (i. e. is shorter than) the pre-present and is also included in the time of the full situation. Since the latter possibility requires the full situation to be homogeneous and nonbounded, this leads to the expectation that the situation must be either a state or a dynamic (nonstative) situation represented as ongoing by the progressive form. Let us consider these two possibilities separately.

As regards states, it would at first sight seem to be impossible to find examples of present perfect sentences in which the full situation is a state and the two conditions (viz. the situation time is included in the pre-present and also included in the time of the full situation) are satisfied. In all of the following examples the full situation is interpreted as bounded (= having come to an end), which means that the situation time is interpreted as coinciding with the time of the full situation, so that the temporal W-interpretation is an indefinite reading: the full situation lies wholly before t_0.

> John has been in the house.
>
> John has just been in the house.
>
> Has John ever been in the house?

The reason why the time of the full situation is W-interpreted as coinciding with the situation time is that this is the unmarked kind of containment relation between the time of the full situation and the time of the predicated situation (= situation time). In these examples there is nothing triggering the marked interpretation that the situation time is only a portion of the time of the full situation.

However, the situation time of a state *is* interpreted as included in the time of the full situation if the state functions as 'background' situation for an intervening situation:

> *You've never been behind someone* when all of a sudden they slow down for no apparent reason and make a turn with no signal? (www) *(The time of the predicated situation is the portion before the slowing down and the full situation continues during the slowing down.)*

Clearly, this reading is not a new kind of reading but an 'indefinite reading'.

If the situation is not a state, the two conditions (viz. the situation time is included in the pre-present and also included in the time of the full situation) can only be fulfilled if the progressive form is used. As noted in 1.22.4, the progressive form refers to some middle part of the full situation (because it disregards the situation's terminal point). That middle part is the situation time. Unlike an expression of state (e. g. *be in the house*), a progressive form thus automatically represents the situation time as included in (i. e. shorter than) the time of the full situation, which means that the second condition is fulfilled. Fulfilment of the first condition (viz. the situation time is included in the pre-present rather than co-extensive with it) is then also possible.

It should be noted, however, that this use of the progressive form is restricted to three types of present perfect sentences, illustrated by the following:

(1) Who's the man you've just been talking to?[3]

(2) Have you ever been working on a project?

(3) Have you ever been working on a project [when you had to give it up temporarily for lack of funding]?

In (1), the full situation, which is longer than the situation time which coincides with the Adv-time (*just*), can only be W-interpreted as having come to an end before t_0. This means that (1) receives an indefinite W-interpretation which is a 'recency interpretation' (see 5.16 and 5.25.5). Sentence (2), which is not acceptable for some speakers, also receives an indefinite reading (which, however, is not a recency reading). The speaker asks the hearer if the situation of his working on a project has been in progress at one or more bygone times within the pre-present. Sentence (3), which is fully acceptable because the *when*-clause provides the vantage point from with the situation is viewed as being in progress, receives a similar indefinite reading.[4]

In sum, possibility (d) does not give rise to a fourth type of W-interpretation: all the examples given receive an indefinite reading, i. e. the same reading as is engendered by possibility (a).

---

[3] The following is an authentic example of this type:

Are you quite sure you haven't just been speaking to the cryptic "K" herself? (DOC)

[4] This kind of sentence is special in that the *when*-clause is not a time-specifying adverbial but a 'narrative' *when*-clause, i.e. a clause which 'pushes forward' the action – see 13.1.3. This means that the *when*-clause does not specify the time of the head clause situation. It is rather the other way round: the head clause expresses the background situation in the middle of which the *when*-clause situation actualizes. This means that this sentence is only acceptable if one mentally restructures it so that the perfect is separated from the progressive: the perfect goes with the (indefinite) interruption – *have you ever had to give up a project temporarily for lack of funding?* – and the progressive goes with the background situation – *while you were working on that project*. These paraphrases make it clear that the sentence receives an indefinite reading.

5.4 The three W-interpretations of clauses in the present perfect

This section goes further into the three temporal W-interpretations of clauses in the present perfect, viz. the indefinite, continuative and up-to-now readings.

5.4.1 As far as the W-relation between the time of the full situation and the pre-present time-zone is concerned, clauses in the present perfect can thus receive three different temporal W-interpretations: an indefinite, continuative or up-to-now reading. (When it comes to interpreting tensed clauses, it is the time of the full situation that is important. This is because a full temporal W-interpretation depends not only on the semantics of the tense – i. e. the location of the situation time – but also on other factors, such as adverbials and aspectual, contextual and pragmatic factors.)

On the INDEFINITE INTERPRETATION, the full situation is taken to actualize at some indefinite time (or times) in the course of the pre-present (which leads up to t_0 but does not include it). Even if the clause is L-homogeneous, as in *I have lived in Rome* or *Have you ever been watching your favourite programme* [*when unexpected visitors arrived*]*?*, not only the situation time but also the time of the full situation is taken to be included in the pre-present, i. e. the full situation is interpreted as not extending up to t_0. (In other words, the situation is interpreted as W-bounded, though it is L-homogeneous.) On the CONTINUATIVE INTERPRETATION the speaker's message is taken to be that the full situation not only covers the entire pre-present period but also includes t_0. That is, the full situation is still continuing at t_0. (For example: *I've been waiting for him for two hours now.*) Finally, on the UP-TO-NOW INTERPRETATION, the full situation is taken to cover the entire pre-present, but without including t_0. (For example: [*Oh, there you are!*] *What have you been doing?*)

The following sentences further illustrate the threefold distinction:

I've received e-mails from her before, you know. *(indefinite reading; the full situation lies completely before t_0)*

Someone has opened the window! *(similar)*

[I know my way around here because] I've been working for this firm since 1998. *(continuative reading: I am still working for this firm.)*

I've had this car for a long time. *(continuative reading: I still have the car in question)*

[Hello, Tom! It's a long time since I last saw you.] What have you been doing? *(up-to-now reading: the question concerns the addressee's actions during the complete pre-present period, but these actions are not continuing at t_0)*

Three weeks have elapsed since then. *(up-to-now reading: the reference is to a duration-specifying situation which fills the entire pre-present)*

"How many times has Bill seen Sharon this week?" – "Bill's seen her three times." *(up-to-now readings of the subtype which in 5.4.7 we will call the 'number-quantifying constitution reading': both speakers are concerned with the question how many times Bill has seen Sharon in a period leading up to now. This means that they are not concerned with the occurrence of one or two full situations at some indefinite time(s) in the pre-present but rather with the situational constitution of a specific period leading up to now. In other words, speaker A asks speaker B to 'measure' the period leading up to now by counting the number of actualizations in it. Speaker B does so in his reply.)*

[Helen is going through a depression. I know because] I've seen her three times this week [and each time she talked about how bad she felt.] *(indefinite reading: the speaker's concern in this sentence is not with the situational constitution of the period leading up to now, i. e. with the number of actualizations in this period, but with adducing evidence for the claim that the speaker knows that Helen is going through a depression.)*

The last two examples illustrate an important point: the indefinite, continuative and up-to-now readings are W-interpretations that are allowed by the semantics of the present perfect but which the present perfect does not suggest on its own. Which reading is intended must be clear from the context (i. e. either from elements inside the sentence – e. g. an adverbial, the (non)homogeneous representation of the situation – or from the context in which the sentence is used).

5.4.2 The three temporal W-interpretations that can be assigned to a present perfect clause are represented in Figures 5.2–4. (The circles around t_0 are meant to visualize the fact that the pre-present zone does not include t_0, but leads up to it. The horizontal slanting line in Figure 5.4 means that the full situation covers both the pre-present zone and t_0.)

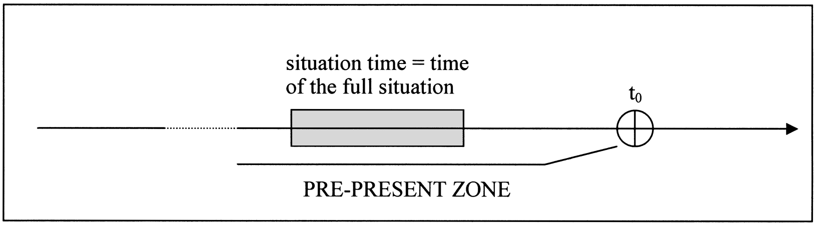

Figure 5.2. Representation of the indefinite reading.

5.4.3 It may be necessary to reiterate that in the examples given in 5.4.1 the three readings concern the times of the full situations. They are therefore W-

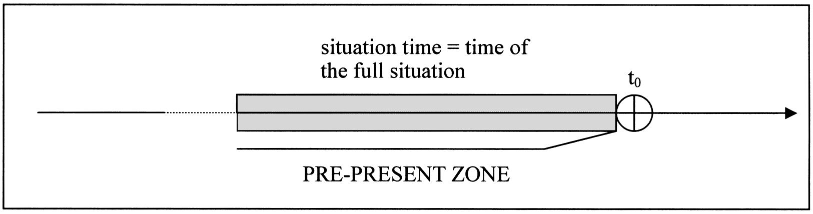

Figure 5.3. Representation of the up-to-now reading.

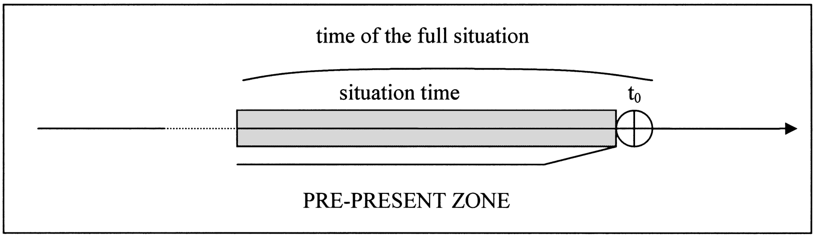

Figure 5.4. Representation of the continuative reading.

interpretations. Whichever interpretation is selected in connection with the time of the full situation, the semantics of the present perfect is always ‘The situation time is located in the pre-present zone’, i. e. ‘The pre-present zone contains the situation time’. As noted in 5.2.3, this leads to two possible T-interpretations, viz. ‘situation time wholly before t_0’ (= ‘the time of the predicated situation is included in the pre-present’) and ‘situation time up to t_0’ (= ‘the time of the predicated situation is co-extensive with the pre-present’). Each of the three context-dependent W-interpretations has to fit in with one of these.

5.4.4 The following is a **summary** of what has been said so far about the temporal W-interpretations:

(a) The *indefinite reading* implies that the time of the full situation (and hence the situation time) is located at some indefinite time in the course of the pre-present and does not include (or coincide with) the terminal point of the pre-present, which lies right before t_0. This is the W-reading that corresponds with the T-interpretation ‘The situation time is included in the pre-present’.

The indefinite reading means that the full situation is interpreted as W-bounded and thus the predicated situation time is the same as the full situation (i. e. the predicated situation occupies the same interval as the full situation) and is interpreted as over at t_0. This is true not only if the present perfect form is nonstative and nonprogressive, as in *He has played football*, but also if the present perfect form is stative, as in *I've been happy*, or progressive, as in *I've sometimes been watching a film on TV* [*when Bill suddenly rang at my door*] (where the situation functions as 'background' situation for a W-bounding intervening or interrupting situation – see section (d) of 5.3.2).

(b) The *continuative interpretation* is an instance of the T-interpretation 'The situation time is co-extensive with the pre-present'. The full situation is W-interpreted as longer than the situation time and hence as still actualizing at t_0: *Sharon has lived here since she was born* implies that Sharon still lives here. (However, as far as the tense structure is concerned, the situation time does not include t_0. The continuative W-interpretation is rendered possible by the fact that the situation time can be shorter than the time of the full situation, because *live here* is a homogeneous (atelic) verb phrase. The continuative interpretation itself is triggered by factors other than the tense structure, such as the progressive form and/or the presence of an adverbial like *since 1995* or *for two weeks now*, etc.).

(c) The *up-to-now reading* is another instance of the T-interpretation 'The situation time coincides with the pre-present'. This time the situation time is interpreted as also being the time of the full situation. The speaker makes a statement (or asks a question) about the entire (subjectively conceptualized) pre-present zone (which does not include t_0).

5.4.5 In sum, the three interpretations of present perfect clauses are W-interpretations concerning the location of the time of the full situation relative to t_0. They can be distinguished on the basis of the features given in Figure 5.5.[5]

For a good understanding of Figure 5.5, the following things should be noted:

(a) On the up-to-now reading, the time of the full situation is definite by virtue of being adjacent to t_0. As we will see in 5.4.7, the situation is often a 'hypersituation' consisting of a number of 'subsituations' (e. g. *We've been telling our customers that we would give them any information they might need*). In that case the times of the subsituations except the last one are indefinite, but the time of the hypersituation as a whole is definite.

---

[5] Note that we treat the so-called 'hot news', 'experiential', and 'resultative' interpretations of some clauses in the present perfect as usage types of the indefinite interpretation – see 5.13–5 and 5.37. Thus, the 'resultative' interpretation of a present perfect sentence like *Now she has gone to Singapore* is an indefinite reading, in spite of the presence of the definite time adverb *now*. The interpretation is indefinite because the location of the situation time in the pre-present is indefinite, i. e. the time when she went to Singapore is indefinite. The semantics of the present perfect is all about the temporal location of a situation time in the pre-present, not about the temporal location of a result, if any.

	indefinite reading	continuative reading	up-to-now reading
The situation time is conceived of as 'up to now', i.e. as including the terminal point of the pre-present (which is adjacent to t_0)	–	+	+
The time of the full situation coincides with the situation time	+ in possibility (a) in 5.3.2 ± in possibility (d) in 5.3.2	–	+
The time of the full situation includes t_0	–	+	–
The time of the full situation is definite	–	+	+ see note (a) below
The full situation is interpreted as bounded	+ in possibility (a) in 5.3.2 ± in possibility (d) in 5.3.2	– / (±) see note (b) below	+

Figure 5.5. The features of the W-interpretations of the present perfect.

(b) In a sentence receiving a continuative reading (e. g. *We've been working since 9*), the full situation is not represented as L-bounded and is not usually interpreted as W-bounded, as the full situation may easily extend beyond t_0. However, the full situation is interpreted as W-bounded if the context makes it clear that the full situation includes t_0 but does not extend beyond it. This possibility, though, is more theoretical than real, because it is pragmatically very unlikely. (Moreover, it is not easy to determine what 'full situation' means on a continuative interpretation. In section 5.7 we will make a distinction between the '*factual full situation*', which is that part of the situation up to and including t_0, and the '*potential full situation*', which is the full situation including the potential portion which continues into the post-present. Needless to say, the former is interpreted as W-bounded – with t_0 as the provisional endpoint reached – whereas the latter is not.)

5.4.6 We cannot exaggerate the importance of the statement that the distinction between 'continuative perfect', 'up-to-now perfect' and 'indefinite perfect' is a matter of temporal W-interpretation rather than of tense-structural ambiguity, i. e. that it is not true that the present perfect can express three different tense structures. There is only one present perfect tense, and its semantics (= tense structure) is always 'The situation time is contained in the pre-present'. It follows that, if for ease of reference we speak of a 'CONTINUATIVE PERFECT', we really mean a 'perfect in a clause receiving a continuative W-interpretation'. Similarly, the terms 'INDEFINITE PERFECT' and 'UP-TO-NOW PERFECT' are shorthand for 'present perfect in a clause receiving an indefinite reading' and 'present perfect in a clause receiving an up-to-now interpretation', respectively. And when we speak of 'continuative / indefinite / up-to-now meaning', we are actually using 'meaning' in the sense of 'interpretation'. The readings in question are W-interpretations, which can be provoked or excluded by the semantics or pragmatics of the linguistic or extralinguistic context. Let us illustrate this briefly in connection with the continuative interpretation:

(a) The continuative reading of *He has been working in the garden since 8 o'clock* is due to the following factors. The use of the progressive form suggests that the situation time is only some 'middle part' of the time of a larger homogeneous full situation. That middle part is interpreted as coinciding with the period leading up to t_0 specified by the time-specifying adverbial. Since the time of the full situation is longer than the situation time, and the latter leads up to t_0, the full situation is naturally interpreted as including t_0 (which is the time point adjacent to the terminal point of the pre-present zone and of the situation time), and often as extending beyond it.

(b) In examples like *I have been taller than my mother since I was twelve* the continuative reading of the head clause is the only one that makes sense. This is due to pragmatic factors. Firstly, the referent of the subject is the speaker, who must be alive at t_0 since he is speaking at t_0. Secondly, as a rule, once you are taller than your mother you remain taller than her (at least in the world as we know it). It follows that the speaker must still be taller than his mother at t_0. The addressee will therefore assign a continuative interpretation to the head clause of the sentence.

(c) In examples like *I've sung in the choir for as long as I can remember*, the duration adverbial refers to a period including t_0 and indicates the duration of the 'factual full situation' (i. e. the full situation as it has actualized over a period reaching up to and including t_0 – see 5.7).[6] In doing so the duration adverbial triggers a continuative interpretation. (The precondition for the continuative reading – that the situation be homogeneous, in other words that the situation time can be a proper subpart of the time of the full situation – is satisfied because *I've sung in the choir* refers to a permanent habit: as noted in 1.23.3, a habit is a kind of state; a state that is not represented as restricted in time by an adverbial like *until five* or *for two hours* is by definition L-nonbounded and therefore homogeneous.)

---

[6] Since this reading means that the full situation includes the entire pre-present zone plus t_0, the duration adverbial indirectly also specifies the length of the pre-present zone (which has the same duration except that it does not include t_0). In 2.22.3 we have named such adverbials which specify not only duration but also time 'bifunctional temporal adverbials'.

It may also be noted that in the discussion here we are only concerned with the continuative reading of *I've sung in the choir for as long as I can remember*. The up-to-now reading is disregarded.

(d) The same is true of examples like *She's known him for many years now*. The adverbial *for many years now* indicates a period which includes t_0. Like any duration adverbial, it specifies the time of the full situation, which therefore also includes t_0. The result is a continuative interpretation.

Apart from cases like the above ones, in which a continuative reading is invited by an adverbial and/or the progressive form and/or pragmatic factors, a continuative interpretation will not suggest itself, because the semantic structure of the present perfect does not itself invite such a reading. The idea 'The pre-present contains the situation time' does not by itself suggest that the situation time is only part of the full situation (which is a precondition for a continuative interpretation). In fact, there is nothing in the semantics of the present perfect that provides information about whether the time of the full situation extends into a time-zone, or time-zones, other than the pre-present zone in which the situation time is located. This is clear from a comparison of the following examples: the examples in (1) all invite a continuative reading, whereas the examples in (2), which are the same as the examples in (1) except that they are stripped of the progressive form and/or the time-specifying adverbial, all receive an indefinite interpretation:

(1) I have been working in the garden since 8 o'clock. *(single continuative dynamic situation)*
Mr Whorf has been our sales representative for 21 years. *(continuative state)*
He's been going to that shop for as long as I can remember. *(continuative habit: 'He's had the habit of going to that shop for as long as I can remember')*
Bridget has sung in the church choir for 15 years. *(continuative habit)*

(2) I have worked in the garden. *(indefinite reading)*
Mr Whorf has been our sales representative. *(indefinite reading)*
He's gone to that shop. *(indefinite reading)*
Bridget has sung in the church choir. *(indefinite reading)*

The only clue as to the temporal interpretation of the sentences in (2) is the semantics of the present perfect: the situation time is contained in the pre-present. Since the pre-present leads up to t_0 but does not include t_0, and since there is no indication that the situation time is only part of the time of the full situation, these sentences naturally receive a noncontinuative interpretation (i. e. the situation time does not include t_0 and is the time of the full situation). That the noncontinuative interpretation in question is an indefinite one rather than an up-to-now reading follows from the fact that a nonprogressive form is used – see 5.25–29.

5.4.7 As we will see in 5.17–19, there are various kinds of up-to-now reading. We are going to introduce them in a nutshell here because we need the terms for a good understanding of the subsections of 5.5. The various kinds of up-to-now reading all have in common that the full situation is taken to cover the entire pre-present, i. e. the full situation leads up to t_0 in such a way that it does not include t_0 and that there is no significant interval between the end of the full situation and t_0.

One type of up-to-now reading is the 'CONSTITUTION READING'. Here the speaker looks back on the pre-present to 'measure it' or to see how this period has been filled 'situationwise'. The speaker thus focuses on the situational constitution of the pre-present zone and not only on the temporal location of a situation in that zone. On the constitution reading the pre-present may be filled either by one full situation which actualizes throughout the pre-present period (but without including t_0) or by a number of full situations which (possibly in combination with gaps) form a 'hypersituation' which coincides with the pre-present but does not include t_0. In the latter case, the number of constituting subsituations may be zero, one or more.)

There are three subtypes of constitution reading, all of which are 'specificational' (see 5.20):

(a) The speaker may be concerned with the nature of the situation that is conceived of as having lasted throughout the pre-present without including t_0 (e. g. *What have you been doing?*; *Where have you been?*). In that case there is a 'NONQUANTIFICATIONAL CONSTITUTION' interpretation.
(b) The speaker may be concerned with the length of the pre-present zone and indicate this by a bounded present perfect sentence referring to a duration-specifying situation (e. g. *Nearly a year has gone by since then*). In that case there is a 'DURATION-QUANTIFYING CONSTITUTION' interpretation.
(c) The speaker may also be concerned with how many times a specific situation (or kind of situation) has actualized in the course of the pre-present (e. g. *How many times have you met him in the past week?*). In that case there is a 'NUMBER-QUANTIFYING CONSTITUTION' interpretation.

An up-to-now reading which is not a constitution reading, because it is not 'specificational' (see 5.20), will be called an 'UNMARKED UP-TO-NOW' reading. An example is *You've been thinking of something else all the time I've been talking to you about this machine.*

The label 'QUANTIFICATIONAL CONSTITUTION READING' will be used as a cover-term for duration-quantifying constitution readings and number-quantifying constitution readings.

5.5 Further arguments for distinguishing between three W-interpretations

5.5.1 The need for distinguishing between three different W-interpretations of present perfect clauses is particularly clear from the fact that one and the same present perfect form is sometimes compatible with each of the three interpretations. This is true of *have been*, which can be used in three kinds of (W-interpretation-determining) context. Compare the following:

[How much longer will I have to wait?] I *have been* here since five a.m. *(continuative reading)*

[Oh, there you are!] Where *have* you *been* all this time? *(up-to-now reading)*

Have you ever *been* in Singapore at New Year? *(indefinite reading of the subtype 'perfect of experience' – see 5.13.1)*

The American president *has been* in Beijing today. *(Nothing in the sentence represents the situation as bounded. Out of context, both a continuative and an indefinite interpretation are possible.)*

The American president *has been* in Beijing today. [Now he is on his way to Shanghai.] *(The second sentence rules out the continuative interpretation of the first.)*

The American president *has been* in Beijing all day today. [Now he is on his way to Shanghai.] *(The second sentence again rules out the continuative interpretation of the first. The presence of all day enforces the up-to-now reading.)*

Similarly, the present perfect form *have been waiting* can be used in three kinds of (disambiguating) context:

I'*ve been waiting* for her for nearly half an hour now. *(continuative reading)*

[Oh, there she is!] I'*ve been waiting* for her. *(up-to-now reading)*

[This isn't the first time I've waited for her. In fact, she's often gone on business trips and] every time I'*ve been waiting* for her when she's arrived back. *(indefinite reading)*

5.5.2 The threefold interpretive distinction has a few grammatical correlates. Firstly, some temporal adverbials are compatible with one or two of the readings only. For example:

From childhood she's had a timid character. *(continuative reading only)*

I've hated her ever *since* (*I was a child*). *(continuative reading only)*

Has she *ever* been in a foul temper? *(indefinite interpretation only)*

[I've been away for two hours, and] *all this time* you've been sitting there doing nothing! *(indefinite and continuative readings excluded)*

Where have you been {*within* / *in*} *the last four days*? *(continuative reading excluded)*

Where have you been *for the last four days*? *(indefinite and continuative readings excluded)*

I've killed three people in the past. *(indefinite interpretation only; this can only mean that there has been an occasion in the past on which I killed three people: the*

> *sentence cannot be used in answer to the question How many people have you {ever killed / killed up to now}?)*[7]

> [The way I rationalised these conflicting emotions was entirely predictable.] It's the view that I have seen expressed everywhere *ever since*: [what was offensive was not the image itself, but its blatant exploitation for a commercial purpose.] (www) *(continuative reading only)*

Secondly, there are a few syntactic constructions that are only compatible with an up-to-now reading of the constitution kind:

> It'*s been* three weeks since I last saw him.

> This is only the first time they *have met*.

These constructions will be discussed in 5.21.1 and 5.21.3, respectively.

Thirdly, there is a relation between the (im)possibility of using the progressive form (when the verb is nonstative) and certain temporal W-interpretations. The indefinite reading is incompatible with progressive aspect, except on a recency reading and if the situation in question serves as background for an intervening situation (see 5.16 and 5.25.5). Thus, in isolation *Have you written a book?* is interpreted as indefinite, and *Have you been writing a book?* as continuative, but the latter clause receives an indefinite reading in *Have you ever been writing a book when you suddenly suffered from writer's block?* (The relevance of the (non)progressive form to the temporal W-interpretations and even to functional subtypes of the up-to-now W-interpretation will be dealt with in more detail in 5.23−29.)

Fourthly, a temporal W-interpretation can be invited or excluded by the presence of a definite indication of frequency. Compare:

> We'*ve been eating* on the verandah since this spell of good weather started. *(continuative reading; the situation that is interpreted as continuing at t_0 is a temporary habit, which is a static hypersituation involving a number of dynamic subsituations.)*

---

[7] The example is interpretable as an answer to the question *How many people have you killed in the past?* only if the question is interpreted in the same way as the example has to be interpreted. In fact, neither the reply nor the question is easy to interpret. As said in the text, the example can only be interpreted as referring to a single indefinite experience of killing three people, as in

> Whenever I've been on patrol I've killed someone. I don't often manage to kill more than one person, but *I've killed three people in the past*.

(The rather bizarre nature of the context we have to conjure up gives some idea of why it is so hard to interpret the example). Now, if one interprets the question in the same way, it is acceptable:

> ["How many people do you expect to kill while you're on patrol today?" − "I don't know." − "*How many people have you killed in the past?* [i. e. on individual past occasions of being on patrol]" − "Usually only one, but I HAVE killed three people."

But the example *I've killed three people in the past* cannot be used as an answer to *How many people have you killed in the past five years?* or *How many people have you ever killed?*

> *We'*ve been eating* on the verandah three times since this spell of good weather started. *(The fact that the number of subsituations is specified rules out the habitual interpretation.*[8] *The reading that a static hypersituation is still continuing at t_0 is therefore not available, and neither is an indefinite reading or a quantificational constitution reading. The latter two would require a nonprogressive verb form.)*
>
> We'*ve eaten* on the verandah three times since this spell of good weather started. *(The continuative reading is again unavailable. If the sentence is taken to answer the (overt or covert) question 'How often have you eaten on the verandah since this spell of good weather started?' it receives an up-to-now reading. This up-to-now reading is of the subkind which in 5.4.7 we have called the 'number-quantifying constitution' reading, i.e. the reading on which the speaker specifies the number of subsituations making up the hypersituation leading up to now. If the speaker is not so much concerned with the exact number of times the situation has actualized as with the fact that it* HAS *actualized, the intended interpretation is an indefinite one.)*

See sections 5.23–29 for a detailed treatment of the connection between (non)-progressive aspect and the three W-interpretations.

Fifthly, in a complex sentence, a head clause in the present perfect may sometimes support a subclause using a RELATIVE TENSE, i.e. a tense which relates the situation time of the subclause to the situation time of the head clause rather than to t_0. (A tense relating a situation time directly to t_0 by locating it in the past, pre-present, present or post-present is an ABSOLUTE TENSE.) It appears that relative tenses can be used in subclauses depending on a present perfect head clause which receives an indefinite reading or up-to-now reading, but not after a head clause using a present perfect which receives a continuative reading – see 2.17 and chapter 9:

> Has he ever told you that he had been beaten up by his father? *(indefinite reading of the head clause; had been beaten up represents the beating as T-anterior to the telling.)*
>
> [It's disastrous that the stock market has crashed.] We'*ve been reassuring* our customers that this wouldn't happen in the near future. *(unmarked up-to-now reading of the head clause; wouldn't happen represents its situation time as T-posterior to the reassuring, which has now come to an end.)*
>
> So far he has kept quiet about what {happened / has happened /*had happened}. *(continuative reading of the head clause; had happened cannot be used to represent the subclause situation as anterior to the keeping quiet: we have to use one of the 'absolute' (see 2.15.2) tense forms happened or has happened instead.)*

---

[8] A habitual interpretation always requires that the total number of subsituations should not be specified. This is even true of past habits expressed by *used to* or *would*: unlike *I (often) used to meet him that summer* and *We would occasionally play together*, the sentences **I used to meet him thirteen times that summer* and **We would play together three times* are ungrammatical.

5.5.3 It is also interesting to note that in other Germanic languages, the continuative perfect reading can (or must) be expressed by the present tense, while the present tense cannot express the indefinite reading or an up-to-now interpretation. The following examples are from Dutch:

> Ik ken hem al vele jaren. *(continuative reading; the literal English translation is *I know him for many years.)*
>
> Ik {heb dat nooit geweten / *weet dat nooit}. *(indefinite reading; the literal English translation is I {have never known / *never know} that.)*
>
> [Ik ben net verhuisd, maar] ik {heb tot nu toe in Londen gewoond / *woon tot nu toe in London}. *(indefinite reading; the literal English translation is [I have just moved but] I {have lived / *live} in London until now.)*

5.6 Summary of the meaning(s) and W-readings of the present perfect

5.6.1 The pre-present zone should not be assumed to be conceived of as leading up to *and including* t_0. The pre-present zone does not include t_0, but many sentences in the present perfect are interpreted as referring to a (full) situation that includes t_0. There is no contradiction between these statements because it is a general rule that locating a situation time in a particular absolute zone (i. e. past, pre-present, present or post-present) does not exclude the possibility that the time of the full situation also includes (part of) another zone. (Remember the discussion of *Ten minutes ago John was in the library.* [*Perhaps he still is*.] in 1.44.2.)

Neither does the claim that the pre-present does not include t_0 clash with the observation that the present perfect is often accompanied by a 'bifunctional' adverbial which is interpreted as referring to, and indicating the length of a period that not only lasts up to t_0 but also includes it, e. g. *for two days now*, *from childhood*, *since 1998*. (We speak of **bifunctional adverbials** because they specify both duration and time – see 2.22.3.) In *I've known her from childhood*, the adverbial indicates the duration of the full situation and at the same time specifies the Adv-time leading up to t_0 (= the pre-present), which contains the situation time in terms of coincidence. This is in keeping with the semantic principles 'The time of the full situation contains the situation time' and 'The pre-present contains the situation time', where 'contain' each time means either inclusion or coincidence.

5.6.2 The semantics of the present perfect is such that it represents a situation time as contained in the (subjectively conceived) pre-present. Since containment means either coincidence or inclusion, and since the pre-present does not include t_0 (but stops right before it), it follows that the situation time also fails to include t_0. This does not prevent the time of the *full* situation from being W-interpreted as including (i. e. as continuing at, and possibly beyond) t_0. As with any other tense, the semantics of the present perfect concerns the temporal location of the situation time, not the temporal location of the full situation.

5.6.3 The semantics of the present perfect allows two T-interpretations: 'The situation time lies wholly before t_0' and 'The situation time is co-extensive with the pre-present' (= 'situation time up to t_0'). In the former case there is some interval of time between the situation time and t_0; in the latter case the endpoint of the situation time is adjacent to t_0. The indefinite reading is of the former type, the continuative and up-to-now readings of the latter. (Irrelevant gaps between the situation time and t_0 are disregarded.)

5.6.4 As far as the W-relation between the time of the full situation and the pre-present time-zone is concerned, clauses in the present perfect can receive three different temporal W-interpretations: an indefinite, continuative or up-to-now reading. (It is the time of the full situation rather than the situation time alone that is relevant to the temporal W-interpretation(s) of a clause. This is because a full temporal W-interpretation depends not only on the semantics of the tense – i. e. the location of the situation time – but also on other factors, such as adverbials and aspectual, contextual and pragmatic factors.)

(a) The **indefinite interpretation** is the W-reading that corresponds with the T-interpretation 'situation time before t_0'. The situation is taken to actualize at some indefinite time (or times) in the course of the pre-present; there is a non-negligible interval of time between the actualization(s) and t_0. Examples are *I have been in Paris too* or *Have you ever been reading a thrilling book* [*when you were interrupted by a visitor*]*?*.

(b) On the **continuative interpretation** the speaker's message is taken to be that the full situation not only covers the entire pre-present period but also includes t_0. This means that the situation time coincides with the pre-present, but that the full situation, which is homogeneous, is longer and also includes t_0 and possibly extends into the post-present.

(c) On the **up-to-now reading**, the time of the full situation coincides with the situation time, which itself coincides with the pre-present time-zone. All three have an 'up to now' meaning: they lead up to t_0 but do not include it, and there is no relevant gap between the time or period and t_0.

III. More on the continuative reading of the perfect

5.7 The ‘factual full situation’ *vs* the ‘potential full situation’

On a continuative reading, the full situation may continue beyond t_0. We therefore distinguish between the ‘factual full situation’, i. e. the portion leading up to and including t_0, and the ‘potential full situation’, i. e. the full situation including the potential portion following t_0.

A continuative interpretation of a present perfect sentence means no more than that the full situation is taken to start before t_0 and to continue at t_0. It leaves open the possibility that the full situation does not continue beyond t_0 as well as the possibility that the full situation extends into the post-present.

> Ever since the death of his wife he has been in that pub for at least six hours a day. *(The sentence leaves vague whether this continuative temporary habit will continue into the future or not.)*
>
> We’ve been waiting for two hours. *(This sentence can be followed either by I’ve had enough; I’m leaving, which implies that the waiting will not continue beyond t_0, or by Let’s give him one more hour, but then we’re leaving, which implies the opposite.)*

Examples like these render it necessary to distinguish between the factual portion of the full situation and the full situation itself. We will use the labels ‘FACTUAL FULL SITUATION’ and ‘POTENTIAL FULL SITUATION’ to refer to these two possibilities. On a continuative reading, a duration adverbial specifies the length, not of the potential full situation but of the factual portion of it, i. e. the portion of it whose terminal point is t_0. If the potential full situation is homogeneous, it can extend beyond t_0, in which case it consists of a part which is factual at t_0 and a part which is ‘not-yet-factual’ at t_0. (Anything that follows t_0 belongs to a possible world which is not yet factual at t_0.)

It follows that a present perfect clause involving an NP that renders the full situation heterogeneous (e. g. *I have written two letters*) cannot receive a continuative interpretation: in that case there is no potential full situation that is homogeneous and can extend beyond t_0. It also follows that if a present perfect clause is rendered L-bounded by a bifunctional adverbial specifying a period reaching up to (and including) t_0, as in *I have been here for two hours now*, only the factual full situation is L-bounded (the boundary in question being t_0). The potential full situation, which also includes the not-yet-factual (potential) part, is interpreted as W-nonbounded.

5.8 Conditions for the continuative W-interpretation

5.8.1 When the present perfect sentence is used out of context, a continuative reading normally suggests itself only when there is an adverbial indicating the relevant period leading up to now. Compare:

I have lived here. *(indefinite reading)*

I have lived here since 1989. *(continuative reading strongly invited)*

Similarly, the following example cannot be interpreted, as it stands, as continuative.

I have been shampooing this poodle.

The only interpretation here (without further context) is: 'In the period leading up to now I have been shampooing this poodle and have very recently stopped doing so'. (This is an up-to-now reading.) When there is a contextual or adverbial indication of a period leading up to t_0, a continuative interpretation is possible, provided it is allowed by the context. Compare:

I *have been shampooing* this poodle for half an hour [and I'm still trying to rinse the soap out of its fur]. *(continuative reading)*

I *have been shampooing* this poodle for half an hour. *(continuative reading)*

["Your dress is crumpled. How come?"] – "I *have been shampooing* the poodle. [As a result my dress was soaked, but at least the poodle is clean now.] *(up-to-now reading)*

["What have you been doing for the last half-hour?"] – "I *have been shampooing* the poodle. *(up-to-now reading)*

5.8.2 A second condition for the continuative W-interpretation to arise is that the factual full situation must not be represented as bounded. The only exception to this is the case in which the situation is only represented as bounded due to the presence of a time-specifying adverbial and that adverbial, while it specifies the length of the factual full situation, does not exclude the possibility of there being a potential post-present part of the full situation. In such a case, while the full situation is bounded at t_0, it is at the same time potentially unbounded beyond t_0.

I have worked here for nearly fifteen years. *(The sentence receives a continuative interpretation. The time-specifying adverbial specifies a period which is bounded by t_0.)*

I have lived in a small flat until now. *(The time-specifying adverbial specifies a period up to now and implicates that the situation is seen as closed off, i.e. bounded. Because it is suggested that the situation will not have a potential post-present part, a continuative interpretation is unlikely. The normal reading is the unmarked up-to-now one.)*

The claim that, except in examples like the above ones, a continuative W-interpretation will not arise if the factual full situation is represented as bounded is illustrated by examples like the following.

I *have written* a book since I started university. *(indefinite interpretation only)*

I *have walked* three miles since I left. *(up-to-now reading only)*

I *have marked* three exam papers since breakfast. *(up-to-now reading only)*

These sentences combine a telic VP with a nonprogressive verb form. As explained in 1.49.1, such a combination always triggers an L-bounded reading. If we try enforcing a continuative interpretation by adding an adverbial like *ever since*, *for the last ten minutes*, etc., to the above sentences, the result is ungrammatical:

*I *have written* a book ever since I started university.

*I *have marked* three exam papers for the last ten minutes.

*I *have walked* three miles ever since I left home this morning.

Using the progressive form renders such sentences acceptable if there is a suitable continuative interpretation (in which the progressive situation is seen as nonbounded):

I *have been writing* a book ever since I started university. *(= I've been working on a book …)*

For the last ten minutes I *have been marking* three exam papers. *(This is acceptable on a continuative reading implying that the marking is not finished – either each paper is not fully marked or the three papers are seen as a unit and at least one is not fully marked.)*

I *have been walking* three miles a day ever since I left home. *(This is grammatical as an expression of a continuative habit – see 5.24 below. The idea of repetition comes from a day, which can therefore not be omitted.)*

5.8.3 The requirement that the full situation should not be interpreted as bounded implies that a continuative W-interpretation will not arise if it is blocked by a context imposing a W-bounded interpretation of the full situation, and that it has to be discarded at once if it is cancelled by the context following the clause. For example, the continuative reading is the unmarked reading of [*Since she left Bristol,*] *Caroline has lived in London*, but it is blocked when the speaker specifies other places where Caroline has lived in the relevant period: *Since she left Bristol, Caroline has lived in London, Glasgow and Southampton*. Similarly, the continuative reading is the unmarked interpretation of *Jane has been supplying John with heroin*, but it can be cancelled by the context, as in *Jane has been supplying John with heroin,* [*but now she can no longer afford to*].)

5.8.4 When the situation referred to is a repetitive habit (which is a static hypersituation – see 1.23.3), the continuative interpretation is ruled out if the precise number of subsituations making up the hypersituation is specified. This too has to do with the criterion of nonboundedness, since a specification of the number of subsituations automatically renders the clause bounded. Compare:

> We'*ve been eating* on the verandah since this spell of good weather started. *(continuing temporary habit – see 5.24.1 below)*
>
> *We'*ve been eating* on the verandah eight times since this spell of good weather started. *(Of course, we can say We've eaten on the verandah eight times since this spell of good weather started, but this clause receives an up-to-now reading, not a continuative one. As we will see in 5.19.1, the up-to-now reading in question is a 'quantificational constitution reading': the sentence answers the (overt or covert) question 'How often have you eaten on the verandah since this spell of good weather started?')*

The reason for this constraint is the following. Since a continuative reading in which the (potential) full situation may extend beyond t_0 requires the sentence to be W-nonbounded, this reading cannot be assigned to a sentence specifying the exact number of times a telic situation has been repeated in the pre-present, because such a specification entails a bounded (more specifically: bounded-repetitive – see 1.49.1) reading. This explanation is also in keeping with the fact that a bounded representation of a situation is incompatible with an adverbial enforcing a continuative reading:

> *I *have written* three books ever since I entered university. *(Compare with I have written three books so far, which is grammatical but cannot receive a continuative interpretation.)*
>
> *I *have come* to this shop thirteen times for years. *(Compare with I've come to this shop thirteen times since then, which receives a noncontinuative reading.)*

This restriction is not affected by the use of the progressive form, because (as noted in 5.29.1) the progressive only renders the individual telic situations nonbounded, but not the series as a whole:

> *I *have been writing* three books ever since I entered university.
>
> *I *have been coming* to this shop thirteen times for years.

5.9 Factors triggering a continuative interpretation

5.9.1 Because a continuative reading means that the time of the full situation, which starts before t_0, includes t_0, many languages use the present tense to convey this interpretation. In Standard English, however, this reading requires the use of the present perfect when there is a time-specifying adverbial or bi-functional adverbial interpreted as referring to a pre-present period.

I {have lived / *live} here since 1965.

I {have known / *know} him for a very long time.

I {have already been waiting / *am already waiting} for her for two hours.

An adverbial specifying a period up to t_0 imposes the T-interpretation that the situation time is co-extensive with the pre-present and in doing so rules out an indefinite reading. The presence of such an adverbial is, however, compatible with a continuative interpretation (as well as with an up-to-now one). Moreover, there are adverbials that are compatible with the continuative reading only. Compare:

The Johnsons *have lived* in London for three years. *(This sentence in principle allows an indefinite reading, an up-to-now reading or a continuative reading. The last is the preferred interpretation if the sentence is used out of context.)*

The Johnsons *have lived* in London for three years now. *(The presence of now in the adverbial means that the period indicated can only be a period up to t_0. The continuative interpretation is therefore enforced.)*

I'*ve worked* in London since I left home. *(naturally interpreted as continuative, though the other readings are not ruled out)*

Since I left home, I'*ve worked* in London, Durham and Swansea. *(The continuative and the up-to-now interpretations of I've worked in London are ruled out by the other indications of place, at least if the latter are taken to indicate the consecutive places where I have worked.)*

I'*ve worked* in London ever since I left home. *(The continuative reading is imposed by the addition of ever to the since-clause.)*

Ever since I left home, I've worked in London, Durham and Swansea. *(Because of ever, the only possible reading is the continuative one, which implies that I have worked in London, Durham and Swansea simultaneously or alternately, but not consecutively.)*

5.9.2 When the situation referred to is a permanent (unalterable, irreversible) state, the present perfect sentence will automatically be interpreted as continuative:

He's been dead for a while. *(The indefinite reading is excluded because an irreversible state of affairs is L-nonbounded and cannot be interpreted as W-bounded. An attempt to cancel the continuative reading by adding but he no longer is leads to unacceptability, at least in the world as we know it.)*

5.9.3 As we will see in 5.23, when the reference is to a single dynamic (= nonstatic) agentive situation, it is often necessary to use the progressive form if a continuative reading is intended. Conversely, the progressive form often invites a continuative reading because the indefinite reading is not normally compatible with it, while an up-to-now reading usually needs a context imposing it. Compare:

I'*ve worked* hard. *(indefinite reading)*

I'*ve worked* hard for a long time. *(This allows the indefinite reading 'Somewhere in the pre-present there has been a period when I worked hard.' In the absence of the progressive, a continuative reading is possible, but only if the situation is interpreted as a continuative habit (which is a kind of state — see 1.23.3.). A habitual reading can also be an unmarked up-to-now reading if the sentence is couched in a suitable context, as in I've worked hard for a long time.* [*I retired yesterday and I'm going to enjoy my retirement*.]*)*

I'*ve been working* hard. *(Out of context, this receives a continuative reading.)*

I'*ve been working* hard for some time. *(The indefinite reading is ruled out because the sentence is progressive and contains a bifunctional adverbial. Out of context, the sentence invites a continuative reading.)*

I'*ve worked* hard since I've been a member of this club. *(Out of context, the sentence is interpreted as referring to a continuative habit.)*

I'*ve worked* hard since five o'clock. *(Out of context, the sentence is interpreted as referring to a single dynamic situation which started before t_0 and still continues at t_0.)*

The relation between the continuative perfect and (non)progressive aspect is explored in more detail in 5.23—24 below.

5.9.4 In spite of the fact that adverbials like *still*, *these days* or *nowadays* imply that the situation referred to started before t_0, these adverbials are not compatible with a continuative present perfect. The present tense has to be used instead (because the speaker focuses more strongly on what is the case at t_0 than on the fact that the situation initiated before t_0).

It's nearly dark and they {*are* still *working* / **have* still *been working*}.

He doesn't realize yet that things {*are* / **have been*} different these days.

People {*don't believe* / **haven't believed*} in ghosts nowadays.

IV. More on the indefinite reading of the perfect

5.10 Further remarks on the indefinite reading

5.10.1 A present perfect receives an indefinite W-interpretation if the sentence is taken to express that (or to ask whether) a particular situation has or has not actualized at some indefinite time in a period leading up to (but not including) t_0. The actualization, if any, is considered to be over before t_0. (Otherwise the situation would not be located at an indefinite time, for both t_0 itself and a point adjacent to it are definite times.) Such a sentence thus says either that there have been no actualizations at all or that there have been one or more actualizations, none of which includes the terminal point of the pre-present (i. e. the point immediately preceding t_0):

[I don't know whether John is here.] I haven't seen him yet.

[I'm sure] I've met that man before.

I have already fallen out with him.

[I know he's in London because] I've run across him a couple of times.

The observation that the situation time cannot reach up to the terminal point of the pre-present is in keeping with the observation (made in 5.4.1) that, on an indefinite perfect interpretation, the time of the predicated situation is by definition indefinite:[9] if a situation time reaches up to the terminal point of the pre-present, it is automatically definite because it includes a time (viz. the terminal point of the pre-present) which is treated as definite by virtue of being adjacent to t_0. The latter is the definite time *par excellence* (since it is by definition 'given').

This is not to say that on an indefinite reading the distance between the situation time and t_0 cannot be very small. Adverbials like *just* or *until recently* locate the situation time very close to t_0, but at a time which is treated as sufficiently separated from t_0 to count as an unanchored (indefinite) time. The idea of separation is especially clear when a present perfect sentence with *just* is used to express a contrast with what is the state of affairs at t_0:

["Is John in here?] – "No, he isn't, but he's just *been* here."

5.10.2 As is clear from the examples in the previous subsection, an indefinite interpretation is due to the interplay of various factors: the semantic meaning of the present perfect (= 'The pre-present contains the situation time'), the kind of situation referred to (e. g. a punctual situation cannot be continuative) and the absence of elements evoking a continuative interpretation (such as an adverbial like *for three days now*, which represents the factual full situation as including t_0) or evoking an up-to-now reading. The indefinite interpretation can also be imposed by the presence of certain adverbials denoting a pre-present Adv-time that explicitly excludes t_0 (e.g. *just, this minute, ever, before, in the past*), as illustrated by the following examples:

---

[9] In fact, the term 'indefinite reading' of the present perfect is a reflection of this phenomenon.

Have you ever been to Nicaragua? *(Here the pre-present is conceived of as being the hearer's lifetime up to t_0.)*

I don't believe I've heard about it before.

I've just received a threatening letter.

Nothing much has been done about it in the past.

There are further factors that can trigger an indefinite interpretation – see below.

5.11 The indefinite reading and temporal adverbials

5.11.1 The term 'indefinite' perfect reflects the fact that a present perfect clause can only receive the indefinite reading if it does not contain a time-specifying adverbial specifying a definite time and if it is not couched in a context referring to such a time.[10] An indefinite interpretation of the present perfect is only possible when the precise temporal location of the situation time of the bygone situation remains indefinite. The moment this location is specified, the past tense has to be used. Compare:

This morning I {got up / *have got up} at three a.m. (*At three a.m. is related to a particular identifiable day, and is therefore a definite Adv-time.*)

["I got up at three this morning. YOU've never done that in your life." – "You're mistaken.] I HAVE got up at 3 a.m. [Several times."]

In the former example *at three a.m.* indicates a definite past time at which the situation time of the situation expressed by *I got up* is located. In the second example, *at three a.m.* forms part of the description of the situation: the sequence '*I* HAVE got up at 3 a.m. Several times.' expresses that the situation time of the situation of my getting up at three a.m. has actualized on several (temporally unspecified, i.e. indefinite) occasions in the pre-present. In this case *at three a.m.* does not establish an Adv-time containing the situation time but forms part of the description of the situation whose situation time is located at some indefinite time in the pre-present.

---

[10] In the linguistic literature, the term 'existential perfect' is sometimes used in the sense of 'indefinite' perfect. It is inspired by the idea that this kind of perfect expresses that an actualization has or has not 'existed' in a period leading up to now.

The following pair of examples also illustrates the rule that (on an indefinite interpretation) the time of actualization of the situation is never specified or otherwise identifiable:

I have helped him with his papers. *(indefinite reading)*

I have helped him with his papers for two years. *(continuative or indefinite)*

The indefinite interpretation of the second example is 'Somewhere in a period leading up to now there has been a two-year period when I helped him with his papers, but that period is over now.' This interpretation only arises in particular contexts, e. g. when the sentence is used in reply to *Have you ever helped him with his papers for two years?*, meaning 'Have you ever done a two-year stint of helping him with his papers?' or 'Do you have experience of a two-year-helping-him-with-his-papers situation?'. If the sentence is used in this context, *for two years* forms part of the description of the situation itself: 'The situation of my helping him with his papers for two years has actualized at some indefinite time in the pre-present'. The duration adverbial here does not just limit a situation in time but is part of the characterization of the situation referred to. That is 'help him with his papers *for two years*' is what the speaker is saying he has done. In this respect, for two years is syntactically similar to at three a.m. in *I* HAVE got up at 3 a.m. in the second example of the previous pair of examples.

The observation that an indefinite perfect use is ruled out by a definite Adv-time indicating a bygone time is further illustrated by the following:

Have you ever helped him with his papers? *(ever = 'at any time in your life'; we cannot add a definite past time adverbial like yesterday)*

I {helped / *have helped} him with his papers until two years ago. *(By specifying the exact location of the end of the Adv-time, until two years ago indicates a bygone period whose temporal location is definite because it is anchored to t_0.)*

5.11.2 This does not mean, however, that (apart from the cases mentioned in the preceding section) an indefinite perfect can never co-occur with a temporal adverbial. For obvious reasons it can co-occur with adverbials which just denote a period leading up to now or denote an indefinite time in a period leading up to now, without saying anything about the precise location of the situation time in that period. Adverbials like *before, in the past*, *in the last year*, *latterly, of late*, etc., can be used in this way:

[Don't worry.] I have dealt with problems of this kind before.

This has often happened in the past.

Have you had an accident in the last year? *(= in the 12 months leading up to t_0)*

Latterly, the firm has had difficulties because of the recession.

Moreover, the present perfect can co-occur with the adverbials *recently*, *lately*, *just* and *this minute*, particularly in British English.

> This telegram has just arrived.
>
> I have this minute heard that the deal is off.
>
> I have recently met him.
>
> The company has been sold just lately to an engineering firm.

In this connection, the following remarks are in order:

(a) *Just* and *this minute* cannot be used in sentences made negative by *not*, except if the *not* expresses 'METALINGUISTIC' (external, contradictive) NEGATION (i. e. when the sentence is used to reject a statement to the contrary), or when the *not* only negates *just*:

> John has just arrived.
>
> ["John has just arrived."] – "John has NOT just arrived. [He's been here for hours.] *(metalinguistic negation)*
>
> ["John has just arrived."] – "John hasn't 'just arrived'. [He's been here for hours.] *(metalinguistic negation)*
>
> John hasn't just arrived. *(can only be interpreted as in the preceding example)*
>
> John hasn't JUST arrived. [He arrived a long time ago.] *(The negation has narrow scope: it only negates just.)*

(b) If *recently* and *lately* are to be interpreted as 'at some recent time within the pre-present', they can combine with *not* under the same conditions as apply to *just* and *this minute*. However, they can also be used in unmarked negative sentences if they indicate the pre-present zone as a whole rather than an indefinite time in that zone:

> There haven't been any burglaries here {lately / recently}.

(c) The four adverbials in question (viz. *just*, *this minute*, *lately* and *recently*) express recency, and might therefore be argued to refer to a time which is definite by virtue of being adjacent to t_0. However, recency is not the same thing as adjacency. English speakers apparently treat the times indicated by these adverbials as sufficiently cut off from t_0 to count as indefinite times, so that they can combine with an indefinite perfect. This is particularly clear from examples like the following:

> [If we consider how many billion years the earth has existed,] man has just appeared on the scene, so to speak.

Moreover, these recent times can also be viewed as quite separated from t_0, i. e. as past times, so that the adverbials specifying them can also combine with the past tense:

I {have met / met} him {recently / lately}.

I {have just seen / just saw} him leave the house.

I {have only this minute arrived / only this minute arrived} [and Sue already wants to know when I'm leaving!]

5.12 Indefinite readings of negative present perfect sentences

A clause triggering an indefinite perfect interpretation can be used not only to say that (or to question whether) a situation has actualized in a period leading up to now but also to say that it has not actualized in that period. The latter possibility is illustrated by the following:

[I don't know that song.] I've never heard it in my life.

We haven't met {yet / before}, have we?

It is important to see that the interpretation given to such sentences is an indefinite rather than a continuative interpretation. Thus, the correct interpretation of *We haven't read that letter before* is not 'Our not reading of that letter has lasted until now' but 'It has not happened before that we read that letter'. This is in keeping with the fact that the sentence can hardly be made progressive: ??*We haven't been reading that letter before*. As noted in 5.9.3, a continuative reading of a nonstatic sentence normally requires the progressive form (unless the reference is to a repetitive habit). An example of a progressive perfect sentence referring to a single dynamic situation and yielding a continuative reading is *We've been playing cards since 7.45 a.m.*

This is not to say that negative present perfect sentences can never be interpreted as continuative. Under certain conditions (minimally: the negator must not be *never*, and the situation referred to must be a state) they can be:

It's three months now that I haven't had a car. *(= 'The situation of my doing without a car started three months ago and is still continuing.')*

However, sentences like the following (with a dynamic VP) cannot be interpreted continuatively:

For the last three years I haven't driven a car. *(indefinite reading: 'The situation of my driving a car hasn't actualized in the last three years')*

For a fuller treatment of negative present perfect sentences, see 5.30.3 and 5.30.5.

5.13 The 'experiential perfect' use of the indefinite perfect

5.13.1 One of the typical usage types of the indefinite perfect is the so-called PERFECT OF EXPERIENCE (or EXPERIENTIAL PERFECT). In this use, the indefinite present perfect refers to the actualization of one or more W-bygone situations which are not necessarily recent but which are still 'with us' as part of our experience and knowledge.[11]

He has read a lot about their culture.

Have you read Dante's *Inferno*?

She hasn't had flu yet this winter.

Have you ever been to Japan?

It should be noted that the category 'perfect of experience' (as well as the categories 'resultative perfect' – see 5.15 – and 'hot news perfect' – see 5.14) does not belong to the same categorial distinction as the categories 'indefinite reading', 'up-to-now reading' and 'continuative reading'. While the latter three are a question of different temporal W-interpretations allowed by the present perfect's temporal T-interpretations ('situation time located in the pre-present but wholly before t_0' and 'situation time co-extensive with the pre-present zone'), the 'experiential', 'resultative' and 'hot news' readings are *functional* interpretations which belong to the array of usages compatible with the 'indefinite' temporal W-interpretation of the present perfect. It follows that we consider a sentence like *I've been to Japan* as 'experiential' in the first of the following two examples only:

[I know a bit about Japanese culture.] I've been to Japan three times. *(indefinite perfect; the speaker wants to say that a visit to Japan forms part of his present experience.)*

["How many times have you been to Japan?"] – "I've been to Japan three times." *(up-to-now reading of the 'quantificational constitution' kind – see 5.19.1; the purpose of the sentence is not to say that a visit to Japan forms part of the speaker's present experience.)*

This means that within the indefinite reading and the up-to-now reading (which are temporal W-readings) we can distinguish several functional types. Each of these functional types is a use of a present perfect clause which is meant to convey a particular interpretation (reading). This means that the terms 'interpretation' (or 'W-interpretation') and 'reading' (or W-reading' will be applied not only to the three temporal W-interpretations (W-readings) of the present perfect (viz. 'indefinite', 'up-to-now' and 'continuative'), but also to readings produced by a particular functional use. So, the functional use of the indefinite perfect to convey 'hot news' (see 5.14) will be said to give rise to a ‘hot news reading’, and we will similarly speak of an ‘experiential reading’ and a ‘resultative reading’ in connection with some uses of the indefinite perfect. In 5.17.2 we will see that the temporal up-to-now reading too is compatible with various functional readings.

---

[11] The term 'perfect of experience' is sometimes used in a wider sense, viz. as a synonym of what we call 'indefinite perfect'. Even examples of 'constitution perfects' are sometimes treated as experiential perfects. We will use the term exclusively in the way it is defined in this section.

5.13.2 *Have gone* cannot be interpreted as a perfect of experience when *go* is understood as a more or less literal verb of motion. We use *have been* instead. Compare:

> That man has been to Japan. *(= ‘That man has visited Japan at least once in his life so far.’) (This allows various pragmatically determined W-readings, e.g. ‘That man may know something about Japanese culture.’ The sentence anyhow implies that the man has returned.)*
>
> He has gone to Japan. *(The implicated resultative meaning is: ‘He is in Japan or on his way to Japan’. The sentence implies that he has not returned yet from Japan.)*

5.14 The indefinite perfect used to express ‘hot news’

Because it links a bygone situation to the present (thus expressing ‘current relevance’ – see 5.36), the indefinite perfect is the tense that is used in sentences presenting the bygone actualization of a situation as news. This means that the indefinite present perfect can have a function similar to that of an indefinite NP: as is well-known, we use indefinite NPs to introduce referents into the discourse, because definite NPs usually presuppose an already existing familiarity with their referents (or at least with their existence – see the ‘*attributive*’ use of definite NPs pointed out by Donnellan (1966)).[12]

> An American oil tanker *has been attacked* by an Iraqi fighter in the Gulf of Oman.
>
> Robert *has failed* his exam. [He’s feeling depressed.]
>
> [I’m glad to inform you that] the referees *have advised* me to accept your manuscript for publication.
>
> One of the puppies that were born this morning *has died*.

In such examples the situation lying before the terminal point of the pre-present and reported as ‘hot news’ is naturally a recent situation.

Needless to say, the reason why an indefinite perfect can be used to express ‘hot news’ is the implication of current relevance which forms an essential part of the interpretation of clauses in the present perfect – see section 5.35 below.

---

[12] A definite NP is used in an ‘atrributive’ way if the hearer is assumed to be familiar with the existence of the referent of the NP, but without being able to identify (e.g. pick out from a set) the referent in question. Thus, if the speaker assumes that the addressee knows that a murder has been committed, he can speak of *the murderer* even if he knows that the identity of the murderer is still unknown to the hearer (and possibly to himself too).

5.15 The resultative reading of the indefinite present perfect

5.15.1 The RESULTATIVE READING of the indefinite present perfect is again a functional reading: a clause with an indefinite present perfect can be used to draw attention to a present 'direct result'.

I've locked up the shop. *(resultative reading: 'The shop is locked up.')*

As explained in 5.37, a DIRECT RESULT is the resultant state that inevitably comes about when a situation is completed. For example, the completion of the action of locking up a shop automatically (and immediately) produces the state of the shop being locked up. (This need not be a lasting result, but it is there immediately after the locking up.)

5.15.2 Only present perfect sentences that receive an indefinite reading can implicate a present direct result, and even then the 'experiential use' of the indefinite perfect (see 5.13.1) forms an exception. Thus, none of the following examples implicates the persistence of a *direct* result:

Have you ever been to Greece? *(indefinite reading of the experiential usage type)*

I've been standing here for the last ten minutes. *(continuative reading)*

["What have you been doing?"] – "I've been digging the flower beds." *(nonquantificational constitution reading; note that, out of context, I've dug the flower beds would be interpreted as nonexperiential indefinite and hence as referring to a direct result.)*

Four years have passed since then. *(duration-quantifying constitution reading)*

So far I've had three jobs [and none of them lasted a month]. *(number-quantifying constitution reading)*

5.15.3 In sum, a present perfect sentence yielding a (non-experiential) indefinite reading implicates the persistence of the direct result. This entails that such a sentence can be used as an indirect way of conveying a message about the present.

A letter has arrived for you. *(message: 'There is a letter for you.')*

He has learnt to swim. *(message: 'He can swim.')*

They've cut off the electricity. *(message: 'We don't have any electricity.')*

I've been to the hairdresser's. *(message: 'My hair is done.')*

I've finished my poem. *(message: 'My poem is finished.')*

She's been bitten by a snake. *(This implicates that the injury is current, i.e. that it is not healed yet.) (Compare with She was bitten by a snake, which implicates that the injury is healed or in some other way no longer exists – perhaps she is dead – or that even if the injury is not healed it is no longer causing trouble.)*

5.16 The ‘recency reading’ of the indefinite present perfect

5.16.1 In the ‘hot news’ use (see 5.14) of the indefinite perfect the situation time is always represented as lying close to t_0. The reading produced by the ‘hot news’ use of the indefinite present perfect is therefore automatically a RECENCY READING. A recency reading can also arise in some cases where the indefinite perfect does not have the function of conveying hot news. For example, an indefinite perfect reading is also a recency reading if the present perfect combines with an adverb like *just*, *recently* or *this minute*, which establishes a recent indefinite bygone Adv-time. For example:

I’ve just met John in the street.

I have this minute heard that the deal is off.

This kind of present perfect sentence is rather special because of the nature of the adverbial. Adverbs like *just* refer to an Adv-time which would seem to be anchored to t_0 by virtue of lying ‘just before t_0’. This means that the time of the situation (‘contained’ by the Adv-time – see 2.23.1) would seem to be ‘semi-definite’ rather than indefinite. The important thing, however, is that the time is not definite, because it is impossible to say what time exactly is specified by *just*, *recently* or *this minute*: all that we know is that there is only a short interval of time between the Adv-time and t_0. However, the interpretation of ‘short’ is largely pragmatic, and may differ considerably in different contexts. Compare:

He’s crying because he’s just *fallen* off the swing.

[You can’t expect her to look happy.] She’s still grieving over her husband who’s just *died*. *(Her husband may have died several months ago.)*

[If we consider the time that has elapsed since the earth was formed,] man *has* only just *come* into being.

Because of this semi-definite meaning, *just* can collocate either with an indefinite perfect (especially in British English) or with the past tense (especially in American English). By convention, *just now*, which has a similar ‘recent indefinite past’ meaning combines with the past tense only (except when it means ‘only just’ – see 12.17.6).

If *just* combines with the present perfect, the resulting temporal interpretation is always an indefinite one. From a functional point of view, such a sentence (e. g. *I’ve just seen Sharon*) can be used to express ‘hot news’ (see 5.14) or a present result (see 5.27), but not to convey an ‘experiential reading’ (see 5.13). This means that an indefinite perfect combining with *just* always receives a ‘recency reading’ (since, unlike the experiential reading, the hot news reading and the present result reading are recency readings).

5.16.2 The fact that the indefinite present perfect has a recency use is not surprising, given that the location of the bygone situation time in the present time-sphere emphasizes that the speaker, in talking about the situation, is concerned with NOW, and given that (perhaps because of this) the default temporal location of a present perfect situation is the most recent one that makes sense in the context in question. In Br. E., the recency use of the indefinite perfect is normally signalled by an adverbial such as *just* or *recently*, or by a context which invokes a special 'hot news' use interpretation, such as *Run! The river has burst its banks*. In American English and increasingly in British English, the past tense can be used for a very similar recency meaning: *Did you wash your hands?* (In both Am. E. and Br. E., *just* and *recently* may occur with either the past tense or the present perfect, with little or no difference in meaning. This is probably because these recency adverbs are both semi-definite, in that the time that they indicate closely precedes t_0 and semi-indefinite, in that the time is nevertheless not precisely identifiable. It is possible that in Am. E. a similar duality applies when a recent situation is referred to in the absence of these adverbials, so that the past tense is possible for any situation whose proximity to speech time is evident, as in *Did you wash your hands?*).

5.16.3 As we will see in 5.25.5, a recency reading of the indefinite perfect easily allows the verb form to be progressive, except if the recency reading in question is a hot news reading, in which case the progressive cannot be used at all. Compare:

Who's the man you have just {*spoken* / *been speaking*} to? *(recency reading which is not a hot news reading)*

[Have you heard?] An American oil tanker has {*sunk* / **been sinking*} in the Suez Canal. *(hot news reading)*

I've never {*read* / **been reading*} a financial newspaper (in my life). *(experiential reading; an experiential reading is never a recency reading – see 5.16.1)*

V. More on the up-to-now reading of the perfect

In this section we go into a number of characteristics of the use of the present perfect conveying an up-to-now reading:

(a) There are two types of up-to-now interpretation, viz. the ‘unmarked up-to-now reading’ and the ‘constitution reading’. The latter may be of two kinds, viz. the ‘nonquantificational’ kind and the ‘quantificational’ one (which is either ‘duration-specifying’ or ‘number-specifying’) – see 5.17–9.

(b) One of the functions of a present perfect situation with an unmarked up-to-now reading is to convey an ‘explanatory-resultative’ message – see 5.18.3.

(c) Sentences with a constitution reading typically have a ‘specificational’ function – see 5.20.

(d) There is a hybrid type of present perfect sentence, which receives an interpretation that is a combination of a constitution reading and a continuative reading – see 5.21.3.

5.17 Functional types of up-to-now reading

5.17.1 The temporal differences between this W-reading and the other two (viz. the continuative and indefinite interpretations) have been explained in 5.4.1 and 5.4.5, where the temporal characteristics of the three readings were summarized in Figure 5.5 (repeated here).

	indefinite reading	continuative reading	up-to-now reading
The situation time is conceived of as ‘up to now’, i.e. as including the terminal point of the pre-present (which is adjacent to t_0)	–	+	+
The time of the full situation coincides with the situation time	+ in possibility (a) in 5.3.2 ± in possibility (d) in 5.3.2	–	+
The time of the full situation includes t_0	–	+	–
The time of the full situation is definite	–	+	+ see note (a) below
The full situation is interpreted as bounded	+ in possibility (a) in 5.3.2 ± in possibility (d) in 5.3.2	– / (±) see note (b) below	+

Figure 5.5. The features of the W-interpretations of the present perfect.

5.17.2 Sentences receiving the up-to-now reading may serve various functions. This means that within the up-to-now reading (which is a temporal W-reading) we can distinguish several functional types. Each of these functional types represents a use of a present perfect clause which is meant to convey a particular interpretation (reading). This means that the terms ‘interpretation’ (or ‘W-interpretation’) and ‘reading’ (or W-reading’ will not only be applied to the three temporal W-interpretations (W-readings) of the present perfect (viz. ‘indefinite’, ‘up-to-now’ and ‘continuative’), but also to readings produced by a particular functional use.

Within the up-to-now reading, we first of all distinguish between the ‘unmarked up-to-now reading’ and the ‘constitution reading’. Within the latter, we can distinguish further between a ‘nonquantificational constitution reading’ and a ‘quantificational constitution reading’. A quantificational constitution reading can be either ‘duration-specifying’ or ‘number-specifying’. In the following sections these various categories and subcategories of readings will be defined and examined.

5.18 The unmarked up-to-now reading

This functional version of the up-to-now reading is not concerned with the temporal or situational constitution of the pre-present. In this respect it differs from the functional version which we call the ‘constitution reading’ – see 5.19. In [*At last you’re here!*] *I’ve been trying to get in touch with you for days*, the second sentence receives an unmarked up-to-now reading, i. e. the situation referred to has lasted until right before the moment of speech.

Sentences which receive an unmarked up-to-now reading are often used with an ‘explanatory-resultative’ function. This means that they explain the bygone origin of a present result. For example: [*Sorry I’m dirty.*] *I’ve been cleaning the cellar.*

5.18.1 The UNMARKED UP-TO-NOW READING can be defined negatively as being the up-to-now reading which is not concerned with the temporal or situational constitution of the pre-present. The latter kind of up-to-now reading is the ‘*constitution reading*’. As will be shown in 5.19, it is typical of a constitution reading that the clause in the present perfect is concerned with how a pre-present period (i. e. a period leading up to t_0 but not including t_0) is constituted or filled ‘situationwise’. This means that the speaker is concerned either with characterizing or accounting for the entire relevant pre-present period (e. g. *I’ve been telling her for years that I would never leave her*) or with ‘measuring’ that period, either by using a clause whose situation indicates its duration (e. g. *Five years have elapsed since then*) or by counting the number of times that the same situation (or kind of situation) has actualized within that period (e. g. *I've seen her three times so far*). We will refer to the non-measuring reading as the 'nonquantificational constitution reading' and to the two measuring readings as 'quantificational constitution readings'. What they have in common is that the speaker is concerned with how the pre-present is constituted in terms of one or more situations.

In the unmarked up-to-now reading the speaker is not concerned with the constitution of the period leading up to now but merely represents a situation as actualizing throughout this period. As shown in Figure 5.5, this means that (a) the situation time is conceived of as 'up to now', i. e. as including the terminal point of the pre-present (which is adjacent to t_0), (b) the time of the full situation coincides with the situation time, (c) the time of the full situation does not include t_0, (d) the time of the full situation is definite (because it is adjacent to t_0), and (e) the full situation is bounded (nonhomogeneous).

5.18.2 In the following examples the relevant clause in the present perfect receives (or can receive) such an unmarked up-to-now reading:

> Since I left for school I'*ve been telling* my mom that I would show her how to use the computer and send e-mail, so she could keep in touch with me. (www) *(Both a continuative reading and an unmarked up-to-now reading make sense: the repetitive hypersituation of telling may or may not be still continuing at t_0.)*
>
> And for years I'*ve been telling* people that someday noise would be assimilated into mainstream pop music, and it's already starting to happen. (www) *(similar)*
>
> *(said by someone coming in from the garden)* [I'm going to wash my hands.] I'*ve been working* in the garden.
>
> [Representative Jo Ann Emerson recently announced Dec. 13 as the day traffic is anticipated to cross the new Bill Emerson Memorial Bridge. "We couldn't be more excited about this," said MoDOT District Engineer Scott Meyer.] "We'*ve been telling* the public the bridge would be opened by the end of the year [and we are very pleased to finally have an anticipated date for the bridge completion]." (www)
>
> *(The speaker suddenly interrupts his story and says:)* You'*ve been thinking* of something else all the time I'*ve been talking* to you.
>
> [At last you're here!] I'*ve been trying* to get in touch with you for days.
>
> Are you the idiot who *has been blowing* his horn for the last ten minutes?
>
> *(uttered during the examination)* The boys *have been preparing* for this examination for the last fortnight.
>
> *(George Bush Jr. speaking about the CIA-boss who has just resigned)* He *has been* a very good and diligent boss of the agency. (www)

5.18.3 Sentences which receive an unmarked up-to-now reading are often used with an EXPLANATORY-RESULTATIVE function. (As we will see below, sentences with a nonquantificational constitution reading can also have this function.) For example:

> [Sorry I'm dirty.] *I've been cleaning* the cellar.

Such sentences explain the origin of a present result. The result in question is not a 'direct result' (see 5.37.1) which follows from the completion of the telic situation of cleaning the cellar. This direct present result (= the cellar is clean now) can only be suggested by *I've cleaned the cellar*, which receives an indefinite interpretation. If the progressive is used, which is seldom possible on an indefinite reading (see 5.25) but obligatory (with dynamic verbs) on an unmarked up-to-now reading, the implicated present result is one which does not presuppose completion of the situation but which comes into being while the pre-present situation is unfolding. Thus, *I've been cleaning the cellar* does not convey the message 'The cellar is clean now' (though it implies approachment to that direct result, i. e. the cellar is cleaner now than it was) but is used to explain an indirect result, e. g. why my hands are dirty, or why I am feeling cold, etc. That is, the reference is to a situation that has recently actualized and has produced an indirect result which is still apparent at t_0. The indirect result in question does not follow from the completion of the situation, but is produced by the pre-present situation while it is in progress. (This explains why the perfect has to be progressive in this use – see also 5.26.2.) In most cases the indirect result is an unintended side-effect.

This use of the up-to-now perfect is called *explanatory*-resultative because the sentence in question normally has the discourse function of an explanation or excuse, or of a reproach in which the speaker gives his own interpretation (explanation) of what has happened. The following are further examples of this use. (The indirect result indicated within brackets is not necessarily the only one possible.)

> It's been snowing! *(= Look, the road is covered with snow.)*
>
> You've been working too fast. *(That's why the result is not good.)*
>
> I've been waiting for Jack. *(That's why I am late.)*
>
> You've been drinking again! *(reproach: 'You're drunk again!')*
>
> ["You look tired."] – "Yes, I've been working too hard lately." *(explaining)*

5.18.4 When it is a *wh*-question or provides an answer to a *wh*-question, a sentence with an explanatory-resultative function belongs to the 'nonquantificational constitution' type rather than the 'unmarked up-to-now' type. This is because *wh*-questions always have a '*specificational*' function: the *wh*-word represents a variable for which a value should be specified. As will be pointed out in 5.20, a constitution reading is automatically a specificational up-to-now reading, as in the following examples:

> What *have* you *been using* this knife for? [It's got blunt and rusty.]
>
> "Why *have* you *been* in the kitchen so long?" – "[The dishes were dirty.] I *have been washing* them *up*."
>
> Who'*s been watering* the plants? [There's water spilt on the floor.]
>
> "Why *have* you been *crying*?" – "I *haven't been crying*. I'*ve been cutting* onions." *(All three sentences have an explanatory-resultative function.)*

There are also present perfect sentences with an explanatory-resultative function which respond to an anticipated request to account for a period up to now:

> *(said by someone passing Tom while he is sitting on a chair in his front garden)* ["Hello Tom. How are you?" – "I'm exhausted.] I'*ve been raking* leaves for three hours."

Here the speaker (= Tom) sets up a 'need to account' by asserting that he is exhausted, and then gives the reason for the exhaustion. In doing so he sets up an implicit period leading up to now in which the cause for the exhaustion has come about and then locates the causal situation in it.

5.19 The constitution readings

An up-to-now interpretation of a present perfect clause is a 'constitution reading' if the speaker is taken to be concerned with one of the following three questions: (a) 'How much time has elapsed between a bygone time and t_0?' (e. g. *Two weeks have gone by since then*); (b) 'How many actualizations have there been in the period up to now?' (e. g. *Meg has washed the elephants three times this week*); (c) 'How has the pre-present been filled "situationwise"?' (e. g. [*Oh, you're back at last!*] *What have you been doing?*).

Readings (a) and (b) are 'quantificational constitution readings': they are 'duration-quantifying' and 'number-quantifying', respectively. Reading (c) is the 'nonquantificational constitution reading'.

5.19.1 An up-to-now reading is a CONSTITUTION READING if the speaker is taken to be concerned with one of the following questions:

(a) 'How much time has elapsed between a bygone time and t_0?'. This question is answered by using the present perfect of a sentence whose situation is 'duration-specifying':

> Three years have gone by since that accident [and I still haven't seen a penny!]

In such sentences the situation is DURATION-QUANTIFYING, i. e. the situation referred to in the sentence is the specification of the duration of the interval separating two times. (In this case the times in question are the time of the accident, which is also the beginning of the conceptualized pre-present zone, and t_0.)

(b) ‘How many actualizations have there been in the period up to now?’

> You are the third colleague who has asked me this question today. *(The speaker is concerned with the situational constitution of the pre-present, more specifically with the question how many times a particular kind of situation has actualized in it.)*

In such sentences the situation is NUMBER-QUANTIFYING.

(c) ‘How has the pre-present been filled ‘situationwise’?’

> [Oh, you’re back at last!] What have you been doing? *(The speaker wants to know what action(s) of the addressee has/have filled the pre-present. This action or these actions is or are viewed as leading up to t_0 but without continuing at t_0.)*
>
> [Ah, there you are!] Where have you been? *(The question concerns the addressee’s whereabouts during the complete pre-present period that the speaker has in mind, but the state of the addressee being somewhere else is not viewed as continuing at t_0.)*
>
> [Jim appears to be suffering from culture shock because he’s just come home from Africa.] He has been travelling through Ethiopia, Sudan and Chad. *(The speaker is concerned with the nature of the situations constituting the pre-present trip which has led to Jim’s present suffering from culture shock. Since the pre-present zone is conceived of as the time of the trip, the speaker can be said to be concerned with the situational constitution of the pre-present zone.)*

In each of these three cases (a)–(c), the speaker ‘looks back on’ the pre-present (from his own temporal standpoint, i. e. t_0) and evaluates it. This evaluation may be a measuring of the pre-present by indicating either its length or the number of subsituations making up the (hyper)situation that coincides with the pre-present. It may also be a specification of the nature of the situation(s) that has/have filled the pre-present. In all three cases the speaker is concerned with the situational constitution of the pre-present zone. We will therefore refer to a reading of one of these kinds as a CONSTITUTION READING. This sort of reading is a kind of up-to-now reading. This means that it differs from the indefinite and the continuative readings in that the time of the full situation fills the entire pre-present but does not include t_0. (As is typical of up-to-now readings – see Figure 5.5 –a constitution reading is always a bounded reading: the (single or repetitive) full situation is taken to come to an end before t_0, with no relevant time interval between the end of the situation and t_0.) Since the above readings (a) and (b) have to do with ‘measuring’ the pre-present situation (and the pre-present period with which it coincides), we will call these readings QUANTIFICATIONAL CONSTITUTION READINGS. Reading (c) will be referred to as the NON-

QUANTIFICATIONAL CONSTITUTION READING. As will be explained in 5.20.1, the latter reading differs from the unmarked up-to-now reading in that it is 'specificational'.

5.19.2 The following examples further illustrate the NONQUANTIFICATIONAL subtype:

> "[Oh, there you are.] What *have* you *been doing*?" – "I'*ve been putting* the children to bed." *(Both the question and the answer concern the nature of speaker B's action(s) during the pre-present period when he was absent.)*
>
> "[Oh, there you are.] Where *have* you *been*?" – "I'*ve been* in the attic. [It needed cleaning.]" *(similar)*
>
> *(uttered at a school reunion)* "What *have* you *been doing* for the last twenty years?" – "I'*ve been raising* three children and *establishing* a multinational corporation."
>
> ["After years of hard soil (…) my front lawn has become very soft. (…) Is it possible that critters like say red ants has [sic] colonized my yard and loosened up the ground soil in the process?"] – "Aside from the ants what *have* you *been doing* to that soil that might make it that way? If you *have been adding* organic matter over the years that may help explain what is going on." (www)

In each of these examples, the questions form a request to account for a pre-present period. The perfect forms in both the questions and the replies refer to situations which, possibly in combination with other situations, have 'filled' the relevant period.

5.19.3 The QUANTIFICATIONAL uses of a present perfect yielding a constitution reading are illustrated by the following:

> Nearly four years *have elapsed* since his accident. *(duration-quantifying)*
>
> ["How many times *have* you *met* him?"] – "So far I'*ve met* him {once / three times}. *(number-quantifying)*
>
> ["How many times *have* you *met* him?"] – "So far I {*have* never *met* him / *haven't met* him} at all." *(number-quantifying; the number is zero)*
>
> That is the first word he *has said* to me today. *(number-quantifying)*
>
> You're the third student who'*s fallen* asleep in the library this week. *(number-quantifying)*
>
> ["How many students *have fallen* asleep in the library this week?"] – "THREE students *have fallen* asleep in the library this week." *(number-quantifying)*

There are a couple of things to be noted here. First, as is clear from the second and third examples, the number of times that a situation has actualized in the relevant period leading up to now may be zero, one or more. Secondly, the claim that the constitution reading (which is one of the functional readings compatible with the temporal up-to-now W-interpretation) and the indefinite

W-interpretation are context-dependent interpretations (like the continuative W-interpretation) is corroborated by the fact that the same sentence can receive different (temporal or functional) interpretations in different contexts:

> [“*Have* you ever *met* John?”] – “So far {I’*ve* never *met* him / I *haven’t met* him}.” *(indefinite interpretation)*
>
> [“How many times *have* you *met* John?”] – “So far I {I’*ve* never *met* him / I *haven’t met* him} at all.” *(quantificational constitution reading)*

In the former example, speaker A is only concerned with the question whether or not the situation of speaker B’s meeting John has actualized at some time(s) in an implicit pre-present period. B’s answer is ‘no’. In the second example, speaker A *presupposes* that B has met John in the pre-present and asks him how many times this has happened. Speaker B’s reply is that scanning the pre-present does not reveal a single instance of such an encounter, which implies that speaker A is wrong to presuppose that at least one such encounter has taken place.

5.19.4 All constitution readings share the characteristic that the situation filling the pre-present may consist of a number of SUBSITUATIONS forming one HYPERSITUATION:

> [“What have you been up to since I last saw you?” – “Quite a lot.] I’*ve been raising* three adopted children and *running* a small company. And *I’ve had* holidays in Italy, Greece and Sweden. And, most of all, I’*ve been looking* after my husband, [who would be totally lost without me.]” *(nonquantificational constitution reading; what situationally constitutes the pre-present is actually a set of subsituations.)*
>
> Three years have passed since the child went missing, [and the police haven’t found out anything at all.] *(duration-quantifying constitution reading: we can say that Three years have passed refers to a hypersituation consisting of three subsituations of one year passing. The speaker treats the three years as ‘one period’, viz. the length of the hypersituation, rather than as three individual years.)*
>
> [“How many books has she written?”] – “So far she’s written four.” *(number-quantifying constitution reading)*

Of course, the hypersituation may contain gaps between the subsituations, but these gaps are considered negligible. (In this respect, pre-present hypersituations are like habits: *I always go to school on foot* does not imply that the speaker is actually walking at t_0.) Moreover, we can speak of a ‘hypersituation’ the moment there is at least one subsituation and one gap. Let us illustrate this with the sentence *I have published only one article so far*. This sentence (which receives a number-quantifying reading) refers to a hypersituation because not only the actualization of the one situation referred to but also the nonactualization of other (potential) subsituations is taken into account. This is because this number-quantifying constitution reading is paraphrasable as ‘There are *n* subsituations in the pre-present', which allows the hypersituation to involve gaps in between the actualizations of the subsituations or to consist of only one subsituation surrounded by gaps or even of one gap and zero subsituations (as in [*"How often have you met him since then?"*] – *"I haven't met him at all since then."*). In other words, what determines this kind of constitution reading is that the speaker expresses the result of scanning the entire pre-present for situations actualizing within that period. Whether the result of counting the number of actualizations is zero, one or more is irrelevant: in all cases, the hypersituation that is 'measured' fills the entire pre-present period (indicated by *so far* or *since then* in the above examples). The same is true if the measured hypersituation is expressed in a 'duration-quantifying' form, as in *Six weeks have passed since then* or *Only a week has passed since the accident* or *Not even a week has passed since his funeral* [*and his relatives are already quarrelling over the heritage*]. The only difference is that in this case the hypersituation does not include any gaps.

It should be noted that this analysis does not imply that speakers *perceive* sentences like *Only a week has passed since the accident*, *I've written only one article since then* or *I've been running a small company* as referring to a hypersituation. Ordinary language users do not take irrelevant gaps into account and do not treat single situations as potentially repetitive. However, on the level of linguistic analysis, we sometimes need to acknowledge the existence of gaps, so that there is nothing wrong with speaking of a hypersituation even if there is only one subsituation, as long as there is the theoretical possibility of the hypersituation involving several subsituations and gaps. (This does not alter the fact that the unmarked interpretation of 'hypersituation' is 'repetitive (or otherwise complex) situation consisting of several subsituations'. In what follows we will therefore avoid speaking of 'hypersituation' if there is only one situation or no situation at all, except when the term is really indispensable for constructing a particular argument.)

5.20 The specificational function of the constitution reading

Any type of constitution reading of a present perfect clause is a 'specificational' reading, i. e. the speaker specifies a value for a presupposed variable.

5.20.1 Let us begin by defining the term SPECIFICATIONAL SENTENCE. A declarative sentence is specificational if it specifies a 'VALUE' for a presupposed 'VARIABLE' (= 'an x'). This is similar to the solution of an equation in algebra: given that '4x = 24', you can work out that the value satisfying the variable x is 6.

Similarly, in the pseudo-cleft *What I gave him was a* BOOK, there is a (presupposed) variable ('the x that I gave him') and the sentence specifies the value 'a book' for this variable. The same happens in the cleft sentence *It was a* BOOK *that I gave him* and in the inverted pseudo-cleft *A* BOOK *was what I gave him*, as well as in *I gave him a* BOOK (with contrastive focus on *book*). The value is the 'focus' of the declarative specificational sentence. It contrasts with all the potential values which are not said to satisfy the variable.

A *wh*-question is automatically specificational because it asks the addressee to specify a value for a variable: *What did you give him?* The 'x' of the variable is represented by the question word. The sentence *What did you give him?* presupposes the existence of 'an x that you gave him' and asks for the specification of a value for this variable: its logical form is 'x = ?' (or, more explicitly, 'The x that you gave him = ?'). The variable is the 'focus' of the specificational question. It needs stressing that only *wh*-questions are inherently specificational. *Yes/no*-questions like *Has he arrived yet?* do not ask for the specification of a presupposed variable.[13]

A sentence that does not have a specificational function is referred to as 'PREDICATIONAL', i. e. it merely says (or asks) something about the referent of the constituent functioning as topic (theme) of the sentence. An example of this is *John has already read this book*, provided there is no contrastive (= extra heavy) accent on one of the constituents. A contrastive accent is typical of a specificational reading.

5.20.2 The distinction between specificational and predicational sentences is a functional distinction. Most sentence types allow either interpretation. Thus, any affirmative sentence or *yes/no*-question can in principle be read specificationally or predicationally, depending on whether it contains a contrastive accent or not. Compare the following sentences:

John has always known about their affair. *(predicational sentence receiving a continuative perfect reading)*

It is JOHN who has always known about their affair. *(specificational sentence with a continuative reading of has known in the variable 'the x who has always known about their affair')*

JOHN has always known about their affair. *(same interpretation: specificational sentence with a continuative reading of has known in the variable 'the x who has always known about their affair')*

---

[13] *Yes/no*-questions can also be specficational, viz. when they concern the truth of a specficational statement. In a *yes/no*-question like *Was it a book that you gave him?* the speaker asks if it is true that a particular value (in this case: a book) satisfies the presupposed variable (in this case: 'the x that you gave him').

Similarly, compare the following:

> Have you written a letter to him? *(predicational sentence receiving an indefinite perfect reading)*
>
> Have YOU written a letter to him? *(specificational sentence with an indefinite perfect reading of has written in the variable 'the x who has written a letter to him')*

Wh-questions, by contrast, are always specificational because the question word represents a variable for which a value should be specified. Because they are specificational, *wh*-questions in the present perfect naturally receive a constitution reading, even though the clause representing the presupposition (which is typical of specificational sentences) can yield a continuative or indefinite interpretation:

> Since when has he been living here? *(The presupposition 'He has been living here (for some time)' yields a continuative reading, but the specificational sentence as a whole asks for duration-quantifying information and therefore receives a quantificational constitution reading. A suitable reply will specify the duration of the situation up to* t_0*.)*
>
> What has happened to you? *(The presupposition 'Something has happened to you' yields an indefinite reading, but the specificational sentence as a whole asks for specification of the nature of the relevant situation(s) in the pre-present and is therefore given a nonquantificational constitution reading.)*

5.20.3 A sentence providing an answer to a (covert or overt) *wh*-question is also specificational, so that, if the present perfect is used, its only possible interpretation is the constitution reading. This is illustrated by the following examples:

> "[Ah, there you are. Where have you been?"] – "I'*ve been* in the shed." *(= 'The x where I have been is: (in) the shed.')*
>
> "[Well well. I see you're back at last. Where *have* you *been* (until now)?]" – "I'*ve been talking* to the neighbours." *(The question Where have you been (until now)? carries the presupposition 'You have been somewhere', which creates the variable 'the x where you have been'; this implicitly evokes the variable 'the x that you have been doing (while you were there)' and it is for this variable that the reply sentence specifies a value: 'The x that I have been doing is: talking to the neighbours'.)*
>
> It *has been* exactly SIX years since he stopped answering my letters. *(The sentence states '[It {is / has been} x years since he stopped answering my letters] + [x = six]'. There is no clear difference of interpretation between this and 'The number of times he has answered a letter of mine in the last six years is zero', in which 'The number of times ...' represents the variable and the value assigned to it is 'zero'. Both readings are obviously constitution readings.)*
>
> SIX YEARS *have elapsed* since that accident. *(constitution reading; the presupposition of the specificational sentence is 'there is a time x that has elapsed since that accident', while the assertion is 'x = six years'.)*

5.20.4 The fact that present perfect sentences providing an answer to a (covert or overt) *wh*-question are always specificational and receive a constitution reading does not mean that a present perfect sentence giving quantificational information is automatically specificational and receives a constitution reading. This is clear from the following:

> [I know Brazil well because] I *have been* there six times. *(This sentence is predicational and receives an indefinite reading: the speaker is not so much concerned with the exact number of times he's been in Brazil as with the fact that he knows Brazil well as a result of having been there a number of times.)*
>
> ["Have you ever been to Brazil?"] – "I've been there SIX times. *(This sentence is specificational and receives a quantificational constitution reading: this time the speaker* *is* *concerned with the exact number of times he's been in Brazil.)*

The first example shows clearly that quantificational information can be provided in a predicational sentence. In that case there is no presupposed variable for which a value needs to be specified and there is no implication that the quantificational information has been obtained through scanning the pre-present (see 5.19.3, where this is mentioned as a diagnostic). In sum, there is no quantificational constitution reading. The second example, by contrast, shows how an indefinite reading can be overlaid by a constitution reading. In the given context, *I've been there* SIX times is read something like 'Yes, I have been to Brazil – in fact x times [x = six]'. In this paraphrase, the first clause receives an indefinite interpretation and functions as presupposition for the rest of the paraphrase, which can be read as 'the number of times I've been to Brazil is: six', which is a specificational sentence producing a constitution reading.

5.20.5 It is clear from the latter example that the constitution reading can be added to an indefinite reading. The following sentence shows how it can be added to a continuative interpretation:

> ["For how long has he been living here?"] – "He's been living here for only a WEEK!" *(The answer is given a quantificational constitution reading because it specifies the duration of the pre-present. The implicit presupposition 'He has been living here (for some time)' yields a continuative reading.)*

In this example, the reply is read as 'The time that he has been living here is: only a week'. The NP 'the time that he has been living here' presupposes 'he has been living here for x time', which receives a continuative interpretation. Because of the specificational nature of the sentence as a whole, this reading is overlaid by a constitution reading (more specifically, a duration-quantifying interpretation).

5.21 Two-clause specificational sentences combining two readings

There are three types of specificational sentences consisting of two clauses that combine an indefinite or continuative interpretation with a kind of constitution reading. The first type consists of sentences like *It {is / has been} three weeks since he has been around*, which we call '*since*-clefts'. The second type is illustrated by *It is only since 1989 that I have been in contact with my cousins in the west*, the third by *This is the first cigarette I have smoked today.* In this section we examine the special features of these three hybrid structures.

There are a couple of specificational constructions consisting of two clauses at least one of which is in the present perfect. The clause representing the presupposition (i. e. introducing the presupposed variable) receives either an indefinite or a continuative reading, while the head clause, which specifies a value for the variable, yields a constitution reading.

5.21.1 One of them is what we can call the ***SINCE*-CLEFT**, i. e. an *it*-cleft construction whose second clause is introduced by *since* (rather than by *that* or by a *wh*-word, as in *It was John {who / that} did it*). The highlighted (focused) value constituent is always an indication of duration:[14]

It's been three weeks since I *have heard* from him.

It's been a long time since I*'ve had* a decent meal.

The head clause, which can also make use of the present tense *(It's three weeks …)*, is clearly duration-quantifying. The *since*-clause receives an indefinite reading: it is concerned with the question whether a situation has actualized in a period up to now.

It is interesting to note that a condition for the use of the present perfect in the *since*-clause is that the situation referred to is potentially repeatable: the sentence implies both that the situation referred to in the *since*-clause actualized a certain time ago and that it could have actualized again at any time (or at various times) in the pre-present period following its actualization – see the end of this section for a theoretical remark on this condition. Compare:

---

[14] This is also true in similar examples in which *since* is not a conjunction but a preposition, as in *It's been fifty years since the beginning of the civil rights movement for black people*.

> It's five years since I've had an accident. *(This is another way of saying I haven't had an accident for five years, which implies both that I had an accident five years ago and that I might have had one or more accidents since then but have not had any.)*
>
> It's five years since I {had / *have had} that accident. *(With the present perfect this would be another way of saying *I haven't had that (particular) accident for five years, with a similar implication of repeatability: 'I might have had that accident at any time in the period since I had it.' However, this implication is unacceptable because one specific accident cannot happen more than once.)*
>
> It's five years since I {had / *have had} my accident. *(The present perfect is unacceptable because the idea of repeatability which it would express is unacceptable: the sentence would be interpreted as 'I had my accident five years ago and I might have had that accident again at any time since then'. The second part of this reading is unacceptable: I cannot have 'my accident' more than once.)*

Similarly:

> It's (been) five years since I've seen him. *(implies 'I haven't seen him for five years'. The situation is 'repeatable' in the sense that it could have actualized (once or several times) in the specified pre-present period.)*
>
> It's (been) five years since I {saw / *have seen} him on the 20th anniversary of his marriage. *(The situation of seeing him on the 20th anniversary of his marriage is not repeatable.)*
>
> It's (been) five years since {I last saw him / *I've last seen him}. *(Last blocks the idea of repeatability.)*

In sum, a *since*-cleft with the present perfect in the *since*-clause is a special specificational construction which can be used to express two readings at once: the speaker specifies the length of the pre-present and at the same time says that a situation has not actualized in that period.

> It's (been) a year since we've been in the cellar. *(specifies the length of the relevant period leading up to t_0 and expresses that there has not been an actualization of the since-clause situation in that period.)*

The condition that the *since*-clause of a since-*cleft* can use the indefinite perfect (instead of the past tense) only if the situation referred to is potentially repeatable fits in with other constraints on indefinite perfects, viz. the constraint that blocks the use of the present perfect of verbs of creation whose direct object refers to an effected entity (see 6.34), and the constraint which (on the whole) blocks the indefinite present perfect in clauses referring to dead people (see 5.34):

> That cottage {was / *has been} built by my grandfather.
>
> Shakespeare {didn't live / *hasn't lived} in Scotland.

Still, repeatability cannot be an over-all condition for indefinite perfects generally, as the constraint in question does not apply to indefinite perfect clauses that receive a recency reading, as in [*Have you heard the news?*] *John has died!* (which is an example of a present perfect clause with a 'hot news' function – see 5.14).

5.21.2 Apart from *since*-clefts, there are also ordinary *it*-clefts highlighting the duration of the pre-present:

> It's since 1968, not since 1986, that I've known Jack. *(The speaker corrects a previous statement that he has known Jack since 1986. The that-clause receives a continuative interpretation.)*
>
> It's been three weeks now that I haven't heard from him. *(indefinite reading of the that-clause)*
>
> It's only three days that he's been dead [and the heirs are already quarrelling among themselves]. *(continuative reading of the that-clause)*

This type of sentence is a normal *it*-cleft with a durational adverbial as focused constituent. The head clause each time expresses the specificational speech act 'X is: [indication of period (which is the length of the pre-present zone)]' in the same way as a constitution perfect does on a duration-quantifying reading. The *that*-clause, which represents the presupposition of the specificational construction, receives either a continuative or an indefinite interpretation. In the first example, the *it*-cleft combines the message 'I have known Jack since x' with the assertion 'x = 1968 (not 1986, as you said just now)'. The corresponding noncleft specificational construction is the simple (= one-clause) sentence *I've known Jack since 1968* (with the nuclear accent on *1968*).

Like any *it*-cleft with a truly specificational function, the kind of cleft illustrated by the above examples normally requires that the value specified for the variable (in this case: the measure phrase) should contrast with other potential values which are not selected. (It is only when the value constituent is anaphoric and the new information is expressed in the *that*-clause, as in *It's since then that I've been feeling ill*, that the value constituent need not be contrastive. However, in that case the *it*-cleft is not truly specificational.) Hence the difference in acceptability between the following:

> ??It is since the fall of the Berlin Wall in 1989 that I have been in contact with my cousins in the west.
>
> It is only since the fall of the Berlin Wall in 1989 that I have been in contact with my cousins in the west. *(Only creates a sense of contrast between 1989 and earlier times.)*
>
> ??It's only since 2003 that I have been living here.

Of the first two examples, only the version with *only* is fine, because *only* implies 'This could have happened earlier but has only happened since the fall of the Berlin Wall in 1989'. In other words, because of the presence of *only*, 1989 is contrasted with earlier times. However, out of context *??It's only since*

2003 that I have been living here is odd because its default reading is ‘I haven’t been living here long, in fact (only) since 2003’ rather than ‘I could have lived here before 2003 but have only lived here since 2003’.

In sum, in the sentences that are unacceptable (in isolation), the phrases that are supposed to function as the value of a specificational sentence are unsuitable values because they are not clearly contrastive. This renders the sentences unacceptable. However, this problem does not arise if the sentences are used in a suitable context inviting a ‘contrary to expectation’ reading (which is a kind of contrastive interpretation), irrespective of whether it is the value constituent that is contrastive or the variable constituent:

> [It isn’t since I moved to Berlin,] it’s since the fall of the Berlin Wall that I have been in contact with my cousins in the west. *(Since the fall of the Berlin Wall contrasts with since I moved to Berlin, which is echoic: someone has intimated that it is since I moved to Berlin that I have been in contact with my cousins in the west.)*
>
> [“You have been working in this town since 2003?” – No, I’ve been working in this town since 1998.] It’s since 2003 that I *have been* LIVING here. *(Here the relevant contrast is to be found in the variable constituent.)*

Two further things should be noted here:

(a) If the highlighted constituent of the cleft is a *since*-constituent, the *that*-clause sometimes evokes a mixture of indefinite and continuative reading:

> [She was Ellen Leicester, and Mr. Castonel ran away with her, and she died. That was last spring,] and it’s since then that Mr. Leicester *has got* so ill. (www)
>
> [Let me recap the everyday story of teacher training folk, just the edited highlights. I’ll begin in the 1980s after the Robbins period. (...)] It’s since then that much has gone wrong, since then that the confusion *has set in*. (www)
>
> [Unfortunately, the American company I was working for, pulled all of their development out of the UK last year. While I could have had a job with them in the USA, I didn’t really want to bring my children up over there, so I accepted redundancy.] It’s since then that I’*ve discovered* just how bad the IT sector is at the moment. (www)

The forms *has got*, *has set in* and *have discovered* are indefinite perfects in the sense that the literal meaning of *get (ill)*, *set in* and *discover* is inchoative: these (more or less punctual) situations constitute the beginning of a longer period. However, the above sentences foreground the full resultant states (of Mr. Leicester being ill, of there being a state of confusion and of ‘my’ knowing how bad the IT sector is at the moment) rather than the initial point of these states only, so that the indefinite reading is rejected in favour of a continuative state interpretation. (In the first example there is surely no possibility that Mr Leicester could be well at speech time, which there ought to be if the meaning were purely indefinite.)

(b) As noted in 5.20.2, cleft sentences alternate with other types of specificational structures, some of which consist of one clause only. Thus, there is no difference of interpretation between the following:

[“Who did this?”] – “It was Maud who did this.”

[“Who did this?”] – “MAUD did this.”

In the same way, there is no interpretational difference between the following:

It’s four weeks that she’s been missing now.

She’s been missing for FOUR weeks now.

Both sentences are interpreted in terms of a presupposition ‘She’s been missing for x time’ (which receives a continuative reading) plus a specificational speech act ‘x = four weeks’ (which reminds us of a constitution reading). The only difference between the two examples is that in the cleft sentence the presupposition and the specification are encoded as two separate clauses, whereas they are encoded within the same clause in the noncleft version.

5.21.3 There is another special type of construction in which a constitution reading is combined with a continuative reading.

When a present perfect sentence receiving a constitution reading expresses the number of times a (kind of) situation has actualized in the pre-present, the situation referred to by the present perfect tense form is a ‘hypersituation’ consisting of several ‘subsituations’ – see 5.19.4. In that case it is possible that the last of the subsituations is still in progress at t_0.

This is the third time I {*have watched* / *am watching / *watch / *have been watching} this film. [I like it.]

The cigarette I’m smoking now is the third I {*have smoked* / *am smoking / *smoke / *have been smoking} today.

This is the first cigarette I {have smoked / *am smoking / *smoke / *have been smoking}. *(The set of subsituations here is a singleton. The one subsituation in question is actualizing at t_0.)*

It is telling that neither the present tense nor the progressive form can be used in the relative clause of such examples, even though the last (or even only) subsituation is interpreted as in progress at t_0. This is because of the quantificational constitution interpretation:

(a) The speaker does not use the present tense because his primary concern is not with the fact that a subsituation is actualizing at t_0 but rather with the question of how many subsituations have actualized in the pre-present. That the time of the full situation whose situation time is located at the end of the pre-present may include t_0 is not expressed by the perfect, which only expresses that the situation time of the hypersituation is contained in the pre-present. (In this case 'contain' is interpreted as 'coincide with'.) The present perfect says nothing about the possible continuation of the full hypersituation into the present. In the above examples the idea that the last subsituation of the full hypersituation includes t_0 is evoked by the use of *This is* … or by *The cigarette I'm smoking now is* … .)

(b) Because a quantificational constitution reading is always W-bounded (see 5.4.5 and 5.19.1), the progressive form (which triggers L-nonboundedness) is incompatible with such a reading. This is why we cannot say **This is the third cigarette I've been smoking today*, even if the last subsituation is in progress at t_0 – see also 5.29.2–3.

However, in the following paragraphs we will draw attention to an exception to principle (a). An exception to principle (b) will be discussed in section 5.29.2–3.

There is one apparent exception to rule (a): the present tense *can* be used if it represents the post-present actualization of a situation as pre-determined by present circumstances. (This use of the present tense has been discussed in 3.8–9.) The following example illustrates this:

> This is the last visit I {*am paying* / *have paid / *have been paying} you. [You will never see me again.]

In this type of sentence the presently ongoing situation again forms part of a pre-present series. However, the speaker no longer focuses on the idea of 'pre-present series' – the idea of how many times a situation has actualized in a period leading up to t_0 – but is concerned with the post-present. The predominant idea is not that there have been similar situations before the present one but that there are not going to be any similar situations after this. This means that the present tense form *am paying* refers to the future rather than to the present: it is an instance of how a present tense can be used as a 'futurish' form to refer to the post-present (see 2.9). The above example therefore expresses something like 'I am not paying you any more visits', which can come close in meaning to 'I refuse to pay you any more visits'. This use of the present tense is further illustrated by the following:

> This is the best meal we'*re giving* you. [So make the most of it.]
>
> This is the worst meal we'*re giving* you. [So don't despair.]

In both cases the present tense refers to the post-present: 'You will not be given a {better / worse} meal than this'.

There are two further pieces of evidence supporting this analysis. Firstly, sentences like *This is the first time I am paying you a visit* can only be used if the speaker is phoning the addressee, or writing a letter to him, since the addressee cannot be with the speaker at speech time. The following is a suitable context for the sentence to be used:

> [I'm coming to see you tomorrow.] This is the first time I am paying you a visit, [so I'm looking forward to meeting you.]

Secondly, replacing the progressive present tense by the nonprogressive present is only possible if the situation in question forms part of a habitual routine:

> This is the worst meal we give you.

The use of *give* is only acceptable on an understanding that the meal-giving forms part of a habitual routine, and 'you' really means 'not only you but anyone who is in your position'. This is the case, for example, in the following context:

> [Anyone who stays at this monastery for a week gets a good meal most days – for example, it's roast duck on Saturdays and beef casserole on Sundays, but on Mondays it's always boiled tripe, and here's yours. Don't worry,] this is the worst meal we give you.'

As noted in 3.8, forming part of a habitual routine is a typical instance of how a post-present situation can be viewed as 'pre-determined' and can therefore be referred to in the nonprogressive present tense.[15]

5.22 Summary of part V

5.22.1 We speak of an **up-to-now reading** if the full situation is taken to cover the entire pre-present, i. e. if the full situation leads up to t_0 in such a way that it does not include t_0 and that there is no significant interval between the end of the full situation and t_0.

5.22.2 One type of up-to-now reading is the **constitution reading**. Here the speaker looks back on the pre-present to 'measure it' or to see how this period has been filled 'situationwise'. The speaker thus focuses on the situational constitution of the pre-present zone and not only on the temporal location of a situation on the time line. On the constitution reading the pre-present may be filled either by one full situation which actualizes throughout the pre-present period (but without including t_0) or by a number of full situations which (possibly in combination with gaps) form a 'hypersituation' which coincides with the pre-present but does not include t_0. In the latter case, the number of constituting subsituations may be zero, one or more.)

---

[15] Things are different in the following sentence, where *give* is not used as a futurish form (establishing a post-present domain) but as a 'pseudo-absolute' present tense form expressing simultaneity in the post-present domain established by the head clause (see 9.17.3):

> [You will get some food tonight.] This will be the first and only meal we *give* you today.

5.22.3 There are three subtypes of constitution reading:

(a) The speaker may be concerned with the nature of the situation that is conceived of as having lasted throughout the pre-present without including t_0 (e. g. *What have you been doing?*; *Where have you been?*). In that case there is a **nonquantificational** constitution interpretation.

(b) The speaker may be concerned with the length of the pre-present and indicate this by a bounded present perfect sentence referring to a duration-specifying situation (e. g. *Nearly a year has gone by since then*). In that case there is a **duration-quantifying** constitution interpretation.

(c) The speaker may also be concerned with how many times a specific situation (or kind of situation) has actualized in the course of the pre-present (e. g. *How many times have you met him in the past week?*). In that case there is a **number-quantifying** constitution interpretation.

In all three constitution readings, the time of the full situation coincides with the situation time (= the time of the 'predicated' situation), which coincides with the pre-present zone, which does not include t_0. This means that the full situation is always W-interpreted as bounded: in each case the right boundary is the point of time immediately preceding t_0.

5.22.4 An up-to-now reading which is not a constitution reading is an **unmarked up-to-now reading**. Sentences receiving this reading often have an **explanatory-resultative** function.

VI. The relation between the W-readings and (non)progressive aspect

5.23 (Non)progressive aspect and a continuative nonhabitual reading

A continuative interpretation is by definition a *progressive interpretation* (even though stative verbs do not allow the use of the progressive *form*): the full situation that started before t_0 includes t_0, i. e. is still in progress at t_0.

It is therefore not surprising that, when the conditions for using the progressive form are satisfied (minimally: the verb phrase is compatible with the progressive form and the reference is not to a permanent habit or characteristic), a present perfect sentence referring to a single situation which is to be interpreted as continuative normally uses the progressive form, though this 'rule' is less strict if a continuative interpretation is anyhow enforced by an adverbial like *ever since* or *for the past two hours*. This is illustrated by the following examples:

John has been working on his dissertation for two hours. *(continuative)*

John has worked on his dissertation for two hours. *(indefinite reading possible)*

John has worked on his dissertation for the past two hours. *(continuative)*

In sum, if the speaker refers to a dynamic (= nonstatic) situation and wants to express progressive meaning – in this case: the idea that the pre-present situation is still ongoing at t_0 – he will normally use the progressive form. This is in keeping with the Gricean Maxims. A speaker will not normally be understood as wanting to represent a dynamic situation as still continuing at t_0 if he uses a nonprogressive present perfect in a context where the progressive form is grammatically possible. In other words, if the progressive is grammatically available and not used, the speaker is understood not to wish to convey progressive meaning and thus not to wish to convey continuative meaning.

5.24 (Non)progressive aspect and a continuative habitual reading

5.24.1 It is typical of repetitive habits that, irrespective of the time zone in which they are located, the progressive form represents them as TEMPORARY HABITS, whereas the nonprogressive form represents them as PERMANENT HABITS, i. e. as not restricted in time:

I'm writing poems these days. *(temporary habit)*

I write poems. *(permanent habit)*

In those days Shakespeare was writing sonnets rather than plays. *(temporary habit)*

In those days Shakespeare wrote sonnets rather than plays. *(permanent habit: in the restricted period indicated by in those days it was a permanent characteristic of Shakespeare that he wrote sonnets rather than plays.)*

The same is true when the present perfect is used on a continuative interpretation. (Remember that in the present section – section 5.24 – we are only concerned with the continuative interpretation.)

Ever since I was fifteen I *have slept* only five hours a night. *(The sentence asserts the continuative repetition of the situation of the speaker sleeping only five hours a night, which constitutes a continuative permanent habit.)*

I *have been sleeping* ten hours a night since we have been on holiday. *(The continuative repetition of situations is taken to constitute a temporary habit.)*

Jimmy, 41, a former pit worker at the Bevercotes colliery, in Ollerton Nottinghamshire, *has looked* in vain for work ever since. (www) *(Ever since enforces a continuative reading. The progressive form is not used, because the speaker treats Jimmy's looking for work as constituting a permanent habit rather than a temporary habit or a single nonhabitual situation.)*

It is the same mixture of cunning and inspiration which *has helped* Morita's business career to prosper ever since. (www) *(similar)*[16]

He *has used* his physical shortcomings to advantageous effect ever since. (www) *(Ever since enforces a continuative reading. The reference is not to a single situation of using physical shortcomings to advantageous effect but to repeated use of this device, which has become characteristic of the referent of the subject NP. By using has used the speaker represents that characteristic as a permanent habit. He could also have used has been using, which would have represented the habit as still temporary.)*

We'*ve* only {*been working* / ?*worked*} as waiters for four days, [so we haven't acquired a lot of experience yet].

[I'm ninety-two and] I {*have had* / ??*have been having*} long walks in the country since I was four.

I {*have written* / *have been writing*} books ever since I started working at the university. *(In this case each subsituation is telic because the underlying proposition is 'I write a book'. However, the habitual hypersituation as a whole is not telic, because a habit is a state. The use of the nonprogressive form therefore does not represent the situation as L-bounded and forms no obstacle to the continuative interpretation.)*

---

[16] One might object to our speaking of a habit here because the speaker does not attribute a habit to the referents of the coordinate subject NP. (He could hardly do so because these referents are inanimate.) However, this is beside the point. What counts is that it has been characteristic of Morita's business career that it has prospered 'ever since'.

5.24.2 In sum, the use of the progressive form is the rule if the repetitive habit is to be explicitly represented as temporary (rather than permanent), i. e. as restricted in time, as covering a relatively short period leading up to t_0. One reason why a habit may be seen as temporary is that it is seen as induced by volatile rather than stable factors (and may therefore easily come to an end). Compare:

We've {*been eating* / $^?$*eaten*} outside since the weather became hot. *(relatively short period; the habit started only recently and will come to an end as soon as the weather conditions change)*

We've {*eaten* / $^?$*been eating*} outside ever since we came to live here twelve years ago. *(permanent habit; the habit started a considerable time ago and there is no reason to expect that it will suddenly come to an end)*

The spring creeks *have been fishing* ok lately, [but we have not had enough hatch activity to get the fish feeding regularly on the surface.] (www)

5.24.3 A condition for a repetitive habit to be interpreted as continuative is that the clause (or the context) must make it clear that the reference is to a repetitive hypersituation:

I {*have been coming* / $^?$*have come*} to this shop for years. *(Have come is odd because there is nothing triggering a repetitive interpretation; have been coming can only be interpreted as repetitive – because of the combination of the progressive form and a punctual VP – and is taken to express a temporary habit continuing into the present.)*

I *have come* to this shop on the first Friday of every month for years. *(on the first Friday of every month implies repetition)*

I *have come* to this shop for my shirts ever since I came to live here last year. *(This implicates 'Since I came to live here there have been several occasions on which I have wanted to buy a shirt' and is understood as 'on each of those occasions I have come to this shop'. There is a sense of repetition here, which renders it possible to interpret have come as a continuative perfect.)*

I *have* always *come* to this shop – ever since it opened. *(Always implies repetition if the situation is punctual.)*

I *have run* the mile for years. *(This sentence is odd unless it is interpreted as 'For years I have taken part in the activity known as running the mile'. This interpretation implies repeated actualization of the situation referred to by the telic VP.)*

5.25 The indefinite reading and (non)progressive aspect

5.25.1 A present perfect sentence which is to receive an indefinite reading is not normally in the progressive form. This is because an indefinite reading is a bounded reading, while a progressive clause typically represents its situation as nonbounded. Besides, a speaker using an indefinite perfect is not so much concerned with the duration or progressiveness of the situation (or a portion of it) as with the fact that (or the question whether) the situation *has* actualized in the relevant period leading up to now. Compare:

> Has Tim worked in a colliery? *(The speaker only wants to know if the situation has ever actualized. He is not interested in the duration of the possible actualization. In all likelihood he only wants to know if Tim has had the experience of working in a colliery.)*
>
> Has Tim been working in a colliery? *(According to the context in which it is couched, this may receive a continuative reading or an up-to-now reading.)*

This does not mean, however, that an indefinite perfect is never in the progressive form. In the following subsections, several exceptions are pointed out.

5.25.2 An indefinite perfect used as an experiential perfect is not automatically incompatible with progressive meaning. There is clear progressive meaning if the situation in question is represented as a 'background' situation for another situation, or, more generally, if the context provides a vantage point from which the situation is viewed as being in progress. Compare:

> ?Have you ever been writing a novel? *(= 'Has it ever been the case that you were working on a novel (without necessarily completing it)?')*
>
> Have you ever been writing a novel [when you suddenly lost interest and decided to do something else]? *(The progressive form is impeccable because the when-clause provides a vantage point from which the situation of writing a novel (if any) is viewed as being in progress.)*
>
> ?Has Tim ever been working in a colliery?
>
> Has Tim ever been working in a colliery [and experienced a cave-in]? *(Ever enforces the indefinite reading, and the second clause provides the temporal vantage point from which the working is viewed as being in progress.)*
>
> Have you ever been writing lyrics [and found you 'watered down' what you really wanted to say]? (www)

Similarly, compare:

> Have you been working on a dissertation? *(The context should make it clear whether the continuative interpretation or an up-to-now reading is invited.)*
>
> Have you ever been working on a dissertation [and had to abandon it for some time and then return to it]? *(The indefinite interpretation is enforced by 'ever' plus the context. The sentence means 'Has there ever been a time in your life when the situation of your working on a dissertation was in progress (and then was interrupted by your having to abandon it)?')*
>
> *Have* you ever *been sitting* in the pub with no money dying for a pint or a pack of cigarettes, [then shoved your hand in your pocket and found £20 you'd forgotten about?] (www)

The temporal vantage point can be expressed by an adverbial *when*-clause, provided there is the idea of (at least the possibility of) repeated actualization in a period leading up to t_0. (When the *when*-clause refers to a single bygone situation, the past tense must be used). For example:

> Sometimes when I've entered her room *she's been crying*.
>
> Whenever I've gone into his room in the past week he *has been sleeping*. *(With whenever the idea of repeated actualization in a period leading up to t_0 is automatically present.)*

The temporal vantage point can also be provided by a 'narrative *when*-clause', i. e. a *when*-clause which does not establish an Adv-time containing the situation time of the head clause but which 'pushes forward' the action − see 13.1.3.

> *Have* you ever *been sitting* around bored, when all of a sudden a song comes on and makes you feel all tingly and good? (www)

The following example is similar, except that the narrative clause is now introduced by *and then* rather than by *when*:

> [You've never been behind someone when all of a sudden they slow down for no apparent reason and make a turn with no signal? You've never had someone change into your lane right in front of you without signalling?] You'*ve* never *been waiting* to make a right turn onto a fast road, but don't because you see someone coming, [and then only when they turn onto your road do you realize that you could have gone before he and the entire pack of cars behind him went by − if only he had signalled.] (www)

5.25.3 For some speakers at least, there are some other cases in which the progressive form is not unacceptable on an experiential indefinite reading even though there is no overt reference to a vantage point, because the sentence evokes the idea of a vantage point in some other way. The following are some examples resulting from a Google search for the form *have been waiting*:

> [I've never used Amazon for anything other than books/CDs, how do their prices compare with specialist mailorder computer places? I've never had any big delays from them, but then] I'*ve* never *been waiting* for something urgently from them. *(This is paraphrasable 'I've never been in the position of (someone) waiting for something urgently (so I've never been in the position where a couple of days extra would feel like a big delay)'. It seems to be this 'being in the position of' that provides the vantage point for the progressive.)*
>
> So considering I'*ve* never *been waiting* impatiently for any Sarah album besides Afterglow, [I tried not to have expectations of it.] (www) *(= 'I haven't been in the position of waiting impatiently for any Sarah album (as a die-hard fan would be).')*

The following example does not suggest a clear vantage point. However, it is easily paraphrased 'I've never been in the position of waiting', and the focus is on the irritation of being kept waiting, of standing around doing nothing (or rather on the minimal amount of such irritation), whilst the alternative 'I've never had to wait longer than 20 minutes' would simply report a maximum delay:

> [Queues are generally kept to a minimum, except at 2 o'clock when everyone wants to get their coat from the cloakroom, but] I'*ve* never *been waiting* longer than 20 minutes. (www)

The following sentences too encourage an interpretation along the lines of 'I've never had the experience of waiting …' in a way that a nonprogressive version would not, because it would not encourage the hearer to take a viewpoint on the waiting from inside the waiting, so to speak:

> [The entire staff has always been friendly and courteous.] I *have* never *been waiting* for anything I have ordered. (www)
>
> [They carry HL1 mods and the fancy Half-Park cartoons, they link to a neat download page with EXTREME SPEED! Fileplanet gives the schools 10 Mbit about 56 KBPS, not bad itself, but it is average, this wannabe fileplanet site rules, AUTO server chose with the least traffic,] I *have* never *been waiting* in line, [never paid a dime and gotten an Average download speed of 556 KBPS!!!] (www)

5.25.4 There may still be other types of present perfect sentences (containing an adverb enforcing an indefinite reading) in which there can be progressive meaning without explicit reference to a vantage point from which the situation is viewed as being in progress. Thus, *I have been cycling to Greece before* could be acceptable if it is uttered by someone experiencing partial and fuzzy recall, and thus wanting to make it clear that he is only able to remember some midpoint of a situation and nothing further. This is the case in the following example:

> I'*ve been cycling* to Greece before. [That is, I'm cycling to Greece now, and this has suddenly triggered a memory of being in the same situation before, but I can't remember anything about what preceded or followed the recollected moment of being in the process of cycling to Greece.]

5.25.5 The progressive form presents no problem for the 'recency use' (see 5.16) of the indefinite perfect, because adverbials like *just* or *this minute* are anchored to t_0 and can function as the vantage point from which the situation is viewed as being in progress:

> Are you quite sure you *haven't* just *been speaking* to the cryptic "K" herself? (DOC) *(Because the time of the 'speaking' is anchored by being 'just before speech time', it provides a vantage point from which the situation referred to using the progressive can be viewed.)*
>
> ["How can I help, sir? Two things, you said." — "Ah! Well, yes. That's one, isn't it?] What we'*ve* just *been talking* about. [You see, I'm jacking the job in next year, as you've probably heard?]" (DOC)

5.26 The unmarked up-to-now reading and (non)progressive aspect

5.26.1 Present perfect sentences yielding an unmarked up-to-now reading and referring to a habit use the nonprogressive form to represent the habit as nontemporary (permanent) and the progressive form to represent it as temporary (restricted in time):

> We have *always* said that the car was reliable. *(permanent habit up-to-now)*
>
> We have *always* said that the car was reliable [but we must admit that it broke down this morning]. *(permanent habit up-to-now)*
>
> We have *always* said that the car would break down some day. *(permanent habit up-to-now)*
>
> We've been telling people that the car was reliable. *(temporary habit up-to-now)*
>
> We've been telling people that the car was reliable [but we must admit that it broke down this morning]. *(temporary habit up-to-now)*
>
> We've been telling people that the car would break down some day [and it has]. *(temporary habit up-to-now)*

5.26.2 Semelfactive (= nonhabitual) situations that are in progress throughout a pre-present period (but have come to an end shortly before t_0) are referred to by means of a progressive present perfect form:

> [I'm glad he's moved away from the window.] He'*s been sitting* there for an hour [and I think the people opposite believe he's spying on them.] *(nonhabitual temporary situation up-to-now)*
>
> We have only recently discovered what *has been going on*.
>
> Someone *has been mowing* the lawn. [It looks perfect.]

5.26.3 The verb form is always progressive (if the verb allows this form) if the sentence yielding the unmarked up-to-now reading is used in an 'explanatory-resultative' way (see 5.18.3), i. e. if the sentence gives (or asks for) an explanation for a state of affairs that is an indirect (and usually unintended) result produced by the actualization of the situation referred to in the sentence. The reason is that in this use the situation is always interpreted as nonhabitual and temporary.

> ["Your hands are dirty."] – "I'*ve been working* in the garden." *(The speaker explains how the result of his hands being dirty has come about. The result in question did not suddenly come about at the end of his working in the garden but was an unintended side effect of his working which showed itself during the working situation itself.)*
>
> I've been writing a book. *(This sentence may, according to context, suggest 'That's why I am so tired', 'That's why I have seldom come to the pub recently', etc.)*
>
> ["Why are you upset?"] – "The two women over there *have been insulting* me."

These sentences have an explanatory-resultative function because they offer an explanation for a contextually given state of affairs. The explanation in question relates to an (often unintended) result which came about *while* the situation indicated by the verb phrase was in progress and *because* that situation was in progress.

As noted in 5.18.3, it is typical of the explanatory-resultative use of present perfect sentences receiving an unmarked up-to-now reading that the sentence in question has the discourse function of an explanation, excuse or reproach. The reference is to a situation that has recently actualized (but is conceived of as filling the pre-present because it is the only relevant situation in that period – see 5.19.4)[17] and has produced a result which is still apparent at t_0. The sentence has to be in the progressive form (if possible)[18] because the result in question does not follow from the completion of the situation, but is produced by the pre-present situation while it is in progress.

It follows that such sentences in the progressive present perfect can only be used if the effect which the speaker wants to express does not presuppose completeness or termination of a telic situation. The use of the progressive, indeed, does not guarantee that the situation has been properly completed. Thus, *I've been planting the shrubs* can suggest 'That is why I am tired' but, while it does not rule it out, it does not suggest 'All the shrubs are planted now'. The latter idea requires the sentence *I've planted the shrubs*, which represents the situation as both telic and bounded. In sum, while the unmarked up-to-now reading does mean that the situation has stopped at t_0, the terminal point reached does not have to be the point of completion of a telic situation. In *I've been working in the garden*, the situation is not referred to by a telic verb phrase; in the explanatory-resultative use of *I've been writing a book*, the situation is telic but the terminal point reached need not be the natural point of completion: it may also be any time preceding the natural point of completion.

---

[17] In 5.19.4 we discussed examples like *I've been raising three children and establishing a multinational corporation* – which can easily be uttered two years after the last child left home and a year after the multinational has been sold. We see no difference between this sentence uttered in response to *What have you been doing for the last twenty years?* and *I've been gardening* uttered in response to *Your hands are dirty* and telling the addressee what the speaker has been doing in order to get dirty hands. The gardening situation fills the pre-present just as well if it finished, say, two hours ago as if it finished two seconds ago – it is anyhow seen as the relevant 'filler' for the relevant period up to now. (The fact that the situation(s) mentioned need not literally fill the entire pre-present is similar to the fact that a repetitive habit can be located at t_0 even if there is no subsituation actualizing at t_0: the speaker does not have to be dancing now to say *I do ballroom dancing*. A repetitive habit is anyhow seen as homogeneous because accidental gaps are treated as irrelevant. In the same way, *I have been writing a book* (which may receive a nonquantificational constitution reading) is homogeneous even though the writer will normally have stopped occasionally to sleep, eat, etc.

[18] The following is an example in which the progressive form cannot be used because the verb is stative:

["Your hands are dirty."] – "I*'ve been* in the garden."

5.27 The nonquantificational constitution reading and (non)progressive aspect

In this section we will argue that a clause receiving a nonquantificational constitution perfect reading is always progressive, and will try to account for this.

5.27.1 A present perfect sentence triggers a nonquantificational constitution reading if the speaker is clearly concerned with the 'situational constitution' of the pre-present, i. e. with the kind of situation(s) filling the pre-present. On this reading the present perfect clause generally uses the progressive form (if that use is allowed by the verb):

> [Ah, I see you're back at last.] What *have* you {*been doing* / **done*}? (*What have you done? cannot yield the intended nonquantificational constitution reading.*)
>
> [During my first twenty years I have learnt the recorder, the violin] and until recently I *have been teaching* myself the acoustic guitar. (www) (*nonquantificational constitution reading if the sentence is used specificationally; otherwise an unmarked up-to-now reading*)

In these examples, the length of the pre-present period is to be inferred from the pragmatics of the context. In the following, it is indicated by the bifunctional adverbial *for the last twenty years* in the preceding sentence:

> (*uttered at a school reunion*) ["What have you been doing for the last twenty years?"] – "I'*ve been raising* three children and *establishing* a multinational corporation."

In examples like this, the relevant sentence responds to a request to account for a period up to now. It refers to a hypersituation involving one or more subsituations. The enumeration of the subsituations constituting the hypersituation which fills the relevant period leading up to now does not need to be exhaustive. In this case the speaker has obviously been doing many other things – the situations of child-rearing and corporation-establishing may even have come to an end – but the speaker's concern is obviously with providing an informative response to the question. The questioner is understood not to want an exhaustive list of the speaker's activities over the last twenty years but information about what we may call the relevant reportable activities. These then ‘account for’ the twenty years, and are thus treated as filling the period up to now. In other words, the subsituations mentioned are selected according to what the speaker deems relevant as filling and characterizing the period leading up to now. (This phenomenon is similar to the phenomenon that one can say *I am establishing a multinational corporation* although one is actually watching a movie at t_0.)

In the example under discussion, the perfect forms refer to situations which fill a period leading up to now that is set up by the time-specifying adverbial in the preceding sentence: *for the last twenty years* establishes an Adv-time. As noted in 2.23.1, an Adv-time ‘contains’ the situation time (in terms of either inclusion or coincidence – in this example it is in terms of coincidence). Since one of the uses of the progressive form is to express that a situation is continuous (i. e. in progress) throughout a given period, the progressive form is used to refer to the present perfect situation filling the pre-present. In sum, the only difference between (4) and (5) below is that the filled Adv-time is a past time span in (4) and a pre-present one in (5):

(4) From two to four I *was writing* a letter to our sponsors.

(5) *(uttered on coming out of the study)* For the last two hours I’*ve been writing* a letter to our sponsors.

Examples (6) and (7) are similar to (5), except that in (7) the pre-present period is to be inferred rather than being expressed by a time-specifying adverbial:

(6) What have you been doing for the last two hours? *(= ‘With what action(s) have you filled the last two hours?’)*

(7) What have you been doing? *(This implies something like ‘since I last saw you’, which could imply a period of two minutes, as in A couple of minutes ago you disappeared, but now you’ve reappeared and I can see you’ve been up to something: what have you been doing?, or twenty years, as above.)*

The fact that questions (6)–(7) can easily be put to someone who is just coming in, or has just come in, makes it clear that the progressive form is not used to trigger a continuative interpretation: the situation(s) referred to by *have been doing* are not continuing at t_0. The perfect forms do not receive an indefinite reading either, because the time at which the situation time of the hypersituation is temporally located (in terms of coincidence) is each time quite definite, since it is a period whose terminal point is adjacent to t_0 (and the latter is the most definite time conceivable, since it is the speaker’s deictic centre). The only interpretation that makes sense is an up-to-now reading. Because (6) and (7) ask for specificational information, this reading is a (nonquantificational) constitution interpretation rather than an unmarked up-to-now reading.

5.27.2 This conclusion is in keeping with the observation (made in 5.18.3) that a present perfect sentence implicating a ‘direct’ (see 5.37.1) present result receives an indefinite interpretation, which means that it refers to a bounded (complete) situation and is therefore in the nonprogressive form. Compare:

I've emptied the cesspool. *(direct result: the cesspool is now empty)*

I've been emptying the cesspool. *(The speaker does not suggest that the cesspool is empty, but may be explaining why he smells awful – see 5.18.3.)*

This means that the progressive form does not normally implicate the coming about of the direct present result of a pre-present telic situation, but can describe the pre-present situation itself. Thus, unlike *I've emptied the cesspool*, which implicates 'The cesspool is now empty' (= the direct present result of the pre-present telic situation of my emptying the cesspool), *I've been emptying the cesspool* describes the situation itself.

In other words, while the present perfect is normally nonprogressive on an indefinite reading, a nonquantificational constitution reading as a rule requires the use of the progressive form (if the conditions for its use are satisfied, e. g. the VP must be dynamic and agentive). For example, compare the sentences in the following pairs:

(a) I have been redecorating the drawing-room. *(nonquantificational constitution reading or unmarked up-to-now reading: the speaker is not concerned with a possible direct present result but with the nature of his action filling the pre-present)*

(b) I have redecorated the drawing-room. *(indefinite reading: the speaker is primarily concerned with the direct present result 'The drawing-room is redecorated now.')*

(a) ["Who's going to answer the application letters?"] – "I've already answered the application letters." *(indefinite reading: the stress is on the direct result 'The application letters do not need answering any more.')*

(b) I have been answering the application letters this morning. *(nonquantificational constitution reading or unmarked up-to-now reading: the speaker tells the hearer what he has spent this morning doing, i. e. what his pre-present actions have been.)*

(a) [So this is Christmas] and what have you done? *(from John Lennon's song Happy Christmas (War is Over)) (indefinite reading; the speaker is concerned with the direct result of the action: 'What have you achieved?'.)*

(b) What have you been doing in the past year? *(nonquantificational constitution reading: the speaker wants to know how the pre-present (= the past year) has been filled 'situationwise'.)*

(a) ["Oh, there you are.] What have you been doing?" – "I've been writing letters." *(nonquantificational constitution readings)*

(b) ["Oh, there you are.] Where have you {been / *been being}?" – "I've {written / been writing} three letters." *(nonquantificational constitution readings, but the progressive cannot be used in the question because be is used as a stative verb;*

the reply I have been writing three letters is fine because Where have you been? is reinterpreted as 'What have you been doing?'.)

In the following examples, both the question and the reply receive a nonquantificational constitution reading:

"What have you been doing today?" – "I have been studying." *(The question says: 'Tell me about your pre-present action(s).' The reply describes the action.)*

"Where have you been?" – "I've been making up the beds."

"What have you been doing?" – "I've been shopping."

5.27.3 The only case in which a present perfect sentence yielding a nonquantificational constitution reading does not have to be progressive is when it is a 'specificational' (see 5.20) question whose presupposition is formulated in the form of a clause with an indefinite present perfect. (An indefinite perfect is not normally progressive.) For example:

What {has happened / has been happening} to you? *(specificational: the speaker asks for the specification of a value for the presupposed variable 'the x that has happened to you'.)*

The presupposition 'Something has happened to you' yields an indefinite reading, but the sentence as a whole asks for specification of the nature of the relevant situation(s) in the pre-present and is therefore given a nonquantificational constitution reading (see 5.19.1). Because both aspects of interpretation are present, the verb form may or may not be progressive.

5.28 The duration-quantifying constitution reading and (non)progressive aspect

In the previous section we have seen that as a rule the progressive form needs to be used (in verb phrases that are dynamic and agentive) if the present perfect sentence is to receive a nonquantificational constitution reading, i. e. when the focus is on the nature of the situation(s) filling the pre-present. By contrast, the progressive form is never used if the present perfect sentence measures the duration of the pre-present, i. e. when it receives a 'duration-quantifying' (see 5.19.1) constitution interpretation:

Seven long years have {passed / *been passing} since the death of my wife.

Six months have {elapsed / *been elapsing} since then.

The reason for this is obvious. In the duration-quantifying reading, the sentence expresses the result of 'measuring' the pre-present. The situation referred to is therefore the state of the pre-present having a certain duration. States are not normally referred to by a progressive form. Besides, measuring the duration of a period requires considering it from beginning to end. The situation of a period having a certain duration must therefore be represented as bounded – see 1.46.2). It follows that the progressive form cannot be used, because the progressive refers to a middle part of the situation only and thus fails to represent it as bounded. (This is true irrespective of the tense used. There are very few contexts in which one can talk of seven years as being in the process of passing, whatever the tense: **Seven years* {*have been* / *are* / *were* / *will be*} *passing* {*since my accident* / *before my graduation*}. Only sentences referring to a predetermined (and 'pre-measured') situation, like a prison sentence, form an exception: *My seven years of imprisonment are passing*, [*but I still have three to go*].)

5.29 The number-quantifying constitution reading and (non)progressive aspect

5.29.1 For the same reason, the progressive form is not normally used when the sentence is to receive a 'number-quantifying constitution interpretation' (see 5.19.1), i. e. when the focus is on the number of discrete occasions on which a situation has actualized in the pre-present:

> How many times have you {visited / *been visiting} Ireland?
>
> He's {insulted / *been insulting} me three times so far!
>
> I {have eaten / *have been eating} steak tartare at least five times since we've been on holiday.

When the speaker is concerned with measuring a hypersituation by counting the number of times a subsituation has actualized (or, which amounts to the same thing, the number of subsituations constituting the hypersituation), it is very improbable that he is thinking of these actualizations as incomplete (i. e. in progress). Still, it is not impossible for the speaker to scan the pre-present for actualizations and at the same time be concerned with their on-goingness. However, this is only possible when the context provides the temporal vantage points from which the subsituations are viewed as in progress:

> Four times, I've been working on my dissertation but had to leave off doing so. (= *'So far there have been four occasions when I was in the process of working on my dissertation when I had to stop and do something else.'*)

In such sentences it is not the 'hypersituation' filling the pre-present period that is represented as in progress. On a quantificational constitution reading the hypersituation filling the pre-present is always a state. States are not normally referred to in the progressive form. If the progressive is used, it is the individual subsituations whose number is counted that are represented as in progress (as in the above example). In other words, the above example does not form an answer to 'Has the hypersituation of your-working-on-your-dissertation-four-times been in progress throughout a period leading up to now?' but answers the question 'How many times has a situation of your-working-on-your-dissertation been in progress in a period leading up to now?'. The sentence is therefore interpreted as 'So far there have been four situations of my being in the process of working on my dissertation …'.

5.29.2 As noted in 5.21.3, a sentence receiving a number-quantifying constitution interpretation sometimes refers to a series of situations, the last of which is in progress at t_0. Even in that case the perfect form must as a rule be nonprogressive, except if all the subsituations are explicitly represented as 'background situations' (i. e. if the context provides the temporal vantage points from which the subsituations are viewed as in progress):

> This is the third time I {*have watched* / *am watching / *have been watching} this programme.
>
> This is the third time I {*have watched / *am watching / *have been watching*} this programme and been interrupted.
>
> This is the third time I'*ve been watching* this programme when you've arrived. [I don't really watch this rubbish every week, you know. It's just a coincidence that the only times I've watched it, you've arrived during my watching it.] *(Each of the subsituations referred to by I've been watching this programme is a background situation.)*

These examples illustrate the following:

(a) In spite of the fact that there is a situation of watching in process at t_0, the present tense cannot be used in Standard English (while it must be used in most other Germanic languages in this type of sentence expressing a number-quantifying meaning). The fact that the speaker is concerned with the question of how many times a situation has actualized in a period leading up to now is apparently sufficient to require the use of the present perfect in English.

(b) On a number-quantifying constitution interpretation, the present perfect form which has to be used is not normally a progressive form, unless all the pre-present subsituations are explicitly represented as background situations.

5.29.3 In some cases, the 'series' of situations constituting the hypersituation (referred to in a sentence receiving a number-quantifying constitution reading) is a set which is a singleton – see 5.21.3. In that case the one and only actualization of the situation may be in progress at t_0. Even then, the tense to be used is the present perfect because a hypersituation (consisting of a gap and one subsituation) is said to fill a period leading up to now.

This is the first time you {have spoken / *are speaking} to me.

Is that the first cigarette you {have smoked / *are smoking} today?

In such examples, the progressive form cannot be used (even though the single subsituation is in progress at t_0), unless the subsituation is explicitly represented as a background situation during which another situation actualizes:

[Now that I come to think of it,] this is only the first cigarette {I've smoked / *I'*ve been smoking*} today.

[Now that I come to think of it,] this is only the first cigarette I'*ve been smoking* today [and had to throw away.]

The latter sentence means 'Of the cigarettes I've smoked today, this is the first one that I've had to throw away while I was smoking it'. This means that *This is the first cigarette I've been smoking today and had to throw away* does not make two discrete statements – 'this is the first cigarette today' and 'I've had to throw it away' – but only one: 'This is the first cigarette today I've had to throw away while smoking it'. This statement implies that the present subsituation is not the first today: there has been at least one subsituation of my smoking a cigarette earlier today which was not interrupted by my having to throw it away.

In sum, the following rules apply in the relative clause forming part of the pattern '{definite NP (e. g. *it* / *this* / *that* / *that cigarette*} + *is the* + ordinal numeral or superlative + noun head + relative clause' if the reference is to a pre-present hypersituation consisting of a number of subsituations of which the last is located at t_0:

(a) The relative clause uses a progressive present perfect form if the present subsituation is seen as background for another situation. The time of the latter situation is the vantage time from which the background situation is seen as being in progress:

This is the first letter I'*ve* ever *been writing* [and couldn't finish because of a bomb scare.]

This is the second time I {*have been speaking* / *am speaking} to him [and {have had / had} to put the receiver down because someone came into the room.]

(b) Otherwise, the relative clause uses a nonprogressive present perfect form:

This is the first time (that) she {*has gone out* / *goes out / *is going out / *has been going out} for months.

This is only the second time (that) I {*have paid* / *pay / *am paying / *have been paying) a contribution.

That's the fifth glass of champagne (that) he {*has drunk* / *drinks / *is drinking / * has been drinking} today.

The painting he's working on now is the best he {*has produced* / *produces / *is producing / *has been producing} since he started painting two years ago.

As noted in 5.21.3, the temporal interpretation of the clause in the present perfect here combines a quantificational constitution reading – the speaker is concerned with the number of actualizations in a period leading up to now – with a partly continuative interpretation: the last situation in the series is in progress at t_0. However, the quantificational constitution aspect of meaning rules out the use of the progressive, unless this form is needed to represent the individual subsituations as background situations for something else, as described in (a).

VII. Factors influencing the choice of temporal W-interpretation

5.30 The indefinite reading versus the continuative interpretation

5.30.1 As we have seen, there are present perfect sentences that can only receive a continuative reading (for one of the reasons given in 5.9) and others that can only receive an indefinite reading (e. g. because the situation time is punctual, as in *He has been shot*). In some cases the same VP in the present perfect can be used in a sentence receiving a continuative interpretation and in a sentence receiving an indefinite reading. In that case, if there is an adverbial specifying a period leading up to now (e. g. *since then*) the continuative interpretation is the unmarked reading (i. e. it is the reading that is automatically selected unless it is rendered unlikely or impossible by the context).[19] If there is no such adverbial and no contextual specification of a particular period leading up to now, only the indefinite interpretation suggests itself.

> Since 1982 John has lived in Paris. *(naturally interpreted as continuative)*
>
> Since 1982 John has lived in Paris, and in London, and in several other places too. *(The continuative interpretation of* has lived in Paris *is blocked by the rest of the sentence.)*
>
> John has lived in Paris. *(indefinite interpretation)*

5.30.2 Nonprogressive present perfect clauses containing a duration adverbial with *for* can in principle yield either the indefinite or the continuative reading. This is true of each of the following:

> John has watched TV for 3 hours. *(The continuative reading is 'It is now three hours that John has been in the progress of watching TV', while the indefinite reading is 'It has happened (at least once) in a pre-present period that the situation of John-watching-TV-for-three-hours actualized'.)*
>
> John has {played tennis / dug the garden / sat on that stool} for 3 hours.

However, an indefinite reading can be imposed by the context or by an adverb like *ever*, *before*, *yet* or *still … not*:

---

[19] The following are examples in which a present perfect sentence with *since then* receives an indefinite interpretation:
(i) Since then I *have lived* in Paris, Rome, Budapest and Oslo.
(ii) [She was Ellen Leicester, and Mr. Castonel ran away with her, and she died. That was last spring,] and it's since then that Mr. Leicester *has got* so ill. (www)
Example (ii) expresses a mixture of indefinite and continuative reading – see 5.21.2.

John has lived in Paris for three years and in Moscow for two and a half years. [For the rest he has been a Londoner.] *(indefinite reading imposed by the fact that a list of bounded situations is given)*

You *still* have*n't* {done / *been doing} what I asked you to do. *(indefinite reading)*

Has John *ever* {played tennis / dug the garden / sat on that stool} for 3 hours?

Have you lived in Paris for three years *yet*? *(= 'Has there yet been a three-year-period in your life during which you lived in Paris?')*

Have you stayed in Paris for three days *before*? *(= 'Has it happened before that you stayed in Paris for three days?')*

Conversely, only the continuative interpretation is possible in nonprogressive sentences involving a *for*-adverbial combined with an adverb like *now* or *today* which anchors the situation to t_0:

John has lived in Paris for three years now. *('For three years' indicates the duration of the 'factual full situation', i. e. the situation as it has actualized up to* t_0 *– see 5.7. The addition of 'now' entails that the full situation includes* t_0*, in other words that the sentence is given the continuative interpretation.)*

John has {watched TV / played tennis / dug the garden} for many years now. *(continuative habit)*

Today John has been our leader for exactly five years. *(continuative state)*

She's been a non-smoker for three years today. *(continuative state)*

5.30.3 If the verb is in the progressive form, present perfect sentences with a *for*-adverbial only allow an interpretation on which the situation time is co-extensive with the pre-present and therefore exclude the indefinite reading. Thus, the following all naturally yield a continuative interpretation:

John has been watching TV for 3 hours.

John has been playing tennis for 3 hours.

John has been digging the garden for 3 hours.

John has been sitting on that stool for 3 hours.

5.30.4 The adverb *never* (or *not … ever*) is also incompatible with a continuative reading. However, it allows either an indefinite or a constitution reading:

Never in my life have I worked as a waitress. *(indefinite: 'The situation of my working as a waitress has never actualized in my lifetime.')*

I've never been there in my life. *(indefinite or quantificational constitution reading, depending on the context – see 5.32.3.)*

[She's very punctual.] I've never had to WAIT for her. *(indefinite)*

["How often have you had to wait for her?"] – "I've NEVER had to wait for her." *(quantificational constitution reading: 'The number of times I've had to wait for her is zero'.)*

The incompatibility of a continuative reading with *never* is, of course, logical: a situation that has never actualized before t_0 cannot be still continuing at t_0.

5.30.5 In the absence of adverbials like those mentioned above, a negative present perfect clause invites a continuative interpretation if it refers to a state (which may be a habit) and has a context (adverbial or other) which allows a continuative reading. On the other hand, a negative present perfect clause triggers an indefinite reading if it is taken to refer to a ‘NONEVENT’. We speak of a ‘nonevent’ if a (dynamic or static) situation that is expected to actualize (or could actualize) in fact does not actualize, and this nonactualization is treated as a situation in its own right, so that it is associated with a particular time which can serve as time of orientation or anchor time for the expression of a temporal relation (as in *The terrorists left the country soon after the bomb they had hidden in the theatre did not explode*). Compare:

He *hasn't been* here for some time. *(state; continuative reading)*

We *haven't had* a car since Maggie died. *(state; continuative reading)*

We haven't visited Uncle Ben once since we *haven't had* a car. *(idem)*

[Boggs is hoping to play well this weekend and take another step towards getting the Jackets back to Omaha for the College World Series for the first time since 1994. “When I came to college, that was the top priority. It feels like] something's missing since we *haven't been* there.” (www) *(state; continuative reading) (The sentence is interpreted as ‘Something is missing and has been missing {throughout the period in which our going there hasn't taken place / throughout the period in which we haven't gone there}’. This is a continuative interpretation.)*

He *hasn't sent* the letter after all. (nonevent; indefinite reading)

The expected terrorist attack on the White House *hasn't taken* place. *(nonevent; indefinite reading)*

I've been very angry with him since he {didn't send / **hasn't sent*} the letter. *(The reference is to a ‘T-bygone’ – see 4.2.2 – nonevent. However, the present perfect cannot be used because it is a general rule that, in a temporal since-clause, the present perfect can only be used on a continuative reading. If the situation is felt to be over at t_0 we have to use the past tense.)*

5.31 The up-to-now reading versus the continuative reading

What the up-to-now reading and the continuative reading have in common is that the situation (which may be a single situation, a repetitive hypersituation or a habit) fills the whole of the contextually or pragmatically determined period leading up to (but not including) t_0. What distinguishes them is the following:

(a) On the up-to-now reading, the time of the full situation does not include t_0,[20] whereas it does on the continuative reading. For example:

I've been helping John for hours now. *(continuative: I am still helping John.)*

["Oh, there you are. Where have you been?"] – "I've been helping John. [He didn't understand his homework."] *(up-to-now reading: I'm not helping John any more.)*

(b) The use of the progressive form is partly different on the two readings – see 5.23–4 and 5.26–29 above. In fact, there are also differences within the up-to-now reading.

Let us consider the continuative reading first. Here, the sentence in the present perfect does not use the progressive form if it refers to a *permanent habit*, even if that consists of dynamic subsituations.

I've helped John for many years now.

We've always worked very hard in the past.

A continuative reading does, however, require the progressive form if the reference is to a *temporary habit* made up of dynamic subsituations and (at least in most cases) if the reference is to a single dynamic agentive situation:

I've {been helping / ??helped} John for hours now. *(The reference is to a single nonstative situation which is still continuing.)*

I've been helping John for months. *(The reference is to a temporary habit which includes t_0.)*

As to the up-to-now reading, we notice a similar use of the (non)progressive form on an unmarked up-to-now reading: the verb form is progressive if the situation is temporary and nonprogressive if it is habitual – see 5.26:

(Up to now) we'*ve been telling* people that the car was reliable. *(temporary habit)*

(Up to now) we'*ve* always *told* people that the car was reliable. *(permanent habit because of always)*

A present perfect sentence (referring to a durative dynamic agentive situation) is as a rule in the progressive form if it is to receive the nonquantificational constitution reading – see 5.27:

[At last you're there!] What have you {been doing / *done}?

["You're late!"] – "Yes. I've {been talking / *talked} with the janitor.

By contrast, a quantificational constitution reading is as a rule incompatible with the progressive form – see 5.28–29:

---

[20] With the exception of sentences of the type *This is the third cigarette I have smoked today* (spoken while the speaker is smoking his third cigarette) – see 5.21.3.

Six years have {passed / *been passing} since my accident.

It's two years since I have {spoken / *have been speaking} with him.

"How many times have you {watched / *been watching} that film?" – "I have {watched / *been watching} it four times."

(c) There are adverbials that are compatible with the continuative reading only (see 5.9.1). Compare:

The Johnsons *have lived* in London for three years. *(This sentence in principle allows an indefinite reading, an up-to-now reading or a continuative reading. The latter is the preferred interpretation if the sentence is used out of context.)*

The Johnsons *have lived* in London for three years now. *(The presence of now in the adverbial means that the period indicated includes* t_0*. The continuative interpretation is therefore enforced.)*

I'*ve worked* in London since I left home. *(naturally interpreted as continuative, though the other readings are not ruled out)*

Since I left home, I'*ve worked* in London, Liverpool and Lincoln. *(The continuative and the up-to-now interpretations of I've worked in London are ruled out by the other indications of place, at least if the latter are taken to indicate the consecutive places where I have worked.)*

I'*ve worked* in London ever since I left home. *(The continuative reading is imposed by the addition of ever to the since-clause.)*

(d) As noted in 5.9.2, when the situation referred to is a permanent (unalterable, irreversible) state, the present perfect sentence will automatically be interpreted as continuative:

He's been dead for a while. *(The indefinite reading is excluded because an irreversible state of affairs is L-nonbounded and cannot be interpreted as W-nonbounded. An attempt to cancel the continuative reading by adding but he no longer is leads to unacceptability, at least in the world as we know it.)*

5.32 The up-to-now reading versus the indefinite interpretation

5.32.1 The up-to-now reading implies that the time of the full situation (which is often a hypersituation possibly involving gaps) coincides with the situation time, which is co-extensive with the pre-present. This means that the time of the full situation leads up to t_0 without including it. In this respect the up-to-now reading differs from the indefinite reading, which implies that the pre-present situation time is located at some distance from t_0. (However, as noted in 5.1.6, if there is no temporal adverbial like *ever*, *before*, *in the past*, etc., this distance is as short as is allowed by the semantics and pragmatics of the sentence and its context. Thus, *I haven't had breakfast yet* implies 'this morning', not 'in the last week'.)

5.32.2 A point of similarity between the up-to-now reading and the indefinite reading is that they both imply that the situation time coincides with the time of the full situation. A point of dissimilarity is that an indefinite reading is seldom compatible with the progressive form – see 5.25 – whereas an unmarked up-to-now reading normally requires the progressive form (though a quantificational constitution reading forbids using it) – see 5.26–29.

5.32.3 The indefinite reading is the only one possible in present perfect sentences involving adverbs like *ever*, *yet* and *before*:

> Have you {helped / ??been helping} your daughter with her homework before?
>
> Have you ever {helped / ??been helping} your daughter with her homework?
>
> Have you {helped / ??been helping} your daughter with her homework yet?

In the absence of such an adverbial, a present perfect sentence may sometimes allow an indefinite reading as well as a quantificational constitution reading. This is the case, for example, in negative sentences involving *never*, such as *I've never seen him*. According to the context in which it is used, such a sentence can receive a different interpretation:

> ["What can you tell me about the man in this picture?" – "Nothing.] I've never SEEN him. *(indefinite reading: 'It has not happened yet that I saw the man'; the default location of the nuclear accent is on seen.)*
>
> ["How many times have you seen the man in this picture?"] – "I've NEVER seen him." *(constitution reading: 'The number of times I have seen the man is zero'. This reading is enforced by the fact that both the question and the reply are specificational sentences – see 5.20.)*

The second example can be compared with the following:

> ["How many times have you seen the man in this picture?"] – "Actually, I've NEVER seen him."

The nuclear accent is again on *never*, but this time the sentence is not used to specify the number of subsituations making up the hypersituation filling the pre-present. Instead, it is used to reject the presupposition 'You have seen the man in this picture at least once' which forms part of the interpretation of *How many times have you seen the man in this picture?*. The interpretation of the reply sentence is therefore an indefinite one: 'Contrary to what you suggest, it has not happened yet that I saw this man'. Because of this, the sentence can involve *before* or *yet*:

> ["How many times have you seen the man in this picture?"] – "Actually, {I've never seen / I haven't seen} him {yet / before}."

5.32.4 As will be noted in 5.37.5, the use of a present perfect with an indefinite reading may be an indirect way of drawing attention to a present result. Thus, *I've opened the door* can be an indirect way of saying 'The door is open'. A present perfect with a constitution reading is never used in this way (i. e. to draw attention to a present result) because its function is specificational, i. e. it is concerned with the question what value satisfies the variable – see 5.20.1. For example, in *This is the first cigarette I've smoked today* there may be a clear 'message' that the speaker has achieved a longer period than usual (or than assumed) without a cigarette, but it is not really possible to see what *result* of this being the first cigarette he has smoked today is directly implied or implicated by this utterance.

When the up-to-now reading is not a constitution reading but an unmarked up-to-now interpretation, the speaker is clearly concerned with a present result when the sentence is used with an explanatory-resultative function – see 5.18.3. However, the result is not a 'direct result', as in the case of an indefinite perfect, but an 'indirect' one – see 5.37.1.

5.32.5 If a head clause in the present perfect supports a temporal *while*-clause, its interpretation ('up to now' *vs* 'indefinite') can help to determine the choice of tense – present perfect versus past tense – in the *while*-clause.

When the head clause is to receive an up-to-now reading, the *while*-clause (whose situation time then coincides with the situation time of the head clause) must also receive an up-to-now reading and must therefore also be in the present perfect:

Has this house been deserted all the time while I {*have been* / *was} away? *(unmarked up-to-now reading of the head clause situation)*

(Both speaker and hearer enter a room, but from different sides.) What have you been doing while I {*have been* / *was} feeding the chickens? *(nonquantificational constitution reading of the head clause situation)*

This is the third cigarette I have smoked while {I'*ve been* / *I was} waiting in here. *(quantificational constitution reading of the head clause situation)*

Have all these things been fizzling away in here while we'*ve been* at the inquest? [Suppose they'd been all burnt up.] (FFFP)

What's been going on while I'*ve been gone*?

When the head clause is to receive an indefinite reading, the *while*-clause can in principle use either the present perfect or the past tense, but there are restrictions on both choices:

Has he ever mentioned his son while he {*was* / *has been*} talking to you?

Have they ever wrecked the house while their parents {*were* / *have been*} on holiday?

They've wrecked the house while their parents {$^{??}$*were* / *have been*} on holiday.

He has often tossed the ball at me while I {*wasn't / haven't been*} *looking*.

I've noticed some hair loss while I'*ve been doing* Atkins [= the Atkins diet]. (www) *(The past tense could not be used.)*

A lot of stuff has changed while you'*ve been* gone. (www) *(The past tense could also be used, especially in American English.)*

Reading a few sites on CSS has brought it home to me how much I've forgotten while I'*ve not been adding* anything to any sites. (www) *(The past tense could not be used.)*

Has anything really embarassing ever happened to you or anyone while you'*ve been performing*? (www) *(The past tense could also be used.)*

The precise rules governing the choice of tense here are not clear, but we notice the following interpretational difference between the tense options in the first example (repeated here):

Has he ever mentioned his son while he *has been* talking to you?

Has he ever mentioned his son while he *was* talking to you?

The first example presupposes that 'he has been talking to you' is true, i. e. that this is not within the scope of the question. The sentence is interpreted as 'During the time(s) that he's been talking to you, has he ever mentioned his son?'. In contrast, in the second example, the question has scope over both clauses: 'Has it ever been the case that he was talking to you and mentioned his son in the course of that conversation?'. As we will see in 9.9, it is only in the latter example that the situation time of the *while*-clause is 'temporally subordinated' (see 2.49) to the situation time of the head clause.

5.32.6 Unlike up-to-now perfects, indefinite perfects are compatible with adverbials denoting an indefinite time in a period leading up to now, without saying anything about the precise location of the situation time in that period. Adverbials like *before*, *in the past*, *recently*, *lately*, *just* and *this minute* can be used in this way:

[Don't worry.] I have dealt with problems of this kind before.

This has often happened in the past.

This telegram has just arrived.

I have this minute heard that the deal is off.

I have recently met him.

The company has been sold just lately to an engineering firm.

VIII. Factors blocking the location of a situation in a 'period up to now'

5.33 Introduction

The conceptualization of a pre-present period may be excluded by certain semantic or pragmatic elements (in the clause or in its context) which force the speaker / hearer to conceptualize the bygone period in which the situation is to be located as past rather than pre-present. In such cases we cannot use the present perfect, since, in the terminology of our tense model, the meaning (semantic structure) of the present perfect is: 'The situation time is located in the pre-present zone of the present time-sphere'. If it is impossible to conceptualize the bygone period as a 'pre-present zone', there is no possibility of using the present perfect. That is, the present perfect cannot locate a situation time in the past time-zone (which is defined as being separated from, rather than forming part of, the present time-sphere). Conversely, the past tense cannot locate a situation time in a period which is conceived of as pre-present rather than past.

5.34 Reference to entities that no longer exist

5.34.1 When the referent of the subject or of another argument NP is a person who is now dead or something that no longer exists, the situation time is normally located in the past time-sphere, i. e. in a period which is seen as 'completely over at t_0' and conceptualized as separated from the present time-sphere:

My late uncle {was / *has been} a commercial traveller.

My late uncle {never lived / *has never lived} in Spain. *(never = 'never in his life', which is a past period)*

King George IV {turned / *has turned} Brighton into a tourist resort.

Brighton {was / *has been} turned into a tourist resort by King George IV.

Keats {died / *has died} in Italy.

{Did you see / Have you seen} our latest exhibition? *(The present perfect is only acceptable if the exhibition is not yet over.)*

My father worked in a bank all his life. *(The past tense implies that my father is now dead or has retired. At any rate, all his life refers to a period which is conceived of as forming part of the past time-sphere.)*

I {played / *have played} tennis with Elvis Presley.

However, there are speakers for whom the idea of an implicit period leading up to now (i. e. a pre-present zone) is not automatically excluded by the fact that the reference is to 'bygone' people or things. These speakers accept examples like the following under certain conditions.

President Roosevelt has visited our cathedral.

Our cathedral has been visited by President Roosevelt.

For some people these sentences are acceptable, for instance, if the speaker is thinking of the many famous people that have visited the cathedral so far; or if he is discussing the topic 'American presidents and how many of them have visited our cathedral over the years', etc. At any rate, the discourse topic is not President Roosevelt but something else, and the case of President Roosevelt is just brought up as an example. Since this 'something else' (i. e. the discourse topic) implies the idea of a time span leading up to now (e. g. the history of the cathedral up to now), the speaker uses the present perfect.[21]

Speakers who accept the above examples will also distinguish between pairs like the following:

D. H. Lawrence never *lived* in Brighton. *(The speaker is concerned with the situations that Lawrence was (not) involved in in the course of his life, which is a period that is over.)*

D. H. Lawrence *has written* several excellent novels. *(The speaker is concerned with the structure of the world now. The message is that there exist several excellent novels written by D. H. Lawrence.)*

However, for many speakers the present perfect in the latter sentence is unacceptable.

5.34.2 Still, there are a few cases in which the combination of a present perfect with an NP referring to a deceased person is acceptable even for speakers who do not accept sentences like *President Roosevelt has visited our cathedral* or *D. H. Lawrence has written several excellent novels* in isolation.

(a) The first case is when the relevant NP forms part of a list of names that currently exists and is treated as relevant at t_0:

---

[21] Palmer (1974: 53) finds *President Roosevelt has visited our university* acceptable under the given conditions. However, an informal search of the internet failed to produce any examples of this kind from sources that could be identified as British English. There were, however, several from Am. E. sources. For instance:

(i) Anything which Joseph Conrad *has written* is worth reading! (www)

(ii) Jane Austen has written six major novels: *Emma*, *Mansfield Park*, *Northanger Abbey*, *Persuasion*, *Pride and Prejudice*, and *Sense and Sensibility.* [An overwhelming amount of readers have chosen their favorite Austen novel to be *Pride and Prejudice* in this poll.] (www)

A Google search yielded 193 examples of *Queen Victoria wrote* and none of *Queen Victoria has written*. And there were 237 examples of *Disraeli wrote* and none of *Disraeli has written*, except one by Trollope, presumably written during Disraeli's lifetime.

In recent years our university *has given* an honorary doctorate to Prince Charles, the businessman Jimmy Smith, and the late John Lennon. *(The sentence gives a list of names, which together with in recent years sets up a 'package' – a composite entity which exists now – of people given an honorary doctorate in recent years. Within that package it does not matter whether people are alive or dead. It also does not matter whether the honorary doctorate was given to the late John Lennon while he was still alive or posthumously.)*

Among those to whom our university *has given* an honorary doctorate are Prince Charles, the businessman Jimmy Smith, and John Lennon. *(Note the use of the present tense form are in the head clause, which is consistent with the idea of a current list.)*

This estate *has belonged* to my grandfather, it *has belonged* to my father, it *has belonged* to me, and now it is yours. *(My grandfather and father may well be dead, but they figure on the currently existing list of people who have ever owned the estate in question.)*

All the great thinkers of our time, including Einstein, *have visited* Princeton.

Listed in the Domesday Book, this castle *has been* a Norman stronghold, a royal residence for six of England's medieval queens, a palace of Henry VIII, and a retreat for the powerful and influential. (www: website of Leeds Castle)

[Along with the Single Cube, this is probably the finest surviving room in England from the mid-17th century. A perfect Double Cube, it is 60 feet long by 30 feet wide and 30 feet high. Designed by Inigo Jones as the central feature of his suite of State Rooms] it *has been visited* by virtually every British monarch since Charles I. (www)

(b) A second type of exception (to the rule that the combination of a present perfect with an NP referring to a deceased person is unacceptable) is illustrated by the following:

Great news! Our university *has awarded* a posthumous honorary doctorate to Martin Luther King!

What distinguishes this from examples like *D.H. Lawrence has written several excellent novels* and *President Roosevelt has visited our university*, which are questionable for some, is that the above example is used to express 'hot news': a recent situation is introduced into the discourse for the first time (see 5.14). For this reason, this sentence is only acceptable because it is understood that the bestowal of the doctorate on the late Martin Luther King is posthumous. Since 'hot news' is linked up with t_0 (both in terms of recency and relevance), it can only be expressed by the present perfect. It is in keeping with this analysis that the following is odd, because it is difficult to assign a hot news interpretation to a sentence beginning with *in recent years*:

??In recent years our university has given an honorary doctorate to Martin Luther King.

The present perfect can more easily be used if there is a constituent in the sentence making it clear that the reference is to a posthumous situation that has present relevance. Compare:

> He has bought some flowers for his late grandfather. *(This is fine as long as one has a scenario in mind in which the flowers go on the grandfather's grave and are seen as a tribute to the grandfather despite his being dead.)*
>
> He {bought / *has bought} this book for his late grandfather. *(Unacceptable if we assume that buying a book for someone cannot be interpreted as a posthumous tribute to that person.)*
>
> He {gave / *has given} this book to his late grandfather. *(idem)*

In other words, it is an act of present relevance to buy flowers for a dead person, because the flowers pay tribute to that person, but people do not buy a book for a dead person in order to pay tribute to him.

(c) A final exception to the rule that the present perfect is not used with reference to people and other entities that no longer exist is illustrated by the following:

> *(The speaker is describing an official US document)* [The large, wide-bordered document is attractively printed.] President Roosevelt *has signed* at the lower right, and Cordell Hull *has countersigned* as Secretary of State at the lower left. [There is an intact U.S. seal of white paper, embossed with an eagle, at the lower left.] (www)
>
> Rembrandt has placed the figure of a little girl at the centre of 'The Night Watch'. *(This could be an entry in a guide to Rembrandt's paintings.)*

In these examples the use of the present perfect is similar to the use of the present tense in summaries, captions underneath photographs, etc. – see 3.3.3. The only difference is that the present perfect represents the situation time as (if it were) T-anterior to t_0 (= the time of writing the summary, caption, etc.) rather than as coinciding with it (as in the caption *American policeman arrests illegal immigrant* underneath a photograph).

5.35 Verb of creation + definite 'effected' object NP

5.35.1 The second case in which the idea of an implicit period leading up to now is excluded concerns sentences that contain a '*verb of creation*' (expressing the bringing or coming into existence of something) and an 'EFFECTED' NP (i. e. an NP referring to the entity that comes into existence) which is semantically definite in the sense that the existence of the referent is assumed to be known to the hearer.

John {wrote / *has written} this poem. *(verb of creation + definite effected NP)*

John has read this poem. *(no verb of creation)*

Who {built / *has built} this wall? *(verb of creation + definite effected NP)*

Who else has built a wall? *(indefinite effected NP)*

Who has papered this wall? *(no verb of creation)*

Who {discovered / *has discovered} America? *(This sentence refers to the ‘creation’ and coming into existence of America in a metaphorical sense, in that America did not ‘exist’ for Europeans until it was discovered by Columbus.)*

The painting over the fireplace {was / *has been} done by my daughter. *(verb of creation + definite effected NP)*

The explanation for this restriction is as follows. An NP with definite reference as a rule implies the existence of a referent that is assumed to be identifiable to the hearer. That is, a speaker using such a (semantically) definite NP considers the current existence of the referent as given (i. e. known or inferrable) information. It follows that when he uses a sentence involving a verb of creation he is not concerned with the *fact that* the referent has come into existence and is now part of the structure of the world – this information is given. Instead he is concerned with providing new information, i. e. information concerning one of the aspects (when?, how?, who?, etc.) of the situation that led to the existence of the referent – a situation which is necessarily seen as lying entirely in the past and separated from the present. Thus, in sentences like *PETER* built this wall, It was *JOHN* who wrote the novel, *COLUMBUS* discovered America, etc. the focus of interest is on the agent of the action, i. e. the question ‘Who did it?’. (This is in keeping with the fact that the nuclear accent each time falls on the name of the agent.) Clearly, the speaker focuses his attention on some past aspect of the situation, on THEN rather than NOW.

Consider also:

My brother {wrote / *has written} that poem. *(verb of creation + definite effected NP)*

My brother {wrote / *has written} that poem in London. *(id.)*

My brother has written an impressive poem. *(indefinite effected NP)*

In the last sentence, the speaker is concerned with the fact that there now exists an impressive poem written by his brother. In the first two examples, by contrast, the existence of the poem referred to is taken for granted (as is clear from the use of the definite object NP *that poem*); the speaker is not concerned here with NOW but with an aspect of the actualization of the situation that happened THEN, viz., in these cases, with the question of who was the agent performing the action or where it was that the action was performed. This ACTUALIZATION FOCUS (= focus on the actualization of the situation itself – see 4.7) requires the use of the preterite. The following sentence can be accounted for in a similar way: the focus is not on the current existence of Rome, which is taken for granted, but on the duration of the building activity:

> Rome {was not built / *has not been built} in a day. *(This is the passive version of an active clause involving a verb of creation and a definite effected NP.)*

5.35.2 It goes without saying that not every formally definite NP represents information that is assumed 'given' (in the sense of 'already known or inferrable'). In some cases a formally definite NP has indefinite reference in that it is used to *introduce* the existence of a new referent, without there being any assumption that the existence of the referent should be known to the hearer prior to the use of the NP. For example:

> Please come in. *My stepdaughter* will be here in a moment to take you to the lounge.

It is perfectly possible that the guest does not know that his host has a stepdaughter, and that the host knows that his guest does not know this (e. g. because the guest is a stranger). In this case the formally definite NP *my stepdaughter* is used to introduce the existence of the referent, in other words, the speaker does not assume that the addressee is familiar with the referent or can infer its existence via an 'inferential bridge' (as when you first speak of *a book* and then of *the pages*): the existence of the referent is new rather than given information. This use of an NP that is formally definite but semantically indefinite is a conventionalized device to introduce a referent to the addressee. (The same device is used when *this* is used instead of the indefinite article in (informal) examples like the following:)

> About five minutes went by, and out of nowhere *this* man comes up to my best friend's cousin [and says, "Congratulations, Ma'am. You are our 1 millionth customer at Fiddler's Green this summer."] (www)

One case in which an NP is thus definite in form but does not express information that is given prior to the use of the NP is when the NP involves a demonstrative that is used literally (= deictically) rather than anaphorically. Such an NP can sometimes be used as object of a sentence in the present perfect even if the verb is a verb of creation. This is because the demonstrative then introduces the referent into the discourse and hence into the hearer's t_0-world:

> My brother has written this poem! *(This is grammatical, for example, if the speaker is waving a sheet of paper on which a poem is written. In that case, no prior knowledge of the existence of the poem is assumed: its existence is introduced here for the first time.)*

IX. 'Current relevance' and 'present result'

The present perfect tense implies 'current relevance': the bygone situation is considered as being relevant at t_0. Current relevance is equivalent to 'concern with NOW', which is what distinguishes the present perfect from the preterite (which implies 'concern with THEN'). However, current relevance does not necessarily mean that the speaker is concerned with a present result of the bygone situation.

5.36 The present perfect and current relevance

5.36.1 According to one linguistic tradition, the most important, or even only, semantic difference between the present perfect and the past tense is that the former expresses 'current relevance' (i. e. the bygone situation is still relevant at t_0) while the past tense does not. As noted in 1.21.6 and 2.10.1, this claim then usually leads to the further claim that the present perfect is not a tense but an aspect: 'current relevance' is said to be equivalent to 'perfect aspect'. In 2.10 the claim that there is no such thing as a present perfect tense has been rejected. However, we do subscribe to the view that the present perfect tense implies current relevance. In our opinion, current relevance is equivalent to 'concern with NOW', which is what distinguishes the present perfect from the preterite (which implies 'concern with THEN').

5.36.2 On the other hand, we distance ourselves from those linguists who narrow current relevance down to 'resultativeness', i. e. who claim that what distinguishes the present perfect from the preterite is that only the former represents the bygone situation as having yielded a result which is still holding at t_0. It will be shown in 5.37 that, except in the 'hot news' use of the perfect, the idea of a present resultant state is only an implicature of the present perfect, which arises in some contexts, but not in others. On some W-interpretations, such as the up-to-now readings, the implicature does not arise at all.

5.37 The present perfect and the idea of present result

5.37.1 It has sometimes been claimed that a sentence in the present perfect is, or at least can be, used to express a present result. This may or may not be correct, depending on the meaning that is assigned to 'present result'. Compare:

I've locked up the shop. *(resultative reading: 'The shop is locked up.')*

[I've taken a lot of responsibility in my first job already. I've taken the takings to the bank, I've dealt with difficult customers and] I've locked up the shop. *(This does not suggest that the shop is locked up now.)*

Clearly, these examples are different as regards what is meant by 'present result'. However, it is not possible to state flatly that the first implies a present result and the second does not. What we can say is that the first suggests that the immediate effect on the world produced by the situation of locking up the shop still holds at t_0, whereas the second does not, but it is difficult to rule out entirely some sort of understanding of present result in the second example, e. g. 'I am seen as a responsible employee', 'I have shown that I am very capable', etc. These examples show that (as noted in 5.32.4) we must distinguish between 'direct' and 'indirect' results. A DIRECT RESULT is the resultant state that inevitably comes about when a situation is completed: the completion of the action of locking up the shop automatically (and immediately) produces the state of the shop being locked up. (This need not be a lasting result, but it is there immediately after the locking up.) An INDIRECT RESULT is not an immediate and automatic result, but one which is linked with the preceding action because the link in question is in keeping with the meaning of the sentence and the context in which it is used. That it is not an inevitable (automatic, natural) result is clear from the second example above, which allows the reading in which the present result is 'My colleagues consider me over-zealous and therefore dislike me'.

5.37.2 A direct result obtains as soon as the situation producing it is finished. Roughly speaking, and allowing for the fact that what counts as 'recent' in one situation may be far from recent in another (compare, for example, recency in connection with the birth and death of stars with recency in connection with locking a door), the chance that the direct result still holds at t_0 decreases according as the lapse of time between the bygone situation and the present becomes greater. This is true irrespective of whether we use the present perfect or the past tense. Thus both *I've just locked the door* and *I locked the door a minute ago* implicate that the door is locked now. However, neither *I have recently locked the door* [*but* YOU *never have*] nor *I locked the door a year ago* invite this interpretation, because the distance between the situation and t_0 is sufficiently long for it to be possible (in fact, likely) that the temporary direct result has been undone by the actualization of another situation.

5.37.3 The past tense does not implicate that the direct result produced by the past situation is still holding at t_0 because the past is felt to be separated from the present. Thus, *I locked the door* does not suggest anything that is relevant to the present. However, the same is not true of *I have locked the door*, which locates the situation in a period leading up to t_0. As we saw in 5.1.2, unless an adverbial or context indicates otherwise, the pre-present is conceptualized as the shortest time span leading up to now that makes sense (i. e. that is in keeping with the semantics and pragmatics of the sentence and its context). This means that in *I have locked the door* the present perfect implicates recency, which in its turn implicates that the direct result is still holding at t_0. This explains why *I have locked* the door implicates 'The door is locked', whereas *I locked the door* does not.

5.37.4 Of the three W-types of sentences in the present perfect, only the ones receiving an indefinite reading can implicate a present direct result, and even then the 'experiential use' of the indefinite perfect (see 5.13.1) forms an exception. Thus, none of the following examples implicates the persistence of a *direct* result:

Have you ever been to Japan? *(indefinite reading of the experiential usage type)*

I've been waiting for you for the last ten minutes. *(continuative reading)*

["What have you been doing?"] – "I've been digging the vegetable patch." *(nonquantificational constitution reading; note that, out of context, I've dug the vegetable patch would be interpreted as nonexperiential indefinite and hence as referring to a direct result.)*

Fourteen years have passed since then. *(duration-quantifying constitution reading)*

So far I've had three jobs [and none of them lasted a month]. *(number-quantifying constitution reading)*

5.37.5 The fact that a present perfect sentence yielding an indefinite reading can implicate the persistence of the direct result entails that such a sentence can be used as an indirect way of conveying a message about the present.

A parcel has arrived for Gordon. *(message: 'There is a parcel for Gordon.')*

He has learnt to type. *(message: 'He can type.')*

They've cut off the electricity. *(message: 'We don't have any electricity.')*

I've been to the hairdresser's. *(message: 'My hair is done.')*

I've finished my homework. *(message: 'My homework is done.')*

She's been bitten by a goat. *(This implicates that the injury is current, i. e. that it is not healed yet.) (Compare with She was bitten by a goat, which implicates that the injury is healed or in some other way no longer exists – perhaps she is dead – or that even if the injury is not healed it is no longer causing trouble.)*

5.37.6 The idea of a direct result is not incompatible with the implicature that there are also indirect results. Thus, the message 'My hair is done' (implicated by *I've been to the hairdresser's*) can be evoked to trigger other interpretations, such as 'My hair looks nice now', 'I don't need to have my hair done for some time', etc. Similarly, saying *I've finished my homework* may be an indirect way of asking 'Can I go out to play now?'. There can even be contexts in which the importance of the present direct result is downgraded in favour of the importance of an indirect present result. For example, *She has closed the door,* whose default implicature is clearly 'The door is closed', can be used in contexts that do not invite the interpretation 'The door is closed' as a direct result communicated by the utterance. This is the case, e. g. if the door has just been painted. Then the primary result the speaker wants to convey by *She has closed the door* is likely to be 'The door is probably now stuck to the door-frame (and the new paint will be a mess when we open the door again)' rather than simply 'The door is closed'.

5.37.7 In some present perfect sentences there is an idea of indirect result without there being an idea of direct result. Such sentences too can be used as an indirect way of conveying a message about the present:

> This gate *has* often *been locked* in the past, but now nobody bothers to do so any more.
>
> This gate *has been locked* in the past, but now nobody bothers to do so any more.
>
> This gate *has* often *been locked*, but now nobody bothers to do so any more.

None of these sentences carries the direct result implicature 'The gate is now locked' because that implicature is blocked by *in the past* and/or cancelled by the *but*-clause. However, in a suitable context an indirect result implicature like 'The sheep may be all over the road' can arise, in the same way as *I haven't had breakfast* can implicate 'I can't go to work yet.' Similarly, the sentence

> Your boy has fallen off the swing.

can be used to explain the existence of a present indirect result, e. g. that there's a very loud wailing coming from the direction of the swings, or that several people are currently grouped round the swing, etc. It is not really possible to tell what the direct result is.

5.37.8 It should be clear now that, contrary to what is sometimes claimed in the linguistic literature, the idea of 'present result' does not form part of the semantics of the present perfect. (As noted in 2.15.1, the semantics of a tense is the temporal structure it realizes.) It is true, though, that 'current relevance' follows from the fact that the situation is located in the pre-present rather than in the past, and that that current relevance meaning is most readily interpreted as result, if that is possible. The latter statement – the present perfect implies a result if the context allows it – means that the idea of a present result is no more than a cancellable implicature of the (indefinite) present perfect. The implicature results from the fact that the choice of the present perfect means that the speaker is concerned with the present relevance of the bygone situation. The idea of present result represents the most salient form of present relevance, and will therefore suggest itself unless there is some contextual or pragmatic factor ruling it out or rendering it unlikely. It is in keeping with this that the implicature of a direct present result arises only when the lapse of time between the bygone situation and the present is relatively short, so that, failing any indication to the contrary, the speaker can assume that the direct result which the bygone situation has produced is still holding.

The 'relative shortness' of the lapse of time between the bygone situation and t_0 may of course be different according to the pragmatics of the sentence and its context which determine the kind of interpretation that is assigned to the sentence involving the indefinite present perfect:

> I haven't had breakfast yet. *(The speaker may be referring to a present indirect result: his message may be 'I cannot leave for the office yet; I need to have breakfast first'. This resultative interpretation of the indefinite perfect is partly determined by our pragmatic knowledge that breakfast is eaten every day. If breakfast was eaten, say, once a week, the fact that the speaker has not had breakfast yet today would not necessarily lead to the conclusion that today he cannot leave for the office without having breakfast first.)*
>
> *(doctor to patient)* Have you had a cold? *(This implies a relevant period of only a few weeks, because it is common for a person to have a cold at least once a year and because the effect of a cold does not last longer than a few weeks.)*
>
> *(doctor to patient)* Have you had malaria? *(The question may relate either to a relatively short period leading up to now or to a period which is as long as it is possible for the question to be asked about, namely the addressee's lifetime. In both cases the speaker is considering the possibility of a present result, viz. that the illness might be currently affecting the addressee or might affect the addressee again in the future.)*
>
> *(doctor to patient)* Have you had rubella? *(This is a 'present result' question for which the relevant period of occurrence of the questioned present perfect situation is the addressee's life, since the most obvious interpretation of the question – namely that it is asked in order to ascertain the addressee's current immunity to rubella – involves the assumption that an occurrence at any time in the addressee's life is relevant.)*

All this is in keeping with what was said in 5.1.2, viz. that when the pre-present period remains implicit (unspecified), it is normally interpreted as the shortest time span leading up to now that is in keeping with the semantics and pragmatics of the sentence and its context.

5.37.9 In the previous subsections we have spoken about 'direct' and 'indirect' present results. Let us now have a closer look at the factors determining which of these two kinds of result is implicated on an indefinite perfect interpretation.

(a) If the situation referred to in the present perfect is represented as telic and bounded, the direct present result which may be communicated by the choice of the indefinite present perfect concerns the state of affairs that comes about when the situation is completed:

> I have written a book. *(message: 'There now exists a book of which I am the author.')*
>
> Ian has shut the window. *(message: 'The window is shut now.')*
>
> I have learned to drive. *(message: 'I can drive.')*

This does not mean, however, that the direct result is necessarily the most salient or most relevant present result in the given context (see 5.37.6). Moreover, there are examples of bounded telic sentences in the present perfect where there is no clear idea of direct present result. For example, although *I have written a book* has 'there exists a book by me' as direct result (because it has an 'effected entity' as direct object), it is not clear what the direct present result is of *I have run a mile*, though this sentence too is telic and bounded.

(b) If the situation referred to is not represented as telic or/and is not represented as bounded, the idea of a present result can only be suggested by the context or the pragmatics of the situation. In other words, it is not a direct result but an indirect one:

> John has been in the cellar. *(atelic) (This sentence may, according to context, suggest 'So he must be dirty', 'So he must be cold', 'So he must have found out our secret', etc.)*
>
> I have been writing a book. *(telic but not bounded) (This sentence may, according to context, suggest 'That's why I am so tired', 'That's why I haven't been to the pub much recently', etc. – see also section 5.26.3 above.)*

There is no suggestion of a direct result here. Any resultative reading that may be selected is a context-dependent indirect result reading.

5.37.10 The implicature of a present result does not arise when the bygone situation is explicitly represented as broken off before t_0 and as no longer belonging to the speaker's world of thinking:

> I *have*, until recently, *been* a contributing member to SPLC for several years, and until recently, I *have been* proud of that association. [(...) Unfortunately, the SPLC's new focus is detracting from our solid reputation, and if it does not change soon, I fear that the damage to an excellent organization will be permanent.] (www)

5.37.11 In a literary (or semi-archaic) register, the verb *go* allows the direct present result to be expressed not only by *have gone* but also by *be gone*:

> {Jill has gone / Jill is gone}.
>
> [Today it is fruitless to seek Matthews's own views on the future,] for he *is gone* from the bungalow and not likely to be back for some time. (www)
>
> Now that Sharon is gone, we'll have to appoint a new secretary. *(is gone = 'is no longer with us')*
>
> [Christmas in Panama this year is a season of genuine Thanksgiving.] Noriega is gone. [Things are on the mend and there remains a widespread sense of gratitude to Uncle Sam for making a new start possible.] (COB-S) *(= The Noriega regime is over.)*

It should also be noted that unlike *has gone*, which denotes a movement and implicates a resultant state, *be gone* normally directly denotes a present state (without referring to a movement producing it). The only normal interpretations are therefore 'be away', 'no longer be at a (contextually given) place', 'have disappeared', or 'be over', 'be dead'. This explains why we cannot say **Jill is gone home* (whereas we can say Jill has gone home). In other words, *be gone* normally expresses a pure state, without reference to movement.

X. Summary

5.38.1 The semantics of the present perfect – its **core meaning** – is: 'The situation time is contained in the pre-present zone of the present time-sphere'. This means that the situation time is contained in a period leading up to, but not including, t_0, in terms of either inclusion or coincidence. The length of the period conceptualized as constituting the pre-present depends on contextual factors, including temporal adverbials, but is always the shortest time required to make sense of the clause concerned in context.

5.38.2 There are two semantic types of present perfect – its **tense interpretations** (**T-interpretations**) – which arise because of the two possible ways in which a situation time can be contained in a period, namely by inclusion or by coincidence. One T-interpretation arises when the situation time is included in the pre-present and does not include the terminal point of the pre-present. That is, the time of the predicated situation is seen as finishing some time before t_0. (Thus, although the situation is located in the present time-sphere, it is seen as temporally cut off from t_0.) The other T-interpretation arises when the situation time is co-extensive with the pre-present. That is, the predicated situation is seen as taking place over an interval that occupies the whole of the pre-present period and reaches right up to (but does not include) t_0. These two semantic types of the present perfect are called, respectively, the '**before now**' T-interpretation and the '**co-extensive**' T-interpretation.

5.38.3 Depending firstly on the T-interpretation that a present perfect receives, and then on many other contextual and pragmatic factors, there are three different ways in which the relation between the time of the *full* situation and the pre-present period can be interpreted. The time of the full situation may be included in the pre-present and lie wholly before t_0 (= the **indefinite** W-reading), it may extend throughout the pre-present and also include t_0 (= the **continuative** W-reading) or it may simply coincide with the pre-present, leading up to, but not including, t_0 (= the **up-to-now** W-reading). This means there are three temporal W-interpretations of the present perfect. (In fact, since W-interpretations only arise by taking into account the full grammatical and contextual information available about a clause in the present perfect, we should, strictly speaking, talk of W-interpretations of present perfect clauses.)

5.38.4 If the T-interpretation is a 'before now' interpretation, the time of the full situation usually coincides with the situation time (= the time of the predicated situation). This time is included in the pre-present period and ends some time before t_0. Even if the time of the full situation is longer than the situation time (because the progressive form is used), the full situation is interpreted as being over before t_0.The resulting temporal W-interpretation is called the **indef-**

inite reading. This term reflects the fact that the situation time is not anchored to another time: (a) unlike on the other temporal W-interpretations of the present perfect, it is not anchored to t_0 by virtue of including t_0 or being adjacent to t_0, and (b) the precise location of the situation time in the pre-present must not be specified by an adverbial, e. g. *I have met her* [**last night*].

5.38.5 When the T-interpretation of the present perfect is a 'co-extensive' interpretation, the time of the predicated situation may either be included in or coincide with the time of the full situation. In the first of these possibilities, the time of the full situation does not only fill the pre-present period but also, necessarily, continues beyond it to include t_0. (This interpretation has nothing to say about whether or not the full situation extends into the post-present.) This temporal W-interpretation is called the **continuative reading** (e. g. *I've been a widow for the last five years*). In the second possibility, in which the situation time coincides with the time of the full situation, the time of the full situation necessarily also extends throughout the pre-present period and up to t_0, thus including the terminal point of the pre-present (but not t_0). This temporal W-interpretation is called the **up-to-now** reading (e. g. *What have you been doing* [*since we last met*]?).

5.38.6 Because these three categories of temporal W-interpretation of the present perfect are intended to capture the different ways in which the time of the full situation is interpreted as relating to t_0 (i. e. as wholly before t_0, as leading up to t_0 or as leading up to and including t_0), we naturally find that there are differences between the three temporal W-interpretations as to their compatibility with certain temporal adverbials. For example, *ever* only occurs with the indefinite interpretation. By contrast, *ever since* or *since childhood* only occurs with the continuative interpretation.

5.38.7 The interpretation of a given present perfect (or more precisely, of a clause with a present perfect verb) as either indefinite, up-to-now or continuative always depends on various grammatical and pragmatic factors. The former include, notably, the effect of time adverbials (as mentioned above) and of the progressive (as will be mentioned below). The latter include, for example, the knowledge that being taller than someone who is already an adult is a more or less permanent condition, so that *He has already been taller than his mother for a year* is necessarily understood to be continuative and not indefinite or up-to-now. Often several factors are simultaneously at work in arriving at a given interpretation of the present perfect (see part VII).

5.38.8 Another important factor in determining the W-interpretation of present perfect clauses is one that lies on the borderline between grammar and pragmatics, namely boundedness. The role of boundedness is evident when we consider the continuative reading. The continuative reading is not possible if the full situation is bounded (either explicitly or by interpretation in context). This is because the predicated situation, being contained in the pre-present, cannot include t_0, so that the full situation must be longer than the predicated situation if it is to include t_0, and such a relation is only possible if the full situation is conceived of as homogeneous, and thus nonbounded. The only exception to this constraint on the continuative reading is when a time adverbial specifies the length of the '**factual full situation**', i. e. the situation as it has actualized up to and including t_0, thus bounding it, but does not exclude the possibility that in fact the situation will continue beyond t_0, so that the '**potential full situation**' is nonbounded. For example: *Meg has been talking to the elephant for an hour now.* [*I wonder if the elephant is getting bored*.] In such a case, we still have a continuative interpretation despite the fact that the factual full situation is bounded.

5.38.9 The indefinite perfect has a variety of functional uses which are often identified in the literature. These uses give rise to particular functional readings. We note the **experiential** reading, and the **recency** reading, which includes a '**hot news**' reading. The experiential use typically refers to a bygone situation seen as having relevance as part of the (current) experience, knowledge or history of a person or other entity, for example: *Have you ever made lemon meringue pie?* or *I've read most of Raymond Chandler's novels*. The recency use of the indefinite present perfect is unsurprising, given that the location of the bygone situation time in the present time-sphere emphasizes that the speaker, in talking about the situation, is concerned with NOW, and given that (perhaps because of this) the default temporal location of a present perfect situation is the most recent one that makes sense in the context in question. In Br.E., the recency use of the indefinite perfect is normally signalled by an adverbial such as *just* or *recently*, or by a context which invokes a 'hot news' use interpretation, such as *Run! The river has burst its banks*.

5.38.10 As we have mentioned above, when the T-reading of a present perfect is that the situation time occupies the whole of the pre-present, and when the temporal W-reading is that the full situation also leads up to t_0 (and is therefore bounded), we have the 'up-to-now' W-reading of the present perfect. In many cases, this reading occurs when the speaker is concerned with the temporal or situational constitution of the pre-present. That is, the utterance or question scans the pre-present, either to quantify the length of time that separates the situation time from t_0, or to give the number of times that a situation has actualized in the pre-present, or to consider how the pre-present has been filled. We call this 'pre-present scanning' function of the up-to-now perfect the **constitution use** and the corresponding reading the **constitution reading**. When the speaker using an up-to-now perfect does not make an assertion about or ask a question about the constitution of the pre-present, we speak of the **unmarked**

up-to-now use, or reading, of the present perfect clause. An example is *Hi! I've been wondering where you were*. The unmarked up-to-now use of the present perfect often has an **explanatory-resultative** function. That is, it is used to give or request an explanation for some result that has come about during the actualization of the situation referred to. E.g. [*I won't shake hands*.] *I've been cleaning out the drains* or *Have you been cleaning out the drains?* [*You smell a little strange*.]

5.38.11 As for the constitution reading of (the up-to-now W-reading) of the present perfect, it has three main functions:

When it is **duration-quantifying**, it refers to a duration-specifying situation which fills, and in doing so describes the length of, the pre-present period. An example is *Three weeks have gone by since your last letter.*

When it is **number-quantifying**, the constitution use of the perfect refers to the number of actualizations of a situation that there have been in the pre-present period. (The number may be zero). For example: *That's the third glass I've broken this week* or [*How often have you taken cocaine?*] *I've never taken it*. (Note that *I've never taken cocaine*, outside the sort of context given, will probably receive an (experiential) indefinite perfect reading, since there is no implication that it specifically provides the number of instances of cocaine taking that have taken place in the pre-present, but rather refers to the non-actualization of a situation in the pre-present.) These two readings are jointly **quantificational** readings of the constitution perfect.

Finally, when the constitution use of the perfect is **nonquantificational**, the speaker looks back on the pre-present and describes or asks what sort of situation(s) has or have filled it. For example, both the perfects in the following example receive nonquantificational constitution use readings:

> *"What has kept you so long?" – " I've been checking that the windows were all closed."*

5.38.12 Figure 5.1 (repeated here) gives an overview of the various readings that can be attributed to a clause in the present perfect.

5.38.13 Constitution readings of the up-to-now present perfect involve what are often referred to as **specificational** sentences. A specificational sentence specifies or asks for a value for a presupposed variable. For example, *It was Meg who gave the elephant John's dinner* presupposes 'someone gave the elephant John's dinner' and specifies the value 'Meg' for the value 'the x who gave the elephant John's dinner'. (Nonspecificational sentences, which are called **predicational** sentences, do not similarly presuppose a 'gap' in knowledge that needs to be filled: *Meg gave the elephant John's dinner* does not, on its unmarked reading, supply a value for a presupposed 'gap' or variable.) All *wh*-questions are specificational, because a question word always represents a vari-

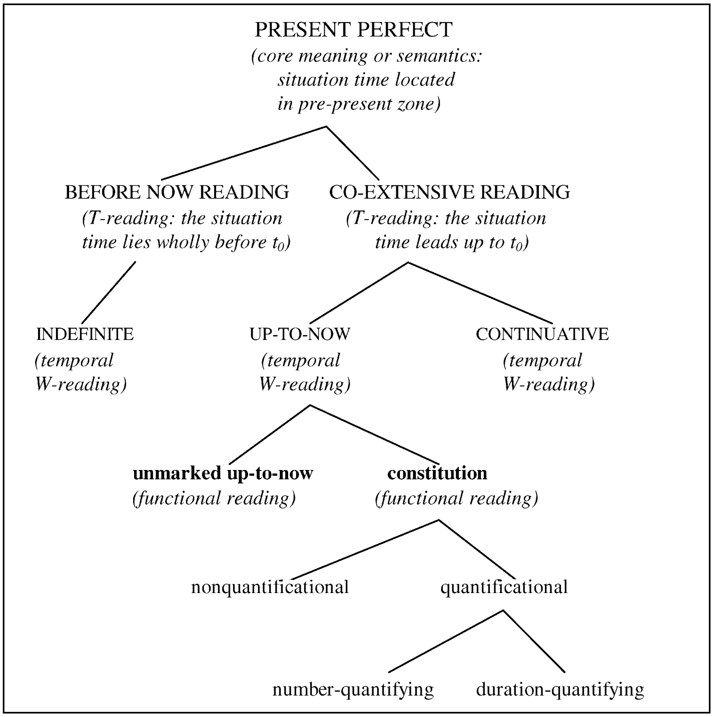
PRESENT PERFECT
(core meaning or semantics: situation time located in pre-present zone)
BEFORE NOW READING
(T-reading: the situation time lies wholly before t_0)
CO-EXTENSIVE READING
(T-reading: the situation time leads up to t_0)
INDEFINITE
(temporal W-reading)
UP-TO-NOW
(temporal W-reading)
CONTINUATIVE
(temporal W-reading)
unmarked up-to-now
(functional reading)
constitution
(functional reading)
nonquantificational
quantificational
number-quantifying
duration-quantifying

Figure 5.1. The various readings of clauses in the present perfect.

able. Thus, *Who gave the elephant John's dinner?* makes it clear that there is a gap in knowledge concerning the variable 'the x who gave the elephant John's dinner'. All replies to a *wh*-question are similarly specificational: *BILL gave the elephant John's dinner* or *It was Bill who gave the elephant John's dinner* specifies the value 'Bill' for the variable 'the x who gave the elephant John's dinner'.

A present perfect sentence receiving a constitution reading is always specificational. *Shirley has met Tim four times so far*, which yields a 'number-quantifying constitution reading' specifies the value 'four times' for the variable 'the x number of times that Shirley has met Tim'. *Three years have elapsed since then* specifies the value 'three years' for the variable 'the time x that has elapsed since then'. These two readings are 'quantificational constitution readings'. In *What have you been doing? – I've been feeding the elephant*, both sentences receive a nonquantificational constitution reading. The speaker asks the hearer for the situational constitution of the pre-present (which is conceptualized as a very recent period), and the hearer specifies the value 'I've been feeding the elephant' for the variable 'the x that I have been doing'.

5.38.14 On an up-to-now reading, the time of the full situation extends right up to t_0 (without, of course, including t_0). However, this is not to say that the extralinguistic situation to which the speaker refers extends right up to t_0 – rather, it is conceived as doing so. This means, first, that a situation may evidently end shortly before t_0 'in reality' but still be considered as occupying the entire pre-present. For example: *The American president has been in Beijing all day today.* [*Now he is on his way to Shanghai.*] In a similar way, when the full situation is a hypersituation composed of a number of subsituations, the total of these subsituations is seen as filling the pre-present. The fact that there may be gaps between the subsituations is discounted – the subsituations are conceived of as collectively accounting for the totality of the period up to now. (In addition, of course, it may be that in the extralinguistic world there is a gap between the last subsituation and t_0, but, as we have just seen, this does not mean that the hypersituation is not considered to extend up to t_0.) Thus, when a speaker replies to the question *What have you been doing since I last saw you?* by saying: *I've been raising three adopted children and running a small company*, it is clear that other activities have gone on in the extralinguistic pre-present. However, the reported activities are conceived of as filling the pre-present for the purposes of the discourse in question.

5.38.15 The different temporal W-readings of the present perfect – the continuative reading, the indefinite reading and the up-to-now reading – variously affect the possibility of using the **progressive**, and, conversely, the use of the progressive affects the possibility of arriving at a given reading of the perfect. For example, if a speaker wishes to express continuative meaning, then if the situation is nonstatic (at least in the absence of a continuative-enforcing context such as the adverbial *ever since*), he will normally use the progressive. The progressive means that the full situation is nonbounded and thus, in the case of a 'co-extensive T-reading' (i. e. the situation time coincides with the pre-present zone), it (i. e. the full situation) is capable of including t_0. If the speaker does not use the progressive in a context which permits it, the assumption is likely to be made that he does not want to represent the full situation as (nonbounded and) including t_0. Conversely, the progressive will normally block an indefinite interpretation of the present perfect because the progressive does not normally combine with boundedness and the full situation on an indefinite reading of the perfect is bounded. Thus *Meg has been washing the elephant* will be interpreted as continuative or up-to-now rather than as indefinite.

5.38.16 Finally, there are two general issues concerning the present perfect that need to concern us. These are, first, that certain elements of meaning exclude the possibility of locating the situation time in a 'period up to now', and second, that the notion of 'present result' is closely associated with the present perfect, but is not completely straightforward.

5.38.17 The semantics of the present perfect, we have said, is: ‘The situation time is contained in the pre-present zone of the present time-sphere’. The fact that the speaker who uses a present perfect is focusing on NOW rather than THEN means that it is normally presupposed that entities referred to in a present perfect clause exist now. Thus *Marilyn Monroe has read my book* is not normally acceptable (if uttered after her death) because the topic of this sentence relates to THEN rather than to NOW: the present perfect is blocked because the time zone which the speaker has in mind is past rather than pre-present. However, when a no-longer existing entity is not part of the topic of the clause, in the sense that it is not ‘what the speaker is talking about’ but forms part of what the speaker is saying *about* the topic, then for some speakers the present perfect is not excluded, provided it is possible for the speaker to conceptualize a pre-present period. For example: *This hotel has one claim to fame: it has been slept in by Marilyn Monroe*.

5.38.18 Because the present perfect links a bygone situation to t_0, as relevant to ‘now’, there is usually an assumption that some sort of **result** of the bygone situation is relevant at t_0. The result that we can identify may be direct, as in *I’ve locked the door*, which entails that the door was locked after the situation was completed and implicates that the door is locked now or *The tomatoes have ripened*, which implicates that the tomatoes are ripe, but it may also be an indirect result. A **direct result** is the resultant state that inevitably comes about when the situation is completed. Any other result is **indirect**. For example, *The tomatoes have ripened* may implicate the indirect result *It’s time to pick them* or it may implicate *It’s therefore too late to make green tomato chutney.* Only indefinite perfects can implicate clear direct results. Compare *I have bottled the chutney*, which is indefinite, and *I have been bottling chutney since 9 o’clock*, which is continuative. The former implicates the direct result ‘The chutney is bottled’. The latter can be used to refer to such indirect results as ‘The house smells of tomato chutney’ or ‘That’s why I’m tired’, but will not be used to suggest ‘The chutney is bottled now.’

6. The present perfect *vs* the preterite in clauses without temporal adverbials

6.1 Introduction 317
6.2 Actualization focus 319
6.3 The influence of definite noun phrases 320
6.4 The present perfect *vs* the preterite in *wh*-questions 322
6.5 The present perfect *vs* the preterite in *when*-questions 326
6.6 Summary 330

Abstract

Before embarking on a discussion of the fourth absolute tense, viz. the future tense (chapter 7), we provide a brief chapter on the principles guiding the choice between the past tense (or 'preterite') and the present perfect, both of which can be used to locate a 'bygone' situation in time. Our concern here is with clauses that do not contain a time-specifying adverbial – for the role played by such adverbials in the selection of the one or the other of the two tenses, see chapter 12.

In the present chapter, we first have a look at the central notion of 'actualization focus', i. e. the phenomenon that the speaker focuses on one or other aspect of a past situation and therefore has to use the past tense. We then address the use of the preterite vs the indefinite present perfect in clauses with a definite noun phrase and in wh-questions other than when-questions. Finally, we consider the use of the present perfect yielding a number-quantifying constitution reading in *when*-questions.

6.1 Introduction

The speaker is concerned with NOW when he uses the present perfect and with THEN when he uses the preterite. In other words, the present perfect implies that the speaker's 'temporal focus' is on the pre-present time zone, whereas the past tense puts the temporal focus on the past time-sphere. Whether the speaker is concerned with NOW or THEN can be clear from the way the sentence is used in context or from particular constituents of the sentence. In this chapter we will not deal with the impact of particular types of temporal adverbials but will examine the relevance of 'actualization focus' and the impact of definite noun phrases and of question words.

6.1.1 This chapter is about the factors that determine the choice between the past tense and the present perfect when the clause does not contain a temporal adverbial and refers to a 'bygone situation', i. e. a situation that is wholly anterior to t_0. We will first deal with the past tense versus the 'indefinite perfect' (= the use of the present perfect in clauses receiving an 'indefinite' (see 5.4.1) interpretation), and then – in section 6.5 – with the past tense versus a 'number-quantifying constitution perfect' (see 5.19.1) in *when*-questions. The other readings of the present perfect are not relevant because none of them can appear in a formal environment (without a time-specifying adverbial) in which the past tense can also be used. In other words, while we can contrast *I've seen him* with *I saw him* and *When have I lied to you?* with *When did I lie to you?*, we cannot contrast with past tense clauses such present perfect clauses as receive a 'continuative reading' (see 5.7), an 'unmarked up-to-now reading' (see 5.18), a 'nonquantificational constitution reading' (see 5.19.1) or a 'duration-specifying constitution reading' (see 5.19.1).

For ease of reference, in connection with the present perfect the term 'bygone situation' will only be used to refer to the indefinite reading, except in 6.5, where we discuss the use of *when*-questions receiving a number-quantifying constitution reading.

6.1.2 When, in a noninterrogative clause referring to a bygone situation, there is no time-specifying adverbial, both the preterite (= past tense) and the indefinite present perfect are in principle possible. The preterite is used when we are thinking of the time of actualization of the bygone situation or when we are concerned with the actualization of the situation itself (i. e. with the question of when / where / why / how the situation took place, or who was involved in it – see 4.7.1). The indefinite present perfect (as we will continue to call a present perfect receiving an indefinite interpretation) is used when the speaker wishes to announce the actualization of the situation as news or when he is otherwise concerned with its current relevance. Compare:

> Have you seen 'King Lear'? *(indefinite perfect: 'Have you ever seen 'King Lear'?')*
>
> Did you see 'King Lear'? *(The speaker is thinking of a particular production of the play, for example, that which was shown on TV the other day. Since he assumes that the addressee understands which production he has in mind, the situation of seeing 'King Lear' is located at a definite bygone time.)*
>
> You can't imagine the difficulties Henry *got* me into! *(The emphasis is on what happened* ***THEN***: that was a very difficult time for me.)
>
> You can't imagine the difficulties Henry *has got* me into! *(One interpretation implies that the speaker is currently in difficulties as a result of having been got into difficulties by Henry: 'You can't imagine the difficulties that I am having because of him'. This is an indefinite reading, highlighting the present 'direct result' (see 5.37.1) of a single bygone situation. Another interpretation is that the speaker has, at various times in the past, been in difficulties as a result of having, at indefinite times in the past, been got into difficulties by Henry and that the speaker is currently in some way affected by this experience. For example: 'He's got me into terrible difficulties over the years. [I'm not getting involved in one of his schemes again.]' This is an indefinite interpretation of the 'experiential' kind (see 5.13), which does not suggest a direct present result but refers to the indirect present result that my experience has been widened as a result of various bygone situations.)*
>
> ["Have you ever received a reply to any of your letters of application?" – "Yes, I have.] A Canadian firm *offered* me a job in Toronto, [but I declined because I would rather stay in Britain]." *(The offer has only historical significance. The speaker has already lost interest in it. The form has offered would be difficult to interpret in this context: the present perfect would suggest that the offer is still relevant whilst the ensuing context shows that the offer has been declined and is thus 'out of play'.)*
>
> ["Have you ever received a reply to any of your letters of application?" – "Yes, I have.] A Canadian firm has offered me a job in Toronto. [Isn't that splendid?]" *(The speaker is still excited about the offer and clearly intends to accept it. The past tense form offered would not have the implication that the speaker intends to accept the job, though it does not rule out the possibility.)*
>
> The puppy you gave me *has grown* into a magnificent collie. *(While the present perfect implies (a) that the dog is still alive and (b), given normal world-knowledge, that the speaker still has the dog, the preterite would imply that the dog is in some way no longer on the scene – for example, it is dead, or has been given away.)*
>
> {Did you go / *have you gone} to bed after eleven? *(The speaker has a particular time in mind.)*

6.1.3 The above examples illustrate the basic principles underlying the choice between the preterite and the present perfect which were explained in 2.38.1 and 5.35.1: the speaker is concerned with NOW when he uses the present perfect and with THEN when he uses the preterite. In other words, the present perfect implies that the speaker's 'temporal focus' (see 11.1.1) is on the pre-present time zone, whereas the past tense puts the temporal focus on the past time-sphere. Whether the speaker is concerned with NOW or THEN can be clear from the way the sentence is used in context or from particular constituents of the sentence. The impact of particular types of temporal adverbials was referred to in 4.6.1 and 5.5.2 and will be discussed in more detail in chapter 12. In the rest of this chapter we will examine the relevance of 'actualization focus' and the impact of definite noun phrases and of question words.

6.2 Actualization focus

When there is 'actualization focus', i. e. concern with some aspect of the bygone situation (such as *where?*, *how?*, *when?*, etc.) we use the past tense. By contrast, to introduce a new topic into the current discourse we use the present perfect.

6.2.1 We normally use the indefinite perfect when a bygone situation that is relevant to the present is referred to for the first time. We do not use it to talk about any aspect of a situation that the hearer is already familiar with. Sentences in which this is done concentrate on the past situation itself (i. e. show 'ACTUALIZATION FOCUS' – see 4.7), and therefore make use of the past tense. (In other words, expressing actualization focus is equivalent to putting the temporal focus on the past situation.)

"Some idiot *has put* diesel in the tank instead of petrol. Which of you *did* that?" – "I *did*."

It follows that the present perfect is often used to introduce a topic into a conversation; the next sentence(s) then use(s) the past tense to give further details about the situation in question.

I *have tried* using that kind of detergent, but the result *was* not satisfactory.

"*Have* you ever *considered* growing roses there?" – "Yes, I *have*. But my wife *decided* against it."

"I'*ve lived* in China." – "When *was* that?"

I *have drunk* champagne a couple of times, but I *didn't like* it much.

I'*ve visited* the ESA headquarters. It *was* fascinating.

I'*ve* just *moved* your trunk into another room. It *was* surprisingly heavy.

"[I'm giving up my job.]" – "So I'*ve heard*." – "When *did* you *hear* about it?" – "The milkman *told* me this morning."

6.2.2 In some cases the fact that the situation has actualized is 'given' (= assumed known) information because it is obvious from the extralinguistic context. In that case there is actualization focus at once:

> You should be glad that you {*were* / *have been} born rich. *(Self-evidently, it does not make sense to introduce the situation of the addressee having been born: it is given information that whoever exists was born.)*
>
> How {*did you get* / *have you got} that scar on your cheek? *(The existence of the scar is given information: the speaker can actually see it when uttering this sentence. This means that there is actualization focus at once, in this case on the aspect 'how?'.)*

In this context we can also refer to section 5.35, where it is pointed out that the present perfect cannot be used if the clause combines a verb of creation with a definite object NP (e.g. *Who {built / *has built} that cottage over there?*).

It may also be noted here that examples like the above ones refute the widespread claim that the preterite requires there to be a definite (= assumed identifiable to the hearer) past time at which the situation is located. This is not to say that it is not true that many past tense sentences are only fully interpretable if the time of actualization is known – for example, there is not much point in saying *The door was closed* without such a temporal 'anchor'. However, the above examples make it clear that being anchored to a definite time is not an absolute requirement of the preterite, and therefore has nothing to do with the semantics of the preterite. The requirement holds for the *W-interpretation* of *most* past tense sentences, because the temporal anchor is usually necessary to see the applicability and relevance of the utterance. However, the requirement does not apply to the above examples because identifiability of the exact time of actualization is unnecessary for (and irrelevant to) the correct understanding of the intended interpretation of these sentences. (The same is true if the preterite is used to express a contrast between what is present and what is W-bygone, as in *He is no longer the successful painter that he was*.)

6.3 The influence of definite noun phrases

The use of the indefinite perfect is prevented by the presence of a definite NP that entails actualization focus. We therefore have to use the past tense in examples like *How {did Sue get / *has Sue got} the scar on her hip?*

6.3.1 The fact that the hearer is already familiar with the situation is sometimes clear from the use of a definite NP. (Formal definiteness is usually a sign that the speaker assumes that the hearer can identify the referent of the NP.) This explains why the use of the indefinite perfect is prevented by the presence of a definite NP entailing actualization focus, i. e. by the presence of an NP whose definiteness entails that the situation referred to is interpreted as definite (assumed to be identifiable). (That not all definite NPs have this effect is shown in 6.3.2.) Thus, the past tense is the rule in examples like the following:

> How {did Sue get / *has Sue got} the scar on her hip? *(As is clear from the use of the definite NP the scar on her hip, the speaker knows, and assumes that the hearer also knows, that Sue has a scar on her hip. It follows that both also know that there must be a time in the past when Sue got the scar, and that she must have got it in a particular way. The question that is asked concerns that way. This means that there is actualization focus.)*
>
> [He says that] he has witnessed a terrible accident. *(The indefiniteness of the NP a terrible accident reveals that the speaker does not expect the hearer to know about the accident. The accident is mentioned here for the first time, i. e. it is introduced as a topic into the discourse. This means that there is no actualization focus, hence no temporal focus on the past.)*
>
> [He says that] he {witnessed / *has witnessed} the accident that everybody is talking about. *(The relative clause tells the hearer which accident the speaker is referring to. This renders the NP definite: its referent is identifiable. This means that the existence of the accident is presupposed when the speaker makes a statement about it. The speaker therefore uses the past tense to talk about the past accident: there is actualization focus on the fact that the speaker saw the accident happen when it did.)*
>
> [These flowers are lovely.] Who {did you get / *have you got} them from? *(That the referents of these flowers and them are assumed to be identifiable is clear from the use of these definite NPs. That these definite NPs entail actualization focus is in keeping with the fact that the wh-question Who did you get them from? carries the presupposition 'You got these flowers from someone'.)*
>
> [This cake tastes wonderful.] {Did you bake / *have you baked} *it* yourself?
>
> [I have been to a bullfight once,] but I did not enjoy *it*.

6.3.2 As already said, this does not mean that every definite NP excludes the use of an indefinite present perfect. The only definite NPs that have this effect are those that entail actualization focus, i. e. that make it clear that the speaker is not introducing a bygone situation but is focussing on some past aspect of a bygone situation whose existence is (or is taken to be) given information in the current world of discourse.

> I have bought the book that you recommended to me. *(The existence of the referent of the definite NP the book that you recommended to me is given information in the current world of discourse, but the situation of my having bought it is new information.)*

> Somebody has drunk out of this glass. [It is dirty.] *(The existence of the referent of* *this glass* *is given information in the current world of discourse (since the speaker is pointing at it or showing it), but the situation of somebody having drunk out of it is new information.)*

6.4 The present perfect *vs* the preterite in *wh*-questions

Wh-questions that do not contain a time-specifying adverbial and which are introduced by a question word other than *when* can in principle use either the past tense or the present perfect to refer to a bygone situation. The choice of tense is determined by whether the speaker is concerned with (i. e. focuses on) THEN or NOW.

6.4.1 As in the rest of this chapter, we will only be concerned here with clauses without a time-specifying adverbial. *Wh*-questions introduced by *when* will not be dealt with here either: they will be treated in section 6.5, where the difference between the past tense and the 'number-quantifying constitution perfect' (see 5.19.1) in *when*-questions will be discussed.

6.4.2 *Wh*-questions introduced by *why*, *where*, *who*, *what*, *how*, etc. and not containing a time-specifying adverbial can in principle use either the past tense or the present perfect to refer to a bygone situation. The choice of tense is determined by the usual factors, i. e. by whether the speaker referring to the bygone situation is concerned with (i. e. focuses on) THEN or NOW (see 6.1.3). For example:

> How many cars have you sold? *(The present perfect does not yield an indefinite reading but receives a number-quantifying constitution reading. The speaker is concerned with NOW, viz. with such questions as 'How much profit has our firm made [in an implicit period leading up to now] from selling cars?' or 'How much commission do I owe you?, etc.)*
>
> How many cars did you sell? *(There is actualization focus here on the specific time when the cars were sold. The speaker does not have a period up to now in mind.)*

As is clear from these examples, the concern with THEN or NOW actually reveals itself in the tensed proposition which these sentences presuppose. Thus, *How many cars have you sold?* pragmatically presupposes 'You have sold x cars' and asks for a specification of a value for the variable x (see 5.20.1). In contrast, *How many cars did you sell?* presupposes the truth of 'You sold x cars', which implies actualization focus on the time of the selling.

The following further illustrate these remarks:

> Who broke a glass? *(The speaker assumes that somebody broke a glass. He is concerned with the question who was responsible for this. In other words, the presupposition is 'X broke a glass' and the question asks 'X is who?')*
>
> Who's broken a glass? *(The speaker assumes that somebody has broken a glass and is concerned with the question who is the person to be held responsible for this. Because of the meaning of the present perfect and the requirements of Grice's Maxim of Relevance, the sentence is only acceptable if the speaker believes that all the people who might turn out to be the person who broke the glass are somehow 'present' and not 'not here'. So, if a bartender utters the sentence after the pub has closed and all the customers are gone, the bartender must be assuming that one of the staff still in the pub broke the glass in question, and not one of the customers.)*
>
> Who broke this glass? *(The speaker assumes that the glass in question was broken. He is concerned with the question who was responsible for this.) (As is clear from the grammaticality of Who's broken a glass?, the use of the past tense is not triggered by the definiteness of this glass: this is used because the glass is being shown; it is not through the use of the definite NP that the speaker makes it clear that he assumes familiarity with the fact that someone broke the glass.)*
>
> Who has broken this glass? *(As in the case of Who's broken a glass?, the use of has broken is due to a link with the present: the speaker wants to know which person is to be held responsible for this, i. e. he is concerned with the present relevance of the bygone situation. This sentence too is only acceptable if the speaker believes that all the people who might turn out to be the person who broke the glass are somehow 'present'.)*

Consider also:

> Why {did you punish / have you punished} Tom? *(The speaker's focus may be either on THEN or on NOW. In other words, the presupposition may be either 'You punished Tom' or 'You have punished Tom'.)*
>
> Why {haven't you spoken / *didn't you speak} to him yet? *(Yet requires reference to a period leading up to now, which means that the speaker has a pre-present period in mind. In Br.E. this requires the use of the present perfect.)*[1]
>
> Why {have you been / were you} waiting for me? (*If the speaker uses the present perfect why have you been waiting, the presupposition 'You have been waiting for me' receives either a continuative or an up-to-now reading. These readings involve the location of the situation in a period leading up to* t_0. *This means that they are unavailable if the past tense is used. A speaker who uses the past tense form were waiting has a past vantage time in mind, i. e. a bygone time conceived of as cut off from the present.)*
>
> [And if Lord Douglas is so distressed about the loss incurred by the Scottish service,] why *has* BEA *been* so reluctant to allow any other airlines an opportunity to provide

---

[1] In Am. E. the past tense is acceptable: *Why didn't you speak to him yet?*

service? (LOB) *(The intended interpretation of the presupposition is probably continuative. Anyhow, the speaker does not focus on a specific past time.)*

[The Prince stared at it and said: “The Princess has taken the trouble to wear a tiara.] Why have you not done so?” (LOB) *(The speaker is concerned with the present result of the bygone action of putting on special headgear. The time when it was put on is irrelevant.)*

Why have you come here? (LOB) *(focus on NOW: ‘You’ve come here. Why?’ is interpreted as ‘You’re here. Why?’)*

6.4.3 The following are examples with *how*:

How did John do in Africa? *(This is interpreted as ‘How did John do when he was in Africa?’. It is presupposed that John was in Africa, which implies that he is no longer there.)*

Well, how has he done in Africa himself? (LOB) *(One likely interpretation is that the referent of he is still in Africa (= continuative reading of the presupposition). If the situation is seen as a situation that is just over (= indefinite reading of the presupposition), the speaker may also be concerned with its present result.)*

6.4.4 Examples with *where*:

[Five minutes ago this room was full of people.] Where have they all gone? *(focus on NOW*: ‘Where are they now?’)

[“Where is Mary?” – “She left half an hour ago.”] – “Where did she go?” – [“To her mother’s.”] *(focus on the time when the addressee saw Mary leave)*

However, Br. E. normally uses *Where have you been?* rather than *Where were you?* when addressing a person who has just come back from somewhere. This is a typical example of the use of the present perfect to trigger a ‘nonquantificational constitution reading’ (see 5.19.1).

[I’ve been waiting for over an hour, cruising around on my own in the car, then I knew you must return sometime.] Where *have* you *been*? (LOB)

Compare:

Where have you been? *(presupposes ‘You haven’t been here.’, ‘You’ve been somewhere else.’)*

Where did you go? *(presupposes ‘You went somewhere.’)*

Although *Where have you been?* need not at all imply that the speaker feels negatively about the absence, *if* the speaker is annoyed or has been worried by the absence, then *Where have you been?* is more likely than *Where did you go?*.

6.4.5 The following are examples with *what* illustrating how both the preterite and the present perfect can be found in direct and indirect *what*-questions, depending on the usual factors determining the choice between these tenses. In all the examples that choice is in keeping with whether the speaker is concerned with THEN or NOW:

> [There a UNO army of Africans, bossed by an Indian, has been in charge for months.] And what *has* it *made* of the Congo? (LOB) *(= What's the present state of the Congo resulting from that UNO action?)*
>
> Your statement that the German people knew what *happened* to the Jews is wrong. (LOB) *(Both knew and happened locate their situation at a time which is seen as cut off from the present.)*
>
> Certainly [the film] 'A bout de Souffle' is extremely exciting, especially if you can forget what has *come* since. (LOB) *(The present perfect is obligatory because since refers to a period leading up to now and has come refers to a hypersituation filling this period.)*
>
> I now turn to the question of overspill, in respect of which it is very difficult to discover what *has been happening*. (LOB) *(The presupposition 'Something has been happening' is intended to be interpreted as continuative.)*
>
> Dr Edgar H. Schein's article 'The Chinese Indoctrination Process for Prisoners of War' gives a generalized picture of what *happened* to the average soldier from capture to repatriation. (LOB) *(focus on what happened THEN)*
>
> The reader is now in possession of all the facts needed to determine what *has happened* to the aliens, [and I hope not to be pointing out the obvious if I explain that the clue is in the apparent speeding-up of their television broadcasts.] (LOB) *(There is current relevance here. The present perfect functions as the perfect of a narrative present. That is, the point that the narrative has reached is identified with the reader's 'now' in order to place the reader inside the story, and the present perfect thus invites the reader to locate the aliens' experience in the period leading up to 'now', rather than, as the preterite would indicate, locating their experience in the past time-sphere, separate from the reader's here and now.)*
>
> [The proceedings opened with Colleano's giving me a summary of the case. From our point of view this was mere camouflage;] but it is necessary to repeat it here for the purpose of clarifying what *happened* subsequently. (LOB) *(The past tense has to be used because of the presence of the time-specifying adverb subsequently, which refers to a past time.)*
>
> [Do come and sit down, Celia.] And what *have* you *done* with your friend? (LOB) *(present relevance)*

In some cases there does not seem to be an obvious reason why the speaker chooses a past or pre-present focus:

> [It is now five years since his first play, 'The Quare Fellow', was produced, three years since 'Borstal Boy' was published and 'The Hostage' was put on.] What *has happened* to the play, 'Richard's Cork Leg', begun 18 months ago and due for presentation at the Theatre Royal, Stratford, last spring? It was never finished. What *happened* to the new book partially tape-recorded by his publishers in March of last year? (LOB)

6.5 The present perfect *vs* the preterite in *when*-questions

6.5.1 As noted in 4.6.2, *when*-questions referring to a single bygone situation cannot make use of an indefinite present perfect:

When {did she leave / *has she left}? *(direct question)*

I wonder when the accident {happened / *has happened}. *(indirect question)*

The reason for the obligatory use of the preterite is that the use of *when?* with reference to a single given situation reveals that the speaker is not concerned with NOW but with THEN. *When?* asks for the identification of the time of actualization of a particular situation whose actualization is presupposed. (Thus, *When did John hit Jane?* carries the presupposition 'John hit Jane'.) Since NOW is a time that is by definition given, *when?* presupposes that the time asked for is not the present. The use of *when?* in a clause referring to a single bygone situation thus automatically means that there is actualization focus, hence that the temporal focus is on the past time of actualization of the bygone situation. In other words, *When?* is incompatible with an indefinite perfect. (In fact, the very reason why we speak of 'indefinite perfect' is that the time of actualization remains indefinite and that the speaker is not concerned with it.)

6.5.2 On the other hand, we use the present perfect, not the preterite, in sentences like the following, in which the present perfect is the perfect version of the 'timeless' (or rather, omnitemporal) use of the present tense:

When *have* I *done* enough? [When I have worked seven hours, seven and a half, eight …?] (www)

When *have* you *achieved* "rapport"? [When you model and the customer follows, you have achieved a high degree of "rapport".] (www)

[One of the dilemmas facing a prospective buyer involves the number of homes that should be seen before making a final buying decision. Some people are not content until they have seen every home on the market in their price range.] How do you know when you *have seen* enough homes in order to make an offer on a certain home with the confidence that it is the right one for you? (www)

When *have* I *mastered* the clarinet? (www)

In every case the meaning of the *when*-question is something like 'At what point on its progress along a scale of increasing approximation to Y does X count as Y?'

6.5.3 There is another use of *when* that goes with the present perfect. In this use, which involves the number-quantifying constitution type of present perfect, the speaker asks the addressee to look back over the pre-present – usually the question is in the second person and the pre-present is the period of the addressee's life – and asks for the/an occasion or occasions on which a situation has actualized. These *when*-questions do not ask for temporal locations but for instances of experience in a period up to now. Usually they seem to ask too what characterized the 'occasion' or context of the situation. A typical context for such *when*-questions is a list of questions about one individual's experiences. In other cases, though, the speaker is interested in one particular situation-type (experience) and how that situation-type has been experienced by various people – see the last two of the following examples.

> [What makes you happy? In looking over your life, where and] when *have* you *been* the happiest? [Where were you, and what were you doing?] (www)
>
> [Another area to explore is the expert's past history as a witness.] *Where and when has she testified*, and how often? [Has it been more for plaintiffs or the defence? (…) Has he ever served the opponent before, or been represented by that firm?] (www)
>
> When *have* you successfully *executed* a project within a tight time-frame and with a limited budget?
>
> [Do I enjoy making decisions? What steps do I take when making decisions? Do I have leadership potential?] *When have I demonstrated this potential?* [What are some examples of my ability to motivate others? Do I enjoy making decisions that affect other people?] *When have I done this* and what were the results? (www)
>
> When have you found yourself losing the sense of God's presence in prayer? [Have you found out why? What was the lesson you learned, if any? (…)] When have you most felt that you had lost touch with God? *When have you felt most intimate with God?* [How have these moments affected your prayers?] (www)
>
> When *have* YOU *been asked* to produce YOUR birth certificate for ANY purpose? (www)
>
> When *have* YOU *experienced* Stendhal syndrome? [Or rather, to what piece of art or music? (…) When *have* you *felt* like your entire existence was swallowed by something you either looked into or listened to? [How, exactly did you feel it happen?] (www)

Occasionally the past tense can be found in *when*-questions of this type:

> [What motivates you? Make four lists:] When *were* you happiest? When *were* you unhappiest? When *did* you *feel* successful? When *did* you *feel* unsuccessful? (www)
>
> [The following exercise may help you to recognize what personal strengths make you more self-responsible. First answer the following questions by writing down a key word or phrase that will help you to remember specific situations.] When *did* you *resist* buying something under pressure? When *have* you *disagreed* with something in a discussion or argument, [or when you were on a committee, even though there was pressure to conform?] When *have* you *rejected* a drink, drug, or food when you felt pressure to take it, but you really didn't want it? When *did* you successfully *resist* manipulation to do something that you really didn't want to do? [In each case, there was probably some characteristic of your personality that led to your choice.] (www) *(In this stretch of discourse the speaker apparently does not*

> *distinguish between the present perfect and the past tense in* *when**-clauses inquiring about someone's experience.)*

Such *when*-questions in the preterite most often follow one or more clauses in the preterite:

> [It does not matter] when, who you *were working* for, what you *were doing*, etc. When *were* you happiest? [Think of all of the elements that made you happy.] (www)
>
> [Consider opportunities you *had* to respond to God's love.] When *were* you successful? When *did* you *miss* opportunities? (www)
>
> How *did* you *create* that opportunity? When *were* you successful in selling a concept to people who initially opposed you? How *did* you *convince* them? (www)

In these examples the *when*-question each time concerns one or more bygone occasions which have already been referred to in the past tense. It is natural that the past tense should be used in such a *when*-question.

However, the kind of *when*-question treated in this section (6.5.3) only allows the past tense if the speaker presupposes actualization of the situation of which instances are sought. Thus, in the last examples the past tense is possible because, although the *when*-question looks for instances rather than precise times of presupposed situations, it can be taken for granted that there has been a time which fits the description 'the time when you were happiest' or 'the time when you were successful'. If this condition is not satisfied, the past tense is hardly acceptable. This is the case in the following example, which hardly allows the idea that actualization is presupposed of the situation of which instances are sought:

> [Another area to explore is the expert's past history as a witness.] ??Where and when *did* she *testify*, and how often?

This is clearly odd in the context of the original example (given above), namely guidance for the treatment of experts in general in court cases, because it is unlikely that one can presuppose that every possible expert will already have testified at some time. (Note that *the expert* does not refer to a specific expert: the speaker is talking of experts in general.)

The second reason why the past tense is odd in the above example is that the speaker's concern is with present experience rather than past actualization. In fact, the latter factor is sufficient in itself, as appears from the following example, in which the second clause makes it clear that the speaker does assume that all his addressees have experienced Stendhal syndrome:

> When {*have* YOU *experienced* / ??*did* YOU *experience*} Stendhal syndrome? [Or rather, to what piece of art or music?] (...) When {*have* you *felt* / ??*did* you *feel*} like your entire existence was swallowed by something you either looked into or listened to? [How, exactly did you feel it happen?] (www)

6.5.4 In the previous section we have seen that if the speaker of a *when*-question is asking about the time of actualization of a bygone situation, the fact of actualization of the situation is taken for granted, and it is the past tense that is used:

> When {*did* you *mislay* / **have* you *mislaid*} all the butter that I bought yesterday?

However, there are cases in which a *when*-question asks the addressee to supply an occasion or occasions on which a situation has actualized, rather than asking for the temporal location of the actualization of a situation (which is thus presupposed to have actualized). In these cases, the present perfect (with number-quantifying constitution interpretation) can be used. Typically, such *when*-questions are rhetorical and are used to imply that no occasion of actualization of the situation referred to exists. For example:

> [Sixty-seven minutes – hell's bells.] When *have* I ever *spent* more than an hour in front of one picture in a gallery?

> [You wouldn't think it was so much to ask after all this time, would you Alfred?] When *have* I *asked* anything from him? (www)

> [Batman has everything known to man inside his utility belt.] When *has* he ever *been* in a situation where his utility belt was not able to save him? (www)

Such *when*-questions in the present perfect can be used to challenge an explicit or implicit assumption on the part of the addressee or someone else (including the speaker). Thus the speakers of the following challenge the implicit assumption that they would possibly lie:

> ["Ask me a question and I'll answer it; it's as simple as that." – "But I won't know if you're telling the truth."] – "And when *have* I *lied* to you?" (www)

> ["You snapped up the cutest guy in school before the rest of us even saw him!" Jean blushed. "Really?" Ororo rolled her eyes.] "When *have* I ever *lied* to you?" – ["Never." – "There, then."] (www)

The message is: 'Your suspicion implies that it's possible that I would lie to you, but that belief is unreasonable since you have no experience of my having lied on past occasions.' Similarly, the speaker of

> [Whew! I ain't seen this stuff before, either, so I take no responsibility for what it says] (but then when *have* I ever *taken* responsibility for anything?). (www)

rejects the implication of his own utterance: normally refusing to do something implies that it is possible in theory that one would or could do that thing. The speaker rejects this implication of 'I could take responsibility for what it says' by pointing out that there is no evidence that such responsibility-taking has ever occurred, so it is not reasonable to assume that there was ever a chance that he *would* take responsibility.

> ["Can I go over to the island?" – "You don't need my permission to go over to the island.] When *have* I ever *stopped* you?" (adapted from www)

The past tense too can sometimes be found in such examples:

> ["But mum … I'm not lying! She's the one that's lying!" – "Just go to bed, won't you? I'm too angry to deal with you." – "You're an idiot!] When *did* I ever *lie* to you!" (www)
>
> [I have problems managing stress, that's true, but] when *did* I ever *ask* him to handle my problems? (www)
>
> [Sixty-seven minutes – hell's bells.] When *did* I ever *spend* more than an hour in front of one picture in a gallery? [Previous personal best was probably 0.6 minutes in front of a Vermeer in the Rijksmuseum in Amsterdam during Euro 2000.] (www) *(Despite the follow-up to the question, the question should still be taken to mean 'I've never spent more than an hour in front of one picture', because the follow-up does not so much answer the question as back up the assertion 'I've never spent long in front of one picture'.)*

It should be noted, finally, that, although the speaker of these *when*-questions (in the present perfect or past tense) clearly believes in each case that the answer to the question is 'never', the utterance is still not equivalent to an assertion that the situation referred to has never taken place. Thus it is not impossible for the question to be treated by the hearer and/or the speaker as (to some extent, at least) a genuine challenge to cite instances of actualizations of the situation referred to:

> ["Do you believe John Kerry voted for this war?" – "Yes I do."] – "When *has* he ever *said* he voted for the war? [Tell me the interview. I want to look it up." – "I don't know exactly – well, go to gop.com. There's about – there's 11 minutes of different interviews." – "He never says he voted for the war." – "Well, I'm not saying in that interview, but I'm saying in some." – "Which one?" – "Oh, I don't know. I don't have that in front of me." – "OK. I don't think he ever said it. But anyway, we'll look … I will continue my search …"] (www)
>
> ["He has never ever said that he wanted to cut pensions or cut child benefit or cut the benefits that go to disabled people. He has never said that." – "He did actually, according to this quote."] – "When *did* he ever *say* that he was going to cut benefits?" – ["It has been pointed out to me that in *Newsweek* of 7 October 1996 he said 'Our priorities should be to re-order public spending so that we are spending less on welfare and more on areas like education.'"] (www)

6.6 Summary

6.6.1 In order to locate a situation time entirely before t_0, the speaker has the choice, as far as time reference is concerned, between a past tense form and an indefinite present perfect. The present perfect is used when the speaker is concerned with the relevance of the bygone situation to the present. As we have seen in chapter 4, the past tense is used when there is focus on the actualization of the bygone situation itself. (That is, focus on the actualization as a whole or on some aspect of it, such as when or how the situation took place).

The indefinite present perfect is used to introduce a bygone situation that is relevant to the present, but once a situation can be treated as 'given' in the discourse, reference to it involves actualization focus, and it is the past tense that is used. For example, *I've just seen Meg. She was washing an elephant.* Sometimes a situation can be treated as given because it is implied by the (linguistic or extralinguistic) context, rather than because it has been explicitly introduced. Here, too, the present perfect is not appropriate. For example, in *How did you get that scar on your cheek?* the existence of the scar is presupposed, which means, given our world knowledge, that we can assume that the hearer *got* the scar at some time in the past. The actualization of a bygone situation of getting the scar is 'given', and the present perfect cannot be substituted for the past tense.

6.6.2 In most *wh*-questions, the speaker has the choice, in principle, between using the past tense and using the present perfect, depending on whether the focus is on THEN or NOW. For example, in the first example below, the speaker focuses on the past activity of putting the butter somewhere; he may not even want to know where it is now. In the second example the focus is on the present – the same activity is the subject of the question, but the speaker is looking for a response that will tell him where the butter is now.

> Where *did* you *put* the butter?
>
> Where *have* you *put* the butter?

6.6.3 However, one sort of *wh*-question, namely *when*-questions, is more restricted. If the speaker of a *when*-question is asking about the time of actualization of a bygone situation, the fact of actualization of the situation is taken for granted, and it is the past tense that is used:

> When {*did* you *mislay* / **have* you *mislaid*} all the butter that I bought yesterday?

However, there are cases in which a *when*-question asks the addressee to supply an occasion or occasions on which a situation has actualized, rather than asking for the temporal location of the actualization of a situation (which is thus presupposed to have actualized). In these cases, the present perfect may be used, but with a number-quantifying constitution meaning rather than with an indefinite one.

> [What makes you happy? In looking over your life, where and] when *have* you *been* the happiest? [Where were you, and what were you doing?] (www)
>
> When *have* you successfully *executed* a project within a tight time-frame and with a limited budget?

The past tense can often be used in such examples, too, but not when it is unacceptable to presuppose the actualization of a specific instance or specific instances of the sort of situation referred to. For example, in a discussion of the use of experts in general (and not of any particular expert), we find:

> [Another area to explore is the expert's past history as a witness.] *Where and when has she testified*, and how often? [Has it been more for plaintiffs or the defence? (...) Has he ever served the opponent before, or been represented by that firm?] (www)

To substitute the past tense here, as in:

> Another area to explore is the expert's past history as a witness. *Where and when did she testify*, and how often?

would be to presuppose that the situation of the expert testifying has actualized at some time in the past. This would significantly change the interpretation of the sentence, since *Where and when has she testified?* leaves open the possibility that the witness in question has actually never testified before. (This is inherent in the meaning of an indefinite perfect.) The presupposition (inherent in the past tense) that she *has* done so is not easily acceptable, since the NP 'the expert' is a generic NP, which refers to witnesses in general. In the world as we know it, many people that are called as witness have never been in the witness box before. The presupposition accompanying the past tense thus runs counter to our pragmatic knowledge of the world.

6.6.4 *When*-questions with a number-quantifying constitution perfect are often rhetorical and are used to imply that no occasion of actualization of the situation referred to exists. For example:

> [Sixty-seven minutes – hell's bells.] When *have* I ever *spent* more than an hour in front of one picture in a gallery?

Such *when*-questions in the present perfect can be used to challenge an explicit or implicit assumption on the part of the addressee or someone else (including the speaker). Thus the speaker of the following challenges the implicit assumption that he would possibly lie:

> ["Ask me a question and I'll answer it; it's as simple as that." – "But I won't know if you're telling the truth."] – "And when *have* I *lied* to you?"

The message is: 'Your suspicion implies that it's possible that I would lie to you, but that belief is unreasonable since you have no experience of my having lied on past occasions.' Similarly, the speaker of

> [Whew! I ain't seen this stuff before, either, so I take no responsibility for what it says] (but then when *have* I ever *taken* responsibility for anything?). (www)

rejects the implication of his own utterance: normally refusing to do something implies that it is possible in theory that one would or could do that thing. The speaker rejects this implication of ‘I can take responsibility for what it says’ by pointing out that there is no evidence that such responsibility-taking has ever occurred, so it is not reasonable to assume that there was ever a chance that he *would* take responsibility.

7. Absolute tense forms referring to the post-present

I. ‘Future tense’ forms *vs* ‘futurish’ forms 337
7.1 Definition of ‘future tense’ 337
7.2 Dual time conceptualization in sentences referring to the post-present 338
7.3 ‘Futurish’ tense forms 338
7.4 Modal implication: not-yet-factual-at-t_0 340
7.5 The distribution of *shall* and *will* in the future tense 340
7.6 The various meanings of *shall* and *will* 341
7.7 The progressive future tense (without progressive meaning) 344

II. Remarks on *be going to* 345
7.8 ‘*Be going to* + infinitive’: futurish form or future tense form 345
7.9 ‘*Be going to* + infinitive’ as futurish form: general meaning 346
7.10 *Be going to* expressing a present intention 346
7.11 *Be going to* expressing present predictability of a post-present actualization 350
7.12 A special use of *be going to* in *if*-clauses 352
7.13 Constraints on the use of *be going to* 352

III. Futurish forms other than *be going to* 356
7.14 *Be about to* and *be on the point of* 356
7.15 The auxiliary *be to* 356
7.16 The present tense 357

IV. Summary 358

Abstract

In the preceding four chapters, we dealt with the meanings and uses of three absolute tenses (= tenses that relate a situation time directly to the temporal zero-point), viz. the present tense, the past tense (or preterite) and the present perfect, and with some principles underlying the choice between the preterite and the present perfect. In this chapter, we examine the fourth absolute tense, viz. the future tense. We also consider other verb forms that have an element of future time reference as part of their semantics.

In section I (7.1–7.6) we first deal with the distinction between 'future tense' forms and what we call 'futurish' forms, the latter of which do not express pure future and combine future time reference with present time reference.

Section II (7.7–7.12) provides some comments on *be going to*, which wavers between a futurish auxiliary and a future tense auxiliary, depending on whether it expresses the idea that a future situation is predictable because of present indications (e. g. *My little girl is going to be very clever*) or whether it is a more neutral means of referring to the future (e. g. *It's going to rain tomorrow*). This section also deals, among other things, with the use of *be going to* to express a present intention (e. g. *Cheryl is going to marry Gordon when she has graduated*).

Section III discusses some further futurish forms, including (among others) '*will* + *be* Verb-*ing*' (used without progressive meaning), the auxiliary *be about to*, and the auxiliary *be to*.

I. 'Future tense' forms *vs* 'futurish' forms

7.1 Definition of 'future tense'

The future tense locates a situation time in the post-present and normally expresses 'pure future'. 'Futurish forms' are not future tense forms and do not express pure future.

7.1.1 The FUTURE TENSE refers to the post-present in the sense that it locates a situation time (= the time of a 'predicated' situation – see 2.12–13) in the post-present zone of the present time-sphere. In English, future tense forms are not built by means of a special suffix but by means of the present tense of one of the auxiliaries *will* or *shall* (the latter in the first person only) or of the semi-auxiliary *be going to* (which, however, can also be used as a 'futurish form' – see 2.9 and 7.8–9). For example:

> According to the weather forecast it {will / is going to} rain tomorrow.
>
> We {shall / will} all die – one day.

It is typical of the future tense that the speaker merely makes a prediction, i. e. he just expresses what he thinks will happen in the post-present. In the literature this is known as the expression of 'PURE FUTURE'.

7.1.2 'FUTURISH FORMS' (see 2.9 and 7.3) are not future tense forms. For one thing, they do not express pure future. For another, they combine reference to a post-present actualization with a sense of present judgement. Moreover, some of them (viz. progressive and nonprogressive present tense forms) basically refer to the present. Their use as a futurish form is a metaphorical extension of this (i. e. a 'shift of temporal perspective' – see 2.20): the post-present is treated as if it were the present. For example:

> I'm leaving. *(The reference is to a situation which is either actualizing at t_0 or arranged to actualize in the post-present. The latter interpretation is an example of how a post-present situation is represented as if it were actualizing at t_0. This interpretation is marked in that it requires a contextual or pragmatic indication that the reference is not to the present.)*
>
> [I've bought some paint because] I'm going to redecorate my bedroom. *(The reference is to a post-present actualization based on a present intention.)*

7.2 Dual time conceptualization in sentences referring to the post-present

In 6.1.2 we noticed that the difference between the ‘indefinite present perfect’ and the past tense is that the speaker is concerned with NOW and THEN, respectively. This means that there is a dual time conceptualization in the meaning of the indefinite present perfect: while referring to a bygone situation, the speaker is actually thinking of the present. This dual time conceptualization can actually become dual time reference, when both times are specified by different Adv-times, as in *Now we have sold forty-three cakes since the fair started*. There can also be dual time reference when the future tense is used in combination with a present time adverbial, witness examples like *Now we won’t have any wine when Uncle Grégoire arrives*. In this example *now* refers to a present state of affairs and is equivalent to something like ‘Now that X has happened …’. (This is a different kind of *now* from the one in *Now we have sold forty-three cakes since* … This explains why we can also say We *have now sold forty-three cakes since* …, but hardly $^?$*We won’t now have any wine when* … However, the two examples do illustrate a kind of dual time reference.)

When there is no time-specifying adverbial referring to the present, the sense of present time reference in sentences in the future tense is restricted to the idea that the speaker makes a prediction at t_0: he just expresses what he thinks will happen in the post-present. The temporal focus of the future tense is then clearly on the post-present time of actualization rather than on t_0. This means that we can no longer speak of dual time reference.

7.3 ‘Futurish’ tense forms

In *Meg {is leaving / is going to leave / is to leave / leaves} tomorrow*, a ‘futurish’ tense form is used. Such forms differ from future tense forms in that they effect dual time reference, viz. a combination of future time reference and present time reference. *Be going to* can be used to build such a futurish tense form, but it may also form part of a future tense form. In the latter case it refers exclusively to the post-present, just like the future tense auxiliary *will*.

7.3.1 As noted in 7.1.2, apart from the future tense, there are other expressions referring to the possible actualization of a situation in the post-present. However, they differ from the future tense in that, even in the absence of future time adverbials, they effect dual time reference, viz. a combination of future time reference and present time reference – see 7.2. In fact, the idea of present time reference is at least as salient as the idea of post-present actualization:

The train leaves at 7.12 tonight. *(reference to present scheduling)*

I'm seeing her tomorrow. *(reference to a present arrangement, intention, programme…)*

I'm going to give up my job. *(reference to a present intention)*

In examples like the following, the element of present time reference is even more salient:

The President is to visit Rome next week. *(= There exists a present arrangement for the President to visit Rome next week.)*

[Look out!] The milk is about to boil over. *(The speaker is referring to the present state of the milk, which forebodes boiling over.)*

Bill is on the point of having a nervous breakdown. *(The speaker is referring to Bill's present state of mind, which forebodes a nervous breakdown.)*

However, there is a clear sense of post-present actualization in all of the above examples, which is sufficient for them to establish a post-present 'temporal domain' (see 2.15.4). The 'central orientation time' of this domain is the time of actualization of the situation referred to by the predicate whose verb form is *leaves*, *am seeing*, *give up*, *visit*, *boil over* and *having*, respectively. For ease of reference, we will refer to the complete verb forms (e. g. *am going to give up*) as 'FUTURISH FORMS'. As we will see in 10.1, a post-present temporal domain established by a futurish form is expanded in exactly the same way as a post-present domain created by a future tense form.

7.3.2 The futurish auxiliary *be going to* is a borderline case as far as dual time reference is concerned. In most cases the speaker's main concern is with the present cause or origin of the post-present actualization of a situation. For example:

My little girl is going to be very clever. *(= 'There are present indications that my little girl will turn out to be clever.')*

[This is so important that] I'm going to do it myself. *(emphasis on my present intention)*

However, there are also examples in which the post-present time of actualization is much more salient than the present (e. g. *It is going to rain tomorrow*), in which case the difference between *be going to* and *will* is less pronounced: whereas the latter expresses a prediction, *be going to* seems to be a means of talking about the future in a neutral way. Compare:

It will rain tomorrow. *(present prediction about the post-present: sort of prophesy)*

It's going to rain tomorrow. *(either a prediction based on present evidence or a neutral statement about the post-present)*

> It is going to rain soon. [I just know it. Not predictive weather skills, just long, damp experience.] (www) *(relatively neutral statement about the post-present)*

There is hardly any difference of meaning between the following, because of the question format:

> What'll happen next?
>
> What's going to happen next? Are those men going to kill us?

Both questions treat the addressee as somehow knowing something about the future that the speaker does not know. The prediction element of *will* is not salient and so does not have much semantic weight here. *Be going to* does not have the connotation that characterizes it as a futurish form, viz. the idea that the post-present actualization depends on a present intention or otherwise has its roots in the present. So both *will* and *be going to* refer to the post-present in a neutral way. In this case *be going to* is no longer a futurish form with dual time reference but can be considered as an alternative to *will*, i. e. as a future tense auxiliary.

7.3.3 The distribution of the future tense and the various futurish forms (with their typical connotations) will be discussed in 7.7–16 below.

7.4 Modal implication: not-yet-factual-at-t_0

Any sentence referring to the post-present is modalized because it refers to something that is 'not-yet-factual' at t_0.

A situation whose actualization is located in the post-present is 'NOT-YET-FACTUAL-AT-t_0': the actualization is not yet a fact at t_0, and has not even started to become a fact at t_0. This means that, synchronically speaking, the future tense is a 'modalized' tense, i. e. a tense with a modal implication. However, it is first and foremost a tense, not (as is often claimed in the literature) a mood: its basic function is to locate a situation in time, and in doing so it automatically expresses the modal connotation of not-yet-factuality-at-t_0. In other words, the future tense satisfies our definition of tense (see 2.1 and 2.7): it is the correlation between a particular temporal meaning ('The situation time is located posterior to t_0') and a formal expression of this.

7.5 The distribution of *shall* and *will* in the future tense

7.5.1 The future tense is normally built with *will*. *Shall* is possible only in the first person, where it is a formal alternative to *will*. It is rare in spoken Br. E.

and very rare in colloquial Am. E. It is not normally used when the subject is *both of us, all of us, none of us, some of us*, etc., even though these are expressions of the first person, nor after subjects that are coordinated NPs with a first person pronoun as one of its constituents (e. g. *You and I*, *We or they*, etc.).[1]

> Both of us {will / *shall} be in trouble if she does not keep her mouth shut.
>
> You and I {will / *shall} probably go our own ways after college.
>
> My wife and myself {will / *shall} join the rest of the company later.

7.5.2 The above mentioned distribution also holds for *shall* and *will* in the future perfect and for the (nonmodal) conditional tense auxiliaries *should* and *would*.

> By that time I {will / shall} have left the building.
>
> By that time she {will / #shall} have left the building. *(Shall could only be used as a modal auxiliary expressing a command.)*
>
> I told him what I {would / (should)} do about it. *(Should can be interpreted either as a tense auxiliary or as a modal expression of advice, duty, moral obligation, etc.)*
>
> She told him what she {would / #should} do about it. *(Should could only be interpreted as a modal expression of advice, duty, moral obligation, etc.)*
>
> [I realized that] I {would / should} probably have left the building before 5 p.m. *(Should can be interpreted as a tense auxuliary or as a modal auxiliary.)*
>
> [I realized that] she {would / #should} probably have left the building before 5 p.m. *(Should can only be interpreted as a modal auxiliary.)*
>
> [We knew that] both of us {would / *should} be shot because of what we had done. *(Should is not normally used as tense auxiliary after a first person subject like both of us.)*

Of course, the distinction is obscured when the contracted form *'ll* or *'d* is used.

7.6 The various meanings of *shall* and *will*

As tense auxiliaries, *shall* and *will* express pure future, i. e. they convey a sense of neutral prediction.

---

[1] Occasional exceptions can be found, but these may be instances of hypercorrection. (*Shall* was, and perhaps is still, considered by some to be the 'correct' first person form.)

> My wife and I *shall* be only too pleased to take advantage of your offers to prospective customers. (www)
>
> [The idea of just solo rep. in a recital is also relatively new, it used to be that you would go to a concert, hear a symphony, a sonata and a trio all in the same concert.] Now the two of us *shall* be crucified for our elitist theories. (www)

7.6.1 *Shall* and *will* can both be used not only as future tense auxiliaries but also as modal auxiliaries. As tense auxiliaries they locate a situation time in the post-present and in doing so express one of the related ideas 'PURE FUTURE', 'PREDICTION' or 'PREDICTABILITY' – see 2.8.2. This means that the speaker merely predicts something or assumes that something is likely to happen: he does not represent the post-present actualization of the situation as determined by present circumstances, such as the present volition or intention of the subject of the sentence or a present possibility, necessity, arrangement, etc. (As noted in 7.3.1, this emphasis on the present is typical of 'futurish forms'.) This sense of PURE FUTURE or NEUTRAL PREDICTION without attitudinal implications is clearest when the post-present actualization depends upon external factors. This is the case, for example, in the head clause of sentences containing or implying a conditional or temporal clause referring to a situation that has not yet actualized at t_0.

We'll go camping next week if the weather is fine.

You'll change your mind after you've read this letter. *(implies an as yet unfulfilled condition: if you read this letter, then you'll change your mind)*

I'll tell her everything about it when she comes tomorrow.

[Don't go near the puma.] It'll bite you. *(implicit condition: if you go near it)*

[Why don't you invite a couple of friends?] It'll cheer you up. *(implicit condition: if you invite them)*

Tomorrow it will be rainy but warm. *(In weather forecasts the predicted situation by definition does not depend on anybody's volition or intention.)*

Shall and *will* can be used as modal auxiliaries expressing some kind of volition. There are a few constructions in which this interpretation comes to the fore and in which futurity is therefore better expressed by other means.

7.6.2 When used as *modal* auxiliaries (rather than future tense auxiliaries), *shall* and *will* can express various meanings that have to do with volition. According to context, they can express willingness, a promise, a desire, a wish, a threat, a warning, an intention, insistence, determination, etc. In contexts inviting one of these modal interpretations, *shall* or *will* will be avoided if the speaker just wishes to express pure future. The following are some typical examples of this.

(a) In questions, '*shall I/we* + the present infinitive of an intentional (agentive) verb' is used to inquire about a person's will. The unmarked interpretation of this construction is therefore that of a suggestion or offer of service. It follows that *will* (rather than *shall*) is the normal auxiliary in questions which involve a first person subject and an agentive verb and which merely ask for information about the future.

["Take the 6.33 train." – "Fine.] What time will I be in Leeds? *(pure future: asking for information)*

What time shall I be in Leeds? *(= 'What time would you like me to be in Leeds?')*

Shall I help you? *(offer of service: 'Would you like me to help you?')*

Will I help you? *(= 'What do you think? Will I help you or not? Guess.)*

Mummy, will I be as clever as aunt Emma when I grow up? *(pure future)*

What time shall I collect you tonight? *(= 'What time would you like me to come?')*

(b) With volitional (intentional) verbs (i. e. verbs referring to a consciously performed action), '*will not* + nonprogressive nonperfect infinitive' can often be understood as expressing a present or post-present refusal. To avoid such an interpretation, speakers who want to express pure future tend to use the progressive form of the future tense, which does not yield an interpretation that has to do with willingness. Similarly, they prefer to use *be going to* to express post-present actualization depending on a present intention.

Mummy, Jane won't give me back my bow and arrow. *(refusal)*

He won't be leaving his house before eight o'clock. *(pure future)*

He probably won't leave his house. *(ambiguous)*

I am not going to leave my house! *(present intention)*

(c) With volitional verbs, *yes/no*-questions introduced by '*will you* + nonprogressive nonperfect infinitive' are normally understood as expressing a request, an offer or an invitation (unless the intonation renders this kind of reading unlikely). Such an interpretation is avoided by the use of the progressive form of the future tense for pure future and by the use of *be going to* for future with present intention.

Will you come to the party? *(probably a request or invitation)*

Will you be coming to the party? *(pure future)*

Are you going to use this towel? *(intention)*

Will you come inside? *(invitation)*

Will you be all right tomorrow? *(pure future: nonagentive verb phrase)*

Will you have some cocoa? *(offer)*

Will you please stop shouting? *(request)*

7.7 The progressive future tense (without progressive meaning)

Post-present time reference can also be expressed by the progressive form of the future tense. Apart from its basic use as a progressive form with progressive meaning (= representing a situation as in progress at a future 'vantage time'), there is also a special use of the progressive form of the future tense, which combines the following characteristics: (a) There is no implication of progressive aspectual meaning; (b) The reference is mostly to 'pure future', i. e. there is no implication of intention, plan or volition; (c) There is usually a suggestion that the post-present situation will actualize as a matter of routine or as part of what is (or is expected to be) the normal 'course of events'.

> We *will not be using* the gymnasium for a couple of weeks [because it is being refurbished]. *(It is only natural that a gymnasium is out of use as long as it is being refurbished.)*
>
> Bill *will be driving* to London on Thursday. [Why don't you ask him to deliver the parcel?] *(The sentence implies that Bill will be driving to London anyhow. This idea – that his driving to London next Thursday forms part of the expected course of events – may be due to the fact that there is a habitual pattern: Bill drives to London every Thursday. It is also possible, though, that next Thursday is understood to be the only time in Bill's life that he will drive to London, but that this trip is nevertheless simply something that will happen as a matter of course.)*
>
> When *will* you *be seeing* Rose again? *(Because of when, the sentence presupposes (whether or not correctly) that the addressee will see Rose again. The form will be seeing is in keeping with this, because it suggests that it can be taken for granted that the addressee will see Rose again within a contextually 'reasonable' period of time. If Rose is going to the other side of the world to live, that period will quite possibly be several years, and if she lives in the same town and is a good friend of the addressee, the period the speaker has in mind will probably be no more than a few weeks.)*
>
> When *will* Helen *be leaving*?
>
> The next thing you know he'*ll be asking* for a pay rise.

II. Remarks on *be going to*

7.8 ‘*Be going to* + infinitive’: futurish form or future tense form

7.8.1 The auxiliary *be going to* is basically used to express the idea that the post-present situation is predictable at t_0 because its origin lies in the present or because there is present evidence that the situation is going to actualize. That is, ‘*be going to* + present infinitive’ is basically a ‘futurish form’ (see 7.3.1) rather than a future tense form. However, as noted in 7.3.2, there are also examples (especially in nonformal English) in which the post-present time of actualization is more salient than the present (e. g. *It is going to rain tomorrow*), in which case the difference between *be going to* and *will* is less pronounced: whereas the latter expresses a prediction, *be going to* is a means of talking about the future in a more neutral way. In the following examples, there is little difference in meaning between *will* and *be going to*, so that there seems to be a case for analysing both of them as future tense auxiliaries:

> Tomorrow’s weather {will be / is going to be} mild and dry. *(Will is used by a speaker who is in a position to make a prediction, or wants to be heard as making a prediction, while be going to is used by someone simply making a statement of fact based on some source such as a prediction.)*
>
> Do you think Leeds {will / are going to} beat Crystal Palace in the match tomorrow?
>
> The Prince of Wales {will / is going to} attend the concert next Sunday.
>
> {What’ll / What’s going to} happen to us?

In sum, we will treat *be going to* as a futurish auxiliary when it expresses the idea that the post-present situation is predictable at t_0 because its origin lies in the present or because there is present evidence that the situation is going to actualize. When this connotation is lacking, and *be going to* just refers to the post-present in a neutral way, we will treat it as a future tense auxiliary.

7.8.2 The phrase *will be going to* can in principle be used as an ‘absolute-relative tense form’ – see 2.47. Like the future perfect, it then both establishes a post-present domain and expresses a relation (in this case: T-posteriority) in it.

> By the time we get there, they will be going to leave. *(= ‘it will be the case that they are going to leave’)*

However, when we googled *will be going to*, we did not find any examples of this use. On the other hand, we found quite a few examples in which *will be going to* simply establishes a post-present domain, i. e. is used as an alternative to either *will* or *be going to*:

> Ever wondered what the winter weather *will be going to be*? [If anyone would only know for sure. So far, we have conflicting messages.] (www)
>
> We just came home and *will be going to have* some well-deserved sleep. (www)
>
> How many *will be going to be switching* to this when or if it becomes available to you? I know damn well I will. (www)
>
> Doubt anyone here *will be going to be going* to South Africa soon, but if you do, (and god help South Africa if any of you do go there) they'll be handy ones to... (www)
>
> [Right at this time, I am not allowed to inform you about details, but] – I *will be going to ask* headquarters. Wait a minute. (www)

This use of *will be going to* is typical of a (very) informal register and can presumably not (yet) be considered as Standard English. We will pay no further attention to it in this book.

7.9 '*Be going to* + infinitive' as futurish form: general meaning

As a futurish form, *be going to* expresses dual time-reference with emphasis on the present (see 7.3.2). This concern with the present may be of various kinds, but all of them can be subsumed under the heading of 'concern with the present source (origin) of the predicted post-present actualization'.

We use *be going to* rather than *will* to express a 'premeditated intention'. However, *will* is the normal auxiliary to express an 'unpremeditated intention'.

7.10 *Be going to* expressing a present intention

7.10.1 With agentive verb phrases, *be going to* can be used to express the idea that the agent has the present intention of doing something in the post-present. The agent is as a rule the referent of the subject NP in active sentences and the referent of the NP of the *by*-PP in passive sentences. However, in passive sentences without a *by*-adjunct the agent is implicit.

> Cheryl is going to marry Gordon when she has graduated. *(reference to Cheryl's present intention or decision)*
>
> These regulations are going to be abolished by the new government.
>
> These trees are going to be cut down. *(agent not specified)*
>
> Next year we're going to employ more workers.
>
> When are you going to speak to him again?

7.10.2 In sentences with a first person subject, *will* (but not *shall*) can sometimes also be used to represent the future as depending on a present intention. However, the intention in question is of a different kind from the sort of intention expressed by *I am going to* … This difference may not always be 100 % clear, but in general we can accept the following as a rule:

(a) When the intention is clearly *premeditated*, i. e. when the speaker has already made up his mind about what he proposes to do (e. g. when he is already preparing for it), *be going to* is the form to be used. Compare:

> [I've bought a computer.] I'm going to do the paperwork myself in future. *(premeditated intention)*
>
> [I've bought a computer.] I'll do the paperwork myself in future. *(In this context, will is interpreted as fairly volitional. It suggests something like 'I've given up expecting anyone else to do it properly, so I've made up my mind to do the paperwork myself in future', or 'OK, I give in, I will do the paperwork myself in future'.)*

Similarly:

> [Why have you written to a solicitor?] Are you going to make a will?
>
> Will you make a will? *(interpreted as volitional – 'Will you agree to make a will?' – or as having an implicit condition.)*
>
> [Why have you written to a solicitor?] ?Will you make a will? *(difficult to interpret in the given context)*

Because of its premeditated intention meaning, *be going to* can be chosen to express strong determination:

> I'm going to wait for her, even if it means sitting here all night! *(The even if-clause ensures that the whole utterance is understood as conveying strength of determination; with be going to the speaker is likely to be understood as making a defiant statement of determination. Will can also be used; if it is not accented it has more the effect of a statement of objective 'fact'; if accented it has an effect similar to that of a toddler stamping his foot.)*
>
> I'm going to keep talking to him until he changes his mind. *(With be going to this is a statement of strong determination, with will the effect is more of a calm plan.)*
>
> I'm going to get out of here if it kills me! *(Will would be somewhat less appropriate than be going to here because of the element of strong determination expressed in the conditional clause.)*
>
> [I've told you before and I'm telling you again:] I'm not going to buy you a dog. *(This expression of strong determination comes close to the expression of a refusal. With will the sentence would actually* BE *a refusal because the volition meaning would come to the fore: will not = 'am not willing to'.)*

(b) *Will* is the auxiliary to be used when the intention is clearly *unpremeditated*, i. e. when the subject has only just thought of performing the action, when the action is an immediate and spontaneous reaction to something that has been said or that has happened. (In this use, *will* is usually weakened to *'ll* in spoken English.)

["Would you like some biscuits?" – "Oh, yes. Thank you.] I'*ll take* ONE. [I love custard creams but I'm trying to cut down.]" *(unpremediated decision)*

["It's dark in here." – "Don't worry.] I'*ll fetch* a torch." *(decision made on the spur of the moment)*

[Look! She's waving to us.] I'*ll go* and see what she wants to tell us. *(id.)*

["The tap is leaking."] – "I'll have a look."

In these examples *shall* could not be substituted for *will*, because *will* here expresses not only unpremeditated intention but also volition (willingness). As is well-known, the modal idea of willingness is expressed by the modal auxiliary *will*, not by *shall*. However, in examples which completely lack the idea of willingness and seem to be more like simple statements (decisions) about the future, *shall* is not unacceptable as an alternative to *will*:

["Make up your mind!" – "OK.] I {*will* / *shall*} wear the blue shirt."

[I am fed up with reading. I think] I {*will* / *shall*} write some letters now.

[Hmmm, what else to do today? Erm, oh yes, I think] I *shall* phone Ali this evening to find out if she is indeed coming up for Easter. (www)

[There are only two podiatrists in this town, one of which is the moron. The other is his partner.] I think I *shall* skip my next appointment with him (without calling ahead of time) and go to somebody in a neighboring town. (www)

7.10.3 As noted in section 7.6.2, *yes/no*-questions beginning with '*will you* + nonprogressive nonperfect infinitive' and involving an agentive verb phrase are normally understood as requests, offers or invitations rather than as questions about intentions for future action. The latter are, therefore, more normally expressed by *are you going to?* Compare:

Are you going to have a word with Tom? *(intention)*

Will you have a word with Tom? *(easily understood as a request)*

We certainly use *are you going to?* when the intention is premeditated.

[You haven't changed into your suit yet.] Aren't you going to attend the meeting?

The past tense of *be going to* carries the implicature of nonactualization of the posterior situation.

7.10.4 Because of the connotation of premeditation, an assertion using *is/are going to* usually implies a strong expectation that the intention (plan, decision) will be carried out. In this respect it differs from the past tense forms *was/were going to*, which are most often used in contexts implying nonfulfilment of the intention:

> I'm going to throw away these papers. *(premeditated intention; fulfilment is expected)*
>
> He was going to throw these papers away, [but I told him we might need them again some day].
>
> I was just going to lock the door [when someone tapped on it].
>
> I was going to attend the meeting tomorrow. *(strongly suggests that I will not go there after all)*

When the idea of nonfulfilment of the past intention is not induced by the context, it still often arises as an implicature. This implicature has to do with the Gricean Maxim of Relation (Relevance). If, at a certain time in the past, the subject had the intention of doing something later, then there are three logical possibilities as regards the time of actualization: the situation was intended to take place either before, at or after t_0. In the first two cases, fulfilment of the intention means that the situation takes place before t_0 or at t_0. In that case the speaker will normally represent the situation as actualizing or as having actualized (i. e. as factual) by using the present or the past tense, respectively. If he does not do this but refers to the intention instead (by using *was/were going to*) this will have the effect of suggesting that the actualization of the situation cannot be referred to because it did not take place or is not taking place as expected. If it is the third logical possibility that is at play, i. e. the time of actualization of the intended situation is not before or at t_0 but after t_0, then in the unmarked case, the speaker will represent the intention as a present intention (e. g. *I'm going to attend the meeting tomorrow*) rather than as a past one (e. g. *I was going to attend the meeting tomorrow*). All this is in keeping with the Maxim of Relation (Relevance) since, other things being equal, statements about the present are more relevant than statements about the past. If, in a nonpast context, the speaker explicitly locates an intention in the past by using *was going to*, this can only mean that he thinks the intention is (or may be) no longer valid, i. e. that it will not (or may not) be carried out.

The above explanation concerns the use of *was going to* in independent clauses. When it is used in an 'intensional' context (such as indirect reported speech or free indirect speech),[2] the idea of nonfulfilment only arises if it is evoked by the context. There is no implicature of nonfulfilled intention in *He said he was going to do something about it*, unless we add something like *but it still looks the same to me*.

---

[2] An intensional context (or 'opaque context') is one in which the reference is not to the real world but to an alternative (e. g. imaginary) world. Such a context is created by (amongst other things) 'intensional verbs' ('verbs of propositional attitude') like *want, expect, believe, think, imagine*, etc. Clauses that form part of an intensional context receive an 'opaque' ('de dicto') interpretation, i. e. their truth is not evaluated in relation to the real world but in relation to the alternative world referred to.

7.10.5 A form built with *has/have been going to* receives a continuative interpretation which implies that the (situation of having the) intention leads up to (and includes) t_0, and hence that there has not been actualization of the intended situation yet.

> You've been going to talk to the landlord for months. *(implies: but you still haven't done it.)*
>
> You have been going to buy a tennis racket of your own for years, [but you still come to borrow mine].

If it does not imply a present intention, *be going to* implies that the speaker's prediction is based on present evidence or knowledge.

7.11 *Be going to* expressing present predictability of a post-present actualization

7.11.1 Apart from a present intention, there are various other factors that can render the post-present (non)actualization of a situation predictable at t_0. For the use of *is/are going to* it suffices that the speaker's prediction is based on present evidence or knowledge.

In many cases the post-present situation is predictable because there are signs in the present of what is going to happen. In other words, the post-present situation is predictable because its origin or beginning lies in the present.

> There's going to be a row in a minute. *(implies, for example, that the speaker can see that some people are getting upset.)*

Clauses belonging to a nonintensional context receive a 'transparent' ('de re') interpretation, i. e. their truth is evaluated in relation to the real world. It is typical of such an interpretation that the truth value of the clause is not affected when a referring expression in the clause is replaced by an 'identical' expression (i. e. by an expression with the same referent). Thus, since in the real world *the capital of France* and *Paris* have the same referent, we can replace the former by the latter in *The capital of France has ten million inhabitants* without altering the truth value of the sentence.

In sentences that receive an opaque interpretation, the replacement of a term by an 'identical' expression may affect the truth value: the sentence *Bill thinks that Paris is the capital of Spain* may be true even if *Bill thinks that the capital of France is the capital of Spain* is not true.

[The little girl showed her drawings to the visitors.] Everyone agreed that she was going to be a real artist. *(= The girl was already showing signs of being a gifted artist.)*

[Look out!] We're going to bump into that van!

Oh no! Betty's going to sing. *(implies that the speaker knows this, e.g. because Betty has taken the microphone.)*

I think I'm going to be sick. *(implies: I'm feeling queasy.)*

[Iraqi troops have invaded Kuwait this morning.] Surely, the United States is not going to accept this. *(expectation based on present knowledge of foreign policy)*

7.11.2 When followed by a stative verb referring to a nonintentional (nonvolitional) situation, *be going to* is automatically interpreted as expressing this sense of predictability:

We're going to *see* the finish soon.

You're not going to *like* this review of your book.

Are you going to *remember* this? [Or shall I write it down?]

[Jake already finds that bed a bit too short, and] he's going to *be* taller by the time he comes next summer. [We'll have to get a new one before his next holiday.]

She's going to *know* what's happened to her predecessor, [so she's going to have armed herself against any similar occurrences.] *(= 'It is predictable that she will have found out about what happened to her predecessor')*

7.11.3 The fact that *be going to* represents the post-present actualization of a situation as related to the present means that the situation referred to is normally interpreted as lying in the immediate or near future, unless there is an adverbial, contextual or pragmatic indication to the contrary. Compare:

We're going to have the chimney repaired. *(interpreted as referring to the immediate or near future, unless an adverbial like one day is added.)*

[Be careful.] The bath-tub is going to overflow. *(idem)*

What are you going to read to us? *(interpreted as referring to the immediate or near future, unless an adverbial like next time is added.)*

Because of this immediacy implicature, *be going to* can be used without an adverbial or contextual specification of a specific future time. In this respect it differs from *shall* and *will*, which are often hard to interpret without such a specification. Thus, a sentence like *It will snow* is pointless without an adverbial or contextual specification of a specific future time (in the same way as *It snowed* is not fully interpretable if we do not know what time the speaker is referring to), but *It's going to snow* is impeccable in isolation, because it is interpreted as a statement about the near future. This interpretation accords with the observation (made in 7.2) that, as a futurish form, '*be going to* + V' has 'dual time reference': reference to the post-present time of actualization is combined with reference to the present. This means that *be going to* does not need a temporal anchor for the post-present situation time because it already has speech time as a temporal anchor for what determines the post-present actualization.

7.12 A special use of *be going to* in *if*-clauses

In 7.15.2, it will be pointed out that *be to* can be used in a conditional clause in order to represent the possible future actualization of the *if*-clause situation as a goal that is envisaged at t_0. In informal English, *be going to* is more common than *be to* in this use.

> You'll have to hurry if you'*re (going) to* be there on time.
>
> If you'*re (going) to* pass your exams you'll have to work much harder than you're doing.
>
> You should try and get your articles published in better scientific journals if you'*re (going) to* become a name in the academic world.

7.13 Constraints on the use of *be going to*

The use of *be going to* presupposes that all the necessary conditions for the future actualization of the situation referred to are fulfilled. Because of this, *be going to* is not normally used in the head clause of a conditional sentence whose conditional clause expresses an 'open' condition (which may or may not be fulfilled in the future).

7.13.1 Because *be going to* represents the post-present as having its roots in the present, its use presupposes that all the necessary conditions for the post-present actualization of the situation have been met. This is true not only when it is used as a futurish form but also when it is used as future tense auxiliary, because even then it has some trace of the futurish meaning that the situation's actualization is dependent on present factors, even when that element of meaning in itself is virtually negligible (because it is reduced to the sense that the speaker makes a confident prediction at t_0 – a sense that is shared by 'pure future' *will*).

It follows that *be going to* is not normally used to refer to a situation whose actualization crucially depends on the future fulfilment of a condition. In other words, *will* is the normal auxiliary if the context refers to (or implies) an essential condition which is not yet fulfilled (i. e. an 'OPEN CONDITION' concerning the possible actualization of a post-present situation). Consider:

If Sue asks Jim, he {will / is going to} help her.

Depending on the choice of auxiliary, there are two interpretations:

(a) With *will*, the sentence is interpreted as 'If Sue asks Jim to help her, the result is predictably that he will do so'. Here the future actualization of Jim's helping Sue is dependent on, and will result from (i. e. be caused by), Sue's asking him to do so. Sue's asking Jim to help her is thus a necessary *and* sufficient condition for Jim to do so.
(b) *Be going to* suggests the reading 'I predict that Jim will help Sue provided that Sue asks him'. That is, Sue's asking Jim for help is a necessary but not a sufficient condition for Jim to help Sue.

The following further illustrate that if we want to refer to a situation which is only brought about by some future situation we cannot use *be going to*, because *be going to* requires the cause (i. e. the fulfilment of the condition) to be present:

["Let's sit on that bough." – "No, it's not strong enough.] {It'll break / *It's going to break}." *(implicit condition: if we sit on it)*

If you ever go to France, you {will / ??are going to} enjoy your meals there.

If she manages to improve her serve and her backhand, she {will / ??is going to} take her place among the top players.

[Be careful!] The bathtub {is going to / ??will} overflow. *(For lack of an indication of time, will strongly suggests that there is a condition missing.)*

Compare further:

["Isn't the bookcase ready yet?"] – "The glue *will* be dry in half an hour, [and then you can use it]."

[If you want to tear these things apart again, you'll have to do so quickly.] The glue {*is going to be / will be*} dry in half an hour.

In the first example, *will be dry* is much more natural than *is going to be dry* if the speaker's intention is to advise the hearer to be patient. This is because *will be dry in half an hour* puts a certain emphasis on the fact that not all the conditions for the glue to be dry (and for the bookcase to be ready) are satisfied yet (though they will be in half an hour): the main message is 'Don't touch the bookcase. It'll be ready in half an hour if you let the glue dry without interfering'. In the second example, *is going to* conveys the idea of inevitability: all the conditions for the future actualization of the situation are fulfilled, so the situation is inevitable, unless something interferes with the necessary conditions before it is too late. *Will* is also possible in this context: it brings the implicit condition 'if you do not do something quickly' to the fore.

The above observations also explain the following:

I must speak to my brother or he {*will* / $^{??}$*is going to*} make a big mistake.

I must speak to my brother because he {**will* / *is going to*} make a big mistake.

The first sentence is interpreted as 'I must speak to my brother because he will make a big mistake if I don't speak to him'. Because of the implicit reference to an as yet unfulfilled condition, the choice of *will* rather than *be going to* is normal. In the second example, only *be going to* can be used, because the idea to be expressed is that my brother's future action (which I consider a mistake) has been arranged and is fully predictable. In this case the future actualization has its roots in the present – an idea which is expressed by *be going to*, but not by *will* (which expresses a neutral prediction – see 7.6.1).

It should be noted, finally, that even in a conditional context locating the fulfiment of the condition in the future, *be going to* with strong determination is fine:

If John is still there when we arrive, I'*m going to walk* straight back out.

There is no problem here because the strong determination in question is already present at t_0. (There is a similarity here with examples like

If John is still there when we arrive, you *must walk* straight back out.

where *must* refers to a present obligation though *must walk* locates the potential (actualization of the) situation of walking in the future.)

There is no problem using *be going to* in the head clause of a conditional sentence if the conditional clause expresses a 'closed' condition.

7.13.2 It is in keeping with the previous remark that the use of *be going to* in the head clause of a conditional sentence presents no problem if the condition expressed is not treated as an 'open' condition (which may or may not be fulfilled in the post-present) but rather as a 'CLOSED CONDITION', i.e. as a condition which, at t_0, is assumed to be fulfilled or to be certain to be fulfilled. (A closed condition typically echoes something that has just been said or a conclusion the speaker has just arrived at.)

["I've lost my passport."] – "If you have lost your passport, you'*re going to have* a lot of trouble with the police."

If you've come here to find out more about our plans, you'*re going to be* disappointed. *(= if, as I believe is the case, you've come here ...)*

Sentences like the following are slightly different, because the conditional clause is not echoic:

> You *are going to be* late if you don't hurry. *(The speaker sees that the hearer is too slow.)*
>
> [Don't always go to your mother if you have a problem.] If you never try to solve a problem yourself, life *is going to be* very difficult for you when your mother dies.

However, the reason why *be going to* can be used in the head clause is again that the speaker has no doubt about the fulfilment of the condition, i. e. that he treats the condition as closed. In these cases the speaker makes a prediction about the future on the basis of the state of the world (as he knows it) now, with the claim that the prediction will come true unless something happens in the future to prevent its coming true. In other words, there is sufficient evidence for the prediction now, although certain events can prevent the actualization of the predicted situation. Thus the semantic pattern is: 'If the conditions conducive to the actualization of Y, which currently prevail, do not change, Y is going to actualize'. Another example of this is *If you carry on like that, you're going to have a problem one of these days*. In contrast, the following are examples in which (out of context) it is difficult or virtually impossible to treat the condition as closed, so that *be going to* is less acceptable or unacceptable:

> If you accept that invitation, you {*will* only / ?*are* only *going to*} meet a lot of boring people.
>
> You {*will* / **are going to*} learn to drive a car proficiently if you take this course.

Forms consisting of a form of *be* plus *going to go* or *going to come* tend to be avoided in favour of progressive present forms of *go* or *come*.

7.13.3 Although it is not ungrammatical, the use of *be going to* sounds rather awkward before *go* and *come*. People therefore tend to use the present progressive form of these verbs instead.

> [I'm studying Spanish because] I'm going to Spain next month. *(generally preferred to 'am going to go')*
>
> She's coming here next week. *(generally preferred to 'is going to come')*

III. Futurish forms other than *be going to*

7.14 *Be about to* and *be on the point of*

These two auxiliaries express immediate future. *Be on the point of* is most often used with an agentive subject.

> [A local radio station is prompting a village to evacuate with an ugly tale about the local landfill site,] which they claim *is about to* suffer a methane explosion and shower the neighbourhood with rocket-propelled refuse. (COB)
>
> [Neither my political nor my journalistic interests would be well served if the Government took the advice] which, free of charge, I *am about to* offer them. (www)
>
> [Mrs Bottomley threatened to set up NHS operations with dentists on fixed Government salaries, but now she seems *about to* give in by increasing the amount surgeons can charge. (www)
>
> BHP Australia Coal, we discovered, *is about to* trade in its old Lear jet on a larger model, which seats 11 people. (www)
>
> Anne Diamond and her husband Mike Hollingsworth are both *on the point of* announcing exciting new jobs. (www)
>
> Mr Hollingsworth, 46, former director of programmes at TV-am, *is on the point of* confirming a big new entertainments appointment with the BBC say friends. (www)
>
> I'*m on the point of* leaving my husband just to get rid of his dreadful mother. [She makes me feel so inadequate.] (www)
>
> Grey squirrels have now reached plague proportions in many parts of the country, and in Northumberland and Scotland *are on the point of* eliminating the last healthy populations of red squirrels. (www)

7.15 The auxiliary *be to*

7.15.1 Apart from its use to convey modal ideas (e.g. obligation or necessity resulting from an order or prohibition, etc.), *be to* can be used as a futurish auxiliary expressing an arranged future. It differs from the progressive present in that it normally denotes either an official plan or decision or a scheduled action imposed by an outside will.

> The measures *are to take* effect next week.
>
> (The) Prime Minister (*is*) *to visit* Australia next summer. *(headline)*
>
> These collieries *are to close down* before the end of the year.
>
> The ambassador *is to return* to Egypt tomorrow.

7.15.2 One special use of *be to* is in *if*-clauses referring to a goal that is envisaged at t_0. As noted in 7.12, the same idea can be expressed by *be going to* in informal English.

> [A word about weeds and mulching. Weeding is therapeutic to some, a real bore to others, but] it has to be done if you *are to* stay in control of your garden, rather than the other way round. (www)
>
> [The Protestant marching season coincides with the preparations for elections to Northern Ireland's peace convention.] If Ulster *is to* avoid a descent into communal violence then a mixture of delicacy and resolution will be required to maintain public order and sustain political progress. (www)
>
> If we *are to* be effective and authentic, Oxfam staff, volunteers and supporters must function as an integrated movement. (www)

7.16 The present tense

Both the progressive and the nonprogressive present tense can under certain conditions be used to talk about a situation whose post-present actualization is dependent on present circumstances:

> The new teacher *arrives* tomorrow.
>
> We*'re leaving* in a minute.

This use of the present tense, which represents a shift of temporal perspective, is treated in detail in 3.8–10.

IV. Summary

7.17.1 The meaning of the **future tense** is: ‘ The situation time is located in the post-present zone’. The principal **future tense form** in English is ‘*will* (or *shall*) + present infinitive’. (*Shall* is only ever used in the first person and then only in restricted grammatical and pragmatic contexts). An alternative future tense form is ‘*be going to* + present infinitive’, which, however, can also be used as a ‘futurish’ form − see 7.17.2.

The progressive future tense can be used without progressive meaning to express ‘future as a matter of course’:

> [Their centre forward is limping. I expect that] his substitute *will be playing* the second half.

7.17.2 Unlike future tense forms, ‘**futurish forms**’ always combine some sort of reference to the present with the location of a situation time in the post-present zone. Because the location of a situation time in the future is not the main meaning of these forms (reference to the present is at least as important and in some cases is the core temporal meaning) they are not future tenses, but they do establish post-present domains.

The form *be going to* is not only used as future tense form but also, and more usually, as a futurish form. The dividing line between the two uses is not a clear one, but in cases in which *be going to* refers to the future more or less devoid of reference to the present, we consider it to be a future tense form.

As a futurish form, *be going to* expresses the idea that the post-present actualization of a situation is predictable from present circumstances. That is, the source or cause of the actualization of the future situation is already present. The present ‘roots’ of the future situation may lie in an intention: *She’s going to wash the elephant* means ‘she has the intention of washing the elephant’. The future situation may also have its roots in any other sort of present circumstances that can be used as evidence for a prediction. For example, *The elephant is going to be sick* implies ‘The elephant is showing signs that I recognize as evidence that it will shortly be sick’. Unlike *will*, which normally requires that there be a contextual **temporal anchor** for the situation referred to, *be going to* can be used without such an anchor.

The observation that *will* normally requires a temporal anchor explains why it is hardly possible in examples like the following:

> [Be careful!] The bathtub {is going to / ??will} overflow. *(For lack of an indication of time, will strongly suggests that there is a condition missing.)*

Because *will* (and *shall*) in their use as future tense auxiliaries simply locate a situation at some unspecified time in the future, it can be difficult to interpret a clause with a future tense form with *will* if there is no indication of where in the future the situation lies. Thus *Be careful, the bathtub will overflow!* tends to provoke the reaction 'when?' or, more likely, 'if what?', since conditions are often left implicit and one of the most characteristic uses of the *will* future is in sentences with a conditional meaning or connotation. In such sentences, the post-present situation does not have to be located at any particular point in the future, but is simply presented as logically posterior to the situation in the *if*-clause (or the equivalent, in sentences with a conditional connotation).

7.17.3 However, *be going to* can also be argued to function at times as a future tense form, since it is sometimes used to refer to the future actualization of a situation with little attention to the present roots of that situation: *The concert is going to be held in the open air.* In such cases, we treat *be going to* as a future tense auxiliary. *Be going to* as a future tense auxiliary can also be argued to be even more 'neutral' than *will* as a future tense auxiliary, since it lacks the subjective element present in the prediction meaning of *will*.

Nevertheless, since *be going to* retains some sense of the situation's having its roots in the present, its use implies that the conditions for the actualization of the situation have been met at speech time. This means that it does not normally combine with a conditional clause which refers to a condition that has yet to be met. In such cases, *will* is normally used. Thus *be going to* is somewhat difficult to interpret in the following example:

> If your dog bites a post office worker, the post office {*will* / ??*is going to*} sue you.

Similarly, in *If that dog bites him he'll sue*, the speaker simply makes a prediction about a future situation that will actualize if a future condition is met. However, in *If that dog bites him he's going to sue*, the meaning is either 'He has already decided that he is going to sue if the dog bites him' – i. e. the conditions for his suing if the dog bites him have already been met – or something like 'I can see that he's the type to sue if the dog bites him' – i. e., again, the conditions for his suing if the dog bites him – namely his being the type to do so – are already there'.

7.17.4 *Will* and *shall* also have uses as modal auxiliaries expressing volition. For example *Shall I help you?* inquires about the addressee's wishes and *I won't help him* expresses unwillingness or refusal on the speaker's part. As tense auxiliaries, *will* and *shall* simply locate a situation in the post-present, albeit with varying degrees of subjectivity. (In 2.8.2 we have distinguished between pure future, prediction and predictability.) They do not have connotations of present factors that affect the actualization of the future situation, such as those found in the use of futurish forms or modal forms. The 'neutral prediction' value of *will* and *shall* as tense auxiliaries is most evident when the post-present actualization of the predicted situation is dependent on factors that are external to the subject referent of the future tense clause: *If that dog barks* *much more the neighbours will complain*. In certain contexts, the modal meaning of *will* or of *shall* is particularly salient. In those contexts, the speaker wishing to express pure future time reference has to find an alternative form.

7.17.5 The futurish forms other than *be going to* include '*be about to* + present infinitive' and '*be on the point of* + present gerund' for immediate future and *be to* for (externally imposed) arranged future. In addition, both the progressive present tense and the nonprogressive present tense can be used to refer to the future by treating it as if it were the present, as in *The new helper arrives this afternoon*. (This 'shift of temporal perspective' use of the present tense is addressed in 3.6).

8. Temporal domains and relative tenses: theoretical foundations

I. **Introduction** 364
8.1 Full situation *vs* predicated situation 364
8.2 Orientation time & situation time 367
8.3 Temporal relations expressed by tenses: T-relations 368
8.4 Temporal relations not expressed by tenses: W-relations 369
8.5 The two 'time-spheres' 370
8.6 Present time-sphere zones 370
8.7 Visual representation of time-spheres and zones 371
8.8 Absolute zones 371
8.9 The length of the time-spheres and zones 372
8.10 Absolute *vs* relative tenses 372
8.11 Temporal domain 372
8.12 Two past tenses: the absolute preterite *vs* the relative preterite 373
8.13 Past *vs* present (time-sphere) tenses 374
8.14 Temporal subordination or temporal binding (T-binding) 374

II. **Temporal domains: further terminological apparatus** 376
8.15 Central time of orientation (central orientation time) 376
8.16 The temporal nature of the domain 377
8.17 The definition of T-simultaneity 377
8.18 The definition of W-simultaneity 378
8.19 Temporal subordination *vs* syntactic subordination 380
8.20 Definition of 'head clause' and 'matrix' 380
8.21 Shift of domain 381
8.22 Shift of temporal perspective 382

III. **Arguments for distinguishing between the absolute and the relative past tense** 383
8.23 Argument 1: similarity between past and post-present domains 384
8.24 Argument 2: past tenses whose situation time is W-posterior to t_0 385
8.25 Argument 3: tense use in represented speech 390
8.26 Argument 4: the incompatibility of a punctual adverbial with a relative preterite 398
8.27 Argument 5: a relative past tense form cannot be replaced by *used to* 402
8.28 Argument 6: the use of the preterite rather than the conditional tense 405
8.29 Argument 7: ambiguity or vagueness? 408
8.30 Argument 8: choosing between the progressive and the nonprogressive form 412
8.31 Argument 9: T-simultaneity is a unidirectional relation 414
8.32 Argument 10: the Dutch test 416

IV. Theoretical conclusions from these arguments 419
8.33 Theoretical conclusion 1 419
8.34 Theoretical conclusion 2 420
8.35 Theoretical conclusion 3 421
8.36 Theoretical conclusion 4 422
8.37 Theoretical conclusion 5 424
8.38 Theoretical conclusion 6 425
8.39 Theoretical conclusion 7 426

V. The principle of unmarked temporal interpretation 427
8.40 Introduction 427
8.41 The 'Principle of Unmarked Temporal Interpretation' 427

VI. Summary of chapter 8 434
8.42 Terminology 434
8.43 Evidence for the existence of two past tenses 435
8.44 Further theoretical conclusions 437
8.45 The role of (non)boundedness in the unmarked temporal interpretation of situations 438

Abstract

In the previous chapters we provided an overview of the four absolute tenses in English: the present tense, the past tense (or preterite), the present perfect tense and the future tense (which we discussed together with 'futurish tense forms'). The current chapter deals with the notion of 'temporal domain', which is established by an absolute tense form and which can be expanded by one or more relative tense forms. For example, in the sentence *Mary told me she felt sick*, the first past tense form (*told*) is an absolute tense form, establishing a past domain, while the second past tense form (*felt*) is a relative one, representing the situation of feeling sick as simultaneous with the telling.

In part I (= sections 8.1–8.14) we first recapitulate (and in some cases further develop) some of the key concepts we introduced in chapter 2. We begin by stressing the difference between 'full situation' and 'predicated situation'. For instance, in the example above, the full situation of Mary feeling sick takes up a longer portion of time than the predicated situation, which is 'temporally bound' by (more specifically, represented as T-simultaneous with) the virtually punctual situation of telling and whose duration is thus confined to the time taken up by the telling situation (since T-simultaneity is defined as coincidence).

Part II (= sections 8.15–8.22) lays out the additional conceptual machinery we need to talk about temporal domains, such as 'central time of orientation', 'T-simultaneity', 'W-simultaneity', 'head clause', 'matrix', 'shift of domain' and 'shift of temporal perspective'.

In part III (= sections 8.23–8.32) we adduce no fewer than ten arguments in support of the claim that there exist two distinct past tenses in English, viz. the 'absolute past tense' and the 'relative past tense'. The most decisive argument is based on the observation that a past tense form can be used to refer to a situation that lies in the future rather than in the past, as shown by the last verb form (*felt*) in *Mary told me on the phone last night that at the dinner party tomorrow she would suddenly say that she felt sick*. This means that not all past tense forms locate a situation in the past. An absolute past tense form does, but a relative past tense form just expresses coincidence between two times in a past domain and can therefore be used even if the two times are interpreted as lying in the future, as in the above example.

In part IV (= sections 8.33–8.39) we draw a number of theoretical conclusions based on the arguments adduced in the preceding part. Among other issues, we take a stance with respect to the question whether we are dealing with two past tenses being homophonous or with a single past tense morpheme with ambiguous meaning.

Part V (= sections 8.40–8.41) is devoted to default principles guiding the interpretation of temporal relationships between consecutive clauses with absolute tense forms. We show how, in the absence of any direct linguistic clues as to the temporal relations holding between the situations, the (non)boundedness of the situations involved is of central importance. For example, the bounded situations in *John went to the door and knocked three times* are interpreted in terms of temporal succession, whereas the nonbounded situations in *John stood by the window and enjoyed the scenery* are interpreted in terms of temporal coincidence.

Part VI provides a summary of chapter 8.

I. Introduction

In chapter 2 and elsewhere a number of concepts and definitions have been introduced. Since these are essential to a good understanding of what follows, we will start by summarizing them (and in some cases elaborating on them).

8.1 Full situation *vs* predicated situation

8.1.1 We have defined the FULL SITUATION as the complete situation as it actualized in the past, has actualized (or has been actualizing) in the pre-present, is actualizing at t_0 or is expected to actualize in the post-present. The PREDICATED SITUATION is that part of the full situation (possibly all of it) about which a claim is made in the clause. As is clear from *Ten minutes ago John was in the library* (which does not exclude the possibility that John is still there), it is the predicated situation rather than the full situation that is located in time by the use of the tense form – see 2.12.1.

8.1.2 In connection with the 'continuative W-interpretation' (see 5.6) of the present perfect, we have distinguished further between the FACTUAL FULL SITUATION and the POTENTIAL FULL SITUATION (see 5.7). The factual full situation is that part of the full situation (possibly all of it) that leads up to and includes t_0. The potential full situation is the full situation including that part, if any, that follows t_0. Thus, in *John has been sleeping for seven hours now*, the factual full situation covers a seven-hour period reaching up to (and including) t_0.[1] Since John may keep on sleeping after t_0, there is also an idea of a potential full situation whose length is unpredictable at t_0. However, the potential part of a full situation (referred to by a 'continuative present perfect' – see 5.6) is not linguistically referred to: it can only be inferred. Thus, the above sentence *John has been sleeping for seven hours now* only asserts the factual (part of the) full situation, and the duration adverbial indicates the length of this factual part only. That John will probably go on sleeping for some (short or long) time after t_0 is a pragmatic inference based on our knowledge that it would be an exceptional coincidence if John woke up at the precise moment when the sentence was uttered (i. e. at t_0).

This distinction between a factual and a potential part of the full situation is not only necessary in connection with 'continuative perfects' but is also pertinent to present tense sentences like *John is sleeping*, because the full situation is durative and has a potential part (since it can extend into the future) while the predicated situation, which coincides with t_0, is punctual. The distinction may also apply to sentences in the past tense, provided the 'implicature of discontinuation' (= the suggestion that the situation is over at t_0 – see 4.3) is cancelled, as in *Five minutes ago John was in the kitchen – he is probably still there*. In this case the full situation may possibly extend beyond t_0 and thus have a potential part.

---

[1] Since, in the present perfect, the situation time can lead up to t_0 but cannot include it (see 5.2.1), the predicated situation differs from the factual full situation in that it does not include t_0.

As far as reference to the post-present is concerned, there is no distinction to be made between 'factual' and 'potential' *full* situation because there is no part of the full situation that includes t_0 (and is therefore factual): the entire full situation lies in the post-present.

In the present chapter we will not need to refer explicitly to the distinction factual *vs* potential, because only factual situations are relevant to the discussion. We will therefore simply speak of 'full situation'. This term will always have to be interpreted as 'factual (part of the) full situation'. (As a matter of fact, in this chapter, which is concerned with temporal domains and relative uses of tenses, the notion of 'full situation' will hardly ever need to be referred to. Much more important will be the notion of 'predicated situation', since relative tenses express a relation between a situation time (= the time of a predicated situation) and another orientation time – see 8.1.3.)

8.1.3 The distinction between 'full situation' and 'predicated situation' leads to a further distinction between the 'TIME OF THE FULL SITUATION' and the 'TIME OF THE PREDICATED SITUATION' (or SITUATION TIME). It is the situation time rather than the time of the full situation that is located in time by the tense form used – see 2.12.1.

> *(on the telephone)* [You can come at three if you like.] I'll be at home. *(It is possible that the full situation of the speaker being at home has already started – i.e. the speaker is at home and the full situation of his being at home will still be continuing at three. However, the statement I'll be at home does not represent the time of the predicated situation as coinciding with t_0. It represents it as coinciding with the time indicated by at three.)*

8.1.4 The predicated situation can only form a proper subpart of the full situation if it is representative of the latter, i.e. if the full situation is represented as homogeneous. A situation is represented as HOMOGENEOUS if the verb phrase representing it can be used not only to refer to the full situation but also to refer to parts of that situation (see 1.36.4). This is the case in each of the following examples:

> John said he was ill. *(The time taken up by John's utterance is much shorter than the time of the full situation of his being ill. Still, the sentence is fine, even on the reading in which the being ill is taken to be represented as T-simultaneous (i.e. as coinciding – see 2.17) with the saying, because he was ill represents the full situation as homogeneous, which means that the time of the predicated situation can be a*

proper subinterval of the time of the full situation, and can therefore coincide with the time of saying.)

John said that at that very moment he {was reading / *read} a book. *(The time of saying is much shorter than the time of reading the book. The that-clause is fine in the progressive because be reading a book is a homogeneous VP. The sentence is ungrammatical with he read a book because this clause is nonhomogeneous.*[2] *In this case the time of the predicated situation (= the situation time of he read a book) cannot coincide with the time of saying because it cannot be a proper subinterval of the time of the full situation of reading a book: this renders read a book unacceptable because reading a book takes up considerably more time than saying something.)*

The artist whistled while she worked. *(Both clauses are homogeneous.)*

At 5 p.m. I was at home. *(homogeneous)*

At the time I walked to work. *(The sentence is interpreted as 'at that time I was in the habit of walking to work', which is a homogeneous situation.)*

At 5 p.m. I was walking. *(atelic VP + progressive aspect → homogeneous clause)*

At 5 p.m. I was walking home. *(telic VP + progressive aspect → homogeneous clause)*

When the full situation is not (represented as) homogeneous, the predicated situation cannot be a subpart of the full situation. (A proper subpart of a nonhomogeneous situation cannot be representative of the whole situation). Instead, when the actualization of a situation is represented as nonhomogeneous, the predicated situation coincides with the full situation. The following examples represent the situation as heterogeneous (nonhomogeneous):

I wrote two letters this morning. *(The sentence can only refer to the situation as a whole, not to any portion of it.)*

John ran around the lake before breakfast. *(id.)*

John was in his office until 8 p.m. *(Idem: there is no portion of 'being in one's office until 8' that is itself an instance of 'being in one's office until 8'. In this case it is the until-phrase that renders the sentence bounded and hence nonhomogeneous.)*

8.1.5 The distinction between homogeneous and nonhomogeneous (heterogeneous) situations coincides with the distinction between L-NONBOUNDED (i. e. not linguistically represented as bounded) and L-BOUNDED (= linguistically represented as bounded) situations – see 1.44.2. As explained in 1.44.1, a situation is L-bounded if it is represented as reaching a terminal point. Thus, *John ran a mile* represents its situation as bounded because it combines a telic VP (implying an inherent terminal point) with nonprogressive (perfective) aspect: the situation is referred to as a whole (from beginning to end), and therefore as reaching the inherent terminal point. The sentence *John will run*

---

[2] A clause representing a telic situation as bounded (by using a nonprogressive verb form) is automatically heterogeneous (= nonhomogeneous) – see 1.45.

for two hours represents its (atelic) situation as L-bounded in the not-yet-factual-at-t_0 world referred to because the duration adverbial involves reference to a terminal point and the nonprogressive aspect refers to the post-present situation as a whole.

The reader should keep in mind that, because L-boundedness is not a characteristic of the situation referred to (which is something extralinguistic) but rather of a particular kind of linguistic representation of a situation, we have adopted the habit of applying the label 'L-bounded' not only to (actualizations of) situations that are represented as L-bounded by the clauses referring to them but also to clauses which represent (the actualization of) a situation as L-bounded – see 1.44.1.

8.2 Orientation time & situation time

8.2.1 We call any time functioning as the origin of a temporal relation expressed by a tense form a TIME OF ORIENTATION (or ORIENTATION TIME). As noted in 2.14, there are five types of orientation time: t_0, situation times, (otherwise unspecified) orientation times 'contained' in an Adv-time, orientation times that are 'implicit' in the meaning of a temporal conjunction, and 'unspecified' orientation times.

(a) In sentences like *I left yesterday*, the orientation time to which the time of the predicated situation is T-related is t_0. Tenses that T-relate the time of a predicated situation directly to t_0 are called absolute tenses (see 2.44.)

(b) In *John said that Bill had left*, the past tense form *said* locates the time of its predicated situation anterior to t_0, whereas the past perfect form *had left* locates its situation time anterior to the time when John spoke. This shows how a situation time can itself be the orientation time to which another situation time is T-related. In fact, since the time of a predicated situation can always serve as the origin of a temporal relation, any situation time is at least a potential orientation time.[3]

> John *stayed* in the kitchen after he had finished his dinner. *(t_0 functions as the orientation time to which the situation time of John staying in the kitchen is represented as anterior, and this situation time is the orientation time to which the situation time of John finishing his dinner is represented as anterior.)*

(c) A third type of orientation time is an (otherwise unspecified) time 'contained in' an ADV-TIME (= a time indicated by a time adverbial), as in *At*

---

[3] This is why in earlier work we referred to a situation time as a 'situation-time of orientation' (abbreviated to 'TO_{sit}' in Declerck (1991) and to 'STO' in Declerck (1997) and Declerck & Reed (2001)).

that time Bill had (already) left the room. (In section 2.23.1 we went into the special way in which a time adverbial indicates an orientation time by 'containing' it in terms of either inclusion or coincidence.)

(d) An orientation time may also be IMPLICIT in the semantic structure of a temporal conjunction. For example:

I will be exhausted {before / when / by the time that} this job *is finished*.

Here the situation time of the job being finished is represented as T-simultaneous with the implicit orientation time in the temporal structure of *before* (which means 'before the time that' – see 14.2.1) or *when* (which means 'at the time that' – see 13.1.2) or *by the time that* (where the implicit orientation time is overtly lexicalized as *the time*).

(e) When we use *Bill had left* in isolation, we interpret the time of the predicated situation as anterior to an 'unspecified orientation time' which is understood as being anterior to t_0. An orientation time is UNSPECIFIED if it is neither t_0 nor the time of a predicated situation nor a time contained in an Adv-time nor an orientation time that is 'implicit' in the semantic structure of a temporal conjunction. For a good understanding of *Bill had left*, the unspecified orientation time to which Bill's leaving is T-anterior will have to be recoverable from the context.

8.2.2 As noted in 8.1.4, the situation time (= the time of the predicated situation) can only be a subinterval of the time of the full situation if the situation is represented as homogeneous. Thus, in *At 7 p.m. John was still in the library* the situation time is a punctual time coinciding with the punctual Adv-time (see 2.23) specified by *at 7 p.m.*, but *still* implies that the full situation of John's being in the library started before 7 p.m. It is therefore important to distinguish carefully between 'the time of the predicated situation' (= situation time), which is a T-CONCEPT (i. e. a concept relevant to the description of the tense system), and 'the time of the full situation', which is a W-CONCEPT (i. e. a concept which has to do with the interpretation of situations and temporal relations in the actual world or in whatever alternative world is being referred to). A tense temporally locates a situation time and does not say anything about whether that situation time is the time of the full situation or not.

8.3 Temporal relations expressed by tenses: T-relations

A tense form can relate a situation time to an orientation time in three different ways:

(a) *T-simultaneity*: the tense represents the situation time as simultaneous with the orientation time. It is in keeping with the distinction between 'situation time' and 'time of the full situation' that T-simultaneity is defined as a relation of STRICT COINCIDENCE.

(b) *T-anteriority*: the tense represents the situation time that is temporally 'bound' (see 2.49) as preceding the 'binding' orientation time in either of two ways. Either the situation time lies completely before the orientation time, as in [*He claimed that*] *I had locked the door*, or it begins before the orientation time and leads up to it (without including it), as in [*By the time Gertie and I went to Iceland,*] *we had been friends for years*.

(c) *T-posteriority*: the tense represents the bound situation time as following the binding orientation time in either of two ways. Either the situation time lies completely after the binding orientation time, as in [*I promised*] *I would do it the next day*, or it begins immediately after the binding orientation time, as in [*He said that*] *from then onwards he would call me Jim*.

We refer to a temporal relation expressed by a tense form as a TENSE RELATION (or T-RELATION).

8.4 Temporal relations not expressed by tenses: W-relations

8.4.1 A situation may be interpreted as simultaneous, anterior or posterior to another situation without this being expressed by a tense form. In that case the temporal relation in question is not a tense relation but simply a relation that is inferred (for reasons referred to in 8.4.2) to exist in the real world (or in whatever alternative world is being referred to). We refer to such temporal relations as WORLD-RELATIONS (or W-RELATIONS).

> When they *had* first *visited* the house, they *hadn't noticed* the wet patch on the ceiling of the kitchen. *(The past perfect tenses each locate their situation time anterior to an (unspecified) past orientation time. The relation of W-simultaneity that is understood to exist between the two situations is not expressed by the tense forms.)*
>
> John *told* me he *wrote* Jim a letter. *(The past tense forms merely locate their situation times in the past. The use of the nonprogressive form wrote means that the durative situation of John writing Jim a letter is referred to in its entirety. Since the VP is telic, this means that the writing is represented as finished – see 1.39.1–2. Pragmatic knowledge tells us that this interpretation requires that the writing should be understood as W-anterior to the telling.)*

The distinction between 'T-' and 'W-' will not only be applied to relations but also to temporal interpretations: a 'T-INTERPRETATION' is a temporal reading which is based on the semantics of the chosen tense only; a 'W-INTERPRETATION' also takes into account such elements as temporal adverbials, context, situation of speaking, knowledge of the world and pragmatic principles such as the Gricean Maxims of conversation.

8.4.2 Unlike simultaneity expressed by a tense form (T-simultaneity), W-simultaneity is not a semantic relation but a pragmatic one. In other words, while T-simultaneity forms part of the semantics of certain tenses, W-simultaneity is to be inferred from various factors, including the context and/or pragmatic knowledge. It follows (a) that W-simultaneity is a question of pragmatic *interpretation* rather than linguistic *representation* only, and (b) that W-simultaneity is a less rigid temporal relation than T-simultaneity: whereas the latter is equivalent to coincidence, what counts as W-simultaneity can, according to context, be coincidence, overlap or inclusion. In other words, two time intervals are W-simultaneous the moment they have one point of time in common (see 2.18.2). This is illustrated by the following:

> Jim was in London yesterday. I saw him there.

The two sentences here use an absolute past tense form, each creating a domain of its own. The two past domains are interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other. In this case the most natural interpretation of the W-simultaneity is that of inclusion: the situation of Jim being in London temporally included the situation of my seeing him there.

8.5 The two ‘time-spheres’

In English, the use of tenses implies a division of time into two (rather than three) distinct ‘time-spheres’: the present time-sphere and the past time-sphere (see 2.33 for arguments supporting this claim). The PRESENT TIME-SPHERE is conceived of as a time span of indefinite length which includes the temporal zero-point (t_0). The PAST TIME-SPHERE is conceived of as a time span of indefinite length which lies wholly before t_0 and is disconnected from t_0. The absolute tense locating a situation time in the past time-sphere is the past tense (preterite). (As explained in 2.41, an absolute tense is a tense that relates a situation time directly to t_0 and not to another orientation time.)

> I left the house around midnight. *(Left locates its situation time in the past time-sphere, which is defined in direct relation to t_0.)*

8.6 Present time-sphere zones

The zero-time (t_0) is taken to divide the present time-sphere into three TIME-ZONES (or ZONES). The portion of the present time-sphere that precedes t_0 (and leads up to it) is the ‘pre-present zone’; the portion that coincides with t_0 is the 'present zone'; and the portion that follows t_0 (and starts immediately after t_0) is the 'post-present zone'.

To locate situations in these three zones we use the present perfect, the present tense and the future tense (or a 'futurish form' – see 7.3.1), respectively. Each of these tenses shows present (nonpast) morphology.

> I *have* already *read* that article. (*Have read is a present perfect tense form locating its situation time somewhere in the pre-present zone.*)
>
> I *am* very angry with her. (*Am locates its situation time at* t_0.)
>
> I {*will* / *am going to*} *be* in France tomorrow. (*Note that am going to be locates its situation time in the post-present. As stressed in 2.13.2, the situation time is the time of the actualization of the predicated situation, not the time of anticipation of that actualization. See also the definition of 'tense' in 2.12.1 and the discussion of futurish forms in 7.3.*)

8.7 Visual representation of time-spheres and zones

As noted in 2.36, the linguistic conceptualization of time in terms of time-spheres and zones can be represented as in Figure 8.1. In this diagram the time line is represented as consisting of two time-spheres. The dotted line in the middle of the time line represents the fact that there is felt to be a break between the two time-spheres. (As stressed in 2.36, the diagram should not be interpreted as representing the pre-present as more recent, i. e. closer to t_0, than the past – see also 2.39.)

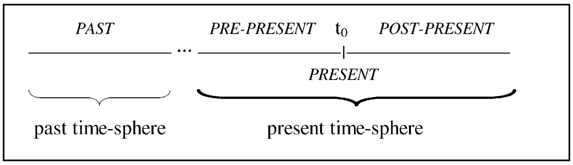

Figure 8.1. Linguistic conceptualization of the time line in English.

8.8 Absolute zones

Whereas the present time-sphere is automatically divided into three zones by t_0, the past time-sphere consists of a single time-zone, which is defined as lying completely before t_0. The past time-sphere and the three present time-sphere zones can therefore be said to make up the set of ABSOLUTE ZONES, i. e. the four time-zones that are defined in direct relation to t_0. (Note that, because the past time-sphere consists of only one zone, it does not really matter whether we speak of 'past zone' or 'past time-sphere'.)

8.9 The length of the time-spheres and zones

Except for the present zone, which is by definition conceived of as punctual (see 2.35), the length of the time-spheres and the zones cannot be defined in terms of objective time. As noted in 2.39, everything depends on how the speaker conceptualizes time. Thus, the pre-present can be conceived of either as very short (e.g. *I have just met your brother*) or as stretching indefinitely far back (e.g. *The universe has always existed*), while the past time-sphere may be conceived of as distant from t_0 (e.g. *In those days Cleopatra ruled over Egypt*) or as almost reaching up to it (e.g. *The manager left his office a minute ago*). It follows that one and the same situation can often be conceptualized either as lying in the past time-sphere or as lying in the pre-present (compare *I met her just now* with *I have just met her*). This is in keeping with the observation (made in 2.36) that the past time-sphere is not conceptualized as more distant from t_0 than the pre-present zone. (The past time-sphere is conceived of as *separated* from the present time-sphere, whereas the pre-present zone forms part of it, but the actual distance between the situation time and t_0 is immaterial to this conceptualization.)

8.10 Absolute *vs* relative tenses

An ABSOLUTE TENSE relates its situation time (= the time of its predicated situation) directly to t_0 by locating that situation time in one of the absolute zones. As we have seen, English uses the (absolute) past tense, the present perfect, the present tense and the future tense (or one of the 'futurish tense forms' – see 2.9) to locate a situation in the past, the pre-present, the present and the post-present, respectively.

A RELATIVE TENSE relates its situation time to an orientation time other than t_0. In doing so it expresses a T-relation in a temporal domain (see 8.11 below).

The two terms can be illustrated by the sentence *Yesterday I already knew that I was getting ill*. Here *knew* is an absolute past tense form representing its situation time as lying in the past, while *was getting* is a relative past tense form representing its situation time as T-simultaneous (= coinciding) with the situation time of *knew*.

8.11 Temporal domain

8.11.1 A TEMPORAL DOMAIN has been defined as a structured set of orientation times with the following characteristics: (a) except for the 'central orientation time' – see 8.15, each orientation time is temporally related to another orientation time in the domain by means of a tense; (b) at least one of the orientation times in the domain is a situation time (see 2.15.4). A domain is established by an absolute tense form and expanded by relative tense forms. Thus, in *John said he had worked hard all day*, the reference is to a past domain. This is established by the absolute past tense form *said* and expanded by *had worked*, which is a relative tense form representing its situation time as T-anterior to the situation time of *said*. See Figure 8.2.

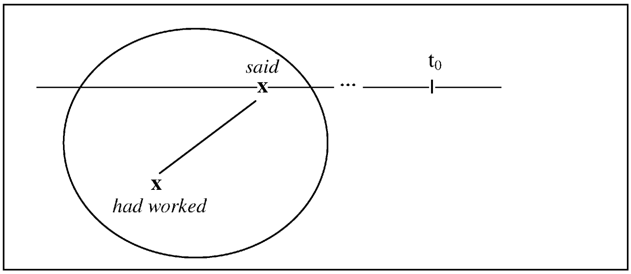

Figure 8.2. The tense structure of *John said that he had worked hard all day.*

When representing a temporal domain by means of a diagram, we observe the following conventions. The domain is represented by a Venn-diagram because it is a set of orientation times (each related to another orientation time by a tense form). The 'central orientation time' (see 8.15) is the only orientation time that is placed on the time line, since it is the only orientation time that is directly related to t_0. A vertical line is used to represent the relation of T-simultaneity, whereas a slanting line represents either T-anteriority or T-posteriority. A situation time that is T-anterior to its binding orientation time is located to the left of the latter; a situation time that is T-posterior to its binding orientation time is located to the right of the latter. All orientation times and situation times are represented by a cross (or '**x**'), irrespective of whether they are durative or punctual.

8.11.2 A domain is UNEXPANDED when it consists of just one situation time. In that case the set of orientation times forming the domain is a singleton. An example of this is *He left at five and I will leave at eight*, where each tense form establishes a domain of its own (the one in the past, the other in the post-present), neither of which is further expanded.

8.12 Two past tenses: the absolute preterite *vs* the relative preterite

English has an ABSOLUTE PAST TENSE, which establishes a past domain, as well as a RELATIVE PAST TENSE, which expresses T-simultaneity in a past domain.

The semantics of the absolute preterite is 'The situation time is located in the past time-sphere (defined relative to t_0)'; the semantics of the relative preterite is: 'The situation time is T-simultaneous with an orientation time in a past domain'.[4] Arguments for this distinction are adduced in sections 8.23–32 below.

8.13 Past *vs* present (time-sphere) tenses

The past (time-sphere) tenses are the tenses showing past tense morphology: the absolute past tense, the relative tenses expressing a single relation in a past domain, viz. the relative past tense (T-simultaneity), the past perfect (T-anteriority) and the 'conditional' tense (T-posteriority), and the complex-relative tenses with past tense morphology, viz. the 'conditional perfect' tense (*would have* V-*en*) and such (nameless) tenses as are built with *had been going to*, *would have been going to* and *would have been going to have* V-*en*.

The present (time-sphere) tenses are the tenses showing present tense morphology. These are the present tense, the present perfect, the future tense (plus the present tense of the 'futurish' tense forms) and the absolute-relative tenses (i. e. the future perfect and such (nameless) tenses as are built with *have been going to*, *will have been going to* and *will have been going to have* V-*en*).[5]

8.14 Temporal subordination or temporal binding (T-binding)

By this we mean the phenomenon that a tense form T-relates a situation time to another orientation time in a domain. Thus, in *John said he would do*

---

[4] This is actually a simplification. In 9.17.1 we will see that a post-present binding orientation time may be treated as if it were t_0, i. e. as a 'pseudo-t_0', and that in that case we can speak of a 'pseudo-past time-sphere' and 'pseudo-past subdomains'. A pseudo-past subdomain is established by a 'pseudo-absolute' past tense and expanded by the relative tenses typical of (true) past domains:

(i) [Even if there are witnesses to the hold-up we are planning] they will no doubt say to the police that they *didn't notice* what *was going on*.

In this example, *didn't notice* is a pseudo-absolute past tense form establishing a pseudo-past subdomain in the post-present domain established by *will say*; *was going on* expresses T-simultaneity in that pseudo-past subdomain – see section 9.18.3. It follows that the correct definition of the semantics of the relative past tense is: 'The situation time is T-simultaneous with an orientation time in a past or pseudo-past domain or subdomain'. (Another example of a relative past tense expressing T-simultaneity in a pseudo-past (sub)domain is when a pre-present domain is developed as if it were a past one: *He's told me once or twice that he was an only child* – see 9.10.1.)

[5] Judging from the Internet, some of these 'nameless' tenses are hardly ever used, but this does not alter the fact that they are theoretically possible and that their semantics (i. e. the structure of temporal relations which they express) is fully transparent.

it, the situation time of *would do* is TEMPORALLY BOUND by (= TEMPORALLY SUBORDINATED to) the situation time of *said*. The latter is the BINDING ORIENTATION TIME. In order to avoid any confusion with other meanings attributed to the terms 'bind', 'binding' and 'bound' in the linguistic literature (e. g. 'bound pronouns', 'bound variables') we will regularly use 'T-BIND', 'T-BINDING' and 'T-BOUND' in our discussion of T-relations (i. e. temporal relations expressed by tenses – see 2.16.1).

It is important to see that T-binding is only possible within one and the same temporal domain. A T-relation between a situation time and t_0 is not a T-binding relation: in a clause using an absolute tense, the situation time is by definition not T-bound (i. e. not temporally subordinated).

II. Temporal domains: further terminological apparatus

The one orientation time that is not T-bound by any other in a domain is the **central orientation time**. The absolute zone in which it is located determines the overall temporal nature of the domain. Thus, in *(He said) he would do it tomorrow*, the situation time referred to by *would do* forms part of a past domain, established by the past tense form *said* (or, in the absence of a head clause in the past tense, by an unspecified central orientation time located in the past zone). There is a certain correlation between temporal subordination and **syntactic subordination**: for one, the use of a relative tense to express T-simultaneity is excluded in a syntactically independent clause; for another, the use of an absolute tense is excluded in some types of subclauses.

If a situation time is represented as **T-simultaneous** with another situation time, the exact duration and temporal location of the T-bound situation time is unidirectionally determined by the binding situation time. Thus, in *I noticed at once that Jim was ill*, the situation time expressed by [*Jim*] *was* [*ill*] strictly coincides with the time of my noticing it, which is merely a point (rather than a durative interval) in the past time-sphere. Of course, the full situation time of Jim being ill will be extralinguistically interpreted as much longer than, and as properly including, the time of me noticing it and may possibly even include t_0, which shows that **W-simultaneity** is a concept quite different from T-simultaneity.

Sometimes the speaker does not use a relative tense form, expanding an already established domain, but instead uses an absolute tense form, causing a **shift of domain**, either within the same time-zone or from one time-zone to another. When the shift of domain is within the same zone, the hearer may draw clues as to the temporal ordering of the situation times from such sources as the presence of temporal adverbials, the order of appearance of the clauses, the linguistic and extralinguistic context, his pragmatic knowledge of the world or, as will be summarized below in 8.45, the (non)-bounded representations of the situationsreferred to.

We speak of a **shift of temporal perspective** when a situation intended to be interpreted as located in one absolute zone is referred to by a tense form that is characteristic of another zone, as when the present tense is used with reference to the post-present zone (e.g. *They're leaving soon*), to the past zone (e.g. *Napoleon strikes back*) or to the pre-present zone (e.g. *I hear John has been promoted*).

8.15 Central time of orientation (central orientation time)

The CENTRAL ORIENTATION TIME is the one orientation time in the domain that is not T-bound by any other orientation time in the domain but is directly related to t_0. In most cases the central orientation time is the situation time of the clause which establishes the domain by using an absolute tense form (as in *He left yesterday*). When an absolute-relative tense is used (e. g. *He will have left by tonight*) the central orientation time is the unspecified post-present orientation time (here 'contained' in the Adv-time specified by *tonight*) to which the situation time is temporally subordinated. As noted in 2.42.2, the central orientation time is the only orientation time of the domain that is put on the time line when we represent the semantics of a tense (i. e. the tense structure) by means of a tense diagram.

8.16 The temporal nature of the domain

The temporal nature of the domain is determined by the absolute zone in which the central orientation time is located. Thus, in *He said he would do it tomorrow* the reference is to a past domain, established by *said*. The form *would do* locates its situation time in that past domain, even though the 'doing it' is W-understood as lying in the post-present. Similarly, in *He would do it tomorrow* (interpreted as free indirect speech), the situation time forms part of a past domain because the unspecified central orientation time (= the time of 'his' thinking, saying, etc.) which T-binds the situation time is located in the past time-sphere. This definition of the nature of a temporal domain accords with the claim that a relative tense expresses no temporal relation other than a domain-internal relation between a T-bound situation time and a T-binding orientation time. (As pointed out in 2.16.1, tenses express T-relations, not W-relations.)

8.17 The definition of T-simultaneity

8.17.1 As noted in 2.16.1, the simultaneity relation expressed by a relative tense form can be referred to as T-SIMULTANEITY ('tense simultaneity') in order to distinguish it from W-SIMULTANEITY ('world simultaneity' – see also 8.18.1). In section 2.17, T-simultaneity was defined as a relation of *strict coincidence*. This is in keeping with the distinction made between a situation time (the time of a 'predicated situation' – see 8.1.3) and the time of a full situation: what is represented as T-simultaneous with an orientation time is always a situation time, not the time of a full situation.[6] Thus, in *I noticed at once that Jim was ill*, the situation time expressed by [*Jim*] *was* [*ill*] and represented as T-simultaneous (coinciding) with the situation time of [*I*] *noticed* is only a subinterval of the time of the full situation of Jim's being ill. This subinterval is identified through the relation of coincidence with the binding orientation time. (This implies that, since the situation time of *noticed* is interpreted as punctual, the situation time of *was* is also punctual, i. e. a punctual interval of the homogeneous durative full situation of Jim being ill.)

---

[6] Of course, if the situation is L-bounded, the situation time is also the time of the full situation – see 2.12.2.

8.17.2 It follows that T-simultaneity is a UNIDIRECTIONAL relation: the bound situation time derives its temporal specification from the relation of coincidence with the T-binding situation time, not the other way round. This means (a) that the duration of the T-simultaneous situation time is determined by the duration of the T-binding situation time, and (b) that the precise temporal location of the T-simultaneous situation time in a particular time-zone is determined by the precise temporal location of the T-binding situation time in that time-zone.

8.18 The definition of W-simultaneity

8.18.1 In 2.18, W-RELATIONS were defined as temporal relations that exist in the (real or nonfactual) world referred to but are not necessarily expressed by a tense form. Thus, two situations are (interpreted as) W-simultaneous if the times of the two full situations are interpreted as coinciding with each other or as overlapping (i. e. as having at least one point in common), even if there is no tense form expressing T-simultaneity. See 2.18.2 for some illustrations.

8.18.2 The times of two W-simultaneous situations can be referred to by absolute tense forms, which locate the two situation times in two different temporal domains within the same time-zone. In that case neither situation time is T-bound by the other, but the two situation times are the central orientation times of two different W-SIMULTANEOUS DOMAINS (i. e. separate domains which are *interpreted* as W-simultaneous). For example:

> He *looked* at the figure in the distance but *didn't recognize* him. *(Both preterites establish a T-domain of their own, but these are interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other.)*
>
> He *watched* the spectacle and thoroughly *enjoyed* it. *(idem)*
>
> Someone *has used* my bike and *has damaged* it (while doing so). *(W-simultaneous pre-present domains)*

8.18.3 It is also possible to locate the situation times of two W-simultaneous situations in the same domain. This is the case not only if one of the situation times is related to the other in terms of T-simultaneity (= coincidence), but also in cases of 'indirect binding'. As we will see in 9.28, INDIRECT BINDING means that the situation time of a subclause is T-bound, not by the situation time of its head clause but by the situation time of the superordinate clause T-binding that head clause. In such cases the situation time of the subclause may be interpreted as W-simultaneous with the situation time of its head clause (though the former is not represented as T-simultaneous with the latter). Consider the following examples:

> [I remembered that] I *had met* a man who *had been wearing* blue jeans.
>
> [I remembered that] when I *had* first *met* him he *had been wearing* blue jeans.

In both these examples, the situation times of *had met* and of *had been wearing* are interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other, but neither tense form expresses this W-simultaneity relation: both situation times are related as T-anterior to the situation time of *remembered* – see Figure 8.3. (The wavy line in Figure 8.3 represents the W-simultaneity relation not expressed by the tense form.) The kind of T-binding illustrated by *had met* will be called 'indirect binding'.

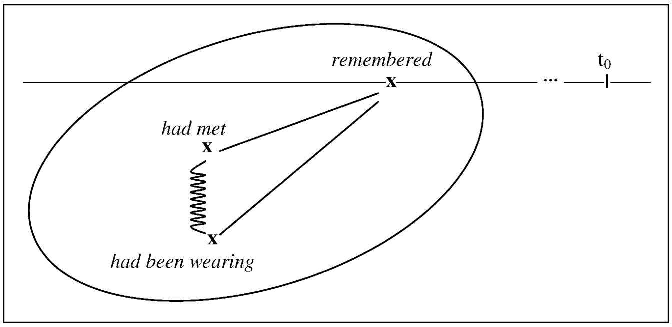

Figure 8.3. The tense structure of *I remembered that when I had first met him he had been wearing blue jeans.*

8.18.4 Unlike the T-simultaneity relation expressed by a relative tense, W-simultaneity need not be a relation of coincidence: it may also be a relation of inclusion (overlap) – see 2.18.2. Consider:

> [I remembered that] I *had met* Tim briefly at a party, where he {*was wearing* / *had been wearing*} a tuxedo.

Here the situation of Tim wearing a tuxedo is interpreted as W-simultaneous with the situation of my meeting Tim, but, since the latter situation is interpreted as shorter than the former, W-simultaneity here means inclusion. Similarly, in

> I don't want to tell him that. I'm a coward.

the two situations (located in different present domains) are interpreted as W-simultaneous, but they do not coincide: the second includes the first.

8.19 Temporal subordination *vs* syntactic subordination

There is a certain correlation between temporal binding and syntactic subordination:

(a) Syntactically independent clauses cannot use a relative tense expressing T-simultaneity. This applies not only to the relative past tense but also to any other tense expressing T-simultaneity, such as the present tense used to express T-simultaneity in a post-present domain (see 10.3.1). Compare:

> [If you do that] I will tell your mother that you are being naughty. *(Will tell establishes a post-present domain, while are being expresses T-simultaneity in it and is therefore also W-interpreted as referring to a post-present situation.)*
>
> You are being naughty. *(In isolation this is not interpreted as referring to a post-present situation. The reason is that in a syntactically independent clause we cannot use the present tense as a relative tense form. Rather, it is an absolute tense form establishing a present domain.)*[7]

(b) Some kinds of adverbial subclauses (e. g. *if*-clauses referring to the future and expressing an 'open' condition) cannot use an absolute tense (e. g. *The party will be ruined if it {rains / *will rain}.)*

However, the correlation between temporal subordination and syntactic subordination is far from perfect, as is clear from the following three considerations. Firstly, some types of subclause may or may not show T-binding: *He said he {would / will} come*. (*Would come* is a relative tense form, *will come* is an absolute one.) Secondly, relative tenses, which effect T-binding, may sometimes occur in syntactically independent clauses. This is the case, for example, when a sentence like *He had worked hard all day* is the opening sentence of a novel. Thirdly, in a sentence like *The boy who told us about the accident had witnessed it himself*, the subclause uses an absolute tense form while the head clause uses a relative tense form (effecting temporal subordination, i. e. T-binding).

8.20 Definition of 'head clause' and 'matrix'

By HEAD CLAUSE we mean *superordinate clause*. This is the clause on which a given subordinate clause (subclause) is syntactically and semantically dependent. A head clause may be a clause that does not syntactically depend on any other clause, but it may also itself be a subordinate clause. If it is a syntactically independent clause, it can also be referred to as the MATRIX, i. e. the highest clause in the inverted tree structure representing the syntactic structure of a sentence.[8]

---

[7] There exist present tense forms that refer to the post-present in a syntactically independent clause (e. g. *I'm leaving tomorrow*), but these are not relative tense forms but 'futurish forms' establishing a post-present domain – see 2.9.

> I knew he had told a lie when he had accused them of treason. *(I knew is the matrix. It is the head clause of he had told a lie, which is itself the head clause supporting the when-clause.)*

8.21 Shift of domain

8.21.1 We speak of a SHIFT OF DOMAIN when, instead of expanding an already established domain, the speaker uses an absolute tense form to create a new domain. Compare:

> John left after I *had arrived*. *(temporal binding)*
>
> John left after I *arrived*. *(shift of domain – see 14.18.1)*
>
> Jill has often come to tell me that she *had been beaten* by her husband. *(temporal binding)*
>
> Sybil has never told me that she *has had* an abortion. *(shift of domain)*

A shift of domain can also be a shift from one absolute time-zone to another:

> I was told he *will be* here tomorrow. *(shift from the past to the post-present)*
>
> I've never met anyone who *lives* in Singapore.

In the following example, each clause establishes a domain of its own, as shown in Figure 8.4:

> Suddenly the phone *rang*. Jill *stood up* from her chair, *went* to the telephone and *picked up* the receiver.

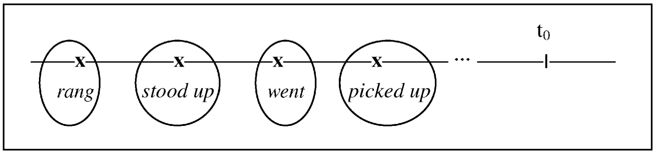

Figure 8.4. The tense structure of *Suddenly the phone rang. Jill stood up from her chair, went to the telephone and picked up the receiver.*

8.21.2 When there is a shift of domain within the same absolute zone, the two domains are established by forms of the same absolute tense. This means that the tense forms themselves do not express the temporal relation between the two domains. It follows that such a shift of domain is only pragmatically acceptable if the temporal order of the situations is either irrelevant or recoverable in some other way, e. g. from the use of time adverbials, from the order in which the situations are reported, from the linguistic context, from pragmatic knowledge (i. e. the extralinguistic context and our general knowledge of the world) or from the bounded or nonbounded aspectual character of the new clause and the preceding or following one.[9] The role of (non)boundedness is discussed in 8.41, which deals with the 'Principle of Unmarked Temporal Interpretation'.

---

[8] 'Matrix' is sometimes used in the sense of 'superordinate clause'. We will not follow this practice.

The following is an example in which the precise temporal order of the situations is irrelevant:

> ["What became of your two sisters?"] – "Betty married an Australian. Meg died in a car accident."

8.22 Shift of temporal perspective

As noted in 2.20, this is the phenomenon that the tense system that is characteristic of a particular absolute zone is used in referring to another zone, i. e. a situation that is intended to be interpreted as located in one time-zone is referred to by a tense form whose basic meaning is to locate a situation time in another zone. The use of the present tense with post-present reference (e. g. *They're leaving soon*) is a typical illustration of such a shift of perspective: the present tense is used although the situation referred to is interpreted as actualizing in the post-present. The domain established by the present tense is treated as a post-present domain when another situation time is introduced into it: *They're leaving soon, in fact right after the performance has ended* – see 9.19.1. Another illustration of a shift of perspective is the use of the historic present: the present tense is used although the situation referred to is 'bygone', i. e. over at t_0. (This is a metaphorical use of the present tense: the past time-zone is treated as if it were the present.) Another example (already mentioned in section 3.6) is the use of *I* {*hear* / *understand* / *am told* / *etc.*} *that* ... instead of *I have* {*heard* / *understood* / *been told* / *etc.*} *that* ... as in *I hear John has been promoted.*

---

[9] As explained in 1.44, a situation is L-bounded if it is represented as reaching a (natural or arbitrary) terminal point. Otherwise it is L-nonbounded, i. e. not represented as L-bounded. A situation that is not *represented* as L-bounded can often still be *interpreted* as W-bounded for reasons that have to do with the context or with pragmatics.

III. Arguments for distinguishing between the absolute and the relative past tense

In section 8.12 we have claimed that English has two past tenses, i. e. two tenses which use the same past tense morphology and are therefore formally indistinguishable, but which differ in their semantics (temporal structure). An ABSOLUTE PAST TENSE establishes a domain in the past time-sphere, whereas a RELATIVE PAST TENSE expresses T-simultaneity in such a past domain. In other words, the semantics of the absolute preterite is: 'The situation time is located in the past time-sphere (defined relative to t_0)', while the semantics of the relative preterite is: 'The situation time is T-simultaneous with an orientation time in a past domain or subdomain'. (A SUBDOMAIN is a domain – i. e. a set of one or more times – whose 'central orientation time' (see 8.15) is not directly related to t_0 but is a situation time or other orientation time 'deeper down' in a temporal domain. For example, *He said that he had admitted that he was sick* involves a temporal domain (whose central orientation time is the situation time of *said*), which itself involves a subdomain (whose central orientation time is the situation time of *had admitted*), which itself involves a (not further expanded) subdomain whose central orientation time is the situation time of *was*. See the representation in Figure 8.5.)

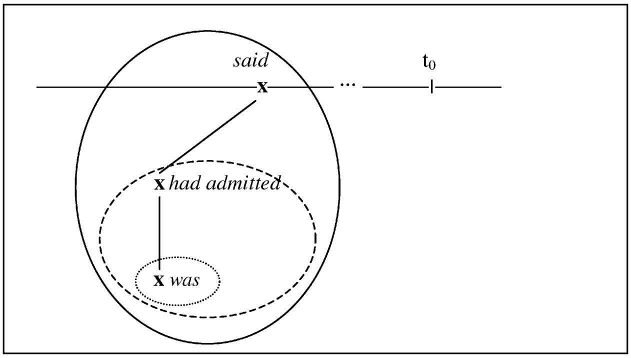

Figure 8.5. The tense structure of *He said he had admitted that he was sick.*

Because there are many linguists who are not willing to accept the existence of a relative past tense, we will make a detour here to argue the case for it. (No fewer than ten arguments are presented here, the most cogent of which is argument 2. If the reader is convinced by this argument, s/he need not bother to scrutinize the further pieces of evidence.)

8.23 Argument 1: similarity between past and post-present domains

Let us start by adducing an argument that is suggestive rather than conclusive.

The view that the sentence *John felt unhappy when he was alone* contains both an absolute past tense form (*felt*) and a relative one (*was*) is corroborated by the fact that we clearly distinguish an absolute tense form (*will be*) and a form indicating T-simultaneity (*is*) in its post-present counterpart: *John will be unhappy when he {is / *will be} alone.*

8.23.1 Absolute preterites are not formally distinguishable from relative ones. However, tense forms used to establish a post-present domain (i. e. future tense forms or futurish forms – see 2.15) *are* formally distinguishable from tense forms used to express T-simultaneity with the central orientation time of a post-present domain, since (as we will see in 9.20.1) the latter are present tense forms. This suggests that we can identify the past tense form of a given clause by considering the corresponding post-present version of the clause. For example:

John was unhappy when he *was* alone.

John will be unhappy when he {*is* / **will be*} alone.

The second example shows that *is* is the only correct post-present counterpart of the form *was* in the first example. Since the future tense form *will be* is an absolute tense form, while the present tense in the *when*-clause expresses T-simultaneity with the central orientation time of the post-present domain,[10] it seems intuitive to conclude that in the first example too, the head clause uses an absolute tense form and the time clause uses a tense form expressing T-simultaneity. If this conclusion is warranted, the possibility of using a 'backshifted' present tense form (i. e. a relative past tense form) in clauses expressing T-simultaneity with a situation time that is posterior to a past orientation time (rather than posterior to t_0) can be used as a simple and effective test to distinguish between relative and absolute past tense forms: the 'backshifted' version of the second example is [*I knew that*] *John would be unhappy when he {was / *would be} alone.*

---

[10] This is a slight simplification. As we will see in 13.3–7, a present tense form in a *when*-clause does express T-simultaneity, but with an implicit orientation time rather than with the situation time of the head clause. However, the latter two times are interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other.

This test is corroborated by the fact that it makes the correct predictions in cases in which the relevant T-relation is T-anteriority rather than T-simultaneity:

John expects that he will feel lonely when Mary {*has left* / **will have left*}.

John expected that he would feel lonely when Mary {*had left* / **would have left*}.

Compare also:

> [The thought of his case never left him now. He had often considered whether it would not be better to draw up a written defence and hand it in to the Court.] In this defence he *would give* a short account of his life, and when he *came* to an event of any importance he *would explain* for what reasons he *had acted* as he *did*, intimate whether he *approved* or *condemned* his way of action in retrospect, and adduce grounds for the condemnation or approval. (TTR) *(The past tense forms came, did, approved and condemned are all relative tense forms expressing T-simultaneity with the situation time of their head clause. Note that initimate is short for would intimate.)*
>
> (...) In this defence he *will give* a short account of his life, and when he {*comes* / **will come*} to an event of any importance he *will explain* for what reasons he *has acted* as he *has*, intimate whether he *approves* or *condemns* his way of action in retrospect, and adduce grounds for the condemnation or approval. *(The forms comes, has acted, has, approves and condemns all express a T-relation in a post-present domain. The present tense forms all express T-simultaneity with the situation time of their head clause.)*

8.23.2 This test rests on the assumption that the possibilities and restrictions in connection with the use of absolute and relative tense forms in particular types of clauses are the same in a past domain as they are in a post-present one. Though the above examples all corroborate this assumption, we have not yet adduced any really conclusive evidence that the assumption is correct. The test must therefore provisionally be treated as tentative.

8.24 Argument 2: past tenses whose situation time is W-posterior to t_0

Unlike the first argument, this argument is a cogent one.

In a sentence like *Mary told me on the phone last night that at the dinner party tomorrow she would suddenly say that she felt sick*, the past tense form *felt* refers to a situation which lies in the post-present (i. e. which is W-posterior to t_0). This observation demonstrates the inadequacy of the assumption that there is only one past tense in English, which is used to locate a situation time prior to t_0. However, the observation is naturally explained on the assumption that *felt* is a relative past tense form expressing T-simultaneity. This constitutes very strong evidence in favour of a theory which assumes the existence of a relative past tense (next to an absolute one), which expresses T-simultaneity in a past domain, irrespective of the W-location of the binding time relative to t_0.

8.24.1 We have argued that the tense structure (= semantics) of the two kinds of past tense are quite different from each other: the semantics of the absolute preterite is 'The situation time establishes a past domain', while that of the relative preterite is 'The situation time is represented as T-simultaneous with a binding orientation time belonging to a past domain or subdomain (or to a 'pseudo-past subdomain' – see 9.9.1 and 9.18.1)'. Since it is not the existence of the absolute preterite that is subject to debate, but the existence of the relative preterite, what we need to show is that there are preterite forms that unequivocally express the tense structure typical of the relative preterite. In our opinion, the italicized tense forms of the following examples fulfil this requirement – see Figure 8.6:

> [A few weeks ago he told us about what he planned to do.] When he *was* fifty-five he would retire. [He would move to some place in the south and ...].
>
> [Yesterday the Prime Minister repeated that] if the party *lost* next week's elections, this would not induce it to change its views on nuclear energy.
>
> Until a moment ago I thought that at tomorrow's meeting of the board he would argue that it *was* necessary to sell the company. [But he's just assured me that he isn't going to do that.]
>
> Mary told me on the phone last night that at the dinner party tomorrow she would suddenly say that she *felt* sick.

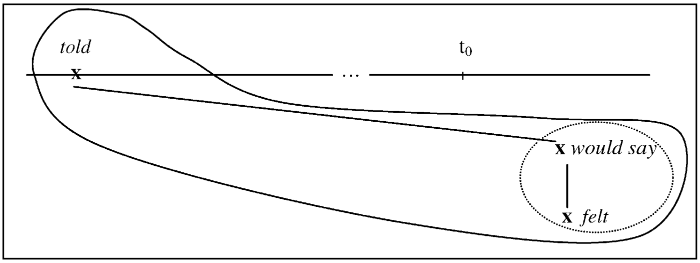

Figure 8.6. The tense structure of *Mary told me on the phone last night that at the dinner party tomorrow she would suddenly say that she felt sick.*

In these examples, the situations described by *was* [*fifty-five*], *lost, was* [*necessary*] and *felt* [*sick*] are interpreted as W-posterior to t_0 (because of the temporal indications in the relevant clauses), but this W-posteriority relation is not expressed by the past tense forms. This means three things. First, the italicized preterites cannot be analysed as absolute tense forms in any tense theory, because the absolute preterite,[11] which is the only kind of (nonmodal) preterite recognized by most tense theories, locates its situation time anterior to t_0 and is therefore semantically incompatible with an interpretation in which the situation in question lies completely in the post-present. Secondly, in the above examples, the italicized preterites not only fail to represent their situation time as T-anterior to t_0, they fail to represent it as T-anterior to *anything*. (This means that T-anteriority does not form part of their meaning.) Thirdly, although the past tense forms themselves do not express the W-posteriority relation, they are not incompatible with it. This is in keeping with our analysis of these forms as being relative preterite forms: these tense forms merely represent their situation time as T-simultaneous (= coinciding) with a situation time belonging to a past domain. (The conditional tense represents that T-binding situation time as T-posterior to the central orientation time of the past domain.) Thus, in the third example *was* [*necessary*] represents its situation time as T-simultaneous with the situation time of *would argue*, which is a situation time belonging to the set of situation times constituting the temporal domain established by *thought*. It should be kept in mind that a tense form representing its situation time as T-posterior to the central orientation time of a past domain does not say anything about the W-relation between the relevant situation and t_0: as is clear from *He said he would do it* {*yesterday* / *now* / *tomorrow*}, the situation referred to by the conditional tense (which represents its situation time as T-posterior to an orientation time in a past domain) may be interpreted as W-anterior, W-simultaneous or W-posterior to t_0. Obviously, the same is true of any situation whose situation time is represented as T-simultaneous (= coinciding) with the situation time of a situation referred to in the conditional tense, as the following example illustrates:

> He said he would do it when he *had* time. [So he may already have done it, or he may be doing it right now, or he may be going to do it tomorrow. I don't know which.]

In this example, *had* is another instance of a past tense form which cannot possibly be analysed as an absolute preterite, nor as a past tense representing its situation time as T-anterior to an orientation time other than t_0, but which fully satisfies our definition of 'relative past tense form' (expressing T-simultaneity in a past domain). More generally, as is shown by Figure 8.6, a past domain can contain one or more subdomains which are W-interpreted as lying in the post-present. A past tense expressing T-simultaneity in such a subdomain cannot be analysed as an absolute past tense.

---

[11] As noted in 1.14, we use 'preterite' to refer to forms like *walked*, *said*, *went*, etc. Other forms involving the past tense morpheme (such as *had walked*, *would walk*, *would have walked*) are not preterite forms.

The following are some further examples in which the situation time of a clause in the relative past tense is interpreted as W-posterior to t_0:

> [He told me yesterday that exactly 17 days from now he would tell Mary that] he *was inviting* her to lunch because it *was* his birthday.
>
> [“What was it he told you yesterday?” — “He said that, inevitably, the time would come when] he *was* fed up with working in a factory [and would look out for a better job.”]
>
> [He said he would read the article tomorrow while] he *was* in the dentist’s waiting-room.

Here again, the italicized past tense forms not only do not mean ‘past relative to t_0’ (as they would do if they were absolute preterites), but do not mean ‘past relative to (any kind of) orientation time’. The temporal relation they express is that of T-simultaneity with a situation time belonging to a past temporal domain (but interpreted as W-posterior to t_0).

8.24.2 The above data, which are naturally explained if one assumes the existence of a relative past tense in English (and hence the existence of temporal domains), cannot possibly be accounted for by an analysis that assumes that there is only one past tense, expressing that the situation time is past relative to t_0. This argument in favour of the existence of a relative preterite is so cogent that it should be sufficient on its own to discard any analysis denying the existence of a relative past tense in English.

8.24.3 All the examples given in 8.24.1, and in fact in all the other arguments that will be presented below, are instances of ‘represented speech’, i. e. indirect reported speech or free indirect speech (see 8.25.1). This is because represented speech forms the only context in which the use of the conditional tense (to express T-posteriority) is natural. Expressing T-posteriority is tantamount to making a prediction or expressing an expectation, and this can only be done in an INTENSIONAL (OPAQUE)[12] context like represented speech.[13] (A similar

---

[12] An opaque context (or ‘intensional context’) is one in which the reference is not to the real world but to an alternative (nonfactual) world. Such a context is created by (amongst other things) ‘intensional verbs’ (‘verbs of propositional attitude’) like *want, expect, believe, think, imagine*, etc. Clauses that form part of an intensional context receive an ‘opaque’ (‘de dicto’) interpretation, i. e. their truth is not evaluated in relation to the real world but in relation to the alternative world referred to.

Clauses belonging to a nonintensional context receive a ‘transparent’ (‘de re’) interpretation, i. e. their truth is evaluated in relation to the real world. It is typical of such an interpretation that the truth value of the clause is not affected when a referring remark can be made in connection with the future tense: reference to the post-present by itself creates opacity, i. e. a post-present domain is by definition an opaque domain. Thus, in [*If you do that,*] *you will regret for ever that you* *have done* *it*, the 'doing it' is not factual in the speaker's t_0-world (= the actual world): it is only factual in the post-present intensional domain, i. e. in a not-yet-factual alternative world.)

However, the fact that the data are restricted to cases in which T-posteriority is expressed does not in any way affect the strength of our argument. As pointed out at the beginning of 8.24.1, all that is necessary to prove the existence of the relative preterite in English is to adduce examples of preterites that cannot possibly be analysed as absolute preterites, and a number of such examples have been given here.

8.24.4 It should also be noted that the examples given in 8.24.1 all have nonpast counterparts in which the future tense is used instead of the conditional tense in the head clause and in which the present tense is used instead of the relative past tense in the subclause:

> [He has told us about what he plans to do.] When he *is* fifty-five he will retire. [He will move to some place in the south and …].
>
> I will read the article tomorrow while I *am* in the dentist's waiting-room.
>
> [He says that, inevitably,] the time will come when he *is* fed up with working in a factory [and will look out for a better job.]
>
> Exactly 17 days from now I will tell Mary that I *am inviting* her to lunch because it *is* my birthday.

There can be no doubt that the italicized present tense forms in these examples express T-simultaneity in a post-present domain: these forms cannot be interpreted as locating their situation time at t_0. Since these sentences with the future tense in the head clause and the present tense in the subclause are the nonpast counterparts of examples involving the conditional tense in the head

---

expression in the clause is replaced by an 'identical' expression (i. e. by an expression with the same referent). Thus, since in the real world *the capital of France* and *Paris* have the same referent, we can replace the former by the latter in *The capital of France has ten million inhabitants* without altering the truth value of the sentence.

In sentences that receive an opaque interpretation, the replacement of a term by an 'identical' expression may affect the truth value: the sentence *Bill thinks that Paris is the capital of Spain* may be true even if *Bill thinks that the capital of France is the capital of Spain* is not true.

13. We are disregarding here the special use of *would* in the sense of *was to*, as in *Ten years later Tom {would / was to} be the richest man in town* – see 9.6.7. (This is the only use in which *would* is interpreted as referring to a past fact rather than as merely making a prediction.)

clause and the past tense in the subclause, it stands to reason that in both cases the tense in the subclause should be analysed as a tense expressing T-simultaneity (coincidence) with a situation time that is T-posterior (to t_0 or to a past orientation time, respectively).

8.25 Argument 3: tense use in represented speech

Distinguishing between an absolute and a relative past tense explains why some past tense forms are 'backshifted' in past represented speech while others are not. For example, the sentence *Ian addressed the girl who was sitting behind the largest desk* can be reported as [*Jim said yesterday that*] *Ian had addressed the girl who was sitting behind the largest desk*. This illustrates the (quite logical) fact that an absolute past tense can be 'backshifted' in past represented speech, whereas a relative past tense remains unaffected (because the T-simultaneity relation which it expresses remains unaffected).

8.25.1 This argument concerns the adaptation of tense forms in indirect reported speech and in free indirect speech. For ease of reference, we will subsume these two possibilities of indirect speech under the heading of REPRESENTED SPEECH (where *speech* should be interpreted as meaning 'speech or thought'). Since we will only be concerned with the kind of represented speech in which the representation is located in the past, the term PAST REPRESENTED SPEECH will be used in the present section.

8.25.2 In past represented speech, the tense forms from direct speech are traditionally said to be BACKSHIFTED:

"I *am* at home." → I said I *was* at home.

"I *will be* at home." → I said I *would be* at home.

"I *have been* at home." → I said that I *had been* at home.

However, this rule, known as 'sequence of tenses', does not automatically apply when the presumed original utterance is in the past tense. Consider the following stretches of direct speech:

(1) "I told Bill that Jane was angry with Jim."

(2) "I told Bill that Jane was furious when Jim refused to take her out."

Out of context, sentence (1) will normally be taken to mean that the two situations were simultaneous, and this meaning can only be reported as (3) or (4):

(3) Jill said that she had told Bill that Jane was angry with Jim.

(4) Jill said that she told Bill that Jane was angry with Jim.

The following are not 'correct' past represented speech versions of (1) if the two situations in (1) are taken to be simultaneous:[14]

(5) Jill said that she told Bill that Jane had been angry with Jim.
(6) Jill said that she had told Bill that Jane had been angry with Jim.

Both (5) and (6) are reports of *I told Bill that Jane had been angry with Jim*. By contrast, sentence (2) only allows the following reading:[15]

> 'I told Bill [at t_2] that Jane was furious [at t_1] when Jim refused [at t_1] to take her out.' *(t_1 is anterior to t_2)*

The following are possible past represented speech versions of (2) – see 8.25.3 for further comment:

(7) Jill said that she (had) told Bill that Jane *had been* furious when Jim *refused* to take her out.
(8) Jill said that she (had) told Bill that Jane *was* furious when Jim *refused* to take her out.
(9) Jill said that she (had) told Bill that Jane *had been* furious when Jim *had refused* to take her out.

However, the following sentence is not a correct past represented speech version of (2):

(10) Jill said that she had told Bill that Jane *was* furious when Jim *had refused* to take her out. *(Unlike (2), this report represents Jim's refusal as anterior to Jane's being furious. It is therefore a report of I told Bill that Jane was furious when Jim had refused to take her out.)*

8.25.3 The data provided by (3)–(10) cannot be accounted for in a systematic way (i.e. without ad hoc stipulations) by the sequence of tenses rule if the latter is seen as a purely formal operation, which applies automatically in past represented speech. However, they are naturally explained in our analysis, which treats the BACKSHIFTING rule as the semantically-driven adaptation of tense forms which naturally takes place when an utterance is reported in the form of past represented speech. This analysis hinges on the following claims:

---

[14] By 'correct' represented speech version we mean a version which does justice to the temporal relation(s) expressed in the original utterance. If the original speaker says that two situations are simultaneous, then a report of this speaker's utterance cannot be a genuine report if it represents the original speaker as having said that the two situations are *sequential*. So if one thinks that the original speech is *John knew that Jim was abroad*, and this is interpreted as meaning that Jim's being abroad was simultaneous to John's knowing it, then this simply cannot (except by a liar) be reported by *Betty said that John knew that Jim had been abroad*, because the temporal relations between the situations are different in this sentence. Either a sentence is a report or it is not, and if it *is* a report then it obviously has to convey the same situations in the same temporal order.

[15] We are ignoring the (unlikely) interpretation on which the *when*-clause specifies the time of the head clause situation.

(a) A situation time that is ‘originally’ (i. e. in the original direct speech utterance) T-related to t_0 (and thus establishes a domain of its own), is now (i. e. in past represented speech) T-related to the central orientation time of a past domain (which, in (3)–(4) and (7)–(10), is the situation time of *said*), which means that the tense which locates the situation time in time no longer establishes a domain but merely expresses a T-relation in one.

(b) It follows that a tense form which originally represents its situation time as the central orientation time of a past domain, such as *told* in (1)–(2), is now replaced by a tense form expressing a T-relation in a (new) past domain. This is because the situation time is now T-bound by the central orientation time – which is the situation time of *said* in (3)–(4) and (7)–(10) – rather than being directly related to t_0 (by an absolute tense form). The relative tense form in question expresses T-anteriority (i. e. it is a past perfect form) because the original past tense form also expresses T-anteriority (but then to t_0 rather than to a past orientation time).

(c) Out of context, when a complement *that*-clause in the past tense depending on a head clause in the past tense is homogeneous, it must as a rule be taken to express T-simultaneity. This is indeed the way the *that*-clause is interpreted in (1) [*I told Bill that Jane was angry with Jim*]: Jane’s being angry is W-simultaneous with my telling Bill about it.

For a good understanding of this point, it is necessary to draw attention to a number of things:

- Firstly, the generalization made in the first sentence of (c) obviously does not apply if the past tense form in the *that*-clause is the past counterpart of a ‘futurish form’ – see 2.9 – as in *Mary said that Bill was coming over when school broke up the next week*.
- Secondly, the reason why the generalization applies only if the *that*-clause is homogeneous is that T-simultaneity means coincidence (see 2.17). If the situation time of a durative situation is represented as T-simultaneous with a punctual situation time, it is represented as punctual. As explained in 2.17, this is only possible if the durative situation clause (whose situation time is T-bound and punctual) is a ‘homogeneous’ clause. (If it is heterogeneous, the situation time can only be the time of the full situation.) Thus, the situation time of the *that*-clause of *Mary said that Bill walked to town* cannot be T-simultaneous with the situation time of *said*, but that changes when the *that*-clause is made homogeneous by the use of the progressive form: in *Mary said that Bill was walking to town* the walking can (and out of context is) interpreted as simultaneous with the situation time of *said*.

– Thirdly, if a *that*-clause is itself the head clause of an adverbial *when*-clause, its situation time must be interpreted as W-anterior to the situation time of the matrix clause (see 2.17 and 8.26.1). Thus, in (2) [*I told Bill that Jane was furious when Jim refused to take her out*] the situation of Jane being furious is interpreted as W-anterior to that referred to by *I told Bill*. In our terminology, this means that *was* is now an absolute past tense form 'shifting the domain'. That is, the temporal domain established by *told* in *I told Bill* remains unexpanded, because the past tense form *was* in *Jane was furious* establishes another (W-anterior) past domain which also comprises the situation time of the *when*-clause. (The reason why the preterite in a *that*-clause supporting a *when*-clause cannot be analysed as a relative preterite expressing T-simultaneity will be explained in 8.26.1.)

(d) In section 9.29 we will see that some types of clauses (such as adverbial *when*-clauses) under certain conditions allow 'indirect binding', i. e. the situation time in question is not T-bound by the situation time of its head clause, but by the situation time of a higher clause. The most typical pattern is that realized in *He said that when he had seen the house he had immediately fallen in love with it*, which is an alternative to *He said that when he saw the house he had immediately fallen in love with it*. Whereas *saw* is an example of 'normal' (= 'direct') binding, because it represents the situation time of the *when*-clause as T-simultaneous with the situation time (*had fallen*) of its head clause, *had seen* is an example of indirect binding: it represents the situation time of the *when*-clause as T-anterior to the situation time of *said*. This is possible because it is pragmatically clear that the situation time of *had seen* must anyhow be interpreted as W-simultaneous with the situation time of *had fallen*.

(e) Indirect binding is never possible in complement clauses depending on a verb of communication (*say*, *tell*, *hear* …): we cannot interpret *Jill admitted that she had said that Ian had been angry* as equivalent to *Jill admitted that she had said that Ian was angry.*[16] (However, the rule is not so strict if the 'reporting verb' is a cognition verb (e. g. *realize*, *be aware*, *feel*, *know*… − see 9.23.3.)

---

[16] This impossibility of indirect binding in past represented speech accords with the impossibility of using the future tense in similar examples referring to the post-present:

(i) *(direct reported speech)* Next time I meet him I will say to him: "Some day I *will ask* you if you *are* hungry."

(ii) *(indirect reported speech)* Next time I meet him I will tell him that some day I *will ask* him if he {*is* / **will be*} hungry.

The report in (ii) must do justice to the original temporal relations. This means that the absolute form *will ask* from (i) becomes the relative tense form *will ask* (expressing T-posteriority to the future situation time of *will talk*, which is treated as a 'pseudo-t_0'– see 9.17.1 and 9.22.1) and that the relative present tense form *are* from (i) remains the relative present tense form *are*, because the T-relation it expresses, viz. T-simultaneity, remains unchanged. Using *will be* instead would be an instance of indirect binding, which is ungrammatical in complement clauses.

The above principles explain the data provided by (3)−(10):

(a) Sentence (1) [*I told Bill that Jane was angry with Jim*] can be reported as (3) [*Jill said that she had told Bill that Jane was angry with Jim*] because it is normal for an absolute preterite (*told*) to be 'backshifted' in past represented speech (because what is originally anterior to t_0 is now anterior to the situation time of *said*) and because it is equally normal for a relative preterite (*was*) to be retained (because the relation of T-simultaneity is not affected by the reporting and because indirect binding is not allowed in complement clauses depending on *said*). Sentence (1) can also be reported as (4) [*Jill said that she told Bill that Jane was angry with Jim*] because the absolute preterite *told* can anyhow only be interpreted as establishing a W-anterior domain (and hence as interpretationally equivalent to *had told*) because, as pointed out in 8.25.3, the situation time of a durative bounded (and hence nonhomogeneous) subclause (*told*) cannot be represented as T-simultaneous with the virtually punctual situation time of its head clause (*said*).

(b) Sentence (1) [*I told Bill that Jane was angry with Jim*] cannot be (faithfully) reported as (5) [*Jill said that she told Bill that Jane had been angry with Jim*] or (6) [*Jill said that she had told Bill that Jane had been angry with Jim*] because the substitution of *had been* for *was* changes the T-simultaneity relation expressed by *was* in (1) into a T-anteriority relation. That is, (5) and (6) are both reports of *I told Bill that Jane had been angry with Jim* rather than reports of (1). (The use of *had been* in (6) cannot be analysed as an instance of indirect binding, because indirect binding is not grammatical in a *that*-clause depending on a head clause with *said* as verb − see principle (e) above.)

(c) Sentence (2) [*I told Bill that Jane was furious when Jim refused to take her out*] can be reported as (7) [*Jill said that she (had) told Bill that Jane had been furious when Jim refused to take her out*] because this report does justice to the temporal relations expressed in (or inferrable from) the reported clause. *Had told* represents its situation time as T-anterior to the situation time of *said*, in the same way as *told* in (2) represents its situation time as anterior to t_0. *Told* is also fine, because it can be interpreted as establishing a past domain that is W-anterior to that of *said*. The situation time of *had been furious* is represented as T-anterior to that of *(had) told*, which is in keeping with the fact that in (2) the situation time of *was furious* is interpreted as W-anterior to the situation time of *told*. The past tense *refused* from (2) is retained in (7) because the T-relation to be expressed is the same in the two sentences, viz. T-simultaneity.

(d) Sentence (2) [*I told Bill that Jane was furious when Jim refused to take her out*] can also be reported as (8) [*Jill said that she (had) told Bill that Jane was furious when Jim refused to take her out*] because this version too does justice to all the temporal relations expressed in (or inferrable from) (2). The situation time of *(had) told* is interpreted as W-anterior to that of *said*, which is in keeping with the fact that *told* in (2) represents its situation time as anterior to t_0. Because of the presence of the *when*-clause (which is to be interpreted as modifying *Jane was furious*), the situation time of *was furious* cannot be interpreted as T-simultaneous with that of *(had) told*. This means that *was* in (8) must be an absolute past tense creating a new domain, which (for reasons explained in 8.25.3) can only be interpreted as W-anterior to the domain established by *said*. Finally, the situation time of *refused* is represented as T-simultaneous with that of *was furious*, just as it is in (2).

(e) Sentence (2) [*I told Bill that Jane was furious when Jim refused to take her out*] can also be reported as (9) [*Jill said that she (had) told Bill that Jane had been furious when Jim had refused to take her out*] because a *when*-clause that is interpreted in terms of W-simultaneity can be bound indirectly (*had refused*) rather than directly (*refused*).

(f) Sentence (2) [*I told Bill that Jane was furious when Jim refused to take her out*] cannot be reported as (10) [*Jill said that she had told Bill that Jane was furious when Jim had refused to take her out*] because *had refused* cannot be an instance of indirect binding (accompanied by a W-simultaneity interpretation) if its head clause is not in the past perfect too. (This restriction is explained in 13.10.1–2.) The form *had refused* in (10) can therefore only be interpreted as expressing T-anteriority. As a result, (10) does not accurately represent all the temporal relations expressed in the original utterance, since *refused* expresses T-simultaneity in (2). In other words, (10) is not a report of (2) but rather of *I told Bill that Jane was furious when Jim had refused to take her out*.

In sum, the data provided by (3)–(10) are all naturally accounted for in our theory.

8.25.4 As noted before, at least some of these data cannot be accounted for by a theory that holds that 'sequence of tenses' is a mechanical (automatic, purely formal) rule in past represented speech. Consider the following, in which the (b) sentences are meant to be the indirect reported versions of the (a) sentences:

(a) I *was* in Greece at the time. *(absolute past tense)*

(b) Jane said she *had been* in Greece at the time.

(a) Millie complained that she *wasn't feeling* well. *(relative past tense)*

(b) John told us that Millie had complained that she {*wasn't* / **hadn't been*} *feeling* well.

These examples show that in past represented speech an absolute preterite can be backshifted whereas a relative one cannot. It is only a theory that distinguishes between absolute and relative preterites that can account for this fact.

8.25.5 This also refutes any analysis which claims that in past represented speech both the head clause and the *that*-clause simply locate their situations in the past and are therefore both absolute past tenses (in our terminology). Like our analysis, such an analysis holds that the report must do justice to the original utterance, hence that two situations that are W-simultaneous in the original utterance must be reported in such a way that they can be interpreted as W-simultaneous. However, unlike our analysis, such an analysis assumes that the way to do that is to use the past tense in both the clauses of the report. According to this analysis, the two past tenses in *Bill once told me his right foot had only four toes* simply locate their situations in the past and the two situations are automatically interpreted as W-simultaneous because *My right foot has only four toes* represents the situation referred to as simultaneous with t_0 and a faithful report has to do justice to this temporal relation. In this analysis both the past tense forms in *Bill once told me his right foot had only four toes* are absolute tense forms.

This analysis cannot explain all the data provided by (3)–(10):

(a) The analysis does not explain why the unmarked report of *My right foot has only four toes* is *Bill once told me that his right foot had only four toes* rather than *Bill once told me that his right foot has only four toes*. If *My right foot has only four toes* is true at some time before t_0, then (if Bill is still alive) it must also be true at t_0. We would therefore expect the present tense to be more natural than the past tense. That this is not the case follows from the fact that a shift of domain from the past to the present is subject to restrictions, whereas it is always possible to expand a past domain created by an intensional verb like *said* or *thought*. This becomes even clearer if *My right foot has only four toes* is an erroneous utterance or thought: we can say *Bill {imagined / dreamed} that his right foot had only four toes*, but hardly ??*Bill {imagined / dreamed} that his right foot has only four toes*.

(b) A heterogeneous (= nonhomogeneous – see 1.36) situation cannot be located at t_0, because its situation time coincides with the time of the full situation and one cannot locate a durative situation at (= as coinciding with) a point of time. This requirement, that the situation time located at t_0 must be punctual, follows from the semantics of the present tense: it represents the situation time as T-simultaneous with t_0, not as W-simultaneous with t_0. (W-simultaneity is a question of interpreting the W-relation between t_0 and the time of the full situation.) In past represented speech we notice exactly the same requirement of T-simultaneity between the *that*-

clause situation time and the situation time of *said*. A heterogeneous situation cannot be located at the situation time of *said*, because you cannot locate a durative situation at (= as coinciding with) a time which is considered as punctual, or at any rate as shorter than the time of the situation which is located at it. Our analysis therefore predicts the unacceptability of *He said he wrote a long letter* on the simultaneity reading, while the other analysis does not. If both past tenses are absolute tenses, it should be possible for the two situations (domains) to be interpreted as W-simultaneous with (= overlapping) one another, unless the theory contains a special interpretive principle blocking this interpretation. Our theory does not contain such a special (ad hoc?) interpretive principle and does not need one.

In other words, the kind of simultaneity that is relevant to the use and understanding of past represented speech sentences is coincidence (T-simultaneity), not overlap (W-simultaneity). This accords with the claim that the past tense in the *that*-clause is a relative past tense, but not with the claim that it is an absolute past tense whose situation is interpreted as W-simultaneous with the situation of the head clause.

(c) As we will see in 9.9–12, the tenses used to express T-relations in a past domain can under certain conditions also be used to express T-relations in a pre-present domain, even if the present perfect is given a ‘co-extensive’ T-interpretation (i. e. the situation time is co-extensive with the pre-present and therefore leads up to t_0 – see 5.2.2). The following examples of pre-present represented speech (or thought) come from section 9.12:

[I watched Oprah today and George Michael was on there and I enjoyed his interview.] I have known for some time that he *was* gay [but you know he is still sexy]. (www) *(T-simultaneity)*

[“You don’t think it’s on the small side?” – “It looks fine to me.”] – “I’ve been thinking lately it *was* rather small.” (CP) *(T-simultaneity)*

I have known for some time that she *was* in great pain, [but unfortunately the only thing I could and can do is pray that God reveals his plan for her and be ...] (www) *(T-simultaneity)*

I have known for some time that she *would* not *last* forever, [but her death still comes as a shock]. (www) *(T-posteriority)*

[In fact, terrorism experts say that] for years their worst fear has been that a suicide bomber *would hit* inside US borders. (www) *(T-posteriority)*

It is clear that the italicized past tenses in the first three examples cannot be analysed as absolute past tenses, because they do not represent the situation they refer to as T-bygone, and certainly not as temporally disconnected from the present. On the other hand, analysing them as relative pasts accords not only with the simultaneity interpretation which they receive but also with the observation that when a pre-present domain is expanded, it is always expanded as if it were a past domain. (Abundant evidence for the existence of this type of shift of temporal perspective will be adduced in 9.9–12.)

8.26 Argument 4: the incompatibility of a punctual adverbial with a relative preterite

The claim that there are two types of past tense in English, an absolute and a relative one, is supported by the fact that an absolute past tense form is compatible with an unanchored punctual time-specifying adverbial (i. e. an adverbial of the type *at 5 o'clock*), whereas a relative past tense form is not.

8.26.1 Observe the following:

> *(said at 5 o'clock)* John is here {now / at present / today / at this very moment / *at five o'clock}. *(The acceptability judgement on 'at five o'clock' assumes that the present tense form has its basic meaning and refers to a single situation rather than being a historic present or referring to a present habit or characteristic. Note also that the relevant difference between* *at this very moment* *and* *at five o'clock* *is that the former expresses an Adv-time which is anchored to* t_0 *while the latter does not.)*

This example shows that when a situation time is represented as T-simultaneous (= coinciding) with t_0, its temporal location cannot also be specified by a punctual unanchored time-specifying adverbial like *at five o'clock*. The only seeming exception is when the time-specifying adverbial does not specify a punctual Adv-time containing the situation time in terms of coincidence but belongs to the proposition describing the situation whose situation time is located at t_0, as in the following:

> *(said at 5 o'clock)* [You always claim that John is never here at five o'clock. But now you can see for yourself:] John IS here at five o'clock.

Examples like these, in which *at five o'clock* does not function as a time-specifying adverbial but forms part of the untensed proposition, will be disregarded in what follows because they are irrelevant to the argument to be presented. So will sentences in which the present tense is a historic present and sentences that express a present characteristic or habit – see the comment added to the first example.

The reason why, at five o'clock, we cannot say **I am here at five o'clock* is that the present tense represents its situation time as T-simultaneous (i. e.

coinciding) with t_0. This means that the situation time receives its temporal specification from the location at t_0, which is the strongest possible kind of temporal specification, since t_0 is by definition 'given': in sentences with an unanchored time-specifying adverbial, the situation time derives its temporal specification exclusively from the adverbial, because the Adv-time 'contains' the situation time (in terms of coincidence or inclusion − see 2.23.1). A situation time cannot derive its temporal specification from two different mechanisms at once, even if the times they refer to coincide with one another.

In sum, a sentence whose situation time is represented as T-simultaneous (= coinciding) with t_0 cannot contain an unanchored punctual time-specifying adverbial specifying a time with which the situation time coincides. Something similar happens when a past tense is used. Consider:

(11) I was still thirsty at five o'clock.

(12) At five o'clock Jim whispered that he was still thirsty.

(13) *At five o'clock Jim whispered that he was still thirsty at five o'clock. *(The two time-specifying adverbials* *at five o'clock* *are meant to be read as specifying the same time.)*

(14) (At five o'clock) Jim whispered that he was still thirsty at three o'clock.

In (11), the absolute past tense form *was* locates its situation time in the past time-sphere. The precise location of this situation time in the past is specified by *at five o'clock*. In (12), *was* [*thirsty*] is a relative past tense form. It represents its situation time as T-simultaneous (= coinciding) with the situation time of the head clause and in so doing derives its temporal specification from the latter, which itself derives its temporal specification from *at five o'clock*. As shown by the ungrammaticality of (13), we cannot add *at five o'clock* to the *that*-clause of (12). If we add this, the *that*-clause can no longer derive its temporal specification from the T-relation with the situation time of the head clause. As noted above, a situation time cannot derive its temporal specification from two different times at once, even if these times happen to coincide with one another. This explains the unacceptability of (13). Things are different in (14), where *at three o'clock* refers to a different time from the time of the whispering. In our terminology, this means that *was* [*thirsty*] must now be read as an absolute tense form establishing a domain of its own. (The different adverbials make it clear that the central orientation time of the domain in question is interpreted as W-anterior to the situation time of the head clause, but this relation is not expressed by the tense forms: the absolute preterites *whispered* and *was* [*thirsty*] T-relate their situation times directly to t_0.) The difference between (11) and (14) on the one hand and (12) and (13) on the other shows that an absolute past tense form is compatible with an unanchored punctual time-specifying adverbial, whereas a relative past tense is not.[17] This is a cogent syntactic argument in favour of the claim that a distinction should be made between T-absolute and T-relative past tense forms in English.

It should be noted that the restriction observed in (13) is quite similar to that observed in _*John is here at five o'clock_. What we claim in connection with the relative past tense is therefore based on a more general principle which also governs the use of unanchored time-specifying adverbials in present tense sentences referring to a single situation.

It might be argued that the above argument fails because the problem with (13) [_*At five o'clock Jim whispered that he was still thirsty at five o'clock_] is simply redundancy. However, redundancy may lead to reduced acceptability but not to ungrammaticality, unless the redundancy is a question of reduplicating a constituent within a single syntactic slot (function). Compare:

> *On his head he was wearing a bowler hat on his head. _(This is ungrammatical because the locative adverbial on his head is reduplicated, so that there are two identical constituents fulfilling the same syntactic function. An alternative syntactic analysis, e.g. that the second on his head forms part of the noun phrase a bowler hat on his head, is not available: in He was wearing a bowler hat on his head the constituent on his head can only be analysed as a locative adverbial, not as a post-modifier to the noun head bowler hat. This is clear from the fact that What he was wearing on his head was a bowler hat is a quite normal thing to say, while the following is not: *What he was wearing was a bowler hat on his head.)_
>
> *?John told the girl standing next to him that he liked the girl standing next to him. _(This is far less acceptable than John told the girl standing next to him that he liked her. The repetition of the girl standing next to him makes for redundancy, which drastically reduces the acceptability of the sentence. However, there is no way one can say that the sentence is syntactically or/and semantically ungrammatical.)_
>
> *At five o'clock Jim whispered that he was still thirsty at five o'clock. _(If the two time-specifying adverbials at five o'clock are meant to be read as specifying the same time, this sentence is simply ungrammatical, not just relatively unacceptable because of redundancy. Note also that it differs from the first of these three examples in that at five o'clock is not reduplicated: the two time-specifying adverbials have a syntactic function in different clauses.)_

8.26.2 There is another observation supporting the claim that an absolute past tense form is compatible with an unanchored punctual time-specifying adverbial, whereas a relative past tense form is not. It concerns unanchored punctual time-specifying adverbials that are added to the description of a durative bounded situation. As noted in 2.30.2, this is only possible if there is a suitable inceptive (inchoative) or terminative reading. Compare:

---

[17] The only exception is when the adverbial in the subclause is a pro-form for the adverbial in the head clause, as in _At five o'clock John said that he was thirsty {then / at that time}_. Such sentences, which anyhow sound awkward because the addition of the pro-form is completely redundant, are disregarded here. They do not form any counterevidence to the argument that has been offered.

> At seven o'clock he was eating a three-course dinner. *(This sentence, in which was eating is an absolute tense form, is fine on the interpretation that the situation time coincided with the punctual Adv-time, because the progressive form represents the telic situation as nonbounded and homogeneous, which means that the situation time can be a punctual portion of the time of the full situation and can therefore be represented as coinciding with the punctual Adv-time denoted by at seven o'clock.)*
>
> At seven o'clock he ate a three-course dinner. *(This sentence is ungrammatical if it is to express that the situation time coincided with the punctual Adv-time, because the nonprogressive form of a telic verb phrase represents the durative situation as bounded (and therefore as heterogeneous), which means that the situation time is also the time of the full situation, which is durative and therefore cannot coincide with a punctual Adv-time. However, when such a sentence is uttered by a cooperative speaker, a cooperative hearer will look for a suitable reading and assume a partly inchoative interpretation: 'He ate a three-course dinner and started doing so at seven o'clock'.)*
>
> John came to the station at four. *(The most suitable interpretation here is a partly terminative one: 'John came to the station and arrived there at four'.)*

In order to see whether we can get the same inchoative or terminative reading in clauses using a relative tense it suffices to consider the past represented speech versions of the previous two examples:

> John said that at seven o'clock he ate a three-course dinner. *(The only possible interpretation of the that-clause is a partly inchoative reading. However, the beginning of the eating cannot be interpreted as T-simultaneous with the situation time of said. The sentence only allows the reading in which the eating precedes the saying, i. e. the reading that is to be expected if ate is an absolute past tense form.)*
>
> John said he came to the station at four. *(The most suitable interpretation here is a partly terminative one: 'John came to the station and arrived there at four'. However, John's arrival at the station cannot be interpreted as T-simultaneous with the situation time of said. The sentence only allows the reading in which came is an absolute tense form establishing a past domain which is interpreted as W-anterior to the past domain established by said.)*

In sum, the combination of an unanchored punctual time-specifying adverbial and the description of a durative bounded situation can trigger a partly inchoative or terminative reading in complement clauses, but only if the past tense that they use is the absolute past tense. There is thus a constraint on combining a punctual unanchored time-specifying adverbial with the relative past tense, while there is no such constraint where the absolute past tense is concerned. This further corroborates our claim that there are two types of past tense in English.

8.27 Argument 5: a relative past tense form cannot be replaced by *used to*

In a sentence referring to a past habit, an absolute past tense form can be replaced by *used to* (which expresses T-anteriority to some orientation time), whereas a relative past tense form cannot.

8.27.1 A scrutiny of examples with the auxiliary *used to* reveals that its temporal meaning is: 'The situation time is represented as T-anterior to some orientation time'. The orientation time in question may be t_0, as in *Terry used to be a nuisance*, or a past orientation time, as in *Terry said that as a child he used to be a nuisance*, or a post-present orientation time which is treated as if it were t_0 when another situation time is T-related to it, as in the following example:

> [Teach your child to cook healthy food. When he grows up and is cooking for himself,] he will remember the things he *used to make* in his childhood [and will feed himself well]. (www)

In this example, *used to* locates the situation time of *make* in a 'pseudo-past' period, i. e. in a period which is past with respect to the time of the remembering – see 9.18.1. (In other words, *used to* represents the making as T-anterior to the situation time of *will remember*, which is the central orientation time of the post-present domain and is therefore treated as if it were t_0 when another situation time is T-related to it – see 9.17.)

It follows from the temporal meaning of *used to* (viz. 'The situation time is represented as T-anterior to an orientation time') that, if the reference is to a habit lying in the (real) past, '*used to* + verb' can alternate either with an absolute past tense (expressing T-anteriority to t_0) or with a past perfect (expressing T-anteriority to an orientation time in a past domain):

> [When I was a child] I {was / used to be} afraid of spiders.
>
> Chris said that she {had played / used to play} tennis until three years ago.

In cases where the past perfect can alternate with an absolute past tense establishing a W-anterior domain (e. g. *He said he {left / had left} early that morning*), *used to* can alternate with the past tense as well as with the past perfect:

> [He said that when he was a child] he {had been / was / used to be} afraid of spiders. (*Had been expresses T-anteriority in the past domain established by said; was and used to be create a past domain of their own, which is interpreted as W-anterior to the domain established by said.*)

On the other hand, it follows from its meaning that *used to* cannot alternate with a tense form representing its situation time as T-simultaneous (= coinciding) with t_0 or with a past, pre-present or post-present orientation time. In the following sentences it is each time unacceptable, at least on a simultaneity reading:

> Now he {is / *used to be} afraid of frogs. *(reference to a present habit)*
>
> I saw that he {was / *used to be} afraid of frogs. *(reference to a past habit that is represented as T-simultaneous with the past situation time of saw)*
>
> I've often heard him say that he {was / *used to be} afraid of frogs. *(reference to a habit that is represented as T-simultaneous with the pre-present situation time of have heard)*
>
> [If you teach him to cook as a child] he will tell other people later how he {cooks / *used to cook}. *(reference to a post-present habit that is represented as T-simultaneous with the post-present situation time of will tell)*

In conclusion, in a sentence referring to a habit, *used to* can alternate with a tense form expressing T-anteriority to t_0 (= an absolute past tense) or T-anteriority to another orientation time (e.g. a past perfect), but not with a tense form representing its situation time as T-simultaneous (= coinciding) with t_0 (= a present tense) or as T-simultaneous with another orientation time (e.g. a relative past tense).

8.27.2 We interpret the data offered in the previous subsection as meaning that *used to* cannot express T-simultaneity. One might object to this, saying that all that has been shown is that *used to* cannot express W-simultaneity, or that a W-simultaneity interpretation blocks the use of *used to*. This objection would involve the claim that we do not need the notion of T-simultaneity to explain the data, and that all past tense forms are absolute tense forms. It is up to us to refute this analysis.

It is not difficult to show that a W-simultaneity interpretation does not block the use of *used to*. In a subclause, *used to* can alternate with a past tense form establishing a domain of its own which is to be interpreted as W-simultaneous with the head clause domain, provided the verb forms of the two clauses express T-anteriority to the same orientation time. Compare:

> Sheila *visited* her grandmother regularly and she also *gave* her flowers. *(Both past tenses represent their situation time as T-anterior to* t_0*. In doing so they create two separate past domains, which can be interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other. Since both clauses can refer to a habit, the clauses can be interpreted as referring to W-simultaneous past habits.)*
>
> Sheila *used to visit* her grandmother regularly and she also *used to give* her flowers. *(The two clauses again establish separate past domains, which can be pragmatically interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other. Both clauses express T-anteriority to*

> *t_0. Another interpretation – for example, the habit expressed in the second clause is interpreted as anterior to the habit expressed in the first clause – is completely ruled out.)*

Similarly, *used to* can alternate with a past perfect form effecting 'indirect binding' (see 9.28.1), provided the situation time in question is interpreted as anterior to the same orientation time as also binds the situation time of the head clause:

> [I admitted that] when I *had been* in front of the camera or microphone I *had been* very nervous. *(Both past perfect forms express T-anteriority to the situation time of admitted. Their situation times are interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other, which means that the when-clause is bound indirectly.)*
>
> [I admitted that] when I *used to be* in front of the camera or microphone I *used to be* very nervous. *(Both used to-forms express T-anteriority to the situation time of admitted. Their situation times are interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other.)*

In sum, the data in connection with *used to* referred to in 8.27.1 cannot be explained by the assumption that a W-simultaneity interpretation blocks the use of *used to*.

8.27.3 In the previous sections the following principle has been illustrated:

> Take a complex sentence in which both the head clause and the subclause express a past habit and use an absolute preterite form (so that two different past domains are established). Suppose further that the subclause domain is to be interpreted as W-simultaneous with the head clause domain, as in *In those days Bill walked to work because his wife needed the car*. In that case we can replace the the past tense form of the subclause (as well as that of the head clause) by a form with *used to* without changing the temporal relations: in *In those days Bill {walked / used to walk} to work because his wife used to need the car*, the two situations are again T-anterior to t_0 and are again interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other. However, if the subclause uses a relative past tense form, we cannot replace that form by a form with *used to* because this would change the T-simultaneity relation expressed by the relative past tense form into a T-anteriority relation.

It follows that if sentence (15) below established two independent past domains which were interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other, it should be possible for the sentence to alternate with (16):

(15) My father often said that he was afraid of mice. *(The intended reading is that on which the two situations, which are both T-anterior to t_0, are interpreted as simultaneous.)*

(16) My father used to say that he used to be afraid of mice.

Actually, (16) cannot be interpreted as having the same meaning as (15). It can only be interpreted as equivalent to *My father always said that he had been afraid of mice*. This strongly supports our claim that (on the intended interpretation) *was afraid* in (15) is not an absolute preterite form establishing a W-simultaneous domain but is a relative preterite form expressing T-simultaneity. (Evidently, a tense form expressing T-simultaneity cannot alternate with (and be equivalent to) a *used to*-form expressing T-anteriority.) The crux of this argument is that the impossibility of replacing (15) with (16) proves that it is not W-simultaneity that blocks the use of *used to* but T-simultaneity. The use of *used to* is not blocked in the examples in 8.27.2, which illustrate W-simultaneity, but it is blocked in (16), because *was* in (15) expresses T-simultaneity.

8.27.4 In sum, in a *that*-clause referring to a past habit, an absolute preterite can be replaced by a *used to*-form, whereas a relative preterite cannot. The following examples further illustrate this:

> Millie believed that her son {didn't smoke / didn't use to smoke} when he was younger. *(Because of the presence of the when-clause, the situation of not smoking must be interpreted as anterior to Millie's belief – see 8.26.1. This means that didn't smoke must be an absolute preterite establishing a domain that is interpreted as W-anterior to the domain established by believed. Such an absolute preterite, expressing T-anteriority to* t_0*, can be replaced by a used to-form on a habitual interpretation.)*
>
> Millie believed that her son {didn't smoke / #didn't use to smoke}. *(For lack of a context triggering another interpretation, the habitual situation of not smoking is interpreted as simultaneous with Millie's belief. If, on this interpretation, didn't smoke were an absolute preterite establishing a domain that was interpreted as W-simultaneous with the domain established by believed, it would be interchangeable with didn't use to smoke, because both forms would express T-anteriority to* t_0*. The fact that didn't use to smoke (which expresses T-anteriority to* t_0*) cannot replace didn't smoke (on the intended reading)*[18] *can only mean that didn't smoke does not express T-anteriority to* t_0*. In other words, didn't smoke cannot be an absolute preterite. Our analysis, which treats it as a relative preterite (expressing no other relation than T-simultaneity) is in keeping with this conclusion and also provides a natural explanation for the data.)*

8.28 Argument 6: the use of the preterite rather than the conditional tense

The existence of a relative past tense (expressing T-simultaneity with an orientation time in a past domain) accounts for the obligatory use of the past tense (rather than the conditional tense) in the adverbial time clause of a sentence like *John decided that*

---

[18] It is this fact – that *didn't smoke* cannot be replaced with *didn't use to smoke* – that is indicated by the symbol # in the example.

he would wait until his wife {*arrived* / **would arrive*}. If we assume that the meaning of *until* includes an 'implicit orientation time' – *until* means 'until the time that' – the use of the past tense is explained naturally: it represents the situation time of John's wife's arrival as T-simultaneous with the implicit orientation time.

8.28.1 The concept of relative past tense is also necessary to account for the obligatory use of the preterite in the adverbial time clauses of examples like the following:

> Maud knew that John would leave before Mary {*arrived* / **would arrive*}.

As noted in 14.4.2, the *before*-clause in this example is interpreted as 'not-yet-factual at the binding time', more specifically as not-yet-factual at the situation time of the head clause: what Maud knew was that Mary would not yet have arrived when John left. The same applies to the *until*-clause in the following example:

> Maud expected that John would wait until Mary {*arrived* / *would arrive} [but she couldn't know that John would be waiting in vain because Mary wouldn't make it to the meeting-place that day.]. *(The until-clause has a similar 'not-yet-factual at the head clause-situation time' interpretation)*

The obligatory use of the past tense in such time clauses is generally looked upon as puzzling. It seems illogical that (unlike many other languages) English does not allow the use of the conditional tense (which represents a situation time as T-posterior to an orientation time in a past domain) to refer to a situation time which must actually be interpreted as W-posterior to an orientation time in a past domain. However, these data do not really present a problem if one knows that the temporal conjunctions *before, until*, *after*, *since* and *when* resemble the phrasal conjunction *by the time that* in that they are interpreted as '{before / until / after / since / at} the time that' (see 8.2.1). Diachronically, the present-day conjunctions *before, until*, *after*, and *since* have actually developed from prepositional phrases of this kind. The fact that we must use *arrived* rather than *would arrive* in the above examples shows that, in an intensional context, the situation time of a *before* / *until*-clause has to be represented as T-simultaneous with the orientation time that is implicit in the semantics of the conjunction (and which is explicit in the conjunction *by the time that*). A comparison of the following sentences renders it easier to see this constraint:

> John *left* before Mary *arrived*.
>
> John decided he would wait until his wife {*arrived* / *would arrive}.

The first example is interpreted as meaning that both situations actualized in the order indicated by *before*. Because of the factuality of the two situations, the two preterites are analysed as absolute preterites in our theory. (As explained in 14.5.1, not all *before*-clauses use a relative tense. Those that represent a situation as a past fact use the absolute past tense.) The implication that Mary had not yet arrived when John left is an entailment but does not alter the fact that the two situations are represented as factual.

In the second example, *decided* creates an intensional world in which the situation of John's wife's arrival is expected to actualize. The form *arrived* cannot be an absolute past tense here because the speaker does not represent the arrival as a past fact: it is quite possible that John's wife did not actually show up. In other words, by using an absolute past tense a speaker always represents a situation as factual from his point of view, i. e. from the temporal standpoint of t_0. Such a reading, which is given to both past tense forms in *John left before Mary arrived*, is a 'transparent' ('de re') interpretation. By contrast, in *John decided he would wait until his wife arrived*, *arrived* receives an 'opaque' ('de dicto') reading. The arrival only forms part of John's intensional world, not of the speaker's transparent world. In this world, the arrival is not-yet-factual at the time when John decided to wait. In sum, *arrived* is now a relative tense form receiving a 'not-yet-factual at the binding time' interpretation but no factual interpretation. (Unlike English, Germanic languages like Dutch or German use the conditional tense to express this not-yet-factual interpretation. In archaic English, *until his wife should arrive* could be used similarly instead of *until his wife arrived*. The following is an authentic example from the Bible:

> His lord was angry, and delivered him to the tormentors, until he *should pay* all that was due to him.

8.28.2 What we learn from the impossibility of using *would arrive* in the second example [*John decided to wait until his wife arrived*] is that the situation time of an *until*-clause cannot be bound indirectly (by means of the use of the conditional tense) by the situation time which also binds the situation time of the head clause of the *until*-clause: the situation time of the arrival cannot be represented as T-posterior to the situation time of *decided*. The only possibility is for the situation time of the *until*-clause to be bound directly by the orientation time which is implicit in the meaning of *until* (and which is lexicalized as *the time* in the paraphrase 'until the time that'). Since the relation in question is T-simultaneity – 'until the time that his wife arrived' means 'until the time of his wife's arrival' – a relative past tense form must be used for this. (Remember that the relative past tense is the only tense that can be used to express T-simultaneity with an orientation time in a past domain.) That the past tense in question cannot be an absolute past tense is furthermore clear from the fact that an absolute preterite can only express one T-relation, viz. T-anteriority to t_0,[19] and from the fact that the orientation time that is implicit in *until*, as well as the situation time that is represented as T-simultaneous with it, can actually be W-posterior to t_0:

> Yesterday evening John decided he would wait in the hotel until his wife *arrived* today. [She has not arrived yet, but she will in a couple of hours.]

8.28.3 It is worth noting that the principle prohibiting the use of *would arrive* in *John decided he would wait until his wife {arrived / *would arrive}* also underlies the obligatory use of the present tense (as 'pseudo-absolute' tense expressing T-simultaneity – see 9.17) in the post-present counterparts of these examples and in similar sentences with a *before*-clause:

> John has decided he will wait until his wife {*arrives* / **will arrive*}.
>
> John will wait until his wife {*arrives* / **will arrive*}.
>
> John will leave before Mary {*arrives* / **will arrive*}.

The present tense is used because *before* / *until* mean 'before / until the time that' and the tense of the time clauses has to express T-simultaneity with this implicit orientation time. Using the absolute tense form *will arrive* is not allowed: an adverbial *before* / *until*-clause cannot establish a post-present domain of its own. There is a clear parallelism between the ungrammaticality of *will arrive* here and the ungrammaticality of *would arrive* in *John decided he would wait until his wife {arrived / *would arrive}*. In both cases the situation time of the time clause can only be T-related to the orientation time which is implicit in the meaning of the conjunction. Using *will arrive* or *would arrive* would T-relate it to another orientation time. (In the case of *will arrive* the situation time would be T-related directly to t_0.)

8.29 Argument 7: ambiguity or vagueness?

John said that Mary was ill allows a reading in which Mary was ill at the time of John's utterance and one in which Mary was ill at some time preceding John's utterance. Our claim that these two interpretations are a matter of ambiguity (tense structure) and not vagueness (W-interpretation) is confirmed by Lakoff's well-known test to distinguish between ambiguity and vagueness.

---

[19] As in all the arguments given here in support of the notion of relative past tense, we are disregarding special uses of past tense forms, as in *He was leaving the next day*, *If you did that tomorrow* …, *If only I was a girl!*, etc. By 'absolute past tense form' we always mean a tense form that locates a situation time in the past time-sphere and in doing so represents it as T-anterior to t_0.

8.29.1 The above distinction between T-simultaneity and W-simultaneity is a distinction between semantic meaning and W-interpretation. (The former is exclusively a question of semantics, whereas the latter is a question of pragmatics as well as semantics: the interpretation of a clause depends not only on the semantics of the construction used and the lexical meaning of the constituents but also on pragmatic factors, such as the (linguistic and extralinguistic) context in which the clause is used, our pragmatic knowledge of the world, and the generally accepted principles of conversation.) The distinction between T-simultaneity and W-simultaneity is therefore related to the distinction between (semantic) ambiguity and (pragmatic) vagueness. A sentence like *John said that Mary was ill* clearly allows two W-interpretations: (a) Mary was ill at the time of John's utterance, and (b) Mary was ill at some time preceding John's utterance. (Out of context, interpretation (a) is the normal one; reading (b) can be brought out, for example, by the addition of a time adverbial, as in [*John said that*] *Mary was ill* [*when the plane landed*].) Now, there are only two theoretical ways of explaining the fact that there can be two W-interpretations. The first is to say that on either reading *was* is an absolute past tense form, i. e. that like *said*, *was* expresses no more than that its situation time lies in the past time-sphere. The two readings of the sentence then follow from the fact that the two situation times may or may not be interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other: the intended reading will be clear from the context. This explanation is based on the notion of pragmatic vagueness, not semantic ambiguity. The second explanation relies on the claim that *was* is semantically ambiguous between an absolute past tense form and a relative past tense form. Because of the different semantics of these two tenses – they express different temporal structures – this explanation is based on the notion of semantic ambiguity, not pragmatic vagueness.

8.29.2 We can show that the semantic explanation is the correct one by using a well-known test for ambiguity. The rationale of this test is as follows. Take a sentence which yields two interpretations. Add a clause expressing similarity and involving a verbal pro-form, for example *and so* {*did* / *was*} *Bill*. If the two interpretations of the initial sentence are a matter of ambiguity, the clause with the pro-form will have to receive the same interpretation as the sentence to which it is added. If this is not the case, i. e. if the initial sentence and the added clause allow a different interpretation, there is vagueness but not ambiguity. For example:

John likes Bill more than Mary, and so does Peter.

The sentence *John likes Bill more than Mary* is syntactically (and therefore also semantically) ambiguous between two meanings:

John likes Bill more than he likes Mary.

John likes Bill more than Mary likes Bill.

As predicted, the added clause in *John likes Bill more than Mary, and so does Peter* must receive the same reading as the first clause. That is, of the following four readings, only the first two are possible interpretations of the sentence:

John likes Bill more than he likes Mary, and Peter also likes Bill more than he likes Mary.

John likes Bill more than Mary likes Bill, and Peter also likes Bill more than Mary likes Bill.

John likes Bill more than he likes Mary, and Peter also likes Bill more than Mary likes Bill.

John likes Bill more than Mary likes Bill, and Peter also likes Bill more than he likes Mary.

When applying this test to *John said that Mary was ill*, we find that the double interpretation of this sentence is due to semantic ambiguity:

John said Mary was ill, and so did Bill.

Because John and Bill may or may not have spoken at the same time, the following are the possible interpretations of this sentence:

John said [at t_1] that Mary was ill [at t_1], and Bill also said [at t_1] that Mary was ill [at t_1]. *(In this case John and Bill spoke at the same time.)*

John said [at t_1] that Mary was ill [at t_1], and Bill said [at t_2] that Mary was ill [at t_2]'.) *(In this case John and Bill spoke at different times.)*

John said Mary had been ill [at some earlier time], and Bill also said that Mary had been ill [at the earlier time John had in mind].

John said Mary had been ill [at some earlier time], and Bill also said that Mary had been ill [at some earlier time different from the earlier time which John had in mind]. *(Because and so did Bill expresses similarity, this reading is less likely than the previous one.)*

The sentence *John said Mary was ill, and so did Bill* does not yield the following readings:

*John said [at t_1] that Mary was ill [at t_1], and Bill also said [at t_1 or at t_2] that Mary had been ill [at some time earlier than either t_1 or t_2].

*John said [at t_1] that Mary had been ill [at some time earlier than t_1], and Bill also said [at t_1] that Mary was ill [at t_1].

*John said [at t_1] that Mary had been ill [at some time earlier than t_1], and Bill also said [at t_2] that Mary was ill [at t_2].

These sentences are actually ungrammatical because *also* requires that the two parts should have similar meanings, which they do not.

The above data accord with the view that the two readings of *Mary was ill* in *John said that Mary was ill* result from semantic ambiguity: the form *was* is ambiguous between two meanings. Readings resulting from vagueness are not subject to the restriction observed above. This is clear from the following:

> Bill was as ill as John was.

In this example (which also expresses similarity) both verb forms are absolute past tense forms. Because both forms thus relate their situation time directly to t_0, the temporal relation between the two situation times remains vague (unspecified): we do not know from *Bill was as ill as John was* whether Bill was ill while, before or after John was ill. It is therefore predictable that the test shows *was* to be vague rather than ambiguous between two temporal readings:

> Bill was as ill as John was, and so was Mary.

Nothing whatsoever is implied here concerning the relative times of the three illnesses. Whichever of the three interpretations (viz. Bill was ill {while / before / after} John was) we assign to the first part, all three interpretations (viz. 'Mary was ill {while / before / after} John was') remain possible in the second (= added) part.

8.29.3 The test for semantic ambiguity *vs* vagueness that we have used here is due to Lakoff (1970). It has been argued in the literature that there are sentence types in which this test is not reliable. However the kind of sentence to which we have applied the test is not one of the problematic cases. The fact that the test works well in cases of indirect speech is further illustrated by the following:

> John will tell the chairman that Mary *was* too ill to attend the meeting.

This sentence is semantically two-way ambiguous in that Mary's illness may be taken to be T-anterior either to t_0 or to the post-present time of John's speaking (i. e. the 'pseudo-t_0' – see 9.17.1). In the following sentences the reading to be selected is each time determined by the context:

> [Mary couldn't attend yesterday's meeting because she was ill. When I see him this afternoon] I will tell the chairman that Mary *was* too ill to attend the meeting. *(Mary's illness is anterior to t_0. This means that was is an absolute preterite.)*
>
> [If Mary becomes ill, she won't be able to attend Saturday's meeting. In that case I will speak to the chairman after the meeting.] I will tell him that Mary *was* too ill to attend the meeting. *(Mary's illness is anterior to the pseudo-t_0 but posterior to t_0. This means that was is a 'pseudo-absolute' tense form (see 9.17.1–3) which actually functions as a relative tense expressing T-anteriority to the central situation time of the post-present domain.)*

If we build a sentence similar to *John said Mary was ill, and so did Bill*, we get the following:

> John will tell the chairman that Mary *was* too ill to attend the meeting, and so will Bill.

Of the four theoretically possible interpretations, only the first two are acceptable:

> John will tell the chairman that Mary was too ill to attend the meeting [at a time anterior to t_0], and Bill will also tell the chairman that Mary was too ill to attend the meeting [at a time anterior to t_0].
>
> John will tell the chairman [at t_1] that Mary was too ill to attend the meeting [at a time anterior to t_1 but posterior to t_0], and Bill will also tell the chairman [at t_1 or at t_2] that Mary was too ill to attend the meeting [at a time anterior to t_1 or t_2 but posterior to t_0].
>
> *John will tell the chairman [at t_1] that Mary was too ill to attend the meeting [at a time anterior to t_0], and Bill will also tell the chairman [at t_1 or at t_2] that Mary was too ill to attend the meeting [at a time anterior to t_1 or t_2 but posterior to t_0].
>
> *John will tell the chairman [at t_1] that Mary was too ill to attend the meeting [at a time anterior to t_1 but posterior to t_0], and Bill will also tell the chairman that Mary was too ill to attend the meeting [at a time anterior to t_0].

Here too, the test works well. In this case it proves that there is a semantic difference between an absolute preterite (meaning 'the situation time is past relative to t_0') and a 'pseudo-absolute' preterite (meaning 'the situation time is past relative to a post-present pseudo-t_0').

8.30 Argument 8: choosing between the progressive and the nonprogressive form

In *John said that he was writing a book*, the use of the progressive form is compulsory if we want to express the idea that at the time of his utterance John was engaged in the (telic) situation of writing a book. In the same way as we cannot say **I write a book*, we cannot say **John said that he wrote a book* (on the relevant interpretation). This can only be explained if we posit the existence of a relative past tense meaning 'The situation time is T-simultaneous (= strictly coinciding) with an orientation time in a past domain'. Since the time of saying (which functions as T-binding time) is (nearly) punctual, we need to represent the much longer situation of writing a book as homogeneous (by using the progressive), so that the full situation can be conceived of as consisting of representative subparts, one of which has the same restricted duration and temporal location as John's utterance and can therefore function as the time of the predicated situation.

8.30.1 Barring special uses of the present tense (as in historical speech, summaries, etc., where there is a 'shift of temporal perspective' from the past to the present – see the discussion of the 'Special Present Time-sphere System' in 3.2–10), we cannot use a nonprogressive present tense form to locate a single durative dynamic situation at t_0:

I am writing a book.

*I write a book. *(grammatical only in special uses)*

This constraint follows naturally from the following principles:

(a) t_0 is linguistically conceived of as a point: it has no duration.
(b) The present tense represents the situation time as coinciding with t_0.
(c) It follows from (a) and (b) that the situation time of a present tense clause has to be punctual.
(d) If the full situation is durative, its situation time can only be conceived of as punctual if the situation is homogeneous, e. g. because it is a state (for example, a habit) or if it is represented as homogeneous by the use of the progressive form. This is not the case in **I write a book*, which is bounded and therefore nonhomogeneous – see 1.45. A nonhomogeneous sentence can only refer to the complete situation (i. e. the situation time is also the time of the full situation). Needless to say, it is pragmatically impossible for such a durative situation to coincide with a point.

Note that this explanation is based on temporal as well as aspectual and pragmatic factors. The notions progressive, homogeneous and durative are a question of (grammatical or ontological) aspect – see 1.20 and 1.33.1. The temporal factor in this explanation lies in the fact that it defines 'locating a situation time at t_0' as 'representing the situation time as T-simultaneous (= coinciding) with t_0'.

8.30.2 The restriction on **I write a book* also applies to *I wrote a book* in past represented speech, but it does not render the sentence ungrammatical because there is another interpretation of *I wrote a book* on which the sentence is acceptable. Compare:

John said that he *was writing* a book.

John said that he *wrote* a book.

The first sentence is fine because *was writing* represents its situation as homogeneous, which means that the situation time can be a proper subpart of the time of the full situation, so that the situation time can be T-simultaneous (coinciding) with the nearly punctual situation time of *said*. The sentence *John said that he wrote a book* does not satisfy these conditions: *wrote* represents the durative *that*-clause situation as bounded (= nonhomogeneous), so that *wrote* cannot be interpreted as expressing T-simultaneity: a durative nonhomogeneous situation cannot coincide with a nearly punctual time (*said*). However, *John said that he wrote a book* is not unacceptable because it allows another interpretation: *wrote* can be interpreted as creating a domain of its own, which is pragmatically interpreted as W-anterior to that established by *said*. (In other words, *wrote* is interpreted as equivalent to *had written*.)

The relevant part of this argument is that, in the same way as **I write a book* cannot locate its situation time at t_0, *he wrote a book* cannot locate its situation time at the situation time of *said* (at least in Standard British English). Since 'locate the situation time at time X' in both cases means 'represent the situation time as T-simultaneous (= coinciding) with time X', this comes down to saying that the situation time of a durative bounded (= nonhomogeneous) situation (which is a durative situation time, since if the situation is bounded, the situation time coincides with the time of the full situation – see 8.1.4–5) cannot be represented as T-simultaneous with an orientation time which is conceived of as punctual. (If one does not want to treat *said* as referring to a punctual situation, the restriction is that the situation time of a durative bounded situation cannot be represented as T-simultaneous with an orientation time which is conceived of as having a much shorter duration than the T-bound situation time). The reason why *John said that he was writing a book* is not ungrammatical is that the situation time of *was writing* can be a punctual portion of the full situation, because the progressive form represents the durative full situation as homogeneous.

The above data are perfectly in keeping with our claim that *was writing* in *John said that he was writing a book* is a relative past tense form, whose temporal semantics is 'The situation time is T-simultaneous (= coinciding) with an orientation time in a past domain'. As far as we can see, the data cannot be explained by any analysis which denies the existence of a relative past tense (with this semantics) in English.

8.31 Argument 9: T-simultaneity is a unidirectional relation

In a theory adopting the existence of a relative past tense meaning 'the situation time is T-simultaneous (= strictly coinciding) with a past orientation time', we can nicely explain why the subclause in a sentence like *John knew that I wrote a book* cannot be interpreted in terms of T-simultaneity (i. e. as using a relative tense). If *wrote* were a relative past tense form, the bounded situation of my writing a book would have to derive its temporal specification from the nonbounded situation time of John knowing it, which is pragmatically impossible.

The following is another example in which the *that*-clause cannot be interpreted in terms of simultaneity:

> John knew that I wrote a book.

This sentence too can only be interpreted in terms of sequence: my writing of the book was completed before John knew about it. This leads to (at least) the following conclusions. Firstly, *wrote* cannot be a relative past tense form. If it were, it would express T-simultaneity, so that a W-simultaneity interpretation would be possible (and in fact obligatory). Secondly, there must be a reason why *wrote* cannot be interpreted as expressing T-simultaneity. This time the explanation cannot be that it is impossible to represent a durative situation time as coinciding with a much shorter orientation time (*as in John said that he wrote a book*), for the situation referred to by *knew* is not bounded, which means that it can in principle have any duration and that it is homogeneous. Theoretically, a durative bounded situation can coincide with a durative homogeneous situation or with a durative subpart of it. So, what is it that rules out the simultaneity interpretation of *wrote* in *John knew that I wrote a book*?

The explanation we suggest is based on the observation (made in 8.17.2) that T-simultaneity is a unidirectional relation: the bound situation time is represented as coinciding with the binding situation time, not the other way round. This is illustrated by the following examples:

> At 3.17 a.m. John said that Bill was not in his room. *(On the default reading of this sentence, the time of the predicated situation (= the situation time) of the* that*-clause is taken to coincide with 3.17 p.m. This is because this situation time derives its temporal specification from the T-simultaneity relation (expressed by* was*) with the situation time of the head clause, which coincides with the punctual Adv-time indicated by* at 3.17 a.m*. The sentence does not say anything about whether or not Bill was also absent from his room at any other time, though it is pragmatically unlikely that the absence was confined to just a point in time.)*
>
> John said that Bill was not in his room at 3.17 a.m. *(The intended reading is that in which* at 3.17 a.m. *specifies the time of Bill's not being in his room rather than the time of John's reporting this. The precise temporal location of the situation time of the* that*-clause is indicated by* at 3.17 a.m*. If T-simultaneity meant that the T-binding situation time derived its temporal specification from the coincidence relation with the T-bound situation time, this sentence should be acceptable on the reading 'At 3.17 a.m. John said that Bill was not in his room (at that time)'. Actually, if* at 3.17 a.m. *specifies the time of Bill's being in his room, the sentence can only mean 'At some time later than 3.17 a.m. John said that Bill was not in his room at 3.17 a.m.')*

The claim that the T-simultaneity relation expressed by a relative tense is unidirectional leads to the following conclusions. First, in *John knew that I wrote a book*, the T-binding situation time (*knew*) cannot derive its temporal specification from the T-bound situation time (*wrote*). Secondly, *wrote* cannot derive its temporal specification from a T-simultaneity relation with *knew*, because it is obvious that a bounded situation (*wrote a book*) cannot derive its temporal specification from a nonbounded one. For lack of specification of boundaries, the situation of knowing something can in principle go on indefinitely. This renders it impossible to represent a bounded situation time as temporally coinciding with it, i. e. to use the relative past tense.[20]

In sum, our theory nicely accounts for the fact that the *that*-clause of *John knew that I wrote a book* cannot be interpreted in terms of simultaneity. The notion of past relative tense plays a crucial part in this explanation. The fact that *I wrote a book* is bounded also plays a part, but it is unable to explain the obligatory interpretation of *wrote* by itself (as might be claimed by supporters of the idea that the past tense form has a single core meaning, namely 'anteriority to t_0'). The above explanation not only refers to boundedness but also to the idea of temporally representing a situation time as coinciding (= T-simultaneous) with the binding orientation time. The latter element has nothing to do with boundedness but has everything to do with the definition of a relative tense as expressing T-simultaneity.

8.32 Argument 10: the Dutch test

English and Dutch are cognate languages. In Dutch, the absolute and the relative past tenses are clearly distinct, since only an absolute preterite form can be replaced by the present perfect. Thus, to use an English gloss, we find Dutch sentences like *Yesterday he {admitted / has admitted} that his father {was / *has been} dead*. This difference in substitutability – the absolute past tense in the head clause can be replaced by the present perfect, while this substitutability does not exist for the relative past tense in the subclause – shows that Dutch has two past tenses, an absolute one and a relative one. Given the fact that Dutch and English are cognate languages, this suggests that it is quite possible that in English, too, there are two distinct past tenses.

---

[20] Note that the reverse mechanism is possible: if the binding situation time is bounded and the bound situation time is not, the relation of coincidence imposes temporal boundaries on the bound situation time. For example:

(i) He repeated three times that John was in the kitchen.

The head clause is bounded here by the presence of *three times*. (Specification of the number of times that a situation is repeated induces a bounded-repetitive reading.) The clause *John was in the kitchen* does not by itself represent its situation as bounded. However, as explained in 8.17, the relation of coincidence expressed by the relative preterite *was* entails that the situation time of the *that*-clause is just that part of the full situation (possibly all of it) that is strictly simultaneous with the situation time of the head clause. In other words, (i) makes a statement only about that part of the *that*-clause situation that coincides with the situation time of the head clause. It does not tell us anything about the length of time actually taken up by the complete situation. This means that the boundedness of the head clause imposes boundaries, not on the time of the full situation referred to in the *that*-clause but on the latter's situation time. In other words, by imposing boundaries, the head clause picks out a subinterval from the time of the full situation, and it is this subinterval that is interpreted as being the situation time of the *that*-clause.

Dutch is a Germanic language which is cognate to English, and whose tense system resembles that of English in many respects. One basic difference, however, is that unlike English, Dutch can use the present perfect to represent a situation as holding at a definite past time:

Ik *heb* Jan gisteren *gezien*.

('I *have seen* John yesterday')

Verleden jaar *is* het project *mislukt* doordat Jan niet *heeft willen* meewerken.

('Last year the project *has failed* because John *has refused* to co-operate')

However, a present perfect can replace a past tense form only when the latter is an absolute tense form[21]. Dutch does not normally allow the use of the present perfect as a relative tense expressing T-simultaneity. Compare:

Gisteren *gaf* hij *toe* dat zijn vader dood *was*.

('Yesterday he *admitted* that his father *was* dead')

Gisteren *heeft* hij *toegegeven* dat zijn vader dood *was*.

('Yesterday he *has admitted* that his father *was* dead')

*Gisteren *gaf* hij *toe* dat zijn vader dood *is geweest*. *(nonsensical because is geweest does not allow a simultaneity reading)*

('Yesterday he *admitted* that his father *has been* dead')

*Gisteren *heeft* hij *toegegeven* dat zijn vader dood *is geweest*. *(idem)*

('Yesterday he *has admitted* that his father *has been* dead')

It appears that of the English preterites only the absolute one can be rendered by a Dutch present perfect. This means that to refer to the past, Dutch can either use the absolute past tense or (under certain conditions) the present perfect. But to expand a past domain established by either of these tenses, only the past tense can be used. This leads to the conclusion that Dutch has both an absolute past tense and a relative one, only the former of which can alternate with the present perfect. This proves the existence of the relative past tense in Dutch. Though Dutch of course is not English, this at least suggests that English too may make use of two different past tenses. Moreover, this provides us with a possible test to say if a given past tense form in English is an absolute or a relative form: if it can translate as a present perfect in Dutch, it seems safe to say that it is an absolute tense form. Otherwise it is probably a relative past tense form.

---

[21] This is the same situation as in Latin, where both the 'perfectum' (e.g. *amavi*) and the 'imperfectum' (e.g. *amabam*) can be used for absolute past time reference, but only the latter can also function as a relative past tense expressing simultaneity.

IV. Theoretical conclusions from these arguments

The above arguments not only confirm the existence of the relative past tense as a tense in its own right (i. e. semantically different from the absolute past tense) but also lead to some further theoretical conclusions. These will be briefly gone into in the next sections.

8.33 Theoretical conclusion 1

> The existence of two distinct meanings (an absolute and a relative temporal meaning) corresponding with a single form (the past tense) is not a case of a single past tense being ambiguous, but of two different tenses having the same formal expression (i. e. being homophonous).

We have adduced a number of arguments supporting the claim that the absolute and relative readings which can be given to past tense forms are not always pragmatically or contextually induced interpretations, but sometimes correspond with distinct semantic (temporal) structures. There are in principle two ways in which this conclusion can be accommodated. One possibility is to assume that English has two past tenses, viz. an absolute and a relative one, which happen to correspond to the same grammatical form (i. e. an absolute past tense form is homophonous with a relative one). (On this assumption, a past tense *form* can under certain conditions be ambiguous between two meanings (absolute *vs* relative), as in *John said that Bill was hungry.* This is in keeping with what was argued in Argument 7 in section 8.29.) The other is to assume that there is only one past tense in English, which is ambiguous, i. e. which can express two different temporal meanings. At first sight it might seem that it is not easy to choose between these two possibilities. We are faced with the same kind of problem as when a single phonological form (e. g. *gay*) corresponds with two distinct meanings: is this a case of two different words being homophonous or an instance of a single word being ambiguous?

However, the analysis assuming two homophonous past tenses is preferable to the analysis in terms of a single ambiguous past tense, because the latter runs counter to the principle (defended in 2.7) that each tense has a single invariant semantic (= tense-structural) meaning. Since a tense is an abstract concept, viz. the correlation of a temporal meaning with a grammatical form, it is unsound from a theoretical point of view to entertain the idea of one ambiguous past tense, especially if the meanings involved are so distinct that they may be compatible with contradictory readings. (As shown in 8.24, the absolute tense is not compatible with the W-reading 'situation time after t_0', whereas the relative tense is: *He said he would do it when he had time, which is tomorrow.*) A second point in favour of treating the relative past tense as a tense in its own right is that it has a temporal meaning that is quite similar to that of the past perfect and the conditional tense. The latter two express the temporal structures 'The situation time is T-anterior to an orientation time in a past domain' and 'The situation time is T-posterior to an orientation time in a past domain', respectively – see 9.1.1 and 9.5.1. Since the relative past expresses 'The situation time is T-simultaneous with an orientation time in a past domain', it has the same right to be treated as a tense of its own as the past perfect and the conditional tense. (By 'tense of its own' we mean 'tense with a semantic meaning not shared by any other tense'.) Moreover, given the fact that simultaneity is the unmarked one of the three relations that can be expressed by tenses (see section 8.34 below), it appears illogical to assume that there is a tense expressing T-anteriority to an orientation time in a past domain and a tense expressing T-posteriority to an orientation time in a past domain, but no tense expressing T-simultaneity to an orientation time in a past domain.

8.34 Theoretical conclusion 2

What is 'past' about the meaning of the past tense morpheme used in both absolute and relative preterite forms is the idea that the situation time belongs to a past domain.

The 'past' aspect of meaning conveyed by the past tense morpheme (which the two past tenses have in common) is neither 'The situation time is T-anterior to t_0' nor 'The binding orientation time is T-anterior to t_0'. It is 'The situation time belongs to a past domain'. This is what both past tenses have in common. It follows that the semantics of the relative past tense is not 'The situation time is T-simultaneous with an orientation time that is past relative to t_0' but rather 'The situation time is T-simultaneous with some orientation time in a past domain' (where 'past domain' is defined as 'domain whose central orientation time is past relative to t_0' – see 2.15.3). This accounts for the observation that the relative past tense is the only tense that can express T-simultaneity in a past domain, which means that it is used to this effect irrespective of the location of the binding orientation time in the domain, i. e. regardless of whether the binding orientation time is the central orientation time, or another orientation time T-anterior, T-simultaneous or T-posterior to the central orientation time, or another orientation time T-related to such a noncentral orientation time, etc.

The past aspect of meaning conveyed by the past tense morpheme of a relative past tense form implies no more than that the situation time (and hence also the orientation time binding it) belongs to a past domain. It does not imply anything concerning the actual W-location of either orientation time relative to t_0. As was shown in 8.24, both the binding orientation time and the T-simultaneous bound situation time can be interpreted as W-posterior to t_0, as in the past domain referred to by *He told me yesterday that at the meeting tomorrow he would say that he felt faint and needed to leave the room* [*and that would give him a chance to open the back door for me*].

8.35 Theoretical conclusion 3

The past tense morpheme in all the relative past time-sphere tenses (the relative past tense, the past perfect the conditional tense and the conditional perfect) conveys the meaning 'The binding orientation time forms part of a past domain'.

What has just been said about the relative past tense in fact also applies to the other relative past time-sphere tenses. It is generally accepted in the linguistic literature that the past perfect expresses T-anteriority to a 'past orientation time' and that the conditional tense expresses T-posteriority to a 'past orientation time'. In each case 'past orientation time' is assumed to mean 'orientation time that is past relative to t_0', and the past tense morpheme is assumed to express this notion.[22] In other words, the meaning of the past tense morpheme in past perfect and conditional tense forms is taken to be 'The binding orientation time is past relative to t_0'. In actual fact, however, the meaning of the past tense morpheme is 'The binding orientation time forms part of a past domain'. It follows from this that the bound situation time must also form part of the past domain in question. A T-bound situation time must by definition belong to the same domain as the T-binding situation time: T-binding (i. e. the use of a relative tense) is a domain-internal phenomenon. This is clear from the following example, where the conditional tense form *would make* and the past perfect form *had written* are used in spite of the fact that the context makes it clear that both situation times are to be interpreted as W-posterior to t_0.

> [When I saw him last week, he told us what he planned to do. When he was fifty-five he would retire. He would then have the operation that the doctors say he will

---

[22] The past tense morpheme forms part of the formal expression of any past time-sphere tense. Thus, any past perfect form involves the elements PAST, *have* and *-en* (with PAST + *have* lexicalizing as *had*). (PAST means 'past tense morpheme'.)

> quite soon need. When he was sixty, he would have his autobiography written by a journalist.] But he *would make* the world believe that he *had written* it himself when he was in hospital.

Similar examples can be adduced with the conditional tense in the *that*-clause:

> [Last week he told me that] at next week's meeting he *would inform* the board that he *would retire* at the end of the year.

Both clauses in the conditional tense refer to situations which, because of the time adverbials, are W-interpreted as lying in the post-present. However, the situation times of both tense forms form part of the past domain established by *told*. The situation time of *would retire* is T-bound by the situation time of *would inform*, which is itself T-bound by the situation time of *told*. The three situation times thus belong to the same past domain, but the situations referred to in the conditional tense are interpreted as W-posterior to t_0. This means that *would retire* does not express the meaning ‘The situation time is T-posterior to a past orientation time (= an orientation time anterior to t_0)’, as is generally assumed to be the meaning of the conditional tense. Rather, it expresses ‘The situation time is T-posterior to an orientation time in a past domain’. Because it expresses no more than this, the situation referred to by the clause in the conditional tense may be W-anterior, W-simultaneous or W-posterior to t_0 (as is also clear from *He said he would do it* {*yesterday* / *today* / *tomorrow*}).

8.36 Theoretical conclusion 4

There is a parallelism between the system of tenses with a past tense morpheme and the system of tenses with a present tense morpheme, in that all the tenses belonging to the former system express that ‘The situation time is located in a domain lying in the past time-sphere’ and all the tenses belonging to the latter system express that ‘The situation time is located in a domain lying in the present time-sphere domain’ and in that the tense expressing T-simultaneity is the unmarked one of all the tenses in either system.

We have reached the conclusion that the meaning expressed by the past tense morpheme of a relative past tense form is ‘The situation time and the orientation time binding it belong to a past domain’,[23] where a past domain is defined as ‘a domain whose central orientation time is past with respect to t_0’ – a definition which does not imply anything about the W-relation between t_0 and the T-bound situation times inside the domain. This definition of the temporal meaning of the past tense morpheme applies to any tense that shows past tense morphology. The difference between the relative past, the past perfect and the conditional tense resides in the other aspects of meaning they have besides this element of past meaning: they also express an (each time different) T-relation between their situation time and the binding orientation time in the past domain. In the case of the past perfect and the conditional tense, this aspect of meaning is overtly expressed by the lexical morphemes *have ... -en* and *will*, respectively. In the case of the relative past, it is not overtly expressed because T-simultaneity is the unmarked domain-internal relation. (T-simultaneity forms are unmarked in two respects: they are formally less complex than the verb forms expressing T-anteriority or T-posteriority, and they are semantically unmarked in that they are the forms that are chosen when the use of a marked form seems unnecessary, i. e. they represent the ‘default category’.)[24]

---

[23] At least, this is the meaning of the past tense morpheme in the basic use of the relative past time-sphere tenses. Apart from this, there are metaphorical (shift of perspective) uses. For example, as noted in 9.9.1, the past tense can express simultaneity with a pre-present binding orientation time which is treated as if it were a past one (e.g. *He has told me that he wasn't feeling well*).

The claim that the basic meaning of the past tense morpheme is ‘The situation time is located in a past domain’ applies to the absolute past tense as well as to the relative preterite. It follows that a single semantic (= tense-structural) meaning can be ascribed to the past tense morpheme: the past morpheme makes it clear that the situation time of the situation referred to belongs to a domain whose central orientation time is located in the past time-sphere. (Note that we are speaking about the past *morpheme*, not about the past *tense*. The forms *walked*, *had walked*, *would walk* and *would have walked* all involve the past morpheme.)

The meaning of present tense morphology can be similarly defined as ‘The situation time lies in a present time-sphere domain’. That is, whenever a form involving the present morpheme is used, the situation time belongs to a domain that is established in the present time-sphere.[25] It follows that the forms of the various tenses can receive a perfectly compositional analysis along the following lines. (PAST and PRESENT stand for past and present morphology. PAST expresses that the situation time belongs to a domain whose central orientation time is past relative to t_0. PRESENT means that the situation time belongs to a domain whose central orientation time lies in the pre-present, present or post-present time-zone of the present time-sphere.)

---

[24] An illustration of the latter use is the use of the italicized tense forms in the following examples:

(i) If Bill *received* a letter, he wrote a reply the very same day.

(ii) If Bill *goes out*, he will put out the lights.

In examples like these the *if*-clause expresses ‘sloppy simultaneity’ (see 13.11), i. e. it uses a T-simultaneity form (viz. a relative past form – see 8.12) in spite of the fact that its situation is actually W-anterior or W-posterior to the head clause situation.

[25] The reverse is not necessarily true: a present time-sphere domain can sometimes contain a situation time that is referred to by a tense form with past morphology. Consider, for example, *worked* in *He has always said that he worked in a factory* or in [*If you employ me now and fire me next week*] *I’ll at least be able to say that I worked for you* [*when I was nineteen*]. These (different) uses of the past tense in present time-sphere domains are explained in 9.9 and 9.18, respectively.

(a) Past time-sphere tenses
    Absolute past tense: verb stem + PAST
    Relative tenses:
        Relative past tense: verb stem + PAST
        Past perfect: [*have* + PAST] + V-*en*
        Conditional tense: [*will* + PAST] + verb stem
        Conditional perfect: [*will* + PAST] + *have* V-*en*
(b) Present time-sphere tenses
    Present tense: verb stem + PRESENT
    Present perfect: [*have* + PRESENT] + V-*en*
    Future tense: [*will* + PRESENT] + verb stem
    Future perfect: [*will* + PRESENT] + *have* V-*en*

8.37 Theoretical conclusion 5

Although each tense has a single invariant temporal meaning, it is possible to encounter metaphorical extensions of this meaning (e. g. in the case of a shift of temporal perspective).

We have defended the claim that each tense should be assigned a single invariant temporal meaning. However, this does not rule out the possibility of a metaphorical extension of this meaning. Both absolute and relative tenses allow of some metaphorical uses (which, however, are restricted in number and well-defined). As far as absolute tenses are concerned, these are the uses which we refer to as ‘shifts of temporal perspective’. Some examples of this have already been referred to:

> Last week I’*m sitting* on that bench over there, watching the traffic, when suddenly two cars *collide* in front of me. *(historic present)*
>
> [Things this morning were going smoothly until I grabbed my coffee and went out to the porch to feed the miscellaneous farm cats and smoke (…).] So there I *am*, waking up slowly and I *hear* this scritchy-scritchy-scritchy sound next to the porch. (www) *(historic present)*

The colonel {*is leaving* / *leaves*} tomorrow. *(present tense with reference to post-present actualization, i. e. used as a 'futurish form' – see 2.9.1)*

The colonel went to bed early because he {*was leaving* / *left*} early the next day. *(past tense used to express posteriority, which is the past counterpart of the present tense as futurish form)*

I {*hear* / *am informed* / *understand*} that he is going to resign. *(present tense with reference to pre-present actualization)*

Other instances of a shift of temporal perspective will be discussed below. In order to take such metaphorical uses into account, it is not necessary to adapt the formulations of the meanings of past and present tense morphology given in 8.36 and repeated here:

PAST locates a situation time in a domain which lies in the past time-sphere

PRESENT locates a situation time in a domain which lies in the present time-sphere

The fact that a situation located (i. e. T-located) in the present time-sphere is sometimes interpreted (i. e. W-interpreted) as lying in the past (e. g. in the historic present) is irrelevant to this.

8.38 Theoretical conclusion 6

The meaning of the past tense morpheme allows for the possibility that a conditional tense form is W-interpreted as referring to a situation that is posterior to t_0. This proves that reference to temporal domains (established by absolute tenses and expanded by relative ones) is central to any viable tense theory.

The above conclusion about the meaning of the past tense morpheme is important for two reasons. First, unlike an analysis of the conditional tense which is based on the claim that the past morpheme expresses that the situation time is T-anterior to t_0, it allows for the possibility that a situation referred to by a clause in the conditional tense may be W-posterior to t_0. Secondly, it proves that we cannot build an adequate theory of tense without reference to temporal domains. Since temporal domains are established and expanded by tenses, it follows that we cannot do without the distinction between absolute and relative tenses. The former are necessary to establish domains (by relating their situation time directly to t_0), while the latter are necessary to express T-relations in these domains.

8.39 Theoretical conclusion 7

If there are two homophonous past tenses, they should differ in their distribution – something which we will show to be true in chapter 9.

The distinction between two homophonous past tenses naturally raises the question of their distribution. In section 8.19 it was argued that the relative past tense is not used in syntactically independent clauses. However, the picture is not so clear as regards subclauses. There are some types that use the absolute past tense, some that use the relative past tense, and some other types that can use either of them. We will go into this in various sections of chapter 9.

V. The principle of unmarked temporal interpretation

8.40 Introduction

When there is a shift of domain within the same absolute zone (as in *She felt bored. It was raining and everybody else was sleeping*), the tense forms themselves do not express the temporal relation between the domains – see 8.21.1. It follows that such a shift of domain is only pragmatically acceptable if the temporal order of the situations is either irrelevant or recoverable in some other way, e. g. from the use of time adverbials, from the order in which the situations are reported, from the linguistic context, from pragmatic knowledge (i. e. the extralinguistic context and our general knowledge of the world) or from the bounded or nonbounded aspectual character of the various clauses. It is the role of (non)boundedness that is discussed in the following subsections.

8.41 The 'Principle of Unmarked Temporal Interpretation'

8.41.1 The role of (non)boundedness is summarized in the following 'PRINCIPLE OF UNMARKED TEMPORAL INTERPRETATION':

> In a sequence of unembedded clauses where each clause establishes a domain of its own within the same absolute zone and where there is no adverbial, contextual or pragmatic indication of temporal order, the unmarked temporal W-interpretation is as follows:
>
> (a) when the situations are represented as bounded, they are interpreted as following each other in the order in which they are reported;
> (b) when the situations are nonbounded (i. e. not represented as bounded), they are interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other;
> (c) when one situation is represented as bounded and the other as nonbounded, the bounded situation is interpreted as temporally included in the nonbounded one.

Before we have a closer look at these claims, it is worth stressing the following point in order to rule out any misunderstanding. The Principle of Unmarked Temporal Interpretation (abbreviation: PUTI) holds only for sequences of clauses that satisfy the following two requirements: (a) each clause in the sequence establishes a domain of its own within one and the same absolute time-zone; (b) the temporal order of the situations is neither indicated by an adverbial nor recoverable from contextual information or from pragmatic knowledge. In order to ensure that we are dealing with domain-establishing clauses we will illustrate each claim not only with examples in the past tense but also with examples that refer to the post-present. (As we have seen, the difference between absolute and relative tense forms is not always clear when we refer to the past, since a preterite form can be either a relative or an absolute tense form. The difference is, however, clear when the reference is to the post-present, because the tense form used to express T-simultaneity in a post-present domain (viz. the present tense) is different from the tense form used to establish the domain (viz. the future tense) – see 10.1–2. This means that we can assume as working hypothesis that the past tense clauses create a new domain if the corresponding clauses referring to the post-present use the future tense.)

8.41.2 The Principle of Unmarked Temporal Interpretation involves the following claims:

(a) The unmarked interpretation of a sequence of bounded clauses (which each establish a domain of their own in the same absolute zone) is in terms of what we may call 'ICONIC SEQUENCING': the situations are interpreted as following each other in the order in which they are reported. For example:

> John *went* to the door and *knocked* three times. The door *opened* slowly.
>
> John *will go* to the door and (*will*) *knock* three times. The door *will open* slowly.

In sentences like these, the situations tend to be interpreted as following each other directly, unless such an interpretation is pragmatically impossible or unlikely.[26] This is the case in examples like

> He *moved* to London and *found* a job there as a teacher. He *courted* a girl called Mary and *married* her.
>
> Perhaps he *will move* to London and (*will*) *find* a job there as a teacher. And perhaps he *will court* a girl and (*will*) *marry* her.

In sentences like these, the situations need not follow each other directly. There may be long intervals of time between them.

The tendency to interpret a sequence of bounded clauses in terms of succession is just a tendency, not a strict rule. When the clauses have different subjects and there is no contextual or pragmatic reason for adopting the succession interpretation, any of the three temporal readings is in principle available. A sentence like *Bill studied chemistry and John studied mathematics* tells us nothing about the temporal order in which these two situations actualized.

We may wonder, then, why it is that a sequence of bounded clauses is sometimes interpreted in terms of succession, as in the first two examples below, and sometimes allows any temporal order interpretation, as in the last two examples:

---

[26] In other words, the fact that the immediate succession reading is favoured is due to a conversational implicature, which can be cancelled.

> The man *went* to the door, *opened* it and *shouted* something.
>
> The man *will go* to the door, (he *will*) *open* it and (he *will*) *shout* something.
>
> ["Did any of them marry?"] – "Yes, Bill *married* Tina, and John *married* some Italian girl."
>
> ["Will any of them marry?"] – "Yes, Bill *will marry* Tina, and John *will marry* some Italian girl."

There appear to be two factors that are conducive to a succession interpretation. The first is pragmatic knowledge. We know that going to the door must take place prior to opening it. The second is the kind of text or discourse that the sequence of L-bounded clauses is part of. If this is a story that progresses in time, then each bounded clause that is added will normally be interpreted as carrying the action forward. That is, each new situation will be interpreted as following the situation of the previous clause. The first two of the above examples appear to be part of such a story with a linear temporal structure. The answers in the last two examples are not, and therefore need not be interpreted in terms of succession.

(b) The second claim made in the Principle of Unmarked Temporal Interpretation presented in 8.41.1 is that in a sequence of (unembedded) L-nonbounded clauses the unmarked interpretation is for the situations to be interpreted as W-simultaneous.[27]

> John *stood* by the window. Mary *was* in the kitchen.
>
> The man *seemed* reliable. He *worked* in a bank.
>
> John *carried* the suitcase. Bill *pushed* the cart.
>
> He *enjoyed* and *admired* the scenery of the Lake District.
>
> John *will stand* by the window. Mary *will be* in the kitchen.
>
> In ten years' time the man *will seem* reliable. He *will work* in a bank.
>
> John *will carry* the suitcase. Bill *will push* the cart.
>
> [When he is older] he *will enjoy* and (*will*) *admire* the scenery of the Lake District.

In cases like these all the verb forms establish W-simultaneous domains.

As we have seen, L-nonbounded situations are represented as homogeneous, which means that there is no particular reference to an initial or terminal point. For this reason, nonbounded situations may in principle go on indefinitely. This explains why the two nonbounded situations referred to in each of the above examples are not normally interpreted as preceding or following each other. There is simply no reason why one of them should be interpreted as beginning only after, or as terminating before, the other situation. This is true even if the clauses form part of a story. Nonbounded clauses (not containing a time adverbial) do not normally carry the action forward. They have a 'BACKGROUNDING' rather than a 'FOREGROUNDING' function. (In a narrative text, the 'foreground' is the linguistic material which charts the progress of the narrative through time, while the 'background' consists of durative and descriptive material which serves to elaborate on the foreground.)

---

[27] Remember that we are dealing with unembedded domain-establishing clauses that do not contain an adverbial indicating the temporal order of the situations.

There is one exception to this rule. Nonbounded clauses do carry the action forward if they are interpreted inceptively (inchoatively) and therefore suggest that the situation in question did not obtain earlier. This is the case, for example, in the following, where the inceptive reading is induced by the presence of *suddenly*:

> [We were sitting in the dining-room.] Suddenly there *was* a loud noise in the street.

(c) The third claim made in the Principle of Unmarked Temporal Interpretation set out in 8.41.1 is that, when one of the two situations is L-bounded whereas the other is not, the unmarked interpretation is for the bounded situation to be included in the nonbounded one. (This is a kind of W-simultaneity relation.)

> Mary *was* in the drawing-room. Suddenly Bill *came in*.
>
> John *went* out of the room. He *was feeling* very tired.
>
> Mary *will be* in the drawing-room. Suddenly Bill *will come* in.
>
> John *will go* out of the room. He *will be feeling* very tired.

The reason why the nonbounded clauses are here interpreted as W-simultaneous with the bounded ones is again that they represent backgrounded information.

Here too, nonbounded clauses that are interpreted inceptively form an exception to the rule. In each of the following examples the nonbounded clause pushes the action forward because its situation is not interpreted as holding at the time of the situation referred to in the preceding clause:

> [There was a loud explosion.] Suddenly all kinds of things *were flying* through the air.
>
> [After a while the car left the main street and turned into a side street.] Shops, restaurants and beautiful houses *were gone* at once. [We only saw small grimy houses] and then suddenly we *were* outside the town.
>
> [This time her lover threw her out of his house.] There she *was*, in the middle of the narrow street, with a strange man staring at her curiously.
>
> [Bill asked where the children were.] Mabel *looked* anxiously at the playground.
>
> [The next thing I knew,] she *was taking* off her clothes. [I ran out of the room in panic.]

8.41.3 It should be stressed that the Principle of Unmarked Temporal Interpretation set out in 8.41.1 stipulates only what is the unmarked temporal W-interpretation of sequences of unembedded clauses. As noted before, the unmarked interpretation may easily be ruled out by pragmatic factors. This is clear from examples like the following:

> John *was* in the kitchen. Suddenly Bill *came in*.
>
> John *was* in the kitchen. Suddenly he *went out* into the yard.

In both cases we have a combination of an nonbounded clause and a bounded one. But whereas the first example yields the unmarked inclusion interpretation, the second can only be interpreted in terms of sequence. This is because of pragmatic considerations: the W-simultaneity interpretation is ruled out by the simple fact that John could not be in two different places at the same time. In the following sequences (in which both sentences are bounded) the second sentence is interpreted as referring to the same action as the first, so that there is an interpretation in terms of W-simultaneity rather than in terms of temporal progression:

> Yes, I *fired* the gun. I *shot* the old devil through the head. [It was legitimate self-defence. I had no choice.]
>
> We *threw* a party last night and most of our friends *got* drunk.

8.41.4 Up to now we have identified three possible types of temporal W-relation in sequences consisting of two unembedded domain-establishing clauses (A and B): (a) situation B follows situation A; (b) the two situations coincide; (c) situation B includes situation A, or vice versa. However, there are still other (marked) possibilities, in which the Principle of Unmarked Temporal Interpretation set out in 8.41.1 is not observed. (Remember that we have stressed that the principle is merely a tendency, based on implicatures, not a strict rule.)

(a) The situation of the second clause may sometimes be interpreted as W-anterior to that of the first clause, irrespective of the (non)bounded nature of the two clauses:

> My grandfather *died* at the age of 89. He *was* a very healthy man, who *had* a long walk every day. *(The first clause is L-bounded, whereas the second and third are L-nonbounded. Instead of the unmarked reading, in which the first situation is included in the second and third, we get the interpretation in which the situation of the second and third clauses are W-anterior to the situation referred to in the first clause.)*
>
> Yesterday afternoon my neighbour *was arrested*. He *stabbed* his wife in the back. *(The two L-bounded situations are not interpreted in terms of 'iconic sequencing'. The second is interpreted as W-anterior to the first.)*

Such a shift of domain (in the second clause) is only allowed if the corresponding unmarked interpretation is pragmatically impossible. For this reason it is relatively rare. To represent a situation as anterior to the situation of the previous clause we normally use a relative tense (as in *John could not take a taxi. He had gambled away all his money.*) or add a time adverbial signalling anteriority.

(b) In sequences consisting of more than two unembedded clauses, we may sometimes find a mixture of the three possibilities referred to in the Principle of Unmarked Temporal Interpretation set out in 8.41.1:

> We *made* a long journey through Italy. We *visited* Rome and Venice, and afterwards we *went* to Naples.
>
> We *will make* a long journey through Italy. We *will visit* Rome and Venice, and afterwards we *will go* to Naples.

In each of these examples the two clauses in the second sentence establish domains of their own (with *afterwards* indicating the temporal order between them), but the situations they refer to are interpreted as W-simultaneous with that of the very first sentence. This is what typically happens when a clause referring to a situation with a complex structure is followed by several clauses describing subsituations.

(c) In some sequences of more than two unembedded clauses the temporal order of the situations is open to interpretation (and is in fact irrelevant):

> [In that year several of John's relatives had an accident.] Betty *fell* from the stairs. Bill *drove* into a lorry, and aunt Mildred *got knocked over* by a motorcycle.
>
> [Next year several of John's relatives will have an accident.] Betty *will fall* from the stairs. Bill *will drive* into a lorry, and Aunt Mildred *will get knocked over* by a motorcycle.

Here the various domains established by the clauses following the introductory sentence are presented as an unordered set. This is also the case in examples like the following:

> ["What did you do this morning?"] – "Betty *did* the washing-up, I *fixed* the car, and John *planted* the tulips."
>
> ["What will you do this morning?"] – "Betty *will do* the washing-up, I *will fix* the car, and John *will plant* the tulips."

8.41.5 In 8.41.2–4 we have identified all the kinds of W-relations that are logically possible between situations that are not bound to each other by the tense forms, i. e. which are allowed by absolute tense forms. In order to pick out the possibility that is intended by the speaker, the hearer can often be guided by (a) his pragmatic knowledge of the world, (b) the information provided by temporal adverbs (if any), and (c) the nature of the text or discourse containing the sequence, which may or may not be a story with a linear temporal structure. In the absence of these factors the interpretation of the temporal order of the situations will be in accordance with the 'Principle of Unmarked Temporal Interpretation' presented in 8.41.1.

VI. Summary of chapter 8

8.42 Terminology

8.42.1 We started out this chapter with a review of some terms and concepts that had already been introduced in previous chapters, especially in chapter 2: **time of the full situation** *vs* **situation time** (= **time of the predicated situation**), only the latter of which is located in time by the tense form used; **homogeneous** (= **L-nonbounded**) situations (for which every subpart is representative of the whole situation) *vs* **nonhomogeneous** (= **L-bounded**) situations (for which the situation as a whole is different from any subpart of it); several types of **orientation time**, which is a time (possibly a **situation time**) with respect to which another orientation time (usually a situation time) is represented by a tense form as either **T-simultaneous** (coinciding), **T-anterior** or **T-posterior**; similar temporal relations not expressed by tense forms (referred to as **W-relations**); the use of **absolute tenses** to locate a situation time in any of the four **absolute zones** (i. e. portions of the time line defined relative to t_0) – either in the past zone (coinciding with the past **time-sphere**) or in any of the three present time-sphere zones (the pre-present, the present or the post-present zone); the use of **relative tenses** to relate a situation to (i. e. make it **temporally subordinated** to or **T-bound** by) an orientation time other than t_0 and thereby **expand** a **temporal domain** set up by an absolute tense form.

8.42.2 The one orientation time that is not T-bound by any other in a domain is the **central orientation time**. The absolute zone in which it is located determines the overall temporal nature of the domain. Thus, in *(He said) he would do it tomorrow*, the situation time referred to by *would do* forms part of a past domain, established by the past tense form in *He said* (or, in the absence of such a past tense head clause, by an unspecified central orientation time located in the past zone). There is a certain correlation between temporal subordination and **syntactic subordination**: for one, the use of a relative tense to express T-simultaneity is excluded in a syntactically independent clause; for another, the use of an absolute tense is excluded in some types of subclauses.

If a situation time is represented as **T-simultaneous** with another situation time, the exact duration and temporal location of the T-bound situation time (= time of the predicated situation) is unidirectionally determined by the binding situation time. Thus, in *I noticed at once that Jim was ill*, the situation time expressed by [*Jim*] *was* [*ill*] strictly coincides with the time of me noticing it, which is merely a point (rather than a durative interval) in the past time-sphere. Of course, the full situation time of Jim being ill will be extralinguistically interpreted as much longer than, and as properly including, the time of me noticing it and may possibly even include t_0, which shows that **W-simultaneity** is a concept quite different from T-simultaneity.

Sometimes the speaker does not use a relative tense form (expanding an already established domain) but instead uses an absolute tense form, causing a **shift of domain**, either within the same time-zone or from one time-zone to another. When the shift of domain is within the same zone, the hearer may draw clues as to the temporal ordering of the situation times from such sources as the presence of temporal adverbials, the order of appearance of the clauses, the linguistic and extralinguistic context, his pragmatic knowledge of the world or, as will be summarized below in 8.45, the (non)boundedness of the situations referred to.

We speak of a **shift of temporal perspective** when a situation intended to be interpreted as located in one absolute zone is referred to by a tense form that is characteristic of another zone, as when the present tense is used with reference to the post-present zone (e. g. *They're leaving soon*), to the past zone (e. g. *Napoleon strikes back*) or to the pre-present zone (e. g. *I hear John has been promoted*).

8.43 Evidence for the existence of two past tenses

There are two tenses in English that make use of the same past tense morphology but which differ in meaning: the absolute past tense means 'The situation time is located in the past time-sphere', whereas the relative past tense means 'The situation time is T-simultaneous with an orientation time in a past domain (or in a past or pseudo-past subdomain)'. We have adduced ten arguments for this claim. These are briefly summarized here. Needless to say, the reader can only properly evaluate their validity by examining their full discussion in part IV of this chapter.

8.43.1 The view that the sentence *John felt unhappy when he was alone* contains both an absolute past tense form (*felt*) and a relative one (*was*) is corroborated by the fact that we clearly distinguish an absolute tense form (*will be*) and a form indicating T-simultaneity (*is*) in its post-present counterpart: *John will be unhappy when he {is / *will be} alone.*

8.43.2 In a sentence like *Mary told me on the phone last night that at the dinner party tomorrow she would suddenly say that she felt sick*, the past tense form *felt* refers to a situation which lies in the post-present. This kind of sentence demonstrates the inadequacy of the assumption that there is only one past tense in English, which is used to locate a situation time prior to t_0. By contrast, this use of the past tense is naturally explained in a theory which assumes the existence of a relative past tense (next to an absolute one), which expresses T-simultaneity in a past domain, irrespective of the W-location of the binding time relative to t_0.

8.43.3 Distinguishing between absolute and relative past tenses explains why some past tense forms are '**backshifted**' in **past represented speech** while others are not. Consider:

> "I was in Greece at the time." → Jane said she *had been* in Greece at the time. *(The original absolute past tense form was is 'backshifted'.)*
>
> "Millie complained that she wasn't feeling well." → John told us that Millie *had complained* that she {*wasn't* / #*hadn't been*} feeling well. *(The original relative past tense form wasn't feeling cannot be 'backshifted' without triggering an unwanted anteriority reading.)*

8.43.4 The claim that there are two types of past tense in English, an absolute and a relative one, is supported by the fact that an absolute past tense form is compatible with an unanchored punctual time-specifying adverbial (i. e. an adverbial of the type *at X o'clock*), whereas a relative past tense form is not:

> I was still thirsty at five o'clock. *(was is an absolute past tense form)*
>
> Jim whispered that he *was* still thirsty. *(On the unmarked interpretation, was is a relative past tense form expressing T-simultaneity.)*
>
> Jim whispered that he *was* still thirsty at five o'clock. *(Was cannot be interpreted as expressing T-simultaneity. It is an absolute tense form, locating its situation time at a time which is interpreted as preceding the time of the whispering.)*

8.43.5 In a sentence referring to a past habit, an absolute past tense form can be replaced by *used to* (which expresses T-anteriority to some orientation time), whereas a relative past tense form cannot:

> As a child I {was / used to be} afraid of spiders. *(Was is an absolute past tense form expressing T-anteriority to t_0.)*
>
> I saw with my own eyes that he {*was* / **used to be*} afraid of spiders. *(Was is a relative past tense form expressing T-simultaneity with the past situation time of saw.)*

8.43.6 The existence of a relative past tense (expressing T-simultaneity with an orientation time in a past domain) accounts for the obligatory use of the past tense (rather than the conditional tense) in the adverbial time clause of a sentence like the following:

> John decided that he would wait until his wife {*arrived* / **would arrive*}.

If we assume that the meaning of *until* includes an implicit orientation time – *until* means 'until the time that' – the use of the past tense is explained naturally: it represents the situation time of John's wife's arrival as T-simultaneous with the implicit orientation time.

8.43.7 *John said that Mary was ill* allows a reading in which Mary was ill at the time of John's utterance and one in which Mary was ill at some time preceding John's utterance. Our claim that these two interpretations are a matter of ambiguity (tense structure) and not vagueness (W-interpretation) is confirmed by Lakoff's well-known test to distinguish between ambiguity and vagueness.

8.43.8 In *John said that he was writing a book*, the use of the progressive form is compulsory if we want to express the idea that at the time of his utterance John was engaged in the (telic) situation of writing a book. In the same way as we cannot say **I write a book*, we cannot say **John said that he wrote a book* (on the relevant interpretation). This can only be explained if we posit the existence of a relative past tense meaning 'The situation time is T-simultaneous (= strictly coinciding) with an orientation time in a past domain'. Since the time of saying (which functions as T-binding time) is (nearly) punctual, we need to represent the much longer situation of writing a book as homogeneous (by using the progressive), so that the full situation can be conceived of as consisting of representative subparts, one of which has the same restricted duration and temporal location as John's utterance and can therefore function as the time of the predicated situation.

8.43.9 In a theory adopting the existence of a relative past tense meaning 'the situation time is T-simultaneous (= strictly coinciding) with a past orientation time', we can nicely explain why the subclause in a sentence like *John knew that I wrote a book* cannot be interpreted in terms of T-simultaneity (i. e. as using a relative tense). If *wrote* were a relative past tense form, the bounded situation of my writing a book would have to derive its temporal specification from the nonbounded situation time of John knowing it, which is pragmatically impossible.

8.43.10 English and Dutch are cognate languages. In Dutch, the absolute and the relative past tenses are clearly distinct, since only an absolute preterite form can be replaced by the present perfect. Thus, to use an English gloss, we find Dutch sentences like *Yesterday he {admitted / has admitted} that his father {was / *has been} dead*. This difference in substitutability – the absolute past tense in the head clause can be replaced by the present perfect, while this substitutability does not exist for the relative past tense in the subclause – shows that Dutch has two past tenses, an absolute one and a relative one. This suggests that it is quite possible that in English, too, there are two distinct past tenses.

8.44 Further theoretical conclusions

From the ten arguments summarized above, we have drawn seven theoretical conclusions, which are summarized here very succinctly. Firstly, the existence of two distinct meanings (an absolute and a relative temporal meaning) corresponding with a single form (the past tense) is not a case of one past tense being ambiguous but of two different tenses having the same formal expression (i. e. being homophonous). Secondly, what is 'past' about the meaning of the past tense morpheme used in both absolute and relative preterite forms is the idea that the situation time belongs to a past domain.Thirdly, the past tense morpheme in all the relative past time-sphere tenses (the relative past tense, the past perfect and the conditional tense and the conditional perfect) conveys the meaning 'The binding orientation time forms part of a past domain'. Fourthly, there is a parallelism between the system of tenses with a past tense morpheme and the system of tenses with a present tense morpheme, in that all the tenses belonging to the former system express that the situation time is located in a domain lying in the past time-sphere and all the tenses belonging to the latter system express that the situation time is located in a domain lying in the present time-sphere domain, and in that the tense expressing T-simultaneity is the unmarked one of all the tenses in either system. Fifthly, although each tense has a single invariant temporal meaning, it is possible to encounter metaphorical extensions of this meaning (e. g. in the case of a shift of temporal perspective). Sixthly, the meaning of the past tense morpheme allows for the possibility that a conditional tense form is W-interpreted as referring to a situation that is posterior to t_0. This proves that reference to temporal domains (established by absolute tenses and expanded by relative ones) is central to any viable tense theory. Seventhly, if there are two homophonous past tenses, they should differ in their distribution – something which we will show to be true in chapter 9.

8.45 The role of (non)boundedness in the unmarked temporal interpretation of situations

When there is a shift of domain within the same absolute zone, the temporal order of the situations (if relevant at all) may be recovered from a variety of clues. One clue that was discussed in some detail in part V is the bounded or nonbounded nature of the situations as represented by the various (unembedded) clausesusing an absolute tense form. This has led to the formulation of the **Principle of Unmarked Temporal Interpretation**, summarized as follows:

> In the absence of any adverbial, contextual or pragmatic indication of temporal order,
>
> (a) a sequence of bounded clauses will tend to be interpreted in terms of **iconic sequencing**: situations follow each other in the order in which they are reported (e. g. *John went to the door and knocked three times. The door opened slowly*);
>
> (b) a sequence of nonbounded clauses will tend to be interpreted as W-simultaneous to each other (e. g. *John stood by the window. Mary was in the kitchen*);

(c) a sequence of two clauses in which one clause is bounded whereas the other is not will tend to be interpreted in terms of inclusion: the bounded situation is included in the nonbounded one (e. g. *John went out of the room. He was feeling very tired*).

9. Temporal subordination in the various time-zones

I. Temporal subordination in a past time-sphere domain 444
A. The expression of T-anteriority in a past domain 444
9.1 The past perfect 444
9.2 Further remarks 446
B. The expression of T-simultaneity in a past domain 448
9.3 The relative past tense 448
9.4 Theoretical remark 449
C. The expression of T-posteriority in a past domain 450
9.5 The conditional tense 450
9.6 The past versions of futurish forms 451
D. The T-relation expressed by the conditional perfect tense 457
9.7 The conditional perfect tense 457

II. Temporal relations in a pre-present domain 459
9.8 The relevance of the W-interpretation of the present perfect clause 459
9.9 T-relations in a domain established by an indefinite perfect 460
9.10 T-relations on an up-to-now reading of the head clause 474
9.11 Shifting the domain after a continuative perfect 478
9.12 Temporal subordination after a continuative perfect 483
9.13 Pre-present domains and use of tenses: summary 484

III. Present domains 485
9.14 Head clauses referring to a nonrepetitive present situation 485
9.15 Head clauses referring to a present repetitive hypersituation 487

IV. T-relations in a post-present domain 488
A. Definition of 'post-present domain' 488
9.16 What counts as a post-present domain? 488
B. T-relations in a post-present domain 488
9.17 Expanding a post-present domain 488
C. Expressing T-anteriority in a post-present domain 491
9.18 The past tense expressing T-anteriority in a post-present domain 491
9.19 The present perfect expressing T-anteriority in a post-present domain 493
D. The expression of T-simultaneity in a post-present domain 494
9.20 Coincidence with the central orientation time of a post-present domain 494
9.21 T-simultaneity with an orientation time coinciding with the central orientation time 498
E. The expression of T-posteriority in a post-present domain 499
9.22 T-posteriority in a post-present domain 499
9.23 The theoretical status of pseudo-absolute tense forms 501
9.24 Subdomains and recursivity 502

9.25 Relating a situation time to the situation time of a future perfect 503
F. The explanatory force of this analysis of tenses in post-present domains 504
9.26 Observation 1 505
9.27 Observation 2 507

V. Direct and indirect binding 516
9.28 Definitions 516
9.29 The distribution of direct and indirect binding 519

VI. Summary 523
9.30 The expression of T-relations in a past domain 523
9.31 The expression of T-relations in a pre-present domain 524
9.32 The expression of T-relations to a present orientation time 525
9.33 The expression of T-relations in a post-present domain 526
9.34 Direct and indirect binding 527

Abstract

In chapters 3–7 we have seen how temporal domains can be established in each of the four absolute time-zones by the use of the preterite, the present perfect, the present tense and the future tense, respectively. In this chapter we investigate which tenses can or must be used to 'expand' such a temporal domain. For example, in *I've told you before that I had cancer*, the present perfect form *have told* establishes a pre-present domain, which is expanded by the use of the past tense *had*, which represents my having cancer as T-simultaneous with the pre-present time of my speaking to you.

In part I (= sections 9.1–7) we examine the expansion of temporal domains that are established by a preterite form. It is shown that the past perfect, the relative preterite and the conditional tense are used to express T-anteriority, T-simultaneity and T-posteriority, respectively, irrespective of whether the binding time is the central orientation time of the domain or a situation time that is itself temporally subordinated. An example like *He said he would beat up any customer who did not pay for the drinks they had ordered* illustrates this: *would beat up*, *didn't pay* and *had ordered* express T-posteriority, T-simultaneity and T-anteriority, respectively, to an each time different binding time in the past domain established by *said*.

Part II (= sections 9.8–13) deals with pre-present domains. It is shown that the only way to expand a pre-present domain involves a 'shift of temporal perspective': the pre-present central orientation time is treated as if it were a past time, so that the tenses used to T-relate a situation time to it are the same as are used in past domains. For example: *He has often told me that he would beat up any customer who did not pay for the drinks they had ordered*. However, it is shown that a pre-present domain can be expanded this way only if the central orientation time lies completely before t_0. When the present perfect receives a 'continuative' reading or a 'recency' interpretation, the subclause that is added normally uses an absolute tense, which shifts the domain: *You've known for some time that I have cancer.*

In part III (= sections 9.14–15) it is explained that a present domain cannot be expanded, because the central situation time is located at t_0. Any relation to this central time is a relation to t_0, i. e. an 'absolute relation', expressed by a verb form creating a new domain.

Part IV (= sections 9.16–25) explains that when a post-present domain is expanded, there is again a shift of temporal perspective: the central situation time is treated as if it were t_0, so that the tense forms used to T-relate a situation time to this 'pseudo-t_0' are 'pseudo-absolute' tense forms. Thus, in *If you kill him tonight you will regret for the rest of your life that you murdered him in front of his children*, the form *murdered* locates the killing anterior to the time of the regretting. The form *murdered* creates a 'pseudo-past' subdomain within the over-all post-present domain. This subdomain can be expanded as if it were a real past domain. Part IV also discusses the theoretical status of pseudo-absolute tense forms, the recursivity of the rules governing the tense sysem (which can establish domains as well as subdomains) and the analysis of temporal domains established by a future perfect. Part IV is closed off with the discussion of two particular test cases which nicely illustrate the explanatory force of the proposed analysis.

Finally, part V (= sections 9.28–29) is concerned with the difference between 'direct' and 'indirect binding'. In the former case a subclause is T-bound by its own head clause (as in *When he first visited the house, he had noticed the strange smell in the kitchen*); there is indirect binding if a subclause is not bound by the situation time of its own head clause, but by the situation time of the syntactically higher clause binding its head clause (as in *When he had first visited the house, he had noticed the strange smell in the kitchen.*)

I. Temporal subordination in a past time-sphere domain

Each kind of domain (whether past, pre-present, present or post-present) has its own system to express the (domain-internal) T-relations that form part of the process of temporal subordination. The purpose of Part I (= sections 9.1–7) is to investigate the system of relative tenses expanding a past time-sphere domain.

A. The expression of T-anteriority in a past domain

9.1 The past perfect

T-anteriority in a past domain is expressed by means of the past perfect, irrespective of whether the binding time is the central orientation time or another orientation time within that past domain.

In order to represent a situation time as T-anterior to another time in a past domain, the past perfect is used. This is the case irrespective of whether the binding time is the 'central orientation time' (see 8.15) of the past domain or another orientation time located in that domain.

> Maud left her husband after he had wrongly claimed that he had seen with his own eyes how Maud had made advances to a young man she had run across in the street. *(Only had claimed T-relates its situation time to the central orientation time, which is the situation time of left. Each of the other past perfect forms T-relates its situation time to the situation time of its head clause, which each time uses the past perfect.)*
>
> He thought I *had been living* there for some time. *(The central orientation time is the binding orientation time.)*
>
> She said that she would tell Mary that John had said that he had done it all by himself. *(The situation time of had done is bound by the situation time of had said, which is itself bound by the situation time of would tell, which is itself bound by the central orientation time, i. e. the situation time of said.)*

The tense structure of the last example is represented by Figure 9.1.

9.1.1 The past perfect can express the same types of T-anteriority as are expressed by the absolute past tense and the present perfect. Thus, when the past perfect represents the situation time as past with respect to the binding orientation time, it resembles the absolute past tense (which represents the situation time as past with respect to t_0).

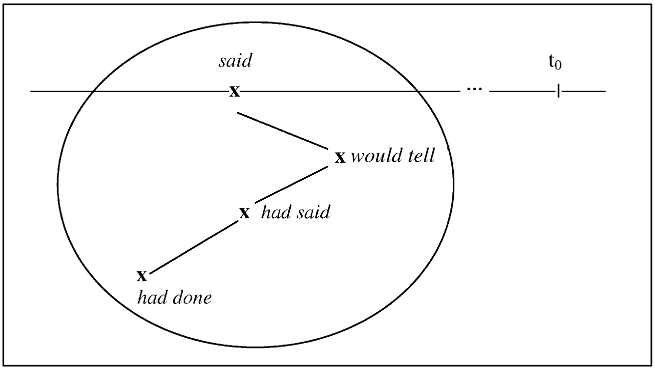

Figure 9.1. The tense structure of *She said that she would tell Mary that John had said that he had done it all by himself.*

> [Two weeks ago fire destroyed the cottage] that I *had sold* a couple of months before. *(Compare with: '[Fire has destroyed the cottage that] I* sold *a couple of months ago'.)*

When it locates its situation time in a period leading up to a past orientation time, the past perfect resembles the present perfect (which locates its situation time in a period leading up to t_0). Like a present perfect clause, the clause in the past perfect may then receive either the T-reading 'situation time completely before orientation time' (which leads to the 'indefinite' W-reading) or the T-reading 'situation time co-extensive with the period leading up to the orientation time' (which leads either to a continuative past perfect W-reading or to an 'up-to-then' W-reading, which is the past counterpart of an 'up-to-now W-reading – see 5.4).

> [We could easily have entered the temple because] someone *had* just *unlocked* the door. *(past perfect with indefinite interpretation implicating a resultant state)*
>
> [When I found the medal in the gutter,] it *had* apparently *been lying* there for some time. *(past perfect with continuative interpretation: compare with The medal has been lying here for some time.)*
>
> [When he came back, I asked him] what he had been doing. *(nonquantificational constitution reading)*
>
> [When I lit the cigarette I realized that] that was the tenth cigarette I *had smoked* that day. *(quantificational constitution reading)*

See chapter 5 for a discussion of the various T-readings ('before now' and 'co-extensive') and W-readings ('indefinite', 'up-to-now' and 'continuative') of clauses in the present perfect.

9.2 Further remarks

9.2.1 It should be remembered that the temporal relation which exists between two situations in the real world is not necessarily expressed by the verb forms of the clauses reporting these situations. (In other words, there may be W-relations that are not expressed as T-relations – see 2.16.1). This explains why sentences of the type *In May I spoke to the boy whose father had died in the February bomb attack* can alternate with sentences like *In May I spoke to the boy whose father died in the February bomb attack*. Both sentences receive the same temporal W-interpretation but they differ in the T-relations that they express. In the former case *had died* temporally subordinates the situation time of the subclause to the situation time of the head clause: *had died* is a relative tense form expressing T-anteriority in a past domain. However, there is no temporal subordination when the preterite is used: *died* is an absolute preterite establishing a new domain (i. e. 'shifting the domain' – see 8.21.1).

This kind of shift of domain is quite common in *after*-clauses and in clauses functioning as the head clause of a *before*-clause, because the temporal relation between the head clause situation and the subclause situation is sufficiently clear from the semantics of the temporal conjunction:

> He retired soon after he {*turned* / had turned} sixty.
>
> After the board {had met / *met*}, the company called a press conference.
>
> Some students {had left / *left*} before the lecture ended. *(There is a slight difference of interpretation between had left and left: only the former implicates the resultant state 'some students were no longer present' – see 5.37.)*
>
> The wounded pedestrian {had died / *died*} before the ambulance arrived. *(similar)*

It should be noted, however, that (in Standard Br. E.) there are two cases in which the past tense cannot alternate with a past perfect:

(a) The past tense cannot alternate with a past perfect which receives a 'co-extensive' (see 5.2) T-reading (i. e. the situation time leads up to the binding time but does not include it):

> She first came to visit me after I {*had been* / *was} living in Hurford for 15 years. *(continuative W-reading)*
>
> He divorced his wife after they {*had been* / *were} married for 30 years. *(idem)*
>
> I {*had been* / *was} living in Hurford for 15 years before she paid me a visit. *(idem)*

There is one exception: the past tense can alternate with the past perfect (on a co-extensive T-reading) in a head clause combining with a *before*-clause that is a 'NARRATIVE TIME CLAUSE', i. e. a time clause which does not specify an Adv-time but 'pushes forward the action'. (For more details on 'narrative' time clauses, see 13.1.2 and 14.11.4.)

I {*lived / had lived*} in Hurford for 15 years before I found out that it was built on the remains of a Roman fortress.

They {*had been / were*} married for 30 years before they suddenly decided to divorce.

(b) The past tense cannot alternate with the past perfect either in nonbounded (homogeneous) Adv-time-clauses when there is no adverbial, contextual or pragmatic indication that the clause should not be interpreted in terms of W-simultaneity:

He said that he *had been* in love with her (when he was young). *(The that-clause is interpreted in terms of anteriority.)*

He said that he *was* in love with her when he was young. *(The that-clause is still interpreted in terms of anteriority.)*

He said that he *was* in love with her. *(Out of context, the that-clause is not interpreted in terms of anteriority. Therefore, this sentence cannot substitute for He said that he had been in love with her.)*

9.2.2 Apart from the past perfect, there is another tense that would seem to express T-anteriority in a past domain, viz. the conditional perfect (*would have* V-*en*). However, the conditional perfect does more than just express T-anteriority. It also makes it clear that the binding orientation time to which the situation time is T-anterior is itself T-posterior to another orientation time in the past domain. The conditional perfect thus expresses a complex T-relation, which means that it does not belong to the set of 'pure' relative tenses (which express a single T-relation) but relates to another part of the system – see 9.7.

9.2.3 A sentence involving a *since*-clause that refers to a period leading up to some past orientation time normally makes use of the past perfect in both head clause and *since*-clause.

[He whispered that] he *had been waiting* for this moment ever since he *had seen* her walk past his window three years before.

[Herman looked at the bottle of pills.] He *had been thinking* of suicide more and more since he *had been living* in Bournemouth.

However, the past tense may be found in the head clause of a *since*-cleft, i. e. in a specificational sentence of the form '*it was* + measure phrase + *since*-clause' (see 5.21.1). In that case the sentence always forms part of a stretch of free indirect speech.

[The lioness looked at us with greedy eyes.] It *was* probably days since she had last had a decent meal. *(expresses the narrator's thoughts)*

It *was* a long time since I had stopped drinking alcohol.

In such examples the past perfect can also be used in the head clause, though it sometimes sounds rather cumbersome.

Another possible exception concerns the *since*-clause. If the situation it refers to does not continue up to the binding orientation time, the past perfect can be replaced by the past tense.

The tree had grown a lot since it {had been / *was*} planted.

John had been confused since he {had met / *met*} Jill.

John had been confused since he {had known / **knew*} Jill. *(The situation of John knowing Jill continues up to the binding orientation time.)*

[Reichel laughed, a bit flustered.] Gates had been sending her e-mail and love letters since he *met* her the previous April. (www)

[The following day I was back at work, which was the way] it had been since I *found out* that I had developed cancer. (www)

[I drove across the San Fernando Valley to pick her up. I was happy to do this because] I hadn't seen much of Jan since she *met* Beefheart at a party the month before. (www)

B. The expression of T-simultaneity in a past domain

9.3 The relative past tense

T-simultaneity in a past domain is expressed by means of the relative past tense, irrespective of whether the binding time is the central orientation time or another orientation time in that past domain.

9.3.1 In order to represent a situation time as T-simultaneous with an orientation time in a past domain we use the relative past tense (preterite), irrespective of whether the binding orientation time is the central orientation time or another orientation time in the domain. (In other words, the relative past is the only tense that can express T-simultaneity in a past domain or 'subdomain' – see 2.50.)

He said that he *was feeling* hungry.

He promised he would do it when he *had* time.

He said he had panicked when the milk *boiled over.*

The tense structure of the latter sentence is represented in Figure 9.2.

9.3.2 Since the only condition for the use of a relative past tense is that the binding orientation time must form part of a past domain, and since a past

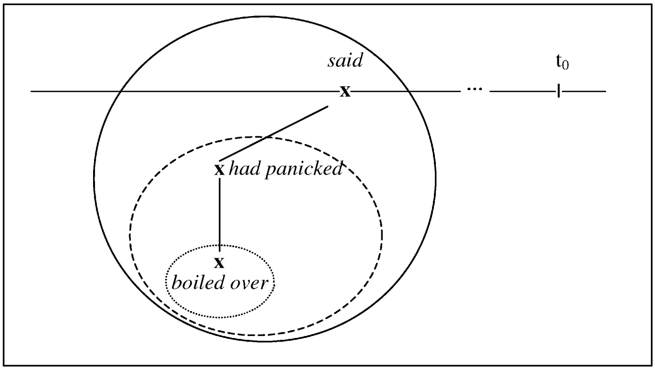

Figure 9.2. The tense structure of *He said he had panicked when the milk boiled over.*

domain has been defined as a domain whose central orientation time is located in the past time-sphere, the situation referred to by a relative tense form does not need to be W-anterior to t_0. For example, a relative past tense can represent its situation time as T-simultaneous with the time of a situation which is W-*interpreted* as following t_0. (In that case the time of the situation referred to in the relative past tense must also be W-interpreted as lying in the post-present. This follows from the fact that the relative past tense expresses T-simultaneity, i. e. strict coincidence – see 2.17.1.)

> Yesterday John announced that he would retire from business when he *was* sixty, [which is in two years' time.]

In this example, the situation time of *would retire*, as well as the situation time of *was sixty* (which is T-simultaneous with the former) must be understood as W-posterior to t_0 because of what is said in the final relative clause.

9.4 Theoretical remark

The grammaticality of *was* in the above example is very important from a theoretical point of view, because it furnishes definitive evidence that English has two past tenses – see also 8.23–32. The semantics of the absolute past tense is: 'The situation time is located in the past time-sphere, where it forms the central orientation time of a past domain; it lies completely before t_0 and is felt to be disconnected from the present'. The semantics of the relative past is: 'The situation time is represented as T-simultaneous with an orientation time belonging to a past domain or subdomain (or to a pseudo-past subdomain – see 9.18); its location relative to t_0 is not T-expressed'. Since the past tense form *was* in the example in 9.3.2 does not T-locate its situation time before t_0, but rather represents it as coinciding with the binding situation time of a situation which is represented (by *which is in two years' time*) as lying entirely in the post-present, *was* cannot possibly be analysed as an absolute past tense form.

C. The expression of T-posteriority in a past domain

T-posteriority in a past domain is expressed by means of the conditional tense (i. e. '{*would* / *should*} + present infinitive') or by means of the past tense of a 'futurish form', irrespective of whether the binding time is the central orientation time or another orientation time within that past domain. The choice of a form to express T-posteriority depends on the precise meaning which is to be expressed.

9.5 The conditional tense

9.5.1 The unmarked tense form to express T-posteriority to an orientation time that forms part of a past domain is the conditional tense, i. e. '*would* + infinitive'. (The term 'conditional' for the tense which is formally represented by '*would* + infinitive' is not ideal, since the use of *would* as a tense auxiliary, to express 'future-from-the-past', is quite separate from its use as a marker of conditional meaning in the head clause of a conditional sentence. However, the term is the one that has traditionally been used, and so we adopt it here for convenience. We will, however, make a point of referring to 'the conditional tense' rather than to 'the conditional' as a reminder that the function of '*would* + infinitive' as a tense form is to locate situation times in time rather than to convey conditional meaning.)

Note that it is immaterial to the use of the conditional tense whether the binding orientation time is the central orientation time of the domain or another orientation time in the past domain (i. e. the central orientation time of a subdomain inside the past domain).

> I thought you *would help* me.
>
> John said that Bill thought you *would help* me.
>
> He had promised that he *would* henceforth *behave* himself.
>
> She predicted that Bill *would* soon *tell* me when he *would make* his decision.
>
> She said that he had promised that he *would* soon *tell* her when he *would make* his decision.

The tense structure of the latter sentence is represented by Figure 9.3.

9.5.2 Because the conditional tense expresses no more than that the situation time is T-posterior to an orientation time in a past domain, it leaves vague

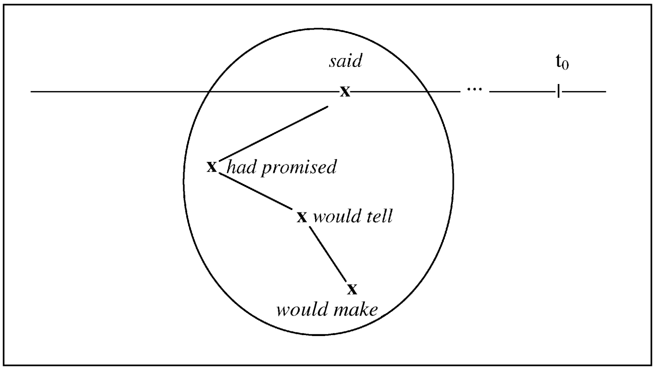

Figure 9.3. The tense structure of *She said that he had promised that he would soon tell her when he would make his decision.*

whether the situation time is W-anterior, W-simultaneous or W-posterior to t_0 – see also 9.6.9. Thus, we don't know from *Ruben said he would pray for her* whether Ruben has already prayed for her, is praying for her right now, or will perhaps do so in the future.

9.5.3 In the same way as *shall* is still possible as an alternative to *will* in the future tense (see section 7.5.1), *should* can replace *would* after a first person subject. It is usually considered as more formal than *would*.

I realized I {*would* / *should*} have to stay there for another three weeks.

9.6 The past versions of futurish forms

It was pointed out in section 2.9 that not only future tense forms but also some 'futurish' verb forms can be used to represent a situation time as T-posterior to t_0 (i. e. to establish a post-present domain). In the same way, T-posteriority to an orientation time in a past domain can be expressed not only by the conditional tense but also by the past tense of these futurish forms. Since each of these forms has its own connotation(s) (see 7.7–16), the main problem for a nonnative speaker who wants to express T-posteriority in a past domain is to choose the particular form that is most suitable to express the desired connotation. In other words, there are contexts in which it is not suitable to use the conditional tense and there are contexts in which it is not suitable to use the past tense of one or other futurish form. The following rules (or tendencies) can be pointed out.

9.6.1 In past represented speech (as defined in 8.25.1) we can use all the past tense versions of the future and futurish verb forms and auxiliaries that can T-locate a situation time in the post-present (with their own typical aspects of meaning – see 7.7–16).

> The librarian did not notice that the pile of books *was about to fall* over.
>
> Everybody could see that there *was going to be* a storm. *(The posterior situation was predictable at the past time of the head clause situation.)*
>
> You might have told us in advance you *were coming*. *(arranged future-from-the-past)*
>
> It was announced that the Prime Minister *was to visit* Australia in spring. *(The posterior situation depends on an official decision.)*
>
> He did not know what his father *would say*.
>
> I sensed that he *was on the point of doing* something stupid. *(immediate future)*
>
> Our coach told us their goalkeeper was injured and *would not be playing*. *('matter of course' meaning: given the circumstances, it was only natural that the goalkeeper would not be playing.)*
>
> I hoped the train I was waiting for {*wouldn't be* / *wasn't*} late again. *(Compare with 9.22.2 below.)*
>
> I realized I would have to hurry because my train *left* at 5.12 p.m.

9.6.2 If we delete the head clauses of these examples, the result is a stretch of 'FREE INDIRECT SPEECH', where someone's words or thoughts are reported without there being an introductory verb of saying or thinking. As far as the use of tenses is concerned, free indirect speech is just like indirect reported speech, except that informal English will sometimes use *was going to* where less informal English uses *would*:

> [The girl was trembling with fear.] The burglar {*wouldn't have* / *wasn't going to have*} any hesitation about killing her [if he spotted her in her hiding-place].
>
> [I was still running 6:20 miles, but I was struggling and breathing hard.] It *wasn't going to be* long before I started to crash. (www)

A condition for this use of *was/were going to* is that the speaker assumes someone's point of view (located at the past narrative 'now'), from which the situation referred to with the help of *was/were going to* is predictable. This explains why the use of *were going to* is odd in the first of the following examples, but not in the second:

> [The procession had now begun to climb the hill.] Soon they {*would reach* / ?*were going to reach*} the little church at the top.
>
> [The procession had now begun to climb the hill.] Soon they {*would reach* / *were going to reach*} the little church at the top [and discover that the famous statue was missing].

In the second example, the last clause is easily interpreted as representing the anticipation of an onlooker watching the procession, and this encourages an interpretation of *were going to reach* as the prediction made by that onlooker at the time that the procession begins to climb the hill. In the first example, there is no clear indication of such an extra, past, point of view, and the example is thus interpreted as involving only one 'viewer', namely the narrator located at speech time.[1] (Incidentally, the same restriction applies to epistemic modals.)

In free indirect speech, *was going to* can also have its straightforward meaning 'it was predictable that X would happen'. This use is similarly restricted. It needs not only a past point of view from which the situation is predictable but also a *perceiver* at that point of view. For example:

> The vase *was* always *going to get broken*, with so many people brushing past it.
>
> So many things get turned into exercise videos and classes it *wasn't going to be* long before it happened with ballet. (www)
>
> It *was* always *going to get* a bit rough as everybody was jostling for position, [but, luckily, I had the horse to get me through.] (www)

9.6.3 If the speaker wants to express that a situation which did not yet hold at the past orientation time was at that time intended, predictable or expected to happen later, he will normally use *was/were going to*. This parallels the use of the present tense of *be going to* for predictable post-present situations (see 7.10).

> I was looking for my racket because I {*was going to* / **would*} *play* tennis at ten o'clock.
>
> He told me confidentially that he {*was going to* / #*would*} *leave* the firm. *(Would is fine if it has volitional meaning or if there is an implicit condition, but not with exactly the same meaning as was going to.)*
>
> Anxiously, he looked at the clouds. There {*was going to be* / **would be*} a storm within minutes.

Was going to is certainly the normal form if the reference is to a past intention that was never fulfilled (see also 7.9.4).

> I {*was going to* / **would*} pay you a visit this afternoon, [but I have to attend an emergency meeting of the board.]
>
> You {*were going to* / **would*} give me your hairdresser's telephone number. *(used as a reminder)*

To T-represent the posterior situation as absolutely pre-determined by circumstances that already exist at the binding orientation time, we use a nonprogressive past tense form. This is the past counterpart of a nonprogressive present tense form which refers to post-present actualization (see 3.8) and is used in a similar way.

---

[1] The extra point of view could be the past point of view of the current narrator. For example, the second example could continue *I knew I had to do something fast* and could be nonfictional, but there would still be at least two points of view: the point of view of the person who is *now* the narrator but who then was someone located at the time of the procession, and the point of view of the person who is now the narrator, located at speech time.

[We would have to hurry.] The last train *left* at 11.46. *(Compare with* *We will have to hurry. The last train leaves at 11.46.)*

[There was no time to waste.] It was already two o'clock in the morning and the regiment *attacked* at dawn. [He must get this message to them within the next two hours.]

9.6.4 When an 'arranged-future-in-the-past' (or rather 'arranged-future-from-the past', as it is a future relative to the time of a past arrangement) concerns a personal arrangement, we normally use the progressive form of the past tense. This parallels the use of the present progressive for arranged post-present situations.

[Mary and Bill were stuffing a goose.] They *were having* guests that evening.

[There was no point in inviting the Robinsons, as] they *were leaving* the day before the party.

[The man was very nervous.] He *was getting* married that morning.

[I didn't call him up to tell him the news because] I *was going* to his office the next day.

This use of the progressive past is possible even if the context makes it clear that the action planned was not actually performed.

He *was leaving* the country in June, [but his accident has made this impossible.]

However, this idea of unreality is more frequently expressed by *was going to*. The latter is the only past futurish form that can implicate nonactualization by itself – see 3.8:

["Have you mended the fence yet?"] – "I *was going to* do it yesterday."

Here, the use of *was going to* implicates that the speaker did not mend the fence. If he did mend it, the speaker is expected to say *Yes, I have* or something like *I did yesterday.* This follows from the Gricean Maxim of Relation (relevance): other things being equal, the present is more relevant than the past. The speaker should not represent the mending of the fence as a past intention if he can represent it as something that has become a fact at t_0. Like any conversational implicature, this implicature of 'unfulfilled intention' can be cancelled by the context without creating semantic contradiction:

A: "Have you mended the fence yet?"

B: "I *was going to* do it yesterday."

A: "And did you do it yesterday?

B: "Yes."

Although speaker B is clearly being uncooperative in his first response, he cannot actually be said to contradict himself with his second response.

9.6.5 Parallel to the use of the present tense of *be to* for official arrangements regarding the future (see 7.15), the past tense of *be to* can be used to refer to a past official arrangement concerning the actualization of a posterior situation:

> [There were a lot of plainclothes policemen in the hotel] where the conference *was to take* place.
>
> [In the afternoon the Princess left for New Zealand,] where she *was to join* her husband.

9.6.6 Both *would* and *was to* can be used to represent a situation that is posterior to a past orientation time as a past fact (rather than as something that was expected at the past binding orientation time). That is, *was to* and *would* can express that a situation which did not actualize before or at the past binding orientation time did actualize later (but still in the past).

> [In that year they moved to Heathfield,] where they {*were to* / *would*} *spend* the most difficult years of their lives.
>
> Ten years later, Percy {*would* / *was to*} *be* the most popular actor in London.
>
> [Soon after that war ended,] another one {*would* / *was to*} *begin*.
>
> [He entered Parliament at the age of 31.] Five years later he {*would* / *was to*} *be* the youngest Prime Minister the country had ever had.

Neither form is common in this function in spoken English. Both are formal and typical of narrative style.[2] The following are authentic examples:

> [J. P., as he was fondly referred to by those who knew him well, first came to this University as an instructor in pomology.] Later he *was to be* professor of plant physiology and plant physiologist in the Agriculture Experiment Station. (www)
>
> [Lorena Rosalee Encinas was born on September 4, 1922, in Nogales, Arizona. (…)] Nearly two years later, she *would have* a little brother, named Louis Jesus, to whom she *would be* completely devoted. She *would protect* him all her life, even at the expense of her own freedom. (www)
>
> Later he *was to be* famous and honoured through the Caribbean; he *was to be* a hero of the people. [But when I first met him he was still a struggling masseur.] (www)
>
> [It was not Harriet Jacob's nature to give up without a fight.] Born into slavery, Harriet Jacobs *would thwart* repeated sexual advancements made by her master for years, then run away to the North. She *would* later *publish* an account of her anguished life in her autobiography, *Incidents in the Life of a Slave Girl*. (www)

9.6.7 There is a special use of *was to* and *was going to* in conditional *if*-clauses depending on a head clause in the past tense. The auxiliaries represent the possible posterior actualization of the *if*-clause situation as a goal envisaged at some past orientation time. (See 7.11 for the description of a parallel use of *is to* and *is going to*.)

---

[2] This use of *would* is more common in Am. E. texts than in Br. E. ones.

> I knew I had to work hard if I {was to / was going to} keep my job.

The conditional clause here refers to a goal envisaged at some past orientation time. (In formal registers, *was to* is more likely than *was going to* and in informal registers *was going to* is more likely than *was to*). The following are some attested examples:

> Tass news agency said Mr Aziz was told that if Iraq *was to* avoid the worst, it must now openly declare and show by its actions that it was pulling out and freeing hostages. (www)
>
> [After making the decision to run she realized] there was a lot of work to do if she *was going to succeed* at being elected the County Surveyor. (www)
>
> Mr Lee said that if China *was to* play a role in South-East Asia it would have to establish its business credibility. (www)
>
> [She had nothing but the clothes on her back,] if she *was going to make* it in New York, she was going to need every bit of Providence that came her way. (www)
>
> [Mam was frail and George, who was now her main support, moved his house from 40 Plasterton Gardens in Cardiff to a bungalow in King George V Drive, overlooking Heath Park, where he continues to live.] This was necessary if Mam *was to* continue the active life, which was the only kind she knew. [The stairs of the old house defeated her.] (www)
>
> [The only problem was that they didn't have the lightbulbs, the truck to take them there or any of the other logistics required to make it happen] – and they needed to leave in 48 hours if they *were going to get* there on time! (www)
>
> Sir Bert said on Tuesday that there would have to be a 'considerable improvement' if England *were to* win the European Championship in a year's time. (www)

9.6.8 From a tense-structural point of view, the past tense of futurish tense forms discussed in 9.6.1–6 resembles the conditional tense in that it expresses no temporal information other than that the bound situation time is T-posterior to a binding orientation time forming part of a past domain (i. e. a domain whose central orientation time is located in the past time-sphere – see 8.36). (The fact that *I was going to ring you* and *He was about to do something stupid* implicate nonactualization does not alter this: the speaker anyhow has the time of (potential) actualization in mind, and this time (= the situation time of the situation denoted by the infinitive phrase) is posterior to the binding orientation time in a past domain.) These forms expressing T-posteriority therefore do not express the actual W-relation between its situation time and t_0. This W-relation can therefore be indicated by a time-specifying adverbial:

> He told me (yesterday) that William {*would* / *was going to*} be there {later that day / now / tomorrow}.

D. The T-relation expressed by the conditional perfect tense

9.7 The conditional perfect tense

In its purely temporal (nonmodal) use, the conditional perfect tense expresses a COMPLEX T-RELATION in a past domain: it represents its situation time as anterior to an orientation time which is itself posterior to some orientation time in a past domain.

> Bill promised that he *would have finished* by the end of the day.

The finishing is interpreted as W-anterior to the end of the day, which is W-posterior to the time when Bill made his promise. The conditional tense combines anteriority and posteriority in one two-part T-relation: the finishing is directly related to the promising, but by means of a complex T-relation. The point where the T-relation 'bends' is the end of the day. See Figure 9.4.

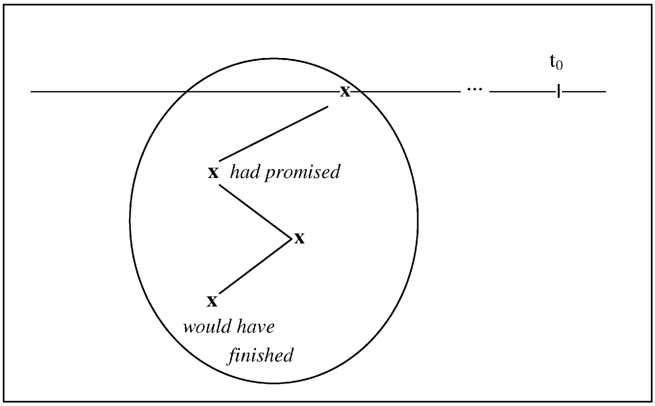

Figure 9.4. The tense structure of *Bill had promised that he would have finished (by the end of the day).*

The following are similar to the above example:

> [I knew that I should try and see the manager at 4 p.m. at the latest, because] at 5 p.m. he would have left. *(At 5 p.m. specifies the 'bending point' to which the manager's leaving is anterior.)*
>
> [I knew that the manager would no longer be available at 6 p.m. because] he *would have left* at 5 p.m. *(On the most plausible interpretation, at 5 p.m. specifies the situation time, i.e. the time of the manager's leaving.)*
>
> The manager *would have left* at 5 p.m. *(ambiguous: at 5 p.m. may specify either the situation time (= '5 p.m. would be the time when he left') or the orientation*

time to which the situation time is anterior (= 'At 5 p.m. the manager would already have left'); in the later case the bending point is not made explicit in the sentence but must be retrieved from the context.)

[You've hardly done anything since yesterday.] I thought you *would have finished* by now. (www)

II. Temporal relations in a pre-present domain

A pre-present domain can only be expanded if the pre-present situation can be reinterpreted as if it were a past situation. In subclauses this will generally prove to be impossible if the full situation of the head clause is interpreted as continuative and unusual if the situation time is interpreted as recent (i. e. close to t_0, as in the 'hot news' use of the indefinite perfect).

If a pre-present domain is expanded (by relative tenses), it is always expanded as if it were a past domain. This means that we use the past perfect to express T-anteriority, the relative past tense to express T-simultaneity and the conditional tense (or the past tense of a 'futurish form' like *be going to*) to express T-posteriority.

9.8 The relevance of the W-interpretation of the present perfect clause

9.8.1 A pre-present domain is a temporal domain that is established by a present perfect tense form which locates its situation time in the pre-present zone of the present time-sphere. This situation time functions as central orientation time of the pre-present domain that is established. The pre-present zone, which is one of the four absolute zones, is a period conceived of as starting before t_0 and leading up to t_0 (without including t_0). The period in question may be an Adv-time (i. e. a period specified by a time-specifying adverbial like *since then*) or an unspecified mentally conceived period. As we have seen in 5.2, the semantics of the present perfect is: 'The situation time is located in the pre-present'. However, the situation time can, according to context, be interpreted either as lying entirely before t_0 (in which case we get an 'indefinite perfect interpretation', e. g. *I have already met him*) or as filling the entire pre-present period (i. e. as leading up to t_0). In the former case (i. e. when the situation time lies entirely before t_0), the full situation is interpreted as also lying entirely before t_0. In the latter case (i. e. when the situation time is co-extensive with the pre-present) there are two possibilities as to the W-relation between the situation time and the time of the full situation: (a) the two can coincide, in which case they fill the entire pre-present but do not include t_0 (= the 'up-to-now reading', e. g. *Where have you been?*), or (b) the time of the full situation may be interpreted as longer than the situation time, so that it includes t_0 (= the 'continuative reading', e. g. *He's known that for years*).

There are thus three possibilities as to the W-location of the full situation relative to t_0. For convenience we transfer the names of these three readings of a sentence in the present perfect to the tense form itself and speak of the '**indefinite perfect**', the '**up-to-now perfect**' and the '**continuative perfect**'. However, it was stressed in 5.4.6 that these three labels actually refer to W-interpretations (of clauses) which are not due to the perfect tense alone.

In sum, we distinguish between three temporal W-interpretations of present perfect clauses, all of which fit in with the same tense structure, viz. 'The pre-present zone contains the situation time'. ('Contain' can mean either 'include' or 'coincide with' – see 2.16.2 and 2.21.1.) When the situation time is included in the pre-present, it does not lead up to t_0, and we get an indefinite interpretation. When the situation time is co-extensive with the pre-present, it does lead up to t_0 (without including it) and we get either an up-to-now reading or a continuative reading (depending on the nonverbal part of the clause or its context). Because of the fundamental difference between these temporal interpretations, the domains which they establish are not expanded in the same way. It is therefore necessary to treat the readings separately.

9.8.2 The following are the general conclusions we will arrive at below:

(a) If a pre-present domain is expanded (by relative tenses), it is always expanded as if it were a past domain. This means that we use the past perfect to express T-anteriority, the relative past tense to express T-simultaneity and the conditional tense (or the past tense of a 'futurish form' like *be going to*) to express T-posteriority.

(b) A pre-present domain can only be expanded if the pre-present situation can be re-interpreted as if it were a past situation. In subclauses this will generally prove to be impossible if the full situation of the head clause is interpreted as continuative and unusual if the situation time is interpreted as recent (i. e. close to t_0, as in the 'hot news' – see 5.14 – use of the indefinite perfect).

9.9 T-relations in a domain established by an indefinite perfect

A domain established by an indefinite perfect can be expanded if the situation referred to is not recent, i. e. if the 'bygone-ness' of the situation is more salient than its closeness to t_0. When an indefinite perfect domain is expanded, it is treated exactly like a past domain. Each situation time that is inserted into this 'pseudo-past' domain functions as the central orientation time of a 'pseudo-past subdomain'. For example: *Have you ever told anyone that you felt guilty when you had kissed Gordon?* (*Have told* establishes a pre-present domain, which is treated as a pseudo-past domain. *Felt* expresses

T-simultaneity with the situation time of *have told* and establishes a pseudo-past subdomain. *Had kissed* expresses T-anteriority in that subdomain.)

9.9.1 As noted in 4.7.3, an indefinite present perfect is normally only used to introduce a 'bygone' situation into the discourse (i. e. to establish a domain in the pre-present zone), not to go on speaking about it after this has happened. In order to do that we normally switch to the past tense. When this switch happens in a subclause, as in *I have occasionally thought that I* *was going* *mad*, we notice a shift of perspective: the pre-present domain is expanded as if it were a past domain. As a matter of fact, this is the only way in which a pre-present domain can be expanded: the tenses used to expand a pre-present domain are always the same as are used to express T-relations in a past domain. In other words, the central orientation time of an expanded pre-present domain is treated as if it were the central orientation time of a past domain. This is further illustrated by the following example:

> On one occasion I've even drawn the curtains across a window through which a journalist *was peeping*.

The present perfect in the head clause locates its situation time (which is taken to be the time of the full situation – see 5.4.1) at some indefinite time within the pre-present zone. (As is criterial of an indefinite perfect reading, the situation time is interpreted as lying completely before t_0.) The relative clause introduces another situation time into the pre-present domain, but in doing so creates a 'pseudo-past subdomain'. In other words, there is a 'shift of temporal perspective' (see 8.22): the pre-present domain is treated as if it were a past one. This means that the tense used to express T-simultaneity in the relative clause is the relative past tense. The tense structure of the above example can therefore be represented as in Figure 9.5. (The vertical dashed line in this figure represents the shift of temporal perspective; the dotted line indicates the PSEUDO-PAST SUBDOMAIN.)

9.9.2 It is very important to remember in any discussion about the expansion of pre-present domains that a pre-present domain established by a present perfect does not always have to be expanded and in fact often cannot be – see 9.9.6 below. The only point made in 9.9.1, therefore, is that *if* a pre-present domain is expanded, it is expanded as if it were a past domain.

9.9.3 The following are further examples illustrating the shift of temporal perspective which takes place when an indefinite pre-present domain is expanded. (As noted before, 'indefinite pre-present domain' is short for 'pre-

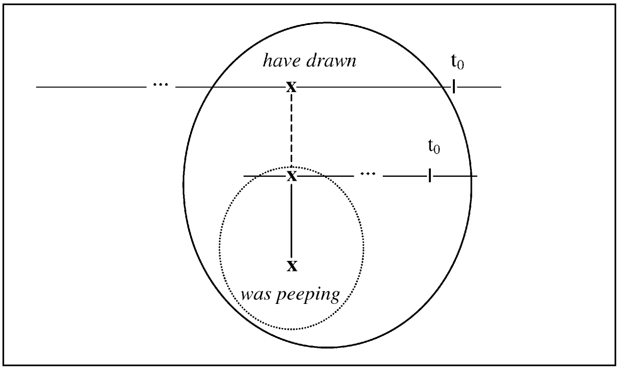

Figure 9.5. The tense structure of *On one occasion I've even drawn the curtains across a window through which a journalist was peeping.*

present temporal domain whose central orientation time is the situation time of a present perfect tense form in a clause receiving an indefinite interpretation'.)

Has it happened that your proposals *were rejected* even though you *knew* you *were* right? *(The three preterite forms express T-simultaneity.)*

Has he ever promised that he *would help* you? *(T-posteriority)*

Once or twice I have torn up a manuscript on which I *had been working* for months [because I was dissatisfied with it]. *(T-anteriority)*

In the past two years I've been told at least a dozen times that he *would* soon *have left* [but he is still here]. *(The conditional perfect expresses a 'complex relation' combining T-posteriority and T-anteriority.)*

When have you most felt that you *had lost* touch with God? (www) *(T-anteriority)*

In many of the examples both clauses refer to repetitive hypersituations consisting of a number of subsituations. In such cases, each subsituation of the hypersituation of the subclause is interpreted as W-simultaneous with one of the subsituations forming the hypersituation referred to in the head clause. Since the pre-present domain is expanded as if it were a past domain, the subclause uses the relative past tense to express this W-simultaneity as T-simultaneity:

His lawyer has visited him in prison as often as he *wanted* to.

I have sometimes rung him up when I *was feeling* lonely.

[Long interested in ragtime,] he has often felt frustrated when his limited technique *prevented* him from playing the music as he *heard* it in his inner ear. (www)

[Even though it is a malleable material,] I have often had it break while I *was bending* it for its intended use: reinforcement in concrete work. (www)

The following examples are similar, except for the fact that the tense of the subclause expresses T-anteriority or T-posteriority:

> But all in all, I have sometimes chosen to ride home when my taillight *had quit*, [equipped only with a large amber rear reflector and pedal reflectors.] (www)
>
> Pepe has often driven before when he *had forgotten* to take his medicine [and there has been no problem as long as the drive is short.] (www)
>
> Fiorina has never assumed that HP's size *would guarantee* its position in the market place. [She has pushed relentlessly for new and different products.] (www)
>
> Bank of America, which hasn't made a major acquisition in four years, has frequently pushed aside speculation that it *would* soon *buy* another company. (www)

9.9.4 A pre-present domain established by an indefinite perfect is not normally expanded as if it were a past domain if the pre-present situation receives a recency interpretation. Thus in the following sentence, which is used to express 'hot news', the pre-present domain cannot be expanded:

> [Listen to this!] John has just said that he {*was* afraid of mice / *had seen* a ghost / ??*would become* famous}.

The normal interpretation of *was* [*afraid*] is not as a relative past tense form expressing T-simultaneity to the head clause situation time, but as an absolute preterite referring to a situation which is interpreted as W-anterior to the head clause situation. *Had seen* is a relative tense, but it is unlikely to be interpreted as expressing T-anteriority to the situation time of *has said*. Rather, *had said* is naturally interpreted as expressing T-anteriority to an unspecified orientation time that is W-anterior to the situation time of *has said*. As to *would become*, this can hardly be interpreted as expressing T-posteriority to the head clause situation time or to an unspecified orientation time and so is not readily interpretable.

By contrast, in the following examples the head clause does not receive a recency interpretation, so that the pre-present domain is expanded (as if it were a past domain):

> Never before has John declared that he {*was* afraid of mice / *had seen* a ghost / *would become* famous}. *(The italicized forms are relative tense forms expressing T-simultaneity, T-anteriority and T-posteriority respectively.)*
>
> When have you most felt that you *had lost* touch with God? (www) *(T-anteriority)*
>
> When have you felt like your entire existence *was swallowed* by something you either *looked into* or *listened to*? (www) *(T-simultaneity)*

In sum, a pre-present domain established by an indefinite perfect can only be expanded (as if it were a past domain) if there is not a hot news reading or another kind of recency interpretation – see 9.9.8 below for more details. The reading that best allows it is the 'experiential' reading (see 5.13). This is clear from the above examples and from a comparison of the following sentences:

[Have you heard the news?] Senator Harris *has promised* that he {will / *would} help us! *(indefinite perfect; 'hot news' reading)*

Has he ever *promised* that he {will / would} help you? *(indefinite perfect; experiential reading)*

[I seem to remember that] she *has told* me once that she {$^{??}$has / had} quarrelled with her husband. *(indefinite perfect; experiential reading) (Compare with She has just told me that she {has / $^{?}$had} quarrelled with her husband, where the word just makes the use of the past perfect less likely.)*

9.9.5 When a pre-present domain is expanded, the speaker relates the situation time of the subclause to the pre-present situation time of the head clause. It follows that no T-relation is expressed between the bound situation time and t_0. Because of this, there are in principle several possible interpretations as far as the W-relation between the bound situation time and t_0 is concerned:

Once or twice I have told her what I *was looking* for. *(The bound situation time is interpreted as W-anterior to t_0.)*

Has he ever promised that he *would be* here now? *(The bound situation time is interpreted as W-simultaneous with t_0, while it is represented as T-posterior to the situation time of the head-clause.)*

He has never promised that he *would give* us everything now, [but he will provide for our daily needs and more than that too.] (www) *(idem)*

Has Beckham ever categorically stated that he *would transfer* next year? *(The bound situation time is interpreted as W-posterior to t_0.)*

Has the landlord ever promised that he *would have had* the roof repaired by Christmas day? *(The bound situation time is T-anterior to an orientation time (Christmas day) which is T-posterior to another orientation time (the time of promising) which is T-anterior to t_0. It follows that the W-relation between the bound situation time and t_0 can vary according to the temporal relation between t_0 and Christmas day: the bound situation time may be interpreted as W-anterior, W-simultaneous, or W-posterior to t_0.)*

[Then one day he found himself in a "home" where several "little people" were institutionalized. "There was nothing wrong with them," says Rappaport. "They weren't ill. They were there just because they were little. It had a chilling effect on me. I've never forgotten it."] Never in his 35 years *has* anyone ever *suggested* that Rappaport *would end* like the lost people of his (…) tale, [shunted away because of their dwarfism.] (www)

9.9.6 Instead of expanding the pre-present domain, the tense form of the subclause may under certain conditions also 'shift the domain', i. e. use an absolute tense to create a new temporal domain in one of the four absolute time-zones.

When the new temporal domain is also a pre-present one, the two pre-present domains are often interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other. In that case there is no difference of temporal interpretation between the use of the present perfect in the subclause and the use of the relative past tense (which expresses T-simultaneity):

> When have you most felt that you *have lost* touch with God? *(Have lost is interpreted as an indefinite perfect creating a pre-present domain which is interpreted as W-simultaneous with the pre-present domain established by have felt. The claim that the simultaneity relation between have felt and have lost is a W-simultaneity relation is demonstrated by the fact that it is not a relation of strict coincidence: the situation of feeling may be properly included in the state of having lost touch.)*
>
> ["Money is something to everybody." — "Is it?] When *have* you *found* that I *have taken* any account of it? *(= 'When have you found me to be taking any account of it?' Have taken is an absolute tense form, but its situation time is likely to be interpreted as W-simultaneous with that of have found.)*
>
> I've sometimes called him up when I {*felt* / *have felt*} lonely. *(felt = temporal subordination; have felt = shift of domain)*
>
> My pets have never failed me when I {*needed* / *have needed*} a friend. *(similar)*
>
> I have often wanted to ask him for advice, to have him by my side when I *have struggled*, or when I *needed* a hug. (www) *(The fact that the speaker chooses freely between the present perfect and the past tense indicates that he does not interpret them differently.)*

Of course, there are also cases in which, for pragmatic reasons, the pre-present domain established by the subclause is not interpreted as W-simultaneous with that established by the head clause:

> The doctor has already confirmed that Bill *has sprained* his ankle. *(The situation time of has sprained is interpreted as W-anterior to that of has confirmed.)*
>
> When *have* you *felt* that others *have taken* advantage of your good nature on the job? [What did you do about the situation?] (www) *(Have taken is an absolute tense form; its situation time is interpreted as W-anterior to that of have felt.)*

The interpretation is certainly not in terms of W-simultaneity if the subclause shifts the domain to another absolute time-zone:

> Have you ever considered the possibility that Kennedy *was murdered* by the FBI? *(absolute past tense, establishing a past domain which is interpreted as W-anterior to the pre-present domain established by have considered)*
>
> I have always been told that Keats *died* in Italy. *(idem)*
>
> When has Bush ever said that he *will use* nuclear pre-emption? (www) *(W-posteriority)*
>
> At no time has he ever denied that he *will be* a part of Damian's life. (www) *(idem)*
>
> No one has ever seriously considered that Secretariat's world record for the mile and a half distance of the Belmont Stakes *is* in danger, nor has anyone ever considered

that it *will be* in the future. (www) *(Is and will be establish a present domain and a post-present domain, respectively.)*

I haven't met anybody yet who {*was / is*} not interested in money. *(There is a clear difference of meaning between the two tense forms. If the speaker uses was, which expresses T-simultaneity in the domain established by have met, he refers to anybody he has ever met, whether they are still living or dead. By using is he limits the reference to those that are still living at* t_0, *i.e. to those who can still be interested in money at* t_0.*)*

Sheila has often told me that she {*loved / loves*} me. *(There is a meaning difference, because the situation time of loved may not include* t_0 *whereas the situation time of loves coincides with* t_0. *The use of loved therefore suggests that the speaker has no confidence at all that Sheila still does love him.)*

Because of the difference in meaning between the relative past tense (expressing T-simultaneity with the central orientation time of the pre-present domain) and the present tense (locating the situation time of the subclause at t_0), there are many cases in which only one of the two is quite suitable:

It *has* often *struck* me when I'*m being quizzed* (before people know my reasons) [that however bad it feels for me, it would be infinitely worse if I had a drink.] (www) (*When I was being quizzed would be possible but highly unlikely: the speaker is talking about something that forms part of his current life, not about individual past situations.)*

Until now, this has often meant that a student – to be bullied digitally – *needed* to be sitting at a computer connected to high-speed or a telephone line. (www) *(Needs is probably unacceptable here.)*

The credibility of women with disabilities *has* often *been questioned* when they *report* sexual assault, [particularly in the case of ...] *(Reported is not impossible, but it would provoke a strong shift of temporal focus: it would put more focus on the individual past occasions rather than just characterizing the sort of situation in which the women's credibility is questioned.)*

It *has* often *been said* that they *were* too similar and destined to become enemies. *(Are could not replace were without a drastic change of temporal interpretation, because were and are refer to time-zones that are incompatible with each other – THEN* versus *NOW.*)

9.9.7 In repetitive sentences like the following, the subclause uses an absolute present tense rather than a present perfect establishing a W-simultaneous domain:

The result has often been that, after escaping the dangers of the widest seas, and the most violent storms, they *wreck* their ship in harbour. (www)

The result has often been that health care providers *opt* for the cheapest patients, [those who are not sick at all or suffering only from minor ailments.] (www)

> The result has sometimes been that we *have* all the numbers, [but little indication of what those numbers are trying to tell us or why.] (www)
>
> [We sometimes include "feed the band" in our terms.] This has sometimes meant that we *get* a cheese roll each. [We've only twice been included in the champagne.] (www)

The last example seems to be a blending of (the more or less generic sentence) *This sometimes means that we get a cheese roll each* and *This has sometimes meant that we have got a cheese roll each*. (In 9.9.11 we will observe something similar in connection with sentences like *But whenever I've looked at the job board the job asks for experience*, which seems to be a blending of *Whenever I've looked at the job board the job has asked for experience* and *Whenever I look at the job board the job asks for experience*.) The speaker wants to talk at the same time about what he believes is habitually the case and what has habitually been the case and is thus evidence for his assertion about the habitual present. In other words, one clause locates its situation in the pre-present and the other locates its situation in the present, and the listener is expected to make sense of these temporally unconnected T-locations, using the repetitiveness of the first clause as a guide to make the double interpretation outlined above.

It should be noted that a present tense form, which locates its situation at t_0, is only possible as an alternative to a present perfect (which creates a pre-present domain that is interpreted as W-simultaneous with the pre-present domain of the head clause). In cases like the following, where a contrast is expressed between the present and the past, only the relative past tense (expressing T-simultaneity in the head clause domain) can be used:

> Our quick response to immediate needs and crises has sometimes meant that we *didn't have*, or make, the time to take advantage of the technologies that can help our work. [Today, we're using computers, the Internet, and the media both to get our message out and to organize our work internally.] (www)

9.9.8 As noted in 9.9.4, a shift of domain is much more likely than the use of a relative tense when the indefinite perfect receives a recency reading. Compare the following:

> [Approach strangers with a meaningful question rather than something as mundane as "How are you doing?".] Questions such as "Have you found what you *are looking* for?" will start your conversation off better. (www) *(The past tense form were looking could be used here, but not as a relative past tense expressing T-simultaneity in the pre-present domain established by have found. It would be interpreted as establishing a past domain of its own, interpreted as W-anterior to the pre-present domain, and would therefore imply that the addressee is no longer looking for whatever it was that he was looking for.)*
>
> [Of all the times that Bill has claimed to have sprained his ankle,] the doctor has only once confirmed that he {*had* / **has*} indeed *sprained* his ankle. *(no recency interpretation)*

> [Listen to this!] The teacher has just said that Bill {*has* / *#had*} *sprained* his ankle. *(Out of context, had sprained is unacceptable, because it cannot be interpreted as a T-anteriority form expanding the domain. This follows from the fact that has just said can only receive a recency (more specifically, 'hot news') interpretation. (However, had sprained is all right if the context provides a past orientation time which is W-anterior to the teacher's confirmation and to which the spraining of the ankle is represented as T-anterior.))*

Figure 9.6 represents the tense structure of the last example (with *has sprained*).

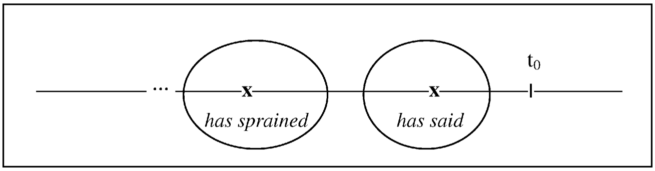

Figure 9.6. The tense structure of *The teacher has just said that Bill has sprained his ankle.*

When a subclause depending on a head clause with an indefinite present perfect form could in principle use a relative tense but uses an absolute tense form (which creates a new domain and thus effects a shift of domain), it means that the speaker wishes to represent a W-relation of some kind (temporal and/or logical) between the subclause situation and t_0. For example:

> The janitor has just said that he *has locked* the front door. *(The subclause uses an indefinite perfect; the W-relation between its situation and the present is of a logical rather than temporal nature: reporting the janitor's locking the front door in the present perfect implicates current relevance, more particularly resultativeness: the front door is locked now.)*
>
> I haven't met anybody yet who *is* not interested in money. *(As noted earlier in this section, if the speaker used was, he would be referring to anybody he has ever met, whether they are still living or dead. By using is he limits the reference to those that are still living, i. e. to those who can still be interested in money at t_0.)*
>
> There *have been* times in my life when I *felt* depressed, and then I *have found* that good friends *are* invaluable. *(This example illustrates both temporal subordination and domain shifting. The form have been establishes a pre-present domain and the preterite form felt expresses T-simultaneity within this domain. Then there is a shift to a new pre-present domain, established by have found, which, because of then, is interpreted as W-simultaneous with the domain established by have been. This domain is not further expanded, for are, which is interpreted generically, again shifts the domain, this time to the present zone.)*

It goes without saying that when the tense in the subclause shifts the domain (i. e. creates a temporal domain of its own), no T-relation is expressed between the situation time of the subclause and the situation time of the head clause: the situation time of the subclause is directly related to t_0. This is in keeping with the principle that only past time-sphere tenses can be used to express T-relations in a domain established by an indefinite present perfect.

9.9.9 When the head clause contains *just*, the situation referred to is automatically recent. Because of this, temporal subordination is less likely in the subclause. However, the influence of recency may conflict with factors promoting temporal subordination. For example, in represented speech the speaker may prefer to apply temporal subordination because he does not want to assume responsibility for what he reports, i. e. because he wants the subclause to be interpreted 'opaquely', i. e. from the point of view of the reporting speaker, rather than 'transparently', i. e. from his own point of view (see 8.24.3):

> "The army has just said they *would release* Daw Aung San Suu Kyi, [but we do not know when," he said, adding that he had no specific information about the release.] (www)
>
> Pyongyang, however, has just said it *would* not *be going back* to multilateral negotiations on its nuclear program, stating that it wants to boost its nuclear potential in response to a US "hostile" attitude. (www)

In the following example *would not do* could not be replaced by *will not do* because the 'it' in question has already been done at t_0.

> ["Therefore, this Board will not make a finding about the adequacy of nearby intersections *or other elements* related to the adequacy of public facilities." (Emphasis added.) Nevertheless,] it immediately did that which it has just said it *would* not *do*, [by bootstrapping specific traffic safety matters under the general provisions of the Code.] (www)

In the following example, *would lend* cannot be replaced with *will lend* because the context suggests that there may not be any lending in the post-present:

> [Not only do I feel like an unemployed wastrel (which I'm not really, my first shift at Sports Soccer is on Wednesday), but I also feel like a money-driven little bitch.] My dad (Jim) has just said he *would lend* me some money for rent [because he has offered a million times, but then after saying it was fine he said "but then at Christmas I sent you the money for a train ticket to come and see us and you didn't."] (www)

However, there are also examples in which the conditional tense form could easily be replaced by the future tense:

> President Mubarek of Egypt has just said he *would allow* opposition candidates to run in their upcoming election. (www)
>
> GM has just said it *would add* a 7.5-liter V12 to its powertrain lineup. (www)
>
> [In a less then clever vein, I left the hose connected to the faucet. Yes, yes, I know. There's a little warning on the flange that says "Remove hose during freezing

> weather or pipe may burst ...". I've learned my lesson and] the insurance company guy has just said they *would cover* everything, including a stay in a nice hotel. [Sadly, you will be paying for my stupidity, by ever so slightly increased rates.] (www)
>
> [The heat just got turned up a notch.] Marissa from The Hotrod Store has just said she *would be* there on Saturday to race so grudge matches. (www)
>
> Kodak has just said they *would be issuing* a new version in the fall. (www)

The use of the conditional tense with *just* is no doubt related to the fact that many (especially Am. E.) speakers consider *just* as possibly referring to a past time, witness the fact that they use 'X just *said* that ...' next to (or instead of) 'X *has* just *said* that ...'.

9.9.10 In 9.11 we will see that a pre-present domain established by a present perfect clause receiving a continuative interpretation cannot normally be expanded:

> Ever since I was a soldier I have known that I {*am* / **was*} reluctant to follow orders that I {*do* / **did*} not find sensible.

A similar restriction applies when the pre-present domain is established by an indefinite perfect which is interpreted inchoatively, so that the focus is on the continuative state resulting from it (see 5.26.2):

> I have been suspended from work while investigations into alleged misconduct *are taking* place. [What should I do?] (www) *(are taking cannot be replaced with were taking)*
>
> But in France, four men sent back from Cuba have been remanded in custody while they *are investigated* for possible links to terrorist organisations. (www) *(*were investigated)*

9.9.11 Up to now we have only considered examples in which the head clause establishes a pre-present domain and in which the subclause either expands this domain (as if it were a past domain) or shifts the domain. In this subsection we will discuss examples in which it is the other way round: the pre-present domain is established by the subclause. In these examples the subclause typically refers to a repetitive hypersituation. The head clause typically refers to a homogeneous background situation and shifts the domain by using the absolute past tense, the present perfect or the present tense:

> Everything I'*ve* ever *done was* wrong.
>
> Every time I'*ve met* him, he'*s been* so polite and a really nice person to talk to. (www)
>
> Every time we'*ve tried* [this restaurant] it'*s* either closed or the wait *is* too long. (www)

Let us have a closer look at these three possibilities of tense choice.

(a) The past tense in examples like *Everything I've ever done was wrong* is an absolute past tense creating a W-simultaneous domain. (This is in keeping with the fact that this past tense can be 'backshifted' in past represented speech: *He said that everything he'd ever done had been wrong* – see 8.25 for this 'indirect speech test'). The following further illustrate this possibility:

> Whenever I've been there, I *felt* like I was wandering through a friend's house looking at their art collection. (www) *(This resembles I've been there several times and each time I felt like I was wandering through a friend's house looking at their art collection, which itself resembles The president has had talks with the protesters. She told them that their cause was a just one in that the present perfect is used to introduce a situation and the past tense is used to give more information about it – see 8.25.3.)*
>
> Every time I've met him he *was* quite the gentleman. (www)
>
> Since then, whenever I've seen him, he *was* always the same loving, friendly person always giving that grin and a hug. (www)
>
> [I've never had a serious problem though, but] whenever I've been there, I *was* cool to them and they *were* cool to me. (www)
>
> Every time I've seen him he *was* alone.

In such examples the subclause establishing the pre-present domain is typically a clause referring to a repetitive hypersituation and functioning as (or like) a temporal clause. This clause always precedes the head clause. It is only because the pre-present domain is established first that the domain established by the past tense in the head clause can be interpreted as W-simultaneous with the pre-present domain.

(b) When the head clause (supporting the subclause which is in the present perfect and refers to a repetitive hypersituation) uses the present tense, it also receives a repetitive interpretation and therefore establishes a number of W-simultaneous present domains:

> But whenever I've looked at the job board the job *asks* for experience. (www) *(Has asked is also possible.)*

This sentence seems to be a blending of *Whenever I've looked at the job board the job has asked for experience* and *Whenever I look at the job board the job asks for experience*. (Not surprisingly) the speaker wants to talk at the same time about what he believes is habitually the case and what has habitually been the case and is thus evidence for his assertion about the habitual present. In other words, the head clause locates its situation in the present and the subclause locates its situation in the pre-present, and the listener is expected to make sense of these temporally unconnected T-locations, using the repetitive adverbial as a guide to make the double interpretation.

The following are similar:

And every time I've met him he *impresses* me more – [he is so unassuming and modest for one who has accomplished so much]. (www)

Whenever I've been really upset and crying, most of my cats *look* startled and at a loss, [because they're not really used to it]. (www)

[The food here is always fabulous,] everything I've ever tried *is* always superbly spiced and flavoured and sooo fresh! (www)

(c) When the head clause (supporting the subclause which is in the present perfect and refers to a repetitive hypersituation) uses the present perfect, it establishes a pre-present domain of its own and also receives a repetitive interpretation. In that case there are in principle two possible readings. The first is that the two pre-present domains are W-simultaneous with each other, in the sense that each subsituation constituting the repetitive hypersituation of the head clause is W-simultaneous with a subsituation constituting the repetitive hypersituation of the subclause):

Whenever I*'ve been* in trouble, Tim *has helped* me out.

Every time I*'ve asked* for a salary increase my boss *has threatened* to fire me.

Every time I*'ve met* him, he*'s been* so polite and a really nice person to talk to. (www)

The second possible reading is that the head clause domain is interpreted as W-anterior to the subclause domain. Consider:

Every time I*'ve met* him he*'s been* drunk.

Whenever I*'ve seen* John he*'s been* ill.

How many times *has* John *been* ill when you *have seen* him?

In these examples the two clauses establish pre-present domains which may be interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other. However, there is also another possible interpretation, in which each of the situation times of the subsituations making up the repetitive hypersituation referred to in the temporal subclause is treated as if it were t_0 and in which the situation times implied by the head clause lie in the 'pseudo-pre-present' periods leading up to these 'pseudo-t_0's'.[3] For example, *Whenever I've seen John he has been ill* can be interpreted as meaning 'Every time I have seen John he had been ill in the period leading up to my seeing him'. This interpretation can be brought out by the addition of *just* to the head clause: *Whenever I've seen John he has just been ill.*

---

[3] This is a case of shift of temporal perspective which we have not yet referred to.

In sum, it is possible for the repetitive time clause to use a present perfect implying a number of 'pseudo-pre-present' periods and for the repetitive head clause to represent the times of the subsituations referred to as holding within or throughout these pseudo-pre-present periods. This possibility is in principle available irrespective of the W-reading (i. e. indefinite, continuative or up-to-now) which the head clause in the present perfect receives. Thus, the example *Has John been ill when you have seen him?* can be altered in various ways which each bring out one of the three interpretations:

> Has John ever been ill for some time when you have seen him? *(On the most obvious interpretation of the head clause, the sentence is interpreted as: 'You have seen John a number of times. Has it ever happened that he had been ill for some time (and still was) then?'. This means that each illness was continuing into an orientation time in the pre-present period.)*
>
> Has John ever just been ill when you have seen him? *(indefinite interpretation of has John been ill: 'You have seen John a number of times. Has it ever happened that he had been ill just before you saw him (but no longer was when you saw him)?')*
>
> On each occasion when you have seen John, how many times has he been ill since your previous visit? *(quantificational constitution interpretation of has John been ill: 'You have seen John a number of times. On each of those occasions, how many times had he been ill in the period following your previous visit and leading up your seeing him?')*

As a further example, consider the following:

> Every time I've seen Gilda in the last few weeks she has been playing football.

This sentence presupposes that I have seen Gilda several times in the past two weeks and says that on each of these occasions it would have been true (at the time) to say 'Gilda has been playing football' or to say 'Gilda is playing football'. In other words, the sentence is ambiguous between (a) 'At the time of my seeing Gilda it has each time been true to say that she has ('just' or otherwise) been playing football', and (b) 'At the time of my seeing Gilda it has each time been true to say that she was playing football'.[4] The form *has been playing* in the former of these paraphrases receives the same interpretation as it does in isolation, except for the fact that the relevant pre-present period is not a time span leading up to t_0 but a time span reaching up to the times referred to by *every time I've seen Gilda* (which are interpreted as being indefinite times in a period up to t_0). Similarly, the form *is playing* in the second paraphrase locates its situation time at the various pseudo-present times in the period up to now rather than at the real t_0.

---

[4] Not surprisingly, the two readings above can also be expressed by sentences in which there is no shift of domain but the pre-present domain established by the Adv-time-clause is expanded (as if it were a past domain – see 9.9) by the tense forms in the head clause:

> Every time I have seen Gilda she *had* just *been playing* football. *(T-anteriority)*
> Every time I have met Gilda she *was playing* football. *(T-simultaneity)*

Sentences like this differ from nonrepetitive indefinite perfect sentences in that they involve an intermediate type of 'BASIC ORIENTATION TIME' (see 10.4.1)[5] — that is, an intermediate orientation time functioning as if it were t_0 — in their temporal structure. Whereas *I have seen Gilda* locates its situation time in a period leading up to t_0, *every time I have seen Gilda* implies that there are a number of situation times in a period leading up to an (each time different) 'basic orientation time' and that the various basic orientation times are themselves indefinite intervals in an implicit period up to t_0.[6]

Needless to say, the present perfect cannot realize the above kind of temporal schema in a nonrepetitive sentence. *When I have seen John, he has been ill* is only grammatical if *when* means 'whenever' or 'every time that'. If *when* is to be read as 'on the particular occasion when', the sentence that must be used instead is *When I saw John, he was ill* or *When I saw John, he had been ill (for some time)*.

9.10 T-relations on an up-to-now reading of the head clause

If the pre-present domain is established by an up-to-now perfect (in which case the situation time fills the entire pre-present but does not include t_0), there are in principle two possibilities in the subclause: temporal subordination (involving a shift of temporal perspective to the past zone) or a shift of domain. The former possibility can only occur when the speaker can discern enough 'bygone-ness' in the up-to-now situation expressed in the head clause to expand the pre-present domain as if it were a past domain. The latter possibility occurs when the up-to-now situation is given a recency interpretation.

---

[5] In 10.4.1, 'basic orientation time' is defined as follows: "The basic orientation time (represented as 'orientation time_1') is that orientation time in the structure of the tense from which the temporal relations expressed by the tense begin to be computed. In most cases orientation time_1 is t_0, but there are cases in which it is a post-present binding orientation time (i. e. a pseudo-t_0)."

[6] The use of an intermediate orientation time functioning as if it were t_0 is also exemplified by present perfect sentences of a different kind:

He *has been going to invite* me for months (but he has not done so yet).

Here again the implication is that there have been several occasions in the pre-present when a proposition was applicable whose default interpretation is that it is applicable at t_0, viz. the tensed proposition 'He is going to invite me'. That is, the sentence is interpreted as 'For months he has been intending to invite me.'

9.10.1 On an up-to-now reading the terminal point of the full situation lies close to t_0. This means that an up-to-now reading can easily be treated as a recency reading, in which case the pre-present domain established by the head clause is not expanded (as if it were a past domain) but the subclause shifts the domain (i. e. establishes a new domain). On the other hand, expanding an up-to-now pre-present domain is also possible provided one can discern enough 'pastness' ('bygone-ness') in the up-to-now situation to treat the pre-present domain as if it were a past one. This means that in many cases both a shift of domain and temporal subordination are possible in the subclause. (However, restrictions may be imposed by the type of subclause or by pragmatic factors.)

9.10.2 In complement clauses there is generally a slight preference for shifting the domain if the head clause situation is not a repetitive hypersituation. However, temporal subordination is also grammatical:

> [You want to know what I've just been doing?] I've been teaching your son how he {*can* / *could*} open a lock with a hairpin."
>
> ["At last you're back. What have you been doing?"] – "I've been explaining to your children why you {*have* / *had*} *forbidden* them to play in the park."
>
> ["Ah, there you are. What have you been doing?"] – "I've been telling your children that they {*will* / *would*} *have* to clean the kitchen tomorrow."

9.10.3 When the pre-present situation is repetitive (and receives an up-to-now reading) both temporal subordination (i. e. expanding the domain as if it were a past one) and the use of an absolute tense (shifting the domain) are in principle equally possible in a complement clause. This is because some of the subsituations of the repetitive hypersituation are divorced from t_0 while the last one is not: the former can be treated as if they were past situations, whereas the last subsituation is treated as recent.

If the first option is chosen (i. e. the subclause is temporally subordinated), the speaker is primarily concerned with the non-recent subsituations. In most of the examples that we have found, temporal subordination is actually obligatory because (as is clear from the context) it would be false to represent the subclause situation as actualizing at t_0:

> I've been telling myself that I *wasn't* ready yet, [but honestly I've been afraid to fail if I even started trying!] (www) *(Am not will not be used because the implication would be that I* AM actually ready.)
>
> [Homecoming isn't just for queens anymore. Eight young men are vying for the noble title of homecoming king, an honor that has never before been bestowed in Dade County.] "For the last three years the girls and the boys on student council have been saying that it *wasn't* fair, [that there should be boys too," said Donna Street, a coordinator of the homecoming committee. "When Mr. Hall came it was one of the things they asked." New principal Fred Hall granted the students' wish and a homecoming committee was formed.] (www) *(Isn't fair cannot be used because the unfair situation no longer holds at* t_0*.)*

> [I caught up with Roger Penske track-side at the Chicago Speedway one week after the announced merger agreement of Detroit Diesel with a subsidiary of Daimler Chrysler AG. “What changed?” I asked. “We’ve gone back and forth on this and] I’ve been saying that I *wasn’t* interested,” [replied Penske. “But at the end of the day, I looked at the overall perspective and all the consolidations that are going on.”] (www)
>
> [“You don’t think it’s on the small side?” — “It looks fine to me.”] — “I’ve been thinking lately it *was* rather small.” (CP)
>
> [“Prime Minister, you’ve been arguing against these cuts for many months now. When did you change your mind?” – “I guess I came to the conclusion a week or so ago after a lot of thought and listening to a lot of people that I’d plainly made a mistake as far as the level of sensitivity and concern is.] I know that I’ve been saying that it *wasn’t* necessary, [I accept that and I’m not going to try and deny what I’ve previously said.”] (www)

In the following examples, in which the subclause expresses T-posteriority, temporal subordination is again the only option because the subclause situation cannot be truly represented as T-anterior or T-posterior to t_0:

> Since November I have been thinking that I *had used up* all my vacation time. [Today I found out I still have SEVEN days left.] (www) *(The assertion I have used up all my vacation time is false at* t_0*.)*
>
> [I thought that I had sent it out but instead I had hit ‘postpone’.] This whole time I have been thinking that I *had posted* to the listserve with plenty of time. (www)
>
> [New York Yankees owner George Steinbrenner said Thursday that efforts to block the city from building a baseball stadium in Manhattan may force him to move the team out of New York. In response to Steinbrenner’s accusations, Vallone accused the Yankees owner of meddling in the city’s budget process.] (…) “George Steinbrenner has been saying that he *wasn’t going to talk* about the future of Yankee Stadium until after the season was over,” Vallone said. (www) *(The assertion I’m not going to talk about the future of Yankee Stadium until after the season is over would be false at* t_0*.)*
>
> [Representative Jo Ann Emerson recently announced Dec. 13 as the day traffic is anticipated to cross the new Bill Emerson Memorial Bridge. “We couldn’t be more excited about this,” said MoDOT District Engineer Scott Meyer.] “We’ve been telling the public the bridge *would be opened* by the end of the year [and we are very pleased to finally have an anticipated date for the bridge completion.”] (www)

In sum, if the subclause (depending on a head clause using an ‘up-to-now present perfect’ and describing a repetitive hypersituation) is temporally subordinated, the speaker is primarily (or exclusively) concerned with the subsituations that are past with respect to t_0. If that is not the case, he will normally shift the domain to another time-zone rather than apply temporal subordination:

> We've been telling the public the bridge *will be opened* by the end of the year [but they want a precise date].

Naturally, the more recent the subsituations are, the less likely they are to be treated as past. This explains that when the head clause contains *just*, the complement clause preferably shifts the domain:

> I've just been telling him that he {is doing / has been doing / will do} well to stay a bachelor.
>
> He has just been telling us that he {*doesn't like* / *#hasn't liked* / $^?$*didn't like*} mushrooms. *(The reference in the subclause is to a permanent habit, which still exists at* t_0*. The use of hasn't liked is not suitable to express this meaning because hasn't liked is naturally interpreted as an indefinite perfect, i. e. it yields an interpretation in which 'his' not liking mushrooms is represented as completely over at* t_0*. Didn't like is not very acceptable as a relative past tense form because of the recency reading induced by just.)*

9.10.4 In subclauses other than complement clauses, the same two possibilities – temporal subordination versus shift of domain – are in principle available, but here too everything depends on the degree of 'pastness' that the speaker can attribute to (part of) the up-to-now situation referred to in the head clause.

> What have you been doing while I {*have been* / *was*} away? *(The past tense expands the domain; the present perfect establishes a W-simultaneous up-to-now domain.)*

Here the past tense dislocates the *while*-clause situation from t_0, so that the situation inquired about, which coincides with the *while*-clause situation, is also seen as dislocated from t_0, which means that the temporal relations do not have to start from t_0 but may start from the situation time of the head clause. The following are similar examples:

> [You have a black eye and your clothes are torn!] You have been fighting with one of the boys you {*were* / *have been*} *playing* with, haven't you?
>
> [Ah, there you are!] What have YOU been doing while I {*have been doing* / *was doing*} the washing-up?

The following are attested examples using the past tense:

> ["What have you been doing while I *was* away?" [he asked, crossing the room to look at a new kakemono on the wall.] (www)
>
> What have you been doing while you *were* unemployed? (www)
>
> [We knew that God who saved us alive would ask one day ask "And where have you been and] what have you been doing while your people *were thrown* into the burning hell and I *kept* you alive?" (www)
>
> [Where have you been and] what have you been doing while I *stayed* at home and *made* money? (www)

Oh, Max, what have you been making while I *was* asleep? (www)

What have you been doing while you *were* incarcerated? (www)

If the speaker wants to emphasize that the *while*-clause situation is still ongoing at t_0, he will use the present tense in the *while* clause:

[Where have you been and] what have you been doing while I *stay* at home and *make* money? *(= 'I stay at home and make money, and what have you been doing so far while I do that?')*

What have you been drinking while you *watch* the Discovery Channel? (www)

[Please talk about your experience.] What have you been doing while you'*re* here [and what's it meant to you?] (www)

So what has Apple been doing while the Microsoft train *gains* speed? (www)

9.10.5 In the previous subsections of section 9.10 (which deals with the use of tenses in subclauses depending on a head clause with an up-to-now reading), we have only considered head clauses with an unmarked up-to-now reading or with a nonquantificational constitution reading (viz. the *what*-questions). The same rules in principle apply to sentences whose head clause receives a quantificational constitution reading. The following example may suffice:

This is the third time you have refused to give him something he {really *needed* / *has* really *needed* / really *needs*}. *(Needed expresses T-simultaneity with the subsituations making up the hypersituation of the head clause; has needed establishes a W-simultaneous pre-present domain; needs establishes a present domain.)*

9.11 Shifting the domain after a continuative perfect

If the pre-present domain is established by a 'continuative perfect' (which is the case when the time of the full situation is taken to include t_0), shifting the domain is the rule, though there are exceptions in which the domain is expanded as if it were a past domain (see 9.12).

9.11.1 When a present perfect clause receives a continuative interpretation, the situation time leads up to t_0 (without including it) but the time of the full situation is taken to include t_0. If a new clause is to be temporally subordinated to such a clause, the T-relation expressed by the tense form of the new clause must normally start from t_0. This is because t_0 is the most basic time in the tense system, and because it is difficult for the speaker to be concerned at the same time with the present part of the full situation and a part of it which is completely over. (Expanding a pre-present domain as if it were a past one implies that the speaker treats the binding time as a past time.)

In sum, when the head clause in the present perfect is given a continuative interpretation, the default case is for the subclause to use an absolute tense, which 'shifts the domain', i. e. establishes a new domain. (There are very few exceptions to this rule. They will be examined in section 9.12.) So an important point to be made right from the beginning is that when we talk of 'T-relations on a continuative reading', we are not thinking of temporal subordination (T-relations in a pre-present domain) but of 'absolute T-relations', i. e. T-relations that start from t_0 and are only realized when there is a shift of domain. The same point is made in the section on present domains. There we write the following:

> A situation that is to be temporally related to a present situation time is, effectively, temporally related to t_0. That is, a T-relation to a present orientation time has to start from t_0. Logically, however, any T-relation that starts from t_0 is an 'absolute deictic relation': any tense form relating its situation time to t_0 is an absolute tense form, which creates a temporal domain of its own. This means that it is not possible to express a T-relation with the central orientation time of a present domain by means of a finite verb form: a present domain cannot be expanded by the use of relative tense forms. In each of the following examples, the subclauses use absolute tense forms, thus shifting the domain.

The following sentences illustrate the use of an absolute tense in a subclause depending on a head clause receiving a continuative perfect interpretation:

Since then I've felt I *was* wrong to insult the teacher in public. *(absolute past tense)*

For three years now we've noticed that the house *has needed* repairs.

I've always known that Jim *is* very intelligent.

For a long time now Sam has believed that he *will become* famous one day.

9.11.2 On a continuative interpretation, the time of the full situation starts at some point before t_0 and leads up to and includes t_0. A full situation that is **W-anterior** to such a continuative situation necessarily lies wholly before t_0. To refer to it, the speaker can make use of the two absolute tenses that T-locate the time of a situation wholly before t_0, namely the absolute past tense, which locates the situation in the past time-sphere, or the present perfect on an indefinite reading, which locates the situation (as lying wholly before t_0) in the pre-present zone. In both cases, of course, the choice of tense effects a shift of domain in the subclause.

It is important to remember that when the speaker uses an absolute tense, no temporal relation is actually expressed between the situation referred to and any other situation referred to in the discourse. Thus the speaker of the first example below is simply saying that Jim has passed all his exams and that the speaker has known about this since last week. What tells us to locate the passing of the exams temporally prior to the knowing is the fact that one cannot know about the actualization of a bounded situation until the situation has actualized completely.

> I have known since last week that Jim *has passed* all his exams. *(indefinite present perfect)*
>
> I have known for some time that it *was* not Bill who stole the money. *(absolute past tense)*
>
> Ever since I talked to him I have felt that he *has shown* me the right path. *(indefinite present perfect)*
>
> I have known for some time that he *died* in 1900 [but I just recently found the specific date and place]. (www) *(absolute past tense)*

Figure 9.7 represents the tense structure of the first example. (The dotted arrow represents the time of the full situation.)

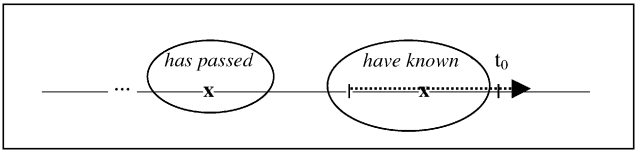

Figure 9.7. The tense structure of *I have known for some time that Jim has passed all his exams.*

9.11.3 If the full situation of the new clause, which shifts the domain, is intended to be interpreted as **W-simultaneous** with the continuative situation located in the pre-present domain, there are two possibilities as to the absolute tense that can be used.

(a) If the speaker wants the subclause to be interpreted continuatively (like the head clause), he will again use a continuative present perfect:

> We've been having trouble with the neighbours ever since we*'ve been living* here.
>
> I've known for many years now that John *has been handicapped* since he was born.

(b) If the speaker wants the subclause situation to be interpreted as having at least one point in common with the head clause situation (which is the definition of W-simultaneity – see 2.18.2), he can use either a present perfect or the present tense. The present perfect is possible as long as it is not interpreted as an indefinite perfect which locates its situation time entirely before the full situation of the head clause (as in Figure 9.7). The present tense is only possible under certain conditions – e. g. the situation has to be homogeneous (see below).

> The sheriff has known for some time that Big John {*has been* / **is*} in town since last week. *(Since last week requires the present perfect.)*

> [I've been looking for John for days now and] all this time you have known that he *is* away for two weeks without telling me!
>
> Since then I've realized that my son {*has been / is*} out of control. *(There is W-simultaneity, i. e. overlap, as long as has been is not interpreted as actualizing at a time which precedes the beginning of the situation referred to by have realized.)*
>
> [He whooped me one time when I was 15] so ever since then I've known he'*s* a really tough player. (www)
>
> [You know, ever since we have been working on this project,] I've had the strangest feeling that someone {*is / has been*} *checking* on us.

That the present tense can be used to refer to a situation that is meant to be interpreted as W-simultaneous with a situation leading up to and including t_0 follows from the fact that, unlike T-simultaneity, W-simultaneity requires no more than that the two situations have at least one point in common – see 2.18.2. This means that it is sufficient that both the times of the full situations are interpreted as including t_0. The present perfect will especially be used if the speaker wants to explicitly represent the situation as starting in the past and continuing into the present; if this is not the case, the present tense is more natural. In both cases the tense establishes a new domain (which is interpreted as W-simultaneous with that established by the tense in the head clause). The use of the present tense is only possible if the situation (and the clause representing it – see 1.36.4) is homogeneous, because only in that case can the situation that is located at (i. e. represented as coinciding with) t_0 be interpreted as starting before t_0. (This is the same restriction as excludes the simultaneity reading of *wrote a book* in *He said that he wrote a book* – see 8.25.5).

The following examples (in which the subclause is each time a complement clause) further illustrate all this:

> I have suspected for some time that he {*is seeing / has been seeing*} another woman. *(The subclause is homogeneous because it is L-nonbounded as a result of the use of the progressive form.)*
>
> I have suspected for months that he {**is / has been*} abroad since then. *(The present perfect has to be used because since then explicitly refers to a pre-present period.)*
>
> I have suspected for months that he {*is / #has been*} abroad. *(Has been does not receive a W-simultaneity reading here because in the absence of a duration adverbial the clause receives an indefinite rather than a continuative interpretation – see 5.4.7.)*
>
> For how long have I been telling you that he {*loves / #has loved*} another girl? *(For lack of an adverbial referring to a period up to now in the that-clause, he has loved another girl receives an indefinite rather than a continuative interpretation.)*
>
> I have known for some time that he *is* HIV, [but am very shocked and saddened about his declining health]. (www)

> Since then I have felt I'*ve been living* on borrowed time. *(www) (Both perfects are continuative.)*
>
> ["You're scaring me now." – "I'm sorry." Hyzenthlay gasped] "But I have been having the distinct feeling that someone *has been watching us*. (www) *(id.)*

The following are examples in which the subclause is not a complement clause:

> We have been staying in this house while the owners {*have been* / *are*} abroad for a few months.
>
> Kerry has been out of the spotlight during the time when Bush *is facing* negative momentum. (www)
>
> I've been reading loads of novels while I {*have been* / *am*} stuck in bed with this broken leg.
>
> [Owners of lost pets have had trouble finding their pets because] so many shelters have been open only during the time that owners *are* at work. (www)

However, of the two tenses only the present perfect can be used if the full situation of the subclause is to be interpreted as coinciding with the full situation of the head clause:

> Ever since this morning I have been scrubbing floors while you {*have been lolling* / **are lolling*} around the house.
>
> The house has been deserted all the time I {*have been* / **am*} away.
>
> Have all these things been lying in here while the door {*has been* / **is*} open? [Suppose they had been stolen.]

9.11.4 If the situation time of a new clause which shifts the domain is **W-posterior** to the situation time of a continuative pre-present domain, it has to be located in the post-present zone by means of the future tense or a futurish form. This follows from the fact that, since a continuative interpretation means that the time of the factual full situation reaches up to and includes t_0, only situations that are W-posterior to t_0 can be interpreted as W-posterior to the continuative full situation. A future tense form or futurish form locates the situation time of the situation which is W-posterior to t_0 in the post-present, thus establishing a post-present temporal domain. (As explained in 2.9.1, a post-present domain can be created by an absolute future tense form – with *shall* or *will* – or by the present tense of *be going to, be to, be about to*, or by a present tense effecting a shift of temporal perspective from the present to the post-present, as in *I'm leaving in a minute*.) The following examples illustrate this shift of domain from the pre-present to the post-present:

> I have known for some time that he {*is going to* / *will* / *is about to*} leave the country.
>
> Since when has it been clear that Steve's injury is still bad and that his substitute *will be playing* instead?

For a couple of days it's been public knowledge that the general manager *is going* to Peru at the end of the month.

The fear has been that the introduction of the passes *will* further *dissuade* French film-goers from going to small cinemas. (www)

9.12 Temporal subordination after a continuative perfect

It was noted in 9.11.1 that a pre-present domain established by a 'continuative perfect' cannot normally be expanded (as if it were a past domain) because the full situation is taken to include t_0. If a new clause is to be temporally subordinated to such a clause, the T-relation expressed by the tense form of the new clause must normally start from t_0. This is because t_0 is the most basic time in the tense system, and because it is difficult for the speaker to be concerned at the same time with the present part of the full situation and a part of it which is treated as over. (Expanding a pre-present domain as if it were a past one implies that the speaker treats the binding time as completely over.) Still, we have found some examples that form an exception to this rule. It is typical of them that the head clause situation is each time a repetitive hypersituation, consisting of a number of subsituations and gaps between them:

I've been told from childhood that I *was* a bastard. *(continuative interpretation of the head clause; no instance of telling need include t_0: what actualizes at t_0 may be a gap)*

For years now, Tunica County officials have been saying they *would provide* amenities to make Tunica a destination, rather than just a weekend getaway. (www)

They have been saying they *would tear* all this trash down for almost ten years. [I will be happy when it finally disappears.] (www)

In these examples the fact that nearly all the subsituations of the continuative hypersituation precede t_0 apparently renders it possible to treat the hypersituation as if it were a past situation.

There are also examples with *have known* in the head clause, in which case the head clause situation is not a repetitive hypersituation. In that case temporal subordination means that there is a (not necessarily very important) focus on the part of the situation that precedes t_0. Thus in the first example below, the speaker's choice of past tense might be influenced by a desire to make it clear that he is not 'behind the times', i. e. that not only is he aware that George Michael is gay, but he has been aware of it for as long as most people.[7]

---

[7] Another possibility is that in cases like these the choice of the past tense over the present tense might just be random, given how little difference there often seems to be between the two in interpretive effects.

[I watched Oprah today and George Michael was on there and I enjoyed his interview.] I have known for some time that he *was* gay [but you know he is still sexy]. (www) *(T-simultaneity)*

I have known for some time that she *was* in great pain, [but unfortunately the only thing I could and can do is pray that God reveals his plan for her.] (www) *(T-simultaneity)*

I have known for some time that she *would* not *last* long, [but the news that she has died still comes as a shock]. *(T-posteriority)*

[We plan to place a culvert and put dirt and plant grass over it.] We have known from the beginning that we *would need* to add fill dirt to bring the lot up. (www) *(T-posteriority)*

[The loss has been very depressing.] Though we have known for some time that things *had taken* a turn for the worse, it is still hard to believe he is gone. (www) *(T-anteriority)*

Williams and BMW have known since the end of July that Montoya *had signed* to drive for McLaren in 2005. (www) *(T-anteriority)*

9.13 Pre-present domains and use of tenses: summary

The following chart summarizes the main findings of Part II (= sections 9.8−12):

Kind of W-interpretation	Temporal subordination (= shift of perspective to past zone)	Shift of domain
indefinite	possible on a non-recency reading	possible
up-to-now	possible	possible
continuative	only very exceptionally possible	as a rule obligatory

III. Present domains

9.14 Head clauses referring to a nonrepetitive present situation

Expressing a temporal relation to the time of a nonrepetitive situation located in the present zone is tantamount to relating a situation time to t_0. Since expressing a temporal relation to t_0 is done by means of an absolute tense form, this means that a new domain is created, i. e. that there is a shift of domain. In other words, temporal subordination to a present situation time by means of a relative tense form is not possible.

9.14.1 A situation that is to be temporally related to a present situation time is, effectively, temporally related to t_0. That is, a T-relation to a present orientation time has to start from t_0. Logically, however, any T-relation that starts from t_0 is an 'absolute deictic relation': any tense form relating its situation time to t_0 is an absolute tense form, which creates a temporal domain of its own. This means that it is not possible to express a T-relation with the central orientation time of a present domain by means of a finite verb form: a present domain cannot be expanded by the use of relative tense forms.[8] In each of the following examples, the subclauses use absolute tense forms, thus shifting the domain:

> I am just explaining that I {*did* it last night / *have* already *done* it / *will do* it tomorrow}.
>
> Why don't you admit you {*will leave* / *are leaving* / *are going to leave*} the country next week?
>
> You know that I *have not been able* to do it because I *have been* too busy. *(The two present perfect forms establish two separate pre-present domains, which are pragmatically interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other.)*
>
> It seems that she *is working* on a project.
>
> I am just saying that I *believe* that John *is lying* to us about what he *intends* to do.

In the latter two examples, none of the present tense forms is a relative tense form expressing T-simultaneity. All of them are absolute tense forms, representing their situation time as the central orientation time of a present domain.

---

[8] However, things are different when a nonfinite verb form is used, as in *He seems to have been ill*. As noted in 2.5, a nonfinite verb form cannot establish a domain; it expresses no more than a single temporal relation with a contextually given orientation time (which is usually the situation time of the head clause or t_0). In the above example the perfect infinitive thus expresses anteriority in the present domain.

However, this does not mean that the simultaneity relation which we understand there to be between the situation of the subclause and the situation time of the head clause is a question of pragmatic W-interpretation, as it is in *When they had visited the house they had been accompanied by a real estate agent* (= ‘indirect binding’ – see 9.29). In *He says he is ill* simultaneity is expressed linguistically, not by the use of a relative tense in the subclause, but by the use of two absolute tenses which both represent their situation time as coinciding with t_0. As noted in 2.18.2, two intervals are interpreted as W-simultaneous if they have at least one point in common. This means that (except in the ‘Special Present Time-sphere System – see 3.2–11) all the situations referred to in the present tense are taken to be W-simultaneous with each other. In *I know he is ill* we therefore have W-simultaneity rather than T-simultaneity (which is a domain-internal relation), but this W-simultaneity reading is not caused by contextual or pragmatic factors: it follows from the fact that the two situation times are T-located at the same time.

9.14.2 The question whether the present tense can or cannot express T-simultaneity in a present domain may seem to be an academic question, since T-simultaneity has been defined in terms of coincidence. Whether we consider *is lying* in *I believe he is lying* as a relative tense expressing T-simultaneity or as an absolute tense establishing a new present domain, the temporal structure would each time seem to be the same: the situation time of *is lying* is T-represented as coinciding with t_0. However, this is not really the case. If the present tense of *is lying* is a relative tense expressing T-simultaneity, the temporal structure is such that the situation time of *is lying* is represented as T-simultaneous with that of *believe*, whereas if the present tense of *is lying* is an absolute tense, the temporal structure is such that the situation time of *is lying* is represented as coinciding with t_0. The fact that in the latter case the situation time of *believe* also coincides with t_0 does not alter the fact that the latter case is tense-structurally different from the former, and also differs from it in that in the former (hypothetical) case, where the present tense is a relative tense, the temporal structure explicitly privileges the relationship between *believe* and *is lying*, conveying, presumably, something about the semantics of the sentence that the accidental – albeit unavoidable – W-simultaneity of the two situations (referred to by absolute present tense forms) does not. As far as we can see, there is no such extra semantic element that would lead us to believe that the present tense can express a T-relation with a situation time which is located at t_0.

9.15 Head clauses referring to a present repetitive hypersituation

Consider:

> [Whenever he comes here] he *talks* about what he {*did* the night before / *has been doing* that day / *has* already *done* for me}.
>
> [Each time he talks to me] he says I *have* a lovely face.
>
> [Whenever I meet him] he *tells* me that he {*will* never *forget* my mother's kindness to him / *is leaving* to join the Foreign Legion any day now}.

It appears from these examples that the situation time of every subsituation (forming part of a repetitive habit that is located at t_0) is itself also treated as t_0 (see the discussion of 'basic orientation time' in 9.9.11), so that the normal absolute tense forms (present, present perfect, past and future tenses, plus futurish forms) are used to express temporal relations with this situation time.

IV. T-relations in a post-present domain

A. Definition of 'post-present domain'

9.16 What counts as a post-present domain?

A post-present domain is a temporal domain whose central orientation time lies in the post-present. Such a domain can be established *directly* by the use of the future tense or by a futurish (see 2.9.1) verb form (e. g. *He's going to leave*; *I'm leaving tonight*). It may also be established *indirectly* by constructions which do not have a future or futurish tense form but which nevertheless imply future time reference (more specifically, future actualization), such as imperatives or certain verbs whose semantics is future-oriented, like *expect* or *intend*, or a temporal conjunction like *until*. This possibility is illustrated by the following examples. (As we will see in 9.20, the relative tense forms expressing T-simultaneity in a post-present domain are present tense forms. In the examples below, the presence of a form with such an interpretation (*leaves*) proves that the relevant situation time belongs to a post-present domain.)

> [Tell him] to arrest the man when he *leaves* his house.
>
> [I expect him] to be arrested when he *leaves* his house.
>
> [Promise me] not to try and stop him when he *leaves* his house.
>
> I am waiting until she *leaves*. (*Leaves expresses T-simultaneity with the orientation time that is implicit in the meaning of until (= 'until the time that'). This implicit time is taken to be a post-present time because until expresses the W-posteriority relation between the implicit time and* t_0.)

B. T-relations in a post-present domain

9.17 Expanding a post-present domain

T-relations in a post-present domain are expressed by tenses resulting from a shift of perspective. The speaker treats the post-present central orientation time as if it were t_0 and uses a 'pseudo-absolute' tense form to T-relate another situation time to this 'pseudo-t_0', thus locating it in any of the four possible 'pseudo-absolute zones' (e. g. the 'pseudo-past zone', the 'pseudo-pre-present zone', etc.). The pseudo-absolute tenses are the same as are used to express T-anteriority, T-simultaneity or T-posteriority to the real t_0, namely the absolute past tense or the present perfect, the present tense and the future tense (or a futurish present tense form), respectively. Thus, in *Who will look*

after you when Brad and Sybil have left?, the present perfect form *have left* expresses T-anteriority to the post-present pseudo-t_0.
The 'pseudo-absolute subdomains' created by the pseudo-absolute tenses can be further expanded in exactly the same way as genuine absolute domains can be expanded.

9.17.1 When a post-present domain is expanded, there is a shift of temporal perspective: the central orientation time of the post-present domain is treated as if it were t_0. This creates all sorts of possibilities, for t_0 is the time from which the four absolute zones are defined. Since the central orientation time of a post-present domain is a 'PSEUDO-t_0', it is a point from which four different PSEUDO-ABSOLUTE ZONES are defined – see Figure 9.8 – and the systems of expressing domain-internal T-relations in these pseudo-absolute zones are exactly the same as those observed above in connection with the (genuine) absolute zones.[9]

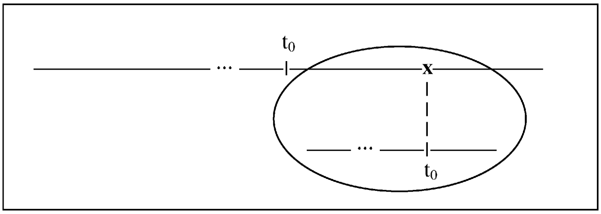

Figure 9.8. The basic tense structure of an expanded post-present domain.

9.17.2 The shift of perspective turning the post-present central orientation time into a pseudo-t_0 applies recursively. This means that it also applies to any orientation time that is T-simultaneous with, or T-posterior to, the central orientation time or another pseudo-t_0. This is clear from the use of the italicized and underlined forms in the following examples. The italicized present tense forms express T-simultaneity, which means that their binding orientation time is treated as a pseudo-t_0. The underlined future tense forms or futurish forms express T-posteriority to the central orientation time or to another pseudo-t_0 and therefore function as pseudo-t_0's themselves.

---

[9] Naturally, this does not mean that a pseudo-absolute present domain (i. e. a post-present domain) can be expanded exactly like a true present domain. In 9.14 it was argued that a genuine present domain cannot be expanded by a relative tense form because its central orientation time coincides with t_0: any relation starting from t_0 is an 'absolute relation' resulting in a shift of domain. By contrast, a post-present domain can be expanded by the use of pseudo-absolute tense forms creating pseudo-absolute subdomains – see 9.17.3.

> [If I get caught by the police] I will tell them that they*'re making* a mistake. *(The present tense T-locates the situation of making a mistake simultaneous with the situation of telling. The present tense is used because the situation time of will tell is treated as a pseudo-t_0.)*
>
> [If I get caught by the police] I will tell them that my solicitor will prove to them that they*'re making* a mistake. *(The future tense of will prove T-locates the proving posterior to the pseudo-t_0 set up by will tell, and the present tense of are making (a mistake) locates the mistake-making simultaneous to the pseudo-t_0 set up by will prove.)*
>
> What I'll tell them is that, if I ever *get* seriously ill, I will tell the board at once that I'm going to resign because I *feel* incapable of continuing my work as general manager.

This (recursive) mechanism will be discussed in more detail in 9.20–22.

9.17.3 It needs stressing that the relations expressed by the underlined and italicized verb forms in the above examples are T-relations expanding a domain. The fact that the same verb forms can also express a relation to t_0 (when they are used as absolute tense forms) is irrelevant to this. Relations to t_0 are not T-relations expanding a domain. There is, indeed, an essential difference between t_0 and a post-present orientation time treated as a pseudo-t_0. As explained in 9.14.1, any relation starting from t_0 is an 'absolute deictic relation'. The same is not true of relations starting from a post-present orientation time functioning as 'pseudo-t_0'. Such relations are expressed by PSEUDO-ABSOLUTE TENSES. These create a pseudo-past or pseudo-pre-present subdomain, which can be expanded just like a 'real' past or pre-present domain.

In sum, there exists a set of tenses that are used to express T-relations in a post-present domain. Because the central post-present orientation time is treated as a pseudo-t_0, these tenses are 'pseudo-absolute' tenses. That is, they have the same form as the absolute tenses but they express a domain-internal T-relation rather than establishing a new domain. For example:

> [If you shoot him] I will tell the police that you *murdered* him.

The use of the past tense form *murdered* here does not effect a shift of domain because it does not relate the situation of the subclause to (the real) t_0. It relates it to a post-present orientation time which is treated as if it were t_0. In other words, because the binding orientation time is a pseudo-t_0, the past tense is used as a pseudo-absolute tense, whose function is to express a T-relation in a post-present domain, viz. T-anteriority (in the sense of: 'The situation time is located in a pseudo-past zone which is defined relative to a pseudo-t_0'). Pseudo-absolute tense forms function like relative tenses: they express a T-relation inside an already established domain. In doing so they establish a PSEUDO-ABSOLUTE SUBDOMAIN within the post-present domain.

This is not to say, however, that a pseudo-absolute past tense is a ‘relative past tense’ – see also 9.23 below. As noted in 8.24.1, a relative past tense expresses T-simultaneity in a past domain, a ‘past subdomain’ (see 9.3.1) or a ‘pseudo-past subdomain’ (see 9.18). A pseudo-absolute past tense differs from this in that it expresses T-anteriority (rather than T-simultaneity) in a post-present (rather than past) domain and in that it expresses this relation only to a specific sort of orientation time, viz. a pseudo-t_0. For these reasons, a ‘pseudo-absolute’ past tense is to be distinguished from a ‘relative’ past tense, although it does express a T-relation in a domain. In fact, ‘pseudo-absolute’ is a concept that is not on a par with ‘absolute’ and ‘relative’. There are absolute tenses and there are relative tenses, but, strictly speaking, there are no pseudo-absolute tenses. When we speak of ‘pseudo-absolute’ we are referring to a particular (special, because resulting from a shift of perspective) *use* of a tense which is basically used as an absolute tense but now fulfils the function of a relative tense, i. e. a tense expressing a T-relation in a domain. (This discussion is resumed in 9.23.)

C. Expressing T-anteriority in a post-present domain

A situation time that is anterior to t_0 is located either in the past time-sphere or in the pre-present zone. In the same way, a situation time that is to be interpreted as anterior to the central orientation time of a post-present domain is located either in the *pseudo-past time-sphere* or in the *pseudo-pre-present zone* (both of which are defined relative to the pseudo-t_0). This means that we will use either the preterite or the present perfect.

9.18 The past tense expressing T-anteriority in a post-present domain

9.18.1 We use the preterite if we want to locate the situation time at a time which we view as past with respect to, and as disconnected from, the post-present pseudo-t_0, i. e. if we want to locate the situation time in a PSEUDO-PAST SUBDOMAIN.

> Sooner or later the police will find out that you *were staying* here today, and not in Glasgow.
>
> *(spoken in 2006)* From 2012 onwards, any employees that *didn’t work* hard enough during the preceding year will earn less during the following year.
>
> At the end of the concert, I will find someone who *enjoyed* the performance and someone who *didn’t enjoy* it and record an interview with each of them.

9.18.2 Note that it is irrelevant whether the pseudo-past situation time precedes, includes, or follows (the real) t_0. The W-relation between the situation time and t_0 is not expressed by the tense form: the past tense only expresses the T-relation between the situation time and the pseudo-t_0. Thus, in the following examples, the situation of the subclause is interpreted as W-anterior, W-simultaneous and W-posterior to t_0, respectively:

> This will make the police believe that he *was killed* yesterday.
>
> This will make the police believe that you *were staying* here today, and not in London.
>
> This will make the police believe that he *was killed* several hours later than he will actually be killed.

9.18.3 The pseudo-past situation time can itself serve as binding orientation time for other situation times that are introduced into the pseudo-past subdomain. The latter situation times are then referred to by means of the tense system that is used to express T-relations in a genuine past domain:

> [If we kill him tomorrow night,] the police will think that he was killed when he *came* home after he *had attended* the meeting at his club. They will believe that he was murdered because he *had found out* where the heroin *would be handed over.*

In this example the post-present domains established by *will think* and *will believe* each contain a pseudo-past subdomain, which is expanded as if it were a true past domain. See Figure 9.9, which represents the tense structure of the first sentence in the above example. As is clear from this structure, *was killed* is the form establishing the pseudo-past subdomain and *came* is a normal relative preterite expressing T-simultaneity in that subdomain.

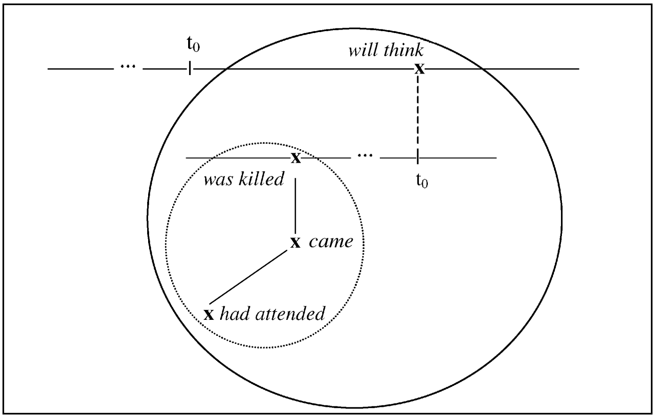

Figure 9.9. The tense structure of [*If we kill him tonight,*] *the police will think that he was killed when he came home after he had attended the meeting at his club.*

9.18.4 A pseudo-past subdomain can also be created by the future perfect. As we will see in section 9.25, the future perfect locates its situation time either in the pseudo-pre-present or in the pseudo-past. In the latter case, when another situation time is temporally subordinated to the central orientation time of the PSEUDO-PAST SUBDOMAIN (i. e. to the situation time of the future perfect), the tenses effecting this binding are in accordance with the rules described in the previous subsection. In other words, the pseudo-past subdomain created by the future perfect is expanded as if it were a true past domain:

> [If you only arrive at the party after midnight, we will not see each other any more, because] I will have left when Susan *left* [and she has to be home before midnight].

However, the subdomain created by a future perfect is more often interpreted as a PSEUDO-PRE-PRESENT SUBDOMAIN. If such a subdomain is expanded, it is expanded in exactly the same way as a true pre-present domain is expanded, i. e. as if it were a past domain:

> [Send a telegram saying that she is dangerously ill. Then, by the time we send the second telegram saying that she is dead,] he will have been warned that the situation *was* serious [and the news won't come as quite such a shock]. *(Will have been warned both establishes a post-present domain and locates its situation time (the time of the warning) in a pseudo-pre-present subdomain forming part of that post-present domain. The pseudo-pre-present subdomain in question is developed as if it were a past domain by means of was, which expresses T-simultaneity.)*

For further discussion, see section 9.25.

9.19 The present perfect expressing T-anteriority in a post-present domain

9.19.1 When a situation time is located in a period leading up to (and not felt to be divorced from) the pseudo-t_0 (= the central orientation time of the post-present domain), this period is treated as if it were the pre-present zone. Naturally, it is the present perfect that is used to locate a situation time in such a PSEUDO-PRE-PRESENT ZONE:

> From next month onwards, any bread that *has not been sold* by the end of the day will be given to the orphanage.
>
> Who will look after you when Brad and Sybil *have left*?
>
> [Don't try to fool him.] He will soon find out that you *have been leading* him up the garden path.

In these examples the present perfect is used as a pseudo-absolute tense.

9.19.2 The pseudo-pre-present situation time may serve as binding time for other situation times that are introduced into the post-present domain. The latter situation times are then referred to by means of the tense system that is typical of the pre-present zone. For example, if the present perfect is of the 'indefinite' type, its situation time will be treated as if it were a past orientation time (see 9.9). This means that the pseudo-pre-present subdomain created by the present perfect within the post-present domain will be treated as if it were a past domain:

> The police will certainly ask you whether anyone *has* ever *told* you that they *had been bitten* by your dog, [and you will not be able to say 'no' because I'm telling you now that I've been bitten by it]. *(Has told establishes a pseudo-pre-present subdomain which is developed as if it were a past domain, witness the use of had been bitten to express T-anteriority.)*
>
> [If ever you want to use Tina's car, don't ask Tom if you can do so but ask her directly.] Otherwise Tom will tell everybody that you *have told* him that you *wanted to* use Tina's car but *were* afraid to ask her directly. *(Have asked establishes a pseudo-pre-present subdomain, in which the relative past tense forms wanted and were express T-simultaneity.)*

Notice, however, that not all pseudo-pre-present subdomains can be expanded as if they were past domains. Sometimes they cannot be expanded at all, so that the speaker can only create a new subdomain (interpreted as W-simultaneous with the existing one):

> [If he doesn't come at Christmas either] it will be exactly three years since we *have been told* how he {*is / *was*} *doing*. *(We cannot use was doing to express T-simultaneity in the pseudo-pre-present domain established by have been told. This is because of the continuative interpretation: 'Next Christmas the not-telling-us-how-he-is-doing will have been actualizing for exactly three years' – see 5.21.1.)*

In 9.9.6–10 we have observed that there are similar constraints on developing (genuine) pre-present domains.

D. The expression of T-simultaneity in a post-present domain

9.20 Coincidence with the central orientation time of a post-present domain

9.20.1 Since the central orientation time of a post-present domain functions as a pseudo-t_0, it is the present tense that is used to represent another situation time as coinciding with it:

> He will steal the diamonds while his accomplice *diverts* the guard's attention.
>
> If the weather *is* fine tomorrow, father will say that it *is* time for a picnic.
>
> [If you leave the country] the police will never find out where you *are*.

The tense structure of (the relevant part of) the last example is represented by Figure 9.10. (Note that the present tense form *are* is used here as a pseudo-absolute tense form. Its function is to represent its situation time as coinciding with the post-present pseudo-t_0.)

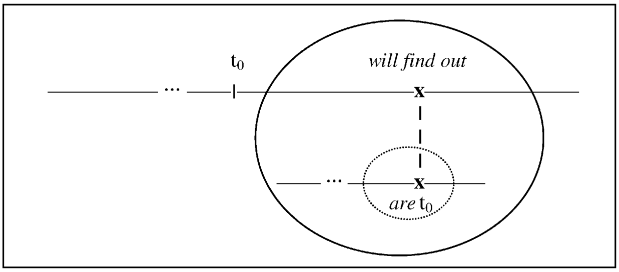

Figure 9.10. The tense structure of *The police will never find out where you are.*

9.20.2 Because the default meaning of the present tense is that it locates a situation time at t_0 (rather than at a post-present pseudo-t_0), this pseudo-absolute use of the present tense may cause ambiguity if there is no context making it clear that the reference is to the post-present. This applies specifically to subclauses that easily allow a shift of domain.

> The police will find out where you *are. (Where you are is ambiguous between 'where you are now' and 'where you will be then'.)*
>
> [If you leave the country] the police will find out where you *are. (The conditional clause makes it clear that where you are must be interpreted as having post-present time reference, i.e. as meaning 'where you will be at the time when the police will find out about your whereabouts'.)*
>
> [You should try to order from several suppliers, because] you will never know who *is* the cheapest [unless you try them]. *(ambiguous)*

9.20.3 This use of the present tense as pseudo-absolute tense is restricted to some kinds of subclause (e.g. complement clauses, conditional clauses expressing an 'open condition', restrictive relative clauses). In independent clauses and in some types of subclause (e.g. nonrestrictive relative clauses) reference to the post-present requires the use of an absolute tense form creating a new post-present domain, which, because of the context or pragmatics, is interpreted as W-simultaneous with the existing post-present domain. Hence the difference between the following:

> Next time you will be met by a man who *is wearing* a red tie. *(Is wearing is a pseudo-absolute present tense representing its situation time as coinciding with the situation time of will be met. This representation in terms of coincidence is possible*

because the full situation of wearing a tie is represented as homogeneous by the progressive form – see 2.12.2.)

Next time you will be met by a man. He *will be wearing* a red tie. *(Will be wearing is a future tense form establishing a post-present domain which is interpreted as W-simultaneous with that established by the first clause.)*

The tense distribution of the two forms – the future tense as absolute tense and the present tense as pseudo-absolute tense – will be examined in detail in chapter 10. (This distribution has nothing to do with the present tense per se, but everything with the context in which it is used.)

A present tense form locating a situation time in a post-present domain sometimes expresses 'sloppy simultaneity'. This means that the bound situation time and the binding time are not really simultaneous, but are (for a rhetorical purpose) represented as simultaneous with each other. For example: *I will turn off the central heating when I go out*.

9.20.4 The use of a tense form representing a bound situation time as T-simultaneous with a binding situation time as a rule requires that the situations of the two clauses be W-simultaneous (i. e. either coincide or overlap – see 2.18.2). This is the case in the examples given in 9.20.1–3. However, there is only 'SLOPPY SIMULTANEITY' between the situations in sentences like the following:

When John *comes* home, I will tell him about the accident.

[Be careful in your speech tonight.] The newspapers will print everything you *say*.

If Mary *dies*, John will come into a fortune.

Each of these examples refers to two situations which do not coincide or overlap but follow each other. Still, the tense used in the subordinate clause is each time the tense that is typically used to express T-simultaneity, not T-anteriority. T-anteriority would be expressed as follows:

When John *has come* home, I will tell him about the accident.

The newspapers will print everything that you *have said*.

If (by the end of the year) Mary *has died*, John will come into a fortune.

It appears, then, that present tense forms whose basic meaning is to express T-simultaneity with a post-present situation time can sometimes be used in cases where there is no real W-simultaneity between the two situations. Such present tense forms express SLOPPY SIMULTANEITY. In these cases the speaker disregards the fact that the two situations do not really overlap but concentrates on the fact that they follow each other closely and that there is some logical relation between them. The use of a tense form whose basic function is the expression of T-simultaneity then means that the speaker treats the two situations as belonging to the same 'occasion' and hence as falling within the same time interval.[10] Another clear illustration of such a use is provided by examples like the following, where the relevant verb form is a form whose basic meaning is the expression of simultaneity, viz. a present participle:

> *Opening* the drawer, he took out an old photo of a man in uniform.
>
> *Raising* the lid of the well, she pointed to the green water.
>
> The locomotive jumped the rails, narrowly *missing* a couple of trees near the railway.

In these examples, the situation referred to in the present participle clause either precedes (in the first two examples) or follows (in the third example) the head clause situation.

The fact that verb forms expressing T-simultaneity can be used in a sloppy way illustrates the fact that T-simultaneity is the unmarked relation of the three that can be expressed by verb forms. This is especially clear in conditional sentences referring to the post-present, where the expression of a temporal relation between the two clauses is less important than the expression of the logical link ('if p, then q'). In such conditional sentences the *if*-clause is therefore likely to use a tense form expressing T-anteriority only if it contains a time adverbial like *by 5 o'clock* (as in *I will punish you if you haven't finished by 5 o'clock*). Otherwise, it normally involves a tense form expressing simultaneity. This may even be the case when the two clauses contain adverbials referring to different times, as in *If John doesn't do it today, I will do it myself tomorrow.* In such a sentence the speaker represents the two situations as if simultaneous if he is just thinking of them as two post-present situations that are logically connected with each other.[11] It is only when he wants to draw explicit attention to the fact that one situation is over before the other takes place that he selects the verb form expressing anteriority (*If John hasn't done it today, I will do it myself tomorrow*).

---

[10] In fact, this also holds for the absolute use of the present tense, which represents a situation as T-simultaneous (= coinciding) with t_0. Leech (1971: 3) points out that the 'instantaneous' use of the present tense does not require that the situation be strictly simultaneous with t_0. A sentence like *Now I open the envelope* may be uttered seconds before the action takes place. As Leech points out, "it is subjective rather than objective simultaneity that is conveyed".

[11] The fact that conditional sentences represent the contents of the two clauses as simultaneous is also apparent from the fact that the head clause can be introduced by *then* (e.g. *If John doesn't do it, then I'll have to do it myself tomorrow*). This use of *then* may not be purely temporal, but it is reminiscent of the temporal meaning of the adverb, which is 'at that time', i.e. 'at the time referred to in the *if*-clause'.

9.21 T-simultaneity with an orientation time coinciding with the central orientation time

A time that is T-simultaneous with a pseudo-t_0, or with another time that is T-simultaneous with a pseudo-t_0, also functions as a pseudo-t_0.

When a situation time is represented as coinciding with a pseudo-t_0 (i. e. the central orientation time of a post-present domain), that situation time can be the binding orientation time for another situation time. In that case the relation of T-simultaneity (coincidence) is also expressed by the present tense. This means that not only the central orientation time of a post-present domain but also any situation time that is represented as T-simultaneous with it is treated as a pseudo-t_0. If such a pseudo-t_0 binds another situation time, the latter will therefore be referred to by one of the four pseudo-absolute tenses. In the following examples the tense forms referring to the bound situation time are italicized, whereas the binding situation times (which are also bound pseudo-t_0's because they are each represented as coinciding with another pseudo-t_0) are underlined:

> I'll give a fiver to anyone I meet while I *am* there and who says he *is* glad to meet me.
>
> They will find out that Jack thinks that he *was born* in London.
>
> [If we don't hide this letter from Gladys] she will go and tell everybody that she knows why Tim *has been fired*.
>
> [Do not inform Jack, or] he will tell the police that he knows that a murder *will be committed*.

The tense structure of (the relevant part of) the last example is represented by Figure 9.11.

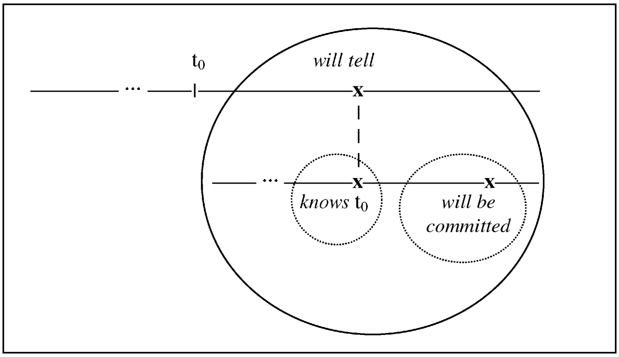

Figure 9.11. The tense structure of [*Do not inform Jack, or*] *he will tell the police that he knows that a murder will be committed.*

E. The expression of T-posteriority in a post-present domain

9.22 T-posteriority in a post-present domain

To represent a situation time as T-posterior to t_0 we use the future tense or a futurish form. This means that the situation time in question is represented as a pseudo-t_0 functioning as the central orientation time of a pseudo-post-present subdomain.

Predictably, to represent a situation time as T-posterior to the central orientation time, or to any other pseudo-t_0 in the post-present domain, we use the same tense as is used to represent a situation time as T-posterior to (the real) t_0, viz. the future tense (or one of the 'futurish'(see 2.9) verb forms). This tense form is then used as a pseudo-absolute tense form, which locates its situation time in the 'pseudo-post-present' and in doing so creates a 'pseudo-post-present subdomain' within the post-present domain.

> He will swear that he *will* never *tell* her the ugly truth.
>
> [When I'm throwing my own party next month] I'll be able to tell you whether there {*will* / *is going to*} be a display of fireworks after the speeches, [but this time I don't know].

In the same way as a situation time that is posterior to t_0 is treated as if it were t_0, any situation time that is represented as T-posterior to such a pseudo-t_0 is also treated as a pseudo-t_0 when another situation time is related to it. This means that the latter situation time is located in one of the four pseudo-absolute zones:

> She will think that John will tell the others {that he *was* here tonight / that he *has not told* them the truth yet / that he *is* dissatisfied with their behaviour / that he *will tell* them the truth later}.

Figure 9.12 represents the tense structure of this sentence when *will tell* is used in the final clause.

This use of the future tense to establish a pseudo-t_0 can repeat itself indefinitely. Any situation time that is T-posterior to a pseudo-t_0 functions as a pseudo-t_0 itself. This can produce structures with multiple pseudo-t_0's, such as the following (in which each pseudo-t_0 is underlined):

> Shirley will think that John will find out that Ted will tell Susan {that he *was* here tonight / that he *has not told* her the truth yet / that he *is* dissatisfied with her behaviour / that he *will tell* her the truth later}.

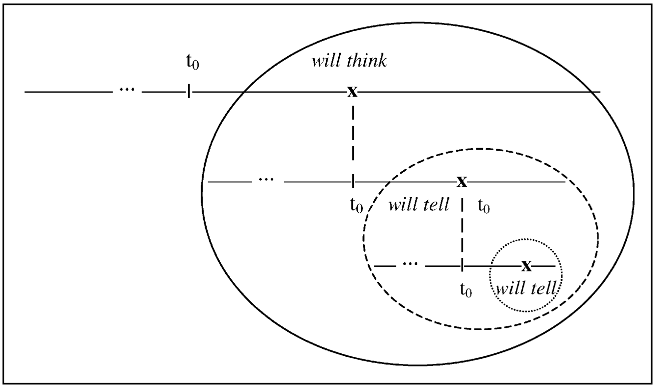

Figure 9.12. The tense structure of *She will think that John will tell the others that he will tell them the truth later.*

9.22.1 Examples can be found in which the post-present domain is ESTABLISHED INDIRECTLY by a tense form expressing a T-relation within the domain:

> Yesterday Sheila said she would be abroad when our wedding *takes* place.

In this example the situation times of *said* and *would be* are located in a past domain, while the situation time of *takes* is located in a post-present domain. The latter is not established 'directly' (i. e. by a future tense or futurish verb form whose situation time is the central orientation time of a post-present domain) but by the use of a form representing its situation time as coinciding with the unspecified central orientation time of the domain. This is possible because the situation time of *would be abroad* is meant to be interpreted as W-posterior to t_0, so that *would be abroad* evokes 'will be abroad'.

The use of the present tense in examples like the following can probably be explained in a similar way:

> I don't care if he {*is* / **will be*} exhausted tomorrow.

As noted in 10.7.1, the future tense cannot be used in clauses expressing an open condition (i. e. a condition which may or may not be fulfilled in the future: *I will be sad if she* {*doesn't get* / **won't get*} *that job*). The same rule appears to be at work in *I don't care if he* {*is* / **will be*} *exhausted tomorrow.* Here the post-present domain is established indirectly by *is*, which represents the being exhausted as T-simultaneous with a central orientation time which is specified only by virtue of being 'contained' in the Adv-time indicated by *tomorrow.*

It is possible that the same analysis is also applicable to sentences like the following, in which the present tense can be used as an alternative to the future tense:

I hope our train {*isn't* / *won't be*} late again today.

I bet I {*get* / *will get*} there before him.

However, it is equally possible that the use of the present tense here represents a 'shift of temporal perspective' similar to what we observe in *It doesn't matter what we do* – see 10.6.2.

9.23 The theoretical status of pseudo-absolute tense forms

9.23.1 It has been shown that, in a post-present domain, any T-relation between a bound situation time and the binding post-present pseudo-t_0 is expressed by exactly the same tense as T-relates a situation time to the real t_0. The only difference is that in the latter case the tenses are absolute tenses establishing domains, whereas in the former case they are pseudo-absolute tenses establishing (pseudo-absolute) subdomains. Because in doing so they express a T-relation in a post-present domain, we might feel tempted to say that these pseudo-absolute tenses are relative tenses, but it would not be correct to do so. That is, it would be mistaken to conclude that next to the absolute present tense there is a relative present tense, and similarly, that there are two different present perfect tenses and two different post-present tenses.

Pseudo-absolute tenses result from applying a 'shift of perspective', i. e. from locating a situation time in an absolute time-zone that is different from the one in which it would naturally be located. Treating a post-present situation time as if it were t_0 is similar to treating a past situation time as if it were present, as in the historic present, or to treating a pre-present situation time as if it were present, as in *I hear you have been promoted*, or as treating the central orientation time of a domain established by an indefinite present perfect as if it were a past orientation time when the domain is expanded, as in *I've never told you before that you were very talented*. In each case a situation time is treated as if it were a situation time belonging to a different absolute time-zone from the one that it would naturally be located in. This is done by a marked choice of tense, i. e. by a tense which is not used with its basic meaning but in a metaphorical way. In the same way the use of a pseudo-absolute tense to expand a post-present domain is a metaphorical use of an absolute tense. By contrast, there is usually nothing metaphorical about the use of relative tenses, i. e. the past perfect, the relative past tense, the conditional tense and the conditional perfect tense. (The latter are used metaphorically only if they are used to expand a pre-present domain as if it were a past one.)

It follows that speaking of 'pseudo-absolute tenses' is really a sloppy way of speaking of 'the pseudo-absolute use of tenses whose basic use is absolute'. For example, there is only one present perfect tense, but it has two uses because it can locate a situation time either in the pre-present zone, which leads up to

t_0, or in a pseudo-pre-present period leading up to a post-present pseudo-t_0. By contrast, as far as past tense forms are concerned, there are two past tenses, the absolute one and the relative one. (See the elaborate defence of this claim in 8.23–32.) The relative past tense is used in one sense only, viz. to express the idea that the time of the situation referred to is T-simultaneous with a binding time which forms part of a past (or pseudo-past) domain or subdomain – see 2.44. The absolute past tense has two uses: in its basic (nonmetaphorical) use it locates a situation time in the past relative to t_0, while in its metaphorical use it locates a situation time in the past relative to a post-present pseudo-t_0. These different uses are illustrated by the following sentences:

> He *didn't have* the time to do it. *(unmarked use of the absolute past tense)*
>
> [If he doesn't do it] his explanation will be that he *didn't have* the time to do it. *(pseudo-absolute use, i.e. metaphorical use of the absolute past tense)*
>
> He realized he *didn't have* the time to do it. *(unmarked use of the relative past tense expressing T-simultaneity)*
>
> [If he doesn't do it] his explanation will be that when he made his promise, he didn't realize that he *didn't have* the time to do it. *(relative past tense expressing T-simultaneity in a pseudo-past subdomain inside a post-present domain)*

9.23.2 The use of the present tense as pseudo-absolute tense is not based on the same kind of metaphor as we observe in *I'm leaving tomorrow*, where the present tense is also used to make it clear that the post-present situation time is treated as if it coincided with t_0 (see 2.20). In the case of the pseudo-absolute use of the present tense (e.g. [*If you go there*] *you will have to tell the security man why you want to be there*) there is clearly a shifted deictic centre relative to which the present tense locates a situation as 'present'. In *I'm leaving tomorrow* the present tense can be seen as locating the situation time at t_0 in order to be understood as 'arranged at t_0'. These are two different metaphorical uses, and it is therefore not surprising that they can be combined, as in *He will say that he's leaving the next day.* (See 10.2.3 for further explanation.)

9.24 Subdomains and recursivity

It should be clear from the previous sections that some of the rules involved in the English tense system apply recursively. This is true, for example, of the rules for expanding a past domain. Once a past domain has been established, a relative tense that expresses a relation in this domain can be said to create a subdomain within the past domain. Any situation time introduced into a past domain is therefore potentially the central orientation time of a past subdomain, which is developed in exactly the same way as the over-all domain. This accounts for the fact (noted in 8.34) that the relative tense used for expressing a particular T-relation in a past domain is always the same, irrespective of the location of the binding orientation time in the domain. For example:

> John said that Bill had told him that he would resign if he did not get his way.

As shown in Figure 9.13, each of the tense forms here creates a past domain or subdomain. Each of the temporal relations in the domain is a relation between the central orientation time of a subdomain and the central orientation time of the (sub)domain into which it is temporally embedded.

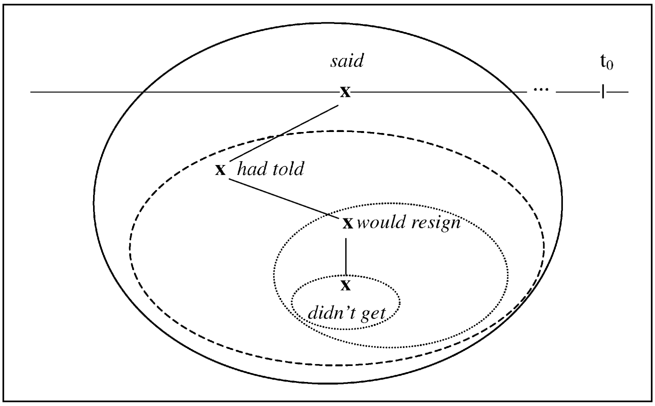

Figure 9.13. The tense structure of *John said that Bill had told him that he would resign if he did not get his way.*

There is also RECURSIVITY in post-present domains. The rule stipulating that the central orientation time of a post-present domain is treated as if it were t_0 applies recursively in the sense that an orientation time represented as coinciding with or posterior to that pseudo-t_0 is also treated as a pseudo-t_0, and that the same is true of any other orientation time represented as T-simultaneous with or posterior to a pseudo-t_0 – see Figure 9.11 in section 9.21.

9.25 Relating a situation time to the situation time of a future perfect

As noted in 2.47, the future perfect is an 'absolute-relative' tense because it establishes a post-present domain and at the same time expresses anteriority in it. The anteriority in question is similar to either the anteriority to t_0 expressed by the absolute past tense or the anteriority to t_0 expressed by the present perfect. Compare:

John *left* at five.

[John will no longer be there at six because] he *will have left* at five.

John *has* already *left*.

By then John *will* already *have left*.

In the same way as *left* in *John left at five* establishes a past domain, *will have left* in the second example creates a pseudo-past subdomain in a post-present domain. And in the same way as *has left* in *John has already left* establishes a pre-present domain, *will have left* in the last example creates a pseudo-pre-present subdomain in a post-present domain.

Pseudo-past and pseudo-pre-present subdomains are expanded in exactly the same ways as true past and pre-present domains — see 9.18 and 19.19. This is clear from a comparison of the sentences in the following pairs:

(a) Tim gave a fiver to whoever {*had paid* / *paid* / *would be paying*} a visit to his mother in hospital today. *(The head clause establishes a past domain.)*

(b) [By tonight John will be broke.] He will have given a fiver to whoever {*had paid* / *paid* / *would be paying*} a visit to his mother in hospital today. *(The head clause establishes a pseudo-past subdomain.)*

(a) Has the mayor ever been able to claim that he {*had helped* / *was helping* / *would help*} us? *(The head clause establishes an indefinite pre-present domain which is expanded as if it were a past domain.)*

(b) I doubt that by the end of his office the mayor will ever have been able to claim that he {*had helped* / *was helping* / *would help*} us. *(The head clause establishes an indefinite pseudo-pre-present subdomain which is expanded as if it were a past domain.)*

(a) Tom's father has known for some time that Jane and Tom *are* married. *(The head clause establishes a continuative pre-present domain; the that-clause establishes a present domain of its own.)*

(b) [Once Jane and Tom are married and have gone off to Angola, we'll let Tom's father know that they are married.] By the time they come back, he'll have known for several months that they are married, [and with luck he'll have got used to the idea]. *(The head clause establishes a continuative pseudo-pre-present subdomain; the that-clause establishes another, W-simultaneous, subdomain.)*

F. The explanatory force of this analysis of tenses in post-present domains

Our analysis of the English tense system in post-present temporal domains offers a natural explanation for some tense phenomena which might seem puzzling at first sight.

9.26 Observation 1

9.26.1 The model of the English tense system that we have presented, and which hinges on the notion of temporal domain, neatly accounts for an interesting difference that we may observe between (1) and (2):

(1a) John *had left* at 5 p.m.

(1b) John *had left* when Bill *arrived*.

(2a) John *will have left* at 5 p.m.

(2b) John *will have left* when Bill *arrives*.

(2c) [According to the plan, John will no longer be there at midnight. He will have left much earlier.] More specifically, he *will have left* when Bill *arrived*.

Sentence (1a) is ambiguous between two readings, which we can paraphrase as 'It was the case that John had left – he left at 5 o'clock' and 'At 5 p.m. it was the case that John had already left'. (The latter interpretation is strongly invited if we give *at 5 p.m.* initial position in (1a), or when we insert *already* into *had left*.) Sentence (1b) is ambiguous in exactly the same way. (Compare *John was no longer there at five, because he had left when Bill arrived at four* with *John had already left when Bill arrived*.) Sentence (2a) is ambiguous too: *at 5 p.m.* again indicates (i. e. 'contains' – see 2.23.1)[12] either the situation time of John's leaving or the orientation time to which that situation time is T-anterior. However, when we replace *at 5 p.m.* by a *when*-clause, as in (2b–c), we see that we cannot use the same tense form for both readings. If the *when*-clause is to indicate the time to which the situation time of John's leaving is anterior, it must use the present tense (*arrives*). If it is to indicate the situation time of John's leaving, it must use the past tense (*arrived*).

The theory that has been presented accounts for this difference between (1b) and (2b–c). In (1b) both situation times are located within the same past domain. The past perfect *had left* represents John's leaving as T-anterior to some orientation time in that domain. *Arrived* can only be a relative preterite, since a shift of domain within the same absolute time-zone does not occur in adverbial *when*-clauses (except in two well-defined cases – see 13.15–16). Since the relative past tense can be used to express T-simultaneity with any orientation time in the past domain, it is not clear from the relative past form *arrived* whether Bill's arrival is to be interpreted as T-simultaneous with the situation time of the head clause (i. e. the time of John's leaving) or as T-simultaneous with the orientation time to which John's leaving is anterior.

---

[12] Since the Adv-time indicated by *at 5 p.m.* is punctual, 'contains' must be read as 'coincides with' – see 2.23.

Hence the ambiguity of (1b). In (2b—c) there is no such ambiguity because the reference is now to a pseudo-past subdomain within a post-present domain. In a post-present domain different verb forms are used to express T-simultaneity. To express T-simultaneity with the central orientation time (or with another pseudo-t_0) the present tense is used. This is the case in (2b) (= 'When Bill arrives, John will already have left'), which uses *arrives* — see Figure 9.14.[13] To express T-simultaneity with the central orientation time of a pseudo-past subdomain we use the relative past tense. This is the case in (2c), which uses *arrived* — see Figure 9.15. So, both the ambiguity of (1b) and the nonambiguity of (2b—c) are predictable from the theory.

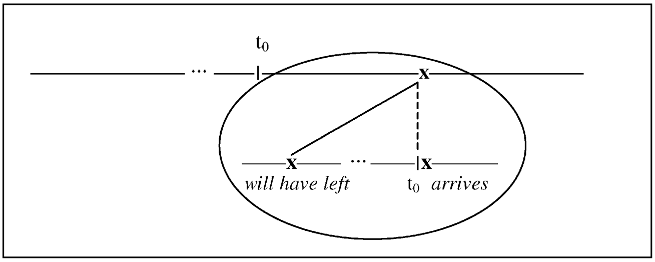

Figure 9.14. The temporal structure of *John will have left when Bill arrives.*

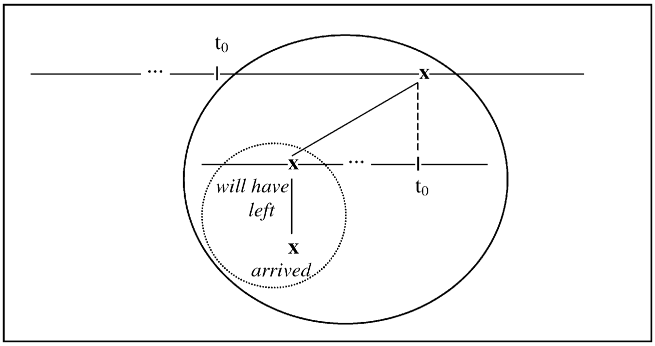

Figure 9.15. The temporal structure of *John will have left when Bill arrived.*

9.26.2 The above explanation also accounts for the different tense forms in the following:

I will thank you to wipe your feet when you *enter* the house. *(A to-infinitive following thank refers to a posterior situation. The situation time of 'to wipe your feet' is*

---

[13] Figures 9.14 and 9.15 are simplified in that the complex temporal structure of *when* (explained in chapter 13) is disregarded.

therefore interpreted as a pseudo-t_0*, so that the when-clause uses the present tense to express coincidence.)*

I will now thank you for wiping your feet when you *entered* the house. *(Because thank is followed by for, the situation time of wiping your feet is interpreted as anterior to the time of the thanking, which is the central orientation time of a post-present domain and is therefore a pseudo-*t_0*. The time of the wiping is therefore treated as a pseudo-past orientation time. Entered expresses T-simultaneity in the pseudo-past subdomain that is established in this way.)*

[If you don't stand by him now,] he will never forget your abandoning him when he *needed* you.

9.27 Observation 2

9.27.1 In 9.18–19 it was shown how the past perfect can be used to represent its situation time as T-anterior to a pseudo-past or pseudo-pre-present orientation time which is T-anterior to the central orientation time (= pseudo-t_0) of a post-present domain. For example:

(3a) [If you use the cover-story that you've come to check the lift as your way of getting into the building, how will you later explain the fact that you were still there six hours later?] The police will want to know why you didn't leave when you *had done* your work. *(The situation time referred to by didn't leave is a pseudo-past orientation time; had done expresses T-anteriority to it.)*

(3b) [If you keep beating her she might go to the police, and then] the police will ask the neighbours if they have ever noticed that she *had been beaten up*. *(The situation time referred to by have noticed is a pseudo-pre-present orientation time; had done expresses T-anteriority to it.)*

However, examples can be found in which the past perfect is used (seemingly similarly) without there being any mention of a pseudo-past binding orientation time:

(4a) [If you join our club,] you will know a lot about people that you *had* never *dreamed* of meeting before.

(4b) [If a local pressure group can achieve results, the interest may gather momentum.] Individuals who *had* never *considered* taking part in public debate will be attracted to the success of certain ventures. (SEU)

What is intriguing is not only that the past perfect is used in these sentences, but also that it cannot be used in other, seemingly similar, sentences:

(5a) If you peep through this hole in the curtain, you will see the audience that {*have* / **had*} *come* to watch the play.

(5b) [Don't tell that joke to everyone you talk with this afternoon or you will not be able to use it during your public appearance tonight.] I will not have you telling a joke which you {*have* / **had*} already *told* several times.

If our analysis of the past perfect in (3a–b) is correct, we must assume that in (4a–b) the time of the situation described in the past perfect is each time located T-anterior to a pseudo-past orientation time which remains 'unspecified', i. e. it is neither a situation time nor an orientation time specified by a time-specifying adverbial nor an orientation time that is implicit in the semantics of a temporal conjunction – see 2.14. Moreover, we will have to explain why there is apparently no such unspecified pseudo-past orientation time in the tense structure of (5a–b).

9.27.2 The analysis we propose involves the following claims:

(a) The past perfect forms in (3a–b) are instances of 'the past version of a present perfect'. This means that these past perfect forms imply the existence of a period leading up to (but not including) a pseudo-past orientation time. (See the definition of 'pre-present' in 2.35.) The pseudo-past orientation time in question remains unspecified.
(b) The past perfect forms in (4a–b) are instances of the past version of an *indefinite* present perfect. No examples can be found in which the past perfect receives a 'continuative' reading or an 'up-to-now' reading. (This is in keeping with the use of *before* and *never* in (4a–b), which trigger an indefinite perfect reading.)
(c) When a durative situation has never actualized in a period up to t_0 but is actualizing at t_0, the speaker can choose between the present perfect and the past perfect to refer to it:

> I *have* never *dreamed* of meeting these people before. *(before = 'before t_0')*
>
> I *had* never *dreamed* of meeting these people before. *(before = 'before I started meeting these people a short time ago')*

Sentence (4b) is fine because a durative full situation whose situation time is located at t_0 (and hence represented as punctual – see 3.1.1) must actually have started before t_0. This means that the initial point of the full situation is anterior to t_0 and can therefore be treated as a past orientation time to which another situation time can be represented as T-anterior by the use of the past perfect.

(d) In the same way, when a durative situation has never actualized in a period leading up to a post-present pseudo-t_0 but is actualizing at that post-present time, the speaker can choose between the present perfect and the past perfect to refer to it:

> [If you join our club,] you will know a lot about people that you *have* never *dreamed* of meeting before. *(before = 'before the pseudo-t_0, i. e. before the time of your knowing about these people')*

> [If you join our club,] you will know a lot about people that you *had* never *dreamed* of meeting before. *(before = 'before the time when you will know a lot about these people as a result of meeting them')*

The second example is grammatical because a durative situation (viz. knowing a lot about people) whose situation time is located at a pseudo-t_0 (and hence represented as punctual – see 3.1.1) must actually have started before that pseudo-t_0. This means that the initial point of the full situation is anterior to the pseudo-t_0 and can therefore be treated as a pseudo-past orientation time to which a situation time can be represented as T-anterior by the use of the past perfect.

(e) Because the past perfect requires that the initial point of the post-present situation function as a pseudo-past orientation time, i. e. as an orientation time that is past with respect to (and hence treated as disconnected from) the pseudo-t_0, the past perfect is only possible if there is no link (other than the temporal one) between the situation referred to by the past perfect and the pseudo-past binding orientation time. This means that it is the present perfect that has to be used if the speaker is to express a resultative link between the anterior situation and what is the case at the pseudo-past binding orientation time.

The analysis outlined in (a)–(e) appears to account for the examples in (4). In (4a) [*If you join our club, you will know a lot about people that you had never dreamed of meeting before*], the situation of never dreaming of meeting certain people is represented as anterior to the beginning of the situation of knowing a lot about them, but there is no causative or resultative link between these two situations. In (4b) [*Individuals who had never considered taking part in public debate will be attracted to the success of certain ventures*], the situation of never considering taking part in public debate is represented as anterior to the beginning of the new situation (viz. the situation of people feeling attracted to the success of certain ventures) but does not have any bearing on the latter. Instead there is a sense of contrast between the two situations. (As a matter of fact, in each of (4a–b) there is a contrast between the situation referred by in the future tense and the situation referred to in the past perfect. Thus, in (4a) the post-present situation of knowing a lot about certain people is contrasted with the anterior situation of never having met those people before.)

However, things are different in (5). In (5a) [*If you peep through this hole in the curtain, you will see the audience that {have / *had} come to watch the play*], there is a resultative link between the anterior situation and the pseudo-t_0 at which the seeing is located: we interpret (5a) as 'If you peep through this hole in the curtain, you will see the audience that are here to watch the play as a result of having come to watch the play.' This resultative link means that the coming must be represented as anterior to the seeing and not as anterior to a time which is treated as past with respect to the seeing. In other words, the condition for the use of the past perfect referred to in (e) is not satisfied. The past perfect would effectively represent the coming to see the play as anterior to the beginning of the seeing and represent the latter as past with respect to the rest of the situation of seeing. This divorcing of the coming and the seeing is not possible if there is to be a resultative link between the two. This is in keeping with the fact that the future situation of 'seeing the audience that are here to watch the play' does not contrast with the earlier situation of people having come to watch the play.

It should be noted, however, that the past perfect must be used if (5a) is modified in such a way that the idea of present result (viz. 'the audience are hear to watch the play') is cancelled:

> If you peep through this hole in the curtain, you will see the audience that {**have* / *had*} *come* to see the play talking among themselves and paying no attention to the actors.

In this context, the resultative idea 'they are here to see the play' is no longer valid at the time of *will see*. It is clear that the audience are not watching the play and have forgotten about their initial intention of doing so. The use of *had come to see the play* is therefore normal: both the coming to see the play and the resultant state of being in the theatre to see the play are anterior to (in the sense of 'completely over at') the post-present time of seeing the audience talking among themselves and paying no attention to the actors. It is therefore impossible to use the present perfect *have come to see the play* with its concomitant implication of 'they are here to see the play'. This accords with the fact that there is a clear contrast between this anterior state and what is actually happening at the time referred to by *will see*.

Sentence (5b) (repeated here) can be accounted for in a similar way:

> (5b) [Don't tell that joke to everyone you talk with this afternoon or you will not be able to use it during your public appearance tonight.] I will not have you telling a joke which you {*have* / **had*} already *told* several times.

Again we have to use the present perfect (*has told*) because the relative clause implies a resultative link between the anterior repeated telling of the joke and what is the case at the time of the pseudo-t_0 at which tonight's telling is located: the intended interpretation is 'I will not have you telling a joke which people will already be familiar with as a result of your having told it several times before.' The past perfect cannot express this meaning, for it would represent the past telling as anterior to the beginning of the post-present telling, while treating that beginning as past with respect to the post-present telling itself. This intervening past orientation time excludes the possibility of a resultative interpretation.

The use of the past perfect in (4a–b) versus the use of the present perfect in (5a–b) is accompanied by further differences between the two types of sentences. To begin with, in (4a–b) the head clause in the future tense is each time positive while the relative clause in the past perfect is each time negative. It follows that there can be a contrast in interpretation between the future actualization of the head clause situation and the nonactualization of the same kind of situation in a period leading up to the beginning of that future actualization. In (5a–b) both clauses are positive, so that there is no sense of contrast between actualization and earlier nonactualization.

Secondly, the tenses in (4a–b) and (5a–b) reveal a difference of 'TEMPORAL FOCUS' (see 11.1.1). In both (4a–b) and (5a–b) the speaker makes a prediction and in doing so expresses his own point of view concerning the future. The fact that in (5a–b) he focuses on (i. e. is primarily concerned with) the post-present time of the resultant state expressed by the present perfect form is in keeping with this: the time focused on is the same time as the time about which a prediction is made. The only point of view that is taken in these sentences is therefore that of the speaker. In (4a–b), by contrast, the past perfect reveals a temporal focus on the pseudo-past orientation time to which the situation referred to in the past perfect is anterior. This means that, apart from expressing his own point of view about the post-present (by making a prediction), the speaker also assumes the temporal standpoint, and hence the point of view (see 11.3.2), of the person(s) participating in the post-present situation. Thus, in (4a) [*If you join our club, you will know a lot about people that you had never dreamed of meeting before*] the speaker expresses not only his own point of view (in that he makes a prediction) but also the viewpoint of an imagined 'having-joined-the-club addressee' potentially saying *I hadn't dreamed of meeting these people before (= before I met them after joining the club)*. (Of course, this does not mean that the speaker actually attributes such a thought or utterance to the club-joiner; it just means that the speaker predicts that this thought could be entertained in the world envisaged from the point of view that the club-joiner would have in the predicted post-present world.)

9.27.3 Let us now have a look at the following examples:

(6a) In future he will never again speak about a subject that he {*has* / **had*} not studied in detail.

(6b) In future he will always speak about a subject that he {*has* / **had*} studied in detail.

(6c) In future he will (always) speak about a subject that he {*has* / *had*} never spoken about before.

(6d) In future he will never again speak about a subject that he {*has* / ?*had*} never spoken about before.

In (6a–b) the present perfect (*has studied*) has to be used because there is a resultative link to be communicated: the intended readings are as follows:

> 'He will never again speak about a subject that he is not familiar with as a result of having studied it in detail.'
>
> 'He will always speak about a subject that he knows well as a result of having studied it in detail.'

In (6c) both the present perfect (*has spoken*) and the past perfect (*had spoken*) are in principle possible because there are two interpretations that make sense, viz. the following:

(6′) 'He will always speak about a subject that is new because it will (each time) be the case that he has not spoken about it yet.'

(6″) 'He will take up the habit of speaking about a subject that he had not spoken about (before taking up the habit in question).'

The former interpretation requires the present perfect form *has spoken* in (6c) and implies that there are various subjects that will be treated.[14] Interpretation (6c″) is conveyed by the past perfect *had spoken*. On this reading, the situation time of the situation of not speaking about the subject is located before the beginning of the post-present habitual situation. The implication now is that it is the same subject that will be treated on the various future occasions of speaking. It follows that the resultative idea 'Each instance of speaking will concern a new subject' is absent here.

In (6d) the former type of interpretation (viz. 'He will never again speak about a subject that is new') makes sense, but the latter kind of interpretation ('He will never again take up the habit of speaking about a subject that he had never spoken about (before taking up the habit)') is more complex and apparently more difficult to process and contextualize. Hence the lower acceptability of the past perfect.

9.27.4 One of the corner-stones of the above analysis is the observation that in order to relate a situation time to the central orientation time of a post-present domain we use the same tenses as we use to relate a situation time to t_0. This means that the use of the present perfect *vs* the past perfect in the above examples should not be affected if we replace the future tense in the head clause by the present tense. This prediction appears to be borne out, as we see when we consider the examples in (7), which are quite similar to the examples given so far, except that the head clause refers to the present, and not to the post-present:

---

[14] In this case the post-present situation is of the repetitive (or habitual) kind. It consists of a number of subsituations, each of which can be described in terms of 'He will speak about a subject that is new because he has not spoken about it before'. (Semantically this is similar to what we observe in *Each time he speaks about a subject in future, he will not have spoken about it before*.)

(7a) Thanks to this club I now know a lot about people that I {*had* / **have*} never dreamed of meeting before.

(7b) [Our local pressure group is achieving results and the interest is gathering momentum.] Individuals who {*had* / **have*} never considered taking part in public debate are now being attracted to the success of certain ventures.

(7c) Through this hole in the curtain you can see the audience that {*have* / **had*} come to see the play. *(The past perfect is unacceptable because there is to be a resultative link.)*

(7d) He is again telling that joke which he {*has* / **had*} already told several times. *(idem)*

(7e) He never speaks about a subject that he {*has* / **had*} not studied in detail. *(idem)*

(7f) He always speaks about a subject that he {*has* / **had*} studied in detail.

(7g) This year he (always) lectures on a subject that he {*has* / *had*} never spoken about before.

(7h) This year he never lectures on a subject that he {*has* / ?*had*} never spoken about before.

These sentences (and their interpretations) run completely parallel to what we have observed in connection with the examples in (2)−(6). For example, in (7g) (which runs parallel to (6c)), the present perfect yields reading (7g′), while the past perfect yields reading (7g″). These interpretations resemble (6c′) and (6c″) in that the former implies that the subjects treated are each time different, whereas the latter implies that the speaker each time deals with the same subject.

(7g′) ‘This year he always lectures on a subject that is new because it is (each time) the case that he has not lectured on it yet.’

(7g″) ‘This year he has taken up the habit of lecturing on a subject that he had not lectured on (before taking up the habit in question).’

Similarly, in (7h) the present perfect suggests the interpretation ‘This year he never lectures on a subject that is new’, whereas the past perfect suggests the (somewhat less accessible and less plausible) interpretation ‘This year he never takes up the habit of lecturing on a subject that he had never lectured on (before taking up the habit)’.

The following are attested examples similar to the ones in (7) combining a past perfect with a present tense:

(stage direction) The procession music, which *had been allowed* to fade out, *is brought up* by the opening of the study door. (JUMP) *(This is to be read as ‘At this*

> *point, the music which had, prior to the interval immediately preceding now, which was without music, been allowed to fade out, comes gradually back.' This implies that it is not until the music comes back 'up' that we realize that there has been an interval with no music, precisely because the music faded out rather than being cut off in an intrusive way, and we have been absorbed in the drama and not noticed its absence.)*
>
> Food for the party *is* now *being cooked* in the English style – after team manager Walter Winterbottom *had gone* into the hotel kitchen to instruct the chef. (TCIE) *(This can only make sense if read as 'Food for the party is now being cooked in the English style. They began doing so after team manager Walter Winterbottom had gone into the hotel kitchen to instruct the chef.')*

9.27.5 It should be clear, then, that the possibility of using a past perfect in a subclause depending on a head clause locating its situation time in the present or post-present depends on the possibility of treating the beginning of the present or post-present situation as a time that is past with respect to the rest of the situation. We have observed that this possibility is excluded if there is a resultative link between the two situations. This does not mean, however, that it is always available when there is not such a link. In fact, when there is no link of result (or, more generally, relevance) between the two situations we often have to use the past tense or present perfect to refer to the anterior situation because 'anteriority to t_0 or to a pseudo-t_0' is unmarked with respect to 'anteriority to an unspecified orientation time that is anterior to t_0 or to a pseudo-t_0'. The latter option is only selected if there is some positive reason to do so.

> He is now reading the book that I {*gave* / *have given* / **had given*} him.
>
> He will be reading the book that I {*gave* / *have given* / **had given*} him.

The clearest examples in which the past perfect is used are those in which the past tense will not be used because the conditions for using a perfect form are satisfied, and in which the perfect form in question cannot be a present perfect because the meaning of this tense is incompatible with the context. Compare:

> (8a) His popularity is so immense that some people who {*had* / **have*} never *been* to the opera now go regularly, just to hear him sing.
>
> (8b) His popularity is so immense that I predict that some people who {*had* / *have*} never *been* to the opera will go regularly, just to hear him sing.

In both cases a perfect form is called for because *never* is interpreted as 'never in a time span leading up to [some orientation time]'. As noted in connection with the present perfect, it is typically one of the perfect tenses that is used to locate a situation time in such a time span. If we use the present perfect, the situation time is located in a time span that leads up to t_0 (as in *I have never been to the opera*). In (8a) this use of the present tense is unacceptable because the meaning of *have never been to the opera* clashes with the statement that the people in question now go to listen to 'him' *regularly* in a short period, which implies that these people have already been to the opera. In (8b), on the other hand, the present perfect is not impossible because we can interpret *never* as 'never up to t_0', which does not clash with the idea of a future habit. However, the present perfect is not possible if *never* is to be interpreted as 'never up to then'.

It follows that a past perfect of this kind will never receive a continuative interpretation: in this reading the situation continues into the relevant orientation time rather than coming to an end at the (past) time when the situation holding at the relevant orientation time began to hold. Compare:

> People who *have lived* in London for many years will regularly attend these meetings.
>
> People who *had lived* in London for many years will regularly attend these meetings.

In the former example, *have lived* receives a continuative interpretation: the people in question will still be living in London when they attend the meetings. In the second example, by contrast, *had lived* is interpreted as an indefinite past perfect: the people in question will no longer be living in London at the time when they attend the meetings.

9.27.6 In conclusion, we can say that an explanation has been offered for the observation that a subclause depending on a head clause in the present or future tense may sometimes use the past perfect instead of the present perfect. The explanation is that the past perfect functions as an instruction to look for a suitable past orientation time, to which the situation time can be interpreted as being anterior. If the head clause refers to the present or the post-present and there is no contextually given past orientation time, it is the beginning of the head-clause situation that is interpreted as being the past or pseudo-past orientation time in question. (Self-evidently this is only possible if the head clause situation has a certain duration, so that its beginning can be seen as past with respect to the rest of the situation. In many cases it is of the habitual kind.)

V. Direct and indirect binding

9.28 Definitions

When a subclause is temporally subordinated to its own head clause, we speak of 'direct binding'. When a subclause is not T-bound by its own head clause but by a syntactically higher clause which T-binds that head clause, we speak of 'indirect binding'. Indirect binding is subject to severe constraints.

9.28.1 In section 8.21.1 it was pointed out that, when two clauses follow each other, the situation time of the second clause may or may not be bound by (i. e. temporally subordinated to) the situation time of the first clause. If its situation time is not bound by it, it is related to t_0, which means that the tense form used establishes a new temporal domain. The two possibilities (binding or shifting the domain) are illustrated by the following sentences:

> The woman has told her friends once or twice that she *was* afraid to go home because her husband *would* perhaps *be* drunk and *knock* her about. *(All the subclause situation times are temporally subordinated.)*
>
> John has been expelled from the club because he *has behaved* badly. *(shift of domain)*

When the situation time is T-bound in a past domain, there are sometimes two possibilities as to the choice of binding time. Compare the following, in which the past perfect forms in the head clauses are the past counterparts of the present perfects in the head clauses of the preceding examples:

> [The police knew that] the girl *had told* her friends once or twice that she *was* afraid to go home because her husband *would* perhaps *be* drunk and *knock* her *about*.
>
> [Mary knew that] John *had been expelled* from the club because he *had behaved* badly.

The first of these examples illustrates what we will call DIRECT BINDING: the situation time of each subclause is temporally subordinated to the situation time of its own head clause (= syntactically superordinate clause). This means that the situation time of *she was afraid* is represented as T-simultaneous with the situation time of the first *that*-clause (whose verb is *had told*), which is itself represented as T-anterior to the situation time of the matrix clause (= the highest clause in the syntactic tree structure, which in this case is the clause establishing the domain). The fact that the situation of the second *that*-clause (= the being afraid) is also interpreted as W-anterior to that of the matrix clause is not expressed by its tense form *(was afraid)*. In the second example, temporal subordination happens differently: here not only the situation time of the *that*-clause but also the situation time of the (more deeply embedded) *because*-clause is represented as T-anterior to the situation time of the matrix clause. There is therefore no expression of the T-relation between the situation times of the two subclauses. This means that only the *that*-clause is bound directly (i. e. bound by its own head clause). The *because*-clause is BOUND INDIRECTLY (i. e. its situation time is temporally subordinated to the situation time of a clause which is not its own head clause). This kind of tense structure is shown by Figure 9.16. (The wavy line represents the W-simultaneity relation that is not linguistically expressed.)

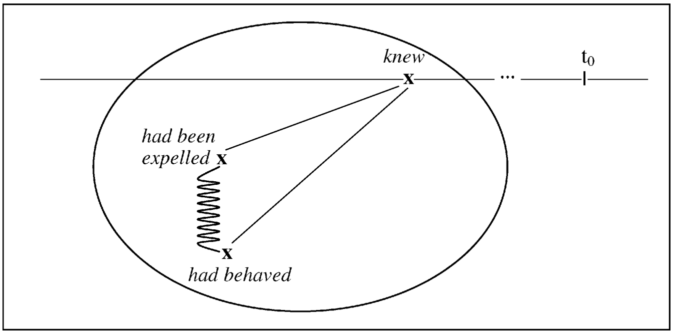

Figure 9.16. The tense structure of *Mary knew that John had been expelled from the club because he had behaved badly.*

9.28.2 As appears from the following examples, there are constraints on both direct and indirect binding:

(9a) We expected that Elsie would still be in bed when we {*arrived* / **would arrive*}. *(W-posterior reading; only direct binding is possible: the binding orientation time has to be the situation time of would be, not that of expected.)*

(9b) We hoped that the kidnappers would release the girl after the ransom {*had been paid* / **would have been paid*}. *(Only direct binding is allowed: the binding situation time has to be the situation time of would release, not the situation time of hoped.)*[15]

(10a) [She was determined to buy the house.] She had fallen in love with it the moment she *saw* it. *(W-simultaneous reading; saw effects direct binding.)*

---

[15] Remember that the conditional tense expresses one T-relation, which is, however, 'complex' in that it combines the idea 'The situation time is anterior to an orientation time' and 'That orientation time is posterior to another orientation time in a past domain' (see 9.7).

(10b) [She was determined to buy the house.] The moment she *had seen* it she had fallen in love with it. *(W-simultaneous reading; had seen effects indirect binding.)*

(11a) I promised that some day I would tell the news to John, who {*would be* / *#was*} interested to hear it. *(W-posterior reading; only indirect binding is possible on the intended interpretation.)*

(11b) What we hoped was that the next day we would be freed by the police, who {*would have been* / **had been*} notified by then. *(Only indirect binding is allowed: the binding situation time has to be the situation time of hoped, not the situation time of would be freed.)*

(12a) Many years before, she had given the money to someone who *needed* it more than she *did*. *(W-simultaneous readings; direct binding)*

(12b) Many years before, she had given the money to someone who *had needed* it more than she *had done*. *(W-simultaneous readings; indirect binding)*

What we notice is that whereas the adverbial time clauses of (9a–b) must be bound directly, those in (10) may be bound either directly, as in (10a), or indirectly, as in (10b). The nonrestrictive relative clauses in (11) must be bound indirectly, while the restrictive relative clause in (12) allows the two possibilities. This means that the speaker cannot always choose freely between direct and indirect binding: the choice depends in the first place on the kind of clause that is used to describe the bound situation.

It is also worth noting that the sentences in (9), (11) and (12) are the exact past time-sphere counterparts of the following sentences, which locate the situation times in the present time-sphere:

(13a) We expect that Elsie will still be in bed when we {*arrive* / **will arrive*}. *(W-simultaneous reading; direct binding is obligatory; shifting the domain by using the future tense is ungrammatical.)*

(13b) We hope that the kidnappers will release the girl after the ransom {*has been paid* / **will have been paid*}. *(W-anterior reading; direct binding is obligatory; shifting the domain by using the future perfect tense is ungrammatical.)*

(14a) I promise that some day I will tell the news to John, who {*will be* / **is*} interested to hear it. *(W-simultaneous reading; shifting the domain by using the future tense is obligatory; direct binding is ungrammatical.)*

(14b) What we hope is that tomorrow we will be freed by the police, who {*will have been* / **have been*} notified by then. *(W-simultaneous reading; shifting the domain by using the future tense is obligatory; direct binding is ungrammatical.)*

(15a) By the end of this week she will have given the money to someone who *needed* it more than she *did*. *(W-simultaneous readings; direct binding)*

(15b) By the end of this week she will have given the money to someone who *will have needed* it more than she *will*. *(W-simultaneous readings; the future perfect forms create post-present domains of their own.)*

As is clear from the comments added to (9)–(15), these examples do not show that the system of tenses for direct *vs* indirect binding in a past domain parallels the system of tenses for direct *vs* indirect binding in a post-present domain. What they do show is the following. Firstly, there is a perfect parallelism between past and post-present domains as far as direct binding is concerned: the forms expressing direct binding in a past domain are the past counterparts of the forms expressing direct binding in a post-present domain. Secondly, there is a perfect parallelism between indirect binding in a past domain and the use of the future tense or future perfect to establish a post-present domain. In other words, direct and indirect binding in a past domain parallel the use of the 'PSEUDO-t_0-System' and the 'ABSOLUTE FUTURE SYSTEM', respectively, when the reference is to the post-present – see 10.1 and 10.2.

9.28.3 Up to now we have only given examples of indirect binding in a past domain. The phenomenon is obviously not to be observed in present domains, which do not allow binding at all: any relation to t_0 is expressed by an absolute tense (see 9.14). In pre-present domains, indirect binding can be observed only when the pre-present domain is expanded as if it were a past one, as in the following example:

> Have you ever treated a woman who had broken an ankle as she {*had stepped* / *stepped*} out of her car? (*Had stepped relates its situation time to the situation time of have treated rather than to the situation time of had broken; in doing so it effects indirect binding. For direct binding we use stepped, which represents the situation of stepping out of the car as T-simultaneous with the situation of breaking an ankle. With had stepped, the latter two situations are interpreted as W-simultaneous without being represented as T-simultaneous with each other.*)

The following examples illustrate direct and indirect binding (respectively) in a subdomain of a post-present domain:

> Some day you will announce that Blackwell will publish a book of yours that *has taken* you three years to write. (*direct binding: has taken is a pseudo-absolute tense form which represents the writing as T-anterior to the situation time of will publish.*)
>
> Some day you will announce that Blackwell will publish a book of yours, which *will have taken* you years to write. (*indirect binding: will have taken is a pseudo-absolute-relative tense form which T-relates the writing to the situation time of will announce rather than to the situation time of will publish.*)[16]

---

[16] Like the conditional tense (see the previous footnote), the future perfect expresses one T-relation, which is, however, 'absolute-relative' in that it combines the idea 'The situation time is anterior to an orientation time' (= the relative part) and 'That orientation time is posterior to t_0' (= the absolute part) – see 2.47.

9.29 The distribution of direct and indirect binding

9.29.1 As noted in 9.28.2, the past counterpart of the choice between the present tense expressing T-simultaneity in a post-present domain (on the one hand) and the future tense or future perfect establishing a post-present domain (on the other) is the choice between the relative past tense (expressing T-simultaneity), on the one hand, and the conditional tense or conditional perfect (effecting indirect binding), on the other. It follows that the distribution of the tenses in the latter option will be the same as the distribution of the tenses in the former option. This was already illustrated in section 9.28.2, where we noted the complete parallelism between (9) and (11)–(12) on the one hand and (13)–(15) (respectively) on the other. (The distribution of the tenses in (14)–(15) will be discussed in more detail in chapter 10.)

9.29.2 As far as the past perfect expressing indirect binding in a past domain is concerned, we notice first of all that it is used in the same clause types as those which use a verb form establishing a post-present domain (rather than expressing T-simultaneity in such a domain) and make use of indirect binding by means of *would* or *would have* rather than of direct binding in a past domain by means of the relative past tense. This is the case in independent clauses and in such subclauses as result clauses, nonrestrictive relative clauses, *(al)though*-clauses, clauses expressing a 'closed' condition, etc. (see 10.8):

> [She was let in by the janitor.] The latter had closed the door and *had had to* get out of his bed when she rang the bell.[17] *(independent clause)*
>
> The house in question, which he *had visited* the day before, had instantly pleased him. *(nonrestrictive relative clause)*
>
> He boasted that he had never been afraid in his life, though he *had found* himself in a lot of dangerous situations. *(though-clause)*
>
> If, as you say, he *had* never *worked* in his life, he had never earned any money. [So, how had he managed to survive?] *(clause expressing a closed condition)*
>
> She said that the previous summer she had been to Italy for a brief visit to a friend who had been spending her holidays in Sienna. *(In a restrictive relative clause like this, direct binding by means of the relative past tense (was spending) is also possible.)*

9.29.3 However, there are two extra uses of the past perfect for indirect binding. Firstly, indirect binding can be found in adverbial time clauses introduced by a conjunction whose unmarked interpretation is that of W-simultaneity, viz.

---

[17] If we used *had to* instead of *had had to*, we would be using an absolute past tense form (creating a new past domain) rather than a relative past tense form. This would mean that the relevant situation time would not be bound at all, neither directly nor indirectly.

while, *when* and *as*.[18] Thus, in the following examples the past perfect expresses indirect binding, while the past tense expresses direct binding (T-simultaneity):

> The police said the man had waited in the car while the others {*had robbed* / *robbed*} the bank. Penelope had been biting her nails while she {*had been waiting* / *was waiting*}.
>
> He had considered, as he {*had walked* / *walked*} back to the hotel, what he should do next.
>
> As he {*had walked* / ?*walked*} back to the hotel, he had considered what he should do next.

Secondly, in 'past represented speech' (see 8.25.1) examples can be found in which the past perfect expresses indirect binding in the complement clause of cognition verb (verb of thinking):

> [Every time that Nick's name was brought up, she relived the moment that she had woken up beside Aj, relived the second that] she had known that she *had been pregnant* [and re-cried all of the tears that she had shed when she realized what she must do.] (www)
>
> I had known that she *had been* sick for some time but put off calling her. (www)
>
> [He couldn't bear to tell me that] the whole village had known that he *had been carrying on* with a local teacher. (www) *(The context makes it clear that this is to be understood as equivalent to* *... the whole village had known that he was carrying on with a local teacher**, in which* *was carrying on* *expresses T-simultaneity and is therefore an instance of direct binding.)*
>
> [In an interview with a Los Angeles TV station, she said that] she had been aware that her mother *had been* at her bedside. (www, from an article on a girl who has woken from a coma) *(**Had been* *at her bedside is naturally interpreted as W-simultaneous with* *had been aware**: while her mother was at her bedside she was conscious of the fact of her being there. The reading in which she was aware of her mother's having been at her bedside at some earlier time is possible but less plausible.)*
>
> [As reported by Wednesday's Los Angeles Times, Nasso's attorney said that] he had been aware that Seagal *had been talking* to a federal grand jury. (www) *(The W-simultaneity reading is at least a possible one.)*
>
> [Recently I stopped in at the workplace of a consumer so that we could discuss some mutual concerns.] I had known that she *had been having* some difficulty with her eyesight, [but I hadn't realized the extent of it until I walked into her darkened office. Light bothers her, and she wears different pairs of dark glasses for different

---

[18] In the same way as adverbial time clauses do not normally allow the future tense (see 10.3.2), they do not normally allow indirect binding by means of the conditional or conditional perfect. Still, occasional exceptions can be found:

(i) ... so I suggested she should come down the week-end after Christmas while the family *would* still *be* there. (FFFP)

> situations.] (www) *(Had been having refers to a situation that is W-simultaneous with that of had known. A W-anteriority interpretation would be very odd since it is evident from the context that the difficulty continues and there is no indication that the speaker thought at some time that the difficulty had ceased prior to the knowing.)*

In the above examples, the reporting verb is each time a cognition verb (*know*, *feel*, *be aware*). We have not found any examples with indirect binding in a *that*-clause depending on a verb of communication (*say*, *tell*, *hear* ...). This is in keeping with the fact that the italicized past perfects in the following examples can only be interpreted in terms of W-anteriority:

> [Nasso's attorney said that] he had {told / informed} his colleague that Seagal *had been talking* to a federal grand jury.
>
> I had heard that she *had been* sick for some time [but had put off calling her].

The use of *was having*, rather than *had been having*, in the following example is in keeping with the above observation:

> [Recently I stopped in at the workplace of a consumer so that we could discuss some mutual concerns.] I had {heard / been told} that she {*was having* / *#had been having*} some difficulty with her eyesight, [but I hadn't realized the extent of it until I walked into her darkened office. Light bothers her, and she wears different pairs of dark glasses for different situations.] *(Had been having is not ungrammatical here, but it receives a 'co-extensive interpretation' – see 5.2.2 – in which the situation time leads up to the time of the speaker's learning about the difficulty. However, this interpretation is hardly reconcilable with the context that follows.)*

VI. Summary

9.30 The expression of T-relations in a past domain

9.30.1 T-anteriority in a past domain is expressed by means of the past perfect, irrespective of whether the binding time is the central orientation time or another orientation time within that past domain.

> She said that John *had told* her that he *had done* it all by himself. *(The past perfect form had told represents its situation time as T-anterior to the central orientation time, namely the situation time of said, while had done represents its situation time as T-anterior to another orientation time, namely the situation time of had told.)*

There are some grammatical environments, subject to further conditions, in which the absolute past tense alternates with the past perfect, in which case the inferred anteriority relation is a matter of W-interpretation rather than T-representation. Of particular note are *after*-clauses, head-clauses of a *before*-clause, and *since*-constructions:

> He retired soon after he {*turned* / had turned} sixty.
>
> Some students {had left / *left*} before the lecture ended.
>
> The tree had grown a lot since it {had been / *was*} planted.

9.30.2 T-simultaneity in a past domain is expressed by means of the relative past tense, irrespective of whether the binding time is the central orientation time or another orientation time in that past domain.

> Were you there when John *announced* that he would retire from business when he *was* sixty, [which is in two years' time?] *(The past tense form announced represents its situation time as T-simultaneous with the central orientation time, namely the situation time of were, while was represents its situation time as T-simultaneous with another orientation time, namely the situation time of would retire. As we argued in chapter 8, the fact that this latter orientation time happens to lie after t_0 is important theoretically, since it demonstrates the need for positing the existence of the relative past tense, distinct from the absolute past tense.)*

9.30.3 T-posteriority in a past domain is expressed by means of the conditional tense (i. e. '{*would* / *should*} + present infinitive') or by means of the past tense of a 'futurish form', irrespective of whether the binding time is the central orientation time or another orientation time within that past domain. The choice of a form to express T-posteriority depends on the precise meaning which is to be expressed.

> He promised that he *would* soon *tell* her when he *would make* his decision. *(The conditional tense form would tell represents its situation time as T-posterior to the*

> *central orientation time, namely the situation time of promised, while would make represents its situation time as T-posterior to another orientation time, namely the situation time of would tell.)*
>
> [Anxiously, he looked at the clouds.] There *was going to be* a storm within minutes. *(Free indirect speech; the situation is not only posterior to but also predictable at a past orientation time)*
>
> He told me he *was leaving* the next day.

9.30.4 The 'complex temporal relation' of anteriority to an orientation time which is itself posterior to some other orientation time in a past domain is expressed by means of the conditional perfect tense ('{*would* / *should*} + perfect infinitive'), irrespective of whether this latter orientation time is the central orientation time or yet another orientation time within the past domain.

> Bill (had) promised that he *would have finished* by the end of the day. *(The conditional perfect tense form would have finished represents its situation time as T-anterior to an orientation time, which is interpreted here as being the time indicated by the end of the day, and this orientation time is represented by the same tense form as T-posterior to another orientation time, namely the time of the promising. This latter time is the central orientation time if the tense form is promised; it is an orientation time which is represented as itself T-anterior to an implicit central orientation time if the tense form is had promised.)*

9.31 The expression of T-relations in a pre-present domain

9.31.1 If the pre-present domain is established by an indefinite perfect (which is the case when the pre-present situation time, as well as the time of the full situation, is interpreted as lying completely before t_0 rather than as leading up to it), it can be expanded as if it were a past domain. This means that there is a shift of temporal perspective: the pre-present central orientation time is treated as if it were a past orientation time, to which other situation times can be T-related by means of the same tenses as are used in past domains. For example:

> The former prime minister has never admitted that he *had misled* the public when he *promised* he *would create* a modern welfare state.

A pre-present domain is not normally expanded by means of such a shift of perspective if the pre-present situation receives a recency (e.g. a 'hot news') interpretation. In that case, the speaker usually shifts the domain by using an absolute tense in the added subclause:

> Hey guys, I've just been told that the boss {*will* / ??*would*} come round this afternoon.

9.31.2 If the pre-present domain is established by an up-to-now perfect (which is the case when the situation time fills the entire pre-present but does not include t_0), there are in principle two possibilities in the subclause: temporal subordination (involving a shift of temporal perspective to the past zone) or a shift of domain. The former possibility can only occur when the speaker can discern enough 'pastness' in the up-to-now situation expressed in the head clause to expand the pre-present domain as if it were a past domain. The latter possibility occurs when the up-to-now situation is given a recency interpretation. For example:

> For all these years, I have been wrongly thinking that I {was doing / had been doing / would do} well to stay a bachelor. *(shift of temporal perspective from the pre-present zone to the past zone)*
>
> I've just been telling him that he {is doing / has been doing / will do} well to stay a bachelor. *(shift of domain)*

9.31.3 If the pre-present domain is established by a continuative perfect (which is the case when the time of the full situation includes t_0), shifting the domain is the rule, with only few exceptions:

> I've known since last week that Jim {has passed all his exams / is seriously ill / will marry next year}. *(… {#had passed all his exams / #was seriously ill / #would marry next year} are possible if the situation times of the complement clauses are T-related to an unspecified past orientation time belonging to the complement clause situation, not if they are directly T-related to the pre-present situation time of the head clause.)*
>
> [I watched Oprah today and George Michael was on there and I enjoyed his interview.] I have known for some time that he *was* gay [but you know he is still sexy]. (www) *(pragmatically motivated exception – see 9.12)*

9.32 The expression of T-relations to a present orientation time

Expressing a temporal relation to the time of a situation located in the present zone is tantamount to relating a situation time to t_0. Since expressing a temporal relation to t_0 is done by means of an absolute tense form, this means that a new domain is created, i. e., that there is a shift of domain. In other words, temporal subordination to a present situation time by means of a relative tense form is not possible:

> I know you {*are lying* / *have* already *lied* before / *will lie* again}. *(Each tense in the subclause establishes a new domain.)*

9.33 The expression of T-relations in a post-present domain

9.33.1 T-relations in a post-present domain are expressed by tenses resulting from a shift of perspective. The speaker treats the post-present central orientation time as if it were t_0 and uses a **pseudo-absolute tense** form to T-relate another situation time to this **pseudo-t_0**, thus locating it in any of the four possible **pseudo-absolute zones** (e. g. the 'pseudo-past zone', the 'pseudo-pre-present zone', etc.). The pseudo-absolute tenses are the same as are used to express T-anteriority, T-simultaneity or T-posteriority to the real t_0, namely the absolute past tense or the present perfect, the present tense and the future tense (or a futurish present tense form), respectively. For example:

> The police will find out that you *were staying* here today, and not in London. *(T-anteriority to a post-present pseudo-t_0)*
>
> Who will look after you when Brad and Sybil *have left*? *(T-anteriority to a post-present pseudo-t_0)*
>
> [If you leave the country] the police will never find out where you *are*. *(T-simultaneity with a post-present pseudo-t_0; T-simultaneity with a post-present pseudo-t_0 can be of the 'sloppy' kind, as in When John* comes *home, I will tell him about the accident.)*
>
> He will swear that he *will* never *tell* her the ugly truth. *(T-posteriority to a post-present pseudo-t_0)*

9.33.2 The pseudo-absolute subdomains created by the pseudo-absolute tenses can be further expanded in exactly the same way as genuine absolute domains can be expanded. For example:

> [If they ask me to have my personal opinion,] I will simply say that the former prime minister has never admitted that he *had misled* the public when he *promised* he *would create* a modern welfare state. *(The present perfect tense form has admitted creates a pseudo-pre-present subdomain, in which T-relations can be expressed by means of the same tenses as are used to expand a real pre-present domain. This is done by treating the pseudo-pre-present time of orientation as if it were a past time of orientation – see. 9.31.1)*

The same goes for the pseudo-past or pseudo-pre-present subdomain established by the anteriority part of the future perfect. For example:

> [Of course, the former prime minister has now still an important political role to play, but I am sure that even on his death bed] he will not have admitted once in his entire life that he *had misled* the public when he *promised* he *would create* a modern welfare state.

9.34 Direct and indirect binding

9.34.1 When a subclause is temporally subordinated to its own head clause, we speak of '**direct binding**'. When a subclause is not T-bound by its own head clause but by a syntactically higher clause which T-binds that head clause, we speak of '**indirect binding**'. Compare:

[The police knew that] the girl *had told* her friends once or twice that she *was* afraid to go home ... *(The situation time of the clause with was is bound directly by situation time of the clause with had told)*

[Mary knew that] John *had been expelled* from the club because he *had behaved* badly. *(The situation time of the clause with had behaved is bound indirectly by the situation time of the clause with knew.)*

9.34.2 There is a parallelism between the choice between direct and indirect binding in a past domain and the use of the 'PSEUDO-T$_0$-SYSTEM' and the 'ABSOLUTE FUTURE SYSTEM', respectively, in a post-present domain – see also chapter 10). Compare the first three sentences of the follwing set with the last three:

We expected that Elsie would still be in bed when we {*arrived* / **would arrive*}. *(Direct binding is obligatory.)*

I promised I would tell the news to John, who {**was* / *would be*} interested to hear it. *(Indirect binding is obligatory.)*

She had been to London for a brief visit to a niece of hers who {*was staying* / *had been staying*} at the Savoy. *(Direct and indirect binding are both allowed.)*

We expect that Elsie will still be in bed when we {*arrive* / **will arrive*}. *(The Pseudo-t_0 System is obligatory.)*

I promise I will tell the news to Joh, who {**is* / *will be*} pleased to hear it. *(The Absolute Future System is obligatory.)*

She has been to London for a brief visit to a niece of hers who {*is staying* / *has been staying*} at the Savoy. *(Both the Pseudo-t_0 System and the Absolute Future System are allowed.)*

10. Two tense systems with post-present reference

I. Introduction 531
10.1 The Absolute Future System 531
10.2 The Pseudo-t_0-System 533
10.3 Outline of the distribution of the two systems 535

II. Theoretical analysis of the Absolute Future System and the Pseudo-t_0-System 537
10.4 Characteristics of the two systems 537
10.5 Summary of part II 547

III. Factors determining the choice between the two systems 548
10.6 Subclauses that allow either system 548
10.7 Subclauses which as a rule use the Pseudo-t_0-System to refer to the post-present 559
10.8 Subclauses which cannot use the Pseudo-t_0-System 566

IV. Further remarks 568

V. Summary 570

Abstract

This chapter deals with two systems of tenses that can be used to refer to situations in a post-present domain. These two systems are referred to as the 'Absolute Future System' and the 'Pseudo-t_0-System'. The Absolute Future System consists of tenses that establish a post-present domain, most notably the future tense (used as an absolute tense) and the present tense of 'futurish' forms (e. g. *I'm leaving tomorrow*). The Pseudo-t_0-System is made up of tenses that express temporal relations within an already established post-present domain. Thus, in *I will be home before it is dark*, the head clause establishes a post-present domain using a tense form that is part of the Absolute Future System, whereas the subclause expresses simultaneity within this domain using a tense form belonging to the Pseudo-t_0-System.

Part I (= sections 10.1–3) introduces each system in turn and ends with a brief overview of their distribution. A fuller discussion of clauses that either allow, require or exclude a system is to be found in part III (= sections 10.6–8).

Meanwhile, part II is devoted to the more theoretical characteristics of each post-present tense system.

A summary of chapter 10 is given in part IV.

I. Introduction

There are two systems of tenses that can be used to talk about post-present situations: the Absolute Future System and the Pseudo-t_0-System. The basic difference between them is that tenses from the former relate the situation time to t_0, whereas tenses from the latter relate it to a post-present orientation time which is treated as if it were t_0. From this it follows that an Absolute Future System form creates a post-present domain, whereas the Pseudo-t_0-System expresses a relation in an already existing domain.

10.1 The Absolute Future System

10.1.1 The ABSOLUTE FUTURE SYSTEM (called *Future Perspective System* in Declerck's earlier work)[1] is the system of verb forms that can be used to establish a post-present domain. This system comprises the future tense (in its absolute rather than pseudo-absolute use), the (absolute) present tense of the 'futurish' verbs *be going to*, *be to*, etc. (see 2.9.1), and the 'absolute-relative' tense forms (i. e. the future perfect and the forms built with *will be going to* and *will have been going to*).

As absolute tense forms, the future tense forms and the futurish verb forms represent the situation time of the situation referred to as the central orientation time of a post-present domain. The ABSOLUTE-RELATIVE TENSE forms also establish a post-present domain but represent the time of their situation as either T-anterior or T-posterior to the central orientation time of the domain in question. That is, they establish a post-present domain and at the same time express a T-relation in it. For example:

> By the end of the week I *will have written* about 100 pages. *(The situation time is T-anterior to the central orientation time of the post-present domain, which is not a situation time but an otherwise unspecified orientation time contained in the Adv-time indicated by the time adverbial.)*
>
> [Don't call at his house at seven.] He *will be going to leave* then. [He has to catch the 7.32 train.] *(The situation time is T-posterior to the central orientation time of the post-present domain.)*
>
> [If you have not paid me back by the end of this month] you *will have been going to pay* me back for exactly six months. *(The situation time is T-posterior to an*

---

[1] The term 'Future Perspective System' was actually a misnomer, because (as will become clear below) the forms it contains imply that the speaker looks at the future from a present perspective: these forms establish a post-present domain.

unspecified orientation time which is T-anterior to the central orientation time of the post-present domain. The head clause is interpreted as 'For exactly six months you will have had the intention of paying me back'.)

10.1.2 An absolute-relative tense differs from a purely absolute one in that it relates its situation time to an orientation time in a post-present domain and not to t_0. It therefore fails to make explicit the temporal W-relation that holds between the situation time in question and t_0, and can therefore be used irrespective of whether the situation time lies before, at, or after t_0:

> [If there is a strike the day after tomorrow,] we'll have worked in vain {yesterday / today / tomorrow}.[2]

10.1.3 In the same way as absolute tense forms can be used as pseudo-absolute forms when they expand a post-present domain (see 9.17.3), the future perfect can be used as a 'pseudo-absolute-relative' tense rather than as an 'absolute-relative' one. This is the case when the origin of the T-posteriority relation is not t_0 but a post-present pseudo-t_0, as in the following:

> He will say that he *will have finished* before 5 o'clock.

The tense structure of this sentence is represented by Figure 10.1.

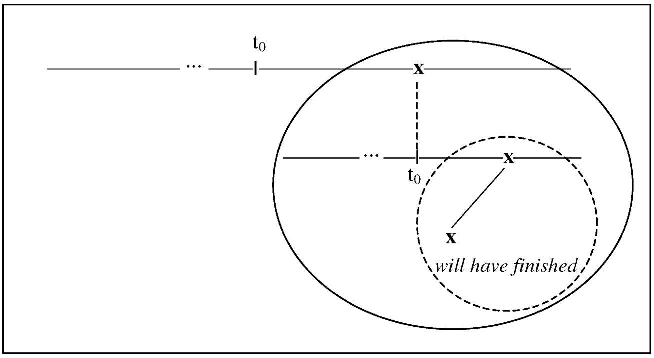

Figure 10.1. The tense structure of *He will say that he will have finished before 5 o'clock.*

---

[2] Imagine the following setting for this sentence: yesterday it was Saturday, but the workers of a particular firm worked all the same because they were behind schedule and wanted to catch up. Today, however, they hear on the radio that there may be a strike the day after tomorrow in one of their supply companies. If the strike goes through, they will soon be unable to continue working and will be behind schedule again. Under these circumstances, one of the workers might utter this sentence.

10.2 The Pseudo-t_0-System

10.2.1 It has been explained in 9.17.1 that once a post-present domain has been established and we want to incorporate a situation time into it, we treat the central orientation time of the post-present domain as if it were a present orientation time, i. e. as if it coincided with t_0. This means that in order to T-relate a situation time to this 'PSEUDO-t_0' we use one of the same tenses as we use to T-relate a situation time to t_0. That is, the tenses used to expand a post-present domain are not formally distinguishable from the absolute tenses. This is clear from examples like the following:

> [If we dump his body in Soho after we have killed him] the police will think that he *was killed* there.
>
> Next Friday his excuse for being late will probably be that he *has been sitting* in a traffic jam caused by the Pope's visit.
>
> [When you arrive in Tokyo] you will find that it *is* already dark.
>
> [If I make up my mind to resign] you will be the first to hear when exactly I *will do* so.

In each of these examples the head clause establishes a post-present domain and the situation time of the complement clause is incorporated into it. Since the speaker treats the central orientation time as if it were t_0, he uses a 'PSEUDO-ABSOLUTE' tense form in the subclause. That is, the tenses used to relate a situation time to the central orientation time of a post-present domain are the preterite or the present perfect for T-anteriority, the present tense for T-simultaneity and the future tense for T-posteriority. In what follows we will call this system of tenses used to express a T-relation in a post-present domain the PSEUDO-t_0-SYSTEM. (This replaces the term 'Present Perspective System', which we used in earlier publications.)[3] The label '*Pseudo*-t_0-System' captures the fact that this system is based on a shift of perspective: the post-present binding orientation time is treated as if it were t_0. In other words, the speaker views the bound situation times from the perspective of a post-present pseudo-t_0.

The Pseudo-t_0-System comprises not only pseudo-absolute tenses functioning as relative tenses establishing a subdomain within the post-present domain but also true relative tenses (like the past perfect) expanding a pseudo-past or pseudo-pre-present subdomain in a post-present domain.

---

[3] The term 'Present Perspective System' was a misnomer, because it wrongly suggests that Pseudo-t_0-System forms imply that the speaker looks at a situation from his present perspective, i. e. from t_0. In actual fact, he views them from the perspective of a post-present pseudo-t_0.

10.2.2 The Pseudo-t_0-System can be defined as the system of tenses used to expand a post-present domain, i. e. used to express a T-relation in an already established post-present domain. Under 'Pseudo-t_0-System tenses' we therefore subsume not only pseudo-absolute tenses functioning as relative tenses *establishing* a subdomain within the post-present domain but also true (genuine) relative tenses (like the past perfect) *expanding* a pseudo-past or pseudo-pre-present subdomain within the post-present domain. The pseudo-absolute tenses relate their situation time to a pseudo-t_0 in the post-present domain. (As shown in 9.21−22, the binding orientation time is a pseudo-t_0 when it is the central orientation time, or an orientation time that is T-simultaneous or T-posterior to the central orientation time, or an orientation time that is T-simultaneous or T-posterior to an orientation time which is T-simultaneous or T-posterior to the central orientation time, etc.) Pseudo-t_0-System forms that expand a pseudo-past or pseudo-present subdomain are not pseudo-absolute forms. Consider:

> After the interview they will check whether what you *told* them (at the interview) *was* true.

In this example, the form *told* is a pseudo-absolute tense form representing its situation time as T-anterior to the central orientation time (= pseudo-t_0). This *told* creates a pseudo-past subdomain which is developed as if it were a genuine (true) past domain. The relative past tense form *was* expresses T-simultaneity within this subdomain. Since both past tense forms express a relation in the post-present domain, both of them are used as Pseudo-t_0-System forms. However, only the first of them is a pseudo-absolute tense form. All this should be clear from Figure 10.2.

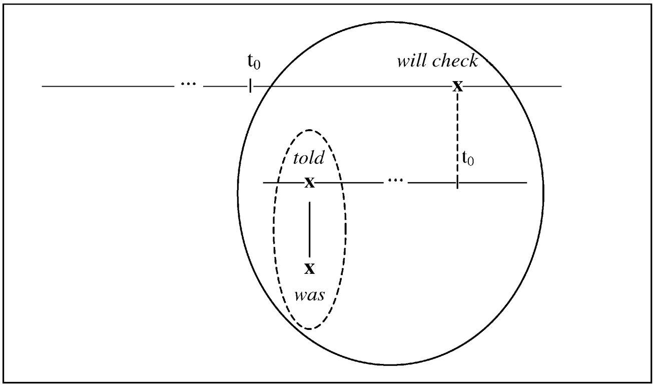

Figure 10.2. The tense structure of *After the interview they will check whether what you told them (at the interview) was true.*

In sentences like *I'm leaving tomorrow*, the present tense form is not a Pseudo-t_0-System form but represents a shift of perspective from the post-present to the present.

10.2.3 Pseudo-t_0-System forms should be distinguished carefully from another use of the present tense with future time reference, viz. that illustrated by sentences like the following:

I'm leaving tomorrow.

Next year Christmas falls on a Wednesday.

This use of the present tense is also the result of a shift of perspective: a post-present situation is treated as if it were a present one. However, this use is clearly different from the use of the present tense in the Pseudo-t_0-System. For one thing, the shift of perspective which occurs here has a semantic effect which is absent if the present tense is a Pseudo-t_0-System form: in the above examples the post-present situation is represented as 'pre-determined' at t_0, i. e. as depending on a present arrangement, programme, plan, etc. (see 3.8–9). For another, this use of the present tense is mainly found in clauses that are syntactically independent, whereas the Pseudo-t_0-System cannot be used in that type of clause at all (see below). Moreover, this use of the present tense can be found in head clauses supporting a subordinate clause using the Pseudo-t_0-System:

We'*re having* a picnic tomorrow, if it *does* not rain. *(Does is a Pseudo-t_0-System form.)*

This means that the present tense in its 'arranged future' use resembles the future tense of the Absolute Future System in that it creates a post-present domain. Such a present tense form is thus a 'futurish' tense form. By contrast, a Pseudo-t_0-System form is generally unable to establish a post-present domain (except in an indirect way – see 9.16 and 9.22.1). It consists of forms that are used to express a T-relation within a post-present domain already established by another clause.

10.3 Outline of the distribution of the two systems

10.3.1 We will conclude these introductory remarks with a brief note on the different distributions of the two systems. As noted above, one of the basic distributional differences between the Absolute Future System and the Pseudo-t_0-System is that only the former can be used in syntactically independent clauses. This is clear from the following examples:

(1) (Whatever happens, it will be no use asking him for details.) He will say that he *has not seen* anything, *has not heard* anything, and that he *does not know* anything at all.

(2) (Whatever happens, it will be no use asking him for details.) He *will not have seen* anything, he *will not have heard* anything, and he *will not know* anything at all.

(3) (Whatever happens, it will be no use asking him for details.) #He *has not seen* anything, *has not heard* anything, and he *does not know* anything at all.

In (1) we have an instance of indirect reported speech, with Pseudo-t_0-System forms in the *that*-clauses. In (2)–(3) the reporting clause *he will say* has been dropped, so that we have 'free indirect speech', i. e. the reported clauses are syntactically independent. Example (2) shows that the result is impeccable if we use Absolute Future System forms, whereas (3) shows that the result is bad (since we get an incoherent piece of discourse) if we try using Pseudo-t_0-System forms: the present perfect forms in (3) are not interpreted as Pseudo-t_0-System forms at all, but rather as absolute tense forms (representing their situations as anterior to t_0).

10.3.2 Subordinate clauses fall into three groups as regards the choice between the Pseudo-t_0-System and the Absolute Future System. In some of them (e. g. nonrestrictive relative clauses) the Absolute Future System is obligatory; others (e. g. adverbial time clauses) require the Pseudo-t_0-System, whereas still others (e. g. restrictive relative clauses) allow either system. For example:

The meeting will be declared open by John, who {*will* also *explain* / *also *explains*} its main purpose.

The meeting will no doubt come to an end before it {*is* / **will be*} 11 p.m.

[The shopkeeper will leave] when/after he {*has* / **will have*} *locked up*.

At the airport you will be met by a man who {*is wearing* / *will be wearing*} a red jacket.

[I predict that some day John will be arrested] because he {*is* / *will be*} speeding.

If John {*is* / #*will be*} in trouble, I will help him. *(is expresses an 'open condition', will be a 'closed' one; the latter interpretation requires a preceding context – see 10.6.8 below)*

See sections 10.6–8 for a fuller discussion of the distribution of the two systems.

II. Theoretical analysis of the Absolute Future System and the Pseudo-t_0-System

The basic difference between the Absolute Future System and the Pseudo-t_0-System is that tense forms from the former relate the situation time to t_0, whereas tense forms from the Pseudo-t_0-System relate the situation time to a post-present ‘basic orientation time’. From this it follows that an Absolute Future System form creates a post-present domain (which is at the same time a temporal domain and an intensional one), whereas the Pseudo-t_0-System expresses a relation in an already existing domain. This means that the temporal specification effected by an Absolute Future System form is independent of the surrounding linguistic context, whereas that effected by a Pseudo-t_0-System form is not. A Pseudo-t_0-System form requires a linguistic context providing the necessary post-present basic orientation time. The use of the Pseudo-t_0-System in a subclause is then a sign that the situations referred to in the subclause and the head clause are closely related to each other, not only temporally but also logically: the subclause is fully integrated into the head clause, and the two situations are presented as forming an interpretive unit.

10.4 Characteristics of the two systems

10.4.1 Before going into the characteristics of the two systems it is necessary to point out that the basic function of a tense is to express a temporal structure which has the form of a chain of T-relations between orientation times. This chain, which may involve one or more T-relations, relates the situation time to a ‘basic orientation time’, either directly or via one or more intermediate orientation times. (As noted in 2.14, the time of the predicated situation (= the situation time) is treated as an orientation time because the time of another situation can be related to it.) The BASIC ORIENTATION TIME is that orientation time in the structure of the tense from which the temporal relations expressed by the tense begin to be computed. In most cases the basic orientation time is t_0, but there are cases in which it is a post-present binding orientation time (i. e. a pseudo-t_0). Compare:

(4a) He has done it.

(4b) [If he does it] he will have to admit to his wife that he *has done* it.

In both (4a) and (4b) the present perfect form *has done* locates the situation time before the basic orientation time. In (4a) the basic orientation time is t_0; in (4b) it is a post-present situation time (the time of admitting), which is treated as if it were t_0. This means that the two present perfect forms realize the same temporal structure (viz. 'situation time anterior to basic orientation time'), with the difference that the basic orientation time is t_0 in (4a) and a post-present 'pseudo-t_0' in (4b). (Note that in (4b) the basic orientation time is interpreted as W-posterior to t_0, but that this relation is not signalled by the tense form *has done* itself: it is inferred from the use of the future tense in the head clause and (especially) from the presence of the clause *if he does it*, which refers to the post-present.)

The following sentences involving a future tense form are similar to (4a—b):

(5a) He will do it.

(5b) [If he decides to do it] he will have to admit to his wife that he *will do* it.

Needless to say, *will do* is used as an Absolute Future System form in (5a) and as a Pseudo-t_0-System form in (5b): in (5a) the situation referred to by *He will do it* is located posterior to t_0; in (5b) the situation referred to by *he will do it* is located posterior to the orientation time established by *will have to admit*). The essential difference between the two systems is therefore the different nature of the basic orientation time: in the Absolute Future System it is t_0, in the Pseudo-t_0-System it is a post-present orientation time referred to in the context. (Since the post-present orientation time is treated as if it were t_0, the tense used to represent the situation time as T-posterior to the pseudo-t_0 is the same as the tense used to represent the situation time as T-posterior to t_0, viz. the future tense.)

10.4.2 One consequence of the different nature of the basic orientation time is that the temporal specification effected by an Absolute Future System form is independent of the surrounding linguistic context, whereas that effected by a Pseudo-t_0-System form is not. A Pseudo-t_0-System form requires a linguistic context providing a post-present orientation time serving as basic orientation time for the Pseudo-t_0-System form. In other words, for a subclause to use the Pseudo-t_0-System, it is necessary that the head clause establishes a post-present domain. However, it should be remembered that this need not be done in an explicit way, i. e. by the use of an Absolute Future System form. As noted in 9.16, a post-present domain can also be established implicitly by the use of an imperative, an infinitive or another form implying post-present actualization:

Do it when the others {have left / *will have left}.

I hope to do it when the others {have left / *will have left}.

What is necessary for the use of a Pseudo-t_0-System form is that there is a post-present time available to function as basic orientation time. This time must be a situation time, but it need not be indicated by a tensed form.

10.4.3 It has been mentioned above that in subclauses we may find either the Absolute Future System or the Pseudo-t_0-System (though in any given subclause only one of the two systems may be available — see sections 10.6—8 regarding the distribution of the two systems). In a complex sentence with an Absolute Future System form in the head clause, we sometimes find the Absolute Future System in the subclause and sometimes the Pseudo-t_0-System. When a subclause uses the Absolute Future System (as in *I will join you, whereas Tom will stay at home*), the temporal relation between the situation time of the head clause and that of the subclause is not expressed by the tense forms: independently of one another, each of the two Absolute Future System forms relates its situation time to t_0 and in doing so establishes a post-present domain. (These two domains may be pragmatically interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other, but this relation is not expressed by the tense forms.) By contrast, if the subclause uses the Pseudo-t_0-System (as in *I will ask him tomorrow what date it is*), the tense form of the subclause locates the situation time of the subclause in the temporal domain created by the Absolute Future System form in the head clause.

10.4.4 It follows that when the Absolute Future System is used in both clauses, the speaker makes two independent predictions: there are, as it were, two speech acts (see also 10.6.4). When the Pseudo-t_0-System is used in the subclause, the speaker makes a single (but complex) prediction: he presents the contents of the two clauses as forming a unit. The use of the Pseudo-t_0-System, which implies that the situation time of the head clause and the situation time of the subclause are located in the same domain, is therefore a sign that the two situations must be interpreted as related to each other. This relation may be purely temporal, but in most cases it is also a logical one: if there is no logical relation between two situations, there is as a rule no reason to relate them temporally to each other. The logical link may even be stronger than the temporal one. For example, in conditional clauses expressing an 'open' condition (e. g. *I'll be happy if she comes*), the use of Pseudo-t_0-System forms (in this case: *comes*) is conventionalized as a means of expressing a logical relationship rather than a purely temporal one: the logical relation is expressed as if it were a temporal one – see 9.20.4 and 10.7.1 below.[4]

10.4.5 In the preceding three subsections, some basic differences have been pointed out between the Absolute Future System and the Pseudo-t_0-System. We will now indicate some further differences following from these.

Because the Pseudo-t_0-System is a way of expressing the temporal and logical relation between the subclause situation and the head clause situation, it implies that the subclause is necessary for a correct interpretation of the head clause. The fact that the head clause and the subclause are thus presented as one INTERPRETIVE UNIT means that it is not only the case that the subclause is dependent for its interpretation on the head clause (which is obvious, since the subclause is both syntactically and temporally subordinated to the head clause), but that it is also the case that the head clause depends for (at least part of) its interpretation on the subclause. It is no coincidence that the types of subclause in which the Pseudo-t_0-System must or can be used show this close interpretive relationship between the two clauses. The following are some typical examples:

---

[4] Though the basic meaning of any tense is to express one or more temporal relations, there are many uses of tense forms that are metaphorical extensions of this. For example, the preterite, whose basic meaning is 'remoteness in time' (i. e. location in the past time-sphere) is conventionally used to express other forms of remoteness, e. g. remoteness from reality, as in *I wish I knew the answer*. Expressing a logical link as if it were a temporal one is also a kind of metaphorical use of a tense.

(a) Conditional clauses expressing an open condition require the use of the Pseudo-t_0-System (see 10.7.1 below). In this type of *if* ... *then* ... sentence the logical dependence of the head clause on the subclause is obvious.

I'll be disappointed if she *doesn't show up*.

(b) Adverbial time clauses also require the use of the Pseudo-t_0-System rather than the Absolute Future System (see 10.7.2 below). In this case the temporal interpretation of the head clause partly depends on the subclause in that the latter specifies the Adv-time which ‘contains’ the situation time of the head clause.

Will you be here when the Gibsons *arrive*?

(c) Concessive subclauses introduced by a *wh*-word in *-ever* normally use the Pseudo-t_0-System if they have a conditional connotation (see 10.7.6):

Whoever *comes* to see me, tell them I'm not at home.

(d) Restrictive relative clauses tend to use the Pseudo-t_0-System, but not if the form in question could be mistaken for an Absolute Future System form (which yields a different interpretation) – see 10.6.8:

I'll report this to the first policeman I *see*.

There'll be a medal for every competitor who *reaches* the finish.

Restrictive relative clauses are essential to the interpretation of the head clause in that the identification of the referent of the antecedent NP depends on it.

(e) Nominal clauses similarly tend to use the Pseudo-t_0-System, but not if the form in question could be mistaken for an Absolute Future System form (with a different meaning) – see 10.6.3:

[Don't steal that money or] it will soon be common knowledge that it *is* in your possession. *(dependent statement)*

Sleep on it and tell me tomorrow whether you still *want* to leave. *(dependent question)*

Next time you should tell me what you *think*. *(nominal relative clause functioning as object clause)*

A nominal clause helps to determine the interpretation of the head clause because it functions as one of the essential arguments of the predicate.

It is clear, then, that the use of the Pseudo-t_0-System is a sign that the subclause is fully integrated in the head clause, both syntactically and semantically. (However, full integration is not a sufficient condition. In all types of subclause that allow the use of the Absolute Future System a co-operative speaker will have to use the latter system if the corresponding Pseudo-t_0-System form would be mistaken for an absolute tense form. For example, in *John won't come because he is out of town*, the present tense is naturally understood as referring to the present (and not as a Pseudo-t_0-System form). Future time reference therefore requires the use of an Absolute Future System form: *John won't come because he will be out of town*.)

Because a post-present situation is 'not-yet-factual' at t_0, a post-present temporal domain is at the same time an 'intensional domain'.

10.4.6 For obvious reasons, a situation that is located in the post-present is still 'not-yet-factual at t_0' (see 7.4). A clause with an Absolute Future System form makes a prediction rather than expressing a fact. This means that the semantics of an Absolute Future System form implies the modal element of not-yet-factuality-at-t_0 next to its basic temporal meaning of establishing a post-present domain.

As a result of this modal element, a temporal domain created by an Absolute Future System form is a kind of INTENSIONAL DOMAIN: the propositions expressed by the clauses whose situation times are incorporated into the post-present temporal domain are interpreted in terms of a post-present possible world which is not the actual t_0-world but a world of expectation which exists in the mind of the speaker. In other words, any subclause that is incorporated into a post-present domain by means of a Pseudo-t_0-System form is interpreted 'OPAQUELY' (i. e. from the point of view of the pseudo-t_0), whereas a subclause that uses the Absolute Future System is interpreted 'TRANSPARENTLY' (i. e. from the point of view of the speaker at t_0). As we have seen in 10.4.4, this means that a subclause with a Pseudo-t_0-System form is interpreted as part of the prediction made in the head clause, whereas a subclause with an Absolute Future System form is interpreted as an independent prediction made at t_0. In many cases this distinction is a subtle one and there is hardly any difference between the two interpretations. For example, though it seems intuitively clear that the following examples are interpreted as indicated within brackets, it seems difficult to gauge what is the difference in communicative effect between them or to imagine contexts in which only one of them could be used.

> John will be elected because he gets more votes than Tom. *(= 'I predict: "John will be elected because he gets more votes than Tom".')*
>
> John will be elected because he will get more votes than Tom. *(= 'I predict that John will get more votes than Tom and [I predict] that John will be elected because of that.')*[5]

Clause-order reversal confirms that there is a difference between these two sentences:

> ??Because he gets more votes than Tom, John will be elected. *(The because-clause no longer forms part of the prediction, so that there is no ground for using the Pseudo-t_0-System.)*
>
> Because he will get more votes than Tom, John will be elected. *(The order of the clauses is irrelevant, because both make a prediction of their own.)*

Unlike the former set of examples, there are cases in which the distinction between the two systems is very important, viz. when there is some compelling reason for the subclause and the head clause to be interpreted in terms of the same intensional domain. If there is such a requirement, the Absolute Future System is predictably ruled out from the subclause. There are at least two types of subclause in which this is the case.

(a) The first type consists of object clauses depending on an intensional (= world-creating) verb such as a verb of saying or thinking, in other words, clauses forming part of a stretch of represented speech or thought. In represented speech and thought, the object clause has to be interpreted opaquely (if the report is to be a genuine report), which means that the contents of the reported clause must be interpreted as belonging to the intensional domain created by the intensional (reporting) verb in the head clause. Since an intensional domain functions as a temporal domain, it follows that these object clauses must use the Pseudo-t_0-System if the head clause uses the Absolute Future System. (The same is true of their subclauses if these are also to be interpreted opaquely.) The following examples illustrate this. (The # sign is used to indicate that an Absolute Future System form cannot replace a Pseudo-t_0-System form, or vice versa, without a change of meaning. This does not imply that the form in question is ungrammatical.)

> [I can't give you my umbrella.] My wife will wonder what I {*have done* / *#will have done*} with it.
>
> [If I give you my ring] I will have to explain to my wife why I {*am not wearing* / *#will not be wearing*} it any more.

---

[5] Note that this interpretation is not the same as that in which the *because*-clause gives the reason for uttering the head clause. The latter interpretation requires a break (marked by a comma) before *because*.

In these examples *will* creates an intensional domain (a future 'possible world') of which the intensional domain created by *wonder* or *explain* is a subdomain. Since the dependent question must belong to this subdomain, it must be represented as belonging to the domain created by *will*. This necessitates using the Pseudo-t_0-System.

In this context we can draw attention to the difference between the following examples:

> The Prime Minister will be informed when the man *is arrested*. *(The* *when**-clause is an adverbial clause. The form* *is arrested* *expresses T-simultaneity in the post-present intensional domain.)*
>
> The Prime Minister will be told when the man *will be arrested*. *(The* *when**-clause functions as object clause. The form* *will be arrested* *is not an Absolute Future System form but a Pseudo-t_0-System form expressing T-posteriority to the central orientation time of the post-present intensional domain.)*

(b) The second type of subclause requiring the use of the Pseudo-t_0-System because it forms part of an intensional domain is the conditional clause of an open conditional. Open conditionals refer to a future possible world in which the actualization of the *if*-clause situation entails (or at least enables) the actualization of the head clause situation. This possible world is an intensional domain, and hence a temporal domain, and both situation times must belong to it. This explains why the Pseudo-t_0-System is the rule in the subclause:

> If it {*doesn't rain* / **won't rain*} tomorrow, we will have a picnic.

> Because their tense structure starts from a different basic orientation time, an Absolute Future System form represents the contents of its clause as either asserted or presupposed at t_0, whereas a Pseudo-t_0-System form represents the contents of its clause as asserted or presupposed at the post-present orientation time to which the situation time is temporally subordinated.

10.4.7 In this subsection we continue exploring the meaning differences between the Absolute Future System and the Pseudo-t_0-System.

Because of the difference of 'basic orientation time' (see 10.4.1), the contents of an Absolute Future System-clause are represented as either asserted or presupposed at t_0, whereas those of a Pseudo-t_0-System clause are represented as asserted or presupposed at the post-present orientation time to which the situation time is temporally subordinated. Let us examine this in more detail in the next paragraphs.

The prediction made in an Absolute Future System-clause is a tensed proposition which is presented at t_0 as true. That is, a (cooperative) speaker making a prediction implies that he believes (or at least assumes) that his prediction will turn out to be true. This means that the content of the Absolute Future System-clause is either asserted or presupposed at t_0. When used in isolation, the clause *John will come* asserts that the tensed proposition 'John will come' is true at t_0. In a suitable context, the same clause may constitute a presupposition, as in *It is around five p.m. that John will come*, which is a 'SPECIFICATIONAL' (see 5.20.1) sentence in which *at five o'clock* specifies the value satisfying the presupposed variable 'the *t* at which John will come'. In some types of subclause (such as nonrestrictive relative clauses) the proposition is always asserted, whereas in others (such as restrictive relative clauses) it is automatically presupposed. (For example, in *The man who will be here tomorrow will fix it*, the tensed proposition 'a man will be here tomorrow' is presupposed to be true at t_0.)

When the Pseudo-t_0-System is used, the tensed proposition is not presented (= asserted or presupposed) as true at t_0. If the Pseudo-t_0-System proposition is expressed in an object clause depending on a reporting verb, it is asserted as true in the mind of the reported speaker at the post-present basic orientation time. Thus, in *Next time she will say that the boy is feeling sick* the proposition 'The boy is feeling sick' is interpreted as asserted by the reported speaker ('she') at the post-present basic orientation time.[6] The proposition in question is therefore interpreted opaquely, i. e. as true in the post-present intensional domain. In other types of subclause using the Pseudo-t_0-System, the proposition is not asserted but supposed or presupposed in the post-present domain. This is the case, for example, in open conditional clauses, adverbial time clauses and restrictive relative clauses using the Pseudo-t_0-System:

> If John *comes*, I will tell her. *(The if-clause proposition is supposed to be true in the post-present intensional domain.)*
>
> I will tell him everything when he *comes*. *(The when-clause proposition is presupposed to be true in the post-present intensional domain.)*
>
> Pupils who *are* late tomorrow will be punished. *(The relative clause proposition is supposed to be true in the post-present intensional domain.)*

At first sight there would seem to be little pragmatic difference between presenting the proposition of a clause in the future tense as true at t_0 and presenting the proposition of a clause using the present tense (as Pseudo-t_0-System tense) as true at a post-present basic orientation time. In clefts, for example, the *that*-clause may be represented as presupposed at t_0 or as presupposed at the post-present basic orientation time without this leading to a clear difference of interpretation:

---

[6] The same is true of sentences like the following, in which there is no reported speaker, but there still is a 'perceiving entity' at the post-present basic orientation time, from whose perspective (point of view) the proposition of the subclause is evaluated:

> [Take his temperature every two hours.] A temperature of over 38 degrees will indicate that the crisis *is approaching*.

[Next year we shall see another America's Cup contest.] This time it will be Australia who *will be making* her first challenge. (LOB)

Next year it will be Australia who *is making* her first challenge.

However, there are also contexts in which only one of the two systems is suitable. Consider the following examples:

(6) The man who {*will solve* / *is going to solve* / *will be solving*} this problem will receive a reward.

(7) The man who *solves* this problem will receive a reward.

In (6) the speaker presupposes that the tensed proposition 'A man is going to solve this problem' is true at t_0. This means that the relative clause has the connotation of a 'CLOSED CONDITION' (i. e. a condition which is assumed to be, or to be going to be, fulfilled), so that (6) can be paraphrased as follows:

(6′) I assume that a (specific or nonspecific) man {will solve / is going to solve / will be solving} this problem. That man will receive a reward.

By contrast, in (7) (in which *solves* is to be interpreted as a Pseudo-t_0-System form and not as referring to a present habit) the speaker merely presupposes that the tensed proposition 'A man is going to solve this problem' is *possibly* true at t_0. This means that the relative clause has the connotation of an 'OPEN CONDITION' (i. e. a condition which is assumed to be one that may or may not be fulfilled), so that (7) can be paraphrased as follows:

(7′) I assume that it is possible that a (specific or nonspecific) man will solve this problem. If a man does, he will receive a reward.

The tense choice in the following sentence is in keeping with this explanation:

The man who {will be solving / *solves} this problem will be 47 years old tomorrow.

This sentence is fine with a future tense form in the relative clause because the tensed proposition 'X will be 47 years old tomorrow' expressed in the head clause presupposes the future existence of X, which is compatible with a closed condition reading of the relative clause. However, the same presupposition is incompatible with an open condition reading of the relative clause, which implies that X may or may not turn out to exist in the future. Since the Pseudo-t_0-System form *solves* assigns to the relative clause the connotation of an open condition, it is unacceptable in this sentence.

The above examples show that the difference between the idea 'Absolute Future System-proposition presupposed at t_0' and 'Pseudo-t_0-System proposition presupposed at post-present basic orientation time' may have a clear effect on the interpretation of the sentence. In clauses with a conditional interpretation it generally corresponds to the distinction between an open condition and a closed one. (We will return to this in 10.6.8 below.)

Of the two systems, only the Pseudo-t_0-System can be used to suggest that the contents of the clause represent how the situation will be evaluated at the future basic orientation time rather than how it is evaluated by the speaker at t_0.

10.4.8 Another difference between the Absolute Future System and the Pseudo-t_0-System is that only the latter can be used to suggest that the contents of the clause in question represent how the situation will be evaluated at the future basic orientation time rather than how it is evaluated by the speaker at t_0. Consider:

> You will all be arrested because John *will do* something stupid. *(The relevant interpretation is 'I predict that John will do something stupid and that you will all be arrested because of that'.)*
>
> You will all be arrested because John *does* something stupid.

Out of context, both are equally appropriate, but only the version with the Pseudo-t_0-System form can be used to create the impression that the situation is represented as it will be experienced and evaluated by some 'experiencing entity' located at the future basic orientation time:

> [The scheme is no good because you cannot rely on John. I am sure he will bungle it. You will see:] you will all be arrested because he *does* something stupid. *(Here you refers to the 'experiencing entities at the basic orientation time'.)*

Conversely, the Absolute Future System may be chosen in order to put the 'temporal focus' on a post-present orientation time and in doing so represent the situation referred to as it will be evaluated in the future.

10.4.9 As pointed out in 2.8.3, the speaker sometimes uses the future tense to put the 'TEMPORAL FOCUS' on a post-present orientation time and in doing so represents the situation as it will be evaluated in the future. For example:

> That thing rustling in the bushes over there *will* no doubt *be* a chipmunk: [let's wait till it comes out.] (Lakoff 1970:839)
>
> President Bush *will not have been* the only President to defend this policy.

The use of *will be* in the first example (where *is* would also be possible) means that the speaker puts the temporal focus on the future moment when he and the hearer will see the animal come out and will observe that it is a chipmunk. Similarly, the use of *will have been* rather than *has been* in the second example creates the idea of a future time of evaluation: 'as history will show'. This special interpretation, which is triggered by the use of the Absolute Future System in head clauses, can be achieved by the use of the Pseudo-t_0-System in subclauses. In subclauses that in principle allow either the Absolute Future System or the Pseudo-t_0-System, the Pseudo-t_0-System may be used to suggest that it is the situation time of the head clause that is the time of evaluation. Consider again:

> [The scheme is no good because you cannot rely on John. I am sure he will bungle it. You will see:] you will all be arrested because he *does* something stupid.

The situation of John doing something stupid is represented here as it will be experienced at the post-present basic orientation time.

10.5 Summary of part II

Summarizing part II, we can say that the basic difference between the Absolute Future System and the Pseudo-t_0-System is the different choice of 'basic orientation time' (see 10.4.1): t_0 versus a post-present orientation time. This difference in turn entails the following:

(a) An Absolute Future System form creates a post-present temporal domain, which functions as an intensional domain. The Pseudo-t_0-System expresses a relation in an already existing intensional domain (except on the rare occasions when it is used to establish a post-present domain in an indirect way – see 9.16 and 9.22.1).

(b) The temporal specification effected by an Absolute Future System form is not dependent on the linguistic context, whereas that effected by a Pseudo-t_0-System form is. A Pseudo-t_0-System form requires a linguistic context providing a post-present orientation time serving as basic orientation time for the Pseudo-t_0-System form.

(c) The use of the Pseudo-t_0-System is a sign that the situations of the subclause and the head clause are closely related to each other, not only temporally but also logically. The subclause is fully integrated within the head clause, and the two situations are presented as forming an interpretive unit.

III. Factors determining the choice between the two systems

In this section we will explore the reasons which may induce the speaker to relate the situation time of a subclause to a future basic orientation time rather than to t_0. In doing so we will make a distinction between subclauses that in principle allow either system, subclauses that require the Pseudo-t_0-System and subclauses in which the Pseudo-t_0-System cannot be used.

The text should be read with the continual proviso that we are only talking about subclauses whose head clause have future time reference. Thus when one reads that 'The Pseudo-t_0-System must be used in *if*-clauses expressing an open condition' or 'Restrictive relative clauses invariably use the Absolute Future System when their antecedent is in nonrestrictive apposition', one has to mentally add 'when the head clause has future time-reference'.

In section III we discuss the typical cases of subclauses requiring either of the two systems as well as those that are compatible with both. As regards the latter, we will point out the main factors that are relevant to the distribution of the two tense systems:

(a) Generally speaking, the subclauses that allow or require the use of the Pseudo-t_0-System belong to one of the following types: subclauses functioning as subject or object of the predicate of the head clause (with the exception of those discussed in 10.4.6), restrictive relative clauses, and subclauses functioning as adverbials that are fully integrated into the head clause.

(b) The categories of subclause in which the Pseudo-t_0-System has to be used express or connote some kind of open condition for the actualization of the head clause situation.

Apart from these, there are a lot of minor factors which also play a role.

10.6 Subclauses that allow either system

10.6.1 Typical examples of subclauses that in principle allow either the Pseudo-t_0—System or the Absolute Future System are restrictive relative clauses, *because*-clauses, subclauses of comparison, the *wh*-clauses of clefts, resultative *that*-clauses following the degree adverb or manner adverb *so*, *that*-clauses depending on the noun *time* if the noun phrase does not function as an adverbial, and clauses introduced by a *wh*-word ending in *-ever*. In complement clauses (i. e. dependent statements or questions), the rule is that only the Pseudo-t_0-System is possible. However, in very special cases, where the reporting verb does not have full semantics, we may find the Absolute Future System as an alternative to the Pseudo-t_0-System.

The following pairs of sentences illustrate the two possibilities for each of these types of subclause. The (a) example each time uses the Absolute Future System, while the (b) example uses the Pseudo-t_0-System. (Note that there is no suggestion that the two systems can always be used interchangeably: these examples just illustrate the claim that either system is possible in the relevant type of subclause.)

(a) [He got a good fat job and we congratulate him on his good luck. We hope that] he will execute it in a manner that *will entitle* him to credit. (BR) *(restrictive relative clause)*

(b) [There is still one glittering prize to be grasped.] The man who *captures* it will go down in history as one of the greatest of mortals. (LOB) *(id.)*

(a) Then it will make us think about unity because we *will be using* church in disunity. (SEU) *(because-clause) (The sentence should not be interpreted as a kind of cleft.)*

(b) If we hide his shoes he will panic because he *cannot* find them. *(id.)*

(a) [If you take the train and I take the bus], I will probably travel faster than you *will*. *(subclause of comparison)*

(b) [If you take the train and I take the bus], I will probably travel faster than you *do*. *(id.)*

(a) [If love, loyalty and courage count for anything,] it won't be Violet's marriage that *will break up*. (LOB) *(that-clause of a cleft)*

(b) [And he's made it abundantly clear to Steven that] if the two don't work together, it won't be Dave who*'s shown* the door. (www) *(wh-clause of a cleft)*

(a) You and your tarantula will be so happy that you will end up wanting more tarantulas. (www) *(resultative that-clause following the degree adverb so: so = 'to such an extent')*

(b) Men will be so frightened that they *cry out* for the mountains and rocks to fall upon them. (www) *(id.)*[7]

(a) All sprinkler heads will be so constructed that they *will* not *project* above ground level where located. (www) *(resultative that-clause following the manner adverb so: so = 'in such a manner')*

(b) The case study will be so constructed that no advanced use of techniques *is required*. (www) *(id.)*

(a) For some, it will be the first time they *will have been* back since graduation, [so they may find a few changes have occurred over the years!] (www) *(that-clause*

---

[7] It should be noted, though, that this is the only clear example with the Pseudo-t_0-System that we have found. When *so* is a degree adverb meaning 'to such an extent', the *that*-clause is apparently normally followed by the Absolute Future System.

depending on the noun *time**, which does not form part of a semi-conjunction like* *by the time that**)*

(b) For some, it will be the first time they *have been* back since graduation. *(id.)*

(a) [A relaxing holiday with easy day walks amidst the nature, fields and man-managed landscape with chateaus, Baroque churches, vineyards and tree alleys.] We will find a varied wildlife wherever we *will be*. (www) *(clause introduced by* *wh … ever**)*

(b) He will go wherever I *go*. *(id.)*

(a) What the next move *will be* only time, of course, will tell. (BR) *(complement clause: dependent question)*

(b) [We can charge what we like.] The public will decide whether or not it *pays*. (LOB) *(id.)*

(a) The man who enjoys his work and approaches it creatively will find that the techniques, the competency and the professional polish *will come* to him automatically. (LOB) *(complement clause: dependent statement))*

(b) [The negro is Mr Robert Weaver of New York.] One of his tasks will be to see there *is* no racial discrimination in Government and State housing projects. (LOB) *(id.)*

In subclauses of these types the choice between the Absolute Future System and the Pseudo-t_0-System is often not entirely free. In the following subsections we explore some reasons why the speaker may decide against using one of them.

Because a Pseudo-t_0-System form depends for its future time interpretation on the head clause, the Pseudo-t_0-System cannot be used if the head clause does not establish a post-present domain.

10.6.2 As pointed out in 10.4.2–3, a Pseudo-t_0-System form depends for its future time interpretation on the head clause, and thus the Pseudo-t_0-System cannot be used if the head clause does not establish a post-present domain (either explicitly or implicitly):

He is worried because he {*will be asked* / **is asked*} for an explanation tonight.

The following would seem to be exceptions to this rule:

It doesn't matter much who we *hire* for this job.

I don't care what you *do* with these animals [as long as you keep them out of my house].

It is a fact that the use of the present tense is normal in noun clauses depending on expressions like *it doesn't matter*, *I don't care*, *I don't mind*, *it's not impor-*

tant, etc. However, because the head clause does not establish a post-present domain, the present tense is not a Pseudo-t_0-System form here. It is an instance of another type of shift of temporal perspective: the post-present situation time of the noun clause is treated as if it coincided with t_0.[8] The possibility of using the present tense after *it doesn't matter*, etc. is limited to 'nonhomogeneous' (see 1.45) clauses: the subclause can be interpreted as having future time reference in *It doesn't matter what he* tells *her* but not in *It doesn't matter what he's* telling *her*. The fact that the nonprogressive present cannot be understood as referring to the present no doubt helps to explain why it can be used to refer to the post-present in this context.

The use of the Pseudo-t_0-System will be avoided in cases where the relevant Pseudo-t_0-System form would be naturally misinterpreted as an absolute tense form.

10.6.3 A co-operative speaker will not use the Pseudo-t_0-System when the relevant Pseudo-t_0-System form would not be interpreted as a Pseudo-t_0-System form but rather as an absolute tense form. Compare the following (in which the *because*-clause should not be interpreted as specifying the reason why the speaker utters the head clause):

> The boy will no doubt be caught because he {*steals* / *will steal*} some money.
>
> The boy will no doubt be caught because he {*is using* / *will be using*} the wrong ink.

In the first sentence, *steals* is clearly a Pseudo-t_0-System form, because we use *is stealing* rather than *steals* to locate a (nonhabitual) situation in the present. However, the present tense form *is using* in the second example is naturally interpreted as referring to the present. (Generally speaking, a present tense form will naturally invite this interpretation if it is a stative, progressive or passive form, in other words, if the situation is represented as homogeneous.) A co-operative speaker will therefore avoid using *is using* as Pseudo-t_0-System form in this *because*-clause. If future time reference is intended, he will use the Absolute Future System form *will be using* instead. The following examples further illustrates this principle:

> Bruce will be very busy tomorrow because his shop assistants *will be* absent. *(Are would suggest that they are already absent at* t_0*.)*
>
> Bruce will be very busy tomorrow because his shop assistants *will have left*. *(Have left would suggest that they have already left.)*

---

[8] This is basically the same mechanism as in examples like *I'm leaving tomorrow* or *I'm 24 tomorrow*, only it is not applied for the same reason, viz. to represent the post-present situation as pre-determined at t_0 (see 7.16).

Similarly:

[I'll get there faster] than you {*do* / *will*}.

[When your father comes back, he will not understand] what {*is* / *will be*} going on.

[The papers will no doubt report everything] that {*is* / *will be*} said.

In examples like these the future tense (= Absolute Future System) is used in order to avoid ambiguity, since the present tense may either locate its situation time at t_0 (= absolute tense) or express T-simultaneity (= Pseudo-t_0-System).

As is clear from the examples, it is the fact that there is no formal differentiation between the absolute use of the present tense and its use as a Pseudo-t_0-System form that normally induces the speaker to use the Absolute Future System whenever the Pseudo-t_0-System might cause confusion.

The principle that Pseudo-t_0-System forms should not be used if they could be misunderstood is a strong pragmatic principle (based on the Gricean Maxims) which tends to overrule any other considerations in subclauses where the speaker can in principle choose between the Absolute Future System and the Pseudo-t_0-System. The use of the Absolute Future System in nominal clauses (such as dependent statements or questions) is always due to this principle, since the Pseudo-t_0-System is the unmarked (or, sometimes, only possible) system in this type of subclause:

[If you steal that money,] I will tell everyone that you {*are* / *#will be*} the thief.

[If you steal that money,] I will tell everyone what you {*have done* / *#will have done*}.

[When your father comes back, he will not understand] what {*is* / *will be*} going on. *(is is ambiguous)*

In *because*-clauses, the choice of system depends on whether the *because*-clause is 'actualization-explaining', 'utterance-explaining' or 'evidential'.

10.6.4 In *because*-clauses, the choice of system depends on the discourse function of the clause. In general, we can distinguish between three functional types:

(a) ACTUALIZATION-EXPLAINING *BECAUSE*-CLAUSES have a content-level function: they express the reason for, or the cause of, the actualization of the head clause situation:

He was killed because he knew too much.

(b) UTTERANCE-EXPLAINING *BECAUSE*-CLAUSES function at the speech-act level: they explain why the speaker makes the speech act (i. e. assertion, question, instruction, etc.) that he makes by uttering the head clause:

You'd better hurry up, because there's going to be a storm.

(c) EVIDENTIAL *BECAUSE*-CLAUSES function at the cognitive (epistemic) level: they explain the basis on which the speaker comes to the conclusion that the head clause proposition is true.

> There must be someone in the house, because there is a light on on the second floor.

When the reference is to the post-present, the distribution of the Absolute Future System and the Pseudo-t_0-System is as follows:

(a) Actualization-explaining *because*-clauses normally use the Pseudo-t_0-System:

> [If I tell you about him] he will perhaps kill you because you {*know* / *#will know*} too much.

The reason for this is that the *because*-clause here forms an interpretive unit with the head clause and is syntactically fully integrated into it. (This syntactic integration is confirmed, among other things, by the fact that the *because*-clause can be the highlighted constituent of a cleft: *It will be because you know too much that he kills you*.)

The following examples further illustrate the use of the Pseudo-t_0-System in actualization-explaining *because*-clauses:

> [Twenty years in the future, the same young person who today happily zips around town by bike, bus, or subway will be at the wheel of a minivan or something similar, hauling kids, dog and groceries.] It won't happen because he *has changed* his views on urban planning. It will happen because he *is* 20 years older. (www)
>
> Things will change because he *makes* a conscious decision to change. (www) *(= 'I predict that his making a decision to change will cause things to change.')*

(b) Utterance-explaining *because*-clauses as a rule use the Absolute Future System:

> [If it starts snowing heavily] you will do well to store some food, because your house {*will* perhaps *be* / **is* perhaps} cut off from the village.

The reason for using the Absolute Future System here is that the head clause and the *because*-clause represent two independent speech acts. In other words, they do not form a single interpretive unit, and the *because*-clause is syntactically not fully integrated into the head clause: 'If it starts snowing heavily, you will do well to store some food. I'm telling you this because your house will perhaps be cut off from the village'.

The following example further illustrates the use of the Absolute Future System in utterance-explaining *because*-clauses:

> Don't bring her here, because Mum *will be* very upset and Dad *will be* furious. (www)

(c) Evidential *because*-clauses as a rule use the Absolute Future System if they depend on a head clause establishing a post-present domain:

> Things will change, because he *will make* a conscious decision to change. *(= 'The reason why I've come to the conclusion that things will change is that (in my opinion) he will make a conscious decision to change.')*

The following examples further illustrate the use of the Absolute Future System in evidential *because*-clauses:

> Hopkins will be out of his habitat in this fight, because he *will be forced* to be the aggressor. (www)
>
> [Our deficit this year is $1,200,000.] Next year the results will be somewhat better, because the economical climate *will have improved*. (www)
>
> John will be caught, because he *will set off* the alarm.

10.6.5 If the Pseudo-t_0-System is a possible option, it may be selected because the speaker wants to make clear through the choice of his tense form that the subclause must be interpreted opaquely rather than transparently. The following example (repeated here) is an illustration of this:

> [The scheme is no good because you cannot rely on John. I am sure he will bungle it. You will see:] you will all be arrested because he *does* something stupid.

The Pseudo-t_0-System form *does* represents the situation as it will be experienced by a participant in the head clause situation at the future basic orientation time.

Subclauses that allow the Pseudo-t_0-System will as a rule use it if they are to be interpreted as belonging to the same intensional domain as the head clause.

10.6.6 Subclauses that allow the Pseudo-t_0-System will as a rule use it if they are to be interpreted as belonging to the same intensional domain as the head clause. As we have seen in 10.4.6, this is the case in subclauses that spell out the propositional content of a verb of saying or thinking:

> [If you do that] John will {allege / think} tomorrow that it *is* Friday, [although it will only be Thursday].

The Absolute Future System form *will be* cannot be used in the *that*-clause because this clause must be interpreted opaquely. (It is, however, used in the *although*-clause, which is interpreted transparently.)

In this connection it should be noted that there are 'strong' and 'weak' intensional verbs. STRONG INTENSIONAL VERBS are verbs like *imagine*, *wonder*, etc. whose object clauses virtually have to be interpreted opaquely (i. e. as belonging to the intensional domain (possible world) that they create.) WEAK INTENSIONAL VERBS (e.g. *see*, *say*) more easily allow a transparent interpretation of their object clauses. When a weak intensional verb is used as the 'reporting verb' in the head clause of 'past represented speech' – see 8.25.1 – we can, under certain conditions, find absolute present time-sphere tenses instead of the relative tenses typical of a past domain: compare *John wondered whether you {were / ??are} a policeman* with *John asked me whether you {were / are} a policeman.*

Subclauses that allow the Pseudo-t_0-System tend to use it if they are syntactically subordinated to a subclause whose verb is a Pseudo-t_0-System form.

10.6.7 Subclauses that allow the Pseudo-t_0-System will preferably use it if they are syntactically subordinated to a subclause whose verb is a Pseudo-t_0-System form. Compare the sentences in the following pairs:

(a) Their future will depend on how good their training here {*has been* / ?*will have been*}.

(b) If their future *turns out* to depend on how good their training here {*has been* / **will have been*}, their attitude towards us will change.

(a) The religious group will forswear all proselytizing on the project it {*proposes* / *will propose*}.

(b) No religious group, he declared in an interview, will receive Peace Corps funds unless it *forswears* all proselytizing on the project it *proposes*. (BR) (*Will propose cannot be used here.*)

The reason for this persistent use of Pseudo-t_0-System forms is probably the complex syntactic structure: one subclause is embedded into another. Because of this, the temporal interpretation (i.e. the mental reconstruction of the temporal relations) would be difficult if the temporal relations did not run parallel to the syntactic relations. (The use of the Absolute Future System in a subclause means that the subclause is syntactically subordinated but not temporally subordinated.)

If both systems are possible, the Pseudo-t_0-System will be selected if the clause is to have the connotation of an open condition. However, restrictive relative clauses with a conditional connotation use the Absolute Future System if they themselves contain or imply a conditional *if*-clause.

10.6.8 In subclauses that allow the use of the Pseudo-t_0-System, the speaker will as a rule use this system if he wants the subclause to have the connotation of an open condition. This use of the Pseudo-t_0-System is especially common in restrictive relative clauses:

> This Sunday's sessions – including the free dinner – will be open to anyone who *makes* reservations. (BR)
>
> [There is still one glittering prize to be grasped.] The man who *captures* it will go down in history as one of the greatest of mortals. (LOB)

The use of the Absolute Future System in subclauses like these would suggest that the speaker is treating the condition as closed at t_0, i. e. that he takes the future actualization of the subclause situation for granted. Compare:

> The people that *protest* will be arrested. *(Pseudo-t_0-System)*
>
> The people that *are going to protest* will be arrested. *(Absolute Future System)*

The first sentence implies that the speaker reckons with the possibility of people protesting and being arrested because of this. The second implies that the speaker assumes there will be protesters. In other words, the conditional connotation is that of an open condition in the former example and of a closed one in the latter – see 10.6.8 above.

However, restrictive relative clauses with a conditional connotation use the Absolute Future System if they themselves contain or imply a conditional *if*-clause:

> I'm not going to do anything that *will* possibly *upset* him. *(= 'I'm not going to do anything if it will possibly upset him if I do it.')*

This constraint fits in with the rule that we use the Absolute Future System rather than the Pseudo-t_0-System in *if*-clauses functioning as head clause for another *if*-clause (whether overtly present or implied): *We won't do it if it will upset him (if we do it)*. As pointed out in 10.8 below, the Absolute Future System has to be used in *if it will upset him* because (syntactically and semantically) this clause does not have a head clause establishing a post-present domain: the whole conditional means 'We won't do it if [if we do it it will upset him]'. That is, the clause *it will upset him* is not directly subordinate to *we won't do it*. It is a head clause rather than a conditional clause, even though it is preceded by *if*.

Restrictive relative clauses depending on a temporal noun can use either system, except if the noun forms part of a temporal adverbial or conjunction.

10.6.9 Restrictive relative clauses depending on a temporal noun (which does not form part of a temporal adverbial or conjunction – see below) may in principle use either the Absolute Future System or the Pseudo-t_0-System:

> We will live to see the day when China {*will be* / *is*} an economic superpower.
>
> The day will come, in midsummer, when you *find* your plants becoming "leggy". (BR)
>
> But the day will come when you*'ll remember* what I tell you now. (LOB)

There is little difference between the use of the future tense and the use of the present tense here. However, the choice of the Pseudo-t_0-System or the Absolute Future System can lead to slight differences of emphasis. By using the Pseudo-t_0-System, the speaker can encourage the hearer to take the point of view of someone located at the future time of the head clause situation from which the temporal location of the situation time of the subclause is calculated, rather than have the hearer view the situation as a future one with which he, located at t_0, has no affinity.

As noted in 10.7.3, restrictive relative clauses with a temporal noun as antecedent require the Pseudo-t_0-System when the antecedent forms part of a phrase functioning like a temporal conjunction:

> By the time the police {*arrive* / **will arrive*} it will be too late.
>
> [And remember, the clutch is not a gradual affair like the one on a car.] The instant you {*engage* / **will engage*} it the machine will rush away, with or without you. (LOB)
>
> You must stop the engine the moment (that) it {*begins* / **will begin*} to make a strange noise.

The subclauses of such examples have the same function as adverbial time clauses, which require the use of the Pseudo-t_0-System (see 10.7.2 below).

In a *that*-clause depending on the noun *time* either the Pseudo-t_0-System or the Absolute Future System can be used, provided the phrase involving *time* does not function as an adverbial.

10.6.10 If the head clause refers to the post-present, both the Pseudo-t_0-System and the Absolute Future System can be used in a *that*-clause depending on the noun *time*, provided the noun phrase does not function as an adverbial (and does not form part of a prepositional phrase functioning as an adverbial):

> This will be the first time I *will have participated* in an online INSET [and whilst looking forward to it I am still finding it a little bit scary]. (www)
>
> Will this be the first time that you *have used* media as a springboard to launch a discussion? (www)
>
> This expedition will be the first time I *will have skied* all the way to the North Pole. (www)
>
> This will be the first time Hitmen Fans *will have* the chance to see the new team on home ice. (www)
>
> This will be the first time I *will* not *be* part of the 4 × 400 m relay for nine years. [I'm gutted.] (www)
>
> These Olympics will be the first time pedorthists *are* members of the paramedical team. (www)
>
> [We have had external members on many of our other committees, but] this will be the first time they *will participate* on policy making. (www)
>
> [The first HTS coils designed for the common-coil magnet will be tested using NbTi coils to provide a 6 T background field.] Since this will be the first time HTS coils *are operated* in this environment, [many basic measurements will have to be made to characterize their performance.] (www)

While the present perfect and the future perfect locate the situation time in a period leading up to the relevant future orientation time, the present tense represents the situation time as simultaneous with the future orientation time and the future tense locates the situation time in a period which stretches from the future orientation time onwards into the future. This means that in an example like the following the present perfect and the future perfect emphasize the earlier part of the series of situations referred to, whereas the present tense and the future tense stress the last part:

> This expedition will be the third time I {*have reached* / *will have reached* / *reach* / *will reach*} the North Pole.

Note, however, that in the pattern illustrated by the examples above the sub-clause cannot use the Pseudo-t_0-System if the head clause does not refer to the future. This is in keeping with what is said in 10.6.2.

> [He is coming here next week.] It is only the second time he {*will have come* / **has come*} here since 1980.
>
> [I will have to stand in for him a couple of times.] Today is the first time I {*will do so* / **do so*}.

10.6.11 Apart from the principles pointed out in the preceding subsections of 10.6, there are a number of factors which promote the use of the Pseudo-t_0-System in restrictive relative clauses by seeing to it that there is a high degree of integration of the relative clause into the head clause. For example:

(a) The Pseudo-t_0-System is strongly preferred in nominal (headless) relative clauses:[9]

He will always give you what you *need*.

I will always go where you *go*.

The menu's content will depend on what you *have installed*.

Your final pension will depend on what you *have paid in* and how it *has grown* over the period.[10]

(b) The Pseudo-t_0-System is the rule if the antecedent is a cataphoric demonstrative or a cataphoric 'light' NP (i. e. an NP with little semantic content) which depends for its reference on the relative clause:

The best places will be snapped up by those who *come* early.

I will ask the people I *meet* for some food.

(c) The Pseudo-t_0-System is the rule if the antecedent is or contains an indefinite pronoun / determiner or a superlative:

Tomorrow Jane will be here, and she will get you anything you *want*.

Miss Bantin will be there in person ready to give her friendly advice to all who *care* to take advantage of her visit to the Capitol. (LOB)

10.7 Subclauses which as a rule use the Pseudo-t_0-System

There are a number of types of subclause in which future time reference requires the use of the Pseudo-t_0-System, e. g. conditional clauses expressing an open condition, adverbial time clauses, concessive clauses with a conditional connotation, subclauses of proportion and subclauses of manner that are fully integrated into the head clause. In the various subsections we have a closer look at these cases and observe that what they have in common is the meaning or connotation of an open condition.

10.7.1 The Pseudo-t_0-System has to be used in *if*-clauses expressing an 'OPEN CONDITION' (i. e. a condition that is seen as one that may or may not be fulfilled in the future), because the subclause and the head clause then form a single temporal domain, representing a single intensional domain (= possible world). They do so because the head clause situation is dependent on the subclause situation, which means that the head clause must be interpreted within the possible world created by the *if*-clause. (The two clauses form part of the same 'scenario', which is treated as a possible world.)

---

[9] Those introduced by a *wh*-word in – *ever* even require the Pseudo-t_0-System if they have a conditional connotation – see 10.7.6.

[10] A Google search for *will depend on what you (will) have* V-*ed* yielded several hundred examples with the Pseudo-t_0-System and three with the Absolute Future System. The following is one of the latter:

> The searchable data for each recruiter will always depend on what you *will have allowed* him to see. (www)

The use of the Pseudo-t_0-System in open conditionals is not so much a logical requirement as something that has come to be conventionalized in English. In many European languages both the Absolute Future System and the Pseudo-t_0-System can be used in open conditionals. For example, in Dutch it is possible to say

> Als we te laat *zullen komen*, zullen we gestraft worden.
> 'If we will be late, we will be punished'

as a (less usual) alternative to

> Als we te laat *komen*, zullen we gestraft worden.
> 'If we are late, we will be punished'

In the former case, the two situation times are located in different temporal domains, which are interpreted as 'sloppily W-simultaneous', i. e. as following each other closely in time. This way of locating the situations in time fails to represent the close logical relationship between them. (This presents no problem because the logical relation is anyhow expressed by *if* ... *(then)* ...) In English, however, it has become conventional to signal the logical link by locating the two situation times in the same temporal (and intensional) domain. In this way English is able to distinguish between open and closed conditionals (see 10.6.8 above).

The reason behind the conventionalization may well be that the contents of an *if*-clause expressing an open condition are not asserted at t_0 but presupposed in the future possible world. In English, the Absolute Future System is used exclusively for predictions, i. e. to present a proposition in the future tense as true at t_0. A proposition expressing an open condition is true only in the possible world created by *if*. The use of the Absolute Future System would wrongly represent it as a prediction, i. e. as a proposition which is presented as true at t_0. (That the Absolute Future System can be used in Dutch is a sign that Dutch does not use the Absolute Future System for predictions only. It can also use it to create the intensional domain of an open condition, and this domain can then be interpreted as coinciding with the domain that is independently established by the head clause.)

The result of the conventionalization in English is that open conditionals using the Pseudo-t_0-System primarily express the logical 'if p, then q' relationship. This means that the speaker is less concerned with the temporal relation than with the conditional one, and this explains why most open conditionals referring to the post-present use the present tense as Pseudo-t_0-System form in the subclause, even if the subclause situation is W-anterior to the head clause situation (e. g. *You will be punished if you do that*). The present tense is selected simply because it is the unmarked Pseudo-t_0-System form: it is the form basically expressing T-simultaneity. (Of the three temporal relations that can be expressed by tense forms, simultaneity is the unmarked one.) When used this way, the present tense is an instance of what we have called 'SLOPPY SIMULTANEITY' (see 9.20.4). This term refers to the phenomenon that a tense form which is normally used to express T-simultaneity may be used in cases where the relevant situations are not (and are not conceived of as) W-simultaneous.

The clearest example of this sloppy simultaneity use of the present tense is when the two clauses contain distinct temporal adverbials, as in *If he does not do it tomorrow, I will do it myself next week*. Here the sole reason for using the present tense in the *if*-clause is that the two clauses are conceived of as belonging to one and the same intensional domain, viz. the possible world corresponding to the open condition. Because the speaker is concerned with the logical relation 'if p, then q' rather than with the exact temporal relation between the two situations, he typically uses the unmarked Pseudo-t_0-System form (viz. the one expressing T-simultaneity), except in the rare cases where a more precise indication of the temporal relation is required or preferred (as in *If you haven't left by tomorrow* ...). That this convention persists when distinct time expressions are associated with the descriptions of the two situations should not come as a surprise, for it is precisely in the cases where the temporal relation between the situations is signalled by time adverbials that it is least necessary for this relation to be expressed by the tense form of the conditional clause.

In adverbial time clauses we cannot use the Absolute Future System, except in some uses of *before*-clauses.

10.7.2 The Absolute Future System cannot normally be used in adverbial time clauses:

I will leave before John {is / *will be} back.

I will leave when John {has arrived / *will have arrived}.

I will stay here until John {arrives / *will arrive}.

It has been noted in 2.14 (and will be argued in 13.3 and 14.2.1) that the situation time of such an adverbial time clause is temporally subordinated, not to the situation time of the head clause but to an 'IMPLICIT ORIENTATION TIME' in the semantic structure of the temporal conjunction. We interpret *before*, *when*, *until*, etc. as 'before the time that', 'at the time that', 'until the time that', etc. (Diachronically speaking, most temporal conjunctions have actually developed from such a prepositional phrase.) The word *time* in these paraphrases refers to the implicit 'ANCHOR TIME' to which the situation time of the subclause is temporally subordinated. Thus, in *I will leave before John is back*, the situation time of the subclause must not be related to t_0 (by the use of *will be* as an Absolute Future System form), nor to the situation time of the head clause (by the use of *will be* as a Pseudo-t_0-System form), but must be temporally subordinated to the Anchor time that is implicit in *before*. (This Anchor time is posterior to the situation time of the head clause, but this relation is expressed by the conjunction only, not by the tense form – see Figure 10.3.) In *I will leave before John is back*, the situation time of the subclause is represented as T-simultaneous with the implicit orientation time: *before John is back* is interpreted as 'before the time that / when John is back'.

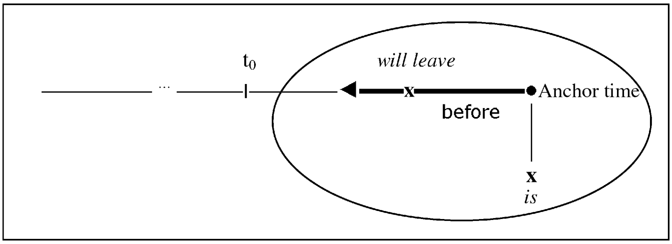

Figure 10.3. The temporal structure of *I will leave before John is back*.

The obligatory use of the Pseudo-t_0-System in adverbial time clauses is again a convention typical of English and not shared by many other European languages. For example, the Dutch counterpart of *I will leave when John has arrived* may use either the Pseudo-t_0-System or the Absolute Future System (but with a preference for the former):

> Ik zal vertrekken wanneer Jan {aangekomen is / zal aangekomen zijn}.
>
> 'I will leave when John {has arrived / will have arrived}.'

If the Absolute Future System is used, the temporal relation between the situation time of the subclause and the situation time of the head clause is expressed only by the conjunction, not by the tense forms (both of which relate their situation time to t_0).

In English, there appear to be only few cases in which the Absolute Future System can be used in an adverbial time clause. All of them concern *before*-clauses and will be dealt with in 14.5.2. In the present section we will restrict ourselves to pointing out two of them, just to illustrate the possibility.

One case in which the Absolute Future System is used in a *before*-clause is illustrated by the following:

> You will need to register as a user of the Discussion Groups before you *will be* able to post any messages to the discussion. (www)
>
> [If you have not gotten any updates from the FTP site for your system before,] you will most likely need to upgrade the *rpm* package before you *will be* able to confirm or install the new RPMs. (www)
>
> Please note that students who fail the OS proficiency exam or the EE-450 placement exam twice will be required to take the corresponding undergraduate course (and receive a grade of B or better) before they *will be given* permission to take CSCI-551. (www)
>
> I think those creating tablet PCs need a "killer app" to run on these units before they *will be* useful. (www)

In these examples the temporal relation between the two situations seems to be less important than the logical relation: the head clause expresses a condition for the actualization of the *before*-clause situation. Semantically, the *before*-clause is the head clause of the 'if p, then q' conditional. This probably explains why the *before*-clause can use the Absolute Future System typically found in head clauses.

The second case we will draw attention to here is illustrated by the following:

> [In his preliminary report (...) sir Hugh Cairns stresses that] several years must elapse before he *will know* whether the improvements (...) are permanent. (TCIE)
>
> It is just a matter of time before the trainee schools *will disappear* altogether from the scene. (LOB)
>
> [I think my blog will continue to remain what it is – trivial! I think] there is still some time left before I *will be done* with blogging for good. (www)

In this type of sentence the head clause does not describe a situation whose time is specified by the time clause but indicates the distance between t_0 and a post-present orientation time identified by the subclause. The possibility of using the future tense in the subclause can be traced back to the fact that the head clause does not explicitly establish a post-present domain. On the other hand, the head clause can be interpreted as doing so implicitly, and this entails that the Pseudo-t_0-System can also be used (and is in fact often the more natural choice):

> [Looking at the bottom row in the table below, it appears that] we have some time before we *reach* the critical halfway point for oil production. (www)
>
> [In the North, Sinn Féin ministers are sitting in Stormont, and] it is a matter of time before the party *enters* into coalition government in the South. (www)
>
> There is still some time left before these measures *begin* to be used. (www)

A final note to be made in connection with adverbial time clauses is that (apart from the exceptions just referred to) they do not allow the (temporal) use of *will* at all, i. e. *will* is ungrammatical not only as an Absolute Future System form but also as a Pseudo-t_0-System form. The Pseudo-t_0-System form expressing posteriority must be formed with the help of a futurish form like *be going to*:

> I promise I will put on my goggles when pieces of metal {*are going to fly about* / **will fly about* / **will be flying about*}.
>
> She will go back to her mother's when she {*is going to* / *is about to* / **will*} *have* the baby.

The reason why *will* cannot be used must have to do with the fact that posteriority in adverbial time clauses is always equivalent to the 'PROSPECTIVE' meaning (i. e. futurity with present orientation) which in English is typically expressed by *be going to*. (See 7.3.2, where it was explained that the basic meaning of *is going to* is that the post-present situation has its roots in the present.)

10.7.3 As noted in 10.6.10, restrictive relative clauses depending on a temporal noun require the Pseudo-t_0-System when the temporal noun forms part of a phrase functioning like a temporal conjunction:

> By the time the fire brigade {*arrive* / **will arrive*} it will be too late.
>
> [And remember, the clutch is not a gradual affair like the one on a car.] The instant you {*engage* / **will engage*} it the machine will rush away, with or without you. (LOB)
>
> You must stop the engine the moment (that) it {*begins* / **will begin*} to make a strange noise.

The subclauses of such examples have the same function as adverbial time clauses, which require the use of the Pseudo-t_0-System (see 10.7.2).

10.7.4 *That*-clauses depending on the noun *time* use the Pseudo-t_0-System in adverbials of frequency (if the head clause uses the Absolute Future System):

> [Read the story aloud.] The computer will stop you each time it {*has failed* / *fails* / **will have failed* / **will fail*} to understand something you have said.
>
> This will force UNP to ask you if you want to remove the routine UNP found on the file each time it *has recognized* some program's work. (www) (*Recognizes is fine too, but not will have recognized or will recognize.*)
>
> You will be notified each time you *have accrued* 60 minutes of CME credit time. (www) (**will have accrued*)
>
> Each time you *accrue* an additional 100 miles, a posting will be made to your Mileage Plus account. (www)

10.7.5 *Wh*-clauses with a conditional connotation also use the Pseudo-t_0-System for future time reference:

> Saddam's ministers said the U.S. will attack regardless of whether Iraq *allows* UN weapons inspectors to return. (www)
>
> [However, the displacement of the cylinder can be converted to cubic centimetres.] The compression ratio arrived at with the formula will be the same regardless of whether cubic inches or cubic centimetres *are used*. (BR)

10.7.6 Concessive subclauses introduced by a *wh*-word in *-ever* normally use the Pseudo-t_0-System if they have a conditional connotation (and, as usual, if the head clause has future time reference):[11]

> [Playing staff is to be reduced from 26 to about 18, because] whatever the Football Combination *decide* Millwall will not field reserve teams on Saturdays next season. (LOB) (??*will decide*)
>
> However the money {*is shared* / ??*will be shared*}, some people will be dissatisfied.

The subclauses in these examples function as adverbials that combine a concessive aspect of meaning with a conditional one. Thus, *whatever the F. C. decide* means 'if decision A is made, and if decision B is made, and also if decision C is made, etc.'. As a matter of fact, concessive clauses have a conditional connotation (and therefore use the Pseudo-t_0-System) when they do not refer to the actualization of a single situation but imply the actualization of one of several alternative situations. Concessive clauses that do not satisfy this condition for a conditional connotation use the Absolute Future System to refer to post-present actualization:

> The posting of the code will not cause any immediate and catastrophic loss of money to the DVD media creators, whatever they *will crow* in the media. (www) *(The meaning is purely concessive: 'even though they will crow something in the media, whatever that may be'.)*

10.7.7 The Pseudo-t_0-System is also the rule in subclauses of proportion:

> The sooner the job {is finished / ??will be finished}, the better.
>
> The more people we {tell / ??will tell} about it, the more difficult it will be to keep it secret.

---

[11] The following are some exceptional examples in which the Absolute Future System is used. (The Pseudo-t_0 System could be used too.)

> The leaders of their union – whoever they *will be* at that time – will join the chorus of mainstream labour leaders in deploring privatization. (www)
>
> [The level of supervision needs to be related to the level of responsibility you give them.] Whatever they *will be doing*, you will get better results out of them if you give them some early support. (www)

Here again the conditional connotation appears to be the reason for the choice of the Pseudo-t_0-System. We can paraphrase *The more people we tell, the more difficult it will be to keep it secret* as follows: 'If we tell X number of people, it will be X amount difficult to keep it secret, and if we tell X+1 number of people, it will be X+1 amount difficult to keep it secret'.

10.7.8 Subclauses of manner that are fully integrated into the head clause also use the Pseudo-t_0-System:

I hope that next time you will do as I {say / $^?$will say}.

Here again there is a conditional connotation: 'I hope that if I tell you to do something, you will do it'.

10.8 Subclauses which cannot use the Pseudo-t_0-System

The Pseudo-t_0-System is not used at all in subclauses such as adversative clauses, comment clauses, nonrestrictive relative clauses, concessive subclauses introduced by *(al)though*, subclauses of reason introduced by *for*, and in some types of conditional subclauses. The following give an example of each. (The # sign indicates the unsuitability of a Pseudo-t_0-System form rather than ungrammaticality.)

(8a) I'll be in London tomorrow, {whereas / while} Bill {*will be* / *#is*} at home. *(adversative subclause)*

(8b) As you {*will see* / *#see*}, he will not come tomorrow. *(comment clause)*

(8c) I will give it to Tom, who {*will be* / *#is*} glad to get it. *(nonrestrictive relative clause)*

(8d) We had better put off discussing this matter until next week, when we *will have* more information. *(when-clause used as nonrestrictive relative clause: when = 'at which time')*[12]

(8e) I will accept the invitation, although I {*will not enjoy* / *#do not enjoy*} the concert.

(8f) You will notice very few changes in the person that you see, for I will be the person that I always have been. (www) *(The for-clause is like an 'evidential' because-clause – see 10.6.4 above: it expresses the speaker's justification for thinking what's expressed in the first clause.)*

(8g) If, as you say, Bill *will be coming* here himself next week, I will not need to send him a letter. *(conditional clause expressing a closed condition)*

---

[12] The Absolute Future System is obligatory in nonrestrictive relative time clauses. This means that the *when*-clause of sentences like *I will repair the car tomorrow, when I have more time* is not a relative clause but an adverbial one (which is used in apposition to *tomorrow*).

(8h) If, as you say, this decision {*will upset* / *#upsets*} her, I will consider changing it. *(idem)*

(8i) We won't do it if it *will upset* him (if we do it). *(See comment below.)*

In (8a–f) there is a rather loose syntactic and semantic relation between the two clauses.[13] The subclause has a large measure of syntactic independence and is not integrated into the head clause semantically, as the latter can be fully interpreted without reference to the subclause. What is expressed in the subclause is the speaker's comment on the head clause situation. This comment is made at t_0, not at the post-present situation time of the head clause, and it is meant to be interpreted transparently. This explains the obligatory use of the Absolute Future System.

In (8g–h) the Absolute Future System must be used in the conditional clause because this clause expresses a 'closed' condition rather than an open one. That is, the future fulfilment of the condition is assumed to be certain at t_0. The following is another instance of such a (typically echoic) 'closed' conditional:

> If you *will not be* in receipt of a scholarship or Award or if the Award *will be* inadequate to meet full fees and expenses of your course and your maintenance, please state how you propose to meet those fees and expenses. (www)

Finally, sentence (8i) [*We won't do it if it will upset him (if we do it)*] shows that the Absolute Future System is also the rule in *if*-clauses that serve as head clause for another *if*-clause (whether overtly present or implied). In this type of conditional, whose logical structure is 'if [if q, then p], then q', we have to use the Absolute Future System in what looks like a conditional clause but is really the head clause of another conditional – see also 10.6.8 above. The reason why the Absolute Future System form *will upset* has to be used is that (syntactically and semantically) this clause does not have a head clause establishing a post-present domain: the whole conditional means 'We won't do it if [if we do it it will upset him]'. That is, the clause *it will upset him* is not directly subordinate to *we won't do it*. It is a head clause rather than a conditional clause, even though it is preceded by *if*. The following is a similar example:

> If it*'ll make* you feel any better, I'll buy you a drink. *(= 'I'll buy you a drink if it'll make you feel any better if I buy you a drink.')*

---

[13] The fact that the subclauses of (8a–f) are not syntactically integrated into their head clauses appears from a number of observations. For example, they cannot be the focus of negation, questioning or clefting, and they are not mopped up in the reference of proforms like *do so* or *and so* / *neither*.

IV. Further remarks

10.9.1 One remark that can be added to the above conclusions is that the distinction between the Absolute Future System and the Pseudo-t_0-System for reference to the post-present runs perfectly parallel to the distinction between the conditional tense (or *was going to* + verb) and the preterite for reference to a time that is W-posterior to a past orientation time. Compare:

(a) I *will punish* him if he {*is* / **will be*} late.

(b) [I told him] I *would punish* him if he {*was* / **would be*} late.

(a) John {*will be* / *#is*} happy to hear that, whereas his wife {*will be* / *#is*} upset.

(b) [I expected that] John {*would be* / *#was*} happy to hear that, whereas his wife {*would be* / *#was*} upset.

This parallelism between the distribution of the Absolute Future System *vs* the Pseudo-t_0-System and that of the conditional tense *vs* the preterite extends to conditionals that have a TENTATIVE or COUNTERFACTUAL meaning.[14] (In this type, past time-sphere tenses are used to express remoteness from reality rather than reference to past time.) We have seen that we cannot use *will* in open conditionals, unless the *if*-clause itself functions as head clause for another (overt or implicit) *if*-clause. In the same way we cannot use *would* in tentative and counterfactual *if*-clauses, unless the clause in question itself supports an *if*-clause:

(a) It would upset her if that {*happened* / **would happen*}.

(b) If, as you say, that man {*would be* / *#was*} able to open our safe (if he had the right instruments), we should consider buying another, more sophisticated one.

The reason for this perfect correlation between the expression of T-posteriority in the present and past time-spheres may well be that it is both simpler and more economical to use parallel systems in the two time-spheres than to work with a different set of rules in each time-sphere.

10.9.2 In this chapter we have been mainly concerned with the use of the present tense versus that of the future tense in subclauses referring to the post-present. However, this distinction is just one instance of the more general distinction between the Pseudo-t_0-System and the Absolute Future System, and we could have referred to other tenses to illustrate the different distributions of these systems. Consider, for example, the following:

---

[14] A conditional has a tentative meaning if it refers to a possible world which is assumed by the speaker to be unlikely to be (or become) the actual world (e. g. *You would be punished if you did that*). A conditional is counterfactual if it refers to a possible world which is assumed by the speaker to be different from (incompatible with) the actual t_0-world (e. g. *My life would be easier if I had a car*).

> [If we dump his body in Soho,] the police *will think* that he *was killed* there after he *had been* unable to pay his gambling debts.

In this sentence the Absolute Future System form *will think* indicates the central orientation time of a post-present domain and *was killed* is a Pseudo-t_0-System form representing its situation time as lying in the past of this central orientation time. Since the situation of being killed is thus treated as if it were a past one (i. e. it is represented as past relative to the central orientation time which is treated as if it were t_0), the past perfect (*had been*) is used to represent a situation as T-anterior to it. This form too is a Pseudo-t_0-System form, as it incorporates its situation time in the post-present domain. As a matter of fact, because the domain is created by *will think*, which is a 'STRONG INTENSIONAL VERB' (see 10.6.6), the use of Pseudo-t_0-System forms in the subclauses is obligatory. The sentence becomes ungrammatical if we replace the Pseudo-t_0-System forms *was killed* and *had been* by the Absolute Future System forms *will have been killed* and *will have been*:

> [If we dump his body in Soho,] the police will think that he {*was killed* / **will have been killed*} there after he {*had been* / **will have been*} unable to pay his gambling debts.

Examples like these make it clear that the use of the present tense *vs* the future tense for post-present time reference should not be investigated in isolation. It is just once instance of the more general distinction between the Pseudo-t_0-System and the Absolute Future System.

10.9.3 It should be noted, finally, that the past counterparts of the Pseudo-t_0-System and the Absolute Future System show the same distribution as the Pseudo-t_0-System and the Absolute Future System, respectively:

(a) If John {*arrives* / **will arrive*} tomorrow, I {*will fetch* / **fetch*} him from the station.

(b) [I said that] if John {*arrived* / **would arrive*} the next day, I {*would fetch* / **fetched*} him from the station.

(a) You {*will live* / **live*} to see the day when China {*is* / *will be*} an economic superpower.

(b) [I predicted that] they {*would live* / **lived*} to see the day when China {*was* / *would be*} an economic superpower.

See also the discussion of direct and indirect binding in 9.28–29.

V. Summary

10.10.1 The basic difference between the Absolute Future System and the Pseudo-t_0-System is that absolute tense forms relate the situation time to t_0, whereas tense forms from the Pseudo-t_0-System relate it to a post-present 'basic orientation time'. From this it follows that an Absolute Future System form creates a post-present domain (which is at the same time a temporal domain and an intensional one), whereas the Pseudo-t_0-System expresses a relation in an already existing domain. This means that the temporal specification effected by an Absolute Future System form is independent of the surrounding linguistic context, whereas that effected by a Pseudo-t_0-System form is not. A Pseudo-t_0-System form requires a linguistic context providing the necessary post-present basic orientation time. The use of the Pseudo-t_0-System in a subclause is then a sign that the situations referred to in the subclause and the head clause are closely related to each other, not only temporally but also logically: the subclause is fully integrated into the head clause, and the two situations are presented as forming an interpretive unit.

10.10.2 We have discussed the typical cases of subclauses requiring either of the two systems as well as those that are compatible with both, and we have pointed out some factors that are relevant to the distribution of the two tense systems:

(a) Generally speaking, the subclauses that allow or require the use of the Pseudo-t_0-System belong to one of the following types: subclauses functioning as subject or object of the predicate of the head clause (with the exception of those discussed in 10.4.6), restrictive relative clauses, and subclauses functioning as adverbials that are fully integrated in the head clause (i. e. functioning as 'adjuncts' rather than 'disjuncts' (Quirk et al. 1985: 1071).

(b) The categories of subclause in which the Pseudo-t_0-System has to be used express or connote some kind of open condition for the actualization of the head clause situation.

11. Tense choice determined by temporal focus

11.1 Definition of ‘temporal focus’ 573
11.2 The unmarked or marked choice of temporal focus 576
11.3 The manipulation of temporal focus for a specific purpose 581
11.4 Summary 585

Abstract

In this chapter we examine the phenomenon of 'temporal focus'. When a speaker locates a situation time using an absolute tense, there are cases in which the full situation including the situation time extends (or is conceived of as extending) over more than one time-zone, and in these cases there is a choice as to the time-zone in which the predicated situation is located. There are two conflicting influences on the choice of temporal focus when using absolute tenses: the salience of the present moment in those cases in which it is included in the time of the full situation, and the temporal focus of the surrounding discourse. When there is a clear conflict between one of these influences and the choice of time-zone (= choice of temporal focus) made by the speaker, we talk of 'marked temporal focus'. We speak of a 'shift of temporal focus' when the discourse switches from focus on one time-zone to focus on another. A shift of temporal focus from the present to the past may call up a past point of view from which a situation was observed and, often, evaluated. This is often exploited in narrative. Such a shift of temporal focus from the present to the past may also imply nonapplicability at speech time. (Thus *I was going to help you tomorrow* differs from *I am going to help you tomorrow* in that it suggests that my past intention is no longer valid.) In the case of relative tenses, temporal focus involves not just a question of location in a particular time-zone but also a question of whether the focus is on the situation time or on the orientation time to which it is temporally subordinated.

11.1 Definition of ‘temporal focus’

The ‘temporal focus’ of a speaker is the time on which, through a particular tense choice, he focuses in the use of any given clause. In connection with absolute tenses, temporal focus can be defined as the phenomenon that the speaker draws attention to a particular kind of time – past, pre-present, present or post-present – by locating a situation time in the corresponding ‘absolute time-zone’. This means that temporal focus is recoverable from the tense alone.

11.1.1 A tense form always establishes a ‘situation time’ (i. e. the time of a ‘predicated situation’ – see 2.12) and locates it in a particular ‘absolute time-zone’ (see 2.37) or, if it is a ‘relative tense’ (see 2.15.3), in a ‘temporal domain’ (see 2.15) whose ‘central orientation time’ (8.15) is located in a particular time-zone. The choice of tense reflects the choice of time that the speaker wishes to focus his attention on. This is most easily illustrated with absolute tense forms: when using the present tense the speaker focuses on the time with which the situation time coincides, viz. t_0. When using the absolute past tense he focuses on the past time-zone in which the situation time is located. Hence the difference between *is* and *was* in *He is no longer the brilliant scientist that he was*.

It is when the ‘full situation’ (see 2.12) encompasses both the past and the present time-zones that the notion of temporal focus seems most pertinent. As will be explained below, the difference between *The man who left just now is a sales representative* and *The man who left just now was a sales representative* is a question of **TEMPORAL FOCUS**: using *is*, the speaker just says what is the current profession of the man who left just now; by using *was*, the speaker focuses on a given past time, which in this context will naturally be the time when the addressee saw the man leave and perhaps wondered who he was.

11.1.2 Focusing on a time at which a situation time is located requires that the time in question be somehow identifiable to the hearer or reader. This is normally the case if there is a time-specifying adverbial, because the speaker’s temporal focus is then narrowed down to the Adv-time which ‘contains’ (= includes or coincides with – see 2.23.1) the situation time in question. This explains the difference between the following:

The milk *is* sour. *(focus on t_0, which is by definition identifiable)*

The milk *was* sour. *(This is not fully interpretable in isolation. We need to know what time the speaker is focusing on.)*

The milk *was* sour when I opened the bottle. *(This is fully interpretable because the time-specifying adverbial narrows down the speaker’s focus to a definite past time.)*

The word ‘definite’ in the comment to the last example may mean either ‘REFERENTIAL’ or ‘ATTRIBUTIVE’ in Donnellan’s (1966) sense. That is, it is not necessary that the time of opening the bottle is definite in the sense that the speaker knows (and assumes the hearer to know) when exactly it was that the bottle was opened (= the referential reading). It is sufficient that the speaker knows (and assumes that the hearer knows) that the bottle was opened, hence that there exists a time when the bottle was opened, even if they do not know the exact temporal location of that time (= the ‘attributive’ reading). The latter reading is sufficient because the message that the speaker wants to convey is that the milk was already sour in the unopened bottle. The question when exactly the bottle was opened is quite immaterial to this.

The time focussed on by the speaker can be recoverable not only from a time-specifying adverbial but also from the context. Compare:

> The paint was white. *(not fully interpretable in isolation)*
>
> [I asked John about the colour of the paint.] It was white. *(The situation time is interpreted as W-simultaneous with the time when I questioned John.)*

The latter example can be modified so that the second clause refers to the present:

> [I asked John about the colour of the paint.] It *is* white.

In this case the SHIFT OF TEMPORAL DOMAIN (see 8.21) implies a SHIFT OF TEMPORAL FOCUS from the past to the present.

In the case of relative tenses, temporal focus is also reflected in the tense chosen. However, a relative tense involves (at least) two orientation times: the situation time and the time of orientation by which the situation time is bound in a relation of simultaneity, anteriority or posteriority. The temporal focus may be on the situation time or the binding time, so that (except when the relation between the two is T-simultaneity), we rely on adverbials and other contextual factors as well as tense to ascertain more exactly where the temporal focus is located.

11.1.3 In the previous section, only examples with an ‘absolute tense’ (see 2.41) were given. In connection with absolute tenses, ‘temporal focus’ can be defined as the phenomenon that the speaker draws attention to a particular kind of time – past, pre-present, present or post-present – by locating a situation time in the corresponding ‘absolute zone’ (see 2.37). The choice of temporal focus is thus revealed by the choice of absolute tense. For a full temporal interpretation of the clause, the time focused on needs to be identifiable in some way. This may be through the use of a time-specifying adverbial or through interpreting the situation time as standing in a particular ‘W-relation’ (see 2.16.1) to a situation time that is present in the context, or through making use of other information that is pragmatically available (such as our general knowledge of the world). However, the latter elements do not create the temporal focus: they just help to identify what time exactly is focused on. *It is the use of a tense form that creates a temporal focus:* the very fact that the speaker uses a tense means that he has a particular absolute time-zone in mind, in which he locates the situation time.

11.1.4 In connection with ‘relative tenses’ (see 2.15.3), ‘temporal focus’ can again be defined as the phenomenon that the speaker draws attention to a particular time by choosing a particular tense. For a full temporal interpretation of the clause, the time focused on again needs to be identifiable in some way. This may be through the use of a time-specifying adverbial or through representing the situation time as standing in a particular ‘T-relation’ (see 2.16.1) to the binding orientation time. In the latter case there are two possibilities. Relative tenses representing their situation time as T-anterior or T-posterior to a binding orientation time in principle allow the temporal focus to be placed either on the binding orientation time or on the bound situation time. (In the case of relative tenses expressing T-simultaneity the difference between the two possibilities is neutralized, because the bound situation time then coincides with the binding orientation time – see 2.17.) The following examples illustrate this double possibility:

> [“Did you see John?”] – “No, he *had* already *left* when I arrived around ten o’clock.” *(The temporal focus is on the time to which John’s leaving is T-anterior. It is this time (viz. the time of my arrival) that is indicated by the when-clause.)*
>
> [John was no longer there when I arrived, because] he *had left* earlier, together with Linsey. *(The temporal focus is on the bound situation time, i. e. on the time of John’s leaving. This time is specified by a time-specifying adverbial (earlier), while the time of my arrival is not.)*
>
> At five p.m. John was going to leave. *(The temporal focus is on the binding situation time, i. e. on the time when it was the case that John intended leaving. It is this time that is specified by the time-specifying adverbial. Would leave cannot substitute for was going to leave.)*
>
> [She said that] John was going to leave at five p.m. *(The temporal focus may still be on the binding situation time, but it is more likely to be on the bound situation time. That is, the unmarked reading is that on which at five p.m. specifies the time of John’s leaving. It is only on this reading that would leave can substitute for was going to leave.)*

11.2 The unmarked or marked choice of temporal focus

We can talk of ‘marked’ and ‘unmarked’ temporal focus when the speaker has a choice as to which tense to use to refer to a situation. As far as absolute tenses go, this amounts to a choice as to the time-zone in which the situation is located, that is, a choice as to the relation between the situation time and t_0. There are two major factors in deciding on tense choice when a choice exists between two or more absolute tenses. On the one hand, if the discourse is ‘about’ a particular time-zone – if other situations in the surrounding discourse are located in a particular zone – then, all other things being equal, the unmarked choice for a situation which is to be introduced into the discourse is location in the same time-zone. On the other hand, if the time of the full situation includes t_0 but also extends into one or more other time-zones, then, all other things being equal, it is more relevant to represent the situation as located at t_0. When the time of the full situation does extend over the present time-zone and some other time-zone(s), then, these two influences on tense choice for absolute tenses compete. For example, if Meg is staying in my house now and will still be here for the next few days, then out of context, it is more informative to tell an addressee *Meg is here* than to tell the addressee *Meg will be here*. However, if I am talking about events that will take place in my home tomorrow (for example “*We're going to have a barbecue*”) it is more informative to say “*Meg will be here*” than “*Meg is here*”.

11.2.1 Needless to say, the choice of temporal focus can only be ‘MARKED’ if there is an ‘UNMARKED’ alternative, i. e. if the situation can be located in time by more than one tense. This is not the case in examples like the following:

My father *died* in 1998.

That man believes that the world *will perish* at the next full moon.

However, more than one temporal focus is possible when the reference is to a situation which lies completely before t_0: compare *I have already locked up* (= focus on the pre-present) with *I locked up at seven* (= focus on a past time). If the reference is to a durative ‘homogeneous’ (see 1.45) situation including t_0, there is no restriction on the choice of focus. Thus, when Greg is currently spending a two-week holiday at my home, all four absolute tenses can be used to focus on different parts of that two-week period:

I can't accompany you to the railway station now because Greg *is* here.

Greg *has been* here for almost a week now.

Jenny paid us a visit two days ago because Greg *was* here. [She was eager to see him.]

The reason Maud has invited herself to tomorrow's party is that Greg *will be* here. [She wants to see him at all costs.]

The different tenses here refer to different times within the period of Greg staying at my house. As appears from the following, the choice of tense form expressing a particular focus is constrained by the time referred to in the context (as well as by the speaker's and hearer's knowledge of the fact that Greg is currently staying at my home):

(1) I can't accompany you to the railway station now because Greg {*is* / *#was* / *#has been* / *#will be*} here. *(The # sign means 'unacceptable on the intended interpretation', which comes down to 'unacceptable in the given context'.)*

(2) Jenny paid us a visit two days ago because Greg {*is* / *was* / *#has been* / *#will be*} here. [She was eager to see him.]

(3) The reason Maud has invited herself to tomorrow's party is that Greg {*is* / *#was* / *#has been* / *will be*} here. [She wants to see him at all costs.]

There appear to be two conflicting tendencies at work here. One follows from the privileged temporal status of t_0, which is the pivot time of the whole tense system. This privileged status renders it possible for the present tense to be used in each of the above examples. Since the present tense means 'The situation time coincides with t_0' (see 3.1.1), and since, other things being equal, statements about the present are more relevant than statements about some other time, there is a natural tendency to use the present tense to talk about situations that include t_0. In this sense the present tense is the unmarked tense. However, the 'other things being equal' condition is not satisfied in (2) and (3), because the reference to Greg's 'being here' is made in a context dealing with a past or post-present time. This means that, in this sense, the present tense is the marked choice because it 'shifts the focus' from the time referred to in the context to t_0. In this sense, the unmarked forms in (2) and (3) are *was* and *will be*, respectively: they are the unmarked forms in the sense that they fit in with the context, i. e. with 'what the discourse is currently about'. This tendency too can be traced back to the Gricean Maxim of relevance: in a context about the past (or post-present), a statement about the past (or post-present) is more relevant than a statement about another time. This implies that, in a context dealing with the past, a statement about the past might be more readily interpretable than a statement about the present.

Of the two conflicting tendencies, the former appears to be the stronger in (2) and (especially) in (3): *is* sounds more natural than *was* in (2), and definitely more natural than *will be* in (3), which actually implicates that Greg is not yet here at t_0. However, that implicature can easily be blocked, for example, by the addition of *still*:

(3′) The reason Maud has invited herself to tomorrow's party is that Greg {*is* / *will* still *be*} here. [She wants to see him at all costs.]

11.2.2 Let us illustrate the effects of the conflicting tendencies with the help of another example. Since the present tense means 'The situation time coincides with t_0', and since (other things being equal) statements about the present are more relevant than statements about some other time, it is normal for us – at least in sentences used out of context – to use the present tense to talk about any situation that includes t_0. Thus, since it is presently the case that the Eiffel Tower is in Paris, this fact will normally be reported in the present tense: *The Eiffel Tower is in Paris*. Out of context, sentences like *The Eiffel Tower was in Paris*, *The Eiffel Tower has been in Paris* or *The Eiffel Tower will be in Paris* are odd, because they reveal a MARKED FOCUS on a time other than t_0, while such a time is neither specified nor inferrable from the sentences in isolation. The use of *was*, *has been* or *will be* can only be interpreted as meaning that the speaker is consciously focusing on an absolute time-zone other than the present, hence that the statement *The Eiffel Tower is in Paris* cannot be appropriately uttered because it is not true at t_0. This is why *The Eiffel Tower* {*was* / *has been* / *will be*} *in Paris* wrongly suggest that the Eiffel Tower is not in Paris now.

However, there is no such suggestion in the following sentence:

> My grandfather insisted on going to Paris because the Eiffel Tower *was* there. [He wanted to paint it.]

Because the relevant clause forms part of a past context, the past tense is the unmarked form here. This is in keeping with the above observation that there is a tendency to choose the tense which fits in with what the current discourse is about. The other tendency, viz. that the present tense is preferred when the full situation includes t_0, is the weaker tendency here, probably because the fact that the Eiffel Tower still exists in Paris is irrelevant to the message the speaker wants to convey. In other words, in this example the time of my grandfather's past visit to Paris is more relevant than t_0.

When it comes to relative tenses, markedness has to do, not with the choice of where the situation is located relative to t_0, but rather with the choice of where it is located relative to the binding time. Just as, in the case of absolute tenses, simultaneity with t_0 – i. e. location in the present – is the unmarked option where it is possible (albeit with the competing factor of the temporal location of the current discourse), so in the case of relative tenses, T-simultaneity with the situation time of the head clause is the unmarked option where it is possible. In some cases, though, there may be a choice between expressing simultaneity with the head clause situation time and expressing a different relation to a different time, to which the situation time is indirectly bound.

11.2.3 In 11.2.1–2 we have only discussed sentences that use an absolute tense form. However, the two tendencies observed in connection with these have their counterparts in clauses that use a relative tense form.

There is a natural tendency to use a tense form expressing T-simultaneity if the bound situation time (= time of the predicated situation) is to be interpreted as W-simultaneous with the binding orientation time. This follows from the fact that, other things being equal, T-simultaneity is the unmarked T-relation – see 9.20.4). Thus, the sentence

Bill told his children yesterday that the Eiffel Tower *was* in Paris.

is fully acceptable because it rightly states that, when Bill told his children about it yesterday, the Eiffel Tower was in Paris.[1] However, the following examples, in which the complement clauses locate their situation times respectively anterior and posterior to the time of the telling, are pragmatically unacceptable because they wrongly suggest that the Eiffel Tower was not in Paris when Bill told his children about it:

Bill told his children yesterday that the Eiffel Tower *had been* in Paris.

Bill told his children yesterday that the Eiffel Tower *would be* in Paris.

Still, the tendency to use a relative past tense (expressing T-simultaneity) if there is W-simultaneity in the actual world may, under certain conditions, be overruled by the tendency to use a tense that is in keeping with the situation time's temporal W-relation to the central orientation time of the past domain:

Bill told me that Greg had stayed at his house for two weeks and that his daughter had been quite unmanageable because she {*was* / *had been*} infatuated with Greg.

The use of *had been* [*infatuated*] is an example of 'indirect binding' (see 9.28.1), which is only possible in some types of subclause. The speaker focuses on the relation of W-anteriority of the situation referred to by *had been* [*infatuated*] to the situation referred to by *told* rather than on the relation of W-simultaneity of the situation referred to by *had been* [*infatuated*] with the situation referred to by *had been* [*unmanageable*]. (Focus on the latter relation would be expressed by the relative past tense form *was* [*infatuated*].)

11.2.4 As a further illustration, consider the following sentences:

The author of this book *is* my nephew.

The author of this book *was* my nephew.

When used in isolation, the second sentence suggests that the referent of the subject NP is no longer the speaker's nephew. The temporal focus expressed is therefore unmarked only if the person in question is indeed no longer the speaker's nephew, for example because he has died. On the other hand, there are contexts in which X *was my nephew* is the unmarked version even though the person in question is still the speaker's nephew at t_0. Thus, when my secretary comes into my office just as a visitor is leaving it, I am more likely to say *That was my nephew* than *That is my nephew* to inform her of the identity of the person who has just left. This preference follows from the fact that the past tense is the unmarked tense in a past situational context. In this example, it is natural for the speaker to place the temporal focus on the moment when the secretary saw my nephew and perhaps wondered who he was.

---

[1] Since not only the head clause situation but also t_0 is included in the subclause's full situation, the speaker may also say *Bill told his children yesterday that the Eiffel Tower is in Paris*. In that case there is a shift of domain from the past to the present zone.

11.2.5 The following example further illustrates how the past tense can express an unmarked temporal focus:

(4) ["Let's rehearse the concerto we are playing tonight." – "We can't do that here!] Don't you remember that notice on the receptionist's desk that *stated* that no musical instruments *could* be played in the hotel rooms?"

If the second speaker had said

(5) Don't you remember that notice on the receptionist's desk that *states* that no musical instruments *can* be played in the hotel rooms?

he would have placed the temporal focus on t_0 (the time of his utterance). Instead, he has preferred to put the temporal focus on the time when he and the addressee checked in at the hotel and read the notice on the receptionist's desk. In this way the situations are located in the past time-sphere rather than in the present one, and this is the unmarked tense choice in the given context.

Example (4) illustrates the possibility of an unmarked past temporal focus in clauses that are not bound (= temporally subordinated). The following is an example in a clause whose situation time is bound:

(6) [After we had unpacked, Bill suggested that we should rehearse the concerto we were playing that evening. I pointed out that we could not do that there, as] there *had been* a notice on the receptionist's desk which *had stated* that no musical instruments *could* be played in the hotel rooms.

In the same way as the preterite *stated* in (4) locates the situation (which still holds at t_0) at some time before t_0, *had stated* in (6) represents its situation as T-anterior to the relevant binding orientation time (= the situation time of *pointed out*). (The same is true of *had been*, so that had stated is an instance of 'indirect binding' – see 9.28.) In the given context (in which the speaker is clearly concerned with the past), the T-anteriority form *had been* represents the unmarked choice of temporal focus.

11.3 The manipulation of temporal focus for a specific purpose

A shift of temporal focus from the present to the past can result in an implicature of nonapplicability at t_0. For example, when the verb form used expresses posteriority, a shift of temporal focus to the past suggests that what was foreseen at some past time is no longer foreseen: *I was going to go to Cuba this summer* is naturally understood as implying ‘but I am no longer going to do so’. (Given the salience of the present moment, there is an assumption that if an intention is still valid it will be located in the present. The use of the past form of *be going to* locates the intention in the past and implicates that the intention is no longer valid.)

11.3.1 One of the possibilities inherent in the English tense system is that the speaker may sometimes ‘SHIFT THE TEMPORAL FOCUS’ from the present to the past in order to suggest that a situation no longer holds (or may no longer hold) at t_0. The following observations illustrate this. As pointed out in 7.10, we can use the present tense of *be going to* to refer to an arrangement about the post-present that is valid at t_0:

> The shop *is* going to be closed tomorrow. *(The decision to close the shop must have been taken before* t_0*, but the tense form does not refer to that time. The speaker just informs the hearer of the present existence of the decision.)*

However, the speaker can also say:

> The shop *was* going to be closed tomorrow.

Out of context, this sentence strongly suggests that the decision made in the past is suspended at t_0. The speaker now uses *was going to*, which expresses T-posteriority in a past domain (see 9.6.3). However, as is clear from *tomorrow*, the actualization of the situation is to be interpreted as W-posterior to t_0. Other things being equal, statements about the post-present are more easily linked to t_0 than to a past time. By using *was going to* instead of *is going to*, the speaker adopts a marked temporal focus: he relates the post-present situation (of the shop being closed) to the past time when the decision was made rather than to the present time at which the decision should normally be valid. The only reason why it could be relevant for him to do so is that his belief in the present validity of the decision is suspended at t_0. By using *was going to* the speaker not only avoids having to commit himself to a positive assertion concerning the post-present actualization of the situation referred to but also suggests that he cannot represent the arrangement as currently existing. This produces the implicature that the decision is no longer valid at t_0.

It is important to see that what we observe in such sentences is a shift of temporal focus, not a shift of temporal perspective. A shift of perspective would mean that the past tense was understood as referring to a situation which actually belonged to a nonpast zone. This is not what we observe here. What we observe is that the focus is placed on the pastness of the decision rather than on its present relevance.

A shift of temporal focus from the present to the past (i. e. the use of a past tense when the present tense is possible in terms of pure reference) can invoke a past point of view (which may belong to the speaker at some past time or to some other person). For example, a passenger in a car may say to the driver *There was a beautiful farm just back there*, meaning 'we've just passed a beautiful farm'. Clearly the farm is still in the same place, but the passenger, by referring only to that part of the full situation of the farm's being there which is located in the past (presumably at the time of the car's passing it), invokes his point of view when he saw it. (If, instead, he said *There is a beautiful farm just back there*, he would no longer be simply referring to his experience of the farm but would be implying that the existence of the farm has some current relevance as yet unexplained.)

11.3.2 Perhaps the main reason for shifting the temporal focus from the present to the past is that the speaker wishes to represent a situation which encompasses both present and past from the past POINT OF VIEW of someone else. (As is well-known, a hearer or reader more easily identifies and empathizes with someone (such as a character in a story) if the events are told from that person's point of view.) Compare, for example, the following sets of examples:

(7) The hill *is* very steep.
The capital *lies* in the middle of the forest.
The man only *speaks* Russian.

(8) They had difficulty in climbing, for the hill *was* very steep.
They were brought to the capital, which *lay* in the middle of the forest.
The police found they couldn't interview the man yesterday because he only *spoke* Russian.

In the sentences in (7) the speaker assumes a present temporal focus. He locates the situation times at t_0 and in doing so represents the situations from his own temporal standpoint. In the sentences in (8), in contrast, the fact that the speaker prefers to use a past tense means that he wants to assume the temporal standpoint (and hence the narrative point of view) of the relevant participants in the events: he wants to express that it was *they* who observed *then* and *there* that the situation referred to in the subclause was actualizing. (Note that the past tense forms do not represent a shift of focus or a marked focus: in a past tense context, using the past tense represents the unmarked choice of focus.)

The same comment also applies to *You will have difficulty in climbing, for the hill will be very steep*, where the choice of *will be* reveals that the speaker wants to represent the steepness of the hill from the future point of view of the climbing addressee.

11.3.3 That the speaker is sometimes free to choose a particular temporal focus is further illustrated by sentences like the following, which involve a modal auxiliary or semi-auxiliary:

(9) The man *had to be lying*. What he told us *could not be* the truth.

(10) The man *must have been lying*. What he told us *cannot have been* the truth.

Each of the clauses in these examples expresses a conclusion which is presented as the only possible interpretation or explanation of some situation. In (9), this conclusion is represented as one that was arrived at in the past and concerned a situation that was then actualizing; the speaker therefore assumes the temporal standpoint of the person drawing the conclusion, i. e. he locates the time of the situation of drawing a conclusion in the past (cf. *had to*, *could not*) and represents the time of the situation that is being interpreted (evaluated) as simultaneous with this (cf. *be lying*, *be the truth*). In other words, the clauses in (9) are instances of 'FREE INDIRECT SPEECH' (see 9.6.2). In (10), in contrast, the speaker expresses his own present conviction that a situation must have held in the past; he therefore locates the conclusion in the present zone (cf. *must*, *cannot*) and represents the situation interpreted as anterior to it (cf. *have been lying*, *have been the truth*). In other words, in both examples the temporal focus resides with what we might call the 'EVALUATION TIME' (i. e. the time when the inference is made), but this time is a past interval in (9) and a present one in (10). This means that the speaker has a choice of possibilities: he can put the temporal focus on his own t_0, in which case *must have been lying* and *cannot have been* [*the truth*] express what he himself considers to be true at t_0, or he can shift the focus to the past time of evaluation, in which case *had to be lying* and *could not be* [*the truth*] express the point of view of the experiencing consciousness (which may be the speaker himself) drawing these conclusions in the past.

11.3.4 There is a similar difference between a past focus (past evaluation of a situation that was then actualizing) and a present focus (present evaluation of a past situation) in pairs like the following:

(a) He {*seemed* / *appeared* / *happened*} to *be* a reliable worker.
(b) He {*seems* / *appears* / *happens*} to *have been* a reliable worker.
(a) What Gordon did *was* warn the headmaster.
(b) What Gordon did *is* warn the headmaster.
(a) It *was* Bill who made the news public.
(b) It *is* Bill who made the news public.
(a) It *was* {true / a fact} that the population was starving.
(b) It *is* {true / a fact} that the population was starving.
(a) It *was* {interesting / puzzling} that the dogs did not bark.
(b) It *is* {interesting / puzzling} that the dogs did not bark.

In each of the (b) examples the speaker uses the present tense in the head clause to express his own current evaluation of the subclause situation. In the (a) examples he uses the preterite to express how the subclause situation was appreciated in the past. The function of the tense of the head clause is thus to place the temporal focus on the time that is to be interpreted as the time at which the subclause situation is evaluated. (If the sentences were not used in isolation, these contrasts between present and past would have to be seen as a contrast between a tense-pattern that would represent unmarked temporal focus if the temporal focus were already on the present and one that would represent unmarked temporal focus if the temporal focus were already on the past.)

11.3.5 Examples involving an alternation of a present focus and a post-present focus are also available:

(a) It *is* John who *will be appointed*.
(b) It *will be* John who *is appointed*.
(a) It *is* a fact that these weapons *will* soon *be* obsolete.
(b) For a rapidly growing majority of people, it *will* soon *be* a fact that if they can't find you on the Internet, you *don't exist*. (www)

In the (b) sentences, the head clause refers to a post-present evaluation time. The subclauses refer to situations that will be evaluated at those times and which are therefore simultaneous with these times. (Since the head clause establishes a post-present domain, the subclause uses the present tense to express T-simultaneity – see 9.20.1.) In the (a) examples, the head clause expresses that the relevant evaluation time is the present. (Since the head clause does not establish a post-present domain, the subclause has to do so.) These (a) sentences therefore express a present conclusion concerning the post-present actualization of the situation referred to in the subclause.

In the following example the situation to be evaluated is represented as T-anterior to the post-present evaluation time:[2]

If there is a strike tomorrow, we*'ll have worked* in vain yesterday.

This sentence involves a shift of temporal focus entailing a marked focus because the conclusion expressed in the head clause, which is actually reached at t_0, is represented as a post-present conclusion. That is, the situation time of the head clause situation is represented as T-anterior to a post-present orientation time, although it could also have been expressed as anterior to t_0. (In the latter case the sentence would have been *If there is a strike tomorrow, we worked in vain yesterday.*) This kind of shift of temporal focus from t_0 to some post-present evaluation time is also illustrated by the following examples:

> [Sadly, on this issue, he was simply out of his depth. ...] He *will* not *have been* the first commentator on events several thousand miles away to have been misled. (www)
>
> [Boots' decision to drop its UK media agency OMD UK as a consequence of lumping all its marketing services requirements into WPP, prompted a senior source at the client to admit "they sacked the wrong agency".] The source *will* not *have been* the first senior marketer to express private frustration at being pressured into changing shops because of international considerations. (www)

11.4 Summary

11.4.1 The temporal focus of a speaker is the time on which, through a particular tense choice, he focuses in the use of any given clause. In connection with absolute tenses, **temporal focus** can be defined as the phenomenon that the speaker draws attention to a particular kind of time – past, pre-present, present or post-present – by locating a situation time in the corresponding 'absolute zone'. This means that temporal focus is recoverable from the tense alone. In the case of relative tenses, temporal focus is also reflected in the tense chosen. However, a relative tense involves (at least) two orientation times: the situation time and the time of orientation by which the situation time is bound in a relation of simultaneity, anteriority of posteriority. The temporal focus may be on the situation time or the binding time, so that (except when the relation between the two is T-simultaneity), we rely on adverbials and other contextual factors as well as tense to ascertain more exactly where the temporal focus is located.

---

[2] Imagine the following setting for this sentence: Yesterday it was Saturday, but the workers of a particular firm worked all the same because they were behind schedule and wanted to catch up. Today, however, they hear on the radio that there may be a strike tomorrow in one of their supply companies. If the strike goes through, they will soon be unable to continue working and will be behind schedule again. Under these circumstances, one of the workers might remark *If there's a strike tomorrow, we'll have worked in vain yesterday.*

11.4.2 We can talk of **marked** and **unmarked temporal focus** when the speaker has a choice as to which tense to use to refer to a situation. As far as absolute tenses go, this amounts to a choice as to the time-zone in which the situation is located, that is, a choice as to the relation between the situation time and t_0. There are two major factors in deciding on tense choice when a choice exists between two or more absolute tenses. On the one hand, if the discourse is 'about' a particular time-zone – if other situations in the surrounding discourse are located in a particular zone – then, all other things being equal, the unmarked choice for a situation which is to be introduced into the discourse is location in the same time-zone. On the other hand, if the time of the full situation includes t_0 but also extends into one or more other time-zones, then, all other things being equal, it is more relevant to represent the situation as located at t_0. When the time of the full situation does extend over the present time-zone and some other time-zone(s), then, these two influences on tense choice for absolute tenses compete. For example, if Meg is staying in my house now and will still be here for the next few days, then out of context, it is more informative to tell an addressee *Meg is here* than to tell the addressee *Meg will be here*. However, if I am talking about events that will take place in my home tomorrow (for example "*We're going to have a barbecue*") it is more informative to say "*Meg will be here*" than "*Meg is here*".

11.4.3 When it comes to relative tenses, markedness has to do, not with the choice of where the situation is located relative to t_0, but rather with the choice of where it is located relative to the binding time. Just as, in the case of absolute tenses, simultaneity with t_0 – i. e. location in the present – is the unmarked option where it is possible (albeit with the competing factor of the temporal location of the current discourse), so in the case of relative tenses, T-simultaneity with the situation time of the head clause is the unmarked option where it is possible. In some cases, though, there may be a choice between expressing simultaneity with the head clause situation time and expressing a different relation to a different time, to which the situation time is indirectly bound.

11.4.4 A shift of temporal focus from the present to the past (i. e. the use of a past tense when the present tense is possible in terms of pure reference) invokes a past **point of view** (which may belong to the speaker at some past time or to some other person). For example, a passenger in a car may say to the driver *There was a beautiful farm just back there*, meaning 'we've just passed a beautiful farm'. Clearly the farm is still in the same place, but the passenger, by referring only to that part of the full situation of the farm's being there which is located in the past (presumably at the time of the car's passing it), invokes his point of view when he saw it. (If, instead, he said *There is a beautiful farm just back there*, he would no longer be simply referring to his experience of the farm but would be implying that the existence of the farm has some current relevance as yet unexplained.)

11.4.5 This shifting of the temporal focus from the present to the past can, however, result in an **implicature of nonapplicability** at t_0. For example, when the verb form used expresses posteriority, a shift of temporal focus to the past suggests that what was foreseen at some past time is no longer foreseen: *I was going to go to Cuba this summer* is naturally understood as implying 'but I am no longer going to do so'. (Given the salience of the present moment, there is an assumption that if an intention is still valid it will be located in the present. The use of the past form of *be going to* locates the intention in the past and implicates that the intention is no longer valid.)

11.4.6 The fact that a shift of temporal focus from the present to the past calls up a past point of view is also used in narrative to present the observation and/or an evaluation of past situations as belonging to some person located at the time of actualization of the situations: the addressee sees past situations from the **point of view** of a narrated character (who may be the current speaker as he was at a past time, or may be someone else). This is most evident in **free indirect speech**. For example, a modal judgement about a past situation may be presented as taking place at the past time of the situation (thus giving the point of view of a represented character or the narrator 'then') or it may be represented as taking place in the present (thus giving the point of view of the narrator 'now'). Compare: *The goblins were advancing. There had to be at least a thousand of them* and *The goblins were advancing. There must have been at least a thousand of them*. Here, the epistemic necessity of the goblins numbering at least a thousand exists both at the past time at which the narrative events take place and at the present time of narration. The past tense form *had (to be)* places the addressee at the viewpoint of someone experiencing the advance of the goblins. The present tense *must (have been)* simply gives the rather more prosaic 'after the event' evaluation of the narrator.

11.4.7 As well as a shift of temporal focus from the present to the past, it is possible, in certain sentence types, to have a shift of temporal focus from the present to the future when the full situation observed or evaluated is (or can be conceived as being) in the future as well as the present. This explains why a speaker can choose between *It will be your sister who wins the first prize* and *It is your sister who will win the first prize*. The speaker focusses on the post-present in the head clause of the first example and on the present in the head clause of the second.

12. Preterite *vs* present perfect in clauses with temporal adverbials

I. Relevant classes of temporal adverbials 591
12.1 Deictic *vs* nondeictic time-specifying adverbials 591
12.2 Single-zone adverbials, multi-zone adverbials and zone-independent adverbials 593
12.3 Homogeneous *vs* heterogeneous time-specifying adverbials 594
12.4 (Non)inclusive heterogeneous time-specifying adverbials 595

II. Temporal adverbials and the choice between past tense and present perfect 596
12.5 Nondeictic adverbials 596
12.6 Past-zone adverbials 598
12.7 Noninclusive heterogeneous pre-present-zone adverbials 599
12.8 Noninclusive homogeneous pre-present-zone adverbials 601
12.9 Inclusive pre-present-zone adverbials 602
12.10 Multi-zone time-specifying adverbials 603
12.11 *Since*-adverbials 605
12.12 *For*-adverbials 611
12.13 *Until*-adverbials 616
12.14 *Before*-adverbials 619
12.15 The present perfect with adverbials referring to the present 620
12.16 Tense choice with actualization adverbials 622
12.17 Tense choice with adverbials indicating a recent indefinite bygone time 623
12.18 Tense choice with *once* 626

III. Summary 629
12.19 Types of temporal adverbials 629
12.20 Tense choice with temporal adverbials 629

Abstract

In this chapter we explore the ways in which the presence of a temporal adverbial in a clause interacts with the choice between the (absolute) past tense and the present perfect. (In chapter 6 we have already discussed the contrast between these two tenses in clauses without a time-specifying adverbial.)

In part I (= sections 12.1−4) we identify the relevant types of time-specifying adverbials: (a) deictic versus nondeictic adverbials; (b) single-zone adverbials, multi-zone adverbials and zone-independent adverbials; (c) homogeneous versus heterogeneous adverbials; and (d) inclusive versus noninclusive heterogeneous adverbials.

In part I (= sections 12.5−18) we address the compatibility of these various types of time-specifying adverbials with the past tense and the present perfect. For example, we address the question whether *just (now)* combines with the past tense or with the present perfect (or with both).

A summary of chapter 12 is given in part III.

I. Relevant classes of temporal adverbials

Temporal adverbials can be categorized as 'deictic' (e.g. *yesterday*, *the day before*) or 'nondeictic' (e.g. *at some time or other*, *at five o'clock*) depending on whether or not they are related to a temporal 'anchor'. The former can be further categorized as either 'absolute deictics' (e.g. *yesterday*) or 'relative deictics' (e.g. *the day before*) depending on whether the temporal anchor is t_0 or another time, and as either 'single-zone' adverbials (e.g. *yesterday*) or 'multi-zone' adverbials (e.g. *today*) depending on whether they refer to only one absolute time-zone (e.g. the past zone) or to a time span which includes the present zone plus the post-present and the pre-present or the past. Nondeictic adverbials are automatically 'zone-independent'.

Temporal adverbials can also be categorized as 'homogeneous' (e.g. *in 1983*) or 'heterogeneous' (e.g. *from 1983 to 1986*) depending on whether or not they can refer to the time interval (Adv-time) in its entirety as well as to any subpart of it. Within the latter class, we can formally distinguish between 'inclusive' adverbials, introduced by *(with)in*, and 'noninclusive' ones.

12.1 Deictic *vs* nondeictic time-specifying adverbials

12.1.1 Time-specifying adverbials, including the 'bifunctional adverbials' (which specify both duration and time – see 2.22.3), are either DEICTIC (ANCHORED) or NONDEICTIC (UNANCHORED). Only in the former case is the Adv-time related to a given 'TEMPORAL ANCHOR'.

I heard that name yesterday. *(deictic: yesterday means 'the day before t_0'. The temporal anchor is t_0.)*

I had heard that name the day before. *(deictic: the day before means 'the day before some orientation time'. The temporal anchor is not t_0 but a given past orientation time.)*

I've heard that name at some time or other. *(nondeictic: the Adv-time specified by at some time or other is not linked to a given temporal anchor.)*

He often {gets up / got up} at five o'clock. *(nondeictic Adv-time: at five o'clock is naturally understood as belonging to particular days, but the days in question are not anchored to a given orientation time.)*

Depending on whether the temporal anchor is t_0 or another time, a deictic time-specifying adverbial is an 'absolute deictic' or a 'relative deictic' expression.

12.1.2 A deictic time-specifying adverbial is an ABSOLUTE DEICTIC if the Adv-time that it indicates is anchored to t_0; otherwise it is a RELATIVE DEICTIC.

Examples of absolute deictic time-specifying adverbials are: *today*, *this morning*, *tomorrow*, *tonight*, *yesterday*, *three weeks ago*, etc. Adv-times which have t_0 as (expressed or inferred) endpoint are also absolute deictics: *since last week*, *until now*, etc. Examples of relative deictic time-specifying adverbials are: *the same day*, *that morning*, *the next day*, *the day before*, *two days earlier*, etc. An Adv-time that is anchored to a time which is itself anchored to t_0 can be referred to as an RELATIVE-ABSOLUTE DEICTIC. Compare:

> The letter I posted *yesterday* hasn't arrived. *(absolute deictic Adv-time)*
>
> The letter I posted *the day before yesterday* hasn't arrived. *(relative-absolute deictic Adv-time)*
>
> The letter she had posted *two days earlier* hadn't arrived. *(relative deictic Adv-time)*

There are also adverbials that can be used as either absolute or relative deictics:

> This has never happened {*in the past* / *so far*}, and will never happen again in the future. *(used as absolute deictics)*
>
> This had never happened {*in the past* / *so far*}, and would never happen again in the future. *(used as relative deictics)*
>
> He {will / would} tell her everything *in three days' time*. *(absolute deictic when combining with will, relative deictic when combining with would)*

12.1.3 Deictic time-specifying adverbials like *yesterday* or *in those days* are 'definite' referring expressions, i. e. the speaker assumes (or pretends) that the referent time is identifiable to the hearer, or that the hearer is at least familiar with the referring expression (which is then 'attributive' in the sense of Donnellan (1966) – see 11.1.2.) In other words, the use of such a deictic time-specifying adverbial is assumed to be sufficient for the hearer to know or infer the temporal location of both the 'anchor' and the Adv-time that is anchored to it.

Deictic expressions like *just*, *some time ago*, *recently*, *a long time ago*, etc. are less definite: while the anchoring time is still assumed to be identifiable, the temporal location of the Adv-time is less so, because the temporal distance between the anchoring time and the anchored Adv-time is not specified in a very precise way. These adverbials represent a category of adverbials that are neither (fully) definite nor (fully) indefinite.

As to nondeictic time-specifying adverbials, some refer in a definite way, whereas others do not. Compare:

> I met him *at some time or other. (indefinite nondeictic Adv-time)*
>
> I met him *in 2002. (definite nondeictic Adv-time)*

12.1.4 A definite nondeictic time-specifying adverbial has fixed time reference. That is, its temporal referent remains the same irrespective of the context in which the adverbial is used. Compare:

I met her *on the day that Bryan was buried*. *(definite nondeictic Adv-time with fixed time reference)*

Our son was born *in 2003*. *(definite nondeictic Adv-time with fixed time reference)*

One day he got seriously hurt in an accident. *(indefinite nondeictic Adv-time with (necessarily) non-fixed time reference)*

12.2 Single-zone adverbials, multi-zone adverbials and zone-independent adverbials

12.2.1 SINGLE-ZONE ADVERBIALS are deictic adverbials which refer to only one ‘absolute zone’ (see 2.37). For example, ‘past-zone adverbials’ specify a bygone Adv-time which can only be interpreted as disconnected from the present time-sphere (e. g. *yesterday*, *last week*, *in 1983*) and which are therefore incompatible with the present perfect:

My aunt {died / *has died} {yesterday / last week / in 1983}.

‘Pre-present-zone adverbials’ specify a period up to t_0 (e. g. *so far*, *since then*) and can therefore combine with the present perfect but not with the past tense:

Since then we have been left completely in the dark.

Up until now we have collected £ 543.

Similarly, *right now* is a ‘present-zone adverbial’, and *tomorrow* is a ‘post-present-zone adverbial’.

12.2.2 MULTI-ZONE ADVERBIALS are deictic adverbials which specify a time span which includes the present zone (= t_0) as well as the post-present and the pre-present or the past, e. g. *today*. Such adverbials are compatible with various absolute tenses, depending on the zone that receives the temporal focus.

John *is* in London today. *(temporal focus on the present)*

John *has been* in London today. *(temporal focus on the pre-present part of today)*

John *was* in London today. *(temporal focus on a past time in the course of today)*

John *will be* in London today. *(temporal focus on a post-present time in the course of today)*

Needless to say, multi-zone time-specifying adverbials are always homogeneous. (See the discussion of *I had a copious breakfast today* in 2.38.2.)

12.2.3 ZONE-INDEPENDENT ADVERBIALS specify a time which is not linked up with one particular zone, e. g. *at five o’clock*. Such adverbials are compatible with various absolute tenses, depending on the zone that receives the temporal focus.

He left at five o'clock.

I will leave at five o'clock.

I'm still in bed at five o'clock.

It goes without saying that a zone-independent adverbial is nondeictic in itself, but can only be meaningfully used if the tense of the sentence and the context in which it is used identify the absolute zone and the implicit Adv-time in relation to which it should be interpreted.

12.3 Homogeneous *vs* heterogeneous time-specifying adverbials

Within the class of time-specifying adverbials we can also distinguish between 'homogeneous' and 'heterogeneous' (or 'nonhomogeneous') time-specifying adverbials. In other words, Adv-times may be (represented and / or interpreted as) homogeneous or heterogeneous.[1] A HOMOGENEOUS ADV-TIME is a durative time interval that is understood as being the same all the way through. Such a homogeneous Adv-time is DISSECTIVE. This means that any part of the Adv-time can be referred to by the same adverbial as refers to the Adv-time as a whole. In other words, it is criterial of a homogeneous time-specifying adverbial that the adverbial establishing the Adv-time can also be used to refer to any portion of the time span in question. For example, the adverbial *in 1983* can be used not only to refer to the complete time span which began on 1 January 1983 and ended on 31 December 1983 but also to talk about any day in that period:

In 1983 he still lived in Paris.

My father died in an accident in 1983.

In the former sentence, *in 1983* may well refer to the twelve-month period as a whole; in the latter we can only interpret it as referring to a particular day in that period.

By contrast, a time-specifying adverbial is HETEROGENEOUS (i. e. represents an Adv-time as heterogeneous) if it can only refer to the Adv-time as a whole, not to any smaller portion of it. For example:

From 1983 to 1986 I lived in Paris.

*My father died in an accident *from 1983 to 1986*.

---

[1] Since the property of being homogeneous or heterogeneous is a property of the Adv-time determined by the nature of the time adverbial describing it, the labels 'homogeneous' and 'heterogeneous' will be applied both to the Adv-time and to the adverbial denoting it. This is similar to the practice (introduced in 1.44) of speaking of (non)-bounded situations as well as (non)bounded clauses.

I watched TV *all afternoon*.

*Bill arrived *all afternoon*.

12.4 (Non)inclusive heterogeneous time-specifying adverbials

12.4.1 Within the class of heterogeneous time-specifying adverbials, which can only indicate a period as a whole, there is a formal distinction between prepositional phrases introduced by *within* or *in* (in the sense of *within*) and other adverbials. As noted in 1.46.1, *(with)in*-adverbials, which we can refer to as INCLUSIVE ADVERBIALS, can only be added to a clause with a 'telic VP' (see 1.39). Compare:

I have received three threatening letters. *(receive three letters is a telic VP)*

I have received three threatening letters {in / within} the last four weeks. *(inclusive adverbial)*

I have been working very hard. *(work hard is an atelic VP)*

*I have been working very hard {*in* / *within*} the last four weeks. *(inclusive adverbial)*

I have been working very hard *for* the last four weeks. *(noninclusive adverbial)*

12.4.2 Not every temporal adverbial introduced by *in* is an inclusive adverbial. Time-specifying adverbials like *in the past*, *in 1999*, etc. are not inclusive. Neither is *in a few days* in *I'm leaving in a few days*. We can only speak of an inclusive meaning if the *in*-adverbial measures the duration of the period containing the time(s) of actualization of the situation(s) referred to and (at the same time) measures either the length (duration) of one bounded situation or the number of subsituations making up a bounded repetitive hypersituation:

I met him twice in a few days. *(inclusive)*

I'll see him in a week. *(noninclusive because in a week does not measure the duration of a bounded situation)*

I've visited him three times in one week. *(inclusive)*

He wrote that novel in less than two weeks. *(inclusive)*

I've written several novels in the past. *(not inclusive because in the past does not measure the length of the repetitive hypersituation)*

II. Temporal adverbials and the choice between past tense and present perfect

Now that several types of temporal adverbials have been identified, we can examine which types are (in)compatible with either the present perfect or the past tense. It should be clear that in doing so we will not be concerned with the relative past tense. A relative past tense form is generally incompatible with a time-specifying adverbial because it implies that the temporal location of the situation time is to be inferred from the relation of T-simultaneity (= coincidence) with the binding time (see 8.17.2). As noted in 8.26.1, a situation time cannot derive its temporal specification from two different mechanisms – the use of a tense form expressing coincidence and the presence of a time-specifying adverbial – at once, even if the times they refer to coincide with one another. Hence the difference of interpretation between *Jim whispered that he was still thirsty* (where *was* is naturally interpreted as expressing simultaneity) and *Jim whispered that he was still thirsty at three o'clock* (where Jim's being thirsty can only be interpreted as anterior to his whispering, which means that *was* is now an absolute tense form).

12.5 Nondeictic adverbials

Nondeictic adverbials, by virtue of being unanchored, are compatible both with the past tense (e. g. *I got up at two a.m.*) and with the present perfect (on an indefinite, often repetitive reading, e. g. [*You don't believe I've ever got up at two a.m.? I can assure you.*] *I* ***HAVE*** *got up at two a.m.* [*Several times.*]).

In 12.1.1, a nondeictic Adv-time-adverbial has been defined as an adverbial specifying an Adv-time which is not related to a temporal 'anchor' and which is therefore automatically 'zone-independent', as in the following examples:

> He got up at five o'clock. *(nondeictic Adv-time: at five o'clock is naturally understood as belonging to a particular day, but the day in question is not anchored to a given orientation time.)*
>
> I've heard that name *at some time or other. (nondeictic: the Adv-time specified by at some time or other is not linked to a given temporal anchor.)*

Nondeictic time-specifying adverbials never specify a period including t_0 because an interpretation involving reference to t_0 is automatically a deictic interpretation. However, this does not mean that nondeictic time-specifying adverbials cannot combine with a present perfect. In fact, it follows from their being unanchored that they can combine with any tense (except the present tense), because they do not help to specify the temporal location of the situation time.

[I think] I've met him *at some time or other.*

[You don't believe] I've ever got up *at two a.m.*? [I can assure you,] I HAVE got up *at two a.m.* [Several times.]

The present perfect is possible in these sentences because the situation times are clearly conceived of as lying within a period leading up to t_0. (In both examples this period is likely to be the speaker's lifetime.) What is uppermost in the speaker's mind is not the *time when* a *specific* situation actualized but the *fact that* a particular *kind* of situation has actualized (once or several times) in a period up to t_0. To see this better, compare:

(1) John left the office at five o'clock.

(2) ["John has never left the office at five o'clock." – "That's not true!] John HAS left the office at five o'clock. [Many times. I saw him."]

In (1), *at five o'clock* indicates a deictic (anchored) time interval because it is interpreted in relation to a particular time (day) that is assumed to be identifiable from the context or is 'given' by virtue of its including t_0. In (2), in contrast, *at five o'clock* is not a deictic indication of time because it is not interpreted in relation to a particular day referred to in the context or any other given time. Whereas (1) states that five o'clock was the time when John left the office on a particular day, (2) states that the situation of John leaving the office at five o'clock has actualized at least once in the pre-present (i. e. within an unspecified period leading up to t_0). In other words, whereas (1) locates the semelfactive situation of John's leaving the office at a particular past time, (2) expresses that the situation of John leaving the office at five has actualized on at least one (unspecified, indefinite) day in a period up to t_0. In (2) the adverbial *at five o'clock* thus belongs to the description of the situation itself, whereas in (1) it denotes the past Adv-time specifying (i. e. 'containing' – see 2.23.1) the situation time of the situation.

This semantic difference between (1) and (2) has a syntactic correlate in the fact that *at five o'clock* is a necessary adverbial adjunct in (2) whereas it is an optional one in (1) (unless it is the only constituent there that expresses new information). This appears from the fact that *at five o'clock* can be fronted in (1) but not in (2):

At five o'clock John left the office.

*At five o'clock John HAS left the office.

When present perfect sentences of the kind exemplified by (2) are used without a context such as given in (2), they usually involve a repetitive time adverbial:

John has often gone swimming *at six o'clock in the morning.*

Many a time, passengers have been terrified *when their plane began to lose height.*

I have occasionally left *before Tom (did).*

However, the sense of repetition does not come exclusively from the adverbial. Even if the latter is dropped (in which case *have* normally receives the nuclear accent because the sentence contradicts a claim to the contrary), there is a sense of (at least potential) repetition. The following sentences suggest paraphrases like 'It has happened on occasion that ...' or 'It has happened at least once that ...':

John HAS gone swimming at six o'clock in the morning.

I HAVE left before Tom (did).

Passengers HAVE been terrified when their plane began to lose height.

It is precisely the lack of information concerning the temporal location of the situation time(s) that produces this potentially repetitive reading. Sentences like those above express no more than that, in a period up to now, there has been one or more instances of a situation of the type 'swimming at 6 a.m.', or 'leaving before Tom', etc. No information is given concerning the precise temporal location of these instances, nor about their frequency.

12.6 Past-zone adverbials

Past-zone adverbials are only compatible with the past tense, not with the present perfect (not even when there is a clear idea of present relevance or resultativeness). For example: [*I know what it means to be in the army.*] *I {served / *have served} during the Falklands war.*

12.6.1 A time-specifying adverbial specifying a time in the PAST ZONE (i. e. a bygone time which is seen as disconnected from the present time-sphere) can combine with the past tense, but not with the present perfect.

I {went / *have gone} to London yesterday.

(speaking in the evening) The plumber {came / *has come} this {morning / afternoon}.

A 'bifunctional adverbial' (which specifies both duration and time – see 2.22.3) may similarly be a past zone adverbial:

["When were you at university?"] – "We {*were* / **have been*} at university from 1986 to 1990." *(Note that, because the adverbial provides the new information asked for, it is taken to specify the full period, so that the situation time is taken to be the* *time of the full situation. This reading is due to the Gricean Maxim of Quantity, which stipulates that all relevant information must be given. The relevant information (= the information asked for) is the time of the full situation.)*

["From 1986 to 1990 I was in India. What were you two doing during that time?"] – "We {*were* / **have been*} at UNIVERSITY from 1986 to 1990." *(Because the adverbial represents given information – the new information (= information asked for) being what the addressees did in that period – the Adv-time coincides with the situation time, but the situation time may be only part of the time of the full situation. The reply is perfectly true if the addressees attended university from 1985 to 1991.)*

Note that *from 1986 to 1990* can easily be fronted in the second example (where it represents given information), but not in the first (where it represents new information).

12.6.2 Perhaps it needs stressing that the rule that the past tense has to be used with adverbials specifying a past Adv-time applies even if there is a clear idea of present relevance or resultativeness.

[I know what it means to be in the army.] I {*served* / **have served*} *during the Gulf war.*

"[Can we enter the building?]" – "Yes, the janitor {*has opened* the door / *opened* the door *a minute ago* / **has opened* the door *a minute ago*}."

This illustrates the fundamental claim (made in section 2.3.1) that the basic meaning of a tense is to locate a situation in time in a particular way. The use of a tense is wholly determined by its semantics (= temporal structure), which has to fit in with the temporal information given by the time-specifying adverbial or by the context.

12.7 Noninclusive heterogeneous pre-present-zone adverbials

Noninclusive heterogeneous pre-present-zone adverbials normally combine with the present perfect only: *I {*was / have been} fascinated by insects from childhood.*

12.7.1 When a noninclusive heterogeneous time-specifying adverbial indicates a PRE-PRESENT ZONE (i. e. a bygone period which leads up to t_0), it is as a rule the present perfect that is used:

From the beginning of May until now I have been ill. *(continuative reading)*

From the beginning of May until now I have been ill three times. *('quantificational constitution' reading – see 5.4.7)*

At least a dozen accidents have happened here over the past four years. *(quantificational constitution reading)*

So far nothing much has been done about the problem. *(indefinite reading)*

12.7.2 It should be noted, however, that not every noninclusive heterogeneous adverbial that is used (or can be used) as a pre-present-zone adverbial allows any of the three W-readings. For example, some pre-present-zone adverbials (e. g. *from childhood*) are only compatible with a continuative reading. Compare:

I have been fascinated by insects from childhood. *(continuative reading)*

*I've been in France exactly six times from childhood. *(From childhood clashes with the quantificational constitution reading imposed by six times.)*

*I have seen a dragonfly from childhood. *(The continuative reading and an up-to-now reading are pragmatically excluded; from childhood does not allow an indefinite reading.)*

The reason why *from childhood* only allows a continuative reading is that it is a 'SITUATION-UNBOUNDING' adverbial. This means that it functions as a bifunctional duration adverbial referring to a period whose endpoint is explicitly left vague, which means that it precludes the situation from being represented as bounded. Obviously, a nonbounded pre-present situation cannot come to an end before t_0.

12.7.3 *Since*-adverbials can be used as noninclusive heterogeneous pre-present-zone adverbials, as in *I've never seen him again since (then)*. Because *since* can be used in various ways (viz. as a preposition, adverb or conjunction) and because the choice of tenses is complex in sentences containing a *since*-clause, *since*-adverbials will be treated extensively in a separate section, viz. 12.11 below. For the moment we will restrict ourselves to saying that the present perfect is the unmarked tense in clauses containing a *since*-adverbial which identifies a period up to t_0:

He [went to his study after dinner and] has been working ever since. *(continuative reading)*

[Four years ago he was on an airplane that had to make an emergency landing in a field.] He has not travelled by air since. *(indefinite reading)*

Since then he has travelled by train. *(continuative habit or indefinite single-situation reading)*

I've been in China no less than eleven times since 1996. *(constitution reading)*

12.7.4 The choice of tense – preterite versus present perfect – in clauses containing *until now* is discussed in 12.13.3–7 below.

12.8 Noninclusive homogeneous pre-present-zone adverbials

Noninclusive homogeneous pre-present-zone adverbials mostly (and those of the type *for the {past / last} two weeks* exclusively) combine with the present perfect, but the past tense is sometimes used, though not normally in Br. E., to imply a break between the past and the present.

This class consists of a limited number of adverbials, the most important of which are *in the past*, *just*, *lately*, *recently* and prepositional phrases of the type *for the {past / last} two weeks*. The latter combine with the present perfect only (at least if they indicate a period up to now),[2] while the former mostly combine with the present perfect, but the past tense can be used in order to focus on a period which is treated as a past (i. e. closed off) period in spite of its leading up to, or almost up to, t_0. Since *recently*, *lately* and *just* are discussed in detail in 12.17 below, we will restrict ourselves here to illustrating this rule with examples of *in the past*. This adverbial normally collocates with the present perfect when it indicates an indefinite period-up-to now:

> Planning permission *has been given* in the past for the conversion of the two ward blocks into residential accommodation. (LOB)
>
> Washington is today closer to Moscow than any city in Europe *has been* in the past. (LOB)
>
> Trinidad, Australia and Canada might all be expected to make a greater contribution than they *have done* in the past. (LOB)
>
> I *have* many times in the past *seen* squirrels in the woods across the railway, [but they have always been grey]. (LOB)
>
> In the past few weeks there *has been* a prolonged discussion between Ministries as to whether the cuts should apply uniformly across the board. (LOB)
>
> In fact such Yugoslav activity *has been* particularly *intensified* in the past year or so. (LOB)

Occasional examples in the past tense can be found, provided there is some kind of break between the past and the present:

> Syndicalism (…) grew in the cities, not in the country areas, and *was* closely associated with anarchism in the past before the Falangists and Catholics made it ‘respectable’ in its current form of national verticalism. (LOB)

---

[2] For example:

> In other words, they should carry on as they *have been doing* for the last 10 years. (LOB)
>
> The stores had been hit by the same strike wave that *has paralysed* the port of Takoradi for the past week. (LOB)

> [There is, however, another factor which weighed perhaps more heavily with the Government's decision to introduce some form of control.] In the past the Governments of both India and Pakistan voluntarily *agreed* to maintain strict control over emigration to Britain. (LOB)
>
> [In the meantime, the peasant derives many benefits from the management of the economy] – he is to a certain degree cushioned against the natural calamities which *made* life so difficult in the past. (LOB)

However, even if there is a sense of contrast between past and present, Br. E. normally uses the present perfect in combination with *in the past*:

> Whilst the above arrangement together with correct condenser design *has been* largely *used* in the past, the tendency today is undoubtedly towards the use of adsorption of the impurities from one or more of the process streams. (LOB)

12.9 Inclusive pre-present-zone adverbials

Inclusive pre-present-zone adverbials can in principle combine with either the past tense or the present perfect; the choice of tense depends on the speaker's temporal focus.

12.9.1 'Inclusive' adverbials (i.e. prepositional phrases with *within* or *in* – see 1.46.1) can in principle indicate either a past interval or the pre-present zone, and can therefore collocate with either the past tense or the present perfect. The choice depends on the speaker's 'temporal focus' (see 11.1):

> I {*have spoken* / spoke} with Tim three times within the last few days. *(This kind of example is not essentially different from I {have spoken / spoke} with Tim today – see 12.10.)*
>
> ["When did he disappear?"] – He {*disappeared* / **has disappeared*} within the last month. *(In this context, the temporal focus is on some indefinite past time in the period leading up to now.)*
>
> Security awareness *has increased* significantly within the last year. (www)
>
> Two volcanologists by the names of Maurice and Katia Krafft *died* in a volcanic explosion within the last five years. (www)
>
> Within the last 3–4 decades masses of Bangladeshis *have migrated* to the United States. (www)
>
> Within the past twenty-four hours brief battles *were fought* in the Vedeno district of Chechnya. (www)

12.9.2 Note that prepositional phrases with *in the last* may or may not be used as inclusive adverbials. If they are (and indicate a period leading up to t_0), they are used with the present perfect:

> [Seven different Chinese agencies have been identified running operations inside Africa itself.] All *have been founded* in the last 18 months [and three sprang into life this year]. (LOB) (*in means 'within'*)
>
> The number of German film directors who *have made* first rate works in the last 25 years can be counted on the fingers of one hand. (LOB)
>
> [But there is a steady falling out of smaller manufacturers;] a thousand *have gone* out of business in the last ten years. (LOB)

In the following examples, the adverbial with *in the last* indicates a period leading up to t_0 but does not have an inclusive meaning (because the situation referred to is not bounded – see 12.4.1 above). Because there is reference to a period up to t_0, the present perfect is used:

> It is only in the last few years that the Czechs *have begun* to publish the work of their classic polyphonists. (LOB)
>
> In the last year or so road safety officials *have acclaimed* Chislehurst-Sidcup as an area free of accidents during the Bank Holiday weekends. (LOB)
>
> Apart from the contention that American prestige *has suffered* abroad in the last few years, the President-elect has refrained from attacking the policies of his predecessor. (LOB)
>
> [I would like to mention that, after the period of expansion of the group,] your Board *has* in the last year *concentrated* mainly on the consolidation of the group's activities. (LOB)

Self-evidently, the past tense is used if the relevant period does not lead up to t_0 (but is over at t_0):

> In the last section it *was pointed out* that the reliability of rejection or acceptance is a matter of choice. (LOB)

12.10 Multi-zone time-specifying adverbials

Multi-zone temporal adverbials can in principle combine with either the past tense or the present perfect; the choice of tense depends on the speaker's temporal focus.

As noted in 12.2.2, multi-zone time-specifying adverbials like *today*, *this week*, *this month*, *this year*, *this century*, etc. are compatible with the present perfect as well as the past tense. The choice of tense depends on the speaker's choice of temporal focus. This means that the present perfect is the rule to represent the situation time as leading up to t_0 (i. e. to express a continuative meaning or an up-to-now reading) or to convey an indefinite reading (i. e. the situation time is the time of a bygone situation, but there is no actualization focus: the speaker is concerned with NOW rather than THEN; in most cases he focuses on a present result of the bygone situation, or on some other kind of current relevance.) The following illustrate these uses of the present perfect:

[On the upside, though, the butterflies are magnificent.] We'*ve seen* two this week that are new to us – [a Golden Piper flitting around our garden like a little independent veld fire, and a Dry-leaf Commodore on the leaf litter in Thuma Forest Reserve.] (www) *(The use of are makes it clear that the speaker is concerned with* NOW rather than with THEN.)

I'*ve been working* hard this month.

She'*s met* him twice this week.

His financial situation *has not been* too bad this year.

And in fact you'*ve met* him this week. [Did you talk about the subject of PR at all?] (www)

MCI Communications Corp *has begun* service this week on the PacRim East fibre optic cable. (BNC)

In the following examples the past tense is used to express 'actualization focus' (see 4.7.1), i. e. the speaker is concerned with THEN rather than NOW. This means that the speaker is not concerned with the possible current relevance of the bygone situation.

I met a former schoolfriend of mine this week. *(The speaker focuses on the time of the meeting, which he considers as past, even though it belongs to a period leading up to now.)*

I *went* to the museum today, [but it was closed]. *(The speaker focuses on the past time of his going to the museum. The fact that this past time forms part of an adverbially indicated period including* t_0 *is irrelevant to the choice of tense.)*

As a further illustration, compare the following:

I {*have spoken* / *spoke*} with Tim today. *(Today specifies a homogeneous multi-zone Adv-time which includes* t_0*. The indefinite perfect expresses that the situation of my speaking with Tim has actualized at some unspecified time in the course of today; the past tense implies that the speaker has a particular time in mind which he is treating as a past time even though it forms part of today.)*

I {*have spoken* / **spoke*} with Tim since yesterday. *(Since yesterday refers to the same period as today: it does not include any interval forming part of yesterday. However, unlike today, it is not a multi-zone time-specifying adverbial but a pre-present-zone time-specifying adverbial. This is why, unlike today, it cannot collocate with the past tense.)*

Incidentally, these two examples make it clear that what determines the possibility or impossibility of using the past tense with adverbials like *today* and *since yesterday* is the linguistic status of the adverbial – multi-zone *vs* pre-present – and not its reference in the actual world (in which both adverbials refer to the same time).

The following pair of examples further illustrate the choice between the past tense and the present perfect with multi-zone time-specifying adverbials:

> Jim *took* the train to London this morning. *(This sentence implies either that the morning is over at t_0 or that this is not the case but the speaker is thinking of the past time when Jim took the train.)*
>
> Jim*'s taken* the train to London this morning. *(This sentence implies that the morning is not yet over at t_0 and that the speaker is not concerned with the past time when Jim took the train but rather with the present result or relevance of that action.)*

Consider also the following:

> I *had* a copious breakfast today. *(Even though today indicates an Adv-time including t_0, the past tense is used if the speaker focuses on the time of breakfast. This time can be conceptualized as a past time because today is a homogeneous multi-zone adverbial: any part of today, whether past, pre-present, present or future, can be referred to as 'today'.)*
>
> I *had* a frugal breakfast this morning. *(Two readings: (a) this morning indicates a past period; (b) the morning is not yet over but the speaker expresses actualization focus on the past time of the breakfast.)*
>
> I*'ve* already *had* breakfast this morning. *(It is still morning. The speaker expresses current relevance. The message may be 'I don't need to have breakfast any more', 'I'm not feeling hungry', etc.)*

12.11 *Since*-adverbials

If the adverb *since* or a prepositional phrase with *since* indicates a period up to t_0, the clause in which it is used has to be in the present perfect: *I haven't seen him {since / since that night}*. If the *since*-adverbial is a *since*-clause indicating a period up to t_0, the head clause uses the present perfect, whereas the *since*-clause uses the present perfect if the situation referred to leads up to t_0 and the past tense if the situation in question is a bygone situation: *I haven't seen him since I {have been living here / came to live here}*. A possible exception is a cleft of the type *It {is / has been} a long time since I {went / have gone} to a restaurant*. The use of the present perfect in the *since*-clause is then only possible if the situation in question could in principle have actualized several times in the pre-present period. Thus, the present perfect is ungrammatical in *It {is / has been} a long time since my wife {died / *has died}*.

There are some exceptional cases in which a head clause in the present tense can collocate with a *since*-construction (especially in a conversational style).

12.11.1 The word *since* can be used as an adverb, as a preposition and as a conjunction. In all three cases *since* refers to a period starting before and continuing up to some orientation time. If the orientation time in question is t_0, the adverbial is a pre-present-zone adverbial, so that the present perfect has to be used.

[I met him at the races, but] I haven't seen him since. *(adverb: since = 'since then')*

I haven't seen him since yesterday. *(preposition)*

I haven't seen him since I met him at the races. *(conjunction introducing an adverbial time clause)*

12.11.2 For a good understanding, it is useful to add a few remarks on the use of *since* as an adverb and its use as a preposition.

(a) As an adverb, *since* is mainly used in NONASSERTIVE CLAUSES (i. e. clauses which are negative and / or interrogative in interpretation, but not necessarily in form). In ASSERTIVE CLAUSES (which are positive and not interrogative in meaning) we normally use either *since then* or (if the interpretation is continuative) *ever since*:

[He left three days ago, and] we haven't seen him since.

[She witnessed a terrible car accident three weeks ago.] I wonder if she's driven since.

He has travelled by train {since then / $^?$since}.

He [went to his study after dinner and] has been working {since then / ever since / $^?$since}.

Still, examples can be found with *since* used as an adverb in an assertive present perfect sentence receiving a continuative interpretation:

[It took me a year to get the divorce and] I have been happy since. (www)

I have been feeling better since, but still not 100 %. (www)

Moreover, the phrase *long since* can only be found in assertive contexts, because the measure phrase *long* provokes a t_0-factual reading. (As noted in 14.6.13, measure phrases normally have this effect.)

[Fate has yet to determine in what category I shall win my Oscar, but] I *have long since decided* where I shall buy my dress. (www)

This example is interpreted as meaning both 'Since then I have decided where to buy my dress' and 'I made that decision a long time ago'. It does not mean (contrary to what the phrase *long since* might suggest) 'I have decided where to buy my dress + I made that decision long after the initial time of the *since*-period'.

(b) When *since* is used as a preposition, it can be followed by a noun phrase, a temporal adverb, a *before*-phrase or a *before*-clause:

He has lived here since the war.

He hasn't been at home since yesterday.

He has lived here since before the war.

He has lived here since {before / *when} the war started.[3]

The combination of *since* with *after* is rather unusual, but not impossible:

The French ministry emphasized that France has not authorized the sale of weapons, or even spare parts, to Iraq *since after* July 1990. (www)

After being freed, he immigrated to America and has lived in the US *since after* the war. (www)

Although Western films have been lensed in Vietnam *since after* the war, some have been turned away after an initial OK. (www)

(c) When *since* is followed by a noun phrase or adverb, the latter has to indicate the starting-point of the Adv-time leading up to an orientation time, not the Adv-time as a whole. A prepositional phrase in which the NP refers to the whole of an Adv-time leading up to an orientation time has to be introduced by *for* or (under certain conditions) by *within* or *in*.

He has lived here since the war. *(implies that he started living here when the war began, was going on or ended)*

He has lived here {for / *since} 40 years.

He has been ill {for / *since} some time.

She hasn't written to me since Christmas.

I haven't seen him {for years / *since years / in years / *within years}. *(In years is only possible in negative sentences. Within can only be used with an NP specifying a more definite time, e. g. within the last two months.)*

I have seen him once {*for years / *since years / *in years / *within years}. *(The precise indication of the number of times that the situation has actualized is incompatible with an indefinite indication of an Adv-time-up-to-t_0.)*

---

[3] The reason why the combination of *since* and a *when*-clause is excluded may be the following. *Since* means 'since the time that'. *When* means 'at (= simultaneous with) the time at which'. The combination *since when* would mean 'since the time at the time at which' (= 'since the time simultaneous with the time at which'), which is redundant. There is no point in using *since when* if *when* does not add anything to the meaning of *since* on its own.

I have seen him once {*for / *since / in / within} the last four years. *(The precise indication of the number of times that the situation has actualized is compatible with the definite indication of an Adv-time-up-to-t_0.)*

I haven't seen him {for / *since / in / within} the past year.

I have seen him twice {*for / *since / in / within} the past year.

12.11.3 When *since* is used as a conjunction and the *since*-clause indicates a period-up-to-t_0, the use of the tenses is normally as follows. As a rule, we use the present perfect in the head clause, where it may receive an indefinite reading, an up-to-now reading or a continuative interpretation. In the *since*-clause, the past tense is used when the *since*-clause situation marks the beginning of the period leading up to now, and the present perfect is used when the *since*-clause situation lasts throughout the entire period-up-to-t_0. (In the latter case the W-reading triggered by the present perfect in the *since*-clause is normally a continuative interpretation rather than an up-to-now reading.)

He has been worried since he *received* that threatening letter. *(continuative reading of the head clause; the since-clause situation forms the beginning of the period-up-to-now)*

Since she *was kidnapped*, the girl has been having nightmares. *(id.)*

We've only been to the zoo once since we'*ve* no longer *had* a car. *(constitution reading of the head clause; continuative reading of the since-clause)*

We haven't had problems with damp since we *installed* central heating. *(indefinite reading of the head clause)*

Since they *have had* a garden, they have grown all their vegetables themselves. *(Both clauses receive a continuative reading.)*

I haven't spoken English since we *moved* to Madrid. *(indefinite reading of the head clause)*

I haven't spoken English since we *have been (living)* in Madrid. *(indefinite reading of the head clause; continuative reading of the since-clause)*

We've been feeling better since we'*ve been taking* more exercise. *(Both clauses receive a continuative reading.)*

It is interesting to note that the present perfect can be used in *since*-clauses involving verbs like *start*, *begin*, *become*, which would seem to have an inchoative meaning and thus to refer to a situation that marks the beginning of the pre-present period only:

We've been feeling better since we {*started* / *have started*} taking more exercise.

We've found several similar cases since we {*began* / *have begun*} looking for them.

Since we *have begun* using 1STEP we have had fewer injuries. (www)

Since you *have started* your business, how many contracts have you completed and over what length of time? (www)

> [Prior to that I did very little exercise.] Since I *have begun* exercising I have also tried to change my diet by cutting down on carbohydrates. (www)
>
> Since I *have started* graduate school I have been focusing a lot on saving money. (www)
>
> Since he *has begun* to narrow his focus career-wise, he has also begun to see that he will need a lot of math. (www)

The following are examples with other verbs marking the beginning of a period up to now:

> [I just want to thank you so much for designing such a powerful tool in website design.] My business has boomed ever since I *have joined* the program. (www)
>
> [I just have to put up with all the humiliations that fall on my head in this great country.] It's been difficult, too, since Anwar-saab *has become* insanely mad. (BNC)
>
> Since Moo *has cancelled* the Paypal subscription plan for stores, we haven't heard anything else about making our payments. (www)
>
> [She ends up talking about him, though, in the park.] Since Billy*'s come around* that's all we've been talking about. (BNC)

Of course, this use of the present perfect is not possible with just any verb. For example, *Since I've written to the company they have been bombarding me with information* can only be interpreted with *have written* describing a continuative habit, which does not really make pragmatic sense, and *Since I've sent the coupon to the company they have been bombarding me with information* cannot really be interpreted at all. The verbs that do allow the use of the present perfect are verbs like *start*, *join, become*, etc. which allow the interpretation of the *since*-clause to be 'since the inception of the state that the referent of the subject NP is now in' (with 'state', of course, including habits). That is, there is a mixture of present perfect continuative meaning and inchoative meaning.

12.11.4 The present tense is more common than the present perfect in the head clause of sentences of the type '*it is* + NP denoting a period of time + *since*-clause':

> It {is / has been} a good three weeks since I paid that bill.
>
> It {is / has been} at least 10 years since those riots took place.
>
> It {is / has been} a long time since we received a salary increase.
>
> It *is* a good few years since I last saw this movie [but the memory lingers on]. (www)
>
> It *has been* at least 6 years since we had a winter that rivalled this one for sheer cold and snow. (www)

There are a few things worth noting here:

(a) In examples like these, the actualization of the *since*-clause situation marks the beginning of a period up to now. This means that a continuative reading is ruled out. (In fact, a continuative reading requires the use of *that* rather than *since*:

It's a good two weeks {that / *since} I have known that;

Today it's three years {that / *since} I have been married to Sharon.)

(b) Apart from the possible use of *is* in the head clause, the pattern illustrated by the above examples is special in that it allows the use of a (noncontinuative) present perfect in the *since*-clause. (Since the *since*-clause situation marks the beginning of a period up to now, we would normally expect that the past tense must be used.)

(c) This use of the present perfect is only possible if the sentence does not contain an adverbial that is incompatible with the present perfect (e.g. *last*) and provided the situation referred to in the *since*-clause is viewed as repeatable (see 5.21.1):

It {is / has been} three weeks since I {*received* / *have received*} a bill. *(Receiving a bill is a repeatable situation. With have received the sentence means something like 'I haven't received a bill for three weeks'. In other words, there is no difference of meaning between It is three weeks since I have received a bill and It is three weeks that I have not received a bill.)*

It {is / has been} three weeks since I {*received* / **have received*} that bill. *('Receiving that bill' is not a repeatable situation.)*

It {is / has been} three weeks since I {last *received* / **have* last *received*} a bill. *(The presence of last rules out the present perfect.)*

Though it is only six weeks ago since it *was* first *decided* to form a Rifle Club at Southwell, [so much energy has been thrown into the scheme that …]. (www) *(The use of first rules out the present perfect.)*

It has been close to six months since he *has been* able to contribute fully to the operation. (www) *(Because the situation is repeatable, the interpretation is 'For nearly six months he has been unable to …'.)*

[We are looking forward to it as] it is a good few years since we'*ve been* in Portugal. (www) *(similar)*

I have to say it is a long time since I *have heard* such total rubbish spoken about comets and Planet X. (www) *(similar)*

12.11.5 There are some exceptional cases in which a head clause in the present tense can collocate with a *since*-construction (especially in a conversational style):

(a) The present tense can be found when the speaker focuses on the present continuation of a (permanent or temporary) habit whose beginning is specified by the *since*-construction.

[It was a daunting experience but a good boost for my learning process.] Since then I *am* a little more relaxed in front of the crowds. (www) (*since then* = *'since and because of that experience'*)

[I am by origin catholic but also went through the born-again stage with the Assembly of God for 2 years.] Since then I *am* back to being a catholic but with many different beliefs. (www) (*Compare: {From that time onwards / For the last three years} I {have been / *am} back to being a catholic.*)

[I decided to give it a try and] since then I *don't take* any painkillers or inflammatory tablets. (www)

Ever since then, I *don't* just listen, I *hear*. (www)

[Dear Nikki, one year ago I had a hysterectomy and] ever since then I *don't want* sex very much. (www)

The following are examples with a *since*-clause:

I'*m feeling* much better since I {began / have begun} doing yoga exercises.

Since I have started doing Atkins *I have* terrible leg cramps. [How can I alleviate them?] (www)

There is no doubt that more people *are flying* into BUR than ever before since United has cancelled all direct flights from SFO to ONT. (www)

Since Switzerland has legalised "dope" Swiss banks, airliners, tunnels, roads and government offices *are* the unsafest places in the world. (www)

(b) In examples like the following, *since then* only ostensibly collocates with the present tense. In fact, *since then* has been 'raised' from the subclause into the head clause in order to be fronted:

[He turned them around, and got them out of the relegation zone at the end of last season. In that sense he was certainly a success.] But since then he *doesn't seem* to have been able to take them forward. (www) (*= 'It seems that since then he hasn't been able to take them forward.'*) (*Note that the present tense is the default option here: Since then he hasn't seemed to be able to take them forward doesn't sound as good.*)

Since then I *(don't) think* I have seen him here. (*= 'I (don't) think I have seen him here since then.'*)

12.12 *For*-adverbials

A *for*-adverbial functioning as a pure duration adverbial is compatible both with the past tense and with the present perfect (e.g. *I {lived / have lived} in London for three years*). If it functions as a pure time-specifying adverbial or bifunctional adverbial establishing a pre-present Adv-time, it is compatible with the present perfect but not with the past tense (e. g. *I {*lived / *was living / have been living} here for six months now*). In this section we also address the question which of the three temporal W-interpretations of the present perfect (indefinite, constitution, continuative) combines with which of the three uses of a *for*-adverbial.

12.12.1 A *for*-adverbial usually specifies no more than the duration of the full situation, i. e. it usually functions as a PURE DURATION ADVERBIAL (see 2.31.1). In this function it is compatible with any tense:

> I {had worked / worked / would work / have worked / will work / will have worked} in that factory for three years.

In fact, it is only as a pure duration adverbial that a *for*-phrase can combine with the past tense:

> I lived in London for three years. (*For three years specifies the time of the full situation. Since the past tense represents the situation time as completely over at* t_0, *and since the situation time here coincides with the time of the full situation, this sentence implies that I no longer live in London.*)

However, in combination with the present perfect, a *for*-adverbial can also function as a BIFUNCTIONAL ADVERBIAL, i. e. as an adverbial which at the same time specifies the duration of the FACTUAL FULL SITUATION (see 5.7) and establishes an Adv-time leading up to t_0, i. e. a pre-present period. In addition, a *for*-adverbial can also be used as a pure TIME-SPECIFYING ADVERBIAL, doing no more than establishing a period up to t_0. Compare:

> "[I know Brighton well because] I have lived there for some time." – ["When was that?" – "From 2001 to 2003".] (*The present perfect clause receives an indefinite interpretation. This implies that the situation referred to has come to an end before* t_0 *and that for some time specifies the duration of the full situation.*)
>
> I've been living here for six months now [and I like it]. (*The present perfect clause receives a continuative interpretation. This implies that for three years specifies the duration of the 'factual full situation', i.e. that portion of the full situation that leads up to* t_0. *At the same time it establishes the relevant period up to* t_0.)
>
> ["When did you last see him?"] – "I haven't seen him for a very long time." (*The present perfect clause receives a constitution interpretation. This implies that for a very long time specifies the Adv-time that counts as period up to* t_0. *Since no situation has actualized, for a very long time does not specify the duration of a full situation or of a factual full situation. In this case it is used as a pure time-specifying adverbial.*)

In sum, whereas a *for*-adverbial can only be a pure durational adverbial in clauses in the past tense, it may in principle be a pure duration adverbial, a pure time-specifying adverbial or a combination of both (i. e. a bifunctional adverbial) in clauses in the present perfect. The question that remains to be answered is which of the three interpretations of the present perfect is compatible with which of the three uses of the *for*-adverbial. This question will be dealt with in the remaining subsections of 12.12.

12.12.2 On a continuative interpretation of a present perfect clause, the situation time fills the entire pre-present zone. This means that on that reading, a *for*-adverbial is a bifunctional adverbial, which indicates the length of the 'factual full situation' (see 5.7) as well as the length of the pre-present zone:

> We have been using this kind of machine for three weeks. *(For three weeks indicates the Adv-time leading up to t_0 as well as the length of the factual full situation, i. e. the full situation as it has actualized up to now. Nothing is said about the length of the 'potential full situation' – see 5.7.)*

The interpretation of *for* as indicating a period up to t_0 can be enforced by the addition of *now* to the *for*-adverbial:

> I've been waiting here for two hours now.

12.12.3 On an UNMARKED UP-TO-NOW READING (see 5.18) and on a NONQUANTIFICATIONAL CONSTITUTION READING (see 5.4.8), the situation time of a present perfect clause also fills the entire pre-present zone. Here too a *for*-adverbial will be interpreted as a bifunctional adverbial:

> [The news that some of them are going to be made redundant has shocked the workers.] We'*ve been telling* them for years that this wouldn't happen. *(unmarked up-to-now reading)*

> What have you been doing for the last two hours? [I'*ve been looking* for you all over the place!] *(nonquantificational constitution reading)*

12.12.4 On a QUANTIFICATIONAL CONSTITUTION READING (see 5.19.1) of a present perfect clause, the situation time of the repetitive hypersituation also fills the entire pre-present zone. However, in this case a *for*-adverbial cannot be interpreted as a bifunctional adverbial. It can only be used in the following cases:

(a) The *for*-adverbial can indicate the period-up-to-now, but only if the number of subsituations is zero. Otherwise we have to use *(with)in* instead.

> I haven't seen him for weeks. *(also possible: in weeks) (For weeks is a time-specifying adverbial only.)*

> Seven people have been murdered in this area {in / within / *for} the last three months.

> I've met him three times {in / *for} the last week.

(b) If the number of subsituations is not zero, a *for*-adverbial can be used to specify the duration of the individual subsituations making up the repetitive hypersituation or to specify the sum-total of the duration of the subsituations. In both cases it is used as a pure duration adverbial.

> Since then I've visited him in prison for a short time three or four times. *(Each subsituation lasted a short time.)*
>
> I've often been abroad for longer than two weeks since I have been a student. *(The for-adverbial indicates the duration of the various subsituations; the Adv-time-up-to-now is specified by the since-clause.)*
>
> [He's often been ill in his life.] All in all he's been ill for a total of at least two years.

12.12.5 On an INDEFINITE PERFECT INTERPRETATION, a *for*-adverbial can only indicate the duration of the full situation(s):

> I've recently spoken with her in hospital for nearly an hour [and I can assure you she's not dying yet].
>
> [I've done a lot of jobs in my life.] I've been a factory-hand *for three years*, a free-lance journalist *for nineteen months*, a postman *for two years*, [and God knows what other jobs I've done so far].

It follows that a *for*-adverbial also naturally combines with an EXPERIENTIAL INDEFINITE PERFECT (see 5.13) if the duration phrase is part of the description of the situation rather than an adverbial measuring the duration of the situation:

> Have you ever worked in a factory for at least a year (not just as a student holiday job)?' *(The experience being asked about is working-in-a-factory-for-at-least-a-year, not 'working in a factory'.)*

12.12.6 A clause using the present perfect and a *for*-adverbial may sometimes be ambiguous between a continuative and an indefinite interpretation. In the continuative interpretation, the *for*-phrase indicates a period-up-to-t_0 as well as the duration of the situation time: the two time intervals coincide. In the indefinite interpretation, the *for*-phrase indicates the duration of the full situation, which is shorter than the length of the period up to t_0.

If a present perfect is ambiguous in this way, the continuative interpretation is always the unmarked one. In fact, the indefinite interpretation requires a very specialized context (as detailed below the examples below). For example, the second example below requires a context in which it is relevant whether or not there has been a three-week period – specifically not a two-week or four-week period – of using 'this kind of machine'.

> I have lived in London for three years. *(unmarked reading: I still live in London; out of context, the indefinite interpretation 'There has been a three-year period in my life during which I lived in London' will not be chosen, unless there is a heavy accent on have, in which case the sentence contradicts an explicit or implicit claim to the contrary.)*

> We have used this kind of machine for three weeks. *(continuative or indefinite; the former interpretation will predominate if there is no indication to the contrary. The indefinite reading requires a contrastive accent on* *three**.)*
>
> I have helped him with his papers for two years. (*ambiguous; the continuative reading is the unmarked one*)

The indefinite interpretation of the last example is: 'Somewhere in a period leading up to now there has been a two-year period when I helped him with his papers, but that period is over now.' The markedness of this interpretation is clear from the fact that if we ask what question this sentence could be used to answer, then *Have you ever helped him with his papers for two years?* (meaning 'Have you ever done a two-year stint of helping him with his papers?', 'Do you have experience of a two-year-helping-him-with-his-papers situation?') is fine, but *Have you ever helped him with his papers?* is not. This means that the *for*-Adv-time does not form part of the new information provided by the answer and that the nuclear accent in *I have helped him with his papers for two years* tends to fall on *have*. If *I have helped him with his papers for two years* is nonetheless used as an answer to *Have you ever helped him with his papers?*, then it must be understood as a two-part answer: 'Yes, I have helped him, I helped him for two years'.

In such a present perfect sentence with a *for*-adverbial, a continuative or indefinite reading may be promoted or enforced by one of the following factors:

(a) The continuative interpretation is strongly promoted by the use of the progressive form:

> We have been using this kind of machine for three weeks.

(b) The continuative interpretation is enforced by the addition of *now* to the *for*-adverbial:

> We have used this kind of machine for three weeks now.

(c) The indefinite interpretation can be enforced by the context. This is the case, for example, when *We've lived in London for ten years* forms part of a piece of discourse like the following:

> [We've lived in various European capitals so far.] We've lived in London for ten years, in Paris for seven years, in Berlin for three years and for a short while in Brussels.

Similarly, the unmarked continuative reading of *I have stayed in college for two months* is ruled out by the context in the following example:

> Since I have been a student I have regularly stayed in college for two months without going home.

12.13 *Until*-adverbials

12.13.1 Prepositional phrases and adverbial clauses introduced by *until* (or *up to, till, up till*) can be used as pure duration adverbials (specifying the duration of the full situation). In that case the adverbial is compatible with various tenses.

> I {had worked / worked / would work / have worked / will work / will have worked} until three in the morning.

12.13.2 The combination *not … until X* is often used in the sense of 'as late as X', 'only at X'.

> John didn't leave until midnight. *(= 'John only left at midnight', 'John left as late as midnight', 'It was midnight before John left')*
>
> The boss wasn't in his office until noon. *(This is ambiguous between 'It is not true that the boss was in his office until noon' and 'It was noon before the boss was in his office'. On the former interpretation, not has wide scope over the whole sentence, on the latter it only has scope over until noon.)*

In such sentences, the *not … until* adverbial answers the question *When?* rather than *How long?* This means that such a *not … until* adverbial functions as a time-specifying adverbial (indicating a punctual time), not as a pure duration adverbial.

In the remainder of section 12.13, we will disregard this Adv-time use of *not … until*.

12.13.3 An *until*-adverbial specifying a period up to a past orientation time is compatible with the past tense but is seldom used in combination with the present perfect. The present perfect is only possible if the period indicated by the *until*-adverbial is interpreted as an Adv-time-up-to-t_0.

> I {*stayed* / **have stayed*} with the body until the police came.
>
> He *has stayed* with his wife's body until now.
>
> Up till now I'*ve lodged* only one complaint against her.

It should be noted, however, that in negative sentences involving *until now*, *up to now*, *up till now*, etc., the past tense can be used to express a contrast between what was not the case before now but is the case now or is soon going to be the case:

> [Hazardous waste experts know that certain bacteria can essentially eat toxic waste, reducing it to less noxious substances.] But until now they *didn't know* what mechanisms allowed these bacteria to devour chemicals. (www) *(contrast with the present: now they do know)*

> [I have finally enabled permanent links for each post, which appear to be working fine, and provided you with the ability to leave comments.] Sorry I *didn't do* that until now. (www)
>
> [That's true, but it can be easily fixed.] I *didn't do* that until now because I thought that … (www)

The use of the past tense in the latter example means that the speaker treats his 'not doing that' as a past situation. This does not mean that he is actually doing it at t_0. *Now* usually refers to an interval which is somewhat longer than the punctual t_0. The sentence is therefore fine if the speaker has decided to 'do that' soon. What counts is that the speaker has mentally detached himself from the situation of 'not doing that', i. e. that he perceives this as a situation from the past.

In positive sentences involving *until now*, the present perfect can often be used as an alternative to the past tense. Compare:

> We {*had* / *have had*} a small car until now, but yesterday we bought a people-carrier.
>
> We *had* a small car until now. *(implies: but that has now changed or is now going to change)*
>
> We *have had* a small car until now. *(This also implies that a situation is envisaged which entails that the situation that has held until now is no longer the case.)*

Similarly:

> Until now I {always *shopped* / *have* always *shopped*} locally, {but now I mostly shop on-line / but I'm looking into the possibility of shopping on-line}.
>
> Until now I {always *shopped* / *have* always *shopped*} locally. *(This suggests that the situation referred to is now over or is soon going to be over. This interpretation is due to the Gricean Maxim of Relevance: if the speaker is still shopping locally, he will normally say I always shop locally or I have always shopped locally. The addition of until now is only relevant if the situation has now changed or is now going to change.)*
>
> We {*had* / *have had*} a small car until now, but yesterday we bought a people-carrier.

12.13.4 *Until now* is also compatible with a present perfect receiving a continuative interpretation:

> Until now I {have lived / have been living} in the country. (*continuative interpretation: implies that I am still living in the country)*

The function of the *until*-adverbial here is that of a bifunctional adverbial. It specifies the period-up-to-t_0 throughout which the situation actualizes as well as the duration of the *factual* full situation. (It leaves open the possibility that the actualization will continue in the (as yet nonfactual) post-present, in other words that the *potential* full situation is longer than the actual one.)

12.13.5 *Until now* can also combine with the present perfect in sentences receiving a nonquantificational constitution reading or an unmarked up-to-now reading:

> [There you are!] Where have you been until now?
>
> Until now she has worked intermittently for various companies.
>
> Until now I've lived in London, Paris, New York, Brussels and Berlin.
>
> [Since 1888, the solo parts have been sung by professionals.] From then until now, these soloists *have* either already *had* international recognition or *have been* young soloists who have gone on to have very successful careers. (www)

12.13.6 On a quantificational constitution reading, *until now* does not specify the duration of the individual subsituations. It only indicates the Adv-time-up-to-t_0. However, in this case *until now* is normally replaced with *up until now*, *up till now* or *up to now*:

> {*Up until now* / *up till now* / *up to now* / ?*until now*} I've met him three times.

12.13.7 The addition of *until now* to an indefinite perfect sentence as a rule results in ungrammaticality if the sentence is positive, not if it is negative:

> I have already met her (*until now).
>
> I know Pisa because I have visited it a couple of times (*until now).
>
> I don't know Pisa because I've never visited it until now.

12.13.8 *Until*-adverbials other than *until now* (or one of its synonyms) cannot indicate an Adv-time-up-to-t_0. It follows that they can only appear in a present perfect sentence on an indefinite interpretation, in which case they function as pure duration adverbials.

> [Since I have been a student] I have always stayed in college until two days before Christmas.

Sentences which do not contain another adverbial (specifying the required period up to now) can only use an indefinite present perfect if they are used in a contradictive way. This implies that the *until*-adverbial does not represent new information and that the nuclear accent of the sentence falls on *have*:

> I HAVE (already) worked until three in the morning.

This requires a suitable context, such as the following:

> ["You're a lazy bastard. You've never worked until three in the morning." — "That's not true!] I HAVE (already) worked until three in the morning. [Several times, in fact!]"

Here the new information is that, contrary to what has been claimed, the situation of the speaker working until eight in the evening *has* actualized in the past.

12.14 *Before*-adverbials

12.14.1 A *before*-adverbial is a time-specifying adverbial, not a pure duration adverbial or bifunctional adverbial. Depending on the temporal location of *X* in *before X*, it can combine with virtually any tense:

> I {left / had left / would leave / would have left / will leave / will have left} before dark.

A *before*-adverbial can only combine with the present tense in habitual sentences, in sentences using the 'SPECIAL PRESENT TIME-SPHERE SYSTEM' – see 3.2–10):

> I leave before dark every day. *(habitual present)*
>
> That day they already meet in the cottage before midday. *(historic present)*
>
> I'm leaving before dawn tomorrow. *(present tense used as a futurish form)*

The present perfect can combine with *before now* and with *before* if this is interpreted as 'before t_0'.

> I've seen that man {before now / before / *before breakfast this morning}.

If X in 'before X' is a time other than t_0, the adverbial can combine with an indefinite present perfect, but only to convey an (at least potentially) repetitive reading in which the *before*-adverbial forms part of the description of the situation that is located in the pre-present – see 5.11.1:

> You think I'*ve* never *got up* before 5 o'clock? I can assure you I *HAVE got up* before 5 o'clock. Many times.
>
> [When I've requested that our positions be posted on certain web sites,] the advertisement period *has* sometimes *closed* before the webmaster has updated his/her list. (www)
>
> [Difficulties have arisen under the current arrangements in so far as] the 21 day period *has* sometimes *begun* before the CAA has received all the information that it has needed to consider a planning application. (www)

12.14.2 A present perfect combining with *before (now)* can only yield an indefinite reading or a quantificational constitution reading.

> I know you. We'*ve met* before, haven't we? *(indefinite reading)*
>
> This kind of disease *has occurred* in our village only twice before. *(quantificational constitution reading)*
>
> Have you been living in this house? *(continuative reading: we cannot add before on this reading)*
>
> Have you ever heard this before? *(indefinite reading)*
>
> How often have I told you this before? *(quantificational constitution reading)*

12.14.3 The idea ‘before t_0’ usually lexicalizes as *before* rather than as *before now*. This is in keeping with the fact that t_0 is by definition given.

12.14.4 The use of tenses in sentences involving a *before*-clause will be examined in detail in chapter 14.

12.15 The present perfect with adverbials referring to the present

With adverbials referring directly to the present (*at present*, *now*, *nowadays*, *these days*), it is sometimes possible to use the present perfect (but obviously not the past tense) when evaluating the present state of affairs resulting from a pre-present situation.

12.15.1 Needless to say, a past tense cannot co-occur with a time adverbial referring to the present. On the other hand, the present perfect can be used with *now* and/or *at present* in sentences evaluating the present state of affairs resulting from a pre-present situation. We can distinguish between four types. First, the sentence may contain a quantificational NP and ‘measure’ the progress which the situation starting before t_0 has made at t_0. In this case *at present* can be used, but not *now*:

> {At present / *now / up to now} only half of the goods have been sold. [We will have to make a special effort to sell the rest.]
>
> {At present / *now / up to now} I’ve only met two of his four sisters.

In this type, the VP (e. g. *sell half of the goods*) is ‘telic’ (see 1.39), and so is the kind of situation represented by the VP minus the quantifier (e. g. *sell the goods*). It is the telicity of the latter VP that is relevant: the speaker expresses how far the situation (which develops towards an inherent terminal point) has developed at t_0. (The quantifier *half of* indicates the result of this measuring.) The present perfect naturally receives a quantificational constitution reading.

The second type is similar, but now the VP is not telic and what is measured is the length of a situation that started before t_0 and still continues at t_0. Both *now* and *at present* are acceptable.

> At present we’ve been living here for three months. [That’s not a very long time.]
>
> We’ve walked quite a long way now. [Isn’t it time we had a rest?]
>
> I’ve been working for seven hours on end now.

Such sentences typically contain a pure duration adverbial or measure phrase. They naturally receive a continuative reading.

In the third type, the speaker sums up what is the latest state in the actualization of a chain of dynamic situations. The sentence is interpreted as 'Now it is the case that X is the latest event':

[He's completely out of control. Last week he stole a bike.] Now he's been arrested for dealing hash. *(indefinite interpretation)*

[He's completely out of control. Last week he stole a bike.] Now he's been dealing hash. *(nonquantificational constitution reading or unmarked up-to-now reading)*

In these examples, we cannot substitute *at present* for *now.*

In the fourth type, the speaker evaluates a given state of affairs. The sentence is interpreted as 'Now X appears to be the case' or, more generally, 'The latest state of affairs is that state X holds as a result of the actualization of Y'.

It has become clear now that he is not to be trusted.

12.15.2 *Nowadays* can combine with the present perfect in the fourth of these meanings only:

{At present / *nowadays} I've only met two of his four sisters. *(interpretation 1)*

{At present / *nowadays} we've been living here for three months. *(interpretation 2)*

[He's completely out of control. Last week he stole a bike.] {Now / *nowadays] he's been arrested for dealing hash. *(interpretation 3)*

It has become unclear nowadays whether … (www) *(interpretation 4)*

Nowadays, food has become easier to prepare. (www) *(interpretation 4)*

12.15.3 In Standard English, *these days* usually combines with the present tense:

We'*re caring* more for our environment these days.

Young actors *have* a greater instinct these days for film than they do for the stage. (BNC)

These days Konitz *plays* everything from standards to samba. (BNC)

However, the present perfect is possible too on the resultant state reading (= the fourth interpretation pointed out in 12.15.1):[4]

These days we *have dealt* very satisfactorily with the problem. (BNC)

---

[4] The following examples reveal another, American English, use, which does not belong to Standard British English (yet?). In this use, *these days* can combine with a present perfect yielding a continuative interpretation.

[Osama bin Laden had no comment.] He'*s been* awfully uncommunicative these days. (www)

Oh Well. I *haven't gotten* much done these days. [I've just been letting everything pass me by recently.] (www)

We'*ve been* pretty honest these days, and all of us *have talked* about our own inadequacies and the inadequacies of our institutions. (www)

With women's magazines these days warts *have taken on* an entirely new dimension. (BNC)

[Keith would hit them. Or raher he wouldn't, but he would want to.] These days he *has decided* to be the sort of man who does not hit people. (BNC)

These days, I'*ve* actually *reached* the point where I'll just phone friends who e-mail me. [This makes no sense, of course.] (www)

I'*ve* not only *matured* these days and act more my age, [but also I've grown spiritually by leaps and bounds in recent months.] (www)

[I asked these right-wing Bushites:] "Is that the new tone in Washington and the character and dignity we'*ve been hearing* so much about these days?" (www)

12.16 Tense choice with actualization adverbials

'Actualization adverbials' (e. g. *already*, *always*, *not … yet*, *ever*, *never*, *still*) referring to (non)actualization in a past period combine with the past tense. Those referring to (non)actualization in a period leading up to now combine with the present perfect, but in (especially spoken) Am. E. and to a lesser extent in colloquial Br. E., the past tense is often used as an alternative.

12.16.1 By ACTUALIZATION ADVERBIALS we mean such indefinite time expressions as *already*, *always*, *not … yet*, *ever*, *never* and *still*, which do not inherently indicate a particular time but refer to (non)actualization in a particular period. They combine with the past tense if the period in question is a past one, i. e. is a period which precedes t_0 and is completely cut off from it, and with the present perfect if the period in question is a period leading up to now. In the latter case, a continuative reading is excluded.

The trees were already shedding their leaves. *(focus on the past time when the situation was in progress)*

I've never spoken to the President. *(The perfect receives either an indefinite reading – never = 'never in my life up to now' – or, in a context asking when or how often I have spoken to the President, a quantificational constitution reading.)*

Did you ever beat him? *(e. g. when both of you were still professional players)*

Have you ever beaten him? *(e. g. in your life)*

I have already paid the bill. *(indefinite perfect, with a resultativeness implicature)*

I have already been reading poetry. *(In spite of the progressive form, the only possible reading is noncontinuative: 'There has already been a period-before-now during which I was reading poetry.)*

The opposition has not yet reacted to Mr Major's speech.

I have never heard such nonsense {in my life / before}.

I still haven't seen him. *(in a period up to t_0)*

(At the time) I still did not want to live in London.

12.16.2 With actualization adverbials implying a period up to t_0, Am. E. often uses the past tense, especially in spoken language. In colloquial Br. E. too, the past tense is sometimes used with *always*, *ever*, and (less frequently) with *never*:

I already did that. (Am. E.) *(Br. E. uses I've already done that instead.)*[5]

I (have) always said he was not to be trusted.

Graham {has always been / always was} a brilliant scientist.

{Have you ever seen / Did you ever see} such a beauty?

[One day he pulled me apart in front of the staff.] I *never* felt so small in my life. [I could hardly speak.] (www)

12.17 Tense choice with adverbials indicating a recent indefinite bygone time

> Four adverbials that indicate a 'recent indefinite bygone time' (viz. *recently, just, this minute, lately*) can co-occur with an indefinite present perfect. However, there are cases in which the past tense can be used too. This use is investigated here for each of the four adverbials.

12.17.1 On an indefinite interpretation, the present perfect co-occurs with four adverbials that indicate a RECENT INDEFINITE BYGONE TIME, viz. *recently, just, this minute, lately.*

This telegram has just arrived.

I have this minute heard that the deal is off.

I have recently met him.

There haven't been any burglaries here lately.

However, there are cases in which the past tense can be used too. In the next subsections we investigate this use for each of the four adverbials.

---

[5] The British National Corpus does contain a couple of examples, though, in which *already* combines with the past tense where the present perfect would normally be used:

["Perhaps we'd better think seriously about getting you away from here, after all." – "I ain't going," said Dolly.] "I already *told* you so."

"Very useful advice. Shame I already *got* it from Cowley."

12.17.2 Br. E. normally uses the present perfect with *this minute*.[6]
I've this minute seen her in the street.

However, the past tense is occasionally found when the 'closeness to now' (recency) is sufficiently clear:

Excellent timing – I just this minute *stepped* into the garden [to be greeted by a frantic shrieking noise and noticed a Peregrine Falcon with an unfortunate starling in its talons]. (www)

I just this minute *telephoned* them [and thankfully, Sundays are fine for them, so – despite a little initial panic – it needn't disrupt my planned moving]. (www)

I only *heard* about it this minute.

[Well then. You haven't heard?] Sergeant Archer and his mates just *left* this minute; [I would have thought you'd have passed them in the hall.] (www)

12.17.3 *Recently* combines with the present perfect if it is interpreted as indicating a period leading up to now or when it functions as an adverbial specifying a 'recent indefinite bygone time'. It combines with the past tense if it functions as an indefinite specifier of a time which is treated as past.

They've recently bought a second car. *(Recently indicates a 'recent indefinite bygone time', i. e. it is an indefinite specification of a bygone time in a period leading up to now. The present perfect receives an indefinite interpretation.)*

They recently bought a second car. (*Recently is used as an indefinite specification of a time which is treated as past. There is no clear difference of meaning between this example and the previous one.)*

I {have recently seen / recently saw} a picture of him in the paper.

I haven't seen Jim recently. *(Recently indicates a period leading up to now. What is said is that the situation of the speaker seeing Jim has not actualized in that pre-present period. The present perfect thus receives an indefinite interpretation.)*

It's only recently that I've had time to read newspapers. (*Recently indicates a period leading up to now. The present perfect receives a continuative interpretation.)*

He has been considering changing his job recently. *(continuative)*

12.17.4 *Lately* is similar to *recently*, except that it does not combine with the past tense in Standard Br. E.

I haven't seen Jim lately. *(Lately indicates a period leading up to now. What is said is that the situation of the speaker seeing Jim has not actualized in that pre-present period. The present perfect thus receives an indefinite interpretation.)*

Have you been to the dentist lately? *(The speaker asks if a particular situation has actualized in a pre-present period. The present perfect receives an indefinite interpretation.)*

---

[6] Of course, we disregard those cases in which *this minute* means 'right now':
You put that chain saw away this minute! (www)

He's only lately begun working here. *(Lately is an indefinite specification of a bygone time in a period leading up to now. The present perfect receives an indefinite interpretation.)*

The petrochemical market has lately started recovering [after having experienced a quite sharp recession in 1998.] *(similar)*

It's only lately that I've had time to read the newspaper. (*Lately indicates a period leading up to now. The present perfect receives a continuative interpretation.)*

She has lately been concentrating on writing and recording other genres of music. *(continuative) (Examples like these sound rather old-fashioned. It is only with only lately that a continuative interpretation sounds quite natural, as in the preceding example.)*

12.17.5 When it specifies a time lying immediately before t_0, *just* usually combines with the present perfect in Br. E., but (under Am. E. influence) the past tense is also occasionally heard.

I *have* just *had* a long talk with the man at the centre of the crisis. (LOB)

She *has* just *made* her first record for Philips, called 'Kiss Me'. (LOB)

I just *met* a friend of yours, Andy Wilson.

12.17.6 With *just now*, the choice of tense depends on its interpretation, which is related to its accentuation pattern and position in the clause:

(a) *Just now* can be used as a synonym of temporal *just*. In that case *now* is accented while *just* is not, and *just now* follows the verb or takes final position in the clause. This kind of *just now* normally combines with the past tense rather than the present perfect:

I *heard* just now that the deal is off.

I {*found* / **have found*} the missing papers just now.

What was that you *were singing* just now?

Examples with the present perfect are extremely rare. The BNC only contains the following two:[7]

I *have said* just now they must try and stop this coming in because ...

Once you've got your objectives then you select those themes or ideas from what you'*ve done* just now to support that objective.

---

[7] The following are www examples:

Martin Sixsmith was trying to approach it [= the question] from the point of view of the Civil Service and he, of course, as we *have heard just now* from Mr Baume, met a very vigorous specialist adviser who was prepared, on media matters, to put another case forward.

I'*ve been thinking just now* about how scared I was, even as a child, to fail to live up to others' standards.

I'*ve said* a prayer *just now* for you and your Bill. (...) Please take good care.

(b) When *just now* means ‘only just’ (in the sense of ‘only a very short time ago’), *just* is more accented than *now* and *just now* is normally placed in pre-verb position, i. e. before the verb if there are no auxiliaries and otherwise after the first auxiliary. In this use, *just now* combines with the present perfect and not with the past tense.

I {*have just now heard* / **have heard just now*} that the deal is off. *(The emphasis is more strongly on recency.)*

I *have just now noticed* that every time I post on blogger, it always shows my previous post instead of the new one. (www)

July 27. *I’ve just now transferred* everything over to our brand new flat. (www)

Oh my god, *it has just now dawned* on me that I will be eighteen soon! (www)

I *have just now returned* from seeing the new E. T. Special Edition! (www)

(c) *Just now* can also mean ‘right now’, with *now* referring to t_0. In that case it combines with the present tense.

I’m busy just now. [Can’t you come back tomorrow?]

“He’s staying at my flat just now,” said Celia. (LOB)

No, Mr Martin, he’s out just now. (LOB)

No doubt there will be many readers with new gardens who just now *are thinking* of making a vegetable garden for the first time. (LOB)

12.18 Tense choice with *once*

(a) When the adverb *once* means ‘once upon a time’, it normally collocates with the preterite, not with the present perfect:

There *were* once three squaws. [One sat on a leopard skin. One sat on a doe skin. ...] (www) *(The present perfect cannot be used.)*

(b) The past tense is also the rule when *once* means ‘in the past, but not now’:

TV sets are much cheaper now than they {once *were* / *were* once / **have* once *been*}.

Guns *were* once common in schools. [Until 1969, virtually every public high school in New York City had a shooting club.] (www)

“What Were Once Vices Are Now Habits” is my favourite Doobies album. (www)

(c) *Once* can also mean ‘at a certain time’. Since it is a matter of conceptualization whether ‘at a certain time’ means ‘at a certain time in the past’ or ‘at a certain time in the pre-present’, both the past tense and the present perfect can then be found:

He {once *promised* / *has* once *promised*} to help me.

All grownups {*were* once / *have* once *been*} children – although few of them remember it.

It's amazing how things that *were* once important are no longer as important. [It can be a gradual change – or sometimes overnight.] (www)

By daylight the bower of Oak's newfound mistress (…) presented itself as a hoary building of the Jacobean stage of Classical Renaissance as regards its architecture, and of a proportion which tells at glance that, as is frequently the case, it *has* once *been* the manorial hall on a small estate. (BNC)

Peat is a soil-like material made up of partly rotted organic matter (things that *have once lived*). [It is still used in many composts.] (www)

(d) When *once* is used in pre-verb position (i. e. after the first auxiliary or before the only verb form) and means 'there has been an occasion when …', the present perfect is used:

[John is somebody who spies on his neighbours.] I'*ve once seen* him opening their dustbins and searching the contents.

[Don't be afraid to ask.] The chances are these people *have once been* in a similar situation themselves. (www)

I'm sure you *have once posted* something, then regretted it! [Think About it!] (www)

It pains me to say that I *have once booed* one of my team's players. (www)

All our members *have once been* in the same position, in fact that's why we started! (www)

(e) The present perfect is used when the sentence with *once* can be paraphrased 'once X has happened, Y':

What we *have once enjoyed* we can never lose. (www) *(= 'Once we have enjoyed something, we can never lose it.')*

And if you *have once demonstrated* your skill at copying chairs, you can get on with meeting all the requests you will surely have from family and friends. (BNC)

Hence we find those who *have once quarrelled* carry themselves distantly, and are ever ready to break the truce. (www)

(f) If *once* means 'one single time' (as against *twice*, *three times*, etc.) it may collocate with any tense, including the present perfect. In that case it does not normally fill the pre-verb position.

My late Uncle Harry *saw* the sea only once in his lifetime. *(= 'only once in a past period')*

I *have read* the book only once. *(= 'only once in my life, which is a period leading up to now') (quantificational constitution reading)*

I'*ve slept* here once only. *(quantificational constitution reading)*

[I don't think any of the others caused the injury.] I *have* once before heard of this happening to a Lionhead belonging to a friend of my son. (www)

(g) *Once again* and *once more* can similarly combine with any tense, including the present perfect.

Relations *were* once more *worsening* between them.

We *had once again had* a busy year. (www)

Abbeydale and Sheffield *have* once again *shown* their commitment to developing world class facilities with this development. (www)

His tales of wedding plans *have* once again *focused* me on the event. (www)

All praise the mighty Wharf, for they *have* once again *tried* something new, exciting and may I say better. (www)

Relations *have* once more seriously *worsened* between Iraq and the UN Special Commission (UNSCOM) investigating Iraq's weapons-of-mass-destruction. (www)

III. Summary

12.19 Types of temporal adverbials

12.19.1 Temporal adverbials can be categorized as **deictic** (e. g. *yesterday*, *the day before*) or **nondeictic** (e. g. *at some time or other*, *at five o'clock*) depending on whether or not they are related to a temporal 'anchor'. The former can be further categorized as either **absolute deictics** (e. g. *yesterday*) or **relative deictics** (e. g. *the day before*) depending on whether the temporal anchor is t_0 or another time, and as either **single-zone** adverbials (e. g. *yesterday*) or **multi-zone** adverbials (e. g. *today*) depending on whether they refer to only one absolute zone (e. g. the past zone) or to a time span which includes the present zone plus the post-present and the pre-present or the past. Nondeictic adverbials are automatically **zone-independent**.

12.19.2 Temporal adverbials can also be categorized as **homogeneous** (e. g. *in 1983*) or **heterogeneous** (e. g. *from 1983 to 1986*) depending on whether or not they can refer to the time interval (Adv-time) in its entirety as well as to any subpart of it. Within the latter class, we can formally distinguish between **inclusive** adverbials, introduced by *(with)in*, and **noninclusive** ones.

12.20 Tense choice with temporal adverbials

12.20.1 **Nondeictic adverbials**, by virtue of being unanchored, are compatible both with the past tense and with the present perfect (on an indefinite, often repetitive reading). Compare:

(a) I got up *at two a.m.*

(b) [You don't believe I've ever got up *at two a.m.*? I can assure you.] I HAVE got up *at two a.m.* [Several times.]

(a) I worked *until three in the morning*.

(b) ["You're a lazy bastard. You've never worked until three in the morning." – "That's not true!] I HAVE (already) worked *until three in the morning*. [Several times, in fact!]"

(a) I got up *before 5 o'clock*.

(b) You think I've never got up *before 5 o'clock*? I can assure you I HAVE *got up* before 5 *o'clock*. Many times.

12.20.2 **Past-zone adverbials** are only compatible with the past tense, not with the present perfect (not even when there is a clear idea of present relevance or resultativeness):

I {stayed / *have stayed} with the body until the police came. *(Adv-time up to a past orientation time)*

[I know what it means to be in the army.] I {served / *have served} *during the Falklands war.*

12.20.3 **Noninclusive heterogeneous pre-present-zone adverbials** normally combine with the present perfect only:

I {*was / have been} fascinated by insects *from childhood. (continuative reading)*

At least a dozen accidents have happened here *over the past four years. (quantificational constitution reading)*

Nothing much has been done about it *over the last three years. (indefinite reading)*

12.20.4 **Noninclusive homogeneous pre-present-zone adverbials** mostly (and those of the type *for the {past / last} two weeks* exclusively) combine with the present perfect, but the past tense is sometimes used, though seldom in Br. E., to imply a break between the past and the present:

It has been highly successful *in the past* [and with your support this success will continue.] (www)

The profession of a doctor was respectable *in the past* [but today society has changed]. (www)

12.20.5 **Inclusive pre-present-zone adverbials** can in principle combine with either the past tense or the present perfect. The choice of tense depends on the speaker's temporal focus.

["When did he disappear?"] – He disappeared *within the last month. (focus on THEN.)*

Security awareness *has increased* significantly within the last year. (www) *(focus on NOW)*

12.20.6 **Multi-zone temporal adverbials** can in principle combine with either the past tense or the present perfect; the choice of tense depends on the speaker's temporal focus.

I'*ve been working* hard this month.

I *went* to the museum today, [but it was closed].

I {*have spoken / spoke*} with Tim today.

12.20.7 With ***since*-adverbials** the rules are as follows. If the adverb *since* or a prepositional phrase with *since* indicates a period up to t_0, the clause in which it is used has to be in the present perfect: *I haven't seen him* {*since / since that night*}. If the *since*-adverbial is a *since*-clause indicating a period up to t_0, the head clause uses the present perfect, whereas the *since*-clause uses the present perfect if the situation referred to leads up to t_0 and the past tense if the situation in question is a bygone situation: *I haven't seen him since I {have been living here / came to live here}*. A possible exception is a cleft of the type *It {is / has been} a long time since I {went / have gone} to a restaurant*. The use of the present perfect in the *since*-clause is then only possible if the situation in question could in principle have actualized several times in the pre-present period. Thus, the present perfect is ungrammatical in *It {is / has been} a long time since my wife {died / *has died}*.

There are also some exceptional cases in which a head clause in the present tense can collocate with a *since*-construction, especially in a conversational style (see 12.11.5).

12.20.8 A ***for*-adverbial** functioning as a pure duration adverbial is compatible both with the past tense and with the present perfect. If it functions as a pure time-specifying adverbial or bifunctional adverbial establising a pre-present Adv-time, it is compatible with the present perfect but not with the past tense:

> I {lived / have lived} in London *for three years. (pure duration adverbial)*
>
> ["When did you last see him?"] I {*didn't see / haven't seen} him *for three years. (pure time-specifying adverbial indicating a period up to now)*
>
> I {*lived / *was living / have been living} here *for six months now. (bifunctional adverbial indicating a period up to now)*

We have also addressed the question which of the three temporal interpretations of the present perfect (indefinite, constitution, continuative) combines with which of the three uses of the *for*-adverbial (see 12.12.2–6).

12.20.9 In section 12.13 we have investigated the (in)compatibility of the preterite and the present perfect with various kinds of ***until*-adverbials**. We have shown, amongst other things, that *until now* is typically followed by a present perfect, in which case the indefinite, continuative and up-to-now W-readings are all available, subject to restrictions.

> Until now I {have lived / have been living} in the country. (*continuative interpretation)*
>
> Until now she has worked intermittently for various companies. *(up-to-now reading)*
>
> I don't know Pisa because I've never visited it until now. *(indefinite reading; requires a negative clause)*

However, to express a contrast with the present, the past tense is often used, especially in negative clauses (see 12.13.3):

> [I have finally enabled permanent links for each post, which appear to be working fine, and provided you with the ability to leave comments.] Sorry I *didn't do* that until now. (www)

12.20.10 With **adverbials referring directly to the present** (*at present*, *now*, *nowadays*, *these days*), it is sometimes possible to use the present perfect (but obviously not the past tense) when evaluating the present state of affairs resulting from a pre-present situation:

At present only half of the goods have been sold. [We will have to make a special effort to sell the rest.]

I've been working for seven hours on end *now*.

Nowadays, food has become easier to prepare.

These days we have dealt very satisfactorily with the problem.

12.20.11 **Actualization adverbials** (e. g. *already*, *always*, *not … yet*, *ever*, *never*, *still*) referring to (non)actualization in a past period combine with the past tense. Those referring to (non)actualization in a period leading up to now combine with the present perfect, but in (especially spoken) Am. E. and to a lesser extent in colloquial Br. E., the past tense is often used as an alternative:

Did you ever beat him? *(e. g. when both of you were still professional players)*

Have you *ever* beaten him? *(e. g. in your life?)*

Graham {*always* was / has *always* been} a coward. *(was is colloquial)*

12.20.12 On an indefinite interpretation, the present perfect co-occurs with four adverbials that indicate a '**recent indefinite bygone time**', viz. *recently, just, this minute, lately.* However, there are cases in which the past tense can be used too.

With *this minute* (in the sense of 'very recently') the present perfect is normally used in Br. E., although the past tense can be found when the idea of recency is sufficiently obvious:

I've *this minute* seen her in the street.

[Well then. You haven't heard?] Sergeant Archer and his mates just left *this minute*; [I would have thought you'd have passed them in the hall.] (www)

Recently and *lately* combine with the present perfect if they are understood as referring to a period leading up to now or as specifying a 'recent indefinite bygone time'. *Recently* can combine with the past tense when it specifies an indefinite time treated as closed off from now.

They've {*recently* / *lately*} bought a second car.

They *recently* bought a second car.

When *just* refers to a time lying immediately before t_0 it usually combines with the present perfect in Br. E., but the past tense is not uncommon. The alternative *just now* (with an accent on *now*) is normally used with the past tense. When *just now* (with a heavier accent on *just* than on *now*) means 'only just', it is used with the present perfect only.

I {*just* met / have *just* met} a friend of yours, Andy Wilson.

I {found / *have found} the missing papers *just now.*

I {**just now* heard / have *just now* heard} that the deal is off.

12.20.13 With ***once***, either the past tense or the present perfect is used, depending on the meaning of this adverb. For example:

There {was *once* / *has *once* been} a butterfly who wished for a bride. (‘*once upon a time*’)

TV sets are much cheaper now than they {*once* were / *have *once* been}. (‘*in the past, but not now*’)

He {*once* promised / has *once* promised} to help me. (‘*at a certain time* {*in the past* / *in the pre-present*’})

I’ve *once* heard democracy described as controlled civil war. (www) (‘*there has been an occasion when …*’)

What we have *once* enjoyed we can never lose. (www) (‘*once X has happened, Y*’)

13. Adverbial *when*-clauses and the use of tenses

I. **Introduction** 637
13.1 Delineation of the subject 637
13.2 *When*-clauses as situation-time adverbials or as orientation-time adverbials 638

II. **The temporal structure of adverbial *when*-clauses** 641
13.3 *When*-clauses and temporal structure 641
13.4 Combining *when*-clauses with other time-specifying adverbials 650
13.5 The relation between the situation time of the head clause and the Adv-time of the head clause 651
13.6 The definition of 'simultaneity' and 'situation time' 654

III. **Configurations of temporal relations** 655
13.7 Possible combinations of tenses in head clause and *when*-clause 655
13.8 Further remarks on the configurations 657

IV. **Direct and indirect binding in *when*-clauses** 660
13.9 Definitions of direct and indirect binding in *when*-clauses 660
13.10 The use of indirect binding in *when*-clauses 660

V. **Pseudo-sloppy simultaneity** 667
13.11 Definition of pseudo-sloppy simultaneity 667
13.12 Further remarks on pseudo-sloppy simultaneity 668

VI. **The expression of irrealis or tentativeness in *when*-clauses** 673
13.13 Counterfactual *when*-clauses 673
13.14 Tentative *when*-clauses 674

VII. **Adverbial *when*-clauses using an absolute tense form** 675
13.15 Summaries, etc. 675
13.16 Other cases in which the *when*-clause is in the future tense 675
13.17 Habitual-repetitive sentences 676

VIII. ***When*-clause and head clause referring to different times** 680
13.18 Head clause referring to the past and *when*-clause referring to the present 680
13.19 Head clause referring to a past domain and *when*-clause referring to the post-present 681
13.20 Head clause referring to the pre-present and *when*-clause referring to the present 681

IX. **Summary** 683

Abstract

In this chapter an analysis is presented of the temporal structure expressed by *when* and we examine the possibilities of tense choice in adverbial *when*-clauses and in the head clauses supporting them.

In part I (= sections 13.1–2) we define the use of *when*-clauses as 'situation-time adverbials' and as 'orientation-time adverbials'.

Part II (= sections 13.3–6) is devoted to the temporal structure of *when*-clauses. It is shown that this structure consists of a 'common Adv-time' containing both an orientation time from the tense structure of the head clause (the 'contained orientation time of the head clause') and an orientation time from the tense structure of the *when*-clause (the 'contained orientation time of the *when*-clause'). This temporal structure, which is the semantics of *when*, can therefore be paraphrased as 'at a/the time at which'. It is also argued that the *when*-clause can specify either the situation time of the head clause or an orientation time which binds the situation time of the head clause in terms of T-anteriority or T-posteriority. (In other words, the *when*-clause can be used either as a situation-time adverbial or as an orientation-time adverbial.) In each case the *when*-clause uses a relative tense, which represents the situation time of the *when*-clause as T-anterior, T-simultaneous or T-posterior to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause.

It follows that there are nine unmarked configurations of temporal relations, realizing nine different temporal structures involving the common Adv-time expressed by *when*. These nine configurations are discussed in part III (= sections 13.7–8). They have in common that the situation time of the *when*-clause is bound by the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause, and can be considered as forming the set of unmarked options as far as tense choice is concerned. As the examples show, all nine of them are compatible with reference to the past as well as with reference to the post-present.

Apart from the unmarked options, there are some marked uses of tenses in adverbial *when*-clauses. Under certain conditions the *when*-clause can use the past perfect (but not the conditional tense or conditional perfect) to effect 'indirect binding', i. e. to relate the situation time of the *when*-clause to an orientation time which is not the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause (and which is not t_0 either). This possibility is examined in part IV (= sections 13.9–10).

Part V (= sections 13.11–12) deals with sentences in which the two situations are not interpreted as W-simultaneous, although the *when*-clause uses a form expressing T-simultaneity, e. g. *When I receive his letter, I will write a reply at once*. It is shown that this is not a 'sloppy W-simultaneity' interpretation (due to a 'sloppy' use of tenses – see 9.20.4) but follows from the temporal structure of *when*, which does not require the two contained times of orientation to coincide. The phenomenon is therefore called 'pseudo-sloppy simultaneity'.

There are also cases in which the *when*-clause uses the conditional tense or conditional perfect in order to express irrealis, i. e. in order to represent the actualization of the *when*-clause situation as imaginary or contrary to fact, or in order to express modal tentativeness. These cases are considered in part VI (= sections 13.13–14).

Part VII (= sections 13.15–17) treats some contexts in which the *when*-clause 'shifts the domain', while part VIII (= sections 13.18–20) considers some exceptional cases in which the *when*-clause and the head clause refer to different time-zones.

Part IX, finally, summarizes the chapter.

I. Introduction

13.1 Delineation of the subject

Adverbial *when*-clauses specify an Adv-time. Semantically and diachronically, they are 'headless' relative clauses, i. e. relative clauses whose relative pronoun 'contains' a covert antecedent. In the same way as *what he wanted* means 'that which he wanted', *when he came* means 'then when he came', which is equivalent to 'at the time at which he came'.

'Narrative' *when*-clauses, which do not specify the time of the head clause situation but 'push forward' the action (e. g. *I had just gone to bed when the phone rang*) are not adverbial *when*-clauses and will therefore be disregarded.

13.1.1 *When*-clauses can be used in various ways (e. g. relative clauses, object clauses, adverbial clauses). In this chapter we will only be concerned with adverbial *when*-clauses. Like any other time-specifying adverbial, an adverbial *when*-clause specifies an Adv-time. This Adv-time is interpreted as punctual if the time of the full situation of the *when*-clause is punctual (as in *John arrived when I left*) and as durative if the time of the full situation of the *when*-clause is durative (as in *John arrived when I was in my study*).

Adverbial *when*-clauses deserve investigating in this book on tense for several reasons. They present one of the rare cases in which the tense form of the subclause is bound by a time of orientation other than the situation time of the head clause. This follows from the temporal structure of *when*, which, as we will see, means 'at the time at which'. Moreover, a combination of a head clause and a *when*-clause realizes one of at least nine possible configurations of temporal relations. *When*-clauses allow a special type of 'indirect binding' and also allow other tense choices which cannot be found in most other types of subclause. In sum, they are interesting to the use of tenses in many respects.

13.1.2 Semantically and diachronically, *when*-clauses are HEADLESS RELATIVE CLAUSES (or FREE RELATIVE CLAUSES), i. e. relative clauses whose relative pronoun 'contains' a covert antecedent. In the same way as *what he wanted* means 'that which he wanted', *when he came* means 'then when he came', which is equivalent to 'at the time at which he came'. The only difference is that 'that which he wanted' is an NP, while 'at the time at which he came' is a prepositional phrase functioning as a temporal adverbial. In other words, in the same way as *what he wanted* is commonly called a 'nominal relative clause', *when he came* can be referred to as an 'adverbial relative clause', at least as far as its syntactic function is concerned. As will be explained in more detail in 13.3, *when* has the internal temporal structure 'at the time at which', in which 'which' represents an implicit orientation time which binds the situation time of the *when*-clause. (This explains, among other things, why adverbial *when*-clauses referring to the post-present use the 'Pseudo-t_0-System' rather than the 'Absolute Future System' – see 10.1–2.)

For a good understanding of this chapter it is very important to keep this starting-point in mind: adverbial *when*-clauses are really restrictive relative clauses depending on a prepositional phrase ('at the time') or adverb ('then') functioning as Adv-time.

13.1.3 A type of *when*-clause which is perhaps not always easy to distinguish from the adverbial type is the 'NARRATIVE *WHEN*-CLAUSE', examples of which are to be found in the following sentences:

> She had just picked up the revolver when movement *caught* her eyes. (www)
>
> Yesterday evening I was sitting in the living-room, watching TV, when suddenly a policeman *came in*.
>
> I was just having a chat with the vicar when he *was called away*.
>
> We had hardly sat down to rest when the darkness *fell* upon us. (www)
>
> Scarcely will the farmer finish ploughing when the seed planted *will be* ripe for harvest. (www)
>
> I know Tom. Hardly will he have left the country when he *will* already *regret* his decision.

In examples like these it is the head clause situation that functions as time indication for the *when*-clause situation, rather than the other way round. In other words, the *when*-clause does not specify the time of the head clause situation but 'pushes forward' the action. This means that such a narrative *when*-clause does not create an Adv-time but establishes a temporal domain of its own. This explains why it uses an absolute tense form (e. g. a form from the Absolute Future System, as in the last two examples).

Since narrative *when*-clauses are not adverbial *when*-clauses (i. e. clauses indicating an Adv-time), we will disregard them in this chapter.[1]

13.2 *When*-clauses as situation-time adverbials or as orientation-time adverbials

The *when*-clause can specify either the situation time of the head clause or an orientation time which binds the situation time of the head clause in terms of T-anteriority or T-posteriority. In other words, the *when*-clause can be used either as a situation-time adverbial or as an orientation-time adverbial. In both cases the time specified (contained) by the Adv-time will be called the 'contained orientation time'.

---

[1] For a full treatment of narrative *when*-clauses, see Declerck (1997: 212–229).

13.2.1 It was noted in 2.24–5 that a time-specifying adverbial can function either as a 'SITUATION-TIME ADVERBIAL' or as an 'ORIENTATION-TIME ADVERBIAL'. In the former case the Adv-time 'contains' (in terms of inclusion or coincidence) the situation time of the clause involving the time-specifying adverbial, as in *John left yesterday* or *John left at five*. We speak of an 'orientation-time adverbial' when the orientation time which the Adv-time contains is not the situation time but another orientation time in the tense structure of the clause, as in *At five o'clock John had already left the office*. (In this example the Adv-time contains the orientation time to which the situation time is T-anterior).[2] The relation 'Adv-time contains situation time' can be represented in the ways shown in Figure 13.1. The temporal structure of *At five o'clock John had already left the office*, in which the 'contained orientation time' (see 13.2.2) is not a situation time, can be represented as in Figure 13.2.

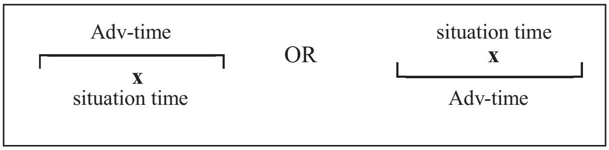

Figure 13.1. Representations of 'Adv-time contains situation time'.

The conventions used in these figures and in the others that will be given below are as follows. An orientation time is represented by an **x**, irrespective of whether it is a situation time or not, and regardless of whether it is punctual or durative. The Adv-time is represented as in Figure 13.1, again irrespective of whether it is punctual or durative. This means that the representations in Figure 13.1 in fact cover four possibilities: (a) durative Adv-time including punctual situation time (e. g. *John left yesterday*); (b) durative Adv-time including durative situation time (e. g. *I wrote that letter yesterday*); (c) durative Adv-time coinciding with durative situation time (e. g. *Yesterday I was in London*

---

[2] In some cases the Adv-time contains both the orientation time to which the situation time of the head clause is related and the situation time of the head clause itself. This is true, for example, of the Adv-time established by *yesterday* in *Yesterday John had already left the office at four o'clock*. For the sake of simplicity, such 'multiple-orientation-time adverbials' (see 2.26) will be disregarded here.

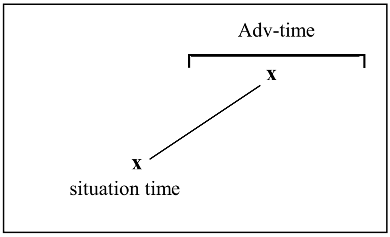

Figure 13.2. The temporal structure of *At five o'clock John had already left the office.*

all day); and (d) punctual Adv-time coinciding with punctual situation time. (e. g. *John left at five*).

13.2.2 For ease of reference we will call the orientation time that is specified by an Adv-time the 'CONTAINED ORIENTATION TIME'. As explained in the previous section, the contained orientation time in the tense structure of the head clause is the situation time (of the head clause) if the *when*-clause is used as a situation-time adverbial and is another orientation time (binding the situation time of the head clause) if the *when*-clause functions as an orientation-time adverbial.

13.2.3 The following is an overview of some terms and meanings:

Adv-time: time specified by an adverbial

Contained orientation time: orientation time contained in the Adv-time, in terms of inclusion or coincidence

Situation-time adverbial: adverbial specifying an Adv-time whose contained orientation time is a situation time

Orientation-time adverbial: adverbial specifying an Adv-time whose contained orientation time is not a situation time but another (in this case 'implicit' – see 2.14) orientation time which binds a situation time

II. The temporal structure of adverbial *when*-clauses

13.3 *When*-clauses and temporal structure

The temporal structure expressed by *when* is that of a 'common Adv-time' containing both an orientation time from the tense structure of the head clause (the 'contained orientation time of the head clause') and an orientation time from the tense structure of the *when*-clause (the 'contained orientation time of the *when*-clause'). This temporal structure, which is the semantics of *when*, can therefore be paraphrased as 'at a/the time at which'.

13.3.1 Adverbial *when*-clauses differ from nonclausal time-specifying adverbials like *yesterday* or *some time earlier* in that they do not name an Adv-time directly but relate two orientation times (viz. the situation time of the *when*-clause and the contained orientation time) to each other. However, in doing so adverbial *when*-clauses do establish an Adv-time, and they therefore function either as situation-time adverbials or as orientation-time adverbials:

> I left when John arrived. *(when-clause as situation-time adverbial: the contained orientation time of the head clause is the situation time of the head clause)*
>
> When John arrived, I had already left. *(when-clause as orientation-time adverbial: the situation time of the head clause is T-anterior to the contained orientation time)*
>
> I had left when John arrived. *(The sentence is ambiguous because the when-clause may be either an orientation-time adverbial – yielding the reading 'When John arrived I had already left' – and a situation-time adverbial – as in I was no longer there at four because I had left at the same time as John arrived, which was at three.)*

The temporal structure of such sentences is determined both by the tense forms and by the semantics of *when*. As we have seen, *when* can be paraphrased 'at a/the time at which'. This follows from the fact that, although *when* is usually treated as a temporal conjunction, it is really a free (headless) relative adverb (see 13.1.2). In the same way as *what* in *I know what I like* means 'that which', *when* is semantically equivalent to 'then when' (with *then* as a cataphoric pronominal adverb depending for its interpretation on the modifying *when*-clause). It follows that a sentence like (1a) receives the same interpretation as (1b):

(1a) John left when Bill arrived.

(1b) John left at the time when Bill arrived.

The temporal structure of (1b) is fairly transparent. *At the time when Bill arrived* establishes an Adv-time which contains the situation time of the head clause (= the time of John's leaving). In the relative clause *when Bill arrived*, the relative *when* is a relative adverb and therefore also establishes an Adv-time, which 'contains' an orientation time from the tense structure of the relative clause. In this example, the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause is an implicit orientation time to which the situation time of the relative clause is T-simultaneous. This means that there are two Adv-times in the sentence: '[at the time] when Bill arrived' functions as Adv-time in the head clause, and *when* functions as Adv-time in the relative clause. Since one of the functions of a relative is to express coreferentiality between the antecedent and the *wh*-constituent of the relative clause, *when* identifies the two Adv-times with one another. Because (1a) [*John left when Bill arrived*] differs from (1b) only in that the antecedent is not overtly expressed but incorporated into the free (headless) relative, *when* has exactly the same function in (1a) as it has in (1b): it identifies the Adv-time of the head clause with the Adv-time of the *when*-clause. The result is that the meaning of (1a) can be paraphrased as follows: 'There is a time in the past at which Bill arrived, and that time is the time at which John left'.

Quite similar remarks can be made in connection with (2a), which is interpreted in the same way as (2b):

(2a) John left when Bill had already arrived.

(2b) John left at a time when Bill had (already) arrived.

(As shown in Figure 13.3 below,) in (2b), *at a time when Bill had already arrived* establishes an Adv-time which contains the situation time of the head clause (= the time of John's leaving). Let us call this situation time, which is the orientation time that is contained by the Adv-time established by the *when*-clause, 'orientation time$_i$'. In the relative clause *when Bill had already arrived*, the relative *when* is a relative adverb establishing an Adv-time, which contains an orientation time from the tense structure of the relative clause. In this example, the contained orientation time is an orientation time to which the situation time of the relative clause is T-anterior. Let us refer to this implicit contained orientation time as 'orientation time$_{ii}$'. There are, then, two Adv-times in (2b). First, '[at the time] when Bill had (already) arrived' functions as Adv-time in the head clause. Let us call this Adv-time$_1$. Second, *when* functions as Adv-time in the relative clause. Let us call this Adv-time$_2$. Because *when* is a headless relative and a relative expresses coreferentiality between the antecedent and the *wh*-constituent of the relative clause, *when* identifies the two Adv-times with one another. Since (2a) differs from (2b) only in that the antecedent is not overtly expressed but contained in the free relative, *when* has exactly the same function in (2b): it identifies the Adv-time$_1$ of the head clause with the

Adv-$time_2$ of the *when*-clause. The result is that the meaning of (2a) [*John left when Bill had already arrived*] can be paraphrased as follows: 'There is a time in the past at which Bill had already arrived, and that time is the time at which John left'.

13.3.2 The above analysis implies that the following relations form part of the semantic structure of (2a–b):

Adv-$time_1$ contains orientation $time_i$ (= the situation time of the head clause)
Adv-$time_2$ contains orientation $time_{ii}$
The situation time of the *when*-clause is anterior to orientation $time_{ii}$
Adv-$time_1$ = Adv-$time_2$

This can be represented as in Figure 13.3, in which the two parallel vertical lines represent the = sign. This figure can be further simplified to the representation given in Figure 13.4 (in which the symbols representing the containment relation of the Adv-times are fused into one more complex symbol):

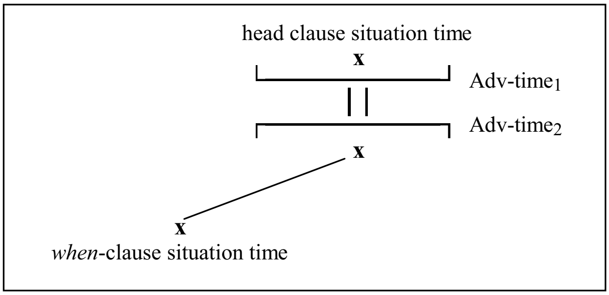
head clause situation time
x
Adv-time1
Adv-time2
x
x
when-clause situation time

Figure 13.3. The temporal structure of *John left when Bill had already arrived:* representation 1.

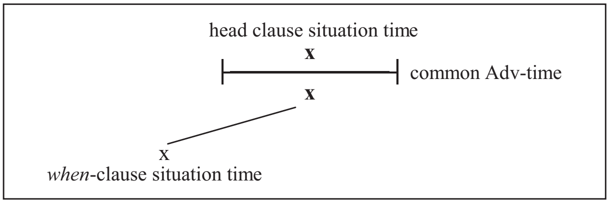
head clause situation time
x
common Adv-time
x
x
when-clause situation time

Figure 13.4. The temporal structure of *John left when Bill had already arrived:* representation 2.

13.3.3 For ease of reference, a further couple of terms will be introduced. We will speak of the 'ADV-TIME OF THE HEAD CLAUSE' and the 'ADV-TIME OF THE

WHEN-CLAUSE'. As we will see in 13.11, the interval of time referred to as 'Adv-time of the head clause' will normally be interpreted as the same interval as that referred to as 'Adv-time of the *when*-clause'. When concentrating on the fact that these two Adv-times are identical, we will use the term 'COMMON ADV-TIME' to refer to either of them. In (2b), the common Adv-time is the time interval lexicalized by the antecedent (*a time*) of the relative clause. In (2a), the common Adv-time remains implicit, i. e. there is no NP naming the interval in question.

As noted in 2.23.1, the orientation time which is specified (i. e. contained) by an Adv-time will be called the 'CONTAINED ORIENTATION TIME'. This may be either the situation time or another (nonlexicalized) orientation time to which the situation time is temporally related. Thus, in (2a) the Adv-time of the head clause contains the situation time of the head clause, whereas the Adv-time of the *when*-clause contains an implicit orientation time to which the situation time of the *when*-clause is T-anterior. Using the terminology introduced in 13.2 above, we can say that in (2a) [*John left when Bill had already arrived*] the *when*-clause as a whole functions as a situation-time adverbial with respect to the head clause, whereas *when* (meaning 'at which time') functions as orientation-time adverbial in the *when*-clause itself: the sentence is interpreted as 'John left at time *t*, at which time Bill had already left'.

In *John died when he was in Spain* it is the situation time of the head clause that is the 'CONTAINED ORIENTATION TIME OF THE HEAD CLAUSE', i. e. the orientation time from the structure of the tense in the head clause that is contained by the common Adv-time. In *John had already left when Bill arrived* it is the orientation time to which the situation time of the head clause is anterior that is the contained orientation time of the head clause. Similarly, the 'CONTAINED ORIENTATION TIME OF THE *WHEN*-CLAUSE' is either the situation time of the *when*-clause (as in *John left when Bill arrived*) or another orientation time to which the situation time of the *when*-clause is T-related (as in *John left when Bill had already arrived*).

13.3.4 In sum, the semantic structure of *when* is as represented by Figure 13.5. (Because the contained orientation time of the head clause and the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause may both in principle be either durative or punctual, and because an Adv-time may either include the contained orientation time or coincide with it, this representation covers all possibilities: all three elements (contained orientation time of the head clause, contained orientation time of the *when*-clause and common Adv-time) may in principle be durative or punctual, so that the common Adv-time may either include both contained orientation times or coincide with them or include the one and coincide with the other.)

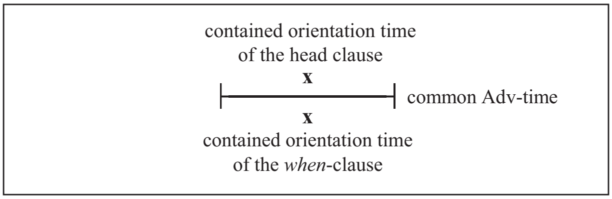

Figure 13.5. The semantic structure of *when*.

It should be clear that the above analysis accords perfectly with the fact that *when* is interpreted as 'at a/the time at which'. It accounts for the presence of each constituent in this paraphrase: the first *at* expresses the containment relation between the Adv-time of the head clause and the contained orientation time of the head clause; the NP *the time* indicates the Adv-time of the head clause; the second *at* expresses the containment relation between the Adv-time of the *when*-clause and the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause; finally, the pronoun *which* indicates the Adv-time of the *when*-clause and, as a relative pronoun, identifies the Adv-time of the *when*-clause with the Adv-time of the head clause.

As will become clear when we discuss the temporal structures of *before* and *after* in chapter 14, there are no other temporal conjunctions whose temporal structure is anything like that represented by Figure 13.5. The reason is simply that *when* is not really a temporal conjunction at all, but is a headless relative. The temporal structure represented by Figure 13.5 can only be that of a headless relative. (This is clear from the original representation in Figure 13.3.)

13.3.5 The analysis also explains why adverbial *when*-clauses referring to the post-present use the present tense rather than the future tense:

John will leave when Bill {*arrives* / **will arrive*}.

The temporal structure of this sentence is shown in Figure 13.6:

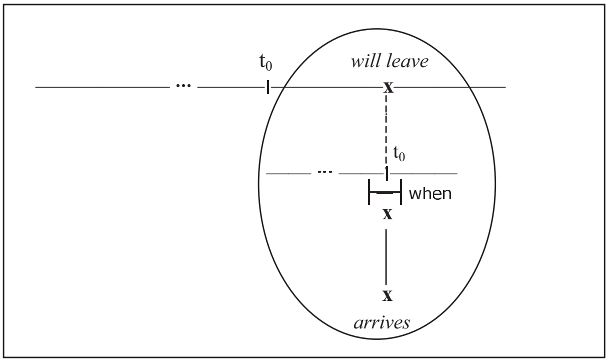

Figure 13.6. The tense structure of *John will leave when Bill arrives*.

As predicted by our theory (see 10.3), the head clause uses the future tense to establish a post-present domain, while the Adv-time-clause uses the present tense (as a form of the Pseudo-t_0-System – see 10.2) to represent the situation time of the *when*-clause as T-simultaneous with the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause. In more detail:

(a) The future tense form *will leave* locates the situation time of the head clause in the post-present.
(b) Because it contains the situation time of the head clause, the common Adv-time – i. e. the element 'time' in the 'at the time at which' meaning of *when* – must also lie in the post-present.
(c) Because the common Adv-time also contains the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause (i. e. the 'at which [time]' element in the meaning of *when*), the latter must also lie in the post-present.
(d) The relation of coincidence between the situation time of the *when*-clause and the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause has to be expressed by the present tense (used as part of the Pseudo-t_0-System). As noted in 10.2, the Pseudo-t_0-System uses the present tense to represent a situation time as coinciding with a binding orientation time which is treated as a post-present 'pseudo-t_0'. (The binding orientation time in question is the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause.)

13.3.6 The analysis presented here also explains why the use of a tense form expressing T-simultaneity in the *when*-clause does not automatically provoke an interpretation in which the situation time of the *when*-clause is taken to be simultaneous with the situation time of the head clause. Let us consider the sentence *John will leave when Bill arrives*, whose temporal structure contains the following relations:

(a) There is a common Adv-time established by *when*. This contains both the contained orientation time of the head clause and the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause.
(b) The contained orientation time of the head clause is the situation time of the head clause (*will leave*), which is punctual.
(c) The contained orientation time of the *when*-clause is an implicit orientation time which binds the situation time of the *when*-clause in terms of T-simultaneity (coincidence).
(d) Since the situation time of the *when*-clause is punctual and coincides with the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause, the latter is also punctual.
(e) It follows that the two contained orientation times are punctual.

As we will see, if the two contained orientation times are punctual, the common Adv-time containing them is normally (i. e. by implicature) also conceived of as punctual. The unmarked interpretation of *John will leave when Bill arrives* is therefore for the situation time of the head clause and the situation time of the *when*-clause to coincide. However, *John will leave when Bill arrives* will also turn out to be true if John's leaving takes place immediately after Bill's arrival. This follows from the fact that the implicature can be blocked or cancelled, in which case the common Adv-time may be durative even if the two situation times (and hence the two contained orientation times)[3] are punctual. Strictly speaking, *John will leave when Bill arrives* expresses no more than that John's leaving and Bill's arrival will actualize within the common Adv-time: they need not actualize at exactly the same moment.

That the common Adv-time can be conceived of as durative follows from the absence of a temporal NP lexicalizing it: the length of the common Adv-time remains unspecified because there is no lexical item imposing boundaries on it. (When the Adv-time is lexicalized as *yesterday*, *last week*, *at five*, *in the afternoon*, etc., its boundaries are clear. But without lexicalization no boundaries are specified.) However, it will be pointed out below that there is an implicature saying that, failing an indication to the contrary, the common Adv-time should be conceived of as having the same length as the situation time of the *when*-clause. This explains why the unmarked interpretation of *John will leave when Bill arrives* is for the two situations to actualize simultaneously. If the situation time of the *when*-clause is punctual, the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause binding it in terms of T-simultaneity (coincidence) must also be punctual; if, moreover, the situation time of the head clause (which is the contained orientation time of the head clause contained in the common Adv-time) is also punctual, then the common Adv-time is by implicature also conceived of as punctual. It follows that in that case the situation time of the head clause is interpreted as coinciding with the situation time of the *when*-clause. However, there is also a marked interpretation, on which the common Adv-time is longer and the two situation times contained in it do not coincide. This reading can be triggered, for example, by a causal reading of the *when*-clause: if John will leave *because of* Bill's arrival, then he will leave *after* Bill's arrival (probably immediately after it).

13.3.7 The observation that the two situation times are not related to each other, except indirectly (i. e. both are contained in the common Adv-time, as in *John left when Bill left*, or are related to an implicit orientation time contained in the common Adv-time, as in *John left when Bill had already left*) thus accounts for the fact that *when*-clauses are sometimes interpreted in a way similar to conditional clauses that are interpreted in terms of 'SLOPPY W-

---

[3] We use the word 'hence' because in the head clause it is the punctual situation time that functions as contained orientation time, whereas in the *when*-clause the punctual situation time is T-simultaneous (= coinciding) with the contained orientation time.

SIMULTANEITY' (see 9.20.4.), e.g. *You'll arrive at 8.35 if you take the 7.56 bus*. (*Take* is a form expressing T-simultaneity, but the two situations are not interpreted as W-simultaneous.) Consider examples like the following:

When John receives your letter, he will phone the police.

Here the *when*-clause uses a tense form expressing T-simultaneity in spite of the fact that the situation time of the *when*-clause is not really W-simultaneous with the situation time of the head clause. Of course, the fact that this is possible is not surprising once it is seen that the tense of the *when*-clause does not directly relate the situation time of the *when*-clause to the situation time of the head clause, but it probably does look special to those who are not aware of this because they are not aware of the fact that there are three covert constituents in the temporal structure of *when*, viz. the contained orientation time of the head clause, the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause and the common Adv-time containing both. The first two of these constituents are orientation times which are involved in the tense structure of the tense of the head clause and the *when*-clause, respectively. In sum, if (for convenience) we go on to use the term 'sloppy simultaneity' (which, in a sense, we can do because the situation time of the *when*-clause is not interpreted as T-simultaneous with the situation time of the head clause in spite of the fact that the *when*-clause uses a tense expressing T-simultaneity), then we have to be aware of the fact that the phenomenon has nothing to do with a special use of T-simultaneity tenses (as in the case of conditional clauses) but with the nonapplication of the implicature that the two orientation times contained in the common Adv-time should be interpreted as coinciding with each other. For this reason we will henceforth speak of PSEUDO-SLOPPY SIMULTANEITY where *when*-clauses are concerned.

The following examples further illustrate the possibility of *when*-clauses receiving a pseudo-sloppy simultaneity reading:

When John's car *crashes*, he will buy a new one.

When John *goes* on holiday he will give the key of his house to a neighbour.

The implicit common Adv-time here contains the situation time of the head clause and the implicit orientation time with which the situation time of the *when*-clause is T-simultaneous. For pragmatic reasons (viz. our knowledge of the actual world), these situations are not interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other. (Two times are W-simultaneous with each other if they have at least one point in common – see 8.18.) In the actual world, it is normal to buy a new car *after* the old one crashes but not *in the course of* its crashing.

As already noted, this analysis makes it clear that it is not the case that the tense form of the *when*-clause expresses sloppy simultaneity (as in the case of open conditionals like *If John's car* *crashes**, he will probably buy a new one*): the tense form of the *when*-clause expresses true T-simultaneity (= coincidence) between the situation time of the *when*-clause and the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause. In those cases where the common Adv-time includes the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause (which coincides with the situation time of the *when*-clause) and also includes the contained orientation time of the head clause (which is the situation time of the head clause if the *when*-clause is used as situation-time adverbial), the two contained orientation times may be located at different times within the common Adv-time. It follows that the situation time of the head clause does not need to be interpreted as actually coinciding with the situation time of the *when*-clause, in spite of the fact that the *when*-clause is used as a situation-time adverbial and uses a tense form expressing coincidence. Such a 'pseudo-sloppy simultaneity' reading is a marked reading, enforced by the context or by pragmatic considerations. The unmarked interpretation (if the *when*-clause is used as a situation-time adverbial and uses a tense form expressing T-simultaneity) is for the common Adv-time to coincide with the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause, and hence with the situation time of the *when*-clause (since the tense form of the *when*-clause represents the situation time of the *when*-clause as coinciding with the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause). Since the common Adv-time contains the situation time of the head clause, the latter is then automatically interpreted as W-simultaneous with (because contained in) the situation time of the *when*-clause. Out of context, *John left when Bill arrived* receives this unmarked interpretation. This is because the natural interpretation of 'at a time at which (time) Bill arrived, at that time John left' is that John's leaving occurred at the same time as Bill's arrival. However, the pseudo-sloppy simultaneity reading can be triggered by contextual or pragmatic considerations, for example, by the fact that it is common knowledge that John cannot stand Bill and always leaves the room immediately after Bill comes in.

13.3.8 Since the 'common Adv-time' is implicit, the speaker may in principle conceive it as having any length he likes. Still, it is clear that there must be pragmatic restrictions on the possibility of representing two non-simultaneous situations as falling within the same interval of time if the interval in question is not specified. In accordance with the Gricean Maxims, the hearer will interpret the interval as the shortest interval that is in keeping with the pragmatics of the sentence and its context. Thus, in the sentence *When John got up, he put on his best clothes*, the common Adv-time will be taken to be a subinterval of a particular morning (or day). It will not be interpreted as being, say, a particular week – an interpretation which would allow the possibility that the two situations actualized on different days. Moreover, an interpretation in terms of W-sequence (pseudo-sloppy simultaneity) will only be selected if the reading in which the situation time of the head clause is taken to be W-simultaneous with the situation time of the *when*-clause is ruled out, or rendered implausible, by the context or by pragmatic knowledge. As noted above, the unmarked interpretation is for the common Adv-time to coincide with the situation time of the *when*-clause, hence for the situation time of the head clause to be contained in the situation time of the *when*-clause.

13.3.9 A final piece of evidence in favour of the above analysis is that it offers a natural explanation of the fact that it sometimes seems irrelevant to the temporal interpretation which of the two situations is processed as head clause situation and which as *when*-clause situation. Compare:

> Josephine Baker was 68 years old when she died.
>
> Josephine Baker died when she was 68 years old.

Since in both cases both situation times are represented (directly or indirectly) as contained in a common Adv-time, there is no clear difference in temporal interpretation between these two sentences. Which of them will be used in a particular context will be determined by factors that have to do with the sentence's information structure (i. e. the distribution of given and new information) and communication structure (i. e. the choice of topic and comment), not by considerations that have to do with temporal interpretation.

13.4 Combining *when*-clauses with other time-specifying adverbials

13.4.1 If a clause contains several time adverbials, the various Adv-times are related in terms of containment. Thus, in *He left after lunch yesterday* the Adv-time established by *yesterday* includes the Adv-time established by *after lunch*, which itself functions as the Adv-time that contains the situation time. In sentences like this, one of the time adverbials may be a *when*-clause:

> He left this morning when he had finished his homework.
>
> The next day, when Hal returned from school, there was the bird in a wooden cage with bars in front. (LOB)

13.4.2 When the *when*-clause itself contains a time adverbial, the Adv-time established by the latter contains the Adv-time of the *when*-clause (expressed by *when*) in terms of inclusion or coincidence. (It follows that it also contains the contained orientation time of the head clause.)

> He was merely 51 when he died in 1950. (*In 1950 establishes an Adv-time which includes 'the time when' he died.)*
>
> He seemed agitated when he left at 5.15 p.m. (*At 5.15 p.m. establishes an Adv-time which coincides with 'the time when' he left.)*

> He was arrested when he tried to steal a car in 1931, but he had more success in 1933 when he tried again. *(This example shows that it is sometimes irrelevant whether the speaker uses a when-clause including a second time-specifying adverbial or a time-specifying adverbial accompanied by a when-clause as second time-specifying adverbial. In the latter case the situation time of the when-clause is contained in the first time-specifying adverbial rather than the other way round.)*

Because of this containment relation between the two Adv-times, it is not uncommon for the time adverbial to follow *when* immediately:

> When, in late afternoon on the last day in June, he saw two people (...) walk toward the house, he quit work immediately and strode to his rifle. (BR)

When a *when*-clause combines with another time-specifying adverbial, the latter may itself be a *when*-clause:

> [He maintains he cannot raise his arm.] When it was raised up quickly by a doctor when he wasn't expecting it, he let out such a scream that ... (LOB)

13.5 The relation between the situation time of the head clause and the Adv-time of the head clause

The *when*-clause can specify either the situation time of the head clause or an orientation time which binds the situation time of the head clause in terms of T-anteriority or T-posteriority. In other words, the *when*-clause can be used either as a situation-time adverbial or as an orientation-time adverbial. In both cases the *when*-clause uses a relative tense, which represents the situation time of the *when*-clause as T-anterior, T-simultaneous or T-posterior to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause. This means that the situation time of the *when*-clause is never directly related to the situation time of the head clause: the situation time of the *when*-clause is T-related to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause, which is contained by the common Adv-time. The function of *when* is to identify an orientation time in the tense structure of the head clause with an orientation time in the tense structure of the *when*-clause. (The two orientation times are identified with one another in the sense that both are contained in a common Adv-time.)

As we have seen, a *when*-clause does not relate the situation time of the *when*-clause directly to the situation time of the head clause. Rather, it relates the situation time of the *when*-clause to a contained orientation time of the *when*-clause, i. e. to an implicit orientation time that is contained by the 'common Adv-time' established by *when*. Since this common Adv-time also contains the situation time of the head clause or an implicit orientation time binding the situation time of the head clause, the *when*-clause ultimately establishes an Adv-time for the head clause. We can therefore call it the 'Adv-time of the head clause'. The Adv-time of the head clause may directly locate (specify) the time of the head clause situation, in which case the contained orientation time of the head clause is the situation time of the head clause, or it may locate another time which is part of the tense structure of the head-clause verb form. In that case the contained orientation time of the head clause is that other orientation time.[4] In *John left when Bill arrived*, the Adv-time specifies the precise location of the situation time of the head clause in the past time-zone. In *John had left when Bill arrived*, the Adv-time specifies the precise location of the implicit contained orientation time of the head clause prior to which the situation time of the head clause is located. In other words, when a *when*-clause is used, the situation time of the head clause may be related to the Adv-time of the head clause in two different ways: either the situation time of the head clause is the orientation time that is located by the Adv-time (i. e. the contained orientation time of the head clause) or the situation time of the head clause is T-related to another orientation time functioning as contained orientation time of the head clause. In the former case the *when*-clause functions as a situation-time adverbial, in the latter as an orientation-time adverbial – see 2.24–25. In both cases the *when*-clause uses a relative tense, i. e. the tense T-relates the situation time of the *when*-clause to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause. For example:

> John left when he had finished his work. *(= 'John left at the time [at which time he had finished his work]') (The when-clause is used as a situation-time adverbial; had finished represents the situation time of the when-clause as T-anterior to the contained orientation time of the when-clause – see Figure 13.4 in 13.3.2.)*
>
> John left when I was in the kitchen. *(The when-clause is used as a situation-time adverbial; was represents the situation time of the when-clause as T-simultaneous with the contained orientation time of the when-clause – see Figure 13.7.)*
>
> [I lucked out in that] they had just come available when I was going to order them. (www) *(The when-clause is used as a situation-time adverbial; had come represents the situation time of the head clause as T-anterior to the contained orientation time of the head clause; was going to order represents the situation time of the when-clause as T-posterior to the contained orientation time of the when-clause – see Figure 13.8.)*
>
> When I arrived, John was just going to leave. *(The when-clause is used as an orientation-time adverbial; arrived, which is a relative preterite, represents the situation time of the when-clause as T-simultaneous with the contained orientation time of*

---

[4] In what follows we will disregard the possibility that the *when*-clause is a 'multiple-orientation-time adverbial' (see 2.26).

the when-clause; was going to leave represents the situation time of the head clause as T-posterior to the contained orientation time of the head clause — see Figure 13.9.)

The first of these sentences has the temporal structure represented by Figure 13.4. The other three have the temporal structures shown in Figures 13.7—9, respectively.

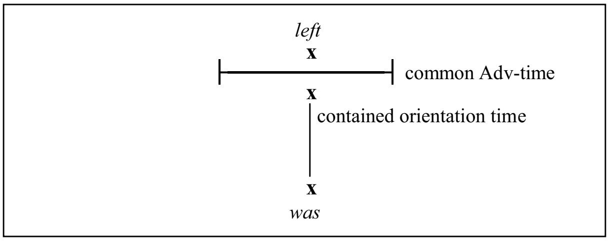
left
x
common Adv-time
x
contained orientation time
x
was

Figure 13.7. The temporal structure of *John left when I was in the kitchen.*

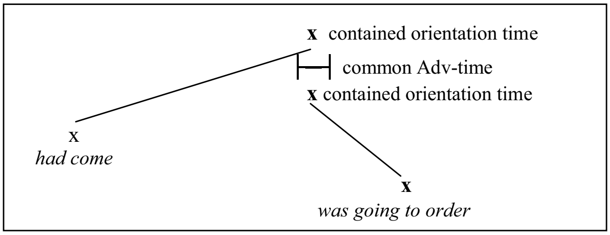
x contained orientation time
common Adv-time
x contained orientation time
x
had come
x
was going to order

Figure 13.8. The temporal structure of *They had just come available when I was going to order them.*

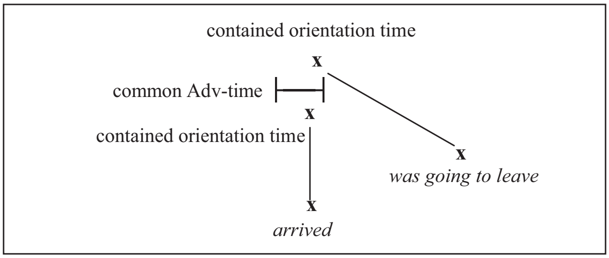
contained orientation time
x
common Adv-time
x
contained orientation time
x
was going to leave
x
arrived

Figure 13.9. The temporal structure of *When I arrived, John was just going to leave.*

As is clear from these diagrams, the situation time of the *when*-clause is never directly related to the situation time of the head clause: the situation time of the *when*-clause is T-related to the contained orientation time of the *when*-

clause, which is contained by the common Adv-time.[5] This leads to the conclusion that the tense form in an adverbial *when*-clause is always a relative tense form, and that the function of *when* is to identify an orientation time in the tense structure of the head clause with an orientation time in the tense structure of the *when*-clause. (The two orientation times are identified with one another in the sense that they are both contained in a common Adv-time.)

13.6 The definition of 'simultaneity' and 'situation time'

T-simultaneity, as it is used here (and elsewhere in the book), is defined in terms of strict coincidence, not overlap – see also 2.17. This definition is possible because we distinguish between the situation time and the 'time of the full situation'. The situation time is the time of the 'predicated situation', i. e. the time of that part of the full situation (possibly all of it) about which a statement is made – see 2.12–13. In *An hour ago John was in the kitchen*, the situation time is that portion of the time of the full situation that coincides with the time indicated by *an hour ago*. It is only this part that is referred to in the sentence and that is located in time by the tense form. The time of the full situation may be much longer – John may even still be in the kitchen at t_0 – but that is irrelevant to the definition of 'situation time'.

It is also worth noting that this definition of 'situation time' is also compatible with the claim that an Adv-time always contains a contained orientation time, in terms of either inclusion or coincidence, hence that the contained orientation time in question cannot be longer than the Adv-time. In *John will still be in bed when I leave*, the *when*-clause situation is interpreted as punctual. That punctual situation time is represented as T-simultaneous (= coinciding) with the implicit containted orientation time of the *when*-clause. This means that the Adv-time of the *when*-clause (and hence the common Adv-time) are (by implicature) also interpreted as punctual. Since the contained orientation time of the head clause is contained in this punctual common Adv-time, it is also conceived of as punctual. Because in this example [*John will still be in bed when I leave*] the contained orientation time of the head clause *is* the situation time of the head clause (i. e. the *when*-clause functions as a situation-time adverbial), the situation time of the head clause is also conceived of as punctual. In sum, in *John will still be in bed when I leave*, the situation time of the head clause is not the time of the full situation but just that portion (point) of it that coincides with the situation time of the *when*-clause, which is punctual and is therefore also the time of the 'full situation' of the *when*-clause.

---

[5] This is the rule when the situation time of the *when*-clause is bound directly. Apart from this, *when*-clauses sometimes also allow indirect binding (see 13.9–10). In that case too, the situation time of the *when*-clause is not directly related to the situation time of the head clause.

III. Configurations of temporal relations

13.7 Possible combinations of tenses in head clause and *when*-clause

Since an adverbial *when*-clause represents the situation time of the *when*-clause as T-anterior, T-simultaneous or T-posterior to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause, and since an adverbial *when*-clause can be used either as situation-time adverbial or as orientation-time adverbial, there are nine unmarked configurations of temporal relations, realizing nine different temporal structures involving the common Adv-time expressed by *when*. These nine configurations, which have in common that the situation time of the *when*-clause is bound by the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause, can be considered as forming the set of unmarked options as far as tense choice is concerned. As the examples will show, all nine of them are compatible with reference to the past as well as with reference to the post-present.

Since the situation time of the *when*-clause may be related to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause in terms of T-simultaneity, T-anteriority or T-posteriority, and since the *when*-clause can be used either as a situation-time adverbial or as an orientation-time adverbial, there are at least nine possible combinations of tense forms in the head clause and the *when*-clause. (Next to these, there are also configurations in which the situation time of the *when*-clause is bound indirectly − see 13.9−10. These will be disregarded in the present section.)

13.7.1 *Configuration 1:* the situation time of the head clause is the contained orientation time of the head clause, while the situation time of the *when*-clause is represented as T-simultaneous with the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause (see Figure 13.7):

(3) When I arrived, Bill was still in his study.

(4) The shops will probably still be closed when we arrive.

It should be noted that the analysis offered here involves the claim that the form *arrived* in (3) is a relative past tense form (representing the situation time of the *when*-clause as T-simultaneous with the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause) and not an absolute preterite (relating the situation time of the *when*-clause directly to t_0). In other words, (3) realizes the same kind of temporal structure as (4). As there is no doubt that in (4) *arrive* does not locate the arrival at t_0 but expresses T-simultaneity (coincidence) in the post-present domain established by *will be closed*, we can assume that in (4) *arrived* is also a relative tense form. (Note, however, that this assumption has no drastic consequences: since T-simultaneity is defined in terms of coincidence, it is irrelevant to the interpretation of the *when*-clause whether the situation time of the *when*-clause is analysed as related to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause in terms of T-simultaneity or as being the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause itself.)

13.7.2 *Configuration 2:* the situation time of the head clause is the contained orientation time of the head clause, while the situation time of the *when*-clause is represented as T-anterior to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause (see Figure 13.4 in section 13.3.2). For example:

> When John had finished eating I was still doing the washing-up.
>
> When John has finished eating I will still be doing the washing-up.

13.7.3 *Configuration 3:* the situation time of the head clause is the contained orientation time of the head clause, while the situation time of the *when*-clause is represented as T-posterior to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause. For example:

> When Hamlet was going to kill Claudius the first time, he stopped himself, [because Claudius was in confession]. (www)
>
> [I believe that] when there is going to be another attack, we will not get a warning. (www)

Note that *is going to be* in the second example is not an absolute tense form but a form from the Pseudo-t_0-System. It represents the situation time of the *when*-clause as T-posterior to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause and not as T-posterior to t_0.

13.7.4 *Configuration 4:* the situation time of the head clause is represented as T-anterior to the contained orientation time of the head clause, while the situation time of the *when*-clause is represented as T-simultaneous with the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause. For example:

> When I arrived, Bill had just left.
>
> When we arrive, the gates will probably just have been closed.

13.7.5 *Configuration 5:* the situation time of the head clause is represented as T-posterior to the contained orientation time of the head clause, while the situation time of the *when*-clause is represented as T-simultaneous with the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause (see Figure 13.9 in section 13.5). For example:

> [I knew that] when somebody left a message in my voice mail inbox, I was going to be informed about that by SMS. (adapted from www)
>
> When we reach the shop, they will already be going to put up the shutters.

13.7.6 *Configuration 6:* the situation time of the head clause is represented as T-anterior to the contained orientation time of the head clause, while the situation time of the *when*-clause is represented as T-anterior to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause. For example:

> When John had finished eating, I had almost finished doing the washing-up.
>
> When John has finished eating, I will almost have finished doing the washing-up.

13.7.7 *Configuration 7:* the situation time of the head clause is represented as T-posterior to the contained orientation time of the head clause, while the situation time of the *when*-clause is represented as T-anterior to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause. For example:

> When John had finished eating, he was going to clear the table [but his wife said he didn't have to].
>
> When John has finished working in the garden, it will no doubt be going to rain. *(= 'I expect that at the time that John has finished working in the garden it will look as if it is going to rain.')*

13.7.8 *Configuration 8:* the situation time of the head clause is represented as T-anterior to the contained orientation time of the head clause, while the situation time of the *when*-clause is represented as T-posterior to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause (cf. Figure 13.8 in section 13.5). For example:

> [I lucked out in that] they had just come available when I was going to order them. (www)
>
> ?When the police were going to intervene I had already deemed it wise to leave the pub. *(= 'There was a time when the police were going to intervene. At that time I had already deemed it safe to leave the pub.')*
>
> When the police are finally going to question John, he will have disappeared.

13.7.9 *Configuration 9:* the situation time of the head clause is represented as T-posterior to the contained orientation time of the head clause, while the situation time of the *when*-clause is represented as T-posterior to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause. For example:

> ?When the police were going to intervene, the rioters were clearly going to use violence. [In the end, however, both parties refrained from using violence.]
>
> ?When he is going to commit suicide, he will also be going to kill his wife and children.

13.8 Further remarks on the configurations

13.8.1 Although all of the above nine configurations are grammatically correct, some of them (especially those involving T-posteriority) may sound rather awkward. This is because we tend to use simpler structures wherever possible and because, when the situation time of the head clause is T-anterior to the contained orientation time of the head clause, it is often more natural to use *by the time that* than to use *when*. Another thing worth noting is that in configurations 1–3, the *when*-clause is used as a situation-time adverbial. In configurations 4–9, it is used as an orientation-time adverbial.[6]

13.8.2 In the above examples, a form involving *be going to* is used in the *when*-clause whenever the situation time of the *when*-clause is to be represented as T-posterior to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause (viz. in configurations 3, 8 and 9). The reason for this is that we cannot normally use *will* or *would* to represent this T-posteriority relation. We must use a form of *be going to*, or of a similar 'futurish form' (see 7.3) like *be about to, be on the point of*, etc. The same restriction applies to the head clause if the situation time of the head clause is to be represented as T-posterior to the contained orientation time of the head clause (viz. in configurations 5, 7 and 9). This means that it is a general rule that a tense form expressing T-posteriority in one of the above nine configurations must involve an auxiliary with '**prospective**' (Jespersen 1932: 361–2) meaning, i. e. an auxiliary which is not so much used to make a prediction as to represent a future situation as anticipated, i. e. as having its roots in the present (see 7.3.2).[7] The reason for this restriction is that in the relevant configurations it is not the situation time of the clause expressing T-posteriority (i. e. the situation time represented as T-posterior) that is the 'contained orientation time' contained in the common Adv-time but rather the time to which the situation time is represented as T-posterior, i. e. the time when the posterior situation is anticipated. This means that the posteriority is always of the prospective type. When a form with prospective meaning is used, an Adv-time can include the time of anticipation rather than the anticipated situation time. The same is not normally possible when *will* or *would* is used. Compare:

> [I told her I would be in Hamburg in the first week of May and] she told me she {would / was going to} be in Prague then.
>
> She often felt sick because she {*was* then *going to have* / **would* then *have*} a baby.

---

[6] The latter six configurations could be adapted in such a way that the common Adv-time contains not only the contained orientation time of the head clause to which the situation time of the head clause is T-related but also the situation time of the head clause itself. In that case the *when*-clause would be used as 'multiple-orientation-time adverbial' (see 2.26). This possibility need not be explicitly treated here because the use of tenses in the six resulting configurations is the same as in configurations 4–9.

[7] Because of its prospective meaning, *be going to* differs from *will* in that it presupposes that all the necessary conditions for the actualization of the future situation are satisfied (see 7.12.1).

In the first example, *then* specifies the situation time of the T-posterior situation; this is possible irrespective of whether the verb form has prospective meaning or not. In the second example, by contrast, *then* specifies (contains) the orientation time to which the situation time is T-posterior. This configuration requires a prospective verb form. Since a *when*-clause specifies an Adv-time in the same way as *then* does, the same is true in configurations with a *when*-clause when the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause is the orientation time to which the relevant situation time is T-posterior.

13.8.3 There is a similar restriction on the tense forms expressing T-anteriority. In those configurations in which the situation time of the *when*-clause is represented as T-anterior to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause, the *when*-clause has to use a perfect tense form. This requirement is not immediately clear when we consider sentences referring to the past (since the past perfect is the one tense to be used to express T-anteriority to a past orientation time), but it becomes evident when the head clause refers to the post-present:

> If we do it this way, the police will never find out that it {*was done* / *has been done*}.
>
> John will arrive when the others {*have left* / **left*}.

Whereas in the first example both the past tense and the present perfect can be used to represent the situation time of the *that*-clause as T-anterior to the situation time of the head clause, only the present perfect can be used in the *when*-clause of the second sentence. The reason is that if the *when*-clause expresses T-anteriority, the time indicated by *at which* in the paraphrase *at the time at which* is not the time of the *when*-clause situation itself (i. e. the situation time of the *when*-clause) but a time when it is the case that the *when*-clause situation has already actualized. In order to express this idea of ‘time at which the *when*-clause situation has actualized’ we obviously need a perfect tense form.

IV. Direct and indirect binding in *when*-clauses

13.9 Definitions of direct and indirect binding in *when*-clauses

As far as adverbial *when*-clauses are concerned, direct binding (i. e. the unmarked way for the situation time of the *when*-clause to be bound) means that the situation time of the *when*-clause is bound by the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause. Any other form of binding is an instance of indirect binding.

As noted in 9.28.1, the situation time of a subclause is bound 'directly' if it is bound by the situation time of its head clause, and is bound 'indirectly' if it is bound by an orientation time represented in a clause higher than the head clause. The following sentences illustrate the two possibilities:

> He promised he *would sign* any papers that *were put* before him.
>
> He promised he *would speak* to Tom, who *would* no doubt *be* able to help me.

In the first example, both *would sign* and *were put* effect DIRECT BINDING: in both cases the relevant situation time is bound by the situation time of its own head clause. In the second example, *would speak* is also bound directly, but *would be able* is an instance of INDIRECT BINDING: the binding orientation time is not the situation time of the head clause (*he would speak to Tom*) but rather the situation time of the matrix clause (*he promised*).

In the case of adverbial *when*-clauses, direct binding has to be defined slightly differently, since in the nine configurations referred to in 13.7 the situation time of the *when*-clause is never directly T-related to the situation time of the head clause but is always bound by the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause. As far as adverbial *when*-clauses are concerned, direct binding (i. e. the unmarked way for the situation time of the *when*-clause to be bound) means that the situation time of the *when*-clause is bound by the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause. Any other form of binding is an instance of indirect binding.

13.10 The use of indirect binding in *when*-clauses

Only *when*-clauses in the past perfect can effect indirect binding. They can do so under strict conditions only.

13.10.1 Because indirect binding represents the marked option, it is subject to severe restrictions. In fact, there is only one form of indirect binding that is quite common in *when*-clauses, viz. that illustrated by examples like the following:

> The house had been like this when he and Jean *had* first *come* here. (NMDT 68)
>
> [He said] he had bought it when he *had been going to get* that salary increase [which in fact he never got].
>
> When he *had turned* 18 he had already outsmarted almost every commander in the war games [and was still undefeated on the Balance Log in the training division]. (www)
>
> When I *had turned* 13, I had already absorbed much of a foreign, American culture. (www)

In each of these examples, the *when*-clause situation is interpreted as W-simultaneous with the head clause situation. The unmarked way of expressing this reading would be by the use of a relative past tense form in the *when*-clause, i. e. by the realization of configuration 1 (in which the situation time of the *when*-clause is bound directly, more specifically, represented as T-simultaneous with the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause). The use of the past perfect in the *when*-clause means that the situation time of the *when*-clause is not bound by the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause but by the same past orientation time as also binds the situation time of the head clause. This form of indirect binding is represented by Figure 13.10. (Remember that the wavy line does not represent a T-relation but indicates the relation of W-simultaneity which is inferred in W-interpretation.)

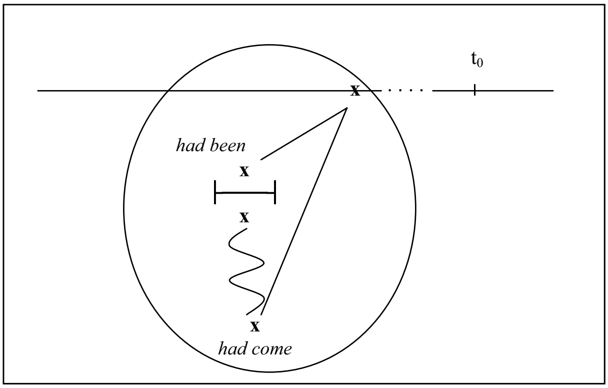

Figure 13.10. The temporal structure of *The house had been like this when he and Jean had first come here.*

A *when*-clause can only be bound indirectly (by the use of the past perfect) if it used as a situation-time adverbial, i. e. if the *when*-clause specifies the time of the head clause situation itself, not another time to which the time of the head clause situation is T-anterior.

13.10.2 It is typical of examples like the ones given in the previous subsection that both the head clause and the *when*-clause use a past perfect (either a regular past perfect or a form involving *had been going to*). It might therefore seem as if the *when*-clause 'copies' the tense form of its head clause. However, the use of the past perfect in the head clause is not a sufficient condition for the use of the same tense in the *when*-clause. An additional condition is that the *when*-clause must be used as a situation-time adverbial. If the *when*-clause is used as an orientation-time adverbial, it cannot be bound indirectly. Compare:

> The house had been dilapidated when he and Jean *had* first *seen* it.
>
> He had already retired when he {*was* / **had been*} sixty.
>
> When I {*saw* / **had seen*} you that day, we hadn't met yet.

In all three examples the condition that the head clause must be in the past perfect is satisfied. However, it is only in the first example that the *when*-clause can be bound indirectly, because this is the only example in which the *when*-clause is used as a situation-time adverbial (i. e. the contained orientation time of the head clause is the situation time of the head clause). In the second and third examples, the *when*-clause is used as an orientation-time adverbial: as shown in Figure 13.11, the contained orientation time of the head clause is not the situation time of the head clause but a time to which the situation time of the head clause is T-anterior. Because of this, indirect binding is not allowed in these examples.

In sum, as a rule, the use of a past perfect in the head clause is not a sufficient condition for indirect binding (by means of the past perfect) in the *when*-clause. There is the additional condition that the *when*-clause must be used as a situation-time adverbial, i. e. that the *when*-clause specifies the time of the head clause situation itself, not another time to which the time of the head clause situation is T-anterior.[8] This is clear when we compare Figure 13.10 with Figure 13.11, which represents the temporal structure realized by the *when*-clause and its head clause in *He had already retired when he was sixty.*

---

[8] Still, the use of the past perfect in the *when*-clause would be unusual in sentences like the following, in which the verb of the *when*-clause is a pro-form: *Afterwards I was glad that I had left when I did.*

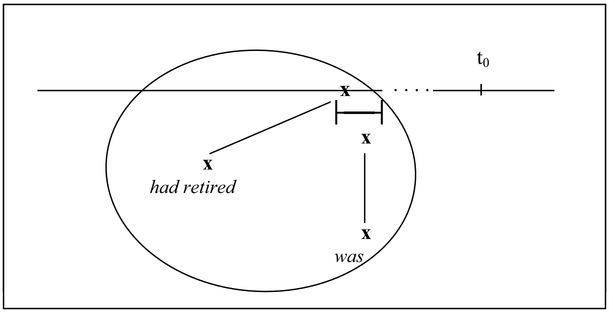

Figure 13.11. The temporal structure of *He says that he had already retired when he was sixty.*

13.10.3 This does not mean, however, that it is never possible for the two clauses to use the past perfect if the *when*-clause is used as an orientation-time adverbial. Consider the following:

> [There was a little confusion as a friend asked me to buy a ticket for him, too, but] when I *had done* so he *had* already *reserved* a ticket for himself. (www)

In this example, the *when*-clause is used as an orientation-time adverbial (specifying a time prior to which the head clause situation has actualized). The situation time of the head clause is itself T-anterior to the central orientation time of the past domain. (This is in keeping with the use of *already.*) Because the *when*-clause is not used as a situation-time adverbial, the *when*-clause situation is not interpreted as W-simultaneous with the head clause situation. This means that there is no indirect binding. The temporal structure of this example is shown in Figure 13.12.

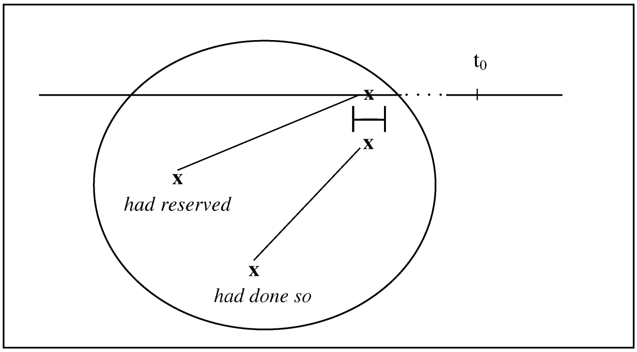

Figure 13.12. The temporal structure of *When I had done so he had already reserved a ticket for himself.*

This example, then, does not form an exception to the general rule that a *when*-clause can only be bound indirectly (by the use of the past perfect) if it is used as a situation-time adverbial. In this example the *when*-clause is used as an orientation time adverbial, and there is direct binding. The *when*-clause situation is interpreted (and represented) as anterior to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause. This is unlike what happens in indirect binding, where the situation time of the *when*-clause is interpreted as W-simultaneous with the situation time of the head clause although it is not represented as T-simultaneous with it (because it is represented as T-anterior to the central orientation time of the domain).

13.10.4 In examples like the following, there seems to be ambiguity between indirect binding (as represented in Fig. 13.10) and direct binding (as represented in Fig. 13.12):

> When he *had been* born, Mike *had* already *chosen* his name, [deciding to name him after his father, who had inspired him to become a policeman in the first place.] (www)
>
> ["Forgive me! And Adieu to you Master Rin," said John.] When John *had departed*, the sun *had* already *begun* its decline. (www)

13.10.5 If a *when*-clause uses the past perfect for indirect binding, the context has to make it clear that the situation time of the *when*-clause should be interpreted as W-simultaneous with the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause, and hence with the situation time of the head clause. The past perfect itself does not express this relation. If the form that effects indirect binding is built with *had been going to*, as in

> He said he had bought it when he *had been going to get* that salary increase [which in fact he never got].

the situation time of the *when*-clause must be interpreted as posterior to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause (see Fig. 13.13). This time the tense form does express this relation. The above sentence is an alternative to the following, which shows direct binding:

> He said he had bought it when he *was going to get* that salary increase [which in fact he never got].

The difference between indirect binding (*had been going to*) and direct binding (*was going to*) here is that only in the former case does the tense form express a COMPLEX T-RELATION (see 9.7) which combines posteriority and anteriority. The binding time from which that T-relation starts is the situation time of *said*, which means that there is indirect binding.

13.10.6 An interesting observation is that when the *when*-clause is bound indirectly, the speaker sometimes deviates from the structure represented by

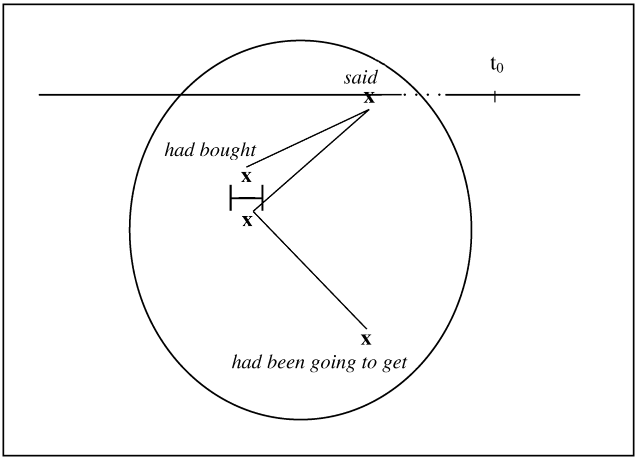

Figure 13.13. The temporal structure of *He said he had bought it when he had been going to get that salary increase.*

Figure 13.10 by using an absolute past tense form in the head clause instead of a past perfect. The following are some attested examples:

> [Sheila (...) felt a cold shudder creeping along her spine.] She felt just as she *did* as a young girl when she *had* once *answered* the phone for her father. (LSW)
>
> [From a locked drawer she took out a large German revolver. Basil had given it to her (...).] It *was* loaded when he *had brought* it to her [and was loaded now.] (FORG)
>
> [But today she was genuinely concerned.] John had been sick twice during the night and *was lying* shivering and sweating when she *had called* him at 7.00 a.m. (LBW)

The same phenomenon can also be observed in restrictive relative clauses that form part of a time adverbial:

> [Peter Moran looked, if not dirty, scruffy.] On each occasion Charles *had seen* him his hair *needed* a wash. (TSM)
>
> It was on one of those evenings when Tim *had expressed* his envy of those who own their homes, that he *suggested* he too should buy a flat. (LOD) *(The context makes it clear that the suggestion was made during the discussion in which Tim expressed his envy and not after it, in other words, that the two situations were W-simultaneous.)*

What renders the use of an absolute past tense form in the head clause acceptable is the fact that for pragmatic reasons the situation time of the head clause can only be interpreted as W-simultaneous with the situation time of the *when*-clause. Since the tense form of the *when*-clause locates the situation time of the *when*-clause as T-anterior to a past orientation time, this means that the situation time of the head clause must also be interpreted as anterior to this orientation time, irrespective of whether the tense form of the head clause expresses that anteriority (using a past perfect) or not (using an absolute past tense). In the latter case the use of the past tense in the head clause does not preclude indirect binding in the *when*-clause because the basic condition for indirect binding of the situation time of the *when*-clause is satisfied: the time adverbial functions as a situation-time adverbial, i. e. it locates (contains) the situation time of the head clause and not an orientation time binding the situation time of the head clause (see 2.24).

13.10.7 It should be noted, finally, that adverbial *when*-clauses normally allow indirect binding only if they use a tense form expressing T-anteriority. They do not allow indirect binding by means of the conditional tense or *was / were going to*:

> He said he would help her when she {*was* / **would be*} in trouble. *(Would be would relate the situation time of the when-clause to the situation time of the matrix (said), but that is not allowed in English. It is allowed, though, in cognate languages like Dutch and German.)*
>
> He was going to resign when he {*was* / **was going to be*} sixty.

The same is true if the posterior past subdomain is not established by a tense form expressing T-posteriority but by a context implying W-posteriority:

> He promised to repair my bike when he {*came* / **would come*} back from work.

However, in older English, indirect binding could be effected in *when*-clauses by means of the auxiliary *should*. Because the reference is to a posterior *when*-clause situation, i. e. to a situation whose actualization is still not factual at the time of the matrix situation, this *should* has a slight hypothetical connotation. Its use here therefore bears a certain similarity to its use in conditional clauses like *If someone should ask for me, tell them I'm away* (where the hypothetical meaning of *should* is much more pronounced). This does not alter the fact, though, that *should* effects indirect binding in the following examples.

> Behind them they left a trail that *would break* Mr. Harrison's heart when he *should see* it. (AVON)
>
> [But I never considered it as other than a transitory life. There was always a prophetic instinct, a low whisper in my ear, that] within no long period, and whenever a new change of custom *should be* essential to my good, change *would come*. (SCRLT)
>
> [Hester (…) assured them, too, of her firm belief that,] at some brighter period, when the world *should have grown* ripe for it, in Heaven's own time, a new truth *would be revealed*, [in order to establish the whole relation between man and woman on a surer ground of mutual happiness.] (SCRLT)

V. Pseudo-sloppy simultaneity

13.11 Definition of pseudo-sloppy simultaneity

On a pseudo-sloppy simultaneity interpretation, the *when*-clause uses a tense which represents the situation time of the *when*-clause as simultaneous with the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause, but the situation time of the *when*-clause is actually interpreted as W-anterior or W-posterior to the situation time of the head clause. For example: *The business closed when the owner was murdered by robbers*; *When I leave the house I will turn on the burglar alarm*.

13.11.1 As noted in 13.3.6, when the tense form of a *when*-clause used as a situation-time adverbial expresses T-simultaneity, the situation time of the *when*-clause is normally interpreted as W-simultaneous with the situation time of the head clause because both situation times are 'contained' in the same common Adv-time. However, this W-simultaneity can be of the 'PSEUDO-SLOPPY' kind. As argued in 13.3.7, the possibility of a pseudo-sloppy simultaneity interpretation is due to the temporal structure of *when*, which is 'The contained orientation time of the head clause is contained in a common Adv-time which also contains the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause'. This temporal structure does not require that the contained orientation time of the head clause should be W-simultaneous with the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause. All that is required is that the two should be conceived of as falling within the same interval (common Adv-time). When the *when*-clause is used as a situation-time adverbial and uses a tense form expressing T-simultaneity, the situation time of the *when*-clause coincides with the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause and the unmarked interpretation is for the common Adv-time also to coincide with the situation time of the *when*-clause. Since in that case the common Adv-time contains the situation time of the head clause, the situation time of the head clause is interpreted as W-simultaneous with (because contained in) the situation time of the *when*-clause. A pseudo-sloppy simultaneity interpretation is a deviation from this. It is a marked reading in which the common Adv-time does not coincide with the situation time of the *when*-clause but is a longer interval in which the contained orientation time of the head clause may be W-posterior or W-anterior to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause.

13.11.2 On a pseudo-sloppy simultaneity interpretation, the *when*-clause uses a tense which represents the situation time of the *when*-clause as simultaneous with the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause, but the situation time of the *when*-clause is actually interpreted as W-anterior or W-posterior to the situation time of the head clause:

> The business closed when the owner *was murdered* by robbers. (WSJ)
>
> When John *left* the house, he switched on the burglar alarm in the kitchen.
>
> [‘I used to play rugger,’ said Armstrong.] ‘I missed it when I *gave* it *up*.’ (LOB)

Strictly speaking, it would seem to be more logical to use a verb form expressing T-anteriority or T-posteriority in such examples:

> The business closed when the owner *had been murdered* by robbers.
>
> When John *was going to leave* the house, he switched on the burglar alarm in the kitchen.

In most cases, however, the speaker will prefer to use the past tense, because T-simultaneity is the unmarked T-relation (see 3.5 and 8.34) and because the temporal relation between the situations is anyhow clear from the pragmatics of the sentence.[9] The explicit use of a more complex tense form (i. e. the past perfect or a form expressing posteriority to a past orientation time) is usually unnecessary, unless the speaker wishes to emphasize the precise nature of the temporal relation (which is then asserted rather than merely inferred). Moreover, the use of *was going to leave* or *had left* adds an aspect of meaning. Whereas *was murdered* and *left* in the first pair of examples just represents their situations as past facts, *had been murdered* can also convey a resultative implicature, while *was going to leave* has ‘prospective’ meaning (see 10.7.2) and therefore actually fails to represent the situation as factual: in *When John was going to leave the house, he put on his boots*, the *when*-clause refers to the time when the *when*-clause situation was anticipated, but fails to represent the situation as actualizing. The past tense will therefore be preferred when the reference is to a situation that did actualize in the past.

13.12 Further remarks on pseudo-sloppy simultaneity

If the head clause situation is homogeneous, a pseudo-sloppy simultaneity interpretation comes down to a kind of inchoative reading of the head clause: *When the house burnt down, we lived at my mother’s until we found a new house.*

---

[9] In some cases the sentence itself contains a word triggering a sequence interpretation:
(i) When trading resumed yesterday, EBS shares *immediately* surged $ 4. (WSJ)
(ii) When First Interstate balked, (...) regulators *responded* by raising their recommendation to $ 350 million. (WSJ)

If the head clause situation is interpreted as W-posterior to the *when*-clause situation (in spite of the *when*-clause using a T-simultaneity form), this posteriority relation can sometimes be expressed by the tense of the head clause: *When the war was over, few of the soldiers would return to find real peace.*

When-clauses that are interpreted in terms of pseudo-sloppy simultaneity often do not really specify an Adv-time but describe the occasion(s) on which the head clause situation actualizes: *When she received the letter, she answered it as soon as she could.* When the notion of 'occasion(s)' is stretched to that of 'case(s)', the *when*-clause becomes 'case-specifying' and hence 'atemporal': *Children are orphans when their parents are dead.*

13.12.1 If the head clause situation is a state or another type of 'homogeneous' (see 1.45) situation, a pseudo-sloppy simultaneity interpretation comes down to a kind of inchoative reading of the head clause:

> When John broke his leg, he *used* the same crutches that his wife had used. *(= 'John used the same crutches as his wife had used, and he began doing so when / after he broke his leg.')*[10]
>
> She *was* penniless when her firm went bankrupt. *(= 'At some time in the past she was penniless, and that situation came about when / after her firm went bankrupt.')*

These examples show that if the head clause situation is interpreted as following the *when*-clause situation, it may be nonbounded to the right as long as it is (interpreted as) bounded to the left. This stands to reason: a succession interpretation requires that one situation terminates before the other begins, i. e. that one situation (the one that is interpreted as actualizing first) is right-bounded whereas the other is left-bounded. Whether the situations are bounded or nonbounded at the other end is irrelevant.

13.12.2 If the head clause situation is interpreted as W-posterior to the *when*-clause situation (in spite of the *when*-clause using a T-simultaneity form), this posteriority relation can sometimes be expressed by the tense of the head clause. Consider:

(5a) When the war was over, few of the soldiers *would return* to find real peace.

(5b) When his third term came to an end, FDR *would be elected* a fourth time. (www)

---

[10] Note that this is the same kind of inchoative reading as we get in *At five o'clock John did his homework*, which means 'John did his homework and started doing so at five' rather than just 'At five John started doing his homework' (see 2.30.2).

In these examples, the head clause situation is not primarily represented as anticipated but rather as factual, i. e. as a situation that actualized in the past. This means that the situation is represented as 'future in the past' (rather than 'future from the past') by an omniscient narrator. This use of *would* is the same as that observed in sentences like the following, which are typical of a narrative style (see 9.6.7):

(6a) [In trenches up to their knees in mud for weeks on end they endured unending barrages of bombs, shells and artillery fire in places like Ypres, Paschendale and the Somme.] Few *would return* to find real peace. (www)

(6b) [People didn't know at the time, but] FDR *would be elected* a fourth time. (Matthiessen 1983: 392)

The conditional tense form here represents its situation as factual, and could therefore be replaced with the past tense (albeit with loss of the posteriority sense). In (5a–b) too, the past tense could be used in the head clause. Another alternative to *would* is *was / were to*:

(7) [At 24, Costello was sentenced to a year in prison for carrying a gun.] He *was not to return* to prison for the next 37 years. (www)

Examples like these are interesting because the head clause receives a factual interpretation in spite of the fact that the use of *would* or *was to* implies that the situation time of the head clause is not related to t_0 (by means of an absolute past tense) but is represented as T-posterior to some past orientation time. In (6)–(7), the binding orientation time is the situation time of the preceding clause. In (5a–b), which involve a *when*-clause, the situation time of the head clause is represented as T-posterior to the implicit contained orientation time of the head clause, which is interpreted as W-simultaneous with the implicit contained orientation time of the *when*-clause to which the situation time of the *when*-clause is represented as T-simultaneous. This means that the tense forms in these examples express configuration 5 (see 13.7.5), in which the situation time of the *when*-clause is T-simultaneous with the implicit contained orientation time of the *when*-clause and the situation time of the head clause is T-posterior to the implicit contained orientation time of the head clause. However, these examples differ from the illustrations of configuration 5 given in 13.7.5 in that the head clause uses *would* rather than *was going to*. As noted in 13.8.2, the head clause has to use *was going to* rather than *would* if it expresses what is anticipated at the time of the contained orientation time of the head clause (i. e. if the head clause has 'prospective' meaning). But it is clear from (5a–b) that the head clause has to use *would* (or *was to*) if the speaker wants to use a form expressing posteriority which is to be interpreted as having a factual rather than prospective meaning.

13.12.3 Another observation worth making is that *when*-clauses that are interpreted in terms of pseudo-sloppy simultaneity often do not really specify an

Adv-time but describe the occasion(s) on which the head clause situation actualizes:

He always switches off all the lights when he leaves his house.

When she received the letter, she answered it as soon as she could.

In such examples the 'temporal' *when*-clause describes the relevant occasion(s) rather than the precise time of the actualization of the head clause situation. The same thing is sometimes possible when the W-simultaneity relation which is taken to hold between the situation time of the head clause and the situation time of the *when*-clause is not of the 'pseudo-sloppy' kind:

He always votes Conservative when there is a general election.

In this country, when a man marries, the bride's parents have to give him a dowry.

I got this as a present when I graduated.

That the primary function of the *when*-clauses is not to specify a time (Adv-time) not only answers our intuition but is also corroborated by the fact that in this case it is not irrelevant which situation is processed as head clause situation and which as *when*-clause situation. Compare:

(a) Josephine Baker died when she was 68.
(b) Josephine Baker was 68 when she died.
(a) When she received the letter, she answered it as soon as she could.
(b) *When she answered it as soon as she could, she received the letter.
(a) He always votes Conservative when there is a general election.
(b) When he (*always) votes Conservative, there is a general election.

As noted in 13.3.9, there is no clear difference in interpretation between the (a) and (b) sentences of the first pair, in which the *when*-clauses are purely time-specifying. However, there is a clear difference of interpretation between the (a) and (b) sentences of the second and third pairs. This is because the *when*-clause is now occasion-specifying rather than purely time-specifying.[11]

13.12.4 When the notion of 'occasion(s)' is stretched to that of 'case(s)', the *when*-clause becomes 'CASE-SPECIFYING' and hence 'ATEMPORAL'. Such *when*-

---

[11] The same is true of FOCALIZING *WHEN*-CLAUSES, i. e. *when*-clauses which do not specify the time of the head clause situation (or a time to which the time of the head clause situation is related) but express the speaker's focus on a time of evaluation or observation. In one subtype, the *when*-clause suggests the idea of a travelling observing consciousness (e. g. *When you travel to Washington, Boston, Chicago or New York, the same problems exist*), in another, the focalizing *when*-clause indicates the 'epistemic time of evaluation', i. e. the time when the conclusion is reached that the statement made in the head clause is true (e. g. *When you look at the economics, this company needs a Japanese and a European partner to make it work*).

clauses no longer refer to time at all but describe the case(s) in which the statement made in the head clause is true:

> Children are orphans when their parents are dead.
>
> When a man is tired of London, he is tired of life. (Samuel Johnson)

Atemporal *when*-clauses like these are sometimes called 'RESTRICTIVE *WHEN*-CLAUSES' because they restrict the cases in which the head-clause statement is true. In the above examples, the idea of a set of cases (to be restricted by the *when*-clause) results from the fact that the subject NP is used generically: a generic NP calls up the idea of an unspecified set, hence of a nonbounded number of entities (individuals). Since it is these entities that constitute the cases restricted by the *when*-clause, we can replace the *when*-clause by a restrictive relative clause without any apparent difference of meaning:

> Children whose parents are dead are orphans.
>
> A man who is tired of London is tired of life.

Here too, the generic subject NP calls up the idea of an indefinite (nonbounded) number of entities and hence of an indefinite number of cases (each entity being associated with one case). Whereas in the first pair of examples the atemporal *when*-clauses restrict the number of cases, and hence of entities, for which the head-clause statement is true, the relative clauses in the second pair of examples restrict the number of entities, and hence the number of cases, for which the head-clause statement is true. The result is that the *when*-clauses have much the same effect as the relative clauses.

13.12.5 Let us note, finally, that a pseudo-sloppy simultaneity reading of *when* requires that there should be some kind of logical relation (e. g. cause and effect) between the *when*-clause and the head clause. This explains why sentences like the following are odd:

> ?When my car broke down, there was a woman shot in Boston.

The restriction has to do with the Gricean Maxim of Relation (Relevance). The use of *when* (in configuration 1) means that the speaker locates the situation time of the *when*-clause and the situation time of the head clause within a common Adv-time. Obviously, the speaker must have some reason for doing this. In the unmarked case, the reason is that the two situation times are W-simultaneous. If this is not the case, the reason is that the speaker wants to express some kind of logical relation between the two situation times.

VI. The expression of irrealis or tentativeness in *when*-clauses

Under certain conditions, an adverbial *when*-clause can use the conditional perfect to represents its contents as 'irrealis', i. e. as counterfactual (unreal) or tentative.

13.13 Counterfactual *when*-clauses

In independent clauses it is possible to use the conditional perfect to refer to a COUNTERFACTUAL past situation, usually in a context referring to, or implying, an unfulfilled condition:

> I would have welcomed more information on what they wanted us to do [if that had been possible].

This use of the conditional perfect is also possible in *when*-clauses:

> Maddeningly, just when I *would have welcomed* full information on the books he was reading, he started to mention nothing beyond authors and titles, often in a shortened form. (GREEM)
>
> ["It is very kind of you to have asked me."] And then, when he *would have rung off*, she said, ["I suppose you have changed the flat a lot?"] (LOB)
>
> [Ten years ago, the newspaper El Espectador (...) began warning of the rise of the drug mafias (...)] Then, when it *would have been* easier to resist them, nothing was done. (WSJ)

Sentences like these would appear to run counter to the widespread belief that *when*-clauses differ from *if*-clauses in that they are presupposed to be factual. The truth is that adverbial *when*-clauses presuppose actualization of the *when*-clause situation in some possible world, but not necessarily in the actual world. (The *when*-clause and the head clause must, however, always refer to the same possible world.) Sometimes the world in question involves situations which at some time or other are expected to actualize later. This is the case in sentences like the following:

> John said he would commit suicide when a nuclear war broke out.

The speaker here refers to a world of expectation (existing in John's mind) in which the *when*-clause situation actualizes. He does not say anything about actualization of the *when*-clause situation in the real world. The first three examples differ from this in that instead of just voicing the subject's expectation, the speaker states explicitly (through the use of a counterfactual verb form) that the anticipated *when*-clause situation did not actualize in the real world.

If the *when*-clause uses the conditional perfect, as in the first three examples, it refers to a counterfactual world. Like any other temporal *when*-clause, such a *when*-clause establishes an Adv-time, but the time indicated is now not a time of actualization but a time of nonactualization.

There is a similar use of the conditional tense, which can refer to the future and convey a counterfactual meaning, provided the verb is stative or progressive:

> Make sure you don't pay for holidays that occur when an employee *would* not otherwise *be working*. (BR) *(= '… when an employee would not be working if he were not on holiday')*

13.14 Tentative *when*-clauses

Time-specifying *when*-clauses can also use a verb form which represents the actualization of the *when*-clause situation as 'TENTATIVE', i. e. as unlikely but not impossible. This is typically the case in *when*-clauses introduced by *whenever* and using *should*:

> I have promised to stand in for him whenever his state of health *should render* it impossible for him to attend the monthly meeting of the Board.
>
> This decided him to part with the boy, whenever he *should be found*. (GLME)

In examples like these, which sound rather archaic, the *when*-clause has a conditional connotation.

VII. Adverbial *when*-clauses using an absolute tense form

In the preceding sections we have discussed the nine configurations which can be considered as constituting the unmarked uses of relative tenses in *when*-clauses, as well as a couple of marked relative tense uses (viz. indirect binding and irrealis). In this section we will have a brief look at a number of marked cases in which the tense form of the *when*-clause is arguably an absolute tense form, i. e. a tense form which relates the situation time of the *when*-clause directly to t_0.

13.15 The Special Present Time-sphere System

Situations that actualized in the past are normally described with the help of one of the past time-sphere tenses (viz. the past tense, the past perfect, the conditional tense or the conditional perfect). However, there are contexts in which the speaker conventionally uses the SPECIAL PRESENT TIME-SPHERE SYSTEM (see 3.2–9), i. e. the present tense, the present perfect, the future tense or the future perfect. It is typical of this use that the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause is represented as if it were t_0. This means that the situation time of the *when*-clause is related to t_0, hence that the *when*-clause uses an absolute tense. For example:

> *(summary)* When they *arrive* at his house, John is already in bed.
>
> *(historic present)* When Gordon *has shut* the door, Joan starts crying.

13.16 *When*-clauses in the future tense

13.16.1 If the head clause situation and the *when*-clause situation are to be interpreted as W-simultaneous post-present situations, the *when*-clause must as a rule use the present tense (as ‘Pseudo-t_0-System’ (see 10.2.1) tense expressing T-simultaneity) rather than the absolute future tense. Still, in very formal or archaic texts, examples can be found in which the *when*-clause uses the future tense:

> ‘Thou shalt not kill.’ Except when it *shall come* to pass that thy trade-routes shall be endangered. (NICH)

13.16.2 Another exception to the rule that adverbial *when*-clauses do not use the absolute future tense is when the *when*-clause contains or implies a condition:

> I think we have a right to use chemical weapons when doing so *will help* to save lives.
>
> [He is one of those who think that] the US should use their atom bombs “whenever it *will defend* freedom or saves lives”.

In the first of these examples, the *when*-clause is interpreted as ‘when it will help to save lives if we do so’. There is a similar implicit condition in the second example. The use of the future tense in such *when*-clauses reminds us of the rule (discussed in 10.7.1) that conditional clauses that refer to the post-present and which contain or imply another clause expressing an open condition use the future tense (Absolute Future System) rather than the present tense (Pseudo-t_0-System):

> This system of subsidies will be maintained if the farmers *will suffer* considerable losses if it is abolished.
>
> We will not use these abbreviations if it *will result* in confusion (if we use them).

Pragmatically, the latter sentence is interpreted as ‘We will not use these abbreviations *if we are sure that* using them will result in confusion’. In the same way, *We have a right to use chemical weapons when doing so will help to save lives* is pragmatically interpreted as ‘We have a right to use chemical weapons *when we are sure* that using them will result in confusion’.

13.17 Habitual-repetitive sentences

13.17.1 An adverbial *when*-clause uses an absolute tense form if the sentence receives a habitual-repetitive interpretation:

> He is never at home when I *need* him.
>
> Why is water sprayed on orange trees when the temperature *is going to drop* to freezing? (www)
>
> She always rubs her eyes when she *has* just *woken up*, and stretches, and has her eyes shut tight and makes funny grimaces. (www)

As noted before, a HABIT is a characteristic that exists over an extended period of time. In most cases a habit implies repetition: the characteristic in question is ascribed to the referent of the subject NP on the basis of the fact that there have been a number of instances. Such a habit can therefore be seen as a complex situation consisting of an unspecified number of subsituations. If the individual subsituations can be described in terms of a head clause and a *when*-clause, as in the above examples (where each subsituation is made up of a head clause situation and a *when*-clause situation, whose situation times are related to each other via a common Adv-time), then the complex situation as a whole will be described in exactly the same terms. Which tense forms are used in doing this depends (a) on the time at which the habit is located, (b) on the relation between the situation time of the head clause and the contained orientation time of the head clause and (c) on the relation between the situation time of the *when*-clause and the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause. In the above examples the habit is said to hold at t_0 (although none of the subsituations (instances) making up the habit need actually take place at t_0). The present tense in the head clause is therefore an absolute tense, and so is the present tense in the *when*-clause, which also locates the habitual hypersituation consisting of instances of the *when*-clause situation at t_0.

13.17.2 Instead of locating the habit at t_0, we can also locate it in the pre-present. In that case the head clause uses the present perfect, while the *when*-clause can use either the past tense or the present perfect:

> I have often been to Japan when the cherry trees *were* in bloom.
>
> Payouts have sometimes risen most sharply when prices *were* already on their way down from cyclical peaks. (WSJ)
>
> John has batted well when he *has played*. (HORN)
>
> I've spent hours looking at things like this, when you'*ve* not *been* around. (PIN)

Whereas the past tense in the *when*-clauses of the first two examples is a relative past tense expressing T-simultaneity (see 9.9.1), the present perfect in the *when*-clauses of the latter two examples is an absolute tense form (see 9.9.6). In the latter sentences, the tense forms of both the head clause and the *when*-clause locate their situation times in the pre-present independently of one another, but the two situation times are interpreted as W-simultaneous. This kind of construction requires that both the head clause situation and the *when*-clause situation consist of an unspecified number of subsituations. The use of *when* means that each of the head-clause subsituations is interpreted as W-simultaneous with one of the *when*-clause subsituations. In this way the over-all situations are also interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other, but this relation is not expressed by the tense forms. The tense forms of the two clauses relate the two over-all situations directly to t_0.

13.17.3 When the *when*-clause uses the present perfect, the head clause occasionally uses the past tense:

> When we *have suggested* changes, the people concerned *were* furious.
>
> When I *have seen* him in the last two years, he *was* invariably accompanied by several girls.
>
> When stocks *have been added* to the S&P 500 in the past, a flurry of buy orders often *forced* the exchanges to halt trading because of an imbalance. (WSJ)
>
> In the past when I have seen anomalies like that, they *were caused* by conditions at the test site. (www)

This combination of a present perfect in the *when*-clause with a past tense in the head clause is only possible if the *when*-clause precedes the head clause. This is because the first clause introduces a (repetitive) situation as discourse topic while the second focuses on one aspect of that situation. This mechanism is the same as we have observed in connection with sentences like *I have tried using sleeping pills, but they didn't work* in 6.2.1, where the present perfect clause also has to precede the clause in the past tense. This restriction is also observed in sentences involving a restrictive relative clause and a head clause: here too the subclause may use the present perfect if it precedes the head clause in the past tense:

Everything I *have* ever *done was* wrong.

The one time that I *have* ever *been* in Paris I *stayed* at a dilapidated hotel.

In all the above sentences, the present perfect in the *when*-clause or relative clause is clearly an absolute tense form. The status of the past tense in the head clause is not so clear. One could argue that this is a relative past tense, representing the situation time of the head clause as T-simultaneous with the situation time of the *when*-clause. Conversely, it might be argued that the past tense form is an absolute tense form (which relates the situation time of the head clause directly to t_0). The latter analysis would imply that the fact that the two situation times are interpreted as W-simultaneous is not due to the tense forms but to the presence of *when* or to contextual and pragmatic factors.

It should be noted, finally, that when the situation time of the *when*-clause is repetitive, in which case we normally use *whenever* or *every time (that)* rather than *when*, sentences with a present perfect in both *when*-clause and head clause are often, but need not always be of the type illustrated by the first four examples in this subsection. In those examples, each of the subsituations making up the habit which is located in the pre-present is an instance of configuration 1 (in which the situation time of the *when*-clause is represented as T-simultaneous with the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause). However, when the present perfect is used in both clauses, each of the subsituations may also be an instance of configuration 4 (with the situation time of the head clause represented as T-anterior to the contained orientation time of the head clause):

Until now, whenever he'*s come* here he'*s* just *had* a quarrel with his wife.

It follows that a sentence like the following is ambiguous, because each instance of Bill's being in prison may be interpreted either as coinciding with or as preceding the relevant instance of the speaker seeing Bill (see also 9.9.11):

Whenever I've seen Bill he's been in prison.

In theory, the sentence *When I've seen Bill he's always been in prison* is equally ambiguous, but in practice it will normally be interpreted in terms of simultaneity. (For the anteriority reading we would say *When I've seen Bill he's always just been in prison*.)

VIII. *When*-clause and head clause referring to different times

A clause obviously uses an absolute tense form if it locates its situation time in a different time-sphere from the head clause.

13.18 Head clause referring to the past and *when*-clause referring to the present

This kind of 'mismatch' of time-spheres is not normally possible in adverbial *when*-clauses. However, we might note in passing that such a mismatch can occur in *when*-clauses functioning as restrictive relative clauses forming part of a temporal adverbial. It may be due to the fact that the relative *when*-clause has generic meaning (i. e. expresses a universal truth) or to the fact that the *when*-clause refers to a habitual situation which holds not only at the time of the head clause situation but also at t_0:

> During the latter part of May and early in June the weather *was* unusually cold and wet, and growth *was checked* at a time when the quality teas of the year *are made*. (LOB)
>
> I *had reached* the age when sexual questions *pester* the imagination … (LOB)

There are also examples in which the relative *when*-clause refers to a single (nonhabitual and nongeneric) situation which is located at t_0 even though the head clause is in the past tense. The combination of a *when*-clause in the present tense with a head clause in the past tense is rendered possible by the fact that the *when*-clause situation covers a time span which contains not only the head clause situation but also t_0:

> [Word of Dag Hammarskjöld's death (…) has sent a shockwave around the globe. (…) He was the symbol of world peace, and] his tragic end *came* at a moment when peace *hangs* precariously. (BR)

The following is an example in which the present tense is similarly used in a *when*-clause that is an adverbial (rather than relative) *when*-clause:

> [Do we want to go through this? Or can we ask you why] you *changed* your forecast just when it*'s* about to be right? (WSJ)

13.19 Head clause referring to a past domain and *when*-clause referring to the post-present

In the following examples, the adverbial *when*-clause refers to the post-present, although the head clause uses a past time-sphere tense (incorporating the situation time of the head clause into a past domain):

> [He added that (...)] child-care provisions would be part of the reconciliation bill when it *is sent* to the president. (WSJ)
>
> [Last month Sir William Morgan (...) said that] when existing orders *are completed* the company would stop making rolling stock for railways ... (LOB)

In these examples, the *when*-clause situation is W-simultaneous with a head clause situation that is itself represented as T-posterior to a past orientation time. In this type of sentence we would expect the *when*-clause to use a relative past tense form, and that is indeed the default choice, but the form that is actually used in these examples is a present tense form, i. e. a form from the Pseudo-t_0-System which is used to represent its situation time as T-simultaneous with a post-present binding orientation time (and in doing so establishes a post-present way in an ‘indirect’ way – see 9.22.1). This is made possible by the fact that the situation time of the *when*-clause is W-posterior not only to the situation time of the head clause but also to t_0.

Although examples like these resemble those in 13.18, they differ from those in that, unlike the relative *when*-clauses in 13.18, the adverbial *when*-clauses in the above examples cannot use an absolute tense form.

13.20 Head clause referring to the pre-present and *when*-clause referring to the present

When the head clause does not refer to a habitual-repetitive situation and uses a so-called ‘indefinite’ present perfect (see 5.4), it cannot support a *when*-clause:

> I have seen him.
>
> *I have seen him when he came in just now.

It is typical of an indefinite perfect interpretation that the exact location of the situation time in the pre-present must remain indefinite. Hence the impossibility of adding a *when*-clause indicating a specific time. However, it was noted in section 13.17 that a *when*-clause can be added if the head clause receives a habitual-repetitive interpretation. In that case the *when*-clause can use either the present perfect or the past tense:

> John has batted well when he *has played*. (HORN)
>
> I have often been in Japan when the cherry trees *were* in bloom.

However, apart from examples like these, we can also find examples in which the *when*-clause uses the present tense:

> I've only ever met Mrs Cunliffe when she *comes* round collecting signatures for protest petitions. (MAR)
>
> I tried to explain what has happened, unfailingly, whenever a significant body of Negroes *move* North. (BR)

In examples like these, the use of an absolute present tense in a *when*-clause depending on a head clause in the present perfect is made possible by the fact that the *when*-clause refers to a habitual-repetitive situation, instances of which are to be found not only in the pre-present but also in the present. What happens is that the speaker changes track between head clause and *when*-clause. He first wants to talk about his (lack of) experience, which means referring to the time-up-to-now and then he wants to talk about the presentness of the habit which produces that experience.

IX. Summary

In this chapter on adverbial *when*-clauses we have presented an analysis of the temporal structure expressed by *when* and examined the possibilities of tense choice in adverbial *when*-clauses and in the head clauses supporting them. The following are the main conclusions we have arrived at:

(a) The temporal structure expressed by *when* is that of a **common Adv-time** containing both an orientation time from the tense structure of the head clause (= the **contained orientation time of the head clause**) and an orientation time from the tense structure of the *when*-clause (= the **contained orientation time of the *when*-clause**). This temporal structure, which is the semantics of *when*, can therefore be paraphrased as 'at a/the time at which'.

(b) The *when*-clause can specify either the situation time of the head clause or an orientation time which binds the situation time of the head clause in terms of T-anteriority or T-posteriority. In other words, the *when*-clause can be used either as a **situation-time adverbial** or as an **orientation-time adverbial**.

(c) In both cases the *when*-clause uses a relative tense, which represents the situation time of the *when*-clause as T-anterior, T-simultaneous or T-posterior to the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause.

(d) It follows from (b)−(c) that there are nine **unmarked configurations** of temporal relations, realizing nine different temporal structures involving the common Adv-time expressed by *when*. These nine configurations, which have in common that the situation time of the *when*-clause is bound by the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause, can be considered as forming the set of unmarked options as far as tense choice is concerned. As the examples have shown, all nine of them are compatible with reference to the past as well as with reference to the post-present.[12]

(e) Apart from the unmarked options, there are some marked uses of tenses in adverbial *when*-clauses. Under certain conditions the *when*-clause can use the past perfect (but not the conditional tense or the conditional perfect!) to effect **indirect binding**, i. e. to T-relate the situation time of the *when*-clause to an orientation time which is not the contained orientation time of the *when*-clause (and which is not t_0 either). There are also cases in which the *when*-clause uses the conditional tense or conditional perfect in order to express **irrealis**, i. e. in order to represent the actualization of the *when*-clause situation as **counterfactual** or **tentative**. Finally, it is possible for the *when*-clause to **shift the domain** to the post-present, in which case a form from the **Pseudo-t_0-System** has to be used. Since all these cases represent a marked tense choice, they are relatively uncommon and subject to severe restrictions.

---

[12] Like time-specifying adverbials such as *at five o'clock*, Adv-time-*when*-clauses are normally incompatible with reference to the present, except in special cases (summaries, habitual-repetitive sentences, etc.).

14. Adverbial *before*-clauses and *after*-clauses

I. Adverbial *before*-clauses 657
A. Introduction 657
14.1 Terminology 657
14.2 The temporal structure of *before* 657
14.3 Temporal structures involving a head clause and a *before*-clause 688
14.4 The nature of past tense forms in *before*-clauses 692
B. The tense system if the *before*-clause is a situation-time adverbial 698
14.5 Absolute tense forms in both *before*-clause and head clause 699
14.6 Absolute tense in the head clause and relative tense in the *before*-clause 707
14.7 Relative tense in head clause and relative tense in *before*-clause 717
14.8 Relative tense in head clause and absolute tense in *before*-clause 721
14.9 Summary of section B 725
C. The tense system if the *before*-clause is an orientation-time adverbial 727
14.10 Using a *before*-clause as orientation-time adverbial 727
D. Factual, not-yet-factual and counterfactual *before*-clauses 729
14.11 Factual interpretations of *before*-clauses 729
14.12 Counterfactual *before*-clauses 735
14.13 Not-yet-factual *before*-clauses 736
E. A comparison between *before* and *until* 738
14.14 The semantics of the conjunction *until* 738
14.15 The tenses used in head clause and *until*-clause 739
14.16 The semantics of *not…until* 740

II. Adverbial *after*-clauses 742
14.17 The temporal structure of *after* 742
14.18 Temporal structures involving a head clause and an *after*-clause 745
14.19 The tense system if the *after*-clause functions as situation-time adverbial 747
14.20 The tense system if the *after*-clause functions as orientation-time adverbial 750

III. Summary 754
14.21 Summary of the discussion of *before*-clauses 754
14.22 Summary of the discussion of *after*-clauses 756

Abstract

This chapter deals with the use of tenses in sentences consisting of a head clause and an adverbial time clause if the latter is introduced by *before* or *after*. *Until*-clauses are also included in the discussion.

Part I deals with *before*-clauses. We begin by explaining the temporal structure of *before*, which is interpreted as 'before the time at which'. The implicit orientation time lexicalized as *the time* in this paraphrase is called the 'Anchor time'. The *before*-clause establishes a durative Adv-time which contains the situation time of the head clause, or another orientation time from the tense structure of the head clause, in terms of inclusion or coincidence. The situation time of the *before*-clause can function as Anchor time or is T-related to the Anchor time by a relative tense form.

In section B of part I, we investigate the tenses that can be used in the head clause and the *before*-clause if the latter functions as a situation-time adverbial (i. e. if the situation time of the head clause is the orientation time that is contained in the Adv-time denoted by the *before*-clause). We come to the conclusion that there are several possible temporal configurations, the most important of which are illustrated by *John left before Bill arrived* (which represents both situations as past facts), *John had left before Bill arrived* (where the head clause receives a resultative reading) and *John left before Bill had arrived* (where the past perfect underscores the 'not-yet-factual-at-t' reading of the *before*-clause, i. e. the idea that Bill had not (yet) arrived when John left).

In section C of part I, we examine the exceptional cases in which a *before*-clause functions as an orientation-time adverbial.

Section D of part I is concerned with the various factors (including the choice of tense) which can induce the *before*-clause to be interpreted as factual (as in *John left before Bill arrived*), counterfactual (as in *John died two weeks before he would have celebrated his 30th birthday*) or not-yet-factual-at-t (as in *John left before Bill had arrived*).

In section E of part I, a comparison is made between *before*-clauses and *until*-clauses.

Part II is devoted to *after*-clauses. We start by examining the temporal structure of *after*, which is interpreted as 'after the time at which'. The implicit orientation time lexicalized as *the time* in this paraphrase is called the 'Anchor time'. The *after*-clause establishes a durative Adv-time which contains the situation time of the head clause, or another orientation time from the tense structure of the head clause, in terms of inclusion or coincidence. The situation time of the *after*-clause can function as Anchor time or is T-related to the Anchor time by a relative tense form.

In the rest of Part II, the possible tense configurations are examined which can be realized in a sentence consisting of a head clause and an *after*-clause.

In Part III, the main findings of this chapter are summarized.

I. Adverbial *before*-clauses

A. Introduction

14.1 Terminology

The terminology that will be used here is largely the same as has been used in the discussion of adverbial *when*-clauses in chapter 13. The superordinate clause on which an adverbial *before*-clause syntactically depends will be called the HEAD CLAUSE. We will call the time of the ('predicated' – see 2.12.1) situation referred to in the head clause the SITUATION TIME OF THE HEAD CLAUSE. We will similarly speak of the SITUATION TIME OF THE *BEFORE*-CLAUSE. The function of an adverbial *before*-clause, and in fact of any time-specifying adverbial, is to create an ADV-TIME, i. e. to specify a (punctual or durative) interval which **contains** (in terms of inclusion or coincidence – see 2.23.1) either the situation time of the head clause (in which case the *before*-clause is a SITUATION-TIME ADVERBIAL – see 2.24) or another orientation time to which the situation time of the head clause is related by the tense form of the head clause (in which case the *before*-clause functions as an ORIENTATION-TIME ADVERBIAL – see 2.25). The orientation time (from the tense structure of the head clause) that is contained by the Adv-time will be called the CONTAINED ORIENTATION TIME.

14.2 The temporal structure of *before*

The temporal structure of the conjunction *before* is shown in Figure 14.1.

14.2.1 The conjunction *before* is semantically equivalent to 'before the time {that / at which}'. This is in keeping with the fact that the conjunction *before* has actually developed from a phrase of the form 'before the time that' or 'before then that' (variously realized in Old English as *toforan þam timan þe, foran to þam timan þe* and *toforan þam þe*). The sentence *John left before Bill arrived* can therefore be paraphrased 'John left at a time before the time {when / at which} John arrived'.[1] In this paraphrase, *a time before* … refers to the Adv-time, *at* expresses the containment relation between this Adv-time and the contained orientation time, and the second *time* refers to the terminal point of the Adv-time. Let us refer to the latter point as the 'ANCHOR TIME' of the *before*-clause. The temporal structure of the conjunction *before* can be represented as in Figure 14.1. (Remember that the contained orientation time is represented by an x irrespective of whether it is included in the Adv-time or coincides with it.)

---

[1] Since there is no semantic difference between 'X actualized before the time that Y actualized' and (the more unwieldy) 'X actualized at a time before the time that Y actualized', we treat the latter as a valid paraphrase of the former.

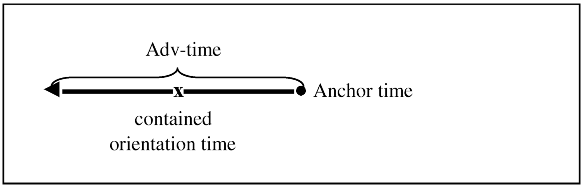

Figure 14.1. Representation of the temporal structure of *before*.

14.2.2 As is clear from Figure 14.1, the conjunction *before* establishes a durative Adv-time whose right boundary is an Anchor time (lexicalized as *the time* in the paraphrase 'before the time that'). The Adv-time contains the contained orientation time (in terms of inclusion or coincidence). If there is inclusion, *before* means 'at some time in the course of the period before'; if there is coincidence, *before* means 'throughout the period before'. As we will see, the Anchor time may be either the situation time of the *before*-clause itself or another (implicit) orientation time to which the situation time of the *before*-clause is T-related. By contrast, the contained orientation time is nearly always the situation time of the head clause itself. (In this respect, *before*-clauses differ from *when*-clauses, which are more easily used as orientation-time adverbials.) For example:

> John *left* before Bill *arrived. (The situation time of the head clause, i.e. the time of John's leaving, is the contained orientation time, while the situation time of the before-clause is the Anchor time.)*
>
> John *will leave* before Bill *arrives. (The situation time of the head clause is the contained orientation time, while the situation time of the before-clause is represented as T-simultaneous with the implicit Anchor time.)*

14.3 Temporal structures involving a head clause and a *before*-clause

14.3.1 It follows from the previous section that at least the following two temporal structures involving a head clause and a *before*-clause are possible. In both cases the *before*-clause functions as a situation-time adverbial.

(a) Firstly, the situation time of the head clause may be contained in the Adv-time, while the situation time of the *before*-clause is T-related to an implicit Anchor time (by a relative tense form):

John *will leave* before the pub *closes. (The situation time of the head clause is included in the Adv-time. The* before*-clause uses a 'Pseudo-t_0-System form' — see 10.2 — to T-relate the situation time of the* before*-clause to the implicit Anchor time. The temporal structure of the sentence is shown in Figure 14.2.)*

[I hoped that] the convict *would be treated* well before he *was executed. (The situation time of the head clause coincides with the Adv-time. The* before*-clause uses the relative past — see 8.12 — to represent the situation time of the* before*-clause as T-simultaneous with the Anchor time. Because the past tense in the* before*-clause is not an absolute preterite, the situation referred to is not interpreted as t_0-factual — see 14.4.2 below.)*

He *left* long before I *had arrived. (The situation time of the head clause is included in the Adv-time. The* before*-clause uses the past perfect to represent its situation time as T-anterior to the implicit Anchor time.)*

John *will leave* before the pub *closes. (The situation time of the head clause is included in the Adv-time. The situation time of the* before*-clause is represented as T-simultaneous with the Anchor time.)*

[I expected that] he *would leave* before the pub *closed. (The situation time of the head clause is the contained orientation time. The* before*-clause uses a 'relative past tense' to represent the situation time of the* before*-clause as T-simultaneous with the implicit Anchor time.)*

John *would leave* before the pub *had closed. (The situation time of the head clause is the contained orientation time. The situation time of the* before*-clause is represented as T-anterior to the implicit Anchor time.)*

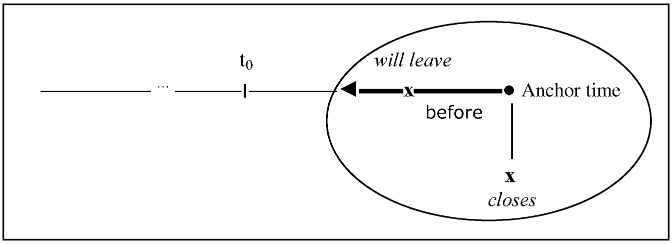

Figure 14.2. The temporal structure of *John will leave before the pub closes.*

In the above examples, the *before*-clause each time functions as a situation-time adverbial, i. e. it specifies an Adv-time which includes the situation time of the head clause. The situation time of the *before*-clause is each time temporally subordinated to (= bound by) the Anchor time by means of a relative tense.

(As to the head clause, it uses either an absolute or a relative tense form. This is not relevant to the present discussion.)

(b) Secondly, the situation time of the head clause may be contained in the Adv-time (which therefore functions as a situation-time adverbial), while the situation time of the *before*-clause is the Anchor time. (This possibility corresponds exactly to the temporal structure presented in Figure 14.1.) For example:

> The man *killed* his wife and children before he *shot* himself. *(The situation time of the head clause is included in the Adv-time. The situation time of the before-clause is the Anchor time, i. e. the terminal point of the Adv-time.)*
>
> He *was* a well respected citizen before he *killed* his wife. *(Similar, except that the situation time of the head clause now coincides with the Adv-time. This is another form of 'being contained' in the Adv-time.)*
>
> John *had left* before the pub *closed*.

14.3.2 There are also cases in which the *before*-clause functions as an orientation-time adverbial (i. e. the contained orientation time is not the situation time of the head clause but an implicit orientation time binding the situation time of the head clause). The following (not very likely) example illustrates nicely how the temporal structure may then look like:

(1) [If the National Health Service is dismantled further] some people *will be about to die* before they *get* medical treatment.

This sentence realizes the structure represented by Figure 14.3.

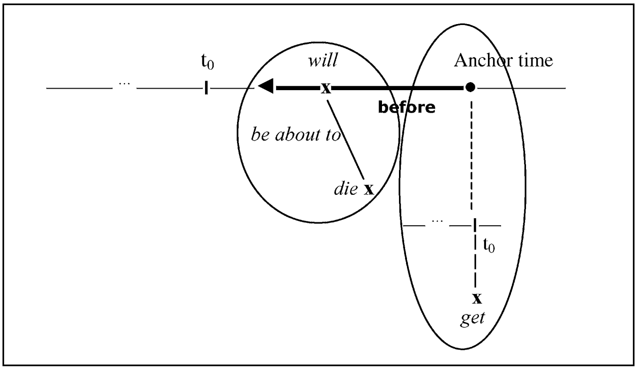

Figure 14.3. The temporal structure of *Some people will be about to die before they get medical treatment.*

Sentence (1) can be paraphrased as follows:

(1′) In the period before the time when (= at which) they get medical treatment, it will be the case that some people are about to die.

Paraphrase (1′) reveals the various temporal relations:

(a) The time referred to by *it will be the case* is the contained orientation time of the head clause.
(b) *In the period* indicates this containment relation.
(c) *Before* expresses that the Adv-time is a time span that lies before (i. e. leads up to) an Anchor time. (This 'before' relation is expressed by the conjunction, not by either of the tense forms.)
(d) The Anchor time is indicated by the second occurrence of *the time* in (1′). It remains implicit in (1).
(e) The situation time of the *before*-clause is bound by the Anchor time in terms of T-simultaneity: the Pseudo-t_0-System form *get* is used for this.
(f) The string *it will be the case that some people are about to die* in the paraphrase reflects the fact that the verb form of the head clause of (1) (*will be about to die*) is an absolute-relative tense form: it both establishes a post-present domain and expresses posteriority in it:[2] the situation time of the head clause (i. e. the time of people dying) is represented as T-posterior to the implicit contained orientation time (which coincides with the Anchor time and is the central orientation time of a post-present domain).
(g) The situation time of the head clause and the situation time of the *before*-clause are bound by different orientation times, which are the (implicit) 'central orientation times' (see 8.15) of two different post-present domains: the situation time of the head clause is bound by the implicit contained orientation time of the head clause, while the situation time of the *before*-clause is bound by the Anchor time.

The temporal structure of (1) is rather intricate, but in later sections we will discuss sentences like the following, whose temporal structures are equally, if not more, complex:

Before they had gone very far, Jill had already sprained her ankle.

Mother will have gone to bed before I have finished my homework.

---

[2] *Be about to* can be used as a 'futurish' form expressing posteriority – see 2.9.1.

14.4 The nature of past tense forms in *before*-clauses

The situation time of the *before*-clause may be T-related to the Anchor time (= the terminal point of the Adv-time, lexicalized as *the time* in the paraphrase ‘before the time that’) or may be the Anchor time itself. In the former case the *before*-clause uses a relative tense form, in the latter it uses an absolute tense form. This section provides evidence for this claim.

In one of the arguments it is noted that *before*-clauses are ‘factual at t_0’ (or ‘t_0-factual’) if they represent their situation as actualizing in the past (e. g. *John left before Bill arrived*). However, when the *before*-clause forms part of an opaque (intensional) context, it is interpreted as ‘not-yet-factual at the binding time’ (or ‘not-yet-factual at t’), i. e. as not yet a fact at the time of the situation time of the head clause (e. g. *John wanted to leave before Bill arrived*).

14.4.1 In section 14.3.1 we have stated that the situation time of the *before*-clause may be T-related to the Anchor time (= the terminal point of the Adv-time, lexicalized as *the time* in the paraphrase ‘before the time that’) or may be the Anchor time itself. In the former case the *before*-clause uses a relative tense form, in the latter it uses an absolute tense form.

The claim that a *before*-clause can use a relative tense form is confirmed by examples like the following:

> I will switch off the lights before I {*leave* / **will leave*} the house. *(Pseudo-t_0-System form expressing T-simultaneity with the Anchor time)*
>
> [I hoped that] he would switch off the lights before he {*left* / **would leave*} the house. *(Left is a relative past tense form expressing T-simultaneity with the Anchor time; would leave, which would effect ‘indirect binding’, is not grammatical.)*

At first sight it would not seem to be as easy to prove the claim that a *before*-clause can also use an absolute tense, because (for reasons explained in 10.7.2) an adverbial *before*-clause cannot normally use an Absolute Future System form:

> He will leave before the pub {**will close* / *closes*}.

However, there are some exceptions – see 14.5.2 below:

> It will be a long time before that {*will become* / *becomes*} possible.
>
> I think those creating tablet PCs need a “killer app” to run on these units before they *will be* useful. (www)
>
> [Safe housing near campus is limited.] The best housing is reserved by local students weeks before you *will arrive*. (www)
>
> Tell Steve hello for him! He will be seeing Steve again before I *will* on June 5th The Crossroads Guitar Festival. (www)

This shows that the use of an absolute tense in a *before*-clause is not a priori impossible.

As usual, the claim that a *before*-clauses can in principle use either a relative or an absolute tense form is difficult to corroborate when the verb form is in the past tense, because there is no formal difference between an absolute and a relative preterite form. In sections 14.4.2–5 we will review some evidence and apply it to the following example:

John left before Bill arrived.

We will argue that in examples like this both the head clause and the *before*-clause use an absolute tense form, i. e. that *John left before Bill arrived* has the temporal structure shown in Figure 14.4, which is determined both by the tenses and by the semantics of *before*. On the other hand, we will argue that *arrived* is a relative past tense form in *John wanted to leave before Bill arrived*.

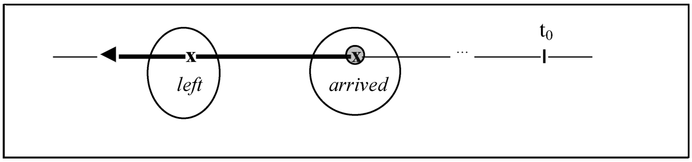

Figure 14.4. The temporal structure of *John left before Bill arrived*.

14.4.2 In a sentence like *John left before Bill arrived* not only the head clause situation but also the *before*-clause situation is represented (and interpreted) as 'FACTUAL AT t_0' (or 't_0-FACTUAL'), i. e. as a situation which did actualize in the past. In this respect this sentence differs from *John wanted to leave before Bill arrived*, in which the *before*-clause situation is not represented as a past fact but as part of a past expectation which may or may not have been fulfilled before t_0. In other words, in *John wanted to leave before Bill arrived*, the *before*-clause forms part of the OPAQUE (INTENSIONAL) context created by *want*.[3] John's leaving is therefore not represented as t_0-factual but as something

---

[3] As noted in 10.4.6, an opaque context (or 'intensional context') is one in which the reference is not to the real world but to an alternative (e. g. imaginary) world. Such a context is created by (amongst other things) 'intensional verbs' ('verbs of propositional attitude') like *want, expect, believe, think, imagine*, etc. Clauses that form part of an intensional context receive an 'opaque' ('de dicto') interpretation, i. e. their truth is not evaluated in relation to the real world but in relation to the alternative world referred to.

Clauses belonging to a nonintensional context receive a 'transparent' ('de re') interpretation, i. e. their truth is evaluated in relation to the real world. It is typical of such an interpretation that the truth value of the clause is not affected when a referring expression in the clause is replaced by an 'identical' expression (i. e. by an expression which John wanted to happen later. Whether it did actually happen or not is not expressed by this sentence. The same is true of the *before*-clause situation (Bill's arrival), which is represented (by *before*) as posterior to John's leaving. Because of this posteriority relation, Bill's arrival is interpreted as 'NOT-YET-FACTUAL AT THE BINDING TIME', i. e. as not yet a fact at the time of the situation time of the head clause (= the time of John's leaving). Note that we are not using the term 'not-yet-factual' in the sense of 'counterfactual' (which is the opposite of 't_0-factual' and means 'running counter to what is factual at t_0'). Thus, *John wanted to leave before Bill arrived* does not imply that Bill did not arrive; it just fails to imply that he did. In what follows we will simplify 'not-yet-factual at the binding time' to 'NOT-YET-FACTUAL AT T' or simply 'NOT-YET-FACTUAL'.

Since it is inherent in the structure 'A before B' that B is not yet a fact at the time of A, one might expect that all sentences consisting of a head clause and a *before*-clause represent the situation time of the *before*-clause as not-yet-factual, and therefore (a fortiori) as not t_0-factual. However, it is clear from *John left before Bill arrived* that not all *before*-clauses are not interpreted as t_0-factual. This means that there is something in *John left before Bill arrived* that supplements the natural not-yet-factual interpretation of the *before*-clause with a t_0-factual (= factual at t_0) interpretation: 'Bill had not yet arrived when John left, but he did arrive later.' Since the sentence is used out of context, the only element that can be responsible for this t_0-factual interpretation is the fact that *arrived* is an absolute tense form. If a clause uses an absolute past tense form, it T-relates its situation to t_0, not to the situation time of the head clause (nor to any other orientation time that is related to the situation time of the head clause). The use of the absolute preterite places the situation time of the *before*-clause on the time line, so that, in the absence of any indication to the contrary, it is interpreted as a past fact, i. e. as t_0-factual.

In this context, it is useful to compare the following:

(2a) John wanted to leave before Gordon arrived.

(2b) John left before Gordon arrived.

(2c) Mary {said / imagined / believed} that John had left before Gordon arrived.

(2d) Mary {said / imagined / believed} that John left before Gordon arrived.

---

with the same referent). Thus, since in the real world *the capital of France* and *Paris* have the same referent, we can replace the former by the latter in *The capital of France has ten million inhabitants* without altering the truth value of the sentence.

In sentences that receive an opaque interpretation, the replacement of a term by an 'identical' expression may affect the truth value: the sentence *Bill thinks that Paris is the capital of Spain* may be true even if *Bill thinks that the capital of France is the capital of Spain* is not true.

In (2a), the *before*-clause forms part of the intensional domain (world) created by *wanted* and represents the time of its situation (Gordon's expected arrival) as T-simultaneous with the Anchor time that is implicit in *before* (= 'before the time at which'). In this way the *before*-clause situation is not directly related to t_0. *Arrived* is therefore a relative preterite form. This, and the fact that the *before*-clause forms part of an intensional domain, entails that the *before*-clause situation (Gordon's arrival) is not represented as a past fact. Instead it is represented as a situation which, at the time of the head clause situation, was expected to actualize later. In sum, in (2a) *arrived* is a relative preterite, whose situation is not interpreted as a past fact.

When (2b) is used out of context, the *before*-clause does not form part of an intensional domain and is interpreted as t_0-factual. This is in keeping with the claim that *arrived* is now an absolute preterite form, which means that it relates its situation time directly to t_0.

Example (2c) is like (2a) in that both the *before*-clause and its head clause form part of the intensional domain created by the first clause (i. e. the matrix) and are therefore interpreted as not-yet-factual at t_0. The fact that the situation time of the head clause is now represented as T-anterior to the central TO of the temporal domain does not alter this.

Sentence (2d) differs from (2c) only in that the speaker does not incorporate the situation times of the head clause and the *before*-clause into the temporal domain established by the matrix clause but has these two clauses shift the domain: both *left* and *arrived* are absolute tense forms. However, this does not produce a t_0-factual (nonintensional, transparent) interpretation of these forms, because the head clause and the *before*-clause are anyhow not interpreted as t_0-factual (= factual at t_0) because the head clause is syntactically dependent on the intensional verb of the matrix clause.[4]

We can draw the following conclusions from the above examples:

(a) When it is within the scope of an intensional verb, a head clause is not interpreted as t_0-factual (i. e. as being a past fact), irrespective of whether it uses a relative tense, such as *had left* in (2c), or an absolute tense, such as *left* in (2d).

---

[4] In other words, in this sentence both *John left* and *Bill arrived* shift the domain (i. e. use the absolute past tense). But the t_0-factual interpretation that is normally induced by the use of the absolute preterite is overridden by the fact that the *that*-clause depends on an intensional verb which refers to a world that is different from the speaker's t_0-world. The not-yet-factual-at-t_0 reading thus persists in spite of the fact that the tense does not locate John's leaving and Bill's arrival in the temporal domain created by the intensional verb. In other words, the syntactic relation between the matrix and the *that*-clause anyhow imposes an intensional reading on the *that*-clause, even though the tense of the head clause does not.

(b) If the head clause is not interpreted as t_0-factual, neither is the *before*-clause depending on it.

(c) When not used in an intensional context, a head clause and a *before*-clause in the past tense are interpreted as t_0-factual. This is the case in (2b). A t_0-factual interpretation implies that the situation referred to is T-related to the speaker's t_0. This means that the past tense forms in (2b) are absolute preterites.

(d) A preterite in a *before*-clause can in principle be either a relative preterite or an absolute one. In the former case the tense form itself does not trigger a t_0-factual interpretation,[5] whereas in the latter case it does, unless that interpretation is ruled out by the fact that the matrix clause creates an intensional domain, as in (2d).

14.4.3 It is not easy to find further direct evidence supporting the hypothesis that a *before*-clause in English can in principle use either a relative or an absolute preterite, because there is no formal difference between these tense forms. However, indirect evidence can be derived from a cognate language, viz. Dutch. In Dutch, the two meanings that we assign to the preterite forms in English (viz. t_0-factual and not-yet-factual-at-t) can be distinguished on the basis of the fact that one of them can be expressed in an alternative way. Consider:

(3a) Jan vertrok voordat Bill *toekwam*. ('John left before Bill arrived')

(3b) Jan wou vertrekken voordat Bill *toekwam*. ('John wanted to leave before Bill arrived')

(3c) Jan wou vertrekken voordat Bill *zou toekomen*. ('John wanted to leave before Bill would arrive')

Sentence (3a) is the exact Dutch equivalent of *John left before Bill arrived*, and (3b) is the exact equivalent of *John wanted to leave before Bill arrived*. However, the latter sentence can also be translated as (3c). The reason is that Dutch allows a form of indirect binding which is ungrammatical in English: the tense structure of a Dutch sentence with a *before*-clause may be such that the situation time of the *before*-clause is directly related to the situation time of the head clause (in terms of T-posteriority). Whereas in (3b) the preterite form *toekwam* represents the situation time of the *before*-clause as T-simultaneous with the implicit Anchor time, the conditional tense form *zou toekomen* in (3c) represents the situation time of the *before*-clause as T-posterior to the situation time of the head clause (= indirect binding). In neither case is the *before*-clause situation interpreted as t_0-factual.

---

[5] Note, however, that a relative tense form is not incompatible with a factual interpretation which is triggered by the linguistic or extralinguistic context. For example:

["Did he write that letter when he was going to commit suicide?"] – "No, he wrote it long before he was going to commit suicide."

The *before*-clause in the reply sentence 'inherits' the factual interpretation of the *when*-clause in the question.

The Dutch data lend support to the claim that the past tense form *arrived* in *John wanted to leave before Bill arrived* is a relative tense form. Since indirect binding is an alternative to direct binding in Dutch, the fact that the past tense form *toekwam* in (3b) alternates with the conditional tense form *zou toekomen* in (3c) corroborates the view that the former is an instance of direct binding, i. e. a relative tense form. The claim that *toekwam* is not a relative past tense form in (3a) is then corroborated by the fact that the substitution of the relative tense form *zou toekomen* for *toekwam* is ungrammatical in this sentence: **Jan vertrok voordat Bill zou toekomen* ('John left before Bill would arrive').

In sum, the data from Dutch are consonant with the claim that an absolute preterite represents a *before*-clause situation as t_0-factual, whereas a relative tense form (irrespective of whether it is a preterite or a conditional tense form) locates the *before*-clause situation in the temporal (and intensional) domain established by the head clause or the matrix clause, and in so doing fails to represent it as t_0-factual.

14.4.4 The similarity between Dutch and English is actually stronger than has been suggested so far. Although, unlike Dutch, present-day English does not allow the use of the conditional tense in *before*-clauses that are not-yet-factual-at-t but not t_0-factual, more or less archaic English does allow the use of *should* in such *before*-clauses. This use of *should* represents a form of indirect binding:

> [I was railfanning in Lima this afternoon and took this shot of the signal bridge that guards the NS(NKP) diamond at Ford Park. I'm not sure how far back it dates, but I know it was there at least in the early '70's from photo's I've seen.] I wanted to take a picture before it *should* suddenly *disappear* like some other things recently. (www)
>
> [It was all of 8 o'clock by now and I told of my plan.] I wanted to go to the cemetery before we *should leave* for the other half of our pilgrimage. (www) *(written in 1971, but quite possibly a bit pseudo-archaic)*
>
> [When we came to understand what the gentleman meant we told him that we were very glad, for] we wanted to wake him up before he *should die* with such a misunderstanding of God's terms. (www)
>
> [I now gained on him, so much so that when I first saw the ocean he was but one day's journey in advance, and] I hoped to intercept him before *he should reach* the beach. (www) *(from Mary Shelley's 'Frankenstein')*
>
> [… knowing in what good hands I left the cause, I came away on Monday,] trusting that many posts would not pass before I *should be followed* by such very letters as these. (www) *(from Jane Austen's 'Mansfield Park')*
>
> [Where is it to end? Suppose the Bowl were increased to even 125,000,] how many years would it be before we *should have* 150,000 seats demanded? (www)

14.4.5 Further evidence, again from Dutch, can be derived from what we have called the 'Dutch test' (see 8.32). This test relies on the observation that Dutch can sometimes use the present perfect where English has to use an absolute preterite, but cannot normally use the present perfect where English uses a relative preterite. If we apply this test to *John left before Bill arrived*, we see that it can be translated not only as (3a) but also as follows:[6]

Jan *is vertrokken* voordat ik *ben aangekomen*. ('John has left before I have arrived')

Since the Dutch present perfect cannot normally be used as a relative tense, we must conclude that the present perfect in the *before*-clause is an absolute tense form, i. e. a form which shifts the domain. Given the strong similarity between the English and Dutch tense systems (especially the fact that neither language uses the present perfect to express a relation in a past or pre-present domain), this corroborates our claim that the preterite in the English counterpart of the above example should also be analysed as an absolute tense form.

14.4.6 The above conclusion is also supported by the 'represented speech test' – see 8.25. Consider the following scrap of conversation:

A. John is a doctor. And I think Bill is a doctor too.
B. Yes. As a matter of fact Bill *was* a doctor before John *was* one.

B's reply can be reported as

Mary said that Bill *had been* a doctor before John *had been* one.

The fact that both preterites of (B) can be 'backshifted' in represented speech proves that both preterites are absolute tense forms – see 8.25. (Note that *had been* cannot be an instance of indirect binding – see 9.29. *Before*-clauses do not allow indirect binding by means of a past perfect, because, unlike *when*, *before* rules out the possibility that, if both clauses use the past perfect, the *before*-clause situation is interpreted as W-simultaneous with the head clause situation.)

14.4.7 In sum, there appears to be sufficient evidence that a preterite form in a *before*-clause can be an absolute tense form, in which case the situation it refers to is represented as a past fact.

B. The tense system if the *before*-clause is a situation-time adverbial

As noted in 14.2.2, adverbial *before*-clauses are nearly always used as situation-time adverbials. An investigation of the possible tense combinations in the head clause and the *before*-clause is necessary because different tense patterns often entail different meanings (which have to do with different degrees and kinds of factuality). As will be made clear, adverbial *before*-clauses functioning as situation-time adverbials can appear in four major tense configurations (apart from some others mentioned further on). They are exemplified by the following sentences, all of which can be used to describe the same state of affairs, but all of which are interpreted differently:

---

[6] This does not mean that the two Dutch translations are interchangeable in any context. The two are subject to slightly different conditions of use, but this is irrelevant to the argument that is presented here.

> Jim arrived before the others left.
>
> Jim arrived before the others had left.
>
> Jim had arrived before the others had left.
>
> Jim had arrived before the others left.

The first sentence (with an absolute tense in both clauses) will be discussed in 14.5. The second (with an absolute tense in the head clause and a relative one in the *before*-clause) will be examined in 14.6. The third sentence (with a relative tense in both clauses) will be discussed in 14.7. The fourth example (with a relative tense in the head clause and an absolute one in the *before*-clause) will be investigated in 14.8. In all four sections, related tense patterns will be investigated too.

14.5 Absolute tense forms in both *before*-clause and head clause

14.5.1 It is possible for both the head clause and the *before*-clause to use the absolute past tense. In 14.4.2–6 we have adduced evidence that this tense structure is realized in sentences like *John left before Bill arrived*. This type of sentence is typically used when the speaker wants to express no more than that two situations actualized in a particular order ('A before B') in the past. The claim that both tense forms are absolute tense forms is in keeping with the fact that both situations are interpreted as t_0-factual. The temporal structure of *John left before Bill arrived* is represented by Figure 14.4 in section 14.4.1.

14.5.2 As we have seen, it is not normally possible for a *before*-clause to use an 'Absolute Future System form' (see 10.1) establishing a post-present domain:

> Bill will leave before the pub {*closes* / **will close*}.

However, there are a few exceptions to this rule. These constitute further cases in which an absolute tense form is used in both the *before*-clause and the head clause.

(a) Firstly, there are situations involving a head clause and a *before*-clause in which the temporal relation between the two situations seems to be less important than the logical relation: the head clause expresses a kind of (pre)condition for the actualization of the *before*-clause situation, and the *before*-clause is the head clause (expressing *q*) of what is semantically an ‘if p, then q’ conditional. In this case the use of the future tense in the *before*-clause is quite normal:

> You will need to register as a user of the Discussion Groups before you *will be* able to post any messages to the discussion. (www) *(= ‘{Unless you have registered / If you haven’t yet registered} as a user of the Discussion Groups, you will not be able to post any messages to the discussion.’)*
>
> [I may have to take a long term disability.] So I will have to get well before I *will* ever *be* ready for work. (www) *(= ‘I won’t be ready for work as long as I haven’t got well.’; ‘Getting well is a precondition for being ready for work.’)*
>
> Financial aid awards are typically paid to you by checks and your US bank account will have to be established before you *will be* able to cash a check. (www)
>
> Please note that students who fail the OS proficiency exam or the EE-450 placement exam twice will be required to take the corresponding undergraduate course (and receive a grade of B or better) before they *will be given* permission to take CSCI-551. (www)
>
> I think those creating tablet PCs need a “killer app” to run on these units before they *will be* useful. (www)

(b) A second case in which a *before*-clause can use the future tense is illustrated by the following:

> It is just a matter of time before the trainee schools *will disappear* altogether from the scene. (LOB)
>
> There is still an hour left before the others *will be* here.
>
> [In his preliminary report (...) Sir Hugh Cairns stresses that] several years must elapse before he *will know* whether the improvements (...) are permanent. (TCIE)

In this type of sentence the head clause is in the present tense. It does not describe a situation whose time is specified by the *before*-clause referring to the post-present but indicates the distance between t_0 and a post-present orientation time identified by the *before*-clause. The possibility of using the future tense in the *before*-clause appears to have less to do with the fact that the *before*-clause is not really a time-specifying adverbial than with the fact that the head clause does not explicitly establish a post-present domain. This appears from the fact that if the head clause is interpreted as implicitly establishing a post-present domain, the *before*-clause can use the present tense (as Pseudo-t_0-System form):

> It is just a matter of time before the trainee schools *disappear* altogether from the scene.
>
> There is still an hour left before the others *are* here.

> [We, in the trade, feel that many people think that this is a new version of the whole Bible. It is, of course, only the New Testament:] it will be many years before the Old Testament, and the Apocrypha *are* available. (LOB)
>
> [In his preliminary report (...) sir Hugh Cairns stresses that] several years must elapse before he *knows* whether the improvements (...) are permanent.

In many such examples, there is no clear difference of meaning between the present tense and the future tense. In some cases, however, the present tense suggests that the speaker feels certain that the *before*-clause situation will actualize. Thus, in the last example, there is an assumption that Sir Hugh will know something about the permanency of the improvements, whereas, if *will know* is used, Sir Hugh may never know anything about the improvements.

Even if the head clause explicitly establishes a post-present domain, the *before*-clause can still use the Absolute Future System instead of the Pseudo-t_0-System – see section (f) below:

> It *will be* some time before the others {arrive / *will arrive*}.
>
> [If they return they may try out for the rank again,] but it *will take* a week before they *will be allowed* to hold rank. (www)
>
> When he calls the towing service, he is told it *will be* three hours before they *will arrive*. (www)

(c) A third case in which a *before*-clause can (and this time has to) use the future tense is illustrated by the following:

> [Safe housing near campus is limited.] The best housing is reserved by local students weeks before you *will arrive*. (www)

This is interpreted as 'You will arrive at a date by which the best housing is (every year) already reserved by local students.' The use of the future tense in the *before*-clause is again due to the fact that the *before*-clause has to express post-present time reference because the head clause does not explicitly establish a post-present domain. This time the head clause cannot be interpreted as doing so implicitly – it refers to a habitual present situation – so that the present tense (as Pseudo-t_0-System form) is not available as an alternative. The sentence

> The best housing is reserved by local students weeks before you *arrive*.

invites a quite different interpretation, in which the *you* is impersonal and both verbs have habitual present meaning. It might also be acceptable if *arrive* expresses an 'arranged future' meaning (see 3.6) and in doing so establishes a post-present domain.

(d) A fourth possibility for *will* to appear in a *before*-clause is when the latter is not really a time-specifying adverbial clause but expresses the same meaning as *than help her* does in *I'd rather die than help her*:

> I'll die before I'*ll help* her! *(This is a dramatic way of saying that the speaker is determined not to do what is mentioned in the* before*-clause.)*

As a matter of fact, in this type of *before*-clause the speaker can choose between '*will* + infinitive' and the present tense (as Pseudo-t_0-System form):

> She'll die before she'*ll tell* you anything. (www)
>
> She'll die before she *tells* you anything. (www)
>
> I'll sink before I'*ll surrender*. (www)
>
> [Louisiana has one woman on death row, Antoinette Frank, and the warden says, no, he just couldn't execute a woman,] that he'll quit before he *does* that. (www)
>
> [These rubies are worth a Sultan's treasury.] I'll die before I'*ll put* them *back*. (www)
>
> I'll die before I *use* 'they' as a singular pronoun. (www)
>
> I'll emigrate before I'*ll pay* more rent. (www)
>
> I know his line: he'll die before he'*ll take* advice. (www)
>
> She'll die before she *gives* you any information. (www)
>
> ["Tell me your father's reply."] – "He'll see you burn before he'*ll give* you anything!" (www)

However, it should be noted that if *will* is used, it is quite probably the modal auxiliary *will* expressing willingness rather than the future tense auxiliary *will*. Pieces of evidence supporting this are the fact that the *before*-clauses, though affirmative in form, all express a refusal and the fact that we have not found similar examples with *before I shall …* .

(e) Fifthly, examples can be found of *before*-clauses using *will* in code (i. e. *will* is a pro-form for a verb form mentioned before):

> As to why I said I was going to be her matron of honor, I will be saying my vows before she *will*, so I will techinically [sic] be married before she *will*. (www)
>
> All of the eyes will be on Se Ri and whoever is leading, but I will be playing the holes before they *will* and I think that is a good thing. (www)
>
> Tell Steve hello for him! He will be seeing Steve again before I *will* on June 5th The Crossroads Guitar Festival. (www)

In such examples *will* can be replaced by a Pseudo-t_0-form, viz. a present tense form of *do*.

> I will be playing the holes before they *do*.

(f) The future tense can easily be found (as an alternative to the present tense) in *before*-clauses depending on a head clause measuring the interval between t_0 and the post-present actualization of the *before*-clause situation:

> [Once the cows are able to return home, Zeman said] it will be six months before they *will be* able to produce their normal milk supply. (www)

> Generally, it will only take minutes before you *will receive* this email, [but delivery could be delayed by circumstances beyond our control]. (www)
>
> [Researchers are developing a vaccine but] it will take some time before it *will be* ready for human use. (www)
>
> [What this means for me is that] I will have until around September before I *will need* to find my own place. (www)
>
> It will be another week before you *will be* able to return to full physical activity. (www)

In all these examples the Pseudo-t_0-Sysem can be used in the *before*-clause as an alternative to the Absolute Future System.

(g) The following is similar, except that the period measured does not start from t_0.

> He will be 46 years old before he *will be* eligible for parole. (www)

14.5.3 In 14.5.1 and 14.5.2 we have discussed the cases in which both the head clause and the *before*-clause use an absolute past tense or an absolute future tense, respectively. Let us now concentrate on the present perfect.

At first sight it would seem that there is no possibility of using the present perfect in both the head clause and the *before*-clause, because the presence of a time-specifying adverbial as a rule prevents the use of the present perfect in the head clause: we cannot normally use the present perfect to refer to a (single) bygone situation if the temporal location of that situation is specified by a time-specifying adverbial (such as an adverbial *before*-clause). Thus, with reference to a single occasion, we cannot replace *Bill left before the match ended* by any of the following:

> *Bill has left before the match ended.
>
> *Bill has left before the match has ended.
>
> *Bill left before the match has ended.

However, there are some cases in which the present perfect *is* used both in the head clause and in the *before*-clause.

(a) A sentence like

> Bill has left before John has arrived.

is fine if it means ‘It has happened on occasion that Bill has left before John has arrived’. This is similar to the use of *I* HAVE *got up at three!* (discussed in 5.11.1), which is fine in contexts like the following:

> [“I got up at three this morning. YOU’ve never done that in your life.” – “You’re mistaken.] I HAVE got up at three. [Several times.”]

As noted in 5.11.1, *at three* does not indicate an Adv-time which contains the situation time but belongs to the description of the situation itself: 'The situation of getting up at 3 a.m. has actualized on occasion'.

(b) *Bill has left before John has arrived* is also impeccable if it is the 'Special Present Time-sphere System' version of *Bill had left before John had arrived* (discussed in 14.7). As noted in 3.2—10, this substitution of present time-sphere tenses for past time-sphere tenses is possible in stretches of 'historic present', stage directions, summaries, captions, etc. The following are attested examples:

> [As it passes from Her hands into mine the crystal again becomes water which, along with minerals and jewels, slip through my fingers and flow back into being the ocean. I bring my hand down to the surface and lift my fingers to my lips. I suck in the water and] before I *have finished* swallowing, it *has become* part of me, absorbed into my body as if ... (www) *(historic present)*
>
> [We see a family with a seemingly over-protective mom.] Before *we've blinked*, big sis *has rebelled* and *left*, [bequeathing her record collection to little brother who's only just found out he's actually a year younger than he believed.] (www) *(from the summary of a film)*
>
> [I remove as much as I can with a net, but] almost before I'*ve turned around* it *has reproduced* itself again in even greater quantities. (www) *(historic present)*
>
> [The basic concept is so much more like the punch-line of a bad joke than the premise for a three act drama that I wasn't at all sure what to expect from this play. In retrospect I suppose this is the point.] Before we'*ve* even *begun*, Manfridi *has taken* us out of the realm of what-we-take-seriously. [We are given no framework of normality by which to measure the comic, and grotesque, or the plain abnormal. There is nothing, in fact, to tell us what, and what not, to laugh at.] (www)

(c) As noted in 9.15, absolute tenses are used to refer to subsituations that form part of a present repetitive habit. The following sentence uses the present perfect (as indefinite perfect) in both its clauses because each subsituation of the present habitual hypersituation is represented as belonging to a pre-present period:

> As a rule the janitor *has unlocked* the front door before the first employees *have arrived*.

(d) In 14.6.5 it will be noted that *before*-clauses can use a perfect tense to underline their 'not-yet-factual' meaning, i. e. to focus on the fact that the situation of the *before*-clause has not yet actualized when the situation of the head clause actualizes. We have already discussed some examples in 14.4.2, but these were examples with the past perfect in the *before*-clause. However, the same phenomenon can be observed in the present time-sphere. In that case the message may be ‘X has already actualized, though Y is not actualizing yet’. This is expressed as ‘X *has* Verb-*ed before* Y {Verb-*s* / *is* Verb-*ing*}’:

> *(from a text about ‘England’s little rainforest’)* But before anyone *has* a chance to protect it, one of deputy prime minister John Prescott’s new development quangoes *has bought* it and *received* outline planning permission to destroy the most important bit as part of the Thames Gateway expansion of London. (www)

In most cases, however, the message is ‘X has already actualized, though Y has not actualized yet’. This is expressed as ‘X *has* Verb-*ed before* Y *has* Verb-*ed*’. The reference may be to an individual occasion as well as to a habit. For example:

> The Bush campaign also *has begun* defining Kerry before he *has defined* himself. (www)
>
> [It really bothers me when people act as if] someone *has been proven* guilty before they’*ve* even *gone* to trial. (www)
>
> However, even before it *has been released*, it *has* already *become* (as I write) a finalist for the Microsoft TechEd Europe 2004 (Amsterdam) Best of Show awards. (www)
>
> [... oh and it’s proven that the Bible is true.] The Bible *has predicted* things way before they’*ve* ever *happened*. [Oh ya, it’s been proven – scientifically.] (www)
>
> [She goes out of her way to anticipate what might be needed and] in almost every circumstance, before you’*ve asked*, Charles Etta *has made* it happen. (www)
>
> But even before Christmas *has arrived*, Cadbury *has begun* thinking about the key Easter period, [and it is already preparing the re-launch of its perennial UK favourite, the Cadbury’s Creme Egg.] (www)
>
> [Naturally, it becomes difficult for the mystic to live in the world where his language is not understood, while he understands the language of all others.] Before we *have spoken* to the mystic he *has heard* us speak. Before we *have expressed* our thought he *has read* it. Before we *have expressed* our feeling he *has felt* it. [That is why a mystic can be in communication with another person better than one could ever imagine ...] (www)
>
> Before we’*ve had* time to turn round he’*s given* himself carte blanche to come poking about in our cistern whenever he feels like it. (CRES)
>
> Blessed is the one who *has won* the contest before it *has* even *begun*! (www)

14.5.4 In 14.5.1, 14.5.2 and 14.5.3 we have discussed the cases in which both the head clause and the *before*-clause use an absolute past tense, an absolute future tense or an absolute present perfect, respectively. Let us now concentrate on the present tense. A sentence in which both the head clause and the *before*-clause use the present tense (as absolute tense) can be grammatical in the ‘Special Present Time-sphere System’ (see 3.2–10), e. g. as a stage direction, in a summary or as an instance of the historic present:

> Bill *waits* a couple of seconds before he *answers*.

Such a sentence is also grammatical on a habitual present interpretation:

> When you ask him a question, Bill *waits* a couple of seconds before he *answers*.

We have not found any other kinds of sentence in which the head clause and the *before*-clause both use the present tense as absolute tense. Sentences like the following only ostensibly form another type:

> I *am* just *checking* the oil before we *take off*.

In this case the present tense form in the *before*-clause is not an absolute tense form but a Pseudo-t_0-System form. (If it were an absolute tense form, it would have to be an instance of a present tense representing an 'arranged future' — see 3.8—9 — but in that case the form *are taking off* would have to be possible too, which is not the case.) Even though there is a shift of domain here from a present domain to a post-present one, the *before*-clause cannot use the Absolute Future System (*will take off*): it has to use a present tense form (as Pseudo-t_0-System form). This means that the situation time of the *before*-clause cannot be the central orientation time of the post-present domain but must be represented as T-simultaneous with the Anchor time, which functions as implicit central orientation time of the domain. (The interpretation of this Anchor time as lying in the post-present is due to the use of *before* in combination with a head clause in the present tense.)

14.5.5 In sections 14.5.1—4 we have checked whether it is possible for the head clause and the *before*-clause to use the same absolute tense. Using different absolute tenses as a rule appears to be impossible:

> Gordon *left* before the Robinsons {*arrived* / **will arrive* / **arrive* / **have arrived*}.

There are only a couple of exceptions to this rule. One is when the sentence is used to express the not-yet-factual reading '[X has already actualized, though] Y is not actualizing yet', as in *But before anyone has a chance to protect it, one of deputy prime minister John Prescott's new development quangoes has bought it* — see 14.5.3. Another concerns the Special Present Time-sphere System:

> Gordon *has left* before the Robinsons *arrive*. (*only acceptable in the Special Present Time-sphere System if the before-clause is understood as referring to* t_0, *or when the sentence means 'it has happened on occasion ...'.*)

14.5.6 In conclusion, apart from instances of the 'Special Present Time-sphere System', a couple of exceptional uses of the future tense in *before*-clauses referring to the post-present (see 14.5.2) and the use of the present perfect in not-yet-factual *before*-clauses (see 14.5.3), the only case in which both the *before*-clause and the head clause can use an absolute tense is when both use the absolute preterite, as in *Bill arrived before I did*. In that case both situations referred to are represented as t_0-factual. Neither clause uses a tense relating its situation time to the situation time of the other clause, because both establish a past domain of their own. However, the temporal W-relation between the situation times is indicated by *before* – see Figure 14.4 in section 14.4.1.

14.6 Absolute tense in the head clause and relative tense in the *before*-clause

14.6.1 In 14.5 we have discussed the possibilities of using an absolute tense in both the head clause and the *before*-clause in cases where the latter functions as a situation-time adverbial (i. e. if the *before*-clause establishes an Adv-time which contains the situation time of the head clause). In the present section we consider structures with a *before*-clause used as a situation-time adverbial in which the head clause uses an absolute tense while the *before*-clause uses a relative one.

14.6.2 Sometimes when the head clause uses an absolute tense, or is an infinitive clause forming part of a head clause using an absolute tense, the *before*-clause functioning as situation-time adverbial can show temporal subordination. There are two important conditions for this. First, the head clause has to form part of an intensional (opaque) context or establish one (for example, by the use of the future tense – see 8.24.3). Secondly, the situation time of the *before*-clause must be T-related to the implicit Anchor time and not to the situation time of the head clause. The following are some examples, which show that the relation between the situation time of the *before*-clause and the Anchor time may be that of T-simultaneity or T-anteriority, but hardly T-posteriority. (Note that the *before*-clause is meant to specify the time of the speaking, not the time of the wanting to speak.)

> I wanted to speak to Mary before she *moved* into her new flat.
>
> I wanted to speak to Mary before she *had moved* into her new flat.
>
> ??I wanted to speak to Mary before she *was going to move* into her new flat. *(This is hardly acceptable as a means of saying 'I wanted to speak to Mary before the time when she was going to move into her new flat'.)*

It should be noted that in none of these examples is the posteriority relation implied by *before* expressed by the tense form. Sentences in which the tense form does express this relation are ungrammatical:

> *I wanted to speak to Mary before she *would move* into her new flat.
>
> *I wanted to speak to Mary before she *would have moved* into her new flat.
>
> *I wanted to speak to Mary before she *would be going to move* into her new flat.

These sentences are ungrammatical because the situation time of the *before*-clause is T-related to the situation time of the head clause rather than to the Anchor time. This kind of indirect binding is not allowed in *before*-clauses. (However, it is pointed out in 14.4.4 that, in archaic English, *should* can be found in the *before*-clause of such sentences. This is in keeping with our claim that in *I wanted to speak to Mary before she moved into her new flat* the form *moved* is a relative tense form, expressing simultaneity with the Anchor time, and not an absolute tense form.)

The following are similar examples in which the intensional domain is established by the future tense form in the head clause itself:

I will speak to Mary before she {*moves* / **will move*} into her new flat.

I will speak to Mary before she {*has moved* / **will have moved*} into her new flat.

I will speak to Mary before she {*??is going to move* / **will be going to move*} into her new flat.

14.6.3 In *I wanted to speak to Mary before she had moved into her new flat* and *I will speak to Mary before she has moved into her new flat*, the reason why the speaker chooses to express T-anteriority in the *before*-clause is that he wants to refer to the resultant state produced by the *before*-clause situation rather than to the situation itself. In addition, the choice of a perfect tense form promotes a not-yet-factual reading (see 14.6.5 below).

In other sentences the reason for expressing T-anteriority may be that the speaker wants to convey a continuative reading of the *before*-clause, i. e. that he wants to represent the *before*-clause situation as continuing at (and possibly beyond) the Anchor time:

Mary wanted to move into the flat before she *had been* pregnant for longer than five months.

Mary will move into the flat before she *has been* pregnant for longer than five months.

Note that in examples like these, 'before X' means 'before the Anchor time', i. e. 'before the temporal point when the *before*-clause situation has lasted for five months', and not 'before the beginning of the *before*-clause situation'.

14.6.4 The analysis (in terms of an implicit Anchor time) proposed here accords with the observation that in many cases we can substitute *by the time that* for *before* without changing the tenses. There is little difference of meaning between the following sentences:

Mary intends to be married before she moves into her new flat.

Mary intends to be married by the time she moves into her new flat.

In the phrase *by the time that*, the NP *the time* makes explicit the Anchor time which remains implicit when we use the conjunction *before* (= 'before the time that'). In the second example, the Pseudo-t_0-System form *moves* clearly relates the situation time of the *that*-clause to *the time*, not to the situation time of the head clause. The fact that *before*-clauses use exactly the same verb form therefore confirms our hypothesis that the same temporal relation is expressed.

14.6.5 One of the consequences of relating the situation time of the *before*-clause to the implicit Anchor time (rather than using an absolute tense form) is that the *before*-clause situation is not represented as being a fact at t_0. The only element of interpretation is that the *before*-clause situation is something which was (or is) expected to take place at some time later than the head clause situation, which means that the *before*-clause situation is represented as NOT-YET-FACTUAL (i. e. as 'still nonfactual at the situation time of the head clause' – see 14.4.2), i. e. that the *before*-clause situation has not yet actualized at the time of the head clause situation.

(4a) Bill intends to go home before the play is over.
(4b) I want to leave before the police {arrive / have arrived}.
(4c) The thief will run away before the police {arrive / have arrived}.

In (4a–b) the head clause forms part of an intensional domain; in (4c) it creates the intensional domain itself by using the future tense (which creates an intensional world – see 8.24.3). In each case the *before*-clause locates its situation time in the temporal domain established by the head clause because it is to be interpreted as part of the intensional domain – see 10.4.6. It does so by relating the situation time of the *before*-clause to the Anchor time. In (4b) and (4c), *arrive* and *have arrived* express T-simultaneity and T-anteriority, respectively. In the latter case the speaker is more concerned with the state resulting from the arrival than with the arrival itself. The result is anyhow a not-yet-factual reading: 'A before B' is interpreted as 'A when not yet B'. Thus (4b) can be paraphrased as follows: 'I want to leave at a time when the police {do not arrive / have not arrived (= are not there)} yet'. The sense of not-yet-factuality is stronger when *have arrived* is used than when simultaneity is expressed. At least, while *I want to leave before the police arrive* strongly implies that I expect the police to arrive, *I want to leave before the police have arrived* tends to draw the hearer's attention away from this implication. That is, with dynamic verbs, expressing T-anteriority instead of T-simultaneity is a conventional device to abstract away from the expected actualization and bring not-yet-factuality into focus.

14.6.6 The not-yet-factual reading 'The *before*-clause situation is not yet a fact at the situation time of the head clause' can also be expressed in non-intensional contexts:

Mary recognized the visitor before he *had entered* the house.

Mary recognized the visitor before he *was* in the house.

[When the men started fighting] Bill hurriedly left the pub before the police *arrived*.

The first two examples receive the same interpretations (respectively) as the following:

Mary recognized the visitor, and when she did he had not yet entered the house.

Mary recognized the visitor, and when she did he was not yet in the house.

The third example is ambiguous between a t_0-factual and a purely not-yet-factual reading of the *before*-clause. In the former case the speaker is taken to assert that the police arrived. In the latter case there is an implicit intensional domain, viz. a world of expectation, and the *before*-clause explains why Bill left *hurriedly*: he left in a hurry because he expected the police to arrive soon and wanted to have left before that. The use of *hurriedly* thus promotes the not-yet-factual interpretation: ‘A before B’ means ‘A at a time when not yet B’. Whether A did or did not actualize after A is left vague: it is irrelevant to the truth of the sentence (on the purely not-yet-factual interpretation) whether the police actually arrived or not.

Because sentences like the above three leave it vague whether the situation of the not-yet-factual *before*-clause eventually actualized or not, they can occur in a context making it clear that the situation did not actualize at all, as in the first two examples below, or did eventually actualize, as in the third example:

I saw him before he *had seen* me. So I had time to conceal myself.

The letter was destroyed before I *had read* it.

He read the paper before I *had read* it. I did not read it until I was back from work.

In these examples it is the linguistic context that makes it clear whether the *before*-clause situation ever actualized or not. The purely not-yet-factual *before*-clause itself does not tell us anything about this. It just represents its situation time as T-anterior to the Anchor time, which is itself interpreted as W-posterior to the situation time of the head clause (because this is the contained orientation time included in the Adv-time and preceding the Anchor time). It follows that the *before*-clause situation is interpreted as still nonfactual at the situation time of the head clause.

14.6.7 Apart from the context, pragmatic knowledge can also induce a factual or counterfactual reading of the not-yet-factual *before*-clause. Thus, out of context, the not-yet-factual *before*-clause of the first example below is interpreted as counterfactual, whereas that of the second is not:

The sergeant removed the fuse before the bomb exploded.

The sergeant took off his helmet before the bomb exploded.

The interpretation of such sentences happens in accordance with the following pragmatic principle:

> When both the head clause and the not-yet-factual *before*-clause are in the past tense, the *before*-clause is given a counterfactual interpretation if the head clause situation is represented as t_0-factual and its actualization is seen as a necessary and sufficient condition to prevent the *before*-clause situation from actualizing.

In other words, *The sergeant removed the fuse before the bomb exploded* yields a counterfactual interpretation because the following conditional is pragmatically plausible:

> If the sergeant had not removed the fuse, the bomb would have exploded (later).

By contrast, *The sergeant took off his helmet before the bomb exploded* does not yield a counterfactual interpretation because the following conditional is not plausible:

> If the sergeant had not taken off his helmet, the bomb would have exploded (later).

The above pragmatic principle is only one of a pair. The second is the following:

> A not-yet-factual adverbial *before*-clause in the past tense receives a t_0-factual interpretation if the head clause situation is represented as t_0-factual and its actualization is seen as a necessary and sufficient condition for the *before*-clause situation to actualize.

In accordance with this principle, the *before*-clauses in the following examples are interpreted as t_0-factual:

> We had to bribe the secretary before we were accepted as members of the club.
>
> They had had to kill him before they could get at his money.

This type of sentence is special in that the head clause expresses necessity and does not allow the insertion of a measure phrase (e. g. *long*) before the *before*-clause. As a rule, t_0-factual *before*-clauses do allow such an insertion – see 14.6.13. The fact that a measure phrase is not allowed here suggests that the *before*-clause is not primarily interpreted as a time adverbial but rather as a conditional clause. (This would mean that the idea of temporal precedence has been metaphorically extended to the idea of logical precedence: the head clause and the *before*-clause express something like condition and consequent, or cause and effect.)

14.6.8 When the *before*-clause represents its situation as nonstatic (= dynamic) and is interpreted as t_0-counterfactual for pragmatic reasons (and not because of the verb form) — see 14.6.7 — it can use a verb form expressing simultaneity or a verb form expressing anteriority:[7]

(5a) The letter was destroyed before I *read* it.

(5b) The letter was destroyed before I *had read* it.

Actually, there is a double difference of meaning between such sentences. To begin with, (5a) is only possible if it means 'The letter was destroyed *as a precaution against my reading it*'. This aspect of interpretation is not conveyed by (5b), which has an extensional *before*-clause rather than an intensional one. The second meaning difference between (5a) and (5b) is brought out by the following paraphrases:

(a′) The letter was destroyed before the time when it would have been the case that I read it (if it had not been destroyed).

(b′) The letter was destroyed before the time when it would have been the case that I had (already) read it (if it had not been destroyed).

In other words, the destruction of the letter is located before the (imaginary) time of my reading it in (5a) and before the (equally imaginary) time of my already having read it in (5b). However, this difference of meaning is blurred by the fact that the *before*-clause situation is anyhow interpreted as counterfactual: if there is no actualization, then there is neither a time at which the situation actualizes nor a time at which it has already actualized. Still, there is a reason why even in this case the past perfect is often used instead of the preterite: the past tense by itself suggests a t_0-factual reading, and it takes considerable processing effort on the part of the hearer to conclude that this t_0-factual reading does not fit in with the context, which requires a t_0-counterfactual reading. The past perfect, by contrast, brings the not-yet-factual reading into focus (see 14.6.5 above); it is a small step from 'not-yet-factual at t' to 'not-yet-factual at t_0', and an easy further step to 'counterfactual at t_0' if such a reading is imposed by the context.

14.6.9 When the *before*-clause uses a stative verb and is interpreted as t_0-counterfactual for pragmatic reasons and not because of the verb form (because this is not a conditional perfect form), there is a difference of meaning between a verb form expressing T-simultaneity and one expressing T-anteriority. Whereas the first two of the following examples (with a nonstative verb) only show the two meaning differences discussed in the previous section (in connection with (5a—b), the latter two clearly yield different not-yet-factual interpretations:

---

[7] In this case the Adv-time-bounding orientation time is interpreted as the time when the *before*-clause situation would have actualized if it had not been prevented by the actualization of the head clause situation.

$^{?}$The company closed down before John *finished* his apprenticeship. *(Unlike (5a), this sentence is questionable because its natural interpretation – 'The company closed down as a precaution against John's finishing his apprenticeship' – is pragmatically unlikely.)*

The company closed down before John *had finished* his apprenticeship.

The company closed down before John *felt* at home in the job.

The company closed down before John *had* (ever) *felt* at home in the job. *(Had felt is interpreted as a 'perfect of experience' – see 5.16.1: the before-clause means 'before John had ever had the experience of feeling at home in his job'.)*

This difference results from the fact that in a *before*-clause, the past perfect of a stative verb (e. g. *had felt*) can only receive a 'perfect of experience' reading (see 5.13.1), whereas the past perfect of a nonstative verb (e. g. *had finished*) invites a resultative reading.

14.6.10 When the context or our shared pragmatic knowledge of the world does not induce a t_0-factual or t_0-counterfactual interpretation, the interpretation of a *before*-clause with a nonstative VP will be as follows. Other things being equal, a past perfect will be interpreted as explicitly representing the situation as not-yet-factual, whereas a past tense will be interpreted as representing the situation as t_0-factual. Thus, *John read the letter before I had read it* merely expresses that I had not (yet) read the letter when John read it; it does not say anything about whether or not I did read it afterwards. By contrast, *John read the letter before I read it* suggests that I did read the letter, but only after John had read it first.

In a post-present domain, there is a similar difference of interpretation between a present tense in the *before*-clause and a present perfect (of a nonstative verb): in *John will read the letter before Mary has read it*, the *before*-clause is interpreted as not-yet-factual, i. e. as expressing no more than that John will read the letter at a time when Mary has not read it yet. By contrast, *John will read the letter before Mary reads it* suggests that Mary too will read the letter, but only after John has done so. (This implicature can be overridden by the pragmatics of the context, as in *Mary will catch John before he hits the floor.*)

In sum, when the verb of the *before*-clause is nonstative and neither the context nor pragmatic knowledge induces a t_0-factual or t_0-counterfactual interpretation, the *before*-clause uses a tense form expressing T-simultaneity with the Anchor time to suggest a factual interpretation and a form expressing T-anteriority to emphasize the not-yet-factual interpretation without suggesting a factual or counterfactual reading.

When the anteriority form is used, the distance between the Anchor time (to which the situation time of the *before*-clause is represented as T-anterior) and the situation time of the *before*-clause is felt to be minimal: the Anchor time lies right after the terminal point of the situation of the *before*-clause.

Because of this, the Anchor time is felt to be the time when the state immediately resulting from the *before*-clause situation is holding. Thus, *John left before Bill had gone inside* is normally interpreted as 'John left before Bill was inside'. However, apart from this 'immediate result reading', the sentence may also allow a 'perfect of experience' interpretation: 'John left before Bill had ever been inside'. This is, however, not the unmarked interpretation. It comes to the fore only if a word like *ever* is added to the *before*-clause: *John went in before Bill had ever gone inside*.

14.6.11 Summarizing sections 14.6.5–10, we can say that (out of context) the intended reading of the *before*-clause determines the choice of tense (past tense or past perfect) in the *before*-clause in the following ways:

(a) Only the past tense can suggest a t_0-factual reading.
(b) Only the past perfect can express the combination of a not-yet-factual reading and a perfect of experience reading.
(c) The combination of a not-yet-factual reading and an immediate result reading can only be expressed by the past tense if the verb phrase is stative and by the past perfect if the verb phrase is nonstative (dynamic).

It follows that (out of context)[8] a past tense in a *before*-clause automatically receives a t_0-factual reading (under the conditions specified, i. e. when neither the context nor pragmatic knowledge enforces a particular reading) when the verb is nonstative, but not when it is stative.

14.6.12 The use of the past perfect in a nonstative *before*-clause does not trigger a not-yet-factual reading if *before* is immediately preceded by a negator:

> [When I repulsed him he attempted to rape me.] I fought him off but *not* before he'*d stolen* my handbag and several articles of clothing. (WTBS)
>
> He came to see me at five every day, but *never* before he'*d called* on his Mum first.

These examples show that, if the head clause is t_0-factual, the use of *not before* or *never before* anyhow triggers a t_0-factual reading of the *before*-clause. The reason is that *not before* and *never before* are interpreted as 'only after' and 'always after', respectively:

> I fought him off, but {not before / only after} he'd stolen my handbag.
>
> He came to see me at five every day, but {never before / always after} he'd called on his Mum first.

As pointed out in 14.19.1, *after*-clauses in the past perfect are always t_0-factual if they depend on a t_0-factual head clause.

---

[8] The *before*-clause can never be interpreted as t_0-factual if it forms part of an intensional context – see 14.4.2.

14.6.13 If the head clause is t_0-factual, the addition of a measure phrase to the *before*-clause enforces a t_0-factual interpretation of this clause, irrespective of whether it uses the past tense or the past perfect:

I read the letter *long* before Bill destroyed it.

I read the letter *long* before Bill had destroyed it.

In the latter example the measure phrase indicates the temporal distance between the situation time of the head clause and the implicit Anchor time to which the situation time of the *before*-clause is T-anterior. In both examples, the measure phrase *long* triggers a t_0-factual interpretation of the *before*-clause (without cancelling the not-yet-factual reading, i. e. the idea that the *before*-clause situation was not yet factual at the time of the head clause situation). The t_0-factual interpretation follows from the fact that it is difficult to measure the distance between a t_0-factual situation and a situation which is not t_0-factual but virtual. (See, however, the next section.)

14.6.14 The only case in which a measure phrase indicates the distance between a t_0-factual situation and a virtual one is when the *before*-clause is t_0-counterfactual. This meaning can only be expressed by the conditional perfect:

Max removed the fuse from the bomb thirty-seven seconds before it *would have exploded*.

We drove off the public car park a short time before an attendant *would have given* us a ticket.

With one year before he *would have graduated*, he left Transylvania, accepting an appointment at the Military Academy at West Point. (www)

Note that the conditional perfect is used here as a modal form (rather than as a tense form expressing temporal relations only). Its use is made possible by the fact that the *before*-clause implies a counterfactual condition:

Max removed the fuse from the bomb thirty-seven seconds before it would have exploded (if the fuse had not been removed).

We drove off the public car park a short time before an attendant checking the cars would have given us a ticket (if we had had left our car parked there).

Team members testified that from the initial indications of the fires being set, the Davidians had an estimated 20 to 25 minutes to safely exit the building before they *would have been overcome* by the smoke and heat. (www) *(implicit condition: 'if they had not left the building')*

Like conditional *if*-clauses, temporal clauses can use the tense forms that are normally used in the head clause of a counterfactual conditional sentence if they are interpreted in terms of an overt or covert counterfactual condition.[9]

---

[9] The following sentence illustrates this in connection with *if*-clauses: *If John would have succeeded [if he had tried], why should I not succeed?*

14.6.15 It should be clear from the preceding sections that if the *before*-clause (functioning as situation-time adverbial) uses the past perfect (which is a relative tense form) and the head clause uses the absolute past tense,[10] there are three possibilities as far as the actualization of the *before*-clause situation is concerned.

(a) Firstly, the *before*-clause situation, which is still nonfactual at the time of the head clause situation, may be interpreted as actualizing later.[11] In this case the head clause too must be t_0-factual.

There was an explosion just before the fire started.

Because of its t_0-factual interpretation, this type of *before*-clause can be preceded by a measure phrase (here, *just*).

(b) Secondly, there are cases in which the *before*-clause situation does not actualize at all because its actualization is prevented by the actualization of the head clause situation. In this case the interpretation of the *before*-clause is t_0-counterfactual. If the counterfactual reading is imposed by the pragmatics of the context, the *before*-clause can use either the past tense or the past perfect. If the counterfactual reading is not imposed by the pragmatics of the context, only the use of the conditional perfect can provoke the desired t_0-counterfactual reading:

I took the milk off the fire before it *boiled over. (t_0-counterfactual for pragmatic reasons)*

She burnt the letter before I *had read* it. *(idem)*

Bill resigned only a couple of days before we *would have fired* him.

Such sentences allow a measure phrase only if the *before*-clause uses the conditional perfect. (Conversely, the conditional perfect can only be used in this kind of sentence if there is a measure phrase.)[12] If the *before*-clause is in the conditional perfect, it functions like the head clause of a conditional sentence with a counterfactual conditional clause:

---

[10] Remember that in the present section – 14.6 – we are concerned with the possibilities of using an absolute tense in the head clause and a relative tense in the *before*-clause.

[11] The fact that the *before*-clause situation is not yet a fact at the time that the head clause situation actualizes entails that even this kind of *before*-clause, whose situation is interpreted as actualizing later, allows the use of nonassertive words (negative polarity items):

He had to wait a long time before *anybody lifted a finger* to help him.

I had lived in the house for three years before I got acquainted with *any* of the neighbours.

In examples like these, the use of nonassertive words stresses the idea that after the head clause situation actualized (or began to actualize) there was a long period during which the expected *before*-clause situation did not actualize.

[12] We have found two examples in which there is no measure phrase:

President Bush thanked congress for shooting down the bill before HE *WOULD HAVE HAD* TO VETO IT!!! [Who do you really think is for the people?] (www)

I telephoned again early next morning before he *would have gone* to work. (BNC)

> I drove my car out of the car-park five minutes before the attendant *would have given* me a fine. *(implicit condition: 'if I had left my car there')*

(c) Thirdly, it sometimes remains unclear whether or not the *before*-clause situation, which has not actualized yet at the time of the head clause situation, ever actualizes. In this case all that we know of the *before*-clause situation is that it is not-yet-factual at the time of the head clause situation. This type of *before*-clause does not allow the use of a measure phrase (e. g. *long*) in front of *before*.

> I read the letter before Mary had read it.

Under this heading we must also mention the cases in which the head clause situation is performed in order to avoid something that is expected to be a consequence of the actualization of the *before*-clause situation, if that should become reality:[13]

> Fred left the country before the capital fell into the hands of the guerrillas.

This sentence is ambiguous. The *before*-clause is read as t_0-factual if the context shows that it is extensional, i. e. to be read from the current speaker's point of view. On the other hand, if the context shows that the *before*-clause is part of Fred's thinking at the time that he left the capital – i. e. if the *before*-clause is intensional and to be interpreted from a point of view that is not the current speaker's – then the sentence is vague as to whether the capital ever fell into the hands of the guerillas, because it is future from a past point of view.

14.7 Relative tense in head clause and relative tense in *before*-clause

14.7.1 In 14.5 we have discussed the possibilities of using an absolute tense in both the head clause and the *before*-clause in sentences where the *before*-clause functions as a situation-time adverbial (i. e. if the *before*-clause establishes an Adv-time which contains the situation time of the head clause). In 14.6 we have examined structures with a *before*-clause (used as a situation-time adverbial) in which the head clause uses an absolute tense while the *before*-clause uses a relative one. In the present section we discuss sentences with a *before*-clause (used as a situation-time adverbial) in which both the head clause and the *before*-clause use a relative tense.

---

[13] This kind of interpretation can be induced by the use of *any* in the *before*-clause:
I left before anybody came.

14.7.2 If a relative tense can be used in a *before*-clause functioning as situation-time adverbial and depending on a head clause with an absolute tense, as in the following (a) examples, a relative tense will also be possible in the *before*-clause of the corresponding sentence in which the head clause uses a relative tense, as in the following (b) examples:

(6a) [I do not doubt that] I *will be* at home before it *begins* to rain.

(6b) [I did not doubt that] I *would be* at home before it *began* to rain.

(7a) [I feel sure] I *will be* at home before it *has started* to rain.

(7b) [I felt sure] I *would be* at home before it *had started* to rain.

(8a) [Bill is the first to know about the accident, because] he *has read* the paper before I *have read* it.

(8b) [Bill was the first to know about the accident, because] he *had read* the paper before I *had read* it.

(9a) [Bill was the first to know about the accident, because] he *read* the paper before I *had read* it.

(9b) [Bill was the first to know about the accident, because] he *had read* the paper before I *had read* it.

As before, the *before*-clauses function as situation-time adverbials in these examples: the situation time of the head clause is contained in the Adv-time. The situation time of the *before*-clause is T-related to the implicit Anchor time. In (6b), the *before*-clause uses the preterite to express T-simultaneity, while in (7b) it uses the past perfect to express T-anteriority. In the latter case the speaker wants to refer to the state resulting from the situation rather than to the situation itself. In (8b) and (9b) the *before*-clause uses the past perfect to trigger an interpretation that is both not-yet-factual and not t_0-factual. (If the preterite were used, it would be interpreted as an absolute preterite expressing a t_0-factual meaning.) (Note that 'not t_0-factual' here means that the situation may or may not actualize later. So it does not mean the same thing as t_0-counterfactual.)

In each of the (b) examples, both clauses use a relative tense.[14] The implications of the relative tense in these *before*-clauses are the same as those in the *before*-clauses of the corresponding (a) examples, which were discussed in 14.6. For example, the *before*-clause (which is by its very nature not-yet-factual at t) is each time interpreted as t_0-nonfactual (= as not t_0-factual, as not referring to a situation that is treated as a past fact). In (6b) and (7b) this is due to the fact that the *before*-clause forms part of an intensional domain, whereas in (8b) and (9b) it is due to the use of the past perfect. (It is the past tense that would invite a t_0-factual reading.) However, as shown by the examples discussed in 14.6, a t_0-factual reading can be enforced (if the head clause is not intensional but t_0-factual) by the presence of a measure phrase preceding the *before*-clause:

---

[14] There is no example with a relative past tense in the head clause because a head clause using a relative past tense form cannot normally support a *before*-clause referring to a not-yet-factual actualization. Compare:

I realized that he *recognized* me. *(The unmarked interpretation is for* *recognized* *to express simultaneity, i. e. to be a relative preterite.)*

I realized that he *recognized* me before he had recognized my friend. *(Recognized can hardly be interpreted as expressing T-simultaneity. Its normal interpretation is as an absolute preterite, establishing a past domain which is W-anterior to the domain established by realized.)*

> [Bill was the first to know about the accident, because] he had read the paper *long* before I had read it. *(t_0-factual reading of the before-clause)*

However, a measure phrase does not induce a t_0-factual reading if the head clause belongs to an intensional domain:

> [I did not doubt that] I *would be* at home long before it *started* to rain. *(No t_0-factual reading of the before-clause because the head clause forms part of an intensional world. We cannot conclude from this sentence that the speaker actually got home nor that it actually started to rain long after he got home. A t_0-factual interpretation requires that the situation is viewed from the speaker's t_0, which is not the case if the clause describing the situation forms part of an intensional context.)*

14.7.3 In some cases, both the head clause and the *before*-clause (functioning as a situation-time adverbial) use the past perfect. Let us go somewhat more fully into that possibility. Consider:

> ["John is a doctor. And I think Bill is a doctor too." – "Yes.] As a matter of fact Bill *was* a doctor before John *was* one."
>
> Mary said that Bill *had been* a doctor before John *had been* a doctor.

We have already discussed the first example (in section 14.4.6) and come to the conclusion that both preterite forms are absolute tense forms. Because of this – see 8.25 – it is predictable that both can be 'backshifted' in represented speech and the second example shows that this prediction is borne out. Figures 14.5 and 14.6 represent the temporal structures of the two examples, respectively.

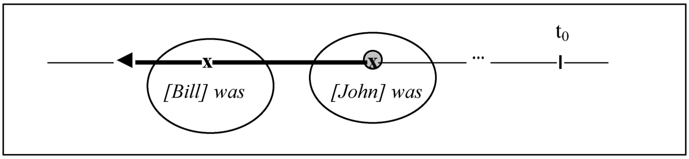

Figure 14.5. The temporal structure of *Bill was a doctor before John was one.*

The following is another example realizing the structure shown in Figure 14.6 (except that the central orientation time of the domain is now implicit):

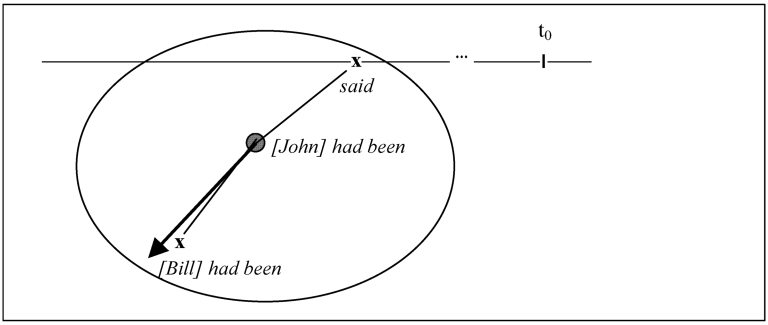

Figure 14.6. The temporal structure of *Mary said that Bill had been a doctor before John had been a doctor.*

> Before he *had met* Barbara, Adam's sexual experience *had stopped* short at holding the sticky hands of convent girls in the cinema. (BM)

14.7.4 When the speaker uses the past perfect in the *before*-clause to underline the not-yet-factual reading, he may use an anteriority form in the head clause as a device to suggest that the head clause situation actualized earlier than might have been expected:

> Before I had finished speaking, she *had* already *shut* the door in my face.

Instead of expressing 'Before the *before*-clause situation had actualized, the head clause situation did', the speaker expresses 'Before the *before*-clause situation had actualized, the head clause situation had already actualized'. In doing so he stresses that the head clause situation actualized sooner than might have been expected.

14.7.5 If the situation time of its head clause belongs to a past domain, a *before*-clause using the present tense as Pseudo-t$_0$-System form indirectly establishes a post-present domain. This is only possible if the actualization of the *before*-clause situation is expected to be W-posterior to t$_0$. In that case the *before*-clause can shift the domain to the post-present (more specifically, establish a post-present domain in an 'indirect' way — see 9.16):

> Tina said that she would leave before Sol *returns*. (Comrie 1986: 296)

> ["Aren't the children too tiring for you? Isn't it time Carrie took them away?" — "Don't worry.] I asked Carrie just now if she would take them away before I *am* too tired [and said I'll give her a sign when I am]."

14.7.6 In the following examples, the two relative tenses are Pseudo-t$_0$-System forms:

> [For the moment he refuses every kind of treatment. I will be glad if] he *is* willing to go to hospital before he *is* half-dead.

> I will be glad if my son *is* already *feeling* somewhat better before he *has attended* half of the prescribed therapy sessions.

> [A patient admitted to hospital in pursuance of an application for admission for assessment may be detained for a period not exceeding 28 days beginning with the day on which he is admitted, but shall not be detained after the expiration of that period unless] before it *has expired* he *has become* liable to be detained by virtue of a subsequent application, order or direction under the following provisions of this Act. (www) *(= 'unless he has become liable … before it has expired')*

14.7.7 Another case in which both the head clause and the *before*-clause use a relative tense is illustrated by the following:

> The thief *will have left* the building before the police {*arrive* / *have arrived*}.

This is special only in that the tense of the head clause is not a pure relative tense but an 'absolute-relative' one – see 2.47.

14.7.8 In section 14.5.2.(f), we have pointed out the existence of examples like the following:

> It will be another week before you *will be* able to return to full physical activity. (www)

The past time-zone counterpart of such sentences uses two relative tense forms:

> [People said that] without her humour and skill it *would have been* a long time before women *would have been given* the vote. (www)

14.7.9 A final case in which both clauses use a relative tense would seem to be exemplified by the following:

> This hawk [had no chance of survival on its own, but] *would have suffered* for many days before death *would have come* from dehydration and starvation. (www)

It should be noted, however, that the conditional perfect is not used as a tense form here (expressing no more than temporal relations) but is used twice as a modal form expressing counterfactuality. This is not a type of sentence, then, in which both the head clause and the *before*-clause use a relative tense form.

14.8 Relative tense in head clause and absolute tense in *before*-clause

In 14.5 we have discussed the use of absolute tenses in both head clause and *before*-clause if the *before*-clause functions as a situation-time adverbial (i. e. if it establishes an Adv-time which contains the situation time of the head clause). In 14.6 and 14.7 we have considered structures of the type 'absolute tense in the head clause + relative tense in the *before*-clause' and 'relative tense in the head clause + relative tense in the *before*-clause', respectively. In this section we will continue examining structures with a *before*-clause used as a situation-time adverbial, but this time we will focus on the cases in which the head clause uses a relative tense while the *before*-clause uses an absolute tense.

14.8.1 One kind of sentence which arguably combines a head clause in a relative tense and a *before*-clause (functioning as a situation-time adverbial) in an absolute tense is exemplified by sentences like *He had left before I arrived*, whose temporal structure could then be represented by Figure 14.7. On this analysis, the situation time of the head clause, which is T-anterior to the central orientation time of a past domain, is contained in the Adv-time established by *before*, whose Anchor time is the situation time of the *before*-clause, which functions as central orientation time of the domain. It follows that *arrived* is an absolute preterite form. (This is in keeping with what has been argued in 14.4.2—5.) This analysis correctly predicts that *before*-clause situation will be interpreted as t_0-factual because the speaker locates it in the past by means of an absolute preterite. (The head clause situation is also interpreted as t_0-factual, because what the speaker represents as anterior to a t_0-factual situation is automatically also t_0-factual.)

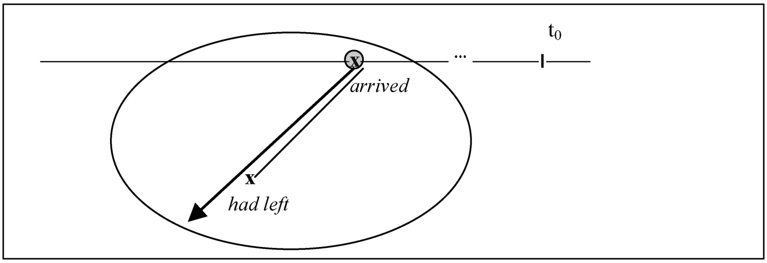

Figure 14.7. Temporal structure 1 of *He had left before I arrived.*

It should be noted, though, that *arrived* in *He had left before I arrived* can in theory also be analysed as a relative preterite, representing its situation time as T-simultaneous with the implicit Anchor time, which is interpreted as W-simultaneous with the (equally implicit) central orientation time of the past domain. This analysis is represented in Figure 14.8.

In what follows we will work with analysis 1. There is no clear evidence for or against either of the analyses, and which of them is assumed is irrelevant to interpretation, because T-simultaneity has been defined as strict coincidence (see 8.3), so that on both analyses the situation time of *arrived* coincides with the Anchor time. Because it is irrelevant to interpretation which of the two analyses we adopt, we may as well adopt the structurally simplest one, which is the analysis in which *arrived* is treated as an absolute preterite form.

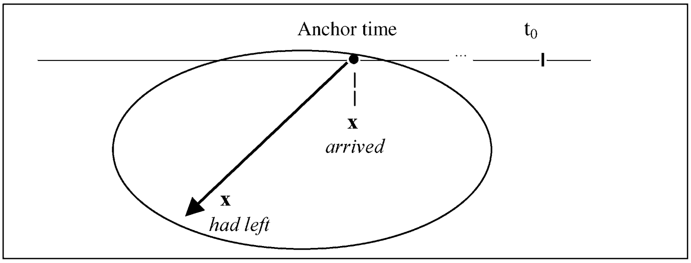

Figure 14.8. Temporal structure 2 of *He had left before I arrived.*

14.8.2 The analysis which we adopt is in keeping with the fact that the normal interpretation of *John had left before Bill arrived* is not (a) but (b):

(a) At some time before Bill's arrival it was the case that John had [already] left.

(b) At the time of Bill's arrival it was the case that John had [already] left.

There are two anteriority relations involved in (a): 'John's leaving was anterior to a time anterior to Bill's arrival'. The first anteriority relation is expressed by *had left*, the second by *before*. This complex temporal structure can be expressed in a grammatical sentence only if there are two adverbials measuring the length of the time spans corresponding with the two anteriority relations: *Three days before Bill arrived John had already left {a week earlier / for a week}*. As is clear from this paraphrase, the situation time of the head clause is T-anterior to the contained orientation time, which is interpreted as included in the Adv-time established by the *before*-clause. This implies that the *before*-clause is used as an orientation-time adverbial: the contained orientation time is not the situation time of the head clause but another orientation time to which the situation time of the head clause is T-anterior. Because the present section (viz. section 14) is concerned with *before*-clauses used as situation-time adverbials, we will not go into reading (a) any further here. It has been dealt with in section 14.10.3.

By contrast, there is only one anteriority relation expressed in (b), which paraphrases the normal interpretation of *John had left before Bill arrived*: 'John's leaving was anterior to Bill's arrival.' However, this anteriority relation is expressed twice, viz. both by *had left* and by *before*. This means that the contained orientation time (viz. the situation time of the head clause) is included in the Adv-time and, because it is punctual, does not reach up to the Anchor time. It follows that, as far as the temporal W-interpretation is concerned, there is little difference between (b) and the way we interpret the following:

John had left when Bill arrived. *(= 'At the time of Bill's arrival, John had already left')*

John left before Bill arrived. *(= 'John left before the time of Bill's arrival')*

The temporal structures of these sentences are represented in Figures 14.9 and 14.10.

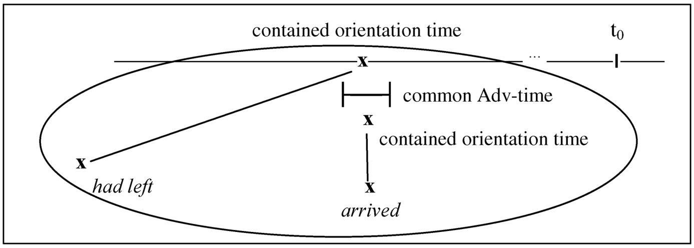

Figure 14.9. The temporal structure of *John had left when Bill arrived.*

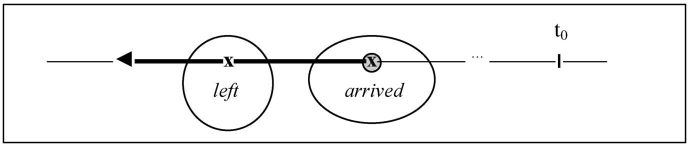

Figure 14.10. The temporal structure of *John left before Bill arrived.*

If we use *when* instead of *before*, the anteriority relation between John's leaving and Bill's arrival is expressed only once: by the past perfect *had left* in *John had left when Bill arrived*, and by *before* in *John left before Bill arrived.* The two constructions yield a slightly different interpretation. Whereas *John had left when Bill arrived* stresses the fact that John was no longer there when Bill arrived, *John left before Bill arrived* stresses the temporal order of the situations: 'A happened before B'. In other words, the use of the past perfect in *John had left when Bill arrived* suggests a resultative interpretation,[15] whereas the use of *before* and two absolute past tense forms in *John left before Bill arrived* emphasizes the chronological order of the situations. When interpreted as 'At the time of Bill's arrival it was the case that John had (already) left', the sentence *John had left before Bill arrived* combines the past perfect of *John had left when Bill arrived* and the *before* of *John left before Bill arrived.* This has as a result that both aspects of meaning (resultativeness + emphasis on the chronological order) are present at the same time. As noted above, *John had left before Bill arrived* then arguably realizes the following temporal structure (= analysis 1) – see Figure 14.7 in section 14.8.1:

---

[15] In examples like these, in which the W-anteriority relation is expressed twice, the past perfect may sometimes receive a continuative rather than resultative interpretation:

John had been in the house for several minutes before he heard someone approach.

In this case the use of the past perfect is obligatory in the head clause. The choice of *before* rather than *when* results in a certain emphasis on the idea of not-yet-factuality-at-t ('not yet B at A'), which might suggest that the *before*-clause situation actualized later than might have been expected.

> The situation time of the *before*-clause is the Anchor time and is the central orientation time of the past domain (established by *arrived*). The situation time of the head clause is the contained orientation time, and is represented (by *had left*) as T-anterior to the central orientation time.

14.8.3 When the reference is to the post-present, the *before*-clause has to use the Pseudo-t_0-System. That is, the speaker has to use a construction in which the head clause indirectly establishes the post-present domain (by means of a future perfect, which represents the situation time of the head clause as anterior to the implicit central orientation time) and represent the situation time of the *before*-clause as T-simultaneous with the Anchor time (functioning as implicit central orientation time of the domain):

> John {*will have left* / **has left*} before Bill {*arrives* / **will arrive*}. (*Has left is meant to be read as a Pseudo-t_0-System form.)*
>
> Gordon {*will have visited* / **has visited*} the cathedral before Bryan {*goes* / **will go*} to the town hall. *(similar)*
>
> He *will have been living* there for a long time before everybody *accepts* him.

This is in keeping with the general rule that reference to the post-present in an adverbial time clause requires the use of the Pseudo-t_0-System rather than the Absolute Future System – see 10.7.2.

14.9 Summary of section B

Sections 14.5–8 have made it clear that adverbial *before*-clauses functioning as situation-time adverbials basically allow three major tense configurations (apart from some others not repeated here). They are exemplified by the following sentences, which can all be used to describe the same state of affairs but are interpreted in subtly different ways:

> Jim left before Bill arrived.
>
> Jim left before Bill had arrived.
>
> Jim had left before Bill arrived.

14.9.1 The first possibility is for the speaker to represent both situations as t_0-factual by using two absolute past tense forms:

> Jim *left* before Bill *arrived*.

In such sentences the speaker just reports that two situations actualized in a particular order. The head clause situation is not interpreted as continuative and there is no resultative implication. The two absolute tense forms establish separate past domains. The temporal W-relation between the situation times is exclusively expressed by *before*. Both situations are interpreted as t_0-factual, i. e. as past facts.

Because we cannot normally use the Absolute Future System in an adverbial *before*-clause, a similar use of two tense forms establishing separate domains is not possible if the reference is to the post-present:

> Jim *will leave* before Bill {*leaves* / **will leave*}.

14.9.2 In the second possibility, illustrated by *Jim left before Bill had arrived*, the speaker represents the head clause situation as t_0-factual (by using an absolute preterite) and represents the *before*-clause situation as not-yet-factual at the time of the head clause situation by using the past perfect. In doing so the speaker leaves it vague whether the *before*-clause situation eventually actualized (= became t_0-factual) or not:

> Jim left before Bill *had arrived. (= 'Jim left; Bill had not arrived when Jim left')*

The head clause is interpreted as t_0-factual because it uses an absolute preterite. The situation time of the *before*-clause is represented as T-anterior to the Anchor time.

When the reference is to the post-present, the tense of the head clause also establishes the domain, but it is not interpreted as t_0-factual, because the post-present is by definition not-yet-factual-at-t_0.

> Jim *will leave* before Bill *has arrived. (Has arrived is a Pseudo-t_0-System form expressing T-anteriority to the implicit Anchor time.)*

14.9.3 The third possibility is for the speaker to represent the *before*-clause situation as t_0-factual by means of the absolute past tense and to represent the head clause situation as t_0-factual by representing its situation time as T-anterior to the central orientation time of the past domain:

> Jim had left before Bill arrived.
>
> He had been living there for many years before everyone accepted him.

When the reference is to the post-present, the head clause uses the future perfect to establish the domain and locate its situation time anterior to the central orientation time. The *before*-clause must represent its situation time as T-simultaneous with the implicit Anchor time, which is interpreted as coinciding with the central orientation time:

> Jim will have left before Bill arrives. *(The before-clause uses the present tense as Pseudo-t_0-System form. Its situation is expected to actualize but it is still nonfactual at t_0.)*
>
> He will have been living there for a long time before everybody accepts him. *(idem)*

C. The tense system if the *before*-clause is an orientation-time adverbial

14.10 Using a *before*-clause as orientation-time adverbial

14.10.1 A *before*-clause functions as an orientation-time adverbial when the Adv-time which it establishes specifies ('contains') an orientation time (from the tense structure of the head clause) other than the situation time of the head clause, in other words when the situation time of the head clause is not the contained orientation time but is represented as T-anterior or T-posterior to the contained orientation time.

14.10.2 As noted in 14.2.2, a *before*-clause can only exceptionally be used as an orientation-time adverbial. However, the following is an example in which the head clause represents its situation time as T-posterior to the contained orientation time:

> [It is not only recently that John has been saying that he is going to retire.] He *was* already *going to retire* before he came to live here three years ago. *(free indirect speech)*

In this case the verb form expressing T-posteriority must be of the 'prospective' type: *was going to* is fine, but *would* is not. We have noted the same restriction on similar examples using a *when*-clause – see 13.8.2.

Reference to the post-present requires an absolute-relative form with *will be about to* (seldom: *will be going to*) in the head clause:

> [I predict that] John *will* already *be about to go* to bed before we arrive at his house.

14.10.3 Consider also the following:

> John had seen a doctor two days before he died.

Out of context, this sentence allows two interpretations. The default reading is that the situation time of the head clause is located two days before the situation time of the *before*-clause. This interpretation is much the same as that of *John saw a doctor two days before he died*. It implies that the W-anteriority relation 'The situation time of the head clause lies before the situation time of the *before*-clause' is expressed simultaneously by *before* and by the past perfect form *had been*. However, on this default reading, the *before*-clause is used as a situation-time adverbial rather than as an orientation-time adverbial. It is only on the secondary reading that the *before*-clause of the above example is taken to be an orientation-time adverbial: 'Two days before he died it was the case that John had already seen a doctor'. In fact, this reading only comes to the fore if the head clause involves *already* and/or follows the *before*-clause. The function of the measure phrase is then to specify the distance between the contained orientation time of the head clause and the W-posterior Anchor time:

> Two days before he died, John had (already) seen a doctor.

There are two anteriority relations involved here: 'John's seeing a doctor was anterior to a time anterior to his death'. The first anteriority relation is expressed by *had seen*, the second by *before*. This complex temporal structure can be made explicit by the use of adverbials measuring the length of the time spans corresponding with the two anteriority relations. Consider:

> *Two days* before he died Bill had (already) seen a doctor *a week earlier*.

As is clear from this paraphrase, the situation time of the head clause is T-anterior to the contained orientation time: it lies a week before the latter. (The contained orientation time itself lies two days before the Anchor time, which is the time of Bill's death.) This means that the *before*-clause is used as an orientation-time adverbial: it does not contain the situation time of the head clause but another orientation time to which the situation time of the head clause is T-anterior.

Further examples:

> *Long* before he had gone to a psychiatrist Bill had *already* attempted to commit suicide twice.
>
> ?*Long* before he had gone to see a psychiatrist Bill was *already* going to commit suicide.
>
> *Long* before she was going to have her baby, Mary had *already* decided to put it up for adoption. *(= on the interpretation 'Long before she was in labour ...')*

The following are similar examples, but with reference to the post-present:

> *Two years* before he is sixty-five Bill will *already* have been retired for exactly three months.
>
> *Two years* before he is sixty-five Bill will *already* be going to retire.

In these examples, the head clause situation is T-anterior to an implicit orientation time contained in the Adv-time specified by the *before*-clause. That contained orientation time is said to lie two years before the implicit central orientation time of a post-present domain that is established by the absolute-relative tense form in the head clause (viz. *will have been retired* and *will be going to retire*). The situation time of the *before*-clause is represented as T-simultaneous with this implicit central orientation time by the Pseudo-t_0-System form *is*. The situation time of the head clause is represented as T-anterior or T-posterior to the implicit central orientation time.

D. Factual, not-yet-factual and counterfactual *before*-clauses

In sections 14.11 to 14.13 we review the factors (including the choice of tense) that induce a factual, counterfactual or not-yet-factual (respectively) reading of a *before*-clause.

In this section we will bring together in a systematic way the various observations about not-yet-factuality, factuality and counterfactuality that are scattered over the previous sections. We will also make some new observations.

14.11 Factual interpretations of *before*-clauses

14.11.1 In section 8.26.1 it was pointed out that a time-specifying adverbial cannot refer to t_0 on a single situation reading: **I am working at five o'clock* cannot be used to combine the ideas 'I am (now) working' and 'It's (now) 5 o'clock' in one clause. The same is true of **I am working before six o'clock*. Naturally, the restriction also applies to clauses functioning as time-specifying adverbials:

I am now working (*when it is 5 o'clock).

I am now working (*before it is 6 o'clock).

There are some exceptions to this rule, which we will point out first, so that they can be eliminated from the subsequent discussion that is based on the above rule.

(a) Time-specifying adverbials can be used in sentences expressing a present habit:

I am always at work {at 5 o'clock / when it is 5 o'clock / before 5 o'clock / before it is 5 o'clock}.

She always checks the oil in the car before she sets off on a long journey.

(b) Time-specifying adverbials can also combine with present tense forms that do not really refer to the present but form part of the 'Special Present Time-sphere System' (see 3.2–11), e. g. in historic speech, summaries, etc.

(from the summary of a novel) At eight p.m. John is still working, [though it's high time for him to go home.]

(c) There is no problem either if the adverbial forms part of the description of the situation that is located at t_0:

[You always say I'm never at work at 7 a.m. Well, I'm at work now, and it's precisely 7 a.m.] So I am working at 7 a.m. today.

See 5.11.1 for the discussion of a similar use of the present perfect with an adverbial like *at 7 p.m.*

(d) The present tense can also combine with adverbial time clauses that have a nontemporal connotation.

> [“What are you doing?”] – “I’m cleaning the house after your friends have left.” *(connotation: ‘Your friends have made a mess of the house.’)*
>
> [“What are you doing?”] “You’re watching TV when you should really be studying!” *(contrastive connotation)*
>
> [“What are you doing?”] – “I’m making up the beds before all the guests arrive.” *(connotation: ‘The imminent arrival of the guests gives me some extra work’, or something similar)*
>
> How many foul balls can you hit before you are considered out? (www) *(resultative connotation)*
>
> You’re giving up before you’ve even tried! (BNC) *(atemporal interpretation)*

(e) A head clause in the present tense can combine with a ‘narrative’ (see 13.1.3) *before*-clause. (As explained in 14.11.4, a narrative *before*-clause ‘pushes forward the action’ instead of establishing an Adv-time.)

> [To have the house redecorated would be all right if it was our house,] but we are renting at the moment before we go back to Australia. (adapted from www)

However, barring the above exceptions (a)–(e), a *before*-clause cannot locate its situation time at t_0. Barring the same exceptions, it cannot locate it in the pre-present either:

> *I’ve been working before it is 5 o’clock (now). *(continuative perfect reading)*
>
> *This painting has taken me three months before it is ready. *(constitution reading)*

Moreover, a *before*-clause in the past tense cannot combine with a head clause using an indefinite present perfect, because such a *before*-clause is a ‘past-zone adverbial’ and therefore incompatible with an indefinite perfect interpretation of the head clause (see 12.6.1):

> I {saw / *have seen} him before he entered the church.

Furthermore, a *before*-clause that is to receive a factual (= t_0-factual) interpretation cannot be located in a post-present domain, because the post-present is by definition not-yet-factual-at-t_0.

It follows from all this that it is only in past domains that a *before*-clause can be interpreted as t_0-factual. In what follows we will therefore only consider *before*-clauses combining with a head clause in one of the past time-sphere tenses.

14.11.2 We have argued that in examples like *He left the island before I arrived*, both *left* and *arrived* are absolute preterites, which each establish a past domain of their own. The temporal relation between the two domains is only expressed by *before*. In the temporal structure created by *before*, the situation time of the head clause functions as the contained orientation time and the situation time of the *before*-clause functions as the Anchor time. See Figure 14.10 in section 14.8.2.

Since both clauses establish a past domain by the use of an absolute tense, they both represent their situation as t_0-factual (= factual at t_0). In other words, this type of sentence is used to express that two situations actualized (became a fact) in the past and that they did so in a particular temporal order (indicated by *before* only). The same reading is invited if the head clause uses the past perfect, in which case the temporal order is expressed both by *before* and by the tense: *He had left the island before I arrived*. (Unlike the past tense, the past perfect can be chosen in order to convey that the anterior situation was somehow relevant at the past binding orientation time, e. g. because it produced a resultant state, or in order to express a continuative interpretation, as in *He had been living with Carrie for years before he found out she was a kleptomaniac*.)

14.11.3 Apart from the above types of factually interpreted temporal structures, there are a few special sentence structures in which the *before*-clause (in the past tense) is interpreted as t_0-factual (at least, when the sentence is used out of context, as in the previous examples). One such structure is the type referred to in 14.6.7 above and illustrated by sentences like *We had to force the lock before we could open the door*. Here the factual interpretation results from the application of the following principle:

> A *before*-clause in the past tense receives a t_0-factual interpretation if the head clause situation is factual and its actualization is seen as a necessary and sufficient condition for the *before*-clause situation to actualize.

This type of sentence is special in that it does not allow the insertion of a measure phrase (e. g. *long*) before the *before*-clause. As a rule, factual *before*-clauses do allow such an insertion – see 14.6.13. The fact that a measure phrase is not allowed here may be a sign that the *before*-clause is not primarily interpreted as a time-specifying adverbial but that the sentence as a whole is read as a kind of conditional sentence. This would mean that the idea of temporal precedence has been metaphorically extended to the idea of logical precedence: the head clause and the *before*-clause express something like condition and consequent, or cause and effect. (This is also in keeping with the fact that in this pattern the head clause normally precedes the *before*-clause.)

14.11.4 A second special type in which a *before*-clause in the past tense can be interpreted as a t_0-factual *before*-clause is when the *before*-clause is not a time-specifying adverbial but functions as a NARRATIVE *BEFORE*-CLAUSE. As noted in 5.25.2, a 'narrative' time clause pushes forward the action instead of functioning as a time-specifying adverbial (establishing an Adv-time). Narrative *when*-clauses (e.g. *I was just going to leave when the telephone rang*) were discussed in section 13.1.3. The following are some examples of narrative *before*-clauses (which, just like narrative *when*-clauses, use an absolute tense form):

> Instead of entering the house at once he *waited* some time before he *pushed* the key into the lock.[16]
>
> [When they reached the porch] they both *stood* panting for a moment, before the old man *said*: "I'll take off me boots." (LOB)
>
> He *was* hardly in the house before the storm *broke*.
>
> I *was* just *going to say* that before you *went* "Psssst". (BAXT)
>
> We *had* hardly *gotten* into the Jacuzzi before we *were* in the bedroom. (www)
>
> Her infidelity *had spanned* the late summer and most of the autumn before she *began* to realize that any affair was just as fraught with risk as marriage was. (SOA)

In the following example the speaker uses the past perfect instead of an absolute past tense:

> He had only time to glimpse her face, before she *had gone up* the north aisle. (www)

By referring to the resultant state rather than to the action producing it, the speaker emphasizes the swiftness of 'her' completing the action of going up the north aisle.

It should be noted, however, that a narrative *before*-clause does not always have a t_0-factual meaning when it follows *it would (not) be long* or it *was (not) going to be long*. If it does, it can use either the absolute past tense or the conditional tense (as an equivalent to factual *was* / *were to*, as in *Ten years later Bill* {*was to* / *would*} be *the richest man in town* – see 9.6.7). If it does not have a t_0-factual meaning but merely refers to an anticipated situation (as in free indirect speech), it normally uses a relative past tense form:

> [The transition from stage to gym may seem unlikely, but Louise Dench, a ballet teacher from Coventry, believes that it was inevitable. "Well it's happened with boxing and salsa,] so many things get turned into exercise videos and classes it *wasn't going to be* long before it *happened* with ballet. [I mean, it is one of the most demanding forms of exercise."] (www) *(absolute preterite; t_0-factual interpretation)*
>
> [The family of three Sarus cranes had been flying for a long time now and the baby was definitely tired.] However, it *wasn't going to be* long before they *would arrive* at the destination of their annual migration, Sultanpur National Park. [As they

---

[16] Because a narrative *before*-clause is t_0-factual, the form *pushed* is an absolute tense form. This is confirmed by the 'represented speech test' (see 8.25): *He said that instead of entering the house at once he had waited some time before he had pushed the key into the lock.*

> passed over the crowded cities below, their sharp eyes hunted for signs of the soothing green reflections of the lake that greeted them every year. This year, it was not to be. There, before them, stood small pools of water instead.] (www) *(The t_0-factual sentences following the* *before-clause confirm the t_0-factuality of the before-clause.)*
>
> [I was still running 6:20 miles, but I was struggling and breathing hard.] It *wasn't going to be* long before I *started* to crash. (www) *(anticipated situation; relative past tense; no t_0-factual reading)*

14.11.5 Another type of factual *before*-clause is to be found in clefts whose head clause does no more than indicate (and highlight) the time of the *before*-clause situation:

(10a) It *was* 7 p.m. before he *arrived* in London.

(10b) It *was* the following holidays before they *fought* again. (TOCC)

In (10a-b), *7 p.m.* and *the following holidays* indicate the time at which the *before*-clause situation actualized. That is, in each case the situation time of the head clause and the situation time of the *before*-clause are interpreted as simultaneous, so that *before* can be replaced by *when*:

(11a) It was 7 p.m. when he arrived in London.

(11b) It was the following holidays when they fought again.

However, (11a–b) are not quite synonymous with (10a–b). The following are better paraphrases of (10a–b):

(12a) It was not until 7 p.m. that he arrived in London.

(12b) It was not until the following holidays that they fought again.

Whereas (11a–b) just locate the *when*-clause situation at the time indicated by the head clause, (10a–b) and (11a–b) do more than this: they also stress the existence of an interval of time between a contextually given orientation time and the situation time of the subclause, as well as the nonactualization of the subclause situation during the interval in question. (The use of *by the time that* instead of *before* in (10a–b) would have roughly the same effect.) In (10a–b) the function of *before* is thus to bring out a W-posteriority ('later') relation which is expressed by no other constituent in the sentence (since the situation time of the head clause and the situation time of the *before*-clause are interpreted as simultaneous with each other).

Sentences like (10a–b) form a subtype of sentences with a 'narrative *before*-clause' (see 14.11.4): the *before*-clause pushes forward the action and the head clause merely gives temporal information about the location of the *before*-clause situation. It should also be noted that in the type of example under discussion the past tense can easily be replaced by the past perfect if the head clause also uses the past perfect: *It had been Tuesday before the police {intervened / had intervened}*. In that case the time of the intervention is represented as T-anterior to the same implicit past orientation time to which the situation time of the head clause is also T-anterior. In other words, *had intervened* is an instance of 'indirect binding' (see 9.28).

14.11.6 The *before*-clause is also t_0-factual in clefts like the following, in which the head clause is negative and the highlighted constituent is not a temporal NP but a measure phrase which indicates the temporal distance between (the beginning of) the time of actualization of the *before*-clause situation and a preceding (contextually given) past orientation time:

> It was not {long / *the following holidays} before they fought again.
>
> It was not long before the child was playing with the other children.

Examples like these arguably form a kind of cleft construction. They alternate with examples like the following, which rather invite an analysis in terms of extraposition of the *before*-clause (which is the semantic subject):

> [They began to groom him as Brown's heir apparent.] It didn't last long before Morrison was shifted back to outside linebacker. (www)

14.11.7 A variant of the construction *It wasn't long before* … is illustrated by the following, in which the *before*-clause is in the past perfect and is also interpreted as t_0-factual:

> [When we got to the spot there were 18 wild dogs and they were looking very hungry.] It was not long before they *had found* their prey and in their own inimitable style made short work of eating 'breakfast'. (www)
>
> [Then she put on her boots, which took her an hour's walk at every stride,] and it was not long before she *had overtaken* them. (www)
>
> [While early duels had been fought with knives and modern pistols,] it was not long before duelling *had become* a celebrated and highly ritualized practice. (www)

The use of the past perfect, which expresses anteriority to the implicit contained orientation time, means that *not long* measures the distance between the contextual orientation time and the end of the *before*-clause situation (rather than its beginning, as in the examples in 14.11.6).

14.11.8 *Before*-clauses in sentences of the types discussed in 14.11.5−7 are interpreted as t_0-factual because they specify the distance between a given orientation time and the initial or terminal point of the situation time of the *before*-clause.[17] This is especially clear when the *before*-clause uses the past perfect:

---

[17] Compare: in section 14.6.13 we saw that the addition of a measure phrase (e. g. *long*) to *before* normally produces a factual interpretation.

> It was a long time before all the cases *had been unpacked*.
>
> [These laws were then ratified, although] it was a long time before custom *had obtained* the vigor and effect of law. (www)
>
> [The stockpiling of treatment began and] it was a long time before enough *had been stored*. (www)

The past perfect situations are obviously interpreted as t_0-factual. If we want to do no more than represent the *before*-clause situation as not-yet-factual (i. e. put emphasis on the fact that the unpacking was not yet a fact at the relevant situation time) we have to use the conditional perfect (usually in combination with the conditional tense in the head clause):

> [John looked at the cases in despair.] It would still be a long time before all of them *would have been unpacked*.

If the distance measured is not between the contextually given past orientation time and the end of the *before*-clause situation but between the orientation time and the beginning of the situation of the *before*-clause, there are three possible tense combinations:

> [Bill looked at the clock in despair. It was three-thirty. The car carrying his rescuers had left Inverness at two, so] it *was* still at least an hour before they *would arrive*.
>
> [Bill looked at the clock in despair. It was three-thirty. The car carrying his rescuers had left Inverness at two, so] it *would* still *be* at least an hour before they *arrived*. (*Arrived is a relative past tense form.*)
>
> [Bill looked at the clock in despair. It was three-thirty. The car carrying his rescuers had left Inverness at two, so] it *would* still *be* at least an hour before they *would arrive*. (*indirect binding*)

The following are some attested examples:

> [There were no problems with that, but] there *was* still like an hour before the boat *would be leaving*, [so we walked around a bit, looked in the shops, ...] (www)
>
> [It was well into dark and Murphy had deduced that] it *would be* still a few hours before someone in Four Corners *was* wise to Tanner's absence. (www)
>
> It *would be* still more years, however, before we *would see* the Church of Finland come together in unity and commitment to make a disciple of their homeland. (www)

14.12 Counterfactual *before*-clauses

14.12.1 As noted in 14.6.6, a not-yet-factual *before*-clause can receive a t_0-counterfactual interpretation from the pragmatics of the context. One possibility is that it is the context following the sentence with the *before*-clause that imposes a counterfactual reading, as in

I saw her before she had seen me. [So I quickly turned into a side street and managed to escape unseen.]

Another possibility is that the actualization of the *before*-clause situation is prevented by the actualization of the head clause situation:

She burnt the letter before I had read it.

In the latter case the past perfect in the nonstative *before*-clause could in principle be replaced by the past tense because the factual reading suggested by the past tense is anyhow pragmatically excluded. However, in sentences like the following the past tense is often judged unacceptable because it primarily suggests the nonsensical reading on which the *before*-clause situation did actualize:

The letter was destroyed before I {*had read* / ?*read*} it.

Before we {*had gone* / ??*went*} far the car broke down.

On the other hand, sentences like the following are quite common:

The car broke down before we *got* very far.

He died before I *could* tell him the news.

14.12.2 As noted in 14.6.14, a *before*-clause can receive a counterfactual reading from the use of the conditional perfect, provided *before* is preceded by a measure phrase:

He died the day before he *would have married* Eileen.

The measure phrase is necessary because it helps the hearer to identify the time when the counterfactual situation was expected to actualize. (This information cannot be conveyed by a time-specifying adverbial if the *before*-clause is in the conditional perfect: **He died before he would have married Eileen last Saturday*. This is in keeping with the fact that *He died the day before he would have married Eileen* means 'He died the day before the time at which he would have married Eileen'. It is not possible to insert *last Saturday* into the relative clause of this paraphrase either.)

14.13 Not-yet-factual *before*-clauses

14.13.1 In a sense all *before*-clauses are not-yet-factual because 'not yet B when A' logically follows from 'A before B'. In this trivial sense, t_0-factual *before*-clauses and counterfactual *before*-clauses are also not-yet-factual. What we will be dealing with in this section are *before*-clauses that are not-yet-factual-at-t without also being t_0-factual or t_0-counterfactual.

14.13.2 In section 14.6.5 we have seen that there is a special tense we can use to represent the *before*-clause situation as not-yet-factual, viz. the past perfect.

In nonstative *before*-clauses this tense is used instead of the past tense, because the past tense implicates t_0-factuality:

It is also worth noting that the t_0-factual implicature of the past tense is a very strong one. Though it can be blocked by the context, it cannot be cancelled by an addition to the contrary. The following is unacceptable because it is interpreted as contradictory (and hence nonsensical):

> *I left before John arrived, but he didn't arrive.

In Gricean terms, this means that the t_0-factual sense of the past tense in the *before*-clause is a conventional implicature rather than a conversational one.

14.13.3 In 14.11.6 we have discussed the cleft-like construction *It was not long before they reached the capital*, in which the *before*-clause refers to a factual past situation. There is a similar, but this time existential construction-like, type of sentence in which the *before*-clause explicitly represents its situation as not-yet-factual:

> [Adam yawned, and looked at the clock above the entrance to the North Library.] There was still a long time to go before his books *would arrive*. (BM)
>
> There's still a long time to go before the others *will be* here.

Note that the use of *would* and *will* in this type of *before*-clause is rather special. If both clauses of a sentence with a *before*-clause refer to the post-present (e. g. *I will leave before he arrives*), both situations are represented as expected (predicted) rather than as t_0-factual. It follows that as a rule the head clause uses an absolute (= Absolute Future System) tense form to establish the post-present domain, while the *before*-clause uses a relative (= Pseudo-t_0-System) form. The reason is that a prediction creates an opaque (intensional) context and that, as argued in 10.4.6, an intensional domain functions as a temporal domain: whatever situation is to be interpreted intensionally must normally be incorporated into the intensional domain, i. e. must be expressed by a relative tense form. In the case of post-present domains, this means that the subclause must as a rule use a Pseudo-t_0-System form. In fact, the latter System is quite possible in examples like the above ones:

> And there's a long time to go before the Federal election *is called*, so anything could happen. (www)
>
> Because there is some time before this new methodology *is put* in place, [now is an opportune time to design a system that will …]. (www)

Irrespective of which System is used, the head clause can also be in the future tense:

> There *will be* some time before the others *will be* here.
>
> [Since these standards were remanded to EPA by a federal court in May 1999,] there *will be* some time before the exact form of the standards *is known*. (www)

In sum, the following four constructions can all be used without a clear difference of meaning:

[It's five o'clock now.] There *will be* some time before the others *will be* here.

[It's five o'clock now.] There *will be* some time before the others *are* here.

[It's five o'clock now.] There *is* still some time before the others *will be* here.

[It's five o'clock now.] There *is* still some time before the others *are* here.

E. A comparison between *before* and *until*

Sections 14.14–16 are devoted to *until*-clauses, which show many similarities with adverbial *before*-clauses, but are 'bifunctional' (= indicating duration and time) rather than purely time-specifying.

Like *before*, *until* expresses (or at least implies) anteriority. The main difference between *before* and *until* is that *before*-clauses function as pure time-specifying adverbials whereas *until*-clauses function as 'bifunctional temporal adverbials' (see 2.22.3), i. e. they indicate duration as well as time. The other distinctions that can be made between the two types of clause follow from this basic difference.

14.14 The semantics of the conjunction *until*

14.14.1 *Until* is interpreted as 'until the time at which'. Diachronically, it has developed from an old English phrase 'until the time that' via Middle English *until that*. This means that there is an implicit orientation time (which, as in the case of *before*-clauses, we can refer to as the 'Anchor time') in its semantics. As in the case of *before*, this Anchor time is the final point of the Adv-time (= the period indicated by the *until*-clause). The basic difference between an *until*-clause and a *before*-clause is that while the latter is a pure time-specifying adverbial, an *until*-clause is a 'bifunctional adverbial' (see 2.22.3): it both establishes an Adv-time and indicates the duration of the full head clause situation. For example:

Jim stayed in the pub until Prudence came in.

The head clause situation is said to last till Prudence came in. The *until*-clause indicates an Adv-time which coincides with the situation time of the head clause. The situation time of the head clause coincides with the time of the full situation because the head clause situation is made bounded by the addition of the *until*-clause, which specifies the end of the head clause situation. In sum, the *until*-clause is a duration adverbial because it specifies the length of the full head clause situation, and it is a time-specifying adverbial because it specifies an Adv-time which contains the situation time of the head clause in terms of coincidence. It is therefore a bifunctional adverbial. The Adv-time is a definite period because it is 'anchored' (see 12.1.1) by the fact that its endpoint is specified. This endpoint (= Anchor time) may be the situation time of the *until*-clause or another orientation time binding the situation time of the *until*-clause – see 14.15.2 below.

14.14.2 Because an *until*-clause is a bifunctional adverbial, the contained orientation time of the head clause coincides with the Adv-time. It follows that the situation time of the head clause must as a rule be the contained orientation time of the head clause. The only possible (but very marginal) exception is when the situation time of the head clause is represented as T-posterior to the contained orientation time by means of *be about to* or *be going to*:

> Until John said everything was safe again, his men *were about to shoot* at anything that moved.

14.15 The tenses used in head clause and *until*-clause

As far as tenses are concerned, *until*-clauses allow the following possibilities:

14.15.1 If the reference is to the past, both the head clause and the *until*-clause can create a domain of their own. This is not possible when the reference is to the post-present:

> I *was* there until Bill *came* back.
>
> *I *will be* there until John *will be* back.

In the former example, both verb forms are absolute tense forms. Both situations are therefore interpreted as t_0-factual. See Figure 14.11.

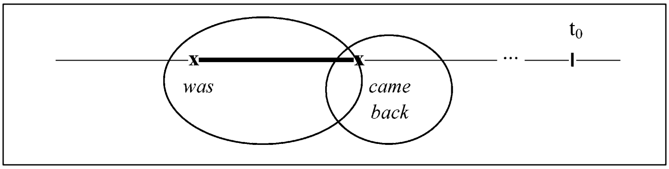

Figure 14.11. The temporal structure of *I was there until Bill came back*.

14.15.2 When the situation time of the head clause is interpreted as W-posterior to another orientation time, the *until*-clause forms part of an 'intensional domain' (see 10.4.6). In that case the situation time of the *until*-clause must be T-bound by the implicit Anchor time:

> [Bill said] he would stay in the pub until Jill {*arrived* / **would arrive*}. *(= 'He would stay in the pub until the time of Jill's arrival.') (The until-clause represents its situation time as T-simultaneous with the implicit Anchor time. It is not possible to effect indirect binding by representing the situation time of the until-clause as T-posterior to the situation time of the head clause.)*
>
> [Bill said] he would stay in the pub until Jill {*had arrived* / **would have arrived*}. *(= 'He would stay in the pub until such time as Jill had already arrived.') (The until-clause represents its situation time as T-anterior to the implicit Anchor time. It is not possible to effect indirect binding by T-relating the situation time of the until-clause to the situation time of the head clause by using would have arrived.)*
>
> She intended to stay up until her husband {*came* / **would come* / *had come* / **would have come*} home.

The same system applies if the verb of the head clause itself evokes the idea of a W-posterior *until*-clause situation, as in the following example:

> I was waiting until the others {*came* / **would come* / *had come* / **would have come*} home. *(= 'I was waiting for the others to {come / have come} home.')*

When the head clause refers to the post-present, it automatically creates an intensional domain. It is therefore predictable that the *until*-clause will use the Pseudo-t_0-System to relate the situation time of the *until*-clause to the implicit Anchor time:

> I will postpone the meeting until we {*have* / **will have* / *have received* / **will have received*} more information.
>
> Please stay here until the doctor {*comes* / **will come*}.

When the head clause uses a verb like *wait*, it can refer to the present while the *until*-clause still refers to the post-present. In that case too, the *until*-clause uses the Pseudo-t_0-System:

> I am waiting until the others {*come* / **will come* / *have come* / **will have come*} home.

In examples like this, the central orientation time of the post-present domain is an 'implicit' (see 2.14) orientation time.

14.15.3 The choice between the past tense and the present perfect in the head clause of an *until*-clause has been dealt with in 12.13.

14.16 The semantics of *not … until*

When the head clause is negative, there are in principle two possible interpretations of ***NOT … UNTIL***. The first is that the *until*-clause has its usual function of specifying both an Adv-time (containing the situation time of the head clause) and the duration of the full head clause situation:

> ["For how long didn't he speak to you?"] — "He didn't speak to me until I addressed him myself."

Here the reference is to a negative situation, viz. the situation of his not saying a word to me. Such a negative situation can be located in time with the help of an *until*-clause.

In many cases, however, the *not* in the head clause does not really negate the head clause, so that there is no reference to a negative head clause situation. Instead, *not* is directly combined with *until* in interpretation, and *not … until* is interpreted as specifying a time which is seen as later than might have been expected:

> Jim didn't arrive until five.

The primary idea here is not 'Jim's not arriving lasted until five' but rather 'Jim only arrived at five', or 'It was as late as five when Jim arrived'. In this interpretation, the *until*-clause is not a bifunctional adverbial any more: it does not specify the duration of the full head clause situation but merely functions as a time-specifying adverbial. More specifically, it says at what time Jim arrived. The same is true if *until* is used as a conjunction rather than as a preposition:

> I didn't leave the office until I had replied to all my e-mails. *(= 'It was only after I had replied to all my e-mails that I left the office.') (The situation time of the* *until**-clause is represented as T-anterior to the Anchor time.)*

II. Adverbial *after*-clauses

The temporal structure of the conjunction *after* is represented by Figure 14.12.

14.17 The temporal structure of *after*

14.17.1 In the same way as *before* means ‘before the time when’, the conjunction *after* is semantically equivalent to ‘after the time {that / when / at which}’. This is in keeping with the fact that the conjunction *after* has actually developed from a phrase corresponding to the modern English phrases ‘after the time that’ or ‘after then that’. In the paraphrase ‘after the time {that / when / at which}’, the word *time* refers to the Anchor time, which is the *initial* point of the Adv-time. (When a *before*-clause is used, the Anchor time is the *terminal* point of the Adv-time.) The Adv-time, which is the period stretching from that initial point onwards, contains the ‘contained orientation time of the head clause’. The latter is either the situation time of the head clause or another orientation time which binds the situation time of the head clause. In sum, the temporal structure of *after* is as shown in Figure 14.12.

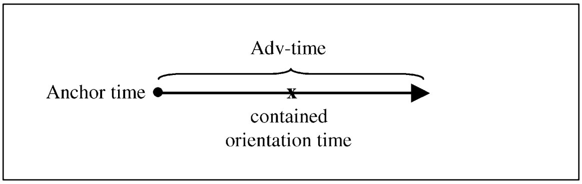

Figure 14.12. Representation of the temporal structure of *after*.

This structure is the mirror-image of the structure of *before* shown in Figure 14.1. Whereas a *before*-clause specifies an Adv-time leading up to an ‘Anchor time’ (which either is the situation time of the *before*-clause or binds the situation time of the *before*-clause), an adverbial *after*-clause specifies an Adv-time starting from an Anchor time onwards. The Anchor time is thus the initial point of the Adv-time. In the structure of the tense of the *after*-clause, the Anchor time is usually the situation time of the *after*-clause itself, but it may also be an implicit time binding that situation time. For example:

> John left after I arrived. *(The Adv-time is a pragmatically restricted period stretching from the Anchor time onwards. The Anchor time is the situation time of the* *after*-*clause, i.e. the time of my arrival. The Adv-time contains the situation time of the head clause, i.e. the time of John’s leaving.)*

> John left after I had arrived. *(The Adv-time is a pragmatically restricted period following the Anchor time, to which the situation time of the after-clause is represented as T-anterior. The Adv-time contains the situation time of the head clause.)*
>
> [You can't rely on Bert. He's too volatile. Now he says this, now something else. Remember what he said last Christmas.] Hardly a week after he had promised us to stay, he was going to leave the country. *(The Adv-time is a pragmatically restricted period following the Anchor time, to which the situation time of the after-clause is represented as T-anterior. This Adv-time contains the implicit contained orientation time, to which the situation time of the head clause is T-posterior.)*

The temporal structure realized in the last example is shown in Figure 14.13.

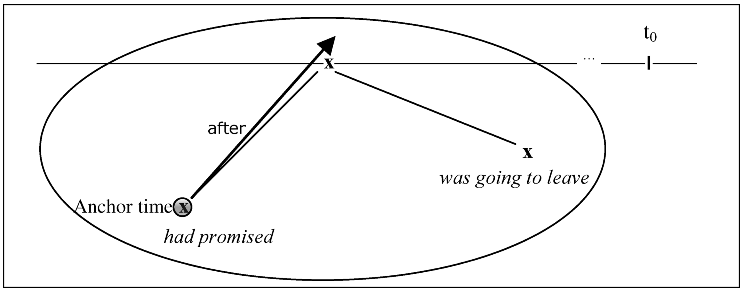

Figure 14.13. The temporal structure of *Hardly a week after he had promised us to stay, he was going to leave the country.*

The fact that *after* can involve an implicit Anchor time is best illustrated by examples like

> Was that before or after the policemen had arrived?

This sentence is interpreted as 'Was that before or after the time when (it was the case that) the policemen had arrived?'. This means that the situation time of the *before*-clause (= the time of the policemen's arrival) is here represented as T-anterior to the Anchor time that is implicit in the conjunction *before* (and lexicalizes as *the time* in the paraphrase 'before the time that'), while the situation time of the *after*-clause (= the time of the policemen's arrival) is represented as T-anterior to the Anchor time that is implicit in the conjunction *after* (and lexicalizes as *the time* in the paraphrase 'after the time that'). In both cases the situation time of the head clause is contained in the Adv-time.

When both the head clause and the *after*-clause refer to the post-present, the situation time of the *after*-clause is related to the implicit Anchor time by means of a Pseudo-t_0-System form:

> He will repair the sink after he {*comes* / **will come* / *has come* / **will have come*} home.

This means that, like *before*-clauses, adverbial *after*-clauses sometimes use relative tenses. However, as in the case of *before*-clauses (see *Bill left before I arrived* in 14.4.2–5), *after*-clauses can also establish a past temporal domain: *I arrived after Bill left*. In that case the Anchor time is the situation time of the *after*-clause.

14.17.2 In sum, we can say that the conjunction *after* establishes an Adv-time whose starting point is the 'Anchor time' which lexicalizes as *the time* in the paraphrase 'after the time that'. This Anchor time may be either the situation time of the *after*-clause (as in *He left after I arrived*) or an implicit orientation time to which the situation time of the *after*-clause is temporally related (as in *He will leave after I have arrived*). The Adv-time contains the 'contained orientation time' (in terms of inclusion or coincidence). If there is inclusion, *after* is interpreted as 'at some time in the course of the period after'. If there is coincidence, *after* means 'throughout the period after'. The contained orientation time may be either the situation time of the head clause (as in *He left after I arrived*) or another orientation time temporally binding the situation time of the head clause (as in *He will repair the sink after he has come home*).

14.17.3 When the *after*-clause situation is durative, the Anchor time (i. e. the initial point of the Adv-time) is the terminal point of the durative *after*-clause situation. That is, 'A after B' is interpreted as 'A after the terminal point of B' rather than as 'A after the initial point of B':

> After he had played with his brother, Tom turned on the TV-set. *(interpreted as 'after he had stopped playing with his brother')*
>
> John went out to play (five minutes) after he had done his homework. *(= '(five minutes) after he had finished doing his homework')*

Because of this 'terminative' interpretation of the *after*-clause, we cannot normally use the past progressive form in the *after*-clause, though the progressive form of the past perfect is possible. Compare:

> After he {*played* / *had played* / **was playing* / *had been playing*} with his brother, Tom turned on the TV-set.

The forms *played* and *had played* are both good, because they refer to the situation as a whole. *Was playing* is ungrammatical because it refers to a time in the course (middle) of the situation of playing: this time cannot be the terminal point of the situation. On the other hand, *had been playing* is fine because of the T-anteriority relation: even though the progressive is used, 'A anterior to B' can only be understood as 'B posterior (= after) situation A as a whole', in other words, as 'B after the terminal point of A'.

14.17.4 In sentences like the following, the temporal distance between the terminal point of the *after*-clause situation and the situation time of the head clause (which is contained in the Adv-time) is indicated by the duration adverbial in the *after*-clause, which receives a 'situation time co-extensive with the pre-present' (see 5.2.2–3) interpretation:

> He's now opening the safe (for the first time) after it has been closed for over two months.

In the following example, the present perfect again represents the *after*-clause situation as extending throughout a pre-present period up until t_0. That pre-present period is measured by *for twenty-two years*. The head clause situation is represented as lying in the post-present and as depending on a present decision.

> Surely, you're not going to fire him after he's been your foreman for twenty-two years?!

The *after*-clause of the following example is similar, except that the past perfect represents the *after*-clause situation as leading up to a past orientation time, which is located two weeks before the situation time of the head clause (by the measure phrase *two weeks* in the head clause):

> The Chancellor of the Exchequer resigned two weeks after he had been in office for exactly seven years.

14.18 Temporal structures involving a head clause and an *after*-clause

14.18.1 It follows from the previous section that at least the following temporal structures (configurations) involving a head clause and an adverbial *after*-clause are possible.

(a) Firstly, the orientation time contained in the Adv-time may be the situation time of the head clause (which means that the adverbial is used as a situation-time adverbial), while the situation time of the *after*-clause is the Anchor time.

> The man *shot* himself after he *killed* his wife and children. *(The situation time of the head clause is included in the Adv-time.)*
>
> He *was* a well respected citizen after he *married* the judge's daughter. *(The situation time of the head clause coincides with the Adv-time.)*

The past tense forms in these *after*-clauses are absolute tense forms. We will not go into the arguments supporting this claim here, because they are the same kind of arguments as those that were adduced in connection with the past tense of the *before*-clause in *He left before I* *arrived* in 14.4.2–5.

Like *before*-clauses, *after*-clauses can use the absolute past tense, but cannot use an Absolute Future System form (i. e. an absolute tense form establishing a post-present domain):

> The man will shoot himself after he {*kills* / **will kill*} his wife and children.
>
> He will be a well respected citizen after he {*marries* / **will marry*} Edith.

(b) Secondly, the orientation time (from the tense structure of the head clause) that is contained in the Adv-time may be the situation time of the head clause itself (which means that the Adv-time is used as a situation-time adverbial), while the situation time of the *after*-clause is represented as T-anterior to the situation time of the head clause. In this case the anteriority relation between the two situation times is expressed twice: by the conjunction *after* and by the tense of the *after*-clause.

> [I hoped that] my brother *would be treated* well after he *had been arrested. (The time of the head clause situation, i. e. the treatment of my brother, coincides with the Adv-time: the speaker wants his brother to be treated well throughout the period following his arrest. The after-clause uses the past perfect form had been arrested to represent the situation time of the after-clause as T-anterior to the situation time of would be treated. See Figure 14.14.)*
>
> He *left* long after I *had arrived.*

Here too, the *after*-clause has to use a Pseudo-t_0-System form when it refers to the post-present:

> John will go home after the pub *has closed. (The situation time of the head clause is included in the Adv-time. The after-clause uses a Pseudo-t_0-System form to T-relate the situation time of the after-clause to the situation time of the head clause.)*

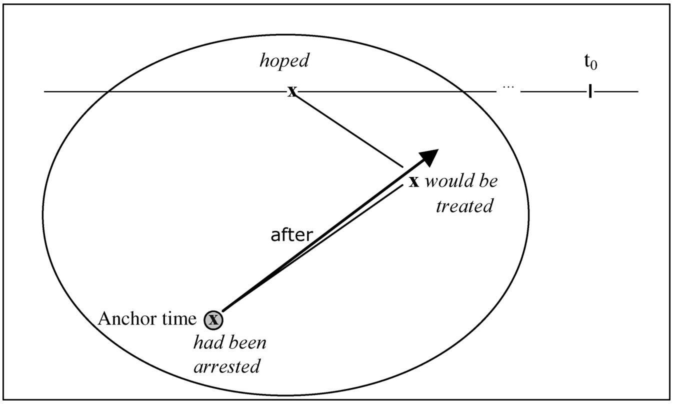

Figure 14.14. The temporal structure of *I hoped that my brother would be treated well after he had been arrested.*

It is worth noting that *after*-clauses do not usually use a T-posteriority form. Examples like the following are rather unintelligible and hardly acceptable:

> ??[The fact that] she left him shortly after he *was going to commit* suicide, [which, fortunately, we were able to prevent,] is an indication that she did not really love him.

(c) Thirdly, the situation time of the head clause may be T-related to the contained orientation time (i. e. it is bound by an unspecified orientation time which is included in the Adv-time), while the situation time of the *after*-clause is the Anchor time. In this case the Adv-time functions as an orientation-time adverbial (since it does not contain the situation time of the head clause but rather the unspecified contained orientation time to which the situation time of the head clause is temporally related).

> The man *had shot* himself after he *killed* his wife and children. *(The situation time of the head clause is T-anterior to the contained orientation time, which is contained in the Adv-time. The situation time of the after-clause is the Anchor time.)*
>
> After he *killed* his wife and children the man *was going to commit* suicide. *(The situation time of the head clause is T-posterior to the contained orientation time, which is contained in the Adv-time. The situation time of the after-clause is the Anchor time.)*

(d) Fourthly, the situation time of the head clause may be T-related to the contained orientation time, while the situation time of the *after*-clause is T-related to the Anchor time. Both clauses therefore use a relative tense form. In this case too the Adv-time functions as an orientation-time adverbial. Examples illustrating this can only be found in free indirect speech:

> [What John says changes every few minutes.] Yesterday he *was* suddenly *going to become* a doctor after he *was going to become* an engineer. *(= 'John first said he was going to be an engineer, but then suddenly said he was going to study medicine.')*
>
> A week after John *was going to commit* suicide, he *was* no longer *going to do* so. *(free indirect speech)*

14.19 The tense system if the *after*-clause functions as situation-time adverbial

14.19.1 When the two clauses refer to the past, there are three possibilities:

(a) If the speaker just wants to represent two t_0-factual past situations as actualizing in a particular temporal order ('A after B'), he can use an absolute past tense form in both of the clauses:

I *left* after John *arrived*, not vice versa.

John *bought* a gun after somebody *broke* into his house.

Cherry *threw* a party after she *passed* her exams.

This possibility of using the past tense in the *after*-clause is more frequently made use of in informal English than in more formal registers. Written texts generally prefer the past perfect in the *after*-clause.

(b) The speaker will use the past perfect in the *after*-clause if he wants to represent the situation time of the *after*-clause as T-anterior to the situation time of the head clause.

I *left* after John *had arrived*.

John *bought* a gun after somebody *had broken* into his house.

Here we must also mention the cases in which the speaker wants the *after*-clause situation to be interpreted as an ‘up-to-now’ (see 5.3.2) situation or as a resultant state:

The old man died after he {*had been* / **was*} ill for a long time. *(up-to-now interpretation)*

We could only get in after John {$^?$*opened* / *had opened*} the door. *(resultant state interpretation)*

In all these examples the *after*-clause is interpreted as t_0-factual. This is logical: what precedes a factual head clause situation must itself be factual.

(c) If the head clause expresses T-posteriority in a past domain, the *after*-clause situation cannot be interpreted as t_0-factual because it forms part of a prediction or expectation. In this case the *after*-clause can make use of two tenses. The less usual of the two is the relative past tense, which represents the situation time of the *after*-clause as T-simultaneous with the Anchor time which is implicit in the semantics of *after* (= ‘after the time that’):

[He had decided] he would do it after the others *left*.

He would do it after the others *left*. *(free indirect speech)*

The more common possibility is to use the past perfect, which expresses T-anteriority to the situation time of the head clause:

He would do it after the others *had left*. *(free indirect speech)*

It is worth noting that indirect binding by means of the conditional tense or the conditional perfect is not allowed:

*He would do it after the others {*would leave* / *would have left*}.

In this respect English differs from most other Germanic languages, where indirect binding is not impossible.

14.19.2 When the two clauses refer to the post-present (and, as before, the *after*-clause functions as situation-time adverbial), the possibilities are as follows:

(a) If the speaker wants to express that he expects two post-present situations to actualize in a particular temporal order ('A after B'), he uses the future tense in the head clause and the present tense (as Pseudo-t_0-System form) in the *after*-clause:

> I *will leave* after John *arrives*, not vice versa.
>
> [I expect that] John *will* only *buy* a gun after somebody *breaks* into his house.
>
> Cherry *will throw* a party after she *passes* her exams.

In these examples, the present tense represents the situation time of the *after*-clause as T-simultaneous with the implicit Anchor time. That is, the situation orientation time of 'John arrives' in the first example is T-simultaneous with the implicit orientation time (lexicalized as *the time* in the paraphrase 'after the time that') in the semantic structure of *after*. The situation time of 'I will leave' is included in the Adv-time (= the *after*-period).

(b) If he wants to represent the situation time of the *after*-clause as T-anterior to the situation time of the head clause, the speaker will normally use the present perfect (as Pseudo-t_0-System tense) in the *after*-clause.

> I *will leave* after John *has arrived*.
>
> [I expect that] John *will buy* a gun only after somebody *has broken* into his house.

Examples in which the Pseudo-t_0-System tense form expressing anteriority in the *after*-clause is a past tense are very hard to come by, but do exist:

> [It might be hard to tell someone you have this problem but] you will feel better after you *did* it. (www)
>
> [The plan is that] they will take the 6.36 train after they *robbed* the bank at 6.10. *(The past tense is required here because* at 6.10 *prevents the use of an (indefinite) present perfect form.)*

The past tense can also be found in *after*-clauses depending on a head clause in the future perfect:

> [When you get to the half-way point, you'll be moving one spot every two weeks, since] half the people quitting will have started after you *did* [and won't affect ...] (www)
>
> [You won't be anywhere outside,] however, your window will have frozen up after you *left* it open due to sub-tropical temperatures the previous day. (www)

Self-evidently, only the present perfect can be used if the *after*-clause situation is to be interpreted as an up-to-now situation or as a resultant state:

The old man will die after he {*has been* / **was*} ill for a long time. *(up-to-now interpretation)*

We will only be able to get in after John {**opened* / *has opened*} the door. *(resultant state interpretation)*

(c) If the head clause establishes a post-present domain, the *after*-clause situation cannot be interpreted as t_0-factual because it forms part of a prediction or expectation. In this case there are two tenses that can in principle be used in the *after*-clause. The less usual of the two is the present tense (as pseudo-absolute tense), which represents the situation time of the *after*-clause as T-simultaneous with the Anchor time which is implicit in the semantics of *after* (= 'after the time that'):

I will do it after you *leave*.

The more common possibility is to use the present perfect, which expresses T-anteriority to the situation time of the head clause (which is the central orientation time of the post-present domain):

I will do it after you *have left*.

In this case, anteriority is expressed twice: once by *after* and once by the present perfect (as pseudo-absolute tense form).

It is worth noting that the *after*-clause cannot establish a domain of its own by using the future tense or the future perfect:

*I will do it after you {*will leave* / *will have left*}.

In this respect English again differs from most other Germanic languages, where the equivalent of an *after*-clause *can* create a post-present domain.

14.20 The tense system if the *after*-clause functions as orientation-time adverbial

Like other time-specifying adverbials, an *after*-clause may function not only as a situation-time adverbial but also as an orientation-time adverbial. In the latter case, the contained orientation time (i. e. the orientation time which is contained in the Adv-time) is not the situation time of the head clause but another orientation time to which the situation time of the head clause is T-related. In accordance with the definition of 'containment' (see 2.16.2), the contained orientation time can then either coincide with the Adv-time (i. e. 'after X' = 'throughout the time following X') or be included in the Adv-time (i. e. 'after X' = 'at a time included in the interval following X'). In the latter case, the contained orientation time can in principle coincide with the Anchor time or be a durative portion of the Adv-time which starts from the Anchor time onwards or be a point of the Adv-time that follows the Anchor time and is not adjacent to it. It follows that there are four theoretical possibilities in which the *after*-clause functions as orientation-time adverbial. (In all four cases the situation time of the head clause is T-related to the contained orientation time of the head clause.)

A. The contained orientation time of the head clause may coincide with the Anchor time.

B. The contained orientation time of the head clause may be W-posterior to the Anchor time.

C. The contained orientation time of the head clause may be a portion of the Adv-time immediately following the Anchor time.

D. The contained orientation time of the head clause may coincide with the entire Adv-time.

Let us see if these theoretical possibilities can indeed be realized in English.

14.20.1 Possibility A is realized in examples like the following:

> After the war ended there *was going to be* a famine, [but the country received aid from abroad]. *(The situation time of the head clause [i. e. the time of the imminent famine] is T-posterior to the situation time of the after-clause [ended]. The latter functions as Anchor time. This means that the situation time of the war ended marks the time at which the interval functioning as Adv-time begins. In other words, the Adv-time is the period starting at the end of the war. See figure 14.15.)*
>
> After the present conflict is over there *will* soon *be going to be* another one. [At that moment the UN will have to intervene at once to stop the imminent conflict from developing.] *(The situation time of the head clause is T-posterior to the Anchor time.)*

It does not appear possible to represent the situation time of the head clause as T-anterior to the Anchor time. A sentence like

> John had been ill for a week after he fell into the water.

is interpreted as meaning that John's illness followed his fall into the water, not that it preceded that fall. (This is due to the semantics of *after*; there would be no problem if *before* were used.)

14.20.2 In possibility B, represented by Figure 14.16, the situation time of the head clause is T-related to a contained orientation time which is W-posterior to the Anchor time (or to the situation time of the *after*-clause coinciding with it). This is only possible if *after* is preceded by a measure phrase indicating the length of time separating the contained orientation time from the Anchor time. In the following examples the situation time of the head clause is T-posterior to the contained orientation time:

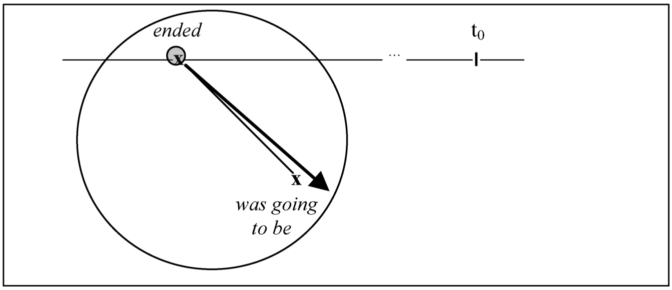

Figure 14.15. The temporal structure of *After the war ended there was going to be a famine*.

> *Shortly* after the war ended there *was going to be* a famine, [but the country received aid from abroad].
>
> *A few months* after the present conflict is over there *will be going to be* another one. [At that moment the UN will have to intervene at once to stop the imminent conflict from developing.]

The following is an example in which the situation time of the head clause is T-anterior (in the continuative sense) to the contained orientation time but the latter is nonetheless W-posterior to the Anchor time. This unique combination is made possible by the fact that the head clause contains an adverbial specifying the length of the continuative situation time of the head clause. Compare:

> *After I got to know him, Bill *had been* in prison for exactly five years.
>
> Three weeks after I got to know him, Bill *had been* in prison for exactly five years.

The temporal structure of the latter sentence is represented by Figure 14.16.

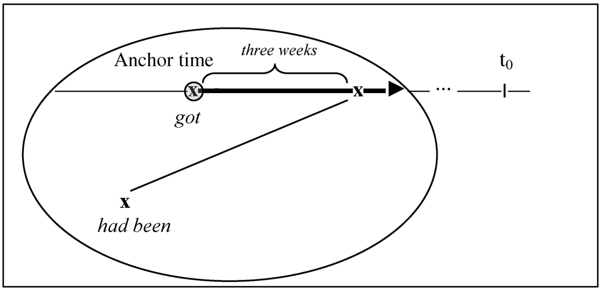

Figure 14.16. The temporal structure of *Three weeks after I got to know him, Bill had been in prison for exactly five years*.

14.20.3 In possibility C, the situation time of the head clause is T-related to a contained orientation time which is a portion of the Adv-time immediately following the Anchor time. This possibility can only be realized in free indirect speech and requires the length of the portion in question to be indicated by an adverbial:

> *Immediately* after she {*slept* with me / *had got* me into her bed} she *was going to help* me. [Oh yes. She would love to help. She was going to take the day off, and she was going to bring her tools round and we were going to get the job done in no time. But did she turn up? Of course not.]

It does not appear possible to represent the situation time of the head clause as T-anterior to the contained orientation time. A sentence like

> John had been in bed for three weeks after he was in the water for several hours.

is interpreted as meaning that John's being in bed followed (rather than preceded) his being in the water. (This is again due to the semantics of *after*; there would be no problem if *before* were used.)

14.20.4 Possibility D is realized if the situation time of the head clause is T-posterior to a contained orientation time which coincides with the Adv-time. The following sentence is an example of this:

> After he was stung by a bee, John would remain afraid of bees and wasps (for the rest of his life). *(After is interpreted as 'throughout the period after'.)*

The temporal structure of this sentence is represented by Figure 14.17.

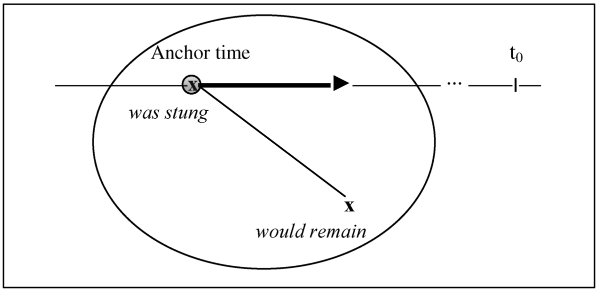

Figure 14.17. The temporal structure of *After he was stung by a bee, John would remain afraid of bees and wasps (for the rest of his life).*

This possibility too does not allow the situation time of the head clause to be represented as T-anterior to the contained orientation time. A sentence like

> John had remained an invalid after he got shot in the chest during the civil war.

is interpreted as meaning that John's being an invalid followed (rather than preceded) his being shot in the chest.

III. Summary

14.21 Summary of the discussion of *before*-clauses

14.21.1 The temporal structure of the conjunction *before* is represented in Figure 14.1 (repeated here).

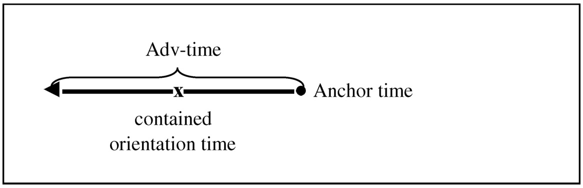

Figure 14.1. Representation of the temporal structure of *before*.

14.21.2 A *before*-clause is normally used as an orientation-time adverbial. The following is a summary of the main patterns and meanings which such a *before*-clause allows.

Adverbial *before*-clauses functioning as situation-time adverbials basically allow three major tense configurations (apart from others that have been discussed but will be ignored here). They are exemplified by the following sentences, which can be used to describe the same state of affairs:

> Jim left before Bill arrived.
>
> Jim left before Bill had arrived.
>
> Jim had left before Bill arrived.

(a) The first possibility is for the speaker to represent both situations as t_0-factual by using two absolute past tense forms:

> Jim *left* before Bill *arrived*.

In such sentences the speaker just reports that two situations actualized in a particular order. The head clause situation is not interpreted as continuative and there is no resultative implication. The two absolute tense forms establish separate past domains. The temporal W-relation between the situation times is exclusively expressed by *before*. Both situations are interpreted as t_0-factual, i. e. as past facts.

Because we cannot normally use the Absolute Future System in an adverbial *before*-clause, a similar use of two tense forms establishing separate domains is not possible if the reference is to the post-present:

> Jim *will leave* before Bill {*leaves* / **will leave*}.

(b) In the second possibility, illustrated by *Jim left before Bill had arrived*, the speaker represents the head clause situation as t_0-factual (by using an absolute preterite) and represents the *before*-clause situation as not-yet-factual at the situation time of the head clause situation by using the past perfect. In doing so the speaker leaves it vague whether the *before*-clause situation eventually actualized (= became t_0-factual) or not:

> Jim left before Bill *had arrived. (= 'Jim left; Bill had not arrived when Jim left')*

The head clause is interpreted as t_0-factual because it uses an absolute preterite. The situation time of the *before*-clause is represented as T-anterior to the Anchor time (= the terminal point of the *before*-period).

When the reference is to the post-present, the tense of the head clause also establishes the domain, but it is not interpreted as t_0-factual, because the post-present is by definition not-yet-factual-at-t_0.

> Jim *will leave* before Bill *has arrived. (Has arrived is a Pseudo-t_0-System form expressing T-anteriority to the implicit Anchor time.)*

(c) The third possibility is for the speaker to represent the *before*-clause situation as t_0-factual and to represent the head clause situation as t_0-factual by representing its situation time as T-anterior to the central orientation time of the past domain:

> Jim had left before Bill arrived.
>
> He had been living there for many years before everyone accepted him.

When the reference is to the post-present, the head clause uses the future perfect to establish the domain and locate its situation time anterior to the central orientation time. The *before*-clause must represent its situation time as T-simultaneous with the implicit Anchor time, which is interpreted as coinciding with the central orientation time:

> Jim will have left before Bill arrives. *(The before-clause uses the present tense as Pseudo-t_0-System form. Its situation is expected to actualize but it is still nonfactual at t_0.)*
>
> He will have been living there for a long time before everybody accepts him. *(idem)*

14.21.3 In sections 14.11 to 14.13 we have discussed the factors (including the choice of tense) that induce a factual, counterfactual or not-yet-factual (respectively) reading of a *before*-clause.

14.21.4 The sections 14.14–16 have been devoted to *until*-clauses, which show many similarities with adverbial *before*-clauses, but are 'bifunctional' (= indicating duration and time) rather than purely time-specifying.

14.22 Summary of the discussion of *after*-clauses

14.22.1 The most common tense configurations in sentences consisting of a head clause and an *after*-clause referring to the past are illustrated by the following sentences:

John arrived after Mary left.

John arrived after Mary had left.

In *John arrived after Mary left*, the two situations are interpreted as t_0-factual. This means that both preterite forms are absolute tense forms establishing two separate domains. The temporal W-relation between the two central orientation times is expressed by *after*.

In *John arrived after Mary had left*, there is only one past domain, established by *arrived*. Mary's leaving is represented as T-anterior to this central orientation time (*arrived*) by *had left*. That John's arrival followed Mary's leaving is also expressed by *after*. John's arrival is interpreted as t_0-factual because *arrived* is an absolute past tense, and Mary's leaving is also interpreted as t_0-factual because what precedes a t_0-factual situation must also be t_0-factual. The temporal structure of *John arrived after Mary had left* is represented by Figure 14.18.

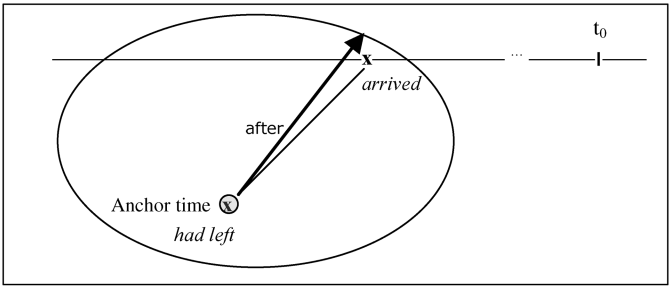

Figure 14.18. The temporal structure of *John arrived after Mary had left*.

When the reference is to the post-present, the corresponding sentences are the following:

John will arrive after Mary leaves.

John will arrive after Mary has left.

In both cases there is only one post-present domain, established by *will arrive*. The situation time of the *after*-clause is bound by the implicit Anchor time in terms of T-simultaneity (*leaves*) or, more frequently, T-anteriority (*has left*). In other words, only the head clause can use the Absolute Future System; the *after*-clause has to use the Pseudo-t_0-System.

14.22.2 If the time of the head clause situation is represented as T-posterior to an orientation time in a past domain, the situation time of the *after*-clause cannot also be represented as T-posterior to the orientation time in question. Instead, the situation time of the *after*-clause must as a rule be represented as W-simultaneous with the implicit Anchor time:

> [I knew that] John would leave the country after he {*graduated* / **would graduate*}.

This means that the situation time of the *after*-clause cannot be represented as T-posterior to the situation time of the matrix clause (to which the situation time of the head clause is T-posterior) by means of the conditional tense. Like other English adverbial time clauses, *after*-clauses do not allow this form of indirect binding. This restriction on using the conditional tense also applies to the conditional perfect:

> [I knew that] John would leave the country after he {*had graduated* / **would have graduated*}.

In this case too the situation time of the *after*-clause must be T-related to the implicit Anchor time (which *after* represents as W-posterior to the situation time of the head clause).

In a similar way, an *after*-clause whose situation time is interpreted as W-posterior to the situation time of the head clause uses the Pseudo-t_0-System rather than the Absolute Future System:

> John will leave the country after he {*graduates* / **will graduate* / *has graduated* / **will have graduated*}.

Glossary

Notes:

(a) The words underlined figure as separate entries in the glossary.

(b) Hyphens have been disregarded in the alphabetic ordering. For example, 'situation-time adverbial' follows 'situation time' and precedes 'situation type'.

Absolute deictic time-specifying adverbial: time-specifying adverbial which indicates an Adv-time that is anchored to the temporal zero-point, e. g. *today*, *this morning*, *tomorrow*, *tonight*, *yesterday*, *three weeks ago*, *since last week*, *until now*, etc.

Absolute Future System: system of tense forms used to establish a (new) temporal domain in the post-present time-zone. This system comprises the future tense (in its use as an absolute tense rather than as a pseudo-absolute tense) (e. g. *I {will / shall} probably be there*), as well as other verb forms locating a situation time in the post-present (i. e. 'futurish' forms, as in *I'm going to do it*) and absolute-relative tenses such as the future perfect or the (nameless) tenses built with *will have been going to* or *will be going to*.

Absolute past tense (or **absolute past** or **absolute preterite**): past tense which creates a past domain. The semantics of this tense is: 'The situation time is located in the past time-sphere (which is defined relative to the temporal zero-point)'.

Absolute present tense: present tense used as an absolute tense (i. e. used to locate the situation time at the real temporal zero-point) rather than as a pseudo-absolute tense (locating the situation time at a pseudo-zero-point).

Absolute preterite: see absolute past tense.

Absolute relation: temporal relation between the temporal zero-point and some other time.

Absolute-relative tense: tense which combines the expression of the meaning of an absolute tense with the expression of a temporal relation in a temporal domain (see relative tense), in other words, a tense which both establishes a temporal domain and indicates a T-relation in it. A typical example is the future perfect (e. g. *I will have left*) which expresses two T-relations: 'The time of the situation is anterior to an implicit time of orientation' and 'the implicit time of orientation is posterior to the temporal zero-point'. Other absolute-relative tenses are such (nameless) present time-sphere tenses as are built with *has been going to* or *will be going to* (and, at least theoretically, *has been going to have* V-*ed* and *will have been going to have* V-*ed*).

Absolute tense: tense expressing an absolute relation, i. e. which locates the time of a situation in one of the four absolute time-zones and in doing so relates it directly to the temporal zero-point. The preterite (e. g. *I did it*), the present perfect (e. g. *I have done it*), the present tense (e. g. *I'm doing it*) and the future tense (e. g. *I'll do it*) locate the situation time in the past, the pre-present, the present and the post-present, respectively.

Absolute time-zone: cover term for any of the four time-zones that are defined in direct relation to the temporal zero-point, namely the past time-zone, the pre-present time-zone, the present time-zone and the post-present time-zone. ('Time-zone' is a cover term for any of the four portions of the linguistic time line that together make up the two time-spheres. These four portions are the three parts of the present time-sphere (viz. the pre-present zone, the present zone and the post-present zone) plus the past time-sphere, which functions as a single zone. Since these four zones are defined in direct relation to the temporal zero-point, we call them 'absolute' time-zones.)

Absolute zone: see absolute time-zone.

Action: type of dynamic situation (or 'dynamic situation type') which actualizes under the control of an agent (e. g. *John dug a hole*).

Action verb: verb denoting an action, e. g. *walk*, *read*, *drink*, *look at*, *write*, *eat*, *abandon*, *ask*, *play*.

Actual world: possible world that is the real world, i. e. the world in which things are the way they are in the real world as we know it.

Actualization: noun related in its form and meaning to the verb actualize. It is the cover term used in this work for the performance of an action, the developing of a process, the holding of a state or the happening of an event. In all four cases we speak of the 'actualization' of the situation in question.

Actualization adverbial: indefinite time expression which does not inherently indicate a particular Adv-time but refers to the (non)actualization of a situation in a particular period, e. g. *already*, *always*, *not ... yet*, *ever*, *never*, *still*, etc.

Actualization aspect: linguistic category pertaining to whether the actualization of the situation referred to is or is not represented as bounded (i. e. as reaching an endpoint).

Actualization-explaining *because*-clause: clause which is introduced by the subordinating conjunction *because* and which expresses the reason for, or the cause of, the actualization of the head clause situation. For example: [*He was killed*] *because he knew too much*.

Actualization focus: term used in the discussion of the past tense, more specifically in cases where the speaker is concerned with some aspect of the actualization of the bygone situation (e. g. when, where, how, etc. it actualized), rather than with its relevance to the present structure of the world, as is the case when the present perfect is used.

Actualize: verb used as cover term for the predicates that are typically associated with the four types of situation. If we wish to avoid having to specify whether a clause expresses the performance of an action, the happening of an event, the development of a process or the existence of a state, we say that the clause in question expresses the actualization of a situation. Contrary to common usage, the verb *actualize* is used intransitively (in a similar way to *happen*, but referring more generally to the actualization of any of the four types of situation).

Adjectival clause: subclause forming part of a noun phrase and modifying the noun head (e. g. [*The man*] *who lives next door* [*is looking at our house*]). An adjectival clause is always a relative clause or a participial clause.

Adverbial clause: subclause whose function is typically associated with that of an adverb or adverbial phrase (e. g. [*I'll help you*] *when I have time*).

Adv-time: abbreviation of 'adverbially indicated time'. Thus, in *We left at five*, the Adv-time is specified by the adverbial *at five*.

Adv-time adverbial: time-specifying adverbial, i. e. adverbial indicating an Adv-time.

Adv-time of the head clause: in a complex sentence, the adverbially indicated time 'containing' the situation time of the head clause (in terms of inclusion or coincidence). For example, the sentence *John left when Bill was in the kitchen* tells us that there was a time in the past at which Bill was in the kitchen, and that that time 'contained' the time at which John left.

Adv-time of the {*when* / *before* / *after*}-clause: in a complex sentence with a {*when* / *before* / *after*}-clause, the Adv-time containing the situation time of the time clause situation. For example, in *John left when Bill arrived*, the time of Bill's arrival is contained by the Adv-time specified by the word *when*, which is a headless relative that can be paraphrased as 'at the time when'.

Adv-time-relation: temporal relation between an Adv-time (= adverbially indicated time) and a situation time or other orientation time. Such a relation can only be one of 'containment', i. e. either coincidence or inclusion. Thus, if there is an Adv-time relation between an Adv-time and a situation time, the Adv-time either coincides with the time of the (predicated) situation (as in *John left at five*) or includes that time (as in *John left yesterday*).

Adv-time-simultaneity: containment relation (i. e. proper inclusion or strict coincidence) between an Adv-time and a situation time or other orientation time. For example, in *John left {yesterday / at five}*, there is a relation of Adv-time-simultaneity between the Adv-time (indicated by *yesterday* or *at five*) and the situation time (= the time of John's leaving).

Agent: animate entity which performs or instigates a dynamic situation, i. e. which is responsible for the actualization of the situation because it does something that induces the situation to actualize.

Agentive: ontological feature of a situation-template (as expressed, for example, by the verb phrase *punched Bill on the nose*) which requires an agent for the actualization of the situation. The situation itself is then also said to be agentive (e. g. *John punched Bill on the nose*). An agentive situation need not involve intentionality, as when the agent does something accidentally, or under the influence of drugs, hypnosis, etc.

Aktionsart: (synonym of ontological aspect or lexical aspect): linguistic category pertaining to the way the lexical material in the verb phrase determines one or more inherent characteristics of a kind of situation (or, more correctly, a situation-template). For example, a verb phrase may represent a kind of situation as durative or punctual (compare, for example, *run* with *arrive*), as telic or atelic, as dynamic or static, etc.

Anchor time (or **temporal anchor**): the time to which an Adv-time is anchored, i. e. the time functioning as deictic source for the temporal relation expressed or implied by a deictic time-specifying adverbial. In the case of *today*, *yesterday*, *tomorrow*, etc. the Anchor time is the temporal zero-point. In the case of *that very same day*, *the next day*, *the day before*, etc. the Anchor time is not the temporal zero-point but a contextually given bygone or future time. In an *after*-clause or a *before*-clause, the Anchor time is the initial or terminal point, respectively, of the Adv-time indicated by the adverbial clause: the Anchor time is the point referred to by the second occurrence of the word *time* in 'at a time {after / before} the *time* at which', which is the semantic paraphrase of the conjunction.

Anchored time-specifying adverbial: see deictic time-specifying adverbial.

Anterior: adjective corresponding to the noun anteriority.

Anteriority: type of temporal relation. A given time A is anterior to a given time B if A either precedes B completely or starts before B and leads up to B but without including it (or part of it). Anteriority is W-anteriority if A is interpreted as anterior to B in the possible world referred to. Anteriority is T-anteriority if it is expressed by a tense form. Thus, in *John was born in London and died in Glasgow*, the former situation is interpreted as W-anterior to the latter, but it is not represented as T-anterior to it: the two past tense forms merely locate the times of the two situations in the past. The same is true of *He said he got up early*. By contrast, in *He said he had got up early*, the time of the getting up early is not only interpreted as W-anterior to the time of the saying but is also represented as T-anterior to it by the use of the past perfect form *had got up*.

Argument: any of the constituents that a verb requires to be used grammatically in a normal finite clause: a subject, sometimes called the 'external argument' (because it does not belong to the predicate constituent), and possibly one or more 'internal arguments', usually called complements (e. g. a direct object).

Aspect: in this work we distinguish between 'ontological aspect' (or 'lexical aspect' or 'Aktionsart'), 'grammatical aspect' and 'actualization aspect'. Out of context, the unmarked interpretation of *aspect* is grammatical aspect.

Aspect auxiliary: the grammatical auxiliary *be*, which is used for building progressive verb forms. (Progressive aspect is the only kind of grammatical aspect that can be systematically expressed by verb forms in English.)

Aspectualizer: lexical verb like *begin*, *start*, *commence*, *quit*, *stop*, *finish*, *continue*, *go on*, etc., which is placed before a nonfinite clause and which expresses the situation described by this clause as beginning, ending or ongoing. Thus, go on is an aspectualizer in *Let's go on working*.

Assertion (or statement): the illocutionary force of a declarative sentence. Sentences like *I love you* and *I don't love you* 'make an assertion'.

Assertive clause: A clause is assertive when the message (but not necessarily the form) of the clause is that of an affirmative assertion. Otherwise (i. e. when the message is negative and / or interrogative) the clause is nonassertive. Only nonassertive clauses can contain nonassertive items ('negative polarity items'). A negative assertion like *I didn't lift a finger to help him* is assertoric (= makes an assertion) but nonassertive – hence the use of the nonassertive item *lift a finger*.

Assertive item: word or phrase (often also called 'positive polarity item') which can normally only be used in an assertive clause, i. e. which cannot occur (except, sometimes, echoically) within the scope of a negator or question. For example, *already* is an assertive item: it can be used in positive (= affirmative) statements (e. g. *I have already met him*) and in interrogative clauses expecting a positive reply (e.g. *Have you already seen him?*), but not in (nonechoic) negative statements (e.g. *I haven't met him {yet / *already}*), nor in interrogative clauses that do not expect a positive reply (e.g. *Have you seen him yet?*). Another example is '*far from* + adjective': *He {is / *isn't} far from satisfied*).

Assertoric: A clause is assertoric if it realizes the illocutionary act of making an assertion. An assertoric clause is usually declarative, but there are cases in which an interrogative clause also makes an assertion: (a) if it expresses a rhetorical question, i.e. if the clause is interrogative in form but is interpreted as being declarative (e.g. *Need I say more?* on the interpretation 'Surely, I needn't say more.') and (b) if the interrogative clause expresses a '*yes / no*-question' (= polar question) which is interpreted as an assertion followed by a question tag asking for confirmation, e.g. *Is he your leader, then?* Also assertoric are so-called declarative questions, i.e. sentences that have the syntactic form (word order) of a declarative sentence but are interpreted as asking a question, e.g. *You're his father?*

Atelic: ontological feature, the opposite of telic. Said of a situation-template (denoted by a verb phrase) which does not represent the kind of situation referred to as telic, i.e. as tending towards a natural point of completion beyond which the situation cannot continue. Thus, in *Betty ran*, the verb phrase ran is atelic (= not telic). We also apply the label to the kind of situation that is not represented as telic – thus, running is an 'atelic situation' – and, by further extension, to clauses containing an atelic verb phrase.

Atemporal *when*-clause: see case-specifying *when*-clause.

Attributive noun phrase: when used in Donnellan's (1966) sense, said of a noun phrase which has definite reference in the sense that the speaker assumes the hearer to be familiar with the expression (= NP) in question, but not with the identity of the referent of the phrase. For example, when a theft has been committed, the speaker can use the NP *the thief* even if he does not know who committed the theft and does not assume the hearer to know that either. In other words, Donnellan (1966) applies the label 'attributive' to a linguistic expression which is definite in the sense that it gives a description which both the speaker and the hearer are familiar with, but which is not sufficient for either to 'pick out' the referent from a set of potential referents.

Auxiliary: see auxiliary verb.

Auxiliary verb (or **auxiliary**): 'helper' verb, i.e. a verb which has the grammatical function of helping the speaker to build a complex verb form (e.g. *will* and *have* in *will have put*). Unlike a lexical verb (or 'full verb'), an auxiliary has little or no lexical meaning: it expresses either a grammatical notion (like 'passive', 'progressive', 'tense') or a modal idea (like necessity, possibility, permission, etc.) or it has no meaning at all and is used simply because an auxiliary is required in certain contexts. (This is true of the 'periphrastic auxiliary' do, as in *"I don't like it. Do you?" – "Yes, I do."*) Morphosyntactically, an auxiliary differs from a lexical verb in that it has the NICE-properties, i. e. it does not trigger *do*-support in clauses that are negative, interrogative, used in code or involving emphasis on the verb.

Background: in a narrative text, the linguistic material which refers to durative and descriptive situations and which provides subsidiary information about the foreground. (This material is then said to have a 'backgrounding' function. This means that it does not 'push forward' the story.)

Backshifting: (1) change of tense forms when there is a shift from a present time-sphere temporal domain to a past time-sphere temporal domain. For example, *Has he done it?* is 'backshifted' to *had he done it* in indirect reported speech after a verb in the past tense: *I wondered if he had done it*. The speaker can also use backshifting for various other reasons, e. g. for tentativeness: {*Will* / *would*} *you please help me?* However, the term is especially used in connection with past represented speech. In this book it refers to the phenomenon that a present time-sphere tense or an absolute past tense in the 'original' direct speech utterance seems to be adapted into, respectively, a corresponding past time-sphere tense or a past perfect as a natural result of the fact that the situation time which was 'originally' T-related to the temporal zero-point is now T-related to the central orientation time of a past domain. (Backshifting is thus a semantically motivated phenomenon, viz. the use of past time-sphere tenses in a past domain) rather than a purely formal operation.) Compare, for example, *The shop* {*is* / *will be* / *has been* / *will have been* / *was*} *closed* and *They said that the shop* {*was* / *would be* / *had been* / *would have been* / *had been*} *closed*. (2) See modal backshifting.

Basic orientation time: the time of orientation in the structure of a tense from which the temporal relations expressed by the tense begin to be computed. In most cases the basic orientation time is the temporal zero-point (t_0) (e. g. *He has done it*), but there are cases in which it is a post-present binding orientation time which is treated as if it were t_0 (e. g. [*If Jim does it*] *he will have to admit to his wife that he has done it*). In both examples, the present perfect form *has done* locates the time of the situation of Jim's doing it before the basic orientation time. In the first example the basic orientation time is t_0; in the second it is a pseudo-zero-point, viz. the post-present situation time (= the time of admitting) which is treated as if it were t_0. (See also Pseudo-t_0-System.)

'Before now' interpretation: one of the two T-interpretations of the present perfect, namely 'The situation time is included in the pre-present and covers a portion of the pre-present that is not adjacent to t_0', as in *I've never seen* *that girl before*. This T-interpretation corresponds to the inclusion sense of the containment relation (between the pre-present zone and the situation time) that is part of the core meaning of the present perfect.

Bifunctional temporal adverbial: temporal adverbial that functions at the same time as a time-specifying adverbial and as a duration adverbial. In other words, it specifies both the temporal location of the situation time and the length of the corresponding full situation, as in *I was there from six to eight*.

Binding (or **temporal binding** or **temporal subordination**): the phenomenon that a situation time is T-related to another situation time (or another orientation time) within a temporal domain. For example, in *Meg had seen Jill*, the situation time of *had seen* is bound by (or 'temporally subordinated to') an orientation time which is not explicitly referred to but forms part of a past temporal domain. (Strictly speaking, it is only situation times that can be bound, but by extension we can also apply the label to the situation itself. In this way we can say that in *Sue knew that Meg had seen Jill* the situation of knowing is the 'binding situation', while the situation of Meg seeing Jill is the 'bound situation'.)

Binding orientation time: orientation time that serves as the starting point of a temporal relation expressed by a relative tense. Thus, in *Meg said that she had seen Jill*, the situation time of Meg's speaking is a binding situation time because the time of her seeing Jill (= the 'bound situation') is represented as T-anterior to it by the past perfect tense.

Block (an implicature): prevent an implicature from arising. See implicate.

Bound: see bound situation time.

Bound situation time: situation time that is T-related to (or 'temporally subordinated to' or 'temporally bound by') an orientation time in a domain. Thus, in *Meg said that she had bought a bike*, the situation time of the situation of buying is bound by (more specifically: represented as T-anterior to) the situation time of the situation of Meg's speaking (which is the 'binding situation').

Bounded: said of a particular instance of actualization of a situation, namely if the actualizing situation is either linguistically represented or W-interpreted as reaching a terminal point, i. e. as coming to an end. Thus, the clause *John read the letter* represents the situation of John reading the letter as having come to an end, unlike the clause *John was reading the letter*, which does not tell us whether John actually finished reading the letter or not. The term is also applied to clauses and sentences that represent (the actualization of) a situation as bounded.

Boundedness: the quality of being bounded.

Bounding constituent: constituent (of a clause) which adds the idea of a temporal right boundary, thus rendering the clause L-bounded, e. g. the object argument in *He read a poem*, the duration adverbial in *We worked for six hours* or the bifunctional temporal adverbial in *Jane was in her study from two to five*.

Bygone: preceding the temporal zero-point, i. e. located in the past zone or in the pre-present zone. For example, both *He did it* and *He has done it* represent the actualization of the situation referred to as bygone. We speak of a 'bygone situation' as well as of a 'bygone time'. A further distinction is made between 'T-bygone' (= linguistically represented as bygone by a tense) and 'W-bygone' (= what *is* bygone in the actual world but is not necessarily represented as bygone by a tense form).

Cancel (an implicature): deny that a suggested interpretation is correct. See implicate.

Case-specifying *when*-clause (or **atemporal *when*-clause**): *when*-clause which does not specify a time but describes the case(s) in which the head clause situation actualizes (i. e. the case(s) in which the head clause proposition is true). For example, *Children are orphans when their parents are dead*.

Central orientation time: the one orientation time in a temporal domain that is not T-bound by any other orientation time in the domain but is directly related to the temporal zero-point. In most cases the central orientation time is the situation time of the clause which establishes the domain by using an absolute tense (e. g. *knew* in *I knew that Tom hadn't seen the film yet and would want to go and see it*). When an absolute-relative tense is used (e. g. *He will have left by tonight*) the central orientation time is the orientation time (here 'contained' in the post-present Adv-time specified by *tonight*) to which the situation time is temporally subordinated.

Central time of orientation: see central orientation time.

Clause: linguistic expression with a syntactic structure. A prototypical clause consists of a noun phrase functioning as subject and a verb phrase (and optionally some other constituents) functioning as predicate.

Cleft (or **cleft construction**, **cleft sentence**, ***it*-cleft**): specificational sentence of the form '*It* (or occasionally *this* or *that*) + *be* + focused constituent + *wh*-clause' in which the *wh*-clause expresses the variable to which a value (expressed by the focused constituent) is given, e. g. *It was JOHN who did it*. (This is interpreted as 'the x who did it was: John'.) Apart from a *wh*-clause, the variable may also be expressed by a *that*-clause (e. g. *It was John that did it*) or, provided the value is an indication of duration, a *since*-clause (e. g. *It's three weeks since he left*). In the latter case we speak of a *since*-cleft.

Cleft construction: see cleft.

Cleft sentence: see cleft.

Closed condition: a condition which the speaker assumes to be fulfilled in the actual world (e. g. *If, as you say, you can't accompany me tonight,* [*I'll have to look for someone else*]) or which he assumes to be going to be fulfilled in a future possible world (e. g. *If, as you say, he will come here himself tomorrow,* [*there is no point in phoning him now*]). Clauses expressing a closed condition are typically echoic.

Code: the use of an auxiliary as pro-form for an entire verb phrase (as in *John will not be sleeping, but I will*).

Co-extensive interpretation: one of the two T-interpretations of the present perfect, namely 'the situation time is co-extensive with the pre-present and therefore leads up to t_0', as in *I've been thinking about you*. This T-interpretation corresponds to the coincidence sense of the containment relation (between the pre-present zone and the situation time) that is part of the core meaning of the present perfect.

Coincidence: one form of containment relation (the other being inclusion). Coincidence may be the containment relation between the time of the full situation and a situation time which is strictly simultaneous with the former, as in *John left at five o'clock*). It may also be the containment relation between an Adv-time (= adverbially specified time) and a situation time, as in *John left at five o'clock*, or between an Adv-time and an orientation time to which the situation time is T-related, as in *At five o'clock John had already left*.

Common Adv-time: in a complex sentence involving a head clause and an adverbial *when*-clause, the Adv-time of the head clause is interpreted as coinciding with the Adv-time of the *when*-clause. (This coincidence relation is due to the semantics of *when*, which means 'at a / the time at which'.) The term 'common Adv-time' is used to refer to these two coinciding Adv-times.

Complement (or **verb complement**): a VP-internal argument of a verb, such as a direct object (e. g. [*I hit*] *him*), indirect object (e. g. [*I gave*] *him* [*a kite*]), subject complement (e. g. [*Bill is*] *ill*), object complement (e. g. [*We called him*] *a fool*), prepositional object (e. g. [*I looked*] *into the question* [*carefully*]).

Complement clause: clause functioning as complement of a verb, such as *that he was ill* in *He said that he was ill*.

Complex relation (or **complex T-relation**): temporal relation of the sort expressed by a complex relative tense. For example, the conditional perfect (*would have* V-*ed*) expresses T-anteriority to an orientation time which is itself

T-posterior to some other orientation time in a past domain. The combination of T-posteriority and T-anteriority is a ‘complex relation’.

Complex relative tense: tense expressing two or more temporal relations at once within the same temporal domain. Examples are the conditional perfect (e. g. *would have left*) and some nameless tenses with (very unusual) forms such as *would have been going to leave* or *would be going to have left*.

Complex sentence: sentence minimally consisting of one head clause and one subclause. A complex sentence may involve several subclauses, some of which function as head clauses supporting other subclauses. For example, in *John left after I had told him that his shirt was dirty*, the clause *after I had told him* is at the same time a subclause depending on *John left* (which is the ‘matrix’) and the head clause on which depends the subclause *that his shirt was dirty.*

Complex T-relation: see complex relation

Compound sentence: sentence consisting of two or more coordinate clauses (= clauses of equal rank), in other words, sentence in which none of the constituent clauses is syntactically subordinate to another, e. g. *I will trim the hedge and you will mow the lawn.*

Conditional: As a noun, this term is short for either ‘conditional sentence’ (i. e. a combination of a conditional clause and a head clause) or ‘conditional tense’.

Conditional perfect: see conditional perfect tense

Conditional perfect tense (or **conditional perfect**): complex relative tense whose forms are built by combining the auxiliary *would* with the perfect infinitive (*have* V-*ed*) of the main verb. The semantics of this tense is: ‘The situation time is T-anterior to an orientation time which is itself T-posterior to some orientation time in a past domain or in a past or pseudo-past subdomain.’ For example: [*Bill* {*promised / had promised*}] *that he would have finished the job by the end of the day.*

Conditional sentence: combination of a conditional clause and a head clause (e. g. *I won’t be sad if she dies*).

Conditional tense: relative tense whose tense forms are a combination of the auxiliary *would* and the present infinitive of the main verb. The semantics of this tense is: ‘The situation time is T-posterior to an orientation time that forms part of a past domain, (e. g. [*He promised*] *he would do it*), or of a past subdomain (e. g. [*He admitted that he had promised*] *he would do it*) or of a pseudo-past subdomain (e. g. [*Don’t always make promises. Sooner or later you will regret that you promised*] *you would do something*)’.

Conjugated verb (**form**): verb (form) showing conjugation. Synonym: finite verb (form).

Conjugation: the phenomenon that a lexical verb can be used in a number of different forms, expressing such notions as person, number (= singular or plural), tense and grammatical aspect, e. g. *work*, *works*, *worked*, *will work*, *has worked*, *is working*, etc.

Constituent negation (or **narrow scope negation**): i. e. negation which has only one constituent of the clause in its scope (e. g. *I told her nothing about it*; *It wasn't John who was responsible*).

Constitution reading (or **constitution interpretation**): particular type of up-to-now reading of a clause in the present perfect, namely that reading in which the speaker focuses on the situational constitution of the pre-present zone and not only on the temporal location of a situation in that zone. The speaker as it were looks back on the pre-present to 'measure' it (e. g. *Nearly a year has gone by since then*) or to see how this period has been filled 'situationwise' (e. g. *What have you been doing?*; *How many times have you met him in the past week?*).

Contain: verb indicating the temporal relation of containment that holds between the time of the full situation and the situation time or between an Adv-time (= time indicated by an adverbial like *yesterday*) and a situation time (or other binding time). The temporal relation in question may be one of (strict) coincidence or (proper) inclusion. Thus, in *At five o'clock I was jogging*, the Adv-time contains the situation time in terms of coincidence, and the time of the full situation is interpreted as including the (punctual) situation time. In *I was there from two to four o'clock* the Adv-time (indicated by a bounding bifunctional temporal adverbial) coincides with the situation time, and, because it is bounded, the time of the full situation also coincides with the situation time. In both these examples the Adv-time thus 'contains' the situation time in the sense that the two coincide with each other; in contrast, in *John left yesterday* the Adv-time 'contains' the situation time in terms of inclusion. (See also containment.)

Contained orientation time: orientation time that is specified (i. e. 'contained' in terms of either inclusion or coincidence) by an Adv-time. For example, in *John left yesterday*, the contained orientation time is the situation time, i. e. the time of John's leaving. In *At five o'clock John had already left the office*, the contained orientation time is not the situation time but another (nonlexicalized) orientation time to which the situation time is T-anterior. See also contained orientation time of the head clause.

Contained orientation time of the head clause: in a complex sentence with a {*when* / *after* / *before*}-clause, the contained orientation time of the head clause is that orientation time from the tense structure of the head clause that is contained by the Adv-time established by the time clause. For example, in *John had already left when Bill arrived*, the contained orientation time of the head clause is the orientation time to which the situation time of the head clause is T-anterior.

Contained orientation time of the *when*-clause: in a complex sentence with a *when*-clause, the orientation time which is part of the tense structure in the *when*-clause and which is contained by the common Adv-time. This contained orientation time is either the situation time of the *when*-clause (as in *John left when Bill arrived*) or another orientation time to which the situation time of the *when*-clause is T-related (as in *John left when Bill had already arrived*).

Containment: (a) temporal relation between the time of the full situation and the situation time: the time of the full situation contains the situation time in terms of either inclusion or coincidence. In bounded clauses the time of the full situation coincides with the situation time (e. g. *Yesterday John ran two miles before breakfast*), whereas in nonbounded clauses it may either coincide with or include the situation time (e. g. [*"What was John doing from 5 to 5.30?"*] – *"From 5 to 5.30 John was running his usual two miles before breakfast."*). (b) There is also a containment relation (again in terms of inclusion or coincidence) between an Adv-time (= adverbially specified time interval) and a contained orientation time.

Continuative interpretation (or **continuative reading**): one of three possible W-interpretations of a clause in the present perfect, namely that on which the full situation is taken not only to fill the entire pre-present (= period leading up to t_0) but also to extend beyond t_0, so that the time of the full situation is taken to include the situation time (which coincides with the pre-present zone). Such a reading is realized, for example, in *Ian's been living in Lincoln since 1998*, which implies that Ian is still living in Lincoln.

Continuative perfect: present perfect tense form used in a clause receiving a continuative reading.

Continuous form: see progressive form.

Coordinate *(adj.)*: said of two or more constituents of equal rank. For example, in a compound sentence like *John was angry and Mary was shocked*, the two clauses are 'coordinate clauses': the relation between them is one of 'coordination', not syntactic subordination.

Coordination: the phenomenon that a syntactic unit (construction) is formed which consists of coordinate constituents only.

Copula (or **copular verb**, **linking verb**): verb like *be*, *seem*, *become*, etc., which has to be followed by a subject complement (as in *John is {ill / a nerd}* and which is incompatible with any other type of verb complement.

Copular verb: see copula.

Core meaning: the semantics of a tense, i. e. the tense structure expressed by the tense in question. For example, the core meaning of the present perfect is: 'The situation time is contained in the pre-present zone of the present time-sphere'. Given that containment can be defined in terms of either 'inclusion' or 'coincidence', there are two T-interpretations that are compatible with this core meaning: the 'before now' T-interpretation , which gives rise to the 'indefinite' W-interpretation (e. g. *I have seen that girl before*), and the co-extensive T-interpretation which gives rise either to an 'up-to-now' W-interpretation (e. g. *Where have you been?*) or to a 'continuative' W-interpretation (e. g. *I've been polishing this furniture for over an hour now*).

Counterfactual: contrary to fact; incompatible with the actual world and therefore belonging to a counterfactual world. The situation referred to in the counterfactual conditional clause *If John had been here …* is a 'counterfactual situation'.

Counterfactual world: possible world which is assumed by the speaker to be incompatible with the actual world or with any future possible world which might (or might not) eventually become the actual world. For example, *If I were you …* creates a counterfactual world: it refers to a situation which is incompatible with what is the actual world at any time.

Declarative question: sentence that combines the form (word order) of a declarative sentence with an interrogative meaning (e. g. *You're his father?*).

Declarative sentence (or **statement**): sentence which is not interrogative or imperative in form and makes an assertion rather than having the illocutionary force of another speech act (such as a question or imperative).

***De dicto* interpretation**: see intensional interpretation.

Defective verb: verb which has only one or two forms, e. g. *must*, *ought to*, *can / could*.

Definite: said of a referring expression which is assumed by the speaker to be sufficient for the hearer to identify the referent. *Yesterday*, *in 1983*, *the day before*, etc. are definite time-specifying adverbials. *The man* is a definite noun phrase. Donnellan (1966) distinguishes between two kinds of definite noun phrases: attributive noun phrases and referential noun phrases.

Deictic adverbial: see deictic time-specifying adverbial.

Deictic time-specifying adverbial (or **anchored time-specifying adverbial**): time-specifying adverbial which relates the Adv-time which it specifies to an anchor time. For example: in *I heard that name yesterday*, the temporal anchor is the temporal zero-point, since *yesterday* means ‘the day before t_0’. The anchor time may also be another time: see nondeictic time-specifying adverbial versus deictic time-specifying adverbial.

Denotation: meaning of a linguistic unit (a word, a phrase, a clause, etc.). The denotation of a verb (e. g. *walk*) is a simple situation-template; the denotation of a verb phrase (e. g. *walk to the church*) is an enriched situation-template, and the denotation of a clause is a situation. The denotation of a linguistic unit is to be distinguished from its reference (or referential meaning): in *John walked to the church*, the denotation of *walk to the church* is ‘go to the church on foot’, whereas the referential meaning of *John walked to the church* is the particular actualization of this kind of situation on a given past occasion. This particular actualization is the referent of the clause *John walked to the church*.

Denote: ‘mean’, in the specific sense of ‘have as its denotation’. See denotation.

Dependent clause: alternative term for subclause.

***De re* interpretation**: see transparent interpretation.

Direct binding: the phenomenon that the situation time of a subclause is T-bound by the situation time of its own head clause. Consider the following example: [*The police knew that*] *the girl had told her friends once or twice that she was afraid to go home*. Here, the situation time of the second *that*-clause is represented as T-simultaneous with that of the first *that*-clause, whose situation time is itself represented as T-anterior to the situation time of the matrix clause. The fact that the situation time of the second *that*-clause is also W-anterior to the situation time of the matrix clause is not expressed by its tense form *(was afraid)*.

Direct reported speech: reported speech in which the reported utterance or thought is not reported in the form of a subordinate clause (e. g. *He said that he was ill*) but is quoted as an independent sentence (as in *He said: ‘I am ill.’*).

Direct result: resultant state that inevitably comes about when the actualization of a situation is completed. For example, in *I’ve locked up the shop*, the completion of the action of locking up the shop automatically (and immediately) produces the state of the shop being locked up (even though this state is not likely to be a lasting one).

Discontinuation: the phenomenon that (the actualization of) a situation is no longer continuing at a given orientation time. See also implicature of discontinuation.

Dissective: typical characteristic of homogeneous clauses or homogeneous time adverbials. It means that any part of the referent of the clause or adverbial (i. e.

the actualization of a situation or an Adv-time, respectively) can be referred to by the same clause or adverbial that refers to the actualization or Adv-time as a whole.

***Do*-insertion**: insertion of the periphrastic auxiliary *do* in clauses that require an auxiliary but would not contain one if there were no *do*-support.

Domain (or **temporal domain**): set of orientation times each of which is temporally related to another by means of a tense. At least one of these orientation times is a situation time (since any tense form locates a situation in time). A domain is normally established by an absolute tense form and expanded by one or more relative tense forms. The latter establish temporal subdomains. Thus, in *John said he had prayed*, the tense form *said* establishes a past domain and *had prayed* creates a subdomain within that domain.

***Do*-support**: the phenomenon that in cases where an auxiliary is required the periphrastic auxiliary *do* is added to a lexical verb (except to *be*) because otherwise the clause would not contain an auxiliary. For example, because sentences like **I smoke not* or **Smoke you?* are ungrammatical, we have to apply *do*-insertion: *I don't smoke*, *Do you smoke?*.

Double pluperfect: the form '*had* + perfect infinitive', which is sometimes found instead of the past perfect in the conditional clause of a conditional sentence of the type illustrated by *I would have been happier if she had come*. For example: *Had he have lost this frame* [*it would have been all over for him*].

Duration adverbial: nontechnical term for any temporal adverbial that specifies the length of a situation. In other words, a cover term for pure duration adverbials (e. g. *for a split second*, *for two hours*) and bifunctional temporal adverbials (e. g. *from six to eight*). (The latter specify both time and duration.)

Duration-quantifying constitution reading (or **interpretation**): particular type of constitution reading of a clause in the present perfect, which arises when the speaker is specifically concerned with the length of the pre-present zone and indicates this by a bounded sentence referring to a duration-specifying situation (e. g. *Nearly a year has gone by since then*).

Durative (or **nonpunctual**): ontological feature, the opposite of punctual. Said of a situation-template which is conceived of as having a certain duration. By extension, the term can also be applied to a verb phrase (e. g. *write a book*) denoting such a situation-template, as well as to a situation that is conceived of as having duration, even if this situation is in fact a durative hypersituation consisting of consecutive punctual subsituations (e. g. *Someone was knocking at the door*). The term *durative* is also applied to time-specifying adverbials that indicate a specific time which has some duration (e. g. *yesterday*) – see durative time-specifying adverbial – and to nonpunctual duration adverbials (e. g. *for two hours*).

Durative situation verb: verb which denotes a durative situation-template.

Durative time-specifying adverbial: time-specifying adverbial which specifies an Adv-time that has some duration (e. g. *yesterday*).

Durative verb phrase: verb phrase which denotes a durative situation-template.

Dynamic (or **nonstatic**): ontological feature of some (punctual or durative) situation-templates. It means that the kind of situation referred to is not a state, and therefore involves change and requires an input of fresh energy to continue (e. g. walking). The term 'dynamic' is also applied to a verb phrase or predicate constituent lexicalizing a dynamic situation-template (e. g. *walked a mile*), as well as to the actualization of a dynamic situation (e. g. John's walking a mile yesterday) and to a clause referring to such a concrete actualization (e. g. *John walked a mile yesterday*).

Effected NP: noun phrase referring to the entity that comes into existence as a result of an action (typically expressed by a verb of creation). For example, in *I've written a poem*, the direct object refers to an effected NP.

Egressive aspect (or **terminative aspect**): kind of grammatical aspect. A speaker expresses egressive aspect when he uses a special verb form to represent the actualization of a situation as ending. Since English lacks a special verb form to express egressive meaning, this aspect is not grammaticalized in English. (If we want to refer to the terminal part of a situation, we have to add an aspectualizer like *stop*, *finish*, *end*, *leave off*, etc. to the verb referring to the situation.)

Embedded clause: alternative term for subclause.

Enriched situation-template: what is denoted by a multi-word verb phrase (e. g. *walk to the church*). An enriched situation-template can be further enriched by elements that do not belong to the verb phrase proper but to the predicate constituent (e. g. *walk to the church merrily on Sundays*).

Epistemic: see epistemic modality.

Epistemic modality: modality having to do with the possible degrees of the speaker's commitment to the truth of a proposition. For example, *This must be the answer!* expresses epistemic necessity, while *This cannot be the answer!* expresses epistemic impossibility (which can also, of course, be seen as a kind of epistemic necessity). Epistemic modality can be expressed by modal adverbs like *certainly, perhaps, possibly*, etc. or by auxiliaries like *must, should, ought to, will, can, could* and *need*. The representation of (the actualization of) a situation as factual, counterfactual or not-yet-factual also belongs to the realm of epistemic modality.

Event: type of dynamic situation (i. e. a dynamic situation type), e. g. bursting, exploding, falling off a ladder, snowing. An event differs from an action in that it does not actualize under the control of an agent but just happens. It differs from a process in that it is not evolving.

Event verb: verb denoting an event (e. g. *evolve*, *burst*, *take place*, *rain*, *occur*, *happen*, *break down*, *snow*).

Evidential *because*-clause: clause which is introduced by the subordinating conjunction *because* and which explains the basis on which the speaker comes to the conclusion that the head clause proposition is true. For example: [*There must be someone in the house*] *because there is a light on in one of the rooms*.

Evolving: ontological feature typical of processes (e. g. growing, getting dark, diminishing, deteriorating, etc.). This means that [+ evolving] is a feature of a situation-template which is at the same time dynamic, durative and non-agentive, and which is denoted by a verb phrase representing the kind of situation as gradually developing, i. e. as moving on a (usually implicit) scale. The term *evolving* can also be applied to the actualization of a process.

Expand (a domain): incorporate a new situation time into an existing temporal domain by using a relative tense form.

Expanded domain: temporal domain which comprises more than one situation time.

Experiential perfect: see perfect of experience.

Explanatory-resultative: said of a clause in the present perfect which receives an up-to-now reading and whose communicative function is to explain the origin of a present result. For example, [*Sorry I'm dirty.*] *I've been cleaning the cellar.* By extension the term is also applied to the tense itself. However, 'explanatory-resultative (present) perfect' is really short for 'clause in the present perfect having an explanatory-resultative function'.

Extensional interpretation: see transparent interpretation.

Factual: being, or having become a fact, in the actual world. Synonym of factual at t_0.

Factual at t_0 (or **t_0-factual**): said of a situation that has already actualized at the temporal zero-point (t_0) or is actualizing at t_0. For example, *John left before Bill arrived* represents both situations as having actualized before t_0 and therefore as being past facts (i. e. as being 'factual at t_0'). (By contrast, in *John wanted to leave before Bill arrived*, the *before*-clause is not interpreted as factual at t_0 because it refers to a situation which may or may not have actualized in the past: the situation of Bill's arrival was expected to actualize by John, but it was not yet a fact at the time of the head clause situation and the speaker leaves it vague whether Bill eventually arrived or not.)

Factual full situation: In clauses in one of the perfect tenses with a continuative reading, this term refers to that part of the full situation that has actualized in a period leading up to the relevant orientation time (which is the temporal zero-point in the case of the present perfect). Thus, in *Meg has been talking to the elephant for an hour now*, the temporal adverbial specifies not only the length of the pre-present zone but also the duration of the situation time coinciding with that pre-present zone. The full situation may or may not include t_0 and extend into the post-present. If it does, it consists not only of a part that is factual at t_0 but also of a 'potential' present and post-present part. The part that is factual at t_0 is called the 'factual full situation'. The entire situation, including both the t_0-factual part and the potential part, is called the 'potential full situation'.

Finite clause: clause whose verb form is a finite verb form.

Finite verb form: verb form that is marked for at least one of the grammatical categories tense, mood, person and number. For example, the finite verb form *works* is marked for tense (present), mood (indicative), person (third) and number (singular). (By contrast, a verb form that is an infinitive, gerund or participle is a nonfinite verb form.)

Focalizing *when*-clause: *when*-clause which does not specify the time of the head clause situation (or a time to which the time of the head clause situation is related) but expresses the speaker's temporal focus on a time of evaluation or observation. In one subtype, the *when*-clause suggests the idea of a travelling observing consciousness (e. g. *When you travel to Washington, Boston, Chicago or New York, the same problems exist*), in another, the focalizing *when*-clause indicates the 'epistemic time of evaluation', i. e. the time when the conclusion is reached that the statement made in the head clause is true (e. g. *When you look at the economics, this company needs a Japanese and a European partner to make it work*).

Foreground: in a narrative text, the linguistic material (sentences and clauses) which 'pushes forward' the story through time. (This material is said to have a 'foregrounding' function.) It is the foregrounding sentences and clauses of a story that form the 'backbone' of the story.

Foregrounding: see foreground.

Free indirect speech: type of represented speech in which an utterance or thought is represented in the form of an independent clause (which is not a quotation) rather than in the form of a subclause depending on a reporting clause (as is the case in indirect reported speech sentences like [*He said*] *that he was ill and had to stay at home*). For example: [*He let me know that he couldn't come.*] *He was ill. He had to stay at home*. In free indirect speech, what is reported is more often a thought than an utterance: [*He took her threat seriously.*] *She would not hesitate to carry it out*. The report retains some typical characteristics of a direct speech clause. Thus, it can have the form of a direct question (i. e. with inversion) (e. g. [*The constable looked at me uncomprehendingly.*] *Why ever did I insist on being arrested?*), it can be followed by a question tag (e. g. *So, that was what they were going to do, was it?*), etc.

Free relative clause (or **headless relative clause**, **nominal relative clause**): relative clauses without an overt antecedent (= head), i. e. whose antecedent is incorporated into the relative pronoun itself. For example: *what he wanted* (which means 'that which he wanted'). Because there is no overt noun as antecedent, the relative clause itself functions syntactically like a noun phrase. Thus, in *What he wanted was unreasonable*, the free relative clause has the nominal function of subject. (This is why we can speak of 'nominal relative clause'.)

Full situation: the complete situation (referred to in a clause) as it actualizes in whatever possible world is being referred to. The full situation should be distinguished from the predicated situation. The latter is that part of the full situation (possibly all of it) about which a claim is made in the clause. As is clear from *Two minutes ago John was in the library* (which does not exclude that John is still there), it is the predicated situation rather than the full situation that is located in time by the use of a particular tense.

Full verb: see lexical verb.

Future: (a) As a noun, *future* can be short for 'future tense' or can be used as a nontechnical term meaning 'post-present zone'. (b) As an adjective, *future* is usually linked up with post-present time reference. For example, *future situation* means 'post-present situation', which is short for 'situation whose situation time is located in the post-present zone'. Similarly, when we speak of *future time reference*, we normally mean 'reference to a time lying in, or being coextensive with, the post-present time-zone'. Occasionally *future* indicates a relation of posteriority to an orientation time other than the temporal zero-point. For example, we can say that in *Ten years later Bill* {*was to* / *would*} *be the richest man in town*, the verb form *was to be* or *would be* expresses 'future in the past' or (more correctly) 'future from the past', i. e. future relative to a past orientation time.)

Future continuous: progressive form of the future tense.

Future perfect: see future perfect tense.

Future perfect tense (or **future perfect**): tense which is formed by combining the future tense auxiliary *will* (or *shall*) with a perfect infinitive. The future perfect is an absolute-relative tense, because it combines an 'absolute relation' with a relative one: *will* expresses T-posteriority to the zero-point, thus establishing a post-present domain, while *have* V-*ed* expresses T-anteriority to the pseudo-zero-point in this post-present domain. This anteriority is similar either to the relation of anteriority to t_0 expressed by the absolute past tense – compare *John left at five* with [*John will no longer be there at six because*] *he will have left at five* – or (more commonly) to the relation of anteriority to t_0 expressed by the present perfect – compare *John has already left* with *John will already have left (by then)*. Accordingly, the semantics of the future perfect is: 'The situation time is located anterior to the central orientation time of a post-present domain.' Since that central orientation time is treated as a pseudo-zero-point, this comes down to saying that a future perfect form creates either a pseudo-past subdomain or a pseudo-pre-present subdomain. In addition, the future perfect can also be used as a 'pseudo-absolute-relative' tense, as in [*He will say that*] *he will have finished before 5 o'clock*, where the origin of the T-posteriority relation expressed by *will* is not the (real) zero-point but a post-present pseudo-t_0 (viz. the situation time of *will say*).

Future tense: tense whose forms combine the present tense form of one of the auxiliaries *will* or *shall* (the latter in the first person only) and a present infinitive (e. g. *will come*). The basic use of the future tense is to locate a situation time in the post-present zone of the present time-sphere. However, in a post-present domain, it can also be used as a pseudo-absolute tense (e. g. [*I will say that*] *I will be absent the next day*.)

Future tense auxiliary: the auxiliary *will* or *shall* (the latter in the first person only) when it helps to build a form of the future tense (as in *It will be cold tomorrow*) or of an absolute-relative tense like the future perfect (as in *He will have left by then*).

Futurish tense form: verbal expression which arguably combines future time reference with present time reference, more specifically, which links the post-present actualization of a situation to a particular kind of present state. Examples of futurish tense forms are the present progressive in *I'm leaving in a minute*, '*be going to* + present infinitive' in *It's going to rain*, and '*be to* + present infinitive' in *The Queen is to leave for Canada tomorrow*. Like future tense forms, futurish tense forms establish a post-present temporal domain.

Futurish verb form: see futurish tense form.

Futurity: see posteriority.

Generic sentence: universal sentence that predicates a typical characteristic of a kind (species), e. g. *Horses do not eat meat*. The term is also sometimes applied to habitual sentences that predicate a typical and permanent (nontemporary) characteristic of an individual (e. g. *Bill's cat chases dogs*).

Gerund: nonfinite verb form used in a gerund clause (e. g. [*I want to avoid her*] *getting* [*upset*]). See also present gerund and perfect gerund.

Gerund clause: nonfinite clause whose verb form is a gerund and which is typically used as a nominal clause, e. g. *being gay* ... in *By next week, you will write an essay on being gay {in antiquity / today / in the world of tomorrow}*. As this example shows, the situation time of *being gay* can be interpreted as anterior, simultaneous or posterior to the situation time of the situation referred to in the head clause.

Grammatical aspect: the use of a special grammatical form (more specifically: an inflectional suffix, an auxiliary or a combination of the two, as in the English progressive form) to express one of various meanings which have to do with how the speaker views the internal temporal structure of a situation.

Grammatical auxiliary: auxiliary with a purely grammatical function, e. g. the perfect tense auxiliary *have*.

Gricean Maxims: four principles of conversation, described by Grice (1975), which are conventionally observed by cooperative speakers and hearers, and which can trigger implicatures. See also Maxim of Quantity and Maxim of Relation.

Habit: situation that is characteristic of the referent of the subject noun phrase for an extended period of time (e. g. *John smokes*; *Bill mostly walks to work*). Because it is a characteristic, a habit is by definition a state. It does not necessarily involve repetition (e. g. *I used to be afraid of the dark*), but a habit is mostly a habitual-repetitive situation.

Habitual: being or expressing a habit. *John smokes* is a 'habitual sentence'. It refers to a 'habitual situation'. It has a 'habitual meaning (interpretation)', but is not an instance of habitual aspect because it does not contain a special verb form grammatically marking the situation as habitual. (The form *smokes* can also be used with a nonhabitual interpretation, e. g. in the historic present.)

Habitual aspect: kind of grammatical aspect characterized by the fact that the speaker uses a special verb form to represent a situation as a habit (i. e. as a situation which is characteristic of the referent of the subject NP over an extended period of time). (e. g. *She used to come and talk to him when she had finished working*).

Habitual-repetitive sentence: sentence referring to a habitual-repetitive situation.

Habitual-repetitive situation: habit involving repetition, i. e. habitual situation consisting of a number of similar or identical subsituations (e. g. *She comes to see me every night*). A habitual-repetitive situation is an example of a hypersituation.

Habitual sentence: sentence interpreted as referring to a habitual situation.

Habitual situation: situation which is interpreted as being a habit, i. e. as being characteristic of the referent of the subject NP over a certain period, e. g. the situations referred to in *John smokes*, *We're eating outside while this spell of good weather lasts*, *His dog is black*. See also habitual-repetitive situation, permanent habit, temporary habit.

Head (of a phrase): see phrase.

Head clause: clause which forms part of a complex sentence and on which another clause (i. e. a 'subclause', 'subordinate clause', 'dependent clause', 'embedded clause') is syntactically dependent. In *John left after he had promised he would finish the report*, the matrix clause is *John left*. This clause is the head clause on which the subclause with *had promised* depends. The latter clause is itself the head clause of the subclause with *would finish*. As this example shows, a head clause (or 'superordinate clause') may or may not be the matrix of a complex sentence.

Headless relative clause (or **free relative clause** or **nominal relative clause**): relative clause whose relative pronoun 'contains' a covert antecedent. For example: *what he wanted* (which means 'that which he wanted'). For more information, see **free relative clause**.

Heterogeneous (or **nonhomogeneous**): (a) Ontological feature of a telic kind of situation: 'not homogeneous'. For example, the verb phrase *run three miles* denotes a telic situation-template; it refers to a kind of situation which is not interpreted as homogeneous (= the same all the way through); this means that the verb phrase is only applicable to the kind of situation as a whole: there is no part of the situation type referred to by *run three miles* that can also be referred to by this (nonprogressive) verb phrase; (b) On the level of the clause, 'heterogeneous' is a characteristic of the actualization of a concrete situation; *John is going to run three miles* is a 'heterogeneous clause' because it can only be used to refer to the post-present situation as a whole: there is no part of the future (actualization of the) situation that can be satisfactorily referred to by the same clause. As regards clauses and the actualizations they refer to, there is a perfect correlation between the features [+ heterogeneous] and [+ bounded]. *Sheila drank a glass of beer* refers to an actualization which is bounded, and therefore heterogeneous, so that we can speak either of a 'bounded sentence' or of a 'heterogeneous sentence'; (c) 'Heterogeneous' (or ‘nonhomogeneous’) can also be applied to the (actualization of) a situation: a bounded (or heterogeneous) clause refers to a bounded (or heterogeneous) situation; (d) The term ‘heterogeneous’ is also applied to an Adv-time and to the adverbial indicating it: a heterogeneous Adv-time adverbial can only refer to the Adv-time as a whole, not to any smaller portion of it (e. g. *from 1983 to 1986*). The Adv-time in question is then also said to be heterogeneous.

Historic present (or **historical present**): use of the present tense to locate the situation time of a bygone situation in the present in order to represent this situation vividly, as if it were actualizing here and now (e. g. *Last night I’m having a drink at the local pub. Suddenly this guy walks in and* …).

Homogeneous: the opposite of ‘heterogeneous’. (a) On the level of the verb phrase, ‘homogeneous’ is an ontological feature of a durative situation-template: it means that a kind of situation is conceptualized as ‘the same all the way through’, i. e. as consisting of parts which are all of the same kind as the situation-template as a whole (e. g. *drink beer*). On this level, ‘homogeneous’ can be applied both to the kind of situation (which is then always atelic) and to the verb phrase denoting it. (b) On the level of clauses, ‘homogeneous’ is an inherent feature of nonbounded (actualizations of) situations. The sentence *She drank beer* can be called either a ‘homogeneous sentence’ or a ‘nonbounded sentence’. The actualization of the situation referred to, and by extension the situation itself, can also be called ‘nonbounded’ or ‘homogeneous’. A homogeneous clause can refer not only to (the actualization of) a situation as a whole but also to any representative part of it. Thus, if *John was walking* truly describes what John was doing between 2 o’clock and 4, it can also be used to describe what John was doing between 2 and 3, and between 2.30 and 3, etc. (c) In respect of Adv-times, homogeneity means that the Adv-time-adverbial can indicate not only the Adv-time as a whole but also portions of it. For example, *today* is a ‘homogeneous Adv-time-adverbial’ because any part of today, whether bygone, present or future, can be referred to as *today*. This explains why any of the absolute tenses is compatible with *today*: *I had no time for breakfast today*, *I haven’t seen him yet today*, *I’m 21 today*, *I’m feeling queasy today*, *I will visit him today*.

Hot news reading (or **hot news interpretation**): a particular usage type (functional reading) of the indefinite perfect: the sentence in the present perfect is used to ‘announce’ a bygone situation, i. e. to present the bygone actualization of the situation in question as very recent and as having high current significance. For example: [*Have you heard?*] *Kim Clijsters has won the US Open!*.

Hypersituation: repetitive situation, i. e. situation whose actualization involves the actualization of a number of similar subsituations, e. g. [*All the time I was speaking*] *John was nodding assent*; *She stabbed him six times with her penknife*.

Iconic sequencing: the unmarked interpretation of a sequence of two or more bounded clauses using an absolute tense form: the situations referred to are interpreted as actualizing in the temporal order in which they are referred to. Thus, the unmarked interpretation of *Bill hit John, who hit him* is that John hit Bill first, and then Bill hit John. (This unmarked interpretation can easily be overruled by the context, as in *Bill hit John, who hit him the day before*, or by pragmatic knowledge, as in *The policeman arrested John, who robbed the bank*).

Illocutionary force: the illocutionary force of an utterance is the intention of the speech act (e. g. promise, request, piece of advice, rebuke, etc.) performed by the speaker by making the utterance. For example, *Will you help me?*, *Shall I drive you there?* and *You will do as I say!* have the illocutionary force of a request, an offer of service and an instruction, respectively.

Imperfective aspect: cover term for inchoative, progressive or egressive aspect. Imperfective aspect is expressed by verb forms which do not refer to the actualization of a situation as a whole, but only to its beginning, middle or end. In English, progressive aspect is the only kind of imperfective aspect that is grammaticalized.

Imperfective meaning: meaning conveyed by a verb form expressing imperfective aspect.

Imperfective verb form: verb form which expresses imperfective aspect, i. e. which explicitly refers to only the beginning, middle or end of (the actualization of) a situation, not to the complete situation. For example, in *I was writing an essay* [*when Henry came in*] the progressive verb form *was writing* refers to the middle of the situation only (hence the possible paraphrase 'I was in the middle of writing an essay [when Henry came in].').

Implicate: to express an implicature, i. e. to suggest that something is the case unless there is a contextual or pragmatic indication to the contrary. For example, in clauses referring to a homogeneous situation the past tense implicates that the actualization of the situation referred to is over at the temporal zero-point. Thus, *Tim was very angry* suggests that Tim is no longer angry, but this implicature can be blocked or cancelled by the context: It is blocked (prevented from arising) by the presence of *already* in *Tim was already very angry yesterday*, and it is cancelled (explicitly denied) in *Tim was very angry – in fact he still is*.

Implicature: aspect of interpretation which does not follow from the semantic meaning of a word, constituent or construction but which either follows from contextual information or pragmatic knowledge of the world or results from the application of conversational principles, such as the Gricean Maxims. It is typical of implicatures that they can be blocked or cancelled by the context – see implicate for examples.

Implicature of discontinuation: implicature attached to the use of the absolute past tense when the full situation is homogeneous and there is no linguistic or contextual indication that the situation time (= time of the predicated situation) is included in (and hence shorter than) the time of the full situation. The implicature says that under these conditions the situation time can be assumed to coincide with the time of the full situation and hence to be over at the zero-time. For example, *Meg swore a lot when she was younger* implicates that this is no longer the case. This implicature would be cancelled by the contextual addition of *and she still does*.

Implicit condition: condition that is not overtly expressed but is implicit in one of the constituents of the sentence, for example in a pro-form (e. g. [*I think we should go home now.*] *Otherwise it will be dark before we get home*. ('otherwise' = 'if we don't go')), or in a nominal (e. g. *THAT would be quite interesting*. (*'that' = 'if that happened'*, etc.)).

Implicit orientation time: orientation time which is implicit in the semantics of a temporal conjunction. For example, in *By the time Bill had left the room it was too late to act*, the verb form *had left* represents the leaving as anterior to the implicit orientation time referred to by *the time* in the phrasal conjunction *by the time (that)*. Similarly, in *I wanted to be in the pub before Ted arrived,* the conjunction *before* means 'before the time at which' and arrived is a relative past tense form representing Ted's arrival as T-simultaneous with the implicit orientation time (lexicalized by *the time* in the paraphrase 'before the time at which').

Implicit pre-present: said of the length of the pre-present zone in the absence of a time-specifying adverbial or another contextual indication specifying this length. If it remains implicit, the pre-present zone is taken to be the shortest period that makes sense in the given context. Thus, in *Have you had breakfast yet?* the time span leading up to now will be interpreted as something like 'since you got up', not as, say, 'in the last few weeks'.

Inceptive aspect: see ingressive aspect.

Inchoative aspect: see ingressive aspect. See also partly inchoative interpretation.

Inclusion: 'Time A includes time B' means that B is shorter than A and falls within the boundaries of A. For example, in *I am his daughter*, the time of the full situation includes the temporal zero-point (time of speech). Inclusion is one form of the containment relation that exists not only between the time of the full situation and the situation time but also between an Adv-time (= an adverbially specified time interval) and a situation time (or another orientation time). For example, in *Jim had already left before breakfast* the Adv-time indicated by *before breakfast* includes the (unspecified) orientation time to which the situation time (= the time of Jim's leaving) is represented as T-anterior. (Apart from inclusion, containment can in principle also mean coincidence. Thus, in I left at five the Adv-time contains the situation time in terms of coincidence: the time indicated by *at five* coincides with the time of my leaving.) What we call inclusion is often referred to as 'proper inclusion'.

Inclusive adverbial: see inclusive duration adverbial

Inclusive duration adverbial: adverbial measuring the duration of (the actualization of) a situation by answering the question *Within what time?*, e. g. [*He finished the work*] *in an hour*, [*Everything will be arranged*] *within the next five minutes*. Such an adverbial can be added to bounded clauses only, e. g. *I ran the marathon in less than two hours*; *Within the next five minutes I had served six clients*. (The same adverbials are not inclusive adverbials in clauses that receive an inchoative interpretation, as in *He was here in an hour*, which means 'It was an hour before he was here'.)

Inclusive reference: reference to a set which implies or implicates reference to all the members of the set. For example, in *I cleared away the glasses after the party*, the reference to the set of glasses is (by implicature) interpreted as reference to all the glasses of the relevant set.

Inclusiveness implicature: implicature that definite noun phrases should be interpreted as having inclusive reference, i. e. as referring to all the members of the set denoted by the definite noun phrase. Thus, *I've drunk the bottles of beer* implicates that I have drunk all the bottles of beer in question.

Incurable habit: typical behaviour that is (a) unpredictable in that it actualizes from time to time but not at set times, (b) unintentional (hence not controlled by an agent) and (c) usually interpreted by the speaker as annoying or disturbing. An incurable habit is typically expressed in a clause which combines a progressive verb form with an adverbial like *always*, *forever*, *perpetually*, *constantly*, etc. For example, the sentence *She's always imagining everybody is looking at her* refers to a habit which consists of a repetition of a kind of situation that is interpreted as lying beyond the control of the subject referent, in the sense that she cannot help thinking that everybody is looking at her (because it forms part of her nature to entertain such imaginary ideas).

Indefinite interpretation (or **indefinite reading**): one of three possible W-interpretations of a clause in the present perfect. On an indefinite interpretation, the situation time is located in the pre-present zone, and the time of the full situation is taken to precede the temporal zero-point and to be non-adjacent to it. This reading is called ‘indefinite’ because it implies that the precise temporal location of the situation time remains indefinite: all that we know is that the situation time lies somewhere in the pre-present. For example: *Have you ever been to Togo?*; [*Nobody can enter the house, because*] *I have locked the door and hidden the key.*

Indefinite perfect: present perfect tense form used in a clause receiving an indefinite interpretation.

Indefinite reading: see indefinite interpretation**.**

Independent clause: clause that is used as a sentence or which is one of the coordinate clauses of a compound sentence or which functions as a head clause in a complex sentence (see also matrix). ‘Independent clause’ thus means ‘syntactically independent clause’, i. e. clause which is not a subclause.

Indirect binding: a special form of T-binding: the situation time of a subclause is T-bound by the situation time of a clause which is not the head clause on which the subclause in question syntactically depends but a clause higher up the syntactic tree. The situation of the subclause in question is then interpreted as W-simultaneous with the situation of its head clause, but the tense form of the subclause does not express T-simultaneity. For example: [*I remembered that*] *when I had first met him he had been wearing blue jeans*. Here, the situation times of *had met* and of *had been wearing* are interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other, but neither tense form expresses this relation: both situation times are represented as T-anterior to the situation time of *remembered*. Compare: direct binding.

Indirect reported speech: type of represented speech in which the reported utterance or thought is not quoted as an independent sentence (as in *He said: “I am ill.”*, which is an instance of direct reported speech) but is reported in the form of a subclause (e. g. *He said that he was ill*).

Indirect result: resultant state which is not a direct result (i. e. a resultant state that inevitably comes about when a situation is completed) but whose existence is **implicated** by a perfect tense form used in a particular kind of context. Consider, for example, the following piece of discourse: [*I’ve taken a lot of responsibility in my first job already.*] *I’ve taken the savings to the bank, I’ve dealt with difficult customers and I’ve locked up the shop*. Here, the present perfect tense forms implicate that I am considered a responsible employee, or that I have shown that I am a very capable employee, or something similar. These implicated present results are indirect results.

Indirect speech: see indirect reported speech, free indirect speech.

Infinitival clause (or **infinitive clause**): nonfinite clause whose verb form is an infinitive, e. g. *for you to come earlier* in *I was hoping for you to come earlier.*

Infinitive: see present infinitive and perfect infinitive. When we simply speak of 'infinitive', we normally have the present infinitive (i. e. the unmarked option) in mind.

Infinitive clause: see infinitival clause.

Ingressive aspect (or **inchoative aspect** or **inceptive aspect**): kind of grammatical aspect. Ingressive aspect means that the speaker uses a special verb form to represent the actualization of a situation as just beginning. This aspect is not grammaticalized in English: English does not have a special grammatical form to express ingressive meaning. It uses an aspectualizer like *begin* or *start* (inserted before the verb) instead.

Intensional domain: a nonfactual possible world established, for example, by a future tense form or by an intensional verb like *imagine, say, think, want,* etc. An intensional domain is a domain of interpretation which has its own presuppositions and truth conditions, in terms of which propositions can be evaluated and interpreted. An intensional domain always functions as a temporal domain. After a weak intensional verb (like *say*), the complement clause can optionally shift the domain (e. g. *He said that John and Shirley {were / are} not married*). This is not normally possible after a strong intensional verb (such as *imagine*, *fancy*, *dream*, *wonder*, etc.): [*Is that her?*] *I thought she {was / *is} taller.*

Intensional interpretation (or **opaque interpretation**): interpretation in terms of an intensional world. For example, in *John believes that Paris is the capital of Italy*, the *that*-clause is true in the intensional world of John's belief, but not in (what the speaker knows to be) the actual world. That is, *Paris is the capital of Italy* is true on an intensional (opaque) interpretation, but not on a transparent one.

Intensional verb: verb (like *claim*, *believe*, *imagine*, etc.) creating an intensional domain. See also strong intensional verb and weak intensional verb.

Intensional world: possible world which is not the actual world (e. g. the world created by an *if*-clause). See also intensional domain.

Intentionality: the idea that an action is performed intentionally (consciously, deliberately). This feature is often included in the definition of agentivity, but not so in this book. (A sleep-walker opening a door is an agent, and so is someone opening a door under the influence of hypnosis, but in neither case is the agent in question acting intentionally.)

Intransitive verb: (a) Strictly speaking: a verb that can only take a subject argument, i. e. a verb which cannot be followed by a complement (e. g. *sit*);

(b) Informally, a verb that could take a complement but is used intransitively (i. e. without a complement), e. g. *eat* in *John was still eating when I left*.

Inversion: the phenomenon that the syntactic subject does not precede the verb form but follows the operator (i. e. the auxiliary or first of the auxiliaries). For example, there is as a rule inversion in independent interrogative clauses that are not *wh*-questions. Compare *Has John left?* (with inversion) with *John has left* and *Who has left?* (without inversion). Inversion also occurs with *be* and *have*.

Inverted pseudo-cleft: pseudo-cleft in which the value constituent is processed as syntactic subject and the variable constituent as subject complement (e. g. *A* BOOK *was what he gave me*). See also specificational sentence.

Irrealis: referring to a counterfactual world.

Irregular verb (or **strong verb**): verb that does not form its past tense and / or past participle by the mere addition of a dental suffix (written as *-ed* or *-d*) to the stem of the verb (e. g. *blow – blew – blown*; *bring – brought – brought*; *creep – crept – crept*; *go – went – gone*).

***It*-cleft**: cleft introduced by *it*. For example: *It was The Bard who wrote: "Let's kill all the lawyers"*; *It is with a profound sense of regret that I announce my resignation*.

Iterative aspect: see repetitive aspect.

Iterative verb: verb which represents a kind of situation as consisting of a rapid repetition of subsituations of the same kind, such as *hammer*, *twinkle*, *stutter, rattle, stammer*, etc. In other words: verb which has [+ iterative] as one of its ontological aspect features.

L-bounded: said of a bounded situation whose boundedness is a matter of linguistic representation (rather than of interpretation based on pragmatic inference). Also said of a clause or sentence representing a situation as bounded (i. e. as ending). For example: *Jim was in the library from two to four*. One case of L-boundedness is when a bounded meaning is produced by the combination of a telic verb phrase and a nonprogressive verb form, as in *I will write three letters (in the next half-hour*): such a sentence is L-bounded.

Lexical aspect (or **ontological aspect** or **Aktionsart**): linguistic category pertaining to the way in which the lexical material in the verb phrase determines one or more inherent characteristics of a kind of situation (or, more correctly, a type of situation-template), for example, whether it is (conceived of and represented as) durative or punctual (compare, for example, *run* with *arrive*), telic or atelic, dynamic or static, etc.

Lexical meaning: semantic meaning of a word which has to do with the typical characteristics of the referents of the word in the actual world (or in whichever possible world is being talked about). For example, the lexical verb *kill* has a lexical meaning because it refers to a specific type of situation which exists in the world as we know it. The auxiliary *have* in *They have left* does not have a lexical meaning but has a grammatical function: it is used to build a perfect tense form.

Lexical verb (or **full verb**): verb which differs from an auxiliary in that (a) it is not a defective verb, (b) it has a full lexical meaning and (c) with the exception of *be*, it requires *do*-support (i. e. the addition of *do*) in some types of questions, negative clauses, etc. (see NICE-properties). For example: *explode*, *play*, *melt*, *resemble*, etc.

Linking verb: see copula.

L-nonbounded: said of a nonbounded situation whose nonboundedness is a matter of linguistic representation (rather than of pragmatic inference). Also said of a clause or sentence failing to represent a situation as L-bounded.

Main clause: term sometimes used as an alternative to 'head clause' (= any clause on which another clause is syntactically dependent) and sometimes as an alternative to 'matrix' (= highest clause in the syntactic tree structure of a complex sentence). Because it is potentially ambiguous between these two meanings, the term 'main clause' is not used in this work. We use the unequivocal terms 'head clause' and 'matrix' instead.

Main verb: form of a lexical verb which is used in a verb form that also involves one or more auxiliaries (e. g. *walked* in *should have walked*, or *working* in *may have been working*).

Matrix: head clause which forms part of a complex sentence and is not a subclause of another head clause, e. g. the clause *John said* in *John said that he was thirsty because he had worked hard and that he badly needed a drink*. In other words, the matrix is the highest clause in the inverted tree structure representing the syntactic structure of a complex sentence.

Matrix clause: see matrix.

Maxim of Quantity: one of the Gricean Maxims. The most important claim of this Maxim is that a cooperative speaker should give the addressee all the information that is needed for a good understanding of the sentence(s) uttered. Because of this Maxim, a sentence like *Kill the hostages!* implicates (and will be understood as meaning) that *all* the hostages should be killed (otherwise the speaker should add an expression restricting the reference to the set of hostages, as in *Kill the oldest six of the hostages!*) – see inclusiveness implicature.

Maxim of Relation (or **Maxim of Relevance**): one of the Gricean Maxims. The most important claim of this Maxim is that a cooperative speaker should only say things that are relevant to the current discourse. This is why in ["*I don't think John has a girl-friend.*" – "*Well,*] *he took Sybil out three times last week*, the reply suggests (= implicates) that John does have a girl-friend, namely Sybil.

Maxim of Relevance: see Maxim of Relation.

Measure phrase: phrase 'measuring' a time interval, i. e. indicating the duration of the interval or making clear where its right boundary lies. The interval in question may be the time span taken up by the actualization of a situation. In the following examples, the measure phrases are underlined: *John walked three miles* / *Simon slept for four hours* / *Soames repaired all these cars this morning*.

Metalinguistic negation: wide scope negation used to reject the truth of the sentence as a whole, i. e. to contradict a statement or implicature to the contrary. For example: ["*The party was boring.*"] – "*The party was NOT* boring. [*On the contrary, it was quite lively.*"].

Modal backshifting: the substitution of the past perfect for the past tense in a *before*-clause in order to trigger a not-yet-factual meaning. For example, whereas *I saw him before he saw me* is roughly equivalent to 'He saw me after I saw him', *I saw him before he had seen me* is interpreted as 'He had not seen me yet when I saw him'.

Modality: semantic category comprising two types of meaning: (a) the representation of the speaker's assessment of the likelihood that a proposition is true (or that the situation referred to by a proposition actualizes), and (b) the representation of one of the factors affecting the (non)actualization of the situation referred to, such as (un)willingness, (im)possibility, (in)ability, obligation, necessity, advisability, permission, prohibition, volition, etc. Modality which has to do with the truth of the utterance is called epistemic modality. The other type is referred to as nonepistemic (or root) modality.

Momentary: (synonym of punctual): lasting for a very short moment only, having no observable duration.

Mood: grammatical (formal) category referring to the systematic use of lexical verb forms not preceded by a modal auxiliary to express particular kinds of modal meaning. English is generally considered to have three moods, viz. the indicative, the imperative and the subjunctive.

Multiple-orientation-time adverbial: time-specifying adverbial denoting an Adv-time which contains two or more orientation times (which are usually situation times). For example, in *Yesterday Sue left before Beth arrived*, the times of the two situations referred to are included in the Adv-time specified by *yesterday*, which is therefore a multiple-orientation-time adverbial.

Multi-zone time-specifying adverbial (or **multi-zone adverbial**): deictic time-specifying adverbial specifying a time span which includes more than one time-zone. For example, *today* indicates a period which includes the present zone (= t_0) as well as the post-present and the pre-present or the past, and is therefore compatible with any of the four absolute tenses: *He's doing it today*, *He finally did it today*, *He's done it today*, *He'll do it later today.*

Narrative *before*-clause: foregrounding *before*-clause. See narrative time clause.

Narrative time clause: time clause which does not specify an Adv-time (containing the situation time of the head clause) but 'pushes forward the action', i. e. forms part of the backbone (= foreground) of the story. A typical instance is a 'narrative *when*-clause', as in *We had just entered the building when there was a terrific explosion in the street*, where the head clause situation specifies the time of the *when*-clause situation rather than the other way round. The following is an example of a 'narrative *before*-clause': [*When he arrived at the house*] *he hesitated a moment before he rang the bell.*

Narrative *when*-clause: foregrounding *when*-clause. See narrative time clause.

Narrow scope negation: negation which has only one constituent of the clause in its scope (e. g. *JOHN was not responsible,* [*it was Fred!*])

Narrow scope question: question which has only one constituent of the clause in its scope (e. g. *Who did you see?*, *Was it John who was responsible?*). Wh-questions always have narrow scope.

Necessary adverbial: adverbial that cannot be omitted without a drastic change of meaning or without creating an ungrammatical or nonsensical clause. In *I put the books on the table*, the prepositional phrase *on the table* is such a necessary adverbial. Like verb complements, necessary adverbials form part of the verb phrase of the clause.

Negative polarity item: see nonassertive item.

Neutral prediction: use of the future tense auxiliary *will* (or *shall*) in cases where the speaker merely predicts something or assumes that something is likely to happen, without representing the post-present (non)actualization of the situation as determined by present circumstances, such as the present volition or intention of the subject of the sentence or a present possibility, necessity, arrangement, etc. For example: *Tomorrow it will be rainy but warm.*

NICE-properties: morpho-syntactic characteristic of auxiliary verbs: unlike lexical verbs (except *be*), auxiliaries are used without *do*-support in clauses that are negative, interrogative, used in code or involving emphasis on the verb. ('NICE' is an acronym for 'negation, interrogative, code, emphasis'.) For example, we say *He* {*doesn't work* / **works not*}, but *He* {*hasn't worked* / **doesn't have worked*}.

Nominal clause (or **noun clause**): subclause with a nominal function, i. e. a function typically associated with a noun phrase. For example: in [*I don't know*] *if I can believe that* [*because my sister denies it*], the *if*-clause is a nominal clause because it functions as complement of the verb *know*.

Nonassertive clause: clause of which the message is not that of an affirmative assertion, i. e. the message is negative and / or interrogative. Only nonassertive clauses can contain nonassertive items ('negative polarity items'). Thus, a negative assertion like *I didn't lift a finger to help him* is assertoric but nonassertive – hence the use of the nonassertive item *lift a finger*.

Nonassertive item: word or expression (often also called 'negative polarity item') which can appear in nonassertive clauses only (e. g. *at all*).

Nonbounded: not represented as having boundaries. See nonbounded clause, nonbounded noun phrase, nonbounded situation, L-nonbounded, W-nonbounded.

Nonbounded clause: clause which does not represent the actualizing situation referred to as bounded. A nonbounded clause refers to a nonbounded situation and is by definition homogeneous.

Nonbounded noun phrase: noun phrase with nonbounded reference, i. e. noun phrase referring to a set or mass whose boundaries are unspecified (e. g. *bees*, *milk*). A nonbounded noun phrase has homogeneous reference: *bees* can indicate any set or subset of bees that contains at least two bees; any amount of a given amount of milk is milk.

Nonbounded situation: said of a particular instance of actualization of a situation. On the level of linguistic representation it means that the clause referring to the actualization of the situation does not represent it as bounded (= reaching a terminal point, coming to an end). On the level of interpretation, it means that the actualization is not interpreted as terminating. Sentences like *John was reading the letter* or *John drank whisky* do not involve reference to a terminal point, so that the actualizations referred to are not represented as bounded. However, it is possible that for pragmatic reasons the actualization of a situation which is not linguistically represented as bounded is *interpreted* as being over (and hence as bounded). If that is the case, the (actualization of) the situation is W-bounded, but still L-nonbounded (= not linguistically represented as bounded). A nonbounded clause is by definition homogeneous.

Nonboundedness: the quality of being nonbounded.

Nondeictic adverbial: shorthand for nondeictic time-specifying adverbial.

Nondeictic time-specifying adverbial (or **unanchored time-specifying adverbial**): time-specifying adverbial which does not relate the Adv-time to an anchor time. For example: in *I've heard that name at some time or other*, the Adv-time specified by *at some time or other* is not linked to a given temporal anchor.

Nondurative: see punctual.

Nonepistemic (or **root**) **modality**: type of modality that is not concerned with the truth of the utterance but either with the speaker's attitude towards the actualization of a situation (e. g. *You must pay me back now!*) or with other factors affecting the (non)actualization of the situation referred to, such as the presence or absence of willingness (e. g. *I won't help you if you don't pay me*), possibility (e. g. *Aerosols can explode*), ability (e. g. *John can swim*), etc.

Nonfactual world: a possible world which is not the actual world at a given time. A nonfactual world is either counterfactual (as in *If only I was younger!*), not-yet-factual (as in *I will leave tomorrow*) or purely hypothetical (as in *If he changed his mind …* or *If he comes …*).

Nonfinite clause: clause whose verb form is a nonfinite verb form. Gerund clauses, infinitival clauses and participial clauses are nonfinite clauses.

Nonfinite verb form: a verb form that is an infinitive, gerund or participle. Such a verb form is not finite because it is not marked for tense, mood, person or number.

Nonhomogeneous: see heterogeneous.

Noninclusive duration adverbial: duration adverbial answering the question *For how long?* (rather than *Within what time?*, as in the case of an inclusive duration adverbial), e. g. *for hours*, *all afternoon*. Such an adverbial can be added to nonbounded clauses only (disregarding a repetitive interpretation of bounded clauses), e. g. *I ran all afternoon* (*I ran* is a nonbounded clause); **I ran a mile for three days* (*I ran a mile* is a bounded clause).

Nonpast time-sphere: see present time-sphere.

Nonprogressive form: verb form which does not express progressive aspect and therefore does not consist of a form of *be* followed by the present participle. For example: *walked* in *John walked home*.

Nonprogressive meaning: the aspectual meaning that (the actualization of) the situation referred to is not viewed as ongoing (= in progress) at the relevant vantage time. Nonprogressive meaning is normally expressed by a nonprogressive verb form.

Nonprogressive past: nonprogressive form of the past tense.

Nonprogressive present: nonprogressive form of the present tense.

Nonprogressive tense form: nonprogressive form of a particular tense (e. g. *walked*, *walks*, *has walked*, *will walk* …).

Nonpunctual (or **durative**): see durative.

Nonquantificational constitution interpretation: see nonquantificational constitution reading.

Nonquantificational constitution reading (or **nonquantificational constitution interpretation**): particular type of constitution reading of a specificational clause in the present perfect, namely the one in which the speaker is concerned with the nature of the situation that is conceived of as having lasted throughout the pre-present zone without including the temporal zero-point (e. g. *What have you been doing?*; *Where have you been?*).

Nonrepetitive aspect: the opposite of repetitive aspect: the verb form represents a situation as actualizing only once.

Nonrepetitive situation: situation that actualizes only once, i. e. a semelfactive situation. A nonrepetitive situation is not a hypersituation consisting of subsituations of the same kind.

Nonstatic: see dynamic.

Nontensed (or **tenseless** or **untensed**) **verb form**: verb form which is not marked for tense, i. e. which does not encode information about how a situation time is related (directly or indirectly) to the temporal zero-point. Nonfinite verb forms and subjunctive verb forms are tenseless in this sense.

Not-yet-factual (or **not-yet-factual at t**): see not-yet-factual at the binding time.

Not-yet-factual at t_0: said of a situation whose actualization is located in the post-present, since the predicted actualization is not yet a fact at t_0, and has not even started to become a fact at t_0.

Not-yet-factual at the binding time (or **not-yet-factual at t**): in a complex sentence, the interpretation that the actualization of the situation of the subclause is not yet a fact (i. e. has not yet actualized) at the time of the situation of the head clause. For example, in the sentence *John {left / wanted to leave} before Bill arrived*, the situation of Bill's arrival (irrespective of whether or not it eventually actualized at all) is interpreted as 'not-yet-factual at the time of John's leaving', since *before* represents the subclause situation as posterior to the head clause situation.

Not-yet-factual *before*-clause: *before*-clause that is not-yet-factual at the binding time. For example, in the sentence *John left before Bill had arrived*, the situation of Bill's arrival (irrespective of whether or not it eventually actualized at all) is interpreted as envisaged but still nonfactual (= not yet factual) at the time of John's leaving: The natural reading of this sentence is 'Bill hadn't yet arrived when John left'. Nothing is said about whether Bill eventually arrived or not. See also modal backshifting.

Noun phrase (**NP**): a phrase (= structured set of words forming a syntactic unit) whose head is a noun or a nominal (such as a pronoun or gerund). For example: *the girl in the corner*; *something special*; *those who are afraid*; *that poor handling of the case by the police*. The set forming the phrase may be a singleton: in that case the phrase consists only of a noun or nominal (e.g. *Elephants like walking*).

NP: conventional linguistic abbreviation of noun phrase.

Number-quantifying constitution interpretation: see number-quantifying constitution reading.

Number-quantifying constitution reading (or **interpretation**): particular type of constitution reading of a clause in the present perfect: the clause is interpreted as expressing the speaker's concern with how many times a specific situation (or kind of situation) has actualized in the course of the pre-present zone (e.g. *How many times have you met him in the past week?*).

Ontological aspect (or **lexical aspect** or **Aktionsart**): linguistic category pertaining to the way the lexical material in the verb phrase determines one or more inherent characteristics of a kind of a situation (or, more correctly, a type of situation-template), for example, whether it is (conceived of and represented as) durative or punctual (compare, for example, *run* with *arrive*), telic or atelic, dynamic or static, etc.

Ontological feature: one of the features constituting the ontological aspect (= lexical-aspect) of a situation-template denoted by a verb phrase. For example, *drive* (when used as a one-word verb phrase) denotes a situation-template having the ontological features [– static], [+ agentive], [+ homogeneous], [– transitional], [+ durative], [– telic].

Opaque interpretation: see intensional interpretation.

Opaque world: see intensional world.

Open condition: condition which is treated as one that may or may not be fulfilled. For example: [*There will be a lot of damage*] *if the hurricane passes over this area*; or [*I don't know if Liverpool won this afternoon, but*] *if they did,* [*they must be top of the League now.*]. An open condition concerning the post-present is not expressed by a tense form from the Absolute Future System but by a tense form from the Pseudo-t_0-System: [*We'll be in trouble*] *if there* {*is* / **will be*} *a strike tomorrow.*

Operator: the first auxiliary in a complex verb form, e. g. *would* in *would have been killed* or *has* in *Has he lied?*. If the verb form is marked for one or more of the categories person, number, mood and tense, it is the operator that is morphologically marked.

Optional adverbial: adverbial that is not a necessary adverbial and therefore does not form part of the verb phrase of the clause. For example: *carefully* in *I carefully put the books on the table.*

Orientation time: any time functioning as the origin of a temporal relation expressed by a tense form. There are five kinds of orientation time: the temporal zero-point (as in *He was there*, which relates the situation time to t_0 in terms of 'pastness'), a situation time (as in *I thought that he was feeling sick*, where *was feeling* expresses T-simultaneity with the situation time of *thought*), an unspecified orientation time (as in *He had already left*, where the orientation time to which the situation time of *had left* is T-anterior is not specified), an otherwise unspecified time contained in an Adv-time (as in *At five he had already left*) or an implicit orientation time (as in *He arrived before I had left*, where *had left* represents its situation time as anterior to an orientation time that is implicit in *before*, which means 'before the *time* at which').

Orientation-time adverbial: time-specifying adverbial indicating an Adv-time which does not contain (in terms of either inclusion or coincidence) the situation time but contains the orientation time to which the situation time is temporally subordinated. For example, in *John will already have left at five* the time adverbial *at five* specifies an Adv-time which contains the (otherwise unspecified) orientation time to which the situation time (= the time of John's leaving) is represented as anterior. The same is true of {*The next day* / *At five o'clock*} *John had already left*).

Participial clause: nonfinite clause whose verb form is a participle, as in *Having missed my train,* [*I had to wait on that cold platform for another fifty minutes*].

Participle: see present participle and past participle.

Participle clause: see participial clause.

Partly inchoative interpretation: the interpretation of a sentence like *I had dinner at seven o'clock*, which combines the idea 'I had a full dinner' and 'I started eating at seven o'clock'. (A 'purely inchoative' interpretation would be 'I started having dinner at seven o'clock', which would leave it vague whether I finished my dinner or not.)

Past: (a) Used as a noun, *past* can be shorthand for past zone (or past time-sphere); (b) *Past* can also be used as an adjective modifying the noun situation, this combination then being short for ‘situation whose situation time is located in the past zone (or past time-sphere)’. (Similarly, when we speak of, for example, a *past period* or a *past point in time*, we mean a period or a point located in the past zone or past time-sphere.); (c) The noun *past* is occasionally also used as shorthand for ‘past tense’ (in the sense of ‘preterite’), when there can be no confusion, as in the combination ‘(non)progressive past’.

Past continuous: progressive form of the past tense.

Past domain: see past temporal domain.

Past participle: nonfinite verb form like *taken*, *walked*, *crept*, *spun*, *known*, etc. which follows the auxiliary verb(s) in a perfect or passive verb form (e. g. *taken* in *has taken*, *had taken*, *was taken*, *would have been taken*, etc.). Some past participles can also be used as modifiers to the head of a noun phrase, e. g. *handed over* in *Next week, I will carefully examine the report handed over to us tomorrow.* Such adjectival past participles are mostly interchangeable with relative clauses: *Next week, I will carefully examine the report that will be handed over to us tomorrow.*

Past perfect: shorthand for past perfect tense.

Past perfect tense (or **pluperfect**): tense whose forms (e. g. *had said*) are built by combining the past tense form of the auxiliary *have* with the past participle form of the main verb. The semantics of this tense is: ‘The situation time is T-anterior to an orientation time in a past domain, or in a past subdomain (= any subdomain within a past domain), or in a pseudo-past subdomain (within a post-present domain)’. For example: *John said he had done it*; *John said that he would leave immediately after he had done it*; [*If John does it*] *he will tell everybody afterwards that he left immediately after he had done it.*

Past subdomain: subdomain within a past temporal domain.

Past subjunctive: form of the subjunctive, which is a type of mood. In English, the only possible past subjunctive form is *were* (as in *If I were you, I wouldn’t do it*), called ‘past’ because of its formal contrast with the present subjunctive form *be* and its formal identity with the past indicative form *were*. The meaning of the past subjunctive is not factual but either counterfactual (e. g. [*I wish*] *he were here*; *If I were you* …) or tentative (e. g. *I would be surprised if he were to do that*).

Past temporal domain (or **past domain**): temporal domain established (by one of the past time-sphere tenses) in the past time-sphere. For example, in *Erin arrived late*, the past tense form *arrived* establishes a past domain. A past domain may sometimes comprise one or more situation times that are not W-anterior to the temporal zero-point, as in *He promised me yesterday that he* *would do it tomorrow*, but that is irrelevant to the definition of 'past temporal domain'. A domain is a past domain if and only if its central orientation time is located in the past time-sphere.

Past tense (or **preterite**): (a) The tense realized in such tense forms as *ran*, *walked*, *was*, etc. In this work we distinguish between the absolute past tense (or 'absolute preterite'), which locates a situation time in the past time-sphere and in doing so establishes a past domain, and the relative past tense (or 'relative preterite'), which expresses T-simultaneity in a past domain. (For example, in *John said he was feeling tired*, *said* is an absolute past tense form and *was feeling* is a relative past tense form.); (b) Both 'past tense' and 'preterite' are sometimes used (sloppily) in the sense of 'past tense form' (as in *The preterite 'left' in 'John left early' is an absolute preterite.*); (c) The plural form *past tenses* (but not **preterites*) is sometimes used as an abbreviation of 'past time-sphere tenses' (i. e. the four tenses used to locate a situation time in a past domain, viz. the preterite, the past perfect, the conditional tense and the conditional perfect).

Past time-sphere: time-sphere conceptualized as a time span of indefinite length which lies wholly before the temporal zero-point (t_0) and is disconnected from t_0.

Past time-sphere tense: cover term for any of the four tenses which typically represent a situation time as forming part of a temporal domain that is established in the past time-sphere: the past tense (or preterite), the past perfect, the conditional tense (realized as '*would* + infinitive') and the conditional perfect (realized as '*would have* + past participle'). These tenses all involve a past tense inflectional morpheme.

Past time-zone: see past zone.

Past zone (or **past time-zone**): alternative term for 'past time-sphere'. (The terms zone and time-sphere are equivalent where the past is concerned, but not where the present time-sphere is concerned, which involves three time-zones, viz. the pre-present, the present and the post-present.)

Past-zone adverbial: single-zone time-specifying adverbial which specifies a time in the past zone. Such an adverbial can combine with the past tense but not with the present perfect. For example: *The doctor {came / *has come} yesterday.*

Perfect: shorthand for present perfect, present perfect tense form or perfect tense. The use of the term in any of these senses is avoided in this work: the full terms are used instead.

Perfect auxiliary: see perfect tense auxiliary.

Perfect gerund: nonfinite verb form which is made up of the present gerund form *having* followed by a past participle form and which has a nominal syntactic function, e.g. *having made* in *I admit (to) having made a mistake*. The perfect gerund, though nontensed in our account, expresses anteriority to the time of the head clause situation.

Perfect infinitive: nonfinite verb form made up of the present infinitive form *have* followed by a past participle form, e. g. *have eaten*, *have been eaten*. The perfect infinitive, though nontensed in our account, expresses anteriority to the time of the head clause situation.

Perfect of experience (or **experiential perfect**): (in this work), a particular usage type (= a functional reading) of the indefinite perfect, namely one which refers to the actualization of one or more W-bygone situations which are not necessarily recent but which are 'carried along' as part of one's experience and knowledge. For example: *Have you ever been to Casablanca?*.

Perfect tense auxiliary: the grammatical auxiliary *have*, which combines with a past participle to form a perfect tense form.

Perfect tenses: cover term for any of the four tenses whose tense forms involve the perfect tense auxiliary *have*: the present perfect (e. g. *I have done it*), the past perfect (e. g. *I had done it*), the future perfect (e. g. *I will have done it*) and the conditional perfect (e. g. *I would have done it*).

Perfective aspect: kind of grammatical aspect: the speaker's choice of verb form (which is necessarily nonprogressive) reflects his wish to refer to (the actualization of) a situation in its entirety. There is no specific reference to any of the portions (beginning, middle or end) of the actualizing situation.

Perfective meaning: the idea that the verb form refers to the actualization of a situation in its entirety. For example, unlike *John was drawing a circle*, which expresses imperfective (more particularly progressive) meaning, *John drew a circle* expresses perfective meaning.

Performative speech act: speech act that is performed by the very uttering of a sentence. For example, by uttering the sentence *I wish you a merry Christmas*, the speaker actually performs the act of wishing the hearer a merry Christmas.

Periphrastic auxiliary: the grammatical auxiliary *do*, which is used for *do*-support, i. e. which is inserted into a verb phrase that does not contain an auxiliary when that verb phrase is to be used in a construction that requires an auxiliary (e. g. "*I don't love her. Do you love her?*" – " *Yes I do; I do love her.*").

Permanent habit: habit that is not represented as being restricted in time. For example: *I don't drive to work. I take the bus or walk.*

Phrase: syntactic unit consisting of a word functioning as a 'head' or 'nucleus'- potentially accompanied by one or more other words or word groups clustering around the head. The nature of the phrase is determined by the word class of the head. Thus, in the sentence *Most people in their thirties need money*, we have a five-word noun phrase (NP) *most people in their thirties* (with *people* as head), a three-word prepositional phrase *in their thirties*, a two-word verb phrase (VP) *need money*, and a one-word noun phrase *money*.

Pluperfect: see past perfect tense.

Point of view: term introduced in the discussion of temporal focus, to capture the observation that, by making a marked tense choice, a speaker may represent the actualization of a situation from someone else's viewpoint, e. g. from the temporal standpoint of a character in a past-tense narrative. For example, *They climbed the Matterhorn, which was very steep* differs from *They climbed the Matterhorn, which is very steep* in that by using the past tense the speaker assumes the point of view of the climbers: *was* makes it clear that it was THEY who experienced THEN and THERE that the Matterhorn is steep. In other words, while *is* triggers a transparent reading (i. e. reveals the speaker's point of view at t_0), *was* triggers an intensional (opaque) reading.

Polar question (or ***yes / no*-question** or **wide scope question**): interrogative sentence or subclause expressing a question to which the expected reply is *yes* or *no*. The clause does not contain a question word, and the question has scope over the entire proposition. For example: *Is the house humid?* (= 'Is it the case that the house is humid?')

Positive polarity item: see assertive item.

Possible world: way that things are or might be. The actual world is the way things actually are at speech time. A nonfactual world is an alternative way of conceptualizing things, such as a future world, the hypothetical world of the imagination of the speaker, a counterfactual world, etc. Thus, *Paris is the capital of France* is true in the actual world, whereas the proposition 'Paris be the capital of Italy' in *If Paris had been the capital of Italy* [*the Pope would have been living there*] is true in a counterfactual world. Similarly, the proposition 'You be married' expressed in *I thought you were married!* is true in the speaker's past world of thinking but assumed (by implicature) to be counterfactual in the actual world.

Posterior: following in time: time A is posterior to B if it follows B. See also T-posterior and W-posterior.

Posteriority: type of temporal relation. A given time A is posterior to a given time B if A follows B in time. Posteriority is W-posteriority if A is interpreted as posterior to B in the possible world referred to. Posteriority is T-posteriority if it is a relation that not only exists in interpretation but is formally expressed by the tense form of the clause. Thus, in *John said he would do it the next day* the situation time of *would do* is represented as T-posterior to (= following) the situation time of *said*.

Post-present: (a) shorthand for post-present zone; (b) can also be used as an adjective modifying the noun *situation*, this combination then being short for 'situation whose situation time is located in the post-present time-zone'. (Similarly, when we speak of the *post-present actualization* of a situation, we mean its actualization in the post-present zone.)

Post-present domain: temporal domain whose central orientation time lies in the post-present zone. Such a domain can be established directly by the use of the future tense or by a futurish tense form (e.g. *He's going to leave*; *I'm leaving tonight*). It may also be established indirectly by expressions implying future time reference, such as imperatives or certain verbs whose lexical meaning implies posterior actualization of the situation referred to in its complement clause, like *expect* [*to* V] or *intend* [*to* V].

Post-present time-zone: see post-present zone.

Post-present zone (or **post-present time-zone**): portion of the present time-sphere that is conceptualized as following the temporal zero-point (t_0). For example, *I will leave* and *I'm going to leave* both locate the time of the actualization of the situation of 'my leaving' in the post-present zone.

Potential full situation: In clauses using one of the perfect tenses and receiving a continuative reading, this term refers to the factual full situation plus that part of the full situation that may potentially continue beyond the relevant orientation time (which in the case of the present perfect is the temporal zero-point). Thus, in *Meg has been talking to the elephant for an hour now*, the potential full situation is longer than an hour (since one hour is the adverbially specified length of the factual full situation).

Predicate: (a) syntactically: shorthand for predicate constituent; (b) semantically: what is said (or asked) about the referent of the subject of a clause.

Predicate constituent: the syntactic unit functioning as predicate within a clause. It is made up of all the elements of a clause except the subject, in other words, of the verb phrase and of additional optional phrases, if any.

Predicated situation: that part of the full situation (possibly all of it) about which an assertion is made (or a question is asked) in a tensed clause. In other words, the predicated situation is that part of the full situation (possibly all of it) that is located in time by a tense form. In *Five minutes ago John was in the* *kitchen* the predicated situation is that part of the situation that is represented as contained in (which here means: temporally coinciding with) the punctual Adv-time indicated by *five minutes ago*. The full (= complete) situation may take up a much longer period (which may include the temporal zero-point), but the sentence does not tell us anything about this. It just makes a claim about (i. e. predicates something of) that part of the (actualization of the) situation that coincides with the time indicated by *five minutes ago*.

Predicational sentence: any sentence that is not a specificational sentence; in other words, a predicational sentence merely says (or asks) something about the referent of the constituent functioning as topic (theme) of the sentence. An example of this is *John has already read this book*, provided there is no contrastive (= extra heavy) accent on one of the constituents. (A contrastive accent always entails a specificational reading: *JOHN has already read this book* means 'It is John who has already read this book'.)

Predictability: the expression, by means of the future tense (with *will* as auxiliary), of the probability of the truth of a conclusion about a present situation, e. g. *That will be the milkman*, when interpreted as 'It is predictable that that is the milkman'.

Prediction: the expression of an assumption that a situation will actualize in the post-present (or, in the case of *would*, at a time posterior to the time of making the prediction), e. g. *John will be there*, when interpreted as 'It is my opinion that John will be there' (rather than as 'It is predictable that John is there' – see predictability).

Preparatory phase reading: interpretation produced by the use of a progressive form of a verb denoting a transitional situation (like dying). Because a progressive form only refers to the middle part of a durative situation, *He was dying* (as opposed to *He died*) is interpreted as only referring to the phase leading up to the transition (from life to death); in other words, *He was dying* does not state that he died but only refers to the durative process which was interpreted as leading up to his death: the sentence refers to the 'preparatory phase' only, not to the actual transition (which may even be denied, as in *He was dying* [*when we found him, but he pulled through in hospital.*]).

Pre-present: (a) shorthand for pre-present zone; (b) can also be used as an adjective modifying the noun *situation*, this combination then being short for 'situation whose situation time is located in the pre-present zone'. (Similarly, when we speak of the *pre-present actualization* of a situation, we mean its actualization in the pre-present zone.)

Pre-present domain: temporal domain that is established by a present perfect tense form which locates its situation time in the pre-present zone of the present time-sphere. This situation time functions as the central orientation time of the pre-present domain that is established.

Pre-present time-zone: see pre-present zone.

Pre-present zone (or **pre-present time-zone**): portion of the present time-sphere that is conceptualized as leading up to the temporal zero-point (t_0) and whose endpoint is conceived of as adjacent to t_0. (In other words, the pre-present zone is conceptualized as leading up to t_0 without including t_0.) To locate a situation time in the pre-present English uses the present perfect tense.

Pre-present-zone adverbial: single-zone time-specifying adverbial which specifies a pre-present zone, e. g. *from the beginning of May until now*; *over the past four years*; *so far*; etc.

Present: (a) (as a noun) shorthand for present zone; occasionally also shorthand for 'present tense', when there can be no confusion, as in the combination '(non)progressive present'; (b) (as an adjective) 'located in the present', e. g. a *present situation* is a situation whose situation time is located in the present zone; '*present relevance*' refers to the fact that the pre-present actualization of a situation is still relevant at the temporal zero-point.

Present continuous: progressive form of the present tense. (synonym of progressive present)

Present domain: temporal domain established by a present tense form which locates a situation time in the present zone (i. e. represents the situation time as coinciding with the temporal zero-point).

Present gerund: nonfinite verb form involving the suffix *-ing* (e. g. *walking*, *being hit*, *swimming*) and forming part of a nominal clause, e. g. *walking in the dark* in *I don't like walking in the dark*. A present gerund differs from a perfect gerund in that it does not involve the *-ing* form of the perfect tense auxiliary *have*.

Present infinitive: nonfinite verb form as it appears as an entry in a dictionary (e. g. *eat*, which is also the stem of the verb); also, the passive counterpart of the dictionary form (e. g. *be eaten*). The present infinitive is nontensed but is interpreted in terms of a single temporal relation, which is usually that of simultaneity with the time of the head clause situation, but occasionally a relation of posteriority: in *I hope to see her tomorrow*, the time of the situation referred to by the infinitive clause is interpreted as posterior to the time of the head clause situation.

Present participle: nonfinite (and therefore nontensed) verb form consisting of the stem of the verb plus the suffix *-ing* and which can either have an adjectival function or form part of a progressive verb form, e. g. the form *causing* in *The hotel guests causing a disturbance {last night / at the moment / tonight} will be arrested tomorrow.* As this example shows, the time of the situation referred to by a participial clause with a present participle can (according to the context) be interpreted as anterior, simultaneous or posterior to the time of the head clause situation.

Present perfect: tense which is formed by combining a present tense form of the auxiliary *have* with the past participle of the main verb. The semantics of this tense is: ‘The situation time is located (i. e. ‘contained’) in the pre-present zone’. Since ‘containment’ means either proper inclusion or strict coincidence, there are two T-interpretations that are in keeping with this core meaning: a ‘before now’ reading (‘The situation time lies wholly before t_0’) and a ‘co-extensive’ reading (‘The situation time leads up to now and therefore coincides with the pre-present zone’).

Present subjunctive: type of mood. In English, the present subjunctive form is homonymous and homophonous with the present infinitive (e. g. *if the truth be told…*; [*It is vital that*] *she see her physician for treatment*).

Present tense: tense which is formed by using the stem of the verb, except for third person singular subjects, which require the verb form to take an added *-(e)s* ending. (There are some well-known exceptions, notably the verb *be*, the verb *have* and the auxiliaries.) When used as an absolute tense, the most basic meaning of the present tense is that the situation time coincides with the temporal zero-point. When used as a relative tense (as in [*I will be happy*] *if she comes*), it represents the situation time as T-simultaneous with a post-present situation time which is treated as a pseudo-present time.

Present time-sphere (or **nonpast time-sphere**): time-sphere conceptualized as a time span of indefinite length containing the present zone, which coincides with the temporal zero-point (t_0), the pre-present zone, which leads up to t_0, and the post-present zone, which begins immediately after t_0.

Present time-sphere tense: cover term for the four tenses which typically locate a situation time in the present time-sphere: the present tense (as absolute tense), the present perfect, the future tense and the future perfect. These tenses all involve a present tense inflectional morpheme.

Present time-zone: see present zone.

Present zone (or **present time-zone**): portion of the present time-sphere that coincides with the temporal zero-point. Since t_0 is conceived of as punctual, so is the present zone.

Presuppose: ‘presuppose something’ means ‘treat something as being a presupposition (of a certain linguistic expression)’. For example, in *It was John who* *stole Maud's wallet* it is presupposed that there is someone who stole Maud's wallet, hence that Maud's wallet was stolen.

Presupposition: proposition which is assumed to be true by the speaker when he makes his utterance, in other words, a pragmatic condition which is assumed to be fulfilled. Thus, both *I closed the door* and *I didn't close the door* presuppose that the door was not closed at the relevant time. This illustrates a criterial property of presuppositions, viz. that they remain unaffected if the clause is made negative (except if the negation is of the metalinguistic kind).

Preterite: tense locating a situation time in a domain in the past time-sphere. See also past tense (a)–(b).

Principle of Unmarked Temporal Interpretation: strategy for the interpretation of temporal W-relations when two or more clauses with an absolute tense form follow each other and there is no linguistic or contextual indication of the temporal W-relation(s) holding between the situations referred to. In that case, the (non)boundedness of any two consecutive clauses is crucial, in that two bounded clauses are normally interpreted in terms of iconic sequencing, two nonbounded clauses are normally interpreted in terms of W-simultaneity, and a combination of a bounded and an unbounded clause is normally interpreted in terms of inclusion (i. e. the nonbounded situation includes the bounded one).

Prior (**to**): anterior (to)

Process: type of dynamic situation (i. e. a dynamic situation type), namely a situation which is not controlled by an agent and which is (conceived of as) durative and evolving, i. e. as involving incremental change that implies a scale of some sort (e. g. changing, getting dark, diminishing). In other words, a process is a situation type that is dynamic but not agentive and whose main characteristic is change, i. e. a development, a change of state or a transition into a state (e. g. *The car slowed down; The man was dying*).

Process verb: verb denoting a process, e. g. *change*, *grow*, *mature*, *die*, *widen*, *slow down*, *improve*, *thicken*, *deteriorate*, *strengthen*, *diminish*, *darken*, *deepen*, *develop*, *increase*.

Progressive aspect: the only type of grammatical aspect that is to be found in English, i. e. the only aspect that is expressed by a special verb form. Progressive aspect means that the speaker uses a special verb form to express progressive meaning, i. e. to represent the actualization of a situation as 'ongoing' (i. e. as in progress at or throughout a given vantage time). Also called 'continuous' or 'durative' aspect.

Progressive form: verb form which consists of a form of *be* followed by the present participle (as in *John was walking home*) and which is used to express progressive meaning. Also called 'continuous form'.

Progressive meaning: the idea that the situation referred to is viewed as ongoing at or throughout a given vantage time. Dynamic verbs use the progressive verb form to express this meaning.

Progressive present: progressive form of the present tense.

Proposition: the semantic contents of a clause when one disregards the semantic contributions of tense, aspect and modality. Thus, the proposition 'John come at five' underlies both *John will come at five* and *John came at five*. Similarly, both John is running and John has run are possible expressions of the proposition 'John run'. A sentence like *John came early* can be referred to as a 'tensed proposition', because its meaning is the combination of the proposition 'John come early' and the meaning of the absolute past tense.

Pseudo-absolute past zone (or **pseudo-absolute past time-sphere**): time-zone which is past relative to a pseudo-zero-point. For example, in *Next time I will say that I was ill the day before*, the form *was* locates its situation time in a pseudo-absolute past zone (which is defined relative to the situation time of *will say*, which is the central orientation time of a post-present domain and is therefore treated as a pseudo-zero-point).

Pseudo-absolute-relative tense form: a tense form whose basic use is as an absolute-relative tense form, but which now expresses a two-part relation with a basic orientation time which is not the temporal zero-point (t_0) but a post-present pseudo-zero-point. For example, the basic use of the future perfect is to express a two-part relation between a situation time and t_0, as in *I will have left on time*, but the future perfect is used as a 'pseudo-absolute-relative' tense in [*He will say that*] *he will have finished before 5 o'clock*. In this sentence, the origin of the T-posteriority relation expressed by *will* (i. e. the basic orientation time) is not the (real) zero-point but a post-present pseudo-t_0 (viz. the situation time of *will say*)

Pseudo-absolute tense form: a past, present perfect, present or future tense form that relates its situation time to a pseudo-zero-point rather than to the real temporal zero-point. For example: *was* in [*Next time you see him John will again say that*] *he was thirsty the night before*. In this example, *was* represents the being thirsty not as past relative to the (real) zero-point but rather as past relative to the post-present time referred to by *will say*, which is treated as if it were a zero-point (i. e. as a pseudo-zero-point).

Pseudo-absolute zone: cover term for any of the four portions of time that are defined in direct relation to a pseudo-zero-point (i. e. a post-present time which is treated as if it were the zero-point): the pseudo-past zone, the pseudo-pre-present zone, the pseudo-present zone and the pseudo-post-present zone. See also Pseudo-t_0-System.

Pseudo-cleft (or **pseudo-cleft sentence**, **pseudo-cleft construction**): specificational copular sentence in which the variable is expressed by a *wh*-clause processed as subject and the value constituent is processed as subject complement, e. g. *What I gave him was a* BOOK. (This is interpreted as 'the x which I gave him was: a book'.) We speak of an inverted pseudo-cleft when the nominal relative clause (representing the variable) follows the constituent expressing the value, as in *A* BOOK *was what I gave him*.

Pseudo-past subdomain: temporal subdomain forming part of a post-present domain and created by a pseudo-absolute past tense form, which locates a situation time in a pseudo-past zone, i. e. in a time-zone viewed as past with respect to, and as disconnected from, the central orientation time (treated as a pseudo-zero-point) of that post-present domain. For example, *were staying* establishes such a pseudo-past subdomain in *Sooner or later the police will find out that you were staying here today, and not in London*.

Pseudo-past zone: (1) time-zone viewed as past with respect to, and as disconnected from, the central orientation time (treated as a pseudo-zero-point) of a post-present domain. For example, in *Sooner or later the police will find out that you were here today*, the tense form *were* locates the time of the situation referred to in a pseudo-past zone. (The situation in question may be interpreted as W-posterior to the real zero-point, but that relation is not expressed by the past tense form.); (2) A pseudo-past zone can also be defined relative to a pseudo-zero-point which is the central orientation time of a pseudo-post-present subdomain.

Pseudo-post-present subdomain: (1) temporal subdomain forming part of a post-present domain and created by a pseudo-absolute future tense form, which locates a situation time in a pseudo-post-present zone, i. e. in a time-zone viewed as future relative to the central orientation time (treated as a pseudo-zero-point) of that post-present domain. For example, in *I will announce tomorrow that, if I lose, I will leave the country for good*, the future tense form *will leave* establishes a pseudo-post-present subdomain within the post-present domain established by *will announce*; (2) subdomain whose central orientation time is treated as a pseudo-zero-point because it is either T-simultaneous or T-posterior to the central orientation time of a post-present domain or of another pseudo-post-present subdomain.

Pseudo-post-present zone: time-zone viewed as future with respect to the central orientation time (treated as a pseudo-zero-point) of a post-present domain. For example, in *I will announce tomorrow that I will leave the country for good*, the future tense form *will leave* locates its situation time in a time-zone which is treated as post-present relative to a pseudo-zero-point, which is the post-present time of the announcement. Any situation time located in a pseudo-post-present zone (e. g. the situation time of *will leave* in the above example) is also treated as a pseudo-t_0 and is therefore the central orientation time of a pseudo-post-present subdomain of its own.

Pseudo-pre-present subdomain: (1) temporal subdomain forming part of a post-present domain created by a situation time that is located in a period leading up to (and not felt to be divorced from) the central orientation time (i. e. the pseudo-zero-point) of that post-present domain. For example, the present perfect tense form *have left* in *Who will look after you when Brad and Sybil have left?* is used to locate the time of the situation of leaving in a pseudo-pre-present subdomain; (2) A pseudo-pre-present subdomain may also be a subdomain within a pseudo-post-present subdomain (e. g. the subdomain established by *have left* in *Mother will ask you who will look after you when Brad and Sybil have left*).

Pseudo-pre-present zone: (1) time-zone viewed as leading up to the central orientation time (treated as a pseudo-zero-point) of a post-present domain. In [*If you leave tonight, the police will only discover tomorrow that*] *you have left*, the present perfect tense form *have left* locates the time of the situation referred to in a pseudo-pre-present zone, i. e. in a period leading up to the time of the future discovering. (The situation in question may be interpreted as W-posterior to the real zero-point, but that relation is not expressed by the present perfect tense form.); (2) A pseudo-pre-present zone may also be a zone forming part of a pseudo-post-present subdomain. Thus, in *Mother will ask you who will look after you when Brad and Sybil have left*, the form *have left* locates its situation time in the pseudo-pre-present zone that is defined relative to the situation time of *will look* [*after you*], which functions as a pseudo-t_0 and establishes a pseudo-post-present subdomain within the post-present domain established by *will ask*.

Pseudo-present time: a post-present time that is treated as if it were the temporal zero-point. A time is a pseudo-present time if (a) it is the central orientation time of a post-present domain or (b) it is a time that is T-simultaneous or T-posterior to that central time, or (c) it is a time that is T-simultaneous or T-posterior to a time of the kind mentioned in (b), etc.

Pseudo-present subdomain: (1) temporal subdomain forming part of a post-present domain and created by a pseudo-absolute present tense form, which represents a situation time as T-simultaneous (= coinciding) with the central orientation time of a post-present domain. (That central orientation time is treated as if it were the zero-point, i. e. as a pseudo-zero-point.) For example, in [*If we hide the money there*] *the police will never find out where it is*, the present tense form *is* creates a pseudo-present subdomain within the post-present domain established by *will find out*; (2) A pseudo-present subdomain may also be a subdomain within a pseudo-post-present subdomain. Thus, in [*Next time Tim runs away*] *John will tell his parents that he will tell them in due time where Tim is*, the form *is* expresses a pseudo-present subdomain within the pseudo-post-present subdomain established by *will tell*.

Pseudo-present zone: time-zone viewed as coinciding with a pseudo-zero-point (i. e. with a post-present time which is treated as if it were the zero-point).

Pseudo-t_0-System: system of tense forms that can be used to express a T-relation in a post-present domain. This system, which is based on a shift of temporal perspective (since the central orientation time of the domain is treated as if it were the temporal zero-point), comprises the pseudo-absolute tenses, which locate a situation time in one of the pseudo-absolute time-zones, which are defined relative to the post-present central time of orientation (which is treated as a pseudo-zero-point). As pseudo-absolute tenses we use the preterite or present perfect to express T-anteriority, the present tense to express T-simultaneity and the future tense (or a futurish form) to express T-posteriority. Each use of a pseudo-absolute tense establishes a pseudo-absolute subdomain, which can be expanded like a 'normal' domain established by an absolute tense form. For example, in [*If we kill him tonight and put his body in the freezer for two days*] *the police will think that he was killed when he came home on Tuesday*, the form *will think* establishes a post-present domain, whose central orientation time (= the time of the thinking) is treated as a pseudo-t_0, i. e. as if it were the temporal zero-point. The situation time referred to by *was killed* (which is W-posterior to the real t_0) is located in the pseudo-absolute past time-sphere (i. e. in a time-zone that is past relative to the pseudo-t_0), where it establishes a pseudo-absolute past subdomain. The relative past tense form *came* expresses T-simultaneity in that subdomain. (In a true past domain, it is also the relative past tense that is used to express T-simultaneity, e. g. *He was killed when he came home*.)

Pseudo-zero-point (or **pseudo-t_0**): orientation time which is not the temporal zero-point but is treated as if it were t_0. A pseudo-t_0 is the central orientation time of a post-present domain or a situation time that is T-simultaneous with that or which is the central orientation time of a pseudo-post-present subdomain. For example, in *Next time he will say that he is ill*, the central time of orientation (= the time of saying) of the post-present domain is treated as a pseudo-t_0. This explains why the present tense (*is*) is used to represent the situation time of the *that*-clause as T-simultaneous with it.

Punctual (or **nondurative**, **momentary**): (a) ontological feature of a situation-template (as expressed by, e. g. the verb phrase *knocked at the door*) which is conceived of as needing no more than a moment to actualize. By extension, the term can also be applied to a verb phrase denoting such a situation-template

(e. g. *knock at the door*) or to the actualization of a situation that is conceived of as having no (or hardly any) duration. (b) The term *punctual* is also applied to time-specifying adverbials that indicate a specific moment in time, i. e. a time that has no duration to speak of (e. g. *at five*), as well as to duration adverbials that indicate an interval that has no duration to speak of (e. g. *for a split second*).

Punctual situation verb (phrase): verb or verb phrase which denotes a punctual situation-template.

Punctual time-specifying adverbial: time-specifying adverbial which specifies an Adv-time that has (virtually) no duration (e. g. *at five o'clock*).

Pure duration adverbial: temporal adverbial which (unlike a time-specifying adverbial or a bifunctional temporal adverbial) does not identify an Adv-time but only specifies duration, more specifically the duration of the full situation (e. g. [*John was here*] *for a couple of hours*).

Pure future: what is expressed by the future tense if the speaker merely makes a prediction, i. e. if he just expresses that he thinks that a particular situation will actualize in the post-present.

Quantificational constitution reading (or **interpretation**): cover term for duration-quantifying constitution readings (e. g. *Nearly a year has gone by since then*) and number-quantifying constitution readings (e. g. *How many times have you met him in the past week?*).

Recency reading (or **interpretation**): a particular reading of the indefinite perfect, viz. that in which the pre-present situation time is lying close to the temporal zero-point. There is a recency reading if a sentence in the present perfect is used to convey 'hot news' (see hot news interpretation) or in cases in which the present perfect combines with an adverb like *just*, *recently* or *this minute*, which establishes a recent indefinite bygone Adv-time (e. g. *I have recently heard that vitamin A may be linked to osteoporosis*).

Recent indefinite bygone time: Adv-time indicated by one of the adverbials *recently*, *just*, *this minute, lately.*

Reduced cleft (or **reduced *it*-cleft**): cleft sentence whose *wh*-clause is deleted because it would only repeat the contents of the preceding subclause. Thus, *it's you* in *If anyone can do it, it's you* (which is interpreted as 'If there is one x who can do it, that x is you') is short for *it's you who can do it*.

Referent: the entity (thing, person, actualization of a situation, etc.) that a linguistic expression (viz. a word, phrase or clause) refers to. This entity usually belongs to an extralinguistic possible world (such as the actual world). Its existence in that world is affirmed, denied, questioned, hypothesized or presupposed. In *John left*, the referent of the noun phrase *John* is a particular person known as having the name *John*. The referent of a finite clause is the actualization of a situation.

Referential noun phrase: when used in Donnellan's (1966) sense, said of a noun phrase which has definite reference in the sense that the speaker assumes the hearer to know the identity of the referent of the phrase. For example, in [*I'd like to hear more about*] *the trip you've made*, the hearer is assumed to be able to know which particular trip is being referred to. The speaker could therefore also use other NPs to refer to the trip in question, such as *your trip to Italy*.

Regular verb (or **weak verb**): verb that forms its past tense and its past participle by adding the suffix *-ed* to the verb stem (which then sometimes has to undergo a minor spelling adjustment), e.g. *play – played*; *love – loved*; *cry – cried*, etc.

Relative-absolute deictic time-specifying adverbial: time-specifying adverbial which indicates an Adv-time that is anchored to a time which is itself anchored to the temporal zero-point, e.g. *the day before yesterday*.

Relative deictic time-specifying adverbial: time-specifying adverbial which indicates an Adv-time that is anchored to a time other than the temporal zero-point, e.g. *the same day*, *that morning*, *the next day*, *the day before*, *two days earlier*, etc.

Relative past tense: past tense which expresses T-simultaneity in a past domain. The semantics of the relative past tense is: 'The situation time is represented as T-simultaneous with an orientation time in a past domain (or in a past subdomain or in a pseudo-past subdomain)'.

Relative tense: tense which does not T-relate the time of a situation directly to the temporal zero-point but T-relates it to some other time of orientation. A relative tense always indicates a temporal relation within a temporal domain. For example, the past perfect form *had left* in *I knew he had left early* expresses anteriority within the past domain established by the absolute past tense form *knew*.

Repetitive (or **iterative**) **aspect**: (1) kind of grammatical aspect, characterized by the fact that the speaker uses a special verb form to represent a situation as a hypersituation consisting of a number of subsituations of the same kind. (2) In this work we also speak of repetitive or iterative 'aspectual meaning' when a situation repeats itself on different occasions, as in *I've only been in this town three times*.

Repetitive habit: habit which involves multiple instantiations of the situation referred to. None of these instantiations need actually be going on at the time at which the habit is located. For example: *I used to smoke weed when I got hired for my first job*.

Repetitive situation: hypersituation, i. e. situation whose actualization involves the actualization of a number of similar subsituations, e. g. [*All the time I was speaking*] *John was nodding assent*; *She stabbed him six times with her penknife*.

Replay comment: comment on a replay (e. g. on television).

Reported speech: the phenomenon of reporting an utterance or thought. Reported speech may be 'direct reported speech' (e. g. *He said: 'I am ill.'*), 'indirect reported speech' (e. g. *He said that he was ill.*) or 'free indirect speech'. In the latter case there is no reporting clause like *He said …* and what is a subclause in indirect reported speech appears as an independent clause (e. g. [*He let me know that he couldn't come.*] *He was ill. He had to stay at home.*)

Reporting clause: the head clause of a sentence that is an instance of reported speech (e. g. *He said* in *He said he was ill*).

Represented speech: cover term for indirect reported speech (e. g. *Jill told herself that she was going to take revenge*) and free indirect speech (e. g. *She was going to take revenge*, when used to represent the thought of a character in a past-tense novel). Note that in both types, and especially in the latter, *speech* should be interpreted as also including thought rather than just spoken discourse.

Restrictive *when*-clause: term that is sometimes used as an alternative to case-specifying *when*-clause. It is inspired by the fact that a case-specifying *when*-clause can as a rule be replaced by a restrictive relative clause without any obvious change in meaning: compare *Children are orphans when their parents are dead* with *Children whose parents are dead are orphans*.

Result: see direct result and indirect result.

Resultative reading (or **interpretation**): a particular usage type (a functional reading) of the indefinite perfect: the sentence in the present perfect is taken to draw attention to a present direct result. For example, the reading triggered by the sentence *I've locked up the shop* is that the shop is now locked up.

Rhetorical question: sentence that has the form of an interrogative sentence but which is interpreted as a forceful statement (e. g. *Who can blame him?*, on the interpretation 'Nobody can blame him').

Right boundary: the point at which the actualization of a situation comes to an end.

Root modality: see nonepistemic modality.

Scalarity: the phenomenon that a word (e. g. a focusing adjunct like *even*) is interpreted as a 'scalar operator', i. e. as representing the constituent which it focuses as extremely high or extremely low on a particular scale of values. For example, *Even Mary managed to do it* implies that (of those who did it) Mary was the least likely person (or one of the least likely ones) to be able to do it. (Here the scale is a scale of unlikelihood, on which the values are people that are increasingly unlikely to be able to 'do it'.)

Seemingly sloppy simultaneity: in a complex sentence with an adverbial *when*-clause, the phenomenon that the (actualization of the) situation of the head clause and that of the *when*-clause are not interpreted as W-simultaneous (i. e. as having at least one point in common), although the tense form in the *when*-clause expresses T-simultaneity, e. g. *When John sees this, he will phone the police*. This phenomenon differs from 'real' sloppy simultaneity, as in e. g. *You'll arrive at 8.35 if you take the 7.56 bus*, in that it is not a question of tense choice (more specifically, choice of T-relation to be expressed) but follows naturally from the semantics of *when*, which does not require that the two orientation times that are contained by the durative common Adv-time be W-simultaneous with each other.

Semantics of a tense: the invariant meaning of a tense, i. e. the tense structure expressed by any form belonging to the tense in question. For example, the basic semantics of the present tense is 'The situation time is T-simultaneous with the temporal zero-point'.

Semelfactive aspect: kind of grammatical aspect: the speaker uses a special verb form to represent a situation as actualizing only once (rather than as being a repetitive situation).

Semelfactive situation: situation that actualizes only once, i. e. a nonrepetitive situation. A semelfactive situation is not a hypersituation consisting of subsituations of the same kind.

Sentence: linguistic unit which is prototypically made up of a clause or a combination of clauses and which can function as an independent utterance.

Shift of domain: the creation of a new temporal domain by the use of an absolute tense. In other words, the choice of an absolute tense form to create a new temporal domain (as in *John left after I arrived*, where the past tense form *arrived* does not temporally subordinate its situation time to the situation time of the head clause but establishes a new domain) rather than the use of a relative tense form to expand an already established domain (as in *John left after I had arrived*, where the past perfect is used to express T-anteriority within the domain established by the past tense form *left*).

Shift of temporal domain: see shift of domain.

Shift of temporal focus: deviation from the unmarked choice of temporal focus by the use of a marked tense form. Consider the following example: [*I asked John about the colour of the paint.*] *It is white.* In the second clause, the speaker no longer focuses on the past time when he asked John about the colour of the paint – which he would do if he said *It was white* – but locates the actualization of the situation of the paint being white in the present zone, thus shifting the temporal focus from the past to the present.

Shift of temporal perspective: the selection of a tense, not in order to locate a situation time in a particular time-zone but in order to represent it *as if* lying in that time-zone; in other words, the creation or expansion of a temporal domain by a tense that is typical of domains lying in a different time-zone. For example, in *They leave tomorrow*, the present tense represents a post-present situation as if it were a present one. In *I hear you have been promoted*, the present tense represents a pre-present situation as if it were a present one. In *Next time his excuse will be that he is ill* the time of the post-present excuse is treated as if it were the present. The historic present is another typical case.

Shift the domain: effect a shift of domain, i. e. create a new temporal domain. In *He said that Gordon and Jill are married*, the tense form *are* shifts the domain (from the past to the present).

Simple situation-template: what is denoted by a lexical verb.

Simultaneity: type of temporal relation between two times. As a T-relation (= relation expressed by a tense form), T-simultaneity means strict coincidence (between a bound situation time and the binding orientation time). Simultaneity that is not T-simultaneity may be a relation of either coincidence or overlap. An example is the containment relation that exists between an Adv-time and a situation time. See also W-simultaneity.

Simultaneous: see T-simultaneous and W-simultaneous.

***Since*-cleft**: *it*-cleft whose second clause is introduced by *since* (rather than by *that* or by a *wh*-word as in *It was John {who / that} did it*). The highlighted (focused) value constituent is always an indication of duration. For example: *It's been three weeks since I have heard from him.*

Single-zone adverbial: see single-zone time-specifying adverbial.

Single-zone time-specifying adverbial (or **single-zone adverbial**): deictic time-specifying adverbial which refers to only one absolute time-zone. For example, *yesterday* specifies an Adv-time which can only lie in the past zone.

Situation: cover term for the various possible types of contents of propositions, i. e. for anything that can be expressed in a clause: an action, event, process, or state. The verb actualize is used as a cover term for the predicates that are typically associated with one of these categories.

Situation-template: cover term for simple situation-template (denoted by a verb) and enriched situation-template (denoted by a verb phrase or a possibly longer predicate constituent). Situation-templates can be characterized in terms of ontological features.

Situation time (or **time of the situation**): the time of a predicated situation, i. e. the time of actualization of a situation as it is located in time by a tense form (i. e. as it is temporally related to the temporal zero-point or to another orientation time) and to which the situation time of another situation can be temporally related by a tense form. In homogeneous clauses, the situation time may be shorter than the time of the full situation. Thus, in *At five o'clock I was in my bed*, the situation time is that portion of the full situation (of my being in my bed) that is contained in (in this case: coincides with) the Adv-time specified by *at five o'clock*.

Situation-time adverbial: time-specifying adverbial denoting an Adv-time which 'contains' (in terms of either inclusion or coincidence) a situation time (e. g. [*I left there*] {*yesterday / at five o'clock*}).

Situation type: In this work, a situation type is a type of situation (as denoted by a complete clause), such as an action or a state. For example, *John smokes* denotes a permanent habit, which is a kind of state. Where necessary, we distinguish 'situation type' (or 'type of situation') from 'type of situation-template' (as denoted by a verb, verb phrase or predicate constituent). (Other linguistic studies use the term 'situation type' to refer to both kinds of types.)

Situation-unbounding constituent: see unbounding constituent.

Sloppy simultaneity: the phenomenon that a situation time is linguistically represented as T-simultaneous with a binding situation time even though the binding situation time and the bound one are not strictly simultaneous (= coinciding) with each other and the full situations are not even W-simultaneous (= interpreted as having at least one point in common). Thus, both in *If John received a letter, he replied almost at once* and in *If John receives a letter, he will reply almost at once*, the *if*-clause situation is interpreted as W-anterior to the head clause situation, but the *if*-clause uses a relative tense form expressing T-simultaneity (*received / receives*) rather than a relative tense form expressing T-anteriority (*had received / has received*).

Special Present Time-sphere System: systematic use of present-time-sphere tenses to refer to situations that are interpreted as actualizing in the past, the pre-present or the post-present. For example: the historic present.

Specificational clause / sentence: clause or sentence which specifies a value for a presupposed variable and in doing so focuses (highlights) the value. For example, each of the following sentences specifies ‘a book’ as the value that satisfies the variable ‘the x that I gave him’ and implies ‘nothing else’ (= contrast): *It was a BOOK that I gave him, What I gave him was a BOOK, A BOOK was what I gave him, I gave him a BOOK.*

State (or **static situation**): type of situation (i. e. situation type) which is conceived of (and represented as) existing (rather than as being done, taking place or developing) and as being unchanged and hence homogeneous throughout its duration. A static kind of situation is not agentive and is not conceived of as needing a continuous input of energy to continue. For example: *Bill’s baby is a girl*.

Statement (or **declarative sentence**): sentence making an assertion rather than having the illocutionary force of another speech act (such as a question or command).

State verb (or **static situation verb**): verb that can only be used to refer to a state, e. g. *seem*, *contain*, *know*, *consist of*, etc. Also known as ‘verb of state’.

Static: kind of ontological feature, viz. the opposite of dynamic. The term can be applied to a situation-template denoting a state, a verb phrase lexicalizing the situation-template in question (e. g. *is a boy*), a situation (e. g. Kim’s being a boy) or to a sentence referring to a concrete actualization of a situation (e. g. *Kim is a boy*). In other words, ‘static’ is the quality of being a state, denoting a state or referring to a state.

Static situation: see state.

Static situation verb: see state verb.

Stem (or **verb stem**): that part of the verb that remains constant in the different forms of the verb, e. g. *unchain* in *unchains*, *unchained*, *unchaining*. The stem of a verb is homophonous with the present infinitive form and the present subjunctive form of that verb.

Strong intensional verb: verb like *imagine*, *fancy*, *dream*, *wonder*, which establishes an intensional domain (= possible world which is different from the actual world) which is so strong that the clause(s) in the scope of the verb can only receive an intensional (opaque, de dicto) interpretation. Such a strong intensional domain is treated as a temporal domain from which a shift of domain is very difficult or impossible. Thus, we can say *Helen dreamed that she was pregnant*, but not **Helen dreamed that she is pregnant*.

Strong verb: see irregular verb.

Subclause (or **subordinate clause**, **dependent clause**, **embedded clause**): clause that forms part of a complex sentence and is syntactically dependent on another clause (the head clause), e. g. *if you leave* in *I'll be glad if you leave*. Most subclauses are either nominal clauses, adjectival clauses or adverbial clauses, depending on their syntactic function.

Subdomain: kind of temporal domain inside a temporal domain. See temporal subdomain.

Subject complement: the complement of a copula. It says something about the referent of the subject, i. e. it either ascribes a characteristic to that referent, as in *He seems a reliable man*, or identifies the person or entity in question, as in *The chair is that woman over there*.

Subjunctive: see present subjunctive and past subjunctive.

Subordinate clause: see subclause.

Subordinating conjunction: conjunction (= nonadverbial connector) introducing a subclause (e. g. *because*, *if*, *that*, *unless*, etc.).

Subordination: (a) as a syntactic term: the phenomenon that the combination of two clauses produces a complex sentence, consisting of a head clause and a subclause, rather than a compound sentence; (b) in connection with tenses: see temporal binding.

Subsituation: any of a series of repeated situations that make up a durative hypersituation. For example, in [*All the time I was speaking*] *John was nodding assent*, any single nod of the head is a subsituation of the repetitive hypersituation. Habitual-repetitive situations are also hypersituations consisting of subsituations: *She comes to see me very evening.*

Superordinate clause: see head clause. Such a clause may or may not be the matrix of a complex sentence.

Syntactic subordination: the syntactic relation (often, but not necessarily, corresponding with a T-relation) between a subordinate clause and its head clause.

t_0: abbreviation of temporal zero-point.

t_0-factual (or **factual at t_0**): said of a situation whose actualization is (interpreted as being) a past, pre-present or present fact.

T-anterior: showing the relation of T-anteriority. For example, in *Helen admitted she had made a mistake*, *had made* represents the situation time of the situation of Helen making a mistake as T-anterior to (= preceding) the time of Helen's admission.

T-anteriority: anteriority expressed by a tense form; more specifically: the T-relation when the situation time is linguistically (viz. by a tense) represented as preceding the binding orientation time in one of two ways. Either the bound situation time lies completely before the orientation time (as in *I knew I had locked the door*) or it begins before the orientation time and leads up to it (as in *I told them that we had been friends since we had first met*).

T-binding: see temporal binding.

T-bound: see bound.

T-bygone situation: predicated situation which is represented as T-anterior to the temporal zero-point (t_0) by the use of a tense. Thus, in *Ten minutes ago, Jane was working in the garden*, the time of the predicated situation (which coincides with the punctual Adv-time of *ten minutes ago*) is represented as lying wholly before t_0 by the use of the past tense form *was working*, even though the full situation may still be continuing at t_0.

T-concept: concept relevant to the description of the tense system. (contrasted with W-concept)

Telic: ontological feature. Said of a situation-template if the verb phrase describing it represents any actualization of the situation as tending towards a natural (inherent) point of completion, i. e. a necessary terminal point, beyond which the actualization of the situation cannot continue. For example, in *Betty ran three miles*, the situation of Betty running three miles is complete and naturally comes to an end when Betty finishes running the third mile. If Betty happened to go on to run another three miles, this would not constitute a continuation of the same (instance of the) situation of Betty running three miles. The term *telic* is also applied to verb phrases representing a situation-template as telic, and, by further extension, to clauses and sentences containing a telic verb phrase.

Telicizing constituent: constituent which renders a verb phrase telic, for example *a mile* in *walk a mile*.

Telos: point of completion. In a telic verb phrase the telos may be indicated by a measure phrase (as in *walk a mile*) or may be pragmatically implied (as in *write a book*).

Temporal adverbial (or **time adverbial**): cover term for three kinds of adverbials giving temporal information: time-specifying adverbials (e. g. *at six o'clock*), pure duration adverbials (e. g. *for two hours*) and bifunctional adverbials (specifying both time and duration, e. g. *from six to eight*).

Temporal anchor: see anchor time.

Temporal binding (or **temporal subordination**): the phenomenon that a situation time is T-related to another situation time (or other orientation time) within a temporal domain. For example, in *Meg had seen Jill*, the situation time of *had seen* is '(temporally) bound by' (or 'temporally subordinated to') an orientation time which is not explicitly referred to but forms part of a past temporal domain. Strictly speaking, it is only situation times that can be bound, but by extension we can also apply the label to the situation itself. In this way we can say that in *Sue knew that Meg had seen Jill* the situation of knowing is the 'binding situation', while the situation of Meg seeing Jill is the 'bound situation'.

Temporal clause: see time clause.

Temporal domain: set of orientation times which are temporally related to each other by means of tenses. At least one of these orientation times is a situation time (since any tense form locates an actualization of a situation in time). A domain is normally established by an absolute tense form and expanded by one or more relative tense forms. The latter establish temporal subdomains. Thus, in *John said he had prayed*, the absolute past tense form *said* establishes a past domain and *had prayed* creates a subdomain within that domain.

Temporal focus: the phenomenon that the speaker's tense choice is determined by his wish to focus on the time of actualization of a situation or on a particular nonpresent portion of the time of a full situation which also includes t_0. The former possibility is illustrated by the difference between *He must have been the culprit* (= present conclusion about an anterior situation) and *He had to be the culprit* (= past conclusion about a situation which was then actualizing). The latter possibility is exemplified by [*I spoke to the foreigner in French because*] *he didn't understand English*. (The foreigner presumably still does not understand English at the temporal zero-point, so the speaker could have used *doesn't understand*. Using the past tense, however, he focuses on the time when he spoke to the foreigner rather than on the present.)

Temporal subdomain: temporal domain inside another temporal domain. Whenever a situation time is incorporated into an already existing temporal domain, it creates a subdomain. This newly introduced situation time automatically functions as the central orientation time of the subdomain in question. For example, in *John said that he had warned the others that he felt sick*, the tense form *said* establishes a past domain, and *had warned* establishes a subdomain within it. *Felt* [*sick*] expresses a T-relation (viz. simultaneity) in the subdomain established by *had warned* and in doing so creates another subdomain, which is not further expanded.

Temporal subordination: the use of a relative tense. See temporal binding.

Temporal W-interpretation: interpretation of temporal relations as they exist in the actual world (or any other possible world referred to) regardless of whether they are expressed by tense forms or not. For example, in *When they had first seen it, the house had made an overwhelming impression on them*, the (actualizations of the) two situations are interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other, but neither of the past perfect tense forms expresses T-simultaneity.

Temporal zero-point (or **zero-time** or **t_0**): the time which is the ultimate 'origin' of all the temporal relations expressed by the temporal structure of a tense, i. e. the only time in a tense structure that is not itself represented as dependent on another (more basic) time. It is the only time that is given ('assumed known') whenever a sentence is uttered. In English, the temporal zero-point is nearly always the encoding time, i. e. the time of uttering or writing the message. Occasionally, the zero-point is the decoding time, i. e. the time when the addressee is expected to hear or read the message, as is the case when a note stuck to someone's door reads *I am in room 21.* (As always, the present tense locates the situation time at t_0, but t_0 is the time of reading the message rather than the time of writing it.)

Temporally bound (or **temporally subordinated**): said of a situation time that is related by a tense form to an orientation time functioning as central orientation time of a temporal domain – see temporal binding.

Temporally subordinated: see temporally bound.

Temporary habit: habit that is represented as being restricted in time. If the verb is dynamic, a temporary habit is expressed by the use of the progressive form. For example: *She's (currently) working 60 hours a week*.

Tense: (a) the phenomenon that a language has a special system of verb forms to locate (the actualizations of) situations in time; (b) the correlation of a particular grammatical form with a particular tense meaning (e. g. the 'past tense'). In more detail: tense is a linguistic concept (as opposed to time) denoting the form taken by the verb to locate (the actualization of) the situation referred to in time, i. e. to express the temporal relation between the time of the situation in question and an orientation time which may be either the temporal zero-point or another orientation time that is temporally related (directly or indirectly) to the temporal zero-point. English has several tenses, such as the present tense, the past tense, etc., to which correspond different verb forms, which are called the tense forms of the verb.

Tense auxiliary: cover term for the perfect tense auxiliary *have* and the future tense auxiliary *will* (or *shall*).

Tense form: a concrete verb form expressing a particular tense, in other words, a particular form taken by the verb to express a particular temporal meaning. A tense form can be a simple verb form (e. g. 'verb stem + past tense morpheme') or a complex one (e. g. '[verb stem of future tense auxiliary + past tense morpheme] + perfect infinitive', i. e. the conditional perfect tense form). That is, it may either consist of one constituent (the main verb) only or be a phrase involving one or more auxiliaries next to the main verb.

Tensed clause: clause involving a tensed verb form, i. e. finite clause.

Tensed proposition: see proposition.

Tensed verb form: see tense form.

Tenseless (or **nontensed** or **untensed**) **verb form**: verb form which is not marked for tense, i. e. which does not encode information about how a situation time is related (directly or indirectly) to the temporal zero-point. Nonfinite verb forms and subjunctive verb forms are tenseless in this sense.

Tense relation (or **T-relation**): temporal relation expressed by a tense form. For example, the future perfect, which is an absolute-relative tense, expresses two T-relations: 'The time of the situation is anterior to an implicit time of orientation' and 'the implicit time of orientation is posterior to the temporal zero-point' (e. g. *He will have left*).

Tense structure: particular temporal meaning expressed by a tense. This is the temporal structure (minimally involving a situation time, an orientation time and a temporal relation between them) which represents a specific way of locating the actualization of a situation in time. For example, the tense structure of the future tense consists of the temporal relation 'The situation time is T-posterior to the temporal zero-point'.

Tentative world: (a) possible world which is nonfactual and which is assumed by the speaker to be unlikely ever to become the actual world (e. g. the hypothetical future world in *You would be punished if you did that*); (b) Nonfactual world which is represented as tentative for reasons of tact, politeness, etc. (e. g. *Would you please help me?*).

Terminative aspect: see egressive aspect.

Time: extralinguistic category (as opposed to tense), relating to our experience of the way that (the actualizations of) different situations are arranged with respect to one another along a nonspatial continuum (= the time line), from the past through the present to the future.

Time adverbial (or **temporal adverbial**): cover term for three kinds of adverbials giving temporal information: time-specifying adverbials (e. g. *at six o'clock*), pure duration adverbials (e. g. *for two hours*) and bifunctional adverbials (specifying both time and duration, e. g. *from six to eight*).

Time clause: subclause indicating time. The unmarked interpretation is that of 'adverbial time clause', i. e. subclause specifying an Adv-time. In *He left when*

I left, the *when*-clause specifies an Adv-time which contains (in terms of coincidence) the situation time of the head clause. There are various other types of time clauses, e. g. relative clauses depending on an antecedent referring to time (e. g. [*I'll always remember the day*] *when she died*), time clauses with a nominal function (e. g. [*I don't know*] *when he did it*), narrative time clauses (e. g. [*We were having tea*] *when suddenly the window burst*), etc.

Time line: the conceptualization of the way time 'flows' by users of English. The time line is conceptualized as consisting of two different time-spheres, viz. the past time-sphere and the present time-sphere, between which there is felt to be a break.

Time of orientation: see orientation time.

Time of the full situation: time which is taken up by the full situation and which may be longer than the time of the predicated situation (= the situation time) if the (actualization of the) situation is homogeneous (= nonbounded). For example, in *Two minutes ago John was in the library*, the situation time is that portion of the full situation (of John being in the library) that coincides with the Adv-time specified by *two minutes ago*. The time of the full situation may be much longer and may include the temporal zero-point.

Time of the predicated situation: time taken up by the predicated situation. Synonym of situation time.

Time of the situation: see situation time.

Time-specifying adverbial: temporal adverbial like *at 5 p.m.*, *yesterday*, etc. whose function is to locate a situation time or other orientation time in time by indicating a specific Adv-time ('adverbially indicated time'). This Adv-time 'contains' the orientation time in question in terms of inclusion or coincidence.

Time-sphere: one of the two main divisions of time reflected in English tense morphology, namely 'past' and 'nonpast'. Hence, we speak of the past time-sphere and the present time-sphere (or nonpast time sphere). In more detail: the use of a tense form in English implies that the speaker views the time of the predicated situation referred to (= the situation time) as either past or nonpast with respect to the time functioning as temporal zero-point (which is usually the moment of speech). This means that any tense form locates a situation time either in the past time-sphere or in the present time-sphere. These time-spheres are not objective physical entities but represent the ways in which an English-language user conceptualizes time. The past time-sphere is conceived of as a time span of indefinite length which lies wholly before (and hence does not include) the temporal zero-point. To locate a situation time in this time-sphere the speaker uses the preterite (past tense). The present time-sphere is conceived of as a time span of indefinite length which includes the zero-point and is divided by it into three zones: the portion of the present time-sphere that starts before the zero-point and leads up to it is the pre-present (zone); the portion that coincides with the zero-point is the present (zone); and the portion that follows the zero-point is the post-present (zone).

Time-zone (or **zone**): cover term for any of the four portions of time that together make up the two time-spheres: the three parts of the present time-sphere, namely the pre-present zone, the present zone and the post-present zone, plus the past zone (which coincides with the past time-sphere). Since these four zones (pre-present, present, post-present and past) are defined in direct relation to the temporal zero-point, they constitute the set of absolute zones (or absolute time-zones).

T-interpretation: (a) in general: temporal reading which is based on the semantics (= tense structure) of the chosen tense only; (b) in connection with the present perfect: one of two possible readings that are compatible with the semantics of this tense, namely a 'before now' interpretation (as in *I have done it*) and a 'co-extensive' interpretation (as in *Where have you been?* or *I've been living here for years*).

T-posterior: showing the relation of T-posteriority. A given time A is T-posterior to another time B if the speaker uses a tense form (such as the conditional tense) to represents A as following B, i. e. as predicted or predictable (but not yet a fact) at time B.

T-posteriority: posteriority (futurity) expressed by a tense. For example, in *Jim said he would do it*, the conditional tense form (*would do*) expresses T-posteriority: it represents the situation time of Tim's doing it as following the situation time of his speaking.

Transition: punctual change of one state into another.

Transition reading: punctual interpretation of a clause involving the use of a transitional situation verb, as in *He died* (as opposed to *He was dying*).

Transitional: ontological feature of a situation-template which consists in a single transition, conceived of as punctual, from one state into another.

Transitional situation: situation represented as involving, or consisting of, a single, punctual change of one state into another (e. g. a death).

Transitional situation verb: verb like *die*, *kill*, etc., which refers to a punctual transition or, when the progressive form is used or a nonpunctual duration adverbial is added, to the durative preparatory phase leading up to the transition in question.

Transitive verb: (a) verb that is accompanied by a direct object as complement; (b) verb like *eat* that can in principle take a direct object, even if it does not do so in certain sentences (where it is used intransitively, i. e. without a complement, e. g. *John is eating*).

Transparent interpretation: interpretation in terms of the speaker's actual world. For example, in *John believes that Paris is the capital of Italy*, the *that*-clause is true in the intensional world of John's belief, but not in (what the speaker knows to be) the actual world. That is, *Paris is the capital of Italy* is true on an intensional (opaque) interpretation, but not on a transparent one.

T-relate: express a T-relation.

T-relation (or **tense relation**): temporal relation expressed by a tense form. For example, the future perfect, which is an absolute-relative tense, expresses two T-relations: 'The time of the situation is anterior to an implicit time of orientation' and 'the implicit time of orientation is posterior to the temporal zero-point' (e. g. *He will have left*).

T-simultaneity: kind of T-relation: the situation time is linguistically represented as simultaneous with an orientation time. T-simultaneity is by definition a relation of strict coincidence. Thus, in *Meg said that she was feeling ill*, the situation time of Meg's feeling ill is represented by the tense form as strictly coinciding with the situation time of Meg's speaking, even though the W-relation between the (actualizations of) the two situations is assumed to be one of W-simultaneity, i. e. overlap or inclusion.

T-simultaneous: showing T-simultaneity. A given orientation time A is T-simultaneous with an orientation time B if the speaker uses a tense form representing A as coinciding with B.

Type of situation: see situation type.

Unanchored time-specifying adverbial (or **nondeictic time-specifying adverbial**): time-specifying adverbial which does not relate the Adv-time which it indicates to a temporal anchor. For example: in *I've heard that name at some time or other*, the Adv-time specified by *at some time or other* is anchored neither to the temporal zero-point nor to a contextually given time.

Unbounding constituent: clause constituent which removes the idea of a temporal right boundary, thus rendering the clause L-nonbounded, e. g. the constituent *to party activists* in *Bill handed out the Labour Party badge to party activists* or the temporal adverbial in *I will run the marathon for many more years*.

Unembedded clause: syntactically independent clause. See also matrix.

Unexpanded domain: temporal domain which consists of just one situation time: the set of orientation times forming the domain is a singleton. For example, in *He left at five and I will leave at eight*, both tense forms establish a past domain of their own which is not further expanded.

Universal (or **gnomic**) **sentence**: sentence referring to a habit or other state which holds at all times or at every time in the existence of the referent of the subject (e. g. *Two and two is four*; *The sun rises in the east*).

Unmarked interpretation: the interpretation which (failing any indication to the contrary) the addressee or hearer will naturally assume to be the reading that is intended by the speaker.

Unmarked up-to-now reading (or **unmarked up-to-now interpretation**): up-to-now reading (of a clause in the present perfect) which is not a constitution reading, because it is not specificational. For example: *You've been thinking of something else all the time I've been talking*.

Unspecified orientation time: orientation time which has to be recovered from the linguistic context. For example, in the case of the sentence *Bill had left the room*, the orientation time to which Bill's leaving is related as T-anterior may be the time of a predicated situation referred to in a previous sentence (as in [*When Megan woke up, it was no longer dark*.] *Bill had left the room*), or it may be an otherwise unspecified time contained in an Adv-time (e. g. *Yesterday Bill had left the hotel*). Only in the former case do we speak of an 'unspecified orientation time'.

Untensed (or **nontensed** or **tenseless**) **verb form**: verb form which is not marked for tense, i. e. which does not encode information about how a situation time is related (directly or indirectly) to the temporal zero-point. Nonfinite verb forms and subjunctive verb forms are tenseless in this sense.

Up-to-now perfect: shorthand for 'present perfect used in a clause receiving an up-to-now reading'.

Up-to-now reading (or **up-to-now interpretation**): one of three possible W-interpretations of a clause in the present perfect, namely that in which the full situation fills the entire period leading up to the temporal zero-point (t_0) but does not include t_0, thus coinciding with the situation time (which itself coincides with the pre-present zone). Such a reading is assigned, for example, to *Where have you been?*, when said to someone who has just come in.

Utterance: a structured set of words which a speaker or writer produces in the form of speech sounds or letters. A meaningful utterance is the physical form of a sentence.

Utterance-explaining *because*-clause: clause which is introduced by the subordinating conjunction *because* and which explains why the speaker makes the speech act (i. e. assertion, question, instruction, etc.) that he makes by uttering the head clause. For example: [*You'd better hurry up,*] *because there's going to be a storm.*

Value (of specificational sentence): that constituent of a specificational structure that is specified as value for a presupposed variable, e. g. *a book* in *It was a BOOK* that I gave him, What I gave him was a *BOOK*, I gave him a *BOOK*, A *BOOK* was what I gave him. The value constituent always receives a heavy (contrastive) accent.

Value constituent: constituent representing the value of a specificational sentence, e. g. *a book* in *What I gave him was a BOOK.*

Vantage time: a point in time or a time interval from which (the actualization of) a situation is viewed as ongoing (= in progress) by the speaker referring to that progressive situation. The vantage time is explicitly mentioned in sentences like *At 7 p.m. I was still working*.

Variable (of specificational sentence): the (presupposed) constituent of a specificational structure for which a value is specified (or, in questions, asked). For example, in each of the following sentences the variable is 'the x that I gave him': *It was a BOOK* that I gave him, What I gave him was a *BOOK*, I gave him a *BOOK*, A *BOOK* was what I gave him.

Variable constituent: constituent representing the variable of a specificational sentence, e. g. *What I gave him* in *What I gave him was a BOOK.*

Verb complement: a VP-internal argument of a verb (i. e. any argument of the verb that is not the subject), such as a direct object (e. g. *I hit him*), indirect object (e. g. *I gave him a kite*), subject complement (e. g. *Bill is ill*), object complement (e. g. *We called him a fool*), prepositional object (e. g. *I looked into the question carefully*).

Verb form: particular form of a verb. In *Bill sneezed*, the verb form *sneezed* consists of a conjugated form of the verb *sneeze* only; so does *takes* in *Bill takes drugs*; in *Bill may have been working*, the verb form consists of the participle form of the main verb (*working*) preceded by three auxiliary verbs; in *John will leave now*, the form consists of one auxiliary followed by the present infinitive form of the main verb.

Verb of creation: verb like *write*, *form* or *build*, which expresses the making (bringing into existence) of something. In clauses like *A problem has {arisen / cropped up}*, the verbs *arise* and *crop up* are also called verbs of creation because they refer to the coming into existence of something.

Verb phrase (**VP**): phrase whose head is a main verb. In the clause *John left the house last night*, the verb phrase is *left the house last night*. In this case the verb phrase constitutes the entire predicate constituent. (The latter comprises the verb phrase plus the optional adverbials, if any.) A verb phrase minimally consists of a verb form. It also includes the verb complement(s) and/or the necessary adverbial(s), if any.

Verb stem: that part of the verb that remains constant in the different forms of the verb, e. g. *unchain* in *unchains*, *unchained*, *unchaining*. As a rule, the stem is identical in form with the present infinitive or the present subjunctive form of he verb.

Voice auxiliary: the grammatical auxiliary *be* when it is used to build a passive verb form.

VP: conventional linguistic abbreviation of verb phrase.

W-anterior: time A is W-anterior to time B if it is anterior to B without necessarily being represented as T-anterior to time B by a tense form.

W-anteriority: anteriority that exists in the actual world (or in whatever nonfactual world is being referred to) but which is not necessarily expressed by the tense used. For example, in *I left before John arrived*, my leaving is W-anterior to John's arrival, but it is not represented as T-anterior to it by the tense form *left*.

W-bounded: said of a bounded situation whose boundedness is not a question of linguistic representation – see L-bounded – but merely a matter of interpretation based on pragmatic inference. For example, out of context the sentence *John was in the park this morning* will be taken to imply that John is no longer in the park at the temporal zero-point, but this implicature can be cancelled by a contextual addition like *and he told me he would stay there until you came to fetch him, so you'd better hurry off*. In other words, in isolation the sentence *John was in the park this morning* is by implicature interpreted as W-bounded, but is not L-bounded (= linguistically represented as bounded).

W-bygone situation: situation which is conceived of as completely over at the temporal zero-point, as in *I've closed the door*; *Once upon a time there was a princess who felt very lonely.*

W-concept: concept which has to do with the interpretation of situations and temporal relations in the actual world or in whatever alternative world is being referred to. (contrasted with T-concept)

Weak verb: see regular verb.

Weak intensional verb: verb like *see* or *say*, which establishes an intensional domain but allows its object clause to create a new temporal domain so that the clause in question receives a transparent interpretation rather than an intensional (opaque) interpretation. There is such a shift of domain, e. g. in *Bill {saw / said} that the bridge is rather mouldered*. See also strong intensional verb.

***Wh*-question**: interrogative sentence or subclause containing a question word (usually in initial position), with the question having narrow scope (over the questioned constituent only), e. g. *Who did that?* – [*I don't know*] *who did that*.

Wide scope negation: negation with scope over the entire clause or sentence, as in *These spiders are not dangerous* (= 'It is not the case that these spiders are dangerous').

Wide scope question (or '**polar question**' or '***yes / no*-question**'): interrogative sentence or subclause expressing a question which invites either *yes* or *no* as an answer (e. g. *Did you tell him about me?*). That such questions have wide scope is illustrated by the fact that they allow a paraphrase like *Is it true that …?* or *Is it the case that …?*

W-interpretation: (a) in general: temporal reading which is not exclusively based on the semantics of the chosen tense but also takes into account such elements as temporal adverbials, context, situation of speaking, knowledge of the (actual or nonfactual) world referred to and pragmatic principles such as the Gricean Maxims of conversation; (b) in connection with the present perfect: one of three possible readings related to the full situation: the 'indefinite reading' (i. e. the full situation comes to an end before the temporal zero-point), the 'continuative reading' (i. e. the time of the full situation includes t_0) and the 'up-to-now reading' (i. e. the terminal point of the full situation preceding t_0 is adjacent to t_0).

W-nonbounded: said of (the time of actualization of) a full situation which is not *interpreted* as bounded, even though its situation time may be *represented* as bounded. For example, in *From 9 to 12 Tom was not in his office*, the situation time is bounded by virtue of being contained by (in this case: coinciding with) the Adv-time specified by the heterogeneous time adverbial *from 9 to 12*. However, unless *from 9 to 12* is taken to represent important new information, the time of (actualization of) the full situation is not interpreted as bounded: Tom may also have been absent from his office before nine and/or after 12. In fact, it is theoretically possible that he has *never* been in his office. In that case the (time of actualization of) the full situation of his not being in his office is clearly W-nonbounded, i. e. not interpreted as bounded. Similarly, sentences like *John was reading the letter* or *John drank whisky* do not involve reference to a terminal point, so that the actualizations referred to are not represented as bounded (= reaching a terminal point). However, it is possible that for pragmatic reasons (e. g. present knowledge of the actual world) the actualization is interpreted as being over (and hence as bounded). If that is the case, the (actualization of) the situation is L-nonbounded but W-bounded.

World relation: see W-relation.

W-posterior: time A is W-posterior to time B if it is posterior to B without necessarily being represented as T-posterior to B by a tense form.

W-posteriority: posteriority that exists in the actual world (or in whatever nonfactual world is being referred to) but which is not necessarily expressed by the tense used. For example, in *I left before John arrived*, John's arrival is W-posterior to my leaving but is not represented as T-posterior to it by the tense form *left*. (T-posteriority would be expressed by *had left*.)

W-relation: temporal relation that exists between two times but is not necessarily a T-relation (i. e. a relation expressed by a tense form). The unmarked interpretation of the term 'W-relation' is: temporal relation not expressed by a tense form. In that case, the nature of the temporal relation can only be identified from pragmatic knowledge or inference. A W-relation is either W-anteriority, W-posteriority or W-simultaneity.

W-simultaneity: simultaneity that exists in the actual world (or in whatever nonfactual world is being referred to) but which is not necessarily expressed by the tense used. For example, in *There had been no one in the house when he had first visited it*, the two situations are (and are interpreted as being) W-simultaneous with each other, but the past perfect tense forms represent both as T-anterior to the same (unspecified) past orientation time. Unlike T-simultaneity, W-simultaneity need not be a relation of strict coincidence: it is sufficient that the two times in question have a point in common. For example, in *I live in London*, the (durative) full situation includes the (punctual) temporal zero-point. The containment relation between a situation time and the time (of actualization) of the corresponding full situation is also an instance of W-simultaneity.

W-simultaneous: time A is W-simultaneous with time B if it is simultaneous with B but not necessarily represented as T-simultaneous with B by a tense form. Two times are W-simultaneous with each other if they have at least one point in common. See also W-simultaneity and W-simultaneous domains.

W-simultaneous domains: separate temporal domains which are interpreted as W-simultaneous. For example, in *He looked at the figure in the distance but didn't recognize it*, both preterite forms establish a domain of their own, but these are interpreted as W-simultaneous with each other.

***Yes / no*-question** (or **polar question** or **wide scope question**): interrogative sentence or subclause expressing a question to which the expected reply is *yes* or *no*. The clause does not contain a question word, and the question has scope over the entire proposition. For example: *Is the house humid?* (= 'Is it the case that the house is humid?')

Zero-conjunction: This term is used in cases of syntactic subordination, when the subclause is not connected to the head clause by a subordinating conjunction. Thus, in *I said you could trust me*, the nominal clause (object clause) is not introduced by the conjunction *that*.

Zero-point: see temporal zero-point (t_0).

Zero-time: see temporal zero-point (t_0).

Zone (or **time-zone**): cover term for any of the four portions of time that together make up the two time-spheres: the three parts of the present time-sphere, namely the pre-present zone, the present zone and the post-present zone, plus the past zone (which coincides with the past time-sphere). Since these four zones (pre-present, present, post-present and past) are defined in direct relation to the temporal zero-point, they constitute the set of absolute zones (or absolute time-zones).

Zone-independent adverbial: see zone-independent time-specifying adverbial.

Zone-independent time-specifying adverbial (or **zone-independent adverbial**): time-specifying adverbial which specifies a time which is not linked up with one particular time-zone, e. g. *at five o'clock*. Such an adverbial is compatible with more than one absolute tense: *He left at five o'clock*; *He will leave at five o'clock*.

References

Brinton, Laurel
2000 *The Structure of Modern English: A Linguistic Introduction*. Amsterdam / Philadelphia: John Benjamins
Bussmann, Hadumod
1996 *Routledge Dictionary of Language and Linguistics*. London / New York: Routledge.
Comrie, Bernard
1985 *Tense*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
1986 Tense in indirect speech. *Folia Linguistica* 20: 265–296.
Cygan, Jan
1972 Tense and aspect in English and Slavic. *Anglica Wratislaviensia* 2: 5–12.
Declerck, Renaat
1991 *Tense in English: Its Structure and Use in Discourse*. London / New York: Routledge.
1997 *When-clauses and Temporal Structure*. London / New York: Routledge.
Declerck, Renaat and Susan Reed
2001 *Conditionals: A Comprehensive Empirical Analysis*. Berlin / New York: Mouton De Gruyter.
Donnellan, Keith S.
1966 Reference and definite descriptions. *The Philosophical Review* 75: 281–304.
Fleischman, Suzanne
1982 *The future in Thought and Language: Diachronic Evidence from Romance*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Haegeman, Liliane
1989 *Be going to* and *will*: a pragmatic account. *Journal of Linguistics* 25: 291–317.
Huddleston, Rodney
1976 Some theoretical issues in the description of the English verb. Review article on Palmer (1974). *Lingua* 40: 331–383.
Grice, H. Paul
1975 Logic and conversation. In: Peter Cole and Jerry L. Morgan (eds), 41–58, *Syntax and Semantics. Volume 3: Speech Acts*. New York: Academic Press.
Jespersen, Otto
1932 *A Modern English Grammar on Historical Principles. Part 4: Syntax (3rd volume)*. London: Allen and Unwin; Copenhagen: Ejnar Munksgaard.
Klein, Wolfgang
1992 The present perfect puzzle. *Language* 68: 525–553.
1994 *Time in Language*. London / New York: Routledge.
Lakoff, George
1970 A note on ambiguity and vagueness. *Linguistic Inquiry* 1: 357–359
Lakoff, Robin
1970 Tense and its relation to participants. *Language* 46: 838–849.

Leech, Geoffrey
1971 *Meaning and the English verb*. London: Longman.
Levinson, Stephen S.
2000 *Presumptive Meanings: The Theory of Generalized Conversational Principles*. Cambridge, MAS: MIT Press.
Lyons, John
1977 *Semantics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Matthiessen, Christian.
1983 Choosing primary tense in English. *Studies in Language* 7: 369–429.
Palmer, Frank R.
1974 *The English Verb*. London: Longman.
1988 *The English Verb*. Second edition. London: Longman.
Quirk, Randolph, Sidney Greenbaum, Geoffrey Leech and Jan Svartvik
1985 *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*. London: Longman.
Vendler, Zeno
1967 Verbs and times. In: Zeno Vendler, 97–121, *Linguistics in Philosophy*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press.

Index

A
absolute deictic relation 485, 490
absolute deictic time-specifying adverbial 112, 591–592, 629
Absolute Future System 519, 527, 531, 535–557, 560–565, 567–570, 638, 676, 692, 701, 703, 706, 725–726, 737, 746, 754, 756–757
absolute past tense 153, 155–156, 193–208, 373–374, 383–424, 435–438, 444, 446, 449–450, 502, 573, 655, 665, 694–697, 707, 716, 746, 754–755
absolute present tense 171–191, 466, 486, 682
absolute preterite *see* absolute past tense
absolute relation 443
absolute-relative tense 25–26, 156–157, 345, 374, 503, 531–532, 727–728
absolute tense 16, 25, 117, 120, 153–154, 207, 171–360, 378, 381, 383–424, 468, 479–480, 485–487, 529–570, 573, 675–682, 692–717, 721–725, 732, 746
absolute time-zone 150, 169, 371–372, 377, 381, 427–428, 501, 575, 593, 629
absolute zone *see* absolute time-zone
abstract situation type 41, 49–71
accomplishment 70–71
achievement 70–71
action 57, 66–69
action verb 68
activity 69–71
actualization 12, 40
actualization adverbial 622–623, 632
actualization aspect 30, 72–81
actualization focus 204–206, 299, 319–322, 326, 331, 604–605
actualization-explaining *because*-clause 552–553
actualize 12, 40
adjectival clause 14
adverbial *see* absolute deictic time-specifying adverbial, actualization adverbial, bifunctional adverbial, deictic time-specifying adverbial, duration adverbial, durative time-specifying adverbial, inclusive duration adverbial, multiple-orientation-time adverbial, multi-zone adverbial, nondeictic time-specifying adverbial, noninclusive adverbial, orientation-time adverbial, past zone adverbial, pre-present zone adverbial, punctual time-specifying adverbial, pure duration adverbial, relative-absolute deictic time-specifying adverbial, relative deictic time-specifying adverbial, single-zone adverbial, situation-time adverbial, temporal adverbial, time-specifying adverbial, zone-independent adverbial
adverbial clause 14 (*see also after*-clause, *because*-clause, *before*-clause, bounded clause, conditional clause, free relative clause, heterogeneous, homogeneous, nonbounded, *since*-clause, subclause, *until*-clause, *when*-clause, *while*-clause)
Adv-time 119, 122, 132–144, 173, 367–368, 612, 644
Adv-time adverbial *see* time-specifying adverbial
Adv-time of the head clause 642–643, 651–652
Adv-time of the *when*-clause 642–645, 650, 654
Adv-time-relation 122, 134

Adv-time-simultaneity 134–135, 139–140, 145
after-clause 446, 523, 741–753
agent 48, 53, 67, 186, 191
agentive 50–54, 61, 66–70, 281, 290, 342–343, 346, 356
Aktionsart *see* ontological aspect
Anchor time 195, 197, 202, 289, 320, 352, 562, 591, 629, 688–692, 706–718, 722–728, 738–751
anchored time-specifying adverbial *see* deictic time-specifying adverbial
anteriority 17–18, 25, 161 (*see also* T-anteriority, W-anteriority)
argument (NP) 20–21, 79, 123, 295, 541
aspect *see* actualization aspect, grammatical aspect, ontological aspect
aspect auxiliary 19
aspectualizer 31–32
assertive clause 606
atelic 60–65, 68, 70–71, 75–77, 115, 306, 366–367, 595
atemporal *when*-clause 672
attributive definite noun phrase 204, 247, 574, 592
auxiliary 18–20
auxiliary verb *see* auxiliary

B

background 177, 430
background situation 220, 225, 274, 284–286, 470
backgrounding 430
backshifted 384, 390, 394, 396, 471, 698, 719
backshifting 391
basic orientation time 474, 537–538, 543–548, 554
because-clause 552–554
before-clause 406–408, 446, 523, 562–563, 607, 685–741, 754–755
'before now' interpretation 215, 219
bifunctional adverbial 133–134, 233, 591, 612–613, 738–739
bifunctional temporal adverbial *see* bifunctional adverbial
binding *see* direct binding, indirect binding, temporal binding
binding time 118, 158, 375
bound time 118, 158, 369
bounded 30, 61, 72–82, 114–115, 121–125, 140–143, 145–146, 190 (*see also* L-bounded, W-bounded)
bounding constituent 79–80
bygone 196 (*see also* T-bygone, W-bygone)

C

case-specifying *when*-clause 671
central orientation time 154, 159, 169, 376–377
central time of orientation *see* central orientation time
clause 13–14 (*see also* head clause, matrix, subclause)
cleft 260, 265–267, 545, 631, 733–734 (*see also since*-cleft)
cleft construction *see* cleft
cleft sentence *see* cleft
closed condition 103–104, 354–355, 520, 536, 545–546, 556, 566–567
code 20, 720
co-extensive interpretation 215–216, 445–446, 459–460
coincidence 122–126, 132–136, 369–370, 494
common Adv-time 644, 646–650, 654, 667
complement 20–21 (*see also* complement clause)
complement clause 393, 401, 475, 495, 521, 548–550
complex relative tense 26
complex relation *see* complex T-relation
complex sentence 14, 539
complex T-relation 457, 664
conditional clause 129, 352, 359, 455–456, 495, 540, 566–568

conditional connotation 540, 545, 556, 565–566, 674
conditional perfect (tense) 22, 24, 457–458, 520, 523–524, 673, 715, 735
conditional sentence 129, 166, 354, 497, 556
conditional tense 22, 24, 158, 166, 341–342, 387, 405–408, 421–424, 436, 450, 520, 523, 735
conjugation 18
constitution interpretation (of a clause in the present perfect) *see* constitution reading
constitution reading 229, 256, 255–269, 279–286, 288, 290, 292–293, 324, 326, 331–332, 613, 618–622
contain 122, 132, 134, 212, 640, 644
contained orientation time 134, 640–642, 644–662, 664, 667, 670, 677–678, 687–691, 723, 727–728, 731, 734, 739, 741, 744, 747, 750–753
containment 122–123, 132, 134, 137, 139, 214–215, 643, 645, 650–651, 687, 691, 750
continuative habit 228, 237, 240, 271–273
continuative interpretation *see* continuative reading
continuative perfect 226, 460
continuative reading (of clause in the present perfect) 216, 219, 222, 225–228, 230–243, 245–246, 260–263, 265–267, 271–274, 287–291, 323–325, 350, 364, 460, 470, 478–484, 600, 606, 608–610, 613–615, 617, 622
continuous form *see* progressive form
copula 21
core meaning of a tense 214, 216
counterfactual 128–129, 568, 673–674, 710–713, 715–718, 735–736
counterfactual *before*-clause 735–736
counterfactual *when*-clause 673–674
counterfactual world 42, 674

D

de dicto interpretation *see* intensional interpretation
deictic adverbial *see* deictic time-specifying adverbial
deictic time-specifying adverbial 591–592
denotation 40–49, 55–59, 70, 136–138
dependent clause *see* subclause
de re interpretation *see* transparent interpretation
direct binding 393, 407, 516–522, 660–666
direct result 248, 280–281, 302–306
direct speech 390
dissective 594
domain *see* temporal domain
do-support 20
double pluperfect 27
duration adverbial 59, 75–76, 133, 143, 227, 235, 243, 287, 364, 366–367, 739 (*see also* pure duration adverbial, bifunctional adverbial)
duration-quantifying constitution reading 229, 248, 255, 258–259, 261–263, 265, 282–283
durative situation 45, 47, 49, 51, 55, 57–58, 67, 70–71, 74, 113, 131, 140–141, 167–168, 173–175, 413–415, 508
durative situation verb 45–46, 59
durative situation verb phrase 57, 62
durative time-specifying adverbial 132–133, 138–139
durative verb phrase *see* durative situation verb phrase
dynamic 51–52, 67–71
dynamic verb phrase 52, 68

E

effected noun phrase 298–300
egressive aspect *see* terminative
embedded clause *see* subclause

enriched situation-template 40–41
epistemic modal adverbs 187
epistemic modality 39, 103–105, 453
establish a domain indirectly 488, 500, 681, 720, 725
evaluation time 105, 138, 163, 547, 583–585
event 46, 48, 66–67, 68–69
event verb 68
evidential *because*-clause 553–554
evolving 65, 68–70
expand (a temporal domain) 121, 123–125, 158
expanded domain 123–125, 158
experiential indefinite perfect *see* perfect of experience
experiential perfect *see* perfect of experience
explanatory-resultative (use of the present perfect) 253–255, 277–279, 293
extensional interpretation *see* transparent interpretation

F

factual *see* factual at t_0
factual at t_0 235, 606, 689, 693–697, 699, 707, 710–719, 722, 725–726, 730–737, 739, 747–748, 750, 754–756
factual full situation 144, 235, 364, 612
finite clause 42–44
finite verb form 15, 98, 485
focalizing *when*-clause 671
foreground 177, 430
foregrounding 430
free indirect speech 390, 452, 583, 452–453, 583, 747–748, 753
free relative clause 637, 642
full situation 113–116, 122–125, 127, 133, 135–136, 138–146, 164–168, 173–175, 189–190, 196–199, 207, 213, 216–229, 233–238, 253, 256, 267, 290–292, 364–366, 368–369, 377–378, 413–414, 459–461, 474, 478–483, 573, 586–587, 612–614 (*see also* factual full situation, potential full situation)
full verb 18–19, 31
future 120 (*see also* post-present zone)
future continuous form *see* progressive form
future perfect (tense) 25, 97, 108, 493, 503–504, 518–520, 532, 558, 725–726, 749–750, 755
future tense 22, 24–25, 78, 96–97, 101–108, 162–163, 337–340, 342–345, 499–500, 519–520, 531–532, 537–569, 675–676, 700–703, 749–750
futurish tense form 106–108, 268, 337–340, 345–346, 356–360, 392, 451–456
futurity *see* posteriority

G

generic sentence 131
gerund 18, 99
gnomic sentence 130–131
grammatical aspect 28–31, 35, 56, 77, 81
grammatical auxiliary 19
Gricean Maxim 32, 63, 73, 88, 133, 136, 185, 198, 271, 349, 454, 577, 599, 617, 649, 672, 737

H

habit 28–29, 34–35, 37, 52–54, 131, 271–273, 277, 288–290, 402–405, 436, 619, 676–678, 680–682, 701, 704–706, 729
head (of a phrase) 12
head clause 14, 380, 687
headless relative clause 559, 637 (*see also* free relative clause)
heterogeneous 45–46, 49–50, 55–56, 74–75, 77–78, 114–115, 145, 165, 235, 253, 366, 394, 396–397, 413–414, 551
heterogeneous Adv-time 594–595, 599–600, 629

historic(al) present 28, 176–178, 382, 398, 424–425, 704–705, 729

homogeneous 35, 45–47, 49–51, 55–57, 74–75, 77, 114–115, 123–125, 131, 136, 138–142, 174–175, 190, 222, 235, 365–366, 392, 413–415, 470, 551, 576

homogeneous Adv-time 593–594, 601–602, 629–630, 669

hot news reading (of the present perfect) 246–247, 249–250, 297, 301, 460, 463–464

hypersituation 28, 36–37, 58, 76, 79–80, 225, 229, 231–232, 238, 258–259, 267–269, 272–273, 279–280, 283–285, 291–292, 462, 470–473, 475–476, 483, 487, 595, 613–614, 677, 704

I

iconic sequencing 428, 431

imperfective 28, 31–35, 38

implicature 32, 54, 62–63, 73, 197–199, 247–248, 254, 273, 280–281, 301–306, 349–351, 431, 454, 577, 644, 647–648, 654, 713, 737 (*see also* Gricean Maxim)

implicature of discontinuation 197–199, 365

implicit condition 342, 347, 353, 453, 676, 715, 717

implicit orientation time 119, 161, 367–368, 406–408, 436, 508, 524, 561–562, 638, 640, 642, 644, 646–649, 650, 652, 670, 689–691, 695–696, 706–709, 715, 718–719, 722, 725, 728, 734, 738, 740, 742–744, 748–750, 755–757

implicit pre-present (time-zone) 214, 255, 258, 295, 298–300, 305, 474

inceptive *see* inchoative

inchoative 28, 31–32, 75–76, 140–141, 401, 430, 470, 608–609, 669

inclusion 122, 132–144, 148, 213–229, 233–235, 241–242, 252–253, 267–271, 280, 290–291, 350, 364–365, 370, 379–380, 430–431, 649–651, 658, 688–690, 744

inclusive adverbial 75–76, 595, 602–603

incurable habit 54

indefinite interpretation *see* indefinite reading

indefinite perfect 226, 460

indefinite reading (of clause in the present perfect) 216, 219– 234, 236–237, 239–250, 261–266, 273–276, 280–282, 287–294, 303–305, 317–319, 321–322, 326, 331–332, 459–474, 480, 484, 501, 504, 607–608, 614–615, 618–619, 623–625, 681, 704, 730, 749

independent clause 14, 199, 349, 380–381, 495, 520, 535, 673

indirect binding 378–379, 393–395, 404, 407, 516–522, 660–666, 696–698, 708, 740, 748, 757

indirect reported speech 349, 388, 390, 395, 411

indirect result 254, 293, 302–306

indirect speech *see* indirect reported speech, free indirect speech

ingressive *see* inchoative

intensional context *see* intensional domain

intensional domain 349–350, 388–389, 406–407, 541–544, 554–555, 560–561, 693, 695–697, 707–710, 719, 737, 739–740

intensional interpretation 388–389, 469, 407, 541–544, 554, 693, 695

intensional verb 396, 407, 542, 693, 695 (*see also* strong intensional verb, weak intensional verb)

intensional world *see* intensional domain

intentionality 54, 186, 191, 342–343, 351

interpretive unit 540, 547, 553

intransitive verb 20–21, 36, 40, 65

inversion 20

inverted pseudo-cleft 260
irrealis 128–129, 568, 673–675, 710–713, 715–718, 735–736
irregular verb 23–24
it-cleft *see* cleft
iterative *see* repetitive
iterative verb 50

K

kind of situation *see* situation type

L

L-bounded 73, 79–82, 140, 142, 198, 226, 235, 237, 272, 366–367, 429–431 (*see also* bounded)
L-bounding consituent *see* bounding constituent
lexical aspect *see* ontological aspect
lexical meaning 18–20, 40, 47
lexical verb 18–19, 31
linking verb *see* copula
L-nonbounded 73, 77, 79–82, 227, 239, 268, 291, 366, 429, 431 (*see also* nonbounded)

M

main clause *see* head clause, matrix
main verb 15, 20, 23, 96, 99
marked interpretation 576, 647, 649, 661, 667
marked temporal focus 576–581, 583–584
marked tense 501, 675
matrix (clause) 14, 381, 393, 516–517, 660, 666, 695–697, 757
Maxim of Quantity 133, 136, 599
Maxim of Relation 185, 198, 323, 349, 454, 577, 617, 672
Maxim of Relevance *see* Maxim of Relation
measure (a period or situation) 62–64, 75–76, 79–80, 142, 223, 229, 259, 269, 282–283, 595, 620, 703, 735, 745
measure phrase 265, 447, 606, 711, 715–717, 719, 728, 731, 734, 736, 745, 751
metalinguistic negation 244
metaphorical uses 27–28, 337, 382, 424–425, 438, 501–502, 711, 731
modal auxiliary 19, 34
modality 22, 27, 38–39, 102–103, 105–106, 116, 128–129, 147, 162, 166, 187, 200, 340–342, 348, 356, 453, 541, 583, 587, 636, 702, 715, 721
momentary *see* punctual
mood 39
multi-zone adverbial 593, 603–605, 629–630
multi-zone time-specifying adverbial *see* multi-zone adverbial
multiple-orientation-time adverbial 137

N

narrative *before*-clause 730–733
narrative clause 177, 275, 446
narrative text 430, 452, 455, 587, 670
narrative *when*-clause 275, 638
neutral prediction 342, 359 (*see also* pure future)
NICE-properties 20
nominal clause 14, 540–541, 550–552, 559, 637
nominal relative clause *see* free relative clause
nonassertive clause 606
nonbounded 72–82, 121–125, 145, 190 (*see also* L-nonbounded, W-nonbounded)
nondeictic adverbial *see* nondeictic time-specifying adverbial
nondeictic time-specifying adverbial 591–592, 596 (*see also* unanchored time-specifying adverbial)
nondurative *see* punctual
nonepistemic modality 39, 147
nonevent 289

nonfactual 42 (*see also* intensional interpretation, intensional domain, not-yet-factual at t, not-yet-factual at t_0)
nonfinite clause 13, 44, 98, 162
nonfinite verb form 16–17, 98–99, 121, 162
nonhomogeneous *see* heterogeneous
noninclusive adverbial 75, 595, 599–602
nonpast time-sphere *see* present time-sphere
nonprogressive form 22, 29–30, 34–36, 49, 57, 81, 99, 115, 122, 141, 174, 180–186, 191, 199, 224, 228, 269, 271–272, 276–277, 281, 284–285, 287–288, 290, 337, 343, 348, 357, 360, 369, 401, 412–413, 454, 551
nonprogressive meaning 29, 49, 72, 81–82, 85, 271, 366–367
nonquantificational constitution interpretation *see* nonquantificational constitution reading
nonquantificational constitution reading 229, 248, 253–254, 256–258, 261, 279–282, 290, 293, 303, 311–312, 317, 324, 445, 478, 613, 618
nonrepetitive 36, 75, 474, 485
nonstatic *see* dynamic
not … until 740–741
not-yet-factual *see* not-yet-factual at t
not-yet-factual at t 120, 406–407, 694, 709, 712, 717–718, 726, 755
not-yet-factual at t_0 162, 340, 541, 695, 712, 719
not-yet-factual at the binding time *see* not-yet-factual at t
not-yet-factual *before*-clause 706, 710–711, 735–738
noun clause *see* nominal clause
number-quantifying constitution interpretation *see* number-quantifying constitution reading
number-quantifying constitution reading 223, 229, 232, 248, 256–258, 283–286, 303, 317, 322, 326, 329, 331–332

O

ontological aspect 29–30, 49–71, 81
opaque domain *see* intensional domain
opaque interpretation *see* intensional interpretation
opaque world *see* intensional domain
open condition 103, 352, 495, 500, 536, 540, 543–546, 548, 556, 559–561, 568, 649, 676
operator auxiliary 23–24
orientation time 16–17, 22, 25–27, 38, 94–96, 105, 117–121, 123, 125–126, 132, 134–135, 137, 139, 143–144, 153–159, 289, 339, 365–370, 372–378, 383–384, 386–388, 392, 399, 402–408, 414–416, 420–424, 444–457, 459, 461–464, 474, 485, 487–494, 498–515, 523–526, 531–534, 537–538, 543–548, 558, 561–564, 568–569, 573, 575, 579–580, 585, 606–607, 616, 637–668, 670, 677–678, 687–691, 694, 700, 706, 719, 722–723, 725–728, 731, 733–735, 738–741, 743–753
orientation-time adverbial 137, 639, 652, 655, 658, 662–663, 687–688, 690, 723, 727–728, 747, 750–753

P

participial clause 3
participle 15–18, 24, 96, 98–99, 162, 497
past (N) *see* past time-sphere
past continuous form *see* progressive form
past domain 121, 154–156, 158–159, 195, 370, 373–374, 383, 385–388, 392–398, 401–404, 420–423, 444–458, 460–463, 492–494, 502–505, 516, 519–520, 681, 720, 722, 725–726, 730–731, 748, 754–757
past participle 17, 24, 96, 98, 162
past perfect (tense) 17, 22, 24, 27, 38, 95, 97, 117–118, 120–121, 126,

128–129, 152–153, 156–157, 159, 178, 200, 367, 374, 392, 395, 402–404, 420–421, 423–424, 438, 444–448, 460, 501, 505, 507–516, 520–523, 534, 569, 661–666, 689, 698, 704, 712–720, 724, 726–727, 731–736, 744–748, 755
past represented speech 388, 390–392, 394, 395–397, 401, 413, 436, 451, 469, 471, 521, 542, 555, 698, 719
past subdomain 159, 435, 449, 491, 502, 666
past subjunctive 16
past temporal domain *see* past domain
past tense 16, 22–25, 27, 64, 96–101, 109, 127–129, 148, 152–156, 163–166, 193–208, 213, 242, 244, 249–250, 275, 293–295, 301–302, 315–333, 365, 372–374, 383–428, 437–438, 444, 446–451, 454–456, 460–471, 477, 479–480, 490–492, 501–503, 505–506, 514, 520–521, 523, 533, 568, 573, 578–584, 586–587, 589–633, 655, 661, 665–670, 677–678, 680–681, 692–699, 707, 711–716, 718–719, 722, 724–726, 730–737, 745–749, 754–756
past time-sphere 147–148, 150–152, 200, 319, 370–372, 374, 444–457, 518, 580
past time-sphere domain *see* past domain
past time-sphere tenses 152, 166, 170, 200, 207, 421, 424, 438, 469, 568, 681, 704, 730
past time-zone 169–170, 178, 213, 295, 371, 382, 484, 525, 573, 598, 652, 721 (*see also* past time-sphere)
past zone *see* past time-zone
past zone adverbial 598
perfect *see* perfect tenses, present perfect
perfect aspect 37–38, 109
perfect gerund 18
perfect infinitive 17, 98
perfect of experience 245–250, 274–275, 303, 463–464, 614, 713–714
perfect tense *see* perfect tenses, present perfect
perfect tenses 24, 37–38, 143, 514
perfective aspect 28, 30–31, 38, 366
perfective meaning 28, 30, 34
performative sentence 74
performative speech act 174
periphrastic auxiliary 19–20
permanent habit 35, 52, 175, 227, 271–273, 277, 290, 477
phrase 12–13
pluperfect *see* double pluperfect, past perfect
point of view 111, 452–453, 469, 511, 541, 557, 582–583, 717
possible world 78, 113, 122, 126, 235, 407, 541–543, 674 (*see also* intensional domain)
posterior *see* posteriority
posteriority 25, 124–126, 369, 450–458, 462–465, 476, 482, 489–490, 499–500, 575, 655–659, 664, 666–670, 681, 694, 707, 720, 727–728, 733, 739–740, 747–748, 751–753, 757 (*see also* T-posteriority, W-posteriority)
post-present *see* post-present zone
post-present domain 130, 153, 339, 345, 358, 380, 382, 384–385, 389, 408, 411, 482, 488–515, 518–520, 529–570, 646, 691, 699–703, 706, 713, 720, 725, 728, 730, 737, 740, 750, 756
post-present time-zone *see* post-present zone
post-present zone 9–10, 148–150, 153, 181–188, 268–269, 335–360, 371–373, 377, 380–382, 387–389, 424, 488–515, 529–570, 581, 584–585, 681, 700–702, 725–728, 739–740, 743, 745–746, 749–750, 754–756
potential full situation 144, 235, 364, 617

predicate *see* predicate constituent
predicate constituent 13, 15, 20, 41–43, 47–49, 55–56, 66
predicated situation 113–118, 138, 142, 164, 174, 196, 364–368
predicational {clause / meaning / sentence} 260–262
predictability 103–105, 342, 350–351
prediction 103–105, 182–183, 337–340, 342, 350, 355, 358–359, 388, 511, 539, 541–542, 544, 560, 737, 748, 750
preparatory phase 58–60
pre-present *see* pre-present zone
pre-present domain 378, 397–398, 459–485, 490, 493–494, 504, 519, 524–526, 698
pre-present situation 180–181, 254, 256, 271, 278, 281, 291, 460, 463–464, 475, 524–525, 600, 620, 632
pre-present time-zone *see* pre-present zone
pre-present zone 109–110, 148–153, 195–196, 200, 207, 212–216, 219–229, 232–234, 238–247, 252–271, 277–292, 295, 302–305, 319, 323–326, 370–372, 397–398, 424, 435, 459–485, 491, 493–494, 501–502, 525–526, 576, 593, 597, 599–602, 608, 612–613, 624, 626, 677–678, 681–682, 704, 730, 745
pre-present-zone adverbial 593, 599–603, 606, 630
present continuous (form) *see* progressive form
present domain 130, 173–175, 380, 485–486, 519
present gerund 18
present infinitive 17
present participle 17, 98, 162, 497
present perfect (tense) 24–25, 38, 97, 108–110, 143–144, 149–150, 188–191, 200–201, 204–206, 209–332, 417–418, 444–445, 459–462, 464–474, 476–482, 491, 493–494, 501, 503, 508–516, 526, 533, 536–537, 558, 589–633, 659, 677–678, 681–682, 698, 703–706, 713, 730, 745, 749–750
present perfect continuous form *see* progressive form
present subjunctive 16
present tense 22–25, 27–28, 96, 109–112, 128, 130–131, 138–139, 147–149, 152–153, 171–191, 240, 263, 267–269, 297–298, 337, 357, 364, 380, 382, 384–385, 389, 396, 398, 408, 412–414, 423–425, 466–467, 470–471, 478, 480–490, 494–498, 500–502, 505–507, 512–514, 533, 535, 541, 550–552, 557–558, 561, 568–569, 577–578, 584, 609–611, 619, 621, 626, 645–646, 675–677, 680–682, 700–702, 705–706, 713, 720, 729–730, 749–750
present tenses *see* present time-sphere tenses
present time-sphere 147–148, 150, 152, 159, 190, 195, 214–216, 250, 370–372, 423–425, 555
present time-sphere tenses 101, 152, 157, 176, 178, 190, 424, 555, 704
present time-zone *see* present zone
present zone 109, 148, 151–152, 371, 525, 583, 593, 629
presupposition 70–71, 143, 202, 247, 254, 258–263, 265, 267, 278, 282, 292, 294, 321–326, 328–329, 331–332, 344, 352, 473, 543–546, 560, 673
preterite *see* past tense
Principle of Unmarked Temporal Interpretation 427–433
prior (to) *see* anteriority
process 66–69, 186
process verb 68
progressive {aspect / form / meaning} 28–38, 46, 49–50, 56–61, 64–65, 68–69, 72, 76–78, 80–82, 96, 99, 108–109, 113, 115, 131, 135–136, 138, 162–163, 173–174, 183–186, 199, 220–221, 225, 231–232, 237–240, 245, 250, 254, 267–269, 271–

285, 288, 290, 343–344, 355–358, 412–414, 454, 615, 744
proposition 38–39, 74, 272, 322, 398, 541, 544–545, 553–554, 560
prospective meaning 564, 658–659, 668, 670, 727
pseudo-absolute-relative tense form 519, 532
pseudo-absolute subdomain 490, 501
pseudo-absolute tense 26–27, 408, 411–412, 490–491, 493, 495–496, 498–499, 501–502, 519, 533–534, 750
pseudo-absolute time-zones *see* pseudo-absolute zones
pseudo-absolute zones 489, 499
pseudo-cleft 260
pseudo-past subdomain 386, 435, 449, 461, 491–493, 502, 504, 506–507, 534
pseudo-past zone 159, 490, 526
pseudo-post-present subdomain 499
pseudo-post-present zone 499
pseudo-pre-present subdomain 490, 493–494, 507, 526, 534
pseudo-pre-present zone 472–473, 491, 493, 502, 504, 526
pseudo-present subdomain 534
pseudo-present time 474 (*see also* pseudo-t_0)
pseudo-sloppy simultaneity 648–649, 667–672
pseudo-t_0 26, 147, 411–412, 472, 489–495, 498–503, 506–510, 514, 526, 532–534, 537–538, 541 (*see also* Pseudo-t_0-System)
Pseudo-t_0-System 519, 527, 533–570, 638, 646, 656, 675–676, 681, 689, 691–692, 700–702, 706, 709, 720, 725–526, 528, 737, 740, 743, 746, 749, 755–757
pseudo-zero-point *see* pseudo-t_0
punctual Adv-time 132, 135, 138, 140–141, 145, 167, 173, 197, 368, 398, 640 (*see also* punctual time-specifying adverbial)
punctual situation 36, 45–47, 51, 55, 58–59, 65, 67, 127, 131, 138, 168, 173–175, 637 (*see also* punctual situation type)
punctual situation time 125, 131–133, 135–136, 138–142, 165–168, 175, 197, 378, 392, 394, 413–414, 508, 639–640, 646, 654
punctual situation type 50, 57–59, 70
punctual situation verb (phrase) 45–47, 57–59, 61, 273
punctual time-specifying adverbial 132, 135–136, 140, 167, 398–401, 436, 616
punctual transition 59–60, 65, 70
punctual verb *see* punctual situation verb
pure duration adverbial 133, 142–144, 167–168, 612, 614, 616, 618, 620, 631
pure future 103–105, 107, 337, 339–340, 342–345, 352, 359–360

Q

quantificational constitution reading 229, 232, 238, 246, 248, 252–268, 282–286, 288, 290–293, 303, 317, 322, 326, 329, 331–332, 473, 478, 599–600, 613, 618–620, 627, 630

R

recency interpretation *see* recency reading
recency reading 221, 231, 244, 249–250, 265, 276, 297, 463, 467–469, 475, 477, 484, 524–525, 632
recent indefinite bygone time 623–625
recursivity 159, 170, 489, 502–503
referent 40
referential definite noun phrase 574
regular verb 23
relative-absolute deictic Adv-time 592
relative-absolute deictic time-specifying adverbial 592

relative deictic Adv-time 592
relative deictic time-specifying adverbial 591–592
relative past tense 124, 155–156, 372–374, 380, 383–424, 448–449, 461–467, 491–492, 501–502, 505–506, 520, 523, 534, 579, 596, 655, 661, 677–678, 681, 689, 692–698, 722, 732–733, 735, 748
relative tense 25–27, 120–121, 153–154, 156–158, 199, 372, 232, 372–374, 377, 380, 383–424, 428, 432, 446–499, 467–468, 485–486, 490–491, 501–502, 534, 575, 485–486, 652, 654, 656, 689–692, 695, 697–699, 707–725, 737, 744, 747 (*see also* absolute-relative tense, complex relative tense, conditional tense, conditional perfect tense, past perfect tense, pseudo-absolute-relative tense form, relative past tense)
repetitive 28, 35–37, 46, 53–54, 58, 79–80, 238, 259, 271, 273, 462, 466–476, 483, 487, 595, 597–598, 613, 676–678, 681–682
replay comment 179
represented speech 388, 390–392, 394, 395–397, 401, 413, 436, 451, 469, 471, 521, 542, 555, 698, 719
restrictive *when*-clause 672
result *see* direct result, indirect result
resultative reading 248, 305–306, 510, 713, 724 (*see also* direct result, indirect result)
rhetorical question 181
root modality 39

S

scope 187–188, 244, 294, 616, 695
semantics of a tense 26–27, 119–121, 155, 176, 195, 202, 212–219, 222–224, 228, 233, 295, 304, 369–370, 386, 396, 409, 420, 423, 449, 541
semelfactive aspect 28, 36, 277, 597
sentence 13–14
shift of domain 381–382, 393, 396, 574, 427, 432, 446, 464–465, 467–468, 470, 475–485, 490, 495, 516, 518, 524–525, 695, 706, 720
shift of temporal domain *see* shift of domain
shift of temporal focus 105, 466, 574, 577, 581–583, 585
shift of temporal perspective 129–130, 176, 180–181, 199, 337, 382, 424–425, 461, 484, 489, 491, 501–502, 524–526, 533, 535, 551
shift the domain *see* shift of domain
simple situation-template 40–43, 47, 58
simultaneity 25, 123–125, 496 (*see also* Adv-time-simultaneity, pseudo-sloppy simultaneity, sloppy simultaneity, T-simultaneity, W-simultaneity)
since-adverbial 189, 191, 266, 600, 605–611 (*see also since*-clause)
since-clause 289, 447–448, 523, 600, 608–611
since-cleft 263, 447
single-zone adverbial 593
situation kind *see* situation type
situation-template 40–44, 47–48, 51, 55–56, 58, 60–61, 63–64, 66, 77–78
situation time 95, 116–117, 365
situation-time adverbial 136–137, 638–641, 644, 649, 658, 662–667, 687–690, 698–699, 707, 716–723, 727, 745–750, 754
situation time of the *after*-clause 742–751
situation time of the *before*-clause 687–692, 694, 696, 706–709, 713, 715, 718, 722, 725–728, 731, 733–734
situation time of the *until*-clause 407, 739–741
situation time of the *when*-clause 122, 143, 393, 638, 641, 643–661, 664–667, 670–672, 675, 677–678, 681

situation time of the *while*-clause 294
situation type 12, 28–29, 41–45, 47–51, 55–57, 59–61, 63–71, 77–78, 201, 229, 279
situation-unbounding adverbial constituent 600 (*see also* unbounding constituent)
sloppy simultaneity 496–497, 560–561, 647–648 (*see also* pseudo-sloppy simultaneity)
Special Present Time-sphere System 176–188, 619, 675, 704–706, 729
specificational {clause / meaning / sentence} 259–267, 312, 447, 544
state 45, 51–53, 66, 68
state verb 51
static situation *see* state
static situation verb *see* state verb
stem 23
strict coincidence 123–124, 369
strong intensional verb 554, 569
strong verb 23–24
subclause 14
subdomain 158–159, 383, 502–503
subject complement 21
subjunctive *see* present subjunctive, past subjunctive
subordinate clause *see* subclause
subordinating conjunction 14
subsituation 34–36, 258–259

T

t_0 *see* temporal zero-point
t_0-factual *see* factual at t_0
t_0-nonfactual *see* not-yet-factual at t_0
T-anteriority 123–125, 369
T-binding *see* temporal binding
T-bygone 196
T-concept 368 (*see also* T-interpretation, T-relation)
telic 60–65, 68, 70–72, 75–82, 238, 254, 272–273, 278–279
telicizing constituent 63–64
telos 63
temporal adverbial 132–134 (*see also* bifunctional adverbial, pure duration adverbial, temporal clause, time-specifying adverbial)
temporal anchor *see* Anchor time
temporal binding 157–158, 374–375, 380, 516–522, 660–666
temporal clause *see after*-clause, *before*-clause, *since*-clause, *until*-clause, *when*-clause, *while*-clause
temporal domain 119–121, 123–125, 153–159, 372–373, 376–382
temporal focus 511, 546, 571–573–587 (*see also* actualization focus)
temporal interpretation *see* temporal W-interpretation, T-interpretation
temporal subdomain *see* subdomain
temporal subordination *see* temporal binding
temporal W-interpretation 122, 126–127, 216–224, 252, 369
temporal zero-point 97–98, 110–112, 117, 138, 148, 173
temporary habit 35, 37, 271–273
tense 22, 96
tense auxiliary 24–25
tense form 96
tense relation 122, 369 (*see also* T-anteriority, T-posteriority, T-simultaneity)
tense structure 96, 120, 214, 386
tensed verb form 15
tenseless *see* untensed
tentative 128–129, 568, 673–674
terminative 28, 32, 140–141, 168, 401, 744
time adverbial *see* temporal adverbial
time clause *see* temporal clause
time line 149, 154, 377
time of evaluation *see* evaluation time
time of orientation see orientation time
time of the full situation 116, 365 (*see also* full situation)
time of the predicated situation *see* situation time
time of the situation *see* situation time

time-specifying adverbial 132–138, 591–595, 603–605, 612, 619, 637, 650–651, 687, 750
time-sphere 147–152
time-zone 148–151, 370–372
T-interpretation 214–218, 369
T-posteriority 125, 369, 387–388, 450–458, 462–464, 499
transition reading 58–59, 68, 70–71
transitional event verb 45
transitional situation verb 46, 59
transitive verb 21
transparent interpretation 407, 469, 541, 554–555, 567, 695, 712, 717
T-relation 122, 369 (*see also* T-anteriority, T-posteriority, T-simultaneity)
T-simultaneity 122–125, 377–378, 380, 383, 409, 414–416, 448–449, 486, 494–498
type of situation *see* situation type

U

unanchored time-specifying adverbial 398–401 (*see also* nondeictic time-specifying adverbial)
unbounding constituent 80, 600
unembedded clause *see* independent clause
unexpanded domain 155, 158, 373
unidirectional relation 378, 414–416
universal sentence 130–131
unmarked interpretation 259, 287, 342, 423, 514, 520, 576, 614–615, 647, 649–650, 660–661, 667, 714
unmarked orientation time 117
unmarked temporal focus 576–581, 583–585
unmarked temporal interpretation *see* Principle of Unmarked Temporal Interpretation
unmarked tense 176, 179–180, 450, 502, 552, 561, 600, 668
unmarked up-to-now interpretation *see* unmarked up-to-now reading
unmarked up-to-now reading 229, 232, 236–237, 240, 252–255, 277–281, 292–293, 478, 613, 618, 621
unreality *see* irrealis
unspecified orientation time 118, 368
untensed 15–17, 98–99
until-adverbial 80, 616–618, 740–741 (*see also until*-clause)
until-clause 406–407, 738–741
up-to-now interpretation *see* up-to-now reading
up-to-now perfect 226, 460
up-to-now reading (of clause in the present perfect) 216, 219, 222–223, 228–233, 251–270, 277–286, 289–294, 445, 474–478, 613
utterance-explaining *because*-clause 552–253

V

value (of specificational sentence) 259–266 (*see also* specificational)
value constituent *see* value
vantage time 29, 33, 285, 344
variable (of specificational sentence) 259–263
variable constituent *see* variable
verb complement *see* complement
verb form 15–17, 19
verb of creation 298–300
verb of state *see* state verb
verb phrase 12–13, 15, 20, 41–45, 47–52, 57–68, 77–78, 81

W

W-anteriority 122, 126, 369–370, 479
W-bounded 73, 198, 224–226
W-bygone 196
W-concept 368 (*see also* W-interpretation, W-relation)
weak intensional verb 555
weak verb 23
wh-question 181, 254, 260–261, 322, 331–332

when-clause 78, 122, 137, 143, 221, 275, 393, 635–681
while-clause 293–294, 477–478
W-interpretation *see* temporal W-interpretation
W-nonbounded 235, 238
world relation *see* W-relation
W-posteriority 126, 385–389, 482, 517–518, 669, 720, 751–752
W-reading *see* temporal W-interpretation
W-relation 122, 126, 369–370, 378 (*see also* W-anteriority, W-posteriority, W-simultaneity)
W-simultaneity 122, 126–127, 370, 377–379, 392–393, 395–397, 409, 427, 429–432, 462, 464–468, 471–472, 480–481, 517–522, 579, 648–649, 663–665
W-simultaneous domains 378, 429, 466, 471

Z

zero-conjunction 14
zero-point *see* temporal zero-point
zero-time *see* temporal zero-point
zone *see* time-zone
zone-independent adverbial 593–594, 596
zone-independent time-specifying adverbial *see* zone-independent adverbial

THE FARLEX
GRAMMAR BOOK

COMPLETE ENGLISH GRAMMAR RULES

Examples, Exceptions, Exercises &
Everything You Need to
Master Proper Grammar

PETER HERRING

The Farlex Grammar Book:
Complete English Grammar Rules

FARLEX International

Copyright © 2016 Farlex International
All rights reserved.
ISBN: 1535231688
ISBN-13: 978-1535231688

Table of contents

- About the author
- Preface
- Editor's Note
- English Grammar
  - Parts of Speech
    - Nouns
      - Common and Proper Nouns
      - Nouns of Address
      - Concrete and Abstract Nouns
      - Countable Nouns
      - Uncountable Nouns
      - Collective Nouns
      - Compound Nouns
      - Nominalization (Creating Nouns)
    - Pronouns
      - Personal pronouns
        - Personal Pronouns - Number
        - Personal Pronouns - Person (First person, Second person, Third person)
        - Personal Pronouns - Gender
        - Personal Pronouns - Case
        - Personal Pronouns - Reflexive Pronouns
      - Intensive Pronouns
      - Indefinite Pronouns
      - Demonstrative Pronouns
      - Interrogative Pronouns
      - Relative Pronouns
      - Reciprocal Pronouns
      - Dummy Pronouns
    - Verbs
      - Finite and Non-finite Verbs
      - Transitive and Intransitive Verbs
      - Regular and Irregular Verbs
      - Auxiliary Verbs
        - Primary Auxiliary Verbs
        - Modal Auxiliary Verbs
          - Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Will
          - Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Would
          - Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Shall
          - Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Should

      - Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Can
      - Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Could
      - Modal Auxiliary Verbs - May
      - Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Might
      - Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Must
      - Substituting Modal Verbs
    - Semi-Modal Auxiliary Verbs
  - Infinitives
  - Participles
  - Action Verbs
  - Stative Verbs
  - Linking Verbs
  - Light Verbs
  - Phrasal Verbs
    - Common Phrasal Verbs
  - Conditional Verbs
  - Causative Verbs
  - Factitive Verbs
  - Reflexive Verbs
- Adjectives
  - Attributive Adjectives
  - Predicative Adjectives
  - Proper Adjectives
  - Collective Adjectives
  - Demonstrative Adjectives
  - Interrogative Adjectives
  - Nominal Adjectives
  - Compound Adjectives
  - Order of Adjectives
  - Degrees of Comparison
    - Comparative Adjectives
    - Superlative Adjectives
- Adverbs
  - Adverbs of Time
  - Adverbs of Place
  - Adverbs of Manner
  - Adverbs of Degree
    - Mitigators
    - Intensifiers
  - Adverbs of Frequency

    - Adverbs of Purpose
    - Focusing Adverbs
    - Negative Adverbs
    - Conjunctive Adverbs
    - Evaluative Adverbs
    - Viewpoint Adverbs
    - Relative Adverbs
    - Adverbial Nouns
    - Regular and Irregular Adverbs
    - Degrees of Comparison
      - Comparative Adverbs
      - Superlative Adverbs
    - Order of Adverbs
  - Prepositions
    - Prepositional Phrases
    - Categories of Prepositions
    - Common Prepositional Errors
    - Prepositions with Nouns
    - Prepositions with Verbs
    - Prepositions with Adjectives
    - Prepositions in Idioms
      - Idioms that Start with Prepositions
      - Idioms that End with Prepositions
  - Conjunctions
    - Coordinating Conjunctions
    - Correlative Conjunctions
    - Subordinating Conjunctions
  - Other parts of speech
    - Particles
    - Articles
    - Determiners
      - Possessive Determiners
    - Gerunds
      - Gerunds as Objects of Verbs
    - Interjections
- Inflection (Accidence)
  - Conjugation
    - Tense
      - Present Tense

            - Present Simple Tense
            - Present Continuous Tense (Progressive)
            - Present Perfect Tense
            - Present Perfect Continuous Tense
        - Past Tense
            - Past Simple Tense
            - Past Continuous Tense
            - Past Perfect Tense
            - Past Perfect Continuous Tense
        - Future Tense (Approximation)
            - Future Simple Tense
            - Future Continuous Tense
            - Future Perfect Tense
            - Future Perfect Continuous Tense
    - Aspect
        - Perfective and Imperfective Aspect
        - Aspects of the Present Tense
        - Aspects of the Past Tense
        - Aspects of the Future Tense
    - Mood
        - Indicative Mood
        - Subjunctive Mood
            - Subjunctive Mood - Expressing Wishes
    - Voice
        - Active Voice
        - Passive Voice
        - Middle Voice
    - Speech
        - Reported Speech (Indirect Speech)
    - Grammatical Person
  - Declension
    - Plurals
    - Gender in Nouns
  - Regular and Irregular Inflection
- Syntax
  - Subjects and Predicates
    - The Subject
    - The Predicate
        - Complements

            - Objects
            - Subject Complements
            - Object Complements
            - Adjective Complements
            - Adverbial Complements
    - Modifiers
        - Adjuncts
    - Phrases
        - Noun Phrases
        - Adjective Phrases
        - Adverbial Phrases
        - Participle Phrases
        - Absolute Phrases
        - Appositives
    - Clauses
        - Independent Clauses
        - Dependent Clauses
            - Noun Clauses
            - Relative Clauses
            - Adverbial Clauses
    - Sentences
        - Compound Sentences
        - Complex Sentences
        - Compound-Complex Sentences
        - Declarative Sentences
        - Interrogative Sentences
        - Negative Interrogative Sentences
        - Imperative Sentences
        - Conditional Sentences
        - Major and Minor Sentences (Regular and Irregular Sentences)
- Quiz answers
- Index

About the author

Peter Herring was born in Boulder, Colorado, and grew up with a passion for reading. He attended the University of British Columbia, in Vancouver, Canada, where he majored in English Literature. He went on to complete a master's degree in Anglo-Irish Literature and Drama at University College Dublin in Ireland, where he graduated with honors.

Peter has worked as an editor since 2009, lending his passion for words to scientific research projects, non-fiction publishing, and The Free Dictionary.

He lives in Dublin, Ireland, with his wife and son.

About the editor

Nick Norlen is the managing editor of The Free Dictionary, where he oversees all editorial projects. After graduating with honors from La Salle University in Philadelphia, he worked as a reporter before joining the Farlex team in 2008.

He lives in Newtown, Pennsylvania, with his wife and daughter, whose first word is his favorite word.

Preface

Grammar is without a doubt one of the most daunting aspects of the English language, an area riddled with complexities, inconsistencies, and contradictions. It has also been in a state of flux for pretty much its entire existence. For native speakers of English, as well as for those learning it as a new language, grammar presents a very serious challenge to speaking and writing both accurately and effectively.

Having a single, reliable, go-to reference guide should therefore be indispensable to those trying to learn, improve, or perfect their speech or writing. This book is that guide: a clear, unambiguous, and comprehensive source of information that covers all the relevant topics of English grammar, while still being easy to understand and enjoyable to read.

Every topic in the book has been broken down into basic units. Each unit can be read and understood in its own right, but throughout the book you will find cross-references to other sections and chapters to help make it clear how all the pieces fit together. If you're having trouble understanding something, try going back (or forward) to other related topics in the book.

Finally, it must be mentioned that, because English is such a flexible, inconsistent language, the "rules" that are often bandied about are usually not rules at all, but rather guides that reflect how the language is used. Accordingly, the guidelines contained within this book are just that—guidelines. They are not intended to provide constrictive or proscriptive rules that confine everyone to a particular way of speaking or writing.

Learning how the English language works will enhance your engagement with speech and writing every day, from the books you read, to the e-mails you write, to the conversations you have with friends and strangers alike.

As such, mastering grammar is not an exercise that is confined to the classroom. While it is certainly important to learn the structures, styles, and rules that shape the language, the key to truly learning English is to read and listen to the way people write and speak every day, from the most well-known authors to the people you talk to on the bus. Take the information you find in this book and carry it with you into the world.

-P. Herring

Editor’s Note

This book is written according to the standard styles and spellings used in American English. While major differences between American and British English are usually addressed, some information in the book might not coincide with the styles, tendencies, or preferences of other English-speaking communities.

English Grammar

Grammar refers to the way words are used, classified, and structured together to form coherent written or spoken communication.

This guide takes a traditional approach to teaching English grammar, breaking the topic into three fundamental elements: **Parts of Speech**, **Inflection**, and **Syntax**. Each of these is a discrete, individual part, but they are all intrinsically linked together in meaning.

Parts of Speech

In the first part of the guide, we will look at the basic components of English—words. The **parts of speech** are the categories to which different words are assigned, based on their meaning, structure, and function in a sentence.

We'll look in great detail at the seven main parts of speech—**nouns**, **pronouns**, **verbs**, **adjectives**, **adverbs**, **prepositions**, and **conjunctions**—as well as other categories of words that don't easily fit in with the rest, such as **particles**, **determiners**, and **gerunds**.

By understanding the parts of speech, we can better understand how (and why) we structure words together to form sentences.

Inflection

Although the parts of speech provide the building blocks for English, another very important element is **inflection**, the process by which words are *changed* in form to create new, specific meanings.

There are two main categories of inflection: **conjugation** and **declension**. Conjugation refers to the inflection of verbs, while declension refers to the inflection of nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs. Whenever we change a verb from the **present tense** to the **past tense**, for example, we are using **conjugation**. Likewise, when we make a noun **plural** to show that there is more than one of it, we are using **declension**.

Syntax

The third and final part of the guide will focus on **syntax**, the rules and patterns that govern how we **structure** sentences. The grammatical structures that constitute syntax can be thought of as a hierarchy, with sentences at the top as the largest cohesive unit in the language and words (the parts of speech) at the bottom.

We’ll begin the third part by looking at the basic structural units present in all sentences—**subjects and predicates**—and progressively move on to larger classes of structures, discussing **modifiers**, **phrases**, and **clauses**. Finally, we will end by looking at the different structures and categories of **sentences** themselves.

Using the three parts together

The best way to approach this guide is to think of it as a cross-reference of itself; when you see a term or concept in one section that you’re unfamiliar with, check the other sections to find a more thorough explanation. Neither parts of speech nor inflection nor syntax exist as truly separate units; it’s equally important to examine and learn about the different kinds of words, how they can **change** to create new meaning, and the guidelines by which they are **structured** into sentences.

When we learn to use all three parts together, we gain a much fuller understanding of how to make our speech and writing not only proper, but natural and effective.

Parts of Speech

Definition

The **parts of speech** are the primary categories of words according to their function in a sentence.

English has seven main parts of speech. We'll look at a brief overview of each below; continue on to their individual chapters to learn more about them.

Nouns

Nouns are words that identify or name people, places, or things. Nouns can function as **the subject** of a clause or sentence, an object of a verb, or an object of a preposition. Words like *cat, book, table, girl,* and *plane* are all nouns.

Pronouns

Pronouns are words that represent nouns (people, places, or things). Grammatically, pronouns are used in the same ways as nouns; they can function as subjects or objects. Common pronouns include *I, you, she, him, it, everyone,* and *somebody*.

Verbs

Verbs are words that describe the actions—or states of being—of people, animals, places, or things. Verbs function as the root of what's called **the predicate**, which is required (along with a subject) to form a complete sentence; therefore, every sentence must include at least one verb.

Verbs include action words like *run, walk, write,* or *sing,* as well as words describing states of being, such as *be, seem, feel,* or *sound*.

Adjectives

Adjectives are words that modify (add description to) nouns and (occasionally) pronouns. They can be a part of either the subject or the predicate. Common adjectives are *red, blue, fast, slow, big, tall,* and *wide*.

Adverbs

Adverbs are words that modify verbs, adjectives, other adverbs, or even entire clauses. Depending on what they modify (and how), adverbs can appear anywhere in the sentence. Adverbs are commonly formed from adjectives by adding "-ly" to the end, as in *slowly, quickly, widely, beautifully*, or *commonly*.

Prepositions

Prepositions are words that express a relationship between a noun or pronoun (known as the **object of the preposition**) and another part of the sentence. Together, these form **prepositional phrases**, which can function as adjectives or as adverbs in a sentence. Some examples of prepositional phrases are: ***on*** *the table*, ***in*** *the shed*, and ***across*** *the field*. (The prepositions are in **bold**.)

Conjunctions

Conjunctions are words that connect other words, phrases, or clauses, expressing a specific kind of relationship between the two (or more) elements. The most common conjunctions are the **coordinating conjunctions**: *and, but, or, nor, for, so*, and *yet*.

Other Parts of Speech

In addition to the seven parts of speech above, there are several other groupings of words that do not neatly fit into any one specific category—**particles**, **articles**, **determiners**, **gerunds**, and **interjections**.

Many of these share characteristics with one or more of the seven primary categories. For example, **determiners** are similar in many ways to **adjectives**, but they are not completely the same, and most **particles** are identical in appearance to **prepositions** but have different grammatical functions.

Because they are harder to classify in comparison to the seven primary categories above, they've been grouped together in this guide under the general category **Other Parts of Speech**.

Nouns

Definition

Nouns are words that indicate a person, place, or thing.

In a sentence, nouns can function as **the subject** or the **object** of a **verb** or **preposition**. Nouns can also follow **linking verbs** to rename or re-identify the subject of a sentence or clause; these are known as **predicate nouns**.

The Subject

The subject in a sentence or clause is the person or thing doing, performing, or controlling the action of the verb. For example:

- "The **dog** chased its tail." (The noun *dog* is performing the action of the verb *chase*.)
- "**Mary** reads a book every week." (The proper noun *Mary* is performing the action of the verb *read*.)

Objects

Grammatical objects have three grammatical roles: the **direct object** of a verb, the **indirect object** of a verb, or the **object of a preposition**.

Direct objects

Direct objects are what receive the action of the verb in a sentence or clause. For example:

- "The dog chased its **tail**." (The noun *tail* is receiving the action of the verb *chase*.)
- "Mary reads a **book** every week." (The noun *book* is receiving the action of the verb *read*.)

Indirect objects

An **indirect object** is the person or thing who receives the **direct object** of the verb. For instance:

- "Please pass **Jeremy** the *salt*." (The proper noun *Jeremy* is receiving the direct object *salt*, which receives the action of the verb *pass*.)
- "I sent the **company** an *application* for the job." (The noun *company* is receiving the direct object *application*, which receives the action of the verb *sent*.)

Objects of prepositions

Nouns are also used after prepositions to create **prepositional phrases**. When a noun is part of a prepositional phrase, it is known as the **object of the preposition**. For example:

- “Your backpack is under the **table**.” (The noun *table* is the object of the preposition *under*, which creates the prepositional phrase *under the table*.)
- “I am looking for **work**.” (The noun *work* is the object of the preposition *for*, which creates the prepositional phrase *for work*.)

Predicate Nouns

Nouns that follow linking verbs are known as **predicate nouns** (sometimes known as **predicative nouns**). These serve to rename or re-identify the subject. If the noun is accompanied by any direct modifiers (such as **articles**, **adjectives**, or **prepositional phrases**), the entire noun phrase acts predicatively.

For example:

- “Love is **a *virtue***.” (The noun phrase *a virtue* follows the linking verb *is* to rename the subject *love*.)
- “Tommy seems like **a real *bully***.” (The noun phrase *a real bully* follows the linking verb *seems* to rename the subject *Tommy*.)
- “Maybe this is **a *blessing* in disguise**.” (The noun phrase *a blessing in disguise* follows the linking verb *is* to rename the subject *this*.)

(Go to the section on **Subject Complements** in the part of the guide that covers **Syntax** to learn more about predicate nouns.)

Categories of Nouns

There are many different kinds of nouns, and it’s important to know the different way each type can be used in a sentence. Below, we’ll briefly look at the different categories of nouns. You can explore the individual sections to learn more about each.

Common and Proper Nouns

Nouns that identify general people, places, or things are called **common nouns**—they name or identify that which is *common* among others.

Proper nouns, on the other hand, are used to identify an absolutely **unique** person, place, or thing, and they are signified by capital letters, no matter where they appear in a sentence.

Common Nouns	Proper Nouns
“He sat on the **chair**.”	“Go find **Jeff** and tell him dinner is ready.”
“I live in a **city**.”	“I’ll have a **Pepsi**, please.”
“We met some **people**.”	“**Prince William** is adored by many.”

Nouns of Address

Nouns of address are used in **direct speech** to identify the person or group being directly spoken to, or to get that person’s attention. Like **interjections**, they are grammatically unrelated to the rest of the sentence—they don’t modify or affect any other part of it. For example:

- “**James**, I need you to help me with the dishes.”
- “Can I have some money, **Mom**?”
- “This, **class**, is the video I was telling you about.”
- “Sorry, **Mr. President**, I didn’t see you there.”

Concrete and Abstract Nouns

Concrete nouns name people, places, animals, or things that are physically tangible—that is, they can be seen or touched, or have some physical properties. **Proper nouns** are also usually concrete, as they describe unique people, places, or things that are also tangible. For example:

- table
- rocks
- lake
- countries
- people
- Africa
- MacBook

- Jonathan

Abstract nouns, as their name implies, name intangible things, such as concepts, ideas, feelings, characteristics, attributes, etc. For instance:

- love
- hate
- decency
- conversation
- emotion

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

Countable nouns (also known as **count nouns**) are nouns that can be considered as individual, separable items, which means that we are able to count them with numbers—we can have one, two, five, 15, 100, and so on. We can also use them with the indefinite **articles** *a* and *an* (which signify a single person or thing) or with the **plural form** of the noun.

Single Countable Nouns	Plural Countable Nouns
a cup	two **cups**
an ambulance	several **ambulances**
a phone	10 **phones**

Countable nouns contrast with **uncountable nouns** (also known as **non-count** or **mass nouns**), which cannot be separated and counted as individual units or elements. Uncountable nouns cannot take an indefinite article (*a/an*), nor can they be made plural.

✓ Correct	× Incorrect
"Would you like **tea**?"	"Would you like ***a*** **tea**?"
"Do you have any **information**?"	"Do you have ***an*** **information**?"
"We bought new camping **equipment**."	"We bought new camping **equipments**."

Collective Nouns

Collective nouns are nouns that refer to a collection or group of multiple people, animals, or things. However, even though collective nouns refer to multiple individuals, they still function as singular nouns in a sentence. This is because they still are technically referring to one thing: the group as a whole. For example:

- “The **flock** of birds flew south for the winter.”
- “The **organization** voted to revoke the rules that it had previously approved.”
- “The **set** of tablecloths had disappeared. ”

Attributive Nouns (Noun Adjuncts)

Attributive nouns, also called **noun adjuncts**, are nouns that are used to modify other nouns. The resulting phrase is called a **compound noun**. For example:

- “The boy played with his ***toy*** **soldier**.”

In this sentence, *toy* is the noun adjunct, and it modifies the word *soldier*, creating the compound noun *toy soldier*.

To learn more about attributive nouns, go to the section on **Adjuncts** in the chapter on **The Predicate**.

Compound Nouns

A **compound noun** is a noun composed of two or more words working together as a single unit to name a person, place, or thing. Compound nouns are usually made up of two nouns or an adjective and a noun.

- water + bottle = **water bottle** (a bottle used for water)
- dining + room = **dining room** (a room used for dining)
- back + pack = **backpack** (a pack you wear on your back)
- police + man = **policeman** (a police officer who is a man)

Noun Phrases

A **noun phrase** is a group of two or more words that function together as a noun in a sentence. Noun phrases consist of a noun and other words that modify the noun. For example:

- “He brought **the shovel with the blue handle**.”

In this sentence, *the shovel with the blue handle* is a noun phrase. It collectively acts as a noun while providing modifying words for the head noun, *shovel*. The modifiers are *the* and *with the blue handle*.

Nominalization (Creating Nouns)

Nominalization refers to the creation of a noun from **verbs** or **adjectives**.

When nouns are created from other parts of speech, it is usually through the use of **suffixes**. For example:

- “My fiancée is an **actor**.” (The verb *act* becomes the noun *act**or***.)
- “His **acceptance** of the position was received warmly.” (The verb *accept* becomes the noun *accept**ance***.)
- “The **hardness** of diamond makes it a great material for cutting tools.” (The adjective *hard* becomes the noun *hard**ness***.)
- “This project will be fraught with **difficulty**.” (The adjective *difficult* becomes the noun *difficult**y***.)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. A noun can be which of the following?

a) The subject
b) An object
c) Predicative
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) All of the above

2. What category of nouns is used to identify the person or group being directly spoken to?

a) Common nouns
b) Nouns of address
c) Attributive nouns
d) Abstract nouns

3. Identify the type of noun (in **bold**) used in the following sentence:

“Your **indifference** is not acceptable.”

a) Proper noun
b) Countable noun
c) Collective noun
d) Abstract noun

4. What category of nouns is used to modify other nouns?

a) Common nouns
b) Nouns of address
c) Attributive nouns
d) Abstract nouns

5. Which of the following is commonly used to create a noun from a verb or adjective?

a) Prefix
b) Suffix
c) Attributive noun
d) Predicative noun

Common and Proper Nouns

Nouns fall into one of two broad categories: **common nouns** and **proper nouns**.

Common Nouns

All nouns serve to name a person, place, or thing.

Those that identify general people, places, or things are called **common nouns**—they name that which is *common* among others.

For example:

- “He sat on the **chair**.”
- “I live in a **city**.”
- “We met some **people**.”
- “She went into **politics**.”
- “Our **teacher** is angry.”
- “Let’s go down to the **lake**.”

Proper Nouns

Proper nouns, on the other hand, are used to identify a **unique** person, place, or thing. A proper noun names someone or something that is one of a kind, which is signified by the use of a capital letter, no matter where it appears in a sentence.

Names

The most common proper nouns are names, as of people, places, or events. For example:

- “Go find **Jeff** and tell him dinner is ready.”
- “I lived in **Cincinnati** before I moved to **New York**.”
- “My parents still talk about how great **Woodstock** was in 1969.”

Brands

Proper nouns are also used for commercial brands. In this case, the object that’s being referred to is not unique in itself, but the brand it belongs to is. For example:

- “Pass me the **Hellmann’s** mayonnaise.”
- “I’ll have a **Pepsi**, please.”
- “My new **MacBook** is incredibly fast.”

Appellations

When a person has additional words added to his or her name (known as an appellation), this becomes part of the proper noun and is also capitalized. (Some linguists distinguish these as **proper names**, rather than **proper nouns**.) For example:

- “**Prince William** is adored by many.”
- “Italy was invaded by **Attila the Hun** in 452.”

Job Titles and Familial Roles

Many times, a person may be referred to according to a professional title or familial role instead of by name. In this case, the title is being used as a **noun of address** and is considered a proper noun, even if it would be a common noun in other circumstances. For example:

- “How are you doing, **Coach**?”
- “I need your advice, **Mr. President**.”
- "**Mom**, can you come with me to the playground?”
- “Pleased to meet you, **Doctor**.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Common nouns identify people, places, or things that are ___________?

a) Especially unique or one-of-a-kind
b) Generic among other similar nouns
c) Addressed by the speaker
d) Uncountable

2. Things referred to by their brand use which kind of nouns?

a) Common nouns
b) Proper nouns

3. Nouns of address are used in the same way as which kind of nouns?

a) Common nouns
b) Proper nouns

Nouns of Address

Definition

Nouns of address (technically called **vocatives**, but also known as **nominatives of address** or **nouns of direct address**) identify the person or group being directly spoken to. Like **interjections**, they are grammatically unrelated to the rest of the sentence—that is, they don’t modify or affect any other part of it. Instead, they are used to let the listener or reader know who you are addressing, or to get that person’s attention. For example:

- “**James**, I need you to help me with the dishes.”
- “Can I have some money, **Mom**?”
- “This, **class**, is the video I was telling you about.”

- “**Mr. President**, I didn’t see you there.”
- “Hey, **guy in the red shirt**, can you help me?”

Punctuation

Nouns of address are found in the initial, middle, or final position in a sentence. No matter where they occur, they are normally set apart from the rest of the sentence by one or two commas. If they occur in the initial position, they are followed by a comma. If they occur in the middle position, they are enclosed between two commas, and if they occur in the final position, they are preceded by a comma. For example:

- “**James**, I was wondering if you could help me with the dishes.”
- “I was wondering, **James**, if you could help me with the dishes.”
- “I was wondering if you could help me with the dishes, **James**.”

- “**Class**, this is the video I was telling you about.”
- “This, **class**, is the video I was telling you about.”
- “This is the video I was telling you about, **class**.”

Capitalization

Proper nouns

Proper nouns, such as the name or title of a person, are the most frequent nouns of address. These nouns are always capitalized, no matter where they appear in a sentence. If a professional title is used with the name, it is capitalized as well. For example:

- “Can you help me, **James**?”
- “Thank you, **Mrs. Smith**, for being here.”
- “It’s so nice to meet you, **Doctor Jenner**.”
- “Hey, Coach Frank, how are you doing today?”

Common nouns in place of titles

Common nouns can also be used as nouns of address. If the common noun is the title of a job or family member *and* is used in place of a person’s name, it should always be capitalized. For example:

- “How are you doing, **Coach**?”

- “I need your advice, **Mr. President**.”
- "Can you come with me, **Mom**?”
- “Pleased to meet you, **Doctor**.”

Compare the examples above to the following cases in which the same titles of jobs and family members are not used to address the person directly, and therefore are not capitalized:

- “Give that football to the *coach*.”
- “Was the *president* at the meeting?”
- “Tell your *mom* to come with us.”
- “Did you call the *doctor* yet?”

Terms of endearment

When a term of endearment is being used in place of a person’s name, we do not capitalize the word unless it begins the sentence. For example:

- “Would you get me a glass of water, **sweetie**?”
- “Thanks, **pal**, I appreciate your help.”
- “**Love**, please put away your clothes.”

Other common nouns

If they do not act as a professional or familial title, other common nouns should generally remain in lowercase, unless they occur as the first word of the sentence. For example:

- “This, **class**, is the video I was telling you about.”
- “Can you help me, **guy in the red shirt**?”
- “Please stand up, **boys and girls**.”
- “**Ladies and gentlemen**, please remain seated for the duration of the performance.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Nouns of address occur in the ________.

a) initial position

b) middle position
c) final position
d) A & C
e) All of the above

2. Nouns of address are set apart by ________.

a) periods
b) commas
c) hyphens
d) semicolons

3. Which of the following sentences **does not** contain a noun of address?

a) “Oh, hello, Dad.”
b) “Come with me, Daniel.”
c) “Coach, I thought that was you!”
d) “Give that message to the president, please.”

4. Which of the following sentences is written **incorrectly**?

a) “I wish you were here, grandma.”
b) “I wish my grandma was here.”
c) “I wish you were here, Grandma.”
d) “Grandma, I wish you were here.”

5. Which of the following sentences is written **incorrectly**?

a) “Please help us, Doctor Green.”
b) “Doctor Green please help us.”
c) “Please, Doctor Green, help us.”
d) “Doctor Green, please help us.”

Concrete and Abstract Nouns

All **nouns** serve to name a person, place, or thing. Depending on whether they name a **tangible** or an **intangible** thing, nouns are classed as being either **concrete** or **abstract**.

Concrete Nouns

Concrete nouns name people, places, animals, or things that are or were physically tangible—that is, they can or could be seen or touched, or have some physical properties. For instance:

- rocks
- lake
- countries
- people
- child
- air
- water
- bread

Proper nouns are also usually concrete, as they describe unique people, places, or things.

- Mary
- The Queen
- Africa
- my MacBook
- a Pepsi

Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns, as their name implies, name intangible things, such as concepts, ideas, feelings, characteristics, attributes, etc.—you cannot see or touch these kinds of things.

Here are some examples of abstract nouns:

- love
- hate
- decency
- conversation
- emotion
- aspiration
- excitement
- lethargy

Gerunds, verbs that end in “-ing” and function as nouns, are also abstract. For

example:

- running
- swimming
- jumping
- reading
- writing
- loving
- breathing

These all name actions as concepts. They cannot be seen or touched, so we know they are not concrete.

Countable Nouns vs. Uncountable Nouns

Both concrete and abstract nouns can be either **countable** or **uncountable**, depending on what they name.

Countable Nouns

Countable nouns (also known as **count nouns**) are, as the name suggests, nouns that can be counted as individual units.

Concrete countable nouns

Many concrete nouns are countable. Consider the following, for example:

- cup
- ambulance
- phone
- person
- dog
- computer
- doctor

Each of these can be considered as an individual, separable item, which means that we are able to count them with numbers—we can have one, two, five, 15, 100, and so on. We can also use them with the indefinite **articles** *a* and *an* (which signify a single person or thing) or with the **plural form** of the noun. For example:

- **a** cup – two **cups**
- **an** ambulance – several **ambulances**
- **a** phone – 10 **phones**
- **a** person – many **people**

Abstract countable nouns

Even though abstract nouns are not tangible, many of them can still be counted as separable units. Like concrete nouns, they can take *a* or *an* or can be made plural. For example:

- **a** conversation – two **conversations**
- **an** emergency – several **emergencies**
- **a** reading – 10 **readings**
- **an** aspiration – many **aspirations**

Uncountable Nouns

Uncountable nouns, on the other hand, are nouns that cannot be considered as separate units. They are also known as **non-count** or **mass nouns**.

Concrete uncountable nouns

Concrete nouns that are uncountable tend to be substances or collective categories of things. For instance:

- wood, smoke, air, water
- furniture, homework, accommodation, luggage

Uncountable nouns **cannot** take the indefinite articles *a* or *an* in a sentence, because these words indicate a single amount of something. Likewise, they cannot take numbers or plural forms, because there cannot be multiple units of them. For example:

✖ "I see ***a*** **smoke** over there." (incorrect)
✔ "I see (***some****) **smoke** over there." (correct)

✖ "I don't have **furnitures**." (incorrect)
✔ "I don't have (***any****) **furniture**." (correct)

(*We often use the words *some* or *any* to indicate an unspecified quantity of uncountable nouns.)

However, uncountable nouns **can** sometimes take the definite article *the*, because it does not specify an amount:

- "They're swimming in ***the*** **water**."
- "***The*** **homework** this week is hard."

Abstract uncountable nouns

A large number of abstract nouns are uncountable. These are usually ideas or attributes. For instance:

- love, hate, news*, access, knowledge
- beauty, intelligence, arrogance, permanence

(*Even though *news* ends in an "-s," it is uncountable. We need this "-s" because without it, *news* would become *new*, which is an adjective.)

Again, these cannot take indefinite articles or be made plural.

✖ "He's just looking for ***a*** **love**." (incorrect)
✔ "He's just looking for **love**." (correct)

✖ "She's gained a great deal of **knowledges** during college." (incorrect)
✔ "She's gained a great deal of **knowledge** during college." (correct)

As with countable nouns, though, we can sometimes use the definite article *the*:

- "I can't stand watching ***the*** **news**."
- "Can you believe ***the*** **arrogance** he exhibits?"

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is a distinguishing feature of **abstract** nouns?

a) They can be seen or touched
b) They cannot be seen or touched
c) They can be counted
d) They cannot be counted

2. Proper nouns are generally _________.

a) concrete

b) abstract

3. Is the following word **concrete** or **abstract**?
amazement
a) concrete
b) abstract

4. Is the following word **concrete** or **abstract**?
sugar
a) concrete
b) abstract

5. Is the following word **concrete** or **abstract**?
Australia
a) concrete
b) abstract

6. True or False: All concrete nouns are countable.
a) True
b) False

Countable Nouns

Definition

Countable nouns (also known as **count nouns**) are nouns that can be considered as individual, separable items, which means that we are able to count them with numbers—we can have one, two, five, 15, 100, and so on. We can also use them with the indefinite **articles** *a* and *an* (which signify a single person or thing) or in their **plural forms**.

Countable nouns contrast with **uncountable nouns** (also known as **non-count** or **mass nouns**), which cannot be separated and counted as individual units or elements. Uncountable nouns cannot take an indefinite article, nor can they be made plural.

Concrete vs. Abstract Countable

Nouns

Both **concrete and abstract nouns** can be countable. Concrete nouns name people, places, or things that are tangible—they can be seen or touched. Abstract nouns, on the other hand, name intangible things, such as ideas, concepts, feelings, or attributes.

Concrete countable nouns

Concrete nouns are a bit easier to understand as being countable—after all, they are things that we can see and feel, and so we can usually count them. Consider the following, for example:

- **cup**
- **ambulance**
- **phone**
- **person**
- **eel**
- **computer**
- **doctor**

Each of these can be considered as an individual item or unit, which means that we are able to count them:

Singular	Plural
a cup	two **cups**
an ambulance	several **ambulances**
a phone	10 **phones**
a person	many **people**
an eel	three **eels**
a computer	a few **computers**
a doctor	some **doctors**

Abstract countable nouns

Even though abstract nouns are not tangible, many of them can still be counted as separable units. Like concrete nouns, they can take *a* or *an* or can be made plural.

Consider these abstract nouns:

- **conversation**
- **emergency**
- **reading**
- **aspiration**
- **emotion**
- **belief**

Now let's see how they can be counted:

Singular	Plural
a conversation	two **conversations**
an emergency	several **emergencies**
a reading	10 **readings**
an aspiration	many **aspirations**
an emotion	hundreds of **emotions**
a belief	certain **beliefs**

Grammar with countable nouns

When we use countable nouns, certain elements in a sentence will change depending on whether the noun is singular or plural.

Third-person singular vs. third-person plural pronouns

If a countable noun is being represented by a **third-person pronoun**, we must take care to use the correct singular or plural form.

Singular

When a noun is singular and names a person (or, sometimes, a pet) whose gender is known,* then we use the third-person singular *he, him,* or *his* (masculine) or *she, her,* or *hers* (feminine). For example:

- “The **man** left early, so I didn’t get a chance to talk to **him**.” (*Man* is singular, so it takes the third-person singular pronoun *him*.)
- “The **president** has many things that **she** wants to accomplish in office.” (*President* is singular, so it takes the third-person singular pronoun *she*.)
- “We taught our **dog** to know which bed is **his**.” (*Dog* is singular, so it takes the third-person singular pronoun *his*.)

If the noun names a singular place, thing, or non-domestic animal, then we must use the third-person neuter pronoun *it*:

- “I hate this **computer** because **it** is so slow!”
- “The **cow** lowed softly as **it** ate.”
- “Some people dislike this **town**, but I’ve always loved **it**.”

Plural

When a noun is plural, we use the same third-person pronouns for people, places, animals, and things: *they, them*, and *theirs**. For example:

- “The parade **floats** are spectacular! I love watching **them** go down the street.”
- “**Bill and Samantha** told me **they** were coming over later.”
- “Make sure the **children** know which bags are **theirs**.”

*Usage Note: “Singular *they*”

English does not have a way of identifying a single person with a pronoun if his or her gender is not known, so sometimes the third-person plural forms (*they, them*, etc.) are used as a gender-neutral alternative to the third-person feminine/masculine forms. This is sometimes called “singular *they*.”

For example:

- “You shouldn’t judge **someone** until you know what **they** are really like.”

- “If **anyone** needs extra help with **their** studies, **they** should feel free to see me after class.”

While it is still considered incorrect by some writers and writing guides, especially in American English, “singular *they*” is gradually becoming accepted as the norm, especially in instances with indefinite pronouns that sound plural but are grammatically singular (like *anyone* in the example above).

Subject-Verb Agreement

Because countable nouns can be either singular or plural, it is very important to use the correct **subject-verb agreement** when they are functioning as the subject of a clause.

Subject-verb agreement refers to using certain conjugations of verbs for singular subjects and using other conjugations for plural subjects. This happens most noticeably with the verb *to be*, which becomes *is* or *was* with singular subject nouns and *are* or *were* with plural subjects.

For example:

- “My **brother *is*** back from college.” (singular present simple tense)
- “The **company *was*** in financial trouble.” (singular past simple tense)
- “Many **people *are*** getting frustrated with the government.” (plural present simple tense)
- “The **computers *were*** rather old.” (plural past simple tense)

For any other verb, we only need to make a change if it is in the **present simple tense**. For most verbs, this is accomplished by adding an “-s” to the end if it is singular and leaving it in its base form if it is plural. For example:

- “My **father *runs*** his own business.” (singular)
- “But his **sons *run*** it when he’s away.” (plural)

- “The **dog *wags*** his tail when he is happy.” (singular)
- “**Dogs** sometimes ***wag*** their tails when they’re angry or scared.” (plural)

The verbs *have* and *do* also only conjugate for singular subjects in the present simple tense, but they have irregular forms for this: *has* and *does*. For example:

- “The **apple *has*** a mark on it.” (singular)
- “All the **apples *have*** marks on them.” (plural)
- “The **teacher *does*** not think it’s a good idea.” (singular)
- “The other **teachers *do*** not mind, though.” (plural)

Finally, the **modal auxiliary verbs** *will, would, shall, should, can, could, might,* and *must* do **not** conjugate for singular vs. plural subjects—they always remain the same. For instance:

- “This **phone** ***can*** also surf the Internet!” (singular)
- “Most **phones** ***can*** do that now.” (plural)

- “The **president** ***will*** arrive in Malta next week.” (singular)
- “The other **diplomats** ***will*** arrive shortly after that.” (plural)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following **cannot** be used with countable nouns?

a) Indefinite articles
b) Definite articles
c) Third-person singular pronouns
d) Plural forms
e) All of the above
f) None of the above

2. True or False: Countable nouns are always **concrete nouns**.

a) True
b) False

3. How do **most** verbs conjugate when they have a singular subject?

a) By adding “-d” to the end
b) By adding “-s” to the end
c) They remain in their base form
d) They take an auxiliary verb

4. Which of the following third-person pronouns is used for **plural** nouns?

a) he
b) she
c) it
d) they

5. Which of the following third-person pronouns is used for **non-gendered singular** nouns?

a) he
b) she
c) it
d) they

Uncountable Nouns

Definition

Nouns that cannot be divided or counted as individual elements or separate parts are called **uncountable nouns** (also known as **mass nouns** or **non-count nouns**). These can be tangible objects (such as substances or collective categories of things), or intangible or abstract things, such as concepts or ideas. Nouns that *can* be divided are called **countable nouns**, or simply **count nouns**.

Here are some examples of uncountable nouns:

- *wood, smoke, air, water*
- *furniture, homework, accommodation, luggage*
- *love, hate, beauty, intelligence, arrogance*
- *news*, access*

(*Even though *news* ends in an “-s,” it is uncountable. We need this “-s” because without it, *news* would become *new*, which is an adjective.)

Using articles with uncountable nouns

Uncountable nouns cannot take the **indefinite articles** “a” or “an” in a sentence, because these words indicate a single amount of something. For example:

✖ “Would you like ***a*** **tea**?” (incorrect)
✔ “Would you like **tea**?” (correct)

✖ “Do you have ***an*** **information**?” (incorrect)
✔ “Do you have (***some/any***) **information**?” (correct)

(We often use the words “some” or “any” to indicate an unspecified quantity of uncountable nouns. We’ll investigate this more in a later part of this section.)

However, uncountable nouns *can* sometimes take the definite article “the,” as in:

- “Have you heard ***the*** **news**?”

- “***The*** **furniture** in my living room is old.”

However, this is only the case if a specific uncountable noun is being described. For example:

✖ “I am looking for ***an*** **accommodation**.” (incorrect)

✖ “I am looking for ***the*** **accommodation**.” (incorrect)

✔ “I am looking for **accommodation**.” (correct)

✔ “I am looking for ***the*** **accommodation** listed in this advertisement.” (correct—references specific accommodation)

Uncountable nouns are not plural

Third-person singular vs. third-person plural pronouns

Just as uncountable nouns cannot take the indefinite articles “a” or “an” because there is not “one” of them, it is equally incorrect to use third-person plural pronouns with them, as they are not considered a collection of single things. For example:

- Person A: “Your hair looks very nice today.”

✖ Person B: “Yes, I washed **them** last night.” (incorrect)

✔ Person B: “Yes, I washed **it** last night.” (correct)

Note that single hairs become countable. If there are two hairs on your jacket, you can say “hairs” or use the plural pronoun “they.” The hair on your head, however, is seen as an uncountable noun.

Plural forms of the noun

We also cannot make uncountable nouns plural by adding “-s” on the end. Again, they are grammatically regarded as single, collective units. For example:

✖ “We bought new camping **equipments**.” (incorrect)
✔ “We bought new camping **equipment**.” (correct)

✖ “The teacher gave us **many homeworks**.” (Incorrect. We also cannot use the quantifier “many” with uncountable nouns, because it refers to individual things.)

✔ “The teacher gave us **a lot of homework**.” (Correct. We *can* use the quantifier “a lot” to indicate a large amount of an uncountable noun.)

Subject-verb agreement

Because uncountable nouns cannot be plural, it is very important to use the correct subject-verb agreement. **Subject-verb agreement** refers to using certain conjugations of verbs with singular vs. plural subjects. This happens most noticeably with the verb *to be*, which becomes *is* or *was* with singular subject nouns and *are* or *were* with plural subjects. Because uncountable nouns are grammatically **singular**, they must take singular forms of their verbs.

Here are a few examples illustrating this distinction:

✖ “The **furnitures** in my living room ***are*** old.” (incorrect)
✖ “The **furnitures** in my living room ***is*** old.” (incorrect)
✔ “The **furniture** in my living room ***is*** old.” (correct)

✖ “Their **behaviors** ***are*** not good.” (incorrect)
✔ “Their **behavior** ***is*** not good.” (correct)

✖ “The **news** ***are*** good.” (incorrect)
✔ “The **news** ***is*** good.” (correct)

Measurements of distance, time, and amount

A notable exception to the subject-verb rule we just discussed relates to countable nouns that are describing measurements of distance, time, or amount. In this case, we consider the sum as a singular amount, and so they must take singular forms of their verbs. For example:

✖ “**$20,000** ***have been*** credited to your account.” (incorrect)
✔ “**$20,000** ***has been*** credited to your account.” (correct)

✖ “I think **50 miles** ***are*** too far to travel on foot.” (incorrect)
✔ “I think **50 miles** ***is*** too far to travel on foot.” (correct)

✖ “Wow, **two hours** ***fly*** by when you’re having fun!” (incorrect)
✔ “Wow, **two hours** ***flies*** by when you’re having fun!” (correct)

Making uncountable nouns countable

If we want to identify one or more specific “units” of an uncountable noun, then we must add more information to the sentence to make this clear.

For example, if you want to give someone advice in general, you could say:

- “Can I give you **advice**?” or;
- “Can I give you **some advice**?”

But if you wanted to emphasize that you’d like to give them a particular aspect or facet of advice, you could not say, “Can I give you **an advice**?” Instead, we have to add more information to specify what we want to give:

- “Can I give you **a piece of advice**?”

By adding “piece of” to the uncountable noun *advice*, we have now made it functionally **countable**. This means that we can also make this phrase plural, though we have to be careful to pluralize the count noun that we’ve added, and not the uncountable noun itself. For example:

- “Can I give you ***a few pieces*** **of advice**?”

Using quantifiers with uncountable nouns

As we’ve already seen, certain **quantifiers** (a kind of **determiner** that specifies an amount of something) can only be used with uncountable nouns, while others can only modify countable nouns. While we will examine these more in depth in the chapter on **Determiners**, here are a few examples that cause particular confusion.

Too – Too Much – Too Many

We use “too + adjective” to mean “beyond what is needed or desirable,” as in, “It is **too big**.”

Too much, on the other hand, is used to modify uncountable nouns, while *too many* is used with countable nouns—they are not used with adjectives. For example, the following sentences would both be **incorrect**:

✖ “It is **too much big**.”

✖ “It is **too many big**.”

One particular source of confusion that can arise here is the fact that *much* can be used as an adverb before *too* to give it emphasis, as in:

- “It is ***much too*** **big**.”

We also must be sure not to use *too much* with a countable noun, nor *too many* with an uncountable noun.

✖ “I have ***too much*** **pieces of furniture**.” (incorrect)
✔ “I have ***too many*** **pieces of furniture**.” (correct)

✖ “I have ***too many*** **furniture**.” (incorrect)
✔ “I have ***too much*** **furniture**.” (correct)

Fewer vs. Less

The conventional rule regarding *less vs. fewer* is that we use *fewer* with countable nouns and *less* with uncountable nouns. For example:

✖ “I have ***less*** **friends** than Jill has.” (incorrect)
✔ “I have ***fewer*** **friends** than Jill has.” (correct)

✖ “I have ***fewer*** **money** than he has.” (incorrect)
✔ “I have ***less*** **money** than he has.” (correct)

The rule carries over when we add words to an uncountable noun to make a countable phrase (as we looked at above). We can see this distinction in the following examples:

- “I want ***less*** **toast**.” (*toast* is uncountable)
- “I want ***fewer*** **pieces of toast**.” (*pieces of toast* is countable)
- “There is ***less*** **water** in the jug.” (*water* is uncountable)
- “There are ***fewer*** **cups of water** in the jug.” (*cups of water* is countable)

Measurements of distance, time, and amount

As we noted above, measurements of distance, time, or amount for nouns that we would normally consider countable (and thus plural) end up taking singular verbs. Likewise, these terms also take the word *less*, most often in the construction *less than*. For example:

- “**$20,000 is *less than*** we expected to pay.”
- “We walked ***less than*** **50 miles** to get here.”
- “We have ***less than*** **two hours** to finish this project.”

- “I weigh **20 pounds** ***less than*** I used to.”

Note, however, that we can’t use *less* before these kinds of nouns:

✖ “We have ***less*** **$20,000**.” (incorrect)

✖ “I ran ***less*** **10 miles**.” (incorrect)

Less is also used with countable nouns in the construction *one less* _____, as in:

- “That is ***one less*** **problem** to worry about.”

Fewer can also be used (albeit less commonly), but the construction usually changes to *one* ______ *fewer*, as in:

- “That is **one problem** ***fewer*** to worry about.”

Rule or non-rule?

It is important to note that many grammar guides dispute the necessity of this supposed “rule,” referencing that it was in fact implemented as a stylistic preference by the 1770 grammarian Robert Baker, and that *fewer* and *less* had been used interchangeably for countable and uncountable nouns for hundreds of years before that. Specifically, it is considered by some as acceptable to use *less* with countable nouns, especially in informal or colloquial writing and speech.

As long as the sentence does not sound awkward, it is probably safe to do so. However, many still regard the *fewer vs. less* rule as indisputable, so it is recommended to adhere to the rule for professional, formal, or academic writing.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which article **can** be used with uncountable nouns?

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) A & B

2. What verb form is **generally** used with uncountable nouns?

a) singular
b) plural
c) singular in the past tense only
d) plural in the past tense only

3. Which of the following is an **uncountable noun**?

a) person
b) friend
c) intelligent
d) news

4. Which of the following is **not** an uncountable noun?

a) love
b) piece
c) wood
d) water

5. Which of the following sentences is correct?

a) “We are waiting for a news.”
b) “You can never have too many love.”
c) “These homeworks are very hard.”
d) “Could I have less water, please?”

Collective Nouns

Definition

Collective nouns are nouns that refer to a collection or group of multiple people, animals, or things. However, even though collective nouns refer to multiple individuals, they still usually function as singular nouns in a sentence. This is because they still are technically referring to one thing: the group as a whole. Here are some examples of collective nouns:

- **group** – A group is a single unit that is made up of a number of individuals, whether people or things.
- **collection** – A collection is a single unit that typically consists of many similar things organized together, such as paintings.
- **tribe** – A tribe is a single unit that is made up of a group of tribe members.
- **fleet** – A fleet is a single unit that is made up of several vehicles or vessels, such as ships.

- **band** – A band is a single unit that consists of a number of different musicians.

Collective nouns are used in sentences to refer to a group of people, animals, or things. Here are some examples of collective nouns being used in sentences:

• “The **flock** of birds flew south for the winter.”

• “The **organization** voted to revoke the rules that it had previously approved.”

• “The **set** of tablecloths had disappeared. ”

Similarity to plural nouns

Collective nouns are very similar to plural nouns. Plural nouns are nouns that refer to multiple people, places, or things, and they primarily (but not always) end in “-s,” “-es,” or “-ies.” They are derived from singular nouns, and so are truly plural in form and function. For example, the following words are all plural nouns:

- **dogs**
- **cities**
- **tables**
- **oceans**
- **sleds**

Both plural nouns and collective nouns can refer to multiple things. The difference is that collective nouns refer to a group of individuals in a single unit, whereas plural nouns refer to multiple individuals. To understand the difference, consider the following sentence:

• “The **musicians** played the song beautifully.”

This sentence contains the plural noun *musicians*. This word lets the reader know that there are multiple musicians who played the song beautifully. However, consider the following sentence:

• “The **orchestra** played the song beautifully.”

This sentence contains the **collective noun** *orchestra*. This word lets the reader know that there is a group of musicians that played the song beautifully. However, it also lets the reader know that the multiple musicians are arranged into a single group. The plural noun *musicians* in the first sentence does not do that.

Here are two more examples:

- “The **soldiers** marched very swiftly.” (plural noun)
- “The **platoon** marched very swiftly.” (collective noun)

As in the previous examples, both *soldiers* and *platoon* indicate multiple people. However, only *platoon* lets the reader know that the soldiers are organized into a collective unit.

Singular vs. Plural Use

Collective nouns usually function as singular nouns in a sentence, but they are occasionally used as plurals, too. Whether they are used in a singular or plural manner can impact which verbs and pronouns should be associated with the word.

The way we determine in which manner the collective noun should be used is to consider whether the members of the collective noun are being regarded as a single, whole unit, or as multiple individuals. If they are functioning as a whole, then you use singular verb tenses and pronouns; if they are acting individually, then you use plural verb tenses and pronouns.

For example, the following sentence demonstrates singular use of a collective noun:

- “The **offense** *hopes* to score a touchdown on its next play.”

Here, the collective noun *offense* refers to the members of the team’s offensive unit functioning as a whole; therefore, it acts as a singular noun in the sentence. As a result, the verb *hopes* and the pronoun *its* are also singular.

Compare this to the next sentence, which demonstrates plural use of a collective noun:

- “The **jury** *eat* their lunches before they deliberate.”

In this sentence, the collective noun, *jury*, refers to the jury members acting individually. As a result, *jury* functions as a plural noun in the sentence. This means that the plural pronouns *they* and *their* are used, as is the plural form of the verb *eat.*

Finally, it is worth noting that in **British English**, it is more common for collective nouns to function as plurals in all instances.

Plural-only collective nouns

Certain collective nouns can only be plural, such as “police.” For example:

✖ “The **police *is*** investigating the matter.” (incorrect)

✔ “The **police *are*** investigating the matter.” (correct)

However, we can make the noun countable by adding more information to the sentence. If we want to specify a single member of the police, we could say:

- “**A police officer *is*** investigating the matter.”

Here are some other examples of collective nouns that can only be plural:

- **people**
- **children**
- **poultry**
- **vermin**
- **cattle**

Collective Nouns and Animals

In the English language, there are many different types of collective nouns that refer to different groupings of animals. There are hundreds of different collective nouns used to describe animal group names, but here are a few common ones:

- **flock** of birds
- **pod** of whales
- **pack** of wolves
- **pride** of lions
- **gaggle** of geese
- **band** of coyotes
- **gatling** of woodpeckers
- **huddle** of penguins
- **mob** of kangaroos
- **school** of fish

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following words is a collective noun?

a) birds
b) berries
c) cake

d) team

2. Which word is the collective noun in the following sentence?
“The herd moved north over the mountains.”

a) moved
b) north
c) herd
d) mountains

3. Which of the following is not a collective noun?

a) ships
b) group
c) committee
d) government

4. A collective noun is **usually** _______ in a sentence.

a) plural
b) singular
c) Neither
d) A & B

5. Which of the following is a collective noun that refers to a group of animals?

a) book
b) snow
c) flock
d) sky

Compound Nouns

Definition

A **compound noun** is a noun consisting of two or more words working together as a single unit to name a person, place, or thing. Compound nouns are usually made up of two nouns or an adjective and a noun, but other combinations are also possible, as well.

Generally, the first word in the compound noun tells us **what kind** of person or thing it is or what purpose he, she, or it serves, while the second word **defines** the person or object, telling us who or what it is. For example:

- water + bottle = **water bottle** (a bottle used for water)
- dining + room = **dining room** (a room used for dining)
- back + pack = **backpack** (a pack you wear on your back)
- police + man = **policeman** (a police officer who is a man)

Like other nouns, compound nouns can be modified by other adjectives. For example:

- "I need to buy a *large* **water bottle**."
- "That's a *beautiful* **dining room**."
- "My *old* **backpack** is still my favorite."
- "A *lone* **policeman** foiled the attempted robbery."

You can recognize compound nouns because the meaning of the two words put together is different than the meaning of the words separately. For example, *water* and *bottle* have their own separate meanings, but when we use them together they mean a particular type of bottle that we drink water from.

Forming compound nouns

As mentioned, compound nouns are formed by combining two or more words, with the most common combinations being *noun + noun* or *adjective + noun*. However, combinations using other parts of speech are also possible. Below are the various combinations used to create compound nouns.

Noun + noun

There are a great number of compound nouns formed using the *noun + noun* combination. For example:

- **backpack**
- **bathroom**
- **bathtub**
- **bedroom**
- **bus stop**
- **fish tank**
- **football**
- **handbag**

- **motorcycle**
- **shopkeeper**
- **tablecloth**
- **toothpaste**
- **wallpaper**
- **water bottle**
- **website**
- **wristwatch**

Adjective + noun

There are also many compound nouns that are formed using the *adjective + noun* combination. For example:

- **full moon**
- **blackberry**
- **blackbird**
- **blackboard**
- **cell(ular) phone**
- **mobile phone**
- **hardware**
- **highway**
- **greenhouse**
- **redhead**
- **six-pack**
- **small talk**
- **software**
- **whiteboard**

Other combinations

Although the *noun + noun* and *adjective + noun* combinations are the most common, there are also plenty of other possibilities for forming compound nouns. For example:

Combination	Examples
noun + verb	**haircut, rainfall, sunrise, sunset**
noun + preposition	**hanger-on, passerby**

noun + prepositional phrase	**brother-in-law, mother-in-law**
noun + adjective	**cupful, spoonful**
verb + noun	**breakfast, washing machine, runway, pickpocket, swimming pool**
preposition + noun	**bystander, influx, onlooker, underpants, upstairs**
verb + preposition	**check-in, checkout/check-out, drawback, lookout, makeup**
adjective + verb	**dry cleaning, public speaking**
preposition + verb	**input, output, overthrow, upturn**

Writing compound nouns

Compound nouns are very common, both in written and spoken English, and there are spelling, punctuation, and pronunciation norms that we must be aware of if we want to use them correctly.

The three written forms of compound nouns

Writing compound nouns is a bit complicated due to the fact that they can take three different forms.

First, **open compound nouns** (or **spaced compound nouns**) are those that are written as two separate words, such as *washing machine, swimming pool*, and *water bottle*.

Second, there are **hyphenated compound nouns**, as in *check-in, hanger-on,* and *mother-in-law*.

Third, there are **closed compound nouns** (or **solid compound nouns**)—those that are written as one word, such as *rainfall, drawback*, and *toothpaste*.

Unfortunately, there aren't any rules that tell us which of the three forms is acceptable for a particular compound noun. Some compound nouns are commonly written in two forms, as in *website / web site* or *checkout / check-out*, while others, such as *bus stop*, are strictly used in one form. Where more than one is possible, the form that is more commonly used may depend on the variety of English (American English vs. British English, for example), the style guide of a publication, or the personal preference of the writer.

If you're not sure which of the three forms to use, it's important to check a good, up-to-date dictionary. If you are relying on the spellchecker in a word processor, remember that this has its limits. For example, spellcheck is good for checking whether a particular compound noun can be written as one word (closed); however, if we write a compound noun as two words (open) and it should be written as one word (closed), or if we write it with a hyphen and it should be written without a hyphen, spellcheck will not catch the mistakes.

Finally, remember that, no matter which way the compound noun is written, it always functions grammatically as a single unit.

Pluralizing compound nouns

We usually pluralize a compound noun by adding an "-s" or "-es" to the main word, or the defining word, of the compound noun. This is usually the second word, but not always. For example:

Singular	Plural
bedroom	bed**rooms**
football	foot**balls**
water bottle	water **bottles**
full moon	full **moons**

BUT

Singular	Plural
secretary general	**secretaries** general
mother-in-law	**mothers**-in-law
passerby / passer-by	**passers**by / **passers**-by

When it’s not obvious which of the words is the defining word, we pluralize the end of it. For example:

Singular	Plural
haircut	hair**cuts**
check-in	check-**in**
checkout / check-out	check**outs** / check-**outs**
upturn	up**turns**

Pronouncing compound nouns

In general, compound nouns are pronounced with the emphasis on the first part of the word. For example:

- BEDroom
- BLACKbird
- CHECK-in
- GREENhouse
- MAKEup
- WATER bottle

Pronouncing compound nouns in this way helps us distinguish words that form a compound noun like *blackbird* and *greenhouse* from other instances when the same words would appear together, as in: “*Look at that beautiful black bird*,” or “*I like that green house on the corner*.”

Although we normally stress the first word in a compound noun, there are certain exceptions to this pattern. For example, we disregard this rule when pronouncing compound nouns that include titles or proper nouns, as in *Secretary GENeral* and *Mount RUSHmore*.

If in doubt, you can use a good **dictionary** to determine which syllable should be emphasized.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Compound nouns are made up of ________ words.

a) two or more
b) two
c) many
d) one or two

2. **Closed** compound nouns are written ________.

a) as two words
b) as one word
c) with a hyphen
d) with a comma

3. Which of the following sentences **does not** contain a compound noun?

a) “Did you see that noisy blackbird?”
b) “Let’s go eat breakfast.”
c) “I’d love to live in a green house with a red door.”
d) “Would you like to see my new swimming pool?”

4. Which of the following compound nouns is **written incorrectly**?

a) spoonful
b) tablecloth
c) hangeron
d) passerby

5. If capital letters show emphasis in pronunciation, which word is **pronounced incorrectly**?

a) attorney GENeral
b) PASSERby
c) BACKpack
d) PRIME minister

Nominalization (Creating Nouns)

Definition

Nominalization refers to the creation of a noun from **verbs** or **adjectives**.

Most of the time, nouns are created from other parts of speech through the use of **suffixes**. In other cases, the word remains the same but is simply used a different way; this is known as **conversion** or **zero derivation**.

Suffixes

Suffixes are certain groupings of letters that can be attached to the end of words to change their meaning. Most verbs and adjectives that become nouns are changed using suffixes.

(Be aware, however, that the examples below only show some of the common ways of using suffixes to change verbs and adjectives to nouns; they are not all concrete rules, and the lists of possible suffixes are not exhaustive ones. The best way to learn the spellings of such nouns is by using a good **dictionary**, or by encountering them in everyday speech and writing.)

Verbs

There are certain patterns that we follow to decide which suffix is needed in order to create a noun from a verb.

Gerunds

The most straightforward way of turning a verb into a noun is through the use of **gerunds**. These are made by adding the suffix "-ing" to the end of the verb. For example:

- "**Walking** is very pleasant."
- "I enjoy **reading**."
- "**Listening** is an important aspect of any relationship."
- "My **sleeping** has been very disrupted lately."
- "**Baking** is my favorite pastime."
- "I hate **running**."

Note that if the gerund takes any additional information, such as an **object**, **adverb**, or **prepositional phrase**, then this entire group of words (known as a **gerund phrase**) acts as a noun. To learn more about gerunds and gerund phrases, go to the section on **Gerunds** in the chapter about **Other Parts of Speech**.

Nouns of agency and profession

When we turn a verb into a noun to represent someone (or occasionally some*thing*) who is an **agent** of that action, or who performs the action in a professional capacity, we typically use the suffixes “-or,” “-er,” or “-r.” For example:

- “My fiancée is an **actor**.” (Someone who *acts*.)
- “I’m training to be a **teacher**.” (Someone who *teaches*.)
- “The **writer** is very well known.” (Someone who *writes*.)
- “The company is a major **employer** in the area.” (Something that *employs* people.)
- “The **projector** was broken today.” (Something that *projects*.)

Nouns of recipience

For verbs that become nouns to represent someone who is the **recipient** of an action, we often use the suffix “-ee.”

Perhaps the most common example of this in modern English is *employee* (someone who others *employ*), as in:

- “The **employee** is disputing his wages.”

Other examples include:

- “The bank must approve you as the **payee**.” (Someone who is *paid*.)
- “There is one more **interviewee** waiting to be seen.” (Someone who is *interviewed*.)

Nouns of general action

We can use a variety of different suffixes to describe an action in general. The most common of these are “-tion,” “-sion,” “-ance,” “-ment,” and “-ence”; in some instances, we change the ending of the verb slightly in order to take the suffix.

For example:

- “His **acceptance** of the position was received warmly.” (The verb *accept* becomes the noun *accept**ance***.)
- “Thank you for the **invitation**!” (The verb *invite* becomes the noun *invit**ation***.)

• “In **conclusion**, we should see a spike in profits soon.” (The verb *conclude* becomes the noun *conclu**sion***.)

• “**Government** must derive from the will of the **population**.” (The verb *govern* becomes the noun *govern**ment***; the verb *populate* becomes the noun *populat**ion***.))

• “**Attendance** is at an all-time low.” (The verb *attend* becomes the noun *attend**ance***.)

• “I was surprised by my **enjoyment** of the play.” (The verb *enjoy* becomes the noun *enjoy**ment***.)

• “Use the textbook as your **reference** if you’re confused.” (The verb *refer* becomes the noun *refer**ence***.)

Some other suffixes that work in this way are “-al” and “-ure,” as in:

• “**Failure** to find a solution is not an option.” (The verb *fail* becomes the noun *fail**ure***.)

• “The review will include a quick **perusal** of your work.” (The verb *peruse* becomes the noun *perus**al***.)

Adjectives

We change adjectives into nouns when we want to speak of them as general ideas or concepts. Adjectives can take a variety of different suffixes, depending on how they are spelled.

“-ness”

We often use the suffix “-ness” for many adjectives. Most of the time, we can simply add the suffix on to the end of the adjective without making any changes to its spelling. For example:

• “The **hardness** of diamond makes it a great cutting tool.” (The adjective *hard* becomes the noun *hard**ness***.)

• “The child’s **meekness** is quite sweet.” (The adjective *meek* becomes the noun *meek**ness***.)

• “His **gruffness** is not appreciated.” (The adjective *gruff* becomes the noun *gruff**ness***.)

• “I don’t care for the **roughness** of my hands.” (The adjective *rough* becomes the noun *rough**ness***.)

- “I don’t think you understand the **seriousness** of the situation.” (The adjective *serious* becomes the noun *serious**ness***.)
- “Please don’t underestimate my **gratefulness**.” (The adjective *grateful* becomes the noun *grateful**ness***.)

However, when we use this suffix with an adjective ending in “-y,” we change “y” to “i”:

- “We’re waiting for some **steadiness** in the market.” (The adjective *steady* becomes the noun *steadi**ness***.)
- “The teacher puts her students’ **happiness** above all else.” (The adjective *happy* becomes the noun *happi**ness***.)

Some adjectives ending in a “-t” preceded by a long vowel sound can take this suffix as well:

- “Her **greatness** is without question.” (The adjective *great* becomes the noun *great**ness***.)
- “The **flatness** of the Earth was disproven long ago.” (The adjective *flat* becomes the noun *flat**ness***.)

“-y”

Other adjectives that end in a “-t” preceded by a consonant will take the suffix “-y” to become nouns. For example:

- “This project will be fraught with **difficulty**.” (The adjective *difficult* becomes the noun *difficult**y***.)
- “That’s enough of your **modesty**.” (The adjective *modest* becomes the noun *modest**y***.)
- “**Honesty** is a very important virtue.” (The adjective *honest* becomes the noun *honest**y***.)

“-ity”

When adjectives end in “-e,” they often take the suffix “-ity” to become nouns. However, there is often a change to the spelling of the word. Usually, we simply drop “e” and replace it with “-ity,” as in:

- “There is a **scarcity** of food in the city.” (The adjective *scarce* becomes the noun *scarc**ity***.)

- “Kindness is a **rarity** in this world.” (The adjective *rare* becomes the noun *rar**ity***.)

When the word ends in “ble,” though, we have to change “le” to “il,” as in:

- “This project is your **responsibility**.” (The adjective *responsible* becomes the noun *responsibil**ity***.)
- “I have no question of your **ability**.” (The adjective *able* becomes the noun *abil**ity***.)

Uniquely, we also use the “-ity” suffix to change the adjective *hilarious* to *hilarity*, even though other adjectives with similar endings (such as *serious, grievous, callous*, etc.) take the suffix “-ness.”

“-ance” and “-ence”

We often use the suffix “-ance” for adjectives ending in “-ant,” as in:

- “This is of the utmost **importance**.” (The adjective *important* becomes the noun *import**ance***.)
- “Your **ignorance** is astounding.” (The adjective *ignorant* becomes the noun *ignor**ance***.)

We often use the suffix “-ence” for adjectives ending in “-ent,” as in:

- “We demand greater **independence**.” (The adjective *independent* becomes the noun *independ**ence***.)
- “**Silence** is expected during tests.” (The adjective *silent* becomes the noun *sil**ence***.)

Conversion

When we use a verb or adjective as a noun without changing its spelling in any way, it is called **conversion** or **zero derivation**.

Verbs

Conversion is especially common with verbs, and there are many instances where the same word may function as a verb or a noun, depending on the context. For example:

- “Please **answer** the phone, Tom.” (verb)
- “We’ll need an **answer** by tomorrow.” (noun)

- “I **run** each morning before breakfast.” (verb)
- “I’m going for a **run** later today.” (noun)

- “Meteorologists are **forecasting** a snowstorm overnight.” (verb)
- “The **forecast** said there would be rain in the afternoon.” (noun)

Less commonly, there are instances in which, instead of changing a word’s spelling, we change where we pronounce a stress on the word’s syllables to indicate a shift from a verb to a noun; this change is known as a **suprafix**. Let’s look at some examples (with the stressed syllable underlined):

- “You need to **convert** pounds into kilograms.” (verb)
- “The church always welcomes recent **converts** to its meetings.” (noun)

- “Make sure you **record** the meeting so we can review it later.” (verb)
- “I love listening to old **records**.” (noun)

- “Please don’t **insult** my intelligence.” (verb)
- “We will not forget this **insult** to our company.” (noun)

The word *use* can also function as either a noun or a verb, but instead of changing the stress on a syllable, we change the actual pronunciation of the word, as in:

- “We plan to **use** a diagnostic test to evaluate the problem.” (verb—*use* is pronounced “*yooz*”)
- “There is only one **use** for this tool.” (noun—*use* is pronounced “*yuce*”)

Nominal adjectives

We can also convert adjectives into nouns without changing spelling, but we generally do so by adding the article *the* before the word. These are known as **nominal adjectives**. For example:

- “**The wealthy** have an obligation to help **the poor**.”
- “We all want **the best** for her.”
- “This law protects **the innocent**.”

To learn more about how and when these are used, go to the section about **Nominal Adjectives** in the chapter on **Adjectives**.

Infinitives

Lastly, verbs can serve the function of nouns by being used in their **infinitive form**—that is, the base form of the verb with the particle *to*. Infinitives are not technically an example of nominalization, because they can also act as adjectives and adverbs, but it’s worth looking at how they work when they function as nouns. For example:

As the subject of a clause

- “***To err*** is human; ***to forgive*** is divine.”
- “***To study* mathematics at Harvard** was her ultimate dream.”
- “***To live* in the city** means adjusting to a completely different lifestyle.”

As the object of a verb

- “I’m not going unless you agree ***to go* with me**.”
- “You appear ***to be* correct**.”
- “Please be quiet; I’m trying ***to study***.”

As an object complement

(An **object complement** is a word or group of words that describe, rename, or complete the direct object of the verb.)

- “I don’t expect you ***to approve* of my decision**.”
- “She’s forcing me ***to work* through the weekend**.”
- “We need you ***to make* a few more copies**.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is used to change the **spelling** of a verb or adjective that is made into a noun?

a) prefixes
b) suffixes
c) infixes
d) circumfixes

2. What is the name for nominalization in which the spelling of the verb or adjective does **not** change?

a) inversion

b) conscription
c) conversion
d) elision

3. Which of the following suffixes is commonly used to change a verb to a noun to reflect **agency** or **profession**?

a) “-or”
b) “-ing”
c) “-ance”
d) “-ence”

4. Which of the following nominalized verbs (in **bold**) is a **gerund**?

a) “**Adherence** to the rules is expected of all students.”
b) “We weren’t expecting her **refusal** of our offer.”
c) “**Winning** isn’t everything, you know.”
d) “We need to hire a few more **employees**.”

Pronouns

Definition

Pronouns are words that are used in place of nouns in a sentence. The noun being replaced is known as the **antecedent** of the pronoun.

Using pronouns

We commonly use pronouns in speech and writing to avoid sounding unnatural and repetitive by reusing the same noun in a sentence multiple times. Take, for example, the following sentence:

- “*John* said that *John* wants to use the computer that belongs to *John*.”

The sentence is awkward because John is repeated so many times. Instead, we can use **personal pronouns** to stand in for the name of the antecedent to make the sentence sound more natural, as in:

- “*John* said that **he** wants to use the computer that belongs to **him**.”

In addition to making the sentence sound better, the pronouns provide specific information, telling us that *John* is in the third **person**. If the sentence were in the **first person**, it would read:

- “**I** said that **I** want to use the computer that belongs to **me**.”

(We never use our own names when we talk about what we’re doing in the first person, so we use the personal pronoun *I* instead of an antecedent.)

As we can see in the examples above, the pronouns are all serving the same function as nouns. They can be **the subject** of a sentence or clause, the **object** of a verb, or they can follow linking verbs to rename or re-identify the subject (known as a **subject complement**).

Categories of Pronouns

There is a wide range of different categories of pronouns that we use in everyday speech and writing. Each kind of pronoun has a unique function in a sentence; many pronouns belong to multiple categories, and can serve different purposes depending on the context. We’ll briefly summarize these categories below, but you can continue on into the chapter to learn more about each.

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns, which we looked at briefly above, are used to represent people in a sentence. Unique among pronouns, personal pronouns experience a wide range of **inflection**, meaning they change form to reflect specific meaning in different contexts.

We already saw in the example above how personal pronouns can inflect according to grammatical **person** (first person, second person, or third person), but they also change to reflect grammatical **number** (singular or plural), **gender** (masculine, feminine, or neuter), and **case** (subjective, objective, or possessive).

Go to each of the sub-sections of **personal pronouns** to learn more about all their different forms.

Reflexive Pronouns

Reflexive pronouns are very similar in style and form to **personal pronouns**—so similar, in fact, that they are listed as a sub-group of personal pronouns in this guide. (They are technically **not** personal pronouns, but their use and the way they are formed are so similar that it is useful seeing them in direct comparison to personal pronouns.)

We use reflexive pronouns when the subject of a clause is also the object of the clause’s verb. This occurs with certain **reflexive verbs**. They are formed by adding “-self” (singular) or “-selves” (plural) to the end of *my, your, our, him, her, it* or *them* (as well as the indefinite pronoun *one*). For example:

- “I *saw* **myself** in the mirror.”
- “She *imagined* **herself** on a tropical beach.”
- “They *consider* **themselves** to be above the law.”
- “One should not *concern* **oneself** with the business of others.”

Intensive Pronouns

Intensive pronouns are identical to reflexive pronouns in form, but, instead of functioning as the object of a verb, they serve to emphasize or reiterate the subject’s role in the verb’s action. For instance:

- “I checked over these documents **myself**.”
- “The president **himself** will be in attendance.”

Indefinite Pronouns

We use **indefinite pronouns** in place of a noun that is not being specified in the sentence. There are many different indefinite pronouns; which one we use depends on whether we are representing a noun that is a person or thing, and whether that noun is singular or plural. Some common examples include:

- “Is **everyone** here?”
- “I hope **all** is going well.”
- “**Whatever** you decide is fine with me.”
- “**Many** are coming to the show tonight.”

Demonstrative Pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns are used to indicate specific people or things and indicate whether they are a) singular or plural and b) near or not near to the speaker. The most common are *this, that, these,* and *those*. For example:

- “**This** isn’t mine.” (singular, nearby)
- “Give me **that**.” (singular, not near)
- “**These** are really gross.” (plural, nearby)

- “I forgot to bring **those**.” (plural, not near)

Interrogative Pronouns

Interrogative pronouns are used to ask questions, functioning either as the subject or object of such sentences. There are five primary interrogative pronouns: *who, whom, whose, which*, and *what*.

- “**Who** is coming to the party tonight?” (subject)
- “So, **which** will it be: $10,000, or a new sports car?” (object)
- “Could you tell me **whose** these are?” (subject)
- “Do you know **what** we’re doing here?” (object)

Relative Pronouns

Relative pronouns are used to connect **relative clauses** (also known as **adjective clauses**) to the main clause in a sentence. Relative clauses either help clarify the antecedent with essential information (in which case they are known as **restrictive clauses**), or else give extra, nonessential information about it (in which case they are known as **non-restrictive clauses**).

In a relative clause, the relative pronoun functions in one of three ways: as the **subject** of the clause, as the **object** of the clause’s verb, or as a **possessive determiner**. For example:

- “There’s the woman ***who** always sits next to me on the bus*.” (restrictive clause; *who* functions as the subject)
- “The book ***that** I wrote* is being published in January.” (restrictive clause; *that* functions as the object of *wrote*)
- “The escaped giraffe, ***which** had been on the loose for weeks*, was finally captured.” (non-restrictive clause; *which* functions as the subject)
- “The person, ***whose** name can’t be revealed*, appeared in court today.” (non-restrictive clause; *whose* functions as a possessive determiner, modifying *name*)

Reciprocal pronouns

We use **reciprocal pronouns** when two or more people both act as the subject of a verb, and both (or all) individually and equally receive the verb’s action. They can be the object of either the verb itself or a preposition used to complete the verb’s meaning.

There are two reciprocal pronouns—*each other* (traditionally used for two people) and *one another* (traditionally used for more than two people). For example:

- “Jake and I call **each other** every day.”
- “My neighbors and I spent a lot of time at each other’s houses when we were kids.”

Dummy Pronouns

“**Dummy**” **pronouns** (more technically known as **expletive pronouns**) are words that function grammatically as pronouns but do not have antecedents—that is, they do not replace a noun, phrase, or clause. They refer to nothing in particular, instead helping the sentence to function properly in a grammatical context. There are two dummy pronouns, *there* and *it*.

- “**There** is a ship in the harbor.”
- “**There** were flowers in the meadow.”
- “**It** looks like it may snow tonight.”
- “Could you tell me what time **it** is?”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What is the term for a noun that is replaced by a pronoun?

a) Remnant
b) Descendent
c) Antecedent
d) Precedent

2. Which of the following pronouns are used when a subject is also the object of the same verb?

a) Reflexive pronouns
b) Relative pronouns
c) Personal pronouns
d) Demonstrative pronouns

3. Which of the following pronouns are used to indicate the nearness and number of a specific noun?

a) Reflexive pronouns
b) Relative pronouns
c) Personal pronouns
d) Demonstrative pronouns

4. Pronouns have the same grammatical function as _______ in a sentence.

a) Nouns
b) Adjectives
c) Adverbs
d) Prepositions

5. Identify the type of pronoun (in **bold**) used in the following sentence:
"Let me know if you need **anything**."

a) Reciprocal pronoun
b) Interrogative pronoun
c) Indefinite pronoun
d) Dummy pronoun

Personal pronouns

Definition

A personal pronoun is a pronoun (a word that functions as and acts as a substitute for a noun or nouns) that represents a grammatical person within a sentence. While personal pronouns often do indicate an actual person, they can also refer to animals, inanimate objects, or even intangible concepts. For instance, the word *they* in the previous sentence is a plural third-person neuter (gender neutral) pronoun representing the words "personal pronouns" as a grammatical person. Here are some other examples:

- "As soon as John comes home, **I** am going to give **him** back **his** hat."
- "**My** team lost again. **We** really stink this year!"
- "**He** spoke to the boss yesterday and already got **her** approval."

Which personal pronoun is used in each instance varies depending on four grammatical elements: **number** (singular or plural), **person** (first, second, or third person), **gender** (male, female, or neuter/neutral), and **case** (subjective, objective, or possessive). This shifting of form is called **inflection**. Quite often, the inflection of a personal pronoun will change within the same sentence.

There is also a different kind of pronoun called a **reflexive pronoun**, which is used when the subject of a verb is also the object (receiving the action) of the same verb. For example:

- “He looked at **himself** in the mirror before he left.”
- “I hurt **myself** on the playground today.”

Although not technically considered personal pronouns, reflexive pronouns are so similar in form and use that they have been included in this section.

We will examine each of these grammatical elements in relation to personal pronouns more in-depth in the sub-sections of this chapter, but here is a quick breakdown of all the personal pronouns and ***their*** different inflections.

Person	**Number**	**Gender**	**Subjective Case**	**Objective Case**	**Posse Deter**
First Person	Singular	Masculine/feminine	I	Me	My
First Person	Plural	Masculine/feminine	We	Us	Our
Second Person	Singular/Plural	Masculine/feminine	You	You	Your
Third Person	Singular	Feminine	She	Her	Her
Third Person	Singular	Masculine	He	Him	His
Third person	Singular	Neuter	It	It	Its
Third person	Plural*	Neuter (Gender Neutral)	They	Them	Their

(*See the usage note under “**Gender**” for information about using *they* as a singular pronoun.)

Personal Pronouns - Number

Definition

Grammatical number in English simply means whether something or someone is **singular** or **plural**—that is, is there one of something or someone (singular), or are there more than one (plural)? This is answered by the pronoun's **antecedent** (the word, phrase, clause, etc., that indicates what pronoun should be used, and in what form).

For nouns, we usually just add an "-s" to the end of the word to signify that it is plural (though there are many exceptions to this). Personal pronouns, however, have specific **inflections** (different forms of the word) depending on whether they are singular or plural. For the most part, only the **first-person** and **third-person** personal pronouns have plural forms. The only plural **second-person** pronoun is the reflexive pronoun *yourselves*.

For second-person pronouns that don't inflect for number, you sometimes have to use information from another part of the sentence or paragraph to determine if it is plural or singular. (See the examples below.)

Unfortunately, there is no rule to how personal pronouns change when they become plural; you simply have to memorize them. Refer to the table in the **chapter overview** to learn them.

Examples:

- "**I** *(first-person singular)* am meeting **my** *(first-person singular)* writing club this afternoon. **We** *(first-person plural)*always meet on Wednesdays after class."

- "**I** *(first-person singular)* really envy **you** *(second-person singular)*!"

- "**They** *(third-person plural)* can't tell **you** *(second-person plural)* what it will be like; **you** *(second-person plural)* will just have to find out for **yourselves** *(second-person plural reflexive)*."

- "The main reason Martha is so beautiful is because **she** *(third-person feminine singular)* is so tall."

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which personal pronouns can be inflected for **number**? (Choose the answer

that is **most** correct.)

a) All of them
b) First-person and third-person pronouns
c) Reflexive pronouns
d) Second-person pronouns
e) B & C

2. Which of the following sentences has at least **one** pronoun that is **plural**? (Choose the answer that is **most** correct.)

a) “I told you that I needed it done by yesterday, Jeff.”
b) “She went for a walk by herself.”
c) “Don’t take your sister’s toys, or you will make her cry.”
d) “I asked all of you here so we could discuss the state of the business.”

3. Which of the following is the plural form of the **second-person reflexive pronoun**?

a) yourselves
b) itselves
c) themselves
d) ourselves

4. What is the plural form of the first-person possessive pronoun **mine**?

a) our
b) my
c) ours
d) theirs

Personal Pronouns - Person (First person, Second person, Third person)

Definition

Grammatical person refers to the perspectives of the personal pronouns used to identify a person in speech and text—that is, it distinguishes between a speaker (first person), an addressee (second person), and others beyond that (third person).

First person

- **Singular**: ***I, me, my, mine, myself***
- **Plural**: ***we, us, our, ours, ourselves***

First-person pronouns are used to express an autobiographical point of view—they tell what is directly happening to the speaker, writer, or fictional character. For example:

- "**I** don't know where **my** hat is!"
- "Janet is meeting **me** in town later."
- "Hey, that book is **mine**! **I** bought it!"

When the speaker is part of a group, the first-person pronouns inflect to the plural form:

- "**We** brought **our** own car."
- "They told **us** to help **ourselves**."

Second person

- **Singular/Plural**: ***you, you, your, yours, yourself (singular), yourselves (plural)***

We use the second-person pronouns to indicate those who are being addressed directly by the speaker. Unlike first-person pronouns, there is not a distinction between singular and plural second-person pronouns (except in the reflexive form). Here are some examples:

- "Bill, I was wondering if **you** could help me with the dishes?" (*second person* *singular*)

- “Children, where are **your** manners?” (*second person plural*)
- “**You** really must learn to help **yourself**.” (*second person singular*)
- “I’m sick of cleaning up after all of **you**; from now on, **you** can clean up after **yourselves**!” (*second person plural*)

Usage note: Generic “you”

The second-person pronouns are also often used to indicate an unspecified person. This is sometimes referred to as **generic *you***, **impersonal *you***, or **indefinite *you***. This is less formal than its counterpart, the pronoun *one*, but it is sometimes preferred because it does not sound as snobbish or unnecessarily formal.

If *one* is writing something very formal or professional, then *one* might be better off using the generic pronoun *one*. If *you’re* writing something a bit less formal, then *you* are probably just fine using the generic pronoun *you*.

Third person

Third person is used to talk about someone or something that is not the speaker and is not being directly addressed. This is most widely used in fiction writing. When the person or thing is **singular**, the pronouns used in the third person are the different forms of *she*, *he*, and *it*:

- **Feminine singular**: ***she, her, hers, herself***
- **Masculine singular**: ***he, him, his, himself***
- **Neuter singular**: ***it, its, its own, itself***

However, when there are multiple people or things, we use the ungendered forms of *they*:

- **Third person plural**: ***they, them, their, theirs, themselves***

Sometimes, when a single person of an unknown gender is being discussed, the third-person plural forms (*they, them*, etc.) are used as a gender-neutral alternative to the third-person feminine/masculine forms. To learn more about this, please see the **Usage Note** about “Singular they” under the chapter section explaining **gender in personal pronouns**.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which perspective of **grammatical person** is used for someone being addressed directly by the speaker?

a) First person
b) Second person
c) Third person
d) Third-person plural

2. Which of the following sentences uses a **first-person *plural*** pronoun?

a) "John said that I should be more careful with my writing."
b) "They are not happy with your sales this quarter."
c) "I'm not sure that he knows what they're doing."
d) "She doesn't think that we should be paying that much."

3. Who or what would be represented by **third-person pronouns** in a sentence?

a) A person or thing who is not being directly addressed by someone
b) A person or thing who is being directly addressed by someone
c) A person who is directly addressing someone or something
d) A person who is speaking about someone or something who is not present

4. Which perspective (or perspectives) of **grammatical person** are being used in the following sentence?
"When we were young, my father often told us that he didn't have as many luxuries growing up."

a) First person
b) Second person
c) Third person
d) Both first and third person
e) Both second and third person
f) First, second, and third person

Personal Pronouns - Gender

Definition

Modern English is largely an **ungendered** language. Whereas other languages might have masculine and feminine forms for nouns depending on the verbs, articles, or adjectives they are used with, English nouns by and large remain neutral. However, a personal pronoun *can* be inflected for gender to correspond to the gender of the person (and, in some cases, an animal) it represents.

Personal pronouns are only inflected for gender when they are in the third person and singular—first-person and second-person pronouns (singular or plural) and third-person plural pronouns* remain gender neutral. Here are the gendered pronouns in English:

- **Third-person feminine singular**: ***she, her, hers, herself***
- **Third-person masculine singular**: ***he, him, his, himself***

The third-person singular can also be **neuter**. This is used when a personal pronoun represents a thing or an animal. Animals can sometimes take gendered personal pronouns if they are pets or domesticated animals; otherwise, they take the third-person neuter form:

- **Third-person neuter singular**: ***it, its, its own, itself***

Remember, when there are multiple people or things, we use the ungendered forms of *they**:

- **Third person plural**: ***they, them, their, theirs, themselves***

Examples

- “I really love Jenny. **She** is my best friend.”
- “Danny said that **he** would lend me **his** jacket for tonight.”
- “Look at that cute dog wagging **his** tail!”
- “Bill and Samantha told me **they** were coming over later.”
- “You should not try to control love, but rather be guided by **it**.”
- “I’ve got the report for you. I’ll just set **it** on your desk.”
- “The horse galloped by, **its** hooves pounding the ground violently.”
- “The parade floats are spectacular! I love watching **them** go down the street.”

Countries and ships

Countries and vehicles, especially ships or boats, will sometimes be given a feminine form when spoken of in the third person. For example:

- “The *SS Freedom* is a good ship. **She** has certainly seen **her** fair share of adventure."

• "The Prime Minister promised that the United Kingdom would be returned to **her** former glory during his term."

This is a more traditional usage; it is less common these days, and by no means necessary. Some style guides go so far as to discourage its use.

*Usage Note: "Singular they"

English does not have a way of identifying a single person with a pronoun if his or her gender is not known, so sometimes the third-person plural forms (*they, them*, etc.) are used as a gender-neutral alternative to the third-person feminine/masculine forms. This is sometimes called "**singular they**."

For example:

• "You shouldn't judge someone until you know what **they** are really like."

• "If anyone needs extra help with **their** studies, **they** should feel free to see me after class."

"Singular they" is gradually becoming accepted as the norm, especially in instances with indefinite pronouns that sound plural but are grammatically singular (like *anyone* in the example above). However, it is still considered incorrect by many writers and writing guides, especially in American English.

Previously, it was standard practice to simply use the masculine third-person singular forms (*he, him, his, himself*), but this is now seen as being potentially sexist. Likewise, using only the feminine third-person singular would be exclusionary, and mixing *him* and *her* throughout a piece of writing would be confusing.

Therefore, in formal or professional writing, the best form to use is "*he or she*" or "*him or her,*" or else simply to rewrite the sentence to avoid sounding cluttered or awkward. In informal writing or speech, though, using "singular they" is generally OK.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is an appropriate **third-person plural pronoun** to use when talking about more than one girl or woman?

a) Hers
b) Herselves

c) They
d) We

2. With what non-human things is it sometimes considered acceptable to use a gendered pronoun?

a) A ship or boat
b) A country
c) A pet or domestic animal
d) All of the above
e) None of the above

3. Which of the following sentences uses the informal “**singular they**”?

a) “I asked them if they would like to join us for lunch.”
b) “When a child asks you a question, you should always strive to answer them truthfully.”
c) “Don’t pay any attention to them; that group is always bullying freshmen.”
d) “John and Daniel said they would look after the kids tonight.”

4. When is an animal most commonly given a gendered pronoun? (Select the answer that is **most** correct.)

a) Never
b) If it is a wild animal
c) If there is only one
d) If it is a pet or domestic animal
e) C & D

5. In what instance can a **third-person neuter singular** pronoun be used with a person?

a) If his or her gender is not known or specified
b) If there is more than one person
c) Never
d) A & B
e) Always

Personal Pronouns - Case

Definition

The English language has largely discarded its case system, which is the manner by which a noun is inflected depending on its grammatical function as a subject or object in a sentence. English largely uses prepositions to accomplish this now, but personal pronouns are one part of English in which the case system is still active, being inflected depending on whether they function as a **subject**, **object**, **possessive determiner**, or **possessive pronoun**.

Subjective Case

When a personal pronoun is acting as the **subject** of a verb (that is, it is the person or thing doing the action), it is said to be in the subjective case. For instance:

- “**I** know that **she** said that.” (*Both pronouns are subjective, as both are agents of their respective actions*.)
- “**He** told **her** to be quiet.” (*Here, only **he** is in the subjective case; **her**, the recipient or “object” of his action, is in the **objective** case*.)

Objective Case

A personal pronoun is in the **objective case** when it is a **direct** or **indirect object** of a verb, or else if it is the **object or a preposition**.

A direct object directly receives the action of a verb. For example:

- “Please send **them** in straight away.”
- “Take **him** away!”

An indirect object, on the other hand, is the recipient of the direct object—it therefore **indirectly** receives the action of the verb via the direct object. For example:

- “Please tell **me** any news immediately!”

Here, *any news* is acting as the direct object of the verb *tell*—it is the thing being told. *Me*, on the other hand, is looking to receive *any news* by means of the action of *tell*, making it the **indirect object**.

- “I can’t believe he brought **you** flowers. How sweet!”

Again, *you* is receiving the flowers, which is the direct object of *brought*. Be careful with the personal pronouns *you* and *it*, however—their subjective and objective forms are the same. Take the following sentence, for example:

- "*You* said to give **you** the money as soon as *I* had **it**."

The pronouns *you* and *I* in *italics* are in the subjective case because they are each performing the action of their verbs. The pronouns **you** and **it** in **bold** are in the objective case because they are functioning as indirect and direct objects of their verbs (respectively).

After Linking Verbs (Subject Complements)

One confusing area is when a pronoun is a **subject complement** to a linking verb. For personal pronouns, this is almost always with forms of the verb *be*. In this situation, the personal pronoun should be in the **subjective case**. For example, "It was **I** who did this" is more correct than "It was **me** who did this."

It is easy to mistake it as the direct object because it seems like it is receiving the action of the verb, but linking verbs behave differently from **action verbs**. One way to be sure you are using the correct pronoun is to reverse the order of the verb and pronoun and see if the statement still makes sense.

Let's look again at the examples above:

✖ "It was **me** who did this." (incorrect)
✔ "It was **I** who did this." (correct)

If you reverse the order of the verb and pronoun, you can see why the first sentence is incorrect:

✖ "**Me** was the one* who did this." (incorrect)
✔ "**I** was the one* who did this." (correct)

(*Because in most instances we don't refer to a person as being *it* in a subject complement (except maybe in a game of tag), the indefinite pronoun phrase *the one* is used instead to identify the speaker as the person who did something.)

Here are some more examples:

- "Her husband took all the credit, but it was **she** who did all the work."
- "It was **they** who assured us that there would be no problems."

In many cases, it might be better to simply reword the sentence to sound less awkward. For example, "it was he who won the race" would sound better simply as "he won the race."

In conversational English, this distinction is much less frequently observed for simple sentences like our first examples, and you will often hear people using phrases such as “it’s me” or “that was her” in response to questions. But in writing (especially formal or professional writing), always use the **subjective case** for a personal pronoun if it is functioning as a **subject complement** after a linking verb.

Possessive Case (Genitive Case)

As the name implies, the possessive case changes the inflection of a personal pronoun to mark possession. There are two forms of personal pronouns in the possessive case: **possessive determiners**, and **possessive pronouns**.

Possessive determiners function grammatically like adjectives, modifying a noun or nouns. However, they cannot function as nouns in a sentence. For example:

✔ “**My** dad’s glasses went missing.” (**My** is correctly used as a possessive determiner, modifying *dad* to show his relation to the speaker.)
✖ “Hey, those glasses are **my**!” (**My** is incorrectly used as a possessive pronoun; it should read “Hey, those are **my** glasses!” or “Hey, those glasses are **mine**!”)

Possessive pronouns are personal pronouns in the possessive case which have the grammatical function of nouns. For example:

- “I can see **mine** through the window!”
- “You said you bought **yours** for $50?”
- “Jenny seems pretty sure that the book is **hers**.”

Be aware that the possessive determiners and possessive pronouns for the third-person masculine and third-person neuter are the same (***his*** and ***his***, ***its*** and ***its***), although *its* is more often used as a possessive determiner in the phrase *its own*. For example:

- “He said it was **his** computer, but I don’t think it is actually **his**.”
- “As the campaign reached the peak of **its** success, it seemed to take on a life of **its own**.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What determines if a personal pronoun is in the **subjective** case?

a) If it is the person or thing performing the action of a verb
b) If it is the person or thing receiving the indirect action of a verb
c) If it is the person or thing receiving the direct action of a verb
d) If the person or thing demonstrates possession of the object of a verb

2. How does a **possessive determiner** function grammatically?

a) As a verb
b) As an adjective
c) As an adverb
d) As a noun

3. Which of the following **possessive determiners** is the **same** when it is functions as a **possessive pronoun**?

a) Her
b) His
c) Its
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) None of the above

4. In the following sentence, which personal pronoun is in the **objective case**?
"I have told him a thousand times that he shouldn't act that way!"

a) he
b) I
c) him
d) that

5. Which of the following sentences has a **possessive determiner**?

a) "I told you that my recipe was good!"
b) "She still claims that the bag isn't hers."
c) "He's had his since he was a kid."
d) "Donald said they bought theirs during a sale."

Personal Pronouns - Reflexive Pronouns

Definition

Reflexive pronouns are used when someone or something is both the subject and the object of the same verb—that is, both that which is *performing* the action of the verb and that which is *receiving the action*. When this happens, the reflexive verb is used as the object of the verb to represent the person or thing.

For example, in the sentence "I heard **you** speaking," "I" is the subject, and "you" is the object—they are not the same person, so a reflexive noun is not used.

Likewise, "I'll be sure to thank himself" is not correct: "him" should be the object of "thank," while "I" is the subject.

But in the sentence "I heard **myself** speaking," the speaker ("I") is both the subject of the verb "heard" and its object (what was heard), and thus is represented by the reflexive noun "myself."

The reflexive pronouns are *myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, herself, himself, itself, themselves,* and *oneself*. The last of these is formed from the gender-neutral indefinite pronoun *one* (which also has the possessive form *one's*); however, the pronoun *one* is **not** a personal pronoun.

Here are some more examples:

- I wish you could hear **yourselves** right now!
- She admitted to **herself** that she was wrong.
- The vole hides **itself** beneath the ground for safety.
- The players have really outdone **themselves** today!
- One should strive to better **oneself** every day.

On a final note, a reflexive pronoun can never be used as the subject of a verb—it can only act as the object, and only when the person or thing it represents is already being used as the subject.

For example, "myself taught me to read" is very clearly wrong, because *myself* should be used as the object of "taught," while the personal pronoun **I** should be used as the subject. "John and myself will be in attendance" is also incorrect because the speaker (and John) is the subject of the verb "be," without an object—it should read "John and **I** will be in attendance."

For more information on the **subjective** and **objective cases**, please see the chapter section on **grammatical case in personal pronouns**.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following sentences uses reflexive pronouns **correctly**?

a) “I couldn’t believe the pictures of myself after the party!”
b) “And how is himself these days?”
c) “I really haven’t felt like myself lately.”
d) “Please send the relevant information to Bob, Jane, and myself.”

2. Which of the following sentences uses a reflexive pronoun **incorrectly**?

a) “Myself and a few others are going to see a movie later.”
b) “I can see myself taking up golf when I retire.”
c) “Tom saw himself in the reflection of the water.”
d) “Students who have not done the work themselves will be penalized.”

3. Which is the correct **singular first-person reflexive pronoun**?

a) Ourselves
b) Yourself
c) Themselves
d) Myself

4. When do you use a reflexive pronoun?

a) When a personal pronoun is the object of a preposition.
b) When a person or thing is the subject and the object of the same verb.
c) When a person or thing is the subject of one verb and the object of another verb in the same sentence.
d) When a personal pronoun and another noun are both subjects of a verb.

Intensive Pronouns

Definition

Intensive pronouns are identical to **reflexive pronouns**—*myself, yourself, ourselves, himself, herself, itself,* and *themselves*. However, intensive pronouns do not serve a grammatical function in a sentence; instead, they add emphasis by reiterating the subject of the sentence (known as the pronoun’s **antecedent**).

Using intensive pronouns in a sentence

When we use an intensive pronoun to add emphasis to a sentence, we generally place it after either its antecedent or the direct object of the verb. For instance:

- “The surgeon general **himself** will oversee the operation.”
- “They **themselves** indicated that the transactions might be illegal.”
- “He did it **himself**, much to his father’s surprise.”
- “We designed the album artwork **ourselves**.”

If we use an intensive pronoun to add a pointed or argumentative emphasis to the sentence, it comes after the direct object, as in:

- “I can operate the TV remote **myself**, thank you very much.”
- “Our son can do the project **himself**, Hank.”

Distinguishing between intensive and reflexive pronouns

Although intensive and reflexive pronouns are identical in appearance, there is a clear distinction between them. Reflexive pronouns are used when the subject of a sentence also receives the action of the sentence—that is, the subject of the verb is also the object the same verb. For example:

- “I saw **myself** in the mirror.”
- “She asked **herself** if it was worth the hassle.”
- “The actor played **himself** in the film about his life.”

In all of these sentences, we use reflexive pronouns to indicate that the subject of the verb is also the recipient of its actions.

However, we use an intensive pronoun if we want to place special emphasis on **who** is performing the action of the subject on a separate object. Because of this, the intensive pronoun is not grammatically integral to the meaning of the sentence. Take, for example, these three sentences:

- “John played the tuba.”
- “John played the tuba **himself**.”

As we can see, the addition of *himself* has no bearing on the logical meaning of the sentence—in both cases, it is John who played the tuba. However, by adding the intensive pronoun *himself* in the second sentence, we let the reader or listener know that it is somehow remarkable or noteworthy that it was John who played the tuba, as opposed to someone else.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Intensive pronouns are identical to what other kind of pronoun?

a) indefinite pronouns
b) relative pronouns
c) reflexive pronouns
d) reciprocal pronouns

2. What is the function of intensive pronouns in a sentence?

a) To add emphasis to the role of the subject
b) To add emphasis to the role of the direct object
c) To indicate that the subject is also the object of the verb
d) To indicate that the object of the verb is also the object complement

3. Where does an intensive pronoun typically occur in a sentence?

a) Immediately after the subject of the sentence
b) Immediately after the main verb of the sentence
c) Immediately after the direct object of the verb
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) A & C
g) All of the above

4. Which of the following sentences uses an intensive pronoun?

a) “I could really see myself competing in a triathlon someday.”
b) “After much consideration, he decided to write himself out of the will.”
c) “She did herself a disservice by not renegotiating her contract.”
d) “He wrote the music himself to avoid extra copyright costs.”

Indefinite Pronouns

Definition

An **indefinite pronoun** is used in place of a noun without specifying a particular person or thing that is being represented. There are quite a few indefinite pronouns, which you can see listed in the table below. Look them over, and then read on to learn about their usage.

Table of Indefinite Pronouns

People vs. Things	Singular	Plural	Singular or Plural
Either People or Things	another one (quantifier) each either other	both few fewer many others several	all any more most neither none plenty some
People only	anybody/anyone everybody/everyone one ("impersonal" pronoun) nobody/no one/no-one somebody/someone whoever/whosoever whomever/whomsoever you (see usage note)	they (see usage note)	
Things only	anything enough everything less little much nothing something		such

	such this whatever whichever		

Singular vs. Plural

Many pronouns that refer to more than one—e.g., *everything, everyone, much*, etc.—are considered singular. This is because, grammatically, they function as a single unit (like the **collective nouns** *team, group, collection*, etc., which are made up of multiple people or things). As a result, they must take a singular verb and have agreement with the rest of the text. For example:

- “**Everyone** *is* invited.”
- “I hope **everything** *is* alright; I would hate if *it* wasn’t.”

Likewise, the plural pronouns must have plural agreement with their verbs and other parts of the text:

- “**Many** *are* in agreement with *their* peers.”

Some pronouns can function either as singular or plural, depending on context and usage; thus, their verb agreement changes accordingly. For example:

- “**All** *are* welcome should *they* wish to attend.” (plural)
- “**All** *is* right with the world.” (singular)

People vs. Things

Both people and things can be identified in a sentence by an indefinite pronoun. Many pronouns are only used to refer to people or to things; as we’ll see later on, though, there are also many which can be used for either.

People

Take the following sentence, for example:

- “Would **anyone** like a drink?”

Here, *anyone* is standing in for any person, but it doesn’t specify who that person is or might be—it could be *anyone*!

(If we wanted to use a pronoun that specified a person, we would use a **personal**

pronoun, as in “Would *you* like a drink?”)

However, we wouldn’t use *anyone* to refer to a thing. Any indefinite pronoun with “one” or “body” in it is reserved for identifying people. Incidentally, “one” and “body,” when used as *part* of an indefinite pronoun, can be used interchangeably. Although some people feel that using “body” sounds a bit less formal, it is up to the discretion of the writer.

Let’s look at examples for each indefinite pronoun that relates to people:

- “I don’t think **anybody/anyone** wants to dance.”
- “**Everybody/everyone** is leaving early.”
- “**One*** would hope that this sort of behavior wouldn’t be tolerated.”
- “**You*** would think that the government would have thought of that already.”
- “I can’t believe **nobody/no one/no-one** came to my play!”
- “She’s hoping **somebody/someone** will help her with her work.”
- “**Whoever/whosoever** would like to join us is more than welcome.”
- “Hire **whomever/whomsoever** you think would be the most appropriate for the job.”
- “**They*** say you should always wear a helmet on a bicycle.”

(Note that *whosoever* and *whomsoever*, while perfectly acceptable, have come to sound a bit antiquated compared to *whoever* and *whomever*.)

Usage note: Generic “you” and “they”

The second-person pronouns (you, your, yours, yourself, yourselves) are also often used as indefinite pronouns to indicate an unspecified person. This is sometimes referred to as generic you, impersonal you, or indefinite you.

***You* is far less formal than its counterpart, the indefinite pronoun *one*, but it is sometimes preferred because it does not sound as snobbish or because such formality is unnecessary. Because *one* is used to refer to people, but without specifying who it represents, it is sometimes called an impersonal pronoun.**

If *one* is writing something very formal or professional, then *one* might be better off using the indefinite pronoun *one*. If *you’re* writing something a

bit less formal, then *you* are probably just fine using the generic pronoun *you*.

(Also note that *one* has a second function as an indefinite pronoun that is used as a quantifier, as in “I think I'll get the red one" or “Most of our group is here, but one is running late.”)

Similarly, the third-person plural pronoun *they* can be used as an indefinite pronoun to refer to people in general. It is usually used in the form “They say…,” as in “They say that drinking too often is bad for your health.” However, this is considered very informal, and would be frowned upon in formal, professional, or academic writing.

Things

We can also use indefinite pronouns to represent things in the same manner:

- “Is there **something** you’d like to say?”

Any indefinite pronoun that is formed with “-thing” is, understandably, only used to refer to things. (*One* can also refer to things, but only as a **quantifier**, which functions differently in a sentence than the impersonal pronoun *one*.)

Let’s look at examples of the indefinite pronouns that only apply to things:

- “I don’t care what I eat, so just order me **anything**.”
- “I think she has had **enough**.”
- “He wanted to buy **everything** in the shop.”
- “The **less** you know, the better.”
- “As I’ve gotten older, I’ve realized that I know very **little**.”
- “There was **nothing** she felt like doing.”
- “There is still **much** to be done.”
- “I’m sure that I’m forgetting **something**.”
- “She finds tourists very irritating, and she hates being treated as **such** when she travels.”
- “He had **this** to say in his defense.”
- “I’ll just have **whatever** you’re having.”

- “It’s your money, so buy **whichever** you like.”

People *and* Things

Quite a few indefinite pronouns can be used to refer to either people or things. In such cases, we rely on context or other elements of the sentence to know which:

- “**One** was short and stout; the **other** was long and skinny.”

In the above sentence, we don’t know whether *one* and *other* refer to people or to things; we have to rely on comes before or after the sentence to know which. Now let’s look at another example:

- “**Each** to his own—that’s what I always say!”

Because it is used in conjunction with the personal pronoun *his*, we can infer that the indefinite pronoun *each* is referring to a person. Likewise:

- “Get **both** if you like them so much.”

You don’t “get” (as in “acquire”) people, so we can safely assume that *both* is referring to things.

Let’s look at examples of the indefinite pronouns that can refer to both things and people. Try to see if you can figure out which each is referring to by the information in the sentence, or whether you would need more information to know for sure.

- “Come on, let’s get **another**!”
- “**Each** will get a turn to speak.”
- “I think **either** will do for now.”
- “**Few** came to the service, in the end.”
- “There are **fewer** than I remember.”
- “**Many** are voicing their concerns.”
- “**One** likes to play the banjo, while the **other** prefers the piano.”
- “There are a few **others** that still need to be collected.”
- “**Most** have left, but **several** are still here.”
- “There were **plenty** there.”
- “**All** are accounted for.”
- “I don’t think there are **any** left.”
- “There’s a bit **more** to be done still.”

- “**Neither** seem willing to negotiate.”
- “There are **none** left.”
- “Save **some** for me!”

Indefinite Adjectives vs. Indefinite Pronouns

Some indefinite pronouns can also function as indefinite adjectives if they come immediately before a noun. For example:

- “There is **more** to be done.” (indefinite pronoun)
- “There is **more work** to be done.” (indefinite adjective)

- “There is **another** who can fill in, if necessary.” (indefinite pronoun)
- “There is **another student** who can fill in, if necessary.” (indefinite adjective)

If you’re trying to determine whether a word is an indefinite pronoun, just see if it’s on its own; if it is paired with a noun, then it is an indefinite adjective.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following indefinite pronouns can **only** be used to refer to **things**?

a) All
b) Many
c) Much
d) Several

2. Identify the indefinite pronoun used in the following sentence:
“People are saying all sorts of things, but little is worth listening to.”

a) People
b) All
c) Little
d) B & C

3. What is the difference between an **indefinite pronoun** and an **indefinite**

adjective?

a) An indefinite pronoun stands alone; and indefinite adjective precedes a noun.
b) An indefinite adjective stands alone; and indefinite pronoun precedes a noun.
c) An indefinite adjective always modifies an indefinite pronoun.
d) They are the same thing.

4. How do you tell if an indefinite pronoun represents a person or a thing, if it is capable of both?

a) Other information within the sentence
b) Context around (before or after) the sentence
c) Determine if it could be replaced by a noun
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) A & C

Demonstrative Pronouns

Definition

Demonstrative pronouns are *pronouns* used to replace *nouns* or *noun phrases* in a sentence, representing that which is nearby or far away in space or time.

Because demonstrative pronouns are less specific than the nouns or noun phrases they replace, you must use *context* to clarify what is being referred to. In spoken English, this can mean having to gesture toward, point to, or look at the thing or things indicated by the demonstrative pronoun. In written English, demonstrative pronouns are usually used to refer to previously mentioned nouns, ideas, or topics.

Here is a complete list of demonstrative pronouns:

- this
- that
- these
- those
- none
- such
- neither

Functions of major demonstrative pronouns

The most common demonstrative pronouns are *this, that, these,* and *those*. Their functions are explained in the following table:

Demonstrative Pronoun	Singular/Plural	Nearby/Far Away
this	singular	nearby
that	singular	far away
these	plural	nearby
those	plural	far away

Each of the four major demonstrative pronouns describes something that is either singular or plural and either near or not near to the speaker. For example:

- "**This** isn't mine." (singular, nearby)
- "Give me **that**." (singular, not near)
- "**These** are really gross." (plural, nearby)
- "I forgot to bring **those**." (plural, not near)

Demonstrative pronouns can also be used to indicate more abstract things, such as chronological events or ideas:

- "I really love **this**!" (*This* can possibly represent a physically close thing, a current event, or a recently developed idea.)
- "**That** was so cool." (*That* can possibly represent a physically distant thing, a past event, or an old idea.)
- "**These** are the times I remember to stay calm." (*These* represents recently occurring events in this sentence, made clear by the word *times*.)
- "**Those** were some fantastic days, right?" (*Those* in this case represents past events, made clear by the word *days*.)

Though the demonstrative pronouns in the above cases do not refer specifically to physical things, the rules of singular and plural still apply. In other words, you cannot replace *this* with *these* or *that* with *those* unless the number of things indicated has increased to more than one.

Functions of other demonstrative pronouns

The less commonly used demonstrative pronouns are *none*, *such*, and *neither*. *None* and *such* can be used as both singular and plural demonstrative pronouns. For example:

- “**None** of *this* makes sense.” (*None* is singular because *this* is singular.)
- “**None** of *the people* here seem to like the cake I made.” (*None* is plural because *the people* is plural.*)
- “**Such** is *the way of life*.” (*Such* is singular because *the way of life* is singular.)
- “**Such** are *the rules*.” (*Such* is plural because *the rules* is plural.)

(*There is debate as to whether *none* can denote plurality. Some sources argue that *none* can only represent the singular *not one*, whereas others claim it can also represent the plural *not any*. Since *none* has a long history of being used as both a singular and plural demonstrative pronoun, there is little historical or grammatical basis to support the claim that it can only be treated as singular.)

On the other hand, *neither* is always treated as a singular demonstrative pronoun, regardless of the presence of any plural nouns:

✔ “**Neither** *sounds* good to me.” (correct)

✔ “I think **neither** of the twins *wants* a babysitter.” (correct)

✖ “**Neither** of his parents *work* at the firm.” (incorrect)

Describing people with demonstrative pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns always represent *nouns*, typically things, places, events, ideas, and animals. In certain cases, however, some of these pronouns may also be used to describe *people*. This can only be done when the person is identified by the pronoun’s antecedent within the same sentence. For example:

- “**That** is *Amy* standing by the door.”
- “**This** must be *Jake*.”

- “**That** appears to be *the woman* I saw earlier.”
- “*Who* is **that**?”

✖ “Go talk to **that**.” (incorrect; no antecedent)

✔ “Go talk to that woman.” (correct)

✖ “**That** is quite handsome.” (incorrect; no antecedent)

✔ “That man is quite handsome.” (correct)

Demonstrative pronouns vs. demonstrative adjectives and determiners

Some demonstrative pronouns may also be used as **demonstrative adjectives** or **determiners**, but their usage is quite different. As demonstrative pronouns, *this, that, these, those, such*, and *neither* represent nouns. As demonstrative adjectives and determiners, however, these same words instead *modify nouns*, appearing immediately before them in a sentence. We can see this in the examples below:

- “She wants to photograph **this**.” (demonstrative pronoun)
- “She wants to photograph ***this*** **painting**.” (demonstrative adjective)

- “**That** is one of my favorites.” (demonstrative pronoun)
- “***That*** **book** is one of my favorites.” (demonstrative adjective)

- “**These** taste the best.” (demonstrative pronoun)
- “***These*** **chocolates** taste the best.” (demonstrative adjective)

- “He wanted to try **those**.” (demonstrative pronoun)
- “He wanted to try ***those*** **recipes**.” (demonstrative adjective)

- “**Such** is the man’s poor choice.” (demonstrative pronoun)
- “***Such*** **men** make poor choices.” (determiner)

- “**Neither** is mine.” (demonstrative pronoun)
- “***Neither*** **locket** is mine.” (determiner)

None is the only demonstrative pronoun that does not also function as a demonstrative adjective:

✔ “I’ll eat **none**.” (correct)

✖ “I’ll eat ***none*** **sandwiches**.” (incorrect)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** a demonstrative pronoun?

a) those
b) that
c) there
d) this

2. Which sentence uses a demonstrative pronoun **correctly**?

a) Those was an interesting movie.
b) This aren’t something to cry about.
c) These isn’t the worst restaurants in town.
d) I want to do that right now.

3. Which sentence uses a demonstrative pronoun **incorrectly**?

a) Neither of my dreams are too grand.
b) Such are the habits of teenagers.
c) Billy said he wanted to use those.
d) None of this matters to me.

4. Which sentence contains a **demonstrative adjective**, as opposed to a demonstrative pronoun?

a) I wouldn’t mind giving those a try.
b) I am pretty sure that’s Nina walking by the bookstore.
c) They’d love to take a stroll through this park.
d) Neither is interested in attending the concert.

Interrogative Pronouns

Definition

Interrogative pronouns are used in **interrogative sentences** to ask questions, functioning either as **the subject** or object of such sentences. There are five primary interrogative pronouns: *who, whom, whose, which*, and *what*.

There are other interrogative pronouns as well that are used for emphatic purposes, which we'll cover later in this section.

Using interrogative pronouns

Direct Questions

Most often, interrogative pronouns are used in direct questions, representing the person or thing that is being asked about. In direct questions, the interrogative pronoun usually comes at or near the beginning of the interrogative clause, acting as either the subject or object of the sentence. For example:

- "**Who** is coming to the party tonight?" (subject)
- "**Whom** did you ask to fill in for Mr. Smith?" (object)*
- "**Whose** is this computer?" (subject)
- "So, **which** will it be: $10,000 or a new sports car?" (object)
- "**What** do you expect me to do, exactly?" (object)

An interrogative pronoun is easy to identify because it can stand on its own in a sentence and takes the grammatical function of a noun. Other question words, on the other hand, act as adverbs when they stand alone, as in:

- "**How** did you find me?" (*How* modifies the verb *find*.)
- "**When** are we leaving?" (*When* modifies the verb *leaving*.)
- "**Why** did we stay?" (*Why* modifies the verb *stay*.)

(*Usage Note: *Whom* is becoming increasingly rare in modern English. Although it is technically correct to use *whom* when it functions as the object of a verb and *who* when it functions as the subject, it is much more common to use *who* in both cases.)

Indirect Questions

Interrogative pronouns can also appear within **indirect questions**. When this happens, they appear in the middle of the sentence. Indirect questions are sometimes used to ask something in a more polite way, as in:

- “Could you tell me **whose** these are?”
- “Would you mind telling me **which** I’m supposed to bring?”
- “Do you know **what** we’re doing here?”

Other times, indirect questions are used for emphasis to convey surprise:

- “She wants **who** to come to the party?”
- “You’re going to do **what** in New York City?”
- “He’s going to ask **whom** out on a date?”*

In such cases, emphasis is put on the interrogative pronoun—we can hear the stress on the words when we say the sentences aloud.

Reported Questions

Interrogative pronouns also appear in the middle of **reported questions**. Reported questions are actually a form of declarative sentences using **reported speech** (also called **indirect speech**): they tell us *about* something someone else asked, but do not ask a question themselves. As such, they do not end in a question mark. For example:

- “She wants to know **whose** these are.”
- “He wondered **which** is correct.”
- “I asked you **what** we were supposed to do today.”
- “She was wondering **who** would be coming tomorrow.”
- “They asked **whom** to consult in the matter.”

The speaker in each of the examples isn’t asking an actual question, but rather is reporting or clarifying a question that has already been asked.

Other interrogative pronouns

There are technically seven other interrogative pronouns—*whoever, whomever, whichever, whatever, whatsoever, whosoever*, and *whomsoever*—that are used for emphatic purposes, but they are typically used in more formal or old-fashioned English. For example:

- “**Whoever** would believe such a story?”
- “**Whatever** could I have done to make you so angry?”
- “**Whomever** did you ask to accompany you to the gala on such short notice?”
- “**Whichever** will the gentleman choose, I wonder?

The last three, *whatsoever, whosoever,* and *whomsoever*, are synonymous with *whatever, whoever*, and *whomever*. However, they are considered even more antiquated in modern English, bordering on archaic. It is uncommon to come across them even in more formal speech or writing.

Other grammatical roles

Many of the interrogative pronouns we’ve examined above often serve other grammatical functions in different contexts. It’s important to know the difference between them.

Interrogative Adjectives

Three of the interrogative pronouns—*whose*, *which*, and *what*—can also function as **interrogative adjectives**, meaning they come before and modify another noun. An easy way to be sure whether you are dealing with an interrogative adjective or an interrogative pronoun is to check whether the question word is immediately followed by a noun it modifies. For example:

- “**What *book*** is your favorite?”

In this example, *what* is immediately followed by the noun *book*, which it is modifying. We can be sure that, in this case, *what* is a possessive adjective.

- “**What** are you reading?”

In this sentence, *what* is not immediately followed by a noun that it modifies, which means that it is an interrogative pronoun.

Here are some other examples:

- “**Which *shirt*** should I wear?” (interrogative adjective)
- “**Which** would you choose if you were me?” (interrogative pronoun)
- “**Whose *book*** is this on the table?” (interrogative adjective)
- “**Whose** is this that I’m holding?” (interrogative pronoun)

Relative Pronouns

Who, whom, which, and *whose* can also be used as **relative pronouns** in declarative sentences. They are not considered interrogative in this form, because they are no longer associated with a question; rather, they are used to help clarify whom or what a sentence is talking about, or else give extra information about it. For example:

- “I helped the old man **who** lives down the road with his groceries.”
- “The computer, **which** belonged to my brother, is very slow.”
- “Could the person **whose** car is parked outside please move it?”
- “A man **who/whom** I had never met before greeted me in the street.”

In addition, the pronouns *whoever, whichever,* and *whatever* are also used as *indefinite* relative pronouns. They are much more commonly used in this way in modern English than they are as interrogative pronouns. For example:

- “Do **whatever** you please; I don’t care.”
- “**Whoever** decides to join us is more than welcome.”
- “Take **whichever** route is fastest.”

Whomever can also be used in this way when the pronoun functions as an object, as in:

- “Be with *whomever* makes you happy.”

However, this is becoming increasingly uncommon, with *whoever* more often being used instead.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is a function of interrogative pronouns?

a) To help clarify who or what a sentence is talking about
b) To ask or report a question
c) To modify a noun that is being asked about
d) To provide additional information to a sentence

2. Which of the following is **not** one of the primary interrogative pronouns?

a) which
b) who

c) whose
d) whatever

3. Identify the interrogative pronoun that completes the following sentence correctly:
"______ shall I ask to come to dinner tonight?"

a) who
b) which
c) whom
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) A & C
g) All of the above

4. Which of the following interrogative pronouns is used for **emphasis**?

a) whichever
b) which
c) whose
d) whom

Relative Pronouns

Definition

A **relative pronoun** is a type of pronoun used to connect a **relative clause** (also known as an **adjective clause**) to the main clause in a sentence. Relative clauses either help clarify who or what a sentence is talking about (known as the **antecedent**), or else give extra information about it.

Here are the five most commonly used relative pronouns:

- that
- which
- who
- whom
- whose

Less commonly used relative pronouns include the following:

- where

- when
- whoever
- whosoever
- whomever
- whichever
- wherever
- whatever
- whatsoever

Functions of the relative pronoun

Subjects, objects, and possession

In a relative clause, the relative pronoun functions in one of three ways: as the **subject**, the **object**, or a **possessive pronoun** (though *whose* is the only possessive relative pronoun). The usage of a relative pronoun ultimately depends on its antecedent and the relative clause it introduces.

We can use this table as a quick guide:

Type of Antecedent	Subject	Object	Possessive
People	Who	Who / Whom	Whose
Things	Which	Which	Whose
People or Things	That	That	

Let’s look at how each of these can be used in a sentence:

Subject

• “The woman ***who** came to my house* was a salesperson.” (*Who* is the **subject** of the relative clause *who came to my house*, which describes the antecedent *the woman*.)

• “The male birds danced and sang, ***which** attracted nearby females*.” (*Which* is the subject of the non-restrictive relative clause *which attracted nearby females* that describes the antecedent *danced and sang*.)

- “I have to go mend the fence ***that** is broken*.” (*That* is the subject of the restrictive relative clause *that is broken*, describing the antecedent *the fence*.)
- “I want a computer ***which** can download a lot of games*.” (*Which* is the subject of the relative clause *which can download a lot of games* and describes the antecedent *a computer*.)

Object

- “I don’t know if I passed the test ***that** I took yesterday*.” (*That* is the object of relative clause *that I took yesterday* and describes the antecedent *the test*.)
- “The new employee ***whom** I hired* is a dedicated worker.” (*Whom* is the object of the relative clause *whom I hired* and describes the antecedent *the new employee*.)

Possession

The relative pronoun *whose* is unique in that it is the only one that can describe possession. It comes before a noun in a sentence, modifying it like an adjective to indicate that it belongs to the antecedent.

- “She tried to help the student ***whose** lunch money had been stolen*.” (*Whose* modifies *lunch money* and introduces the relative clause *whose lunch money had been stolen*, which describes the antecedent *the student*.)

Substituting relative pronouns

Most relative pronouns are capable of multiple functions and usages, meaning they can be used in place of one another in certain circumstances. The table below gives a quick breakdown of when it is acceptable to use each relative pronoun:

Can be used...	as a subject?	as an object?	as a possessive?	to describe things?	to describe people?
who	✔	✔ (informal)	✖	✖	✔
whom	✖	✔ (formal)	✖	✖	✔
whose	✖	✖	✔	✔	✔

which	✔	✔	✖	✔	✖
that	✔	✔	✖	✔	✔

Relative pronouns that can be replaced

- “The woman **who/that** came to my house was a salesperson.” (*Who* and *that* are interchangeable when describing people.)

- “The new employee **whom/who/that*** I hired is a dedicated worker.” (In addition to *whom*, *who* and *that* can also be used as an object in informal English when describing a person in a **restrictive** relative clause.)

- “The mailman, **whom/who*** my father knew in high school, is running for the state senate.” (When **whom** is the object of a **non-restrictive** relative clause, it can only be replaced by *who*)

- “I want a computer **that/which**** can download a lot of games.” (*Which* and *that* can both describe things.)

(***Usage note 1**: Traditionally, *whom* is considered the only correct relative pronoun when functioning as the object of a relative clause, but nowadays *who* is also acceptable (as is *that* in restrictive relative clauses). In fact, most people these days only use *who*, while *whom* tends to be reserved for formal English.)

(****Usage note 2**: In general, the relative pronoun *that* is preferable to *which* in restrictive relative clauses; however, *which* is largely considered acceptable, especially in informal writing. We will discuss the differences between restrictive and non-restrictive clauses in more detail later.)

Relative pronouns that cannot be replaced

- “The male birds danced and sang, ***which** attracted nearby females*.” (Since *which* is the subject of a **non-restrictive** relative clause describing a thing (the act of dancing and singing), it cannot be replaced by any other relative pronoun.)

- “She tried to help the student **whose** lunch money had been stolen.” (Only *whose* can be used as a possessive relative pronoun, whether it describes a person or a thing.)

Restrictive vs. non-restrictive relative clauses

Restrictive (defining) relative clauses

Restrictive relative clauses (also known as **defining relative clauses**) are clauses carrying essential information. Without its restrictive relative clause, a main clause will lack a vital description and fail to convey the full or appropriate meaning. Because of the necessity of their information, restrictive relative clauses are not set apart by commas:

- "I've never understood people ***who*** *hate sports*."
- "That book ***that*** *I read when I was young* is being made into a movie."
- "Here is the website ***which*** *my sister created*."
- "Did you hear about the sailor ***whose*** *ship was haunted by a headless ghost*?"
- "I think a man ***whom*** *my father hired* has been stealing from the company."

If you were to remove each example's relative clause, the corresponding main clause would change in meaning and appear to be lacking necessary information out of context. For example:

- "I've never understood people ***who*** *hate sports*."
- "I've never understood people." (The speaker doesn't understand people or their intentions.)

- "That book ***that*** *I read when I was young* is being made into a movie."
- "That book is being made into a movie." (Some unspecified book is being made into a movie.)

- "Here is the website ***which*** *my sister created*."
- "Here is the website." (The speaker is indicating some unidentified website.)

- "Did you hear about the sailor ***whose*** *ship was haunted by a headless ghost*?"
- "Did you hear about the sailor?" (The speaker is asking the listener whether he or she has heard about some unidentified sailor.)

- "I think a man ***whom*** *my father hired* has been stealing from the company."
- "I think a man has been stealing from the company." (Some unspecified man is

thought to have been stealing.)

That vs. *which* in restrictive clauses

As discussed earlier, *that* is preferable to *which* in restrictive relative clauses, though many writers tend to use both, especially in less formal writing. As a general rule, though, *which* is normally reserved for non-restrictive relative clauses, which we will learn about in the following section.

Non-restrictive (non-defining) relative clauses

Unlike restrictive relative clauses, **non-restrictive relative clauses** (or **non-defining relative clauses**) contain non-essential or additional information to the main clause that, when taken away, does **not** affect or dramatically change the overall intent and meaning of the sentence.

Non-restrictive clauses require the use of commas to distinguish the non-essential information from the rest of the sentence.

Which is used to introduce non-restrictive clauses that describe things or non-domestic animals:

- "The large park, ***which** she used to visit when she was young*, had been around for many years and was a popular gathering spot for children."
- "I had to search extensively for the missing cookbook, ***which** took me many hours to find*."
- "The song, ***which** was his favorite*, could be heard from miles away."
- "The cattle, ***which** always wander away from the ranch*, didn't return until nightfall."

Who and *whom* may also be used in non-restrictive clauses that describe people or domestic animals:

- "The woman, ***who** volunteers at a local homeless shelter*, won the lottery."
- "My friend, Tom, ***whom** I haven't seen in years*, is coming to stay with us tomorrow."
- "Our dog, ***who** is missing one of his hind legs*, ran away yesterday."

Whose can be used with both people and things in non-restrictive clauses:

- “Jane, ***whose*** *primary goal is to become a doctor,* sent out her medical school applications last month.”

- “The old bank, ***whose*** *exterior is falling apart,* is remarkably beautiful on the inside.”

It is important to remember that *that*, as a relative pronoun, can **only** be used in **restrictive** relative clauses. On the contrary, *who, whom, whose,* and *which* are all capable of introducing both restrictive *and* non-restrictive relative clauses (although, in restrictive relative clauses, *that* is preferable to *which*).

Omitting relative pronouns

Sometimes, especially in informal writing, relative pronouns can be omitted altogether. This can only be done when the relative pronoun is the object of a restrictive relative clause.

For example, if a relative pronoun is the object of a clause, there are several ways you can phrase the sentence, depending on how formal or informal you want it to sound:

- “The girl *to* ***whom*** *I gave my ice cream* looked up and smiled at me.” (very formal)

- “The girl ***whom*** *I gave my ice cream to* looked up and smiled at me.” (formal)

- “The girl ***who*** *I gave my ice cream to* looked up and smiled at me.” (casual)

- “The girl ***that*** *I gave my ice cream to* looked up and smiled at me.” (very casual)

- “The girl *I gave my ice cream to* looked up and smiled at me.” (most casual)

Unlike *whom,* which can only act as an object of a relative clause, *who* and *that* can function as both objects **and** subjects when describing people; therefore, in relative clauses, it is acceptable to replace the rather formal-sounding *whom* with either *who* or *that*, or omit the relative pronoun entirely.

When describing things instead of people, the relative pronouns *that* and *which* may be omitted as long as they are used, like *whom,* as an object of a restrictive relative clause:

- “The house ***that*** *I want to buy* is going on sale today.”

- “The house ***which*** *I want to buy* is going on sale today.”

- “The house *I want to buy* is going on sale today.”

Similarly, if a relative clause uses an **auxiliary verb** (such as *to be*) + a present or past **participle** after the relative pronoun, it can be worded like this:

• “The girl ***who is** jumping into the lake* is a world-famous diver.”

• “The girl ***that is** jumping into the lake* is a world-famous diver.”

• “The girl *jumping into the lake* is a world-famous diver.”

Relative pronouns as objects of prepositions

In certain cases, relative pronouns can be used as objects of prepositions, meaning the relative pronoun works in conjunction with a **preposition** to modify the subject or verb of the relative clause. Only *whose, which*, and *whom* can function as objects of prepositions.

In more formal English, we place a preposition before the pronoun. Here are some of the combinations you might see:

- with whom
- to whom
- for whom
- through which
- of which
- about which
- from which
- at whose
- in whose
- with whose

In modern English, positioning prepositions in front of relative pronouns often sounds overly formal, in particular when it comes to the relative pronoun *whom*. As a result, it is generally acceptable for a preposition to come after a relative clause instead of before a relative pronoun. For example:

• “The teacher ***with whom** I spoke* had many interesting things to say.” (Very formal)

• “The teacher ***whom/who/that** I spoke **with*** had many interesting things to say.” (Less formal. **Whom** is most often replaced by either **who** or **that**, and the preposition **with** is moved to the end of the relative clause.)

- “The teacher *I spoke* ***with*** had many interesting things to say.” (Most casual. The relative pronoun is omitted, and the preposition is kept at the end of the relative clause.)

It is also acceptable to place a preposition at the end of a relative clause when using the pronoun *which*:

- “The home ***in which*** *I grew up* holds many dear memories for me.” (Very formal. In this case, you cannot replace **which** with **that**, as **that** cannot be used as an object of a preposition in a relative clause.)
- “The home ***that/which*** *I grew up* ***in*** holds many dear memories for me.” (less formal)
- “The home *I grew up* ***in*** holds many dear memories for me.” (most casual)

The pronoun *whose* follows this same pattern of prepositional placement, except that it cannot be substituted with another pronoun and it cannot be omitted:

- “My friend, ***in whose*** *house I’m staying,* invited me to see a movie with him.” (very formal)
- “My friend, ***whose*** *house I’m staying* ***in***, invited me to see a movie with him.” (less formal)

When and Where

When and *where* are also used as relative pronouns, especially in less formal writing and conversation. They are always used in **restrictive** relative clauses.

We use *when* to describe antecedents that have to do with time, as in:

- “That’s the day ***when*** *we met*.”
- “I’m looking forward to a time ***when*** *the world will be at peace*.”

We use *where* to describe antecedents that have to do with location, as in:

- “The café ***where*** *we went on Sunday* was very nice.”
- “The town ***where*** *she lives* is only an hour away.”

Using prepositions for formal English

In more formal English, *where* and *when* are often replaced with a preposition + *which* to mark precise locations or points in time. For example:

- “We preferred a part of the country ***where*** *we could live in peace and quiet*.”
- “We preferred a part of the country ***in which*** *we could live in peace and quiet*

.”

- “Ben is looking forward to the day ***when*** *he can finally join the army*.”
- “Ben is looking forward to the day ***on which*** *he can finally join the army*.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** one of the five most commonly used relative pronouns?

a) whom
b) where
c) whose
d) which

2. Which of the following sentences uses a relative pronoun **incorrectly**?

a) “She tried to fix the mirror whom had broken many years earlier.”
b) “I watched a dog that was chasing its tail.”
c) “He decided to take the mysterious motorcycle, whose owner had seemingly disappeared.”
d) “The bartender took the day off, which gave her some time to relax.”

3. Choose the sentence that contains a **non-restrictive** relative clause.

a) “Mrs. Anderson reread the book she’d loved as a child.”
b) “I can’t help but wonder where they’re going.”
c) “I sit right beneath a light that constantly flickers.”
d) “They moved to Florida, which they hoped would lead to better job prospects.”

4. Which of the following sentences is the **least formal**?

a) “The box I’d returned appeared on my doorstep again.”
b) “The box which I’d returned appeared on my doorstep again.”
c) “The box that I’d returned appeared on my doorstep again.”
d) “The box whom I’d returned appeared on my doorstep again.”

5. Select the relative pronoun that correctly completes the following sentence: “The pizza, ____ was pepperoni, was left in the oven too long.”

a) which

b) that
c) who
d) whom

6. Select the relative pronoun that correctly completes the following sentence: “The male candidate, ____ I hadn’t voted for, won the election anyway.”

a) which
b) whose
c) that
d) who/whom

Reciprocal Pronouns

Definition

Reciprocal pronouns are used to refer to two or more people who are or were the subject of the same verb, with both or all parties mutually receiving or benefiting from that action in the same way. Reciprocal pronouns always function as the objects of verbs, referring back to the two or more people who are or were the subject(s).

The two reciprocal pronouns in English are *each other* and *one another*. In more traditional grammar, *each other* is used to identify **only two** people who are engaged in the mutual action, while *one another* describes **more than two** people. However, this supposed “rule” is less commonly applied in modern English, with *each other* and *one another* often being used interchangeably.

Reciprocal Pronouns vs. Reflexive Pronouns

Because the subjects of the sentence are also the objects of the same verb, it might seem logical to use one of the **reflexive pronouns** to represent them instead, as in:

✖ “We call **ourselves** every day.”

However, this is incorrect. Reflexive pronouns are used with “one-way” actions, so saying “we call ourselves” means each person is calling **him-** or **herself** individually—i.e., person A calls person A every day, person B calls person B every day, and so on.

Because we are describing a reciprocal action of the verb (meaning the action is mutually given and received *between* the parties involved), we must therefore use a reciprocal pronoun. The correct expression would thus be:

- “We call **each other** every day.”

or

- “We call **one another** every day.”

Now the sentence means that person A calls person B every day, and person B calls person A every day.

Using each other vs. one another

As we said already, we can use both *each other* and *one another* to refer to reciprocal action between two individuals or between multiple people in larger groups—it depends entirely on the context. If we have already been talking about Mary and Susan before we say “they love one another,” then it is obvious that the action is limited to those two. Likewise, if we had been talking about the various members of a large family and then say “they love each other,” then it is clear that the action is reciprocal among *all* of the individuals in the group.

Again, while traditional and prescriptive grammarians sometimes insist that *each other* can only be used between two people and *one another* can only be used between more than two people, this guideline is not based on historical or linguistic evidence. The two are interchangeable.

Each other’s and One another’s

When we wish to make reciprocal pronouns possessive, we always treat them as singular and add “-’s” to the end. Because both *each other* and *one another* refer to the individuals within a pair or group, they cannot take the plural possessive form (i.e., *each others’* or *one anothers’*).

However, because we are talking about things belonging to two or more people, the nouns that follow their possessive form are usually pluralized. For example:

- “My neighbor and I spent a lot of time at each other’s houses when we were kids.”
- “The students were sent off in pairs to correct one another’s assignments.”
- “Everyone at the rally was bolstered by each other’s energy.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which reciprocal pronoun is used when talking about **two people**?

a) each other
b) one another
c) themselves
d) A & B
e) B & C

2. What grammatical role do reciprocal pronouns take in a sentence?

a) the subject
b) the object
c) the object complement
d) the subject complement

3. Which of the following do we add to reciprocal pronouns to indicate possession?

a) -’s
b) -s’
c) -’s’
d) -’

4. When do we use a **reciprocal pronoun** instead of a **reflexive pronoun**?

a) When the subject of the sentence receives the action of the same verb
b) When the object of the sentence receives the action of the same verb
c) When the subjects of the sentence receive the action of the same verb individually and separately
d) When the subjects of the sentence receive the action of the same verb mutually and equally

Dummy Pronouns

Definition

Dummy pronouns are words that function grammatically as pronouns, but which do not have antecedents like normal pronouns do. This means that, unlike normal pronouns, dummy pronouns do not replace a noun, phrase, or clause. They refer to nothing in particular, but instead help the sentence to function properly in a grammatical context. Dummy pronouns are also commonly referred to as **expletive pronouns**.

There are two dummy pronouns, *there* and *it*.

There as a dummy pronoun

There is primarily used as a dummy pronoun in circumstances where the sentence is explaining that a person, place, or thing exists. When the word *there* is being used in this manner, it is often referred to as the *existential there*. For example, the following sentences contain the dummy pronoun *there* to explain the existence of people, places, or things:

- "**There** is a ship in the harbor."
- "**There** is a bowl on the table."
- "**There** were flowers in the meadow."
- "**There** is a river that passes through the mountain."
- "**There** are many reasons to go to Jamaica."

Singular vs. Plural use of *there*

The dummy pronoun *there* can be used in either a singular or plural context. When it is used in a singular context, the correlating nouns and verbs have singular endings; when it is used in a plural context, the corresponding nouns and verbs have plural endings.

Singular

- "**There** *is* a *fence* around the yard."

In this case, the existence of only one thing, *a fence*, is being discussed. Therefore, the singular verb *is* and the singular noun *fence* are used. Here is another example of *there* being used in a singular context:

- "**There** *is* a *canoe* on the lake.

Again, the existence of only one canoe is being discussed, so the singular verb *is* and the singular noun *canoe* are used.

Plural

- “**There** *are* two *fences* around the yard.”

This sentence discusses the existence of two fences, and thus the plural form is used. This is demonstrated by the use of the plural verb *are* and the plural noun *fences*. Here is another example:

- “**There** *are* many *canoes* on the lake.”

This sentence discusses the existence of two or more canoes. Because of this fact, the plural verb *are* and the plural noun *canoes* are used.

Difference from adverbial *there*

Although the word *there* can be used as a dummy pronoun, it can also be used as an adverb. Because of this fact, it is important to know the difference between the two.

When *there* is being used as an adverb, it is taking the place of an adverbial phrase, oftentimes an adverbial prepositional phrase. For example, consider the following sentences:

- “They swam *in the water*.”
- “I’m going to hide the cookies up *above the fridge*.”

In this sentence, *in the water* is a prepositional phrase that functions as an adverb. However, this adverbial can be replaced by the word *there*:

- “They swam *there*.”
- “I’m going to hide the cookies up *there*.”

In these cases, the word *there* acts as an adverbial that gives further information about where the action takes place. But, if the word *there* was used differently in a similar sentence, it *could* function as a dummy pronoun. For example:

- “**There** were fish where they swam.”
- “**There** are cookies up above the fridge.”

Both of these sentences use the *existential there* to explain that certain things—namely, the *fish* and the *cookies*—exist. *There* also does not have any antecedents in these sentences, so it is clearly functioning as a dummy pronoun in both.

It as a dummy pronoun

Just like the dummy pronoun *there*, *it* is also used as a pronoun without an antecedent in sentences. *It* is commonly used in situations when weather, distance, or time is being discussed.

Weather

The following are examples of sentences that use *it* as a dummy pronoun related to weather.

- “**It** looks like it may snow tonight.”
- “Is **it** raining?”
- ”**It** was very sunny at the beach last weekend.”
- “**It** always seems to sleet when he drives on the highway.”

Distance

The following examples use **it** as a dummy pronoun in sentences involving distance.

- “**It** is very far from North America to Europe.”
- “Is **it** a long drive to get to the mountain?”
- “**It** is a short walk once you get out of the forest.”
- “**It** is farther than you think to drive to California.”

Time

The following examples use **it** as a dummy pronoun in sentences involving time.

- “**It** is 4:30.
- “**It** was earlier than he expected.”
- “Could you tell me what time **it** is?”
- “She told him to come back when **It** was later in the day.”

Other uses

There are a number of other situations where *it* can be used as a dummy pronoun, without pertaining to weather, distance, or time.

When *it* functions as an empty subject to introduce or “anticipate” something that appears later in the sentence, it is sometimes referred to as ***anticipatory it***:

- “**It** was assumed that the tour guide knew exactly how to get there.”
- “**It** seems that four people showed up instead of the expected two.”

It can also function as an object when it is a dummy pronoun:

- “The teacher seemed a bit out of **it** yesterday.
- “Watch **it**, pal!”

Singular vs. Plural

Notice that in all of the examples above, *it* is only functioning as a singular dummy pronoun. This is because *it* can’t be plural. This means that the verbs and objects in sentences with the dummy pronoun *it* have to be singular as well.

Subject vs. object

A subject is a noun or pronoun that performs the action of the verb. An object is a noun or pronoun that receives the action of the verb,

The dummy pronoun *it* can either function as the subject of a sentence or as the object, although it is more commonly used as the subject. Existential *there*, on the other hand, can only be a subject.

(The word *there* can function as the object of a preposition, as in “We left from there.” However, it is considered a noun in this case, not a pronoun.)

Here are some examples of sentences where dummy pronouns are used as subjects:

- “**There** are many ducks in the pond.”
- “**There** is a tree in the middle of the field.”
- “**It** is 12:30.”
- “**It** is sunny outside today.”

Here are some examples of sentences where dummy pronouns are used as objects:

- “Will he make **it** to the game?”
- “Cool **it** down.”
- “Watch **it**!”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following words is a dummy pronoun?

a) and
b) the
b) it
d) when

2. Which dummy pronoun could be used to complete the following sentence?
"_____ were 12 colors in the painting."

a) It
b) There
c) Both A & B
d) None of the above

3. Dummy pronouns are also referred to as what?

a) Roundabout pronouns
b) Concrete pronouns
c) Ghost pronouns
d) Expletive pronouns

4. The following sentence includes what type of dummy pronoun?
"It was warm outside when they went to the pool."

a) Subject
b) Object
c) Hyphenated
d) None of the above

5. Dummy pronouns are different from regular pronouns because they don't have which of the following?

a) Clauses
b) Periods
c) Antecedents
d) Adverbs

Verbs

Definition

Verbs are used to indicate the actions, processes, conditions, or states of beings of people or things.

Verbs play an integral role to the structure of a sentence. They constitute the root of **the predicate**, which, along with **the subject** (the "doer" of the verb's action), forms a full clause or sentence—we cannot have a sentence without a verb.

When we discuss verbs' role in the predicate, we usually divide them into two fundamental categories: **finite and non-finite verbs**.

Finite and Non-Finite Verbs

The predicate requires at least one **finite verb** to be considered complete. A finite verb has a direct relationship to the subject of a sentence or clause, and does not require another verb in the sentence in order to be grammatically correct. For example:

- "I **swim** every day."
- "She **reads** many books."
- "He **talked** for several hours."

Each of the above is a finite verb, expressing an action that is directly related to the subject of the sentence. **Non-finite verbs**, on the other hand, do not express that relationship directly.

The only verbs that can be considered finite are those in their base form (the infinitive form without the particle *to*), their **past tense** form, or their **third-person singular** form. Verb forms that are never considered finite are **gerunds**, **infinitives**, and **participles** (both past and present).

Let's look at an example containing both a finite and non-finite verb:

- "We **are learning** about the American Revolution in school."

This sentence uses the present continuous verb *are learning*. This functions as a single unit, with *learning* expressing most of the meaning.

However, *learning* is a present participle, which is considered a **non-finite verb**; the finite verb of the sentence is actually just the **auxiliary verb** *are*. It is an inflection of the verb *be* used for a **first person plural** subject (*we*).

We can see the difference if we use each verb in isolation with the subject:

- "*We* **are**"
- "*We* **learning**"

We can see that the first verb is finite because it expresses a direct relationship with the subject, and it can go on to form any number of complete sentences. For example:

✔ "*We* **are** tired."

✔ "*We* **are** almost there."

✔ "*We* **are** a large group."

The second verb, the present participle *learning*, cannot make such sentences, and so is not finite. The following examples all require a finite verb to be correct:

✖ "*We* **learning** math."

✖ "*We* **learning** a lot."

✖ "*We* **learning** in school."

To learn more about the differences between these two classes of verbs, go to the section **Finite and Non-finite Verbs** in this chapter.

Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

Every verb is classed as being either **transitive** or **intransitive**.

Transitive verbs describe an action that is happening to someone or something. This person or thing is known as the **direct object** of the verb. For example:

- "He's **reading** *a book*." (The action of *reading* is happening to *the book*.)
- "The people **watched** *the game* from the bleachers." (The action of *watched* is happening to *the game*.)
- "I was **eating** *a delicious steak* for dinner last night." (The action of *eating* is happening to *a delicious steak*.)

Transitive verbs can also take **indirect objects**, which are the people or things receiving the direct object. For instance:

- "I **sent** my brother *a letter*." (*My brother* receives *the letter* through the action of *sent*.)

Conversely, **intransitive** verbs do **not** have objects—their action is not happening to anyone or anything. For example:

- “I can’t believe our dog **ran away**.” (There is no object receiving the action of *ran away*.)
- “There was a lot of dust in the air, which made me **sneeze**.” (There is no object receiving the action of *sneeze*.)
- “Don’t be too loud while the baby **sleeps**.” (There is no object receiving the action of *sleeps*.)

Regular and Irregular Verbs

Just as every verb is either transitive or intransitive, each one is considered to be either **regular** or **irregular**

Most verbs are **regular verbs**, which means that “-d” or “-ed” can be added to their base form (the infinitive of the verb without *to*) to **conjugate** both the **past simple tense** and **past participle** forms. For example:

Base Form	Past Simple Tense	Past Participle
“I **play** violin.” “I **bake** cakes.” “I **listen** to my teacher.” “I **gather** firewood.” “I **climb** trees.”	“I **played** violin.” “I **baked** cakes.” “I **listened** to my teacher.” “I **gathered** firewood.” “I **climbed** trees.”	“I had **played** violin.” “I had **baked** cakes.” “I had **listened** to my teacher.” “I had **gathered** firewood.” “I had **climbed** trees.”

Irregular verbs, on the other hand, have past tense and past participle forms that do not (or do not seem to) adhere to a distinct or predictable pattern, and they are usually completely different from one another.

Unfortunately, this means that there is generally no way of determining *how* to conjugate irregular verbs—we just have to learn each one individually. There are many irregular verbs, but here are a few common ones:

Base Form	Past Simple Tense	Past Participle
“I **see** the horizon.” “I **grow** bigger every day.” “I **give** to charity.”	“I **saw** the horizon.” “I **grew** bigger every day.” “I **gave** to charity.”	“I had **seen** the horizon.” “I had **grown** bigger every day.” “I had **given** to charity.”

“I **sing** on Tuesday.”	“I **sang** on Tuesday.”	“I had **sung** on Tuesday.”
“I **swim** often.”	“I **swam** often.”	“I had **swum** often.”
“I **drive** to work.”	“I **drove** to work.”	“I had **driven** to work.”

Uniquely, the verb *be* is considered **highly irregular**, having three different present tense forms (*is, am, are*) and two past tense forms (*was, were*), in addition to its base form and its past and present participles (*been, being*).

Forms and categories

All verbs are either finite or non-finite and transitive or intransitive in a given sentence, depending on their form and function. There are many different forms and categories of verbs that we’ll be looking at in this chapter, and we’ll give a brief summary of the different kinds of verbs below. You can continue on to their individual sections to learn more.

Verb forms

Auxiliary Verbs

Auxiliary or “**helping**” **verbs** are verbs that are used to complete the meaning of other primary or “main” verbs in a sentence. In the example we looked at above, *are* is an auxiliary to the main verb, *learning*.

The three **primary auxiliary verbs**—*be, have*, and *do*—are used to create different **tenses**, to form negatives, or to ask questions. For example:

- “I ***am*** **working** on my project.” (**present continuous tense**)
- “She ***does*** **not work** here anymore.” (negative sentence)
- “***Have*** you **seen** my keys?” (question)

There are also **modal auxiliary verbs** (often just called **modal verbs**), which are used to express **modality**—that is, possibility, likelihood, ability, permission, obligation, or future intention. These are *can, could, will, would, shall, should, must, may*, and *might*. They are distinguished by the fact that they are **unable** to conjugate into different forms, and they are only followed by a verb in its base form. For example:

- “I ***will*** **be** there tonight.” (future intention)
- “She ***can*** **write** very well.” (ability)

• “***May*** I **be excused** from the table?” (permission)

• “We ***must*** **finish** this today.” (obligation)

Infinitives

Infinitives are the most basic construction of a verb. When we talk of a verb as a general concept, we usually use the infinitive form, which is the uninflected base form of the verb plus the **particle** *to*. For instance:

- **to run**
- **to walk**
- **to read**
- **to be**
- **to learn**
- **to act**

Infinitives can be used as nouns, adjectives, or adverbs in a sentence, but they do not actually function as verbs—they are used to express an action as a concept, rather than what is being done or performed by the subject of a clause. For example:

• “I love **to run**.” (functions as a noun)

• “I wish I had something **to do**.” (functions as an adjective)

• “I run a lot **to stay healthy**.” (functions as an adverb)

Participles

Participles are forms of verbs that either function with auxiliary verbs to create the **continuous** and **perfect** verb tenses, or as adjectives to modify nouns. Every verb (except the **modal auxiliary verbs**) has two participle forms: a **present participle** and a **past participle**.

The **present participle** is always the base form of the verb + “-ing.” Although the spelling of some verbs changes very slightly to accommodate this suffix, every verb takes “-ing” for the present participle.

We use present participles with the auxiliary *be* to form **continuous tenses**, as in:

• “Can’t you see that I **am** ***reading***?” (**present continuous tense**)

• “I **was** ***watching*** that.” (**past continuous tense**)

- “They **will be *arriving*** soon.” (**future continuous tense**)

The **past participle** is usually the same as a verb’s simple past tense form, which is made by adding “-d” or “-ed” to the end of the verb. However, many verbs are **irregular**, meaning they do not follow this spelling pattern, and they have different past tense and past participle forms. (We’ll look at **regular and irregular verbs** later on.)

The past participle is used with the auxiliary *have* to form the **perfect tenses**:

- “You **have *worked*** long enough.” (**present perfect tense**)
- “We **had *seen*** too much.” (**past perfect tense**)
- “They**’ll have *arrived*** before we get there.” (**future perfect tense**)

We can also use participles as adjectives to add description to nouns. Though they still relate to action, they are **not** functioning as verbs when used this way. For example:

- “The mother looked down at her **smiling** child.”
- “I could tell by the **exhausted** look on his face that he needed sleep.”

Categories of verbs

There are many different categories of verbs that describe different kinds of actions or states of being.

Action (Dynamic) Verbs

Action verbs (also known as **dynamic verbs**) describe an active process that results in an effect. For example:

- “I **ran** to school.”
- “She **read** a book.”
- “They **talked** during lunch.”
- “We **swam** for over an hour.”

Stative Verbs

In contrast to action verbs, **stative verbs** describe states of being of a subject. These include **linking verbs**, such as *be* and verbs of the senses, which are used to describe or rename a subject using a **predicative adjective** or **noun**. For example:

- “I **am** hungry.”
- “You **sound** tired.”
- “He **seems** like a bully.”

Other stative verbs are those that express emotions, possession, cognition, and states or qualities. For example:

- “She **likes** old movies.”
- “They **own** three cars.”
- “I **understand** the issue.”
- “Your happiness **depends** on doing something you enjoy.”

Light Verbs

Light verbs do not carry unique meaning on their own, but instead rely on another word or words that follow them to become meaningful. Common examples include *do, have*, and *take*, as in:

- “***Do*** your **homework**!”
- “Why don’t we ***have*** **something** to eat?”
- “I ***took*** a **shower** before breakfast.”

In many cases, the same light verb will have different meanings, depending on the word or words it is paired with. For instance:

- “Please don’t ***make*** a **mess**.”
- “Please ***make*** your **bed**.”

Phrasal Verbs

Phrasal verbs are verbs that pair with **prepositions** or **particles** to create unique, specific meanings. These are largely idiomatic, which means that they don’t make literal sense according to their individual parts. For example:

- “I can’t believe that you’re **giving up**!”
- “The plane **took off** an hour late.”
- “He has been **looking after** his mother.”
- “Stop **picking on** your brother!”

Conditional Verbs

The term **conditional verbs** refers to verb constructions that are used in **conditional sentences**, which describe a hypothetical outcome that is reliant upon another conditional situation being true. These sentences most often use the conjunction *if* with one of the verbs to express the conditional situation, and often use **modal auxiliary verbs** to describe the hypothetical outcome. For example:

- "The leaves **will fall** if the wind **blows**."
- "If you **had done** your chores, you **could have had** an ice cream cone."
- "You **would get** better grades if you **studied** harder."

Causative Verbs

Causative verbs are used to indicate that a person or thing is causing another action or an event to happen. They are generally followed by a noun or pronouns and an infinitive verb that is **not** causative, which describes the action that was caused to happen. For example:

- "He **let** *his dog run* through the field."
- "The bigger house **enabled** *the family to have* more room for their belongings."
- "The new dress code **forced** *the students to wear* different shoes."
- "The law **requires** *a person to obtain* a permit before hunting on public land."

Factitive Verbs

Factitive verbs are used to indicate a condition or state of a person, place, or thing that results from the action of the verb. For example:

- "She was **appointed** *commissioner* by the mayor."
- "The committee **elected** Mr. Fuller *chairman of the board*."
- "The jury **judged** the defendant *not guilty*."

Reflexive Verbs

Reflexive verbs have subjects that are also their direct objects—that is, the action of the verb is both committed and received by the same person or thing. The **objects** of transitive reflexive verbs are usually **reflexive pronouns**. For

example:

- “I accidentally **burned** *myself* with the hairdryer.”
- “The problem seems to have **worked** *itself* **out** in the end.”
- “*This car* **doesn’t drive** properly anymore.” (intransitive—no direct object)

Conjugation

When we discuss verbs, we usually must touch upon **conjugation**. This is the **inflection** (changing of form) of verbs to create new meaning in specific contexts. We generally refer to **tense** (which we looked at briefly above) when we talk about conjugation, but verbs experience a large amount of inflection depending on how they are being used in a sentence. For more information, go to the chapter on **Conjugation** in the part of this guide called **Inflection (Accidence)**.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What is the function of verbs in a sentence?

a) To identify the person or thing performing or controlling an action
b) To describe an action, state of being, or condition performed or experienced by someone or something
c) To identify the person or thing directly receiving the effect of an action
d) To add descriptive information about another part of the sentence

2. The predicate of a sentence **always** contains what kind of verbs?

a) Regular verbs
b) Transitive verbs
c) Finite verbs
d) Non-finite verbs

3. **Unlike** regular verbs, irregular verbs usually have **different**:

a) Past tense and past participle forms
b) Present tense and present participle forms
c) Past tense and present tense forms
d) Present tense and past participle forms

4. **Unlike** transitive verbs, intransitive verbs are **not** able to take which of the following?

a) Subjects
b) Direct objects
c) Indirect objects
d) Modifiers
e) A & C
f) B & C
g) All of the above

5. Identify the **form** of the verb in **bold** in the following sentence:
“We **were** looking for a place to eat.”

a) Transitive verb
b) Auxiliary verb
c) Infinitive verb
d) Participle

5. What is the term for changing a verb’s form to reflect things like **tense**?

a) Conscription
b) Transformation
c) Conjugation
d) Declension

Finite and Non-finite Verbs

Definition

Finite verbs are verbs that have subjects and indicate grammatical tense, person, and number. These verbs describe the action of a person, place, or thing in the sentence. Unlike other types of verbs, finite verbs do not require another verb in the sentence in order to be grammatically correct.

Here are some examples of finite verbs:

- “They **went** to the mall today.”
- “The outfielder **leaped** for the baseball.”
- “Many people **travel** to the ocean in the summer.”
- “The sailboat **glides** over the water.”

- “The lion **is** the king of the jungle.”

Difference from non-finite verbs

Non-finite verbs are verbs that do not have tenses or subjects that they correspond to. Instead, these verbs are usually infinitives, gerunds, or participles. Gerunds and present participles end in “-ing,” while past participles usually end in “-ed,” “-d,” or “-t.”

Let’s have a look at how infinitives, gerunds, and participles function in a sentence in contrast to finite verbs.

Infinitives

If an **infinitive** is used in its full form (*to* + base form of the verb), it can function as a noun, adjective, or adverb in the sentence. Bare infinitives (base form of the verb without *to*) of non-finite verbs are used in conjunction with **modal auxiliary verbs**, which are considered the finite verb(s) of the sentence. For example:

- “*To run* **is** often tiresome.” (The infinitive *to run* functions as a noun, while *is* functions as the finite verb.)
- “It **takes** a while *to learn to ride a bicycle*.” (The infinitive phrase *to learn to ride a bicycle* functions as an adjective, modifying “a while.”)
- “I **can**’t *swim* yet.” (The bare infinitive *swim* relies on the finite auxiliary verb *can* to be complete.)

Gerunds

Gerunds are “-ing” forms of a verb that function as nouns in a sentence. Because they do not have the grammatical function of a verb, gerunds are always non-finite.

- “*Seeing* the ocean for the first time **is** incredible.”
- “*Reading* books **is** often very enjoyable.”

Participles

Present Participles

Present participles have the same form as gerunds, ending in “-ing.” However, they function in a sentence as either part of a continuous tense, relying on an auxiliary verb to be complete; as an adjunct to a finite verb, indicating a secondary action; or as an **attributive** or **predicative adjective**, modifying a noun.

- “My daughter **is** *watching* me work.” (*Watching* is used with *is* to form the **present continuous tense**.)
- “The car **sat** *rusting* in the driveway for over a year.” (*Rusting* is used in conjunction with the finite verb *sat* to indicate a parallel activity.)
- “I **read** a very *engaging* book last week.” (*Engaging* functions as an attributive adjective of *book*.)
- “This book **is** *engaging*.” (*Engaging* functions as a predicative adjective, following the finite linking verb *is* and modifying *book*.)

Past Participles

Past participles of verbs are used to create non-continuous perfect verb tenses (**past perfect**, **present perfect**, and **future perfect**), or else function as adjectives modifying nouns (again, either attributively or predicatively). They are also used when forming the **passive voice**.

It is important to note that non-finite past participles and finite past tense verbs often both end in “-d” or “-ed.” If the word directly describes the action of a subject, then it is a finite verb. However, if the word is being used as an adjective or requires another verb to be complete, then it is a non-finite verb.

- “I **had** already *walked* for many miles.” (*Walked* is a past participle that depends on the auxiliary verb *have* to create the past perfect tense.)
- “Those clothes **are** *washed*.” (*Washed* is a past participle acting as an predicative adjective to the noun *clothes*, following the finite linking verb *are*.)
- “She **carried** the *washed* clothes upstairs.” (*Carried* is a past tense verb describing the action of the subject, *she*; *washed* is a past participle acting as an attributive adjective to the noun *clothes*.)

Importance to sentence structure

Sentences need a finite verb in order to be complete. Without a finite verb, a sentence would simply be a subject, or a subject and other parts of speech that do not express action and are not linked together properly. In other words, sentences do not function correctly without finite verbs.

To illustrate this point, consider the following examples:

- “The car.”
- “The car on the road.“
- “The car on the road through the mountains.”

In the above examples, *car* is the subject. In order to make complete sentences, a finite verb must be used to describe the action of the *car*, as well as show how the other parts of the sentence relate to it. In the following examples, a finite verb is used to form complete sentences:

- “The car **drove**.”
- “The car **drove** on the road.”
- “The car **drove** on the road through the mountains.”

Simply adding the finite verb *drove* makes all three of these sentences complete. This is because it lets the reader know what the car is doing, and it connects the subject to the other parts of the sentence.

We can also see how a using a non-finite verb instead of a finite one would render the sentence incomplete again. For example:

- “The car *driving* on the road through the mountains.”

Because we used the present participle *driving*, the sentence is now disjointed—the action is not fully expressed by the sentence. We would need to add a finite verb to complete it, as in:

- “The car **was** *driving* on the road through the mountains.”

Identifying finite verbs

Due to the fact that multiple types of verbs can often exist in the same sentence, it is helpful to know some common instances of finite verbs that can help you identify them.

Third person singular present verbs ending in “-s”

Any verb that has an “-s” ending for the third person singular present form is a finite verb. Non-finite verbs do not have tense, and thus never switch their endings to “-s” in the third person singular present form.

(The exceptions to this are **modal auxiliary verbs**: *can, could, will, would, shall, should, may, might,* and *must*. Modal verbs also cannot take an “-s” ending for third person singular present; however, they are always finite. They come directly after the subject and before main verbs, and help to determine aspect, tense, and mood.)

Here are some examples of finite verbs in the third person singular present form with “-s” endings:

- “He **runs** to the store every morning.”
- “The woman **swims** in the ocean.”
- “The boy **kicks** the soccer ball at the goal.”
- “She **has** three cars in her driveway.”

Past tense irregular verbs

Verbs that are functioning in the past tense (not past participles) are inherently finite. As we noted above, the majority of verbs have the same form for both past tense and past participle. These are known as **regular verbs**. To determine if a regular verb is in the past tense or is a past participle (and thus finite or non-finite), we have to examine how it is functioning in the sentence.

However, some verbs are **irregular**, and they have a past tense form that is separate from their past participle form. Here are a few examples of sentences using irregular verbs:

Be

- “She **was** feeling unwell.” (past tense – finite)
- “She has *been* feeling unwell.” (past participle – non-finite)

Go

- “I **went** to the store.” (past tense – finite)
- “I had *gone* to the store.” (past participle – non-finite)

Fly

- “They **flew** to San Diego already.” (past tense – finite)
- “They have *flown* to San Diego already.” (past participle – non-finite)

There are quite a few irregular verbs, and there is no rule to how they are conjugated (which is why they are irregular). To learn more, go to the section about **Regular and Irregular Verbs**.

Verbs that immediately follow subjects

Finite verbs often directly follow the subjects whose actions they are describing. This location allows for a clear connection between the subject and the verb—it makes it easy for the reader or listener to understand that the verb is describing the action of the subject and not another word in the sentence. Here are some examples of finite verbs appearing directly after subjects in sentences:

- “*Everyone* **listened** to the music.”
- “*Elephants* **travel** together in herds to find water.”
- “Across the field, *the trees* **swayed** in the wind.”

Non-finite verbs however, generally do not appear directly after the subject. This is because they are often not directly describing the action of the subject, but are instead serving another grammatical purpose in the sentence.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is a finite verb?

a) to jump
b) swimming
c) is
d) gone

2. Identify the finite verb in the following sentence.
“Running late, the family quickly drove to their relative's house.”

a) Running
b) to their
c) relative
d) drove

3. Finite verbs correspond to a specific subject and ________.

a) a tense
b) an infinitive
c) a past participle

d) a present participle

4. Which of the following verbs in the sentence is **not** a finite verb?
“Jumping into the ocean can be very refreshing after a long day.”

a) can
b) Jumping
c) be
d) A & B
e) B & C

5. In the past tense, finite verbs commonly end in:

a) “-ing”
b) “-s”
b) “-ed”
d) “-er”

Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

Definition

English verbs are split into two major categories depending on how they function in a sentence: **transitive** and **intransitive**. Transitive verbs take one or more objects in a sentence, while intransitive verbs take **no** objects in a sentence.

Distinguishing between the two

Transitive Verbs

Put simply, a transitive verb describes an action that is happening **to** something or someone, which is known as the verb’s **direct object**. For instance, in the sentence “I am reading a book,” *book* is the direct object, which the action *reading* is happening to.

To put it another way, the verb is transitive if a word or words in the sentence answer the question “**Who** or **what** did the action of the verb happen to?”

Examples

- “The people **watched *the game*** from the bleachers.” (*The game* is what the people *watched*.)
- “I was **eating *a delicious steak*** for dinner last night.” (*A delicious steak* is what I *was eating*.)
- “They **met *your brother*** at the airport in Dubai.” (*Your brother* is who they *met*.)

Intransitive Verbs

An intransitive verb, on the other hand, describes an action that does **not** happen to something or someone. For example, in the sentence “I arrived late,” *arrived* is describing an action, but there is nothing and no one for that action to happen **to**—the action is complete on its own. The verb is intransitive if we **cannot** answer the question “**Who** or **what** did the action of the verb happen to?”

Examples

- “I can’t believe our dog **ran away**.” (What did the dog *run away*? Nothing, there is no object receiving the action of *ran away*.)
- “There was a lot of dust in the air, which made me **sneeze**.” (What did I *sneeze*? Nothing, there is no object receiving the action of *sneeze*.)
- “Don’t be too loud while the baby **sleeps**.” (What did the baby *sleep*? Nothing, there is no object receiving the action of *sleeps*.)

Intransitive verbs with prepositional phrases

When intransitive verbs are modified by prepositional phrases, they can often look like they are transitive because the preposition has its own object; however, this is not the case. Take, for example, the following sentences:

- “I can’t believe our dog **ran away** *from home*.”
- “I **sneezed** *from the dust*.”
- “The baby is **sleeping** *in our room*.”

It may seem like *home*, *dust* and *our room* are all objects of the verbs in these sentences, but they’re actually objects of the prepositions, which together form **prepositional phrases** that modify the verbs. The verbs remain intransitive, regardless of the objects in prepositional phrases.

Mnemonic device

One way to remember the difference between the two is to think about their names:

***Trans**itive* verbs ***trans**ition* or ***trans**fer* an action to a person or thing that receives it.

In- means **not** in this case, so ***intrans**itive* verbs do ***not*** ***trans**ition/**trans**fer* an action to a person or thing that receives it.

“Ambitransitive Verbs”

Some action verbs can be both transitive and intransitive, depending on the context of the sentence or what information the speaker wishes to include. These are sometimes known as **ambitransitive** or **ergative verbs**.

For example:

- “She **eats** before going to work.” (Intransitive—no direct object receiving the action of the verb *eats*.)

- “She **eats** ***breakfast*** before going to work.” (Transitive—has a direct object (*breakfast*) receiving the action of the verb *eats*.)

Here are some other examples of verbs that function both transitively and intransitively.

- “I’ve been trying to **read** more.” (intransitive)
- “I’ve been trying to **read** ***more novels***.” (transitive)

- “I’m still **cooking**, so I’m going to be a little late.” (intransitive)
- “I’m still **cooking** ***dinner***, so I’m going to be a little late.” (transitive)

- “I’ve been **exercising** every day this month.” (intransitive)
- “I’ve been **exercising** ***my arms*** every day this month.” (transitive)

Monotransitive, Ditransitive, and “Tritransitive” Verbs

As we’ve seen, a transitive verb is by definition a verb that takes an object. Most verbs are **monotransitive**, meaning they only take one object. However, some verbs, known as **ditransitive verbs**, can take two objects in a sentence, while others, known as **tritransitive verbs**, can take (or seem to take) three objects.

Monotransitive Verbs

A verb that acts upon a single object in a sentence is referred to as **monotransitive** (*mono* meaning *one*). This single object is called its **direct object**. All of the examples we've seen so far have been monotransitive verbs; here's a few more:

- "I **rode** ***my bike*** to get here."
- "Jim just **told** ***a funny joke***."
- "I'm **making** ***lasagna*** for dinner."
- "I heard she's **writing** ***a novel***."

Ditransitive Verbs

There are some verbs in English that take two objects: a **direct object** and an **indirect object**. These are known as **ditransitive verbs**. The direct object relates to the person or thing that directly receives the action of the verb, while the indirect object relates to the person or thing that indirectly receives or benefits from the action as a result.

The indirect object in a ditransitive verb can either come immediately before the direct object in a sentence, or it can form the object of a prepositional phrase using *to* or *for* that follows and modifies the direct object.

For example:

- "He **gave** ***Mary*** **a pen**." (The indirect object, *Mary* immediately follows the direct object, *pen*.)

or

- "He **gave a pen** ***to Mary***." (The indirect object, *Mary*, forms the object of the prepositional phrase *to Mary*, which follows and modifies the direct object, *pen*.)

Here are some other examples:

- "She **teaches** ***the students*** **mathematics**."
- "She **teaches mathematics** ***to the students***."

- "I **sent** ***my brother*** **a letter**."
- "I **sent a letter** ***to my brother***."

- "My father **baked** ***our class*** **a batch of cupcakes**."

- “My father **baked** **a batch of cupcakes** ***for our class***.”

Factitive Verbs

Factitive verbs are or appear to be ditransitive as well. Instead of having a direct object that impacts on an indirect object, factitive verbs describe a status, category, quality, or result that the direct object is becoming due to the action of the verb. This secondary element can be either an object or object complement of the verb. For example:

- “The American people **elected** **her** ***the president of the United States***.”
- “He was **appointed** ***Supreme Court justice***.”
- “The committee **selected** **Mrs. Fuller** ***chairman of the board***.”
- “The group **designated** **Marshall** ***the leader*** from then on.”
- “The coach **made** **Linda** ***point guard***.”
- “We **painted** **the ceiling** ***white***.”

See the section on **factitive verbs** to learn more.

“Tritransitive” verbs

An unofficial third type of transitive verb is what’s sometimes known as a **tritransitive verb**, meaning that it takes three objects. This third “object” is formed from a prepositional phrase or clause that appears to receive the action of the verb by way of the indirect object. For example:

- “We will **make** ***you*** **CEO** *for $300,000*.”
- “I’d **trade** ***you*** **that sandwich** *for an ice cream cone*.”
- “I **bet** ***you*** **50 bucks** *(that) our team will win the championship*.”

There is some dispute among linguists, however, as to whether these kinds of verbs truly have three objects, or whether the third piece of information is merely considered an **adjunct**, as the sentence would be grammatically sound without it.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What do all transitive verbs have that intransitive verbs do **not**?

a) a preposition

b) a subject
c) an object
d) an adverbial clause

2. What kind of verb can be **both** transitive and intransitive?

a) monotransitive
b) ditransitive
c) tritransitive
d) ambitransitive

3. What kind of verb is in the following sentence?
“I played my grandmother a song.”

a) intransitive
b) monotransitive
c) ditransitive
d) tritransitive

4. What kind of verb is in the following sentence?
“I swam for half an hour before my meeting.”

a) intransitive
b) monotransitive
c) ditransitive
d) tritransitive

5. What kind of verb **only** has a direct object?

a) intransitive
b) monotransitive
c) ditransitive
d) tritransitive

Regular and Irregular Verbs Definition

All English verbs are either **regular or irregular**, depending on how they are **conjugated**. The majority are regular verbs, which means that “-d” or “-ed” is added to their base form (the infinitive of the verb without *to*) to create **both** the **past simple tense** and **past participle**.

The past simple tense and past participles of irregular verbs, on the other hand, have many different forms that do not adhere to a distinct or predictable pattern. Much of the time, their past tense and past participle forms are completely different from one another. Unfortunately, this means that there is no way of determining *how* to conjugate irregular verbs—we just have to learn each one individually.

Conjugating Regular and Irregular Verbs

In the following sections, we’ll look at various examples of regular and irregular verbs and how the past simple tense and past participle are formed for each one.

We’ll also look at a few examples of how each of these different forms functions in a sentence.

Regular verbs

As we saw above, regular verbs are defined as having both their past simple tense and past participle forms constructed by adding “-d” or “-ed” to the end of the word. For most regular verbs, this is the only change to the word.

Here are some examples of common regular verbs.

Base Form	Past Simple Tense	Past Participle
play	played	played
bake	baked	baked
listen	listened	listened
approach	approached	approached
gather	gathered	gathered

climb	climbed	climbed
walk	walked	walked
arrive	arrived	arrived
bolt	bolted	bolted

In all of the above examples, the only alteration to the verb has been the addition of “-d” or “-ed.” Notice, too, that the past tense and past participle forms are identical in each case—this is a defining feature of regular verbs.

Changing spelling

In some cases, though, we have to modify the verb slightly further in order to be able to add “-d” or “-ed.”

For instance, with verbs that end in a “short” vowel followed by a consonant, we double the final consonant *in addition* to adding “-ed”;* when a verb ends in a consonant + “y,” we replace the “y” with “i” and add “-ied”; and when a verb ends in “-ic,” we add the letter “k” in addition to “-ed.”

For example:

Base Form	Past Simple Tense	Past Participle
chop	cho**pped**	cho**pped**
copy	cop**ied**	cop**ied**
panic	panic**ked**	panic**ked**

*(*Usage Note: An exception to this rule occurs for words that end in a soft vowel and the consonant “l” (as in travel, cancel, fuel, label, etc.). In this case, we merely add “-ed” to form the past simple and the past participle (as in traveled, canceled, fueled, labeled, etc.)—we do* ***not*** *double the consonant. Note, however, that this exception only occurs in American English; in other varieties of English, such as British or Australian English, the consonant is still doubled.)*

See the chapter on **Suffixes** to learn more about how words change when we add to their endings.

Example sentences

- “I **walk** around the park each evening.” (base form)

- “I **walked** around the park in the afternoon.” (past simple tense)
- “I have **walked** around the park a few times this morning.” (past participle)

- “I’m going to **chop** some vegetables for the salad.” (base form)
- “He **chopped** some vegetables for the salad before dinner.” (past simple tense)
- “He had already **chopped** some vegetables for the salad.” (past participle)

- “Don’t **copy** other students’ answers or you will get an F.” (base form)
- “I think he **copied** my answers.” (past simple tense)
- “The only answers he got right were the ones he had **copied**.” (past participle)

- “Your father’s fine, don’t **panic**!” (base form)
- “I **panicked** when I heard he was in the hospital.” (past simple tense)
- “I wish hadn’t **panicked** like that.” (past participle)

Irregular verbs

Irregular verbs, by their very definition, do not have spelling rules that we can follow to create the past simple tense and past participles. This means that the only way of knowing how to spell these forms is to memorize them for each irregular verb individually. Below are just a few examples of some common irregular verbs.

Base Form	Past Simple Tense	Past Participle
be	was/were	been
see	saw	seen
grow	grew	grown
give	gave	given
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
drive	drove	driven
ride	rode	ridden
run	ran	run
swim	swam	swum
sit	sat	sat

As you can see, irregular verbs can have endings that are dramatically different from their base forms; often, their past simple tense and past participles forms are completely different, too. Again, the only way to learn these variations is to memorize them.

Examples

Let’s look at some sentences that use irregular verbs in their various forms:

- “I **am** excited that college is starting.” (base form)
- “I **was** sad to leave home, though.” (past simple tense)
- “I have **been** making a lot of new friends already.” (past participle)

- “I **drive** to work every morning.” (base form)
- “I **drove** for nearly an hour yesterday.” (past simple tense)
- “I had already **driven** halfway to the office when I realized I forgot my briefcase.” (past participle)

- “I would love to **grow** vegetables in my garden.” (base form)
- “I **grew** some juicy tomatoes last summer.” (past simple tense)
- “He has **grown** a lot of different vegetables already.” (past participle)

- “I **think** I would like to get a dog.” (base form)
- “She **thought** a dog would provide some good company.” (past simple tense)
- “She hadn’t **thought** about how much work they are.” (past participle)

Conjugating present tense and the present participle

Although there are stark differences between regular and irregular verbs when it comes to conjugating their past simple tense and past participles, both kinds of verbs **do** follow the same conventions when creating present participles and present tense in the third person singular (the other two elements of **verb conjugation**).

For example:

Regular Verbs

Regular Verb	Past Simple Tense	Past Participle	Third Person Singular Present Tense	Present Participle
bake	baked	baked	bakes	baking
tap	tapped	tapped	taps	tapping
tidy	tidied	tidied	tidies	tidying

mimic	mimicked	mimicked	mimics	mimicking

Irregular Verbs

Irregular Verb	Past Simple Tense	Past Participle	Third Person Singular Present Tense	Present Participle
ride	rode	ridden	rides	riding
see	saw	seen	sees	seeing
give	gave	given	gives	giving
swim	swam	swum	swims	swimming

The exception to this is the verb *be*, which conjugates the present tense irregularly for first, second, and third person, as well as for singular and plural:

Verb	Past Simple Tense	Past Participle	Present Tense	Present Participle
be	was/were	been	is/am/are	being

For this reason, *be* is known as a **highly irregular** verb. Note, however, that it still forms the present participle following the same conventions as all other verbs.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is a **regular** verb?

a) think
b) find
b) listen
d) ran

2. Which of the following is an **irregular** verb?

a) happen
b) talk
c) walk
d) swim

3. Identify whether the verb in the following sentence is regular or irregular:
"The family hiked over the mountain."

a) regular
b) irregular

4. Identify the **irregular** verb in the following sentence:
"She gave me a bunch of potatoes, which she harvested herself, to cook for dinner later."

a) cook
b) gave
c) picked
d) bunch

5. In which of the following ways do regular and irregular verbs conjugate **differently**?

a) When forming the past simple tense
b) When forming the past participle
c) When forming the present participle
d) A & B
e) B & C
d) None of the above

6. In which of the following ways do regular and irregular verbs conjugate **in the same way**?

a) When forming the past simple tense
b) When forming the past participle
c) When forming the present participle
d) A & B
e) B & C
d) None of the above

Auxiliary Verbs

Definition

Auxiliary verbs (also called **helping verbs**) are verbs that add functional meaning to other "main" or "full" verbs in a clause. They are used to create different **tenses** or **aspects**, to form negatives and interrogatives, or to add emphasis to a sentence. However, they do not have semantic meaning unto themselves.

Types of Auxiliary Verbs

Here is the complete list of auxiliary verbs:

- **be**
- **do**
- **have**
- **can**
- **could**
- **will**
- **would**
- **shall**
- **should**
- **must**
- **may**
- **might**
- **ought to**
- **used to**
- **need**
- **dare**

The **primary auxiliary verbs** are ***be, do***, and ***have***, and they are the most commonly occurring auxiliaries in English. Each can also be used as a main verb in a clause, and each is able to conjugate to reflect plurality, tense, or aspect.

The verbs ***can, could, will, would, shall, should, must, may***, and ***might*** are known as **modal auxiliary verbs**. These are distinguished by the fact that they are **unable** to conjugate into different forms, and they are only followed by a verb in its base form.

The remaining verbs—***ought to, used to, need***, and ***dare***—are known as **semi-modal verbs**, since they do not share all the characteristics of the modal verbs above and only function as auxiliary verbs in certain ways.

Creating verb tenses

One of the most common uses of auxiliary verbs is to create the continuous and perfect continuous verb tenses (as well as the **future simple tense**).

Future Simple Tense

The future tense is structured as *will* + the main verb, ***or*** *is/am/are* + *going to* + the main verb:

- "I ***will*** **arrive** in New York at 10 PM."

or:

- "I ***am*** **going to arrive** in New York at 10 PM."

Present Continuous Tense

The present continuous tense is structured as *am/is/are* + the present participle of the main verb:

- "I ***am*** **working** tomorrow."
- "She ***is*** **living** in New York."
- "They ***are*** **trying** to save some money."

Past Continuous Tense

The past continuous tense is structured as *was/were* + the present participle of the main verb:

- "I ***was*** **cooking** breakfast when she called."
- "We ***were*** **talking** on the phone at the time."

Future Continuous Tense

The future continuous tense is structured as *will be* + the present participle of the main verb, ***or*** *am/is/are* + *going to be* + the present participle of the verb:

- “I ***will be*** **leaving** in the morning.”

or:

- “I ***am*** **going to *be* leaving** in the morning.”

Present Perfect Tense

The present perfect tense is structured as *have/has* + the past participle of the main verb:

- “I ***have*** **lived** here all my life.”
- “She ***has*** **studied** for this exam for weeks.”
- “They ***have*** **tried** to find a solution to the problem.”

Past Perfect Tense

The past perfect tense is structured as *had* + the past participle of the main verb:

- “I ***had*** **already made** my fortune when I was your age.”
- “We ***had*** **seen** that the results were constant.”

Future Perfect Tense

The future perfect tense is usually structured as *will have* + the past participle of the main verb:

- “I ***will have*** **finished** by that time.”
- “She ***will have*** **sung** with a professional orchestra before the tour begins.”

Present Perfect Continuous Tense

The present perfect continuous tense is structured as *have been* + the present participle of the main verb:

- “I ***have been*** **trying** to reach you for over an hour.”

Past Perfect Continuous Tense

The past perfect continuous tense is structured as *had been* + the present participle of the main verb:

- “We ***had been*** **working** through the night.”

Future Perfect Continuous Tense

The future perfect continuous tense is structured as *will have been* + the present participle of the main verb, ***or*** *am/is/are* + *going to* + *have been* + the present participle of the verb:

- “She **will *have been* living** here for most of her life.”
- “I ***am* going to *have been* working** here for 10 years next week.”

Identifying auxiliary verbs

Auxiliary verbs can be identified by two main criteria: whether the verb is capable of **inversion** with the subject, and whether it can take the negating adverb *not* as a **postdependent modifier**.

(An exception to the first two rules is the **linking verb** *be*, which can both invert and take *not*, despite having the function of a main verb.)

Subject-auxiliary inversion

Inversion refers to the reversal of the normal position of the subject and the auxiliary verb of a clause. While it is technically possible for a main verb to invert with its subject, it is much less likely than having an auxiliary verb cause an inversion, due to the fact that **subject-auxiliary inversion** is commonly used to create **interrogative sentences**. Additionally, subject-auxiliary inversion can be used to create **conditional sentences**, as well as for emphasis in negative sentences when negating phrases are used.

Interrogative sentences

When a sentence is in the **present simple tense** or **past simple tense**, we use the auxiliary verb *do* to form it into a question word. *Do* is inverted with the subject, coming before it in the sentence. For example:

- “John works across town.” (declarative sentence)
- “**Does** John work across town?” (interrogative sentence)

If the verb is in a continuous tense (present, past, or future) or the **future simple tense**, then the auxiliary verb used to create the tense is inverted with the subject; if the verb is in a perfect continuous tense (present, past, or future), then the first of the two auxiliary verbs is inverted. For example:

Present continuous tense:

- “John **is** working across town.” (declarative)
- “**Is** John working across town?” (interrogative)

Past continuous tense:

- “John **was** working across town.” (declarative)
- “**Was** John working across town?” (interrogative)

Present perfect continuous tense:

- “John **has been** working across town.” (declarative)
- “**Has** John **been** working across town?” (interrogative)

Past perfect continuous tense:

- “John **had been** working across town.” (declarative)
- “**Had** John **been** working across town?” (interrogative)

Future simple tense:

- “John **will** work across town.” (declarative)
- “**Will** John work across town?” (interrogative)

or:

- “John **is going to** work across town.” (declarative)
- “**Is** John **going to** work across town?” (interrogative)

Future continuous tense:

- “John **will be** working across town.” (declarative)
- “**Will** John **be** working across town?” (interrogative)

or:

- “John **is going to be** working across town.” (declarative)
- “**Is** John **going to be** working across town?” (interrogative)

Future perfect continuous tense:

- “John **will have been** working across town.” (declarative)
- “**Will** John **have been** working across town?” (interrogative)

or:

- “John **is going to have been** working across town.” (declarative)
- “**Is** John **going to have been** working across town?” (interrogative)

Question words and modal verbs

This inversion holds true even when a question word is used, as in:

- “Where **will** John **be** working across town?”
- “Why **had** John **been** working across town?”
- “When **was** John working across town?”

Modal auxiliary verbs can also be used to create questions with specific meanings, as in:

- “**Can** you work a forklift?” (question of ability)
- “**May** I watch television for an hour?” (question of permission)
- “**Must** we sit through another boring play?” (question of obligation)

Inversion of *be*

Finally, as we mentioned earlier, *be* is able to invert when it functions as a **linking verb** (meaning it is a **main verb**) as well as when it functions as an auxiliary. For example:

- “I **am** cold.”
- “**Are** you cold?”

- “They **were** all present.”
- “**Were** they all present?”

Conditional sentences

Conditional sentences are most often formed using the conjunction *if* to create a **condition clause**. For example:

- “**If** I were to move to Florida, I would be warm all year round.”
- “**If** they had trained a little harder, they would have won.”

We can also achieve conditional clauses by using subject-auxiliary inversion, although the sentence sounds a bit more formal as a result:

- “**Were** I to move to Florida, I would be warm all year round.”
- “**Had** they trained a little harder, they would have won.”

Negative phrases

Negative phrases are sometimes used to provide extra emphasis in a negative sentence. Because the main verb remains affirmative, the negative phrase appears ahead of the subject and the main verb, which means that an auxiliary verb must come between it and the subject.

If the negative phrase were to come after the main verb of the sentence (as adverbial phrases often do), the sentence would become unclear because the verb would shift from an affirmative position to a negative one. For example:

✖ "You **are** spending the night there under no circumstances." (No inversion—the sentence is unclear and/or lacks emphasis.)
✔ "Under no circumstances **are** you spending the night there." (Subject-auxiliary inversion—the sentence is now clear with proper emphasis on the negative phrase.)

✖ "They told us what the problem was at no point." (no inversion)
✔ "At no point **did** they tell us what the problem was." (subject-auxiliary inversion)

Forming negative sentences with *not*

The most common way to make a verb negative is to use the adverb *not*. However, main verbs usually do not take *not* on their own—they require an auxiliary verb to accomplish this. For example:

- "I work in a law firm downtown." (affirmative sentence)

✖ "I work **not** in a law firm downtown." (incorrect negative sentence)
✔ "I **do not** work in a law firm downtown." (correct negative sentence)

As with subject-verb inversion, *be* as a main verb is an exception to this rule. For instance:

✔ "He **is** very warm." (affirmative)

✔ "He **is not** very warm." (negative)

Finally, it must be noted that in older, formal, and more literary English, main verbs were able to take *not* without an auxiliary. For example:

- "I know **not** where the problems lie."

- "Betray **not** your kin."

However, this type of negative formation is rarely used in modern speech or writing.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is a **modal** auxiliary verb?

a) be
b) do
c) must
d) have

2. What can the **primary** auxiliary verbs do that modal verbs **cannot**?

a) Take the adverb *not* to become negative
b) Invert with the subject in an interrogative sentence
c) Form a verb tense
d) Conjugate to reflect plurality

3. Which of the following can perform subject-verb inversion as a **main verb** in the same way as auxiliary verbs?

a) be
b) do
c) have
d) will

4. Identify the auxiliary verb in the following sentence:
"I have to tell you that you are being ridiculous."

a) have
b) tell
c) are
d) being

5. Select the auxiliary verb that will put the following sentence in the **future perfect continuous tense**:
"James will ____ been studying for three years come this September."

a) be
b) do
c) have
d) will

Primary Auxiliary Verbs

Definition

The “**primary**” **auxiliary verbs** are *be, have*, and *do*—they occur most commonly in English. They are also some of the trickiest to master, because each can also be used as a main verb in a clause, and each is able to conjugate to reflect plurality and tense as a result.

Be and *have* are used as auxiliaries to conjugate the continuous, perfect, and perfect continuous tenses. *Do* is used to make main verbs negative or to form **interrogative sentences**; it can also be used to add emphasis to a sentence.

We will begin by examining these different conjugations, and then we’ll look more closely at how these verbs function as auxiliaries.

Conjugating *be*, *have*, and *do*

Because *be*, *have*, and *do* are able to function as main verbs, they must also be able to inflect for plurality and tense; it is important to know these conjugations, as they must be used correctly when the verbs function as auxiliaries.

Do conjugates as *did* (past tense), *does* (third-person singular present tense), *done* (past participle), and *doing* (present participle); ***have*** conjugates as *had* (past tense/participle), *has* (third-person singular present tense), and *having* (present participle).

Be, meanwhile, has seven conjugations: *am* (first-person singular present tense); *are* (first-person plural present tense, second-person singular/plural present tense, third-person plural present tense); *is* (third-person singular present tense); *was* (first-person singular past tense, third-person singular past tense); *were* (first-person plural past tense, second-person singular/plural past tense, third-person plural past tense); *been* (past participle); and *being* (present participle).

The following tables will help illustrate these different conjugations. Note that only conjugations used in an **auxiliary** capacity have been included:

Be **Conjugations**	**Form**	**Auxiliary example sentence**
be	base form	"You must **be** joking."

am	first-person singular present tense	"I **am** moving to Germany next month."
are	first-person plural present tense second-person singular/plural present tense third-person plural present tense	"We **are** leaving tomorrow morning." "**Are** you working later?" "Where **are** they going?"
is	third-person singular present tense	"She **is** wondering where we're going."
was	first-person singular past tense third-person singular past tense	"I **was** talking to my brother yesterday." "It **was** raining quite hard last night."
were	first-person plural past tense second-person singular/plural past tense third-person plural past tense	"We **were** looking for a new place to live." "You **were** thinking of running away?" "When **were** they planning on electing a new president?"
been	past participle	"Everyone has **been** worrying about their jobs."

***Have* Conjugations**	**Form**	**Auxiliary Example sentence**
have	base form	"I **have** been to this part of town before."
	third-person	

has	singular present tense	"It **has** been raining for over an hour now."
had	past tense	"They **had** been confident in the project's success."
having	present participle	"**Having** worked his whole life, Larry relished the thought of retirement."

Do **Conjugations**	**Form**	**Auxiliary Example sentence**
do	base form	"**Do** be careful."
does	third-person singular present tense	"**Does** he know what he's talking about?"
did	past tense	"We **did**n't know any better."

Auxiliary Functions

Forming Tenses

The verbs *be* and *have* are used as auxiliary verbs to form different tenses of main verbs. *Be* is used on its own to form the **continuous tenses**, while *have* is used to form the **perfect tenses**. Both *have* and *been* (the past participle of *be*) are used together to form the perfect continuous tenses.

As we saw above, *be* and *have* both have multiple conjugations, all of which must be used correctly when they function as auxiliaries.

Present Continuous Tense (Progressive)

The present continuous tense is structured as *am/is/are* + the present participle of the main verb:

- “I ***am*** **working** tomorrow.”

- “She ***is*** **living** in New York.”
- “They ***are*** **trying** to save some money.”

Past Continuous Tense

The past continuous tense is structured as *was/were* + the present participle of the main verb:

- “I ***was*** **cooking** breakfast when she called.”
- “We ***were*** **talking** on the phone at the time.”

Future Continuous Tense

The future continuous tense is structured as *will be* + the present participle of the main verb OR *am/is/are* + *going to be* + the present participle of the verb:

- “I **will *be* leaving** in the morning.”
- “I ***am*** **going to *be* meeting** with my professor later.”
- “He ***is*** **going to *be* studying** abroad next year.”

Present Perfect Tense

The present continuous tense is structured as *have/has* + the past participle of main verb:

- “I ***have*** **lived** here all my life.”
- “She ***has*** **studied** for this exam for weeks.”
- “They ***have*** **tried** to find a solution to the problem.”

Past Perfect Tense

The past continuous tense is structured as *had* + the past participle of the main verb:

- “I ***had*** **already made** my fortune when I was your age.”
- “We ***had*** **seen** that the results were constant.”

Future Perfect Tense

The future continuous tense is usually structured as *will have* + the past participle of the main verb:

- “I **will *have* finished** by that time.”
- “She **will *have* sung** with a professional orchestra before the tour begins.”

(Notice that *have* does not conjugate for the third-person singular in this tense.)

Present Perfect Continuous Tense

The present perfect continuous tense is structured as *have been* + the present participle of the main verb:

- “I ***have been* trying** to reach you for over an hour.”

Past Perfect Continuous Tense

The past perfect continuous tense is structured as *had been* + the present participle of the main verb:

- “We **had *been* working** through the night.”

Future Perfect Continuous Tense

The future perfect continuous tense is structured as *will have been* + the present participle of the main verb:

- “I **will *have been* working** here for 10 years next week.”

(Notice that *have* does not conjugate for the third-person singular in this tense.)

You may have noticed that the future tenses also use the auxiliary verb *will*. This is one of the **modal auxiliary verbs**, which will be covered in a separate section.

Forming negative sentences with *not*

The most common way to make a verb negative is to use the adverb *not*. However, main verbs cannot take *not* on their own—they require an auxiliary verb to do this.

Using *do*

If a verb does not already use an auxiliary verb (i.e., to form one of the tenses above), we use the auxiliary verb *do/does* to accomplish this.

For example:

- “I work on the weekends.” (affirmative sentence)

✖ “I work **not** on the weekends.” (incorrect negative sentence)
✔ “I ***do*** **not** work on the weekends.” (correct negative sentence)

- “She lives in the city.” (affirmative)

✖ “She lives **not** in the city.” (incorrect negative sentence)
✔ “She **does not** live in the city.” (correct negative sentence)

Notice that because the auxiliary verb *do* conjugates to reflect the third-person singular, the main verb of the sentence reverts back to its base form.

Likewise, if a sentence is in the **past simple tense**, *do* conjugates to *did*, and the main verb remains in the present-tense base form. For instance:

- “He studied in Europe.” (affirmative simple past tense)

✖ “He studied **not** in Europe.” (incorrect negative past tense)
✔ “He **did not** study in Europe.” (correct negative past tense)

Using *not* with other tenses

If a verb is already using one or more auxiliary verbs to create a perfect, continuous, or perfect continuous tense, then it is the auxiliary closest to the subject that takes the word *not*. For example:

- “I **am working** later.” (affirmative present continuous tense)
- “I ***am not*** **working** later.” (negative present continuous tense)

- “She **had been living** there for a month.” (affirmative past perfect continuous tense)
- “She ***hadn’t*** **been living** there for a month.” (negative past perfect continuous tense)

- “They **will have been writing** their dissertations for almost a year.” (affirmative future perfect continuous tense)
- “They ***will not*** **have been writing** their dissertations for almost a year.” (negative future perfect continuous tense)

Errors with *have not*

A frequent error is to make the verb *have* negative in the present simple tense. We need to always remember that the present simple negative is *do not* (contracted as *don’t*) or, in third person singular, *does not* (contracted as *doesn’t*). For example:

✖ “I haven’t a dog.” (incorrect)
✔ “I don’t have a dog.” (correct)

✖ “She hasn’t a cat.” (incorrect)
✔ “She **doesn’t** have a cat.” (correct)

If we say “I haven’t a dog,” we are using *have* as an auxiliary rather than as a main verb meaning “to possess”—in doing so, the main verb is now missing.

And just as in the present simple negative, we need an auxiliary verb when using the past simple negative:

✖ “I hadn’t a car.” (incorrect)
✔ “I didn’t have a car.” (correct)

Have and have got

Have, when used as a main verb meaning “to possess,” means the same thing as the less formal *have got*. They can usually be used interchangeably, though not in every case.

In *have got*, *have* is acting as an auxiliary verb for *got*. Because of this, *have* is now able to take *not* in the negative present simple tense, usually contracted as *haven’t* (or *hasn’t* in the third-person singular):

- “He **has got** an idea about what happened.” (affirmative present simple tense)
- “He **hasn’t got** an idea about what happened.” (negative present simple tense)

- “They**’ve got** a plan to increase sales.” (affirmative present simple tense)
- “They **haven’t got** a plan to increase sales.” (negative present simple tense)

Forming interrogative sentences with subject-verb inversion

Inversion refers to the reversal of the normal position of the subject and the auxiliary verb of a clause. We cannot use subject-verb inversion with main verbs to create interrogative sentences—we have to either add the auxiliary verb *do*, or else invert an existing auxiliary verb.

Inversion with auxiliary *do*

When a sentence is in the **present simple tense** or **past simple tense**, we use the auxiliary verb *do* to form it into a question word. This is *inverted* with the subject, coming before it in the sentence. For example:

- “John works across town.” (present simple tense declarative sentence)

- “**Does** John work across town?” (present simple tense interrogative sentence)
- “They lived in an apartment.” (past simple tense declarative sentence)
- “**Did** they live in an apartment?” (past simple tense interrogative sentence)

Inversion with other auxiliary verbs

As we saw already, *be* and *have* are used to create the continuous, perfect, and perfect continuous verb tenses. In these cases, the auxiliary verb used to create the tense is inverted with the subject to create a question; if the verb is in a perfect continuous tense (and thus has two auxiliaries), then the first of the two auxiliary verbs is inverted. For example:

Present continuous tense:

- “John **is** working across town.” (declarative)
- “**Is** John working across town?” (interrogative)

Past continuous tense:

- “John **was** working across town.” (declarative)
- “**Was** John working across town?” (interrogative)

Present perfect tense:

- “John **has** worked across town for a long time.” (declarative)
- “**Has** John worked across town for a long time?” (interrogative)

Past perfect tense:

- “John **had** worked across town for a long time.” (declarative)
- “**Had** John worked across town for a long time?” (interrogative)

Present perfect continuous tense:

- “John **has been** working across town for a long time.” (declarative)
- “**Has** John **been** working across town for a long time?” (interrogative)

Past perfect continuous tense:

- “John **had been** working across town for a long time.” (declarative)
- “**Had** John **been** working across town for a long time?” (interrogative)

Errors with *have*

As we saw when forming the negative with *not*, we often run into errors when *have* is functioning as a **main verb** and the sentence is made into a question.

Just like any other main verb (with the exception of *be*), *have* **cannot** invert with the subject to form a question—it must take the auxiliary verb *do* to accomplish this, like we saw above. For example:

- “You had a car when you lived in London.” (declarative)

✖ “Had you a car when you lived in London?” (incorrect interrogative)

✔ “Did you have a car when you lived in London?” (correct interrogative)

Question words

The rules of inversion that we’ve seen above hold true even when a question word is used. For example:

- “Where **is** John working?”
- “Why **has** John **been** working across town?”
- “When **did** John work across town?”

Inversion of *be*

It is important to remember that we do not use *do, does* or *did* when *be* is a main verb. As we mentioned earlier, *be* is able to invert when it is functioning as a **linking verb** (meaning it is a **main verb**) as well as an auxiliary. For example:

- “I **am** cold.” (declarative)
✖ “Do you be cold?” (incorrect interrogative)
✔ “**Are** you cold?” (correct interrogative)

- “They **were** all present.” (declarative)
✖ “Did they be all present?” (incorrect interrogative)
✔ “**Were** they all present?” (correct interrogative)

The inversion of *be* also holds true when there is a question word, as in:

- “Why **are** you cold?”
- “When **were** they all present?”
- “Who **is** attending the party?”

Emphatic *do*

In addition to making interrogative sentences, *do* is also used as an auxiliary to create **emphatic** sentences. This is sometimes referred to as the **emphatic mood**, one of the grammatical **moods** in English. Its purpose in this case is not to add any new meaning to the sentence, but rather to emphasize the fact that something happened or someone did something.

Emphatic *do* comes before the main verb in a sentence. As is the case when *do* is used to create interrogative sentences, it takes the conjugation for tense or plurality, leaving the main verb in the base form. For example:

- “I washed the dishes.” (no emphasis)
- “I **did** wash the dishes.” (emphasizes the fact that the speaker washed the dishes)

- “He looks like an honest man.” (no emphasis)
- “He **does** look like an honest man.” (emphasizes the way the man looks)

As with interrogative sentences, however, we cannot use *do* when *be* is the main verb of the sentence:

- “I am cold.” (no emphasis)

✖ “I **do** be cold.” (incorrect emphasis)

In imperative sentences

We can also use emphatic *do* in **imperative sentences** to add emphasis to a command, instruction, or request, though this usually adds a more formal or old-fashioned tone to the sentence. Unlike in declarative sentences, we can use emphatic *do* when *be* is a main verb of an imperative sentence. For example:

- “**Do** be careful!”
- “**Do** try to be quiet.”
- “Please **do** avoid walking on the grass.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** one of the “primary” auxiliary verbs?

a) be
b) will
c) do
d) have

2. Which of the following is the correct conjugation of the verb *be* in the **third-person present singular** ?

a) am

b) are
c) is
d) was

3. Which auxiliary verb is added to a make a verb **negative** in the present or past simple tense?

a) be
b) will
c) do
d) have

4. Identify the auxiliary verb used in the following sentence:
“Have you been working on this project for long?”

a) have
b) been
c) working
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) None of the above

5. Which of the following is a function of *do* as an auxiliary verb?

a) To form negatives with verbs in the present or past simple tense
b) To form the continuous, perfect, or perfect continuous tenses
c) To express the subject’s ability to perform the function of the main verb
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) None of the above

Modal Auxiliary Verbs

Definition

A **modal auxiliary verb**, often simply called a **modal verb** or even just a **modal**, is used to change the meaning of other verbs (commonly known as **main verbs**) by expressing **modality**—that is, asserting (or denying) possibility, likelihood, ability, permission, obligation, or future intention.

Modal verbs are defined by their inability to conjugate for tense and the third person singular (i.e., they do not take an “-s” at the end when *he*, *she*, or *it* is the subject), and they cannot form infinitives, past participles, or present participles. All modal auxiliary verbs are followed by a main verb in its base form (the infinitive without *to*); they can never be followed by other modal verbs, lone auxiliary verbs, or nouns.

As with the **primary auxiliary verbs**, modal verbs can be used with *not* to create negative sentences, and they can all invert with the subject to create **interrogative sentences**.

The Modal Verbs

There are nine “true” modal auxiliary verbs: *will*, *shall*, *would*, *should*, *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, and *must*. The verbs *dare*, *need*, *used to*, and *ought to* can also be used in the same way as modal verbs, but they do not share all the same characteristics; for this reason, they are referred to as **semi-modal auxiliary verbs**, which are discussed in a separate section.

Will

As a modal auxiliary verb, *will* is particularly versatile, having several different functions and meanings. It is used to form future tenses, to express willingness or ability, to make requests or offers, to complete conditional sentences, to express likelihood in the immediate present, or to issue commands.

Shall

The modal auxiliary verb *shall* is used in many of the same ways as ***will***: to form future tenses, to make requests or offers, to complete conditional sentences, or to issue maxims or commands. Although *will* is generally preferred in modern English, using *shall* adds an additional degree of politeness or formality to the sentence that *will* sometimes lacks.

Generally, *shall* is only used when *I* or *we* is the subject, though this is not a strict rule (and does not apply at all when issuing commands, as we’ll see).

Would

The modal auxiliary verb *would* has a variety of functions and uses. It is used in place of ***will*** for things that happened or began in the past, and, like ***shall***, it is sometimes used in place of *will* to create more formal or polite sentences. It is also used to express requests and preferences, to describe hypothetical situations, and to politely offer or ask for advice or an opinion.

Should

The modal verb *should* is used to politely express obligations or duties; to ask for or issue advice, suggestions, and recommendations; to describe an expectation; to create **conditional sentences**; and to express surprise. There are also a number of uses that occur in British English, but that are not common in American English.

Can

As a modal auxiliary verb, *can* is most often used to express a person or thing's ability to do something. It is also used to express or ask for permission to do something, to describe the possibility that something can happen, and to issue requests and offers.

Could

The modal verb *could* is most often used as a past-tense version of ***can***, indicating what someone or something was able to do in the past; it can also be used instead of *can* as a more polite way of making a request or asking for permission. *Could* is also used to express a slight or uncertain possibility, as well as for making a suggestion or offer.

May

The modal verb *may* is used to request, grant, or describe permission; to politely offer to do something for someone; to express the possibility of something happening or occurring; or to express a wish or desire that something will be the case in the future. We can also use *may* as a rhetorical device to express or introduce an opinion or sentiment about something.

Might

The modal verb *might* is most often used to express an unlikely or uncertain possibility. *Might* also acts as a very formal and polite way to ask for permission, and it is used as the past-tense form of ***may*** when asking permission in **reported speech**. It can also be used to suggest an action, or to introduce two differing possibilities.

Must

The modal verb *must* is most often used to express **necessity**—i.e., that something *has to* happen or be the case. We also use this sense of the word to indicate a strong intention to do something in the future, to emphasize something positive that you believe someone should do, and to rhetorically introduce or emphasize an opinion or sentiment. In addition to indicating necessity, *must* can be used to indicate that something is certain or very likely to happen or be true.

Using Modal Verbs

Modal auxiliary verbs are used to uniquely shift the meaning of the main verb they modify, expressing things such as possibility, likelihood, ability, permission, obligation, or intention. As we will see, how and when we use modal verbs greatly affects the meaning of our writing and speech.

Subtleties in meaning

Modal verbs attach differing shades of meaning to the main verbs they modify. It is often the case that this difference in meaning is or seems to be very slight. To get a better sense of these differences in meaning, let's look at two sets of examples that use each of the modal verbs we discussed above in the same sentence, accompanied by a brief explanation of the unique meaning each one creates.

- "I ***will*** **go** to college in the fall." (It is decided that I **am going to** attend college in the fall.)
- "I ***shall*** **go** to college in the fall." (A more **formal** way of saying "I will go to college in the fall," possibly emphasizing one's determination to do so.)
- "I ***would*** **go** to college in the fall." (I **was planning** to attend college in the fall (but something not stated is preventing or dissuading me from doing so).)
- "I ***should*** **go** to college in the fall." (It is **correct, proper, or right** that I attend college in the all.)
- "I ***can*** **go** to college in the fall." (I am **able** to attend college in the fall.)

- “I ***could*** **go** to college in the fall.” (I **have the ability** to attend college in the fall, but it is not decided.)
- “I ***may*** **go** to college in the fall.” (I **will possibly** attend college in the fall, but it is not decided.)
- “I ***might*** **go** to college in the fall.” (I **will possibly** attend college in the fall, but it is not decided.)
- “I ***must*** **go** to college in the fall.” (I **have to** attend college in the fall, but it is not decided.)
- “***Will*** we **spend** the summer in Florida?” (Is it the future plan that we **are going to** spend the summer in Florida?)
- “***Shall*** we **spend** the summer in Florida?” (A more **formal** way of asking “Will we spend the summer in Florida?”)
- “***Would*** we **spend** the summer in Florida?” (Has the plan been made that we spend the summer in Florida?)
- “***Should*** we **spend** the summer in Florida?” (Is it **correct or preferable** that we spend the summer in Florida?)
- “***Can*** we **spend** the summer in Florida?” (Can we have **permission** to spend the summer in Florida? ***Or:*** Are we **able** to spend the summer in Florida?)
- “***Could*** we **spend** the summer in Florida?” (Slightly more polite way of asking for **permission** to spend the summer in Florida.)
- “***May*** we **spend** the summer in Florida?” (**More formal or polite** way of asking for **permission** to spend the summer in Florida.)
- “***Might*** we **spend** the summer in Florida?” (**Overly formal** way of asking for **permission** to spend the summer in Florida.)
- “***Must*** we **spend** the summer in Florida?” (**Very formal** way of asking if it is **necessary or required** that we spend the summer in Florida.)

Substituting Modal Verbs

As we can see from the above sets of examples, the different modal verbs often have very similar meanings, and it’s sometimes unclear when it is appropriate to use one instead of another. To explore the subtle differences in meaning that occur when we substitute certain modal verbs, go to the section on **Substituting Modal Verbs**.

Omitting main verbs

A modal verb must always be used with a main verb—they cannot stand completely on their own.

However, it is possible to use a modal verb on its own by omitting the main verb, so long as it is implied by the context in or around the sentence in which the modal is used. This can occur when a sentence is in response to another one, or when the clause with the modal verb occurs later in a sentence in which the main verb was already stated. For example:

- Speaker A: "I'm thinking about taking up scuba diving."
- Speaker B: "I think you ***should***!" (The verb *taking up* is omitted in the second sentence because it is implied by the first.)

- "I'd like to switch my major to mathematics, but I'm not sure I ***can***." (The verb *switch* is omitted in the final clause because it appears earlier in the same sentence.)

Using adverbs

Generally speaking, we use adverbs after a modal verb and either before or after the main verb in a clause. Sometimes putting an adverb before a modal is not **incorrect**, but it will sound better if placed after it. For example:

✖ "You only ***must*** **read** this chapter." (incorrect)
✔ "You ***must*** **only** **read** this chapter." (correct)

✔ "You easily ***could*** **win** the race." (correct but not preferable)
✔ "You ***could*** **easily** **win** the race." (correct)
✔ "You ***could*** **win** the race easily." (correct)

However, this is not a strict rule, and certain adverbs are able to go before the modal verb without an issue. For example:

✔ "You really ***should*** **see** the new movie." (correct)
✔ "You ***should*** **really** **see** the new movie." (correct)

✔ "I definitely ***will*** **try** to make it to the party." (correct)
✔ "I ***will*** **definitely** **try** to make it to the party." (correct)

When a modal verb is made **negative**, though, it is sometimes the case that an adverb must go before the modal verb. For example:

✖ "I ***can't*** **definitely** **go** out tonight." (incorrect)

✔ “I **definitely** ***can’t*** **go** out tonight.” (correct)

✖ “He ***must not*** **absolutely** **travel** alone.” (incorrect)
✔ “He absolutely ***must not*** **travel** alone.” (correct)

Unfortunately, there is no rule that will explain exactly when one can or cannot use an adverb before a modal verb—we just have to learn the correct usage by seeing how they are used in day-to-day speech and writing.

Common errors

Mixing modal verbs

Remember, a modal verb is only used before a main verb, or sometimes before *be* or *have* when they are used to create a verb **tense**. We do **not** use a modal verb before **auxiliary *do***, or in front of other modal verbs. For example:

✔ “We ***might*** **move** to Spain.” (correct—indicates future possibility)
✔ “We ***might*** **be** **moving** to Spain.” (correct—indicates future possibility using the **present continuous tense**)

✖ “Do you ***can*** **go**?” (incorrect)
✔ “***Can*** you **go**?” (correct)

✖ “I ***must will*** **finish** this before lunch.” (incorrect)
✔ “I ***must*** **finish** this before lunch.” (correct—indicates that it is necessary)
✔ “I ***will*** **finish** this before lunch.” (correct—indicates a future action)

Conjugating the third-person singular

When main verbs function on their own, we conjugate them to reflect the third-person singular (usually accomplished by adding “-s” to the end of the verb).

However, we do **not** conjugate modal verbs in this way, **nor** do we conjugate a main verb when it is being used with a modal.

For example:

✔ “He **swims** well.” (**present simple tense**)
✖ “He ***cans*** **swim** well.” (incorrect)
✖ “He ***can*** **swims** well.” (incorrect)
✔ “He ***can*** **swim** well.” (correct—indicates ability)

Conjugating past tense

Similarly, we cannot use modal verbs with main verbs that are in a past-tense form; the verb that follows a modal must always be in its **base form** (the **infinitive** without the word *to*). Instead, we either use certain modal verbs that have past-tense meanings of their own, or **auxiliary *have*** to create a construction that has a specific past-tense meaning. For example:

✔ "I **guessed** what her response would be." (**past simple tense**)
✖ "I ***can*** **guessed** what her response would be." (incorrect)
✖ "I ***could*** **guessed** what her response would be." (incorrect)
✔ "I ***could*** **guess** what her response would be." (correct—indicates past ability)
✔ "I ***could*** have **guessed** what her response would be." (correct—indicates potential past ability)

✔ "I **tried** harder." (**past simple tense**)
✖ "I ***should*** **tried** harder." (incorrect)
✔ "I ***should*** **try** harder." (correct, but indicates a correct or proper future action)
✔ "I ***should*** **have** **tried** harder." (correct—indicates a correct or proper past action)

Following modal verbs with infinitives

As we saw above, all modal auxiliary verbs must be followed by the **base form** of a the main verb. Just as we cannot use a modal verb with a main verb in its past-tense form, we also cannot use a modal verb with an **infinitive**.

✖ "She ***could*** **to** **speak** five languages." (incorrect)
✔ "She ***could*** **speak** five languages." (correct—indicates past ability)

✖ "I ***must*** **to** **see** the boss." (incorrect)
✔ "I ***must*** **see** the boss." (correct—indicates necessity)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is a **not** a function of a modal auxiliary verb?

a) To indicate frequency
b) To indicate possibility or likelihood

c) To indicate ability
d) To indicate future intention

2. Which of the following modal verbs indicates **necessity**?
a) may
b) can
c) would
d) must

3. Which of the following modal verbs is used to request **permission**?
a) may
b) should
c) would
d) must

4. Which of the following is something that a modal verb **cannot** do?
a) Indicate a future action
b) Express a possible action or outcome
c) Conjugate for the third-person singular
d) Become negative with the word *not*

5. When can a modal verb stand **on its own**?
a) When an adverb is used before the modal verb
b) When the main verb is implied elsewhere
c) When it is used in an interrogative sentence
d) Anytime
e) Never

6. Which of the following is **not** one of the "true" modal verbs?
a) must
b) need
c) will
d) should

Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Will

Definition

As a modal auxiliary verb, *will* is particularly versatile, having several different functions and meanings. It is used to form future tenses, to express willingness or ability, to make requests or offers, to complete conditional sentences, to express likelihood in the immediate present, or to issue commands.

Creating the future tense

One of *will*'s most common uses as a modal verb is to talk about things that are certain, very likely, or planned to happen in the future. In this way, it is used to create an approximation of the **future simple tense** and the **future continuous tense**. For example:

- "I ***will*** **turn** 40 tomorrow." (**future simple tense**)
- "She ***will*** **be singing** at the concert as well." (**future continuous tense**)

Will can also used to make the **future perfect tense** and the **future perfect continuous tense**. These tenses both describe a scenario that began in the past and will either finish in or continue into the future. For example:

- "It's hard to believe that by next month we ***will*** **have been married** for 10 years." (**future perfect tense**)
- "By the time I get there, she***'ll*** **have been waiting** for over an hour." (**future perfect continuous tense**)

If we want to make any of the future tenses negative, we use *not* between *will* and the main verb or the next occurring auxiliary verb. We often contract *will* and *not* into *won't*. For example:

- "I ***won't*** **be seeing** the movie with you tonight."
- "At this pace, she ***won't*** **finish** in first place."

If we want to make a question (an **interrogative sentence**), we invert *will* with the subject, as in:

- "What ***will*** they **do** with the money?"
- "***Won't*** you **be coming** with us?"

Ability and willingness

We also sometimes use *will* to express or inquire about a person or thing's ability or willingness to do something. It is very similar to the future tense, but is used for more immediate actions. For example:

- "You wash the dishes; I***'ll*** **take** out the trash."
- "This darn washing machine ***won't*** **turn** on."
- "***Won't*** Mary **come** out of her room?"

Requests and offers

We often create interrogative sentences using *will* to make requests or polite offers. They are usually addressed to someone in the second person, as in:

- "***Will*** you walk the dog, Jim?"
- "***Will*** you have a cup of tea, Sam?"

However, we can use subjects in the first and third person as well. For instance:

- "***Will*** Jonathan bring his truck around here tomorrow?"
- "***Will*** your friend join us for some lunch?"

Conditional sentences

In present-tense conditional sentences formed using *if*, we often use *will* to express an expected hypothetical outcome. This is known as the **first conditional**. For example:

- "**If** I see him, I ***will*** **tell** him the news."
- "I ***won't*** **have to say** goodbye **if** I don't go to the airport."

Likelihood and certainty

In addition to expressing actions or intentions of the future, we can also use *will* to express the likelihood or certainty that something is the case in the immediate present. For instance:

- (in response to the phone ringing) "That ***will*** **be** Jane—I'm expecting her call."
- Speaker A: "Who is that with Jeff?"
- Speaker B: "That***'ll*** **be** his new husband. They were just married in May."

Commands

Finally, we can use *will* to issue commands, orders, or maxims. These have an added forcefulness in comparison to **imperative sentences**, as they express a certainty that the command will be obeyed. For example:

- “You ***will*** **finish** your homework this instant!”
- “This house ***will not*** **be used** as a hotel for your friends, do you understand me?”

Substituting Modal Verbs

In many cases, modal auxiliary verbs can be used in place of others to create slightly different meanings. For example, we can use the word ***shall*** in place of *will* in to express polite invitations. Similarly, ***would*** can also be substituted for *will* in requests to make them more polite.

Explore the section on **Substituting Modal Verbs** to see how and when other modal auxiliary verbs overlap.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** a function of *will* as a modal verb?

a) To form the future tense
b) To issue a command or maxim
c) To express what someone is allowed to do
d) To make a request or an offer

2. Which of the following sentences is a **conditional sentence**?

a) “I will be going to Europe in August.”
b) “She’ll be moving to Alaska if she can save up enough money.”
c) “That will be your father at the door.”
d) “You will not put off doing your chores any longer!”

3. Where does the modal verb *will* appear in an **interrogative sentence**?

a) Before the subject of the sentence
b) After the subject of the sentence
c) Before the main verb of the sentence
d) After the main verb of the sentence

Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Would

Definition

The modal auxiliary verb *would* has a variety of functions and uses. It is used in place of ***will*** for things that happened or began in the past, and, like ***shall***, it is sometimes used in place of *will* to create more formal or polite sentences. It is also used to express requests and preferences, to describe hypothetical situations, and to politely offer or ask for advice or an opinion.

Creating the future tense in the past

When a sentence expresses a future possibility, expectation, intention, or inevitability that began in the past, we use *would* instead of *will*. For example:

- "I thought he ***would*** **be** here by now."
- "She knew they ***wouldn't*** **make** it to the show in time."
- "I thought John ***would*** **be mowing** lawn by this point."

Past ability and willingness

We also use *would* for certain expressions of a person or thing's ability or willingness to do something in the past, though they are usually negative. For example:

- "This darn washing machine ***wouldn't*** **turn** on this morning."
- "Mary ***wouldn't*** **come** out of her room all weekend."

Likelihood and certainty

Like we saw with ***will***, we can also use *would* to express the likelihood or certainty that something was the case in the immediate past. For instance:

- Speaker A: "There was a man here just now asking about renting the spare room."
- Speaker B: "That ***would*** **be** Kenneth. He just moved here from Iowa."

Polite requests

We can use *would* in the same way as *will* to form requests, except that *would* adds a level of politeness to the question, as in:

- "***Would*** you please **take out** the garbage for me?"

- “***Would*** John **mind** helping me clean out the garage?”

Expressing desires

We use *would* with the main verb *like* to express or inquire about a person’s desire to do something. (We can also use the main verb *care* for more formal or polite sentences.) For example:

- “I ***would*** **like** to go to the movies later.”
- “Where ***would*** you **like** to go for your birthday?”
- “I ***would*** **not** care to live in a hot climate.”
- “***Would*** you **care** to have dinner with me later?”

We can use this same construction to express or ask about a desire to have something. If we are using *like* as the main verb, it can simply be followed by a noun or noun phrase; if we are using *care,* it must be followed by the preposition *for,* as in:

- “***Would*** you **like** a cup of tea?”
- “He ***would*** **like** the steak, and I will have the lobster.”
- “Ask your friends if they ***would*** **care** for some snacks.”

Would that

Would can also be used to introduce a *that* clause to indicate some hypothetical or hopeful situation that one wishes were true. For example:

- “***Would*** **that** we **lived** near the sea.”
- Speaker A: “Life would be so much easier if we won the lottery.”
- Speaker B: “***Would*** **that** it **were** so!”

This is an example of the **subjunctive mood**, which is used to express hypotheticals and desires. While we still use *would* in the subjunctive mood to express preference or create conditional sentences (like Speaker A’s sentence above), the *would that* construction is generally only found in very formal, literary, old-fashioned, or highly stylized speech or writing in modern English.

Preference

We use *would* with the adverbs *rather* and *sooner* to express or inquire about a person’s preference for something. For instance:

- “There are a lot of fancy meals on the menu, but I ***would*** **rather have** a hamburger.”
- “They ***would*** **sooner go** bankrupt than sell the family home.”
- “***Would*** you **rather go biking** or **go** for a hike?”

Conditional sentences

Conditional sentences in the past tense are called **second conditionals**. Unlike the first conditional, we use the second conditional to talk about things that cannot or are unlikely to happen.

To create the second conditional, we use the **past simple tense** after the *if* clause, followed by *would* + the bare infinitive for the result of the condition. For example:

- “If I went to London, I ***would*** **visit** Trafalgar Square.”
- “I ***would*** **buy** a yacht **if** I ever won the lottery.”

Hypothetical situations

We can also use *would* to discuss hypothetical or possible situations that we can imagine happening, but that aren’t dependent on a conditional *if* clause.

For example:

- “They ***would*** **be** an amazing band to see in concert!”
- “Don’t worry about not getting in—it ***wouldn’t*** **have been** a very interesting class, anyway.”
- “She ***would*** **join** your study group, but she doesn’t have any free time after school.”
- “I normally ***wouldn’t*** **mind**, except that today is my birthday!”

Polite opinions

We can use *would* with opinion verbs (such as *think* or *expect*) to dampen the forcefulness of an assertion, making it sound more formal and polite:

- “I ***would*** **expect** that the board of directors will be pleased with this offer.”
- “One ***would*** **have thought** that the situation would be improved by now.”

We can also ask for someone else’s opinion with *would* by pairing it with a question word in an interrogative sentence, as in:

- “What ***would*** you **suggest** we do instead?”
- “Where ***would*** **be** a good place to travel this summer?”

Asking the reason *why*

When we use the question word *why*, we often follow it with *would* to ask the reason something happened or is true. For instance:

- “Why ***would*** my brother **lie** to me?”
- “Why ***would*** they **expect** you to know that?”

If we use *I* or *we* as the subject of the question, it is often used rhetorically to suggest that a question or accusation is groundless or false, as in:

- “Why ***would*** I **try** to hide anything from you?”
- “Why ***would*** we **give up** now, when we’ve come so close to succeeding?”

Polite advice

We can use *would* in the first person to politely offer advice about something. (It is common to add the phrase “if I were you” at the end, thus creating a conditional sentence.) For example:

- “I ***would*** **apologize** to the boss if I were you.”
- “I ***would*** **talk** to her tonight; there’s no point in waiting until tomorrow.”

We can also use *would* in the second and third person to offer advice, usually in the construction “you would be wise/smart to do something,” as in:

- “I think you ***would*** **be wise** to be more careful with your money.”
- “Recent graduates ***would*** **be smart** to set up a savings account as early as possible.”

Substituting Modal Verbs

In many cases, modal auxiliary verbs can be replaced with others to create slightly different meanings.

For example, in addition to using *would* to form the **second conditional** (which we use to describe something we would definitely do), we can also use ***could*** for what we would be able to do, as well as ***might*** for what it is possible (but unlikely) we would do.

For example:

- “If I won the lottery, I **could buy** a new house.”
- “If I were older, I **might stay up** all night long.”

In British English, ***should*** is often used in place of *would* in many constructions to add politeness or formality. For instance:

- “I ***should*** **apologize** to the boss if I were you.” (polite advice)
- “I ***should*** **like** a poached egg for breakfast.” (desire)

Explore the section **Substituting Modal Verbs** to see how and when other modal verbs overlap.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** a function of *would* as a modal verb?

a) To form the future tense
b) To issue a command or maxim
c) To express a wish or desire
d) To politely offer advice

2. Which of the following sentences uses *would* to express **preference**?

a) “We would have won the game if you hadn’t missed that shot.”
b) “She’d be wise to start her assignments earlier.”
c) “I think this would be a great city to live in.”
d) “I’d rather have a salad for lunch.”

3. What kind of **conditional sentence** is formed using *would*?

a) Zero conditional
b) First conditional
c) Second conditional
d) Third conditional

4. Which of the following sentences uses a **very formal, old-fashioned** construction with *would* to express a wish or desire?

a) “Would that I’d made contact with him before his departure.”

b) “He would pay for college himself if he could afford it.”
c) “I think they’d rather go to the beach today.”
d) “Would you care for some lunch?”

Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Shall

Definition

The modal auxiliary verb *shall* is used in many of the same ways as ***will***: to form future tenses, to make requests or offers, to complete conditional sentences, or to issue maxims or commands. Although *will* is generally preferred in modern English (especially American English), using *shall* adds an additional degree of politeness or formality to the sentence that *will* sometimes lacks.

Generally, *shall* is only used when *I* or *we* is the subject, though this is not a strict rule (and does not apply at all when issuing commands, as we’ll see).

Creating the future tense

The future tenses are most often formed using *will* or *be going to*.

We can also use *shall* to add formality or politeness to these constructions, especially the **future simple tense** and the **future continuous tense**. For example:

- “I ***shall*** **call** from the airport.” (**future simple tense**)
- “We ***shall*** **be staying** in private accommodation.”
- “Our company ***shall not*** **be held** accountable for this.”
- “I ***shan’t**** **be participating** in these discussions.”

(*Contracting *shall* and *not* into *shan’t*, while not incorrect, sounds overly formal and stuffy in modern speech and writing; for the most part, it is not used anymore.)

It is also possible, though far less common, to use *shall* in the **future perfect** and **future perfect continuous** tenses as well:

- “As of next week, I ***shall*** **have worked** here for 50 years.”
- “By the time the opera begins, we ***shall*** **have been waiting** for over an hour.”

Offers, suggestions, and advice

When we create interrogative sentences using *shall* and without question words, it is usually to make polite offers, invitations, or suggestions, as in:

- "***Shall*** we walk along the beach?"
- "***Shall*** I wash the dishes?"

When we form an interrogative sentence with a question word (*who, what, where, when*, or *how*), *shall* is used to politely seek the advice or opinion of the listener about a future decision, as in:

- "What ***shall*** I **do** with this spare part?"
- "Where ***shall*** we **begin**?"
- "Who ***shall*** I **invite** to the meal?"

Conditional sentences

Like *will*, we can use *shall* in conditional sentences using *if* to express a likely hypothetical outcome. This is known as the **first conditional**. For example:

- "**If** my flight is delayed, I ***shall not*** **have** time to make my connection."
- "I ***shall*** **contact** the post office **if** my package has not arrived by tomorrow."

Formal commands

While *will* is often used to form commands, we use *shall* when issuing more formal directives or maxims, as might be seen in public notices or in a formal situation, or to express a reprimand in a formal way. When used in this way, *shall* no longer has to be used solely with *I* or *we* as the subject. For example:

- "This establishment ***shall not*** **be held** liable for lost or stolen property."
- "Students ***shall*** **remain** silent throughout the exam."
- "The new law dictates that no citizen ***shall*** **be** out on the streets after 11 PM."
- "You ***shall*** **cease** this foolishness at once!"

Substituting Modal Verbs

In many cases, modal auxiliary verbs can be used in place of others to create slightly different meanings. For example, we can use the word ***should*** in place of *shall* when issuing a command that is not mandatory, but rather is a guideline or recommendation. If, however, we want to express that the command or maxim is an absolute requirement, we can use ***must*** instead of *shall* in this context.

Explore the section **Substituting Modal Verbs** to see how and when other modal auxiliary verbs overlap.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** a function of *shall* as a modal verb?

a) To express what someone is allowed to do
b) To issue a command or maxim
c) To form the future tense
d) To create conditional sentences

2. Which of the following sentences is a **conditional sentence**?

a) "I shall be attending Harvard this fall."
c) "What shall we do this weekend?"
d) "Employees shall clock in at the beginning and end of every shift."
d) "They shall begin research immediately if funds are available."

3. Which of the following is a reason *shall* might be used instead of *will* in a sentence?

a) To add intensity to a command
b) To express an opinion about what is proper or correct
c) To add politeness or formality
d) To describe a habitual action in the past

Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Should

Definition

The modal verb *should* is used to politely express obligations or duties; to ask for or issue advice, suggestions, and recommendations; to describe an expectation; to create **conditional sentences**; and to express surprise. There are also a number of uses that occur in British English that are not common in American English.

Polite obligations

Should is used in the same construction as other modal verbs (such as ***will***, ***shall***, and ***must***) to express an obligation or duty.

However, whereas *must* or *will* (and even *shall*) make the sentence into a strict command, which might appear to be too forceful and could be seen as offensive, *should* is used to create a more polite form that is more like a guideline than a rule. For example:

- “Guests ***should*** **vacate** their hotel rooms by 10 AM on the morning of their departure.”
- “I think she ***should*** **pay** for half the meal.”
- “You ***shouldn’t*** **play** loud music in your room at night.”
- “I think healthcare ***should*** **be** free for everyone.”
- “She ***should not*** **be** here; it’s for employees only.”

Asking the reason *why*

We can follow the question word *why* with *should* to ask the reason for a certain obligation or duty. For instance:

- “Why ***should*** I **have** to pay for my brother?”
- “Why ***shouldn’t*** we **be allowed** to talk during class?”

Advice and recommendations

Should can also be used to issue advice or recommendations in much the same way. For instance:

- “You ***should*** **get** a good map of London before you go there.” (recommendation)
- “You ***shouldn’t*** **eat** so much junk food—it’s not good for you.” (advice)

We can also use *should* in **interrogative sentences** to ask for someone’s advice, opinion, or suggestion, as in:

- “What ***should*** I **see** while I’m in New York?”
- “***Should*** she **tell** her boss about the missing equipment?”
- “Is there anything we ***should*** **be** concerned about?”

Expectations

Using *should* in **affirmative** (non-negative) sentences can be used to express an expected outcome, especially when it is followed by the verb *be*. For example:

- “She ***should*** **be** here by now.”
- “They ***should*** **be** arriving at any minute.”
- “I think this book ***should*** **be** interesting.”

We can also follow *should* with other verbs to express expectation, but this is less common. For instance:

- “They ***should*** **find** this report useful.”
- “We ***should*** **see** the results shortly.”

If we use the negative of *should* (*should not* or *shouldn’t*), it implies a mistake or error, especially when we use it with a future time expression. For example:

- “She ***shouldn’t*** **be** here yet.”
- “He ***shouldn’t*** **be** arriving for another hour.”

We normally do not use *should not* to refer to expected future actions like we do in the affirmative; it generally refers to something that just happened (in the present or immediate past).

Should vs. be supposed to vs. be meant to

In many instances, *should* can be replaced by *be supposed to* or *be meant to* with little to no change in meaning. For instance, we can use *be supposed to* or *be* *meant to* in place of *should* for something that is expected or required to happen.

For example:

- “He ***should*** **be** here at 10 AM.”
- “He ***is meant to*** **be** here at 10 AM.”
- “He ***is supposed to*** **be** here at 10 AM.”

We can also use these three variations interchangeably when asking the reason *why* something is the case. For instance:

- “Why ***should*** I **have** to pay for my brother?”
- “Why ***am*** I **meant to pay** for my brother?”
- “Why ***am*** I **supposed to pay** for my brother?”

However, when we are expressing an obligation or duty, we can only replace *should* with *be supposed to* or *be meant to* when it is in the negative. For instance:

- “You ***shouldn’t*** **play** loud music in your room at night.”
- “You ***aren’t meant to*** **play** loud music in your room at night.”
- “You ***aren’t supposed to*** **play** loud music in your room at night.”

In affirmative sentences in which *should* expresses an obligation or duty (as opposed to an expectation), these verbs are **not** interchangeable. For instance:

- “I think she ***should*** **pay** for half the meal.” (obligation)
- “I think she ***is supposed to*** **pay** for half the meal.” (expectation)
- “I think she ***is meant to*** **pay** for half the meal.” (expectation)

Be supposed to and *be meant to* are also used to express general beliefs, which is not a way we can use the modal verb *should*.

For example:

- “He ***is supposed to*** **be** one of the best lawyers in town.” (general belief)
- “He ***is meant to*** **be** one of the best lawyers in town.” (general belief)
- “He ***should*** **be** one of the best lawyers in town.” (obligation)

We can see how the meaning changes significantly when *should* is used instead.

Conditional Sentences

Should can be used in conditional sentences to express an outcome to a possible or hypothetical conditional situation.

Sometimes we use *should* alongside *if* to create the **conditional** clause, as in:

- "If anyone ***should*** **ask**, I will be at the bar."
- "If your father ***should*** **call**, tell him I will speak to him later."

We can also use *should* on its own to set up this condition, in which case we invert it with the subject. For example:

- "***Should*** you **need** help on your thesis, please ask your supervisor."
- "The bank is more than happy to discuss financing options ***should*** you **wish** to take out a loan."

Expressing surprise

Occasionally, *should* is used to emphasize surprise at an unexpected situation, outcome, or turn of events.

We do so by phrasing the surprising information as a question, using a question word like *who* or *what* and often inverting *should* with the subject. (However, the sentence is spoken as a statement, so we punctuate it with a period or exclamation point, rather than a question mark.)

The "question" part of the sentence is introduced by the word *when*, with the "answer" introduced by the word *but*. For example:

- "I was minding my own business, when who ***should*** I **encounter** but my brother Tom."
- "The festival was going well when what ***should*** **happen** but the power goes out!"

Uses of *should* in British English

There are a number of functions that *should* can perform that are more commonly used in British English than in American English. Several of these are substitutions of *would*, while other uses are unique unto themselves.

Should vs. *would* in British English

There are several modal constructions that can either take *would* or *should*. American English tends to favor the modal verb *would* in most cases, but, in British English, it is also common to use *should*, especially to add formality.

Polite advice

We can use *should/would* in the first person to politely offer advice about something. (It is common to add the phrase "if I were you" at the end, thus creating a conditional sentence.) For example:

- "I ***should/would*** **apologize** to the boss if I were you."
- "I ***shouldn't/wouldn't*** **worry** about that right now."

Expressing desires

We can use either *should* or *would* with the main verb *like* in the first person to express or inquire about a person's desire to do something. (We can also use the main verb *care* for more formal or polite sentences.) For example:

- "I ***should/would*** **like** to go to the movies later."
- "We ***shouldn't/wouldn't*** **care** to live in a hot climate."
- "I ***should/would*** **like** a cup of tea, if you don't mind."
- "I don't know that I ***should/would*** **care** for such an expensive house."

Asking the reason *why*

In addition to asking the reason *why* a certain obligation or requirement is the case, we can also use *should* in the same way as *would* to ask the reason something happened or is true. For instance:

- "Why ***should/would*** my brother **lie** to me?"
- "Why ***should/would*** they **expect** you to know that?"

If we use *I* or *we* as the subject of the question, it is often used rhetorically to suggest that a question or accusation is groundless or false, as in:

- "Why ***should/would*** I **try** to hide anything from you?"
- "Why ***should/would*** we **give up** now, when we've come so close to succeeding?"

To show purpose

Should and *would* can also be used after the phrase "so that" and "in order that" to add a sense of purpose to the main verb, as in:

- “I brought a book so that I ***shouldn’t/wouldn’t*** **be** bored on the train ride home.”
- “He bought new boots in order that his feet ***should/would*** **remain** dry on the way to work.”

After other words and phrases

There are several instances in British English in which *should* is used after the relative pronoun *that* or certain other phrases to create specific meanings, especially in more formal language.

To express an opinion or feeling

When we use a **noun clause** beginning with *that* as an **adjective complement**, we can use *should* in it to express an opinion or sentiment about what is said. For example:

- “It’s very sad that she ***should*** **be forced** to leave her house.”
- “Isn’t it strange that we ***should*** **meet** each other again after all these years?”

Conditional circumstances

Similarly, *should* can be used after the phrases *for fear (that), in case (that),* and (less commonly) *lest (that)* to demonstrate the possible conditional circumstances that are the reason behind a certain action. For example:

- “I always pack my rain jacket when I cycle for fear (that) it ***should*** **start** raining midway.”
- “You should pack a toothbrush in case (that) you ***should*** **be** delayed at the airport overnight.”
- “She makes sure to set the alarm before leaving lest (that) someone ***should*** **try** to break in.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** a function of *should* as a modal verb?

a) To form the future tense
b) To express an obligation or duty
c) To express surprise

d) To politely offer advice

2. Which of the following sentences uses *should* to express an **expectation**?
a) "I will be just around the corner should I be needed."
b) "We really shouldn't lie to your parents like this."
c) "Don't forget a spare pencil lest yours should break."
d) "The movie should finish around 5 PM."

3. Which of the following is a situation in which *should* can be used instead of *would* in **British English**?
a) To express past ability or willingness
b) To politely offer advice
c) To form a polite request
d) To express surprise

4. True or False: *Should* is able to form conditional sentences **without** the word *if*.
a) True
b) False

Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Can

Definition

As a modal auxiliary verb, *can* is most often used to express a person or thing's ability to do something. It is also used to express or ask for permission to do something, to describe the possibility that something can happen, and to issue requests and offers.

Expressing ability

Can is used most often and most literally to express when a person or thing is physically, mentally, or functionally able to do something. When it is used with *not* to become negative, it forms a single word, *cannot* (contracted as *can't*). For example:

- "John ***can*** **run** faster than anyone I know."

- “It’s rare to find a phone that ***cannot*** **connect** to the Internet these days.”
- “We don’t have to stay—we ***can*** **leave** if you want to.”
- “***Can*** your brother **swim**?”
- “I don’t think he ***can*** **read**.”
- “Just **do** the best you ***can***.”
- “***Can’t*** you just **restart** the computer?”
- “When ***can*** you **start**?”

“Can do”

In response to a request or an instruction, it is common (especially in American English) to use the idiomatic phrase “**can do**.” This usually stands on its own as a **minor sentence**. For example:

- Speaker A: “I need you to fix this tire when you have a chance.”
- Speaker B: “**Can do**!”

- Speaker A: “Would you mind making dinner tonight?”
- Speaker B: “Can do, darling!”

The phrase has become so prolific that it is also often used as a modifier before a noun to denote an optimistic, confident, and enthusiastic characteristic, as in:

- “His **can-do** spirit is infectious in the office.”
- “We’re always looking for **can-do** individuals who will bring great energy to our team.”

We can also make this phrase negative, but we use the word *no* at the beginning of the phrase rather than using the adverb *not* after *can*, as we normally would with a modal verb. For example:

- Speaker A: “Is it all right if I get a ride home with you again tonight?”
- Speaker B: “Sorry, **no can do**. I need to head to the airport after work.”

Permission

We often use *can* to express permission* to do something, especially in questions (**interrogative sentences**).

For example:

- “***Can*** I **go** to the bathroom, Ms. Smith?”

- “***Can*** Jenny **come** to the party with us?”
- “You ***can*** **leave** the classroom once you are finished with the test.”
- “You ***can’t*** **have** any dessert until you’ve finished your dinner.”

(*Usage note: Although it is sometimes considered grammatically incorrect to use *can* instead of ***may*** to express permission, it is acceptable in modern English to use either one. *Can* is very common in informal settings; in more formal English, though, *may* is still the preferred modal verb.)

As a rhetorical device

Sometimes, we use *can* in this way as a rhetorical device to politely introduce or emphasize an opinion or sentiment about something, in which case we invert *can* with the subject. For instance:

- “***Can*** I just **say**, this has been the most wonderful experience of my life.”
- “***Can*** we **be** clear that our firm will not be involved in such a dubious a plan.”
- “And, ***can*** I **add**, profits are expected to stabilize within a month.”

Note that we can accomplish the same thing by using the verbs *let* or *allow* instead, as in:

- “***Let*** me **be** clear: this decision is in no way a reflection on the quality of your work.”
- “***Allow*** us **to say**, we were greatly impressed by your performance.”

Adding angry emphasis

Can is sometimes used to give permission (sometimes ironically) as a means of adding emphasis to an angry command, especially in **conditional sentences**. For example:

- “You ***can*** just **walk** home if you’re going to be so ungrateful!”
- “If he continues being so insufferable, he ***can*** **have** his party all alone!”
- “You ***can*** **go** to your room and stay there, young man! I’m sick of listening to your backtalk.”

Possibility and likelihood

Similar to using *can* to express ability, we also use *can* to describe actions that are possible. It may appear to be nearly the same in certain cases, but the usage relates less to physical or mental ability than to the possibility or likelihood of accomplishing something or of something occurring. For instance:

- “You ***can*** **get** help on your papers from your teaching assistant.”
- “My mother-in-law ***can*** **be** a bit overbearing at times.”
- “People forget that you ***can*** **get** skin cancer from tanning beds.”
- “It ***can*** **seem** impossible to overcome the debt from student loans.”

Negative certainty and disbelief

We use the modal verb ***must*** to express certainty or high probability, but we generally use *can’t* (or, less commonly, *cannot*) to express **negative** certainty, extremely low likelihood, or a disbelief that something might be true. For example:

- “You ***can’t*** **be** tired—you’ve been sleeping all day!”
- “I ***can’t*** **have** left my phone at home, because I remember packing it in my bag.”
- “After three years of college, she wants to drop out? She ***cannot*** **be** serious.”

Making requests

It is common to use *can* to make a request of someone. For example:

- “***Can*** you **get** that book down from the shelf for me?”
- “Your sister is a lawyer, right? ***Can*** she **give** me some legal advice?”
- “***Can*** you kids **turn** your music down, please?”

However, this usage can sometimes be seen as being too direct or forceful, and sometimes comes across as impolite as a result. In more formal or polite circumstances, we can use other modal verbs such as ***could*** or ***would*** to create more polite constructions, as in:

- “***Would*** you please **be** quiet?”
- “***Could*** you **help** me with this assignment?”

Making offers

While it might be seen as impolite to use *can* to make a request, it is perfectly polite to use it to make an offer. For example:

- “***Can*** I **do** anything to help get dinner ready?”
- “***Can*** I **help** you find what you need?”
- “***Can*** I **give** you a ride home?”

If we want to be even more polite or add formality to the offer, we can use *may* instead, as in:

- “***May*** I **be** of some assistance?”
- “***May*** we **help** you in any way?”
- “How ***may*** our staff **be** of service to you?”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** a function of *can* as a modal verb?

a) To ask for permission
b) To request something
c) To offer to do something
d) To express an opinion or feeling

2. Which of the following sentences uses *can* to express **ability**?

a) “Can I watch TV later?”
b) “It can get a bit too hot here in the summer.”
c) “I’m sure glad I can drive.”
d) “You can have some ice cream if you behave yourselves.”

3. Which of the following is an **informal** use of the modal verb *can*?

a) “You can just go without your dinner if you’re going to behave that way!”
b) “When can we expect the package to arrive?”
c) “Can I spend the night at my friend’s house?”
d) “Can we carry those groceries for you?”

Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Could

Definition

The modal verb *could* is most often used as a past-tense version of ***can***, indicating what someone or something was able to do in the past; it can also be used instead of *can* as a more polite way of making a request or asking for permission. *Could* is also used to express a slight or uncertain possibility, as well as to make a suggestion or offer.

Past ability

When describing what a person or thing was physically, mentally, or functionally able to do in the past, we use *could* instead of *can*. For example:

- "When I was younger, I ***could*** **run** for 10 miles without breaking a sweat!"
- "Our TV growing up ***could*** only **get** about four channels."
- "She ***couldn't*** **read** until she was nearly 12 years old."
- "***Could*** your family **afford** any food during the Great Depression, Grandma?"

We also use *could* instead of *can* when describing an ability that is desired or wished for. (This is known as the **subjunctive mood**, which is used for describing hypothetical or unreal situations.) For example:

- "I wish I ***could*** **swim**; it looks like so much fun."

Conditional sentences

Conditional sentences in the past tense are called **second conditionals**. Unlike the first conditional, we use the second conditional to talk about things that cannot or are unlikely to actually happen.

To create the second conditional, we usually use the **past simple tense** after the *if* clause, followed by ***would*** + a bare infinitive to describe what would be the expected (if unreal) result of the condition.

However, if we want to describe what we would be **able** to do under a certain condition, we can use *could* instead. For example:

- "If I got that promotion at work, I ***could*** finally **afford** a new car!"
- "If we moved to California, I ***could*** **surf** every day!"

We often use *could* in what's known as a **mixed conditional**, which occurs when the tense in one part of a conditional sentence does not match the other half. This often occurs with *could* when a present-tense verb is being used in an *if* conditional clause to express a hypothetical scenario that is likely to or possibly could happen. For example:

- "If I get some money from my parents, we ***could*** **go** to the movies."

- “We ***could*** **visit** our friends at the beach if you ask your boss for Friday off.”

Asking for permission

When we ask someone for permission to do something, it is often considered more polite to use *could* instead of *can*. However, we can only make this substitution when asking for permission—when stating or granting permission, we can only use *can* (or, more politely, ***may***).

For example:

- “Dad, ***could*** I **spend** the night at my friend’s house?”
- “***Could*** we **invite** Sarah to come with us?”
- “I was wondering if I ***could*** **take** a bit of time off work.”

Making a request

Just as we use *could* instead of *can* to be more polite when asking for permission, it is also considered more polite to substitute *could* when making a general request. For example:

- “***Could*** you please **be** quiet?”
- “***Could*** you **help** me with this assignment?”

Note that we can also do this with the modal verb ***would***:

- “***Would*** you **ask** Jeff to come over here?”
- “***Would*** Tina **help** me paint this fence?”

As a rhetorical device

Sometimes, we use *could* as a rhetorical device to politely introduce or emphasize an opinion or sentiment about something, in which case we invert *could* with the subject. For instance:

- “***Could*** I just **say**, this has been a most wonderful evening.”
- “And ***could*** I **clarify** that I have always acted solely with the company’s interests in mind.”
- “***Could*** I **add** that your time with us has been greatly appreciated.”

Note that we can accomplish the same thing by using the verbs *let* or *allow* instead, as in:

- “***Let*** me **clarify**: this decision is in no way a reflection on the quality of your work.”
- “***Allow*** me **to add**, we were greatly impressed by your performance.”

Possibility and likelihood

Like *can*, we can also use *could* to describe actions or outcomes that are possible or likely. Unlike using *could* to talk about an ability, this usage is not restricted to the past tense. For instance:

- “I think it ***could*** **rain** any minute.”
- “She ***could*** **be** in big trouble over this.”
- “Due to this news, the company ***could*** **see** a sharp drop in profits next quarter.”
- “Be careful, you ***could*** **hurt** someone with that thing!”
- “Answer the phone! It ***could*** **be** your father calling.”

Making a suggestion

Similar to expressing a possible outcome, we can also use *could* to suggest a possible course of action. For instance:

- “We ***could*** **go** out for pizza after work on Friday.”
- “You ***could*** **see** if your boss would let you extend your vacation.”
- “I know it will be tricky to convince your parents, but you ***could*** **try**.”

Adding angry emphasis

We also use *could* to add emphasis to an angry or frustrated remark. For example:

- “My mother has traveled a long way to be here—you ***could*** **try** to look a little more pleased to see her!”
- “You ***could*** **have told** me that you didn’t want a party before I spent all this time and effort organizing one!”

Making offers

In addition to using *could* to make a suggestion, we can also use it to make an offer to do something for someone. For example:

- “***Could*** I **give** you a hand with dinner?”
- “***Could*** we **help** you find what you need?”
- “***Could*** I **give** you a ride home?”

Rhetorical questions

Could is sometimes used informally in sarcastic or rhetorical questions that highlight a behavior someone finds irritating, unacceptable, or inappropriate. It is often (but not always) used with *be* as a main verb. For example:

- “***Could*** you **be** any louder? I can barely hear myself think!”
- “Oh my God, Dad, ***could*** you **be** any more embarrassing?”
- “Danny, we’re going to be late! ***Could*** you **walk** any slower?”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** a function of the modal verb *could*?

a) To ask for permission
b) To create a future tense
c) To request something
d) To offer to do something

2. Which of the following sentences uses *could* to express **possibility or likelihood**?

a) “Could I please have a second helping of dessert?”
b) “I wish I could drive.”
c) “I have a feeling it could snow tonight.”
d) “I could move out of this dump if I get a role in that big movie.”

3. Which of the following sentences uses *could* **incorrectly**?

a) “You and your friends could go to the movies later, if you’re looking for something to do.”
b) “I thought Jonathan could be here by now.”
c) “Could I spend Thanksgiving with Grandpa this year?”
d) “Could you be any more insulting?”

Modal Auxiliary Verbs - May

Definition

The modal verb *may* is used to ask, grant, or describe permission; to politely offer to do something for someone; to express the possibility of something happening or occurring; or to express a wish or desire that something will be the case in the future. We can also use *may* as a rhetorical device to express or introduce an opinion about something.

Asking or granting permission

May is very commonly used to express or ask for permission to do something. There are other ways to do this (by using the modals ***can*** or ***could***, for instance), but *may* is considered the most polite and formally correct way to do so. For example:

- “***May*** I **borrow** your pen, please?”
- “***May*** we **ask** you some questions about your experience?”
- “General, you ***may*** **fire** when ready.”
- “She ***may*** **invite** one or two friends, but no more than that.”
- “***May*** we **be** frank with you, Tom?”
- “Students ***may not*** **leave** the class once their exams are complete.”

Making a polite offer

Like *can*, we can use *may* to offer do something for someone else, though it is generally a more polite, formal way of doing so. For example:

- “***May*** I **help** you set the table?”
- “***May*** we **be** of assistance in any way?”

Expressing possibility

Another common use of *may* is to express the possibility that something will happen or occur in the near future, especially when that possibility is uncertain. For instance:

- “I’m worried that it ***may*** **start** raining soon.”

- “We ***may*** **run into** some problems down the line that we didn’t expect.”
- “I ***may*** **be coming** home for the winter break, depending on the cost of a plane ticket.”
- “Although we ***may*** **see** things improve in the future, there’s no guarantee at the moment.”
- “There ***may*** **not be** any issues at all; we’ll just have to see.”

Expressing wishes for the future

May is also used in more formal language to express a wish or desire that something will be the case in the future. When used in this way, *may* is inverted with the subject, as in:

- “***May*** you both **have** a long, happy life together.”
- “***May*** you **be** safe in your journey home.”
- “We’ve had great success this year; ***may*** we **continue** to do so for years to come.”
- “***May*** this newfound peace **remain** forever between our two countries.”

As a rhetorical device

Sometimes, we use *may* in this way as a rhetorical device to politely introduce or emphasize an opinion or sentiment about something, in which case we invert *may* with the subject. For instance:

- “***May*** I just **say**, this has been the most wonderful experience of my life.”
- “***May*** we **be** clear that our firm will not be involved in such a dubious plan.”
- “***May*** I **be** frank: this is not what I was hoping for.”

Note that we can accomplish the same thing by using the verbs *let* or *allow* instead, as in:

- “***Let*** me **be** clear: this decision is in no way a reflection on the quality of your work.”
- “***Allow*** us **to say**, we were greatly impressed by your performance.”

May not vs. Mayn’t (vs. Can’t)

Grammatically, it is not technically incorrect to contract *may not* into the single-word *mayn't*. For instance:

- "You ***mayn't* wish** to share these details with others."
- "No, you ***mayn't* go** to the dinner unaccompanied."

However, this has become very rare in modern English, and generally only occurs in colloquial usage. In **declarative sentences**, it is much more common to use the two words separately, as in:

- "Employees ***may not* use** company computers for recreational purposes."
- "There ***may not* be** much we can do to prevent such problems from occurring."

It is also uncommon, though, to use *may not* in questions, in which *may* is inverted with the subject. The resulting construction (e.g., "may I not" or "may we not") sounds overly formal in day-to-day speech and writing. Because of this, it is much more common to use the contraction *can't* instead, as in:

- "***Can't*** we **stay** for a little while longer?"
- "***Can't*** I **bring** a friend along with me?"

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** a function of the modal verb *may*?

a) To ask for permission
b) To express a wish for the future
c) To request something from someone
d) To offer to do something

2. Which of the following sentences uses *may* to express **possibility or likelihood**?

a) "You may not watch television until your homework is done."
b) "May you always live life in the way you see fit."
c) "We may not have a choice in the matter."
d) "They may stay for dinner if they'd like to."

3. Which of the following sentences is considered the **most correct** in modern English?

a) "The two companies mayn't have any option but to abandon the proposed merger."

b) “Can’t we come with you to the movie later?”
c) “May I not stay up a little later tonight?”
d) “Mayn’t we watch some TV before starting our homework?”

4. Identify the function of *may* in the following sentence:
“May I state for the record, I’ve always supported the governor’s decisions.”

a) To express permission
b) To make a polite offer
c) To express possibility
d) As a rhetorical device

Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Might

Definition

The modal verb *might* is most often used to express an unlikely or uncertain possibility. *Might* is also used to very formally or politely ask for permission, and it is used as the past-tense form of ***may*** when asking permission in **reported speech**. It can also be used to suggest an action, or to introduce two differing possibilities.

Expressing possibility

When we use *might* to indicate possibility, it implies a very weak certainty or likelihood that something will happen, occur, or be the case. For instance:

- “I’m hoping that she ***might*** **call** me later.”
- “We ***might*** **go** to a party later, if you want to come.”
- “You should pack an umbrella—it looks like it ***might*** **rain**.”
- “There ***might*** **be** some dinner left over for you in the fridge.”

In conditional sentences

We also often use *might* to express a possibility as a hypothetical outcome in a **conditional sentence**. For example:

- “If we don’t arrive early enough, we ***might not*** **be** able to get in to the show.”
- “We still ***might*** **make** our flight if we leave right now!”

- “If we’re lucky, we ***might*** **have** a chance of reversing the damage.”

Politely asking for permission

Although *may* is the “standard” modal verb used to politely ask for permission, we can also use *might* if we want to add even more politeness or formality to the question. For example:

- “***Might*** we **go** to the park this afternoon, father?”
- “***Might*** I **ask** you a few questions?”
- “I’m finished with my dinner. ***Might*** I **be** excused from the table?”

However, even in formal speech and writing, this construction can come across as rather old-fashioned, especially in American English. It more commonly occurs in indirect questions—i.e., **declarative sentences** that are worded in such a way as to express an inquiry (though these are technically not questions). For example:

- “I was hoping I ***might*** **borrow** the car this evening.”
- “I wonder if we ***might*** **invite** Samantha to come with us.”

Past tense of *may*

When we use **reported speech**, we traditionally conjugate verbs one degree into the past. When *may* has been used, especially to ask for permission, in a sentence that is now being reported, we use *might* in its place, as in:

- “He asked if he ***might*** **use** the car for his date tonight.”
- “She wondered if she ***might*** **bring** a friend to the show.”

However, this rule of conjugating into the past tense is largely falling out of use in modern English, and it is increasingly common to see verbs remain in their original tense even when being reported.

Making suggestions

Might can also be used to make polite suggestions to someone. This is much less direct and forceful than using ***should***: it expresses a suggestion of a possible course of action rather than asserting what is correct or right to do. For example:

- “You ***might*** **ask** your brother about repaying that loan the next time you see him.”

- “It tastes very good, though you ***might*** **add** a bit more salt.”
- “You ***might*** **try** rebooting the computer; that should fix the problem for you.”

Suggesting a possibility

In a similar way, we can use *might* to suggest a possible action or situation to another person. For example:

- “I was wondering if you ***might*** **be** interested in seeing a play with me later.”
- “I thought you ***might*** **like** this book, so I bought you a copy.”

Adding angry emphasis

Just as we can with the modal verb ***could***, we can use *might* to make a suggestion as a means of adding emphasis to an angry or frustrated remark. For example:

- “My mother has traveled a long way to be here—you ***might*** **try** to look a little more pleased to see her!”
- “You ***might*** **have told** me that you didn’t want a party before I spent all this time and effort organizing one!”

Introducing differing information

Another use of *might* is to introduce a statement that is contrary to or different from a second statement later in the sentence. This can be used as a means of highlighting two different possible outcomes, scenarios, or courses of action. For example:

- “Sure, you ***might*** **be** able to make money quickly like that, but you’re inevitably going to run into difficulties down the line.”
- “I ***might not*** **have** much free time, but I find great satisfaction in my work.”
- “Our organization ***might*** **be** very small, but we provide a unique, tailored service to our clientele.”

As a rhetorical device

Sometimes, we use *might* as a rhetorical device to politely introduce or emphasize an opinion or sentiment about something, in which case we invert *might* with the subject. For instance:

- “***Might*** I just **say**, this has been a most wonderful evening.”
- “And ***might*** I **clarify** that I have always acted solely with the company’s interests in mind.”
- “***Might*** I **add** that your time with us has been greatly appreciated.”

Note that we can accomplish the same thing by using the verbs *let* or *allow* instead, as in:

- “***Let*** me **clarify**: this decision is in no way a reflection on the quality of your work.”
- “***Allow*** me **to add**, we were greatly impressed by your performance.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** a function of the modal verb *might*?

a) To ask for permission
b) To express a possibility
c) To request something from someone
d) To suggest something

2. In which of the following situations do we use *might* as the past tense of *may*?

a) In conditional sentences
b) When making a suggestion
c) When a request for permission is being reported
d) To express a possibility

3. Which of the following sentences would occur **least commonly** in modern English?

a) “Might I inquire about your stake in this claim?”
b) “I’m worried that we might not make the train.”
c) “I was hoping I might go out with my friends after school.”
d) “You might have warned me that the boss was going to be here!”

4. Identify the function of *might* in the following sentence:
“Jonathan, you might see about securing the loan before committing to anything else.”

a) To express permission

b) To introduce differing information
c) To express possibility
d) To make a suggestion

Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Must

Definition

The modal verb *must* is most often used to express **necessity**—i.e., that something *has to* happen or be the case. We also use this sense of the word to indicate a strong intention to do something in the future, to emphasize something positive that we believe someone should do, and to rhetorically introduce or emphasize an opinion or sentiment. In addition to indicating necessity, *must* can be used to indicate that something is certain or very likely to happen or be true.

Necessity

When *must* indicates that an action, circumstance, or situation is necessary, we usually use it in a **declarative sentence**. For example:

- “This door ***must*** **be** left shut at all times!”
- “We absolutely ***must*** **get** approval for that funding.”
- “You ***must not*** **tell** anyone about what we saw.”
- “Now, you ***mustn’t*** **be** alarmed, but we’ve had a bit of an accident in here.”

We can also use *must* in **interrogative sentences** to inquire whether something is necessary, usually as a criticism of some objectionable or undesirable action or behavior. For instance:

- “***Must*** we **go** to dinner with them? They are dreadfully boring.”
- “***Must*** you **be** so rude to my parents?”
- “***Must*** I **spend** my entire weekend studying?”

However, this usage is generally reserved for more formal speech and writing, and isn’t very common in everyday English.

Indicating strong intention

We use the same meaning of *must* to indicate something we have a very strong intention of doing in the future. For example:

- “I ***must*** **file** my taxes this weekend.”
- “I ***must*** **get** around to calling my brother.”
- “We ***must*** **have** the car checked out soon.”

Emphasizing a suggestion

We also use this meaning to make suggestions to others of something positive we believe they should do, as in:

- “You simply ***must*** **try** the new Ethiopian restaurant on 4th Avenue—it’s fantastic!”
- “It was so lovely to see you. We ***must*** **get** together again soon!”
- “You ***must*** **come** stay with us at the lake sometime.”

As a rhetorical device

Finally, we can also use this meaning of *must* as a rhetorical device to politely introduce or emphasize an opinion or sentiment about something:

- “I ***must*** **say**, this has been a most wonderful evening.”
- “And I ***must*** **add** that Mr. Jones has been an absolute delight to work with.”
- “I ***must*** **be** clear: we will disavow any knowledge of this incident.”

Note that we can accomplish the same thing by using the verbs *let* or *allow* instead, as in:

- “***Let*** me **be** clear: this decision is in no way a reflection on the quality of your work.”
- “***Allow*** us **to say**, we were greatly impressed by your performance.”

Certainty and likelihood

In addition to being used to indicate a necessary action or situation, *must* is also often used to describe that which is certain or extremely likely or probable to happen, occur, or be the case. For example:

- “You ***must*** **be** absolutely exhausted after your flight.”
- “Surely they ***must*** **know** that we can’t pay the money back yet.”
- “There ***must*** **be** some way we can convince the board of directors.”
- “I ***must*** **have** left my keys on my desk at work.”

- Speaker A: “I just got back from a 12-week trip around Europe.”
- Speaker B: “Wow, that ***must* have been** an amazing experience!”

Generally speaking, we do not use the negative of *must* (*must not* or *mustn’t*) to express a negative certainty or strong disbelief. Instead, we use *cannot* (often contracted as *can’t*), as in:

- “You ***can’t* be** tired—you’ve been sleeping all day!”
- “I ***can’t* have** left my phone at home, because I remember packing it in my bag.”
- “After three years of college, she wants to drop out? She ***cannot* be** serious.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** a function of the modal verb *must*?

a) To ask for permission
b) To express a certainty
c) To indicate an intention
d) To suggest something

2. In which of the following situations do we generally use *can* instead of *must*?

a) When expressing a necessity
b) When making a suggestion
c) When expressing disbelief or a negative certainty
d) When indicating a strong intention

3. Which of the following sentences uses *must* to indicate a **strong intention**?

a) “Employees must sign in before and after every shift.”
b) “We mustn’t let this setback deter us.”
c) “I must see about getting a refund on this software.”
d) “You must come over and see the new house sometime!”

4. Identify the function of *must* in the following sentence:
“Jonathan, you must have driven through the night to have arrived so early!”

a) To introduce or emphasize an opinion or sentiment
b) To indicate a strong intention
c) To express necessity

d) To express a certainty or high probability

Substituting Modal Verbs

Modal auxiliary verbs express different shades of meaning; very often, they can be quite similar in how they are used, and it is sometimes unclear when it is appropriate to use one instead of another. Below, we'll look at some comparisons between commonly confused modal verbs.

Indicating the future – Will / Shall

Will is the most common modal verb used to indicate one of the **future tenses**, as in:

- "I ***will*** **walk** to work tomorrow." (**future simple tense**)
- "I ***will*** **be walking** to work this week." (**future continuous tense**)
- "I ***will*** **have walked** to work each day this week." (**future perfect tense**)
- "By December, I ***will*** **have been walking** to work each week for a year." (**future perfect continuous tense**)

We can also use *shall* in place of *will* to form the future tense, but only when the subject is in the first person (*I* or *we*). However, this makes the sentence very formal, and it is more commonly found in British English or in polite invitations. For instance:

- "I ***shall*** **be** attending a dinner with the prime minister in April."
- "***Shall*** we **dance**, my dear?"

Requesting permission – Can / Could / May / Might

Each of these four modal verbs can be used to ask for permission, and each changes how formal the sentence is.

- "***Can*** I **open** the window, please?"
- "***Could*** I **open** the window, please?"
- "***May*** I **open** the window, please?"
- "***Might*** I **open** the window, please?"

In the above examples, *can*, *could*, *may*, and *might* are all used to request to permission do something.

Can is the least formal of the four, and some sticklers for grammatical etiquette will claim that it should not be used in this way at all; however, it is perfectly acceptable in informal conversation.

Could is more polite and a bit more formal than *can*. We can use this in most situations, except perhaps in very formal conversation.

May is more formal than either *can* or *could*, and it is commonly used as the standard modal verb to express or request permission.

Might is the most formal of them all; however, it can only be used to request permission (not to state that someone **has** permission), and it is not commonly used except in extremely formal circumstances.

Indicating ability – Can / Could

We often use *can* to indicate physical, mental, or functional ability in doing something. For example:

- “I ***can*** **speak** three languages.” (I have the mental ability to do this.)
- “He ***can*** **swim** very well.” (He has the physical ability to do this.)

Could is also used to indicate ability but as the past tense of *can*. For example:

- “He ***could*** **speak** three languages when he was four years old. (He had this ability by the time he was four years old.)
- “She ***couldn’t*** **ski** until she was a teenager. (She did not have this ability until she was a teenager.)

Indicating possibility – May / Might

We use *may* and *might* to express a possibility. When describing a possible action, they generally indicate the same 50 percent chance of likelihood. For example:

- “I ***might*** **go** to the cinema today.”
- “I ***may*** **go** to bed early this evening.”

May is regarded as being more formal in this use.

Both *may* and *might* are also used to indicate a possible outcome or set of circumstances. In this case, *might* tends to express **less** certainty or a **lower** likelihood than *may*, although the difference is slight. For example:

- “We’ve tested thoroughly, but there ***might*** **be** some issues we’ve yet to discover.”
- “He ***may*** **have** a chance of making a comeback in the polls.”

Making an offer – Can / May / Shall

Shall, *may*, and *can* can all be used to offer to do something for someone. For example:

- “***Can*** I **get** the door for you?”
- “***May*** I **get** the door for you?”
- “***Shall*** I **get** the door for you?”

May is considered more formal and polite than *can*, although *can* is perfectly acceptable. *Can* and *may*, however, are both a little less direct than *shall*, which is used as more of a polite suggestion.

Making a request – Will / Can / Could / Would

All four of these modals can be used to make a request of someone, with differing degrees of politeness:

- “***Will*** you **get** the door for me, please?” (most direct – least polite)
- “***Can*** you **get** the door for me, please?” (slightly less direct – slightly more polite)
- “***Could*** you **get** the door for me, please?” (less direct – more polite)
- “***Would*** you **get** the door for me, please?” (least direct – most polite)

Could and *would* are the most polite modals to use for requests; however, the accompanying language we use (saying “please,” “if you don’t mind,” “if you could be so kind,” etc.) makes a bigger difference on the politeness of the request, no matter which modal verb is used.

Indicating an obligation – Must / Shall / Should / Will

When expressing an obligation to do something, we often use *must*, which is particularly direct and forceful. This might be found in a public notice, as in:

- “Employees ***must*** **wash** their hands before returning to work.”

- “Owners ***must*** **clean** up after their pets.”

Must can also be used in direct commands or directives, such as:

- “You ***must*** **finish** your homework before you can go outside to play.”

- “Students ***must*** **put** their names on their assignments, or they won’t be graded.”

We usually only find *shall* being used to express obligations in contracts or legal documents; it is used as a more polite and formal construction than *must*. For instance:

- “The defendant ***shall*** **pay** the plaintiff $5,000 in damages.”

- “The purchaser agrees that he or she ***shall*** **forego** any right to a refund after 90 days.”

When indicating obligation in more conversational English, we tend to use *should* instead, which is less formal than either *shall* or *must*. It is also less forceful than either, and it is used as more of a strong suggestion of what is best or most proper to do. For example:

- “Students ***should*** **hand in** their assignments before Friday.”

- “She ***should*** **apologize** for her behavior!”

- “You ***should*** **always pay** your bills on time.”

We can technically use *will* in the same way as *must, shall* and *should*, but it is even more forceful than *must* and is less commonly used; it is generally reserved for strong commands or directives, as in:

- “You ***will*** **eat** your vegetables or you won’t get any dessert!”

- “They ***will*** **agree** to the terms of the lease or face eviction.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. In American English, when can we use *shall* instead of *will* to form the **future tense**?

a) In informal speech or writing
b) When the subject is *I* or *we*

c) To express a polite invitation
d) All of the above
e) A & B only
f) B & C only

2. Which of the following modal verbs is considered the **most** polite when requesting **permission**?

a) can
b) could
c) may
d) might

3. Which of the following is **most commonly** used to indicate **obligation**?

a) must
b) shall
c) should
d) will

4. Which of the following modal verbs can be substituted for the underlined word in the following sentence?
"Excuse me, can you tell me where the nearest gas station is?"

a) will
b) could
c) would
d) All of the above
e) A & B only
f) B & C only

Semi-Modal Auxiliary Verbs

Definition

Semi-modal auxiliary verbs, often simply called **semi-modal verbs**, are verbs that *sometimes* behave like **modal auxiliary verbs**. (They are also sometimes known as **marginal modal verbs**.) Like the "proper" modal verbs, they are used with the base form of verbs (the infinitive without *to*) to create a unique meaning.

Dare, need, used to, and ought to

Not all sources agree on the complete list of semi-modal verbs, but there are four that are widely considered as the standard set: *dare, need, used to*, and *ought to*.

Dare and *need* are considered semi-modal because they can also function as main verbs, able to take nouns and **infinitives** as objects and to conjugate for person, tense, and number. *Ought to* and *used to*, while unable to be main verbs, are considered semi-modal because they are always followed by **infinitives** (compared to "true" modals, which can never be followed by infinitives).

As semi-modal verbs, these verbs are used in conjunction with "main" verbs to create a complete verb expression; they do not conjugate for third-person singular subjects; they do not have a simple past tense; and they cannot form infinitives, present participles, or past participles.

We'll look at each of these verbs individually, examining when and how they function as semi-modal verbs.

Dare

When *dare* is used as a semi-modal verb, it means "to be brave, reckless, or rude enough to do or try something." Remember, when functioning modally, it does not conjugate for person or tense. For example:

- "If he **dare** cross me again, I'll make sure he pays dearly for it."

As a semi-modal verb, *dare* more often takes *not* to form a negative statement (very rarely contracted as *daren't*), or is inverted with the subject to form an **interrogative sentence**. For example:

- "I **dare not** press the issue any further."

- “How **dare** she talk to me like that?”
- “**Dare** he meddle with the laws of nature?”
- “They **daren’t** give him a reason to be angry.”

However, with the exception of the now idiomatic phrase “How *dare* (someone),” the use of *dare* as a modal verb has become rare in modern English.

As a main verb

Dare can also be used as an intransitive main verb with the same meaning as the modal version. When it functions as a main verb, however, it is able to conjugate for person and tense, and it can be followed by a verb in either its base or infinitive form (the *to* becomes optional). For example:

- “I can’t believe he **dared** (***to***) stand up to the boss.”
- “No one **dares** (***to***) question my authority!”

When *dare* is used as a main verb, it must take the **auxiliary verb** *do* to form questions or be made negative. As we saw in the section on **primary auxiliary verbs**, it is *do*, rather than the main verb, that conjugates for tense, person, and number in this case. For example:

- “***Did*** they **dare** (***to***) go through with it?”
- “He ***doesn’t*** **dare** (***to***) argue with the principal.”

Dare can also mean “to challenge someone to (do) something that require courage, boldness, or recklessness,” in which case it must take a noun, pronoun, or infinitive as a direct object. It cannot be used modally with this meaning. For example:

- “I **dare** ***you*** to ask Suzy on a date.”
- “I’ve never been **dared** to race someone before.”

Need

Need as a semi-modal verb is almost always used in negative sentences to express a lack of obligation or necessity, either taking the adverb *not* (usually contracted as *needn’t*) or paired with a negative word or phrase, such as *never, no one, nothing,* etc. For example:

- “No one **need** know about this.”
- “He **needn’t** have called; I told him I would be late.”

- “You **needn’t** worry about my grades.”
- “Nothing **need** change simply because my father is no longer here.”

It can also be used to form interrogative sentences by inverting with the subject, as in:

- “**Need** we be concerned?”
- “**Need** I go to the market later?”

Like *dare*, though, the modal use of *need* has become quite uncommon in modern English, except in very formal speech or writing.

As a main verb

Need is much more common as a main verb. This means it conjugates for person (becoming *needs* in the third-person singular) or tense (becoming *needed*), and it uses auxiliary *did* to form negatives and questions. As a main verb, *need* can be followed by nouns, noun phrases, pronouns, **gerunds**, or infinitives. For example:

- “He **needs** that report by tomorrow.”
- “***Does*** she **need** to know where the house is?”
- “You have plenty of time, so you ***don’t*** **need** to rush.”
- “He **needed** a place to stay, so I offered him one.”

Used to

When we speak about a past habit, condition, or fact that is no longer the case, we can use the semi-modal *used to* with the base form of the verb. For example:

- “I **used to** get up early when I lived in New York.”
- “She **used to** live in Ireland.”
- “We **used to** be in a band together.”
- “This watch **used to** belong to my father.”

Uniquely among the modal and semi-modal verbs, we form the question and negative of *used to* the same way as for main verbs in the past tense—that is, by using the auxiliary *did* for the question and *did not* for the negative.

Example:

- “***Did*** you **use to** live in Manchester?”

- “I ***didn’t*** **use to** like coffee.”
- “She ***didn’t*** **use to** go to the gym every day.”

(Technically speaking, we should remove the “-d” from *used to* when forming questions and negatives, as the auxiliary verb *did* takes the past tense. Because of *to* immediately following *use*, however, the pronunciation stays the same, and many writers include the “-d” regardless. It is common to see it written both ways in modern English.)

As a main verb

A large source of confusion arises around the difference between the semi-modal verb *used to* and two similarly structured main verbs — *be used to* and *get used to*.

Be used to

When we use *be used to* with a noun, noun phrase, or the gerund of a verb, it means “to be accustomed to something.” For example:

- “I **am used to** getting up at 7 AM every morning.”
- “She **was used to** the stress by that point.”

To form the negative of *be used to*, we add *not* after the auxiliary verb *be*, which can be contracted to *isn’t, aren’t, wasn’t*, or *weren’t*. To form interrogative sentences, we invert *be* with the subject. For example:

- “I **am *not* used to living** in the city.”
- “He **was*n’t* used to** so much work.”
- “***Are*** you **used to living** with roommates?”

Get used to

Get used to has a slightly different meaning from *be used to*; *get* here means *become*. In fact, in more formal English, it is considered preferable to say *become used to* instead. In everyday speech and writing, however, *get used to* is perfectly acceptable.

We often use *get used to* in the **present continuous tense**. For example:

- “I **am getting used to** living in the city.” (I am *becoming* accustomed to living in the city.)

- “He **is getting used to** public speaking. (He is *becoming* accustomed to the act of public speaking.)

We can also use *get used to* in the **past simple tense**, but usually in negative constructions with the word *never*, as in:

- “She ***never*** **got used to** the silence of the countryside.”

Often, we use *get used to* with the modal verbs *could*, *will*, and *cannot* (or *can’t*). *Could* is used to create a hypothetical scenario, *will* creates the future tense (often paired with *never*), and *cannot* is used to mean “unable.” For example:

- “I ***can’t*** **get used to** working so many hours. I am so tired.” (I am unable to become accustomed to this.)

- “I ***could*** **get used to** doing nothing all day.” (This is something that I could find easy to do.)

- “I ***will*** **never get used to** these cramped conditions.” (At no point in the future will I become accustomed to this.)

Ought to

Ought to is considered semi-modal because, like *used to*, it ends in *to* and so makes verbs infinitive. It is commonly compared to *should* because it expresses that something is viewed as correct, preferable, or necessary—or as probable, likely, or expected. It can also be used to ask for or offer advice about something.

For example:

- “With the cost of airfare so high, in-flight meals **ought to** be free.” (It is correct or preferable that the meals be free.)

- “We **ought to** arrive in the evening.” (It is probable or expected that we’ll arrive in the evening.)

- “I think we **ought to** turn back.” (Turning back is the necessary or best course of action—worded as advice.)

- “You **ought to** see the Grand Canyon some day.” (It is my advice or recommendation for you to visit the Grand Canyon.)

When *ought to* is made negative, *not* comes between *ought* (sometimes contracted as *oughtn’t*) and *to*; it is common to omit *to* when **ought to** is used with *not*. For example:

- “You **ought** ***not*** **to** read in such dim light.”

- “We **ought*n’t*** leave the house; it isn’t safe.”

We can also form questions by inverting *ought* with the subject; this is not very common, though. Again, *to* is sometimes omitted in this form. For example:

- “**Ought** we find someplace to eat?”
- “**Ought*n’t*** she study for her exam?”
- “**Ought** they **to** be more worried about the storm?”
- “**Ought *not*** he **to** finish his homework first?”

Ought to is becoming far less common than *should* in modern English, especially in American English.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** one of the semi-modal verbs?

a) dare
b) should
c) ought to
d) need

2. Which of the following is something that semi-modal verbs **cannot** do?

a) Conjugate for third-person singular subjects
b) Come before main verbs to create unique meanings
c) Form the past tense
d) Become negative with the word *not*
e) A & B
f) A & C
g) B & C

3. In which of the following sentences is *need* used as a semi-modal verb?

a) “Nobody need hear about this disaster.”
b) “He needs to learn some respect.”
c) “I think you need a haircut.”
d) “Does she need to study more?”

4. Which is the only semi-modal verb that takes the auxiliary verb *do* to become negative?

a) dare
b) need
c) used to
d) ought to

5. Which of the following sentences does **not** use a semi-modal verb?

a) “Need I ask why this report is late?”
b) “We’d all like some more, but who dares ask?”
c) “We all used to live here when we were younger.”
d) “You oughtn’t concern yourself with this matter.”

Infinitives

Definition

An **infinitive** is the most basic form of a verb. It is “unmarked” (which means that it is not conjugated for tense or person), and it is preceded by the **particle** *to*.

Infinitives are known as **non-finite verbs**, meaning they do not express actions being performed by the subjects of clauses. Instead, infinitives function as nouns, adjectives, or adverbs to describe actions as ideas.

Infinitives are distinct from a similar construction known as **bare infinitives** or the **base forms** of verbs, which are simply infinitives without the particle *to*. Although nearly identical, we use them in different ways than “full” infinitives, which we’ll look at later in this section.

Using infinitives

Infinitives are used to express an action as a concept, rather than what is being done or performed by the subject of a clause. In this way, they can function as **nouns, adjectives**, or **adverbs**—that is, nearly any role in a sentence except that of a main verb.

Infinitives can stand on their own to complete these functions, or they can work together with their own **predicates** (any additional information that modifies or completes them) to form **infinitive phrases**. Infinitive phrases function as a nouns, adjectives, or adverbs as a single, holistic unit.

(In the examples in this section, infinitive phrases have been put in **bold**, while the infinitive verbs that begin them are in *italics*.)

Making infinitives negative

To make an infinitive or infinitive phrase negative, we use the word *not* before the infinitive. We can also put greater emphasis on *not* by placing it after *to*.*

(*This creates what is known as a **split infinitive**—an infinitive that has an adverb between *to* and the base form of the verb. While some traditional grammar guides state that this should never be done, in reality there is no such "rule" in English; it is perfectly grammatical to split an infinitive, and in many cases it sounds more natural to do so.)

Infinitives as nouns

Because infinitives and infinitive phrases can function as nouns, it means that they can be **the subject** of a clause, the **direct object** of a verb, or a **predicate noun**.

Subjects

The **subject** performs, occupies, or controls the action of the verb.

- "***To err*** is human; ***to forgive*** is divine."
- "***To study* mathematics at Harvard** was her ultimate dream."
- "***To live* in the city** means adjusting to a completely different lifestyle."

Objects

As direct objects

A **direct object** is a person or thing that directly receives the action of the verb in a clause. An infinitive that acts as the object of another verb is sometimes known as a **verb complement**.

Remember that **intransitive verbs** do **not** take direct objects, so you will only find infinitives used as the objects of **transitive verbs**.

- "I'm not going unless you agree ***to go* with me**."
- "You appear ***to be* correct**."
- "Please be quiet; I'm trying ***to study***."
- "They're attempting ***to solve* the equation**."

- “Let me know if you decide **to leave early**.”
- “We hope ***to go*** **in the near future**.”
- “We rarely manage ***to get*** **out of the house for the night**.”

As objects in reported speech

When we use **reported speech**, we often use infinitives as the direct object of a “reporting verb” to express what was said or asked in the past. For example:

- “He asked ***to help*** **us fix the car**.”
- “She said **not** ***to answer*** **the phone**.”
- “He demanded ***to speak*** **to the manager**.”
- “They offered ***to take*** **me to the airport**.”
- “I promised ***to buy*** **her a diamond ring**.”
- “He threatened ***to report*** **me to the police** if I didn’t give him back the money.”

As object complements

Certain verbs do not make sense with only a direct object, especially when that direct object is a person. More information is required about the object’s relationship with the verb to form a complete thought. This extra information is known as the **object complement**.

An infinitive can also act as an **object complement**, which is word or group of words that describe, rename, or complete the direct object of the verb. For example:

- “I don’t expect you ***to approve*** **of my decision**.”
- “She’s forcing me ***to work*** **through the weekend**.”
- “We need you ***to make*** **a few more copies**.”
- “Janet’s father wants her ***to go*** **to Harvard**.”
- “I would like the boss ***to see*** **these reports**.”
- “He persuaded me ***to marry*** **him**.”
- “They taught me (how) ***to work*** **the photocopier**.”

We often use infinitives as object complements in **reported speech** to express what someone said **to** or asked **of** someone. For example:

- “He asked me ***to help*** **him**.”

- “She told me **not *to answer* the phone**.”

Gerunds vs. Infinitives

Certain verbs can take either **gerunds** or infinitives as direct objects. In some cases, this results in no difference in meaning. For example:

Infinitive	Gerund
“I like ***to hike*** **on the weekend**.”	“I like ***hiking*** **on the weekend**.”
“She loves ***to read***.”	“She loves ***reading***.”
“They hate ***to get*** **bad news**.”	“They hate ***getting*** **bad news**.”
“I prefer ***to go out*** **on a Friday** than ***to stay*** **at home**.”	“I prefer ***going out*** **on a Friday** than ***staying*** **at home**.”

In other instances, however, the meaning of the clause is significantly changed as a result. For instance, the verbs *remember, forget, try,* and *stop* can have both infinitives and gerunds as direct objects, but the meaning changes depending on which is used. For example

Infinitive	Gerund
“I remembered ***to close*** **the window**.” (I didn’t forget to do it.)	“I remember ***closing*** **the window**.” (I clearly recall it.)
“I forgot ***to meet*** **John earlier**.” (I didn’t remember to do it.)	“I forget ***meeting*** **John earlier**.” (I don’t remember this fact even though it happened.)
“Try ***to get*** **some rest**.” (Attempt to do this.)	“Try ***getting*** **some rest**.” (Try this as a possible solution to the problem.)
“I stopped ***to drink*** **water** before bed.” (I interrupted what I was doing to drink water.)	“I stopped ***drinking*** **water** before bed.” (I don’t drink water before bed anymore.)

Predicate nouns

Predicate nouns are a subset of a larger category known as **subject complements** (including **predicate pronouns** and **predicative adjectives**), which rename or re-identify the subject after a **linking verb** (usually a form of the verb *be*). For example:

- "All I want is ***to be*** **left alone**."
- "The best thing in life is ***to spend*** **time with those you love**."
- "The best we can hope for is ***to break*** **even**."

Infinitives as adjectives

When infinitives are used as adjectives, they function in a similar way to **relative clauses** (also known as **adjective clauses**), providing more information about a noun or pronoun that they appear directly after. For example:

- "This is a good place ***to start*** **reading**." (*To start reading* modifies the noun *place*.)
- "Give your brother something ***to play*** **with**." (*To play with* modifies the pronoun *something*.)
- "Find a friend ***to help*** **you study**." (*To help you study* modifies the noun *friend*.)

Infinitives as adverbs

We can also use infinitives as adverbs to modify the main verb in a sentence, describing a reason why an action is, was, or will be done. Infinitives used in this way are often known as **infinitives of purpose**. For example:

- "I started running ***to improve*** **my health**."

We can also use the phrases *in order* and *so as* to add formal emphasis to an infinitive of purpose, as in:

- "We must leave now *in order* ***to catch*** **our train**."
- "He's been studying all week *so as* ***to improve*** **his grades**."

Note that we do not use the preposition *for* before the infinitive; we only use *for* with a noun or noun phrase to create a **prepositional phrase** that modifies the verb to describe its purpose. Consider, for example, these three sentences:

✔ “I went to the supermarket ***to buy* some bread**.” (correct—infinitive phrase)

✔ “I went to the supermarket for some bread.” (correct—prepositional phrase)

✖ I went to the supermarket **for** ***to buy* some bread**.” (incorrect—preposition used with infinitive phrase)

Lone infinitives

We can also use infinitives in this way as isolated responses to questions asking *why* something is done or is the case. For example:

- Speaker A: “Why are you going to New York?”
- Speaker B: “***To see* the Empire State Building**.”

- Speaker A: “Why did you turn on the TV?”
- Speaker B: “***To watch* the news**.”

These responses are known as **elliptical sentences**, meaning that part of the sentence has been omitted because it is implied. In this case, the implied section is “because I wanted… .” As this element is implicitly understood, we often leave it out entirely and simply use the infinitive on its own.

Infinitives vs. Base Forms (Bare Infinitives)

The **base form** of a verb is simply the infinitive without the particle *to*—like an infinitive, it is uninflected for tense and person. Because of this similarity, the base form of a verb is often known as a **bare infinitive**, and some grammar guides and writers make little distinction between the two forms.

However, infinitives and base-form verbs function differently, so it is important to distinguish between them. An infinitive can be used in a sentence as a noun, an adverb, or an adjective, but it cannot act as a true verb that expresses the action of a subject.

The base form of a verb, on the other hand, can be used in conjunction with the **auxiliary verb** *do* to become negative or to form questions. They are also used with **modal auxiliary verbs** to express things like possibility, necessity, obligation and permission, as well as to create the simple **future tense**.

Verbs that take bare infinitives

The base form is also used after the direct object of certain action verbs, such as *let, help,* and *make,* as well as after **verbs of the senses**, such as *hear, see,* and *feel*.

Let's look at some examples of these below. The bare infinitives (base forms) are in **bold**, while the main verbs are underlined and the direct objects are *italicized*:

- "Please let *me* **go** to the party, mom." (Please give me permission to go.)
- "His father makes *him* **study**." (His father forces him to study.)
- "Jack is helping *me* **clean** the garage." (Jack is cleaning the garage with me.)
- "He heard *me* **shout**." (He could that I was shouting.)
- "I saw *her* **look** in my direction." (I could see that she was looking in my direction.)
- "I felt *him* **touch** my arm." (I could feel that he touched my arm.)

(Note that these are not the only verbs that can be followed by bare infinitives.)

After had better

The base forms of verbs are also used after the phrase *had better*, which acts like the modal verb ***should*** to suggest a required or desirable action. For example:

- "You had better **clean** this up before your father gets home."
- "I think we'd better **go** home soon."

After *why*

Bare infinitives can also follow the word *why* to form questions, as in:

- "Why **study** when I already know the material by heart?"
- "Why **watch** TV when we could play outside?"

These types of questions are called **elliptical**, which, as we saw above, means that part of the sentence has been left out because it is implied. The full questions might read:

- "Why ***should I*** **study** when I already know the material by heart?"
- "Why ***would we*** **watch** TV when we could play outside?"

Since the italicized parts of these sentences can be implied, they are sometimes left out entirely.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is a distinguishing feature of **infinitives**?

a) They cannot conjugate for tense or person
b) They can function as a noun, adjective, or adverb
c) They are preceded by the word *to*
d) A & C
e) B & C
f) All of the above

2. Which of the following is **not** something an infinitive can function as?

a) The subject of a clause
b) The main verb of a clause
c) The direct object of a verb
d) An adverb modifying a verb

3. True or False: Infinitives and gerunds are always interchangeable as direct objects of verbs.

a) True
b) False

4. Identify the grammatical function of the infinitive phrase (in **bold**) in the following sentence:
"I need the employees **to work a little harder**."

a) Object complement
b) Predicate noun
c) Adjective
d) Adverb

5. Which of the following distinguishes the **base form** of a verb from the **infinitive form**?

a) It conjugates for tense or person
b) It can function as a direct object of a main verb
c) It is not preceded by the word *to*
d) A & C

e) B & C
f) All of the above

Participles

Definition

Participles are words formed from verbs that can function as adjectives or gerunds or can be used to form the **continuous** tenses and the **perfect** tenses of verbs. There are two participle forms: the **present participle** and the **past participle**.

Form

The present participle

The present participle is the “-ing” form of a verb. This verb form is always the same, whether the verb is **regular** or **irregular**. For example:

Regular verbs

Regular verb	Present Participle
apologize	**apologizing**
close	**closing**
follow	**following**
look	**looking**
remember	**remembering**

Irregular verbs

Irregular verb	Present Participle
eat	**eating**
run	**running**

sing	**singing**
think	**thinking**
write	**writing**
be	**being**

The past participle

Unlike the present participle, the past participle form changes depending on the verb. The past participle of regular verbs ends in “-ed,” and is generally the same as the simple past tense of the verb. For example:

Regular verb	Past Simple	Past Participle
apologize	apologized	**apologized**
close	closed	**closed**
follow	followed	**followed**
look	looked	**looked**
remember	remembered	**remembered**

The past participle form of irregular verbs has a variety of endings that must be memorized. Note that the past participle is usually (but not always) different from the past simple form for irregular verbs. For example:

Irregular verb	Past Simple	Past Participle
eat	ate	**eaten**
run	ran	**run**
sing	sang	**sung**
think	thought	**thought**
write	wrote	**written**

be	was/were	**been**

Using participles as adjectives and in participle phrases

Present and past participles can be used as adjectives or as part of a **participle phrase**. Participles allow us to condense two sentences into one, expressing ideas that would otherwise require relative clauses, subordinating conjunctions, etc., in a more economical way. For example:

Longer Form	Using a participle
“She soothed the baby, who was crying.”	“She soothed the **crying** baby.”
“I was oblivious to the doorbell ringing because I was singing in the shower.”	“**Singing in the shower**, I was oblivious to the doorbell ringing.”
“We finally found James, who was hiding under the bed, after hours of searching.”	“After hours of searching, we finally found James **hiding under the bed**.”

As adjectives

When we form an adjective using the *present participle*, we imply *action* on the part of the noun being modified. For example:

- “She soothed the **crying** *baby*.” (The baby is crying).
- “The **speeding** *car* crashed into the tree.” (The car was speeding.)
- “**Hugging**, *the two sisters* said goodbye to each other.” (The sisters were hugging.)

When we form an adjective using the *past participle*, on the other hand, we don’t imply action on the part of noun that it modifies. Instead, we describe a characteristic of that noun. For example:

- “I picked up the **broken** *bottle*.” (The bottle is broken.)

- “The **jumbled** *puzzle pieces* were all over the floor.” (The puzzle pieces are jumbled.)
- “Please get me a bag of **frozen** *vegetables*.” (The vegetables are frozen.)

As participle phrases

Participial phrases (sometimes known as **participial clauses**) are groups of words that contain a participle and function as adjective phrases.

Present participle phrase

If we use the present participle in a phrase, we give the clause an **active** meaning. In other words, the noun being modified is the **agent** of the action. For example:

- “**Singing in the shower**, *I* was oblivious to the doorbell ringing.” (I was singing.)
- “*James*, **hiding under the bed**, was completely silent.” (James was hiding.)

Past participle phrase

If we use the past participle, the noun being modified is either given a **passive** role in the action, or else is being described. For example:

- “*The turkey*, **burnt to a crisp**, was thrown in the garbage.”
- “*My sister*, **exhausted after a long day’s work**, has fallen asleep on the sofa.”

In the first example, *the turkey* is not the agent of the action, but is being *acted upon*; it has been burnt by the oven or by the person cooking, and so it has a passive role. In the second example, *my sister* is also not the agent of the verb *exhaust*. Instead, *exhausted* is used to describe how she feels.

Perfect participle phrase (*Having + past participle*)

When we want to emphasize that one event happened before another, we can use the structure *having + past participle*, also known as the **perfect participle**. For example:

- “**Having seen** the movie before, I wouldn’t want to see it again.”

- “**Having done** a lot of exercise this morning, we should eat a big lunch.”
- “She was exhausted, **having stayed up** all night watching TV.”

Sentence Placement

Initial position

When a participle or participle phrase occurs in the initial position, it is usually separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma. For example:

- “**Running to the car**, the boy welcomed his father home after three months away.”
- “**Singing in the shower**, I was oblivious to the doorbell ringing.”
- “**Scared**, my sister slept with the light on.”

Middle position

When the participle or phrase occurs in the middle position, and is not essential to the meaning of the sentence, it should be set apart from the rest of the sentence by two commas. For example:

- “My sister, **exhausted**, has fallen asleep on the sofa.”
- “James, **hiding under the bed**, was completely silent.”
- “The turkey, **burnt to a crisp**, was thrown in the garbage.”

However, if it occurs in the middle position and is essential to the meaning of the sentence, it should **not** be set apart by commas. For example:

- “The students **finished with their work** may have a break.”
- “Jackets **left behind** will be donated.”
- “Participants **breaking the rules** will be removed from the competition.”

Final position

If the participle or phrase occurs in the final position immediately after the noun that it modifies, it doesn’t need a comma. For example:

- “We looked for hours and finally found *James* **hiding**.”
- “The cat had no interest in *the poor dog* **wagging its tail**.”
- “I was in such a hurry I didn’t notice *my jacket* **left on the table**.”

However, when it occurs in final position but **not** immediately after the noun that it modifies, it **does** need a comma. For example:

- "It was obvious *he* really enjoyed dinner, **having had a second helping of dessert**."
- "*My sister* cried as she packed up her belongings, **saddened at the idea of moving out of her childhood home**."
- "*Most of the puzzle pieces* have disappeared, **misplaced after so many years**."

Common mistakes

When we use participles as adjectives, it's important that the noun modified is clearly stated and that the participle appears as close to it as possible. Otherwise, we run the risk of errors known as **misplaced modifiers** and **dangling modifiers**.

Misplaced modifier

A misplaced modifier can occur when there is more than one noun in the sentence. If we don't place the participle close enough to the noun that it modifies, it may seem that it modifies another noun. For example:

- "**Terrified after watching a scary movie**, *my father* had to comfort *my little sister*."

In the above sentence, the participle phrase *terrified after watching a scary movie* is supposed to modify *my little sister*. However, since *my father* appears closer to the participle phrase, it seems it is the father that is terrified. The sentence should be rewritten to correct the misplaced modifier. For example:

- "My father had to comfort my sister, terrified after watching a scary movie."

or

- "**Terrified after watching a scary movie**, *my sister* had to be comforted by *my father*."

or

- "*My sister*, **terrified after watching a scary movie**, had to be comforted by *my father*."

Dangling modifier

A dangling modifier occurs when we don’t clearly state the noun that is supposed to be modified by the participle. For example:

- “**Walking down the road**, the birds were singing.”

Because the sentence does not state who was walking down the road, is seems that it was *the birds*, which probably is not the intended meaning. The sentence needs to be rewritten to correct the dangling modifier. For example:

- “**Walking down the road**, *I* heard the birds singing.”

Using participles as gerunds

The present participle is also used to create **gerunds**. A gerund is a form of a verb that can be used as a noun, functioning as a **subject**, **complement**, or **object** of a sentence. For example:

- “**Swimming** is my favorite sport.” (subject)
- “My brother’s favorite sport is **cycling**.” (complement)
- “Do you enjoy **running**?” (object)

Using participles in verb tenses

Both present and past participles are used along with auxiliary verbs to form multi-part verb tenses.

The present participle in verb tenses

The present participle is used to form the past, present, and future **continuous tenses**.

Present Continuous

The **present continuous tense** is mainly used for stating an action that is taking place at the moment of speaking, or an action that will take place in the near future. It is formed using the present tense of the auxiliary verb *be* + the present participle of the main verb. For example:

- “I**’m singing**.”
- “He**’s running**.”
- “We**’re hiding**.”

Past Continuous

The **past continuous tense** is primarily used to describe an action that took place over a period of time in the past, especially if interrupted by another action. It is formed using *was* (the past tense of the auxiliary verb *be*) + the present participle of the main verb. For example:

- “I **was singing** in the shower when the doorbell rang.”
- “She **was eating** dinner when I called.”
- “They **were helping** their mom clean the house all day.”

Present perfect continuous

The **present perfect continuous tense** is mainly used to describe an action that has recently taken place and still has an effect on the present. It places the emphasis on the duration of the action rather than the result. It is formed using *have/has* + *been* + the present participle form of the main verb. For example:

- “I **have been singing** loudly, so my throat’s sore.”
- “I think she**’s been crying**—her eyes are really red.”
- “They**’ve been running** for 20 minutes already.”

Past perfect continuous

The **past perfect continuous tense** is used to describe an action that began in the past, and continued until another point in the past. It is formed using *had* + *been* + the present participle form of the main verb. For example:

- “They **had been singing** for two hours when the concert finished.”
- “She **had been waiting** for a bus for a long time when I saw her.”
- “I **had been reading** my book for about 20 minutes when I realized it was time to leave.”

Future Continuous

The **future continuous tense** is used to describe an action that will be in progress at a certain point in the future. It is formed using *will* + *be* + the present participle form of the main verb. For example:

- “Tomorrow at eight o’clock I **will be waiting** for my flight.”

- “Don’t call at six o’clock because they**’ll be having dinner**.”
- “She**’ll be driving** all afternoon tomorrow.”

Future Perfect Continuous

The **future perfect continuous tense** is used to describe an action that will continue up until a certain point in the future. It emphasizes the duration of the action, and is formed using *will* + *have* + *been* + the present participle form of the main verb. For example:

- “At eight o'clock I**’ll have been waiting** here for an hour.”
- “She**’ll have been living** in New York City for 10 years next month.”
- “We **will have been working** on this project for three weeks as of tomorrow.”

The past participle in verb tenses

The past participle is used in forming the present, past, and future **simple perfect tenses**.

Present Perfect

The **present perfect tense** is used to describe an action or experience in the recent past that still has an effect on the present. It is similar to the present perfect continuous, but instead of placing the emphasis on the duration of the action, it subtly emphasizes the result. It is formed using *have/has* + the past participle form of the main verb. For example:

- “I **have eaten** already.”
- “I**’ve** spent all my money.”
- “She **hasn’t been** here before.”

Past Perfect

The **past perfect tense** is used to describe an action that was completed in the past, prior to another past action. It is formed using *had* + the past participle form of the main verb. For example:

- “I **had eaten** when she called.”
- “Why did you visit Las Vegas again when you **had been** there before?”
- “She **had cooked** dinner and had it waiting on the table when we got home.”

Future perfect

The **future perfect tense** is used to describe an action that will be completed at a certain point in the future. It is formed using *will* + *have* + the past participle form of the main verb. For example:

- “When you get here, we**’ll have eaten** already.”
- “They**’ll have finished** by late tonight.”
- “The baby **will have woken up** by six o’clock tomorrow morning.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Participles are used to form ________.

a) adjectives
b) gerunds
c) verb tenses
d) A & B
e) all of the above

2. The present participle ends in ________.

a) “-ed”
b) “-ing”
c) A & B
d) none of the above

3. Which of the following words is **not** a past participle?

a) been
b) eaten
c) ran
d) sung

4. Complete the following sentence:
“________ under the bed, the dog was terrified of the thunder.”

a) Having hiding
b) Have hidden
c) Hid

d) Hiding

5. Which of the following sentences is punctuated **correctly**?
a) “James, scared he was going to fail the test, stayed up all night studying.”
b) “James scared he was going to fail the test, stayed up all night studying.”
c) “James, scared he was going to fail the test stayed up all night studying.”
d) “James scared he was going to fail, the test stayed up all night studying.”

Action Verbs

Definition

Action verbs (also known as **dynamic verbs**) are verbs that are used to explain what the subject of a sentence is actively doing. For example, *ran, swim, jump, move, look,* and *catch* are all action verbs. Here are some examples of action verbs being used in sentences:

- “The man **stretched** his arm before he **threw** the baseball.”
- “The kittens **leaped** from the table to the chair.”
- “After she **dove** into the water, the swimmer **raced** to the other side of the pool as fast as she could.”
- “A boy **rolled** down the hill on a skateboard.”
- “Before it **stopped** for a break, the horse **ran** for five miles.”

Importance to sentences

Consider the following sentences:

- “The train **is** on the track.”
- “The gazelles **are** in the field.”

Neither of these sentences contains a verb that describes an *action* the subject is taking. Instead, they use the **stative verb** *be* to describe the conditions or states of being of the subjects. However, adding action verbs helps to identify what the subject of the sentence is actively doing:

- “The train **raced** along the track.”
- “The gazelles **are galloping** in the field.”

Action verbs can also dramatically impact the meaning of the sentence. They not only say what the subject is doing, but can also demonstrate the manner in which the subject is doing it. For example, consider the following sentence:

- “Susie **sat** on the couch at the end of her work day.”

The action verb *sat* lets the reader know that Susie moved from a standing position to a sitting position on her couch. The following sentence also tells the reader this information, but the different choice of action verb provides more meaning to the sentence:

- “Susie **collapsed** onto her couch at the end of the work day.”

In this sentence, the action verb *collapsed* not only indicates that Susie moved from a standing position to a resting position, but that the transition was much more dramatic. This could be used to illustrate that Susie was very tired or perhaps not feeling well. In any case, it provides a more descriptive action than *sat*.

Here is another example of similar action verbs providing different information:

- “The man **tossed** the stone to the side of the path.”
- “The man ***heaved*** the stone to the side of the path.”

In both of the above sentences, the man is moving the stone off the path. However, the action verb *tossed* implies that the stone was light enough to throw, while *heaved* indicates that the stone was very heavy. As you can see, by changing the action verb, we have significantly changed the sentence’s meaning.

Difference from other verb types

All sentences require a verb to be complete, but it does not have to be an action verb: there are also stative verbs, linking verbs, and auxiliary verbs.

Stative verbs

Unlike action verbs, **stative verbs** indicate the state or condition of the subject, such as **thoughts or opinions** (*agree, recognize, doubt*), **possession** (*own, possess, belong, have*), **emotion** (*love, hate, like, fear, enjoy*), or **senses** (*seem, look, hear, taste, feel*).

We can see how no action is being described by these verbs in the following examples:

- “I **own** 10 cars.”
- “The kids **love** to play outside in the summer.”

- “Janet **feels** that we should go home.”

You may have noticed that some of the stative verbs can function as action verbs in certain contexts. In this case, a simplified rule for identifying if a verb is stative or active is to conjugate the verb into one of the continuous tenses (by using its **present participle**) and see if the sentence still makes sense.

For example:

✔ “I **own** 10 cars.”
✖ “I **am owning** 10 cars.” (incorrect—stative verb)

✔ “I **see** your point.”
✖ “I **am seeing** your point.” (incorrect—stative verb)

However:

✔ “I **am seeing** a movie later.” (correct—action verb)

(There are some exceptions and peculiarities in English around this rule, but it is a good starting point for differentiating stative and action verbs. Go to the section on **Stative Verbs** to learn more.)

Linking verbs

Linking verbs are a subset of the stative verbs we looked at above—they also describe condition or state as opposed to an action. Linking verbs are used to connect a subject to an adjective or phrase that describes it. For example:

- “She **is** smart.”
- “They **seem** very strong.”
- “This soup **tastes** funny.”

Auxiliary verbs

Auxiliary verbs are verbs that precede stative, linking, or action verbs to help complete their meaning. For example:

- “They **should** *run* faster.”
- “You **can** *see* the lake from the porch on the lake house.”
- “I **have been** *thinking* about a new method for the project.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following words is an action verb?

a) is
b) can
b) jump
d) shall

2. Identify the action verb in the following sentence.
“I think the man who delivers our mail is cute.”

a) think
b) is
c) who
d) delivers

3. Which of the following sentences does **not** contain an action verb?

a) “I hope to possess my own company some day.”
b) “He jumped from the rooftop into the pool.”
c) “She has been smiling at me from across the classroom.”
d) “Let’s drive to the mountains for the weekend.”

4. Action verbs are also known as which of the following?

a) stylistic verbs
b) state verbs
c) dynamic verbs
d) holding verbs

Stative Verbs

Definition

Stative verbs (also known as **state verbs**) are verbs that describe a static condition, situation, or state of being. They are contrasted with **action verbs** (also called **dynamic verbs**), which describe an active, dynamic action that can be performed by a person or thing.

Stative verbs can be in the present, past, or future tense; however, because they describe static conditions, they are usually unable to progress through time, and they therefore cannot be used when forming the **continuous** or **progressive**

forms of verb tenses. For this reason, they are sometimes referred to as **non-continuous verbs** or **non-progressive verbs**.

However, some stative verbs *can* be used in a continuous tense in certain situations, as when describing a temporary state that has begun and will end. This is becoming more common in modern English, and the prescriptive rule that stative verbs can never be continuous is becoming less strict. We'll look at some of these exceptions in the sections below.

Types of stative verbs

Linking verbs are usually used as stative verbs; these include the verb *be* and the **verbs of the senses**. Other verbs that are considered stative are those that express emotions, possession, cognition, and states or qualities.

Below, we'll look at common examples of different types of stative verbs. As we will see, certain verbs can be either dynamic or stative, depending on their use and context in a sentence.

(It's important to note that the sections below do not contain exhaustive lists of stative verbs; they are only meant to provide illustrative examples.)

To be

The verb *be* is the most common linking verb. It is used for describing general characterizations, sensations, measurements, location, or to rename the subject.

For example:

- "You **are** ***wrong***."
- "It **was** ***hot*** yesterday."
- "I **am not** ***hungry***."
- "They **were** ***confused***."
- "I can tell that you **are** ***upset***."
- "Our daughter **is** ***one week old***."
- "She **is** ***five feet tall***."
- "John **is** ***in the other room***."
- "This **is** *a lost cause*."

Using the continuous form

However, the linking verb *be* can function as an action verb when it is used to mean "to behave." We can test whether *be* is acting as a stative or action verb by putting it into one of the continuous tenses. For example:

✔ "The children **are being *too noisy***." (Correct—it is an **action verb**.)

✖ "The children **are being *outside***." (Incorrect—it is a **stative verb**.)

Sense verbs

Verbs of the senses, or "**sense verbs**" for short, are used to indicate perceptions based on physical or mental sensations. The sense verbs are:

- taste
- smell
- sound
- seem
- feel
- look
- appear

When sense verbs are used as linking verbs, they merely relate the means by which the speaker has arrived at such a sensation about the subject. We pair them with **predicative adjectives**.

For example:

- "I **feel *terrible*** today."
- "You **sound *tired***."
- "She didn't **sound *Irish***."
- "You **look *fabulous*** today."
- "He doesn't **look *very happy***."
- "This doesn't **seem *right***."
- "The car **appears *OK***, but I'll have to drive it to be sure."
- "That **smells *nice***."
- "This milk **tastes *strange***."

Using the continuous form

Note, however, that some of the sense verbs can take the continuous tense to describe a temporary state in some contexts; they are more common in more casual speech and writing. For example:

- “You **are looking** great, Suzy!”
- “It **is seeming** less likely by the day that we will succeed.”

The sense verb *feel* is unique, though, in that it is very often used in the continuous form when talking about one’s or someone else’s health, as in:

- “I**’m not feeling** well at all.”
- “**Are** you **feeling** OK, John?”

Certain sense verbs also function as **action verbs** in other contexts, and these can take the continuous form. For example:

- “I **was feeling** gently around the table in the dark.”
- “The guards **are sounding** the alarm!”
- “What’s that delicious food I **am smelling**?”
- “He **was looking** across the table at me.”
- “Birds **have been appearing** out of nowhere.”
- “He **is tasting** the soup to decide whether it need salt.”

Verbs of emotion

Verbs that describe our emotions about something are also considered stative. These **transitive verbs** take nouns, noun phrases, **gerunds**, and sometimes **infinitives** as their objects. Here are some common examples using stative verbs of emotion:

- “She **likes** old movies.”
- “My son **loves** to read.”
- “I **enjoy** walking along the beach.”
- “I **hate** to eat dinner alone.”
- “The kids **dislike** sharing their toys.”
- “I **prefer** salad to French fries.”
- “I **don’t mind** eating vegetables.”

Most of the time, a verb of emotion can take either a gerund or an infinitive with little to no difference in meaning. However, an infinitive sometimes refers to a potential activity, while a gerund refers to an activity in general.

Other verbs of emotion, such as *enjoy* or *don’t mind*, **can’t** take the infinitive at all:

✖ “I **enjoy to play** tennis.” (incorrect)
✔ “I **enjoy playing** tennis.” (correct)

✖ “I **don’t mind to work** on my own.” (incorrect)
✔ “I **don’t mind working** on my own.” (correct)

Using the continuous form

As with the sense verbs, we can sometimes use verbs of emotion in the continuous form to describe an ongoing but temporary sensation. However, such uses are generally quite informal. For example:

- “We **are loving** this neighborhood.”
- “I**’m liking** our chances of winning the championship.”
- “I**’m hating** the second season of this show.”

Although *enjoy* is a verb of emotion, it is often used in the continuous form and is not considered informal. For instance:

- “He **is enjoying** his newfound wealth.”
- “**Are** you **enjoying** your meal?”

However, there are still some verbs of emotion that generally **do not** take a continuous form, as in:

✖ “She **is preferring** her old school.” (incorrect)

Verbs of possession and attribution

Possession and attribution are static actions, not dynamic ones. Verbs that refer to ownership are considered stative and do not take the continuous form. For example:

- “I **have** a large house.”
- “She **owns** three cars.”
- “That stereo **belongs** to me.”
- “They **have** a large family.”
- “He **holds** several postgraduate degrees.”
- “She **possesses** a great wealth of knowledge.”

Using the continuous form

We often find some of these verbs used in the continuous forms, but their meanings are different and they are functioning as action verbs instead, as in:

• "You**'re not holding** on to the hammer tight enough!" (*Hold* means "to grip with one's hands" in this context.)

• "He thinks that a ghost **is possessing** him." (*Possess* means "to gain control or power over" in this context.)

• "She**'s having** a baby in a few months." (*Have* means "to give birth to" in this context.)

• "They**'re having** a party next door." (*Have* means "to arrange or carry out" in this context.)

However, if the verb is indicating possession or attribution, we cannot use it in a continuous form:

- ✖ "I **am having** a large house." (incorrect)
- ✖ "She **is owning** three cars." (incorrect)
- ✖ "That stereo **is belonging** to me." (incorrect)
- ✖ "They **are having** a large family." (incorrect)
- ✖ "He **is holding** several postgraduate degrees." (incorrect)
- ✖ "She **is possessing** a great wealth of knowledge." (incorrect)

Verbs of cognition

Verbs of mental cognition, such as *understand, know, recognize,*, or *think*, are generally used as stative verbs and do not take continuous forms. For example:

✔ "I **understand** the issue." (correct)
✖ "I **am understanding** the issue." (incorrect)

✔ "She **knows** Janet very well." (correct)
✖ "She **is knowing** Janet very well." (incorrect)

Using the continuous form

Some verbs of cognition can be stative or dynamic, depending on the context. If they can correctly be used in a continuous form, they are expressing a dynamic action. For example:

- “I **consider** my options before I make a decision.”
✔ “I **am considering** my options before I make a decision.” (correct—action verb)

- “I **consider** myself a rational person.”
✖ “I **am considering** myself a rational person.” (incorrect—stative verb)

- “They **thought** of an answer.”
✔ “They **were thinking** of an answer.” (correct—action verb)

The stative verb *understand*, however, has some informal uses in which the continuous form is often considered acceptable, as in:

- “I’m sorry, I**’m not understanding** your question.”

- **Am** I **understanding** you correctly?”

Verbs of states or qualities

Besides the linking verb *be* and the verbs of the senses, we can use other verbs, such as *weigh, depend, involve, owe*, or *consist*, to describe the state or qualities of something. For example:

✔ “He **weighs** 160 pounds.” (correct)
✖ “He **is weighing** 160 pounds.” (incorrect)

✖ “This report **involves** multiple sites across the world.” (correct)
✖ “This report **is involving** multiple sites across the world.” (incorrect)

✔ “Your happiness **depends** on doing something you enjoy.” (correct)
✖ “Your happiness **is depending** on doing something you enjoy.” (incorrect)

✔ “John **owes** me 20 dollars!” (correct)
✖ “John **is owing** me 20 dollars!” (incorrect)

✔ “The book **consists** of research from several prominent scientists.” (correct)
✖ “The book **is consisting** of research from several prominent scientists.” (incorrect)

Using the continuous form

Some of these verbs can be dynamic or stative, depending on the context and the way they are used. When the verb is describing an attribute of the subject, it functions as stative verb (as we saw above). When the verb describes an action taken by the subject, though, it is functioning as an action verb, as in:

- “He **is weighing** each bag before delivery.”
- “I **am involving** a number of people in this project.”

The **phrasal verb** *depend on*, however, is always stative, but we often find it being used in the continuous form, especially when its subject is a person. For instance:

- “We **are depending** on you to get this done in time.”

Continuous Forms vs. Gerunds

With so much emphasis placed on whether or not a stative verb is able to use one of the continuous forms, it is important to distinguish between **continuous forms** and **gerunds**.

The continuous (or progressive) forms refer to six specific verb tenses: **present continuous tense**, **present perfect continuous tense**, **past continuous tense**, **past perfect continuous tense**, **future continuous tense**, and **future perfect continuous tense**. These all use the **present participles** of verbs to express an action that is continuously (or **progressively**) happening. Generally speaking, only **action verbs** can take the continuous forms. (Although, as we’ve seen above, there are many exceptions to and interpretations of this rule.)

Gerunds, on the other hand, refer to the “-ing” form of the verb when it is used as a noun. When a gerund takes additional information as part of its **predicate**, the entire phrase (known as a **gerund phrase**) functions as a noun. Any verb, even a stative one, can be used as a gerund. For example:

- “**Knowing your own weaknesses** will help you become stronger.”
- “I enjoy **being in Paris**.”
- “What I like most is **reading in a quiet room**.”
- “**Loving one’s work** is a rare but wonderful accomplishment.”

Because the gerund and present participle of a verb look identical, it can often be confusing to determine how a verb is behaving. However, just remember that if the verb and its constituent parts are functioning as a noun would in a sentence, then it is a gerund; if it is describing an action that the subject is performing, then it is a present participle used to create a continuous tense.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is the function of a stative verb?

a) To describe a dynamic action taken by the subject
b) To describe a condition that must be met for something to happen
c) To describe the subject's state of being
d) To modify the meaning of other verbs

2. **In general**, which of the following is something a stative verb **cannot** do?

a) Be used as a gerund
b) Be used in a continuous form
c) Be used in the future tense
d) Take a direct object

3. Which of the following **cannot** be used as a stative verb?

a) think
b) seem
c) exercise
d) have

4. Which of the following is **not** another name for stative verbs?

a) State verbs
b) Non-continuous verbs
c) Non-progressive verbs
d) Non-finite verbs

5. True or False: The linking verb *be* is **always** considered a stative verb?

a) True
b) False

Linking Verbs

Definition

Linking verbs (also known as **copulas** or **copular verbs**) are used to describe the state of being of the subject of a clause. Unlike **action verbs** (also called **dynamic verbs**), they connect the subject to the predicate of the clause without expressing any action.

To be

The verb *to be* is the most common linking verb. Unique among English verbs, *be* has eight different conjugations: *be, am, is, are, was, were, been,* and *being*. It can link the subject to an adjective (known as a **predicative adjective**) that describes it, or to a noun, noun phrase, or pronoun that renames it. These are collectively known as **subject complements**.

General descriptions

We can use nearly any adjective after *be* to describe the subject. For example:

- “You **are *wrong***.”
- “It **is *cold*** today.”
- “It **was *hot*** yesterday.”
- “The team **is *terrible*** this year.”
- “They **were *fortunate*** to have won.”
- “She has **been *so stubborn***.”
- “He **is *really annoying***.”

Physical or emotional sensations

Be is very often used to describe a sensation belonging to the subject. These can be physical, as in:

- “I **am *cold***.”
- “We **are *thirsty***.”
- “They **were *tired***.”

Be can also describe emotional sensations:

- “He **is *sad***.”
- “He has **been *anxious*** lately.”
- “I can tell that you **are *upset***.”

Precise physical descriptions

Be is also used for specific physical descriptions of the subject, such as exact age, weight, or height.

Age

When we describe a subject's age, we can express it simply as a number, as in:

- "I **am *32***."
- "Our daughter **is *one***."

We can also use a unit of time between the number and the adjective *old*, as in:

- "I **am *32 years old***."
- "Our daughter **is *one week old***."

(However, we cannot use only the number and *years* or the number and *old*—"I am 32 years" and "Our daughter is one old" are both incorrect.)

Height

For height, we usually use the number, the unit, and the adjective *tall* all together, as in:

- "They **are *five feet tall***."
- "He **is *two meters tall***."

If we are using feet and inches as our units, there are a number of ways that we can write the sentence without using the adjective *tall*. These are especially prevalent in informal English. For example:

- "He **is *six foot***."
- "She **is *five foot three***."
- "I **am *five feet, three inches***."

Weight

When describing the subject's weight with *be*, we only use the number + the unit of measurement, as in:

- "I **am *185 pounds***."
- "This brick **is *four kilograms***."

With prepositional phrases

A linking verb can also be followed by a **prepositional phrase** that acts as an adjective to describe the subject. These usually describe the subject's location, though they can be used to provide other descriptions as well. For example:

- “John **is *in the other room***.” (John is physically located in the other room.)
- “I will **be *away from the office*** this week.” (I will not be present in the office this week.)
- “They **are *against this plan***.” (They do not agree with or support this plan.)

Renaming the subject

We can also follow the linking verb *be* with a predicate noun, noun phrase, or pronoun that renames or re-identifies the subject. These add a descriptive element, without directly functioning as adjectives. For example:

- “She **is** *a bully*.”
- “That**’s** *him*; that**’s** *the man we were looking for*.”
- “They **are** *a lost cause*.”
- “I have **been** *a mess* lately.”

Be as an auxiliary verb

We must be careful not to confuse how *be* functions as a linking verb with how it functions as an **auxiliary verb**. When it is used as an auxiliary, *be* is no longer an independent verb describing the subject of the sentence. Instead, it helps other verbs to create the continuous tenses or to change the voice of the writing.

Creating verb tenses

Be frequently functions as an auxiliary verb by combining with the **present participle** of a verb to form one of the continuous tenses. For example:

- “I ***am*** **listening** to you.” (**present continuous tense**)
- “She ***was*** **working** very hard.” (**past continuous tense**)
- “They **will *be*** **waiting** for you at the airport.” (**future continuous tense**)

Passive voice

We can also use *be* as an auxiliary to create the **passive voice**. For example:

- “The book ***was*** **written** by an anonymous author.”
- “The victory **will *be*** **savored** for years.”

- “The hospitals ***were*** **built** in 1805.”

Sense verbs

Certain verbs are used to indicate perceptions, opinions, or bodily sensations. These are known as **verbs of the senses**, or “**sense verbs**” for short. The sense verbs are:

- **taste**
- **smell**
- **sound**
- **seem**
- **feel**
- **look**
- **appear**

Sense verbs merely relate the means by which the speaker has arrived at such a sensation about the subject. When we use them like this, they are functioning as linking verbs (rather than **action verbs**) and we pair them with predicative adjectives. (However, unlike *be*, we do not follow sense verbs with predicative nouns, noun phrases, or pronouns.)

For example:

- “I **feel** ***terrible*** today.” (A feeling inside of being very unwell.)
- “You **sound** ***tired***.” (A perception of tiredness in your voice.)
- “She didn’t **sound** ***Italian***.” (An opinion based on the way her voice sounds.)
- “You **look** ***fabulous*** today.” (This is my opinion when I look at you.)
- “He doesn’t **look** ***very happy***.” (This is my opinion based on what he looks like. Note that the adverb *very* is modifying the adjective *happy*, not the verb *look*.)
- “This doesn’t **feel** ***right***.” (An opinion or perception of something not being as it should.)
- “The car **appears** ***OK***, but I’ll have to drive it to be sure.” (From what I can see, the car looks like it’s in good condition.)
- “That **smells** ***nice***.” (Sensation of a pleasant aroma.)
- “This milk **tastes** ***funny****.” (Sensation of an odd or unpleasant taste.)

(**The adjective funny has two meanings. It can describe something that makes you laugh, or something that is strange, unpleasant, dubious, or not as it should* *be. It carries the latter meaning in the above example.*)

If any of these verbs were used as action verbs, they could no longer be followed by an adjective—they would instead be modified by an adverb. For example:

- "I **felt** ***gently*** around the table in the dark." (Describes the action of feeling with one's hand.)
- "He **looked** ***quickly*** to the right." (Describes the action of looking in a certain direction.)
- "The car **appeared** ***out of nowhere***." (Describes the action of coming into sight, using a **prepositional phrase** as an adverb.)
- "Yes, you **heard** ***right***!" (*Right* in this case is an adverb meaning "accurately or correctly.")

Verbs of progression

Verbs that show progression, growth, or development are also often used as linking verbs. *Become* is a prime example of this kind of verb—it links an adjective that describes a development or progression by the subject. Here are some other verbs that can function as linking verbs in a similar way:

- **get**
- **grow**
- **prove**
- **remain**
- **turn**

As with the sense verbs, these can be followed by an adjective that describes the subject. For example:

- "The crowd **grew** ***quiet***."
- "The kids are **becoming** ***restless***."
- "I hope you **get** ***well*** soon."
- "Try to **remain** ***upbeat***."
- "Hopefully things don't **turn** ***ugly***."

These verbs can sometimes be followed by nouns, noun phrases, or pronouns that rename or re-identify the subject, as in:

- "The leader **became** ***a dictator*** after so many years in power."
- "He'll always **remain** ***my friend***."

- “They have **proven** ***valuable allies***.”

Linking verbs vs. action verbs

The verbs *be*, *seem*, and *become* are always used as linking verbs (except when *be* is an **auxiliary verb**, as we looked at already). However, the other linking verbs all have the capacity to behave as action verbs in a sentence. Sometimes it is tricky to know whether a verb is functioning as a linking verb or as an action verb, but there are ways that we can be sure.

Checking the predicate

The predicate of a linking verb is, by definition, an adjective, noun, noun phrase, or pronoun that directly describes, renames, or re-identifies the subject of the clause.

If we want to see if a verb is functioning as a linking verb, we can simply check whether the predicate that follows is describing the subject. If it is, then it is a linking verb; if it is not, then it is functioning as an action verb. For example:

- “He **looked** *unwell yesterday*.” (Linking verb—the predicate *unwell yesterday* describes the subject of the clause, *he*.)
- “He **looked** *quickly to the right*.” (Action verb—the predicate *quickly to the right* describes the action of the verb.)

- “I hope you **get** *better soon*.” (Linking verb—the predicate *better soon* describes the subject of the clause, *you*.)
- “Would you please **get** *a glass of water* for me?” (Action verb—the predicate *a glass of water* is the direct object of the verb.)

Replacing the verb with *be*

If we are still not certain about the kind of verb we’re dealing with, we can also try replacing the verb in question with *be*. Because *be* is only a linking verb when it functions on its own, the resulting sentence will only make sense if the original verb was also a linking verb.

Let’s look at the two sets of examples above, this time replacing the verb in each case with *be*:

- “He **looked** unwell yesterday.”
- “He **was** unwell yesterday.” (The sentence makes sense, so the verb *looked* was a linking verb.)

- “He **looked** *quickly to the right*.”
- “He **was** *quickly to the right*.” (The sentence no longer makes sense, so the verb *looked* was an action verb.)

- “I hope you **get** *better soon*.”
- “I hope you **are** *better soon*.” (The sentence makes sense, so the verb *get* was a linking verb.)

- “Would you please **get** *a glass of water* for me?”
- “Would you please **are** *a glass of water* for me?” (The sentence no longer makes sense, so the verb *get* was an action verb.)

Sources of confusion – Good vs. Well

A common stumbling block for native speakers and learners of English alike is the correct usage of *good* versus *well*.

In most instances, *good* is an attributive adjective directly describing a noun, while *well* is an adverb describing a verb, adjective, or other adverb. For example:

- “He is a *good driver*.”

- “She *writes well*.”

We cannot use *good* and *well* interchangeably in these instances, and we can see immediately that the following would be incorrect:

✖ “He is a **well** driver.”

✖ “She writes **good**.”

However, *well* can also function as a predicative adjective, where it usually means “healthy” or “not ill.” We use it in this sense after linking verbs such as *be*, *get*, or the sense verbs we looked above:

- “Jenny **looks *well*** lately.”
- “**Get *well*** soon!”

In these examples, *well* does not modify the verbs, but rather describes the subjects of the clauses (implied in the second example).

Good can be used as a predicative adjective as well, meaning “of a high or satisfactory quality.” This can be used after linking verbs to talk about an opinion of something, an emotional state, or general well-being (as opposed to physical health, specifically). For example:

- “The movie **was *good***.” (opinion of the quality of the movie)

- “I’m **feeling** ***good*** about my chances!” (emotional state)
- “Janet **looks** ***good*** lately.” (opinion of Janet’s appearance)
- A: “How are you, Bob?” B: “**I’m** ***good***, thanks!” (general well-being)

The last example is perfectly correct, and it is very frequently used as a stock response to the question “How are you?” You could also say “I’m well,” and no one is likely to take issue with it. However, if someone asks how you are after an illness or injury, for instance, it would be better to respond with “I’m well.”

If saying “I’m good” still does not sound quite right to you, you could also say “I am *doing well*,” in which case *well* is used adverbially once more.

You can learn more about such adjective/adverb oddities in the **irregular adverbs** section of the chapter on **Adverbs**.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is described or modified by the predicate of a linking verb?

a) The verb
b) The direct object of the verb
c) The subject of the verb
d) The clause

2. A prepositional phrase that follows a linking verb does which of the following?

a) Acts as an adverb modifying the verb
b) Acts as an adjective modifying the subject
c) Acts as an adjective modifying the direct object of the verb
d) Acts as an adverb modifying the entire clause

3. Which of the following can be the predicate of a linking verb of the **senses**?

a) A predicative adjective
b) A predicate noun
c) An adverb
d) A prepositional phrase

4. Which of the following can be the predicate of a linking verb of **progression**?

a) A predicative adjective
b) A predicate noun
c) An adverb
d) A & B
e) A & C
f) B & C

5. What **kind** of linking verb is used in the following sentence?
"I'm not sure why, but David seems a bit unhappy today."

a) *To be*
b) Sense verb
c) Verb of progression
d) None of the above

6. If we are unsure whether a verb is an action verb or a linking verb, which **kind** of verb can we use as a subsitute to check?

a) *To be*
b) Sense verb
c) Verb of progression
d) None of the above

Light Verbs

Definition

Light verbs (also known as **delexical verbs, thin verbs, semantically weak verbs**, or **empty verbs**) are verbs that do not carry unique meaning on their own, but instead rely on another word or words that follow them to become meaningful.

Because of this, light verbs can have a great variety of meanings, depending on the word(s) with which they are paired. Sometimes, the meaning of different light verbs can overlap if they share a common **predicate**.

Common examples of light verbs include *do*, *have*, *make*, *get*, *take*, and *give*, though there are others that can work the same way.

Using Light Verbs

Light verbs function by pairing with a word or words (usually, but not always, a noun or noun phrase) to achieve their meaning. The verb itself does not contribute very much meaning to the sentence; rather, we know what is meant by the word it's paired with. For example:

- "***Do*** your **homework**!"
- "We ***did*** some **jumping jacks** to warm up."
- "I hope you ***do*** **well** on your exam."
- "Why don't we ***have*** **something** to eat?"
- "I ***took*** a **shower** before breakfast."
- "She's ***taking*** a **nap** right now."
- "Do you ***take*** **sugar** in your coffee?"
- "***Give*** me a **break**!"
- "***Give*** your father a **kiss** before you go to bed."
- "I ***get*** so many **emails** every day."
- "Let's try to ***get warm*** by the fire."
- "Stop ***making*** such a **fuss**!"
- "Be sure to ***make*** your **bed** after you get up in the morning."

In each of these examples, the verb itself does not describe a specific, unique action. We only know what's happening because of the word or words that are collocated with the verb.

Shared meaning

In some cases, we can even use different light verbs to achieve the same or very similar meaning; this is particularly true for the verbs *have* and *take*. For example:

- "I'm going to ***have*** a **shower**."
- "I'm going to ***take*** a **shower**."

- "OK, everyone, let's ***have*** **lunch**!"
- "OK, everyone, let's ***take*** **lunch**!"

- "She's ***having*** a **nap** right now."
- "She's ***taking*** a **nap** right now."

However, this can also occur with other light verbs. For instance:

- “Be sure to ***take*** a **bow** at the end of the performance.”
- “Be sure to ***make*** a **bow** at the end of the performance.”

- “Will you ***get*** a **photo** of all of us together?”
- “Will you ***take*** a **photo** of all of us together?”

- “Did you ***get*** some **breakfast**?”
- “Did you ***have*** some **breakfast**?”

Full Verbs and Auxiliary Verbs

Most verbs carry a unique semantic meaning of their own, and they do not rely on any additional predicate information to make sense. When contrasted with **light verbs**, these are sometimes known as **full verbs** or **heavy** verbs.

Auxiliary verbs, meanwhile, are similar to light verbs in that they do not carry meaning on their own; however, unlike light verbs, these work with other verbs to create a complete, unique meaning. Auxiliary verbs are used to create different verb **tenses**, to make a verb negative, or to express **modality**—that is, to assert (or deny) possibility, likelihood, ability, permission, obligation, or future intention.

Certain **light verbs** function as full verbs depending on how they are used; likewise, *do* and *have* can function as either auxiliary verbs or light verbs. For example:

- “Let’s ***take*** some lunch to a park.” (full verb, meaning “bring to a place”)
- “Let’s all ***take*** a **break**.” (light verb, reliant on *break* for meaning)

- “I like to ***make*** toy figurines in my spare time.” (full verb, meaning “to create or assemble”)
- “I’m afraid I ***made*** a terrible **mistake** in hiring him.” (light verb, reliant on *mistake* for meaning)

- “***Did*** you see the game last night?” (auxiliary verb, serves to modify the verb *see* to create an interrogative sentence)
- “John ***did*** a few **jobs** for me this summer.” (light verb, dependent on the noun *jobs* for meaning)

- “She ***had*** heard the rumors already.” (auxiliary verb, serves to modify the verb *heard* to create the **past perfect tense**)
- “She ***had*** a **snooze** after lunch.” (light verb, dependent on the noun *snooze* for meaning)

Common Light Verbs

Unfortunately, the only way to become familiar with the various meanings and uses of light verbs is to study them in a dictionary or to come across them in day-to-day speech and writing.

Below, we'll look at some examples using four particularly common light verbs that have a variety of different meanings—*do*, *make*, *get*, and *take*. Each sentence will be accompanied by an explanation of the light verb's meaning.

Do

Do is used for general actions; these actions are dictated by the word or words that follow *do*.

• "You can play if you ***do*** your **homework**." (**finish or complete** your homework)

• "Will you please ***do*** the **dishes**?" (**wash** the dishes)

• "Will you please ***do*** the **washing up**?" (This is a British English expression with the same meaning as "do the dishes.")

• "I hope you ***do*** **well** on your exam." (**perform** well; in this context, **do** relies on an adverb for its meaning)

• "He was always willing to ***do*** someone a **favor**." (**give or perform** a favor)

• "My husband always ***does*** the **cooking**." (**prepare and cook food**)

• "I'm trying to avoid ***doing*** the **ironing**." (**iron** clothes)

• "John, will you ***do*** the **dusting**?" (**clean the dust** from the furniture and around the house)

• "It always falls on me to ***do*** the **housework**." (**clean and tidy up** around the house)

• "She has to ***do*** her **hair** before we go." (**style** her hair)

• "I hope you can continue to ***do*** **business** together." (**engage in or perform** business activities)

Make

As a light verb, *make* carries the general meaning of "create" or "assemble"; the specific meaning comes from what accompanies the verb.

- “I ***made*** many **mistakes** in my exam.” (**commit** errors)
- “Be sure to ***make*** your **bed** after you get up in the morning.” (**put in order or neaten** the sheets, covers, and pillows on one’s bed)
- “After years of fighting, they decided to ***make*** **peace**.” (**achieve, arrange, produce, or attain** a state of peace)
- “My mother is going to ***make*** a **chocolate cake** tonight.” (**prepare and/or bake** a cake)
- “I just need to ***make*** **dinner**.” (**prepare and cook** dinner)
- “I ***made*** **friends** with my new neighbors.” (**earn or acquire** the friendship of the neighbors)
- “You need to ***make*** a **decision**.” (**form or arrive at** a decision)
- “The neighbors ***make*** so much **noise**.” (**create** a lot of noise)
- “He ***made*** an excellent **speech** at his brother’s wedding.” (**orally perform or deliver** a speech)
- “Have you ***made*** any **plans** for the summer yet?” (**form or establish** plans)
- “He called the restaurant and ***made*** a **reservation** for four.” (**arrange or establish** a reservation)
- “You would ***make*** a great **teacher**!” (**be suited for the role of** a teacher)
- “He really ***made*** a good **impression** at the job interview yesterday.” (**achieve or produce** a good impression)
- “I will ***make*** an **exception** this time.” (**allow** an exception)
- “This doesn’t ***make*** any **sense** to me.” (**to be coherent or intelligible**)
- “***Make*** **it** a priority to turn off the gas before you go out.” (**establish** it as a priority)
- “I’m ***making*** a **fortune** in my new job.” (**earn** a large amount of money)
- “It will ***make*** a big **difference** to the house if we paint all the rooms white.” (**create or amount to** a significant difference)

Get

Get is a particularly versatile verb. For example, it can mean any of the following depending on the context: *fetch, obtain, understand, answer, receive, hit, be, become, hear, understand, earn, buy, win, secure, reach/arrive at, cause, convince, open,* or *succeed*.

We are entirely dependent upon what is collocated with *get* to know which meaning it carries:

- “I ***get*** so many **emails** every day.” (**receive** emails)
- “I ***got*** **good grades** on my exams.” (**obtain/earn** good grades)
- “How do you ***get*** to the **station** from here?” (**reach/arrive at** the station)
- “I ***got*** a really **good price** for the car I sold.” (**obtain** a good price)
- “We managed to ***get*** an **excellent deal**.” (**secure** an excellent deal)
- “He didn’t laugh at the joke because he didn’t ***get*** **it**.” (**understand** it (the joke))
- “I didn’t ***get*** the **job** because I didn’t have the right qualifications.” (**succeed in obtaining** the job)
- “**How much** do you ***get*** per month in your new job?” (**earn** what amount?)
- “Did you ***get*** these **shoes** at the new mall?” (**buy** the shoes)
- “She ***got*** a **medal** for coming in first.” (**win/be awarded** a medal)
- “I can’t ***get*** the **children** to go to bed early.” (**convince or force** the children)
- “I finally ***got*** the **computer** to work again after it had crashed.” (**cause** the computer to work)
- “Can you ***get*** the **phone**, please?” (**answer** the phone)
- “My hands are full; could you ***get*** the **door** for me?” (**open** the door)
- “Sorry, I didn’t ***get*** your **name**.” (**hear/understand** your name)
- “I ***got*** really **sick** while I was on vacation, but I’m feeling a lot better now.” (**became** sick)
- “He ***got*** **arrested** for robbing a bank.” (**was** arrested)
- “The bullet ***got*** **him** in the head.” (**hit** him)

Take

As a light verb, *take* broadly means *have, obtain*, or *use,* but it has some other specific meanings in certain circumstances:

- “Let’s all ***take*** a **break**.” (**have** a brief rest)
- “Would you like to ***take*** a **walk**?” (**engage in** a walk)
- “We’ll ***take*** a **taxi** home.” (**use** a taxi to travel)

- “I have to ***take*** the **bus** into town.” (**use** the bus to travel)
- “Don’t forget to ***take*** your **medicine**.” (**ingest** your medicine)
- “He’s ***taking*** an **exam** in the morning.” (**complete** an exam)
- “Will you ***take*** **notes** for me in class today?” (**write** notes)
- “He’s been so sick that we’ve had to ***take*** his **temperature** every hour.” (**obtain** (through measurement) his temperature)
- “It might not work, but I’m willing to ***take*** that **chance**.” (**behave or act** in a risky way)
- “Hey, come here and ***take*** a **look** at this!” (**examine or view** this)
- “We’ll just have to ***take*** your **word** for it.” (**trust in** what you say)
- “She ***took*** a seat near the back.” (**assume occupancy** of a seat)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following do light verbs rely on for their meaning?

a) The subject
b) The predicate
c) The full verb
d) The auxiliary verb

2. Identify the light verb in the following sentence:
“I’m hoping to train with the Olympic squad this summer, but I am not sure they will take me.”

a) hoping
b) train
c) am
d) will
e) take

3. Which of the following is **not** another name for light verbs?

a) delexical verbs
b) hollow verbs
c) empty verbs
d) thin verbs

4. True or False: Sometimes different light verbs can have the same meaning if they have the same predicate.

a) True
b) False

5. Which of the following can be both a **light verb** and an **auxiliary verb**?

a) have
b) get
c) make
d) take

Phrasal Verbs

Definition

Phrasal verbs are verb phrases that have idiomatic meanings—that is, their meaning is not obvious from the individual words that make up the phrase. Because of this, we have to learn what they mean by understanding them in context.

In this section, we'll look at how phrasal verbs are formed and how they are distinct from prepositional verbs, and then look at a list of common phrasal verb examples.

Constructing Phrasal Verbs – Particles vs. Prepositions

Phrasal verbs are made up of a verb + a **preposition** or an adverbial **particle**, and their meaning is uniquely tied to each particular combination.

A particle is very similar to a preposition—in fact, they are almost always identical in appearance. (There are a few words that will only function as particles in verb phrases: *away, back, out, backward, forward, upward*, and *downward*.)

However, particles are used more like adverbs, modifying and uniquely expanding the meaning of the verbs they are paired with. For this reason, particles are sometimes referred to as adverbial particles, or even just adverbs. The key difference between particles and prepositions, however, is that particles do not (and cannot) introduce a **prepositional phrase**, while the preposition in a phrasal verb always will.

Below, we'll look at some examples of phrasal verbs that use particles, prepositions, and combinations of both.

Particle Phrasal Verbs

- "My table *takes up* too much room." (The table occupies too much space.)

Takes up is made up of the verb *take* + *up*. *Up* changes the meaning of the verb, but it does not introduce a prepositional phrase expressing direction, location, time, or possession—therefore, it is functioning as a particle.

- “Please **look over** the proposal and let me know what you think.” (Please quickly examine the proposal.)

Again, the particle *over* is changing the meaning of the verb *look*, but it is not introducing a prepositional phrase.

Here are some other examples of phrasal verbs formed with particles:

- “I can’t believe that you’re **giving up**!” (I’m surprised that you’re going to stop trying.)
- “There will always be setbacks that we have to **allow for**.” (We always have to consider and be ready for possible setbacks.)
- “We have to wait for the fire to **die down** before we can enter the building.” (We have to wait for the fire to become less intense.)
- “The plane **took off** an hour late.” (The plane rose into the air and began to fly later than scheduled.)
- “She is always **making up** excuses.” (She is always inventing excuses that are not true.)
- “When I am on the bus, I always **give up** my seat to the elderly.” (I vacate my seat and give it to an older passenger.)

Preposition Phrasal Verbs

As we’ve seen, a phrasal verb can be formed from a preposition when that preposition acts as the head of a prepositional phrase, followed immediately by its object. For example:

- “He has been **looking *after*** *his mother*.” (He has been caring for his mother.)
- “I **came *across*** *that old watch* of mine when I was cleaning out the drawers.” (I found my old watch unexpectedly.)
- “Stop **picking *on*** *your brother* like that!” (Stop teasing or harassing your brother in that way.)

We can see that, in each of the above, the phrasal verb is comprised of a verb + a preposition—the preposition always forms a prepositional phrase with the object of the phrasal verb.

Particle-prepositional phrasal verbs

Some phrasal verbs have both a particle and a preposition. These are sometimes known as particle-prepositional phrasal verbs. All three elements—verb, particle, and preposition—act together to form a unique meaning.

For example:

- “She **comes** **across** ***as*** *a really confident person*.” (She gives the impression of being confident by the way she acts.)

In this context, *across* functions as a particle, while *as* functions as a preposition, introducing the prepositional phrase *as a really confident person*.

- “You’re going too fast, so I can’t **keep** **up** ***with*** *you*.”

The phrasal verb here is made up of the verb *keep* + the particle *up* + the preposition *with*. *Up* changes the meaning of the verb *keep*, while *with* introduces the prepositional phrase *with you*.

Let’s look at some other examples.

- “I’ll make sure that she doesn’t **get** **away** ***with*** *her plan*.” (I’ll make sure she is caught and/or punished.)
- “A substitute teacher has been **filling** **in** ***for*** *Mr. Davis* all week.” (The substitute teacher is taking the place of Mr. Davis.)
- “I’ve been trying to **cut** **back** ***on*** *junk food* lately.” (I’m trying not to eat as much junk food as I had been before.)

Differentiating prepositional and particle verb phrases

Intransitive verbs

Because a preposition in a phrasal verb must always form a prepositional phrase, the phrasal verb must be transitive because it requires a direct object. Therefore, if a phrasal verb is **intransitive**, we can assume that it is formed from a verb and a **particle**. For example:

- “Please don’t **give up**.”
- “I know you want me to lie, but I just wasn’t **brought up** that way.”
- “I hope that my idea **came across** well.”

None of the above phrasal verbs has a direct object, and so each one is intransitive and a particle phrasal verb.

Transitive verbs

When phrasal verbs are **transitive**, they always take direct objects. This can make it difficult to tell whether a particle or prepositional phrasal verb is being used. However, there is a quick test that we can perform to be sure. First, we substitute a **personal pronoun** for the object of the phrasal verb. If it can be arranged *before* the particle/preposition and still make sense, then a particle is being used; if it has to come after to make sense, then a preposition is being used. Phrasal verbs that can be divided by objects are commonly referred to as being **separable**; those that cannot be divided are known as being **inseparable**.

Let's look at this in one of our previous examples:

- "Please **look over** *the proposal* and let me know what you think."

It might seem as though *over* does in fact introduce a prepositional phrase: *over the proposal*. However, if we substitute the personal pronoun *it* for *the proposal*, we can see that the object can come immediately after the verb:

- "Please **look *it* over** and let me know what you think."

Therefore, *look over* is a particle phrasal verb and is considered separable.

Let's look at another example to see when this **can't** be done:

- "He has been **looking after** *his mother*."

Using the personal pronoun *her* instead of *his mother*, the sentence now reads:

- "He has been **looking after** *her*."

Now let's try rearranging it in the sentence:

✖ "He has been **looking *her* after**." (incorrect)

We can see that the sentence no longer makes sense: the object, *her*, must follow the phrasal verb and form a prepositional phrase to be logically complete. Therefore, *look after* is a prepositional phrasal verb and is inseparable.

Transitive and Intransitive Phrasal Verbs

Finally, some phrasal verbs can be both transitive and intransitive, depending on which idiomatic meaning is being used.

Consider these sets of examples that use the same phrasal verb:

- “I was a bit of a skinny kid, but I **filled out** nicely during high school.” (**Intransitive**, meaning “to become larger or fuller in one’s figure.”)
- “Make sure that you **fill out** the form correctly.” (**Transitive**, meaning “to complete (a document) by providing the required information.”)

- “The two friends **made up** after their bitter argument.” (**Intransitive**, meaning “to reconcile or resolve a quarrel.”)
- “Please stop **making up** excuses.” (**Transitive**, meaning “to fabricate or invent.”)

Prepositional verbs vs. phrasal verbs

Sometimes, a **prepositional verb** may be mistaken for a phrasal verb. Although both combinations appear to be very similar, you can differentiate them by examining their meaning. Prepositional verbs use the literal meanings of verbs, whereas phrasal verbs tend to be idiomatic.

For example, the meaning of the verb *ask* doesn’t change when combined with the preposition *for*; however, it changes dramatically when combined with the particle *out*:

- “Kelly **asked *for*** a raise.” (The literal meaning of *to ask* is *to inquire*. Kelly *inquired* about a raise, making it a prepositional verb.)

- “Kelly **asked *out*** Chad.” (*Ask out* means *to invite someone on a date,* making it an idiomatic phrasal verb.)

We can see this difference even more clearly with a set of examples that use the same verb-preposition pairing:

- “They **sailed *through*** *the waters* with plenty of time to spare.”

- “They **sailed *through*** *their exams* with plenty of time to spare.”

Both examples use the verb *sail* + the preposition *through*. However, because the first sentence uses the **literal** meaning of *sail*, we know it is a prepositional verb—the preposition is merely describing the movement of the verb, without changing the meaning of the verb itself. If, for instance, we change the sentence to “They **sailed *along*** *the coast*,” the meaning of *sail* does not change.

The verb phrase of the second sentence, however, has the **idiomatic** meaning of “to complete with ease and speed.” It can only have this meaning if *sail* and *through* are paired together. Changing the preposition would also completely change the meaning of the verb phrase; therefore, it is functioning as a phrasal verb in this context.

Recognizing Common Phrasal Verbs

The only way to truly feel comfortable with phrasal verbs is to recognize them in everyday writing and speech, understand their unique meanings, and then begin to use them in the same way in your own writing and speech.

With that in mind, head to the section on **Common Phrasal Verbs** to see an extensive list of examples of common phrasal verbs as they are used in both spoken and written English.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** a component of a phrasal verb?

a) verb
b) particle
c) participle
d) preposition

2. What is the primary difference between prepositional verbs and phrasal verbs?

a) Prepositional verbs have a literal meaning; phrasal verbs have an idiomatic meaning.
b) Prepositional verbs have an idiomatic meaning; phrasal verbs have a literal meaning.
c) Prepositional verbs are always transitive; phrasal verbs are always intransitive.
d) Prepositional verbs are always separable; phrasal verbs are always inseparable.

3. What do *prepositions* do that *particles* **cannot** do in phrasal verbs?

a) Come after the object of the verb
b) Create a unique meaning of the verb
c) Make the phrasal verb transitive
d) Introduce a prepositional phrase

4. Identify the **phrasal verb** in the following sentence.
“It appears to me that you have thoroughly mucked up the case again.”

a) appears to
b) have thoroughly
c) mucked up
d) case again

5. Which of the following **can** be separable in a sentence?

a) intransitive phrasal verbs
b) transitive particle phrasal verbs
c) transitive prepositional phrasal verbs
d) particle-prepositional phrasal verbs

Common Phrasal Verbs

Learning common phrasal verbs

As we saw when we looked at how **phrasal verbs** are formed, their meanings tend to be completely idiomatic—you cannot guess what they mean simply by looking at their individual components.

Unfortunately, the only way to learn phrasal verbs is by encountering them in speech and writing, until you become familiar enough with them that you are able to use them yourself.

Below, we'll look at an extensive list of example sentences that use common verbs to create various **phrasal verbs**. The meaning of each phrasal verb will be beside each sentence, but remember: phrasal verbs often have several completely unrelated meanings. It's best to check a reliable dictionary to learn their other meanings.

This is also not by any means an **exhaustive** list—there are several hundred different phrasal verbs in English. For one of the largest dictionaries of idioms and phrasal verbs, go to The Free Dictionary's **Collection of Idioms and Phrases** at idioms.thefreedictionary.com.

Phrasal verbs with *be*

Phrasal Verb	Definition	Example sentence
	To intend to do or be near to	"Hi Johnny, I **was about to**

be about to	doing something in the immediate future	call you.”
be after (someone)	To be hunting, looking for, and/or chasing after (someone)	“The police **are after** a man who robbed a bank yesterday.”
be after (something)	To want (something) from someone	“He’s being so nice to me these days. He **is after** something, for sure.”
be down to	To have an amount of something reduced to a lower or minimal number	“After months of dieting, I **am down to** 190 pounds.” “I **am down to** my last dollar.”
be down to	To be the result of or primarily caused by something	“A large number of diseases **are down to** genetic traits.”
be down with	To be suffering from, as a disease or illness	“I can’t go to work today because I **am down with** the flu.”
be in	To be present in a given location	“I’m afraid Molly **is not in** at the moment.” “I will let you know as soon as the doctor **is in**.”
be into	To like something very much; to be particularly enthusiastic about something	“I**’m really into** this band right now.”
be over	To be finished, ended, or complete	“The worst **is over**. He should start to recover in a few days.” “It**’s over** between us; we can’t see each other anymore.”

be out of	To no longer have something	“Sorry, but we **are out of** coffee at the moment.”
be up	To be at a higher level	“The price of gas **is up** again.”
be up	To be occurring, especially in reference to strange or noteworthy events	“Something **is up**; the staff are all acting strange.”
be up	To be awake and out of bed	“John**’s not up** yet. He’s still sleeping.”
be up against	To meet or contend with difficulties or impediments	“I**’m up against** a lot of competition these days.”
be up to	To be someone’s decision or responsibility	“For now, the planning stage **is up to** you.”
be up to	To be in the midst of doing or planning	“I am going to see what the children **are up to**.”
be up to	To be capable of doing (something) competently	“We’ll have to fire him. He **isn’t up to** the job.”

Phrasal Verbs with *come*

Phrasal Verb	Definition	Example sentence
come across	To find unexpectedly	“I **came across** that old watch of mine when I was cleaning out the drawers.”
come across	To give a certain impression through the way one acts	“She **comes across** as a really confident person.”
	To acquire, especially	“John has been buying some flashy

come into	through inheritance or chance	cars lately. He must have **come into** a bit of money.”
come up with	To think of, develop, or invent	“I’m finding it difficult to **come up with** new ideas.”
come up against	To meet and be forced to deal with some impediment, obstacle, or difficulty	“We’ve **come up against** several political and legal problems.”
come down with	To catch or become infected with, as a virus or disease	“I don’t feel very well today. I think I’ve **come down with** the flu.”
come (a)round	To change one’s mind about and agree to something after some persuasion or time	“Your father doesn’t want you to have a dog, but give him a day or two and I’m sure he’ll **come (a)round**.”
come back to	To be recalled in one’s memory	“I couldn’t remember her name, but after a few minutes it **came back to** me.”

Phrasal Verbs with *get*

Phrasal Verb	Definition	Example sentence
get over	To recover from or feel better about some sad or traumatic event	“I can’t seem to **get over** the death of my cat. I feel sadder as the days go by.”
get over	To believe, understand, or no longer be surprised by something	“I can’t **get over** the way she spoke to me. She has no manners whatsoever.”
get on	To have an easy, friendly relationship with someone; to	“My husband and I **get on** so

	be on good terms with someone	well together.”
get away	To escape, as from trouble, danger, or pursuit	“The police tried to catch the bank robbers but they managed to **get away**.”
get away with	To avoid blame, responsibility, or conviction for some wrongdoing	“The criminal **got away with** the crime. There wasn’t enough evidence to convict him.”
get out of	To find a way of avoiding having to do, confront, or deal with something	“How can I **get out of** this mess I'm in.”
get (a)round to	To find the time to do or complete something that one has been meaning to do	“I still haven’t **gotten (a)round to** fixing the broken shutter.”
get back	To return, usually home	“What time did you **get back** last night?”
get rid of	To dispose of something that is no longer needed or wanted	“I want to **get rid of** that old mattress.”
get through to	To make contact with someone, especially by phone	“I can’t **get through to** Sally. Her phone has been busy all morning.”
get through to	To make someone understand or comprehend something	“It is difficult to **get through to** him—he never listens to a word you say.”
get through to	To advance to a higher stage in a competition	“We won in overtime and managed to **get through to** the finals.”

Phrasal Verbs with *give*

Phrasal		

Verb	Definition	Example sentence
give away	To donate something; to bestow something upon someone	“He’s a generous man. He **gives away** half of his salary to charity each month.”
give away	To present the bride to the groom, traditionally by the bride’s father	“In some countries, it is the custom for the father of the bride to **give** his daughter **away** at the wedding.”
give back	To return something to someone	“Can you **give back** that book I lent you?”
give in (to something)	To surrender (to) or stop resisting (something)	“No matter how much they try to get you to accept a lower offer, don’t **give in**.” “If you are on a diet, it's hard not to **give in to** temptation.”
give in	To collapse	“The floor **gave in** after the flood.”
give out	To distribute to others	“Can you **give out** these books to the rest of the class please?”
give up	To relinquish one’s position to someone else	“When I am on the bus, I rarely see anyone **give up** their seat to the elderly.”
give up	To stop doing something, often permanently	“The doctor has told me to **give up** smoking.”
give up	To abandon	“After searching for hours on end, the mountain rescue team finally **gave up** all hope of finding the missing hikers.

Phrasal Verbs with *look*

Phrasal Verb	Definition	Example sentence
look into	To investigate	“The police are **looking into** reports of a robbery last night.”
look up	To find or seek information, as from a list or some reference source	“Can you **look up** John’s phone number for me please?”
look forward to	To anticipate with pleasure or excitement	“I am **looking forward to** seeing my family again after six months of living abroad.”
look out	To pay attention to or be careful of something, especially danger	“**Look out**, there’s a car coming!”
look after	To take care of or be responsible for someone or something	“Can you **look after** my cat while I’m away?”
look down on	To regard as inferior	“My neighbors **look down on** us because we have less money.”
look on	To observe as a spectator	“The crowd **looked on** as the firemen tried to put out the fire.”
look over	To examine or inspect	“He carefully **looked over** the contract before signing it.”
look up to	To admire and respect	“She really **looks up to** her boss. He has taught her many things.”

Phrasal Verbs with *break*

Phrasal Verb	Definition	Example sentence
break down	To stop functioning	“My car **broke down** on the highway today.”
break down	To become very emotionally upset; to begin crying	“She **broke down** when she was told her cat had died.”
break up	To end a romantic relationship	“Have you heard the news? Sally and John **broke up**.”
break into	To force entry	“Burglars **broke into** my house last night.”
break away from	To become free from some restriction or restraint	“The police caught one of the burglars, but he managed to **break away from** them.”
break out	To escape from some confinement or imprisonment	“The other burglar was put in prison, but he managed to **break out**.”
break out	To appear or begin suddenly and spread quickly	“An epidemic of flu has **broken out**.”
break out in	To have a large amount of something, usually a skin condition, appear suddenly and spread quickly	“My face has **broken out in** pimples, and I look terrible.”
break even	To achieve a result with no loss or gain in profit	“The company **broke even** this year.”

Phrasal Verbs with *pick*

Phrasal Verb	Definition	Example sentence
	To go and collect someone or	“Can you **pick up** the children

pick up	something, especially by car	after school?”
pick up	To receive, as a radio signal	“My cell phone never **picks up** a signal when I’m in the house.”
pick up	To attempt to find or become acquainted with someone for romantic or sexual purposes	“He always wants to go **pick up** girls at bars.”
pick on	To deliberately harass or tease someone	“You’re always **picking on** me, and I wish you would stop.”
pick on	To select or choose someone	“The teacher always **picks on** Jane. She never gives the other students a chance to answer.”

Phrasal Verbs with *put*

Phrasal Verb	Definition	Example sentence
put out	To extinguish something, such as a flame	“We have to **put out** the fire before it spreads to the rest of the house.”
put out	To put an animal outside the house	“Would you **put** the cat **out** for a while?”
put (someone/oneself) out	To inconvenience someone or oneself on someone else’s behalf	“It would be great if you could do this for me, but don’t **put** yourself **out**.”
put (someone) up	To host (someone) in one’s house	“I can **put** you **up** for the weekend, but no longer than that.”
put up with	To tolerate	“He couldn’t **put up with** her any longer.”
put up with	To make something	“They’ve **put up** their house for

	available to be sold	sale.”
put in	To spend or invest, especially time	“He **puts in** 12 hours at work every day.”
put off	To delay doing or commencing something	“See if you can **put** the meeting **off** for an hour. We still need more time.”
put (someone) off	To make someone uninterested in or disinclined to do something	“The sight of the octopus really **put** me **off** my food.”
put aside/away	To save for future use	“I’ve **put away/aside** enough money to retire early.”
put aside for	To reserve something for someone until a later time	“Could you **put** this blouse **aside for** me.”
put through to	To connect someone with another person, usually via telephone	“Could you **put** me **through to** the manager please?”
put through	To subject someone to something unpleasant or undesirable	“This job has **put** me **through** so much already.”
put away	To store in or return to the proper location	“Can you please **put away** all those books lying around?”
put down	To mock, belittle, or make to appear foolish	“She’s always **putting** her boyfriend **down**.”
put down	To euthanize an animal	“Our poor cat is so old that we have to have him **put down**.”
put on	To add to or increase the amount of	“I’ve **put on** a lot of weight recently.”

put on	To pretend or act	“He seems angry, but I know he’s just **putting** it **on**.”
put (someone) on	To deceive or tease someone	“I really thought I had won the prize. I can’t believe he was **putting** me **on** the whole time!”
put down	To pass a telephone to someone	“Give me one second, and I’ll **put** him **on**.”

Phrasal Verbs with *run*

Phrasal Verb	Definition	Example sentence
run into	To encounter someone by chance	“I **ran into** an old friend of mine yesterday while I was out shopping.”
run out of	To exhaust the supply of something	“We’ve **run out of** coffee again. Could you get some on your way home?”
run up	To accrue or accumulate, especially indebtedness	“He **ran up** a huge bill at dinner.”
run away with	To hurriedly leave with someone else, as to elope	“His husband **ran away with** the secretary.”
run over	To hit someone or something with a vehicle, usually a car	“He’s still very upset after **running over** the cat last night.”
run through	To quickly discuss, summarize, or outline	“OK, can we just **run through** the main points again?”
run to	To immediately seek assistance from someone	“He always **runs to** his mother whenever he’s in trouble.”

run on	To be powered by	“Those new cars **run on** electricity, but they are so expensive.”
run up against	To encounter an obstacle, difficulty, or problem	“The company **ran up against** some problems initially, but now things are operating smoothly.”

Phrasal Verbs with *take*

Phrasal Verb	Definition	Example sentence
take up	To begin, especially a hobby or pastime	“I’m thinking of **taking up** a new hobby.”
take up	To occupy, such as space or time	“I’m going to buy a smaller table. This **takes up** too much room.”
take up	Of clothes, to shorten or tighten	“My new pants are too long for me. I’m going to have to them **taken up** a bit.”
take to	To have a newfound liking or appreciation for	“The boss has really **taken to** the new intern.”
take out	To obtain a legal agreement, such as insurance or a financial loan	“I’ve **taken out** an insurance policy on my house.”
take over	To obtain control of	“The company has been **taken over** by a Spanish corporation.”
take off	To leave the ground and begin flight	“You’ve just missed the plane: it **took off** a few minutes ago.”
take off	To remove an article of clothing	“**Take off** your jacket. It’s hot in here.”
	To become successful or	“Business has really **taken off** this

take off	popular	year.”
take off	To not go to work or school for a certain period of time	“I’m really tired. I’m going to **take** a day **off** tomorrow.”
takes after	To be similar in character or appearance to a close relative	“He **takes after** his father in his love of tennis.”
take back	To return something to the place where it was purchased	“My new cell phone doesn’t work. I’m going to **take** it **back** tomorrow and ask for a refund.”
take on	To recruit or employ	“Why don’t you apply for a job at the new phone company? They are **taking on** new staff.”
take on	To agree or commit to doing something	“I’ve **taken on** too much work. How will I ever find the time to finish it all?”
take in	To give shelter and/or assistance	“She’s a very kind person. She always **takes in** stray dogs that she finds in the street.”

As we said already, there are hundreds of different phrasal verbs in English. If you would like to learn more about the different meanings of phrasal verbs, as well as some interesting idioms and proverbs, go to The Free Dictionary’s **Collection of Idioms and Phrases** at idioms.thefreedictionary.com.

Conditional Verbs

Definition

Conditional verbs are constructions of verbs that are used in **conditional sentences**. Conditional sentences express something that might happen, depending on whether or not a particular condition is met. The word *if* is commonly used with one of the verbs to denote such a condition in conditional sentences.

Here are some examples of conditional verbs being used in sentences.

- “The leaves **will fall** if the wind **blows**.”
- “If you **drive** on this road for 20 miles, you **will reach** your destination.”
- “If only the striker **had shot** the ball earlier, he **would have scored** a goal.”
- “If you **do** your chores, you **can have** an ice cream cone later.”
- “You **can get** a good grade if you **study** very hard.”

Constructing conditional verbs

Conditional verbs are typically formed when a clause in the sentence contains the word *if*, and the action of the sentence depends on the condition established by this clause. **Modal auxiliary verbs** (such as *can, will, would, shall, should*, and *could*) are often used to help indicate the tense and intention of the verbs in the conditional or resulting clause(s). For example

- “If you **see** the desert, it ***could*** **mean** that you ***have*** **gone** too far.
- “If you **see** her, you ***can*** **tell** her I **said** ‘Hello.’”
- “If I ***could*** **be** anyone in history, I ***would*** **be** Leonardo da Vinci.”

Tenses

Conditional verbs can be in the past, present, or future tense. Which tense they take depends on whether the sentence is referring to a condition or possible result in the past, the present, or the future. Conditional sentences often feature a mix of tenses depending on the relationship between the condition and the result.

Past tense

The past tense is used for conditional verbs when the sentence refers to an action or event that might have happened in the past depending on a hypothetical past condition. For example:

- “She **would have succeeded** if she **had tried** harder.”
- “The cake **would have been** ready if the baker **had hurried** up a little bit more.”

Present simple tense

A conditional sentence that is only in the present simple tense refers to something that always happens when a condition is met. For example:

- “The television **turns** on if you **press** the power button.”
- “The car **moves** faster if you **press** the pedal down harder.”

Future tense

The future tense is used to describe hypothetical future results. It is often used with conditions in the present tense to describe what might happen. For example:

- “If our team wins the World Series, it **will be** amazing.”
- “The sheep **will escape** if the fence is left unlocked.”

Types of Conditionals

There are different types of conditionals that express a range of hypothetical information depending on the combination of verb tenses used in the conditional sentence.

Zero conditional

The zero conditional refers to conditional sentences in which the “if clause” and the main clause both contain conditional verbs that are in the simple present tense. It is used to talk about facts that are always true.

First conditional

First conditional sentences contain a conditional verb in the simple present tense in the “if clause,” and a future tense verb preceded by the auxiliary verb *will* in the main clause. First conditional sentences explain a hypothetical result in the future depending on a non-real condition in the present.

Second conditional

Second conditional sentences include a simple past tense verb in the “if clause” and a future tense verb in the main clause, preceded by the auxiliary verb *would*. These sentences refer to things that would happen in the future if something else happens.

Third conditional

Third conditional sentences have a past perfect verb in the “if clause” and have a past participle verb in the main clause, preceded by the auxiliary verbs *would have*. Third conditional sentences describe a hypothetical situation or condition in the past that might have led to a different outcome in the present.

If you want to learn more about these types of sentences, see the **Conditional Sentences** section in the chapter on **Sentences**.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which word in the following sentence is a conditional verb?
“If clouds form on the horizon, it will likely rain.”

a) likely
b) If
c) form
d) will
e) rain
f) A, B, & C
g) C, D, & E

2. The conditional verbs in the following sentence are in which tense?
“The pie will taste delicious if you make it properly.”

a) past
b) present
c) future
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) None of the above

3. Which set of conditional verbs is in the past tense?

a) had played
b) will run
c) is walking
d) will drive

4. Which word in the following sentence is **not** a conditional verb?
"The band will have played for three hours if it plays for another 20 minutes."

a) will
b) if
c) have
d) played

5. Identify the conditional verbs in the following sentence.
"If everything goes according to plan, the group will arrive on Tuesday."

a) everything, goes, plan
b) goes, then, will
c) according, will, arrive,
d) goes, will, arrive

Causative Verbs

Definition

Causative verbs indicate that a person, place, or thing is causing an action or an event to happen. Causative verbs are followed by a noun or pronoun and a non-causative verb in either the infinitive or base form; these non-causative verbs describe the action that the subject has caused to happen.

Examples of causative verbs include the words ***enable, cause, have, force, let, keep, hold, got*** and ***require***. Here are some examples of causative verbs being used in sentences.

- "He **let** his dog run through the field."
- "You **got** to go to the basketball game last night?"
- "The bigger house **enabled** the family to have more room for their belongings."
- "The new dress code **forced** the students to wear different shoes."
- "The landlord **kept** his property to rent out to many different tenants."

Tense

Because the non-causative verb is always in the infinitive form, the tense of the sentence depends on the conjugation of the causative verb. Causative verbs can take the **past**, **present**, or **future tense**. Here are some examples of each:

Past

- “The woman **caused** the accident to occur by driving carelessly.”
- “The law **required** a person to obtain a permit before hunting on public land.”

Present

- “The store **holds** certain items on layaway to sell to particular customers at a later date.”
- “They **get** a tax break on any purchases related to the business.”

Future

- “The manager of the store **will *force*** her employees to work shorter hours in order to cut costs.”
- “They **will *allow*** the company to install more solar panels on their roof.”

Causative verbs with other verbs in the sentence

As previously mentioned, the non-causative verbs that follow causative verbs explain the action that is being caused in the sentence. Depending on the causative verb that’s used, these non-causative verbs will either be in the infinitive or base form of the verb, or, in certain circumstances, the past participle form.

Infinitives

Infinitives are base-form verbs that are preceded by the **particle** *to*—for example, *to run, to see, to climb,* etc. The majority of causative verbs are paired with infinitives to complete their meaning, as in:

- “He **forced** himself *to train* harder.”
- “The woman **holds on** to her past memories *to remember* all the good times she had.”
- “The government is **requiring** all citizens *to carry* identification at all times.”

Base form

Base-form verbs appear exactly as they would in the infinitive, except they are not preceded by the word *to*—they are not conjugated for tense in any way. Only three causative verbs pair with the base form of the verb instead of an infinitive: ***have, make***, and ***let***. For example:

- "They **let** the light *stay* on until morning."
- "Albert **made** people *remove* their shoes when entering his house."
- "She **had** him *prepare* lots of finger foods before the guests arrived."

There is an exception to these, however: when we use the **passive voice** with *make*, it will take the infinitive rather than the base form, as in:

- "I'm sorry, but I **was made** *to report* my suspicions to police."
- "Employees **are often made** *to feel* responsible for the company's financial woes."

Past participles

Uniquely, the causative verbs *have* and *get* are also able to take the **past participle** of non-causative verbs if they themselves are in the past tense. For example:

- "My mother **had** the car *cleaned* after our soccer practice."
- "John's drinking problem finally **got** him *fired*."

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following words is a causative verb?

a) climb
b) enable
c) manage
d) face

2. Identify the causative verb in the following sentence:
"They kept their snowblower to use whenever it snowed outside."

a) snowed
b) whenever

c) to use
d) kept

3. Which of the following is **not** a causative verb?

a) bounce
b) have
c) let
d) force

4. The causative verb in this sentence is in what tense?
“The couple forced themselves to save money so they could buy their dream home.”

a) base
b) present
b) past
d) future

5. True or false: Causative verbs require another verb in a sentence?

a) true
b) false

Factitive Verbs

Definition

Factitive verbs are used to indicate the resulting condition or state (known as the **object complement**) of a person, place, or thing (the **direct object**) caused by the action of the verb. Examples of factitive verbs include *elect, appoint, make, choose, deem, assign, name, select, judge*, and *designate*. Here are some examples of factitive verbs used in sentences:

- “The populace **elected** him president of the United States.”
- “The committee **named** Mr. Fuller chairman of the board.”
- “The jury **judged** the defendant not guilty.”
- “She **deemed** him a person of high quality.”
- “The group **designated** Marshall leader from then on.”

- “The coach **made** Timothy point guard.”

Direct Objects and Object Complements

Factitive verbs have both direct objects and object complements. Direct objects are phrases, clauses, nouns, and pronouns that directly receive the action of the verb.

Object complements are adjectives, nouns, or pronouns that follow direct objects in order to indicate what the direct object's new state is. In other words, object complements reveal what the direct object has become.

Factitive verbs always indicate that the direct object has been changed or placed into a new condition, state, or category as indicated by the object complement.

To understand this concept, consider the following sentence:

- “The company **appointed** *the most experienced employee* manager.”

In this sentence, *appointed* is the factitive verb, *the most experienced employee* is the direct object, and *manager* is the object complement. *Appointed* is a factitive verb because it indicates that someone is having his or her status changed. *The most experienced employee* is the direct object because he or she is receiving the action of the verb, while *manager* is the object complement because it indicates what the direct object has become.

Here is another example:

- “The team **made** *the star quarterback* the new captain.”

In this sentence, *made* is a factitive verb acting directly upon *the star quarterback*, its direct object. *The new captain* is the object complement, indicating what *the star quarterback* was designated as.

Role in sentences

Factitive verbs serve the purpose of helping to answer the question of how a person, place, or thing was changed. For example, consider the following sentence, which does not have a factitive verb:

✖ “The school hired Mrs. McMillian principal.”

In this sentence, the verb *hired* is not sufficient to convey all of the intended information. However, the following sentence uses a factitive verb to make it clear:

✔ “The school **appointed** Mrs. McMillian principal.”

By changing *hired* to the factitive verb *appointed*, it becomes clear that *Mrs. McMillian* (the direct object) was made principal. Thus, the factitive verb *appointed* successfully serves its role in the sentence. Here are two more comparisons of sentences to illustrate this concept:

✖ “The organization **brought in** Brad Ryan chief executive officer.” (non-factitive)

✔ “The organization **named** Brad Ryan chief executive officer.” (factitive)

The addition of a factitive verb reveals the status or characteristic being given to someone or something. In this case, *Brad Ryan* is being given the status of *chief executive officer*. The non-factitive verb **brought in** does not indicate this change at all, so the meaning of the sentence becomes incomplete or obscure.

✖ “The builder **constructed** the house more modern.” (non-factitive)

✔ “The builder **made** the house more modern.” (factitive)

Once again, the non-factitive verb *constructed* describes a straightforward action, and so is unsuited to indicating a categorical change in something. By using *made*, we can clearly see the intended relationship between the direct object, *house*, and the object complement, *more modern*.

Difference from linking and causative verbs

Factitive verbs are similar to linking and causative verbs. However, there are some important differences.

Linking verbs

Linking verbs link a subject to a noun or adjective that describes it. Linking verbs include words such as *appear, seem,* and *become,* as well as various forms of *be*. For example:

- “She **appears** cold.”
- “He **is** a very tall man.”
- “The group **seems** interested in the discussion”

Linking verbs and factitive verbs both tie a subject to another part of speech that provides more information about it. However, unlike factitive verbs, linking verbs do not reveal that a person, place, or thing is being made, named, or deemed something else. Instead, they only add information about the subject as it already exists.

Causative verbs

Causative verbs require that another action be mentioned in the sentence, thus forcing the sentence to have at least one other verb. *Enable, cause, have, force, let, keep, hold, and require* are all examples of causative verbs. Here are some examples of causative verbs being used in sentences:

- “She was **required** *to bring* a pen and paper to her physics class.”
- “His mom **let** him *go sledding* on his snow day.”
- “The parents **forced** their child *to tie* his shoes.”

Like linking verbs, causative verbs also tie a subject to other parts of the sentence that reveal more about the subject. In this way, they serve a similar function to factitive verbs. However, unlike factitive verbs, causative verbs simply cause another action to be described in the sentence. They do not describe a change in the subject’s category, status, or characteristics like factitive verbs do.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following words is **not** a factitive verb?

a) elect
b) assign
c) jump
d) appoint

2. Identify the factitive verb in the following sentence:
“The board of trustees met on Friday and appointed Ralph leader.”

a) leader
b) met
c) trustees
d) appointed

3. What is the direct object of the factitive verb in the following sentence? “Americans elected Abraham Lincoln president in the year 1860.”

a) Abraham Lincoln
b) Americans
c) president
d) the year 1860

4. Which of the following words is a factitive verb?

a) be
b) designate
c) swim
d) sing

5. In what way are linking verbs different from factitive verbs?

a) Linking verbs reveal an action.
b) Linking verbs sometimes take an object complement.
c) Linking verbs do not reveal that a person, place, or thing is being made or deemed something else.
d) Linking verbs link a subject to another part of the sentence.

Reflexive Verbs

Definition

Reflexive verbs are verbs whose subjects are also their direct objects—that is, the action of the verb is both committed and received by the same person or thing. Reflexive verbs are sometimes identified as being in the “**middle voice**” (as opposed to the **active voice** or the **passive voice**).

Identifying reflexive verbs

Verbs with reflexive pronouns

Reflexive verbs can most easily be identified by the use of **reflexive pronouns**, which are used as the direct object and refer back to the subject of the sentence.

For example:

- “I accidentally **burned *myself*** with the hairdryer.” (*Myself* refers to the subject, *I*.)
- “The baby is **smiling at *herself*** in the mirror.” (*Herself* refers to the subject, *the baby*.)
- “The problem seems to have **worked *itself* out** in the end.” (*Itself* refers to the subject, *the problem*.)

When the same verb is paired with an object that is **not** a reflexive pronoun, then the verb is no longer considered reflexive.

For example, consider how the first two examples change if we use non-reflexive pronouns:

- “I accidentally **burned *him**** with the hairdryer.” (*Him* refers to a second person who is not the subject, *I*.)
- “The baby is **smiling at *her*** in the mirror.” (*Her* refers to a second person who is not the subject, *the baby*.)

(*When the subject is *I*, we might be tempted to use the personal pronoun *me*, as in, “I accidentally **burned *me*** with the hairdryer,” but this is grammatically incorrect.)

In the third example, it would not make sense to use a different pronoun because the subject, *the problem*, is inanimate and cannot have agency over a separate direct object.

Reflexive verbs with implied objects

Certain reflexive verbs can also have reflexive pronouns as direct objects that are implied and therefore omitted from the sentence. For example:

- “My father is **shaving** in the bathroom.” (with the reflexive pronoun *himself* implied)
- “She always **stretches** before doing yoga.” (with the reflexive pronoun *herself* implied)
- “Children, please **keep** quiet!” (with the reflexive the pronoun *yourselves* implied)

Intransitive verbs in the “middle” voice

While the majority of reflexive verbs are **transitive**, with reflexive pronouns as their objects, certain **intransitive verbs** can be used to modify a subject (usually an inanimate object) that is also the receiver of the action. In the middle voice, this type of verb does **not** take a reflexive pronoun (or any direct object). For example:

- "*My sister's lunch* **is cooking** on the stove." (*Cook* is an intransitive verb indicating **what** is being cooked.)

- "*This car* **doesn't drive** smoothly anymore." (*Drive* is an intransitive verb indicating **what** is being driven.)

- "*Her engagement ring* **broke** in half." (*Break* is an intransitive verb indicating **what** is being broken.)

We can see that the subjects of these examples (*my sister's lunch, this car,* and *her engagement ring*) are also the recipients of the action in each sentence, even though the verbs are intransitive and do not take direct objects.

Changes in meaning with reflexive verbs

Most of the time, a verb's meaning is not inherently different when it becomes reflexive. However, there are some instances in which reflexive verbs have slightly different meanings from standard transitive verbs. For example:

- "He decided to **apply *himself*** to the work at hand." (reflexive verb, meaning "to engage in something with great diligence and persistence")
- "She **applied *pressure*** to the wound." (non-reflexive verb, meaning "to bring into contact with")

- "They **found *themselves*** without a leader." (reflexive verb, meaning "to perceive oneself to be in a specific place or condition")
- "We **found *the solution*** we were looking for." (non-reflexive verb, meaning "to come upon, discover, or ascertain")

- "Please, **help *yourself*** to the food." (reflexive verb, meaning "to serve or provide oneself with")
- "Please **help *your brother*** with his homework." (non-reflexive verb, meaning "to give assistance to")

We must be careful whenever we make a verb reflexive, as there is no rule to know when or if a verb's meaning might be altered.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following distinguishes **reflexive verbs** from non-reflexive verbs?

a) They do not take a direct object
b) The agents of their action are also the recipients of their action
c) The agents of their action are implied in a sentence
d) They are always transitive

2. Which of the following is the **most obvious** indication that a verb is reflexive?

a) It has a possessive personal pronoun as a direct object
b) It is intransitive but in the middle voice
c) The direct object is implied and omitted
d) The direct object is a reflexive pronoun

3. Which of the following determines whether a verb's meaning will change when it is used reflexively?

a) If a reflexive pronoun is the only direct object possible
b) If the verb is used intransitively in the middle voice
c) If the reflexive pronoun is implied and omitted
d) There is no rule that determines if its meaning will change

4. Which of the following sentences uses a reflexive verb?

a) "I don't know why, but I love washing in the river when we're camping."
b) "My brother never stops helping others."
c) "The kids are all out swimming today."
d) "Paul seems fine, but John said he hurt him during football practice."

Adjectives

Definition

Adjectives are used almost exclusively to modify nouns, as well as any phrase or part of speech functioning as a noun. For example:

- "John wears **red** *glasses*." (*Red* modifies the noun *glasses*.)

- “A **loud** *group of students* passed by.” (*Loud* modifies the noun phrase *group of students*.)
- “**Excellent** *writing* is required for this job.” (*Excellent* modifies the **gerund** *writing*.)

Attributive vs. Predicative Adjectives

Adjectives are broken down into two basic syntactic categories: attributive and predicative.

Adjectives that appear directly before (or sometimes directly after) the noun or pronoun they modify are known as **attributive adjectives**. These can appear anywhere in a sentence, and can modify parts of either **the subject** or **the predicate**.

Predicative adjectives, on the other hand, always appear after the noun they modify, connected to it by a **linking verb**. They are one of the three types of **subject complements**, and they are always part of **the predicate**—hence their name.

Let’s compare two examples to highlight this difference:

- “The **black** *dog* is barking.”

In this sentence, **black** is an **attributive adjective**. It is part of the noun phrase and is not connected to the noun *dog* by a linking verb. Now let’s look at a *predicative adjective*:

- “The *dog* was **black**.”

In this sentence, **black** is a *predicative adjective*. It follows *dog*, the noun that it modifies, and is connected to it by the linking verb *was*.

Modifying pronouns

While adjectives usually modify nouns, they can also modify **pronouns**. This most commonly occurs when adjectives are **predicative**. For example:

- “*That* was **great**!”
- “*She* is very **nice**.”
- “A *few* were **late**.”

Attributive adjectives can also modify **indefinite pronouns**, as in:

- “A **happy** *few* were able to attend the show.”

- “They were the **lucky** *ones*.”

In informal speech or writing, it is not uncommon to modify **personal pronouns** attributively, as in:

- “Wow, **lucky** *you*!”
- “**Silly** *me*, I forgot to turn on the oven.”

However, avoid using attributive adjectives with personal pronouns in anything other than casual conversation or writing.

Other categories of adjectives

There is a huge variety of adjectives in English. While many words are inherently adjectival, such as colors (*red*, *black*, *yellow*, etc.) or characteristics (*strong*, *weak*, *nice*, etc.), there are also several categories of adjectives that are formed from other sources. The table below gives a brief breakdown of these different categories of adjectives, along with some examples of how they are used in a sentence. Go to each individual section to learn more.

Category of Adjective	Definition	Example adjectives	Example sentence
Proper Adjectives	Formed from **proper nouns** to create descriptive words.	*Italian, Shakespearean, Alaskan, Middle Eastern, Nordic*	“He writes in a **Shakespearean** style.”
Compound Adjectives	Created from two or more words that work together to modify the same noun; they are often joined with one or more **hyphens**.	*top-right, last-minute, sugar-free, record-breaking, expensive-looking*	“I know this is a **last-minute** suggestion, but it’s a good idea.”
Demonstrative Adjectives (or **Demonstrative Determiners**)	Used to specify what we are referring to and whether it is singular or plural, and to give more information about its	*this, that, these, those*	“**These** cups are very pretty.”

	proximity to the speaker.		
Interrogative Adjectives (or **Interrogative Determiners**)	Usually used to ask questions about something.	*what, which, whose*	"**Whose** computer is this?"
Nominal Adjectives	Adjectives that perform the function of a **noun** in a sentence. They are preceded by the word *the* and can be found as the **subject** or the **object** of a sentence or clause.	*the best, the strongest, the blue*	"He wants the red car, but I want **the blue**."
Collective Adjectives	A subgroup of **nominal adjectives**, used to refer to a group of people based on a shared characteristic.	*the rich, the poor, the innocent, the French, the Americans, the Dutch*	"**The rich** should help **the poor**."

Adjective Phrases and Clauses

In addition to the single-word adjectives we looked at above, we can also use **adjective phrases** and **relative clauses** (also called **adjective clauses**) to modify nouns. We'll look at both briefly below, but to learn more about how they are formed and used, go to their respective sections in this chapter.

Adjective Phrases

An **adjective phrase** is an adjective and any additional information linked to it that work together to describe a noun or pronoun in a sentence. This additional information can include **determiners** or adverbial **modifiers**.

The adjective around which an adjective phrase is formed is known as the **head word** or **head adjective** of the phrase.

Adjective phrases can be either attributive (appearing before the nouns they modify) or predicative (appearing after a linking verb)

For example:

- “You have **a beautiful** voice.” (head word *beautiful* plus the determiner *a*)
- “He is **a very good** swimmer.” (head word *good* plus the determiner *a* and the adverb *very*)
- “The helicopters are **controlled remotely**.” (head word *controlled* plus the adverb *remotely*)
- “I am **perfectly content on my own**.” (head word *content* plus the adverb *perfectly* and the adverbial prepositional phrase *on my own*)
- “They felt **relieved to return home**.” (head word *relieved* plus the adverbial infinitive phrase *to return home*)

Note that prepositional phrases can also function as adjectives. These are considered ***adjectival*** **phrases** rather than true ***adjective*** **phrases**, because there is not a head adjective at the root of the phrase. Adjectival prepositional phrases always appear directly after the noun they modify.

For example:

- “The cat **on the shed** was old.” (modifies the noun *cat*)
- “Please hand me that book **over there**.” (modifies the noun *book*)

Relative Clauses (Adjective Clauses)

Relative clauses (also known as **adjective** or **adjectival clauses**) are **dependent clauses** that provide descriptive information about a noun or noun phrase. If the information it presents is essential to the meaning of the sentence, it is known as a **restrictive clause**; if it is extra information that is not essential, it is known as a **non-restrictive clause**.

Relative clauses are introduced by either a **relative pronoun** or, less commonly, a **relative adverb**. Unlike attributive adjectives, they always appear directly after the noun they modify.

For example:

- “There’s the woman ***who*** **always sits next to me on the bus**.” (restrictive clause introduced by the relative pronoun *who*, modifying *woman*)
- “The book ***that*** **I wrote** is being published in January.” (restrictive clause introduced by the relative pronoun *that*, modifying *book*)
- “The escaped giraffe, **which had been on the loose for weeks**, was finally captured.” (non-restrictive clause introduced by the relative pronoun *which*,

modifying *giraffe*)

- “The house **where I was born** is a very special place.” (restrictive clause introduced by the relative pronoun *where*, modifying *house*)
- “I love casual Fridays, **when we get to wear jeans to work**.” (non-restrictive clause introduced by the relative adverb *when*, modifying *casual Fridays*)

Order of adjectives

We often use multiple adjectives to modify the same noun or pronoun. Note that these are **not** compound adjectives or adjective phrases, but rather individual adjectives that work independently to modify the same word.

To avoid unnatural-sounding sentences when we use more than one adjective in this way, we put them in a specific **order** according to the type of description they provide. This is known as the **order of adjectives**:

1. Opinion (*good, bad, strange, lovely*)
2. Measurement (*big, small, tiny, huge*)
3. Shape (*curved, straight, round, square*)
4. Condition (*wet, dry, clean, sad, happy*)
5. Age (*old, young, new, ancient*)
6. Color (*red, yellowish, transparent, blue*)
7. Pattern (*checked, striped, plaid, flowered*)
8. Origin (*American, British, eastern, western*)
9. Material (*wooden, plastic, steel, cloth*)
10. Purpose (*sleeping, shopping, work, gardening*)

While we would almost never use a sentence with so many adjectives in a row, it’s very common to use two or three. In this case, we generally must follow the order above, as in:

- “I bought an **enormous rectangular Turkish** *rug* on my vacation.”
- “It is a **long, heavy** table.”

Note that in some circumstances we separate adjectives with commas and/or the coordinating conjunction *and*, while in other cases we use them without any separation at all. To learn more about the rules that determine this, go to the section on the **Order of Adjectives** later in this chapter.

Degrees of comparison

We can also use adjectives to create comparisons between two or more people or things, or to identify someone or something with the highest (or lowest) degree of some quality. To do this, we **inflect** (change the form of) the adjective to create **comparative adjectives** or **superlative adjectives**. For example:

- "*I* am **strong**." (basic adjective)
- "*John* is **stronger** than I am." (comparative adjective)
- "*Janet* is the **strongest** of us all." (superlative adjective)

This process of changing an adjective's form is known as the **Degrees of Comparison**; go to that section in this chapter to learn more.

Adjectives and Determiners

Adjectives and **determiners** both provide extra information about a noun (or pronoun). But while adjectives provide descriptive, modifying information about a noun, determiners are used to introduce and specify a noun.

The most common determiners are the articles *the* and *a/an*. These indicate whether a noun is specific or general (i.e., *the book* vs. *a book*). Numbers can also act as determiners, as in *three books, 10 books, 1000 books*, etc.

However, there are a number of categories of adjectives that are also considered to be types of determiners—they share the features of both. These are:

- **demonstrative adjectives** (*this, that, these, those*—also called **demonstrative determiners**);
- **possessive adjectives** (*my, his, your, our*—also called **possessive determiners**);
- **interrogative adjectives** (*what, which, whose*—also called **interrogative determiners**);
- **distributive determiners** (*each, every, either*—also called **distributive adjectives**;
- **quantifiers** (*many, much, several, little*).

Demonstratives and interrogatives are more commonly classed as **adjectives**, while possessives and distributives are more commonly classed as **determiners**; this is how they are grouped in this guide. Quantifiers are much harder to distinguish, but, for the purposes of this guide, they are covered in the chapter on

Determiners.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following parts of speech are adjectives **not** able to modify?

a) Nouns
b) Pronouns
c) Adverbs
d) B & C

2. Adjectives that appear after **linking verbs** are known as:

a) Attributive adjectives
b) Predicative adjectives
c) Demonstrative adjectives
d) Interrogative adjectives

3. Which of the following types of adjectives are formed from two or more words and a hyphen?

a) Compound adjectives
b) Nominal adjectives
c) Proper adjectives
d) Collective adjectives

4. What is the name for an adjective used to describe someone or something with the **highest** degree of a certain quality?

a) Comparable adjectives
b) Comparative adjectives
c) Superior adjectives
d) Superlative adjectives

5. Which of the following often have properties similar to adjectives?

a) Adverbs
b) Particles
c) Determiners
d) Conjunctions

Attributive Adjectives

Definition

Attributive adjectives are adjectives that describe a characteristic (or attribute) of the noun or pronoun that they modify. They form part of a noun phrase, appearing immediately before (or sometimes after) the noun in a sentence.

Attributive vs. Predicative Adjectives

Attributive adjectives are usually considered in opposition to **predicative adjectives**, which follow the noun they modify and are connected to it by a **linking verb**. We can quickly illustrate the difference here:

• “The **black** dog is barking.”

In this sentence, *black* is an **attributive adjective**. It is part of the noun phrase and is not connected to the noun *dog* by a linking verb. Now let’s look at a **predicative adjective**:

• “The dog was **black**.”

In this sentence, *black* follows the noun *dog*, the noun that it modifies, and is connected to it by the linking verb *was*; it is a **predicative adjective**.

While most adjectives can occur either as **attributive adjectives** or **predicative adjectives**, there are certain adjectives that can *only* occur predicatively. Most, but not all, of these adjectives begin with the letter “a”:

- **afloat**
- **afraid**
- **alike**
- **alone**
- **asleep**
- **awake**
- **aware**
- **upset**
- **well**

For example:

✔ “The baby is **asleep**.” (correct)

✖ “The **asleep** baby is in the crib.” (incorrect)

✔ “The woman is **well** again.” (correct)
✖ “The **well** woman got out of bed.” (incorrect)

If you want to learn more about **predicative adjectives**, they are dealt with in greater detail in another section of this chapter.

Restrictive vs. Non-Restrictive Attributive Adjectives

Attributive adjectives can be either **restrictive** or **non-restrictive**. **Restrictive adjectives** help establish the identity of the noun or pronoun being modified, while **non-restrictive adjectives** simply help describe a noun that is already clearly identified. Note the difference between these two sentences:

- “She was emotional, and would avoid a **sad** film at all costs.”
- “*Titanic* was a **sad** film that no viewer could finish with dry eyes.”

In the first sentence, *sad* is **restrictive**: it tells us what kind of films she avoids. In the second sentence, *sad* is **non-restrictive**. We already know that *Titanic* is the film in question; the adjective *sad* simply serves to describe it further.

Prepositive adjectives: Before the noun

In simple sentences, **attributive adjectives** usually occur before the noun they modify, like in our first example, “The **black** dog is barking.” Adjectives in this position are known as **prepositive** or **prenominal adjectives**.

While most attributive adjectives can also occur as predicative adjectives after the noun, there are a number of specific adjectives which can **only** occur before the noun they modify. Some of these are: *main, former*, and *mere*.

✔ “The **main** idea is at the beginning of the paragraph.” (correct)
✖ “The idea at the beginning of the paragraph is **main**.” (incorrect)

Another adjective that only occurs attributively before the noun is the word *utter*, which provides heavy emphasis to the noun it modifies:

✔ “The dress was in **utter** ruin.” (correct)
✖ “The ruin was **utter**.” (incorrect)

Postpositive Adjectives: After the noun

It's fairly common to find attributive adjectives defined as "adjectives that are placed before the noun or pronoun they modify." However, it's a bit more complicated than that. While attributive adjectives are *generally* found before the noun they modify, especially in simple sentences, there are also many cases in which they are placed immediately after the noun.

When this happens, they are called **postpositive** or **postnominal adjectives**. This often occurs in the following cases:

Terms derived from other languages

Postpositive adjective placement is very common in other languages, especially those derived from Latin. **Postpositive** placement in English occurs especially when using terms that were borrowed from French, a Latin-derived language.

English borrows many official, military, governmental, and administrative terms from other languages, and the adjectives have retained their postpositive position. For example:

- Legal and financial terms: *body **politic***, *court-**martial***, *pound **sterling***, *accounts **payable***, and *heir **apparent***.
- Important positions of individuals: *secretary-**general***, *poet **laureate***, *attorney **general***, *princess **royal***, and *professor **emeritus***.

In these types of terms, it's conventional to pluralize the noun, not the adjective. For example:

- "One poet laureate."
- "Two poets laureate."

However, it is becoming more and more common for writers to treat these terms as compound nouns, pluralizing the adjective instead of the noun:

- "Two poet laureates."

Traditional grammarians, though, consider the pluralization of the adjective to be incorrect.

After indefinite pronouns

Attributive adjectives almost always appear postpositively when they modify **indefinite pronouns**, such as *someone, anyone, nobody, anyone,* etc.

For example:

- "I wish I could find *somebody* **perfect** for the job."
- "We can give these jeans to *anybody* **tall**."
- "Is *anyone* **talented** at math here?"

After superlative attributive adjectives

Superlative adjectives are those that that compare three or more nouns to indicate which exhibits the highest degree of something, for example: *the best, the worst, the tallest, the biggest*, etc. When a superlative adjective is used attributively before a noun, we can use other attributive adjectives in a postpositive position for emphasis.

- "Let's find the *best* hotel **possible**."
- "She's the *worst* singer **present**."

In addition, the attributive adjective can sometimes come before the noun when paired with a superlative, as in:

- "We climbed the *highest* **nearby** mountain."

Some adjectives ending in "-able/-ible"

Often, attributive adjectives ending in "-able/-ible" are placed in the postpositive position:

- "It's the only time **available**."
- "It's the only option **imaginable**."

Be careful though, because sometimes placing an adjective of this type in the prepositive or postpositive position can actually change the meaning of the sentence. For example:

- "She's looking for a **responsible** man."

In this sentence, **responsible** is in the prepositive positive and seems to be a good characteristic. She is likely looking for a man who can be trusted. If we place the word *responsible* in the postpositive position, though, we have a very different meaning:

- “She’s looking for the man **responsible**.”

In this sentence, the word **responsible** takes on a different connotation, perhaps a negative one. She’s looking for the man who has done something; in most cases, the “something” is negative, such as a mistake or even a crime.

Not many adjectives change meaning so drastically based on their position in the sentence, but it is something to be aware of.

After expressions of measurement

Nouns are often used in combination with numbers and adjectives to give measurements of height, depth, age, etc. For example:

- “He’s only one *year* **old**.”
- “She’s five *feet* **tall**.”
- “The river is five *miles* **long**.”
- “The lake is one *kilometer* **deep**.”

A notable exception to this pattern is when we discuss *weight*. Instead, we use the verb *weigh* and a unit of measurement, or else just the unit of weight after the verb *be*. For example:

✔ “She *weighs* 120 pounds.” (correct)
✔ “She *is* 120 pounds.” (correct)
✖ “She is 120 *pounds* **heavy**.” (incorrect)

When the adjective modifies the object of factitive verbs

Factitive verbs are used to describe an action that results in a new condition or state of a person or thing. When an adjective modifies the **direct object** of a factitive verb, it is known as an **object complement**, and we place it in the postpositive position. For example:

- “He makes *her* **happy**.”
- “I find *horror films* **terrifying**.”

- “We painted *the wall* **yellow**.”

For poetic effect

Postpositive placement of **attributive adjectives** is frequently used for poetic effect, as it gives a somewhat archaic and literary twist to otherwise plain expressions. Take for example this excerpt from the poem “Happiness,” by Thomas Frederick Young:

“Fair Happiness, I've courted thee,
And used each cunning art and wile,
Which lovers use with *maidens* **coy**,
To win one tender glance or smile.”

In this example, the poet places the adjectives *coy* after the plural noun *maidens*, instead of before it, creating a stronger poetic effect.

We can see the same effect again in the poem “The Bouquet,” by Edward Smyth Jones:

“A *blossom* **pink**,
A *blossom* **blue**,
Make all there is in love
So true.”

The same phenomenon can also be seen in titles of books and films, which often use postpositive placement for its dramatic effect. Consider the titles of works such as *Jupiter* ***Ascending***, *The Matrix* ***Reloaded***, or *The Brothers* ***Karamazov***, for example.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is an example of an attributive adjective?

a) A **black** dog.
b) The dog is **black**.
c) The dog **black**.
d) The **dog**.

2. Which of the following is *not* an attributive adjective?

a) Sarah is **short**.
b) The **blond** girl went to the party.

c) My **dear** friend James is here.
d) Have you called your **poor** brother?

3. Attributive adjectives never ____.

a) come after the noun.
b) precede the noun.
c) follow a linking verb.
d) appear in the postpositive position.

4. Most adjectives that are never attributive begin with the letter "____."

a) A
b) B
a) C
b) D

5. Which sentence is traditionally considered to be more correct?

a) The secretary-generals of the three countries are meeting today.
b) The secretaries-general of the three countries are meeting today.

Predicative Adjectives

Definition

A predicative adjective (or simply "predicate adjective") is used in the **predicate** of a clause to describe either the subject of the clause or the direct object of a verb.

As a subject complement

Predicative adjectives that describe the subject of the clause will follow a **linking verb**. In such cases, they are known as **subject complements**. For example:

- "You look *nice*."
- "He is *old*."

Here, "nice" describes the subject "you," while "old" describes the subject "he."

Note that adjectives appearing immediately *before* the noun they are describing are known as **attributive adjectives**. For example:

- “The *old* man seems nice.”

“Old” is an attributive adjective that describes the subject, “man.” “Nice” also describes “man,” but it is a predicative adjective because it follows the linking verb “seems.”

As an object complement

Predicative adjectives can also describe the direct object of non-linking verbs. In this case, such adjectives function as **object complements**. For example:

- “They painted the door *red*.”
- “All that training made me *stronger*.”

The predicative adjectives here are describing (complementing) the direct objects of the verbs, rather than the subjects of the sentences. “Red” describes the noun “door” (not the subject, “they”), while “stronger” describes the pronoun “me” (not the subject, “training”).

Sense verbs

Certain verbs are used to indicate perceptions, opinions, or bodily sensations. They are known as **verbs of the senses**, or “**sense verbs**” for short. Those verbs are as follows:

- taste
- smell
- sound
- seem
- feel
- look
- appear

Sense verbs merely relate the means by which the speaker has arrived at such a sensation about the subject. When we use them like this, they are functioning as linking verbs (rather than **action verbs**) and we pair them with predicative adjectives. This is not because the predicative adjective describes the verb, as an adverb would do. Rather, the predicative adjective describes the *subject* of the clause—they are subject complements, which we looked at above.

For example:

- “I *feel terrible* today.” (A feeling inside of being very unwell.)
- “You *sound tired*.” (A perception of tiredness in your voice.)
- “She didn’t *sound Italian*.” (An opinion based on the way her voice sounds.)
- “You *look fabulous* today.” (This is my opinion when I look at you.)
- “He doesn’t *look very happy*.” (Again, my opinion based on what my eyes tell me. Note that the adverb “very” is modifying the adjective “happy,” not the verb “look.”)
- “This doesn’t *feel right*.” (An opinion or perception of something not being as it should.)
- “The car *appears OK*, but I’ll have to drive it to be sure.” (From what I can see, the car looks like it’s in good condition.)
- “That *smells nice*.” (Sensation of a pleasant aroma.)
- “This milk *tastes funny**.” (Sensation of an odd or unpleasant taste.)

**The adjective “funny” has two meanings. It can describe something that makes you laugh, or something that is strange, unpleasant, dubious, or not as it should be. It carries the latter meaning in the above example.*

If any of the above verbs were used as action verbs, they could no longer be followed by an adjective—you would have to pair them with an adverb. For example:

- “I *felt gently* around the table in the dark.” (Describes the action of feeling with one’s hand.)
- “He *looked quickly* to the right.” (Describes the action of looking in a certain direction.)
- “The car *appeared out of nowhere*.” (Describes the action of coming into sight, using a **prepositional phrase as an adverb**.)
- “Yes, you *heard right*!” (*Right* in this case is an adverb meaning “accurately or correctly.”)

Sources of confusion – Good vs. Well

A common stumbling block for natives and learners of English alike is the correct usage of *good* versus *well*.

In most instances, *good* is an attributive adjective directly describing a noun, while *well* is an adverb describing a verb, adjective, or other adverb. For

example:

- “He is a *good driver*.”
- “She *writes well*.”

We cannot use *good* and *well* interchangeably in these instances, and we can see immediately that the following would be incorrect:

✖ “He is a *well* driver.”

✖ “She writes *good*.”

However, *well* can also function as a predicative adjective, where it usually means “healthy” or “not ill.” We use it in this sense after linking verbs such as *be*, *get*, or the sense verbs above:

- “Jenny looks *well* lately.”
- “Get *well* soon!”

In these examples, *well* does not describe the verbs, but rather the subjects of the sentences (implied in the second example).

Good can be used as a predicative adjective as well, meaning “of a high or satisfactory quality.” This can be used after linking verbs to talk about an opinion of something, an emotional state, or general well-being (as opposed to physical health, specifically). For example:

- “The movie *was good*.” (Opinion of the quality of the movie.)
- “I’m *feeling good* about my chances!” (Emotional state.)
- “Janet looks *good* lately.” (Opinion of Janet’s appearance.)
- A: “How are you, Bob?” B: “I’m *good*, thanks!” (General well-being.)

The last example is perfectly correct, and it is very frequently used as a stock response to the question “How are you?” You could also say “I’m well,” and no one is likely to take issue with it. However, if someone asks how you are after, for instance, an illness or injury, it would be better to respond with “I’m well.”

If saying “I’m good” still does not sound quite right to you, you could also say “I am *doing well*,” in which case *well* is used adverbially once more.

You can learn more about such adjective/adverb oddities in the **irregular adverbs** section of the chapter on **Adverbs**.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What is the function of an adjective when it describes a noun that is part of the predicate?

a) Subject complement
b) Object complement
c) Attributive adjective
d) None of the above

2. What does a predicative adjective that follows a linking verb modify?

a) The verb
b) The object of the verb
c) The subject of the clause
d) The predicate of the clause

3. When can “well” function as a predicative adjective? (Choose the answer that is **most correct**.)

a) When it follows a linking verb
b) When it modifies a linking verb
c) When it means “in good health”
d) When it functions as an object complement
e) A & C
f) B & D

4. Which of the following sentences does **not** have a predicate adjective?

a) “I don’t think I heard you right.”
b) “I am feeling well.”
c) “My father is really nice.”
d) “Does this seem different to you?”

Proper Adjectives

Definition

Proper adjectives, like all adjectives, modify nouns, but they are different from other adjectives because they are actually formed from **proper nouns**.

A **noun**, we know, is a person, place, or thing. We can distinguish between two types of nouns: **common nouns** and **proper nouns**. Common nouns are general, such as *man*, *street*, and *city*. *James*, *Canning Street*, and *Paris* are all proper nouns, because they talk about specific people, places, or things. “James” is a specific man, “Canning Street” is a specific street, and “Paris” is a specific city. Proper nouns are always written with a capital letter in English.

Proper adjectives are formed from these proper nouns, and they are also capitalized. They are often made from the names of cities, countries, or regions to describe where something comes from, but they can also be formed from the names of religions, brands, or even individuals. Some examples will make this clear:

Proper Noun	Proper Adjective	Example Sentence
Italy	Italian	I love **Italian** food.
China	Chinese	How much does this **Chinese** robe cost?
Christ	Christian	In Europe, you can visit many ancient **Christian** churches.
Shakespeare	Shakespearean	He writes in an almost **Shakespearean** style.
Canon	Canon	I’m really excited to use my new **Canon** camera.

Why We Use Proper Adjectives

We use proper adjectives to describe something efficiently, directly, and explicitly. We could manage to avoid them, but it would result in clunky, awkward sentences. If we want to express the same meaning as the example sentences from the table above, we could write:

- “I love food *that comes from Italy*.”
- “How much does this robe *that comes from China* cost?”
- “In Europe, you can visit many ancient churches *of the religion that worships Christ*.”
- “He writes almost in the style *of the writer Shakespeare*.”
- “I’m really excited to use my new camera *from the Canon brand*.”

These sentences are lengthy, awkward, and choppy to read. Using the **proper adjectives** *Italian, Chinese, Christian, Shakespearean,* and *Canon* makes our meaning come across much more smoothly.

Proper adjectives are often used in an academic or artistic context, when the speaker (or writer) is addressing an audience of his or her peers and knows that they will quickly understand the reference. For example, the sentence “He writes in an almost *Shakespearean* style” would frequently be used among scholars of English literature. You would want to avoid the term *Shakespearean* if you were addressing a group of young students who had not yet heard of the author. Likewise, a group of architects or historians may refer to a “*Romanesque* building,” while we would want to avoid that term if we were addressing a group that lacks background knowledge in historical architecture.

How to Form Proper Adjectives

A proper adjective is usually formed by adding an ending to the noun that it is derived from. There is not an easy rule to memorize for which ending to use. If you’re not sure, you can try some of the most common endings—*-ian, -an, -esque, -like,* and *-istic*—and see which sounds right.

Proper Adjectives for Countries, Cities, and Regions

Countries

Many proper adjectives are formed from the names of countries to describe where a person, place, or thing is from. We have seen some examples already. The most common endings for nationalities are *-ian/-ean/-an, -ic, ese,* and *-ish*. The reason that English has so many endings for different nationalities is that we borrowed them from other languages. We borrowed the *-ian, -ean, -an* from Latin, *-ic* also from Latin but via Germanic languages, *-ese* from Italian, and *-i* from Arabic. The native Germanic suffix is *-ish*, which English has only kept for only a small number of nationalities.

Here are some of the most common proper adjectives for countries:

-ian/-ean/-an	-ic	-ese	-i	-ish	-ish
Italian	Greenlandic	Chinese	Iraqi	Danish	Chinese

Armenian	Icelandic	Japanese	Israeli	Finnish	Japanese
Australian	Nordic	Lebanese	Pakistani	Irish	Lebanese
Bulgarian	Hispanic	Portuguese	Saudi	Scottish	Portuguese
Korean		Sudanese	Emirati	Spanish	Sudanese
Moroccan		Vietnamese	Yemeni	Turkish	Vietnamese

Cities

Proper adjectives can also describe what city or state/province something or someone comes from. Often, these are formed without an additional ending. For example:

- “Let’s have a **New York** bagel for breakfast.”
- “She has a real **London** etiquette.”

Other proper adjectives are formed by adding an ending to the name of the city or state, but it’s impossible to learn them all. They’re very irregular. You may find it useful to learn the endings for the most famous cities of the world, or the places around where you live. Some examples of well-known proper adjectives for cities or states are:

- “I will never be able to keep up with **Parisian** fashion.”
- “There is nothing better than **Alaskan** smoked salmon.”

Regions

Finally, we also have proper adjectives for general geographic regions. For example:

- “An **African** elephant.”
- “An **Asian** person.”
- “A **European** museum.”
- “A **South American** blanket.”
- “A **Middle Eastern** film.”

A Few More Notes

Sometimes, a word that began as a proper adjective can lose its “proper” significance over time. In these cases, the word is no longer capitalized. Take the following sentence:

- “He was making **quixotic** mistakes.”

Quixotic was a proper adjective derived from the name *Don Quixote*, a fictional character who was prone to foolish, grandiose behavior. Through time, it has come to mean “foolish” in its own right, without necessarily pointing to the character of Don Quixote. Therefore, it has lost its capitalization.

Another example of this phenomenon is the word *gargantuan*. Once associated with the name of a giant in a 16th-century book, it has come to mean “huge” in daily use. Since losing its link with the fictional monster, it is no longer capitalized.

- “The couple purchased the house next door and built a **gargantuan** house.”

On the other hand, there are some common nouns that can act as proper nouns in specific cases and need to be capitalized. For example, the adjective *native* would normally be considered a common noun, as in the sentence “I want to practice Spanish with a *native* speaker.” Consider the word *native* in the following sentence, though:

- The indigenous people of Canada and the United States are commonly referred to as **Native Americans**.

In this sentence, *Native* acts as a proper adjective because it describes a specific group of people, just like *Italian* or *French*.

When a proper adjective needs a prefix, make sure to place a hyphen between the prefix and the proper adjective. Don’t capitalize the prefix, though. For example:

- “He was accused of stirring up *anti*-**Chinese** sentiment.”
- “I love studying *pre*-**Shakespearean** theater.”

The exception to this rule is if the prefix is formed from a proper noun itself, as in the “**Austro-Hungarian** empire.” In this example, both *Hungarian* and its prefix *Austro* are derived from proper nouns (Hungary and Austria), so they are both capitalized.

Lastly, while proper adjectives are generally placed before the noun they modify, most can also be placed after the noun, provided that there is also a linking verb before them. For example, all of the following sentences are correct:

- “The winning team was **Spanish**.
- “The man over there is **Italian**.”
- “The monks in this monastery are **Buddhist**.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is a proper adjective?

a) Blue
b) Spanish
c) Tall
d) Tired

2. Which of the following is *not* a proper adjective?

a) Spanish
b) Grecian
c) Intelligent
d) Muslim

3. In the sentence “I went to a private catholic school,” which word or words should be capitalized?

a) catholic
b) private
c) school
d) catholic and school

4. In the sentence “The number of afro-europeans has risen steadily,” which word or words should be capitalized?

a) number
b) afro
c) europeans
d) afro and europeans

5. Proper adjectives are adjectives formed from ____.

a) proper nouns
b) common nouns
c) adjectives
d) verbs

Collective Adjectives Definition

Collective adjectives are a subgroup of **nominal adjectives**, or adjectives that act as nouns. They are used to refer to a group of people based on a characteristic that they share. For example:

• “**The rich** should help **the poor**.”

This sentence is another way of saying, “Rich people should help poor people.”

Some common **collective adjectives** are:

- **the blind**
- **the elderly**
- **the hardworking**
- **the homeless**
- **the innocent**
- **the intelligent**
- **the poor**
- **the rich**
- **the sick**
- **the strong**
- **the weak**
- **the young**

In addition, a large amount of collective adjectives refer to the nationality of a group of people. For example, instead of saying “*French people* cook well,” we can say, “**The French** cook well.” Other nationalities for which we have collective adjectives are:

- **the Chinese**
- **the English**
- **the Irish**

- **the Japanese**
- **the Scottish**
- **the Spanish**
- **the Vietnamese**

Notice that when we use a collective adjective for nationality, it's capitalized.

Finally, collective adjectives for nationality have to be learned by heart, as we don't have collective adjectives for all nationalities. For example, to refer to a group of German people, we have to say ***the Germans*** or simply ***Germans***, which is a **plural proper noun**—a corresponding collective adjective doesn't exist for German people. Other examples include ***(the) Canadians, (the) Russians, (the) Americans***, and ***(the) Slovaks***.

How to use collective adjectives

Using **collective adjectives** is simple. There are only a couple of things that we need to remember:

1. We always add the article *the* before the adjective (except for nationalities that use plural proper nouns).

2. We always treat collective adjectives as **plural nouns**. This means that they have to take plural forms of verbs.

3. We do not pluralize collective adjectives by adding the suffixes -*s* or -*es*. They are already considered plural (except for nationalities that use plural proper nouns).

Let's look at some examples:

- "**The rich** *are* usually powerful."
- "**The French** *are* the best chefs."
- "**The elderly** *need* proper care."

In these examples, **the rich, the French**, and **the elderly** function as the **subjects** of the sentences. They are treated as plurals, which is why the sentences use the plural forms of the verbs *be* and *need*.

Collective adjectives can also function as the **object** of a sentence, as in:

- "We are working hard to help **the homeless**."

In this example, the subject of the sentence is *we*, while the **object** is the collective adjective *the homeless*.

Common Errors

Collective adjectives are often confused with **collective nouns**, but there are key differences. While they both refer to a group of people, collective nouns (such as *team*, *staff* or *class*) are inherently **nouns** in structure and function; collective adjectives, on the other hand, are **adjectives** that merely *function* as nouns.

Additionally, collective nouns are often treated as singular (as in, “The best *team* is going to win”), whereas collective adjectives, as we have mentioned, are always treated as plural.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is a collective adjective?

a) the rich
b) the tenants
c) the girls
d) the German

2. Which of the following is *not* a collective adjective?

a) the poor
b) the meek
c) the team
d) the French

3. Collective adjectives are always ____.

a) plural
b) singular
c) verbs
d) subjects

4. In the following sentence, which word or words should be capitalized?
“i want to help the poor.”

a) Both “i” and “poor.”
b) Only “i.”
c) “I,” “help,” and “poor.”
d) Only “poor.”

5. Collective adjectives are adjectives that function as ____.

a) nouns
b) subjects
c) objects
d) verbs

Demonstrative Adjectives

Definition

Like all adjectives, **demonstrative adjectives** modify nouns or pronouns. We use demonstrative adjectives to specify what we are referring to, to indicate whether the person or thing is singular or plural, and to give the listener information about that person or object's proximity to the speaker (identifying whether it's nearby or far away). Because they are used to determine a specific noun, demonstrative adjectives are sometimes known as **demonstrative determiners**.

There are four common demonstrative adjectives in English: *this, that, these,* and *those*.

Placement

Demonstrative adjectives always come before the noun they modify. Often, they start the sentence. For example:

- "**This** *toy* is my brother's favorite."
- "**These** *cups* are very pretty."

They can also come at the middle or at the end, as long as they are followed by a noun (if they were not followed by a noun, they would become demonstrative pronouns):

- "My brother's favorite toy is **this** *train*."
- "I wish I had more of **these** *chocolates*!"
- "Can you please go buy me **those** *books*?"

In the examples above, the demonstrative adjective is placed immediately before the noun it modifies. However, if there are additional adjectives that also modify the same noun, they should be placed between the demonstrative adjective and the noun. For example:

- “My brother’s favorite toy is **this** blue *train*.”
- “I wish I had more of **these** delicious *chocolates*!”
- “Can you please go buy me **those** school *books*?”

Choosing the Correct Demonstrative Adjective

Use this table to easily reference which demonstrative adjectives to use in different contexts:

	Near	**Far**
Singular	this	that
Plural	these	those

This/That

As you can see from the table, *this* and *that* are used when the person or thing we are talking about is **singular** (there is only one).

This is used for things that are nearby. The proximity is sometimes stated explicitly in the sentence. For example:

- “**This** toy I’m holding is my brother’s favorite.”
- “**This** chair I’m sitting on is broken.”

It’s also common for the demonstrative adjective to be the only information we have about how near or far the person or object is. For example, imagine that there are two cups: One is on the table next to “Jen”; the other is across the room, next to “David.”

Jen says: “**This** cup is very pretty.”

Because she used the demonstrative adjective *this*, it’s clear that Jen is talking about the cup that is on the table next to her, and not the cup that’s next to David.

That is used for a singular person or object that is farther away. Again, the proximity is sometimes stated explicitly, as in:

- “**That** toy on the table over there is my brother’s favorite.”
- “**That** chair across the room is broken.”

But again, the distance can also be unstated and implied by the demonstrative adjective. Let’s go back to our example about Jen and David. This time, Jen says: “**That** cup is very pretty.”

Because Jen used the demonstrative adjective *that*, it’s clear that she is now talking about the cup that is on the table next to David, and not the one that’s next to her.

These/Those

These and *those* work in the same way as *this* and *that*, but as you can see in the table, they are used to refer to people and objects that are **plural** (more than one.)

These is used for plural objects that are nearby. As we saw with *this*, the proximity can be explicit, as in:

- “**These** toys I’m holding are my brother’s favorites.”
- “**These** chairs we’re sitting on are broken.”

Or, the proximity can be implied:

- “**These** cups are very pretty.” (We know the cups are near the speaker.)

Those is used for plural objects that are farther away. Again, the distance can be stated. For example:

- “**Those** toys on the table over there are my brother’s favorites.”
- “**Those** chairs across the room are broken.”

Or, the distance can be implied:

- “**Those** blue cups are very pretty.” (We know the cups are not near to the speaker.)

Yon/Yonder

Yon and *yonder* are lesser-known demonstrative adjectives. They’re both considered archaic and don’t exist in most modern dialects of English. However, you may encounter them in older texts or songs. For example, this famous line from Romeo and Juliet uses the demonstrative adjective *yonder*:

- “What light on **yonder** *window* breaks?”

Yon and *yonder* are still used in a few dialects of English, such those spoken in certain Celtic-influenced areas like Scotland and the Southern United States. Generally, they can be used interchangeably, and are both understood to indicate that the noun is not near the speaker, but the proximity really depends on the dialect of the people using it.

Here are some examples of how *yon* and *yonder* could be used in a sentence:

- "We will have to cross **yon** *field* to get home."
- "Something has frightened **yonder** *horses*."

Demonstrative Adjectives vs. Demonstrative Pronouns

Demonstrative adjectives are often confused with **demonstrative pronouns**, because *this, that*, *these*, and *those* can serve both functions. If you think about the role of an adjective and the role of a pronoun, though, you'll see that they're not so confusing after all.

Demonstrative **adjectives** do what all adjectives do: modify a noun or pronoun. On the other hand, demonstrative **pronouns** do what all pronouns do: stand in place of a noun. Let's clarify the difference through some examples:

- "**This** *toy* is his favorite." (demonstrative adjective.)
- "**This** is his favorite toy." (demonstrative pronoun.)
- "Give **that** big *book* to me." (demonstrative adjective.)
- "Give me **that**." (demonstrative pronoun)
- "I want **this** *TV* for Christmas." (demonstrative adjective.)
- "**This** is what I want for Christmas." (demonstrative pronoun.)

As you can see, each of the demonstrative adjectives modifies a noun (*toy, book*, *TV*), while the demonstrative pronouns stand in place of nouns.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Choose the correct demonstrative adjective to complete the sentence:
"Stay away from ____ black dog next door."

a) this
b) that

c) these
d) those

2. Choose the correct demonstrative adjective to complete the sentence:
"____ books here on my desk are for you."

a) This
b) That
c) These
d) Those

3. Choose the correct demonstrative adjective to complete the sentence:
"Look at ____ trees over there. Aren't they beautiful?"

a) this
b) that
c) these
d) those

4. Which of the following sentences **does not** contain a demonstrative adjective?

a) "Please give that to me quickly."
b) "Can you hand me those books?"
c) "Do you have this movie at home?"
d) "That girl is bad news."

5. Which of the following sentences **does** contain a demonstrative adjective?

a) "That's my boyfriend over there."
b) "Can you give me a hand with this homework?"
c) "Have you seen this before?"
b) "Those are the ones that I want."

Interrogative Adjectives

Definition

Like all adjectives, **interrogative adjectives** (also known as **interrogative determiners**) modify nouns and pronouns. English has three interrogative adjectives: *what*, *which*, and *whose*. They are called "interrogative" because they are usually used to ask questions. For example:

- “**What** book are you reading?
- “**Which** shirt are you going to buy?”
- “**Whose** computer is this?”

In each of the examples, the interrogative adjective modifies the noun it immediately precedes: *book, shirt,* and *computer*.

How to Use Interrogative Adjectives

The interrogative adjectives *what* and *which* can often be used interchangeably, while *whose* is very different. Let’s look at when to use each:

What vs. Which

Although *what* and *which* are often interchangeable, there is a subtle difference between the two.

Generally, we use *what* when the amount of possible answers is unknown or unlimited, and we use *which* when we either know how many choices there are, or we consider the options to be more limited. Think about the difference between these two sentences:

- “**What** present do you think you’ll get for Christmas?”
- “**Which** present do you think you’ll get for Christmas?”

In the first sentence, the speaker does not have any idea how many possible presents there are. In the second sentence, it seems that the speaker *does* have an idea of what the presents may be, and that the choices are limited.

Let’s look at a similar example:

- “**What** movie do you want to see?”
- “**Which** movie do you want to see?”

Again, in the first sentence, it seems like the options are unlimited, while in the second sentence, the speaker may have been discussing two or three movies with the listener, and they are trying to make a final decision.

In most instances, we can use either *what* or *which* without causing confusion for the reader. However, if there is clearly a limited number of options to choose from, *which* is the preferred interrogative adjective to use.

Whose

Whose is an adjective that denotes **possession**, or belonging. We can use it to ask who the owner of an object is. For example:

- “**Whose** socks are on the floor?”
- “**Whose** book is this?”
- “**Whose** turn is it?”

In these examples, the speaker is trying to find out who the *socks, book,* and *turn* belong to.

Direct questions

When interrogative adjectives appear in normal **direct questions**, they are placed at the beginning of the sentence and are immediately followed by the noun that they modify. All the examples that we have seen up until this point were direct questions. However, interrogative adjectives don’t *only* appear in direct questions.

Indirect questions

Interrogative adjectives can also appear within **indirect questions**. When this happens, they appear in the middle of the sentence, but they still immediately precede the modified noun. Some indirect questions are used to express politeness:

- “Could you tell me **whose** socks are on the floor?”
- “Would you mind telling me **which** way is north?”
- “Do you know **what** day it is?”

Other indirect questions are used to ask for clarifying information, or to convey surprise:

- “You want **which** computer for Christmas?”
- “You’re going out with **whose** brother?”
- “He wants to watch **what** movie?”

In such cases, emphasis is put on the interrogative adjective—we can hear the stress on the words when we say the sentences aloud.

In reported questions

Interrogative adjectives also appear in the middle of **reported questions**. Reported questions are also indirect; they tell us *about* questions. For example:

- "She wants to know **whose** socks are on the floor."
- "He asked **which** way was north."
- "I asked you **what** day it was."

The speaker in each of the examples isn't asking a definite question, but rather is reporting or clarifying a question that has already been asked.

Other statements

Interrogative adjectives are sometimes used in other statements that aren't questions at all: they don't ask questions, either directly or indirectly, but still modify the nouns in the same kind of way. For example:

- "I can't remember **whose** socks they are."
- "I don't know **which** way is north."
- "I know **what** day it is."

Common Mistakes

Interrogative Adjectives vs. Interrogative Pronouns

The most common mistake regarding interrogative adjectives is confusing them with interrogative pronouns. This is because all three interrogative adjectives, *what*, *which*, and *whose*, can also function as **interrogative pronouns**. An easy way to be sure whether you are dealing with an interrogative adjective or an interrogative pronoun is to check whether the question word is immediately followed by the noun it modifies, like in all the examples that we have seen:

- "**What** *book* is your favorite?"

In this example, *what* is immediately followed by the noun *book*. We can be sure that, in this case, *what* is a **possessive adjective**.

- “**What** are you reading?”

In this sentence, *what* is not immediately followed by a noun that it modifies, which means that in this case, it is an **interrogative pronoun**.

Just remember: Even though all interrogative adjectives are question words, not all questions words are interrogative adjectives.

Whose vs. Who’s

Finally, beware of the common error of confusing *whose* and *who’s*. *Whose* is an interrogative adjective or pronoun, while *who’s* is the contraction of *who is*.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following **is not** an interrogative adjective?

a) which
b) whom
c) which
d) whose

2. What comes immediately after an interrogative adjective?

a) The verb it modifies
b) Another adjective
c) The noun it modifies
d) An adverb

3. Complete the sentence: “____ stars can we see from Earth?”

a) whose
b) which
c) what
d) either A or B
e) either B or C

4. Which of the following sentences does **not** contain an interrogative adjective?

a) “Tell me which car you like best.”
b) “I forgot what I was going to do this evening.”
c) “Do you know which dress I’m going to buy?”

d) “Would you mind telling me whose car this is?”

5. Which of the following sentences is **incorrect**?
a) “Who’s book is this?”
b) “Do you know whose book this is?”
c) “What book do you want to read tonight?”
d) “Which book do you want to read tonight?”

Nominal Adjectives

Definition

We know that **adjectives** are words that modify (or describe) nouns, such as the word *red* in “the *red* jacket,” or the word *beautiful* in “that girl is *beautiful*.”

Nominal adjectives, on the other hand, are adjectives that perform the function of a **noun** in a sentence. They are preceded by the word *the* and can be found as the **subject** or the **object** of a sentence or clause. For example:

- “**The elderly** are a great source of wisdom.”
- “**The French** have amazing restaurants.”
- “**The opposite** of up is down.”
- “**The best** is yet to come.”

In the examples above, the nominal adjectives do not modify any other noun—they’re acting as nouns themselves. Specifically, they are performing the function of the subject of the sentences, but, as we mentioned, they can also function as objects. For example:

- “We should treat **the elderly** with respect.”
- “This law protects **the innocent**.”
- “We all want **the best** for her.”

Uses of Nominal Adjectives

Nominal adjectives perform several different functions. Some nominal adjectives are used to refer to a group of people who all share a certain characteristic, which can be a physical or non-physical characteristic. Other nominal adjectives refer to a characteristic of an individual person or thing. We’ll look at each type of nominal adjective separately.

Collective Adjectives

Collective adjectives are nominal adjectives that are used to refer to groups of people. Sometimes they refer to a shared physical characteristic, such as *the blind, the deaf, the short,* or *the tall*. Other times, they refer to non-physical characteristics, like *the hardworking, the intelligent, the poor,* or *the rich*.

In each of these cases, the nominal adjective takes the place of a lengthier description, such as "*all the people who are rich,*" or "*all the intelligent people*."

Collective adjectives can also refer to some nationalities, such as *the Chinese, the English,* or *the French*.

If you'd like to learn more about **collective adjectives**, they are covered in greater depth in their own section of the chapter about the **Categories of Adjectives**.

Comparative and superlative forms

Adjectives in their **comparative** or **superlative** form can also be nominal adjectives. Comparative adjectives are those that end in "-er" or are preceded by the word *more*, as in *stronger, taller, cleverer, more beautiful,* etc. They are used to compare two things. Have a look at these examples of nominal adjectives in comparative form:

- "His brother is **the taller**, but he is **the cleverer**."
- "They gave the prize to **the more beautiful** of the two."
- "Of the two cars, we chose **the more expensive**."

Superlative adjectives are those that end in "-est" or are preceded by the word *most*, such as *strongest, tallest, most beautiful, most clever,* etc. They compare three or more things, and they can function as nominal adjectives in the same way that comparatives can. For example:

- "Dan is **the strongest**."
- "I want **the best** for you."
- "Whenever we have a job to do, you give me **the most difficult**."

Other adjectives

Most of the time, nominal adjectives are collective, comparative, and superlative adjectives. However, just about any adjective can be made nominal. They can make sentences shorter and more concise by avoiding repetitive use of a noun. Here are some instances in which nominal adjectives might be preferable:

- "I liked the red car but we bought the **blue**." (nominal adjective)

instead of

- "I like the red car but we bought the *blue car*." (standard adjective)

- Speaker A: "Which color did you like best?"
- Speaker B: "I thought the **blue** was the prettiest." (nominal adjective)

instead of

- Speaker B: "I thought the blue *color* was the prettiest." (standard adjective)

- "You've heard the good news, now I'll tell you the **bad**."

instead of

- "You've heard the good news, now I'll tell you the bad *news*."

Other options

You may have noticed that a lot of these examples could be worded differently. For example, when using collective adjectives, we can just as easily say "French people" instead of "the French," or "poor people" instead of "the poor."

With comparative and superlative forms, we can add a noun to provide more emphasis or clarity. For example, we could say "He was **the stronger *man*** of the two" instead of "he was **the stronger**" or "I want **the best *thing*** for you" instead of "I want **the best** for you."

Often, we can also replace a noun with the pronoun *one* instead of using a nominal adjective. For example, "you take the green t-shirt, I'll take the blue *one*" instead of "you take the green t-shirt, I'll take the blue."

In many cases, these options are less formal than using a nominal adjective.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Nominal adjectives take the place of a _______ in a sentence.

a) verb
b) person
c) adjective
d) noun

2. Which of the following **cannot** function as a nominal adjective?

a) poor
b) red
c) shirt
d) French

3. Nominal adjectives are preceded by the word ________.

a) the
b) one
c) those
d) noun

4. In the sentence “You rent the green car, I’ll rent the red,” which word (or words) is the nominal adjective?

a) Only *green*
b) *Green* and *red*
c) Only *red*
d) *car*

5. Which of the following sentences *does not* include an example of a nominal adjective?

a) “I’m sure you’ve chosen the best.”
b) “I wish I had bought the red.”
c) “The elderly deserve respect.”
d) “You really know how to find the best music.”

Compound Adjectives

Definition

A **compound adjective** (also known as a **compound modifier** or a **phrasal adjective**) is created by two or more words that work jointly to modify the same noun; they always appear before the noun they modify, and they are usually joined together by a **hyphen** (or **hyphens**) to clarify that the words are working as a single modifying unit.

Creating compound adjectives

Compound adjectives are made up of multiple words, and, in various combinations, they can be composed of adjectives, nouns, quantifiers, participles, and adverbs.

Sometimes, other types of words are used to join two (or more) others. For example, the conjunction *and* is often used between two nouns or two adjectives to create a three-word compound adjective.

Let’s look at some examples of the different combinations we can make below.

Adjective + Adjective

When multiple adjectives are used to modify the same noun, they usually appear with commas between them or simply in a row with no punctuation, depending on the **order of adjectives**. If two or more adjectives are functioning together as a single unit, though, we must use hyphens. This most commonly occurs with colors or position, as in:

- “She had bright, **blue-green** eyes.”
- “His **orange-yellow** skin looked very unhealthy.”
- “Look in the **top-right** corner of the screen.”
- “The scissors are in the **bottom-left** drawer.”

More often, adjectives are paired with other parts of speech to create compound nouns, as we shall see.

Adjective + Noun

It is very common to follow an adjective with a noun to create a compound adjective:

- “They went on a **wild-goose** chase.”
- “I can only find **part-time** work at the moment.”
- “The dog is a **short-hair** breed.”
- “I know this is a **last-minute** suggestion, but hear me out.”

It is equally common to use nouns before adjectives, as in:

- “I’d love an **ice-cold** soda right about now.”
- “Do you have any **sugar-free** cookies?”

Quantifiers

When we use a quantifier (a kind of **determiner**) with a noun to create a compound adjective, we often pair the quantifier with a noun of **measurement** (length, height, weight, age, or time). For example:

- “It is the only **10-storey** building in the town.”
- “We bought a **three-foot** sandwich to share.”
- “The **eight-pound** bag fell to the floor.”
- “This is a very nice **12-year** whiskey.”

When indicating age, we often add the adjective *old* to the end, as in:

- “His **11-year-old** niece is coming to visit.”

(Note that we also use this same hyphenation when making a **compound noun** from an age, as in “My **11-year-old** is coming to visit.”)

When we indicate cost, we normally use quantifiers with symbols of currency, such as $, £, €, etc. When the currency is spelled out, however, we must use hyphens to form compound adjectives. Likewise, we use hyphens if the numerals are spelled out as well. For example:

- “He bought a **$5,000** computer.”
- “He bought a **5,000-dollar** computer.”
- “He bought a **five-thousand-dollar** computer.”

We can also use quantifiers with other nouns, too:

- “There was an **11-car** pileup on the highway.”

- “The theater has a **400-person** capacity.”

Participles

Past and present participles can be paired with adjectives, nouns, and adverbs to form compound adjectives. For example:

With nouns

- “Many legends still survive about **man-eating** whales, but they are simply untrue.”
- “It’s another **record-breaking** race for the Kenyan runner.”
- “There are many **mouth-watering** items on the menu.”
- “I won’t spend another night in this **dust-ridden** house.”
- “The **crocodile-infested** waters are particularly dangerous.”

With adjectives

- “The table is made from **rough-hewn** wood.”
- “My **old-fashioned** aunt would never approve.”
- “There are several **delicious-sounding** things on the menu.”
- “He has an **expensive-looking** car.”

With adverbs

- “This company runs like a **well-oiled** machine.”
- “Our eyes had to adjust in the **dimly-lit** corridor.”
- “There are a only few **well-running** cars to choose from.”
- “We need some **forward-thinking** individuals for the job.”
- “My **early-rising** brother always baulks at me when I sleep in late.”

Prepositions

Prepositions are also used to form compound adjectives, as in:

- “You need an **up-to-date** computer to run this software.”
- “I’ve lived in too many **run-down** apartments.”

Other cases

And

When the conjunction *and* is used between two words (usually nouns) to join them as a single modifier, we must hyphenate all three words. For example:

- “I find her **salt-and-pepper** hair very attractive.”
- “These old **stone-and-mortar** buildings have stood the test of time.”

Proper nouns

We sometimes use a multi-word **proper noun** to identify a noun as belonging to a particular person or brand. In this case, we do **not** hyphenate the words. For example:

- “Can you play any **Elton John** songs?”
- “Did you see the **Arthur Miller** play on Broadway?”

Pronouns

Occasionally it is possible to use pronouns (especially **personal pronouns**) to form compound adjectives, though this is not very common. For example:

- “It turned into a **he-said-she-said** situation.”

Adverbs before adjectives

Adverbs are often used in conjunction with adjectives to jointly modify a noun, but they are not really considered to be compound adjectives and they usually do **not** require a hyphen—the fact that they work together with the adjective is implied. For example:

- “It was a **very brave** thing to do.”
- “She is an **exceptionally talented** girl.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which punctuation mark do we use to create compound adjectives?

a) comma

b) semicolon
c) hyphen
d) period

2. Which of the following **cannot** be used to form compound adjectives?

a) participles
b) verbs
c) nouns
d) prepositions

3. Which of the following are **not** hyphenated when functioning as compound adjectives?

a) proper nouns
b) adjectives
c) quantifiers
d) pronouns

4. Identify the combination used to create the compound adjective (in bold) in the following sentence:
"It was my **well-educated** apprentice who saved the day."

a) adjective + noun
b) adverb + past participle
c) adjective + past participle
d) noun + adjective

Order of Adjectives

Definition

Adjectives are words that modify a noun or a pronoun. In other words, they describe a person, place, or thing in a sentence. Adjectives usually come **before** the noun. For example:

- "The **small** dog jumped over the **white** fence."

Small is an adjective that describes the noun *dog*, and **white** is an adjective that describes the noun *fence*.

Adjectives add to the richness of our descriptions of people and things. They allow the listener or the reader to paint a mental picture of the person or object that is being described to them.

Think about some adjectives that you know. Some of the most common words are adjectives like *good, bad, young, old, big,* and *small*.

Each of these adjectives serves a purpose by describing a different aspect of the noun. *Good* and *bad* give an opinion of the noun, *old* and *young* tell us about the noun's age, while *big* and *small* describe the noun's size.

The good news is that adjectives are relatively simple in English. In some languages, the adjective changes its form depending on whether the noun it modifies is singular/plural, or feminine/masculine. In English, we don't have those complications: the adjective always remains the same.

When we speak or write, we don't want to bore our listener or reader with repetitive sentences. Imagine a description like this:

- "He is a **tall** man. He is a **healthy** man. He is a **young** man."

You would be so bored that you wouldn't want to listen to another word. Luckily, we have another option. We can make such a description more concise by using all three adjectives in one sentence:

- "He is a **tall healthy young** man."

Using more than one adjective in a sentence makes our writing and speech richer and more concise. However, this is also where we have to be careful, because certain adjectives appear in a certain order. For example, in the description above, which would be more correct: *tall healthy young man,* or *young healthy tall man*?

The answer is *tall healthy young man*, but why?

In English, the **order of adjectives** can sometimes be flexible, but most of the time we use a very specific order; if we don't, the sentence sounds unnatural, as in "*young healthy tall man*." To avoid unnatural-sounding sentences, we group adjectives by type, and we try to use them in this order:

1. Opinion
2. Measurements
3. Shape
4. Condition
5. Age
6. Color
7. Pattern

vk.com/club154894262

8. Origin
9. Material
10. Purpose

Obviously we never have a sentence that uses 10 adjectives to describe one noun. That would be far too long of a sentence!

In fact, it would even be rare to find a sentence that uses more than three adjectives to modify one noun. We do need to know a little about each type, though, so that when we need to use two or three adjectives in a row, we'll use them in the right order.

First, let's look at each type of adjective in detail. After that we'll see some examples of sentences that string two or more adjectives together.

Types of Adjectives

Opinion

Adjectives of opinion always come first before any other factual descriptions of the noun. There are two types of opinion adjectives. The first are general opinion adjectives and can be used with any kind of noun, whether it is a person, place, or thing.

Some of the most common general opinion adjectives are:

- good
- bad
- lovely
- strange
- beautiful
- nice

The second type are specific opinion adjectives. These are adjectives that can only be used with particular types of nouns. For example:

• People and animals: *intelligent, friendly, unfriendly, hard-working*

• Buildings and furniture: *comfortable, uncomfortable*

• Food: *flavorful, tasty, delicious*

If you want to use a general opinion adjective and a specific opinion adjective in the same sentence, the general opinion adjective should come first. For example:

• “Isn’t Maria a **lovely, intelligent** girl?”

Lovely is a general opinion adjective because it can be used with any noun. Therefore, it comes first. *Intelligent* is a specific opinion adjective because it can only be used with people and animals, so it comes second.

Measurements

Adjectives of measurement can tell us about the size, height, length, and weight of a person or a thing. Some of the most common adjectives of measurements are:

- big
- small
- tiny
- huge
- enormous
- short
- tall
- long
- heavy
- light

If we were to use more than one adjective of measurement in a sentence, we would normally use the adjective that mentions the general size first, and the other measurements after. For example:

• Correct: “He’s a **big, tall** man.”

Incorrect: “He’s a **tall, big** man.”

• Correct: “I bought a **huge, heavy** table for the kitchen.”

Incorrect: “I bought a **heavy, huge** table for the kitchen.”

Shape

Adjectives of shape usually describe objects. The most common are *round, square*, *rectangular, triangular*, and *oval*. However, there are many words that describe the shapes of objects that we see all around us but that are used less frequently. For example:

- bent

- concave
- convex
- flat
- pointy
- straight
- twisted
- symmetrical

Condition

Adjectives of condition tell us whether something is in a good or bad state. These are generally adjectives that describe a temporary state of the person or thing in the sentence. Some common adjectives of physical condition are *clean, dirty, wet,* and *dry*. Emotions like *happy, sad, angry, scared,* and *excited* are also adjectives of condition, as are general states such as *rich, powerful, shy,* or *clever*."

Age

Adjectives of age can describe how old a person, place, or thing is. We have to be careful with adjectives of age, because some are used to describe only people, some are used only for things, and a few are used for both people and things. For example:

• To describe people: *young, youthful, elderly*

• To describe things: *new, antique*

• To describe both: *old, ancient*

Color

Adjectives of color include the names of particular colors themselves, such as *yellow, red,* and *blue,* but they can also be approximate colors, like *reddish* or *yellowish,* or even properties of colors, such as *transparent, translucent* or *opaque*.

If you use both a color and a property of a color in one sentence, the property should come first, and the color after, immediately before the noun. For example:

• "A **translucent, yellow** cup."

- “An **opaque, blue** curtain.”

Pattern

Adjectives of pattern can describe patterns of materials or even of animals. Some of the most common pattern adjectives are *checked, polka-dot, striped, plaid,* and *flowered*.

Origin

Adjectives of origin describe where something comes from. Usually, these are adjectives that refer to a specific country or region.

When we use a country adjective, like *American, British, Indian,* or *Korean*, note that we capitalize the adjective. Adjectives of origin that refer to a general region, such as *eastern* or *southern*, are not capitalized.

Material

Adjectives of material tell us what something is made of. For example:

- “A **wooden** table.”
- “A **plastic** chair.”
- “A **steel** railroad track.”

Purpose

Last in the order of adjectives are **adjectives of purpose**. They tell us what something is for. For example:

- “A **sleeping** bag.”
- “A **shopping** cart.”

Now, let’s put all of this information about the different types of adjectives together and see some examples of how it works when we modify a noun with more than one adjective:

- “Don’t forget to bring your **new striped** jacket.”

This sentence has two adjective types: *New* is an adjective of age and **striped** is an adjective of pattern.

- “Yesterday my sister gave me a **blue wool** sweater.

This sentence also has two adjective types: *Blue* is an adjective of color, and *wool* is an adjective of material.

- “I bought an **enormous rectangular Turkish** rug on my vacation.”

This sentence includes three adjective types: *Enormous* is an adjective of measurement; *rectangular* is an adjective of shape; and *Turkish* is an adjective of origin (specifically of a country, so it’s also capitalized).

We use *and* to link two adjectives of the same type that describe separate parts of one object. For example:

- “The child was playing with a **blue** and **red plastic** robot.

Blue and *red* are two adjectives of color, joined by *and*. They are followed by the adjective of material, *plastic*.

Sometimes a series of adjectives follows a linking verb, like *to be*. In this case, the last adjective is connected to the previous ones with the word *and*. For example:

- “The house *is* **big, white**, *and* **wooden**.”

Using commas with adjectives

Last but not least, we need to mention commas. You have probably noticed that in some of our example sentences the adjectives are separated by commas, and in others they’re not.

Coordinate adjectives

In general, we *do* use commas between adjectives that belong to the same category. For example:

- “I bought a **heavy, long** table.”

Adjectives of the same category are called coordinate adjectives. They each describe the same feature of the noun that follows them. Coordinate adjectives are separated by a comma. One way that we can check if adjectives are coordinate is by trying to switch around the order and see if the sentence still makes sense. For example:

- “I bought a **long, heavy** table.”

The sentence still sounds correct, so we know that we are looking at coordinate adjectives and that we need to use a comma. Another way that we can check is by inserting the word *and* where the comma would go:

- “I bought a **heavy** *and* **long** table.”

Again, the sentence still sounds correct, so we know we are dealing with coordinate adjectives.

Cumulative adjectives

When the adjectives are from different categories, they are called cumulative adjectives. This is because they *accumulate* as they describe the noun; that is, they build on each other to create a complete description, and so we don’t separate them with commas:

- “I bought a **black wooden** table.”

Black is describing *wooden table* (not just *table* alone), and so this sentence would sound strange if rearranged, like this:

- “I bought a **wooden black** table.”

We can also try inserting *and*, with the same result:

- “I bought a **black** *and* **wooden** table.”

The sentence doesn’t sound right either rearranged or using the *and* test, so we know that we are dealing with cumulative adjectives, and we should not separate them with commas.

Exceptions

Finally, we should remember that like with most grammar rules, the order of adjectives is not fixed, and there are exceptions. We can do our best to keep adjectives in their natural order, but we may encounter variations.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is an adjective of material?

a) tall
b) silk
c) good
d) straight

2. Which of the following is an adjective of measurement?

a) long

b) beautiful
c) intelligent
d) round

3. Complete the sentence (using correct adjective order): “I bought an old ____ typewriter.”

a) beautiful
b) square
c) gray
d) dirty

4. Choose the correct adjective order:

a) a big fantastic old house
b) an old big fantastic house
c) a fantastic old big house
d) a fantastic big old house

5. Choose the correct adjective order:

a) a clean pink polka-dot sweater
b) a pink clean polka-dot sweater
c) a polka-dot clean pink sweater
d) a polka-dot pink clean sweater

Degrees of Comparison

Definition

Adjectives describe a quality or characteristic of a noun or pronoun. The basic form of an adjective is sometimes known as the **positive degree**.

But adjectives can also be **inflected** (changed in form) to compare a quality between two nouns—this form is known as the **comparative degree**.

Similarly, we can also inflect an adjective to identify a noun with the highest (or lowest) degree of an attribute among a group—this is known as the **superlative degree**.

Forming the Comparative and

Superlative Degrees

We generally form the comparative degree by adding the suffix "-er" to the end of the adjective, or by using the words *more* or *less* before it.

To form the superlative degree, we either add "-est" to the end of the adjective or use the words *most* or *least* before it.

In some cases, depending on how the adjective is spelled, we have to change the spelling slightly to accommodate the addition of the suffix; there are some simple rules we can follow to know when such a change is necessary.

(To learn when and how to use these inflected degrees of comparison, go to the sections on **Comparative Adjectives** and **Superlative Adjectives**.)

"Short" Adjectives

With one-syllable adjectives, we add "-er" or "-est" and double the final consonant if preceded by one vowel. For example:

Adjective (positive degree)	Comparative degree	Superlative degree
big	big**ger**	big**gest**
thin	thin**ner**	thin**nest**
sad	sad**der**	sad**dest**
slim	slim**mer**	slim**mest**

The final consonant is **not** doubled if it is preceded by two vowels or another consonant, as in:

Adjective (positive degree)	Comparative degree	Superlative degree
weak	weak**er**	weak**est**
strong	strong**er**	strong**est**
large*	large**r***	large**st***
small	small**er**	small**est**

(*If the adjective ends in an “e,” then you only need to add “-r” or “-st.”)

If an adjective has two syllables and ends in “-y,” we replace “y” with “i” and add “-er” or “-est,” as in:

Adjective (positive degree)	Comparative degree	Superlative degree
happy	happ**ier**	happ**iest**
chewy	chew**ier**	chew**iest**

“Long” Adjectives

“Long” adjectives are adjectives that have three or more syllables, or adjectives that have two syllables and *do not* end in “-y.” Rather than changing the ending of long adjectives, we use the words *more* or *less* before the adjective to make them comparative, or *most/least* to make them superlative. For example:

Adjective (positive degree)	Comparative degree	Superlative degree
careful	more/less careful	most/least careful
caring	more/less caring	most/least caring
gifted	more/less gifted	most/least gifted
intelligent	more/less intelligent	most/least intelligent
beautiful	more/less beautiful	most/least beautiful
amazing	more/less amazing	most/least amazing

Irregular adjectives

As with most grammatical rules in English, there are some exceptions to the patterns above. Adjectives that do not inflect according to the normal patterns are known as **irregular adjectives**. For example:

Irregular adjective (positive	Comparative	Superlative

degree)	**degree**	**degree**
fun	more/less fun	most/least fun
bad	worse	worst
well (healthy)	better	best
good	better	best
far*	farther/further*	farthest/furthest*

(*Although *farther/further* and *farthest/furthest* are often used interchangeably, there are differences between these two forms. In American English, *farther/farthest* is preferred when comparing physical distances, and *further/furthest* is preferred when comparing figurative distances; in British English, *further/furthest* is preferred for both uses.)

Adjectives with multiple forms of inflection

There are also some adjectives that can be inflected using either form we looked at above. The following are some of the most common:

Adjective (positive degree)	Comparative degree	Superlative degree
clever	cleverer ***or*** more/less clever	cleverest ***or*** most/least clever
likely	likelier ***or*** more/less likely	likeliest ***or*** most/least likely
narrow	narrower ***or*** more/less narrow	narrowest ***or*** most/least narrow
quiet	quieter ***or*** more/less quiet	quietest ***or*** most/least quiet
	simpler ***or*** more/less	simplest ***or*** most/least

simple	simple	simple

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following suffixes is used to shift a one-syllable adjective to the **superlative degree**?

a) -ed
b) -er
c) -est
d) -en

2. Which of the following pairs of words is used to shift a two-syllable “-ly” adjective to the **comparative degree**?

a) more/less
b) most/least
c) much/many
d) most/less

3. What is the **comparative form** of the irregular adjective *well*?

a) good
b) better
c) worse
d) best

4. What is the **superlative form** of the adjective *likely*?

a) likelier
b) likeliest
c) more/less likely
d) most/least likely
e) A & C
f) B & D

Comparative Adjectives

Definition

Comparative adjectives are adjectives that compare differences between the attributes of two nouns. These are often measurements, such as height, weight, depth, distance, etc., but they don't have to be. We can also use comparative adjectives to compare non-physical characteristics.

For example:

Adjective	Comparative
tall	taller
fast	faster
sweet	sweeter
beautiful	more/less beautiful
intelligent	more/less intelligent

Forming Comparative Adjectives

As we can see above, we form comparative adjectives either by adding "-er" to the end of the adjective, or by adding the word *more* (or *less*) before the adjective. So how do we know which to choose? Although there are some exceptions, you can follow some simple general rules for forming comparative adjectives:

Short Adjectives

When we discuss comparative adjectives, we class them into two types: **short** and **long**. **"Short" adjectives** are adjectives that have only one syllable, or else have two syllables and end in "-y." For the majority of short adjectives, we form the comparative according to the following rules:

Syllables	Rule	Examples
One syllable	Add "-er" to the end of the adjective.	*Tall* becomes **Taller**

Two syllables ending in “-y”	Replace “-y” with “-ier”	*happy* becomes **happier**

Aside from the major rules in the table, there are two other things we must keep in mind about short adjectives.

First, if the adjective ends in “-e,” we just add “-r,” not “-er.” This is to avoid doubling the letter “e.” For example:

- *Large* becomes **larger**, not *largeer*.
- *Cute* becomes **cuter**, not *cuteer*.
- *Safe* becomes **safer**, not *safeer*.

Second, if the last three letters of the adjective are in the pattern *consonant, vowel, consonant*, we double the final consonant before adding “-er” to the word. For example:

- *Big* becomes **bigger**, not *biger*.
- *Sad* becomes **sadder**, not *sader*.
- *Thin* becomes **thinner**, not *thiner*.

Long Adjectives

“Long” adjectives are adjectives that have three or more syllables, or adjectives that have two syllables and do not end in “-y.” For these adjectives, we can follow these rules:

Syllables	Rule	Examples
Two syllables not ending in “-y”	Insert the word *more/less* before the adjective.	*Careful* becomes **more/less careful**.
Three or more syllables	Insert the word *more/less* before the adjective.	*Intelligent* becomes **more/less intelligent**.

Irregular adjectives

As with most grammatical “rules” in English, there are some exceptions to the patterns above. Here are a few of the adjectives that have **irregular** comparative forms:

Adjective	Comparative form
fun	**more/less fun**
bad	**worse**
good	**better**
well (not ill)	**better**

There are also some adjectives that have two generally accepted comparative forms. These are some of the most common:

Adjective	Comparative Form 1	Comparative Form 2
clever	**cleverer**	**more/less clever**
likely	**likelier**	**more/less likely**
narrow	**narrower**	**more narrow**
quiet	**quieter**	**more/less quiet**
simple	**simpler**	**more/less simple**
far*	**farther**	**further**

*When referring to distance, *farther* and *further* can be used interchangeably. However, in American English, *farther* is preferred when comparing physical distances and *further* when comparing figurative distances. For example:

- “San Francisco is **farther** from New York than Boston.” (physical distance)

BUT

- “I was able to make **further** progress at work.” (figurative distance)

In British English, *further* is more common both for physical *and* figurative distances.

Using Comparative Adjectives

Now that we have discussed how to *form* comparative adjectives, we can look at how they are used in sentences and within larger conversations. Depending on the situation, you may or may not need to explicitly mention both nouns being compared.

Explicitly mentioning both nouns

Often, the two nouns that are being compared both appear in the sentence. This is the case if there is any chance of the listener or reader being confused by what you're talking about. When we need to mention both nouns, we follow this structure:

Noun 1 + *be* + comparative adjective + *than* + noun 2

For example:

- "An airplane is **bigger** than a car."
- "Mt. Everest is **taller** than Mt. Fuji."
- "Tom is **faster** than John."

In each of these sentences, the noun that has the characteristic to a greater degree comes first. We can achieve the same meaning by using opposite adjectives and switching the order that the nouns appear in. For example:

- "A car is **smaller** than an airplane."
- "Mt. Fuji is **shorter** than Mt. Everest."
- "John is **slower** than Tom."

If we want to achieve the same effect using "long" adjectives, instead of inserting the word *more* before the adjective, we can insert the word *less*. For example:

- "Tom is **more studious** than John."

OR

- "John is **less studious** than Tom."

Keep in mind that the two nouns being compared don't necessarily have to be individual people or objects. One or both of the nouns or noun phrases being compared can also refer to groups. For example:

- "*Cats* are **more independent** than *dogs*."

- “*Women* are **shorter** than *men*.”
- “*Jen* is **smarter** than *the rest of the students in her class*.

We can even compare two **gerunds** (verbs ending in “-ing” that function as nouns). We can compare characteristics of two gerunds in the same way that we can compare any other type of noun:

- “*Running* is **faster** than *walking*.”
- “*Drawing* is **easier** than *painting*.”
- “*Sailing* is **more relaxing** than *waterskiing*.”

Finally, we can use the regular patterns for making **negative** and **interrogative** sentences. For negatives, we simply add the word *not*, or its contracted form, “-n’t,” after the verb *be*:

- “Walking is ***not*** **faster** than running.”
- “Women are***n’t*** **taller** than men.”
- “Waterskiing is***n’t*** **more relaxing** than sailing.”

To form interrogatives (questions), we simply place the conjugated form of the verb *be* at the beginning of the sentence:

- “*Is* running **faster** than walking?”
- “*Is* Jen **smarter** than the rest of the students in her class?”
- “*Are* cats **more independent** than dogs?”

If we are not sure which noun is *taller, faster,* etc., we can ask by adding a **question word** like *who, which,* or *what* to the beginning of the sentence, and placing the two nouns as options at the end:

- “*Who* is **taller**, Mary or Jane?”
- “*Which* is **tastier**, pizza or pasta?”
- “*What*’s **faster**, a car or a motorcycle?”

Omitting one or both nouns

Sometimes in conversation, it isn’t necessary to explicitly mention one or both nouns that we’re comparing. In fact, it might even sound repetitive. Take for example the following conversation:

- Speaker A: “I don’t think you should be running. Swimming is **easier** on the knees than running.”

- Speaker B: “Yes, but running is **better** for my heart than swimming.”

That’s a very repetitive conversation and probably wouldn’t occur in natural speech. Instead, the two speakers can omit the parts underlined, which avoids repetition and creates a more natural-sounding conversation:

- Speaker A: “I don’t think you should be running. Swimming is **easier** on the knees.
- Speaker B: “Yes, but running is **better** for my heart.”

Note that when we omit a noun, we also omit the word *than*.

Gradable and ungradable adjectives

We can only use **gradable adjectives** as comparative adjectives. Gradable adjectives are adjectives that can move up and down on a scale of intensity. For example, *tall* is a gradable adjective because something can be *a little tall, tall,* or *very tall*.

We can also use expressions like *a bit, a little*, *much, a lot,* and *far* before the comparative adjective to indicate scale. For example:

- “Jane is *much* **taller** than Emily.”
- “Giraffes have *far* **longer** necks than elephants.”
- “Is your dad *a little* **bigger** than you?”

Ungradable adjectives are adjectives that **can’t** move up and down on a scale of intensity. For example, you cannot say “I am very *married*.” You are either married, or you aren’t. The same can be said for the adjective *dead*: something is either *dead* or it isn’t. These types of adjectives cannot be used in the comparative form.

Expressing Equality and Inequality using as … as

There is another way to express similarities and differences between two nouns using adjectives that aren’t comparative. To describe two things as equal, we can use the construction *as + adjective + as*. For example:

- “The apple is **as *big* as** the orange.” (The two are the same size.)
- “The table is **as *heavy* as** the desk.” (The two are the same weight.)

- “Jane is **as *talkative* as** Mary.” (They both like to talk the same amount.)

We can use the same construction to say that two things are unequal. We just have to add the word *not*:

- “The apple is ***not* as *big* as** the orange.” (The orange is bigger.)
- “The table is ***not* as *heavy* as** the desk.” (The desk is heavier.)
- “Jane is ***not* as *talkative* as** Mary.” (Mary is more talkative.)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Comparative adjectives express differences between __________ nouns.

a) Two
b) Two or three
c) Three
d) More than three

2. Which of the following comparative adjectives is misspelled?

a) bigger
b) taller
c) longer
d) smaler

3. Comparative adjectives are never ___________.

a) gradable
b) ungradable

4. Which of these sentences is incorrect?

a) “I think ice cream is better than cake.”
b) “I wish I had a faster car.”
c) “Are you going to buy a nicer radio than?”
d) “I’m always looking for a cheaper option.”

5. Which sentence has a different meaning from the other three?

a) John is taller than Tom.
b) Tom is shorter than John.
c) Tom isn’t as tall as John.

d) John isn’t as tall as Tom.

Superlative Adjectives

Definition

Superlative adjectives are adjectives that describe the attribute of a person or thing that is the highest (or lowest) in degree compared to the members of the noun’s group. Superlative adjectives are similar to **comparative adjectives**, except they express the most extreme degree of comparison, and they are only used when talking about groups of three or more people or things.

Forming Superlative Adjectives

We form superlative adjectives either by adding “-est” to the end of the adjective, or by adding the word *most* before the adjective.

Although there are some exceptions, we can follow some simple general rules for forming superlative adjectives.

“Short” Adjectives

With one-syllable adjectives, we add “-est” and double the final consonant if preceded by one vowel. For example:

- big – biggest
- thin – thinnest
- sad – saddest
- slim – slimmest

The final consonant is **not** doubled if it is preceded by two vowels or another consonant, as in:

- weak – weakest
- strong – strongest
- large – largest
- small – smallest

(If the adjective ends in an “e,” then you only need to add “-st,” as in the case of *large – large**st**.*)

If an adjective has two syllables and ends in “-y,” we replace “y” with “i” and add “-est,” as in:

- happy – happiest
- chewy – chewiest
- sticky – stickiest
- furry – furriest

“Long” Adjectives

“Long” adjectives are adjectives that have three or more syllables, or adjectives that have two syllables and *do not* end in “-y.” Rather than changing the ending of long adjectives to make them superlative, we use the word *most* before the adjective to indicate the highest degree of something, or *least* to indicate the lowest degree. For example:

- careful – most/least careful
- caring – most/least caring
- gifted – most/least gifted
- intelligent – most/least intelligent
- beautiful – most/least beautiful
- amazing – most/least amazing

Exceptions

As with most grammatical “rules” in English, there are some exceptions to the patterns above. Here are a few of the adjectives that have **irregular** superlative forms:

- fun – most/least fun
- bad – worst
- good – best
- far – farthest/furthest*

*When referring to distance, *farthest* and *furthest* can be used interchangeably. However, in the American English, *farthest* is preferred when comparing physical distances, while *furthest* is preferred when comparing figurative distances. For example:

• “San Francisco is farther from New York than Boston, but Hawaii is **the farthest**.” (physical distance)

BUT

- “Of all the lies I’ve heard today, that one is **the furthest** from the truth.” (figurative distance)

In British English, *furthest* is more common both for physical *and* figurative distances.

Adjectives with multiple superlative forms

There are also some adjectives that can either take the “-est” ending or be preceded by “most” to become superlative. The following are some of the most common:

Adjective	Superlative Form 1	Superlative Form 2
clever	cleverest	most/least clever
likely	likeliest	most/least likely
narrow	narrowest	most/least narrow
quiet	quietest	most/least quiet
simple	simplest	most/least simple

Using Superlative Adjectives

We usually use superlative adjectives when comparing the attributes of someone or something to others, either in a collective group or among several individuals.

When we use a superlative adjective in a sentence, we almost always precede it with the word *the*. For example:

- “John is **the tallest** student in his class.”
- “Daniel always buys **the most advanced** smartphones available.”
- “Mrs. Phillips is **the nicest** teacher among the staff.”
- “It is **the highest** mountain in the world.”
- “There are many expensive brands of watches, but these are **the most**

expensive kind.”

- “This is **the best** book I’ve ever read.”
- “Among her four sisters, Georgina has **the worst** eyesight.”

We can also identify a superlative attribute of a person or thing compared to him-/her-/itself in other points in time. In this case, we generally do **not** use the word *the*. For example:

- “I am **most alert** after my morning coffee.” (compared to a different time of day)
- “The car is **fastest** when the engine has warmed up.” (compared to when the engine is cold)
- “Flowers are **prettiest** in the spring.” (compared to the other seasons)

Omitting the group of comparison

When we use superlatives, it is very common to omit the group that something or someone is being compared to because that group is often implied by a previous sentence, and to repeat the group would sound very repetitive. For example:

- “My brothers are all fast swimmers. John is **the fastest**, though.”

In informal speech or writing, it is quite common for the word *the* to be left out when the group of comparison is omitted, as in:

- “We all were carrying big, heavy sticks with us. Mine was **biggest**, though.”

However, this should be avoided, especially in formal or professional speech or writing.

Superlatives for hyperbole

We can also omit a group of comparison when a superlative adjective is being used for hyperbolic effect. For instance:

- “I’m going to buy my daughter **the most beautiful** puppy for her birthday.”
- “I had **the biggest** steak for my lunch today.”

Expressing the lowest degree

As we’ve seen, “long” adjectives can either take *most* or *least* to indicate the highest and lowest degrees of comparison. For example:

- “Though it was **the least intelligent** movie that I’ve seen this year, it was **the most exciting** one I’d been to in a long time.”

“Short” adjectives, on the other hand, have only one superlative form that expresses the highest degree of its characteristic. For two-syllable adjectives ending in “-y,” we can generally just use the word *least* with the base form of the adjective. For example:

- “He’s **the least tidy** child I’ve ever met.”
- “The baby’s **least grumpy** when he’s had enough naps.”

We can also technically use *the least* with a single-syllable adjective in its normal form to express the lowest degree, but this is often awkward to read or say. For example:

- “John is **the tallest** student in his class, but he is **the least tall** on the baseball team.”

When we want to express the lowest quality of a single-syllable adjective, it is better just to use the opposite superlative adjective, as in:

- “John is **the tallest** in his class, but he is **the shortest** on the baseball team.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Superlative adjectives express differences among a group of __________ nouns.

a) Two
b) Two or three
c) Three or more
d) Five or more

2. Which of the following suffixes is used to create the superlative form for short adjectives?

a) -er
b) -est
c) -ier
d) -ence

3. Which of the following is an **incorrect** superlative adjective?

a) biggest

b) least intelligent
c) longest
d) most small

4. When do we generally **not** use the article *the* with a superlative adjective?
a) When the person or thing is being compared to itself in other times
b) When the person or thing is being compared with a group in other times
c) When the superlative adjective is being used for hyperbolic effect
d) When a single-syllable adjective is being made into the superlative form

Adverbs

Definition

An **adverb** refers to any element in a sentence used to modify a verb, adjective, another adverb, or even an entire clause.

Adverbs can be single words, as in:

- “You write **beautifully**.”

- “He **slowly** walked towards the bus.”

- “He owns the **bright** red car.”

They can also be phrases (called **adverbial phrases**) or entire clauses (called **adverbial clauses**). For example:

- “She ran **very quickly** so as not to be late.” (The adverbial phrase *very quickly* modifies the verb *ran*.)

- “The cat lives **in the shed**.” (The adverbial prepositional phrase *in the shed* modifies the verb *lives*.”

- “She looked excited, **as if she could jump up and dance at any moment**.” (The adverbial clause *as if she could jump up and dance at any moment* modifies the independent clause *She looked excited*.)

Single-word adverbs, adverbial phrases, and adverbial clauses are sometimes grouped together under the umbrella term **adverbials**, which simply means any word or group of words used as an adverb in a sentence. However, because the term is so broad in meaning, it is very common to simply call any adverbial element an “adverb.”

Categories of Adverbs

There are many different categories of adverbs, which provide specific kinds of descriptions and which behave slightly differently in a sentence.

The table below provides a quick breakdown of the different categories and how they are used to describe something in a sentence. Go to the sections of each individual category to see more examples and learn more about how they are used.

(Note that most of the examples below are single-word adverbs. However, adverbial phrases—and sometimes adverbial clauses—can also belong to each category.)

Category of Adverb	Function	Example adverbs	Example sentence
Adverbs of Time	Describe when or for how long something happens or is the case.	*now, tomorrow, yesterday, still, yet, later*	“We are eating **now**.”
Adverbs of Frequency	Describe how frequently something happens or is the case. A subset of Adverbs of Time.	*always, usually, sometimes, often, rarely, daily, weekly, monthly*	“I **rarely** eat breakfast in bed.”
Adverbs of Place	Describe the direction, distance, movement, or position involved in the action of a verb.	*north, everywhere, here, there, forward, downward, up, uphill, behind*	“I absolutely hate running **uphill**.”
Adverbs of Manner	Describe how something happens or how someone does something. Usually formed from adjectives.	*beautifully, wonderfully, slowly, deliberately, happily*	“He walked **slowly** toward the bar.”

Adverbs of Degree	Describe the intensity, degree, or extent of the verb, adjective, or adverb they are modifying.	*undoubtedly, truly, very, quite, pretty, somewhat, fairly*	“I'm **fairly** certain this is correct.”
Adverbs of Purpose	Describe why something happens or is the case. Single-word adverbs are usually **conjunctive adverbs**.	*therefore, thus, consequently, hence*	“We’ve never seen such high numbers. We must **therefore** conclude that the results are not normal.”
Focusing Adverbs	Used to draw attention to a particular part of a clause.	*also, exclusively, just, mostly, notably, primarily*	“They played **mostly** techno music at the party.”
Negative Adverbs	Used to modify the meaning of a verb, adjective, other adverb, or entire clause in a negative way. Used in many of the other categories above.	*no, not, hardly, barely, never, seldom*	“He does **not** work on Mondays.”
Conjunctive Adverbs	Used to connect independent clauses and describe the relationship between them.	*comparatively, therefore, also, however, moreover, similarly*	“Jen is terrible at math; **however**, she still likes it.”
Evaluative Adverbs	Used by the speaker to comment or give an opinion on something. Evaluative adverbs modify the entire clause.	*apparently, astonishingly, clearly, frankly, obviously, presumably*	“**Clearly**, we're going to have to work harder.”

Viewpoint Adverbs	Used to indicate whose point of view we are expressing, or to specify what aspect of something we are talking about. (Many viewpoint adverbs are **adverbial phrases**.)	*personally, in my point of view, according to you, scientifically, biologically*	"**Personally**, I don't believe it's true."
Relative Adverbs	Used to introduce **relative clauses**, when the information relates to a place, time, or the reason an action took place.	*where, when, why*	"I don't know **why** he got angry."
Adverbial Nouns	Nouns or noun phrases that function grammatically as adverbs to modify verbs and certain adjectives, usually specifying time, distance, weight, age, or monetary value.	*tomorrow, an hour, an ounce, five dollars, 25 years*	"I can barely see **a foot** in front of me in this fog."

Regular and irregular adverbs

Regular adverbs are formed by adding "-ly" or some variation thereof onto the end of an adjective. Sometimes the adjective's spelling needs to be altered slightly to accommodate this, but the rules of doing so are consistent and fairly straightforward.

Irregular adverbs, on the other hand, are adverbs that are not formed according to standard English spelling conventions. Because they do not follow the "rules," there is no trick to using them: you simply have to memorize them.

Continue on to the section **Regular and Irregular Adverbs** in this chapter to learn more about both kinds.

Comparative and Superlative Adverbs

Comparative and **superlative adverbs** are almost exclusively used to modify verbs.

Comparative adverbs express a higher (or lower) degree of how a verb's action is performed, usually in comparison to another person or thing. They are generally formed by adding the suffix "-er."

Superlative adverbs, on the other hand, are used to identify the highest (or lowest) degree of how an action is performed. They are generally formed by adding the suffix "-est."

Adverbs in their basic forms are sometimes known as being in the **positive degree**.

The way in which an adverb shifts from the basic degree to the comparative and superlative degrees is known as the **Degrees of Comparison**.

Adverbial Phrases

An **adverbial phrase** (also known as an **adverb phrase**) is a group of words that functions as an adverb in a sentence. These can be adverbs modified by other adverbs, adverbial prepositional phrases, or adverbial infinitive phrases.

Adverbs modified by mitigators and intensifiers

Adverbial phrases are commonly formed when an adverb's intensity is being modified by another adverb. These modifying adverbs are known as **mitigators**, which decrease the intensity of the main adverb, and **intensifiers**, which increase its intensity. For example:

- "The kicker is running ***somewhat*** **slowly** back to the bench. He might be injured." (mitigator)
- "She performed ***very*** **well** on her exam." (intensifier)

Prepositional phrases

Prepositional phrases are often used adverbially in a sentence. For example:

- "We were playing Frisbee **at the park**."
- "**After they woke up**, they packed up their things and went on a hike."

Infinitive phrases

We can also use infinitive phrases as adverbial phrases in a sentence to describe purpose or reason for an action or state of being. For instance:

- “Patricia went to the mountains **to go for a hike**.”
- “I’m so happy **to be your friend**.”

Adverbial Clauses

An **adverbial clause**, or **adverb clause**, is a group of words that contains a **subject** and a **predicate verb** and is used, like a regular adverb, to modify adjectives, verbs, and adverbs.

Adverbial clauses use **subordinating conjunctions** to connect them to **independent clauses**; the way an adverbial clause modifies an element in a sentence depends on the kind of subordinating conjunction used. For example:

- “I will arrive ***when*** **dinner is ready**.” (adverbial clause of time)
- “Peter brings his sunglasses ***everywhere*** **he goes**.” (adverbial clause of place)
- “I admire you ***because*** **you are an inspiration to many people**.” (adverbial clause of purpose)
- “They’ll approve your request ***provided*** **you pay the appropriate amount of money**.” (adverbial clause of condition)
- “She looked excited, ***as if*** **she could jump up and dance at any moment**.” (adverbial clause of comparison or manner)
- “***Although*** **she doesn’t have much money**, Wendy often goes traveling.” (adverbial clause of contrast)

Order of Adverbs

Adverbs can appear almost anywhere in a sentence

If we use more than one adverb to describe a verb, though, there is a general order in which the different categories of adverbs should appear—this is known as the **order of adverbs** (sometimes called the **royal order of adverbs**):

1. **Adverbs of Manner**
2. **Adverbs of Place**
3. **Adverbs of Frequency**

4. **Adverbs of Time**

5. **Adverbs of Purpose**

However, we'll see in that section that there is still a lot of flexibility as to how we order adverbs in a sentence.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. How are regular adverbs **generally** formed?

a) By adding "-er" to the end of an adjective
b) By adding "-est" to the end of an adjective
c) By adding "-ly" to the end of an adjective
d) By adding "-lier" to the end of an adjective

2. Which of the following **cannot** be used to create an adverbial phrase?

a) Intensifiers
b) Prepositional phrases
c) Gerund phrases
d) Infinitive phrases

3. Identify the category of the adverb (in **bold**) in the following sentence:
"I'm **pretty** happy with the way this turned out."

a) Adverb of degree
b) Adverb of manner
c) Focusing adverb
d) Viewpoint adverb

4. Which of the following is used to create **adverbial clauses**?

a) Correlative conjunctions
b) Subordinating conjunctions
c) Relative adverbs
d) Coordinating conjunctions

5. Where can adverbs appear in a sentence?

a) At the beginning
b) In the middle

c) At the end
d) Anywhere in the sentence

Adverbs of Time

Definition

Adverbs of time tell us at what time (*when*) or for how long (*duration*) something happens or is the case. There is also a specific category of time adverbs that describe **frequency**, or *how often* something happens or is the case; however, their usage is a bit more complex, so we will examine those in a separate section.

Positioning

Adverbs of time are most often placed at the end of a sentence. For example:

- “I’m going to the movies **tomorrow**.” (When are you going? *Tomorrow*.)
- “She left **yesterday**.” (When did she leave? *Yesterday*.)
- “We are eating **now**.” (When are we eating? *Now*.)

However, we can sometimes place adverbs of time at the beginning of the sentence to put an extra emphasis on the time or duration being described. They are usually offset by a comma if appearing at the beginning of the sentence, although this is not always necessary. For example:

- “**Next year**, I’m going to run for president.” (Emphasizes a point in time.)
- “**Now**, I have to start the whole project again from scratch.” (Emphasizes *now* in a sequence of events.)
- “**For 17 years** we’ve been dating, and not once has he proposed!” (Emphasizes the duration of time.)

Special exceptions

The majority of time-related adverbs appear at the end of a sentence (or the beginning, for emphasis), but there are a few exceptions to this rule.

Later

The adverb *later*, in addition to its normal placement at the end or beginning of a sentence, can also be placed immediately after the main verb. This creates a formal tone to the sentence, as might be found in official reports or in newspaper articles. Compare these three sentences:

- “She spoke to an adviser **later**.” (A simple sentence with no particular emphasis.)
- “**Later**, she spoke to an adviser.” (Extra emphasis on when she spoke to the advisor.)
- “She **later** spoke to an adviser.” (Slightly formal tone, as might be used by someone reporting the sequence of events to someone else.)

Yet

As an adverb of time, the word *yet* is used primarily in **negative** sentences or in questions. It can appear at the end of the sentence, or it can follow the word *not* before the main verb in a negative sentence. It does not appear at the beginning of the sentence (except when it functions as a **conjunction**, rather than an adverb). Here are some examples:

- “He hasn’t gone to the doctor **yet**.”
- “We have not **yet** sold our house.”
- “Have you finished your homework **yet**?”

However, *yet* can also be used after **auxiliary verbs** and before the main verb in positive sentences to talk about a future possibility, as in:

- “I *have* **yet** to decide whether I’m leaving.”
- “They *may* **yet** file for bankruptcy.”
- “Things *could* **yet** improve in the region.”
- “We *might* **yet** be able to strike a deal with them.”

Still

The adverb of time *still* is used to describe something that is continuously happening. *Still* comes before the main verb of the sentence in questions, if used before *not* in negative sentences, or if used after auxiliary verbs in positive sentences about the future:

- “Are you **still** working on that project?”
- “He’s **still** *not* sure about how to proceed.”

- “I *am* **still** thinking about moving to Europe.”

The adverb *still* can also be used with the **modal auxiliary verbs** *may*, *might*, *can*, and *could* to describe something that was a possibility in the past, and which could possibly happen in the future. In this case, it has the same meaning as *yet*, and the two are all but interchangeable (though *yet* sounds a little bit more formal). Here are the same sentences we looked at with *yet*, but this time using *still* instead:

- “They *may* **still** file for bankruptcy.”
- “Things *could* **still** improve in the region.”
- “We *might* **still** be able to strike a deal with them.”

Adverbs of Duration – *For* and *Since*

When we want to talk about for how long something happens or is the case, we generally use the prepositions *for* and *since* along with a determiner of time. When we use *for*, we pair it with a word or words that specify a **length of time**; with *since*, on the other hand, we use specific **points in time**. Both usually occur at the end of the sentence, unless they are being followed by infinitive or a prepositional phrases. And, as we’ve seen already, they can also be used at the beginning of the sentence to add emphasis.

Here are a few examples of each:

for

- “I have been running *for* ***three hours***.”
- “They have been waiting *for* ***two months*** to be seen by a doctor.”
- “*For* ***10 years***, we’ve seen this country’s economy continue to decline.”

since

- “Our computer systems have been having issues **since** ***last week***.”
- “We have been looking **since** ***September*** for a place to live.”
- “**Since** ***we were kids***, we’ve always dreamed of being astronauts.” (The phrase *we were kids* in this sentence might seem like it should be “**the time when we were kids**,” but because it is used with *since*, the shorter version is acceptable.)

In Proper Order

Remember, adverbs of time can be used to describe three different aspects: **duration**, **frequency**, and *certain points in time (when)*. If we are using multiple adverbs of time in the same sentence, and if there is no special emphasis given to one aspect over another, then that is the order in which they generally appear. Even if one of the three aspects is omitted, the other two still maintain their position in relation to each other. Here are some examples:

- “I went door to door **for two hours** every afternoon *last year*.”
- “He will be traveling **for two years** *after college*.”
- “The train runs hourly *in the fall*.”

If one aspect of time is being given particular emphasis in the sentence, then it generally comes later in the order. Let’s look at the first sentence arranged in a different order:

- “I went door to door every afternoon *last year* **for two hours**.”

As we can see, **for two hours** is given stronger emphasis than either every afternoon or *last year*.

Notice as well that each adverb of duration is made using *for*; we can’t use *since* in the same way with multiple adverbs. For instance, we can see how the following would not make any sense:

✖ “She’s known him **since high school** each day *this year*.” (incorrect)

If we are using *since* to indicate duration along with other adverbs of time in the same sentence, then it must come after adverbs of frequency (or at the beginning of the sentence), and it can only be used with certain kinds of verbs. For example:

- “We’ve spoken to each other every day **since high school**.”
- “**Since my operation**, I’ve been getting stronger every day.”
- “He’s been feeling dizzy frequently **since his car accident** *last spring*.”

Sources of confusion

Soon vs. Early

When we say, “I arrived early,” it means before the expected or required time. It can also be used in the future tense, as in “I will arrive early.”

We use *soon*, on the other hand, for a future time frame; it isn’t used in the past.

For instance, if we say, “I will see you **soon**,” it means *in a short time* (the near future). We cannot say “I saw you **soon**,” because it cannot be used in the past tense.

Any longer vs. Any more vs. No longer

Any longer and *any more* (or *anymore*, see below) are synonyms, and they can be used interchangeably.

When we use *any longer* or *any more*, we need to use *don’t/doesn’t* because the adverbs express a negative relationship with time. No matter which adverb you use, it is important that they are positioned at the end of the sentence.

However, when we use *no longer*, it comes between the subject and the verb. In contrast to *any longer* or *any more*, it is used in positive sentences because it **makes** the sentence negative. It would be wrong to say, for example, “He doesn’t work there *no longer*”—this creates a double negative and makes the sentence positive, therefore creating the opposite meaning to what was intended.

Let’s take a look at some examples in order to clarify.

- “I don’t work for that company **any longer**.”
- “I don’t eat meat **anymore**.”
- “I **no longer** work for that company.”
- “I **no longer** eat meat.”

Anymore vs. Any more

In American English, people often use these two terms interchangeably as adverbs of time. Outside of America, though, using *anymore* is more rare, and some even consider it to be incorrect. Therefore, it is better to avoid using it outside of American English. Also, because *anymore* is considered by some to be an informal, modern coinage, it is safer to avoid using it in formal writing as well.

However, if we are talking about an *amount* of something, we must only use *any more*. This is because *more* is used an adjective describing the amount of a noun, with *any* modifying *more*. For instance:

✖ “I don’t want **anymore** pasta. I’m full.” (incorrect)

✔ “I don’t want **any more** pasta. I’m full.” (correct)

No longer vs. no more

The phrase *no more* cannot be used interchangeably with *no longer*. While it **can** technically function as an adverb, it is very rarely used this way and would usually sound quite awkward or contrived. It is much more often used as a pronoun phrase meaning “no further amount (of something).” Here are some examples showing correct and incorrect uses:

✔ “He **no longer** works here.” (correct)
✖ “He **no more** works here.” (incorrect)

✔ “We will tolerate **no more**.” (correct)
✖ “We will tolerate **no longer**.” (incorrect)

- “I love you **no more**.” (technically correct, but very awkward)
- “I love you **no longer**.” (more correct, but still awkward)
- “I **no longer** love you” ***or*** “I don’t love you **any more**.” (most correct)

That having been said, a common slang expression is to use *no more* as an adverb in a negative sentence, as in, “He doesn’t work there **no more**.” This is grammatically incorrect, but slang very often ignores or upends common grammatical rules.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What are the three different categories of adverbs of time?

a) Manner, duration, and frequency
b) Points in time, duration, and place
c) Points in time, duration, and frequency
d) Duration, frequency, and degree

2. Where do the **majority** of adverbs of time appear in a sentence?

a) At the beginning of the sentence

b) After the verb they modify
c) Before the verb they modify
d) At the end of the sentence

3. Which adverb of time **cannot** appear at the beginning of a sentence?
a) yet
b) still
c) for
d) since
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) C & D

4. Identify the adverb of time used in the following sentence:
“I quickly realized that if we wanted the job done next year, we would have to work hard and fast.”
a) quickly
b) next year
c) hard
d) fast

5. Which of the following adverbs of time can be used to complete the following sentence?
“They _______ plan to drive to Mexico.”
a) no longer
b) any more
c) any longer
d) no more

Adverbs of Place

Definition

Adverbs of place tell us about an aspect of location associated with the action of a verb, specifying the direction, distance, movement, or position involved in the action. Because adverbs of place are specific to actions of verbs, they cannot be used to modify adverbs or adjectives (with one exception, as we shall see).

We'll first look at where such adverbs are used in a sentence, and then we'll examine the different types of adverbs of place.

Position in a sentence

Adverbs of place generally appear immediately after the main verb in a sentence if it is **intransitive**, or else after the verb's object if it is **transitive**.

For example:

- "We were walking **north**." (intransitive—adverb follows the verb)
- "He kicked the ball **into the field**." (transitive—adverb follows the object)
- "My friend is moving **far away**." (intransitive—adverb follows the verb)
- "The wind keeps scattering sand **everywhere**." (transitive—adverb follows the object)

Adverbial prepositional phrases can also be placed at the beginning of the sentence. Doing so adds a large amount of emphasis to the location they describe. However, the resulting sentences are more likely to be found in literary writing; they might sound out of place or contrived in day-to-day English. For example:

- "**In this house** we have lived our entire lives."
- "**Outside the office**, I could hear my parents talking to the principal."
- "**Across the meadow** I spied a beautiful woman."

Adverbs ending in "-ward" or "-wards" (such as *homeward(s), eastward(s), onward(s),* etc.) can appear at or near the beginning of a sentence to put emphasis on their description as well. Again, this creates a more literary style to the writing, and wouldn't be suited to everyday speech or writing. For example:

- "**Onwards** we marched, hoping to arrive before sunset."

• “Ever **upwards** the mighty redwood trees grow.”

The only adverbs of place that *are* very commonly used at the beginning of sentences are the adverbs *here* and *there*. As with the others, this adds emphasis to the location or direction being described, and we can also use them in this way to create exclamations. For instance:

• “**Here** is the book I was telling you about.”

• “**There** is the rest of the team!”

Now that we’ve seen where in a sentence the adverbs of place go, let’s look at the various types that we can use.

Types of adverbs of place

Adverbs of direction

Many adverbs of place indicate a specific direction of movement. For example:

- *up, down, across, north, south, east, west.*

Here are a few example sentences illustrating their use:

• “The house is situated **north** of the city.”

• “Let’s drive **down** a bit farther.”

• “They walked **across the field**.”

Adverbs of movement and direction

There are also adverbs of place that end in “-ward” or “-wards” that describe movement in particular directions, as in *homeward(s), backward(s), forward(s),* or *onward(s)*. While quite similar to the adverbs of direction we looked already, they add a sense of continual movement along with the direction they specify.

Here are some examples used in sentences:

• “We headed **eastwards**.”

• “The people all gazed **upwards** at the meteor shower.”

• “You should always go **forward** in life.” (Describes metaphorical rather than physical direction and movement.)

In each instance, the word can include an “s” or not; they are interchangeable, so use whichever sounds better.

Toward and towards

Toward (or *towards*), while very similar to the above adverbs, is actually a **preposition**—it cannot stand alone as an adverb. It must be followed by a noun to create a prepositional phrase, which can then function adverbially to describe movement, as in:

• "I saw them coming **toward me**."
• "He walked **towards the car**."

Also note that while *toward*, without an "s," is more common in American English, *towards*, with an "s," is more common in British English.

Adverbs of location

These adverbs all indicate the location of someone or something in relation to someone or something else. They can each function either as adverbs, in which case they stand alone, or as prepositions, in which case they are followed by nouns to form adverbial prepositional phrases. Here are a few common adverbs related to position that can also function as prepositions:

- *behind, inside, outside, next to, between, over*

Let's look at some examples where these stand alone as adverbs, and then we'll look at the same words functioning as prepositions.

As adverbs

• "We were waiting **outside**."

• "I kicked the ball **around**."

• "The others started lagging **behind**."

As prepositions

• "We were waiting **outside his office**."

• "I kicked the ball **around the field**."

• "The others started lagging **behind us**."

Adverbs of movement and location

Just as the "-ward(s)" adverbs indicated both movement and direction, other adverbs of place can be used to indicate both movement and *location*. Examples of these include *indoors, inside, outdoors, outside, uphill, downhill* and *abroad*.

Here are some sentences where these are used to describe both movement and location:

- "Our mother told us to go play **outside** for a while."
- "I absolutely hate running **uphill**."
- "They're thinking of going **abroad** for their vacation."

Note that, depending on the verb they are modifying, some of these may only describe location, as in "I am living *abroad*" or "I like camping *outdoors*." These verbs do not indicate movement-based actions, and so the accompanying adverbs only specify location.

Unspecified location or direction

Everywhere, somewhere, anywhere, and *nowhere* are adverbs of place. They describe locations or directions that are indefinite or unspecific. For example:

- "I looked **everywhere** for my book."
- "I would like to go **somewhere** tropical for my birthday."
- "You're going **nowhere**!"
- "Is there **anywhere** to sit down?"

In less formal speech or writing, "place" can be used instead of "where," thus creating *everyplace, someplace, anyplace,* and *no place*. Note that only the last of these is made into two words.

Here and there

Here and *there* are adverbs of place that relate specifically to the speaker. *Here* indicates a location or direction that is with, towards, or near to the speaker, while *there* indicates a location or direction that is away from, not near to, or not with the speaker.

For example:

- "I put my book **there**."
- "Yes, you can sit down **here**."
- "Let's go **there** for our trip."

- “Turn **here**, please.”

And, as we mentioned earlier in this section, both *here* and *there* can be used at the beginning of sentences to emphasize the location they are describing or to create exclamations:

- “**There**’s the restaurant we were looking for.”
- “**Here** I am!”

It may seem like *there* in the first example is functioning as the subject of the verb *is*, but it is actually functioning as an adverb. In this construction, the subject (*the restaurant*) is inverted with the verb *is*.

As the object of a preposition

Here and *there* are also often combined with prepositions to create more specific references to location. Note that, because they are the objects of prepositions, they are functioning as nouns in this case rather than adverbs. For instance:

- “Please put the table **over there**.”
- “Why are the keys **up here**?”
- “Don’t put your muddy boots **on there**!”
- “It’s rather hot **in here**.”

With the adjective *bound*

We’ve already mentioned that adverbs of place are not used to describe adjectives, but there is one unique adjective that *can* take adverbs of place: the adjective *bound* (meaning “heading, or intending to head, in a given direction”). Note that only adverbs or adverbial phrases specifying direction can be used with this, as in:

- **homeward bound**
- **bound south**
- **bound for home**

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What are generally **not** modified by adverbs of place?

a) verbs
b) adverbs

c) adjectives
d) B & C
e) A & C

2. If an adverb of place is modifying an **intransitive** verb, where is it **usually** located in a sentence?

a) Immediately before the verb it modifies
b) Immediately after the verb it modifies
c) Immediately after the object of the verb
d) B & C

3. Which of the following adverbs of place is used to describe both **movement** and **direction**?

a) here
b) outside
c) onwards
d) everywhere

4. Identify the adverb of place in the following sentence:
“Hastily, he fell silent and withdrew into his study.”

a) hastily
b) silent
c) into
d) into his study

5. Which of the following is an adverb of place?

a) abroad
b) resoundingly
c) very
d) generally

6. Which of the following is **not** an adverb of place?

a) east
b) out
c) toward
d) upward

Adverbs of Manner

Definition

Adverbs of manner are used to tell us how something happens or is done. They can modify verbs, adjectives, or clauses of a sentence.

Creating adverbs of manner

Adverbs of manner are very often formed from adjectives by simply adding "-ly." For example:

- "She is a *beautiful* singer." (*Beautiful* is an adjective. It describes the noun "singer.")
- "She sings **beautifully**." (*Beautifully* is an adverb of manner. It describes the verb "sing." How does she sing? She sings *beautifully*.)

- "He is a *slow* walker." (*Slow* is an adjective describing the noun *walker*.)
- "He walks **slowly**." (*Slowly* is an adverb of manner. How does he walk? *Slowly*.)

Changes in spelling

Sometimes the spelling of a word will have to change slightly so as to better accommodate the extra "-ly." If the adjective ends in "-ic," for instance, it will usually become "-ically":

- "They are *enthusiastic* students."
- "They work **enthusiastically**."

If the adjective ends in a "-y," it usually becomes "-ily":

- "The children are *happy* when they are playing."
- "The children are playing **happily**."

And if it ends in "-le," the "e" on the end is dropped to make "-ly":

- "He is a *terrible* golfer."
- "He plays golf **terribly**."

If an adjective already ends in "-ly," we can give it an adverbial function by simply using it in the adverbial **prepositional phrase** "in a ______ manner":

- “They played **in a *lively* manner**.”
- “Please arrive **in a *timely* manner**.”

Irregular adverbs

There are a number of exceptions to these spelling rules, though, which are known as **irregular adverbs**. Here are some irregular adverbs of manner:

- The adjectives *straight*, *fast*, and *hard* all remain the same (with no “-ly” ending) when they function as adverbs.

- The adjective *wrong* can become *wrongly,* or simply remain *wrong*—both are acceptable. However, *wrong* as an adverb **must** come after the verb if modifies (as in “I guessed *wrong*” or “he filled out the form *wrong*”), but *wrongly* can be used both before or after the word it modifies (as in “**wrongly** accused” or “judged **wrongly**”).

- Finally, *well* is the irregular adverb of the adjective *good*—but *well* can be used as an **adjective**, too!

(There are more irregular adverbs than the ones above. Go to the chapter on **Regular and Irregular Adverbs** to learn more.)

Adverbial Phrases

As we saw above, phrases can also function as adverbs in a sentence. These are called **adverbial phrases**, or sometimes simply **adverbials**.

Besides the ones we looked at above, other prepositional phrases can also function as adverbs of manner. For example:

- “They left **in a hurry.**”

- “He lived **without a care**.”

We can also use similes with the word *like* to describe manner in metaphorical terms. For instance:

- “I slept **like a baby** last night.”

- “He ran out **like a shot**.”

Positioning

The position we use for adverbs of manner depends on whether they are modifying a verb, a clause, or an adjective.

Modifying verbs

Adverbs of manner most commonly come directly after **intransitive verbs** that they modify. If the verb is **transitive**, then the adverb must not immediately follow the verb; it can either come before the verb or after the **direct object**. For example:

- "He *speaks* **well**." (intransitive)
- "She *walked* **slowly**." (intransitive)

✖ "Janet *wrote* **beautifully** the letter." (transitive—incorrect)
✔ "Janet *wrote* the letter **beautifully**." (transitive—correct)

Rearranging the order

You may have noticed that in the second example we can put the adverb first: "She quickly walked" is perfectly correct, and it adds a bit more emphasis to *quickly*. The adverb can also come before a transitive verb, as in "Janet slowly sang a song."

However, for simple sentences that don't require extra emphasis, it is better to have the adverb come after the verb. (And, in some instances, the adverb **can't** come first. For example, "he **well** *speaks*" is clearly incorrect.)

Modifying clauses

Adverbs of manner can also come at the beginning of the sentence, usually set apart by a comma, which serves to modify the entire clause and add a lot of emphasis to the adverb. Consider these two examples:

- "**Quietly**, *he held the candle aloft*."
- "He **quietly** *held* the candle aloft."

Although they are both quite close in meaning, we can see how the first sentence places much more emphasis on the adverb *quietly*. In the second example, the adverb is only modifying the verb *held*, so its impact on the sentence is less intense.

Adjectives

Adverbs of manner can also be used to describe adjectives, giving them an extra depth or dimension of character. In contrast to verbs, adverbs of manner always come before the adjective they modify; this order cannot change. For example:

✔ “The book was **beautifully** *profound*.” (correct)
✔ “The prisoner remained **stoically** *silent*.” (correct)
✖ “Darling, you are *brave* **wonderfully**.” (incorrect)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What is the most **common** way to form an adverb of manner?

a) Use an adjective in the phrase “in a ______ manner”
b) Add “-ly” to the end of the adjective
c) Use “like” or “as” to form a simile
d) You have to know them by heart

2. How is an adverb formed from an adjective ending in “-ic”?

a) By adding “-ly”
b) By dropping the “-ic” and adding “-y”
c) By using the adjective in the phrase “in a _______ manner”
d) By changing the ending to “-ically”

3. Where does an adverb of manner come in a sentence if it is modifying a **clause**?

a) At the beginning of the sentence
b) At the end of the clause
c) Immediately after the noun
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) A & C
g) None of the above

4. Which of the following is an **adverb of manner**?

a) strongly
b) hourly
c) usually
d) very

5. Identify the **adverb of manner** in the following sentence:

"I never knew how absolutely lovely it is to have such wonderfully loyal friends like them."

a) never
b) absolutely
c) wonderfully
d) lovely
e) like them

Adverbs of Degree

Definition

Adverbs of degree are used to indicate the intensity, degree, or extent of the verb, adjective, or adverb they are modifying. They always appear before the adjective, verb, or other adverb they describe (except for the adverb *enough*, which we'll look at further on.)

Degrees of strength

Adverbs of degree can be **mild, medium, strong**, or **absolute** in how they describe the intensity, degree, or extent of the word they modify.

Adverbs that are mild, medium, or strong are known as **grading adverbs**; those that describe an absolute state or degree are known as **non-grading adverbs**. Sometimes a grading adverb of degree can change in strength depending on the verb, adverb, or adjective it describes. Non-grading adverbs, on the other hand, always describe absolute states or degrees.

Here are some examples of adverbs of degree:

- "He **undoubtedly** stole the money." (Absolute; non-grading)
- "He is **definitely** coming to the party." (Absolute; non-grading)
- "It's **absolutely** freezing outside." (Absolute; non-grading)
- "She is **very** sorry for her bad behavior." (Strong; grading)
- "I **really** love reading good books." (Strong; grading)
- "Are you **quite** certain?" (Absolute; quite is a grading adverb, but it can describe absolute states when paired with **non-gradable adjectives**, which we will look at below.)
- "She's **quite** mad." (Strong)

- “I **quite** like Indian food.” (Medium)
- “My camera was **pretty** expensive.” (Medium)
- “It’s **a bit** cold outside.” (Medium or mild, depending on the speaker’s emphasis.)
- “It will take **a bit** longer to complete.” (Mild)
- “We were **somewhat** surprised.” (Mild)

Adverbs of degree with gradable vs. non-gradable adjectives

Gradable adjectives are those that can have measurable levels of degree or intensity. **Non-gradable adjectives**, on the other hand, describe an extreme or absolute state. Here are some examples of gradable versus non-gradable adjectives:

Gradable	Non-gradable
small	tiny
cold	freezing
hot	boiling
difficult	impossible
sad	devastated

Because non-gradable adjective describe an absolute state, they can generally only be modified by **non-grading** adverbs of degree. These serve to emphasize the extreme nature of the adjective. Likewise, gradable adjectives are generally only paired with **grading** adverbs of degree. For example, the following would be **incorrect**:

× Non-grading adverb with gradable adjective	× Grading adverb with non-gradable adjective
absolutely small	**a bit** tiny
utterly cold	**dreadfully** freezing

fully hot	**unusually** boiling
virtually difficult	**extremely** impossible
completely sad	**slightly** devastated

However, we can see how they become **correct** if we reverse the adverbs of degree:

✓ Grading adverb with gradable adjective	✓ Non-grading adverb with non-gradable adjective
a bit small	**absolutely** tiny
dreadfully cold	**utterly** freezing
unusually hot	**fully** boiling
extremely difficult	**virtually** impossible
slightly sad	**completely** devastated

There are exceptions to this rule, however: the adverbs *really*, *fairly*, *pretty*, and *quite* can all be used with both gradable and non-gradable adjectives:

really small	**really tiny**
pretty cold	**pretty** freezing
fairly difficult	**fairly** impossible
quite sad	**quite** devastated

Note that in informal speech or writing, many grammar rules are often ignored, misused, or misunderstood, so you may come across non-grading adverbs used with gradable adjectives (e.g., “utterly surprised,” “absolutely interested”) or grading adverbs used with non-gradable adjectives (e.g., “extremely certain,” “very tiny”). However, other than the exceptions listed above, this usage should be avoided, especially in formal or professional writing.

Enough as an adverb of degree

The word *enough* can be used as another adverb of degree, meaning “sufficiently or to a satisfactory amount or degree,” “very, fully, or quite,” or “tolerably.” Unlike other adverbs of degree, though, *enough* can only modify adverbs and adjectives, and it always comes after the word it is describing in a sentence. For example:

- “He didn’t finish the exam quickly **enough**.”
- “I’ll be happy **enough** to be back home.”
- “The play was interesting **enough**, but I wouldn’t go see it again.”

Enough as an adjective

If *enough* appears before a noun that it modifies, then it is functioning as a determiner (a type of adjective) meaning “adequate or sufficient to meet a need or desire,” as in “I have had **enough** food, thanks!”

Enough as a pronoun

It may also seem like *enough* can be used as an adverb to describe verbs, as in “I’ve had **enough**,” or “you’ve studied **enough**,” but be careful: in such instances, *enough* is actually functioning as an **indefinite pronoun**, meaning “an adequate or sufficient amount (of something).” *Enough* **cannot** modify verbs.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What is the **adverb of degree** used in the sentence below?
“I will happily do as you ask, but it will take a bit of time, so I will try to work very quickly.”

a) happily
b) a bit
c) very
d) quickly

2. Where does an adverb of degree **usually** appear in a sentence?

a) Before the word it modifies
b) After the word it modifies

c) After a linking verb
d) Before a noun

3. Which of the following is a **non-grading** adverb of degree?
a) very
b) rather
c) extremely
d) utterly

4. Which of the following adverbs can be used with both **gradable** and **non-gradable** adjectives?
a) virtually
b) really
c) extremely
d) enough

5. Select the appropriate adverb of degree to fill in the blank:
"I know I didn't ace the exam, but I think I did well ______."
a) really
b) enough
c) somewhat
d) a bit

Mitigators

Definition

Mitigators, a subset of **adverbs of degree**, are adverbs or *adverbials* (groups of words that function as adverbs) that modify adjectives and adverbs to reduce their intensity, making them seem less extreme or powerful. The following are all examples of mitigators:

- **rather**
- **pretty**
- **slightly**
- **fairly**
- **a bit**
- **a little bit**

- **just a bit**
- **just a little bit**
- **a little**

Here are some examples of mitigators being used in sentences:

- “The movie was **rather** *dull*.”
- “He thought that the parade was **just a bit** *too long*.”
- “The runner performed **fairly** *well*, but not well enough to win the race.”
- “The sky was **slightly** *red* and *orange* at the time of the sunset.”
- “They were all **a little** *annoyed* that the fair had been cancelled due to rain.”
- “The cake was **pretty** *good*, but not excellent.”
- “I can jump **pretty** *high* for my height.”

Difference from intensifiers

Mitigators are the opposite of **intensifiers**, which are used to increase the intensity of the words they modify. Knowing what the main intensifiers are, as well as how they are used, makes it easier to tell the difference between these two different types of adverbs. Here are some of the most commonly used intensifiers:

- **very**
- **remarkably**
- **extremely**
- **amazingly**
- **incredibly**
- **completely**
- **exceptionally**
- **super**
- **really**

Here are some examples of intensifiers in sentences:

- “The weather was **exceptionally** *warm*.”
- “The scenery on the train ride from New York to Chicago was **incredibly** *beautiful*.”
- “Her mind was **completely** *focused* on getting her coffee in the morning.”
- “The ocean was **very** *cool* when he jumped in.”

- “Your appointment was **really** *long*.”
- “All of the students did **remarkably** *well* on the exam.”

Now, let’s look at some sentences that have both mitigators and intensifiers. Notice how each one is used to modify its respective adjective or adverb in a different way:

- “The line was **fairly** *short* for the **extremely** *scary* roller coaster.”
- “You were **pretty** *late* for the show, but the singer was **incredibly** *late*!”
- “Some trees in the forest were **exceptionally** *tall*, but some were **just a bit** *taller* than me.”

Notice that in all of these sentences, the mitigators reduce the intensity of the adjectives that they modify, while the intensifiers increase the intensity.

Importance in sentences

Adjectives and adverbs help to describe the quality of something or its actions. However, adjectives and adverbs on their own often cannot produce the exact level of description we want when speaking or writing. For example, consider the following sentence:

- “The rapids looked *dangerous*.”

This implies that the river might not be safe for recreational activities. However, the meaning of the sentence can change significantly if a mitigator is added. For example:

- “The rapids looked **slightly** *dangerous*.”

By adding the mitigator *slightly* before the adjective *dangerous*, the whole meaning of the sentence is changed. Now the rapids seem much less hazardous; they could potentially be safe if the person is very careful.

Here is another example:

- “The vacation was *boring*.”

vs.

- ”The vacation was **a bit** *boring*.”

The mitigator *a bit* implies that the vacation wasn't completely boring. It also implies an element of surprise or disappointment, as if the speaker expected the vacation not to be boring.

Here is one last example:

- “Henry felt *excited* to meet his long lost relative for the first time.”

vs.

- “Henry felt **a little** *excited* to meet his long lost relative for the first time.”

In the second sentence, the mitigator *a little* reduces the intensity of the adjective *excited*. This change not only results in the man being less excited, it now also carries a possible implication that he was not looking forward to meeting his relative before, or that he was not expecting to be excited.

Small changes such as we’ve seen can have both minute and profound impacts on what we write and the way we speak.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following words is a mitigator?

a) rather
b) cold
c) quickly
d) extremely

2. Identify the mitigator in the following sentence.
“Kevin quickly decided that he was having a pretty good day after all.”

a) good
b) decided
c) quickly
d) pretty

3. Which of the following words or group of words is **not** a mitigator?

a) slightly
b) just a little bit
b) amazingly
d) fairly

4. Mitigators do which of the following things?

a) increase the intensity of an adjective or adverb
b) reduce the intensity of an adjective or adverb
c) replace other words in the sentence

d) eliminate the need for punctuation

5. Mitigators act as which part of speech in a sentence?
a) adjective
b) noun
c) adverb
d) subject

Intensifiers

Definition

Intensifiers, a subset of **adverbs of degree**, are adverbs or *adverbials* (groups of words that function as adverbs) that modify adjectives and other adverbs to increase their strength, power, or intensity. The following words are all examples of intensifiers:

- **very**
- **remarkably**
- **extremely**
- **amazingly**
- **incredibly**
- **completely**
- **exceptionally**
- **super**
- **really**

Here are some examples of intensifiers being used in sentences:

- “The soup was **very** *hot*, so he put it down.”
- “The park in the middle of the city was **amazingly** *beautiful*.”
- “You were **completely** *sure* that you had done the assignment correctly.”
- “Sunlight in spring feels **incredibly** *uplifting* after a long, cold winter.”
- “Everyone was **really** *excited* to go to the beach and go swimming in the ocean.”
- “They were all **remarkably** *moved* by the movie they saw in the theatre.”
- “This table was crafted **really** *beautifully*.”

Difference from mitigators

Intensifiers are the opposite of **mitigators**, which are used to decrease the intensity of the words they modify. Knowing what the main intensifiers are, as well as how they are used, makes it easier to tell the difference between these two different types of adverbs. Here are some of the most commonly used mitigators:

- **rather**
- **pretty**
- **slightly**
- **fairly**
- **a bit**
- **a little bit**
- **just a bit**
- **just a little bit**
- **a little**

Here are some examples of mitigators being used in sentences:

- “The eagle flew over the **fairly** *large* canyon before it swooped to the ground for a landing.”

- “After eating dinner, everyone in the room was **a little bit** *full*.”

- “When Sarah stepped outside, she noticed that the weather seemed **just a bit** *chilly*.”

- “All the players on the soccer team **were** *slightly* nervous before stepping out onto the field for the big game.”

- “The woman sang **pretty** *well*, but it was clear she was not a professional.”

Let’s examine some sentences that contain both intensifiers and mitigators. Notice how each one is used to modify its respective adjective or adverb in a different way:

- “The dog was **rather** *tired*, so he took a **very** *long* nap in his favorite spot.”

- “The spring blossoms looked **incredibly** *gorgeous* in the **fairly** *strong* sunlight.”

- “Timothy was claiming that everything he was saying was **completely** *true*, but it still seemed **just a little bit** *suspicious*.”

- “The book was **really** *entertaining*; however, she thought the ending was **a bit** *anti-climactic*.”

In each of these sentences, the intensifier strengthens the intensity of the adjective that it modifies while the mitigator weakens its adjective.

Importance in sentences

Intensifiers not only elevate adjectives and adverbs to higher levels of intensity. In many circumstances, the way adjectives and adverbs are described can drastically impact their meaning in a sentence. For example, consider the following sentence:

- “The 5k race around the city was *tough*.”

In this sentence, the adjective *tough* informs you that the race was challenging, but we don’t know any more than that. However, adding an intensifier can change the whole description of the race:

- “The 5k race around the city was **incredibly** *tough*.”

By simply adding the intensifier *incredibly*, the race comes across as being much more challenging, perhaps more challenging than the speaker expected or was able to handle. Here is another example:

- “When the ship was leaving the harbor, the waves were *choppy*.”

vs.

- “When the ship was leaving the harbor, the waves were **extremely** *choppy*.”

There is a large difference between *choppy* and *extremely choppy* waves. Such a difference could mean that a storm is coming in, and the ship may even have to turn back due to danger. Once again, the intensifier modifies its adjective and alters the sentence's meaning in the process. Here is one final example to illustrate this concept:

- “The old bridge was *safe* to walk on.”

vs.

- “The old bridge was **very** *safe* to walk on.”

In the second sentence, the intensifier *very* implies that the bridge is still in excellent condition, and there is no danger whatsoever associated with walking on the bridge. The first sentence, however, only implies that the bridge is passable.

Small changes such as we’ve seen can have both minute and profound impacts on what we write and the way we speak.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is an intensifier?

a) slowly
b) just a little bit
b) completely
d) slightly

2. Identify the intensifier in the following sentence.
“Almost everyone in the group was incredibly excited to go sightseeing in New York City.”

a) almost
b) go
c) excited
d) incredibly

3. Which of the following words is **not** an intensifier?

a) fairly
b) amazingly
c) super
d) really

4. Which part of speech do intensifiers function as in a sentence?

a) adjective
b) noun
c) adverb
d) subject

5. Which part(s) of speech do intensifiers modify?

a) nouns
b) adjectives
c) verbs
d) adverbs
e) A & C
f) B & D

g) All of the above

Adverbs of Frequency

Definition

Adverbs of frequency (sometimes called **frequency adverbs**) tell us how often something happens or is the case; they can describe verbs and adjectives, but they do not modify other adverbs.

Range of frequency

Frequency adverbs can range in frequency from 100% of the time (always) to 0% of the time (never). The following table gives some examples of different adverbs expressing the full range of frequency:

Frequency	Definite Adverbs	Indefinite Adverbs
100%	every second	always
▲	hourly	usually
▲	daily	normally
▲	weekly	often
▲	monthly	sometimes
▲	quarterly	occasionally/infrequently/seldom
▲	yearly	rarely/hardly ever
0%	never	never

Notice how the frequency adverbs above are split into two categories: definite and indefinite. Let’s take a look at each.

Adverbs of definite frequency

Adverbs of **definite** frequency describe a specific or exact range of time for when something occurs or is the case. Some common examples are:

- **yearly/annually**
- **biannually** (This can mean either twice a year or two times in a year, depending on context.)
- **quarterly** (Meaning four times in a year, at the end of every quarter.)
- **monthly**
- **weekly**
- **daily**
- **hourly**
- **every minute** (*Minutely* means the same thing, but is much less commonly used.)
- **every second** (We do not say *secondly*, because this means “in the second place.”)

Adverbs of definite frequency modify verbs and generally appear at the beginning or end of the sentence. (The “-ly” adverbs come **only** at the end, though.) If appearing at the beginning of a sentence, they are usually offset by a comma. For example:

• “I run eight miles **daily**.”

• “**Every year**, our office holds a big raffle for charity.”

• “He makes a point of going to his local bar **once a week**.”

✖ “**Hourly**, you need to update me on your progress.” (incorrect)

Note that most of the “-ly” adverbs above can also function as adjectives, as in “yearly meetings,” “monthly report,” “hourly updates,” etc.

Adverbs of indefinite frequency

The frequency adverbs that are used most often, however, are adverbs of **indefinite** frequency. As the name suggests, these are adverbs that give a sense of frequency but do **not** specify exactly how often something happens or is the case. Unlike definite frequency adverbs, these can modify both verbs and adjectives, but their usage for each differs.

Modifying verbs

Positioning

If they are modifying verbs, the adverbs of frequency usually come before the main verb in a sentence:

✖ “We *go* **usually** to the movies on Sundays.” (incorrect)
✔ “We **usually** *go* to the movies on Sundays.” (correct)

Here are some more examples:

- “Bethany **always** *runs* late for work in the morning.”
- “I **never** *get* what I want!”
- “We **seldom** *see* her anymore.”
- “He *travels* to Europe **frequently**.”

Notice how *frequently* appears at the end of the sentence in the last example. Certain frequency adverbs—*usually, sometimes, normally, occasionally, often*, and *frequently*—can appear at the beginning or end of a main clause as well as before the verb they modify. If they appear at the beginning, they are usually (but not always) followed by a comma.

For example:

- “**Usually**, I would go to the movies on Sundays, but not this time.”
- “He comes up to visit **sometimes**.”
- “**Occasionally** I’ll read a romance novel as a guilty pleasure.”

The adverbs *always, seldom, rarely, hardly ever,* and *never* can also appear at the end of a sentence or clause; however, they do not go at the beginning unless they are creating a special emphasis, in which case the sentence structure changes. For example:

- “**Never** have I felt so insulted!”
- “**Rarely** does she leave the house unattended.”
- “**Seldom** is it that we part on good terms.”

Different tenses

Frequency adverbs are often used to modify verbs that are in the **present simple tense**, which is used when we speak about habits, general facts, and timetables.

However, we can also use them with other verb tenses. For example:

- “She **often** *traveled* when she lived in Spain.” (**Past simple tense**)
- “I *have* **rarely** *seen* the sun rise.” (**Present perfect tense**)

Notice that in the second example, the adverb *rarely* appears after the auxiliary verb *have* and before the main verb *seen*. This is always the case when we use auxiliary verbs:

- “She *will* **occasionally** *go* for walks alone.”
- “You *can* **seldom** *see* very far because of the fog.”
- “I *will* **never** *be* an actor!”

Notice that in the final example, *never* is modifying the **linking verb** *be* and appears before it. This is always the case if *be* is used with an auxiliary verb; most of the time, however, adverbs of frequency appear after the verb *be*. For example:

- “That *is* **often** the case.”
- “This class *is* **always** a bore!”
- “She *was* **never** very friendly.”

In the third example, the adverb of frequency is modifying an adjective, rather than the verb.

Modifying adjectives

Adverbs of frequency can also modify adjectives, in which case they come after the verb *be*. This is because *be* is a **linking verb** (not a main verb), and the adverbs modify the **predicative adjective(s)** associated with it.

For example, compare how the adverb of frequency *always* is used with the main verb *have* and the linking verb *be* in the following examples:

- “I **always** *have* lunch at one o’clock.”
- “I *am* **always** late for work.”

In the first sentence, *always* is modifying the verb *have*, whereas in the second sentence, it is modifying the adjective *late*. Here are some other examples:

- “The dog is **rarely** *quiet*.”
- “The trains are **occasionally** *late*, but they are **generally** *on time*.”
- “She is **often** *alone*, but I don’t think she minds.”

Putting extra emphasis on *be*

The only time adverbs of frequency come before the verb *be* (when it is not used with an auxiliary verb) is when *be* is given extra emphasis in a sentence. For example:

- “I **never** *was* fond of his writing.”

When we read this, we can hear the stress being put on the word *was*. Though it comes before *was*, the adverb *never* is actually modifying the adjective *fond*.

Note that this construction can also be used when the adverb modifies *be* rather than an adjective, as in:

- “You **occasionally** *are* a nit-picker.”

If we take the emphasis off *be*, however, the adverb would come after it as usual.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Where do **definite** adverbs of frequency appear in a sentence?

a) Before the verb they modify
b) After the verb they modify
c) At the beginning of a main clause
d) At the end of a main clause
e) A & B
f) C & D

2. What can adverbs of **indefinite** frequency do that adverbs of definite frequency cannot?

a) modify verbs
b) modify adjectives
c) modify adverbs
d) modify prepositional phrases

3. Which of the following is an adverb of frequency?

a) once in a while
b) somewhat
c) anymore
d) very

4. When does an adverb of frequency appear **before** the verb *be*?

a) When it is modifying a predicative adjective

b) When *be* is a main verb
c) When *be* is being emphasized
d) A & B

5. Identify the adverb of frequency in the following sentence:
“I quickly left so I could catch the next train, which luckily left hourly.”
a) quickly
b) next
c) luckily
d) hourly

6. Which of the following adverbs **cannot** fill in the blank space of the following sentence?
“________, I go to visit my sister on the weekend.”
a) frequently
b) sometimes
c) always
d) usually

Adverbs of Purpose

Definition

Adverbs of purpose (sometimes called **adverbs of reason**) tell us why something happens or is the case. They can modify verbs, adjectives, or adverbs.

Types of Adverbs of Purpose

Adverbs of purpose are generally made up of **conjunctive adverbs**, **prepositional phrases**, **infinitive phrases**, or **adverbial clauses**.

Conjunctive adverbs of purpose

We often use **conjunctive adverbs** to indicate a relationship of reason or purpose between two **independent clauses**. Some common conjunctive adverbs of purpose are *thus, therefore, consequently, hence,* and *as a result*.

When we join two independent clauses with a conjunctive adverb, they are traditionally separated with a **semicolon**.

It is also acceptable to use a **period** and keep them as two discrete sentences. The conjunctive adverb still usually appears at the beginning of the second sentence, but it can also appear before or after the word it is modifying.

For example:

- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play; **as a result**, she didn’t recommend it.”
- “We’ve never seen such high numbers. We must **therefore** conclude that the results are not normal.”
- “I’ve had some bad experiences with business partners in the past. **Consequently**, I am a little nervous about entering into this deal.”
- “The market here has been shrinking every year. We have **thus** decided to close our branch in this country.”
- “There has been some talk of the company going bankrupt in the near future; she is **consequently** looking for a new job.”
- “I broke my leg last month; **hence**, I was unable to work for several weeks.”

Non-conjunctive adverbs of purpose

It is also possible to use many of the adverbs above in a non-conjunctive manner, especially when modifying an adjective that derives purpose or reason from a previous part of the sentence. For example:

- “The clothing is handcrafted and **hence** *expensive*.”
- “I’ve grown fond of our time together and am **thus** *sad* to see it end.”
- “The markets proved to be volatile and **therefore** *unreliable*.”

Adverbial phrases of purpose

A variety of phrases are often used to indicate purpose or reason. The most common of these are **prepositional phrases** and **infinitive phrases**.

Prepositional phrases

It is very common to use prepositional phrases adverbially, and in some cases they can be used to indicate purpose. These prepositional phrases usually occur at the end of the clause, appearing after the verb or adjective they are describing, but they can also appear at the beginning of a clause or sentence, in which case they are set apart by a comma.

The most common prepositional phrase of purpose uses the **compound preposition** *because of*, as in:

- "I am feeling tired ***because of*** **this cold**."
- "***Because of*** **my operation**, I had to cancel my flight."

Some other common prepositions that can create prepositional phrases of purpose are *for, given, owing to*, and *due to**. For example:

- "Every year, we honor the soldiers who sacrificed their lives ***for*** **their country**."
- "***Given*** **the huge amount of public interest**, they are extending the program for another three months."
- "Our game was delayed ***due to*** **rain**."*
- "He had to leave early ***owing to*** **an emergency at the hospital**."

(*Note: Some traditional grammarians insist that *due* should never be used as a preposition, and that it should instead only be used as an adjective. However, there is no logical reason that it can't function as part of the compound preposition *due to*, and it is very often used this way in both formal and informal speech and writing.)

Infinitive phrases

An **infinitive** is the most basic form of a verb. It is "unmarked" (which means that it is not conjugated for tense or person), and it is preceded by the **particle** *to*. Any predicative information that follows an infinitive verb creates what's known as an **infinitive phrase**.

Infinitives and **infinitive phrases** can serve as **nouns, adjectives**, or **adverbs**. Infinitives always indicate purpose when they function as adverbs, and for that reason they are sometimes known as **infinitives of purpose**. For example:

- "I started running ***to improve*** **my health**."
- "I went to the store ***to buy*** **some milk**."

We can also use the phrases *in order* and *so as* to add formal emphasis to an infinitive of purpose, as in:

- "We must leave now in order ***to catch*** **our train**."
- "He's been working quietly so as ***not to disturb*** **his roommates**."

Lone infinitives of purpose

We can also use infinitives in this way as isolated responses to questions asking *why* something is done or is the case. For example:

- Speaker A: “Why are you going to New York?”
- Speaker B: “***To see* the Empire State Building**.”

- Speaker A: “Why did you turn on the TV?”
- Speaker B: “***To watch* the news**.”

These responses are known as **elliptical sentences**, meaning that part of the sentence has been omitted because it is implied. In the last example, the implied section is “I turned on the TV because I wanted…. ” As this element is implicitly understood, we often leave it out entirely and simply use the infinitive on its own.

Adverbial clauses of purpose

We can also use the **subordinating conjunctions** *as, because, since**, *so (that), in order that, for fear that, hence,* or (less commonly) *lest*** to create **adverbial clauses** that indicate reason or purpose. For example:

- “I am exhausted ***because* I was working all night**.”
- “***As* it’s raining**, we probably shouldn’t play in the park today.”
- “I’m going to Johnny’s house later ***since* all my homework is finished**.”*
- “He left the house ***so (that)* he could be alone**.”
- “I take my kids hiking in the mountains each summer ***in order that* they learn to appreciate nature's beauty**.”
- “***For fear that* his son may get hurt**, Dan never lets him play any contact sports.”
- “I should explain myself to him, ***lest* he thinks I am being ungrateful**.”**

(*Be careful with the subordinating conjunction *since*, because it is also used with adverbial clauses of time, as we saw above.)

(**The subordinating conjunction *lest* is not commonly used today, as it sounds old-fashioned and overly formal in modern English.)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following **cannot** be used to form adverbs of purpose?

a) Conjunctive adverbs
b) Coordinating conjunctions
c) Subordinating conjunctions
d) Infinitives

2. Which of the following sentences does **not** use an adverb of purpose?

a) “I am studying James Joyce because of my love of Irish literature.”
b) “The flight leaves at 10 AM; therefore, we must be at the airport by 6 o’clock in the morning.”
c) “We’ve decided to move to a small villa in Italy.”
d) “I have to travel to New York to meet with the investors.”

3. Which of the following prepositions can be used to form a prepositional phrase of purpose?

a) unto
b) into
c) onto
d) owing to

4. Where can **adverbial clauses** of purpose appear in a sentence?

a) At the beginning
b) In the middle
c) At the end
d) A & B
e) A & C
f) B & C

Focusing Adverbs

Definition

Focusing adverbs are used to draw attention to a particular part of a clause. They frequently point to verb phrases, but they can also draw attention to noun phrases, prepositional phrases, adjective phrases, and adverbial phrases.

When we speak, we often emphasize a particular part of a sentence using stressed intonation. This is sometimes represented in writing by using *italics*. Both speech and writing can be simplified and ambiguity reduced by using focusing adverbs instead. Let's see this done both ways:

- Through intonation: "I know *Tom* is coming to the party."
- Using a focusing adverb: "I know that **at least** Tom is coming to the party."

Both the emphasis through intonation and the use of the focusing adverb *at least* draw attention to *Tom* in the sentence. This signals to the listener or reader that this information is important.

Focusing adverbs also often imply some sort of contrast. In the examples above, drawing attention to *Tom* implies that there are other people who may not be coming to the party.

Types of Focusing Adverbs

We select a focusing adverb according to how we intend to emphasize the word or phrase. There are different focusing adverbs that are used to draw attention to information that is being added, information that is being limited or partially limited, information that is negative, information that presents a choice, or information that is considered surprising. Let's look at some of the most common focusing adverbs for each function:

Adding information

When we want to emphasize information that is being added to previous information, we can use the following focusing adverbs:

- **also**
- **as well**
- **too**

For example:

- “Tom is coming to the party and *is **also** bringing James*.”

The focusing adverb *also* adds emphasis to the entire verb phrase: *is bringing James*. This lets the listener know that this information is especially important to the speaker. Let’s look at another example:

- “Tom is coming to the party, and *James is coming **too***.”

Again, using the focusing adverb *too* adds the information about James coming in addition to Tom and stresses its importance.

Limiting information

When we want to emphasize information that presents limits, we use the following focusing adverbs:

- **alone**
- **but**
- **exactly**
- **exclusively**
- **just**
- **merely**
- **not only**
- **only**
- **precisely**
- **purely**
- **simply**
- **solely**

Observe how these focusing adverbs emphasize limits:

Example: “**Just** Tom is coming to the party.”
Implication: Tom is coming to the party but is not bringing a friend, or nobody else is coming to the party.

Example: “I’m going to study for **exactly** half an hour, then I’ll go to the party.”
Implication: I will study for no more than half an hour.

Example: “I’m **only** bringing James to the party.”
Implication: I am not bringing anybody else.

Example: “The party starts at **precisely** 10 o’clock.”
Implication: The party won’t start earlier or later than 10 o’clock.

Partially limiting information

Sometimes, we want to emphasize information that isn't *completely* limited, but rather *partially* limited. For that purpose, we can use the following focusing adverbs:

- **chiefly**
- **especially**
- **mainly**
- **mostly**
- **notably**
- **particularly**
- **in particular**
- **predominantly**
- **primarily**
- **at least**
- **for the most part**
- **by and large**

Let's see how partially limiting focusing adverbs can work:

Example: "I want everybody to come to the party, **especially** James."
Implication: I want everybody to come to the party, but I want James to come the most.

Example: "They played **mostly** techno music at the party."
Implication: They played several types of music, but most of it was techno.

Example: "A few people were missing at the party, **notably** Tom."
Implication: Several people who were supposed to be at the party did not go. Tom didn't go, and that was significant.

Example: "The people coming to the party are going to be **predominantly** students."
Implications: There are a variety of people coming to the party, but the majority will be students.

Other purposes

Negatives

When we want to draw attention to a negative statement, we can use *neither/nor*.

Example: “**Neither** Tom **nor** James turned up at the party.” ***or***:
“Tom didn’t turn up to the party, and **neither** did James.”
Implication: It is significant that neither Tom nor James went to the party.

Choices

When we want to draw attention to a choice of two things, we can use *either/or*.

Example: “You can **either** bring Tom **or** James to the party.”
Implication: You have to choose one friend to bring. You cannot bring both.

Surprise

Finally, when we want to show that a particular piece of information is surprising, we can use *even*.

Example: “**Even** Tom was at the party!”
Implication: Absolutely everybody was at the party, including Tom, which was unexpected.

Placement

Focusing adverbs can take the initial, middle, or final position in a sentence depending on what you want them to draw attention to.

According to what you want to emphasize

Changing the placement of the adverb changes which part of the clause is emphasized, and thereby can greatly change the implications of the sentence. Let’s see how this works using the base sentence “Jen can play piano for her friends at the party.” Notice how the meaning changes as we move around the focusing adverb *only*:

1. “**Only** *Jen* can play piano for her friends at the party.”
Implication: Nobody else can play piano for her friends.

2. “Jen can **only** *play piano* for her friends at the party.”
Implication: Jen can’t do anything else at the party, or Jen cannot play any other instruments for her friends.

3. “Jen can play **only** *piano* for her friends at the party.”

Implication: Jen cannot play any other instruments for her friends.

4. “Jen can play piano for **only** *her friends* at the party.”
Implication: Jen can play piano for her friends, but not for anybody else.

5. “Jen can play piano for her friends **only** *at the party*.”
Implication: Jen cannot play piano for her friends in other circumstances.

Placement of focusing adverbs around verbs

When the focusing adverb modifies a verb or verb phrase, it is placed before the main verb. For example:

- “We didn’t go to the party. We **just** *stayed* at home.”
- “We **only** *went* for one hour.”
- “We **even** *danced*.”

However, focusing adverbs should be placed after the verb *be*:

- “It *is* **just** Tom.”
- “It *was* **mostly** Jen who danced at the party.”
- “I *am* **especially** sorry that I missed it.”

When a focusing adverb modifies a verb phrase that includes an auxiliary verb and a main verb, it is placed between them. For example:

- “Jen *can **only** play* piano for her friends at the party.”
- “Tom *didn’t **even** go* to the party!”
- “They *had **particularly** wanted* a DJ instead of a band.”

Too and as well

In exception to the rules above, the focusing adverbs *too* and *as well* normally take the final position in a clause. For example:

- “Tom is going to the party, and James is going **too**.”
- “I want to go to the party **as well**.”

Extra Notes

It’s worth mentioning that the words *also* and *just* have varying functions and meanings from the examples given above. Let’s take a closer look:

Also

Also does not always function as a focusing adverb. It can also be used as a **conjunctive adverb**. For example:

“Tom is coming to the party. **Also**, James is coming.”

Just

The word *just* also has different functions and meanings. We have already seen that when used as a focusing adverb, *just* can limit the phrase it points to, in the same way as *only* or *merely*.

However, it can also mean *recently*, as in “I **just** got home”; *really*, as in “I **just** love it here”; *barely*, as in “We **just** made it on time”; and *exactly*, as in “It’s **just** ten o’clock right now.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. *Too* is a focusing adverb that stresses ________.

a) addition
b) limitation
c) partial limitation
d) surprise

2. *Predominantly* is a focusing adverb that stresses ________.

a) addition
b) limitation
c) partial limitation
d) surprise

3. *Merely* is a focusing adverb that stresses ________.

a) addition
b) limitation
c) partial limitation
d) surprise

4. Complete the following sentence with the correct focusing adverb:
“This party is ________ for students. I’m sorry, but nobody else can come.”

a) even
b) mostly
c) especially
d) exclusively

5. Complete the following sentence with the correct focusing adverb:
“There can be ________ 100 invited guests, no more and no less.”

a) exactly
b) particularly
c) also
d) not only

Negative Adverbs

Definition

Negative adverbs and negative adverbials (groups of words that function as an adverb) are used to modify the meaning of a verb, adjective, other adverb, or entire clause in a negative way. Like all adverbs, they usually answer questions about manner, place, time, or degree.

No and *Not*

There is debate whether *no* and *not* should be classed as adverbs, but they are by far the most commonly used words for creating negative statements, so we’ll briefly look at how they work.

Using *no*

We use *no* as a negative answer to questions or an expression of disagreement. It’s often classed as a determiner or an exclamation, but other grammarians argue that it’s an adverb, especially when it is used to negate **comparative adjectives** or **comparative adverbs**. For example:

- “He is **no** *better* than his rival.”
- “She runs **no** *more quickly* than her sister.”

Using *not* with auxiliary and modal verbs

To negate a verb phrase, we insert *not* after the first **auxiliary** or **modal verb**. For example:

- “I have seen him here before.” (positive)
- “I have **not** seen him here before.” (negative)

- “I would have done the same.” (positive)
- “I would **not** have done the same.” (negative)

Using *not* with only a main verb

If the verb phrase contains only a main verb, we negate it by adding *do/does/did + not*. For example:

- “I go swimming on Mondays.” (positive)
- “I *do* **not** go swimming on Mondays.” (negative)

- “He works every day.” (positive)
- “He *does* **not** work every day.” (negative)

- “We went to the supermarket yesterday.” (positive)
- “We *did* **not** go to the supermarket yesterday.” (negative)

Using *not* with the verb *be*

When a form of the verb *be* is the only verb in the statement, we place *not* after it. For example:

- “They *are* tall.” (positive)
- “They *are* **not** tall.” (negative)

- “It *is* an interesting project.” (positive)
- “It *is* **not** an interesting project.” (negative)

Other negative adverbs

Now that we have seen how *no* and *not* are used, let’s look at other negative adverbs. The principle characteristic they all have in common is that we don’t modify them with *not* because they already express negative meaning on their own.

Negative adverbs meaning “almost not”

Some negative adverbs mean “almost not.” They are:

- hardly
- barely
- scarcely

These negative adverbs are placed in the same position as *not*. They generally go after the first auxiliary or modal verb, before a main verb when it is the only verb, and after forms of the verb *be*.

For example:

• “I **hardly** go out anymore.” (I almost don’t go out anymore.)

• “I can **barely** see the mountain through the clouds.” (I almost can’t see it.)

• “It’s **scarcely** surprising that you’re quitting your job.” (It is not very surprising at all.)

Negative adverbs meaning “not often” or “not ever”

When we want to stress how infrequently something occurs, we can use these negative adverbs:

- no longer
- rarely
- seldom
- barely ever
- hardly ever
- never

Again, these adjectives are usually placed in the same position as *not*. For example:

• “I **no longer** cook at home.” (I cooked at home before, but now I don’t.)

• “He has **seldom/rarely/hardly ever** played football.” (very infrequently)

• “We are **never** late.” (not ever)

Note that *seldom, rarely, barely ever*, and *hardly ever* are interchangeable. They all mean “very infrequently.”

Negative adverbs that emphasize quick succession of events

When we want to express that two events happened in quick succession (one event almost did not finish before the next event happened) we can use any of these negative adverbs:

- hardly
- barely
- scarcely
- no sooner

Some of these are the same negative adverbs that mean “almost not,” but when we use them for events in quick succession, we must use them in combination with either *when* (for *hardly, scarcely* and *barely*), or *than* (for *no sooner*).

The first event is usually expressed in the **past perfect** tense, with the negative adverb following the auxiliary verb *had*. The two clauses are joined with *when* or *than* (depending on which negative adverb is used), and the second event follows in the **past simple** tense.

For example:

• “We had **hardly** finished cleaning **when** the guests arrived.”

• “I had **barely** walked in the door **when** she called.”

• “She had **scarcely** been home five minutes **when** they arrived to take her to the movie.”

• “We had **no sooner** put dinner on the table **than** the doorbell rang.”

Adverbial phrases for total negation

There are a few adverbial phrases that are used to completely negate a clause. For example:

- under no circumstances
- in no way
- on no condition

Like *not*, these adverbials can be placed in mid position:

• “We **in no way** like this plan.” (We don’t like this plan.)

• “We have **under no circumstances** allowed them to come inside.” (They have definitely not been allowed inside.)

• “She is **on no condition** to be disturbed.” (Don’t disturb her.)

However, they are more commonly placed in initial position using inversion, which we will examine later in this article.

Using *only* for conditional negativity

Only can be used when we want to place conditions on whether something is going to occur or not. It most closely means “exclusively,” and can be used in several combinations. For example:

- only… after
- only… if
- only… when
- only… until

Usually, we place *only* before the action that may or may not occur, and *if/after/when/until* before the condition. For example:

• “I will **only** go to the movie **if** you go too.”
Meaning: I am not going to the movie if you don’t go.

• “I’ll **only** help you **when** you ask for it.”
Meaning: I will not help you when you don’t ask for help.

• “They are **only** living here **until** they find a new house.”
Meaning: They will leave here when they find a new house.

Using inversion

We have shown how negative adverbs are often placed in mid position. However, it’s also very common for negative adverbs to appear at the beginning of a sentence. This is often done in more formal or literary styles, as well as when we want to place special emphasis on the negative adverb.

When we place the negative adverb at the beginning of the sentence, we must use **inversion**. This is when we rearrange the normal subject/verb order of the sentence. We already use the principle of inversion all the time when we form questions. For example:

- “*He has* seen this movie.” (no inversion)
- “*Has he* seen this movie?” (inversion)

To form the question, the subject (*he*) and the auxiliary verb (*has*) switch places. The process is the same when we use negative adverbs.

Inversion with auxiliary/modal verbs

If a negative adverb is being used at the beginning a sentence that has a modal or auxiliary verb, we simply switch the order of the first auxiliary/modal verb and the subject. For example:

- “*I have* **never** seen such a beautiful creature.” (no inversion)
- “**Never** *have I* seen such a beautiful creature.” (inversion)

- “*We had* **scarcely** arrived home when they called.” (no inversion)
- “**Scarcely** *had we* arrived home when they called.” (inversion)

- “*He can* **under no circumstances** play that game.” (no inversion)
- “**Under no circumstances** *can he* play that game.” (inversion)

Inversion with only a main verb

If a negative adverb is placed at the beginning of a sentence that contains only a main verb, we must insert the auxiliary verbs *do/does* or *did* and use the **bare infinitive** form of the verb, just like when we form questions. For example:

- “We **in no way** *like* this plan.” (no inversion)
- “**In no way** *do we like* this plan.” (inversion)

- “She **scarcely** *leaves* the city anymore.” (no inversion)
- “**Scarcely** *does she leave* the city anymore.” (inversion)

- “He **barely** *stopped* in time.” (no inversion)
- “**Barely** *did he stop* in time.” (inversion)

Inversion with the verb “be”

When a negative adverb begins a sentence that only contains the verb *be*, we switch the order of the subject and *be* (again, the same as when we form questions):

- “*We are* **seldom** late.” (no inversion)
- “**Seldom** *are we* late.” (inversion)

- “*He is* **hardly** working.” (no inversion)
- “**Hardly** *is he* working.” (inversion)

- “*She is* **on no condition** to be disturbed.” (no inversion)
- **On no condition** *is she* to be disturbed.” (inversion)

Inversion of “only” for conditional negativity

When we form negative conditional expressions with *only*, we have to do a bit more rearranging. The entire **conditional clause** joins *only* in the beginning of the sentence, and the subject-verb word order changes in the **main clause**. For example:

- “I will **only** go to the movie **if** you go too.” (no inversion)
- “**Only if** you go too *will I* go to the movie.” (inversion)

- “I’ll **only** help you **when** you ask for help.” (no inversion)
- “**Only when** you ask for help *will I* help you.” (inversion)

- “They are **only** living here **until** they find a new house.” (no inversion)
- “**Only until** they find a new house *are they* living here.” (inversion)

Common Errors

Negative adverbs leave lots of room for little mistakes. The most common errors are using double negatives, not using inversion when starting a sentence with a negative adverb, and misunderstanding or misusing the negative adverb *hardly*.

Double Negatives

In English, we generally cannot use **double negatives**, which occur when two negative elements are used in the same part of a sentence. We must remember that when we use a negative adverb, we cannot further negate the sentence with *no, not* or another negative adverb because the two negatives cancel each other out, making the sentence **affirmative** in meaning. For example:

✖ “You **shouldn’t** under **no** circumstances cheat on a test.” (incorrect)
- Literal meaning: There are certain circumstances under which you should cheat.

✔ “You should under **no** circumstances cheat on a test.” (correct)

Meaning: You should never cheat.

✖ “I **scarcely** had **not** enough time to get ready.” (incorrect)
• Literal meaning: I actually had plenty of time to get ready.

✔ “I **scarcely** had enough time to get ready.” (correct)
Meaning: I almost did not have enough time.

Using double negative for emphasis
While we should generally avoid using double negatives in our speech and writing, there are certain circumstances in which they **can** be used for an emphatic, rhetorical effect. For example: • “Well, I **didn’t not** tell him the truth; I just didn’t tell him the whole truth.” • Literal meaning: I didn’t lie, I just left out some information. • “You **can’t** just **not** go to school!” • Literal meaning: You must go to school. However, these are very informal constructions, so they should only be used sparingly, and they should not be used in formal or professional writing at all.

Not using inversion

Another common error is when we place a negative adverb at the beginning of the sentence but forget to use inversion. For example:

✖ “Under no circumstances you can watch that movie.” (incorrect)
✔ “Under no circumstances *can you* watch that movie.” (correct)
Meaning: You cannot watch that movie.
Explanation: You must invert the order of the subject (*you*) and the modal verb (*can*).

✖ “Never he did visit the Eiffel Tower.” (incorrect)
✔ “Never did he visit the Eiffel Tower.” (correct)
Meaning: He never visited the Eiffel Tower.
Explanation: You must invert the order of the subject (*he*) and the modal verb (*did*).

Hardly

Finally, a common error is misusing or misunderstanding the meaning of the negative adverb *hardly*. Although many adverbs are formed by adding "-ly" to the end of an adjective, this is not the case with *hardly*.

The adverb form of the adjective *hard* is also *hard*. *Hardly*, however, never means "in a hard way," but rather means "almost not." For example:

✖ "He's working hardly." (incorrect)
✔ "He's working hard." (correct—He's working a lot or with much effort.)
✔ "He's hardly working." (correct—He's almost not working at all.)

(See the chapter section on **Regular and Irregular Adverbs** to learn more about adverb forms that are exceptions to the conventional rules of English.)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which negative adverb **does not** mean the same as the other three?

a) barely ever
b) scarcely
c) rarely
d) never

2. Which sentence shows **correct** use of the negative adverb *barely*?

a) "Barely she goes out anymore."
b) "She barely goes out anymore."
c) "She goes barely out anymore."
d) "She goes barely anymore out."

3. Which of the following sentences is **incorrect**?

a) "I had no sooner finished cooking when they came in."
b) "I had barely finished cooking when they came in."
c) "I had scarcely finished cooking when they came in."
d) "I had hardly finished cooking when they came in."

4. Which of the following sentences uses inversion **correctly**?

a) "Rarely have we tasted such delicious food."
b) "Rarely we have tasted such delicious food."
c) "We have tasted such delicious food rarely."
d) "Have we tasted rarely such delicious food."

5. Which of the following sentences is **incorrect**?

a) “Under no circumstances can you go out on Saturday.”
b) “Never have I been so upset.”
c) “Scarcely has he not seen her in the last few years.”
d) “He’s working hard.”

Conjunctive Adverbs

Definition

Conjunctive adverbs (also called **linking adverbs** or **connecting adverbs**) are a specific type of **conjunction**. Conjunctions are used to join together words, phrases, or clauses. Conjunctive adverbs are specifically used to connect two independent clauses.

An **independent clause** (also called a **main clause**) contains a **subject** and a **predicate**, and it expresses a full thought. In other words, it can stand on its own and makes sense as a complete simple sentence. For example:

- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play. She didn’t recommend it to her friend.”

This example shows two independent clauses. The first contains the subject *Jen* and the predicate *hadn’t enjoyed the play*, while the second includes the subject *she* and the predicate *didn’t recommend it to her friend*. Each clause expresses a complete idea and makes sense on its own. However, they would sound more natural if they were connected. This is where **conjunctive adverbs** come in. For example:

- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play; **therefore**, she didn’t recommend it to her friend.”

The two independent clauses are now connected in a more natural way, using the conjunctive adverb *therefore*.

Punctuating the clauses

When we join two independent clauses with a conjunctive adverb, they are traditionally separated with a **semicolon** (as in our example above). It is also acceptable to use a **period** and keep them as two discrete sentences. Either way, the conjunctive adverb typically begins the second clause, followed by a **comma**. (We will examine alternative placement of the adverb later in this section.) However, we cannot separate the two clauses using a comma. For example:

✔ “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play; **therefore**, she didn’t recommend it.” (correct)

✔ “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play. **Therefore**, she didn’t recommend it.” (correct)

✖ “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play, **therefore**, she didn’t recommend it.” (incorrect)

If we choose to separate the two clauses with a period, we must remember to capitalize the conjunctive adverb, since it is the first word in a new sentence.

For the sake of consistency, we will use semicolons in all of the examples below.

Choosing a conjunctive adverb

There are many conjunctive adverbs. To choose the right one, we must consider the relationship between the first and second clause. Let’s look at the example again:

- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play; **therefore**, she didn’t recommend it to her friend.”

The second clause is a result of the first clause. Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play, and that is the reason that she didn’t recommend it to her friend. So, when we connect the two clauses, we choose a conjunctive adverb (*therefore*) that makes this cause-and-effect relationship clear. Think about how the relationship between *these* two clauses is different from the previous example:

- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play. She recommended it to her friend.”

We still have two independent clauses, but now the relationship between them is different. Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play, but recommended it to her friend anyway. We can no longer use the conjunctive adverb *therefore*, because we are no longer dealing with cause and effect. Instead, we need to choose a conjunctive adverb like *nevertheless*, which is used to express unexpected results:

- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play; **nevertheless**, she recommended it to her friend.”

These are some the most common conjunctive adverbs and their functions:

Result	**Comparison**	**Contrast**	**Adding info**	**Adding *stronger* info**	**Unexpect Results**
accordingly	comparatively	contrarily	also	further	neverthele

as a result	equally	conversely	besides	furthermore	nonethele
consequently	likewise	however	in addition	moreover	surprising
hence	similarly	in comparison			still
therefore		in contrast			
thus		instead			
		on the other hand			
		rather			

Result

When the second clause is a result of something that happened in the first clause, we have a few options. One is *therefore*, which we looked at already.

We can also use *accordingly, as a result, consequently, hence,* and *thus* interchangeably with *therefore*; the meaning of the sentence remains the same. For example:

- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play; **hence**, she didn’t recommend it.”
- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play; **as a result**, she didn’t recommend it.”
- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play; **consequently**, she didn’t recommend it.”

Comparison

When we state that two things are alike, we can use the conjunctive adverbs *comparatively* and *similarly*. For example:

- “Jen grew up in New York City; **similarly**, her boyfriend grew up in inner-city Chicago.”
- “Sam always wanted to be a famous movie star; **comparatively**, his brother wanted to be a famous rock star.”

When we state that two things are not just similar, but *equal*, we can draw a comparison using conjunctive adverbs like *equally* and *likewise*.

- "Jen grew up in New York; **likewise**, her boyfriend was raised in the city."
- "Sam always wanted to be a movie star; **equally**, his brother dreamed of starring in films."

Contrast

There are two types of contrast that we can illustrate using conjunctive adverbs. The first, known as **complete contrast**, is when the two opposing things are total opposites. For this type of contrast, we can use any of the contrasting conjunctive adverbs in the table. For example:

- "Tom has a black backpack; **in contrast**, his brother has a white one."
- "I absolutely love singing; **on the other hand**, my sister hates it."
- "Jen is terrible at math; **however**, her friend is amazing at it, so she helps her."

The other type of contrast is **weak contrast**. This is when the two clauses are opposing but are *not complete opposites*. For this type of contrast, we are limited to using only the weaker of the contrasting conjunctive adverbs, and not the strong ones like *on the other hand* and *in contrast*. For example:

✔ "Jen is terrible at math; **however**, she still likes it." (correct)
✖ "Jen is terrible at math; **on the other hand**, she still likes it." (incorrect)

✔ "I would have liked to stay in bed all day; **instead**, I got up and went to the park." (correct)
✖ "I would have liked to stay in bed all day; **in contrast**, I got up and went to the park." (incorrect)

Adding information

Sometimes we want to add information of equal value to the information in the first clause. In this case, we can use *also* or *in addition*. For example:

- "When you make the dinner, remember that he doesn't like chicken; **in addition**, he can't eat shellfish."
- "Her favorite animals are dogs; **also**, she likes cats."

When we want to add information that further explains something, we use *besides*. For example:

- "I heard this movie is terrible; **besides**, I hate horror films."

- “Jen passed her test because she’s good at English; **besides**, she studies hard.”

Adding *stronger* information

When the information that we want to add has more value (is stronger) than the information in the first clause, we can use the conjunctive adverbs *further*, *furthermore*, or *moreover*. For example:

- “He was fired because he was often late; **furthermore**, the quality of his work was poor.”
- “Being a doctor is an exhausting job; **moreover**, you don’t earn good money until you’ve been practicing for many years.”

Unexpected result

When the second clause is an unexpected result of the first clause, we can use the conjunctive adverbs *nevertheless*, *nonetheless*, *surprisingly* or *still*. For example:

- “I am terrible at math; **nonetheless**, I passed my exam!”
- “That car cost far too much money; **nevertheless**, Tom bought it.”
- “She has never been to France; **surprisingly**, she speaks French fluently.”

Emphasis

When we want to place special emphasis on the second clause, we can use the conjunctive adverbs *indeed* or *in fact*. For example:

- “I didn’t study as much as I should have; **indeed**, I hardly opened a book!”
- “He doesn’t like swimming very much; **in fact**, he hates all sports!”

Condition

The conjunctive adverb *otherwise* is used to place conditions on whether something will occur or not. It most closely means “*if not*.” For example:

- “You have to come with me; **otherwise**, I’m not going.”
- “Maybe she didn’t study very hard; **otherwise**, she would have passed the test.”

Where to use conjunctive adverbs

Conjunctive adverbs must appear in the second of the two clauses that are connected. For the sake of consistency, we have shown all of them at the beginning of the second clause in the examples, but they can actually be moved around within it.

Depending on where we place the conjunctive adverb in the sentence, there are certain rules regarding commas that we must be aware of.

At the beginning of the second clause

Conjunctive adverbs are often placed at the beginning of the second clause, which is how we have shown them in all of our examples up to now. Note that when they are placed in this position, they are usually followed by a comma. The comma is sometimes optional with the conjunctive adverb *thus*, but this is a stylistic preference. For example:

- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play; **thus**, she didn’t recommend it.”
- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play; **thus** she didn’t recommend it.”

In the middle of the second clause

We can also place the conjunctive adverb in the middle of the second clause. It should come after the subject or introductory phrase. When the introductory phrase is short (i.e., one to two syllables), it may not be necessary to place a comma after the conjunctive adverb. For example:

- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play; she **therefore** didn’t recommend it.”

If the introductory phrase is any longer, it is generally necessary to enclose the conjunctive adverb between two commas. For example:

- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play; she decided, **therefore**, not to recommend it.”
- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play; she did not, **as a result**, recommend it.”

At the end of the second clause

Finally, a conjunctive adverb can also appear at the end of the second clause. When placing the conjunctive adverb in this position, it is usually preceded by a comma; however, this depends on the flow of the sentence and it can be omitted if it seems unnatural. For example:

- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play; she did not recommend it, **consequently**.”
- “Tom had never been good at basketball; he had always loved it, **nonetheless**.”
- “I wanted to stay in bed; I went to the park **instead**.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Conjunctive adverbs are used to connect two ________.

a) phrases
b) words
c) dependent clauses
d) independent clauses

2. We must separate the two clauses with ________.

a) a comma
b) a period
c) a semi-colon
d) Either A or B
e) Either B or C

3. Which sentence is **correct**?

a) “I love cake; however, I’m not a fan of pie.”
b) “I love cake. however, I’m not a fan of pie.”
c) “I love cake, However, I’m not a fan of pie.”
d) “I love cake, however, I’m not a fan of pie.”

4. Complete the following sentence with the correct conjunctive adverb:
“I really wish I were better at soccer; ________, I’m quite good at basketball.”

a) in addition
b) however
c) in fact
d) furthermore

5. Complete the following sentence with the correct conjunctive adverb:
“He didn’t get the job because he was late to the interview. ________, he had absolutely no experience.”

a) On the other hand
b) Furthermore
c) However
d) Thus

Evaluative Adverbs

Definition

Most adverbs describe how or when an action occurs. **Evaluative adverbs**, which are also referred to as **commenting adverbs**, are different. Instead of giving us information about the action itself, evaluative adverbs are used by the speaker to comment or give an opinion on something. Evaluative adverbs modify the entire clause.

Types of Evaluative Adverbs

There are several types of evaluative adverbs, which can be classified according to their function. Some give information about how certain we consider something to be, others express our attitude (negative or positive) about something, while others are used to pass judgment on someone's actions. Some of the most common evaluative adverbs for each function are listed in the table below:

Degree of Certainty	Attitude	Judgment
apparently	astonishingly	bravely
clearly	frankly	carelessly
definitely	fortunately	fairly
doubtfully	honestly	foolishly
doubtlessly	hopefully	generously
obviously	interestingly	kindly
presumably	luckily	rightly
probably	sadly	spitefully

undoubtedly	seriously	stupidly
	surprisingly	unfairly
	unbelievably	wisely
		wrongly

To indicate a degree of certainty

We can use the evaluative adverbs listed in the first column of the table to state how certain we are about something. For example:

- “**Clearly**, we're going to have to work harder.” (I am sure that we are going to have to work harder.)
- “**Apparently**, we’re going to have to work harder.” (There is some indication that we may have to work harder.)

To indicate attitude

We can use the evaluative adverbs in the second column of the table to make our attitude about something clear. For example:

- “**Astonishingly**, she did well on the test.” (I feel surprised that she did well on the test.)
- “**Sadly**, he couldn’t come to the party.” (It is unfortunate that he couldn’t come to the party.)
- “**Honestly**, I couldn’t eat another bite.” (The truth is that I couldn’t eat another bite.)

To indicate judgment

We can use the evaluative adverbs in the third column to make judgments about someone’s actions, including our own. For example:

- “I **stupidly** forgot my phone at home.” (I forgot my phone at home, and I think that was stupid of me.)
- “You **carelessly** dropped my favorite cup.” (You dropped my cup, and I think it’s because you were not being careful.)

- “She **bravely** traveled across Asia alone.” (She traveled across Asia alone, and, in my opinion, that was brave.)

Sentence Placement

The evaluative adverb is usually placed at the beginning of the sentence, followed by a comma. For example:

- “**Clearly**, he didn’t mean to ignore you.”
- “**Apparently**, she has real talent.”
- “**Interestingly**, he is very good at chess.”

However, they can also appear at the end of the sentence, preceded by a comma, as in:

- “He didn’t mean to ignore you, **clearly**.”
- “She has real talent, **apparently**.”
- “He is really good at chess, **interestingly**.”

Some evaluative adverbs can also appear in the mid position, in which case we usually do not set them apart with commas. In particular, *probably* and *definitely* are most likely to occur in this position, appearing after the subject or after the verb *be*. For example:

- “He **probably** *didn’t* mean to ignore you.”
- “She **definitely** *works* hard.”
- “He *is* **probably** really good at chess.”
- “They *are* **definitely** the best of friends.”

When we use an evaluative adverb to make a judgment of an action, we usually put the adverb after the subject. For example:

- “*She* **bravely** told the truth.”
- “*He* **generously** offered the lady a ride home.”
- “*You* **carelessly** dropped my favorite cup.”

However, if we want to place a strong emphasis on the judgment, we can also place it at the beginning of the sentence, set apart by a comma. For example:

- “**Bravely**, she told the truth.”
- “**Generously**, he offered the lady a ride home.”
- “**Carelessly**, you dropped my favorite cup.

Placing this type of evaluative adverb at the end of the sentence is less common, but still acceptable. For example:

- “She told the truth, **bravely**.”
- “He offered the lady a ride home, **generously**.”
- “You dropped my favorite cup, **carelessly**.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Evaluative adverbs are used to give the ________.

a) reader’s opinion
b) writer’s opinion
c) speaker’s opinion
d) Both A & C
e) Both B & C

2. Which evaluative adverb **does not** indicate **degree of certainty**?

a) clearly
b) generously
c) apparently
d) obviously

3. Which adverb **does not** indicate a **judgment** of someone’s actions?

a) stupidly
b) generously
c) wisely
d) certainly

4. Which adverb **does not** indicate **attitude**?

a) luckily
b) definitely
c) sadly
d) surprisingly

5. Which of the following sentences is **incorrect**?

a) “Surprisingly, he didn’t come with us.”

b) “He surprisingly didn’t come with us.”
c) “He didn’t come surprisingly with us.”
d) “He didn’t come with us, surprisingly.”

Viewpoint Adverbs

Definition

Viewpoint adverbs are often confused with **evaluative adverbs**. Although they are similar in form, and the specific adverbs used can overlap, the two actually serve different functions. While evaluative adverbs are used to give an opinion, viewpoint adverbs are used to indicate whose point of view we are expressing, or to specify what aspect of something we are talking about. They modify an entire sentence or **independent clause**.

Indicating point of view

Many common viewpoint adverbs are actually **adverbials**, or groups of words that function together as an adverb. Here are some common viewpoint adverbs and adverbials for indicating whose point of view we are expressing:

- according to *me/you/him/her/them*
- as far as *I/you/he/she/they* am/is/are concerned
- in *my/your/his/her/their* opinion
- in *my/your/his/her/their* view
- to *my/your/his/her/their* knowledge
- from *my/your/his/her/their* perspective
- from *my/your/his/her/their* point of view
- personally

We can use these viewpoint adverbs and adverbials to express who supports the statement. For example:

• “**In my opinion**, you shouldn’t go to that party.” (*I* believe you shouldn’t go to that party.)

• “**According to my sister**, I have a fantastic sense of humor.” (*My sister* thinks I have a fantastic sense of humor.)

• “**To my teacher’s knowledge**, my homework has been eaten by a dog.” (*My teacher* believes that my homework has been eaten by a dog.)

• “**Personally**, I don’t believe it’s true.” (*My own* personal opinion is that it isn’t true.)

Specifying an aspect of something

We also use specific viewpoint adverbs to delimit, or specify, what part or aspect of something we are talking about. These adverbs are often called **domain adverbs**, and are almost limitless. Some examples are:

- biologically
- environmentally
- ideologically
- industrially
- financially
- formally
- inwardly
- linguistically
- mathematically
- medically
- morally
- officially
- outwardly
- physically
- politically
- scientifically
- technically
- theoretically
- visually

For example:

• “**Biologically**, insects are some of the most amazing creatures on the planet.” (From a biological point of view, insects are amazing.)

• “**Industrially**, 19th-century London was the most advanced city in the world.” (19th-century London was the most advanced city in terms of industry.)

• “**Officially**, we’re not allowed to sit here.” (According to official rules, we are not allowed to sit here.)

For variety, we can also adapt the above adverbs into adverbial phrases with no change in meaning. We can use the following patterns:

- adverb + “speaking”
- “in terms of” + noun
- “in” + adjective + “terms”
- “from a” + adjective + “point of view”
- “as far as” + noun + “is concerned”

For example:

• “**Biologically speaking**, insects are some of the most amazing creatures on the planet.”

• “**In terms of biology**, insects are some of the most amazing creatures on the planet.”

• “**In biological terms**, insects are some of the most amazing creatures on the planet.”

• “**From a biological point of view**, insects are some of the most amazing creatures on the planet.”

• “**As far as biology is concerned**, insects are some of the most amazing creatures on the planet.”

Sentence Placement

As we’ve seen in the examples above, viewpoint adverbs usually appear at the beginning of the clause, followed by a comma. However, they can also appear at the end of the clause. For example:

• “You shouldn’t go to that party, **in my opinion**.”

• “I don’t believe it's true, **personally**.”

• “19th -century London was the most advanced city in the world, **industrially**.”

• “Insects are some of the most amazing creatures on the planet, **biologically speaking**.”

Note that whether they appear at the beginning or the end, they are set apart from the rest of the clause by a comma.

Viewpoint adverbs can appear in other positions in the sentence, but this is less common. If we place a viewpoint adverb in mid position, we should be sure to double check the readability of the sentence, and always set it apart from the rest of the clause between two commas.

For example:

- “You shouldn’t, **in my opinion**, go to that party.”
- “Insects are, **in terms of biology**, some of the most amazing creatures on the planet.”
- “We are not, **in official terms**, allowed to sit here.”
- “19th-century London was, **industrially**, the most advanced city in the world.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Viewpoint adverbs are often used to indicate __________________.

a) who believes something
b) why you believe something
c) what you believe
d) how much you believe something

2. Viewpoint adverbs must be separated from the rest of the clause by a ________.

a) a colon
b) a semi-colon
c) a period
d) a comma

3. Which of the following sentences is **punctuated correctly**?

a) “Personally I don’t like cake.”
b) “Personally; I don’t like cake.”
c) “Personally, I don’t like cake.”
d) “Personally I don’t, like cake.”

4. Complete the following sentence:
“In scientific ________, humans are mammals.”

a) science
b) speaking
c) according
d) terms

5. Complete the following sentence:
“________ my knowledge, he is at home.”

a) In
b) To
c) By
d) For

Relative Adverbs

Definition

Relative adverbs, like **relative pronouns**, introduce **relative clauses** (also called **adjective clauses**) that modify a noun or a noun phrase. However, while relative pronouns (such as *that, which*, or *who*) are used to relate information to a person or a thing, relative adverbs (*where, when* and *why*) are used when the information relates to a place, time, or the reason an action took place.

Functions of relative adverbs

Place

We use the relative adverb *where* to introduce information that relates to a place. The place can be any location: a house, city, country, geographical region, or even a planet.

For example:

- “*The house* **where** I was born is a very special place.”
- “*Paris*, **where** I want to live, is the most beautiful city in the world.”
- “I’ll always remember *the river* **where** we learned to swim.

Time

We use the relative adverb *when* to introduce information that relates to a time. That time can be an actual time of day, a day, a week, a year, or even an era. For example:

- “The 80s were *a time* **when** big hair was considered fashionable.”

- “I love casual *Fridays*, **when** we get to wear jeans to work.”
- “Yesterday was *the day* **when** I met my husband for lunch.”

Reason

We use the relative adverb *why* to introduce information that relates to the reason something happened. In this case, the noun being modified is “the reason,” but it is often omitted to reduce repetitiveness. For example:

- “I don’t know *the reason* **why** he got angry.”

OR

- “I don’t know **why** he got angry.”

- “Do you know *the reason* **why** the sky is blue?”

OR

- “Do you know **why** the sky is blue?”

Restrictive and non-restrictive relative clauses

Like relative pronouns, relative adverbs can introduce a **restrictive relative clause** (also called a defining clause), or a **non-restrictive relative clause** (also known as a non-defining clause). **Restrictive relative clauses** identify the noun, giving us essential information about it, while **non-restrictive** clauses simply give us additional information that is not essential to the sentence. Let’s look at the difference:

Restrictive relative clauses

As mentioned, restrictive relative clauses identify the noun, giving us information about it that we need to know in order to understand the speaker’s meaning. This type of clause does not need any commas. For example:

- “*The house* **where** I was born is a very special place.”
- “I’ll always remember *the river* **where** we learned to swim.”

- “Yesterday was *the day* **when** I met my husband for lunch.”
- “The 80s were *a time* **when** big hair was considered fashionable.”

- “I don’t know (*the reason*) **why** he got angry.”
- “Do you know (*the reason*) **why** the sky is blue?”

The restrictive relative clause in each of the sentences above is underlined. Now, observe what happens to the meaning of the sentences if we remove the relative clause:

- “*The house* is a very special place.” (What house?)
- “I’ll always remember the river.” (What river?)

- “Yesterday was *the day*.” (What day?)
- “The 80s were a time.” (What kind of time?)

- “I don’t know the reason.” (The reason for/about what?)
- “Do you know the reason?” (What reason?)

When you remove a restrictive relative clause, the nouns are no longer identifiable and the sentences contain much less information, as you can see from the examples above. Instead, the listener or reader is left with questions.

Non-restrictive relative clauses

Non-restrictive relative clauses give us additional information about a noun that has already been identified, but this information is not essential for the sentence to make sense. Only two of the relative adverbs, *where* and *when*, can be used to introduce non-restrictive relative clauses; *why* cannot.

Note that non-restrictive relative clauses must be set apart from the rest of the sentence by commas. For example:

- “*Paris*, where I want to live, is the most beautiful city in the world.”
- “*The blue house on the corner*, where those kids are playing, is the house I want to buy.”

- “I love *casual Fridays*, when we get to wear jeans to work.”
- “*May*, when flowers bloom, is my favorite month of the year.”

In the examples above, the underlined relative clauses merely give extra information about the nouns; they do not define them. The sentences would still make sense even if the relative clauses were removed, which is how we know that we are dealing with non-restrictive relative clauses. For example:

- “Paris is the most beautiful city in the world.”

- “The blue house on the corner is the house I want to buy.”

- “I love casual Fridays.”

- “May is my favorite month of the year.”

Formality

Relative adverbs are used in daily speech and writing to take the place of the structure *preposition + which*. This structure is considered very formal and is usually only used in academic writing or particularly formal speech.

For example:

- “This is the house *in which* I was born.”
- “April 10th is the day *on which* I met my husband.”
- “Do you know the reason *for which* the sky is blue?”

These sentences all sound too formal for daily use. Instead, we usually use relative adverbs instead:

- “This is the house **where** I was born.”
- “April 10th is the day **when** I met my husband.”
- “Do you know the reason **why** the sky is blue?”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Relative adverbs are used to introduce ________.

a) nouns
b) adjectives
c) people
d) adjective clauses

2. Which of the following is **not** a relative adverb?

a) where
b) who
c) when
d) why

3. A restrictive relative clause includes ________.

a) essential information
b) extra information
c) non-essential information
d) a non-restrictive relative clause

4. Complete the following sentence:
“Monday, ________ I usually have the most work, is now my day off.”

a) that
b) where
c) when
d) why

5. Complete the following sentence:
“That’s ________ I haven’t called you for so long.”

a) that
b) where
c) when
d) why

6. Which sentence is punctuated **correctly**?”

a) “My brother’s house, where I used to spend a lot of time, was just sold.”
b) “My brother’s house where I used to spend a lot of time was just sold.”
c) “My brother’s house where I used, to spend a lot of time, was just sold.”
d) “My brother house where I used to spend, a lot of time was just sold.”

Adverbial Nouns

Definition

Adverbial nouns are nouns or noun phrases that function grammatically as adverbs to modify verbs and certain adjectives.

Modifying verbs

Adverbial nouns are sometimes referred to as **adverbial objectives**. This is because they hold a position normally occupied by a verb’s direct object, yet they act as an adverb to modify the verb with an aspect of time, distance, weight, age, or monetary value.

Time

- “I am leaving **tomorrow**.”

- “We walked **an hour** out of town.”
- “I’ll see you **next year**.”

Distance

- “I run **five miles** every day.”
- “I can barely see **a foot** in front of me in this fog.”

Weight

- “They are displaying a block of cheese that weighs **a ton**!”
- “I’m trying to lose **a few pounds** before the wedding.”

Age

- “She is *35 years* old.” (In this case, the adverbial noun phrase modifies the adjective *old*.)
- “This wine is aged **25 years**.”

Monetary value

- “This car only costs **$2,000**.”
- “That speeding ticket set me back **300 bucks**.”

Complementing certain adjectives

Certain adjectives, such as *worth* and *due*, are able to take nouns or noun phrases as complements when they are in a **predicative position**. For example:

- “This coat is only worth **a dollar**.”
- “I think Mary is due **an apology**.”

Some sources also consider the word *like* to be an adjective that can take a noun/noun phrase complement, as in:

- “He is very much like **your brother**.”

Other sources only consider it as a preposition in this capacity, which would make *like your brother* a prepositional phrase.

Likewise, *worth* and *due* are sometimes considered to be more like prepositions than adjectives when they function this way. However, there is not a clear agreement on the terminology that is most appropriate, because it is so unusual for nouns to be the complements of adjectives.

Finally, note that adverbial nouns are **not** the same as **attributive nouns** (also called **noun adjuncts**), which are used with another noun to form **compound nouns**.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following are **not** modified or complemented by adverbial nouns?

a) verbs
b) adjectives
c) adverbs
d) None of the above

2. Which of the following is **not** one of the ways verbs are modified by adverbial nouns?

a) To describe time
b) To describe distance
c) To describe weight
d) To describe manner

3. Identify the adverbial noun in the following sentence:
"I can't wait to start school this September in Canada."

a) school
b) this September
c) in Canada
d) None of the above

4. Identify the adverbial noun in the following sentence:
"She's going to be 20 next July."

a) going to
b) 20
c) next
d) next July

Regular and Irregular Adverbs Definition

Adverbs generally correspond to an adjective, so that when we want to apply the adjective's meaning to a verb (or to an adjective or another adverb), we have a straightforward way to do so. **Regular adverbs** are formed by adding "-ly" or some variation thereof onto the end of the adjective. Sometimes the adjective's spelling needs to be altered slightly to accommodate this, but the rules of doing so are fairly straightforward.

Irregular adverbs, on the other hand, are adverbs that are not formed from standard English spelling conventions. Because they do not follow the "rules," there is no trick to using them: you simply have to memorize them. Here is a table of the most common irregular adverbs and their adjectival counterparts:

Adjective	Irregular Adverb	Sources of Confusion
fast	fast	
hard	hard	*Hardly (ever)* is an adverb of frequency, meaning "almost never."
straight	straight	
lively	lively	*Lively* still exists as an adverb in phrases like "step lively." However, it is more often used in the adverbial prepositional phrase "in a lively manner."
late	late	*Lately* is a different adverb that means "recently."
daily	daily	
early	early	
friendly	no adverb	Can be used in the adverbial prepositional phrase "in a friendly manner."
timely	no adverb	Can be used in the adverbial prepositional phrase "in a friendly manner."

good	well	*Well* is the adverb form of **good**; it can also function as a **predicative adjective**.

First, let’s examine the normal rules for making **regular adverbs**, and then we’ll examine more closely the **irregular adverbs** above that do not follow these rules.

Regular adverbs

Regular adverbs are formed by taking an adjective and adding some form of the suffix “-ly.” Sometimes the spelling of the adjective changes to accommodate this suffix; sometimes the suffix itself must change. As with most spelling rules in English, though, there are exceptions even to these patterns. We’ll look at these rules individually, and highlight any exceptions to each.

Adjective + “-ly”

The most straightforward rule is to simply add “-ly” to the end of an adjective, without changing the spelling at all. This occurs when an adjective ends in a consonant (except for “-ic”) or a consonant + “-e” (except for “-le”). For example:

- “She is a **beautiful** singer.”
- “She sings *beautifully*.”

- “He is a **slow** walker.”
- “He walks *slowly*.”

- “This is the **last** item we need to discuss.”
- “*Lastly*, let’s discuss the impact on the environment.”

Adjectives ending in “-ic”

Sometimes the spelling of a word will have to change slightly so as to better accommodate the extra “-ly.” If the adjective ends in “-ic,” for instance, it will become “-ically”:

- “They are **enthusiastic** students.”
- “They work *enthusiastically*.”

- “There are some **drastic** differences between these.”

- “These are *drastically* different.”

The one exception to this rule is the adjective **public**, which becomes the adverb *publicly*.

Adjectives ending in “-y”

If the adjective ends in a “-y,” it is replaced with “-ily”:

- “The children are **happy** when they are playing.”
- “The children are playing *happily*.”

- “Why are you so **noisy** when you eat?”
- “Quit eating so *noisily*!”

Adjectives ending in “-le” and “-ue”

For adjectives ending in “-le” or “-ue,” the “e” on the end is dropped and is replaced with “-ly”:

- “He is a **terrible** golfer.”
- “He plays golf *terribly*.”

- “You will get what is **due** so long as you are **true** to your word."
- “It is *duly* noted that the defendant is *truly* remorseful.”

Irregular Adverbs

The majority of adverbs end in “-ly,” but as we will see, there are some irregular ones that need to be memorized.

Spelling doesn’t change

Fast is one of the irregular adverbs—the adjective and the adverb are the same. For example:

- “A Ferrari is a **fast** car.

- “He drives *fast*.”

Hard is another irregular adverb. If we say, “I work hardly,” it could impede understanding. The listener may think you mean, “I hardly work,” which has the opposite meaning (*hardly (ever)* is a frequency adverb and means “very rarely”). The correct use of *hard* as an adverb would simply be “I work *hard*.”

Other exceptions to the spelling rules include *straight, lively, late,* and *early,* which all have the same spelling whether they are used as **adjectives** or as *adverbs*. For example:

- “Draw a **straight** line.”
- “We drove *straight*.”

- “It was a **lively** game.”
- “Step *lively*,* everyone!”

- “I think I need to have an **early** night.”
- “I’m going to bed *early* tonight.”

Late vs. Lately

A common source of confusion is the proper use of the words “late” and “lately.” *Late*, as already mentioned, is both an adjective and an adverb. Lately, on the other hand, is only an adverb of time meaning “recently.” For example:

- “Why are you always **late**?” (adjective)
- “We arrived *late*.” (adverb)
- “I’ve been feeling unwell *lately*.” (adverb of time)
- **Incorrect**: “I hope the guests don’t arrive *lately*.”

Only adjectives

Timely and *friendly* are only adjectives. To use these as adverbs, we simply use them in an adverbial prepositional phrase, such as “in a ______ way/manner”:

- “Please arrive *in a **timely** manner*.”
- “He spoke to me *in a **friendly** way*.”

*Though *lively* still exists as an adverb in phrases like “step lively,” it is more often used in an adverbial prepositional phrase, such as:

- “The boys all played *in a **lively** manner*.”

Adverbs of frequency

Adverbs of frequency that deal with specific measures of time and end in “-ly” can function both as adjectives and adverbs. Examples of these include *yearly, weekly, daily*, and hourly. For instance:

- “It’s good to have a **daily** routine.” (adjective)
- “I make sure to exercise *daily*.” (adverb)

- “I want **weekly** updates, Jenkins!” (adjective)
- “I update the boss *weekly*.” (adverb)

Wrong vs. Wrongly

The adjective *wrong* can become the adverb *wrongly*, but we can use *wrong* as an irregular adverb as well—both are acceptable. However, *wrong* as an adverb **must** come after the verb if modifies, as in:

- “I guessed *wrong*.”
- “He filled out the form *wrong*.”

Wrongly, on the other hand, can be used either before or after the word it modifies:

- “He was *wrongly* accused.”
- “They judged *wrongly*.”

Good vs. Well

Good is an adjective used to describe a noun; *well* is the adverb derived from **good** and describes how you do something. For example:

✖ “I speak English *good*.” (incorrect)
✔ “I speak English *well*.” (correct)

✖ “I did *good* on the English exam.” (incorrect)
✔ “I did *well* on the English exam.” (correct)

“I speak English good” is incorrect, as we need to use an adverb when describing a verb. In the second example, “I did good” is incorrect because we need an adverb to describe how the speaker did on the exam. The phrase “do good” is especially tricky, because it can also mean “to do that which is good or virtuous.” (*Good* in this sense is a noun acting as the object of the verb.)

Adjectives after linking verbs

It is important to remember that linking verbs (such as *be*, *become*, *get*, and the sense verbs *feel*, *taste*, *look*, *sound*, *smell*, and *seem*) are followed by **predicative adjectives**, not adverbs. For example:

- “You seem **happy**.”
- “She sounds **English**.” (An opinion based on her voice.)

- “We became **tired**.”
- “You look **good**.”
- “You look **well**.”

Notice that the last two examples are both correct. Not only is *well* an adverb, but it also functions as an adjective. Its opposite adjective is *ill*, while the opposite of *good* is *bad*. When we say, “You look good,” we are referring to the person’s physical appearance. If, on the other hand, we say, “You look well,” we are referring to the health or well-being of the person. To learn more about adjectives that follow linking verbs, as well as the “good/well” distinction, see the chapter on **Predicative Adjectives**.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What is the **most common** way to make an adverb from an adjective?

a) Use the adjective in the prepositional phrase “in a ______ manner”
b) Use the adjective before a verb
c) Add “-ly” to the end of the adjective
d) Add “-ically” to the end of the adjective

2. What is the irregular adverb of the adjective **late**?

a) late
b) lately
c) in a late manner
d) latterly

3. How does the usage of *wrong* as an adverb differ from *wrongly*?

a) *Wrong* must come before the verb it modifies, while *wrongly* must come after
b) *Wrong* must come after the verb it modifies, while *wrongly* must come before
c) *Wrong* must come before the verb it modifies, while *wrongly* can come before or after
d) *Wrong* must come after the verb it modifies, while *wrongly* can come before or after

4. How are adjectives ending in “-le” or “-ue” changed to become adverbs?

a) By adding “-ly” to the end
b) By replacing the “e” at the end with “-ly”

c) By replacing the “e” at the end with “-ily”
d) By replacing the “e” at the end with “-ically”

5. Which of the following is an irregular adverb?
a) lastly
b) publicly
c) early
d) lately

6. Which of the following is **not** an irregular adverb?
a) lively
b) friendly
c) early
d) hourly

Degrees of Comparison

Definition

Just like adjectives, adverbs have **comparative** and **superlative degrees**; adverbs in their basic forms are sometimes known as being in the **positive degree**.

Comparative adverbs express a higher (or lower) degree of how an action is performed, usually in comparison to another person or thing.

Superlative adverbs, on the other hand, are used to identify the highest (or lowest) degree of how an action is performed.

Forming the comparative and superlative degrees

Adverbs are commonly categorized in three ways: one-syllable adverbs, “-ly” adverbs, and irregular adverbs. We create the comparative and superlative forms of each category in different ways.

One-syllable adverbs

One-syllable adverbs are formed into comparatives by adding the suffix “-er” to the end of the word. The superlative form is created by adding the suffix “-est” to the end.

Adverb (positive degree)	Comparative degree	Superlative degree
fast	faster	fastest
hard	harder	hardest
high	higher	highest
late	later*	latest*
long	longer	longest
low	lower	lowest
wide	wider*	widest*

(*Spelling note: When the adverb already ends in the letter “e,” simply add “-r” or “-st” to the end.)

Adverbs ending in “-ly”

Many adverbs are formed by adding “-ly” to the end of an adjective. If an adverb has been created according to this pattern, we simply use the words *more* and *less* to create the comparative degree, and we use the word *most* or *least* to make the superlative degree. For example:

Adjective	Adverb (positive degree)	Comparative degree	Superlative degree
careful	carefully	more/less carefully	most/least carefully
efficient	efficiently	more/less efficiently	most/least efficiently
happy	happily	more/less happily	most/least happily
horrible	horribly	more/less horribly	

			most/least horribly
recent	recently	more/less recently	most/least recently
sad	sadly	more/less sadly	most/least sadly
strange	strangely	more/less strangely	most/least strangely

Irregular adverbs

Of course, the rules we’ve just looked at have some exceptions, which are known as **irregular verbs**. Below are the degrees of comparison for some of the most common irregular adverbs:

Irregular adverb (positive degree)	Comparative degree	Superlative degree
badly	worse	worst
early	earlier	earliest
far	farther/further	farthest/furthest*
little	less	least
well	better	best

(*Although *farther*/*farthest* and *further*/*furthest* are often used interchangeably, there are differences between them. In American English, *farther/farthest* is preferred when comparing physical distances, and *further/furthest* is preferred when comparing figurative distances; in British English, *further/furthest* is preferred for both uses.)

To learn more about irregular adverbs, see the chapter section covering **Regular and Irregular Adverbs**.

Adverbs with two forms

There are a few adverbs that have two generally accepted forms. In these cases, they also have two commonly used comparative and superlative degrees. Some of the most prevalent of these exceptions are:

Adverb (positive degree)	Comparative degree	Superlative degree
cheap ***or*** cheaply	cheaper ***or*** more/less cheaply	cheapest ***or*** most/least cheaply
loud ***or*** loudly	louder ***or*** more/less loudly	loudest ***or*** most/least loudly
quick ***or*** quickly	quicker ***or*** more/less quickly	quickest ***or*** most/least quickly
slow ***or*** slowly	slower ***or*** more/less slowly	slowest ***or*** most/least slowly

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following suffixes is used to shift a one-syllable adverb to the **superlative degree**?

a) -ed
b) -er
c) -est
d) -en

2. Which of the following pairs of words is used to shift an “-ly” adverb to the **comparative degree**?

a) more/less
b) most/least
c) much/many
d) most/less

3. What is the **comparative form** of the irregular adverb *well*?

a) good
b) better

c) worse
d) best

4. What is the **superlative form** of the adverb *slowly*?
a) slower
b) slowest
c) more/less slowly
d) most/least slowly
e) A & C
f) B & D

Comparative Adverbs

Definition

Comparative adverbs, like **comparative adjectives**, are used to describe differences and similarities between two things. While comparative adjectives describe similarities and differences between two **nouns** (people, places, or objects), comparative adverbs make comparisons between two **verbs**—that is, they describe how, when, how often, or to what degree an action is done. For example:

- "John is **faster** than Tim." (comparative adjective)
- "John *runs* **faster** than Tim." (comparative adverb)

- "John is **more careful** than Tim in his work." (comparative adjective)
- "John *works* **more carefully** than Tim." (comparative adverb)

Comparative adverbs and comparative adjectives sometimes have the same form (as in ***faster*** above); other times, they have different forms (as in ***careful/carefully***). However, even when the forms are the same, we can tell the difference between the two by looking at what they modify. While the comparative adjectives describe differences between the physical or personal characteristics of John and Tim, the comparative adverbs describe differences in how they carry out actions (*run, work*).

Forming Comparative Adverbs

We form comparative adverbs by adding the ending "-er" to the base adverb, or by adding the word *more* (or *less*) before the base adverb. There are simple rules that tell us which method is correct.

One syllable + “-er”

In general, when the adverb has only one syllable, we add “-er” to the end of it. The table below shows some of the most common one-syllable adverbs and their comparative forms:

Adverb (base form)	Comparative Adverb
fast	**faster**
hard	**harder**
high	**higher**
late	**later**
long	**longer**
low	**lower**
wide	**wider***

(*Spelling note: When the adverb already ends in the letter “e,” just add “-r,” not “-er.”)

More +“-ly” adverb

Many adverbs are formed by adding “-ly” to the end of an adjective. If an adverb has been created according to this pattern, we insert the word *more* or *less* to form the comparative. For example:

Adjective	Adverb	Comparative Adverb
careful	carefully	**more/less carefully**
efficient	efficiently	**more/less efficiently**
happy	happily	**more/less happily**
horrible	horribly	**more/less horribly**

recent	recently	**more/less recently**
sad	sadly	**more/less sadly**
strange	strangely	**more/less strangely**

Irregular comparative adverbs

Of course, there are some exceptions to the rules we've just looked at. These are some of the most common irregular comparative adverbs:

Adverb	Comparative Adverb
badly	**worse**
early	**earlier**
far	**farther/further***
little	**less**
well	**better**

(*Although *farther* and *further* are often used interchangeably, there are differences between these two forms. In American English, *farther* is preferred when comparing physical distances and *further* when comparing figurative distances; in British English, *further* is preferred for both.)

To learn more about irregular adverbs, see the chapter section covering **Regular and Irregular Adverbs**.

Comparative adverbs with two forms

There are a few adverbs that have two generally accepted forms. In these cases, they also have two commonly used comparative forms. Some of the most prevalent of these exceptions are:

Adverb	Comparative Adverb
cheap/cheaply	**cheaper/more cheaply**

loud/loudly	**louder/more loudly**
quick/quickly	**quicker/more quickly**
slow/slowly	**slower/more slowly**

Although traditional grammarians often consider these adverb forms without “-ly” to be incorrect, they are commonly used in modern English. However, they are still considered less formal than their “-ly” equivalents.

Using Comparative Adverbs

Now that we have seen how to *form* comparative adverbs, let’s look at how they are used within the context of affirmative, negative, and interrogative statements.

Affirmative statements

We can describe change or differences between two things within one sentence, using the word *than*. For example:

- “An airplane moves **faster** *than* a car.”
- “I eat **more neatly** *than* my sister.”
- “I work **more carefully** *than* I used to.”

Note that while the first two examples describe differences between how two things or people carry out an action, the third example describes a *change* in how one person has carried out an action. Also, in each of the examples, the person or thing that does the action to a greater degree comes first in the sentence. We can also use the opposite adverbs to achieve the same meaning in a different order:

- “A car moves **slower/more slowly** *than* an airplane.”
- “My sister eats **more sloppily** *than* me.”
- “I used to work **less carefully** *than* I do now.”

Negative Statements

It’s easy to form negative statements with comparative adverbs. We just follow the regular patterns for negatives: if the statement contains an **auxiliary** or **modal** verb, or if it uses a form of the linking verb *be*, we insert the word *not* (either in its full or its contracted form). For example:

- “My brother can run **faster** than me.” (affirmative)
- “My brother *can’t* run **faster** than me.” (negative)

- “Sam is learning to read **more quickly** than Jen.” (affirmative)
- “Sam *is not* learning to read **more quickly** than Jen.” (negative)

If a statement contains only a main verb, we add the auxiliary verb *do/does/did* and *not*. For example:

- “Tom sings **more beautifully** than Sam.” (affirmative)
- “Tom *does not* sing **more beautifully** than Sam.” (negative)

- “Cats hide **better** than dogs.” (affirmative)
- “Cats *don’t* hide better than dogs.” (negative)

Interrogatives

We form **interrogatives** with comparative adverbs using normal question formation. For example:

- “*Did you* always run **faster** than your brother?”
- “*Has she* ever performed **better** than you on a test?”
- “*Can monkeys* jump **higher** than cats?”

We can also ask questions by placing a **question word** at the beginning of the sentence, and adding the two people or things at the end. For example:

- “*Who* runs **faster**, you or your brother?”
- “*Who* performs **better** on tests, you or Jen?”
- “*Which* animal can jump **higher**, a cat or a monkey?”

Note that in this type of question, we do not include the word *than*. We tend to use *than* with a question word if the second person or thing is unknown, as in:

- “*Who* runs **faster** than you?”
- “*Who* performs **better** on tests than Jen?”
- “*What* animal can jump **higher** than a monkey?”

Omitting one of the nouns

Often, we don’t need to explicitly mention both of the people or things that we’re comparing because it’s already obvious from the context. If the speaker already knows who or what we’re talking about, we can omit one of the nouns.

If we do this, we also omit the word *than*. For example:

- Speaker A: "Who swims **faster**, you or your brother?"
- Speaker B: "My brother does, but I can run **faster**."

Speaker B doesn't need to say "than my brother" at the end, because it's already clear from the context.

Gradability

We can only make comparisons using **gradable adverbs**, meaning adverbs that are able to move up and down on a scale of intensity. The majority of adverbs are gradable. For example, *quickly* is gradable because a person can run *quickly, very quickly*, or *extremely quickly*.

As with comparative adjectives, we can state differences in scale by using words and phrases like *a bit, a little (bit), much, a lot*, and *far* before the comparative adverb. For example:

- "Tom can run *much* **faster** than his brother."
- "Monkeys jump *a lot* **higher** than cats."
- "Sam drives *a little (bit)* **more carefully** than Tom."

Not all adverbs are gradable in nature. For example, *absolutely, completely, totally* and *utterly* are all **ungradable adverbs**. These are used to modify ungradable adjectives, and they cannot move up and down on a scale. They do not have a comparative form, and therefore cannot be used to draw comparisons.

Expressing equality and inequality using *as* … *as*

Another way of expressing similarities, differences, or changes with comparative adverbs is by using the structure "*as … as*." To describe two things as equal, we use the construction *as + adverb + as*. For example:

- "I still run **as *slowly* as** I used to."
- "Tom always drives **as *carefully* as** you'd want him to."
- "Sam finished **as *quickly* as** his brother."

We can use the same construction to say that two actions are unequal by adding an auxiliary verb and the word *not*.

- I *don’t* run **as *slowly* as** I used to.”
- “Tom *doesn’t* always drive **as *carefully* as** you’d want him to.”
- “Sam *didn’t* finish **as *quickly* as** his brother.”

Finally, we can inquire as to whether two actions are equal by adding the auxiliary verbs *do/does* or *did* to the beginning of the sentence and forming a question:

- “Do you still run **as slowly as** you used to?”
- “Does Tom drive **as carefully as** you’d want him to?”
- “Did Sam finish **as quickly as** his brother?”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following facts about comparative adverbs is **correct**?

a) They always take a different form than a comparative adjective.
b) They always take the same form as a comparative adjective.
c) They sometimes take the same form as a comparative adjective.
d) They never take the same form as a comparative adjective.

2. Which of these adverbs has an **irregular** comparative form?

a) fast
b) badly
c) carefully
d) sadly

3. Which of these is an **incorrect** comparative adverb?

a) more beautifully
b) more quickly
c) more carefully
d) more higher

4. Which of the following sentences is **correct**?

a) “He runs fast as his brother.”
b) “He runs as fast as his brother.”
c) “He runs faster as his brother.”
d) “He faster runs as his brother.”

5. Which of the following sentences is **correct**?

a) “She studies hardlier than her sister.”
b) “She studies harder than her sister.”
c) “She studies harder as her sister.”
d) “She studies hard as her sister.”

Superlative Adverbs

Definition

Superlative adverbs, like **superlative adjectives**, are used to describe differences among three or more people or things. But while superlative adjectives describe the highest (or lowest) degree of an attribute among a multiple **nouns** (people, places, or objects), superlative adverbs describe the action of a person or thing compared to that of several others—that is, they describe how, when, how often, or to what degree an action is done. For example:

- “John is **the fastest** runner of the group.” (superlative adjective)
- “John *runs* **the fastest** of the group.” (superlative adverb)

- “Out of all the students in the class, Sally is the **most careful** with her work.” (superlative adjective)
- “Out of all the students in the class, Sally *works* **most carefully**.” (superlative adverb)

Superlative adverbs and superlative adjectives sometimes have the same form (as in ***fastest*** above); other times, they have different forms (as in ***careful/carefully*** above). However, even when the forms are the same, we can tell the difference between the two by looking at what they modify. While the superlative adjectives describe the characteristics of John and Sally, the superlative adverbs describe how they carry out actions (*run*, *work*).

Forming Superlative Adverbs

We form superlative adverbs by adding the ending “-est” to the base adverb, or by adding the word *most* before the base adverb. There are simple rules that tell us which is the correct method.

One syllable + “-est”

In general, when the adverb has only one syllable, we add “-est” to the end of it. The table below shows some of the most common one-syllable adverbs and their superlative forms:

Adverb (base form)	Superlative Adverb
fast	fastest
hard	hardest
high	highest
late	latest
long	longest
low	lowest
wide	widest*

(*Spelling note: When the adverb already ends in the letter “e,” just add “-st,” not “-est.”)

“-ly” adverbs

Many adverbs are formed by adding “-ly” to the end of an adjective. If an adverb has been created according to this pattern, we add the word *most* or *least* to make the superlative form(s). For example:

Adjective	Adverb	Superlative Adverb
careful	carefully	most/least carefully
efficient	efficiently	most/least efficiently
happy	happily	most/least happily
horrible	horribly	most/least horribly
recent	recently	most/least recently

sad	sadly	most/least sadly
strange	strangely	most/least strangely

Irregular superlative adverbs

Of course, there are some exceptions to the rules we’ve just looked at. These are some of the most common irregular superlative adverbs:

Irregular Adverb	**Irregular Superlative Adverb**
badly	worst
early	earliest
far	farthest/furthest*
little	least
well	best

(*Although *farthest* and *furthest* are often used interchangeably, there are differences between these two forms. In American English, *farthest* is preferred when comparing physical distances, and *furthest* is preferred when comparing figurative distances; in British English, *furthest* is preferred for both.)

To learn more about irregular adverbs, see the chapter section covering **Regular and Irregular Adverbs**.

Superlative adverbs with two forms

There are a few adverbs that have two generally accepted forms. In these cases, they also have two commonly used superlative forms. Some of the most prevalent of these exceptions are:

Adverb	**Superlative Adverb**
cheap ***or*** cheaply	cheapest ***or*** most/least cheaply
loud ***or*** loudly	loudest ***or*** most/least loudly

quick ***or*** quickly	quickest ***or*** most/least quickly
slow ***or*** slowly	slowest ***or*** most/least slowly

Although traditional grammarians often consider these adverb forms without "-ly" to be incorrect, they are commonly used in modern English. However, they are still considered less formal than their "-ly" equivalents.

Using Superlative Adverbs

We usually use superlative adjectives when describing an action of someone or something among a group of several others, either in a collective group or among several individuals.

Superlative adverbs come after the verb in a sentence, and they are almost always preceded by the word *the*. For example:

- "Cars and motorcycles can go fast, but an airplane moves **the fastest**."
- "I eat **the most neatly** among my siblings."
- "She works **the least carefully** in her class."

Omitting the group of comparison

When we use superlatives, it is very common to omit the group that something or someone is being compared to because that group is implied by a previous sentence. For example:

- "My brothers are all fast swimmers. John swims **the fastest**, though."

We can also identify a superlative attribute of a subject's action compared to itself in other contexts or points in time. In this case, we do not have another group to identify, and we generally do **not** use the word *the*. For example:

- "I work **best** by myself." (compared to when other people are involved)
- "The engine runs **most smoothly** after it has warmed up for a while." (compared to when the engine is cold)
- "Flowers bloom **most beautifully** in the spring." (compared to the other seasons)

Expressing the lowest degree

As we’ve seen, “-ly” adverbs can either take *most* or *least* to indicate the highest and lowest degrees of comparison. For example:

- “Though he performed **the least compellingly** among the other actors on stage, he was **the most authentically** dressed.”

Irregular (non-“ly”) adverbs, on the other hand, have only one superlative form that expresses the highest degree of its characteristic. When we want to express the lowest quality of an irregular adverb, we could technically just use the word *least* before its basic form, as in:

- “John runs **the fastest** in his class, but he swims **the least fast**.”

However, this construction is rather awkward, and it is best just to use another superlative adverb with the opposite meaning, as in:

- “John runs **the fastest** in his class, but he swims **the slowest**.”

Most as an intensifier

We often find the adverb *most* being used as an **intensifier** of other adverbs, especially in formal speech or writing. Rather than indicating a superlative adverb (i.e., in comparison to others in a group), it simply adds intensity to the word, having approximately the same meaning as the adverb *very*. For example:

- “You sang **most beautifully**, Jack.”
- “The play was **most tastefully** performed.”

We can see in the above examples that *most* is not identifying the subsequent adverbs as being of the highest degree among other people or things—it simply intensifies their meaning.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Superlative adverbs describe the highest or lowest degree of how an action is performed among a group of ___________ people or things.

a) Two
b) Two or three
c) Three or more
d) Five or more

2. Which of the following facts about superlative adverbs is **correct**?

a) They always take a different form than a superlative adjective.
b) They always take the same form as a superlative adjective.
c) They sometimes take the same form as a superlative adjective.
d) They never take the same form as a superlative adjective.

3. Which of these adverbs has an **irregular** superlative form?

a) fast
b) badly
c) carefully
d) sadly

4. Which of these is an **incorrect** superlative adverb?

a) most beautifully
b) most quickly
c) least carefully
d) least higher

5. Which of the following sentences is **correct**?

a) "He runs fast of all his brothers."
b) "He runs the fastest of all his brothers."
c) "He runs faster of all his brothers."
d) "He fastest runs of all his brothers."

Order of Adverbs

Definition

Because **adverbs** are used to modify verbs, adjectives, other adverbs, phrases, clauses, or even entire sentences, they are able to function nearly anywhere in the sentence, depending on their type and what it is they are modifying.

If we use more than one adverb to describe a verb, though, there is a general order in which the different categories of adverbs should appear—this is known as the **order of adverbs** (sometimes called the **royal order of adverbs**):

1. Manner

2. Place

3. Frequency

4. Time

5. Purpose

Of course, it is uncommon to use five adverbs in a row to modify the same word, but if a sentence uses two or three, then it is best to follow this order to avoid sounding unnatural.

First, let’s briefly summarize the different categories of adverbs, and then we’ll look at how we can use them together in sentences.

(*Note: For the sake of conciseness, both single-word adverbs and adverbial phrases will be referred to together as “adverbs” throughout this section.)

Categories of Adverbs

Adverbs of Manner

Adverbs of manner tell us how something happens, how someone does something, or give character to a description. They are usually formed by adding “-ly” to an adjective, as in:

- “She sings **beautifully**.”
- “He walks **slowly**.”
- “The children are playing **happily**.”

If an adjective already ends in “-ly,” we can give it an adverbial function by simply using it in the **prepositional phrase** “in a ______ manner”:

- “They played *in a **lively** manner*.”
- “Please arrive **in a *timely* manner**.”

Adverbs of Place

Adverbs of place tell us about an aspect of location associated with the action of a verb, specifying the direction, distance, movement, or position involved in the action.

For example:

- “He kicked the ball **into the field**.”
- “Let’s drive **down** a bit farther.”
- “Everyone gazed **upwards** at the meteor shower.”

- “I’ve looked **everywhere** for my book.”

Adverbs of Frequency

Adverbs of frequency (sometimes called **frequency adverbs**) tell us *how often* something happens or is the case. They are sometimes used to describe **definite** frequency, as in:

- “I run eight miles **daily**.”
- “**Every year**, our office holds a big raffle for charity.”

More often, though, these adverbs are used to describe **indefinite** frequency. For example:

- “We **usually** go to the movies on Sundays.”
- “Bethany **always** runs late for work in the morning.”

Adverbs of Time

Adverbs of time tell us *when* or *for how long* something happens or is the case. They are similar to but distinct from adverbs of **frequency**.

For example:

- “I’m going to the movies **tomorrow**.”
- “**Next year**, I’m going to run for president.”
- “We’ve been dating **for 10 years**, and not once has he proposed!”
- “Are you **still** working on that project?”

Adverbs of Purpose

Adverbs of purpose (sometimes called **adverbs of reason**) tell us why something happens or is the case. They are generally made up of **conjunctive adverbs**, **prepositional** or **infinitive phrases**, or **adverbial clauses**. For example:

- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play; **as a result**, she didn’t recommend it.”
- “The clothing is handcrafted and **hence** *expensive*.”
- “***Given* the huge amount of public interest**, they are extending the program for another three months.”
- “I went to the store **to buy some milk**.”

- “I am exhausted **because I was working all night**.”

Using multiple adverbs

Remember, the **order of adverbs** is *manner, place, frequency, time,* and *purpose*.

As we already noted, it is unusual to find several adverbs consecutively modifying the same word. However, if we were to make a sentence with all five categories of adverbs together, it might look like this:

- “I have to run **quickly** (*manner*) **down the street** (*place*) **each morning** (*frequency*) **after breakfast** (*time*) **in order to catch my bus to school** (*purpose*).”

Even though the string of adverbs is unusually long, the sentence still sounds smooth and logical because the order is correct. Now let’s try rearranging the order of the adverbs:

- “I have to run **each morning** (*frequency*) **quickly** (*manner*) **after breakfast** (*time*) **in order to catch my bus to school** (*purpose*) **down the street** (*place*).”

By changing the order of the adverbs, we’ve actually changed the meaning of the sentence, or at least made original meaning nearly incomprehensible. This is especially apparent with the adverb of purpose *in order to catch my bus to school*: by placing it **before** the adverb of place, it now sounds as though it’s the school that’s *down the street*. There is not such a drastic shift in meaning for the adverbs of frequency, manner, and time, but they still sound awkward and unnatural in the new order.

When we *can* change the order

There is a great deal of flexibility regarding where in a sentence an adverb can appear, regardless of its content and the rules of order that we looked at above. While the **order of adverbs** is useful to keep in mind, it is a guide, rather than a law.

Introductory adverbs

As you may have noticed when we looked at the different **categories of adverbs**, adverbs can appear in different places in a sentence. When an adverb is used at the beginning a sentence, it results in a great deal of emphasis. Depending on the sentence, we can do this with nearly any category of adverb regardless of the **order of adverbs**—although we must always be careful that doing so does not make the sentence awkward or alter its meaning.

For example, let's look at the example sentence again, this time slightly shifting where in the sentence the adverbs appear:

- "**In order to catch my bus to school** (*purpose*), I have to run **quickly** (*manner*) **down the street** (*place*) **each morning** (*frequency*) **after breakfast** (*time*)."

Placing the adverb of purpose at the beginning of the sentence doesn't alter the meaning in any way—instead, it gives the adverb extra emphasis and highlights the purpose of the entire sentence.

In this particular sentence, we can move the adverb of frequency to the beginning of the sentence as well:

- "**Each morning** (*frequency*), I have to run **quickly** (*manner*) **down the street** (*place*) **after breakfast** (*time*) **in order to catch my bus to school** (*purpose*)."

We can also do this with the adverb of time, but in this instance it has to be moved with the adverb of frequency; otherwise, the sentence sounds awkward. For example, compare these two sentence constructions:

✔ "**Each morning** (*frequency*) **after breakfast** (*time*), I have to run **quickly** (*manner*) **down the street** (*place*) **in order to catch my bus to school** (*purpose*)." (correct)

✖ "**After breakfast** (*time*), I have to run **quickly** (*manner*) **down the street** (*place*) **each morning** (*frequency*) **in order to catch my bus to school** (*purpose*)." (incorrect)

We can see that the adverb of time sounds awkward when it is placed by itself at the beginning of this particular sentence.

Adverbs of manner and place can also sometimes go at the beginning of the sentence, but we have to be careful with how the sentence sounds as a whole. For example, neither would work well at the beginning of the example above because the emphasis placed on them would sound unnatural as a result. However, in a different sentence, this emphasis might be suitable. For example:

- "**On my father's ranch** (*place*), I **often** (*frequency*) helped gather the animals **at the end of the day** (*time*)."
- "**Impatiently** (*manner*), I waited **by the bank** (*place*) **for my father to arrive** (*purpose*)."

Short vs. long adverbs

Generally speaking, we also tend to put adverbs that are shorter and more concise before those that are longer, regardless of which category they belong to (though we must make sure that the information's meaning doesn't change as a result). For example:

• "I lived **with my parents** (*place*) **to save money** (*purpose*) **while I working on my Ph.D.** (*time*)."

• "He dances **every night** (*frequency*) **in the most extraordinary way** (manner)."

Multiple adverbs of the same category

When we use multiple adverbs of the same category to modify the same verb, we order them based on how specific the information is that they provide. For example:

• "**On my father's ranch** (*place*), I **often** (frequency) helped gather the animals **at the end of the day** (*specific time*) **when I was younger** (*non-specific time*)."

• "I lived **at home** (*more specific place*) **with my parents** (*less specific place*) **to save money** (*purpose*) **while I working on my Ph.D.** (*time*)."

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is an adverb of **manner**?

a) in my mother's yard
b) in a beautiful way
c) in a few hours
d) given the way he talks

2. Which of the following is an adverb of purpose?

a) to be more healthy
b) for a while
c) infuriatingly
d) seldom

3. Complete this sentence using correct adverb order: “He sang beautifully _______ every night.”

a) to impress his parents
b) for a week
c) at the opera
d) last year

4. Choose the sentence that uses the **most** correct order of adverbs:

a) “I must drive to the store after we’re finished with dinner to pick up a few things for breakfast.”
b) “I must after we’re finished with dinner drive to the store to pick up a few things for breakfast.
c) “After we’re finished with dinner, I must drive to the store to pick up a few things for breakfast.”
d) “To pick up a few things for breakfast, I must drive to the store after we’re finished with dinner.”
e) A & C
f) B & D

5. Choose the sentence that uses the **most** correct order of adverbs:

a) “I don’t want to go to work again tomorrow.”
b) “Again I don’t want to go to work tomorrow.”
c) “I don’t want to go to work tomorrow again.”
d) “Tomorrow, I don’t want to go to work again.”

Prepositions

Definition

Prepositions are used to express the relationship of a noun or pronoun (or another grammatical element functioning as a noun) to the rest of the sentence. The noun or pronoun that is connected by the preposition is known as the **object of the preposition**.

Some common prepositions are *in, on, for, to, of, with,* and *about*, though there are many others.

Prepositional Phrases

Prepositions and their objects together form **prepositional phrases**, which can function as either adjectives or (more commonly) adverbs.

For example:

- “There is a film ***at*** **noon** we could see.” (adjectival, modifying the noun *film*)
- “He hit the nail ***with*** **a hammer**.” (adverbial, modifying the verb *hit*)

A prepositional phrase always contains at least a preposition and its object (a noun or pronoun), but it can also contain modifiers that add additional meaning to the object. These can even be other prepositional phrases functioning as adjectives. For example:

- “He arrived to school ***in*** **a red car**.”
- “We keep the lawnmower ***in*** **the shed** ***out*** **back**.”

Adjective complements

Occasionally, adverbial prepositions are used to modify **predicative adjectives** to complete or elaborate upon their meaning. When they are used in this way, they function as **adjective complements**. For example:

- “Megan was afraid ***of*** **thunderstorms**.”
- “Philip is upset ***about*** **what was said**.”
- “We are very pleased ***with*** **the number of donations we received**.”

Choosing the appropriate preposition

Common Prepositional Errors

Prepositions can be very difficult to navigate because many of them are used to express multiple kinds of relationships, and it’s easy to use one in the wrong context. For example:

✖ “I had breakfast ***with*** **cereal and milk**.” (incorrect)

✔ “I had cereal and milk ***for*** **breakfast**.” (correct)

The first sentence is a common error. It implies that you, the cereal, and the milk all had breakfast together. You can have breakfast with your friends or your family, but not with cereal and milk. However, we can use *with* to show a connection between cereal and milk, as in:

✔ “I had cereal ***with*** **milk** ***for*** **breakfast**.”

Another similar error is:

✖ “I go to work ***with*** **my car**.”

✔ “I go to work ***by*** **car**.”

In the first sentence, it implies that you and your car go to work together. You can go to work with a person, but when speaking about a means of transportation, we often use the preposition *by*. If the object is modified by a possessive determiner, we can also use the preposition *in*, as in:

✔ “I go to work ***in*** **my car**.”

When choosing the appropriate preposition in a sentence, we must consider their various **categories** as well as what the prepositional phrase is going to modify.

Categories of prepositions

Prepositions can be broadly divided into eight categories: *time, place, direction or movement, agency, instrument or device, reason or purpose, connection*, and *origin*.

The following table highlights the most common **categories of prepositions** and how they are used to form **adjectival** or **adverbial** prepositional phrases in a sentence:

Category	Preposition	Example sentences
Time	at, in, on, for, during, since, by, until, before, after, to, past	• “There is a film ***at*** **noon** we could see.” (adjectival) • “We’re meeting him ***in*** **an hour**.” (adverbial)
Place	at, in, on, by/near/close to, next to/beside, between, behind, in front of, above/over, below/under	• “The cat ***on*** **the roof** was hissing at us.” (adjectival) • “Try looking ***behind*** **the shed**.” (adverbial)
Direction or Movement	to, from, over, under, along, around, across, through, into, out of, toward(s), away from, onto, off, up, down	• “The house ***down*** **the road** is being sold.” (adjectival) • “They drove ***across*** **the**

		country.” (adverbial)
Agency	by, with	• “The book ***by*** **the famous author** is a big hit.” (adjectival) • “Her heart is filled ***with*** **emotion**.” (adverbial)
Instrument or Device	by, with, on	• “The journey ***by*** **boat** is long and arduous.” (adjectival) • “He hit the nail ***with*** **a hammer**.” (adverbial)
Reason or Purpose	for, through, because of, on account of, from	• “I have a separate computer ***for*** **work**.” (adjectival) • “They left early ***because of*** **the storm**.” (adverbial)
Connection	of, to, with	• “A well-written cover letter ***to*** **employers** helps your chances of being hired.” (adjectival) • “I think she decided to go ***with*** **Victor**.” (adverbial)
Origin	from, of	• “Tom is ***of*** **German descent**.” (adjectival) • “We started our trip ***from*** **Italy**.” (adverbial)

Notice that many prepositions fall under two or more categories. To determine what type of preposition is being used in a sentence, you must look closely at the context and what the prepositional phrase is modifying. Remember that prepositional phrases can be used **with verbs**, **with nouns**, and **with adjectives**.

Continue on to the rest of the sections in this chapter to learn more about how and when prepositions are (and are not) used.

Prepositions vs. Infinitives

The word *to* is a very common preposition, used to express time, direction, and connection. *To* is also used, however, as a **particle** to introduce the **infinitive form** of verbs—e.g., *to run*, *to play*, *to think*, *to be*, etc.

For example:

- "I often ride my bicycle ***to*** **work**." (preposition of direction)
- "I often ride my bicycle ***to*** **stay healthy**." (infinitive)

Because they share the same introductory word, it's easy to mistake one for the other. Just remember that **infinitives** always use the word *to* with the **base** or **bare** form of a verb, while the preposition *to* is always followed by a noun, pronoun, or a grammatical element functioning as a noun.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is the primary function of a preposition?

a) To describe the characteristics of a noun or pronoun
b) To describe the relationship of a noun or pronoun to another part of the sentence
c) To introduce a dependent clause
d) To connect clauses together in a sentence

2. A **prepositional phrase** must contain at least which of the following?

a) A preposition and a noun
b) A preposition and a pronoun
c) A preposition and an adjective
d) Both A and B
e) Either A or B

3. Which of the following is the term for a prepositional phrase that completes the meaning of an **adjective**?

a) Adjective complement
b) Adjective modifier
c) Adverbial complement
d) Adverbial modifier

4. Which of the following is **not** one of the main categories of prepositions?

a) Time
b) Condition
c) Direction
d) Purpose

Prepositional Phrases

Definition

A prepositional phrase is made up of at least a **preposition** and its **object**, which can be a noun, pronoun, or a noun phrase. Often times, the object will have a modifier or modifiers (such as **adjectives**, **noun adjuncts**, etc.) that appear between it and the preposition. These specify or describe the object, but, unlike prepositions, they do not serve to connect the object grammatically to the rest of the sentence.

Examples

- **on the ground** — *On* describes the location in relation to *the ground*.
- **of the bedroom** — *Of* specifies that whatever is being discussed is particular to *the bedroom*.
- **down the dark alley** — *Down* describes the direction of movement in relation to *alley*, while the adjective *dark* is a modifier specifying that the alley is not well lit.
- **into an empty parking lot** — *To* describes the direction of movement in relation to the **compound noun** *parking lot*. The adjective *empty* is a modifier specifying that the parking lot doesn't have people or cars in it.
- **because of the nasty weather** — *Because of* is a compound preposition describing the reason why something happened—in this case, *the nasty weather*.

Prepositional phrases can behave in two ways in a sentence: as an adjective modifying a noun, or as an adverb modifying a verb, adjective, or adverb.

Adjectival Prepositional Phrases

When a prepositional phrase modifies a noun, pronoun, gerund, or noun phrase (all of which function grammatically as nouns), it is considered to function as an adjective within the sentence. We call these **adjectival prepositional phrases**, or sometimes just **adjective prepositional phrases**.

Adjectival prepositional phrases always follow the noun they are modifying. And, like an adjective, this kind of prepositional phrase answers one or more of the following questions about the noun:

- Which one?
- What kind?
- How many or how much?

Examples

- “The cat **on the shed** is black.”

On the shed is a prepositional phrase—*on* is a preposition describing the position of its object, *the shed*. The prepositional phrase is adjectival because it modifies the noun *cat* (which it follows directly in the sentence) by answering the question “Which cat?”

- “I would like to buy some flowers **in a glass vase**.”

The prepositional phrase here is *in a glass vase*—*in* is a preposition describing the object *a vase*. *Glass* is a modifier of *vase*, appearing between the preposition and the noun that it modifies. The prepositional phrase in this sentence is adjectival because it immediately follows the noun that it describes (*flowers*), and it tells us **what kind** of flowers the speaker would like to buy.

- “People **from many different countries** have visited here.”

From many different countries is a prepositional phrase modifying the noun *people*. It immediately follows that noun, and it answers the question **what kind** of people (people from different countries). But it also indirectly answers the question **how many**, because it tells the reader that a large number of people have visited.

Adverbial Prepositional Phrases

When a prepositional phrase modifies a verb, adjective, or adverb, it is considered to have the function of an adverb within the sentence. We call these **adverbial prepositional phrases**, or sometimes just **adverb prepositional phrases**, **adverb phrases**, or even just adverbs.

If an adverbial phrase is describing an adjective or an adverb, it will follow that word in the sentence. However, adverbial prepositional phrases don’t always immediately follow the verb they are modifying. Like normal adverbs, adverbial prepositional phrases answer the questions:

- When?
- Where?
- How (in what way)?
- Why (for what purpose)?
- To what extent?

Examples

Verbs

- “She will leave **after a short run**.”

Here the prepositional phrase *after a short run* follows the word it modifies, the verb *leave*. It describes a point in time (albeit a nonspecific one), answering the question of **when** the action will happen.

- “I ran a mile **down the road**.”

Even though the prepositional phrase *down the road* follows the noun *mile*, it actually describes the verb *run*. Here it is answering the question **where**: “Where did you run (a mile)?” “Down the road.”

An adverbial preposition can also be placed at different places in the sentence when modifying a verb, such as at the beginning. For example:

- “**Because of my operation**, I had to cancel my flight.”

The prepositional phrase *because of my operation*, which opens the sentence, is describing the verb *cancel*—in this instance, it is describing **why** the speaker had to cancel.

Adjectives and adverbs

Adverbial prepositional phrases that modify adjectives and adverbs can be harder to identify because the adjectives and adverbs are usually paired with verbs. Remember that these prepositional phrases **always follow the adjective or adverb** and will contain information **specific to the adjective and adverb**.

- “I was delighted **with the results**.”

In this sentence, the prepositional phrase *with the results* is describing the **predicative adjective** *delighted*, and it answers the question “**Why** are you delighted?” Even though *delighted* is paired with the linking verb *was*, the prepositional phrase very clearly describes the adjective rather than the verb.

- “I can get there more quickly **on my new bike**.”

Here, *on my new bike* describes the adverb *more quickly*, answering the question “How?” or “In what manner?” It could also seem that the prepositional phrase is describing the verb *get*, but the information in the prepositional phrase is specific to getting there *quickly*.

Multiple Prepositional Phrases

Sentences can (and often do) have more than one prepositional phrase. What kind of prepositional phrase each one is depends on what it is modifying, which is generally indicated by where it is placed in the sentence and what kind of information it is providing. For instance, verbs often take multiple adverbial prepositional phrases as modifiers, while an adjectival prepositional phrase can modify the objects of **other** prepositional phrases. It can seem a little bit complicated, but if you break the sentence down into parts, you can still apply the rules that were outlined above.

Examples

- “**During the Christmas break**, I visited my old school **behind our house**.”

There are two prepositional phrases in this sentence.

The first, *during the Christmas break*, is an adverbial prepositional phrase. We know this because it comes at the very beginning of the sentence, and it describes the verb *visited* (answering the question “When?”).

The second prepositional phrase is *behind our house*. It is an adjectival prepositional phrase, modifying the noun *school* and answering the question “Which one?”

- “We ended our game **with the neighbors at once** when we heard our parents calling.”

Here, two prepositional phrases occur one after the other. The first one, *with the neighbors*, describes the noun *game*, so it is adjectival.

The second prepositional phrase, *at once*, describes the verb *ended*, even though it comes quite a bit later in the sentence. Because it describes a verb, it is an adverbial prepositional phrase.

- “While I was home **for the summer after my first semester of college**, I decided to work **in a store** to earn some extra cash.”

This sentence features four prepositional phrases, three of which occur in succession.

The first is *for the summer*. It is functioning as an adverb to describe the verb phrase *was home*, specifying **when** the speaker was at home. (In this case it is describing a duration of time.)

Even though the second prepositional phrase, *after my first semester*, seems to describe the first one, it is actually also describing the verb phrase to further clarify **when** the speaker was home. In this instance, you can reverse the prepositional phrases—“While I was home *after my first semester for the summer*”—and still have the clause make complete sense (even if it’s not as clearly written).

However, the third prepositional phrase, *of college*, is an adjectival prepositional phrase—it is describing the noun phrase *my first semester*, which is the object of the second prepositional phrase. Here, it serves to answer the question **which** (or even **what kind**) about the semester being discussed. As such, it is “tied” to that preposition: it would not make sense to place it elsewhere in the sentence. For instance, “While I was home for the summer of college after my first semester” does not make sense.

The final prepositional phrase, *in a store*, is much easier to understand. It is an adverbial prepositional phrase modifying the verb *work*, and specifies **where** the speaker is going to work.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What does a prepositional phrase **have** to include? (Select the answer that is **most correct**.)

a) A preposition, a verb, and an object
b) A preposition and a modifier
c) A preposition, an object, and a modifier
d) A preposition and an object

2. What does an **adverbial prepositional phrase** modify?

a) A noun
b) A verb, an adjective, or an adverb
c) A noun, a verb, an adjective, or an adverb
d) Another prepositional phrase

3. Which of the following prepositional phrases (in **bold**) is an **adjectival prepositional phrase**?

a) “I always eat toast **in the morning**.”
b) “While we were on our vacation, we visited the home **of my youth**.”
c) “After the game, I had to run quickly **across the field**.”
d) “I’ve been really hungry **because of my new diet**.”

4. Identify the prepositional phrase in the following sentence:
“I had to go home early due to a big storm.”

a) due to a big storm
b) had to go
c) go home early
d) early due

5. How many prepositional phrases (both **adjectival** and **adverbial**) are in the following sentence?
“After the game, we had to go to the library to get a book for my mother, who was waiting for us in the parking lot.”

a) Three
b) Two
c) Four
d) Five

Categories of Prepositions

Defining Categories

Most **prepositions** have multiple usages and meanings. Generally speaking, prepositions can be divided into eight categories: *time, place, direction or movement, agency, instrument or device, reason or purpose, connection*, and *origin*. The following table highlights the most common prepositions and their categories*:

Category	Preposition
Time	at, in, on, for, during, since, by, until, before, after, to, past
Place	at, in, on, by/near/close to, next to/beside, between, behind, in front of, above/over, below/under
Direction or Movement	to, from, over, under, along, around, across, through, into, out of, toward(s), away from, onto, off, up, down
Agency	by, with
Instrument or Device	by, with, on
Reason or Purpose	for, through, because of, on account of, from
Connection	of, to, with
Origin	from, of

*Many prepositions will fall under two or more categories. To determine what type of preposition is being used in a sentence, you must look closely at the context and what is being described.

Prepositions of time

A **preposition of time** describes when or for how long something occurred or will occur. The three most common prepositions of time are *at*, *in*, and *on*. Each preposition of time refers to a different increment of or point in time, as shown below:

Preposition of Time	**What it Describes**	**Example Sentences**
at	specific and short times of day	“Let’s meet **at** noon.” “Chris arrived **at** one o’clock.”
in	months, years, and specific times of day	“Beth starts school **in** August.” “**In** 2008, the U.S. held a presidential election.” “I would rather work on the project **in** the afternoon.”
on	days and dates	“**On** Tuesday, Dad went to the grocery store.” “Valentine’s Day is **on** February 14.”
for	durations of time	“He lived abroad **for** many years.”
during	simultaneous events	“We’re not supposed to study **during** class.”
since	a continuous event originating from a specific point in the past	“She’s been waiting to hear back from the office **since** yesterday.”
by	a specific point in the future before which an event must be completed	“You must wake up **by** six o’clock tomorrow morning.”
until	a continuous event that will terminate at a specific point in the future	“Daniel can’t sneak out of the house **until** his parents go to bed.”

before	something prior to a specific time or event	“The moon rose **before** sunset.”
after	something following a specific time or event	“Katrina made a promise to help out **after** work today.”
to	time in relation to the next hour of the day	“My watch says it’s 10 minutes **to** three right now.”
past	time in relation to the previous hour of the day	“Ideally, the party would start no later than a quarter **past** eight.”

Prepositions of place

A **preposition of place** describes where something is located in reference to something else, or where something occurred or will occur. Like prepositions of time, the most common prepositions of place are also *at*, *in*, and *on*. The usages of these and other prepositions of place are explained below:

Preposition of Place	What it Describes	Example Sentences
at	specific points or locations	“Ben is planning on staying the night **at** a hotel.”
in	enclosed spaces	“The rice is **in** the cabinet.”
on	surfaces or tops of things	“Leave the towel **on** the counter.”
by, near, close to	lack of distance	“The library is **by/near/close to** the train station.”
next to, beside	adjacency	“Many people consider it rude to sit **next to/beside** a stranger in a movie theater.”
between	something in the middle of two people	“To make a sandwich, simply put something **between** two slices of

	or things	bread.”
behind	something at the back of something	“I stood **behind** my sister while we waited in line.”
in front of	something situated before something	“Let’s put the dresser **in front of** the window.”
above, over*	something higher than something	“The arch **above/over** the hallway reminded Natalie of a castle she’d visited.”
below, under**	something lower than something	“All children fear the monsters **below/under** their beds.”

**Over* and *above* both describe something higher than something else, but *over* can also describe something directly in contact with and covering something beneath it. For example: “I draped my jacket *over* the couch” is correct, whereas “I draped my jacket *above* the couch” is incorrect.

***Under* and *below* can both describe something lower than something else, but *under* can also describe something that is directly in contact with something on top of it. For example: “The puppy hid *under* the blanket” is correct, whereas “The puppy hid *below* the blanket” is incorrect.

Prepositions of direction or movement

A **preposition of direction or movement** describes how, where, or in what way something moves. The following table highlights the most common prepositions of direction and movement, as well as their different usages:

Preposition of Direction or Movement	**What it Describes**	**Example Sentences**
to	movement with a specific aim, direction, or destination	“My brother went **to** Europe with his friends.”

from	movement with a specific point of origin	“She told stories about the time she walked to Spain **from** France.”
over	movement higher than and across something else	“The bird flew **over** the trees.”
above	movement to a point higher than something else	“He shot his arrow **above** the target.”
under/beneath	movement lower than something	“That large worm went **under/beneath** the dirt.”
along	movement on a straight line or edge	“The childhood friends rode their bicycles **along** the road.”
around	movement in a circular direction	“The couple held hands and skated **around** the rink.”
across	movement from one end to the other	“I walked **across** the flimsy bridge.”
through	movement from one side of an enclosed space and out of the other	“The burglar entered the house **through** the basement window.”
into	movement ending inside something	“If you jump **into** the water like this, you can make a big splash.”
out of	movement ending outside something	“Get **out of** that cave before the bear comes back!”
toward(s)*	movement closer to something	“Laughing, she threw up her hands and ran **toward(s)** the park.”
away from	movement farther from something	“Get **away from** the fire before you get burned.”
	movement ending on top of	“Be careful climbing **onto**

onto	something	that ledge.”
off	movement down or away from something	“Parents are always yelling at their kids to get **off** the furniture.”
up	movement heading up	“When you use a fireplace, smoke goes **up** the chimney.”
down	movement heading down	“He jumped **down** and hurt his knee.”

**Toward* and *towards* are interchangeable. In formal American English, “toward” is preferred.

Prepositions of agency

A **preposition of agency** describes a person or a thing that has caused or is causing something to occur. Sentences containing prepositions of agency are usually written in the *passive voice* and employ the prepositions *by* (for people) and *with* (for things). For example:

- “The house was built **by** the three siblings.” (passive)
- “The three siblings built the house.” (active)

- “Her heart is filled **with** emotion.” (passive)
- “Emotion filled her heart.” (active)

Prepositions of instrument or device

A **preposition of instrument or device** is used when describing certain technologies, machines, or devices. These prepositions are *by, with,* and *on*. Typically, *by* refers to methods of transportation, whereas *with* and *on* describe the use of machines and other devices. For example:

- “Aunt Patricia returned home **by** ferry.”

- “She opened the locked door **with** an old key.”

- “May I finish my homework **on** your computer?”

Prepositions of reason or purpose

A **preposition of reason or purpose** describes why something has occurred or will occur. Common prepositions of reason or purpose include *for, through, because of, on account of,* and *from*. For example:

- “Everything I did was **for** you.”
- “**Through** her bravery, we were able to escape unharmed.”
- “**Because of** the delay, I was late to the parade.”
- “The employees refused to work **on account of** their low pay.”
- “He knows **from** experience how to deal with them.”

Prepositions of connection

A **preposition of connection** describes possession, relationships, or accompaniment. *Of* is used for possession, *to* for relationships between people or things, and *with* for accompaniment. For example:

- “The Statue **of** Liberty is located in New York Harbor.”
- “A well-written essay is impressive **to** teachers.”
- “Lisa wanted to go to the concert **with** Victor.”

Origin

When we describe a person or thing’s origin (such as nationality, hometown/state, ethnicity, the place where something was built or designed, etc.), we typically use the preposition *from* (and, to a lesser degree, *of*). For example:

- “I met the most delightful couple **from** Italy.”
- “I’m **from** New York originally, but I’ve lived in Dallas for many years.”
- “The new professor is **of** Turkish descent.”
- “The new computer **from** the tech giant should be revolutionary.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** one of the prepositions of **time**?

a) in
b) at
c) on
d) with

2. Which of the following sentences contains a **preposition of place**?

a) “She struggled to play the song on her guitar.”
b) “The kitten fell asleep beside me.”
c) “Nathan didn’t think the plan would work on account of its hasty development.
d) “The sound of voices could be heard coming through the vents.”

3. Which of the following sentences contains a **preposition of agency**?

a) “Emma couldn’t believe the song had been written for her.”
b) “Those roses were sent by Grandma.”
c) “The meeting will take place at 10 o’clock.”
d) “She decided to move away from her home city.”

4. Which of the following sentences contains a **preposition of reason or purpose**?

a) “I trekked across the country alone.”
b) “The book is on the desk.”
c) “Let’s talk about this again after the show.”
d) “He kept going because of his desire to succeed.”

Common Prepositional Errors

Due to the large number of **prepositions** in English, as well as the fact that many prepositions serve multiple purposes, it can be quite difficult to determine *which* preposition to use in a particular situation. This is especially tricky for the prepositions we use **after verbs**.

In this section, we’ll look at some common errors that arise when trying to determine the appropriate preposition to use with a particular kind of verb, as well as identifying patterns to help us make the correct choice.

Verbs of motion — *to* vs. *in*

Verbs that describe the movement from one place to another generally take the preposition *to*. However, when a verb describes a movement from one place into another, we use the prepositions *in* or *into*. This can lead to confusion between the two prepositions when using a motion verb that can describe either scenario. For example:

✖ “I went **in** London last year.” (incorrect)
✔ “I went to London last year.” (correct)

When we use a motion verb this way, we use the preposition of movement *to*. The only exception to the rule is the verb phrase *go home*, where *home* is an **adverbial noun** that modifies the verb. Otherwise we need to use *to* to express going from A to B.

Here are some more examples of motion verbs that take the preposition *to*:

- “Walk **to** school.”
- “Run **to** the store.”
- “Move **to** the left.”
- “Turn **to** the right.”
- “Swim **to** the shore.”
- “Drive **to** the country.”
- “Cycle **to** work.”

Of course we can use other prepositions of movement when we describe different relationships between the verb and the object of the preposition. For example:

- “Walk **across** the road.”
- “Run **along** the river.”
- “Cycle **round** the park.”
- “Drive **over** the bridge.”
- “Swim **up** and **down** the pool.”
- “Went **in** the school.”

Static verbs — *at* vs. *to*

✖ “I arrived **to** the airport late.” (incorrect)
✔ “I arrived **at** the airport late.” (correct)

Remember, we use **to** with motion verbs when we describe the movement from one location to another. *Arrive*, however, is considered a “static” verb, meaning it indicates no movement from point A to point B. In this case, we need to use the preposition *at*, which is used to indicate being in a location.

Other examples of static verb are *be* and *stay*; we also use *at* rather than *to* with these verbs, as in:

✖ “I was **to** the theater last night.” (incorrect)
✔ “I was **at** the theater last night.” (correct)

✖ “I stayed **to** my brother’s house last night.” (incorrect)
✔ “I stayed **at** my brother’s house last night.” (correct)

Possession and access — *to* vs. *of*

The prepositions *to* and *of* can both be used to signify that something belongs to or is a property of another thing. However, we use *to* to indicate that something grants access or leads into another thing, which is a relationship that *of* does not describe. For example:

✖ “This is the key **of** my room.” (incorrect)
✔ “This is the key **to** my room.” (correct)

There are also certain instances in which we could use either preposition and still have a correct sentence, but the meaning would be subtly different:

✔ “This is the main door **of** the house.” (correct—meaning the primary door belonging to the house)
✔ “This is the main door **to** the house.” (also correct—meaning the primary door to gain access to the house)

Different media — *in* vs. *on*

Another pair of similar prepositions is *in* and *on*, which can both be used to describe the medium by which something is seen. We use *in* when we are talking about something appearing ***in* printed media**, while *on* is used to talk about something appearing ***on* televised or digital media**. Let’s look at two sets of examples to better see this difference:

✖ “I saw it **on** the newspaper.” (incorrect)
✔ “I read it **in** the newspaper.” (correct)

✖ “I saw it **in** TV.” (incorrect)
✔ “I saw it **on** TV.” (correct)

Containment and nativity — *in* vs. *of*

✖ “The Nile is the longest river **of** the world.” (incorrect)
✔ “The Nile is the longest river **in** the world.” (correct)

Remember that *of* relates to belonging, while *in* refers to being inside or within someplace. We speak about countries and things being ***in*** the world, not *of* the world. On the other hand, when we describe someplace to which a person or thing is native, we use *of* and **not** *in*. For example:

✖ “He is a citizen **in** Greece.” (incorrect)
✔ “He is a citizen **of** Greece.” (correct)

✖ “The gray wolf **in** North America is a beautiful creature.” (incorrect)
✔ “The gray wolf **of** North America is a beautiful creature.” (correct)

Performance — *in* vs. *at*

When we describe how well someone does something, we often use the verb phrase *is good* followed by the preposition *at*. However, if we use the verb phrase *does well*, we usually use the preposition *in*, which can lead to a confusion between the two. For example:

✖ “My brother is good **in** English.” (incorrect)
✔ “My brother is good **at** English.” (correct)

✖ “My sister does well **at** school.” (incorrect)
✔ “My sister does well **in** school.” (correct)

When we are talking about a particular subject, we use *is good at*, but if we’re talking about a particular setting, we use *does well in*.

Over, *on*, and *at* the weekend

When we talk about our plans for an upcoming weekend, there are a number of prepositional constructions we can use. In American English, the most common prepositions to use are *over* and *on*. In British English, the most common preposition is *at*, though *over* is also used. Note that the preposition *during* is not used in either American **or** British English.

- “I will do my homework **on** the weekend.” (American English)
- “I will do my homework **over** the weekend.” (American and British English)
- “I will do my homework **at** the weekend.” (British English)

Transitive and intransitive verbs

We must be careful with prepositions when it comes to **transitive and intransitive verbs**. Remember, transitive verbs can take direct (and sometimes indirect) objects, while intransitive verbs cannot.

Prepositions with intransitive verbs

If we want to express a direct relationship between an intransitive verb and something that seems to be receiving its action, we often use a preposition. For example:

✖ "I listened the radio last night." (incorrect)
✔ "I listened **to** the radio last night." (correct)

✖ "I'll wait you." (incorrect)
✔ "I'll wait **for** you." (correct)

If we leave out the prepositions *to* and *for*, we make *the radio* and *you* the objects of the intransitive verbs *listen* and *wait*, which is incorrect.

Prepositions with transitive verbs

Likewise, we must be careful **not** to use a preposition with the objects of **transitive** verbs:

✖ "I'll answer **to** the phone." (incorrect)
✔ "I'll answer the phone." (correct)

✖ "She is going to marry **with** a lawyer." (incorrect)
✔ "She is going to marry a lawyer." (correct)

✖ "I asked **to** him to* buy some bread." (incorrect)
✔ "I asked him to* buy some bread." (correct)

(*Note that *to buy* in the last two examples is an **infinitive**, not a prepositional phrase; it is functioning as an **adverb of purpose** to modify the verb *ask*.)

The verb *ask* can also be an **intransitive** verb in some instances, in which case we can use the preposition *for*:

✔ "I asked Jeff." (transitive)
✔ "I asked **for** Jeff." (intransitive)

Be careful, though, because this changes the verb's meaning. When we use *ask* with just a person's name, as in the first example, it means to ask the person something, such as a question. When we ask **for** someone, it means we are requesting to see or speak to that person.

Prepositions and indirect objects

Some transitive verbs are able to take both direct objects and **indirect objects** (people or things that receive the direct object of the verb). If a verb is capable of taking an indirect object, that person or thing appears immediately after the verb and before the direct object. We can also place it after the direct object with the preposition *to*, in which case it is no longer a true indirect object but an **adverbial prepositional phrase**. For example:

✔ "John sent *me* a letter." (correct—indirect object)
✔ "John sent a letter ***to*** *me*." (correct—adverbial prepositional phrase)

However, not all transitive verbs can take indirect objects. If a verb is unable to have a true indirect object, we have to put the person or thing receiving the direct object in a prepositional phrase with *to*. For instance:

✖ "I'll explain *you* the problem." (incorrect)
✔ "I'll explain the problem ***to*** *you*." (correct)

Verbs that take both *to* and *at*

Many verbs are able to take multiple prepositions after them. However, this often results in a change in the sentence's meaning. The most common of these pairs is *to* and *at*—a large number of verbs are able to take both. We'll look at a number of such constructions below.

Shout *to* vs. shout *at*

When you shout *to* someone, you raise your voice to ensure that he or she can hear you. If, on the other hand, you shout *at* someone, you raise your voice because you are angry with him or her. For example:

- "I shouted **to** Mary, but she was too far away to hear me."
- "He just kept shouting **at** me, even though I had apologized."

Throw *to* vs. throw *at*

If you throw something *to* someone, such as a ball, you intend for that person to catch it. For example:

• “She threw the ball **to** the dog. He caught it and ran away with it.”

If you throw something *at* someone, you want to hit them with it. This could be because you are angry with them, as in:

• “She was so angry with her husband that she threw her wedding ring **at** him.”

Point *to* vs. point *at*

You can point *to* or *at* a person as well as an object.

If we point *to* someone or something, we are indicating a location or direction. For example:

• “She pointed **to** the sky.”

If we point *at* someone or something, we draw attention to that specific person or thing, as in:

• “‘You’re the one who stole my bag!’ she shouted, pointing **at** the thief.”

Sometimes the difference between the two is very subtle, and we can use either preposition with little to no change in meaning.

• “He pointed **at/to** his watch and said, ‘I must go. It’s very late.’”

Learning the correct prepositions

In this guide, we provide some general guidelines for determining which preposition to use in a given situation. However, the use of prepositions is particularly varied and flexible in English, so the best way to learn correct prepositional use is to pay close attention to the way people speak and write.

Prepositions with Nouns

Definition

Certain **prepositions** can be used in conjunction with **nouns** to connect, emphasize, or provide clarification for ideas expressed in sentences. In this combination, the preposition always comes directly after the noun. Here are some of the most common prepositions used with nouns:

- **to**
- **for**
- **of**

- **in**
- **on**
- **at**
- **from**
- **with**
- **about**
- **between**

Rules

There is no clear-cut rule that determines which prepositions connect to which nouns; however, we can look at how **synonymous nouns** and **associated verbs** pair with prepositions to observe patterns or make an educated guess.

Synonymous nouns

Synonymous nouns typically employ identical prepositions. For example, when the noun *respect* is replaced with its synonyms (such as *admiration* or *esteem*), the preposition *for* remains the same:

- "I could never lose ***respect*** **for** you." (original)
- "I could never lose ***admiration*** **for** you."
- "I could never lose ***esteem*** **for** you."

In the above case, the preposition does not change, regardless of what synonym is being used.

This is not *always* the case, however, so do not take this as a concrete rule. The examples below demonstrate cases in which the preposition changes with synonyms of the original noun:

- "My **addiction *to*** coffee is unhealthy." (original)
- "My **obsession *with*** coffee is unhealthy."
- "My **dependence *on*** coffee is unhealthy."

Verbs with prepositions

For many words, the prepositions used with nouns are the same prepositions used with those nouns' associated verb forms. For example:

- “He discussed his ***reaction*** **to** the results.” (noun)
- “He discussed how he ***reacted*** **to** the results.” (verb)

- “I have ***knowledge*** **of** that particular issue.” (noun)
- “I ***know*** **of** that particular issue.” (verb)

Be careful not to rely on this pattern, though, because in some cases changing a noun into its verb form alters the preposition:

- “I have deep **sympathy *for*** him.”
- “I deeply **sympathize *with*** him.”

- “She has an **obsession *with*** that comic book.”
- “She **obsesses *over*** that comic book.”

Examples of common pairings

Although there are some tricks we can use, there is no specific way of determining which prepositions pair with particular nouns—we just have to know them by heart. The only way to do this is by seeing them used in everyday writing and speech.

Below we will look at examples of the most common prepositions that pair with nouns.

Noun + to

One of the most common prepositions used with nouns is *to*. The following table contains examples of combinations you might see:

Noun + to	Example Sentence
access to	“I couldn’t enter the building without **access to** the door’s password.”
addiction to	“Alison has an **addiction to** football.”
answer to	“Her **answer to** the teacher’s question was incorrect.”
approach to	“Professor Smith’s **approach to** the experiment was incredibly innovative.”
damage to	“The **damage to** the car is worse than I thought it’d be.”

dedication to	“Ned has intense **dedication to** his schoolwork.”
devotion to	“Everyone admired the doctor’s **devotion to** her patients.”
reaction to	“The child had an adorable **reaction to** the kitten.”
response to	“She gave no **response to** the question I’d asked her.”
solution to	“No one could come up with a **solution to** the math problem.”
threat to	“Climate change is a potential **threat to** certain species.”

Noun + for

Another common preposition used with nouns is *for*. Examples can be seen in the table below:

Noun + for	**Example Sentence**
admiration for	“Penny has so much **admiration for** her mother.”
cure for	“Health officials recently announced that a **cure for** the fatal disease had been found.”
desire for	“My **desire for** success is more important than my **desire for** romance.”
hope for	“Youths often have high **hopes for** humanity.”
need for	“The **need for** social interaction is a basic human trait.”
passion for	“Simply having a **passion for** writing doesn’t necessarily mean you will become a best-selling author.”
reason for	“There is always a **reason for** change.”

respect for	“Certain cultures promote **respect for** elders.”
room for	“There’s **room for** one more person at this table.”
sympathy for	“You should always have **sympathy for** strangers.”
talent for	“Greg has a **talent for** stand-up comedy.”

Noun + of

The preposition *of* can be used with many nouns. Here are some common combinations:

Noun + of	Example Sentence
advantage of	“Most people seem to underestimate the **advantage of** majoring in philosophy.”
disadvantage of	“The **disadvantage of** becoming an entrepreneur is the amount of debt you can accumulate.”
fear of	“My niece has a **fear of** the dark.”
habit of	“I used to have a **habit of** biting my fingernails.”
intention of	“Do you have any **intention of** going out today?”
knowledge of	“Timothy’s **knowledge of** beekeeping is impressive.”
lack of	“The police cannot arrest him due to a **lack of** evidence.”
memory of	“I have no **memory of** my first year in school.”
process of	“The **process of** elimination is a popular technique when taking multiple-choice tests.”
smell of	“I love the **smell of** freshly baked cookies.”
sound of	“Can you hear the **sound of** birds chirping?”

taste of	“The **taste of** cooked octopus is an acquired one.”

Noun + in

Several nouns take the preposition *in*, examples of which can be seen in the following table:

Noun + in	Example Sentence
belief in	“It is not uncommon to have a **belief in** a higher power.”
change in	“Scientists detected little **change in** the atmosphere.”
decrease in	“A **decrease in** taxes would dramatically affect the economy.”
delay in	“There appears to have been a **delay in** processing your payment.”
experience in	“She has little **experience in** backpacking.”
increase in	“I’m hoping for an **increase in** environmentally friendly products.”
interest in	“Even as a child, the girl had an **interest in** archaeology.”
pleasure in	“He took **pleasure in** playing the piano.”
reduction in	“Meredith was forced to take a **reduction in** her pay.”
rise in	“After he won the jackpot, his hometown witnessed a sharp **rise in** sales of lottery tickets.”

Noun + on

The preposition *on* is less commonly paired with nouns, but there are instances where it is used. Here are some examples of *on* being used with nouns:

Noun + on	**Example Sentence**
advice on	“I read magazines for **advice on** relationships.”
attack on	“Some view the new law as an **attack on** our rights.”
ban on	“The early 20th century saw a short-lived **ban on** alcohol.”
emphasis on	“She is studying East Asian cultures with an **emphasis on** Japanese society.”
focus on	“His **focus on** success has hindered his social life.”
report on	“The **report on** fast food made people more aware of the number of calories they consume.”

Noun + at

The preposition *at* is only paired with a few nouns. For example:

- “Though new to skiing, he made an **attempt at** the highest slope.”
- “I have no **chance at** winning this game.”

Often, we use the preposition in conjunction with *which*, as in:

- “This is the **age at which** you are eligible for military service.”
- “There’s always a **point at which** trying to reason with him becomes futile.”

Noun + from

From is only occasionally used with nouns. The preposition usually refers to two things at opposition with each other, or specifies an origin or starting point when used in conjunction with *to*:

- “The town sought **protection from** bandits.”
- “His **transition from** pauper **to** prince was something out of a fairy tale.”

Noun + with

Generally, nouns combined with the preposition *with* point to relationships and connections between two or more things. For example:

- “What’s the **matter with** you?”
- “I noticed a small **problem with** the story you submitted.”
- “Her close **relationship with** her sister is enviable.”
- “If you’re having **trouble with** the assignments, consult your teacher.”

Noun + about

When paired with a noun, *about* means *concerning* or *in regards to*. For example:

- “His **anxiety about** public speaking is so bad that he sweats when he’s onstage.”
- “Do you have any **information about** the changes in the schedule?”
- “She wants to hear the **story about** her favorite superhero again.”

Noun + between

A noun that takes the preposition *between* forms a **comparison between** two things. Here are some common combinations:

- “For her thesis, Stacy submitted a **comparison between** classical music and contemporary rock.”
- “The **connection between** good and evil is fascinating.”
- “Is there a **difference between** green onions and scallions?”

Nouns with multiple prepositions

Some nouns are capable of combining with more than one preposition. In some of these cases, the meaning does not change no matter which preposition is chosen:

- “My **opinion *of*** her is the same as yours.”
- “My **opinion *about*** her is the same as yours.”
- “Abby is an **expert *in*** changing tires.”

- “Abby is an **expert *at*** changing tires.”

- “I appreciate his newfound **love for** animals.”
- “I appreciate his newfound **love of** animals.”

In other cases, however, the meaning changes entirely when a different preposition is substituted:

- “No one can deny the positive **impact *of*** France.” (France has a positive influence.)
- “No one can deny the positive **impact *on*** France.” (Something positively affects France.)

- “Her **transition *from*** vegetarian ***to*** vegan wasn’t difficult.” (She started as a vegetarian and ended as a vegan.)
- “Her **transition *to*** vegetarian ***from*** vegan wasn’t difficult.” (She started as a vegan and ended as a vegetarian.)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following prepositions is **most commonly** paired with nouns?

a) along
b) up
c) of
d) without

2. Which of the following sentences contains a ***noun + preposition*** combination?

a) “I walked in and ordered a drink.”
b) “It’s OK to take pride in your home country.”
c) “My nephew is interested in joining a club.”
d) “Did you look in the cupboard?”

3. Which of the following sentences **does not** contain a preposition with a noun?

a) “Did you laugh at Larry’s jokes?”
b) “My knowledge of comic books is limited.”
c) “The woman’s talent for singing is unmistakable.”
d) “Everyone deserves a chance at love.”

4. Which of the following sentences is **incorrect**?

a) “Gina found it difficult to satisfy her desire for adventure.”
b) “Gina found it difficult to satisfy her thirst for adventure.”
c) “Gina found it difficult to satisfy her interest for adventure.”
d) “Gina found it difficult to satisfy her longing for adventure.”

Prepositions with Verbs

Definition

Certain verbs require prepositions in order to connect to their sentences’ *objects*. These combinations, also known as **prepositional verbs**, allow the prepositions to act as necessary links between verbs and **nouns** or **gerunds**. The prepositions used in these combinations are sometimes called **dependent prepositions**.

Here are some of the prepositions most commonly used with verbs:

- **for**
- **to**
- **about**
- **with**
- **of**
- **in**
- **at**
- **on**
- **from**

Usage

Prepositional verbs always take a *direct object* (either a *noun* or *gerund*) after the *preposition* and cannot be separated by it. For example:

✖ “He **listens** classical music every night.” (Incorrect — the verb *listens* requires a preposition to connect to its object, *classical music*.)

✖ “He **listens** classical music **to** every night.” (Incorrect — *listens* and its preposition *to* cannot be separated by the object, *classical music*.)

✔ “He **listens to** classical music every night.” (Correct — the prepositional verb is not separated, and the object comes directly after the preposition.)

Prepositional verbs vs. phrasal verbs

Sometimes, a **phrasal verb** may be mistaken for a prepositional verb. Although both combinations employ *verbs* and *prepositions*, you can differentiate the two grammar structures by looking at the **literal meaning of the verb** and the **word order**.

Literal meaning of the verb

Prepositional verbs use the literal meanings of verbs, whereas phrasal verbs tend to be idiomatic. For example, the meaning of the verb *ask* doesn't change when combined with the preposition *for*; however, it changes dramatically when combined with the preposition *out*:

- "Kelly **asked *for*** a raise." (The literal meaning of *to ask* is *to inquire*. Kelly *inquired* about a raise, making it a prepositional verb.)
- "Kelly **asked *out*** Chad." (*Ask out* means *to invite someone on a date,* making it an idiomatic phrasal verb.)

Word order

The order of a verb's *preposition* and its *object* can also help determine whether a verb is prepositional or phrasal. As previously stated, the object of prepositional verbs *always* comes immediately after the **preposition**, which in turn comes immediately after the **verb**. Note that an exception to this rule is when an adverb is used to modify the prepositional verb, in which case it can appear between the verb and the preposition. However, the object must still follow the preposition. For example:

✔ "Kelly **asked for** a raise." (correct)
✔ "Kelly **asked *politely* for** a raise." (correct)
✖ "Kelly **asked** a raise **for**." (incorrect)

For phrasal verbs, however, *prepositions* and *objects* can often be rearranged without issue:

✔ "Kelly **asked out** Chad." (correct)
✔ "Kelly **asked** Chad **out**." (also correct)

Examples of common pairings

Because there are no established rules or methods to determine which prepositions accompany which verbs, we have to settle on memorizing some of the most common *verb + preposition* combinations.

The following sections contain numerous examples of commonly used prepositional verbs.

Verb + for

The preposition *for* can be used with a number of verbs, often to emphasize purpose or reason. For example:

Verb + for	Example Sentences
apologize for	“Brittany never **apologizes for** her behavior.”
ask for	“The student **asked for** a pencil.”
beg for	“The man **begged for** a second chance.”
care for	“I don’t **care for** salads.”
fight for	“Many generations of people have **fought for** freedom."
hope for	“The family is **hoping for** a miracle.”
long for	“The man **longed for** the days of his youth.”
pay for	“Who’s going to **pay for** these tickets?”
provide for	“Parents are expected to **provide for** their children.”
search for	“Did you **search for** the missing piece yet?”
wait for	“I’m **waiting for** the bus.”
wish for	“Some people **wish for** nothing but fame.”
work for	“She **works for** the government.”

Verb + to

To is commonly used with verbs and usually refers to direction (literal or metaphorical) or connections between people or things. For example:

Verb + to	Example Sentences
adjust to	“You’ll **adjust to** your new school in no time.”
admit to	“He **admitted to** reading her diary.”
belong to	“The wallet **belongs to** that woman over there.”
travel to	“I am **traveling to** England tomorrow.”
listen to	“Grace is **listening to** music in her room.”
go to	“Anthony, please **go to** the back of the classroom.”
relate to	“I can’t **relate to** this character at all.”
respond to	“Josh **responded to** his friend’s email.”
talk to	“He **talked to** the manager for more than an hour.”
turn to	“**Turn to** page 46 for a diagram of the procedure.”

Verb + about

Many verbs take the preposition *about* when referring to things, events, or gerunds. For example:

Verb + about	Example Sentences
ask about	“I **asked about** the company’s job opening.”
care about	“She doesn’t seem to **care about** going to college.”
complain about	“The boy **complained about** his early curfew.”
forget about	“I **forgot about** the wedding reception.”
hear about	“Did you **hear about** the renovation project?”
joke about	“Kim often **jokes about** her high-pitched voice.”
know about	“What do you **know about** physics?”

laugh about	“The friends **laughed about** their terrible luck.”
learn about	“Michelle is **learning about** film production.”
talk about	“What are you **talking about**?”
think about	“We’ll need to **think about** hiring some more staff.”
worry about	“So many adults **worry about** getting older.”
write about	“Dean **wrote about** his day in his journal.”

Verb + with

Verbs using the preposition *with* usually point to connections and relationships between people or things. For example:

Verb + with	Example Sentences
agree with	“I don’t **agree with** his opinions.”
argue with	“The two **argued with** each other for several minutes.”
begin with, start with	“Let’s **begin with** a short quiz.” “I shouldn’t have **started with** a salad.”
collide with	“It is possible, albeit unlikely, for an asteroid to **collide with** Earth.”
compare with	“How does the restaurant’s soup **compare with** Vera’s?”
compete with	“When I run races, I only **compete with** the clock.”
cope with	“It’s not easy to **cope with** failure.”
disagree with	“She **disagrees with** my suggestion.”
interfere with	“Be careful not to **interfere with** the conference upstairs.”
meet with	“When will you **meet with** her?”

Verb + of

The preposition *of* can be used with a variety of verbs. For example:

Verb + of	Example Sentences
approve of	“Ellen doesn’t **approve of** her sister’s friends.”
consist of	“Pizza **consists of** bread, cheese, and tomato sauce.”
dream of	“I **dream of** visiting Europe.”
hear of	“Have you **heard of** this new TV show?”
take care of	“Who will **take care of** your goldfish while you’re away?”
think of	“If you only **think of** failure, you’ll never take any risks.”

Verb + in

The preposition *in* accompanies several verbs and tends to point to involvement or connections between people or things. For example:

Verb + in	Example Sentences
believe in	“The majority of children **believe in** Santa Claus.”
engage in	“Maurice likes to **engage in** political debates.”
invest in	“Now is the time to **invest in** as many companies as possible.”
live in	“Haley **lives in** Seattle.”
participate in	“What sports did you **participate in** as a kid?”
result in	“The hotel’s failure to exterminate the bed bugs **resulted in** fewer customers.”

specialize in	“English majors can choose to **specialize in** creative writing or literature.”
succeed in	“Steven **succeeded in** earning a scholarship.”

Verb + at

At is commonly used with verbs to indicate places, skills, and reactions. For example:

Verb + at	Example Sentences
arrive at	“We **arrived at** the hotel in the morning.”
balk at	“Melissa **balked at** the news.”
excel at	“My five-year-old niece already **excels at** math and science.”
laugh at	“The boy couldn’t stop **laughing at** Isabella’s joke.”
look at	“**Look at** the whiteboard, please.”
nod at	“She **nodded at** her coworkers.”
shout at	“He could hear someone **shouting at** the TV.”
smile at	“My son **smiles at** me every time I walk through the door.”
stare at	“It’s uncomfortable when people **stare at** you.”

Verb + on

The preposition *on* is used with a number of different verbs. For example:

Verb + on	Example Sentences
agree on	“The committee finally **agreed on** a solution.”
bet on	“I wouldn’t **bet on** that happening.”

comment on	“The lawyer briefly **commented on** the lawsuit.”
concentrate on, focus on	“He’s trying to **concentrate on** his work.” “I'm too tired to **focus on** this assignment.”
decide on	“He eventually **decided on** a career path.”
depend on, rely on	“You can’t **depend on** him forever.” “Too many students **rely on** the Internet to conduct research.”
elaborate on	“This paragraph **elaborates on** the previous one’s claims.”
experiment on	“The company offered assurances that it does not **experiment on** animals.”
insist on	“She **insisted on** joining us.”
operate on	“Aspiring surgeons learn how to **operate on** people.”
plan on	“Do you **plan on** attending the concert tomorrow?”

Verb + from

The preposition *from* is commonly used with verbs to identify a point of origin or a connection or disconnection between people or things. For example:

Verb + from	Example Sentences
benefit from	“Aspiring musicians **benefit from** getting public exposure for their music.”
come from	“Saya **comes from** Japan.”
differ from	“How does milk chocolate **differ from** white chocolate?”
escape from	“The prisoners **escaped from** their captors.”

recover from	“The girl **recovered from** her illness.”
refrain from	“Could you please **refrain from** shouting?”
resign from	“The CEO **resigned from** her position after 25 years with the company.”
retire from	“He **retired from** his job last year.”
suffer from	“Many people **suffer from** social anxiety.”

Verb + other prepositions

Other prepositions can be used to create prepositional verbs. Some of these prepositions are *against*, *into*, and *like*. For example:

- “We **decided against** visiting my aunt.”
- “The car nearly **crashed into** a tree.”
- “I **feel like** going on an adventure.”

Verbs with multiple prepositions

Certain verbs can take multiple prepositions without changing the overall meaning of the sentence. For example, the verb *talk* can use the prepositions *to* and *with* interchangeably:

- “I need to **talk *to*** the principal.”
- “I need to **talk *with*** the principal.”

On the other hand, some verbs’ meanings do change when a different preposition is introduced. For example, the verb *dream* can mean *to aspire* when it is used with the preposition *of*; however, when it is used with the prepositions *about*, it means *to see images during sleep*. For example:

- “She **dreams *of*** becoming a pilot.” (aspiration)
- “She often **dreams *about*** flying.” (image during sleep)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following prepositions is **commonly** paired with verbs?

a) at
b) on
c) about
d) from
e) all of the above

2. Which of the following sentences contains a **prepositional verb**?

a) “I would be honored to give a speech.”
b) “He forgot about daylight saving time.”
c) “She had an allergic reaction to peanut butter.”
d) “Mitch has an obsession with comic books.”

3. Which of the following sentences **does not** contain a **prepositional verb**?

a) “I’m responsible for cleaning the office.”
b) “Let’s drink to your good fortune.”
c) “She begged for his forgiveness.”
d) “He looked at the sky.”

4. Which of the following sentences uses an **incorrect** preposition?

a) “He insisted on doing everything himself.”
b) “Haggis consists of meat, onions, oatmeal, and spices.”
c) “Consult a doctor if you suffer with bronchitis.”
d) “I don’t really care for chocolate.”

Prepositions with Adjectives

Definition

Prepositions can sometimes appear after **adjectives** to complete or elaborate on the ideas or emotions the adjective describes. Prepositions used in this way are known as **adjective complements**. The preposition always comes directly after the adjective and is typically followed by a *noun* or *gerund* to form a prepositional phrase.

The most common prepositions used alongside adjectives include the following:

- of
- to
- about
- for
- with
- at
- by
- in
- from

Rules

There are no definite rules when it comes to combining adjectives with prepositions, but a few patterns exist. One trick is to look at how **synonymous adjectives** and **antonymous adjectives** pair with prepositions; another is to memorize the prepositions used with adjectives' associated **noun forms**.

Synonymous adjectives

Synonymous adjectives generally take the same prepositions. For example, when the adjective *afraid* is replaced with its synonyms *scared* and *terrified*, the preposition *of* stays the same:

• "Megan was ***afraid*** **of** the thunderstorm." (original)

• "Megan was ***scared*** **of** the thunderstorm."

• "Megan was ***terrified*** **of** the thunderstorm."

Be careful, though, as some similar-sounding adjectives may require different prepositions:

• "Philip is **upset** ***about*** what was said." (original)

• "Philip is **displeased** ***with*** what was said."

• "Philip is **hurt** ***by*** what was said."

Antonymous adjectives

Like synonymous adjectives, the majority of antonymous adjectives use the same prepositions:

- "It was ***smart*** **of** him to go on vacation."
- "It was ***stupid*** **of** him to go on vacation."

- "She's ***good*** **at** skateboarding."
- "She's ***bad*** **at** skateboarding."

Noun forms with prepositions

We can also examine the prepositions used with associated nouns, as the same prepositions are often used with the adjective forms as well. For example:

- "I am ***interested*** **in** astronomy." (adjective)
- "I have an ***interest*** **in** astronomy." (associated noun)

- "He is ***addicted*** **to** playing tennis." (adjective)
- "He has an ***addiction*** **to** playing tennis." (associated noun)

- "Julie is ***obsessed*** **with** that movie." (adjective)
- "Julie has an ***obsession*** **with** that movie." (associated noun)

On occasion, an adjective and its associated noun form may not share the same preposition, as in the example below:

- "He is **fond** ***of*** animals." (adjective)

- "He has a **fondness** ***for*** animals." (associated noun)

Examples of common pairings

Because there are no distinct rules for determining how adjectives combine with prepositions, the best way to learn correct *adjective + preposition* combinations is by memorizing some of the most common pairings.

Below are various examples of combinations you may come across in everyday English.

Adjective + of

An adjective paired with the preposition *of* can identify causes of mental and physical states (e.g., fear, exhaustion, anxiety, etc.) or offer descriptions for actions and people. For example:

Adjective + of	Example Sentences

afraid of, frightened of, scared of, terrified of	“Sam is **afraid of** dogs.” “Many kids are **frightened of** clowns.” “Are you **scared of** airplanes?” “The poor baby was **terrified of** her crib.”
kind of, nice of, sweet of, thoughtful of	“How **kind of** you to come early.” “That was **nice of** your sister to treat us to dessert.” “It’s very **sweet of** John to send a gift.” “It is **thoughtful of** passengers to thank their drivers.”
odd of, strange of	“How **odd of** that man to wear sunglasses inside.” “It’s **strange of** you to change your mind like that.”
proud of	“Mom told me she is **proud of** my accomplishments.”
rude of	“I thought it **rude of** her to interrupt me.”
smart of	“That’s very **smart of** you.”
sick of, tired of	“I am so **sick of** doing laundry every week.” “Olivia confessed that she is **tired of** dating Mike.”
silly of	“It was **silly of** me to assume I was right.”
stupid of	“How **stupid of** that boy to drop out of high school.”

Adjective + to

When paired with an adjective, the preposition *to* can describe behaviors, states, or connections between things and people. For example:

Adjective + to	Example Sentences
accustomed to	“He quickly became **accustomed to** city life.”
addicted to	“I think I'm **addicted to** action movies.”
committed to, dedicated to, devoted to	“She is **committed to** the art of dance.” “How **dedicated to** your studies are you?” “Lucy is **devoted to** her family.”
friendly to, good to, kind to, nice to	“Henry is **friendly to** everyone.” “Was she **good to** you?” “You should always be **kind to** others.” “Mrs. Roberts was **nice to** the cashier.”
married to	“Cassie is **married to** Nick.”
mean to, rude to, unfriendly to	“Don’t be **mean to** your classmates.” “The couple was **rude to** the waitress.” “A lot of cats are **unfriendly to** humans.”
opposed to	“I am **opposed to** these changes.”
similar to	“His idea is **similar to** mine.”

Adjective + about

The preposition *about* typically accompanies emotive adjectives in regards to specific situations or events. For example:

Adjective + about	Example Sentences
angry about, furious about, mad about	“My neighbor is **angry about** the loud music we played last night.” “That woman is **furious about** having to wait in line.” “You’re always **mad about** something.”

anxious about, nervous about, stressed about, worried about	“Joe is **anxious about** studying abroad next semester.” “She seemed **nervous about** the test.” “Rachel is **stressed about** finding a job.” “Dad is **worried about** filing taxes.”
excited about	“I am **excited about** a new book that’s coming out soon.”
happy about	“Aren’t you **happy about** the way things turned out?”
sad about, depressed about	“She might be **sad about** her grades.” “Bobby was **depressed about** his parents’ divorce.”
sorry about	“I’m **sorry about** yesterday.”
upset about	“He’s probably **upset about** losing the soccer match.”

Adjective + for

For can be used with adjectives to demonstrate purpose or reason. For example:

- “Texas is **famous for** rodeos.”
- “Australia is **known for** its large kangaroo population.”
- “Coach Brown is **responsible for** the football team.”

Of may also be used to emphasize someone’s feelings toward a specific event, thing, or person. This combination follows the basic form *feel/be + adjective + for + someone/something*. For example:

- “Marianne **feels *bad for* her coworker**.”
- “Kyle **is *happy for* his brother**.”
- “The company **felt *hopeful for* the future**.”

Adjective + with

When used with an adjective, the preposition *with* can indicate the cause of an emotional state or a connection between things or people. For example:

Adjective + with	Example Sentences
angry with, furious with	"Nicole is **angry with** her mother." "I heard he's **furious with** you!"
annoyed with, fed up with	"I'm **annoyed with** this traffic." "She's **fed up with** having to clean toilets all day."
bored with	"It's hard not to be **bored with** long lectures."
content with, fine with, OK with	"Taylor was **content with** moving to Chicago." "I'm **fine with** having to rewrite the introduction." "Are you sure you're **OK with** this?"
disappointed with, displeased with	"Molly seems **disappointed with** her performance." "The boy's parents are **displeased with** his behavior."
pleased with	"We are very **pleased with** the number of donations we received."

With may also be employed in passive sentences to describe the states of people or things:

- "Paris is especially **crowded with** tourists in the summertime."
- "The cake is **filled with** fresh blueberries."
- "The piñata is **stuffed with** hundreds of pieces of candy."

Adjective + at/by

Most adjectives that take the preposition *at* can also take the preposition *by*. When combined with adjectives, these prepositions illustrate causes for specific reactions or emotional responses. *By* can be used in place of *at* only because these sentences require *passive voice*. For example:

- "The man was **amazed at/by** the number of people offering to help him."

- “She was **astonished at/by** the movie’s poor ratings.”
- “I’m **shocked at/by** his behavior.”
- “Flight attendants were **surprised at/by** the plane’s abrupt landing.”

At can also describe skills and abilities when paired with positive and negative adjectives, such as *good/bad* and *wonderful/terrible*. In this case, *by* cannot be used in place of *at*, as the sentences are not passive. For example:

✔ “James is **good *at*** playing the guitar.” (correct)
✖ “James is **good *by*** playing the guitar.” (incorrect)

✔ “I’m **terrible *at*** golf.” (correct)
✖ “I’m **terrible *by*** golf.” (incorrect)

Adjective + in

Some adjectives can be paired with the preposition *in* to show connections or relationships between people and things. For example:

- “Bernard is **interested in** joining the school band.”
- “Is she **involved in** politics?”

Adjective + from

Adjectives taking the preposition *from* can emphasize a point of opposition or the result of an action. For example:

- “Turquoise is **different from** blue.” (point of opposition)
- “We were **protected from** the storm.” (point of opposition)
- “I became **tired from** studying all night.” (result of an action)

Adjectives with multiple prepositions

Many adjectives can be paired with multiple prepositions. While some prepositions may change the meaning of a sentence, others can behave interchangeably (such as *at* and *by*). Here are some sentence pairs that use different prepositions but have identical meanings:

- “She’s very **sorry *about*** the mistake.”
- “She’s very **sorry *for*** the mistake.”

- “Mark is **disappointed *with*** the decision.”
- “Mark is **disappointed *in*** the decision.”

In some cases, however, the prepositions are **not** interchangeable and can only be used to describe specific nouns or gerunds. For example, when paired with adjectives, *with* and *for* generally refer to people, whereas *about* usually refers to things, events, or gerunds:

- "I'm so **happy *for*** them." (people)
- "I'm so **happy *about*** the wedding." (thing/event)

- "Dad is **angry *with*** Elizabeth." (person)
- "Dad is **angry *about*** Elizabeth's sneaking out." (gerund)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following prepositions is **most commonly** paired with adjectives?

a) outside
b) around
c) over
d) about

2. Which of the following sentences contains a preposition paired with an **adjective**?

a) "I feel responsible for what happened."
b) "She went to the park to walk her dog."
c) "Something flew over the pond."
d) "Anna is preparing dinner for her family."

3. Which of the following sentences **does not** contain a preposition paired with an **adjective**?

a) "Ken has an obsession with skydiving."
b) "It would be fun to go on a road trip this weekend."
c) "She's upset about her computer breaking."
d) "Is he satisfied with the new employee?"

4. Which of the following sentences is **correct**?

a) "Dr. Donnelly is excited for conduct the experiment."
b) "Dr. Donnelly is excited with conduct the experiment."
c) "Dr. Donnelly is excited about conduct the experiment."

d) “Dr. Donnelly is excited to conduct the experiment.”

Prepositions in Idioms

Definition

Many **prepositions** can be used with certain words or phrases to form **idioms** (expressions that have a unique meaning that cannot be inferred from their constituent parts). These **prepositional idioms** typically begin or end with a preposition. Prepositional idioms can function adverbially, adjectivally, or verbally and may come at the beginning, middle, or end of a sentence. For example:

- “**Turn down** the volume, please.” (verbal idiom at the beginning of a sentence)
- “She plays tennis **on average** three times a month.” (adverbial idiom in the middle of a sentence)
- “All the elevators are **out of order**.” (adjectival idiom at the end of a sentence)

Types of idioms

Prepositional idioms combine prepositions with verbs, nouns, or phrases to create idiomatic expressions. These expressions can be divided into two categories: **idioms that start with prepositions** and **idioms that end with prepositions**.

Idioms that start with prepositions

Idioms that start with prepositions are usually **prepositional phrases** and function adverbially or adjectivally. As with non-idiomatic prepositional phrases, idiomatic prepositional phrases consist of two or more words and always include a noun or phrase after the preposition. For example:

- “Chuck visits his grandparents **from time to time**.” (adverbial prepositional phrase)
- “The city is **in danger**.” (adjectival prepositional phrase)

Some idioms behave similarly to idiomatic prepositional phrases but are instead followed by an adverb or adjective. (Because they do not contain a noun, they are not complete prepositional phrases.) For example:

- “Answer me **at once**.” (*preposition + adverb*)

- “She explained the project details **in brief**.” (*preposition + adjective*)

Adverbial vs. adjectival prepositional phrases

Certain idiomatic prepositional phrases can behave both adverbially and adjectivally. For example, look at how the prepositional idiom *in depth* is used below:

- “He researches rainforests **in depth**.” (*In depth* is an adverbial prepositional phrase that modifies the verb *researches*.)

- “He conducts **in-depth** research of rainforests.” (*In-depth** is an adjectival prepositional phrase that modifies the noun *research*.)

(*We usually insert a **hyphen** when an adjective consists of two or more words and comes directly before the noun it modifies.)

Adding modifiers

Various adverbs and adjectives may be used as modifiers and placed inside idiomatic prepositional phrases for emphasis or clarification. For example:

- “Small electronics are **in demand**.”
- “Small electronics are **in *high* demand**.”

- “The user downloaded a virus **by accident**.”
- “The user downloaded a virus **by *complete* accident**.”

Idioms that end with prepositions

An idiom that contains a verb and ends with a preposition can be classified as a **phrasal verb**. Like normal verbs, phrasal verbs describe an action in the sentence; they are written as *verb + preposition* or *verb + particle + preposition*. For example:

- “I **turned down** the job offer.” (*verb + preposition*)

- “He is beginning to **get along with** his stepfather.” (*verb + particle + preposition*)

See the section about **Phrasal Verbs** in the chapter on **Verbs** to learn more about how these are formed and used.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. In what part of a sentence can you insert a **prepositional idiom**?

a) at the beginning
b) in the middle
c) at the end
d) all of the above

2. Which of the following characteristics describes the function of an **idiomatic prepositional phrase**?

a) adverbial
b) verbal
c) adjectival
d) a and c
e) b and c

3. Which of the following characteristics describes the function of a **phrasal verb**?

a) adverbial
b) verbal
c) adjectival
d) a and c
e) b and c

4. What does a prepositional idiom **require** to be considered an **idiomatic prepositional phrase**?

a) a verb
b) a noun
c) a preposition
d) an adverb

5. How does the **prepositional idiom** function in the following sentence?
“She talked **in detail** about her trip to New Zealand.”

a) adverb
b) adjective

c) verb
d) none of the above

Idioms that Start with Prepositions

Definition

Most idioms that start with prepositions are **prepositional phrases** and consist of a **preposition** followed by a **noun** or **noun phrase**. (Some idioms may take an **adjective** or **adverb** instead, but these are not considered prepositional phrases because they do not have a noun or noun phrase.) This type of **prepositional idiom** can be used adverbially or adjectivally and may come at the beginning, middle, or end of a sentence.

Examples of common prepositional idioms

Here are some of the most common prepositions found at the beginning of prepositional idioms:

- **in**
- **on**
- **out of**
- **at**
- **for**
- **by**
- **from**

As there is no way to decipher a prepositional idiom's meaning simply by looking at it, it is best to memorize as many combinations as possible. The following sections contain examples of some of the most common prepositional idioms that start with the above prepositions.

This is not an exhaustive list, however. There are other prepositions that can be used at the start of idioms, and many more combinations than the ones listed below. To learn more idioms, phrases, and phrasal verbs, check out The Free Dictionary's **Collection of Idioms and Phrases** at idioms.thefreedictionary.com.

Idioms that start with *in*

The table below shows various examples of prepositional idioms that start with the preposition *in*:

Idiom that Starts with *In*	**Meaning**	**Example Sentence**
in advance	ahead of time; before	"Sue paid for her gift **in advance**."
in brief	concisely; in a few words	"This textbook explains World War II **in brief**."
in bulk	in large amounts	"We always buy toilet paper **in bulk**."
in common	sharing a trait with someone or something else	"Dogs and wolves have several traits **in common**."
in danger	prone to danger or threatened by a dangerous situation; about to be harmed	"Those little kids are **in danger**."
in debt	owing money	"Many students are **in debt** due to the expense of higher education."
in demand	desired; wanted; sought after (usually skills or products)	"Computer skills are really **in demand** these days."
in depth	thoroughly; comprehensively	"Students must discuss their proposals **in depth** with their advisers."
in detail	thoroughly; comprehensively	"Writers describe everything **in detail**."
in the end	finally; at last	"**In the end**, what matters most is honesty."

in fact	really; actually	“The man who is dressed in a T-shirt and jeans is **in fact** the CEO.”
in general	usually; most of the time	“**In general**, owners should feed their pets at least twice a day.”
in a minute	very soon	“Angela will arrive **in a minute**.”
in particular	especially	“I love history in general, but I would like to learn more about European history **in particular**.”
in reality	really; actually	“Oftentimes, the most talkative people are **in reality** quite shy.”

Idioms that start with *on*

The table below shows various examples of prepositional idioms that start with the preposition *on*:

Idiom that Starts with *On*	**Meaning**	**Example Sentence**
on average	usually; typically; normally	“Bruce works out **on average** four times a week.”
on board	located on a ship, train, or airplane	“The ship will depart once everyone is **on board**.”
on demand	immediately available when asked for or requested	“Most people prefer to watch movies **on demand**.”
on display	being shown, showcased, or exhibited	“A famous painting is now **on display** at the museum.”
on fire	in flames; burning	“A building was **on fire** yesterday.”
on hand	available, accessible	“Do you have a notepad **on hand**?”

on the other hand	in contrast (to a previously stated point of view)	“It’s fun to see movies, but **on the other hand** tickets can be quite expensive.”
on purpose	intentionally; deliberately	“Liz left without us **on purpose**.”
on sale	being sold, especially at a reduced price	“The hat you wanted is **on sale** at the mall.”
on schedule	functioning as planned or scheduled	“The buses seem to be **on schedule** today.”
on time	at the planned or expected time (e.g., of arrival)	“Alfred never arrives **on time**.”

Idioms that start with *out of*

The table below shows various examples of prepositional idioms that start with the preposition *out of*:

Idiom that Starts with *Out of*	**Meaning**	**Example Sentence**
out of the blue	without prior indication; unexpectedly	“He showed up at our house **out of the blue**.”
out of breath	tired; exhausted; panting	“She became **out of breath** after trudging up the stairs.”
out of character	contrary to one’s personality	“Teresa has been acting **out of character** lately.”

out of harm’s way	safe	“I’m just glad the baby is **out of harm’s way**.”
out of order	not functioning or working properly; temporarily broken or unusable (usually referring to machinery)	“This printer is **out of order**.”
out of the ordinary	unusual; not normal	“His methods are **out of the ordinary**.”
out of print	no longer published or printed (usually referring to books)	“Unfortunately, that book is **out of print**.”
out of the question	impossible or unlikely; unreasonable	“Your request is **out of the question**.”
out of season	not ripe or readily available (usually fruits or vegetables)	“Grapes are **out of season** this time of year.”
out of style	not fashionable or hip	“Perms have been **out of style** for decades.”
out of time	having no more (remaining) time	“We are almost **out of time**.”
out of town	temporarily away at a location in a different vicinity	“Brian will be **out of town** this weekend.”
out of work	unemployed	“Most of my friends are unfortunately **out of work**.”

Idioms that start with *at*

The table below shows various examples of prepositional idioms that start with the preposition *at*:

Idiom that		

Starts with *At*	Meaning	Example Sentence
at all times	always	“Wear your seatbelt **at all times**.”
at fault	responsible for something bad; culpable	“She is the only one **at fault**.”
at first	in the beginning; initially	“**At first**, she attempted to speak to everyone individually."
at hand	near in space or time	“Always keep your passwords close **at hand**.”
at last	finally	“He made it to the airport **at last**.”
at once	immediately	“Go to your room **at once**!”
at rest	motionless	“An object **at rest** stays **at rest** unless acted on by an outside force.”
at risk	prone to danger or threatened by a dangerous situation	“Families residing near the volcano are especially **at risk**.”

Idioms that start with *for*

The table below shows various examples of prepositional idioms that start with the preposition *for*:

Idiom that Starts with *For*	Meaning	Example Sentence
for certain	surely; definitely; positively	“Is Desmond coming to the party tomorrow **for certain**?”
		“English isn’t the only international language;

for example	as an example; for instance	**for example**, French is the national language of many different countries.”
for fun	as a hobby; for enjoyment	“What do you usually do **for fun**?”
for good	permanently or for an extended period of time	“I’ve decided to leave this city **for good**.”
for a living	as an occupation	“Herman cleans houses **for a living**.”
for now	temporarily; for the time being	“Please go to the waiting room **for now**.”
for sale	being sold; available to be purchased	“Is this diamond ring **for sale**?”

Idioms that start with *by*

The table below shows various examples of prepositional idioms that start with the preposition *by*:

Idiom that Starts with *By*	**Meaning**	**Example Sentence**
by accident	unintentionally; not deliberately	“The kids broke the vase **by accident**.”
by all means	definitely; certainly	“Prospective students are **by all means** encouraged to visit the campus.”
by hand	without the use of machinery	“He makes intricate sculptures **by hand**.”
	unintentionally; not	

by mistake	deliberately; as a mistake	“I went to the wrong location **by mistake**.”
by the way	incidentally (used to introduce a different topic)	“**By the way**, have you written your essay yet?”

Idioms that start with *from*

The table below shows various examples of prepositional idioms that start with the preposition *from*:

Idiom that Starts with *From*	Meaning	Example Sentence
from afar	from a distance; coming from far away	“I could hear music **from afar**.”
from head to toe	all over the body	“She was covered in mud **from head to toe**.”
from scratch	from the beginning and using only the basic elements or ingredients	“Bob made raspberry cupcakes **from scratch**.”
from time to time	occasionally; infrequently	“They return to their home country **from time to time**.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following prepositions is **not** commonly found at the **beginning** of prepositional idioms?

a) from
b) out of

c) toward
d) on

2. Which of the following sentences contains an idiom that **starts with a preposition**?

a) “He’s going to end his addiction for good.”
b) “Wade went to a baseball game yesterday.”
c) “I made this card for my friend.”
d) “Our car broke down on the highway.”

3. Which of the following sentences does **not** contain an idiom that **starts with a preposition**?

a) “She stepped down from her position at the firm.”
b) “My cousins have so many things in common.”
c) “In general, summers become hottest around mid-July.”
d) “The circus troupe traveled from afar.”

4. Which of the following sentences uses a prepositional idiom **incorrectly**?

a) “Many books written over 100 years ago are out of print today.”
b) “Do you think the dress is on sale?”
c) “We must leave at once.”
d) “Perhaps she did it on mistake.”

Idioms that End with Prepositions

Definition

Idioms that end with prepositions are typically **phrasal verbs** and consist of a *verb* followed by either a *preposition*, a *particle*, or a *particle* with a *preposition*. This type of **prepositional idiom** is used like a normal verb (describing the action of a subject) and may come at the beginning, middle, or end of a sentence.

Examples of common prepositional idioms

Here are some of the most common prepositions found **at the end** of prepositional idioms:

- **up**
- **down**
- **on**
- **off**
- **with**

To determine the meanings of idiomatic phrasal verbs, we must memorize as many combinations as possible. The following sections contain examples of prepositional idioms that end with the most common prepositions.

This is not an exhaustive list, however: there are other prepositions that can be used to form phrasal verbs, and many more combinations than the ones listed below. Additionally, many phrasal verbs have several completely unrelated meanings, which we can only learn by encountering them in writing and speech. See the section on **Phrasal Verbs** to learn more about how they are formed, and see the section **Common Phrasal Verbs** to find more examples.

To learn more idioms, phrases, and phrasal verbs and their meanings, check out The Free Dictionary’s **Collection of Idioms and Phrases** at idioms.thefreedictionary.com.

Idioms that end with *up*

The table below shows various examples of prepositional idioms that end with the preposition *up*:

Idiom that Ends with *Up*	**Meaning**	**Example Sentence**
act up	to misbehave	“The toddlers have been **acting up** lately.”
blow up	to explode; to detonate or make explode	“Demolition workers **blew up** an old building to make room for a new mall.”
bring up	to mention (in conversation)	“It’s a good idea to **bring up** your career goals during a job interview.”
come up	to happen (usually unexpectedly)	“Something **came up** yesterday, so I was unable to attend the event.”
give up	to stop (doing something); to quit	“Leah is trying to **give up** smoking.”
hang up	to end a phone call	“Always **hang up** if a telemarketer tries to sell you something.”
make up	“make up” has two unrelated meanings: to create (something) through one’s imagination, or to come to terms or settle an argument (with someone)	“I **made up** a fairy tale to tell my children at bedtime.” “The siblings finally **made up** after two days of fighting.”
mix	“mix up” has two similar meanings: to	“I always **mix up** the twins when I see them—one of these days I’ll learn to tell them apart.”

up	confuse, or to or assemble something out of order	“Someone must have **mixed up** the photo albums, because these pictures are all out of order.”
show up	to come, arrive, or appear	“The groom waited all day, but the bride never **showed up**.”
shut up	to stop talking; to be quiet	“If you don’t **shut up**, I’m leaving!”
throw up	to vomit	“The girl became sick and **threw up** several times.”
turn up	to (re)appear; to be found	“I’m sure your diary will **turn up** somewhere.”

Idioms that end with *down*

The table below shows various examples of prepositional idioms that end with the preposition *down*:

Idiom that Ends with *Down*	**Meaning**	**Example Sentence**
break down	“break down” has two unrelated meanings: to stop functioning due to a mechanical failure, or to start crying or become overwhelmingly emotional (about something)	“My car **broke down** on the way here, so I had to walk the rest of the way.” “The boy **broke down** when he realized he’d failed the exam.”

die down	to lessen in intensity or become weaker	“The wind has **died down** a bit.”
let down	to disappoint	“I feel like I’ve **let down** my parents.”
pipe down	to be less loud	“**Pipe down** or I’m sending you to your room!”
play down	to make something seem less important than it truly is	“Successful people often **play down** their achievements to avoid sounding arrogant.”
step down	to resign or retire from a position	“A prominent political figure recently **stepped down** in response to a scandal.”
turn down	to reject	“She has **turned down** many marriage proposals.”
wind down	to relax	“Let’s **wind down** with some popcorn and a movie.”

Idioms that end with *on*

The table below shows various examples of prepositional idioms that end with the preposition *on*:

Idiom that Ends with *On*	**Meaning**	**Example Sentence**
catch up on	to get informed about something; to get up to date	“Helen plans to **catch up on** her reading tonight.”

	with something	
count on	to rely or depend on	“I can always **count on** you to lend me a hand when I need it most.”
drag on	to continue for a long time and become boring or tedious	“The man’s speech **dragged on** for well over an hour.”
go on	to continue	“It might seem like the end of the world, but life still **goes on** after setbacks like this.”
grow on	to eventually become liked by	“This new flavor of ice cream has really **grown on** me.”
hang on	to wait; to be patient	“Could you **hang on** a moment?”
move on	to stop focusing on the past and continue with one’s life	“Gerald struggled to **move on** after losing the tennis match.”
pick on	to tease; to make fun of or bully	“You shouldn’t **pick on** your little brother.”
tell on	to report someone else’s wrongdoing to a person of authority	“She went to the teacher to **tell on** her friend.”
try on	to put on a garment or piece of clothing to see how it fits	“I’d like to **try on** this shirt, please.”

Idioms that end with *off*

The table below shows various examples of prepositional idioms that end with the preposition *off*:

Idiom that Ends	**Meaning**	**Example Sentence**

with *Off*		
back off	to withdraw or retreat	“Some salespeople don’t know when to **back off**.”
brush off	to ignore something; to pretend something important is not important	“You can’t just **brush off** what happened between you two.”
call off	to cancel	“Employees were forced to **call off** the strike.”
drop off	to take to and deposit at some location	“Dustin usually **drops off** his shirts at the dry cleaner before work.”
kick off	to begin	“They say the festival should **kick off** around noon.”
lay off	to terminate employees	“Oil companies have had to **lay off** many workers.”
nod off	to doze; to fall asleep	“I always **nod off** during long ceremonies.”
pull off	to successfully complete a difficult task	“Penny **pulled off** the challenging dance routine.”
show off	“show off” has two distinct meanings: to display something one is proud of, or to act as if one is superior to others	“Parents love to **show off** their children’s artwork.” “That girl is always

		showing off.”
take off	“take off” has two related but distinct meanings: to become successful or popular (usually for businesses), or to depart or go into the air (e.g., an airplane)	“My online business really **took off** after it was mentioned on the news.” “The plane **took off** an hour late.”
wear off	to lose effectiveness; to stop having an effect	“I think the pain medicine is starting to **wear off**.”

Idioms that end with *with*

The table below shows various examples of prepositional idioms that end with the preposition *with*:

Idiom that Ends with *With*	Meaning	Example Sentence
come down with	to become sick; to fall ill	“Dimitri **came down with** a terrible cold.”
come up with	to think of, suggest, or develop (an idea)	“Scientists are trying to **come up with** a solution to climate change.”
do away with	to stop or abolish; to get rid of	“Some people want to **do away with** taxes.”
get along with	to have a good or friendly relationship with someone	“They don’t seem to **get along with** each other.”
get away with	to avoid punishment for a wrongdoing	“The criminals didn’t **get away with** the robbery.”
go through	to undertake or complete (usually an undesirable or	“Will your family **go through**

with	difficult action)	**with** the move to Texas?”
keep up with	to stay up to date; to stay informed about	“I can’t **keep up with** celebrity gossip.”
put up with	to tolerate	“She shouldn’t **put up with** her brother’s pranks anymore.”

Idioms that end with other prepositions

Numerous other prepositions can be used with verbs and adverbs to create idiomatic phrasal verbs. The table below shows various examples of idioms that end with some of these less commonly used prepositions:

Idiom	Meaning	Example Sentence
come across	to find something unexpectedly; to meet or see someone unexpectedly	“He **came across** a bizarre inscription on the base of the statue.” “You might **come across** some of my relatives if you move to London.”
come to	to regain consciousness	“Minutes passed before he **came to**.”
get at	to mean or to express	“What is he trying to **get at**?”
get by	to barely manage to deal with a problem or extreme situation	“The hiker managed to **get by** on a single bottle of water.”
get over	to recover from or successfully deal with something (usually an illness or difficult situation)	“She’s finally **getting over** her cold.” “He can’t **get over** his self-esteem issues.”
go		“Dad is **going through** a mid-

through	to experience (something difficult)	life crisis.”
hang out	to socialize or get together (with someone)	“Do you want to **hang out** this weekend?”
root for	to cheer for someone; to support or take sides with someone	“You’d better **root for** me if I make it to the semi-finals.”
sink in	to become clearly and gradually understood	“He let the college’s rejection **sink in** before deciding to reapply the following year.”
stick around	to wait, stay, or remain (in a place)	“Is she **sticking around** for the next act?”
tag along	to accompany	“My little sister likes to **tag along** when I go out with my friends.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following prepositions is **not** commonly found at the **end** of prepositional idioms?

a) off
b) up
c) with
d) amid

2. Which of the following sentences contains an idiom that **ends with a preposition**?

a) “Oranges are out of season right now.”
b) “The cat jumped off the tree branch.”
c) “I’d like to travel to China one day.”
d) “He likes to wind down with a glass of wine.”

3. Which of the following sentences does **not** contain an idiom that **ends with a**

preposition?

a) “We should probably do away with these old plates.”
b) “Come to my birthday party tomorrow.”
c) “Never turn down a chance at love.”
d) “Action movies are starting to grow on me.”

4. Which of the following sentences uses an idiomatic phrasal verb **incorrectly**?

a) “I came around an interesting book recently.”
b) “Did the two of you make up yet?”
c) “He has no choice but to call off the trip.”
d) “The neighbor’s dogs are acting up again.”

Conjunctions

Definition

Conjunctions are used to express relationships between things in a sentence, link different clauses together, and to combine sentences.

Without conjunctions, we would be forced to use brief, simple sentences that do not express the full range of meaning we wish to communicate. Only using simple sentences would sound unnaturally abrupt and disjointed.

By using different kinds of conjunctions, however, we are able to make more complex, sophisticated sentences that show a connection between actions and ideas.

There are four main types of conjunctions: **coordinating conjunctions, subordinating conjunctions, correlative conjunctions**, and **conjunctive adverbs**. We’ll briefly examine each kind below.

Coordinating Conjunctions

The most common conjunctions are the **coordinating conjunctions**: *and, but, or, yet, for, so* and *nor*. We use coordinating conjunctions between:

Individual words

- “I like to run **and** swim.”
- “Do you want pepperoni **or** anchovies on your pizza?”

Phrases

- “The president has been praised for both his willingness to negotiate **and** his strength in defending his principles.”

- “I am a big fan of playing sports **but** not watching them.”

Independent clauses

- “It was raining, **so** I took an umbrella.”

- “We went for a hike, **but** I didn’t bring the right shoes.”

Subordinating Conjunctions

Subordinating conjunctions connect a subordinate clause to an independent clause. For example:

- “**Although** it was raining, I didn’t take an umbrella.”
- “**Even though** she didn’t like pepperoni, she still ate the pizza.”
- “I went to work **in spite of** being sick.”
- “I intend to go to South America next month, **provided that** I can get the time off work.”

Correlative Conjunctions

Correlative conjunctions are pairs of conjunctions that work together to indicate the relationship between two elements in a sentence. For example:

- “Sports are a great way to bring people together, **whether** you like to play **or** just watch.”

- “I like **neither** pepperoni **nor** anchovies on my pizza.”

Conjunctive Adverbs

Conjunctive adverbs join two independent clauses. These can either be two separate sentences, or they can be joined into a single complex sentence with a semicolon. For example:

- “The English language school offers discounted English language courses. There’s **also** a library where you can study and borrow books.”

- “Jen hadn’t enjoyed the play; **nevertheless**, she recommended it to her friend.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What can **coordinating** conjunctions link together?

a) words
b) phrases
c) independent clauses
d) all of the above

2. How are independent clauses joined with **conjunctive adverbs**?

a) As separate sentences
b) As two independent clauses joined by a comma
c) As two independent clauses joined by a semicolon
d) A & B
e) A & C
f) B & C

3. How are independent clauses joined with **coordinating conjunctions**?

a) As separate sentences
b) As two independent clauses joined by a comma
c) As two independent clauses joined by a semicolon
d) A & B
e) A & C
f) B & C

4. What kind of conjunction is used in the following sentence?
"You can either take the exam again or receive a score of 0."

a) Coordinating conjunction
b) Subordinating conjunction
c) Correlative conjunction
d) Conjunctive adverb

Coordinating Conjunctions

Definition

Coordinating conjunctions are used to join two or more words, phrases, or independent clauses. The two elements being joined must be grammatically equal or similar in both importance and structure. There are seven coordinating conjunctions in English, which can be remembered using the acronym FANBOYS:

For
And
Nor
But
Or
Yet
So

Some coordinating conjunctions are more flexible than others. For example: *and, but*, *or*, and *yet* can join words, phrases, or independent clauses; *for, nor*, and *so* are more limited, as we'll see.

Let's look at each coordinating conjunction separately:

For

For is used to give a reason for something. It can normally only join two independent clauses, introducing the second clause as the reason for the first one.

We can use *for* whenever we mean *because*, but it's considered quite formal, literary, and even antiquated. For example:

- "I believe you, **for** you have never lied to me before."
- "He didn't come to the party, **for** he felt sick."
- "I wish you had been there, **for** we had a wonderful time."

And

And is used to add one element to another. It can join words, phrases, and entire independent clauses. For example:

- "James **and** Jack are coming to the party."
- "He ran, swam, **and** played with the other children."
- "Her beautiful long hair **and** dark brown eyes caught their attention."
- "The family moved into the new house, **and** the neighbors welcomed them warmly."

Nor

Nor is one of the most limited coordinating conjunctions. It's used to present an additional negative idea when a negative idea has already been stated. For example:

- "He *doesn't like* football, **nor** does he enjoy hockey."
- "I've *never seen* that movie, **nor** do I want to see it."
- She *hasn't been* to Paris, **nor** has she travelled to Rome."

Note that when *nor* is used to join two independent clauses, as in the examples above, **negative inversion** must be used in the second clause.

There is disagreement over whether *nor* should be used to join two elements that are *not* independent clauses. Therefore, the examples below would be considered *correct* according to some style guides and *incorrect* according to others:

- "I haven't seen **nor** heard from Mike in days."
- "He can't play football **nor** basketball."
- "She said she wasn't going to sing **nor** dance at the party."

For those who consider the above sentences to be incorrect, *or* would be the preferred coordinating conjunction, as in:

- "I haven't seen **or** heard from Mike in days."
- "He can't play football **or** basketball."
- "She said she wasn't going to sing **or** dance at the party."

But

But is used to present a contrast with previous information. It can be used to join an independent clause to a phrase or another independent clause. For example:

- "I want to go shopping **but** I can't."
- "He was upset **but** didn't cry."
- "I would love to travel more, **but** I just don't have the time."

Or

Or is used to present alternative choices or options. For example:

- "Would you like the chicken, the pork, **or** the beef?"

- “Which sport do you think is more exciting, football **or** hockey?”
- “We can go to the movies tonight, **or** we can just hang out at home.”

Yet

Yet, like *but*, is used to present contrast. However, there is a subtle implication when we use *yet* that the information is surprising in light of what we already know. For example:

- “The movie was depressing **yet** uplifting at the same time.”
- “It’s poured rain all day, **yet** they haven’t canceled the football game.”
- “I’ve read thousands of books since high school, **yet** *The Catcher in the Rye* is still my favorite.”

So

So is generally only used to join two independent clauses, where the second clause is a result of the first. For example:

- “He was exhausted, **so** he went to bed early.”
- “She was the most qualified candidate, **so** we gave her the job.”
- “He’s been working harder lately, **so** his grades are improving.”

Punctuation

Between independent clauses

When a coordinating conjunction joins two independent clauses, a comma normally precedes it, as in:

- “They moved into the new house**, and** the neighbors welcomed them warmly.”
- “I’ve never seen that movie**, nor** do I want to see it.”
- “We can go to the movie theater**, or** we can just hang out at home.”

Although it’s never *incorrect* to use a comma between two independent clauses, the comma is optional if the two clauses are very short and concise, and there is no possibility of confusion for the reader. For example:

- “He plays sports, and he’s fit.”

or

- “He plays sports and he’s fit.”

Between words or phrases

When coordinating conjunctions are used to join words or phrases that are not independent clauses, we don’t use a comma. For example:

- “James **and** Jack are coming to the party.”
- “Would you like the chicken **or** the beef?”
- “The movie was depressing **yet** uplifting at the same time.”

Before the last item in a list

A coordinating conjunction, usually *and*, is often used before the last item in a list. When we use a comma before this coordinating conjunction it is called a **serial comma** or **Oxford comma**. There are strong opposing opinions over whether this comma should ever be used. Neither side is right or wrong; it’s simply a stylistic preference. Therefore, all of the following sentences could be considered correct:

- “I like apples, bananas, pears, and figs.
- “I like apples, bananas, pears and figs.

- “She’s smart, beautiful, and witty.”
- She’s smart, beautiful and witty.”

- “We have always wanted to buy a boat, sell everything, and set sail.”
- “We have always wanted to buy a boat, sell everything and set sail.”

It should be noted that certain varieties of English use the serial comma more than others. For example, most American English style guides recommend its use. On the other hand, the majority of British English style guides recommend against it, with the most important exception being the *Oxford Style Manual* (from which the “Oxford comma” received its name).

Beginning a sentence with a coordinating conjunction

Many of us have been taught at some point that we should never begin a sentence with a coordinating conjunction. However, most grammarians and nearly all style guides state that this is not a grammatical rule, but a personal preference.

Writers often begin a sentence with a coordinating conjunction to emphasize an afterthought, lengthen a pause, or signify a shift in thinking. Commas are not used after coordinating conjunctions when they start sentences. For example:

- “She’s smart and beautiful. **And** she’s witty, too.”
- “We’ve never won anything before. **So** I doubt we’ll win this time.”
- “I think we should get Indian food. **But** maybe I want Italian instead.”

When we do start a sentence with a coordinating conjunction, we must take extra care that the sentence is not a fragment, but contains a subject, verb, and complete thought.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Coordinating conjunctions are used to join ________.

a) words
b) phrases
c) independent clauses
d) A & B
e) all of the above

2. Which of the following words **is not** a coordinating conjunction?

a) for
b) and
c) therefore
d) but

3. Complete the following sentence with the **correct** coordinating conjunction:
“I had studied a lot, ________ I did really well on the test.”

a) so
b) for
c) but
d) yet

4. Which of the following sentences is written **correctly**?

a) “He has hiked, climbed, and kayaked all over the country.”

b) “He has hiked, climbed and kayaked all over the country.”
c) “He has hiked, climbed, and, kayaked all over the country.”
d) A & B
e) All of the above

5. Which of the following sentences is written **correctly**?

a) “I have never seen a bat, nor have I seen an owl.”
b) “I have never seen a bat nor I have seen an owl.”
c) “I have never seen a bat or I have seen an owl.”
d) “I have never seen a bat nor have I seen an owl.”

Correlative Conjunctions

Definition

Correlative conjunctions, or **paired conjunctions**, are sets of conjunctions that are always used together. Like **coordinating conjunctions**, they join words, phrases, or independent clauses of similar or equal importance and structure. Unlike coordinating conjunctions, they can only join two elements together, no more. Some of the most common correlative conjunctions are:

- both … and
- either … or
- just as … so
- neither … nor
- not … but
- not only … but also
- whether … or

Functions of correlative conjunctions

both … and

We use *both … and* when we want to put emphasis on two elements that are true in a sentence. We could also use the coordinating conjunction *and*, but it doesn’t achieve the same emphatic effect. Compare:

- “This house is large and cozy.”

- “This house is **both** large **and** cozy.”

- “She cleaned her room and washed the dishes.”
- “She **both** cleaned her room **and** washed the dishes.”

- “My mother and father are bookworms.”
- “**Both** my mother **and** my father are bookworms.”

In the above examples, the sentences using *both … and* are more emphatic. Note, however, that the *both … and* construction doesn’t join independent clauses, only words or phrases.

either … or

We use *either … or* to present two options. Again, it emphasizes the fact that the choice is limited to only the two given options. For example:

- “I want to paint the house **either** white **or** green.”

- “Let’s **either** go swimming **or** go shopping.”

- “**Either** your father will pick you up, **or** you’ll get a ride home with a friend.”

neither … nor

We use *neither … nor* to negate two options. For example:

- “I have **neither** the time **nor** the patience for silly TV programs.” (I don’t have time, and I don’t have patience.)

- “**Neither** James **nor** Mike enjoys playing basketball.” (James and Mike both do not enjoy playing basketball.)

- “**Neither** does he understand, **nor** does he care.” (He doesn’t understand, and he doesn’t care.)

Note that when *neither* and *nor* begin two independent clauses, we must use **negative inversion** (the reversal of the subject and auxiliary verb) for each, as in the third example.

not … but

We use *not … but* to express a contradiction, negating the first option while emphasizing the second. For example:

- “He’s **not** happy **but** thrilled!”

- “She did **not** like **but** loved her new earrings.”

- “**Not** just one friend turned up to help, **but** the entire team arrived.”

not only … but also

We use *not only … but also* to emphasize an additional element in the sentence, especially when its occurrence seems contradictory or surprising in light of what we already know. For example:

- “This house is **not only** large **but also** cozy.” (The speaker believes that large houses are not usually cozy.)
- “She **not only** cleaned her room, **but she also** washed the dishes.” (The speaker is surprised that she did both chores.)
- “**Not only** is she an award-winning singer, **but** she **also** runs track.” (The speaker is impressed that she is able to do these two unrelated activities.)

Note that when *not only* is used to introduce an independent clause, as in the third example, we must use negative inversion (like with *neither … nor*). When *but* begins the second independent clause, the subject comes between it and *also*.

just as … so

We use *just as … so* to indicate that the two elements being joined are similar. Usually, *just as* begins an independent clause, and *so* is followed by a second independent clause. Traditionally, the clause after *so* should be inverted, as in:

- “**Just as** I love films, **so** *does my brother love* sports.”
- “**Just as** Americans love baseball, **so** *do Europeans love* soccer.”
- “**Just as** French is spoken in France, **so** *is English spoken* in England.”

However, it’s also common (especially in informal writing and speech) for this structure to occur *without* inversion, as in:

- “**Just as** I love films, **so** *my brother loves* sports.”
- “**Just as** Americans love baseball, **so** *Europeans love* soccer.”
- “**Just as** French is spoken in France, **so** *English is spoken* in England.”

whether … or

We use *whether … or* to express doubt between two possible options. *Whether* has the same meaning as *if* in this regard. For example:

- “I don’t know **whether** the white paint **or** the green paint is better.”

- “He’s not sure **whether** he’ll be able to attend the game **or** not.”

We also use *whether … or* to indicate that something will happen no matter which choice is made. For example:

- “**Whether** we stay home and eat a pizza, **or** we go out and watch a film, I’m sure we’ll have a good time.”
- “I’m going to help you **whether** you like it **or** not.”

Using correlative conjunctions

Parallel Structure

When we use correlative conjunctions, it’s important to use **parallel structure**, especially in formal writing. Parallel structure requires both elements that are joined by the correlative conjunction to be equal. For example:

- “This house is **both** *large* **and** *cozy*.” (Two adjectives are joined.)
- “Let’s **either** *go swimming* **or** *go shopping*.” (Two verb phrases are joined.)
- “**Either** *your father will pick you up*, **or** *you’ll get a ride home with a friend*.” (Two independent clauses are joined.)

Using correlative conjunctions to join non-parallel structures is considered incorrect. For example:

✖ “It was both *a long movie* **and** *boring*.” (Incorrect—a noun phrase is joined with an adjective phrase.)

✖ “I’m not sure **whether** *the white paint* **or** *painting it green* would be better.” (Incorrect—a noun phrase is joined with a verb phrase.)

✖ “**Either** *your father will pick you up* **or** *a friend*.” (Incorrect—an independent clause is joined with a noun phrase.)

Although the sentences above may be heard in everyday speech, they are considered incorrect.

Punctuation

When we use a correlative conjunction to join two independent clauses, we separate the two clauses with a comma, as in:

- “**Either** your father will pick you up, **or** you’ll get a ride home with a friend.”
- “**Not only** is she an award-winning singer, **but** she **also** runs track.”

- “She **not only** cleaned her room, **but she also** washed the dishes.”

We generally do not use commas when the two elements being joined *are not* independent clauses. For example:

- “This house is **both** large **and** cozy.”
- “I want to paint the house **either** white **or** green.”
- “**Neither** James **nor** Mike enjoys playing basketball.”

Subject-verb agreement

When we join two subjects with a correlative conjunction, subject-verb agreement can be tricky. Luckily, there are some widely accepted rules to help us.

Two singular subjects

In general, when we join two *singular* subjects using a correlative conjunction, the verb that follows should be singular. For example:

- “Neither the plumber nor the electrician *is* here yet.”
- “Not only Mike but also Daniel *is* coming with us.”

One exception to this rule is when using *both … and*. In this case, we use a plural subject:

- “Both Mike and Daniel *are* coming with us.”

Two plural subjects

When we join two *plural* subjects, the verb that follows should also be plural. For example:

- “Neither the plumbers nor the electricians *are* here yet.”
- “Not only Mike’s friends but also Daniel’s friends *are* coming with us.”

One singular and one plural subject

Sometimes, we join a singular subject to a plural subject. In this case, the majority of style guides state that the verb should agree with the noun that is closest to it. For example:

- “Every day both the cat and the dogs *wake* me up.” (*Wake* is plural because *the* *dogs* is plural.)

- “Neither my cousins nor my mom *likes* swimming.” (*Likes* is singular, because *mom* is singular.)

However, there are also those who believe that if *either* of the subjects is plural, then the verb should also be plural. According to this preference, the second sentence above would require the plural form of the verb because the first subject, *my cousins*, is plural:

- “Neither my cousins nor my mom *like* swimming.”

If this is confusing or you’re not sure which style you should use, you can avoid the problem entirely by switching the order of the subjects so that the plural subject comes closest to the verb. In this way, we satisfy both styles:

- “Neither my mom nor my cousins *like* swimming.”

Pronoun agreement

Just as we have to take extra care with subject-verb agreement, we also have to be careful with pronoun agreement when using correlative conjunctions.

Two singular subjects

When we join two *singular* subjects, we should use a singular pronoun. For example:

- “Neither Mike nor Daniel found *his* shoes.”
- “Not only Jen but also Sara lost *her* book.”

Again, *both … and* presents an exception. We normally use a plural pronoun with this correlative conjunction:

- “Both Mike and Daniel found *their* shoes.”

Two plural subjects

When we join two *plural* subjects, we should use a plural pronoun to refer back to them. For example:

- “Neither Mike’s friends nor Daniel’s friends brought *their* shoes.”
- “I don’t know whether the girls or the boys have had *their* breakfast.”

One singular subject and one plural

subject

When we join a singular subject and a plural subject, we run into the same problem that we had with subject-verb agreement. Again, the most widely accepted practice is that the pronoun should agree with whichever noun is closest to it. For example:

- “Neither Mike nor his friends stated *their* opinion.” (*Their* agrees with *his friends*.)

- “Neither Mike’s friends nor Mike stated *his* opinion.” (*His* agrees with *Mike*.)

As with subject-verb agreement, the other side of the argument is that if either of the subjects is plural, the pronoun should be plural. In this case, the second example above would be rewritten as:

- “Neither Mike’s friends nor Mike stated *their* opinion.”

Again, we can avoid the issue entirely by rewriting the sentence so that the plural subject is closest to the pronoun:

- “Neither Mike nor his friends stated *their* opinion.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Correlative conjunctions are conjunctions that join ________ together.

a) one element
b) two elements
c) three elements
d) three or more elements

2. Which of the following word pairs is **not** a correlative conjunction?

a) either … or
b) neither … nor
c) not only … but also
d) and … but

3. Complete the following sentence with the correct correlative conjunction: “________ my friend studied a lot ________ he’s a genius, because he got an A+ on the test.”

a) Either … or

b) Neither … nor
c) Not only ... but also
d) Not … but

4. Complete the following sentence with the correct correlative conjunction:
"He's ________ a great rock climber ________ an expert skier."

a) just as … so
b) whether … or
c) not only … but also
d) all of the above

5. Which of the following sentences **must** have a comma?

a) "Not only Mike but also Daniel is coming with us."
b) "I think that we should not only go skiing but also go kayaking."
c) "The house is not only large but also cozy."
d) "Not only do I need you to come home early but I also need you to pick up dinner."

Subordinating Conjunctions Definition

Subordinating conjunctions are used to create **complex sentences** containing one **independent clause**, or **main clause**, and one **dependent**, or **subordinate**, clause. The subordinating conjunction does two things: it introduces and **subordinates** the dependent clause (telling the reader that it's less important than the independent clause), and it explains what relationship it has to the independent clause. Consider the following example:

- "I went to the supermarket. We were out of milk."

Both of these sentences can stand on their own. However, there is no clear relationship between them. Instead, we can join them together with a subordinating conjunction, which would sound more natural:

- "I went to the supermarket **since** we were out of milk."

The subordinating conjunction *since* transforms the second clause from an independent clause into a dependent clause—it *subordinates* it. "*Since we were out of milk*" can no longer stand alone, but is dependent on the independent clause that it’s now connected to.

The word *since* also clarifies that the relationship between the two clauses is one of cause and effect, and it tells the reader that the independent clause, “*I went to the supermarket,*” is more important.

Structure and punctuation

When we use subordinating conjunctions to join two clauses, it doesn’t matter which clause comes first: the subordinating conjunction may appear either at the beginning or in the middle of the new sentence. Therefore, the following two sentences are both correct:

- “I went to the supermarket **since** we were out of milk.”
- “**Since** we were out of milk, I went to the supermarket.”

Note that if when we place the subordinate conjunction in the middle of the sentence, as in the *first* example, we normally *don’t* need a comma. On the other hand, when we place the subordinating conjunction at the beginning of the sentence, as in the *second* example, we normally *do* need to use a comma.

For the sake of consistency, the independent clause will appear first in the examples we look at below, but remember that this order is reversible.

Functions of subordinating conjunctions

As mentioned, one of the jobs of a subordinating conjunction is to establish the relationship between the two clauses—which conjunction we use depends on the nature of that relationship. Below are some of the most common subordinating conjunctions and their functions:

Cause	Comparison / Concession	Condition	Place	Reason	Time
as	(just) as	even if	where	in order that	after
because	although	if	wherever	so that	before
since	even though	as long as			as soon as

	though	in case			once
	whereas	provided that			until
	while	providing			when
					whenever
					while

Examples of subordinating conjunctions

Cause

We use *as*, *because*, and *since* interchangeably to state the cause of something. For example:

- “The project was successful **as** you all worked very hard.”
- “The project was successful **because** you all worked very hard.”
- “The project was successful **since** you all worked very hard.”

Each of the three examples expresses the same causal relationship, although *as* is a bit more formal in tone than *because* or *since*.

Comparison and concession

Similarities

We can use *as* to state that two ideas are similar. We can also use *just as* to add extra emphasis to this statement. For example:

- “It’s pouring rain, **as** I thought it would.”
- “She was late again, **just as** we expected.”
- “He didn’t turn up, **as** you told me he wouldn’t.”

Note that the examples above flow better with a comma, even though the subordinating conjunction is not in the initial position.

Expressing contrasts and concessions

While and *whereas* both express contrast. For example:

- "My brother worked really hard, **while** I didn't make much of an effort."
- "I can't stand watching tennis, **whereas** I love watching basketball."

While and *whereas* can be used interchangeably, but *whereas* is often considered more formal. Note also that, like with *(just) as* above, we use a comma between the clauses even though these subordinating conjunctions are not in the initial position.

We use *although, though*, and *even though* to say that something occurred in spite of something else. *Though* and *although* are interchangeable, while *even though* adds extra emphasis. For example:

- "I went to that restaurant **though/although** I was told it wasn't very good."
- "I went to that restaurant **even though** I was told it wasn't very good."

Condition

We use the subordinating conjunctions *even if, if, as long as, in case, provided that*, and *providing* when referring to a **hypothetical** situation.

If is the most common conjunction for hypothetical sentences. We use it when one action is required for another to occur. For example:

- "I will buy you a pizza **if** you help me move my furniture."
- "You should buy a new TV **if** you get a bigger apartment."

As long as, provided, provided that, and *providing* all mean the same as *if*, but they emphasize the requirement of the conditional action. We can use them interchangeably:

- "I will buy you a pizza **as long as/provided** you help me move my furniture." (I will *only* buy you a pizza if you help me.)
- "You should buy a new TV **providing/provided that** you get a bigger apartment." (You should *only* buy a new TV if you get a bigger apartment.)

We use **even if** when an outcome will occur despite a hypothetical action. For example:

- "I will buy you a pizza **even if** you don't help me move my furniture." (I will buy the pizza anyway.)

- “He’s going to pass his test **even if** he doesn’t study.” (He will pass despite not studying.)

We use *in case* to suggest a precaution against a hypothetical possibility. For example:

- “I’m bringing an umbrella **in case** it starts raining.” (I’m worried it might rain, so I’m bringing an umbrella.)
- “She put her phone on silent **in case** it rang during the movie.” (She was concerned her phone would ring in the middle of the movie, so she silenced it.)

Place

When the dependent clause is related to a place, we use *where* and *wherever*, but they are not interchangeable.

For most situations, we use *where*, as in:

- “He lives **where** it’s always sunny.” (He lives in a place that is sunny.)
- “Can we go **where** it’s a little quieter?” (Can we go to a place that is quieter?)

We use *wherever* to emphasize that we mean any or every place, rather than a specific location. For example:

- “I want to go **wherever** it’s quieter.” (I want to go to any place quieter; I don’t mind where.)
- “He bikes **wherever** he goes.” (He bikes to every place that he goes.)

Reason

We use *in order that*, *so that*, and *so* to give a reason. They are interchangeable in meaning, but differ in formality. Compare the following sentences:

- “Our boss asked us to take detailed notes **in order that** nothing would be forgotten.” (formal)
- “Our boss asked us to take detailed notes **so that** nothing would be forgotten.” (neutral)
- “Our boss asked us to take detailed notes **so** nothing would be forgotten.” (less formal)

Time

Previously

To state that the action of the independent clause occurred first, we use *before*. For example:

- "I went shopping **before** I came home." (I went shopping first.)
- "He won first prize in a spelling bee **before** starting fifth grade." (He won the prize first.)

Concurrently

When two actions occur at the same time, there are several subordinating conjunctions we can use, but each has a slightly different meaning. If we are not adding any particular emphasis, we use *when*:

- "I was sleeping **when** the phone rang."
- "I saw my brother **when** he was out with his friends."

However, to emphasize that two actions occurred (or will occur) at exactly the same time, or in rapid succession, we use *once* or *as soon as*:

- "Please clean your room **once** you get home."
- "Call me back **as soon as** you can."

Subsequently

When the action of the independent clause happens second in a series of actions, we use *after*:

- "I went shopping **after** I finished work." (I finished work first, then went shopping.)
- "He won first prize in a spelling bee **after** he started fifth grade." (He started fifth grade first, then won a spelling bee.)

Up to a certain time

To state that one action stops when another one begins, we use *until*. For example:

- "He ran track **until** he moved here." (He stopped running track when he moved here.)
- "You can borrow my jacket until I need it." (You must stop using it when I

need it.)

Any time or every time

Finally, we use *whenever* to state that the time doesn't matter, or that two actions always happen together. For example:

- "Call me **whenever** you get home." (Call me when you get home, but I don't mind when that is.)
- "She cries **whenever** she sees a sad movie." (She cries every time she sees a sad movie.)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Subordinating conjunctions are conjunctions that join ________ together.

a) two words
b) two independent clauses
c) an independent clause and a dependent clause
d) A & B

2. Which of the following words **is not** a subordinating conjunction?

a) and
b) if
c) when
d) because

3. Complete the following sentence with the **correct** subordinating conjunction:
"You can only play outside ________ your father gets home."

a) because
b) whereas
c) until
d) in case

4. Complete the following sentence with the **correct** subordinating conjunction:
"I'd rather not see that movie again ________ we just saw it last week."

a) where
b) as soon as

c) though
d) because

5. Which of the following sentences is punctuated **correctly**?

a) “He worked harder in order that he would get the promotion.”
b) “In order that he would get the promotion he worked harder.”
c) “In order that he would get the promotion, he worked harder.”
d) A & B
e) A & C

Other parts of speech

In addition to the seven **primary** parts of speech—**nouns**, **pronouns**, **verbs**, **adjectives**, **adverbs**, **prepositions**, and **conjunctions**—there are several classes of words that have unique grammatical functions but do not fit neatly into a single specific category. They often share characteristics with one or more other parts of speech, but do not properly belong to the same class.

We’ll give a brief introduction to these **other parts of speech** below; continue on to their individual sections to learn more about each.

Particles

A **particle** is a word that does not have semantic meaning on its own, but instead relies on the word it is paired with to have meaning. It is very similar to a preposition—in fact, they are almost always identical in appearance. However, prepositions are used to establish a relationship between their objects and another part of a sentence, while particles are only used to create **infinitives** and to form certain **phrasal verbs**.

Articles

There are three grammatical **articles**: *the*, *a*, and *an* (though *a* and *an* are sometimes considered a single article with two forms).

The **definite article** *the* is used to identify a specific or unique person, place, or thing, while the **indefinite articles** *a* and *an* identify nonspecific or generic people, places, or things.

Determiners

Determiners are used to introduce a noun or noun phrase and give determining information about it. Determiners often behave similarly to **adjectives** in that they modify the noun they precede, but they differ in how they signal that a noun will follow.

Gerunds

Gerunds are nouns that are formed from verbs. They are identical in appearance to present participles (the base form of the verb + “-ing”).

Because they function as nouns, gerunds can be subjects or objects, and they can also act as **adjective complements**.

Interjections

Interjections are words, phrases, or sounds used to convey emotions such as surprise, excitement, happiness, or anger. They are grammatically unrelated to any other part of a sentence, so they are set apart by commas. They are also often used alone as **minor sentences**.

Particles

Definition

A **particle** is a word that does not have semantic meaning on its own, but instead relies on the word it is paired with to have meaning. A particle cannot **inflect**—that is, its form does not change to reflect grammatical person, number, case, gender, tense, mood, aspect, or voice.

A particle is very similar to a preposition—in fact, they are almost always identical in appearance. However, prepositions are used to establish a relationship between their objects and another part of a sentence, and so they have a unique lexical meaning of their own. Particles, on the other hand, are only used to create **infinitives** and to form **phrasal verbs**.

Infinitive *to*

The particle *to* is the only particle in English that can be used to create the **infinitive form** of a verb.

To is paired with the **base form** (uninflected form) of a verb to create the infinitive, which can function as a noun, adjective, or adverb. For example:

- “**To love** another person is a wonderful thing.” (noun—subject)
- “I would like **to be** alone.” (noun—direct object)
- “I’m going to the store **to buy** milk.” (adverb—modifies the verb *going*)
- “This is a good place ***to start*** **reading**.” (adjective—modifies the noun *place*)

(Go to the section on **Infinitives** in the **Verbs** chapter to learn more about how they are used.)

Phrasal Verbs

A **phrasal verb** consists of a verb followed by either a preposition or a particle to create a unique, idiomatic meaning. Since particles and prepositions look identical, it can be tricky to know when a phrasal verb is using one or the other.

However, particles are used more like adverbs, modifying and uniquely expanding the meaning of the verbs they are paired with. For this reason, particles are sometimes referred to as adverbial particles, or even just adverbs. The key difference between particles and prepositions is that particles do not (and cannot) introduce a **prepositional phrase**, while the preposition in a phrasal verb always will.

Take the following sentence, for example:

- “My table **takes up** too much room.” (The table occupies too much space.)

Takes up is made up of the verb *take* + *up*. *Up* changes the meaning of the verb, but it does not introduce a prepositional phrase expressing direction, location, time, or possession—therefore, it is functioning as a particle.

Let’s look at another example:

- “Please **look over** the proposal and let me know what you think.” (Please quickly examine the proposal.)

Again, the particle *over* is changing the meaning of the verb *look*, but it is not introducing a prepositional phrase.

Here are some other examples of phrasal verbs formed with particles:

- “I can’t believe that you’re **giving up**!” (I’m surprised that you’re going to stop trying.)
- “We have to wait for the fire to **die down** before we can enter the building.” (We have to wait for the fire to become less intense.)

- “The plane **took off** an hour late.” (The plane began its flight later than scheduled.)
- “She is always **making up** excuses.” (She is always inventing excuses that are not true.)

Now let’s look at some examples of phrasal verbs made with **prepositions** so we can see the difference more clearly:

- “He has been **looking *after*** *his mother*.” (He has been caring for his mother.)
- “I **came *across*** *that old watch* of mine when I was cleaning out the drawers.” (I found my old watch unexpectedly.)
- “Stop **picking *on*** *your brother* like that!” (Stop teasing or harassing your brother in that way.)

We can see that the phrasal verb in each of the above examples is formed using a preposition rather than a particle, because the information that comes immediately after the phrasal verb completes a prepositional phrase (in *italics*). Without these prepositional phrases, the sentences would be incomplete.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is the only particle that can be used to create **infinitives**?

a) on
b) in
c) to
d) with

2. Which of the following is something a particle **cannot** do?

a) Conjugate to reflect tense
b) Introduce a prepositional phrase
c) Pair with a noun or adjective
d) All of the above
e) None of the above

3. Is the word in **italics** in the following sentence functioning as a particle or a preposition?
“My husband **cared *for*** me while I was sick.”

a) Particle
b) Preposition

4. Is the *italicized* word in the phrasal verb (in **bold**) in the following sentence functioning as a particle or a preposition?
“We’re looking for a substitute teacher to **fill *in*** next semester.”

a) Particle
b) Preposition

Articles

Definition

Articles identify whether a noun is **definite** (specific or particular) or **indefinite** (general or unspecific). For this reason, articles are divided into two categories: the **definite article**, *the*, and the **indefinite articles**, *a* and *an*.

The

The definite article *the* is used to identify a specific person, place, or thing. For instance:

- “I’m looking forward to **the** game.” (There is a specific game that the speaker is looking forward to.)
- “Would you pass me **the** phone?” (There is a specific phone that the speaker is asking for.)
- “She turned on **the** lamp next to her bed.” (There is a specific lamp next to her bed that she turned on.)
- “He’s going to **the** play later.” (There is a specific play that he is going to see.)

We can also use *the* to refer to plural nouns, when they are being referenced specifically, as in:

- “**The** dogs next door keep me awake with their barking.”
- “She’s looking for **the** papers she printed last night.”
- “I see that **the** students have already arrived.”

A/An

A and *an*, on the other hand, are used to identify a person or thing that is unspecific or generic—the speaker is not referring to someone or something in particular, or the person or thing may not be specifically known to the speaker. Unlike *the*, *a/an* can only be used before **singular** nouns. For instance:

- “I’m looking for **a** pen.” (There is not a specific pen that the speaker is looking for.)
- “Would you please turn on **a** light?” (There is not a specific light the speaker is asking to be turned on.)

- “There is **an** angry student waiting to speak with you.” (Although there is a particular student, he or she is unknown to the speaker.)
- “I’m waiting for **an** answer.” (There is not one specific answer the speaker is waiting for.)

Other parts of speech

Articles always modify nouns. For this reason, they are often considered a sub-class of **determiners**. However, an article can also precede a **noun phrase**, even if it begins with an adjective or an adverb. For example:

- “That was **an** ***exciting night***.” (noun phrase beginning with an adjective)
- “**The** ***truly remarkable thing*** is how long the deal took to happen.” (noun phrase beginning with an adverb)

Articles **can’t** precede verbs, however, as verbs are not used to create noun phrases.

Vowel Sounds vs. Consonant Sounds

We use the indefinite article *a* when it precedes a word beginning with a consonant sound, and we use *an* when the article precedes a word beginning with a vowel sound. Note that this rule applies to the sound of the noun, rather than the specific spelling. For example:

✖ “What **a** ***unusual*** discovery!” (incorrect)
✔ “What **an** ***unusual*** discovery!” (Correct—the word begins with the vowel “u,” and it makes the vowel sound “uh.”)

✖ “What **an** ***unique*** discovery!” (incorrect)
✔ “What **a** ***unique*** discovery!” (Correct—the word begins with the vowel “u,” but it makes the consonant sound “yu.”)

✖ “It is **a** ***honor*** to meet you.” (incorrect)
✔ “It is **an** ***honor*** to meet you.” (Correct—the word begins with the consonant “h,” but it makes the vowel sound “ah.”)

✖ “There was **an** ***heap*** of food left over.” (incorrect)
✔ “There was **a** ***heap*** of food left over.” (Correct—the word begins with the consonant “h,” and it makes the consonant sound “he.”)

Here are a few other examples where a word’s spelling goes against its pronunciation:

- **an *hour*** — makes the vowel sound “ow”
- **an *honest man*** — makes the vowel sound “awh”
- **a *university*** — makes the consonant sound “yu”
- **a *European* citizen** — makes the consonant sound “yu”
- **a *once-in-a-life-time* chance** — makes the consonant sound “wuh”

Herbs and History

One area of difficulty comes from dialectical differences between different speakers of English.

For example, the word *herb* is pronounced as “erb” (ɜːrb) in American English, with a silent “h,” so we would say “an herb.” However, in British English, *herb* is pronounced with a hard consonant “h” as “herb” (hɜːb), so “a herb” would be correct.

Similarly, some people pronounce the word “historic” and “historically” with a silent “h” in certain contexts. It is not unusual to read or hear “an historic moment” or “an historically important event,” for instance. Uniquely, the “h” is **never** silent if these words are preceded by anything other than an indefinite article, as in “the moment is historic” or “the historically significant moment.”

Some writers and grammarians believe it is never correct to pronounce *historic* or *historically* with a silent “h,” though, insisting that it can only take the indefinite article *a*, rather than *an*. In more formal or professional writing, it is advisable to follow this more strict guideline and always use the indefinite article *a*.

There are plenty of other oddities regarding spelling and pronunciation in the English language. To learn more about the various conventions, exceptions, and irregularities, see the guide on **English Spelling and Pronunciation**.

Other uses

Identifying a profession

In addition to identifying an unspecific noun, we also use the indefinite article *a/an* to talk or inquire about someone’s profession.

For example:

✖ “Are you teacher?” (incorrect)

✔ “Are you **a** teacher?” (correct)

✖ “John is engineer.” (incorrect)
✔ “John is **an** engineer.” (correct)

We only use the definite article *the* if we are referring to a particular person in that profession. For instance:

- “Are you *a* doctor?” (Unspecific—inquires about the person’s profession in general.)
- “Are you **the** doctor?” (Specific—inquires if this person is a particular doctor that the speaker was waiting or looking for.)

- “Mary is *a* technician for the gas company.” (Unspecific—Mary’s general profession is as a technician for the specific gas company.)
- “Mary is **the** technician for the gas company.” (Specific—Mary is either the *sole* technician for the gas company, or else she is a specific technician the speaker is referencing.)

Uncountable nouns

In addition to **plural nouns**, the indefinite article *a/an* cannot be used with **uncountable nouns** (also known as **mass nouns** or **non-count nouns**). These are nouns that cannot be divided or counted as individual elements or separate parts. They can be tangible objects (such as substances or collective categories of things), or intangible or abstract things such as concepts or ideas.

For example:

✖ “Would you like ***a*** **tea**?” (incorrect)
✔ “Would you like **tea**?” (correct)

✖ “Do you have ***an*** **information**?” (incorrect)
✔ “Do you have (***some/any***) **information**?” (correct)

(We often use the words *some* or *any* to indicate an unspecified quantity of uncountable nouns.)

Uncountable nouns can sometimes take the definite article *the,* as in:

- “Have you heard ***the*** **news**?”

- “***The*** **furniture** in my living room is old.”

However, this is only the case if a specific uncountable noun is being described. For example:

✖ “I am looking for ***an*** **accommodation**.” (incorrect)

✖ “I am looking for ***the*** **accommodation**.” (incorrect)
✔ “I am looking for **accommodation**.” (correct)
✔ “I am looking for ***the*** **accommodation** listed in this advertisement.” (correct—references specific accommodation)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which article is usually used when something specific is being referenced?

a) the
b) a
c) an

2. Complete the following sentence with the correct article:
“I know you have ___ long way to travel.”

a) the
b) a
c) an

3. Complete the following sentence with the correct article:
“Have you seen ___ blue pen that I like.”

a) the
b) a
c) an

4. Which of the following can the indefinite article *a/an* **not** precede?

a) noun phrases
b) adjectives
c) adverbs
d) uncountable nouns
e) all of the above
f) none of the above

5. Which of the following can the definite article *the* **not** precede?

a) noun phrases
b) adjectives
c) adverbs

d) uncountable nouns
e) all of the above
f) none of the above

Determiners

Definition

Determiners are used to introduce a noun or noun phrase. There are several classes of determiners: **articles, demonstrative adjectives, possessive adjectives, interrogative adjectives, distributive determiners, pre-determiners, quantifiers**, and **numbers**.

Determiners do two things. First, they signal that a noun or noun phrase will follow. Then, they give information about the item. They may tell us whether the item is general or specific, near or far, singular or plural; they can also quantify the item, describing how much or how many are referred to; or they can tell us to whom the item belongs. We'll look at each class of determiners separately.

Articles

There are two types of articles in English: the **definite article**, *the*, and the **indefinite article**, *a/an*. We're just going to cover the basic rules regarding when to use definite and indefinite articles. If you would like to learn more, please see the section on **Articles**.

The

In general, we use the definite article, *the*, to refer to an item or individual that is specific and unique. For example:

- "Close **the** *door* quietly; the baby is sleeping." (There is a specific door.)
- "Please pass **the** *salt*." (The speaker is requesting specific salt.)
- "Jen is **the** *woman* wearing red." (There is a unique individual wearing red clothing who is identified as Jen.)

A/an

The indefinite article, *a/an*, is used to precede a noun that is *not* a specific person, place, or thing. Instead, it indicates that it is a general member of a class of nouns. For example:

- “I’d love to have **a** *pet dog*.” (No specific or unique dog is being discussed.)
- “I heard that **a** *famous musician* is going to be there.” (The musician is unspecified because he or she is unknown.)
- “She had never been in **an** *airplane* before.” (The speaker is talking about airplanes in general, rather than a specific aircraft.)

Note that *a* is used before consonant sounds, and *an* is used before vowel sounds.

Demonstrative Adjectives

Demonstrative adjectives, or **demonstrative determiners**, are used to specify which item or individual is being referred to when it could be confused with others of the same type. There are four demonstrative adjectives, which we choose from based on whether they introduce a singular noun or a plural noun, and whether the item is near or far in relation to the speaker.

	Near	**Far**
Singular	this	that
Plural	these	those

For example:

- “**This** *pen* is mine.” (The pen is nearby, perhaps in my hand.)
- “**That** *pen*is mine.” (The pen is far away, perhaps across the room.)
- “**These** *pens* are mine.” (The pens are nearby.)
- “**Those** *pens* are mine.” (The pens are far away.)

To learn more, go to the section on **Demonstrative Adjectives** in the chapter about **Adjectives**.

Possessive Adjectives

Possessive adjectives, also known as **possessive determiners**, are used to indicate whom an item belongs to. The possessive adjectives are:

	Singular	**Plural**

1st person	my	our
2nd person	your	your
3rd person	his / her / its	their

For example:

- “**My** *house* is on Steven Street.” (The house belongs to me.)
- “Please give your sister back **her** *pencil*.” (The pencil belongs to her.)
- “Look at the dog! **Its** *tail* is wagging like crazy!” (The tail belongs to the dog.)
- “Can you fix the table? **Its** *leg* is wobbly.”* (The leg belongs to the table.)

*Note that according to certain styles, *its* is typically only used when the owner is **animate**, such as *the dog* in the example above. To avoid using *its* with inanimate objects, some writers would use the … of the … structure. For example:

- “The *leg of the table* is wobbly. Can you fix it?”

In addition to the possessive adjectives listed, we can also create possessive determiners from nouns using **apostrophes**. We attach the possessive apostrophe to the end of the noun or pronoun that names the owner. If the noun is singular, the apostrophe is usually followed by an “s.”

This possessive noun introduces and modifies the owned object, and so it is considered a determiner as well. For example:

- “Dave**’s** *car* could use a bit of work.” (The car belongs to Dave.)
- “Could you help me find Jen**’s** *keys* for her?” (The keys belong to Jen.)
- “My parents**’** *house* is on a beautiful lake.” (The house belongs to my parents.)

To learn more about using apostrophes to indicate possession, see the chapter on **Apostrophes**.

Interrogative Adjectives

Like all adjectives, **interrogative adjectives** (also known as **interrogative determiners**) modify nouns and pronouns. English has three interrogative adjectives: *what*, *which*, and *whose*. They are called “interrogative” because they are usually used to ask questions. For example:

- “**What** book are you reading?
- “**Which** shirt are you going to buy?”
- “**Whose** computer is this?”

In each of the examples, the interrogative adjective modifies the noun it immediately precedes: *book*, *shirt*, and *computer*.

To learn more, please see the section on **Interrogative Adjectives** in the chapter about **Adjectives**.

Distributive Determiners

Distributive determiners, also known as **distributive adjectives**, are used to refer to individual members within a group or within a pair. The distributive determiners are *each, every, either* and *neither*. They are used to modify singular nouns or noun phrases.

Each

Each is used when one condition applies to all members of a group equally. For example:

- “**Each** *student* must attend a meeting with a guidance counselor.”
- “**Each** *person* in my family does a fair share of the chores.”
- “Please give a pen and paper to **each** attendee.”

Every

Every is also used when a condition applies to all members of a group. It can normally be used interchangeably with *each*. For example:

- “**Every** *student* must attend a meeting with a guidance counselor.”
- “**Every** *person* in my family does a fair share of the chores.”
- “Please give a pen and paper to **every** attendee.”

However, *every* puts a slight emphasis on the group as a whole, while *each* emphasizes the individual.

Either

Either is used when a condition applies to one or the other in a pair. When we use *either*, we imply that there are two options.

- “**Either** girl could win this competition.” (There are two girls. One will win.)
- “We could give the new collar to **either** dog.” (There are two dogs. One will receive the new collar.)
- “**Either** book would be a great present.” (There are two books. One will be chosen as a gift.)

Neither

We use *neither* to state that not one or the other option is viable. For example:

- “**Neither** book would be a great present.” (There are two books; both would be unsuitable as gifts.)
- “**Neither table** will fit in our kitchen.” (There are two tables; both are too large for the kitchen.)
- “**Neither** question is easily answered.” (There are two questions; both have difficult answers.)

Pre-determiners

Pre-determiners are words that come before *another determiner* to give us more information about the noun that follows. They usually come before the articles *a/an* and *the*. Pre-determiners can be **multipliers, fractions, intensifiers**, or the words *both* and *all*.

Multipliers

Multipliers are words and expressions that modify uncountable nouns and plural countable nouns by multiplying quantity. For example:

- “I now earn **double** my previous wage.”
- “For this recipe, we need **three times** the sugar.”
- “This airplane holds **twice** the passengers as the other model.”

Fractions

Fractions are similar to multipliers, but instead of multiplying the quantity of the noun, they divide it. We usually use *of* between the fractional expression and the other determiner, but it is not always necessary. For example:

- “I used to earn **half (of)** *my* current salary.”
- “For this recipe, we need **a quarter (of)** *the* sugar as last time.”
- “**One-tenth of** *the* respondents answered ‘yes’ to my question.” (*Of* is necessary in this construction.)

Intensifiers

The most common intensifiers are *what, quite, rather*, and *such*. For example:

- “**What** a gorgeous horse!”
- “She’s **such** a sweet girl.”
- “It’s **quite** a beautiful house, don’t you think?”
- “They’re **rather** a nice group of students.”

Usage note: The words *quite* and *rather*, when used as intensifiers, are much more common in certain varieties of English than in others. For example, British English uses them often, while American English uses them much less frequently.

Both & all

Both and *all* can also occur as pre-determiners. *Both* is used when we refer to two out of two options, while *all* is used to refer to an entire amount. We often use *of* between *both/all* and the other determiner, but it is not required. For example:

- “**Both** (of) my brothers are coming with me.” (I have two brothers, and each one is coming.)
- “**Both** (of) the books have beautiful illustrations.” (There are two books and each one has beautiful illustrations.)
- “**All** (of) my brothers are coming with me.” (I have several brothers; every one of them is coming.)
- “**All** (of) the books have beautiful illustrations.” (There are many books, and they all have beautiful illustrations.)

Quantifiers

Quantifiers are used to indicate the number or quantity of the noun being referred to. The quantifier we choose depends on whether it introduces a

countable noun (sometimes called a **count noun**), or an **uncountable noun** (also known as a **mass noun**). Below, we'll look at some of the most common quantifiers:

With countable nouns

These are some of the most common quantifiers for countable nouns only, listed in order from largest to smallest quantity:

- many
- each
- several
- a few*
- a couple (of)
- both
- few*
- not many
- none of the

Note that when we use quantifiers with countable nouns, we use the plural form of the noun after the quantifier.

For example:

• "There are **many** *private schools* in this town."

• "**Both** *girls* went to the party."

• "**Not many** *people* came to the book launch."

*Usage Note: There is an important distinction between *a few* and *few*. While *a few* has a more positive connotation of signifying that there is enough of an item, *few* has the more negative connotation of signifying that there is not enough of an item. Compare the following two sentences:

• "There were **a few** *people* at the meeting." (more positive)

• "There were **few** *people* at the meeting." (more negative)

With uncountable nouns

These are some of the most common quantifiers for uncountable nouns only, in order from largest to smallest quantity:

- a good/great deal of (formal)

- a load of / loads of / heaps of / tons of (informal)
- a lot of (neutral)
- a (little) bit of
- a little*
- little*
- not much

For example:

• "We have **a lot of** *coffee* already, so don't buy anymore."

• "Could you lend me **a bit of** *sugar*?"

• "**Not much** *effort* is needed."

*Usage Note: *A little* and *little* have the same important distinction as *a few* and *few*. *A little* has the positive connotation of signifying that there is enough of an item, while *little* has the negative connotation of indicating that there is not enough. Compare the following two sentences:

• "We still have **a little** milk left." (We have enough, but not much.)

• "We have **little** milk left." (We need more.)

With either countable or uncountable nouns

Finally, these are some of the most common quantifiers that can be used with either countable or uncountable nouns:

- all of the
- most of the
- a lot of / lots of / plenty of
- enough
- some
- a lack of
- no

For example:

• "**All of the** *recipes* call for sugar." (countable)
• "**All of the** *sugar* is needed." (uncountable)

- “Don’t worry, we have **enough** *cars* to get us all there.” (countable)
- “Don’t worry, we have **enough** *time* to get there.” (uncountable)

Numbers

Numbers can also be determiners when they are used to introduce and modify a noun. Both **cardinal numbers** (numbers signifying an amount of something) and **ordinal numbers** (numbers signifying rank or position in a list) are able to function in this way.

Cardinal numbers

Cardinal numbers are used to count the specific quantity of a noun. As such, they can only be used with countable nouns.

In writing, a common rule is to spell out the numbers *one* through *nine*, and use **numerals** for the numbers *10* and higher. For example:

- “My father’s company has **10** *cars* and **20** *drivers*.”
- “I’m taking **12** *shirts* and **three** *pairs of jeans* on my vacation.”
- “There were **160** *participants* in the competition.”

An alternate rule is to spell out one-word numbers and use numerals for multi-word numbers. So, the examples above would be rewritten:

- “My father’s company has **ten** *cars* and **twenty drivers**.”
- “I’m taking **twelve** *shirts* and **three** *pairs of jeans* on my vacation.”
- “There were **160** *participants* in the competition.”

However, there are many variations of style for writing numbers. In the end, it is best to be consistent, or to follow the style guide best suited to the type of writing you are doing.

Ordinal Numbers

Ordinal numbers do not represent quantity, but are used to indicate the rank or position of a noun in a list or series. They have two written forms: spelled out, or *numeral + suffix*:

Spelling	Numeral & Suffix
first	1st

second	2nd
third	3rd
fourth	4th
fifth	5th
sixth	6th
seventh	7th
eighth	8th
ninth	9th
tenth	10th
eleventh	11th
twelfth	12th
thirteenth	13th
fourteenth	14th
fifteenth	15th
sixteenth	16th
seventeenth	17th
eighteenth	18th
nineteenth	19th
twentieth	20th
twenty-second	22nd
twenty-third	23rd
twenty-fourth	24th

thirtieth	30th
fiftieth	50th
hundredth	100th

Note that numbers ending in *one, two*, and *three* have different suffixes than the rest of the numbers. A common rule in writing is to spell out *first* through *ninth* and to use the *numeral + suffix* for numbers *10* and higher. For example:

- “He won **first** *prize*!”
- “I went to Las Vegas for my **30th** *birthday*.”
- “I was the **42nd** *person* in line.”

An alternate rule is to spell out one-word ordinal numbers, but to use the *numeral + suffix* equivalent for multi-word ordinal numbers. So, the examples above would be written as follows:

- “He won **first** *prize*!”
- “I went to Las Vegas for my **thirtieth** *birthday*.”
- “I was the **42nd** *person* in line.”

Again, no matter which way you choose to write them, the key is to be consistent.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Determiners introduce ________.

a) verbs
b) nouns
c) adjectives
d) clauses

2. Which of the following words **cannot** function as a determiner?

a) some
b) the
c) when
d) ten

3. Complete the following sentence with the **correct** determiner:
“Can you buy ________ more sugar? We don’t have much left.”

a) ten
b) a
c) the
d) some

4. Complete the following sentence with the **correct** determiner:
“I’m afraid we need to go shopping. There’s very ________ milk left.”

a) little
b) much
c) a lot
d) some

5. Complete the following sentence with the **correct** determiner:
“Please give me ________ glass of water. I can’t reach it.”

a) this
b) that
c) these
d) those

Possessive Determiners

Definition

Possessive determiners, also known as **possessive adjectives**, are a class of **determiners** that are used to modify nouns to denote possession. They take the place of the definite article *the*, and state *whom* or *what* an item belongs to. We use a different possessive determiner to correspond with each **personal pronoun**. The main possessive determiners in English are:

Personal Pronoun	Possessive Determiner
I	**my**
you	**your**
he	**his**

she	**her**
it	**its**
we	**our**
they	**their**

The word *whose* and the structure *noun + possessive apostrophe* also function as possessive determiners, as we will see.

Using Possessive Determiners

Sentence placement

Possessive determiners are usually placed in front of the noun they modify. For example:

- “You remember Hannah, right? This is **her** *brother*, Richard.”
- “Please return **my** *books* as soon as possible.”
- “Have they found **their** *tickets* yet?”
- “The Earth spins on **its*** *axis*.”

If the noun is further modified by one or more other determiners, the possessive determiner is placed first. For example:

- “You remember Hannah, right? This is **her** little *brother*, Richard.”
- “Please return **my** three library *books* as soon as possible.”
- “Have they found **their** train *tickets* yet?”
- “The Earth spins on **its** invisible *axis*.”

(*Usage Note: A common mistake is to use an apostrophe with the word *it* when we want to indicate possession. *It’s* is a **contraction** that we use instead of writing out *it is* or *it has*. If we want to denote possession, we must use *its* without an apostrophe.)

Whose*

Whose is used as a possessive determiner in **interrogative sentences** to inquire about possession, as well as in indirect questions when the identity of the owner is unknown. For example:

- “**Whose** *coat* is this?”
- “Do you know **whose** *idea* this was?”
- “I need to find out **whose** *car* this is. They keep parking in my spot.”

(*Usage Note: Similar to the issue with *its*, a common mistake is to use *who’s* rather than *whose* when we want to inquire about possession. *Who’s* is a contraction of *who is*; if we want to denote possession, we must use the possessive determiner *whose*.

The possessive apostrophe

We can form possessive determiners from other pronouns, nouns, and noun phrases by adding the **possessive apostrophe** + “s” (or just the apostrophe for plural nouns). For example:

- “Caring for **one’s** *family* is very important.”
- “**Hannah’s** *car* is parked outside; she must have already arrived.”
- “The former **Attorney General’s** *recommendations* were included in the report.”
- “Our school takes **parents’** concerns very seriously.”

Differences with possessive pronouns

Possessive determiners are often confused with **possessive personal pronouns** (*mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs*). Although some of the forms overlap, there are important distinctions between the two types of possessives.

While possessive pronouns can stand on their own, taking the place of a noun, possessive determiners cannot. For example:

- Speaker A: “Whose is this book?”

✔ Speaker B: “It’s **mine**.” (correct)
✖ Speaker B: “It’s **my**.” (incorrect)

The second example is incorrect because possessive determiners, such as *my*, can modify a noun, but cannot replace one. We would need to include the noun *book* in order to use the possessive determiner, as in:

- Speaker A: “Whose is this book?”

✔ Speaker B: “It’s **my** *book*.” (correct)

Note, however, that possessive determiners formed using "*-'s*" can function both as determiners **and** pronouns, as in:

- Speaker A: "Whose is this book?"

✔ Speaker B: "It's **Jane's** *book*." (correct)
or
✔ Speaker B: "It's **Jane's**." (correct)

Another distinction is that although the structure *of* + *possessive pronoun* can be used to create a possessive sentence, a possessive determiner gives the noun a more definite meaning. Compare the following two sentences:

- "A *friend of mine* is going to come with us."
- "**My** *friend* is going to come with us."

The first example gives the impression that either the speaker is unsure which friend is going to come, or that the listener has never met the friend. On the other hand, the second example, which uses the possessive determiner *my* to directly modify the noun *friend*, gives the impression that the speaker has a definite friend in mind, and/or the listener is familiar with this friend.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Possessive determiners modify ________.

a) nouns
b) verbs
c) adjectives
d) adverbs

2. Which of the following is a possessive determiner?

a) it's
b) Hank's
c) who's
d) they're

3. Which of the following words is **not** a possessive determiner?

a) my
b) his
c) their

d) hers

4. Complete the following sentence with the possessive determiner that is **most correct**:
“Your sister is worried that ________ phone might be lost. She hasn’t been able to find it since last night.”

a) his
b) their
c) our
d) her

5. Complete the following sentence with the possessive determiner that is **most correct**:
“We should go shopping; ________ fridge is looking empty.”

a) our
b) her
c) their
d) its

6. Complete the following sentence with the possessive determiner that is **most correct**:
“Look at that dog! ________ eyes are so blue!”

a) your
b) my
c) its
d) their

Gerunds

Definition

A **gerund** is the “-ing” form of a verb when it functions grammatically as a noun in a sentence. Gerunds are identical in appearance to **present participles**, but they are not used to form tenses of the verb or provide adjectival information.

Gerunds can either stand alone, or they can take a noun (the object of the gerund) and/or modifier(s) to form a **gerund phrase**.

Functions in a sentence

Because they act like nouns, gerunds can be used as the subject of a sentence, the subject complement of the linking verb *be*, the object of a preposition, or the object of a verb. They can also be used to form **compound nouns**.

As the subject

Just like a normal noun, a gerund or gerund phrase can be the subject of a sentence. For example:

- “**Swimming** is an excellent form of exercise!” (gerund only)
- “**Eating vegetables** gives you a lot of extra energy.” (gerund + object)
- “**Studying too hastily** will result in a poor grade.” (gerund + adverb(s))
- “**Reading romantic literature** proves to be an unpopular pastime among academics.” (gerund + adjective + noun)
- “**Working from home** allows me to spend more time with my family.” (gerund + prepositional phrase)

Adverbs modifying gerunds

Notice that in our third example, the gerund *studying* is being modified by an adverb, *hastily* (itself modified by *too*). Likewise, *working* in the last example is modified by the adverbial prepositional phrase *from home*.

This may seem contradictory, since gerunds act like nouns, and adverbs **can’t** modify nouns. However, in this case, it is the gerund *phrase* that is functioning as a noun, so the gerund itself can still be modified by an adverb in the same way as a normal verb.

Present participial clauses

It’s often easy to confuse present participles for gerunds because they look identical and operate in very similar ways. For instance, the present participles of verbs can be used to create dependent clauses that modify the rest of the sentence. For example:

- “**Singing in the shower**, *I* was oblivious to the doorbell ringing.” (I was singing.)
- “**Having seen** the movie before, I wouldn’t want to see it again.”

Although they look quite similar, these clauses function like an adjective, whereas the gerund phrases we looked at above act like nouns functioning as the **subjects** of their sentences.

As a subject complement

Like **predicative adjectives**, gerunds can act as subject complements after the linking verb *be*. In this case, the gerund acts as a kind of modifier that gives more information about the sentence's subject. For example:

- "My main responsibility here ***is*** **operating the forklift**." (*operating* complements the noun *responsibility*)
- "My favorite thing about being in Japan ***is*** **eating sushi**." (*eating* complements *thing*)
- "The best thing in life ***is*** **spending time with loved ones.**"

Again, we have to be careful that we don't mistake a gerund for the present participle of a verb. This can be easy to do, because the present participle is paired with the verb *be* to form the **present continuous tense** and the **past continuous tense** of verbs, as in:

- "I **am running** five miles tomorrow." (present continuous tense)
- "I heard you **are operating the forklift** at work now." (present continuous tense)
- "I **was singing** in the shower when the doorbell rang." (past continuous tense)
- "She **was eating** dinner when I called." (past continuous tense)

Remember that a gerund or gerund phrase functions as a noun—if the sentence still makes grammatical sense after the word or phrase is replaced by a normal noun, then we are dealing with a gerund; if it does not make sense after being replaced by a normal noun, then it is a present participle.

As objects

Of prepositions

Gerunds are used as the objects of prepositions to describe an action that modifies another action, thus creating **adverbial prepositional phrases**. These can occur at the beginning, middle, or end of the sentence. For example:

- "**After sneezing**, I always get the hiccups."

- “I’m going to improve my health **by running** six miles every night.”
- “She started going crazy **from so much waiting**.”
- “He’s not **against marrying** me, he just isn’t ready.”

Of verbs

Gerunds can also act as the direct object of some verbs. Here a few examples:

- “Do you **mind watching** my seat for me while I go to the bathroom?”
- “I really **love hiking** in the mountains.”
- “I **enjoy eating** at restaurants, but Jenny **prefers cooking** at home.”
- “He **remembered turning** off the oven, but his husband thought he’d left it on.”
- “They **couldn’t help feeling** sorry for Bob.”

(If you want to see more examples, go to the section **Gerunds as Objects of Verbs**.)

Of phrasal verbs

Just like they do with normal verbs, gerunds can also function as the object of **phrasal verbs**. For example:

- “I am ***counting on*** **getting** tickets to that new movie.”
- “They’re ***looking forward to*** **meeting** you later.”

Forming compound nouns

Gerunds can be paired with regular nouns to become **compound nouns**, as in:

- “His new **running shoes** were already covered in mud.”
- “I’m hoping she can give me a **helping hand**.”
- “The **working conditions** are very poor here.”

These are distinct from *gerund* phrases, where the noun is functioning as the object of the gerund, as in our previous example of “**Eating vegetables** is good for your health.”

They should also not be confused with present participles that are functioning as adjectives. Though they look quite similar, adjectival present participles imply *action* on the part of the noun being modified. For example:

- “She soothed the **crying** *baby*.” (The baby is crying).
- “The **speeding** *car* crashed into the tree.” (The car was speeding.)

As an object complement

For certain **factitive verbs**, gerunds can also act as **object complements**. Object complements function by renaming or reclassifying a direct object, or by stating what the direct object has become or is doing. Gerunds can only function as object complements that state what the direct object is or was doing.

In the following examples, the verb or phrasal verb is *italicized*, the direct object is underlined, and the gerund or gerund phrase (as object complement) is in **bold**:

- “We *came across* him **lying in the yard**.”
- “My mother *noticed* the baby **walking by himself**.”
- “I can’t believe the bosses *caught* you **napping**.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. In which of the following ways is a gerund **not** able to function?

a) As the subject of a sentence
b) As the object of a verb
c) As an adjective clause
d) As a subject complement

2. Which of the following linking verbs can a gerund follow as a **subject complement**?

a) be
b) become
c) seem
d) appear

3. In which of the following sentences is the word *talking* a gerund?

a) “I’ll be talking to your teacher after school.”
b) “I really love talking with my friends.”
c) “The talking students were oblivious to the principal.”
d) “Talking with her parents, it seems like there might be some issues at home.”

4. When gerunds function as the objects of **prepositions**, where can they occur in a sentence?

a) At the beginning
b) In the middle
c) At the end
d) All of the above
e) None of the above

5. Which of the following sentences does **not** use a gerund?

a) “His love of eating is going to lead to serious health problems.”
b) “One of the best things about spring is smelling all the flowers.”
c) “They had been driving for hours before they found a hotel.”
d) “We began shouting at the top of our lungs for the bus to stop.”

Gerunds as Objects of Verbs

Definition

Gerunds very frequently function as the direct objects of “true” verbs. However, there are some verbs that are more likely to take gerunds as objects than others.

In this section, we’ll look at some common verbs that take gerunds as their direct object to get a sense of how they’re used.

Stative vs. Action Verbs

Stative verbs that take gerunds

Stative verbs, also known as **verbs of feeling**, are very likely to take gerunds as their objects.

Here are some examples of common stative verbs that take gerunds (keep in mind that this is not an exhaustive list):

Stative verb	Example with a gerund as an object
love	“I **love** ***going*** to the movies.”

like	“I **like** ***living*** by the ocean.”
enjoy	“Do you **enjoy** ***working*** in retail?”
mind	“Would you **mind** ***watching*** my seat for me while I go to the bathroom?”
feel like	“I **feel like** ***staying home*** tonight.”
stand	“She can’t **stand** ***being*** around him.”
imagine	“**Imagine** ***winning*** the lottery. It would be great!”

Action verbs that take gerunds

Certain **action verbs** (also called **dynamic verbs**) can also take a gerund as their object if describing a secondary action. For instance:

Action verb	Example with a gerund as an object
admit (to)	“He **admitted (to)** ***cheating*** on the exam.”
avoid	“He always tries to **avoid** ***doing*** his homework.”
consider	“He is **considering** ***moving*** to London.”
delay	“He **delayed** ***paying*** his phone bill.”
deny	“He **denied** ***stealing*** the money.”
insist on	“He **insisted on** ***giving*** me a ride to the train station.”
keep/continue	“Please, **keep/continue** ***telling*** me your story.”
mention	“She **mentioned** ***meeting*** him for a coffee earlier.”
practice	“She **practices** ***speaking*** English whenever she gets the chance.”
recommend	“I **recommend** ***going*** to the mountains in the summer.”

resist	“She **resisted** ***sneaking out*** to the party down the road.”
suggest	“They **suggested** ***staying*** at a five-star hotel.”

Again, the above is not a complete list. There are many other dynamic verbs that will take a gerund as their object.

Gerunds vs. Infinitives

Gerunds and **infinitives** are both verb forms that can function as nouns, and, as such, they are both often used as the objects of “main” verbs. In many cases, we can use **either** the infinitive *or* the gerund in addition to “standard” nouns.

Some verbs, however, can only be followed by infinitives and **not** gerunds. In each example below, we can see how a gerund does not fit with the main verb:

✓ Infinitive (Correct)	× Gerund (Incorrect)
“They **promised** ***to be*** quiet in the car.”	“They **promised** ***being*** quiet in the car.”
“I **agreed** ***to leave*** him alone.”	“I **agreed** ***leaving*** him alone.”
“She **asked** ***to see*** the landlord about the faulty stove.”	“She **asked** ***seeing*** the landlord about the faulty stove.”

Likewise, some verbs are followed only by gerunds and **not** infinitives. In most cases, these are action verbs. For example:

✓ Gerund (Correct)	× Infinitive (Incorrect)
“I **recall** ***seeing*** an advertisement for that somewhere.”	“I **recall** ***to see*** an advertisement for that somewhere.”
“I **recommend** ***reading*** *Moby Dick* at some point in your life.”	“I **recommend** ***to read*** *Moby Dick* at some point in your life.”
“He’ll **consider** ***hearing*** your side of the story later, if he has time.”	“He’ll **consider** ***to hear*** your side of the story later, if he has time.”

Unfortunately, there is not a set of rules to determine which verbs can take which forms as their objects.

Verbs followed by both gerunds and infinitives

For other verbs, we can use **either** the infinitive **or** the gerund.

Most of the time, there is no difference in meaning when we substitute the infinitive for the gerund. This is especially true for **stative verbs**. For example, each of the following pairs mean the same thing:

Gerund	Infinitive
“I **like** ***hiking***.”	“I **like** ***to hike***.”
“I **love** ***swimming***.”	“I **love** ***to swim***.”
“I **prefer** ***going out*** on the weekend.”	“I **prefer** ***to go out*** on the weekend.”

With some verbs, we can use both the infinitive and the gerund, but the meaning of the sentence changes subtly as a result. In this case, we have to use context to understand the meaning completely. For example:

Infinitive	Gerund
“I **remembered** ***to close*** the window.” (I didn’t forget to do this)	“No, I didn’t leave the window open. I **remember** ***closing*** it.” (I recall doing this)
“I **forgot** ***to read*** this book for school.” (I didn’t remember to do this, so it didn’t happen)	“I **forget** ***reading*** this book for school.” (I don’t recall this fact)
“I’ve been **trying** ***to call*** you all day, but the line has been busy.” (Attempt to do something)	“**Try** ***calling*** my cell phone next time.” (This is a possible solution to the problem)
“I **stopped** ***drinking*** sugary drinks because of my health.” (I don’t drink	“I **stopped** ***to drink*** at the well.” (I interrupted what I was doing to

sugary drinks anymore)	drink from the well)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following verbs will **not** take a gerund as its object?

a) deny
b) neglect
c) recommend
d) love

2. Which kind of verb is **more likely** to take a gerund as its object?

a) linking verb
b) auxiliary verb
c) stative verb
d) dynamic verb

3. Identify the gerund in the following sentence.
"I am waiting to see if the doctor recommends getting a transplant."

a) waiting
b) to see
c) recommends
d) getting

4. True or false: All gerunds can be replaced by infinitives when they function as the objects of verbs.

a) true
b) false

Interjections

Definition

An **interjection**, also known as an **exclamation**, is a word, phrase, or sound used to convey an emotion such as surprise, excitement, happiness, or anger. Interjections are very common in spoken English, but they appear in written

English as well. Capable of standing alone, they are grammatically unrelated to any other part of a sentence.

Primary Interjections

Primary interjections are interjections that are single words derived not from any other word class, but from sounds. Nonetheless, primary interjections do have widely recognized meaning. Some common primary interjections are:

Primary Interjection	Emotion
aah	fear
aha	triumph, sudden understanding
argh	frustration
brr	being cold
eww	disgust
grr	anger
hmm	thinking
ooh	amazement, being impressed
phew	relief
yay	approval, happiness

Secondary Interjections

Secondary interjections are interjections derived from words that *do* belong to other word classes—they may be adjectives, nouns, or entire clauses. Again, they have nothing to do with the grammar of the sentences that come before or after them. Some common secondary interjections are:

- bless you
- congratulations
- good grief

- hell
- hey
- hi
- oh my
- oh my God
- oh well
- shoot
- well
- what

Curse words (vulgar or offensive words; also called swear words) are also considered interjections when they are not linked grammatically with another part of a sentence.

Sentence Placement

Interjections are more commonly used in speech; however, we sometimes do need to express them through writing, especially if we are trying to capture dialogue. Usually, the interjection is placed before the sentence that explains the cause of the emotion. For example:

- “**Ooh**, that’s a beautiful dress.”
- “**Brr**, it’s freezing in here!”
- “**Oh my God**! We’ve won!”
- “**Wow**! What a great achievement!”

Punctuation

As mentioned, interjections can stand alone. Therefore, they can be punctuated with a period, an exclamation point, or a question mark. The punctuation we choose depends on the emotion that we want to convey. However, since interjections are not complete sentences, some writers prefer to attach them to a complete sentence with a comma. Ultimately, it is up to preference.

Exclamation point

We use an exclamation point when the emotion we want to convey is very strong and is not a question. For example:

- “**Hooray!** I got accepted to my top choice university!”
- “**Yuck!** I hate coconuts!”
- “**Congratulations!** That was an impressive victory.”

Period or comma

When the expression is weaker, we can use a period or a comma. For example:

- “**Well**, isn’t that nice?”
- “**Oh well**, I’m sure we’ll have better luck next time.”
- “**Shoot.** I really thought we were going to win.”

Question mark

If the interjection expresses disbelief, uncertainty, or is interrogative, we should use a question mark. For example:

- “**Huh?** You’re not coming?”
- “**Well?** Are we going to watch a movie?”
- “**What**? You don’t like coconuts?”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Interjections are ________ to the grammar of the sentence that follows.

a) somewhat related
b) related
c) not related

2. Which of the following is a **primary interjection**?

a) well
b) oh my god
c) ugh
d) hello

3. Complete the following sentence with the **most appropriate** interjection:
“________! I really thought we were going to lose!”

a) Phew

b) Oh no
c) Yuck
d) Argh

4. Complete the following sentence with the **most appropriate** interjection:
“________. I’m still not sure of the right answer.”

a) Eew
b) Phew
c) Hmm
d) Congratulations

5. Complete the following sentence with the **most appropriate** interjection:
“________. That bread is all moldy.”

a) Yay
b) Eww
c) Phew
d) Ooh

Inflection (Accidence)

Definition

Grammatical **inflection** (sometimes known as **accidence** or **flection** in more traditional grammars) is the way in which a word is changed or altered in form in order to achieve a new, specific meaning.

Verbs are the most commonly inflected words, changing form to reflect grammatical **tense**, as well as **mood**, **voice**, **aspect**, **person**, and **speech**. Collectively, this is known as **conjugation**.

The other parts of speech that can undergo inflection are nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs. These are categorized collectively under the term **declension**.

Most inflection is done according to consistent rules and patterns, but, as we'll see, there are many words that are **irregularly inflected**.

We'll look at the basics of conjugation and declension below, and then briefly discuss regular vs. irregular declension. Continue on to the individual sections to learn more about them in greater detail.

Conjugation

Below, we'll give a brief overview of the different elements used in **conjugation**. Continue on to **Conjugation** or go to its individual sections to learn more about each.

Tense

When we discuss conjugating verbs, we are usually referring to how a verb changes according to **tense**—that is, when an action happened in time. Verbs in their basic form are naturally in the **present tense** (specifically known as the **present simple tense**). For example:

- "She **walks** to work."
- "We **live** in the city."
- "They **work** too hard."
- "He **sings** for an hour."

Verbs can only be truly inflected for the **past tense** (specifically the **past simple**

tense). Most verbs are changed by adding “-d” or “-ed” to their end (which also forms their **past participle** form). However, many verbs are considered **irregular** and have past tense and past participle forms that cannot be predicted. For example:

- “She **walked** to work.” (regular verb)
- “We **lived** in the city.” (regular verb)
- “He **sang** for an hour.” (irregular verb)

Using **auxiliary verbs** and verb **participles**, we can also create the **continuous**, **perfect**, and **perfect continuous** forms of either the past or present tense. For instance:

- “She **is walking** to work.” (**present continuous tense**)
- “We **have lived** in the city.” (**present perfect tense**)
- “They **had been working** too hard.” (**past perfect continuous tense**)
- “He **had sung** for an hour.” (**past perfect tense**)

Finally, we can also form an *approximation* of the **future tense**. Verbs do not have a specific form to reflect future action, so we use other verb constructions to achieve this meaning, usually the **modal auxiliary verb** *will*, as in:

- “She **will walk** to work.” (**future simple tense**)
- “We **will be living** in the city.” (**future continuous tense**)
- “They **will have worked** too hard.” (**future perfect tense**)
- “He **will have been singing** for an hour.” (**future perfect continuous tense**)

Aspect

Grammatical **aspect** is concerned with how an action, state of being, or event occurs in time; we use it with tense to create specific forms of verbs in relation to time.

Each verb tense has four aspects, or temporal structures: the *simple*, the *perfect*, the *continuous*, and the *perfect continuous*. These coincide with the different verb tenses we looked at above. When we form the **present continuous tense** (“I **am walking**”), for instance, we are actually using the **continuous aspect** of the present tense.

Continue on to the **Aspect** section in this chapter to learn more about how aspect is used with verb tenses.

Mood

Most of the time when we speak or write, we are discussing or asking what is true, real, or actually happening. This is known as the **indicative mood**. For instance:

- “I ate breakfast at 3 o’clock.”
- “We are going swimming this afternoon.”
- “Will they be there tonight?”

When discussing an unreal, hypothetical, or desired situation, we use what’s known as the **subjunctive mood**. This is usually marked by putting the verb in the past tense, as in:

- “I wish it **was/were*** Saturday.”
- “If I **had** a million dollars, I **would** move to the Bahamas.”

(*Traditionally, the verb *be* always conjugates to *were* in the subjunctive mood, regardless of the subject of the sentence. However, it is becoming common in modern English to use *was* if the subject is singular.)

When we make direct commands to someone, we use what’s known as the **imperative mood** to form **imperative sentences**. They have no subject (it is implied), and the verb is in the **base** or **bare infinitive** form. For example:

- “**Close** that window!”
- “**Sit** down, please.”

Voice

Voice has to do with the relationship between a verb and its source of agency—the person or thing performing or controlling the action of the verb. This is usually **the subject** of the sentence or clause, which is known as being in the **active voice**. For instance:

- “He **wrote** the book.”
- “The Millers **are preparing** dinner.”

We can also construct sentences in which the subject of the sentence is **not** the agent of the verb, but rather the **object** of its action. If the agent is identified, it is only in a prepositional phrase at the end of the sentence. This is known as **passive voice**. For example:

- "The book **was written** (*by him*)."
- "Dinner **was prepared** (*by The Millers*)."

Grammatical Person

Grammatical **person** refers to whether the subject is the speaker or writer (first person), someone being directly addressed (second person), or a person or thing that is being spoken or written about (third person). Each of these can be either singular or plural.

Almost all verbs are conjugated a specific way only if the subject is in the third person, is singular, and is in the present tense. We do so by adding an "-s" or "-es" to the end of the verb, as in:

- "I *walk* everywhere." (first-person singular)
- "She/he/it ***walks*** everywhere." (third-person singular)

The exception to this is the verb *be*, which has several unique conjugations for grammatical person and tense. For example:

- "I **am** outside." (first-person singular, present tense)
- "She/he/it **is** outside." (third-person singular, present tense)
- "I/she/he/it **was** outside." (first/third-person singular, past tense)
- "You/we/they **are** outside." (first/second/third-person plural, present tense)
- "You/we/they **were** outside." (first/second/third-person plural, past tense)

Speech

Speech refers to the quotation of or reference to something said or written by someone else. When we say exactly what someone said (known as **direct speech** or **direct quotation**), we use quotation marks, as in:

- Mary said, **"I want to have another baby,"** which took him by surprise.

When we are only paraphrasing or summarizing what someone said, it is known as **reported** or **indirect speech** and we do **not** use quotation marks. For example:

- Mary told me that **she hadn't been serious**.

Declension

While conjugation only deals with the inflection of verbs, **declension** covers the inflection of nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs.

Declension of nouns

Generally, we only *decline* nouns to mark **plurality**—that is, whether there is more than one person, place, or thing being discussed. We usually do so by adding an “-s” or “-es” to the end of the noun, as in *books*, *watches*, *toys*, *cars*, etc. There are a few other spelling patterns that apply, and there are a number of **irregular plurals** that do not follow any conventions at all—go to the section on **Plurals** to learn more.

We can also decline certain nouns to reflect **gender**, as in *prince* (masculine) vs. *princess* (feminine). However, the majority of nouns in English are **not** inflected for gender.

Declension of pronouns

For the most part, only **personal pronouns** are subject to inflection. We decline personal pronouns based on grammatical **person**, **number**, **gender**, and **case**. The pronouns *who* and *whoever* can also be declined to *whom* and *whomever* to reflect the **objective case**; however, this is becoming less common in everyday speech and writing.

The table below provides a quick breakdown of the various personal pronouns. (**Reflexive pronouns**, though not technically a type of personal pronoun, are so closely related in form that they have been included as well.) Continue on to the **Declension** chapter or go to their individual sections in the chapter on **Personal Pronouns** to learn more about how they are formed and when they are used.

Person	Number	Gender	Subjective Case	Objective Case	Posse Deter
First Person	Singular	Masculine/feminine	I	Me	My
First Person	Plural	Masculine/feminine	We	Us	Our
Second Person	Singular/Plural	Masculine/feminine	You	You	Your

Third Person	Singular	Feminine	She	Her	Her
Third Person	Singular	Masculine	He	Him	His
Third person	Singular	Neuter	It	It	Its
Third person	Plural	Neuter (Gender Neutral)	They	Them	Their

Declension of adjectives and adverbs

We decline both adjectives and adverbs in the same way to create **comparative** and **superlative** forms. As the name suggests, comparative adjectives and adverbs are used to compare two people or things. Superlative adjectives and adverbs, on the other hand, identify someone or something with the highest (or lowest) degree of a certain attribute.

We inflect these modifiers by adding the suffix “-r” or “-er” to form the comparative degree, and “-st” or “-est” to form the superlative degree. Collectively, these are known as the **degrees of comparison**. For example:

Degrees of Comparison - Adjectives	Degrees of Comparison - Adverbs
“My cat has **sharp** claws.”	“I like to drive **fast**.”
“His cat has **sharper** claws than mine.”	“My sister drives **faster** than me.”
“Their cat has the **sharpest** claws of them all.”	“My dad drives the **fastest** in our family.”

For some modifiers, we simply add the words *more/less* or *most/least* rather than changing the adjective or adverb itself.

To learn the specific rules that govern the declension of adjectives and adverbs, go to the Degrees of Comparison section for **Adjectives** or **Adverbs**.

Regular and Irregular Inflection

Inflection is usually determined by clear, consistent rules or patterns. This is known as **regular inflection**. All the examples we've looked at so far have been according to regular inflection.

However, there are also many instances of **irregular inflection**, in which the way the word changes is completely unique and does not follow (or seem to follow) any predetermined rules.

For instance, irregular inflection occurs with many of the **plurals** of nouns. Words like *children* or *mice* are irregular plural forms of *child* and *mouse*.

It also occurs with adjectives and adverbs when we decline them for the comparative and superlative forms. For example, the adjective *good* becomes *better* (comparative) and *best* (superlative), which are also the inflected forms of the adverb *well*.

Some adverbs that are formed from adjectives are also irregular—*well*, for instance, is the irregular adverb form of the adjective *good*.

Verbs are the most notorious for their irregular inflection, which is defined as having past tense and past participle forms that a) are different from one another, and b) have different spellings than the usual "-d" or "-ed" endings. For instance, the past tense of the verb *sing* is *sang*, while its past participle is *sung*.

Go to the section **Regular and Irregular Inflection** in this chapter to learn more about these tricky exceptions.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is the purpose of inflection?

a) To modify a word with other words in order to create a new meaning
b) To change the form of a word in order to create new meaning
c) To create words that form the subject of the sentence
d) To create words that act as the objects of verbs

2. Which of the following is **not** something we conjugate verbs for?

a) Tense
b) Mood
c) Gender

d) Person

3. What is the most common reason **personal pronouns** are inflected?
a) To establish the gender of the pronoun
b) To establish the plurality of the pronoun
c) To establish the grammatical person of the pronoun
d) To establish the grammatical case of the pronoun
e) All of the above
f) None of the above

4. The **subjunctive mood** can be used to express which of the following?
a) Wishes
b) Statements of facts
c) Direct commands
d) All of the above

5. Which of the following is the term for inflection that does **not** follow predictable rules or patterns?
a) Improper inflection
b) Inexact inflection
c) Irregular inflection
d) Implied inflection

Conjugation

Definition

Conjugation refers to the way we **inflect** (change the form of) verbs to create particular meanings.

When we discuss conjugating verbs, we usually refer to ways in which we change a verb in order to reflect grammatical **tense**, but we also conjugate verbs to reflect **aspect**, **mood**, **voice**, **person**, and **speech**.

We’ll very briefly look at the ways verbs are conjugated below. Continue on to the individual sections in this chapter to learn more about each.

Tense

Grammatical **tense** refers to the conjugation of a verb to reflect its place in time—that is, when the action occurred.

There are technically only two grammatical tenses in English: the **past tense** and the **present tense**. Verbs in their basic form inherently describe the present time, and they can be conjugated into a unique form that describes the past.

Using **auxiliary verbs** and verb **participles**, we can also create the **continuous** (or **progressive**) **tenses**, the **perfect tenses**, and the **perfect continuous** (or **perfect progressive**) **tenses**. These are technically different **aspects** of tense, but they are commonly included among the verb tenses.

English has no future tense in the strict sense (there is no unique verb form to denote future action). Nevertheless, we commonly refer to several structures that are used for future meaning as belonging to the **future tense**.

We’ll look at a couple of examples of each verb tense below, but each section has more information on how they are formed and used.

Present Tense

Present Simple Tense

- “I **go** to work every day.”
- “He **works** in finance.”
- “I **don’t go** out very often.”
- “**Do** you **eat** breakfast every morning?”
- “They **are** hungry.”

Present Continuous Tense

- “John **is sleeping** at the moment.”
- “**Am** I **wearing** the right uniform?”
- “Jack **isn’t coming** to the movie with us.”
- “**Are** you still **reading** that book?”
- “We**’re flying** to Spain tomorrow.”

Present Perfect Tense

- “I **have lived** in Italy for many years.”

- “She **has been** here since 8 o’clock.”
- “**Have** you **been** here since this morning?”
- “We **haven’t been** to the movies in a long time.”
- “**Have** you **seen** my jacket anywhere?”

Present Perfect Continuous Tense

- “I**’ve been writing** for over an hour.”
- “How long **have** you **been writing**?”
- “They **haven’t been living** in Spain for very long.”
- “She’s tired because she**’s been working** a lot.”
- “That bag looks new. **Have** you **been shopping**?”

Past Tense

Past Simple Tense

- “She **worked** in finance before this job.”
- “We **lived** in China for six years after I **graduated** from college.”
- “They **didn’t watch** the movie last night.”
- “I **went** to the park yesterday.”
- “I **was** their accountant at the time.”

Past Continuous Tense

- “I **was reading** a book when they arrived.”
- “What **were** you **talking about when I arrived?”**
  “She was worrying we wouldn’t be able to afford the wedding.”
- “I **wasn’t feeling** well.”
- “**Were you sleeping** when I called?”

Past Perfect Tense

- “The movie **had already ended** when I turned on the TV.”
- “I was sad to leave the house I **had lived** in for so many years.”
- “Until this morning, I **had never been** on a plane.”

- “**Had** you ever **been** on a tractor before working on our farm?”
- “I **hadn’t eaten** Parmesan cheese before going to Italy.”

Past Perfect Continuous Tense

- “When I arrived at the bus stop, the other people there **had been waiting** for nearly an hour.”
- “We **hadn’t been talking** for very long before she had to leave.”
- “My eyes were tired because I **had been working** on the computer.”
- “**Had** she **been living** in Italy for a long time?”
- “He **had been feeling** unwell, so he went to lie down.”

Future Tense

The most common constructions of the **future tenses** use the **modal auxiliary verb** *will* or the verb phrase *be going to*. We can also use the modal verb *shall* to create the future tense, but this is generally reserved for more formal or polite English, and it is not very common in everyday speech and writing, especially in American English.

Future Simple Tense

- “The Queen **will be** in Rome tomorrow.”
- “She **won’t do** her homework.”
- “**Will** they **be** late?”
- “I **am going to wash** my hair after dinner.”
- “**Are** you **going to mow** the lawn today?”

Future Continuous Tense

- “I**’ll be flying** to Boston tomorrow, so I can’t come to lunch.”
- “People **are going be consuming** even more natural resources by the year 2030.”
- “**Is** she **going to be working** from home now?”
- “I**’m not going to be living** in New York for much longer.”
- “You shouldn’t call their house now; they **will be sleeping**.”

Future Perfect Tense

- “By October we **will have lived** in this house for 20 years.”
- “After this next race, I **will have completed** 10 triathlons.”
- “You **will have heard** by now that the company is going bankrupt.”
- “**Will** they **have read** the memo ahead of the meeting?”
- “Why are you going to the airport so early? Her flight **will not have arrived** yet.”

Future Perfect Continuous Tense

- “She**’ll have been waiting** for nearly an hour by the time we arrive.”
- “I **will have been living** in this country for 10 years this November.”
- “**Will** they **have been looking** through our tax returns for the last few years?”
- “How **will** he **have been coping** on his own for all these years?”
- “He **won’t have been sleeping** for very long, but I have to wake him up.”

Aspect

Grammatical **aspect** is often confused with **tense**. While **tense** is concerned with when an action, state of being, or event occurs (past, present, or future), aspect is concerned with how it occurs in time.

We use aspect with tense to reflect each construction of a verb in relation to time. When we form the **present continuous tense**, for instance, we are actually using a specific **aspect** of the present tense. It is through aspect that we understand whether an action takes place at a single point in time, during a continuous range of time, or repetitively.

Perfective and imperfective aspect

The **perfective aspect** is used when we draw attention to an action as a whole, summarizing it. The perfective aspect may occur in past, present, or future actions and events. For example:

- “I **ate** dinner.”
- “I **swim** like a fish.”

- “We **will help** you tomorrow.”

The **imperfective aspect**, on the other hand, is used to draw attention to the action as having an internal structure (rather than as a whole, complete action)—for example, an action that is in progress at the moment of speaking or which happened habitually in the past, as in:

- “I **was washing dishes** when she came through the door.”
- “We used to go traveling a lot.”

Aspects of verb tenses

Each verb tense has four aspects, or temporal structures: the *simple*, the *perfect*, the *continuous*, and the *perfect continuous*. These coincide with the different verb tenses we looked at above.

Aspects of the present tense

Aspect	Structure	Examples
Simple	Subject + present verb	“I **go** shopping on Tuesdays.” “She **runs** fast.”
Perfect	Subject + *have/has* + past participle	“I **have eaten** here before.” “She **has lived** here for a long time.”
Continuous	Subject + *is/are* + present participle	“We **are cooking** dinner.” “He **is singing** a song.”
Perfect Continuous	Subject + *have/has* + *been* + present participle	“He **has been thinking** about it.” “I **have been taking** an art class.”

Aspects of the past tense

Aspect	Structure	Examples

Simple	Subject + past verb	“I **went** shopping on Tuesday.” “She **ran** fast.”
Perfect	Subject + *had* + past participle	“I **had eaten** there before.” “She **had lived** here for a long time.”
Continuous	Subject + *was/were* + present participle	“We **were cooking** dinner.” “He **was singing** a song.”
Perfect Continuous	Subject + *had* + *been* + present participle	“He **had been thinking** about it.” “I **had been taking** an art class.”

Aspects of the future tense

Aspect	Structure	Examples
Simple	Subject + *will/be going to* + infinitive	“I **will go** shopping on Tuesday.” “She **is going to run** fast.”
Perfect	Subject + *will have* + past participle	“I **will have eaten** before arriving.” “She **will have lived** here for a long time.”
Continuous	Subject + *will/be going to* + be + present participle	“We **are going to be cooking** dinner.” “He **will be singing** a song.”
Perfect Continuous	Subject + *will/would* + *have* + been + present participle	“He**’ll have been thinking** about it.” “I **would have been taking** an art class.”

Mood

Grammatical **mood** refers to the way in which a verb is used to express certain meaning by the speaker or writer—that is, to express what is actually the case or what is unreal or hypothetical, or to command or request something to be done in the future.

There are three main grammatical **moods**: the **indicative mood**, the **subjunctive mood**, and the **imperative mood**.

Indicative mood

The **indicative mood** expresses facts, statements, opinions, or questions. It is used to form **declarative sentences** (i.e., statements or declarations) or **interrogative sentences** (i.e., questions). For example:

- “She **graduated** last year with a doctorate in neuroscience.”
- “He **isn’t taking** his exam at the new testing center.”
- “**Are** you **going to give** your speech tomorrow?”

Subjunctive Mood

The **subjunctive mood** uses specific verb constructions to describe hypothetical or non-real actions, events, or situations, such as wishes, suggestions, or possible outcomes that depend on certain conditions.

For example:

- “I wish I **didn’t have to go** to work.” (wish)
- “I recommend that she **study** harder next time.” (suggestion)
- “**If I had been more prepared**, I would have passed that test.”

Imperative Mood

We use the **imperative mood** when we form **imperative sentences**, such as direct orders, commands, or general instructions.

When we make an imperative sentence, we use the infinitive form of the verb (without *to*), and, uniquely, we omit the subject of the verb.

For example:

- “Turn off the light before you leave.”

- “Go to bed!”
- “Please close the door.”
- “Pay attention!”

Voice

Grammatical **voice** describes the relationship between the verb and the subject (also known as the *agent*) in a sentence.

There are two main types of voice: **active voice** and **passive voice**. A third type called **“middle” voice** also exists, but it is less common.

Active Voice

A verb is in the **active voice** when the agent of the verb (the person or thing that performs the action specified by the verb) is also the subject of the sentence.

For example:

- “The boy **sang** a song.” (*the boy* is the agent of the verb *sang*)
- “I **am watching** a movie.” (*I* is the agent of the verb *am watching*)
- “Vivian **writes** well.” (*Vivian* is the agent of the verb *writes*)

Passive Voice

A sentence uses the **passive voice** when the subject is acted upon by the verb. The object of the verb’s action becomes the subject of the sentence, while the *agent* of the action (if there is one) is identified by the preposition *by*. For example:

- “A famous piano piece **will be performed** *by Angie* tomorrow night.”
- “His new book **has already been read** *by thousands of people*.”
- “The light bulb **was patented** in 1880.” (no agent)

“Middle” Voice

The **“middle” voice** describes a type of voice in which the agent performs the verb’s action on itself. Verbs in the middle voice are often followed by **reflexive pronouns**. For example:

- “*My girlfriend* always **checks** herself in the mirror before we go out.”

- “*The dog* **bit** itself on the tail.”

“Middle” voice can also be used to describe some **intransitive verbs** that act upon their agents. For example:

- “The **lasagna** ***cooked*** in the oven for several hours.”
- “The **bicycle** ***broke*** without warning.”

Grammatical Person

Grammatical person refers to the degree of involvement of a participant in an action, event, or circumstance. There are three degrees of grammatical person: **first person** (the speaker), **second person** (someone being spoken to), and **third person** (anyone/anything not being directly addressed).

The vast majority of verbs only conjugate for **third-person singular** subjects (e.g., *he, she,* and *it*) by taking the suffix “-s” or “-es,” as in:

- “I *eat* pasta.” (first-person singular)
- “We *eat* pasta.” (first-person plural)
- “You *eat* pasta.” (second-person singular/plural)
- “She/he/it ***eats*** pasta.” (third-person singular)
- “They *eat* pasta.” (third-person singular)

However, the verb *be* is unique in that it has **five different** conjugations according to the grammatical person of its subject and the **tense** of the verb.

- “I **am** happy.” (first-person singular, present tense)
- “I **was** happy.” (first-person singular, past tense)
- “We **are** happy.” (first-person plural, present tense)
- “We **were** happy.” (first-person plural, past tense)
- “You **are** happy.” (second-person singular/plural, present tense)
- “You **were** happy.” (second-person singular/plural, past tense)
- “She/he/it **is** happy.” (third-person singular, present tense)
- “She/he/it **was** happy.” (third-person singular, past tense)
- “They **are** happy.” (third-person plural, present tense)
- “They **were** happy.” (third-person plural, past tense)

To learn more about the way that other verbs conjugate for the third-person singular, go to the section on **Grammatical Person**

Speech

Grammatical **speech** refers to how we report what another person said, which affects the conjugation of the verbs that are used. We almost always use **reporting verbs** (such as *say*, *tell*, or *ask*) to form grammatical speech.

There are two primary types of speech: **direct speech** and **reported speech** (also known as **indirect speech**). There are also two other sub-categories, known as free **indirect speech** and **silent speech**.

Direct speech

Direct speech, sometimes known as **quoted speech**, refers to the direct quotation of something that someone else said.

Because the quotation happened in the past, we put the reporting verb into the **past simple tense**, but we don’t change the verbs used within the quotation.

When used in writing, we indicate the quoted speech with **quotation marks** (**“ ”**), and we usually set it apart with one or two commas (unless we are quoting a fragment that blends in with the overall sentence). For example:

- John *said*, **“I’ll never live in this city again.”**
- Mary *told* him, **“I want to have another baby,”** which took him by surprise.
- John *said* he feels **“really bad”** about what happened.

(There are a number of other nuances surrounding punctuating that occur when we use direct speech in certain circumstances, as well as if we are writing in **American English** or **British English**. Continue on to the section dealing with **Speech** to learn more.)

Reported (Indirect) Speech

In many instances, we merely paraphrase (or restate) what someone said, rather than directly quoting them. This is known as **reported** or **indirect speech**.

In reported speech, we do not use quotation marks. According to conventional rules, we must also shift the paraphrased information one degree into the past. If a statement was originally made in the **present simple tense**, for instance, we would shift it to the **past simple tense**. For example:

Non-reported sentence	**Verb shift**	**Reported speech**
I live in Germany.	**present simple tense** shifts to **past simple tense**	**He said** ***he lived*** in Germany.
I was a carpenter before I moved here.	**past simple tense** shifts to **past perfect tense**	**She said that** ***she had been*** a carpenter before she moved here.
He is writing a letter to our friend.	**present continuous tense** shifts to **past continuous tense**	**She told us** ***he was writing*** a letter to our friend.
She was sleeping when you called.	**past continuous tense** shifts to **past perfect continuous tense**	**He told me** ***you had been sleeping*** when I called.

However, in modern English, this rule is not always observed, and the meaning of your sentence would usually not be affected if you didn't shift the tense. To learn more about how we change (or do not change) the tense and wording of sentences, go to the section on **Reported Speech**.

Free Indirect and Silent Speech

Free indirect speech is used to indicate the thoughts or mental processes of a character, usually in the form of a rhetorical question. We do not use reporting verbs or quotation marks. For example:

- He had no money, no job, and no friends. **How had his life arrived to such a desperate point?**

Silent speech refers to something that is said internally (i.e., *silently*) by someone to him- or herself. We still use reporting verbs, but we can use either quotation marks or italics to indicate the silent speech, or nothing at all—it is up to the writer's preference. For example:

- **"I'm never coming back to this town again,"** he murmured to himself.
- She thought, ***What a beautiful country.***

- **It will be quiet around here when the kids go to college,** Dan thought.

Conjugation vs. Declension

Remember that conjugation is the specific term used for the inflection of verbs—no other part of speech is conjugated. For any kind of word that goes through inflection (nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs), we use the term **declension**. Head to that section to learn more.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** something we conjugate verbs for?

a) Tense
b) Mood
c) Gender
d) Person

2. Which of the following types of conjugation describes **when** the action of a verb takes place in time?

a) Tense
b) Mood
c) Person
d) Speech
e) Voice

3. Which of the following types of conjugation describes the **relationship** between the verb and the agency of the verb's subject?

a) Aspect
b) Mood
c) Person
d) Speech
e) Voice

4. The **subjunctive mood** can be used to express which of the following?

a) Wishes
b) Suggestions
c) Hypotheticals

d) All of the above

5. Grammatical tense is used in conjunction with which other type of conjugation to describe a verb’s relationship with **time**?
a) Mood
b) Aspect
c) Person
d) Speech
e) Voice

Tense

Definition

Grammatical **tense** refers to the conjugation of a verb to reflect its place in time—that is, when the action occurred.

There are technically only two grammatical tenses in English: the **past** and the **present**. Verbs in their basic form inherently describe the present time, and they can be conjugated into a unique form that describes the past. We can then use **auxiliary verbs** and verb **participles** to create different **aspects** of the past and present tenses, which describe if an action is or was continuous, or if it began at an earlier point in the past.

However, verbs do **not** have a specific conjugated form to reflect the future, and, for this reason, English is considered not to have a true future tense.

Nevertheless, although English has no future tense in the strict sense, we commonly refer to several structures that are used for future meaning as belonging to the “future tense.” The most common of these structures begin with *will* or *be going to*. For the sake of consistency, we will be referring to such constructions as the **future tense** in this chapter.

Summary of the Main Tenses

Below, we’ll provide a very brief summary of each of the variations of the present, past, and future tenses. Go to the individual sections to learn more about each variation.

The Present Tense

Present Simple Tense

The present simple tense (also called the **simple present**) is used to express habits, facts, and timetables.

Structures of the present simple tense

Affirmative: The base form of the verb. It is usually conjugated for the third-person singular by adding “-s” or “-es” to the end of the verb (except for **irregular verbs**).

Question: Use the **auxiliary verb** *do* (or *does* for the third-person singular) before the main verb.

Negative: Use *do not* (contracted as *don’t*) or *does not* (contracted as *doesn’t*) before the main verb.

Examples:

- “I **go** to work every day.”
- “He **works** in finance.”
- “I **don’t go** out very often.”
- “**Do** you **eat** breakfast every morning?”
- “The sun **rises** in the East.”
- “The sun **doesn’t** rise in the West.”
- “The train **leaves** at 9:30 tomorrow morning.”
- “It **doesn’t leave** from platform 12.”
- “**Does** the train for Detroit **leave** at 9 AM tomorrow?”

With the verb *be*

The **linking verb** *be* has three different conjugations for grammatical person in the present tense: *am* (first-person singular); *are* (first-person plural, second person, and third-person plural); and *is* (third-person singular). *Be* does not need *do* when making questions or negative statements in the present simple tense.

Affirmative: “I **am** from the United States.”

Question: “**Is** he **Canadian**?”

Negative: “They **are not** British.”

Present Continuous Tense

The present continuous tense (also called the **present progressive tense**) is used for something in progress at the moment of speaking; it describes something that is happening in the present moment and also for expressing future arrangements. It can only be used with **action verbs**.

Structures of the present continuous tense

Affirmative: The **auxiliary verb** *be* plus the **present participle** of the main verb. We conjugate *be*, rather than the main verb, for grammatical person.

Question: Invert *be* with the subject of the sentence.

Negative: Use *not* after auxiliary *be* (contracted as *isn't* or *aren't*; *am not* is not normally contracted) before the present participle of the main verb.

Examples:

Present moment

Affirmative: "John **is sleeping** at the moment."

Question: "**Am** I **wearing** the right uniform?"

Negative: "Jack **isn't coming** to the movie with us."

Present moment

Affirmative: "The managers **are working** on the new project."

Question: "**Are** you still **reading** that book?"

Negative: "I **am not living** in New York anymore."

Future arrangement

Affirmative: "We**'re flying** to Spain tomorrow."

Question: "**Are** you **meeting** Tom for lunch on Wednesday?"

Negative: "They**'re not having** the party on Saturday anymore."

Present Perfect Tense

The present perfect tense (sometimes called the **present perfect simple tense**) is used to give general information about something that happened at an indefinite point in the past. We also use the present perfect with the prepositions *for* and *since* when we speak about something that started in the past and is still true now.

Structures of the present perfect tense:

Affirmative: The **auxiliary verb** *have* plus the **past participle** of the main verb. *Have* conjugates as *has* for the third-person singular.

Question: Invert *have/has* with the subject of the sentence.

Negative: Use *not* after *have/has* (often contracted as *haven't/hasn't*) before the past participle of the main verb. We can also use *never* instead of *not*.

Examples:

- "I **have lived** in Italy for many years."
- "She **has been** here since 8 o'clock."
- "**Have** you **been** here since this morning?"
- "We **haven't been** to the movies in a long time."
- "I**'ve lost** my pen."
- "**Have** you **seen** my jacket anywhere?"
- "She **hasn't been** in work for a few weeks."
- "I **have seen** this movie already."
- "**Have** you ever **tried** Indian food?"
- "She **has never flown** on an airplane before."

Present Perfect Continuous Tense

We use the present perfect continuous tense (also called the present perfect progressive tense) to talk about that which began in the past and is still happening in the present. We often use it to emphasize the length of time that has passed while something is happening. We can also use it to talk about something that has been happening lately or only finished very recently. It can only be used with **action verbs**.

Structures of the present perfect

continuous tense

Affirmative: The auxiliary verb *have* (or *has* with third-person singular subjects) + *been* + the present participle of the main verb.

Question: Invert *have/has* with the subject of the sentence.

Negative: Use *not* after *have/has* (often contracted as *haven't/hasn't*) before the past participle of the main verb.

Example:

- "I**'ve been writing** for over an hour."
- "How long **have** you **been writing** for?"
- "They **haven't been living** in Spain for very long."
- "She's tired because she**'s been working** a lot."
- "That bag looks new. **Have** you **been shopping**?"
- "He **hasn't been sleeping** a lot lately."

The Past Tense

Past Simple Tense

We use the past simple tense to express finished actions. It is often used with an expression of past time to give more complete information.

Structures of the past simple tense

Affirmative: The past-tense conjugation of the verb. This is generally accomplished by adding "-d" or "-ed" to the end of the verb, but there are many specific forms for **irregular verbs**.

Question: Use *did* (the past tense of the **auxiliary verb** *do*) before the main verb. *Did* does not conjugate differently for third-person singular.

Negative: Use *did not* (often contracted as *didn't*) before the main verb.

Examples:

- "She **worked** in finance before this job."
- "We **lived** in China for six years after I **graduated** from college."
- "They **didn't watch** the movie last night."
- "I **went** to the park yesterday."

- “**Did** he **wake up** early yesterday morning?”
- “I **didn’t go** to the supermarket this morning.”

With the verb *be*

The **linking verb** *be* has two different conjugations for grammatical person in the past tense: *was* (first-person and third-person singular) and *were* (first-person plural, second person, and third-person plural). *Be* does not need *did* when making questions or negative statements in the present simple tense.

Affirmative: “I **was** their accountant at the time.”

Question: “**Were** you in the military?”

Negative: “He **was not** serious.”

Past Continuous Tense

The past continuous tense (also called the **past progressive tense**) is used for something in progress at a certain moment in the past. It can only be used with **action verbs**.

Structures of the past continuous tense

Affirmative: *Was* or *were* (the past tense of the auxiliary verb *be*) followed by the **present participle** of the main verb.

Question: Invert *was/were* with the subject.

Negative: Add *not* after *was/were* (often contracted as *wasn’t/weren’t*).

Examples:

- “I **was reading** a book when they arrived.”
- “What **were** you **talking about when I arrived?”**
  “She was worrying we wouldn’t be able to afford the wedding.”
- “I **was not feeling** well.”
- “**Were you sleeping** when I called?”
- “My ex-husband **was always leaving** dirty dishes in the sink.”
- “I guess things **weren’t improving**.”

Past Perfect Tense

The past perfect tense expresses the idea that something occurred before another action in the past. It can also show that something happened before a specific time in the past.

Structures of the past perfect tense

Affirmative: *Had* (the past tense of the auxiliary verb *have*) + the **past participle** of the main verb.

Question: Invert *had* with the subject of the verb.

Negative: Add *not* after *had* (often contracted as *hadn't*). We also often make the past perfect negative by using the word *never* instead of *not*.

Examples:

- "The movie **had already ended** when I turned on the TV."
- "I was sad to leave the house I **had lived** in for so many years."
- "Until this morning, I **had never been** on a plane.
- "**Had** you ever **been** on a tractor before working on our farm?"
- "I **hadn't eaten** Parmesan cheese before going to Italy."
- "I **hadn't ever ridden** on a rollercoaster before going to the amusement park yesterday."

Past Perfect Continuous Tense

The past perfect continuous tense (also called the **past perfect progressive tense**) is used to express something that began and was in progress until a moment in the past or until another past action occurred.

Structures of the past perfect continuous tense

Affirmative: *Had* + *been* + the **past participle** of the main verb.

Question: Invert *had* with the subject of the verb.

Negative: Add *not* after *had* (often contracted as *hadn't*).

Examples:

- “When I arrived at the bus stop, the other people there **had been waiting** for nearly an hour.”
- “How long **had** you **been standing** there before they let you in?”
- “We **hadn’t been talking** for very long before she had to leave.”
- “I saw that it **had been raining** outside.”
- “My eyes were tired because I ***had been*** **working** on the computer.”
- “***Had*** she ***been*** **living** in Italy for a long time?”
- “He ***had been*** **feeling** unwell, so he went to lie down.”

The Future Tense

The most common constructions of the **future tenses** use the **modal auxiliary verb** *will* or the verb phrase *be going to*. We can also use the modal verb *shall* to create the future tense, but this is generally reserved for more formal or polite English, and it is not very common in everyday speech and writing, especially in American English.

Future Simple Tense

We use the future simple tense to describe an intended action, make a prediction, state future facts, make promises, or offer to do something.

Structures of the future simple tense

Affirmative: The modal verb *will* or the verb phrase *be going to* + the base form of the verb. If using *be going to,* we must conjugate *be* to reflect grammatical person in the present tense (*is*, *am*, or *are*).

Question: Invert the subject with *will* or *be*.

Negative: Add *not* after *will* (often contracted as *won’t*) or between *be* and *going*.

Examples:

- “The Queen **will be** in Rome tomorrow.”
- “I **will definitely arrive** on time.”
- “He**’ll help** you with that heavy suitcase.”
- “She **won’t do** her homework.”
- “**Will** they **be** late?”

- “I **am going to wash** my hair after dinner.”
- “We **aren’t going to join** the gym after all.”
- “I think it**’s going to rain** tomorrow.”
- “**Are** you **going to mow** the lawn today?”

Future Continuous Tense

The future continuous tense (also known as the **future progressive**) is used to describe an unfinished action occurring in the future. This action can either begin in the future, or it can already be in progress in the present and continue into the future. The future continuous can only be used with **action verbs**.

Structures of the future continuous tense

Affirmative: The modal verb *will* or the verb phrase *be going to* + the auxiliary verb *be* + the **present participle** of the main verb. If using *be going to*, we must conjugate *be* to reflect grammatical person; we do **not** conjugate *be* before the present participle, however.

Question: Invert the subject with *will* or *be*.

Negative: Add *not* after *will* (often contracted as *won’t*) or between *be* and *going*.

Examples:

- “You shouldn’t call their house now; they **will be sleeping**.”
- “I**’ll be flying** to Boston tomorrow, so I can’t come to lunch.”
- “People **are going be consuming** even more natural resources by the year 2030.”
- “We **won’t be leaving** until the evening.”
- “**Is** she **going to be working** from home now?”
- “I**’m not going to be living** in New York for much longer.”
- “**Will** you **be graduating** this year?”

Future Perfect Tense

We use the future perfect tense to say that something will finish or complete at a specific point in the future, often indicating how long something will have been happening once a future moment in time is reached. We can also use the future perfect to make a prediction that something has or should have happened in the past.

Structures of the future perfect tense

Affirmative: The modal verb *will* + the auxiliary verb *have* + the **past participle** of the main verb. We can also use *be going to* instead of *will*, but it is less common with the future perfect tense.

Question: Invert the subject with *will*.

Negative: Add *not* after *will* (often contracted as *won't*).

Examples:

- "By October we **will have lived** in this house for 20 years."
- "After this next race, I **will have completed** 10 triathlons."
- "You **will have heard** by now that the company is going bankrupt."
- "**Will** they **have read** the memo ahead of the meeting?"
- "Why are you going to the airport so early? Her flight **will not have arrived** yet."
- "How long **will** you **have worked** there before your maternity leave begins?"

Future Perfect Continuous Tense

Like the future perfect, we use the **future perfect continuous tense** (also known as the **future perfect progressive tense**) to indicate how long something has been happening once a future moment in time is reached; the emphasis is on the continual progression of the action. It can also be used to indicate the cause of a possible future result. We can only use the future perfect continuous with **action verbs**.

Structures of the future perfect continuous tense

Affirmative: The modal verb *will* + the auxiliary verb *have* + *been* + the **present participle** of the main verb. We can also use *be going to* instead of *will*, but it is less common with the future perfect continuous tense.

Question: Invert the subject with *will*.

Negative: Add *not* after *will* (often contracted as *won't*). However, it is not very common to make negative constructions of the future perfect continuous tense.

Examples:

- "She**'ll have been waiting** for nearly an hour by the time we arrive."
- "I **will have been living** in this country for 10 years this November."
- "He's not going to have any energy for the kids because he**'ll have been working** so hard this week."
- "**Will** they **have been looking** through our tax returns for the last few years?"
- "How **will** he **have been coping** on his own for all these years?"
- "He **won't have been sleeping** for very long, but I have to wake him up."

Indicative Mood vs. Subjunctive Mood

All of the above tenses that we've looked at have been in what's called the **Indicative Mood** (also known as the **Realis Mood**), which is used to talk about what is factual or really happening.

There is also another mood in English called the **subjunctive mood**, which deals with things that are not objective facts, such one's state of mind, opinions, beliefs, intentions, desires, and so on. It is one of the **Irrealis Moods**, so called because they deal with what is not objectively real.

The subjunctive mood has all of the tenses that the indicative mood deals with, but it is used in much more specialized circumstances. When we talk about verb tense in this chapter, we will be focusing on the **indicative mood**; to learn about the subjunctive mood and its tenses, go to the section on the **Irrealis Moods** in the chapter about **Grammatical Mood**.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. How many grammatical tenses does English **technically** have?

a) one
b) two
c) three
d) four

2. Identify the tense form that is made using the following structure:
Had + *been* + the **past participle** of the main verb

a) Present continuous tense
b) Past perfect tense
c) Present perfect tense
d) Past perfect continuous tense

3. Which of the following sentences uses the **future simple tense**?

a) “John goes for a walk every morning.”
b) “The train is leaving tomorrow at 10 AM.”
c) “Her flight is going to arrive a little later than expected.”
d) “I will be working for my Uncle this summer.”

4. Which of the following sentences uses the **present perfect tense**?

a) “I have lived in this town my entire life.”
b) “She had been staying with a friend for a few weeks.”
c) “We’ll have worked something out by the time you get here.”
d) “They have been saying the same thing for years.”

5. Which of the following is **not** used to create the **future tense**?

a) will
b) shall
c) do
d) be going to

Present Tense

Definition

The **present tense** is mostly used to identify the action of a verb as taking place in the present time. However, depending on which way we form the present tense, it can also be used to describe things that happened in the past, or even certain events that are planned to happen in the future.

There are four forms of the present tense that can accomplish these tasks. We will give a brief summary of each below, but go to the appropriate section to learn about them more in-depth.

Present Simple Tense

The **present simple tense** is used to describe that which is done habitually, that which is generally true, that which is always the case, or that which is scheduled to happen. It is made up of only the basic form of the verb: the infinitive (+ *-(e)s* if used with the third-person singular). It is called "simple" because it does not rely on any modal or auxiliary verbs to accomplish its meaning.

Examples:

- "I come from Berlin."
- "The train leaves at 2 PM."
- "He has breakfast every morning."
- "We like ice cream."

Present Continuous Tense (Progressive)

The **present continuous** or **present progressive tense** is used to speak about actions that are currently happening. It can also be used to describe actions or events that are planned for the future, but which are not definitively fixed in time.

We create the present continuous tense by using the **present participle** (*-ing* form) of the "main" verb after the present-tense form of the auxiliary linking verb “be.” The present participle creates the **continuous** forms of verbs, which is where "present continuous" gets its name.

Examples:

- "She is running for president next year."
- "They are not watching television."

- "We are eating ice cream."
- "Are you reading that book?"

Present Perfect Tense

Present perfect tense (sometimes called the **present perfect simple tense** is used to talk about things that happened sometime in the past, but which are not given a specific time or date.

We form the present perfect by using the present tense of the auxiliary verb "*have*" (or "*has*," if used with third-person singular pronouns) along with the *past participle* of the "main" verb. Using forms of an auxiliary verb (such as "have") together with the past participle of the main verb is called the **perfect aspect** in English, which is where the "present perfect" gets its name. (To learn more about the *perfect* and other aspects, see the chapter on **Aspect**.)

Examples:

- "I have seen that movie already."
- "She's been to Prague."
- "He has lost his keys."
- "Jenny's lived in Dubai for 10 years!"

Present Perfect Continuous Tense

The present perfect continuous is used in a very similar way to the present perfect simple tense. It is used to talk about that which began in the past and is still happening in the present, with an emphasis on the continued action and/or the amount of time it is taking. We can also use it to talk about something that is only temporary, has been happening lately, or only finished very recently.

The **present perfect continuous tense** (sometimes called the **present perfect progressive tense**) is formed by using the present tense of the auxiliary verb "*have*" (or "*has*," if used with third-person singular pronouns) along with "been" (the *past participle* of the linking verb "be") and the present participle (-*ing* form) of the "main" verb.

Examples:

- "I have been living in New York City."

- "We have been walking for four hours!"
- “They have been working in the shop for 10 years."
- “Bill has been coming into work late a lot.”
- "I'm so sweaty because I have been exercising."

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What can the present tense be used to describe?

a) Things are happening in the present moment in time.
b) Things that happened at an unspecified time in the past.
c) Things that will happen in the future.
d) Things that began in the past and are still happening now.
e) A & C
f) B & D
g) All of the above
h) None of the above

2. Which form of the present tense is used to describe a habit or general truth?

a) Present Simple
b) Present Continuous
c) Present Perfect
d) Present Perfect Continuous

3. Which of the following is **not** in the present tense?

a) I hear that he is living in Saudi Arabia.
b) They haven't been talking for years.
c) She had been spending some time with her father.
d) He's left the kids with their nanny.

4. What form(s) of present tense does the following sentence use?
"I can't believe that he has lost his keys again!"

a) Present Simple
b) Present Continuous
c) Present Perfect
d) Present Perfect Continuous
e) A & B

f) A & C
g) A & D

Present Simple Tense

Definition

The **present simple tense** (also called the **simple present tense**) is used when we speak about habits, general facts, and timetables. However, just because something is *true* does not necessarily mean it takes the present simple tense, nor does something have to be occurring in the present moment in time for it to be in the present simple tense.

It is called the present "simple" because its basic form consists of one word only—that is, it does not require an **auxiliary verb** to achieve its meaning.

Most verbs in the present simple tense are in the same form as the infinitive verb. However, if it is in the **third-person singular form**, then it usually takes the ending *-(e)s*.

For example:

- "I **live** in London." (Fact: I live permanently in London.)
- "Hans **comes** from Berlin." (Fact: Hans is originally from Berlin.)
- "Mary **has** breakfast every morning." (Habit)

Now let's see how the form and meaning of the verbs change if we add the auxiliary verb "be:"

- "I **am living** in London." (Still a fact, but it now highlights that I am only living in London temporarily—this wasn't always the case, and it might change in the future.)
- "Hans **is coming** from Berlin." (Hans is currently travelling from Berlin.)
- "Mary **is having** breakfast." (Mary is currently in the process of eating breakfast.)

These are examples of the **present continuous** tense. As you can see, their meaning is altered in comparison to those in the **present simple** tense. (To learn more about this tense, please refer to the chapter section on **Present Continuous Tense**.)

Present simple can also be used for future events that are fixed to happen, such as in timetables. For example:

• “The train **leaves** at 7 PM.”

This is a fixed timetable where the present simple is used to indicate a future event. We can also say: “We leave for Berlin tomorrow at 7 PM,” as the speaker sees this as a fixed event similar to a timetable.

Normally we use **stative verbs** (also called **state verbs**) to express a fact. Here are some examples of common stative verbs:

- **Like**
- **Dislike**
- **Love**
- **Enjoy**
- **Hate**
- **Have**
- **Know**
- **Need**
- **Want**
- **Seem**

Of course, some **action verbs** (also called **dynamic verbs**) used for habits can also be seen as a state or general truth. For example:

• “I **play** tennis.” (State/fact/general truth)

• “I **play** tennis *every week*.” (Habit)

However, verbs with a stative meaning cannot be used to indicate habit. For example:

✔ “I know John.” (correct – state/fact)

✖ “I know John *every week*.” (incorrect – can’t be expressed as a habit)

Some stative verbs can also function as action verbs in different contexts:

• “I **enjoy** soup.” (Stative verb—expresses a state/fact.)

• “I **enjoy** soup once in a while.” (Action verb—expresses a habit. “Enjoy” in this sense means to actively consume.)

We also use the present simple with the **zero conditional**, which means something is always true. For example:

• “If you **drop** an egg, it **breaks**.” (Any egg will break if it is dropped.)

Present simple can be used in a variety of sentence formations, such as **positive**,

negative, **interrogative**, and **negative interrogative**. We'll briefly explain each and provide examples with the present simple tense.

Positive sentences

Simply put, positive sentences indicate what **is** the case, as opposed to what is not. In the present simple tense, they look like this:

- "I **jog** every day."
- "He **lives** in Chicago."
- "Dogs **bark**, while cats **meow**." (Third-person plural.)
- "Janet **writes** songs for a living."

Negative sentences

The opposite of a positive sentence, a negative sentence describes what is **not** (or **no longer**) the case. We form these by adding the auxiliary verb *do* (or *does* in the third-person singular) and the word *not* after the subject of the sentence. These can also be contracted to *don't* or *doesn't*. For example:

- "I **don't jog** every day."
- "He **doesn't live** in Chicago anymore."
- "Dogs **do not meow**, and cats **do not bark**."
- "Janet **does not write** many songs these days."

Interrogative sentences

Interrogative sentences ask a question. They are marked by the question mark punctuation ("?") at the end instead of a period. Simple interrogative questions also use the auxiliary verb *do* (or *does* in the third-person singular), but before the subject instead of after. Generally speaking, it is uncommon to use a first-person subject in an interrogative sentence in the present simple.

- "**Do** you **jog** every day?"
- "**Does** he still **live** in Chicago?"
- "**Do** dogs **bark**, or **do** cats?" (The second "bark" is implied.)
- "**Does** Janet **write** songs anymore?"

Negative interrogative sentences

Negative interrogative sentences also ask a question, but they imply that the speaker expects the answer to be (or believes the answer *should* be) "yes." We form these by adding the auxiliary verb *do/does* before the subject of the sentence and the word *not* after the subject. Again, these can be contracted to *don't* or *doesn't*; if they are, the contraction comes before the subject:

- "**Do** you **not jog** every day?"
- "**Does** he **not** still **live** in Chicago?"
- "**Don't** dogs normally **bark**?"
- "**Doesn't** Janet **write** songs for a living?"

Unlike the interrogative sentences, **negative interrogative sentences** are much more likely to be used in the first-person, with *do* and *not* typically contracted:

- "**Don't** I look **good** in this dress?"

(For more information about different types of sentences, go to the chapter about **Sentences** in the part of the guide on **Syntax**.)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following sentences is **not** in the present simple tense?

a) "I walk home each day."
b) "He always reads good books."
c) "She will talk to her mother at 5 o'clock."
d) "I go jogging every morning."

2. The following sentence is in present simple tense. What **kind** of sentence is it?
"Does he not have a car of his own?"

a) Interrogative sentence.
b) Positive interrogative sentence.
c) Negative sentence.
d) Negative interrogative sentence.

3. What kind of verb (usually) cannot be used to indicate **habit**?

a) Stative verbs.

b) Action verbs.
c) Passive verbs.
d) Sense verbs.

4. Which of the following sentences **is** in the present simple tense?
a) “We are leaving tomorrow on the 10 AM bus.”
b) “We will leave tomorrow on the 10 AM bus.”
c) “We leave tomorrow on the 10 AM bus.”
d) “We are going to leave tomorrow on the 10 AM bus.”

Present Continuous Tense (Progressive)

Definition

We create the present continuous tense by using the **present participle** (*-ing* form) of the verb after the present-tense form of the **auxiliary verb** *be*.

Unlike the **present simple tense**, which is used to express things that are **always** the case or are at a fixed time in the future, we use the **present continuous** (also called the **present progressive**) **tense** to speak about actions that are currently happening, whether generally or at the exact moment of speech. It can also be used to describe actions or events that are planned for the future (but are not definitively fixed in time, such as a timetable).

Actions happening at the moment of speech

The most common occurrence of the present continuous is when someone or something is performing an action at the very moment being described. In this case, the object of the verb is usually in the presence of or very near to the speaker. For example:

- “I **am going** home now.”
- “He **is crying** because of the movie.”
- “We **are heading** to the park.”

- “It **is raining** outside.”

Actions happening currently, but not at the moment of speech

The present continuous can also indicate something that is currently happening but which is not at the exact moment of speech. It generally refers to something that the person or thing is currently engaged in doing that is taking place continuously over a longer period of time, but which is not (necessarily) permanent. For example:

- “John **is working** in telemarketing.”
- “She is **running** for president.”
- “I **am living** in London.”

Actions or events planned for the future

Like the present simple tense, the present continuous can also describe future events. However, unlike the present simple, it describes that which someone is **planning** or **expecting** to do, as opposed to that which is at a fixed point in time in the future. The formation of the verb does not change to reflect this; rather, information from the rest of the sentence informs the future intention.

- “She **is running** for president *next year*.”
- “I **am taking** my driving test *after the Christmas break*.”
- “We **are watching** a movie *later*.”

With adverbs

We can also add **adverbs** relating to time between *be* and the present participle to specify or clarify *when* or *how frequently* something happens or occurs.

- “I **am *already* leaving**.” (I am leaving sooner than I expected.)
- “She **is *still* living** next door.” (She continues to live next door, perhaps longer than was expected.)

The adverb *always*

There is also a special usage when the adverb *always* is used between *be* and the present participle. Rather than literally meaning that the action *always* happens (as you might expect), it instead means that that action *very often* happens. We use this as a means of adding hyperbolic emphasis to how frequently something happens or occurs, and it usually implies that the action or event is questionable or undesirable to some degree. For example:

- "My husband **is *always* leaving** dirty dishes in the sink!"
- "The used car I bought **is *always* breaking** down."
- "You **are *always* losing** your phone!"

Negative sentences

A negative sentence in the present continuous describes what is **not** currently happening. We form these by adding the word *not* after the auxiliary verb *be*. For second-person, third-person, and first-person plural (but not first-person singular), *be* and *not* can also be contracted.

For example:

- "I **am *not* watching** the movie."
- "He **is *not* crying**."
- "You **aren't leaving** until the house is clean."
- "She **isn't going** home for Thanksgiving this year."

✖ "I **amn't reading** that anymore." (incorrect)

Not can also be replaced with the **adverbial phrase** *no longer* to indicate that someone or something *was* doing something, but that is not the case now. For instance:

- "She **is *no longer* living** in New York."

Interrogative sentences

Interrogative (question) sentences in the present continuous tense are formed by reversing the verb *be* and the subject. If adverbs are used to clarify or specify the time, they come before the main verb or at the end of the sentence.

- "**Is** she **sleeping**?"

- “**Are** you **seeing** this?”
- “**Are** they **going** home *already*?”
- “**Is** it *still* **raining** outside?”

The present continuous can also be used with the **question words** *who, what, where when*, *why*, and *how*:

- “*When* **is** she **taking** the exam?”
- “*What* **are** you **watching**?”
- “*Why* **is** he **leaving**?”
- “*Who***’s talking**?”
- “*How* **are** they **getting** to the station?”

Negative interrogative sentences

Negative interrogative sentences also ask a question, but they imply that the speaker expects (or expected) something to be the case. They can be used to express surprise if something is no longer happening.

We form these by inverting *be* and the subject, and then adding the word *not* after the subject. Again, *be* and *not* can be contracted; if they are, the contraction comes before the subject. This can serve to make the sentence sound less formal and stuffy. And adverbs can still be used to specify or clarify time. For example:

- “**Is** she ***not*** **painting** *anymore*?”
- “You want to play outside? ***Isn’t*** it **raining**?
- “Wait, ***aren’t*** they *still* **dating**?

Like the negative sentence, *no longer* can be used instead of *not*. Just note that you do not use other adverbs in this case:

- **Are** Tim and John *no longer* **living** together?
- **Is** it *no longer* **raining** outside?

Negative interrogative sentences in the present continuous can also be used with the **question words** *why* and *how*. Again, it expresses the speaker’s surprise (and sometimes dismay) that something is not the case:

- “*Why* **is** she **not leaving** today?”
- “*How* **are** you **not watching** the match on TV?”
- “*Why* **are** we **not abandoning** this foolish enterprise?”

- “It’s the middle of December. *How* **is** it **not snowing** yet?”

(For more information about different types of sentences, go to the chapter on **Sentences** in the part of the guide on **Syntax**.)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which auxiliary verb is used in the **present continuous** tense?

a) Do
b) Will
c) Be
d) May

2. Which of the following sentences is in the present continuous tense?

a) “She will walk home alone.”
b) “She walks home alone.”
c) “She has walked home alone.”
d) “She is walking home alone.”

3. In the present continuous tense, which **question word** or **words** can be used in negative interrogative sentences?

a) Who
b) Where
c) Why
d) How
e) A & B
f) B & D
g) C & D
h) All of the above
i) None of the above

4. In which grammatical person (first person, second person, third person) is it **not** correct to contract “be” with “not”?

a) First-person singular
b) First-person plural
c) Second person
d) Third-person singular

e) Third-person plural

5. What **kind** of action is the following sentence describing?
"My brother William is always talking about his great political ambitions."
a) An action happening at the moment of speech.
b) An action or event planned for the future.
c) An action happening currently, but not at the exact moment of speech.
d) An action that happens very often, especially something questionable or undesirable.

6. Which of the following questions is **not** in the present continuous tense?
a) "Is she still living in San Francisco?"
b) "Will we be seeing you tonight?"
c) "Aren't we meeting them later?"
d) "Sorry, John is working right now."

Present Perfect Tense

Definition

The **present perfect tense** (sometimes referred to as the **present perfect simple tense**) is formed by using the present tense of the auxiliary verb *have* (or *has*, if used with third-person singular pronouns) along with the *past participle* of the "main" verb. Despite its name, the present perfect is used to give general information about something that happened in the past (anytime "before now"), but which did not occur at a definitive point in time.

For example:

- "I *have seen* that movie already."
- "She *has been* to Prague."
- "*They've decided* where they want to go for their honeymoon."
- "*John's lied* to us too many times."

Present Perfect vs. Past Simple

The present perfect tells us about something that occurred at some indefinite period in the past. However, if something happened at a specific point in time in the past (“last night,” “two years ago,” “yesterday,” etc.), then we must use the **past simple tense**.

For example:

✖ “I have seen *Titanic* on TV last night.” (incorrect)
✔ “I **saw** *Titanic* on TV last night.” (correct)

✖ “She’s been to Prague when she was a little girl.” (incorrect)
✔ “She **went** to Prague when she was a little girl.” (correct)

If the focus moves to *when*, then we cannot use the present perfect anymore because the attention shifts to that particular point in time.

When we say “I have seen *Titanic*,” we are giving general information about something that happened anytime “before now.” The focus is on the fact that “I saw *Titanic*” and not on *when* I saw it.

The same applies to the second example from above:

- **Present perfect**: “She**’s been** to Prague.” (Generally, at some point in her lifetime.)

- **Past simple**: “She **went** to Prague when she was a little girl.” (We say *when* because the exact point in time is specified.)

True in the past and still true now

In English, we use the present perfect simple with the prepositions *for* and *since* when we speak about something that started in the past and is still true now. *For* is used to specify the duration of time leading up to the present; *since* clarifies the point in time at which something began. Let’s look at some examples:

- “I can’t believe Jenny **has lived** in Dubai *for 10 years*!”

- “He**’s had** that car *since he was in high school*.”

- “We**’ve known** each other *(for) our whole lives*, but we**’ve only been** friends *since 2006*.”

Even though a point in time is being specified in these cases, we still use the present perfect because the information in the sentence is **still true now**. The “for” and “since” join the past situation to a present one. If we were to use the past simple tense for any of the above, “for” would change to mean the duration of the event before it *finished*, and we would be unable to use “since” at all:

- “I can’t believe Jenny **lived** in Dubai for 10 years!” (Jenny no longer lives in Dubai.)

- “He **had** that car in high school.” (He owned it then, but does not now.)
- “We **knew** each other for our whole lives, but we only **became** friends in 2006.” (The two people are no longer acquainted; perhaps the other person is no longer living.)

Present Perfect vs. Present Perfect Continuous Tense

There is another, very similar tense that is used to talk about something that has been happening in the past and which is still happening now. It is called the **present perfect continuous** (or **progressive**) **tense**, and it is used to emphasize the *action* of the sentence (as opposed to the *result*).

It is formed by using *have/has* along with *been* (the past participle of *be*) and the *present participle* of the main verb. For example:

- “I **have been writing** many letters.” (This emphasizes the action of writing, in which the speaker is still engaged.)

This is slightly different from “I have written many letters” (present perfect), which emphasizes the result of many letters having been completed.

In some cases, either the present perfect or present perfect continuous can be used with almost no difference to the meaning of the sentence:

- “I can’t believe Jenny **has lived** in Dubai for 10 years!” (*present perfect*)
- “I can’t believe Jenny **has been living** in Dubai *for 10 years*!” (*present perfect continuous*)

However, though quite similar to present perfect simple, the usages of present perfect continuous *can* be a bit different. See the chapter section **Present Perfect Continuous Tense** to learn more.

Before now or not long ago

Let’s compare “I lost my keys” with “I’ve lost my keys.”

Taken on its own, the first sentence is less correct because we are expecting the speaker to say when he or she lost the keys; for example, “I lost my keys **yesterday**.”

“I lost my keys” *can* be correct on its own, but only if it answers a question.

For example:

- A: “Why are you late?”
- B: “(Because) I lost my keys.”

Otherwise, if there is no question or no specification of time, we say: “I’ve lost my keys.” This carries the meaning that the keys were lost just before now or not long ago.

Let’s take a look at another example:

- A: “Would you like a coffee?”
- B: “No, thanks, *I’ve had* one.”

This refers to not long ago. We don’t say *when* because the time is not important —we understand that the person had the coffee a short while ago. Again, if the time *is* being specified, then you have to put the sentence in past simple tense (i.e., “No, thanks, I **had** one an hour ago”).

Here are some more examples:

- “I’m not hungry, **I’ve had** lunch.”
- “**He’s taken** the dog to the park.”
- “She **has left** the kids with her sister.”

Remember, when the time becomes more important than the fact or the event, we need to use the past simple tense:

- **Present perfect**: “I**’ve had** lunch.” (Meaning just now or not long ago.)
- **Past simple**: “I **had lunch** at 12 o’clock.” (Referring to exactly *when* the speaker had lunch.)

It is incorrect to say: “I’ve had lunch at 12 o’clock.”

Negative sentences

You can also make the present perfect negative by simply adding *not* (or, in certain uses, *never*) between *have/has* and the main verb:

- “I **have *never* seen** *Titanic*.”
- “I’m so hungry; I ***haven’t*** **had** lunch yet!”
- “He **has *not* been** home since he finished high school.”
- “I regret that we**’ve *never* traveled** to Paris.”

Interrogative sentences

If an interrogative (question) sentence is in the present perfect tense, the subject and the auxiliary verb *have* are inverted. For example:

- “**Have** you **seen** this movie?”
- “**Has** she **heard** any news?”
- “**Have** they **started** the movie yet?”

Negative interrogative sentences

Negative interrogative sentences also ask a question, but they imply that the speaker expected the answer to be (or believes the answer *should* be) “yes.” Negative interrogative sentences in the present perfect have the same form, simply with the negative word (usually *not*, but also *never*) placed after the subject.

- “**Have** you ***never*** **seen** this movie?”
- “**Has** she ***not*** **heard** any news?”

Not can also come after *have/has*, but it is almost always contracted:

- “**Haven’t** they **started** the movie yet?”
- “***Hasn’t*** his license **expired**?”

However, *never* cannot be used in this way.

With a question word

Interrogative sentences using question words (*who, what, where, when, why, which,* and *how*) maintain the same structure. *Have/has* can also be contracted with the question word:

- “*When* **have** you **been** to Italy?”
- “*Where* **has** she **gone**?”
- “***What’ve*** they **done**?”

They can also be negative, but then they are straightforward questions of who, what, where, when, why, which, or how something is **not** the case:

- “*Which* book **have** you ***not*** **read**?”
- “*Why* ***haven’t*** you **eaten** your dinner yet?”

have got and has got

There is one tricky phrase that defies the normal form: *have/has got*. We would expect it to be in the present perfect, because it is in the form *have/has* plus the past participle of *get*. However, even though it is in the present perfect tense in *form*, in *meaning*, *have got* is actually in the present tense. It is used to indicate possession, in nearly the same manner as the verb *have* (especially in more informal speech or writing); *got* simply adds a certain level of emphasis to the possession.

For example, the following pairs of sentences mean almost exactly the same thing.

- “I **have got** three classes on Monday.”
- “I **have** three classes on Monday.”

- “I hear she**’s got** lots of money.”
- “I hear she **has** lots of money.”

- “You**’ve got** a lot of nerve coming here.”
- “You **have** a lot of nerve coming here.”

However, we can never use *have got* interchangeably with *have* when it is used to describe an action. For example:

✔ “I **have** breakfast every morning.” (correct)

✖ “I**’ve got** breakfast every morning.” (incorrect)

To create the past perfect *meaning* of *get*, we use its *other* past participle —***gotten***. We use this form to describe a *process*, such as receipt or acquisition, or some other action. For example:

- “I **have gotten** word that my father is ill.”
- “**He’s gotten** a lot of positive feedback about his play.”
- “Those dang kids **have gotten** a Frisbee stuck in our tree again.”

Note, however, that *have/has gotten* is **not** used to describe possession:

- “I hear she **has gotten** lots of money.” (Implies acquisition or receipt of lots of money, rather than outright possession.)

Gotten is almost exclusively used in American English. It very rarely used in British English, where *have got* **is** sometimes used as the past perfect (informally). One such example is:

- “You**’ve got** taller.” (British English)
- “You**’ve gotten** taller.” (American English)

vk.com/club154894262

Regardless, *have/has got* and *have/has gotten*, though correct, are often seen as being less formal or professional sounding, so depending on what you're writing, you may be better off rewording the sentence to avoid the phrases altogether.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following sentences uses the **present perfect tense**?

a) "I worked in the factory for a few months before I quit."
b) "She has been living with her father until recently."
c) "I hear he has left his wife."
d) "I had written to her years ago, but I never expected a response."

2. Which preposition is used with the present perfect to talk about something that was true in the past and is still true now?

a) For
b) In
c) At
d) Since
e) A & B
f) A & D
g) B & D

3. When is the present perfect **not** used?

a) For something that happened just before now.
b) For something that happened at a specific point in time in the past.
c) For something that was true in the past and is still true now.
d) For something that happened at some general time in the past.

4. Which **auxiliary verb** is used to form the present perfect tense?

a) Have
b) Be
c) Can
d) Do

Present Perfect Continuous Tense

Definition

The **present perfect continuous tense** (sometimes called the **present perfect progressive tense**) is formed by using the present tense of the auxiliary verb *have* (or *has,* if used with third-person singular pronouns) along with *been* (the *past participle* of the auxiliary verb *be*) and the present participle (*-ing* form) of the “main” verb. For example:

- “I **have been living** in New York City.”

The present perfect continuous is very close in meaning to how we use the **present perfect tense**. However, there are some key differences that distinguish when and how the present perfect continuous is preferable.

Generally, we use the present perfect continuous to talk about that which began in the past and is still happening in the present; the focus is on something that continues to happen, as opposed to something which happened (finished) sometime in the past. We can also use the present perfect continuous to emphasize the length of time that has passed while something is happening, or that something is only temporary. We can also use it to talk about something that has been happening lately or only finished very recently.

That which began in the past and continues in the present

The present perfect continuous is often used to talk about something that began happening in the past (anytime “before now”) and which is still happening (unfinished) in the present. We usually specify the duration of time involved, especially using the prepositions “for” or “since.” Sometimes we can use different adverbials; sometimes we don’t have to specify the duration at all. For example:

- “I have been living in New York City.”
- “I have been living in New York City *for three years*.”
- “I have been living in New York City *since I was 18*.”
- “I have been living in New York City *all my life*.”

In each of the above examples, it is understood implicitly that the speaker *still* lives in New York City; the only thing that changes is the duration of time. In this usage, the present perfect continuous is nearly identical in meaning to the present perfect tense, and, indeed, most of these examples would make perfect sense either way:

- “I *have lived* in New York City for three years.”
- “I *have lived* in New York City since I was 18.”
- “I *have lived* in New York City all my life.”

The only sentence that changes in meaning is the very first example: to say “I have lived in New York City” without any further elaboration gives the impression that the speaker used to live there, but no longer does.

This distinction between something being completed as opposed to still happening is important, because it highlights when you might choose to use the present perfect continuous instead of the present perfect simple in certain instances.

Let’s look at the very first example again, but this time using a different adverbial:

✔ “I have been living in New York City *while I finish my Ph.D.*” (correct)

✖ “I have lived in New York City *while I finish my Ph.D.*” (incorrect)

We can see that this sentence does not make sense at all in the present perfect simple tense, because the adverbial “while I finish my Ph.D.” requires the action to still be taking place. In cases like this, we must use the present perfect continuous tense to get across the meaning correctly.

This distinction can also be particularly useful when we are giving a response to someone:

- Person A: “Let's take the longer trail when we're hiking back down.”
- Person B: “But we *have walked* for three hours!” (*present perfect*)
- Person B: “But we **have been walking** for three hours!” (**present perfect continuous**)

We can see that the response is more appropriate in the present perfect continuous, because it lays emphasis on the continuous action of walking. It also puts emphasis on the amount of time that the speaker has been doing something.

Emphasizing length of time

The present perfect continuous is especially useful for putting emphasis on the length of time that has passed while something is happening. This is particularly true when the meaning of the sentence could otherwise be expressed in the present perfect simple. Here are some examples:

- “They *have studied* for three weeks for this exam.” (*present perfect*)
- “They **have been studying** for three weeks for this exam.” (**present perfect continuous**)

- “The girl *has worked* for five hours.” (*present perfect*)
- “The girl **has been working** for five hours.” (**present perfect continuous**)

The difference between these is slight, but noticeable. In both sets of examples, the present perfect continuous puts the emphasis on how long the action has taken, as well as the fact that it is still happening. The present perfect is simply reporting the completed result and how long it took.

Let’s look at another example:

- “He *has talked* on the phone for almost an hour.”
- “He **has been talking** on the phone for almost an hour.”

The first sentence is merely reporting how long the person was talking. With the present perfect continuous, the focus naturally shifts to the fact that an hour is a rather long period of time—and that he might continue talking for even longer!

That which is happening temporarily

Another subtle difference between the two tenses is that the present perfect is better at indicating that something is permanent, while the present perfect continuous is better at suggesting something is only temporary. For example:

- “I *have worked* in the shop for three years.”
- “I **have been working** in the shop for three years.”

The first sentence simply reports the length of time the speaker has been working in the shop. It does not suggest that he or she intends to stop working there at any point. The second sentence, however, makes the situation sound much less permanent. We can see the difference more clearly if we add a bit more information:

- “I *have worked* in the shop for three years, *but I hope to find something else soon*.”
- “I **have been working** in the shop for three years, *but I hope to find something else soon*.”

The first sentence sounds less natural than the second, because the new information specifically relates to the situation being a temporary one. In this case, the present perfect continuous is preferable.

That which has been happening lately or finished very recently

The present perfect continuous can also be used to express that which has been happening lately, but is not necessarily happening at the present moment in time. For example:

- "Bill **has been coming** into work late a lot."
- "Don't you think Mary **has been spending** too much time on the computer lately?"

It can also be used without an adverbial to indicate that something was happening until only recently:

- "My neighbors are angry because my dog **has been barking**."
- "Sorry I'm so sweaty! I**'ve been exercising** all morning."

The action is not taking place at the exact moment of speech (in which case we would just use the **present simple tense**), but we can infer that it had been happening until very recently.

Negative sentences

Present perfect continuous sentences can be made negative by using the word *not*. It appears after *have/has*, and the two can be (and very often are) contracted.

- "I **have *not* been writing** much recently."
- "She ***hasn't*** **been trying** to find work since her divorce."
- "I need to get up earlier, because I ***haven't been making*** it to work on time lately."

We generally do not use *never* with the present perfect continuous.

Interrogative sentences

Like the present perfect tense, an interrogative (question) sentence in the present perfect continuous has the subject and the auxiliary verb *have* inverted. For example:

- “Where **have** you **been living** lately?”
- “**Has** she **been feeling** OK?”
- “Why **have** you **been lying** to me?”

We can also make negative interrogative sentences in the present perfect continuous by adding *not* between the subject and *been*. We can also contract *have/has* and *not*:

- “***Haven't*** you **been writing** a new book?”
- “**Has** she ***not*** **been feeling** well?”
- “Why ***haven't*** they **been working** on their homework?”

As we see in the first example, the meaning of the question can become rhetorical, implying that the speaker expected the answer to be “yes.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. The past participle of which **auxiliary verb** is used to form the present perfect continuous tense?

a) Have
b) Be
c) Can
d) Do

2. The **main** verb of the present continuous tense is in what form?

a) Present participle
b) Past participle
c) Continuous participle
d) Future participle

3. Which of the following is something the present perfect continuous tense can be used for? (Choose the answer that is **most** correct.)

a) Talking about something that is always the case.
b) Talking about something that finished sometime in the past.
c) Talking about something that began in the past and is still happening.
d) Talking about something that is happening right now.

4. Which of the following sentences uses the **present perfect continuous** tense?

a) “I am writing to my sister in New England.”
b) “She has spoken to her boss in the hopes of getting a raise.”
c) “The train usually arrives at 3 PM, but it was late yesterday.”
d) “I have been leaving earlier than usual this week.”
e) “He hasn't seen the results of the test yet.”

Past Tense

Definition

The **past tense** is used to describe or indicate an action that began in the past. Depending on how we form the past tense, it might describe actions that happened or were completed in the past, were occurring at the same time as something else in the past, or continued to happen until or near the present time.

There are four forms of the past tense that can accomplish these tasks. We will give a brief summary of each below. To learn more about each of them, you can go to the appropriate section.

Past Simple Tense

The **past simple tense** (also called the **simple past tense**, or simply the **past simple**) is used to express completed actions. It is known as the past *simple* because it does not require any auxiliary verbs to complete its meaning; its structure is simply the past-tense form of the verb. The past simple tense only uses the **auxiliary verb** *did* when it is used in a question or becomes negative.

Examples

- “I **went** to the park yesterday.”
- “I ***did not*** **eat** the cookie.”
- “I **called** my sister over an hour ago, but she **didn’t call** back.”
- “**Did** they **mow** the lawn yet?”
- “What **did** you **wear** last night?"

Past Continuous Tense

Also called the **past progressive**, the **past continuous tense**, is used to describe something that was in progress at a certain moment in the past and either finished in the past or continued until the present moment.

It is called the *past continuous* because it uses the past tense of the auxiliary verb *be* (*was* or *were*) followed by the **present participle** of the main verb (which is used to describe an action that is or was *continuously* happening).

Examples

- “We **were working** on our assignment when our parents came home.”
- “The phone rang as they **were leaving**.”
- “She **was still writing** her thesis at 2 o’clock in the morning.”
- “My roommates **were fighting** all the time, so I decided to move out.”
- “His memory **was fading** as he got older.”
- “Sorry I’m so muddy; I **was working** in the garden.”

Past Perfect Tense

The **past perfect tense** expresses the idea that something occurred before another action in the past. It can also show that something happened before a specific time in the past. To form the past perfect, we use *had* (the past tense of the auxiliary verb *have*) + the **past participle** of the main verb.

Because we use the past perfect to highlight two separate points in the past, we often use the conjunctions *before*, *when, because*, *until*, or *by the time* to specify the order in which they occurred in time.

Examples:

- “The film **had already ended** when I switched on the TV.”
- “Unfortunately, he **had left** his keys in the house when he left.”
- “The construction **had been going** quite smoothly before the earthquake.”
- “I **hadn’t dreamed** of living in Ireland before I visited the country.”
- “**Had** you ever **ridden** on a tractor before working on the farm?”
- “What **had** you **done** that forced you to move abroad?”

Past Perfect Continuous Tense

The **past perfect continuous tense** (also called the **past perfect progressive tense**) is used to describe an action that began and was still in progress in the past before another past action started.

We usually use the present perfect continuous tense to emphasize the duration of the past action before the second action or event occurred. We can also use it to talk about a past action that caused or resulted in a past event or situation.

To form the past perfect continuous, we use *had been* + the **present participle** of the main verb.

Examples

- “We **had been waiting** for a long time before the bus finally came.”
- “I ***had been*** **working** on the ranch for more than half my life when I retired.”
- “I**’d been cleaning** all day, so I was too tired to go out last night.”
- “She ***had been*** **traveling** around Europe when she heard about her mother’s illness.”
- “He ***hadn’t been*** **feeling** well, so he went to lay down.”
- “I was covered in mud as I***’d been*** **digging** in the back yard.”
- “He needed to study harder, because he ***hadn’t been*** **doing** very well on his exams.”
- “Where ***had*** you ***been*** **staying** at the time of the incident?”

The Subjunctive Mood

So far, we’ve seen examples of the past tense being used to describe what did or did not actually happen. This is known as the **Indicative Mood**.

However, we can also use the past tense to describe hypothetical scenarios, conditions, and desires—this is known as the **subjunctive mood**, one of the **Irrealis Moods** in English.

Expressing Wishes

We generally use one of the past tenses to describe a wish or desire for a hypothetical alternative, even if it is for something in the present or the future.

For example:

- “I wish it **weren’t** Monday.”

- “I wish I **hadn’t agreed** to work on Sunday.”
- “We both wish you **weren’t moving** to Europe for college.”

Conditional Sentences

We can also use the different past tenses to create **conditional sentences**, which describe possible (but unreal) outcomes based on hypothetical conditions. For example:

- “If I **won** the lottery, I would buy a new house.”
- “If you **were** older, you could stay up as late as you want.”
- “If I **didn’t live** in London, I could never speak English so well.”
- “If she **had been** there, she could have helped you.”
- “What might you have done **had** you **known** the truth?”
- “**Had** you **been listening**, you would have heard that the report was needed on Monday.”
- “I might have lost my job if my brother **hadn’t been working** in the head office at the time.”

Go to the sections related to the **subjunctive mood** if you want to learn more about using the past tense to describe hypothetical actions, events, and situations.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following **cannot** be described by one of the past tenses?

a) An action that began in the past and will continue into the future
b) An action in the past that was interrupted by another past action
c) An action that began and ended in the past
d) Things that began in the past and continued until the present moment
e) A & D
f) None of the above

2. Which form of the past tense is used to indicate the **cause** of a past result?

a) Past simple tense
b) Past continuous tense
c) Past perfect tense
d) Past perfect continuous tense

3. Which of the following sentences uses one of the past tenses?

a) “I regret to inform you that I shall be submitting my resignation soon.”
b) “They’ve been trying to get a loan.”
c) “She had been spending some time with her father.”
d) “He’ll have been working in this factory for nearly 30 years next March.”

4. Which form of the past tense does the following sentence use?
"I hadn’t considered her as a possible candidate for the job."

a) Past simple tense
b) Past continuous tense
c) Past perfect tense
d) Past perfect continuous tense

5. When do we use the past tense to describe a wish or desire?

a) For things happening in the past
b) For things happening in the present
c) For things happening in the future
d) All of the above

Past Simple Tense

Definition

The **past simple tense** (also called the **simple past tense**, or simply the **past simple**) is used to express completed actions. We often use the past simple with an adverb or adverbial phrase that specifies a time from the past, such as *yesterday*, *last year*, *an hour ago*, etc.

Structure

This tense is known as the past *simple* because, like the **present simple tense**, it does not require any auxiliary verbs to complete its meaning; its structure is simply the **subject** + the past tense form of the verb.

For example:

- “**I** ***went*** to the park.”

The speaker’s action of going to the park has been completed. The verb *go* is therefore put in the simple past tense, *went*.

However, we do not know anything about *when* the action was completed. We often add adverbs or adverbial phrases that provide additional information about past time, which can be placed at the beginning or end of the sentence. If appearing at the beginning of the sentence, these adverbs are often set apart by commas (although this is not necessary if the information is only one or two words). However, this information can’t come between the subject and the verb, and it usually does not come between the verb and any information that is necessary to complete the verb’s meaning (such as its **direct object** or an **adverbial complement**). For example:

✔ “**I** ***went*** to the park yesterday.” (correct)
✔ “Yesterday **I** ***went*** to the park.” (correct)
✔ “Yesterday, **I** ***went*** to the park.” (correct)
✖ “**I** yesterday ***went*** to the park.” (incorrect)
✖ “**I** ***went*** yesterday to the park.” (incorrect)

In more stylized writing, however, adverbials relating to time will *sometimes* come between a verb and its complement, which gives them extra emphasis in the sentence. For example:

- “**I** ***wrote*** over an hour ago to my sister, but have yet to hear a reply.”

Notice that the tone becomes much more formal and the sentence sounds a bit more convoluted. In most cases, it is best to avoid this structure.

Types of sentences

Positive (affirmative) sentences

The types of past simple tense sentences we’ve looked at so far have all been examples of **positive sentences**, also known as **affirmative sentences**. These tell the reader what *did* happen. We can also create negative, interrogative, and negative interrogative sentences in the past simple tense; however, the structure of the sentence changes slightly in each case.

Negative sentences

In contrast to positive sentences, negative sentences in past simple tense tell the reader what *did not* happen. To form negative sentences in the past simple tense, we must use the auxiliary verb *did* (the past tense of *do*) together with *not* before the main verb of the sentence. The main verb, meanwhile, goes back to present simple tense, which is the infinitive form of the verb without *to*. For example:

- “I ***did not*** **eat** the cookie.”
- “She ***didn’t*** **enjoy** the movie.”
- “He ***didn’t*** **have** to leave so early.”

Interrogative sentences (questions)

Like negative sentences, we have to use the auxiliary verb *did* to make **interrogative sentences** (sentences that ask questions) in the past simple tense. In this case, however, *did* comes before the subject, rather than the verb.

We can see this construction more clearly if we compare affirmative vs. interrogative constructions:

- Affirmative: “**I** ***went*** to the park.”
- Interrogative: “***Did*** **you** ***go*** to the park?”

- Affirmative: “**Janet** ***saw*** a great movie on Friday.”
- Interrogative: “***Did*** **Janet** ***see*** a movie on Friday?”

- Affirmative: “**They** ***mowed*** the lawn already.”

- Interrogative: “***Did*** **they** ***mow*** the lawn yet?”

With question words

We can also use question words (such as *who/whom, what, where,* etc.) before *did* if we are asking for specific information. For example:

- “*Who/whom* **did** you **see**?”
- “*What* **did** you **wear** last night?"
- “*When* **did** they **arrive**?”

Additionally, we can use *who* without the auxiliary *did* in interrogative sentences in the past simple tense. In this case, it is functioning as an **interrogative pronoun** and acts as the subject of the sentence. Because we no longer need *did* to complete the sentence’s meaning, we use the past tense of the main verb once again.

- “*Who* **went** to the movie with you?”
- “*Who* **left** their wallet behind?”

Negative interrogative sentences

Negative interrogative sentences also ask a question, but they imply that the speaker expects the answer to be (or believes the answer *should* be) “yes.” We form these by adding the auxiliary verb *did* before the subject of the sentence and the word *not* after the subject. *Did* and *not* are very often contracted, in which case *didn’t* comes before the subject:

- “***Didn’t*** you **go** to Europe last year?”
- “**Did** Jessie ***not*** **try** the cake **we baked** for her?”
- “**Did** I ***not*** **tell** you to clean your room an hour ago?”
- “***Didn’t*** he **say** he was leaving in the morning?”

Other types of sentences

The types of sentences we’ve covered above are the most common uses of the past simple tense. However, there are a couple of other ways we can use the past simple to express specific meanings.

Emphatic *did* – the past emphatic

tense

There is another way that we can form a positive sentence in the past simple tense. It is known as the **past emphatic tense**, and it is formed by using *did* before the main verb, which is in present tense. It is the same construction as negative sentences in the past simple tense, except that we leave out the word *not*.

This form places special emphasis on the *fact* that something happened in the past, which is usually used as a means of explanation or to convince someone of something. For example:

- "But I'm telling you, **I *did* clean my room** when you asked me to!"
- "John was in a sorry state last night. I suppose **he *did* have a lot to drink**."

We can hear the emphasis that is placed on the word *did* in these sentences if we read them aloud, and it is this stress that creates the explanatory intonation in the text.

Using the past simple tense for hypotheticals (the subjunctive mood)

If we are expressing a wish or desire, we usually use the past tense; for a present wish, we use the past simple.

For example:

- "I wish it **weren't/wasn't** Monday."
- "I wish I **didn't have to** go to work."

This is an example of what's called the **subjunctive mood** in English, which is used for expressing things that are hypothetical or not objectively factual. To learn more about how the past simple tense is used in this way, see the section on **subjunctive mood** under the chapter on **Mood**.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What do we **primarily** use the past simple tense for?

a) To express what will happen
b) To express what did happen

c) To express what did not happen
d) To express what should have happened

2. In which of the following types of sentences do we need the auxiliary verb ***did*** to make the past simple tense?

a) Negative sentences
b) Interrogative sentences
c) Positive sentences
d) A & B
e) B & C

3. Select the sentence below that is **correct**:

a) “I knew where to go.”
b) “He didn’t studied hard enough.”
c) “But I did washed the dishes!”
d) “I wish it isn’t raining.”

4. Where does the auxiliary verb *did* appear in an **interrogative sentence** that does **not** use question words?

a) Immediately before the main verb
b) Immediately after the main verb
c) Immediately before the subject
d) Immediately after the subject

5. Which of the following sentences is **not** in the past simple tense?

a) “He found a way of keeping possession of the house.”
b) “We didn’t travel to Rome after all.”
c) “Well, you can be sure that he does have a solution in mind.”
d) “Did he not know that we were coming?”

Past Continuous Tense

Definition

Also called the **past progressive**, the **past continuous tense** is used to describe something that was in progress at a certain moment in the past.

It is called the *past continuous* because it uses the past tense of the auxiliary verb *be* (*was* or *were*) followed by the **present participle** of the main verb (which is used to describe an action that is or was *continuously* happening).

Structure

To form the past continuous, we order the sentence like this: subject + **was/were** + **present participle of main verb**.

For example:

- "I **was *working***."
- "She **was *reading*** a book."

These sentences are both complete, but they give very little information. Often, the past continuous tense is used with additional information to convey a more complete story about what surrounded a continuous action or event.

Functions of the past continuous

There are a number of functions for which we use the past continuous tense in speech and writing. Let's look at some examples of these various functions.

Before and after another action or event happened

- "We **were busy working** on our assignment when our parents came home."
- "I **was watching** the lovely sunset as a flock of birds soared by."

Interrupted by another action or event

- "He **was having** the most wonderful time on the beach when the weather suddenly turned awful."
- "As they **were leaving**, the phone rang."

Before and after a certain time

- "Two years ago, I **was working** at a bar in New York City."

- “She **was still up writing** her thesis at 2 o’clock in the morning.”

For a certain length of time (whether specific or undefined)

- “My head **was throbbing**.” (undefined length of time)
- “You **were eating** that sandwich for an hour!” (specific length of time)

Repeatedly and frequently

- “My parents **were fighting** all the time when I decided to leave.
- “I **was often worrying** we wouldn’t be able to afford the wedding in the months leading up to it.”

A source of irritation

We can also indicate that things that happened repeatedly were a source of irritation by using the **adverbs of frequency** *always* or *constantly*, as in:

- “My ex-husband **was *always* leaving** dirty dishes in the sink.”
- “The old boss **was *constantly* berating** employees over silly issues.”

To show development, growth, or other change(s) over time

- “Things **were changing**; there was no denying that.”
- “I thought her condition **was improving**, but I guess not.”
- “His memory **was fading** as he got older.”

Narrating a story or describing an atmosphere

- “As they walked into the sunshine, the birds **were singing** and the breeze **was softly blowing**.”
- “I **was working** in a New York City bar when all of this took place.”

Sentence types

All of the examples above have used the past continuous in **positive sentences**. As with the other tenses, we can use the past continuous in negative, imperative, and negative imperative sentences, with slight changes in structure as a result.

Negative sentences

To make a sentence negative in the past continuous, we simply add "not" between the auxiliary verb (*was/were*) and the present participle of the main verb. *Not* is often contracted with the auxiliary verb to make *wasn't/weren't*.

For example:

- "I ***was not*** **feeling** well."
- "The kids ***weren't*** **sleeping** when we got home."
- "She ***wasn't*** **working** for two years after the baby was born."

Interrogative sentences (questions)

To form an interrogative sentence (i.e., one that asks a question) in the past continuous tense, simply invert the subject with the verb.

For example:

- Positive: "**I *was* sleeping** when you called."
- Interrogative: "***Were you sleeping*** when I called?"
- Positive: "**They *were* watching** a movie last night."
- Interrogative: "***Were*** **you watching** a movie last night?"
- Positive: "**She *was* working** on her thesis at the time."
- Interrogative: "***Was*** **she working** on her thesis at the time?"

Negative interrogative sentences

Negative interrogative sentences also ask a question, but they imply that the speaker expects the answer to be (or believes the answer *should* be) "yes." We form these by adding the word *not* after the subject. *Was/were* and *not* are very often contracted into *wasn't/weren't*, in which case they both come before the subject:

- "***Was*** **she *not* looking** for a new place to live?"

- “***Weren’t*** **you watching** a movie last night?”
- “***Wasn’t*** **he keeping** track of the inventory?”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following **auxiliary verbs** is used to form the past continuous tense?

a) can
b) do
c) be
d) will

2. What *form* of the **main verb** is used in the past continuous tense?

a) present participle
b) past participle
c) future participle
d) infinitive form

3. Which of the following sentences is in the past continuous tense?

a) “I had been watching a movie when they walked in.”
b) “He knew a lot of people who had seen the movie.”
c) “She was waiting to hear from her sister in New York.”
d) “I am certainly trying to find a solution.”

4. Which of the following sentences is **not** in the past continuous tense?

a) “I was always trying to find the best opportunities.”
b) “They left without saying goodbye.”
c) “Weren’t we looking for something just like this?”
d) “Sure, he’s doing his best, but is it good enough?”

Past Perfect Tense

Definition

The **past perfect tense** expresses the idea that something occurred before another action in the past. It can also show that something happened before a specific time in the past.

Consider these two sentences, for instance:

- “When she arrived at the airport, she realized she **dropped** her passport.”
- “When she arrived at the airport, she realized she **had dropped** her passport.”

She arrived at the airport in a moment in the past, but the moment she dropped her passport happened before this past moment. Because the first sentence only uses the **past simple tense**, it sounds as if both moments happened at the same time in the past, and the sentence becomes confusing. By using the **past perfect tense** in the second sentence, we are able to distinguish that one event happened earlier than the other.

Structure

To form the past perfect tense, we use *had* (the past tense of the auxiliary verb *have*) + the **past participle** of the main verb.

Because we use the past perfect to highlight two separate points in the past, we often use the conjunctions *before, when, because, until,* or *by the time* to specify the order in which they occurred in time.

An action or event before another action or event

If we are highlighting that the action or event in the **past perfect tense** came before *another* action or event, this second verb is often (but not always) in the ***past simple tense***. For example:

- “When I *turned on the TV*, the film **had ended**.”
- “I **had dreamed** of living in Ireland even before I *visited* the country.”
- “She *was sad* when *she left* the house she **had lived in** for so many years.”
- “Unfortunately, he **had not taken** his keys before he *left* the house.”

Notice that the past perfect can appear in a sentence either before or after a later action or event. Regardless of its position, the past perfect always refers to an earlier time.

This is especially important to remember when using the conjunction *when*, because it will help distinguish between events that happened simultaneously in the past and events that happened sequentially. For example, consider these two subtly (but distinctly) different sentences:

- "Mary *cooked* dinner when the kids *came* home."
- "Mary **had cooked** dinner when the kids *came* home."

In the first sentence, it sounds like Mary started cooking at the same time as the kids arrived home. By using the past perfect in the second sentence, it is made clear that Mary had already cooked dinner before the kids arrived.

Omitting the past perfect

The past perfect is not always necessary, however, when we use the conjunctions *before* or *after* to link two clauses of past events. This is because these two words already specify an order of time. If this is the case, both verbs can be in the past simple tense. For example:

- "I **packed** a bag of snacks before I *left* for the airport." (correct)
- "I **had packed** a bag of snacks before I *left* for the airport." (correct, but not necessary)

Although not absolutely necessary, the past perfect still gives a greater sense of time than the past simple alone. The first sentence above is completely correct and easy to understand. The second sentence is equally correct, but it lets us know that the earlier event did not happen *immediately* before the later one. In this particular example, it gives the impression that the speaker had the foresight to pack a bag of snacks, rather than simply doing so just before he or she left for the airport.

This distinction is subtle, and its impact on the sentence is somewhat minor, but using the past perfect tense in this way creates a more rich and nuanced meaning.

An action or event before a specific point in time

If we are talking about a past perfect action that came before a certain point in time in the past, then we use an adverbial prepositional phrase to specify exactly *when* we are talking about.

For example:

- "*Until that afternoon*, she **had never considered** living abroad."

- “The construction **had gone** quite smoothly *before the earthquake*.”
- “I **had expected** to be married *by this morning*.”
- “I **hadn’t used** a hammer *before working in construction*.”

(Note that, in the last example, “working in construction” acts as the object of the preposition *before*. *Working* is a gerund in this case, so it does not have to be in the past simple tense, as with the other verbs we examined in the previous section.)

Other types of sentences

All of the above sentences are either **positive sentences** (also known as **affirmative sentences**) or **negative sentences**—as we can see, the negative sentences are formed by simply inserting *not* or *never* between *had* and the past participle of the main verb.

However, there is another way we can construct negative sentences in the past perfect. We’ll briefly look at how this is used, and then we’ll examine the other types of sentences that can be made in the past perfect tense.

Negative sentences – alternative construction

Most of the time, we make the past perfect negative by simply adding *not* or *never* after the auxiliary verb *had*.

If we want to emphasize that something never happened before a given time, event, or action in the past, we can also place the word *never* before the verb *had*. In this case, both *never* and *had* come before the subject of the clause. For instance:

- “***Never had*** **I felt** so alive.”
- “***Never had*** **she imagined** that love like this could exist.”

If we want to add even more emphasis, we can also include the word *before* between *never* and *had,* as in:

- “***Never before had*** **she seemed** so beautiful to him.”

Such sentences are much more literary in style—they typically would not be found in academic, professional, or colloquial speech or writing. Because of this literary usage, the construction is also primarily used with **stative verbs** (e.g.

feel, *imagine*, *appear*) as opposed to **action verbs**. For example, the statement "never before had I run so far" sounds rather over-embellished or hyperbolic.

Finally, you may have noticed that none of the above sentences include another action, event, or point in time to which the past perfect is referring. This again is due to the literary usage of such a construction. In such cases, the past perfect often alludes to something that has already been mentioned elsewhere in the narrative.

Interrogative sentences (questions)

To form interrogative sentences (sentences that ask questions) in the past perfect, the auxiliary verb *had* again comes before the subject, which is then followed by the past participle of the main verb. Most of the time, we use the word *ever* before the main verb to ask if something had happened or been the case at any time before something else. It is usually constructed with the conjunction or preposition *before*.

For example:

- "***Had*** **you ever been on** a tractor *before starting work on the farm*?"
- "*Before the war*, **had you ever considered** living abroad?"

Negative interrogative sentences

Negative interrogative sentences also ask a question, but they imply that the speaker expects the answer to be (or believes the answer *should* be) "yes." We form these by adding the word *not* or *never* after the subject.

Had and *not* are very often contracted, in which case *hadn't* comes before the subject.

Negative interrogative sentences in the past perfect are not very common in everyday speech and writing. Like the alternative use of *never* that we looked at above, it would be more common to hear them in a story or narrative. For example:

- "I began to panic. It was nearly midnight. ***Hadn't*** **the train arrived yet**?"

Negative interrogative sentences in the past perfect might also occur if someone is asking another person a question about a story they are telling. For example:

- Person A: "It was nearly midnight by the time I got home, with still more work ahead of me."

- Person B: “***Hadn’t* you at least gotten** close to finishing by then?”
- Person A: “No, I was barely even halfway done!”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. We use the past tense of which **auxiliary verb** to form the past perfect?

a) be
b) will
c) have
d) do

2. Which of the following is **not** something we use the past perfect tense to describe?

a) An action or event before a specific point in time
b) An action in the past that was happening until recently
c) An action or event before another action or event
d) A hypothetical situation in the past that might have led to a different outcome

3. Which of the following types of sentences is *more likely* to be found in **literary writing** when it is in the past perfect tense?

a) Negative interrogative
b) Conditional
c) Positive
d) Interrogative

4. Which of the following sentences is in the past perfect tense?

a) “I had been hitchhiking for miles before someone picked me up.”
b) “I have seen some weird things out here on the road.”
c) “Unfortunately, I hadn’t eaten before I left home that day.”
d) “I felt awful by the time I finally got home.”

5. Which of the following is **not** in the past perfect tense?

a) “Had she ever been in this bar before today?”
b) “He hadn’t seen her when he first came in.”
c) “Never before had he met someone so interesting.”
d) “He had a strong hope that they would meet again.”

Past Perfect Continuous Tense Definition

The **past perfect continuous tense** (also called the **past perfect progressive tense**) is used to describe an action that began and was still in progress in the past before another past action started. In contrast to the **past perfect tense**, which describes a past action that finished before the second action started, the past perfect continuous emphasizes the continuous progress of that action.

We usually use the present perfect continuous tense to emphasize the duration of the past action before the second action or event occurred. We can also use it to talk about a past action that caused or resulted in a past event or situation.

To form the past perfect continuous, we use *had been* + the **present participle** of the main verb. It is nearly identical in structure to the **present perfect continuous tense**, except that the **modal auxiliary verb** *have* is now in the past tense. For example:

- “We **had been waiting** for a long time when the bus finally came.”
- “My little sister **had been sitting** very quietly, but then she started to cry.”
- “I**’d been cleaning** all day, so I was too tired to go out last night.”

Like the **past continuous tense**, the past perfect continuous is generally only used with **action verbs**, not **stative verbs**.

Using the Past Perfect Continuous

Actions interrupted in the past

The most common use of the past perfect continuous tense is to describe an action that was in progress in the past before another past action or event occurred. When the second action happens, it interrupts and marks the completion of the first one. For example:

- “I ***had been*** **teaching** English in Tokyo when the earthquake hit.”
- “They***’d been*** **living** in New York before she got the job in Washington, D.C.”
- “She ***had been*** **traveling** around Europe when she heard about her mother’s illness.”

Past durations of time

When we use the past perfect continuous tense in this way, we often describe the **duration** of the continuous past action. The meaning is very similar to the **present perfect continuous tense** in this way. However, whereas the present perfect continuous describes an action that was happening up until the present moment, the past perfect continuous highlights an action that was finished when another action or event in the past occurred. Consider, for example, these two sentences:

• "She ***has been*** **waiting** for over an hour for him to arrive." (present perfect continuous tense)
• "She ***had been*** **waiting** for over an hour for him to arrive." (past perfect continuous tense)

The meaning of both sentences is quite similar. However, in the first sentence, *she* began waiting an hour ago in the past, and is still waiting; in the second sentence, *she* began waiting an hour ago in the past, but the waiting was completed, either when he arrived or when she decided to stop waiting.

Here are some other examples using the future perfect continuous tense:

• "I ***had been*** **working** on the ranch for more than half my life when I retired."

• "She ***had been*** **studying** Japanese for four years by the time she moved to the country."

• "When the teacher came back, we ***had been*** **reading** for half an hour."

Cause of past results

We can also use the past perfect continuous to indicate that the continuous action that finished in the past was the cause of a condition, situation, or event in the past. Used in this way, the past continuous action was not interrupted by a second action or event. For example:

• "She was very sweaty because she ***had been*** **running** for nearly an hour."

• "I didn't have any energy to play with the kids because I ***had been*** **working** so hard all the week."

• "I could tell you ***had been*** **swimming** all morning because you looked like a prune!"

We can also use the past perfect continuous in this way without an expression of duration, as in:

- “He ***had been*** **feeling** unwell, so he went to lay down.”
- “I was covered in mud as I ***had been*** **digging** in the back yard.”

Past continuous vs. Past perfect continuous

We can use the **past continuous tense** in a similar way to show causation, but the difference is that the past continuous describes an action that finished just now or very recently, while the past perfect continuous describes an action that may have finished further in the past. For example:

- “My eyes were tired because I ***was*** **working** on the computer.” (past continuous)
The action finished just now or very recently.

- “My eyes were tired because I ***had been*** **working** on the computer.” (past perfect continuous)
The action likely finished at a point further in the past.

With action verbs

Because it describes continuous, dynamic action, the past perfect continuous can only be used with **action verbs**; it cannot be used with **stative verbs** (such as **linking verbs** or **verbs of the senses**), which describe non-continuous actions. For stative verbs, we can only use the **past simple** or **past perfect** tenses. For example:

✔ “We **were** married for 10 years before we had kids.” (correct—past simple tense)
✔ “We ***had*** **been** married for 10 years before we had kids.” (correct—past perfect tense)
✖ “We ***had been*** **being** married for 10 years before we had kids.” (incorrect—past perfect continuous tense)

✔ “By the next morning, it all **seemed** like just a bad dream.” (correct—past simple tense)
✔ “By the next morning, it all ***had*** **seemed** like just a bad dream.” (correct—past perfect tense)
✖ “By the next morning, it all ***had been*** **seeming** like just a bad dream.”

(incorrect—past perfect continuous tense)

Other types of sentences

So far we’ve only looked at **affirmative** sentences—**declarative sentences** that describe an action that **did** happen. Let’s look at some of the other types of sentences we can make with the past perfect continuous.

Negative sentences

Sentences in the past perfect continuous tense can be made negative by using the word *not* after *had*; the two words are often contracted into *hadn’t*. For example:

- “I didn’t mind her coming over; I ***hadn’t been*** **getting** much work done anyway.”
- “She ***hadn’t been*** **living** there for very long before she had to move back home.”
- “He needed to study harder, because he ***hadn’t been*** **doing** very well on his exams.”

We generally do not use *never* with the past perfect continuous tense.

Interrogative sentences

When we make questions with the past perfect continuous tense, the subject and the auxiliary verb *had* are inverted. For example:

- “Where ***had*** you ***been*** **working** at the time of the incident?”
- “***Had*** she ***been*** **living** in Italy for a long time?”
- “Why ***had*** they ***been*** **telling** me I was doing a good job if they were planning on firing me?”

We can also make interrogative sentences negative by adding *not* between the subject and *been*, or we can contract *had* and *not* into *hadn’t*:

- "***Hadn't*** you ***been*** **writing** a novel before you got this job?"
- "***Had*** he ***not been*** **feeling** well at the time?
- "You had plenty of money, so why ***hadn’t*** you ***been*** **paying** your bills?”

As we see in the first example, a negative interrogative question can sometimes be used rhetorically, implying that the speaker expects the answer to be “yes.”

Conditional sentences

Conditional sentences describe a hypothetical action or outcome that might happen if a certain condition is or was met. Conditional sentences that use the past perfect continuous tense are known as **third conditionals**, which establish a hypothetical situation in the past followed by a hypothetical outcome that did not really happen.

There are two ways we can use the past perfect continuous to form conditional sentences. We can either use the normal form in a conditional clause that begins with *if*, or we can invert *had* with the subject to create a conditional clause, which adds a bit more formality to the tone of the sentence.

For example:

- "If I ***had still been*** **living** there when the earthquake hit, I probably would have lost everything I owned."
- "We would have gone hiking on Saturday if it ***hadn't been*** **snowing** in the mountains."

- "***Had*** you ***been*** **listening**, you would have heard that the report was needed on Monday."
- "I could have lost my job ***had*** my brother ***not been*** **working** in the head office at the time."

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What form of the **main verb** is used to create the past perfect continuous tense?

a) infinitive
b) base form
c) present participle
d) past participle

2. Which of the following is a function of the past perfect continuous tense?

a) To describe how long something had been happening by a specific point in the past
b) To indicate the cause of a past result
d) To indicate a continuous action that began in the past and continues into the future

d) To indicate a continuous action that finished in the present
e) A & B
f) B & C
g) C & D

3. Where does *not* appear in a **negative sentence** in the past perfect continuous tense?

a) After the subject
b) After *had*
c) After *been*
d) After the present participle of the main verb

4. Which of the following uses the past perfect continuous tense to form a **conditional sentence**?

a) “Had you been waiting for long before your brother arrived?”
b) “I hadn’t been studying for more than an hour when they closed the library.”
c) “Had we been digging just a few feet from here, we would have hit a gas line.”
d) “He had been living in Rome for eight years, so he spoke perfect Italian.”

5. Which of the following types of verbs **cannot** be used in the past perfect continuous tense?

a) action verbs
b) stative verbs
c) factitive verbs
d) conditional verbs
e) A & B
f) B & C
g) C & D

Future Tense (Approximation)

Definition

Grammatically speaking, there are no **future tenses** in the English language; verbs do not inflect (conjugate) a certain way to reflect future actions. There are really only **aspects of the future tense**—that is, ways of expressing the future using other grammatical elements and constructions.

To talk about other future events or actions, we use different sentence constructions to achieve a future point of view. This is most often accomplished by using the **modal auxiliary verb** *will* or the verb phrase *be going to*. These constructions make up what are commonly referred to as the **future tenses**.

Future Simple Tense

The future simple tense is used in a few different ways to describe things that have not happened yet—it can be used to predict something, to make promises, to describe a future fact, to describe unplanned actions, or to offer to do something.

The simplest way we create the future simple tense is by using *will*/*be going to* + the base form (the **infinitive** without *to*) of the main verb of the sentence. For example:

- “I ***will*** **walk** to work.”
- “The president ***will*** **be** in Portland tomorrow.”
- “Don’t worry, I**’m going to pay** for the coffee.”
- “I **am going to** drive to work tomorrow, if you want a ride.”

Future Continuous Tense

The **future continuous tense** (also known as the **future progressive**) is used to describe an unfinished action occurring in the future; this action can either begin in the future, or it can already be in progress in the present and continue into the future. We can also use the future continuous tense to make predictions about an action we think will still be happening in the future.

To form the future continuous, we usually use *will*/*be going to* + the **auxiliary verb** *be* + the **present participle** of the main verb. For example:

- “I **will be running** 10 miles tomorrow.”
- “This is your captain speaking; the plane **will be landing** *in 10 minutes*.”
- “We **are going to be buying** our own house *soon*.”
- “They**’ll be sleeping** by the time we return home.”
- “In 10 years, people **are going to be consuming** even more natural resources.”

Future Perfect Tense

We use the **future perfect tense** to say that something will finish or complete at a specific point in the future. We also often include durations of time to indicate how long something has been happening once a future moment in time is reached.

In addition, we can use the future perfect tense to make a present prediction about something that we believe has or should have happened in the past.

The most common way we create the future perfect tense is by using *will* + *have* + the **past participle** of the verb. For example:

- “This June, I ***will have*** **lived** in New York for four years.”
- “You ***will have*** **heard** by now that the company is going bankrupt.”
- “She***’ll have*** **slept** for the whole day if she doesn’t get up soon!”

(We can also use *be going to* instead of *will,* but this construction is less common and cannot be used to make a present prediction about a past action.)

Future Perfect Continuous Tense

Like the **future perfect tense**, we use the **future perfect continuous tense** (also known as the **future perfect progressive tense**) to indicate how long something has been happening once a future moment in time is reached, emphasizing the continuous nature of the action. It can also be used in this way to indicate the cause of a possible future result.

The most common way we create the future perfect continuous tense is by using *will* + *have been* + the **present participle** of the verb. For example:

- “By June, I ***will have been*** **living** in New York for four years.”
- “She’s going to miss half the day because she***’ll have been*** **sleeping** for so long!”
- “By the time I get there, she ***will have been*** **waiting** for over an hour.”
- “I ***will have been*** **working** on this ranch for more than half my life when I turn 40.”
- “I’m not going to have any energy to play with the kids because I***’ll have*** **been working** so hard this week.”

(Like the future perfect tense, we can also use *be going to* instead of *will*, but this construction is less common.)

Using *shall*

In addition to *will* and *be going to*, the modal verb *shall* can also be used to form each of the future tenses. Although *will* is generally preferred in modern English (especially American English), using *shall* adds an additional degree of politeness or formality to the sentence sometimes lacking with *will* or *be going to*.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following **cannot** be described by the future tenses?

a) Things that began in the past and will continue into the future
b) Things that we believe have already happened
c) Things that are going to happen in the future
d) Things that began in the past and continued until the present moment
e) A & C
f) B & C
g) None of the above

2. Which form of the future tense is used to indicate the cause of a possible future result?

a) Future simple tense
b) Future continuous tense
c) Future perfect tense
d) Future perfect continuous tense

3. Which of the following sentences does **not** use one of the future tenses?

a) "I regret to inform you that I shall be submitting my resignation soon."
b) "They're going to see if they can get a loan."
c) "She had been spending some time with her father."
d) "He'll have been working in this factory for nearly 30 years next March."

4. Which form of the future tense does the following sentence use?
"I won't be coming here ever again!"

a) Future simple tense

b) Future continuous tense
c) Future perfect tense
d) Future perfect continuous tense

Future Simple Tense

Definition

English verbs do not have unique forms for the future tense; instead, we use different sentence constructions to describe actions that will occur in the future. There are two ways we do this for the **future simple tense**.

The simplest way we create the future simple tense is by using the **modal verb** *will* + the bare infinitive (without *to*) of the main verb of the sentence, as in, "I **will walk** to work."

We can also form the future simple tense by using *be going to* + the bare infinitive of the main verb, as in "I **am going to walk** to work." However, the usages of this construction are slightly different.

For now, we will focus on *will* constructions; a little later on, we'll look at how *going to* can be used to create subtle differences in meaning.

Uses of the future simple tense – *will* constructions

The future simple tense can be used in a few different ways to describe things that have not happened yet. The structure of the sentence does not change, though, so we generally rely on context or other parts of the sentence to create these differences in meaning.

To predict something

Example:

- "I think it **will rain** today."

This is a prediction; it may be based on fact (i.e., because there are dark storm clouds), or perhaps on current, less tangible evidence (i.e., it "feels" like rain is coming).

- "Our team **will win** the game."

This is also a prediction, which may or may not be based on facts or past experience. We often use the future simple tense for simple predictions that are based on desires.

To make promises

Example:

- “I **will definitely come** to the party. You have my word.”
- “I**’ll wash** the dishes later.”

Neither of these is a prediction; each is an assurance that something is going to happen. The adverb *definitely* in the first sentence solidifies this promise, while *later* in the second sentence lets the reader/listener know when the dishes will be washed.

To describe a future fact

Example:

- “The president **will be** in Portland tomorrow.”

- “I **will drive** to work tomorrow, if you want a ride.”

These are neither predictions nor promises, but rather are factual statements of thing that are going to happen.

Unplanned actions or decisions

We can also use the future simple when we decide to do something at the moment of speaking, rather than something that was already planned or decided.

For example:

- Person A: “There’s no milk left.”
- Person B: “I **will get** some the next time I’m out.”

- Person A: “The TV isn’t working, so you won’t be able to watch the football game.”
- Person B. “I**’ll just read** a book instead.”

To offer to do something

Example:

Imagine you see your neighbor coming out of the supermarket carrying two heavy shopping bags. You might say:

- “I**’ll help** you. Give me one of the bags and I **will carry** it for you.”

If your friend is low on money when you are both out at a coffee shop, you might say:

- “Don’t worry, I**’ll pay** for the coffee.”

Negatives

We can achieve strong negative meanings for most of the above uses by adding *not* or *never* to *will*, as in:

- “Our team **will never win** the game.” (negative prediction)
- “I **won’t wash** the dishes later.” (negative promise; also used for refusals)
- “He **won’t drive** to work tomorrow.” (negative future fact)

However, we generally don’t put unplanned decisions or offers in the negative with the *will* construction, because the sentence ends up describing a negative promise, a refusal, or a negative future fact:

- “I**’ll never read** a book.” (negative promise)
- “I **won’t pay** for the coffee.” (refusal or negative fact)

Interrogative sentences (questions)

To form questions in the future simple tense, we simply move *will* before the subject of the sentence. For example:

- “**Will** it **rain** today?” (question of a prediction)
- “**Will** you **come to the party**?” (question of an intention, promise, or assurance)
- “**Will** the president **be** in Portland tomorrow?” (question of a future fact)
- “**Will** you **get** some milk the next time you are out?” (an unplanned request, phrased as a question)

We can also use *shall* instead of *will* in questions when making offers, as in:

- “**Shall** I **carry** that bag for you?”
- “**Shall** I **get** some milk the next time I’m out?”

This makes the question more formal and polite.

Going to constructions

In several of the cases we looked at above, we can use *be going to* in place of *will*.

For example:

- “I think it **is going to rain** today.”
- “I **am going to come** to the party.”
- “The president **is going to be** in Portland tomorrow.”

Going to for intended future actions

Unlike the *will* construction, we do not use *going to* to describe unplanned decisions or offers; instead, we use this construction to express intended, pre-planned actions, as in:

- Person A: “There’s no milk left.”
- Person B: “I**’m going to get** some the next time I’m out.”

- Person A: “I don’t have any cash.”
- Person B: “Don’t worry, I **am going to pay** for the coffees.”

This is also the case if we use *going to* in one of our previous examples that described a future fact:

- “I**’m going to** drive to work tomorrow, if you want a ride.”

When we used the *will* construction, we were describing something that is considered a concrete fact; now, however, it expresses a planned intention. We can see this in other examples as well:

- “She**’s going to play** soccer later.” (She has already decided that this is what she wants to do later.)
- “He **is going to make** a cake for us tomorrow.” (This is his plan of action.)

We can also use *going to* when something is certain or very likely to happen, but not in the immediate future.

For example:

- “Look at those black clouds. It**’s going to rain**.” (This is very likely due to the evidence of the weather.)
- “My mama told me that she**’s going to have** a baby.” (This is a certainty, but it will not happen right away.)

- “Hurry up! We**’re going to be** late.” (This is also evident and very likely. Although it will happen soon, it will not happen immediately.)

Finally, children often use the *going to* construction when they speak about what they want to be when they grow up, as in:

- “When I grow up, I**’m going to be** a police officer.” (At this moment, that is what I intend to be.)

Interrogative sentences using *going to*

To form interrogative sentences in the future simple tense using the *going to* construction, we simply put the linking verb *be* before the subject of the sentence. This is also the case if we use question words. For example:

- “**Are** you **going to see** Jennifer later?”
- “**Is** it **going to rain**?”
- “***What*** **are** you **going to say** to him?”
- “***Where*** **are** they **going to stay**?”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which **modal auxiliary verb** is commonly used to create the future simple tense?

a) can
b) do
c) will
d) would

2. What is the **main** function of the *going to* construction (as compared to the *will* construction)?

a) To express intended action
b) To express certainty in predictions
c) To express an unplanned decision
d) To make a refusal

3. What is the following sentence describing?
“I’ll drive to the airport to pick you up, if you like.”

a) A prediction
b) An unplanned action
c) A future fact
d) An offer

4. What **other** auxiliary verb can be used **instead** of *will* in interrogative sentences in the future simple tense?

a) can
b) shall
c) would
d) going

5. Which construction would we **most likely** use to describe something that is certain or very likely to happen, but not in the immediate future?

a) will + bare infinitive
b) be going to + bare infinitive
c) Either A or B
d) Neither A nor B

Future Continuous Tense

Definition

The **future continuous tense** (also known as the **future progressive**) is used to describe an unfinished action occurring in the future. This action can either begin in the future, or it can already be in progress in the present and continue into the future.

Structure

As with all so-called future tenses, English verbs do not inflect into a unique "future form"—rather, we must use auxiliaries and participles in other tenses to describe future events or actions.

To form the future continuous, we use *will be* **or** *is/are going to be* + the **present participle** of the main verb.

For example:

- "I **will be running** 10 miles tomorrow."

- “He **is going to be leaving** the company soon.”

Much of the time, either construction may be used with no appreciable difference in the meaning of the sentence. However, as with the **future simple tense**, we sometimes use the *will be* construction for actions or events that are more certain to happen, whereas the *going to be* construction can be used to imply an *intended* action or event.

Using the future continuous tense

The future continuous is primarily used in three ways:

1. To say that something will be in progress from a certain moment in the future.
2. To predict that something will be in progress at some point in the future (i.e., not starting at a specific time).
3. To describe something that is expected or predicted to continue happening from the present for an uncertain amount of time into the future.

Let’s look at examples of each of these uses.

From a certain point in the future

In this usage, we describe something that will definitely be happening in the future—that is, it is not a prediction or an expectation. Because it is a certainty, we often reference specific points in time.

For example:

- “This is your captain speaking; the plane **will be landing** *in 10 minutes*.”
This means that it will begin to land progressively starting 10 minutes from now.

- “Please make your way to checkout counters, as the store **will be closing** *in five minutes*.”
This means that in five minutes’ time, the store will begin to close.

- “I just wanted to let you know that I**’ll be arriving** in Milan *on Saturday*.”
In this example, the action of *arriving* will begin on Saturday.

We can also use more vague references in time, so long as they are not too vague or too far in the future. For instance:

- “I need to get this report finished, as the boss **is going to be leaving** *shortly*.”
The progressive future action is going to begin happening (it is not a prediction), but the time frame is not exact.

We can see, however, that this can easily turn into a prediction when we use vague time references:

- "We **will be buying** our own house *soon*."
- "Our kids **are going to be leaving** for college *eventually*."

Predictions of future actions

The future continuous is often used to predict actions that we think or presume will be happening at an uncertain or generic point in the future.

- "Don't call Paul after 7 PM; he**'ll be having** dinner."
We predict that this will be in progress at some point after 7 o'clock.

- "In 10 years, people **are going to be consuming** even more natural resources."
We predict this to be in progress at a certain point in the future. Even though a specific time is referenced, it is far enough in the future that we can assume this isn't a certainty.

- "By the time we arrive home, they**'ll be sleeping**."
Again, we predict this action will be in progress at a future point (when we arrive home); we have reason to believe this, but it is not an absolute certainty.

In progress now and into the future

We can also use the future continuous to predict that an event or action is currently happening, and that it will continue for an uncertain amount of time into the future. For example:

- "Don't call the house now, as John **will be sleeping**."
We predict this to be in progress now, and that it will continue to be happening in the near future.

If we want to describe something that is definitely happening now and will (or is expected to) continue to happen in the future, we use the adverb *still* after *will* or before *going*. For instance:

- "I'm so behind on this assignment. The sun is going to rise and I **will *still* be working** on it."
- "No matter who is elected, we**'re still going to be dealing** with the effects of the recession for years to come."

Types of sentences

So far, we’ve looked at examples of positive sentences using the future continuous tense. As with the other tenses, we can also form negative, interrogative, and negative-interrogative sentences.

Negative sentences

We form the negative of the future continuous by adding **not** after *will* or before *going* in the sentence. (*Will* and *not* are often contracted to *won’t*.)

We form the negative to achieve the opposite meaning of all the uses we’ve looked at so far. For example:

- “Contrary to our previous announcement, the store **will not be closing** in five minutes.” (negative certainty of a future action)
- “Don’t bother trying to get a hold of Paul after 7; he **won’t be taking** calls then.” (negative prediction of a future action)
- “I may be behind on this assignment, but I **am not going to be working** past 5 o’clock.” (negative intention of allowing a current action to progress into the future)

Interrogative sentences (questions)

We create questions in the future continuous by inverting *will* or *be* with the subject. This is also the case if we use question words—*what, where, when, etc*. (An exception is the word *who*, which becomes the subject of the sentence but remains at the beginning.)

We most often use interrogative sentences in the future continuous tense to politely inquire about information:

- “**Will** you **be joining** us after dinner?”
- “***What*** **will** they **be doing** in Mexico?”
- “***Who*** **is going to be performing** at the concert?”

Negative interrogative sentences

Negative interrogative sentences also ask a question, but they imply that the speaker expects the answer to be (or believes the answer *should* be) “yes.” Again, in the future continuous, this is done to create a polite inquiry.

We form these by using the interrogative form we looked at above, and adding the word *not* after the subject. However, this is considered a formal construction

—more often in modern English, *will* and the forms of *be* are contracted with *not* to create *won't, isn't,* or *aren't,* all of which come before the subject.

- "**Will** you ***not*** **be joining** us after dinner?" (more formal, but less common)
- "***Won't*** we **be leaving** after the concert?" (less formal, but more common)
- "**Is** he ***not*** **going to be studying** for an exam?" (more formal, sometimes used for emphasis)
- "**Aren't** you **going to be working** next week?" (less formal, but more commonly used)

We do not use question words with negative interrogative sentences in the future continuous tense.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which auxiliary verb is often used to create the future continuous tense?

a) will
b) be
c) have
d) A & B
e) A & C
f) All of the above

2. Which of the following is **not** a usage of the future continuous tense?

a) To say that something will be in progress from a certain moment in the future.
b) To say that something will end sometime in the near future.
c) To predict that something will be in progress at some point in the future.
d) To describe something that is happening in the present and will continue into the future.

3. What form does the **main** verb take in the future continuous tense?

a) Infinitive
b) Past participle
c) Present participle
d) Present tense

4. Which of the following sentences uses the future continuous tense?

a) "I told him we will be coming home on Saturday."
b) "She said she'll work weekends while Mike is out sick."
c) "They said they would be arriving at 8 PM."
d) "I'm traveling to France next week."

5. Which of the following sentences **does not** use the future continuous tense?

a) "I'm sure he'll be trying as best he can to be there tomorrow."
b) "That no-good snitch is going to be sleeping with the fishes by the morning."
c) "She told him she would be working at the warehouse this week."
d) "I heard Daniel is going to be moving to Canada soon!"

Future Perfect Tense

Definition

We use the **future perfect tense** to say that something will finish or be completed at a specific point in the future. We also often include durations of time to indicate how long something has been happening once a future moment in time is reached.

In addition, we can use the future perfect tense to make a present prediction about something that we believe has or should have happened in the past.

The most common way we create the future perfect tense is by using the **modal auxiliary verb** *will* + *have* + the **past participle** of the verb. For example:

- "This June, I ***will have*** **lived** in New York for four years."
- "You ***will have*** **heard** by now that the company is going bankrupt."
- "She***'ll have*** **slept** for the whole day if she doesn't get up soon!"

Functions of the Future Perfect

Actions completed in the future

We often use an adverbial expression of a future point in time with the future perfect tense to describe when an action will be completed or accomplished. This adverbial phrase can occur either before or after the future perfect verb. For example:

- "With the way you're spending money, you ***will have*** **gone** through your savings in less than a month.”

- “After this next race, I ***will have*** **completed** 10 triathlons.”

Future spans of time

The future perfect tense is often used to indicate a point in the future at which a certain action or situation will have been happening for a given length of time. For example:

- “It’s hard to believe that by next month we***’ll have*** **been** married for 10 years.”
- “I ***will have*** **worked** on this ranch for more than half my life when I turn 40.”

As we can see above, the adverbial phrase expressing the **duration** of time (“for 10 years,” “for more than half my life”) usually comes after the future perfect tense construction. The expression of the future **point** in time (the point at which the duration is accomplished) can appear either before or after the future perfect tense.

Present predictions of past actions

We also use the future perfect for a present prediction of something we believe has already happened in the past. If we include adverbials related to time, we generally include expressions related to the **present time** rather than the future. For example:

- “You ***will have*** **seen** on page 18 how to set up the computer.”
- “Your mother ***will have*** **left** the dentist’s by now.”
- “At this stage, everyone ***will have*** **heard** the rumors already.”

Other sentence types

Negative sentences

To describe something that will **not** be completed at a point in the future, we make the future perfect tense negative by adding *not* after the modal verb *will* (usually contracted as *won’t*). For example:

- “Why are you going to the airport so early? Her flight ***will not have*** **arrived** yet.”
- “At this rate, I ***won’t have*** **finished** half of the work I need to get done by

tomorrow."

Interrogative sentences

We can ask whether an action will be complete in the future by inverting *will* with the subject, as in:

- "***Will*** they ***have*** **read** the memo ahead of the meeting?"
- "***Will*** you ***have*** **had** something to eat before you arrive?"

We can also ask about specific aspects of a future action by using different question words or phrases. Remember, we still invert *will* with the subject in this case:

- "What ***will*** we ***have*** **learned** from such tragic events as these?"
- "Who ***will have*** **prepared** the notes for the seminar?"
- "How much money ***will*** we ***have*** **spent** trying to get this car working?"
- "How long ***will*** you ***have*** **worked** there before your maternity leave begins?"

Other constructions

Although we most commonly use the modal verb *will*, there are two other ways we can form the future perfect tense: *be going to* and *shall*.

Be going to

Be going to can only form the future perfect tense when it is used to describe an action that finishes in the future—in this way, it is interchangeable with *will* in meaning.

We usually contract *be* with the subject when we use *be going to*. For example:

- "She***'s going to have*** **won** nine championship titles by the time she's 25."
- "If you keep reading at that pace, you***'re going to have*** **finished** the book before the rest of the students."

However, using *be going to* can sometimes result in an awkward construction, and it is not as common as *will*. We also **cannot** use the *be going to* construction when talking about something that we predict to have happened in the past.

Shall

We can also use the modal verb ***shall*** instead of *will* to form the future perfect tense in formal speech or writing. Unlike *be going to*, we can use *shall* for all uses of the future perfect. For example:

- "By next spring, I ***shall have*** **lived** on my own for nearly a decade."
- "The students ***shall have*** **finished** their evaluations this time next week."
- "You ***shall have*** **heard**, no doubt, the unflattering remarks made about my character."

However, this creates a very formal tone that is not common in modern English; as a result, *will* + *have* + past participle remains the most common construction of the future perfect tense.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following **modal auxiliary verbs** is used to create the future perfect tense?

a) would
b) may
c) will
d) can

2. Which of the following is **not** a function of the future perfect tense?

a) To say that something will be completed or achieved at a specific point in the future
b) To indicate how long something will have been occurring by a specific point in the future
c) To make a present prediction about something that happened in the past
d) To indicate a continuous action that began at a specific point in the future

3. How does the structure of the future perfect tense change in an **interrogative sentence**?

a) *will* inverts with the subject
b) *have* inverts with the subject
c) *will* inverts with a question word
d) *have* inverts with a question word

4. For what purpose can we use *shall* instead of *will* to form the future perfect tense?

a) To make the sentence a question
b) To make the sentence more formal
c) To make a present prediction about something that happened in the past
d) To indicate an intention to do something in the future

5. When are we **not** able to use *be going to* instead of *will* to form the future perfect tense?

a) When saying that something will be completed or achieved at a specific point in the future
b) When indicating how long something will have occurred by a specific point in the future
c) When making a present prediction about something that happened in the past

Future Perfect Continuous Tense

Definition

Like the **future perfect tense**, we use the **future perfect continuous tense** (also known as the **future perfect progressive tense**) to indicate how long something has been happening once a future moment in time is reached. It can also be used in this way to indicate the cause of a possible future result.

The most common way we create the future perfect continuous tense is by using the **modal auxiliary verb** *will* + *have been* + the **present participle** of the verb. For example:

- "By June, I ***will have been*** **living** in New York for four years."
- "She's going to miss half the day because she***'ll have been*** **sleeping** for so long!"

Using the Future Perfect Continuous

The future perfect continuous tense is used in a very similar way to the **future perfect** to describe the duration of a completed future action. They both carry the same meaning when used in this way, but the future perfect continuous emphasizes the continuous nature of the action. Consider, for example, these two sentences:

• “By the time I get there, she ***will have*** **waited** for over an hour.” (future perfect tense)
• “By the time I get there, she ***will have been*** **waiting** for over an hour.” (future perfect continuous tense)

The meaning is technically the same in both examples above; however, the second sentence stresses the fact that *she* was continuously waiting during the future period *by the time I get there*. The change in meaning is subtle, but it adds greater depth to the sentence. Here are some other examples using the future perfect continuous tense:

• “I ***will have been*** **working** on this ranch for more than half my life when I turn 40.”

• “She***’ll have been*** **studying** Japanese for four years by the time she graduates.”

• “When the teacher comes back, we***’ll have been*** **reading** for nearly two hours.”

With action verbs

Because it describes continuous, dynamic action, the future perfect continuous can only be used with **action verbs**; it cannot be used with **stative verbs** (such as **linking verbs** or **verbs of the senses**), which describe non-continuous actions. For stative verbs, we can only use the future perfect tense instead. For example:

✔ “Next month we***’ll have*** **been** married for 10 years.” (correct)
✖ “Next month we***’ll have been*** **being** married for 10 years.” (incorrect)

✔ “By tomorrow morning, this all ***will have*** **seemed** like just a bad dream.” (correct)
✖ “By tomorrow morning, this all ***will have been*** **seeming** like just a bad dream.” (incorrect)

Cause of future results

We can also use the future perfect continuous to indicate that the continuous action that finishes in the future will be the cause of something in the future. For example:

• “I bet he’ll be hungry because he ***will have been*** **studying** straight through lunch.”

• “I’m not going to have any energy for the kids because I***’ll have been*** **working** so hard this week."

- "You're going to look like a prune since you ***will have been*** **swimming** all afternoon!"

Other sentence types

Negative sentences

To describe something that will **not** be completed over a certain span of time into the future, we make the future perfect continuous tense negative by adding *not* after the modal verb *will* (usually contracted as *won't*). For example:

- "Why are you bringing your book to the airport? We ***won't have been*** **waiting** for very long before her plane arrives."
- "He ***will not have been*** **working** here for very long if he is fired over this incident."

However, it's not very common to make negative constructions of the future perfect continuous tense.

Interrogative sentences

We can ask whether an action will be completed in the future after a certain duration by inverting *will* with the subject, as in:

- "***Will*** they ***have been*** **searching** for us for very long?"
- "***Will*** she ***have been*** **working** in Japan for the whole time she's lived there?"

We can also ask about specific aspects of a future action by using different question words or phrases. Remember, we still invert *will* with the subject in this case:

- "Who***'ll have been*** **writing** the notes for the class while the teaching assistant is absent?"
- "How long ***will*** you ***have been*** **working** there before your maternity leave begins?"

Other constructions

Although we most commonly use the modal verb *will*, there are two other ways we can form the future perfect continuous tense: *be going to* and *shall*.

Be going to

Be going to is interchangeable with *will* in meaning when we make the future perfect continuous tense. However, using *be going to* can sometimes result in a wordy, awkward construction, and it is not as common as *will*.

We usually contract *be* with the subject when we use *be going to*. For example:

- "She***'s going to have been*** **working** for nearly 18 hours by the time she's finished with her shift tonight."
- "I***'m going to have been*** **reading** this book for nearly six months if I don't finish it soon!"

Shall

We can also use the modal verb ***shall*** instead of *will* to form the future perfect continuous tense in more formal speech or writing. For example:

- "By next spring, I ***shall have been*** **living** on my own for nearly a decade."
- "The students ***shall have been*** **reading** their books for the entire period."
- "You ***shall have been*** **hearing**, no doubt, the unflattering remarks made about my character.

However, this creates a very formal tone that is not common in modern English. Among the three options available, *will* is the most common way to construct of the future perfect continuous tense.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What form of the **main verb** is used to create the future perfect continuous tense?

a) infinitive
b) base form
c) present participle
d) past participle

2. Which of the following is a function of the future perfect continuous tense?

a) To indicate how long something will have been occurring by a specific point in the future

b) To indicate the cause of a future result
c) To make a present prediction about something that happened in the past
d) To indicate a continuous action that began at a specific point in the future
e) A & B
f) B & C
g) C & D

3. Where does *not* appear in a **negative sentence** in the future perfect continuous tense?

a) After *will*
b) After *have*
c) After *been*
d) After the present participle of the main verb

4. Which of the following is the **most common** way to form the future perfect tense?

a) *be going to have been* + the present participle of the main verb
b) *will have been* + the present participle of the main verb
c) *shall have been* + the present participle of the main verb
d) Each is equally common

5. Which type of verb **cannot** be used in the future perfect continuous tense?

a) action verb
b) factitive verb
c) conditional verb
d) stative verb
e) A & B
f) B & C
g) C & D

Aspect

Definition

Aspect is a grammatical element that has to do with how an action, state of being, or event as described by a verb relates to time. Aspect is often confused with **tense**. While **tense** is concerned with when the action, state of being, or event occurs (past, present, or future), **aspect** is concerned with how it occurs in time. It is through aspect that we understand whether an action takes place at a single point in time, during a continuous range of time, or repetitively.

Sometimes aspect is conveyed by a sentence's structure, through a combination of particles, verbs, and verb phrases; other times, sentence structure may be used for more than one aspect, so we rely on the overall sentence to understand its temporal meaning.

Perfective and imperfective aspect

The most common distinction made regarding aspect is between the **perfective** and **imperfective** aspects. While other languages mark the difference by using two separate verb forms, English does not.

The **perfective aspect** can be conveyed through a variety of verb structures. It is used when we draw attention to an action as a whole, summarizing it. The perfective aspect may occur in past, present, or future actions and events. For example:

- "I **ate** dinner."
- "I **swim** like a fish."
- "I **have** never **been** there before."
- "We **will help** you tomorrow."

The **imperfective aspect**, on the other hand, is used to draw attention to the action as having an internal structure (rather than as a whole, complete action). Like the perfective, this is the case regardless of *when* the event occurs.

One instance of the imperfective is when we relate an action that is considered to be in progress at the moment of speaking (or at the time of another event). This is usually conveyed through the **continuous aspect**. For example:

- "I was washing dishes when she came through the door."

We also use the imperfective when we describe actions or events as occurring repetitively, either now or in the past:

- "We used to go traveling a lot."
- "John runs five miles every day."

This is known as the **habitual** aspect.

Aspects of verb tenses

Traditionally, each verb tense is said to have four aspects, or temporal structures: the *simple*, the *perfect*, the *continuous*, and the *perfect continuous*. These traditional aspects of the tenses do not always coincide with theory on perfective aspect and imperfective aspect—it should be remembered that certain structures may express perfective aspect in some cases and imperfective aspect in others, depending on the intended meaning.

Aspects of the present tense

The present tense is used for repeated actions, and for actions occurring or having a result in the present. The different aspects of the present tense can be found in the table below:

Aspect	Structure	Examples
Simple	Subject + present verb	"I **go** shopping on Tuesdays." "She **runs** fast."
Perfect	Subject + *have/has* + past participle	"I **have eaten** here before." "She **has lived** here for a long time."
Continuous	Subject + *is/are* + present participle	"We **are cooking** dinner." "He **is singing** a song."
Perfect Continuous	Subject + *have/has* + *been* + present participle	"He **has been thinking** about it." "I **have been taking** an art class."

Usually, the simple and the perfect aspects match up with the perfective aspect in grammatical theory. However, as mentioned, this is not always the case. It could be argued in this case that the simple aspect of the present tense actually corresponds with the imperfective aspect, since it is usually used to convey habitual acts, as in:

- “I go to school every day.”
- “We go shopping on Saturdays.”

Aspects of the past tense

Like the present, the past tense also has four traditional aspects, which can be found in the table below:

Aspect	Structure	Examples
Simple	Subject + past verb	"I **went** shopping on Tuesday." "She **ran** fast."
Perfect	Subject + *had* + past participle	"I **had eaten** here before." "She **had lived** here for a long time."
Continuous	Subject + *was/were* + present participle	"We **were cooking** dinner." "He **was singing** a song."
Perfect Continuous	Subject + *had* + *been* + present participle	"He **had been thinking** about it." "I **had been taking** an art class."

The simple and perfect simple tenses generally correspond with the perfective aspect, while the continuous and perfect continuous correspond with the imperfective aspect. Again, these do not always match up along clear lines, and we should consider what the verb phrase conveys overall to decide whether the sentence has perfective or imperfective aspect.

Aspects of the future tense

Although English does not have an inflected verb form for *future tense*, there are several structures that we use to convey future meaning, namely *will/would/be going to* + verb. The different aspects of these structures are found in the table:

Aspect	Structure	Examples

Simple	Subject + *will/would/be going to* + infinitive	"I **will go** shopping on Tuesday." " She **is going to run** fast."
Perfect	Subject + *will have* + past participle	"I **will have eaten** before arriving." "She **will have lived** here for a long time."
Continuous	Subject + *will/would/be going to* + be + present participle	"We **are going to be cooking** dinner." "He **will be singing** a song."
Perfect Continuous	Subject + *will have/would have/be going to* + *have* + been + present participle	"He**'ll have been thinking** about it." "I **would have been taking** an art class."

Again, the simple and perfect aspects generally correspond with perfective aspect in the future, while the continuous and perfect continuous structures correspond with the imperfective.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. In grammar, **aspect** is concerned with ________ .

a) *when* events occur on a timeline
b) *how* events occur on a timeline
c) *why* events occur on a timeline

2. The **perfective aspect** is used when we view an action as ________.

a) a whole
b) a part
c) a continuous event
d) a habitual event

3. The **imperfective aspect** is used when we view an action as ________.

a) habitual
b) in progress
c) a whole
d) A & B
e) all of the above

4. Which of the following sentences conveys the **continuous** aspect?

a) “I went to the doctor on Tuesday.”
b) “She’s going to take me on a vacation.”
c) “They’ve been watching that TV all day.”
d) “We haven’t seen that movie yet.”

5. Which of the following sentences uses the **perfect** aspect?”

a) “I was reading.”
b) “He went home.”
c) “She is eating.”
d) “They have gone home.”

Perfective and Imperfective Aspect Definition

Aspect is a grammatical term that has to do with how an action, state of being, or event unfolds in relation to time. The greatest distinction is made between the **perfective** aspect, which focuses on actions and events as whole elements, and the **imperfective** aspect, which deconstructs how an event is structured and located in time.

While other languages may mark the difference with an inflected verb form, English instead relies on a combination of particles, verbs, verb phrases, and lexical clues to determine whether the overall meaning of the action is perfective or imperfective.

Perfective aspect

The **perfective aspect** highlights actions, states, or events as a whole, presenting the actions from an outside perspective as complete, bounded events.

The perfective aspect is encountered in all of the tenses—past, present, and future—but it is easiest to illustrate in the past. For example:

- “I **went** to the supermarket yesterday.” (**past simple tense**)
- “She **sang** in the choir.” (past simple tense)
- “We **had eaten** already.” (**past perfect tense**)

In all of the above examples, the action is presented as a complete event in the past. We are simply told that the event occurred, with no clues as to *how often* the actions happened or *how long* they took.

As mentioned, the perfective aspect also occurs in other tenses. For example:

- “I **have** a dog.” (**present simple tense**)
- “She**’ll be** there soon.” (**future simple tense**)
- “They **will have finished** by then.” (**future perfect tense**)

Imperfective aspect

The **imperfective aspect**, on the other hand, is used when we focus on the internal structures of an action, state, or event as it relates to time, such as being continuous or habitual (repeating). Again, this has nothing to do with *when* the event occurs, and, as with the perfective, there is no separate verb form in English for the imperfective aspect.

Instead, it is expressed through different grammatical structures, which change depending on what we are saying about the temporal structure of the action.

We sometimes classify these structures as the **continuous aspect** and the **habitual aspect**, both of which are subclasses of the imperfective.

Continuous Aspect

The **continuous aspect**, also called the **progressive aspect**, is a subclass of the imperfective that emphasizes the *progressive* nature of the verb, looking at it as an incomplete action in progress over a specific period of time.

The continuous aspect does not indicate the duration of the action, nor how often it occurs. It simply shows that the action or event is in progress, either at the time of speaking, or at the time that another event occurs. It can be used with the past, present, and future tenses, and it is usually conveyed using a form of the verb *be* + the present participle. For example:

Past

- "I **was talking** to my mother when you called."
- "They **had been living** here for a long time when they moved."

Present

- "I**'m cooking** dinner at the moment, so I'll have to call you back."
- "She**'s been playing** outside with her friends all day."

Future

- "He**'ll be sleeping** by 10 o'clock, hopefully."
- "Next month we**'ll have been living** in New York City for 10 years."

It should be noted that **stative verbs** do not normally occur using the *be* + present participle structure. For example, you could not say "I **am knowing** John a long time" or "She **is appearing** unwell."

Other constructions

There is disagreement over whether structures using *be* + the present participle are the only structures that depict the continuous aspect. It is often argued, for example, that the past simple often conveys the continuous aspect. For example:

- “I **stayed** up all night.”
- “We **were** outside for hours.”

Others would argue that since it is the additional information in the examples above (*all night* and *for hours*) that gives the continuous aspect to the sentence as a whole, the verb phrases themselves should not be considered to convey continuous aspect.

Habitual Aspect

The **habitual aspect**, like the continuous aspect, is also a subclass of the imperfective aspect. It is used when an action occurs repetitively and (usually) predictably. English only has two *marked* ways of expressing habitual aspect: *would + base form of the verb* (the infinitive without *to*) and *used to + base form of the verb*. When we use these structures, we imply that the action occurred habitually in the past, but does not anymore. For example:

- “When I was young I **used to walk** to school.”
- “When I was young I **would walk** to school.”

Although the meaning in the two examples above is the same, *used to* and *would* are not always directly interchangeable. For example, *used to*, standing alone, conveys habitual aspect, but *would* doesn’t. Observe what happens if we remove the time marker *when I was young*:

- “I **used to walk** to school.”
- “I **would walk** to school.”

When we remove *when I was young* from the examples, the example using *used to* retains its habitual aspect, but the example with *would* doesn’t. Since *would* can also be used in conditional constructions, we need to include a time marker to clarify when it is being used for the habitual past.

In addition, while *used to* can be used with both **action verbs** and **stative verbs**, *would* can only be used with **action verbs**. For example:

✔ “When I was young, I **used to love** movies.” (correct)

✖ “When I was young, I **would love** movies.” (incorrect)

Other constructions

Although *used to + base form* and *would + base form* are the only structures that *explicitly* mark habitual aspect, we often use other verb tenses to convey it as well. For example, we often use the present simple tense to indicate habitual actions, as in:

- “I **go** to school every day.”
- “She **attends** karate class on Sundays.”
- “They **work** six days a week.”

However, other verb tenses can be used with an implied habitual aspect. For example:

- “I **walked** to school every day for 10 years.” (past simple tense)
- “I **had lived** in the same town my whole life before I decided to move to Tokyo.” (past perfect tense)
- “She **has eaten** the same sandwich for lunch for as long as I’ve known her.” (present perfect tense)

When the habitual aspect is unmarked, as above, it is often accompanied by a time marker that clarifies how often the action occurs, such as *every day, on Sundays, six days a week*, etc.

Future habits

English does not have an explicit habitual aspect marker for the future either. Most often, we use the future simple tense along with a time marker to indicate habit. For example:

- “I **will work** extra shifts every evening until I save enough money.”
- “I **will go** for a run every day after school this year.
- “We **will eat** fruit and cereal every morning next month.”

As with the alternate constructions of the perfective aspect, there is disagreement over whether unmarked verb forms can be considered to express habitual aspect, since it may simply be the additional information in the sentence that expresses the habitual meaning, rather than the verb phrases themselves.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following sentences conveys the **perfective aspect**?

a) “I have eaten breakfast already.”
b) “I’ve been eating breakfast.”

c) “I was eating breakfast.”
d) “I used to eat breakfast in the late morning.”

2. Which of the following sentences conveys the **imperfective aspect**?
a) “He finished his homework.”
b) “He had already finished his homework.”
c) “He will finish his homework later.”
d) “He’s finishing his homework.”

3. Which of the following sentences conveys the **habitual aspect**?
a) “I attended a ballet lesson.”
b) “I want to attend ballet lessons.”
c) “I used to attend ballet lessons.”
d) “I will attend a ballet lesson.”

4. Which of the following sentences uses the **continuous** aspect?
a) “I used to watch a lot of TV.”
b) “I watched a lot of TV yesterday.”
c) “I will watch TV later.”
d) “I’ve been watching a lot of TV.”

5. Which of the following sentences is incorrect?
a) “I used to like sweets when I was little, but now I don’t.”
b) “I liked sweets when I was little, but now I don’t.”
c) “I would like sweets when I was little, but now I don’t.”
d) A & C

Aspects of the Present Tense

Definition

The **present tense** is combined with four traditional **aspects** to form the structures that are known as the **present simple**, the **present continuous** (or **present progressive**), the **present perfect**, and the **present perfect continuous**. Although these structures are generally taught as individual “tenses” of verbs, they are actually a combination of the present tense and aspect. While the **tense** tells us when the action takes place in relation to time (in this case, the present), the added ***aspect*** gives us information about how the event takes place in time.

Present Simple

The **present simple** structure is used to express facts and habits that are true in the present time. It is formed using the **bare infinitive** (the base form of the verb), or, in the case of the third person singular, the bare infinitive + “-s”. For example:

- “We **love** Thai food.”
- “James **swims** on Sundays.”
- “We **study** at the library every day.”

Present Continuous

The **present continuous** is the combination of the present tense with the continuous aspect. It is used for actions that are either in progress at the moment of speaking, or will be in progress in the near future. It is formed using the present form of the verb *be* (*are, am*, or *is*) + the present participle. For example:

- “They**’re playing** outside.” (in progress now)
- “Can I call you back? I**’m driving**.” (in progress now)
- “We**’re eating** dinner with my in-laws tonight.” (in progress in the future)

The continuous aspect is not usually used with **stative verbs**. For example, we cannot say “I am knowing John many years” or “She is seeming sad.”

Present Perfect

The **present perfect** is the combination of the present tense and the perfect aspect. It is used for actions or states that began in the past but have an effect on or relevance to the present, stressing the completion of the action. It is formed using *have/has* + the **past** participle. For example:

- “She**’s** already **eaten**.”
- "We**’ve seen** this movie.”
- “I**’ve had** a bad cold this week.”

Present Perfect Continuous

The **present perfect continuous** is the combination of the continuous and perfect aspects with the present tense. It is used for actions that began in the past and continue to have relevance in the present. The main difference between it and the present perfect aspect is that the present perfect continuous aspect emphasizes the progress of the action instead of its completion. Like the present continuous, it is typically only used with **action verbs**, not with stative verbs. The present perfect continuous is formed using *have/has* + *been* + the **present** participle. For example:

- “We **have been waiting** for a long time.”
- “My little sister **has been sitting** very quietly.”
- “I**’ve been cleaning** all day.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is in the **present simple** form?

a) went
b) have been
c) goes
d) going

2. Which of the following is in the **present perfect** form?

a) saw
b) have seen
c) sees
d) seeing

3. Which of the following is in the **present perfect continuous** form?

a) has been going
b) had been going
c) had gone
d) goes

4. Which of the following is in the **present continuous** form?

a) sang
b) have sung
c) singing

d) been singing

5. Which of the following structures is used for **facts that are true at the moment of speaking**:

a) present simple
b) present continuous
c) present perfect
d) present perfect continuous

5. Which of the following sentences stresses the **completion** of an action that occurred in the past but has relevance to the present?

a) "She buys everything we need."
b) "She's been buying everything we need."
c) "She bought everything we need."
d) "She has bought everything we need."

Aspects of the Past Tense

Definition

The **past tense** is combined with four traditional **aspects** to form the structures that are known as the **past simple**, the **past continuous** (or past progressive), the **past perfect**, and the **past perfect continuous**. Although these structures are generally taught as individual "tenses" of verbs, they are actually a combination of the past tense and aspect. While the **tense** tells us when the action takes place in relation to the time (in this case, the past), the added ***aspect*** tells us how the event takes place in time.

Past Simple

The **past simple** structure is used to express actions and events that were completed at a given moment in the past. Whether the occurrence is of short or long duration, the simple aspect emphasizes its completion. The past simple is formed by adding "-d" or "-ed" to the end of **regular verbs**, but the past form of **irregular verbs** must be memorized. For example:

- "They **live*d*** next door to us for years." (regular)
- "I **lock*ed*** myself out of the house this morning." (regular)

- “We ***went*** to a private school when we were young.” (irregular)

Past Continuous

The **past continuous** is the combination of the past tense with the continuous aspect. It emphasizes the progress of an action that occurred in the past, rather than its completion. It is often used for actions that are interrupted by other actions, and it is formed using the past form of the verb *be* (*was/were*) + the present participle. For example:

- “They **were playing** outside when their father arrived.”
- “I’m sorry I didn’t answer the phone; I **was driving** when you called.”
- “We **were eating** dinner when my in-laws told us the good news.”

The past continuous usually occurs only with **action verbs**, not with **stative verbs**. For instance, we cannot say “I was knowing John many years” or “She was seeming sad.”

Past Perfect

The **past perfect** is the combination of the past tense with the perfect aspect. It is used for actions or states that began and were completed before another action in the past took place. It is formed using *had* + the past participle. For example:

- “She **had** already **eaten** when she arrived.”
- “We **had seen** the movie, but we watched it again.”
- “I**’d had** a bad cold that week, but I went on my vacation anyway.”

Past Perfect Continuous

The **past perfect continuous** is the combination of the continuous and perfect aspects with the past tense. It is used for actions that took place before another past action. The main difference between it and the past perfect structure is that the past perfect continuous emphasizes the progress of the action instead of its completion. It is also used to emphasize the action’s strong effect on another moment in the past. Like the past continuous, the past perfect continuous is generally only used with action verbs, not stative verbs. It is formed using *had* + *been* + the present participle. For example:

- “We **had been waiting** for a long time when the bus finally came.”
- “My little sister **had been sitting** very quietly, but then she started to cry.”

- “I**’d been cleaning** all day, so I was too tired to go out last night.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is in the **past simple** form?

a) sang
b) have sung
c) sing
d) singing

2. Which of the following is in the **past perfect** form?

a) was
b) had been
c) is
d) being

3. Which of the following is in the **past perfect continuous** form?

a) had been doing
b) has been doing
c) had done
d) does

4. Which of the following structures is used to emphasize general **completion** in the past?

a) past continuous
b) past simple
c) past perfect
d) past perfect continuous

5. Which of the following sentences emphasizes the **progress** of a past action that occurred before another action in the past?

a) “She sang in a band.”
b) “She had been singing in a band at that point.”
c) “She sings in a band.”
d) “She has sung in a band.”

Aspects of the Future Tense

Definition

Although English has no future tense in the strict sense (i.e., it has no verb form specific to future meaning), we commonly refer to several structures that are *used* for future meaning as belonging to the " **future tense**." The most common of these structures begin with *will* or a form of the verb *be* + *going to*. For example:

- "I **will** go with you."
- "I **am going to** send you an email."

While these verb markers tell us that the action takes place in the future, it is the *aspect* of the verb that tells us *how* the event will be temporally structured. The combination of the future marker and the aspect results in the verb structures that we usually call the **future simple**, the **future continuous** (or future progressive), the **future perfect**, and the **future perfect continuous**.

For the purpose of clarity, our example sentences will all use *will*, but it should be remembered that, in each of the examples, we can replace *will* with another **modal verb** of future meaning (*shall, might, would, could*, etc.) or with a form of *be* + *going to*.

Future Simple

The **future simple** structure is the combination of the future tense and the simple aspect. The future simple is used to express actions and events that will occur at a given moment in the future. The simple aspect emphasizes the action or state as a whole. The structure is formed using *will* + the base form of the verb (the infinitive without *to*). For example:

- "We **will go** to a private school when we are older."
- "They **will move** next door to us soon."
- "I **will be** famous in the future."

Future Continuous

The **future continuous** structure is the combination of the future tense with the continuous aspect. It is used to express actions and events that will be in progress at a given moment in the future. The future continuous is formed using *will* + be + the present participle. For example:

• “They **will be playing** outside when their father arrives.”

• “I won’t answer my phone later because I**’ll be driving**.”

• “We **will be eating** dinner at 7 o’clock.”

Like other structures that reflect the continuous aspect, it is usually only used with **action verbs**, not with **stative verbs**. For example, we couldn’t say “I will be knowing John later” or “She will be seeming sad this evening.”

Future Perfect

The **future perfect** is the combination of the future tense and the perfect simple aspect. It is used to express actions and events that will be completed at a given moment in the future. It is formed using *will* + *have* + the past participle. For example:

• “She **will have eaten** before she arrives.”

• “We **will have seen** that movie already.”

• “I **will have spent** a lot of money after this weekend’s festivities.”

Future Perfect Continuous

Finally, the **future perfect continuous** is the combination of the perfect and continuous aspects with the future tense. It is used to emphasize that an action will be in progress until a given moment in the future, at which time the action will stop. Like the future continuous, it is typically not used with **stative verbs**, but only with action verbs. It is formed using *will* + *have* + *been* + the present participle. For example:

• “We **will have been waiting** for a long time when the bus finally comes.”

• “My little sister **will have been sitting** quietly for an hour when the movie finishes.”

• “I **will have been cleaning** all day when you arrive, so I’ll be too tired to go out.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is in the **future simple** form?

a) sing
b) will have sung
c) will sing
d) will be singing

2. Which of the following is in the **future perfect** form?

a) will watch
b) will have watched
c) will be watching
d) will have been watching

3. Which of the following is in the **future perfect continuous** form?

a) will have been doing
b) will have done
c) will be doing
d) will do

4. Which of the following structures is used to emphasize an action that will be **in progress** at a particular moment in the future?

a) future simple
b) future continuous
c) future perfect simple
d) future perfect continuous

5. Which of the following sentences emphasizes the **completion** of a future action before another action in the future?

a) “She’ll have been doing all her work.”
b) “She’ll be doing all her work then.”
c) “She’ll do all her work.”
d) “She’ll have done all her work by then.”

Mood

Definition

Grammatical **mood** refers to the way in which a verb is used to express certain meaning by the speaker or writer. In linguistics, moods are broken down into two main categories: **realis moods** (expressing what is real or true) and **irrealis moods** (expressing what is unreal, hypothetical, or untrue).

Realis moods (the indicative mood)

The **indicative mood** is a type of grammatical **mood** used to express facts, statements, opinions, or questions. It is the only **realis mood** used in English.

This mood is used in all verb tenses to form **declarative sentences** (i.e., statements or declarations) or **interrogative sentences** (i.e., questions). For example:

- “She **graduated** last year with a doctorate in neuroscience.” (declarative sentence in the past simple tense)
- “He **is taking** his exam at the new testing center.” (declarative sentence in the present continuous tense)
- “**Are** you **going to give** your speech tomorrow?” (interrogative sentence in the future simple tense)

The indicative mood is the most commonly used grammatical mood in English.

Irrealis Moods

The term **irrealis** means “unreal,” and it refers to grammatical moods that reflect what is not actually the case.

There are two irrealis moods in English: the **subjunctive mood** and the **imperative mood**.

Subjunctive Mood

The **subjunctive mood** refers to verbs that are conjugated a certain way to describe hypothetical or non-real actions, events, or situations. This is in comparison to the **indicative mood**, which is used to express factual, non-hypothetical information.

We most commonly use the subjunctive mood to express wishes; to express commands, suggestions, requests, or statements of necessity; or to describe hypothetical outcomes that depend on certain conditions.

For example:

- “I wish I **didn’t have to go** to work.” (wish)

- “He demanded that they **leave** the room at once.” (command)
- “I recommend that she **study** harder next time.” (suggestion)
- “I ask that the audience **be** completely silent during the demonstration.” (request)
- “It’s necessary that we **be** vigilant to avoid another disaster.” (statement of necessity)
- “**If I had been more prepared**, I would have passed that test.” (hypothetical condition)

There are very specific ways we conjugate verbs to create the **subjunctive mood**; continue on to that section to learn more.

Imperative Mood

Although we can use the subjunctive mood to express commands or requests, it is becoming less common in modern English. Instead, we usually use the **imperative mood** to form **imperative sentences** when we want to issue direct orders, commands, or general instructions. It is considered an irrealis mood because the action being demanded has not actually happened (and might not happen).

When we make an imperative sentence, we use the infinitive form of the verb (without *to*), and we omit the subject of the verb.

For example:

- “Turn off the light before you leave.”
- “Go to bed!”

As you can see, there are no subjects in the sentences above.

However, we do often use a **noun of address** (also called a **vocative**) instead, which is a noun or noun phrase used to address the person to whom the command is directed. For example:

- “John, please turn out that light.”
- “Stand up, Janet.”
- “Be quiet, sir!”
- “You there, pay attention!”

To learn more about how we form and use sentences in the imperative mood, see the section **Imperative Sentences** in the chapter on **Sentences**.

Other moods

The three true moods in English are the indicative, the subjunctive, and the imperative.

However, there are two sub-categories that are sometimes described as moods in different grammar guides: the “**emphatic mood**” and “**infinitive mood**.” While we do not consider them to be discrete grammatical moods in this guide, they are worth mentioning for general reference.

Emphatic mood

The “**emphatic mood**” refers to the use of the **auxiliary verb** *do* to add emphasis to a verb that would otherwise not require an auxiliary.

We usually use emphatic *do* to stress the fact that something is the case.

For example:

- “Yes, I **do** know that we are meeting your parents tonight.”
- “Well, she **does** have a Ph.D., after all.”

We can also use *do* to add emphasis to demands or requests, as in:

- “**Do** be careful, John.”
- “Oh, **do** be quiet!”

However, the use of *do* in such imperative sentences is now rather formal and old fashioned.

Infinitive mood

The “**infinitive mood**” merely refers to a verb being put into its **infinitive form** —that is, the base form with the particle *to*. For example:

- “**To be** loved is a wonderful thing.”

In this case, the infinitive *to be* forms the infinitive phrase *to be loved*, which is used as a noun and the subject of the sentence.

Infinitives have a variety of functions in a sentence, but none of them is as a true verb, which is why we do not consider the so-called “infinitive mood” as belonging to any of the true grammatical moods in English.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following moods is used to describe what is true or real?

a) Indicative mood
b) Subjunctive mood
c) Imperative mood
d) A & C
e) B & C

2. Which of the following moods is used to describe what is unreal, hypothetical, or desired?

a) Indicative mood
b) Subjunctive mood
c) Imperative mood
d) A & C
e) B & C

3. Which of the following kinds of sentences can be made using the **indicative mood**?

a) Declarative sentences
b) Conditional sentences
c) Interrogative sentences
d) Imperative sentences
e) A & C
f) B & D

4. Identify the grammatical mood used in the following sentence:
“I wish I were in Spain right now, instead of at home.”

a) Indicative mood
b) Subjunctive mood
c) Imperative mood
d) Emphatic mood

5. Which of the following is **not** one of the true grammatical moods?

a) Indicative mood
b) Subjunctive mood
c) Imperative mood

d) Emphatic mood
e) Infinitive mood
f) A & B
g) C & E
h) D & E

Indicative Mood

Definition

The **indicative mood** is a type of grammatical **mood** used to express facts, statements, opinions, or questions. It is the sole **realis mood** in English (as opposed to the **irrealis moods**).

This mood can be used in the past, present, or future tense and in a **declarative sentence** (i.e., a statement) or an **interrogative sentence** (i.e., a question). For example:

• "She **graduated** last year with a doctorate in neuroscience." (declarative sentence in the past indicative)

• "He **is taking** his exam at the new testing center." (declarative sentence in the present indicative)

• "**Are** you **going to give** your speech tomorrow?" (interrogative sentence in the future indicative)

The indicative mood covers a wide breadth of sentence structures and verb tenses, and it is more commonly used than the **imperative** and **subjunctive** moods (the two **irrealis moods** in English).

Function

Indicative-mood verbs function in many tenses and forms. The following sections contain explanations for and various examples of declarative and interrogative sentences in the **past indicative, present indicative**, and **future indicative**.

Past indicative

Verbs in the **past indicative** describe things that have happened or are believed to have happened at some point in the past.

Declarative sentences in the past indicative

In declarative sentences in the past indicative, the **past simple tense** and **past perfect tense** describe something that finished in the past, whereas the **past continuous tense** and **past perfect continuous tense** describe a continuous action originating in the past. For example:

- “Verne **left** his house and **headed** to the airport.” (past simple tense)
- “We **had lived** in Singapore for three years before returning to America.” (past perfect tense)
- “She **was looking** online for a solution to her homework problem.” (past continuous tense)
- “I **had been studying** philosophy at the time, but my real interest was in Japanese literature.” (past perfect continuous tense)

Interrogative sentences in the past indicative

Interrogative sentences in the past indicative may use the past tense to inquire about a past action or event. For example:

- “**Did** you **finish** the movie without me?” (past simple tense)
- “**Had** the candidate successfully **completed** the internship at the time?” (past perfect tense)
- “Where **were** they **training** for their race?” (past continuous tense)
- “Who **had** she **been spending** her time with when all this happened?” (past perfect continuous tense)

Present indicative

The **present indicative** describes things that are happening, are about to happen, or are believed to be happening.

Declarative sentences in the present

indicative

In declarative sentences in the present indicative, the **present simple tense** and **present continuous tense** describe habits or things occurring in the present or near future, whereas the **present perfect tense** and **present perfect continuous tense** describe experiences or things originating in the past and continuing into the present. For example:

- “She **brings** her own lunch to work every day.” (present simple tense)
- “The cashier **is counting** the customer’s change.” (present continuous tense)
- “I **have visited** every major theme park in the world.” (present perfect tense)
- “They **have been staying** with my parents while the repairs are finished.” (present perfect continuous tense)

Interrogative sentences in the present indicative

Interrogative sentences in the present indicative may use the **present tense** to inquire about a current or closely occurring action or event. For example:

- “What kinds of books **do** you normally **read**?” (present simple tense)
- “What **is** Mae **doing** right now?” (present continuous tense)
- “**Have** you **heard** that new song on the radio yet?” (present perfect tense)
- “Where **have** you **been working** these days?” (present perfect continuous tense)

Future indicative

The **future indicative** describes things that will happen or things that it is believed will happen. The ***future tense*** in English is not a unique verb inflection (in comparison to the present and past tenses), but is approximated using the form *will* or *be going to* + the main verb.

Declarative sentences in the future indicative

Declarative sentences in the future indicative use the future tense to describe things that will or are likely to occur at a future time. For example:

- “I **will try** to be more patient with children.” (will)
- “Eugene **is going to compete** in a skiing competition next week.” (be going to)

Interrogative sentences in the future indicative

Interrogative sentences in the future indicative use the future tense to inquire about a future action or event. For example:

- “**Will** they **arrive** on time?” (will)
- “What **are** you **going to write** about for your thesis?” (be going to)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. The indicative mood can be used to express which of the following?

a) statements
b) opinions
c) questions
d) facts
e) All of the above

2. Which of the following sentences uses the **past indicative**?

a) “Jude is preparing breakfast for the guests.”
b) “Have you ever been to Egypt?”
c) “The child was complaining about her missing toy.”
d) “I won’t be able to take time off from work.”

3. Which of the following sentences uses the **present indicative**?

a) “She’ll be busy at summer camp from June to August.”
b) “He usually goes for a jog in the afternoon.”
c) “Were you at the movie theater last night?”
d) “The two best friends hadn’t seen each other in years.”

4. Which of the following sentences uses the **future indicative**?

a) “Casey suffers from terrible migraines.”
b) “They spent all day yesterday exploring the museum.”
c) “Is he going to attend college or take a year off?”
d) “What country are you moving to with your family?”

Subjunctive Mood

Definition

The **subjunctive mood** refers to verbs that are used to describe hypothetical or non-real actions, events, or situations. This is in comparison to the **indicative mood**, which is used to express factual, non-hypothetical information.

We most commonly use the subjunctive mood to express desires or wishes; to express commands, suggestions, requests, or statements of necessity; or to describe hypothetical outcomes that depend on certain conditions.

Using the Subjunctive Mood

Verbs do not have different forms to express the subjunctive mood in English. Instead, they are **conjugated** a certain way depending on the meaning we wish to achieve.

Expressing Wishes

When we a wish for something to be true, we conjugate the verb one degree into the past to create the subjunctive mood. For example:

- Indicative mood: “It’s Monday. I have to go to work.”
- Subjunctive mood: “I wish it **weren’t** Monday. I wish I **didn’t have to go** to work.”

(Notice that the verb *be* always conjugates to **were** in the subjunctive mood, regardless of whether it refers to a singular or plural noun.)

See the full section on **Expressing Wishes** to learn more about conjugating wishes in different tenses.

Expressing Commands, Suggestions, Requests, and Statements of Necessity

When we express actions that we demand, suggest, or request that someone else take, or describe something that must be the case, we use the base form of the verb—that is, the infinitive form without the word *to*.

For example:

- “He demanded that they **leave** the room at once.” (command)
- “I recommend that she **study** harder next time.” (suggestion)
- “I ask that the audience **be** completely silent during the demonstration.” (request)
- “It’s necessary that we **be** vigilant to avoid another disaster.” (statement of necessity)

The biggest difference between the subjunctive and indicative mood in this case is that the verb does not change according to who is taking the action. For instance, it is *she **study***, *the audience **be***, and *we **be*** in the subjunctive, while it would be *she **studies***, *the audience **is***, and *we **are*** in the indicative mood.

Note that when we issue direct demands using **imperative sentences** (as in, “Do your homework!” or “Please close the window.”), we are no longer using the subjunctive mood—instead, we are using what’s known as the **imperative mood**.

Conditional Sentences

Conditional sentences are used to describe hypothetical scenarios that require a certain condition or conditions to be met. They use what’s known as the **conditional mood** and are generally constructed using *if* to identify the conditions that must be met.

There are four “degrees” of conditionals, all of which vary in structure and meaning. We’ll give a brief synopsis of the different conditionals below; see the section on **Conditional Sentences** to learn more about how they are formed and used.

Zero Conditional

The zero conditional is used to talk about something that is generally true. For instance:

- “If you throw a ball in the air, it comes back down.” (Always true: A ball will come back down every time you throw it in the air.)

First Conditional

The first conditional is very similar in structure to the zero conditional, except that we now use the **future simple tense** (*will* + bare infinitive) to describe a probable or intended result of the condition. For example:

- “If I see him, I **will** tell him.”
- “If I win the lottery, I **will** buy a new house.”

Second Conditional

We use the second conditional to speak about a hypothetical situation or outcome resulting from the condition. Unlike the first conditional, we generally use the second conditional to talk about things that cannot or are less likely to happen.

To create the second conditional, we use the **past simple tense** after the *if* clause, followed by *would, could* or *might* + the bare infinitive for the result of the condition. For example:

- “If you had a phone, you **could call** me every day.”
- “If I were older, I **might stay up** all night long.”

Third Conditional

Third conditionals are used to establish a hypothetical situation in the past, followed by a hypothetical outcome that did not really happen—typically, the outcome is the opposite of what actually happened.

To form the third conditional, we use the **past perfect tense** for the *if* conditional clause, and *would/could/should/might have* + the **past participle** of the verb for the hypothetical outcome.

- “**If I had been more prepared**, I would have passed that test.”
- “If I **hadn’t overslept**, I **wouldn’t have been late** for work.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** something we use the subjunctive mood to express?

a) A wish

b) Commands, suggestions, requests, and statements of necessity
c) Conditionals
d) Factual, non-hypothetical information

2. How are verbs conjugated to express **wishes** in the subjunctive mood?
a) Shifted one tense into the future
b) Shifted one tense into the past
c) Into the base form of the verb
d) Into the infinitive form of the verb

3. How are verbs conjugated to express **commands** in the subjunctive mood?
a) Shifted one tense into the future
b) Shifted one tense into the past
c) Into the base form of the verb
d) Into the infinitive form of the verb

4. Which of the following words is used to indicate a **conditional** sentence?
a) if
b) were
c) will
d) wish

5. Which of the following sentences is in the subjunctive mood?
a) “I’m going out for a walk later.”
b) “It’s really important that you be still during the procedure.”
c) “Please don’t be so noisy!”
d) “She will be studying tonight, so she can’t come to baseball practice.”

Subjunctive Mood - Expressing Wishes

Definition

One of the most straightforward ways of using the **subjunctive mood** is when we want to describe a wish for something to be different than it is or was. We generally construct these sentences using the word *wish*, followed by the verb of the desired action.

Creating the subjunctive mood

When we express wishes, we create the subjunctive mood by moving the main verb of the sentence one tense back in the past. We'll look at some examples of these tense shifts below, but here is a quick reference to remember how each tense moves back in the past:

- present simple tense —> past simple tense
- present continuous tense —> past continuous tense
- present perfect tense —>past perfect tense
- present perfect continuous tense —>past perfect continuous tense

- past simple tense —> past perfect tense
- past continuous tense —> past perfect continuous tense
- past perfect tense —>past perfect tense (no further shift possible)
- past perfect continuous tense —>past perfect continuous tense (no further shift possible)

Present tense wishes

As we can see above, for a wish about a situation in the present, we use the **past tense** equivalent of the verb:

• Situation: "It's Monday. I have to go to work." (present simple tense)

• "I wish it **weren't** Monday. I wish I **didn't have to go** to work." (past simple tense)

Conjugating *be* in the subjunctive mood

You might be more inclined to say "I wish it **wasn't** Monday," because this sounds like the natural subject-verb agreement resulting from "It is Monday." However, the verb *be* always conjugates to **were** in the subjunctive mood, regardless of whether it refers to a singular or plural noun.

Although it is becoming increasingly common to use *was* in everyday writing and speech, you should always use ***were*** when talking about wishes or desires, especially in formal, professional, or academic contexts.

Be is the only verb that conjugates irregularly to reflect the subjunctive mood for wishes and desires. For all other verbs, we simply move them back one tense in the past as normal.

For example:

- Situation: “I can’t speak French, but would like to.”

- Desire: “I wish I **spoke** French.”

When we use **auxiliary verbs**, we move these back a tense instead of the main verbs:

- “I wish I ***could*** **speak** French.”

We can also use the subjunctive mood within the same sentence as verbs in the **indicative mood**:

- “I *can’t speak* French, but **I wish I *could***.”

Examples of other present tense wishes

- Situation: “It *is raining* outside.” (present continuous tense)
- Desire: “I wish it **weren’t raining**.” (past continuous tense)

- Situation: “He *has lived* in New York City his whole life.” (present perfect tense)
- Desire: “He wishes he **had lived** somewhere else at some point.” (past perfect tense)

- Situation: “My assistant *has been organizing* the filing cabinet.” (present perfect continuous tense)
- Desire: “I wish he **had been working** on something more important.” (past perfect continuous tense)

Past tense wishes

For past wishes, we go back in the past one tense further. For instance:

- Situation: “I’ll miss my appointment because I *left* the house late.” (past simple tense)
- “I wish I **had left** the house earlier.” (past perfect tense)

As with the present tense, we can also have sentences that use both the indicative mood and the subjunctive mood. For instance:

- “I *forgot* to set an alarm; I wish I **hadn’t**.”

Examples of other past tense wishes

- Situation: “I *was living* in Canada when I met you.” (past continuous tense)
- Desire: “I wish I **had been living** in America when I met you.” (past perfect continuous tense)

- Situation: “He *had started* smoking again.” (past perfect tense)
- Desire: “They all wished he **hadn’t started** smoking again.” (past perfect tense—no further shift possible)

- Situation: I *had been working* outside when you called. (present perfect continuous tense)
- Desire: “I wish I **hadn’t been working** outside when you called.” (past perfect continuous tense)

Wishes about others’ behavior

When we talk about someone’s continued behavior that we wish were different, we either use *would* + the desired verb, or simply the past tense of the verb.

For example:

Your son is always leaving his clothes lying around the bedroom floor.
- “I wish he **would pick up** his clothes off the floor when I asked him to.”

or
- “I wish he **picked up** his clothes off the floor when I asked him to.”

Your mother always whistles when she is in the house.
- “I wish she **wouldn’t whistle** in the house like that.”

or
- “I wish she **didn’t whistle** in the house like that.”

In the examples above, both constructions of the subjunctive are acceptable, though the *would* construction is more conventional. If we want to imply that we find a certain behavior annoying, we tend to use the *would* construction.

If only instead of *wish*

To express a desire that is more fanciful, unrealistic, or that we consider to be ideal, we can use *if only* instead of *I wish* to add more emphasis to the desire. (Note that the subjunctive verb still goes back one tense in the past.)

For example:

- "I hate being cold all the time. **If only** I **lived** in a hot country."
- "**If only** I **were** rich—I would spend my whole life traveling."
- "We're spending two weeks in the French alps next month; **if only** I **could ski**!"

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which verb conjugates **irregularly** when describing wishes in the subjunctive mood?

a) can
b) will
c) be
d) have

2. For a situation in the present perfect tense, what verb tense would we use for a wish in the subjunctive mood?

a) present perfect continuous tense
b) past simple tense
c) past continuous tense
d) past perfect tense

3. Which of the following sentences is **correctly** conjugated for a wish in the subjunctive mood?

a) "I wish I weren't short."
b) "I wish I wasn't short."
c) "I wish I won't be short."
d) "I wish I'm not short."

4. Which of the following phrases can be used instead of *wish* to describe an ideal or fanciful desire?

a) if so
b) if only

c) if possible
d) if hopefully

5. Which auxiliary verb can we use when we express a desire about someone else’s behavior in the subjunctive mood?
a) will
b) would
c) could
d) should

Voice

Definition

Voice, also known as **diathesis**, is a grammatical feature that describes the relationship between the *verb* and the *subject* (also known as the *agent*) in a sentence. More specifically, voice describes how the verb is expressed or written in relation to the agent.

There are two main types of voice: **active voice** and **passive voice**. A third type of voice called **“middle” voice** also exists but is less commonly used. Here are some examples of the three types of voice:

- “She **wrote** a novel.” (active voice)
- “The house **was purchased** by an elderly couple.” (passive voice)
- “The cat **licked** itself.” (“middle” voice)

Active voice

A verb is in the **active voice** when the agent of the verb (the person or thing that performs the action specified by the verb) is also the subject of the sentence. The active voice is the most common type of voice in both spoken and written English, and is generally considered to be the **default voice**.

Not all active-voice verbs are required to take an *object*. Any object present, however, must come after the verb (which always comes after the agent). For example:

- “The boy **sang** a song.” (with an object, *a song*)
- “I **am watching** a movie.” (with an object, *a movie*)

- “Vivian **sings** well.” (without an object)

Passive voice

A sentence uses the **passive voice** when the subject is acted upon by the verb. Passive-voice sentences are structurally opposite to active-voice sentences, with the object (now the subject* of the sentence) coming before the verb and the verb coming before the agent of the action. A passive-voice verb is used in the past participle form preceded by the auxiliary verb *be*, and the preposition *by* is inserted before the agent to form a **prepositional phrase**. For example:

- “*Angie* **will perform** a famous piano piece tomorrow night.” (active voice)
- “A famous piano piece **will be performed** *by Angie* tomorrow night.” (passive voice)

- “*Thousands of people* **have already read** his new book.” (active voice)
- “His new book **has already been read** *by thousands of people*.” (passive voice)

(*When converting a sentence from active to passive, the original *object* becomes the new *subject* due to its position at the beginning of the sentence. At the same time, the *agent* changes into the object of a *prepositional phrase*.)

Unlike active-voice, passive-voice sentences **do not** require agents. If an agent is unknown or irrelevant, you may eliminate the prepositional phrase containing the agent. For example:

- “The light bulb was patented **by Thomas Edison** in 1880.” (with agent)
- “The light bulb was patented in 1880.” (without agent)

- “The wedding venue has been decided on **by the bride and groom**.” (with agent)
- “The wedding venue has been decided on.” (without agent)

“Middle” voice

The term **“middle” voice** describes a type of voice that is a combination of sorts between the active and passive voices. The middle voice is not clearly defined in the English language; that is, it does not have a verb form specific to it. It does, however, contain several odd or irregular verb usages that are said to correspond most closely with the middle voice of other languages.

In most “middle”-voice sentences, the agent performs the verb’s action on itself. To compensate for the lack of a middle-voice verb form, these verbs are typically followed by a **reflexive pronoun**. For example:

- “My girlfriend always **checks** herself in the mirror before we go out.”
- “The dog **bit** itself on the tail.”

“Middle” voice can also be used to describe some **intransitive verbs**. These verbs syntactically appear active (*agent + verb*) but function more similarly to verbs in the passive voice. In other words, the agent is being acted upon (like the passive voice) despite its position in front of the verb (as in the active voice). For example:

- “The **lasagna** ***cooked*** in the oven for several hours.” (The verb *cook* is acting upon the agent *lasagna*.)
- “The **bicycle** ***broke*** without warning.” (The verb *break* is acting upon the agent *bicycle*.)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following voices is typically regarded as the **default voice**?

a) passive voice
b) active voice
c) “middle” voice
d) none of the above

2. Which of the following choices contains the **correct** word order for an **active-voice sentence**?

a) agent – verb – object
b) verb – agent – object
c) agent – verb – reflexive pronoun
d) subject – verb – prepositional phrase

3. Which of the following choices contains the **correct** word order for a **passive-voice sentence**?

a) agent – verb – object
b) verb – agent – object
c) agent – verb – reflexive pronoun
d) subject – verb – prepositional phrase

4. Which of the following sentences uses the **“middle” voice**?

a) “Her parents had chosen the school she would attend.”
b) “I was blinded by a bright light.”
c) “He threw a birthday party for himself.”
d) “All of our food burned.”

Active Voice

Definition

The **active voice** is a type of grammatical **voice** in which the *subject* of a sentence is also the **agent** of the verb—that is, it performs the action expressed by the verb. In active-voice sentences, the agent always comes before the verb. For example:

- “*My friend* **bought** a new car.” (*My friend* performed the action *bought*.)
- “*She* **enjoys** watching movies.” (*She* performs the action *enjoys*.)
- “*Barney* **is talking** to his sister.” (*Barney* is performing the action *talking*.)

A *direct object* is not always required for active-voice verbs. When an object is included, however, it must come directly after the verb. For example:

- “*I* **am drinking** some tea.” (with a direct object, *some tea*)
- “*The boy* **hid** his report card from his parents.” (with a direct object, *his report card*)
- “*Dr. Johnson* **will speak** at the convention.” (without a direct object)

When to use the active voice

Typically, the active voice is preferable to the **passive voice**, as it requires fewer words and expresses a clearer relationship between the verb and its agent. The active voice is generally thought of as the **default voice** in spoken and written English.

The following sections contain circumstances in which you should always try to use the active voice over the passive voice.

When there is no direct object

Because passive-voice sentences require direct objects (which are turned into subjects when converted from active to passive voice), sentences without direct objects must be active. For example:

- "*That man* **has painted** for more than 40 years."
- "*We* **departed** immediately after the grand finale."
- "*The kids* **chatted** for several minutes."

We can see how these sentences cannot be put in the passive voice, because there is no direct object to become the subject. Take, for instance, the first sentence:

- "For more than 40 years, **has been painted** *by the man*." (**What** has been painted?)

It no longer makes any sense when structured in the passive voice, so it must remain active.

When the agent is important

The active voice is commonly used to emphasize the importance of an agent in a sentence. By using the active voice, we can highlight an agent's *responsibility* for or *involvement* with a particular action. The examples below demonstrate the differences between an **important agent** (active voice) and an **unimportant agent** (passive voice):

- "*The employees* **drink** lots of coffee before work every day." (active voice—describes the employees in relation to the act of drinking coffee)
- "Lots of coffee **is drunk** *by the employees* before work every day." (passive voice—describes the act of drinking coffee in relation to the employees)

- "*Sir Isaac Newton* **discovered** gravity more than 300 years ago." (active voice—emphasizes Newton's responsibility for the discovery of gravity)
- "Gravity **was discovered** *by Sir Isaac Newton* more than 300 years ago." (passive voice—emphasizes the discovery of gravity over Newton's involvement)

When the agent is known or relevant

You should always use the active voice if an agent is identifiable or contains information that is relevant to the rest of the sentence. For example:

- "**Shawn stole** a menu from the restaurant." (The speaker knows or is familiar with Shawn.)
- "**A veterinarian found** an abandoned puppy by the road." (The speaker knows

that it was a *veterinarian* who found the puppy and believes the information is relevant.)

- "**Dr. Li opened** *the hospital* in 1989." (The speaker knows the name of the person who started the hospital and the information is relevant to the conversation.)

On the other hand, when an agent is unknown or irrelevant, we usually switch to the passive voice and eliminate the agent altogether. For example:

- "A menu **was stolen** from the restaurant."
- "An abandoned puppy **was found** by the road."
- "The hospital **was opened** in 1989."

When expressing an authoritative tone

The active voice may also be used to stress the authority of an agent. This authoritative tone is a strategy commonly used in copywriting, advertising, and marketing in order to convince consumers of the beneficial effects of a product or service. It may also be used to establish a command or to more strongly emphasize an agent's responsibility for an action. For example:

- "Brushing your teeth at least twice a day **is recommended** *by dentists*." (passive voice)
- "*Dentists* **recommend** brushing your teeth at least twice a day." (active voice—emphasizes the authority of the *dentists*)

- "All of your broccoli **must be eaten** *by you* before dessert is served." (passive voice)
- "*You* **must eat** all of your broccoli before dessert is served." (active voice—emphasizes your responsibility to eat your broccoli)

When the agent is an ongoing topic

Agents that can perform multiple actions may be treated as **topics**. Making an agent an ongoing topic places emphasis on that agent instead of the actions it performs. When an agent acts as a topic, it usually remains the primary *subject* in most active-voice sentences used to describe or refer to it. This can be seen most prominently in works of fiction, in which protagonists typically perform numerous actions throughout a story.

For example, look at how the passage below describes a fictional protagonist named Caroline:

"*Caroline* **jumped** back and gasped. *She* **was** afraid of spiders and **despised** the feeling of their silky webs on her skin. But *she* **knew** it was time to face her fears. Sighing and brushing herself off, *Caroline* slowly **continued** down the path toward the hill."

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. In the following active-voice sentence, which word is the **agent** of the verb? "Damien built a bookshelf with his own two hands."

a) built
b) bookshelf
c) Damien
d) hands

2. Which of the following active-voice sentences does **not** contain a **direct object**?

a) "She reads a chapter from her book before bed every night."
b) "Mom already made plans for the weekend."
c) "The tornado caused severe damage to the neighborhood."
d) "Tomorrow night I will be dining with my friends."

3. In which of the following cases should you always use the **active voice**?

a) When the agent is known or relevant
b) When the agent is an ongoing topic
c) When there is no direct object
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) All of the above

4. Which of the following sentences uses the **active voice**?

a) "The town was founded over 400 years ago."
b) "The father surprised his children by bringing home a kitten."
c) "Her car has been missing since last week."
d) "I will be visited by my grandfather tomorrow."

Passive Voice

The **passive voice** is a type of grammatical **voice** in which the *subject* is acted upon by the *verb*. In passive-voice sentences, the subject is the **receiver of the action** (i.e., what would be the *direct object* in an **active-voice** sentence). For example:

• “The concert **was attended** by many young people.” (The subject *the concert* receives the action of *attended*.)

• “The necklace **is being made** by a child.” (The subject *the necklace* receives the action of *being made*.)

Passive-voice verbs are always preceded by the auxiliary verb *be* and are in their **past participle** forms. While the receiver of the action comes before the verb, the person or thing performing the action (known as the *agent*) comes after the verb and is preceded by the preposition *by* to form a **prepositional phrase**. For example:

• “The lights **were turned off** *by the janitor*.” (*The lights* is the subject, but *the janitor* performs the action *turned off*.)

• “Final exams **will be taken** *by students* on Friday.” (*Final exams* is the subject, but *students* performs the action *taken*.)

• “Letters to Santa **are sent** *by children* every year.” (*Letters to Santa* is the subject, but *children* performs the action *sent*.)

Converting the active voice into the passive voice

You may only convert a sentence from the active voice into the passive voice if there is a **direct object**. As we’ve seen, this direct object becomes the *subject* in the passive voice. For example:

• “*A high school track and field star* **won** the race.” (active voice)
• “The race **was won** *by a high school track and field star*.” (passive voice)

• “*Local businesses* **are handing out** pamphlets near the mall.” (active voice)
• “Pamphlets **are being handed out** *by local businesses* near the mall.” (passive voice)

If an active-voice sentences does **not** contain a direct object, it **cannot** be converted into the passive voice, as the sentence will lack coherency without a subject. For example:

- "*The kids* **are playing** outside." (active voice)
- "**Is being played** *by the kids* outside." (**What** is being played by the kids?)

Converting the passive voice into the active voice

You may only convert a sentence from the passive voice into the active voice if there is an identifiable **agent** of the verb. In the active voice, this agent becomes the *subject*. For example:

- "This blanket **was knitted** *by my grandmother*." (passive voice)
- "*My grandmother* **knitted** this blanket." (active voice)

- "The deer **was being chased** *by a bear*." (passive voice)
- "*A bear* **was chasing** the deer." (active voice)

If a passive-voice sentences does **not** contain an agent, it **cannot** be converted into the active voice, as the sentence will lack coherency without a subject. For example:

- "The Great Pyramid of Giza **was constructed** more than 4,000 years ago." (passive voice)
- "**Constructed** the Great Pyramid of Giza more than 4,000 years ago." (**Who** constructed the Great Pyramid of Giza?)

When to use the passive voice

The passive voice is less commonly used than the active voice because it is wordy and often lacks clarity; however, there are several cases in which using the passive voice may be necessary or preferable.

The following sections contain various circumstances in which you might wish to use the passive voice instead of the active voice.

When the receiver of the action is important

The passive voice may be used to emphasize the importance of the receiver of the action. (In contrast, the active voice typically emphasizes the importance of the *agent*.) The examples below demonstrate the differences between an **important receiver of the action** (passive voice) and an **important agent** (active voice):

- "The school dance **will be organized** *by the science teachers* this year." (passive voice—emphasizes the *activity* in relation to the organizers)
- "*The science teachers* **will organize** the school dance this year." (active voice—emphasizes the *organizers* in relation to the activity)

- "She **is always being praised** *by her parents*." (passive voice—emphasizes *she* in relation to *her parents*)
- "*Her parents* **are always praising** her*." (active voice—emphasizes *her parents* in relation to *her*)

(*When the pronoun *she* is converted into an object, it becomes *her*.)

When the agent is unknown, irrelevant, or implied

Occasionally, the agent of an action may be unknown or irrelevant to the rest of a sentence, or it may already be heavily implied through the action or receiver of the action. In these cases, the agent may be eliminated altogether (which can only be done with the passive voice—**not** the active voice). For example:

- "My missing wallet **was returned** to a lost-and-found." (unknown agent—we don't know who returned the missing wallet)

- "A popular play **is being performed** at the local theater." (irrelevant agent—the names of the performers are irrelevant)

- "Bathing suits **are usually sold** in the summer months." (implied agent—we can assume that the agent is *clothing stores* or something similar)

When softening an authoritative tone

Because the passive voice places less emphasis on the *responsibility of the agent* and more emphasis on the *receiver of the action*, we can use the passive voice to express commands in a softer, less authoritative tone than those expressed through the active voice. For example:

- "*Inexperienced mountaineers* **should not attempt** Mount Everest." (active voice—emphasizes inexperienced mountaineers' responsibility to avoid the

mountain)
- “Mount Everest **should not be attempted** *by inexperienced mountaineers*.” (passive voice—emphasizes the difficulty or danger of the mountain)

If the agent is clearly implied, it may be eliminated for the sake of conciseness:

- “*You* **need to finish** this project by tomorrow.” (active voice)
- “This project **needs to be finished** *by you* by tomorrow.” (passive voice with agent)
- “This project **needs to be finished** by tomorrow.” (passive voice without agent)

When expressing a professional, neutral, or objective tone

Various forms of writing, including scientific reports and instruction manuals, use the passive voice to express a professional, neutral, or objective tone. Typically, the receiver of the action functions as the primary **topic** throughout the text. The agent is usually removed due to irrelevance or to avoid a sense of subjectivity. For example:

- “The experiment **was conducted** over the course of two weeks.”

- “Once Part A **has been inserted** into Part B, tighten the screws with a screwdriver.”

- “Adverse reactions to the medication **should be assessed and treated** *by a medical professional*.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. In the following passive-voice sentence, which group of words is the **receiver of the action**?
“The large monument was erected by the construction crew last spring.”

a) the large monument
b) was erected
c) by the construction crew
d) last spring

2. Which of the following passive-voice sentences does **not** contain an **agent** of

the verb?

a) “The homework assignment was completed last Thursday.”
b) “Frank was struck by lightning.”
c) “Her poem will be read aloud by her teacher.”
d) “This desk was assembled by my aunt.”

3. Which choice **correctly** converts the following active-voice sentence into the **passive voice**?
“You should congratulate your sister on her academic achievement.”

a) “Your sister should congratulate on her academic achievement.”
b) “Your sister should be congratulated on her academic achievement.”
c) “Your sister should congratulate on her academic achievement by you.”
d) “Your sister on her academic achievement should be congratulated.”

4. In which of the following cases should you use the **passive voice**?

a) When softening an authoritative tone
b) When the agent is important
c) When expressing a neutral or professional tone
d) A & B
e) A & C
f) All of the above

5. Which of the following sentences uses the **passive voice**?

a) “You can get to Vienna from Salzburg by train.”
b) “The elementary school is by the park.”
c) “I learned Korean by watching dramas.”
d) “This scarf was crocheted by my friend.”

Middle Voice

Definition

The so-called **middle voice** is an approximate type of grammatical **voice** in which **the subject** both performs and receives the action expressed by the verb. In other words, the subject acts as both the **agent** and the **receiver** (i.e., the **direct object**) of the action. For example:

- “*He* **injured** himself playing rugby.” (*He* is the agent and *himself* is the receiver of the action.)
- “*The cat* **is scratching** itself.” (*The cat* is the agent and *itself* is the receiver of the action.)

Middle-voice verbs follow the same syntactic structure as in the **active voice** (*agent + verb*), but function semantically as **passive-voice** verbs. As a result, the middle voice is described as a combination of the active and passive voices.

Because there is no verb form exclusive to the middle voice, it is often categorized as the active voice since it uses the same verb structure in a sentence. The following examples highlight the similarities between the two:

- “*Some snakes* **have tried to eat** inedible things.” (active voice)
- “*Some snakes* **have tried to eat** themselves.” (middle voice)

- “*The man* accidentally **hit** his face.” (active voice)
- “*The man* accidentally **hit** himself in the face.” (middle voice)

How to identify the middle voice

We can distinguish the middle voice from the active voice by determining whether there is a **reflexive pronoun** after the verb (in the direct object position) or an **intransitive verb** acting upon the agent.

When the direct object is a reflexive pronoun

Because the agent is also the receiver of the action in the middle voice, we can clarify this connection by inserting a reflexive pronoun after the verb. The reflexive pronoun assumes the role of the **direct object** and indicates that the agent is acting upon itself. For example:

- “*The child* **warmed** herself by blowing into her hands.” (*Herself* is a reflexive pronoun that refers to *the child*.)
- “*Small dogs* tend to **hurt** themselves when playing with bigger dogs.” (*Themselves* is a reflexive pronoun that refers to *small dogs*.)

Many middle-voice verbs are **transitive verbs** and therefore require a direct object in the form of a reflexive pronoun. Without a reflexive pronoun, the receiver of the action becomes unclear, and the sentence loses coherence. For example:

- “*The child* **warmed** by blowing into her hands.” (**What** or **whom** did the child warm?)

- “*Small dogs* tend to **hurt** when playing with bigger dogs.” (**What** or **whom** do small dogs tend to hurt?)

Reusing the agent instead of adding a reflexive pronoun will affect the coherence of the sentence or even change its meaning altogether:

- “*The child* **warmed** the child by blowing into her hands.” (implies *the child* warmed a different child)

- “*Small dogs* **tend to hurt** small dogs when playing with bigger dogs.” (implies *small dogs* tend to hurt other small dogs)

Likewise, using a **personal pronoun** instead of a reflexive pronoun will change or confuse the meaning of the verb’s action:

- “*The child* **warmed** her by blowing into her hands.” (implies *the child* warmed a different child)

- “*Small dogs* **tend to hurt** them when playing with bigger dogs.” (indicates an unspecified object of the verb *hurt* other than *small dogs*)

However, there do exist certain verbs for which the reflexive pronouns are implied and may therefore be eliminated. For example:

- “*My father* **is shaving** himself in the bathroom.” (with the reflexive pronoun *himself*)
- “*My father* **is shaving** in the bathroom.” (without reflexive the pronoun)

- “*She* always **stretches** herself before doing yoga.” (with the reflexive pronoun *herself*)
- “*She* always **stretches** before doing yoga.” (without reflexive the pronoun)

When the verb is intransitive and acting upon the agent

Certain **intransitive verbs** can be used to modify an agent (usually an inanimate object) that is also the receiver of the action. In the middle voice, this type of verb does **not** take a reflexive pronoun (or any direct object). For example:

- “*My sister’s lunch* **is cooking** on the stove.” (*Cook* is an intransitive verb indicating **what** is being cooked.)

- “*This car* **doesn’t drive** smoothly anymore.” (*Drive* is an intransitive verb indicating **what** is being driven.)

• “*Her engagement ring* **broke** in half.” (*Break* is an intransitive verb indicating **what** is being broken.)

However, active-voice verbs can also be intransitive and are expressed identically to middle-voice verbs. For example:

• “*The boy* **laughed** when he heard the joke.” (*Laugh* is an intransitive verb indicating **who** is laughing.)

• “*Someone* **is crying** in the hallway.” (*Cry* is an intransitive verb indicating **who** is crying.)

You can determine whether an intransitive verb is in the active voice or the middle voice by changing the verb into the **passive voice**. Doing so will convert the intransitive verb into a *transitive verb* and the agent into the *receiver of the action*. If the meaning of the sentence stays roughly the same, it is in the middle voice. If the meaning changes dramatically or lacks coherence, it is in the active voice. For example:

• “*My sister’s lunch* **is cooking** on the stove.” (original)
✔ “My sister’s lunch **is being cooked** on the stove.” (passive voice)

Because *cook* can be converted into a transitive verb in the passive voice without altering the meaning of the original sentence, the original sentence must be in the **middle voice**.

Here is another example:

• “*The boy* **laughed** when he heard the joke.” (original)
✖ “The boy **was laughed** when he heard the joke.” (passive voice)

When converted into the passive voice, the original sentence loses coherence; therefore, it must be in the **active voice**.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is the **correct** word order for a middle-voice sentence?

a) agent – verb – reflexive pronoun
b) subject – verb
c) subject – reflexive pronoun – verb
d) A & B
e) A & C
f) None of the above

2. Which of the following sentences is in the **middle voice**?

a) “Brianna wants to see the world for herself.”
b) “The mountain appeared vaster than the sky itself.”
c) “I can’t contain myself when I’m excited about something.”
d) “Children are encouraged to play by themselves.”

3. Which of the following sentences is in the **active voice**?

a) “He can never control himself when he’s angry.”
b) “Edmund is shaving in the upstairs bathroom.”
c) “What’s cooking for dinner tonight?”
d) “You should always stretch your muscles before exercising.”

4. Which of the following sentences is **not** in the middle voice?

a) “The child exhausted her by playing too many games.”
b) “The man saw himself in the mirror.”
c) “Joanna entertained herself by whistling.”
d) “The employees dedicated themselves to their work.”

Speech

Definition

Grammatical **speech** refers to how we report something another person said. Depending on how we do this, we sometimes have to **inflect** (change the form of) the verbs that we use.

Speech is usually divided between two types: **direct speech** and **reported speech** (also known as **indirect speech**). There are also other sub-categories of speech, which we’ll look at a little later in this section.

Reporting verbs

Both direct and indirect speech use what are known as **reporting verbs**, the most common of which are *say* and *tell*. When we use *tell*, we need to use another person’s name or a **personal pronoun** as an **indirect object**. Other reporting verbs include *ask, instruct, explain, mention, suggest, claim*, and many more.

Direct Speech

Direct speech refers to the direct quotation of something that someone else said. It is sometimes known as **quoted speech**. Because the quotation happened in the past, we put the reporting verb into the **past simple tense**, but we don't change the verbs used within the quotation. We also punctuate sentences in a certain way when we use direct speech in writing.

Punctuating direct speech

When used in writing, we indicate the quoted speech with **quotation marks**. (Note that American English uses **double quotation marks** (**" "**), while British English typically uses **single quotation marks** (**' '**).)

If we are quoting an entire sentence, we set it apart with one or two commas. For example:

• John *said*, **"I'll never live in this city again."**

• Mary *told* him, **"I want to have another baby,"** which took him by surprise.

• The other day, my daughter *asked*, **"Mommy, why do I have to go to school, but you don't?"**

However, if we are quoting a fragment of speech that is used as an integral part of the overall sentence, then no commas are used. We still use reporting verbs in the past tense, though. For instance:

• John *said* he feels **"really bad"** about what happened.

Direct speech before a reporting verb

We can also put direct speech before the reporting verb. Again, we usually use a comma to separate the quoted text from the unquoted text, as in:

• **"I can't wait to see daddy,"** my son *said*.

However, if a **question mark** or **exclamation point** is used in the direct speech, then we do **not** use a comma:

• **"Where are we going?"** *asked* Sally.

• **"This is going to be great!"** Tom *exclaimed*.

End punctuation — American vs.

British English

In American English, a period or comma used at the end of direct speech always appears within the quotation marks.

In British English, however, if the quotation ends in a period or comma, it is usually placed outside the quotation mark, as in:

- The CEO *said*, **‘This is a great day for the company’.**
- **‘I want to be a doctor when I grow up’,** Susy *told* us yesterday.

Note that if a quoted sentence ends in a question mark or exclamation point that belongs to the quotation, it will appear within the quotation marks. If the question mark or exclamation point belongs to the **overall** sentence (that is, it isn’t actually part of the quotation), it will appear outside the quotation marks. This is the same in **both** American and British English. For example:

- Samantha *asked*, **“How long will it take to get there?”**
- But I don’t want to just **‘see how things go’!**

Using multiple sets of quotation marks

If a sentence already uses quotation marks, then we have to differentiate between the quoted speech and the rest of the sentence. If we are using double quotation marks, then we have to put the quoted speech in single quotation marks; if it is in single quotation marks, then the quoted text is put into double quotation marks. The rest of the punctuation in the sentence does not change. For example:

- “They told us, **‘We don’t have the budget for more staff.’**”
- ‘The prime minister is reported to have said that he is **“in disagreement with the president’s remarks”,** which prompted a quick response from the White House.’

Reported Speech (Indirect Speech)

When we tell other people what someone else told us without directly quoting that person, it is called **reported speech**. (It is also sometimes known as **indirect speech** or **indirect quotation**.)

We still use **reporting** verbs in reported speech, but we no longer use quotation marks because we are reporting a version of what was said. We also do not use commas to set the reported speech apart, though we often (but not always) introduce it with the word *that*. For example:

- Janet *said* **she would go to the station herself**.
- He *told* us **that he wanted to be alone**.

Shifting verb tense in reported speech

The conventional grammar rule when using reported speech is to shift the **verb tense** one degree into the past. This is because we usually put the reporting verb in the past tense (*I **asked**, she **said**, they **told** us, he **suggested***, etc.), so the speech that is being reported must shift back as well. In the table below, we'll look at the way sentences in various tenses are shifted in reported speech according to this convention:

Non-reported sentence	Verb shift	Reported speech
I live in Germany.	**present simple tense** shifts to **past simple tense**	**He said *he lived*** in Germany.
I was a carpenter before I moved here.	**past simple tense** shifts to **past perfect tense**	**She said that *she had been*** a carpenter before she moved here.
He is writing a letter to our friend.	**present continuous tense** shifts to **past continuous tense**	**She told us *he was writing*** a letter to our friend.
She was sleeping when you called.	**past continuous tense** shifts to **past perfect continuous tense**	**He told me *you had been sleeping*** when I called.
I have been to Paris four times.	**present perfect tense** shifts to **past perfect tense**	**She said *she had been*** to Paris four times.
The film *had ended* when *I*	No shift in the first verb, because there is no tense further in the past.	**He said the film *had ended*** when

switched on the TV.	The second verb shifts from **past simple tense** to **past perfect tense**.	*he’d switched* on the TV.
When she finally arrived, *I had been waiting* for over two hours.	No shift, as there is no tense further in the past.	**He said he *had been waiting*** for over two hours when she finally arrived.
I will call you tomorrow.	The **modal verb** *will* shifts to its past-tense version, *would*.	**He told me that *he would call*** me tomorrow.

It should be noted, though, that it is quite common to keep the verb tense the same in modern English. This is especially true in cases in which the reporting verb remains in the present tense, or when the thing being reported is still currently true. To learn more about such nuances, continue on to the **Reported Speech** section.

Other categories of speech

While **direct** and **reported speech** are the two main forms of grammatical speech, there are two other sub-categories that we use: **free indirect speech** and **silent speech**.

Free Indirect Speech

Free indirect speech (also known as **free indirect discourse**) is used to indicate the thoughts or mental processes of a character; as such, it is most commonly found in prose writing. It is most often used in the form of a question, rhetorically asking something about the character’s situation.

We do not use reporting verbs to introduce or indicate free indirect speech, and, like **reported speech**, it is used without quotation marks. For example:

- He had no money, no job, and no friends. **How had his life arrived to such a desperate point?**
- Janet had just learned that she needed to give a speech to the entire school in less than an hour. **What was she going to do?**

Silent Speech

Silent speech refers to a direct quotation that is said internally (i.e., *silently*) by someone to him- or herself. We still use reporting verbs, and we often apply the exact same punctuation rules to silent speech that we use in **direct speech**. For instance:

- **“I’m never coming back to this town again,”** he murmured to himself.
- She thought, **“What a beautiful country.”**

It is equally common, however, to use silent speech without quotation marks (although we still use commas in the same way). To make the quotation stand out from the rest of the text, some writers will use *italics* to indicate silent speech. Note that, if the reporting verb appears before the silent speech, we generally do **not** capitalize the first word if we don’t use quotation marks. For example:

- **It will be quiet around here when the kids go to college,** Dan thought.
- She asked herself, *how am I going to get out of this one*?

Whether you choose to use quotation marks, italics, or nothing at all is entirely a matter of personal preference when it comes to silent speech—the important thing is to be consistent.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What type of speech is used to indicate an **exact quotation** by someone else?

a) Direct speech
b) Reported speech
c) Free indirect speech
d) Silent speech

2. What type of speech is used to indicate an **internal quotation** by someone?

a) Direct speech
b) Reported speech
c) Free indirect speech
d) Silent speech

3. What is the **conventional** rule for conjugating verbs in **reported speech**?

a) Shift the verb one tense into the future
b) Shift the verb one tense into the past
c) Always use the past simple tense
d) No verb shift is necessary.

4. In **American English**, when does the end punctuation in quoted speech appear **within** the quotation marks?

a) Only if it is a comma or period
b) Only if it is a question mark or exclamation point
c) Never
d) Always

5. Identify the type of speech used in the following sentence:
He knew he had to find someone to cover his shift at work, but who would be free this late on a Saturday?

a) Direct speech
b) Reported speech
c) Free indirect speech
d) Silent speech

6. Identify the type of speech used in the following sentence:
She said had seen the movie already, but she would go again if I wanted to see it with her.

a) Direct speech
b) Reported speech
c) Free indirect speech
d) Silent speech

Reported Speech (Indirect Speech)

Definition

When we tell other people what someone else told us, it is called **indirect speech** or **reported speech**. We use **reporting verbs** to introduce the information that was spoken previously.

Reporting verbs

The most common so-called “reporting verbs” are *say* and *tell*. When we use *tell*, we need to use another person’s name, or a **personal pronoun** representing him or her, as an **indirect object**.

For example:

✖ “She said **me** she was late for the appointment yesterday.” (incorrect)
✔ “She said she was late for the appointment yesterday.” (correct)

✖ “She told she was late for the appointment yesterday.” (incorrect)
✔ “She told **me** she was late for the appointment yesterday. (correct)

Remember, the personal pronouns are *me, you, him, her, it, us,* and *them*. We can also change the indirect object and use a person’s name, as in “She told **Mark** she was late for the appointment yesterday.”

Other reporting verbs include *ask, instruct, explain, mention, suggest, claim*, and many more. Although we will focus on *say* and *tell* in this article, let’s see some examples that employ other reporting verbs:

- “He **asked** if *I could come in early tomorrow*.”
- “She **explained** that *she was only joking*.”
- “I merely **suggested** that *we should go home early*.”

Shifting grammatical tense in indirect speech

The conventional grammar rule is to go back a tense when you report to another person what someone said to you. This is because we usually put the reporting verb in the past tense (*I asked, she said, they told us, he suggested,* etc.), and so the speech that is being reported must shift back as well.

In modern English, though, it is quite common to keep the verb tense the same. This is especially true in cases where the reporting verb remains in the present tense and/or that which is being reported is still currently true.

Let’s have a look at each verb tense and examine how the sentence changes when speech is reported.

Present simple tense

Direct speech: “*I live* in Germany.”

Reported Speech: “**He said *I lived*** in Germany.”

But because the reported speech is still true, it is often left in the present simple tense:

- “**He told them** ***I live*** in Germany.”

Past simple tense

Direct speech: “*She was* a carpenter before she moved here.”

Reported speech: “**She said** ***she had been*** a carpenter before she moved here.”

With the past tense, the general rule is to move it back a tense to the past perfect tense. However, for action verbs in the past tense, it is much more common for the reported speech to remain in the past tense:

- “*She went* to the supermarket this morning.”
- “**I told him** ***she went*** to the supermarket this morning.” ***or***:
- “**I said** ***she had gone*** to the supermarket this morning.”

Present continuous tense

Direct speech: “*He is writing* a letter to their friend.”

Reported speech: If he is writing the letter at the exact moment it is reported to another person, we generally say either:

- “**She** **says** ***he is writing*** a letter to their friend.” ***or***:
- “**She** **said** ***he is writing*** a letter to their friend.”

If the reported action happened some time before it was reported, we shift the reported speech back one tense to the **past continuous**, as in:

- “**She told us** ***he was writing*** a letter to their friend.”

Past continuous tense

Direct speech: “*You were sleeping* when I called.”

Reported speech: “**He said** ***you were sleeping*** when I called.”

In modern English, it is very common to maintain the past continuous tense in the reported speech. However, the conventional grammar rule is to change the reported tense to the past perfect continuous tense, as in:

- “**He told me** ***you had been sleeping*** when I called.”

Present perfect tense

Direct speech. "*I have been* to Paris four times."

Reported Speech: "**She told me *she has been / had been*** to Paris four times."

When reporting an action in the present perfect, it is common to either maintain the tense in reported speech, or to shift it back to the past perfect. However, if the reported speech is used in contrast to another event or action in the past, then the past perfect must be used. For example:

- "**She said *she had been*** to Paris four times before she met Tom."

Past perfect tense

Direct speech: "The film *had ended* when I switched on the TV."

Reported speech: "**He said the film *had ended*** when *he'd switched* on the TV."

Reported speech in the past perfect remains the same, as there is no other tense beyond the past perfect. The other element of the sentence ("when I switched on the TV") conventionally goes into the past perfect tense as well.

However, it is also common for this to remain in the past simple in reported speech, as in:

- "**He told me the film *had ended*** when he switched on the TV."

Past perfect continuous tense

Direct speech: "When she finally arrived, I had been waiting for over two hours."

Reported speech remains the same, as there is no tense beyond the past perfect continuous:

- "**He said he *had been waiting*** for over two hours when she finally arrived."

Future simple tense

Direct speech: "*I will call* you tomorrow."

In reported speech, *will* goes back a tense and becomes *would*:

- "**He said *he would call*** me tomorrow."

It is also common for the future simple to remain in the same tense in reported speech, especially if what was reported happened very recently. For example:

- Person A: “What did Barry say just now?”
- Person B: “**He said/says *he will call*** me tomorrow.”

Special cases

Can

Direct speech: “I *can swim*.”

In reported speech, as with *will*, *can* moves back a tense and becomes *could*:

- “**She told me *she could swim***.”

Must

Direct speech: “*I must* go.”

In reported speech, *must* can either remain in the simple present, or else take the past tense of *have to* in reported speech, as in:

- "**She said *she had to*** go.”

or:

- “**She told me *she must*** go.”

Modal auxiliary verbs

If we use the modal auxiliary verbs *should, would*, *could, may, might,* or *ought to,* then direct speech and reported speech are always the same.

For example:

Direct speech: “*You should take* an aspirin.”
Reported speech: “**She said *I should take*** an aspirin.”

Direct speech: “*I would phone* him if I had his number.”
Reported speech: “**She told me *she would phone*** him if she had his number.”

Direct speech: “They *could stay* another day if you want.”
Reported speech: “**They said *they could stay*** another day if I wanted.”

Direct speech: “*I might/may be* late.”
Reported speech: “**I told them *I might/may be*** late.”

Reporting the negative

Where we put the negating *not* or *never* depends on what is negative in the reported speech: the speech being reported or the report itself. Both cases are simple to structure.

Reporting negative speech

When we report negative *speech*, we simply use the reporting verbs and tense shifts that we've looked at already. For example:

Direct speech: "*I did not buy* a car." (negative past tense)

Reported speech: "**He said *he hadn't bought*** a car." (shifts to the negative past perfect)

However, as with reporting speech in the positive past simple, it is common in modern English to leave the reported speech in the negative past simple, as in:

- "**He said *he didn't buy*** a car."

Reporting negative commands

There are two general ways to report imperative speech that was in the negative: we either use *not to* before the verb of a reported clause without a subject, or else use *was/were not to* before the verb of a reported clause with a subject. (We often contract *was/were* with *not* in this construction.) For example:

Direct speech: "Don't speak."

Reported speech:

- "**He said *not to speak***."
- "**He said *I wasn't to speak***."
- "**I told you *we were not to speak***."

Giving negative reports

When we are giving a *negative report* of quoted speech, we typically use the negative past tense of the reporting verb:

Direct speech: "*She is studying* for a test."

Reported speech: "**She didn't say *she was studying*** for a test."

If we want to put the report further in the past, we can also use the negative past perfect, as in:

- “**She hadn’t said** ***she was studying*** for a test.”

Using infinitives to report imperatives, requests, and advice

When we report orders, requests, or advice, we can use the infinitive form of the verbs that the other person has said.

Imperatives (orders)

Direct speech: “Stand up straight!”

Reported speech: “**The teacher said** ***to stand up straight***.”

Requests

Direct speech: “Can you take me to the airport, please?”

Reported speech: “**He asked me** ***to take him*** to the airport.”

Advice

Direct speech: “You should study a bit harder next time.”

Reported speech: “**She advised me** ***to study*** a bit harder.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What is the **conventional** rule for the verb tense of speech that we report?

a) It stays the same as the original tense
b) It shifts back one tense in the past
c) It shifts forward one tense in the future
d) It is always in the past simple tense

2. What does the reporting verb *tell* require that the verb *say* does not?

a) a direct object
b) a direct subject

c) an indirect object
d) an indirect subject

3. Which verbs **always** remain in the same tense when they are reported?

a) reporting verbs (other than *suggest* and *advise*)
b) modal auxiliary verbs (other than *can* and *will*)
c) linking verbs (other than *seem* and *feel*)
d) action verbs (other than *say* and *go*)

4. Which verb form is uniquely used to reporting commands, requests, and advice?

a) infinitive
b) past perfect
c) future simple
d) present participle

5. Which of these is **not** a reporting verb?

a) advise
b) say
c) suggest
d) speak

6. Complete the following sentence with the appropriate tense according to **conventional** grammar rules:
Direct speech: “I have seen that movie already.”
Reported speech: “He said he ________ that movie already.”

a) saw
b) has seen
c) had seen
d) having seen

Grammatical Person

Definition

Grammatical person refers to the degree of involvement of a participant in an action, event, or circumstance. There are three degrees of grammatical person: **first person** (the speaker), **second person** (someone being spoken to), and **third person** (anyone/anything not being directly addressed). The grammatical person of a clause’s subject (a noun or pronoun) will affect how we conjugate the verb of that clause.

The vast majority of verbs only conjugate for **third-person singular** subjects (e.g., *he, she,* and *it*) by taking the suffix “-s” or “-es.”

However, the verb *be* is unique in that it has **five** conjugations according to the grammatical person of its subject and the **tense** of the verb.

Non-*be* Verbs

When to conjugate for person

Every verb in English (except **modal auxiliary verbs**) conjugates for grammatical person. However, this conjugation only occurs in one specific instance: if the subject is **singular** and in the **third person**, and if the verb is in the **present simple tense**. If this is the case, we most often conjugate the verb by adding “-s” or “-es” to the end. In the first or second person in the present simple tense, we simply use the **base form** (bare **infinitive**) of the verb. For example:

- “I *want* a soda.” (first-person singular, present simple tense)
- “You *want* a soda.” (second-person singular, present simple tense)
- “She ***wants*** a soda.) (third-person singular, present simple tense)
- “They *want* a soda.) (third-person plural, present simple tense)

Note that this conjugation does **not** occur with the **past** or **future simple tenses**:

- “I *wanted* a soda.” (first-person singular, **past simple tense**)
- “You *wanted* a soda.” (second-person singular/plural, **past simple tense**)
- “She *wanted* a soda.) (third-person singular, **past simple tense**)

- “I *will want* a soda.” (first-person singular, **future simple tense**)
- “You *will want* a soda.” (second-person singular/plural, **future simple tense**)
- “She *will want* a soda.” (third-person singular, **future simple tense**)

Auxiliary verbs

Auxiliary verbs combine with the main verb of a clause to create a unique, specific meaning. There are three **primary auxiliary verbs** that can all conjugate to reflect tense and person: *do, have,* and *be*.

We use the verb *do* as an auxiliary when we want to ask questions or to make verbs negative. In the present tense in the third-person singular, we conjugate *do* into *does*. For example:

- "*Do* you *want* any ice cream?" (second-person singular/plural)
- "***Does*** he *want* any ice cream?" (third-person singular)

- "They *don't want* any ice cream." (third-person plural)
- "She ***doesn't*** *want* any ice cream." (third-person singular)

The auxiliary verbs *have* and *be* are used to create the **perfect, continuous**, and **perfect continuous** forms of the past and present tenses. The main verb in these tenses will not conjugate for person, but, in certain cases, the auxiliary verbs **can**.

The **present perfect** and **present perfect continuous tense** both use the present-simple tense form of the auxiliary verb *have*, which conjugates as *has* in the third-person singular. For example:

Present Perfect Continuous Tense

- "I *have been working* a lot lately." (first-person singular)
- "You *have been working* a lot lately." (second-person singular/plural)
- "He ***has*** *been working* a lot lately." (third-person singular)
- "They *have been working* a lot lately." (third-person plural)

Present Perfect Tense

- "I *have eaten* too much food." (first-person singular)
- "You *have eaten* too much food!" (second-person singular/plural)
- "The dog ***has*** *eaten* too much food!" (third-person singular)
- "The dogs *have eaten* too much food!" (third-person plural)

The **present continuous** and **past continuous tenses**, on the other hand, use the verb *be* as an auxiliary verb, and it conjugates in several ways according to person and tense:

Present Continuous Tense

- "I ***am*** *running* out of time." (first-person singular)
- "We ***are*** *running* out of time." (first-person plural)
- "You ***are*** *running* out of time." (second-person singular/plural)
- "He ***is*** *running* out of time." (third-person singular)
- "They ***are*** *running* out of time." (third-person plural)

Past Continuous Tense

- "I ***was*** *running* out of time." (first-person singular)

- “We ***were*** *running* out of time.” (first-person plural)
- “You ***were*** *running* out of time.” (second-person singular/plural)
- “He ***was*** *running* out of time.” (third-person singular)
- “They ***were*** *running* out of time.” (third-person plural)

We’ll examine all the ways *be* can conjugate a little bit later in this section.

Spelling conjugated verbs

As we’ve seen already, some verbs take “-s” or “-es” to conjugate for third-person singular subjects, depending on how they are spelled. Let’s look at the rules that guide which kinds of verbs take which endings.

Add “-s”

The vast majority of verbs simply take the suffix “-s” onto the end of their base form, as in:

Base form	Third-person singular
I play	she play**s**
they break	it break**s**
we buy	he buy**s**
you write	the author write**s**
I bake	my father bake**s**
they lie	he lie**s**

Add “-es”

There are some verbs that already end in a **sibilant** sound (a sound like a hiss or buzz) created by the endings “-ss,” “-z,” “-x,” “-sh,” “-ch,” or “-tch.” Adding “-s” to the end would just elongate that sound in an odd way, so we add the suffix “-es” instead so that the sound is distinguished. For example:

Base form	Third-person singular

they catch	she catch**es**
we mix	it mix**es**
I hush	he hush**es**
we pass	he pass**es**
they quiz	the teacher quizz**es**
I approach	she approach**es**

We also *usually* add the “-es” suffix to verbs ending in a **consonant** + “-o,” as in:

Base form	Third Person Singular Present Tense
I go	he go**es**
we do	she do**es**
they forgo	he forgo**es**
they veto	the committee veto**es**
I lasso	the rancher lasso**es**
you undo	he undo**es**

However, verbs ending in a **vowel** + “-o” (such as *moo*, *boo*, *woo*, or *radio*) simply take the “-s” ending (*moo**s***, *boo**s***, *woo**s***, *radio**s***). *Solo* is unique in that it ends in a consonant + “o,” yet it also only takes “-s” for the third-person singular (*solo**s***).

Change “y” to “i” and add “-es”

If a verb ends in a **consonant** followed by “-y,” we conjugate by changing “y” to “i” and *then* adding “-es.” (Note that if “y” is preceded by a **vowel**, as in *play*, *buy*, *stay*, etc., then we simply add “-s” as usual.)

Base form	Third-person singular

they cry	he cr**ies**
we try	she tr**ies**
they scurry	it scurr**ies**
the dogs bury	he bur**ies**
I fly	the pilot fl**ies**
I spy	she sp**ies**

Conjugating *be*

The verb *be* is known as a **highly irregular** verb due to the huge variation in how it conjugates for tense and person. Below are all the possible conjugations of the verb—**eight** forms in total!

Grammatical person	Base form	Past Tense Singular	Past Tense Plural	Past Participle	Present Tense Singular	Present Tense Plural	P
n/a	**be**			**been**			**b**
first person		I **was**	we **were**		I **am**	we **are**	
second person		you **were**	you **were**		you **are**	you **are**	
third person		he/she/it **was**	they **were**		he/she/it **is**	they **are**	

Be, like the verbs *have* and *do*, can be both an **auxiliary verb** or the **main verb** of a clause. As we saw above, when *be* functions as an auxiliary, it is used to create the **past continuous** and **present continuous tenses**; when it functions as a main verb, it is called a **linking verb**, meaning it connects a subject to a description rather than expressing a dynamic action.

We've already seen examples of *be* functioning to create the continuous tenses;

now let’s look at some examples of how it functions as a **linking verb**.

- “I **am** 32 years old.”
- “**Were** you cold last night?”
- “It **was** very rainy in Ireland.”
- “John **is** in the other room.”
- “She **is** a bully.”
- “They **are** *a lost cause*.”

Note that we don’t conjugate *be* into its past and present **participles** to reflect grammatical person; instead, they are used when *be* is functioning as the **main verb** in the perfect or continuous tenses. For example:

- “I *have* **been** *unwell* lately.” (**present perfect tense**)
- “You *are* **being** silly.” (**present continuous tense**)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is the only type of verb that does **not** conjugate for grammatical person?

a) Auxiliary verbs
b) Modal auxiliary verbs
c) Linking verbs
d) Stative verbs

2. Which of the following is **not** a suffix used to conjugate non-*be* verbs for grammatical person?

a) -re
b) -s
c) -es
d) -ed
e) A & D
f) B & C

3. Which of the following does the verb *be* conjugate for?

a) First-person singular present tense
b) Second-person singular past tense

c) Third-person singular present tense
d) Third-person plural past tense
e) A & C
f) B & D
g) All of the above

4. Which of the following do **all** verbs (except modal verbs) conjugate for?

a) First-person singular present tense
b) First-person singular past tense
c) Third-person singular present tense
d) Third-person singular past tense

5. Which of the following is **not** a conjugation of *be*?

a) has
b) was
c) is
d) am

Declension

Definition

Declension collectively refers to the **inflection** (change in form) of nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs to reflect certain aspects of how they are used in a sentence. Declension stands in contrast to **conjugation**, which refers specifically to the inflection of **verbs**.

Nouns

The declension of nouns reflects two things: **plurality** and **gender**.

Plurals

Nouns are declined primarily to reflect **number**. A noun in its basic form is inherently singular, so we must inflect it when there is more than one.

The most common way to do this is to add the suffix “-s” to the end of the noun, as in *book**s***, *dogs*, *table**s***, etc.

However, certain nouns take “-es” at the end instead, and many **irregular** plurals defy any sort of spelling guidelines at all. Continue on to the section on **plurals** to learn more about the various spelling rules and irregularities when writing about multiple nouns.

Gender

In English, nouns are generally gender neutral. While it is very common to inflect nouns for gender in the romance languages (such as French, Italian, and Spanish), inflection for gender has all but disappeared in modern English (except for **personal pronouns**, as we’ll see).

However, there are still a few English nouns that still **do** inflect for gender. The most common of these take an “-ess” ending to reflect feminine (female) gender. For example, *count* (male) vs. *count**ess*** (female), or *prince* (male) vs. *princ**ess*** (female).

Continue to the section describing the inflection of nouns for **gender** to learn more about when and how we spell the few remaining gender-specific noun forms.

Personal Pronouns

Pronouns are used for a wide range of purposes, but we only inflect a relatively small portion of them—**personal pronouns**. However, other than the **conjugation of verbs**, personal pronouns are the most heavily inflected part of speech in English, changing form to reflect **case, gender, number**, and **person**. **Reflexive pronouns**, though not technically an example of declension, are so similar to personal pronouns that we will also consider them within this group.

Case

Personal pronouns change form to reflect the subjective case, the objective case, and the possessive case.

Subjective Case

When a personal pronoun is acting as the **subject** of a verb (that is, it is the person or thing doing the action), it is said to be in the subjective case. For instance:

- “**I** know that **she** said that.” (Both pronouns are subjective, as both are agents of their respective actions.)

- “**He** told *her* to be quiet.” (Here, only *he* is in the subjective case; *her*, the recipient or “object” of his action, is in the **objective** case.)

Objective Case

A personal pronoun is in the **objective case** when it is a *direct* or *indirect object* of a verb, or else if it is the **object of a preposition**. For example:

- “I can’t believe he fired **you**.” (*You* is the direct object of the verb *fire*.)
- “Please send **them** a thank you card.” (*Them* is the indirect object of the verb *send*.)
- “You can’t say that *to* ***me***!” (*Me* is the object of the preposition *to*; together they form the **prepositional phrase** *to me*.)

Possessive (Genitive) Case

As the name implies, the possessive case changes the inflection of a personal pronoun to mark possession. **Possessive determiners** function grammatically like adjectives, modifying a noun or nouns. For example:

- “**My** dad’s glasses went missing.” (*My* is a possessive determiner that shows the relation of *dad* to the speaker.)
- “He said it was **his** computer.” (*His* is a possessive determiner that modifies *computer*.)

Possessive pronouns are personal pronouns in the possessive case that have the grammatical function of nouns. For example:

- “I can see **mine** through the window!”
- “Jenny seems pretty sure that the book is **hers**.”

Gender

Personal pronouns are only inflected for gender when they are in the third person and singular—first-person and second-person pronouns (singular or plural) and third-person plural pronouns remain gender neutral. Here are the gendered pronouns in English:

Third-person feminine singular: *she, her, hers, herself*

Third-person masculine singular: *he, him, his, himself*

The third-person singular can also be **neuter**. This is used when a personal pronoun represents a thing or an animal. Animals can sometimes take gendered personal pronouns if they are pets or domesticated animals; otherwise, they take the third-person neuter form:

Third-person neuter singular: *it, its, its own, itself*

Remember, when there are multiple people or things, we use the ungendered forms of *they*:

Third person plural: *they, them, their, theirs, themselves*

Person

Grammatical person refers to the perspectives of the personal pronouns used to identify a person in speech and text—that is, it distinguishes between a speaker (first person), an addressee (second person), and others beyond that (third person).

First person

First-person pronouns tell what is directly happening to the speaker or narrator:

Singular: *I, me, my, mine, myself*

Plural: *we, us, our, ours, ourselves*

Second person

We use the second-person pronouns to indicate those who are being addressed directly by the speaker:

Singular/Plural: *you, you, your, yours, yourself (singular), yourselves (plural)*

Third person

Third person is used to talk about someone or something that is not the speaker and is not being directly addressed:

Feminine singular: *she, her, hers, herself*

Masculine singular: *he, him, his, himself*

Neuter singular: *it, its, its own, itself*

However, when there are multiple people or things, we use the un-gendered forms of *they*:

Third person plural: *they, them, their, theirs, themselves*

Number

Personal pronouns, unlike nouns, have various specific inflections depending on whether they are singular or plural. For the most part, only the **first-person** and **third-person** personal pronouns have plural forms; the only plural **second-person** pronoun is the reflexive pronoun *yourselves*.

There are no rules or guidelines for how we change the personal pronouns for number because doing so affects all the other forms; we simply have to memorize their various forms.

Person	**Number**	**Gender**	**Subjective Case**	**Objective Case**	**Posse Deter**
First Person	Singular	Masculine/feminine	I	me	my
First Person	Plural	Masculine/feminine	we	us	our
Second Person	Singular/Plural	Masculine/feminine	you	you	your
Third Person	Singular	Feminine	she	her	her
Third Person	Singular	Masculine	he	him	his
Third person	Singular	Neuter	it	it	its
Third person	Plural	Neuter / gender neutral)	they	them	their

Reflexive Pronouns and intensive

pronouns

Reflexive and **intensive pronouns** are identical in appearance, formed by adding "-self" or "-selves" to the pronouns *my, our, your, her, him, it, them,* or *one* (an indefinite pronoun).

Reflexive pronouns are used when someone or something is both the subject and the object of the same verb. When this happens, the reflexive verb is used as the object of the verb to represent the person or thing; a reflexive pronoun can never be used as the subject of a verb.

For example:

- "I wish you could hear **yourselves** right now!"
- "She admitted to **herself** that she was wrong."
- "The vole hides **itself** beneath the ground for safety."
- "The players have really outdone **themselves** today!"
- "One should strive to better **oneself** every day."

Intensive pronouns look identical to reflexive pronouns, but they are used to add emphasis to a person's (or thing's) role in an action. For example:

- "I told them **myself** that the report would be finished on time."
- "You need to do the work **yourselves**, or you will never learn the material."
- "The president **herself** will be speaking at the ceremony."

Reflexive and intensive pronouns are not typically considered inflections of personal pronouns. However, because they are formed from other pronouns, we have grouped them together here with the other types of personal pronoun declension.

Adjectives

Adjectives are inflected when we want to form comparisons between two people or things (**comparative adjectives**), or to identify the person or thing with the highest degree of a characteristic among a group (**superlative adjectives**).

For instance:

- "Mike is **strong**." (adjective)
- "I am **stronger** than him." (comparative adjective)

- “Jeff is the **strongest** of all of us.” (superlative adjective)

The progression of inflection for adjectives is known as the **degrees of comparison**. The spelling rules that dictate how each degree is formed depend on how the base form (known as the positive degree) of the adjective is spelled.

Adjective spelling	How to modify	Positive degree	Comparative degree	Superlative degree
One syllable, ending in a consonant preceded by one vowel.	Add “-er” for comparative degree or “-est” for superlative degree. Double final consonant.	big	big**ger**	big**gest**
One syllable, ending in a consonant preceded by two vowels or another consonant.	Add “-er” for comparative degree or “-est” for superlative degree. Do **not** double final consonant if preceded by one vowel.	strong	strong**er**	strong**est**
One syllable, ending in an “e”	Add “-r” for comparative degree or “-st” for superlative degree.	large	large**r**	large**st**
Two syllables, ending in a “y”	Replace “y” with “i” and add “-er” for comparative degree or “-est” for superlative degree.	happy	happ**ier**	happ**iest**
Three or more syllables, or two syllables **not** ending in	Add the words *more* or *less* before the adjective to make them comparative, or *most/least* to	clever	**more/less** careful	**most/least** careful

"y"	make them superlative.			

There are several exceptions to these rules, however, especially when using **irregular adjectives**. Go to the section on **Degrees of Comparison** in the **Adjectives** chapter to learn more.

Adverbs

We can also inflect adverbs when we want to compare the degree to which two actions are performed (**comparative adverbs**), or to identify the highest degree of how an action is performed. (**superlative adverbs**).

For example:

- “Susan runs **fast**.” (adverb)
- “Janet runs **faster** than Susan.” (comparative adverb)
- “Betty runs the **fastest**.” (superlative adverb)

The progression of inflection for adverbs is known (like adjectives) as the **degrees of comparison**. Again, the spelling rules that dictate how each degree is formed depend on how the base form (known as the positive degree) of the adverb is spelled.

Adverb spelling	How to modify	Positive degree	Comparative degree	Superlative degree
One syllable, ending in a consonant	Add “-er” for comparative degree or “-est” for superlative degree.	fast	fast**er**	fast**est**
One syllable, ending in an “e”	Add “-r” for comparative degree or “-st” for superlative degree.	late	late**r**	late**st**
Adverbs ending in a “y”	Add the words *more* or *less* before the adverb to make it comparative, or *most/least* to make it	carefully	more/less carefully	most/least carefully

	superlative.			

There are many **irregular adverbs** that go against the rules we just looked at. Go to the section on **degrees of comparison** in the **Adverbs** chapter to learn more how their comparative and superlative degrees are formed.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following do **not** undergo grammatical declension?

a) nouns
b) pronouns
c) adjectives
d) verbs
e) adverbs

2. What is the most common reason **nouns** are inflected?

a) To establish the gender of the noun
b) To establish the plurality of the noun
c) To establish the grammatical person of the noun
d) To establish the grammatical case of the noun
e) All of the above
f) None of the above

3. What is the most common reason **personal pronouns** are inflected?

a) To establish the gender of the pronoun
b) To establish the plurality of the pronoun
c) To establish the grammatical person of the pronoun
d) To establish the grammatical case of the pronoun
e) All of the above
f) None of the above

4. How are adjectives *most commonly* inflected to create the **comparative degree**?

a) By adding the suffix “-er”
b) By adding the suffix “-est”
c) By adding the suffix “-es”

d) By adding the suffix “-s”

5. Which adverbs do not adhere to the spelling rules when inflecting for the comparative and superlative degree?

a) One-syllable adverbs ending in an “e”
b) Adverbs formed from adjectives
c) Irregular adverbs
d) Adverbs of manner

Plurals

Definition

Plurals of nouns are used to indicate when there is more than one person, place, animal, or thing.

The normal method for making nouns plural is to add an “-s” at the end of the noun.

For example:

- one boy – two boys
- one girl – two girls
- one pen – two pens
- one pencil – two pencils
- one prize – two prizes
- one price – two prices

If a noun ends in “-s,” “-x,” “-z,” or with a cluster of consonants, such as “-sh,” “-ch,” or “-tch” (as in “watch”), we add “-es” to render it plural.

For example:

- one coach – two coaches
- one witch – two witches
- one dish – two dishes
- one box – two boxes
- one bus – two buses
- one kiss – two kisses
- one waltz – two waltzes

Words ending in “-y”

When the noun ends in a “-y” and it is preceded by a consonant, we change “y” to “i” and add “-es.”

For example:

- one country – two countries
- one city – two cities
- one gallery – two galleries
- one baby – two babies
- one lady – two ladies
- one reality – two realities
- one fly – two flies
- one butterfly – two butterflies

However, when a word ends in a “-y” preceded by a *vowel*, then we simply add an “-s” as usual:

- one toy – two toys
- one play – two plays
- one key – two keys
- one guy – two guys

Irregular plurals

There are some nouns that are irregular. They do not adhere to spelling rules, and so these need to be memorized.

Here are the most common ones:

- one man – two men
- one woman – two women
- one person – two people*
- one mouse – two mice
- one goose – two geese
- one child – two children
- one tooth – two teeth
- one foot – two feet

(*Persons is also a plural form of person, but in modern English it is usually reserved for more formal, bureaucratic, or legal language, as in, “Any such *persons* found to guilty of shoplifting will be prosecuted.”)

Be aware that irregular plural nouns cannot be made plural *again*; that is, you cannot have *childrens,* or *feets*. However, *people* is an exception—it can be pluralized as *peoples* in some cases.

Adding “-ves” vs. “-s”

With some nouns that end in “-f,” “-fe,” or “-lf,” we replace the endings with “-ves” to make them plural. Below is a list of some common examples:

- one life – two lives
- one wife – two wives
- one loaf – two loaves
- one leaf – two leaves
- one knife – two knives
- one thief – two thieves
- one calf – two calves
- one half – two halves
- one wolf – one wolves

However, many other words that end in “-f,” “-fe,” or “-lf” are simply made plural with an “-s” on the end. Here are some common examples:

- one chief – two chiefs
- one brief – two briefs
- one safe – two safes
- one gulf – two gulfs
- one belief – two beliefs
- one roof – two roofs

And yet some other words can receive either “-ves” **or** “-s,” such as:

- one handkerchief – two handkerchiefs – two handkerchieves
- one hoof – two hoofs – two hooves
- one scarf – two scarfs – two scarves

Unfortunately, there is no steadfast rule for which words will receive a “-ves” ending, an “-s” ending, or both—they are irregular and have to be memorized.

Words ending in “-ff” or “-ffe”

Words ending in “-ff” or “-ffe,” on the other hand, have straightforward plural forms: we simply add “-s” to the end, as in:

- one cliff – two cliffs
- one bailiff – two bailiffs
- one giraffe – two giraffes
- one gaffe – two gaffes

Words with the same plural and singular forms

We also have some nouns that remain the same in singular and plural.

For example:

- one fish – two fish*
- one sheep – two sheep
- one bison – two bison
- one aircraft – two aircraft

*Note that *fish* can also be pluralized as *fishes*. However, it is more common for this “-es” form to be used in reference to more than one kind of fish, as opposed to multiple fish in general.

Uncountable nouns

Although similar in nature to the above nouns, **uncountable nouns** refer to things that cannot be divided into individual units, and that therefore **cannot** be made plural at all.

For example:

- rice
- butter
- milk
- advice
- news

To quantify them, we need to use a unit of measure, such as *one pound of rice, a* *bottle of milk*, *a piece of advice*, etc.

The rules surrounding these can be quite complex, so see the section on **Uncountable Nouns** to learn more.

Words from Latin or Greek

There are also nouns taken from Latin or Greek that maintain their original forms in the plural. However, as we'll see, some of these words have begun shifting towards more conventional plural forms, in addition to their original spellings.

For example:

- index – indices (indexes is now also acceptable)
- appendix – appendices (appendixes is now also acceptable)
- fungus – fungi
- criterion – criteria
- nucleus – nuclei
- syllabus – syllabi
- focus – foci
- cactus – cacti (cactuses is now also acceptable)
- thesis – theses
- crisis – crises
- phenomenon – phenomena

Non-Existent Plural Adjectives

In many languages, especially languages deriving from Latin, adjectives become plural when they are used to describe plural nouns. However, in English, adjectives are **never** made plural.

For example:

✖ "Two *blues pens*." (incorrect)
✔ "Two *blue pens*." (correct)

✖ "*Roses* are *reds*." (incorrect)
✔ "*Roses* are *red*." (correct)

✖ "Several *10-years-old boys*." (incorrect)
✖ "Several *10-year-olds boys*." (incorrect)

✔ “Several 10-year-old boys.” (correct)

As you can see, it is always the noun that is pluralized, and never the adjective.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What is the correct plural form of the noun *batch*?

a) batchs
b) batches
c) batchies
d) batch

2. For words ending in “-f,” “-fe,” or “-lf,” in what instances do we replace the endings with “-ves” to make them plural?

a) always
b) never
c) Only if the endings are preceded by a vowel
d) We have to memorize when to do so

3. When a word ends in a consonant + “y,” how is the word made plural?

a) By replacing the “y” with “-ies”
b) By replacing the “y” with “-es”
c) By adding “-s” to the end of the word
d) No change necessary

4. How can an **uncountable noun** be made plural?

a) Its singular form is the same as its plural form
b) It cannot be made plural
c) By using its original Latin or Greek ending
d) We have to memorize how to do so

5. Which of the following sentences is **incorrect**?

a) “There are a number of missing persons following the disaster.”
b) “Many men and women sacrificed their lives in the line of duty.”
c) “There are many different childrens trying to find their parents.”
d) “The roofs of several houses have collapsed in the last half hour.”

Gender in Nouns

Definition

In modern English, nouns are generally only **declined** (inflected) to create **plurals**. There are, however, still some instances in which nouns are declined to show masculine or feminine **gender**.

Conveying gender in English nouns

In many other languages, especially the Romance languages (such as French, Spanish, and Italian), a large number of nouns are coded as being either feminine or masculine.

This used to be the case in Old English as well, but in modern English only certain nouns that describe a person who performs an action are inflected for gender. This is usually achieved by changing the end of the word to a feminine suffix, such as “-ess,” “-ine,” and “-trix.” Words are less commonly changed to specifically reflect masculine gender, but the few that do use the suffixes “-er” or “-or.”

Making a noun feminine

Of the nouns that decline to mark gender, most do so to indicate the noun as being feminine. However, even this practice is becoming less common in modern English.

“-ess”

The most common suffix used to mark feminine nouns is “-ess.” It is used primarily to identify a professional, noble, royal, or religious title of a woman. For example:

- steward**ess**
- waitr**ess**
- actr**ess**
- abb**ess**
- count**ess**
- duch**ess**

- princ**ess**

The use of “-ess” to distinguish females working in a certain profession is beginning to wane, giving way to the basic masculine form (*actor* is becoming more common to refer to both males and females) or a non-gendered alternative (*flight attendant* is now preferred to either *steward* (m) or *stewardess* (f)).

However, gendered titles of royalty, nobility, and religiosity are still common in modern English.

“-ette”

The other suffix most commonly recognized as being a feminine marker is “-ette,” due largely to its use in the term *suffrag**ette***, the name given to supporters and advocates of women’s suffrage in the early 20th century (especially in Britain).

Two other words commonly distinguished as feminine using this suffix are *bachelorette* (a young unmarried woman, used especially in the context of “bachelorette parties”) and *brunette* (a girl or woman with brown hair), both of which terms are still widely used in modern English today.

Other than the above examples, though, “-ette” is more commonly used to refer to non-gendered items that are small or diminutive, such as *cigarette, kitchenette, novelette, launderette, cassette,* and so on.

Other feminine suffixes

Other than “-ess” and “-ette,” the only extant suffixes that exist to signify femininity are “-ine,” used to form *heroine* (from *hero*), and “-trix,” which almost only appears in old-fashioned or legalistic terms, such as *aviatrix* (from *aviator*), *executrix* (from *executor*), or *mediatrix* (from *mediator*).

Making a noun masculine

Nouns that are, were, or can be distinguished between feminine and masculine genders are often masculine in their basic form. These tend to end in “-er” or “-or” to denote someone who performs the action of a verb. For example:

- act**or**
- clean**er**
- lawy**er**

- execution**er**
- execut**or**
- aviat**or**
- bachel**or**

Increasingly in modern English, the distinction of the above terms as being solely or inherently masculine is fading away, and the terms refer to anyone—regardless of gender identity—who performs such an action or role.

Uniquely, there is one word that is inherently feminine that can take the suffix "-er" to become masculine: we make the inherently feminine word *widow* (meaning a woman whose spouse had died) masculine by adding "-er"—*widow**er*** (a man whose spouse has died).

Nouns with inherent gender identity

There is a relatively small amount of nouns in English that are inherently gendered because they describe members of the male or female sex; they do not use suffixes to alter the meaning of an existing word. Most commonly, they are terms describing familial, social, or sometimes royal titles.

Below is a list of common (but by no means exhaustive) examples:

Feminine	Masculine
queen	king
girl	boy
bride	groom (less commonly, *bridegroom*)
mother	father
wife	husband
madam	sir
lady	gentleman
witch	wizard

Animal names

We also have specific gendered words to identify male and female members of animal types. Although some are dependent on the use of suffixes (for instance, a female lion is a *lioness*), many are totally unique words specific to that gender. Here are a few common examples:

Animal type	Feminine	Masculine
horses	mare	stallion
deer	doe	buck
pigs	sow	boar
chickens	hen	rooster
sheep	ewe	ram

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What is used to **change** a noun to reflect gender in English?

a) a prefix
b) a suffix
c) pronunciation
d) syllable stress
e) A & C
f) B & D

2. Which of the following is **most commonly** used to indicate a **feminine** noun?

a) -ette
b) -ine
c) -trix
d) -ess
e) A & B
f) C & D

3. Which of the following is **most commonly** used to indicate a **masculine** noun?

a) -er
b) -or
c) -ed
d) -ing
e) A & B
f) C & D

4. Which of the following nouns identifies for gender **without** using a gendered suffix?

a) madame
b) actress
c) widower
d) brunette

Regular and Irregular Inflection

Definition

Inflection, the way we change a word's form to reflect things like tense, plurality, gender, etc., is usually governed by consistent, predictable rules. This is known as **regular inflection**.

For example, we usually create the **past simple tense** of verbs by adding "-d" or "-ed" (as in *hear**d*** or *walk**ed***, which also function as the verbs' **past participles**), and we normally create **plurals** by adding "-s" or "-es" to the ends of nouns (as in *dog**s***, *cat**s***, *watch**es***, etc.).

However, there are many instances in which the way a word is inflected doesn't seem to follow any rules or conventions at all—this is known as **irregular inflection**. For example, the past simple tense of the verb *go* is *went* (rather than *goed*, as regular inflection would suggest), and its past participle is *gone*.

Irregular inflection affects nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and (most commonly) verbs.

Plurals of Nouns

Although nouns are largely uninflected in English (remaining the same regardless of case, gender, or person), we do still inflect them to indicate **plurals**—that is, when there is more than one of something.

Regular plurals

As we noted above, the standard way to inflect a noun for plurality is to add “-s” or “-es.” Occasionally we have to make a slight alteration to the spelling of the word to accommodate this inflection (for example, when the noun ends in a “-y” and it is preceded by a consonant, we change “y” to “i” and add “-es”), but these are still considered regular because there is a standard rule that they follow. Here are some examples of regular nouns and their plural counterparts:

Regular noun	**Plural form**
boy	**boys**
book	**books**
box	**boxes**
beach	**beaches**
lady	**ladies**
city	**cities**

Irregular plurals

However, there are a large number of nouns that have **irregular** plural forms that defy this convention. These are completely unique words that do not follow any rules or conventions for how they are spelled. Here are some of the most common irregular nouns:

Irregular noun	**Plural form**
person	**people/persons***
mouse	**mice**
goose	**geese**

child	**children**
foot	**feet**
man	**men**
woman	**women**

(*Persons is also a plural form of person, but in modern English it is usually reserved for more formal, bureaucratic, or legal language, as in, “Any such **persons** found to be guilty of shoplifting will be prosecuted.”)

There are many other unique, irregular ways that nouns are pluralized. To learn more, go to the section on **Plurals** in the chapter dealing with **Declension**.

Adjectives

Adjectives inflect when we change them into their **comparative** and **superlative** forms. **Comparative adjectives** are used to compare a quality between two nouns, while **superlative adjectives** identify a noun with the highest (or lowest) degree of an attribute among a group.

Regular adjectives

We generally form the comparative degree by adding the suffix “-er” to the end of the adjective, or by adding the words *more* or *less* before it.

To form the superlative degree, we either add “-est” to the end of the adjective or add the word *most* or *least* before it.

We sometimes have to change the spelling of the adjective slightly to accommodate the addition of the suffix, but the rules for when this is necessary are straightforward and consistent.

The shift from a basic adjective to its comparative or superlative forms is known as the **degrees of comparison**. Let’s look at how this is accomplished with regular adjectives:

Adjective	Comparative degree	Superlative degree	Spelling rule
			With one-syllable adjectives, add “-er” or “-est” and double the final

big	**bigger**	**biggest**	consonant if preceded by one vowel.
strong	**stronger**	**strongest**	The final consonant is **not** doubled if it is preceded by two vowels or another consonant.
large	**larger**	**largest**	If the adjective ends in an “e,” then you only need to add “-r” or “-st.”
happy	**happier**	**happiest**	If an adjective has one or two syllables and ends in “-y,” we replace “y” with “i” and add “-er” or “-est.”
beautiful	**more/less beautiful**	**most/least beautiful**	For adjectives that have three or more syllables, or adjectives that have two syllables and *do not* end in “-y,” use the words *more/less* or *most/least*.

Irregular adjectives

The vast majority of adjectives follow the above conventions when forming the comparative or superlative degrees. However, there are a few adjectives that are irregular and have unique forms that do not conform to any spelling conventions. Because of this, they must all be memorized.

Irregular adjective	Comparative degree	Superlative degree
fun	**more/less fun**	**most/least fun**
bad	**worse**	**worst**
well (healthy)	**better**	**best**
good	**better**	**best**
far	**farther/further**	**farthest/furthest**

little (amount)	**less**	**least**
many/much	**more**	**most**

To learn more about how comparative and superlative adjectives are formed, go to the **Degrees of Comparison** section of the **Adjectives** chapter.

Adverbs

Regular adverbs

A large number of adverbs are formed from adjectives. The standard way of doing this is by adding “-ly” to the end of the adjective. Sometimes the adjective’s spelling needs to be altered slightly to accommodate this, but the rules of doing so are fairly straightforward. Here are some common examples:

Adjective	Regular adverb	Spelling rule
beautiful	**beautifully**	Adjective + “-ly”
enthusiastic	**enthusiastically**	If the adjective ends in “-ic,” it will change to “-ically.”
happy	**happily**	If the adjective ends in a “-y,” it will change to “-ily.”
terrible	**terribly**	If the adjective ends in “-le,” the ending is dropped and is replaced with “-ly.”
due	**duly**	If the adjective ends in “-ue,” the “e” on the end is dropped and is replaced with “-ly.”

Irregular adverbs

Although the majority of adverbs follow the above rules when they are formed from adjectives, there are a number of irregular adverbs that go against the conventions. Much of the time, irregular adverbs have the same spelling as their adjectival counterparts, but there are no clues in the adjectives' spelling as to when this is the case; like all irregular inflections, they just have to be memorized. Below are some of the most common irregular adverbs.

Adjective	Irregular adverb	Sources of confusion
fast	**fast**	*Last* becomes *lastly*, but *fast* becomes *fast*.
hard	**hard**	*Hardly (ever)* is an adverb of frequency, meaning "almost never."
straight	**straight**	
lively	**lively**	*Lively* still exists as an adverb in phrases like *step lively*; however, it is more often used in the adverbial prepositional phrase *in a lively manner*.
late (tardy)	**late**	*Lately* is a different adverb that means "recently."
daily	**daily**	**Adverbs of frequency** that relate to units of time have the same form as both adjectives and adverbs.
early	**early**	
friendly	no adverb	Can only be used in the adverbial prepositional phrase *in a friendly manner.*
timely	no adverb	Can only be used in the adverbial prepositional phrase *in a timely manner.*
good	**well**	*Well* is the adverbial form of *good*; it can also function as a **predicative adjective** meaning "healthy."

Go to the section on **Regular and Irregular Adverbs** in the **Adverbs** chapter to learn more about how adverbs are formed from adjectives.

Irregular Degrees of Comparison

Just like adjectives, adverbs also have **comparative** and **superlative degrees**, which are used to compare actions among people or things. They are formed in the same way, by adding "-er" or *more/less* for **comparative adverbs** or "-est" or *most/least* for **superlative adverbs**.

However, there are some adverbs that have irregular comparative and superlative forms. We can't rely on the irregular adverbs we looked at above, either, because many of those adverbs are ***regular*** in how they inflect to become comparative or superlative. As always, we just have to commit them to memory:

Irregular adverb (positive degree)	Comparative degree	Superlative degree
badly	**worse**	**worst**
early	**earlier**	**earliest**
far	**farther/further**	**farthest/furthest**
little	**less**	**least**
well	**better**	**best**

Verbs

Verbs present the greatest challenge when it comes to learning about regular and irregular inflection. A huge variety of verbs are irregular, which means they have **past simple tense** and **past participle** forms that defy the normal conventions. That means that every irregular verb has three unique conjugations that must be memorized. In addition, the verb *be* is known as being **highly irregular**, because it has **six** irregular conjugations in addition to its base and present participle form—***eight*** in all!

We'll briefly look at the rules for conjugating regular verbs and then look at some common irregular verbs below. You can learn more by going to the section **Regular and Irregular Verbs** in the chapter on **Verbs** in **Parts of Speech**.

(Note that all verbs, whether regular or irregular, conjugate the same way to form **present participles**, taking "-ing" at the end of the base form. Because of this, we won't include the present participle form in the breakdowns below.)

Conjugating regular verbs

The majority of verbs take the ending "-d" or "-ed" to their base form (the infinitive of the verb without *to*) to create **both** the **past simple tense** and **past participle**. There are some instances in which the verb's spelling must change slightly to accommodate this, but these rules are straightforward and consistent. Here are some common regular verb inflections:

Base Form	Past Simple Tense	Past Participle
play	**played**	**played**
bake	**baked**	**baked**
listen	**listened**	**listened**
approach	**approached**	**approached**
gather	**gathered**	**gathered**
climb	**climbed**	**climbed**
chop	**chopped**	**chopped**
copy	**copied**	**copied**
panic	**panicked**	**panicked**

Conjugating irregular verbs

Irregular verbs do not have spelling rules that we can follow to create the past simple tense and past participles. This means that the only way of knowing how to spell these forms is to memorize them for each irregular verb individually. Here are a few common examples:

Base Form	Past Simple Tense	Past Participle
see	**saw**	**seen**
grow	**grew**	**grown**
give	**gave**	**given**
think	**thought**	**thought**
throw	**threw**	**thrown**
drive	**drove**	**driven**
ride	**rode**	**ridden**
run	**ran**	**run**
swim	**swam**	**swum**
sit	**sat**	**sat**

Conjugating *be*

As we mentioned above, the verb *be* is unique among verbs for having a huge variety of conjugations. Not only does it have irregular inflections for the past simple tense and past participle, but it also has specific forms depending on **plurality** and **grammatical person** (first person, second person, and third person). The table below shows a breakdown of all the different ways we conjugate *be*.

Grammatical person	Base form	Present Tense Singular	Present Tense Plural	Present Participle	Past Tense Singular	Past Tense Plural	P
n/a	**be**			**being**			**b**
first person		I **am**	we **are**		I **was**	we **were**	
second person		you **are**	you **are**		you **were**	you **were**	
third person		he/she/it **is**	they **are**		he/she/it **was**	they **were**	

Learning irregular inflection

As we've seen, words that inflect in irregular ways are, unfortunately, unpredictable by nature. Because there are no patterns for how they are formed, it can be very difficult to learn them.

The best way to learn irregular words is to pay close attention when you are reading—if a word looks like it has an unusual spelling compared to other words that are used in the same way, then it is probably an irregular inflection. In these cases, look up the word in a good dictionary and make a note of how it is used, then try to remember it for next time.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. In which of the following does irregular inflection **not** occur?

a) Adjectives
b) Adverbs
c) Pronouns
d) Verbs

2. What is the most common way of forming **regular** adverbs from adjectives?
a) Adding “-ly” to the end of the word
b) Adding “-er” to the end of the word
c) Adding “-est” to the end of the word
d) Adding “-s” to the end of the word

3. What is the most common way of forming **regular superlative adjectives**?
a) Adding “-ly” to the end of the word
b) Adding “-er” to the end of the word
c) Adding “-est” to the end of the word
d) Adding “-s” to the end of the word

4. When do regular and irregular verbs conjugate **differently**?
a) When forming the past simple tense
b) When forming the past participle
c) When forming the present participle
d) A & B
e) B & C
d) None of the above

5. Which of the following sentences is **incorrect**?
a) “There are a number of missing persons following the disaster.”
b) “Many men and women sacrificed their lives in the line of duty.”
c) “There are many different childrens trying to find their parents.”
d) “The roofs of several houses have collapsed in the last half hour.”

6. Which of the following is a **correct** conjugation of the verb *be*?
a) is
b) was
c) been
d) are

e) A & B
f) C & D
g) All of the above
h) None of the above

Syntax

Definition

Syntax refers to the ways in which we order specific words to create logical, meaningful sentences. While the **parts of speech** are all the different types of words that we can use, **syntax** is the set of rules, patterns, or processes by which we can put them together.

Because English is such a flexible language, it can be difficult to understand all the specific nuances that govern these rules and patterns. However, we have some basic building blocks that help us identify the hierarchy of how the language is structured.

We'll briefly look at the parts that make up this hierarchy of structure. Go to the individual sections to learn more about each.

The Hierarchy of Grammatical Structure

Subjects and Predicates

The basis of all syntax really begins with the **subject** and the **predicate**, both of which are required to form a complete and logical statement. **The subject** is the person or thing that performs or controls an action in a sentence, while **the predicate** describes that action.

Put in the simplest terms, the subject is at least a noun (or a pronoun *representing* a noun), while the predicate is at least a verb. However, the subject can also include any words that add meaning to the noun or pronoun, such as **determiners** or other **modifiers** (adjectives, adverbs, or phrases acting like them).

Take, for example, the following sentence:

- "**My father** drives a car to work each day."

The subject here is not just *father* (the noun), but also the determiner *my*. This specifies which *father* is controlling the action of the verb *drives*.

Likewise, the predicate includes any words that add meaning to the verb, such as

modifiers, **objects**, or **complements**. Let's look at that sentence again:

- "My father **drives a car to work each day**."

Here, the predicate is the entire phrase *drives a car to work each day*. In addition to the verb *drives*, it also contains the phrases *a car* (the direct object of the verb), *to work* (a prepositional phrase that modifies the verb), and *each day* (an adverbial phrase that also modifies the verb).

Modifiers

Modifiers are words, **phrases**, or even **clauses** that add descriptive meaning to another word; they are categorized as being either **adjectives** or **adverbs**.

Modifiers can appear anywhere in a sentence, and they can be a part of either the subject or the predicate. For example:

- "The **red** car went **too fast**."

In this sentence, we have three modifiers. The adjective *red* is modifying the noun *car* and is part of the subject. The adverb *too* is an **intensifier** modifying the adverb *fast*; together, they modify the verb *went* as an **adverbial phrase**.

The modifier *red* in this sentence is known as an **adjunct**, because it does not provide essential information to the sentence; if we were to remove it, the meaning would not change in any significant way.

The adverbial phrase *too fast*, on the other hand, is essential to the meaning of the sentence. Without the phrase, it would read "The red car went." This is still a complete sentence, but the intended meaning is completely changed. Modifiers that are necessary to the meaning of the sentence are known as **complements**, and they are always part of the **predicate**.

Phrases

Phrases are groups of two or more words that do not contain both a subject and a predicate. They are formed when a determiner, modifier, or complement is used to describe or complete the meaning of another word. It is also common for a phrase to be made up of smaller phrases. For example:

- "**The bright red car** is mine."

The subject *the bright red car* is all a single phrase. It is considered a **noun phrase** with the noun *car* at its root (sometimes referred to as the "head" noun). The phrase is also made up of the determiner *the* and the **adjective phrase** *bright red* (the adjective *red* plus its own modifier, the adverb *bright*).

Likewise, the predicate of the sentence, *is mine*, is a **verb phrase** made up of the verb *is* and the possessive pronoun *mine*.

Because phrases can be part of both the subject and the predicate, they are often a constituent part of **clauses**.

Clauses

All of the information contained in the subject and the predicate function together to form a **clause**. As such, all clauses are, by definition, a group of two or more words containing both a subject and a predicate. Depending on its structure, a clause can be either **dependent** or **independent**.

A **dependent clause** (also called a **subordinate clause**) is unable to stand on its own. It is marked by certain kinds words (commonly called **dependent words**) that connect it to an independent clause, which it relies on to have a complete, logical meaning.

Independent clauses, on the other hand, are able to function as sentences on their own. They do **not** depend on the information from other clauses to be considered complete.

Take these two examples:

- "when they were younger"
- "Mark and Betty often traveled together"

Both examples have a subject—*they* in the first example and *Mark and Betty* (a compound subject) in the second—and a predicate—*were younger* and *often traveled together*.

However, the first example is a dependent clause because of the word *when*. This **subordinating conjunction** tells the reader that more information is required for a complete thought.

The second example, on the other hand, is an independent clause—it has everything in it that the reader needs to know. We must always have at least **one** independent clause when we are forming a **sentence**.

Sentences

A **sentence** is considered the most complete unit of syntax in English. It is always made up of at least one independent clause, and, because of this, it always contains a subject and a predicate.

A sentence that only contains a single independent clause is known as a **simple sentence**, such as our example from earlier:

- “Mark and Betty often traveled together.”

We can also attach a dependent clause to the beginning or end of an independent clause to add more information or elaborate upon the meaning of the sentence. This forms what’s known as a **complex sentence**, as in:

- “**Mark and Betty often traveled together** *when they were younger*.” ***or:***
- “*When they were younger*, **Mark and Betty often traveled together**.”

It’s also common to join two or more independent clauses together, either by using a **coordinating conjunction** and a **comma**; a **conjunctive adverb**, a comma (usually), and a semicolon; or just a **semicolon**. These are known as **compound sentences**. For example:

- “**Mark and Betty often traveled together**, and **they have been to many different countries**.”
- “**Mark and Betty often traveled together**; as a result, **they have been to many different countries**.”
- “**Mark and Betty often traveled together**; **they have been to many different countries**.”

If we link a complex sentence to a simple sentence or another complex sentence, we form what’s called a **compound-complex sentence**:

- “**Mark and Betty often traveled together** ***when they were younger***, and **they have been to many different countries**.”

In addition to the four categories of structure (simple, compound, complex, and compound-complex), there are several categories of sentences based on their purpose. We’ll look at those more closely in the chapter on **Sentences**.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What is the function of **the subject** of a sentence?

a) To identify the person or thing performing an action
b) To describe an action that a person or thing performs
c) To identify the person or thing receiving the action of a verb
d) To describe another word in a sentence

2. Which of the following must a clause **always** contain?

a) A modifier
b) A subject
c) A predicate
d) A & C
e) B & C

3. True or false: Modifiers can only appear as part of the predicate.

a) True
b) False

4. Which of the following types of clauses can function alone as sentences?

a) Dependent clauses
b) Noun clauses
c) Independent clauses
d) Adverbial clauses

5. Which of the following types of sentences can be made of one independent clause and one dependent clause?

a) Simple sentences
b) Compound sentences
c) Complex sentences
d) Compound-complex sentences

Subjects and Predicates

Sentences must always include both a **subject** and a **predicate**.

The **subject** of a clause or sentence is the noun (a person, place, or thing) that performs, controls, or is responsible for the action of a verb.

The predicate is made up of at least one **finite verb**, the action of which is performed or controlled by the subject.

The Subject

The subject usually appears before its verb and is made up of at least one noun, any grammatical element functioning as a noun, or a pronoun standing in place of a noun.

For example:

Example sentence	Type of subject
"**Computers** can process numbers very quickly."	Noun
"**A boy I know** owns a motorcycle."	Noun phrase
"**Someone** ate my cake!"	Pronoun
"**Swimming** is great exercise."	Gerund

There are several other types of grammatical constructions that can be used as the subject of a sentence or clause, as well as instances in which the subject's position in relation to the verb changes. To learn more, continue on to the next section in this chapter, **The Subject**.

The Predicate

In addition to a **finite verb**, the predicate can also (but does not always) include **participles**, **objects**, **complements**, and **modifiers**. In most cases, the predicate comes after the subject in a sentence or clause, although some parts of the predicate (especially adverbial **modifiers**) can sometimes appear before the subject.

Here are some examples, with the predicate in **bold**:

Example sentence	Parts of the predicate
"I **refuse**."	• *refuse* — intransitive finite verb in the present simple tense
"My family **loves going to the beach each summer**."	• *loves* — transitive finite verb in the present simple tense • *going to the beach* — **gerund** phrase acting as the **direct object** of the verb *loves* • *each summer* — **adverbial phrase** modifying the verb phrase *loves going to the beach*

“**In school** we **are learning about the American Revolution**.”	• *in school* — adverbial prepositional phrase acting as a modifier of the **present participle** *learning* • *are* — finite auxiliary verb used with the **present participle** *learning* to create the **present continuous tense** • *learning* — **present participle** (a type of non-finite verb) used with the auxiliary finite verb *are* to form the **present continuous tense** • *about the American Revolution* — **prepositional phrase** functioning as the **direct object** of the **present participle** *learning*

To learn more about forming and identifying the predicate, as well as the various grammatical elements that can be included in it, go to the section in this chapter called **The Predicate**.

The Subject

Definition

The **subject** in a sentence or clause is the person or thing doing, performing, or controlling the action of the verb.

Every sentence requires a subject and a verb to be complete. Without a subject, we would have an action being done by no one or nothing—simply happening on its own, which cannot happen. (The only exception to this is in **imperative sentences**, in which the subject is implied, as in: “Do your homework!”)

Subject Forms

Only that which has the grammatical function of a **noun** can be the subject of a clause. This is because it is someone or something that is capable of performing or “controlling” the action of the verb. This function can be performed by each of the following:

- **nouns** – “**Computers** can process numbers very quickly.”
- **noun phrases** – “**A boy I know** owns a motorcycle.”
- **pronouns** – “**Someone** ate this cake!”
- **gerunds** – “**Swimming** is great exercise.”

- **gerund phrases** – “**Traveling the world** has been my lifelong dream.”
- **infinitives** – “**To err** is human; **to forgive** is divine.”
- **infinitive phrases** – “**To fall in love** can be both wonderful and tragic.”
- **noun clauses** – “**Whoever knows the truth** should come forward.”
- **dummy pronouns** – “**There** is nothing we can do for him now.”

Subject Positions

As we can see in the above examples, the subject most typically occurs at or near the beginning of a clause, preceding the main verb that describes the action of the clause (known as the **finite verb**).

Auxiliary questions

When **auxiliary verbs** are used to make questions (**interrogative sentences**) without question words, then the subject comes between the auxiliary verb and the main verb. For example:

• “Is **hiking** your favorite activity?”

• “Did **Mary** come by yesterday?”

• “Have **you** heard this song before?”

Passive voice

The examples we’ve seen so far have been of sentences in the **active voice**, meaning the subject of a clause or sentence is also the agent of the verb’s action.

Sentences in the **passive voice**, however, create a bit of confusion. Structurally, the object of the verb’s action becomes the grammatical subject of the clause, while the “proper” subject (the agent of the action) becomes modifying information. For example:

• “**Jack** is reading the book.” (active voice)

• “The book is being read by **Jack**.” (passive voice)

In the first sentence, *Jack* is both the subject of the sentence and the agent of the verb *is reading*.

In the second sentence, though, *the book* is now the subject of the sentence. The agent of the verb's action, *Jack*, becomes the object of the prepositional phrase *by Jack*, which modifies the verb *is being read*.

Subject-Verb Agreement

Subject-verb agreement refers to using certain conjugations of verbs with singular subjects and different conjugations with plural subjects. This happens most noticeably with the verb *to be*, which becomes *is* or *was* with singular subject nouns and *are* or *were* with plural subjects.

For example:

- "My **brother *is*** back from college." (singular present simple tense)
- "The **company *was*** in financial trouble." (singular past simple tense)

- "Many **people *are*** frustrated with the government." (plural present simple tense)
- "The **computers *were*** rather old." (plural past simple tense)

For any other verb, we only need to make a change if it is in the **present simple tense**. For most verbs, this is accomplished by adding an "-s" to the end if it is singular and leaving it in its base form if it is plural. For example:

- "My **father *runs*** his own business." (singular)
- "But his **sons *run*** it when he's away." (plural)

- "The **dog *wags*** his tail when he is happy." (singular)
- "**Dogs** sometimes ***wag*** their tails when they're angry or scared." (plural)

The verbs *have* and *do* also only conjugate for singular subjects in the present simple tense, but they have irregular forms for this: *has* and *does*. For example:

- "The **apple *has*** a mark on it." (singular)
- "All the **apples *have*** marks on them." (plural)
- "My **teacher *does*** not think it's a good idea." (singular)
- "The other **teachers *do*** not mind, though." (plural)

Finally, the modal **auxiliary verbs** (*will, would, shall, should, can, could, might, must,* and *ought to*) do **not** conjugate for singular or plural subjects—they always remain the same. For instance:

- "This **phone *can*** also surf the Internet!" (singular)
- "Most **phones *can*** do that now." (plural)

- "The **president *will*** arrive in Malta next week." (singular)
- "The other **diplomats *will*** arrive shortly after that." (plural)

Subject Pronouns

Pronouns stand in for a person or thing we are speaking about or referring to; they are used to avoid repetition in speech or writing. The **personal pronouns** in the **subjective case**—*I, you, he, she, it, we,* and *they*—can act as substitutes for the subject of the clause or sentence. In this instance, they are known as **subject pronouns**. For example:

- “John is running late, but **he** is almost ready.” (The pronoun *he,* replaces the noun *John* in the clause *he is almost ready*.)

- “The book is on the table. **It** is just over there.” (*The book* is a non-person noun, so it can be substituted with the pronoun *it* in subsequent clauses or sentences.)

The question words *who* and *what* can also act as subject pronouns of the sentence or clause. For example:

- “**Who** is going to the party later?”

- “**What** just happened?”

(These form what are known as **subject questions**; we’ll look at these a little more in depth later on.)

Other pronouns

There are other pronouns in English that can act as the subjects of clauses or sentences. **Indefinite pronouns**, for example, are used in place of nouns without specifying a particular person or thing that is being represented, as in:

- “**Everyone** is waiting for the party to begin.” (The action of *waiting* is being done by *everyone*.”

- “I have five teachers, but only **one** is writing me a recommendation.” (The action of *writing* is being done by *one*.)

- “**Nobody** told me about this.” (The action of *told* was done by *nobody*.)

Common Subject Errors

Because the subject can be so widely varied in English, a number of errors can arise about how to correctly use (or not use) a subject in a sentence. Let’s look at some common errors that occur.

Subject-Verb Agreement Errors

Unfortunately, there are many opportunities for confusion as to when to omit the "-s" when conjugating a verb for subject-verb agreement. Remember: we only need the "-s" when using the present simple tense in affirmative (non-negative) sentences, and when using subjects that are in the third person.

For example:

First person:

✖ "**I** ***lives*** in Paris." (incorrect)
✔ "**I** ***live*** in Paris." (correct)

Second person:

✖ "**You** ***lives*** in Paris." (incorrect)
✔ "**You** ***live*** in Paris." (correct)

Third person:

✖ "**He** ***live*** in Paris." (incorrect)
✔ "**He** ***lives*** in Paris." (correct)

Irregular plurals

Here are some other examples of subject-verb errors with third-person singular and third-person plural:

✖ "**People** ***lives*** here." (incorrect)
✔ "**People** ***live*** here." (correct)

✖ "**The children** ***is playing*** outside." (incorrect)
✔ "**The children** ***are playing*** outside." (correct)

A person (singular) *lives*, while people (plural) *live*; a child (singular) *is playing*, while children (plural) *are playing*. We can have "one *person*" or "one *child*," but we have "two/three/10/many *people* or *children*."

These are known as **irregular plurals** because they do not follow the normal rule of making a noun plural by adding an "-s" or "-es" to the end. Nevertheless, they still require the correct third-person verb conjugations, as with any other noun.

(See the chapter on **Plurals** to learn more about the spelling rules for regular and irregular plurals.)

Indefinite pronouns

Indefinite pronouns can sometimes cause confusion because many seem to be referring to a group of people or things, and so should take third-person plural verbs, when in fact they require third-person singular verbs. For example:

✖ “**Everyone *have*** a television.” (incorrect)
✔ “**Everyone *has*** a television.” (correct)

The indefinite pronoun *everyone* refers to “each single person.” It does not refer to a group, but instead to separate individuals, so it therefore requires a third-person **singular** verb. Other examples that take third-person singular verbs include *no one/nobody, someone/somebody*, and *anyone/anybody*.

Other indefinite pronouns use qualifying information that can make subject-verb agreement confusing. For example:

✖ “**One of my students *have* gone** to England.” (incorrect)
✔ “**One of my students *has* gone** to England.” (correct)

In instances like this, the auxiliary verb *have* should be conjugated with the indefinite pronoun *one* (singular) instead of *students* (plural)—*one* is functioning as the subject of the sentence, while *of my students* is an adjectival prepositional phrase that describes it. Here’s a similar example:

✖ “**Each person *study*** individually.” (incorrect)
✔ “**Each person *studies*** individually.” (correct)

Because *each* is paired with the word *person*, which it modifies, it implies a group of people. However, like *one*, this subject has to take a third-person singular verb.

Double Subject Error

We must be careful to avoid using a pronoun as a “double” subject in the same clause—we only use a pronoun as a subject when it refers to the subject in a different clause.

For example:

✖ “*My brother* **he** speaks English.” (incorrect)
✔ “*My brother* speaks English.” (correct)
✔ “*He* speaks English.” (correct)

✖ “*My country* **it** is very beautiful.” (incorrect)

✔ “*My country* is very beautiful.” (correct)
✔ “*It* is very beautiful.” (correct)

✖ “**This** my car cost me a lot of money.” (incorrect)
✔ “*My car* cost me a lot of money.” (correct)
✔ “*This* cost me a lot of money.” (correct)

Omission of the subject

We occasionally use what’s known as a “ **dummy pronoun**” to function as a subject in a clause. The two dummy pronouns in English are *there* and *it*, and they do not have antecedents the way proper pronouns do. Because they don’t refer to a concrete element semantically, it can seem like they should be omitted in certain circumstances, but we must be careful to always include them where necessary. For example:

✖ “I think is going to rain.” (incorrect)
✔ “I think **it** is going to rain.” (correct)

In the first example, there is no subject before *is*. We always need a subject before the verb. When we talk about the weather, time, speed, distance, or things, we use the dummy pronoun *it* as the subject of the clause.

Here is another example of this kind of error:

✖ “Is anything I can help you with?” (incorrect)
✔ “Is **there** anything I can help you with?” (correct)

In the first example, we do not know **what** the speaker wants to help with, because there is no subject. In this case, we use *there* as the subject to make the sentence complete.

Subject before auxiliary verbs in questions

When we form questions, the subject of the sentence still comes before the main verb. However, if an auxiliary verb is being used to create the question, it’s also important to remember that the subject comes after the auxiliary verb. For instance:

✖ “Where *does work **Mary***?” (incorrect)
✖ “Where ***Mary** does work*?” (incorrect)
✔ “Where *does **Mary** work*?” (correct)

✖ “***You*** *do speak* English?” (incorrect)
✔ “*Do* ***you*** *speak* English?” (correct)

Subject Question Error

In a “**subject question**,” in which the subject is implied by the question, we do **not** usually add the auxiliary verb *do* in the same way as in normal questions. For instance:

- “**What *did* happen** last night?” (less common; only used for emphasis when trying to determine what did happen vs. what did not happen)
- “**What happened** last night?” (much more common)

Since the subject is already in the question, we do not have to use an auxiliary verb.

When we use a subject question in the past simple tense, the verb needs to be used in the past tense too. This is because the auxiliary verb *did*, the past tense of *do*, is absent.

Normal Questions vs. Subject Questions

To better understand this, let’s look at a comparison between a normal question and a **subject question**.

First, let’s look at two statements:

A) I saw Mary.

B) Anne saw me.

If we were asking a question to which sentence A was the answer, it would be a normal question:

- “Who **did** you see?”
- “I saw Mary.”

The subject in the normal question, *you*, corresponds to the subject in the answer, *I*. Since this is a normal question, we use the auxiliary verb, *did*, to form the past tense of the main verb, *see*.

If we were asking a question to which sentence B was the answer, it would be a subject question:

- “Who saw you?”

- “Anne saw me.”

Here, *who*, the question word, is what corresponds to the subject in the response, *Anne*. *You* is the direct object of the verb *saw*, which is put in the past tense because we do not use the auxiliary verb *did*; it corresponds to *me* in the response, which is also the direct object of *saw*.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Where is the subject **usually** placed in a clause?

a) Before an adjective
b) After an adjective
c) Before the main verb
d) After the main verb

2. When does a third-person verb conjugate differently to accommodate the subject?

a) When the subject is singular, in the present simple tense
b) When the subject is plural, in the present simple tense
c) When the subject is singular, in the past simple tense
d) When the subject is plural, in the past simple tense

3. What role does the subject have in a clause or sentence that’s in the **active voice**?

a) It is the person or thing that receives the action of the verb
b) It is the person or thing that does or performs the action of the verb
c) It modifies or describes the action of the verb
d) It modifies or describes the person or thing performs the action of the verb

4. What role does the subject have in a clause or sentence that’s in the **passive voice**?

a) It is the person or thing that receives the action of the verb
b) It is the person or thing that does or performs the action of the verb
c) It modifies or describes the action of the verb
d) It modifies or describes the person or thing performs the action of the verb

5. Which of the following has a clause with a subject that is a **gerund phrase**?

a) “John is swimming on Saturday, which I’m excited to see.”
b) “A lot of people I know are coming to the party.”
c) “Reading by candlelight is thought to be bad for your eyes.”
d) “Seeing eye dogs provide an invaluable service.”

6. Which of the following has a clause with a subject that is a **pronoun**?

a) “Cell phones are way too advanced these days.”
b) “Wherever she lives is where I’m destined to be.”
c) “Several eyewitnesses have placed the suspect at the scene of the crime.”
d) “Everyone is being caught off guard by this new law.”

The Predicate

Definition

Sentences must always include both a **subject** and a **predicate**.

The subject is the noun (a person, place, or thing) that performs, controls, or is responsible for the action of the verb.

The predicate is, essentially, everything in the sentences that follows the subject. It is made up of at least one **finite verb**, the action of which is performed by the subject. In addition, the predicate may (but does not always) include:

- **Participles**, which are used to form the **perfect** and **continuous tenses**;
- Direct and indirect **objects** (if the verb is **transitive**);
- Other **complements** (which include **object complements**, **adjective complements**, and **subject complements**); and
- **Modifiers** (if they are not a part of the subject).

First, let’s look at how we can identify the predicate in a clause or sentence. Later on, we will look more closely at the various parts of the predicate.

Identifying the predicate

In most cases, the predicate comes after the subject in a sentence or clause. It’s possible in simple sentences to have only a subject followed by a **finite verb** (a verb that has a relationship with subject and can **inflect** for grammatical tense). For example:

- “*I* **refuse**.”
- “*Dogs* **bark**.”
- “*Bees* **sting**.”
- “*Cats* **meow**.”

In the above examples, the subject (in *italics*) begins the sentences and the predicate (in **bold**) ends them. The predicate, made up of just an **intransitive** verb in the **present simple tense**, contains all the necessary information about the subject to be logical; therefore, each example is considered an independent clause and is a complete sentence.

However, it is much more common for the predicate to contain much more information than just a verb. Let’s look at an example of a sentence with a more complex predicate:

Example sentence	Parts of the predicate
“*My family* **loves going to the beach each summer**.”	• *loves* — transitive finite verb in the present simple tense • *going to the beach* — **gerund** phrase acting as the **direct object** of the verb *loves* • *each summer* — **adverbial phrase** modifying the verb phrase *loves going to the beach*

Because every element after the subject *my family* is related to the verb *loves*, the entire phrase *loves going to the beach each summer* is considered the predicate.

Note that **adverbs** (which can be single words, **adverbial phrases**, or even **adverbial clauses**) that modify elements of the predicate do not always appear after the subject. It’s quite common for certain adverbs to appear at the beginning of a sentence to add emphasis to the information. For example:

Example sentence	Parts of the predicate
“**In school** *we* **are learning about the American**	• *in school* — adverbial prepositional phrase acting as a modifier of the **present participle** *learning* • *are* — finite auxiliary verb used with the **present participle** *learning* to create the **present continuous tense** • *learning* — **present participle** (a type of non-

Revolution.”	finite verb) used with the auxiliary finite verb *are* to form the **present continuous tense** • *about the American Revolution* — **prepositional phrase** functioning as the **direct object** of the **present participle** *learning*

Notice that the adverbial prepositional phrase *in school* is still part of the predicate, even though it appears at the beginning of the sentence before the subject. This is because it modifies the participle *learning*, which is part of the predicate.

Compound predicates

The subject of a clause or sentence must always be performing at least one action, but there are many instances in which it performs more than one action. In such a case, in which the subject is related to two or more finite verbs, the sentence is said to have a **compound predicate**; a predicate composed of one verb is sometimes known as a **simple predicate**.

We usually use **coordinating conjunctions** to link the verbs in a compound predicate. If there are more than two predicate elements, we separate them with commas and use a conjunction before the final one.

For example:

Example sentence	Parts of the compound predicate
“*I* **live in New Jersey but work in New York City**.”	1. *live in New Jersey* 2. *work in New York City* Connected by the coordinating conjunction *but*. They both have the same subject—*I*.
	1. *teaches in the morning* 2. *volunteers in the*

“*My friend Daniel* **teaches in the morning, volunteers in the afternoon, and plays volleyball in the evening**."	*afternoon* 3. *plays volleyball in the evening* Connected by commas and the coordinating conjunction *and*. They all have the same subject—*my friend Daniel*.

Compound subjects

Just as the same subject may have multiple compound predicates, the same predicate may have multiple compound subjects. In the same way, we join multiple subjects with coordinating conjunctions and (if there are more than two subjects) commas. For example:

- “*My brother and I* **go fishing on the weekends**.”
- “*John, Mary, and Joe* **went to school together**.”

Compound predicates vs. compound sentences

It’s important to distinguish a compound predicate from a **compound sentence**. A compound sentences is made up of two independent clauses connected by a coordinating conjunction; each clause has its own subject. Even if the subjects relate to the same person or thing, there is a *different* predicate for each subject.

For example:

- “*John* **studies at Harvard**, but *he* **also works as a mechanic on the weekend**.”

This is a **compound sentence**, which has two independent clauses with two subjects: *John* and *he*. Even though they talk about the same person, each subject has its own unique predicate—it is **not** a compound predicate or a compound subject.

Complex sentences

Complex sentences are composed of an independent clause and one or more **dependent clauses**. Each clause in a complex sentence has a subject, and, again, each subject has its own predicate. For instance:

- “**When** *my father* **is home on the weekends**, *the whole family* **always goes to a movie together**.”

The dependent clause has the subject *my father*, and the predicate is *is home on the weekends*. The dependent clause is linked to the independent clause by the subordinating conjunction *when*, which can also be considered part of the dependent clause’s predicate. The subject of the independent clause is *the whole family*, and the predicate is *always goes to a movie together*.

Sentences can become increasingly complex, with multiple independent clauses and multiple dependent clauses. Just remember that for every clause with its own subject, there must be at least one corresponding predicate as well.

Parts of the predicate

We’ve seen where to look to identify the predicate in a sentence. Now let’s look more closely at the different elements that can be a **part** of the predicate.

Finite vs. Non-finite Verbs

When we are identifying the predicate in a sentence, we usually look for the **finite verb** that acts as the root of the sentence. The only verbs that can be considered finite are verbs in their base form (the infinitive form without the particle *to*), verbs in their past-tense form, or verbs inflected for the **third-person singular**. (The verb *be*, unique among verbs, also has unique forms to reflect **plurality** (multiple subjects), as well as **first-person** vs. **second and third person**.)

Let’s look at the last example from above:

- “**In school** *we* **are learning about the American Revolution**.”

The sentence uses the present continuous verb *are learning*. This largely functions as a single unit, with *learning* carrying the most meaning in the sentence. However, *learning* is a present participle, which is considered a **non-finite verb**; the finite verb of the sentence is actually just the **auxiliary verb** *are*. It is an inflection of the verb *be* that denotes a **first person plural** subject (*we*).

Verb forms that are never considered to be finite verbs in a sentence are **gerunds**, **infinitives**, and **participles** (both past and present). Here are a few example sentences to illustrate the difference, with finite verbs in **bold** and non-finite verbs in *italics*:

Example sentence	Finite vs. non-finite verbs
"We **hate** *working* on the farm."	Finite verb: *hate* (present simple tense, first-person plural) Non-finite verb: *working* (gerund)
"John **ran** quickly *to catch* his bus."	Finite verb: *ran* (past simple tense, third-person singular) Non-finite verb: *to catch* (infinitive)
"Susy **lives** in New York City."	Finite verb: *lives* (present simple tense, third-person singular) Non-finite verb: none
"They **were** *being* very difficult."	Finite verb: *were* (past simple tense, third-person plural) Non-finite verb: *being* (present participle)
"We **have** *seen* that movie already."	Finite verb: *have* (present simple tense, first-person plural) Non-finite verb: *seen* (past participle)

Note that gerunds and infinitives are able to function as nouns, so it is possible for them to be **the subject** of a clause rather than part of the predicate. If they appear before the finite verb in a sentence, they are usually acting as the subject. For example:

- "*Working all week* **makes** me so tired."
- "*To err* **is** human."

To learn more about the differences between these two classes of verbs, go to the section **Finite and Non-finite Verbs** in the chapter dealing with **Verbs**.

Objects of verbs

Grammatical **objects** are nouns or pronouns that complete the meaning of verbs or prepositions. The objects of verbs tell us who or what is receiving the action of the verb. They are technically a kind of **complement** (sometimes known as a **verb complement**); however, because they are often so important to the structure of the predicate, they are usually described as a unique, separate part of it.

The object of a verb can either be a **direct object**, meaning it directly receives the action of the verb, or it can be an **indirect object**, meaning it receives the *direct object* of the verb.

Note that only **transitive verbs** take objects.

Direct objects

Direct objects are directly affected by the verbs they complete—that is, the verb's action is happening directly to them. For example:

- "The dog chased **its tail**." (The object *its tail* is receiving the action of the verb *chase*.)

- "Mary reads **a new book** every week." (The object *a new book* is receiving the action of the verb *read*.)

- "I asked **Jonathan** on a date." (The object *Jonathan* is receiving the action of the verb *asked*.)

Indirect objects

An **indirect object**, on the other hand, is the person or thing who receives the direct object of the verb. Indirect objects appear directly between the verb and its direct object.

For example:

- "Please pass **me** *the salt*." (The pronoun *me* is receiving the direct object *the salt*, which receives the action of the verb *pass*.)

- "I sent **the company** *an application* for the job." (The **noun phrase** *the company* is receiving the direct object *an application*, which receives the action of the verb *sent*.)

Complements

Complements are words or groups of words that are necessary to complete the meaning of another part of the sentence. Unlike **modifiers**, they do not add *supplemental* information—they provide information that is necessary to achieve the intended meaning in the sentence.

In addition to **objects**, there are four other types of complements: **object complements**, **adjective complements**, **adverbial complements**, and **subject complements**. We'll look at some examples of each below, but to learn more about them, continue on to the section covering **Complements**.

Object Complements

An **object complement** is a word or group of words that describes, renames, or completes the direct object of the verb. It can be a noun, adjective, relative clause, infinitive, or gerund.

For example:

- "The committee elected *him* **treasurer**." (The noun *treasurer* renames the object *him*.)
- "All he wanted was to make *his husband* **happy**." (The adjective *happy* describes the object *his husband*.)
- "Do you know *someone* **who can work the printer**?" (The relative clause *who can work the printer* describes the object *someone*.)
- "I didn't expect *you* **to approve**." (The infinitive *to approve* describes a potential action of the object *you*.)
- "We came across *him* **lying in the yard**." (The gerund phrase *lying in the yard* describes the action of the object *him*.)

Adjective Complements

An **adjective complement** is a phrase or clause that provides information necessary to complete an adjective's meaning. Adjective complements almost always appear with **predicative adjectives** (adjectives that appear after linking verbs) and can be **prepositional phrases**, **infinitives** and infinitive phrases, or **noun clauses**.

For example:

- “I am perfectly *content* **on my own**.” (The prepositional phrase *on my own* completes the meaning of the adjective *content*.)
- “We’re just *glad* **to be of service**.” (The infinitive phrase *to be of service* completes the meaning of the adjective *glad*.)
- “We were a little *curious* **why they decided to leave**.” (The noun clause *why they decided to leave* completes the meaning of the adjective *curious*.)

Adverbial Complements

Adverbial complements are adverbs or adverbial elements that are required to complete the meaning of the verb. They always appear after the verb they complement.

For example:

- “The teacher *sent* Tim **home**.” (The **adverbial noun** *home* completes the meaning of the verb *sent*.)
- “Please *put* the book **on the shelf**.” (The adverbial prepositional phrase *on the shelf* completes the meaning of the verb *put*.)

Subject Complements

A **subject complement** is the information that follows a **linking verb** to describe, identify, or rename the subject of the clause. Subject complements can be nouns, pronouns, or adjectives.

Even though they modify the subject, they are dependent on the verb of the clause and thus are part of the predicate.

For example:

- “*Love* is **a virtue**.” (The noun phrase *a virtue* renames the subject *love*.)
- “Her husband took all the credit, but *it* was **she** who did all the work.” (The pronoun *she* re-identifies the subject *it*.)
- “*You* look **nice**.” (The adjective *nice* describes the subject *you*.)

Modifiers

Modifiers are adjectives and adverbs that describe (modify) another part of the sentence. They can appear as part of either the subject or the predicate, depending on what they are modifying.

Both adjectives and adverbs can be made into phrases and clauses, which function as a whole unit to modify a word (or group of words).

Below, we'll look at some examples of modifiers functioning as part of the predicate (the predicate will be in *italics*, while the modifier will be in **bold**). Go to the section **Modifiers** to learn more about them.

Example sentence	Modifiers	What they modify
"Jonathan ***always*** *brings his* ***favorite*** *toy* ***to school***."	1. *always* — adverb 2. *favorite* — adjective 3. *to school* — adverbial prepositional phrase	1. The verb *brings* 2. The noun *toy* 3. The verb *brings*
"I *work* ***in a restaurant that is often busy***."	1. *in a restaurant* — adverbial prepositional phrase 2. *often* — adverb 3. *often busy* — predicative adjective phrase 4. *that is often busy* — relative clause (also called an adjective clause)	1. The verb *work* 2. The adjective *busy* 3. The subject pronoun *that* 4. The noun *restaurant*
"We *took the* ***bright orange*** *painting* ***in the living room off the wall***."	1. *bright* — adverb 2. *bright orange* — adjective phrase 3. *in the living room* — adjectival prepositional phrase 4. *off the wall* — adverbial prepositional phrase	1. The adjective *orange* 2. The noun *painting* 3. The noun *painting*

		4. The verb *took*

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Where does the predicate **usually** appear in a sentence?

a) Before the subject
b) After the subject
c) After the subject complement
d) A & C
e) B & C

2. What must the predicate **always** contain?

a) A finite verb
b) A non-finite verb
c) A direct object
d) A subject complement

3. Which of the following is used to create a **compound predicate**?

a) A coordinating conjunction
b) A subordinating conjunction
c) Commas
d) A & C
e) B & C

4. Identify the predicate in the following sentence:
"My sister and my brother both like to read."

a) My sister and my brother
b) both like to read
c) like to read
d) to read

5. Identify the **finite verb** in the following sentence:
"I have been working a lot lately."

a) have

b) been
c) working
d) have been working

6. Which part of the predicate tells us who or what is **receiving** the action of the verb?
a) Verbs
b) Object complements
c) Objects
d) Modifiers

7. Which part of the predicate **completes the meaning** of another part of the sentence?
a) Verbs
b) Complements
c) Objects
d) Modifiers

Complements

Definition

Complements are words or groups of words that are necessary to complete the meaning of another part of the sentence. Complements act like **modifiers** to add additional meaning to the word or words they are attached to. However, unlike **adjunct modifiers**, they do not add *supplemental* information—they provide information that is necessary to achieve the intended meaning in the sentence.

Complements, even those that complete the meaning of the subject, are always part of **the predicate**.

Types of Complements

There are five main categories of complements: **objects**, **object complements**, **adjective complements**, **adverbial complements**, and **subject complements**. We’ll briefly look at each below. To learn more about them, continue on to their individual sections.

Objects

Grammatical **objects** are nouns or pronouns that complete the meaning of **verbs** and **prepositions**. Depending on what they complete, objects are also sometimes known as either **verb complements** or **prepositional complements**.

There are three types of objects: **direct objects**, **indirect objects**, and **objects of prepositions**.

Direct objects

Direct objects are directly affected by verbs they complete—that is, the verb's action is happening directly to them. For example:

- "The dog *chased* **its tail**."
- "Mary *reads* **a new book** every week."

Indirect objects

An **indirect object** is the person or thing who receives the direct object of the verb.

For example:

- "Please pass **me** *the salt*."
- "I sent **the company** *an application* for the job."

Objects of prepositions

Prepositions also take objects, connecting them back to another element of the sentence to elaborate on its meaning. Together, the preposition and its object form a **prepositional phrase**. For example:

- "Your backpack is *under* **the table**."
- "I got a ticket *for* **speeding**."

Object Complements

An **object complement** is a word or group of words that describes, renames, or completes the meaning of the direct object of a verb. It can be a noun, adjective, relative clause, infinitive, gerund, or a phrase made from any one of them.

Nouns and noun phrases

When we use nouns as object complements, they serve to rename or re-identify the object of **factitive verbs**. For example:

- “The committee elected *him* **treasurer**.”
- “Mrs. Fields named *her late husband* **the executor of her estate**.”

Adjectives and adjective phrases

Adjectives that function as object complements serve to describe or modify the direct object. Like all object complements, adjectives must follow the direct object they are describing. If they come before it, they are simply acting as **attributive adjectives**, which are not necessary to complete the meaning of the sentence.

- “All he wanted was to make *his husband* **happy**.”
- “The excitement of the day got *the kids* **way too hyper**.”

Relative clauses

Relative clauses are dependent clauses that are introduced by **relative pronouns**. Like adjectives, relative clauses serve to describe the object that they follow; for this reason, they are often called **adjective clauses**.

For example:

- “Do you know *someone* **who can work the printer**?”
- “I hate *the color* **that they painted this room**.”

Infinitives and infinitive phrases

An infinitive or infinitive phrase acts as an object complement by describing the intended or desired action of the direct object. For example:

- “I didn’t expect *you* **to approve**.”
- “She’s forcing *me* **to work this the weekend**.”

Gerunds and gerund phrases

Gerunds generally function as object complements by describing what the direct object is or was doing (as opposed to infinitives, which describe an act that has not yet been done).

For example:

- “We came across *him* **lying in the yard**.”
- “My mother noticed *the baby* **walking by himself**.”

Adjective Complements

An **adjective complement** (also called an **adjective phrase complement**) is a phrase or clause that provides information necessary to complete an adjective’s meaning. Adjective complements can be **prepositional phrases**, **infinitives** and infinitive phrases, or **noun clauses**.

Prepositional Phrases

Prepositional phrases describe the relationship between the adjectives they complement and the objects of their prepositions.

- “I am perfectly *content* **on my own**.”
- “He felt *alone* **in the world**.”

Infinitives and infinitive phrases

Infinitives and infinitive phrases describe actions that result from or lead to the adjective they complement.

For example:

- “I’m very *happy* **to know you**!”
- “We’re just *glad* **to be of service**.”

Noun Clauses

A **noun clause** is a dependent clause that is able to function grammatically like a noun. It connects the adjective’s meaning to an action by a secondary subject.

- “We were a little *curious* **why they decided to leave**.”
- “I’m *thrilled* **that you are coming to visit**!”

Adverbial Complements

Adverbial complements are adverbs or **adverbial elements** in a clause that are required to complete the meaning of the verb.

Adverbial complements usually describe *location or direction*, and most frequently occur with verbs that indicate *motion*. They always appear after the verb they complement.

If the verb is **intransitive**, the complement will appear directly after the verb; if the verb is **transitive**, the complement will appear after the verb's **direct object**.

For example:

- "The teacher sent Tim **home**."
- "Please put the book **on the shelf**."

Subject Complements

A **subject complement** is the information that follows a **linking verb** to describe, identify, or rename the subject of the clause. A subject complement can either be a predicate noun, a predicate pronoun, or a **predicative adjective**.

Predicate nouns

Predicate nouns serve to rename or re-identify the subject after a linking verb. If the noun is accompanied by any direct modifiers (such as **determiners**, **adjectives**, or **prepositional phrases**), the entire noun phrase acts predicatively.

For example:

- "*Love* is **a virtue**."
- "*Tommy* seems like **a real bully**."

Predicate pronouns

We can also use a **predicate pronoun** after a linking verb to re-identify the subject. This is most common in questions and responses in which the identity of the subject is not known or is being explained. For example:

- Question: "*Who* is **it**?"
- Answer: "*It*'s **me**!"

We can also use predicate pronouns in declarative statements, but this is less common in everyday speech and writing. For instance:

- "*It* was **I** who did this."

- “Her husband took all the credit, but *it* was **she** who did all the work.”

Predicative Adjectives

A **predicative adjective** is an adjective used after a linking verb to describe or modify the subject of the clause. For example:

- “*You* look **nice**.”

- “*He* is very **handsome**.”

When a prepositional phrase follows a linking verb (especially the verb *be*), it functions in the same way as a **predicative adjective** to describe the subject. For example:

- “*The cat* is **in the shed**.” (The prepositional phrase *in the shed* is describing the subject *the cat*.)

- “*I* am **across the street**.” (The prepositional phrase *across the street* is describing the subject *I*.)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What kind of complement is used to create a **prepositional phrase**?

a) Object
b) Object complement
c) Adjective complement
d) Adverbial complement
e) Subject complement

2. What kind of complement is used to complete an adjective’s meaning?

a) Object
b) Object complement
c) Adjective complement
d) Adverbial complement
e) Subject complement

3. Which of the following sentences uses a **subject complement**?

a) “We left school early.”
b) “Your future is what you make it.”
c) “I’m a bit anxious about the test tomorrow.”

d) “I want you to work a little harder.”

4. Which of the following sentences uses an **object complement**?
a) “We left school early.”
b) “Your future is what you make it.”
c) “I’m a bit anxious about the test tomorrow.”
d) “I want you to work a little harder.”

5. Identify the **adverbial complement** in the following sentence:
“I have been living in Ireland for six years.”
a) I have
b) been living
c) in Ireland
d) for six years

Objects

Definition

Grammatical **objects** are nouns or pronouns that complete the meaning of **verbs** and **prepositions**. Additionally, almost any group of words that functions as a noun can be an object, such as **noun phrases**, **noun clauses**, **gerunds**, and **infinitives**.

Objects of verbs

The objects of verbs relay information about who or what is receiving the action of the verb. The object of a verb can either be a **direct object**, meaning it directly receives the action of the verb, or it can be an **indirect object**, meaning it receives the *direct object* of the verb.

Note that only **transitive verbs** take objects.

Direct objects

Direct objects are directly affected by the verbs they complete—that is, the verb’s action is happening directly to them. For example:

- “The dog chased **its tail**.” (The object *its tail* is receiving the action of the verb *chase*.)

- “Mary reads **a new book** every week.” (The object *a new book* is receiving the action of the verb *read*.)
- “I asked **Jonathan** on a date.” (The object *Jonathan* is receiving the action of the verb *asked*.)

We can identify the direct object by asking the question *Whom?* or *What?* about the verb. The part of the sentence that answers that question is the direct object.

“The dog chased its tail.”	**“Mary reads a new book every week.”**	**“I asked Jonathan on a date.”**
Question: The dog chased *what?*	Question: Mary reads *what?*	Question: I asked *whom?*
Answer: **its tail**	Answer: **a new book**	Answer: **Jonathan**

Indirect objects

An **indirect object** is the person or thing who receives the direct object of the verb. He, she, or it is still affected by the action of the verb, but now this happens *indirectly*. Indirect objects appear directly between the verb and its direct object.

For example:

- “Please pass **me** *the salt*.” (The pronoun *me* is receiving the direct object *the salt*, which receives the action of the verb *pass*.)
- “I sent **the company** *an application* for the job.” (The **noun phrase** *the company* is receiving the direct object *an application*, which receives the action of the verb *sent*.)

Only verbs that express an action being **relayed to** or **done for** another person or thing can take indirect objects. These are called **ditransitive verbs**. (Those that can only take direct objects are called **monotransitive verbs**.)

Indirect objects as prepositional phrases

The indirect object comes immediately before the direct object in a sentence, as we saw above. However, we can also communicate the same information by placing the indirect object after the direct object in a prepositional phrase using *to* or *for*. We can do this with any indirect object, but it is often preferable when the indirect object is particularly long. For instance:

Indirect Object	Prepositional Phrase
"I sent **my brother** *a letter*."	"I sent *a letter* **to my brother**."
"My father baked **our class** *a batch of cupcakes*."	"My father baked *a batch of cupcakes* **for our class**."
"She teaches **many different students** *mathematics*."	She teaches *mathematics* **to many different students**."

Objects of prepositions

Prepositions also take objects, which work together to create **prepositional phrases**. Generally, a preposition is directly followed by its object. For example:

- "I am looking for **work**." (The noun *work* is the object of the preposition *for*, which creates the prepositional phrase *for work*.)
- "Your backpack is under **the table**." (The **noun phrase** *the table* is the object of the preposition *under*, which creates the prepositional phrase *under the table*.)
- "I got a ticket for **speeding**." (The **gerund** *speeding* is the object of the preposition *for*, which creates the prepositional phrase *for speeding*.)
- "She can study with **whomever she likes**." (The **noun clause** *whomever she likes* is the object of the preposition *with*, which creates the prepositional phrase *with whomever she likes*.)

The Objective Case

We largely do not **inflect** (change the form of) words to reflect whether they are acting as subjects or objects in a sentence. **Personal pronouns**, however, still have a unique form in the **objective case** when they act as objects of verbs or prepositions.

In addition, the pronouns *who* and *whoever* change in the objective case, becoming *whom* and *whomever*; however, this distinction is becoming less common, with *who* and *whoever* being used in most instances in modern English.

The table below gives a quick breakdown of these different cases and how they are used in a sentence. Notice that the pronouns *you* and *it* are the same for both cases.

Subjective Case	Example sentence	Objective Case	Example Sentence
I	“**I** read a great book recently.”	**Me**	“Jeff told **me** about a great book.”
We	“**We** went out for ice cream.”	**Us**	“Mom took **us** out for ice cream.”
You	“**You** said the project was finished!”	**You**	“I told **you** it would be finished next week!”
He	“**He** left for practice already.”	**Him**	“I'm waiting for **him** to return from practice.”
She	“**She** is writing a play.”	**Her**	“The play was written by **her**.”
It	“**It** might rain today.”	**It**	“I want **it** to stop snowing.”
They	“**They** won't like this.”	**Them**	“I asked **them** a week ago.”
Who	“**Who** told you about our plan?”	**Whom**	“**Whom** have you told about our plan?”
Whoever	“**Whoever** broke this vase is in deep trouble!”	**Whom**	“Study with **whomever** you like.”

(To learn more about grammatical case, go to the section on **Personal Pronouns - Case**.)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following **cannot** function as objects in a sentence?

a) Noun phrases
b) Noun clauses
c) Gerunds
d) Adjective phrases

2. Identify the type of object (in **bold**) in the following sentence:
“I’m going to a football game with **my dad** later.”

a) Direct object
b) Indirect object
c) Object of a preposition

3. Where does an indirect object **usually** appear in a sentence?

a) Directly before its verb
b) Between its verb and the direct object
c) Directly after the direct object
d) Anywhere

4. Which of the following pronouns is in the **objective case**?

a) we
b) they
c) I
d) me

Subject Complements

Definition

A **subject complement** is the information that follows a **linking verb** to describe, identify, or rename the subject of the clause. Whereas most verbs describe the action a subject performs, linking verbs describe something about the subject, which is completed by the subject complement.

A subject complement can either be a predicate noun, a predicate pronoun, or a **predicative adjective**.

Predicate nouns

Nouns that follow linking verbs are known as **predicate nouns** (or sometimes **predicative nouns** or **predicate nominatives**). These serve to rename or re-identify the subject. If the noun is accompanied by any direct modifiers (such as **determiners**, **adjectives**, or **prepositional phrases**), the entire noun phrase acts predicatively.

For example:

- "Love is **a virtue**." (The noun phrase *a virtue* follows the linking verb *is* to rename the subject *love*.)
- "Tommy seems like **a real bully**." (The noun phrase *a real bully* follows the linking verb *seems* to rename the subject *Tommy*.)
- "Maybe this is **a blessing in disguise**." (The noun phrase *a blessing in disguise* follows the linking verb *is* to rename the subject *this*.)

Predicative noun clauses

Noun clauses are **dependent clauses** that are able to function grammatically like nouns in a sentence. They most commonly begin with the words *that, how, if*, and the "wh-" words—*what, whatever, where, wherever, when, whenever, why, which, whichever, who, whom, whoever, whomever, whether*, and *whatever*.

Because they behave like nouns, they can perform all the roles that a normal noun would fill in a sentence, including as a subject complement. For example:

- "Japan is **where I want to go most**." (*Where I want to go most* is the predicate noun of the linking verb *is*, renaming the subject *Japan*.)
- "The thing I wish for most is **that people would all just get along**." (*That people would all just get along* is the predicate noun of the linking verb *is*, renaming the subject *the thing I wish for most*.)
- "Politicians are **who create the laws**." (*Who create the laws* is the predicate noun of the linking verb *are*, renaming the subject *politicians*.)

Predicate pronouns

We can also use a **predicate pronoun** after a linking verb to re-identify the subject. This is most common in questions and responses in which the identity of the subject is not known or is being explained. For example:

• Question: “Who is **it**?” (The pronoun *it* follows the linking verb *is* to rename the subject *who*.)
• Answer: “It’s **me**!” (The pronoun *me** follows the linking verb *is* to rename the subject *It*.)

We also commonly use personal pronouns in the **possessive case** predicatively, as in:

• “That’s **mine**.”

• “The computer was **his**.”

• “Victory is **ours**!”

We can also use subjective* personal pronouns in declarative statements, but this is less common in everyday speech and writing, as it tends to make the sentence sound more formal than is usually necessary. For instance:

• “It was **I** who did this.”

• “Her husband took all the credit, but it was **she** who did all the work.”

• “It was **they** who assured us that there would be no problems.”

*The subjective case

When pronouns that are **not** possessive are used predicatively, the conventional rule is to put them in the **subjective case** rather than the **objective case**. Pronouns in the objective case (*me, us, him, her, them, whom*, and *whomever*) should only be used as **direct objects** of verbs or prepositions, not as subject complements.

For example, “it was **I** who did this” is more correct than “it was **me** who did this.”

In conversational English, however, this distinction is much less frequently observed, and you will often hear people using phrases such as “it’s me” or “that was her” in response to questions.

But in writing (especially formal or professional writing), always use the **subjective case** for a personal pronoun if it is functioning as a **subject complement** after a linking verb.

To learn more about using the subjective and objective cases of pronouns, see the section dealing with **Case** in the chapter on **Personal Pronouns**.

Predicative Adjectives

A **predicative adjective** is an adjective used after a linking verb to describe or modify the subject of the clause. For example:

- "You look **nice**."
- "He is very **handsome**."

Here, *nice* describes the subject *you*, while the adjective phrase *very handsome* describes the subject *he*.

Note that adjectives appearing immediately *before* the noun they are describing are known as **attributive adjectives**. For example:

- "The *old* man seems **nice**."

Old is an attributive adjective that describes the subject, *man*. *Nice* also describes *man*, but it is a predicative adjective because it follows the linking verb *seems*.

Prepositional Phrases

Prepositional phrases can either functions as adjectives (modifying nouns or pronouns) or adverbs (modifying verbs, adjectives, and adverbs). When a prepositional phrase follows a linking verb (especially the verb *be*), it is functioning in the same way as a **predicative adjective**, describing the subject (which must be a noun or pronoun). For example:

- "The cat is **in the shed**." (The prepositional phrase *in the shed* is describing the subject *the cat*.)
- "I am **across the street**." (The prepositional phrase *across the street* is describing the subject *I*.)

To learn more about how **Predicative Adjectives** work, go to their section in the chapter on **Adjectives**.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is used to **describe** the subject of a clause?

a) Predicate nouns
b) Predicate pronouns
c) Predicative adjectives
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) All of the above

2. Which of the following is used to **rename** the subject of a clause?

a) Predicate nouns
b) Predicate pronouns
c) Predicative adjectives
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) All of the above

3. Which of the following sentences uses a **predicative adjective**?

a) “This soup tastes delicious!”
b) “The project was a disaster.”
c) “They are going to sell our beautiful old house tomorrow.”
d) “It was he who sold the company to overseas investors.”

4. What kind of verbs must be used with a subject complement?

a) Action verbs
b) Linking verbs
c) Stative verbs
d) Non-finite verbs

Object Complements

Definition

Sometimes a verb is not complete with only a direct object, especially when that direct object is a person. More information about the object’s relationship with the verb is required to form a complete thought. This additional information is known as the **object complement**.

An **object complement** is a word or group of words that describes, renames, or completes the direct object of the verb; without one, we are left asking *what* about the state or condition of the direct object as a result of the verb.

An object complement can be a noun or noun phrase; an adjective or adjective phrase; a relative clause (also known as an adjective clause); an infinitive or infinitive phrase; or a gerund or gerund phrase.

(In the examples used in this section, the object complements are in **bold** while the objects they modify or rename are underlined.)

Nouns and noun phrases

When we use nouns as object complements, they serve to rename or re-identify the object of **factitive verbs**. For example:

- “The committee elected him **treasurer**.”
- “Mrs. Fields named her late husband **the executor of her estate**.”
- “The coach made Timothy **team captain**.”
- “The school board appointed her **superintendent**.”

Adjectives and adjective phrases

Factitive verbs also take adjectives and adjective phrases as their object complements. But whereas a noun that functions as an object complement will rename a direct object, an adjective serves to describe or modify the direct object.

Like all object complements, adjectives must follow the direct object they are describing. If they come before it, they are simply acting as **attributive adjectives**, which are not necessary to complete the meaning of the sentence.

- “All he wanted was to make his husband **happy**.”
- “The excitement of the day got the kids **way too hyper**.”
- “We decided to paint my room **bright pink**.”
- “The jury judged the defendant **not guilty**.”
- “She deemed him **worthy of her love**.”

Relative clauses

Relative clauses are dependent clauses that are introduced by **relative pronouns**. Like adjectives, relative clauses serve to describe the noun that they follow; for this reason, they are often called **adjective clauses**.

For example:

- “Do you know someone **who can work the photocopier**?”
- “I hate the color **that they painted this room**.”
- “I found an apartment **that is big enough for both of us**.”

- “He is a friend **whose generosity knows no bounds**.”

Infinitives and infinitive phrases

An infinitive or infinitive phrase acts as an object complement by describing the intended or desired action of the direct object. For example:

- “I don’t expect you ***to approve*** **of my decision**.”
- “She’s forcing me ***to work*** **through the weekend**.”
- “We need you ***to make*** **a few more copies**.”
- “Janet’s father wants her ***to go*** **to Harvard**.”
- “I would like the boss ***to see*** **these reports**.”
- “He persuaded me ***to marry*** **him**.”
- “They taught me ***to work*** **the photocopier**.”

We often also use infinitives as object complements in **reported speech** to express what someone said **to** or asked **of** someone else. For example:

- “He asked me ***to help*** **him**.”
- “She told me **not** ***to answer*** **the phone**.”

Gerunds and gerund phrases

Gerunds generally function as object complements by describing what the direct object is or was doing (as opposed to infinitives, which describe an act that has not yet been done).

For example:

- “We came across him **lying in the yard**.”
- “My mother noticed the baby **walking by himself**.”
- “I can’t believe the bosses caught you **napping**.”
- “We heard their dogs **barking at the wind**.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following do **not** function as object complements?

a) Noun phrases
b) Adjective phrases

c) Adverbial phrases
d) Infinitive phrases

2. Which of the following kinds of verbs requires an object complement?

a) Action verb
b) Factitive verb
c) Stative verb
d) Linking verb

3. Identify the type of object complement (in **bold**) in the following sentence: “They found him **unfit to lead the company**.”

a) Noun phrase
b) Adjective phrase
c) Relative clause
d) Infinitive phrase

4. Which of the following sentences uses a **gerund phrase** as an object complement?

a) “They saw me walking on my own.”
b) “He wanted me to take him to the airport.”
c) “I need an office that has a telephone line.”
d) “They appointed me secretary of the meeting.”

Adjective Complements

Definition

An **adjective complement** (also called an **adjective phrase complement**) is a phrase or clause that provides information necessary to complete an adjective phrase's meaning. They are most often used with **predicative adjectives*** (adjectives that follow **linking verbs** to describe the subject of the clause).

(*Note: Some grammar guides refer to **predicative adjectives** as being synonymous with **adjective complements**. In this guide, however, an **adjective complement** refers to that which completes the meaning of an *adjective*, while a **predicative adjective** (a kind of **subject complement**) completes the meaning of a *subject*.)

Types of Adjective Complements

Adjective complements can be **prepositional phrases**, **infinitive phrases**, or **noun clauses**.

Prepositional Phrases

A prepositional phrase is comprised of a preposition immediately followed by a noun, pronoun, noun phrase, pronoun phrase, or noun clause. Here are some examples of prepositional phrases acting as adjective complements:

- "I am perfectly content **on my own**." (*On my own* is the complement of the adjective *content*.)

- "He felt alone **in the world**." (*In the world* is the complement of the adjective *alone*.)

- "They seem a little concerned **about the direction we're taking**." (*About the direction we're taking* is the complement of the adjective *concerned*.)

- "She is skilled **at archery**." (*At archery* is the complement of the adjective *skilled*.)

- "The bosses are pleased **with your progress**." (*With your progress* is the complement of the adjective *pleased*.)

Infinitive Phrases

Infinitive phrases are formed from full infinitive verbs (*to* + the base form of the verb) plus any additional objects or modifiers of the verb. (Be careful not to confuse infinitive phrases with prepositional phrases beginning with *to*.)

For example:

- “I’m very happy **to know you**!” (*To know you* is the complement of the adjective *happy*.)
- “We’re just glad **to be of service**.” (*To be of service* is the complement of the adjective *glad*.)
- “They felt relieved **to return home**.” (*To return home* is the complement of the adjective *relieved*.)
- “The crowd seemed impatient **to begin**.” (*To begin* is the complement of the adjective *impatient*.)

Noun Clauses

A **noun clause** is a dependent clause that is able to function grammatically like a noun. Noun clauses begin with the words *that, how, if,* and the “wh-“ words —*what, whatever, where, wherever, when, whenever, why, which, whichever, who, whom, whoever, whomever, whether*, and *whatever*.

- “We were a little curious **why they decided to leave**.” (*Why they decided to leave* is the complement of the adjective *curious*.)
- “I’m thrilled **that you are coming to visit**!” (*That you are coming to visit* is the complement of the adjective *thrilled*.)
- “It’s so wonderful **what he did for those orphans**.” (*What he did for those orphans* is the complement of the adjective *wonderful*.)
- “They’re somewhat unsure **whether this is the right decision**.” (*Whether this is the right decision* is the complement of the adjective *unsure*.)

Modifiers vs. Complements

Adjective complements are similar to but distinct from **modifiers** of adjectives. Both function adverbially, but while adjective modifiers describe or elaborate upon an adjective’s meaning, adjective complements work *with* adjectives to complete their meaning. The meaning of the sentence will not change if the modifier is taken out, whereas some information will be lost or altered if the complement is removed.

- “I am perfectly content **on my own**.” (*Perfectly* is an adverb that modifies the adjective *content*, while *on my own* is a prepositional phrase that complements it.)
- “They seem a little concerned **about the direction we’re taking**.” (*A little* is an adverbial phrase that modifies the adjective *concerned*, while *about the direction we’re taking* is a prepositional phrase that complements it.)
- “I’m very happy **to know you**!” (*Very* is an adverb that modifies the adjective *happy*, while *about the direction we’re taking* is an infinitive phrase that complements it.)
- “We’re just glad **to be of service**.” (*Just* is an adverb that modifies the adjective *glad*, while *to be of service* is an infinitive phrase that complements it.)
- “We were a little curious **why they decided to leave**.” (*A little* is an adverbial phrase that modifies the adjective *curious*, while *why they decided to leave* is a noun clause that complements it.)
- “They’re somewhat unsure **whether this is the right decision**.” (*Somewhat* is an adverbial phrase that modifies the adjective *unsure*, while *whether this is the right decision* is a noun clause that complements it.)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following **cannot** be used to form an adjective complement?

a) prepositional phrases
b) infinitive phrases
c) gerund phrases
d) noun clauses

2. Adjective complements usually occur with:

a) attributive adjectives
b) predicative adjectives
c) demonstrative adjectives
d) interrogative adjectives

3. Identify the adjective complement in the following sentence:
“Their huge cabin by the lake is sure to bring in lots of visitors.”

a) huge cabin

b) by the lake
c) in lots of visitors
d) to bring in lots of visitors

Adverbial Complements

Definition

Adverbial complements are adverbs or other adverbial elements in a clause that are required to complete the meaning of the verb.

Like **adverbial adjuncts**, adverbial complements modify the meaning of the verb by providing additional information. However, unlike adjuncts, which can be removed without losing meaning, adverbial complements must be included because removing them would cause the sentence to be incomplete or fundamentally altered in its meaning.

For example:

- "Please keep **still**."
- "I love living **in New York**."

If the adverb *still* in the first sentence were removed, it would read "Please keep" and no longer make any sense. If the adverbial prepositional phrase *in New York* were removed from the second sentence, it would read "I love living"—this would still make logical sense, but the original meaning would be completely lost.

Identifying adverbial complements

Adverbial complements always appear after the verb they complement. If the verb is **intransitive**, the complement will appear directly after the verb; if the verb is **transitive**, the complement will appear after the verb's **direct object**.

The best way to identify whether an adverbial element is a complement or not is to remove it from the sentence. If the sentence no longer makes sense or has a very different meaning, then the adverbial element is a complement.

Example (with adverbial)	Example (without adverbial)	Does the meaning change?
"The teacher sent Tim	"The teacher sent	**Yes**—the adverbial is a

home.”	Tim.”	**complement**.
“She told me the story **quickly**.”	“She told me the story.”	**No**—the adverbial is an **adjunct**.
“Please put the book **on the shelf**.”	“Please put the book.”	**Yes**—the adverbial is a **complement**.
“He wrote a book **in his spare time**.”	“He wrote a book.”	**No**—the adverbial is an **adjunct**.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Where does an adverbial complement of an **intransitive verb** appear in a sentence?

a) Before the verb it completes
b) Directly after the verb it completes
c) After an adverbial adjunct
d) After the direct object

2. Where does an adverbial complement of an **transitive verb** appear in a sentence?

a) Before the verb it completes
b) Directly after the verb it completes
c) After an adverbial adjunct
d) After the direct object

3. When can an adverbial complement be removed from the sentence?

a) When it completes a transitive verb
a) When it completes an intransitive verb
c) When the verb also has an adverbial adjunct
d) Always
e) Never

Modifiers

Definition

Modifiers are, quite simply, any word or group of words that modifies (describes or elaborates upon) another element in a sentence. Modifiers can either be **adjectives**, which modify nouns (or sometimes pronouns), or **adverbs**, which modify pretty much everything else (usually verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs). Whether a modifier is an adjective or adverb depends on what it modifies and how it functions in a sentence.

Adjectives

Adjectives have two basic syntactic categories: attributive and predicative.

Adjectives that appear directly before (or sometimes directly after) the noun or pronoun they modify are known as **attributive adjectives**. These can appear anywhere in a sentence.

Predicative adjectives, on the other hand, always appear after the noun they modify, connected to it by a **linking verb**. They are one of the three types of **subject complements**, and they are always part of **the predicate**—hence their name.

Let’s compare two examples to highlight this difference:

- “The **black** *dog* is barking.”

In this sentence, **black** is an **attributive adjective**. It is part of the noun phrase and is not connected to the noun *dog* by a linking verb. Now let’s look at a *predicative adjective*:

- “The *dog* was **black**.”

In this sentence, **black** is a *predicative adjective*. It follows *dog*, the noun that it modifies, and is connected to it by the linking verb *was*.

Other categories of adjectives

There is a huge variety of adjectives in English. While many words are adjectival in nature, such as colors (*red, black, yellow*, etc.), there are also several categories of adjectives that are formed from other sources. The table below will give a brief breakdown of these categories of adjectives, along with some examples. Go to each individual section to learn more.

Category of		Example	Example

Adjective	Definition	adjectives	sentence
Proper Adjectives	Formed from **proper nouns** to create descriptive words.	*Italian, Shakespearean, Alaskan, Middle Eastern, Nordic*	"He writes in an almost **Shakespearean** style."
Compound Adjectives	Created from two or more words that work jointly to modify the same noun; they always appear before the noun they modify and are usually joined with a hyphen(s).	*top-right, last-minute, sugar-free, record-breaking, expensive-looking*	“I know this is a **last-minute** suggestion, but hear me out.”
Demonstrative Adjectives (or **Demonstrative Determiners**)	Used to specify what we are referring to, whether it is singular or plural, and to give more information about its proximity to the speaker.	*this, that, these, those*	“**These** cups are very pretty.”
Interrogative Adjectives	Usually used to ask questions about something.	*what, which, whose*	“**Whose** computer is this?”
Nominal Adjectives	Adjectives that perform the function of a **noun** in a sentence. They are preceded by the word *the* and can be found as the **subject** or the **object** of a sentence or clause.	*the best, the strongest, the blue*	“He wants the red car, but I want **the blue**.”
Collective	A subgroup of **nominal adjectives**, used to refer	*the rich, the poor, the*	“**The rich**

Adjectives	to a group of people based on a shared characteristic.	*innocent, the French, the Dutch*	should help **the poor**.”

Adjective Phrases and Clauses

In addition to the single-word adjectives we looked at above, we can also use **adjective phrases** and **relative clauses** (also called **adjective clauses**) to modify nouns. We’ll look at both briefly below, but to learn more about how they are formed and used, go to their sections in the chapter on **Adjectives**.

Adjective Phrases

An **adjective phrase** is an adjective and any additional information linked to it that work together to describe a noun or pronoun in a sentence. The adjective around which an adjective phrase is formed is known as the **head word** of the phrase. When the head word is a **participle**, the phrase is known as a **participle phrase**.

For example:

- “You have **a beautiful** voice.”
- “He is **a very good** swimmer.”
- “The helicopters are **controlled remotely**.”
- “I am **perfectly content on my own**.”
- “People **wearied by travel** often stop here to rest.”
- “They felt **relieved to return home**.”

Relative Clauses (Adjective Clauses)

Relative clauses (also known as **adjective** or **adjectival clauses**) are **dependent clauses** that provide descriptive information about a noun or noun phrase. Relative clauses are introduced by either a **relative pronoun** or a **relative adverb**, and the information they provide can either be essential or nonessential to the completeness of the sentence.

- “There’s the woman **who always sits next to me on the bus**.”
- “The book **that I wrote** is being published in January.”

- “The escaped giraffe, **which had been on the loose for weeks**, was finally captured.”
- “The house **where I was born** is a very special place.”
- “I love casual Fridays, **when we get to wear jeans to work**.”

Adverbs

As we learned above, an **adverb** is a word that modifies or describes a verb, adjective, other adverb, or an entire clause. For example:

- “You write **beautifully**.” (The adverb *beautifully* modifies the verb *write*.)
- “He owns the **bright** red car.” (The adverb *bright* modifies the adjective *red*.)
- “She ran **very** quickly to the bus.” (The adverb *very* modifies the adverb *quickly*.)
- “She looked excited, **as if she could jump up and dance at any moment**.” (The adverbial clause *as if she could jump up and dance at any moment* modifies the independent clause *She looked excited*.)

There are many different categories of adverbs, which provide specific kinds of descriptions and which behave slightly differently in a sentence.

The table below provides a quick breakdown of the different categories and how they are used to describe something in a sentence. Go to the section for each individual category to see more examples and learn more about how each one is used.

(Note that most of the examples below are single-word adverbs. However, adverbial phrases—and sometimes adverbial clauses—can also belong to each category.)

Category of Adverb	Definition	Example adverbs	Example sentence
Adverbs of Time	Describe when or for how long something happens or is the case.	*now, tomorrow, yesterday, still, yet, later*	“We are eating **now**.”
Adverbs of	Describe how frequently something happens or is the	*always, usually, sometimes,*	“I **rarely** eat

Frequency	case. A subset of Adverbs of Time.	*often, rarely, daily, weekly, monthly*	breakfast in bed.”
Adverbs of Place	Describe the direction, distance, movement, or position involved in the action of a verb.	*north, everywhere, here, there, forward, downward, up, uphill, behind*	“I absolutely hate running **uphill**.”
Adverbs of Manner	Describe how something happens or how someone does something. Usually formed from adjectives.	*beautifully, wonderfully, slowly, deliberately, happily*	“He walked **slowly** towards the bar.”
Adverbs of Degree	Describe the intensity, degree, or extent of the verb, adjective, or adverb they are modifying.	*undoubtedly, truly, very, quite, pretty, somewhat, fairly*	“I'm **fairly** certain this is correct.”
Adverbs of Purpose	Describe why something happens or is the case. Single-word adverbs are usually **conjunctive adverbs**.	*therefore, thus, consequently, hence*	“We’ve never seen such high numbers. We must **therefore** conclude that the results are not normal.”
Focusing Adverbs	Used to draw attention to a particular part of a clause.	*also, exclusively, just, mostly, notably, primarily*	“They played **mostly** techno music at the party.”
	Used to modify the meaning		

Negative Adverbs	of a verb, adjective, other adverb, or entire clause in a negative way. Used in many of the other categories above.	*no, not, hardly, barely, never, seldom*	“He does **not** work on Mondays.”
Conjunctive Adverbs	Used to connect independent clauses and describe the relationship between them.	*comparatively, therefore, also, however, moreover, similarly*	“Jen is terrible at math; **however**, she still likes it.”
Evaluative Adverbs	Used by the speaker to comment or give an opinion on something. Evaluative adverbs modify the entire clause.	*apparently, astonishingly, clearly, frankly, obviously, presumably*	“**Clearly**, we're going to have to work harder.”
Viewpoint Adverbs	Used to indicate whose point of view we are expressing, or to specify what aspect of something we are talking about. (Many viewpoint adverbs are **adverbial phrases**.)	*personally, in my point of view, according to you, scientifically, biologically*	“**Personally**, I don’t believe it’s true.”
Relative Adverbs	Used to introduce **relative clauses**, when the information relates to a place, time, or the reason an action took place.	*where, when, why*	“I don’t know **why** he got angry.”
Adverbial Nouns	Nouns or noun phrases that function grammatically as adverbs to modify verbs and certain adjectives, usually specifying time, distance, weight, age, or monetary value.	*tomorrow, an hour, an ounce, five dollars, 25 years*	“I can barely see **a foot** in front of me in this fog.”

Adverbial Phrases

An **adverbial phrase** (also known as an **adverb phrase**) is group of words that functions as an adverb in a sentence. These can be adverbs modified by other adverbs, adverbial prepositional phrases, or adverbial infinitive phrases.

For example:

- "The kicker is running ***somewhat*** **slowly** back to the bench. He might be injured."
- "He performed ***very*** **well** on his exam."
- "We were playing Frisbee **at the park**."
- "**After they woke up**, they packed up their things and went on a hike."
- "Patricia went to the mountains **to go for a hike**."
- "I'm so happy **to be your friend**."

Adverbial Clauses

An **adverbial clause**, or **adverb clause**, is a group of words that contains a **subject** and a **predicate** and is used, like a regular adverb, to modify adjectives, verbs, and adverbs.

Adverbial clauses use **subordinating conjunctions** to connect them to **independent clauses**; the way an adverbial clause modifies an element in a sentence depends on the kind of subordinating conjunction used. For example:

- "I will arrive ***when*** **dinner is ready**." (adverbial clause of time)
- "Peter brings his sunglasses ***everywhere*** **he goes**." (adverbial clause of place)
- "I admire you ***because*** **you are an inspiration to many people**." (adverbial clause of time or purpose)
- "They'll approve your request ***provided*** **you pay the appropriate amount of money**." (adverbial clause of condition)
- "She looked excited, ***as if*** **she could jump up and dance at any moment**." (adverbial clause of comparison or manner)
- "***Although*** **she doesn't have much money**, Wendy often goes traveling." (adverbial clause of contrast)

Common modifier mistakes

In simple sentences, it is usually easy to understand what a modifier is modifying. However, when we begin adding more information into longer sentences, we must be careful that we make it clear which elements are modifying which parts of the sentence.

If we place a modifier too far away from the thing it describes, it can become a **misplaced modifier**. In some cases, a modifier may be in the correct position for its intended recipient, but too close to another element, making it look like it is describing the wrong thing; this is known as a **squinting modifier**.

We must also make sure that the thing being modified is explicitly stated in the text, otherwise we might be left with a **dangling modifier**.

Misplaced modifiers

A misplaced modifier can occur when we don't place the modifier close enough to the word that it modifies, making its meaning unclear or incorrect. For example:

- "Burton was driving around the countryside while his friend sang songs **slowly**."

Because of its placement in the above sentence, we would presume that the adverb *slowly* is modifying *sang*. If it is meant to modify *driving*, the adverb should be placed directly before or after the verb it's modifying to eliminate this confusion, as in:

- "Burton was **slowly** *driving* around the countryside while his friend sang songs."

or

- "Burton was *driving* **slowly** around the countryside while his friend sang songs."

Here's another example:

- "The **rusted** woman's bicycle made a horrible screeching noise."

Now the sentence is completely incorrect, because, due to its position, *rusted* is modifying *woman* instead of *bicycle*. The sentence should read:

- "The woman's **rusted** *bicycle* made a horrible screeching noise."

With participle phrases

These types of errors often occur with **participle phrases**. Because they can appear in the beginning, middle, or end of a sentence, it is can be easy to misplace the noun or noun phrase they are modifying. For instance:

- "**Terrified after watching a scary movie**, my father had to comfort my little sister."

In the above sentence, the participle phrase *terrified after watching a scary movie* is supposed to modify *my little sister*. However, since *my father* appears closer to the participle phrase, it seems it is the father who is terrified.

The sentence should be rewritten to correct the misplaced modifier. For example:

- "My father had to comfort *my sister*, **terrified after watching a scary movie**."

or

- "**Terrified after watching a scary movie**, *my sister* had to be comforted by my father."

or

- "*My sister*, **terrified after watching a scary movie**, had to be comforted by my father."

Squinting modifiers

Occasionally we use a modifier in the correct technical position, but its meaning can be misconstrued because of another word that is too close to it. This usually happens with adverbials, as they can appear before or after the words they modify. For example:

- "The way he sings **so often** annoys me."

So often seems like it could be modifying either *sings* or *annoys*, because it's technically in the correct position for both. We should rewrite the sentence to make it more clear what is meant:

- "The way he sings **so often** is annoying to me." (modifies *sings*)

or

- "The way he sings annoys me **so often**." (modifies *annoys*)

Dangling modifiers

A dangling modifier occurs when we don’t clearly state the noun that is supposed to be modified by the modifying phrase. These are especially common with **participle phrases**. For example:

- “**Walking down the road**, the birds were singing.”

Because the sentence does not state who was walking down the road, is seems that it was *the birds*, which is probably not the intended meaning. The sentence needs to include another noun or pronoun being described by the phrase to correct the dangling modifier. For example:

- “**Walking down the road**, I (or *she, he, Mary, the couple*, etc.) heard the birds singing.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following are **not** classified as modifiers?

a) Particles
b) Adjectives
c) Prepositions
d) Adverbs
e) A & C
f) B & D

2. What are the two main syntactic categories of **adjectives**?

a) Attributive and predicative
b) Compound and Comparative
c) Demonstrative and Interrogative
d) Nominal and Collective

3. A **participle phrase** is what kind of modifier?

a) Adverbial phrase
b) Adjective phrase
c) Adverbial clause
d) Adjective clause

4. What introduces a **relative clause**?

a) A relative pronoun
b) A relative adverb

c) A subordinating conjunction
d) A & B
e) B & C

5. What kind of error results from a modifier that is placed **too far away** from the word(s) it modifies?

a) Misplaced modifier
b) Squinting modifier
c) Dangling modifier

6. What kind of error results from a modifier that is placed **between** two words that it **might** modify?

a) Misplaced modifier
b) Squinting modifier
c) Dangling modifier

Adjuncts

Definition

Adjuncts are parts of a sentence that are used to elaborate on or modify other words or phrases in a sentence. Along with subjects, verbs, objects, and complements, adjuncts are one of the five main components of the structure of clauses.

A distinguishing feature of adjuncts is that their removal from sentences does not alter the grammatical integrity and meaning of the sentence. In other words, adjuncts expand on the word or phrase that they are modifying, but their presence is not needed for a sentence to function.

Nouns, adjectives, and adverbs can all be adjuncts. However, adverbial adjuncts are the most complex, so we will examine those in greater detail.

Adverbial adjuncts

Adjuncts are usually adverbs or adverbial phrases that help modify and enrich the context of verbs in the sentence. For example, consider the following sentence:

- “She walked to the park **slowly**.”

In this sentence, the adjunct is the adverb *slowly*, which modifies the verb *walked*. Without this adjunct, the sentence could function on its own and still be grammatically correct. In this case, the sentence would read:

- “She walked to the park.”

There is nothing wrong with this sentence. The reader just doesn’t know at what speed *she* walked to the park. Here are some other examples of sentences with adverbial adjuncts in them:

- “The soccer team played the game **in the rain**.”
- “The bowling ball rolled **quickly** toward the pins.”
- “The man walks by the river **often**.”

In all of these sentences, the adjunct can also be removed without the sentence losing meaning or grammatical correctness.

Types of modification

Adjuncts can be used to modify words in the sentence in a variety of different ways. Typically, when adjuncts are used in a sentence, they expand on the frequency, place, time, degree, reason, or manner of the word or phrase they are modifying. Here are examples of adjuncts being used to modify all of these things:

Frequency

- “**Every day**, the boy played basketball with his friend.”
- “The farmer plowed his field **once a week**.”

Place

- “The tourists went to see the sights **around the city**.”
- “The lakes are beautiful **in North Carolina**.”

Time

- “**At 5:00 PM**, the dog went to see if there was food in his bowl.”
- “The game began **right after school**.”

Degree

- “He jumped **as high as he could**.”
- “**As tall as he was**, he still could not reach the top cabinet.”

Reason

- “The plants grew tall **because they received a lot of sunshine**.”
- “She was good at math **because she practiced a lot**.”

Manner

- “The gazelle ran **gracefully over the field**.”
- “The river flowed **swiftly**.”

Types of adjunct phrases

As we can see in the examples above, both words and phrases can function as adjuncts, and there are several different types of phrases that can be used. Prepositional phrases, noun phrases, and adverb phrases can all be used as adverbial adjuncts.

Here are examples of each type of phrase being used as an adverbial adjunct:

Prepositional phrase

- “The group went swimming **at the beach.**”

Adverb phrase

- “The surfer looked calm, **although the wave looked huge.**”

Noun phrase

- “The grandfather will give his grandson his birthday present **next month.**”

Position of adjuncts

Adjuncts can occur in different sections of the clause; where they are positioned depends on the structure of the sentence. Sometimes it works better to put them into the initial position, sometimes the middle, and sometimes the final. For example, here are some sentences with adjuncts in different positions:

- “We arrived **at noon**.” (final position)
- “The salmon **quickly** swam.” (middle position)
- “**In the middle of the meadow**, there was a patch of daisies.” (initial position)

Sentences can also have more than one adjunct appearing in different parts of a clause. For example:

- “**At the playground**, the children ran **quickly**.”

In this sentence, both *at the playground*, and *quickly* are adjuncts. Both of these adjuncts modify the clause *the children ran*.

Misplaced modifiers

Another important note about adjuncts is that if they are placed too far away from the word or phrase they are modifying, or too near to another word or phrase, there can sometimes be confusion about what they are modifying. These are known as **misplaced modifiers**. For example, consider this sentence:

- “Reading books **frequently** improves intelligence.”

In this sentence, it is difficult to tell if *frequently* is modifying *reading books* or *improving intelligence*. Placing the adjunct in a better position will improve the clarity of the sentence. For example:

- “**Frequently** reading books improves intelligence.”

Noun Adjuncts and Adjectival Adjuncts

Adjuncts can also be nouns or adjectives. These occur so commonly, though, that they rarely need to be identified. Nevertheless, let’s look at what constitutes noun adjuncts and adjectival adjuncts.

Noun Adjuncts

Noun adjuncts are nouns that are used to modify other nouns. The resulting phrase is called a **compound noun**. For example:

- “The boy played with his **toy** soldier.”

In this sentence, *toy* is the noun adjunct, and it modifies the word *soldier*, creating the compound noun *toy soldier*. The meaning of the sentence would change if we left out *toy*, but the sentence would remain grammatically correct.

Noun adjuncts can also create single-word compound nouns, as in *policeman*, where the word *police* modifies the word *man*.

Adjectival Adjuncts

Adjectival adjuncts are just adjectives that come immediately before the noun they describe. They are more commonly referred to as **attributive adjectives**. They too can be removed without compromising grammatical correctness. Here is an example of an adjectival adjunct:

- “The **white** cat climbed onto the table.”

In this sentence, *white* is the adjectival adjunct, and it modifies the word *cat*. Again, leaving it out does not affect the grammar of the sentence. However, if we said, “The cat that is **white** climbed onto the table,” the adjective is no longer an adjunct because it is integral to the grammar of the sentence.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following words is the adverbial adjunct in this sentence?
“The tall man smiled enthusiastically.”

a) tall
b) the
b) enthusiastically
d) smiled

2. Which of the following words is the adverbial adjunct in this sentence?
“The two people agreed to meet at the end of the day.”

a) agreed
b) two people
c) to meet
d) at the end of the day

3. Which of the following adjuncts correlates to place?

a) in the meadow

b) before noon
c) beautifully
d) often

4. Which of the following adjuncts correlates to manner?

a) at the mall
b) steadily
c) in three days
d) once a week

5. Which of the following adjuncts is a prepositional phrase?

a) slowly
b) quickly
c) at the beach
d) beautifully

6. Where do noun and adjectival adjuncts appear in a sentence?

a) Immediately before the noun they describe
b) Immediately after the noun they describe
c) Before a preposition
d) At the end of a clause

Phrases

Definition

Grammatical **phrases** are groups of two or more words that work together to perform a single grammatical function in a sentence. Unlike **clauses**, phrases do **not** contain both a subject and a predicate (although they sometimes function as one or the other).

Phrases from the parts of speech

Most of the **parts of speech** can be made into phrases by adding information that is directly associated with them.

Below, we’ll look at a breakdown of each type of phrase that is formed from a part of speech, including some examples of the various types of phrases and how each functions in a sentence. To learn more, go to the sections that discuss each type of phrase.

Noun Phrases

A **noun phrase** consists of a noun plus any determiners or modifiers directly related to it. Noun phrases always have the grammatical function of nouns in a sentence.

Noun phrase examples	How they appear in a sentence
• **a book** — determiner *a* + noun *book*	• “I found **a book** I'd like to read.”
• **her sweetly smiling child** — determiner *her* + adverb *sweetly* + adjective (present participle) *smiling* + noun *child*	• “She gazed lovingly at **her sweetly smiling child**.”
• **the red car** — determiner *the* + adjective *red* + noun *car*	• “**The red car** belongs to me.”

Verb Phrases

A **verb phrase** can either be made up of an auxiliary verb and its main verb, ***or*** a verb plus any modifiers, objects, or complements.* Verb phrases are used to form perfect or continuous verb **tenses**, to express **modality**, or as part (or all) of **the predicate**.

Verb phrase examples	How they appear in a sentence
• **am running** — auxiliary verb *am* + present participle *running*	• “I **am running** late.” (forms the **present continuous tense**)
• **have completed** — auxiliary verb *have* + past participle *completed*	• “They **have completed** work on the building.” (forms the **present perfect tense**)
• **quickly ran to the bus** — adverb *quickly* + verb *ran* + prepositional	• “She **quickly ran to the bus**.”

phrase *to the bus*	(forms the predicate)
• **plays the trombone** — verb *plays* + object *the trombone*	• “My brother **plays the trombone**.” (forms the predicate)

*Notes on verb phrases

There are two different definitions of what constitutes a **verb phrase**.

In traditional grammar, a verb phrase is made up of an **auxiliary verb** plus the main verb(s) that follow it. For example:

- “We **were running** late.”
- “I **have been learning** Arabic.”
- “They **will call** you tomorrow.”

More modern theories of grammar, however, define verb phrases as being any main verb (or combination of main and auxiliary verbs) in a clause plus its constituent parts—that is, any **modifiers** or **objects** that complete its meaning. These verb phrases are, according to this definition, what forms (or adds to) **the predicate** of a sentence. For example:

- “My brother **is running late for school again**.”
- “Our teacher **looks tired**; she **must have been up late last night**.”

This guide takes a more all-inclusive approach for the term **verb phrase**. In a situation in which we are analyzing everything that belongs to a certain verb, it will be referred to as a verb phrase. Likewise, when we’re describing the use of auxiliary verbs to create different verb tenses or **modal constructions**, the overall verb that is constructed may also be called a verb phrase.

Adjective Phrases

An **adjective phrase** is made up of an adjective along with any determiners, modifiers, or **adjective complements** that modify or complete the adjective’s meaning. The entire phrase functions as an adjective in a sentence, modifying a noun.

Adjective phrase examples	How they appear in a sentence

• **my favorite** — determiner *my* + adjective *favorite*	• “I brought **my favorite** jacket to school.”
• **wonderfully talented** — adverb *wonderfully* + adjective *talented*	• “The singer was **wonderfully talented**.”
• **alone in the world** — adjective *alone* + adjective complement *in the world*	• “She felt **alone in the world**.”

Adverbial Phrases

An **adverbial phrase** may consist of an adverb plus any determiners and supplemental information, or an adverb plus an **adverb of degree**, or an adverbial prepositional phrase. (Prepositional phrases are so often adverbial that they are commonly included in definitions of adverbial phrases.)

Adverbial phrase examples	How they appear in a sentence
• **once a week** — adverb *once* + noun phrase *a week*	• “My dad swims **once a week**.”
• **too quickly** — intensifier *too* + adverb *quickly*	• “Don't run **too quickly**!”
• **down the street** — adverbial prepositional phrase	• “We walked **down the street**.”

Prepositional Phrases

Prepositional phrases consist of a preposition and its **object**. They most commonly function as adverbs, but they can also be adjectival.

Prepositional phrase examples	How they appear in a sentence
• **on the wall** — preposition *on* + object *the wall*	• “We hung the painting **on the wall**.” (adverbial prepositional phrase)

• **in the driveway** — preposition *in* + object *the driveway*	• "The car **in the driveway** is my dad's." (adjectival prepositional phrase)

Gerund Phrases

A **gerund phrase** is formed when a gerund (the "-ing" form of a verb used as a noun) is accompanied by any modifiers and/or objects. The entire phrase functions as a noun, meaning it can be the subject of a clause or an object of a verb or preposition.

Gerund phrase examples	How they appear in a sentence
• **swimming every day** — gerund *swimming* + adverbial phrase *every day*	• "**Swimming every day** is good for your health."
• **reading books in the dark** — gerund *reading* + object *books* + adverbial prepositional phrase *in the dark*	• "I wouldn't recommend **reading books in the dark**."

Infinitive Phrases

Infinitive phrases are composed of the infinitive of a verb (the base form + the particle *to*) along with any objects or modifiers associated with it. Infinitives and infinitive phrases can function as nouns, adjectives, or adverbs in a sentence.

Infinitive phrase examples	How they appear in a sentence
• **to help one another** — infinitive *to help* + object *one another*	• "We must all try **to help one another**." (functions as a noun, the direct object of *try*)
• **to stop for today** — infinitive *to stop* + adverbial prepositional phrase *for today*	• "This is a good place **to stop for today**." (functions as an adjective, modifying the noun *place*)
• **to send my brother a letter** — infinitive *to send* + indirect object	• "I'm going to the post office **to send my brother a letter**." (functions as an

my brother + direct object *a letter*	adverb, modifying the verb *going*)

Participle Phrases

Like gerunds and infinitives, **participles** are formed from verbs, so **participle phrases** are created when participles are accompanied by any modifiers or objects. Past and present participles (without modifiers or objects) can be used to create different verb tenses, but they can also function as adjectives. **Participle phrases**, however, can only function as adjectives in a sentence.

Participle phrase examples	How they appear in a sentence
• **destroyed in the accident** — past participle *destroyed* + adverbial prepositional phrase *in the accident*	• “My car, **destroyed in the accident**, was taken away by the tow truck.”
• **breaking the rules** — present participle *breaking* + object *the rules*	• “Participants **breaking the rules** will be removed from the competition.”

Phrases within phrases

As you might have noticed in the examples above, there are many instances in which one type of phrase has one or more other phrases within it. Take the following sentence, for example:

- “The bright orange cat lives in the shed in the garden.”

There are actually seven phrases in this sentence. The two primary phrases are the noun phrase *the bright orange cat* (the subject) and the verb phrase *lives in the shed in the garden* (the predicate), and each of these phrases contains one or more smaller phrases. Let’s look at a breakdown below:

	The Subject			The Predicate
Contains the noun phrase:	***The bright orange cat***		Contains the verb phrase:	***lives in the shed in the garden***

Contains the adjective phrase:	***The bright orange*** (modifies the noun *cat*)		Contains the adverbial prepositional phrase:	***in the shed in the garden*** (modifies the verb *lives*)
			Contains the noun phrase:	***the shed in the garden*** (object of the preposition *in*)
			Contains the adjectival prepositional phrase:	***in the garden*** (modifies the noun *shed*)
			Contains the noun phrase:	***the garden*** (object of the second preposition *in*)

When we are trying to examine all the parts of an individual sentence, it’s important to be able to recognize when one part is (or might be) made up of several other smaller elements.

Absolute Phrases and Appositive Phrases

There are two other types of phrases that we have not looked at yet—**absolute phrases** and **appositive phrases**. These are created from specific parts of speech and have specific functions in a sentence. We’ll briefly look at both below. You can continue on to their individual sections to learn more.

Absolute phrases

An **absolute phrase** or **absolute construction** is a grammatically independent group of words that modify or add information to the entire sentence. It is usually made up of a noun or pronoun and a participle, along with any modifiers or objects of the participle.

Absolute phrases usually appear at the beginning or end of a sentence to add descriptive information or provide a final comment on the sentence as a whole.

They can also appear in the middle of the sentence to emphasize the additional information. They are always set apart from the rest of the sentence by **commas** or **dashes**.

For example:

- “**The students having left early**, I decided to catch up on some grading.”
- “I hope to get into Harvard next year—**God willing**.”
- “The teacher, **her students having left early**, decided to catch up on some grading.”

Appositive Phrases

An **appositive phrase** is a noun phrase that serves to describe or rename another noun that appears directly before it in a sentence. Appositive phrases are usually (but not always) **non-restrictive**, meaning they provide information that is not essential to the meaning of the sentence, and are separated from the rest of the sentence by one or two commas.

For example:

- “The office, **an old Georgian building**, badly needed repairs.”
- “Janet Smith, **a former student of mine**, is joining the faculty next spring.”
- “Just meet me at my car, **the old station wagon parked across the street**.”

Other appositives

Note that an appositive can also be a **proper noun** that names or identifies a **common noun**. An appositive made up of a proper noun that contains more than one word is not considered an appositive phrase, but rather a single noun construction. For example:

- “My brother **Michael** lives in New York.”
- “America’s first president, **George Washington**, was born in the colony of Virginia.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following types of phrases can function as a **noun** in a sentence?

a) Noun phrases

b) Infinitive phrases
c) Gerund phrases
d) All of the above
e) None of the above

2. Which of the following can be added to an adjective to create an **adjective phrase**?

a) A noun
b) An adverb
c) A determiner
d) A & B
e) B & C

3. Identify the type of phrase (in **bold**) in the following sentence:
“The bird **flying above us** landed on the tree.”

a) Participle phrase
b) Infinitive phrase
c) Gerund phrase
d) Verb phrase

4. What does an **absolute phrase** modify?

a) A noun
b) A clause
c) A sentence
d) A phrase

5. What does an **appositive phrase** modify?

a) A noun
b) A clause
c) A sentence
d) A phrase

Noun Phrases

Definition

Noun phrases are groups of two or more words within a sentence that function grammatically as nouns. They consist of a noun and other words that modify the noun. Some grammarians also consider a single-word noun to be a noun phrase, while more traditional grammars hold that a phrase must be made up of two or more words. In this guide, we define a phrase as being made up of more than one word.

Noun phrases can also have pronouns as their structural base, which we will examine later in this section.

Identifying noun phrases

Noun phrases allow groups of words to function as a noun in the sentence. In this way, nouns can be elaborated upon or modified to add further depth to the sentence without losing their structural role.

The following sentence contains a basic, single-word noun, without any modifiers:

- "Whales swim."

In this sentence, the word "whales" functions alone as the noun. Because there are no modifiers to create a noun phrase, the reader receives no additional information about "whales."

The following sentence contains a noun phrase *with* modifiers:

- "He brought *the* *shovel* *with the blue handle*."

In this sentence, "the shovel with the blue handle" is a noun phrase. It collectively acts as a noun while providing modifying words for the head noun, "shovel." The modifiers are "the" and "with the blue handle."

Here are some other examples of sentences with noun phrases marked in italics (the primary nouns being modified are underlined):

- "*The tall* *mountain* was very large."
- "*The* *highway* *at rush hour* can be frantic."
- "*The* *oranges* *that fell from the orange tree* are delicious."

A good way to test whether or not a phrase is a noun phrase is to replace the phrase with a pronoun and see if the sentence is still grammatically correct. For example, in all three examples provided above, the noun phrase can be successfully replaced with a pronoun:

- "*It* was very large."

- “*It* can be frantic.”
- “*They* are delicious.”

Noun phrases of varying length

Noun phrases can be as short as two words, or they can be longer and have many words; the number of words in a phrase does not affect its status as a noun phrase, so long as it functions as a noun in the sentence. For example, the following sentences contain one very short noun phrase, and one very long noun phrase:

- “*The man* sat down.”
- “*The forty-five year old man with brown hair and a black shirt* sat down.”

Despite their difference in length, both phrases in italics function as nouns.

Noun phrases within noun phrases

You may have noticed that many of the sentences above contain *multiple* noun phrases. It is very common for a smaller noun phrase to occur within a larger one, acting as part of the modifying information. For instance, the second sentence above actually has **three** noun phrases, two of which are contained within the longer one. Let’s look at the sentence again, this time underlining each noun being modified and putting the smaller phrases in bold.

- “*The forty-five year old man with* ***brown hair*** *and* ***a black shirt*** sat down.”

Here are some more examples of sentences with noun phrases inside of other noun phrases:

- “They passed *an orange bus driven by* ***a jolly old man*** *wearing* ***a lady’s wig*** on the highway.”
- “Please hand me *the book with the* ***torn cover***.”

Modifiers

Position of modifiers

Sometimes the words that modify the noun come before the noun in the phrase, and sometimes they come after. For example, in the following sentence, the modifiers come before the noun:

- “Dogs often like to chase ***high-flying*** *Frisbees*.”

In this next sentence, the modifiers come after the noun:

- “*Trucks* ***with red stripes and large wheels*** came riding into town.”

The position of modifiers in a noun phrase depends on what *type* of modifier is being used to describe the noun.

Types of modifiers

There are many different types of modifiers that can be used in noun phrases to modify the noun in the phrase. Among these modifiers are *adjectives, articles, participles, possessive nouns, possessive pronouns, determiners, relative clauses, infinitives, participle phrases, prepositional phrases,* and *compound nouns**.

Adjectives, articles, participles, possessive nouns, determiners, possessive pronouns, and compound nouns tend to appear before the noun in a noun phrase. Relative clauses, infinitives, participle phrases, prepositional phrases, and compound phrases tend to appear after the noun in noun phrases.

(*Modifiers are usually considered to be adjectives, adverbs, or other grammatical elements that function as one or the other. For the sake of conciseness in this section, however, we’ll be including items that are not usually classed as modifiers—such as articles and determiners—but still serve to give more meaning to the noun in a noun phrase.)

Here are examples of each type of modifier in a sentence with a noun phrase:

Adjectives

Adjectives modify the noun by expressing a certain quality of the noun:

- “***Bright*** *stars* shine in the sky.”
- “***Big*** *cities* are loud.”

Articles

Articles modify the noun by revealing if the noun is definite or indefinite:

- “***The*** *dog* went to ***the*** *park*.”
- “***A*** *boy* ate ***an*** *apple*.”

Determiners

Determiners are words that reveal the amount of a noun in a sentence:

- “There are ***five*** *bananas*.”
- “***Several*** *iguanas* were on the tree.”

Participles

Participles can be used to directly modify the noun by showing a past or present action that the noun is or was involved in doing:

- “*The* ***galloping*** *gazelle* jumped high.
- “***Boiled*** *water* is very hot.”

Possessive Nouns

Possessive nouns modify the noun by explaining that the noun belongs to someone, something, or some group:

- “*The* ***mail man's*** *truck* was parked.”
- “*The* ***woman's*** *purse* was blue.”

Possessive Determiners

Possessive determiners also indicate possession. However, they indicate possession by using a pronoun instead of a noun:

- “***His*** *wife* brought him ***his*** *forgotten briefcase*.”
- “***Her*** *shoe* was untied.”

Compound Nouns

Compound nouns are created by modifying the head noun with a **noun adjunct** (a word that works together with the noun to give it a different meaning). (There are different kinds of **adjuncts**, which are covered in another section).

Compound nouns can either be one word, two words, or two words joined by a hyphen. In every case, the noun adjunct adds to or changes the meaning of the head noun. The following sentences show an example of each type of compound noun:

- “He ran to the ***dog****house*.”
- “The ***bus*** *station* was busy.”

- “His ***ex***-*wife* called him yesterday.”

Relative Clauses

Relative clauses (also known as **adjective clauses** express a quality of the noun just like adjectives do. However, adjective clauses contain a subject and a verb:

- “*The car* ***that drove up the street*** turned left.”
- “*The light* ***that was left on*** was very bright.”

Infinitives

Infinitives modify the noun by providing a verb phrase that helps elaborate on and provide clarification of the noun:

- “He was *the person* ***to contact*** *if you wanted pastries*.”
- “She was *the one* ***to ask***.”

Participle Phrases

Participle phrases modify the noun by providing a group of words with a present or past participle that works like an adjective to modify the noun:

- “*The man* ***waving his hand for a taxi*** was being ignored.”
- “*The geese* ***flying overhead*** formed a V shape.”

Prepositional Phrases

Prepositional phrases are used in noun phrases to provide unique, distinguishing, or specifying information about the noun being modified:

- “*The train* ***at the station*** had twenty-seven cars.”
- “*The snow* ***on the field*** was white.”
- “*A cat* ***with white whiskers*** just walked by.”

Noun Phrases with Pronoun Bases

Although noun phrases primarily have nouns as the base word that is being modified, sometimes these base words can also be pronouns. For example, the following sentences have pronoun base words as opposed to noun base words:

- “***He*** *who walks by the bay at night* may see the moon.”

- “***Someone*** *new* slowly approached the group.”

Nouns phrases as subjects, objects, and complements

Noun phrases can be used in sentences as a subject, object, or complement. The individual sentence will determine how the noun phrase is used. Here are some examples of noun phrases being used as subjects, objects, and complements.

Subject

The subject of a sentence is the noun or noun phrase that is doing the action of the verb:

- “**The green bowling ball** rolled down the lane.”

Object

Objects are the noun or noun phrase that receives the action of the verb. They are the things that something happens to, as opposed to the things causing the action:

- “He rolled **the green bowling ball** down the lane.”

Complement

Complements are words or phrases that are necessary to make the sentence’s subject or predicate complete. Subject complements are words that follow a linking verb and describe the subject of the sentence. Object complements are words that modify the direct or indirect object of the verb. Here are examples of both:

Subject Complement

- “He was **a man who owned green bowling balls**.” (The noun phrase follows the linking verb *was* and modifies the subject *he*.)

Object Complement

- “He painted the bowling ball **a greenish color**.” (The noun phrase follows and modifies the direct object *bowling ball*.)

- “The club elected the man **their president**.” (The noun phrase follows and modifies the direct object *the man*.)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following word or words is the noun phrase in this sentence?
“The new shoe laces would be delivered soon.”

a) delivered soon
b) would
c) The new shoe laces
d) be

2. The following sentence contains which type of noun phrase?
“Full moons shine brightly.”

a) article
b) infinitive
c) participle
d) adjective

3. How many noun phrases are there in the following sentence?
“The old man rode his bicycle.”

a) 2
b) 1
c) 3
d) 0

4. Which of the following is **not** a noun phrase?

a) The rock
b) slowly
c) his house
d) the man who saw the sign

5. Which of the following is a noun phrase with an article modifier?

a) blue hat
b) dog that chased cats
c) the car

d) tall building

Adjective Phrases

Definition

An **adjective phrase** is an adjective and any additional information linked to it that work together to describe a noun or pronoun in a sentence. The adjective around which an adjective phrase is formed is known as the **head word** of the phrase.

Some grammar guides consider an adjective functioning by itself to be an adjective phrase, but, in this guide, when we refer to a phrase, we always mean a group of two or more words.

There is also a tendency to combine the terms **adjective phrase** and **adjectival phrase** into a single category, but they are not quite the same. We'll look at this distinction more closely later on in this section.

Attributive vs. Predicative

Adjective phrases can either be **attributive** or **predicative**.

Attributive adjectives occur immediately before or after the noun they modify, as in:

- "You have **a very beautiful** voice."

Predicative adjectives, on the other hand, appear after a **linking verb** to describe the subject of the clause. For example:

- "Your voice is **very beautiful**."

Forming adjective phrases

Any word or words that work in conjunction with an adjective constitute part of an adjective phrase. These are usually made up of **determiners** or **adverbs**. **Prepositional phrases**, **infinitives**, and **noun clauses** can also be used as **adjective complements** to create adjective phrases.

As you will notice in some of examples below, we can also use a combination of different elements together to create more complex adjective phrases.

Determiners

Determiners are used to introduce a noun or noun phrase. There are several classes of determiners: **articles**, **demonstrative determiners**, **possessive determiners**, **interrogative determiners**, **distributive determiners**, **pre-determiners**, **quantifiers**, and **numbers**.

Determiners are able to stand alone to introduce a noun, but when they function with an adjective, they create an adjective phrase. For example:

- “I would like **a large** *soda*, please.” (The article *a* forms an adjective phrase with the head word *large* to describe the noun *soda*.)
- “**This green** *pen* belongs to me.” (The demonstrative determiner *this* forms an adjective phrase with the head word *green* to describe the noun *pen*.)
- “I’ve lost **my favorite** *backpack*.” (The possessive determiner *my* forms an adjective phrase with the head word *favorite* to describe the noun *backpack*.)
- “**Whose black** *laptop* is this?” (The interrogative determiner *whose* forms an adjective phrase with the head word *black* to describe the noun *laptop*.)
- “The camp gives out welcome packs to **each new** *arrival*.” (The distributive determiner *each* forms an adjective phrase with the head word *new* to describe the noun *arrival*.)
- “She’s **such a sweet** *girl*.” (The pre-determiner *such* forms an adjective phrase with the article *a* and the head word *sweet* to describe the noun *girl*.)
- “**Many vintage** *cars* were parked outside the diner.” (The quantifier *many* forms an adjective phrase with the head word *vintage* to describe the noun *cars*.)
- “They own **three gigantic** *yachts*.” (The number *three* forms an adjective phrase with the head word *gigantic* to describe the noun *yachts*.)

Adverbs

Adverbs modify adjectives, verbs, and other adverbs. When an adverb is used to modify an adjective, the two work together as an adjective phrase to modify a noun or pronoun. If a **determiner** appears before the adverb, it is also considered part of the adjective phrase.

Adverbs often appear directly before the adjective they modify. For example:

- “He is **a very good** *swimmer*.”
Very modifies the adjective *good*; together they modify *swimmer*.

- “**The brightly lit** *room* hurt my eyes.”

Brightly modifies the past participle *lit* (which functions as an adjective); together they modify the noun *room*.

- “*She* is **wonderfully talented**.”

Wonderfully modifies the adjective *talented*; together they modify the pronoun *she*.

However, we can sometimes use adverbs directly after an adjective. This can serve to place emphasis on the relationship between the adjective and the adverb. For example:

- “The *helicopters* are **controlled remotely**.”

In this sentence, *remotely* modifies the past participle *controlled* (which functions as an adjective); together they modify the noun *helicopters*. Because *remotely* appears after *controlled*, it puts extra emphasis on the way in which the helicopters are controlled.

We can see how this emphasis works if we reword the sentence:

- “The *helicopters* are **remotely controlled**.”

The sentence doesn’t lose any literal meaning, but there is now slightly less emphasis on the relationship between *remotely* and *controlled*.

Adjective Complements

An **adjective complement** (also called an **adjective phrase complement**) is a phrase or clause that provides information necessary to complete an adjective phrase’s meaning.

They are most often used with **predicative adjectives** (adjectives that follow **linking verbs** to describe the subject of the clause) and can be **prepositional phrases**, **infinitive phrases**, and **noun clauses**. Sometimes these adjectives are modified by adverbs, which also form part of the full adjective phrase.

Prepositional Phrases

- “I am **perfectly content *on my own***.” (*On my own* is the complement of the adjective *content*, which is modified by the adverb *perfectly*.)
- “He felt **alone *in the world***.” (*In the world* is the complement of the adjective *alone*.)
- “They seem **a little concerned *about the direction we’re taking***.” (*About the*

direction we're taking is the complement of the adjective *concerned*, which is modified by adverbial phrase *a little*.)

Prepositional phrases can also be used with adjectives (often past participles) that are attributive but appear after the noun, as in:

• "People **wearied *by travel*** often stop here to rest."

• "I will not allow a dog **covered *in mud*** into my clean house."

Infinitives

• "I'm **very happy *to know you***!" (*To know you* is the complement of the adjective *happy*, which is modified by adverb *very*.)

• "We're **glad *to be of service***." (*To be of service* is the complement of the adjective *glad*.)

• "They felt **relieved *to return home***." (*To return home* is the complement of the adjective *relieved*.)

Noun Clauses

• "We were **a little curious *why they decided to leave***." (*Why they decided to leave* is the complement of the adjective *curious*, which is modified by adverbial phrase *a little*.)

• "I'm **thrilled *that you are coming to visit***!" (*That you are coming to visit* is the complement of the adjective *thrilled*.)

• "It's **so wonderful *what he does for charity***." (*What he does for charity* is the complement of the adjective *wonderful*, which is modified by the adverb *so*.)

• "They're **somewhat unsure *whether this is the right decision***." (*Whether this is the right decision* is the complement of the adjective *unsure*, which is modified by the adverb *somewhat*.)

Adjective Phrases vs. Adjectival Phrases

The terms **adjective phrase** and **adjectival phrase** are often treated as synonymous terms; however, while they are very similar, they are in fact two different things.

A true adjective phrase contains an adjective as a head word, while an **adjectival** phrase does not have to—it is any phrase that is functioning as an adjective in a sentence, whether or not it contains an adjective as a head word. Therefore, an adjective phrase can be considered a specific kind of adjectival phrase.

Prepositional phrases, for instance, often function independently as adjectives in a sentence, in which case they follow the noun they are describing. For example:

- “The car **on the lawn** belongs to my brother.”
- “Pass me the cup **with the handle**.”
- “He wrote a book **about modern economics**.”

All three of these examples are **adjectival phrases**—they do not have adjectives as head words. The prepositional phrase in the third example does contain the adjective *modern*, but it is modifying the noun *economics* (the object of the preposition *about*), **not** the noun *book*.

Relative clauses (also known as **adjective clauses**) are also kinds of adjectival phrases. They are introduced by **relative pronouns** and modify a noun in a sentence. For example:

- “The man **whom I met in the bank** was on the same bus as me tonight.”
- “It’s the nicest thing **that I own**.”
- “The song, **which he wrote for his wife**, is beautiful.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following can be used to form an adjective phrase?

a) Determiners
b) Adverbs
c) Infinitives
d) Noun clauses
e) A & B
f) C & D
g) All of the above

2. True or False: An adjective phrase can only be **attributive**.

a) True
b) False

3. Identify what is used to create the adjective phrase (in **bold**) in the following sentence:
"A man **dressed in fine silk** walked through the doors."

a) Adverb
b) Prepositional phrase
c) Infinitive phrase
d) Noun clause

4. Which of the following does an **adjective phrase** require that an **adjectival phrase** does not?

a) A noun as a head word
b) An adjective as a head word
c) A noun to modify
d) An adjective complement

Adverbial Phrases

Definition

An **adverbial phrase** (also known as an **adverb phrase**) is group of words that functions as an adverb in a sentence. That is, it modifies a verb, adjective, adverb, clause, or the sentence as a whole. Adverbial phrases often feature an adverb (known as the head word) being modified by other elements, but not always.

Here are some examples of adverbial phrases:

- very quickly
- in a while
- just a bit
- surprisingly well
- at the fairground
- slightly close
- as soon as possible

Here are some examples of adverb phrases being used in sentences:

• "Shelia rode her bike **very hastily** so she could get home sooner."

• "The farmers worked **like a single unit**."

- “The surf at the beach was coming in **extremely quickly**.”
- “**After they woke up**, they packed up their things and then went on a hike.”
- “He read the restaurant's menu **rather slowly**.”

As you can see, different types of word groups can be used as adverbial phrases.

Types of Adverbial Phrases

Adverbs with mitigators and intensifiers

Adverbial phrases are commonly formed when an adverb’s intensity is being modified by another adverb. These modifying adverbs are known as **mitigators**, which decrease the intensity of the main adverb, and **intensifiers**, which increase its intensity. For example:

- “The kicker is running ***somewhat*** **slowly** back to the bench. He might be injured.” (mitigator)
- “She performed ***very*** **well** on her exam.” (intensifier)

Prepositional phrases

Prepositional phrases are often used adverbially, though they can also function as adjectives. If the phrase is modifying an adjective, verb, or adverb, it is an adverbial phrase. If it is modifying a noun or a pronoun, it is an **adjectival phrase**.

We’ll look briefly at both uses so the difference is clear.

Adverbial prepositional phrases

- “We were *playing* Frisbee **at the park**.”

In this sentence, the prepositional phrase *at the park* is an adverbial phrase, because it is modifying the verb *playing*.

- “All of the employees were *filled* **with excitement** because they learned that they might get a raise.”

The prepositional phrase *with excitement* modifies the adjective *filled* in this sentence. Therefore it is an adverbial phrase.

Adjectival prepositional phrase

- “The *cat* **on the window sill** was orange and had some white spots.”
- “All the *people* **on the boardwalk** were wearing sunglasses.”

In these examples, the prepositional phrases modify the nouns *cat* and *people*—they are functioning as adjectives and **not** adverbs.

Infinitive phrases

We can also use **infinitives** or **infinitive phrases** as adverbs in a sentence.

Infinitive phrases are groups of words that begin with a verb in the infinitive form (the base form of the verb preceded by the particle *to*) and typically include an object and/or modifiers.

Similar to prepositional phrases, infinitive phrases can act as adverbial phrases if they modify a verb, adverb, or adjective. However, infinitives can also act as noun phrases and adjectival phrases.

Adverbial infinitive phrases

- “The man *brought* his fishing gear **to catch fish in the river**.”

In this sentence, the infinitive phrase *to catch fish in the river* modifies the verb *brought*, so it is functioning adverbially.

- “Patricia *went* to the mountains **to go for a hike**.”

Here, the infinitive phrase *to go for a hike* modifies the verb *went*, so it is also an adverbial phrase.

Adjectival infinitive phrases

- “One of the best *things* **to do if you get lost** is to call for help.”

In this sentence, the infinitive phrase *to do if you get lost* modifies the noun *things*. Since it is modifying a noun, it is an adjectival phrase.

Infinitive noun phrases

- “I like **to go on a walk a couple times a week**.”

Here, the infinitive phrase *to go on a walk a couple times a week* is the **object** of the verb *like*, so it is acting as a noun.

Purpose of use

Adverbial phrases typically give descriptions of time, location, manner, or reason. They serve to broaden the meaning of the sentence and enhance the context of the verb, adjective, or adverb that they describe.

Time

- “The player *made* the shot **just before the buzzer**.”

The adverbial phrase *just before the buzzer* is a description of a time that modifies the verb *made*. It lets you know exactly when the player made the shot.

- “The sun *set* **at around 7:30 PM**.”

Here, the adverbial phrase *at around 7:30 PM* describes the time that the sun *set*. Because the phrase uses the compound preposition *at around*, rather than simply *at*, it implies a level of ambiguity about the exact time that the sun set. Subtleties like this help to create descriptions that are more nuanced and rich with meaning.

Location or direction

- “Stuart *ran* five miles **around the track**.”

Around the track is an adverbial phrase that establishes a location and direction for the verb *ran*.

- “The large wind turbines *stood* **on top of the hill**.”

In this sentence, the adverbial phrase *on top of the hill* tells where the wind turbines *stood*.

Manner

- “The leopard *climbed* the tree **quite gracefully**.”

Here, *quite gracefully* describes the manner in which the leopard *climbed* the tree.

- “The figure skater *leapt* **in a beautiful arc**.”

The adverbial phrase *in a beautiful arc* describes how the figure skater *leapt*.

Reason or purpose

- “The woman *went* to the store **to get some lettuce**.”

In this sentence, the infinitive adverbial phrase *to get some lettuce* explains the reason why the woman *went* to the store.

- “The hockey team *prepared* **for the championship match**.”

The adverbial prepositional phrase *for the championship match* lets you know the purpose for the team’s preparation.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is an adverbial phrase?

a) quite lazy
b) the great big house
b) quite enthusiastically
d) meander slowly

2. Identify the adverbial phrase in the following sentence.
“Sally threw the football to her friend.”

a) threw the football
b) Sally threw
c) to her friend
d) none of the above

3. Which of the following parts of speech do adverbial phrases **never** modify?

a) Nouns
b) Verbs
c) Adjectives
d) Adverbs

4. Identify the type of adverbial phrase used in the following sentence.
“The group worked late to get the job done early.”

a) Intensifier
b) Infinitive phrase
c) Prepositional phrase

d) Mitigator
e) None of the above

5. Which of the following do adverbial phrases typically **not** describe?
a) Reason or purpose
b) Time
c) Location or direction
d) Possession

Participle Phrases

Definition

Participles are words formed from verbs that can function as adjectives, as gerunds, or to form the **continuous** and **perfect** tenses of verbs. **Past participles** are often (but not always) formed by adding “-d” or “-ed” to the end of the verb, while **present participles** are always formed by adding “-ing” to the end.

When they function as adjectives, participles can form **participle phrases** (sometimes known as **participle clauses**) with any information that modifies or complements them. Because they function as adjectives, participle phrases modify nouns, **noun phrases**, or pronouns in a sentence.

Using participle phrases

We can form phrases using present, past, perfect, and passive perfect participles—each one changes the way the noun is modified. Where they appear in a sentence also impacts the sentence’s meaning, as well as the way in which they’re punctuated.

Present participle phrases

If we use the present participle in a phrase, we give the phrase an **active** meaning. In other words, the noun being modified is the **agent** of the action expressed by the present participle. For example:

- “**Singing in the shower**, I was oblivious to the doorbell ringing.” (*I* was singing.)
- “James, **hiding under the bed**, was completely silent.” (*James* was hiding.)

Past participle phrases

If we use the past participle to form an adjectival phrase, the noun being modified is either given a passive role in the action, or else is being described. For example:

- "My car, **destroyed in the accident**, was taken away by the mechanics."
- "My sister, **exhausted after a long day's work**, fell asleep on the sofa."

In the first example, the noun phrase *my car* is not the agent of the action, but is being **acted upon**; it has been *destroyed* by another driver, and so it has a passive role. In the second example, *my sister* is also not the agent of the verb *exhaust*. Instead, *exhausted* is used to describe how she feels.

Perfect participle phrases

When we want to emphasize that one event happened before another, we can use the structure *having + past participle*—this is sometimes known as the **perfect participle**. Perfect participle phrases, like the present participle, designate that the noun being modified is the **agent** of the participle's action. For example:

- "***Having seen* the movie before**, I wouldn't want to see it again."
- "***Having done* so much exercise this morning**, we should eat a big lunch."
- "She was exhausted, ***having stayed up* all night**."

Passive perfect participle phrases

If we want to describe a noun that was passively acted upon in an event that happened before another one, we can use what is known as the **passive perfect participle** (sometimes called the **perfect passive participle**), which is structured as *having + been + past participle*. For example:

- "***Having been dismissed* from class early**, Thomas decided to explore the river by his house."
- "The turkey, ***having been burnt* to a crisp**, was thrown in the garbage."
- "The book is ancient, ***having been written*** nearly 3,000 years ago."

This is similar to how past participle phrases are used, but the emphasis is placed on the first action happening further in the past. And whereas past participle phrases can be used to describe a noun or pronoun, passive perfect participle phrases stress the *action* being done to the noun—they cannot be used to create simple descriptions. For instance:

✔ “My sister, **exhausted after a long day’s work**, fell asleep on the sofa.” (correct)

✖ “My sister, ***having been exhausted*** **after a long day’s work**, fell asleep on the sofa.” (incorrect)

Sentence Placement

Where a participle phrase appears in a sentence changes the way we punctuate it, as does its importance to the meaning of the sentence as a whole.

Initial position

When a participle phrase occurs in the initial position, it is usually separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma. For example:

- “**Running to the car**, the boy welcomed his father home after three months away.”
- “**Singing in the shower**, I was oblivious to the doorbell ringing.”
- “**Scared**, my sister slept with the light on.”

Middle position

When the phrase occurs in the middle position, and is not essential to the meaning of the sentence, it should be set apart from the rest of the sentence by two commas. For example:

- “My sister, **exhausted**, has fallen asleep on the sofa.”
- “James, **hiding under the bed**, was completely silent.”
- “The turkey, **having been burnt to a crisp**, was thrown in the garbage.”

If we took the participle phrases out, each of the examples above would still mean the same thing, just with less descriptive detail.

However, if a participle phrase occurs in the middle position and is essential to the meaning of the sentence, it should **not** be set apart by commas. For example:

- “The students **finished with their work** may have a break.”
- “Jackets **left behind** will be donated.”
- “Participants **breaking the rules** will be removed from the competition.”

If we took the participle phrases out of *these* examples, we would be left with completely different meanings, as each phrase describes an essential aspect about the noun to set it apart from others. To make it clear that this description is integral to the sentence's meaning, we do not use commas to set it apart.

Final position

If the participle phrase occurs in the final position immediately after the noun that it modifies, it doesn't need a comma. For example:

- "We looked for hours and finally found James **hiding under the bed**."
- "The cat had no interest in the poor dog **wagging its tail**."
- "I was in such a hurry I didn't notice my jacket **left on the table**."

However, when it occurs in final position but **not** immediately after the noun that it modifies, it **does** need a comma. For example:

- "It was obvious he really enjoyed the meal, **having helped himself to more dessert**."
- "My sister cried as she packed up her belongings, **saddened at the idea of moving out of her childhood home**."
- "Most of the puzzle pieces have disappeared, **misplaced after so many years**."

Common mistakes

When we use participle phrases as adjectives, it's important that the noun modified is clearly stated and that the phrase appears as close to it as possible. Otherwise, we run the risk of errors known as **misplaced modifiers** and **dangling modifiers**.

Misplaced modifiers

A **misplaced modifier** can occur when there is more than one noun in the sentence. If we don't place the participle phrase close enough to the noun that it modifies, it may seem that it modifies another noun. For example:

- "**Terrified after watching a scary movie**, *my father* had to comfort my little sister."

In the above sentence, the participle phrase *terrified after watching a scary movie* is supposed to modify *my little sister*. However, since *my father* appears closer to the participial phrase, it seems it is the father who is terrified. The sentence should be rewritten to correct the misplaced modifier. For example:

• “My father had to comfort my sister, **terrified after watching a scary movie**.”

or;

• “**Terrified after watching a scary movie**, *my sister* had to be comforted by *my father*.”

or;

• “My sister, **terrified after watching a scary movie**, had to be comforted by my father.”

Dangling modifiers

A **dangling modifier** occurs when we don’t clearly state the noun that is supposed to be modified by the participle. For example:

• “**Walking down the road**, the birds were singing.”

Because the sentence does not state who was walking down the road, is seems that it was *the birds*, which is probably not the intended meaning. The sentence needs to include another noun or pronoun being described by the phrase to correct the dangling modifier. For example:

• “**Walking down the road**, I (or *she, he, Mary, the couple*, etc.) heard the birds singing.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Participle phrases have the function of __________ in a sentence.

a) verbs
b) adjectives
c) adverbs
d) nouns

2. Where can a participle phrase appear in a sentence?

a) At the beginning
b) In the middle
c) At the end
d) A & B
e) B & C

f) All of the above

3. Which of the following sentences is punctuated **correctly**?

a) “Anthony, tired of failing his exams, started studying every night after school.”
b) “Anthony tired of failing his exams started studying every night after school.”
c) “Anthony, tired of failing his exams started studying every night after school.”
d) “Anthony tired of failing his exams, started studying every night after school.”

4. Identify what **kind** of participle phrase is used in the following sentence: “Having worked all her life, Susanne was ready to enjoy her retirement.”

a) Present participle phrase
b) Past participle phrase
c) Perfect participle phrase
d) Passive perfect participle phrase

5. When should a participle phrase appearing in the **middle** of a sentence be set apart by commas?

a) When it identifies a noun as an active agent
b) When it is essential to the meaning of the sentence
c) When it is not essential to the meaning of the sentence
d) Always
e) Never

6. What kind of participle phrase indicates a noun that is **acted upon** (not the agent of the participle’s action)?

a) Present participle phrase
b) Past participle phrase
c) Perfect participle phrase
d) Passive perfect participle phrase
e) A & C
f) B & D

Absolute Phrases

Definition

An **absolute phrase** (sometimes known as an **absolute construction**) is a grammatically independent group of words that serves to modify or add information to an entire sentence.

An absolute phrase is usually made up of a **noun** or **pronoun** and a **participle**, along with any modifying information. Because of their unique construction, absolute phrases are more commonly found in descriptive writing, such as prose, than in speech or even in everyday writing.

Using absolute phrases

We generally use absolute phrases at the beginning of a sentence to introduce additional information, or at the end of a sentence to provide a final comment on the sentence as a whole.

Because absolute phrases are considered **parenthetical** (meaning they are not an integral part of the sentence), we always set them apart by **commas** or **dashes**.

For example:

- "**The students having left early**, I decided to catch up on some grading."
- "**The test finished**, Jason heaved a sigh of relief."
- "I hope to get into Harvard next year—**God willing**."
- "She walked out the door, **her head turning for a last look at home**."

It is also possible to use an absolute phrase in the middle of a sentence to highlight or put extra emphasis on the extra information. For instance:

- "The teacher, **her students having left early**, decided to catch up on some grading."
- "I hope—**God willing**—to get into Harvard next year."

Omitting the participle

When a participle of the verb *be* (*being* or **having been**) is part of an absolute phrase, it is very common to omit it altogether. For instance:

- "**All things *being* equal**, I'd rather finish this next week."

- “**All things equal**, I’d rather finish this next week.”
- “I started getting nervous, ***having been* alone for so long**.”
- “I started getting nervous, **alone for so long**.”

However, the participle of *be* should not be omitted when doing so might lead to a confusing construction. For instance:

✔ “**That *being* the case**, we should resolve the issue quickly.” (correct)
✖ “**That the case**, we should resolve the issue quickly.” (incorrect)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **usually** found in an absolute phrase?

a) A gerund
b) An infinitive
c) A participle
d) A finite verb

2. Where is an absolute phrase **usually** located in a sentence?

a) At the beginning
b) In the middle
c) At the end
d) A & B
e) A & C
f) All of the above

3. Which of the following is **not** used to separate an absolute phrase from the rest of the sentence?

a) A semicolon
b) A comma
c) A dash
d) Parentheses

4. When can a participle be omitted?

a) When the participle is of an auxiliary verb
b) When the participle is of the verb *be*

c) When the participle does not have a subject
d) Always
e) Never

Appositives

Definition

An **appositive** is a **noun** that serves to describe or rename another noun (or pronoun) that appears directly before it in a sentence.

When an appositive is made up of a **noun phrase**, it is known as an **appositive phrase**.

Proper nouns as appositives

Appositives that are made up of one noun or more without any determiners or modifiers are almost always **proper nouns**, which serve to name **common nouns** that appears before them. For example:

• “Our cat, **Scruffles**, hates being left home alone.” (The proper noun *Scruffles* provides a name for the common noun *cat*.)

• “Your friend **Jack** is here to see you.” (The proper noun *Jack* provides a name for the common noun *friend*.)

• “America’s first president, **George Washington**, was born in the colony of Virginia.”

Appellations

Appellations are additional words added to a person’s name, which generally become capitalized as part of the proper noun. Appellations are not considered appositives in their own right, but they can be used **as** appositives in conjunction with the proper noun. For example:

• “The heir, **Prince William**, is adored by many.” (The proper noun *William* with the appellation *Prince* provides a name for the common noun *heir*.)

• “Italy was invaded by the conqueror **Attila the Hun** in 452.” (The proper noun *Attila* with the appellation *the Hun* provides a name for the common noun *conqueror*.)

Appositive phrases

It is also very common to use **noun phrases** (which consist of a noun accompanied by any determiners and modifiers) as appositives to provide more descriptive identifying information about a noun; these appositive phrases can modify both common and proper nouns. They usually begin with the **articles** *the, a,* and *an*. For example:

- “The office, **an old Georgian building**, badly needed repairs.” (In the appositive phrase, the head noun *building* is modified by the article *an* and the adjectives *old* and *Georgian*.)
- “Janet Smith, **a former student of mine**, is joining the faculty next spring.” (In the appositive phrase, the head noun *student* is modified by the article *a*, the adjective *former*, and the prepositional phrase *of mine*.)
- “Just meet me at my car, **the old station wagon parked across the street**.” (In the appositive phrase, the head **compound noun** *station wagon* is modified by the article *the*, the adjective *old*, and the **participle phrase** *parked across the street*.)

While it is most common to use the articles *the, a,* and *an,* we can also use indefinite pronouns (such as *one* or *some*) to begin an appositive phrase, as in:

- “My father, **one of the toughest lawyers in the state**, always wanted me to follow in his footsteps.”
- “The scientists, **some of the most respected in their fields**, collaborated on a paper on the dangers of climate change.”

Introductory appositive phrases

Appositives most commonly appear directly after the noun they identify, as we have seen in all of the examples so far.

However, we can also place an appositive before a noun when it serves to introduce a sentence. In this case, it does not need to be immediately adjacent to the noun. This adds emphasis to the information the appositive provides. Note that we can only use appositive phrases (as opposed to proper nouns functioning as appositives) at the beginning of sentences. For example:

- “**The only one from her class to graduate with honors**, Ms. Thomson now runs one of the largest businesses in the world.”
- “**A true classic**, this book inspired a generation of young readers.”

- “**A staunch conservative**, the New York senator has promised to reinvigorate industry in her state.”

Restrictive vs. non-restrictive appositives

Restrictive appositives

Appositives that are necessary for the sentence’s meaning are known as **restrictive appositives**. These are often **proper nouns**, and they are integrated into the sentence without commas. For example:

- “The popular restaurant **Joe’s Place** gets thousands of diners a day.”

Without the information the appositive provides, the sentence would be confusing and the reader would not know *which* restaurant the sentence is referring to. Other times, the sentence would still make logical sense, but the implied meaning changes slightly. Consider, for example, these two sentences:

- “My brother lives in New York.”
- “My brother **Michael** lives in New York.”

Both sentences make sense. However, in the first example, it is implied that the speaker only has one brother, and he lives in New York. In the second example, it sounds like the speaker has specified his brother’s name because he has more than one brother.

We can also use appositive phrases restrictively when we are making a comparison between two descriptions of the same person. For example:

- “Jeremy Jones **the professor** has gained much more praise than Jeremy Jones **the novelist** ever did.”

Non-restrictive appositives

Appositives that are **not** essential to the meaning of the sentence are known as **non-restrictive appositives**. We set non-restrictive appositives apart from the rest of the sentence with commas. For example:

- “Neil Armstrong, **the first person to walk on the moon**, was a pilot in the Korean War.”
- “My hometown, **Denver**, has a fantastic zoo.”

- “**A brilliant and eager student**, he graduated from college at the age of 19.”

In each of the above sentences, there would be no potential misunderstanding or loss in meaning if the appositives were left out.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What types of nouns are used as appositives **without** any modifiers?

a) Common nouns
b) Proper nouns
c) Compound nouns
d) Abstract nouns

2. Which of the following are used to make **appositive phrases**?

a) Noun phrases
b) Noun clauses
c) Adjective phrases
d) Relative clauses

3. Identify the appositive in the following sentence:
“Because of the recession, my son, a software engineer, had to move home when he lost his job.”

a) Because of the recession
b) my son
c) a software engineer
d) had to move home

4. Identify the appositive in the following sentence:
“Ask your sister Mary if she’d like to come to a movie on Saturday.”

a) sister
b) Mary
c) she
d) a movie

5. Appositive **phrases** are most commonly ________________.

a) Restrictive
b) Non-restrictive

Clauses

Definition

Clauses are groups of words that contain both a **subject** and a **predicate**.

There are two main types of clauses: **independent clauses**, which can function independently as sentences, and **dependent clauses**, which depend on an independent clause to form a sentence.

We'll briefly cover the various types of clauses below. To learn more about how clauses are formed and used, continue on to each individual section.

Independent Clauses

An **independent clause** (also known as a **main clause**) is a clause that forms a complete, independent thought. It does not require anything else to be considered complete, and so it can stand alone as a sentence.

A single independent clause is known as a **simple sentence**. It contains a subject and a predicate, each of which can have **modifiers**.

For example:

- "I refuse."
- "They like to stay in fancy hotels."
- "The girl in the red jacket ran quickly towards the bus."
- "The Beatles were a great band."
- "I wish it weren't Monday."

In each of the above cases, the independent clause remains able to stand alone as a simple sentence.

Sometimes we form a sentence with two (and occasionally more) independent clauses, which is known as a **compound sentence**. We join the independent clauses together with a comma and a **conjunction** or a semicolon without a conjunction. For example:

- "She wanted to play tennis**, but** he wanted to play basketball."
- "My brother lives in Detroit**;** I wish I lived there."

Dependent Clauses

A **dependent clause** (also called a **subordinate clause**) is a clause that relies on the information from an independent clause to form a complete, logical thought. As such, it cannot stand on its own to form a sentence.

Dependent clauses are usually marked by *dependent words,* such as **subordinating conjunctions**, **relative pronouns**, or **relative adverbs**, which link them to independent clauses in a sentence.

For example:

- "***Whenever*** **I travel**, *I like to stay in fancy hotels*."
- "*We struck up a great conversation with a person* ***whom*** **we met on the plane**."
- "*She found it strange* ***that*** **they like to eat sushi**."

In each of the examples above, the groups of words in **bold** are clauses, because they each have a subject (*I, we,* and *they*) and a predicate (*travel, met on the plane,* and *like to eat sushi*). However, we can also see that they are **dependent clauses** because of their dependent words—*whenever, whom* and *that*. Because of this, they cannot stand alone as a sentence; they depend on the information from the independent clauses (in *italics*) to be logically complete.

Categories of Dependent Clauses

Because dependent clauses must be a part of or attached to an independent clause, they serve a variety of grammatical functions depending on what type of dependent clause we are using. There are three primary categories of dependent clauses: **noun clauses, relative clauses**, and **adverbial clauses**. We'll look at a few examples of each. To learn more about them, continue on to the section **Dependent Clauses**, or to the individual sections for each type of clause.

Noun Clauses

Noun clauses are dependent clauses that function as nouns. Because of this, noun clauses can perform all the roles that a normal noun could play in a sentence, such as **the subject** or the **object** of a verb. For example:

- "***Wherever*** **we decide to go** is fine with me." (subject of the sentence)
- "I want to see ***what*** **is available** before I make a purchase." (direct object of the verb *see*)

Relative Clauses

Relative clauses, also called **adjective clauses**, provide descriptive information about a noun. These clauses can either be essential to the sentence (restrictive clauses) or non-essential (non-restrictive clauses). They are introduced by either a **relative pronoun** or a **relative adverb**.

Here are some examples:

- “The man, ***whom*** **I’d heard so much about**, gave an electrifying speech to the crowd.” (non-restrictive clause)
- “The book ***that*** **I wrote** is being published in January.” (restrictive clause)
- “Any student ***whose*** **desk is not clean** will have detention after class.” (restrictive clause)
- “I love casual Fridays, ***when*** **we get to wear jeans to work**.” (non-restrictive clause)

Adverbial Clauses

An **adverbial** or **adverb clause** is used, like a regular adverb, to modify adjectives, verbs, adverbs, and sometimes entire clauses. Adverbial clauses use **subordinating conjunctions** to connect to an **independent clause**. For example:

- “I went to the park ***before*** **my parents woke up**.” (modifies the verb *went*)
- “Animals are cute ***while*** **they’re young**.” (modifies the adjective *cute*)
- “I work better ***when*** **I have total privacy**.” (modifies the adverb *better*)
- “I have loved you ***since*** **the day I met you**.” (modifies the entire clause *I have loved you*)

Omitted subjects in imperative sentences

Every clause in English must have both a subject and a predicate. However, when we form **imperative sentences** to issue commands or requests, the subject is always implied because the sentence is directed at someone specific (either the reader or the person being spoken to). In this case, we never include the subject. For example:

- “Do your homework!”

- “Please open the window.”
- “Let me know when the documents arrive.”

We sometimes include a person’s name to specify who is being addressed, but this is not the same as the subject of the sentence. It is known as a **noun of address** (also known as a **vocative**), which is considered parenthetical and set apart by commas. For instance:

- “**John,** do your homework!”
- “Please open the window**, Mary**.”
- “Let me know when the documents arrive**, sir**.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What kinds of clauses can function as sentences on their own?

a) Independent clauses
b) Dependent clauses

2. Which of the following **cannot** be used to link a dependent clause to an independent clause?

a) Relative pronouns
b) Relative adverbs
c) Subordinating conjunctions
d) Coordinating conjunctions

3. How can two independent clauses be joined to form a **compound sentence**?

a) A comma followed by a subordinating conjunction
b) A semicolon followed by a coordinating conjunction
c) A comma followed by a coordinating conjunction
d) A semicolon
e) A & B
f) C & D

4. In which of the following ways can a dependent clause function grammatically in a sentence?

a) As a noun
b) As an adjective

c) As an adverb
d) All of the above
e) B & C
f) None of the above

5. In what types of sentences is the subject **not** included?
a) Interrogative sentences (questions)
b) Imperative sentences (commands or requests)
c) Declarative sentences (statements)
d) None of the above

Independent Clauses

Definition

An **independent clause** (also known as a **main clause**) is a **clause** that forms a complete, independent thought. Like all clauses, an independent clause contains a **subject** and a **predicate** (which consists of a verb and any related information).

Forming sentences

An independent clause does not require anything else to be considered complete, and so it can stand alone as a sentence. This is known as a **simple sentence**.

For example:

- “I refuse.”
- “The wind blows.”
- “Dogs bark.”
- “Bees sting.”
- “Cats meow.”

In the above examples, the **subject** begins the sentences and the **predicate** ends them. The predicate (in each of these cases made up of just a verb) contains all the necessary information about the subject to be considered logical, so each is considered an independent clause.

The predicate of an independent clause can also contain additional information that modifies the verb. For example:

- “I like to stay *in fancy hotels*.” (**prepositional phrase** used as an adverb)
- “She wanted *to play basketball*.” (infinitive phrase used as the direct object of the verb)

In each of the above cases, the independent clause remains able to stand alone as a simple sentence, despite the addition of qualifying information.

Forming sentences with dependent clauses

A **dependent clause**, on the other hand, relies on the information from an independent clause to form a complete, logical thought. Dependent clauses (also known as **subordinate clauses**) are usually marked by *dependent words*, such as a **subordinating conjunctions** or **relative pronouns**. Here are some examples of dependent clauses:

- “*whenever* I travel” (subordinating conjunction)
- “*whom* we met on the plane” (relative pronoun)

We can see that the clauses above do not express a complete idea—they require independent clauses to be logically complete:

- “*Whenever I travel*, I like to stay in fancy hotels.”
- “We struck up a great conversation with a person *whom we met on the plane*.”

An independent clause that contains or is connected to at least one dependent clause, as we see in the above two examples, forms what is known as a **complex sentence**.

Forming sentences with multiple independent clauses

A sentence formed by two independent clauses is known as a **compound sentence**. For example:

- “She wanted to play tennis**, but** he wanted to play basketball.”

If at least one of those independent clauses contains a dependent clause, then the sentence is considered a **compound-complex sentence**, as in:

- “*Because I love to read,* I like to visit the library**, and** I enjoy going to book stores, too.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is true of **both** independent and dependent clauses?

a) Able to stand alone as a simple sentence
b) Contains a subject
c) Contains a predicate
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) All of the above

2. Which of the following is true **only** of an independent clause?

a) Able to stand alone as a simple sentence
b) Contains a subject
c) Contains a predicate
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) All of the above

3. What is a sentence called that is formed from an independent clause and at least one dependent clause?

a) compound sentence
b) dependent sentence
c) complex sentence
d) compound-complex sentence

4. Is the following an independent or a dependent clause? (Capitalization and punctuation have been intentionally left out.)
“he was walking home”

a) independent clause
b) dependent clause

5. Is the following an independent or a dependent clause? (Capitalization and punctuation have been intentionally left out.)
“while I waited for the bus”

a) independent clause

b) dependent clause

Dependent Clauses

Definition

A **dependent clause** (also called a **subordinate clause**) is a clause that relies on the information from an **independent clause** to form a complete, logical thought. As such, it cannot stand on its own to form a sentence.

There are three types of dependent clause: **noun clauses**, **relative clauses** (also called **adjective clauses**), and **adverbial clauses**.

Forming Dependent Clauses

A **clause**, whether it is dependent or independent, always consists of two parts—a **subject** and a **predicate** (though the subject can be implied in certain situations). The predicate consists of a verb or **verb phrase** (a verb and any objects or modifiers relating to it), while the subject consists of a **noun**, a **pronoun**, or a **phrase** containing either.

Dependent clauses are usually marked by *dependent words,* such as **subordinating conjunctions** or **relative pronouns**.

Here are some examples of dependent clauses:

- "*whenever* I travel"
- "*whom* we met on the plane"
- "*that* they like to eat sushi"

We can see that each of the examples above is a clause, because they each have a subject (*I, we,* and *they*) and a predicate (*travel, met on the plane,* and *like to eat sushi*). However, we can also see that they are dependent, as they do not express a complete idea—they require independent clauses to be logically complete:

- "**Whenever I travel**, I like to stay in fancy hotels."
- "We struck up a great conversation with a person **whom we met on the plane**."
- "She found it strange **that they like to eat sushi**."

Functions of Dependent Clauses

Because dependent clauses must be a part of or attached to an independent clause, they serve a variety of grammatical functions. These vary depending on what type of dependent clause we are using.

Noun Clauses

Noun clauses are dependent clauses that function as nouns. Because of this, noun clauses can perform all the roles that a normal noun would play in a sentence: they can act as **the subject**, a direct or indirect **object**, a **predicate noun**, the object of a **preposition**, or an **adjective complement**. Let's look at an example of each.

The Subject

- "***Wherever*** **we decide to go** is fine with me." (*Wherever we decide to go* is the subject of the linking verb *is*.)

Direct Object

- "I want to see ***what*** **is available** before I make a purchase." (*what is available* is the direct object of the verb *see*.)

Indirect Object

- "I'll send ***whoever*** **is responsible** a strongly worded letter." (*Whoever is responsible* is the indirect object of the verb *send*, and *a strongly worded letter* is the direct object.)

Predicate Noun

- "The thing I wish for most is ***that*** **people would all just get along**." (*That people would all just get along* is the predicate noun of the linking verb *is*, renaming the subject *the thing I wish for most*.)

Object of a preposition

- "The is the man to ***whom*** **I owe my life**." (*Whom I owe my life* is the object of the preposition *to*, acting as an adjective to describe the noun *man*.)

Adjective complement

- “I’m thrilled ***that* you are coming to visit**!” (*That you are coming to visit* is the complement of the adjective *thrilled*.)

Relative Clauses

Relative clauses are also called **adjective clauses** because they provide descriptive information about a noun or noun phrase. These clauses can either be essential to the sentence (restrictive clauses) or non-essential (non-restrictive clauses).

Relative clauses are introduced by either a **relative pronoun** or a **relative adverb**.

Here are some examples:

- “The man, ***whom* I’d heard so much about**, gave an electrifying speech to the crowd.” (*Whom I’d heard so much about* is a non-restrictive clause modifying the word *man*.)
- “The escaped giraffe, ***which* had been on the loose for weeks**, was finally captured.” (*Which had been on the loose for weeks* is a non-restrictive clause modifying the word *giraffe*.)
- “The book ***that* I wrote** is being published in January.” (*That I wrote* is a restrictive clause modifying the word *book*.)
- “Any student ***whose* desk is not clean** will have detention after class.” (*Whose desk is not clean* is a restrictive clause modifying the word *student*.)
- “The house ***where* I was born** is a very special place.” (*Where I was born* is a restrictive clause modifying the word *house*.)
- “I love casual Fridays, ***when* we get to wear jeans to work**.” (*When we get to wear jeans to work* is a non-restrictive clause modifying the word *Fridays*.)

Adverbial Clauses

An **adverbial** or **adverb clause** is used, like a regular adverb, to modify adjectives, verbs, and adverbs. Adverbial clauses use **subordinating conjunctions** to connect to an **independent clause**. For example:

- “I went to the park ***before* my parents woke up**.” (*Before my parents woke up* is an adverbial clause that modifies the verb *went*.)
- “She waited on the shore ***until* the ship departed**.” (*Until the ship departed* is an adverbial clause that modifies the verb *waited*.)

- “Animals are cute ***while* they’re young**.” (*While they’re young* is an adverbial clause that modifies the adjective *cute*.)
- “I work better ***when* I have total privacy**.” (*When I have total privacy* is an adverbial clause that modifies the adverb *better*.)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is true of **both** independent and dependent clauses?

a) Unable to stand alone as simple sentences
b) Contain a subject
c) Contain a predicate
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) All of the above

2. Which of the following is true **only** of dependent clauses?

a) Unable to stand alone as simple sentences
b) Contain a subject
c) Contain a predicate
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) All of the above

3. Which type of dependent clause is able to function as **the subject** of a sentence?

a) relative clause
b) noun clause
c) adverbial clause
d) All of the above
e) None of the above

4. Which type of dependent clause is able to function as a **verb** in a sentence?

a) relative clause
b) noun clause
c) adverbial clause
d) All of the above

e) None of the above

5. Identify the type of dependent clause (in **bold**) in the following sentence:
"I like to wake up **before the sun rises**."

a) relative clause
b) noun clause
c) adverbial clause
d) All of the above
e) None of the above

Noun Clauses

Definition

A **noun clause** is a type of **dependent clause** that is able to function grammatically like a noun in a sentence. As such, it serves to name a person, place, or thing.

Because of this, noun clauses can perform all the roles that a normal noun would fill in a sentence: they can act as **the subject**, a direct or indirect **object**, a **predicate noun**, an **adjective complement**, or the object of a **preposition**.

Forming Noun Clauses

Noun clauses most commonly begin with the words *that, how, if,* and the "wh-" words—*what, whatever, where, wherever, when, whenever, why, which, whichever, who, whom, whoever, whomever, whether*, and *whatever*.

Like all clauses, a noun clause contains a **subject** (sometimes represented by one of the words above) and a **predicate** (a verb and any additional information attached to it).

Below we'll look at some examples of various noun clauses performing the different functions of a noun:

Subjects

The **subject** performs, occupies, or controls the action of the verb.

- "***Wherever* we decide to go** is fine with me." (*Wherever we decide to go* is the subject of the linking verb *is*.)

- “***Which* option is best** remains to be seen.” (*Which option is best* is the subject of the verb *remains*.)
- “***Whoever* wants to go** should sign up with their supervisor.” (*Whoever wants to go* is the subject of the phrasal verb *sign up*.)
- “***That* you act so frivolously with money** shows you aren’t ready to lead this company.” (*That you act so frivolously with money* is the subject of the verb *shows*.)

Objects

Remember that **intransitive verbs** do **not** take direct and indirect objects, so you will only find noun clauses used as the objects of **transitive verbs**.

Direct objects

A **direct object** is a person or thing that directly receives the action of the verb

- “I will enjoy ***whatever* we decide to do**.” (*Whatever we decide to do* is the direct object of the verb *enjoy*.)
- “We’ve decided to go ***wherever* the wind takes us**.” (*Wherever the wind takes us* is the direct object of the verb *go*.)
- “I want to see ***what* is available** before I make a purchase.” (*what is available* is the direct object of the verb *see*.)
- “At this point, we’ll take ***whatever* we can get**.” (*Whatever we can get* is the direct object of the verb *take*.)

Indirect objects

An **indirect object** is a person (or sometimes thing) that receives the **direct object** via the action of the verb. For example:

- “I’ll send ***whoever* is responsible** a strongly worded letter.” (*Whoever is responsible* is the indirect object of the verb *send*, and *a strongly worded letter* is the direct object.)
- “Just pay ***whomever you hire*** $100, as we agreed.” (*Whomever you hire* is the indirect object of the verb *pay*, and *$100* is the direct object.)
- “I will give ***whatever* you propose** my full support.” (*Whatever you propose* is the indirect object of the verb *give*, and *my full support* is the direct object.)

Predicate nouns

Predicate nouns are a subset of a larger category known as **subject complements** (including **predicate pronouns** and **predicative adjectives**), which rename or re-identify the subject after a **linking verb** (usually a form of the verb *be*). For example:

• "Japan is ***where*** **I want to go most**." (*Where I want to go most* is the predicate noun of the linking verb *is*, renaming the subject *Japan*.)

• "The thing I wish for most is ***that*** **people would all just get along**." (*That people would all just get along* is the predicate noun of the linking verb *is*, renaming the subject *the thing I wish for most*.)

• "Politicians are ***who*** **create the laws**." (*Who create the laws* is the predicate noun of the linking verb *are*, renaming the subject *politicians*.)

Objects of prepositions

A preposition is followed by its object to create a **prepositional phrase**, which can function as an adverb or an adjective in a sentence. For example:

• "The is the man to ***whom*** **I owe my life**." (*Whom I owe my life* is the object of the preposition *to*, acting as an adjective to describe the noun *man*.)

• "I ran into a few people from ***where*** **I used to live**." (*Where I used to live* is the object of the preposition *from*, acting as an adjective to describe the noun *people*.)

• "They were angry because of ***what*** **they found out**." (*What they found out* is the object of the compound preposition *because of*, acting as an adverb to describe the adjective *angry*.)

• "She can study with ***whomever*** **she likes**." (*Whomever she likes* is the object of the preposition *with*, acting as an adverb to modify the verb *study*.)

Adjective complements

An adjective complement is a clause or phrase that completes the meaning of a **predicative adjective**. For example:

• "We were curious ***why*** **they decided to leave**." (*Why they decided to leave* is the complement of the adjective *curious*.)

• "I'm thrilled ***that*** **you are coming to visit**!" (*That you are coming to visit* is the complement of the adjective *thrilled*.)

- “It’s so wonderful ***what* he did for those orphans**.” (*What he did for those orphans* is the complement of the adjective *wonderful*.)

- “They’re unsure ***whether* this is the right decision**.” (*Whether this is the right decision* is the complement of the adjective *unsure*.)

Multiple noun clauses

Because of their various roles, a sentence can have multiple noun clauses functioning in different ways. Take the following sentence, for example:

- “***What* I decide** will determine ***who* gets the promotion**.”

Here, the noun clause *what I decide* is acting as the subject of the sentence, while the clause *who gets the promotion* is acting as the direct object of the verb *determine*.

Here’s another example:

- “***What they want to know*** is ***why* you think this is acceptable**.”

What they want to know is a noun clause acting as the subject, and *why you think this is acceptable* is a predicate noun that renames the subject.

Replacing a noun clause with a pronoun

A noun clause can always be replaced by a single pronoun (such as *you, he, she, it, they, there*, etc.), the same way a normal noun would. If you are uncertain whether a part of a sentence is functioning as a noun clause, try replacing it with a pronoun; if the sentence is still grammatically complete, then the part you replaced is a noun clause. (The only exception to this rule is when a noun clause is used as an **adjective complement**, since a pronoun cannot function this way.)

Let’s try replacing some of the examples we used above with pronouns:

- “***Whoever* wants to go** should sign up with their supervisor.”
- “**They** should sign up with their supervisor.”

- “I want to see ***what* is available** before I make a purchase.”
- “I want to see **it** before I make a purchase.”

- “Just pay ***whomever you hire*** $100, as we agreed.”
- “Just pay **her** $100, as we agreed.”

- “The thing I wish for most is ***that*** **people would all just get along**.”
- “The thing I wish for most is **this**.”

- “She can study with ***whomever*** **she likes**.”
- “She can study with **you**.”

- “***What*** **they want to know** is ***why*** **you think this is acceptable**.”
- “**That** is **it**.”

In each of these examples, the new sentence is still grammatically complete (even if it seems to be lacking information), proving that a noun clause was used in each case.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** a function of a noun clause?

a) Acting as the subject of a sentence
b) Acting as the object of a verb
c) Modifying an adjective, adverb, or verb
d) Following a linking verb to rename the subject
e) Acting as the object of a preposition

2. Which of the following can be used to begin a noun clause?

a) you
b) there
c) it
d) that

3. Identify the function of the noun phrase in the following sentence:
“I wish **that I were taller**.”

a) The subject
b) Direct object of the verb
c) Indirect object of the verb
d) Predicate noun

4. Identify the noun clause in the following sentence:
“The boss, who is away on vacation, should know what was discussed.”

a) The boss
b) who is away on vacation

c) should know what
d) what was discussed

Relative Clauses

Definition

Relative clauses (also known as **adjective clauses** or **adjectival clauses**) are **dependent clauses** that provide descriptive information about a noun or noun phrase. Relative clauses are introduced by either a **relative pronoun** or a **relative adverb**, and the information they provide can either be essential or nonessential to the completeness of the sentence.

Relative Pronouns and Relative Adverbs

Relative pronouns are used to help clarify who or what a sentence is talking about, or else give extra information about the person or thing. Like other pronouns, they have the grammatical function of nouns, and can be either the subject or object of the relative clause. There are five common relative pronouns: *who, whom, which, whose,* and *that*.

Here are some examples of relative clauses introduced by relative pronouns:

- “There’s the woman ***who*** **sits next to me on the bus**.”
- “The man, ***whom*** **I’d heard so much about**, gave an electrifying speech to the crowd.”*
- “The escaped giraffe, ***which*** **had been on the loose for weeks**, was finally captured.”
- “The book ***that*** **I wrote** is being published in January.”
- “Any student ***whose*** **desk is not clean** will have detention after class.”

Relative adverbs, on the other hand, are used when the information relates to a place, time, or the reason an action took place; like many other adverbs, they modify a verb in the sentence. The relative adverbs are *where, when*, and *why*.

For example:

- “The house ***where*** **I was born** is a very special place.” (*Where* modifies the verb *born*.)

- “I love casual Fridays, ***when* we get to wear jeans to work**.” (*When* modifies the verb *wear*.)
- “I don’t know ***why* he got so angry**.” (*Why* modifies the verb *get*.)

(*Usage Note: *Whom* is becoming increasingly rare in modern English outside of formal writing or speech. Although it is technically correct to use *whom* when it functions as the object of a clause and *who* when it functions as the subject, it is much more common to use *who* in both cases.)

Restrictive and Non-restrictive Clauses

Clauses that provide essential information are known as **restrictive clauses** (sometimes also called **defining clauses**), while those that provide nonessential information are known as **non-restrictive clauses** (sometimes called **non-defining clauses**). Because non-restrictive clauses are not integral, they are separated from the rest of the sentence by commas.

Restrictive relative clauses

Restrictive relative clauses identify a particular noun, giving us information about it that we need to know in order to understand the speaker’s meaning. Because this type of clause is integral to the sentence, it is not separated by any punctuation. For example:

- “I saw the guy ***who* delivers my mail** in town yesterday.”
- “I’ll always remember the river ***where* we learned to swim**.”
- “Yesterday was the day ***when* I met my husband**.”
- “I sat on the chair ***that* has a wobbly leg**.”
- “Do you know the reason ***why* the sky is blue**?”
- “She’s the person ***whose* daughter goes to Harvard**.”

The restrictive relative clause in each of the sentences above is in **bold**. If we remove the relative clause, we are left with questions about who or what the speaker is referring to:

- “I saw the guy in town yesterday.” (What guy?)
- “I’ll always remember the river.” (What river?)

- “Yesterday was the day.” (What day?)
- “I sat on the chair.” (What chair?)
- “Do you know the reason?” (The reason for what?)
- “She’s the person.” (What person?)

When you remove a restrictive relative clause, the nouns are no longer identifiable and the sentences become logically incomplete.

It is worth noting that the relative pronoun *which* is not used to introduce restrictive relative clauses. However, the authenticity of this rule is often contested, and modern writers very often use *which* and *that* interchangeably with restrictive clauses. If you have any doubts, though, especially in formal or professional writing, then it is better to reserve *which* for non-restrictive clauses.

Non-restrictive relative clauses

Non-restrictive relative clauses give us additional information about a noun that has already been identified, but this information is not essential for the sentence to make sense. Because of this, non-restrictive relative clauses are set apart from the rest of the sentence by commas.

For example:

- “Paris, ***where* I spent six months studying**, is the most beautiful city in the world.”
- “The woman down the street, ***whose* children are the same age as ours**, invited us over for dinner next week.”
- “I love casual Fridays, ***when* we get to wear jeans to work**.”
- “Samantha, ***whom* I’ve asked to be my bridesmaid**, is getting married next year.”
- “The senator, ***who* is up for re-election next month**, has made a lot of promises to his constituency.”
- “The movie, ***which* is my favorite comedy of all time**, is being shown on TV tomorrow night.”

In the examples above, the relative clauses merely give extra information about the nouns; they do not define them. The sentences would still make sense even if the relative clauses were removed, which is how we know that we are dealing with non-restrictive relative clauses. For example:

- “Paris is the most beautiful city in the world.”

- “The woman down the street invited us over for dinner.”
- “I love casual Fridays.”
- “Samantha is getting married next year.”
- “The senator has made a lot of promises to his constituency.”
- “The movie is being shown on TV tomorrow night.”

Note that non-restrictive clauses **cannot** be introduced by the relative pronoun *that* or the relative adverb *why*—these can only introduce restrictive clauses.

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following do relative clauses describe?

a) verbs
b) nouns
c) adjectives
d) adverbs

2. Which of the following is used to introduce a relative clause that is clarifying **who or what** the sentence is talking about?

a) relative pronoun
b) relative adverb
c) relative adjective
d) relative determiner

3. What punctuation marks are used to separate **non-restrictive** clauses from the rest of the sentence?

a) semicolons
b) periods
c) parentheses
d) commas

4. Choose the **most** correct relative pronoun or relative adverb to complete the following sentence:
“The company, _____ was acknowledged for its outstanding environmental efforts, more than doubled its profits over the past year.”

a) who

b) whom
c) which
d) that

Adverbial Clauses

Definition

An **adverbial clause**, or **adverb clause**, is a group of words behaving as an *adverb*. Like all clauses, it always contains a **subject** and a **predicate**, and it is used, like a regular adverb, to modify adjectives, verbs, and adverbs. For example:

- “I went to the park **today**.” (*Today* is an adverb that modifies the verb *went*.)
- “I went to the park **before my parents woke up**.” (*Before my parents woke up* is an adverbial clause that also modifies the verb *went*.)

An adverbial clause is a type of **dependent clause**, or **subordinate clause**, that uses a **subordinating conjunction** to connect to the **main clause**. In the previous example, *before* acts as a subordinating conjunction, connecting the adverbial clause *before my parents woke up* to the main clause *I went to the park*.

Function

Subordinating conjunctions have different functions depending on the ideas being modified. We can therefore identify the function of an adverbial clause by looking at the type of subordinating conjunction connecting it to the main clause.

The table below highlights the various functions of some of the most common subordinating conjunctions:

Idea Being Modified	Subordinating Conjunction
Time	when, whenever, while, before, after, since, until, once
Place	where, wherever, everywhere, anywhere
Reason or purpose	because, as, since, so
Condition	if, unless, whether or not, in the event, provided

Comparison or manner	like, as, as… as, as if, the way, than
Contrast	though, although, even though, whereas, even if

Adverbial clauses of time

An adverbial clause of time describes *when* or *for how long* something has occurred or will occur. Possible subordinating conjunctions include *when, whenever, while, before, after, since, until,* and *once*. For example:

- “I will arrive ***when*** **dinner is ready**.”
- “He said he’ll go ***whenever*** **you decide it’s time to leave**.”
- “Animals are cute ***while*** **they’re young**.”
- “***Before*** **you leave**, let me give you a kiss.”
- “Teachers grade papers ***after*** **the students go home for the day**.”
- “I have loved you ***since*** **the day I met you**.”
- “She waited on the shore ***until*** **the ship departed**.”
- “The bully stopped picking fights ***once*** **he realized it was wrong**.”

(*Be careful with the subordinating conjunction *since*, because it is also used with adverbial clauses of reason or purpose, as we will see below.)

Adverbial clauses of place

An adverbial clause of place describes *where* something has occurred or will occur. The most common subordinating conjunctions are *where, wherever, everywhere*, and *anywhere*. For example:

- “Grandma and Grandpa want to go ***where*** **their children live**.”
- “I can go ***wherever*** **I want to go**.”
- “Peter brings his sunglasses ***everywhere*** **he goes**.”
- “Birds create nests ***anywhere*** **they deem suitable**.”

Adverbial clauses of reason or purpose

An adverbial clause of reason or purpose describes *why* something has occurred or will occur. Common subordinating conjunctions are *because, as, since,* and *so*. For example:

- "I admire you ***because*** **you are an inspiration to many people**."
- "***As*** **it is raining**, we probably shouldn't go to the park today."
- "I'm going outside to play ***since*** **my homework is finished**."*
- "He went to his room ***so*** **he could be alone**."

(*Be careful with the subordinating conjunction *since*, because it is also used with adverbial clauses of time, as we saw above.)

Adverbial clauses of condition

Adverbial clauses of condition describe the conditions necessary for specific actions or events to happen. This type of clause usually employs the subordinating conjunctions *if, unless, whether or not, in the event,* and *provided*. For example:

- "***If*** **it snows tonight**, I'm not going to work tomorrow."
- "Kate can't attend the school dance ***unless*** **her parents allow it**."
- "He's always doing crazy stunts ***whether or not*** **they're considered safe**."
- "***In the event*** **of a hurricane**, you must stay inside."
- "They'll approve your request ***provided*** **you pay the appropriate amount of money**."

Adverbial clauses of comparison or manner

An adverbial clause of comparison or manner describes *how* or *in what manner* something occurred or will occur, to what degree something occurred or will occur, or how something compares to something else. Some of the most often used subordinating conjunctions are *like, as, as … as, as if, the way,* and *than*. For example:

- "He sings ***like*** **he wants to be a rock star**."
- "The teary-eyed friends embraced ***as*** **long-lost siblings would**."
- "The freshly picked flower is ***as*** beautiful ***as*** **it is soft**."
- "She looked excited, ***as if*** **she could jump up and dance at any moment**."
- "Lauren walks confidently, ***the way*** **a model struts on a runway**."
- "Tim is more nervous ***than*** **Rhonda (is)**."*

(*In colloquial English, the final verb in an adverbial clause of comparison may be omitted. In this case, the sentence would become *Tim is more nervous than*

Rhonda, in which the predicate verb *is* is implied. We also see verb omission in adverbial clauses containing the subordinating conjunctions *before, after*, and *as … as*.)

Adverbial clauses of contrast

An adverbial clause of contrast describes something that differs from or contrasts with an idea expressed in the main clause. Commonly used subordinating conjunctions include *though, although, even though, whereas*, and *even if*. For example:

- “***Though*** **the sun is out**, the wind is very chilly.”
- “***Although*** **she doesn’t have much money**, Wendy often goes traveling.”
- “I do this job ***even though*** **I hate it**.”
- “Babies look at the world with innocence, ***whereas*** **adults look at it with experience**.”
- “Matt will go to college, ***even if*** **it means taking out student loans**.”

Adverbial clauses vs. adverbial phrases

An **adverbial phrase** is composed of two or more words functioning adverbially. Unlike an adverbial clause, it does not have a subject and a predicate. For example:

- “Try to finish your summer reading list **before *school starts on Monday***.” (adverbial clause)

- “Try to finish your summer reading list **before *Monday***.” (adverbial phrase)

Additionally, adverbial phrases often use prepositions instead of subordinating conjunctions:

- “I’ll send the letters ***in*** **a minute**.”

- “Heather can play tennis ***with*** **such ease**.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following is **not** a subordinating conjunction?

a) wherever
b) after

c) until
d) with

2. Which sentence contains an adverbial clause of **place**?

a) “My goal is to travel everywhere my sister has visited.”
b) “When I am alone, I write in my diary.”
c) “George promised he’d come, even if he had to walk the entire distance.”
d) “This soup is as healthy as it is delicious.”

3. Which sentence contains an adverbial clause of **condition**?

a) “Whenever an expensive bill comes in the mail, I complain to my roommate.”
b) “Alex will probably become famous, provided she builds up her portfolio.”
c) “The man smiled and said he’d go wherever the wind took him.”
d) “Although they’re just toddlers, the twins seem very intelligent.”

4. Which sentence contains an **adverbial phrase**, as opposed to an adverbial clause?

a) “Don’t believe him if he says he’s telling the truth.”
b) “Sarah will start her presentation in an hour.”
c) “She’s much taller than he is.”
d) “My uncle tells jokes like he’s a comedian.”

Sentences

Definition

In this chapter, we will look at what comprises a sentence. We will explore the elements used to construct sentences, and what **parts of speech** are used to expand and elaborate on them.

We will focus for now on forming **simple sentences** (sentences that contain only a single independent clause). In the subsections of this chapter, we will explore the different kinds of sentences according to **structure**, **purpose**, and **length**.

The Construction of a Sentence

Clauses

In English, a **clause** almost always consists of two parts—a **subject** and a **predicate**. (This rule is only broken when making **imperative sentences** and **non-finite clauses**.) In traditional English grammar, a predicate is made up of a verb or **verb phrase** (a verb and any objects or modifiers relating to it), while the subject consists of a **noun**, **pronoun**, or a **phrase** containing either.

A sentence, whether short or long, must express a complete idea; and a complete sentence must consist of at least one **independent clause**—that is, a subject and predicate that make a complete thought. Independent clauses are so called because they make sense when they stand on their own. They are also sometimes referred to as "**main clauses**."

For example:

- "I refuse."
- "The wind blows."
- "Dogs bark."
- "Bees sting."
- "Cats meow."

In the above examples, the **subject** begins the sentences and the **predicate** ends them. The predicate (in each these cases made up of just a verb) contains all the necessary information about the subject to be considered logical, so each is considered an independent clause.

A **dependent clause**, on the other hand, relies on the information from an independent clause to form a complete, logical thought. Dependent clauses (also known as **subordinate clauses**) are usually marked by *dependent words*, such as a **subordinating conjunctions** or **relative pronouns**. Here are some examples of dependent clauses:

- "*whenever* (subordinating conjunction) I travel"
- "*whom* (relative pronoun) we met on the plane"

We can see that the clauses above do not express a complete idea—they require independent clauses to be logically complete:

- "*Whenever I travel,* I like to stay in fancy hotels."
- "We struck up a great conversation with a person *whom we met on the plane*."

For more information on independent and dependent clauses, see the chapter on **Clauses**.

Additional Information

Verb phrases add additional information to a sentence. Because verb phrases can be made up of more than one verb, as well as the information relating to those verbs, we can add quite a bit of information into a single sentence. This additional information is used to answer the questions *Why?, What?, What kind?, When?, Where?, How?, How much?,* and *Who/Whom*?

For instance, let's look again at the very first example from above:

- "I refuse."

Now let's add more information to create a verb phrase:

- "I refuse to eat."

Adding the **infinitive phrase** ("to" + the simple form of a verb) explains *What?* about the action of the main verb, "refuse." It is considered the **object** of the verb; together they form a verb phrase, which constitutes the predicate.

We can continue to expand the predicate to include more information:

- "I refuse to eat that awful food."

The modifiers "that" and "awful," together with the noun "food," are the **direct object** of the verb "eat," again answering the question *What?* All together, they form the object of "refuse," providing us with more detailed information about exactly *what* "I" is refusing.

Let's look at some examples where additional information answers various questions about otherwise basic sentences:

- "The wind blows *in the north*." (Identifying *where* the wind blows.)
- "The train leaves *at night*." (Identifying *when* the train leaves.)
- "Electricity costs *a lot*." (Here we state *how much* it costs.)
- "Bees sting people." (Here we state "who" they sting.)
- "Dogs bark when they are hungry, happy, or angry." (Here we state *why or when* they bark.)
- "Cats meow because they want attention." (Here we state *why* they meow.)

We can make sentences even longer by adding more information:

- "Electricity costs a lot during the day in most countries."

Here we have added the answer to three questions:

- *How much?* – “a lot”
- *When?* – “during the day”
- *Where?* – “in most countries”

Further elaboration

Just like the predicate, the subject can be modified and expanded to provide more information in a sentence. Adjectives are the most straightforward means of doing so. For example:

- “*Good friends* are *loyal people*.”

Here, the adjective “good” describes the subject “friends” (a noun); the adjective “loyal” describes “people,” which together form the object of the verb “are.”

In the above sentence we have used adjectives to describe the nouns. They answer the questions:

- *What kind of friends?* “Good friends.”
- *What kind of people?* “Loyal people.”

These are called **noun phrases**. A subject can be comprised of a noun phrase (or phrases). A verb phrase can also *include* noun phrases, as in “are *loyal people*” in the example above.

We can give even more details by adding adjectives, adverbs, and prepositional phrases. Remember, an adjective describes a noun whereas adverbs describe verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. **Prepositional phrases**, on the other hand, can act as either adjectives or adverbs.

Let’s look at an example:

- “*Solar-powered* electricity *rarely* costs much *during the day*.”

Here we use the adjective “solar-powered” to describe the subject noun “electricity.” It answers the question, “What kind of electricity?”

We used “rarely,” which is an adverb of frequency, to describe the verb “cost;” likewise, the prepositional phrase “during the day” is used **adverbially** to describe the verb “costs” and answer the question *When?*

Although “much” can be used as an adverb, it is here used as an **indefinite pronoun** to be the direct object of the verb “cost.” Be careful with “much,” because it can function as a determiner (adjective before a noun), adverb, or pronoun, depending on the sentence.

Let’s look at another example:

- “*Cold* wind *from the Atlantic Ocean* blows *in at night*.”

The adjective “cold” and the prepositional phrase “from the Atlantic Ocean” both modify the subject “wind.”

Compound subjects

A sentence can also have multiple subjects that relate to the same verb; these are known as **compound subjects**. For example:

- “*James* and *Daniel* collaborated on the project together.”

“James” and “Daniel,” joined by the conjunction “and,” are *both* related to the verb “collaborate.” Each subject in a **compound subject** can be modified and expanded in the same ways that we’ve seen already:

- “*My brother* James and *his* colleagues *from India* collaborated on the project together.”

“James” is now modified by “my brother,” while the second subject “colleagues” is modified by “his” and “from India.”

Compound predicates

Likewise, a single subject can take multiple predicates that are joined by a conjunction, such as “and” or “or.” These are called **compound predicates**. For example:

- “Janet *runs, swims,* and *cycles*.”

As with compound subjects, we can expand each of the compound predicate verbs individually:

- “Janet runs *in the morning,* swims *in the evening,* and cycles *to and from work*.”

Restructuring the sentence

When forming simple sentences in English, the additional information included with the subject and the predicate can often be reordered. Information modifying the predicate can even appear before the subject, and vice versa.

It helps if we break down each element in the sentence into what question it is answering. Take a look at the sentences below for an illustration of how such reconstructions might work:

Who?	How?	Where?	When?	When (at what time)?
He goes	by bus	to the movies	every Saturday	at 8 o'clock.

Now let’s reorder the information in the predicate (everything after the verb “goes”):

Who?	Where?	When (at what time)?	How?	When?
He goes	to the movies	at 8 o'clock	by bus	every Saturday.

As you can see, the sentence still makes logical sense, sounds fine, and retains all of the information it had before.

Now let’s restructure it to have part of the predicate come at the *beginning* of the sentence:

When (at what time)?	When?	Who?	Where?	How?
At 8 o'clock	every Saturday	he goes	to the movies	by bus.

It is also possible to have the subject come at the *end* of the sentence, especially when we begin a sentence with “there is/are,” as in the popular English proverb:

- “There is more than one way to skin *a cat*.”

Types of sentences

So far what we have been discussing are known as **simple sentences**, which are made up of a single independent clause and no dependent clauses. Even as we have added a lot of information into the sentences above, each one has remained an independent clause because each one has a subject (or compound subject) and a predicate.

However, there are many different types of sentences, depending on how we order the text, if we use multiple clauses, if we’re asking a question, etc. In the chapter sections below, we’ll begin looking at the various kinds of sentences we can make and how they are formed.

Classifications of Sentences

By Structure

In addition to simple sentences, which we learned about above, sentences classified by structure include:

- **Compound sentences**
- **Complex sentences**
- **Compound-complex sentences**

By Purpose

The purpose of a sentence also determines its classification. The sentences classified by purpose are:

- **Declarative sentences**
- **Interrogative sentences**
- **Exclamatory sentences**
- **Imperative sentences**
- **Negative sentences**
- **Negative interrogative sentences**

By Length

Similar to sentences classified by structure, sentences can also be classified by length:

- **Major/regular sentences**
- **Minor sentences**
- **Word sentences** (also called **sentence words**)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What *must* a sentence contain in order to be complete? (Choose the answer that is **most** correct.)

a) A subject
b) A noun
c) A verb

d) A predicate
e) A & C
f) A & D
g) B & D

2. Which of the following is **not** an independent clause?

a) They will discuss it.
b) Every time my cousin from Cairo visits.
c) I can imagine.
d) He sees her walking.

3. What can a **prepositional phrase** modify in a sentence?

a) The subject.
b) The predicate.
c) Either a subject or a predicate.
d) Neither a subject nor a predicate.

4. Where can a predicate appear in a sentence? (Choose the answer that is **most** correct.)

a) Before the subject
b) After the subject
c) Before and after the subject
e) All of the above

Compound Sentences Definition

Compound sentences are one of the four main sentence structures. They are made up of at least two **independent clauses** expressing closely related ideas of equal or similar importance that are joined using a comma and a conjunction or just a semicolon. By using compound sentences, we can add variety to our writing and speech and avoid the repetitive sound of multiple simple sentences.

Determining when to form a compound sentence

As mentioned, compound sentences are formed by joining two **independent clauses** that are closely related and of equal or similar value. To determine if two clauses can be joined in a compound sentence, we can ask ourselves three simple questions:

Q1. Does each clause contain a subject and a verb?
Q2. Can each clause stand alone to express a complete thought?
Q3. Are the two clauses closely related and of equal or similar importance?

If the answer to each of the three questions above is “yes,” then we can form a compound sentence. Let’s apply the three questions to an example:

- “**I like** running. **My sister is going to study** in Sweden.”

Q1. Does each clause contain a subject and a verb? **Yes, marked in bold.**
Q2. Can each clause stand alone to express a complete thought? **Yes.**
Q3. Are the two clauses closely related and of equal or similar importance? **No, they have nothing to do with one another.**

Because the answer to question three is “no,” the two clauses above **cannot** be joined as a compound sentence. Let’s try another example:

- “**She wanted** to play tennis. **He wanted** to play basketball.”

Q1. Does each clause contain a subject and a verb? **Yes, marked in bold.**
Q2. Can each clause stand alone to express a complete thought? **Yes.**
Q3. Are the two clauses closely related and of equal or similar importance? **Yes.**

Since the answer to each of the three questions is “yes,” we can form a compound sentence. This can be done in several ways. For example:

- “She wanted to play tennis, **but** he wanted to play basketball.”

OR

- “She wanted to play tennis**;** he wanted to play basketball.”

OR

- “She wanted to play tennis; **however,** he wanted to play basketball.”

How to form a compound sentence

Once we’ve determined that two ideas can be joined to form a compound sentence, we have to decide *how* to join them. We have several options—we can use a **coordinating conjunction**, a **correlative conjunction**, a **conjunctive adverb**, or a **semicolon**.

Forming a compound sentence using a coordinating conjunction

There are seven coordinating conjunctions in English, which can be remembered using the acronym FANBOYS:

For
And
Nor
But
Or
Yet
So

When we join two clauses in a compound sentence with a coordinating conjunction, we must choose the one that best fits the relationship that exists between the two clauses. For example:

- “The family moved into the new house, **and** the neighbors welcomed them warmly.” (additional information)

- “She wanted to play tennis, **but** he wanted to play basketball.” (contrasting information)

- “We can go to the movies tonight, **or** we can just hang out at home.” (alternative choice or option)

Punctuation note: When we use a coordinating conjunction to form a compound sentence, it is preceded by a comma, as in the examples above.

Forming a compound sentence using a correlative conjunction

Correlative conjunctions, or **paired conjunctions**, are sets of conjunctions that are always used together. Since they come in pairs, with each conjunction preceding an independent clause, they can join a maximum of two independent clauses together. Some of the most common correlative conjunctions are:

- **either … or**
- **just as … so**
- **neither … nor**
- **not … but**
- **not only … but also**
- **whether … or**

Again, the conjunction that we choose has to do with the relationship between the two clauses. For example:

- "**Neither** does he need to go**, nor** does he want to go." (negates both clauses)

- "**Just as** baseball is loved in America**, so** cricket is loved in England." (indicates that the clauses are similar)

- "**Either** I will pick you up**, or** you'll get a ride home with your father." (indicates two possible choices or outcomes)

Punctuation note: When we use correlative conjunctions, a comma precedes the conjunction that introduces the **second** independent clause, as in the examples.

Forming a compound sentence with a conjunctive adverb

Another common way to form a compound sentence is to use a conjunctive adverb. Some common conjunctive adverbs are:

- **accordingly**
- **as a result**
- **comparatively**

- **in fact**
- **moreover**
- **nevertheless**
- **nonetheless**
- **on the other hand**
- **otherwise**

While coordinating conjunctions can be used to join words, phrases, or independent clauses, *conjunctive adverbs* can only be used to join independent clauses. Conjunctive adverbs are used to indicate a specific relationship between the two independent clauses. For example:

- "Jen hadn't enjoyed the play**; as a result,** she didn't recommend it." (consequence)
- "I absolutely love singing**; on the other hand,** my sister hates it." (contrast)
- "Being a doctor is an exhausting job**; moreover,** you don't earn good money until you've been practicing for many years." (adding stronger information)

(**Punctuation note:** When we use a conjunctive adverb to form a compound sentence, it is preceded by a semicolon and followed by a comma, as in the examples above.)

Forming a compound sentence with a semicolon

If the two independent clauses are very closely related and the reader has enough information to understand the relationship between them from the context alone, we can join the clauses using a semicolon without a conjunction. For example:

- "She wanted to play tennis**;** he wanted to play basketball."
- "I made the cake**;** my sister decorated it."
- "We don't eat meat**;** we're vegetarians."

Common Errors

The most common errors that occur with compound sentences are **comma splices** and **run-on sentences**.

Comma splices

A comma splice occurs when we join two independent clauses with a comma. (A comma is **not** strong enough to separate two independent clauses on its own.) For example:

✖ “She wanted to play tennis**,** he wanted to play basketball.” (incorrect)

Luckily, the mistake is easy to correct using any of the methods for forming compound sentences that we described above. For example:

✔ “She wanted to play tennis**;** he wanted to play basketball.”

✔ “She wanted to play tennis**, but** he wanted to play basketball.”

✔ “She wanted to play tennis**; however,** he wanted to play basketball.”

Run-on sentences

Run-on sentences can occur when we join two independent clauses without the correct punctuation or conjunction. For example:

✖ “I made the cake however my sister decorated it.” (incorrect—missing the proper punctuation)

Again, we can correct the mistake by using any of the methods described in this article:

✔ “I made the cake**; however,** my sister decorated it.”

✔ “I made the cake**;** my sister decorated it.”

✔ “I made the cake**, and** my sister decorated it.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Compound sentences are made up of two (or more) ________.

a) words
b) phrases
c) dependent clauses
d) independent clauses

2. The two clauses in a compound sentence can be joined using ________.

a) a coordinating conjunction
b) a correlative conjunction
c) a conjunctive adverb
d) a semicolon

e) A, B & C
f) all of the above

3. Which of the following sentences is punctuated **incorrectly**?

a) “I love swimming my brother enjoys hockey.”
b) “I love swimming, but my brother enjoys hockey.”
c) “I love swimming; however, my brother enjoys hockey.”
d) “I love swimming; my brother enjoys hockey.”

4. Complete the following compound sentence with the **correct conjunction**:
“He’s a great rock climber; ________ , he’s a terrible skier.”

a) and
b) but
c) however
d) as a result

5. Complete the following compound sentence with the **correct conjunction**:
“I don’t mind what we do tonight. We can go bowling, ________ we can see a movie.”

a) and
b) or
c) on the other hand
d) likewise

Complex Sentences

Definition

Complex sentences are one of the four main sentence structures. They are made up of one **independent clause** (or **main clause**) and one or more **dependent clauses** (or **subordinate clauses**). The dependent clause is introduced and linked to the independent clause by a **subordinating conjunction**.

We use complex sentences to indicate a specific relationship between two ideas, and to clarify which of the two is more important. Consider the following example:

- “I went to the supermarket. We were out of milk.”

Although the reader can probably guess that the relationship between the two ideas above is one of cause and effect, that relationship could be specified by combining the two ideas into a complex sentence instead, as in:

• “I went to the supermarket ***because*** *we were out of milk*.”

By adding the subordinating conjunction “*because*,” we have transformed the previously independent clause “*we were out of milk*” into a dependent clause. It can no longer stand alone, but is *dependent* on the clause that it is now linked to. The relationship between the two ideas is now perfectly clear, and the importance of the independent clause “*I went to the supermarket*” is highlighted.

Using complex sentences

Subordinating Conjunctions

As mentioned, complex sentences are useful because they can indicate a very specific relationship between two ideas. Depending on what relationship we would like to indicate, we choose a specific subordinating conjunction. For example:

• “He’s going to pass his test **even if** he doesn’t study.” (a specific outcome despite a hypothetical action)

• “I watched a movie **while** my friend was shopping.” (concurrent events)

• “I will go **as long as** you go with me.” (an outcome will occur under a certain condition)

In the examples above, the subordinating conjunctions *even if, while*, and *as long as* introduce the dependent clauses and specify their relationship to the independent clauses.

Some of the most common subordinating conjunctions are:

- after
- although
- as
- as soon as
- because
- even if
- in case
- in order that

- providing
- since
- though
- when
- where

Go to the chapter on **Conjunctions** to learn more about how subordinating conjunctions are used in complex sentences.

Structure and punctuation

The order of the independent and dependent clause in a complex sentence is flexible. We can structure complex sentences with the independent clause first, as in:

• "He's going to pass his test ***even if*** *he doesn't study*."

• "I watched a movie ***while*** *my friend was shopping*."

• "I will go ***as long as*** *you go with me*."

The same sentences can be structured with the dependent clause first as well. This results in no change of meaning. For example:

• "***Even if*** *he doesn't study*, he's going to pass his test."

• "***While*** *my friend was shopping*, I watched a movie."

• "***As long as*** *you go with me*, I will go."

Although there are exceptions, note that when the dependent clause is placed first, we generally follow it with a comma, as in the examples above. However, if the independent clause introduces the sentence, we usually do **not** need a comma.

Usage Note

While it's a commonly quoted belief that a sentence should not begin with the word *because*, this is **not** an actual grammatical rule. Sentences can begin with *because* (and any other subordinating conjunction) as long as the sentence is not a **fragment**. For example

✖ "Because we were early." (incorrect)

✔ "Because we were early, we decided to have a coffee." (correct)

As the first sentence is a dependent clause without an independent clause to complete it, it is considered a **fragment** and must be corrected. However, the second sentence is a complete sentence because the dependent clause is followed by the independent clause "*we decided to have a coffee*."

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Complex sentences are usually made up of ________.

a) two independent clauses
b) two dependent clauses
c) an independent clause and a dependent clause

2. The two clauses in a complex sentence are joined using a ________.

a) coordinating conjunction
b) subordinating conjunction
c) conjunctive adverb
d) correlative conjunction

3. Which of the following statements about complex sentences is correct?

a) We never separate the two clauses with a comma.
b) We always separate the two clauses with a comma.
c) We separate the two clauses with a comma if the sentence begins with the independent clause.
d) We separate the two clauses with a comma if the sentence begins with the dependent clause.

4. Which of the following sentences is **punctuated correctly**?

a) "Even though I recognized her, I didn't say hello."
b) "Even though, I recognized her, I didn't say hello."
c) "I didn't say hello even though, I recognized her."
d) "I didn't say, hello even though I recognized her."

5. Which of the following sentences is **punctuated correctly**?

a) "I didn't stop at the store because I didn't think there was anything we needed."
b) "I didn't stop at the store, because I didn't think there was anything we needed."

c) “I didn’t stop at the store because, I didn’t think there was anything we needed.”
d) “I didn’t stop, at the store because I didn’t think there was anything we needed.”

Compound-Complex Sentences

Definition

Compound-complex sentences are one of the four main sentence structures. They are made up of two **independent clauses** (also known as **main clauses**) and one or more **dependent clauses** (or **subordinate clauses**).

Complex vs. Compound Sentences

A compound-complex sentence has to satisfy the conditions we established for both **complex sentences** and **compound sentences**. First, let’s recap both briefly so we understand both sets of conditions that must be met. (More detailed explanations are included in their individual chapter sections.)

After we understand the basics of how these two are formed, we will look at how they fit together to form compound-complex sentences.

Complex Sentences

For a sentence to be considered compound-complex, at least one of the independent clauses must be a **complex sentence** (if it were to stand on its own). That is, it is made up of a dependent clause that is introduced and linked to the independent clause by a **subordinating conjunction**.

We use complex sentences to indicate a specific relationship between two ideas, and to clarify which of the two is more important. Consider the following example:

- “I went to the party next door. I had school the next morning.”

There is an inherent contrast of information between these two clauses. Left separated, the clauses’ relationship is implied, it but comes across rather awkwardly. However, by combining the two ideas into a complex sentence with a subordinating conjunction, this contrast is made more explicit and the sentence as a whole reads much more fluidly:

- "I went to the party next door ***even though*** *I had school the next morning*."

By adding the subordinating conjunction *even though*, the previously independent clause "*I had school the next morning*" is transformed into a dependent clause. It can no longer stand alone, but is **dependent** on the clause that it is now linked to. The relationship between the two ideas is now perfectly clear, and the importance of the independent clause "*I went to the party next door*" is highlighted.

Compound Sentences

Compound sentences are formed by joining two **independent clauses** that are closely related and of equal or similar importance. To determine if two clauses can be joined in a compound sentence, we can ask ourselves three simple questions:

Q1. Does each clause contain a subject and a verb?
Q2. Can each clause stand alone to express a complete thought?
Q3. Are the two clauses closely related and of equal or similar importance?

If the answer to each of the three questions above is "yes," then we can form a compound sentence. Let's apply the three questions to an example:

- "**They wanted** to go to Venice. **I wanted** to see Madrid."

Q1. Does each clause contain a subject and a verb? **Yes, marked in bold.**
Q2. Can each clause stand alone to express a complete thought? **Yes.**
Q3. Are the two clauses closely related and of equal or similar importance? **Yes.**

Since the answer to all three questions is "yes," we can form a compound sentence. This can be done in several ways. For example:

- "They wanted to go to Venice**, but** I wanted to see Madrid." (coordinating conjunction)

OR
- "**Just as** they wanted to go to Venice**, so** I wanted to see Madrid." (correlative conjunction)

OR
- "They wanted to go to Venice**; however,** I wanted to see Madrid." (conjunctive adverb)

OR
- "They wanted to go to Venice**;** I wanted to see Madrid." (semicolon)

Forming a compound-complex sentence

In a compound-complex sentence, we join the complex independent clause to the other independent clause in the same way as for normal compound sentences: with **coordinating conjunctions**, **correlative conjunctions**, **conjunctive adverbs**, or **semicolons**. Take, for example, these two separate sentences:

- "*Because I love to read,* I like to visit the library. I enjoy going to book stores, too."

The first sentence is a complex sentence (the dependent clause is *italicized*); the second one is a standard independent clause. Now let's make them into a complex-compound sentence:

- "*Because I love to read,* I like to visit the library**, and** I enjoy going to book stores, too." (coordinating conjunction)
- "*Because I love to read,* **not only** do I like to visit the library**, but** I **also** enjoy going to book stores, too." (correlative conjunction)
- "*Because I love to read,* I like to visit the library**; additionally,** I enjoy going to book stores." (conjunctive adverb)
- "*Because I love to read,* I like to visit the library**;** I enjoy going to book stores, too." (semicolon)

In each of the examples above, the dependent clause is *italicized*, the independent clauses are underlined, and the means used to join the two independent clauses are in **bold**.

Multiple dependent clauses

Complex-compound sentences can also have more than one dependent clause. For example:

- "*Although I promised I'd study with Ethan,* I'd rather go to the movies with Jim**; nevertheless,** I made a promise, *even if it isn't as much fun*."
- "I got into gymnastics *because of my brother*, **but** I got into archery *because of my sister*."

More examples

Let’s look at a few more examples of complex-compound sentences.

- “I wanted to go to a baseball game, **but** my father, *who is a huge ballet fan*, wanted to see *The Nutcracker* instead.”
- “We went to get some dinner *after class was over*; **however,** the food court was already closed.”
- “I will go to the party *as long as Terry is there*; I won’t stay long, though.”
- “*Even though he never studied*, he always passed his tests in high school, **but** I don’t think he’ll be able to pull that off in college *when he has a much harder workload*.”
- “The bank will lend us the money *providing we have something for collateral*, **so** I asked my parents to help, *although I’m not sure they will agree to*.”
- “I never graduated from college; **nevertheless**, I found a great job *because my uncle has a connection in the auto industry*.”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. A complex-compound sentence requires **at least one** of which of the following?

a) independent clause
b) dependent clause
c) coordinating conjunction
d) semicolon

2. Which of the following can be used to join the two independent clauses in a complex-compound sentence?

a) coordinating conjunction
b) correlative conjunction
c) conjunctive adverb
d) semicolon
e) All of the above
f) None of the above

3. Which of the following can be used to join a dependent clause to an independent clause in a complex-compound sentence?

a) coordinating conjunction

b) subordinating conjunction
c) conjunctive adverb
d) semicolon
e) All of the above
f) None of the above

4. Identify the **dependent clause or clauses** in the following sentence:
“I’m going to see Shawna at the mall later; you can come with me, though I know you two don’t get along.”

a) I’m going to see Shawna at the mall later
b) you can come with me
c) though I know you two don’t get along
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) A & C

5. Identify the **dependent clause or clauses** in the following sentence:
“Although I’ve saved up for a few years, I’ve never been able to afford buying a house, but we should be able to get a mortgage soon, providing my job remains secure.”

a) Although I’ve saved up for a few years
b) I’ve never been able to afford buying a house
c) we should be able to get a mortgage soon
d) providing my job remains secure
d) A & C
e) B & C
f) A & D
g) B & D

Declarative Sentences

Definition

A **declarative sentence** makes a statement or argument about what is, was, or will be the case. That is, it talks about that which is asserted to be **true**.

Declarative sentences usually end in a **period** (also known as a **full stop**) and are the most ubiquitous type of sentence in English. (If they are expressing a strong emotion or are forceful in nature, they can also end in an **exclamation point** (“!”), in which case they are sometimes referred to as **exclamatory sentences**.)

They stand in contrast to **interrogative sentences**, which ask a question and end with a question mark (“?”), and **imperative sentences**, which are used to give orders, commands, and general instructions.

Different sentence structures

All four of types of sentence structures—simple, **compound**, **complex**, and **compound-complex sentences**—can be made into declarative sentences. For example:

Simple Sentences

- “I’m walking to the library.”
- “She went to the park yesterday.”
- “I hope to see you soon.”

Compound Sentences

- “She wanted to play basketball, but he wanted to play tennis.”
- “Either I will pick you up tonight, or you can get a ride home with your father.”
- “I’ve always wanted to try riding a jet-ski; however, I’m too worried about my safety.”
- “I’m going to the party later; my friend is the DJ for it.”

Complex Sentences

- “Even though I’m not a fan of Hitchcock, I’ll go with you to see *The Birds*.”
- “I’d be willing to lend you the money providing you can offer collateral.”
- “I waited in line for three hours because I’m such a big fan of his.”

Compound-Complex Sentences

- “We went to Venice, even though they knew I wanted to go to Madrid; nevertheless, we had a great time.”

- “I’ve been saving up for a few years, so we should be able to get a mortgage soon, providing my job remains secure.”
- “I’m going to see Shawna at the mall later; you can come with me, though I know you two don’t get along.”

Different Verb Tenses

Declarative sentences can be formed in any **tense**, so long as the sentence is a statement of what is the case. For example:

Present Tense

- “I always run on Fridays.” (**present simple tense**)
- “I am driving to work now.” (**present continuous tense**)
- “She has worked in this firm for 10 years.” (**present perfect tense**)
- “He has been living in New York all his life.” (**present perfect continuous tense**)

Past Tense

- “I enjoyed that soup.” (**past simple tense**)
- “He was walking the dog at the time.” (**past continuous tense**)
- “They had been in the olive oil business for generations.” (**past perfect tense**)
- “We had been looking for a new style for our music.” (**past perfect continuous tense**)

Future Tense

- “I will work from home tomorrow.” (**future simple tense**)
- “He will be working late tonight, for sure.” (**future continuous tense**)
- “Her flight will have arrived by then.” (**future perfect tense**)
- “We will have been living together for five years this Tuesday.” (**future perfect continuous tense**)

Variations

Not all declarative sentences are straightforward statements of positive fact—

there are a few variations that express slightly different information, while still remaining declarative in nature.

Negative declarative sentences

Negative declarative sentences (or simply **negative sentences**) are declarative sentences whose information is made negative by the word *not* or *never*. All of the different sentence structures and verb tenses that we looked at above can be made negative. For example:

- “I **won’t** be going to the party because I have an exam tomorrow.” (complex sentence – future continuous tense – made negative by *not* (contracted with *will*))
- “I did **not** eat your sandwich.” (simple sentence ¬– past tense – made negative by *not*)
- “Jim is a good guy, but you can **never** rely on him.” (compound sentence ¬– present simple tense – second independent clause made negative by *never*)

Declarative commands and requests

We generally use **imperative sentences** to issue commands or instructions, and **interrogative sentences** to ask questions or make requests. For example:

- “Clean your room.” (imperative sentence)
- “Would you buy me a video game while you’re at the mall?” (interrogative sentence)

However, we can sometimes use declarative sentences to make statements that have the sound of a command or request, and yet are not exactly either one. For instance:

- “You should clean your room.”
- “You could buy me a video game while you’re at the mall.”

Both of these sentences are now in the declarative form, yet both function in a middle ground between a command and a request. Note that the forcefulness of the imperative sentence is lost when it is made declarative, just as the tact and politeness is lost from the interrogative sentence.

Statements of uncertainty

We often use declarative sentences as an indirect way of asking a question about something that we’re not certain about, expressing what we wish to know as a declarative, factual statement. For example:

- “I was thinking we could see the movie together, if you’re free.”
- "They want to know why you did this.”

Because these kinds of statements are so close in nature and meaning to interrogative sentences, many people end up erroneously putting a question mark at the end of them. However, we must take care not to make this mistake and only use a period with such sentences.

Indirect questions

Indirect questions are very similar to statements of uncertainty, except that they use what is known as **reported speech** (sometimes called **indirect speech**) to relay an interrogative sentence from another person to the listener as a declarative sentence. For example:

- “Dan asked if you are coming to the study session this evening.”
- “She was wondering if you want to get some coffee later.”
- “They told me to ask where you’re going later.”

Declarative questions

Declarative questions are a bit of a unique bridge between declarative sentences and interrogative sentences. They are declarative, yet they end with a question mark; they are used primarily in spoken, informal English and generally have “yes” or “no” as possible responses. For example:

- “You’re firing me?”
- “He wants to drive to the city at this hour?
- “She’s moving to Russia?”

These could technically be considered interrogative sentences because they ask a question and end with a question mark, but, because the actual form of the sentence does not change, they are still very like a declarative sentence. In spoken English, the only way they are marked as questions is by the speaker’s intonation.

1. Which of the following marks of punctuation is used with declarative sentences?

a) question mark
b) exclamation point
c) period
d) interrobang

2. Declarative sentences are used to express which of the following?

a) That which is, was, or will be the case
b) An inquiry or request
c) Excitement or intense emotion
d) Orders, commands, and general instructions

3. In which of the following verb tenses can declarative sentences be used?

a) Present tense
b) Past tense
c) Future tense
d) All of the above
e) None of the above

4. Which of the following sentence structures can be declarative?

a) Simple sentences
b) Compound sentences
c) Complex sentences
d) Complex-compound sentences
e) A & B
f) A, B, & C
g) All of the above

5. Which of the following is a declarative sentence?

a) “Would you like to see a movie with me later?”
b) “Please go wash your hands.”
c) “I was wondering if you’re free after class.”
d) “I’m so excited to see this play!”

Interrogative Sentences

Definition

An **interrogative sentence** is simply a sentence that asks a question—that is, we use it when we *interrogate* someone for information. Interrogative sentences always end with question marks.

Forming interrogative sentences

When we make sentences into questions, we almost always use **auxiliary verbs** that are inverted with the subject. This is known as **subject-verb inversion**. For example:

- “**Are** *you* sleepy?”
- “**Will** *she* be coming to the party later?”
- “**Have** *they* finished their project yet?”
- “**Do** *you* like country or classical music better?”

We can also use **question words** (*who, what, where, when, why,* and *how*) to ask more nuanced questions, but we still use auxiliary verbs and subject-verb inversion. For instance:

- “What **does** *the boss* think about the proposal?”
- “When **will** *we* arrive?”
- “Who **is** coming to the play?”

In this last question, the subject is unknown, so it is represented by the word *who* (which does **not** invert with an auxiliary verb).

Using these constructions, we can create several different kinds of interrogative sentences.

There are four main types of interrogative sentences: **yes/no questions, alternative questions, “Wh-” questions**, and **tag questions**.

Yes/No questions

Yes/No questions are simply questions that can be answered with either "yes" or "no." These are exclusively formed with auxiliary verbs that are inverted with the subject—that is, they do not use question words. For example:

- “Are you registered to vote?”
- “May I borrow your pen?”
- “Do you speak French?”

- “If you miss the deadline for entry, will you still be able to compete?”
- “Is there enough food for everyone?”

Alternative questions

Alternative questions, also known as **choice questions**, are questions that provide a choice among two or more answers. These choices might be explicitly stated in the question (identified by the **coordinating conjunction** *or*), or they might be implied by the context. We usually use inverted auxiliary verbs on their own for these questions, but they can also be formed using certain question words. For example:

- “Do you prefer apple juice or orange juice?”
- “Who won—New York or Boston?”
- “Do you live in the city, or the suburbs?”
- “Do you want cake, pie, or ice cream?”
- “How would you like your steak cooked?” (The implied choices would be *rare, medium,* or *well done*.)

“Wh-” questions

“Wh-” questions (or **question word questions**) are questions that seek information by posing a question with a "wh-" question word (*who, what, where, when, why,* and *how*). These questions seek an open-ended answer that can be short or long, simple or complex—there is no expectation about how the person might respond.

Here are some examples:

- “**Who** is your favorite author?”
- “**What** is the capital of England?”
- “**When** will you be finished with this project?”
- “**Where** are you going for your summer vacation?”
- “**Why** haven’t you responded to Karen’s invitation yet?”
- “**How** did you get here?”

Tag questions

Tag questions are formed by adding a question as a “tag” onto the end of a **declarative sentence**. This “tag” is usually made of at least an auxiliary verb inverted with a subject, though it is sometimes just a single word. It is considered parenthetical, so we set it apart from the rest of the sentence with a comma.

Tag questions are often rhetorical, used to confirm an answer that the speaker already knows or believes to be the case. For example:

- “You’re not going to the party**, are you?**”
- “This isn't your hat**, is it?**”
- “That was the most delicious meal**, wasn’t it?**”
- “You can’t talk during the movie**, OK?”**
- “We’re going to the game**, right?**”

Other interrogative sentences

Some interrogative sentences consist of a declarative statement posed to someone as a question, such as:

- “You won?”
- “It ended just like that?”

Some questions can even be a single word. These are often “question words,” (e.g. *What?*, *Why?*, *When?*, etc.), but they can consist of other words as well. For example:

- Speaker A: “Sir, you need to move your car.”
- Speaker B: **“Me?”**

- Speaker A: “You didn’t eat all of your vegetables.”
- Speaker B: **“So?”**

- Speaker A: **“Well?”**
- Speaker B: “Hold on, I’m thinking!”

Indirect questions

Some declarative sentences express uncertainty, but are not truly interrogative. These are known as **indirect questions**. For example:

- "I was wondering if you would like to go to the party with me."

This does not pose an actual question, so it is not an interrogative sentence.

In informal writing, it is very common to see these types of sentences end with a question mark. However, this shouldn’t be done, especially in formal or professional writing—the question mark should either be left out, or the sentence should be rewritten. For example, to change the sentence above from declarative to interrogative, we could say, “Would you like to go to the party with me?”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Choose the sentence that is interrogative. (All ending punctuation has been removed.)

a) “I can't remember when dinner will be served”
b) “When will dinner be served”
c) “I wonder when dinner will be served”
d) “When dinner is served, please let me know”

2. Choose the sentence that is **not** interrogative. (All ending punctuation has been removed.)

a) “Can you tell me where the bathroom is”
b) “Where is the bathroom in this place”
c) “Where the bathroom is I’ll never know”
d) “This isn’t the way to the bathroom, is it”

3. Choose the sentence that is **not** interrogative. (Question marks have been added to every sentence.)

a) “I don't need surgery, do I?”
b) “How I managed to win is a mystery to you, isn’t it?”
c) “Where were you, Mr. Smith, on the night in question?”
d) “I wonder how you play so well?”

4. Choose the question that is **not** a Yes/No question.

a) “Did you know that my dog was missing?”
b) “Have you seen him lately?”
c) “Where do you think he went?”
d) “Will you help me look for him?”

Negative Interrogative Sentences

Definition

As their name implies, **negative interrogative sentences** (sometimes called **interro-negative sentences**) are **interrogative sentences** that are made negative. In addition to asking literal questions, negative interrogative sentences are often used to imply that the speaker is expecting a certain answer or for emphatic effect.

Constructing negative interrogative sentences

As with all **negative sentences**, we generally form the negative interrogative by adding the word *not*. Where it appears in the sentence depends on the type of interrogative sentence we're using.

Yes/No questions

Questions that have either "yes" or "no" for an answer are formed using **auxiliary verbs** at the beginning of the sentence, as in:

- "**Do** you have a dollar?"
- "**Are** you aware of the consequences of your actions?"
- "**Have** you seen my wallet?"

To make them negative, we add the word *not* after the subject of the sentence. If *not* is contracted with the auxiliary verb, however, then the contraction comes before the subject.

Negative interrogative "yes/no" questions usually imply that the speaker expects the answer to be (or believes the answer *should be*) "yes."

For example:

- "**Don't** you have a dollar?"
- "**Are** you **not** aware of the consequences of your actions?"
- "**Haven't** you seen my wallet?"

With question words

We can also use the negative with interrogative sentences that are formed with certain question words (*who, what, where,* and *why*). These kinds of questions are sometimes called **"Wh-" questions**, because of the common beginning of each of the question words.

To make these sentences negative, we add *not* either immediately after the subject of the sentence, or contract it with the linking or auxiliary verb. Unlike the negative form of "yes/no" questions, the negative form of question word sentences can either be literal or be used for emphasis.

Literal questions

The negative interrogative is often used literally for sentences with question words.

For example:

- "It seems like just about everyone is signed up for the trip. **Who isn't** coming?"

- "**Why haven't** we left yet?"

- "Your keys must be somewhere. **Where have** we **not** looked?"

In each of these sentences, the speaker is asking a question that requires a literal response.

Emphatic responses

We can also use the negative interrogative with these question words for emphasis, usually in response to another question. In this case, *not* is almost exclusively contracted with the auxiliary verb, as in:

- Person A: "Who's coming to the party tomorrow night?"
- Person B: "**Who isn't** coming?" (It seems like everyone will be coming.)

- Person A: "Where did you travel while you were in Europe this summer?"
- Person B: "Oh man, where **didn't** I go?" (The speaker went to a lot of places in Europe.)

This type of question is not only used in response to other questions though—it can stand on its own as a rhetorical question. For example:

- Person A: "My uncle also said we could use his cabin for the week if we wanted. He'll also pay for our food while we're up there."
- Person B: "Wow, **why wouldn't** we go there for spring break?" (There doesn't appear to be any reason not to go there.)

- Person A: “They just outlawed skateboarding in public in this town.”
- Person B: “Sheesh, **what isn’t** illegal here anymore?” (It seems like everything is against the law now.)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What can negative interrogative sentences be used for?

a) To ask literal questions
b) To imply that the speakers expects a certain answer
c) For emphatic effect
d) A & B
e) B & C
f) All of the above

2. Negative interrogative sentences imply that the speaker expects a certain answer with what type of question?

a) Tag questions
b) Alternative questions
c) Yes/No questions
d) “Wh-” questions

3. What is the **most likely** purpose of the following negative interrogative sentence?
“Why wasn’t I informed of this meeting earlier?”

a) As a literal question
b) As an emphatic response
c) As a rhetorical question where the speaker expects a certain answer
d) All of the above
e) None of the above

4. Which of the following is contracted with the word *not* in negative interrogative sentences?

a) Main verb
b) Auxiliary verb
c) Subject
d) Direct object

Imperative Sentences

Definition

We use **imperative sentences** to give orders, commands, and general instructions. Such sentences are said to be in the **Imperative Mood**, one of the **Irrealis Moods** in English.

Verbs without subjects

When we make an imperative sentence, we use the infinitive form of the verb (without "to"), and we omit the subject of the verb. We can also intensify the sentence by adding an exclamation mark at the end.

For example:

- "Stand up."
- "Sit down!"
- "Turn off the light before you leave."
- "Go to bed!"

As you can see, there are no subjects in the sentences above. For example, it would be incorrect to say, "Open *you* the window"—it should simply be, "Open the window." It would also generally be incorrect to say "You open the window," unless it is done for emphasis (as in a retort). For example:

- A: "Daniel, could you please open the window?"
- B: "*You* open the window!"

Subjects vs. Nouns of Address

Note that this is **not** the same as using a **noun of address** (also known as a **vocative**), which is a noun or noun phrase used to address someone directly in a sentence. Nouns of address act as parenthetical elements within a sentence, grammatically unrelated to the rest of the content. They are set apart with one or two commas, depending on their position in a sentence. For example:

- "**John,** please turn out that light."
- "Stand up**, Janet**."
- "Be quiet**, sir**!"

- “**You there,** pay attention!”

John, *Janet*, *sir*, and *you there* are not the subjects of their sentences’ verbs; they are nouns of address.

Negative Imperatives

We can also make imperative statements negative by putting “do not” or “don’t” before the infinitive verb:

- “Don’t run in the hallways!”
- “Do not leave your dirty dishes in the sink.”

The imperative form is also used for general instructions, as might be seen on product instructions, formal announcements, notices, or in prohibitions. If these are in the negative, “do not” is usually not contracted. For example:

- “Wash all woolen garments in lukewarm water.”
- “Do not smoke in the airport.”
- “Do not leave your luggage unattended.”

Usage Note: Imperatives vs. “No” + Gerund

There is another form of prohibition that can be found in public notices, which is “no” plus a gerund (a verb put into the “-ing” form and used as a noun). This is used for general prohibitions, as in “no running,” “no smoking,” “no parking,” etc. While similar to the negative imperatives above, and even having the exact same meaning sometimes (“do not smoke in the airport” means the same as “no smoking in the airport”), this formation is not truly imperative from a grammatical point of view; it is considered a **noun phrase** made up of a determiner (“no”) and a gerund.

Using “Do”

We can also use the auxiliary verb “do” before the main verb of an imperative sentence. This adds an emphasis to the tone of the command, instruction, or request. For instance:

- “Oh, *do* shut up!”
- “*Do* take care of yourself, Mary!”

- “Please *do* enjoy your stay.”

This “emphatic do” can also be made negative, which changes the way a negative imperative sentence is constructed. Take for instance this negative imperative:

- “Don’t talk to me like that.”

If we want to add emphasis to “don’t,” we simply add the subject back into the sentence before the verb:

- “Don’t *you* talk to me like that!”

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. When can a verb subject be **included** in an imperative sentence?

a) Always
b) When it comes before the verb.
c) When it comes after the verb.
d) When it is used for emphasis.
e) Never.

2. What verb tense do we use to form imperative sentences?

a) Present participle
b) Infinitive
c) Gerund
d) Past participle

3. Which of the following is **not** in the imperative mood?

a) No talking during class, Jeff.
b) Don’t run with scissors.
c) Jane, please sit down.
d) Talking is not allowed.
e) A & B
f) C & D
g) A & D
h) B & C

4. Which **auxiliary verb** can be used to construct an imperative sentence?

a) Do
b) Be
c) Can
d) Must

Conditional Sentences

Definition

Conditional sentences are in the **conditional mood** (a sub-category of the **subjunctive mood**), which is used for hypothetical scenarios that are dependent on a certain condition or conditions. They are usually constructed using *if* to identify the conditions that must be met.

There are four "degrees" of conditionals, all of which vary in structure and meaning.

Zero Conditional

A **zero conditional** sentence uses the **present simple tense** to talk about what is always or generally true. It is classified as a conditional because it creates a hypothetical situation to describe what *would be* true each time something happens.

The general structure for the zero conditional is: "If + subject + present tense of predicate verb, subject + present tense of main verb."

For example:

- "**If** you **throw** a ball in the air, it **comes** back down." (Always true: A ball comes back down every time you throw it in the air.)
- "**If** we **get up** early, we always **go** jogging." (Generally true: We jog every time we get up early.)

First Conditional

The **first conditional** is very similar in structure to the zero conditional. We still use *if* plus the present simple to create the condition, except that we now use the **future simple tense** (*will* + bare infinitive) to describe a probable result of the condition.

Thus, the structure is: "*If* + present simple tense, *will* + infinitive."

For example:

- “**If** I **see** him, I ***will*** **tell** him.”
- “**If** I **win** the lottery, I ***will*** **buy** a new house.”

We can also create negative first conditionals by using the negative of the present simple in the *if* clause, and the negative of *will* in the future simple clause.

For example:

- “If I ***do not*** **go**, I **will not see** him.”
- “If I ***don’t*** **see** him, I **won’t have to say** goodbye.”
- “If he ***doesn’t*** **arrive** soon, we **won’t have** time to catch the 9:30 train.”

We can also reorder the sentence to have the future tense clause at the beginning of the sentence, and the *if* conditional clause at the end. Additionally, we can use **modal auxiliary verbs** other than *will* (such as *must, can, could, may, might,* or *should*) to create different shades of certainty in the future simple tense.

Let’s take a look at some examples:

- “I **will** go *if* he calls me.” (*Will* expresses a certainty.)
- “I **must** go *if* he calls me.” (*Must* expresses a personal obligation for the speaker.)
- “I **can** go *if* he calls me.” (*Can* expresses either permission from a third party or the fact that speaker is free from other commitments.)
- “I **might** go *if* he calls me.” (*Might* expresses a 50% possibility.)
- “I **may** go *if* he calls me.” (*May* is similar to *might*, but it is more formal and the possibility is slightly less.)
- “I **should** go *if* he calls me.” (The speaker feels a mild obligation.)
- “You **should** go *if* he calls you.” (The speaker is recommending that you go or is giving you a personal opinion.)
- “I **can’t** go *if* he calls me.” (The speaker is not able or does not have permission.)
- “I **shouldn’t** go *if* he calls me.” (The speaker feels a mild obligation not to.)
- “I **might/may not** go *if* he calls me.” (We very rarely contract *might not* in modern English, and we almost never contract *may not*.)

Interrogative sentences (questions)

To form a question in the first conditional, we invert the subject with the modal auxiliary verb.

- “If I he calls me, **should I go**?”
- “**Could I leave early** if Jake covers my shift?”
- “If I finish my homework on time, **may I go** to the party?”
- “If I come with you, **will you** buy me lunch?”

Second Conditional

We use the **second conditional** to speak about a hypothetical situation or outcome resulting from the condition. Unlike the first conditional, we use the second conditional to talk about things that cannot or are unlikely to happen.

To create the second conditional, we use the **past simple tense** after the *if* clause, followed by *would* + the bare infinitive for the result of the condition.

In addition to *would* (which we use to describe something we would definitely do), we can also use *could* for what we would be able to do, as well as *might* for what it is possible (but unlikely) we would do.

For example:

- “If I went to London, I **would visit** Trafalgar Square.”
- “If I won the lottery, I **could buy** a new house.”
- “If you had a phone, you **could call** me every day.”
- “If I was/were* older, I **might stay up** all night long.”

(*Note that in more formal English, it is standard to use *were* in conditional sentences using the past tense of *be*, irrespective of it having a singular or plural subject. However, in everyday writing and speech, it is common to use *was* for singular subjects.)

We can also put the second conditional in the negative to describe something that would not be the case if something else were also not the case. To form the negative, we use the negative of the past simple in the *if* clause, and make *would* negative in the clause describing the result of the condition.

For example:

- “If our father **didn’t work** so hard, we **wouldn’t be able** to afford this house.”

- “If I **didn’t live** in London, I **could never speak** English so well.”

Interrogative sentences (questions)

To form questions in the second conditional, we invert *would/could/might* with the subject. For example:

- “If you had a million dollars, **would you buy** an expensive boat?”
- “**Would you travel** to South America if you spoke Spanish?”

We can also put a question word before *would* in this form:

- “**What would you do** if your family wasn’t so wealthy?”
- “**Where might you go** if you won the lottery?”
- “If you could have dinner with a famous person, **who would you choose**?”

Third Conditional

Third conditionals are used to establish a hypothetical situation in the past, followed by a hypothetical outcome that did not really happen—typically, the outcome is the opposite of what actually happened.

To form the third conditional, we use the **past perfect tense** for the *if* conditional clause, and *would have* + the **past participle** of the verb for the hypothetical outcome.

(As with the second conditional, we can also use *could* or *might* instead of *would*. Additionally, we can use *should have* + the past participle to describe an outcome that ought to have happened.)

For example:

- “If I **had been** more prepared, I **would have passed** that test.”

In reality, the speaker was not prepared, and so they did not pass the test. By creating a condition in the past using the past perfect tense, they can articulate how they might have achieved a different outcome if they were more prepared.

Here are some other examples:

- Truth: “She was not there and couldn’t help you.”
- Conditional: “If she **had been** there, she **could have helped** you.”

- Truth: “I was late for work yesterday because I overslept.”
- Conditional: “If I **hadn’t overslept**, I **wouldn’t have been late** for work.”

- Truth: “You knew you had a test today.”
- Conditional: “If you **knew** you had a test today, you **should have studied** harder.”

Interrogative sentences (questions)

To form a question in the third conditional, we invert *would/could/might/should* with the subject and add a question word before it (if necessary).

For example:

- “Would you have come to the party if you had known about it?”
- “What might you have done if you had known the truth?”
- “Where could you have gone if you hadn’t come here?”

The Mixed Conditional

A very commonly used “fifth” conditional is what’s known as the **mixed conditional**, which is a cross between the third conditional and the second.

There are two ways to form a mixed conditional, depending on the meaning we wish to achieve.

If it is being used to describe how an unreal situation in the past might have affected an unreal outcome in the present, we use the **past perfect tense** in the *if* conditional clause and *would / could* + the bare infinitive of the verb for the result of the condition.

For example:

- “If I **had studied** more (the condition is in the past), I **would be** a doctor (the result of the condition is in the present).”
- “If I **had been** born in Italy, I **would be** Italian.”
- “If he **hadn’t lost** his job, he **wouldn’t be** unemployed.”

If the mixed conditional is being used to describe how an unreal condition in the present might have affected an unreal outcome in the past, we use the **past simple tense** in the *if* conditional clause and *would have / could have* + the past participle of the verb for the result of the condition.

For example:

- “If I **wasn’t/weren’t so shy** (condition in the present), I **would have asked** her on a date (unreal outcome in the past).”

- "If she **was/were a better driver**, she**'d have gotten** her license by now."
- "If we **worked** a little harder, we **could have finished** this project already."

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. What verb tense is used in the ***if* clause** for the **second conditional**?

a) Past simple tense
b) Past perfect tense
c) Future simple tense
d) Future perfect tense

2. Which of the following **correctly** completes this sentence using the **third conditional**?
"If I had been earlier, ____________________"

a) I would miss the train.
b) I missed the train.
c) I would not have missed the train.
d) I would not be missing the train.

3. Which two conditionals can form a **mixed conditional**?

a) Zero and first conditional
b) First and second conditional
c) Second and third conditional
d) First and third conditional

4. Which of the following modal verbs is **most commonly** used to create conditional sentences?

a) can
b) will
c) do
d) be

5. Which of the conditionals does **not** describe an unreal situation?

a) Third conditional
b) Second conditional
c) First conditional

d) Zero conditional

6. What kind of conditional is the following sentence an example of?
"I would have studied marine biology if I weren't afraid of water."

a) Mixed conditional
b) Third conditional
c) Second conditional
d) First conditional

Major and Minor Sentences (Regular and Irregular Sentences)

Definition

A **major sentence** (also called a **regular sentence**) is any complete sentence that is made up of or contains an **independent clause**—that is, it has both a subject and a predicate (a verb and any of its constituent parts).

A **minor sentence** (also called an **irregular sentence**), on the other hand, is any sentence that does not have at least one independent clause—that is, it does **not** have both a subject and a complete predicate—and yet is used in writing or speech as a complete sentence that stands on its own.

All of the other sections in the chapter on **Sentences** deal with major sentences, so we will focus on minor sentences in this section.

Minor Sentences

Minor sentences can be made up of single words, sentence fragments, interjections, or set expressions (such as **idioms and proverbs**. We'll examine several examples of each below to see how they are used in everyday English.

Single-word sentences

In conversational English, we very often use single words to get across required information in response to another person. These are known as **sentence words, one-word sentences**, or just **word sentences**. For example:

- Person A: "Where is your meeting again?"

• Person B: “**Denver**.”

• Person A: “I think it’s best that we don’t get involved.”
• Person B: “**Agreed**.”

• Person A: “When do you need these reports finished?”
• Person B: “**Tomorrow**.”

Even though the second speaker’s response is only made up of a single word in each of these examples, it contains all the relevant information that is necessary in the context of the conversation.

Sentence fragments

We also commonly use sentence fragments (phrases, incomplete clauses, or dependent clauses) as standalone sentences. Again, these are typically used in conversational English when we are responding to someone else. For example:

• Person A: “Are you going to have lunch soon?”
• Person B: “**In about an hour**.” (prepositional phrase)

• Person A: “Do you want to come to a movie with me later?”
• Person B: “**Sounds good!**” (incomplete clause)

• Person A: “When did you realize that you wanted to pursue politics?”
• Person B: “**When I was in college**.” (dependent clause)

Interjections

Single words and short phrases are also commonly used as **interjections** (also known as **exclamations**) to convey a strong emotion, such as surprise, alarm, excitement, dismay, etc. These are divided into **primary** and **secondary interjections**.

Primary interjections

Primary interjections are single words derived from sounds, rather than from existing word classes. They still have widely recognized meaning, however. Some common primary interjections are:

- **argh** (an expression of frustration)
- **brr** (an expression of being cold)
- **eww** (an expression of disgust)
- **grr** (an expression of anger)

- **ooh** (an expression of amazement)
- **phew** (an expression of relief)

Primary interjections are often linked to a major sentence with a comma, but they can also stand on their own as minor sentences, in which case they are generally punctuated with an exclamation point. For example:

- “**Ooh**! That’s a beautiful dress.”
- “**Brr**! It’s freezing in here!”
- “**Eww**! I hate coconuts!”

Secondary Interjections

Secondary interjections are single words or short phrases that do belong to other existing word classes. Some common secondary interjections are:

- **bless you**
- **congratulations**
- **good grief**
- **hell**
- **hey**
- **hi**
- **oh my**
- **oh my God**
- **oh well**
- **shoot**
- **well**
- **what**
- **wow**

Secondary interjections are also often punctuated with exclamation points. For example:

- “**Oh my God**! We won the lottery!”
- “**Wow**! What a great achievement!”
- “**Congratulations**! That was an impressive victory.”

However, we can also have weaker secondary interjections that are punctuated with periods, or interrogative ones that use question marks. For example:

- “**Well shoot.** I really thought we were going to win.”
- “**Good grief.** I didn’t see that coming.”

- “**Well?** Are we going to watch a movie?”
- “**What?** You don’t like coconuts?”

Idioms, Proverbs, and Set Expressions

English has a large number of expressions that have a set, established understanding, even if they technically are not grammatically complete or do not make literal sense. Many of these are **idioms** (expressions that have a non-literal meaning) or **proverbs** (short sayings that carry a basic truth or precept), though there are other expressions with set meanings that are in frequent and widespread use, as well.

There are thousands of such phrases, so we will only cover a few here that are considered minor sentences. To learn more, check out The Free Dictionary’s **Complete Guide to Idioms, Proverbs, and Phrasal Verbs**.

Idioms

Idioms are phrases whose meaning cannot be gleaned from the literal words they’re composed of, often having a unique grammatical structure. Because of this, they are frequently used in ways that go against traditional grammar rules, and they are often used as sentences unto themselves in conversation. For example:

- “Hi, Bill, how are you?”
- “Hey, Jeff! **Long time no see**!”

- “Be more careful next time, or there might not be a ‘next time.’ **Catch my drift**?”

- “How can you evict us from our house like this?”
- “**Orders are orders**.”

- “When will you have that report ready for me?”
- “**Any minute now**!”

Idioms are so frequently used and understood in everyday speech and writing that they are often truncated or abbreviated, with the full phrase left to be implicitly understood by the listener or reader. For instance:

- “I went through all the trouble of getting her this job, and she still managed to screw it up.”

- “Well, **you can lead a horse to water**.” (Short for “**You can lead a horse to water, but you can’t make it drink**.”)
- “I took them to the best restaurant in town, but they said they would rather have had cheeseburgers.”
- “What do you expect? **Pearls before swine**.” (Short for “**cast (one’s) pearls before swine**.”)

Proverbs

Proverbs are similar to idioms in that their codified meaning is widely understood due to frequent and widespread use. Proverbs are self-contained sentences that express a truth based on common sense or shared experience. Many of them have become pared down into minor sentences over time. For example:

- “You should try and form better habits in your day-to-day routine. **Early to bed, early to rise**!)” (Short for “**Early to bed and early to rise, makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise**.”)
- “I’m not sure why people are shocked that he’s suspected of stealing. **If the shoe fits**.” (Short for “**If the shoe fits, wear it**.”)
- “Sure, bring your friends. **The more the merrier**!”

Other set expressions

There are other common expressions that stand on their own as minor sentences that are not necessarily idiomatic or proverbial but nevertheless have a particular meaning that is inherently understood. (Many of these are forms of (or similar to) the **interjections** that we looked at above.)

Expressions of greeting and farewell are a prime example of set expressions that function as or form minor sentences. For example:

- “**Hello**! How are you?”
- “**Good afternoon**! It’s a pleasure to see you.”
- “I’m afraid I must depart. **Good day**, gentlemen.”
- “**Goodbye**. I hope we meet again.”

Expressions of well wishes operate the same way:

- “I hear you have a big exam coming up. **Good luck**!”

- “This is a big trip you’re undertaking. **Godspeed**!”

Some set expressions have been adapted from other languages, as in:

- “**Bon voyage**! Enjoy your trip abroad!” (From French, expressing good wishes to a departing traveler.)
- “I hope you enjoy the meal. **Bon appétit**, everyone!” (From French, a salutation to someone about to eat.)
- “**Gesundheit**!” (From German, meaning “health,” used in English as a verbal response to someone who has sneezed.)

Quiz

(answers start on page 610)

1. Which of the following would **not** comprise a **minor** sentence?

a) A word
b) A phrase
c) A dependent clause
d) An independent clause

2. Which of the following can be used to punctuate a **secondary interjection**?

a) A period
b) An exclamation point
c) A question mark
d) A & C
e) B & C
f) All of the above

3. Identify the minor sentence in the following example:
“I’ll give Samantha a lift back to the office. Sound good?”

a) I’ll give Samantha a lift back to the office.
b) Sound good?
c) Neither A nor B
d) Both A & B

4. When are single-word sentences **most commonly** used in English?

a) Conversations
b) Formal writing

c) Informal writing
d) Professional writing

5. Identify what **kind** of minor sentence is highlighted in the following example:
Speaker A: “I really need that loan you promised me.”
Speaker B: “**All in good time.**”

a) One-word sentence
b) Interjection
c) Idiom
d) Proverb

Quiz answers

Page. Article: Question-Answer

14. Nouns: 1-f, 2-b, 3-d, 4-c, 5-b
16. Common and Proper Nouns: 1-b, 2-b, 3-b
18. Nouns of Address: 1-e, 2-b, 3-d, 4-a, 5-b
21. Concrete and Abstract Nouns: 1-b, 2-a, 3-b, 4-a, 5-a, 6-b
24. Countable Nouns: 1-f, 2-b, 3-b, 4-d, 5-c
28. Uncountable Nouns: 1-c, 2-a, 3-d, 4-b, 5-d
31. Collective Nouns: 1-d, 2-c, 3-a, 4-b, 5-c
35. Compound Nouns: 1-a, 2-b, 3-c, 4-c, 5-d
39. Nominalization (Creating Nouns): 1-b, 2-c, 3-a, 4-c
42. Pronouns: 1-c, 2-a, 3-d, 4-a, 5-c
44. Personal Pronouns - Number: 1-e, 2-d, 3-a, 4-c
46. Personal Pronouns - Person (First person, Second person, Third person): 1-b, 2-d, 3-a, 4-d
47. Personal Pronouns - Gender: 1-c, 2-d, 3-b, 4-e, 5-c
50. Personal Pronouns - Case: 1-a, 2-b, 3-e, 4-c, 5-a
51. Personal Pronouns - Reflexive Pronouns: 1-c, 2-a, 3-d, 4-b
52. Intensive Pronouns: 1-c, 2-a, 3-f, 4-d
56. Indefinite Pronouns: 1-c, 2-c, 3-a, 4-d
59. Demonstrative Pronouns: 1-c, 2-d, 3-a, 4-c
62. Interrogative Pronouns: 1-b, 2-d, 3-f, 4-a
68. Relative Pronouns: 1-b, 2-a, 3-d, 4-a, 5-a, 6-d
69. Reciprocal Pronouns: 1-d, 2-b, 3-a, 4-d
72. Dummy Pronouns: 1-b, 2-b, 3-d, 4-a, 5-c
78. Verbs: 1-b, 2-c, 3-a, 4-f, 5-b, 6-c
82. Finite and Non-finite Verbs: 1-c, 2-d, 3-a, 4-e, 5-b
85. Transitive and Intransitive Verbs: 1-c, 2-d, 3-c, 4-a, 5-b
88. Regular and Irregular Verbs: 1-b, 2-d, 3-a, 4-b, 5-d, 6-c
93. Auxiliary Verbs: 1-c, 2-d, 3-a, 4-c, 5-c
100. Primary Auxiliary Verbs: 1-b, 2-c, 3-c, 4-d, 5-a
104. Modal Auxiliary Verbs: 1-a, 2-d, 3-a, 4-c, 5-b, 6-b
107. Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Will: 1-c, 2-b, 3-a
110. Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Would: 1-b, 2-d, 3-c, 4-a
112. Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Shall: 1-a, 2-d, 3-c
115. Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Should: 1-a, 2-d, 3-b, 4-a

118. Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Can: 1-d, 2-c, 3-a
121. Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Could: 1-b, 2-c, 3-b
123. Modal Auxiliary Verbs - May: 1-c, 2-c, 3-b, 4-d
125. Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Might: 1-c, 2-c, 3-a, 4-d
127. Modal Auxiliary Verbs - Must: 1-a, 2-c, 3-c, 4-d
130. Substituting Modal Verbs: 1-f, 2-d, 3-c, 4-d
134. Semi-Modal Auxiliary Verbs: 1-b, 2-f, 3-a, 4-c, 5-b
138. Infinitives: 1-f, 2-b, 3-b, 4-a, 5-c
145. Participles: 1-e, 2-b, 3-c, 4-d, 5-a
147. Action Verbs: 1-b, 2-d, 3-a, 4-c
152. Stative Verbs: 1-c, 2-b, 3-c, 4-d, 5-b
157. Linking Verbs: 1-c, 2-b, 3-a, 4-d, 5-b, 6-a
162. Light Verbs: 1-b, 2-e, 3-b, 4-a, 5-a
165. Phrasal Verbs: 1-c, 2-a, 3-d, 4-c, 5-b
177. Conditional Verbs: 1-g, 2-c, 2-e, 3-a, 4-b, 5-d
179. Causative Verbs: 1-b, 2-d, 3-a, 4-b, 5-a
181. Factitive Verbs: 1-c, 2-d, 3-a, 4-b, 5-c
183. Reflexive Verbs: 1-b, 2-d, 3-d, 4-a
187. Adjectives: 1-c, 2-b, 3-a, 4-d, 5-c
191. Attributive Adjectives: 1-a, 2-a, 3-c, 4-a, 5-b
194. Predicative Adjectives: 1-b, 2-c, 3-e, 4-a
197. Proper Adjectives: 1-b, 2-c, 3-a, 4-d, 5-a
199. Collective Adjectives: 1-a, 2-c, 3-a, 4-b, 5-a
202. Demonstrative Adjectives: 1-b, 2-c, 3-d, 4-a, 5-b
204. Interrogative Adjectives: 1-b, 2-c, 3-e, 4-b, 5-a
207. Nominal Adjectives: 1-d, 2-c, 3-a, 4-c, 5-d
210. Compound Adjectives: 1-c, 2-b, 3-a, 4-b
214. Order of Adjectives: 1-b, 2-a, 3-c, 4-d, 5-a
217. Degrees of Comparison: 1-c, 2-a, 3-b, 4-f
222. Comparative Adjectives: 1-a, 2-d, 3-b, 4-c, 5-d
225. Superlative Adjectives: 1-c, 2-b, 3-d, 4-a
229. Adverbs: 1-c, 2-c, 3-a, 4-b, 5-d
233. Adverbs of Time: 1-c, 2-d, 3-a, 4-b, 5-a
237. Adverbs of Place: 1-d, 2-b, 3-c, 4-d, 5-a, 6-c
239. Adverbs of Manner: 1-b, 2-d, 3-d, 4-a, 5-c
242. Adverbs of Degree: 1-c, 2-a, 3-d, 4-b, 5-b
244. Mitigators: 1-a, 2-d, 3-b, 4-b, 5-c
247. Intensifiers: 1-b, 2-d, 3-a, 4-c, 5-f
250. Adverbs of Frequency: 1-f, 2-b, 3-a, 4-c, 5-d, 6-c

253. Adverbs of Purpose: 1-b, 2-c, 3-d, 4-e
257. Focusing Adverbs: 1-a, 2-c, 3-b, 4-d, 5-a
262. Negative Adverbs: 1-d, 2-b, 3-a, 4-a, 5-c
266. Conjunctive Adverbs: 1-d, 2-e, 3-a, 4-b, 5-b
269. Evaluative Adverbs: 1-e, 2-b, 3-d, 4-b, 5-c
272. Viewpoint Adverbs: 1-a, 2-d, 3-c, 4-d, 5-b
274. Relative Adverbs: 1-d, 2-b, 3-a, 4-c, 5-d, 6-a
276. Adverbial Nouns: 1-c, 2-d, 3-b, 4-d
280. Regular and Irregular Adverbs: 1-c, 2-a, 3-d, 4-b, 5-c, 6-b
283. Degrees of Comparison: 1-c, 2-a, 3-b, 4-f
287. Comparative Adverbs: 1-c, 2-b, 3-d, 4-b, 5-b
291. Superlative Adverbs: 1-c, 2-c, 3-b, 4-d, 5-b
295. Order of Adverbs: 1-b, 2-a, 3-c, 4-e, 5-a
298. Prepositions: 1-b, 2-e, 3-a, 4-b
301. Prepositional Phrases: 1-d, 2-b, 3-b, 4-a, 5-d
306. Categories of Prepositions: 1-d, 2-b, 3-b, 4-d
316. Prepositions with Nouns: 1-c, 2-b, 3-a, 4-c
325. Prepositions with Verbs: 1-e, 2-b, 3-a, 4-c
331. Prepositions with Adjectives: 1-d, 2-a, 3-a, 4-d
333. Prepositions in Idioms: 1-d, 2-d, 3-b, 4-b, 5-a
339. Idioms that Start with Prepositions: 1-c, 2-a, 3-a, 4-d
346. Idioms that End with Prepositions: 1-d, 2-d, 3-b, 4-a
348. Conjunctions: 1-d, 2-e, 3-b, 4-c
351. Coordinating Conjunctions: 1-e, 2-c, 3-a, 4-d, 5-a
356. Correlative Conjunctions: 1-b, 2-d, 3-a, 4-c, 5-d
360. Subordinating Conjunctions: 1-c, 2-a, 3-c, 4-d, 5-e
362. Particles: 1-c, 2-d, 3-b, 4-a
365. Articles: 1-a, 2-b, 3-a, 4-d, 5-f
373. Determiners: 1-b, 2-c, 3-d, 4-a, 5-b
375. Possessive Determiners: 1-a, 2-b, 3-d, 4-d, 5-a, 6-c
378. Gerunds: 1-c, 2-a, 3-b, 4-d, 5-c
381. Gerunds as Objects of Verbs: 1-b, 2-c, 3-d, 4-b
384. Interjections: 1-c, 2-c, 3-a, 4-c, 5-b
389. Inflection (Accidence): 1-b, 2-c, 3-e, 4-a, 5-c
397. Conjugation: 1-c, 2-a, 3-e, 4-d, 5-b, 5-e
404. Tense: 1-b, 2-d, 3-c, 4-a, 5-c
406. Present Tense: 1-g, 2-a, 3-c, 4-f
408. Present Simple Tense: 1-c, 2-d, 3-a, 4-c
411. Present Continuous Tense (Progressive): 1-c, 2-d, 3-g, 4-a, 5-d, 6-b

415. Present Perfect Tense: 1-c, 2-f, 3-b, 4-a
418. Present Perfect Continuous Tense: 1-b, 2-a, 3-c, 4-d
421. Past Tense: 1-a, 2-d, 3-c, 4-c, 5-d
424. Past Simple Tense: 1-b, 2-d, 3-a, 4-c, 5-c
426. Past Continuous Tense: 1-c, 2-a, 3-c, 4-b
429. Past Perfect Tense: 1-c, 2-b, 3-a, 4-c, 5-d
432. Past Perfect Continuous Tense: 1-c, 2-e, 3-b, 4-c, 5-b
434. Future Tense (Approximation): 1-d, 2-d, 3-c, 4-b
437. Future Simple Tense: 1-c, 2-a, 3-d, 4-b, 5-b
440. Future Continuous Tense: 1-d, 2-b, 3-c, 4-a, 5-c
443. Future Perfect Tense: 1-c, 2-d, 3-a, 4-b, 5-c
445. Future Perfect Continuous Tense: 1-c, 2-e, 3-a, 4-b, 5-d
448. Aspect: 1-b, 2-a, 3-d, 4-c, 5-d
451. Perfective and Imperfective Aspect: 1-a, 2-d, 3-c, 4-d, 5-c
452. Aspects of the Present Tense: 1-c, 2-b, 3-a, 4-c, 5-a, 6-d
454. Aspects of the Past Tense: 1-a, 2-b, 3-a, 4-b, 5-b
456. Aspects of the Future Tense: 1-c, 2-b, 3-a, 4-b, 5-d
458. Mood: 1-a, 2-e, 3-e, 4-b, 5-h
461. Indicative Mood: 1-e, 2-c, 3-b, 4-c
463. Subjunctive Mood: 1-d, 2-b, 3-c, 4-a, 5-b
465. Subjunctive Mood - Expressing Wishes: 1-c, 2-d, 3-a, 4-b, 5-b
467. Voice: 1-b, 2-a, 3-d, 4-d
469. Active Voice: 1-c, 2-d, 3-f, 4-b
471. Passive Voice: 1-a, 2-a, 3-b, 4-e, 5-d
473. Middle Voice: 1-d, 2-c, 3-d, 4-a
477. Speech: 1-a, 2-d, 3-b, 4-d, 5-c, 6-b
481. Reported Speech (Indirect Speech): 1-b, 2-c, 3-b, 4-a, 5-d, 6-c
486. Grammatical Person: 1-b, 2-e, 3-g, 4-c, 5-a
491. Declension: 1-d, 2-b, 3-e, 4-a, 5-c
495. Plurals: 1-b, 2-d, 3-a, 4-b, 5-c
497. Gender in Nouns: 1-b, 2-d, 3-e, 4-a
503. Regular and Irregular Inflection: 1-c, 2-a, 3-c, 4-d, 5-c, 6-g
507. Syntax: 1-a, 2-e, 3-b, 4-c, 5-c
513. The Subject: 1-c, 2-a, 3-b, 4-a, 5-c, 6-d
519. The Predicate: 1-b, 2-a, 3-d, 4-b, 5-a, 6-c, 7-b
523. Complements: 1-a, 2-c, 3-b, 4-d, 5-c
526. Objects: 1-d, 2-c, 3-b, 4-d
528. Subject Complements: 1-c, 2-d, 3-a, 4-b
530. Object Complements: 1-c, 2-b, 3-b, 4-a

532. Adjective Complements: 1-c, 2-b, 3-d
533. Adverbial Complements: 1-b, 2-d, 3-e
539. Modifiers: 1-e, 2-a, 3-b, 4-d, 5-a, 6-b
543. Adjuncts: 1-b, 2-d, 3-a, 4-b, 5-c, 6-a
548. Phrases: 1-d, 2-e, 3-a, 4-c, 5-a
552. Noun Phrases: 1-c, 2-d, 3-a, 4-b, 5-c
555. Adjective Phrases: 1-g, 2-b, 3-b, 4-b
558. Adverbial Phrases: 1-b, 2-c, 3-a, 4-b, 5-d
561. Participle Phrases: 1-b, 2-f, 3-a, 4-c, 5-c, 6-f
563. Absolute Phrases: 1-c, 2-e, 3-a, 4-b
565. Appositives: 1-b, 2-a, 3-c, 4-b, 5-b
568. Clauses: 1-a, 2-d, 3-f, 4-d, 5-b
569. Independent Clauses: 1-e, 2-a, 3-c, 4-a, 5-b
572. Dependent Clauses: 1-e, 2-a, 3-b, 4-e, 5-c
575. Noun Clauses: 1-c, 2-d, 3-b, 4-d
577. Relative Clauses: 1-b, 2-a, 3-d, 4-c
579. Adverbial Clauses: 1-d, 2-a, 3-b, 4-b
584. Sentences: 1-f, 2-b, 3-c, 4-e
587. Compound Sentences: 1-d, 2-f, 3-a, 4-c, 5-b
589. Complex Sentences: 1-c, 2-b, 3-d, 4-a, 5-a
591. Compound-Complex Sentences: 1-b, 2-e, 3-b, 4-c, 5-f
595. Declarative Sentences: 1-c, 2-a, 3-d, 4-g, 5-c
597. Interrogative Sentences: 1-b, 2-c, 3-d, 4-c
599. Negative Interrogative Sentences: 1-f, 2-c, 3-a, 4-b
601. Imperative Sentences: 1-d, 2-b, 3-g, 4-a
605. Conditional Sentences: 1-a, 2-c, 3-c, 4-b, 5-d, 6-a
608. Major and Minor Sentences (Regular and Irregular Sentences): 1-d, 2-f, 3-b, 4-a, 5-c

Index

A

absolute construction · 562
absolute phrases · 562
abstract countable nouns · 20
abstract nouns · 19
abstract uncountable nouns · 20
accidence · 385
action verbs · 146
action verbs that take gerunds · 380
active voice · 467
adjectival adjuncts · 542
adjectival clauses · 575
adjectival phrases · 553
adjectival prepositional phrases · 299
adjective clauses · 575
adjective complements · 326, 531
adjective phrase complements · 531
adjective phrases · 553
adjective phrases vs. adjectival phrases · 555
adjective phrases, forming · 553
adjectives · 184
adjectives, attributive · 188
adjectives, collective · 198
adjectives, comparative · 218
adjectives, compound · 207
adjectives, cumulative · 214
adjectives, demonstrative · 200
adjectives, distributive · 367
adjectives, gradable · 221, 241
adjectives, indefinite · 56
adjectives, interrogative · 202
adjectives, irregular · 219, 500
adjectives, long · 219
adjectives, nominal · 205
adjectives, non-gradable · 241

adjectives, non-restrictive · 189
adjectives, order of · 211
adjectives, phrasal · 207
adjectives, possessive · 374
adjectives, postnominal · 189
adjectives, postpositive · 189
adjectives, predicate · 192
adjectives, predicative · 192
adjectives, prenominal · 189
adjectives, prepositive · 189
adjectives, proper · 194
adjectives, regular · 500
adjectives, restrictive · 189
adjectives, short · 218
adjectives, superlative · 223
adjectives, ungradable · 222
adjunct phrases · 541
adjuncts · 540
adverb clauses · 577
adverb phrases · 556
adverbial adjuncts · 540
adverbial clauses · 577
adverbial clauses of comparison or manner · 579
adverbial clauses of condition · 579
adverbial clauses of contrast · 579
adverbial clauses of place · 578
adverbial clauses of purpose · 253
adverbial clauses of reason or purpose · 578
adverbial clauses of time · 578
adverbial complements · 533
adverbial nouns · 275
adverbial objectives · 275
adverbial phrases · 556
adverbial phrases of purpose · 252
adverbial prepositional phrases · 299
adverbials · 226
adverbials, negative · 258
adverbs · 226
adverbs of definite frequency · 248

adverbs of degree · 240
adverbs of direction · 234
adverbs of duration · 231
adverbs of frequency · 247
adverbs of indefinite frequency · 249
adverbs of location · 235
adverbs of manner · 237
adverbs of movement and direction · 235
adverbs of movement and location · 235
adverbs of place · 234
adverbs of purpose · 251
adverbs of purpose, non-conjunctive · 252
adverbs of reason · 251
adverbs of time · 230
adverbs, commenting · 267
adverbs, comparative · 283
adverbs, conjunctive · 263, 586
adverbs, connecting · 263
adverbs, creating · 237
adverbs, evaluative · 267
adverbs, focusing · 254
adverbs, frequency · 247
adverbs, gradable · 287
adverbs, grading · 240
adverbs, irregular · 277, 501
adverbs, linking · 263
adverbs, negative · 258
adverbs, non-grading · 240
adverbs, order of · 292
adverbs, regular · 277, 501
adverbs, relative · 272
adverbs, royal order of · 292
adverbs, superlative · 288
adverbs, ungradable · 287
adverbs, viewpoint · 270
agreement, subject-verb · 24, 354, 509
alternative questions · 596
ambitransitive verbs · 83
American English · 24, 33, 87, 114, 220, 232, 235, 285, 290, 309, 351, 364,

474, 475
animals, collective nouns and · 30
antecedents · 40, 44, 51
anticipatory it · 72
apostrophes, possessive · 375
appellations · 15
appositive phrases · 564
appositives · 564
appositives, non-restrictive · 565
appositives, restrictive · 565
articles · 363
articles, definite · 363
articles, indefinite · 363
as … as · 222
aspect · 446
attributive adjectives · 188
attributive vs. predicative adjectives · 188
auxiliary verbs · 89, 94
auxiliary verbs, semi-modal · 130

B

be · 94, 485
beginning a sentence with a coordinating conjunction · 351
brands · 15
British English · 33, 114, 220, 235, 285, 290, 309, 351, 364, 474, 475

C

can · 116
can / could · 128
can / could / may / might · 128
can / may / shall · 129
case · 48
case, genitive · 49
case, objective · 48, 525, 528
case, possessive · 49
causative verbs · 178, 181
choice questions · 596
clauses · 566
clauses, adjectival · 575

clauses, adjective · 575
clauses, adverb · 577
clauses, adverbial · 577
clauses, dependent · 570
clauses, independent · 568
clauses, main · 568
clauses, non-defining · 576
clauses, non-restrictive · 576
clauses, noun · 572
clauses, participle · 559
clauses, relative · 575
clauses, restrictive · 576
clauses, restrictive relative · 576
clauses, subordinate · 570
closed compound nouns · 33
collective adjectives · 198
collective nouns · 29
collective nouns and animals · 30
collective nouns, plural-only · 30
comma splices · 586
commas · 474, 589
commenting adverbs · 267
common nouns · 15
comparative adjectives · 218
comparative adverbs · 283
comparative adverbs, forming · 284
comparative adverbs, irregular · 285
complements · 520
complements, adjective · 326, 531
complements, adjective phrase · 531
complements, adverbial · 533
complements, object · 180, 190, 529
complements, subject · 49, 527
complete contrast · 265
complex sentences · 588
complex vs. compound sentences · 590
compound adjectives · 207
compound modifiers · 207
compound nouns · 31

compound nouns, hyphenated · 33
compound nouns, open · 33
compound nouns, solid · 33
compound nouns, spaced · 33
compound predicates · 515, 582
compound sentences · 584
compound subjects · 582
compound-complex sentences · 590
concrete countable nouns · 19
concrete nouns · 18
concrete uncountable nouns · 20
conditional sentences · 602
conditional verbs · 175
conjugation · 389, 397
conjunction, beginning a sentence with a coordinating · 351
conjunctions · 347
conjunctions, coordinating · 349, 585
conjunctions, correlative · 585
conjunctions, correlative · 352
conjunctions, paired · 352
conjunctions, subordinating · 356
conjunctive adverbs · 263, 586
conjunctive adverbs of purpose · 251
connecting adverbs · 263
consonant sounds vs. vowel sounds · 363
continuous aspect · 452, 453, 455
conversion · 38
coordinating conjunctions · 349, 585
copular verbs · 153
copulas · 153
correlative conjunctions · 352, 585
could · 119
count nouns · 21
countable nouns · 21
cumulative adjectives · 214

D

dangling modifiers · 143, 539
declarative questions · 594

declarative sentences · 592
declarative sentences, negative · 594
declension · 487
definite articles · 363
degrees of strength · 240
delexical verbs · 158
demonstrative adjectives · 200
demonstrative determiners · 200
demonstrative pronouns · 57
dependent clauses · 570
dependent prepositions · 317
determiners · 366
determiners, demonstrative · 200
determiners, distributive · 367
determiners, interrogative · 202
determiners, possessive · 374
determiners, pre- · 368
diathesis · 466
direct objects · 180, 524
direct questions · 60
direct speech · 474
distributive adjectives · 367
distributive determiners · 367
ditransitive verbs · 84, 524
do · 94
double negatives · 261
dummy pronouns · 70
dynamic verbs · 146

E

each · 368
each other · 68
either · 368
elliptical sentences · 253
emphatic mood · 458
empty subjects · 72
empty verbs · 158
enough · 242
ergative verbs · 83

evaluative adverbs · 267
every · 368
exclamations · 382
exclamatory sentences · 592
existential there · 70
expletive pronouns · 70

F

factitive verbs · 180
familial roles · 16
FANBOYS · 349, 585
farthest · 224
feminine · 495
fewer vs. less · 27
finite verbs · 79, 516
first conditional · 177, 602
first person · 45, 482
flection · 385
focusing adverbs · 254
fragments, sentence · 606
free indirect discourse · 476
free indirect speech · 476
frequency adverbs · 247
furthest · 224
future continuous tense · 438, 455
future indicative · 459
future perfect continuous tense · 443, 456
future perfect progressive tense · 443
future perfect tense · 441, 455
future progressive tense · 438
future simple tense · 435, 455
future tenses · 433

G

gender · 46, 495
gender neutral · 43, 46
generic you · 55
generic you and they · 55
genitive case · 49

gerund phrases · 376, 545
gerunds · 80, 376
gerunds vs. infinitives · 380
good vs. well · 157, 193
gradable adjectives · 221, 241
gradable adverbs · 287
grading adverbs · 240
grammatical number · 44
grammatical person · 45, 482

H

have · 94
helping verbs · 89
here · 236
hierarchy of grammatical structure · 505
hyphenated compound nouns · 33

I

idioms · 166, 607
idioms that end with prepositions · 340
idioms that start with prepositions · 334
idioms, prepositional · 332, 334, 340
imperative mood · 457
imperative sentences · 600
imperfective aspect · 449
impersonal pronouns · 55
impersonal you · 55
implied objects · 182
indefinite adjectives · 56
indefinite articles · 363
indefinite pronouns · 53
indefinite you · 55
independent clauses · 568
indicative mood · 459
indirect objects · 310, 524
indirect questions · 60, 594, 597
indirect speech · 478
infinitive mood · 458
infinitive phrases · 546

infinitives · 79, 134
infinitives of purpose · 252
inflection · 385
inflection, irregular · 498
inflection, regular · 498
intensifiers · 245, 369
intensive pronouns · 51
interjections · 382, 606
interjections, primary · 382
interjections, secondary · 383
interrogative adjectives · 202
interrogative adjectives vs. interrogative pronouns · 204
interrogative determiners · 202
interrogative pronouns · 60
interrogative sentences · 595
interro-negative sentences · 598
intransitive verbs · 82, 309
inversion · 91, 98, 260
inversion, subject-auxiliary · 91
inversion, subject-verb · 595
irrealis moods · 456
irregular adjectives · 219, 500
irregular adverbs · 277, 501
irregular comparative adverbs · 285
irregular inflection · 498
irregular plurals · 492, 499
irregular sentences · 605
irregular superlative adverbs · 290
irregular verbs · 86, 503
it · 70
it, anticipatory · 72

J

job titles · 16

L

less vs. fewer · 27
light verbs · 158
linking adverbs · 263

linking verbs · 153, 181
linking verbs vs. action verbs · 156
long adjectives · 219

M

main clauses · 568
major sentences · 605
marginal modal verbs · 130
masculine · 495
mass nouns · 25
may · 121
may / might · 129
middle voice · 472
might · 123
minor sentences · 605
misplaced modifiers · 143, 538
mitigators · 243
mixed conditional · 604
modal auxiliary verbs · 101
modal verbs · 101
modal verbs, marginal · 130
modifiers · 534
modifiers vs. complements · 532
modifiers, compound · 207
modifiers, dangling · 143, 539
modifiers, misplaced · 143, 538
modifiers, squinting · 539
monotransitive verbs · 84, 524
mood · 456
mood, emphatic · 458
mood, imperative · 457
mood, indicative · 459
mood, infinitive · 458
mood, realis · 456, 459
moods, irrealis · 456
must · 126
must / shall / should / will · 129

N

names · 15
negative adverbials · 258
negative adverbs · 258
negative declarative sentences · 594
negative interrogative sentences · 598
negative phrases · 93
negative sentences · 594
negative sentences, forming · 93
neither · 57, 368
nominal adjectives · 205
nominalization · 35
nominatives of address · 16
non-conjunctive adverbs of purpose · 252
non-continuous verbs · 148
non-count nouns · 25
non-defining clauses · 576
none · 57
non-finite verbs · 79, 516
non-gradable adjectives · 241
non-grading adverbs · 240
non-progressive verbs · 148
non-restrictive adjectives · 189
non-restrictive appositives · 565
non-restrictive clauses · 576
non-restrictive relative clauses · 576
noun adjuncts · 542
noun clauses · 572
noun phrases · 188, 548
nouns · 11
nouns of address · 16
nouns of direct address · 16
nouns, closed compound · 33
nouns, collective · 29
nouns, common · 15
nouns, compound · 31
nouns, concrete · 18
nouns, concrete countable · 19
nouns, concrete uncountable · 20
nouns, count · 21

nouns, countable · 21
nouns, mass · 25
nouns, non-count · 25
nouns, predicate · 527
nouns, predicative · 527
nouns, proper · 15
nouns, synonymous · 311
nouns, uncountable · 25
number · 44

O

object complements · 180, 190, 529
objective case · 48, 525, 528
objects · 524
objects of prepositions · 525
objects of verbs · 524
one another · 68
open compound nouns · 33
order of adjectives · 211
order of adverbs · 292
origin · 306
Oxford comma · 351

P

paired conjunctions · 352
parallel structure · 354
participle clauses · 559
participle phrases · 559
participle phrases, passive perfect · 560
participles · 80, 139
particle phrasal verbs · 163
particle-prepositional phrasal verbs · 163
particles · 361
parts of speech · 10
passive perfect participle phrases · 560
passive voice · 470
past continuous tense · 425, 453
past indicative · 459
past participle phrases · 559

past participles · 80, 140
past perfect continuous tense · 430, 454
past perfect progressive tense · 430
past perfect tense · 427, 454
past progressive tense · 425
past simple tense · 422, 453
past tense · 419
perfect aspect · 452, 454
perfect participle phrases · 559
perfect simple aspect · 455
perfective aspect · 449
person · 45
personal pronouns · 43
phrasal adjectives · 207
phrasal verbs · 162, 166, 361
phrasal verbs, preposition · 163
phrases · 543
phrases, adjectival · 553
phrases, adjectival prepositional · 299
phrases, adjective · 553
phrases, adjunct · 541
phrases, adverb · 556
phrases, adverbial · 556
phrases, adverbial prepositional · 299
phrases, appositive · 564
phrases, infinitive · 546
phrases, negative · 93
phrases, noun · 188, 548
phrases, participle · 559
phrases, prepositional · 298, 525
phrases, verb · 544
plural-only collective nouns · 30
plurals · 44, 492
plurals, irregular · 492, 499
plurals, regular · 499
positive degree · 215, 281
possession · 374
possessive adjectives · 374
possessive apostrophes · 375

possessive case · 49
possessive determiners · 374
postnominal adjectives · 189
postpositive adjectives · 189
pre-determiners · 368
predicate · 514
predicate adjectives · 192
predicate nominatives · 527
predicate nouns · 527
predicate pronouns · 527
predicate, parts of the · 516
predicate, simple · 515
predicates, compound · 515, 582
predicative adjectives · 192
predicative nouns · 527
prenominal adjectives · 189
preposition phrasal verbs · 163
prepositional idioms · 332, 334, 340
prepositional phrases · 298, 525
prepositional verbs · 317
prepositional verbs vs. phrasal verbs · 318
prepositions · 295, 307
prepositions of agency · 306
prepositions of connection · 306
prepositions of direction or movement · 305
prepositions of instrument or device · 306
prepositions of place · 304
prepositions of reason or purpose · 306
prepositions of time · 303
prepositions, dependent · 317
prepositions, objects of · 525
prepositive adjectives · 189
present continuous tense · 409, 452
present indicative · 459
present participle phrases · 559
present participles · 80, 139, 409
present perfect continuous tense · 416, 452
present perfect progressive tense · 416
present perfect tense · 412, 452

present simple tense · 406, 452
present tense · 404
primary interjections · 382
pronouns · 40
pronouns, demonstrative · 57
pronouns, dummy · 70
pronouns, expletive · 70
pronouns, impersonal · 55
pronouns, indefinite · 53
pronouns, intensive · 51
pronouns, interrogative · 60
pronouns, personal · 43
pronouns, predicate · 527
pronouns, reciprocal · 68
pronouns, reflexive · 43, 69, 182
pronouns, relative · 63
proper adjectives · 194
proper nouns · 15
proverbs · 608

Q

quantifiers · 369
question mark · 595
question word questions · 596
question words · 596, 598
questions, reported · 61
quotation marks · 474
quoted speech · 474

R

realis mood · 456, 459
reciprocal pronouns · 68
reflexive pronouns · 43, 69, 182
reflexive verbs · 182
regular adjectives · 500
regular adverbs · 277, 501
regular inflection · 498
regular plurals · 499
regular sentences · 605

regular verbs · 86, 502
relative adverbs · 272
relative clauses · 575
relative clauses, non-restrictive · 576
relative pronouns · 63
reported questions · 61
reported speech · 478
reporting verbs · 474, 478
restrictive adjectives · 189
restrictive appositives · 565
restrictive clauses · 576
restrictive relative clauses · 576
restrictive vs. non-restrictive attributive adjectives · 189
rhetorical · 597
royal order of adverbs · 292
run-on sentences · 586

S

second conditional · 177, 603
second person · 45, 482
secondary interjections · 383
semantically weak verbs · 158
semicolon · 263, 586
semi-modal auxiliary verbs · 130
semi-modal verbs · 130
sense verbs · 149, 155, 192
sentence fragments · 606
sentences · 580
sentences, complex · 588
sentences, compound · 584
sentences, compound-complex · 590
sentences, conditional · 602
sentences, declarative · 592
sentences, elliptical · 253
sentences, exclamatory · 592
sentences, imperative · 600
sentences, interrogative · 595
sentences, interro-negative · 598
sentences, irregular · 605

sentences, major · 605
sentences, minor · 605
sentences, negative · 594
sentences, negative interrogative · 598
sentences, regular · 605
sentences, run-on · 586
sentences, simple · 568
sentences, single-word · 606
serial comma · 351
shall · 110
short adjectives · 218
should · 112
silent speech · 477
simple aspect · 453, 455
simple past tense · 422
simple predicate · 515
simple present tense · 406
simple sentences · 568
single-word sentences · 606
singular · 44
singular they · 47
solid compound nouns · 33
spaced compound nouns · 33
speech · 474
speech, direct · 474
speech, free indirect · 476
speech, indirect · 478
speech, quoted · 474
speech, reported · 478
speech, silent · 477
squinting modifiers · 539
state verbs · 148
stative verbs · 148
stative verbs that take gerunds · 379
subject complements · 49, 527
subject, renaming the · 154
subject-auxiliary inversion · 91
subjective case · 48, 528
subjects · 508

subjects, compound · 582
subjects, empty · 72
subject-verb agreement · 24, 509
subject-verb agreement · 354
subject-verb inversion · 595
subjunctive mood · 461
subordinate clauses · 570
subordinating conjunctions · 356
such · 57
suffixes · 35
superlative adjectives · 223
superlative adverbs · 288
superlative adverbs, irregular · 290
suprafix · 38
synonymous nouns · 311
syntax · 505

T

tag questions · 596
tense · 397
that · 57
there · 70, 236
there, existential · 70
these · 57
these/those · 201
they, generic · 55
they, singular · 47
thin verbs · 158
third conditional · 177, 604
third person · 45, 482
this · 57
this/that · 200
those · 57
to be · 148
toward · 235
towards · 235
transitive verbs · 82, 309
tritransitive verbs · 85

U

uncountable nouns · 25
ungradable adjectives · 222
ungradable adverbs · 287

V

verb phrases · 544
verb tenses · 90
verbs · 73
verbs followed by both gerunds and infinitives · 381
verbs of cognition · 151
verbs of emotion · 150
verbs of possession and attribution · 150
verbs of progression · 156
verbs of states or qualities · 151
verbs of the senses · 155
verbs, action · 146
verbs, ambitransitive · 83
verbs, auxiliary · 89, 94
verbs, causative · 178, 181
verbs, conditional · 175
verbs, copular · 153
verbs, delexical · 158
verbs, ditransitive · 84, 524
verbs, dynamic · 146
verbs, empty · 158
verbs, ergative · 83
verbs, factitive · 180
verbs, finite · 79, 516
verbs, helping · 89
verbs, intransitive · 82, 309
verbs, irregular · 86, 503
verbs, light · 158
verbs, linking · 153, 181
verbs, modal · 101
verbs, modal auxiliary · 101
verbs, monotransitive · 84, 524
verbs, non-continuous · 148
verbs, non-finite · 79, 516
verbs, non-progressive · 148

verbs, phrasal · 162, 166, 361
verbs, prepositional · 317
verbs, reflexive · 182
verbs, regular · 86, 502
verbs, reporting · 474, 478
verbs, semantically weak · 158
verbs, semi-modal · 130
verbs, sense · 149, 155, 192
verbs, state · 148
verbs, stative · 148
verbs, thin · 158
verbs, transitive · 82, 309
verbs, tritransitive · 85
viewpoint adverbs · 270
vocatives · 16
voice · 466
voice, active · 467
voice, middle · 472
voice, passive · 470
vowel sounds vs. consonant sounds · 363

W

weak contrast · 265
wh- questions · 596
what vs. which · 203
whom · 60, 525, 576
whose vs. who's · 204
will · 105
will / can / could / would · 129
will / shall · 128
would · 107

Y

yes/no questions · 596, 598
yon/yonder · 201
you, generic · 55
you, impersonal · 55
you, indefinite · 55

Z

zero conditional · 176, 602
zero derivation · 38

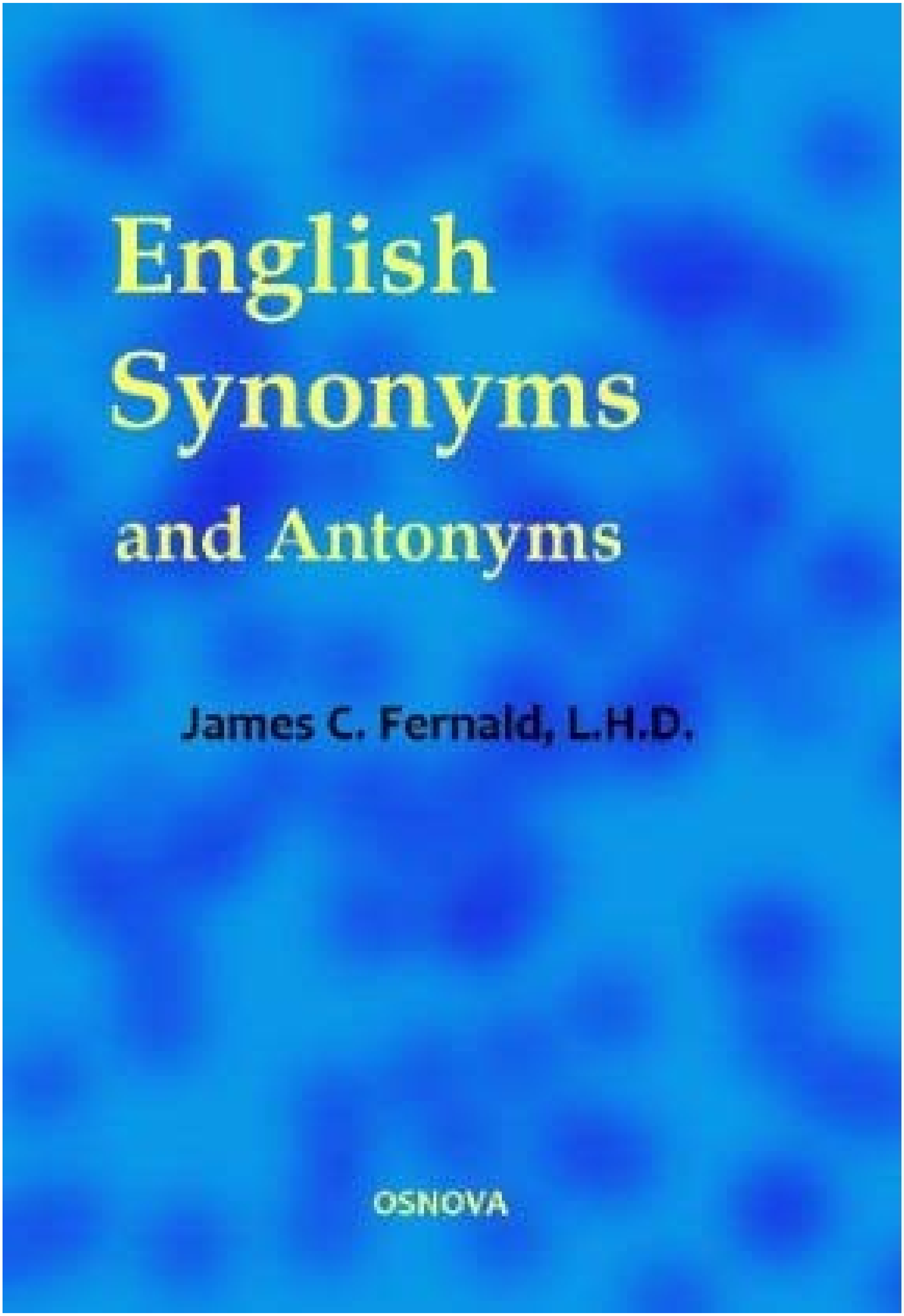

English Synonyms and Antonyms

James C. Fernald, L.H.D.

OSNOVA

A Practical and Invaluable Guide to Clear and Precise Diction for Writers, Speakers, Students, Business and Professional Men

Connectives of English Speech

"The work is likely to prove of great value to all writers."—*Washington Evening Star.*

"The book will receive high appreciation from thoughtful students who seek the most practical help."—*Grand Rapids Herald.*

"It is written in a clear and pleasing style and so arranged that but a moment's time is needed to find any line of the hundreds of important though small words which this book discusses."—*Chattanooga Times.*

"Its practical reference value is great, and it is a great satisfaction to note the care and attention to detail and fine shades of meaning the author has bestowed upon the words he discusses."—*Church Review*, Hartford.

"A work of great practical helpfulness to a large class of people."—*Louisville Courier-Journal.*

"This is one of the most useful books for writers, speakers, and all who care for the use of language, which has appeared in a long time."—*Cumberland Presbyterian*, Nashville.

"It is a book of great value to all who take any interest in correct and elegant language."—*Methodist*, Baltimore.

"This work is a welcome aid to good writing and good speech. It is worthy the close study of all who would cultivate finished style. Its admirable arrangement and a good index make it easy for reference."—*Christian Observer.*

"His book has some excellent qualities. In the first place, it is absolutely free from dogmatic assertion; in the second place, it contains copious examples from good authors, which should guide aright the person investigating any word, if he is thoroughly conversant with English."—*The Sun*, New York.

STANDARD EDUCATIONAL SERIES

ENGLISH SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

WITH NOTES ON THE CORRECT USE OF PREPOSITIONS

Designed as a Companion for the Study
and as a
Text-Book for the Use of Schools

BY

JAMES C. FERNALD, L.H.D.

Editor of Synonyms, Antonyms, and Prepositions in the Standard Dictionary
NINETEENTH EDITION

FUNK & WAGNALLS COMPANY

NEW YORK AND LONDON

Copyright, 1896, by FUNK & WAGNALLS COMPANY.

Registered at Stationers' Hall, London, Eng.
Printed in the United States

Transcriber's Note:

Minor typographical errors have been corrected without note, whilst a list of significant amendments can be found at the end of the text. Inconsistent hyphenation and conflicting variant spellings have been standardised, except where used for emphasis. The following linked table, covering the main body of the text, has been added for convenience.

A B C D E F G H I J K L
M N O P Q R S T U V W Y

CONTENTS.

PAGE

Preface vii

Part I.

Synonyms, Antonyms and Prepositions 1

Part II.

Questions and Answers 377
Index 509

[vii]

PREFACE.

The English language is peculiarly rich in synonyms, as, with such a history, it could not fail to be. From the time of Julius Cæsar, Britons, Romans, Northmen, Saxons, Danes, and Normans fighting, fortifying, and settling upon the soil of England, with Scotch and Irish contending for mastery or existence across the mountain border and the Channel, and all fenced in together by the sea, could not but influence each other's speech. English merchants, sailors, soldiers, and travelers, trading, warring, and exploring in every clime, of necessity brought back new terms of sea and shore, of shop and camp and battlefield. English scholars have studied Greek and Latin for a thousand years, and the languages of the Continent and of the Orient in more recent times. English churchmen have introduced words from Hebrew, Greek, and Latin, through Bible and prayer-book, sermon and tract. From all this it results that there is scarcely a language ever spoken among men that has not some representative in English speech. The spirit of the Anglo-Saxon race, masterful in language as in war and commerce, has subjugated all these various elements to one idiom, making not a patchwork, but a composite language. Anglo-Saxon thrift, finding often several words that originally expressed the same idea, has detailed them to different parts of the common territory or to different service, so that we have an almost unexampled variety of words, kindred in meaning but distinct in usage, for expressing almost every shade of human thought.

Scarcely any two of such words, commonly known as synonyms, are identical at once in signification and in use. They have certain common ground within which they are interchangeable; but outside of that each has its own special province, within which any other word comes as an intruder. From these two qualities arises the great value of synonyms as contributing to beauty and effectiveness of expression. As interchangeable, they make possible that freedom and variety by which the diction of an accomplished writer or speaker differs from the wooden uniformity of a legal document. As distinct and specific, they enable a master of style to choose in every instance the one term that is the most[viii] perfect mirror of his thought. To write or speak to the best purpose, one should know in the first place all the words from which he may choose, and then the exact reason why in any case any particular word should be chosen. To give such knowledge in these two directions is the office of a book of synonyms.

Of Milton's diction Macaulay writes:

"His poetry acts like an incantation. Its merit lies less in its obvious meaning than in its occult power. There would seem, at first sight, to be no more in his words than in other words. But they are words of enchantment. No sooner are they pronounced, than the past is present and the distant near. New forms of beauty start at once into existence, and all the burial places of the memory give up their dead. Change the structure of the sentence; *substitute one synonym for another*, and the whole effect is destroyed. The spell loses its power; and he who should then hope to conjure with it would find himself as much mistaken as Cassim in the Arabian tale, when he stood crying, 'Open Wheat,' 'Open Barley,' to the door which obeyed no sound but 'Open Sesame.' The miserable failure of Dryden in his attempt to translate into his own diction some parts of the 'Paradise Lost' is a remarkable instance of this."

Macaulay's own writings abound in examples of that exquisite precision in the choice of words, which never seems to be precise, but has all the aspect of absolute freedom. Through his language his thought bursts upon the mind as a landscape is seen instantly, perfectly, and beautifully from a mountain height. A little vagueness of thought, a slight infelicity in the choice of words would be like a cloud upon the mountain, obscuring the scene with a damp and chilling mist. Let anyone try the experiment with a poem like Gray's "Elegy," or Goldsmith's "Traveller" or "Deserted Village," of substituting other words for those the poet has chosen, and he will readily perceive how much of the charm of the lines depends upon their fine exactitude of expression.

In our own day, when so many are eager to write, and confident that they can write, and when the press is sending forth by the ton that which is called literature, but which somehow lacks the imprint of immortality, it is of the first importance to revive the study of synonyms as a distinct branch of rhetorical culture. Prevalent errors need at times to be noted and corrected, but the teaching of pure English speech is the best defense against all that is inferior, unsuitable, or repulsive. The most effective condemnation of an objectionable word or phrase is that it is not found in scholarly works, and a student who has once learned the rich stores of vigorous, beautiful, exact, and expressive words that make up our noble language, is by that very fact put beyond the reach of all temptation to linguistic corruption.[ix]

Special instruction in the use of synonyms is necessary, for the reason that few students possess the analytical power and habit of mind required to hold a succession of separate definitions in thought at once, compare them with each other, and determine just where and how they part company; and the persons least able to do this are the very ones most in need of the information. The distinctions between words similar in meaning are often so fine and elusive as to tax the ingenuity of the accomplished scholar; yet when clearly apprehended they are as important for the purposes of language as the minute differences between similar substances are for the purposes of chemistry. Often definition itself is best secured by the comparison of kindred terms and the pointing out where each differs from the other. We perceive more clearly and remember better what each word is, by perceiving where each divides from another of kindred meaning; just as we see and remember better the situation and contour of adjacent countries, by considering them as boundaries of each other, rather than by an exact statement of the latitude and longitude of each as a separate portion of the earth's surface.

The great mass of untrained speakers and writers need to be reminded, in the first place, *that there are synonyms*—a suggestion which they would not gain from any precision of separate definitions in a dictionary. The deplorable repetition with which many slightly educated persons use such words as "elegant," "splendid," "clever," "awful," "horrid," etc., to indicate (for they can not be said to express) almost any shade of certain approved or objectionable qualities, shows a limited vocabulary, a poverty of language, which it is of the first importance to correct. Many who are not given to such gross misuse would yet be surprised to learn how often they employ a very limited number of words in the attempt to give utterance to thoughts and feelings so unlike, that what is the right word on one occasion must of necessity be the wrong word at many other times. Such persons are simply unconscious of the fact that there are other words of kindred meaning from which they might choose; as the United States surveyors of Alaska found "the shuddering tenant of the frigid zone" wrapping himself in furs and cowering over a fire of sticks with untouched coal-mines beneath his feet.

Such poverty of language is always accompanied with poverty of thought. One who is content to use the same word for widely different ideas has either never observed or soon comes to forget that there is any difference between the ideas; or perhaps he retains[x] a vague notion of a difference which he never attempts to define to himself, and dimly hints to others by adding to his inadequate word some such phrase as "you see" or "you know," in the helpless attempt to inject into another mind by suggestion what adequate words would enable him simply and distinctly to say. Such a mind resembles the old maps of Africa in which the interior was filled with cloudy spaces, where modern discovery has revealed great lakes, fertile plains, and mighty rivers. One main office of a book of synonyms is to reveal to such persons the unsuspected riches of their own language; and when a series of words is given them, from which they may choose, then, with intelligent choice of words there comes of necessity a clearer perception of the difference of the ideas that are to be expressed by those different words. Thus, copiousness and clearness of language tend directly to affluence and precision of thought.

Hence there is an important use for mere lists of classified synonyms, like Roget's Thesaurus and the works of Soule and Fallows. Not one in a thousand of average students would ever discover, by independent study of the dictionary, that there are fifteen synonyms for *beautiful*, twenty-one for *beginning*, fifteen for *benevolence*, twenty for *friendly*, and thirty-seven for *pure*. The mere mention of such numbers opens vistas of possible fulness, freedom, and variety of utterance, which will have for many persons the effect of a revelation.

But it is equally important to teach *that synonyms are not identical* and to explain why and how they differ. A person of extensive reading and study, with a fine natural sense of language, will often find all that he wants in the mere list, which recalls to his memory the appropriate word. But for the vast majority there is needed some work that compares or contrasts synonymous words, explains their differences of meaning or usage, and shows in what connections one or the other may be most fitly used. This is the purpose of the present work, to be a guide to selection from the varied treasures of English speech.

This work treats within 375 pages more than 7500 synonyms. It has been the study of the author to give every definition or distinction in the fewest possible words consistent with clearness of statement, and this not merely for economy of space, but because such condensed statements are most easily apprehended and remembered.

The method followed has been to select from every group of synonyms one word, or two contrasted words, the meaning of which[xi] may be settled by clear definitive statement, thus securing some fixed point or points to which all the other words of the group may be referred. The great source of vagueness, error, and perplexity in many discussions of synonyms is, that the writer merely associates stray ideas loosely connected with the different words, sliding from synonym to synonym with no definite point of departure or return, so that a smooth and at first sight pleasing statement really gives the mind no definite resting-place and no sure conclusion. A true discussion of synonyms is definition by comparison, and for this there must be something definite with which to compare. When the standard is settled, approximation or differentiation can be determined with clearness and certainty. It is not enough to tell something about each word. The thing to tell is how each word is related to others of that particular group. When a word has more than one prominent meaning, the synonyms for one signification are treated in one group and a reference is made to some other group in which the synonyms for another signification are treated, as may be seen by noting the synonyms given under APPARENT, and following the reference to EVIDENT.

It has been impossible within the limits of this volume to treat in full all the words of each group of synonyms. Sometimes it has been necessary to restrict the statement to a mere suggestion of the correct use; in some cases only the chief words of a group could be considered, giving the key to the discussion, and leaving the student to follow out the principle in the case of other words by reference to the definitive statements of the dictionary. It is to be hoped that at some time a dictionary of synonyms may be prepared, giving as full a list as that of Roget or of Soule, with discriminating remarks upon every word. Such a work would be of the greatest value, but obviously beyond the scope of a text-book for the class-room.

The author has here incorporated, by permission of the publishers of the Standard Dictionary, much of the synonym matter prepared by him for that work. All has been thoroughly revised or reconstructed, and much wholly new matter has been added.

The book contains also more than 3700 antonyms. These are valuable as supplying definition by contrast or by negation, one of the most effective methods of defining being in many cases to tell what a thing is not. To speakers and writers antonyms are useful as furnishing oftentimes effective antitheses.

Young writers will find much help from the indication of the correct use of prepositions, the misuse of which is one of the most[xii] common of errors, and one of the most difficult to avoid, while their right use gives to style cohesion, firmness, and compactness, and is an important aid to perspicuity. To the text of the synonyms is appended a set of Questions and Examples to adapt the work for use as a text-book. Aside from the purposes of the class-room, this portion will be found of value to the individual student. Excepting those who have made a thorough study of language most persons will discover with surprise how difficult it is to answer any set of the Questions or to fill the blanks in the Examples without referring to the synonym treatment in Part I., or to a dictionary, and how rarely they can give any intelligent reason for preference even among familiar words. There are few who can study such a work without finding occasion to correct some errors into which they have unconsciously fallen, and without coming to a new delight in the use of language from a fuller knowledge of its resources and a clearer sense of its various capabilities.

West New Brighton, N. Y., Sept. 4, 1896.

PART I.

BOOKS OF REFERENCE.

Crabb's "English Synonymes Explained." [H.]

Soule's "Dictionary of English Synonyms." [L.]

Smith's "Synonyms Discriminated." [Bell.]

Graham's "English Synonyms." [A.]

Whateley's "English Synonyms Discriminated." [L. & S.]

Campbell's "Handbook of Synonyms." [L. & S.]

Fallows' "Complete Dictionary of Synonyms and Antonyms." [F. H. R.]

Roget's "Thesaurus of English Words." [F. & W. Co.]

Trench's "Study of English Words." [W. J. W.]

Richard Grant White, "Words and their Uses," and "Every Day English." [H. M. & Co.]

Geo. P. Marsh, "Lectures on the English Language," and "Origin and History of the English Language." [S.]

Fitzedward Hall, "False Philology." [S.]

Maetzner's "English Grammar," tr. by Grece. [J. M.]

The Synonyms of the Century and International Dictionaries have also been consulted and compared.

The Funk & Wagnalls Standard Dictionary has been used as the authority throughout.

ABBREVIATIONS USED.

A.	D. Appleton & Co.	K.-F.	Krauth-Fleming "Vocabulary of Philosophy."
AS.	Anglo-Saxon		
Bell; B. & S.	Bell & Sons	L.	Latin; Lippincott & Co.
F.	French	L. & S.	Lee & Shepard
F. H. R.	Fleming H. Revell	M.	Murray's New English Dictionary

F. & W. Co.	Funk & Wagnalls Co.	Macm.	Macmillan & Co.
G.	German	S.	Chas. Scribner's Sons
Gr.	Greek	Sp.	Spanish
H.	Harper & Bros.	T. & F.	Ticknor & Fields
H. M. & Co.	Houghton, Mifflin & Co.	T. & H.	Troutman & Hayes
It.	Italian	T. & M.	Taylor, Walton & Maberley
J. M.	John Murray	W. J. W.	W. J. Widdleton

---

[1]

PART I.

SYNONYMS, ANTONYMS AND PREPOSITIONS.

ABANDON.

Synonyms:

abdicate,
abjure,
cast off,
cease,
cede,
depart from,
desert,
discontinue,
forego,
forsake,
forswear,
give up,
leave,
quit,
recant,
relinquish,
renounce,
repudiate,
resign,
retire from,
retract,
surrender,
vacate,
withdraw from.

Abandon is a word of wide signification, applying to persons or things of any kind; *abdicate* and *resign* apply to office, authority, or power; *cede* to territorial possessions; *surrender* especially to military force, and more generally to any demand, claim, passion, etc. *Quit* carries an idea of suddenness or abruptness not necessarily implied in *abandon*, and may not have the same suggestion of finality. The king *abdicates* his throne, *cedes* his territory, *deserts* his followers, *renounces* his religion, *relinquishes* his titles, *abandons* his designs. A cowardly officer *deserts* his ship; the helpless passengers *abandon* it. We *quit* business, *give up* property, *resign* office, *abandon* a habit or a trust. *Relinquish* commonly implies reluctance; the fainting hand *relinquishes* its grasp; the creditor *relinquishes* his claim. *Abandon* implies previous association with responsibility for or control of; *forsake* implies previous association with inclination or attachment, real or assumed; a man may *abandon* or *forsake* house or friends; he *abandons* an enterprise; *forsakes* God. *Abandon* is applied to both good and evil action; a thief *abandons* his designs, a man his principles. *Forsake*, like *abandon*, may be used either in the favorable or unfavorable sense; *desert* is always unfavorable,[2] involving a breach of duty, except when used of mere localities; as, "the Deserted Village." While a monarch *abdicates*, a president or other elected or appointed officer *resigns*. It was held that James II. *abdicated* his throne by *deserting* it.

Antonyms:

adopt,
advocate,
assert,
cherish,
claim,
court,
defend,
favor,
haunt,
hold,
keep,
maintain,
occupy,
prosecute,
protect,
pursue,
retain,
seek,
support,
undertake,
uphold,
vindicate.

ABASE.

Synonyms:

bring low,
cast down,
debase,
degrade,
depress,
discredit,
disgrace,
dishonor,
humble,
humiliate,
lower,
reduce,
sink.

Abase refers only to outward conditions. "Exalt him that is low, and *abase* him that is high." *Ezek.* xxi, 26. *Debase* applies to quality or character. The coinage is *debased* by excess of alloy, the man by vice. *Humble* in present use refers chiefly to feeling of heart; *humiliate* to outward conditions; even when one is said to *humble* himself, he either has or affects to have humility of heart. To *disgrace* may be to bring or inflict odium upon others, but the word is chiefly and increasingly applied to such moral odium as one by his own acts brings upon himself; the noun *disgrace* retains more of the passive sense than the verb; he *disgraced* himself by his conduct; he brought *disgrace* upon his family. To *dishonor* a person is to deprive him of honor that should or might be given. To *discredit* one is to injure his reputation, as for veracity or solvency. A sense of unworthiness *humbles*; a shameful insult *humiliates*; imprisonment for crime *disgraces*. *Degrade* may refer to either station or character. An officer is *degraded* by being *reduced* to the ranks, *disgraced* by cowardice; vile practises *degrade*; drunkenness is a *degrading* vice. Misfortune or injustice may *abase* the good; nothing but their own ill-doing can *debase* or *disgrace* them.

Antonyms:

advance,
aggrandize,
dignify,
elevate,
exalt,
honor,
promote,
raise,
uplift.

---

[3]

ABASH.

Synonyms:

bewilder,
chagrin,
confound,
confuse,
daunt,
discompose,
disconcert,
dishearten,
embarrass,
humble,
humiliate,
mortify,
overawe,
shame.

Any sense of inferiority *abashes*, with or without the sense of wrong. The poor are *abashed* at the splendor of wealth, the ignorant at the learning of the wise. "I might have been *abashed* by their authority." Gladstone *Homeric Synchron.*, p. 72. [H. '76.] To *confuse* is to bring into a state of mental bewilderment; to *confound* is to overwhelm the mental faculties; to *daunt* is to subject to a certain degree of fear. *Embarrass* is a strong word, signifying primarily hamper, hinder, impede. A solitary thinker may be *confused* by some difficulty in a subject, or some mental defect; one is *embarrassed* in the presence of others, and because of their presence. Confusion is of the intellect, embarrassment of the feelings. A witness may be *embarrassed* by annoying personalities, so as to become *confused* in statements. To *mortify* a person is to bring upon him a painful sense of humiliation, whether because of his own or another's fault or failure. A pupil is *confused* by a perplexing question, a general *confounded* by overwhelming defeat. A hostess is *discomposed* by the tardiness of guests, a speaker *disconcerted* by a failure of memory. The criminal who is not *abashed* at detection may be *daunted* by the officer's weapon. Sudden joy may *bewilder*, but will not *abash*. The true worshiper is *humbled* rather than *abashed* before God. The parent is *mortified* by the child's rudeness, the child *abashed* at the parent's reproof. The *embarrassed* speaker finds it difficult to proceed. The mob is *overawed* by the military, the hypocrite *shamed* by exposure. "A man whom no denial, no scorn could *abash*." Fielding *Amelia* bk. iii, ch. 9, p. 300. [B. & S. '71.] Compare CHAGRIN; HINDER.

Antonyms:

animate,
buoy,
cheer,
embolden,
encourage,
inspirit,
rally,
uphold.

ABATE.

Synonyms:

decline,
decrease,
diminish,
ebb,
lessen,
lower,
mitigate,
moderate,
reduce,
subside.

The storm, the fever, the pain *abates*. Interest *declines*. Misfortunes may be *mitigated*, desires *moderated*, intense anger[4] *abated*, population *decreased*, taxes *reduced*. We *abate* a nuisance, *terminate* a controversy, *suppress* a rebellion. See ALLEVIATE.

Antonyms:

aggravate,
amplify,
continue,
develop,
enhance,
enlarge,
extend,
foment,
increase,
magnify,
rage,
raise,
revive.

Prepositions:

Abate *in* fury; abated *by* law.

ABBREVIATION.

Synonyms:

abridgment,
contraction.

An *abbreviation* is a shortening by any method; a *contraction* is a reduction of size by the drawing together of the parts. A *contraction* of a word is made by omitting certain letters or syllables and bringing together the first and last letters or elements; an *abbreviation* may be made either by omitting certain portions from the interior or by cutting off a part; a *contraction* is an *abbreviation*, but an *abbreviation* is not necessarily a *contraction*; *rec't* for receipt, *mdse.* for merchandise, and *Dr.* for debtor are *contractions*; they are also *abbreviations*; *Am.* for American is an *abbreviation*, but not a *contraction*. *Abbreviation* and *contraction* are used of words and phrases, *abridgment* of books, paragraphs, sentences, etc. Compare ABRIDGMENT.

ABET.

Synonyms:

advocate,
aid,
assist,
countenance,
embolden,
encourage,
incite,
instigate,
promote,
sanction,
support,
uphold.

Abet and *instigate* are now used almost without exception in a bad sense; one may *incite* either to good or evil. One *incites* or *instigates* to the doing of something not yet done, or to increased activity or further advance in the doing of it; one *abets* by giving sympathy, countenance, or substantial aid to the doing of that which is already projected or in process of commission. *Abet* and *instigate* apply either to persons or actions, *incite* to persons only; one *incites* a person *to* an action. A clergyman will *advocate* the claims of justice, *aid* the poor, *encourage* the[5] despondent, *support* the weak, *uphold* the constituted authorities; but he will not *incite* to a quarrel, *instigate* a riot, or *abet* a crime. The originator of a crime often *instigates* or *incites* others to *abet* him in it, or one may *instigate* or *incite* others to a crime in the commission of which he himself takes no active part. Compare HELP.

Antonyms:

baffle,
confound,
counteract,
denounce,
deter,
disapprove,
disconcert,
discourage,
dissuade,
expose,
frustrate,
hinder,
impede,
obstruct.

ABHOR.

Synonyms:

abominate,
despise,
detest,
dislike,
hate,
loathe,
nauseate,
scorn,
shun.

Abhor is stronger than *despise*, implying a shuddering recoil, especially a moral recoil. "How many *shun* evil as inconvenient who do not *abhor* it as hateful." Trench *Serm. in Westm. Abbey* xxvi, 297. [M.] *Detest* expresses indignation, with something of contempt. *Loathe* implies disgust, physical or moral. We *abhor* a traitor, *despise* a coward, *detest* a liar. We *dislike* an uncivil person. We *abhor* cruelty, *hate* tyranny. We *loathe* a reptile or a flatterer. We *abhor* Milton's heroic Satan, but we can not *despise* him.

Antonyms:

admire,
approve,
covet,
crave,
desire,
enjoy,
esteem,
like,
love,
relish.

ABIDE.

Synonyms:

anticipate,
await,
bear,
bide,
confront,
continue,
dwell,
endure,
expect,
inhabit,
live,
lodge,
remain,
reside,
rest,
sojourn,
stay,
stop,
tarry,
tolerate,
wait,
watch.

To *abide* is to remain continuously without limit of time unless expressed by the context: "to-day I must *abide* at thy house," *Luke* xix, 5; "a settled place for thee to *abide* in forever," *1 Kings* viii, 13; "*Abide* with me! fast falls the eventide," Lyte *Hymn*. *Lodge*, *sojourn*, *stay*, *tarry*, and *wait* always imply a limited time; *lodge*, to pass the night; *sojourn*, to *remain*[6] temporarily; *live*, *dwell*, *reside*, to have a permanent home. *Stop*, in the sense of *stay* or *sojourn*, is colloquial, and not in approved use. Compare ENDURE; REST.

Antonyms:

abandon,
avoid,
depart,
forfeit,
forfend,
journey,
migrate,
move,
proceed,
reject,
resist,
shun.

Prepositions:

Abide *in* a place, *for* a time, *with* a person, *by* a statement.

ABOLISH.

Synonyms:

abate,
abrogate,
annihilate,
annul,
destroy,
end,
eradicate,
exterminate,
extirpate,
nullify,
obliterate,
overthrow,
prohibit,
remove,
repeal,
reverse,
revoke,
set aside,
stamp out,
subvert,
supplant,
suppress,
terminate.

Abolish, to do away with, bring absolutely to an end, especially as something hostile, hindering, or harmful, was formerly used of persons and material objects, a usage now obsolete except in poetry or highly figurative speech. *Abolish* is now used of institutions, customs, and conditions, especially those wide-spread and long existing; as, to *abolish* slavery, ignorance, intemperance, poverty. A building that is burned to the ground is said to be *destroyed* by fire. *Annihilate*, as a philosophical term, signifies to put absolutely out of existence. As far as our knowledge goes, matter is never *annihilated*, but only changes its form. Some believe that the wicked will be *annihilated*. *Abolish* is not said of laws. There we use *repeal*, *abrogate*, *nullify*, etc.: *repeal* by the enacting body, *nullify* by revolutionary proceedings; a later statute *abrogates*, without formally *repealing*, any earlier law with which it conflicts. An appellate court may *reverse* or *set aside* the decision of an inferior court. *Overthrow* may be used in either a good or a bad sense; *suppress* is commonly in a good, *subvert* always in a bad sense; as, to *subvert* our liberties; to *suppress* a rebellion. The law *prohibits* what may never have existed; it *abolishes* an existing evil. We *abate* a nuisance, *terminate* a controversy. Compare CANCEL; DEMOLISH; EXTERMINATE.

Antonyms:

authorize,
cherish,
confirm,
continue,
enact,
establish,
institute,
introduce,
legalize,
promote,
reinstate,
renew,
repair,
restore,
revive,
set up,
support,
sustain.

---

[7]

ABOMINATION.

Synonyms:

abhorrence,
abuse,
annoyance,
aversion,
crime,
curse,
detestation,
disgust,
evil,
execration,
hatred,
horror,
iniquity,
nuisance,
offense,
plague,
shame,
villainy,
wickedness.

Abomination (from the L. *ab omen*, a thing of ill omen) was originally applied to anything held in religious or ceremonial *aversion* or *abhorrence*; as, "The things which are highly esteemed among men are *abomination* in the sight of God." *Luke* xvi, 15. The word is oftener applied to the object of such *aversion* or *abhorrence* than to the state of mind that so regards it; in common use *abomination* signifies something very much disliked or loathed, or that deserves to be. Choice food may be an object of *aversion* and *disgust* to a sick person; vile food would be an *abomination*. A toad is to many an object of *disgust*; a foul sewer is an *abomination*. As applied to crimes, *abomination* is used of such as are especially brutal, shameful, or revolting; theft is an *offense*; infanticide is an *abomination*.

Antonyms:

affection,
appreciation,
approval,
benefit,
blessing,
delight,
desire,
enjoyment,
esteem,
gratification,
joy,
satisfaction,
treat.

ABRIDGMENT.

Synonyms:

abbreviation,
abstract,
analysis,
compend,
compendium,
digest,
epitome,
outline,
summary,
synopsis.

An *abridgment* gives the most important portions of a work substantially as they stand. An *outline* or *synopsis* is a kind of sketch closely following the plan. An *abstract* or *digest* is an independent statement of what the book contains. An *analysis* draws out the chief thoughts or arguments, whether expressed or implied. A *summary* is the most condensed statement of results or conclusions. An *epitome*, *compend*, or *compendium* is a condensed view of a subject, whether derived from a previous publication or not. We may have an *abridgment* of a dictionary, but not an *analysis*, *abstract*, *digest*, or *summary*. We may have an *epitome* of religion, a *compendium* of English literature, but not an *abridgment*. Compare ABBREVIATION.

---

[8]

ABSOLUTE.

Synonyms:

arbitrary,
arrogant,
authoritative,
autocratic,
coercive,
commanding,
compulsive,
compulsory,
controlling,
despotic,
dictatorial,
dogmatic,
domineering,
exacting,
haughty,
imperative,
imperious,
irresponsible,
lordly,
overbearing,
peremptory,
positive,
supreme,
tyrannical,
unconditional,
unequivocal.

In the strict sense, *absolute*, free from all limitation or control, and *supreme*, superior to all, can not properly be said of any being except the divine. Both words are used, however, in a modified sense, of human authorities; *absolute* then signifying free from limitation by other authority, and *supreme* exalted over all other; as, an *absolute* monarch, the *supreme* court. *Absolute,* in this use, does not necessarily carry any unfavorable sense, but as *absolute* power in human hands is always abused, the unfavorable meaning predominates. *Autocratic* power knows no limits outside the ruler's self; *arbitrary* power, none outside the ruler's will or judgment, *arbitrary* carrying the implication of wilfulness and capriciousness. *Despotic* is commonly applied to a masterful or severe use of power, which is expressed more decidedly by *tyrannical*. *Arbitrary* may be used in a good sense; as, the pronunciation of proper names is *arbitrary*; but the bad sense is the prevailing one; as, an *arbitrary* proceeding. *Irresponsible* power is not necessarily bad, but eminently dangerous; an executor or trustee should not be *irresponsible*; an *irresponsible* ruler is likely to be *tyrannical*. A perfect ruler might be *irresponsible* and not *tyrannical*. *Authoritative* is used always in a good sense, implying the right to claim authority; *imperative*, *peremptory*, and *positive* are used ordinarily in the good sense; as, an *authoritative* definition; an *imperative* demand; a *peremptory* command; *positive* instructions; *imperious* signifies assuming and determined to command, rigorously requiring obedience. An *imperious* demand or requirement may have in it nothing offensive; it is simply one that resolutely insists upon compliance, and will not brook refusal; an *arrogant* demand is offensive by its tone of superiority, an *arbitrary* demand by its unreasonableness; an *imperious* disposition is liable to become *arbitrary* and *arrogant*. A person of an independent spirit is inclined to resent an *imperious* manner in any one, especially in one whose superiority is not clearly recognized. *Commanding* is always used in a good[9] sense; as, a *commanding* appearance; a *commanding* eminence. Compare DOGMATIC; INFINITE; PERFECT.

Antonyms:

accountable,
complaisant,
compliant,
conditional,
constitutional,
contingent,
docile,
ductile,
gentle,
humble,
lenient,
limited,
lowly,
meek,
mild,
responsible,
submissive,
yielding.

ABSOLVE.

Synonyms:

acquit,
clear,
discharge,
exculpate,
exempt,
exonerate,
forgive,
free,
liberate,
pardon,
release,
set free.

To *absolve*, in the strict sense, is to *set free* from any bond. One may be *absolved* from a promise by a breach of faith on the part of one to whom the promise was made. To *absolve* from sins is formally to remit their condemnation and penalty, regarded as a bond upon the soul. "Almighty God ... *pardoneth* and *absolveth* all those who truly repent, and unfeignedly believe his holy Gospel." *Book of Common Prayer, Declar. of Absol.* To *acquit* of sin or crime is to *free* from the accusation of it, pronouncing one guiltless; the innocent are rightfully *acquitted*; the guilty may be mercifully *absolved*. Compare PARDON.

Antonyms:

accuse,
bind,
charge,
compel,
condemn,
convict,
impeach,
inculpate,
obligate,
oblige.

Preposition:

One is absolved *from* (rarely *of*) a promise, a sin, etc.

ABSORB.

Synonyms:

consume,
drink in,
drink up,
engross,
exhaust,
imbibe,
suck up,
swallow,
swallow up,
take in,
take up.

A fluid that is *absorbed* is *taken up* into the mass of the *absorbing* body, with which it may or may not permanently combine. Wood expands when it *absorbs* moisture, iron when it *absorbs* heat, the substance remaining perhaps otherwise substantially unchanged; quicklime, when it *absorbs* water, becomes a new substance with different qualities, hydrated or slaked lime. A substance is *consumed* which is destructively appropriated by some other substance, being, or agency, so that it ceases to exist or to be recognized as existing in its original condition; fuel is *consumed* in the fire, food in the body; *consume* is also applied to whatever is removed from the market for individual use; as, silk and woolen goods are *consumed*. A great talker *engrosses* the conversation. A credulous person *swallows* the most preposterous[10] statement. A busy student *imbibes* or *drinks in* knowledge; he is *absorbed* in a subject that takes his whole attention. "I only postponed it because I happened to get *absorbed* in a book." Kane *Grinnell Exped.* ch. 43, page 403. [H. '54.]

Antonyms:

cast out,
disgorge,
disperse,
dissipate,
distract,
eject,
emit,
exude,
give up,
put forth,
radiate,
send out,
shoot forth,
throw off,
vomit.

Prepositions:

Plants absorb moisture *from* the air; the student is absorbed *in* thought; nutriment may be absorbed *into* the system *through* the skin.

ABSTINENCE.

Synonyms:

abstemiousness,
continence,
fasting,
frugality,
moderation,
self-control,
self-denial,
self-restraint,
sobriety,
temperance.

Abstinence from food commonly signifies going without; *abstemiousness,* partaking moderately; *abstinence* may be for a single occasion, *abstemiousness* is habitual *moderation*. *Self-denial* is giving up what one wishes; *abstinence* may be refraining from what one does not desire. *Fasting* is *abstinence* from food for a limited time, and generally for religious reasons. *Sobriety* and *temperance* signify maintaining a quiet, even temper by moderate indulgence in some things, complete *abstinence* from others. We speak of *temperance* in eating, but of *abstinence* from vice. *Total abstinence* has come to signify the entire abstaining from intoxicating liquors.

Antonyms:

drunkenness,
excess,
gluttony,
greed,
intemperance,
intoxication,
reveling,
revelry,
self-indulgence,.
sensuality,
wantonness

Preposition:

The negative side of virtue is abstinence *from* vice.

ABSTRACT, v.

Synonyms:

appropriate,
detach,
discriminate,
distinguish,
distract,
divert,
eliminate,
purloin,
remove,
separate,
steal,
take away,
withdraw.

The central idea of *withdrawing* makes *abstract* in common speech a euphemism for *appropriate* (unlawfully), *purloin*, *steal*. In mental processes we *discriminate* between objects by *distinguishing* their differences; we *separate* some one element from all that does not necessarily belong to it, *abstract* it, and view it alone. We may *separate* two ideas, and hold both in mind in[11] comparison or contrast; but when we *abstract* one of them, we drop the other out of thought. The mind is *abstracted* when it is *withdrawn* from all other subjects and concentrated upon one, *diverted* when it is drawn away from what it would or should attend to by some other interest, *distracted* when the attention is divided among different subjects, so that it can not be given properly to any. The trouble with the *distracted* person is that he is not *abstracted*. Compare DISCERN.

Antonyms:

add,
combine,
complete,
conjoin,
fill up,
increase,
restore,
strengthen,
unite.

Prepositions:

The purse may be abstracted *from* the pocket; the substance *from* the accidents; a book *into* a compend.

ABSTRACTED.

Synonyms:

absent,
absent-minded,
absorbed,
heedless,
inattentive,
indifferent,
listless,
negligent,
oblivious,
preoccupied,
thoughtless.

As regards mental action, *absorbed*, *abstracted*, and *preoccupied* refer to the cause, *absent* or *absent-minded* to the effect. The man *absorbed* in one thing will appear *absent* in others. A *preoccupied* person may seem *listless* and *thoughtless*, but the really *listless* and *thoughtless* have not mental energy to be *preoccupied*. The *absent-minded* man is *oblivious* of ordinary matters, because his thoughts are elsewhere. One who is *preoccupied* is intensely busy in thought; one may be *absent-minded* either through intense concentration or simply through inattention, with fitful and aimless wandering of thought. Compare ABSTRACT.

Antonyms:

alert,
attentive,
on hand,
prompt,
ready,
thoughtful,
wide-awake.

ABSURD.

Synonyms:

anomalous,
chimerical,
erroneous,
false,
foolish,
ill-advised,
ill-considered,
ill-judged,
inconclusive,
incorrect,
infatuated,
irrational,
ludicrous,
mistaken,
monstrous,
nonsensical,
paradoxical,
preposterous,
ridiculous,
senseless,
stupid,
unreasonable,
wild.

That is *absurd* which is contrary to the first principles of reasoning; as, that a part should be greater than the whole is *absurd*. A *paradoxical* statement appears at first thought contradictory or *absurd*, while it may be really true. Anything is *irrational*[12] when clearly contrary to sound reason, *foolish* when contrary to practical good sense, *silly* when petty and contemptible in its folly, *erroneous* when containing error that vitiates the result, *unreasonable* when there seems a perverse bias or an intent to go wrong. *Monstrous* and *preposterous* refer to what is overwhelmingly *absurd*; as, "*O monstrous!* eleven buckram men grown out of two," Shakespeare *1 King Henry IV*, act ii, sc. 4. The *ridiculous* or the *nonsensical* is worthy only to be laughed at. The lunatic's claim to be a king is *ridiculous*; the Mother Goose rimes are *nonsensical*. Compare INCONGRUOUS.

Antonyms:

certain,
consistent,
demonstrable,
demonstrated,
established,
incontestable,
incontrovertible,
indisputable,
indubitable,
infallible,
logical,
rational,
reasonable,
sagacious,
sensible,
sound,
substantial,
true,
undeniable,
unquestionable,
wise.

ABUSE.

Synonyms:

aggrieve,
damage,
defame,
impose on or upon,
injure,
oppress,
persecute,
pervert,
ruin,
slander,
victimize,

defile,
disparage,
harm,
ill-treat,
ill-use,
malign,
maltreat,
misemploy,
misuse,
molest,
prostitute,
rail at,
ravish,
reproach,
revile,
vilify,
violate,
vituperate,
wrong.

Abuse covers all unreasonable or improper use or treatment by word or act. A tenant does not *abuse* rented property by "reasonable wear," though that may *damage* the property and *injure* its sale; he may *abuse* it by needless defacement or neglect. It is possible to *abuse* a man without *harming* him, as when the criminal *vituperates* the judge; or to *harm* a man without *abusing* him, as when the witness tells the truth about the criminal. *Defame*, *malign*, *rail at*, *revile, slander, vilify,* and *vituperate* are used always in a bad sense. One may be justly *reproached*. To *impose on* or to *victimize* one is to *injure* him by *abusing* his confidence. To *persecute* one is to *ill-treat* him for opinion's sake, commonly for religious belief; to *oppress* is generally for political or pecuniary motives. "Thou shalt not *oppress* an hired servant that is poor and needy," *Deut.* xxiv, 14. *Misemploy*, *misuse*, and *pervert* are commonly applied to objects rather than to persons. A dissolute youth *misemploys* his time, *misuses* his money[13] and opportunities, *harms* his associates, *perverts* his talents, *wrongs* his parents, *ruins* himself, *abuses* every good gift of God.

Antonyms:

applaud,
benefit,
care for,
cherish,
conserve,
consider,
eulogize,
extol,
favor,
laud,
panegyrize,
praise,
protect,
regard,
respect,
shield,
sustain,
tend,
uphold,
vindicate.

ACCESSORY.

Synonyms:

abetter or abettor,
accomplice,
ally,
assistant,
associate,
attendant,
coadjutor,
colleague,
companion,
confederate,
follower,
helper,
henchman,
participator,
partner,
retainer.

Colleague is used always in a good sense, *associate* and *coadjutor* generally so; *ally*, *assistant*, *associate*, *attendant*, *companion*, *helper*, either in a good or a bad sense; *abetter*, *accessory*, *accomplice*, *confederate*, almost always in a bad sense. *Ally* is oftenest used of national and military matters, or of some other connection regarded as great and important; as, *allies* of despotism. *Colleague* is applied to civil and ecclesiastical connections; members of Congress from the same State are *colleagues*, even though they may be bitter opponents politically and personally. An *Associate* Justice of the Supreme Court is near in *rank* to the Chief Justice. A surgeon's *assistant* is a physician or medical student who shares in the treatment and care of patients; a surgeon's *attendant* is one who rolls bandages and the like. *Follower*, *henchman*, *retainer* are persons especially devoted to a chief, and generally bound to him by necessity, fee, or reward. *Partner* has come to denote almost exclusively a business connection. In law, an *abettor* (the general legal spelling) is always present, either actively or constructively, at the commission of the crime; an *accessory* never. An *accomplice* is usually a principal; an *accessory* never. If present, though only to stand outside and keep watch against surprise, one is an *abettor*, and not an *accessory*. At common law, an *accessory* implies a principal, and can not be convicted until after the conviction of the principal; the *accomplice* or *abettor* can be convicted as a principal. *Accomplice* and *abettor* have nearly the same meaning, but the former is the popular, the latter more distinctively the legal term. Compare APPENDAGE; AUXILIARY.

Antonyms:

adversary,
antagonist,
betrayer,
chief,
commander,
enemy,
foe,
hinderer,
instigator,
leader,
opponent,
opposer,
principal,
rival.

[14]

Prepositions:

An accessory *to* the crime; *before* or *after* the fact; the accessories *of* a figure *in* a painting.

ACCIDENT.

Synonyms:

adventure,
calamity,
casualty,
chance,
contingency,
disaster,
fortuity,
hap,
happening,
hazard,
incident,
misadventure,
misfortune,
mishap,
possibility.

An *accident* is that which happens without any one's direct intention; a *chance* that which happens without any known cause. If the direct cause of a railroad *accident* is known, we can not call it a *chance*. To the theist there is, in strictness, no *chance*, all things being by divine causation and control; but *chance* is spoken of where no special cause is manifest: "By *chance* there came down a certain priest that way," *Luke* x, 31. We can speak of a game of *chance*, but not of a game of *accident*. An *incident* is viewed as occurring in the regular course of things, but subordinate to the main purpose, or aside from the main design. *Fortune* is the result of inscrutable controlling forces. *Fortune* and *chance* are nearly equivalent, but *chance* can be used of human effort and endeavor as *fortune* can not be; we say "he has a *chance* of success," or "there is one *chance* in a thousand," where we could not substitute *fortune*; as personified, *Fortune* is regarded as having a fitful purpose, *Chance* as purposeless; we speak of fickle *Fortune*, blind *Chance*;

"*Fortune* favors the brave." The slaughter of men is an *incident* of battle; unexpected defeat, the *fortune* of war. Since the unintended is often the undesirable, *accident* tends to signify some *calamity* or *disaster*, unless the contrary is expressed, as when we say a fortunate or happy *accident*. An *adventure* is that which may turn out ill, a *misadventure* that which does turn out ill. A slight disturbing *accident* is a *mishap*. Compare EVENT; HAZARD.

Antonyms:

appointment,
calculation,
certainty,
decree,
fate,
foreordination,
intention,
law,
necessity,
ordainment,
ordinance,
plan,
preparation,
provision,
purpose.

Prepositions:

The accident *of* birth; an accident *to* the machinery.

---

[15]

ACQUAINTANCE.

Synonyms:

association,
companionship,
experience,
familiarity,
fellowship,
friendship,
intimacy,
knowledge.

Acquaintance between persons supposes that each knows the other; we may know a public man by his writings or speeches, and by sight, but can not claim *acquaintance* unless he personally knows us. There may be pleasant *acquaintance* with little *companionship*; and conversely, much *companionship* with little *acquaintance*, as between busy clerks at adjoining desks. So there may be *association* in business without *intimacy* or *friendship*. *Acquaintance* admits of many degrees, from a slight or passing to a familiar or intimate *acquaintance*; but *acquaintance* unmodified commonly signifies less than *familiarity* or *intimacy*. As regards persons, *familiarity* is becoming restricted to the undesirable sense, as in the proverb, "*Familiarity* breeds contempt;" hence, in personal relations, the word *intimacy*, which refers to mutual knowledge of thought and feeling, is now uniformly preferred. *Friendship* includes *acquaintance* with some degree of *intimacy*, and ordinarily *companionship*, though in a wider sense *friendship* may exist between those who have never met, but know each other only by word and deed. *Acquaintance* does not involve *friendship*, for one may be well acquainted with an enemy. *Fellowship* involves not merely *acquaintance* and *companionship*, but sympathy as well. There may be much *friendship* without much *fellowship*, as between those whose homes or pursuits are far apart. There may be pleasant *fellowship* which does not reach the fulness of *friendship*. Compare ATTACHMENT; FRIENDSHIP; LOVE. As regards studies, pursuits, etc., *acquaintance* is less than *familiarity*, which supposes minute *knowledge* of particulars, arising often from long *experience* or *association*.

Antonyms:

ignorance,
ignoring,
inexperience,
unfamiliarity.

Prepositions:

Acquaintance *with* a subject; *of* one person *with* another; *between* persons.

ACRIMONY.

Synonyms:

acerbity,
asperity,
bitterness,
causticity,
harshness,
malignity,
moroseness,
severity,
sharpness,
sourness,
tartness,
unkindness,
virulence.

[16]*Acerbity* is a *sharpness*, with a touch of *bitterness*, which may arise from momentary annoyance or habitual impatience; *asperity* is keener and more pronounced, denoting distinct irritation or vexation; in speech *asperity* is often manifested by the tone of voice rather than by the words that are spoken. *Acrimony* in speech or temper is like a corrosive acid; it springs from settled character or deeply rooted feeling of aversion or unkindness. One might speak with momentary *asperity* to his child, but not with *acrimony*, unless estrangement had begun. *Malignity* is the extreme of settled ill intent; *virulence* is an envenomed hostility. *Virulence* of speech is a quality in language that makes the language seem as if exuding poison. *Virulence* is outspoken; *malignity* may be covered with smooth and courteous phrase. We say intense *virulence*, deep *malignity*. *Severity* is always painful, and may be terrible, but carries ordinarily the implication, true or false, of justice. Compare ANGER; BITTER; ENMITY.

Antonyms:

amiability,
courtesy,
gentleness,
good nature,
kindness,
mildness,
smoothness,
sweetness.

ACT, n.

Synonyms:

accomplishment,
achievement,
action,
consummation,
deed,
doing,
effect,
execution,
exercise,
exertion,
exploit,
feat,
motion,
movement,
operation,
performance,
proceeding,
transaction,
work.

An *act* is strictly and originally something accomplished by an exercise of power, in which sense it is synonymous with *deed* or *effect*. *Action* is a *doing*. *Act* is therefore single, individual, momentary; *action* a complex of *acts*, or a process, state, or habit of exerting power. We say a virtuous *act*, but rather a virtuous course of *action*. We speak of the *action* of an acid upon a metal, not of its *act*. *Act* is used, also, for the simple *exertion* of power; as, an *act* of will. In this sense an *act* does not necessarily imply an external *effect*, while an *action* does. Morally, the *act* of murder is in the determination to kill; legally, the *act* is not complete without the striking of the fatal blow. *Act* and *deed* are both used for the thing done, but *act* refers to the power put forth, *deed* to the result accomplished; as, a voluntary *act*, a bad *deed*. In connection with other words *act* is more usually qualified by the use of another noun, *action* by an adjective preceding; we may say a kind *act*, though oftener an *act* of kindness,[17] but only a kind *action*, not an *action* of kindness. As between *act* and *deed*, *deed* is commonly used of great, notable, and impressive *acts*, as are *achievement*, *exploit*, and *feat*.

Festus: We live in *deeds*, not years; in thoughts, not breaths.

Bailey *Festus, A Country Town*, sc. 7.

A *feat* exhibits strength, skill, personal power, whether mental or physical, especially the latter; as, a *feat* of arms, a *feat* of memory. An *exploit* is a conspicuous or glorious *deed*, involving valor or heroism, usually combined with strength, skill, loftiness of thought, and readiness of resource; an *achievement* is the doing of something great and noteworthy; an *exploit* is brilliant, but its effect may be transient; an *achievement* is solid, and its effect enduring. *Act* and *action* are both in contrast to all that is merely passive and receptive. The intensest *action* is easier than passive endurance.

Antonyms:

cessation,
deliberation,
endurance,
immobility,
inaction,
inactivity,
inertia,
passion,[A]
quiescence,
quiet,
repose,
rest,
suffering,
suspension.

[A] In philosophic sense.

ACTIVE.

Synonyms:

agile,
alert,
brisk,
bustling,
busy,
diligent,
energetic,
expeditious,
industrious,
lively,
mobile,
nimble,
officious,
prompt,
quick,
ready,
restless,
sprightly,
spry,
supple,
vigorous,
wide awake.

Active refers to both quickness and constancy of action; in the former sense it is allied with *agile*, *alert*, *brisk*, etc.; in the latter, with *busy*, *diligent*, *industrious*. The *active* love employment, the *busy* are actually employed, the *diligent* and the *industrious* are habitually *busy*. The *restless* are *active* from inability to keep quiet; their activity may be without purpose, or out of all proportion to the purpose contemplated. The *officious* are undesirably *active* in the affairs of others. Compare ALERT; ALIVE; MEDDLESOME.

Antonyms:

dull,
heavy,
idle,
inactive,
indolent,
inert,
lazy,
quiescent,
quiet,
slow,
sluggish,
stupid.

Prepositions:

Active *in* work, *in* a cause; *for* an object, as *for* justice; *with* persons or instrumentalities; *about* something, as *about* other people's business.

---

[18]

ACUMEN.

Synonyms:

acuteness,
cleverness,
discernment,
insight,
keenness,
penetration,
perspicacity,
sagacity,
sharpness,
shrewdness.

Sharpness, *acuteness*, and *insight*, however keen, and *penetration*, however deep, fall short of the meaning of *acumen*, which implies also ability to use these qualities to advantage. There are persons of keen *insight* and great *penetration* to whom these powers are practically useless. *Acumen* is *sharpness* to some purpose, and belongs to a mind that is comprehensive as well as keen. *Cleverness* is a practical aptitude for study or learning. *Insight* and *discernment* are applied oftenest to the judgment of character; *penetration* and *perspicacity* to other subjects of knowledge. *Sagacity* is an uncultured skill in using quick perceptions for a desired end, generally in practical affairs; *acumen* may increase with study, and applies to the most erudite matters. *Shrewdness* is *keenness* or *sagacity*, often with a somewhat evil bias, as ready to take advantage of duller intellects. *Perspicacity* is the power to see clearly through that which is difficult or involved. We speak of the *acuteness* of an observer or a reasoner, the *insight* and *discernment* of a student, a clergyman, or a merchant, the *sagacity* of a hound, the *keenness* of a debater, the *shrewdness* of a usurer, the *penetration*, *perspicacity*, and *acumen* of a philosopher.

Antonyms:

bluntness,dulness,obtuseness,stupidity.

ADD.

Synonyms:

adjoin,
affix,
amplify,
annex,
append,
attach,
augment,
cast up,
enlarge,
extend,
increase,
join on,
make up,
subjoin,
sum up.

To *add* is to *increase* by *adjoining* or *uniting*: in distinction from multiply, which is to *increase* by repeating. To *augment* a thing is to *increase* it by any means, but this word is seldom used directly of material objects; we do not *augment* a house, a farm, a nation, etc. We may *enlarge* a house, a farm, or an empire, *extend* influence or dominion, *augment* riches, power or influence, *attach* or *annex* a building to one that it *adjoins* or papers to the document they refer to, *annex* a clause or a codicil, *affix* a seal or a signature, *annex* a territory, *attach* a condition to a promise. A speaker may *amplify* a discourse by a fuller treatment[19] throughout than was originally planned, or he may *append* or *subjoin* certain remarks without change of what has gone before. We *cast up* or *sum up* an account, though *add up* and *make up* are now more usual expressions.

Antonyms:

abstract,
deduct,
diminish,
dissever,
lessen,
reduce,
remove,
subtract,
withdraw.

Preposition:

Other items are to be added *to* the account.

ADDICTED.

Synonyms:

abandoned,
accustomed,
attached,
devoted,
disposed,
given,
given over,
given up,
habituated,
inclined,
prone,
wedded.

One is *addicted* to that which he has allowed to gain a strong, habitual, and enduring hold upon action, inclination, or involuntary tendency, as to a habit or indulgence. A man may be *accustomed* to labor, *attached* to his profession, *devoted* to his religion, *given* to study or to gluttony (in the bad sense, *given over*, or *given up*, is a stronger and more hopeless expression, as is *abandoned*). One *inclined* to luxury may become *habituated* to poverty.

One is *wedded* to that which has become a second nature; as, one is *wedded* to science or to art. *Prone* is used only in a bad sense, and generally of natural tendencies; as, our hearts are *prone* to evil. *Abandoned* tells of the acquired viciousness of one who has given himself up to wickedness. *Addicted* may be used in a good, but more frequently a bad sense; as, *addicted* to study; *addicted* to drink. *Devoted* is used chiefly in the good sense; as, a mother's *devoted* affection.

Antonyms:

averse,disinclined,indisposed,unaccustomed.

Preposition:

Addicted *to* vice.

ADDRESS, v.

Synonyms:

cost,
apostrophize,
appeal,
approach,
court,
greet,
hail,
salute,
speak to,
woo.

To *accost* is to speak first, to friend or stranger, generally with a view to opening conversation; *greet* is not so distinctly limited, since one may return another's *greeting*; *greet* and *hail* may imply but a passing word; *greeting* may be altogether silent; to *hail* is to *greet* in a loud-voiced and commonly hearty and joyous[20] way, as appears in the expression "*hail* fellow, well met." To *salute* is to *greet* with special token of respect, as a soldier his commander. To *apostrophize* is to solemnly *address* some person or personified attribute apart from the audience to whom one is speaking; as, a preacher may *apostrophize* virtue, the saints of old, or even the Deity. To *appeal* is strictly to call for some form of help or support. *Address* is slightly more formal than *accost* or *greet*, though it may often be interchanged with them. One may *address* another at considerable length or in writing; he *accosts* orally and briefly.

Antonyms:

avoid,
cut,
elude,
ignore,
overlook,
pass,
pass by,
shun.

Prepositions:

Address the memorial *to* the legislature; the president addressed the people *in* an eloquent speech; he addressed an intruder *with* indignation.

ADDRESS, n.

Synonyms:

adroitness,
courtesy,
dexterity,
discretion,
ingenuity,
manners,
politeness,
readiness,
tact.

Address is that indefinable something which enables a man to gain his object without seeming exertion or contest, and generally with the favor and approval of those with whom he deals. It is a general power to direct to the matter in hand whatever qualities are most needed for it at the moment. It includes *adroitness* and *discretion* to know what to do or say and what to avoid; *ingenuity* to devise; *readiness* to speak or act; the *dexterity* that comes of practise; and *tact*, which is the power of fine touch as applied to human character and feeling. *Courtesy* and *politeness* are indispensable elements of good *address*. Compare SPEECH.

Antonyms:

awkwardness,
boorishness,
clownishness,
clumsiness,
fatuity,
folly,
ill-breeding,
ill manners,
rudeness,
stupidity,
unmannerliness,
unwisdom.

Prepositions:

Address *in* dealing with opponents; the address *of* an accomplished intriguer; an address *to* the audience.

[21]

ADEQUATE.

Synonyms:

able,
adapted,
capable,
commensurate,
competent,
equal,
fit,
fitted,
fitting,
qualified,
satisfactory,
sufficient,
suitable.

Adequate, *commensurate*, and *sufficient* signify *equal* to some given occasion or work; as, a sum *sufficient* to meet expenses; an *adequate* remedy for the disease. *Commensurate* is the more precise and learned word, signifying that which exactly measures the matter in question. *Adapted*, *fit*, *suitable*, and *qualified* refer to the qualities which match or suit the occasion. A clergyman may have strength *adequate* to the work of a porter; but that would not be a *fit* or *suitable* occupation for him. Work is *satisfactory* if it satisfies those for whom it is done, though it may be very poor work judged by some higher standard. *Qualified* refers to acquired abilities; *competent* to both natural and acquired; a *qualified* teacher may be no longer *competent*, by reason of ill health. *Able* and *capable* suggest general ability and reserved power, *able* being the higher word of the two. An *able* man will do something well in any position. A *capable* man will come up to any ordinary demand. We say an *able* orator, a *capable* accountant.

Antonyms:

disqualified,
inadequate,
incompetent,
inferior,
insufficient,
poor,
unequal,
unfit,
unqualified,
unsatisfactory,
unsuitable,
useless,
worthless.

Prepositions:

Adequate *to* the demand; *for* the purpose.

ADHERENT.

Synonyms:

aid,
aider,
ally,
backer,
disciple,
follower,
partisan,
supporter.

An *adherent* is one who is devoted or attached to a person, party, principle, cause, creed, or the like. One may be an *aider* and *supporter* of a party or church, while not an *adherent* to all its doctrines or claims. An *ally* is more independent still, as he may differ on every point except the specific ground of union. The *Allies* who overthrew Napoleon were united only against him. *Allies* are regarded as equals; *adherents* and *disciples* are followers. The *adherent* depends more on his individual judgment, the *disciple* is more subject to command and instruction; thus we say the *disciples* rather than the *adherents* of Christ. *Partisan* has[22] the narrow and odious sense of adhesion to a party, right or wrong. One may be an *adherent* or *supporter* of a party and not a *partisan*. *Backer* is a sporting and theatrical word, personal in its application, and not in the best usage. Compare ACCESSORY.

Antonyms:

adversary,
antagonist,
betrayer,
deserter,
enemy,
hater,
opponent,
renegade,
traitor.

Prepositions:

Adherents *to* principle; adherents *of* Luther.

ADHESIVE.

Synonyms:

cohesive,
glutinous,
gummy,
sticking,
sticky,
viscid,
viscous.

Adhesive is the scientific, *sticking* or *sticky* the popular word. That which is *adhesive* tends to join itself to the surface of any other body with which it is placed in contact; *cohesive* expresses the tendency of particles of the same substance to hold together. Polished plate glass is not *adhesive*, but such plates packed together are intensely *cohesive*. An *adhesive* plaster is in popular language a *sticking*-plaster. *Sticky* expresses a more limited, and generally annoying, degree of the same quality. *Glutinous*, *gummy*, *viscid*, and *viscous* are applied to fluid or semi-fluid substances, as pitch or tar.

Antonyms:

free,inadhesive,loose,separable.

Preposition:

The stiff, wet clay, adhesive *to* the foot, impeded progress.

ADJACENT.

Synonyms:

abutting,
adjoining,
attached,
beside,
bordering,
close,
conterminous,
contiguous,
coterminous,
near,
neighboring,
next,
nigh.

Adjacent farms may not be connected; if *adjoining*, they meet at the boundary-line. *Conterminous* would imply that their dimensions were exactly equal on the side where they adjoin. *Contiguous* may be used for either *adjacent* or *adjoining*. *Abutting* refers rather to the end of one building or estate than to the neighborhood of another. Buildings may be *adjacent* or *adjoining* that are not *attached*. *Near* is a relative word, places being called *near* upon the railroad which would elsewhere be deemed remote. *Neighboring* always implies such proximity that the inhabitants[23] may be neighbors. *Next* views some object as the nearest of several or many; *next* neighbor implies a neighborhood.

Antonyms:

detached,disconnected,disjoined,distant,remote,separate.

Preposition:

The farm was adjacent *to* the village.

ADMIRE.

Synonyms:

adore,
applaud,
approve,
delight in,
enjoy,
esteem,
extol,
honor,
love,
respect,
revere,
venerate,
wonder.

In the old sense of *wonder*, *admire* is practically obsolete; the word now expresses a delight and approval, in which the element of wonder unconsciously mingles. We *admire* beauty in nature and art, *delight in* the innocent happiness of children, *enjoy* books or society, a walk or a dinner. We *approve* what is excellent, *applaud* heroic deeds, *esteem* the good, *love* our friends. We *honor* and *respect* noble character wherever found; we *revere* and *venerate* it in the aged. We *extol* the goodness and *adore* the majesty and power of God.

Antonyms:

abhor,
abominate,
contemn,
despise,
detest,
dislike,
execrate,
hate,
ridicule,
scorn.

Preposition:

Admire at may still very rarely be found in the old sense of *wonder at*.

ADORN.

Synonyms:

beautify,
bedeck,
deck,
decorate,
embellish,
garnish,
gild,
illustrate,
ornament.

To *embellish* is to brighten and enliven by adding something that is not necessarily or very closely connected with that to which it is added; to *illustrate* is to add something so far like in kind as to cast a side-light upon the principal matter. An author *embellishes* his narrative with fine descriptions, the artist *illustrates* it with beautiful engravings, the binder *gilds* and *decorates* the volume. *Garnish* is on a lower plane; as, the feast was *garnished* with flowers. *Deck* and *bedeck* are commonly said of apparel; as, a mother *bedecks* her daughter with silk and jewels. To *adorn* and to *ornament* alike signify to add that which makes anything beautiful and attractive, but *ornament* is more exclusively on the material plane; as, the gateway was *ornamented* with delicate[24] carving. *Adorn* is more lofty and spiritual, referring to a beauty which is not material, and can not be put on by ornaments or decorations, but seems in perfect harmony and unity with that to which it adds a grace; if we say, the gateway was *adorned* with beautiful carving, we imply a unity and loftiness of design such as *ornamented* can not express. We say of some admirable scholar or statesman, "he touched nothing that he did not *adorn*."

At church, with meek and unaffected grace,
His looks *adorned* the venerable place.

Goldsmith *Deserted Village*, l. 178.

Antonyms:

deface,deform,disfigure,mar,spoil.

Preposition:

Adorn his temples *with* a coronet.

AFFRONT.

Synonyms:

aggravate,
annoy,
displease,
exasperate,
insult,
irritate,
offend,
provoke,
tease,
vex,
wound
.

One may be *annoyed* by the well-meaning awkwardness of a servant, *irritated* by a tight shoe or a thoughtless remark, *vexed* at some careless neglect or needless misfortune, *wounded* by the ingratitude of child or friend. To *tease* is to give some slight and perhaps playful annoyance. *Aggravate* in the sense of *offend* is colloquial. To *provoke*, literally to call out or challenge, is to begin a contest; one *provokes* another to violence. To *affront* is to offer some defiant offense or indignity, as it were, to one's face; it is somewhat less than to *insult*. Compare PIQUE.

Antonyms:

conciliate, content, gratify, honor, please.

AGENT.

Synonyms:

actor,
doer,
factor,
instrument,
means,
mover,
operator,
performer,
promoter.

In strict philosophical usage, the prime *mover* or *doer* of an act is the *agent*. Thus we speak of man as a voluntary *agent*, a free *agent*. But in common usage, especially in business, an *agent* is not the prime *actor*, but only an *instrument* or *factor*, acting under orders or instructions. Compare CAUSE.

Antonyms:

chief, inventor, originator, principal.

Prepositions:

An agent *of* the company *for* selling, etc.

---

[25]

AGREE.

Synonyms:

accede,
accept,
accord,
acquiesce,
admit,
approve,
assent,
coincide,
combine,
comply,
concur,
consent,
harmonize.

Agree is the most general term of this group, signifying to have like qualities, proportions, views, or inclinations, so as to be free from jar, conflict, or contradiction in a given relation. To *concur* is to *agree* in general; to *coincide* is to *agree* in every particular. Whether in application to persons or things, *concur* tends to expression in action more than *coincide*; we may either *concur* or *coincide* in an opinion, but *concur* in a decision; views *coincide*, causes *concur*. One *accepts* another's terms, *complies* with his wishes, *admits* his statement, *approves* his plan, *conforms* to his views of doctrine or duty, *accedes* or *consents* to his proposal. *Accede* expresses the more formal agreement, *consent* the more complete. To *assent* is an act of the understanding; to *consent*, of the will. We may *concur* or *agree* with others, either in opinion or decision. One may silently *acquiesce* in that which does not meet his views, but which he does not care to contest. He *admits* the charge brought, or the statement made, by another—*admit* always carrying a suggestion of reluctance. *Assent* is sometimes used for a mild form of *consent*, as if agreement in the opinion assured approval of the decision.

Antonyms:

contend,
contradict,
decline,
demur,
deny,
differ,
disagree,
dispute,
dissent,
oppose,
protest,
refuse.

Prepositions:

I agree *in* opinion *with* the speaker; *to* the terms proposed; persons agree *on* or *upon* a statement of principles, rules, etc.; we must agree *among* ourselves.

AGRICULTURE.

Synonyms:

cultivation,
culture,
farming,
floriculture,
gardening,
horticulture,
husbandry,
kitchen-gardening,
market-gardening,
tillage.

Agriculture is the generic term, including at once the science, the art, and the process of supplying human wants by raising the products of the soil, and by the associated industries; *farming* is the practise of *agriculture* as a business; there may be theoretical *agriculture*, but not theoretical *farming*; we speak of the science of *agriculture*, the business of *farming*; scientific *agriculture*[26] may be wholly in books; scientific *farming* is practised upon the land; we say an *agricultural* college rather than a college of *farming*. *Farming* refers to the *cultivation* of considerable portions of land, and the raising of the coarser crops; *gardening* is the close *cultivation* of a small area for small fruits, flowers, vegetables, etc., and while it may be done upon a farm is yet a distinct industry. *Gardening* in general, *kitchen-gardening*, the *cultivation* of vegetables, etc., for the household, *market-gardening*, the raising of the same for sale, *floriculture*, the *culture* of flowers, and *horticulture*, the *culture* of fruits, flowers, or vegetables, are all departments of *agriculture*, but not strictly nor ordinarily of *farming*; *farming* is itself one department of *agriculture*. *Husbandry* is a general word for any form of practical *agriculture*, but is now chiefly poetical. *Tillage* refers directly to the work bestowed upon the land, as plowing, manuring, etc.; *cultivation* refers especially to the processes that bring forward the crop; we speak of the *tillage* of the soil, the *cultivation* of corn; we also speak of land as in a state of *cultivation*, under *cultivation*, etc. *Culture* is now applied to the careful development of any product to a state of perfection, especially by care through successive generations; the choice varieties of the strawberry have been produced by wise and patient *culture*; a good crop in any year is the result of good *cultivation*.

AIM.

Synonyms:

aspiration,
design,
determination,
end,
endeavor,
goal,
inclination,
intent,
intention,
mark,
object,
purpose,
tendency.

The *aim* is the direction in which one shoots, or sometimes that which is aimed at. The *mark* is that at which one shoots; the *goal*, that toward which one runs. All alike indicate the direction of *endeavor*. The *end* is the point at which one expects or hopes to close his labors; the *object*, that which he would grasp as the reward of his labors. *Aspiration*, *design*, *endeavor*, *purpose*, referring to the mental acts by which the *aim* is attained, are often used as interchangeable with *aim*. *Aspiration* applies to what are viewed as noble *aims*; *endeavor*, *design*, *intention*, *purpose*, indifferently to the best or worst. *Aspiration* has less of decision than the other terms; one may aspire to an *object*, and yet lack the fixedness of *purpose* by which alone it can be attained. *Purpose* is stronger than *intention*. *Design* especially denotes the[27] adaptation of means to an end; *endeavor* refers to the exertions by which it is to be attained. One whose *aims* are worthy, whose *aspirations* are high, whose *designs* are wise, and whose *purposes* are steadfast, may hope to reach the *goal* of his ambition, and will surely win some *object* worthy of a life's *endeavor*. Compare AMBITION; DESIGN.

Antonyms:

aimlessness,
avoidance,
carelessness,
heedlessness,
neglect,
negligence,
oversight,
purposelessness,
thoughtlessness.

AIR.

Synonyms:

appearance,
bearing,
behavior,
carriage,
demeanor,
expression,
fashion,
look,
manner,
mien,
port,
sort,
style,
way.

Air is that combination of qualities which makes the entire impression we receive in a person's presence; as, we say he has the *air* of a scholar, or the *air* of a villain. *Appearance* refers more to the dress and other externals. We might say of a travel-soiled pedestrian, he has the *appearance* of a tramp, but the *air* of a gentleman. *Expression* and *look* especially refer to the face. *Expression* is oftenest applied to that which is habitual; as, he has a pleasant *expression* of countenance; *look* may be momentary; as, a *look* of dismay passed over his face. We may, however, speak of the *look* or *looks* as indicating all that we look at; as, he had the *look* of an adventurer; I did not like his *looks*. *Bearing* is rather a lofty word; as, he has a noble *bearing*; *port* is practically identical in meaning with *bearing*, but is more exclusively a literary word. *Carriage*, too, is generally used in a good sense; as, that lady has a good *carriage*. *Mien* is closely synonymous with *air*, but less often used in a bad sense. We say a rakish *air* rather than a rakish *mien*. *Mien* may be used to express some prevailing feeling; as, "an indignant *mien*." *Demeanor* goes beyond *appearance*, including conduct, behavior; as, a modest *demeanor*. *Manner* and *style* are, in large part at least, acquired. Compare BEHAVIOR.

AIRY.

Synonyms:

aerial,
animated,
ethereal,
fairylike,
frolicsome,
gay,
joyous,
light,
lively,
sprightly.

Aerial and *airy* both signify of or belonging to the air, but *airy* also describes that which seems as if made of air; we speak[28] of *airy* shapes, *airy* nothings, where we could not well say *aerial*; *ethereal* describes its object as belonging to the upper air, the pure ether, and so, often, heavenly. *Sprightly*, spiritlike, refers to light, free, cheerful activity of mind and body. That which is *lively* or *animated* may be agreeable or the reverse; as, an *animated* discussion; a *lively* company.

Antonyms:

clumsy,
dull,
heavy,
inert,
ponderous,
slow,
sluggish,
stony,
wooden.

ALARM.

Synonyms:

affright,
apprehension,
consternation,
dismay,
disquietude,
dread,
fear,
fright,
misgiving,
panic,
solicitude,
terror,
timidity.

Alarm, according to its derivation *all'arme*, "to arms," is an arousing to meet and repel danger, and may be quite consistent with true courage. *Affright* and *fright* express sudden *fear* which, for the time at least, overwhelms courage. The sentinel discovers with *alarm* the sudden approach of the enemy; the unarmed villagers view it with *affright*. *Apprehension*, *disquietude*, *dread*, *misgiving*, and *solicitude* are in anticipation of danger;

consternation, *dismay*, and *terror* are overwhelming *fear*, generally in the actual presence of that which is terrible, though these words also may have an anticipative force. *Timidity* is a quality, habit, or condition, a readiness to be affected with *fear*. A person of great *timidity* is constantly liable to needless *alarm* and even *terror*. Compare FEAR.

Antonyms:

assurance, calmness, confidence, repose, security.

Prepositions:

Alarm was felt *in* the camp, *among* the soldiers, *at* the news.

ALERT.

Synonyms:

active,
brisk,
hustling,
lively,
nimble,
on the watch,
prepared,
prompt,
ready,
vigilant,
watchful,
wide-awake.

Alert, *ready*, and *wide-awake* refer to a watchful promptness for action. *Ready* suggests thoughtful preparation; the wandering Indian is *alert*, the trained soldier is *ready*. *Ready* expresses more life and vigor than *prepared*. The gun is *prepared*; the man is *ready*. *Prompt* expresses readiness for appointment or[29] demand at the required moment. The good general is *ready* for emergencies, *alert* to perceive opportunity or peril, *prompt* to seize occasion. The sense of *brisk*, *nimble* is the secondary and now less common signification of *alert*. Compare ACTIVE; ALIVE; NIMBLE; VIGILANT.

Antonyms:

drowsy, dull, heavy, inactive, slow, sluggish, stupid.

ALIEN, a.

Synonyms:

conflicting,
contradictory,
contrary,
contrasted,
distant,
foreign,
hostile,
impertinent,
inappropriate,
irrelevant,
opposed,
remote,
strange,
unconnected,
unlike.

Foreign refers to difference of birth, *alien* to difference of allegiance. In their figurative use, that is *foreign* which is *remote*, *unlike*, or *unconnected*; that is *alien* which is *conflicting*, *hostile*, or *opposed*. *Impertinent* and *irrelevant* matters can not claim consideration in a certain connection; *inappropriate* matters could not properly be considered. Compare ALIEN, *n.*; CONTRAST, *v.*

Antonyms:

akin,
appropriate,
apropos,
essential,
germane,
pertinent,
proper,
relevant.

Prepositions:

Such a purpose was alien *to* (or *from*) my thought: *to* preferable.

ALIEN, n.

Synonyms:

foreigner,
stranger.

A naturalized citizen is not an *alien*, though a *foreigner* by birth, and perhaps a *stranger* in the place where he resides. A person of foreign birth not naturalized is an *alien*, though he may have been resident in the country a large part of a lifetime, and ceased to be a *stranger* to its people or institutions. He is an *alien* in one country if his allegiance is to another. The people of any country still residing in their own land are, strictly speaking, *foreigners* to the people of all other countries, rather than *aliens*; but *alien* and *foreigner* are often used synonymously.

Antonyms:

citizen,
countryman,
fellow-countryman,
native,
native-born inhabitant,
naturalized person.

Prepositions:

Aliens *to* (more rarely *from*) our nation and laws; aliens *in* our land, *among* our people.

---

[30]

ALIKE.

Synonyms:

akin,
analogous,
equal,
equivalent,
homogeneous,
identical,
kindred,
like,
resembling,
same,
similar,
uniform.

Alike is a comprehensive word, signifying as applied to two or more objects that some or all qualities of one are the same as those of the other or others; by modifiers *alike* may be made to express more or less resemblance; as, these houses are somewhat (*i. e.*, partially) *alike*; or, these houses are exactly (*i. e.*, in all respects) *alike*. Cotton and wool are *alike* in this, that they can both be woven into cloth. Substances are *homogeneous* which are made up of elements of the *same* kind, or which are the *same* in structure. Two pieces of iron may be *homogeneous* in material, while not *alike* in size or shape. In geometry, two triangles are *equal* when they can be laid over one another, and fit, line for line and angle for angle; they are *equivalent* when they simply contain the same amount of space. An *identical* proposition is one that says the same thing precisely in subject and predicate. *Similar* refers to close resemblance, which yet leaves room for question or denial of complete likeness or identity. To say "this is the *identical* man," is to say not merely that he is *similar* to the one I have in mind, but that he is the very *same* person. Things are *analogous* when they are *similar* in idea, plan, use, or character, tho perhaps quite unlike in appearance; as, the gills of fishes are said to be *analogous* to the lungs in terrestrial animals.

Antonyms:

different,dissimilar,distinct,heterogeneous,unlike.

Prepositions:

The specimens are alike *in* kind; they are all alike *to* me.

ALIVE.

Synonyms:

active,
alert,
animate,
animated,
breathing,
brisk,
existent,
existing,
live,
lively,
living,
quick,
subsisting,
vivacious.

Alive applies to all degrees of life, from that which shows one to be barely *existing* or *existent* as a living thing, as when we say he is just *alive*, to that which implies the very utmost of vitality and power, as in the words "he is all *alive*," "thoroughly *alive*." So the word *quick*, which began by signifying "having life," is now mostly applied to energy of life as shown in swiftness of action. *Breathing* is capable of like contrast. We say of a dying[31] man, he is still *breathing*; or we speak of a *breathing* statue, or "*breathing* and sounding, beauteous battle," Tennyson *Princess* can. v, l. 155, where it means having, or seeming to have, full and vigorous breath, abundant life. Compare ACTIVE; ALERT; NIMBLE.

Antonyms:

dead, deceased, defunct, dispirited, dull, inanimate, lifeless, spiritless.

Prepositions:

Alive *in* every nerve; alive *to* every noble impulse; alive *with* fervor, hope, resolve; alive *through* all his being.

ALLAY.

Synonyms:

alleviate, appease, calm, compose, mollify, pacify, quiet, soothe, still, tranquilize.

Allay and *alleviate* are closely kindred in signification, and have been often interchanged in usage. But, in strictness, to *allay* is to lay to rest, *quiet* or *soothe* that which is excited; to *alleviate*, on the other hand, is to lighten a burden. We *allay* suffering by using means to *soothe* and *tranquilize* the sufferer; we *alleviate* suffering by doing something toward removal of the cause, so that there is less to suffer; where the trouble is wholly or chiefly in the excitement, to *allay* the excitement is virtually to remove the trouble; as, to *allay* rage or panic; we *alleviate* poverty, but do not *allay* it. *Pacify*, directly from the Latin, and *appease*, from the Latin through the French, signify to bring to peace; to *mollify* is to soften; to *calm*, *quiet*, or *tranquilize* is to make still; *compose*, to place together, unite, adjust to a calm and settled condition; to *soothe* (originally to assent to, humor) is to bring to pleased quietude. We *allay* excitement, *appease* a tumult, *calm* agitation, *compose* our feelings or countenance, *pacify* the quarrelsome, *quiet* the boisterous or clamorous, *soothe* grief or distress. Compare ALLEVIATE.

Antonyms:

agitate, arouse, excite, fan, kindle, provoke, rouse, stir, stir up.

ALLEGE.

Synonyms:

adduce, advance, affirm, assert, asseverate, assign, aver, cite, claim, declare, introduce, maintain, offer, plead, produce, say, state.

To *allege* is formally to state as true or capable of proof, but without proving. To *adduce*, literally to lead to, is to bring the[32] evidence up to what has been *alleged*. *Adduce* is a secondary word; nothing can be *adduced* in evidence till something has been *stated* or *alleged*, which the evidence is to sustain. An *alleged* fact stands open to question or doubt. To speak of an *alleged* document, an *alleged* will, an *alleged* crime, is either to question, or at least very carefully to refrain from admitting, that the document exists, that the will is genuine, or that the crime has been committed. *Alleged* is, however, respectful; to speak of the "so-called" will or deed, etc., would be to cast discredit upon the document, and imply that the speaker was ready to brand it as unquestionably spurious; *alleged* simply concedes nothing and leaves the question open. To *produce* is to bring forward, as, for instance, papers or persons. *Adduce* is not used of persons; of them we say *introduce* or *produce*. When an *alleged* criminal is brought to trial, the counsel on either side are accustomed to *advance* a theory, and *adduce* the strongest possible evidence in its support; they will *produce* documents and witnesses, *cite* precedents, *assign* reasons, *introduce* suggestions, *offer* pleas. The accused will usually *assert* his innocence. Compare STATE.

ALLEGIANCE.

Synonyms:

devotion,
faithfulness,
fealty,
homage,
loyalty,
obedience,
subjection.

Allegiance is the obligation of fidelity and obedience that an individual owes to his government or sovereign, in return for the protection he receives. The feudal uses of these words have mostly passed away with the state of society that gave them birth; but their origin still colors their present meaning. A patriotic American feels an enthusiastic *loyalty* to the republic; he takes, on occasion, an oath of *allegiance* to the government, but his *loyalty* will lead him to do more than mere *allegiance* could demand; he pays *homage* to God alone, as the only king and lord, or to those principles of right that are spiritually supreme; he acknowledges the duty of *obedience* to all rightful authority; he resents the idea of *subjection*. *Fealty* is becoming somewhat rare, except in elevated or poetic style. We prefer to speak of the *faithfulness* rather than the *fealty* of citizen, wife, or friend.

Antonyms:

disaffection, disloyalty, rebellion, sedition, treason.

Prepositions:

We honor the allegiance *of* the citizen *to* the government; the government has a right to allegiance *from* the citizen.

---

[33]

ALLEGORY.

Synonyms:

fable,fiction,illustration,metaphor,parable,simile.

In modern usage we may say that an *allegory* is an extended *simile*, while a *metaphor* is an abbreviated *simile* contained often in a phrase, perhaps in a word. The *simile* carries its comparison on the surface, in the words *as*, *like*, or similar expressions; the *metaphor* is given directly without any note of comparison. The *allegory*, *parable*, or *fable* tells its story as if true, leaving the reader or hearer to discover its fictitious character and learn its lesson. All these are, in strict definition, *fictions*; but the word *fiction* is now applied almost exclusively to novels or romances. An *allegory* is a moral or religious tale, of which the moral lesson is the substance, and all descriptions and incidents but accessories, as in "The Pilgrim's Progress." A *fable* is generally briefer, representing animals as the speakers and actors, and commonly conveying some lesson of practical wisdom or shrewdness, as "The *Fables* of Æsop." A *parable* is exclusively moral or religious, briefer and less adorned than an *allegory*, with its lesson more immediately discernible, given, as it were, at a stroke. Any comparison, analogy, instance, example, tale, anecdote, or the like which serves to let in light upon a subject may be called an *illustration*, this word in its widest use including all the rest. Compare FICTION; STORY.

Antonyms:

chronicle,fact,history,narrative,record.

ALLEVIATE.

Synonyms:

abate,
assuage,
lessen,
lighten,
mitigate,
moderate,
reduce,
relieve,
remove,
soften.

Etymologically, to *alleviate* is to lift a burden toward oneself, and so *lighten* it for the bearer; to *relieve* is to lift it back from the bearer, nearly or quite away; to *remove* is to take it away altogether. *Alleviate* is thus less than *relieve*; *relieve*, ordinarily, less than *remove*. We *alleviate*, *relieve* or *remove* the trouble; we *relieve*, not *alleviate*, the sufferer. *Assuage* is, by derivation, to sweeten; *mitigate*, to make mild; *moderate*, to bring within measure; *abate*, to beat down, and so make less. We *abate* a fever; *lessen* anxiety; *moderate* passions or desires; *lighten* burdens; *mitigate* or *alleviate* pain; *reduce* inflammation;[34] *soften*, *assuage*, or *moderate* grief; we *lighten* or *mitigate* punishments; we *relieve* any suffering of body or mind that admits of help, comfort, or remedy. *Alleviate* has been often confused with *allay*. Compare ALLAY.

Antonyms:

aggravate,
augment,
embitter,
enhance,
heighten,
increase,
intensify,
magnify,
make worse.

ALLIANCE.

Synonyms:

coalition,
compact,
confederacy,
confederation,
federation,
fusion,
league,
partnership,
union.

Alliance is in its most common use a connection formed by treaty between sovereign states as for mutual aid in war. *Partnership* is a mercantile word; *alliance* chiefly political or matrimonial. *Coalition* is oftenest used of political parties; *fusion* is now the more common word in this sense. In an *alliance* between nations there is no surrender of sovereignty, and no *union* except for a specified time and purpose. *League* and *alliance* are used with scarcely perceptible difference of meaning. In a *confederacy* or *confederation* there is an attempt to unite separate states in a general government without surrender of sovereignty. *Union* implies so much concession as to make the separate states substantially one. *Federation* is mainly a poetic and rhetorical word expressing something of the same thought, as in Tennyson's "*federation* of the world," *Locksley Hall*, l. 128. The United States is not a *confederacy* nor an *alliance*; the nation might be called a *federation*, but prefers to be styled a federal *union*.

Antonyms:

antagonism,
discord,
disunion,
divorce,
enmity,
hostility,
schism,
secession,
separation,
war.

Prepositions:

Alliance *with* a neighboring people; *against* the common enemy; *for* offense and defense; alliance *of*, *between*, or *among* nations.

ALLOT.

Synonyms:

appoint,
apportion,
assign,
award,
destine,
distribute,
divide,
give,
grant,
mete out,
portion out,
select,
set apart.

Allot, originally to assign by lot, applies to the giving of a definite thing to a certain person. A portion or extent of time is *allotted*;[35] as, I expect to live out my *allotted* time. A definite period is *appointed*; as, the audience assembled at the *appointed* hour. *Allot* may also refer to space; as, to *allot* a plot of ground for a cemetery; but we now oftener use *select*, *set apart*, or *assign*. *Allot* is not now used of persons. *Appoint* may be used of time, space, or person; as, the *appointed* day; the *appointed* place; an officer was *appointed* to this station. *Destine* may also refer to time, place, or person, but it always has reference to what is considerably in the future; a man *appoints* to meet his friend in five minutes; he *destines* his son to follow his own profession. *Assign* is rarely used of time, but rather of places, persons, or things. We *assign* a work to be done and *assign* a man to do it, who, if he fails, must *assign* a reason for not doing it. That which is *allotted*, *appointed*, or *assigned* is more or less arbitrary; that which is *awarded* is the due requital of something the receiver has done, and he has right and claim to it; as, the medal was *awarded* for valor. Compare APPORTION.

Antonyms:

appropriate, deny, resume, seize,
confiscate, refuse, retain, withhold.

Prepositions:

Allot *to* a company *for* a purpose.

ALLOW.

Synonyms:

admit, consent to, let, sanction, tolerate,
concede, grant, permit, suffer, yield.

We *allow* that which we do not attempt to hinder; we *permit* that to which we give some express authorization. When this is given verbally it is called permission; when in writing it is commonly called a permit. There are establishments that any one will be *allowed* to visit without challenge or hindrance; there are others that no one is *allowed* to visit without a permit from the manager; there are others to which visitors are *admitted* at specified times, without a formal permit. We *allow* a child's innocent intrusion; we *concede* a right; *grant* a request; *consent* to a sale of property; *permit* an inspection of accounts; *sanction* a marriage; *tolerate* the rudeness of a well-meaning servant; *submit* to a surgical operation; *yield* to a demand or necessity against our wish or will, or *yield* something under compulsion; as, the sheriff *yielded* the keys at the muzzle of a revolver, and *allowed* the mob to enter. *Suffer*, in the sense of mild concession, is now becoming rare, its[36] place being taken by *allow*, *permit*, or *tolerate*. Compare PERMISSION.

Antonyms:

deny, disallow, disapprove, forbid, protest, refuse, reject, resist, withstand.

See also synonyms for PROHIBIT.

Prepositions:

To allow *of* (in best recent usage, simply to *allow*) such an action; allow one *in* such a course; allow *for* spending-money.

ALLOY.

Synonyms:

admixture, adulteration, debasement, deterioration.

Alloy may be either some admixture of baser with precious metal, as for giving hardness to coin or the like, or it may be a compound or mixture of two or more metals. *Adulteration*, *debasement*, and *deterioration* are always used in the bad sense; *admixture* is neutral, and may be good or bad; *alloy* is commonly good in the literal sense. An excess of *alloy* virtually amounts to *adulteration*; but *adulteration* is now mostly restricted to articles used for food, drink, medicine, and kindred uses. In the figurative sense, as applied to character, etc., *alloy* is unfavorable, because there the only standard is perfection.

ALLUDE.

Synonyms:

advert, hint, imply, indicate, insinuate, intimate, mention, point, refer, signify, suggest.

Advert, *mention*, and *refer* are used of language that more or less distinctly utters a certain thought; the others of language from which it may be inferred. We *allude* to a matter slightly, perhaps by a word or phrase, as it were in byplay; we *advert* to it when we turn from our path to treat it; we *refer* to it by any clear utterance that distinctly turns the mind or attention to it; as, marginal figures *refer* to a parallel passage; we *mention* a thing by explicit word, as by naming it. The speaker *adverted* to the recent disturbances and the remissness of certain public officers; tho he *mentioned* no name, it was easy to see to whom he *alluded*. One may *hint* at a thing in a friendly way, but what is *insinuated* is always unfavorable, generally both hostile and cowardly. One may *indicate* his wishes, *intimate* his plans, *imply*[37] his opinion, *signify* his will, *suggest* a course of action. Compare SUGGESTION.

Preposition:

The passage evidently alludes *to* the Jewish Passover.

ALLURE.

Synonyms:

attract,
cajole,
captivate,
coax,
decoy,
draw,
entice,
inveigle,
lure,
seduce,
tempt,
win.

To *allure* is to *draw* as with a lure by some charm or some prospect of pleasure or advantage. We may *attract* others to a certain thing without intent; as, the good unconsciously *attract* others to virtue. We may *allure* either to that which is evil or to that which is good and noble, by purpose and endeavor, as in the familiar line, "*Allured* to brighter worlds, and led the way," Goldsmith *Deserted Village*, l. 170. *Lure* is rather more akin to the physical nature. It is the word we would use of drawing on an animal. *Coax* expresses the attraction of the person, not of the thing. A man may be *coaxed* to that which is by no means *alluring*. *Cajole* and *decoy* carry the idea of deceiving and ensnaring. To *inveigle* is to lead one blindly in. To *tempt* is to endeavor to lead one wrong; to *seduce* is to succeed in *winning* one from good to ill. *Win* may be used in either a bad or a good sense, in which latter it surpasses the highest sense of *allure*, because it succeeds in that which *allure* attempts; as, "He that *winneth* souls is wise," *Prov.* xi, 30.

Antonyms:

chill, damp, deter, dissuade, drive away, repel, warn.

Prepositions:

Allure *to* a course; allure *by* hopes; allure *from* evil *to* good.

ALSO.

Synonyms:

as well,
as well as,
besides,
in addition,
in like manner,
likewise,
similarly,
too,
withal.

While some distinctions between these words and phrases will appear to the careful student, yet in practise the choice between them is largely to secure euphony and avoid repetition. The words fall into two groups; *as well as*, *besides*, *in addition*, *too*, *withal*, simply add a fact or thought; *also* (all so), *in like manner*, *likewise*, *similarly*, affirm that what is added is like that to which it is added. *As well* follows the word or phrase to which it is[38] joined. We can say the singers *as well as* the players, or the players, and the singers *as well*.

Antonyms:

but,	nevertheless,	on the contrary,	yet
in spite of,	notwithstanding,	on the other hand,	.

ALTERNATIVE.

Synonyms:

choice,election,option,pick,preference,resource.

A *choice* may be among many things; an *alternative* is in the strictest sense a *choice* between two things; oftener it is one of two things between which a *choice* is to be made, and either of which is the *alternative* of the other; as, the *alternative* of surrender is death; or the two things between which there is a *choice* may be called the *alternatives*; both Mill and Gladstone are quoted as extending the meaning of *alternative* to include several particulars, Gladstone even speaking of "the fourth and last of these *alternatives*." *Option* is the right or privilege of choosing; *choice* may be either the right to choose, the act of choosing, or the thing chosen. A person of ability and readiness will commonly have many *resources*. *Pick*, from the Saxon, and *election*, from the Latin, picture the objects before one, with freedom and power to choose which he will; as, there were twelve horses, among which I could take my *pick*. A *choice*, *pick*, *election*, or *preference* is that which suits one best; an *alternative* is that to which one is restricted; a *resource*, that to which one is glad to betake oneself.

Antonyms:

compulsion,necessity.

AMASS.

Synonyms:

accumulate,collect,heap up,hoard up,store up.
aggregate, gather, hoard, pile up,

To *amass* is to bring together materials that make a mass, a great bulk or quantity. With some occasional exceptions, *accumulate* is applied to the more gradual, *amass* to the more rapid gathering of money or materials, *amass* referring to the general result or bulk, *accumulate* to the particular process or rate of gain. We say interest is *accumulated* (or *accumulates*) rather than is *amassed*; he *accumulated* a fortune in the course of years; he rapidly *amassed* a fortune by shrewd speculations. Goods or money for immediate distribution are said to be *collected* rather[39] than *amassed*. They may be *stored up* for a longer or shorter time; but to *hoard* is always with a view of permanent retention, generally selfish. *Aggregate* is now most commonly used of numbers and amounts; as, the expenses will *aggregate* a round million.

Antonyms:

disperse, dissipate, divide, parcel, portion, scatter, spend, squander, waste.

Prepositions:

Amass *for* oneself; *for* a purpose; *from* a distance; *with* great labor; *by* industry.

AMATEUR.

Synonyms:

connoisseur, critic, dilettante, novice, tyro.

Etymologically, the *amateur* is one who loves, the *connoisseur* one who knows. In usage, the term *amateur* is applied to one who pursues any study or art simply from the love of it; the word carries a natural implication of superficialness, tho marked excellence is at times attained by *amateurs*. A *connoisseur* is supposed to be so thoroughly informed regarding any art or work as to be able to criticize or select intelligently and authoritatively; there are many incompetent *critics*, but there can not, in the true sense, be an incompetent *connoisseur*. The *amateur* practises to some extent that in regard to which he may not be well informed; the *connoisseur* is well informed in regard to that which he may not practise at all. A *novice* or *tyro* may be a *professional*; an *amateur* never is; the *amateur* may be skilled and experienced as the *novice* or *tyro* never is. *Dilettante*, which had originally the sense of *amateur*, has to some extent come to denote one who is superficial, pretentious, and affected, whether in theory or practise.

Preposition:

An amateur *in* art.

AMAZEMENT.

Synonyms:

admiration,
astonishment,
awe,
bewilderment,
confusion,
perplexity,
surprise,
wonder.

Amazement and *astonishment* both express the momentary overwhelming of the mind by that which is beyond expectation. *Astonishment* especially affects the emotions, *amazement* the intellect. *Awe* is the yielding of the mind to something supremely[40] grand in character or formidable in power, and ranges from apprehension or dread to reverent worship. *Admiration* includes delight and regard. *Surprise* lies midway between *astonishment* and *amazement*, and usually respects matters of lighter consequence or such as are less startling in character. *Amazement* may be either pleasing or painful, as when induced by the grandeur of the mountains, or by the fury of the storm. We can say pleased *surprise*, but scarcely pleased *astonishment*. *Amazement* has in it something of *confusion* or *bewilderment*; but *confusion* and *bewilderment* may occur without *amazement*, as when a multitude of details require instant attention. *Astonishment* may be without *bewilderment* or *confusion*. *Wonder* is often pleasing, and may be continuous in view of that which surpasses our comprehension; as, the magnitude, order, and beauty of the heavens fill us with increasing *wonder*. Compare PERPLEXITY.

Antonyms:

anticipation,
calmness,
composure,
coolness,
expectation,
indifference,
preparation,
self-possession,
steadiness,
stoicism.

Preposition:

I was filled with amazement *at* such reckless daring.

AMBITION.

Synonyms:

aspiration,
competition,
emulation,
opposition,
rivalry.

Aspiration is the desire for excellence, pure and simple. *Ambition*, literally a going around to solicit votes, has primary reference to the award or approval of others, and is the eager desire of power, fame, or something deemed great and eminent, and viewed as a worthy prize. The prizes of *aspiration* are virtue, nobility, skill, or other high qualities. The prizes of *ambition* are advancement, fame, honor, and the like. There is a noble and wise or an ignoble, selfish, and harmful *ambition*. *Emulation* is not so much to win any excellence or success for itself as to equal or surpass other persons. There is such a thing as a noble *emulation*, when those we would equal or surpass are noble, and the means we would use worthy. But, at the highest, *emulation* is inferior as a motive to *aspiration*, which seeks the high quality or character for its own sake, not with reference to another. *Competition* is the striving for something that is sought by another at the same time. *Emulation* regards the abstract, *competition* the concrete; *rivalry* is the same in essential meaning with *competition*, but differs in the nature of the objects contested for, which, in[41] the case of *rivalry*, are usually of the nobler sort and less subject to direct gaging, measurement, and rule. We speak of *competition* in business, *emulation* in scholarship, *rivalry* in love, politics, etc.; *emulation* of excellence, success, achievement; *competition* for a prize; *rivalry* between persons or nations. *Competition* may be friendly, *rivalry* is commonly hostile. *Opposition* is becoming a frequent substitute for *competition* in business language; it implies that the competitor is an opponent and hinderer.

Antonyms:

carelessness,contentment,humility,indifference,satisfaction.

AMEND.

Synonyms:

advance,
ameliorate,
better,
cleanse,
correct,
emend,
improve,
make better,
meliorate,
mend,
mitigate,
purify,
rectify,
reform,
repair.

To *amend* is to change for the better by removing faults, errors, or defects, and always refers to that which at some point falls short of a standard of excellence. *Advance*, *better*, and *improve* may refer either to what is quite imperfect or to what has reached a high degree of excellence; we *advance* the kingdom of God, *improve* the minds of our children, *better* the morals of the people. But for matters below the point of ordinary approval we seldom use these words; we do not speak of *bettering* a wretched alley, or *improving* a foul sewer. There we use *cleanse*, *purify*, or similar words. We *correct* evils, *reform* abuses, *rectify* incidental conditions of evil or error; we *ameliorate* poverty and misery, which we can not wholly remove. We *mend* a tool, *repair* a building, *correct* proof; we *amend* character or conduct that is faulty, or a statement or law that is defective. A text, writing, or statement is *amended* by the author or by some adequate authority; it is often *emended* by conjecture. A motion is *amended* by the mover or by the assembly; a constitution is *amended* by the people; an ancient text is *emended* by a critic who believes that what seems to him the better reading is what the author wrote. Compare ALLEVIATE.

Antonyms:

aggravate,
blemish,
corrupt,
debase,
depress,
deteriorate,
harm,
impair,
injure,
mar,
spoil,
tarnish,
vitiate.

AMIABLE.

Synonyms:

agreeable,
attractive,
benignant,
harming,
engaging,
gentle,
good-natured,
kind,
lovable,
lovely,
loving,
pleasant,
pleasing,
sweet,
winning,
winsome.

Amiable combines the senses of *lovable* or *lovely* and *loving*; the *amiable* character has ready affection and kindliness for others, with the qualities that are adapted to win their love; *amiable* is a higher and stronger word than *good-natured* or *agreeable*. *Lovely* is often applied to externals; as, a *lovely* face. *Amiable* denotes a disposition desirous to cheer, please, and make happy. A selfish man of the world may have the art to be *agreeable*; a handsome, brilliant, and witty person may be *charming* or even *attractive*, while by no means *amiable*. The *engaging*, *winning*, and *winsome* add to amiability something of beauty, accomplishments, and grace. The *benignant* are calmly kind, as from a height and a distance. *Kind*, *good-natured* people may be coarse and rude, and so fail to be *agreeable* or *pleasing*; the really *amiable* are likely to avoid such faults by their earnest desire to please. The *good-natured* have an easy disposition to get along comfortably with every one in all circumstances. A *sweet* disposition is very sure to be *amiable*, the *loving* heart bringing out all that is *lovable* and *lovely* in character.

Antonyms:

acrimonious,
churlish,
crabbed,
cruel,
crusty,
disagreeable,
dogged,
gruff,
hateful,
ill-conditioned,
ill-humored,
ill-natured,
ill-tempered,
morose,
sour,
sullen,
surly,
unamiable,
unlovely,

AMID.

Synonyms:

amidst,
among,
amongst,
between,
betwixt,
in the midst of,
mingled with,
surrounded by.

Amid or *amidst* denotes *surrounded by*; *among* or *amongst* denotes *mingled with*. *Between* (archaic or poetic, *betwixt*) is said of two persons or objects, or of two groups of persons or objects. "Let there be no strife, I pray thee, *between* me and thee, and *between* my herdmen and thy herdmen," *Gen.* xiii, 9; the reference being to two bodies of herdmen. *Amid* denotes mere position; *among*, some active relation, as of companionship, hostility, etc. Lowell's "*Among* my Books" regards the books as companions; *amid* my books would suggest packing, storing, or some other incidental circumstance. We say *among* friends, or *among* enemies, *amidst* the woods, *amid* the shadows. *In the[43] midst* *of* may have merely the local meaning; as, I found myself *in the midst of* a crowd; or it may express even closer association than *among*; as, "I found myself *in the midst of* friends" suggests their pressing up on every side, oneself the central object; so, "where two or three are met together in my name, there am I *in the midst of* them," *Matt.* xviii, 20; in which case it would be feebler to say "*among* them," impossible to say "*amid* them," not so well to say "*amidst* them."

Antonyms:

afar from, away from, beyond, far from, outside, without.

AMPLIFY.

Synonyms:

augment,
develop,
dilate,
enlarge,
expand,
expatiate,
extend,
increase,
unfold,
widen.

Amplify is now rarely used in the sense of *increase*, to add material substance, bulk, volume, or the like; it is now almost wholly applied to discourse or writing, signifying to make fuller in statement, whether with or without adding matter of importance, as by stating fully what was before only implied, or by adding illustrations to make the meaning more readily apprehended, etc. The chief difficulty of very young writers is to *amplify*, to get beyond the bare curt statement by *developing*, *expanding*, *unfolding* the thought. The chief difficulty of those who have more material and experience is to condense sufficiently. So, in the early days of our literature *amplify* was used in the favorable sense; but at present this word and most kindred words are coming to share the derogatory meaning that has long attached to *expatiate*. We may *develop* a thought, *expand* an illustration, *extend* a discussion, *expatiate* on a hobby, *dilate* on something joyous or sad, *enlarge* a volume, *unfold* a scheme, *widen* the range of treatment.

Antonyms:

abbreviate,
abridge,
amputate,
"boil down,"
condense,
curtail,
cut down,
epitomize,
reduce,
retrench,
summarize,
sum up.

Prepositions:

To amplify *on* or *upon* the subject is needless. Amplify this matter *by* illustrations.

ANALOGY.

Synonyms:

affinity,
coincidence,
likeness,
parity,
relation,
resemblance,
similarity,
simile,

comparison,
proportion,
semblance,
similitude.

Analogy is specifically a *resemblance* of relations; a *resemblance*[44] that may be reasoned from, so that from the *likeness* in certain respects we may infer that other and perhaps deeper relations exist. *Affinity* is a mutual attraction with or without seeming likeness; as, the *affinity* of iron for oxygen. *Coincidence* is complete agreement in some one or more respects; there may be a *coincidence* in time of most dissimilar events. *Parity* of reasoning is said of an argument equally conclusive on subjects not strictly analogous. *Similitude* is a rhetorical comparison of one thing to another with which it has some points in common. *Resemblance* and *similarity* are external or superficial, and may involve no deeper relation; as, the *resemblance* of a cloud to a distant mountain. Compare ALLEGORY.

Antonyms:

disagreement,disproportion,dissimilarity,incongruity,unlikeness.

Prepositions:

The analogy *between* (or *of*) nature and revelation; the analogy *of* sound *to* light; a family has some analogy *with* (or *to*) a state.

ANGER.

Synonyms:

animosity,
choler,
displeasure,
exasperation,
fretfulness,
fury,
impatience,
indignation,
ire,
irritation,
offense,
passion,
peevishness,
pettishness,
petulance,
rage,
resentment,
temper,
vexation,
wrath.

Displeasure is the mildest and most general word. *Choler* and *ire*, now rare except in poetic or highly rhetorical language, denote a still, and the latter a persistent, *anger*. *Temper* used alone in the sense of *anger* is colloquial, tho we may correctly say a hot *temper*, a fiery *temper*, etc. *Passion*, tho a word of far wider application, may, in the singular, be employed to denote *anger*; "did put me in a towering *passion*," Shakespeare *Hamlet* act v, sc. 2. *Anger* is violent and vindictive emotion, which is sharp, sudden, and, like all violent passions, necessarily brief. *Resentment* (a feeling back or feeling over again) is persistent, the bitter brooding over injuries. *Exasperation*, a roughening, is a hot, superficial intensity of *anger*, demanding instant expression. *Rage* drives one beyond the bounds of prudence or discretion; *fury* is stronger yet, and sweeps one away into uncontrollable violence. *Anger* is personal and usually selfish, aroused by real or supposed wrong to oneself, and directed specifically and intensely against the person who is viewed as blameworthy. *Indignation* is impersonal and unselfish *displeasure* at unworthy acts (L. *indigna*), *i. e.*,[45] at wrong as wrong. Pure *indignation* is not followed by regret, and needs no repentance; it is also more self-controlled than *anger*. *Anger* is commonly a sin; *indignation* is often a duty. *Wrath* is deep and perhaps vengeful *displeasure*, as when the people of Nazareth were "filled with *wrath*" at the plain words of Jesus (*Luke* iv, 28); it may, however, simply express the culmination of righteous *indignation* without malice in a pure being; as, the *wrath* of God. *Impatience*, *fretfulness*, *irritation*, *peevishness*, *pettishness*, *petulance*, and *vexation* express the slighter forms of anger. *Irritation*, *petulance*, and *vexation* are temporary and for immediate cause. *Fretfulness*, *pettishness*, and *peevishness* are chronic states finding in any petty matter an occasion for their exercise. Compare ACRIMONY; ENMITY; HATRED.

Antonyms:

amiability,
charity,
forbearance,
gentleness,
leniency,
lenity,
long-suffering,
love,
mildness,
patience,
peace,
peaceableness,
peacefulness,
self-control,
self-restraint.

Prepositions:

Anger *at* the insult prompted the reply. Anger *toward* the offender exaggerates the offense.

ANIMAL.

Synonyms:

beast,
brute,
fauna,
living creature,
living organism,
sentient being.

An *animal* is a *sentient being*, distinct from inanimate matter and from vegetable life on the one side and from mental and spiritual existence on the other. Thus man is properly classified as an *animal*. But because the animal life is the lowest and rudest part of his being and that which he shares with inferior *creatures*, to call any individual man an *animal* is to imply that the animal nature has undue supremacy, and so is deep condemnation or utter insult. The *brute* is the *animal* viewed as dull to all finer feeling; the *beast* is looked upon as a being of appetites. To call a man a *brute* is to imply that he is unfeeling and cruel; to call him a *beast* is to indicate that he is vilely sensual. We speak of the cruel father as a *brute* to his children; of the drunkard as making a *beast* of himself. So firmly are these figurative senses established that we now incline to avoid applying *brute* or *beast* to any creature, as a horse or dog, for which we have any affection; we prefer in such cases the word *animal*. *Creature* is a word of wide signification, including all the things that God[46] has created, whether inanimate objects, plants, animals, angels, or men. The *animals* of a region are collectively called its *fauna*.

Antonyms:

angel,
inanimate object,
man,
matter,
mind,
mineral,
soul,
spirit,
substance (material),
vegetable.

ANNOUNCE.

Synonyms:

advertise,
circulate,
communicate,
declare,
enunciate,
give notice (of),
give out,
herald,
make known,
notify,
proclaim,
promulgate,
propound,
publish,
report,
reveal,
say,
spread abroad,
state,
tell.

To *announce* is to give intelligence of in some formal or public way. We may *announce* that which has occurred or that which is to occur, tho the word is chiefly used in the anticipative sense; we *announce* a book when it is in press, a guest when he arrives. We *advertise* our business, *communicate* our intentions, *enunciate* our views; we *notify* an individual, *give notice* to the public. *Declare* has often an authoritative force; to *declare* war is to cause war to be, where before there may have been only hostilities; we say *declare* war, *proclaim* peace. We *propound* a question or an argument, *promulgate* the views of a sect or party, or the decision of a court, etc. We *report* an interview, *reveal* a secret, *herald* the coming of some distinguished person or great event. *Publish*, in popular usage, is becoming closely restricted to the sense of issuing through the press; we *announce* a book that is to be *published*.

Antonyms:

bury,
conceal,
cover (up),
hide,
hush,
keep back,
keep secret,
secrete,
suppress,
withhold.

Prepositions:

The event was announced *to* the family *by* telegraph.

ANSWER.

Synonyms:

rejoinder,
repartee,
reply,
response,
retort.

A verbal *answer* is a return of words to something that seems to call for them, and is made to a charge as well as to a question; an *answer* may be even made to an unspoken implication or manifestation; see *Luke* v, 22. In a wider sense, anything said or done in return for some word, action, or suggestion of another may be called an *answer*. The blow of an enraged man, the whinny of a horse, the howling of the wind, the movement of a bolt in a lock, an echo, etc., may each be an *answer* to some word[47] or movement. A *reply* is an unfolding, and ordinarily implies thought and intelligence. A *rejoinder* is strictly an *answer* to a *reply*, tho often used in the general sense of *answer*, but always with the implication of something more or less controversial or opposed, tho lacking the conclusiveness implied in *answer*; an *answer*, in the full sense, to a charge, an argument, or an objection is adequate, and finally refutes and disposes of it; a *reply* or *rejoinder* may be quite inadequate, so that one may say, "This *reply* is not an *answer*;" "I am ready with an *answer*" means far more than "I am ready with a *reply*." A *response* is accordant or harmonious, designed or adapted to carry on the thought of the words that called it forth, as the *responses* in a liturgical service, or to meet the wish of him who seeks it; as, the appeal for aid met a prompt and hearty *response*. *Repartee* is a prompt, witty, and commonly good-natured *answer* to some argument or attack; a *retort* may also be witty, but is severe and may be even savage in its intensity.

Prepositions:

An answer *in* writing, or *by* word of mouth, *to* the question.

ANTICIPATE.

Synonyms:

apprehend,
expect,
forecast,
foretaste,
hope,
look forward to.

To *anticipate* may be either to take before in fact or to take before in thought; in the former sense it is allied with *prevent*; in the latter, with the synonyms above given. This is coming to be the prevalent and favorite use. We *expect* that which we have good reason to believe will happen; as, a boy *expects* to grow to manhood. We *hope* for that which we much desire and somewhat *expect*. We *apprehend* what we both *expect* and fear. *Anticipate* is commonly used now, like *foretaste*, of that which we *expect* both with confidence and pleasure. In this use it is a stronger word than *hope*, where often "the wish is father to the thought." I *hope* for a visit from my friend, tho I have no word from him; I *expect* it when he writes that he is coming; and as the time draws near I *anticipate* it with pleasure. Compare ABIDE; PREVENT.

Antonyms:

despair of, distrust, doubt, dread, fear, recall, recollect, remember.

---

[48]

ANTICIPATION.

Synonyms:

antepast,
apprehension,
expectancy,
expectation,
foreboding,
forecast,
foresight,
foretaste,
forethought,
hope,
presentiment,
prevision.

Expectation may be either of good or evil; *presentiment* almost always, *apprehension* and *foreboding* always, of evil; *anticipation* and *antepast*, commonly of good. Thus, we speak of the pleasures of *anticipation*. A *foretaste* may be of good or evil, and is more than imaginary; it is a part actually received in advance. *Foresight* and *forethought* prevent future evil and secure future good by timely looking forward, and acting upon what is foreseen. Compare ANTICIPATE.

Antonyms:

astonishment,
consummation,
despair,
doubt,
dread,
enjoyment,
fear,
realization,
surprise,
wonder.

ANTIPATHY.

Synonyms:

abhorrence,
antagonism,
aversion,
detestation,
disgust,
dislike,
distaste,
hatred,
hostility,
opposition,
repugnance,
repulsion,
uncongeniality.

Antipathy, *repugnance*, and *uncongeniality* are instinctive; other forms of *dislike* may be acquired or cherished for cause. *Uncongeniality* is negative, a want of touch or sympathy. An *antipathy* to a person or thing is an instinctive recoil from connection or association with that person or thing, and may be physical or mental, or both. *Antagonism* may result from the necessity of circumstances; *opposition* may spring from conflicting views or interests; *abhorrence* and *detestation* may be the result of religious and moral training; *distaste* and *disgust* may be acquired; *aversion* is a deep and permanent *dislike*. A natural *antipathy* may give rise to *opposition* which may result in *hatred* and *hostility*. Compare ACRIMONY; ANGER; ENMITY; HATRED.

Antonyms:

affinity,
agreement,
attraction,
congeniality,
fellow-feeling,
harmony,
kindliness,
regard,
sympathy.

Prepositions:

Antipathy *to* (less frequently *for* or *against*) a person or thing; antipathy *between* or *betwixt* two persons or things.

ANTIQUE.

Synonyms:

ancient,
antiquated,
old-fashioned,
quaint,
superannuated.

Antique refers to an *ancient*, *antiquated* to a discarded style.[49] *Antique* is that which is either *ancient* in fact or *ancient* in style. The reference is to the style rather than to the age. We can speak of the *antique* architecture of a church just built. The difference between *antiquated* and *antique* is not in the age, for a Puritan style may be scorned as *antiquated*, while a Roman or Renaissance style may be prized as *antique*. The *antiquated* is not so much out of date as out of vogue. *Old-fashioned* may be used approvingly or contemptuously. In the latter case it becomes a synonym for *antiquated*; in the good sense it approaches the meaning of *antique*, but indicates less duration. We call a wide New England fireplace *old-fashioned*; a coin of the Cæsars, *antique*. *Quaint* combines the idea of age with a pleasing oddity; as, a *quaint* gambrel-roofed house. *Antiquated* is sometimes used of persons in a sense akin to *superannuated*. The *antiquated* person is out of style and out of sympathy with the present generation by reason of age; the *superannuated* person is incapacitated for present activities by reason of age. Compare OLD.

Antonyms:

fashionable, fresh, modern, modish, new, recent, stylish.

ANXIETY.

Synonyms:

anguish,
apprehension,
care,
concern,
disquiet,
disturbance,
dread,
fear,
foreboding,
fretfulness,
fretting,
misgiving,
perplexity,
solicitude,
trouble,
worry.

Anxiety is, according to its derivation, a choking *disquiet*, akin to *anguish*; *anxiety* is mental; *anguish* may be mental or physical; *anguish* is in regard to the known, *anxiety* in regard to the unknown; *anguish* is because of what has happened, *anxiety* because of what may happen. *Anxiety* refers to some future event, always suggesting hopeful possibility, and thus differing from *apprehension*, *fear*, *dread*, *foreboding*, *terror*, all of which may be quite despairing. In matters within our reach, *anxiety* always stirs the question whether something can not be done, and is thus a valuable spur to doing; in this respect it is allied to *care*. *Foreboding*, *dread*, etc., commonly incapacitate for all helpful thought or endeavor. *Worry* is a more petty, restless, and manifest *anxiety*; *anxiety* may be quiet and silent; *worry* is communicated to all around. *Solicitude* is a milder *anxiety*.

Fretting or *fretfulness* is a weak complaining without thought of accomplishing or changing anything, but merely as a relief to one's own *disquiet*. *Perplexity* often involves *anxiety*, but may be quite free from it.[50] A student may be *perplexed* regarding a translation, yet, if he has time enough, not at all anxious regarding it.

Antonyms:

apathy,
assurance,
calmness,
carelessness,
confidence,
ease,
light-heartedness,
nonchalance,
satisfaction,
tranquillity.

Prepositions:

Anxiety *for* a friend's return; anxiety *about*, *in regard to*, or *concerning* the future.

APATHY.

Synonyms:

calmness,
composure,
immobility,
impassibility,
indifference,
insensibility,
lethargy,
phlegm,
quietness,
quietude,
sluggishness,
stillness,
stoicism,
tranquillity,
unconcern,
unfeelingness.

Apathy, according to its Greek derivation, is a simple absence of feeling or emotion. There are persons to whom a certain degree of *apathy* is natural, an innate *sluggishness* of the emotional nature. In the *apathy* of despair, a person gives up, without resistance or sensibility, to what he has fiercely struggled to avoid. While *apathy* is want of feeling, *calmness* is feeling without agitation. *Calmness* is the result of strength, courage, or trust; *apathy* is the result of dulness or weakness. *Composure* is freedom from agitation or disturbance, resulting ordinarily from force of will, or from perfect confidence in one's own resources. *Impassibility* is a philosophical term applied to the Deity, as infinitely exalted above all stir of passion or emotion. *Unfeelingness*, the Saxon word that should be the exact equivalent of *apathy*, really means more, a lack of the feeling one ought to have, a censurable hardness of heart. *Indifference* and *insensibility* designate the absence of feeling toward certain persons or things; *apathy*, entire absence of feeling. *Indifference* is a want of interest; *insensibility* is a want of feeling; *unconcern* has reference to consequences. We speak of *insensibility* of heart, *immobility* of countenance. *Stoicism* is an intentional suppression of feeling and deadening of sensibilities, while *apathy* is involuntary. Compare CALM; REST; STUPOR.

Antonyms:

agitation,
alarm,
anxiety,
care,
disturbance,
eagerness,
emotion,
excitement,
feeling,
frenzy,
fury,
passion,
sensibility,
sensitiveness,
storm,
susceptibility,
sympathy,
turbulence,
vehemence,
violence.

distress,

Prepositions:

The apathy *of* monastic life; apathy *toward* good.

---

[51]

APIECE.

Synonyms:

distributively,
each,
individually,
separately,
severally.

There is no discernible difference in sense between so much *apiece* and so much *each*; the former is the more common and popular, the latter the more elegant expression. *Distributively* is generally used of numbers and abstract relations. *Individually* emphasizes the independence of the individuals; *separately* and *severally* still more emphatically hold them apart. The signers of a note may become jointly and *severally* responsible, that is, *each* liable for the entire amount, as if he had signed it alone. Witnesses are often brought *separately* into court, in order that no one may be influenced by the testimony of another. If a company of laborers demand a dollar *apiece*, that is a demand that *each* shall receive that sum; if they *individually* demand a dollar, *each* individual makes the demand.

Antonyms:

accumulatively,
collectively,
confusedly,
en masse,
indiscriminately,
synthetically,
together,
unitedly.

APOLOGY.

Synonyms:

acknowledgment,
confession,
defense,
exculpation,
excuse,
justification,
plea,
vindication.

All these words express one's answer to a charge of wrong or error that is or might be made. *Apology* has undergone a remarkable change from its old sense of a valiant *defense*—as in Justin Martyr's *Apologies* for the Christian faith—to its present meaning of humble *confession* and concession. He who offers an *apology* admits himself, at least technically and seemingly, in the wrong. An *apology* is for what one has done or left undone; an *excuse* may be for what one proposes to do or leave undone as well; as, one sends beforehand his *excuse* for not accepting an invitation; if he should fail either to be present or to excuse himself, an *apology* would be in order. An *excuse* for a fault is an attempt at partial justification; as, one alleges haste as an *excuse* for carelessness. *Confession* is a full *acknowledgment* of wrong, generally of a grave wrong, with or without *apology* or *excuse*. *Plea* ranges in sense from a prayer for favor or pardon to an attempt at full *vindication*. *Defense*, *exculpation*, *justification*, and *vindication* are more properly antonyms than synonyms of *apology* in its modern sense, and should be so given, but for[52] their connection with its historic usage. Compare CONFESS; DEFENSE.

Antonyms:

accusation,charge, condemnation,injury,offense,
censure, complaint,imputation, insult, wrong.

Prepositions:

An apology *to* the guest *for* the oversight would be fitting.

APPARENT.

Synonyms:

likely,presumable,probable,seeming.

The *apparent* is that which appears; the word has two contrasted senses, either of that which is manifest, visible, certain, or of that which merely seems to be and may be very different from what is; as, the *apparent* motion of the sun around the earth. *Apparent* kindness casts a doubt on the reality of the kindness; *apparent* neglect implies that more care and pains may have been bestowed than we are aware of. *Presumable* implies that a thing may be reasonably supposed beforehand without any full knowledge of the facts. *Probable* implies that we know facts enough to make us moderately confident of it. *Seeming* expresses great doubt of the reality; *seeming* innocence comes very near in meaning to *probable* guilt. *Apparent* indicates less assurance than *probable*, and more than *seeming*. A man's *probable* intent we believe will prove to be his real intent; his *seeming* intent we believe to be a sham; his *apparent* intent may be the true one, tho we have not yet evidence on which to pronounce with certainty or even with confidence. *Likely* is a word with a wide range of usage, but always implying the belief that the thing is, or will be, true; it is often used with the infinitive, as the other words of this list can not be; as, it is *likely* to happen. Compare EVIDENT.

Antonyms:

doubtful,dubious,improbable,unimaginable,unlikely.

Prepositions:

(When *apparent* is used in the sense of evident): His guilt is apparent *in* every act *to* all observers.

APPEAR.

Synonyms:

have the appearance or semblance,look,seem.

Appear and *look* refer to what manifests itself to the senses; to a semblance or probability presented directly to the mind. *Seem*[53] applies to what is manifest to the mind on reflection. It suddenly *appears* to me that there is smoke in the distance; as I watch, it *looks* like a fire; from my knowledge of the locality and observation of particulars, it *seems* to me a farmhouse must be burning.

Antonyms:

be,be certain, real, *or* true,be the fact,exist.

Prepositions:

Appear *at* the front; *among* the first; *on* or *upon* the surface; *to* the eye; *in* evidence, *in* print; *from* reports; *near* the harbor; *before* the public; *in* appropriate dress; *with* the insignia of his rank; *above* the clouds; *below* the surface; *under* the lee; *over* the sea; *through* the mist; appear *for*, *in behalf of*, or *against* one in court.

APPENDAGE.

Synonyms:

accessory,
accompaniment,
addendum,
addition,
adjunct,
appendix,
appurtenance,
attachment,
auxiliary,
concomitant,
extension,
supplement.

An *adjunct* (something joined to) constitutes no real part of the thing or system to which it is joined, tho perhaps a valuable *addition*; an *appendage* is commonly a real, tho not an essential or necessary part of that with which it is connected; an *appurtenance* belongs subordinately to something by which it is employed, especially as an instrument to accomplish some purpose. A horse's tail is at once an ornamental *appendage* and a useful *appurtenance*; we could not call it an *adjunct*, tho we might use that word of his iron shoes. An *attachment* in machinery is some mechanism that can be brought into optional connection with the principal movement; a hemmer is a valuable *attachment* of a sewing-machine. An *extension*, as of a railroad or of a franchise, carries out further something already existing. We add an *appendix* to a book, to contain names, dates, lists, etc., which would encumber the text; we add a *supplement* to supply omissions, as, for instance, to bring it up to date. An *appendix* may be called an *addendum*; but *addendum* may be used of a brief note, which would not be dignified by the name of *appendix*; such notes are often grouped as *addenda*. An *addition* might be matter interwoven in the body of the work, an index, plates, editorial notes, etc., which might be valuable *additions*, but not[54] within the meaning of *appendix* or *supplement*. Compare ACCESSORY; AUXILIARY.

Antonyms:

main body,original,total,whole.

Prepositions:

That which is thought of as added we call an appendage *to*; that which is looked upon as an integral part is called an appendage *of*.

APPETITE.

Synonyms:

appetency,
craving,
desire,
disposition,
impulse,
inclination,
liking,
longing,
lust,
passion,
proclivity,
proneness,
propensity,
relish,
thirst,
zest.

Appetite is used only of the demands of the physical system, unless otherwise expressly stated, as when we say an *appetite* for knowledge; *passion* includes all excitable impulses of our nature, as anger, fear, love, hatred, etc. *Appetite* is thus more animal than *passion*; and when we speak of *passions* and *appetites* as conjoined or contrasted, we think of the *appetites* as wholly physical and of the *passions* as, in part at least, mental or spiritual. We say an *appetite* for food, a *passion* for fame. Compare DESIRE.

Antonyms:

antipathy,
aversion,
detestation,
disgust,
dislike,
disrelish,
distaste,
hatred,
indifference,
loathing,
repugnance,
repulsion.

Compare ANTIPATHY.

Preposition:

He had an insatiable appetite *for* the marvellous.

APPORTION.

Synonyms:

allot,
appoint,
appropriate,
assign,
deal,
dispense,
distribute,
divide,
grant,
share.

To *allot* or *assign* may be to make an arbitrary division; the same is true of *distribute* or *divide*. That which is *apportioned* is given by some fixed rule, which is meant to be uniform and fair; as, representatives are *apportioned* among the States according to population. To *dispense* is to give out freely; as, the sun *dispenses* light and heat. A thing is *appropriated* to or for a specific purpose (to which it thus becomes *proper*, in the original sense of being its own); money *appropriated* by Congress for one purpose can not be expended for any other. One may *apportion* what he only holds in trust; he *shares* what is his own. Compare ALLOT.[55]

Antonyms:

cling to,
collect,
consolidate,
divide arbitrarily,
gather together,
keep together,
receive,
retain.

Prepositions:

Apportion *to* each a fair amount; apportion the property *among* the heirs, *between* two claimants; apportion *according to* numbers, etc.

APPROXIMATION.

Synonyms:

approach,
contiguity,
likeness,
nearness,
neighborhood,
propinquity,
resemblance,
similarity.

In mathematics, *approximation* is not guesswork, not looseness, and not error. The process of *approximation* is as exact and correct at every point as that by which an absolute result is secured; the result only fails of exactness because of some inherent difficulty in the problem. The attempt to "square the circle" gives only an *approximate* result, because of the impossibility of expressing the circumference in terms of the radius. But the limits of error on either side are known, and the *approximation* has practical value. Outside of mathematics, the correct use of *approximation* (and the kindred words *approximate* and *approximately*) is to express as near an approach to accuracy and certainty as the conditions of human thought or action in any given case make possible. *Resemblance* and *similarity* may be but superficial and apparent; *approximation* is real. *Approach* is a relative term, indicating that one has come nearer than before, tho the distance may yet be considerable; an *approximation* brings one really near. *Nearness*, *neighborhood*, and *propinquity* are commonly used of place; *approximation*, of mathematical calculations and abstract reasoning; we speak of *approach* to the shore, *nearness* to the town, *approximation* to the truth.

Antonyms:

difference,distance,error,remoteness,unlikeness,variation.

Prepositions:

The approximation *of* the vegetable *to* the animal type.

ARMS.

Synonyms:

accouterments,armor,harness,mail,weapons.

Arms are implements of attack; *armor* is a defensive covering. The knight put on his *armor*; he grasped his *arms*. With the disuse of defensive *armor* the word has practically gone out of military use, but it is still employed in the navy, where the distinction[56] is clearly preserved; any vessel provided with cannon is an *armed* vessel; an *armored* ship is an ironclad. Anything that can be wielded in fight may become a *weapon*, as a pitchfork or a paving-stone; *arms* are especially made and designed for conflict.

ARMY.

Synonyms:

armament,
array,
force,
forces,
host,
legions,
military,
multitude,
phalanx,
soldiers,
soldiery,
troops.

An *army* is an organized body of men armed for war, ordinarily considerable in numbers, always independent in organization so far as not to be a constituent part of any other command. Organization, unity, and independence, rather than numbers are the essentials of an *army*. We speak of the invading *army* of Cortes or Pizarro, tho either body was contemptible in numbers from a modern military standpoint. We may have a little *army*, a large *army*, or a vast *army*. *Host* is used for any vast and orderly assemblage; as, the stars are called the heavenly *host*. *Multitude* expresses number without order or organization; a *multitude* of armed men is not an *army*, but a mob. *Legion* (from the Latin) and *phalanx* (from the Greek) are applied by a kind of poetic license to modern *forces*; the plural *legions* is preferred to the singular. *Military* is a general word for land-*forces*; the *military* may include all the armed *soldiery* of a nation, or the term may be applied to any small detached company, as at a fort, in distinction from civilians. Any organized body of men by whom the law or will of a people is executed is a *force*; the word is a usual term for the police of any locality.

ARRAIGN.

Synonyms:

accuse,
censure,
charge,
cite,
impeach,
indict,
prosecute,
summon.

Arraign is an official word; a person accused of crime is *arraigned* when he is formally called into court, the indictment read to him, and the demand made of him to plead guilty or not guilty; in more extended use, to *arraign* is to call in question for fault in any formal, public, or official way. One may *charge* another with any fault, great or trifling, privately or publicly, formally or informally. *Accuse* is stronger than *charge*, suggesting more of the formal and criminal; a person may *charge* a[57] friend with unkindness or neglect; he may *accuse* a tramp of stealing. *Censure* carries the idea of fault, but not of crime; it may be private and individual, or public and official. A judge, a president, or other officer of high rank may be *impeached* before the appropriate tribunal for high crimes; the veracity of a witness may be *impeached* by damaging evidence. A person of the highest character may be *summoned* as defendant in a civil suit; or he may be *cited* to answer as administrator, etc. *Indict* and *arraign* apply strictly to criminal proceedings, and only an alleged criminal is *indicted* or *arraigned*. One is *indicted* by the grand jury, and *arraigned* before the appropriate court.

Antonyms:

acquit,
condone,
discharge,
excuse,
exonerate,
forgive,
overlook,
pardon,
release,
set free.

Prepositions:

Arraign *at* the bar, *before* the tribunal, *of* or *for* a crime; *on* or *upon* an indictment.

ARRAY.

Synonyms:

army,
arrangement,
battle array,
collection,
disposition,
exhibition,
line of battle,
order,
order of battle,
parade,
show,
sight.

The phrase *battle array* or *array of battle* is archaic and poetic; we now say in *line* or *order of battle*. The *parade* is for *exhibition* and oversight, and partial rehearsal of military manual and maneuvers. *Array* refers to a continuous *arrangement* of men, so that all may be seen or reviewed at once. This is practically impossible with the vast *armies* of our day. We say rather the *disposition* of troops, which expresses their location so as to sustain and support, though unable to see or readily communicate with each other. Compare DRESS.

ARREST.

Synonyms:

apprehend,
capture,
catch,
detain,
hold,
make prisoner,
restrain,
secure,
seize,
stop,
take into custody,
take prisoner.

The legal term *arrest* carries always the implication of a legal offense; this is true even of *arresting* for debt. But one may be *detained* by process of law when no offense is alleged against him, as in the case of a witness who is *held* in a house of detention till a case comes to trial. One may be *restrained* of his liberty without arrest, as in an insane asylum; an individual or corporation[58] may be *restrained* by injunction from selling certain property. In case of an arrest, an officer may *secure* his prisoner by fetters, by a locked door, or other means effectually to prevent escape. *Capture* is commonly used of seizure by armed force; as, to *capture* a ship, a fort, etc. Compare HINDER; OBSTRUCT.

Antonyms:

discharge,dismiss,free,liberate,release,set free.

Prepositions:

Arrested *for* crime, *on* suspicion, *by* the sheriff; *on*, *upon*, or *by virtue of* a warrant; *on* final process; *in* execution.

ARTIFICE.

Synonyms:

art,
blind,
cheat,
contrivance,
craft,
cunning,
device,
dodge,
finesse,
fraud,
guile,
imposture,
invention,
machination,
maneuver,
ruse,
stratagem,
subterfuge,
trick,
wile.

A *contrivance* or *device* may be either good or bad. A *cheat* is a mean advantage in a bargain; a *fraud*, any form of covert robbery or injury. *Imposture* is a deceitful *contrivance* for securing charity, credit, or consideration. A *stratagem* or *maneuver* may be of the good against the bad, as it were a skilful movement of war. A *wile* is usually but not necessarily evil.

E'en children followed with endearing *wile*.

Goldsmith *Deserted Village*, l. 184.

A *trick* is often low, injurious, and malicious; we say a mean *trick*; the word is sometimes used playfully with less than its full meaning. A *ruse* or a *blind* may be quite innocent and harmless. An *artifice* is a carefully and delicately prepared *contrivance* for doing indirectly what one could not well do directly. A *device* is something studied out for promoting an end, as in a mechanism; the word is used of indirect action, often, but not necessarily directed to an evil, selfish, or injurious end. *Finesse* is especially subtle *contrivance*, delicate *artifice*, whether for good or evil. Compare FRAUD.

Antonyms:

artlessness, fairness, guilelessness, ingenuousness, openness, sincerity,
candor, frankness, honesty, innocence, simplicity, truth.

ARTIST.

Synonyms:

artificer, artisan, mechanic, operative, workman.

Artist, *artificer* and *artisan* are all from the root of *art*, but *artist* holds to the esthetic sense, while *artificer* and *artisan* follow the mechanical or industrial sense of the word (see ART under SCIENCE).[59] *Artist* thus comes only into accidental association with the other words of this group, not being a synonym of any one of them and having practically no synonym of its own. The work of the *artist* is creative; that of the *artisan* mechanical. The man who paints a beautiful picture is an *artist*; the man who makes pin-heads all day is an *artisan*. The *artificer* is between the two, putting more thought, intelligence, and taste into his work than the *artisan*, but less of the idealizing, creative power than the *artist*. The sculptor, shaping his model in clay, is *artificer*, as well as *artist*; patient *artisans*, working simply by rule and scale, chisel and polish the stone. The man who constructs anything by mere routine and rule is a *mechanic*. The man whose work involves thought, skill, and constructive power is an *artificer*. The hod-carrier is a *laborer*; the bricklayer is a *mechanic*; the master mason is an *artificer*. Those who operate machinery nearly self-acting are *operatives*.

ASK.

Synonyms:

beg, crave, entreat, petition, request, solicit, beseech, demand, implore, pray, require, supplicate.

One *asks* what he feels that he may fairly claim and reasonably expect; "if a son shall *ask* bread of any of you that is a father," *Luke* xi, 11; he *begs* for that to which he advances no claim but pity. *Demand* is a determined and often an arrogant word; one may rightfully *demand* what is his own or his due, when it is withheld or denied; or he may wrongfully *demand* that to which he has no claim but power. *Require* is less arrogant and obtrusive than *demand*, but is exceedingly strenuous; as, the court *requires* the attendance of witnesses. *Entreat* implies a special earnestness of asking, and *beseech*, a still added and more humble intensity; *beseech* was formerly often used as a polite intensive for *beg* or *pray*; as, I *beseech* you to tell me. To *implore* is to *ask* with weeping and lamentation; to *supplicate* is to *ask*, as it were, on bended knees. *Crave* and *request* are somewhat formal terms; *crave* has almost disappeared from conversation; *request* would seem distant between parent and child. *Pray* is now used chiefly of address to the Supreme Being; *petition* is used of written request to persons in authority; as, to *petition* the legislature to pass an act, or the governor to pardon an offender.

Antonyms:

claim, command, deny, enforce, exact, extort, insist, refuse, reject.

[60]

Prepositions:

Ask a person *for* a thing; ask a thing *of* or *from* a person; ask *after* or *about* one's health, welfare, friends, etc.

ASSOCIATE.

Synonyms:

accomplice,
ally,
chum,
coadjutor,
colleague,
companion,
comrade,
confederate,
consort,
fellow,
friend,
helpmate,
mate,
partner,
peer.

An *associate* as used officially implies a chief, leader, or principal, to whom the *associate* is not fully equal in rank. *Associate* is popularly used of mere friendly relations, but oftener implies some work, enterprise, or pursuit in which the associated persons unite. We rarely speak of *associates* in crime or wrong, using *confederates* or *accomplices* instead. *Companion* gives itself with equal readiness to the good or evil sense, as also does *comrade*. One may be a *companion* in travel who would not readily become an *associate* at home. A lady advertises for a *companion*; she would not advertise for an *associate*. *Peer* implies equality rather than companionship; as, a jury of his *peers*. *Comrade* expresses more fellowship and good feeling than *companion*. *Fellow* has almost gone out of use in this connection, except in an inferior or patronizing sense. *Consort* is a word of equality and dignity, as applied especially to the marriage relation. Compare ACCESSORY; ACQUAINTANCE; FRIENDSHIP.

Antonyms:

antagonist,enemy,foe,hinderer,opponent,opposer,rival,stranger.

Prepositions:

These were the associates *of* the leader *in* the enterprise.

ASSOCIATION.

Synonyms:

alliance,
club,
community,
companionship,
company,
confederacy,
confederation,
conjunction,
connection,
corporation,
familiarity,
federation,
fellowship,
fraternity,
friendship,
lodge,
participation,
partnership,
society,
union.

We speak of an *alliance* of nations, a *club* of pleasure-seekers, a *community* of Shakers, a *company* of soldiers or of friends, a *confederacy*, *confederation*, *federation*, or *union* of separate states under one general government, a *partnership* or *company* of business men, a *conjunction* of planets. The whole body of Freemasons constitute a *fraternity*; one of their local organizations is called a *lodge*. A *corporation* or *company* is formed for[61] purposes of business; an *association* or *society* (tho also incorporated) is for learning, literature, benevolence, religion, etc. Compare ASSOCIATE; ACQUAINTANCE; FRIENDSHIP.

Antonyms:

disintegration,independence,isolation,separation,solitude.

Prepositions:

An association *of* scholars *for* the advancement of knowledge; association *with* the good is ennobling.

ASSUME.

Synonyms:

accept,
affect,
arrogate,
claim,
postulate,
presume,
put on,
take,

appropriate, feign, pretend, usurp.

The distinctive idea of *assume* is to *take* by one's own independent volition, whether well or ill, rightfully or wrongfully. One may *accept* an obligation or *assume* an authority that properly belongs to him, or he may *assume* an obligation or indebtedness that could not be required of him. He may *assume* authority or office that is his right; if he *assumes* what does not belong to him, he is said to *arrogate* or *usurp* it. A man may *usurp* the substance of power in the most unpretending way; what he *arrogates* to himself he *assumes* with a haughty and overbearing manner. One *assumes* the robes or insignia of office by *putting* them *on*, with or without right. If he *takes* to himself the credit and appearance of qualities he does not possess, he is said to *affect* or *feign*, or to *pretend* to, the character he thus *assumes*. What a debater *postulates* he openly states and *takes* for granted without proof; what he *assumes* he may take for granted without mention. A favorite trick of the sophist is quietly to *assume* as true what would at once be challenged if expressly stated. What a man *claims* he asserts his right to *take*; what he *assumes* he *takes*.

ASSURANCE.

Synonyms:

arrogance,
assertion,
assumption,
boldness,
confidence,
effrontery,
impudence,
presumption,
self-assertion,
self-confidence,
self-reliance,
trust.

Assurance may have the good sense of a high, sustained *confidence* and *trust*; as, the saint's *assurance* of heaven. *Confidence* is founded upon reasons; *assurance* is largely a matter of feeling. In the bad sense, *assurance* is a vicious courage, with belief of one's ability to outwit or defy others; the hardened criminal is[62] remarkable for habitual *assurance*. For the calm conviction of one's own rectitude and ability, *self-confidence* is a better word than *assurance*; *self-reliance* expresses confidence in one's own resources, independently of others' aid. In the bad sense *assurance* is less gross than *impudence*, which is (according to its etymology) a shameless *boldness*. *Assurance* is in act or manner; *impudence* may be in speech. *Effrontery* is *impudence* defiantly displayed. Compare FAITH; PRIDE.

Antonyms:

bashfulness,
confusion,
consternation,
dismay,
distrust,
doubt,
hesitancy,
misgiving,
shyness,
timidity.

ASTUTE.

Synonyms:

acute, discerning, penetrating, sharp,

clear-sighted,
crafty,
cunning,
discriminating,
keen,
knowing,
penetrative,
perspicacious,
sagacious,
shrewd,
subtile,
subtle.

Acute, from the Latin, suggests the sharpness of the needle's point; *keen*, from the Saxon, the sharpness of the cutting edge. *Astute*, from the Latin, with the original sense of *cunning* has come to have a meaning that combines the sense of *acute* or *keen* with that of *sagacious*. The *astute* mind adds to *acuteness* and *keenness* an element of cunning or finesse. The *astute* debater leads his opponents into a snare by getting them to make admissions, or urge arguments, of which he sees a result that they do not perceive. The *acute*, *keen* intellect may take no special advantage of these qualities; the *astute* mind has always a point to make for itself, and seldom fails to make it. A *knowing* look, air, etc., in general indicates practical knowledge with a touch of shrewdness, and perhaps of cunning; in regard to some special matter, it indicates the possession of reserved knowledge which the person could impart if he chose. *Knowing* has often a slightly invidious sense. We speak of a *knowing* rascal, meaning *cunning* or *shrewd* within a narrow range, but of a *knowing* horse or dog, in the sense of *sagacious*, implying that he knows more than could be expected of such an animal. A *knowing* child has more knowledge than would be looked for at his years, perhaps more than is quite desirable, while to speak of a child as *intelligent* is altogether complimentary.

Antonyms:

blind,
dull,
idiotic,
imbecile,
shallow,
short-sighted,
stolid,
stupid,
undiscerning,
unintelligent.

---

[63]

ATTACHMENT.

Synonyms:

adherence,
adhesion,
affection,
devotion,
esteem,
estimation,
friendship,
inclination,
love,
regard,
tenderness,
union.

An *attachment* is a feeling that binds a person by ties of heart to another person or thing; we speak of a man's *adherence* to his purpose, his *adhesion* to his party, or to anything to which he clings tenaciously, tho with no special tenderness; of his *attachment* to his church, to the old homestead, or to any persons or objects that he may hold dear. *Affection* expresses more warmth of feeling; we should not speak of a mother's *attachment* to her babe, but of her *affection* or of her *devotion*. *Inclination* expresses simply a tendency, which may be good or bad, yielded to or overcome; as, an *inclination* to study; an *inclination* to drink. *Regard* is more distant than *affection* or *attachment*, but closer and warmer than *esteem*; we speak of high *esteem*, kind *regard*. Compare ACQUAINTANCE; APPENDAGE; FRIENDSHIP; LOVE; UNION.

Antonyms:

alienation,
animosity,
antipathy,
aversion,
coolness,
dislike,
distance,
divorce,
enmity,
estrangement,
indifference,
opposition,
repugnance,
separation,
severance.

Prepositions:

Attachment *of* a true man *to* his friends; attachment *to* a leader *for* his nobility of character; the attachments *between* two persons or things; attachment *by* muscular fibers, or *by* a rope, etc.

ATTACK, v.

Synonyms:

assail,
assault,
beleaguer,
beset,
besiege,
charge,
combat,
encounter,
fall upon,
invade,
set upon,
storm.

To *attack* is to begin hostilities of any kind. A general *invades* a country by marching in troops; he *attacks* a city by drawing up an army against it; he *assaults* it by hurling his troops directly upon its defenses. *Assail* and *assault*, tho of the same original etymology, have diverged in meaning, so that *assault* alone retains the meaning of direct personal violence. One may *assail* another with reproaches; he *assaults* him with a blow, a brandished weapon, etc. Armies or squadrons *charge*; *combat* and *encounter* may be said of individual contests. To *beset* is to set around, or, so to speak, to stud one's path, with menaces, attacks, or persuasions. To *besiege* and *beleaguer* are[64] the acts of armies. To *encounter* is to meet face to face, and may be said either of the *attacking* or of the resisting force or person, or of both.

Antonyms:

aid,
befriend,
cover,
defend,
protect,
resist,
shelter,
shield,
support,
sustain,
uphold,
withstand.

Prepositions:

We were attacked *by* the enemy *with* cannon and musketry.

ATTACK, n.

Synonyms:

aggression,
incursion,
invasion,
onslaught,

assault,
encroachment,
infringement,
intrusion,
onset,
trespass.

An *attack* may be by word; an *aggression* is always by deed. An *assault* may be upon the person, an *aggression* is upon rights, possessions, etc. An *invasion* of a nation's territories is an act of *aggression*; an *intrusion* upon a neighboring estate is a *trespass*. *Onslaught* signifies intensely violent *assault*, as by an army or a desperado, tho it is sometimes used of violent speech.

Antonyms:

defense,repulsion,resistance,retreat,submission,surrender.

Prepositions:

The enemy made an attack *upon* (or *on*) our works.

ATTAIN.

Synonyms:

accomplish,
achieve,
acquire,
arrive at,
compass,
earn,
gain,
get,
grasp,
master,
obtain,
procure,
reach,
secure,
win.

A person may *obtain* a situation by the intercession of friends, he *procures* a dinner by paying for it. *Attain* is a lofty word, pointing to some high or desirable result; a man *attains* the mountain summit, he *attains* honor or learning as the result of strenuous and earnest labor. Even that usage of *attain* which has been thought to refer to mere progress of time carries the thought of a result desired; as, to *attain* to old age; the man desires to live to a good old age; we should not speak of his *attaining* his dotage. One may *attain* an object that will prove not worth his labor, but what he *achieves* is in itself great and splendid; as, the Greeks at Marathon *achieved* a glorious victory. Compare DO; GET; REACH.

Antonyms:

abandon,fail,forfeit,give up,let go,lose,miss.

ATTITUDE.

Synonyms:

pose,position,posture.

Position as applied to the arrangement or situation of the human body or limbs may denote that which is conscious or unconscious, of the living or the dead; but we do not speak of the *attitude*, *pose*, or *posture* of a corpse; unless, in some rare case, we might say the body was found in a sitting *posture,* where the *posture* is thought of as assumed in life, or as, at first glance, suggesting life. A *posture* is assumed without any special reference to expression of feeling; as, an erect *posture*, a reclining *posture*; *attitude* is the *position* appropriate to the expression of some feeling; the *attitude* may be unconsciously taken through the strength of the feeling; as, an *attitude* of defiance; or it may be consciously assumed in the attempt to express the feeling; as, he assumed an *attitude* of humility. A *pose* is a *position* studied for artistic effect, or considered with reference to such effect; the unconscious *posture* of a spectator or listener may be an admirable *pose* from an artist's standpoint.

ATTRIBUTE, v.

Synonyms:

ascribe,associate,connect,impute,refer.
assign, charge,

We may *attribute* to a person either that which belongs to him or that which we merely suppose to be his. We *attribute* to God infinite power. We may *attribute* a wrong intent to an innocent person. We may *attribute* a result, rightly or wrongly, to a certain cause; in such case, however, *attribute* carries always a concession of uncertainty or possible error. Where we are quite sure, we simply *refer* a matter to the cause or class to which it belongs or *ascribe* to one what is surely his, etc. Many diseases formerly *attributed* to witchcraft are now *referred* to the action of micro-organisms. We may *attribute* a matter in silent thought; we *ascribe* anything openly in speech or writing; King Saul said of the singing women, "They have *ascribed* unto David ten thousands, and to me they have *ascribed* but thousands." We *associate* things which may have no necessary or causal relation; as, we may *associate* the striking of a clock with the serving of dinner, tho the two are not necessarily connected. We *charge* a person with what we deem blameworthy. We may *impute* good or evil, but more commonly evil.[66]

Antonyms:

deny,disconnect,dissociate,separate,sever,sunder.

Prepositions:

It is uncharitable to attribute evil motives *to* (archaic *unto*) others.

ATTRIBUTE, n.

Synonyms:

property,quality.

A *quality* (L. *qualis*, such)—the "suchness" of anything, according to the German idiom—denotes what a thing really is in some one respect; an *attribute* is what we conceive a thing to be in some one respect; thus, while *attribute* may, *quality* must, express something of the real nature of that to which it is ascribed; we speak of the *attributes* of God, the *qualities* of matter. "Originally 'the *attributes* of God' was preferred, probably, because men assumed no knowledge of the actual *qualities* of the Deity, but only of those more or less fitly attributed to him." J. A. H. Murray. [M.] Holiness is an *attribute* of God; the *attributes* of many heathen deities have been only the *qualities* of wicked men joined to superhuman power. A *property* (L. *proprius*, one's own) is what belongs especially to one thing as its own peculiar possession, in distinction from all other things; when we speak of the *qualities* or the *properties* of matter, *quality* is the more general, *property* the more limited term. A *quality* is inherent; a *property* may be transient; physicists now, however, prefer to term those *qualities* manifested by all bodies (such as impenetrability, extension, etc.), *general properties* of matter, while those peculiar to certain substances or to certain states of those substances (as fluidity, malleability, etc.) are termed *specific properties*; in this wider use of the word *property*, it becomes strictly synonymous with *quality*. Compare CHARACTERISTIC; EMBLEM.

Antonyms:

being,essence,nature,substance.

AUGUR.

Synonyms:

betoken,
bode,
divine,
forebode,
foretell,
portend,
predict,
presage,
prognosticate,
prophesy.

"Persons or things *augur*; persons only *forebode* or *presage*; things only *betoken* or *portend*." Crabb *English Synonymes*. We *augur* well for a voyage from past good fortune and a good start; we *presage* success from the stanchness of the ship and the skill[67] of the captain. We *forebode* misfortune either from circumstances that *betoken* failure, or from gloomy fancies for which we could not give a reason. Dissipation among the officers and mutiny among the crew *portend* disaster. *Divine* has reference to the ancient soothsayers' arts (as in *Gen.* xliv, 5, 15), and refers rather to reading hearts than to reading the future. We say I could not *divine* his motive, or his intention.

Antonyms:

assure,
calculate,
demonstrate,
determine,
establish,
insure,
make sure,
prove,
settle,
warrant.

Prepositions:

I augur *from* all circumstances a prosperous result; I augur ill *of* the enterprise; "augurs ill *to* the rights of the people," Thomas Jefferson *Writings* vol. ii, p. 506. [T. & M. '53.] I augur well, or this augurs well, *for* your cause.

AUTHENTIC.

Synonyms:

accepted,
accredited,
authoritative,
authorized,
certain,
current,
genuine,
legitimate,
original,
real,
received,
reliable,
sure,
true,
trustworthy,
veritable.

That is *authentic* which is true to the facts; that is *genuine* which is true to its own claims; as, *authentic* history; *genuine* money.

A '*genuine*' work is one written by the author whose name it bears; an '*authentic*' work is one which relates truthfully the matters of which it treats. For example, the apocryphal Gospel of St. Thomas is neither '*genuine*' nor '*authentic*.' It is not '*genuine*,' for St. Thomas did not write it; it is not '*authentic*,' for its contents are mainly fables and lies.

Trench *On the Study of Words* lect. vi, p. 189. [W. J. W.]

Authentic is, however, used by reputable writers as synonymous with *genuine*, tho usually where genuineness carries a certain authority. We speak of *accepted* conclusions, *certain* evidence, *current* money, *genuine* letters, a *legitimate* conclusion or *legitimate* authority, *original* manuscripts, *real* value, *received* interpretation, *sure* proof, a *true* statement, a *trustworthy* witness, a *veritable* discovery.

Antonyms:

apocryphal,
baseless,
counterfeit,
disputed,
exploded,
fabulous,
false,
fictitious,
spurious,
unauthorized.

AUXILIARY.

Synonyms:

accessory,
aid,
ally,
assistant,
coadjutor,
confederate,
helper,
mercenary,
promoter,
subordinate.

An *auxiliary* is a person or thing that helps in a subordinate[68] capacity. *Allies* unite as equals; *auxiliaries* are, at least technically, inferiors or subordinates. Yet the *auxiliary* is more than a mere *assistant*. The word is oftenest found in the plural, and in the military sense; *auxiliaries* are troops of one nation uniting with the armies, and acting under the orders, of another. *Mercenaries* serve only for pay; *auxiliaries* often for reasons of state, policy, or patriotism as well. Compare ACCESSORY; APPENDAGE.

Antonyms:

antagonist,hinderer,opponent,opposer.

Prepositions:

The auxiliaries *of* the Romans; an auxiliary *in* a good cause; an auxiliary *to* learning.

AVARICIOUS.

Synonyms:

close, greedy, niggardly, penurious,sordid,
covetous,miserly,parsimonious,rapacious, stingy.

Avaricious and *covetous* refer especially to acquisition, *miserly*, *niggardly*, *parsimonious*, and *penurious* to expenditure. The *avaricious* man has an eager craving for money, and ordinarily desires both to get and to keep, the *covetous* man to get something away from its possessor; tho one may be made *avaricious* by the pressure of great expenditures. *Miserly* and *niggardly* persons seek to gain by mean and petty savings; the *miserly* by stinting themselves, the *niggardly* by stinting others. *Parsimonious* and *penurious* may apply to one's outlay either for himself or for others; in the latter use, they are somewhat less harsh and reproachful terms than *niggardly*. The *close* man holds like a vise all that he gets. *Near* and *nigh* are provincial words of similar import. The *rapacious* have the robber instinct, and put it in practise in some form, as far as they dare. The *avaricious* and *rapacious* are ready to reach out for gain; the *parsimonious*, *miserly*, and *niggardly* prefer the safer and less adventurous way of avoiding expenditure. *Greedy* and *stingy* are used not only of money, but often of other things, as food, etc. The *greedy* child wishes to enjoy everything himself; the *stingy* child, to keep others from getting it.

Antonyms:

bountiful,free,generous,liberal,munificent,prodigal,wasteful.

Preposition:

The monarch was avaricious *of* power.

AVENGE.

Synonyms:

punish,retaliate,revenge,vindicate,visit.

Avenge and *revenge*, once close synonyms, are now far apart in meaning. To *avenge* is to *visit* some offense with punishment, in order to *vindicate* the righteous, or to uphold and illustrate the right by the suffering or destruction of the wicked. "And seeing one of them suffer wrong, he *avenged* him that was oppressed, and smote the Egyptian," *Acts* vii, 24. To *revenge* is to inflict harm or suffering upon another through personal anger and resentment at something done to ourselves. *Avenge* is unselfish; *revenge* is selfish. *Revenge*, according to present usage, could not be said of God. To *retaliate* may be necessary for self-defense, without the idea of *revenge*. Compare REVENGE.

Prepositions:

Avenge *on* or *upon* (rarely, avenge oneself *of*) a wrong-doer.

AVOW.

Synonyms:

knowledge,aver, confess,own, profess,testify,
admit, avouch,declare, proclaim,protest, witness.

Acknowledge, *admit*, and *declare* refer either to oneself or to others; all the other words refer only to one's own knowledge or action. To *avow* is to declare boldly and openly, commonly as something one is ready to justify, maintain, or defend. A man *acknowledges* another's claim or his own promise; he *admits* an opponent's advantage or his own error; he *declares* either what he has seen or experienced or what he has received from another; he *avers* what he is sure of from his own knowledge or consciousness; he gives his assurance as the voucher for what he *avouches*; he *avows* openly a belief or intention that he has silently held. *Avow* and *avouch* take a direct object; *aver* is followed by a conjunction: a man *avows* his faith, *avouches* a deed, *avers* that he was present. *Avow* has usually a good sense; what a person *avows* he at least does not treat as blameworthy, criminal, or shameful; if he did, he would be said to *confess* it; yet there is always the suggestion that some will be ready to challenge or censure what one *avows*; as, the clergyman *avowed* his dissent from the doctrine of his church. *Own* applies to all things, good or bad, great or small, which one takes as his own. Compare CONFESS; STATE.

Antonyms:

contradict,deny,disavow,disclaim,disown,ignore,repudiate.

AWFUL.

Synonyms:

alarming,
appalling,
august,
dire,
direful,
dread,
dreadful,
fearful,
frightful,
grand,
horrible,
imposing,
majestic,
noble,
portentous,
shocking,
solemn,
stately,
terrible,
terrific.

Awful should not be used of things which are merely disagreeable or annoying, nor of all that are *alarming* and *terrible*, but only of such as bring a solemn awe upon the soul, as in the presence of a superior power; as, the *awful* hush before the battle. That which is *awful* arouses an oppressive, that which is *august* an admiring reverence; we speak of the *august* presence of a mighty monarch, the *awful* presence of death. We speak of an *exalted* station, a *grand* mountain, an *imposing* presence, a *majestic* cathedral, a *noble* mien, a *solemn* litany, a *stately* march, an *august* assembly, the *awful* scene of the Judgment Day.

Antonyms:

base,
beggarly,
commonplace,
contemptible,
despicable,
humble,
inferior,
lowly,
mean,
paltry,
undignified,
vulgar.

AWKWARD.

Synonyms:

boorish,
bungling,
clownish,
clumsy,
gawky,
maladroit,
rough,
uncouth,
ungainly,
unhandy,
unskilful.

Awkward, from *awk* (kindred with *off*, from the Norwegian), is *off-ward*, turned the wrong way; it was anciently used of a back-handed or left-handed blow in battle, of squinting eyes, etc. *Clumsy*, on the other hand (from *clumse*, also through the Norwegian), signifies benumbed, stiffened with cold; this is the original meaning of *clumsy* fingers, *clumsy* limbs. Thus, *awkward* primarily refers to action, *clumsy* to condition. A tool, a vehicle, or the human frame may be *clumsy* in shape or build, *awkward* in motion. The *clumsy* man is almost of necessity *awkward*, but the *awkward* man may not be naturally *clumsy*. The finest untrained colt is *awkward* in harness; a horse that is *clumsy* in build can never be trained out of awkwardness. An *awkward* statement has an uncomfortable, and perhaps recoiling force; a statement that contains ill-assorted and incongruous material in ill-chosen language is *clumsy*. We speak of an *awkward* predicament, an *awkward* scrape. An *awkward* excuse commonly reflects on the one who offers it. We say the admitted facts have an[71] *awkward* appearance. In none of these cases could *clumsy* be used. *Clumsy* is, however, applied to movements that seem as unsuitable as those of benumbed and stiffened limbs. A dancing bear is both *clumsy* and *awkward*.

Antonyms:

adroit,clever,dexterous,handy,skilful.

Prepositions:

The raw recruit is awkward *in* action; *at* the business.

AXIOM.

Synonym:

truism.

Both the *axiom* and the *truism* are instantly seen to be true, and need no proof; but in an *axiom* there is progress of thought, while the *truism* simply says the same thing over again, or says what is too manifest to need saying. The *axiom* that "things which are equal to the same thing are equal to one another" unfolds in the latter part of the sentence the truth implied in the first part, which might have been overlooked if not stated. In the *truism* that "a man can do all he is capable of," the former and the latter part of the sentence are simply identical, and the mind is left just where it started. Hence the *axiom* is valuable and useful, while the *truism* is weak and flat, unless the form of statement makes it striking or racy, as "all fools are out of their wits." Compare PROVERB.

Antonyms:

absurdity,contradiction,demonstration,nonsense,paradox,sophism.

BABBLE.

Synonyms:

blab,
blurt,
blurt out,
cackle,
chat,
chatter,
gabble,
gossip,
jabber,
murmur,
palaver,
prate,
prattle,
tattle,
twaddle.

Most of these words are onomatopoetic. The *cackle* of a hen, the *gabble* of a goose, the *chatter* of a magpie, the *babble* of a running stream, as applied to human speech, indicate a rapid succession of what are to the listener meaningless sounds. *Blab* and *blurt* (commonly *blurt out*) refer to the letting out of what the lips can no longer keep in; *blab*, of a secret; *blurt out*, of passionate feeling. To *chat* is to talk in an easy, pleasant way, not without sense, but without special purpose. *Chatting* is the practise of adults, *prattling* that of children. To *prate* is to talk idly,[72] presumptuously, or foolishly, but not necessarily incoherently. To *jabber* is to utter a rapid succession of unintelligible sounds, generally more noisy than *chattering*. To *gossip* is to talk of petty personal matters, as for pastime or mischief. To *twaddle* is to talk feeble nonsense. To *murmur* is to utter suppressed or even inarticulate sounds, suggesting the notes of a dove, or the sound of a running stream, and is used figuratively of the half suppressed utterances of affection or pity, or of complaint, resentment, etc. Compare SPEAK.

Prepositions:

Babies babble *for* the moon; the crowd babbles *of* a hero; the sick man babbles *of* home.

BANISH.

Synonyms:

ban,
discharge,
dislodge,
dismiss,
drive out,
eject,
evict,
exile,
expatriate,
expel,
ostracize,
oust.

Banish, primarily to put under *ban*, to compel by authority to leave a place or country, perhaps with restriction to some other place or country. From a country, a person may be *banished*, *exiled*, or *expatriated*; *banished* from any country where he may happen to be, but *expatriated* or *exiled* only from his own. One may *expatriate* or *exile* himself; he is *banished* by others. *Banish* is a word of wide import; one may *banish* disturbing thoughts; care may *banish* sleep. To *expel* is to *drive out* with violence or rudeness, and so often with disgrace.

Prepositions:

Cataline was banished *from* Rome; John the Apostle was banished *to* Patmos.

BANK.

Synonyms:

beach,
border,
bound,
brim,
brink,
coast,
edge,
marge,
margin,
rim,
shore,
strand.

Bank is a general term for the land along the edge of a water course; it may also denote a raised portion of the bed of a river, lake, or ocean; as, the *Banks* of Newfoundland. A *beach* is a strip or expanse of incoherent wave-worn sand, which is often pebbly or full of boulders; we speak of the *beach* of a lake or ocean; a *beach* is sometimes found in the bend of a river. *Strand* is a more poetic term for a wave-washed shore, especially as a place for landing or embarking; as, the keel grates on the *strand*.[73] The whole line of a country or continent that borders the sea is a *coast*. *Shore* is any land, whether cliff, or sand, or marsh, bordering water. We do not speak of the *coast* of a river, nor of the *banks* of the ocean, tho there may be *banks* by or under the sea. *Edge* is the line where land and water meet; as, the water's *edge*. *Brink* is the place from which one may fall; as, the river's *brink*; the *brink* of a precipice; the *brink* of ruin.

BANTER.

Synonyms:

badinage,
chaff,
derision,
irony,
jeering,
mockery,
raillery,
ridicule,
sarcasm,
satire.

Banter is the touching upon some fault, weakness, or fancied secret of another in a way half to pique and half to please; *badinage* is delicate, refined *banter*. *Raillery* has more sharpness, but is usually good-humored and well meant. *Irony*, the saying one thing that the reverse may be understood, may be either mild or bitter. All the other words have a hostile intent. *Ridicule* makes a person or thing the subject of contemptuous merriment; *derision* seeks to make the object derided seem utterly despicable—to laugh it to scorn. *Chaff* is the coarse witticism of the streets, perhaps merry, oftener malicious; *jeering* is loud, rude *ridicule*, as of a hostile crowd or mob. *Mockery* is more studied, and may include mimicry and personal violence, as well as scornful speech. A *satire* is a formal composition; a *sarcasm* may be an impromptu sentence. The *satire* shows up follies to keep people from them; the *sarcasm* hits them because they are foolish, without inquiring whether it will do good or harm; the *satire* is plainly uttered; the *sarcasm* is covert.

BARBAROUS.

Synonyms:

atrocious,
barbarian,
barbaric,
brutal,
cruel,
inhuman,
merciless,
rude,
savage,
uncivilized,
uncouth,
untamed.

Whatever is not civilized is *barbarian*; *barbaric* indicates rude magnificence, uncultured richness; as, *barbaric* splendor, a *barbaric* melody. *Barbarous* refers to the worst side of *barbarian* life, and to revolting acts, especially of cruelty, such as a civilized man would not be expected to do; as, a *barbarous* deed. We may, however, say *barbarous* nations, *barbarous* tribes, without implying anything more than want of civilization and culture. *Savage*[74] is more distinctly bloodthirsty than *barbarous*. In this sense we speak of a *savage* beast and of *barbarous* usage.

Antonyms:

civilized,
courtly,
cultured,
delicate,
elegant,
graceful,
humane,
nice,
polite,
refined,
tender,
urbane.

BARRIER.

Synonyms:

bar,
barricade,
breastwork,
bulwark,
hindrance,
obstacle,
obstruction,
parapet,
prohibition,
rampart,
restraint,
restriction.

A *bar* is something that is or may be firmly fixed, ordinarily with intent to prevent entrance or egress; as, the *bars* of a prison cell; the *bars* of a wood-lot. A *barrier* obstructs, but is not necessarily impassable. *Barrier* is used of objects more extensive than those to which *bar* is ordinarily applied. A mountain range may be a *barrier* to exploration; but a mass of sand across the entrance to a harbor is called a *bar*. Discovered falsehood is a *bar* to confidence. *Barricade* has become practically a technical name for an improvised street fortification, and, unless in some way modified, is usually so understood. A *parapet* is a low or breast-high wall, as about the edge of a roof, terrace, etc., especially, in military use, such a wall for the protection of troops; a *rampart* is the embankment surrounding a fort, on which the *parapet* is raised; the word *rampart* is often used as including the *parapet*. *Bulwark* is a general word for any defensive wall or *rampart*; its only technical use at present is in nautical language, where it signifies the raised side of a ship above the upper deck, topped by the rail. Compare BOUNDARY; IMPEDIMENT.

Antonyms:

admittance,
entrance,
opening,
passage,
road,
thoroughfare,
transit,
way.

Prepositions:

A barrier *to* progress, *against* invasion; a barrier *between* nations.

BATTLE.

Synonyms:

action,
affair,
bout,
combat,
conflict,
contest,
encounter,
engagement,
fight,
passage of arms,
skirmish,
strife.

Conflict is a general word which describes opponents, whether individuals or hosts, as dashed together. One continuous *conflict* between entire armies is a *battle*. Another *battle* may be fought upon the same field after a considerable interval; or a new *battle*[75] may follow immediately, the armies meeting upon a new field. An *action* is brief and partial; a *battle* may last for days. *Engagement* is a somewhat formal expression for *battle*; as, it was the commander's purpose to avoid a general *engagement*. A protracted war, including many *battles*, may be a stubborn *contest*. *Combat*, originally a hostile *encounter* between individuals, is now used also for extensive *engagements*. A *skirmish* is between small detachments or scattered troops. An *encounter* may be either purposed or accidental, between individuals or armed forces. *Fight* is a word of less dignity than *battle*; we should not ordinarily speak of Waterloo as a *fight*, unless where the word is used in the sense of fighting; as, I was in the thick of the *fight*.

Antonyms:

armistice,concord,peace,suspension of hostilities,truce.

Prepositions:

A battle *of* giants; battle *between* armies; a battle *for* life, *against* invaders; a battle *to* the death; the battle *of* (more rarely *at*) Marathon.

BEAT.

Synonyms:

bastinado,
batter,
belabor,
bruise,
castigate,
chastise,
conquer,
cudgel,
defeat,
flog,
overcome,
pommel,
pound,
scourge,
smite,
spank,
strike,
surpass,
switch,
thrash,
vanquish,
whip,
worst.

Strike is the word for a single blow; to *beat* is to *strike* repeatedly, as a bird *beats* the air with its wings. Others of the above words describe the manner of *beating*, as *bastinado*, to *beat* on the soles of the feet; *belabor*, to inflict a comprehensive and exhaustive *beating*; *cudgel*, to *beat* with a stick; *thrash*, as wheat was *beaten* out with the old hand-flail; to *pound* (akin to L. *pondus*, a weight) is to *beat* with a heavy, and *pommel* with a blunt, instrument. To *batter* and to *bruise* refer to the results of *beating*; that is *battered* which is broken or defaced by repeated blows on the surface (compare synonyms for SHATTER); that is *bruised* which has suffered even one severe contusion. The metaphorical sense of *beat*, however, so far preponderates that one may be very badly *bruised* and *battered*, and yet not be said to be *beaten*, unless he has got the worst of the *beating*. To *beat* a combatant is to disable or dishearten him for further fighting. Hence *beat* becomes[76] the synonym for every word which implies getting the advantage of another. Compare CONQUER.

Antonyms:

fail,fall,get the worst of,go down,go under,surrender.

Almost all antonyms in this class are passive, and can be formed indefinitely from the conquering words by the use of the auxiliary *be*; as, be beaten, be defeated, be conquered, etc.

Prepositions:

Beat *with* a stick *over* the head; beat *by* a trick; *out of* town; beat *to* the ground; *into* submission.

BEAUTIFUL.

Synonyms:

attractive,
beauteous,
bewitching,
bonny,
charming,
comely,
delightful,
elegant,
exquisite,
fair,
fine,
graceful,
handsome,
lovely,
picturesque,
pretty.

The definition of beauty, "perfection of form," is a good key to the meaning of *beautiful*, if we understand "form" in its widest sense. There must also be harmony and unity, and in human beings spiritual loveliness, to constitute an object or a person really *beautiful*. Thus, we speak of a *beautiful* landscape, a *beautiful* poem. But *beautiful* implies also, in concrete objects, softness of outline and delicacy of mold; it is opposed to all that is hard and rugged, hence we say a *beautiful* woman, but not a *beautiful* man. *Beautiful* has the further limit of not transcending our powers of appreciation. *Pretty* expresses in a far less degree that which is pleasing to a refined taste in objects comparatively small, slight, and dainty; as, a *pretty* bonnet; a *pretty* girl. That is *handsome* which is not only superficially pleasing, but well and harmoniously proportioned, with usually the added idea that it is made so by art, breeding, or training; as, a *handsome* horse; a *handsome* house. *Handsome* is a term far inferior to *beautiful*; we may even say a *handsome* villain. *Fair* denotes what is bright, smooth, clear, and without blemish; as, a *fair* face. The word applies wholly to what is superficial; we can say "*fair*, yet false." In a specific sense, *fair* has the sense of blond, as opposed to dark or brunette. One who possesses vivacity, wit, good nature, or other pleasing qualities may be *attractive* without beauty. *Comely* denotes an aspect that is smooth, genial, and wholesome, with a certain fulness of contour and pleasing symmetry, tho falling[77] short of the *beautiful*; as, a *comely* matron. That is *picturesque* which would make a striking picture.

Antonyms:

awkward,
clumsy,
frightful,
ghastly,
grotesque,
hideous,
repulsive,
shocking,
uncouth,
ungainly,

deformed, disgusting, grim, grisly, horrid, odious, ugly, unattractive, unlovely, unpleasant.

Prepositions:

Beautiful *to* the eye; beautiful *in* appearance, *in* spirit; "beautiful *for* situation," *Ps.* xlviii, 2; beautiful *of* aspect, *of* its kind.

BECAUSE.

Synonyms:

as, for, inasmuch as, since.

Because, literally *by*-cause, is the most direct and complete word for giving the reason of a thing. *Since*, originally denoting succession in time, signifies a succession in a chain of reasoning, a natural inference or result. *As* indicates something like, coordinate, parallel. *Since* is weaker than *because*; *as* is weaker than *since*; either may introduce the reason before the main statement; thus, *since* or *as* you are going, I will accompany you. Often the weaker word is the more courteous, implying less constraint; for example, *as* you request it, I will come, rather than I will come *because* you request it. *Inasmuch as* is a formal and qualified expression, implying by just so much, and no more; thus, *inasmuch as* the debtor has no property, I abandon the claim. *For* is a loose connective, giving often mere suggestion or indication rather than reason or cause; as, it is morning, *for* (not *because*) the birds are singing.

Antonyms:

altho, however, nevertheless, notwithstanding, yet.

Compare synonyms for BUT; NOTWITHSTANDING.

BECOMING.

Synonyms:

befitting, beseeming, comely, congruous, decent, decorous, fit, fitting, graceful, meet, neat, proper, seemly, suitable, worthy.

That is *becoming* in dress which suits the complexion, figure, and other qualities of the wearer, so as to produce on the whole a pleasing effect. That is *decent* which does not offend modesty or propriety. That is *suitable* which is adapted to the age, station, situation, and other circumstances of the wearer; coarse, heavy[78] boots are *suitable* for farm-work; a juvenile style of dress is not *suitable* for an old lady. In conduct much the same rules apply. The dignity and gravity of a patriarch would not be *becoming* to a child; at a funeral lively, cheery sociability would not be *decorous*, while noisy hilarity would not be *decent*; sumptuous display would not be *suitable* for a poor person. *Fit* is a compendious term for whatever fits the person, time, place, occasion, etc.; as, a *fit* person; a *fit* abode; a *fit* place. *Fitting*, or *befitting*, is somewhat more elegant, implying a nicer adaptation. *Meet*, a somewhat archaic word, expresses a moral fitness; as, *meet* for heaven. Compare BEAUTIFUL.

Antonyms:

awkward,
ill-becoming,
ill-fitting,
improper,
indecent,
indecorous,
unbecoming,
unfit,
unseemly,
unsuitable.

Prepositions:

The dress was becoming *to* the wearer. Such conduct was becoming *in* him.

BEGINNING.

Synonyms:

arising,
commencement,
fount,
fountain,
inauguration,
inception,
initiation,
opening,
origin,
outset,
rise,
source,
spring,
start.

The Latin *commencement* is more formal than the Saxon *beginning*, as the verb *commence*, is more formal than *begin*. *Commencement* is for the most part restricted to some form of action, while *beginning* has no restriction, but may be applied to action, state, material, extent, enumeration, or to whatever else may be conceived of as having a first part, point, degree, etc. The letter A is at the *beginning* (not the *commencement*) of every alphabet. If we were to speak of the *commencement* of the Pacific Railroad, we should be understood to refer to the enterprise and its initiatory act; if we were to refer to the roadway we should say "Here is the *beginning* of the Pacific Railroad." In the great majority of cases *begin* and *beginning* are preferable to *commence* and *commencement* as the simple, idiomatic English words, always accurate and expressive. "In the *beginning* was the word," *John* i, 1. An *origin* is the point from which something starts or sets out, often involving, and always suggesting causal connection; as, the *origin* of evil; the *origin* of a nation, a government, or a family. A *source* is that which furnishes a first and continuous supply, that which flows forth freely or may be readily recurred to; as, the *source* of a river; a *source* of knowledge; a *source* of inspiration;[79] fertile land is a *source* (not an *origin*) of wealth. A *rise* is thought of as in an action; we say that a lake is the *source* of a certain river, or that the river takes its *rise* from the lake. Motley wrote of "The *Rise* of the Dutch Republic." *Fount*, *fountain*, and *spring*, in their figurative senses, keep close to their literal meaning. Compare CAUSE.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for END.

BEHAVIOR.

Synonyms:

action,
bearing,
breeding,
carriage,
conduct,
demeanor,
deportment,
life,
manner,
manners.

Behavior is our *action* in the presence of others; *conduct* includes also that which is known only to ourselves and our Maker. *Carriage* expresses simply the manner of holding the body, especially in sitting or walking, as when it is said of a lady "she has a fine *carriage*." *Bearing* refers to the bodily expression of feeling or disposition; as, a haughty *bearing*; a noble *bearing*. *Demeanor* is the bodily expression, not only of feelings, but of moral states; as, a devout *demeanor*. *Breeding*, unless with some adverse limitation, denotes that *manner* and *conduct* which result from good birth and training. *Deportment* is *behavior* as related to a set of rules; as, the pupil's *deportment* was faultless. A person's *manner* may be that of a moment, or toward a single person; his *manners* are his habitual style of *behavior* toward or before others, especially in matters of etiquette and politeness; as, good *manners* are always pleasing.

Prepositions:

The behavior *of* the pastor *to* or *toward* his people, *on* or *upon* the streets, *before* the multitude, or *in* the church, *with* the godly, or *with* the worldly, was alike faultless.

BEND.

Synonyms:

bias,
bow,
crook,
curve,
deflect,
deviate,
diverge,
incline,
influence,
mold,
persuade,
stoop,
submit,
turn,
twine,
twist,
warp,
yield.

In some cases a thing is spoken of as *bent* where the parts make an angle; but oftener to *bend* is understood to be to draw to or through a curve; as, to *bend* a bow. To *submit* or *yield* is to *bend* the mind humbly to another's wishes. To *incline* or *influence* is to *bend* another's wishes toward our own; to *persuade* is to[80] draw them quite over. To *warp* is to *bend* silently through the whole fiber, as a board in the sun. To *crook* is to *bend* irregularly, as a *crooked* stick. *Deflect*, *deviate*, and *diverge* are said of any turning away; *deviate* commonly of a slight and gradual movement, *diverge* of a more sharp and decided one. To *bias* is to cut across the texture, or incline to one side; in figurative use always with an unfavorable import. *Mold* is a stronger work than *bend*; we may *bend* by a superior force that which still resists the constraint; as, a *bent* bow; we *mold* something plastic entirely to some desired form.

BENEVOLENCE.

Synonyms:

almsgiving,
beneficence,
benignity,
bounty,
charity,
generosity,
good-will,
humanity,
kind-heartedness,
kindliness,
kindness,
liberality,
munificence,
philanthropy,
sympathy,
unselfishness.

According to the etymology and original usage, *beneficence* is the doing well, *benevolence* the wishing or willing well to others; but *benevolence* has come to include *beneficence*, and to displace it. We should not now speak of *benevolence* which did not help, unless where there was no power to help; even then we should rather say *good-will* or *sympathy*. *Charity*, which originally meant the purest love for God and man (as in *1 Cor.* xiii), is now almost universally applied to some form of *almsgiving*, and is much more limited in meaning than *benevolence*. *Benignity* suggests some occult power of blessing, such as was formerly ascribed to the stars; we may say a good man has an air of *benignity*. *Kindness* and *tenderness* are personal; *benevolence* and *charity* are general. *Kindness* extends to all sentient beings, whether men or animals, in prosperity or in distress. *Tenderness* especially goes out toward the young, feeble, and needy, or even to the dead. *Humanity* is so much *kindness* and *tenderness* toward man or beast as it would be inhuman not to have; we say of some act of care or *kindness*, "common *humanity* requires it." *Generosity* is self-forgetful *kindness* in disposition or action; it includes much besides giving; as, the *generosity* of forgiveness. *Bounty* applies to ample giving, which on a larger scale is expressed by *munificence*. *Liberality* indicates broad, genial kindly views, whether manifested in gifts or otherwise. We speak of the *bounty* of a generous host, the *liberality* or *munificence* of the founder of a college, or of the *liberality* of a theologian toward the holders of conflicting[81] beliefs. *Philanthropy* applies to wide schemes for human welfare, often, but not always, involving large expenditures in *charity* or *benevolence*. Compare MERCY.

Antonyms:

barbarity,
brutality,
churlishness,
greediness,
harshness,
illiberality,
ill-will,
inhumanity,
malevolence,
malignity,
niggardliness,
selfishness,
self-seeking,
stinginess,
unkindness.

Prepositions:

Benevolence *of*, *on the part of*, or *from* the wealthy, *to* or *toward* the poor.

BIND.

Synonyms:

compel,
engage,
fasten,
fetter,
fix,
oblige,
restrain,
restrict,
secure,
shackle,
tie.

Binding is primarily by something flexible, as a cord or bandage drawn closely around an object or group of objects, as when we *bind* up a wounded limb. We *bind* a sheaf of wheat with a cord; we *tie* the cord in a knot; we *fasten* by any means that will make things hold together, as a board by nails, or a door by a lock. The verbs *tie* and *fasten* are scarcely used in the figurative sense, tho, using the noun, we speak of the *ties* of affection. *Bind* has an extensive figurative use. One is *bound* by conscience or honor; he is *obliged* by some imperious necessity; *engaged* by his own promise; *compelled* by physical force or its moral equivalent.

Antonyms:

free,loose,set free,unbind,unfasten,unloose,untie.

Prepositions:

Bind *to* a pillar; *unto* an altar; *to* a service; bind one *with* chains or *in* chains; one is bound *by* a contract; a splint is bound *upon* a limb; the arms may be bound *to* the sides or *behind* the back; bind a wreath *about*, *around*, or *round* the head; twigs are bound *in* or *into* fagots; for military purposes, they are bound *at* both ends and *in* the middle; one is bound *by* a contract, or bound *under* a penalty to fulfil a contract.

BITTER.

Synonyms:

acerb,
acetous,
acid,
acidulated,
acidulous,
acrid,
acrimonious,
biting,
caustic,
cutting,
harsh,
irate,
pungent,
savage,
sharp,
sour,
stinging,
tart,
vinegarish,
virulent.

Acid, *sour*, and *bitter* agree in being contrasted with *sweet*, but[82] the two former are sharply distinguished from the latter. *Acid* or *sour* is the taste of vinegar or lemon-juice; *bitter* that of quassia, quinine, or strychnine. *Acrid* is nearly allied to *bitter*. *Pungent* suggests the effect of pepper or snuff on the organs of taste or smell; as, a *pungent* odor. *Caustic* indicates the corroding effect of some strong chemical, as nitrate of silver. In a figurative sense, as applied to language or character, these words are very closely allied. We say a *sour* face, *sharp* words, *bitter* complaints, *caustic* wit, *cutting* irony, *biting* sarcasm, a *stinging* taunt, *harsh* judgment, a *tart* reply. *Harsh* carries the idea of intentional and severe unkindness, *bitter* of a severity that arises from real or supposed ill treatment. The *bitter* speech springs from the sore heart. *Tart* and *sharp* utterances may not proceed from an intention to wound, but merely from a wit recklessly keen; *cutting*, *stinging*, and *biting* speech indicates more or less of hostile intent, the latter being the more deeply malicious. The *caustic* utterance is meant to burn, perhaps wholesomely, as in the satire of Juvenal or Cervantes. Compare MOROSE.

Antonyms:

dulcet,honeyed,luscious,nectared,saccharine,sweet.

BLEACH, v.

Synonyms:

blanch,make white,whiten,whitewash.

To *whiten* is to *make white* in general, but commonly it means to overspread with white coloring-matter. *Bleach* and *blanch* both signify to *whiten* by depriving of color, the former permanently, as linen; the latter either permanently (as, to *blanch* celery) or temporarily (as, to *blanch* the cheek with fear). To *whitewash* is to *whiten* superficially, especially by false approval.

Antonyms:

blacken,color,darken,dye,soil,stain.

BLEMISH.

Synonyms:

blot,
blur,
brand,
crack,
daub,
defacement,
defect,
deformity,
dent,
disfigurement,
disgrace,
dishonor,
fault,
flaw,
imperfection,
injury,
reproach,
smirch,
soil,
speck,
spot,
stain,
stigma,
taint,
tarnish.

Whatever mars the beauty or completeness of an object is a *blemish*, whether original, as squinting eyes, or the result of accident or disease, etc., as the pits of smallpox. A *blemish* is superficial; a *flaw* or *taint* is in structure or substance. In the moral[83] sense, we speak of a *blot* or *stain* upon reputation; a *flaw* or *taint* in character. A *defect* is the want or lack of something; *fault*, primarily a failing, is something that fails of an apparent intent or disappoints a natural expectation; thus a sudden dislocation or displacement of geological strata is called a *fault*. Figuratively, a *blemish* comes from one's own ill-doing; a *brand* or *stigma* is inflicted by others; as, the *brand* of infamy.

BLOW.

Synonyms:

box,
buffet,
calamity,
concussion,
cuff,
cut,
disaster,
knock,
lash,
misfortune,
rap,
shock,
stripe,
stroke,
thump.

A *blow* is a sudden impact, as of a fist or a club; a *stroke* is a sweeping movement; as, the *stroke* of a sword, of an oar, of the arm in swimming. A *shock* is the sudden encounter with some heavy body; as, colliding railway-trains meet with a *shock*; the *shock* of battle. A *slap* is given with the open hand, a *lash* with a whip, thong, or the like; we speak also of the *cut* of a whip. A *buffet* or *cuff* is given only with the hand; a *blow* either with hand or weapon. A *cuff* is a somewhat sidelong *blow*, generally with the open hand; as, a *cuff* or *box* on the ear. A *stripe* is the effect or mark of a *stroke*. In the metaphorical sense, *blow* is used for sudden, stunning, staggering *calamity* or sorrow; *stroke* for sweeping *disaster*, and also for sweeping achievement and success. We say a *stroke* of paralysis, or a *stroke* of genius. We speak of the *buffets* of adverse fortune. *Shock* is used of that which is at once sudden, violent, and prostrating; we speak of a *shock* of electricity, the *shock* of an amputation, a *shock* of surprise. Compare BEAT.

BLUFF.

Synonyms:

abrupt,
blunt,
blustering,
bold,
brusk,
coarse,
discourteous,
frank,
impolite,
inconsiderate,
open,
plain-spoken,
rough,
rude,
uncivil,
unmannerly.

Bluff is a word of good meaning, as are *frank* and *open*. The *bluff* man talks and laughs loudly and freely, says and does whatever he pleases with fearless good nature, and with no thought of annoying or giving pain to others. The *blunt* man says things which he is perfectly aware are disagreeable, either from a defiant indifference to others' feelings, or from the pleasure of tormenting.

Antonyms:

bland,courteous,genial,polished,polite,refined,reserved,urbane.

BODY.

Synonyms:

ashes, clay, dust, frame, system,
carcass,corpse,form,remains,trunk.

Body denotes the entire physical structure, considered as a whole, of man or animal; *form* looks upon it as a thing of shape and outline, perhaps of beauty; *frame* regards it as supported by its bony framework; *system* views it as an assemblage of many related and harmonious organs. *Body*, *form*, *frame*, and *system* may be either dead or living; *clay* and *dust* are sometimes so used in religious or poetic style, tho ordinarily these words are used only of the dead. *Corpse* and *remains* are used only of the dead. *Corpse* is the plain technical word for a dead body still retaining its unity; *remains* may be used after any lapse of time; the latter is also the more refined and less ghastly term; as, friends are invited to view the *remains*. *Carcass* applies only to the *body* of an animal, or of a human being regarded with contempt and loathing. Compare COMPANY.

Antonyms:

intellect,intelligence,mind,soul,spirit.

BOTH.

Synonyms:

twain,two.

Both refers to *two* objects previously *mentioned*, or had in mind, viewed or acting in connection; as, *both* men fired at once; "*two* men fired" might mean any two, out of any number, and without reference to any previous thought or mention. *Twain* is a nearly obsolete form of *two*. *The two*, or *the twain*, is practically equivalent to *both*; *both*, however, expresses a closer unity. We would say *both* men rushed against the enemy; the *two* men flew at each other. Compare EVERY.

Antonyms:

each,either,every,neither,none,no one,not any.

BOUNDARY.

Synonyms:

barrier, confines, limit, margin,
border, edge, line, term,
bound, enclosure,marches,termination,
bourn, frontier, marge, verge.
bourne,landmark,

The *boundary* was originally the *landmark*, that which marked off one piece of territory from another. The *bound* is the[85] *limit*, marked or unmarked. Now, however, the difference between the two words has come to be simply one of usage. As regards territory, we speak of the *boundaries* of a nation or of an estate; the *bounds* of a college, a ball-ground, etc. *Bounds* may be used for all within the *limits*, *boundary* for the limiting line only. *Boundary* looks to that which is without; *bound* only to that which is within. Hence we speak of the *bounds*, not the *boundaries*, of a subject, of the universe, etc.; we say the students were forbidden to go beyond the *bounds*. A *barrier* is something that bars ingress or egress. A *barrier* may be a *boundary*, as was the Great Wall of China. *Bourn*, or *bourne*, is a poetical expression for *bound* or *boundary*. A *border* is a strip of land along the *boundary*. *Edge* is a sharp terminal line, as where river or ocean meets the land. *Limit* is now used almost wholly in the figurative sense; as, the *limit* of discussion, of time, of jurisdiction. *Line* is a military term; as, within the *lines*, or through the *lines*, of an army. Compare BARRIER; END.

Antonyms:

center,citadel,estate,inside,interior,land,region,territory.

Prepositions:

The boundaries *of* an estate; the boundary *between* neighboring territories.

BRAVE.

Synonyms:

adventurous,
bold,
chivalric,
chivalrous,
courageous,
daring,
dauntless,
doughty,
fearless,
gallant,
heroic,
intrepid,
undaunted,
undismayed,
valiant,
venturesome.

The *adventurous* man goes in quest of danger; the *bold* man stands out and faces danger or censure; the *brave* man combines confidence with resolution in presence of danger; the *chivalrous* man puts himself in peril for others' protection. The *daring* step out to defy danger; the *dauntless* will not flinch before anything that may come to them; the *doughty* will give and take limitless hard knocks. The *adventurous* find something romantic in dangerous enterprises; the *venturesome* may be simply heedless, reckless, or ignorant. All great explorers have been *adventurous*; children, fools, and criminals are *venturesome*. The *fearless* and *intrepid* possess unshaken nerves in any place of danger. *Courageous* is more than *brave*, adding a moral element: the *courageous* man steadily encounters perils to which he may be keenly sensitive, at the call of duty; the *gallant* are *brave* in a dashing, showy, and[86] splendid way; the *valiant* not only dare great dangers, but achieve great results; the *heroic* are nobly *daring* and *dauntless*, truly *chivalrous*, sublimely *courageous*. Compare FORTITUDE.

Antonyms:

afraid,
cowardly,
cringing,
faint-hearted,
fearful,
frightened,
pusillanimous,
shrinking,
timid,
timorous.

BREAK.

Synonyms:

bankrupt,
burst,
cashier,
crack,
crush,
demolish,
destroy,
fracture,
rend,
rive,
rupture,
sever,
shatter,
shiver,
smash,
split,
sunder,
transgress.

To *break* is to divide sharply, with severance of particles, as by a blow or strain. To *burst* is to *break* by pressure from within, as a bombshell, but it is used also for the result of violent force otherwise exerted; as, to *burst* in a door, where the door yields as if to an explosion. To *crush* is to *break* by pressure from without, as an egg-shell. To *crack* is to *break* without complete severance of parts; a *cracked* cup or mirror may still hold together. *Fracture* has a somewhat similar sense. In a *fractured* limb, the ends of the *broken* bone may be separated, tho both portions are still retained within the common muscular tissue. A *shattered* object is *broken* suddenly and in numerous directions; as, a vase is *shattered* by a blow, a building by an earthquake. A *shivered* glass is *broken* into numerous minute, needle-like fragments. To *smash* is to *break* thoroughly to pieces with a crashing sound by some sudden act of violence; a watch once *smashed* will scarcely be worth repair. To *split* is to cause wood to crack or part in the way of the grain, and is applied to any other case where a natural tendency to separation is enforced by an external cause; as, to *split* a convention or a party. To *demolish* is to beat down, as a mound, building, fortress, etc.; to *destroy* is to put by any process beyond restoration physically, mentally, or morally; to *destroy* an army is so to *shatter* and scatter it that it can not be rallied or reassembled as a fighting force. Compare REND.

Antonyms:

attach,
bind,
fasten,
join,
mend,
secure,
solder,
unite,
weld.

Prepositions:

Break *to* pieces, or *in* pieces, *into* several pieces (when the object is thought of as divided rather than shattered); break *with* a friend; *from* or *away from* a suppliant; break *into* a house; *out of* prison; break *across* one's knee; break *through* a hedge; break *in upon* one's retirement; break *over* the rules; break *on* or *upon* the shore, *against* the rocks.

BRUTISH.

Synonyms:

animal,
base,
beastly,
bestial,
brutal,
brute,
carnal,
coarse,
ignorant,
imbruted,
insensible,
lascivious,
sensual,
sottish,
stolid,
stupid,
swinish,
unintellectual,
unspiritual,
vile.

A *brutish* man simply follows his *animal* instincts, without special inclination to do harm; the *brutal* have always a spirit of malice and cruelty. *Brute* has no special character, except as indicating what a brute might possess; much the same is true of *animal*, except that *animal* leans more to the side of sensuality, *brute* to that of force, as appears in the familiar phrase "*brute* force." Hunger is an *animal* appetite; a *brute* impulse suddenly prompts one to strike a blow in anger. *Bestial*, in modern usage, implies an intensified and degrading animalism. Any supremacy of the *animal* or *brute* instincts over the intellectual and spiritual in man is *base* and *vile*. *Beastly* refers largely to the outward and visible consequences of excess; as, *beastly* drunkenness. Compare ANIMAL.

Antonyms:

elevated,
enlightened,
exalted,
grand,
great,
humane,
intellectual,
intelligent,
noble,
refined.

BURN.

Synonyms:

blaze,
brand,
cauterize,
char,
consume,
cremate,
flame,
flash,
ignite,
incinerate,
kindle,
scorch,
set fire to,
set on fire,
singe.

To *burn* is to subject to the action of fire, or of intense heat so as to effect either partial change or complete combustion; as, to *burn* wood in the fire; to *burn* one's hand on a hot stove; the sun *burns* the face. One *brands* with a hot iron, but *cauterizes* with some corrosive substance, as silver nitrate. *Cremate* is now used specifically for *consuming* a dead body by intense heat. To *incinerate* is to reduce to ashes; the sense differs little from that of *cremate*, but it is in less popular use. To *kindle* is to *set on fire*, as if with a candle; *ignite* is the more learned and scientific word for the same thing, extending even to the heating of metals to a state of incandescence without burning. To *scorch* and to *singe* are superficial, and to *char* usually so. Both *kindle* and *burn* have an extensive figurative use; as, to *kindle* strife; to *burn* with wrath, love, devotion, curiosity. Compare LIGHT.

Antonyms:

cool,
extinguish,
put out,
smother,
stifle,
subdue.

Prepositions:

To burn *in* the fire, burn *with* fire; burn *to* the ground, burn *to* ashes; burn *through* the skin, or the roof; burn *into* the soil, etc.

BUSINESS.

Synonyms:

affair,
art,
avocation,
barter,
calling,
commerce,
concern,
craft,
duty,
employment,
handicraft,
job,
occupation,
profession,
trade,
trading,
traffic,
transaction,
vocation,
work.

A *business* is what one follows regularly; an *occupation* is what he happens at any time to be engaged in; trout-fishing may be one's *occupation* for a time, as a relief from *business*; *business* is ordinarily for profit, while the *occupation* may be a matter of learning, philanthropy, or religion. A *profession* implies scholarship; as, the learned *professions*. *Pursuit* is an *occupation* which one follows with ardor. An *avocation* is what calls one away from other work; a *vocation* or *calling*, that to which one is called by some special fitness or sense of duty; thus, we speak of the gospel ministry as a *vocation* or *calling*, rather than a *business*. *Trade* or *trading* is, in general, the exchanging of one thing for another; in the special sense, a *trade* is an *occupation* involving manual training and skilled labor; as, the ancient Jews held that every boy should learn a *trade*. A *transaction* is a single action, whether in *business*, diplomacy, or otherwise; *affair* has a similar, but lighter meaning; as, this little *affair*; an important *transaction*. The plural *affairs* has a distinctive meaning, including all activities where men deal with one another on any considerable scale; as, a man of *affairs*. A *job* is a piece of work viewed as a single undertaking, and ordinarily paid for as such. *Trade* and *commerce* may be used as equivalents, but *trade* is capable of a more limited application; we speak of the *trade* of a village, the *commerce* of a nation. *Barter* is the direct exchange of commodities; *business*, *trade*, and *commerce* are chiefly transacted by means of money, bills of exchange, etc. *Business*, *occupation*, etc., may be what one does independently; *employment* may be in the service of another. *Work* is any application of energy to secure a result, or the result thus secured; thus, we speak of the *work* of God. *Art* in the industrial sense is a system of rules and accepted methods for the accomplishment of some practical result; as, the *art* of printing; collectively, the *arts*. A *craft* is some occupation requiring technical skill or manual dexterity,[89] or the persons, collectively, engaged in its exercise; as, the weaver's *craft*.

Prepositions:

The business *of* a druggist; in business *with* his father; doing business *for* his father; have you business *with* me? business *in* New York; business *about*, *concerning*, or *in regard to* certain property.

BUT.

Synonyms:

and,
barely,
besides,
except,
further,
however,
just,
merely,
moreover,
nevertheless,
notwithstanding,
only,
provided,
save,
still,
that,
tho,
unless,
yet.

But ranges from the faintest contrast to absolute negation; as, I am willing to go, *but* (on the other hand) content to stay; he is not an honest man, *but* (on the contrary) a villain. The contrast may be with a silent thought; as, *but* let us go (it being understood that we might stay longer). In restrictive use, *except* and *excepting* are slightly more emphatic than *but*; we say, no injury *but* a scratch; or, no injury *except* some painful bruises. Such expressions as "words are *but* breath" (nothing *but*) may be referred to the restrictive use by ellipsis. So may the use of *but* in the sense of *unless*; as, "it never rains *but* it pours." To the same head must be referred the conditional use; as, "you may go, *but* with your father's consent" (*i. e.*, "*provided* you have," "*except* that you must have," etc.). "Doubt *but*" is now less used than the more logical "doubt *that*." *But* never becomes a full synonym for *and*; *and* adds something like, *but* adds something different; "brave *and* tender" implies that tenderness is natural to the brave; "brave *but* tender" implies that bravery and tenderness are rarely combined. For the concessive use, compare NOTWITHSTANDING.

BY.

Synonyms:

by dint of,by means of,through,with.

By refers to the agent; *through*, to the means, cause, or condition; *with*, to the instrument. *By* commonly refers to persons; *with*, to things; *through* may refer to either. The road having become impassable *through* long disuse, a way was opened *by* pioneers *with* axes. *By* may, however, be applied to any object which is viewed as partaking of action and agency; as, the metal[90] was corroded *by* the acid; skill is gained *by* practise. We speak of communicating *with* a person *by* letter. *Through* implies a more distant connection than *by* or *with*, and more intervening elements. Material objects are perceived *by* the mind *through* the senses.

CABAL.

Synonyms:

combination,
conclave,
confederacy,
conspiracy,
crew,
faction,
gang,
junto.

A *conspiracy* is a *combination* of persons for an evil purpose, or the act of so combining. *Conspiracy* is a distinct crime under common, and generally under statutory, law. A *faction* is more extensive than a *conspiracy*, less formal in organization, less definite in plan. *Faction* and its adjective, *factious*, have always an unfavorable sense. *Cabal* commonly denotes a *conspiracy* of leaders. A *gang* is a company of workmen all doing the same work under one leader; the word is used figuratively only of *combinations* which it is meant to stigmatize as rude and mercenary; *crew* is used in a closely similar sense. A *conclave* is secret, but of larger numbers, ordinarily, than a *cabal*, and may have honorable use; as, the *conclave* of cardinals.

CALCULATE.

Synonyms:

account,
cast,
compute,
consider,
count,
deem,
enumerate,
estimate,
number,
rate,
reckon,
sum up.

Number is the generic term. To *count* is to *number* one by one. To *calculate* is to use more complicated processes, as multiplication, division, etc., more rapid but not less exact. *Compute* allows more of the element of probability, which is still more strongly expressed by *estimate*. We *compute* the slain in a great war from the number known to have fallen in certain great battles; *compute* refers to the present or the past, *estimate* more frequently to the future; as, to *estimate* the cost of a proposed building. To *enumerate* is to mention item by item; as, to *enumerate* one's grievances. To *rate* is to *estimate* by comparison, as if the object were one of a series. We *count* upon a desired future; we do not *count* upon the undesired. As applied to the present, we *reckon* or *count* a thing precious or worthless. Compare ESTEEM.

Prepositions:

It is vain to calculate *on* or *upon* an uncertain result.

[91]

CALL, v.

Synonyms:

bawl,
bellow,
clamor,
cry (out),
ejaculate,
exclaim,
roar,
scream,
shout,
shriek,
vociferate,
yell.

To *call* is to send out the voice in order to attract another's attention, either by word or by inarticulate utterance. Animals *call* their mates, or their young; a man *calls* his dog, his horse, etc. The sense is extended to include summons by bell, or any signal. To *shout* is to *call* or *exclaim* with the fullest volume of sustained voice; to *scream* is to utter a shriller cry; to *shriek* or to *yell* refers to that which is louder and wilder still. We *shout* words; in *screaming*, *shrieking*, or *yelling* there is often no attempt at articulation. To *bawl* is to utter senseless, noisy cries, as of a child in pain or anger. *Bellow* and *roar* are applied to the utterances of animals, and only contemptuously to those of persons. To *clamor* is to utter with noisy iteration; it applies also to the confused cries of a multitude. To *vociferate* is commonly applied to loud and excited speech where there is little besides the exertion of voice. In *exclaiming*, the utterance may not be strikingly, tho somewhat, above the ordinary tone and pitch; we may *exclaim* by mere interjections, or by connected words, but always by some articulate utterance. To *ejaculate* is to throw out brief, disconnected, but coherent utterances of joy, regret, and especially of appeal, petition, prayer; the use of such devotional utterances has received the special name of "ejaculatory prayer." To *cry out* is to give forth a louder and more excited utterance than in *exclaiming* or *calling*; one often *exclaims* with sudden joy as well as sorrow; if he *cries out*, it is oftener in grief or agony. In the most common colloquial usage, to *cry* is to express grief or pain by weeping or sobbing. One may *exclaim*, *cry out*, or *ejaculate* with no thought of others' presence; when he *calls*, it is to attract another's attention.

Antonyms:

be silent,be still,hark,hearken,hush,list,listen.

CALM.

Synonyms:

collected,
composed,
cool,
dispassionate,
imperturbable,
peaceful,
placid,
quiet,
sedate,
self-possessed,
serene,
smooth,
still,
tranquil,
undisturbed,
unruffled.

That is *calm* which is free from disturbance or agitation; in the physical sense, free from violent motion or action; in the mental[92] or spiritual realm, free from excited or disturbing emotion or passion. We speak of a *calm* sea, a *placid* lake, a *serene* sky, a *still* night, a *quiet* day, a *quiet* home. We speak, also, of "*still* waters," "*smooth* sailing," which are different modes of expressing freedom from manifest agitation. Of mental conditions, one is *calm* who triumphs over a tendency to excitement; *cool*, if he scarcely feels the tendency. One may be *calm* by the very reaction from excitement, or by the oppression of overpowering emotion, as we speak of the calmness of despair. One is *composed* who has subdued excited feeling; he is *collected* when he has every thought, feeling, or perception awake and at command. *Tranquil* refers to a present state, *placid*, to a prevailing tendency. We speak of a *tranquil* mind, a *placid* disposition. The *serene* spirit dwells as if in the clear upper air, above all storm and shadow.

The star of the unconquered will,
He rises in my breast,
Serene, and resolute, and *still*,
And *calm*, and *self-possessed*.

Longfellow *Light of Stars* st. 7.

Antonyms:

agitated,
boisterous,
disturbed,
excited,
fierce,
frantic,
frenzied,
furious,
heated,
passionate,
raging,
roused,
ruffled,
stormy,
turbulent,
violent,
wild,
wrathful.

CANCEL.

Synonyms:

abolish,
abrogate,
annul,
blot out,
cross off or out,
discharge,
efface,
erase,
expunge,
make void,
nullify,
obliterate,
quash,
remove,
repeal,
rescind,
revoke,
rub off or out,
scratch out,
vacate.

Cancel, *efface*, *erase*, *expunge*, and *obliterate* have as their first meaning the removal of written characters or other forms of record. To *cancel* is, literally, to make a lattice by cross-lines, exactly our English *cross out*; to *efface* is to *rub off*, smooth away the face, as of an inscription; to *erase* is to *scratch out*, commonly for the purpose of writing something else in the same space; to *expunge*, is to punch out with some sharp instrument, so as to show that the words are no longer part of the writing; to *obliterate* is to cover over or remove, as a letter, as was done by reversing the Roman stylus, and *rubbing out* with the rounded end what had been written with the point on the waxen tablet. What has been *canceled*, *erased*, *expunged*, may perhaps still be traced; what is *obliterated* is gone forever, as if it had never been. In[93] many establishments, when a debt is *discharged* by payment, the record is *canceled*. The figurative use of the words keeps close to the primary sense. Compare ABOLISH.

Antonyms:

approve,
confirm,
enact,
enforce,
establish,
maintain,
perpetuate,
record,
reenact,
sustain,
uphold,
write.

CANDID.

Synonyms:

aboveboard,
artless,
fair,
frank,
guileless,
honest,
impartial,
ingenuous,
innocent,
naive,
open,
simple,
sincere,
straightforward,
transparent,
truthful,
unbiased,
unprejudiced,
unreserved,
unsophisticated.

A *candid* statement is meant to be true to the real facts and just to all parties; a *fair* statement is really so. *Fair* is applied to the conduct; *candid* is not; as, *fair* treatment, "a *fair* field, and no favor." One who is *frank* has a fearless and unconstrained truthfulness. *Honest* and *ingenuous* unite in expressing contempt for deceit. On the other hand, *artless*, *guileless*, *naive*, *simple*, and *unsophisticated* express the goodness which comes from want of the knowledge or thought of evil. As truth is not always agreeable or timely, *candid* and *frank* have often an objectionable sense; "to be *candid* with you," "to be perfectly *frank*," are regarded as sure preludes to something disagreeable. *Open* and *unreserved* may imply unstudied truthfulness or defiant recklessness; as, *open* admiration, *open* robbery. There may be *transparent* integrity or *transparent* fraud. *Sincere* applies to the feelings, as being all that one's words would imply.

Antonyms:

adroit,
artful,
crafty,
cunning,
deceitful,
designing,
diplomatic,
foxy,
insincere,
intriguing,
knowing,
maneuvering,
sharp,
shrewd,
sly,
subtle,
tricky,
wily.

Prepositions:

Candid *in* debate; candid *to* or *toward* opponents; candid *with* friend or foe; to be candid *about* or *in regard to* the matter.

CAPARISON.

Synonyms:

accouterments,
harness,
housings,
trappings.

Harness was formerly used of the armor of a knight as well as of a horse; it is now used almost exclusively of the straps and appurtenances worn by a horse when attached to a vehicle; the animal is said to be "kind in *harness*." The other words apply to the ornamental outfit of a horse, especially under saddle. We[94] speak also of the *accouterments* of a soldier. *Caparison* is used rarely and somewhat slightingly, and *trappings* quite contemptuously, for showy human apparel. Compare ARMS; DRESS.

CAPITAL.

Synonyms:

chief city, metropolis, seat of government.

The *metropolis* is the chief city in the commercial, the *capital* in the political sense. The *capital* of an American State is rarely its *metropolis*.

CARE.

Synonyms:

anxiety,
attention,
caution,
charge,
circumspection,
concern,
direction,
forethought,
heed,
management,
oversight,
perplexity,
precaution,
prudence,
solicitude,
trouble,
vigilance,
wariness,
watchfulness,
worry.

Care concerns what we possess; *anxiety*, often, what we do not; riches bring many *cares*; poverty brings many *anxieties*. *Care* also signifies watchful *attention*, in view of possible harm; as, "This side up with *care*;" "Take *care* of yourself;" or, as a sharp warning, "Take *care*!" *Caution* has a sense of possible harm and risk only to be escaped, if at all, by careful deliberation and observation. *Care* inclines to the positive, *caution* to the negative; *care* is shown in doing, *caution* largely in not doing. *Precaution* is allied with *care*, *prudence* with *caution*; a man rides a dangerous horse with *care*; *caution* will keep him from mounting the horse; *precaution* looks to the saddle-girths, bit and bridle, and all that may make the rider secure. *Circumspection* is watchful observation and calculation, but without the timidity implied in *caution*. *Concern* denotes a serious interest, milder than *anxiety*; as, *concern* for the safety of a ship at sea. *Heed* implies *attention* without disquiet; it is now largely displaced by *attention* and *care*. *Solicitude* involves especially the element of desire, not expressed in *anxiety*, and of hopefulness, not implied in *care*. A parent feels constant *solicitude* for his children's welfare, *anxiety* as to dangers that threaten it, with *care* to guard against them. *Watchfulness* recognizes the possibility of danger, *wariness* the probability. A man who is not influenced by *caution* to keep out of danger may display great *wariness* in the midst of it. *Care* has also the sense of responsibility, with possible control, as expressed in *charge*, *management*,[95] *oversight*; as, these children are under my *care*; send the money to me in *care* of the firm. Compare ALARM; ANXIETY; PRUDENCE.

Antonyms:

carelessness,
disregard,
heedlessness,
inattention,
indifference,
neglect,
negligence,
omission,
oversight,
recklessness,
remissness,
slight.

Prepositions:

Take care *of* the house; *for* the future; *about* the matter.

CAREER.

Synonyms:

charge,
course,
flight,
line of achievement,
passage,
public life,
race,
rush.

A *career* was originally the ground for a race, or, especially, for a knight's *charge* in tournament or battle; whence *career* was early applied to the *charge* itself.

> If you will use the lance, take ground for your *career*.... The four horsemen met in full *career*.
>
> Scott *Quentin Durward* ch. 14, p. 194. [D. F. & CO.]

In its figurative use *career* signifies some continuous and conspicuous work, usually a life-work, and most frequently one of honorable achievement. Compare BUSINESS.

CARESS.

Synonyms:

coddle,
court,
embrace,
flatter,
fondle,
kiss,
pamper,
pet.

To *caress* is less than to *embrace*; more dignified and less familiar than to *fondle*. A visitor *caresses* a friend's child; a mother *fondles* her babe. *Fondling* is always by touch; *caressing* may be also by words, or other tender and pleasing attentions.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for AFFRONT.

Prepositions:

Caressed *by* or *with* the hand; caressed *by* admirers, *at* court.

CARICATURE.

Synonyms:

burlesque,
exaggeration,
extravaganza,
imitation,
mimicry,
parody,
take-off,
travesty.

A *caricature* is a grotesque *exaggeration* of striking features or peculiarities, generally of a person; a *burlesque* treats any subject in an absurd or incongruous manner. A *burlesque* is written or acted; a *caricature* is more commonly in sketch or picture. A *parody* changes the subject, but keeps the style; a *travesty* keeps[96] the subject, but changes the style; a *burlesque* does not hold itself to either subject or style; but is content with a general resemblance to what it may imitate. A *caricature*, *parody*, or *travesty* must have an original; a *burlesque* may be an independent composition. An account of a schoolboys' quarrel after the general manner of Homer's Iliad would be a *burlesque*; the real story of the Iliad told in newspaper style would be a *travesty*. An *extravaganza* is a fantastic composition, musical, dramatic, or narrative. *Imitation* is serious; *mimicry* is either intentionally or unintentionally comical.

CARRY.

Synonyms:

bear,
bring,
convey,
lift,
move,
remove,
sustain,
take,
transmit,
transport.

A person may *bear* a load either when in motion or at rest; he *carries* it only when in motion. The stooping Atlas *bears* the world on his shoulders; swiftly moving Time *carries* the hour-glass and scythe; a person may be said either to *bear* or to *carry* a scar, since it is upon him whether in motion or at rest. If an object is to be *moved* from the place we occupy, we say *carry*; if to the place we occupy, we say *bring*. A messenger *carries* a letter to a correspondent, and *brings* an answer. *Take* is often used in this sense in place of *carry*; as, *take* that letter to the office. *Carry* often signifies to *transport* by personal strength, without reference to the direction; as, that is more than he can *carry*; yet, even so, it would not be admissible to say *carry* it to me, or *carry* it here; in such case we must say *bring*. To *lift* is simply to raise from the ground, tho but for an instant, with no reference to holding or moving; one may be able to *lift* what he could not *carry*. The figurative uses of *carry* are very numerous; as, to *carry* an election, *carry* the country, *carry* (in the sense of *capture*) a fort, *carry* an audience, *carry* a stock of goods, etc. Compare CONVEY; KEEP; SUPPORT.

Antonyms:

drop, fall under, give up, let go, shake off, throw down, throw off.

Prepositions:

To carry coals *to* Newcastle; carry nothing *from*, or *out of*, this house; he carried these qualities *into* all he did; carry *across* the street, *over* the bridge, *through* the woods, *around* or *round* the corner; *beyond* the river; the cable was carried *under* the sea.

---

[97]

CATASTROPHE.

Synonyms:

calamity, cataclysm, denouement, disaster, mischance, misfortune, mishap, sequel.

A *cataclysm* or *catastrophe* is some great convulsion or momentous event that may or may not be a cause of misery to man. In *calamity*, or *disaster*, the thought of human suffering is always present. It has been held by many geologists that numerous *catastrophes* or *cataclysms* antedated the existence of man. In literature, the final event of a drama is the *catastrophe*, or *denouement*. *Misfortune* ordinarily suggests less of suddenness and violence than *calamity* or *disaster*, and is especially applied to that which is lingering or enduring in its effects. In history, the end of every great war or the fall of a nation is a *catastrophe*, tho it may not be a *calamity*. Yet such an event, if not a *calamity* to the race, will always involve much individual *disaster* and *misfortune*. Pestilence is a *calamity*; a defeat in battle, a shipwreck, or a failure in business is a *disaster*; sickness or loss of property is a *misfortune*; failure to meet a friend is a *mischance*; the breaking of a teacup is a *mishap*.

Antonyms:

benefit, blessing, boon, comfort, favor, help, pleasure, privilege, prosperity, success.

Preposition:

The catastrophe *of* a play; *of* a siege; rarely, *to* a person, etc.

CATCH.

Synonyms:

apprehend,
capture,
clasp,
clutch,
comprehend,
discover,
ensnare,
entrap,
grasp,
grip,
gripe,
lay hold of (on, upon),
overtake,
secure,
seize,
snatch,
take,
take hold of.

To *catch* is to come up with or take possession of something departing, fugitive, or illusive. We *catch* a runaway horse, a flying ball, a mouse in a trap. We *clutch* with a swift, tenacious movement of the fingers; we *grasp* with a firm but moderate closure of the whole hand; we *grip* or *gripe* with the strongest muscular closure of the whole hand possible to exert. We *clasp* in the arms. We *snatch* with a quick, sudden, and usually a surprising motion. In the figurative sense, *catch* is used of any act that brings a person or thing into our power or possession; as, to *catch* a criminal in the act; to *catch* an idea, in the sense of *apprehend* or *comprehend*. Compare ARREST.

[98]

Antonyms:

fail of,
fall short of,
give up,
let go,
lose,
miss,
release,
restore,
throw aside,
throw away.

Prepositions:

To catch *at* a straw; to catch a fugitive *by* the collar; to catch a ball *with* the left hand; he caught the disease *from* the patient; the thief was caught *in* the act; the bird *in* the snare.

CAUSE.

Synonyms:

actor,
agent,
antecedent,
author,
causality,
causation,
condition,
creator,
designer,
former,
fountain,
motive,
occasion,
origin,
originator,
power,
precedent,
reason,
source,
spring.

The efficient *cause*, that which makes anything to be or be done, is the common meaning of the word, as in the saying "There is no effect without a *cause*." Every man instinctively recognizes himself acting through will as the *cause* of his own actions. The *Creator* is the Great First *Cause* of all things. A *condition* is something that necessarily precedes a result, but does not produce it. An *antecedent* simply precedes a result, with or without any agency in producing it; as, Monday is the invariable *antecedent* of Tuesday, but not the *cause* of it. The direct antonym of *cause* is *effect*, while that of *antecedent* is *consequent*. An *occasion* is some event which brings a *cause* into action at a particular moment; gravitation and heat are the *causes* of an avalanche; the steep incline of the mountain-side is a necessary *condition*, and the shout of the traveler may be the *occasion* of its fall. *Causality* is the doctrine or principle of causes, *causation* the action or working of causes. Compare DESIGN; REASON.

Antonyms:

consequence,
creation,
development,
effect,
end,
event,
fruit,
issue,
outcome,
outgrowth,
product,
result.

Prepositions:

The cause *of* the disaster; cause *for* interference.

CEASE.

Synonyms:

abstain,
bring to an end,
come to an end,
conclude,
desist,
discontinue,
end,
finish,
give over,
intermit,
leave off,
pause,
quit,
refrain,
stop,
terminate.

Strains of music may gradually or suddenly *cease*. A man *quits* work on the instant; he may *discontinue* a practise gradually;[99] he *quits* suddenly and completely; he *stops* short in what he may or may not resume; he *pauses* in what he will probably resume. What *intermits* or is *intermitted* returns again, as a fever that *intermits*. Compare ABANDON; DIE; END; REST.

Antonyms:

begin,
commence,
enter upon,
inaugurate,
initiate,
institute,
originate,
set about,
set going,
set in operation,
set on foot,
start.

Preposition:

Cease *from* anger.

CELEBRATE.

Synonyms:

commemorate,
keep,
observe,
solemnize.

To *celebrate* any event or occasion is to make some demonstration of respect or rejoicing because of or in memory of it, or to perform such public rites or ceremonies as it properly demands. We *celebrate* the birth, *commemorate* the death of one beloved or honored. We *celebrate* a national anniversary with music and song, with firing of guns and ringing of bells; we *commemorate* by any solemn and thoughtful service, or by a monument or other enduring memorial. We *keep* the Sabbath, *solemnize* a marriage, *observe* an anniversary; we *celebrate* or *observe* the Lord's Supper in which believers *commemorate* the sufferings and death of Christ.

Antonyms:

contemn,
despise,
dishonor,
disregard,
forget,
ignore,
neglect,
overlook,
profane,
violate.

Prepositions:

We celebrate the day *with* appropriate ceremonies; the victory was celebrated *by* the people, *with* rejoicing.

CENTER.

Synonyms:

middle,
midst.

We speak of the *center* of a circle, the *middle* of a room, the *middle* of the street, the *midst* of a forest. The *center* is equally distant from every point of the circumference of a circle, or from the opposite boundaries on each axis of a parallelogram, etc.; the *middle* is more general and less definite. The *center* is a point; the *middle* may be a line or a space. We say *at* the *center*; *in* the *middle*. *Midst* commonly implies a group or multitude of surrounding objects. Compare synonyms for AMID.

Antonyms:

bound,
boundary,
circumference,
perimeter,
rim.

---

[100]

CHAGRIN.

Synonyms:

confusion,
disappointment,
discomposure,
dismay,
humiliation,
mortification,
shame,
vexation.

Chagrin unites *disappointment* with some degree of *humiliation*. A rainy day may bring *disappointment*; needless failure in some enterprise brings *chagrin*. *Shame* involves the consciousness of fault, guilt, or impropriety; *chagrin* of failure of judgment, or harm to reputation. A consciousness that one has displayed his own ignorance will cause him *mortification*, however worthy his intent; if there was a design to deceive, the exposure will cover him with *shame*.

Antonyms:

delight,exultation,glory,rejoicing,triumph.

Prepositions:

He felt deep chagrin *at* (*because of*, *on account of*) failure.

CHANGE, v.

Synonyms:

alter,
commute,
convert,
diversify,
exchange,
metamorphose,
modify,
qualify,
shift,
substitute,
transfigure,
transform,
transmute,
turn,
vary,
veer.

To *change* is distinctively to make a thing other than it has been, in some respect at least; to *exchange* to put or take something else in its place; to *alter* is ordinarily to *change* partially, to make different in one or more particulars. To *exchange* is often to transfer ownership; as, to *exchange* city for country property. *Change* is often used in the sense of *exchange*; as, to *change* horses. To *transmute* is to *change* the qualities while the substance remains the same; as, to *transmute* the baser metals into gold. To *transform* is to *change* form or appearance, with or without deeper and more essential change; it is less absolute than *transmute*, tho sometimes used for that word, and is often used in a spiritual sense as *transmute* could not be; "Be ye *transformed* by the renewing of your mind," *Rom.* xii, 2. *Transfigure* is, as in its Scriptural use, to change in an exalted and glorious spiritual way; "Jesus ... was *transfigured* before them, and his face did shine as the sun, and his raiment was white as the light," *Matt.* xvii, 1, 2. To *metamorphose* is to make some remarkable change, ordinarily in external qualities, but often in structure, use, or chemical constitution, as of a caterpillar into a[101] butterfly, of the stamens of a plant into petals, or of the crystalline structure of rocks, hence called "metamorphic rocks," as when a limestone is *metamorphosed* into a marble. To *vary* is to *change* from time to time, often capriciously. To *commute* is to put something easier, lighter, milder, or in some way more favorable in place of that which is *commuted*; as, to *commute* capital punishment to imprisonment for life; to *commute* daily fares on a railway to a monthly payment. To *convert* (L. *con*, with, and *verto*, turn) is to primarily *turn* about, and signifies to *change* in form, character, use, etc., through a wide range of relations; iron is *converted* into steel, joy into grief, a sinner into a saint. To *turn* is a popular word for *change* in any sense short of the meaning of *exchange*, being often equivalent to *alter*, *convert*, *transform*, *transmute*, etc. We *modify* or *qualify* a statement which might seem too strong; we *modify* it by some limitation, *qualify* it by some addition.

Antonyms:

abide,
bide,
continue,
endure,
hold,
keep,
persist,
remain,
retain,
stay.

Prepositions:

To change a home toilet *for* a street dress; to change *from* a caterpillar *to* or *into* a butterfly; to change clothes *with* a beggar.

CHANGE, n.

Synonyms:

alteration,
conversion,
diversity,
innovation,
mutation,
novelty,
regeneration,
renewal,
renewing,
revolution,
transformation,
transition,
transmutation,
variation,
variety,
vicissitude.

A *change* is a passing from one state or form to another, any act or process by which a thing becomes unlike what it was before, or the unlikeness so produced; we say a *change* was taking place, or the *change* that had taken place was manifest. *Mutation* is a more formal word for *change*, often suggesting repeated or continual *change*; as, the *mutations* of fortune. *Novelty* is a *change* to what is new, or the newness of that to which a change is made; as, he was perpetually desirous of *novelty*. *Revolution* is specifically and most commonly a *change* of government. *Variation* is a partial *change* in form, qualities, etc., but especially in position or action; as, the *variation* of the magnetic needle or of the pulse. *Variety* is a succession of *changes* or an intermixture of different things, and is always[102] thought of as agreeable. *Vicissitude* is sharp, sudden, or violent *change*, always thought of as surprising and often as disturbing or distressing; as, the *vicissitudes* of politics. *Transition* is *change* by passing from one place or state to another, especially in a natural, regular, or orderly way; as, the *transition* from spring to summer, or from youth to manhood. An *innovation* is a *change* that breaks in upon an established order or custom; as, an *innovation* in religion or politics. For the distinctions between the other words compare the synonyms for CHANGE, *v.* In the religious sense *regeneration* is the vital *renewing* of the soul by the power of the divine Spirit; *conversion* is the conscious and manifest *change* from evil to good, or from a lower to a higher spiritual state; as, in *Luke* xxii, 32, "when thou art *converted*, strengthen thy brethren." In popular use *conversion* is the most common word to express the idea of *regeneration*.

Antonyms:

constancy,
continuance,
firmness,
fixedness,
fixity,
identity,
invariability,
permanence,
persistence,
steadiness,
unchangeableness,
uniformity.

Prepositions:

We have made a change *for* the better; the change *from* winter to spring; the change *of* a liquid *to* or *into* a gas; a change *in* quality; a change *by* absorption or oxidation.

CHARACTER.

Synonyms:

constitution,
disposition,
genius,
nature,
personality,
record,
reputation,
spirit,
temper,
temperament.

Character is what one is; *reputation*, what he is thought to be; his *record* is the total of his known action or inaction. As a rule, a man's *record* will substantially express his *character*; his *reputation* may be higher or lower than his *character* or *record* will justify. *Repute* is a somewhat formal word, with the same general sense as *reputation*. One's *nature* includes all his original endowments or propensities; *character* includes both natural and acquired traits. We speak of one's physical *constitution* as strong or weak, etc., and figuratively, always with the adjective, of his mental or moral *constitution*. Compare CHARACTERISTIC.

Prepositions:

The witness has a character *for* veracity; his character is *above* suspicion; the character *of* the applicant.[103]

CHARACTERISTIC.

Synonyms:

attribute,
character,
distinction,
feature,
indication,
mark,
peculiarity,
property,
quality,
sign,
singularity,
trace,
trait.

A *characteristic* belongs to the nature or *character* of the person, thing, or class, and serves to identify an object; as, a copper-colored skin, high cheek-bones, and straight, black hair are *characteristics* of the American Indian. A *sign* is manifest to an observer; a *mark* or a *characteristic* may be more difficult to discover; an insensible person may show *signs* of life, while sometimes only close examination will disclose *marks* of violence. Pallor is ordinarily a *mark* of fear; but in some brave natures it is simply a *characteristic* of intense earnestness. *Mark* is sometimes used in a good, but often in a bad sense; we speak of the *characteristic* of a gentleman, the *mark* of a villain. Compare ATTRIBUTE; CHARACTER.

CHARMING.

Synonyms:

bewitching, delightful, enrapturing, fascinating,
captivating, enchanting, entrancing, winning.

That is *charming* or *bewitching* which is adapted to win others as by a magic spell. *Enchanting*, *enrapturing*, *entrancing* represent the influence as not only supernatural, but irresistible and *delightful*. That which is *fascinating* may win without delighting, drawing by some unseen power, as a serpent its prey; we can speak of horrible *fascination*. *Charming* applies only to what is external to oneself; *delightful* may apply to personal experiences or emotions as well; we speak of a *charming* manner, a *charming* dress, but of *delightful* anticipations. Compare AMIABLE; BEAUTIFUL.

CHASTEN.

Synonyms:

afflict, chastise, discipline, punish, refine, subdue,
castigate, correct, humble, purify, soften, try.

Castigate and *chastise* refer strictly to corporal punishment, tho both are somewhat archaic; *correct* and *punish* are often used as euphemisms in preference to either. *Punish* is distinctly retributive in sense; *chastise*, partly retributive, and partly corrective; *chasten*, wholly corrective. *Chasten* is used exclusively in the spiritual sense, and chiefly of the visitation of God.

Prepositions:

"We are chastened *of* the Lord," *1 Cor.* xi, 32; "they ...[104] chastened us *after* their own pleasure, but He *for* our profit," *Heb.* xii, 10; "chasten *in* thy hot displeasure," *Ps.* iv, 7; chasten *with* pain; *by* trials and sorrows.

CHERISH.

Synonyms:

cheer,
cling to,
comfort,
encourage,
entertain,
foster,
harbor,
hold dear,
nourish,
nurse,
nurture,
protect,
shelter,
treasure,
value.

To *cherish* is both to *hold dear* and to treat as dear. Mere unexpressed esteem would not be *cherishing*. In the marriage vow, "to love, honor, and *cherish*," the word *cherish* implies all that each can do by love and tenderness for the welfare and happiness of the other, as by support, protection, care in sickness, comfort in sorrow, sympathy, and help of every kind. To *nurse* is to tend the helpless or feeble, as infants, or the sick or wounded. To *nourish* is strictly to sustain and build up by food; to *nurture* includes careful mental and spiritual training, with something of love and tenderness; to *foster* is simply to maintain and care for, to bring up; a *foster*-child will be *nourished*, but may not be as tenderly *nurtured* or as lovingly *cherished* as if one's own. In the figurative sense, the opinion one *cherishes* he holds, not with mere cold conviction, but with loving devotion.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for ABANDON; CHASTEN.

CHOOSE.

Synonyms:

cull,
elect,
pick,
pick out,
prefer,
select.

Prefer indicates a state of desire and approval; *choose*, an act of will. Prudence or generosity may lead one to *choose* what he does not *prefer*. *Select* implies a careful consideration of the reasons for preference and choice. Among objects so nearly alike that we have no reason to *prefer* any one to another we may simply *choose* the nearest, but we could not be said to *select* it. Aside from theology, *elect* is popularly confined to the political sense; as, a free people *elect* their own rulers. *Cull*, from the Latin *colligere*, commonly means to collect, as well as to *select*. In a garden we *cull* the choicest flowers.

Antonyms:

cast away,
cast out,
decline,
disclaim,
dismiss,
leave,
refuse,
reject,
repudiate,
throw aside.

Prepositions:

Choose *from* or *from among* the number; choose *out of* the[105] army; choose *between* (or *betwixt*) two; *among* many; choose *for* the purpose.

CIRCUMLOCUTION.

Synonyms:

diffuseness,
periphrasis,
pleonasm,
prolixity,
redundance,
redundancy,
surplusage,
tautology,
tediousness,
verbiage,
verbosity,
wordiness.

Circumlocution and *periphrasis* are roundabout ways of expressing thought; *circumlocution* is the more common, *periphrasis* the more technical word. Constant *circumlocution* produces an affected and heavy style; occasionally, skilful *periphrasis* conduces both to beauty and to simplicity. Etymologically, *diffuseness* is a scattering, both of words and thought; *redundancy* is an overflow. *Prolixity* goes into endless petty details, without selection or perspective. *Pleonasm* is the expression of an idea already plainly implied; *tautology* is the restatement in other words of an idea already stated, or a useless repetition of a word or words. *Pleonasm* may add emphasis; *tautology* is always a fault. "I saw it with my eyes" is a *pleonasm*; "all the members agreed unanimously" is *tautology*. *Verbiage* is the use of mere words without thought. *Verbosity* and *wordiness* denote an excess of words in proportion to the thought. *Tediousness* is the sure result of any of these faults of style.

Antonyms:

brevity,
compactness,
compression,
conciseness,
condensation,
directness,
plainness,
shortness,
succinctness,
terseness.

CIRCUMSTANCE.

Synonyms:

accompaniment,
concomitant,
detail,
event,
fact,
feature,
incident,
item,
occurrence,
particular,
point,
position,
situation.

A *circumstance* (L. *circum*, around, and *sto*, stand), is something existing or occurring in connection with or relation to some other fact or event, modifying or throwing light upon the principal matter without affecting its essential character; an *accompaniment* is something that unites with the principal matter, tho not necessary to it; as, the piano *accompaniment* to a song; a *concomitant* goes with a thing in natural connection, but in a subordinate capacity, or perhaps in contrast; as, cheerfulness is a *concomitant* of virtue. A *circumstance* is not strictly, nor usually, an occasion, condition, effect, or result. (See these words under[106] CAUSE.) Nor is the *circumstance* properly an *incident*. (See under ACCIDENT.) We say, "My decision will depend upon *circumstances*"—not "upon *incidents*." That a man wore a blue necktie would not probably be the cause, occasion, condition, or *concomitant* of his committing murder; but it might be a very important *circumstance* in identifying him as the murderer. All the *circumstances* make up the *situation*. A certain disease is the cause of a man's death; his suffering is an *incident*; that he is in his own home, that he has good medical attendance, careful nursing, etc., are consolatory *circumstances*. With the same idea of subordination, we often say, "This is not a *circumstance* to that." So a person is said to be in easy *circumstances*. Compare EVENT.

Prepositions:

"Mere situation is expressed by '*in* the circumstances'; action affected is performed '*under* the circumstances.'" [M.]

CLASS.

Synonyms:

association,
caste,
circle,
clan,
clique,
club,
company,
coterie,
grade,
order,
rank,
set.

A *class* is a number or body of persons or objects having common pursuits, purposes, attributes, or characteristics. A *caste* is hereditary; a *class* may be independent of lineage or descent; membership in a *caste* is supposed to be for life; membership in a *class* may be very transient; a religious and ceremonial sacredness attaches to the *caste*, as not to the *class*. The rich and the poor form separate *classes*; yet individuals are constantly passing from each to the other; the *classes* in a college remain the same, but their membership changes every year. We speak of *rank* among hereditary nobility or military officers; of various *orders* of the priesthood; by accommodation, we may refer in a general way to the higher *ranks*, the lower *orders* of any society. *Grade* implies some regular scale of valuation, and some inherent qualities for which a person or thing is placed higher or lower in the scale; as, the coarser and finer *grades* of wool; a man of an inferior *grade*. A *coterie* is a small company of persons of similar tastes, who meet frequently in an informal way, rather for social enjoyment than for any serious purpose. *Clique* has always an unfavorable meaning. A *clique* is always fractional, implying some greater gathering of which it is a part; the association breaks up into *cliques*. Persons unite in a *coterie* through simple liking[107] for one another; they withdraw into a *clique* largely through aversion to outsiders. A *set*, while exclusive, is more extensive than a *clique*, and chiefly of persons who are united by common social station, etc. *Circle* is similar in meaning to *set*, but of wider application; we speak of scientific and religious as well as of social *circles*.

Prepositions:

A class *of* merchants; the senior class *at* (sometimes *of*) Harvard; the classes *in* college.

CLEANSE.

Synonyms:

brush,
clean,
disinfect,
dust,
lave,
mop,
purify,
rinse,
scour,
scrub,
sponge,
sweep,
wash,
wipe.

To *clean* is to make clean by removing dirt, impurities, or soil of any kind. *Cleanse* implies a worse condition to start from, and more to do, than *clean*. Hercules *cleansed* the Augean stables. *Cleanse* is especially applied to purifying processes where liquid is used, as in the flushing of a street, etc. We *brush* clothing if dusty, *sponge* it, or *sponge* it off, if soiled; or *sponge* off a spot. Furniture, books, etc., are *dusted*; floors are *mopped* or *scrubbed*; metallic utensils are *scoured*; a room is *swept*; soiled garments are *washed*; foul air or water is *purified*. *Cleanse* and *purify* are used extensively in a moral sense; *wash* in that sense is archaic. Compare AMEND.

Antonyms:

befoul,
besmear,
besmirch,
bespatter,
contaminate,
corrupt,
debase,
defile,
deprave,
pollute,
soil,
spoil,
stain,
sully,
taint,
vitiate.

Prepositions:

Cleanse *of* or *from* physical or moral defilement; cleanse *with* an instrument; *by* an agent; the room was cleansed *by* the attendants *with* soap and water.

CLEAR.

Synonyms:

apparent,
diaphanous,
distinct,
evident,
explicit,
intelligible,
limpid,
lucid,
manifest,
obvious,
pellucid,
perspicuous,
plain,
straightforward,
translucent,
transparent,
unadorned,
unambiguous,
unequivocal,
unmistakable.

Clear (L. *clarus*, bright, brilliant) primarily refers to that which shines, and impresses the mind through the eye with a[108] sense of luster or splendor. A substance is said to be *clear* that offers no impediment to vision—is not dim, dark, or obscure. *Transparent* refers to the medium through which a substance is seen, *clear* to the substance itself, without reference to anything to be seen through it; we speak of a stream as *clear* when we think of the water itself; we speak of it as *transparent* with reference to the ease with which we see the pebbles at the bottom. *Clear* is also said of that which comes to the senses without dimness, dulness, obstruction, or obscurity, so that there is no uncertainty as to its exact form, character, or meaning, with something of the brightness or brilliancy implied in the primary meaning of the word *clear*; as, the outlines of the ship were *clear* against the sky; a *clear* view; a *clear* note; "*clear* as a bell;" a *clear*, frosty air; a *clear* sky; a *clear* statement; hence, the word is used for that which is free from any kind of obstruction; as, a *clear* field. *Lucid* and *pellucid* refer to a shining clearness, as of crystal. A *transparent* body allows the forms and colors of objects beyond to be seen through it; a *translucent* body allows light to pass through, but may not permit forms and colors to be distinguished; plate glass is *transparent*, ground glass is *translucent*. *Limpid* refers to a liquid clearness, or that which suggests it; as, *limpid* streams. That which is *distinct* is well defined, especially in outline, each part or object standing or seeming apart from any other, not confused, indefinite, or blurred; *distinct* enunciation enables the hearer to catch every word or vocal sound without perplexity or confusion; a *distinct* statement is free from indefiniteness or ambiguity; a *distinct* apprehension of a thought leaves the mind in no doubt or uncertainty regarding it. That is *plain*, in the sense here considered, which is, as it were, level to the thought, so that one goes straight on without difficulty or hindrance; as, *plain* language; a *plain* statement; a *clear* explanation. *Perspicuous* is often equivalent to *plain*, but *plain* never wholly loses the meaning of *unadorned*, so that we can say the style is *perspicuous* tho highly ornate, when we could not call it at once ornate and *plain*. Compare EVIDENT.

Antonyms:

ambiguous,
cloudy,
dim,
dubious,
foggy,
indistinct,
mysterious,
obscure,
opaque,
turbid,
unintelligible,
vague.

Prepositions:

Clear *to* the mind; clear *in* argument; clear *of* or *from* annoyances.

---

[109]

CLEVER.

Synonyms:

able,
adroit,
apt,
bright,
capable,
dexterous,
expert,
gifted,
happy,
ingenious,
intellectual,
intelligent,
keen,
knowing,
quick,
quick-witted,
sharp,
skilful,
smart,
talented.

Clever, as used in England, especially implies an aptitude for study or learning, and for excellent tho not preeminent mental achievement. The early New England usage as implying simple and weak good nature has largely affected the use of the word throughout the United States, where it has never been much in favor. *Smart*, indicating dashing ability, is now coming to have a suggestion of unscrupulousness, similar to that of the word *sharp*, which makes its use a doubtful compliment. The discriminating use of such words as *able*, *gifted*, *talented*, etc., is greatly preferable to an excessive use of the word *clever*. Compare ACUMEN; ASTUTE; POWER.

Antonyms:

awkward,
bungling,
clumsy,
dull,
foolish,
idiotic,
ignorant,
senseless,
slow,
stupid,
thick-headed,
witless.

COLLISION.

Synonyms:

clash,
clashing,
concussion,
conflict,
contact,
encounter,
impact,
meeting,
opposition,
shock.

Collision, the act or fact of striking violently together, is the result of motion or action, and is sudden and momentary; *contact* may be a condition of rest, and be continuous and permanent; *collision* is sudden and violent *contact*. *Concussion* is often by transmitted force rather than by direct *impact*; two railway-trains come into *collision*; an explosion of dynamite shatters neighboring windows by *concussion*. *Impact* is the blow given by the striking body; as, the *impact* of the cannon-shot upon the target. An *encounter* is always violent, and generally hostile. *Meeting* is neutral, and may be of the dearest friends or of the bitterest foes; of objects, of persons, or of opinions; of two or of a multitude. *Shock* is the result of *collision*. In the figurative use, we speak of *clashing* of views, *collision* of persons. *Opposition* is used chiefly of persons, more rarely of opinions or interests; *conflict* is used indifferently of all.

Antonyms:

agreement,
amity,
coincidence,
concert,
concord,
concurrence,
conformity,
harmony,
unison,
unity.

Prepositions:

Collision *of* one object *with* another; *of* or *between* opposing objects.

---

[110]

COMFORTABLE.

Synonyms:

agreeable,
at ease,
at rest,
cheerful,
cheery,
commodious,
contented,
convenient,
genial,
pleasant,
satisfactory,
satisfied,
snug,
well-off,
well-provided,
well-to-do.

A person is *comfortable* in mind when *contented* and measurably *satisfied*. A little additional brightness makes him *cheerful*. He is *comfortable* in body when free from pain, quiet, *at ease*, *at rest*. He is *comfortable* in circumstances, or in *comfortable* circumstances, when things about him are generally *agreeable* and *satisfactory*, usually with the suggestion of sufficient means to secure that result.

Antonyms:

cheerless,
disagreeable,
discontented,
dissatisfied,
distressed,
dreary,
forlorn,
miserable,
uncomfortable,
wretched.

COMMIT.

Synonyms:

assign, confide, consign, entrust, relegate, trust.

Commit, in the sense here considered, is to give in charge, put into care or keeping; to *confide* or *entrust* is to *commit* especially to one's fidelity, *confide* being used chiefly of mental or spiritual, *entrust* also of material things; we *assign* a duty, *confide* a secret, *entrust* a treasure; we *commit* thoughts to writing; *commit* a paper to the flames, a body to the earth; a prisoner is *committed* to jail. *Consign* is a formal word in mercantile use; as, to *consign* goods to an agent. Religiously, we *consign* the body to the grave, *commit* the soul to God. Compare DO.

Prepositions:

Commit *to* a friend *for* safe-keeping; in law, commit *to* prison; *for* trial; *without* bail; in default *of* bail; *on* suspicion.

COMPANY.

Synonyms:

assemblage,
assembly,
collection,
concourse,
conference,
congregation,
convocation,
crowd,
gathering,
host,
meeting,
multitude,

conclave, convention, group, throng.

Company, from the Latin *cum*, with, and *panis*, bread, denotes primarily the association of those who eat at a common table, or the persons so associated, table-companions, messmates, friends, and hence is widely extended to include any association of those united permanently or temporarily, for business, pleasure,[111] festivity, travel, etc., or by sorrow, misfortune, or wrong; *company* may denote an indefinite number (ordinarily more than two), but less than a *multitude*; in the military sense a *company* is a limited and definite number of men; *company* implies more unity of feeling and purpose than *crowd*, and is a less formal and more familiar word than *assemblage* or *assembly*. An *assemblage* may be of persons or of objects; an *assembly* is always of persons. An *assemblage* is promiscuous and unorganized; an *assembly* is organized and united in some common purpose. A *conclave* is a secret *assembly*. A *convocation* is an *assembly* called by authority for a special purpose; the term *convention* suggests less dependence upon any superior authority or summons. A *group* is small in number and distinct in outline, clearly marked off from all else in space or time. *Collection*, *crowd*, *gathering*, *group*, and *multitude* have the unorganized and promiscuous character of the *assemblage*; the other terms come under the general idea of *assembly*. *Congregation* is now almost exclusively religious; *meeting* is often so used, but is less restricted, as we may speak of a *meeting* of armed men. *Gathering* refers to a coming together, commonly of numbers, from far and near; as, the *gathering* of the Scottish clans.

Antonyms:

dispersion,loneliness,privacy,retirement,seclusion,solitude.

COMPEL.

Synonyms:

coerce,
constrain,
drive,make,
force,necessitate,.
oblige

To *compel* one to an act is to secure its performance by the use of irresistible physical or moral force. *Force* implies primarily an actual physical process, absolutely subduing all resistance. *Coerce* implies the actual or potential use of so much force as may be necessary to secure the surrender of the will; the American secessionists contended that the Federal government had no right to *coerce* a State. *Constrain* implies the yielding of judgment and will, and in some cases of inclination or affection, to an overmastering power; as, "the love of Christ *constraineth* us," *2 Cor.* v, 14. Compare DRIVE; INFLUENCE.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for HINDER.

Prepositions:

The soldiers were compelled *to* desertion: preferably with the infinitive, compelled *to* desert.

[112]

COMPLAIN.

Synonyms:

croak,
find fault,
growl,
grumble,
grunt,
murmur,
remonstrate,
repine.

To *complain* is to give utterance to dissatisfaction or objection, express a sense of wrong or ill treatment. One *complains* of a real or assumed grievance; he may *murmur* through mere peevishness or ill temper; he *repines*, with vain distress, at the irrevocable or the inevitable. *Complaining* is by speech or writing; *murmuring* is commonly said of half-repressed utterance; *repining* of the mental act alone. One may *complain* of an offense to the offender or to others; he *remonstrates* with the offender only. *Complain* has a formal and legal meaning, which the other words have not, signifying to make a formal accusation, present a specific charge; the same is true of the noun *complaint*.

Antonyms:

applaud,
approve,
commend,
eulogize,
laud,
praise.

Prepositions:

Complain *of* a thing *to* a person; *of* one person *to* another, *of* or *against* a person *for* an act; *to* an officer; *before* the court; *about* a thing.

COMPLEX.

Synonyms:

abstruse,
complicated,
composite,
compound,
confused,
conglomerate,
entangled,
heterogeneous,
intricate,
involved,
manifold,
mingled,
mixed,
multiform,
obscure,
tangled.

That is *complex* which is made up of several connected parts. That is *compound* in which the parts are not merely connected, but fused, or otherwise combined into a single substance. In a *composite* object the different parts have less of unity than in that which is *complex* or *compound*, but maintain their distinct individuality. In a *heterogeneous* body unlike parts or particles are intermingled, often without apparent order or plan. *Conglomerate* (literally, globed together) is said of a *confused* mingling of masses or lumps of various substances. The New England pudding-stone is a *conglomerate* rock. In a *complex* object the arrangement and relation of parts may be perfectly clear; in a *complicated* mechanism the parts are so numerous, or so combined, that the mind can not readily grasp their mutual relations; in an *intricate* arrangement the parts are so intertwined that it is difficult to follow their windings; things are *involved* which are rolled[113] together so as not to be easily separated, either in thought or in fact; things which are *tangled* or *entangled* mutually hold and draw upon each other. The conception of a material object is usually *complex*, involving form, color, size, and other elements; a clock is a *complicated* mechanism; the Gordian knot was *intricate*; the twining serpents of the Laocoon are *involved*. We speak of an *abstruse* statement, a *complex* conception, a *confused* heap, a *heterogeneous* mass, a *tangled* skein, an *intricate* problem; of *composite* architecture, an *involved* sentence; of the *complicated* or *intricate* accounts of a great business, the *entangled* accounts of an incompetent or dishonest bookkeeper.

Antonyms:

clear,
direct,
homogeneous,
obvious,
plain,
simple,
uncombined,
uncompounded,
uniform,
unraveled.

CONDEMN.

Synonyms:

blame,
censure,
convict,
denounce,
doom,
reprobate,
reprove,
sentence.

To *condemn* is to pass judicial sentence or render judgment or decision against. We may *censure* silently; we *condemn* ordinarily by open and formal utterance. *Condemn* is more final than *blame* or *censure*; a *condemned* criminal has had his trial; a *condemned* building can not stand; a *condemned* ship can not sail. A person is *convicted* when his guilt is made clearly manifest to others; in somewhat archaic use, a person is said to be *convicted* when guilt is brought clearly home to his own conscience (*convict* in this sense being allied with *convince*, which see under PERSUADE); in legal usage one is said to be *convicted* only by the verdict of a jury. In stating the penalty of an offense, the legal word *sentence* is now more common than *condemn*; as, he was *sentenced* to imprisonment; but it is good usage to say, he was *condemned* to imprisonment. To *denounce* is to make public or official declaration against, especially in a violent and threatening manner.

From the pulpits in the northern States Burr was *denounced* as an assassin.

Coffin *Building the Nation* ch. 10, p. 137. [H. '83.]

To *doom* is to *condemn* solemnly and consign to evil or destruction or to predetermine to an evil destiny; an inferior race in presence of a superior is *doomed* to subjugation or extinction. Compare ARRAIGN; REPROVE.[114]

Antonyms:

absolve,
acquit,
applaud,
approve,
exonerate,
justify,
pardon,
praise.

Prepositions:

The bandit was condemned *to* death *for* his crime.

CONFESS.

Synonyms:

accept,
acknowledge,
admit,
allow,
avow,
certify,
concede,
disclose,
endorse,
grant,
own,
recognize.

We *accept* another's statement; *admit* any point made against us; *acknowledge* what we have said or done, good or bad; *avow* our individual beliefs or feelings; *certify* to facts within our knowledge; *confess* our own faults; *endorse* a friend's note or statement; *grant* a request; *own* our faults or obligations; *recognize* lawful authority; *concede* a claim. *Confess* has a high and sacred use in the religious sense; as, to *confess* Christ before men. It may have also a playful sense (often with *to*); as, one *confesses to* a weakness for confectionery. The chief present use of the word, however, is in the sense of making known to others one's own wrong-doing; in this sense *confess* is stronger than *acknowledge* or *admit*, and more specific than *own*; a person *admits* a mistake; *acknowledges* a fault; *confesses* sin or crime. Compare APOLOGY; AVOW.

Antonyms:

cloak,
conceal,
cover,
deny,
disavow,
disguise,
disown,
dissemble,
dissimulate,
hide,
mask,
repudiate,
screen,
secrete,
veil.

CONFIRM.

Synonyms:

assure,
corroborate,
establish,
fix,
prove,
ratify,
sanction,
settle,
strengthen,
substantiate,
sustain,
uphold.

Confirm (L. *con*, together, and *firmus*, firm) is to add firmness or give stability to. Both *confirm* and *corroborate* presuppose something already existing to which the confirmation or corroboration is added. Testimony is *corroborated* by concurrent testimony or by circumstances; *confirmed* by *established* facts. That which is thoroughly *proved* is said to be *established*; so is that which is official and has adequate power behind it; as, the *established* government; the *established* church. The continents are *fixed*. A treaty is *ratified*; an appointment *confirmed*. An act is *sanctioned* by any person or authority that passes upon it[115] approvingly. A statement is *substantiated*; a report *confirmed*; a controversy *settled*; the decision of a lower court *sustained* by a higher. Just government should be *upheld*. The beneficent results of Christianity *confirm* our faith in it as a divine revelation.

Antonyms:

abrogate,
annul,
cancel,
destroy,
overthrow,
shake,
shatter,
unsettle,
upset,
weaken.

Prepositions:

Confirm a statement *by* testimony; confirm a person *in* a belief.

CONGRATULATE.

Synonym:

felicitate.

To *felicitate* is to pronounce one happy or wish one joy; to *congratulate* is to express hearty sympathy in his joys or hopes. *Felicitate* is cold and formal. We say one *felicitates* himself; tho to *congratulate* oneself, which is less natural, is becoming prevalent.

Antonyms:

condole with,
console.

Prepositions:

Congratulate one *on* or *upon* his success.

CONQUER.

Synonyms:

beat,
checkmate,
humble,
master,
overthrow,
prevail over,
subject,
subjugate,

crush,
defeat,
discomfit,
down,
overcome,
overmaster,
overmatch,
overpower,
put down,
reduce,
rout,
subdue,
surmount,
vanquish,
win,
worst.

To *defeat* an enemy is to gain an advantage for the time; to *vanquish* is to win a signal victory; to *conquer* is to *overcome* so effectually that the victory is regarded as final. *Conquer*, in many cases, carries the idea of possession; as, to *conquer* respect, affection, peace, etc. A country is *conquered* when its armies are defeated and its territory is occupied by the enemy; it may be *subjected* to indemnity or to various disabilities; it is *subjugated* when it is held helplessly and continuously under military control; it is *subdued* when all resistance has died out. An army is *defeated* when forcibly driven back; it is *routed* when it is converted into a mob of fugitives. Compare BEAT.

Antonyms:

capitulate,
cede,
fail,
fall,
fly,
forfeit,
lose,
resign,
retire,
retreat,
submit,
succumb,
surrender,
yield.

CONSCIOUS.

Synonyms:

advised,
apprised,
assured,
aware,
certain,
certified,
cognizant,
informed,
sensible,
sure.

One is *aware* of that which exists without him; he is *conscious* of the inner workings of his own mind. *Sensible* may be used in the exact sense of *conscious*, or it may partake of both the senses mentioned above. One may be *sensible* of his own or another's error; he is *conscious* only of his own. A person may feel *assured* or *sure* of something false or non-existent; what he is *aware* of, still more what he is *conscious* of, must be fact. *Sensible* has often a reference to the emotions where *conscious* might apply only to the intellect; to say a culprit is *sensible* of his degradation is more forcible than to say he is *conscious* of it.

Antonyms:

cold,dead,deaf,ignorant,insensible,unaware,unconscious.

Preposition:

On the stormy sea, man is conscious *of* the limitation of human power.

CONSEQUENCE.

Synonyms:

consequent, end, issue, outgrowth, sequel,
effect, event, outcome, result, upshot.

Effect is the strongest of these words; it is that which is directly produced by the action of an efficient cause; we say, "Every *effect* must have an adequate cause" (compare CAUSE). In regard to human actions, *effect* commonly relates to intention; as, the shot took *effect*, *i. e.*, the *effect* intended. A *consequence* is that which follows an act naturally, but less directly than the *effect*. The motion of the piston is the *effect*, and the agitation of the water under the paddle-wheels a *consequence* of the expansion of steam in the cylinder. The *result* is, literally, the rebound of an act, depending on many elements; the *issue* is that which flows forth directly; we say the *issue* of a battle, the *result* of a campaign. A *consequent* commonly is that which follows simply in order of time, or by logical inference. The *end* is the actual *outcome* without determination of its relation to what has gone before; it is ordinarily viewed as either the necessary, natural, or logical *outcome*, any *effect*, *consequence*, or *result* being termed an *end*; as, the *end* of such a course must be ruin. The *event* (L. *e*, out, and *venio*, come) is primarily exactly the same in meaning as *outcome*; but in use it is more nearly equivalent to *upshot*[117] signifying the sum and substance of all *effects*, *consequences*, and *results* of a course of action. Compare ACCIDENT; CAUSE; CIRCUMSTANCE; END; EVENT.

CONSOLE.

Synonyms:

comfort, condole with, encourage, sympathize with.

One *condoles with* another by the expression of kindly sympathy in his trouble; he *consoles* him by considerations adapted to soothe and sustain the spirit, as by the assurances and promises of the gospel; he *encourages* him by the hope of some relief or deliverance; he *comforts* him by whatever act or word tends to bring mind or body to a state of rest and cheer. We *sympathize with* others, not only in sorrow, but in joy. Compare ALLEVIATE; PITY.

Antonyms:

annoy, distress, disturb, grieve, hurt, sadden, trouble, wound.

CONTAGION.

Synonym:

infection.

Infection is frequently confused with *contagion*, even by medical men. The best usage now limits *contagion* to diseases that are transmitted by contact with the diseased person, either directly by touch or indirectly by use of the same articles, by breath, effluvia, etc. *Infection* is applied to diseases produced by no known or definable influence of one person upon another, but where common climatic, malarious, or other wide-spread conditions are believed to be chiefly instrumental.

CONTINUAL.

Synonyms:

ceaseless,
constant,
continuous,
incessant,
invariable,
perpetual,
regular,
unbroken,
unceasing,
uninterrupted,
unremitting,
unvarying.

Continuous describes that which is absolutely without pause or break; *continual*, that which often intermits, but as regularly begins again. A *continuous* beach is exposed to the *continual* beating of the waves. A similar distinction is made between *incessant* and *ceaseless*. The *incessant* discharge of firearms makes the *ceaseless* roar of battle. *Constant* is sometimes used in the sense of *continual*; but its chief uses are mental and moral.

[118]

CONTRACT.

Synonyms:

agreement,
arrangement,
bargain,
cartel,
compact,
covenant,
engagement,
obligation,
pact,
pledge,
promise,
stipulation.

All these words involve at least two parties, tho an *engagement* or *promise* may be the act of but one. A *contract* is a formal agreement between two or more parties for the doing or leaving undone some specified act or acts, and is ordinarily in writing. Mutual *promises* may have the force of a *contract*. A consideration, or compensation, is essential to convert an *agreement* into a *contract*. A *contract* may be oral or written. A *covenant* in law is a written *contract* under seal. *Covenant* is frequent in religious usage, as *contract* is in law and business. *Compact* is essentially the same as *contract*, but is applied to international *agreements*, treaties, etc. A *bargain* is a mutual *agreement* for an exchange of values, without the formality of a *contract*. A *stipulation* is a single item in an *agreement* or *contract*. A *cartel* is a military *agreement* for the exchange of prisoners or the like.

CONTRAST.

Synonyms:

compare,differentiate,discriminate,oppose.

To *compare* (L. *con*, together, and *par*, equal) is to place together in order to show likeness or unlikeness; to *contrast* (L. *contra*, against, and *sto*, stand) is to set in opposition in order to show unlikeness. We *contrast* objects that have been already *compared*. We must *compare* them, at least momentarily, even to know that they are different. We *contrast* them when we observe their unlikeness in a general way; we *differentiate* them when we note the difference exactly and point by point. We distinguish objects when we note a difference that may fall short of *contrast*; we *discriminate* them when we classify or place them according to their differences.

Preposition:

We contrast one object *with* another.

CONVERSATION.

Synonyms:

chat,
colloquy,
communication,
communion,
confabulation,
conference,
converse,
dialogue,
discourse,
intercourse,
parley,
talk.

Conversation (Latin *con*, with) is, etymologically, an interchange of ideas with some other person or persons. *Talk* may be[119] wholly one-sided. Many brilliant talkers have been incapable of *conversation*. There may be *intercourse* without *conversation*, as by looks, signs, etc.; *communion* is of hearts, with or without words; *communication* is often by writing, and may be uninvited and unreciprocated. *Talk* may denote the mere utterance of words with little thought; thus, we say idle *talk*, empty *talk*, rather than idle or empty *conversation*. *Discourse* is now applied chiefly to public addresses. A *conference* is more formal than a *conversation*. *Dialog* denotes ordinarily an artificial or imaginary *conversation*, generally of two persons, but sometimes of more. A *colloquy* is indefinite as to number, and generally somewhat informal. Compare BEHAVIOR.

Prepositions:

Conversation *with* friends; *between* or *among* the guests; *about* a matter.

CONVERT.

Synonyms:

disciple,neophyte,proselyte.

The name *disciple* is given to the follower of a certain faith, without reference to any previous belief or allegiance; a *convert* is a person who has come to one faith from a different belief or from unbelief. A *proselyte* is one who has been led to accept a religious system, whether with or without true faith; a *convert* is always understood to be a believer. A *neophyte* is a new *convert*, not yet fully indoctrinated, or not admitted to full privileges. The antonyms *apostate*, *pervert*, and *renegade* are condemnatory names applied to the *convert* by those whose faith he forsakes.

CONVEY.

Synonyms:

carry, give, remove,shift, transmit,
change,move,sell, transfer,transport.

Convey, *transmit*, and *transport* all imply delivery at a destination; as, I will *convey* the information to your friend; air *conveys* sound (to a listener); *carry* does not necessarily imply delivery, and often does not admit of it. A man *carries* an appearance, *conveys* an impression, the appearance remaining his own, the impression being given to another; I will *transmit* the letter; *transport* the goods. A horse *carries* his mane and tail, but does not *convey* them. *Transfer* may or may not imply delivery to another person; as, items may be *transferred* from one account to another[120] or a word *transferred* to the following line. In law, real estate, which can not be moved, is *conveyed* by simply *transferring* title and possession. *Transport* usually refers to material, *transfer*, *transmit*, and *convey* may refer to immaterial objects; we *transfer* possession, *transmit* intelligence, *convey* ideas, but do not *transport* them. In the case of *convey* the figurative sense now predominates. Compare CARRY.

Antonyms:

cling to,hold,keep,possess,preserve,retain.

Prepositions:

Convey *to* a friend, a purchaser, etc.; convey *from* the house *to* the station; convey *by* express, *by* hand, etc.

CONVOKE.

Synonyms:

assemble,
call,
call together,
collect,
convene,
gather,
muster,
summon.

A convention is *called* by some officer or officers, as by its president, its executive committee, or some eminent leaders; the delegates are *assembled* or *convened* in a certain place, at a certain hour. *Convoke* implies an organized body and a superior authority; *assemble* and *convene* express more independent action; Parliament is *convoked*; Congress *assembles*. Troops are *mustered*; witnesses and jurymen are *summoned*.

Antonyms:

adjourn,
break up,
disband,
discharge,
dismiss,
disperse,
dissolve,
prorogue,
scatter,
separate.

CRIMINAL.

Synonyms:

abominable,
culpable,
felonious,
flagitious,
guilty,
illegal,
immoral,
iniquitous,
nefarious,
sinful,
unlawful,
vicious,
vile,
wicked,
wrong.

Every *criminal* act is *illegal* or *unlawful*, but *illegal* or *unlawful* acts may not be *criminal*. Offenses against public law are *criminal*; offenses against private rights are merely *illegal* or *unlawful*. As a general rule, all acts punishable by fine or imprisonment or both, are *criminal* in view of the law. It is *illegal* for a man to trespass on another's land, but it is not *criminal*; the trespasser is liable to a civil suit for damages, but not to indictment, fine, or imprisonment. A *felonious* act is a *criminal* act of an aggravated kind, which is punishable by imprisonment in the penitentiary or by death. A *flagitious* crime is one that brings[121] public odium. *Vicious* refers to the indulgence of evil appetites, habits, or passions; *vicious* acts are not necessarily *criminal*, or even *illegal*; we speak of a *vicious* horse. That which is *iniquitous*, *i. e.*, contrary to equity, may sometimes be done under the forms of law. Ingratitude is *sinful*, hypocrisy is *wicked*, but neither is punishable by human law; hence, neither is *criminal* or *illegal*. Compare SIN.

Antonyms:

innocent,
just,
lawful,
legal,
meritorious,
moral,
right,
virtuous.

DAILY.

Synonym:

diurnal.

Daily is the Saxon and popular, *diurnal* the Latin and scientific term. In strict usage, *daily* is the antonym of *nightly* as *diurnal* is of *nocturnal*. *Daily* is not, however, held strictly to this use; a physician makes *daily* visits if he calls at some time within each period of twenty-four hours. *Diurnal* is more exact in all its uses; a *diurnal* flower opens or blooms only in daylight; a *diurnal* bird or animal flies or ranges only by day: in contradistinction to *nocturnal* flowers, birds, etc. A *diurnal* motion exactly fills an astronomical day or the time of one rotation of a planet on its axis, while a *daily* motion is much less definite.

Antonyms:

nightly,nocturnal.

DANGER.

Synonyms:

hazard,insecurity,jeopardy,peril,risk.

Danger is exposure to possible evil, which may be either near and probable or remote and doubtful; *peril* is exposure to imminent and sharply threatening evil, especially to such as results from violence. An invalid may be in *danger* of consumption; a disarmed soldier is in *peril* of death. *Jeopardy* is nearly the same as *peril*, but involves, like *risk*, more of the element of chance or uncertainty; a man tried upon a capital charge is said to be put in *jeopardy* of life. *Insecurity* is a feeble word, but exceedingly broad, applying to the placing of a dish, or the possibilities of a life, a fortune, or a government. Compare HAZARD.

Antonyms:

defense,immunity,protection,safeguard,safety,security,shelter.

---

[122]

DARK.

Synonyms:

black,
dim,
dismal,
dusky,
gloomy,
murky,
mysterious,
obscure,
opaque,
sable,
shadowy,
shady,
somber,
swart,
swarthy.

Strictly, that which is *black* is absolutely destitute of color; that which is *dark* is absolutely destitute of light. In common speech, however, a coat is *black*, tho not optically colorless; the night is *dark*, tho the stars shine. That is *obscure*, *shadowy*, or *shady* from which the light is more or less cut off. *Dusky* is applied to objects which appear as if viewed in fading light; the word is often used, as are *swart* and *swarthy*, of the human skin when quite *dark*, or even verging toward *black*. *Dim* refers to imperfection of outline, from distance, darkness, mist, etc., or from some defect of vision. *Opaque* objects, as smoked glass, are impervious to light. *Murky* is said of that which is at once *dark*, *obscure*, and *gloomy*; as, a *murky* den; a *murky* sky. Figuratively, *dark* is emblematic of sadness, agreeing with *somber*, *dismal*, *gloomy*, also of moral evil; as, a *dark* deed. Of intellectual matters, *dark* is now rarely used in the old sense of a *dark* saying, etc. See MYSTERIOUS; OBSCURE.

Antonyms:

bright,
brilliant,
clear,
crystalline,
dazzling,
gleaming,
glowing,
illumined,
light,
lucid,
luminous,
radiant,
shining,
transparent,
white.

Compare synonyms for LIGHT.

DECAY.

Synonyms:

corrupt,decompose,molder,putrefy,rot,spoil.

Rot is a strong word, ordinarily esteemed coarse, but on occasion capable of approved emphatic use; as, "the name of the wicked shall *rot*," *Prov.* x, 7; *decay* and *decompose* are now common euphemisms. A substance is *decomposed* when resolved into its original elements by any process; it is *decayed* when resolved into its original elements by natural processes; it *decays* gradually, but may be instantly *decomposed*, as water into oxygen and hydrogen; to say that a thing is *decayed* may denote only a partial result, but to say it is *decomposed* ordinarily implies that the change is complete or nearly so. *Putrefy* and the adjectives *putrid* and *putrescent*, and the nouns *putridity* and *putrescence*, are used almost exclusively of animal matter in a state of decomposition, the more general word *decay* being used of either animal or vegetable substances.

---

[123]

DECEPTION.

Synonyms:

craft,
cunning,
deceit,
deceitfulness,
delusion,
dissimulation,
double-dealing,
duplicity,
fabrication,
falsehood,
finesse,
fraud,
guile,
hypocrisy,
imposition,
lie,
lying,
prevarication,
trickery,
untruth.

Deceit is the habit, *deception* the act; *guile* applies to the disposition out of which *deceit* and *deception* grow, and also to their actual practise. A *lie*, *lying*, or *falsehood*, is the uttering of what one knows to be false with intent to deceive. The novel or drama is not a *lie*, because not meant to deceive; the ancient teaching that the earth was flat was not a *lie*, because not then known to be false. *Untruth* is more than lack of accuracy, implying always lack of veracity; but it is a somewhat milder and more dignified word than *lie*. *Falsehood* and *lying* are in utterance; *deceit* and *deception* may be merely in act or implication. *Deception* may be innocent, and even unintentional, as in the case of an optical illusion; *deceit* always involves injurious intent. *Craft* and *cunning* have not necessarily any moral quality; they are common traits of animals, but stand rather low in the human scale. *Duplicity* is the habitual speaking or acting with intent to appear to mean what one does not. *Dissimulation* is rather a concealing of what is than a pretense of what is not. *Finesse* is simply an adroit and delicate management of a matter for one's own side, not necessarily involving *deceit*. Compare ARTIFICE; FICTION; FRAUD; HYPOCRISY.

Antonyms:

candor,
fair dealing,
frankness,
guilelessness,
honesty,
openness,
simplicity,
sincerity,
truth,
veracity.

DEFENSE.

Synonyms:

apology,
bulwark,
fortress,
guard,
justification,
protection,
rampart,
resistance,
safeguard,
shelter,
shield,
vindication.

The weak may speak or act in *defense* of the strong; none but the powerful can assure others of *protection*. A *defense* is ordinarily against actual attack; *protection* is against possible as well as actual dangers. We speak of *defense* against an assault, *protection* from the cold. *Vindication* is a triumphant *defense* of character and conduct against charges of error or wrong. Compare APOLOGY.

Antonyms:

abandonment,
betrayal,
capitulation,
desertion,
flight,
surrender.

Prepositions:

Defense *against* assault or assailants; in law, defense *to* an action, *from* the testimony.

DEFILE.

Synonyms:

befoul,
contaminate,
corrupt,
infect,
pollute,
soil,
spoil,
stain,
sully,
taint,
tarnish,
vitiate.

The hand may be *defiled* by a touch of pitch; swine that have been wallowing in the mud are *befouled*. *Contaminate* and *infect* refer to something evil that deeply pervades and permeates, as the human body or mind. *Pollute* is used chiefly of liquids; as, water *polluted* with sewage. *Tainted* meat is repulsive; *infected* meat contains germs of disease. A *soiled* garment may be cleansed by washing; a *spoiled* garment is beyond cleansing or repair. Bright metal is *tarnished* by exposure; a fair sheet is *sullied* by a dirty hand. In figurative use, *defile* may be used merely in the ceremonial sense; "they themselves went not into the judgment hall, lest they should be *defiled*," *John* xviii, 28; *contaminate* refers to deep spiritual injury. *Pollute* has also a reference to sacrilege; as, to *pollute* a sanctuary, an altar, or an ordinance. The innocent are often *contaminated* by association with the wicked; the vicious are more and more *corrupted* by their own excesses. We speak of a *vitiated* taste or style; fraud *vitiates* a title or a contract.

Antonyms:

clean,cleanse,disinfect,hallow,purify,sanctify,wash.

Prepositions:

The temple was defiled *with* blood; defiled *by* sacrilegious deeds.

DEFINITION.

Synonyms:

comment,
commentary,
description,
explanation,
exposition,
interpretation,
rendering,
translation.

A *definition* is exact, an *explanation* general; a *definition* is formal, a *description* pictorial. A *definition* must include all that belongs to the object defined, and exclude all that does not; a *description* may include only some general features; an *explanation* may simply throw light upon some point of special difficulty. An *exposition* undertakes to state more fully what is compactly given or only implied in the text; as, an *exposition* of Scripture. *Interpretation* is ordinarily from one language into another, or from the language of one period into that of another; it may also[125] be a statement giving the doubtful or hidden meaning of that which is recondite or perplexing; as, the *interpretation* of a dream, a riddle, or of some difficult passage. *Definition*, *explanation*, *exposition*, and *interpretation* are ordinarily blended in a *commentary,* which may also include *description*. A *comment* is upon a single passage; a *commentary* may be the same, but is usually understood to be a volume of *comments*.

DELEGATE.

Synonyms:

deputy,legate,proxy,representative,substitute.

These words agree in designating one who acts in the place of some other or others. The *legate* is an ecclesiastical officer representing the Pope. In strict usage the *deputy* or *delegate* is more limited in functions and more closely bound by instructions than a *representative*. A single officer may have a *deputy*; many persons combine to choose a *delegate* or *representative*. In the United States informal assemblies send *delegates* to nominating conventions with no legislative authority; *representatives* are legally elected to Congress and the various legislatures, with lawmaking power.

DELIBERATE.

Synonyms:

confer, consult,meditate,reflect,
consider,debate, ponder, weigh.

An individual *considers*, *meditates*, *ponders*, *reflects*, by himself; he *weighs* a matter in his own mind, and is sometimes said even to *debate* with himself. *Consult* and *confer* always imply two or more persons, as does *debate*, unless expressly limited as above. *Confer* suggests the interchange of counsel, advice, or information; *consult* indicates almost exclusively the receiving of it. A man *confers* with his associates about a new investment; he *consults* his physician about his health; he may *confer* with him on matters of general interest. He *consults* a dictionary, but does not *confer* with it. *Deliberate*, which can be applied to a single individual, is also the word for a great number, while *consult* is ordinarily limited to a few; a committee *consults*; an assembly *deliberates*. *Deliberating* always carries the idea of slowness; *consulting* is compatible with haste; we can speak of a hasty consultation, not of a hasty deliberation. *Debate* implies opposing views; *deliberate*, simply a gathering and balancing of[126] all facts and reasons. We *consider* or *deliberate* with a view to action, while *meditation* may be quite purposeless.

Prepositions:

We deliberate *on* or *upon*, also *about* or *concerning* a matter: the first two are preferable.

DELICIOUS.

Synonyms:

dainty, delightful, exquisite, luscious, savory.

That is *delicious* which affords a gratification at once vivid and delicate to the senses, especially to those of taste and smell; as, *delicious* fruit; a *delicious* odor; *luscious* has a kindred but more fulsome meaning, inclining toward a cloying excess of sweetness or richness. *Savory* is applied chiefly to cooked food made palatable by spices and condiments. *Delightful* may be applied to the higher gratifications of sense, as *delightful* music, but is chiefly used for that which is mental and spiritual. *Delicious* has a limited use in this way; as, a *delicious* bit of poetry; the word is sometimes used ironically for some pleasing absurdity; as, this is *delicious*! Compare DELIGHTFUL.

Antonyms:

acrid, bitter, loathsome, nauseous, repulsive, unpalatable, unsavory.

DELIGHTFUL.

Synonyms:

acceptable,
agreeable,
congenial,
delicious,
grateful,
gratifying,
pleasant,
pleasing,
pleasurable,
refreshing,
satisfying,
welcome.

Agreeable refers to whatever gives a mild degree of pleasure; as, an *agreeable* perfume. *Acceptable* indicates a thing to be worthy of acceptance; as, an *acceptable* offering. *Grateful* is stronger than *agreeable* or *gratifying*, indicating whatever awakens a feeling akin to gratitude. A *pleasant* face and *pleasing* manners arouse *pleasurable* sensations, and make the possessor an *agreeable* companion; if possessed of intelligence, vivacity, and goodness, such a person's society will be *delightful*. Criminals may find each other's company *congenial*, but scarcely *delightful*. *Satisfying* denotes anything that is received with calm acquiescence, as substantial food, or established truth. That is *welcome* which is received with joyful heartiness; as, *welcome* tidings. Compare BEAUTIFUL; CHARMING; DELICIOUS.

Antonyms:

depressing,
disappointing,
distressing,
hateful,
horrible,
melancholy,
miserable,
mournful,
painful,
saddening,
woful,
wretched.

DELUSION.

Synonyms:

error,fallacy,hallucination,illusion,phantasm.

A *delusion* is a mistaken conviction, an *illusion* a mistaken perception or inference. An *illusion* may be wholly of the senses; a *delusion* always involves some mental error. In an optical *illusion* the observer sees either what does not exist, or what exists otherwise than as he sees it, as when in a mirage distant springs and trees appear close at hand. We speak of the *illusions* of fancy or of hope, but of the *delusions* of the insane. A *hallucination* is a false image or belief which has nothing, outside of the disordered mind, to suggest it; as, the *hallucinations* of delirium tremens. Compare DECEPTION; INSANITY.

Antonyms:

actuality,certainty,fact,reality,truth,verity.

DEMOLISH.

Synonyms:

destroy,overthrow,overturn,raze,ruin.

A building, monument, or other structure is *demolished* when reduced to a shapeless mass; it is *razed* when leveled with the ground; it is *destroyed* when its structural unity is gone, whether or not its component parts remain. An edifice is *destroyed* by fire or earthquake; it is *demolished* by bombardment; it is *ruined* when, by violence or neglect, it has become unfit for human habitation. Compare ABOLISH; BREAK.

Antonyms:

build,construct,create,make,repair,restore.

DEMONSTRATION.

Synonyms:

certainty, conclusion, consequence, deduction, evidence, induction, inference, proof.

Demonstration, in the strict and proper sense, is the highest form of *proof*, and gives the most absolute *certainty*, but can not be applied outside of pure mathematics or other strictly deductive reasoning; there can be *proof* and *certainty*, however, in matters that do not admit of *demonstration*. A *conclusion* is the absolute and necessary result of the admission of certain premises; an *inference* is a probable *conclusion* toward which known facts, statements, or admissions point, but which they do not absolutely establish; sound premises, together with their necessary *conclusion*, constitute a *demonstration*. *Evidence* is that which[128] tends to show a thing to be true; in the widest sense, as including self-*evidence* or consciousness, it is the basis of all knowledge. *Proof* in the strict sense is complete, irresistible *evidence*; as, there was much *evidence* against the accused, but not amounting to *proof* of guilt. Moral *certainty* is a conviction resting on such *evidence* as puts a matter beyond reasonable doubt, while not so irresistible as *demonstration*. Compare HYPOTHESIS; INDUCTION.

DESIGN.

Synonyms:

aim,
device,
end,
final cause,
intent,
intention,
object,
plan,
project,
proposal,
purpose,
scheme.

Design refers to the adaptation of means to an *end*, the correspondence and coordination of parts, or of separate acts, to produce a result; *intent* and *purpose* overleap all particulars, and fasten on the *end* itself. *Intention* is simply the more familiar form of the legal and philosophical *intent*. *Plan* relates to details of form, structure, and action, in themselves; *design* considers these same details all as a means to an *end*. The *plan* of a campaign may be for a series of sharp attacks, with the *design* of thus surprising and overpowering the enemy. A man comes to a fixed *intention* to kill his enemy; he forms a *plan* to entrap him into his power, with the *design* of then compassing his death; as the law can not read the heart, it can only infer the *intent* from the evidences of *design*. *Intent* denotes a straining, stretching forth toward an *object*; *purpose* simply the placing it before oneself; hence, we speak of the *purpose* rather than the *intent* or *intention* of God. We hold that the marks of *design* in nature prove it the work of a great Designer. *Intention* contemplates the possibility of failure; *purpose* looks to assured success; *intent* or *intention* refers especially to the state of mind of the actor; *purpose* to the result of the action. Compare AIM; CAUSE; IDEA; MODEL.

Prepositions:

The design *of* defrauding; the design *of* a building; a design *for* a statue.

DESIRE.

Synonyms:

appetency, concupiscence, hankering, proclivity,

appetite,
aspiration,
coveting,
craving,
inclination,
longing,
propensity,
wish.

Inclination is the mildest of these terms; it is a quiet, or even a vague or unconscious, tendency. Even when we speak of a[129] strong or decided *inclination* we do not express the intensity of *desire*. *Desire* has a wide range, from the highest objects to the lowest; *desire* is for an object near at hand, or near in thought, and viewed as attainable; a *wish* may be for what is remote or uncertain, or even for what is recognized as impossible. *Craving* is stronger than *hankering*; *hankering* may be the result of a fitful and capricious *appetite*; *craving* may be the imperious and reasonable demand of the whole nature. *Longing* is a reaching out with deep and persistent demand for that which is viewed as now distant but at some time attainable; as, the captive's *longing* for release. *Coveting* ordinarily denotes wrong *desire* for that which is another's. Compare APPETITE.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for ANTIPATHY.

Prepositions:

The desire *of* fame; a desire *for* excellence.

DESPAIR.

Synonyms:

desperation,
despondency,
discouragement,
hopelessness.

Discouragement is the result of so much repulse or failure as wears out courage. *Discouragements* too frequent and long continued may produce a settled *hopelessness*. *Hopelessness* is negative, and may result from simple apathy; *despondency* and *despair* are more emphatic and decided. *Despondency* is an incapacity for the present exercise of hope; *despair* is the utter abandonment of hope. *Despondency* relaxes energy and effort and is always attended with sadness or distress; *despair* may produce a stony calmness, or it may lead to *desperation*. *Desperation* is energized *despair*, vigorous in action, reckless of consequences.

Antonyms:

anticipation,
assurance,
cheer,
confidence,
courage,
elation,
encouragement,
expectancy,
expectation,
hope,
hopefulness,
trust.

DEXTERITY.

Synonyms:

adroitness, aptitude, cleverness, expertness, readiness, skill.

Adroitness (F. *à*, to, and *droit*, right) and *dexterity* (L. *dexter*, right, right-hand) might each be rendered "right-handedness;" but *adroitness* carries more of the idea of eluding, parrying, or checking some hostile movement, or taking advantage of another in controversy; *dexterity* conveys the idea of doing, accomplishing something readily and well, without reference to any action[130] of others. We speak of *adroitness* in fencing, boxing, or debate; of *dexterity* in horsemanship, in the use of tools, weapons, etc. *Aptitude* (L. *aptus*, fit, fitted) is a natural *readiness*, which by practise may be developed into *dexterity*. *Skill* is more exact to line, rule, and method than *dexterity*. *Dexterity* can not be communicated, and, oftentimes can not even be explained by its possessor; *skill* to a very great extent can be imparted; "*skilled* workmen" in various trades are numbered by thousands. Compare ADDRESS; CLEVER; POWER; SKILFUL.

Prepositions:

Dexterity *of* hand, *of* movement, *of* management; *with* the pen; *in* action, *in* manipulating men; *at* cards.

DICTION.

Synonyms:

expression,	phrase,	style,	vocabulary,
language,	phraseology,	verbiage,	wording.

An author's *diction* is strictly his choice and use of words, with no special reference to thought; *expression* regards the words simply as the vehicle of the thought. *Phrase* and *phraseology* apply to words or combinations of words which are somewhat technical; as, in legal *phraseology*; in military *phrase*. *Diction* is general; *wording* is limited; we speak of the *diction* of an author or of a work, the *wording* of a proposition, of a resolution, etc. *Verbiage* never bears this sense (see CIRCUMLOCUTION.) The *language* of a writer or speaker may be the national speech he employs; as, the English or French *language*; or the word may denote his use of that *language*; as, the author's *language* is well (or ill) chosen. *Style* includes *diction*, *expression*, rhetorical figures such as metaphor and simile, the effect of an author's prevailing tone of thought, of his personal traits—in short, all that makes up the clothing of thought in words; thus, we speak of a figurative *style*, a frigid or an argumentative *style*, etc., or of the *style* of Macaulay, Prescott, or others. An author's *vocabulary* is the range of words which he brings into his use. Compare LANGUAGE.

DIE.

Synonyms:

cease,
decease,
decline,
depart,
expire,
fade,
perish,
wither.

Die, to go out of life, become destitute of vital power and[131] action, is figuratively applied to anything which has the appearance of life.

Where the *dying* night-lamp flickers.

Tennyson *Locksley Hall* st. 40.

An echo, a strain of music, a tempest, a topic, an issue, *dies*. *Expire* (literally, to breathe out) is a softer word for *die*; it is used figuratively of things that *cease* to exist by reaching a natural limit; as, a lease *expires*; the time has *expired*. To *perish* (literally, in Latin, to go through, as in English we say, "the fire goes out") is oftenest used of death by privation or exposure; as, "I *perish* with hunger," *Luke* xv, 17; sometimes, of death by violence. Knowledge and fame, art and empires, may be said to *perish*; the word denotes utter destruction and decay.

Antonyms:

be born,
begin,
be immortal,
come into being,
come to life,
exist,
flourish,
grow,
live,
rise again,
rise from the dead,
survive.

Prepositions:

To die *of* fever; *by* violence; rarely, *with* the sword, famine, etc. (*Ezek.* vii, 15); to die *for* one's country; to die *at* sea; *in* one's bed; *in* agony; die *to* the world.

DIFFERENCE.

Synonyms:

contrariety,
contrast,
disagreement,
discrepancy,
discrimination,
disparity,
dissimilarity,
dissimilitude,
distinction,
divergence,
diversity,
inconsistency,
inequality,
unlikeness,
variation,
variety.

Difference is the state or quality of being unlike or the amount of such unlikeness. A *difference* is in the things compared; a *discrimination* is in our judgment of them; a *distinction* is in our definition or description or mental image of them. Careful *discrimination* of real *differences* results in clear *distinctions*. *Disparity* is stronger than *inequality*, implying that one thing falls far below another; as, the *disparity* of our achievements when compared with our ideals. *Dissimilarity* is between things sharply contrasted; there may be a *difference* between those almost alike. There is a *discrepancy* in accounts that fail to balance. *Variety* involves more than two objects; so, in general, does *diversity*; *variation* is a *difference* in the condition or action of the same object at different times. *Disagreement* is not merely the lack, but the opposite, of agreement; it is a mild word for opposition and conflict; *difference* is sometimes used in the same sense.

[132]

Antonyms:

agreement, harmony, likeness, sameness, uniformity,
consonance, identity, resemblance, similarity, unity.

Prepositions:

Difference *between* the old and the new; differences *among* men; a difference *in* character; *of* action; *of* style; (less frequently) a difference (controversy) *with* a person; a difference *of* one thing *from* (incorrectly *to*) another.

DIFFICULT.

Synonyms:

arduous, hard, onerous, toilsome,
exhausting, laborious, severe, trying.

Arduous (L. *arduus*, steep) signifies primarily so steep and lofty as to be difficult of ascent, and hence applies to that which involves great and sustained exertion and ordinarily for a lofty aim; great learning can only be won by *arduous* toil. *Hard* applies to anything that resists our endeavors as a scarcely penetrable mass resists our physical force. Anything is *hard* that involves tax and strain whether of the physical or mental powers. *Difficult* is not used of that which merely taxes physical force; a dead lift is called *hard* rather than *difficult*; breaking stone on the road would be called *hard* rather than *difficult* work; that is *difficult* which involves skill, sagacity, or address, with or without a considerable expenditure of physical force; a geometrical problem may be *difficult* to solve, a tangled skein to unravel; a mountain *difficult* to ascend. *Hard* may be active or passive; a thing may be *hard* to do or *hard* to bear. *Arduous* is always active. That which is *laborious* or *toilsome* simply requires the steady application of labor or toil till accomplished; *toilsome* is the stronger word. That which is *onerous* (L. *onus*, a burden) is mentally burdensome or oppressive. Responsibility may be *onerous* even when it involves no special exertion.

Antonyms:

easy, facile, light, pleasant, slight, trifling, trivial.

DIRECTION.

Synonyms:

aim, bearing, course, inclination, tendency, way.

The *direction* of an object is the line of motion or of vision toward it, or the line in which the object is moving, considered from our own actual or mental standpoint. *Way*, literally the road or path, comes naturally to mean the *direction* of the road or path;[133] conversationally, *way* is almost a perfect synonym of *direction*; as, which *way* did he go? or, in which *direction*? *Bearing* is the *direction* in which an object is seen with reference to another, and especially with reference to the points of the compass. *Course* is the *direction* of a moving object; *inclination*, that toward which a stationary object leans; *tendency*, the *direction* toward which anything stretches or reaches out; *tendency* is stronger and more active than *inclination*. Compare AIM; CARE; ORDER; OVERSIGHT.

DISCERN.

Synonyms:

behold, discriminate, observe, recognize,
descry, distinguish, perceive, see.

What we *discern* we *see* apart from all other objects; what we *discriminate* we judge apart; what we *distinguish* we mark apart, or recognize by some special mark or manifest difference. We *discriminate* by real differences; we *distinguish* by outward signs; an officer is readily *distinguished* from a common soldier by his uniform. Objects may be dimly *discerned* at twilight, when yet we can not clearly *distinguish* one from another. We *descry* (originally *espy*) what is difficult to discover. Compare DISCOVER; LOOK.

DISCOVER.

Synonyms:

ascertain, detect, disclose, ferret out, find out,
descry, discern, expose, find, invent.

Of human actions or character, *detect* is used, almost without exception, in a bad sense; *discover* may be used in either the good or the bad sense, oftener in the good; he was *detected* in a fraud; real merit is sure to be *discovered*. In scientific language, *detect* is used of delicate indications that appear in course of careful watching; as, a slight fluttering of the pulse could be *detected*. We *discover* what has existed but has not been known to us; we *invent* combinations or arrangements not before in use; Columbus *discovered* America; Morse *invented* the electric telegraph. *Find* is the most general word for every means of coming to know what was not before certainly known. A man *finds* in the road some stranger's purse, or *finds* his own which he is searching for. The expert *discovers* or *detects* an error in an account; the auditor *finds* the account to be correct. Compare DISCERN.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for HIDE.

---

[134]

DISEASE.

Synonyms:

affection,
ailment,
complaint,
disorder,
distemper,
illness,
indisposition,
infirmity,
malady,
sickness,
unhealthiness,
unsoundness.

Disease is the general term for any deviation from health; in a more limited sense it denotes some definite morbid condition; *disorder* and *affection* are rather partial and limited; as, a nervous *affection*; a *disorder* of the digestive system. *Sickness* was generally used in English speech and literature, till the close of the eighteenth century at least, for every form of physical *disorder*, as abundantly appears in the English Bible: "Jesus went about ... healing all manner of *sickness* and all manner of *disease* among the people," *Matt.* iv, 23; "Elisha was fallen *sick* of his *sickness* whereof he died," *2 Kings* xiii, 14. There is now, in England, a tendency to restrict the words *sick* and *sickness* to nausea, or "*sickness* at the stomach," and to hold *ill* and *illness* as the only proper words to use in a general sense. This distinction has received but a very limited acceptance in the United States, where *sick* and *sickness* have the earlier and wider usage. We speak of trifling *ailments*, a slight *indisposition*, a serious or a deadly *disease*; a slight or severe *illness*; a painful *sickness*. *Complaint* is a popular term, which may be applied to any degree of ill health, slight or severe. *Infirmity* denotes a chronic or lingering weakness or disability, as blindness or lameness.

Antonyms:

health,robustness,soundness,strength,sturdiness,vigor.

DISPARAGE.

Synonyms:

belittle, depreciate, discredit, underestimate,
carp at, derogate from, dishonor, underrate,
decry, detract from, lower, undervalue.

To *decry* is to cry down, in some noisy, public, or conspicuous manner. A witness or a statement is *discredited*; the currency is *depreciated*; a good name is *dishonored* by unworthy conduct; we *underestimate* in our own minds; we may *underrate* or *undervalue* in statement to others. These words are used, with few exceptions, of things such as qualities, merits, attainments, etc. To *disparage* is to *belittle* by damaging comparison or suggestion; it is used only of things. A man's achievements are *disparaged*, his motives *depreciated*, his professions *discredited*; he himself is calumniated, slandered, etc. Compare SLANDER.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for PRAISE.

---

[135]

DISPLACE.

Synonyms:

confuse, derange, disturb, mislay, remove,
crowd out, disarrange, jumble, misplace, unsettle.

Objects are *displaced* when moved out of the place they have occupied; they are *misplaced* when put into a place where they should not be. One may know where to find what he has *misplaced*; what he has *mislaid* he can not locate.

Antonyms:

adjust, assort, dispose, order, put in order, set in order,
array, classify, group, place, put in place, sort.

DO.

Synonyms:

accomplish, carry out, discharge, perform,
achieve, carry through, effect, perpetrate,
actualize, commit, execute, realize,

bring about,
bring to pass,
complete,
consummate,
finish,
fulfil,
transact,
work out.

Do is the one comprehensive word which includes this whole class. We may say of the least item of daily work, "It is *done*," and of the grandest human achievement, "Well *done*!" *Finish* and *complete* signify to bring to an end what was previously begun; there is frequently the difference in usage that *finish* is applied to the fine details and is superficial, while *complete* is comprehensive, being applied to the whole ideal, plan, and execution; as, to *finish* a statue; to *complete* a scheme of philosophy. To *discharge* is to *do* what is given in charge, expected, or required; as, to *discharge* the duties of the office. To *fulfil* is to *do* or to be what has been promised, expected, hoped, or desired; as, a son *fulfils* a father's hopes. *Realize*, *effect*, *execute*, and *consummate* all signify to embody in fact what was before in thought. One may *realize* that which he has done nothing to *bring about*; he may *realize* the dreams of youth by inheriting a fortune; but he can not *effect* his early designs except by *doing* the utmost that is necessary to make them fact. *Effect* includes all that is *done* to *accomplish* the intent; *execute* refers rather to the final steps; *consummate* is limited quite sharply to the concluding act. An officer *executes* the law when he proceeds against its violators; a purchase is *consummated* when the money is paid and the property delivered. *Execute* refers more commonly to the commands of another, *effect* and *consummate* to one's own designs; as, the commander *effected* the capture of the fort, because his officers and men promptly *executed* his commands. *Achieve*—to *do* something worthy of a chief—signifies[136] always to *perform* some great and generally some worthy exploit. *Perform* and *accomplish* both imply working toward the end; but *perform* always allows a possibility of not attaining, while *accomplish* carries the thought of full completion. In Longfellow's lines, "Patience; *accomplish* thy labor," etc., *perform* could not be substituted without great loss. As between *complete* and *accomplish*, *complete* considers rather the thing as *done*; *accomplish*, the whole process of doing it. *Commit*, as applied to actions, is used only of those that are bad, whether grave or trivial; *perpetrate* is used chiefly of aggravated crimes or, somewhat humorously, of blunders. A man may *commit* a sin, a trespass, or a murder; *perpetrate* an outrage or a felony. We *finish* a garment or a letter, *complete* an edifice or a life-work, *consummate* a bargain or a crime, *discharge* a duty, *effect* a purpose, *execute* a command, *fulfil* a promise, *perform* our daily tasks, *realize* an ideal, *accomplish* a design, *achieve* a victory. Compare TRANSACT; TRANSACTION.

Antonyms:

baffle,
come short,
defeat,
destroy,
fail,
frustrate,
mar,
miscarry,
miss,
neglect,
ruin,
spoil.

DOCILE.

Synonyms:

amenable,
compliant,
gentle,
manageable,
obedient,
pliable,
pliant,
submissive,
tame,
teachable,
tractable,
yielding.

One who is *docile* is easily taught; one who is *tractable* is easily led; one who is *pliant* is easily bent in any direction; *compliant* represents one as inclined or persuaded to agreement with another's will. Compare DUTY.

Antonyms:

determined,
dogged,
firm,
inflexible,
intractable,
obstinate,
opinionated,
resolute,
self-willed,
stubborn,
wilful,
unyielding.

DOCTRINE.

Synonyms:

article of belief,
article of faith,
belief,
dogma,
precept,
principle,
teaching,
tenet.

Doctrine primarily signifies that which is taught; *principle*, the fundamental basis on which the *teaching* rests. A *doctrine* is reasoned out, and may be defended by reasoning; a *dogma* rests on authority, as of direct revelation, the decision of the church, etc. A *doctrine* or *dogma* is a statement of some one item of *belief*; a *creed* is a summary of *doctrines* or *dogmas*. *Dogma* has[137] commonly, at the present day, an offensive signification, as of a *belief* arrogantly asserted. *Tenet* is simply that which is held, and is applied to a single item of *belief*; it is a neutral word, neither approving nor condemning; we speak of the *doctrines* of our own church; of the *tenets* of others. A *precept* relates not to *belief*, but to conduct. Compare FAITH; LAW.

DOGMATIC.

Synonyms:

arrogant,
authoritative,
dictatorial,
doctrinal,
domineering,
imperious,
magisterial,
opinionated,
overbearing,
positive,
self-opinionated,
systematic.

Dogmatic is technically applied in a good sense to that which is formally enunciated by adequate authority; *doctrinal* to that which is stated in the form of doctrine to be taught or defended. *Dogmatic* theology, called also "dogmatics," gives definite propositions, which it holds to be delivered by authority; *systematic* theology considers the same propositions in their logical connection and order as parts of a system; a *doctrinal* statement is less absolute in its claims than a *dogmatic* treatise, and may be more partial than the term *systematic* would imply. Outside of theology, *dogmatic* has generally an offensive sense; a *dogmatic* statement is one for which the author does not trouble himself to give a reason, either because of the strength of his convictions, or because of his contempt for those whom he addresses; thus *dogmatic* is, in common use, allied with *arrogant* and kindred words.

DOUBT, v.

Synonyms:

distrust,mistrust,surmise,suspect.

To *doubt* is to lack conviction. Incompleteness of evidence may compel one to *doubt*, or some perverse bias of mind may incline him to. *Distrust* may express simply a lack of confidence; as, I *distrust* my own judgment; or it may be nearly equivalent to *suspect*; as, I *distrusted* that man from the start. *Mistrust* and *suspect* imply that one is almost assured of positive evil; one may *distrust* himself or others; he *suspects* others. *Mistrust* is now rarely, if ever, used of persons, but only of motives, intentions, etc. *Distrust* is always serious; *mistrust* is often used playfully. Compare SUPPOSE. Compare synonyms for DOUBT, *n.*

Antonyms:

believe,confide in,depend on,depend upon,rely on,rely upon,trust.

---

[138]

DOUBT, n.

Synonyms:

disbelief, distrust, hesitancy, hesitation, incredulity, indecision, irresolution, misgiving, perplexity, question, scruple, skepticism, suspense, suspicion, unbelief, uncertainty.

Doubt is a lack of conviction that may refer either to matters of belief or to matters of practise. As regards belief, while *doubt* is lack of conviction, *disbelief* is conviction, to the contrary; *unbelief* refers to a settled state of mind, generally accompanied with opposition of heart. *Perplexity* is active and painful; *doubt* may be quiescent. *Perplexity* presses toward a solution; *doubt* may be content to linger unresolved. Any improbable statement awakens *incredulity*. In theological usage *unbelief* and *skepticism* have a condemnatory force, as implying wilful rejection of manifest truth. As regards practical matters, *uncertainty* applies to the unknown or undecided; *doubt* implies some negative evidence. *Suspense* regards the future, and is eager and anxious; *uncertainty* may relate to any period, and be quite indifferent. *Misgiving* is ordinarily in regard to the outcome of something already done or decided; *hesitation*, *indecision*, and *irresolution* have reference to something that remains to be decided or done, and are due oftener to infirmity of will than to lack of knowledge. *Distrust* and *suspicion* apply especially to the motives, character, etc., of others, and are more decidedly adverse than *doubt*. *Scruple* relates to matters of conscience and duty.

Antonyms:

assurance,
belief,
certainty,
confidence,
conviction,
decision,
determination,
persuasion,
resolution,
resolve.

DRAW.

Synonyms:

allure,
attract,
drag,
entice,
haul,
incline,
induce,
lead,
lure,
pull,
tow,
tug.

One object *draws* another when it moves it toward itself or in the direction of its own motion by the exertion of adequate force, whether slight or powerful. To *attract* is to exert a force that tends to *draw*, tho it may produce no actual motion; all objects are *attracted* toward the earth, tho they may be sustained from falling. To *drag* is to *draw* against strong resistance; as, to *drag* a sled over bare ground, or a carriage up a steep hill. To *pull* is to exert a *drawing* force, whether adequate or inadequate;[139] as, the fish *pulls* on the line; a dentist *pulls* a tooth. To *tug* is to *draw*, or try to *draw*, a resisting object with a continuous straining motion; as, to *tug* at the oar. To *haul* is to *draw* somewhat slowly a heavy object; as, to *haul* a seine; to *haul* logs. One vessel *tows* another. In the figurative sense, *attract* is more nearly akin to *incline*, *draw* to *induce*. We are *attracted* by one's appearance, *drawn* to his side. Compare ALLURE; ARRAY; INFLUENCE.

Antonyms:

alienate,estrange,rebuff,reject,repel,repulse.

See synonyms for DRIVE.

Prepositions:

To draw water *from* or *out of* the well; draw the boat *through* the water, *to* the shore; draw air *into* the lungs; draw *with* cords of love; the wagon is drawn *by* horses, *along* the road, *across* the field, *over* the stones, *through* the woods, *to* the barn.

DREAM.

Synonyms:

day-dream,
fancy,
fantasy,
hallucination,
reverie,
romance,
trance,
vision.

A *dream* is strictly a train of thoughts, fantasies, and images passing through the mind during sleep; a *vision* may occur when one is awake, and in clear exercise of the senses and mental powers; *vision* is often applied to something seen by the mind through supernatural agency, whether in sleep or wakefulness, conceived as more real and authoritative than a *dream*; a *trance* is an abnormal state, which is different from normal sleep or wakefulness. A *reverie* is a purposeless drifting of the mind when awake, under the influence of mental images; a *day-dream* that which passes before the mind in such condition. A *fancy* is some image presented to the mind, often in the fullest exercise of its powers. *Hallucination* is the seeming perception of non-existent objects, as in insanity or delirium. In the figurative sense, we speak of *dreams* of fortune, *visions* of glory, with little difference of meaning except that the *vision* is thought of as fuller and more vivid. We speak of a *trance* of delight when the emotion almost sweeps one away from the normal exercise of the faculties.

Antonyms:

certainty,fact,reality,realization,substance,verity.

---

[140]

DRESS.

Synonyms:

apparel,
array,
attire,
clothes,
clothing,
costume,
garb,
garments,
habiliments,
habit,
raiment,
robes,
uniform,
vestments,
vesture.

Clothing denotes the entire covering of the body, taken as a whole; *clothes* and *garments* view it as composed of separate parts. *Clothes*, *clothing*, and *garments* may be used of inner or outer covering; all the other words in the list (with possible rare exceptions in the case of *raiment*) refer to the outer *garments*. *Array*, *raiment*, and *vesture* are archaic or poetic; so, too, is *habit*, except in technical use to denote a lady's riding-*dress*. The word *vestments* is now rare, except in ecclesiastical use. *Apparel* and *attire* are most frequently used of somewhat complete and elegant outer *clothing*, tho Shakespeare speaks of "poor and mean *attire*." *Dress* may be used, specifically, for a woman's gown, and in that sense may be either rich or shabby; but in the general sense it denotes outer *clothing* which is meant to be elegant, complete, and appropriate to some social or public occasion; as, full *dress*, court *dress*, evening *dress*, etc. *Dress* has now largely displaced *apparel* and *attire*. *Garb* denotes the *clothing* characteristic of some class, profession, or the like; as, the *garb* of a priest. *Costume* is chiefly used for that which befits an assumed character; as, a theatrical *costume*; we sometimes speak of a national *costume*, etc.

Antonyms:

bareness,disarray,dishabille,exposure,nakedness,nudity,undress.

DRIVE.

Synonyms:

compel,
impel,
propel,
push,
repel,
repulse,
resist,
ride,
thrust,
urge on.

To *drive* is to move an object with some force or violence before or away from oneself; it is the direct reverse of *draw*, *lead*, etc. A man leads a horse by the halter, *drives* him with whip and rein. One may be *driven* to a thing or from it; hence, *drive* is a synonym equally for *compel* or for *repel* or *repulse*. *Repulse* is stronger and more conclusive than *repel*; one may be *repelled* by the very aspect of the person whose favor he seeks, but is not *repulsed* except by the direct refusal or ignoring of his suit. A certain conventional modern usage, especially in England, requires us to say that we *drive* in a carriage, *ride* upon a horse; tho in Scripture we read of *riding* in a chariot (*2 Kings* ix, 16; *Jer.* xvii, 25, etc.); good examples of the same usage may be[141] found abundantly in the older English. The propriety of a person's saying that he is going to *drive* when he is simply to be conveyed in a carriage, where some one else, as the coachman, does all the *driving*, is exceedingly questionable. Many good authorities prefer to use *ride* in the older and broader sense as signifying to be supported and borne along by any means of conveyance. Compare BANISH; COMPEL; INFLUENCE.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for DRAW.

Prepositions:

Drive *to* market; *to* despair; drive *into* exile; *from* one's presence; *out of* the city; drive *by*, *with*, or *under* the lash; drive *by* or *past* beautiful estates; *along* the beach; *beside* the river; *through* the park; *across* the field; *around* the square; *to* the door; *into* the barn; *out of* the sunshine.

DUPLICATE.

Synonyms:

copy,
counterpart,
facsimile,
imitation,
likeness,
replica,
reproduction,
transcript.

A *copy* is as nearly like the original as the copyist has power to make it; a *duplicate* is exactly like the original; a carbon *copy* of a typewritten document must be a *duplicate*; we may have an inaccurate *copy*, but never an inaccurate *duplicate*. A *facsimile* is like the original in appearance; a *duplicate* is the same as the original in substance and effect; a *facsimile* of the Declaration of Independence is not a *duplicate*. A *facsimile* of a key might be quite useless; a *duplicate* will open the lock. A *counterpart* exactly corresponds to another object, but perhaps without design, while a *copy* is intentional. An *imitation* is always thought of as inferior to the original; as, an *imitation* of Milton. A *replica* is a *copy* of a work of art by the maker of the original. In law, a *copy* of an instrument has in itself no authority; the signatures, as well as other matters, may be copied; a *duplicate* is really an original, containing the same provisions and signed by the same persons, so that it may have in all respects the same force and effect; a *transcript* is an official *copy*, authenticated by the signature of the proper officer, and by the seal of the appropriate court. While strictly there could be but one *duplicate*, the word is now extended to an indefinite number of exact *copies*. *Reproduction* is chiefly applied to living organisms.

Antonyms:

archetype,
model,
original,
pattern,
prototype.

---

[142]

DUTY.

Synonyms:

accountability,
business,
function,
obligation,
office,
responsibility,
right,
righteousness.

Etymologically, *duty* is that which is owed or due; *obligation*, that to or by which one is bound; *right*, that which is correct, straight, or in the direct line of truth and goodness; *responsibility*, that for which one must answer. *Duty* and *responsibility* are thought of as to some person or persons; *right* is impersonal. One's *duty* may be to others or to himself; his *obligations* and *responsibilities* are to others. *Duty* arises from the nature of things; *obligation* and *responsibility* may be created by circumstances, as by one's own promise, or by the acceptance of a trust, etc. We speak of a parent's *duty*, a debtor's *obligation*; or of a child's *duty* of obedience, and a parent's *responsibility* for the child's welfare. *Right* is that which accords with the moral system of the universe. *Righteousness* is *right* incarnated in action. In a more limited sense, *right* may be used of what one may rightly claim, and so be the converse of *duty*. It is the creditor's *right* to demand payment, and the debtor's *duty* to pay. Compare BUSINESS.

EAGER.

Synonyms:

animated,
anxious,
ardent,
burning,
desirous,
earnest,
enthusiastic,
fervent,
glowing,
hot,
impatient,
impetuous,
importunate,
intense,
intent,
keen,
longing,
vehement,
yearning,
zealous.

One is *eager* who impatiently desires to accomplish some end; one is *earnest* with a desire that is less impatient, but more deep, resolute, and constant; one is *anxious* with a desire that foresees rather the pain of disappointment than the delight of attainment. One is *eager* for the gratification of any appetite or passion; he is *earnest* in conviction, purpose, or character. *Eager* usually refers to some specific and immediate satisfaction, *earnest* to something permanent and enduring; the patriotic soldier is *earnest* in his devotion to his country, *eager* for a decisive battle.

Antonyms:

apathetic,
calm,
careless,
cold,
cool,
dispassionate,
frigid,
heedless,
indifferent,
negligent,
phlegmatic,
purposeless,
regardless,
stolid,
stony,
stupid,
unconcerned,
uninterested,
unmindful,
unmoved.

Prepositions:

Eager *for* (more rarely *after*) favor, honor, etc.; eager *in* pursuit.

EASE.

Synonyms:

easiness,
expertness,
facility,
knack,
readiness.

Ease in the sense here considered denotes freedom from conscious or apparent effort, tax, or strain. *Ease* may be either of condition or of action; *facility* is always of action; *readiness* is of action or of expected action. One lives at *ease* who has no pressing cares; one stands at *ease*, moves or speaks with *ease*, when wholly without constraint. *Facility* is always active; *readiness* may be active or passive; the speaker has *facility* of expression, *readiness* of wit; any appliance is in *readiness* for use. *Ease* of action may imply merely the possession of ample power; *facility* always implies practise and skill; any one can press down the keys of a typewriter with *ease*; only the skilled operator works the machine with *facility*. *Readiness* in the active sense includes much of the meaning of *ease* with the added idea of promptness or alertness. *Easiness* applies to the thing done, rather than to the doer. *Expertness* applies to the more mechanical processes of body and mind; we speak of the *readiness* of an orator, but of the *expertness* of a gymnast. Compare COMFORTABLE; DEXTERITY; POWER.

Antonyms:

annoyance,
awkwardness,
constraint,
difficulty,
discomfort,
disquiet,
irritation,
perplexity,
trouble,
uneasiness,
vexation,
worry.

EDUCATION.

Synonyms:

breeding,
cultivation,
culture,
development,
discipline,
information,
instruction,
knowledge,
learning,
nurture,
reading,
schooling,
study,
teaching,
training,
tuition.

Education (L. *educere*, to lead or draw out) is the systematic development and cultivation of the mind and other natural powers. "*Education* is the harmonious development of all our faculties. It begins in the nursery, and goes on at school, but does not end there. It continues through life, whether we will or not.... 'Every person,' says Gibbon, 'has two educations, one which he receives from others, and one more important, which he gives himself.'" John Lubbock *The Use of Life* ch. vii, p. 111. [Macm. '94.] *Instruction*, the impartation of *knowledge* by others (L. *instruere*, to build in or into) is but a part of education, often the smallest part. *Teaching* is the more familiar and less formal word for *instruction*. *Training* refers not merely to the[144] impartation of *knowledge*, but to the exercising of one in actions with the design to form habits. *Discipline* is systematic and rigorous *training*, with the idea of subjection to authority and perhaps of punishment. *Tuition* is the technical term for *teaching* as the business of an instructor or as in the routine of a school; *tuition* is narrower than *teaching*, not, like the latter word, including *training*. *Study* is emphatically what one does for himself. We speak of the *teaching*, *training*, or *discipline*, but not of the *education* or *tuition* of a dog or a horse. *Breeding* and *nurture* include *teaching* and *training*, especially as directed by and dependent upon home life and personal association; *breeding* having reference largely to manners with such qualities as are deemed distinctively characteristic of high birth; *nurture* (literally *nourishing*) having more direct reference to moral qualities, not overlooking the physical and mental. *Knowledge* and *learning* tell nothing of mental development apart from the capacity to acquire and remember, and nothing whatever of that moral development which is included in *education* in its fullest and noblest sense; *learning*, too, may be acquired by one's unaided industry, but any full *education* must be the result in great part of *instruction*, *training*, and personal association. *Study* is emphatically what one does for himself, and in which *instruction* and *tuition* can only point the way, encourage the student to advance, and remove obstacles; vigorous, persevering *study* is one of the best elements of *training*. *Study* is also used in the sense of the thing studied, a subject to be mastered by *study*, a studious pursuit. Compare KNOWLEDGE; REFINEMENT; WISDOM.

Antonyms:

ignorance,illiteracy.

Compare synonyms for IGNORANT.

EFFRONTERY.

Synonyms:

assurance, boldness, hardihood, insolence,
audacity, brass, impudence, shamelessness.

Audacity, in the sense here considered, is a reckless defiance of law, decency, public opinion, or personal rights, claims, or views, approaching the meaning of *impudence* or *shamelessness*, but always carrying the thought of the personal risk that one disregards in such defiance; the merely *impudent* or *shameless* person may take no thought of consequences; the *audacious* person[145] recognizes and recklessly braves them. *Hardihood* defies and disregards the rational judgment of men. *Effrontery* (L. *effrons*, barefaced, shameless) adds to *audacity* and *hardihood* the special element of defiance of considerations of propriety, duty, and respect for others, yet not to the extent implied in *impudence* or *shamelessness*. *Impudence* disregards what is due to superiors; *shamelessness* defies decency. *Boldness* is forward-stepping courage, spoken of with reference to the presence and observation of others; *boldness*, in the good sense, is courage viewed from the outside; but the word is frequently used in an unfavorable sense to indicate a lack of proper sensitiveness and modesty. Compare ASSURANCE; BRAVE.

Antonyms:

bashfulness, diffidence, sensitiveness, shyness,
coyness, modesty, shrinking, timidity.

EGOTISM.

Synonyms:

conceit, self-assertion, self-confidence, self-esteem,
egoism, self-conceit, self-consciousness, vanity.

Egoism is giving the "I" undue supremacy in thought; *egotism* is giving the "I" undue prominence in speech. *Egotism* is sometimes used in the sense of *egoism*, or supreme regard for oneself. *Self-assertion* is the claim by word, act, or manner of what one believes to be his due; *self-conceit* is an overestimate of one's own powers or deserts. *Conceit* is a briefer expression for *self-conceit*, with always an offensive implication; *self-conceit* is ridiculous or pitiable; *conceit* arouses resentment. There is a worthy *self-confidence* which springs from consciousness of rectitude and of power equal to demands. *Self-assertion* at times becomes a duty; but *self-conceit* is always a weakness. *Self-consciousness* is the keeping of one's thoughts upon oneself, with the constant anxious question of what others will think. *Vanity* is an overweening admiration of self, craving equal admiration from others; *self-consciousness* is commonly painful to its possessor, *vanity* always a source of satisfaction, except as it fails to receive its supposed due. *Self-esteem* is more solid and better founded than *self-conceit*; but is ordinarily a weakness, and never has the worthy sense of *self-confidence*. Compare ASSURANCE; PRIDE.

Antonyms:

bashfulness,
deference,
diffidence,
humility,
modesty,
self-distrust,
self-forgetfulness,
shyness,
unobtrusiveness,
unostentatiousness.

---

[146]

EMBLEM.

Synonyms:

attribute,figure,image,sign,symbol,token,type.

Emblem is the English form of *emblema*, a Latin word of Greek origin, signifying a figure beaten out on a metallic vessel by blows from within; also, a figure inlaid in wood, stone, or other material as a copy of some natural object. The Greek word *symbolon* denoted a victor's wreath, a check, or any object that might be compared with, or found to correspond with another, whether there was or was not anything in the objects compared to suggest the comparison. Thus an *emblem* resembles, a *symbol* represents. An *emblem* has some natural fitness to suggest that for which it stands; a *symbol* has been chosen or agreed upon to suggest something else, with or without natural fitness; a *sign* does actually suggest the thing with or without reason, and with or without intention or choice. A *symbol* may be also an *emblem*; thus the elements of bread and wine in the Lord's Supper are both appropriate *emblems* and his own chosen *symbols* of suffering and death. A statement of doctrine is often called a *symbol* of faith; but it is not an *emblem*. On the other hand, the same thing may be both a *sign* and a *symbol*; a letter of the alphabet is a *sign* which indicates a sound; but letters are often used as mathematical, chemical, or astronomical *symbols*. A *token* is something given or done as a pledge or expression of feeling or intent; while the *sign* may be unintentional, the *token* is voluntary; kind looks may be *signs* of regard; a gift is a *token*; a ring, which is a natural *emblem* of eternity, and also its accepted *symbol*, is frequently given as a *token* of friendship or love. A *figure* in the sense here considered is something that represents an idea to the mind somewhat as a form is represented to the eye, as in drawing, painting, or sculpture; as representing a future reality, a *figure* may be practically the same as a *type*. An *image* is a visible representation, especially in sculpture, having or supposed to have a close resemblance to that which it represents. A *type* is in religion a representation of a greater reality to come; we speak of one object as the *type* of the class whose characteristics it exhibits, as in the case of animal or vegetable *types*. An *attribute* in art is some accessory used to characterize a *figure* or scene; the *attribute* is often an *emblem* or *symbol*; thus the eagle is the *attribute* of St. John as an *emblem* of lofty spiritual vision. Compare SIGN.

---

[147]

EMIGRATE.

Synonyms:

immigrate,migrate.

To *migrate* is to change one's dwelling-place, usually with the idea of repeated change, or of periodical return; it applies to wandering tribes of men, and to many birds and animals. *Emigrate* and *immigrate* carry the idea of a permanent change of residence to some other country or some distant region; the two words are used distinctively of human beings, and apply to the same person and the same act, according to the side from which the action is viewed.

Prepositions:

A person emigrates *from* the land he leaves, and immigrates *to* the land where he takes up his abode.

EMPLOY.

Synonyms:

call,engage,engross,hire,make use of,use,use up.

In general terms it may be said that to *employ* is to devote to one's purpose, to *use* is to render subservient to one's purpose; what is *used* is viewed as more absolutely an instrument than what is *employed*; a merchant *employs* a clerk; he *uses* pen and paper; as a rule, *use* is not said of persons, except in a degrading sense; as, the conspirators *used* him as a go-between. Hence the expression common in some religious circles "that God would *use* me" is not to be commended; it has also the fault of representing the human worker as absolutely a passive and helpless instrument; the phrase is altogether unscriptural; the Scripture says, "We are laborers together with (co-workers with) God." That which is *used* is often consumed in the *using*, or in familiar phrase *used up*; as, we *used* twenty tons of coal last winter; in such cases we could not substitute *employ*. A person may be *employed* in his own work or in that of another; in the latter case the service is always understood to be for pay. In this connection *employ* is a word of more dignity than *hire*; a general is *employed* in his country's service; a mercenary adventurer is *hired* to fight a tyrant's battles. It is unsuitable, according to present usage, to speak of *hiring* a pastor; the Scripture, indeed, says of the preacher, "The laborer is worthy of his hire;" but this sense is archaic, and *hire* now implies that the one *hired* works directly and primarily for the pay, as expressed in the noun "hireling;" a Pastor is properly said to be *called*, or when the business side[148] of the transaction is referred to, *engaged*, or possibly *employed*, at a certain salary.

Prepositions:

Employ *in*, *on*, *upon*, or *about* a work, business, etc.; *for* a purpose; *at* a stipulated salary.

END, v.

Synonyms:

break off,
cease,
close,
complete,
conclude,
desist,
expire,
finish,
quit,
stop,
terminate,
wind up.

That *ends*, or is *ended*, of which there is no more, whether or not more was intended or needed; that is *closed*, *completed*, *concluded*, or *finished* which has come to an expected or appropriate end. A speech may be *ended* almost as soon as begun, because of the speaker's illness, or of tumult in the audience; in such a case, the speech is neither *closed*, *completed*, nor *finished*, nor, in the strict sense, *concluded*. An argument may be *closed* with nothing proved; when an argument is *concluded* all that is deemed necessary to prove the point has been stated. To *finish* is to do the last thing there is to do; as, "I have *finished* my course," *2 Tim.* iv, 7. *Finish* has come to mean, not merely to *complete* in the essentials, but to perfect in all the minute details, as in the expression "to add the *finishing* touches." The enumeration is *completed*; the poem, the picture, the statue is *finished*. To *terminate* may be either to bring to an arbitrary or to an appropriate end; as, he *terminated* his remarks abruptly; the spire *terminates* in a cross. A thing *stops* that comes to rest from motion; or the motion *stops* or *ceases* when the object comes to rest; *stop* frequently signifies to bring or come to a sudden and decided cessation of motion, progress, or action of any kind. Compare DO; TRANSACT.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for BEGIN.

END, n.

Synonyms:

accomplishment,
achievement,
bound,
boundary,
cessation,
close,
completion,
conclusion,
consequence,
effect,
expiration,
extent,
extremity,
finale,
finis,
finish,
fulfilment,
goal,
limit,
outcome,
period,
point,
purpose,
result,
termination,
terminus,
tip,

consummation,
design,
intent,
issue,
utmost,
uttermost.

[149]The *end* is the terminal part of a material object that has length; the *extremity* is distinctively the terminal *point*, and may thus be but part of the *end* in the general sense of that word; the *extremity* is viewed as that which is most remote from some center, or some mean or standard position; the southern *end* of South America includes all Patagonia, the southern *extremity* or *point* is Cape Horn. *Tip* has nearly the same meaning as *extremity*, but is said of small or slight and tapering objects; as, the *tip* of the finger; *point* in such connections is said of that which is drawn out to exceeding fineness or sharpness, as the *point* of a needle, a fork, or a sword; *extremity* is said of something considerable; we do not speak of the *extremity* of a needle. *Terminus* is chiefly used to designate the *end* of a line of travel or transportation: specifically, the furthermost station in any direction on a railway, or by extension the town or village where it is situated. *Termination* is the Latin and more formal word for the Saxon *end*, but is chiefly used of time, words, undertakings, or abstractions of any kind. *Expiration* signifies the coming to an *end* in the natural course of things; as, the *expiration* of a year, or of a lease; it is used of things of some consequence; we do not ordinarily speak of the *expiration* of an hour or of a day. *Limit* implies some check to or restraint upon further advance, right, or privilege; as, the *limits* of an estate (compare BOUNDARY). A *goal* is an *end* sought or striven for, as in a race. For the figurative senses of *end* and its associated words, compare the synonyms for the verb END; also for AIM; CONSEQUENCE; DESIGN.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for BEGINNING.

ENDEAVOR, v.

Synonyms:

attempt,essay,strive,try,undertake.

To *attempt* is to take action somewhat experimentally with the hope and purpose of accomplishing a certain result; to *endeavor* is to *attempt* strenuously and with firm and enduring purpose. To *attempt* expresses a single act; to *endeavor*, a continuous exertion; we say I will *endeavor* (not I will *attempt*) while I live. To *attempt* is with the view of accomplishing; to *essay*, with a view of testing our own powers. To *undertake* is to accept or take upon oneself as an obligation, as some business, labor, or trust; the word often implies complete assurance of success; as,[150] I will *undertake* to produce the witness. To *strive* suggests little of the result, much of toil, strain, and contest, in seeking it; I will *strive* to fulfil your wishes, *i. e.*, I will spare no labor and exertion to do it. *Try* is the most comprehensive of these words. The original idea of testing or experimenting is not thought of when a man says "I will *try*." To *attempt* suggests giving up, if the thing is not accomplished at a stroke; to *try* implies using other means and studying out other ways if not at first successful. *Endeavor* is more mild and formal; the pilot in the burning pilot-house does not say "I will *endeavor*" or "I will *attempt* to hold the ship to her course," but "I'll *try*, sir!"

Antonyms:

abandon,
dismiss,
drop,
give up,
let go,
neglect,
omit,
overlook,
pass by,
throw away,
throw over,
throw up.

ENDEAVOR, n.

Synonyms:

attempt, effort, essay, exertion, struggle, trial.

Effort denotes the voluntary putting forth of power to attain or accomplish some specific thing; it reaches toward a definite end; *exertion* is a putting forth of power without special reference to an object. Every *effort* is an *exertion*, but not every *exertion* is an *effort*. *Attempt* is more experimental than *effort*, *endeavor* less strenuous but more continuous. An *effort* is a single act, an *endeavor* a continued series of acts; an *endeavor* is sustained and enduring, and may be lifelong; we do not have a society of Christian *Attempt*, or of Christian *Effort*, but of Christian *Endeavor*. A *struggle* is a violent *effort* or strenuous *exertion*. An *essay* is an *attempt*, *effort*, or *endeavor* made as a test of the powers of the one who makes it. Compare ENDEAVOR, *v.*

ENDURE.

Synonyms:

abide,
afford,
allow,
bear,
bear up under,
bear with,
brook,
permit,
put up with,
submit to,
suffer,
support,
sustain,
tolerate,
undergo.

Bear is the most general of these words; it is metaphorically to hold up or keep up a burden of care, pain, grief, annoyance, or the like, without sinking, lamenting, or repining. *Allow* and *permit* involve large concession of the will; *put up with* and *tolerate* imply decided aversion and reluctant withholding of opposition or[151] interference; whispering is *allowed* by the school-teacher who does not forbid nor censure it; one *puts up with* the presence of a disagreeable visitor; a state *tolerates* a religion which it would be glad to suppress. To *endure* is to *bear with* strain and resistance, but with conscious power; *endure* conveys a fuller suggestion of contest and conquest than *bear*. One may choose to *endure* the pain of a surgical operation rather than take anesthetics; he *permits* the thing to come which he must brace himself to *endure* when it comes. To *afford* is to be equal to a pecuniary demand, *i. e.*, to be able to *bear* it. To *brook* is quietly to *put up* *with* provocation or insult. *Abide* combines the senses of await and *endure*; as, I will *abide* the result. Compare ABIDE; SUPPORT.

Antonyms:

break,
break down,
despair,
droop,
fail,
faint,
fall,
falter,
give out,
give up,
sink,
succumb,
surrender,
yield.

ENEMY.

Synonyms:

adversary, antagonist, competitor, foe, opponent, rival.

An *enemy* in private life is one who is moved by hostile feeling with active disposition to injure; but in military language all who fight on the opposite side are called *enemies* or collectively "the *enemy*," where no personal animosity may be implied; *foe*, which is rather a poetical and literary word, implies intensely hostile spirit and purpose. An *antagonist* is one who opposes and is opposed actively and with intensity of effort; an *opponent*, one in whom the attitude of resistance is the more prominent; a *competitor*, one who seeks the same object for which another is striving; *antagonists* in wrestling, *competitors* in business, *opponents* in debate may contend with no personal ill will; *rivals* in love, ambition, etc., rarely avoid inimical feeling. *Adversary* was formerly much used in the general sense of *antagonist* or *opponent*, but is now less common, and largely restricted to the hostile sense; an *adversary* is ordinarily one who not only opposes another in fact, but does so with hostile spirit, or perhaps out of pure malignity; as, the great *Adversary*. Compare synonyms for AMBITION.

Antonyms:

abettor, accessory, accomplice, ally, friend, helper, supporter.

Prepositions:

He was the enemy *of* my friend *in* the contest.

---

[152]

ENMITY.

Synonyms:

acrimony,
animosity,
antagonism,
bitterness,
hatred,
hostility,
ill will,
malevolence,
malice,
malignity,
rancor,
spite.

Enmity is the state of being an enemy or the feeling and disposition characterizing an enemy (compare ENEMY). *Animosity* denotes a feeling more active and vehement, but often less enduring and determined, than *enmity*. *Enmity* distinctly recognizes its object as an enemy, to be met or dealt with accordingly. *Hostility* is *enmity* in action; the term *hostilities* between nations denotes actual armed collision. *Bitterness* is a resentful feeling arising from a belief that one has been wronged; *acrimony* is a kindred feeling, but deeper and more persistent, and may arise from the crossing of one's wishes or plans by another, where no injustice or wrong is felt. *Antagonism*, as between two competing authors or merchants, does not necessarily imply *enmity*, but ordinarily suggests a shade, at least, of hostile feeling. *Malice* is a disposition or intent to injure others, for the gratification of some evil passion; *malignity* is intense and violent *enmity*, *hatred*, or *malice*. Compare synonyms for ACRIMONY; ANGER; HATRED.

Antonyms:

agreement, amity, friendship, kindliness, regard,
alliance, concord, harmony, kindness, sympathy.

ENTERTAIN.

Synonyms:

amuse, cheer, disport, enliven, interest, please,
beguile, delight, divert, gratify, occupy, recreate.

To *entertain*, in the sense here considered, is to engage and pleasantly occupy the attention; to *amuse* is to occupy the attention in an especially bright and cheerful way, often with that which excites merriment or laughter; as, he *entertained* us with an *amusing* story. To *divert* is to turn from serious thoughts or laborious pursuits to something that lightly and agreeably occupies the mind; one may be *entertained* or *amused* who has nothing serious or laborious from which to be *diverted*. To *recreate*, literally to re-create, is to engage mind or body in some pleasing activity that restores strength and energy for serious work. To *beguile* is, as it were, to cheat into cheer and comfort by something that insensibly draws thought or feeling away from pain or disquiet. We *beguile* a weary hour, *cheer* the despondent, *divert* the preoccupied, *enliven* a dull evening or company, *gratify* our[153] friends' wishes, *entertain*, *interest*, *please* a listening audience, *occupy* idle time, *disport* ourselves when merry, *recreate* when worn with toil; we *amuse* ourselves or others with whatever pleasantly passes the time without special exertion, each according to his taste.

Antonyms:

annoy, bore, busy, disquiet, distract, disturb, tire, weary.

ENTERTAINMENT.

Synonyms:

amusement,
cheer,
delight,
diversion,
enjoyment,
frolic,
fun,
merriment,
pastime,
pleasure,
recreation,
sport.

Entertainment and *recreation* imply thought and mental occupation, tho in an agreeable, refreshing way; they are therefore words of a high order. *Entertainment*, apart from its special senses of a public performance or a social party, and predominantly even there, is used of somewhat mirthful mental delight; *recreation* may, and usually does, combine the mental with the physical. *Amusement* and *pastime* are nearly equivalent, the latter probably the lighter word; many slight things may be *pastimes* which we should hardly dignify by the name of *amusements*. *Sports* are almost wholly on the physical plane, tho involving a certain grade of mental action; fox-hunting, horse-racing, and baseball are *sports*. Certain *sports* may afford *entertainment* or *recreation* to certain persons, according to their individual tastes; but *entertainment* and *recreation* are capable of a meaning so high as never to be approached by any meaning of *sport*. *Cheer* may be very quiet, as the *cheer* of a bright fire to an aged traveler; *merriment* is with liveliness and laughter; *fun* and *frolic* are apt to be boisterous. *Amusement* is a form of *enjoyment*, but *enjoyment* may be too keen to be called *amusement*. Compare synonyms for ENTERTAIN.

Antonyms:

ennui,fatigue,labor,lassitude,toil,weariness,work.

ENTHUSIASM.

Synonyms:

ardor,
devotion,
eagerness,
earnestness,
ecstasy,
excitement,
extravagance,
fanaticism,
fervency,
fervor,
frenzy,
inspiration,
intensity,
passion,
rapture,
transport,
vehemence,
warmth,
zeal.

The old meaning of *enthusiasm* implies a pseudo-*inspiration*,[154] an almost frantic *extravagance* in behalf of something supposed to be an expression of the divine will. This sense remains as the controlling one in the kindred noun *enthusiast*. *Enthusiasm* has now chiefly the meaning of an earnest and commendable *devotion*, an intense and eager interest. Against the hindrances of the world, nothing great and good can be carried without a certain *fervor*, *intensity*, and *vehemence*; these joined with faith, courage, and hopefulness make *enthusiasm*. *Zeal* is burning *earnestness*, always tending to vigorous action with all the *devotion* of *enthusiasm*, tho often without its hopefulness. Compare EAGER.

Antonyms:

calculation,
calmness,
caution,
coldness,
deadness,
dulness,
indifference,
lukewarmness,
policy,
prudence,
timidity,
wariness.

ENTRANCE.

Synonyms:

access,
accession,
adit,
admission,
admittance,
approach,
door,
doorway,
entrée,
entry,
gate,
gateway,
ingress,
inlet,
introduction,
opening,
penetration,
portal.

Entrance, the act of entering, refers merely to the fact of passing from without to within some enclosure; *admission* and *admittance* refer to entering by or with some one's consent, or at least to opportunity afforded by some one's act or neglect. We may effect or force an *entrance*, but not *admittance* or *admission*; those we gain, procure, obtain, secure, win. *Admittance* refers to place, *admission* refers also to position, privilege, favor, friendship, etc. An intruder may gain *admittance* to the hall of a society who would not be allowed *admission* to its membership. *Approach* is a movement toward another; *access* is coming all the way to his presence, recognition, and consideration. An unworthy favorite may prevent even those who gain *admittance* to a king's audience from obtaining any real *access* to the king. *Entrance* is also used figuratively for setting out upon some career, or becoming a member of some organization; as, we speak of one's *entrance* upon college life, or of *entrance* into the ministry.

Antonyms:

departure,
egress,
ejection,
exclusion,
exit,
expulsion,
refusal,
rejection,
withdrawal.

Prepositions:

Entrance *into* a place; *on* or *upon* a work or course of action; *into* or *upon* office; *into* battle; *by* or *through* the door; *within* the gates; *into* or *among* the company.

---

[155]

ENVIOUS.

Synonyms:

jealous,
suspicious.

One is *envious* who cherishes selfish ill will toward another because of his superior success, endowments, possessions, or the like. A person is *envious* of that which is another's, and to which he himself has no right or claim; he is *jealous* of intrusion upon that which is his own, or to which he maintains a right or claim. An *envious* spirit is always bad; a *jealous* spirit may be good or bad, according to its object and tendency. A free people must be *jealous* of their liberties if they would retain them. One is *suspicious* of another from unfavorable indications or from a knowledge of wrong in his previous conduct, or even without reason. Compare DOUBT.

Antonyms:

contented,friendly,kindly,satisfied,trustful,well-disposed.

Prepositions:

Envious *of* (formerly *at* or *against*) a person; envious *of* his wealth or power; envious *of* him *for*, *because of*, *on account of* his wealth or power.

EQUIVOCAL.

Synonyms:

ambiguous,
doubtful,
dubious,
enigmatic,
enigmatical,
indefinite,
indeterminate,
indistinct,
obscure,
perplexing,
questionable,
suspicious,
uncertain.

Equivocal (L. *equus*, equal, and *vox*, voice, word) denotes that which may equally well be understood in either of two or more ways. *Ambiguous* (L. *ambi*, around, and *ago*, drive, lead) signifies lacking in distinctness or certainty, obscure or doubtful through indefiniteness of expression. *Ambiguous* is applied only to spoken or written statements; *equivocal* has other applications. A statement is *ambiguous* when it leaves the mind of the reader or hearer to fluctuate between two meanings, which would fit the language equally well; it is *equivocal* when it would naturally be understood in one way, but is capable of a different interpretation; an *equivocal* expression is, as a rule, intentionally deceptive, while an *ambiguous* utterance may be simply the result of a want either of clear thought or of adequate expression. That which is *enigmatical* must be guessed like a riddle; a statement may be purposely made *enigmatical* in order to provoke thought and study. That is *doubtful* which is fairly open to doubt; that is *dubious* which has become the subject of doubts so grave as[156] scarcely to fall short of condemnation; as, a *dubious* reputation. *Questionable* may be used nearly in the sense either of *dubious* or of *doubtful*; a *questionable* statement is one that must be proved before it can be accepted. To say that one's honesty is *questionable* is a mild way of saying that in the opinion of the speaker he is likely to prove dishonest. *Equivocal* is sometimes, tho more rarely, used in this sense. A *suspicious* character gives manifest reason to be suspected; a *suspicious* temper is inclined to suspect the motives and intentions of others, with or without reason. Compare CLEAR.

Antonyms:

certain, clear, distinct, evident, indisputable, indubitable, lucid, manifest, obvious, perspicuous, plain, unambiguous, unequivocal, unquestionable, unquestioned.

ESTEEM, v.

Synonyms:

appreciate, calculate, consider, deem, estimate, hold, prize, regard, think, value.

Esteem and *estimate* alike imply to set a certain mental value upon, but *esteem* is less precise and mercantile than *calculate* or *estimate*. We *esteem* a jewel precious; we *estimate* it to be worth so much money. This sense of *esteem* is now chiefly found in literary or oratorical style, and in certain conventional phrases; as, I *esteem* it an honor, a favor. In popular usage *esteem*, as said of persons, denotes a union of respect and kindly feeling and, in the highest sense, of moral approbation; as, one whom I highly *esteem*; the word may be used in a similar sense of material things or abstractions; as, one whose friendship I *esteem*; a shell greatly *esteemed* for inlaid work. To *appreciate* anything is to be deeply or keenly sensible of or sensitive to its qualities or influence, to see its full import, be alive to its value, importance, or worth; as, to *appreciate* beauty or harmony; to *appreciate* one's services in a cause; the word is similarly, tho rarely, used of persons. To *prize* is to set a high value on for something more than merely commercial reasons. One may *value* some object, as a picture, beyond all price, as a family heirloom, or may *prize* it as the gift of an *esteemed* friend, without at all *appreciating* its artistic merit or commercial value. To *regard* (F. *regarder*, look at, observe) is to have a certain mental view favorable or unfavorable; as, I *regard* him as a friend; or, I *regard* him as a villain; *regard* has a distinctively favorable sense as applied to institutions,[157] proprieties, duties, etc., but does not share the use of the noun *regard* as applied to persons; we *regard* the Sabbath; we *regard* a person's feelings; we have a *regard* for the person. Compare ESTEEM, *n.*

ESTEEM, n.

Synonyms:

estimate, estimation, favor, regard, respect.

Esteem for a person is a favorable opinion on the basis of worth, especially of moral worth, joined with a feeling of interest in and attraction toward the person. *Regard* for a person is the mental view or feeling that springs from a sense of his value, excellence, or superiority, with a cordial and hearty friendliness. *Regard* is more personal and less distant than *esteem*, and adds a special kindliness; *respect* is a more distant word than *esteem*. *Respect* may be wholly on one side, while *regard* is more often mutual; *respect* in the fullest sense is given to what is lofty, worthy, and honorable, or to a person of such qualities; we may pay an external *respect* to one of lofty station, regardless of personal qualities, showing *respect* for the office. *Estimate* has more of calculation; as, my *estimate* of the man, or of his abilities, is very high. *Estimation* involves the idea of calculation or appraisal with that of *esteem* or *regard*, and is especially used of the feeling entertained by numbers of people; as, he stood high in public *estimation*. Compare ESTEEM, *v.*; FRIENDSHIP; LOVE.

Antonyms:

abhorrence,
antipathy,
aversion,
contempt,
dislike,
hatred,
loathing,
repugnance.

ETERNAL.

Synonyms:

deathless,
endless,
eonian,
everlasting,
ever-living,
fadeless,
immortal,
imperishable,
interminable,
never-ending,
never-failing,
perennial,
perpetual,
timeless,
unceasing,
undying,
unending,
unfading,
unfailing,
without end.

Eternal strictly signifies without beginning or end, in which sense it applies to God alone; *everlasting* applies to that which may or may not have beginning, but will never cease; *eternal* is also used in this more limited sense; *endless*, without end, in its utmost reach, is not distinguishable from *everlasting*; but *endless* is constantly used in inferior senses, especially in mechanics, as in the phrases an *endless* screw, an *endless* chain. *Everlasting* and *endless* are both used in a limited sense of protracted, indefinite,[158] but not infinite duration; as, the *everlasting* hills; *endless* debates; so we speak of *interminable* quarrels. *Eternal* holds quite strictly to the vast and sacred meaning in which it is applied to the Divine Being and the future state. *Everlasting*, *endless*, and *eternal* may be applied to that which has no life; as, *everlasting* chains, *endless* night, *eternal* death; *immortal* applies to that which now has life, and is forever exempt from death. *Timeless* carries, perhaps, the fullest idea of *eternal*, as above and beyond time, and not to be measured by it.

EVENT.

Synonyms:

case,
chance,
circumstance,
contingency,
end,
episode,
fortune,
incident,
issue,
outcome,
possibility,
result,

consequence, fact, occurrence,sequel.

Etymologically, the *incident* is that which falls in, the *event* that which comes out; *event* is thus greater and more signal than *incident*; we speak of trifling *incidents*, great *events*; *incidents* of daily life, *events* of history. *Circumstance* agrees with *incident* in denoting a matter of relatively slight importance, but implies a more direct connection with the principal matter; "circumstantial evidence" is evidence from seemingly minor matters directly connected with a case; "incidental evidence" would be some evidence that happened unexpectedly to touch it. An *occurrence* is, etymologically, that which we run against, without thought of its origin, connection or tendency. An *episode* is connected with the main course of *events*, like an *incident* or *circumstance*, but is of more independent interest and importance. *Outcome* is the Saxon, and *event* the Latin for expressing the same original idea. *Consequence* or *result* would express more of logical connection, and be more comprehensive. The *end* may be simple cessation; the *event* is what has been accomplished; the *event* of a war is victory or defeat; the *end* of the war is reached when a treaty of peace is signed. Since the future is contingent, *event* comes to have the meaning of a *contingency*; as, in the *event* of his death, the policy will at once fall due. Compare CIRCUMSTANCE; CONSEQUENCE; END.

EVERY.

Synonyms:

all,any,both,each,either.

All and *both* are collective; *any*, *each*, and *every* are distributive.[159] *Any* makes no selection and may not reach to the full limits of *all*; *each* and *every* make no exception or omission, and must extend to *all*; *all* sweeps in the units as part of a total, *each* and *every* proceed through the units to the total. A promise made to *all* omits none; a promise made to *any* may not reach *all*; a promise made to *every* one is so made that no individual shall fail to be aware of it; a promise made to *each* is made to the individuals personally, one by one. *Each* is thus more individual and specific than *every*; *every* classifies, *each* individualizes. *Each* divides, *both* unites; if a certain sum is given to *each* of two persons, *both* (together) must receive twice the amount; *both* must be aware of what has been separately communicated to *each*; a man may fire *both* barrels of a gun by a single movement; if he fires *each* barrel, he discharges them separately. *Either* properly denotes one of two, indefinitely, to the exclusion of the other. The use of *either* in the sense of *each* or *both*, tho sustained by good authority, is objectionable because ambiguous. His friends sat on *either* side of the room would naturally mean on one side or the other; if the meaning is on *both* sides, it would be better to say so.

EVIDENT.

Synonyms:

apparent,
clear,
conspicuous,
discernible,
distinct,
glaring,
indubitable,
manifest,
obvious,
open,
overt,
palpable,
patent,
perceptible,
plain,
tangible,
transparent,
unmistakable,
visible.

That is *apparent* which clearly appears to the senses or to the mind as soon as the attention is directed toward it; that is *evident* of which the mind is made sure by some inference that supplements the facts of perception; the marks of a struggle were *apparent* in broken shrubbery and trampled ground, and the finding of a mutilated body and a rifled purse made it *evident* that robbery and murder had been committed. That is *manifest* which we can lay the hand upon; *manifest* is thus stronger than *evident*, as touch is more absolute than sight; that the picture was a modern copy of an ancient work was *evident*, and on comparison with the original its inferiority was *manifest*. That is *obvious* which is directly in the way so that it can not be missed; as, the application of the remark was *obvious*. *Visible* applies to all that can be perceived by the sense of sight, whether the noonday sun, a ship on the horizon, or a microscopic object. *Discernible* applies to[160] that which is dimly or faintly *visible*, requiring strain and effort in order to be seen; as, the ship was *discernible* through the mist. That is *conspicuous* which stands out so as necessarily or strikingly to attract the attention. *Palpable* and *tangible* express more emphatically the thought of *manifest*.

Antonyms:

concealed,
covert,
dark,
hidden,
impalpable,
impenetrable,
imperceptible,
invisible,
latent,
obscure,
occult,
secret,
undiscovered,
unimagined,
unknown,
unseen,
unthought-of.

EXAMPLE.

Synonyms:

archetype,
ensample,
exemplar,
exemplification,
ideal,
model,
pattern,
precedent,
prototype,
sample,
specimen,
standard,
type,
warning.

From its original sense of *sample* or *specimen* (L. *exemplum*) *example* derives the seemingly contradictory meanings, on the one hand of a *pattern* or *model*, and on the other hand of a *warning*—a *sample* or *specimen* of what is to be followed, or of what is to be shunned. An *example*, however, may be more than a *sample* or *specimen* of any class;

it may be the very *archetype* or *prototype* to which the whole class must conform, as when Christ is spoken of as being an *example* or leaving an *example* for his disciples. *Example* comes nearer to the possible freedom of the *model* than to the necessary exactness of the *pattern*; often we can not, in a given case, exactly imitate the best *example*, but only adapt its teachings to altered circumstances. In its application to a person or thing, *exemplar* can scarcely be distinguished from *example*; but *example* is most frequently used for an act, or course of action, for which *exemplar* is not used; as, one sets a good (or a bad) *example*. An *exemplification* is an illustrative working out in action of a principle or law, without any reference to its being copied or repeated; an *example* guides, an *exemplification* illustrates or explains. *Ensample* is the same as *example*, but is practically obsolete outside of Scriptural or theological language. Compare MODEL; SAMPLE.

EXCESS.

Synonyms:

dissipation,
exorbitance,
extravagance,
intemperance,
lavishness,
overplus,
prodigality,
profusion,
redundance,
redundancy,
superabundance,
superfluity,
surplus,
waste,
wastefulness.

Excess is more than enough of anything, and, since this in[161] very many cases indicates a lack either of judgment or of self-control, the word is used frequently in an unfavorable sense. Careless expenditure in *excess* of income is *extravagance*; we may have also *extravagance* of language, professions, etc. As *extravagance* is *excess* in outlay, *exorbitance* is *excess* in demands, and especially in pecuniary demands upon others. *Overplus* and *superabundance* denote in the main a satisfactory, and *superfluity* an undesirable, *excess*; *lavishness* and *profusion*, a generous, bountiful, or amiable *excess*; as, a *profusion* of fair hair; *lavishness* of hospitality. *Surplus* is neutral, having none of the unfavorable meaning that often attaches to *excess*; a *surplus* is that which remains over after all demands are met. *Redundance* or *redundancy* refers chiefly to literary style, denoting an *excess* of words or matter. *Excess* in the moral sense is expressed by *dissipation*, *prodigality*, *intemperance*, etc.

Antonyms:

dearth,
defect,
deficiency,
destitution,
economy,
failure,
frugality,
inadequacy,
insufficiency,
lack,
need,
poverty,
scantiness,
shortcoming,
want.

EXECUTE.

Synonyms:

administer,
carry out,
do,
enforce,
perform.

To *execute* is to follow through to the end, put into absolute and final effect in action; to *administer* is to conduct as one holding a trust, as a minister and not an originator; the sheriff *executes* a writ; the trustee *administers* an estate, a charity, etc.; to *enforce* is to put into effect by force, actual or potential. To *administer* the laws is the province of a court of justice; to *execute* the laws is the province of a sheriff, marshal, constable, or other executive officer; to *administer* the law is to declare or apply it; to *execute* the law is to put it in force; for this *enforce* is the more general word, *execute* the more specific. From signifying to superintend officially some application or infliction, *administer* passes by a natural transition to signify *inflict*, *mete out*, *dispense*, and blows, medicine, etc., are said to be *administered*: a usage thoroughly established and reputable in spite of pedantic objections. *Enforce* signifies also to present and urge home by intellectual and moral force; as, to *enforce* a precept or a duty. Compare DO; KILL; MAKE.

---

[162]

EXERCISE.

Synonyms:

act,
action,
activity,
application,
drill,
employment,
exertion,
occupation,
operation,
performance,
practise,
use.

Exercise, in the ordinary sense, is the easy natural action of any power; *exertion* is the putting of any power to strain and tax. An *exercise*-drive for a horse is so much as will develop strength and health and not appreciably weary. But by qualifying adjectives we may bring *exercise* up to the full sense of *exertion*; as, violent *exercise*. *Exercise* is action taken at any time with a view to employing, maintaining, or increasing power, or merely for enjoyment; *practise* is systematic *exercise* with a view to the acquirement of facility and skill in some pursuit; a person takes a walk for *exercise*, or takes time for *practise* on the piano. *Practise* is also used of putting into action and effect what one has learned or holds as a theory; as, the *practise* of law or medicine; a profession of religion is good, but the *practise* of it is better. *Drill* is systematic, rigorous, and commonly enforced *practise* under a teacher or commander. Compare HABIT.

Antonyms:

idleness,inaction,inactivity,relaxation,rest.

EXPENSE.

Synonyms:

cost,expenditure,outgo,outlay.

The *cost* of a thing is whatever one surrenders or gives up for it, intentionally or unintentionally, or even unconsciously; *expense* is what is laid out by calculation or intention. We say, "he won his fame at the *cost* of his life;" "I know it to my *cost*;" we speak of a joke at another's *expense*; at another's *cost* would seem to make it a more serious matter. There is a tendency to use *cost* of what we pay for a possession, *expense* of what we pay for a service; we speak of the *cost* of goods, the *expense* of making up. *Outlay* is used of some definite *expenditure*, as for the purchase of supplies; *outgo* of a steady drain or of incidental *expenses*. See PRICE.

Antonyms:

gain, proceeds, profit, receipt, return,
income, product, profits, receipts, returns.

EXPLICIT.

Synonym:

express.

Both *explicit* and *express* are opposed to what is merely implicit[163] or implied. That which is *explicit* is unfolded, so that it may not be obscure, doubtful, or ambiguous; that which is *express* is uttered or stated so decidedly that it may not be forgotten nor overlooked. An *explicit* statement is too clear to be misunderstood; an *express* command is too emphatic to be disregarded. Compare CLEAR.

Antonyms:

ambiguous, implicit, indefinite, uncertain,
doubtful, implied, indeterminate, vague.

EXTEMPORANEOUS.

Synonyms:

extemporary, impromptu, offhand,
extempore, improvised, unpremeditated.

Extemporaneous, originally signifying *of* or *from the time* or *occasion*, has come to mean done or made with but little (if any) preparation, and is now chiefly applied to addresses of which the thought has been prepared, and only the language and incidental treatment left to the suggestion of the moment, so that an *extemporaneous* speech is understood to be any one that is not read or recited; *impromptu* keeps its original sense, denoting something that springs from the instant; the *impromptu* utterance is generally brief, direct, and vigorous; the *extemporaneous* speech may chance to be prosy. *Offhand* is still more emphatic as to the readiness and freedom of the utterance. *Unpremeditated* is graver and more formal, denoting absolute want of preparation, but is rather too heavy a word to be applied to such apt, ready utterance as is generally designated by *impromptu*.

Antonyms:

elaborated,premeditated,prepared,read,recited,studied,written.

EXTERMINATE.

Synonyms:

annihilate,
banish,
destroy,
eradicate,
expel,
extirpate,
overthrow,
remove,
root out,
uproot,
wipe out.

Exterminate (L. *ex*, out, and *terminus*, a boundary) signified primarily to drive beyond the bounds or limits of a country; the word is applied to races of men or animals, and is now almost exclusively used for removal by death; individuals are now said to be *banished* or *expelled*. *Eradicate* (L. *e*, out, and *radix*, root) is primarily applied to numbers or groups of plants which it is desired to remove effectually from the soil; a single tree may be *uprooted*, but is not said to be *eradicated*; we labor to *eradicate*[164] or *root out* noxious weeds. To *extirpate* (L. *ex*, out, and *stirps*, stem, stock) is not only to *destroy* the individuals of any race of plants or animals, but the very stock, so that the race can never be restored; we speak of *eradicating* a disease, of *extirpating* a cancer, *exterminating* wild beasts or hostile tribes; we seek to *eradicate* or *extirpate* all vices and evils. Compare ABOLISH.

Antonyms:

augment,
beget,
breed,
build up,
cherish,
colonize,
develop,
foster,
increase,
plant,
populate,
propagate,
replenish,
settle.

FAINT.

Synonyms:

dim,
exhausted,
faded,
faint-hearted,
faltering,
fatigued,
feeble,
half-hearted,
ill-defined,
indistinct,
irresolute,
languid,
listless,
purposeless,
timid,
weak,
wearied,
worn,
worn down,
worn out.

Faint, with the general sense of lacking strength or effectiveness, covers a wide range of meaning, signifying overcome with physical weakness or exhaustion, or lacking in purpose, courage, or energy, as said of persons; or lacking definiteness or distinctness of color or sound, as said of written characters, voices, or musical notes. A person may be *faint* when physically *wearied*, or when overcome with fear; he may be a *faint* adherent because naturally *feeble* or *purposeless*, or because *half-hearted* in the cause; he may be a *faltering* supporter because naturally *irresolute* or because *faint-hearted* and *timid* in view of perils that threaten, a *listless* worker, through want of mental energy and purpose. Written characters may be *faint* or *dim*, either because originally written with poor ink, or because they have become *faded* by time and exposure.

Antonyms:

bright,
brilliant,
clear,
conspicuous,
daring,
energetic,
fresh,
hearty,
resolute,
strong,
sturdy,
vigorous.

Prepositions:

Faint *with* hunger; faint *in* color.

FAITH.

Synonyms:

assent,
assurance,
belief,
confidence,
conviction,
credence,
credit,
creed,
doctrine,
opinion,
reliance,
trust.

Belief, as an intellectual process, is the acceptance of some[165] thing as true on other grounds than personal observation and experience. We give *credence* to a report, *assent* to a proposition or to a proposal. *Belief* is stronger than *credence*; *credence* might be described as a prima facie *belief*; *credence* is a more formal word than *belief*, and seems to imply somewhat more of volition; we speak of giving *credence* to a report, but not of giving *belief*. Goods are sold on *credit*; we give one *credit* for good intentions. *Conviction* is a *belief* established by argument or evidence; *assurance* is *belief* beyond the reach of argument; as, the Christian's *assurance* of salvation. An *opinion* is a general conclusion held as probable, tho without full certainty; a *persuasion* is a more confident *opinion*, involving the heart as well as the intellect. In religion, a *doctrine* is a statement of *belief* regarding a single point; a *creed* is a summary statement of *doctrines*. *Confidence* is a firm dependence upon a statement as true, or upon a person as worthy. *Reliance* is *confidence* on which we act or are ready to act unquestioningly; we have a calm *reliance* upon the uniformity of nature. *Trust* is a practical and tranquil resting of the mind upon the integrity, kindness, friendship, or promises of a person; we have *trust* in God. *Faith* is a union of *belief* and *trust*. *Faith* is chiefly personal; *belief* may be quite impersonal; we speak of *belief* of a proposition, *faith* in a promise, because the promise emanates from a person. But *belief* in a person is often used with no appreciable difference from *faith*. In religion it is common to distinguish between intellectual *belief* of religious truth, as any other truth might be believed, and *belief* of the heart, or saving *faith*.

Antonyms:

denial,
disbelief,
dissent,
distrust,
doubt,
incredulity,
infidelity,
misgiving,
rejection,
skepticism,
suspicion,
unbelief.

Prepositions:

Have faith *in* God; the faith *of* the gospel.

FAITHFUL.

Synonyms:

devoted,
firm,
incorruptible,
loyal,
stanch,
sure,
true,
trustworthy,
trusty,
unwavering.

A person is *faithful* who will keep faith, whether with or without power to aid or serve; a person or thing is *trusty* that possesses such qualities as to justify the fullest confidence and dependence.[166] We may speak of a *faithful* but feeble friend; we say a *trusty* agent, a *trusty* steed, a *trusty* sword.

Antonyms:

capricious,
faithless,
false,
fickle,
unfaithful,
untrue,
untrustworthy,
wavering.

Prepositions:

Faithful *in* service; *to* duty; *to* comrade or commander; faithful *among* the faithless.

FAME.

Synonyms:

celebrity,
credit,
distinction,
eminence,
glory,
honor,
laurels,
notoriety,
renown,
reputation,
repute.

Fame is the widely disseminated report of a person's character, deeds, or abilities, and is oftenest used in the favorable sense. *Reputation* and *repute* are more limited than *fame*, and may be either good or bad. *Notoriety* is evil *repute* or a dishonorable counterfeit of *fame*. *Eminence* and *distinction* may result from rank, station, or character. *Celebrity* is limited in range; we speak of local *celebrity*, or world-wide *fame*. *Fame* in its best sense may be defined as the applause of numbers; *renown*, as such applause worthily won; we speak of the conqueror's *fame*, the patriot's *renown*. *Glory* and *honor* are of good import;

honor may be given for qualities or acts that should not win it, but it is always given as something good and worthy; we can speak of an evil *fame*, but not of evil *honor*; *glory* has a more exalted and often a sacred sense.

Antonyms:

contempt, discredit, dishonor, humiliation, infamy, obscurity,
contumely, disgrace, disrepute, ignominy, oblivion, shame.

FANATICISM.

Synonyms:

bigotry, credulity, intolerance, superstition.

Fanaticism is extravagant or even frenzied zeal; *bigotry* is obstinate and unreasoning attachment to a cause or creed; *fanaticism* and *bigotry* usually include *intolerance*, which is unwillingness to tolerate beliefs or opinions contrary to one's own; *superstition* is ignorant and irrational religious belief. *Credulity* is not distinctively religious, but is a general readiness to believe without sufficient evidence, with a proneness to accept the marvellous. *Bigotry* is narrow, *fanaticism* is fierce, *superstition* is ignorant, *credulity* is weak, *intolerance* is severe. *Bigotry* has not the[167] capacity to reason fairly, *fanaticism* has not the patience, *superstition* has not the knowledge and mental discipline, *intolerance* has not the disposition. *Bigotry*, *fanaticism*, and *superstition* are perversions of the religious sentiment; *credulity* and *intolerance* often accompany skepticism or atheism.

Antonyms:

cynicism, free-thinking, indifference, latitudinarianism.

FANCIFUL.

Synonyms:

chimerical, fantastic, grotesque, imaginative, visionary.

That is *fanciful* which is dictated or suggested by fancy independently of more serious considerations; the *fantastic* is the *fanciful* with the added elements of whimsicalness and extravagance. The *fanciful* swings away from the real or the ordinary lightly and pleasantly, the *fantastic* extravagantly, the *grotesque* ridiculously. A *fanciful* arrangement of objects is commonly pleasing, a *fantastic* arrangement is striking, a *grotesque* arrangement is laughable. A *fanciful* theory or suggestion may be clearly recognized as such; a *visionary* scheme is erroneously supposed to have a basis in fact. Compare synonyms for DREAM; IDEA; IMAGINATION.

Antonyms:

accurate,
calculable,
calculated,
commonplace,
literal,
ordinary,
prosaic,
real,
reasonable,
regular,
sensible,
solid,
sound,
sure,
true.

FANCY.

Synonyms:

belief,
caprice,
conceit,
conception,
desire,
humor,
idea,
image,
imagination,
inclination,
liking,
mood,
predilection,
supposition,
vagary,
whim.

An intellectual *fancy* is a mental *image* or picture founded upon slight or whimsical association or resemblance; a *conceit* has less of the picturesque and more of the theoretic than a *fancy*; a *conceit* is somewhat aside from the common laws of reasoning, as a *fancy* is lighter and more airy than the common mode of thought. A *conceit* or *fancy* may be wholly unfounded, while a *conception* always has, or is believed to have, some answering reality. (Compare REASON.) An intellectual *fancy* or *conceit* may be pleasing or amusing, but is never worth serious discussion; we speak of a mere *fancy*, a droll or odd *conceit*. An emotional or personal *fancy* is a capricious *liking* formed with slight reason and[168] no exercise of judgment, and liable to fade as lightly as it was formed. In a broader sense, the *fancy* signifies the faculty by which *fancies* or mental images are formed, associated, or combined. Compare synonyms for DREAM; IDEA; IMAGINATION.

Antonyms:

actuality,certainty,fact,reality,truth,verity.

Prepositions:

To have a fancy *for* or take a fancy *to* a person or thing.

FAREWELL.

Synonyms:

adieu,
congé,
good-by,
leave-taking,
parting salutation,
valediction,
valedictory.

Good-by is the homely and hearty, *farewell* the formal English word at parting. *Adieu*, from the French, is still more ceremonious than *farewell*; *congé*, also from the French, is commonly contemptuous or supercilious, and equivalent to dismissal. *Valediction* is a learned word never in popular use. A *valedictory* is a public farewell to a company or assembly.

Prepositions:

I bade farewell *to* my comrades, or (without preposition) I bade my comrades farewell; I took a sad farewell *of* my friends.

FEAR.

Synonyms:

affright,
apprehension,
awe,
consternation,
dismay,
disquietude,
dread,
fright,
horror,
misgiving,
panic,
terror,
timidity,
trembling,
tremor,
trepidation.

Fear is the generic term denoting an emotion excited by threatening evil with a desire to avoid or escape it; *fear* may be sudden or lingering, in view of present, of imminent, or of distant and only possible danger; in the latter sense *dread* is oftener used. *Horror* (etymologically a shivering or shuddering) denotes a shuddering *fear* accompanied with abhorrence or such a shock to the feelings and sensibilities as may exist without *fear*, as when one suddenly encounters some ghastly spectacle; we say of a desperate but fettered criminal, "I looked upon him with *horror*." Where *horror* includes *fear*, it is *fear* mingled with abhorrence. (See ABHOR.) *Affright*, *fright*, and *terror* are always sudden, and in actual presence of that which is terrible. *Fear* may overwhelm, or may nerve one to desperate defense; *fright* and *terror* render one incapable of defense; *fear* may be controlled by force of[169] will; *fright* and *terror* overwhelm the will; *terror* paralyzes, *fright* may cause one to fly, to scream, or to swoon. *Fright* is largely a matter of the nerves; *fear* of the intellect and the imagination; *terror* of all the faculties, bodily and mental. *Panic* is a sudden *fear* or *fright*, affecting numbers at once; vast armies or crowded audiences are liable to *panic* upon slight occasion. In a like sense we speak of a financial *panic*. *Dismay* is a helpless sinking of heart in view of some overwhelming peril or sorrow. *Dismay* is more reflective, enduring, and despairing than *fright*; a horse is subject to *fright* or *terror*, but not to *dismay*. *Awe* is a reverential *fear*. Compare ALARM.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for FORTITUDE.

FEMININE.

Synonyms:

effeminate,female,womanish,womanly.

We apply *female* to the sex, *feminine* to the qualities, especially the finer physical or mental qualities that distinguish the *female* sex in the human family, or to the objects appropriate for or especially employed by them. A *female* voice is the voice of a woman; a *feminine* voice may belong to a man. *Womanish* denotes the undesirable, *womanly* the admirable or lovely qualities of woman. *Womanly* tears would suggest respect and sympathy, *womanish* tears a touch of contempt. The word *effeminate* is always used reproachfully, and only of men as possessing *womanly* traits such as are inconsistent with true manliness.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for MASCULINE.

FETTER.

Synonyms:

bondage,
bonds,
chains,
custody,
durance,
duress,
gyves,
handcuffs,
imprisonment,
irons,
manacles,
shackles.

Bonds may be of cord, leather, or any other substance that can bind; *chains* are of linked metal. *Manacles* and *handcuffs* are for the hands, *fetters* are primarily chains or jointed iron fastenings for the feet; *gyves* may be for either. A *shackle* is a metallic ring, clasp, or bracelet-like fastening for encircling and restraining a limb: commonly one of a pair, used either for hands or feet. *Bonds*, *fetters*, and *chains* are used in a general way for almost[170] any form of restraint. *Gyves* is now wholly poetic, and the other words are mostly restricted to the literary style; *handcuffs* is the specific and *irons* the general term in popular usage; as, the prisoner was put in *irons*. *Bonds*, *chains*, and *shackles* are frequently used in the metaphorical sense.

FEUD.

Synonyms:

affray,
animosity,
bitterness,
brawl,
broil,
contention,
contest,
controversy,
dispute,
dissension,
enmity,
fray,
hostility,
quarrel,
strife.

A *feud* is *enmity* between families, clans, or parties, with acts of *hostility* mutually retaliated and avenged; *feud* is rarely used of individuals, never of nations. While all the other words of the group may refer to that which is transient, a *feud* is long-enduring, and often hereditary. *Dissension* is used of a number of persons, of a party or other organization. *Bitterness* is in feeling only; *enmity* and *hostility* involve will and purpose to oppose or injure. A *quarrel* is in word or act, or both, and is commonly slight and transient, as we speak of childish *quarrels*; *contention* and *strife* may be in word or deed; *contest* ordinarily involves some form of action. *Contest* is often used in a good sense, *contention* and *strife* very rarely so. *Controversy* is commonly in words; *strife* extends from verbal *controversy* to the *contests* of armies. *Affray*, *brawl*, and *broil*, like *quarrel*, are words of inferior dignity. An *affray* or *broil* may arise at a street corner; the *affray* always involves physical force; the *brawl* or *broil* may be confined to violent language.

FICTION.

Synonyms:

allegory,
apologue,
fable,
fabrication,
falsehood,
figment,
invention,
legend,
myth,
novel,
romance,
story.

Fiction is now chiefly used of a prose work in narrative form in which the characters are partly or wholly imaginary, and which is designed to portray human life, with or without a practical lesson; a *romance* portrays what is picturesque or striking, as a mere *fiction* may not do; *novel* is a general name for any continuous fictitious narrative, especially a love-story; *fiction* and *novel* are used with little difference of meaning, except that *novel* characterizes a work in which the emotional element is especially[171] prominent. The moral of the *fable* is expressed formally; the lesson of the *fiction*, if any, is inwrought. A *fiction* is studied; a *myth* grows up without intent. A *legend* may be true, but can not be historically verified; a *myth* has been received as true at some time, but is now known to be false. A *fabrication* is designed to deceive; it is a less odious word than *falsehood*, but is really stronger, as a *falsehood* may be a sudden unpremeditated statement, while a *fabrication* is a series of statements carefully studied and fitted together in order to deceive; the *falsehood* is all false; the *fabrication* may mingle the true with the false. A *figment* is something imaginary which the one who utters it may or may not believe to be true; we say, "That statement is a *figment* of his imagination." The *story* may be either true or false, and covers the various senses of all the words in the group. *Apologue*, a word simply transferred from Greek into English, is the same as *fable*. Compare ALLEGORY.

Antonyms:

certainty,fact,history,literalness,reality,truth,verity.

FIERCE.

Synonyms:

ferocious,
fiery,
furious,
impetuous,
raging,
savage,
uncultivated,
untrained,
violent,
wild.

Fierce signifies having a *furious* and cruel nature, or being in a *furious* and cruel mood, more commonly the latter. It applies to that which is now intensely excited, or liable to intense and sudden excitement. *Ferocious* refers to a state or disposition; that which is *fierce* flashes or blazes; that which is *ferocious* steadily burns; we speak of a *ferocious* animal, a *fierce* passion. A *fiery* spirit with a good disposition is quickly excitable in a good cause, but may not be *fierce* or *ferocious*. *Savage* signifies *untrained*, *uncultivated*. *Ferocious* always denotes a tendency to violence; it is more distinctly bloodthirsty than the other words; a person may be deeply, intensely cruel, and not at all *ferocious*; a *ferocious* countenance expresses habitual ferocity; a *fierce* countenance may express habitual fierceness, or only the sudden anger of the moment. That which is *wild* is simply unrestrained; the word may imply no anger or harshness; as, *wild* delight, *wild* alarm.

Antonyms:

affectionate,
docile,
gentle,
harmless,
kind,
mild,
patient,
peaceful,
submissive,
sweet,
tame,
tender.

---

[172]

FINANCIAL.

Synonyms:

fiscal,
monetary,
pecuniary.

These words all relate to money, receipts, or expenditures. *Monetary* relates to actual money, coin, currency; as, the *monetary* system; a *monetary* transaction is one in which money is transferred. *Pecuniary* refers to that in which money is involved, but less directly; we speak of one's *pecuniary* affairs or interests, with no special reference to the handling of cash. *Financial* applies especially to governmental revenues or expenditures, or to private transactions of considerable moment; we speak of a *pecuniary* reward, a *financial* enterprise; we give a needy person *pecuniary* (not *financial*) assistance. It is common to speak of the *fiscal* rather than the *financial* year.

FINE.

Synonyms:

beautiful,
excellent,
polished,
small,

clarified,
clear,
comminuted,
dainty,
delicate,
elegant,
exquisite,
gauzy,
handsome,
keen,
minute,
nice,
pure,
refined,
sensitive,
sharp,
slender,
slight,
smooth,
splendid,
subtile,
subtle,
tenuous,
thin.

Fine (L. *finis*, end) denotes that which has been brought to a full end, finished. From this root-sense many derived meanings branch out, causing words quite remote from each other to be alike synonyms of *fine*. That which is truly finished, brought to an ideal end, is *excellent* of its kind, and *beautiful*, if a thing that admits of beauty; as, a *fine* house, *fine* trees, a *fine* woman, a *fine* morning; if a thing that admits of the removal of impurities, it is not finished till these are removed, and hence *fine* signifies *clarified*, *clear*, *pure*, *refined*; as, *fine* gold. That which is finished is apt to be *polished*, smooth to the touch, minutely exact in outline; hence *fine* comes to be a synonym for all words like *dainty*, *delicate*, *exquisite*; as, *fine* manners, a *fine* touch, *fine* perceptions. As that which is *delicate* is apt to be small, by an easy extension of meaning *fine* becomes a synonym for *slender*, *slight*, *minute*, *comminuted*; as, a *fine* thread, *fine* sand; or for *filmy*, *tenuous*, *thin*; as, a *fine* lace, *fine* wire; and as a *thin* edge is *keen*, *sharp*, *fine* becomes also a synonym for these words; as, a *fine* point, a *fine* edge. Compare BEAUTIFUL; MINUTE.

Antonyms:

big,
blunt,
clumsy,
coarse,
great,
heavy,
huge,
immense,
large,
rude,
stout,
thick.

---

[173]

FIRE.

Synonyms:

blaze,
burning,
combustion,
conflagration,
flame.

Combustion is the essential fact which is at the basis of that assemblage of visible phenomenon which we call *fire*; *combustion* being the continuous chemical combination of a substance with some element, as oxygen, evolving heat, and extending from slow processes, such as those by which the heat of the human body is maintained, to the processes producing the most intense light also, as in a blast-furnace, or on the surface of the sun. *Fire* is always attended with light, as well as heat; *blaze*, *flame*, etc., designate the mingled light and heat of a *fire*. *Combustion* is the scientific, *fire* the popular term. A *conflagration* is an extensive *fire*. Compare LIGHT.

FLOCK.

Synonyms:

bevy,
brood,
covey,
drove,
group,
hatch,
herd,
litter,
lot,
pack,
set,
swarm.

Group is the general word for any gathering of a small number of objects, whether of persons, animals, or inanimate things. The individuals in a *brood* or *litter* are related to each other; those in the other *groups* may not be. *Brood* is used chiefly of fowls and birds, *litter* of certain quadrupeds which bring forth many young at a birth; we speak of a *brood* of chickens, a *litter* of puppies; *brood* is sometimes applied to a family of young children. *Bevy* is used of birds, and figuratively of any bright and lively *group* of women or children, but rarely of men. *Flock* is applied to birds and to some of the smaller animals; *herd* is confined to the larger animals; we speak of a *bevy* of quail, a *covey* of partridges, a *flock* of blackbirds, or a *flock* of sheep, a *herd* of cattle, horses, buffaloes, or elephants, a *pack* of wolves, a *pack* of hounds, a *swarm* of bees. A collection of animals driven or gathered for driving is called a *drove*.

FLUCTUATE.

Synonyms:

hesitate,
oscillate,
swerve,
undulate,
vacillate,
vary,
veer,
waver.

To *fluctuate* (L. *fluctus*, a wave) is to move like a wave with alternate rise and fall. A pendulum *oscillates*; waves *fluctuate* or *undulate*; a light or a flame *wavers*; a frightened steed *swerves*[174] from his course; a tool or weapon *swerves* from the mark or line; the temperature *varies*; the wind *veers* when it suddenly changes its direction. That which *veers* may steadily hold the new direction; that which *oscillates*, *fluctuates*, *undulates*, or *wavers* returns upon its way. As regards mental states, he who *hesitates* sticks (L. *hærere*) on the verge of decision; he who *wavers* does not stick to a decision; he who *vacillates* decides now one way, and now another; one *vacillates* between contrasted decisions or actions; he may *waver* between decision and indecision, or between action and inaction. Persons *hesitate*, *vacillate*, *waver*; feelings *fluctuate* or *vary*. Compare SHAKE.

Antonyms:

abide, adhere, hold fast, persist, stand fast, stay, stick.

FLUID.

Synonyms:

gas,
liquid.

A *fluid* is a substance that, like air or water, yields to any force that tends to change its form; a *liquid* is a body in that state in which the particles move freely among themselves, but remain in one mass, keeping the same volume, but taking always the form of the containing vessel; a *liquid* is an inelastic *fluid*; a *gas* is an elastic *fluid* that tends to expand to the utmost limits of the containing space. All *liquids* are *fluids*, but not all *fluids* are *liquids*; air and all the *gases* are *fluids*, but they are not *liquids* under ordinary circumstances, tho capable of being reduced to a *liquid* form by special means, as by cold and pressure. Water at the ordinary temperature is at once a *fluid* and a *liquid*.

FOLLOW.

Synonyms:

accompany,
attend,
chase,
come after,
copy,
ensue,
go after,
heed,
imitate,
obey,
observe,
practise,
pursue,
result,
succeed.

Anything that *comes after* or *goes after* another, either in space or in time, is said to *follow* it. A servant *follows* or *attends* his master; a victorious general may *follow* the retiring enemy merely to watch and hold him in check; he *chases* or *pursues* with intent to overtake and attack; the chase is closer and hotter than the pursuit. (Compare synonyms for HUNT.) One event may *follow* another either with or without special connection; if it[175] *ensues*, there is some orderly connection; as, the *ensuing* year; if it *results* from another, there is some relation of effect, consequence, or inference. A clerk *observes* his employer's directions. A child *obeys* his parent's commands, *follows* or *copies* his example, *imitates* his speech and manners. The compositor *follows* copy; the incoming *succeeds* the outgoing official.

FOOD.

Synonyms:

aliment,
diet,
fare,
feed,
fodder,
forage,
nourishment,
nutriment,
nutrition,
pabulum,
provender,
regimen,
sustenance,
viands,
victuals.

Food is, in the popular sense, whatever one eats in contradistinction to what one drinks. Thus, we speak of *food* and drink, of wholesome, unwholesome, or indigestible *food*; but in a more scientific sense whatever, when taken into the digestive organs, serves to build up structure or supply waste may be termed *food*; the word is extended to plants to signify whatever taken in any way into the organism serves similar purposes; thus, we speak of liquid *food*, plant *food*, etc.; in this wider sense *food* is closely synonymous with *nutriment*, *nourishment*, and *sustenance*. *Diet* refers to the quantity and quality of *food* habitually taken, with reference to preservation of health. *Victuals* is a plain, homely word for whatever may be eaten; we speak of choice *viands*, cold *victuals*. *Nourishment* and *sustenance* apply to whatever can be introduced into the system as a means of sustaining life; we say of a convalescent, he is taking *nourishment*. *Nutriment* and *nutrition* have more of scientific reference to the vitalizing principles of various *foods*; thus, wheat is said to contain a great amount of *nutriment*. *Regimen* considers *food* as taken by strict rule, but applies more widely to the whole ordering of life. *Fare* is a general word for all table supplies, good or bad; as, sumptuous *fare*; wretched *fare*. *Feed*, *fodder*, and *provender* are used only of the food of the lower animals, *feed* denoting anything consumed, but more commonly grain, *fodder* denoting hay, cornstalks, or the like, sometimes called "long *feed*;" *provender* is dry *feed*, whether grain or hay, straw, etc. *Forage* denotes any kind of *food* suitable for horses and cattle, primarily as obtained by a military force in scouring the country, especially an enemy's country.

---

[176]

FORMIDABLE.

Synonyms:

dangerous,redoubted,terrible,tremendous.

That which is *formidable* is worthy of fear if encountered or opposed; as, a *formidable* array of troops, or of evidence. *Formidable* is a word of more dignity than *dangerous*, and suggests more calm and collected power than *terrible*; *formidable* is less overwhelming than *tremendous*. A loaded gun is *dangerous*; a park of artillery is *formidable*; a charge of cavalry is *terrible*; the full shock of great armies is *tremendous*. A *dangerous* man is likely to do mischief, and needs watching; a *formidable* man may not be *dangerous* if not attacked; an enraged maniac is *terrible*; the force of ocean waves in a storm, and the silent pressure in the ocean depths, are *tremendous*.

Antonyms:

contemptible,despicable,feeble,harmless,helpless,powerless,weak.

Prepositions:

Formidable *by* or *in* numbers; *in* strength; formidable *to* the enemy.

FORTIFICATION.

Synonyms:

castle,citadel,fastness,fort,fortress,stronghold.

Fortification is the general word for any artificial defensive work; a *fortress* is a *fortification* of especial size and strength; a *fortress* is regarded as permanent, and is ordinarily an independent work; a *fort* or *fortification* may be temporary; a *fortification* may be but part of a defensive system; we speak of the *fortifications* of a city. A *citadel* is a *fortification* within a city, or the fortified inner part of a city or *fortress*, within which a garrison may be placed to overawe the citizens, or to which the defenders may retire if the outer works are captured; the medieval *castle* was the fortified residence of a king or baron. *Fort* is the common military term for a detached fortified building or enclosure of moderate size occupied or designed to be occupied by troops. The *fortifications* of a modern city usually consist of a chain of *forts*. Any defensible place, whether made so by nature or by art, is a *fastness* or *stronghold*.

FORTITUDE.

Synonyms:

courage,endurance,heroism,resolution.

Fortitude (L. *fortis*, strong) is the strength or firmness of mind[177] or soul to endure pain or adversity patiently and determinedly. *Fortitude* has been defined as "passive *courage*," which is a good definition, but not complete. *Fortitude* might be termed "still *courage*," or "enduring *courage*;" it is that quality which is able not merely to endure pain or trial, but steadily to confront dangers that can not be actively opposed, or against which one has no adequate defense; it takes *courage* to charge a battery, *fortitude* to stand still under an enemy's fire. *Resolution* is of the mind; *endurance* is partly physical; it requires *resolution* to resist temptation, *endurance* to resist hunger and cold. Compare BRAVE; PATIENCE.

FORTUNATE.

Synonyms:

favored,lucky,prospered,prosperous,successful.
happy,

A man is *successful* in any case if he achieves or gains what he seeks; he is known as a *successful* man if he has achieved or gained worthy objects of endeavor; he is *fortunate* or *lucky* if advantages have come to him without or beyond his direct planning or achieving. *Lucky* is the more common and colloquial, *fortunate* the more elegant word;

fortunate is more naturally applied to the graver matters, as we speak of the *fortunate*, rather than the *lucky*, issue of a great battle; *lucky* more strongly emphasizes the element of chance, as when we speak of a *lucky* hit, a *lucky* guess, or of one as "born under a *lucky* star." *Favored* is used in a religious sense, implying that one is the object of divine favor. *Happy*, in this connection, signifies possessed of the means of happiness. One is said to be *happy* or *prosperous* whether his prosperity be the result of fortune or of achievement; *prospered* rather denotes the action of a superintending Providence.

Antonyms:

broken,
crushed,
fallen,
ill-starred,
miserable,
unfortunate,
unhappy,
unlucky,
woful,
wretched.

FRAUD.

Synonyms:

artifice,
cheat,
cheating,
deceit,
deception,
dishonesty,
duplicity,
imposition,
imposture,
swindle,
swindling,
treachery,
treason,
trick.

A *fraud* is an act of deliberate *deception* with the design of securing something by taking unfair advantage of another. A *deceit* or *deception* may be designed merely to gain some end of one's own, with no intent of harming another; an *imposition*, to take[178] some small advantage of another, or simply to make another ridiculous. An *imposture* is designed to obtain money, credit, or position to which one is not entitled, and may be practised by a street beggar or by the pretender to a throne. All action that is not honest is *dishonesty*, but the term *dishonesty* is generally applied in business, politics, etc., to deceitful practises which are not directly criminal. *Fraud* includes *deceit*, but *deceit* may not reach the gravity of *fraud*; a *cheat* is of the nature of *fraud*, but of a petty sort; a *swindle* is more serious than a *cheat*, involving larger values and more flagrant *dishonesty*. *Fraud* is commonly actionable at law; *cheating* and *swindling* are for the most part out of the reach of legal proceedings. *Treachery* is chiefly used of *dishonesty* in matters of friendship, social relations, government, or war; *treachery* may be more harmful than *fraud*, but is not so gross, and is not ordinarily open to legal redress. *Treason* is a specific form of *treachery* of a subject to the government to which he owes allegiance, and is definable and punishable at law. Compare ARTIFICE; DECEPTION.

Antonyms:

fairness, good faith, honesty, integrity, truth, uprightness.

FRIENDLY.

Synonyms:

accessible,
affable,
affectionate,
amicable,
brotherly,
companionable,
complaisant,
cordial,
favorable,
fond,
genial,
hearty,
kind,
kindly,
loving,
neighborly,
sociable,
social,
tender,
well-disposed.

Friendly, as said of persons, signifies having the disposition of a friend; as said of acts, it signifies befitting or worthy of a friend. The adjective *friendly* does not reach the full significance of the nouns "friend" and "friendship;" one may be *friendly* to those who are not his friends, and to be in *friendly* relations often signifies little more than not to be hostile. In its application to persons, *accessible* is used of public and eminent persons, who might, if disposed, hold themselves at a distance from others. *Companionable* and *sociable* refer to manner and behavior, *cordial* and *genial* express genuine kindliness of heart. We speak of a *cordial* greeting, a *favorable* reception, a *neighborly* call, a *sociable* visitor, an *amicable* settlement, a *kind* interest, a *friendly* regard, a *hearty* welcome. The Saxon *friendly* is stronger than the Latin *amicable*; the *amicable* may be merely formal; the *friendly* is from the heart. *Fond* is commonly applied to an[179] affection that becomes, or at least appears, excessive. *Affectionate*, *devoted*, and *tender* are almost always used in a high and good sense; as, an *affectionate* son; a *devoted* friend; "the *tender* mercy of our God," *Luke* i, 78. Compare FRIENDSHIP.

Antonyms:

adverse,
alienated,
antagonistic,
bellicose,
belligerent,
cold,
contentious,
disaffected,
distant,
estranged,
frigid,
hostile,
ill-disposed,
indifferent,
inimical,
unfriendly,
unkind,
warlike.

FRIENDSHIP.

Synonyms:

affection,
amity,
attachment,
comity,
consideration,
devotion,
esteem,
favor,
friendliness,
good will,
love,
regard.

Friendship is a deep, quiet, enduring *affection*, founded upon mutual respect and *esteem*. *Friendship* is always mutual; there may be unreciprocated *affection* or *attachment*, unrequited *love*, or even unrecognized and unappreciated *devotion*, but never unreciprocated or unrequited *friendship*; one may have friendly feelings toward an enemy, but while there is hostility or coldness on one side there can not be *friendship* between the two. *Friendliness* is a quality of friendly feeling, without the deep and settled *attachment* implied in the state of *friendship*. *Comity* is mutual kindly courtesy, with care of each other's right, and *amity* a friendly feeling and relation, not necessarily implying special *friendliness*; as, the *comity* of nations, or *amity* between neighboring countries. *Affection* may be purely natural; *friendship* is a growth. *Friendship* is more intellectual and less emotional than *love*; it is easier to give reasons for *friendship* than for *love*; *friendship* is more calm and quiet, *love* more fervent; *love* often rises to intensest passion; we can not speak of the passion of *friendship*. *Friendship* implies some degree of equality, while *love* does not; we can speak of man's *love* toward God, not of his *friendship* for God. (There is more latitude in the use of the concrete noun *friend*; Abraham was called "the friend of God;" Christ was called "the friend of sinners.") Compare ACQUAINTANCE; LOVE.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for BATTLE; ENMITY; FEUD; HATRED.

Prepositions:

The friendship *of* one person *for* or *toward* another, or the friendship *between* them.

---

[180]

FRIGHTEN.

Synonyms:

affright,
alarm,
appal,
browbeat,
cow,
daunt,
dismay,
intimidate,
scare,
terrify.

One is *frightened* by a cause of fear addressed directly and suddenly to the senses; he is *intimidated* by an apprehension of contingent consequences dependent on some act of his own to be done or forborne; the means of intimidation may act through the senses, or may appeal only to the intellect or the sensibilities. The sudden rush of an armed madman may *frighten*; the quiet leveling of a highwayman's pistol *intimidates*. A savage beast is *intimidated* by the keeper's whip. Employers may *intimidate* their employees from voting contrary to their will by threat of discharge; a mother may be *intimidated* through fear for her child. To *browbeat* or *cow* is to bring into a state of submissive fear; to *daunt* is to give pause or check to a violent, threatening, or even a brave spirit. To *scare* is to cause sudden, unnerving fear; to *terrify* is to awaken fear that is overwhelming. Compare ALARM.

FRUGALITY.

Synonyms:

economy,
miserliness,
parsimoniousness,
parsimony,
providence,
prudence,
saving,
scrimping,
sparing,
thrift.

Economy is a wise and careful administration of the means at one's disposal; *frugality* is a withholding of expenditure, or *sparing* of supplies or provision, to a noticeable and often to a painful degree; *parsimony* is excessive and unreasonable *saving* for the sake of *saving*. *Frugality* exalted into a virtue to be practised for its own sake, instead of as a means to an end, becomes the vice of *parsimony*. *Miserliness* is the denying oneself and others the ordinary comforts or even necessaries of life, for the mere sake of hoarding money. *Prudence* and *providence* look far ahead, and sacrifice the present to the future, saving as much as may be necessary for that end. (See PRUDENCE.) *Thrift* seeks not merely to save, but to earn. *Economy* manages, *frugality* saves, *providence* plans, *thrift* at once earns and saves, with a view to wholesome and profitable expenditure at a fitting time. See ABSTINENCE.

Antonyms:

abundance,
affluence,
bounty,
extravagance,
liberality,
luxury,
opulence,
riches,
waste,
wealth.

---

[181]

GARRULOUS.

Synonyms:

chattering,
loquacious,
talkative,
verbose.

Garrulous signifies given to constant trivial talking. *Chattering* signifies uttering rapid, noisy, and unintelligible, or scarcely intelligible, sounds, whether articulate words or such as resemble them; *chattering* is often used of vocal sounds that may be intelligible by themselves but are ill understood owing to confusion of many voices or other cause. The *talkative* person has a strong disposition to talk, with or without an abundance of words, or many ideas; the *loquacious* person has an abundant flow of language and much to say on any subject suggested; either may be lively and for a time entertaining; the *garrulous* person is tedious, repetitious, petty, and self-absorbed. *Verbose* is applied to utterances more formal than conversation, as to writings or public addresses. We speak of a *chattering* monkey or a *chattering* idiot, a *talkative* child, a *talkative* or *loquacious* woman, a *garrulous* old man, a *verbose* writer. Compare CIRCUMLOCUTION.

Antonyms:

laconic,
reserved,
reticent,
silent,
speechless,
taciturn.

GENDER.

Synonym:

sex.

Sex is a distinction among living beings; it is also the characteristic by which most living beings are distinguished from inanimate things, which are of no *sex*; *gender* is a distinction in language partially corresponding to this distinction in nature; while there are but two *sexes*, there are in some languages, as in English and German, three *genders*. The French language has but two *genders* and makes the names of all inanimate objects either masculine or feminine; some languages are without the distinction of *gender*, and those that maintain it are often quite arbitrary in its application. We speak of the masculine or feminine *gender*, the male or female *sex*.

GENERAL.

Synonyms:

common,
commonplace,
customary,
everyday,
familiar,
frequent,
habitual,
normal,
ordinary,
popular,
prevalent,
public,
universal,
usual.

Common signifies frequently occurring, not out of the regular[182] course, not exceptional; hence, not above the average, not excellent or distinguished, inferior, or even low; *common* also signifies pertaining to or participated in by two or more persons or things; as, sorrow is *common* to the race. *General* may signify pertaining equally to all of a class, race, etc., but very commonly signifies pertaining to the greater number, but not necessarily to all. *Universal* applies to all without exception; *general* applies to all with possible or comparatively slight exceptions; *common* applies to very many without deciding whether they are even a majority. A *common* remark is one we often hear; a *general* experience is one that comes to the majority of people; a *universal* experience is one from which no human being is exempt. It is dangerous for a debater to affirm a *universal* proposition, since that can be negatived by a single exception, while a *general* statement is not invalidated even by adducing many exceptions. We say a *common* opinion, *common* experience, a *general* rule, *general* truth, a *universal* law. Compare synonyms for NORMAL; USUAL.

Antonyms:

exceptional,infrequent,rare,singular,uncommon,unknown,unusual.

GENEROUS.

Synonyms:

bountiful,
chivalrous,
disinterested,
free,
free-handed,
free-hearted,
liberal,
magnanimous,
munificent,
noble,
open-handed,
open-hearted.

Generous (L. *genus*, a race) primarily signifies having the qualities worthy of noble or honorable birth; hence, free and abundant in giving, giving freely, heartily, and self-sacrificingly. As regards giving, *generous* refers rather to the self-sacrificing heartiness of the giver, *liberal* to the amount of the gift; a child may show himself *generous* in the gift of an apple, a millionaire makes a *liberal* donation; a *generous* gift, however, is commonly thought of as both ample and hearty. A *munificent* gift is vast in amount, whatever the motive of its bestowal. One may be *free* with another's money; he can be *generous* only with his own. *Disinterested* suggests rather the thought of one's own self-denial; *generous*, of one's hearty interest in another's welfare or happiness. One is *magnanimous* by a greatness of soul (L. *magnus*, great, and *animus*, soul) that rises above all that is poor, mean, or weak, especially above every petty or ignoble motive or feeling pertaining to one's self, and thus above resentment[183] of injury or insult; one is *generous* by a kindness of heart that would rejoice in the welfare rather than in the punishment of the offender.

Antonyms:

avaricious,
close,
covetous,
greedy,
ignoble,
illiberal,
mean,
miserly,
niggardly,
parsimonious,
penurious,
petty,
rapacious,
stingy.

GENIUS.

Synonyms:

talent,
talents.

Genius is exalted intellectual power capable of operating independently of tuition and training, and marked by an extraordinary faculty for original creation, invention, discovery, expression, etc. *Talent* is marked mental ability, and in a special sense, a particular and uncommon aptitude for some special mental work or attainment. *Genius* is higher than *talent*, more spontaneous, less dependent upon instruction, less amenable to training; *talent* is largely the capacity to learn, acquire, appropriate, adapt oneself to demand. Yet the *genius* that has won the largest and most enduring success has been joined with tireless industry and painstaking. Compare synonyms for MIND; POWER.

Antonyms:

dulness,
folly,
imbecility,
obtuseness,
senselessness,
stupidity.

GET.

Synonyms:

achieve, attain, gain, procure, secure,
acquire, earn, obtain, receive, win.

Get is a most comprehensive word. A person *gets* whatever he comes to possess or experience, whether with or without endeavor, expectation, or desire; he *gets* a bargain, a blow, a fall, a fever; he *gains* what he comes to by effort or striving; the swimmer *gains* the shore; a man *acquires* by continuous and ordinarily by slow process; as, one *acquires* a foreign language. A person is sometimes said to *gain* and often to *acquire* what has not been an object of direct endeavor; in the pursuits of trade, he incidentally *gains* some knowledge of foreign countries; he *acquires* by association with others a correct or incorrect accent; he *acquires* a bronzed complexion by exposure to a tropical sun; in such use, what he *gains* is viewed as desirable, what he *acquires* as slowly and gradually resulting. A person *earns* what he gives an equivalent of labor for, tho he may not *get* it. On the other hand, he may *get* what he has not *earned*; the temptation[184] to all dishonesty is the desire to *get* a living or a fortune without *earning* it. When one *gets* the object of his desire, he is said to *obtain* it, whether he has *gained* or *earned* it or not. *Win* denotes contest, with a suggestion of chance or hazard; in popular language, a person is often said to *win* a lawsuit, or to *win* in a suit at law, but in legal phrase he is said to *gain* his suit, case, or cause. In *receiving*, one is strictly passive; he may *get* an estate by his own exertions or by inheritance; in the latter case he is said to *receive* it. One *obtains* a thing commonly by some direct effort of his own; he *procures* it commonly by the intervention of some one else; he *procures* a dinner or an interview; he *secures* what has seemed uncertain or elusive, when he *gets* it firmly into his possession or under his control. Compare synonyms for ATTAIN; MAKE; REACH.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for ABANDON.

GIFT.

Synonyms:

benefaction, boon, bribe, grant, largess,
bequest, bounty, donation, gratuity, present.

A *gift* is in the popular, and also in the legal sense that which is voluntarily bestowed without expectation of return or compensation. *Gift* is now almost always used in the good sense, *bribe* always in the evil sense to signify payment for a dishonorable service under the semblance of a *gift*. In Scriptural language *gift* is often used for *bribe*. "The king by judgment establisheth the land; but he that receiveth *gifts* overthroweth it." *Prov.* xxix, 4. A *benefaction* is a charitable *gift*, generally of large amount, and viewed as of enduring value, as an endowment for a college. A *donation* is something, perhaps of great, never of trivial value, given usually on some public ground, as to a cause or to a person representing a cause, but not necessarily of value beyond the immediate present; as, a *donation* to a pastor. A *gratuity* is usually something of moderate value and is always given as to an inferior, and as of favor, not of right; as, a *gratuity* to a waiter. *Largess* is archaic for a bountiful *gratuity*, usually to be distributed among many, as among the heralds at ancient tournaments. A *present* is a *gift* of friendship, or conciliation, and given as to an equal or a superior; no one's pride is hurt by accepting what is viewed as strictly a *present*. A *boon* is a *gift* that has[185] been desired or craved or perhaps asked, or something freely given that meets some great desire. A *grant* is commonly considerable in amount and given by public authority; as, a *grant* of public lands for a college.

Antonyms:

compensation,earnings,guerdon,penalty,remuneration, wages.

GIVE.

Synonyms:

bestow,
cede,
communicate,
confer,
deliver,
furnish,
grant,
impart,
supply

To *give* is primarily to transfer to another's possession or ownership without compensation; in its secondary sense in popular use, it is to put into another's possession by any means and on any terms whatever; a buyer may say "*Give* me the goods, and I will *give* you the money;" we speak of *giving* answers, information, etc., and often of *giving* what is not agreeable to the recipient, as blows, medicine, reproof; but when there is nothing in the context to indicate the contrary, *give* is always understood in its primary sense; as, this book was *given* me. *Give* thus becomes, like *get*, a term of such general import as to be a synonym for a wide variety of words. To *grant* is to put into one's possession in some formal way, or by authoritative act; as, Congress *grants* lands to a railroad corporation. To speak of *granting* a favor carries a claim or concession of superiority on the part of the one by whom the *grant* may be made; to *confer* has a similar sense; as, to *confer* a degree or an honor; we *grant* a request or petition, but do not *confer* it. To *impart* is to *give* of that which one still, to a greater or less degree, retains; the teacher *imparts* instruction. To *bestow* is to *give* that of which the receiver stands in especial need; we *bestow* alms.

Prepositions:

We give money *to* a person *for* a thing, *for* a purpose, etc. (or without proposition, *give* a person a sum of money); we give a thing *to* or *into* one's care or keeping; the weary fugitive gave himself up *to* his pursuers.

GOVERN.

Synonyms:

command, curb, influence, mold, reign over, rule,
control, direct, manage, reign, restrain, sway.

Govern carries the idea of authoritative administration or some exercise of authority that is at once effective and continuous; *control*[186] is effective, but may be momentary or occasional. One *controls* what he holds or can hold at will absolutely in check; as, a skilful horseman *controls* a spirited horse; a person *controls* his temper; we say to one who is excited, "*control* yourself." A person *commands* another when he has, or claims, the right to make that other do his will, with power of inflicting penalty if not obeyed; he *controls* another whom he can effectually prevent from doing anything contrary to his will; he *governs* one whom he actually does cause, regularly or constantly, to obey his will; a parent may *command* a child whom he can not *govern* or *control*. The best teachers are not greatly prone to *command*, but *govern* or *control* their pupils largely by other means. *Command* is, however, often used in the sense of securing, as well as requiring, submission or obedience, as when we speak of a *commanding* influence; a man *commands* the situation when he can shape events as he pleases; a fortress *commands* the region when no enemy can pass against its resistance. *Govern* implies the exercise of knowledge and judgment as well as power. To *rule* is more absolute and autocratic than to *govern*; to *sway* is to move by quiet but effectual influence; to *mold* is not only to influence feeling and action, but to shape character; to *manage* is to secure by skilful contrivance the doing of one's will by those whom one can not directly *control*; a wise mother, by gentle means, *sways* the feelings and *molds* the lives of her children; to be able to *manage* servants is an important element of good housekeeping. The word *reign*, once so absolute, now simply denotes that one holds the official station of sovereign in a monarchy, with or without effective power; the Queen of England *reigns*; the Czar of Russia both *reigns* and *rules*.

Antonyms:

be in subjection, be subject, comply, obey, submit, yield.

GRACEFUL.

Synonym:

beautiful.

That which is *graceful* is marked by elegance and harmony, with ease of action, attitude, or posture, or delicacy of form. *Graceful* commonly suggests motion or the possibility of motion; *beautiful* may apply to absolute fixity; a landscape or a blue sky is *beautiful*, but neither is *graceful*. *Graceful* commonly applies[187] to beauty as addressed to the eye, tho we often speak of a *graceful* poem or a *graceful* compliment. *Graceful* applies to the perfection of motion, especially of the lighter motions, which convey no suggestion of stress or strain, and are in harmonious curves. Apart from the thought of motion, *graceful* denotes a pleasing harmony of outline, proportion, etc., with a certain degree of delicacy; a Hercules is massive, an Apollo is *graceful*. We speak of a *graceful* attitude, *graceful* drapery. Compare BEAUTIFUL; BECOMING.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for AWKWARD.

GRIEF.

Synonyms:

affliction,
distress,
melancholy,
mourning,
regret,
sadness,
sorrow,
tribulation,
trouble,
wo.

Grief is acute mental pain resulting from loss, misfortune, or deep disappointment. *Grief* is more acute and less enduring than *sorrow*. *Sorrow* and *grief* are for definite cause; *sadness* and *melancholy* may arise from a vague sense of want or loss, from a low state of health, or other ill-defined cause; *sadness* may be momentary; *melancholy* is more enduring, and may become chronic. *Affliction* expresses a deep heart-sorrow and is applied also to the misfortune producing such *sorrow*; *mourning* most frequently denotes sorrow publicly expressed, or the public expression of such *sorrow* as may reasonably be expected; as, it is common to observe thirty days of *mourning* on the death of an officer of state.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for HAPPINESS.

Prepositions:

Grief *at* a loss; *for* a friend.

HABIT.

Synonyms:

custom,
fashion,
habitude,
practise,
routine,
rule,
system,
usage,
use,
wont.

Habit is a tendency or inclination toward an action or condition, which by repetition has become easy, spontaneous, or even unconscious, or an action or regular series of actions, or a condition so induced. *Custom* is the uniform doing of the same act[188] in the same circumstance for a definite reason; *routine* is the doing of customary acts in a regular and uniform sequence and is more mechanical than *custom*. It is the *custom* of tradesmen to open at a uniform hour, and to follow a regular *routine* of business until closing-time. *Habit* always includes an involuntary tendency, natural or acquired, greatly strengthened by frequent repetition of the act, and may be uncontrollable, or even unconscious. *Habitude* is habitual relation or association. *Custom* is chiefly used of the action of many; *habit* of the action of one; we speak of the *customs* of society, the *habits* of an individual. *Fashion* is the generally recognized *custom* in the smaller matters, especially in dress. A *rule* is prescribed either by some external authority or by one's own will; as, it is the *rule* of the house; or, I make it my invariable *rule*. *System* is the coordination of many acts or things into a unity, and is more and better than *routine*. *Use* and *usage* denote the manner of using something; we speak of one person's *use* of language, but of the *usage* of many; a *use* or *usage* is almost always a *habit*. *Practise* is the active doing of something in a systematic way; we do not speak of the *practise*, but of the *habit* of going to sleep; we speak of a tradesman's *custom*, a lawyer's or a physician's *practise*. Educationally, *practise* is the voluntary and persistent attempt to make skill a *habit*; as, *practise* in penmanship. *Wont* is blind and instinctive *habit* like that which attaches an animal to a locality: the word is now almost wholly poetic. Compare DRESS.

HAPPEN.

Synonyms:

bechance,
befall,
betide,
chance,
come to pass,
fall,
fall out,
occur,
supervene,
take place.

A thing is said to *happen* when no design is manifest, or none especially thought of; it is said to *chance* when it appears to be the result of accident (compare synonyms for ACCIDENT). An incident *happens* or *occurs*; something external or actual *happens* to one; a thought or fancy *occurs* to him. *Befall* and *betide* are transitive; *happen* is intransitive; something *befalls* or *betides* a person or *happens* to him. *Betide* is especially used for anticipated evil, thought of as waiting and coming at its appointed time; as, wo *betide* him! One event *supervenes* upon another event, one disease upon another, etc. ["Transpire," in the sense of *happen*,[189] is not authorized by good usage: a thing that has *happened* is properly said to *transpire* when it becomes known.]

Prepositions:

An event happens *to* a person; a person happens *on* or *upon* a fact, discovery, etc.

HAPPINESS.

Synonyms:

blessedness,
bliss,
cheer,
comfort,
contentment,
delight,
ecstasy,
enjoyment,
felicity,
gaiety,
gladness,
gratification,
joy,
merriment,
mirth,
pleasure,
rapture,
rejoicing,
satisfaction,
triumph.

Gratification is the giving any mental or physical desire something that it craves; *satisfaction* is the giving such a desire all that it craves. *Happiness* is the positively agreeable experience that springs from the possession of good, the *gratification* or *satisfaction* of the desires or the relief from pain and evil. *Comfort* may be almost wholly negative, being found in security or relief from that which pains or annoys; there is *comfort* by a warm fireside on a wintry night; the sympathy of a true friend affords *comfort* in sorrow. *Enjoyment* is more positive, always implying something to be definitely and consciously delighted in; a sick person finds *comfort* in relief from pain, while he may be far from a state of *enjoyment*. *Pleasure* is still more vivid, being an arousing of the faculties to an intensely agreeable activity; *satisfaction* is more tranquil than *pleasure*, being the agreeable consciousness of having all that our faculties demand or crave; when a worthy *pleasure* is past, a worthy *satisfaction* remains. As referring to a mental state, *gratification* is used to denote a mild form of *happiness* resulting from some incident not of very great importance; *satisfaction* should properly express a *happiness* deeper, more complete, and more abiding; but as intellect or sensibilities of a low order may find *satisfaction* in that which is very poor or unworthy, the word has come to be feeble and tame in ordinary use. *Happiness* is more positive than *comfort*, *enjoyment*, or *satisfaction*, more serene and rational than *pleasure*; *pleasure* is of necessity transient; *happiness* is abiding, and may be eternal; thus, we speak of *pleasures*, but the plural of *happiness* is scarcely used. *Happiness*, in the full sense, is mental or spiritual or both, and is viewed as resulting from some worthy *gratification* or *satisfaction*; we may speak of a brute as experiencing *comfort* or *pleasure*, but scarcely as in possession of *happiness*; we speak of[190] vicious *pleasure*, *delight*, or *joy*, but not of vicious *happiness*. *Felicity* is a philosophical term, colder and more formal than *happiness*. *Gladness* is *happiness* that overflows, expressing itself in countenance, voice, manner, and action. *Joy* is more intense than *happiness*, deeper than *gladness*, to which it is akin, nobler and more enduring than *pleasure*. *Gaiety* is more superficial than *joy*, more demonstrative than *gladness*. *Rejoicing* is *happiness* or *joy* that finds utterance in word, song, festivity, etc. *Delight* is vivid, overflowing *happiness* of a somewhat transient kind; *ecstasy* is a state of extreme or extravagant *delight* so that the one affected by it seems almost beside himself with *joy*; *rapture* is closely allied to *ecstasy*, but is more serene, exalted, and enduring. *Triumph* is such *joy* as results from victory, success, achievement. *Blessedness* is at once the state and the sense of being divinely blessed; as, the *blessedness* of the righteous. *Bliss* is ecstatic, perfected *happiness*; as, the *bliss* of heaven. Compare COMFORT.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for GRIEF.

HAPPY.

Synonyms:

blessed,
blissful,
blithe,
blithesome,
bright,
buoyant,
cheerful,
cheering,
cheery,
delighted,
delightful,
dexterous,
felicitous,
fortunate,
gay,
glad,
jocund,
jolly,
joyful,
joyous,
lucky,
merry,
mirthful,
pleased,
prosperous,
rapturous,
rejoiced,
rejoicing,
smiling,
sprightly,
successful,
sunny.

Happy primarily refers to something that comes "by good hap," a chance that brings prosperity, benefit, or success.

And grasps the skirts of *happy* chance.

Tennyson *In Memoriam* lxiii, st. 2.

In this sense *happy* is closely allied to *fortunate* and *lucky*. (See FORTUNATE.) *Happy* has, however, so far diverged from this original sense as to apply to advantages where chance is not recognized, or is even excluded by direct reference to the divine will, when it becomes almost equivalent to *blessed*.

Behold, *happy* is the man whom God correcteth.

Job v, 17.

Happy is also applied to the ready dexterity or skill by which favorable results (usually in minor matters) are secured, when it becomes a synonym for *dexterous*, *felicitous*, and the associated words; as, he has a *happy* wit; *happy* at retort (compare CLEVER). In its most frequent present use, *happy* is applied to the state of one enjoying happiness, or to that by which happiness is expressed;[191] as, a *happy* heart; a *happy* face; *happy* laughter; *happy* tears (compare synonyms for HAPPINESS). *Cheerful* applies to the possession or expression of a moderate and tranquil happiness. A *cheery* word spontaneously gives cheer to others; a *cheering* word is more distinctly planned to cheer and encourage. *Gay* applies to an effusive and superficial happiness (often not really worthy of that name) perhaps resulting largely from abundant animal spirits: we speak of *gay* revelers or a *gay* horse. A *buoyant* spirit is, as it were, borne up by joy and hope. A *sunny* disposition has a constant tranquil brightness that irradiates all who come within its influence.

Antonyms:

Compare synonyms for GRIEF.

Prepositions:

A happy event *for* him; happy *at* a reply; happy *in* his home, *with* his friends, *among* his children; happy *at* the discovery, *over* his success.

HARMONY.

Synonyms:

accord,
accordance,
agreement,
amity,
concord,
concurrence,
conformity,
congruity,
consent,
consistency,
consonance,
symmetry,
unanimity,
uniformity,
union,
unison,
unity.

When tones, thoughts, or feelings, individually different, combine to form a consistent and pleasing whole, there is *harmony*. *Harmony* is deeper and more essential than *agreement*; we may have a superficial, forced, or patched-up *agreement*, but never a superficial, forced, or patched-up *harmony*. *Concord* is less full and spiritual than *harmony*. *Concord* implies more volition than *accord*; as, their views were found to be in perfect *accord*; or, by conference *concord* was secured; we do not secure *accord*, but discover it. We may speak of being in *accord* with a person on one point, but *harmony* is wider in range. *Conformity* is correspondence in form, manner, or use; the word often signifies submission to authority or necessity, and may be as far as possible from *harmony*; as, the attempt to secure *conformity* to an established religion. *Congruity* involves the element of suitableness; *consistency* implies the absence of conflict or contradiction in views, statements, or acts which are brought into comparison, as in the different statements of the same person or the different periods of one man's life; *unanimity* is the complete hearty *agreement*[192] of many; *consent* and *concurrence* refer to decision or action, but *consent* is more passive than *concurrence*; one speaks by general *consent* when no one in the assembly cares to make formal objection; a decision of the Supreme Court depends upon the *concurrence* of a majority of the judges. Compare AGREE; FRIENDSHIP; MELODY.

Antonyms:

antagonism,
battle,
conflict,
contention,
contest,
controversy,
difference,
disagreement,
discord,
disproportion,
dissension,
disunion,
hostility,
incongruity,
inconsistency,
opposition,
schism,
separation,
variance,
warfare.

HARVEST.

Synonyms:

crop,
fruit,
growth,
harvest-feast,
harvest-festival,
harvest-home,
harvesting,
harvest-tide,
harvest-time,
increase,
ingathering,
proceeds,
produce,
product,
reaping,
result,
return,
yield.

Harvest, from the Anglo-Saxon, signified originally "autumn," and as that is the usual season of gathering ripened *crops* in Northern lands, the word came to its present meaning of the season of gathering ripened grain or *fruits*, whether summer or autumn, and hence a *crop* gathered or ready for gathering; also, the act or process of gathering a *crop* or *crops*. "The *harvest* truly is great, but the laborers are few," *Luke* x, 2. "Lift up your eyes and look on the fields, for they are white already to *harvest*," *John* iv, 35. *Harvest* is the elegant and literary word; *crop* is the common and commercial expression; we say a man sells his *crop*, but we should not speak of his selling his *harvest*; we speak of an ample or abundant *harvest*, a good *crop*. *Harvest* is applied almost wholly to grain; *crop* applies to almost anything that is gathered in; we speak of the potato-*crop*, not the potato-*harvest*; we may say either the wheat-*crop* or the wheat-*harvest*. *Produce* is a collective word for all that is produced in farming or gardening, and is, in modern usage, almost wholly restricted to this sense; we speak of *produce* collectively, but of a *product* or various *products*; vegetables, *fruits*, eggs, butter, etc., may be termed farm-*produce*, or the *products* of the farm. *Product* is a word of wider application than *produce*; we speak of the *products* of manufacturing, the *products* of thought, or the *product* obtained by multiplying one number by another. The word *proceeds* is chiefly used of the *return* from an investment: we speak of the *produce* of a farm, but of the *proceeds* of the money invested in farming.[193] The *yield* is what the land gives up to the farmer's demand; we speak of the *return* from an expenditure of money or labor, but of the *yield* of corn or oats. *Harvest* has also a figurative use, such as *crop* more rarely permits; we term a religious revival a *harvest* of souls; the *result* of lax enforcement of law is a *harvest* of crime. As regards time, *harvest*, *harvest-tide*, and *harvest-time* alike denote the period or season when the crops are or should be gathered (*tide* being simply the old Saxon word for *time*). *Harvest-home* ordinarily denotes the *festival* of *harvest*, and when used to denote simply the season always gives a suggestion of festivity and rejoicing, such as *harvest* and *harvest-time* by themselves do not express.

HATRED.

Synonyms:

abhorrence,
anger,
animosity,
detestation,
dislike,
enmity,
hostility,
ill will,
malevolence,
rancor,
repugnance,
resentment,

antipathy,
aversion,
grudge,
hate,
malice,
malignity,
revenge,
spite.

Repugnance applies to that which one feels himself summoned or impelled to do or to endure, and from which he instinctively draws back. *Aversion* is the turning away of the mind or feelings from some person or thing, or from some course of action, etc. *Hate*, or *hatred*, as applied to persons, is intense and continued *aversion*, usually with disposition to injure; *anger* is sudden and brief, *hatred* is lingering and enduring; "Her wrath became a *hate*," Tennyson *Pelleas and Ettarre* st. 16. As applied to things, *hatred* is intense *aversion*, with desire to destroy or remove; *hatred* of evil is a righteous passion, akin to *abhorrence*, but more vehement. *Malice* involves the active intent to injure; in the legal sense, *malice* is the intent to injure, even tho with no personal *ill will*; as, a highwayman would be said to entertain *malice* toward the unknown traveler whom he attacks. *Malice* is direct, pressing toward a result; *malignity* is deep, lingering, and venomous, tho often impotent to act; *rancor* (akin to *rancid*) is cherished *malignity* that has soured and festered and is virulent and implacable. *Spite* is petty *malice* that delights to inflict stinging pain; *grudge* is deeper than *spite*; it is sinister and bitter; *grudge*, *resentment*, and *revenge* are all retaliatory, *grudge* being the disposition, *revenge* the determination to repay real or supposed offense with injury; *revenge* may denote also the retaliatory act; *resentment*, the best word of the three, always holds itself to be[194] justifiable, but looks less certainly to action than *grudge* or *revenge*. Simple goodness may arouse the *hatred* of the wicked; they will be moved to *revenge* only by what they deem an injury or affront. Compare ABOMINATION; ANGER; ANTIPATHY; ENMITY.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for FRIENDSHIP; LOVE.

HAVE.

Synonyms:

be in possession of,hold,occupy,own,possess.
be possessed of,

Have is the most general word, and is applied to whatever belongs to or is connected with one; a man *has* a head or a head-ache, a fortune or an opinion, a friend or an enemy; he *has* time, or *has* need; he may be said to *have* what is his own, what he has borrowed, what has been entrusted to him, or what he has stolen. To *possess* a thing is to *have* the ownership with control and enjoyment of it. To *hold* is to *have* in one's hand, or securely in one's control; a man *holds* his friend's coat for a moment, or he *holds* a struggling horse; he *holds* a promissory note, or *holds* an office. To *own* is to *have* the right of property in; to *possess* is to *have* that right in actual exercise; to *occupy* is to *have* possession and use, with some degree of permanency, with or without ownership. A man *occupies* his own house or a room in a hotel; a man may *own* a farm of which he is not in possession because a tenant *occupies* it and is determined to *hold* it; the proprietor *owns* the property, but the tenant *is in possession*. To *be in possession* differs from *possess* in that to *possess* denotes both right and fact, while to *be in possession* denotes simply the fact with no affirmation as to the right. To *have* reason is to be endowed with the faculty; to *be in possession of* one's reason denotes that the faculty is in actual present exercise.

HAZARD.

Synonyms:

accident,
casualty,
chance,
contingency,
danger,
fortuity,
jeopardy,
peril,
risk,
venture.

Hazard is the incurring the possibility of loss or harm for the possibility of benefit; *danger* may have no compensating alternative. In *hazard* the possibilities of gain or loss are nearly balanced; in *risk* the possibility of loss is the chief thought; the foolhardy take great *risks* in mere wantonness; in *chance* and *venture*[195] the hope of good predominates; we speak of a merchant's *venture*, but of an insurance company's *risk*; one may be driven by circumstances to run a *risk*; he freely seeks a *venture*; we speak of the *chance* of winning, the *hazard* or *risk* of losing. *Accidents* are incalculable; *casualties* may be to a certain extent anticipated; death and wounds are *casualties* of battle, certain to happen to some, but uncertain as to whom or how many. A *contingency* is simply an indeterminable future event, which may or may not be attended with *danger* or *risk*. See ACCIDENT; DANGER.

Antonyms:

assurance,
certainty,
necessity,
plan,
protection,
safeguard,
safety,
security,
surety.

HEALTHY.

Synonyms:

hale,
healthful,
hearty,
hygienic,
salubrious,
salutary,
sanitary,
sound,
strong,
vigorous,
well,
wholesome.

Healthy is most correctly used to signify possessing or enjoying health or its results; as, a *healthy* person; a *healthy* condition. *Healthful* signifies promotive of health, tending or adapted to confer, preserve, or promote health; as, a *healthful* climate. *Wholesome* food in a *healthful* climate makes a *healthy* man. With *healthful* are ranged the words *hygienic*, *salubrious*, *salutary*, *sanitary*, and *wholesome*, while the other words are associated with *healthy*. *Salubrious* is always used in the physical sense, and is chiefly applied to air or climate. *Salutary* is now chiefly used in the moral sense; as, a *salutary* lesson.

Antonyms:

delicate,
diseased,
emaciated,
exhausted,
failing,
fainting,
fragile,
frail,
ill,
sick,
unhealthy,
unsound,
wasted,
weak,
worn,
worn down,
worn out.

HELP.

Synonyms:

abet,
aid,
assist,
befriend,
cooperate,
encourage,
foster,
second,
stand by,
succor,
support,
sustain,
uphold.

Help expresses greater dependence and deeper need than *aid*. In extremity we say "God *help* me!" rather than "God *aid* me!" In time of danger we cry "*help! help!*" rather than "*aid! aid!*" To *aid* is to *second* another's own exertions. We can speak of *helping* the helpless, but not of *aiding* them. *Help* includes *aid*, but *aid* may fall short of the meaning of *help*. In law to *aid* or *abet* makes one a principal. (Compare synonyms for ACCESSORY.)[196] To *cooperate* is to *aid* as an equal; to *assist* implies a subordinate and secondary relation. One *assists* a fallen friend to rise; he *cooperates* with him in helping others. *Encourage* refers to mental *aid*, as *uphold* now usually does; *succor* and *support*, oftenest to material assistance. We *encourage* the timid or despondent, *succor* the endangered, *support* the weak, *uphold* those who else might be shaken or cast down. Compare ABET; PROMOTE.

Antonyms:

counteract, discourage, oppose, resist, thwart, withstand.

Prepositions:

Help *in* an enterprise *with* money; help *to* success; *against* the enemy.

HERETIC.

Synonyms:

dissenter, heresiarch, non-conformist, schismatic.

Etymologically, a *heretic* is one who takes or chooses his own belief, instead of the belief of his church; hence, a *heretic* is one who denies commonly accepted views, or who holds opinions contrary to the recognized standard or tenets of any established religious, philosophical, or other system, school, or party; the religious sense of the word is the predominant one; a *schismatic* is primarily one who produces a split or rent in the church. A *heretic* differs in doctrine from the religious body with which he is connected; a *schismatic* differs in doctrine or practise, or in both. A *heretic* may be reticent, or even silent; a *schismatic* introduces divisions. A *heresiarch* is the author of a heresy or the leader of a heretical party, and is thus at once a *heretic* and a *schismatic*. With advancing ideas of religious liberty, the odious sense once attached to these words is largely modified, and *heretic* is often used playfully. *Dissenter* and *non-conformist* are terms specifically applied to English subjects who hold themselves aloof from the Church of England; the former term is extended to non-adherents of the established church in some other countries, as Russia.

HETEROGENEOUS.

Synonyms:

confused,
conglomerate,
discordant,
dissimilar,
mingled,
miscellaneous,
mixed,
non-homogeneous,
unhomogeneous,
unlike,
variant,
various.

Substances quite *unlike* are *heterogeneous* as regards each other. A *heterogeneous* mixture is one whose constituents are not only[197] unlike in kind, but unevenly distributed; cement is composed of substances such as lime, sand, and clay, which are *heterogeneous* as regards each other, but the cement is said to be homogeneous if the different constituents are evenly mixed throughout, so that any one portion of the mixture is exactly like any other. A substance may fail of being homogeneous and yet not be *heterogeneous*, in which case it is said to be *non-homogeneous* or *unhomogeneous*; a bar of iron that contains flaws, air-bubbles, etc., or for any other reason is not of uniform structure and density throughout, tho no foreign substance be mixed with the iron, is said to be *non-homogeneous*. A *miscellaneous* mixture may or may not be *heterogeneous*; if the objects are alike in kind, but different in size, form, quality, use, etc., and without special order or relation, the collection is *miscellaneous*; if the objects differ in kind, such a mixture is also, and more strictly, *heterogeneous*; a pile of unassorted lumber is *miscellaneous*; the contents of a school-boy's pocket are commonly *miscellaneous* and might usually be termed *heterogeneous* as well. See COMPLEX.

Antonyms:

alike,homogeneous,identical,like,pure,same,similar,uniform.

HIDE.

Synonyms:

bury,
cloak,
cover,
disguise,
entomb,
inter,
overwhelm,
screen,
suppress,
veil.

conceal,
dissemble,
mask,
secrete.

Hide is the general term, including all the rest, signifying to put out of sight or beyond ready observation or approach; a thing may be *hidden* by intention, by accident, or by the imperfection of the faculties of the one from whom it is *hidden*; in their games, children *hide* the slipper, or *hide* themselves from each other; a man unconsciously *hides* a picture from another by standing before it, or *hides* a thing from himself by laying something else over it. Even an unconscious object may *hide* another; as, a cloud *hides* the sun, or a building *hides* some part of the prospect by intervening between it and the observer's position. As an act of persons, to *conceal* is always intentional; one may *hide* his face in anger, grief, or abstraction; he *conceals* his face when he fears recognition. A house is *hidden* by foliage; the bird's nest is artfully *concealed*. *Secrete* is a stronger word than *conceal*, and is used chiefly of such material objects as may be separated from the person, or from their ordinary surroundings,[198] and put in unlooked-for places; a man *conceals* a scar on his face, but does not *secrete* it; a thief *secretes* stolen goods; an officer may also be said to *secrete* himself to watch the thief. A thing is *covered* by putting something over or around it, whether by accident or design; it is *screened* by putting something before it, always with some purpose of protection from observation, inconvenience, attack, censure, etc. In the figurative use, a person may *hide* honorable feelings; he *conceals* an evil or hostile intent. Anything which is effectually *covered* and *hidden* under any mass or accumulation is *buried*. Money is *buried* in the ground; a body is *buried* in the sea; a paper is *buried* under other documents. Whatever is *buried* is *hidden* or *concealed*; but there are many ways of *hiding* or *concealing* a thing without *burying* it. So a person may be *covered* with wraps, and not *buried* under them. *Bury* may be used of any object, *entomb* and *inter* only of a dead body. Figuratively, one may be said to be *buried* in business, in study, etc. Compare IMMERSE; PALLIATE.

Antonyms:

admit,
advertise,
avow,
betray,
confess,
disclose,
discover,
disinter,
divulge,
exhibit,
exhume,
expose,
lay bare,
lay open,
make known,
manifest,
promulgate,
publish,
raise,
reveal,
show,
tell,
uncover,
unmask,
unveil.

HIGH.

Synonyms:

elevated,
eminent,
exalted,
lofty,
noble,
proud,
steep,
tall,
towering,
uplifted.

Deep, while an antonym of *high* in usage, may apply to the very same distance simply measured in an opposite direction, *high* applying to vertical distance measured from below upward, and *deep* to vertical distance measured from above downward; as, a *deep* valley nestling between *high* mountains. *High* is a relative term signifying greatly raised above any object, base, or surface, in comparison with what is usual, or with some standard; a table is *high* if it exceeds thirty inches; a hill is not *high* at a hundred feet. That is *tall* whose height is greatly in excess of its breadth or diameter, and whose actual height is great for an object of its kind; as, a *tall* tree; a *tall* man; *tall* grass. That is *lofty* which is imposing or majestic in height; we term a spire *tall* with reference to its altitude, or *lofty* with reference to its majestic appearance. That is *elevated* which is raised somewhat above its surroundings; that is *eminent* which is far above them; as, an *elevated*[199] platform; an *eminent* promontory. In the figurative sense, *elevated* is less than *eminent*, and this less than *exalted*; we speak of *high*, *lofty*, or *elevated* thoughts, aims, etc., in the good sense, but sometimes of *high* feelings, looks, words, etc., in the invidious sense of haughty or arrogant. A *high* ambition may be merely selfish; a *lofty* ambition is worthy and *noble*. *Towering*, in the literal sense compares with *lofty* and majestic; but in the figurative sense, its use is almost always invidious; as, a *towering* passion; a *towering* ambition disregards and crushes all opposing considerations, however rational, lovely, or holy. Compare STEEP.

Antonyms:

base,deep,degraded,depressed,dwarfed,inferior,low,mean,short,stunted.

HINDER.

Synonyms:

baffle,
balk,
bar,
block,
check,
clog,
counteract,
delay,
embarrass,
encumber,
foil,
frustrate,
hamper,
impede,
interrupt,
obstruct,
oppose,
prevent,
resist,
retard,
stay,
stop,
thwart.

To *hinder* is to keep from action, progress, motion, or growth, or to make such action, progress, motion, or growth later in beginning or completion than it would otherwise have been. An action is *prevented* by anything that comes in before it to make it impossible; it is *hindered* by anything that keeps it from either beginning or ending so soon as it otherwise would, or as expected or intended. It is more common, however, to say that the start is *delayed*, the progress *hindered*. An action that is *hindered* does not take place at the appointed or appropriate time; that which is *prevented* does not take place at all; to *hinder* a thing long enough may amount to *preventing* it. A railroad-train may be *hindered* by a snow-storm from arriving on time; it may by special order be *prevented* from starting. To *retard* is simply to make slow by any means whatever. To *obstruct* is to *hinder*, or possibly to *prevent* advance or passage by putting something in the way; to *oppose* or *resist* is to *hinder*, or possibly to *prevent* by directly contrary or hostile action, *resist* being the stronger term and having more suggestion of physical force; *obstructed* roads *hinder* the march of an enemy, tho there may be no force strong enough to *oppose* it; one *opposes* a measure, a motion, an amendment, or the like; it is a criminal offense to *resist* an officer in the discharge of his duty; the physical system may *resist* the attack of disease[200] or the action of a remedy. Compare CONQUER; IMPEDIMENT; OBSTRUCT.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for QUICKEN.

Prepositions:

Hinder one *in* his progress; *from* acting promptly; *by* opposition.

HISTORY.

Synonyms:

account,
annals,
archives,
autobiography,
biography,
chronicle,
memoir,
memorial,
muniment,
narration,
narrative,
recital,
record,
register,
story.

History is a systematic record of past events. *Annals* and *chronicles* relate events with little regard to their relative importance, and with complete subserviency to their succession in time. *Annals* are yearly records; *chronicles* follow the order of time. Both necessarily lack emphasis, selection, and perspective. *Archives* are public *records*, which may be *annals*, or *chronicles*, or deeds of property, etc. *Memoirs* generally record the lives of individuals or facts pertaining to individual lives. A *biography* is distinctively a written *account* of one person's life and actions; an *autobiography* is a *biography* written by the person whose life it records. *Annals*, *archives*, *chronicles*, *biographies*, and *memoirs* and other *records* furnish the materials of *history*. *History* recounts events with careful attention to their importance, their mutual relations, their causes and consequences, selecting and grouping events on the ground of interest or importance. *History* is usually applied to such an *account* of events affecting communities and nations, tho sometimes we speak of the *history* of a single eminent life. Compare RECORD.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for FICTION.

HOLY.

Synonyms:

blessed,
consecrated,
devoted,
divine,
hallowed,
sacred,
saintly,
set apart.

Sacred is applied to that which is to be regarded as inviolable on any account, and so is not restricted to divine things; therefore in its lower applications it is less than *holy*. That which is *sacred*[201] may be made so by institution, decree, or association; that which is *holy* is so by its own nature, possessing intrinsic moral purity, and, in the highest sense, absolute moral perfection. God is *holy*; his commands are *sacred*. *Holy* may be applied also to that which is *hallowed*; as, "the place whereon thou standest is *holy* ground," *Ex.* iii, 5. In such use *holy* is more than *sacred*, as if the very qualities of a spiritual or divine presence were imparted to the place or object. *Divine* has been used with great looseness, as applying to anything eminent or admirable, in the line either of goodness or of mere power, as to eloquence, music, etc., but there is a commendable tendency to restrict the word to its higher sense, as designating that which belongs to or is worthy of the Divine Being. Compare PERFECT; PURE.

Antonyms:

abominable,
common,
cursed,
impure,
polluted,
secular,
unconsecrated,
unhallowed,
unholy,
unsanctified,
wicked,
worldly.

HOME.

Synonyms:

abode,
domicil,
dwelling,
fireside,
habitation,
hearth,
hearthstone,
house,
ingleside,
residence.

Abode, *dwelling*, and *habitation* are used with little difference of meaning to denote the place where one habitually lives; *abode* and *habitation* belong to the poetic or elevated style. Even *dwelling* is not used in familiar speech; a person says "my *house*," "my *home*," or more formally "my *residence*." *Home*, from the Anglo-Saxon, denoting originally a *dwelling*, came to mean an endeared *dwelling* as the scene of domestic love and happy and cherished family life, a sense to which there is an increasing tendency to restrict the word—desirably so, since we have other words to denote the mere dwelling-place; we say "The wretched tenement could not be called *home*," or "The humble cabin was dear to him as the *home* of his childhood."

Home's not merely four square walls,
Tho with pictures hung and gilded;
Home is where affection calls—
Where its shrine the heart has builded.

Thus the word comes to signify any place of rest and peace, and especially heaven, as the soul's peaceful and eternal dwelling-place.

---

[202]

HONEST.

Synonyms:

candid,
equitable,
fair,
faithful,
frank,
genuine,
good,
honorable,
ingenuous,
just,
sincere,
straightforward,
true,
trustworthy,
trusty,
upright.

One who is *honest* in the ordinary sense acts or is always disposed to act with careful regard for the rights of others, especially in matters of business or property; one who is *honorable* scrupulously observes the dictates of a personal honor that is higher than any demands of mercantile law or public opinion, and will do nothing unworthy of his own inherent nobility of soul. The *honest* man does not steal, cheat, or defraud; the *honorable* man will not take an unfair advantage that would be allowed him, or will make a sacrifice which no one could require of him, when his own sense of right demands it. One who is *honest* in the highest and fullest sense is scrupulously careful to adhere to all known truth and right even in thought. In this sense *honest* differs from *honorable* as having regard rather to absolute truth and right than to even the highest personal honor. Compare CANDID; JUSTICE.

Antonyms:

deceitful,
dishonest,
disingenuous,
faithless,
false,
fraudulent,
hypocritical,
lying,
mendacious,
perfidious,
traitorous,
treacherous,
unfaithful,
unscrupulous,
untrue.

HORIZONTAL.

Synonyms:

even,
flat,
level,
plain,
plane.

Horizontal signifies in the direction of or parallel to the horizon. For practical purposes *level* and *horizontal* are identical, tho *level*, as the more popular word, is more loosely used of that which has no especially noticeable elevations or inequalities; as, a *level* road. *Flat*, according to its derivation from the Anglo-Saxon *flet*, a floor, applies to a surface only, and, in the first and most usual sense, to a surface that is *horizontal* or *level* in all directions; a line may be *level*, a floor is *flat*; *flat* is also applied in a derived sense to any *plane* surface without irregularities or elevations, as a picture may be painted on the *flat* surface of a perpendicular wall. *Plane* applies only to a surface, and is used with more mathematical exactness than *flat*. The adjective *plain*, originally the same word as *plane*, is now rarely used except in the figurative senses, but the original sense appears in the noun, as we speak of "a wide *plain*." We speak of a *horizontal* line, a *flat* morass, a *level* road, a *plain* country, a *plane* surface[203] (especially in the scientific sense). That which is *level* may not be *even*, and that which is *even* may not be *level*; a *level* road may be very rough; a slope may be *even*.

Antonyms:

broken,
hilly,
inclined,
irregular,
rolling,
rough,
rugged,
slanting,
sloping,
uneven.

HUMANE.

Synonyms:

benevolent,
benignant,
charitable,
clement,
compassionate,
forgiving,
gentle,
gracious,
human,
kind,
kind-hearted,
merciful,
pitying,
sympathetic,
tender,
tender-hearted.

Human denotes what pertains to mankind, with no suggestion as to its being good or evil; as, the *human* race; *human* qualities; we speak of *human* achievements, virtues, or excellences, *human* follies, vices, or crimes. *Humane* denotes what may rightly be expected of mankind at its best in the treatment of sentient beings; a *humane* enterprise or endeavor is one that is intended to prevent or relieve suffering. The *humane* man will not needlessly inflict pain upon the meanest thing that lives; a *merciful* man is disposed to withhold or mitigate the suffering even of the guilty. The *compassionate* man sympathizes with and desires to relieve actual suffering, while one who is *humane* would forestall and prevent the suffering which he sees to be possible. Compare MERCY; PITIFUL; PITY.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for BARBAROUS.

HUNT.

Synonyms:

chase,
hunting,
inquisition,
pursuit,
search.

A *hunt* may be either the act of pursuing or the act of seeking, or a combination of the two. A *chase* or *pursuit* is after that which is fleeing or departing; a *search* is for that which is hidden; a *hunt* may be for that which is either hidden or fleeing; a *search* is a minute and careful seeking, and is especially applied to a locality; we make a *search* of or through a house, for an object, in which connection it would be colloquial to say a *hunt*. *Hunt* never quite loses its association with field-sports, where it includes both *search* and *chase*; the *search* till the game is hunted out, and the *chase* till it is hunted down. Figuratively, we speak of literary *pursuits*, or of the *pursuit* of knowledge; a *search* for[204] reasons; the *chase* of fame or honor; *hunt*, in figurative use, inclines to the unfavorable sense of *inquisition*, but with more of dash and aggressiveness; as, a *hunt* for heresy.

HYPOCRISY.

Synonyms:

affectation, cant, dissimulation, formalism, pharisaism, pietism, pretense, sanctimoniousness, sanctimony, sham.

Pretense (L. *prætendo*) primarily signifies the holding something forward as having certain rights or claims, whether truly or falsely; in the good sense, it is now rarely used except with a negative; as, there can be no *pretense* that this is due; a false *pretense* implies the possibility of a true *pretense*; but, alone and unlimited, *pretense* commonly signifies the offering of something for what it is not. *Hypocrisy* is the false *pretense* of moral excellence, either as a cover for actual wrong, or for the sake of the credit and advantage attaching to virtue. *Cant* (L. *cantus*, a song), primarily the singsong iteration of the language of any party, school, or sect, denotes the mechanical and pretentious use of religious phraseology, without corresponding feeling or character; *sanctimoniousness* is the assumption of a saintly manner without a saintly character. As *cant* is *hypocrisy* in utterance, so *sanctimoniousness* is *hypocrisy* in appearance, as in looks, tones, etc. *Pietism*, originally a word of good import, is now chiefly used for an unregulated emotionalism; *formalism* is an exaggerated devotion to forms, rites, and ceremonies, without corresponding earnestness of heart; *sham* (identical in origin with *shame*) is a trick or device that puts one to shame, or that shamefully disappoints expectation or falsifies appearance. *Affectation* is in matters of intellect, taste, etc., much what *hypocrisy* is in morals and religion; *affectation* might be termed petty *hypocrisy*. Compare DECEPTION.

Antonyms:

candor, frankness, genuineness, honesty, ingenuousness, openness, sincerity, transparency, truth, truthfulness.

HYPOCRITE.

Synonyms:

cheat, deceiver, dissembler, impostor, pretender.

A *hypocrite* (Gr. *hypokrites*, one who answers on the stage, an actor, especially a mimic actor) is one who acts a false part, or assumes a character other than the real. *Deceiver* is the most[205] comprehensive term, including all the other words of the group. The *deceiver* seeks to give false impressions of any matter where he has an end to gain; the *dissembler* or *hypocrite* seeks to give false impressions in regard to himself. The *dissembler* is content if he can keep some base conduct or evil purpose from being discovered; the *hypocrite* seeks not merely to cover his vices, but to gain credit for virtue. The *cheat* and *impostor* endeavor to make something out of those they may deceive. The *cheat* is the inferior and more mercenary, as the thimble-rig gambler; the *impostor* may aspire to a fortune or a throne. Compare HYPOCRISY.

Antonyms:

The antonyms of *hypocrite* are to be found only in phrases embodying the adjectives candid, honest, ingenuous, sincere, true, etc.

HYPOTHESIS.

Synonyms:

conjecture,
guess,
scheme,
speculation,
supposition,
surmise,
system,
theory.

A *hypothesis* is a statement of what is deemed possibly true, assumed and reasoned upon as if certainly true, with a view of reaching truth not yet surely known; especially, in the sciences, a *hypothesis* is a comprehensive tentative explanation of certain phenomena, which is meant to include all other facts of the same class, and which is assumed as true till there has been opportunity to bring all related facts into comparison; if the *hypothesis* explains all the facts, it is regarded as verified; till then it is regarded as a working *hypothesis*, that is, one that may answer for present practical purposes. A *hypothesis* may be termed a comprehensive *guess*. A *guess* is a swift conclusion from data directly at hand, and held as probable or tentative, while one confessedly lacks material for absolute certainty. A *conjecture* is more methodical than a *guess*, while a *supposition* is still slower and more settled; a *conjecture*, like a *guess*, is preliminary and tentative; a *supposition* is more nearly final; a *surmise* is more floating and visionary, and often sinister; as, a *surmise* that a stranger may be a pickpocket. *Theory* is used of the mental coordination of facts and principles, that may or may not prove correct; a machine may be perfect in *theory*, but useless in fact. *Scheme* may be used as nearly equivalent to *theory*, but is more frequently applied to proposed action, and in the sense of a somewhat visionary plan. A *speculation* may be wholly of the brain, resting upon[206] no facts worthy of consideration; *system* is the highest of these terms, having most of assurance and fixity; a *system* unites many facts, phenomena, or doctrines into an orderly and consistent whole; we speak of a *system* of theology, of the Copernican *system* of the universe. Compare SYSTEM.

Antonyms:

certainty,demonstration,discovery,evidence,fact,proof.

IDEA.

Synonyms:

apprehension,
archetype,
belief,
conceit,
concept,
conception,
design,
fancy,
fantasy,
ideal,
image,
imagination,
impression,
judgment,
model,
notion,
opinion,
pattern,
plan,
purpose,
sentiment,
supposition,
theory,
thought.

Idea is in Greek a *form* or an *image*. The word signified in early philosophical use the *archetype* or primal *image* which the Platonic philosophy supposed to be the *model* or *pattern* that existing objects imperfectly embody. This high sense has nearly disappeared from the word *idea*, and has been largely appropriated by *ideal*, tho something of the original meaning still appears when in theological or philosophical language we speak of the *ideas* of God. The present popular use of *idea* makes it to signify any product of mental *apprehension* or activity, considered as an object of knowledge or thought; this coincides with the primitive sense at but a single point—that an *idea* is mental as opposed to anything substantial or physical; thus, almost any mental product, as a *belief*, *conception*, *design*, *opinion*, etc., may now be called an *idea*. Compare FANCY; IDEAL.

Antonyms:

actuality,fact,reality,substance.

IDEAL.

Synonyms:

archetype,
idea,
model,
original,
pattern,
prototype,
standard.

An *ideal* is that which is conceived or taken as the highest type of excellence or ultimate object of attainment. The *archetype* is the primal form, actual or imaginary, according to which any existing thing is constructed; the *prototype* has or has had actual existence; in the derived sense, as in metrology, a *prototype* may not be the original form, but one having equal authority with that as a[207] *standard*. An *ideal* may be primal, or may be slowly developed even from failures and by negations; an *ideal* is meant to be perfect, not merely the thing that has been attained or is to be attained, but the best conceivable thing that could by possibility be attained. The artist's *ideal* is his own mental image, of which his finished work is but an imperfect expression. The *original* is the first specimen, good or bad; the *original* of a master is superior to all copies. The *standard* may be below the *ideal*. The *ideal* is imaginary, and ordinarily unattainable; the *standard* is concrete, and ordinarily attainable, being a measure to which all else of its kind must conform; as, the *standard* of weights and measures, of corn, or of cotton. The *idea* of virtue is the mental concept or image of virtue in general; the *ideal* of virtue is the mental concept or image of virtue in its highest conceivable perfection. Compare EXAMPLE; IDEA.

Antonyms:

accomplishment,
achievement,
act,
action,
attainment,
development,
doing,
embodiment,
execution,
fact,
incarnation,
performance,
practise,
reality,
realization.

IDIOCY.

Synonyms:

fatuity,
folly,
foolishness,
imbecility,
incapacity,
senselessness,
stupidity.

Idiocy is a state of mental unsoundness amounting almost or quite to total absence of understanding. *Imbecility* is a condition of mental weakness, which may or may not be as complete as that of *idiocy*, but is at least such as to incapacitate for the serious duties of life. *Incapacity*, or lack of legal qualification for certain acts, necessarily results from *imbecility*, but may also result from other causes, as from insanity or from age, sex, etc.; as, the *incapacity* of a minor to make a contract. *Idiocy* or *imbecility* is weakness of mind, while insanity is disorder or abnormal action of mind. *Folly* and *foolishness* denote a want of mental and often of moral balance. *Fatuity* is sometimes used as equivalent to *idiocy*, but more frequently signifies conceited and excessive *foolishness* or *folly*. *Stupidity* is dulness and slowness of mental action which may range all the way from lack of normal readiness to absolute *imbecility*. Compare INSANITY.

Antonyms:

acuteness,
astuteness,
brilliancy,
capacity,
common sense,
intelligence,
sagacity,
sense,
soundness,
wisdom.

[208]

IDLE.

Synonyms:

inactive,
indolent,
inert,
lazy,
slothful,
sluggish,
trifling,
unemployed,
unoccupied,
vacant.

Idle in all uses rests upon its root meaning, as derived from the Anglo-Saxon *idel*, which signifies vain, empty, useless. *Idle* thus denotes not primarily the absence of action, but vain action—the absence of useful, effective action; the *idle* schoolboy may be very actively whittling his desk or tormenting his neighbors. Doing nothing whatever is the secondary meaning of *idle*. One may be temporarily *idle* of necessity; if he is habitually *idle*, it is his own fault. *Lazy* signifies indisposed to exertion, averse to labor; idleness is in fact; laziness is in disposition or inclination. A *lazy* person may chance to be employed in useful work, but he acts without energy or impetus. We speak figuratively of a *lazy* stream. The *inert* person seems like dead matter (characterized by inertia), powerless to move; the *sluggish* moves heavily and toilsomely; the most active person may sometimes find the bodily or mental powers *sluggish*. *Slothful* belongs in the moral realm, denoting a self-indulgent aversion to exertion. "The *slothful* hideth his hand in his bosom; it grieveth him to bring it again to his mouth," *Prov.* xxvi, 15. *Indolent* is a milder term for the same quality; the *slothful* man hates action; the *indolent* man loves inaction. Compare VAIN.

Antonyms:

active,busy,diligent,employed,industrious,occupied,working.

IGNORANT.

Synonyms:

ill-informed,
illiterate,
uneducated,
unenlightened,
uninformed,
uninstructed,
unlearned,
unlettered,
unskilled,
untaught,
untutored.

Ignorant signifies destitute of education or knowledge, or lacking knowledge or information; it is thus a relative term. The most learned man is still *ignorant* of many things; persons are spoken of as *ignorant* who have not the knowledge that has become generally diffused in the world; the *ignorant* savage may be well instructed in matters of the field and the chase, and is thus more properly *untutored* than *ignorant*. *Illiterate* is without letters and the knowledge that comes through reading. *Unlettered* is similar in meaning to *illiterate*, but less absolute; the *unlettered* man may have acquired the art of reading and writing and some elementary knowledge; the *uneducated* man has never taken any[209] systematic course of mental training. *Ignorance* is relative; *illiteracy* is absolute; we have statistics of *illiteracy*; no statistics of *ignorance* are possible.

Antonyms:

educated,instructed,learned,sage,skilled,trained,well-informed,wise.

IMAGINATION.

Synonyms:

fancy,fantasy,phantasy.

The old psychology treated of the *Reproductive Imagination*, which simply reproduces the images that the mind has in any way acquired, and the *Productive Imagination* which modifies and combines mental images so as to produce what is virtually new. To this *Reproductive Imagination* President Noah Porter and others have given the name of *phantasy* or *fantasy* (many psychologists preferring the former spelling). *Phantasy* or *fantasy*, so understood, presents numerous and varied images, often combining them into new forms with exceeding vividness, yet without any true constructive power, but with the mind adrift, blindly and passively following the laws of association, and with reason and will in torpor; the mental images being perhaps as varied and as vivid, but also as purposeless and unsystematized as the visual images in a kaleidoscope; such *fantasy* (often loosely called *imagination*) appears in dreaming, reverie, somnambulism, and intoxication. *Fantasy* in ordinary usage simply denotes capricious or erratic *fancy*, as appears in the adjective *fantastic*. *Imagination* and *fancy* differ from *fantasy* in bringing the images and their combinations under the control of the will; *imagination* is the broader and higher term, including *fancy*; *imagination* is the act or power of imaging or of reimaging objects of perception or thought, of combining the products of knowledge in modified, new, or ideal forms—the creative or constructive power of the mind; while *fancy* is the act or power of forming pleasing, graceful, whimsical, or odd mental images, or of combining them with little regard to rational processes of construction; *imagination* in its lower form. Both *fancy* and *imagination* recombine and modify mental images; either may work with the other's materials; *imagination* may glorify the tiniest flower; *fancy* may play around a mountain or a star; the one great distinction between them is that *fancy* is superficial, while *imagination* is deep, essential, spiritual. Wordsworth, who was the first[210] clearly to draw the distinction between the *fancy* and the *imagination*, states it as follows:

> To aggregate and to associate, to evoke and to combine, belong as well to the *imagination* as to the *fancy*; but either the materials evoked and combined are different; or they are brought together under a different law, and for a different purpose. *Fancy* does not require that the materials which she makes use of should be susceptible of changes in their constitution from her touch; and where they admit of modification, it is enough for her purpose if it be slight, limited, and evanescent. Directly the reverse of these are the desires and demands of the *imagination*. She recoils from everything but the plastic, the pliant, and the indefinite. She leaves it to *fancy* to describe Queen Mab as coming:
>
> 'In shape no bigger than an agate stone
> On the forefinger of an alderman.'
>
> Having to speak of stature, she does not tell you that her gigantic angel was as tall as Pompey's Pillar; much less that he was twelve cubits or twelve hundred cubits high; or that his dimensions equalled those of Teneriffe or Atlas; because these, and if they were a million times as high, it would be the same, are bounded. The expression is, 'His stature reached the sky!' the illimitable firmament!—When the *imagination* frames a comparison, ... a sense of the truth of the likeness from the moment that it is perceived grows—and continues to grow—upon the mind; the resemblance depending less upon outline of form and feature than upon expression and effect, less upon casual and outstanding than upon inherent and internal properties. [B]

Poetical Works, Pref. to Ed. of 1815, p. 646, app. [T. & H. '51.]

So far as actual images are concerned, both *fancy* and *imagination* are limited to the materials furnished by the external world; it is remarkable that among all the representations of gods or demigods, fiends and demons, griffins and chimæras, the human mind has never invented one organ or attribute that is not presented in human or animal life; the lion may have a human head and an eagle's wings and claws, but in the various features, individually, there is absolutely nothing new. But *imagination* can transcend the work of *fancy*, and compare an image drawn from the external world with some spiritual truth born in the mind itself, or infuse a series of images with such a spiritual truth, molding them as needed for its more vivid expression.

The *imagination* modifies images, and gives unity to variety; it sees all things in one.... There is the epic *imagination*, the perfection of which is in Milton; and the dramatic, of which Shakspeare is the absolute master.

Coleridge *Table Talk* June 23, '34.

Fancy keeps the material image prominent and clear, and works not only with it, but for it; *imagination* always uses the material object as the minister of something greater than itself,[211] and often almost loses the object in the spiritual idea with which she has associated it, and for which alone she values it. *Fancy* flits about the surface, and is airy and playful, sometimes petty and sometimes false; *imagination* goes to the heart of things, and is deep, earnest, serious, and seeks always and everywhere for essential truth. *Fancy* sets off, variegates, and decorates; *imagination* transforms and exalts. *Fancy* delights and entertains; *imagination* moves and thrills. *Imagination* is not only poetic or literary, but scientific, philosophical, and practical. By *imagination* the architect sees the unity of a building not yet begun, and the inventor sees the unity and varied interactions of a machine never yet constructed, even a unity that no human eye ever can see, since when the machine is in actual motion, one part may hide the connecting parts, and yet all keep the unity of the inventor's thought. By *imagination* a Newton sweeps sun, planets, and stars into unity with the earth and the apple that is drawn irresistibly to its surface, and sees them all within the circle of one grand law. Science, philosophy, and mechanical invention have little use for *fancy*, but the creative, penetrative power of *imagination* is to them the breath of life, and the condition of all advance and success. See also FANCY; IDEA.

[B] The whole discussion from which the quotation is taken is worthy of, and will well repay, careful study.

IMMEDIATELY.

Synonyms:

at once, instanter, presently, straightway,

directly, instantly, right away, this instant,
forthwith, now, right off, without delay.

The strong and general human tendency to procrastination is shown in the progressive weakening of the various words in this group. *Immediately* primarily signifies without the intervention of anything as a medium, hence without the intervention of any, even the briefest, interval or lapse of time. *By and by*, which was once a synonym, has become an antonym of *immediately*, meaning at some (perhaps remote) future time. *Directly*, which once meant with no intervening time, now means after some little while; *presently* no longer means in this very present, but before very long. Even *immediately* is sliding from its instantaneousness, so that we are fain to substitute *at once*, *instantly*, etc., when we would make promptness emphatic. *Right away* and *right off* are vigorous conversational expressions in the United States.

Antonyms:

after a while, by and by, hereafter, in the future, some time.

---

[212]

IMMERSE.

Synonyms:

bury, dip, douse, duck, immerge, plunge, sink, submerge.

Dip is Saxon, while *immerse* is Latin for the same initial act; *dip* is accordingly the more popular and commonplace, *immerse* the more elegant and dignified expression in many cases. To speak of baptism by immersion as *dipping* now seems rude; tho entirely proper and usual in early English. Baptists now universally use the word *immerse*. To *dip* and to *immerse* alike signify to *bury* or *submerge* some object in a liquid; but *dip* implies that the object *dipped* is at once removed from the liquid, while *immerse* is wholly silent as to the removal. *Immerse* also suggests more absolute completeness of the action; one may *dip* his sleeve or *dip* a sponge in a liquid, if he but touches the edge; if he *immerses* it, he completely *sinks* it under, and covers it with the liquid. *Submerge* implies that the object can not readily be removed, if at all; as, a *submerged* wreck. To *plunge* is to *immerse* suddenly and violently, for which *douse* and *duck* are colloquial terms. *Dip* is used, also, unlike the other words, to denote the putting of a hollow vessel into a liquid in order to remove a portion of it; in this sense we say *dip up*, *dip out*. Compare synonyms for BURY.

Preposition:

The object is immersed *in* water.

IMMINENT.

Synonyms:

impending,threatening.

Imminent, from the Latin, with the sense of projecting over, signifies liable to happen at once, as some calamity, dangerous and close at hand. *Impending*, also from the Latin, with the sense of hanging over, is closely akin to *imminent*, but somewhat less emphatic. *Imminent* is more immediate, *impending* more remote, *threatening* more contingent. An *impending* evil is almost sure to happen at some uncertain time, perhaps very near; an *imminent* peril is one liable to befall very speedily; a *threatening* peril may be near or remote, but always with hope that it may be averted.

Antonyms:

chimerical,contingent,doubtful,improbable,problematical,unexpected,unlikely.

---

[213]

IMPEDIMENT.

Synonyms:

bar, clog, encumbrance,obstacle,
barrier,difficulty,hindrance, obstruction.

Difficulty makes an undertaking otherwise than easy. That which rests upon one as a burden is an *encumbrance*. An *impediment* is primarily something that checks the foot or in any way makes advance slow or difficult; an *obstacle* is something that stands across the way, an *obstruction* something that is built or placed across the way. An *obstruction* is always an *obstacle*, but an *obstacle* may not always be properly termed an *obstruction*; boxes and bales placed on the sidewalk are *obstructions* to travel; an ice-floe is an *obstacle* to navigation, and may become an *obstruction* if it closes an inlet or channel. A *hindrance* (kindred with *hind*, *behind*) is anything that makes one come behind or short of his purpose. An *impediment* may be either what one finds in his way or what he carries with him; *impedimenta* was the Latin name for the baggage of a soldier or of an army. The tendency is to view an *impediment* as something constant or, at least for a time, continuous; as, an *impediment* in one's speech. A *difficulty* or a *hindrance* may be either within one or without; a speaker may find *difficulty* in expressing himself, or *difficulty* in holding the attention of restless children. An *encumbrance* is always what one carries with him; an *obstacle* or an *obstruction* is always without. To a marching soldier the steepness of a mountain path is a *difficulty*, loose stones are *impediments*, a fence is an *obstruction*, a cliff or a boulder across the way is an *obstacle*; a knapsack is an *encumbrance*.

Antonyms:

advantage, aid, assistance, benefit, help, relief, succor.

IMPUDENCE.

Synonyms:

assurance,
boldness,
effrontery,
forwardness,
impertinence,
incivility,
insolence,
intrusiveness,
officiousness,
pertness,
presumption,
rudeness,
sauciness.

Impertinence primarily denotes what does not pertain or belong to the occasion or the person, and hence comes to signify interference by word or act not consistent with the age, position, or relation of the person interfered with or of the one who interferes; especially, forward, presumptuous, or meddlesome speech. *Impudence* is shameless *impertinence*. What would be arrogance in a[214] superior becomes *impertinence* or *impudence* in an inferior. *Impertinence* has less of intent and determination than *impudence*. We speak of thoughtless *impertinence*, shameless *impudence*. *Insolence* is literally that which is against custom, *i. e.*, the violation of customary respect and courtesy. *Officiousness* is thrusting upon others unasked and undesired service, and is often as well-meant as it is annoying. *Rudeness* is the behavior that might be expected from a thoroughly uncultured person, and may be either deliberate and insulting or unintentional and even unconscious. Compare ARROGANCE; ASSURANCE; EFFRONTERY; PERTNESS.

Antonyms:

bashfulness,
coyness,
diffidence,
humility,
lowliness,
meekness,
modesty,
submissiveness.

Prepositions:

The impudence *of*, or impudence *from*, a subordinate *to* a superior.

INCONGRUOUS.

Synonyms:

absurd,
conflicting,
contradictory,
contrary,
discordant,
ill-matched,
inapposite,
inappropriate,
incommensurable,
incompatible,
inharmonious,
irreconcilable,
mismatched,
mismated,
repugnant,

discrepant, inconsistent, unsuitable.

Two or more things that do not fit well together, or are not adapted to each other, are said to be *incongruous*; a thing is said to be *incongruous* that is not adapted to the time, place, or occasion; the term is also applied to a thing made up of ill-assorted parts or *inharmonious* elements. *Discordant* is applied to all things that jar in association like musical notes that are not in accord; *inharmonious* has the same original sense, but is a milder term. *Incompatible* primarily signifies unable to sympathize or feel alike; *inconsistent* means unable to stand together. Things are *incompatible* which can not exist together in harmonious relations, and whose action when associated tends to ultimate extinction of one by the other. *Inconsistent* applies to things that can not be made to agree in thought with each other, or with some standard of truth or right; slavery and freedom are *inconsistent* with each other in theory, and *incompatible* in fact. *Incongruous* applies to relations, *unsuitable* to purpose or use; two colors are *incongruous* which can not be agreeably associated; either may be *unsuitable* for a person, a room, or an occasion.[215] *Incommensurable* is a mathematical term, applying to two or more quantities that have no common measure or aliquot part.

Antonyms:

accordant,agreeing,compatible,consistent,harmonious,suitable.

Preposition:

The illustrations were incongruous *with* the theme.

INDUCTION.

Synonyms:

deduction,inference.

Deduction is reasoning from the general to the particular; *induction* is reasoning from the particular to the general. *Deduction* proceeds from a general principle through an admitted instance to a conclusion. *Induction*, on the other hand, proceeds from a number of collated instances, through some attribute common to them all, to a general principle. The proof of an *induction* is by using its conclusion as the premise of a new *deduction*. Thus what is ordinarily known as scientific *induction* is a constant interchange of *induction* and *deduction*. In *deduction*, if the general rule is true, and the special case falls under the rule, the conclusion is certain; *induction* can ordinarily give no more than a probable conclusion, because we can never be sure that we have collated all instances. An *induction* is of the nature of an *inference*, but while an *inference* may be partial and hasty, an *induction* is careful, and aims to be complete. Compare DEMONSTRATION; HYPOTHESIS.

INDUSTRIOUS.

Synonyms:

active,
assiduous,
busy,
diligent,
employed,
engaged,
occupied,
sedulous.

Industrious signifies zealously or habitually applying oneself to any work or business. *Busy* applies to an activity which may be temporary, *industrious* to a habit of life. We say a man is *busy* just now; that is, *occupied* at the moment with something that takes his full attention. It would be ridiculous or satirical to say, he is *industrious* just now. But *busy* can be used in the sense of *industrious*, as when we say he is a *busy* man. *Diligent* indicates also a disposition, which is ordinarily habitual, and suggests more of heartiness and volition than *industrious*. We say one is a *diligent*, rather than an *industrious*, reader of the Bible. In the use[216] of the nouns, we speak of plodding *industry*, but not of plodding *diligence*. Compare ACTIVE; INDUSTRY.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for IDLE.

INDUSTRY.

Synonyms:

application,
assiduity,
attention,
constancy,
diligence,
effort,
exertion,
intentness,
labor,
pains,
patience,
perseverance,
persistence,
sedulousness.

Industry is the quality, action, or habit of earnest, steady, and continued attention or devotion to any useful or productive work or task, manual or mental. *Assiduity* (L. *ad*, to, and *sedeo*, sit), as the etymology suggests, sits down to a task until it is done. *Diligence* (L. *diligo*, love, choose) invests more effort and exertion, with love of the work or deep interest in its accomplishment; *application* (L. *ad*, to, and *plico*, fold) bends to its work and concentrates all one's powers upon it with utmost intensity; hence, *application* can hardly be as unremitting as *assiduity*. *Constancy* is a steady devotion of heart and principle. *Patience* works on in spite of annoyances; *perseverance* overcomes hindrances and difficulties; *persistence* strives relentlessly against opposition; *persistence* has very frequently an unfavorable meaning, implying that one persists in spite of considerations that should induce him to desist. *Industry* is *diligence* applied to some avocation, business, or profession. *Labor* and *pains* refer to the *exertions* of the worker and the tax upon him, while *assiduity*, *perseverance*, etc., refer to his continuance in the work.

Antonyms:

changeableness, fickleness, idleness, inattention, inconstancy, indolence, neglect, negligence, remissness, sloth.

INFINITE.

Synonyms:

absolute, boundless, countless, eternal, illimitable, immeasurable, innumerable, interminable, limitless, measureless, numberless, unbounded, unconditioned, unfathomable, unlimited, unmeasured.

Infinite (L. *in*, not, and *finis*, limit) signifies without bounds or limits in any way, and may be applied to space, time, quantity, or number. *Countless*, *innumerable*, and *numberless*, which should[217] be the same as *infinite*, are in common usage vaguely employed to denote what it is difficult or practically impossible to count or number, tho perhaps falling far short of *infinite*; as, *countless* leaves, the *countless* sands on the seashore, *numberless* battles, *innumerable* delays. So, too, *boundless*, *illimitable*, *limitless*, *measureless*, and *unlimited* are loosely used in reference to what has no apparent or readily determinable limits in space or time; as, we speak of the *boundless* ocean. *Infinite* space is without bounds, not only in fact, but in thought; *infinite* time is truly *eternal*. Compare synonyms for ETERNAL.

Antonyms:

bounded, brief, circumscribed, evanescent, finite, limited, little, measurable, moderate, narrow, restricted, shallow, short, small, transient, transitory.

INFLUENCE.

Synonyms:

actuate, compel, dispose, draw, drive, excite, impel, incite, incline, induce, instigate, lead, move, persuade, prompt, stir, sway, urge.

To *influence* (L. *in*, in or into, and *fluo*, flow) is to affect, modify, or act upon by physical, mental, or moral power, especially in some gentle, subtle, and gradual way; as, vegetation is *influenced* by light; every one is *influenced* to some extent by public opinion; *influence* is chiefly used of power acting from without, tho it may be used of motives regarded as forces acting upon the will. *Actuate* refers solely to mental or moral power *impelling* one from within. One may *influence*, but can not directly *actuate* another; but one may be *actuated* to cruelty by hatred which another's misrepresentation has aroused. *Prompt* and *stir* are words of mere suggestion toward some course of action; *dispose*, *draw*, *incline*, *influence*, and *lead* refer to the use of mild means to awaken in another a purpose or disposition to act. To *excite* is to arouse one from lethargy or indifference to action. *Incite* and *instigate*, to spur or goad one to action, differ in the fact that *incite* may be to good, while *instigate* is always to evil (compare ABET). To *urge* and *impel* signify to produce strong excitation toward some act. We are *urged* from without, *impelled* from within. *Drive* and *compel* imply irresistible influence accomplishing its object. One may be *driven* either by his own passions or by external force or urgency; one is *compelled* only by some external power; as, the[218] owner was *compelled* by his misfortunes to sell his estate. Compare COMPEL; DRIVE.

Antonyms:

deter,
discourage,
dissuade,
hinder,
impede,
inhibit,
prevent,
restrain,
retard.

Prepositions:

Actuated *to* crime *by* revenge.

INHERENT.

Synonyms:

congenital,
essential,
immanent,
inborn,
inbred,
indispensable,
indwelling,
infixed,
ingrained,
inhering,
innate,
inseparable,
internal,
intrinsic,
inwrought,
native,
natural,
subjective.

Inherent signifies permanently united as an element or original quality, naturally existent or incorporated in something so as to have become an integral part. *Immanent* is a philosophic word, to denote that which dwells in or pervades any substance or spirit without necessarily being a part of it, and without reference to any working out (compare SUBJECTIVE). That which is *inherent* is an *inseparable* part of that in which it inheres, and is usually thought of with reference to some outworking or effect; as, an *inherent* difficulty. God is said to be *immanent* (not *inherent*) in the universe. Frequently *intrinsic* and *inherent* can be interchanged, but *inherent* applies to qualities, while *intrinsic* applies to essence, so that to speak of *intrinsic* excellence conveys higher praise than if we say *inherent* excellence. *Inherent* and *intrinsic* may be said of persons or things; *congenital*, *inborn*, *inbred*, *innate*, apply to living beings. *Congenital* is frequent in medical and legal use with special application to defects; as, *congenital* idiocy. *Innate* and *inborn* are almost identical, but *innate* is preferred in philosophic use, as when we speak of *innate* ideas; that which is *inborn*, *congenital*, or *innate* may be original with the individual, but that which is *inbred* is inherited. *Ingrained* signifies dyed in the grain, and denotes that which is deeply wrought into substance or character.

Antonyms:

accidental,
casual,
external,
extrinsic,
fortuitous,
incidental,
outward,
subsidiary,
superadded,
superficial,
superfluous,
superimposed,
supplemental,
transient,
unconnected.

---

[219]

INJURY.

Synonyms:

blemish,
damage,
detriment,
disadvantage,
evil,
harm,
hurt,
impairment,
injustice,
loss,
mischief,
outrage,
prejudice,
wrong.

Injury (L. *in*, not, and *jus, juris*, right, law) signifies primarily something done contrary to law or right; hence, something contrary to some standard of right or good; whatever reduces the value, utility, beauty, or desirableness of anything is an *injury* to that thing; of persons, whatever is so done as to operate adversely to one in his person, rights, property, or reputation is an *injury*; the word is especially used of whatever mars the integrity of the body or causes pain; as, when rescued from the wreck his *injuries* were found to be very slight. *Injury* is the general term including all the rest. *Damage* (L. *damnum*, loss) is that which occasions *loss* to the possessor; hence, any impairment of value, often with the suggestion of fault on the part of the one causing it; *damage* reduces value, utility, or beauty; *detriment* (L. *deterere*, to rub or wear away) is similar in meaning, but far milder. *Detriment* may affect value only; *damage* always affects real worth or utility; as a rule, the slightest use of an article by a purchaser operates to its *detriment* if again offered for sale, tho the article may have received not the slightest *damage*. *Damage* is partial; *loss* is properly absolute as far as it is predicated at all; the *loss* of a ship implies that it is gone beyond recovery; the *loss* of the rudder is a *damage* to the ship; but since the *loss* of a part still leaves a part, we may speak of a partial or a total *loss*. *Evil* commonly suggests suffering or sin, or both; as, the *evils* of poverty, the social *evil*. *Harm* is closely synonymous with *injury*; it may apply to body, mind, or estate, but always affects real worth, while *injury* may concern only estimated value. A *hurt* is an *injury* that causes pain, physical or mental; a slight *hurt* may be no real *harm*. *Mischief* is disarrangement, trouble, or *harm* usually caused by some voluntary agent, with or without injurious intent; a child's thoughtless sport may do great *mischief*; *wrong* is *harm* done with *evil* intent. An *outrage* combines insult and *injury*. Compare synonyms for BLEMISH; CRIMINAL; INJUSTICE.

Antonyms:

advantage,
amelioration,
benefit,
blessing,
boon,
help,
improvement,
remedy,
service,
utility.

Prepositions:

The injury *of* the cause; an injury *to* the structure; injury *by* fire; *by* or *from* collision, interference, etc.

---

[220]

INJUSTICE.

Synonyms:

grievance,
iniquity,
injury,
unfairness,
unrighteousness,
wrong.

Injustice is a violation or denial of justice, an act or omission that is contrary to equity or justice; as, the *injustice* of unequal taxes. In legal usage a *wrong* involves *injury* to person, property, or reputation, as the result of evil intent; *injustice* applies to civil damage or loss, not necessarily involving *injury* to person or property, as by misrepresentation of goods which does not amount to a legal warranty. In popular usage, *injustice* may involve no direct *injury* to person, property, interest, or character, and no harmful intent, while *wrong* always involves both; one who attributes another's truly generous act to a selfish motive does him an *injustice*. *Iniquity*, in the original sense, is a want of or a deviation from equity; but it is now applied in the widest sense to any form of ill-doing. Compare synonyms for CRIMINAL; SIN.

Antonyms:

equity,
fairness,
fair play,
faithfulness,
honesty,
honor,
impartiality,
integrity,
justice,
lawfulness,
rectitude,
right,
righteousness,
uprightness.

INNOCENT.

Synonyms:

blameless,
clean,
clear,
faultless,
guileless,
guiltless,
harmless,
immaculate,
innocuous,
innoxious,
inoffensive,
pure,
right,
righteous,
sinless,
spotless,
stainless,
upright,
virtuous.

Innocent, in the full sense, signifies not tainted with sin; not having done wrong or violated legal or moral precept or duty; as, an *innocent* babe. *Innocent* is a negative word, expressing less than *righteous*, *upright*, or *virtuous*, which imply knowledge of good and evil, with free choice of the good. A little child or a lamb is *innocent*; a tried and faithful man is *righteous*, *upright*, *virtuous*. *Immaculate*, *pure*, and *sinless* may be used either of one who has never known the possibility of evil or of one who has perfectly and triumphantly resisted it. *Innocent* is used of inanimate substances in the sense of *harmless*; as, an *innocent* remedy, that is, one not dangerous, even if not helpful. *Innocent*, in a specific case, signifies free from the guilt of a particular act, even tho the total character may be very evil; as, the thief was found to be *innocent* of the murder. See CANDID; PURE.

Antonyms:

Compare synonyms for CRIMINAL.

---

[221]

INQUISITIVE.

Synonyms:

curious,
inquiring,
intrusive,
meddlesome,
meddling,
peeping,
prying,
scrutinizing,
searching.

An *inquisitive* person is one who is bent on finding out all that can be found out by inquiry, especially of little and personal matters, and hence is generally *meddlesome* and *prying*. *Inquisitive* may be used in a good sense, tho in such connection *inquiring* is to be preferred; as, an *inquiring* mind. As applied to a state of mind, *curious* denotes a keen and rather pleasurable desire to know fully something to which one's attention has been called, but without the active tendency that *inquisitive* implies; a well-bred person may be *curious* to know, but will not be *inquisitive* in trying to ascertain, what is of interest in the affairs of another.

Antonyms:

apathetic,
careless,
heedless,
inattentive,
indifferent,
unconcerned,
uninterested.

Prepositions:

Inquisitive *about*, *concerning*, *in regard to*, *regarding* trifles.

INSANITY.

Synonyms:

aberration,
alienation,
craziness,
delirium,
dementia,
derangement,
frenzy,
hallucination,
lunacy,
madness,
mania,
monomania.

Of these terms *insanity* is the most exact and comprehensive, including in its widest sense all morbid conditions of mind due to diseased action of the brain or nervous system, but in its more frequent restricted use applied to those forms in which the mental disorder is persistent, as distinguished from those in which it is temporary or transient. *Craziness* is a vague popular term for any sort of disordered mental action, or for conduct suggesting it. *Lunacy* originally denoted intermittent *insanity*, supposed to be dependent on the changes of the moon (L. *luna*): the term is now applied in general and legal use to any form of mental unsoundness except idiocy. *Madness* is the old popular term, now less common, for *insanity* in its widest sense, but with suggestion of excitement, akin to *mania*. In the derived sense, *lunacy* denotes what is insanely foolish, *madness* what is insanely desperate. *Derangement* is a common euphemism for *insanity*. *Delirium* is always temporary, and is specifically the *insanity* of disease, as in acute fevers. *Dementia* is a general weakening of the mental[222] powers: the word is specifically applied to senile *insanity*, dotage. *Aberration* is eccentricity of mental action due to an abnormal state of the perceptive faculties, and is manifested by error in perceptions and rambling thought. *Hallucination* is the apparent perception of that which does not exist or is not present to the senses, as the seeing of specters or of reptiles in delirium tremens. *Monomania* is mental *derangement* as to one subject or object. *Frenzy* and *mania* are forms of raving and furious *insanity*. Compare synonyms for DELUSION; IDIOCY.

Antonyms:

clearness,good sense,lucidity,rationality,sanity.

INTERPOSE.

Synonyms:

arbitrate,
intercede,
intercept,
interfere,
intermeddle,
interrupt,
meddle,
mediate.

To *interpose* is to place or come between other things or persons, usually as a means of obstruction or prevention of some effect or result that would otherwise occur, or be expected to take place. *Intercede* and *interpose* are used in a good sense; *intermeddle* always in a bad sense, and *interfere* frequently so. To *intercede* is to come between persons who are at variance, and plead with the stronger in behalf of the weaker. One may *interpose* with authority; he *intercedes* by petition. To *intermeddle* is to thrust oneself into the concerns of others with a petty officiousness; *meddling* commonly arises from idle curiosity; "every fool will be *meddling*," *Prov.* xx, 3; to *interfere* is to intrude into others' affairs with more serious purpose, with or without acknowledged right or propriety. *Intercept* is applied to an object that may be seized or stopped while in transit; as, to *intercept* a letter or a messenger; *interrupt* is applied to an action which might or should be continuous, but is broken in upon (L. *rumpere*, to break) by some disturbing power; as, the conversation was *interrupted*. One who *arbitrates* or *mediates* must do so by the request or at least with the consent of the contending parties; the other words of the group imply that he steps in of his own accord.

Antonyms:

avoid,
hold aloof,
hold off,
keep aloof,
keep away,
keep clear,
keep out,
let alone,
let be,
retire,
stand aside,
stand away,
stand back,
stand off,
withdraw.

Prepositions:

Interpose *between* the combatants; *in* the matter.

---

[223]

INVOLVE.

Synonyms:

complicate,
embarrass,
embroil,
entangle,
implicate,
imply,
include,
overwhelm.

To *involve* (L. *in*, in, and *volvo*, roll) is to roll or wind up with or in so as to combine inextricably or inseparably, or nearly so; as, the nation is *involved* in war; the bookkeeper's accounts, or the writer's sentences are *involved*. *Involve* is a stronger word than *implicate*, denoting more complete entanglement. As applied to persons, *implicate* is always used in an unfavorable sense, and *involve* ordinarily so; but *implicate* applies only to that which is wrong, while *involve* is more commonly used of that which is unfortunate; one is *implicated* in a crime, *involved* in embarrassments, misfortunes, or perplexities. As regards logical connection that which is *included* is usually expressly stated; that which is *implied* is not stated, but is naturally to be inferred; that which is *involved* is necessarily to be inferred; as, a slate roof is *included* in the contract; that the roof shall be water-tight is *implied*; the contrary supposition *involves* an absurdity. See COMPLEX.

Antonyms:

disconnect, disentangle, distinguish, explicate, extricate, remove, separate.

JOURNEY.

Synonyms:

excursion, pilgrimage, transit, trip,
expedition, tour, travel, voyage.

A *journey* (F. *journée*, from L. *diurnus*, daily) was primarily a day's work; hence, a movement from place to place within one day, which we now describe as "a day's *journey*;" in its extended modern use a *journey* is a direct going from a starting-point to a destination, ordinarily over a considerable distance; we speak of a day's *journey*, or the *journey* of life. *Travel* is a passing from place to place, not necessarily in a direct line or with fixed destination; a *journey* through Europe would be a passage to some destination beyond or at the farther boundary; *travel* in Europe may be in no direct course, but may include many *journeys* in different directions. A *voyage*, which was formerly a *journey* of any kind, is now a going to a considerable distance by water, especially by sea; as, a *voyage* to India. A *trip* is a short and direct *journey*. A *tour* is a *journey* that returns to the starting-point, generally over a considerable distance; as, a bridal[224] *tour*, or business *tour*. An *excursion* is a brief *tour* or *journey*, taken for pleasure, often by many persons at once; as, an *excursion* to Chautauqua. *Passage* is a general word for a *journey* by any conveyance, especially by water; as, a rough *passage* across the Atlantic; *transit*, literally the act of passing over or through, is used specifically of the conveyance of passengers or merchandise; rapid *transit* is demanded for suburban residents or perishable goods. *Pilgrimage*, once always of a sacred character, retains in derived uses something of that sense; as, a *pilgrimage* to Stratford-on-Avon.

Prepositions:

A journey *from* Naples *to* Rome; *through* Mexico; *across* the continent; *over* the sea; a journey *into* Asia; *among* savages; *by* land, *by* rail, *for* health, *on* foot, *on* the cars, etc.

JUDGE.

Synonyms:

arbiter, arbitrator, justice, referee, umpire.

A *judge*, in the legal sense, is a judicial officer appointed or elected to preside in courts of law, and to decide legal questions duly brought before him; the name is sometimes given to other legally constituted officers; as, the *judges* of election; in other relations, any person duly appointed to pass upon the merits of contestants or of competing articles may be called a *judge*; as, the *judges* at an agricultural fair, or at a race-track; in the widest sense, any person who has good capacity for judging is called a *judge*; as, a person is said to be a *judge* of pictures, or a good *judge* of a horse, etc. In most games the *judge* is called an *umpire*; as, the *umpire* of a game of ball or cricket. A *referee* is appointed by a court to decide disputed matters between litigants; an *arbitrator* is chosen by the contending parties to decide matters in dispute without action by a court. In certain cases an *umpire* is appointed by a court to decide where *arbitrators* disagree. *Arbiter*, with its suggestion of final and absolute decision, has come to be used only in a high or sacred sense; as, war must now be the *arbiter*; the Supreme *Arbiter* of our destinies. The *judges* of certain courts, as the United States Supreme Court, are technically known as *justices*.

---

[225]

JUSTICE.

Synonyms:

equity,
fairness,
fair play,
faithfulness,
honor,
impartiality,
integrity,
justness,
law,
lawfulness,
legality,
rectitude,
right,
righteousness,
rightfulness,
truth,
uprightness,
virtue.

In its governmental relations, human or divine, *justice* is the giving to every person exactly what he deserves, not necessarily involving any consideration of what any other may deserve; *equity* (the quality of being equal) is giving every one as much advantage, privilege, or consideration as is given to any other; it is that which is equally right or just to all concerned; *equity* is equal *justice* and is thus a close synonym for *fairness* and *impartiality*, but it has a philosophical and legal precision that those words have not. In legal proceedings cases arise for which the *law* has not adequately provided, or in which general provisions, just in the main, would work individual hardship. The system of *equity*, devised to supply the insufficiencies of *law*, deals with cases "to which the *law* by reason of its universality can not apply." "*Equity*, then, ... is the soul and spirit of all *law*; positive *law* is construed and rational *law* is made by it." Blackstone bk. iii, ch. 27, p. 429. In personal and social relations *justice* is the rendering to every one what is due or merited, whether in act, word, or thought; in matters of reasoning, or literary work of any kind, *justice* is close, faithful, unprejudiced, and unbiased adherence to essential truth or fact; we speak of the *justice* of a statement, or of doing *justice* to a subject. *Integrity*, *rectitude*, *right*, *righteousness* and *virtue* denote conformity of personal conduct to the moral law, and thus necessarily include *justice*, which is giving others that which is their due. *Lawfulness* is an ambiguous word, meaning in its narrower sense mere *legality*, which may be very far from *justice*, but in its higher sense signifying accordance with the supreme *law* of *right*, and thus including perfect *justice*. *Justness* refers rather to logical relations than to practical matters; as, we speak of the *justness* of a statement or of a criticism. See JUDGE, *n.*

Antonyms:

dishonesty,
favoritism,
inequity,
injustice,
partiality,
unfairness,
unlawfulness,
unreasonableness,
untruth,
wrong.

Prepositions:

The justice *of* the king; *to* or *for* the oppressed.

---

[226]

KEEP.

Synonyms:

carry,
carry on,
celebrate,
conduct,
defend,
detain,
fulfil,
guard,
hold,
maintain,
obey,
observe,
preserve,
protect,
refrain,
restrain,
retain,
support,
sustain,
withhold.

Keep, signifying generally to have and retain in possession, is the terse, strong Saxon term for many acts which are more exactly discriminated by other words. We *keep*, *observe*, or *celebrate* a festival; we *keep* or *hold* a prisoner in custody; we *keep* or *preserve* silence, *keep* the peace, *preserve* order—*preserve* being the more formal word; we *keep* or *maintain* a horse, a servant, etc.; a man *supports* his family; we *keep* or *obey* a commandment; *keep* or *fulfil* a promise. In the expressions to *keep* a secret, *keep* one's own counsel, *keep* faith, or *keep* the faith, such words as *preserve* or *maintain* could not be substituted without loss. A person *keeps* a shop or store, *conducts* or *carries on* a business; he *keeps* or *carries* a certain line of goods; we may *keep* or *restrain* one from folly, crime, or violence; we *keep* from or *refrain* from evil, ourselves. *Keep* in the sense of *guard* or *defend* implies that the defense is effectual. Compare CELEBRATE; RESTRAIN.

Prepositions:

Keep *in* hand, *in* mind, *in* or *within* the house; *from* evil; *out of* mischief; keep *to* the subject; keep *for* a person, an occasion, etc.

KILL.

Synonyms:

assassinate,
butcher,
despatch,
execute,
massacre,
murder,
put to death,
slaughter,
slay.

To *kill* is simply to deprive of life, human, animal, or vegetable, with no suggestion of how or why. *Assassinate*, *execute*, *murder*, apply only to the taking of human life; to *murder* is to *kill* with premeditation and malicious intent; to *execute* is to *kill* in fulfilment of a legal sentence; to *assassinate* is to *kill* by assault; this word is chiefly applied to the *killing* of public or eminent persons through alleged political motives, whether secretly or openly. To *slay* is to *kill* by a blow, or by a weapon. *Butcher* and *slaughter* apply primarily to the *killing* of cattle; *massacre* is applied primarily and almost exclusively to human beings, signifying to *kill* them indiscriminately in large numbers; to *massacre* is said when there is no chance of successful resistance; to *butcher* when the *killing* is especially brutal; soldiers mown down in a[227] hopeless charge are said to be *slaughtered* when no brutality on the enemy's part is implied. To *despatch* is to *kill* swiftly and in general quietly, always with intention, with or without right.

Prepositions:

To kill *with* or *by* sword, famine, pestilence, care, grief, etc.; killed *for* his money, *by* a robber, *with* a dagger.

KIN.

Synonyms:

affinity,
alliance,
birth,
blood,
consanguinity,
descent,
family,
kind,
kindred,
race,
relationship.

Kind is broader than *kin*, denoting the most general *relationship*, as of the whole human species in man*kind*, human*kind*, etc.; *kin* and *kindred* denote direct *relationship* that can be traced through either blood or marriage, preferably the former; either of these words may signify collectively all persons of the same blood or members of the same family, relatives or relations. *Affinity* is *relationship* by marriage, *consanguinity* is *relationship* by blood. There are no true antonyms of *kin* or *kindred*, except those made by negatives, since strangers, aliens, foreigners, and foes may still be *kin* or *kindred*.

KNOWLEDGE.

Synonyms:

acquaintance,
apprehension,
cognition,
cognizance,
comprehension,
erudition,
experience,
information,
intelligence,
intuition,
learning,
light,
lore,
perception,
recognition,
scholarship,
science,
wisdom.

Knowledge is all that the mind knows, from whatever source derived or obtained, or by whatever process; the aggregate of facts, truths, or principles acquired or retained by the mind, including alike the *intuitions* native to the mind and all that has been learned respecting phenomena, causes, laws, principles, literature, etc. There is a tendency to regard *knowledge* as accurate and systematic, and to a certain degree complete. *Information* is *knowledge* of fact, real or supposed, derived from persons, books, or observation, and is regarded as casual and haphazard. We say of a studious man that he has a great store of *knowledge*, or of an intelligent man of the world, that he has a fund of varied *information*. *Lore* is used only in poetic or elevated style, for accumulated *knowledge*, as of a people or age, or in a more limited sense for *learning* or *erudition*. We speak of *perception* of external[228] objects, *apprehension* of intellectual truth. Simple *perception* gives a limited *knowledge* of external objects, merely as such; the *cognition* of the same objects is a *knowledge* of them in some relation; *cognizance* is the formal or official *recognition* of something as an object of *knowledge*; we take *cognizance* of it. *Intuition* is primary *knowledge* antecedent to all teaching or reasoning, *experience* is *knowledge* that has entered directly into one's own life; as, a child's *experience* that fire will burn. *Learning* is much higher than *information*, being preeminently wide and systematic *knowledge*, the result of long, assiduous study; *erudition* is recondite *learning* secured only by extraordinary industry, opportunity, and ability. Compare ACQUAINTANCE; EDUCATION; SCIENCE; WISDOM.

Antonyms:

ignorance,
illiteracy,
inexperience,
misapprehension,
misconception,
misunderstanding,
rudeness,
unfamiliarity.

LANGUAGE.

Synonyms:

barbarism,
dialect,
diction,
expression,
idiom,
mother tongue,
patois,
speech,
tongue,
vernacular,
vocabulary.

Language (F. *langage* < L. *lingua*, the tongue) signified originally *expression* of thought by spoken words, but now in its widest sense it signifies *expression* of thought by any means; as, the *language* of the eyes, the *language* of flowers. As regards the use of words, *language* in its broadest sense denotes all the uttered sounds and their combinations into words and sentences that human beings employ for the communication of thought, and, in a more limited sense, the words or combinations forming a means of communication among the members of a single nation, people, or race. *Speech* involves always the power of articulate utterance; we can speak of the *language* of animals, but not of their *speech*. A *tongue* is the *speech* or *language* of some one people, country, or race. A *dialect* is a special mode of speaking a *language* peculiar to some locality or class, not recognized as in accordance with the best usage; a *barbarism* is a perversion of a *language* by ignorant foreigners, or some usage akin to that. *Idiom* refers to the construction of phrases and sentences, and the way of forming or using words; it is the peculiar mold in which each *language* casts its thought. The great difficulty of translation is to give the thought expressed in one *language* in the *idiom* of another. A *dialect* may be used by the highest as well as the[229] lowest within its range; a *patois* is distinctly illiterate, belonging to the lower classes; those who speak a *patois* understand the cultured form of their own language, but speak only the degraded form, as in the case of the Italian lazzaroni or the former negro slaves in the United States. *Vernacular*, from the Latin, has the same general sense as the Saxon *mother tongue*, of one's native *language*, or that of a people; as, the Scriptures were translated into the *vernacular*. Compare DICTION.

LARGE.

Synonyms:

abundant,
ample,
big,
broad,
bulky,
capacious,
coarse,
colossal,
commodious,
considerable,
enormous,
extensive,
gigantic,
grand,
great,
huge,
immense,
long,
massive,
spacious,
vast,
wide.

Large denotes extension in more than one direction, and beyond the average of the class to which the object belongs; we speak of a *large* surface or a *large* solid, but of a *long* line; a *large* field, a *large* room, a *large* apple, etc. A *large* man is a man of more than ordinary size; a *great* man is a man of remarkable mental power. *Big* is a more emphatic word than *large*, but of less dignity. We do not say that George Washington was a *big* man.

Antonyms:

brief,
diminutive,
inconsiderable,
infinitesimal,
insignificant,
limited,
little,
mean,
microscopic,
minute,
narrow,
paltry,
petty,
scanty,
short,
slender,
slight,
small,
tiny,
trifling,
trivial.

LAW.

Synonyms:

canon,
code,
command,
commandment,
decree,
economy,
edict,
enactment,
formula,
jurisprudence,
legislation,
mandate,
order,
ordinance,
polity,
principle,
regulation,
rule,
statute.

Law, in its ideal, is the statement of a *principle* of right in mandatory form, by competent authority, with adequate penalty for disobedience; in common use, the term is applied to any legislative act, however imperfect or unjust. *Command* and *commandment* are personal and particular; as, the *commands* of a parent; the ten *commandments*. An *edict* is the act of an absolute sovereign or other authority; we speak of the *edict* of an emperor, the *decree* of a court. A *mandate* is specific, for an occasion or a purpose; a superior court issues its *mandate* to an inferior court[230] to send up its records. *Statute* is the recognized legal term for a specific *law*; *enactment* is the more vague and general expression. We speak of algebraic or chemical *formulas*, municipal *ordinances*, military *orders*, army *regulations*, ecclesiastical *canons*, the *rules* of a business house. *Law* is often used, also, for a recognized *principle*, whose violation is attended with injury or loss that acts like a penalty; as, the *laws* of business; the *laws* of nature. In more strictly scientific use, a natural *law* is simply a recognized system of sequences or relations; as, Kepler's *laws* of planetary distances. A *code* is a system of *laws*; *jurisprudence* is the science of *law*, or a system of *laws* scientifically considered, classed, and interpreted; *legislation*, primarily the act of legislating, denotes also the body of *statutes* enacted by a legislative body. An *economy* (Gr. *oikonomia*, primarily the management of a house) is any comprehensive system of administration; as, domestic *economy*; but the word is extended to the administration or government of a state or people, signifying a body of *laws* and *regulations*, with the entire system, political or religious, especially the latter, of which they form a part; as, the *code* of Draco, Roman *jurisprudence*, British *legislation*, the Mosaic *economy*. *Law* is also used as a collective noun for a system of *laws* or recognized *rules* or *regulations*, including not only all special *laws*, but the *principles* on which they are based. The Mosaic *economy* is known also as the Mosaic *law*, and we speak of the English common *law*, or the *law* of nations. *Polity* (Gr. *politeia*, from *polis*, a city) signifies the form, constitution, or method of government of a nation, state, church, or other institution; in usage it differs from *economy* as applying rather to the system, while *economy* applies especially to method, or to the system as administered; an *economy* might be termed a *polity* considered with especial reference to its practical administration, hence commonly with special reference to details or particulars, while *polity* has more reference to broad *principles*.

LIBERTY.

Synonyms:

emancipation,freedom,independence,license.

In general terms, it may be said that *freedom* is absolute, *liberty* relative; *freedom* is the absence of restraint, *liberty* is primarily the removal or avoidance of restraint; in its broadest sense, it is the state of being exempt from the domination of others[231] or from restricting circumstances. *Freedom* and *liberty* are constantly interchanged; the slave is set at *liberty*, or gains his *freedom*; but *freedom* is the nobler word. *Independence* is said of states or nations, *freedom* and *liberty* of individuals; the *independence* of the United States did not secure *liberty* or *freedom* to its slaves. *Liberty* keeps quite strictly to the thought of being clear of restraint or compulsion; *freedom* takes a wider range, applying to other oppressive influences; thus, we speak of *freedom* from annoyance or intrusion. *License* is, in its limited sense, a permission or privilege granted by adequate authority, a bounded *liberty*; in the wider sense, *license* is an ignoring and defiance of all that should restrain, and a reckless doing of all that individual caprice or passion may choose to do—a base and dangerous counterfeit of *freedom*. Compare ALLOW; PERMISSION.

Antonyms:

captivity,
compulsion,
constraint,
imprisonment,
necessity,
obligation,
oppression,
serfdom,
servitude,
slavery,
superstition,
thraldom.

LIGHT.

Synonyms:

blaze,
flame,
flare,
flash,
flicker,
glare,
gleam,
gleaming,
glimmer,
glistening,
glistering,
glitter,
glow,
illumination,
incandescence,
luster,
scintillation,
sheen,
shimmer,
shine,
shining,
sparkle,
twinkle,
twinkling.

Light, strictly denoting a form of radiant energy, is used as a general term for any luminous effect discernible by the eye, from the faintest phosphorescence to the *blaze* of the noonday sun. A *flame* is both hot and luminous; if it contains few solid particles it will yield little *light*, tho it may afford intense heat, as in the case of a hydrogen-*flame*. A *blaze* is an extensive, brilliant *flame*. A *flare* is a wavering *flame* or *blaze*; a *flash* is a *light* that appears and disappears in an instant; as, a *flash* of lightning; the *flash* of gunpowder. The *glare* and *glow* are steady, the *glare* painfully bright, the *glow* subdued; as, the *glare* of torches; the *glow* of dying embers. *Shine* and *shining* refer to a steady or continuous emission of *light*; *sheen* is a faint *shining*, usually by reflection. *Glimmer*, *glitter*, and *shimmer* denote wavering *light*. We speak of the *glimmer* of distant lamps through the mist; of the *shimmer* of waves in sun*light* or moon*light*. A *gleam* is not wavering, but transient or intermittent; a sudden *gleam* of *light* came through the half-open door; a *glitter*[232] is a hard *light*; as, the *glitter* of burnished arms. A *sparkle* is a sudden *light*, as of sparks thrown out; *scintillation* is the more exact and scientific term for the actual emission of sparks, also the figurative term for what suggests such emission; as, *scintillations* of wit or of genius. *Twinkle* and *twinkling* are used of the intermittent *light* of the fixed stars. *Glistening* is a *shining* as from a wet surface. *Illumination* is a wide-spread, brilliant *light*, as when all the windows of a house or of a street are lighted. The *light* of *incandescence* is intense and white like that from metal at a white heat.

Antonyms:

blackness,
dark,
darkness,
dimness,
dusk,
gloom,
gloominess,
obscurity,
shade,
shadow.

LIKELY.

Synonyms:

apt, conceivable,liable, probable,
credible,conjectural, presumable,reasonable.

Apt implies a natural fitness or tendency; an impetuous person is *apt* to speak hastily. *Liable* refers to a contingency regarded as unfavorable; as, the ship was *liable* to founder at any moment. *Likely* refers to a contingent event regarded as very probable, and usually, tho not always, favorable; as, an industrious worker is *likely* to succeed. *Credible* signifies readily to be believed; as, a *credible* narrative; *likely* in such connection is used ironically to signify the reverse; as, a *likely* story! A thing is *conceivable* of which the mind can entertain the possibility; a thing is *conjectural* which is conjectured as possible or probable without other support than a conjecture, or tentative judgment; a thing is *presumable* which, from what is antecedently known, may betaken for granted in advance of proof. *Reasonable* in this connection signifies such as the reason can be satisfied with, independently of external grounds for belief or disbelief; as, that seems a *reasonable* supposition. Compare APPARENT.

Antonyms:

doubtful,improbable,questionable,unreasonable.
dubious, incredible, unlikely,

LISTEN.

Synonyms:

attend,hark,harken,hear,heed,list.

Between *listen* and *hear* is a difference like that between the words look and see. (Compare synonyms for LOOK.) To *hear* is[233] simply to become conscious of sound, to *listen* is to make a conscious effort or endeavor to *hear*. We may *hear* without *listening*, as words suddenly uttered in an adjoining room; or we may *listen* without *hearing*, as to a distant speaker. In *listening* the ear is intent upon the sound; in *attending* the mind is intent upon the thought, tho *listening* implies some attention to the meaning or import of the sound. To *heed* is not only to *attend*, but to remember and observe. *Harken* is nearly obsolete.

Antonyms:

be deaf to,ignore,neglect,scorn,slight.

Prepositions:

We listen *for* what we expect or desire to hear; we listen *to* what we actually do hear; listen *for* a step, a signal, a train; listen *to* the debate.

LITERATURE.

Synonyms:

belles-lettres,
books,
literary productions,
literary works,
publications,
writings.

Literature is collective, including in the most general sense all the written or printed productions of the human mind in all lands and ages, or in a more limited sense, referring to all that has been published in some land or age, or in some department of human knowledge; as, the *literature* of Greece; the *literature* of the Augustan age; the *literature* of politics or of art. *Literature*, used absolutely, denotes what has been called "polite *literature*" or *belles-lettres*, *i. e.*, the works collectively that embody taste, feeling, loftiness of thought, and purity and beauty of style, as poetry, history, fiction, and dramatic compositions, including also much of philosophical writing, as the "Republic" of Plato, and oratorical productions, as the orations of Demosthenes. In the broad sense, we can speak of the *literature* of science; in the narrower sense, we speak of *literature* and science as distinct departments of knowledge. *Literature* is also used to signify literary pursuits or occupations; as, to devote one's life to *literature*. Compare KNOWLEDGE; SCIENCE.

LOAD, n.

Synonyms:

burden,
cargo,
charge,
clog,
encumbrance,
freight,
incubus,
lading,
pack,
weight.

A *burden* (from the Anglo-Saxon *byrthen*, from the verb *beran*, bear) is what one has to bear, and the word is used always of that which is borne by a living agent. A *load* (from the Anglo-Saxon[234] *lād*, a way, course, carrying, or carriage) is what is laid upon a person, animal, or vehicle for conveyance, or what is customarily so imposed; as, a two-horse *load*. *Weight* measures the pressure due to gravity; the same *weight* that one finds a moderate *load* when in his full strength becomes a heavy *burden* in weariness or weakness. A ship's *load* is called distinctively a *cargo*, or it may be known as *freight* or *lading*. *Freight* denotes merchandise in or for transportation and is used largely of transportation or of merchandise transported by rail, which is, in commercial language, said to be "shipped." A *load* to be fastened upon a horse or mule is called a *pack*, and the animal is known as a pack-horse or pack-mule.

LOCK.

Synonyms:

bar,
bolt,
catch,
clasp,
fastening,
hasp,
hook,
latch.

A *bar* is a piece of wood or metal, usually of considerable size, by which an opening is obstructed, a door held fast, etc. A *bar* may be movable or permanent; a *bolt* is a movable rod or pin of metal, sliding in a socket and adapted for securing a door or window. A *lock* is an arrangement by which an enclosed *bolt* is shot forward or backward by a key, or other device; the *bolt* is the essential part of the *lock*. A *latch* or *catch* is an accessible *fastening* designed to be easily movable, and simply to secure against accidental opening of the door, cover, etc. A *hasp* is a metallic strap that fits over a staple, calculated to be secured by a padlock; a simple *hook* that fits into a staple is also called a *hasp*. A *clasp* is a fastening that can be sprung into place, to draw and hold the parts of some enclosing object firmly together, as the *clasp* of a book.

LOOK.

Synonyms:

behold,
contemplate,
descry,
discern,
gaze,
glance,
inspect,
regard,
scan,
see,
stare,
survey,
view,
watch.

To *see* is simply to become conscious of an object of vision; to *look* is to make a conscious and direct endeavor to *see*. To *behold* is to fix the sight and the mind with distinctness and consideration upon something that has come to be clearly before the eyes. We may *look* without *seeing*, as in pitch-darkness, and we may *see* without *looking*, as in case of a flash of lightning. To *gaze* is to[235] *look* intently, long, and steadily upon an object. To *glance* is to *look* casually or momentarily. To *stare* is to *look* with a fixed intensity such as is the effect of surprise, alarm, or rudeness. To *scan* is to *look* at minutely, to note every visible feature. To *inspect* is to go below the surface, uncover, study item by item. *View* and *survey* are comprehensive, *survey* expressing the greater exactness of measurement or estimate. *Watch* brings in the element of time and often of wariness; we *watch* for a movement or change, a signal, the approach of an enemy, etc. Compare APPEAR.

LOVE.

Synonyms:

affection,
charity,
friendship,
regard,

attachment,
attraction,
devotion,
fondness,
liking,
tenderness.

Affection is kindly feeling, deep, tender, and constant, going out to some person or object, being less fervent and ardent than *love*, whether applied to persons or things. *Love* is an intense and absorbing emotion, drawing one toward a person or object and causing one to appreciate, delight in, and crave the presence or possession of the person or object loved, and to desire to please and benefit the person, or to advance the cause, truth, or other object of *affection*; it is the yearning or outgoing of soul toward something that is regarded as excellent, beautiful, or desirable; *love* may be briefly defined as strong and absorbing *affection* for and *attraction* toward a person or object. *Love* may denote the sublimest and holiest spiritual *affection* as when we are taught that "God is *love*." *Charity* has so far swung aside from this original meaning that probably it never can be recalled (compare BENEVOLENCE). The Revised Version uses *love* in place of *charity* in *1 Cor.* xiii, and elsewhere. *Love* is more intense, absorbing, and tender than *friendship*, more intense, impulsive, and perhaps passionate than *affection*; we speak of fervent *love*, but of deep or tender *affection*, or of close, firm, strong *friendship*. *Love* is used specifically for personal *affection* between the sexes in the highest sense, the *love* that normally leads to marriage, and subsists throughout all happy wedded life. *Love* can never properly denote mere animal passion, which is expressed by such words as appetite, desire, lust. One may properly be said to have *love* for animals, for inanimate objects, or for abstract qualities that enlist the affections, as we speak of *love* for a horse or a dog, for mountains,[236] woods, ocean, or of *love* of nature, and *love* of virtue. *Love* of articles of food is better expressed by *liking*, as *love*, in its full sense, expresses something spiritual and reciprocal, such as can have no place in connection with objects that minister merely to the senses. Compare ATTACHMENT; FRIENDSHIP.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for ANTIPATHY; ENMITY; HATRED.

Prepositions:

Love *of* country; *for* humanity; love *to* God and man.

MAKE.

Synonyms:

become,
bring about,
bring into being,
bring to pass,
cause,
compel,
constrain,
construct,
create,
do,
effect,
establish,
fabricate,
fashion,
force,
frame,
get,
make out,
manufacture,
occasion,
perform,
reach,
render,
require,

compose,
constitute,
execute,
make up,
shape.

Make is essentially causative; to the idea of *cause* all its various senses may be traced (compare synonyms for CAUSE). To *make* is to *cause* to exist, or to *cause* to exist in a certain form or in certain relations; the word thus includes the idea of *create*, as in *Gen.* i, 31, "And God saw everything that he had *made*, and, behold, it was very good." *Make* includes also the idea of *compose*, *constitute*; as, the parts *make up* the whole. Similarly, to *cause* a voluntary agent to do a certain act is to *make* him do it, or *compel* him to do it, *compel* fixing the attention more on the process, *make* on the accomplished fact. Compare COMPEL; DO; INFLUENCE; (make better) AMEND; (make haste) QUICKEN; (make known) ANNOUNCE; AVOW; CONFESS; (make prisoner) ARREST; (make up) ADD; (make void) CANCEL.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for ABOLISH; BREAK; DEMOLISH.

Prepositions:

Make *of*, *out of*, or *from* certain materials, *into* a certain form, *for* a certain purpose or person; made *with* hands, *by* hand; made *by* a prisoner, *with* a jack-knife.

MARRIAGE.

Synonyms:

conjugal union,
espousal,
espousals,
matrimony,
nuptials,
spousal,
spousals,
union,
wedding,
wedlock.

Matrimony denotes the state of those who are united in the[237] relation of husband and wife; *marriage* denotes primarily the act of so uniting, but is extensively used for the state as well. *Wedlock*, a word of specific legal use, is the Saxon term for the state or relation denoted by *matrimony*. *Wedding* denotes the ceremony, with any attendant festivities, by which two persons are united as husband and wife, *nuptials* being the more formal and stately term to express the same idea.

Antonyms:

bachelorhood, celibacy, divorce, maidenhood, virginity, widowhood.

Prepositions:

Marriage *of* or *between* two persons; *of* one person *to* or *with* another; *among* the Greeks.

MASCULINE.

Synonyms:

male,manful,manlike,manly,mannish,virile.

We apply *male* to the sex, *masculine* to the qualities, especially to the stronger, hardier, and more imperious qualities that distinguish the *male* sex; as applied to women, *masculine* has often the depreciatory sense of unwomanly, rude, or harsh; as, a *masculine* face or voice, or the like; tho one may say in a commendatory way, she acted with *masculine* courage or decision. *Manlike* may mean only having the outward appearance or semblance of a man, or may be closely equivalent to *manly*. *Manly* refers to all the qualities and traits worthy of a man; *manful*, especially to the valor and prowess that become a man; we speak of a *manful* struggle, *manly* decision; we say *manly* gentleness or tenderness; we could not say *manful* tenderness. *Mannish* is a depreciatory word referring to the mimicry or parade of some superficial qualities of manhood; as, a *mannish* boy or woman. *Masculine* may apply to the distinctive qualities of the *male* sex at any age; *virile* applies to the distinctive qualities of mature manhood only, as opposed not only to *feminine* or *womanly* but to *childish*, and is thus an emphatic word for *sturdy*, *intrepid*, etc.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for FEMININE.

MASSACRE.

Synonyms:

butchery,carnage,havoc,slaughter.

A *massacre* is the indiscriminate killing in numbers of the unresisting[238] or defenseless; *butchery* is the killing of men rudely and ruthlessly as cattle are killed in the shambles. *Havoc* may not be so complete as *massacre*, nor so coldly brutal as *butchery*, but is more widely spread and furious; it is destruction let loose, and may be applied to organizations, interests, etc., as well as to human life; "as for Saul, he made *havoc* of the church," *Acts* viii, 3. *Carnage* (Latin *caro, carnis*, flesh) refers to widely scattered or heaped up corpses of the slain; *slaughter* is similar in meaning, but refers more to the process, as *carnage* does to the result; these two words only of the group may be used of great destruction of life in open and honorable battle, as when we say the enemy was repulsed with great *slaughter*, or the *carnage* was terrible.

MEDDLESOME.

Synonyms:

impertinent,intrusive,meddling,obtrusive,officious.

The *meddlesome* person interferes unasked in the affairs of others; the *intrusive* person thrusts himself uninvited into their company or conversation; the *obtrusive* person thrusts himself or his opinions conceitedly and undesirably upon their notice; the *officious* person thrusts his services, unasked and undesired, upon others. *Obtrusive* is oftener applied to words, qualities, actions, etc., than to persons; *intrusive* is used chiefly of persons, as is *officious*, tho we speak of *officious* attentions, *intrusive* remarks; *meddlesome* is used indifferently of persons, or of words, qualities, actions, etc. Compare INQUISITIVE; INTERPOSE.

Antonyms:

modest,reserved,retiring,shy,unassuming,unobtrusive.

MELODY.

Synonyms:

harmony,music,symphony,unison.

Harmony is simultaneous; *melody* is successive; *harmony* is the pleasing correspondence of two or more notes sounded at once, *melody* the pleasing succession of a number of notes continuously following one another. A *melody* may be wholly in one part; *harmony* must be of two or more parts. Accordant notes of different pitch sounded simultaneously produce *harmony*; *unison* is the simultaneous sounding of two or more notes of the same pitch. When the pitch is the same, there may be *unison* between sounds of very different volume and quality, as a voice and a bell may[239] sound in *unison*. Tones sounded at the interval of an octave are also said to be in *unison*, altho this is not literally exact; this usage arises from the fact that bass and tenor voices in attempting to sound the same note as the soprano and alto will in fact sound a note an octave below. *Music* may denote the simplest *melody* or the most complex and perfect *harmony*. A *symphony* (apart from its technical orchestral sense) is any pleasing consonance of musical sounds, vocal or instrumental, as of many accordant voices or instruments.

MEMORY.

Synonyms:

recollection,remembrance,reminiscence,retrospect,retrospection.

Memory is the faculty by which knowledge is retained or recalled; in a more general sense, *memory* is a retention of knowledge within the grasp of the mind, while *remembrance* is the having what is known consciously before the mind. *Remembrance* may be voluntary or involuntary; a thing is brought to *remembrance* or we call it to *remembrance*; the same is true of *memory*. *Recollection* involves volition, the mind making a distinct effort to recall something, or fixing the attention actively upon it when recalled. *Reminiscence* is a half-dreamy *memory* of scenes or events long past; *retrospection* is a distinct turning of the mind back upon the past, bringing long periods under survey. *Retrospection* is to *reminiscence* much what *recollection* is to *remembrance*.

Antonyms:

forgetfulness,
oblivion,
obliviousness,
oversight,
unconsciousness.

MERCY.

Synonyms:

benevolence,
benignity,
blessing,
clemency,
compassion,
favor,
forbearance,
forgiveness,
gentleness,
grace,
kindness,
lenience,
leniency,
lenity,
mildness,
pardon,
pity,
tenderness.

Mercy is the exercise of less severity than one deserves, or in a more extended sense, the granting of *kindness* or *favor* beyond what one may rightly claim. *Grace* is *favor*, *kindness*, or *blessing* shown to the undeserving; *forgiveness*, *mercy*, and *pardon* are exercised toward the ill-deserving. *Pardon* remits the outward penalty which the offender deserves; *forgiveness* dismisses resentment or displeasure from the heart of the one offended;[240] *mercy* seeks the highest possible good of the offender. There may be *mercy* without *pardon*, as in the mitigation of sentence, or in all possible alleviation of necessary severity; there may be cases where *pardon* would not be *mercy*, since it would encourage to repetition of the offense, from which timely punishment might have saved. *Mercy* is also used in the wider sense of refraining from harshness or cruelty toward those who are in one's power without fault of their own; as, they besought the robber to have *mercy*. *Clemency* is a colder word than *mercy*, and without its religious associations, signifying *mildness* and moderation in the use of power where severity would have legal or military, rather than moral sanction; it often denotes a habitual *mildness* of disposition on the part of the powerful, and is matter rather of good nature or policy than of principle. *Leniency* or *lenity* denotes an easy-going avoidance of severity; these words are more general and less magisterial than *clemency*; we should speak of the *leniency* of a parent, the *clemency* of a conqueror. Compare PITY.

Antonyms:

cruelty,
implacability,
punishment,
rigor,
sternness,

hardness,
harshness,
justice,
penalty,
revenge,
severity,
vengeance.

Prepositions:

The mercy *of* God *to* or *toward* sinners; have mercy *on* or *upon* one.

METER.

Synonyms:

euphony,
measure,
rhythm,
verse.

Euphony is agreeable linguistic sound, however produced; *meter*, *measure*, and *rhythm* denote agreeable succession of sounds in the utterance of connected words; *euphony* may apply to a single word or even a single syllable; the other words apply to lines, sentences, paragraphs, etc.; *rhythm* and *meter* may be produced by accent only, as in English, or by accent and quantity combined, as in Greek or Italian; *rhythm* or *measure* may apply either to prose or to poetry, or to music, dancing, etc.; *meter* is more precise than *rhythm*, applies only to poetry, and denotes a measured *rhythm* with regular divisions into *verses*, stanzas, strophes, etc. A *verse* is strictly a metrical line, but the word is often used as synonymous with stanza. *Verse*, in the general sense, denotes metrical writing without reference to the thought involved; as, prose and *verse*. Compare MELODY; POETRY.

---

[241]

MIND.

Synonyms:

brain,
consciousness,
disposition,
instinct,
intellect,
intelligence,
reason,
sense,
soul,
spirit,
thought,
understanding.

Mind, in a general sense, includes all the powers of sentient being apart from the physical factors in bodily faculties and activities; in a limited sense, *mind* is nearly synonymous with *intellect*, but includes *disposition*, or the tendency toward action, as appears in the phrase "to have a *mind* to work." As the seat of mental activity, *brain* (colloquially *brains*) is often used as a synonym for *mind*, *intellect*, *intelligence*. *Thought*, the act, process, or power of thinking, is often used to denote the thinking faculty, and especially the *reason*. The *instinct* of animals is now held by many philosophers to be of the same nature as the *intellect* of man, but inferior and limited; yet the apparent difference is very great.

An *instinct* is a propensity prior to experience and independent of instruction.

Paley *Natural Philosophy* ch. 18.

In this sense we speak of human *instincts*, thus denoting tendencies independent of reasoning or instruction. The *soul* includes the *intellect*, sensibilities, and will; beyond what is expressed by the word *mind*, the *soul* denotes especially the moral, the immortal nature; we say of a dead body, the *soul* (not the *mind*) has fled. *Spirit* is used especially in contradistinction from matter; it may in many cases be substituted for *soul*, but *soul* has commonly a fuller and more determinate meaning; we can conceive of *spirits* as having no moral nature; the fairies, elves, and brownies of mythology might be termed *spirits*, but not *souls*. In the figurative sense, *spirit* denotes animation, excitability, perhaps impatience; as, a lad of *spirit*; he sang with *spirit*; he replied with *spirit*. *Soul* denotes energy and depth of feeling, as when we speak of soulful eyes; or it may denote the very life of anything; as, "the hidden *soul* of harmony," Milton *L'Allegro* l. 144. *Sense* may be an antonym of *intellect*, as when we speak of the *sense* of hearing; but *sense* is used also as denoting clear mental action, good judgment, acumen; as, he is a man of *sense*, or, he showed good *sense*; *sense*, even in its material signification, must be reckoned among the activities of *mind*, tho dependent on bodily functions; the *mind*, not the eye, really sees; the *mind*, not the ear, really hears. *Consciousness* includes all that a sentient being perceives, knows, thinks, or feels, from whatever source arising and of whatever character, kind, or degree, whether with[242] or without distinct thinking, feeling, or willing; we speak of the *consciousness* of the brute, of the savage, or of the sage. The *intellect* is that assemblage of faculties which is concerned with knowledge, as distinguished from emotion and volition. *Understanding* is the Saxon word of the same general import, but is chiefly used of the reasoning powers; the *understanding*, which Sir Wm. Hamilton has called "the faculty of relations and comparisons," is distinguished by many philosophers from *reason* in that "*reason* is the faculty of the higher cognitions or a priori truth."

Antonyms:

body,brawn,brute force,material substance,matter.

MINUTE.

Synonyms:

circumstantial,
comminuted,
critical,
detailed,
diminutive,
exact,
fine,
little,
particular,
precise,
slender,
small,
tiny.

That is *minute* which is of exceedingly limited dimensions, as a grain of dust, or which attends to matters of exceedingly slight amount or apparent importance; as, a *minute* account; *minute* observation. That which is broken up into *minute* particles is said to be *comminuted*; things may be termed *fine* which would not be termed *comminuted*; as, *fine* sand; *fine* gravel; but, in using the adverb, we say a substance is finely *comminuted*, *comminuted* referring more to the process, *fine* to the result. An account extended to very *minute* particulars is *circumstantial*, *detailed*, *particular*; an examination so extended is *critical*, *exact*, *precise*. Compare FINE.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for LARGE.

MISFORTUNE.

Synonyms:

adversity,
affliction,
bereavement,
blow,
calamity,
chastening,
chastisement,
disappointment,
disaster,
distress,
failure,
hardship,
harm,
ill,
ill fortune,
ill luck,
misadventure,
mischance,
misery,
mishap,
reverse,
ruin,
sorrow,
stroke,
trial,
tribulation,
trouble,
visitation.

Misfortune is adverse fortune or any instance thereof, any untoward event, usually of lingering character or consequences, and such as the sufferer is not deemed directly responsible for; as, he[243] had the *misfortune* to be born blind. Any considerable *disappointment*, *failure*, or *misfortune*, as regards outward circumstances, as loss of fortune, position, and the like, when long continued or attended with enduring consequences, constitutes *adversity*. For the loss of friends by death we commonly use *affliction* or *bereavement*. *Calamity* and *disaster* are used of sudden and severe *misfortunes*, often overwhelming; *ill fortune* and *ill luck*, of lighter troubles and failures. We speak of the *misery* of the poor, the *hardships* of the soldier. *Affliction*, *chastening*, *trial*, and *tribulation* have all an especially religious bearing, suggesting some disciplinary purpose of God with beneficent design. *Affliction* may be keen and bitter, but brief; *tribulation* is long and wearing. We speak of an *affliction*, but rarely of a *tribulation*, since *tribulation* is viewed as a continuous process, which may endure for years or for a lifetime; but we speak of our daily *trials*. Compare CATASTROPHE.

Antonyms:

blessing,
boon,
comfort,
consolation,
good fortune,
good luck,
gratification,
happiness,
joy,
pleasure,
prosperity,
relief,
success,
triumph.

MOB.

Synonyms:

canaille,
crowd,
dregs of the people,
lower classes,
masses,
populace,
rabble,
the vulgar.

The *populace* are poor and ignorant, but may be law-abiding; a *mob* is disorderly and lawless, but may be rich and influential. The *rabble* is despicable, worthless, purposeless; a *mob* may have effective desperate purpose. A *crowd* may be drawn by mere curiosity; some strong, pervading excitement is needed to make it a *mob*. Compare PEOPLE.

MODEL.

Synonyms:

archetype,
copy,
design,
example,
facsimile,
image,
imitation,
mold,
original,
pattern,
prototype,
representation,
standard,
type.

A *pattern* is always, in modern use, that which is to be copied; a *model* may be either the thing to be copied or the *copy* that has been made from it; as, the *models* in the Patent Office. A *pattern* is commonly superficial; a *model* is usually in relief. A *pattern* must be closely followed in its minutest particulars by a[244] faithful copyist; a *model* may allow a great degree of freedom. A sculptor may idealize his living *model*; his workmen must exactly *copy* in marble or metal the *model* he has made in clay. Compare EXAMPLE; IDEA; IDEAL.

MODESTY.

Synonyms:

backwardness,
bashfulness,
coldness,
constraint,
coyness,
diffidence,
reserve,
shyness,
timidity,
unobtrusiveness.

Bashfulness is a shrinking from notice without assignable reason. *Coyness* is a half encouragement, half avoidance of offered attention, and may be real or affected. *Diffidence* is self-distrust; *modesty,* a humble estimate of oneself in comparison with others, or with the demands of some undertaking. *Modesty* has also the specific meaning of a sensitive shrinking from anything indelicate. *Shyness* is a tendency to shrink from observation; *timidity*, a distinct fear of criticism, error, or failure. *Reserve* is the holding oneself aloof from others, or holding back one's feelings from expression, or one's affairs from communication to others. *Reserve* may be the retreat of *shyness*, or, on the other hand, the contemptuous withdrawal of pride and haughtiness. Compare ABASH; PRIDE; TACITURN.

Antonyms:

abandon,
arrogance,
assumption,
assurance,
boldness,
conceit,
confidence,
egotism,
forwardness,
frankness,
freedom,
haughtiness,
impudence,
indiscretion,
loquaciousness,
loquacity,
pertness,
sauciness,
self-conceit,
self-sufficiency,
sociability.

MONEY.

Synonyms:

bills,
bullion,
capital,
cash,
coin,
currency,
funds,
gold,
notes,
property,
silver,
specie.

Money is the authorized medium of exchange; coined *money* is called *coin* or *specie*. What are termed in England bank-*notes* are in the United States commonly called *bills*; as, a five-dollar *bill*. The *notes* of responsible men are readily transferable in commercial circles, but they are not *money*; as, the stock was sold for $500 in *money* and the balance in merchantable paper. *Cash* is *specie* or *money* in hand, or paid in hand; as, the *cash* account; the *cash* price. In the legal sense, *property* is not *money*, and *money* is not *property*; for *property* is that which has inherent value, while *money*, as such, has but representative value, and[245] may or may not have intrinsic value. *Bullion* is either *gold* or *silver* uncoined, or the coined metal considered without reference to its coinage, but simply as merchandise, when its value as *bullion* may be very different from its value as *money*. The word *capital* is used chiefly of accumulated *property* or *money* invested in productive enterprises or available for such investment.

MOROSE.

Synonyms:

acrimonious,
churlish,
crabbed,
crusty,
dogged,
gloomy,
gruff,
ill-humored,
ill-natured,
severe,
snappish,
sour,
splenetic,
sulky,
sullen,
surly.

The *sullen* and *sulky* are discontented and resentful in regard to that against which they are too proud to protest, or consider all protest vain; *sullen* denotes more of pride, *sulky* more of resentful obstinacy. The *morose* are bitterly dissatisfied with the world in general, and disposed to vent their ill nature upon others. The *sullen* and *sulky* are for the most part silent; the *morose* growl out bitter speeches. A *surly* person is in a state of latent anger, resenting approach as intrusion, and ready to take offense at anything; thus we speak of a *surly* dog. *Sullen* and *sulky* moods may be transitory; one who is *morose* or *surly* is commonly so by disposition or habit.

Antonyms:

amiable,
benignant,
bland,
complaisant,
friendly,
genial,
gentle,
good-natured,
indulgent,
kind,
loving,
mild,
pleasant,
sympathetic,
tender.

MOTION.

Synonyms:

act,
action,
change,
move,
movement,
passage,
process,
transit,
transition.

Motion is *change* of place or position in space; *transition* is a passing from one point or position in space to another. *Motion* may be either abstract or concrete, more frequently the former; *movement* is always concrete, that is, considered in connection with the thing that moves or is moved; thus, we speak of the *movements* of the planets, but of the laws of planetary *motion*; of military *movements*, but of perpetual *motion*. *Move* is used chiefly of contests or competition, as in chess or politics; as, it is your *move*; a shrewd *move* of the opposition. *Action* is a more comprehensive word than *motion*. We now rarely speak of mental[246] or spiritual *motions*, but rather of mental or spiritual *acts* or *processes*, or of the laws of mental *action*, but a formal proposal of *action* in a deliberative assembly is termed a *motion*. Compare ACT.

Antonyms:

immobility,
quiescence,
quiet,
repose,
rest,
stillness.

MOURN.

Synonyms:

bemoan,
bewail,
deplore,
grieve,
lament,
regret,
rue,
sorrow.

To *mourn* is to feel or express sadness or distress because of some loss, affliction, or misfortune; *mourning* is thought of as prolonged, *grief* or *regret* may be transient. One may *grieve* or *mourn*, *regret*, *rue*, or *sorrow* without a sound; he *bemoans* with suppressed and often inarticulate sounds of grief; he *bewails* with passionate utterance, whether of inarticulate cries or of spoken words. He *laments* in plaintive or pathetic words, as the prophet Jeremiah in his "Lamentations." One *deplores* with settled sorrow which may or may not find relief in words. One is made to *rue* an act by some misfortune resulting, or by some penalty or vengeance inflicted because of it. One *regrets* a slight misfortune or a hasty word; he *sorrows* over the death of a friend.

Antonyms:

be joyful,exult,joy,make merry,rejoice,triumph.

MUTUAL.

Synonyms:

common,correlative,interchangeable,joint,reciprocal.

That is *common* to which two or more persons have the same or equal claims, or in which they have equal interest or participation; in the strictest sense, that is *mutual* (Latin *mutare*, to change) which is freely interchanged; that is *reciprocal* in respect to which one act or movement is met by a corresponding act or movement in return; we speak of our *common* country, *mutual* affection, *reciprocal* obligations, the *reciprocal* action of cause and effect, where the effect becomes in turn a cause. Many good writers hold it incorrect to say "a *mutual* friend," and insist that "a *common* friend" would be more accurate; but "*common* friend" is practically never used, because of the disagreeable suggestion that attaches to *common*, of ordinary or inferior. "*Mutual* friend" has high literary authority (of Burke, Scott, Dickens, and others), and a considerable usage of good society in its favor,[247] the expression being quite naturally derived from the thoroughly correct phrase *mutual* friendship.

Antonyms:

detached,
disconnected,
dissociated,
distinct,
disunited,
separate,
separated,
severed,
sundered,
unconnected,
unreciprocated,
unrequited,
unshared.

MYSTERIOUS.

Synonyms:

abstruse,
cabalistic,
dark,
enigmatical,
hidden,
incomprehensible,
inexplicable,
inscrutable,
mystic,
mystical,
obscure,
occult,
recondite,
secret,
transcendental,
unfathomable,
unfathomed,
unknown.

That is *mysterious* in the true sense which is beyond human comprehension, as the decrees of God or the origin of life. That is *mystic* or *mystical* which has associated with it some *hidden* or *recondite* meaning, especially of a religious kind; as, the *mystic* Babylon of the Apocalypse. That is *dark* which we can not personally see through, especially if sadly perplexing; as, a *dark* providence. That is *secret* which is intentionally *hidden*. Compare DARK.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for CLEAR.

NAME.

Synonyms:

agnomen,
appellation,
cognomen,
denomination,
designation,
epithet,
prenomen,
style,
surname,
title.

Name in the most general sense, signifying the word by which a person or thing is called or known, includes all other words of this group; in this sense every noun is a *name*; in the more limited sense a *name* is personal, an *appellation* is descriptive, a *title* is official. In the phrase William the Conqueror, King of England, William is the man's *name*, which belongs to him personally, independently of any rank or achievement; Conqueror is the *appellation* which he won by his acquisition of England; King is the *title* denoting his royal rank. An *epithet* (Gr. *epitheton*, something added, from *epi*, on, and *tithemi*, put) is something placed upon a person or thing; the *epithet* does not strictly belong to an object like a *name*, but is given to mark some assumed characteristic, good or bad; an *epithet* is always an adjective, or a word or phrase used as an adjective, and is properly used to emphasize a characteristic but not to add information, as in the[248] phrase "the *sounding* sea;" the idea that an *epithet* is always opprobrious, and that any word used opprobriously is an *epithet* is a popular error. *Designation* may be used much in the sense of *appellation*, but is more distinctive or specific in meaning; a *designation* properly so called rests upon some inherent quality, while an *appellation* may be fanciful. Among the Romans the *prenomen* was the individual part of a man's *name*, the "nomen" designated the gens to which he belonged, the *cognomen* showed his family and was borne by all patricians, and the *agnomen* was added to refer to his achievements or character. When scientists *name* an animal or a plant, they give it a binary or binomial technical *name* comprising a generic and a specific *appellation*. In modern use, a personal *name*, as John or Mary, is given in infancy, and is often called the given *name* or Christian *name*, or simply the first *name* (rarely the *prenomen*); the *cognomen* or *surname* is the family *name* which belongs to one by right of birth or marriage. *Style* is the legal *designation* by which a person or house is known in official or business relations; as, the *name* and *style* of Baring Brothers. The term *denomination* is applied to a separate religious organization, without the opprobrious meaning attaching to the word "sect;" also, to designate any class of like objects collectively, especially money or notes of a certain value; as, the sum was in notes of the *denomination* of one thousand dollars. Compare TERM.

NATIVE.

Synonyms:

indigenous,innate,natal,natural,original.

Native denotes that which belongs to one by birth; *natal* that which pertains to the event of birth; *natural* denotes that which rests upon inherent qualities of character or being. We speak of one's *native* country, or of his *natal* day; of *natural* ability, *native* genius. Compare INHERENT; PRIMEVAL; RADICAL.

Antonyms:

acquired,alien,artificial,assumed,foreign,unnatural.

NAUTICAL.

Synonyms:

marine,maritime,naval,ocean,oceanic.

Marine (L. *mare*, sea) signifies belonging to the ocean, *maritime*, a secondary derivative from the same root, bordering on or[249] connected with the *ocean*; as, *marine* products; *marine* animals; *maritime* nations; *maritime* laws. *Nautical* (Gr. *nautes*, a sailor) denotes primarily anything connected with sailors, and hence with ships or navigation; *naval* (L. *navis*, Gr. *naus*, a ship) refers to the armed force of a nation on the sea, and, by extension, to similar forces on lakes and rivers; as, a *naval* force; a *nautical* almanac. *Ocean*, used adjectively, is applied to that which belongs to or is part of the *ocean*; *oceanic* may be used in the same sense, but is especially applied to that which borders on (or upon) or is connected with, or which is similar to or suggestive of an *ocean*; we speak of *ocean* currents, *oceanic* islands, or, perhaps, of an *oceanic* intellect.

NEAT.

Synonyms:

clean,cleanly,dapper,natty,nice,orderly,prim,spruce,tidy,trim.

That which is *clean* is simply free from soil or defilement of any kind. Things are *orderly* when in due relation to other things; a room or desk is *orderly* when every article is in place; a person is *orderly* who habitually keeps things so. *Tidy* denotes that which conforms to propriety in general; an unlaced shoe may be perfectly *clean*, but is not *tidy*. *Neat* refers to that which is *clean* and *tidy* with nothing superfluous, conspicuous, or showy, as when we speak of plain but *neat* attire; the same idea of freedom from the superfluous appears in the phrases "a *neat* speech," "a *neat* turn," "a *neat* reply," etc. A *clean* cut has no ragged edges; a *neat* stroke just does what is intended. *Nice* is stronger than *neat*, implying value and beauty; a *cheap*, coarse dress may be perfectly *neat*, but would not be termed *nice*. *Spruce* is applied to the show and affectation of neatness with a touch of smartness, and is always a term of mild contempt; as, a *spruce* serving man. *Trim* denotes a certain shapely and elegant firmness, often with suppleness and grace; as, a *trim* suit; a *trim* figure. *Prim* applies to a precise, formal, affected nicety. *Dapper* is *spruce* with the suggestion of smallness and slightness; *natty*, a diminutive of *neat*, suggests minute elegance, with a tendency toward the exquisite; as, a *dapper* little fellow in a *natty* business suit.

Antonyms:

dirty,
disorderly,
dowdy,
negligent,
rough,
rude,
slouchy,
slovenly,
soiled,
uncared for,
unkempt,
untidy.

---

[250]

NECESSARY.

Synonyms:

essential,
indispensable,
inevitable,
infallible,
needed,
needful,
required,
requisite,
unavoidable,
undeniable.

That is *necessary* which must exist, occur, or be true; which in the nature of things can not be otherwise. That which is *essential* belongs to the essence of a thing, so that the thing can not exist in its completeness without it; that which is *indispensable* may be only an adjunct, but it is one that can not be spared; vigorous health is *essential* to an arctic explorer; warm clothing is *indispensable*. That which is *requisite* (or *required*) is so in the judgment of the person requiring it, but may not be so absolutely; thus, the *requisite* is more a matter of personal feeling than the *indispensable*. *Inevitable* (L. *in*, not, and *evito*, shun) is primarily the exact equivalent of the Saxon *unavoidable*; both words are applied to things which some at least would escape or prevent, while that which is *necessary* may meet with no objection; food is *necessary*, death is *inevitable*; a *necessary* conclusion satisfies a thinker; an *inevitable* conclusion silences opposition. An *infallible* proof is one that necessarily leads the mind to a sound conclusion. *Needed* and *needful* are more concrete than *necessary*, and respect an end to be attained; we speak of a *necessary* inference; *necessary* food is what one can not live without, while *needful* food is that without which he can not enjoy comfort, health, and strength.

Antonyms:

casual,
contingent,
needless,
non-essential,
optional,
unnecessary,
useless,
worthless.

Prepositions:

Necessary *to* a sequence or a total; *for* or *to* a result or a person; unity is necessary *to* (to constitute) completeness; decision is necessary *for* command, or *for* a commander.

NECESSITY.

Synonyms:

compulsion,
destiny,
emergency,
essential,
exigency,
extremity,
fatality,
fate,
indispensability,
indispensableness,
need,
requirement,
requisite,
sine qua non,
unavoidableness,
urgency,
want.

Necessity is the quality of being necessary, or the quality of that which can not but be, become, or be true, or be accepted as true. *Need* and *want* always imply a lack; *necessity* may be used[251] in this sense, but in the higher philosophical sense *necessity* simply denotes the exclusion of any alternative either in thought or fact; righteousness is a *necessity* (not a *need*) of the divine nature. *Need* suggests the possibility of supplying the deficiency which *want* expresses; to speak of a person's *want* of decision merely points out a weakness in his character; to say that he has *need* of decision implies that he can exercise or attain it. As applied to a deficiency, *necessity* is more imperative than *need*; a weary person is in *need* of rest; when rest becomes a *necessity* he has no choice but to stop work. An *essential* is something, as a quality, or element, that belongs to the essence of something else so as to be inseparable from it in its normal condition, or in any complete idea or statement of it. Compare NECESSARY; PREDESTINATION.

Antonyms:

choice,
contingency,
doubt,
doubtfulness,
dubiousness,
fortuity,
freedom,
option,
possibility,
uncertainty.

Prepositions:

The necessity *of* surrender; a necessity *for* action; this is a necessity *to* me.

NEGLECT.

Synonyms:

carelessness,
default,
heedlessness,
inadvertence,
negligence,
omission,
scorn,
slackness,

disregard,
disrespect,
failure,
inattention,
indifference,
neglectfulness,
oversight,
remissness,
slight,
thoughtlessness.

Neglect (L. *nec*, not, and *lego*, gather) is the failing to take such care, show such attention, pay such courtesy, etc., as may be rightfully or reasonably expected. *Negligence*, which is the same in origin, may be used in almost the same sense, but with a slighter force, as when Whittier speaks of "the *negligence* which friendship loves;" but *negligence* is often used to denote the quality or trait of character of which the act is a manifestation, or to denote the habit of neglecting that which ought to be done. *Neglect* is transitive, *negligence* is intransitive; we speak of *neglect* of his books, friends, or duties, in which cases we could not use *negligence*; *negligence* in dress implies want of care as to its arrangement, tidiness, etc.; *neglect* of one's garments would imply leaving them exposed to defacement or injury, as by dust, moths, etc. *Neglect* has a passive sense which *negligence* has not; the child was suffering from *neglect*, *i. e.*, from being neglected by others; the child was suffering from *negligence* would imply that he himself[252] was neglectful. The distinction sometimes made that *neglect* denotes the act, and *negligence* the habit, is but partially true; one may be guilty of habitual *neglect* of duty; the wife may suffer from her husband's constant *neglect*, while the *negligence* which causes a railroad accident may be that of a moment, and on the part of one ordinarily careful and attentive; in such cases the law provides punishment for criminal *negligence*.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for CARE.

Prepositions:

Neglect *of* duty, *of* the child *by* the parent; there was neglect *on the part of* the teacher.

NEW.

Synonyms:

fresh,
juvenile,
late,
modern,
new-fangled,
new-fashioned,
new-made,
novel,
recent,
upstart,
young,
youthful.

That which is *new* has lately come into existence, possession, or use; a *new* house is just built, or in a more general sense is one that has just come into the possession of the present owner or occupant. *Modern* denotes that which has begun to exist in the present age, and is still existing; *recent* denotes that which has come into existence within a comparatively brief period, and may or may not be existing still. *Modern* history pertains to any period since the middle ages; *modern* literature, *modern* architecture, etc., are not strikingly remote from the styles and types prevalent to-day. That which is *late* is somewhat removed from the present, but not far enough to be called *old*. That which is *recent* is not quite so sharply distinguished from the past as that which is *new*; *recent* publications range over a longer time than *new* books. That which is *novel* is either absolutely or relatively unprecedented in kind; a *novel* contrivance is one that has never before been known; a *novel* experience is one that has never before occurred to the same person; that which is *new* may be of a familiar or even of an ancient sort, as a *new* copy of an old book. *Young* and *youthful* are applied to that which has life; that which is *young* is possessed of a comparatively *new* existence as a living thing, possessing actual youth; that which is *youthful* manifests the attributes of youth. (Compare YOUTHFUL.) *Fresh* applies to that which has the characteristics of newness or youth, while capable of deterioration by lapse of time; that which[253] is unworn, unspoiled, or unfaded; as, a *fresh* countenance, *fresh* eggs, *fresh* flowers. *New* is opposed to *old*, *modern* to *ancient*, *recent* to *remote*, *young* to *old*, *aged*, etc.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for OLD.

NIMBLE.

Synonyms:

active,alert, bustling,prompt,speedy, spry,
agile, brisk,lively, quick, sprightly,swift.

Nimble refers to lightness, freedom, and quickness of motion within a somewhat narrow range, with readiness to turn suddenly to any point; *swift* applies commonly to more sustained motion over greater distances; a pickpocket is *nimble*-fingered, a dancer *nimble*-footed; an arrow, a race-horse, or an ocean steamer is *swift*; Shakespeare's "*nimble* lightnings" is said of the visual appearance in sudden zigzag flash across the sky. Figuratively, we speak of *nimble* wit, *swift* intelligence, *swift* destruction. *Alert*, which is strictly a synonym for *ready*, comes sometimes near the meaning of *nimble* or *quick*, from the fact that the ready, wide-awake person is likely to be *lively*, *quick*, *speedy*. Compare ACTIVE; ALERT.

Antonyms:

clumsy,dilatory,dull,heavy,inactive,inert,slow,sluggish,unready.

NORMAL.

Synonyms:

common,natural,ordinary,regular,typical,usual.

That which is *natural* is according to nature; that which is *normal* is according to the standard or rule which is observed or claimed to prevail in nature; a deformity may be *natural*, symmetry is *normal*; the *normal* color of the crow is black, while the *normal* color of the sparrow is gray, but one is as *natural* as the other. *Typical* refers to such an assemblage of qualities as makes the specimen, genus, etc., a type of some more comprehensive group, while *normal* is more commonly applied to the parts of a single object; the specimen was *typical*; color, size, and other characteristics, *normal*. The *regular* is etymologically that which is according to rule, hence that which is steady and constant, as opposed to that which is fitful and changeable; the *normal* action of the heart is *regular*. That which is *common* is shared by a[254] great number of persons or things; disease is *common*, a *normal* state of health is rare. Compare GENERAL; USUAL.

Antonyms:

abnormal, irregular, peculiar,singular, unprecedented,
exceptional,monstrous,rare, uncommon,unusual.

NOTWITHSTANDING, conj.

Synonyms:

altho(ugh),howbeit, nevertheless,tho(ugh),
but, however,still, yet.

However simply waives discussion, and (like the archaic *howbeit*) says "be that as it may, this is true;" *nevertheless* concedes the truth of what precedes, but claims that what follows is none the less true; *notwithstanding* marshals the two statements face to face, admits the one and its seeming contradiction to the other, while insisting that it can not, after all, withstand the other; as, *notwithstanding* the force of the enemy is superior, we shall conquer. *Yet* and *still* are weaker than *notwithstanding*, while stronger than *but*. *Tho* and *altho* make as little as possible of the concession, dropping it, as it were, incidentally; as, "*tho* we are guilty, thou art good;" to say "we are guilty, *but* thou art good," would make the concession of guilt more emphatic. Compare BUT; YET.

NOTWITHSTANDING, prep.

Synonyms:

despite,in spite of.

Notwithstanding simply states that circumstances shall not be or have not been allowed to withstand; *despite* and *in spite of* refer primarily to personal and perhaps spiteful opposition; as, he failed *notwithstanding* his good intentions; or, he persevered *in spite of* the most bitter hostility. When *despite* and *in spite of* are applied to inanimate things, it is with something of personification; "*in spite of* the storm" is said as if the storm had a hostile purpose to oppose the undertaking.

OATH.

Synonyms:

adjuration,
affidavit,
anathema,
ban,
blaspheming,
blasphemy,
curse,
cursing,
denunciation,
execration,
imprecation,
malediction,
profane swearing,
profanity,
reprobation,
swearing,
sworn statement.
vow.

In the highest sense, as in a court of justice, "an *oath* is a reverent[255] appeal to God in corroboration of what one says," Abbott *Law Dict.*; an *affidavit* is a *sworn statement* made in writing in the presence of a competent officer; an *adjuration* is a solemn appeal to a person in the name of God to speak the truth. An *oath* is made to man in the name of God; a *vow*, to God without the intervention, often without the knowledge, of man. In the lower sense, an *oath* may be mere *blasphemy* or *profane swearing*. *Anathema*, *curse*, *execration*, and *imprecation* are modes of invoking vengeance or retribution from a superhuman power upon the person against whom they are uttered. *Anathema* is a solemn ecclesiastical condemnation of a person or of a proposition. *Curse* may be just and authoritative; as, the *curse* of God; or, it may be wanton and powerless: "so the *curse* causeless shall not come," *Prov.* xxvi, 2. *Execration* expresses most of personal bitterness and hatred; *imprecation* refers especially to the coming of the desired evil upon the person against whom it is uttered. *Malediction* is a general wish of evil, a less usual but very expressive word. Compare TESTIMONY.

Antonyms:

benediction,benison,blessing.

OBSCURE.

Synonyms:

abstruse,
ambiguous,
cloudy,
complex,
complicated,
dark,
darksome,
deep,
dense,
difficult,
dim,
doubtful,
dusky,
enigmatical,
hidden,
incomprehensible,
indistinct,
intricate,
involved,
muddy,
mysterious,
profound,
turbid,
unintelligible.

That is *obscure* which the eye or the mind can not clearly discern or see through, whether because of its own want of transparency, its depth or intricacy, or because of mere defect of light. That which is *complicated* is likely to be *obscure*, but that may be *obscure* which is not at all *complicated* and scarcely *complex*, as a *muddy* pool. In that which is *abstruse* (L. *abs*, from, and *trudo*, push) as if removed from the usual course of thought or out of the way of apprehension or discovery, the thought is remote, *hidden*; in that which is *obscure* there may be nothing to hide; it is hard to see to the bottom of the *profound*, because of its depth, but the most shallow turbidness is *obscure*. Compare COMPLEX; DARK; DIFFICULT; MYSTERIOUS.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for CLEAR.

---

[256]

OBSOLETE.

Synonyms:

ancient,
antiquated,
archaic,
disused,
obsolescent,
old,
out of date,
rare.

Some of the *oldest* or most *ancient* words are not *obsolete*, as father, mother, etc. A word is *obsolete* which has quite gone out of reputable use; a word is *archaic* which is falling out of reputable use, or, on the other hand, having been *obsolete*, is taken up tentatively by writers or speakers of influence, so that it may perhaps regain its position as a living word; a word is *rare* if there are few present instances of its reputable use. Compare OLD.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for NEW.

OBSTINATE.

Synonyms:

contumacious,
decided,
determined,
dogged,
firm,
fixed,
headstrong,
heady,
immovable,
indomitable,
inflexible,
intractable,
mulish,
obdurate,
opinionated,
persistent,
pertinacious,
refractory,
resolute,
resolved,
stubborn,
unconquerable,
unflinching,
unyielding.

The *headstrong* person is not to be stopped in his own course of action, while the *obstinate* and *stubborn* is not to be driven to another's way. The *headstrong* act; the *obstinate* and *stubborn* may simply refuse to stir. The most amiable person may be *obstinate* on some one point; the *stubborn* person is for the most part habitually so; we speak of *obstinate* determination, *stubborn* resistance. *Stubborn* is the term most frequently applied to the lower animals and inanimate things. *Refractory* implies more activity of resistance; the *stubborn* horse balks; the *refractory* animal plunges, rears, and kicks; metals that resist ordinary processes of reduction are termed *refractory*. One is *obdurate* who adheres to his purpose in spite of appeals that would move any tender-hearted or right-minded person. *Contumacious* refers to a proud and insolent defiance of authority, as of the summons of a court. *Pertinacious* demand is contrasted with *obstinate* refusal. The *unyielding* conduct which we approve we call *decided*, *firm*, *inflexible*, *resolute*; that which we condemn we are apt to term *headstrong*, *obstinate*, *stubborn*. Compare PERVERSE.

Antonyms:

amenable,
complaisant,
compliant,
docile,
dutiful,
gentle,
irresolute,
obedient,
pliable,
pliant,
submissive,
teachable,
tractable,
undecided,
wavering,
yielding.

---

[257]

OBSTRUCT.

Synonyms:

arrest,
bar,
barricade,
check,
choke,
clog,
embarrass,
hinder,
impede,
interrupt,
oppose,
retard,
stay,
stop.

To *obstruct* is literally to build up against; the road is *obstructed* by fallen trees; the passage of liquid through a tube is *obstructed* by solid deposits. We may *hinder* one's advance by following and clinging to him; we *obstruct* his course by standing in his way or putting a barrier across his path. Anything that makes one's progress slower, whether from within or from without, *impedes*; an obstruction is always from without. To *arrest* is to cause to stop suddenly; *obstructing* the way may have the effect of *arresting* progress. Compare HINDER; IMPEDIMENT.

Antonyms:

accelerate,
advance,
aid,
clear,
facilitate,
forward,
free,
further,
open,
pave the way for,
promote.

OLD.

Synonyms:

aged,
ancient,
antiquated,
antique,
decrepit,
elderly,
gray,
hoary,
immemorial,
olden,
patriarchal,
remote,
senile,
time-honored,
time-worn,
venerable.

That is termed *old* which has existed long, or which existed long ago. *Ancient*, from the Latin, through the French, is the more stately, *old*, from the Saxon, the more familiar word. Familiarity, on one side, is near to contempt; thus we say, an *old* coat, an *old* hat. On the other hand, familiarity is akin to tenderness, and thus *old* is a word of endearment; as, "the *old* homestead," the "*old* oaken bucket." "Tell me the *old, old* story!" has been sung feelingly by millions; "tell me that *ancient* story" would remove it out of all touch of human sympathy. *Olden* is a statelier form of *old*, and is applied almost exclusively to time, not to places, buildings, persons, etc. As regards periods of time, the familiar are also the near; thus, the *old* times are not too far away for familiar thought and reference; the *olden* times are more remote, *ancient* times still further removed. *Gray*, *hoary*, and *moldering* refer to outward and visible tokens of age. *Aged* applies chiefly to long-extended human life. *Decrepit*, *gray*, and *hoary* refer to the effects of age on the body exclusively; *senile* upon the mind also; as, a *decrepit* frame, *senile* garrulousness. One may be *aged* and neither *decrepit* nor *senile*. *Elderly* is applied to those who have passed middle life, but scarcely reached[258] *old* age. *Remote* (L. *re*, back or away, and *moveo*, move), primarily refers to space, but is extended to that which is far off in time; as, at some *remote* period. *Venerable* expresses the involuntary reverence that we yield to the majestic and long-enduring, whether in the material world or in human life and character. Compare ANTIQUE; OBSOLETE; PRIMEVAL.

Antonyms:

Compare synonyms for NEW; YOUTHFUL.

OPERATION.

Synonyms:

action,
agency,
effect,
execution,
force,
influence,
performance,
procedure,
result.

Operation is *action* considered with reference to the thing acted upon, and may apply to the *action* of an intelligent agent or of a material substance or *force*; as, the *operation* of a medicine. *Performance* and *execution* denote intelligent *action*, considered with reference to the actor or to that which he accomplishes; *performance* accomplishing the will of the actor, *execution* often the will of another; we speak of the *performance* of a duty, the *execution* of a sentence. Compare ACT.

Antonyms:

failure,
inaction,
ineffectiveness,
inefficiency,
inutility,
powerlessness,
uselessness.

ORDER.

Synonyms:

command,
direction,
injunction,
instruction,
mandate,
prohibition,
requirement.

Instruction implies superiority of knowledge, *direction* of authority on the part of the giver; a teacher gives *instructions* to his pupils, an employer gives *directions* to his workmen. *Order* is still more authoritative than *direction*; soldiers, sailors, and railroad employees have simply to obey the *orders* of their superiors, without explanation or question; an *order* in the commercial sense has the authority of the money which the one *ordering* the goods pays or is to pay. *Command* is a loftier word, as well as highly authoritative, less frequent in common life; we speak of the *commands* of God, or sometimes, by polite hyperbole, ask of a friend, "Have you any *commands* for me?" A *requirement* is imperative, but not always formal, nor made by a personal agent; it may be in the nature of things; as, the *requirements* of the position.[259] *Prohibition* is wholly negative; it is a *command* not to do; *injunction* is now oftenest so used, especially as the *requirement* by legal authority that certain action be suspended or refrained from, pending final legal decision. Compare ARRAY; CLASS; LAW; PROHIBIT; SYSTEM.

Antonyms:

allowance,consent,leave,liberty,license,permission,permit.

OSTENTATION.

Synonyms:

boast,
boasting,
display,
flourish,
pageant,
pageantry,
parade,
pomp,
pomposity,
pompousness,
show,
vaunt,
vaunting.

Ostentation is an ambitious showing forth of whatever is thought adapted to win admiration or praise; *ostentation* may be without words; as, the *ostentation* of wealth in fine residences, rich clothing, costly equipage, or the like; when in words, *ostentation* is rather in manner than in direct statement; as, the *ostentation* of learning. *Boasting* is in direct statement, and is louder and more vulgar than *ostentation*. There may be great *display* or *show* with little substance; *ostentation* suggests something substantial to be shown. *Pageant*, *pageantry*, *parade*, and *pomp* refer principally to affairs of arms or state; as, a royal *pageant*; a military *parade*. *Pomp* is some material demonstration of wealth and power, as in grand and stately ceremonial, rich furnishings, processions, etc., considered as worthy of the person or occasion in whose behalf it is manifested; *pomp* is the noble side of that which as *ostentation* is considered as arrogant and vain. *Pageant* and *pageantry* are inferior to *pomp*, denoting spectacular *display* designed to impress the public mind, and since the multitude is largely ignorant and thoughtless, the words *pageant* and *pageantry* have a suggestion of the transient and unsubstantial. *Parade* (L. *paro*, prepare) is an exhibition as of troops in camp going through the evolutions that are to be used in battle, and suggests a lack of earnestness and direct or immediate occasion or demand; hence, in the more general sense, a *parade* is an uncalled for exhibition, and so used is a more disparaging word than *ostentation*; *ostentation* may spring merely from undue self-gratulation, *parade* implies a desire to impress others with a sense of one's abilities or resources, and is always offensive and[260] somewhat contemptible; as, a *parade* of wealth or learning. *Pomposity* and *pompousness* are the affectation of *pomp*.

Antonyms:

diffidence,
modesty,
quietness,
reserve,
retirement,
shrinking,
timidity,
unobtrusiveness.

OUGHT.

Synonym:

should.

One *ought* to do that which he is under moral obligation or in duty bound to do. *Ought* is the stronger word, holding most closely to the sense of moral obligation, or sometimes of imperative logical necessity; *should* may have the sense of moral obligation or may apply merely to propriety or expediency, as in the proverb, "The liar *should* have a good memory," *i. e.*, he will need it. *Ought* is sometimes used of abstractions or inanimate things as indicating what the mind deems to be imperative or logically necessary in view of all the conditions; as, these goods *ought* to go into that space; these arguments *ought* to convince him; *should* in such connections would be correct, but less emphatic. Compare DUTY.

OVERSIGHT.

Synonyms:

care,
charge,
command,
control,
direction,
inspection,
management,
superintendence,
supervision,
surveillance,
watch,
watchfulness.

A person may look over a matter in order to survey it carefully in its entirety, or he may look over it with no attention to the thing itself because his gaze and thought are concentrated on something beyond; *oversight* has thus two contrasted senses, in the latter sense denoting inadvertent error or omission, and in the former denoting watchful *supervision*, commonly implying constant personal presence; *superintendence* requires only so much of presence or communication as to know that the superintendent's wishes are carried out; the superintendent of a railroad will personally oversee very few of its operations; the railroad company has supreme *direction* of all its affairs without *superintendence* or *oversight*. *Control* is used chiefly with reference to restraint or the power of restraint; a good horseman has a restless horse under perfect *control*; there is no high character without self-*control*. *Surveillance* is an invidious term signifying watching with something of suspicion. Compare CARE; NEGLECT.

---

[261]

PAIN.

Synonyms:

ache,
agony,
anguish,
distress,
pang,
paroxysm,
suffering,
throe,
torment,
torture,
twinge,
wo(e).

Pain is the most general term of this group, including all the others; *pain* is a disturbing sensation from which nature revolts, resulting from some injurious external interference (as from a wound, a bruise, a harsh word, etc.), or from some lack of what one needs, craves, or cherishes (as, the *pain* of hunger or bereavement), or from some abnormal action of bodily or mental functions (as, the *pains* of disease, envy, or discontent). *Suffering* is one of the severer forms of *pain*. The prick of a needle causes *pain*, but we should scarcely speak of it as *suffering*. *Distress* is too strong a word for little hurts, too feeble for the intensest *suffering*, but commonly applied to some continuous or prolonged trouble or need; as, the *distress* of a shipwrecked crew, or of a destitute family. *Ache* is lingering *pain*, more or less severe; *pang*, a *pain* short, sharp, intense, and perhaps repeated. We speak of the *pangs* of hunger or of remorse. *Throe* is a violent and thrilling *pain*. *Paroxysm* applies to an alternately recurring and receding *pain*, which comes as it were in waves; the *paroxysm* is the rising of the wave. *Torment* and *torture* are intense and terrible *sufferings*. *Agony* and *anguish* express the utmost *pain* or *suffering* of body or mind. *Agony* of body is that with which the system struggles; *anguish* that by which it is crushed.

Antonyms:

comfort,delight,ease,enjoyment,peace,rapture,relief,solace.

PALLIATE.

Synonyms:

apologize for,
cloak,
conceal,
cover,
extenuate,
gloss over,
hide,
mitigate,
screen,
veil.

Cloak, from the French, and *palliate*, from the Latin, are the same in original signification, but have diverged in meaning; a *cloak* may be used to *hide* completely the person or some object carried about the person, or it may but partly *veil* the figure, making the outlines less distinct; *cloak* is used in the former, *palliate*, in the latter sense; to *cloak* a sin is to attempt to *hide* it from discovery; to *palliate* it is to attempt to *hide* some part of its blameworthiness. "When we *palliate* our own or others' faults we do not seek to *cloke* them altogether, but only to *extenuate* the guilt of them in part." Trench *Study of Words* lect. vi, p.[262] 266. Either to *palliate* or to *extenuate* is to admit the fault; but to *extenuate* is rather to *apologize* for the offender, while to *palliate* is to disguise the fault; hence, we speak of *extenuating* but not of *palliating* circumstances, since circumstances can not change the inherent wrong of an act, tho they may lessen the blameworthiness of him who does it; *palliating* a bad thing by giving it a mild name does not make it less evil. In reference to diseases, to *palliate* is really to diminish their violence, or partly to relieve the sufferer. Compare ALLEVIATE; HIDE.

PARDON, v.

Synonyms:

absolve,
acquit,
condone,
excuse,
forgive,
overlook,
pass by,
pass over,
remit.

To *pardon* is to let pass, as a fault or sin, without resentment, blame, or punishment. *Forgive* has reference to feelings, *pardon* to consequences; hence, the executive may *pardon*, but has nothing to do officially with *forgiving*. Personal injury may be *forgiven* by the person wronged; thus, God at once *forgives* and *pardons*; the *pardoned* sinner is exempt from punishment; the *forgiven* sinner is restored to the divine favor. To *pardon* is the act of a superior, implying the right to punish; to *forgive* is the privilege of the humblest person who has been wronged or offended. In law, to *remit* the whole penalty is equivalent to *pardoning* the offender; but a part of a penalty may be *remitted* and the remainder inflicted, as where the penalty includes both fine and imprisonment. To *condone* is to put aside a recognized offense by some act which restores the offender to forfeited right or privilege, and is the act of a private individual, without legal formalities. To *excuse* is to *overlook* some slight offense, error, or breach of etiquette; *pardon* is often used by courtesy in nearly the same sense. A person may speak of *excusing* or *forgiving* himself, but not of *pardoning* himself. Compare ABSOLVE; PARDON, *n.*

Antonyms:

castigate, chastise, convict, doom, recompense, sentence,
chasten, condemn, correct, punish, scourge, visit.

PARDON, n.

Synonyms:

absolution, amnesty, forgiveness, oblivion,
acquittal, forbearance, mercy, remission.

Acquittal is a release from a charge, after trial, as not guilty.[263] *Pardon* is a removal of penalty from one who has been adjudged guilty. *Acquittal* is by the decision of a court, commonly of a jury; *pardon* is the act of the executive. An innocent man may demand *acquittal*, and need not plead for *pardon*. *Pardon* supposes an offense; yet, as our laws stand, to grant a *pardon* is sometimes the only way to release one who has been wrongly convicted. *Oblivion*, from the Latin, signifies overlooking and virtually forgetting an offense, so that the offender stands before the law in all respects as if it had never been committed. *Amnesty* brings the same idea through the Greek. *Pardon* affects individuals; *amnesty* and *oblivion* are said of great numbers. *Pardon* is oftenest applied to the ordinary administration of law; *amnesty*, to national and military affairs. An *amnesty* is issued after war, insurrection, or rebellion; it is often granted by "an act of *oblivion*," and includes a full *pardon* of all offenders who come within its provisions. *Absolution* is a religious word (compare synonyms for ABSOLVE). *Remission* is a discharge from penalty; as, the *remission* of a fine.

Antonyms:

penalty, punishment, retaliation, retribution, vengeance.

Prepositions:

A pardon *to* or *for* the offenders; *for* all offenses; the pardon *of* offenders or offenses.

PART, v.

Synonyms:

Compare synonyms for PART, *n.*

Prepositions:

Part *into* shares; part *in* the middle; part one *from* another; part *among* the claimants; part *between* contestants (archaic); in general, to part *from* is to relinquish companionship; to part *with* is to relinquish possession; we part *from* a person or *from* something thought of with some sense of companionship; a traveler parts *from* his friends; he maybe said also to part *from* his native shore; a man parts *with* an estate, a horse, a copyright; part *with* may be applied to a person thought of in any sense as a possession; an employer parts *with* a clerk or servant; but *part with* is sometimes used by good writers as meaning simply to separate from.

---

[264]

PART, n.

Synonyms:

atom,
component,
constituent,
division,
element,
fraction,
fragment,
ingredient,
instalment,
member,
particle,
piece,
portion,
section,
segment,
share,
subdivision.

Part, a substance, quantity, or amount that is the result of the division of something greater, is the general word, including all the others of this group. A *fragment* is the result of breaking, rending, or disruption of some kind, while a *piece* may be smoothly or evenly separated and have a certain completeness in itself. A *piece* is often taken for a sample; a *fragment* scarcely would be. *Division* and *fraction* are always regarded as in connection with the total; *divisions* may be equal or unequal; a *fraction* is one of several equal *parts* into which the whole is supposed to be divided. A *portion* is a *part* viewed with reference to some one who is to receive it or some special purpose to which it is to be applied; in a restaurant one *portion* (*i. e.*, the amount designed for one person) is sometimes, by special order, served to two; a *share* is a *part* to which one has or may acquire a right in connection with others; an *instalment* is one of a series of proportionate payments that are to be continued till the entire claim is discharged; a *particle* is an exceedingly small *part*. A *component*, *constituent*, *ingredient*, or *element* is a *part* of some compound or mixture; an *element* is necessary to the existence, as a *component* or *constituent* is necessary to the completeness of that which it helps to compose; an *ingredient* may be foreign or accidental. A *subdivision* is a *division* of a *division*. We speak of a *segment* of a circle. Compare PARTICLE; PORTION.

PARTICLE.

Synonyms:

atom,
corpuscle,
grain,
iota,
mite,
molecule,
scrap,
shred,
whit.

element, jot, scintilla, tittle,

A *particle* is a very small part of any material substance; as, a *particle* of sand or of dust; it is a general term, not accurately determinate in meaning. *Atom* (Gr. *a-* privative, not, and *temno*, cut) etymologically signifies that which can not be cut or divided, and is the smallest conceivable *particle* of matter, regarded as absolutely homogeneous and as having but one set of properties; *atoms* are the ultimate *particles* of matter. A *molecule*[265] is made up of *atoms*, and is regarded as separable into its constituent parts; as used by physicists, a *molecule* is the smallest conceivable part which retains all the characteristics of the substance; thus, a *molecule* of water is made up of two *atoms* of hydrogen and one *atom* of oxygen. *Element* in chemistry denotes, without reference to quantity, a substance regarded as simple, *i. e.*, one incapable of being resolved by any known process into simpler substances; the *element* gold may be represented by an ingot or by a *particle* of gold-dust. In popular language, an *element* is any essential constituent; the ancients believed that the universe was made up of the four *elements*, earth, air, fire, and water; a storm is spoken of as a manifestation of the fury of the *elements*. We speak of *corpuscles* of blood. Compare PART.

Antonyms:

aggregate,entirety,mass,quantity,sum,sum total,total,whole.

PATIENCE.

Synonyms:

calmness,
composure,
endurance,
forbearance,
fortitude,
leniency,
long-suffering,
resignation,
submission,
sufferance.

Patience is the quality or habit of mind shown in bearing passively and uncomplainingly any pain, evil, or hardship that may fall to one's lot. *Endurance* hardens itself against suffering, and may be merely stubborn; *fortitude* is *endurance* animated by courage; *endurance* may by modifiers be made to have a passive force, as when we speak of "passive endurance;" *patience* is not so hard as *endurance* nor so self-effacing as *submission*. *Submission* is ordinarily and *resignation* always applied to matters of great moment, while *patience* may apply to slight worries and annoyances. As regards our relations to our fellow men, *forbearance* is abstaining from retaliation or revenge; *patience* is keeping kindliness of heart under vexatious conduct; *long-suffering* is continued *patience*. *Patience* may also have an active force denoting uncomplaining steadiness in doing, as in tilling the soil. Compare INDUSTRY.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for ANGER.

Prepositions:

Patience *in* or *amid* sufferings; patience *with* (rarely *toward*) opposers or offenders; patience *under* afflictions; (rarely) patience *of* heat or cold, etc.

---

[266]

PAY, n.

Synonyms:

allowance,
compensation,
earnings,
fee,
hire,
honorarium,
payment,
recompense,
remuneration,
requital,
salary,
stipend,
wages.

An *allowance* is a stipulated amount furnished at regular intervals as a matter of discretion or gratuity, as of food to besieged soldiers, or of money to a child or ward. *Compensation* is a comprehensive word signifying a return for a service done. *Remuneration* is applied to matters of great amount or importance. *Recompense* is a still wider and loftier word, with less suggestion of calculation and market value; there are services for which affection and gratitude are the sole and sufficient *recompense*; *earnings*, *fees*, *hire*, *pay*, *salary*, and *wages* are forms of *compensation* and may be included in *compensation*, *remuneration*, or *recompense*. *Pay* is commercial and strictly signifies an exact pecuniary equivalent for a thing or service, except when the contrary is expressly stated, as when we speak of "high *pay*" or "poor *pay*." *Wages* denotes what a worker receives. *Earnings* is often used as exactly equivalent to *wages*, but may be used with reference to the real value of work done or service rendered, and even applied to inanimate things; as, the *earnings* of capital. *Hire* is distinctly mercenary or menial, but as a noun has gone out of popular use, tho the verb *to hire* is common. *Salary* is for literary or professional work, *wages* for handicraft or other comparatively inferior service; a *salary* is regarded as more permanent than *wages*; an editor receives a *salary*, a compositor receives *wages*. *Stipend* has become exclusively a literary word. A *fee* is given for a single service or privilege, and is sometimes in the nature of a gratuity. Compare REQUITE.

PEOPLE.

Synonyms:

commonwealth,
community,
nation,
population,
race,
state,
tribe.

A *community* is in general terms the aggregate of persons inhabiting any territory in common and viewed as having common interests; a *commonwealth* is such a body of persons having a common government, especially a republican government; as, the *commonwealth* of Massachusetts. A *community* may be very small; a *commonwealth* is ordinarily of considerable extent. A *people* is the aggregate of any public *community*, either in distinction[267] from their rulers or as including them; a *race* is a division of mankind in the line of origin and ancestry; the *people* of the United States includes members of almost every *race*. The use of *people* as signifying persons collectively, as in the statement "The hall was full of *people*," has been severely criticized, but is old and accepted English, and may fitly be classed as idiomatic, and often better than *persons*, by reason of its collectivism. As Dean Alford suggests, it would make a strange transformation of the old hymn "All *people* that on earth do dwell" to sing "All *persons* that on earth do dwell." A *state* is an organized political *community* considered in its corporate capacity as "a body politic and corporate;" as, a legislative act is the act of the *state*; every citizen is entitled to the protection of the *state*. A *nation* is an organized political *community* considered with reference to the persons composing it as having certain definite boundaries, a definite number of citizens, etc. The members of a *people* are referred to as persons or individuals; the individual members of a *state* or *nation* are called citizens or subjects. The *population* of a country is simply the aggregate of persons residing within its borders, without reference to *race*, organization, or allegiance; unnaturalized residents form part of the *population*, but not of the *nation*, possessing none of the rights and being subject to none of the duties of citizens. In American usage *State* signifies one *commonwealth* of the federal union known as the United *States*. *Tribe* is now almost wholly applied to rude *peoples* with very imperfect political organization; as, the Indian *tribes*; nomadic *tribes*. Compare MOB.

PERCEIVE.

Synonyms:

apprehend,comprehend,conceive,understand.

We *perceive* what is presented through the senses. We *apprehend* what is presented to the mind, whether through the senses or by any other means. Yet *perceive* is used in the figurative sense of seeing through to a conclusion, in a way for which usage would not allow us to substitute *apprehend*; as, "Sir, I *perceive* that thou art a prophet," *John* iv, 19. That which we *apprehend* we catch, as with the hand; that which we *conceive* we are able to analyze and recompose in our mind; that which we *comprehend*, we, as it were, grasp around, take together, seize, embrace wholly within the mind. Many things may be *apprehended*[268] which can not be *comprehended*; a child can *apprehend* the distinction between right and wrong, yet the philosopher can not *comprehend* it in its fulness. We can *apprehend* the will of God as revealed in conscience or the Scriptures; we can *conceive* of certain attributes of Deity, as his truth and justice; but no finite intelligence can *comprehend* the Divine Nature, in its majesty, power, and perfection. Compare ANTICIPATE; ARREST; CATCH; KNOWLEDGE.

Antonyms:

fail of,ignore,lose,misapprehend,misconceive,miss,overlook.

PERFECT.

Synonyms:

absolute,
accurate,
blameless,
complete,
completed,
consummate,
correct,
entire,
faultless,
finished,
holy,
ideal,
immaculate,
sinless,
spotless,
stainless,
unblemished,
undefiled.

That is *perfect* to which nothing can be added, and from which nothing can be taken without impairing its excellence, marring its symmetry, or detracting from its worth; in this fullest sense God alone is *perfect*, but in a limited sense anything may be *perfect* in its kind; as a *perfect* flower; a copy of a document is *perfect* when it is *accurate* in every particular; a vase may be called *perfect* when *entire* and *unblemished*, even tho not artistically *faultless*; the best judges never pronounce a work of art *perfect*, because they see always *ideal* possibilities not yet attained; even the *ideal* is not *perfect*, by reason of the imperfection of the human mind; a human character faultlessly *holy* would be morally *perfect* tho finite. That which is *absolute* is free from admixture (as *absolute* alcohol) and in the highest and fullest sense free from imperfection or limitation; as, *absolute* holiness and love are attributes of God alone. In philosophical language, *absolute* signifies free from all necessary, or even from all possible relations, not dependent or limited, unrelated and unconditioned; truth immediately known, as intuitive truth, is *absolute*; God, as self-existent and free from all limitation or dependence, is called the *absolute* Being, or simply the *Absolute*. Compare INNOCENT; INFINITE; RADICAL.

Antonyms:

bad,
blemished,
corrupt,
corrupted,
defaced,
defective,
deficient,
deformed,
fallible,
faulty,
imperfect,
incomplete,
inferior,
insufficient,
marred,
meager,
perverted,
poor,
ruined,
scant,
short,
spoiled,
worthless.

---

[269]

PERMANENT.

Synonyms:

abiding,
changeless,
constant,
enduring,
fixed,
immutable,
lasting,
perpetual,
persistent,
steadfast,
unchangeable,
unchanging.

durable,
invariable,
stable,

Durable (L. *durus*, hard) is said almost wholly of material substances that resist wear; *lasting* is said of either material or immaterial things. *Permanent* is a word of wider meaning; a thing is *permanent* which is not liable to change; as, a *permanent* color; buildings upon a farm are called *permanent* improvements. *Enduring* is a higher word, applied to that which resists both time and change; as, *enduring* fame.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for TRANSIENT.

PERMISSION.

Synonyms:

allowance,
authority,
authorization,
consent,
leave,
liberty,
license,
permit.

Authority unites the right and power of control; age, wisdom, and character give *authority* to their possessor; a book of learned research has *authority*, and is even called an *authority*. *Permission* justifies another in acting without interference or censure, and usually implies some degree of approval. *Authority* gives a certain right of control over all that may be affected by the action. There may be a failure to object, which constitutes an implied *permission*, tho this is more properly expressed by *allowance*; we *allow* what we do not oppose, *permit* what we expressly authorize. The noun *permit* implies a formal written *permission*. *License* is a formal *permission* granted by competent *authority* to an individual to do some act or pursue some business which would be or is made to be unlawful without such *permission*; as, a *license* to preach, to solemnize marriages, or to sell intoxicating liquors. A *license* is *permission* granted rather than *authority* conferred; the sheriff has *authority* (not *permission* nor *license*) to make an arrest. *Consent* is *permission* by the concurrence of wills in two or more persons, a mutual approval or acceptance of something proposed. Compare ALLOW.

Antonyms:

denial,
hindrance,
objection,
opposition,
prevention,
prohibition,
refusal,
resistance.

---

[270]

PERNICIOUS.

Synonyms:

bad,
baneful,
deadly,
deleterious,
destructive,
detrimental,
evil,
foul,
harmful,
hurtful,
injurious,
insalubrious,
mischievous,
noisome,
noxious,
perverting,
pestiferous,
pestilential,
poisonous,
ruinous,
unhealthful,
unwholesome.

Pernicious (L. *per*, through, and *neco*, kill) signifies having the power of destroying or injuring, tending to hurt or kill. *Pernicious* is stronger than *injurious*; that which is *injurious* is capable of doing harm; that which is *pernicious* is likely to be *destructive*. *Noxious* (L. *noceo*, hurt) is a stronger word than *noisome*, as referring to that which is *injurious* or *destructive*. *Noisome* now always denotes that which is extremely disagreeable or disgusting, especially to the sense of smell; as, the *noisome* stench proclaimed the presence of *noxious* gases.

Antonyms:

advantageous,
beneficent,
beneficial,
favorable,
good,
healthful,
helpful,
invigorating,
life-giving,
profitable,
rejuvenating,
salutary,
serviceable,
useful,
wholesome.

PERPLEXITY.

Synonyms:

amazement,
astonishment,
bewilderment,
confusion,
distraction,
disturbance,
doubt,
embarrassment.

Perplexity (L. *per*, through, and *plecto*, plait) is the drawing or turning of the thoughts or faculties by turns in different directions or toward contrasted or contradictory conclusions; *confusion* (L. *confusus*, from *confundo*, pour together) is a state in which the mental faculties are, as it were, thrown into chaos, so that the clear and distinct action of the different powers, as of perception, memory, reason, and will is lost; *bewilderment* is akin to *confusion*, but is less overwhelming, and more readily recovered from; *perplexity*, accordingly, has not the unsettling of the faculties implied in *confusion*, nor the overwhelming of the faculties implied in *amazement* or *astonishment*; it is not the magnitude of the things to be known, but the want of full and definite knowledge, that causes *perplexity*. The dividing of a woodland path may cause the traveler the greatest *perplexity*, which may become *bewilderment* when he has tried one path after another and lost his bearings completely. With an excitable person *bewilderment* may deepen into *confusion* that will make him unable to think clearly or even to see or hear distinctly. *Amazement* results from the sudden and unimagined occurrence of great good or evil or[271] the sudden awakening of the mind to unthought-of truth. *Astonishment* often produces *bewilderment*, which the word was formerly understood to imply. Compare AMAZEMENT; ANXIETY; DOUBT.

PERSUADE.

Synonyms:

allure,
bring over,
coax,
convince,
dispose,
entice,
impel,
incite,
incline,
induce,
influence,
lead,
move,
prevail on or upon,
urge,
win over.

Of these words *convince* alone has no direct reference to moving the will, denoting an effect upon the understanding only; one may be *convinced* of his duty without doing it, or he may be *convinced* of truth that has no manifest connection with duty or action, as of a mathematical proposition. To *persuade* is to bring the will of another to a desired decision by some influence exerted upon it short of compulsion; one may be *convinced* that the earth is round; he may be *persuaded* to travel round it; but persuasion is so largely dependent upon conviction that it is commonly held to be the orator's work first to *convince* in order that he may *persuade*. *Coax* is a slighter word than *persuade*, seeking the same end by shallower methods, largely by appeal to personal feeling, with or without success; as, a child *coaxes* a parent to buy him a toy. One may be *brought over*, *induced*, or *prevailed upon* by means not properly included in persuasion, as by bribery or intimidation; he is *won over* chiefly by personal influence. Compare INFLUENCE.

Antonyms:

deter,discourage,dissuade,hinder,hold back,repel,restrain.

PERTNESS.

Synonyms:

boldness,
briskness,
flippancy,
forwardness,
impertinence,
impudence,
liveliness,
sauciness,
smartness,
sprightliness.

Liveliness and *sprightliness* are pleasant and commendable; *smartness* is a limited and showy acuteness or shrewdness, usually with unfavorable suggestion; *pertness* and *sauciness* are these qualities overdone, and regardless of the respect due to superiors. *Impertinence* and *impudence* may be gross and stupid; *pertness* and *sauciness* are always vivid and keen. Compare IMPUDENCE.

Antonyms:

bashfulness,
demureness,
diffidence,
humility,
modesty,
shyness.

PERVERSE.

Synonyms:

contrary,
factious,
fractious,
froward,
intractable,
obstinate,
petulant,
stubborn,
ungovernable,
untoward,
wayward,
wilful.

Perverse (L. *perversus*, turned the wrong way) signifies wilfully wrong or erring, unreasonably set against right, reason, or authority. The *stubborn* or *obstinate* person will not do what another desires or requires; the *perverse* person will do anything contrary to what is desired or required of him. The *petulant* person frets, but may comply; the *perverse* individual may be smooth or silent, but is wilfully *intractable*. *Wayward* refers to a *perverse* disregard of morality and duty; *froward* is practically obsolete; *untoward* is rarely heard except in certain phrases; as, *untoward* circumstances. Compare OBSTINATE.

Antonyms:

accommodating,
amenable,
complaisant,
compliant,
genial,
governable,
kind,
obliging.

PHYSICAL.

Synonyms:

bodily,
corporal,
corporeal,
material,
natural,
sensible,
tangible,
visible.

Whatever is composed of or pertains to matter may be termed *material*; *physical* (Gr. *physis*, nature) applies to *material* things considered as parts of a system or organic whole; hence, we speak of *material* substances, *physical* forces, *physical* laws. *Bodily*, *corporal*, and *corporeal* apply primarily to the human body; *bodily* and *corporal* both denote pertaining or relating to the body; *corporeal* signifies of the nature of or like the body; *corporal* is now almost wholly restricted to signify applied to or inflicted upon the body; we speak of *bodily* sufferings, *bodily* presence, *corporal* punishment, the *corporeal* frame.

Antonyms:

hyperphysical,
immaterial,
intangible,
intellectual,
invisible,
mental,
moral,
spiritual,
unreal,
unsubstantial.

PIQUE.

Synonyms:

displeasure,
grudge,
irritation,
offense,
resentment,
umbrage.

Pique, from the French, signifies primarily a prick or a sting, as of a nettle; the word denotes a sudden feeling of mingled pain and anger, but slight and usually transient, arising from some neglect or *offense*, real or imaginary. *Umbrage* is a deeper and more[273] persistent *displeasure* at being overshadowed (L. *umbra*, a shadow) or subjected to any treatment that one deems unworthy of him. It may be said, as a general statement, that *pique* arises from wounded vanity or sensitiveness, *umbrage* from wounded pride or sometimes from suspicion. *Resentment* rests on more solid grounds, and is deep and persistent. Compare ANGER.

Antonyms:

approval,
complacency,
contentment,
delight,
gratification,
pleasure,
satisfaction.

PITIFUL.

Synonyms:

abject,
base,
contemptible,
despicable,
lamentable,
miserable,
mournful,
moving,
paltry,
pathetic,
piteous,
pitiable,
sorrowful,
touching,
woful,
wretched.

Pitiful originally signified full of pity; as, "the Lord is very *pitiful* and of tender mercy," *James* v, 11; but this usage is now archaic, and the meaning in question is appropriated by such words as merciful and compassionate. *Pitiful* and *pitiable* now refer to what may be deserving of pity, *pitiful* being used chiefly for that which is merely an object of thought, *pitiable* for that which is brought directly before the senses; as, a *pitiful* story; a *pitiable* object; a *pitiable* condition. Since pity, however, always implies weakness or inferiority in that which is pitied, *pitiful* and *pitiable* are often used, by an easy transition, for what might awaken pity, but does awaken contempt; as, a *pitiful* excuse; he presented a *pitiable* appearance. *Piteous* is now rarely used in its earlier sense of feeling pity, but in its derived sense applies to what really excites the emotion; as, a *piteous* cry. Compare HUMANE; MERCY; PITY.

Antonyms:

august,
dignified,
grand,
lofty,
sublime,

beneficent,
commanding,
exalted,
glorious,
great,
helpful,
mighty,
noble,
superb,
superior.

PITY.

Synonyms:

commiseration,
compassion,
condolence,
mercy,
sympathy,
tenderness.

Pity is a feeling of grief or pain aroused by the weakness, misfortunes, or distresses of others, joined with a desire to help or relieve. *Sympathy* (feeling or suffering with) implies some degree of equality, kindred, or union; *pity* is for what is weak or unfortunate, and so far, at least, inferior to ourselves; hence, *pity* is[274] often resented where *sympathy* would be welcome. We have *sympathy* with one in joy or grief, in pleasure or pain, *pity* only for those in suffering or need; we may have *sympathy* with the struggles of a giant or the triumphs of a conqueror; we are moved with *pity* for the captive or the slave. *Pity* may be only in the mind, but *mercy* does something for those who are its objects. *Compassion*, like *pity*, is exercised only with respect to the suffering or unfortunate, but combines with the tenderness of *pity* the dignity of *sympathy* and the active quality of *mercy*. *Commiseration* is as tender as *compassion*, but more remote and hopeless; we have *commiseration* for sufferers whom we can not reach or can not relieve. *Condolence* is the expression of *sympathy*. Compare MERCY.

Antonyms:

barbarity,
brutality,
cruelty,
ferocity,
hard-heartedness,
hardness,
harshness,
inhumanity,
mercilessness,
pitilessness,
rigor,
ruthlessness,
severity,
sternness,
truculence.

Prepositions:

Pity *on* or *upon* that which we help or spare; pity *for* that which we merely contemplate; "have pity *upon* me, O ye my friends," *Job* xix, 21; "pity *for* a horse o'erdriven," Tennyson *In Memoriam* lxii, st. 1.

PLANT.

Synonyms:

seed,
seed down,
set,
set out,
sow.

We *set* or *set out* slips, cuttings, young trees, etc., tho we may also be said to *plant* them; we *plant* corn, potatoes, etc., which we put in definite places, as in hills, with some care; we *sow* wheat or other small grains and seeds which are scattered in the process. Tho by modern agricultural machinery the smaller grains are almost as precisely *planted* as corn, the old word for broadcast scattering is retained. Land is *seeded* or *seeded down* to grass.

Antonyms:

eradicate,extirpate,root up,uproot,weed out.

PLEAD.

Synonyms:

advocate,
argue,
ask,
beg,
beseech,
entreat,
implore,
press,
solicit,
urge.

To *plead* for one is to employ argument or persuasion, or both in his behalf, usually with earnestness or importunity; similarly[275] one may be said to *plead* for himself or for a cause, etc., or with direct object, to *plead* a case; in legal usage, *pleading* is argumentative, but in popular usage, *pleading* always implies some appeal to the feelings. One *argues* a case solely on rational grounds and supposably with fair consideration of both sides; he *advocates* one side for the purpose of carrying it, and under the influence of motives that may range all the way from cold self-interest to the highest and noblest impulses; he *pleads* a cause, or *pleads* for a person with still more intense feeling. *Beseech*, *entreat*, and *implore* imply impassioned earnestness, with direct and tender appeal to personal considerations. *Press* and *urge* imply more determined or perhaps authoritative insistence. *Solicit* is a weak word denoting merely an attempt to secure one's consent or cooperation, sometimes by sordid or corrupt motives.

Prepositions:

Plead *with* the tyrant *for* the captive; plead *against* the oppression or the oppressor; plead *to* the indictment; *at* the bar; *before* the court; *in* open court.

PLEASANT.

Synonyms:

agreeable,
attractive,
good-natured,
kind,
kindly,
obliging,
pleasing,
pleasurable.

That is *pleasing* from which pleasure is received, or may readily be received, without reference to any action or intent in that which confers it; as, a *pleasing* picture; a *pleasing* landscape. Whatever has active qualities adapted to give pleasure is *pleasant*; as, a *pleasant* breeze; a *pleasant* (not a *pleasing*) day. As applied to persons, *pleasant* always refers to a disposition ready and desirous to please; one is *pleasant*, or in a *pleasant* mood, when inclined to make happy those with whom he is dealing, to show kindness and do any reasonable favor. In this sense *pleasant* is nearly akin to *kind*, but *kind* refers to act or intent, while *pleasant* stops with the disposition; many persons are no longer in a *pleasant* mood if asked to do a troublesome kindness. *Pleasant* keeps always something of the sense of actually giving pleasure, and thus surpasses the meaning of *good-natured*; there are *good-natured* people who by reason of rudeness and ill-breeding are not *pleasant* companions. A *pleasing* face has good features, complexion, expression, etc.; a *pleasant* face indicates a *kind* heart and an *obliging* disposition, as well as *kindly* feelings in actual exercise; we can say of one usually *good-natured*, "on[276] that occasion he did not meet me with a *pleasant* face." *Pleasant*, in the sense of gay, merry, jocose (the sense still retained in *pleasantry*), is now rare, and would not be understood outside of literary circles. Compare AMIABLE; COMFORTABLE; DELIGHTFUL.

Antonyms:

arrogant,
austere,
crabbed,
disagreeable,
displeasing,
dreary,
forbidding,
gloomy,
glum,
grim,
harsh,
hateful,
ill-humored,
ill-natured,
offensive,
repellent,
repelling,
repulsive,
unkind,
unpleasant.

Prepositions:

Pleasant *to*, *with*, or *toward* persons, *about* a matter.

PLENTIFUL.

Synonyms:

abounding,
abundant,
adequate,
affluent,
ample,
bounteous,
bountiful,
complete,
copious,
enough,
exuberant,
full,
generous,
large,
lavish,
liberal,
luxuriant,
overflowing,
plenteous,
profuse,
replete,
rich,
sufficient,
teeming.

Enough is relative, denoting a supply equal to a given demand. A temperature of 70° Fahrenheit is *enough* for a living-room; of 212° *enough* to boil water; neither is *enough* to melt iron. *Sufficient*, from the Latin, is an equivalent of the Saxon *enough*, with no perceptible difference of meaning, but only of usage, *enough* being the more blunt, homely, and forcible word, while *sufficient* is in many cases the more elegant or polite. *Sufficient* usually precedes its noun; *enough* usually and preferably follows. That is *ample* which gives a safe, but not a large, margin beyond a given demand; that is *abundant*, *affluent*, *bountiful*, *liberal*, *plentiful*, which is largely in excess of manifest need. *Plentiful* is used of supplies, as of food, water, etc.; as, "a *plentiful* rain," *Ps.* lxviii, 9. We may also say a *copious* rain; but *copious* can be applied to thought, language, etc., where *plentiful* can not well be used. *Affluent* and *liberal* both apply to riches, resources; *liberal*, with especial reference to giving or expending. (Compare synonyms for ADEQUATE.)

Affluent, referring especially to riches, may be used of thought, feeling, etc. Neither *affluent*, *copious*, nor *plentiful* can be used of time or space; a field is sometimes called *plentiful*, not with reference to its extent, but to its productiveness. *Complete* expresses not excess or overplus, and yet not mere sufficiency, but harmony, proportion, fitness to a design, or ideal. *Ample* and *abundant* may be applied to any subject. We have time *enough*, means that we can reach our destination without haste, but also without delay; if we have *ample* time, we may move leisurely, and note[277] what is by the way; if we have *abundant* time, we may pause to converse with a friend, to view the scenery, or to rest when weary. *Lavish* and *profuse* imply a decided excess, oftenest in the ill sense. We rejoice in *abundant* resources, and honor *generous* hospitality; *lavish* or *profuse* expenditure suggests extravagance and wastefulness. *Luxuriant* is used especially of that which is *abundant* in growth; as, a *luxuriant* crop.

Antonyms:

deficient,
drained,
exhausted,
impoverished,
inadequate,
insufficient,
mean,
miserly,
narrow,
niggardly,
poor,
scant,
scanty,
scarce,
scrimped,
short,
small,
sparing,
stingy,
straitened.

Preposition:

Plentiful *in* resources.

POETRY.

Synonyms:

meter,
metrical composition,
numbers,
poem,
poesy,
rime,
song,
verse.

Poetry is that form of literature that embodies beautiful thought, feeling, or action in melodious, rhythmical, and (usually) metrical language, in imaginative and artistic constructions. *Poetry* in a very wide sense may be anything that pleasingly addresses the imagination; as, the *poetry* of motion. In ordinary usage, *poetry* is both imaginative and metrical. There may be *poetry* without *rime*, but hardly without *meter*, or what in some languages takes its place, as the Hebrew parallelism; but *poetry* involves, besides the artistic form, the exercise of the fancy or imagination in a way always beautiful, often lofty or even sublime. Failing this, there may be *verse*, *rime*, and *meter*, but not *poetry*. There is much in literature that is beautiful and sublime in thought and artistic in construction, which is yet not *poetry*, because quite devoid of the element of *song*, whereby *poetry* differs from the most lofty, beautiful, or impassioned prose. Compare METER.

Antonyms:

prosaic speech,prosaic writing,prose.

POLITE.

Synonyms:

accomplished,
civil,
complaisant,
courteous,
courtly,
cultivated,
cultured,
elegant,
genteel,
gracious,
obliging,
polished,
urbane,
well-behaved,
well-bred,
well-mannered.

A *civil* person observes such propriety of speech and manner as[278] to avoid being rude; one who is *polite* (literally *polished*) observes more than the necessary proprieties, conforming to all that is graceful, becoming, and thoughtful in the intercourse of refined society. A man may be *civil* with no consideration for others, simply because self-respect forbids him to be rude; but one who is *polite* has at least some care for the opinions of others, and if *polite* in the highest and truest sense, which is coming to be the prevailing one, he cares for the comfort and happiness of others in the smallest matters. *Civil* is a colder and more distant word than *polite*; *courteous* is fuller and richer, dealing often with greater matters, and is used only in the good sense. *Courtly* suggests that which befits a royal court, and is used of external grace and stateliness without reference to the prompting feeling; as, the *courtly* manners of the ambassador. *Genteel* refers to an external elegance, which may be showy and superficial, and the word is thus inferior to *polite* or *courteous*. *Urbane* refers to a politeness that is genial and successful in giving others a sense of ease and cheer. *Polished* refers to external elegancies of speech and manner without reference to spirit or purpose; as, a *polished* gentleman or a *polished* scoundrel; *cultured* refers to a real and high development of mind and soul, of which the external manifestation is the smallest part. *Complaisant* denotes a disposition to please or favor beyond what *politeness* would necessarily require.

Antonyms:

awkward,
bluff,
blunt,
boorish,
brusk,
clownish,
coarse,
discourteous,
ill-behaved,
ill-bred,
ill-mannered,
impertinent,
impolite,
impudent,
insolent,
insulting,
raw,
rude,
rustic,
uncivil,
uncouth,
unmannerly,
unpolished,
untaught,
untutored.

POLITY.

Synonyms:

constitution,policy,form or system of government.

Polity is the permanent system of government of a state, a church, or a society; *policy* is the method of management with reference to the attainment of certain ends; the national *polity* of the United States is republican; each administration has a *policy* of its own. *Policy* is often used as equivalent to expediency; as, many think honesty to be good *policy*. *Polity* used in ecclesiastical use serves a valuable purpose in distinguishing that which relates to administration and government from that which relates to faith and doctrine; two churches identical in faith may differ in *polity*, or those agreeing in *polity* may differ in faith. Compare LAW.

---

[279]

PORTION.

Synonyms:

lot,
parcel,
part,
proportion,
share.

When any whole is divided into *parts*, any *part* that is allotted to some person, thing, subject or purpose is called a *portion*, tho the division may be by no fixed rule or relation; a father may divide his estate by will among his children so as to make their several *portions* great or small, according to his arbitrary and unreasonable caprice. When we speak of a *part* as a *proportion*, we think of the whole as divided according to some rule or scale, so that the different *parts* bear a contemplated and intended relation or ratio to one another; thus, the *portion* allotted to a child by will may not be a fair *proportion* of the estate. *Proportion* is often used where *part* or *portion* would be more appropriate. Compare PART.

POVERTY.

Synonyms:

beggary,
destitution,
distress,
indigence,
mendicancy,
need,
pauperism,
penury,
privation,
want.

Poverty denotes strictly lack of property or adequate means of support, but in common use is a relative term denoting any condition below that of easy, comfortable living; *privation* denotes a condition of painful lack of what is useful or desirable, tho not to the extent of absolute *distress*; *indigence* is lack of ordinary means of subsistence; *destitution* is lack of the comforts, and in part even of the necessaries of life; *penury* is especially cramping *poverty*, possibly not so sharp as *destitution*, but continuous, while that may be temporary; *pauperism* is such *destitution* as throws one upon organized public charity for support; *beggary* and *mendicancy* denote *poverty* that appeals for indiscriminate private charity.

POWER.

Synonyms:

ability,
aptitude,
capability,
capacity,
cleverness,
cogency,
competency,
dexterity,
efficacy,
efficiency,
energy,
expertness,
faculty,
force,
might,
qualification,
readiness,
skill,
strength,
susceptibility,
talent.

Power is the most general term of this group, including every quality, property, or *faculty* by which any change, effect, or result is, or may be, produced; as, the *power* of the legislature to enact laws, or of the executive to enforce them; the *power* of an acid to[280] corrode a metal; the *power* of a polished surface to reflect light. *Ability* is nearly coextensive with *power*, but does not reach the positiveness and vigor that may be included in the meaning of *power*, *ability* often implying latent, as distinguished from active *power*; we speak of an exertion of *power*, but not of an exertion of *ability*. *Power* and *ability* include *capacity*, which is *power* to receive; but *ability* is often distinguished from *capacity*, as power that may be manifested in doing, as *capacity* is in receiving; one may have great *capacity* for acquiring knowledge, and yet not possess *ability* to teach. *Efficiency* is active *power* to effect a definite result, the *power* that actually does, as distinguished from that which may do. *Competency* is equal to the occasion, *readiness* prompt for the occasion. *Faculty* is an inherent quality of mind or body; *talent*, some special mental *ability*. *Dexterity* and *skill* are readiness and facility in action, having a special end; *talent* is innate, *dexterity* and *skill* are largely acquired. Our *abilities* include our natural *capacity*, *faculties*, and *talents*, with all the *dexterity*, *skill*, and *readiness* that can be acquired. *Efficacy* is the power to produce an intended effect as shown in the production of it; as, the *efficacy* of a drug. *Efficiency* is effectual agency, competent *power*; *efficiency* is applied in mechanics as denoting the ratio of the effect produced to the *power* expended in producing it; but this word is chiefly used of intelligent agents as denoting the quality that brings all one's *power* to bear promptly and to the best purpose on the thing to be done. Compare ADDRESS; DEXTERITY; SKILFUL.

Antonyms:

awkwardness,
dulness,
feebleness,
helplessness,
imbecility,
impotence,
inability,
inaptitude,
incapacity,
incompetence,
inefficiency,
maladroitness,
stupidity,
unskilfulness,
weakness.

PRAISE.

Synonyms:

acclaim,
acclamation,
approbation,
approval,
compliment,
encomium,
laudation,
panegyric,

adulation,
applause,
cheering,
cheers,
eulogy,
flattery,
plaudit,
sycophancy.

Praise is the hearty approval of an individual, or of a number or multitude considered individually, and is expressed by spoken or written words; *applause*, the spontaneous outburst of many at once. *Applause* is expressed in any way, by stamping of feet, clapping of hands, waving of handkerchiefs, etc., as well as by the voice; *acclamation* is the spontaneous and hearty approval[281] of many at once, and strictly by the voice alone. Thus one is chosen moderator by *acclamation* when he receives a unanimous *viva voce* vote; we could not say he was nominated by *applause*. *Acclaim* is the more poetic term for *acclamation*, commonly understood in a loftier sense; as, a nation's *acclaim*. *Plaudit* is a shout of *applause*, and is commonly used in the plural; as, the *plaudits* of a throng. *Applause* is also used in the general sense of *praise*. *Approbation* is a milder and more qualified word than *praise*; while *praise* is always uttered, *approbation* may be silent. "*Approbation* speaks of the thing or action.... *Praise* is always personal." A. W. and J. C. Hare *Guesses at Truth* first series, p. 549. [Macm. '66.] *Acceptance* refers to an object or action; *approbation* may refer to character or natural traits. *Approval* always supposes a testing or careful examination, and frequently implies official sanction; *approbation* may be upon a general view. The industry and intelligence of a clerk win his employer's *approbation*; his decision in a special instance receives his *approval*. *Praise* is always understood as genuine and sincere, unless the contrary is expressly stated; *compliment* is a light form of *praise* that may or may not be sincere; *flattery* is insincere and ordinarily fulsome *praise*.

Antonyms:

abuse,
animadversion,
blame,
censure,
condemnation,
contempt,
denunciation,
disapprobation,
disapproval,
disparagement,
hissing,
ignominy,
obloquy,
reproach,
reproof,
repudiation,
scorn,
slander,
vilification,
vituperation.

PRAY.

Synonyms:

ask,
beg,
beseech,
bid,
call upon,
conjure,
entreat,
implore,
importune,
invoke,
petition,
plead,
request,
supplicate.

To *pray*, in the religious sense, is devoutly to address the Supreme Being with reverent petition for divine grace or any favor or blessing, and in the fullest sense with thanksgiving and praise for the divine goodness and mercy; the once common use of the word to express any earnest *request*, as "I *pray* you to come in," is now rare, unless in writings molded on older literature, or in certain phrases, as "*Pray* sit down;" even in these "please" is more common; "I *beg* you" is also frequently used, as expressing a polite humility of *request*. *Beseech* and *entreat* express great earnestness of *petition*;

implore and *supplicate* denote the utmost[282] fervency and intensity, *supplicate* implying also humility. Compare ASK; PLEAD.

PRECARIOUS.

Synonyms:

doubtful,
dubious,
equivocal,
hazardous,
insecure,
perilous,
risky,
unassured,
uncertain,
unsettled,
unstable,
unsteady.

Uncertain is applied to things that human knowledge can not certainly determine or that human power can not certainly control; *precarious* originally meant dependent on the will of another, and now, by extension of meaning, dependent on chance or hazard, with manifest unfavorable possibility verging toward probability; as, one holds office by a *precarious* tenure, or land by a *precarious* title; the strong man's hold on life is *uncertain*, the invalid's is *precarious*.

Antonyms:

actual,
assured,
certain,
firm,
immutable,
incontestable,
infallible,
real,
settled,
stable,
steady,
strong,
sure,
undeniable,
undoubted,
unquestionable.

PRECEDENT.

Synonyms:

antecedent,
authority,
case,
example,
instance,
obiter dictum,
pattern,
warrant.

A *precedent* is an authoritative *case*, *example*, or *instance*. The communism of the early Christians in Jerusalem is a wonderful *example* or *instance* of Christian liberality, but not a *precedent* for the universal church through all time. *Cases* decided by irregular or unauthorized tribunals are not *precedents* for the regular administration of law. An *obiter dictum* is an opinion outside of the *case* in hand, which can not be quoted as an authoritative *precedent*. Compare CAUSE; EXAMPLE.

PREDESTINATION.

Synonyms:

fate,
foreknowledge,
foreordination,
necessity.

Predestination is a previous determination or decision, which, in the divine action, reaches on from eternity. *Fate* is heathen, an irresistible, irrational power determining all events with no manifest connection with reason or righteousness; *necessity* is philosophical, a blind something in the nature of things binding the slightest action or motion in the chain of inevitable, eternal sequence; *foreordination* and *predestination* are Christian, denoting the rational and righteous order or decree of the supreme[283] and all-wise God. *Foreknowledge* is simply God's antecedent knowledge of all events, which some hold to be entirely separable from his *foreordination*, while others hold *foreordination* to be inseparably involved in *foreknowledge*.

Antonyms:

accident,
chance,
choice,
free agency,
freedom,
free will,
independence,
uncertainty.

Prepositions:

Predestination *of* believers *to* eternal life.

PREJUDICE.

Synonyms:

bias,
partiality,
preconception,
prepossession,
presumption,
unfairness.

A *presumption* (literally, a taking beforehand) is a partial decision formed in advance of argument or evidence, usually grounded on some general principle, and always held subject to revision upon fuller information. A *prejudice* or *prepossession* is grounded often on feeling, fancy, associations, etc. A *prejudice* against foreigners is very common in retired communities. There is always a *presumption* in favor of what exists, so that the burden of proof is upon one who advocates a change. A *prepossession* is always favorable, a *prejudice* always unfavorable, unless the contrary is expressly stated. Compare INJURY.

Antonyms:

certainty,
conclusion,
conviction,
demonstration,
evidence,
proof,
reason,
reasoning.

Prepositions:

Against; rarely, *in favor of*, *in one's favor*.

PRETENSE.

Synonyms:

affectation,
air,
assumption,
cloak,
color,
disguise,
dissimulation,
excuse,
mask,
pretension,
pretext,
ruse,
seeming,
semblance,
show,
simulation,
subterfuge,
trick,
wile.

A *pretense*, in the unfavorable, which is also the usual sense, is something advanced or displayed for the purpose of concealing the reality. A person makes a *pretense* of something for the credit or advantage to be gained by it; he makes what is allowed or approved a *pretext* for doing what would be opposed or condemned; a tricky schoolboy makes a *pretense* of doing an errand which he does not do, or he makes the actual doing of an errand a *pretext* for playing truant. A *ruse* is something (especially something[284] slight or petty) employed to blind or deceive so as to mask an ulterior design, and enable a person to gain some end that he would not be allowed to approach directly. A *pretension* is a claim that is or may be contested; the word is now commonly used in an unfavorable sense. Compare ARTIFICE; HYPOCRISY.

Antonyms:

actuality,
candor,
fact,
frankness,
guilelessness,
honesty,
ingenuousness,
openness,
reality,
simplicity,
sincerity,
truth.

PREVENT.

Synonyms:

anticipate, forestall, obviate, preclude.

The original sense of *prevent*, to come before, act in advance of, which is now practically obsolete, was still in good use when the authorized version of the Bible was made, as appears in such passages as, "When Peter was come into the house, Jesus *prevented* him" (*i. e.*, addressed him first), *Matt.* xvii, 25; "Thou *preventest* him with the blessings of goodness" (*i. e.*, by sending the blessings before the desire is formulated or expressed), *Ps.* xxi, 3. *Anticipate* is now the only single word usable in this sense; to *forestall* is to take or act in advance in one's own behalf and to the prejudice of another or others, as in the phrase "to *forestall* the market." But to *anticipate* is very frequently used in the favorable sense; as, his thoughtful kindness *anticipated* my wish (*i. e.*, met the wish before it was expressed): or we say, "I was about to accost him when he *anticipated* me" (by speaking first); or one *anticipates* a payment (by making it before the time); in neither of these cases could we use *forestall* or *prevent*. To *obviate* (literally, to stop the way of or remove from the way), is to *prevent* by interception, so that something that would naturally withstand or disturb may be kept from doing so; to *preclude*, (literally, to close or shut in advance) is to *prevent* by anticipation or by logical necessity; walls and bars *precluded* the possibility of escape; a supposition is *precluded*; a necessity or difficulty is *obviated*. *Prevent*, which at first had only the anticipatory meaning, has come to apply to the stopping of an action at any stage, the completion or conclusion only being thought of as negatived by anticipation; the enemy passed the outworks and were barely *prevented* from capturing the fortress. Compare HINDER; PROHIBIT.

Preposition:

He was prevented by illness *from* joining the expedition.

---

[285]

PREVIOUS.

Synonyms:

antecedent,
anterior,
earlier,
foregoing,
former,
forward,
front,
introductory,
precedent,
preceding,
preliminary,
prior.

Antecedent may denote simple priority in time, implying no direct connection between that which goes before and that which follows; as, the striking of one clock may be always *antecedent* to the striking of another with no causal connection between them. *Antecedent* and *previous* may refer to that which goes or happens at any distance in advance, *preceding* is limited to that which is immediately or next before; an *antecedent* event may have happened at any time before; the *preceding* transaction is the one completed just before the one with which it is compared; a *previous* statement or chapter may be in any part of the book that has gone before; the *preceding* statement or chapter comes next before without an interval. *Previous* often signifies first by right; as, a *previous* engagement. *Foregoing* is used only of that which is spoken or written; as, the *foregoing* statements. *Anterior*, while it can be used of time, is coming to be employed chiefly with reference to place; as the *anterior* lobes of the brain. *Prior* bears exclusive reference to time, and commonly where that which is first in time is first also in right; as, a *prior* demand. *Former* is used of time, or of position in written or printed matter, not of space in general. We can say *former* times, a *former* chapter, etc., but not the *former* part of a garden; we should say the *front* part of the garden, the *forward* car of a train. *Former* has a close relation, or sharp contrast, with something following; the *former* always implies the latter, even when not fully expressed, as in *Acts* i, 1, and *Eccles.* vii, 10.

Antonyms:

after,
concluding,
consequent,
following,
hind,
hinder,
hindmost,
later,
latter,
posterior,
subsequent,
succeeding.

Preposition:

Such was the state of things previous *to* the revolution. [*Previous to* is often used adverbially, in constructions where *previously to* would be more strictly correct; as, these arrangements were made *previous to* my departure.]

PRICE.

Synonyms:

charge,cost,expenditure,expense,outlay,value,worth.

The *cost* of a thing is all that has been expended upon it,[286] whether in discovery, production, refinement, decoration, transportation, or otherwise, to bring it to its present condition in the hands of its present possessor; the *price* of a thing is what the seller asks for it. In regular business, as a rule, the seller's *price* on his wares must be more than their *cost* to him; when goods are sold, the *price* the buyer has paid becomes their *cost* to himself. In exceptional cases, when goods are sold at *cost*, the seller's *price* is made the same as the *cost* of the goods to him, the *cost* to the seller and the *cost* to the buyer becoming then identical. *Price* always implies that an article is for sale; what a man will not sell he declines to put a *price* on; hence the significance of the taunting proverb that "every man has his *price*." *Value* is the estimated equivalent for an article, whether the article is for sale or not; the market *value* is what it would bring if exposed for sale in the open market; the intrinsic *value* is the inherent utility of the article considered by itself alone; the market *value* of an old and rare volume may be very great, while its intrinsic *value* may be practically nothing. *Value* has always more reference to others' estimation (literally, what the thing will avail with others) than *worth*, which regards the thing in and by itself; thus, intrinsic *value* is a weaker expression than intrinsic *worth*. *Charge* has especial reference to services, *expense* to minor outlays; as, the *charges* of a lawyer or physician; traveling *expenses*; household *expenses*.

PRIDE.

Synonyms:

arrogance,
assumption,
conceit,
disdain,
haughtiness,
insolence,
ostentation,
presumption,
reserve,
self-complacency,
self-conceit,
self-esteem,
self-exaltation,
self-respect,
superciliousness,
vainglory,
vanity.

Haughtiness thinks highly of itself and poorly of others. *Arrogance* claims much for itself and concedes little to others. *Pride* is an absorbing sense of one's own greatness;

haughtiness feels one's own superiority to others; *disdain* sees contemptuously the inferiority of others to oneself. *Presumption* claims place or privilege above one's right; *pride* deems nothing too high. *Insolence* is open and rude expression of contempt and hostility, generally from an inferior to a superior, as from a servant to a master or mistress. In the presence of superiors overweening *pride* manifests itself in *presumption* or *insolence*; in the presence of[287] inferiors, or those supposed to be inferior, *pride* manifests itself by *arrogance*, *disdain*, *haughtiness*, *superciliousness*, or in either case often by cold *reserve*. (See RESERVE under MODESTY.) *Pride* is too self-satisfied to care for praise; *vanity* intensely craves admiration and applause. *Superciliousness*, as if by the uplifted eyebrow, as its etymology suggests (L. *supercilium*, eyebrow, from *super*, over and *cilium*, eyelid), silently manifests mingled *haughtiness* and *disdain*. *Assumption* quietly takes for granted superiority and privilege which others would be slow to concede. *Conceit* and *vanity* are associated with weakness, *pride* with strength. *Conceit* may be founded upon nothing; *pride* is founded upon something that one is, or has, or has done; *vanity*, too, is commonly founded on something real, tho far slighter than would afford foundation for *pride*. *Vanity* is eager for admiration and praise, is elated if they are rendered, and pained if they are withheld, and seeks them; *pride* could never solicit admiration or praise. *Conceit* is somewhat stronger than *self-conceit*. *Self-conceit* is ridiculous; *conceit* is offensive. *Self-respect* is a thoroughly worthy feeling; *self-esteem* is a more generous estimate of one's own character and abilities than the rest of the world are ready to allow. *Vainglory* is more pompous and boastful than *vanity*. Compare EGOTISM; OSTENTATION.

Antonyms:

humility,lowliness,meekness,modesty,self-abasement,self-distrust.

PRIMEVAL.

Synonyms:

aboriginal,
ancient,
autochthonic,
immemorial,
indigenous,
native,
old,
original,
patriarchal,
primal,
primary,
prime,
primitive,
primordial,
pristine,
uncreated.

Aboriginal (L. *ab*, from, *origo*, origin) signifies pertaining to the *aborigines* or earliest known inhabitants of a country in the widest sense, including not merely human beings but inferior animals and plants as well. *Autochthonic* (Gr. *autos*, self, and *chthōn*, earth) signifies sprung from the earth, especially from the soil of one's native land. *Primeval* (L. *primum*, first, and *ævum*, age), signifies strictly belonging to the first ages, earliest in time, but often only the earliest of which man knows or conceives, *immemorial*. *Aboriginal*, *autochthonic*, and *primeval* combine the meanings of *ancient* and *original*; *aboriginal* inhabitants, *autochthonic* races,[288] *primeval* forests. *Prime* and *primary* may signify either first in time, or more frequently first in importance; *primary* has also the sense of elementary or preparatory; we speak of a *prime* minister, a *primary* school. *Primal* is chiefly poetic, in the sense of *prime*; as, the *primal* curse. *Primordial* is first in an order of succession or development; as, a *primordial* leaf. *Primitive* frequently signifies having the original characteristics of that which it represents, as well as standing first in time; as, the *primitive* church. *Primitive* also very frequently signifies having the original or early characteristics without remoteness in time. *Primeval* simplicity is the simplicity of the earliest ages; *primitive* simplicity may be found in retired villages now. *Pristine* is an elegant word, used almost exclusively in a good sense of that which is *original* and perhaps *ancient*; as, *pristine* purity, innocence, vigor. That which is both an *original* and natural product of a soil or country is said to be *indigenous*; that which is actually produced there is said to be *native*, though it may be of foreign extraction; humming-birds are *indigenous* to America; canaries may be *native*, but are not *indigenous*. *Immemorial* refers solely to time, independently of quality, denoting, in legal phrase, "that whereof the memory of man runneth not to the contrary;" as, an *immemorial* custom; an *immemorial* abuse. Compare OLD.

Antonyms:

adventitious,
exotic,
foreign,
fresh,
late,
modern,
new,
novel,
recent.

Compare synonyms for NEW.

PROFIT.

Synonyms:

advantage,
avail,
benefit,
emolument,
expediency,
gain,
good,
improvement,
proceeds,
receipts,
return,
returns,
service,
usefulness,
utility,
value.

The *returns* or *receipts* include all that is received from an outlay or investment; the *profit* is the excess (if any) of the *receipts* over the outlay; hence, in government, morals, etc., the *profit* is what is really good, helpful, useful, valuable. *Utility* is chiefly used in the sense of some immediate or personal and generally some material *good*. *Advantage* is that which gives one a vantage-ground, either for coping with competitors or with difficulties, needs, or demands; as to have the *advantage* of a good education; it is frequently used of what one has beyond[289] another or secures at the expense of another; as, to have the *advantage* of another in an argument, or to take *advantage* of another in a bargain. *Gain* is what one secures beyond what he previously possessed. *Benefit* is anything that does one good. *Emolument* is *profit*, *return*, or *value* accruing through official position. *Expediency* has respect to *profit* or *advantage*, real or supposed, considered apart from or perhaps in opposition to right, in actions having a moral character. Compare UTILITY.

Antonyms:

damage, detriment, harm,injury,ruin,
destruction,disadvantage,hurt, loss, waste.

Prepositions:

The profit *of* labor; *on* capital; *in* business.

PROGRESS.

Synonyms:

advance, development,improvement,proficiency,
advancement,growth, increase, progression.
attainment,

Progress (L. *pro*, forward, *gradior*, go) is a moving onward or forward, whether in space or in the mental or moral realm, and may be either mechanical, individual, or social. *Attainment*, *development*, and *proficiency* are more absolute than the other words of the group, denoting some point of advantage or of comparative perfection reached by forward or onward movement; we speak of *attainments* in virtue or scholarship, *proficiency* in music or languages, the *development* of new powers or organs; *proficiency* includes the idea of skill. *Advance* may denote either a forward movement or the point gained by forward movement, but always relatively with reference to the point from which the movement started; as, this is a great *advance*. *Advance* admits the possibility of retreat; *progress* (L. *progredi*, to walk forward) is steady and constant forward movement, admitting of pause, but not of retreat; *advance* suggests more clearly a point to be reached, while *progress* lays the emphasis upon the forward movement; we may speak of slow or rapid *progress*, but more naturally of swift *advance*. *Progress* is more frequently used of abstractions; as, the *progress* of ideas; *progression* fixes the attention chiefly upon the act of moving forward. In a thing good in itself all *advance* or *progress* is *improvement*; there is a growing tendency to restrict the words to this favorable sense, using *increase* indifferently of good or evil; one may say without limitation, "I am an advocate of *progress*."[290]

Antonyms:

check, delay, falling off,retrogression,stop,
decline,falling back,relapse, stay, stoppage.

Prepositions:

The progress *of* truth; progress *in* virtue; *toward* perfection; *from* a lower *to* a higher state.

PROHIBIT.

Synonyms:

debar,
disallow,
forbid,
hinder,
inhibit,
interdict,
preclude,
prevent.

To *prohibit* is to give some formal command against, and especially to make some authoritative legal enactment against. *Debar* is said of persons, *disallow* of acts; one is *debarred* from anything when shut off, as by some irresistible authority or necessity; one is *prohibited* from an act in express terms; he may be *debarred* by silent necessity. An act is *disallowed* by the authority that might have allowed it; the word is especially applied to acts which are done before they are pronounced upon; thus, a government may *disallow* the act of its commander in the field or its admiral on the high seas. *Inhibit* and *interdict* are chiefly known by their ecclesiastical use. As between *forbid* and *prohibit*, *forbid* is less formal and more personal, *prohibit* more official and judicial, with the implication of readiness to use such force as may be needed to give effect to the enactment; a parent *forbids* a child to take part in some game or to associate with certain companions; the slave-trade is now *prohibited* by the leading nations of the world. Many things are *prohibited* by law which can not be wholly *prevented*, as gambling and prostitution; on the other hand, things may be *prevented* which are not *prohibited*, as the services of religion, the payment of debts, or military conquest. That which is *precluded* need not be *prohibited*. Compare ABOLISH; HINDER; PREVENT.

Antonyms:

allow,
authorize,
command,
consent to,
direct,
empower,
enjoin,
give consent,
give leave,
give permission,
let,
license,
order,
permit,
put up with,
require,
sanction,
suffer,
tolerate,
warrant.

Prepositions:

An act is prohibited *by* law; a person is prohibited *by* law *from* doing a certain act. *Prohibit* was formerly construed, as *forbid* still is, with the infinitive, but the construction with *from* and the verbal noun has now entirely superseded the older usage.

PROMOTE.

Synonyms:

advance,
aid,
assist,
elevate,
encourage,
exalt,
excite,
foment,
forward,
foster,
further,
help,
prefer,
push,
push on,
raise,
urge forward,
urge on.

To *promote* (L. *pro*, forward, and *moveo*, move) is to cause to move forward toward some desired end or to raise to some higher position, rank, or dignity. We *promote* a person by *advancing*, *elevating*, or *exalting* him to a higher position or dignity. A person *promotes* a scheme or an enterprise which others have projected or begun, and which he *encourages*, *forwards*, *furthers*, *pushes*, or *urges on*, especially when he acts as the agent of the prime movers and supporters of the enterprise. One who *excites* a quarrel originates it; to *promote* a quarrel is strictly to *foment* and *urge* it *on*, the one who *promotes* keeping himself in the background. Compare ABET; QUICKEN.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for ABASE; ALLAY.

PROPITIATION.

Synonyms:

atonement,
expiation,
reconciliation,
satisfaction.

Atonement (at-one-ment), originally denoting *reconciliation*, or the bringing into agreement of those who have been estranged, is now chiefly used, as in theology, in the sense of some offering, sacrifice, or suffering sufficient to win forgiveness or make up for an offense; especially and distinctively of the sacrificial work of Christ in his humiliation, suffering and death. *Expiation* is the enduring of the full penalty of a wrong or crime. *Propitiation* is an offering, action, or sacrifice that makes the governing power propitious toward the offender. *Satisfaction* in this connection denotes the rendering a full legal equivalent for the wrong done. *Propitiation* appeases the lawgiver; *satisfaction* meets the requirements of the law.

Antonyms:

alienation,
chastisement,
condemnation,
curse,
estrangement,
offense,
penalty,
punishment,
reprobation,
retribution,
vengeance,
wrath.

PROPITIOUS.

Synonyms:

auspicious,
benign,
benignant,
clement,
favorable,
friendly,
gracious,
kind,
kindly,
merciful.

That which is *auspicious* is of *favorable* omen; that which is *propitious* is of favoring influence or tendency; as, an *auspicious*[292] morning; a *propitious* breeze. *Propitious* applies to persons, implying *kind* disposition and *favorable* inclinations, especially toward the suppliant; *auspicious* is not used of persons.

Antonyms:

adverse,
antagonistic,
forbidding,
hostile,
ill-disposed,
inauspicious,
repellent,
unfavorable,
unfriendly,
unpropitious.

Preposition:

May heaven be propitious *to* the enterprise.

PROPOSAL.

Synonyms:

bid,
offer,
overture,
proposition.

An *offer* or *proposal* puts something before one for acceptance or rejection, *proposal* being the more formal word; a *proposition* sets forth truth (or what is claimed to be truth) in formal statement. The *proposition* is for consideration, the *proposal* for action; as, a *proposition* in geometry, a *proposal* of marriage; but *proposition* is often used nearly in the sense of *proposal* when it concerns a matter for deliberation; as, a *proposition* for the surrender of a fort. A *bid* is commercial and often verbal; as, a *bid* at an auction; *proposal* is used in nearly the same sense, but is more formal. An *overture* opens negotiation or conference, and the word is especially used of some movement toward reconciliation; as, *overtures* of peace.

Antonyms:

acceptance,
denial,
disapproval,
refusal,
rejection,
repulse.

PROPOSE.

Synonym:

purpose.

In its most frequent use, *propose* differs from *purpose* in that what we *purpose* lies in our own mind, as a decisive act of will, a determination; what we *propose* is offered or stated to others. In this use of the word, what we *propose* is open to deliberation, as what we *purpose* is not. In another use of the word, one *proposes* something to or by himself which may or may not be stated to others. In this latter sense *propose* is nearly identical with *purpose*, and the two words have often been used interchangeably. But in the majority of cases what we *purpose* is more general, what we *propose* more formal and definite; I *purpose* to do right; I *propose* to do this specific thing because it is right. In the historic sentence, "I *propose* to move immediately on your works," *purpose* would not have the same sharp directness.

---

[293]

PROTRACT.

Synonyms:

continue,
defer,
delay,
draw out,
elongate,
extend,
lengthen,
postpone,
procrastinate,
prolong.

To *protract* is to cause to occupy a longer time than is usual, expected, or desirable. We *defer* a negotiation which we are slow to enter upon; we *protract* a negotiation which we are slow to conclude; *delay* may be used of any stage in the proceedings; we may *delay* a person as well as an action, but *defer* and *protract* are not used of persons. *Elongate* is not used of actions or abstractions, but only of material objects or extension in space; *protract* is very rarely used of concrete objects or extension in space; we *elongate* a line, *protract* a discussion. *Protract* has usually an unfavorable sense, implying that the matter referred to is already unduly long, or would be so if longer *continued*; *continue* is neutral, applying equally to the desirable or the undesirable. *Postpone* implies a definite intention to resume, as *defer* also does, though less decidedly; both are often used with some definite limitation of time; as, to *postpone* till, until, or to a certain day or hour. One may *defer*, *delay*, or *postpone* a matter intelligently and for good reason; he *procrastinates* through indolence and irresolution. Compare HINDER.

Antonyms:

abbreviate,
abridge,
conclude,
contract,
curtail,
hasten,
hurry,
limit,
reduce,
shorten.

Prepositions:

To protract a speech *by* verbosity, *through* an unreasonable time, *to*, *till*, or *until* a late hour.

PROVERB.

Synonyms:

adage,
aphorism,
apothegm,
axiom,
byword,
dictum,
maxim,
motto,
precept,
saw,
saying,
truism.

The *proverb* or *adage* gives homely truth in condensed, practical form, the *adage* often pictorial. "Hope deferred maketh the heart sick" is a *proverb*; "The cat loves fish, but dares not wet her feet," is an *adage*. Both the *proverb* and the *adage*, but especially the latter, are thought of as ancient and widely known. An *aphorism* partakes of the character of a definition; it is a summary statement of what the author sees and believes to be true. An *apothegm* is a terse statement of what is plain or easily proved. The *aphorism* is philosophical, the *apothegm* practical.[294] A *dictum* is a statement of some person or school, on whom it depends for authority; as, a *dictum* of Aristotle. A *saying* is impersonal, current among the common people, deriving its authority from its manifest truth or good sense; as, it is an old *saying*, "the more haste, the worse speed." A *saw* is a *saying* that is old, but somewhat worn and tiresome. *Precept* is a command to duty; *motto* or *maxim* is a brief statement of cherished truth, the *maxim* being more uniformly and directly practical; "God is love" may be a *motto*, "Fear God and fear naught," a *maxim*. The *precepts* of the Sermon on the Mount will furnish the Christian with invaluable *maxims* or *mottoes*. A *byword* is a phrase or *saying* used reproachfully or contemptuously.

PROWESS.

Synonyms:

bravery,
courage,
gallantry,
heroism,
intrepidity,
valor.

Bravery, *courage*, *heroism*, and *intrepidity* may be silent, spiritual, or passive; they may be exhibited by a martyr at the stake. *Prowess* and *valor* imply both daring and doing; we do not speak of the *prowess* of a martyr, a child, or a passive sufferer. *Valor* meets odds or perils with courageous action, doing its utmost to conquer at any risk or cost; *prowess* has power adapted to the need; dauntless *valor* is often vain against superior *prowess*. *Courage* is a nobler word than *bravery*, involving more of the deep, spiritual, and enduring elements of character; such an appreciation of peril as would extinguish *bravery* may only intensify *courage*, which is resistant and self-conquering; *courage* applies to matters in regard to which *valor* and *prowess* can have no place, as submission to a surgical operation, or the facing of censure or detraction for conscience' sake. Compare BRAVE; FORTITUDE.

Antonyms:

cowardice, cowardliness, effeminacy, fear, pusillanimity, timidity.

PRUDENCE.

Synonyms:

care,
carefulness,
caution,
circumspection,
consideration,
discretion,
forecast,
foresight,
forethought,
frugality,
judgment,
judiciousness,
providence,
wisdom.

Prudence may be briefly defined as good *judgment* and *foresight*,[295] inclining to *caution* and *frugality* in practical affairs. *Care* may respect only the present; *prudence* and *providence* look far ahead and sacrifice the present to the future, *prudence* watching, saving, guarding, *providence* planning, doing, preparing, and perhaps expending largely to meet the future demand. *Frugality* is in many cases one form of *prudence*. In a besieged city *prudence* will reduce the rations, *providence* will strain every nerve to introduce supplies and to raise the siege. *Foresight* merely sees the future, and may even lead to the recklessness and desperation to which *prudence* and *providence* are so strongly opposed. *Forethought* is thinking in accordance with wise views of the future, and is nearly equivalent to *providence*, but it is a more popular and less comprehensive term; we speak of man's *forethought*, God's *providence*. Compare CARE; FRUGALITY; WISDOM.

Antonyms:

folly,
heedlessness,
improvidence,
imprudence,
indiscretion,
prodigality,
rashness,
recklessness,
thoughtlessness,
wastefulness.

PURCHASE.

Synonyms:

acquire,
bargain for,
barter for,
buy,
get,
obtain,
procure,
secure.

Buy and *purchase* are close synonyms, signifying to *obtain* or *secure* as one's own by paying or promising to pay a price; in numerous cases the two words are freely interchangeable, but with the difference usually found between words of Saxon and those of French or Latin origin. The Saxon *buy* is used for all the homely and petty concerns of common life, the French *purchase* is often restricted to transactions of more dignity; yet the Saxon word *buy* is commonly more emphatic, and in the higher ranges of thought appeals more strongly to the feelings. One may either *buy* or *purchase* fame, favor, honor, pleasure, etc., but when our feelings are stirred we speak of victory or freedom as dearly *bought*. "*Buy* the truth, and sell it not" (*Prov.* xxiii, 23) would be greatly weakened by the rendering "*Purchase* the truth, and do not dispose of it." Compare BUSINESS; GET; PRICE; SALE.

Antonyms:

barter,dispose of,exchange,put to sale,sell.

Prepositions:

Purchase *at* a price; *at* a public sale; *of* or *from* a person; *for* cash; *with* money; *on* time.

---

[296]

PURE.

Synonyms:

absolute,
chaste,
classic,
classical,
clean,
clear,
continent,
genuine,
guileless,
guiltless,
holy,
immaculate,
incorrupt,
innocent,
mere,
perfect,
real,
sheer,
simple,
spotless,
stainless,
true,
unadulterated,
unblemished,
uncorrupted,
undefiled,
unmingled,
unmixed,
unpolluted,
unspotted,
unstained,
unsullied,
untainted,
untarnished,
upright,
virtuous.

That is *pure* which is free from mixture or contact with anything that weakens, impairs, or pollutes. Material substances are called *pure* in the strict sense when free from foreign admixture of any kind; as, *pure* oxygen; the word is often used to signify free from any defiling or objectionable admixture (the original sense); we speak of water as *pure* when it is bright, clear, and refreshing, tho it may contain mineral salts in solution; in the medical and chemical sense, only distilled water (*aqua pura*) is *pure*. In moral and religious use *pure* is a strong word, denoting positive excellence of a high order; one is *innocent* who knows nothing of evil, and has experienced no touch of temptation; one is *pure* who, with knowledge of evil and exposure to temptation, keeps heart and soul *unstained*. *Virtuous* refers primarily to right action; *pure* to right feeling and motives; as, "Blessed are the *pure* in heart: for they shall see God," *Matt.* v, 8. Compare FINE; INNOCENT.

Antonyms:

adulterated,
defiled,
foul,
gross,
indecent,
indelicate,
obscene,
polluted,
tainted,
tarnished,

dirty,
filthy,
immodest,
impure,
lewd,
mixed,
stained,
sullied,
unchaste,
unclean.

PUT.

Synonyms:

deposit,lay,place,set.

Put is the most general term for bringing an object to some point or within some space, however exactly or loosely; we may *put* a horse in a pasture, or *put* a bullet in a rifle or into an enemy. *Place* denotes more careful movement and more exact location; as, to *place* a crown on one's head, or a garrison in a city. To *lay* is to *place* in a horizontal position; to *set* is to *place* in an upright position; we *lay* a cloth, and *set* a dish upon a table. To *deposit* is to *put* in a place of security for future use; as, to *deposit* money in a bank; the original sense, to *lay* down or let down (quietly), is also common; as, the stream *deposits* sediment.

---

[297]

QUEER.

Synonyms:

anomalous,
bizarre,
comical,
crotchety,
curious,
droll,
eccentric,
erratic,
extraordinary,
fantastic,
funny,
grotesque,
laughable,
ludicrous,
odd,
peculiar,
preposterous,
quaint,
ridiculous,
singular,
strange,
uncommon,
unique,
unmatched,
unusual,
whimsical.

Odd is unmated, as an *odd* shoe, and so uneven, as an *odd* number. *Singular* is alone of its kind; as, the *singular* number. What is *singular* is *odd*, but what is *odd* may not be *singular*; as, a drawerful of *odd* gloves. A *strange* thing is something hitherto unknown in fact or in cause. A *singular* coincidence is one the happening of which is unusual; a *strange* coincidence is one the cause of which is hard to explain. That which is *peculiar* belongs especially to a person as his own; as, Israel was called Jehovah's "*peculiar* people," *i. e.*, especially chosen and cherished by him; in its ordinary use there is the implication that the thing *peculiar* to one is not common to the majority nor quite approved by them, though it may be shared by many; as, the Shakers are *peculiar*. *Eccentric* is off or aside from the center, and so off or aside from the ordinary and what is considered the normal course; as, genius is commonly *eccentric*. *Eccentric* is a higher and more respectful word than *odd* or *queer*. *Erratic* signifies wandering, a stronger and more censorious term than *eccentric*. *Queer* is transverse or oblique, aside from the common in a way that is *comical* or perhaps slightly *ridiculous*. *Quaint* denotes that which is pleasingly *odd* and fanciful, often with something of the antique; as, the *quaint* architecture of medieval towns. That which is *funny* is calculated to provoke laughter; that which is *droll* is more quietly amusing. That which is *grotesque* in the material sense is irregular or misshapen in form or outline or ill-proportioned so as to be somewhat *ridiculous*; the French *bizarre* is practically equivalent to *grotesque*.

Antonyms:

common,
customary,
familiar,
natural,
normal,
ordinary,
regular,
usual.

QUICKEN.

Synonyms:

accelerate,
advance,
despatch,
drive,
drive on,
expedite,
facilitate,
further,
hasten,
hurry,
make haste,
press forward,
promote,
speed,
urge,
urge on.

To *quicken*, in the sense here considered, is to increase speed,[298] move or cause to move more rapidly, as through more space or with, a greater number of motions in the same time. To *accelerate* is to increase the speed of action or of motion. A motion whose speed increases upon itself is said to be *accelerated*, as the motion of a falling body, which becomes swifter with every second of time. To *accelerate* any work is to *hasten* it toward a finish, commonly by *quickening* all its operations in orderly unity toward the result. To *despatch* is to do and be done with, to get a thing off one's hands. To *despatch* an enemy is to kill him outright and quickly; to *despatch* a messenger is to send him in haste; to *despatch* a business is to bring it quickly to an end. *Despatch* is commonly used of single items. To *promote* a cause is in any way to bring it forward, *advance* it in power, prominence, etc. To *speed* is really to secure swiftness; to *hasten* is to attempt it, whether successfully or unsuccessfully. *Hurry* always indicates something of confusion. The *hurried* man forgets dignity, appearance, comfort, courtesy, everything but speed; he may forget something vital to the matter in hand; yet, because reckless haste may attain the great object of speed, *hurry* has come to be the colloquial and popular word for acting quickly. To *facilitate* is to *quicken* by making easy; to *expedite* is to *quicken* by removing hindrances. A good general will improve roads to *facilitate* the movements of troops, *hasten* supplies and perfect discipline to *promote* the general efficiency of the force, *despatch* details of business, *expedite* all preparations, in order to *accelerate* the advance and victory of his army.

Antonyms:

check,clog,delay,drag,hinder,impede,obstruct,retard.

QUOTE.

Synonyms:

cite, extract, plagiarize,repeat.
excerpt,paraphrase,recite,

To *quote* is to give an author's words, either exactly, as in direct quotation, or in substance, as in indirect quotation; to *cite* is, etymologically, to call up a passage, as a witness is summoned. In *citing* a passage its exact location by chapter, page, or otherwise, must be given, so that it can be promptly called into evidence; in *quoting*, the location may or may not be given, but the words or substance of the passage must be given. In *citing*, neither the author's words nor his thought may be given, but simply the reference to the location where they may be found. To *quote*, in the[299] proper sense, is to give credit to the author whose words are employed. To *paraphrase* is to state an author's thought more freely than in indirect quotation, keeping the substance of thought and the order of statement, but changing the language, and commonly interweaving more or less explanatory matter as if part of the original writing. One may *paraphrase* a work with worthy motive for homiletic, devotional, or other purposes (as in the metrical versions of the Psalms), or he may *plagiarize* atrociously in the form of *paraphrase*, appropriating all that is valuable in another's thought, with the hope of escaping detection by change of phrase. To *plagiarize* is to *quote* without credit, appropriating another's words or thought as one's own. To *recite* or *repeat* is usually to *quote* orally, tho *recite* is applied in legal phrase to a particular statement of facts which is not a quotation; a kindred use obtains in ordinary speech; as, to *recite* one's misfortunes.

RACY.

Synonyms:

flavorous,lively, pungent,spicy,
forcible, piquant,rich, spirited.

Racy applies in the first instance to the pleasing flavor characteristic of certain wines, often attributed to the soil from which they come. *Pungent* denotes something sharply irritating to the organs of taste or smell, as pepper, vinegar, ammonia; *piquant* denotes a quality similar in kind to *pungent* but less in degree, stimulating and agreeable; *pungent* spices may be deftly compounded into a *piquant* sauce. As applied to literary products, *racy* refers to that which has a striking, vigorous, pleasing originality; *spicy* to that which is stimulating to the mental taste, as spice is to the physical; *piquant* and *pungent* in their figurative use keep very close to their literal sense.

Antonyms:

cold,flat, insipid,stale, tasteless,
dull, flavorless,prosy, stupid,vapid.

RADICAL.

Synonyms:

complete,
constitutional,
entire,
essential,
extreme,
fundamental,
ingrained,
innate,
native,
natural,
organic,
original,
perfect,
positive,
primitive,
thorough,
thoroughgoing,
total.

The widely divergent senses in which the word *radical* is used,[300] by which it can be at some time interchanged with any word in the above list, are all formed upon the one primary sense of having to do with or proceeding from the root (L. *radix*); a *radical* difference is one that springs from the root, and is thus *constitutional*, *essential*, *fundamental*, *organic*, *original*; a *radical* change is one that does not stop at the surface, but reaches down to the very root, and is *entire*, *thorough*, *total*; since the majority find superficial treatment of any matter the easiest and most comfortable, *radical* measures, which strike at the root of evil or need, are apt to be looked upon as *extreme*.

Antonyms:

conservative,
inadequate,
incomplete,
moderate,
palliative,
partial,
slight,
superficial,
tentative,
trial.

RARE.

Synonyms:

curious,
extraordinary,
incomparable,
infrequent,
odd,
peculiar,
precious,
remarkable,
scarce,
singular,
strange,
uncommon,
unique,
unparalleled,
unprecedented,
unusual.

Unique is alone of its kind; *rare* is *infrequent* of its kind; great poems are *rare*; "Paradise Lost" is *unique*. To say of a thing that it is *rare* is simply to affirm that it is now seldom found, whether previously common or not; as, a *rare* old book; a *rare* word; to call a thing *scarce* implies that it was at some time more plenty, as when we say food or money is *scarce*. A particular fruit or coin may be *rare*; *scarce* applies to demand and use, and almost always to concrete things; to speak of virtue, genius, or heroism as *scarce* would be somewhat ludicrous. *Rare* has the added sense of *precious*, which is sometimes, but not necessarily, blended with that above given; as, a *rare* gem. *Extraordinary*, signifying greatly beyond the ordinary, is a neutral word, capable of a high and good sense or of an invidious, opprobrious, or contemptuous signification; as, *extraordinary* genius; *extraordinary* wickedness; an *extraordinary* assumption of power; *extraordinary* antics; an *extraordinary* statement is incredible without overwhelming proof.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for GENERAL; NORMAL; USUAL.

REACH.

Synonyms:

arrive,attain,come to,enter,gain,get to,land.

To *reach*, in the sense here considered, is to *come to* by motion[301] or progress. *Attain* is now oftenest used of abstract relations; as, to *attain* success. When applied to concrete matters, it commonly signifies the overcoming of hindrance and difficulty; as, the storm-beaten ship at length *attained* the harbor. *Come* is the general word for moving to or toward the place where the speaker or writer is or supposes himself to be. To *reach* is to *come to* from a distance that is actually or relatively considerable; to stretch the journey, so to speak, across the distance, as, in its original meaning, one *reaches* an object by stretching out the hand. To *gain* is to *reach* or *attain* something eagerly sought; the wearied swimmer *reaches* or *gains* the shore. One *comes* in from his garden; he *reaches* home from a journey. To *arrive* is to *come to* a destination, to *reach* a point intended or proposed. The European steamer *arrives* in port, or *reaches* the harbor; the dismantled wreck drifts ashore, or *comes to* land. Compare ATTAIN.

Antonyms:

depart,embark,go,go away,leave,set out,set sail,start,weigh anchor.

REAL.

Synonyms:

actual,
authentic,
certain,
demonstrable,
developed,
essential,
genuine,
positive,
substantial,
true,
unquestionable,
veritable.

Real (L. *res*, a thing) signifies having existence, not merely in thought, but in fact, or being in fact according to appearance or claim; denoting the thing as distinguished from the name, or the existent as opposed to the non-existent. *Actual* has respect to a thing accomplished by doing, *real* to a thing as existing by whatever means or from whatever cause, *positive* to that which is fixed or established, *developed* to that which has reached completion by a natural process of unfolding. *Actual* is in opposition to the supposed, conceived, or reported, and furnishes the proof of its existence in itself; *real* is opposed to feigned or imaginary, and is capable of demonstration; *positive,* to the uncertain or doubtful; *developed*, to that which is undeveloped or incomplete. The *developed* is susceptible of proof; the *positive* precludes the necessity for proof. The present condition of a thing is its *actual* condition; ills are *real* that have a substantial reason; proofs are *positive* when they give the mind certainty; a plant is *developed* when it has reached its completed stage. *Real* estate is land, together with trees, water, minerals, or other natural accompaniments,[302] and any permanent structures that man has built upon it. Compare AUTHENTIC.

Antonyms:

conceived,
fabulous,
fanciful,
feigned,
fictitious,
hypothetical,
illusory,
imaginary,
reported,
supposed,
supposititious,
theoretical,
unreal,
untrue,
visionary.

REASON, v.

Synonyms:

argue,
contend,
controvert,
debate,
demonstrate,
discuss,
dispute,
establish,
prove,
question,
wrangle.

To *reason* is to examine by means of the reason, to prove by reasoning, or to influence or seek to influence others by reasoning or reasons. Persons may *contend* either from mere ill will or self-interest, or from the highest motives; "That ye should earnestly *contend* for the faith which was once delivered to the saints," *Jude* 3. To *argue* (L. *arguo*, show) is to make a matter clear by reasoning; to *discuss* (L. *dis*, apart, and *quatio*, shake) is, etymologically, to shake it apart for examination and analysis. *Demonstrate* strictly applies to mathematical or exact reasoning; *prove* may be used in the same sense, but is often applied to reasoning upon matters of fact by what is called probable evidence, which can give only moral and not absolute or mathematical certainty. To *demonstrate* is to force the mind to a conclusion by irresistible reasoning; to *prove* is rather to *establish* a fact by evidence; as, to *prove* one innocent or guilty. That which has been either *demonstrated* or *proved* so as to secure general acceptance is said to be *established*. *Reason* is a neutral word, not, like *argue*, *debate*, *discuss*, etc., naturally or necessarily implying contest. We *reason* about a matter by bringing up all that reason can give us on any side. A *dispute* may be personal, fractious, and petty; a *debate* is formal and orderly; if otherwise, it becomes a mere *wrangle*.

Prepositions:

We reason *with* a person *about* a subject, *for* or *against* an opinion; we reason a person *into* or *out of* a course of action; or we may reason *down* an opponent or opposition; one reasons *from* a cause *to* an effect.

REASON, n.

Synonyms:

account,
aim,
argument,
cause,
consideration,
design,
end,
ground,
motive,
object,
principle,
purpose.

While the *cause* of any event, act, or fact, as commonly understood,[303] is the power that makes it to be, the *reason* of or for it is the explanation given by the human mind; but *reason* is, in popular language, often used as equivalent to *cause*, especially in the sense of *final cause*. In the statement of any reasoning, the *argument* may be an entire syllogism, or the premises considered together apart from the conclusion, or in logical strictness the middle term only by which the particular conclusion is connected with the general statement. But when the *reasoning* is not in strict logical form, the middle term following the conclusion is called the *reason*; thus in the statement "All tyrants deserve death; Cæsar was a tyrant; Therefore Cæsar deserved death," "Cæsar was a tyrant" would in the strictest sense be called the *argument*; but if we say "Cæsar deserved death because he was a tyrant," the latter clause would be termed the *reason*. Compare CAUSE; REASON, *v.*; MIND; REASONING.

Prepositions:

The reason *of* a thing that is to be explained; the reason *for* a thing that is to be done.

REASONING.

Synonyms:

argument,
argumentation,
debate,
ratiocination.

Argumentation and *debate*, in the ordinary use of the words, suppose two parties alleging reasons for and against a proposition; the same idea appears figuratively when we speak of a *debate* or an *argument* with oneself, or of a *debate* between reason and conscience. *Reasoning* may be the act of one alone, as it is simply the orderly setting forth of reasons, whether for the instruction of inquirers, the confuting of opponents, or the clear establishment of truth for oneself. *Reasoning* may be either deductive or inductive. *Argument* or *argumentation* was formerly used of deductive *reasoning* only. With the rise of the inductive philosophy these words have come to be applied to inductive processes also; but while *reasoning* may be informal or even (as far as tracing its processes is concerned) unconscious, *argument* and *argumentation* strictly imply logical form. *Reasoning*, as denoting a process, is a broader term than *reason* or *argument*; many *arguments* or *reasons* may be included in a single chain of *reasoning*.

REBELLIOUS.

Synonyms:

contumacious,
disobedient,
insubordinate,
intractable,
mutinous,
refractory,
seditious,
uncontrollable,
ungovernable,
unmanageable.

Rebellious signifies being in a state of rebellion (see REBELLION under REVOLUTION), and is even extended to inanimate things that resist control or adaptation to human use. *Ungovernable* applies to that which successfully defies authority and power; *unmanageable* to that which resists the utmost exercise of skill or of skill and power combined; *rebellious*, to that which is defiant of authority, whether successfully or unsuccessfully; *seditious*, to that which partakes of or tends to excite a *rebellious* spirit, *seditious* suggesting more of covert plan, scheming, or conspiracy, *rebellious* more of overt act or open violence. While the *unmanageable* or *ungovernable* defies control, the *rebellious* or *seditious* may be forced to submission; as, the man has an *ungovernable* temper; the horses became *unmanageable*; he tamed his *rebellious* spirit. *Insubordinate* applies to the disposition to resist and resent control as such; *mutinous*, to open defiance of authority, especially in the army, navy, or merchant marine. A *contumacious* act or spirit is contemptuous as well as defiant. Compare OBSTINATE; REVOLUTION.

Antonyms:

compliant,
controllable,
deferential,
docile,
dutiful,
gentle,
manageable,
obedient,
submissive,
subservient,
tractable,
yielding.

Prepositions:

Rebellious *to* or *against* lawful authority.

RECORD.

Synonyms:

account,
archive,
catalogue,
chronicle,
document,
enrolment,
entry,
enumeration,
history,
inscription,
instrument,
inventory,
memorandum,
memorial,
muniment,
register,
roll,
schedule,
scroll.

A *memorial* is any object, whether a writing, a monument, or other permanent thing that is designed or adapted to keep something in remembrance. *Record* is a word of wide signification, applying to any writing, mark, or trace that serves as a *memorial* giving enduring attestation of an event or fact; an extended *account*, *chronicle*, or *history* is a *record*; so, too, may be a brief *inventory* or *memorandum*; the *inscription* on a tombstone is a *record* of the dead; the striæ on a rock-surface are the *record* of[305] a glacier's passage. A *register* is a formal or official written *record*, especially a series of entries made for preservation or reference; as, a *register* of births and deaths. *Archives*, in the sense here considered, are *documents* or *records*, often legal *records*, preserved in a public or official depository; the word *archives* is also applied to the place where such *documents* are regularly deposited and preserved. *Muniments* (L. *munio*, fortify) are *records* that enable one to defend his title. Compare HISTORY; STORY.

RECOVER.

Synonyms:

be cured or healed,
be restored,
cure,
heal,
reanimate,
recruit,
recuperate,
regain,
repossess,
restore,
resume,
retrieve.

The transitive use of *recover* in the sense of *cure*, *heal*, etc., as in *2 Kings* v, 6, "That thou mayest *recover* him of his leprosy," is now practically obsolete. The chief transitive use of *recover* is in the sense to obtain again after losing, *regain*, *repossess*, etc.; as, to *recover* stolen goods; to *recover* health. The intransitive sense, *be cured*, *be restored*, etc., is very common; as, to *recover* from sickness, terror, or misfortune.

Antonyms:

die,fail,grow worse,relapse,sink.

Prepositions:

From; rarely *of*; (*Law*) to recover judgment *against*, to recover damages *of* or *from* a person.

REFINEMENT.

Synonyms:

civilization,cultivation,culture,elegance,politeness.

Civilization applies to nations, denoting the sum of those civil, social, economic, and political attainments by which a community is removed from barbarism; a people may be civilized while still far from *refinement* or *culture*, but *civilization* is susceptible of various degrees and of continued progress. *Refinement* applies either to nations or individuals, denoting the removal of what is coarse and rude, and a corresponding attainment of what is delicate, elegant, and beautiful. *Cultivation*, denoting primarily the process of cultivating the soil or growing crops, then the improved condition of either which is the result, is applied in similar sense to the human mind and character, but in this usage is now largely superseded by the term *culture*, which denotes a high development[306] of the best qualities of man's mental and spiritual nature, with especial reference to the esthetic faculties and to graces of speech and manner, regarded as the expression of a refined nature. *Culture* in the fullest sense denotes that degree of *refinement* and development which results from continued *cultivation* through successive generations; a man's faculties may be brought to a high degree of *cultivation* in some specialty, while he himself remains uncultured even to the extent of coarseness and rudeness. Compare HUMANE; POLITE.

Antonyms:

barbarism, boorishness, brutality, clownishness, coarseness, grossness, rudeness, rusticity, savagery, vulgarity.

REFUTE.

Synonyms:

confound, confute, disprove, overthrow, repel.

To *refute* and to *confute* are to answer so as to admit of no reply. To *refute* a statement is to demonstrate its falsity by argument or countervailing proof; *confute* is substantially the same in meaning, tho differing in usage. *Refute* applies either to arguments and opinions or to accusations; *confute* is not applied to accusations and charges, but to arguments or opinions. *Refute* is not now applied to persons, but *confute* is in good use in this application; a person is *confuted* when his arguments are *refuted*.

RELIABLE.

Synonyms:

trustworthy, trusty.

The word *reliable* has been sharply challenged, but seems to have established its place in the language. The objection to its use on the ground that the suffix *-able* can not properly be added to an intransitive verb is answered by the citation of such words as "available," "conversable," "laughable," and the like, while, in the matter of usage, *reliable* has the authority of Coleridge, Martineau, Mill, Irving, Newman, Gladstone, and others of the foremost of recent English writers. The objection to the application of *reliable* to persons is not sustained by the use of the verb "rely," which is applied to persons in the authorized version of the Scriptures, in the writings of Shakespeare and Bacon, and in the usage of good speakers and writers. *Trusty* and *trustworthy* refer to inherent qualities of a high order, *trustworthy* being especially applied to persons, and denoting moral integrity and truthfulness; we speak[307] of a *trusty* sword, a *trusty* servant; we say the man is thoroughly *trustworthy*. *Reliable* is inferior in meaning, denoting merely the possession of such qualities as are needed for safe reliance; as, a *reliable* pledge; *reliable* information. A man is said to be *reliable* with reference not only to moral qualities, but to judgment, knowledge, skill, habit, or perhaps pecuniary ability; a thoroughly *trustworthy* person might not be *reliable* as a witness on account of unconscious sympathy, or as a security by reason of insufficient means. A *reliable* messenger is one who may be depended on to do his errand correctly and promptly; a *trusty* or *trustworthy* messenger is one who may be admitted to knowledge of the views and purposes of those who employ him, and who will be faithful beyond the mere letter of his commission. We can speak of a railroad-train as *reliable* when it can be depended on to arrive on time; but to speak of a *reliable* friend would be cold, and to speak of a warrior girding on his *reliable* sword would be ludicrous.

RELIGION.

Synonyms:

devotion,
faith,
godliness,
holiness,
morality,
pietism,
piety,
righteousness,
theology,
worship.

Piety is primarily filial duty, as of children to parents, and hence, in its highest sense, a loving obedience and service to God as the Heavenly Father; *pietism* often denotes a mystical, sometimes an affected *piety*; *religion* is the reverent acknowledgment both in heart and in act of a divine being. *Religion*, in the fullest and highest sense, includes all the other words of this group. *Worship* may be external and formal, or it may be the adoring reverence of the human spirit for the divine, seeking outward expression. *Devotion*, which in its fullest sense is self-consecration, is often used to denote an act of *worship*, especially prayer or adoration; as, he is engaged in his *devotions*. *Morality* is the system and practise of duty as required by the moral law, consisting chiefly in outward acts, and thus may be observed without spiritual rectitude of heart; *morality* is of necessity included in all true *religion*, which involves both outward act and spiritual service. *Godliness* (primarily godlikeness) is a character and spirit like that of God. *Holiness* is the highest, sinless perfection of any spirit, whether divine or human, tho often used for purity or for consecration. *Theology* is the science of *religion*, or the study and scientific statement of all that the human mind can know of[308] God. *Faith*, strictly the belief and trust which the soul exercises toward God, is often used as a comprehensive word for a whole system of *religion* considered as the object of *faith*; as, the Christian *faith*; the Mohammedan *faith*.

Antonyms:

atheism,
blasphemy,
godlessness,
impiety,
irreligion,
profanity,
sacrilege,
unbelief,
ungodliness,
wickedness.

RELUCTANT.

Synonyms:

averse, disinclined,loath, slow,
backward,indisposed, opposed,unwilling.

Reluctant (L. *re*, back, and *lucto*, strive, struggle) signifies struggling against what one is urged or impelled to do, or is actually doing; *averse* (L. *a*, from, and *verto*, turn) signifies turned away as with dislike or repugnance; *loath* (AS. *lath*, evil, hateful) signifies having a repugnance, disgust, or loathing for, tho the adjective *loath* is not so strong as the verb *loathe*. A dunce is always *averse* to study; a good student is *disinclined* to it when a fine morning tempts him out; he is *indisposed* to it in some hour of weariness. A man may be *slow* or *backward* in entering upon that to which he is by no means *averse*. A man is *loath* to believe evil of his friend, *reluctant* to speak of it, absolutely *unwilling* to use it to his injury. A legislator may be *opposed* to a certain measure, while not *averse* to what it aims to accomplish. Compare ANTIPATHY.

Antonyms:

desirous,disposed,eager,favorable,inclined,willing.

REMARK.

Synonyms:

annotation,comment,note,observation,utterance.

A *remark* is a saying or brief statement, oral or written, commonly made without much premeditation; a *comment* is an explanatory or critical *remark*, as upon some passage in a literary work or some act or speech in common life. A *note* is something to call attention, hence a brief written statement; in correspondence, a *note* is briefer than a letter. A *note* upon some passage in a book is briefer and less elaborate than a *comment*. *Annotations* are especially brief *notes*, commonly marginal, and closely following the text. *Comments*, *observations*, or *remarks* may be oral or written, *comments* being oftenest written, and *remarks* oftenest oral. An *observation* is properly the[309] result of fixed attention and reflection; a *remark* may be the suggestion of the instant. *Remarks* are more informal than a speech.

REND.

Synonyms:

break,cleave, mangle,rive, sever,sunder, burst, lacerate, rip, rupture, slit, tear.

Rend and *tear* are applied to the separating of textile substances into parts by force violently applied (*rend* also to frangible substances), *tear* being the milder, *rend* the stronger word. *Rive* is a wood-workers' word for parting wood in the way of the grain without a clean cut. To *lacerate* is to *tear* roughly the flesh or animal tissue, as by the teeth of a wild beast; a *lacerated* wound is distinguished from a wound made by a clean cut or incision. *Mangle* is a stronger word than *lacerate*; *lacerate* is more superficial, *mangle* more complete. To *burst* or *rupture* is to *tear* or *rend* by force from within, *burst* denoting the greater violence; as, to *burst* a gun; to *rupture* a blood-vessel; a steam-boiler may be *ruptured* when its substance is made to divide by internal pressure without explosion. To *rip*, as usually applied to garments or other articles made by sewing or stitching, is to divide along the line of a seam by cutting or breaking the stitches; the other senses bear some resemblance or analogy to this; as, to *rip* open a wound. Compare BREAK.

Antonyms:

heal, join, mend, reunite, secure, sew, solder, stitch, unite, weld.

RENOUNCE.

Synonyms:

abandon, abjure, deny, disavow, discard, disclaim, disown, forswear, recall, recant, refuse, reject, repudiate, retract, revoke.

Abjure, *discard*, *forswear*, *recall*, *recant*, *renounce*, *retract*, and *revoke*, like *abandon*, imply some previous connection. *Renounce* (L. *re*, back, and *nuntio*, bear a message) is to declare against and give up formally and definitively; as, to *renounce* the pomps and vanities of the world. *Recant* (L. *re*, back, and *canto*, sing) is to take back or *deny* formally and publicly, as a belief that one has held or professed. *Retract* (L. *re*, back, and *traho*, draw) is to take back something that one has said as not true or as what one is not ready to maintain; as, to *retract* a charge or accusation; one *recants* what was especially his own, he *retracts* what was directed[310] against another. *Repudiate* (L. *re*, back, or away, and *pudeo*, feel shame) is primarily to *renounce* as shameful, hence to divorce, as a wife; thus in general to put away with emphatic and determined repulsion; as, to *repudiate* a debt. To *deny* is to affirm to be not true or not binding; as, to *deny* a statement or a relationship; or to refuse to grant as something requested; as, his mother could not *deny* him what he desired. To *discard* is to cast away as useless or worthless; thus, one *discards* a worn garment; a coquette *discards* a lover. *Revoke* (L. *re*, back, and *voco*, call), etymologically the exact equivalent of the English *recall*, is to take back something given or granted; as, to *revoke* a command, a will, or a grant; *recall* may be used in the exact sense of *revoke*, but is often applied to persons, as *revoke* is not; we *recall* a messenger and *revoke* the order with which he was charged. *Abjure* (L. *ab*, away, and *juro*, swear) is etymologically the exact equivalent of the Saxon *forswear*, signifying to put away formally and under oath, as an error, heresy, or evil practise, or a condemned and detested person. A man *abjures* his religion, *recants* his belief, *abjures* or *renounces* his allegiance, *repudiates* another's claim, *renounces* his own, *retracts* a false statement. A person may *deny*, *disavow*, *disclaim*, *disown* what has been truly or falsely imputed to him or supposed to be his. He may *deny* his signature, *disavow* the act of his agent, *disown* his child; he may *repudiate* a just claim or a base suggestion. A native of the United States can not *abjure* or *renounce* allegiance to the Queen of England, but will promptly *deny* or *repudiate* it. Compare ABANDON.

Antonyms:

acknowledge,
advocate,
assert,
avow,
cherish,
claim,
defend,
hold,
maintain,
own,
proclaim,
retain,
uphold,
vindicate.

REPENTANCE.

Synonyms:

compunction,
contrition,
contriteness,
penitence,
regret,
remorse,
self-condemnation,
sorrow.

Regret is *sorrow* for any painful or annoying matter. One is moved with *penitence* for wrong-doing. To speak of *regret* for a fault of our own marks it as slighter than one regarding which we should express *penitence*. *Repentance* is *sorrow* for sin with *self-condemnation*, and complete turning from the sin. *Penitence* is transient, and may involve no change of character or conduct. There may be *sorrow* without *repentance*, as for consequences[311] only, but not *repentance* without *sorrow*. *Compunction* is a momentary sting of conscience, in view either of a past or of a contemplated act. *Contrition* is a subduing *sorrow* for sin, as against the divine holiness and love. *Remorse* is, as its derivation indicates, a biting or gnawing back of guilt upon the heart, with no turning of heart from the sin, and no suggestion of divine forgiveness.

Antonyms:

approval,
comfort,
complacency,
content,
hardness,
impenitence,
obduracy,
obstinacy,
self-approval,
self-complacency,
self-congratulation,
stubbornness.

Prepositions:

Repentance *of* or *in* heart, or *from* the heart; repentance *for* sins; *before* or *toward* God; *unto* life.

REPORT.

Synonyms:

account,
description,
narration,
narrative,
recital,
record,
rehearsal,
relation,
rumor,
statement,
story,
tale.

Account carries the idea of a commercial summary. A *statement* is definite, confined to essentials and properly to matters within the personal knowledge of the one who states them; as, an ante-mortem *statement*. A *narrative* is a somewhat extended and embellished *account* of events in order of time, ordinarily with a view to please or entertain. A *description* gives especial scope to the pictorial element. A *report* (L. *re*, back, and *porto*, bring), as its etymology implies, is something brought back, as by one sent to obtain information, and may be concise and formal or highly descriptive and dramatic. Compare ALLEGORY; HISTORY; RECORD.

REPROOF.

Synonyms:

admonition,
animadversion,
blame,
censure,
check,
chiding,
comment,
condemnation,
criticism,
denunciation,
disapproval,
objurgation,
rebuke,
reflection,
reprehension,.
reprimand,
reproach,
reproval,
upbraiding

Blame, *censure*, and *disapproval* may either be felt or uttered; *comment*, *criticism*, *rebuke*, *reflection*, *reprehension*, and *reproof* are always expressed. The same is true of *admonition* and *animadversion*. *Comment* and *criticism* may be favorable as well as censorious; they imply no superiority or authority on the part of him who utters them; nor do *reflection* or *reprehension*, which[312] are simply turning the mind back upon what is disapproved. *Reprehension* is supposed to be calm and just, and with good intent; it is therefore a serious matter, however mild, and is capable of great force, as expressed in the phrase severe *reprehension*. *Reflection* is often from mere ill feeling, and is likely to be more personal and less impartial than *reprehension*; we often speak of unkind or unjust *reflections*. *Rebuke*, literally a stopping of the mouth, is administered to a forward or hasty person; *reproof* is administered to one intentionally or deliberately wrong; both words imply authority in the reprover, and direct expression of *disapproval* to the face of the person *rebuked* or *reproved*. *Reprimand* is official *censure* formally administered by a superior to one under his command. *Animadversion* is *censure* of a high, authoritative, and somewhat formal kind. *Rebuke* may be given at the outset, or in the midst of an action; *animadversion*, *reflection*, *reprehension*, *reproof*, always follow the act; *admonition* is anticipatory, and meant to be preventive. *Check* is allied to *rebuke*, and given before or during action; *chiding* is nearer to *reproof*, but with more of personal bitterness and less of authority. Compare CONDEMN; REPROVE.

Antonyms:

applause,
approbation,
approval,
commendation,
encomium,
eulogy,
panegyric,
praise.

REPROVE.

Synonyms:

admonish,
blame,
censure,
chasten,
check,
chide,
condemn,
expostulate with,
find fault with,
rebuke,
remonstrate with,
reprehend,
reprimand,
reproach,
take to task,
upbraid,
warn.

To *censure* is to pronounce an adverse judgment that may or may not be expressed to the person *censured*; to *reprove* is to *censure* authoritatively, openly, and directly to the face of the person *reproved*; to *rebuke* is to *reprove* with sharpness, and often with abruptness, usually in the midst of some action or course of action deemed censurable; to *reprimand* is to *reprove* officially; to *blame* is a familiar word signifying to pass *censure* upon, make answerable, as for a fault; *blame* and *censure* apply either to persons or acts; *reprove* and *rebuke* are applied chiefly, and *reprimand* exclusively to persons. To *reproach* is to *censure* openly and vehemently, and with intense personal feeling as of grief or anger; as, to *reproach* one for ingratitude; *reproach* knows no distinction[313] of rank or character; a subject may *reproach* a king or a criminal judge. To *expostulate* or *remonstrate with* is to mingle reasoning and appeal with *censure* in the hope of winning one from his evil way, *expostulate* being the gentler, *remonstrate* the severer word. *Admonish* is the mildest of *reproving* words, and may even be used of giving a caution or warning where no wrong is implied, or of simply reminding of duty which might be forgotten. *Censure*, *rebuke*, and *reprove* apply to wrong that has been done; *warn* and *admonish* refer to anticipated error or fault. When one is *admonished* because of wrong already done, the view is still future, that he may not repeat or continue in the wrong. Compare CONDEMN; REPROOF.

Antonyms:

abet,
applaud,
approve,
cheer,
countenance,
encourage,
impel,
incite,
instigate,
urge on.

REQUITE.

Synonyms:

avenge,
compensate,
punish,
quit,
remunerate,
repay,
revenge,
reward,

pay,
pay off,
reciprocate,
recompense,
retaliate,
return,
satisfy,
settle with.

To *repay* or to *retaliate*, to *punish* or to *reward*, may be to make some return very inadequate to the benefit or injury received, or the right or wrong done; but to *requite* (according to its etymology) is to make so full and adequate a *return* as to *quit* oneself of all obligation of favor or hostility, of punishment or *reward*. *Requite* is often used in the more general sense of *recompense* or *repay*, but always with the suggestion, at least, of the original idea of full equivalent; when one speaks of *requiting* kindness with ingratitude, the expression gains force from the comparison of the actual with the proper and appropriate *return*. Compare PAY.

Antonyms:

absolve,
acquit,
excuse,
forget,
forgive,
neglect,
overlook,
pardon,
pass over,
slight.

Preposition:

To requite injury *with* injury is human, but not Christian.

REST.

Synonyms:

calm,
calmness,
cessation,
ease,
intermission,
pause,
peace,
peacefulness,
quiescence,
quiet,
quietness,
quietude,
recreation,
repose,
sleep,
slumber,
stay,
stillness,
stop,
tranquillity.

Ease denotes freedom from cause of disturbance, whether[314] external or internal. *Quiet* denotes freedom from agitation, or especially from annoying sounds. *Rest* is a *cessation* of activity especially of wearying or painful activity. *Recreation* is some pleasing activity of certain organs or faculties that affords *rest* to other parts of our nature that have become weary. *Repose* is a laying down, primarily of the body, and figuratively a similar freedom from toil or strain of mind. *Repose* is more complete than *rest*; a *pause* is a momentary *cessation* of activity; a black-smith finds a temporary *rest* while the iron is heating, but he does not yield to *repose*; in a *pause* of battle a soldier *rests* on his arms; after the battle the victor *reposes* on his laurels. *Sleep* is the perfection of *repose*, the most complete *rest*; *slumber* is a light and ordinarily pleasant form of *sleep*. In the figurative sense, *rest* of mind, soul, conscience, is not mere *cessation* of activity, but a pleasing, tranquil relief from all painful and wearying activity; *repose* is even more deep, tranquil, and complete.

Antonyms:

agitation,
commotion,
disquiet,
disturbance,
excitement,
motion,
movement,
restlessness,
rush,
stir,
strain,
toil,
tumult,
unrest,
work.

RESTIVE.

Synonyms:

balky,
fidgety,
fractious,
fretful,
frisky,
impatient,
intractable,
mulish,
mutinous,
obstinate,
rebellious,
recalcitrant,
refractory,
resentful,
restiff,
restless,
skittish,
stubborn,
unruly,
vicious.

Balky, *mulish*, *obstinate*, and *stubborn* are synonyms of *restive* only in an infrequent if not obsolete use; the supposed sense of "tending to rest," "standing stubbornly still," is scarcely supported by any examples, and those cited to support that meaning often fail to do so. The disposition to offer active resistance to control by any means whatever is what is commonly indicated by *restive* in the best English speech and literature. Dryden speaks of "the pampered colt" as "*restiff* to the rein;" but the rein is not used to propel a horse forward, but to hold him in, and it is against this that he is "*restiff*." A horse may be made *restless* by flies or by martial music, but with no refractoriness; the *restive* animal impatiently resists or struggles to break from control, as by bolting, flinging his rider, or otherwise. With this the metaphorical use of the word agrees, which is always in the sense of such terms as *impatient*, *intractable*, *rebellious*, and the like; a people *restive*[315] under despotism are not disposed to "rest" under it, but to resist it and fling it off.

Antonyms:

docile,
gentle,
manageable,
obedient,
passive,
peaceable,
quiet,
submissive,
tractable,
yielding.

RESTRAIN.

Synonyms:

abridge,
bridle,
check,
circumscribe,
confine,
constrain,
curb,
hinder,
hold,
hold back,
hold in,
keep,
keep back,
keep down,
keep in,
keep under,
repress,
restrict,
suppress,
withhold.

To *restrain* is to *hold back* from acting, proceeding, or advancing, either by physical or moral force. *Constrain* is positive; *restrain* is negative; one is *constrained* to an action; he is *restrained* from an action. *Constrain* refers almost exclusively to moral force, *restrain* frequently to physical force, as when we speak of putting one under restraint. To *restrain* an action is to hold it partially or wholly in check, so that it is under pressure even while it acts; to *restrict* an action is to fix a limit or boundary which it may not pass, but within which it is free. To *repress*, literally to press back, is to hold in check, and perhaps only temporarily, that which is still very active; it is a feebler word than *restrain*; to *suppress* is finally and effectually to put down; *suppress* is a much stronger word than *restrain*; as, to *suppress* a rebellion. Compare ARREST; BIND; KEEP.

Antonyms:

aid, animate, arouse, emancipate, encourage, excite, free, impel, incite, let loose, release, set free.

RETIREMENT.

Synonyms:

loneliness, privacy, seclusion, solitude.

In *retirement* one withdraws from association he has had with others; we speak of the *retirement* of a public man to private life, tho he may still be much in company. In *seclusion* one shuts himself away from the society of all except intimate friends or attendants; in *solitude* no other person is present. While *seclusion* is ordinarily voluntary, *solitude* may be enforced; we speak of the *solitude* rather than the *seclusion* of a prisoner. As "private" denotes what concerns ourselves individually, *privacy* denotes freedom from the presence or observation of those not concerned or whom we desire not to have concerned in our affairs;[316] *privacy* is more commonly temporary than *seclusion*; we speak of a moment's *privacy*. There may be *loneliness* without *solitude*, as amid an unsympathizing crowd, and *solitude* without *loneliness*, as when one is glad to be alone.

Antonyms:

association, companionship, company, converse, fellowship, society.

REVELATION.

Synonyms:

apocalypse, disclosure, manifestation.

Revelation (L. *re*, back, and *velum*, veil), literally an unveiling, is the act or process of making known what was before secret or hidden, or what may still be future. *Apocalypse* (Gr. *apo*, from, and *kalypto*, cover), literally an uncovering, comes into English as the name of the closing book of the Bible. The *Apocalypse* unveils the future, as if to the very gaze of the seer; the whole gospel is a *disclosure* of the mercy of God; the character of Christ is a *manifestation* of the divine holiness and love; all Scripture is a *revelation* of the divine will. Or we might say that nature is a *manifestation* of the divine character and will, of which Scripture is the fuller and more express *revelation*.

Antonyms:

cloud,
cloudiness,
concealment,
hiding,
mystery,
obscuration,
shrouding,
veiling.

REVENGE.

Synonyms:

avenging,
requital,
retaliation,
retribution,
vengeance.

Revenge is the act of making return for an injury done to oneself by doing injury to another person. *Retaliation* and *revenge* are personal and often bitter. *Retaliation* may be partial; *revenge* is meant to be complete, and may be excessive. *Vengeance*, which once meant an indignant vindication of justice, now signifies the most furious and unsparing *revenge*. *Revenge* emphasizes more the personal injury in return for which it is inflicted, *vengeance* the ill desert of those upon whom it is inflicted. A *requital* is strictly an even return, such as to quit one of obligation for what has been received, and even if poor or unworthy is given as complete and adequate. *Avenging* and *retribution* give a solemn sense of exact justice, *avenging* being more personal in its infliction, whether by God or man, and *retribution* the impersonal visitation[317] of the doom of righteous law. Compare AVENGE; HATRED; REQUITE.

Antonyms:

compassion,
excuse,
forgiveness,
grace,
mercy,
pardon,
pity,
reconciliation.

Prepositions:

To take revenge *upon* the enemy, *for* the injury.

REVOLUTION.

Synonyms:

anarchy,
confusion,
disintegration,
disorder,
insubordination,
insurrection,
lawlessness,
mutiny,
rebellion,
revolt,
riot,
sedition,
tumult.

The essential idea of *revolution* is a change in the form of government or constitution, or a change of rulers, otherwise than as provided by the laws of succession, election, etc.; while such change is apt to involve armed hostilities, these make no necessary part of the *revolution*. The *revolution* by which Dom Pedro was dethroned, and Brazil changed from an empire to a republic, was accomplished without a battle, and almost without a shot. *Anarchy* refers to the condition of a state when human government is superseded or destroyed by factions or other causes. *Lawlessness* is a temper of mind or condition of the community which may result in *anarchy*. *Confusion*, *disorder*, *riot*, and *tumult* are incidental and temporary outbreaks of *lawlessness*, but may not be *anarchy*. *Insubordination* is individual disobedience. *Sedition* is the plotting, *rebellion* the fighting, against the existing government, but always with the purpose of establishing some other government in its place. When *rebellion* is successful it is called *revolution*; but there may be *revolution* without *rebellion*; as, the English *Revolution* of 1688. A *revolt* is an uprising against existing authority without the comprehensive views of change in the form or administration of government that are involved in *revolution*. *Anarchy*, when more than temporary *disorder*, is a proposed *disintegration* of society, in which it is imagined that social order might exist without government. Slaves make *insurrection*; soldiers or sailors break out in *mutiny*; subject provinces rise in *revolt*. Compare SOCIALISM.

Antonyms:

authority,
command,
control,
domination,
dominion,
empire,
government,
law,
loyalty,
obedience,
order,
rule,
sovereignty,
submission,
supremacy.

[318]

REVOLVE.

Synonyms:

roll,rotate,turn.

Any round body *rolls* which continuously touches with successive portions of its surface successive portions of another surface; a wagon-wheel *rolls* along the ground. To *rotate* is said of a body that has a circular motion about its own center or axis; to *revolve* is said of a body that moves in a curving path, as a circle or an ellipse, about a center outside of itself, so as to return periodically to the same relative position that it held at some previous time. A *revolving* body may also either *rotate* or *roll* at the same time; the earth *revolves* around the sun, and *rotates* on its own axis; in popular usage, the earth is often said to *revolve* about its own axis, or to have a daily "revolution," but *rotate* and "rotation" are the more accurate terms. A cylinder over which an endless belt is drawn is said to *roll* as regards the belt, tho it *rotates* as regards its own axis. Any object that is in contact with or connected with a *rolling* body is often said to *roll*; as, the car *rolls* smoothly along the track. Objects whose motion approximates or suggests a rotary motion along a supporting surface are also said to *roll*; as, ocean waves *roll* in upon the shore, or the ship *rolls* in the trough of the sea. *Turn* is a conversational and popular word often used vaguely for *rotate* or *revolve*, or for any motion about a fixed point, especially for a motion less than a complete "rotation" or "revolution;" a man *turns* his head or *turns* on his heel; the gate *turns* on its hinges.

Antonyms:

bind,chafe,grind,slide,slip,stand,stick.

RIDDLE, n.

Synonyms:

conundrum,enigma,paradox,problem,puzzle.

Conundrum, a word of unknown origin, signifies some question or statement in which some hidden and fanciful resemblance is involved, the answer often depending upon a pun; an *enigma* is a dark saying; a *paradox* is a true statement that at first appears absurd or contradictory; a *problem* is something thrown out for solution; *puzzle* (from *oppose*) referred originally to the intricate arguments by which disputants opposed each other in the old philosophic schools. The *riddle* is an ambiguous or paradoxical statement with a hidden meaning to be guessed by the mental acuteness of the one to whom it is proposed; the *riddle* is[319] not so petty as the *conundrum*, and may require much acuteness for its answer; a *problem* may require simply study and scholarship, as a *problem* in mathematics; a *puzzle* may be in something other than verbal statement, as a dissected map or any perplexing mechanical contrivance. Both *enigma* and *puzzle* may be applied to any matter difficult of answer or solution, *enigma* conveying an idea of greater dignity, *puzzle* applying to something more commonplace and mechanical; there are many dark *enigmas* in human life and in the course of providence; the location of a missing object is often a *puzzle*.

Antonyms:

answer,axiom,explanation,proposition,solution.

RIGHT, n.

Synonyms:

claim, franchise, liberty, prerogative,
exemption,immunity,license,privilege.

A *right* is that which one may properly demand upon considerations of justice, morality, equity, or of natural or positive law. A *right* may be either general or special, natural or artificial. "Life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness" are the natural and inalienable *rights* of all men; *rights* of property, inheritance, etc., are individual and special, and often artificial, as the *right* of inheritance by primogeniture. A *privilege* is always special, exceptional, and artificial; it is something not enjoyed by all, or only to be enjoyed on certain special conditions, a peculiar benefit, favor, advantage, etc. A *privilege* may be of doing or avoiding; in the latter case it is an *exemption* or *immunity*; as, a *privilege* of hunting or fishing; *exemption* from military service; *immunity* from arrest. A *franchise* is a specific *right* or *privilege* granted by the government or established as such by governmental authority; as, the elective *franchise*; a railroad *franchise*. A *prerogative* is an official *right* or *privilege*, especially one inherent in the royal or sovereign power; in a wider sense it is an exclusive and peculiar *privilege* which one possesses by reason of being what he is; as, reason is the *prerogative* of man; kings and nobles have often claimed *prerogatives* and *privileges* opposed to the inherent *rights* of the people. Compare DUTY; JUSTICE.

RISE.

Synonyms:

arise,ascend,emanate,flow,issue,proceed,spring.

To *rise* is to move up or upward whether slowly or quickly,[320] whether through the least or greatest distance; the waves *rise*; the mists *rise*; the river *rises* after heavy rains; as said of persons, to *rise* is to come to an erect position after kneeling, sitting, reclining, or lying down; as, to *rise* from a sick-bed; my friend *rose* as I entered; the guests *rose* to depart; so a deliberative assembly or a committee is said to *rise* when it breaks up a session; a sun or star *rises* when to our apprehension it comes above the horizon and begins to go up the sky. To *ascend* is to go far upward, and is often used in a stately sense; as, Christ *ascended* to heaven. The shorter form *rise* is now generally preferred to the longer form *arise*, except in poetic or elevated style. The sun *rises* or *arises*; the river *springs* at a bound from the foot of the glacier and *flows* through the lands to the ocean. Smoke *issues* from a chimney and *ascends* toward the sky. Light and heat *emanate* from the sun.

Antonyms:

decline,descend,drop,fall,go down,set,settle,sink.

Prepositions:

Rise *from* slumber; rise *to* duty; rise *at* the summons; we rose *with* the lark.

ROBBER.

Synonyms:

bandit,
brigand,
depredator,
despoiler,
freebooter,
highwayman,
pirate,
plunderer,

buccaneer,
burglar,
footpad,
forager,
marauder,
pillager,
raider,
thief.

A *robber* seeks to obtain the property of others by force or intimidation; a *thief* by stealth and secrecy. In early English *thief* was freely used in both senses, as in Shakespeare and the Authorized Version of the English Bible, which has "two *thieves*" (*Matt.* xxvii, 38), where the Revised Version more correctly substitutes "two *robbers*."

ROYAL.

Synonyms:

august,
kinglike,
kingly,
magnificent,
majestic,
munificent,
princely,
regal.

Royal denotes that which actually belongs or pertains to a monarch; the *royal* residence is that which the king occupies, *royal* raiment that which the king wears. *Regal* denotes that which in outward state is appropriate for a king; a subject may assume *regal* magnificence in residence, dress, and equipage. *Kingly* denotes that which is worthy of a king in personal qualities,[321] especially of character and conduct; as, a *kingly* bearing; a *kingly* resolve. *Princely* is especially used of treasure, expenditure, gifts, etc., as *princely* munificence, a *princely* fortune, where *regal* could not so well be used and *royal* would change the sense. The distinctions between these words are not absolute, but the tendency of the best usage is as here suggested.

Antonyms:

beggarly,contemptible,mean,poor,servile,slavish,vile.

RUSTIC.

Synonyms:

agricultural,
artless,
awkward,
boorish,
bucolic,
clownish,
coarse,
countrified,
country,
hoidenish,
inelegant,
outlandish,
pastoral,
plain,
rude,
rural,
sylvan,
uncouth,
unpolished,
unsophisticated,
untaught,
verdant.

Rural and *rustic* are alike derived from the Latin *rus*, country, and may be alike defined as pertaining to, characteristic of, or dwelling in the country; but in usage *rural* refers especially to scenes or objects in the country, considered as the work of nature; *rustic* refers to their effect upon man or to their condition as affected by human agency; as, a *rural* scene; a *rustic* party; a *rustic* lass. We speak, however, of the *rural* population, *rural* simplicity, etc. *Rural* has always a favorable sense; *rustic* frequently an unfavorable one, as denoting a lack of culture and refinement; thus, *rustic* politeness expresses that which is well-meant, but awkward; similar ideas are suggested by a *rustic* feast, *rustic* garb, etc. *Rustic* is, however, often used of a studied simplicity, an artistic rudeness, which is pleasing and perhaps beautiful; as, a *rustic* cottage; a *rustic* chair. *Pastoral* refers to the care of flocks, and to the shepherd's life with the pleasing associations suggested by the old poetic ideal of that life; as, *pastoral* poetry. *Bucolic* is kindred to *pastoral*, but is a less elevated term, and sometimes slightly contemptuous.

Antonyms:

accomplished,
city-like,
cultured,
elegant,
polished,
polite,
refined,
urban,
urbane,
well-bred.

SACRAMENT.

Synonyms:

ceremony,
communion,
eucharist,
Lord's Supper,
observance,
ordinance,
rite,
service,
solemnity.

Any religious act, especially a public act, viewed as a means[322] of serving God is called a *service*; the word commonly includes the entire series of exercises of a single occasion of public worship. A religious *service* ordained as an outward and visible sign of an inward and spiritual grace is called a *sacrament*. *Ceremony* is a form expressing reverence, or at least respect; we may speak of religious *ceremonies*, the *ceremonies* of polite society, the *ceremonies* of a coronation, an inauguration, etc. An *observance* has more than a formal obligation, reaching or approaching a religious sacredness; a stated religious *observance*, viewed as established by authority, is called an *ordinance*; viewed as an established custom, it is a *rite*. The terms *sacrament* and *ordinance*, in the religious sense, are often used interchangeably; the *ordinance* derives its sacredness from the authority that ordained it, while the *sacrament* possesses a sacredness due to something in itself, even when viewed simply as a representation or memorial. The Lord's Supper is the Scriptural name for the *observance* commemorating the death of Christ; the word *communion* is once applied to it (*1 Cor.* x, 16), but not as a distinctive name; at an early period, however, the name *communion* was so applied, as denoting the communing of Christians with their Lord, or with one another. The term *eucharist* describes the Lord's Supper as a thanksgiving *service*; it is also called by preeminence *the sacrament*, as the ratifying of a solemn vow of consecration to Christ.

SAGACIOUS.

Synonyms:

able,
acute,
intelligent,
keen,
perspicacious,
quick of scent,
sensible,
sharp,

apt,
clear-sighted,
discerning,
keen-sighted,
keen-witted,
judicious,
quick-scented,
rational,
sage,
sharp-witted,
shrewd,
wise.

Sagacious refers to a power of tracing the hidden or recondite by slight indications, as by instinct or intuition; it is not now applied to mere keenness of sense-perception. We do not call a hound *sagacious* in following a clear trail; but if he loses the scent, as at the edge of a stream, and circles around till he strikes it again, his conduct is said to be *sagacious*. In human affairs *sagacious* refers to a power of ready, far-reaching, and accurate inference from observed facts perhaps in themselves very slight, that seems like a special sense; or to a similar readiness to foresee the results of any action, especially upon human motives or conduct—a kind of prophetic common sense. *Sagacious* is a broader[323] and nobler word than *shrewd*, and not capable of the invidious sense which the latter word often bears; on the other hand, *sagacious* is less lofty and comprehensive than *wise* in its full sense, and more limited to matters of direct practical moment. Compare ASTUTE; WISDOM.

Antonyms:

absurd,
dull,
foolish,
futile,
ignorant,
irrational,
obtuse,
senseless,
silly,
simple,
sottish,
stupid,
undiscerning,
unintelligent.

SALE.

Synonyms:

bargain,
barter,
change,
deal,
exchange,
trade.

A *bargain* is strictly an agreement or contract to buy and sell, tho the word is often used to denote the entire transaction and also as a designation for the thing sold or purchased. *Change* and *exchange* are words of wider signification, applying only incidentally to the transfer of property or value; a *change* secures something different in any way or by any means; an *exchange* secures something as an equivalent or return, tho not necessarily as payment for what is given. *Barter* is the *exchange* of one commodity for another, the word being used generally with reference to portable commodities. *Trade* in the broad sense may apply to vast businesses (as the book-*trade*), but as denoting a single transaction is used chiefly in regard to things of moderate value, when it becomes nearly synonymous with *barter*. *Sale* is commonly, and with increasing strictness, limited to the transfer of property for money, or for something estimated at a money value or considered as equivalent to so much money in hand or to be paid. A *deal* in the political sense is a *bargain*, substitution, or transfer for the benefit of certain persons or parties against all others; as, the nomination was the result of a *deal*; in business it may have a similar meaning, but it frequently signifies simply a *sale* or *exchange*, a dealing; as, a heavy *deal* in stocks.

SAMPLE.

Synonyms:

case,
example,
exemplification,
illustration,
instance,
specimen.

A *sample* is a portion taken at random out of a quantity supposed to be homogeneous, so that the qualities found in the *sample* may reasonably be expected to be found in the whole; as, a *sample* of sugar; a *sample* of cloth. A *specimen* is one unit of a series,[324] or a fragment of a mass, all of which is supposed to possess the same essential qualities; as, a *specimen* of coinage, or of architecture, or a *specimen* of quartz. No other unit or portion may be exactly like the *specimen*, while all the rest is supposed to be exactly like the *sample*. An *instance* is a *sample* or *specimen* of action. Compare EXAMPLE.

Antonyms:

abnormality,aggregate,exception,monstrosity,total,whole.

SATISFY.

Synonyms:

cloy,
content,
fill,
glut,
sate,
satiate,
suffice,
surfeit.

To *satisfy* is to furnish just enough to meet physical, mental, or spiritual desire. To *sate* or *satiate* is to gratify desire so fully as for a time to extinguish it. To *cloy* or *surfeit* is to gratify to the point of revulsion or disgust. *Glut* is a strong but somewhat coarse word applied to the utmost satisfaction of vehement appetites and passions; as, to *glut* a vengeful spirit with slaughter; we speak of *glutting* the market with a supply so excessive as to extinguish the demand. Much less than is needed to *satisfy* may *suffice* a frugal or abstemious person; less than a sufficiency may *content* one of a patient and submissive spirit. Compare PAY; REQUITE.

Antonyms:

check,
deny,
disappoint,
refuse,
restrain,
restrict,
starve,
stint,
straiten,
tantalize.

Prepositions:

Satisfy *with* food, *with* gifts, etc.; satisfy one (in the sense of make satisfaction) *for* labors and sacrifices; satisfy oneself *by* or *upon* inquiry.

SCHOLAR.

Synonyms:

disciple,learner,pupil,savant,student.

The primary sense of a *scholar* is one who is being schooled; thence the word passes to denote one who is apt in school work, and finally one who is thoroughly schooled, master of what the schools can teach, an erudite, accomplished person: when used without qualification, the word is generally understood in this latter sense; as, he is manifestly a *scholar*. *Pupil* signifies one under the close personal supervision or instruction of a teacher or tutor. Those under instruction in schools below the academic[325] grade are technically and officially termed *pupils*. The word *pupil* is uniformly so used in the Reports of the Commissioner of Education of the United States, but popular American usage prefers *scholar* in the original sense; as, teachers and *scholars* enjoyed a holiday. Those under instruction in Sunday-schools are uniformly designated as Sunday-school *scholars*. *Student* is applied to those in the higher grades or courses of study, as the academic, collegiate, scientific, etc. *Student* suggests less proficiency than *scholar* in the highest sense, the *student* being one who is learning, the *scholar* one who has learned. On the other hand, *student* suggests less of personal supervision than *pupil*; thus, the college *student* often becomes the private *pupil* of some instructor in special studies. For *disciple*, etc., compare synonyms for ADHERENT.

Antonyms:

dunce,fool,idiot,idler,ignoramus,illiterate person.

SCIENCE.

Synonyms:

art,knowledge.

Knowledge of a single fact, not known as related to any other, or of many facts not known as having any mutual relations or as comprehended under any general law, does not reach the meaning of *science*; *science* is *knowledge* reduced to law and embodied in system. The *knowledge* of various countries gathered by an observant traveler may be a heterogeneous medley of facts, which gain real value only when coordinated and arranged by the man of *science*. *Art* always relates to something to be done, *science* to something to be known. Not only must *art* be discriminated from *science*, but *art* in the industrial or mechanical sense must be distinguished from *art* in the esthetic sense; the former aims chiefly at utility, the latter at beauty. The mechanic *arts* are the province of the artisan, the esthetic or fine *arts* are the province of the artist; all the industrial *arts*, as of weaving or printing, arithmetic or navigation, are governed by exact rules. *Art* in the highest esthetic sense, while it makes use of rules, transcends all rule; no rules can be given for the production of a painting like Raffael's "Transfiguration," a statue like the Apollo Belvedere, or a poem like the Iliad. *Science* does not, like the mechanic *arts*, make production its direct aim, yet its possible productive application in the *arts* is a constant stimulus to scientific[326] investigation; the *science*, as in the case of chemistry or electricity, is urged on to higher development by the demands of the *art*, while the *art* is perfected by the advance of the *science*. Creative *art* seeking beauty for its own sake is closely akin to pure *science* seeking *knowledge* for its own sake. Compare KNOWLEDGE; LITERATURE.

SECURITY.

Synonyms:

bail,earnest,gage,pledge,surety.

The first four words agree in denoting something given or deposited as an assurance of something to be given, paid, or done. An *earnest* is of the same kind as that to be given, a portion of it delivered in advance, as when part of the purchase-money is paid, according to the common expression, "to bind the bargain." A *pledge* or *security* may be wholly different in kind from that to be given or paid, and may greatly exceed it in value. *Security* may be of real or personal property—anything of sufficient value to make the creditor secure; a *pledge* is always of personal property or chattels. Every pawnshop contains unredeemed *pledges*; land, merchandise, bonds, etc., are frequently offered and accepted as *security*. A person may become *security* or *surety* for another's payment of a debt, appearance in court, etc.; in the latter case, he is said to become *bail* for that person; the person accused gives *bail* for himself. *Gage* survives only as a literary word, chiefly in certain phrases; as, "the *gage* of battle."

Prepositions:

Security *for* the payment of a debt; security *to* the state, *for* the prisoner, *in* the sum of a thousand dollars.

SELF-ABNEGATION.

Synonyms:

self-control,self-devotion, self-renunciation,
self-denial, self-immolation,self-sacrifice.

Self-control is holding oneself within due limits in pleasures and duties, as in all things else; *self-denial*, the giving up of pleasures for the sake of duty. *Self-renunciation* surrenders conscious rights and claims; *self-abnegation* forgets that there is anything to surrender. There have been devotees who practised very little *self-denial* with very much *self-renunciation*. A mother will care for a sick child with complete *self-abnegation*, but without a thought of *self-denial*. *Self-devotion* is heart-consecration[327] of self to a person or cause with readiness for any needed sacrifice. *Self-sacrifice* is the strongest and completest term of all, and contemplates the gift of self as actually made. We speak of the *self-sacrifice* of Christ, where any other of the above terms would be feeble or inappropriate.

Antonyms:

self-gratification,self-indulgence,selfishness,self-seeking,self-will.

SEND.

Synonyms:

cast,
dart,
delegate,
depute,
despatch,
discharge,
dismiss,
drive,
emit,
fling,
forward,
hurl,
impel,
lance,
launch,
project,
propel,
sling,
throw,
transmit.

To *send* is to cause to go or pass from one place to another, and always in fact or thought away from the agent or agency that controls the act. *Send* in its most common use involves personal agency without personal presence; according to the adage, "If you want your business done, go; if not, *send*;" one *sends* a letter or a bullet, a messenger or a message. In all the derived uses this same idea controls; if one *sends* a ball into his own heart, the action is away from the directing hand, and he is viewed as the passive recipient of his own act; it is with an approach to personification that we speak of the bow *sending* the arrow, or the gun the shot. To *despatch* is to *send* hastily or very promptly, ordinarily with a destination in view; to *dismiss* is to *send* away from oneself without reference to a destination; as, to *dismiss* a clerk, an application, or an annoying subject. To *discharge* is to *send* away so as to relieve a person or thing of a load; we *discharge* a gun or *discharge* the contents; as applied to persons, *discharge* is a harsher term than *dismiss*. To *emit* is to *send* forth from within, with no reference to a destination; as, the sun *emits* light and heat. *Transmit*, from the Latin, is a dignified term, often less vigorous than the Saxon *send*, but preferable at times in literary or scientific use; as, to *transmit* the crown, or the feud, from generation to generation; to *transmit* a charge of electricity. *Transmit* fixes the attention more on the intervening agency, as *send* does upon the points of departure and destination.

Antonyms:

bring,
carry,
convey,
get,
give,
hand,
hold,
keep,
receive,
retain.

Prepositions:

To send *from* the hand *to* or *toward* (rarely *at*) a mark; send[328] *to* a friend *by* a messenger or *by* mail; send a person *into* banishment; send a shell *among* the enemy.

SENSATION.

Synonyms:

emotion,feeling,perception,sense.

Sensation is the mind's consciousness due to a bodily affection, as of heat or cold; *perception* is the cognition of some external object which is the cause or occasion of the *sensation*; the *sensation* of heat may be connected with the *perception* of a fire. While *sensations* are connected with the body, *emotions*, as joy, grief, etc., are wholly of the mind. "As the most of them [the *sensations*] are positively agreeable or the opposite, they are nearly akin to those *emotions*, as hope or terror, or those passions, as anger and envy, which are acknowledged by all to belong exclusively to the spirit, and to involve no relation whatever to matter or the bodily organism. Such *feelings* are not infrequently styled *sensations*, though improperly." Porter *Human Intellect* § 112, p. 128. [S. '90.] *Feeling* is a general term popularly denoting what is felt, whether through the body or by the mind alone, and includes both *sensation* and *emotion*. A *sense* is an organ or faculty of *sensation* or of *perception*.

SENSIBILITY.

Synonyms:

feeling,impressibility,sensitiveness,susceptibility.

Sensibility in the philosophical sense, denotes the capacity of emotion or feeling, as distinguished from the intellect and the will. (Compare synonyms for SENSATION.) In popular use *sensibility* denotes sometimes capacity of feeling of any kind; as, *sensibility* to heat or cold; sometimes, a peculiar readiness to be the subject of feeling, especially of the higher feelings; as, the *sensibility* of the artist or the poet; a person of great or fine *sensibility*. *Sensitiveness* denotes an especial delicacy of *sensibility*, ready to be excited by the slightest cause, as displayed, for instance, in the "sensitive-plant." *Susceptibility* is rather a capacity to take up, receive, and, as it were, to contain feeling, so that a person of great *susceptibility* is capable of being not only readily but deeply moved; *sensitiveness* is more superficial, *susceptibility* more pervading. Thus, in physics, the *sensitiveness* of a magnetic needle is the ease with which it may be deflected, as by another magnet; its *susceptibility* is the degree to which it can be magnetized by a[329] given magnetic force or the amount of magnetism it will hold. So a person of great *sensitiveness* is quickly and keenly affected by any external influence, as by music, pathos, or ridicule, while a person of great *susceptibility* is not only touched, but moved to his inmost soul.

Antonyms:

coldness,deadness,hardness,insensibility,numbness,unconsciousness.

Prepositions:

The sensibility *of* the organism *to* atmospheric changes.

SEVERE.

Synonyms:

austere,
hard,
harsh,
inexorable,
inflexible,
morose,
relentless,
rigid,
rigorous,
stern,
stiff,
strict,
uncompromising,
unmitigated,
unrelenting,
unyielding.

That is *severe* which is devoid of all softness, mildness, tenderness, indulgence or levity, or (in literature and art) devoid of unnecessary ornament, amplification, or embellishment of any kind; as, a *severe* style; as said of anything painful, *severe* signifies such as heavily taxes endurance or resisting power; as, a *severe* pain, fever, or winter. *Rigid* signifies primarily *stiff*, resisting any effort to change its shape; a corpse is said to be *rigid* in death; hence, in metaphorical sense, a *rigid* person or character is one that resists all efforts to change the will or course of conduct; a *rigid* rule or statement is one that admits of no deviation. *Rigorous* is nearly akin to *rigid*, but is a stronger word, having reference to action or active qualities, as *rigid* does to state or character; a *rigid* rule may be *rigorously* enforced. *Strict* (L. *stringo*, bind) signifies bound or stretched tight, tense, strenuously exact. *Stern* unites harshness and authority with strictness or severity; *stern*, as said even of inanimate objects, suggests something authoritative or forbidding. *Austere* signifies severely simple or temperate, *strict* in self-restraint or discipline, and similarly *unrelenting* toward others. We speak of *austere* morality, *rigid* rules, *rigorous* discipline, *stern* commands, *severe* punishment, *harsh* speech or a *harsh* voice, *hard* requirements, *strict* injunctions, and *strict* obedience. *Strict* discipline holds one exactly and unflinchingly to the rule; *rigorous* discipline punishes severely any infraction of it. The *austere* character is seldom lovely, but it is always strong and may be grand, commanding, and estimable.

Antonyms:

affable,
bland,
easy,
genial,
gentle,
indulgent,
lenient,
mild,
pliable,
soft,
sweet,
tender,
tractable,
yielding.

---

[330]

SHAKE.

Synonyms:

agitate,
jar,
quake,
shiver,
totter,

brandish,
flap,
fluctuate,
flutter,
joggle,
jolt,
jounce,
oscillate,
quaver,
quiver,
reel,
rock,
shudder,
sway,
swing,
thrill,
tremble,
vibrate,
wave,
waver.

A thing is *shaken* which is subjected to short and abruptly checked movements, as forward and backward, up and down, from side to side, etc. A tree is "*shaken* with a mighty wind;" a man slowly *shakes* his head. A thing *rocks* that is sustained from below; it *swings* if suspended from above, as a pendulum, or pivoted at the side, as a crane or a bridge-draw; to *oscillate* is to *swing* with a smooth and regular returning motion; a *vibrating* motion may be tremulous or *jarring*. The pendulum of a clock may be said to *swing*, *vibrate*, or *oscillate*; a steel bridge *vibrates* under the passage of a heavy train; the term *vibrate* is also applied to molecular movements. *Jolting* is a lifting from and letting down suddenly upon an unyielding surface; as, a carriage *jolts* over a rough road. A *jarring* motion is abruptly and very rapidly repeated through an exceedingly limited space; the *jolting* of the carriage *jars* the windows. *Rattling* refers directly to the sound produced by *shaking*. To *joggle* is to *shake* slightly; as, a passing touch *joggles* the desk on which one is writing. A thing *trembles* that *shakes* perceptibly and with an appearance of uncertainty and instability, as a person under the influence of fear; a thing *shivers* when all its particles are stirred with a slight but pervading tremulous motion, as a human body under the influence of cold; *shuddering* is a more pronounced movement of a similar kind, in human beings often the effect of emotional or moral recoil; hence, the word is applied by extension to such feelings even when they have no such outward manifestation; as, one says, "I *shudder* at the thought." To *quiver* is to have slight and often spasmodic contractile motions, as the flesh under the surgeon's knife. *Thrill* is applied to a pervasive movement felt rather than seen; as, the nerves *thrill* with delight; *quiver* is similarly used, but suggests somewhat more of outward manifestation. To *agitate* in its literal use is nearly the same as to *shake*, tho we speak of the sea as *agitated* when we could not say it is *shaken*; the Latin *agitate* is preferred in scientific or technical use to the Saxon *shake*, and especially as applied to the action of mechanical contrivances; in the metaphorical use *agitate* is more transitory and superficial, *shake* more fundamental and enduring; a person's[331] feelings are *agitated* by distressing news; his courage, his faith, his credit, or his testimony is *shaken*. *Sway* applies to the movement of a body suspended from above or not firmly sustained from below, and the motion of which is less pronounced than *swinging*, smoother than *vibrating*, and not necessarily constant as *oscillating*; as, the *swaying* of a reed in the wind. *Sway* used transitively especially applies to motions of grace or dignity; *brandish* denotes a threatening or hostile motion; a monarch *sways* the scepter; the ruffian *brandishes* a club. To *reel* or *totter* always implies liability to fall; *reeling* is more violent than *swaying*, *tottering* more irregular; a drunken man *reels*; we speak of the *tottering* step of age or infancy. An extended mass which seems to lack solidity or cohesion is said to *quake*; as, a *quaking* bog. *Quaver* is applied almost exclusively to tremulous sounds of the human voice. *Flap*, *flutter*, and *fluctuate* refer to wave-like movements, *flap* generally to such as produce a sharp sound; a cock *flaps* his wings; *flutter* applies to a less pronounced and more irregular motion; a captive bird or a feeble pulse *flutters*. Compare FLUCTUATE.

SHELTER.

Synonyms:

cover,
defend,
guard,
harbor,
protect,
screen,
shield,
ward.

Anything is *covered* over which something is completely extended; a vessel is *covered* with a lid; the head is *covered* with a hat. That which *covers* may also *defend* or *protect*; thus, troops interposed between some portion of their own army and the enemy are often called a *covering* party. To *shelter* is to *cover* so as to *protect* from injury or annoyance; as, the roof *shelters* from the storm; woods *shelter* from the heat. To *defend* (L. *defendere*, to strike away) implies the actual, *protect* (L. *protegere*, to cover before) implies the possible use of force or resisting power; *guard* implies sustained vigilance with readiness for conflict; we *defend* a person or thing against actual attack; we *guard* or *protect* against possible assault or injury. A powerful person may *protect* one who is weak by simply declaring himself his friend; he *defends* him by some form of active championship. An inanimate object may *protect*, as a garment from cold; *defend* is used but rarely, and by somewhat violent metaphor, in such connection. *Protect* is more complete than *guard* or *defend*; an object may be faithfully *guarded* or bravely *defended* in vain, but that which is *protected* is secure. To *shield* is to interpose something[332] over or before that which is assailed, so as to save from harm, and has a comparatively passive sense; one may *guard* another by standing armed at his side, *defend* him by fighting for him, or *shield* him from a missile or a blow by interposing his own person. *Harbor* is generally used in an unfavorable sense; confederates or sympathizers *harbor* a criminal; a person *harbors* evil thoughts or designs. See CHERISH. Compare synonyms for HIDE; DEFENSE.

Antonyms:

betray,cast out,expel,expose,give up,refuse,reject,surrender.

Prepositions:

Shelter *under* a roof *from* the storm; *in* the fortress, *behind* or *within* the walls, *from* attack.

SIGN.

Synonyms:

emblem,
indication,
manifestation,
mark,
note,
omen,
presage,
prognostic,
signal,
symbol,
symptom,
token,
type.

A *sign* (L. *signum*) is any distinctive *mark* by which a thing may be recognized or its presence known, and may be intentional or accidental, natural or artificial, suggestive, descriptive, or wholly arbitrary; thus, a blush may be a *sign* of shame; the footprint of an animal is a *sign* that it has passed; the *sign* of a business house now usually declares what is done or kept within, but formerly might be an object having no connection with the business, as "the *sign* of the trout;" the letters of the alphabet are *signs* of certain sounds. While a *sign* may be involuntary, and even unconscious, a *signal* is always voluntary, and is usually concerted; a ship may show *signs* of distress to the casual observer, but *signals* of distress are a distinct appeal for aid. A *symptom* is a vital phenomenon resulting from a diseased condition; in medical language a *sign* is an *indication* of any physical condition, whether morbid or healthy; thus, a hot skin and rapid pulse are *symptoms* of pneumonia; dulness of some portion of the lungs under percussion is one of the physical *signs*. Compare AUGUR; CHARACTERISTIC; EMBLEM.

SIN.

Synonyms:

crime,
criminality,
delinquency,
depravity,
evil,
fault,
guilt,
ill-doing,
immorality,
iniquity,
misdeed,
offense,
transgression,
ungodliness,
unrighteousness,
vice,
viciousness,
wickedness,
wrong,
wrong-doing.

Sin is any lack of holiness, any defect of moral purity and[333] truth, whether in heart or life, whether of commission or omission. "All *unrighteousness* is *sin*," *1 John* v, 17. *Transgression*, as its etymology indicates, is the stepping over a specific enactment, whether of God or man, ordinarily by overt act, but in the broadest sense, in volition or desire. *Sin* may be either act or state; *transgression* is always an act, mental or physical. *Crime* is often used for a flagrant violation of right, but in the technical sense denotes specific violation of human law. *Guilt* is desert of and exposure to punishment because of *sin*. *Depravity* denotes not any action, but a perverted moral condition from which any act of *sin* may proceed. *Sin* in the generic sense, as denoting a state of heart, is synonymous with *depravity*; in the specific sense, as in the expression a *sin*, the term may be synonymous with *transgression*, *crime*, *offense*, *misdeed*, etc., or may denote some moral activity that could not be characterized by terms so positive. *Immorality* denotes outward violation of the moral law. *Sin* is thus the broadest word, and *immorality* next in scope; all *crimes*, properly so called, and all *immoralities*, are *sins*; but there may be *sin*, as ingratitude, which is neither *crime*, *transgression*, nor *immorality*; and there may be *immorality* which is not *crime*, as falsehood. Compare CRIMINAL.

Antonyms:

blamelessness,
excellence,
godliness,
goodness,
holiness,
innocence,
integrity,
morality,
purity,
rectitude,
right,
righteousness,
sinlessness,
uprightness,
virtue.

Compare synonyms for VIRTUE.

SING.

Synonyms:

carol,chant,chirp,chirrup,hum,warble.

To *sing* is primarily and ordinarily to utter a succession of articulate musical sounds with the human voice. The word has come to include any succession of musical sounds; we say the bird or the rivulet *sings*; we speak of "the *singing* quality" of an instrument, and by still wider extension of meaning we say the teakettle or the cricket *sings*. To *chant* is to *sing* in solemn and somewhat uniform cadence; *chant* is ordinarily applied to non-metrical religious compositions. To *carol* is to *sing* joyously, and to *warble* (kindred with *whirl*) is to *sing* with trills or quavers, usually also with the idea of joy. *Carol* and *warble* are especially applied to the *singing* of birds. To *chirp* is to utter a brief musical sound, perhaps often repeated in the same key, as by certain[334] small birds, insects, etc. To *chirrup* is to utter a somewhat similar sound; the word is often used of a brief, sharp sound uttered as a signal to animate or rouse a horse or other animal. To *hum* is to utter murmuring sounds with somewhat monotonous musical cadence, usually with closed lips; we speak also of the *hum* of machinery, etc.

SKEPTIC.

Synonyms:

agnostic, atheist, deist, disbeliever, doubter, freethinker, infidel, unbeliever.

The *skeptic* doubts divine revelation; the *disbeliever* and the *unbeliever* reject it, the *disbeliever* with more of intellectual dissent, the *unbeliever* (in the common acceptation) with indifference or with opposition of heart as well as of intellect. *Infidel* is an opprobrious term that might once almost have been said to be geographical in its range. The Crusaders called all Mohammedans *infidels*, and were so called by them in return; the word is commonly applied to any decided opponent of an accepted religion. The *atheist* denies that there is a God; the *deist* admits the existence of God, but denies that the Christian Scriptures are a revelation from him; the *agnostic* denies either that we do know or that we can know whether there is a God.

Antonyms:

believer,Christian.

SKETCH.

Synonyms:

brief,
design,
draft,
drawing,
outline,
picture,
plan,
skeleton.

A *sketch* is a rough, suggestive presentation of anything, whether graphic or literary, commonly intended to be preliminary[335] to a more complete or extended treatment. An *outline* gives only the bounding or determining lines of a figure or a scene; a *sketch* may give not only lines, but shading and color, but is hasty and incomplete. The lines of a *sketch* are seldom so full and continuous as those of an *outline*, being, like the shading or color, little more than indications or suggestions according to which a finished *picture* may be made; the artist's first representation of a sunset, the hues of which change so rapidly, must of necessity be a *sketch*. *Draft* and *plan* apply especially to mechanical drawing, of which *outline*, *sketch*, and *drawing* are also used; a *plan* is strictly a view from above, as of a building or machine, giving the lines of a horizontal section, originally at the level of the ground, now in a wider sense at any height; as, a *plan* of the cellar; a *plan* of the attic. A mechanical *drawing* is always understood to be in full detail; a *draft* is an incomplete or unfinished *drawing*; a *design* is such a preliminary *sketch* as indicates the object to be accomplished or the result to be attained, and is understood to be original. One may make a *drawing* of any well-known mechanism, or a *drawing* from another man's *design*; but if he says, "The *design* is mine," he claims it as his own invention or composition. In written composition an *outline* gives simply the main divisions, and in the case of a sermon is often called a *skeleton*; a somewhat fuller suggestion of illustration, treatment, and style is given in a *sketch*. A lawyer's *brief* is a succinct statement of the main facts involved in a case, and of the main heads of his argument on points of law, with reference to authorities cited; the *brief* has none of the vagueness of a *sketch*, being sufficiently exact and complete to form, on occasion, the basis for the decision of the court without oral argument, when the case is said to be "submitted on *brief*." Compare DESIGN.

SKILFUL.

Synonyms:

accomplished,
adept,
adroit,
apt,
clever,
deft,
dexterous,
expert,
handy,
happy,
ingenious,
practised,
proficient,
skilled,
trained.

Skilful signifies possessing and using readily practical knowledge and ability, having alert and well-trained faculties with reference to a given work. One is *adept* in that for which he has a natural gift improved by practise; he is *expert* in that of which training, experience, and study have given him a thorough mastery; he is *dexterous* in that which he can do effectively, with or without training, especially in work of the hand or bodily activities. In the case of the noun, "an expert" denotes one who is "experienced" in the fullest sense, a master of his branch of knowledge. A *skilled* workman is one who has thoroughly learned his trade, though he may be naturally quite dull; a *skilful* workman has some natural brightness, ability, and power of adaptation, in addition to his acquired knowledge and dexterity. Compare CLEVER; DEXTERITY; POWER.[336]

Antonyms:

awkward, bungling,
clumsy, helpless,
inexpert, maladroit,
shiftless, unhandy,
unskilled, untaught,
untrained.

Prepositions:

Skilful *at* or *in* a work, *with* a pen or tool of any kind.

SLANDER.

Synonyms:

asperse, backbite, calumniate,
decry, defame, depreciate,
disparage, libel, malign,
revile, traduce, vilify.

To *slander* a person is to utter a false and injurious report concerning him; to *defame* is specifically and directly to attack one's reputation; to *defame* by spoken words is to *slander*, by written words, to *libel*. To *asperse* is, as it were, to bespatter with injurious charges; to *malign* is to circulate studied and malicious attacks upon character; to *traduce* is to exhibit one's real or assumed traits in an odious light; to *revile* or *vilify* is to attack with vile abuse. To *disparage* is to represent one's admitted good traits or acts as less praiseworthy than they would naturally be thought to be, as for instance, by ascribing a man's benevolence to a desire for popularity or display. To *libel* or *slander* is to make an assault upon character and repute that comes within the scope of law; the *slander* is uttered, the *libel* written, printed, or pictured. To *backbite* is to speak something secretly to one's injury; to *calumniate* is to invent as well as utter the injurious charge. One may "abuse," "assail," or *vilify* another to his face; he *asperses*, *calumniates*, *slanders*, or *traduces* him behind his back.

Antonyms:

defend, eulogize, extol, laud, praise, vindicate.

SLANG.

Synonyms:

cant, colloquialism, vulgarism, vulgarity.

A *colloquialism* is an expression not coarse or low, and perhaps not incorrect, but below the literary grade; educated persons are apt to allow themselves some *colloquialisms* in familiar conversation, which they would avoid in writing or public speaking. *Slang*, in the primary sense, denotes expressions that are either coarse and rude in themselves or chiefly current among the coarser and ruder part of the community; there are also many expressions current in special senses in certain communities that may be characterized[337] as *slang*; as, college *slang*; club *slang*; racing *slang*. In the evolution of language many words originally *slang* are adopted by good writers and speakers, and ultimately take their place as accepted English. A *vulgarism* is an expression decidedly incorrect, and the use of which is a mark of ignorance or low breeding. *Cant*, as used in this connection, denotes the barbarous jargon used as a secret language by thieves, tramps, etc. Compare DICTION; LANGUAGE.

SLOW.

Synonyms:

dawdling,
delaying,
deliberate,
dilatory,
drowsy,
dull,
gradual,
inactive,
inert,
lingering,
moderate,
procrastinating,
slack,
sluggish,
tardy.

Slow signifies moving through a relatively short distance, or with a relatively small number of motions in a given time; *slow* also applies to that which is a relatively long while in beginning or accomplishing something; a watch or a clock is said to be *slow* when its indications are behind those of the standard time. *Tardy* is applied to that which is behind the proper or desired time, especially in doing a work or arriving at a place. *Deliberate* and *dilatory* are used of persons, tho the latter may be used also of things, as of a stream; a person is *deliberate* who takes a noticeably long time to consider and decide before acting or who acts or speaks as if he were deliberating at every point; a person is *dilatory* who lays aside, or puts off as long as possible, necessary or required action; both words may be applied either to undertaking or to doing. *Gradual* (L. *gradus*, a step) signifies advancing by steps, and refers to *slow* but regular and sure progression. *Slack* refers to action that seems to indicate a lack of tension, as of muscle or of will, *sluggish* to action that seems as if reluctant to advance.

Antonyms:

See synonyms for NIMBLE.

SNEER.

Synonyms:

fling,gibe,jeer,mock,scoff,taunt.

A *sneer* may be simply a contemptuous facial contortion, or it may be some brief satirical utterance that throws a contemptuous side-light on what it attacks without attempting to prove or disprove; a depreciatory implication may be given in a *sneer* such[338] as could only be answered by elaborate argument or proof, which would seem to give the attack undue importance:

Who can refute a *sneer*?

Paley *Moral Philosophy* bk. v, ch. ix.

A *fling* is careless and commonly pettish; a *taunt* is intentionally insulting and provoking; the *sneer* is supercilious; the *taunt* is defiant. The *jeer* and *gibe* are uttered; the *gibe* is bitter, and often sly or covert; the *jeer* is rude and open. A *scoff* may be in act or word, and is commonly directed against that which claims honor, reverence, or worship. Compare BANTER.

Preposition:

Only an essentially vicious mind is capable of a sneer *at* virtue.

SOCIALISM.

Synonyms:

collectivism,communism,fabianism.

Socialism, as defined by its advocates, is a theory of civil polity that aims to secure the reconstruction of society, increase of wealth, and a more equal distribution of the products of labor through the public collective ownership of land and capital (as distinguished from property), and the public collective management of all industries. Its aim is extended industrial cooperation; *socialism* is a purely economic term, applying to landownership and productive capital. Many socialists call themselves *collectivists*, and their system *collectivism*. *Communism* would divide all things, including the profits of individual labor, among members of the community; many of its advocates would abolish marriage and the family relation. *Anarchism* is properly an antonym of *socialism*, as it would destroy, by violence if necessary, all existing government and social order, leaving the future to determine what, if anything, should be raised upon their ruins.

SOUND.

Synonyms:

noise,note,tone.

Sound is the sensation produced through the organs of hearing or the physical cause of this sensation. *Sound* is the most comprehensive word of this group, applying to anything that is audible. *Tone* is *sound* considered as having some musical quality or as expressive of some feeling; *noise* is *sound* considered without reference to musical quality or as distinctly unmusical or discordant. Thus, in the most general sense *noise* and *sound* scarcely differ, and we say almost indifferently, "I heard a *sound*," or "I[339] heard a *noise*." We speak of a fine, musical, or pleasing *sound*, but never thus of a *noise*. In music, *tone* may denote either a musical *sound* or the interval between two such *sounds*, but in the most careful usage the latter is now distinguished as the "interval," leaving *tone* to stand only for the *sound*. *Note* in music strictly denotes the character representing a *sound*, but in loose popular usage it denotes the *sound* also, and becomes practically equivalent to *tone*. Aside from its musical use, *tone* is chiefly applied to that quality of the human voice by which feeling is expressed; as, he spoke in a cheery *tone*; the word is similarly applied to the voices of birds and other animals, and sometimes to inanimate objects. As used of a musical instrument, *tone* denotes the general quality of its sounds collectively considered.

SPEAK.

Synonyms:

announce,
articulate,
chat,
chatter,
converse,
declaim,
declare,
deliver,
discourse,
enunciate,
express,
pronounce,
say,
talk,
tell,
utter.

To *utter* is to give forth as an audible sound, articulate or not. To *talk* is to *utter* a succession of connected words, ordinarily with the expectation of being listened to. To *speak* is to give articulate utterance even to a single word; the officer *speaks* the word of command, but does not *talk* it. To *speak* is also to *utter* words with the ordinary intonation, as distinguished from singing. To *chat* is ordinarily to *utter* in a familiar, conversational way; to *chatter* is to *talk* in an empty, ceaseless way like a magpie.

Prepositions:

Speak *to* (address) a person; speak *with* a person (converse with him); speak *of* or *about* a thing (make it the subject of remark); speak *on* or *upon* a subject; in parliamentary language, speak *to* the question.

SPEECH.

Synonyms:

address,
dissertation,
oration,
speaking,

discourse,
disquisition,
harangue,
language,
oratory,
sermon,
talk,
utterance.

Speech is the general word for *utterance* of thought in *language*. A *speech* may be the delivering of one's sentiments in the simplest way; an *oration* is an elaborate and prepared *speech*; a *harangue* is a vehement appeal to passion, or a *speech* that has[340] something disputatious and combative in it. A *discourse* is a set *speech* on a definite subject, intended to convey instruction. Compare CONVERSATION; DICTION; LANGUAGE.

Antonyms:

hush,silence,speechlessness,stillness,taciturnity.

SPONTANEOUS.

Synonyms:

automatic,
free,
impulsive,
instinctive,
involuntary,
unbidden,
voluntary,
willing.

That is *spontaneous* which is freely done, with no external compulsion and, in human actions, without special premeditation or distinct determination of the will; that is *voluntary* which is freely done with distinct act of will; that is *involuntary* which is independent of the will, and perhaps in opposition to it; a *willing* act is not only in accordance with will, but with desire. Thus *voluntary* and *involuntary*, which are antonyms of each other, are both partial synonyms of *spontaneous*. We speak of *spontaneous* generation, *spontaneous* combustion, *spontaneous* sympathy, an *involuntary* start, an *unbidden* tear, *voluntary* agreement, *willing* submission. A babe's smile in answer to that of its mother is *spontaneous*; the smile of a pouting child wheedled into good humor is *involuntary*. In physiology the action of the heart and lungs is called *involuntary*; the growth of the hair and nails is *spontaneous*; the action of swallowing is *voluntary* up to a certain point, beyond which it becomes *involuntary* or *automatic*. In the fullest sense of that which is not only without the will but distinctly in opposition to it, or compulsory, *involuntary* becomes an antonym, not only of *voluntary* but of *spontaneous*; as, *involuntary* servitude. A *spontaneous* outburst of applause is of necessity an act of volition, but so completely dependent on sympathetic impulse that it would seem frigid to call it *voluntary*, while to call it *involuntary* would imply some previous purpose or inclination not to applaud.

SPY.

Synonyms:

detective,emissary,scout.

The *scout* and the *spy* are both employed to obtain information of the numbers, movements, etc., of an enemy. The *scout* lurks on the outskirts of the hostile army with such concealment as the case admits of, but without disguise; a *spy* enters in disguise[341] within the enemy's lines. A *scout*, if captured, has the rights of a prisoner of war; a *spy* is held to have forfeited all rights, and is liable, in case of capture, to capital punishment. An *emissary* is rather political than military; sent rather to secretly influence opponents than to bring information concerning them; so far as he does the latter, he is not only an *emissary*, but a *spy*.

STAIN.

Synonyms:

blot,
color,
discolor,
disgrace,
dishonor,
dye,
soil,
spot,
sully,
tarnish,
tinge,
tint.

To *color* is to impart a color desired or undesired, temporary or permanent, or, in the intransitive use, to assume a color in any way; as, he *colored* with shame and vexation. To *dye* is to impart a color intentionally and with a view to permanence, and especially so as to pervade the substance or fiber of that to which it is applied. To *stain* is primarily to *discolor*, to impart a color undesired and perhaps unintended, and which may or may not be permanent. Thus, a character "*dyed* in the wool" is one that has received some early, permanent, and pervading influence; a character *stained* with crime or guilt is debased and perverted. *Stain* is, however, used of giving an intended and perhaps pleasing color to wood, glass, etc., by an application of coloring-matter which enters the substance a little below the surface, in distinction from painting, in which coloring-matter is spread upon the surface; *dyeing* is generally said of wool, yarn, cloth, or similar materials which are dipped into the *coloring* liquid. Figuratively, a standard or a garment may be *dyed* with blood in honorable warfare; an assassin's weapon is *stained* with the blood of his victim. To *tinge* is to *color* slightly, and may also be used of giving a slight flavor, or a slight admixture of one ingredient or quality with another that is more pronounced.

STATE.

Synonyms:

affirm,
allege,
assert,
asseverate,
assure,
aver,
avouch,
avow,
certify,
claim,
declare,
depose,
express,
inform,
maintain,
predicate,
pronounce,
propound,
protest,
say,
set forth,
specify,
swear,
tell,
testify.

To *state* (L. *sto*, stand) is to *set forth* explicitly, formally, or particularly in speech or writing. *Assert* (L. *ad*, to, and *sero*, bind) is strongly personal, signifying to *state* boldly and positively what[342] the one making the statement has not attempted and may not attempt to prove. *Affirm* has less of egotism than *assert* (as seen in the word *self-assertion*), coming nearer to *aver*. It has more solemnity than *declare*, and more composure and dignity than *asseverate,* which is to *assert* excitedly. In legal usage, *affirm* has a general agreement with *depose* and *testify*; it differs from *swear* in not invoking the name of God. To *assure* is to *state* with such authority and confidence as the speaker feels ought to make the hearer sure. *Certify* is more formal, and applies rather to written documents or legal processes. *Assure*, *certify*, *inform*, apply to the person; *affirm*, etc., to the thing. *Assert* is combative; *assure* is conciliatory. I *assert* my right to cross the river; I *assure* my friend it is perfectly safe. To *aver* is to *state* positively what is within one's own knowledge or matter of deep conviction. One may *assert* himself, or *assert* his right to what he is willing to contend for; or he may *assert* in discussion what he is ready to maintain by argument or evidence. To *assert* without proof is always to lay oneself open to the suspicion of having no proof to offer, and seems to arrogate too much to one's personal authority, and hence in such cases both the verb *assert* and its noun *assertion* have an unfavorable sense; we say a mere *assertion*, a bare *assertion*, his unsupported *assertion*; he *asserted* his innocence has less force than he *affirmed* or *maintained* his innocence. *Affirm*, *state*, and *tell* have not the controversial sense of *assert*, but are simply declarative. To *vindicate* is to defend successfully what is assailed. Almost every criminal will *assert* his innocence; the honest man will seldom lack means to *vindicate* his integrity.

Antonyms:

contradict,
contravene,
controvert,
deny,
disprove,
dispute,
gainsay,
oppose,
refute,
repudiate,
retract,
waive.

STEEP.

Synonyms:

abrupt,high,precipitous,sharp,sheer.

High is used of simple elevation; *steep* is said only of an incline where the vertical measurement is sufficiently great in proportion to the horizontal to make it difficult of ascent. *Steep* is relative; an ascent of 100 feet to the mile on a railway is a *steep* grade; a rise of 500 feet to the mile makes a *steep* wagon-road; a roof is *steep* when it makes with the horizontal line an angle of more than 45°. A *high* mountain may be climbed by a winding road nowhere *steep*, while a little hill may be accessible only by a[343] *steep* path. A *sharp* ascent or descent is one that makes a sudden, decided angle with the plane from which it starts; a *sheer* ascent or descent is perpendicular, or nearly so; *precipitous* applies to that which is of the nature of a precipice, and is used especially of a descent; *abrupt* is as if broken sharply off, and applies to either acclivity or declivity. Compare HIGH.

Antonyms:

easy,flat,gentle,gradual,horizontal,level,low,slight.

STORM.

Synonyms:

agitation,disturbance,tempest.

A *storm* is properly a *disturbance* of the atmosphere, with or without rain, snow, hail, or thunder and lightning. Thus we have rain-*storm*, snow-*storm*, etc., and by extension, magnetic *storm*. A *tempest* is a *storm* of extreme violence, always attended with some precipitation, as of rain, from the atmosphere. In the moral and figurative use, *storm* and *tempest* are not closely discriminated, except that *tempest* commonly implies greater intensity. We speak of *agitation* of feeling, *disturbance* of mind, a *storm* of passion, a *tempest* of rage.

Antonyms:

calm,fair weather,hush,peace,serenity,stillness,tranquillity.

STORY.

Synonyms:

account,
anecdote,
incident,
legend,
myth,
narration,
narrative,
novel,
recital,
record,
relation,
tale.

A *story* is the telling of some series of connected incidents or events, whether real or fictitious, in prose or verse, orally or in writing; or the series of incidents or events thus related may be termed a *story*. In children's talk, a *story* is a common euphemism for a falsehood. *Tale* is nearly synonymous with *story*, but is somewhat archaic; it is used for an imaginative, legendary, or fictitious *recital*, especially if of ancient date; as, a fairy *tale*; also, for an idle or malicious report; as, do not tell *tales*; "where there is no *tale*-bearer, the strife ceaseth." *Prov.* xxvi, 20. An *anecdote* tells briefly some *incident*, assumed to be fact. If it passes close limits of brevity, it ceases to be an *anecdote*, and becomes a *narrative* or *narration*. A traditional or mythical *story* of ancient times is a *legend*. A history is often somewhat poetically[344] called a *story*; as, the *story* of the American civil war. Compare ALLEGORY; FICTION; HISTORY.

Antonyms:

annals,biography,chronicle,history,memoir.

STUPIDITY.

Synonyms:

apathy,
dulness,
insensibility,
obtuseness,
slowness,
sluggishness,
stupefaction,
stupor.

Stupidity is sometimes loosely used for temporary *dulness* or partial *stupor*, but chiefly for innate and chronic *dulness* and *sluggishness* of mental action, *obtuseness* of apprehension, etc. *Apathy* may be temporary, and be dispelled by appeal to the feelings or by the presentation of an adequate motive, but *stupidity* is inveterate and commonly incurable. Compare APATHY; IDIOCY; STUPOR.

Antonyms:

acuteness,
alertness,
animation,
brilliancy,
cleverness,
intelligence,
keenness,
quickness,
readiness,
sagacity,
sense,
sensibility.

STUPOR.

Synonyms:

apathy,
asphyxia,
coma,
fainting,
insensibility,
lethargy,
stupefaction,
swoon,
swooning,
syncope,
torpor,
unconsciousness.

Stupor is a condition of the body in which the action of the senses and faculties is suspended or greatly dulled—weakness or loss of sensibility. The *apathy* of disease is a mental affection, a state of morbid indifference; *lethargy* is a morbid tendency to heavy and continued sleep, from which the patient may perhaps be momentarily aroused. *Coma* is a deep, abnormal sleep, from which the patient can not be aroused, or is aroused only with difficulty, a state of profound *insensibility*, perhaps with full pulse and deep, stertorous breathing, and is due to brain-oppression. *Syncope* or *swooning* is a sudden loss of sensation and of power of motion, with suspension of pulse and of respiration, and is due to failure of heart-action, as from sudden nervous shock or intense mental emotion. *Insensibility* is a general term denoting loss of feeling from any cause, as from cold, intoxication, or injury. *Stupor* is especially profound and confirmed *insensibility*, properly comatose. *Asphyxia* is a special form of *syncope* resulting from partial or total suspension of respiration, as in strangulation, drowning, or inhalation of noxious gases.

SUBJECTIVE.

Synonym:

objective.

Subjective and *objective* are synonyms in but one point of view, being, for the most part, strictly antonyms. *Subjective* signifies relating to the subject of mental states, that is, to the person who experiences them; *objective* signifies relating to the object of mental states, that is, to something outside the perceiving mind; in brief phrase it may be said that *subjective* relates to something within the mind, *objective* to something without. A mountain, as a mass of a certain size, contour, color, etc., is an *objective* fact; the impression our mind receives, the mental picture it forms of the mountain, is *subjective*. But this *subjective* impression may become itself the object of thought (called "subject-object"), as when we compare our mental picture of the mountain with our idea of a plain or river. The direct experiences of the soul, as joy, grief, hope, fear, are purely *subjective*; the outward causes of these experiences, as prosperity, bereavement, disappointment, are *objective*. That which has independent existence or authority apart from our experience or thought is said to have *objective* existence or authority; thus we speak of the *objective* authority of the moral law. Different individuals may receive different *subjective* impressions from the same *objective* fact, that which to one is a cause of hope being to another a cause of fear, etc. The style of a writer is called *objective* when it derives its materials mainly from or reaches out toward external objects; it is called *subjective* when it derives its materials mainly from or constantly tends to revert to the personal experience of the author. Compare INHERENT.

SUBSIDY.

Synonyms:

aid,
allowance,
bonus,
bounty,
gift,
grant,
indemnity,
pension,
premium,
reward,
subvention,
support,
tribute.

A *subsidy* is pecuniary aid directly granted by government to an individual or commercial enterprise, or money furnished by one nation to another to aid it in carrying on war against a common enemy. A nation grants a *subsidy* to an ally, pays a *tribute* to a conqueror. An *indemnity* is in the nature of things limited and temporary, while a *tribute* might be exacted indefinitely. A[346] nation may also grant a *subsidy* to its own citizens as a means of promoting the public welfare; as, a *subsidy* to a steamship company. The somewhat rare term *subvention* is especially applied to a *grant* of governmental aid to a literary or artistic enterprise. Governmental *aid* to a commercial or industrial enterprise other than a transportation company is more frequently called a *bounty* than a *subsidy*; as, the sugar *bounty*. The word *bounty* may be applied to almost any regular or stipulated *allowance* by a government to a citizen or citizens; as, a *bounty* for enlisting in the army;

a *bounty* for killing wolves. A *bounty* is offered for something to be done; a *pension* is granted for something that has been done.

SUBVERT.

Synonyms:

destroy, overthrow,ruin, supplant,
extinguish,overturn, supersede,suppress.

To *subvert* is to overthrow from or as from the very foundation; utterly destroy; bring to ruin. The word is now generally figurative, as of moral or political ruin. To *supersede* implies the putting of something that is wisely or unwisely preferred in the place of that which is removed; to *subvert* does not imply substitution. To *supplant* is more often personal, signifying to take the place of another, usually by underhanded means; one is *superseded* by authority, *supplanted* by a rival. Compare ABOLISH.

Antonyms:

conserve,keep,perpetuate,preserve,sustain,uphold.

SUCCEED.

Synonyms:

achieve,attain,flourish,prevail,prosper,thrive,win.

A person *succeeds* when he accomplishes what he attempts, or *attains* a desired object or result; an enterprise or undertaking *succeeds* that has a prosperous result. To *win* implies that some one loses, but one may *succeed* where no one fails. A solitary swimmer *succeeds* in reaching the shore; if we say he *wins* the shore we contrast him with himself as a possible loser. Many students may *succeed* in study; a few *win* the special prizes, for which all compete. Compare FOLLOW.

Antonyms:

be defeated,come short,fail,fall short,lose,miss,miscarry.

---

[347]

SUGGESTION.

Synonyms:

hint,implication,innuendo,insinuation,intimation.

A *suggestion* (L. *sub*, under, and *gero*, bring) brings something before the mind less directly than by formal or explicit statement, as by a partial statement, an incidental allusion, an illustration, a question, or the like. *Suggestion* is often used of an unobtrusive statement of one's views or wishes to another, leaving consideration and any consequent action entirely to his judgment, and is hence, in many cases, the most respectful way in which one can convey his views to a superior or a stranger. A *suggestion* may be given unintentionally, and even unconsciously, as when we say an author has "a *suggestive* style." An *intimation* is a *suggestion* in brief utterance, or sometimes by significant act, gesture, or token, of one's meaning or wishes; in the latter case it is often the act of a superior; as, God in his providence gives us *intimations* of his will. A *hint* is still more limited in expression, and is always covert, but frequently with good intent; as, to give one a *hint* of danger or of opportunity. *Insinuation* and *innuendo* are used in the bad sense; an *insinuation* is a covert or partly veiled injurious utterance, sometimes to the very person attacked; an *innuendo* is commonly secret as well as sly, as if pointing one out by a significant nod (L. *in*, in, to, and *nuo*, nod).

SUPERNATURAL.

Synonyms:

miraculous,preternatural,superhuman.

The *supernatural* (*super*, above) is above or superior to the recognized powers of nature; the *preternatural* (*preter*, beyond) is aside from or beyond the recognized results or operations of natural law, often in the sense of inauspicious; as, a *preternatural* gloom. *Miraculous* is more emphatic and specific than *supernatural*, as referring to the direct personal intervention of divine power. Some hold that a miracle, as the raising of the dead, is a direct suspension and even violation of natural laws by the fiat of the Creator, and hence is, in the strictest sense, *supernatural*; others hold that the miracle is simply the calling forth of a power residing in the laws of nature, but not within their ordinary operation, and dependent on a distinct act of God, so that the *miraculous* might be termed "extranatural," rather than *supernatural*. All that is beyond human power is *superhuman*; as, prophecy[348] gives evidence of *superhuman* knowledge; the word is sometimes applied to remarkable manifestations of human power, surpassing all that is ordinary.

Antonyms:

common,commonplace,everyday,natural,ordinary,usual.

SUPPORT.

Synonyms:

bear,
carry,
cherish,
hold up,
keep,
keep up,
maintain,
prop,
sustain,
uphold.

Support and *sustain* alike signify to *hold up* or *keep up*, to prevent from falling or sinking; but *sustain* has a special sense of continuous exertion or of great strength continuously exerted, as when we speak of *sustained* endeavor or a *sustained* note; a flower is *supported* by the stem or a temple-roof by arches; the foundations of a great building *sustain* an enormous pressure; to *sustain* life implies a greater exigency and need than to *support* life; to say one is *sustained* under affliction is to say more both of the severity of the trial and the completeness of the *upholding* than if we say he is *supported*. To *bear* is the most general word, denoting all *holding up* or *keeping up* of any object, whether in rest or motion; in the derived senses it refers to something that is a tax upon strength or endurance; as, to *bear* a strain; to *bear* pain or grief. To *maintain* is to *keep* in a state or condition, especially in an excellent and desirable condition; as, to *maintain* health or reputation; to *maintain* one's position; to *maintain* a cause or proposition is to hold it against opposition or difficulty. To *support* may be partial, to *maintain* is complete; *maintain* is a word of more dignity than *support*; a man *supports* his family; a state *maintains* an army or navy. To *prop* is always partial, signifying to add *support* to something that is insecure. Compare ABET; ENDURE; KEEP.

Antonyms:

abandon,break down,demolish,destroy,let go, throw down,
betray, cast down, desert, drop, overthrow,wreck.

Prepositions:

The roof is supported *by*, *on*, or *upon* pillars; the family was supported *on* or *upon* a pittance, or *by* charity.

SUPPOSE.

Synonyms:

conjecture,deem,guess,imagine,surmise,think.

To *suppose* is temporarily to assume a thing as true, either[349] with the expectation of finding it so or for the purpose of ascertaining what would follow if it were so. To *suppose* is also to think a thing to be true while aware or conceding that the belief does not rest upon any sure ground, and may not accord with fact; or yet again, to *suppose* is to imply as true or involved as a necessary inference; as, design *supposes* the existence of a designer. To *conjecture* is to put together the nearest available materials for a provisional opinion, always with some expectation of finding the facts to be as *conjectured*. To *imagine* is to form a mental image of something as existing, tho its actual existence may be unknown, or even impossible. To *think*, in this application, is to hold as the result of thought what is admitted not to be matter of exact or certain knowledge; as, I do not know, but I *think* this to be the fact: a more conclusive statement than would be made by the use of *conjecture* or *suppose*. Compare DOUBT; HYPOTHESIS.

Antonyms:

ascertain,be sure,conclude,discover,know,prove.

SURRENDER.

Synonyms:

abandon,
alienate,
capitulate,
cede,
give,
give oneself up,
give over,
give up,
let go,
relinquish,
sacrifice,
yield.

To *surrender* is to *give up* upon compulsion, as to an enemy in war, hence to *give up* to any person, passion, influence, or power. To *yield* is to give place or give way under pressure, and hence under compulsion. *Yield* implies more softness or concession than *surrender*; the most determined men may *surrender* to overwhelming force; when one *yields*, his spirit is at least somewhat subdued. A monarch or a state *cedes* territory perhaps for a consideration; *surrenders* an army, a navy, or a fortified place to a conqueror; a military commander *abandons* an untenable position or unavailable stores. We *sacrifice* something precious through error, friendship, or duty, *yield* to convincing reasons, a stronger will, winsome persuasion, or superior force. Compare ABANDON.

SYNONYMOUS.

Synonyms:

alike,
correspondent,
corresponding,
equivalent,
identical,
interchangeable,
like,
same,
similar,
synonymic.

Synonymous (Gr. *syn*, together, and *onyma*, name) strictly signifies being *interchangeable* names for the same thing, or being one[350] of two or more *interchangeable* names for the same thing; to say that two words are *synonymous* is strictly to say they are *alike*, *equivalent*, *identical*, or the *same* in meaning; but the use of *synonymous* in this strict sense is somewhat rare, and rather with reference to statements than to words.

To say that we are morally developed is *synonymous* with saying that we have reaped what some one has suffered for us.

H. W. Beecher *Royal Truths* p. 294. [T. & F. '66.]

In the strictest sense, *synonymous* words scarcely exist; rarely, if ever, are any two words in any language *equivalent* or *identical* in meaning; where a difference in meaning can not easily be shown, a difference in usage commonly exists, so that the words are not *interchangeable*. By *synonymous* words (or *synonyms*) we usually understand words that coincide or nearly coincide in some part of their meaning, and may hence within certain limits be used interchangeably, while outside of those limits they may differ very greatly in meaning and use. It is the office of a work on synonyms to point out these correspondences and differences, that language may have the flexibility that comes from freedom of selection within the common limits, with the perspicuity and precision that result from exact choice of the fittest words to express each shade of meaning outside of the common limits. To consider *synonymous* words *identical* is fatal to accuracy; to forget that they are *similar*, to some extent *equivalent*, and sometimes *interchangeable*, is destructive of freedom and variety.

SYSTEM.

Synonyms:

manner,method,mode,order,regularity,rule.

Order in this connection denotes the fact or result of proper arrangement according to the due relation or sequence of the matters arranged; as, these papers are in *order*; in alphabetical *order*. *Method* denotes a process, a general or established way of doing or proceeding in anything; *rule*, an authoritative requirement or an established course of things; *system*, not merely a law of action or procedure, but a comprehensive plan in which all the parts are related to each other and to the whole; as, a *system* of theology; a railroad *system*; the digestive *system*; *manner* refers to the external qualities of actions, and to those often as settled and characteristic; we speak of a *system* of taxation, a *method* of collecting taxes, the *rules* by which assessments are made; or we[351] say, as a *rule* the payments are heaviest at a certain time of year; a just tax may be made odious by the *manner* of its collection. *Regularity* applies to the even disposition of objects or uniform recurrence of acts in a series. There may be *regularity* without *order*, as in the recurrence of paroxysms of disease or insanity; there may be *order* without *regularity*, as in the arrangement of furniture in a room, where the objects are placed at varying distances. *Order* commonly implies the design of an intelligent agent or the appearance or suggestion of such design; *regularity* applies to an actual uniform disposition or recurrence with no suggestion of purpose, and as applied to human affairs is less intelligent and more mechanical than *order*. The most perfect *order* is often secured with least *regularity*, as in a fine essay or oration. The same may be said of *system*. There is a *regularity* of dividing a treatise into topics, paragraphs, and sentences, that is destructive of true rhetorical *system*. Compare HABIT; HYPOTHESIS.

Antonyms:

chaos, confusion, derangement,disarrangement,disorder, irregularity.

TACITURN.

Synonyms:

close, mute, reticent, speechless,
dumb, reserved, silent, uncommunicative.

Dumb, *mute*, *silent* and *speechless* refer to fact or state; *taciturn* refers to habit and disposition. The talkative person may be stricken *dumb* with surprise or terror; the obstinate may remain *mute*; one may be *silent* through preoccupation of mind or of set purpose; but the *taciturn* person is averse to the utterance of thought or feeling and to communication with others, either from natural disposition or for the occasion. One who is *silent* does not speak at all; one who is *taciturn* speaks when compelled, but in a grudging way that repels further approach. *Reserved* suggests more of method and intention than *taciturn*, applying often to some special time or topic; one who is communicative regarding all else may be *reserved* about his business. *Reserved* is thus closely equivalent to *uncommunicative*, but is a somewhat stronger word, often suggesting pride or haughtiness, as when we say one is *reserved* toward inferiors. Compare PRIDE.

Antonyms:

communicative, free, garrulous, loquacious, talkative, unreserved.

---

[352]

TASTEFUL.

Synonyms:

artistic, delicate, esthetic, fastidious, nice,
chaste, delicious, esthetical, fine, tasty.
dainty, elegant, exquisite,

Elegant (L. *elegans*, select) refers to that assemblage of qualities which makes anything choice to persons of culture and refinement; it refers to the lighter, finer elements of beauty in form or motion, especially denoting that which exhibits faultless taste and perfection of finish. That which is *elegant* is made so not merely by nature, but by art and culture; a woodland dell may be beautiful or picturesque, but would not ordinarily be termed *elegant*. *Tasteful* refers to that in which the element of taste is more prominent, standing, as it were, more by itself, while in *elegant* it is blended as part of the whole. *Tasty* is an inferior word, used colloquially in a similar sense. *Chaste* (primarily *pure*), denotes in literature and art that which is true to the higher and finer feelings and free from all excess or meretricious ornament. *Dainty* and *delicate* refer to the lighter and finer elements of taste and beauty, *dainty* tending in personal use to an excessive scrupulousness which is more fully expressed by *fastidious*. *Nice* and *delicate* both refer to exact adaptation to some standard; the bar of a balance can be said to be nicely or delicately poised; as regards matters of taste and beauty, *delicate* is a higher and more discriminating word than *nice*, and is always used in a favorable sense; a *delicate* distinction is one worth observing; a *nice* distinction may be so, or may be overstrained and unduly subtle; *fine* in such use, is closely similar to *delicate* and *nice*, but (tho capable of an unfavorable sense) has commonly a suggestion of positive excellence or admirableness; a *fine* touch does something; *fine* perceptions are to some purpose; *delicate* is capable of the single unfavorable sense of frail or fragile; as, a *delicate* constitution. *Esthetic* or *esthetical* refers to beauty or the appreciation of the beautiful, especially from the philosophic point of view. *Exquisite* denotes the utmost perfection of the *elegant* in minute details; we speak of an *elegant* garment, an *exquisite* lace. *Exquisite* is also applied to intense keenness of any feeling; as, *exquisite* delight; *exquisite* pain. See BEAUTIFUL; DELICIOUS; FINE.

Antonyms:

clumsy,
coarse,
deformed,
disgusting,
displeasing,
distasteful,
fulsome,
gaudy,
grotesque,
harsh,
hideous,
horrid,
inartistic,
inharmonious,
meretricious,
offensive,
rough,
rude,
rugged,
tawdry.

TEACH.

Synonyms:

discipline,
drill,
educate,
enlighten,
give instruction,
give lessons,
inculcate,
indoctrinate,
inform,
initiate,
instill,
instruct,
nurture,
school,
train,
tutor.

To *teach* is simply to communicate knowledge; to *instruct* (originally, to build in or into, put in order) is to impart knowledge with special method and completeness; *instruct* has also an authoritative sense nearly equivalent to command. To *educate* is to draw out or develop harmoniously the mental powers, and, in the fullest sense, the moral powers as well. To *train* is to direct to a certain result powers already existing. *Train* is used in preference to *educate* when the reference is to the inferior animals or to the physical powers of man; as, to *train* a horse; to *train* the hand or eye. To *discipline* is to bring into habitual and complete subjection to authority; *discipline* is a severe word, and is often used as a euphemism for *punish*; to be thoroughly effective in war, soldiers must be *disciplined* as well as *trained*. To *nurture* is to furnish the care and sustenance necessary for physical, mental, and moral growth; *nurture* is a more tender and homelike word than *educate*. Compare EDUCATION.

TEMERITY.

Synonyms:

audacity,
foolhardiness,
hardihood,
hastiness,
heedlessness,
over-confidence,
precipitancy,
precipitation,
presumption,
rashness,
recklessness,
venturesomeness.

Rashness applies to the actual rushing into danger without counting the cost; *temerity* denotes the needless exposure of oneself to peril which is or might be clearly seen to be such. *Rashness* is used chiefly of bodily acts, *temerity* often of mental or social matters; there may be a noble *rashness,* but *temerity* is always used in a bad sense. We say it is amazing that one should have had the *temerity* to make a statement which could be readily proved a falsehood, or to make an unworthy proposal to one sure to resent it; in such use *temerity* is often closely allied to *hardihood*, *audacity*, or *presumption*. *Venturesomeness* dallies on the edge of danger and experiments with it; *foolhardiness* rushes in for want of sense, *heedlessness* for want of attention, *rashness* for want of reflection, *recklessness* from disregard of consequences. *Audacity*, in the sense here considered, denotes a dashing and somewhat reckless courage, in defiance of conventionalities, or of[354] other men's opinions, or of what would be deemed probable consequences; as, the *audacity* of a successful financier. Compare EFFRONTERY.

Antonyms:

care,caution,circumspection,cowardice,hesitation,timidity,wariness.

TERM.

Synonyms:

article,
condition,
denomination,
expression,
member,
name,
phrase,
word.

Term in its figurative uses always retains something of its literal sense of a boundary or limit. The *articles* of a contract or other instrument are simply the portions into which it is divided for convenience; the *terms* are the essential statements on which its validity depends—as it were, the landmarks of its meaning or power; a *condition* is a contingent *term* which may become fixed upon the happening of some contemplated event. In logic a *term* is one of the essential members of a proposition, the boundary of statement in some one direction. Thus, in general use *term* is more restricted than *word*, *expression*, or *phrase*; a *term* is a *word* that limits meaning to a fixed point of statement or to a special class of subjects, as when we speak of the definition of *terms*, that is of the key-*words* in any discussion; or we say, that is a legal or scientific *term*. Compare BOUNDARY; DICTION.

TERSE.

Synonyms:

brief,
compact,
compendious,
concise,
condensed,
laconic,
neat,
pithy,
sententious,.
short,
succinct

Anything *short* or *brief* is of relatively small extent. That which is *concise* (L. *con-*, with, together, and *cædo*, cut) is trimmed down, and that which is *condensed* (L. *con-*, with, together, and *densus*, thick) is, as it were, pressed together, so as to include as much as possible within a small space. That which is *compendious* (L. *com-*, together, and *pendo*, weigh) gathers the substance of a matter into a few words, weighty and effective. The *succinct* (L. *succinctus*, from *sub-*, under, and *cingo*, gird; girded from below) has an alert effectiveness as if girded for action. The *summary* is compacted to the utmost, often to the point of abruptness; as, we speak of a *summary* statement or a *summary* dismissal. That which is *terse* (L. *tersus*, from *tergo*, rub off) has an elegant and finished completeness within the smallest possible compass, as[355] if rubbed or polished down to the utmost. A *sententious* style is one abounding in sentences that are singly striking or memorable, apart from the context; the word may be used invidiously of that which is pretentiously oracular. A *pithy* utterance gives the gist of a matter effectively, whether in rude or elegant style.

Antonyms:

diffuse,lengthy,long,prolix,tedious,verbose,wordy.

TESTIMONY.

Synonyms:

affidavit,
affirmation,
attestation,
certification,
deposition,
evidence,
proof,
witness.

Testimony, in legal as well as in common use, signifies the statements of witnesses. *Deposition* and *affidavit* denote *testimony* reduced to writing; the *deposition* differs from the *affidavit* in that the latter is voluntary and without cross-examination, while the former is made under interrogatories and subject to cross-examination. *Evidence* is a broader term, including the *testimony* of witnesses and all facts of every kind that tend to prove a thing true; we have the *testimony* of a traveler that a fugitive passed this way; his footprints in the sand are additional *evidence* of the fact. Compare DEMONSTRATION; OATH.

THEREFORE.

Synonyms:

accordingly,consequently,then, whence,
because, hence, thence,wherefore.

Therefore, signifying for that (or this) reason, is the most precise and formal word for expressing the direct conclusion of a chain of reasoning; *then* carries a similar but slighter sense of inference, which it gives incidentally rather than formally; as, "All men are mortal; Cæsar is a man; *therefore* Cæsar is mortal;" or, "The contract is awarded; *then* there is no more to be said." *Consequently* denotes a direct result, but more frequently of a practical than a theoretic kind; as, "Important matters demand my attention; *consequently* I shall not sail to-day." *Consequently* is rarely used in the formal conclusions of logic or mathematics, but marks rather the freer and looser style of rhetorical argument. *Accordingly* denotes correspondence, which may or may not be consequence; it is often used in narration; as, "The soldiers were eager and confident; *accordingly* they sprang forward at the word of command." *Thence* is a word of more[356] sweeping inference than *therefore*, applying not merely to a single set of premises, but often to all that has gone before, including the reasonable inferences that have not been formally stated. *Wherefore* is the correlative of *therefore*, and *whence* of *hence* or *thence*, appending the inference or conclusion to the previous statement without a break. Compare synonyms for BECAUSE.

THRONG.

Synonyms:

concourse,crowd,host,jam,mass,multitude,press.

A *crowd* is a company of persons filling to excess the space they occupy and pressing inconveniently upon one another; the total number in a *crowd* may be great or small. *Throng* is a word of vastness and dignity, always implying that the persons are numerous as well as pressed or pressing closely together; there may be a dense *crowd* in a small room, but there can not be a *throng*. *Host* and *multitude* both imply vast numbers, but a *multitude* may be diffused over a great space so as to be nowhere a *crowd*; *host* is a military term, and properly denotes an assembly too orderly for crowding. *Concourse* signifies a spontaneous gathering of many persons moved by a common impulse, and has a suggestion of stateliness not found in the word *crowd*, while suggesting less massing and pressure than is indicated by the word *throng*.

TIME.

Synonyms:

age, date, duration, eon, epoch, era, period, season, sequence, succession, term, while.

Sequence and *succession* apply to events viewed as following one another; *time* and *duration* denote something conceived of as enduring while events take place and acts are done. According to the necessary conditions of human thought, events are contained in *time* as objects are in space, *time* existing before the event, measuring it as it passes, and still existing when the event is past. *Duration* and *succession* are more general words than *time*; we can speak of infinite or eternal *duration* or *succession*, but *time* is commonly contrasted with eternity. *Time* is measured or measurable *duration*.

[357]

TIP.

Synonyms:

cant, careen, dip, heel over, incline, lean, list, slant, slope, tilt.

To *tilt* or *tip* is to throw out of a horizontal position by raising one side or end or lowering the other; the words are closely similar, but *tilt* suggests more of fluctuation or instability. *Slant* and *slope* are said of things somewhat fixed or permanent in a position out of the horizontal or perpendicular; the roof *slants*, the hill *slopes*. *Incline* is a more formal word for *tip*, and also for *slant* or *slope*. To *cant* is to set slantingly; in many cases *tip* and *cant* might be interchanged, but *tip* is more temporary, often momentary; one *tips* a pail so that the water flows over the edge; a mechanic *cants* a table by making or setting one side higher than the other. A vessel *careens* in the wind; *lists*, usually, from shifting of cargo, from water in the hold, etc. *Careening* is always toward one side or the other; *listing* may be forward or astern as well. To *heel over* is the same as to *careen*, and must be distinguished from "keel over," which is to capsize.

TIRE.

Synonyms:

exhaust, fag, fatigue, harass, jade, wear out, weary.

To *tire* is to reduce strength in any degree by exertion; one may be *tired* just enough to make rest pleasant, or even unconsciously *tired*, becoming aware of the fact only when he ceases the exertion; or, on the other hand, he may be, according to the common phrase, "too *tired* to stir;" but for this extreme condition the stronger words are commonly used. One who is *fatigued* suffers from a conscious and painful lack of strength as the result of some overtaxing; an invalid may be *fatigued* with very slight exertion; when one is *wearied*, the painful lack of strength is the result of long-continued demand or strain; one is *exhausted* when the strain has been so severe and continuous as utterly to consume the strength, so that further exertion is for the time impossible. One is *fagged* by drudgery; he is *jaded* by incessant repetition of the same act until it becomes increasingly difficult or well-nigh impossible; as, a horse is *jaded* by a long and unbroken journey.

Antonyms:

invigorate,recreate,refresh,relax,relieve,repose,rest,restore.

---

[358]

TOOL.

Synonyms:

apparatus,implement,machine, utensil,
appliance,instrument,mechanism,weapon.

A *tool* is something that is both contrived and used for extending the force of an intelligent agent to something that is to be operated upon. Those things by which pacific and industrial operations are performed are alone properly called *tools*, those designed for warlike purposes being designated *weapons*. An *instrument* is anything through which power is applied and a result produced; in general usage, the word is of considerably wider meaning than *tool*; as, a piano is a musical *instrument*. *Instrument* is the word usually applied to *tools* used in scientific pursuits; as, we speak of a surgeon's or an optician's *instruments*. An *implement* is a mechanical agency considered with reference to some specific purpose to which it is adapted; as, an agricultural *implement*; *implements* of war. *Implement* is a less technical and artificial term than *tool*. The paw of a tiger might be termed a terrible *implement*, but not a *tool*. A *utensil* is that which may be used for some special purpose; the word is especially applied to articles used for domestic or agricultural purposes; as, kitchen *utensils*; farming *utensils*. An *appliance* is that which is or may be applied to the accomplishment of a result, either independently or as subordinate to something more extensive or important; every mechanical *tool* is an *appliance*, but not every *appliance* is a *tool*; the traces of a harness are *appliances* for traction, but they are not *tools*. *Mechanism* is a word of wide meaning, denoting any combination of mechanical devices for united action. A *machine* in the most general sense is any mechanical *instrument* for the conversion of motion; in this sense a lever is a *machine*; but in more commonly accepted usage a *machine* is distinguished from a *tool* by its complexity, and by the combination and coordination of powers and movements for the production of a result. A chisel by itself is a *tool*; when it is set so as to be operated by a crank and pitman, the entire *mechanism* is called a *machine*; as, a mortising-*machine*. An *apparatus* may be a *machine*, but the word is commonly used for a collection of distinct articles to be used in connection or combination for a certain purpose—a mechanical equipment; as, the *apparatus* of a gymnasium; especially, for a collection of *appliances* for some scientific purpose; as, a chemical or surgical *apparatus*; an *apparatus* may include many *tools*, *instruments*, or *implements*. *Implement* is for the most part and[359] *utensil* is altogether restricted to the literal sense; *instrument*, *machine*, and *tool* have figurative use, *instrument* being used largely in a good, *tool* always in a bad sense; *machine* inclines to the unfavorable sense, as implying that human agents are made mechanically subservient to some controlling will; as, an *instrument* of Providence; the *tool* of a tyrant; a political *machine*.

TOPIC.

Synonyms:

division,
head,
issue,
matter,
motion,
point,
proposition,
question,
subject,
theme.

A *topic* (Gr. *topos*, place) is a *head* of discourse. Since a *topic* for discussion is often stated in the form of a *question*, *question* has come to be extensively used to denote a debatable *topic*, especially of a practical nature—an *issue*; as, the labor *question*; the temperance *question*. In deliberative assemblies a *proposition* presented or moved for acceptance is called a *motion*, and such a *motion* or other matter for consideration is known as the *question*, since it is or may be stated in interrogative form to be answered by each member with a vote of "aye" or "no;" a member is required to speak to the *question*; the chairman puts the *question*. In speaking or writing the general *subject* or *theme* may be termed the *topic*, tho it is more usual to apply the latter term to the subordinate *divisions*, *points*, or *heads* of discourse; as, to enlarge on this *topic* would carry me too far from my *subject*; a pleasant drive will suggest many *topics* for conversation.

TRACE.

Synonyms:

footmark,
footprint,
footstep,
impression,
mark,
memorial,
remains,
remnant,
sign,
token,
track,
trail,
vestige.

A *memorial* is that which is intended or fitted to bring to remembrance something that has passed away; it may be vast and stately. On the other hand, a slight *token* of regard may be a cherished *memorial* of a friend; either a concrete object or an observance may be a *memorial*. A *vestige* is always slight compared with that whose existence it recalls;

as, scattered mounds containing implements, weapons, etc., are *vestiges* of a former civilization. A *vestige* is always a part of that which has passed away; a *trace* may be merely the *mark* made by something that has been present or passed by, and that is still existing, or some slight[360] evidence of its presence or of the effect it has produced; as, *traces* of game were observed by the hunter. Compare CHARACTERISTIC.

TRANSACT.

Synonyms:

accomplish,
act,
carry on,
conduct,
do,
negotiate,
perform,
treat.

There are many acts that one may *do*, *accomplish*, or *perform* unaided; what he *transacts* is by means of or in association with others; one may *do* a duty, *perform* a vow, *accomplish* a task, but he *transacts* business, since that always involves the agency of others. To *negotiate* and to *treat* are likewise collective acts, but both these words lay stress upon deliberation with adjustment of mutual claims and interests; *transact*, while it may depend upon previous deliberation, states execution only. Notes, bills of exchange, loans, and treaties are said to be *negotiated,* the word so used covering not merely the preliminary consideration, but the final settlement. *Negotiate* has more reference to execution than *treat*; nations may *treat* of peace without result, but when a treaty is *negotiated*, peace is secured; the citizens of the two nations are then free to *transact* business with one another. Compare DO.

TRANSACTION.

Synonyms:

act,action,affair,business,deed,doing,proceeding.

One's *acts* or *deeds* may be exclusively his own; his *transactions* involve the agency or participation of others. A *transaction* is something completed; a *proceeding* is or is viewed as something in progress; but since *transaction* is often used to include the steps leading to the conclusion, while *proceedings* may result in *action*, the dividing line between the two words becomes sometimes quite faint, tho *transaction* often emphasizes the fact of something done, or brought to a conclusion. Both *transactions* and *proceedings* are used of the records of a deliberative body, especially when published; strictly used, the two are distinguished; as, the Philosophical *Transactions* of the Royal Society of London give in full the papers read; the *Proceedings* of the American Philological Association give in full the *business* done, with mere abstracts of or extracts from the papers read. Compare ACT; BUSINESS.

---

[361]

TRANSCENDENTAL.

Synonyms:

a priori,intuitive,original,primordial,transcendent.

Intuitive truths are those which are in the mind independently of all experience, not being derived from experience nor limited by it, as that the whole is greater than a part, or that things which are equal to the same thing are equal to one another. All *intuitive* truths or beliefs are *transcendental*. But *transcendental* is a wider term than *intuitive*, including all within the limits of thought that is not derived from experience, as the ideas of space and time. "Being is *transcendental*.... As being can not be included under any genus, but transcends them all, so the properties or affections of being have also been called *transcendental*." K.-F. *Vocab. Philos.* p. 530. "*Transcendent* he [Kant] employed to denote what is wholly beyond experience, being neither given as an a posteriori nor *a priori* element of cognition—what therefore transcends every category of thought." K.-F. *Vocab. Philos.* p. 531. *Transcendental* has been applied in the language of the Emersonian school to the soul's supposed *intuitive* knowledge of things divine and human, so far as they are capable of being known to man. Compare MYSTERIOUS.

TRANSIENT.

Synonyms:

brief,
ephemeral,
evanescent,
fleeting,
flitting,
flying,
fugitive,
momentary,
passing,
short,
temporary,
transitory.

Transient and *transitory* are both derived from the same original source (L. *trans*, over, and *eo*, go), denoting that which quickly passes or is passing away, but there is between them a fine shade of difference. A thing is *transient* which in fact is not lasting; a thing is *transitory* which by its very nature must soon pass away; a thing is *temporary* (L. *tempus*, time) which is intended to last or be made use of but a little while; as, a *transient* joy; this *transitory* life; a *temporary* chairman. *Ephemeral* (Gr. *epi*, on, and *hemera*, day) literally lasting but for a day, often marks more strongly than *transient* exceeding brevity of duration; it agrees with *transitory* in denoting that its object is destined to pass away, but is stronger, as denoting not only its certain but its speedy extinction; thus that which is *ephemeral* is looked upon as at once slight and perishable, and the word carries often a suggestion of contempt; man's life is *transitory*, a butterfly's existence is *ephemeral*; with no solid qualities or worthy achievements a pretender[362] may sometimes gain an *ephemeral* popularity. That which is *fleeting* is viewed as in the act of passing swiftly by, and that which is *fugitive* (L. *fugio*, flee) as eluding attempts to detain it; that which is *evanescent* (L. *evanesco*, from *e*, out, and *vanus*, empty, vain) as in the act of vanishing even while we gaze, as the hues of the sunset.

Antonyms:

abiding, enduring, eternal, everlasting, immortal, imperishable, lasting, permanent, perpetual, persistent, undying, unfading.

UNION.

Synonyms:

coalition, combination, conjunction, junction, juncture, oneness, unification, unity.

Unity is *oneness*, the state of being one, especially of that which never has been divided or of that which can not be conceived of as resolved into parts; as, the *unity* of God or the *unity* of the human soul. *Union* is a bringing together of things that have been distinct, so that they combine or coalesce to form a new whole, or the state or condition of things thus brought together; in a *union* the separate individuality of the things united is never lost sight of; we speak of the *union* of the parts of a fractured bone or of the *union* of hearts in marriage. But *unity* can be said of that which is manifestly or even conspicuously made up of parts, when a single purpose or ideal is so subserved by all that their possible separateness is lost sight of; as, we speak of the *unity* of the human body, or of the *unity* of the church. Compare ALLIANCE; ASSOCIATION; ATTACHMENT; HARMONY; MARRIAGE.

Antonyms:

analysis, contrariety, decomposition, disconnection, disjunction, dissociation, disunion, division, divorce, schism, separation, severance.

USUAL.

Synonyms:

accustomed, common, customary, everyday, familiar, frequent, general, habitual, normal, ordinary, prevailing, prevalent, public, regular, wonted.

Usual (L. *usus*, use, habit, wont) signifies such as regularly or often recurs in the ordinary course of events, or is habitually repeated in the life of the same person. *Ordinary* (L. *ordo*, order) signifies according to an established order, hence of *everyday* occurrence. In strictness, *common* and *general* apply to the greater number of individuals in a class; but both words are in good use as[363] applying to the greater number of instances in a series, so that it is possible to speak of one person's *common* practise or *general* custom, tho *ordinary* or *usual* would in such case be preferable. Compare GENERAL; NORMAL.

Antonyms:

exceptional,
extraordinary,
infrequent,
out-of-the-way,
rare,
singular,
strange,
uncommon,
unparalleled,
unusual.

UTILITY.

Synonyms:

advantage,
avail,
benefit,
expediency,
profit,
service,
serviceableness,
use,
usefulness.

Utility (L. *utilis*, useful) signifies primarily the quality of being useful, but is somewhat more abstract and philosophical than *usefulness* or *use*, and is often employed to denote adaptation to produce a valuable result, while *usefulness* denotes the actual production of such result. We contrast beauty and *utility*. We say of an invention, its *utility* is questionable, or, on the other hand, its *usefulness* has been proved by ample trial, or I have found it of *use*; still, *utility* and *usefulness* are frequently interchanged. *Expediency* (L. *ex*, out, and *pes*, foot; literally, the getting the foot out) refers primarily to escape from or avoidance of some difficulty or trouble; either *expediency* or *utility* may be used to signify *profit* or *advantage* considered apart from right as the ground of moral obligation, or of actions that have a moral character, *expediency* denoting immediate *advantage* on a contracted view, and especially with reference to avoiding danger, difficulty, or loss, while *utility* may be so broadened as to cover all existence through all time, as in the utilitarian theory of morals. *Policy* is often used in a kindred sense, more positive than *expediency* but narrower than *utility*, as in the proverb, "Honesty is the best *policy*." Compare PROFIT.

Antonyms:

disadvantage,
folly,
futility,
impolicy,
inadequacy,
inexpediency,
inutility,
unprofitableness,
uselessness,
worthlessness.

VACANT.

Synonyms:

blank,
empty,
leisure,
unemployed,
unfilled,
unoccupied,
untenanted,
vacuous,
void,
waste.

That is *empty* which contains nothing; that is *vacant* which is without that which has filled or might be expected to fill it; *vacant* has extensive reference to rights or possibilities of occupancy.[364] A *vacant* room may not be *empty*, and an *empty* house may not be *vacant*. *Vacant*, as derived from the Latin, is applied to things of some dignity; *empty*, from the Saxon, is preferred in speaking of slight, common, or homely matters, tho it may be applied with special force to the highest; we speak of *empty* space, a *vacant* lot, an *empty* dish, an *empty* sleeve, a *vacant* mind, an *empty* heart, an *empty* boast, a *vacant* office, a *vacant* or *leisure* hour. *Void* and *devoid* are rarely used in the literal sense, but for the most part confined to abstract relations, *devoid* being followed by *of*, and having with that addition the effect of a prepositional phrase; as, the article is *devoid of* sense; the contract is *void* for want of consideration. *Waste*, in this connection, applies to that which is made so by devastation or ruin, or gives an impression of desolation, especially as combined with vastness, probably from association of the words *waste* and vast: *waste* is applied also to uncultivated or unproductive land, if of considerable extent; we speak of a *waste* track or region, but not of a *waste* city lot. *Vacuous* refers to the condition of being *empty* or *vacant*, regarded as continuous or characteristic.

Antonyms:

brimful,
brimmed,
brimming,
busy,
crammed,
crowded,
filled,
full,
gorged,
inhabited,
jammed,
occupied,
overflowing,
packed,
replete.

VAIN.

Synonyms:

abortive,
baseless,
bootless,
deceitful,
delusive,
empty,
fruitless,
futile,
idle,
inconstant,
ineffectual,
nugatory,
null,
profitless,
shadowy,
trifling,
trivial,
unavailing,
unimportant,
unprofitable,
unreal,
unsatisfying,
unserviceable,
unsubstantial,
useless,
vapid,
visionary,
worthless.

Vain (L. *vanus*, empty) keeps the etymological idea through all changes of meaning; a *vain* endeavor is *empty* of result, or of adequate power to produce a result, a *vain* pretension is *empty* or destitute of support, a *vain* person has a conceit that is *empty* or destitute of adequate cause or reason. That which is *bootless*, *fruitless*, or *profitless* fails to accomplish any valuable result; that which is *abortive*, *ineffectual*, or *unavailing* fails to accomplish a result that it was, or was supposed to be, adapted to accomplish. That which is *useless*, *futile*, or *vain* is inherently incapable of accomplishing a specified result. *Useless*, in the widest sense,[365] signifies not of use for any valuable purpose, and is thus closely similar to *valueless* and *worthless*. *Fruitless* is more final than *ineffectual*, as applying to the sum or harvest of endeavor. That which is *useless* lacks actual fitness for a purpose; that which is *vain* lacks imaginable fitness. Compare VACANT; OSTENTATION; PRIDE.

Antonyms:

adequate,
advantageous,
effective,
efficient,
powerful,
profitable,
solid,
sound,
useful,
valid,

beneficial,
competent,
expedient,
potent,
real,
serviceable,
substantial,
sufficient,
valuable,
worthy.

Compare synonyms for UTILITY.

VENAL.

Synonyms:

hireling,
mercenary,
purchasable,
salable.

Venal (L. *venalis*, from *venum*, sale) signifies ready to sell one's influence, vote, or efforts for money or other consideration; *mercenary* (L. *mercenarius*, from *merces*, pay, reward) signifies influenced chiefly or only by desire for gain or reward; thus, etymologically, the *mercenary* can be hired, while the *venal* are openly or actually for sale; *hireling* (AS. *hyrling*, from *hyr*) signifies serving for hire or pay, or having the spirit or character of one who works or of that which is done directly for hire or pay. *Mercenary* has especial application to character or disposition; as, a *mercenary* spirit; *mercenary* motives—*i. e.*, a spirit or motives to which money is the chief consideration or the moving principle. The *hireling*, the *mercenary*, and the *venal* are alike in making principle, conscience, and honor of less account than gold or sordid considerations; but the *mercenary* and *venal* may be simply open to the bargain and sale which the *hireling* has already consummated; a clergyman may be *mercenary* in making place and pay of undue importance while not *venal* enough to forsake his own communion for another for any reward that could be offered him. The *mercenary* may retain much show of independence; *hireling* service sacrifices self-respect as well as principle; a public officer who makes his office tributary to private speculation in which he is interested is *mercenary*; if he receives a stipulated recompense for administering his office at the behest of some leader, faction, corporation, or the like, he is both *hireling* and *venal*; if he gives essential advantages for pay, without subjecting himself[366] to any direct domination, his course is *venal*, but not *hireling*. Compare PAY; VENIAL.

Antonyms:

disinterested,
generous,
honest,
honorable,
incorruptible,
patriotic,
public-spirited,
unpurchasable.

VENERATE.

Synonyms:

adore,
honor,
respect,
revere,
reverence.

In the highest sense, to *revere* or *reverence* is to hold in mingled love and honor with something of sacred fear, as for that which while lovely is sublimely exalted and brings upon us by contrast a sense of our unworthiness or inferiority; to *revere* is a wholly spiritual act; to *reverence* is often, tho not necessarily, to give outward expression to the reverential feeling; we *revere* or *reverence* the divine majesty. *Revere* is a stronger word than *reverence* or *venerate*. To *venerate* is to hold in exalted honor without fear, and is applied to objects less removed from ourselves than those we *revere*, being said especially of aged persons, of places or objects having sacred associations, and of abstractions; we *venerate* an aged pastor, the dust of heroes or martyrs, lofty virtue or self-sacrifice, or some great cause, as that of civil or religious liberty; we do not *venerate* God, but *revere* or *reverence* him. We *adore* with a humble yet free outflowing of soul. Compare VENERATION.

Antonyms:

contemn,detest, dishonor, scoff at,slight,
despise, disdain,disregard,scorn, spurn.

VENERATION.

Synonyms:

adoration,awe,dread,reverence.

Awe is inspired by that in which there is sublimity or majesty so overwhelming as to awaken a feeling akin to fear; in *awe*, considered by itself, there is no element of esteem or affection, tho the sense of vastness, power, or grandeur in the object is always present. *Dread* is a shrinking apprehension or expectation of possible harm awakened by any one of many objects or causes, from that which is overwhelmingly vast and mighty to that which is productive of momentary physical pain; in its higher uses *dread* approaches the meaning of *awe*, but with more of chilliness and cowering, and without that subjection of soul to the grandeur[367] and worthiness of the object that is involved in *awe*. *Awe* is preoccupied with the object that inspires it; *dread* with apprehension of personal consequences. *Reverence* and *veneration* are less overwhelming than *awe* or *dread*, and suggest something of esteem, affection, and personal nearness. We may feel *awe* of that which we can not *reverence*, as a grandly terrible ocean storm; *awe* of the divine presence is more distant and less trustful than *reverence*. *Veneration* is commonly applied to things which are not subjects of *awe*. *Adoration*, in its full sense, is loftier than *veneration*, less restrained and awed than *reverence*, and with more of the spirit of direct, active, and joyful worship. Compare ESTEEM; VENERATE.

Antonyms:

contempt,disdain,dishonor,disregard,scorn.

VENIAL.

Synonyms:

excusable,pardonable,slight,trivial.

Venial (L. *venia*, pardon) signifies capable of being pardoned, and, in common use, capable of being readily pardoned, easily overlooked. Aside from its technical ecclesiastical use, *venial* is always understood as marking some fault comparatively *slight* or *trivial*. A *venial* offense is one readily overlooked; a *pardonable* offense requires more serious consideration, but on deliberation is found to be susceptible of pardon. *Excusable* is scarcely applied to offenses, but to matters open to doubt or criticism rather than direct censure; so used, it often falls little short of justifiable; as, I think, under those circumstances, his action was *excusable*. Protestants do not recognize the distinction between *venial* and mortal sins. *Venial* must not be confounded with the very different word VENAL. Compare VENAL.

Antonyms:

inexcusable,inexpiable,mortal,unpardonable,unjustifiable.

VERACITY.

Synonyms:

candor,
frankness,
honesty,
ingenuousness,
reality,
truth,
truthfulness,
verity.

Truth is primarily and *verity* is always a quality of thought or speech, especially of speech, as in exact conformity to fact. *Veracity* is properly a quality of a person, the habit of speaking and the disposition to speak the *truth*; a habitual liar may on some[368] occasions speak the *truth*, but that does not constitute him a man of *veracity*; on the other hand, a person of undoubted *veracity* may state (through ignorance or misinformation) what is not the *truth*. *Truthfulness* is a quality that may inhere either in a person or in his statements or beliefs. *Candor*, *frankness*, *honesty*, and *ingenuousness* are allied with *veracity*, and *verity* with *truth*, while *truthfulness* may accord with either. *Truth* in a secondary sense may be applied to intellectual action or moral character, in the former case becoming a close synonym of *veracity*; as, I know him to be a man of *truth*.

Antonyms:

deceit,
deception,
delusion,
duplicity,
error,
fabrication,
falsehood,
falseness,
falsity,
fiction,
guile,
imposture,
lie,
mendacity,
untruth.

Compare synonyms for DECEPTION.

VERBAL.

Synonyms:

literal,oral,vocal.

Oral (L. *os*, the mouth) signifies uttered through the mouth or (in common phrase) by word of mouth; *verbal* (L. *verbum*, a word) signifies of, pertaining to, or connected with words, especially with words as distinguished from the ideas they convey; *vocal* (L. *vox*, the voice) signifies of or pertaining to the voice, uttered or modulated by the voice, and especially uttered with or sounding with full, resonant voice; *literal* (L. *litera*, a letter) signifies consisting of or expressed by letters, or according to the letter, in the broader sense of the exact meaning or requirement of the words used; what is called "the letter of the law" is its *literal* meaning without going behind what is expressed by the letters on the page. Thus *oral* applies to that which is given by spoken words in distinction from that which is written or printed; as, *oral* tradition; an *oral* examination. By this rule we should in strictness speak of an *oral* contract or an *oral* message, but *verbal* contract and *verbal* message, as indicating that which is by spoken rather than by written words, have become so fixed in the language that they can probably never be changed; this usage is also in line with other idioms of the language; as, "I give you my *word*," "a true man's *word* is as good as his bond," "by *word* of mouth," etc. A *verbal* translation may be *oral* or written, so that it is word for word; a *literal* translation follows the construction and idiom of the original as well as the words; a *literal*[369] translation is more than one that is merely *verbal*; both *verbal* and *literal* are opposed to *free*. In the same sense, of attending to words only, we speak of *verbal* criticism, a *verbal* change. *Vocal* has primary reference to the human voice; as, *vocal* sounds, *vocal* music; *vocal* may be applied within certain limits to inarticulate sounds given forth by other animals than man; as, the woods were *vocal* with the songs of birds; *oral* is never so applied, but is limited to articulate utterance regarded as having a definite meaning; as, an *oral* statement.

VICTORY.

Synonyms:

achievement,
advantage,
conquest,
mastery,
success,
supremacy,
triumph.

Victory is the state resulting from the overcoming of an opponent or opponents in any contest, or from the overcoming of difficulties, obstacles, evils, etc., considered as opponents or enemies. In the latter sense any hard-won *achievement*, *advantage*, or *success* may be termed a *victory*. In *conquest* and *mastery* there is implied a permanence of state that is not implied in *victory*. *Triumph*, originally denoting the public rejoicing in honor of a *victory*, has come to signify also a peculiarly exultant, complete, and glorious *victory*. Compare CONQUER.

Antonyms:

defeat,
destruction,
disappointment,
disaster,
failure,
frustration,
miscarriage,
overthrow,
retreat,
rout.

VIGILANT.

Synonyms:

alert,
awake,
careful,
cautious,
circumspect,
on the alert,
on the lookout,
sleepless,
wakeful,
wary,
watchful,
wide-awake.

Vigilant implies more sustained activity and more intelligent volition than *alert*; one may be habitually *alert* by reason of native quickness of perception and thought, or one may be momentarily *alert* under some excitement or expectancy; one who is *vigilant* is so with thoughtful purpose. One is *vigilant* against danger or harm; he may be *alert* or *watchful* for good as well as against evil; he is *wary* in view of suspected stratagem, trickery, or treachery. A person may be *wakeful* because of some merely physical excitement or excitability, as through insomnia; yet he may be utterly careless and negligent in his wakefulness, the reverse of *watchful*; a person who is truly *watchful* must keep himself[370] *wakeful* while on watch, in which case *wakeful* has something of mental quality. *Watchful*, from the Saxon, and *vigilant*, from the Latin, are almost exact equivalents; but *vigilant* has somewhat more of sharp definiteness and somewhat more suggestion of volition; one may be habitually *watchful*; one is *vigilant* of set purpose and for direct cause, as in the presence of an enemy. Compare ALERT.

Antonyms:

careless,
drowsy,
dull,
heedless,
inattentive,
incautious,
inconsiderate,
neglectful,
negligent,
oblivious,
thoughtless,
unwary.

VIRTUE.

Synonyms:

chastity,
duty,
excellence,
faithfulness,
goodness,
honesty,
honor,
integrity,
justice,
morality,
probity,
purity,
rectitude,
righteousness,
rightness,
truth,
uprightness,
virtuousness,
worth,
worthiness.

Virtue (L. *virtus*, primarily manly strength or courage, from *vir*, a man, a hero) is, in its full sense, *goodness* that is victorious through trial, perhaps through temptation and conflict. *Goodness*, the being morally good, may be much less than *virtue*, as lacking the strength that comes from trial and conflict, or it may be very much more than *virtue*, as rising sublimely above the possibility of temptation and conflict—the infantile as contrasted with the divine *goodness*. *Virtue* is distinctively human; we do not predicate it of God. *Morality* is conformity to the moral law in action, whether in matters concerning ourselves or others, whether with or without right principle. *Honesty* and *probity* are used especially of one's relations to his fellow men, *probity* being to *honesty* much what *virtue* in some respects is to *goodness*; *probity* is *honesty* tried and proved, especially in those things that are beyond the reach of legal requirement; above the commercial sense, *honesty* may be applied to the highest truthfulness of the soul to and with itself and its Maker. *Integrity*, in the full sense, is moral wholeness without a flaw; when used, as it often is, of contracts and dealings, it has reference to inherent character and principle, and denotes much more than superficial or conventional *honesty*. *Honor* is a lofty *honesty* that scorns fraud or wrong as base and unworthy of itself. *Honor* rises far above thought of the motto that "*honesty* is the best policy." *Purity* is freedom from all admixture, especially of that which debases; it is *chastity* both of heart and life, but of the life because[371] from the heart. *Duty*, the rendering of what is due to any person or in any relation, is, in this connection, the fulfilment of moral obligation. *Rectitude* and *righteousness* denote conformity to the standard of right, whether in heart or act; *righteousness* is used especially in the religious sense. *Uprightness* refers especially to conduct. *Virtuousness* is a quality of the soul or of action; in the latter sense it is the essence of virtuous action. Compare INNOCENT; JUSTICE; RELIGION.

Antonyms:

evil,vice,viciousness,wickedness,wrong.

Compare synonyms for SIN.

WANDER.

Synonyms:

deviate,
digress,
diverge,
err,
go astray,
ramble,
range,
roam,
rove,
stray,
swerve,
veer.

To *wander* (AS. *windan*, wind) is to move in an indefinite or indeterminate way which may or may not be a departure from a prescribed way; to *deviate* (L. *de*, from, and *via*, a way) is to turn from a prescribed or right way, physically, mentally, or morally, usually in an unfavorable sense; to *diverge* (L. *di*, apart, and *vergo*, incline, tend) is to turn from a course previously followed or that something else follows, and has no unfavorable implication; to *digress* (L. *di*, apart, aside, and *gradior*, step) is used only with reference to speaking or writing; to *err* is used of intellectual or moral action, and of the moral with primary reference to the intellectual, an error being viewed as in some degree due to ignorance. *Range*, *roam*, and *rove* imply the traversing of considerable, often of vast, distances of land or sea; *range* commonly implies a purpose; as, cattle *range* for food; a hunting-dog *ranges* a field for game. *Roam* and *rove* are often purposeless, and always without definite aim. To *swerve* or *veer* is to turn suddenly from a prescribed or previous course, and often but momentarily; *veer* is more capricious and repetitious; the horse *swerves* at the flash of a sword; the wind *veers*; the ship *veers* with the wind. To *stray* is to go in a somewhat purposeless way aside from the regular path or usual limits or abode, usually with unfavorable implication; cattle *stray* from their pastures; an author *strays* from his subject; one *strays* from the path of virtue. *Stray* is in most uses a lighter word than *wander*. *Ramble*, in its literal use, is always a word of pleasant suggestion, but in its figurative use always somewhat contemptuous; as, *rambling* talk.

---

[372]

WAY.

Synonyms:

alley,
avenue,
bridle-path,
channel,
course,
driveway,
highroad,
highway,
lane,
pass,
passage,
passageway,
path,
pathway,
road,
roadway,
route,
street,
thoroughfare,
track.

Wherever there is room for one object to pass another there is a *way*. A *road* (originally a ride*way*) is a prepared *way* for traveling with horses or vehicles, always the latter unless the contrary is expressly stated; a *way* suitable to be traversed only by foot-passengers or by animals is called a *path*, *bridle-path*, or *track*; as, the *roads* in that country are mere *bridle-paths*. A *road* may be private; a *highway* or *highroad* is public, *highway* being a specific name for a *road* legally set apart for the use of the public forever; a *highway* may be over water as well as over land. A *route* is a line of travel, and may be over many *roads*. A *street* is in some center of habitation, as a city, town, or village; when it passes between rows of dwellings the country *road* becomes the village *street*. An *avenue* is a long, broad, and imposing or principal street. *Track* is a word of wide signification; we speak of a goat-*track* on a mountain-side, a railroad-*track*, a race-*track*, the *track* of a comet; on a traveled *road* the line worn by regular passing of hoofs and wheels in either direction is called the *track*. A *passage* is between any two objects or lines of enclosure, a *pass* commonly between mountains. A *driveway* is within enclosed grounds, as of a private residence. A *channel* is a water*way*. A *thoroughfare* is a *way* through; a *road* or *street* temporarily or permanently closed at any point ceases for such time to be a *thoroughfare*. Compare AIR; DIRECTION.

WISDOM.

Synonyms:

attainment,
depth,
discernment,
discretion,
enlightenment,
erudition,
foresight,
information,
insight,
judgment,
judiciousness,
knowledge,
learning,
prescience,
profundity,
prudence,
reason,
reasonableness,
sagacity,
sense,
skill,
understanding.

Enlightenment, *erudition*, *information*, *knowledge*, *learning*, and *skill* are acquired, as by study or practise. *Insight*, *judgment*, *profundity* or *depth*, *reason*, *sagacity*, *sense*, and *understanding* are native qualities of mind, tho capable of increase by cultivation. The other qualities are on the border-line. *Wisdom* has[373] been defined as "the right use of *knowledge*," or "the use of the most important means for attaining the best ends," *wisdom* thus presupposing *knowledge* for its very existence and exercise. *Wisdom* is mental power acting upon the materials that fullest *knowledge* gives in the most effective way. There may be what is termed "practical *wisdom*" that looks only to material results; but in its full sense, *wisdom* implies the highest and noblest exercise of all the faculties of the moral nature as well as of the intellect. *Prudence* is a lower and more negative form of the same virtue, respecting outward and practical matters, and largely with a view of avoiding loss and injury; *wisdom* transcends *prudence*, so that while the part of *prudence* is ordinarily also that of *wisdom*, cases arise, as in the exigencies of business or of war, when the highest *wisdom* is in the disregard of the maxims of *prudence*. *Judgment*, the power of forming decisions, especially correct decisions, is broader and more positive than *prudence*, leading one to do, as readily as to refrain from doing; but *judgment* is more limited in range and less exalted in character than *wisdom*; to say of one that he displayed good *judgment* is much less than to say that he manifested *wisdom*. *Skill* is far inferior to *wisdom*, consisting largely in the practical application of acquired *knowledge*, power, and habitual processes, or in the ingenious contrivance that makes such application possible. In the making of something perfectly useless there may be great *skill*, but no *wisdom*. Compare ACUMEN; ASTUTE; KNOWLEDGE; MIND; PRUDENCE; SAGACIOUS; SKILFUL.

Antonyms:

absurdity,
error,
fatuity,
folly,
foolishness,
idiocy,
imbecility,
imprudence,
indiscretion,
miscalculation,
misjudgment,
nonsense,
senselessness,
silliness,
stupidity.

Compare synonyms for ABSURD; IDIOCY.

WIT.

Synonyms:

banter,
burlesque,
drollery,
facetiousness,
fun,
humor,
jest,
jocularity,
joke,
playfulness,
pleasantry,
raillery,
waggery,
waggishness,
witticism.

Wit is the quick perception of unusual or commonly unperceived analogies or relations between things apparently unrelated, and has been said to depend upon a union of surprise and pleasure; it depends certainly on the production of a diverting, entertaining, or merrymaking surprise. The analogies with which *wit* plays[374] are often superficial or artificial; *humor* deals with real analogies of an amusing or entertaining kind, or with traits of character that are seen to have a comical side as soon as brought to view. *Wit* is keen, sudden, brief, and sometimes severe; *humor* is deep, thoughtful, sustained, and always kindly. *Pleasantry* is lighter and less vivid than *wit*. *Fun* denotes the merry results produced by *wit* and *humor*, or by any fortuitous occasion of mirth, and is pronounced and often hilarious.

Antonyms:

dulness,
gravity,
seriousness,
sobriety,
solemnity,
stolidity,
stupidity.

WORK.

Synonyms:

achievement,
action,
business,
deed,
doing,
drudgery,
employment,
exertion.
labor,
occupation,
performance,
product,
production,
toil.

Work is the generic term for any continuous application of energy toward an end; *work* may be hard or easy. *Labor* is hard and wearying *work*; *toil* is straining and exhausting *work*. *Work* is also used for any result of working, physical or mental, and has special senses, as in mechanics, which *labor* and *toil* do not share. *Drudgery* is plodding, irksome, and often menial *work*. Compare ACT; BUSINESS.

Antonyms:

ease,idleness,leisure,recreation,relaxation,repose,rest,vacation.

YET.

Synonyms:

besides,further,hitherto,now,still,thus far.

Yet and *still* have many closely related senses, and, with verbs of past time, are often interchangeable; we may say "while he was *yet* a child," or "while he was *still* a child." *Yet*, like *still*, often applies to past action or state extending to and including the present time, especially when joined with *as*; we can say "he is feeble *as yet*," or "he is *still* feeble," with scarcely appreciable difference of meaning, except that the former statement implies somewhat more of expectation than the latter. *Yet* with a negative applies to completed action, often replacing a positive statement with *still*; "he is not gone *yet*" is nearly the same as "he is here *still*." *Yet* has a reference to the future which *still* does not share; "we may be successful *yet*" implies that success may begin at some future time; "we may be successful *still*" implies[375] that we may continue to enjoy in the future such success as we are winning now.

YOUTHFUL.

Synonyms:

adolescent,
boyish,
callow,
childish,
childlike,
girlish,
immature,
juvenile,
puerile,
young.

Boyish, *childish*, and *girlish* are used in a good sense of those to whom they properly belong, but in a bad sense of those from whom more maturity is to be expected; *childish* eagerness or glee is pleasing in a child, but unbecoming in a man; *puerile* in modern use is distinctly contemptuous. *Juvenile* and *youthful* are commonly used in a favorable and kindly sense in their application to those still *young*; *youthful* in the sense of having the characteristics of youth, hence fresh, vigorous, light-hearted, buoyant, may have a favorable import as applied to any age, as when we say the old man still retains his *youthful* ardor, vigor, or hopefulness; *juvenile* in such use would belittle the statement. *Young* is distinctively applied to those in the early stage of life or not arrived at maturity. Compare NEW.

Antonyms:

Compare synonyms for OLD.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE TEACHER.

The following exercises have been prepared expressly and solely to accompany the preceding text in which the distinctions of synonyms have been carefully pointed out. It is not expected, intended, or desired that the questions should be answered or the blanks in the examples supplied offhand. In such study nothing can be worse than guesswork. Hence, leading questions have been avoided, and the order of synonyms given in Part I. has frequently been departed from or reversed in Part II.

To secure the study of Part I. before coming into class, pupils should not be allowed to open it during recitation, unless on rare occasions to settle doubtful or disputed points. The very best method will be found to be to have the examples included in the lesson, with any others that may be added, copied on the blackboard before recitation, and no books brought into class.

The *teacher* should make a thorough study of the subject, not only mastering what is given in Part I., but going beyond the necessarily brief statements there given, and consulting the ultimate authorities—the best dictionaries and the works of the best speakers and writers. For the latter purpose a good cyclopedia of quotations, like the Hoyt, will be found very helpful. The teacher should so study out the subject as to be distinctly in advance of the class and able to speak authoritatively. Such independent study will be found intensely interesting, and can be made delightful and even fascinating to any intelligent class.

In answer to questions calling for definitive statement, the teacher should insist upon the very words of the text, unless the pupil can give in his own words what is manifestly as good. This will often be found not easy to do. Definition by synonym should be absolutely forbidden.

Reasonable questions should be encouraged, but the class should not be allowed to become a debating society. The meaning of English words is not a matter of conjecture, and all disputed points should be promptly referred to the dictionary—usually to be looked up after the recitation, and considered, if need be, at the next recitation. The majority of them will not need to be referred to again, as the difficulties will simply represent an inferior usage which the dictionary will brush aside. One great advantage of synonym study is to exterminate colloquialisms.

The class should be encouraged to bring quotations from first-class authors with blanks to be filled, such quotations being held authoritative, though not infallible; also quotations from the best newspapers, periodicals, speeches, etc., with words underlined for criticism, such quotations being held open to revision upon consultation of authorities. The change of usage, whereby that may be correct to-day which would not have been so at an earlier period, should be carefully noted, but always upon the authority of an approved dictionary.

The examples have been in great part selected from the best literature, and all others carefully prepared for this work. Hence, an appropriate word to fill each blank can always be found by careful study of the corresponding group of synonyms. In a few instances, either of two words would appropriately fill a blank and yield a good sense. In such case, either should be accepted as correct, but the resulting difference of meaning should be clearly pointed out.

PART II.

QUESTIONS AND EXAMPLES.

ABANDON (page 1).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what objects or classes of objects does *abandon* apply? *abdicate*? *cede*? *quit*? *resign*? *surrender*? **2.** Is *abandon* used in the favorable or unfavorable sense? *desert* favorable or unfavorable? *forsake*? **3.** What does *abandon* commonly denote of previous relationship? *forsake*?

EXAMPLES.

The soldiers —— his standard in such numbers that the commander found it necessary to —— the enterprise.

France was compelled to —— Alsace and Lorraine to Germany.

In the height of his power Charles V. —— the throne.

Finding resistance vain, the defenders agreed to —— the fortress.

To the surprise of his friends, Senator Conkling suddenly —— his office.

At the stroke of the bell, the men instantly —— work.

ABASE (page 2).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *abase* differ from *debase*? *humble* from *humiliate*? *degrade* from *disgrace*?

EXAMPLES.

To provide funds, the king resolved to —— the coinage.

He came from the scene of his disgrace, haughty and defiant, —— but not ——.

The officer who had —— himself by cowardice was —— to the ranks.

Only the base in spirit will —— themselves before wealth, rank, and power.

The messenger was so —— that no heed was paid to his message.

ABASH (page 3).

QUESTIONS.

1. What has the effect to make one *abashed*? **2.** How does *confuse* differ from *abash*? **3.** What do we mean when we say that a person is *mortified*? **4.** Give an instance of the use of *mortified* where *abashed* could not be substituted. Why could not the words be interchanged? **5.** Can one be *daunted* who is not *abashed*? **6.** Is *embarrass* or *mortify* the stronger word? Give instances.

EXAMPLES.

The peasant stood —— in the royal presence.

The numerous questions —— the witness.

The speaker was —— for a moment, but quickly recovered himself.

At the revelation of such depravity, I was utterly ——.

When sensible of his error, the visitor was deeply ——.

ABBREVIATION (page 4).

QUESTIONS.

1. Is an *abbreviation* always a *contraction*? **2.** Is a *contraction* always an *abbreviation*? Give instances. **3.** Can we have an *abbreviation* of a book, paragraph, or sentence? What can be *abbreviated*? and what *abridged*?

EXAMPLES.

The treatise was already so brief that it did not admit of ——.

The —— Dr. is used both for Doctor and Debtor.

F. R. S. is an —— of the title "Fellow of the Royal Society."

ABET (page 4).

QUESTIONS.

1. *Abet*, *incite*, *instigate*: which of these words are used in a good and which in a bad sense? **2.** How does *abet* differ from *incite* and *instigate* as to the time of the action? **3.** Which of the three words apply to persons and which to actions? Give instances of the use of *abet*; *instigate*; *incite*.

EXAMPLES.

To further his own schemes, he —— the viceroy to rebel against the king.

To —— a crime may be worse than to originate it, as arguing less excitement and more calculation and cowardice.

The prosecution was evidently malicious, —— by envy and revenge.

And you that do —— him in this kind
Cherish rebellion, and are rebels all.

ABHOR (page 5).

QUESTIONS.

1. Which is the stronger word, *abhor* or *despise*? **2.** What does *abhor* denote? **3.** How does Archbishop Trench illustrate the difference between *abhor* and *shun*? **4.** What does *detest* express? **5.** What does *loathe* imply? Is it[379] physical or moral in its application? **6.** Give illustrations of the appropriate uses of the above words.

EXAMPLES.

He had sunk to such degradation as to be utterly —— by all good men.

Such weakness can only be ——.

Talebearers and backbiters are everywhere ——.

—— that which is evil; cleave to that which is good.

ABIDE (page 5).

QUESTIONS.

1. What limit of time is expressed by *abide*? by *lodge*? by *live*, *dwell*, *reside*? **2.** What is the meaning of *sojourn*? **3.** Should we say one is *stopping* or *staying* at a hotel? and why? **4.** Give examples of the extended, and of the limited use of *abide*.

EXAMPLES.

One generation passeth away and another generation cometh, but the earth —— forever.

And there were in the same country shepherds —— in the field, keeping watch over their flock by night.

So great was the crowd of visitors that many were compelled to —— in the neighboring villages.

He is —— at the Albemarle.

He has —— for forty years in the same house.

By faith he —— in the land of promise, as in a strange country.

ABOLISH (page 6).

QUESTIONS.

1. Is *abolish* used of persons or material objects? **2.** Of what is it used? Give examples. **3.** What does *annihilate* signify? Is it stronger or weaker than *abolish*? **4.** What terms do we use for doing away with *laws*, and how do those terms differ among themselves? **5.** What are the differences between *overthrow*, *suppress*, and *subvert*? especially between the last two of those words? **6.** How does *prohibit* differ from *abolish*? **7.** What word do we especially use of putting an end to a nuisance? **8.** What other words of this class are especially referred to? **9.** Give some antonyms of *abolish*.

EXAMPLES.

The one great endeavor of Buddhism is to —— sorrow.

Modern science seems to show conclusively that matter is never ——.

The law, which had long been —— by the revolutionists, was at last —— by the legislature.

The ancient statute was found to have been —— by later enactments, though never formally ——.

The Supreme Court —— the adverse decision of the inferior tribunal.

Even in a republic, sedition should be promptly ——, or it may result in the —— of free institutions.

From the original settlement of Vineland, New Jersey, the sale of intoxicating liquor has been ——.

ABOMINATION (page 7).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what was *abomination* originally applied? **2.** Does it refer to a state of mind or to some act or other object of thought? **3.** How does *abomination* differ from *aversion* or *disgust*? **4.** How does an *abomination* differ from an *offense*? from crime in general?

EXAMPLES.

After the ship began to pitch and roll, we could not look upon food without ——.

It is time that such a —— should be abated.

Capital punishment was formerly inflicted in England for trivial ——.

In spite of their high attainments in learning and art, the foulest —— were prevalent among the Greeks and Romans of classic antiquity.

ABRIDGMENT (page 7).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does an *abridgment* differ from an *outline* or a *synopsis*? from an *abstract* or *digest*? **2.** How does an *abstract* or *digest* differ from an *outline* or a *synopsis*? **3.** Does an *analysis* of a treatise deal with what is expressed, or with what is implied? **4.** What words may we use to express a condensed view of a subject, whether derived from a previous publication or not?

EXAMPLES.

The New Testament may be regarded as an —— of religion.

There are several excellent —— of English literature.

An —— of the decision of the court was published in all the leading papers.

The publishers determined to issue an —— of their dictionary.

Such —— as U. S. for United States should be rarely used, unless in hasty writing or technical works.

ABSOLUTE (page 8).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *absolute* in the strict sense denote? *supreme*? **2.** To what are these words in such sense properly applied? **3.** How are they used in a modified sense? **4.** Is *arbitrary* ever used in a good sense? What is the chief use? Give examples. **5.** How does *autocratic* differ from *arbitrary*? both these words from *despotic*? *despotic* from *tyrannical*? **6.** Is *irresponsible* good or bad in its implication? *arbitrary*? *imperative*? *imperious*? *peremptory*? *positive*? *authoritative*?

EXAMPLES.

God alone is —— and ——.

The Czar of Russia is an —— ruler.

—— power tends always to be —— in its exercise.

On all questions of law in the United States the decision of the —— Court is —— and final.

Learning of the attack on our seamen, the government sent an —— demand for apology and indemnity.

Man's —— will and —— intellect have given him dominion over all other creatures on the earth, so that they are either subjugated or exterminated.

ABSOLVE (page 9).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the original sense of *absolve*? **2.** To what does it apply? **3.** What is its special sense when used with reference to sins? **4.** How does it differ from *acquit*? *forgive*? *justify*? *pardon*? **5.** What are the chief antonyms of *absolve*?

EXAMPLES.

No power under heaven can —— a man from his personal responsibility.

When the facts were known, he was —— of all blame.

ABSORB (page 9).

QUESTIONS.

1. When is a fluid said to be *absorbed*? **2.** Is the substance of the *absorbing* body changed by that which it *absorbs*? Give instances. **3.** How does *consume* differ from *absorb*? **4.** Give instances of the distinctive uses of *engross*, *swallow*, *imbibe*, and *absorb* in the figurative sense. **5.** What is the difference between *absorb* and *emit*? *absorb* and *radiate*?

EXAMPLES.

Tho the fuel was rapidly —— within the furnace, very little heat was —— from the outer surface.

In setting steel rails special provision must be made for their expansion under the influence of the heat that they ——.

Jip stood on the table and barked at Traddles so persistently that he may be said to have —— the conversation.

ABSTINENCE (page 10).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *abstinence* differ from *abstemiousness*? from *self-denial*? **2.** What is *temperance* regarding things lawful and worthy? regarding things vicious and injurious? **3.** What is the more exact term for the proper course regarding evil indulgences?

EXAMPLES.

He was so moderate in his desires that his —— seemed to cost him no ——.

Among the Anglo-Saxons the idea of universal and total —— from all intoxicants is little more than a century old.

ABSTRACT, *v.*; ABSTRACTED (page 10, 11).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the difference between *abstract* and *separate*? between *discriminate* and *distinguish*?[C] **2.** How does *abstract*, when said of the mind, differ from *divert*? from *distract*? **3.** How do *abstracted*, *absorbed*, and *preoccupied* differ from *absent-minded*? **4.** Can one who is *preoccupied* be said to be *listless* or *thoughtless*? one who is *absent-minded*?[382]

EXAMPLES.

He was so —— with these perplexities as to be completely —— of his surroundings.

The busy student may be excused if ——; in the merely —— or —— it is intolerable.

The power to —— one idea from all its associations and view it alone is the —— mark of a philosophical mind.

Numerous interruptions in the midst of —— occupations had made him almost ——.

[C] Note. See these words under DISCERN as referred to at the end of the paragraph on ABSTRACT in Part I. The pupil should be instructed, in all cases, to look up and read over the synonyms referred to by the words in small capitals at the end of the paragraph in Part I.

ABSURD (page 11).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the difference between *absurd* and *paradoxical*? **2.** What are the distinctions between *irrational*, *foolish*, and *silly*? **3.** What is the especial implication in *unreasonable*? **4.** How do *monstrous* and *preposterous* compare with *absurd*? **5.** What is the especial element common to the *ludicrous*, the *ridiculous*, and the *nonsensical*? **6.** What are some chief antonyms of *absurd*?

EXAMPLES.

A statement may be disproved by deducing logically from it a conclusion that is ——.

Carlyle delighted in —— utterances.

The —— hatred of the Jews in the Middle Ages led the populace to believe the most —— slanders concerning them.

I attempted to dissuade him from the —— plan, but found him altogether ——; many of his arguments were so —— as to be positively ——.

ABUSE (page 12).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what does *abuse* apply? **2.** How does *abuse* differ from *damage* (as in the case of rented property, *e. g.*)? **3.** How does *abuse* differ from *harm*? **4.** What words of this group are used in a bad sense? **5.** Is *reproach* good or bad? **6.** How do *persecute* and *oppress* differ? **7.** Do *misemploy*, *misuse*, and *pervert* apply to persons or things? To which does *abuse* apply?

EXAMPLES.

The tenant shall not —— the property beyond reasonable wear.

—— intellectual gifts make the dangerous villain.

In his rage he began to —— and —— all who had formerly been his friends.

To be —— for doing right can never really —— a true man.

In no way has man —— his fellow man more cruelly than by —— him for his religious belief.

ACCESSORY, *n.* (page 13).

QUESTIONS.

1. Which words of this group are used in a good, and which in a bad sense? **2.** Which are indifferently either good or bad? **3.** To what does *ally* generally apply? *colleague*? **4.** How does an *associate* compare in rank with a principal?[383] **5.** Is *assistant* or *attendant* the higher word? How do both these words compare with *associate*? **6.** In what sense are *follower*, *henchman*, and *retainer* used? *partner*? **7.** What is the legal distinction between *abettor* and *accessory*? **8.** To what is *accomplice* nearly equivalent? Which is the preferred legal term?

EXAMPLES.

The Senator differed with his —— in this matter.

The baron rode into town with a great array of armed ——.

France and Russia seem to have become firm ——.

The —— called to the —— for a fresh bandage.

All persons, but especially the young, should take the greatest care in the choice of their ——.

As he was not present at the actual commission of the crime, he was held to be only an —— and not an ——.

ACCIDENT (page 14).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the difference between *accident* and *chance*? **2.** How does *incident* differ from both? **3.** What is the special significance of *fortune*? **4.** How does it differ in usage from *chance*? **5.** How are *accident*, *misadventure*, and *mishap* distinguished?

EXAMPLES.

Gambling clings almost inseparably to games of ——.

Bruises and contusions are regarded as ordinary —— of the cavalry service.

The prudent man is careful not to tempt —— too far.

The misplacement of the switch caused a terrible ——.

Great thoughts and high purposes keep one from being greatly disturbed by the little —— of daily life.

ACQUAINTANCE (page 15).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *acquaintance* between persons imply? **2.** How does *acquaintance* differ from *companionship*? *acquaintance* from *friendship*? from *intimacy*? **3.** How does *fellowship* differ from *friendship*?

EXAMPLES.

A public speaker becomes known to many persons whom he does not know, but who are ready promptly to claim —— with him.

The —— of life must bring us into —— with many who can not be admitted within the inner circle of ——.

The —— of school and college life often develop into the most beautiful and enduring ——.

Between those most widely separated by distance of place and time, by language, station, occupation, and creed, there may yet be true —— of soul.

ACRIMONY (page 15).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *acerbity* differ from *asperity*? *asperity* from *acrimony*? **2.** How is[384] *acrimony* distinguished from *malignity*? *malignity* from *virulence*? **3.** What is implied in the use of the word *severity*?

EXAMPLES.

A certain —— of speech had become habitual with him.

To this ill-timed request, he answered with sudden ——.

A constant sense of injustice may deepen into a settled ——.

This smooth and pleasing address veiled a deep ——.

Great —— will be patiently borne if the sufferer is convinced of its essential justice.

ACT (page 16).

QUESTIONS.

1. How is *act* distinguished from *action*? from *deed*? **2.** Which of the words in this group necessarily imply an external effect? Which may be wholly mental?

EXAMPLES.

He who does the truth will need no instruction as to individual ——s.

—— is the truth of thought.

The —— is done.

ACTIVE (page 17).

QUESTIONS.

1. With what two sets of words is *active* allied? **2.** How does *active* differ from *busy*? from *industrious*? **3.** How do *active* and *restless* compare? **4.** To what sort of activity does *officious* refer? **6.** What are some chief antonyms of *active*?

EXAMPLES.

Being of an —— disposition and without settled purpose or definite occupation, she became —— as a hornet.

He had his —— days and hours, but could never be properly said to be ——.

An —— attendant instantly seized upon my baggage.

The true student is —— from the mere love of learning, independently of its rewards.

ACUMEN (page 18).

QUESTIONS.

1. How do *sharpness*, *acuteness*, *penetration*, and *insight* compare with *acumen*? **2.** What is the special characteristic of *acumen*? To what order of mind does it belong? **3.** What is *sagacity*? Is it attributed to men or brutes? **4.** What is *perspicacity*? **5.** What is *shrewdness*? Is it ordinarily good or evil? **6.** Give illustrations of the uses of the above words as regards the possessors of the corresponding qualities.

EXAMPLES.

The treatise displays great critical ——.

The Indians had developed a practical —— that enabled them to follow a trail by scarcely perceptible signs almost as unerringly as the hound by scent.

ADD (page 18).

QUESTIONS.

1. How is *add* related to *increase*? How does it differ from *multiply*? **2.** What does *augment* signify? Of what is it ordinarily used? **3.** To what does *amplify* apply? **4.** In what ways may a discourse or treatise be *amplified*?

EXAMPLES.

Care to our coffin —— a nail no doubt;
And every grin, so merry, draws one out.
—— up at night, what thou hast done by day;
And in the morning what thou hast to do.

ADDRESS, *v.* (page 19).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *accost* always signify? *greet*? *hail*? **2.** How does *salute* differ from *accost* or *greet*? *address*? **3.** What is it to *apostrophize*?

EXAMPLES.

The pale snowdrop is springing
To —— the glowing sun.

—— to the Chief who in triumph advances.

His faithful dog —— the smiling guest.

—— ye heroes! heaven-born band!
Who fought and died in freedom's cause.

ADDRESS, *n.* (page 20).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *address* in the sense here considered? **2.** What is *tact*? **3.** What qualities are included in *address*?

EXAMPLES.

And the tear that is wiped with a little ——
May be follow'd perhaps by a smile.
The —— of doing doth expresse
No other but the doer's willingnesse.

I have very poor and unhappy brains for drinking; I could wish —— would invent some other custom of entertainment.

ADEQUATE (page 21).

QUESTIONS.

1. What do *adequate*, *commensurate*, and *sufficient* alike signify? How does *commensurate* specifically differ from the other two words? Give examples. **2.** To what do *adapted*, *fit*, *suitable*, and *qualified* refer? **3.** Is *satisfactory* a very high recommendation of any work? Why? **4.** Is *able* or *capable* the higher word? Illustrate.

EXAMPLES.

We know not of what we are —— till the trial comes.

Indeed, left nothing —— for your purpose untouched, slightly handled, in discourse.

ADHERENT (page 21).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is an *adherent*? **2.** How does an *adherent* differ from a *supporter*? from a *disciple*? **3.** How do both the above words differ from *ally*? **4.** Has *partisan* a good or a bad sense, and why? **5.** Is it well to speak of a *supporter* as a *backer*?

EXAMPLES.

Also of your own selves shall men arise speaking perverse things to draw away ——s after them.

Woman is woman's natural ——.

Self-defense compelled the European nations to be ——s against Napoleon.

The deposed monarch was found to have a strong body of ——s.

ADJACENT (page 22).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the difference between *adjacent* and *adjoining*? *contiguous*? *conterminous*? **2.** What distance is implied in *near*? *neighboring*? **3.** What does *next* always imply? **4.** Give antonyms of *adjacent*; *near*.

EXAMPLES.

Stronger by weakness, wiser men become,
As they draw —— to their eternal home.

ADMIRE (page 23).

QUESTIONS.

1. In what sense was *admire* formerly used? What does it now express? **2.** How does *admire* compare with *revere*? *venerate*? *adore*? Give instances of the use of these words.

EXAMPLES.

The beautiful are sure to be ——.

Henceforth the majesty of God ——;
Fear him, and you have nothing else to fear.
I value Science—none can prize it more,
It gives ten thousand motives to ——:
Be it religious, as it ought to be,
The heart it humbles, and it bows the knee.

ADORN (page 23).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *adorn* differ from *ornament*? from *garnish*? from *deck* or *bedeck*? from *decorate*?

EXAMPLES.

At church, with meek and unaffected grace,
His looks —— the venerable place.
The red breast oft, at evening hours,
Shall kindly lend his little aid,
With hoary moss, and gathered flowers,
To —— the ground where thou art laid.

AFFRONT (page 24).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *affront*? **2.** How does *affront* compare with *insult*? with *tease*? *annoy*?

EXAMPLES.

It is safer to —— some people than to oblige them; for the better a man deserves, the worse they will speak of him.

Oh, rather give me commentators plain,
Who with no deep researches —— the brain.

The petty desire to —— is simply a perversion of the human love of power.

They rushed to meet the —— foe.

AGENT (page 24).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *agent* in the philosophical sense compare with *mover* or *doer*? **2.** What different sense has it in business usage?

EXAMPLES.

That morality may mean anything, man must be held to be a free ——.

The —— declined to take the responsibility in the absence of the owner.

AGREE (page 25).

QUESTIONS.

1. How do *concur* and *coincide* differ in range of meaning? How with reference to expression in action? **2.** How does *accede* compare with *consent*? **3.** Which is the most general word of this group?

EXAMPLES.

A woman's lot is made for her by the love she ——.

My poverty, but not my will, ——.

AGRICULTURE (page 25).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *agriculture* include? How does it differ from *farming*? **2.** What is *gardening*? *floriculture*? *horticulture*?

EXAMPLES.

Loan oft loses both itself and friend;
And borrowing dulls the edge of ——.

A field becomes exhausted by constant ——.

AIM (page 26).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is an *aim*? How does it differ from *mark*? from *goal*? **2.** How do *end* and *object* compare? **3.** To what does *aspiration* apply? How does it differ in general from *design*, *endeavor*, or *purpose*? **4.** How does *purpose* compare with *intention*? **5.** What is *design*?[388]

EXAMPLES.

In deeds of daring rectitude, in scorn
For miserable —— that end with self.
O yet we trust that somehow good
Will be the final —— of ill.
How quickly nature falls into revolt,
When gold becomes her ——.

It is not ——, but ambition that is the mother of misery in man.

AIR (page 27).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *air* in the sense here considered? **2.** How does *air* differ from *appearance*? **3.** What is the difference between *expression* and *look*? **4.** What is the sense of *bearing*? *carriage*? **5.** How does *mien* differ from *air*? **6.** What does *demeanor* include?

EXAMPLES.

I never, with important ——,
In conversation overbear.
Vice is a monster of so frightful ——,
As, to be hated, needs but to be seen.
Grief fills the room up of my absent child,
Lies in his bed, walks up and down with me,
Puts on his pretty ——, repeats his words.

AIRY (page 27).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *airy* agree with and differ from *aerial*? Give instances of the uses of the two words. **2.** What does *ethereal* signify? *sprightly*? **3.** Are *lively* and *animated* used in the favorable or unfavorable sense?

EXAMPLES.

—— tongues that syllable men's names, on sands and shores and desert wildernesses.

The —— mold
Incapable of stain, would soon expel
Her mischief, and purge off the baser fire,
Victorious.
Society became my glittering bride,
And —— hopes my children.
Soft o'er the shrouds —— whispers breathe,
That seemed but zephyrs to the train beneath.

ALARM (page 28).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the derivation and distinctive meaning of *alarm*? **2.** What do *affright* and *fright* express? Give an illustration of the contrasted terms. **3.** How are *apprehension*, *disquietude*, *dread*, and *misgiving* related to the danger that[389] excites them? **4.** What are *consternation*, *dismay*, and *terror*, and how are they related to the danger? **5.** What is *timidity*?

ALERT (page 28).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what do *alert*, *wide-awake*, and *ready* refer? **2.** How does *ready* differ from *alert*? from *prepared*? **3.** What does *prompt* signify? **4.** What is the secondary meaning of *alert*?

EXAMPLES.

To be —— for war is one of the most effectual ways of preserving peace.

He who is not —— to-day will be less so to-morrow.

Thus ending loudly, as he would o'erleap
His destiny, —— he stood.

ALIEN, *a. & n.* (page 29).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *alien* differ from *foreign*? **2.** Is a *foreigner* by birth necessarily an *alien*? **3.** Are the people of one country while residing in their own land *foreigners* or *aliens* to the people of other lands? **4.** How can one residing in a *foreign* country cease to be an *alien* in that country? **5.** How do *foreign* and *alien* differ in their figurative use?

EXAMPLES.

By —— hands thy dying eyes were closed
...
By —— hands thy humble grave adorned
By strangers honored and by strangers mourned.

What is religion? Not a —— inhabitant, nor something —— to our nature, which comes and takes up its abode in the soul.

—— from the commonwealth of Israel and —— from the covenants of promise.

ALIKE (page 30).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *alike* compare with *similar*? with *identical*? **2.** What is the distinction often made between *equal* and *equivalent*? **3.** What is the sense of *analogous*? (Compare synonyms for ANALOGY.) **4.** In what sense is *homogeneous* used?

EXAMPLES.

Sometimes gentle, sometimes capricious, sometimes awful; never the —— for two moments together.

Fashioned for himself, a bride;
An ——, taken from his side.

ALLAY (page 31).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the distinction between *allay* and *alleviate*? Which word implies a partial[390] removal of the cause of suffering, or an actual *lightening* of the burden? **2.** With which of the above words are we to class *appease*, *pacify*, *soothe*, and the like? **3.** With what words is *alleviate* especially to be grouped? (See synonyms for ALLEVIATE.)

EXAMPLES.

Such songs have power to ——
The restless pulse of care,
And come like the benediction
That follows after prayer.
Many a word, at random spoken
May —— or wound a heart that's broken!

ALLEGE (page 31).

QUESTIONS.

1. Which is the primary and which the secondary word, *allege* or *adduce*? Why? **2.** How much of certainty is implied in *allege*? **3.** How much does one admit when he speaks of an *alleged* fact, document, signature, or the like?

EXAMPLES.

In many —— cases of haunted houses, the spirits have not ventured to face an armed man who has passed the night there.

I can not —— one thing and mean another. If I can't pray I will not make believe!

ALLEGORY (page 33).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *allegory* compare with *simile*? *Simile* with *metaphor*? **2.** What are the distinctions between *allegory*, *fable*, and *parable*? **3.** Under what general term are all these included? **4.** To what is *fiction* now most commonly applied?

EXAMPLES.

In argument
—— are like songs in love:
They much describe; they nothing prove.

And He spake many things unto them in ——, saying, Behold a sower went forth to sow.

ALLEVIATE (page 33).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *alleviate* differ from *relieve*? from *remove*? **2.** Is *alleviate* used of persons? **3.** What are the special significations of *abate*? *assuage*? *mitigate*? *moderate*? **4.** How does *alleviate* compare with *allay*? (Compare synonyms for ALLAY.)

EXAMPLES.

To pity distress is but human; to —— it is Godlike.

But, O! what mighty magician can ——
A woman's envy?

---

[391]

ALLIANCE (page 34).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is an *alliance*? how does it differ from *partnership*? from *coalition*? from *league*? **2.** How does a *confederacy* or *federation* differ from a *union*?

EXAMPLES.

The two nations formed an offensive and defensive —— against the common enemy.

Till the war-drum throbbed no longer, and the battle-flags were furled,
In the Parliament of man, the —— of the world.

Business —— are the warrant for the existence of trade ——.

ALLOT (page 34).

QUESTIONS.

1. Does *allot* refer to time, place, or person? **2.** To what does *appoint* refer? *assign*? **3.** How does *destine* differ from *appoint*? **4.** How does *award* differ from *allot*, *appoint*, and *assign*?

EXAMPLES.

Man hath his daily work of body or mind ——.

He ——eth the moon for seasons; the sun knoweth his going down.

The king is but as the hind ...
Who may not wander from the —— field
Before his work be done.

ALLOW (page 35).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the difference between *allow* and *permit*? between a *permit* and *permission*? **2.** What instances can you give of the use of these words, also of *tolerate* and *submit*? **3.** What does *yield* imply?

EXAMPLES.

Frederick —— the Austrians to cross the mountains that he might attack them on a field of his own choosing.

The cruelty and envy of the people
—— by our dastard nobles, who
Have all forsook me, hath devoured the rest.

State churches have ever been unwilling to —— dissent.

ALLUDE (page 36).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the distinctive sense of *allude*? of *advert*? of *refer*? **2.** How do the above words compare with *mention* as to explicitness? **3.** How do *hint* and *insinuate* differ?

EXAMPLES.

Late in the eighteenth century Cowper did not venture to do more than —— to the great allegorist [Bunyan], saying:

"I name thee not, lest so despised a name
Should move a sneer at thy deserved fame."

ALLURE (page 37).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *allure*? **2.** How does *allure* differ from *attract*? from *lure*? **3.** What does *coax* express? **4.** What is it to *cajole*? to *decoy*? to *inveigle*? **5.** How does *seduce* differ from *tempt*? **6.** Is *win* used in the favorable or unfavorable sense?

EXAMPLES.

The ruddy square of comfortable light
—— him, as the beacon blaze ——
The bird of passage.
But Satan now is wiser than of yore,
And —— by making rich, not making poor.

He had a strange gift of —— friends, and of —— the love of women.

ALSO (page 37).

QUESTIONS.

1. Into what two groups are the synonyms for *also* naturally divided? **2.** Which words simply add a fact or thought? **3.** Which distinctly imply that what is added is like that to which it is added?

EXAMPLES.

Thine to work —— to pray,
Clearing thorny wrongs away;
Plucking up the weeds of sin,
Letting heaven's warm sunshine in.

ALTERNATIVE (page 38).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the difference between *choice* and *alternative* in the strict use of language? **2.** Is *alternative* always so severely restricted by leading writers? **3.** What do *choice*, *pick*, *election*, and *preference* imply regarding one's wishes? *alternative*? *resources*?

EXAMPLES.

Homer delights to call Ulysses "the man of many ——."

AMASS (page 38).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *amass*? **2.** How is *amass* distinguished from *accumulate*? **3.** Is interest *amassed* or *accumulated*? **4.** How does *hoard* differ from *store*?

EXAMPLES.

By daring and successful speculation, he —— a prodigious fortune.

The sum was the —— savings of an industrious and frugal life.

O, to what purpose dost thou —— thy words,
That thou return'st no greeting to thy friends?

AMATEUR (page 39).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the difference between *amateur* and *connoisseur*? between *connoisseur* and *critic*? **2.** Which word carries a natural implication of superficialness? **3.** How do *novice* and *tyro* differ from *amateur*?

EXAMPLES.

He was in Logic a great ——
Profoundly skill'd in Analytic;

He could distinguish, and divide
A hair 'twixt south and south-west side.

The greatest works in poetry, painting, and sculpture have not been done by ——.

The mere —— who produces nothing, and whose business is only to judge and enjoy.

AMAZEMENT (page 39).

QUESTIONS.

1. What do *amazement* and *astonishment* agree in expressing? **2.** How do the two words differ? **3.** What is the meaning of *awe*? of *admiration*? **4.** How does *surprise* differ from *astonishment* and *amazement*? **5.** What are the characteristics of *wonder*?

EXAMPLES.

'Twas while he toiled him to be freed,
And with the rein to raise the steed,
That, from ——'s iron trance,
All Wycklif's soldiers waked at once.
Can such things be,
And overcome us like a summer's cloud,
Without our special ——?
The fool of nature stood with stupid eyes
And gaping mouth that testified ——.

AMBITION (page 40).

QUESTIONS.

1. What two senses has *ambition*? **2.** How does *ambition* differ from *aspiration*? Which is the higher word? **3.** What is the distinctive sense of *emulation*? **4.** Has *emulation* a good side? How does it compare with *aspiration*?

EXAMPLES.

Cromwell, I charge thee, fling away ——
By that sin, fell the angels.
Envy, to which th' ignoble mind's a slave,
Is —— in the learn'd or brave.
I have no spur
To prick the sides of my intent, but only
Vaulting ——.

AMEND (page 41).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *amend*? **2.** How do *advance*, *better*, and *improve* differ from *amend*? **3.** Are these words applied to matters decidedly bad, foul, or evil? **4.** What is the difference between *amend* and *emend*?

EXAMPLES.

Return ye now every man from his evil way, and —— your doings.

The construction here is difficult, and the text at this point has been variously ——.

Human characters and conditions never reach such perfection that they can not be ——.

AMIABLE (page 42).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what does *lovely* often apply? **2.** To what does *amiable* always apply? **3.** How do *agreeable*, *attractive*, and *charming* differ from *amiable*? Give examples. **4.** Is a *good-natured* person necessarily *agreeable*? an *amiable* person?

EXAMPLES.

His life was ——; and the elements
So mixed in him, that Nature might stand up
And say to all the world, This was a man!
The east is blossoming! Yea a rose,
Vast as the heavens, soft as a kiss,
—— as the presence of woman is.

ANALOGY (page 43).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the specific meaning of *analogy*? **2.** What is *affinity*? *coincidence*? **3.** Does *coincidence* necessarily involve *resemblance* or *likeness*? **4.** What is *parity* of *reasoning*? **5.** What is a *similitude*? **6.** How do *resemblance* and *similarity* differ from *analogy*?

EXAMPLES.

The two boys bore a close —— to each other.

It is not difficult to trace the —— of the home to the state.

ANGER (page 44).

QUESTIONS.

1. What are the especial characteristics of *anger*? How does it differ from *indignation*? *exasperation*? *rage*? *wrath*? *ire*?

EXAMPLES.

My enemy has long borne me a feeling of ——.

Christ was filled with —— at the hypocrisy of the Jews.

I was overcome by a sudden feeling of ——.

ANIMAL (page 45).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is an *animal*? a *brute*? a *beast*? **2.** Is man an *animal*? **3.** What is implied if we speak of any particular man as an *animal*? a *brute*? a *beast*? **4.** What forms of existence does the word *creature* include? **5.** What are the animals of a country or region collectively called?

EXAMPLES.

It is only within the last half century that societies have been organized for the prevention of cruelty to ——.

O that men should put an enemy in their mouths to steal away their brains! that we should with joy, pleasance, revel, and applause, transform ourselves into ——!

Take a —— out of his instinct, and you find him wholly deprived of understanding.

Spurning manhood and its joys to loot,
To be a lawless, lazy, sensual ——.

ANNOUNCE (page 46).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *announce*? **2.** Does it apply chiefly to the past or the future? **3.** To what is *advertise* chiefly applied? *propound*? *promulgate*? *publish*?

EXAMPLES.

The Sphinx —— its riddles with life and death depending on the answer.

Through the rare felicity of the times you are permitted to think what you please and to —— what you please.

The songs of birds and the wild flowers in the woodlands —— the coming of spring.

ANSWER (page 46).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a verbal *answer*? **2.** In what wider sense is *answer* used? **3.** What is a *reply*? a *rejoinder*? **4.** How does an *answer* to a charge, an argument, or the like, differ from a *reply* or *rejoinder*? **5.** What is the special quality of a *response*? **6.** What is a *retort*? How does it differ from *repartee*?

EXAMPLES.

I can no other —— make, but thanks.

Theirs not to make ——
Theirs not to reason why,
Theirs but to do and die.
Upon thy princely warrant I descend,
To give thee —— of thy just demand.

He could not be content without finding a —— in Nature to every mood of his mind; and he does find it.

A man renowned for ——
Will seldom scruple to make free
With friendship's honest feeling.

Nothing is so easy and inviting as the —— of abuse and sarcasm; but it is a paltry and unprofitable contest.

ANTICIPATE, ANTICIPATION (page 47).

QUESTIONS.

1. What are the two contrasted senses of *anticipate*? **2.** Which is now the more common? **3.** How does *anticipate* differ from *expect*? from *hope*? from *apprehend*? **4.** How does *anticipation* differ from *presentiment*? from *apprehension*? from *foreboding*? **5.** What special element is involved in *foretaste*? How do *foresight* and *forethought* go beyond the meaning of *anticipation*?

EXAMPLES.

Then some leaped overboard with fearful yell,
As eager to —— their grave.

England —— every man to do his duty.

These are portents; but yet I ——, I hope,
They do not point on me.

If I know your sect, I —— your argument.

The happy —— of a renewed existence in company with the spirits of the just.

ANTIPATHY (page 48).

QUESTIONS.

1. How is *antipathy* to be distinguished from *dislike*? from *antagonism*? from *aversion*? **2.** What is *uncongeniality*? How does it differ from *antipathy*? Which is positive? and which negative?

EXAMPLES.

Christianity is the solvent of all race ——.

From my soul I loathe
All affectation; 'tis my perfect scorn, object of my implacable ——.

ANTIQUE (page 48).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what does *antique* refer? *antiquated*? **2.** Is the difference between them a matter of time? Give examples. **3.** Can a modern building be *antiquated*? Can it be *antique*? **4.** What is the significance of *quaint*?

EXAMPLES.

My copper lamps, at any rate,
For being true ——, I bought.
I do love these —— ruins,
We never tread upon them but we set
Our foot upon some reverend history.

ANXIETY (page 49).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *anxiety* in the primary sense? Is it mental or physical? **2.** How does *anxiety* differ from *anguish*? **3.** What kind of possibility does *anxiety* always suggest? **4.** How does it differ from *apprehension*, *fear*, *dread*, etc., in this regard? **5.** What is *worry*? *fretfulness*? **6.** Does *perplexity* involve anxiety?[397]

EXAMPLES.

Yield not to —— the future, weep not for the past.

Superstition invested the slightest incidents of life with needless ——.

—— is harder than work, and far less profitable.

APATHY (page 50).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *apathy*? **2.** How does it differ from the Saxon word *unfeelingness*? from *indifference*? from *insensibility*? from *unconcern*? **3.** How does *stoicism* differ from *apathy*?

EXAMPLES.

In lazy —— let stoics boast
Their virtue fixed: 'tis fixed as in a frost.
At length the morn and cold —— came.

He sank into a —— from which it was impossible to arouse him.

APOLOGY (page 51).

QUESTIONS.

1. What change of meaning has *apology* undergone? **2.** What does an *apology* now always imply? **3.** How does an *apology* differ from an *excuse*? **4.** Which of these words may refer to the future? **5.** How does *confession* differ from *apology*?

EXAMPLES.

—— only account for that which they do not alter.

Beauty is its own —— for being.

There is no refuge from —— but suicide; and suicide is ——.

APPARENT (page 52).

QUESTIONS.

1. What two contrasted senses arise from the root meaning of *apparent*? **2.** What is implied when we speak of *apparent* kindness or *apparent* neglect? **3.** How do *presumable* and *probable* differ? **4.** What implication is conveyed in *seeming*? What do we suggest when we speak of "*seeming* innocence"?

EXAMPLES.

It is not —— that the students will attempt to break the rules again.

It is not yet —— what his motive could have been in committing such an offense.

It is —— that something has been omitted which was essential to complete the construction.

APPETITE (page 54).

QUESTIONS.

1. Of what kind of demands or impulses is *appetite* ordinarily used? **2.** What demands or tendencies are included in *passion*? **3.** What is implied by *passions* and *appetites* when used as contrasted terms?[398]

EXAMPLES.

Govern well thy ——, lest sin
Surprise thee, and her black attendant Death.
Take heed lest —— sway
Thy judgment to do aught which else free will
Would not admit.

APPORTION (page 54).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the special significance of *apportion* by which it is distinguished from *allot*, *assign*, *distribute*, or *divide*? **2.** What is the significance of *dispense* in the transitive use? **3.** What is it to *appropriate*?

EXAMPLES.

Representatives are —— among the several states according to the population.

The treasure was —— and their shares duly —— among the captors.

APPROXIMATION (page 55).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is an *approximation* in the mathematical sense? **2.** How close an approach to exactness and certainty does *approximation* imply? **3.** How does *approximation* differ from *resemblance* and *similarity*? from *approach*? **4.** How does *approximation*, as regards the class of objects to which it is applied, differ from *nearness*, *neighborhood*, or *propinquity*?

EXAMPLES.

We have to be content with —— to a solution.

Without faith, there is no real —— to God.

Wit consists in knowing the —— of things which differ, and the difference of things which are alike.

ARMS (page 55).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the difference between *arms* and *armor*? **2.** In what connection is *armor* used in modern warfare?

EXAMPLES.

—— on —— clashing brayed
Horrible discord.

There is constant rivalry between irresistible projectiles and impenetrable ——.

ARMY (page 56).

QUESTIONS.

1. What are the essentials of an *army*? **2.** Is an *army* large or small? **3.** What term would be applied to a *multitude* of armed men without order or organization? **4.** In what sense is *host* used? *legion*?

EXAMPLES.

For the —— is a school in which the miser becomes generous, and the generous, prodigal; miserly soldiers are like monsters, but very rarely seen.

The still-discordant wavering ——.

ARRAIGN (page 56).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what kind of proceedings do *indict* and *arraign* apply? **2.** How is one *indicted*? How *arraigned*? **3.** How do these words differ from *charge*? *accuse*? *censure*?

EXAMPLES.

The criminal was —— for trial for his offenses.

Religion does not —— or exclude unnumbered pleasures, harmlessly pursued.

ARTIFICE (page 58).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is an *artifice*? a *device*? *finesse*? **2.** In what sense are *cheat*, *maneuver*, and *imposture* always used? **3.** In what sense is *trick* commonly used? **4.** What is a *fraud*? **5.** Is *wile* used in a good or a bad sense? **6.** Does the good or the bad sense commonly attach to the words *artifice*, *contrivance*, *ruse*, *blind*, *device*, and *finesse*?

EXAMPLES.

Those who can not gain their ends by force naturally resort to ——.

The enemy were decoyed from their defenses by a skilful ——.

Quips and cranks and wanton ——,
Nods and becks and wreathed smiles.

Whoever has even once become notorious by base ——, even if he speaks the truth, gains no belief.

ARTIST (page 58).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is an *artist*? an *artisan*? **2.** What is an *artificer*? How related to *artist* and *artisan*?

EXAMPLES.

The power depends on the depth of the ——'s insight of that object he contemplates.

Infuse into the purpose with which you follow the various employments and professions of life the sense of beauty, and you are transformed at once from an —— into an ——.

If too many —— turn shopkeepers, the whole natural quantity of that business divided among them all may afford too small a share for each.

ASK (page 59).

QUESTIONS.

1. For what class of objects does one *ask*? For what does he *beg*? **2.** How do *entreat* and *beseech* compare with *ask*? **3.** What is the special sense of *implore*? of *supplicate*? **4.** How are *crave* and *request* distinguished? *pray* and *petition*? **5.** What kind of *asking* is implied in *demand*? in *require*? How do these two words differ from one another?[400]

EXAMPLES.

We, ignorant of ourselves,
—— often our own harms, which the wise powers
Deny us for our good: so we find profit,
By losing of our prayers.

The harvest truly is great, but the labourers are few: —— ye therefore the Lord of the harvest that he would send forth labourers into his harvest.

Speak with me, pity me, open the door,
A beggar —— that never begg'd before.
Be not afraid to ——; to —— is right.
——, if thou canst, with hope; but ever ——.
Though hope be weak or sick with long delay;
—— in the darkness, if there be no light.

ASSOCIATE (page 60).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *associate* imply, as used officially? What when used in popular language? **2.** Do we speak of associates in crime or wrong? What words are preferred in such connection? (See synonyms for ACCESSORY.) **3.** Is *companion* used in a good or bad sense? **4.** How does it differ in use from *associate*? **5.** What is the significance of *peer*? *comrade*? *consort*?

EXAMPLES.

His best ——, innocence and health,
And his best riches, ignorance of wealth.

The —— accepted Napoleon's abdication.

The leader in the plot was betrayed by his ——.

ASSUME (page 61).

QUESTIONS.

1. Does *assume* apply to that which is rightfully or wrongfully taken? **2.** In what use does *assume* correspond with *arrogate* and *usurp*? **3.** How do *arrogate* and *usurp* differ from each other? How does *assume* differ from *postulate* as regards debate or reasoning of any kind?

EXAMPLES.

Wherefore do I ——
These royalties, and not refuse to reign.
—— a virtue if you have it not.
For well we know no hand of blood and bone
Can gripe the sacred handle of our scepter,
Unless he do profane, steal, or ——.

ASSURANCE (page 61).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *assurance* in the good sense? **2.** What is *assurance* in the bad sense? **3.** How does *assurance* compare with *impudence*? with *effrontery*?[401]

EXAMPLES.

Let us draw near with a true heart in full —— of faith.

Some wicked wits have libel'd all the fair.
With matchless —— they style a wife
The dear-bought curse, and lawful plague of life.

With brazen —— he denied the most indisputable facts.

ASTUTE (page 62).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what language is *acute* derived? What is its distinctive sense? **2.** From what language is *keen* derived? What does it distinctively denote? **3.** From what language is *astute* derived, and what was its original meaning? **4.** In present use what does *astute* add to the meaning of *acute* or *keen*? **5.** What does *astute* imply regarding the ulterior purpose or object of the person who is credited with it?

EXAMPLES.

You statesmen are so —— in forming schemes!

He taketh the wise in their own ——ness.

The most —— reasoner may be deluded, when he practises sophistry upon himself.

ATTACHMENT (page 63).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *attachment*? How does it differ from *adherence* or *adhesion*? from *affection*? from *inclination*? from *regard*?

EXAMPLES.

Talk not of wasted ——, —— never was wasted.

You do not weaken your —— for your family by cultivating ——s beyond its pale, but deepen and intensify it.

ATTACK, *v. & n.* (pages 63, 64).

QUESTIONS.

1. What special element is involved in the meaning of *attack*? **2.** How do *assail* and *assault* differ? **3.** What is it to *encounter*? how does this word compare with *attack*? How does *attack* differ from *aggression*?

EXAMPLES.

We see time's furrows on another's brow,
And death intrench'd, preparing his ——;
How few themselves in that just mirror see!

Who ever knew Truth put to the worse in a free and open ——?

Roger Williams —— the spirit of intolerance, the doctrine of persecution, and never his persecutors.

ATTAIN (page 64).

QUESTIONS.

1. What kind of a word is *attain*, and to what does it point? **2.** How does *attain* differ from *obtain*? from *achieve*? **3.** How does *obtain* differ from *procure*?[402]

EXAMPLES.

The heights by great men —— and kept
Were not —— by sudden flight,
But they, while their companions slept,
Were toiling upward in the night.
Our doubts are traitors,
And make us lose the good we oft might ——
By fearing to attempt.

ATTITUDE (page 65).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *position* as regards the human body differ from *attitude, posture*, or *pose*? **2.** Do the three latter words apply to the living or the dead? **3.** What is the distinctive sense of *attitude*? Is it conscious or unconscious? **4.** How does *posture* differ from *attitude*? **5.**

What is the distinctive sense of *pose*? How does it differ from, and how does it agree with *attitude* and *posture*?

EXAMPLES.

The —— assumed indicated great indignation because of the insult implied.

The —— was graceful and pleasing.

ATTRIBUTE, *v.* (page 65).

QUESTIONS.

1. What suggestion is often involved in *attribute*? **2.** How does *attribute* differ from *refer* and *ascribe*? **3.** Is *charge* (in this connection) used in the favorable or unfavorable sense?

EXAMPLES.

—— ye greatness unto our God.

He —— unworthy motives which proved a groundless charge.

ATTRIBUTE, *n.* (page 66).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the derivation and the inherent meaning of *quality*? **2.** What is an *attribute*? **3.** Which of the above words expresses what necessarily belongs to the subject of which it is said to be an *attribute* or *quality*? **4.** What is the derivation and distinctive sense of *property*? **5.** How does *property* ordinarily differ from *quality*? **6.** In what usage do *property* and *quality* become exact synonyms, and how are *properties* then distinguished?

EXAMPLES.

His scepter shows the force of temporal power,
The —— to awe and majesty,
Wherein doth sit the dread and fear of kings.

Nothing endures but personal ——s.

AVARICIOUS (page 68).

QUESTIONS.

1. How do *avaricious* and *covetous* differ from *miserly*, *niggardly*, *parsimonious*,[403] and *penurious*? **2.** Of what matters are *greedy* and *stingy* used? How do they differ from each other?

EXAMPLES.

I am not —— for gold;
Nor care I who doth feed upon my cost;
It yearns me not if men my garments wear.

It is better to be content with such things as ye have than to become —— and —— in accumulating.

AVENGE (page 69).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *avenge*? **2.** How does *avenge* differ from *revenge*? **3.** Which word would be used of an act of God? **4.** Is *retaliate* used in the sense of *avenge* or of *revenge*?

EXAMPLES.

O, that the vain remorse, which must chastise
Crimes done, had but as loud a voice to warn
As its keen sting is mortal to ——.
I lost mine eye laying the prize aboard,
And therefore to —— it, shalt thou die.

AVOW (page 69).

QUESTIONS.

1. Which words of this group refer exclusively to one's own knowledge or action? **2.** What is the distinctive sense of *aver*? of *avouch*? of *avow*? **3.** How do *avouch* and *avow* differ from *aver* in construction? **4.** Is *avow* used in a good or a bad sense? What does it imply of others' probable feeling or action? **5.** How does *avow* compare with *confess*?

EXAMPLES.

And, but herself, —— no parallel.

The child —— his fault and was pardoned by his parent.

AWFUL (page 70).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what matters should *awful* properly be restricted? **2.** Is *awful* always interchangeable with *alarming* or *terrible*? with *disagreeable* or *annoying*?

EXAMPLES.

Then must it be an —— thing to die.

The silent falling of the snow is to me one of the most —— things in nature.

AWKWARD (page 70).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the derivation and original meaning of *awkward*? of *clumsy*? **2.** To what, therefore, does *awkward* primarily refer? and to what *clumsy*? **3.** Is[404] a draft-horse distinctively *awkward* or *clumsy*? **4.** Give some metaphorical uses of *awkward*.

EXAMPLES.

Though he was ——, he was kindly.

The apprentice was not only ——, but ——, and had to be taught over and over again the same methods.

The young girl stood in a —— way, looking in at the showy shop-windows.

AXIOM (page 71).

QUESTIONS.

1. In what do *axiom* and *truism* agree? **2.** In what do they differ? **3.** How do they compare in interest and utility?

EXAMPLES.

It is almost an —— that those who do most for the heathen abroad are most liberal for the heathen at home.

Trifling ——s clothed in great, swelling words of vanity.

BABBLE (page 71).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what class do most of the words in this group belong? Why are they so called? **2.** What is the special significance of *blab* and *blurt*? How do they differ from each other in use? **3.** What is *chat*? **4.** How does *prattling* differ from *chatting*? **5.** In what sense is *jabber* used? How does it compare with *chatter*?

EXAMPLES.

"The crane," I said, "may —— of the crane,
The dove may —— of the dove."

Two women sat contentedly ——ing, one of them amusing a ——ing babe.

BANISH (page 72).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what land may one be *banished*? From what *expatriated* or *exiled*? **2.** By whom may one be said to be *banished*? by whom *expatriated* or *exiled*? **3.** Which of these words is of widest import? Give examples of its metaphorical use.

BANK (page 72).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *beach*? a *coast*? **2.** How does each of the above words differ from *bank*? **3.** What is the distinctive sense of *strand*? In what style of writing is it most commonly used? **4.** What are the distinctive senses of *edge* and *brink*?

BANTER (page 73).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *banter*? **2.** How is *badinage* distinguished from *banter*? *raillery* from both? **3.** What is the distinctive sense of *irony*? **4.** Is *irony* kindly or the reverse? *badinage*? *banter*? **5.** What words of this group are distinctly hostile? **6.** Is *ridicule* or *derision* the stronger word? What is the distinction between the two? between *satire* and *sarcasm*? between *chaff*, *jeering*, and *mockery*?

BARBAROUS (page 73).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *barbarian*? **2.** What is the added significance of *barbaric*? **3.** How does *barbarous* in general use differ from both the above words? **4.** What special element is commonly implied in *savage*? **5.** In what less opprobrious sense may *barbarous* and *savage* be used? Give instances.

EXAMPLES.

A multitude like which the populous North
Poured never from her frozen loins, to pass
Rhene or the Danaw, when her —— sons
Came like a deluge on the south.
Or when the gorgeous East, with richest hand,
Showers on her kings —— pearl and gold.

It is most true, that a natural and secret hatred and aversation toward society, in any man, hath somewhat of the —— beast.

Thou art bought and sold among those of any wit like a —— slave.

BARRIER (page 74).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *bar*? and what is its purpose? **2.** What is a *barrier*? **3.** Which word is ordinarily applied to objects of great extent? **4.** Would a mountain range be termed a *bar* or a *barrier*? **5.** What distinctive name is given to a mass of sand across the mouth of a river or harbor?

BATTLE (page 74).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the general meaning of *conflict*? **2.** What is a *battle*? **3.** How long may a *battle* last? **4.** On how many fields may one *battle* be fought? **5.** How does *engagement* differ from *battle*? How does *combat* differ? *action*? *skirmish*? *fight*?

BEAUTIFUL (page 76).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is necessary to constitute an object or a person *beautiful*? **2.** Can *beautiful* be said of that which is harsh and ragged, however grand? **3.** How is[406] *beautiful* related to our powers of appreciation? **4.** How does *pretty* compare with *beautiful*? *handsome*? **5.** What does *fair* denote? *comely*? *picturesque*?

EXAMPLES.

I pray thee, O God, that I may be —— within.

A happy youth, and their old age is —— and free.

'Twas sung, how they were —— in their lives
And in their death had not divided been.
How —— has the day been, how bright was the sun.
How lovely and joyful the course that he run.
Though he rose in a mist when his race he began
And there followed some droppings of rain!

BECOMING (page 77).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *becoming*? of *decent*? of *suitable*? **2.** Can that which is worthy or beautiful in itself ever be otherwise than *becoming* or *suitable*? Give instances. **3.** What is the meaning of *fit*? How does it differ from *fitting* or *befitting*?

EXAMPLES.

A merrier man,
Within the limit of —— mirth,
I never spent an hour's talk withal.
Still govern thou my song,
Urania, and —— audience find, tho few.
Indeed, left nothing —— for your purpose
Untouch'd, slightly handled, in discourse.
In such a time as this, it is not ——
That every nice offense should bear his comment.

How could money be better spent than in erecting a —— building for the greatest library in the country?

BEGINNING (page 78).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what language is *beginning* derived? *commencement*? How do the two words differ in application and use? Give instances. **2.** What is an *origin*? a *source*? a *rise*? **3.** How are *fount*, *fountain*, and *spring* used in the figurative sense?

EXAMPLES.

For learning is the —— pure,
Out from which all glory springs.

Truth is the —— of every good to gods and men.

Courage, the mighty attribute of powers above,
By which those great in war are great in love;
The —— of all brave acts is seated here.

It can not be that Desdemona should long continue her love to the Moor, nor he his to her: it was a violent ——, and thou shalt see an answerable sequestration.

In the —— God created the heaven and the earth.

BEHAVIOR (page 79).

QUESTIONS.

1. How do *behavior* and *conduct* differ? **2.** What is the special sense of *carriage*? of *bearing*? *demeanor*? **3.** What is *manner*? *manners*?

EXAMPLES.

Our thoughts and our —— are our own.

Good —— are made up of petty sacrifices.

BENEVOLENCE (page 80).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the original distinction between *benevolence* and *beneficence*? **2.** In what sense is *benevolence* now most commonly used? **3.** What words are commonly used for *benevolence* in the original sense? **4.** What was the original sense of *charity*? the present popular sense? **5.** What of *humanity*? *generosity*? *liberality*? *philanthropy*?

EXAMPLES.

—— is a virtue of the heart, and not of the hands.

The secrets of life are not shown except to —— and likeness.

BIND (page 81).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the distinctive sense of *bind*? **2.** What is the special meaning of *tie*? **3.** In how general a sense is *fasten* used? **4.** Which of the above three words is used in a figurative sense?

EXAMPLES.

Shut, shut the door, good John! fatigu'd, I said;
—— up the knocker, say I'm sick, I'm dead.
Adjust our lives to loss, make friends with pain,
—— all our shattered hopes and bid them bloom again.

BITTER (page 81).

QUESTIONS.

1. How may *acid*, *bitter*, and *acrid* be distinguished? *pungent*? *caustic*? **2.** In metaphorical use, how are *harsh* and *bitter* distinguished? **3.** What is the special significance of *caustic*? **4.** Give examples of these words in their various uses.

BLEACH (page 82).

QUESTIONS.

1. How do *bleach* and *blanch* differ from *whiten*? from each other?

EXAMPLES.

You can behold such sights,
And keep the natural ruby of your cheeks,
When mine is —— with fear.
We let the years go: wash them clean with tears,
Leave them to —— out in the open day.

BLEMISH (page 82).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *blemish*? **2.** How does it differ from a *flaw* or *taint*? **3.** What is a *defect*? a *fault*? **4.** Which words of this group are naturally applied to reputation, and which to character?

EXAMPLES.

Every page enclosing in the midst
A square of text that looks a little ——.
The noble Brutus
Hath told you Cæsar was ambitious:
If it were so, it was a grievous ——.

BLUFF (page 83).

QUESTIONS.

1. In what sense are *bluff*, *frank*, and *open* used? **2.** In what sense are *blunt*, *brusk*, *rough*, and *rude* employed?

EXAMPLES.

There are to whom my satire seems too ——.

Stout once a month they march, a —— band
And ever but in times of need, at hand.

BOUNDARY (page 84).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the original sense of *boundary*? **2.** How does it differ in usage from *bound* or *bounds*? **3.** In what style and sense is *bourn* used? **4.** What is the distinctive meaning of *edge*?

EXAMPLES.

So these lives ...
Parted by ——s strong, but drawing nearer and nearer,
Rushed together at last, and one was lost in the other.
In worst extremes, and on the perilous ——
Of battle.

BRAVE (page 85).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *brave* differ from *courageous*? **2.** What is the special sense of *adventurous*? of *bold*? of *chivalrous*? **3.** How do these words differ from *venturesome*? **4.** What is especially denoted by *fearless* and *intrepid*? **5.** What does *valiant* tell of results? **6.** What ideas are combined in *heroic*?

EXAMPLES.

A —— man is also full of faith.

Fir'd at first sight with what the Muse imparts,
In —— youth we tempt the heights of Arts.
Thy danger chiefly lies in acting well;
No crime's so great as —— to excel.

BUSINESS (page 88).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the distinctive meaning of *barter*? **2.** What does *business* add to the meaning of *barter*? **3.** What is *occupation*? Is it broader than *business*? **4.** What is a *vocation*? **5.** What (in the strict sense) is an *avocation*? **6.** What is implied in *profession*? *pursuit*? **7.** What is a *transaction*? **8.** How does *trade* differ from *commerce*? **9.** What is *work*? **10.** What is an *art* in the industrial sense? a *craft*?

EXAMPLES.

A man must serve his time to every ——.

We turn to dust, and all our mightiest ——s die too.

CALCULATE (page 90).

QUESTIONS.

1. How do you distinguish between *count* and *calculate*? *compute*, *reckon* and *estimate*? **2.** Which is used mostly with regard to future probabilities? **3.** Do we use *compute* or *estimate* of numbers exactly known? **4.** Of *compute*, *calculate*, and *estimate*, which is used with especial reference to the future?

EXAMPLES.

There were 4046 men in the district, by actual ——.

The time of the eclipse was —— to a second.

We ask them to —— approximately the cost of the building.

CALL (page 91).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the distinctive meaning of *call*? **2.** Do we ever apply *bellow* and *roar* to human sounds? **3.** Can you give more than one sense of *cry*? **4.** Are *shout* and *scream* more or less expressive than *call*? **5.** Which of the words in this group are necessarily and which ordinarily applied to articulate utterance? Which rarely, if ever, so used?

EXAMPLES.

—— for the robin redbreast and the wren.

The pioneers could hear the savages —— outside.

I —— my servant and he came.

The captain —— in a voice of thunder to the helmsman, "Put your helm hard aport!"

CALM (page 91).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what classes of objects or states of mind do we apply *calm*? *collected*? *quiet*? *placid*? *serene*? *still*? *tranquil*? **2.** Do the antonyms *boisterous*, *excited*, *ruffled*, *turbulent*, and *wild*, also apply to the same? **3.** Can you contrast *calm* and *quiet*? **4.** How many of the preceding adjectives can be applied to water? **5.** How does *composed* differ from *calm*?[410]

EXAMPLES.

The possession of a —— conscience is an estimable blessing.

The water is said to be always —— in the ocean depths.

—— on the listening ear of night
Fall heaven's melodious strains.

CANCEL (page 92).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the difference in method involved in the verbs *cancel*, *efface*, *erase*, *expunge*, and *obliterate*? **2.** Which suggest the most complete removal of all trace of a writing? **3.** How do the figurative uses of these words compare with the literal? **4.** Is it possible to *obliterate* or *efface* that which has been previously *canceled* or *erased*?

EXAMPLES.

It is practically impossible to clean a postage-stamp that has been properly —— so that it can be used again.

With the aid of a sharp penknife the blot was quickly ——.

By lapse of time and elemental action, the inscription had become completely ——.

CANDID (page 93).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what class of things do we apply *aboveboard*? *candid*? *fair*? *frank*? *honest*? *sincere*? *transparent*? **2.** Can you state the similarity between *artless*, *guileless*, *naive*, *simple*, and *unsophisticated*? How do they differ as a class from the words above referred to? **3.** How does it happen that "To be frank," or "To be candid" often precedes the utterance of something disagreeable?

EXAMPLES.

The sophistry was so —— as to disgust the assembly.

A. T. Stewart relied on —— dealing as the secret of mercantile success.

An —— man will not steal or defraud.

—— she seems with artful care
Affecting to be unaffected.

CARE (page 94).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the special difference between *care* and *anxiety*? **2.** Wherein does *care* differ from *caution*? *solicitude* from *anxiety*? *watchfulness* from *wariness*? **3.** Can you give some of the senses of *care*? **4.** Is *concern* as strong a term as *anxiety*? **5.** What is *circumspection*? *precaution*? *heed*?

EXAMPLES.

Take her up tenderly, lift her with ——.

A military commander should have as much —— as bravery.

The invaders fancied themselves so secure against attack that they had not taken the —— to station sentinels.

---

[411]

CARICATURE (page 95).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the distinctive meaning of *caricature*? **2.** What is the special difference between *parody* and *travesty*? between both and *burlesque*? **3.** To what is *caricature* mostly confined? **4.** How do *mimicry* and *imitation* differ? **5.** Is an *extravaganza* an *exaggeration*?

EXAMPLES.

The eagle nose of the general was magnified in every artist's ——.

His laughable reproduction of the great actor's vagaries was a clever bit of ——.

If it be not lying to say that a fox's tail is four feet long, it is certainly a huge ——.

CARRY (page 96).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what sort of objects do we apply *bear*? *carry*? *move*? *take*? **2.** What kinds of force or power do we indicate by *convey*, *lift*, *transmit*, and *transport*? **3.** What is the distinction between *bring* and *carry*? between *carry* and *bear*? **4.** What does *lift* mean? **5.** Can you give some figurative uses of *carry*?

EXAMPLES.

The strong man can —— 1,000 pounds with apparent ease.

Napoleon always endeavored to —— the war into the enemy's territory.

It was found necessary to —— the coal overland for a distance of 500 miles.

My punishment is greater than I can ——.

CATASTROPHE (page 97).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *catastrophe* or *cataclysm*? **2.** Is a *catastrophe* also necessarily a *calamity* or a *disaster*? **3.** Which word has the broader meaning, *disaster* or *calamity*? **4.** Does *misfortune* suggest as serious a condition as any of the foregoing? **5.** How does a *mishap* compare with a *catastrophe*, a *calamity*, or a *disaster*? **6.** Give some chief antonyms of the above.

EXAMPLES.

War and pestilence are properly ——, while the loss of a battle may be a ——, but not a ——.

Fortune is not satisfied with inflicting one ——.

Well had the boding tremblers learned to trace
The day's —— in his morning face.

The failure of the crops of two successive years proved an irreparable —— to the emigrants.

CAUSE (page 98).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the central distinction between *antecedent* and *cause*? **2.** How are the words *cause*, *condition*, and *occasion* illustrated by the fall of an avalanche?[412] **3.** And the antonyms *consequence*? *effect*? *outgrowth*? *result*? **4.** What are *causality* and *causation*? **5.** How are *origin* and *source* related to *cause*?

EXAMPLES.

Where there is an effect there must be also a ——.

It is necessary to know something of the —— of a man before we can safely trust him.

The —— of the river was found to be a small lake among the hills.

What was given as the —— of the quarrel was really but the ——.

CHAGRIN (page 100).

QUESTIONS.

1. What feelings are combined in *chagrin*? **2.** How do you distinguish between *chagrin*, *disappointment*, *humiliation*, *mortification*, and *shame*? **3.** Which involves a sense of having done wrong?

EXAMPLES.

The king's —— at the limitations imposed upon him was painfully manifest.

He is not wholly lost who yet can blush from ——.

Hope tells a flattering tale,
Delusive, vain, and hollow.
Ah! let not hope prevail,
Lest —— follow.

CHANGE (page 100).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the distinction between *change* and *exchange*? Are they ever used as equivalent, and how? **2.** Can you distinguish between *modify* and *qualify*?

EXAMPLES.

The tailor offered to —— the armholes of the coat.

We requested the pianist to —— his music by introducing a few popular tunes.

We often fail to recognize the actor who —— his costume between the acts.

CHARACTER (page 102).

QUESTIONS.

1. How do you distinguish between *character* and *reputation*? *constitution* and *disposition*? **2.** Is *nature* a broader word than any of the preceding? **3.** If so, why?

EXAMPLES.

The philanthropist's —— for charity is often a great source of annoyance to him.

Let dogs delight to bark and bite, for 'tis their —— to.

Misfortune may cause the loss of friends and reputation, yet if the man has not yielded to wrong, his —— is superior to loss or change.

CHOOSE (page 104).

QUESTIONS.

1. What are the shades of difference between *choose*, *cull*, *elect*, *pick*, *prefer*, and[413] *select*? **2.** Also between the antonyms *cast away*, *decline*, *dismiss*, *refuse*, *repudiate*? **3.** Does *select* imply more care or judgment than *choose*?

EXAMPLES.

The prettiest flowers had all been ——.

Jacob was —— to Esau, tho he was the younger.

When a man deliberately —— to do wrong, there is little hope for him.

CIRCUMSTANCE (page 105).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what classes of things do we apply *accompaniment*? *concomitant*? *circumstance*? *event*? *fact*? *incident*? *occurrence*? *situation*? **2.** Can you give some instances of the use of *circumstance*? **3.** Is it a word of broader meaning than *incident*?

EXAMPLES.

The —— that there had been a fire was proved by the smoke-blackened walls.

Extreme provocation may be a mitigating —— in a case of homicide.

CLASS (page 106).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does a *class* differ from a *caste*? **2.** In what connection is *rank* used? *order*? **3.** What is a *coterie*? How does it differ from a *clique*?

EXAMPLES.

An —— was formed for the relief of the poor and needy of the city.

A select —— met at the residence of one of the leading men of the city.

There is a struggle of the masses against the ——.

CLEAR (page 107).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *clear* originally signify? **2.** How does *clear* differ from *transparent* as regards a substance that may be a medium of vision? **3.** With what meaning is *clear* used of an object apprehended by the senses, as an object of sight or hearing? **4.** What does *distinct* signify? **5.** What is *plain*? **6.** What special sense does this word always retain? How does *transparent* differ from *translucent*? **7.** What do *lucid* and *pellucid* signify? **8.** What is the special force of *limpid*?

CLEVER (page 109).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *clever* as used in England? **2.** What was the early New England usage? **3.** What is to be said of the use of *smart* and *sharp*? **4.** What other words of this group are preferable to *clever* in many of its uses?[414]

EXAMPLES.

His brief experience in the department had made him very —— in the work now assigned him.

She was especially —— in song.

Be good, sweet maid, and let who will be ——;
Do noble things, not dream them, all day long;
And so make life, death, and the vast forever
One grand, sweet song.

COMPANY (page 110).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what is *company* derived? What is its primary meaning? **2.** For what are those associated who constitute a *company*? Is their association temporary or permanent? **3.** What is the difference between *assemblage* and *assembly*? **4.** What is a *conclave*? a *convocation*? a *convention*? **5.** What are the characteristics of a *group*? **6.** To what use is *congregation* restricted? How does *meeting* agree with and differ from it?

EXAMPLES.

Far from the madding ——'s ignoble strife,
Their sober wishes never learned to stray.

The room contained a large —— of miscellaneous objects.

A fellow that makes no figure in ——.

A great —— had met, but without organization or officers.

If ye inquire anything concerning other matters, it shall be determined in a lawful ——.

COMPEL (page 111).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *compel*? **2.** What does *force* imply? **3.** What is the especial significance of *coerce*? **4.** What does *constrain* imply? In what favorable sense is it used?

EXAMPLES.

Even if we were not willing, they possessed the power of —— us to do justice.

Employers may —— their employees into voting as they demand, but for the secret ballot.

These considerations —— us to aid them to the utmost of our power.

COMPLAIN (page 112).

QUESTIONS.

1. By what is *complaining* prompted? *murmuring*? *repining*? **2.** Which finds outward expression, and which is limited to the mental act? **3.** To whom does one *complain*, in the formal sense of the word? **4.** With whom does one *remonstrate*?

EXAMPLES.

It is not pleasant to live with one who is constantly ——ing.

The dog gave a low —— which frightened the tramp away.

COMPLEX (page 112).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *complex* differ from *compound*? from *composite*? **2.** What is *heterogeneous*? *conglomerate*? **3.** How does *complicated* differ from *intricate*? from *involved*?

CONSCIOUS (page 116).

QUESTIONS.

1. Of what things is one *aware*? of what is he *conscious*? **2.** How does *sensible* compare with the above-mentioned words? **3.** What does *sensible* indicate regarding the emotions, that would not be expressed by *conscious*?

EXAMPLES.

To be —— that you are ignorant is a great step to knowledge.

They are now —— it would have been better to resist the first temptation.

He was —— of a stealthy step and a bulk dimly visible through the darkness.

CONSEQUENCE (page 116).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *consequence* differ from *effect*? both from *result*? **2.** How do *result* and *issue* compare? **3.** In what sense is *consequent* used?

CONTAGION (page 117).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what is *contagion* now limited by the best medical usage? **2.** To what is the term *infection* applied?

EXAMPLES.

During the plague in London persons walked in the middle of the streets for fear of the —— from the houses.

The mob thinks by —— for the most part, catching an opinion like a cold.

No pestilence is so much to be dreaded as the —— of bad example.

CONTINUAL (page 117).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *continuous* differ from *continual*? *incessant* from *ceaseless*? Give examples.

CONTRAST (page 118).

QUESTIONS.

1. How is *contrast* related to *compare*? **2.** What are the special senses of *differentiate*, *discriminate* and *distinguish*?

CONVERSATION (page 118).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the essential meaning of *conversation*? **2.** How does *conversation* differ[416] from *talk*? **3.** How is *discourse* related to *conversation*? **4.** What are the special senses of *dialogue* and *colloquy*?

EXAMPLES.

There can be no —— with a great genius, who does all the ——ing.

Nor wanted sweet ——, the banquet of the mind.

CONVEY (page 119).

QUESTIONS.

1. In what do *convey*, *transmit*, and *transport* agree? What is the distinctive sense of *convey*? **2.** To what class of objects does *transport* refer? **3.** To what class of objects do *transfer*, *transmit*, and *convey* apply? **4.** Which is the predominant sense of the latter words?

CRIMINAL (page 120).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the distinctive meaning of *criminal*? How does it differ from *illegal* or *unlawful*? **2.** What is *felonious*? *flagitious*? **3.** What is the primary meaning of *iniquitous*? **4.** Is an *iniquitous* act necessarily *criminal*?

DANGER (page 121).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the distinctive meaning of *danger*? **2.** Does *danger* or *peril* suggest the more immediate evil? **3.** How are *jeopardy* and *risk* distinguished from *danger* and *peril*?

EXAMPLES.

Delay always breeds ——.

The careful rider avoids running ——.

Stir, at your ——!

DECAY (page 122).

QUESTIONS.

1. What sort of things *decay*? *putrefy*? *rot*? **2.** What is the essential difference between *decay* and *decompose*?

EXAMPLES.

The flowers wither, the tree's trunk ——.

The water was —— by the electric current.

DECEPTION (page 123).

QUESTIONS.

1. How is *deceit* distinguished from *deception*? from *guile*? *fraud*? *lying*? *hypocrisy*? **2.** Do all of these apply to conduct as well as to speech? **3.** Is *deception* ever innocent? **4.** Have *craft* and *cunning* always a moral element? **5.** How is *dissimulation* distinguished from *duplicity*?[417]

EXAMPLES.

The —— of his conduct was patent to all.

It was a matter of self-——.

The judge decided it to be a case of ——.

DEFINITION (page 124).

QUESTIONS.

1. Which is the more exact, a *definition* or a *description*? **2.** What must a *definition* include, and what must it exclude? **3.** What must a *description* include? **4.** In what respect has *interpretation* a wider meaning than *translation*? **5.** How does an *explanation* compare with an *exposition*?

EXAMPLES.

A prompt —— of the difficulty prevented a quarrel.

The —— of scenery was admirable.

The seer gave an —— of the dream.

Many a controversy may be instantly ended by a clear —— of terms.

DELIBERATE (page 125).

QUESTIONS.

1. What are the chief distinctions between *deliberate*? *consult*? *consider*? *meditate*? *reflect*? **2.** Do large gatherings of people *consult*, or *meditate*, or *deliberate*? **3.** Do we *reflect* on things past or things to come? **4.** How many persons are necessarily implied in *consult*, *confer*, and *debate* as commonly used? in *deliberate*, *consider*, *ponder*, *reflect*? in *meditate*? **5.** What idea of time is implied in *deliberate*?

EXAMPLES.

The matter was carefully —— in all its bearings.

The legislature —— for several days.

DELUSION (page 127).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the essential difference between *illusion* and *delusion*? How does *hallucination* differ from both? **2.** Which word is used especially of objects of sight?

EXAMPLES.

The —— of the sick are sometimes pitiful.

In the soft light the —— was complete.

DEMONSTRATION (page 127).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what kind of reasoning does *demonstration* in the strict sense apply? **2.** What is *evidence*? *proof*? **3.** Which is the stronger term? **4.** Which is the more comprehensive?

EXAMPLES.

The —— of the witness was so complete that no further —— was required.

A mathematical —— must be final and conclusive.

DESIGN (page 128).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the distinctive meaning of *design*? **2.** What element is prominent in *intention*? *purpose*? *plan*? **3.** Does *purpose* suggest more power to execute than *design*? **4.** How does *intent* specifically differ from *purpose*? Which term do we use with reference to the Divine Being?

EXAMPLES.

The architect's —— involved much detail.

Hell is paved with good ——.

It is the —— of the voter that decides how his ballot shall be counted.

The —— of the Almighty can not be thwarted.

The adaption of means to ends in nature clearly indicates a ——, and so proves a ——er.

DESPAIR (page 129).

QUESTIONS.

1. In what order might *despair*, *desperation*, *discouragement*, and *hopelessness* follow, each as the result of the previous condition? **2.** How does *despondency* especially differ from *despair*?

EXAMPLES.

The utter —— of their condition was apparent.

In weak —— he abandoned all endeavor.

DEXTERITY (page 129).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what is *adroitness* derived? From what *dexterity*? How might each be rendered? **2.** How does *adroitness* differ in use from *dexterity*? **3.** From what is *aptitude* derived, and what does it signify? **4.** How does *skill* differ from *dexterity*? Which can and which can not be communicated?

EXAMPLES.

He had a natural —— for scientific investigation, and by long practise gained an inimitable —— of manipulation.

His —— in debate enabled him to evade or parry arguments or attacks which he could not answer.

The —— of the best trained workman can not equal the precision of a machine.

DICTION (page 130).

QUESTIONS.

1. Which is the more comprehensive word, *diction*, *language*, or *phraseology*? **2.** What is the true meaning of *verbiage*? Should it ever be used as the equivalent of *language* or *diction*? **3.** What is *style*? How does it compare with *diction* or *language*?

EXAMPLES.

The —— of the discourse was plain and emphatic.

The —— of a written contract should be such as to prevent misunderstandings.

The poetic —— of Milton is so exquisitely perfect that another word can scarcely ever be substituted for the one he has chosen without marring the line.

DIFFERENCE (page 131).

QUESTIONS.

1. Which pertain mostly to realities, and which are matters of judgment—*difference*, *disparity*, *distinction*, or *inconsistency*? **2.** What do we mean by "a *distinction* without a *difference*"?

EXAMPLES.

The proper —— should be carefully observed in the use of "shall" and "will."

The —— between black and white is self-evident.

The —— of our representatives' conduct with their promises is unpardonable.

DISCERN (page 133).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what sort of objects do we apply *behold*, *discern*, *distinguish*, *observe*, and *see*? **2.** What do *behold* and *distinguish* suggest in addition to *seeing*?

EXAMPLES.

With the aid of a great telescope we may —— what stars are double.

—— the upright man.

Let us minutely —— the color of the goods.

DISCOVER (page 133).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the distinctive meaning of *detect*? *discover*? *invent*? **2.** How do *discover* and *invent* differ? **3.** Is *detect* often used in a favorable sense?

EXAMPLES.

An experienced policeman acquires wonderful skill in ——ing criminals.

Newton —— the law of gravitation.

To —— a machine, one must first understand the laws of mechanics.

DISEASE (page 134).

QUESTIONS.

1. What was the early and general meaning of *sick* and *sickness* in English? **2.** How long did that usage prevail? **3.** What is the present restriction upon the use of these words in England? What words are there commonly substituted? **4.** What is the prevalent usage in the United States?

EXAMPLES.

—— spread in the camp and proved deadlier than the sword.

The —— was found to be contagious.

He is just recovering from a slight ——.

It is not good manners to talk of one's ——s.

DO (page 135).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the most comprehensive word of this group? **2.** In what sense are *finish*[420] and *complete* used, and how are they discriminated from each other? **3.** How do we discriminate between *fulfil*, *realize*, *effect*, and *execute*? *perform* and *accomplish*? *accomplish* and *complete*?

EXAMPLES.

A duty has been ——, a work of gratitude and affection has been ——.

It is wonderful how much can be —— by steady, plodding industry without brilliant talents.

The work is not only grand in design but it is —— with the most exquisite delicacy in every detail.

It is the duty of the legislators to make laws, of the magistrates to —— them.

Every one should labor to —— his duties faithfully, and —— the just expectations of those who have committed to him any trust.

DOCTRINE (page 136).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what matters do we apply the word *creed*? *doctrine*? *dogma*? *principle*? **2.** Which is the more inclusive word? **3.** Is *dogma* used favorably or unfavorably?

EXAMPLES.

The —— rests either upon the authority of the Scriptures, or upon a decision of the Church.

A man may have upright ——s even while he disregards commonly received ——s.

DOUBT, *v.* (page 137).

QUESTIONS.

1. Do we apply *doubt*, *distrust*, *surmise*, and *suspect* mostly to persons and things, or to motives and intentions? **2.** Is *mistrust* used of persons or of things? **3.** Is it used, in a favorable or an unfavorable sense?

EXAMPLES.

We do not —— that the earth moves around the sun.

Nearly every law of nature was by man first ——, then proved to be true.

I —— my own heart.

I —— that man from the outset.

DOUBT, *n.* (page 138).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what class of objects do we apply *disbelief*? *doubt*? *hesitation*? *misgiving*? **2.** Which of these words most commonly implies an unfavorable meaning? **3.** What meaning has *skepticism* as applied to religious matters?

EXAMPLES.

We feel no —— in giving our approval.

The jury had ——s of his guilt.

We did all we could to further the enterprise, but still had our ——s as to the outcome.

---

[421]

DUPLICATE (page 141).

QUESTIONS.

1. Can you give the distinction between a *copy* and a *duplicate*? a *facsimile*, and an *imitation*? **2.** What sort of a *copy* is a *transcript*?

EXAMPLES.

The —— of an organ by the violinist was perfect.

This key is a ——, and will open the lock.

The signature was merely a printed ——.

DUTY (page 142).

QUESTIONS.

1. Do we use *duty* and *right* of civil things? or *business* and *obligation* of moral things? **2.** Does *responsibility* imply connection with any other person or thing?

EXAMPLES.

I go because it is my ——.

We recognize a —— for the good conduct of our own children, but do we not also rest under some —— to society to exercise a good influence over the children of others?

EAGER (page 142).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the distinction between *eager* and *earnest* in the nature of the feeling implied? in the objects toward which it is directed? **2.** How does *anxious* in this acceptation differ from both *eager* and *earnest*?

EXAMPLES.

Hark! the shrill trumpet sounds to horse! away!
My soul's in arms, and —— for the fray.

I am in ——. I will not equivocate; I will not excuse; I will not retreat a single inch; and I will be heard!

I am —— to hear of your welfare, and of the prospects of the enterprise.

EASE (page 143).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *ease* denote, in the sense here considered? Does it apply to action or condition? **2.** Is *facility* active or passive? *readiness*? **3.** What does *ease* imply, and to what may it be limited? **4.** What does *facility* imply? *readiness*? **5.** To what is *expertness* limited?

EXAMPLES.

He plays the violin with great ——, and delights an audience.

Whatever he did was done with so much ——,
In him alone 'twas natural to please.

It is often said with equal truth that we ought to take advantage of the —— which children possess of learning.

EDUCATION (page 143).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the distinctive meaning of *education*? *instruction*? *teaching*? **2.** How is *instruction* or *teaching* related to *education*? **3.** How does *training* differ from *teaching*? **4.** What is *discipline*? *tuition*? **5.** What are *breeding* and *nurture*, and how do they differ from each other? **6.** How are *knowledge* and *learning* related to *education*?

EXAMPLES.

The true purpose of —— is to cherish and unfold the seed of immortality already sown within us.

By ——, we do learn ourselves to know
And what to man, and what to God we owe.

—— maketh a full man, conference a ready man, and writing an exact man.

For natural abilities are like natural plants that need pruning by ——; and ——s themselves do give forth directions too much at large, except they be bounded in by experience.

A branch of —— is often put to an improper use, for fear of its being idle.

EFFRONTERY (page 144).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *audacity*? *hardihood*? **2.** What special element does *effrontery* add to the meaning of *audacity* and *hardihood*? **3.** What is *impudence*? *shamelessness*? **4.** How does *effrontery* compare with these words? **5.** What is *boldness*? Is it used in a favorable or an unfavorable sense?

EXAMPLES.

When they saw the —— of Peter and John, and perceived that they were unlearned and ignorant men they marvelled.

I ne'er heard yet
That any of these bolder vices wanted
Less —— to gainsay what they did,
Than to perform it first.

I am not a little surprised at the easy —— with which political gentlemen in and out of Congress take it upon them to say that there are not a thousand men in the North who sympathize with John Brown.

EGOTISM (page 145).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *egoism* and how does it differ from *egotism*? **2.** What is *self-assertion*? *self-conceit*? **3.** Does *conceit* differ from *self-conceit*, and how? **4.** What is *self-confidence*? Is it worthy or unworthy? **5.** Is *self-assertion* ever a duty? *self-conceit*? **6.** What is *vanity*? How does it differ from *self-confidence*? from *pride*? **7.** What is *self-esteem*? How does it differ from *self-conceit*? from *self-confidence*?

EXAMPLES.

—— may puff a man up, but never prop him up.

—— is as ill at ease under indifference, as tenderness is under the love which it can not return.

EMBLEM (page 146).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what language is *emblem* derived? What did it originally signify? **2.** What is the derivation and primary meaning of *symbol*? **3.** How do the two words compare as now used? **4.** How does a *sign* suggest something other than itself? **5.** Can the same thing be both an *emblem* and a *symbol*? a *sign* and a *symbol*? **6.** What is a *token*? a *figure*? an *image*? a *type*?

EXAMPLES.

Rose of the desert, thou art to me
An —— of stainless purity, ——
Of those who, keeping their garments white,
Walk on through life with steps aright.
All things are ——s: the external shows
Of nature have their —— in the mind
As flowers and fruits and falling of the leaves.

Moses, as Israel's deliverer, was a —— of Christ.

EMIGRATE (page 147).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the distinctive meaning of *migrate*? What is its application? **2.** What do *emigrate* and *immigrate* signify? To what do they apply? Can the two words be used of the same person and the same act? How?

EXAMPLES.

The ship was crowded with —— mostly from Germany.

—— are pouring into the United States often at the rate of half a million a year.

EMPLOY (page 147).

QUESTIONS.

1. What are the distinctive senses of *employ* and *use*? Give instances. **2.** What does *use* often imply as to materials *used*? **3.** How does *hire* compare with *employ*?

EXAMPLES.

The young man had been —— by the firm for several months and had proved faithful in every respect.

The church was then ready to —— a pastor.

What one has, one ought to ——: and whatever he does he should do with all his might.

END, *v.* (page 148).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *end*, and what reference does *end* have to intention or expectation? **2.** What do *close*, *complete*, *conclude*, and *finish* signify as to expectation or appropriateness? Give instances. **3.** What specially distinctive sense has *finish*? **4.** Does *terminate* refer to reaching an arbitrary or an appropriate end? **5.** What does *stop* signify?

EXAMPLES.

The life was suddenly ——.

The train —— long enough for the passengers to get off, then whirled on.

END, *n.* (page 148).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the *end*? **2.** What is the distinctive meaning of *extremity*? **3.** How does *extremity* compare with *end*? **4.** What reference is implied in *extremity*? **5.** What is the meaning of *tip*? *point*? How does *extremity* differ in use from the two latter words? **6.** What is a *terminus*? What specific meaning has the word in modern travel? **7.** What is the meaning of *termination*, and of what is it chiefly used? *expiration*? *limit*?

EXAMPLES.

Seeing that death, a necessary —— will come when it will come.

All rejoice at the successful —— of the vast undertaking.

He that endureth to the —— shall be saved.

Do not turn back when you are just at the ——.

ENDEAVOR, *v.* (page 149).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *attempt*? to *endeavor*? To what sort of exertion does *endeavor* especially apply? **2.** How does *essay* differ from *attempt* and *endeavor* in its view of the results of the action? **3.** What is implied in *undertake*? Give an instance. **4.** What does *strive* suggest? **5.** How does *try* compare with the other words of the group?

EXAMPLES.

—— first thyself, and after call on God,
For to the worker God himself lends aid.

—— the end, and never stand to doubt;
Nothing's so hard but search will find it out.

—— to enter in at the strait gate.

ENDEAVOR, *n.* (page 150).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is an *effort*? an *exertion*? Which includes the other? **2.** How does *attempt* differ from *effort*? **3.** What is a *struggle*? **4.** What is an *essay*, and for what purpose is it made? **5.** What is an *endeavor*, and how is it distinguished from *effort*? from *attempt*?

EXAMPLES.

Youth is a blunder; manhood a ——; old age a regret.

So vast an —— required more capital than he could command at that time. Others combining with him enabled him to succeed with it.

After a few spasmodic ——, he abandoned all —— at improvement.

ENDURE (page 150).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *bear* as applied to care, pain, grief, and the like? **2.** What does *endure* add to the meaning of *bear*? **3.** How do *allow* and *permit* compare with the words just mentioned? **4.** How do *put up with* and *tolerate*[425] compare with *allow* and *permit*? **5.** What is the special sense of *afford*? How does it come into connection with the words of this group? **6.** What is the sense of *brook*? **7.** Of what words does *abide* combine the meanings?

EXAMPLES.

Charity —— long and is kind; charity —— all things.

I follow thee, safe guide, the path
Thou lead'st me, and to the hand of heav'n ——.
For there was never yet philosopher
That could —— the toothache patiently.

ENEMY (page 151).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is an *enemy*? an *adversary*? **2.** What distinction is there between the two words as to the purpose implied? **3.** What is an *antagonist*? an *opponent*? a *competitor*? a *rival*? **4.** How does *foe* compare with *enemy*?

EXAMPLES.

He makes no friend who never made a ——.

This friendship that possesses the whole soul,
... can admit of no ——.
Mountains interposed
Make —— of nations who had else,
Like kindred drops been molded into one.

He that wrestles with us strengthens our nerves and sharpens our skill. Our —— is our helper.

ENMITY (page 152).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *enmity*? **2.** How does *animosity* differ from *enmity*? **3.** What is *hostility*? What is meant by *hostilities* between nations? **4.** What is *bitterness*? *acrimony*? **5.** How does *antagonism* compare with the words above mentioned?

EXAMPLES.

Let all ——, and wrath, and anger, and clamor, and evil speaking, be put away from you, with all malice.

But their ——, tho smothered for a while, burnt with redoubled violence.

The carnal mind is —— against God, for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be.

ENTERTAIN (page 152).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *entertain* mentally? to *amuse*? **2.** What is the distinctive sense of *divert*? **3.** Can one be *amused* or *entertained* who is not *diverted*? **4.** What is it to *recreate*? to *beguile*?

EXAMPLES.

Books can not always ——, however good;
Minds are not ever craving for their food.
Who God doth late and early pray
More of his grace than gifts to lend;
And —— the harmless day
With a religious book or friend.

ENTERTAINMENT (page 153).

QUESTIONS.

1. What do *entertainment* and *recreation* imply? How, accordingly, do they rank among the lighter matters of life? **2.** How do *amusement* and *pastime* differ? **3.** On what plane are *sports*? How do they compare with *entertainment* and *recreation*? **4.** How do *amusement* and *enjoyment* compare?

EXAMPLES.

At Christmas play, and make good ——,
For Christmas comes but once a year.

It is as —— to fools to do mischief.

No true heart can find —— in another's pain or grief.

The Puritans hated bear-baiting, not because it gave pain to the bear, but because it gave —— to the spectators.

As Tammie glowered, amazed and curious,
The mirth and —— grew fast and furious.

And so, if I might be judge, God never did make a more calm, quiet, innocent —— than angling.

ENTHUSIASM (page 153).

QUESTIONS.

1. In what sense was *enthusiasm* formerly used? **2.** What is now its prevalent and controlling meaning? **3.** How does *zeal* differ from *enthusiasm*?

EXAMPLES.

An ardent —— leads to great results in exposing certain evils.

His —— was contagious and they rushed into battle.

The precept had its use; it could make men feel it right to be humane, and desire to be so, but it could never inspire them with an —— of humanity.

ENTRANCE (page 154).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what does *entrance* refer? **2.** What do *admittance* and *admission* add to the meaning of *entrance*? **3.** To what does *admittance* refer? To what additional matters does *admission* refer? Illustrate. **4.** What is the figurative use of *entrance*?

EXAMPLES.

—— was obtained by a side-door, and a good position secured to the crowded hall.

No —— except on business.

He was never so engrossed with cares of state that the needy could not have —— to him.

However carefully church-membership may be guarded, unworthy members will sometimes gain ——.

ENVIOUS (page 155).

QUESTIONS.

1. What do we mean when we say that a person is *envious*? **2.** What is the difference between *envious* and *jealous*? **3.** Is an *envious* spirit ever good? **4.**[427] Is *jealous* capable of being used in a good sense? **5.** In what sense is *suspicious* used?

EXAMPLES.

Neither be thou —— against the workers of iniquity.

—— in honor, sudden and quick in quarrel.

EQUIVOCAL (page 155).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the derivation and the original signification of *equivocal*? of *ambiguous*? How do the two words compare in present use? **2.** What is the meaning of *enigmatical*? **3.** How do *doubtful* and *dubious* compare? **4.** In what sense is *questionable* used? *suspicious*?

EXAMPLES.

These sentences, to sugar or to gall,
Being strong on both sides, are ——.

An —— statement may result from the thoughtless use of a single word that is capable of more than one meaning.

ESTEEM, *n.* (page 157).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the difference between *esteem* and *estimate*? **2.** Is *esteem* now used of concrete valuation? **3.** What is its chief present use? **4.** What is its meaning in popular use as said of persons?

EXAMPLES.

They please, are pleas'd; they give to get ——,
Till seeming blest, they grow to what they seem.

The loss of conscience or honor is one that can not be ——.

ETERNAL (page 157).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *eternal* in the fullest sense? **2.** To what being, in that sense, may it be applied? **3.** In what does *everlasting* fall short of the meaning of *eternal*? **4.** How does *endless* agree with and differ from *everlasting*? **5.** In what inferior senses are *everlasting* and *interminable* used? **6.** Is *eternal*, in good speech or writing, ever brought down to such inferior use?

EXAMPLES.

Truth crushed to earth shall rise again,
The —— years of God are hers.

Whatever may befall thee, it was preordained for thee from ——.

It were better to be eaten to death with a rust than to be scoured to nothing with —— motion.

Here comes the lady! Oh, so light a foot
Will ne'er wear out the —— flint.

EVENT (page 158).

QUESTIONS.

1. How do *event* and *incident* differ etymologically? **2.** Which is the greater and[428] more important? Give examples. **3.** How does *circumstance* compare with *incident*? **4.** What is the primary meaning of *occurrence*? **5.** What is an *episode*? **6.** How does *event* differ from *end*? **7.** What meaning does *event* often have when applied to the future?

EXAMPLES.

Fate shall yield
To fickle ——, and Chaos judge the strife.
Men are the sport of —— when
The —— seem the sport of men.

Coming —— cast their shadows before.

Where an equal poise of hope and fear
Does arbitrate the ——, my nature is

That I incline to hope rather than fear,
And gladly banish squint suspicion.

EVERY (page 158).

QUESTIONS.

1. In what are *all* and *both* alike? *any*, *each*, and *every*? **2.** How does *any* differ from *each* and *every*? **3.** How do *each* and *every* differ from *all*? **4.** How does *each* compare with *every*? with *both*? **5.** What does *either* properly denote? In what other sense is it often used? What is the objection to the latter use?

EXAMPLES.

—— person in the room arose to his feet.

A free pardon was offered to —— who should instantly lay down their arms.

As the garrison marched out, the victorious troops stood in arms on —— side of the way.

In order to keep his secret inviolate, he revealed it privately to —— of his most intimate friends.

—— person giving such information shall be duly rewarded.

EVIDENT (page 159).

QUESTIONS.

1. How do *apparent* and *evident* compare? **2.** What is the special sense of *manifest*? How does it compare in strength with *evident*? **3.** What is the sense of *obvious*? **4.** How wide is the range of *visible*? **5.** How does *discernible* compare with *visible*? What does it imply as to the observer's action? **6.** What is the sense of *palpable* and *tangible*? *conspicuous*?

EXAMPLES.

A paradox is a real truth in the guise of an —— absurdity or contradiction.

The prime minister was —— by his absence.

The statement is a —— absurdity.

On a comparison of the two works the plagiarism was ——.

Yet from those flames
No light; but only darkness ——.

These lies are like the father that begets them; gross as a mountain, open, ——.

EXAMPLE (page 160).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the etymological meaning of *example*? **2.** What two contradictory meanings does *example* derive from this primary sense? **3.** How does *example* differ from *sample*? **4.** How does it compare with *model*? with *pattern*? **5.** How does *exemplar* agree with, and differ from *example*? **6.** What is an *exemplification*? an *ensample*?

EXAMPLES.

I bid him look into the lives of men as tho himself a mirror, and from others to take an —— for himself.

We sleep, but the loom of life never stops and the —— which was weaving when the sun went down is weaving when it comes up to-morrow.

History is an —— of philosophy.

The commander was resolved to make an —— to deter others from the like offense.

EXCESS (page 160).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *excess*? Is it used in the favorable or unfavorable sense? **2.** What is *extravagance*? **3.** What is *exorbitance*? **4.** What kind of *excess* do *overplus* and *superabundance* denote? *lavishness* and *profusion*? **5.** Is *surplus* used in the favorable or unfavorable sense? **6.** To what do *redundance* and *redundancy* chiefly refer? **7.** What words are used as synonyms of *excess* in the moral sense?

EXAMPLES.

Saving requires self-denial, and —— is the death of self-denial.

Where there is great —— there usually follows corresponding ——.

—— of wealth is cause of covetousness.

Haste brings ——, and —— brings want.

The —— of the demand caused unfeigned surprise.

More of the present woes of the world are due to —— than to any other single cause.

—— of language often weakens the impression of what would be impressive in sober statement.

EXECUTE (page 161).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *execute*? of *administer*? of *enforce*? **2.** How are the words applied in special cases? Give instances. **3.** What secondary meaning has *administer*?

EXAMPLES.

It is the place of the civil magistrate to —— the laws.

The pasha gave a signal and three attendants seized the culprit, and promptly —— the bastinado.

I can not illustrate a moral duty without at the same time ——ing a precept of our religion.

EXERCISE (page 162).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *exercise* apart from all qualifying words? **2.** How does *exercise* in that sense differ from *exertion*? **3.** How may *exercise* be brought up to the full meaning of *exertion*? **4.** What is *practise*? How does it differ from *exercise*? **5.** How is *practise* discriminated from such theory or profession? **6.** What is *drill*?

EXAMPLES.

Regular —— tends to keep body and mind in the best working order.

—— in time becomes second nature.

By constant —— the most difficult feats may be done with no apparent ——.

EXPENSE (page 162).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *cost*? *expense*? **2.** How are these words now commonly differentiated? **3.** What is the meaning of *outlay*? of *outgo*?

EXAMPLES.

Which of you, intending to build a tower, sitteth not down first, and counteth the ——, whether he have sufficient to finish it.

The entire receipts have not equaled the ——.

When the —— is more than the income, if the income can not be increased, it becomes an absolute necessity to reduce the ——.

EXPLICIT (page 162).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what are *explicit* and *express* alike opposed? **2.** How do the two words differ from each other?

EXAMPLES.

I came here at this critical juncture by the —— order of Sir John St. Clare.

The language of the proposition was too —— to admit of doubt.

Now the Spirit speaketh ——ly that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith.

EXTEMPORANEOUS (page 163).

QUESTIONS.

1. What did *extemporaneous* originally mean? **2.** What has it now come to signify in common use? **3.** What is the original meaning of *impromptu*? The present meaning? **4.** How does the *impromptu* remark often differ from the *extemporaneous*? **5.** How does *unpremeditated* compare with the words above mentioned?

EXAMPLES.

In —— prayer, what men most admire, God least regardeth.

As a speaker, he excelled in —— address, while his opponent was at a loss to answer him because not gifted in the same way.

No more on prancing palfrey borne,
He carolled light as lark at morn,
And poured to lord and lady gay
The —— lay.

---

[431]

EXTERMINATE (page 163).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the derivation, and what is the original meaning of *exterminate*? *eradicate*? *extirpate*? **2.** To what are these words severally applied?

EXAMPLES.

Since the building of the Pacific railroads in the United States, the buffalo has been quite ——.

The evil of intemperance is one exceedingly difficult to ——.

No inveterate improver should ever tempt me to —— the dandelions from the green carpet of my lawn.

FAINT (page 164).

QUESTIONS.

1. What are the chief meanings of *faint*? **2.** How is *faint* a synonym of *feeble* or *purposeless*? of *irresolute* or *timid*? of *dim*, *faded*, or *indistinct*?

EXAMPLES.

Great is the strength of —— arms combined,
And we can combat even with the brave.
In his right hand a tipped staffe he held,
With which his —— steps he stayed still;
For he was —— with cold, and weak with eld;
That scarce his loosed limbs he hable was to weld.

FAITH (page 164).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *belief*? **2.** How does *credence* compare with *belief*? **3.** What is *conviction*? *assurance*? **4.** What is an *opinion*? **5.** How does a *persuasion* compare with an *opinion*? **6.** What is a *doctrine*? a *creed*? **7.** What are *confidence* and *reliance*? **8.** What is *trust*? **9.** What elements are combined in *faith*? **10.** How is *belief* often used in popular language as a precise equivalent of *faith*? **11.** How is *belief* discriminated from *faith* in the strict religious sense?

EXAMPLES.

—— is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen.

Put not your —— in princes, nor in the son of man, in whom there is no help.

—— is largely involuntary; a mathematical demonstration can not be doubted by a sane mind capable of understanding the terms and following the steps.

Every one of us, whatever our speculative ——, knows better than he practises, and recognizes a better law than he obeys.

There are few greater dangers for an army in the face of an enemy than undue ——.

FAITHFUL (page 165).

QUESTIONS.

1. In what sense may a person be called *faithful*? **2.** In what sense may one be called *trusty*? **3.** Is *faithful* commonly said of things as well as persons? is *trusty*? **4.** What is the special difference of meaning between the two words? Give examples.

EXAMPLES.

Be thou —— unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life.

Thy purpose —— is equal to the deed:
Who does the best his circumstance allows
Does well, acts nobly; angels could no more.

FAME (page 166).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *fame*? Is it commonly used in the favorable or unfavorable sense? **2.** What are *reputation* and *repute*, and in which sense commonly used? **3.** What is *notoriety*? **4.** From what do *eminence* and *distinction* result? **5.** How does *celebrity* compare with *fame*? **6.** How does *renown* compare with *fame*? **7.** What is the import of *honor*? of *glory*?

EXAMPLES.

Saying, Amen: Blessing and ——, and wisdom, and thanksgiving, and ——, and power and might, be unto our God for ever and ever.

A good —— is more valuable than money.

Great Homer's birthplace seven rival cities claim,
Too mighty such monopoly of ——.

Do good by stealth, and blush to find it ——.

Seeking the bubble ——
Even in the cannon's mouth.

FANATICISM (page 166).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *fanaticism*? *bigotry*? **2.** What do *fanaticism* and *bigotry* commonly include? **3.** What is *intolerance*? **4.** What is the distinctive meaning of *superstition*? **5.** What is *credulity*? Is it distinctively religious?

EXAMPLES.

—— is a senseless fear of God.

The fierce —— of the Moslems was the mainspring of their early conquests.

The —— that will believe nothing contrary to a creed is often joined with a blind —— that will believe anything in favor of it.

FANCIFUL (page 167).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *fanciful*? **2.** What does *fantastic* add to the meaning of *fanciful*? **3.** How does *grotesque* especially differ from the *fanciful* or *fantastic*? **4.** How does *visionary* differ from *fanciful*?[433]

EXAMPLES.

Come see the north wind's masonry,
... his wild work;
So ——, so savage, naught cares he
For number or proportion.
What —— tints the year puts on,
When falling leaves falter through motionless air
Or numbly cling and shiver to be gone!
Plays such —— tricks before high heaven
As make the angels weep.

FANCY (page 167).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is an intellectual *fancy*? **2.** How does a *conceit* differ from a *fancy*? a *conception* from both? **3.** What is an emotional or personal *fancy*? **4.** What is *fancy* as a faculty of the mind?

EXAMPLES.

Tell me where is —— bred;
Or in the heart or in the head?

Elizabeth united the occasional —— of her sex with that sense and sound policy in which neither man nor woman ever excelled her.

That fellow seems to me to possess but one ——, and that is a wrong one.

If she were to take a —— to anybody in the house, she would soon settle, but not till then.

FAREWELL (page 168).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what language do *farewell* and *good-by* belong etymologically? How do they differ? **2.** From what language have *adieu* and *congé* been adopted into English? **3.** What is the special significance of *congé*? **4.** What are *valediction* and *valedictory*?

EXAMPLES.

—— my paper's out so nearly
I've only room for yours sincerely.
The train from out the castle drew,
But Marmion stopped to bid ——.
——! a word that must be, and hath been—
A sound which makes us linger;—yet———.

FEAR (page 168).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the generic term of this group? **2.** What is *fear*? Is it sudden or lingering? In view of what class of dangers? **3.** What is the etymological meaning of *horror*? What does the word signify in accepted usage? **4.** What are the characteristics of *affright*, *fright*, and *terror*? **5.** How is *fear* contrasted with *fright* and *terror* in actual or possible effects? **6.** What is *panic*? What of the numbers affected by it? **7.** What is *dismay*? How does it compare with *fright* and *terror*?[434]

EXAMPLES.

Even the bravest men may be swept along in a sudden ——.

With much more ——
I view the fight than thou that mak'st the fray.
Look in, and see Christ's chosen saint
In triumph wear his Christ-like chain;
No —— lest he should swerve or faint.

The ghastly spectacle filled every beholder with ——.

A lingering —— crept upon him as he waited in the darkness.

FEMININE (page 169).

QUESTIONS.

1. How are *female* and *feminine* discriminated? **2.** What is the difference between a *female* voice and a *feminine* voice? **3.** How are *womanly* and *womanish* discriminated in use?

EXAMPLES.

Notice, too, how precious are these —— qualities in the sick room.

The demand for closet-room is no mere —— fancy, but the good sense of the sex.

FETTER (page 169).

QUESTIONS.

1. What are *fetters* in the primary sense? **2.** What are *manacles* and *handcuffs* designed to fasten or hold? *gyves*? **3.** What are *shackles* and what are they intended to fasten or hold? **4.** Of what material are all these restraining devices commonly composed? By what general name are they popularly known? **5.** What are *bonds* and of what material composed? **6.** Which of these words are used in the metaphorical sense?

EXAMPLES.

But first set my poor heart free,
Bound in those icy —— by thee.
Slaves can not breathe in England
...
They touch our country, and their —— fall.

FEUD (page 170).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *feud*? Of what is it used? **2.** Is a *quarrel* in word or act? *contention*? *strife*? *contest*? **3.** How does *quarrel* compare in importance with the other words cited? **4.** What does an *affray* always involve? To what may a *brawl* or *broil* be confined? **5.** How do these words compare in dignity with *contention*, *contest*, *controversy*, and *dissension*?

EXAMPLES.

Could we forbear —— and practise love
We should agree as angels do above.
"Between my house and yours," he answered,
"There is a —— of five hundred years."

Beware of entrance to a ——.

FICTION (page 170).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *fiction* in the most common modern meaning of the word? **2.** How does a *fiction* differ from a *novel*? from a *fable*? from a *myth*? **3.** How does a *myth* differ from a *legend*? **4.** How do *falsehood* and *fabrication* differ from the words above mentioned? **5.** Is *fabrication* or *falsehood* the more odious term? Which term is really the stronger? **6.** What is a *story*? Is it good or bad, true or false? With what words of the group does it agree?

EXAMPLES.

O scenes surpassing ——, and yet true,
Scenes of accomplished bliss.

A —— strange is told of thee.

I believe the whole account from beginning to end to be a pure ——.

A thing sustained by such substantial evidence could not be a mere —— of the imagination.

FIERCE (page 171).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *fierce* signify? **2.** To what does *ferocious* refer? How do the two words differ? **3.** What does *savage* signify?

EXAMPLES.

—— was the day; the wintry sea
Moaned sadly on New England's strand,
When first the thoughtful and the free,
Our fathers, trod the desert land.
Contentions ——,
Ardent, and dire, spring from no petty cause.

The —— savages massacred the survivors to the last man.

FINANCIAL (page 172).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what does *monetary* directly refer? **2.** How does *pecuniary* agree with and differ from *monetary*? **3.** To what does *financial* especially apply? **4.** In what connection is *fiscal* most commonly used?

EXAMPLES.

The —— year closes with the society out of debt.

He was rejoiced to receive the —— aid at a time when it was most needed.

In a —— panic, many a sound business house goes down for want of power to realize instantly on valuable securities.

FINE (page 172).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what is *fine* derived, and what is its original meaning? **2.** How, from this primary meaning does *fine* become a synonym of *excellent* and *beautiful*? **3.** How does it come into connection with *clarified*, *clear*, *pure*, *refined*? **4.**[436] How is it connected with *dainty*, *delicate*, and *exquisite*? **5.** How does *fine* come to be a synonym for *minute*, *comminuted*? How for *filmy*, *tenuous*? for *keen*, *sharp*? Give instances of the use of *fine* in its various senses.

EXAMPLES.

Some people are more —— than wise.

—— feathers do not always make —— birds.

The ——est balances must be kept under glass, because so ——ly adjusted as to be —— to a film of dust or a breath of air.

FIRE (page 173).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the essential fact underlying the visible phenomena which we call *fire*? **2.** What is *combustion*? **3.** How wide is its range of meaning? **4.** What is a *conflagration*?

EXAMPLES.

He's gone, and who knows how he may report
Thy words by adding fuel to the ——?
Lo! as he comes, in Heaven's array,
And scattering wide the —— of day.

FLOCK (page 173).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the most general word of this group? **2.** What is a *group*, and of what class of objects may it be composed? **3.** To what class of animals does *brood* apply? to what class does *litter* apply? **4.** Of what is *bevy* used? *flock*? **5.** To what is *herd* limited? **6.** Of what is *pack* used? **7.** What is a *drove*?

EXAMPLES.

What is not good for the —— is not good for the bee.

He heard the bleating of the ——s and the twitter of birds among the trees.

The lowing —— winds slowly o'er the lea.

Excited ——s gathered at the corners discussing the affair.

A —— of brightly clad women and children were enjoying a picnic under the trees.

FLUCTUATE (page 173).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *fluctuate*? **2.** In what one characteristic do *swerve* and *veer* differ from *oscillate*, *fluctuate*, *undulate*, and *waver*? **3.** What is the difference in mental action between *hesitate* and *waver*? between *vacillate* and *waver*? **4.** Which of the above-mentioned words apply to persons? which to feelings?

EXAMPLES.

Thou almost mak'st me —— in my faith.

The surface of the prairies rolls and —— to the eye.

It is almost universally true that the human mind —— at the moment of committing a crime.

The vessel suddenly —— from her course.

FLUID (page 174).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *fluid*? **2.** Into what two sections are *fluids* divided? **3.** What is a *liquid*? a *gas*? **4.** Are all *liquids fluids*? **5.** Are *gases fluids*? **6.** Are *gases* ever *liquids*? **7.** What substance is at once a *liquid* and a *fluid* at the ordinary temperature and pressure?

EXAMPLES.

Now nature paints her colors, how the bee
Sits on the bloom, extracting —— sweet.

This earth was once a —— haze of light.

FOLLOW (page 174).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *follow*? **2.** How does *follow* compare with *chase* and *pursue*? **3.** As regards succession in time, what is the difference between *follow* and *ensue*? *result*?

EXAMPLES.

Say, shall my little bark attendant sail,
—— the triumph and partake the gale?
When Youth and Pleasure meet
To —— the glowing Hours with flying feet.
"Then —— me, the Prince,"
I answered; "each be hero in his turn!
Seven and yet one, like shadows in a dream."

FORMIDABLE (page 176).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *formidable*? **2.** How does *formidable* differ from *dangerous*? *terrible*? *tremendous*? Give examples.

EXAMPLES.

All delays are —— in war.

—— as an army with banners.

The great fleet moved slowly toward the forts, a —— array.

FORTIFICATION (page 176).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does a *fortress* specifically differ from a *fortification*? **2.** What is the distinctive meaning of *citadel*? **3.** What is a *fort*? **4.** What is a *fastness* or *stronghold*?

EXAMPLES.

For a man's house is his ——.

A mighty —— is our God,
A bulwark never failing;
Our helper He amid the flood
Of mortal ills prevailing.

Alva built a —— in the heart of Antwerp to overawe the city.

FORTITUDE (page 176).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *fortitude*? **2.** How does it compare with *courage*? **3.** How do *resolution* and *endurance* compare?

EXAMPLES.

Unbounded —— and compassion join'd,
Tempering each other in the victor's mind.
Tell thy story;
If thine, consider'd, prove the thousandth part
Of my ——, thou art a man, and I
Have suffer'd like a girl.
Thou didst smile,
Infused with a —— from heaven,
When I had decked the sea with drops full salt.

FORTUNATE (page 177).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *fortunate* compare with *successful*? **2.** How are *lucky* and *fortunate* discriminated? **3.** In what special sense, and with what reference are *favored* and *prospered* used?

EXAMPLES.

It is not a —— word this same "impossible;" no good comes of those that have it so often in their mouth.

Ah, —— years! once more who would not be a boy?

I have a mind presages me such thrift
That I should questionless be ——.

FRAUD ([page 177](#)).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *fraud*? How does it differ from *deceit* or *deception*? **2.** What is the design of an *imposture*? **3.** What is *dishonesty*? a *cheat*? a *swindle*? How do all these fall short of the meaning of *fraud*? **4.** Of what relations is *treachery* used? *treason*?

EXAMPLES.

—— doth never prosper: what's the reason?
Why, if it prosper none dare call it ——.

Whoever has once become notorious by base ——, even if he speaks truth gains no belief.

The first and the worst of all —— is to cheat oneself.

FRIENDLY ([page 178](#)).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *friendly* signify as applied to persons, or as applied to acts? **2.** How does the adjective *friendly* compare in strength with the noun *friend*?[439] **3.** What is the special meaning of *accessible*? of *companionable* and *sociable*? of *cordial* and *genial*?

EXAMPLES.

He that hath friends must show himself ——.

A fellow feeling makes one wondrous ——.

FRIENDSHIP ([page 179](#)).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *friendship*? **2.** In what one quality does it differ from *affection*, *attachment*, *devotion*, and *friendliness*? **3.** What is the meaning of *comity* and *amity*? **4.** How does *friendship* differ from *love*?

EXAMPLES.

Talk not of wasted ——, —— never was wasted;
If it enrich not the heart of another, its waters returning
Back to their springs, like the rain, shall fill them full of refreshment.
——, peculiar boon of heaven,
The noble mind's delight and pride,
To men and angels only given,
To all the lower world denied.

FRIGHTEN (page 180).

QUESTIONS.

1. By what is one *frightened*? by what *intimidated*? **2.** What is it to *browbeat* or *cow*? **3.** What is it to *scare* or *terrify*?

EXAMPLES.

The child was —— by the stories the nurse told.

The loud, loud winds, that o'er the billows sweep—
Shake the firm nerve, —— the bravest soul!

FRUGALITY (page 180).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *economy*? **2.** What is *frugality*? **3.** What is *parsimony*? How does it compare with *frugality*? What is the motive of *parsimony*? **4.** What is *miserliness*? **5.** What is the special characteristic of *prudence* and *providence*? of *thrift*? **6.** What is the motive of *economy*?

EXAMPLES.

There are but two ways of paying debt: increase of industry in raising, increase of —— in laying out.

By close —— the little home was at last paid for and there was a great thanksgiving time.

GARRULOUS (page 181).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *garrulous* signify? *chattering*? **2.** How do *talkative* and *loquacious*[440] differ from *garrulous*, and from each other? **3.** What is the special application of *verbose*?

EXAMPLES.

To tame a shrew, and charm her —— tongue.

Guard against a feeble fluency, a —— prosiness, a facility of saying nothing.

GENDER (page 181).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *sex*? **2.** To what beings only does *sex* apply? **3.** What is *gender*? To what does it apply? Do the distinctions of *gender* correspond to the distinctions of *sex*? Give examples of languages containing three *genders*, and of the classification in languages containing but two.

EXAMPLES.

The maternal relation naturally and necessarily divides the work of the ——s giving to woman the indoor life, and to man, the work of the outer world.

While in French every word is either of the masculine or feminine ——, the language sometimes fails for that very reason to indicate the —— of some person referred to.

GENERAL (page 181).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *general* signify? **2.** How does *general* compare with *universal*? with *common*? **3.** What illustrations of the differences are given in the text?

EXAMPLES.

—— friendships will admit of division, one may love the beauty of this, the good humor of that person, ... and so on.

A —— feeling of unrest prevailed.

Death comes to all by —— law.

GENEROUS (page 182).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the primary meaning of *generous*? the common meaning? **2.** How does *generous* differ from *liberal*? **3.** What is the distinctive sense of *munificent*? **4.** What does *munificent* tell of the motive or spirit of the giver? What does *generous* tell? **5.** How does *disinterested* compare with *generous*? **6.** What is the distinctive meaning of *magnanimous*? How does it differ from *generous* as regards dealing with insults or injuries?

EXAMPLES.

To cunning men
I will be very kind; and ——
To mine own children, in good bringing up.
A —— friendship no cold medium knows,
Burns with one love, with one resentment glows.

The conqueror proved as —— in victory as he was terrible in battle.

[441]

GENIUS (page 183).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *genius*? **2.** What is *talent*? **3.** Which is the higher quality? **4.** Which is the more dependent upon training?

EXAMPLES.

The eternal Master found
His single —— well employ'd.

No great —— was ever without some mixture of madness.

GET (page 183).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a person said to *get*? **2.** How is *get* related to expectation or desire? How is *gain* related to those words? **3.** By what processes does one *acquire*? Is the thing *acquired* sought or desired, or not? **4.** What does one *earn*? **5.** Does a person always *get* what he *earns* or always *earn* what he *gets*? **6.** What does *obtain* imply? Is the thing one *obtains* an object of *desire*? How does *obtain* differ from *get*? **7.** What does *win* imply? How is one said to *win* a suit at law? What is the correct term in legal phrase? Why? **8.** By what special element does *procure* differ from *obtain*? **9.** What is especially implied in *secure*?

EXAMPLES.

He —— a living as umbrella mender but a poor living it is.

—— wisdom and with all thy getting, —— understanding.

In the strange city he found that all his learning would not —— him a dinner.

GIFT (page 184).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *gift*? Is *gift* used in the good or the bad sense? Does the legal agree with the popular sense? **2.** What synonymous word is always used in the evil sense? **3.** What is a *benefaction*? a *donation*? What difference of usage is recognized between the two words? **4.** What is a *gratuity*, and to whom given? **5.** What is the sense and use of *largess*? **6.** What is a *present*, and to whom given? **7.** What is the special sense of *boon*? **8.** What is a *grant*, and by whom made?

EXAMPLES.

He gave us only over beast, fish, fowl,
Dominion absolute; that right we hold
By his ——.
True love's the —— which God has given
To man alone beneath the heaven.

"——, ——, noble knights," cried the heralds.

The courts of justice had fallen so low that it was practically impossible to win a cause without a ——.

GIVE (page 185).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the primary meaning of *give*? the secondary meaning? **2.** Can we *give* what is undesired? **3.** Can we *give* what we are paid for? **4.** How is *give*[442] always understood when there is no limitation in the context? **5.** Is it correct to say "He *gave* it to me for nothing"? **6.** What is to *grant*? **7.** What is implied when we speak of *granting* a favor? **8.** What is to *confer*? **9.** What is especially implied in *impart*? in *bestow*?

EXAMPLES.

My God shall —— all your need according to his riches in glory by Christ Jesus.

—— to every man that asketh of thee, and from him that would borrow of thee, turn not thou away.

The court promptly —— the injunction.

The king —— upon him the honor of knighthood.

One of the pleasantest things in life is to —— instruction to those who really desire to learn.

GOVERN (page 185).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does the word *govern* imply? How does it differ from *control*? **2.** How do *command* and *control* differ? **3.** How do *rule* and *govern* differ? **4.** What is the special significance of *sway*? of *mold*? **5.** What is it to *manage*? **6.** What is the present meaning of *reign*? How does it compare with *rule*?

EXAMPLES.

He that —— his spirit is greater than he that taketh a city.

For some must follow, and some ——
Tho all are made of clay.

Daniel Webster well described the character of "Old Hickory" in the sentence, "I do not say that General Jackson did not mean to —— his country well, but I do say that General Jackson meant to —— his country."

GRACEFUL (page 186).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *graceful* denote? How is it especially distinguished from *beautiful*?

EXAMPLES.

How —— upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings that publisheth peace.

A —— myrtle rear'd its head.

GRIEF (page 187).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *grief*? **2.** How does *grief* compare with *sorrow*? with *sadness*? with *melancholy*? **3.** What two chief senses has *affliction*? **4.** What is implied in *mourning*, in its most common acceptation?

EXAMPLES.

We glory in —— also.

For our light —— which is but for a moment, worketh for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory.

What private —— they have, alas! I know not, that made them do it.

HABIT (page 187).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *custom*? *routine*? Which is the more mechanical? **2.** What element does *habit* add to *custom* and *routine*? **3.** Should we preferably use *custom* or *habit* of a society? of an individual? **4.** What is *fashion*? *rule*? *system*? **5.** What are *use* and *usage*, and how do they differ from each other? **6.** What is *practise*? **7.** What is the distinctive meaning of *wont*?

EXAMPLES.

Every —— is preserved and increased by correspondent actions, as the —— of walking by walking, of running by running.

Montaigne is wrong in declaring that —— ought to be followed simply because it is ——, and not because it is reasonable or just.

Lord Brougham says "The longer I live the more careful I am to entrust everything that I really care to do to the beneficent power of ——."

—— makes perfect.

Without —— little that is valuable is ever learned or done.

HAPPEN (page 188).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *happen* signify? **2.** How does it differ from *chance*? **3.** What is the distinctive meaning of *betide*? **4.** How do both *befall* and *betide* differ from *happen* in grammatical construction? **5.** What is the meaning of *supervene*? **6.** Is *transpire* correctly used in the sense of *happen*? When may an event be properly said to *transpire*?

EXAMPLES.

Whatever —— at all —— as it should.

Thou sowest not that body that shall be, but bear grain, it may —— of wheat, or of some other grain.

Ill —— the graceless renegade!

It —— that a secret treaty had been previously concluded between the powers.

If mischief —— him, thou shalt bring down my gray hairs with sorrow to the grave.

HAPPINESS (page 189).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *gratification*? *satisfaction*? **2.** What is *happiness*? **3.** How does *happiness* differ from *comfort*? **4.** How does *comfort* differ from *enjoyment*? **5.** How does *pleasure* compare with *comfort* and *enjoyment*? with *happiness*? **6.** What do *gratification* and *satisfaction* express? How do they compare with each other? **7.** How does *happiness* compare with *gratification*, *satisfaction*, *comfort*, and *pleasure*? with *delight* and *joy*? **8.** What is *delight*? *ecstasy*? *rapture*? **9.** What is *triumph*? *blessedness*? *bliss*?

EXAMPLES.

Sweet is —— after pain.

Virtue alone is —— below.

Hope elevates and —— brightens his crest.

The storm raged without, but within the house all was brightness and ——.

There is no —— so sweet and abiding as that of doing good.

This is the very —— of love.

HAPPY (page 190).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the original meaning of *happy*? With what words is it allied in this sense? **2.** In what way is *happy* a synonym of *blessed*? **3.** What is the meaning of *happy* in its most frequent present use?

EXAMPLES.

—— are they that mourn for they shall be comforted.

To what —— accident is it that we owe so unexpected a visit.

A —— heart maketh a —— countenance.

I would not spend another such a night,
Tho 'twere to buy a world of —— days.

HARMONY (page 191).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *harmony*? **2.** How does *harmony* compare with *agreement*? **3.** How do *concord* and *accord* compare with *harmony* and with each other? **4.** What is *conformity*? *congruity*? **5.** What is *consistency*? **6.** What is *unanimity*? **7.** How do *consent* and *concurrence* compare?

EXAMPLES.

We have made a covenant with death and with hell are we at ——.

Tyrants have made desperate efforts to secure outward —— in religious observances without —— of religious belief.

That action and counteraction which, in the natural and in the political world, from the reciprocal struggle of discordant powers draws out the —— of the universe.

The speaker was, by general ——, allowed to proceed.

HARVEST (page 192).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the original meaning of *harvest*? its later meaning? **2.** How does *harvest* compare with *crop*? **3.** What is *produce*? How does it differ from *product*? **4.** What is the meaning of *proceeds*? *yield*? *return*? **5.** Is *harvest* capable of figurative use, and in what sense? **6.** What is the special meaning of *harvest-home*? *harvest-tide*? *harvest-time*?

EXAMPLES.

Just tickle the earth with a hoe, and she laughs with an abundant ——.

And the ripe —— of the new-mown hay gives it a sweet and wholesome odor.

It soweth here with toil and care
But the —— of love is there.

Of no distemper, of no blast he died,
But fell like autumn —— that mellowed long.

HATRED (page 193).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *repugnance*? *aversion*? **2.** How does *hatred* compare with *aversion* as[445] applied to persons? as applied to things? **3.** What is *malice*? *malignity*? **4.** What is *spite*? **5.** What are *grudge*, *resentment*, and *revenge*, and how do they compare with one another?

EXAMPLES.

Heaven has no —— like love to —— turned.

The slight put upon him filled him with deep ——.

He ne'er bore —— for stalwart blow
Ta'en in fair fight from gallant foe.

In all cases of wilful injury to person or property, the law presumes ——.

I felt from our first meeting an instinctive —— for the man, which on acquaintance deepened into a settled ——.

HAVE (page 194).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what is *have* applied? How widely inclusive a word is it? **2.** What does *possess* signify? **3.** What is to *hold*? to *occupy*? **4.** How does *be in possession* compare with *possess*? **5.** How does *own* compare with *possess* or with *be in possession*? **6.** What is the difference between the statement that a man *has* reason, and the statement that he *is in possession* of his reason?

EXAMPLES.

Son, thou art ever with me, and all that I —— is thine.

I earnestly entreat you, for your own sakes, to —— yourselves of solid reasons.

He occupies the house, but does not —— it.

HAZARD (page 194).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *hazard*? **2.** How does *hazard* compare with *danger*? **3.** How do *risk* and *venture* compare with *chance* and *hazard*, and with each other? **4.** How do *accident* and *casualty* differ? **5.** What is a *contingency*?

EXAMPLES.

We must take the current when it serves or lose our ——.

I have set my life upon a cast, and I will stand the —— of the die.

There is no —— in doing known duty.

Do you think it necessary to provide for every —— before taking the first step?

HEALTHY (page 195).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *healthy*? of *healthful*? Are the words properly interchangeable? **2.** What are the chief synonyms of *healthy*? of *healthful*? **3.** In what sense is *salubrious* used, and to what is it applied? **4.** To what realm does *salutary* belong?

EXAMPLES.

In books, or work, or —— play let my first years be passed.

Blessed is the —— nature; it is the coherent, sweetly cooperative, not the self-distracting one.

HELP (page 195).

QUESTIONS.

1. Is *help* or *aid* the stronger term? **2.** Which is used in excitement or emergency? **3.** Does *help* include *aid* or does *aid* include *help*? **4.** Which implies the seconding of another's exertions? Do we *aid* or *help* the helpless? **5.** How do *cooperate* and *assist* differ? **6.** To what do *encourage* and *uphold* refer? *succor* and *support*?

EXAMPLES.

He does not prevent a crime when he can —— it.

Know then whatever cheerful and serene —— the mind —— the body too.

HERETIC (page 196).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *heretic*? a *schismatic*? **2.** In what does a *heretic* differ from his church or religious body? a *schismatic*? **3.** How do a *heretic* and a *schismatic* often differ in action? **4.** How are the terms *dissenter* and *non-conformist* usually applied?

EXAMPLES.

A man that is an ——, after the first and second admonition, reject.

Churchmen and —— alike resisted the tyranny of James II.

HETEROGENEOUS (page 196).

QUESTIONS.

1. When are substances *heterogeneous* as regards each other? **2.** When is a mixture, as cement, said to be *heterogeneous*? when *homogeneous*? **3.** What is the special significance of *non-homogeneous*? **4.** How does *miscellaneous* differ from *heterogeneous*?

EXAMPLES.

My second son received a sort of —— education at home.

Courtier and patriot can not mix
Their —— politics
Without an effervescence.

HIDE (page 197).

QUESTIONS.

1. Which is the most general term of this group, and what does it signify? **2.** Is an object *hidden* by intention, or in what other way or ways, if any? **3.** Does *conceal* evince intention? **4.** How does *secrete* compare with *conceal*? How is it chiefly used? **5.** What is it to *cover*? to *screen*?

EXAMPLES.

Men use thought only as authority for their injustice, and employ speech only to —— their thoughts.

Ye little stars! —— your diminished rays.

HIGH (page 198).

QUESTIONS.

1. What kind of a term is *high*? What does it signify? Give instances of the relative[447] use of the word. **2.** How does *high* compare with *deep*? To what objects may these words be severally applied? **3.** What is the special significance of *tall*? **4.** What element does *lofty* add to the meaning of *high* or *tall*? **5.** How do *elevated* and *eminent* compare in the literal sense? in the figurative? **6.** How do the words above mentioned compare with *exalted*? **7.** What contrasted uses has *high* in the figurative sense? **8.** What is *towering* in the literal, and in the figurative sense?

EXAMPLES.

A pillar'd shade, —— overarched, and echoing walks between.

A daughter of the gods, divinely —— and most divinely fair.

What is that which the breeze on the —— steep,
As it fitfully blows, half conceals, half discloses?
He knew
Himself to sing, and build the —— rime.

HINDER (page 199).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *hinder*? **2.** How does *hinder* differ from *delay*? **3.** How does *hinder* compare with *prevent*? **4.** What is the meaning of *retard*? **5.** What is it to *obstruct*? to *resist*? How do these two words compare with each other?

EXAMPLES.

—— the Devil, and he will flee from you.

My tears must stop, for every drop
—— my needle and thread.

It is the study of mankind to —— that advance of age or death which can not be ——.

HISTORY (page 200).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *history*? How does it relate events? To what class of events does it apply? **2.** How does *history* differ from *annals* or *chronicles*?

EXAMPLES.

Happy the people whose —— are dulled.

—— is little else than a picture of human crimes and misfortunes.

—— is philosophy teaching by example.

HOLY (page 200).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *sacred*? **2.** How does it compare with *holy*? **3.** Which term do we apply directly to God? **4.** In what sense is *divine* loosely used? What is its more appropriate sense?

EXAMPLES.

The —— time is quiet as a nun breathless with adoration.

A —— burden is this life ye bear.

All sects and churches of Christendom hold to some form of the doctrine of the —— inspiration of the Christian Scriptures.

---

[448]

HOME (page 201).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the general sense of *abode*, *dwelling*, and *habitation*? What difference is there in the use of these words? **2.** From what language is *home* derived? What is its distinctive meaning?

EXAMPLES.

An —— giddy and unsure
Hath he that buildeth on the vulgar heart.

The attempt to abolish the ideal woman and keep the ideal —— is a predestinated failure.

A house without love may be a castle or a palace, but it is not a ——.

Love is the life of a true ——.

HONEST (page 202).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *honest* in ordinary use? **2.** What is the meaning of *honorable*? **3.** How will the merely *honest* and the truly *honorable* man differ in action? **4.** What is *honest* in the highest and fullest sense? How, in this sense, does it differ from *honorable*?

EXAMPLES.

—— labor bears a lovely face.

An —— man's the noblest work of God.

No form of pure, undisguised murder will be any longer allowed to confound itself with the necessities of —— warfare.

HORIZONTAL (page 202).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *horizontal* signify? How does it compare with *level*? **2.** From what language is *flat* derived? **3.** What is its original meaning? its most common present sense? In what derived sense is it often used? **4.** What are the senses of *plain* and *plane*?

EXAMPLES.

Sun and moon were in the —— sea sunk.

Ample spaces o'er the smooth and —— pavement.

The prominent lines in Greek architecture were ——, and not vertical.

HUNT (page 203).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *hunt*? **2.** For what is a *chase* or *pursuit* conducted? a *search*? **3.** What does *hunt* ordinarily include? **4.** Is it correct to use *hunt* when *search* only is contemplated? **5.** How are these words used in the figurative senses?[449]

EXAMPLES.

Among the inalienable rights of man are life, liberty, and the —— of happiness.

All things have an end, and so did our —— for lodgings.

The —— formed the principal amusement of our Norman kings, who for that purpose retained in their possession forests in every part of the kingdom.

The —— is up, but they shall know
The stag at bay's a dangerous foe.

HYPOCRISY (page 204).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what language is *pretense* derived, and what does it signify? **2.** What is *hypocrisy*? **3.** What is *cant*? *sanctimoniousness*? **4.** What is *pietism*? *formalism*? *sham*? **5.** How does *affectation* compare with *hypocrisy*?

EXAMPLES.

Let not the Trojans, with a feigned —— of proffered peace, delude the Latian prince.

—— is a fawning and flexible art, which accommodates itself to human feelings, and flatters the weakness of men in order that it may gain its own ends.

HYPOCRITE (page 204).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what language is *hypocrite* derived? What is its primary meaning? **2.** What common term includes the other words of the group? **3.** How are *hypocrite* and *dissembler* contrasted with each other? **4.** What element is common to the *cheat* and the *impostor*? How do the two compare with each other?

EXAMPLES.

It is the weakest sort of politicians that are the greatest ——.

I dare swear he is no —— but prays from his heart.

In the reign of Henry VII., an ——, named Perkin Warbeck, laid claim to the English crown.

HYPOTHESIS (page 205).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *hypothesis*? What is its use in scientific investigation and study? **2.** What is a *guess*? a *conjecture*? a *supposition*? a *surmise*? **3.** What implication does *surmise* ordinarily convey? What is a *theory*? a *scheme*? a *speculation*? How do they differ?

EXAMPLES.

——, fancies, built on nothing firm.

There are no other limits to —— than those of the human mind.

The development ——, tho widely accepted by men of science fails of proof at many important points.

IDEA (page 206).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what language is *idea* derived, and what did it originally mean? **2.** What[450] did *idea* signify in early philosophical use? **3.** What is its present popular use, and with what words is it now synonymous?

EXAMPLES.

All rests with those who read. A work or ——
Is what each makes it to himself.

He who comes up to his own —— of greatness must always have had a very low standard of it in his mind.

IDEAL (page 206).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is an *ideal*? **2.** What is an *archetype*? a *prototype*? **3.** Can a *prototype* be equivalent to an *archetype*? **4.** Is an *ideal* primal, or the result of development? **5.** What is an *original*? **6.** What is the *standard*? How does it compare with the *ideal*? **7.** How are *idea* and *ideal* contrasted?

EXAMPLES.

Be a —— to others and then all will go well.

The mind's the —— of the man.

Every man has at times in his mind the —— of what he should be, but is not.

IDIOCY (page 207).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *idiocy*? **2.** What is *imbecility*? How does it compare with *idiocy*? **3.** How does *insanity* differ from *idiocy* or *imbecility*? **4.** How do *folly* and *foolishness* compare with *idiocy*? **5.** What is *fatuity*? *stupidity*?

EXAMPLES.

Where ignorance is bliss, 'tis —— to be wise.

To expect an effect without a cause, or attainment without application, is little less than ——.

IDLE (page 208).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what language is *idle* derived, and what is its original meaning? **2.** What does *idle* in present use properly denote? Does it necessarily denote the absence of all action? **3.** What does *lazy* signify? How does it differ from *idle*? **4.** What does *inert* signify? *sluggish*? **5.** In what realm does *slothful* belong, and what does it denote? **6.** How does *indolent* compare with *slothful*?

EXAMPLES.

The —— stream was covered with a green scum.

Never —— a moment, but thrifty and thoughtful of others.

As the door turneth upon his hinges, so doth the —— turn upon his bed.

IGNORANT (page 208).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *ignorant* signify? How wide is its range? **2.** What is the meaning of *illiterate*? **3.** How does *unlettered* compare with *illiterate*?

EXAMPLES.

So foolish was I and ——; I was as a beast before thee.

A boy is better unborn than ——.

IMAGINATION (page 209).

QUESTIONS.

1. Into what two parts was *imagination* divided in the old psychology? **2.** What name is now preferably given to the so-called *Reproductive Imagination* by President Porter and others? **3.** What is *fantasy* or *phantasy*? In what mental actions is it manifested? **4.** What is *fantasy* in ordinary usage? **5.** How is *imagination* defined? *fancy*? **6.** To what faculty of the mind do both of these activities or powers belong? **7.** In what other respects do *imagination* and *fancy* agree? What is the one great distinction between them? How do they respectively treat the material objects or images with which they deal? Which power finds use in philosophy, science, and mechanical invention, and how?

EXAMPLES.

While ——, like the finger of a clock,
Runs the great circuit, and is still at home.
And as —— bodies forth
The forms of things unknown, the poet's pen
Turns them to shapes, and gives to airy nothing
A local habitation and a name.

IMMEDIATELY (page 211).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the primary meaning of *immediately*? Its meaning as an adverb of time? **2.** What did *by and by* formerly signify? What is its present meaning? **3.** What did *directly* formerly signify, and what does it now commonly mean? **4.** What change has *presently* undergone? **5.** Is *immediately* losing anything of its force? What words now seem more emphatic?

EXAMPLES.

Nothing is there to come, and nothing past,
But an eternal —— does always last.

Let us go up ——, and possess it; for we are well able to overcome it.

Obey me ——!

IMMERSE (page 212).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what language is *dip* derived? from what *immerse*? **2.** How do the two words differ in dignity? How as to the completeness of the action? How as to the continuance of the object in or under the liquid? **3.** Which word is preferably used as to the rite of baptism? **4.** What does *submerge* imply? **5.** What are *douse* and *duck*? **6.** What special sense has *dip* which the other words do not share?

EXAMPLES.

Trust no Future, howe'er pleasant!
Let the dead Past —— its dead.

The ships of war, Congress and Cumberland, were —— by the Merrimac.

When food can not be swallowed, life may be prolonged by —— the body in nutritive fluids.

---

[452]

IMMINENT (page 212).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what language is *imminent* derived and with what primary sense? *impending*? **2.** How do *imminent* and *impending* differ in present use? **3.** How does *threatening* differ from the two words above given?

EXAMPLES.

And nodding Ilium waits the —— fall.
And these she does apply for warnings, portents,
And evils ——.

IMPEDIMENT (page 213).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *impediment* primarily signify? *obstacle*? *obstruction*? **2.** How does *obstacle* differ from *obstruction*? **3.** What is a *hindrance*? **4.** Is an *impediment* what one finds or what he carries? Is it momentary or constant? What did the Latin *impedimenta* signify? **5.** What is an *encumbrance*? How does it differ from an *obstacle* or *obstruction*? **6.** Is a *difficulty* within one or without?

EXAMPLES.

Something between a —— and a help.

Thus far into the bowels of the land
Have we march'd without ——.

Demosthenes became the foremost orator of the world in spite of an —— in his speech.

——s overcome are the stepping-stones by which great men rise.

IMPUDENCE (page 213).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *impertinence* primarily denote? What is its common acceptation? **2.** What is *impudence*? *insolence*? **3.** What is *officiousness*? **4.** What does *rudeness* suggest?

EXAMPLES.

With matchless —— they style a wife
The dear-bought curse, and lawful plague of life.

It is better not to turn friendship into a system of lawful and unpunishable ——.

A certain class of ill-natured people mistake —— for frankness.

INCONGRUOUS (page 214).

QUESTIONS.

1. When are things said to be *incongruous*? **2.** To what is *discordant* applied? *inharmonious*? **3.** What does *incompatible* signify? When are things said to be *incompatible*? **4.** To what does *inconsistent* apply? **5.** What illustrations of the uses of these words are given in the text? **6.** What is the meaning of *incommensurable*?[453]

EXAMPLES.

No solitude is so solitary as that of —— companionship.

I hear a strain —— as a merry dirge, or sacramental bacchanal might be.

INDUCTION (page 215).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *deduction*? *induction*? **2.** What is the proof of an *induction*? **3.** What process is ordinarily followed in what is known as scientific *induction*? **4.** How do *deduction* and *induction* compare as to the certainty of the conclusion? **5.** How does an *induction* compare with an *inference*?

EXAMPLES.

The longer one studies a vast subject the more cautious in —— he becomes.

Perhaps the widest and best known —— of Biology, is that organisms grow.

INDUSTRIOUS (page 215).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *busy* differ from *industrious*? **2.** What is the implication if we say one is *industrious* just now? **3.** What does *diligent* add to the meaning of *industrious*?

EXAMPLES.

Look cheerfully upon me,
Here, love; thou see'st how —— I am.

The —— have no time for tears.

INDUSTRY (page 216).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *industry*? **2.** What does *assiduity* signify as indicated by its etymology? *diligence*? **3.** How does *application* compare with *assiduity*? **4.** What is *constancy*? *patience*? *perseverance*? **5.** What is *persistence*? What implication does it frequently convey? **6.** How does *industry* compare with *diligence*? **7.** To what do *labor* and *pains* especially refer?

EXAMPLES.

Honors come by ——; riches spring from economy.

'Tis —— supports us all.

There is no success in study without close, continuous, and intense ——.

His —— in wickedness would have won him enduring honor if it had taken the form of —— in a better cause.

INFINITE (page 216).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what language is *infinite* derived, and with what meaning? To what may it be applied? **2.** How do *countless*, *innumerable*, and *numberless* compare with *infinite*? **3.** What is the use of *boundless*, *illimitable*, *limitless*, *measureless*,[454] and *unlimited*? **4.** What are the dimensions of *infinite* space? What is the duration of *infinite* time?

EXAMPLES.

My bounty is as —— as the sea, my love as deep, the more I give to thee, the more I have, for both are ——.

Man's inhumanity to man makes —— thousands mourn.

INFLUENCE (page 217).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *influence*? is one *influenced* by external or internal force? **2.** To what kind of power does *actuate* refer? Does one person *actuate* or *influence* another? **3.** What do *prompt* and *stir* imply? **4.** What is it to *excite*? **5.** What do *incite* and *instigate* signify? How do these two words differ? **6.** What do *urge* and *impel* imply? How do they differ in the source of the power exerted? **7.** What do *drive* and *compel* imply, and how do these two words compare with each other?

EXAMPLES.

He was —— by his own violent passions to desperate crime.

And well she can ——.

Fine thoughts are wealth, for the right use of which
Men are and ought to be accountable,
If not to Thee, to those they ——.

INHERENT (page 218).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *inherent* signify? **2.** To what realm of thought does *immanent* belong? What does it signify? How does it differ from *inherent*? Which is applied to the Divine Being? **3.** To what do *congenital*, *innate*, and *inborn* apply as distinguished from *inherent* and *intrinsic*? **4.** With what special reference does *congenital* occur in medical and legal use? **5.** What is the difference in use between *innate* and *inborn*? **6.** What does *inbred* add to the sense of *innate* or *inborn*? **7.** What is *ingrained*?

EXAMPLES.

An —— power in the life of the world.

All men have an —— right to life, liberty, and protection.

He evinced an —— stupidity that seemed almost tantamount to —— idiocy.

Many philosophers hold that God is —— in nature.

Any stable currency must be founded at last upon something, as gold or silver, that has —— value.

The wrongs and abuses which are —— in the very structure and constitution of society as it now exists throughout Christendom.

INJURY (page 219).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what language is *injury* derived? What is its primary meaning? Its[455] derived meaning? **2.** How inclusive a word is *injury*? **3.** From what is *damage* derived, and with what original sense? *detriment*? How do these words compare in actual use? **4.** How does *damage* compare with *loss*? How can a *loss* be said to be partial? **5.** What is *evil*, and with what frequent suggestion? **6.** What is *harm*? *hurt*? How do these words compare with *injury*? **7.** What is *mischief*? How caused, and with what intent?

EXAMPLES.

Nothing can work me ——, except myself; the —— that I sustain I carry about with me, and never am a real sufferer but by my own fault.

Hippolyta, I woo'd thee with my sword,
And won thy love, doing thee ——.

INJUSTICE (page 220).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *injustice*? **2.** How does *wrong* differ from *injustice* in legal use? How in popular use? **3.** What is *iniquity* in the legal sense? in the common sense?

EXAMPLES.

War in men's eyes shall be a monster of ——.

No man can mortgage his —— as a pawn for his fidelity.

Such an act is an —— upon humanity.

INNOCENT (page 220).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *innocent* in the full sense signify? **2.** Is *innocent* positive or negative? How does it compare with *righteous*, *upright*, or *virtuous*? **3.** In what two applications may *immaculate*, *pure*, and *sinless* be used? **4.** With what limited sense is *innocent* used of moral beings? **5.** In what sense is *innocent* applied to inanimate substances?

EXAMPLES.

They are as —— as grace itself.

For blessings ever wait on —— deeds,
And tho a late, a sure reward succeeds.

The wicked flee where no man pursueth, but the —— are bold as a lion.

A daughter, and a goodly babe;
... the queen receives
Much comfort in't: says, *My poor prisoner,*
I am —— as you.

INQUISITIVE (page 221).

QUESTIONS.

1. What are the characteristics of an *inquisitive* person? **2.** Is *inquisitive* ever used in a good sense? What, in that sense, is ordinarily preferred? **3.** What does *curious* signify, and how does it differ from *inquisitive*?[456]

EXAMPLES.

His was an anxiously —— mind, a scrupulously conscientious heart.

Adrian was the most —— man that ever lived, and the most universal inquirer.

I am —— to know the cause of this sudden change of purpose.

INSANITY (page 221).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *insanity* in the widest sense? in its restricted use? Which use is the more frequent? **2.** From what is *lunacy* derived? What did it originally imply? In what sense is it now used? **3.** What is *madness*? **4.** What is *derangement*? *delirium*? **5.** What is the specific meaning of *dementia*? **6.** What is *aberration*? **7.** What is the distinctive meaning of *hallucination*? **8.** What is *monomania*? **9.** What are *frenzy* and *mania*?

EXAMPLES.

Go—you may call it ——, folly—you shall not chase my gloom away.

All power of fancy over reason is a degree of ——.

INTERPOSE (page 222).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *interpose*? **2.** How does *intercede* differ from *interpose*? **3.** What is it to *intermeddle*? How does it differ from *meddle*? from *interfere*? **4.** What do *arbitrate* and *mediate* involve?

EXAMPLES.

Dion, his brother, —— for him and his life was saved.

Nature has —— a natural barrier between England and the continent.

INVOLVE (page 223).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what language is *involve* derived, and with what primary meaning? **2.** How does *involve* compare with *implicate*? **3.** Are these words used in the favorable or the unfavorable sense? **4.** As regards results what is the difference between *include*, *imply*, and *involve*?

EXAMPLES.

Rocks may be squeezed into new forms, bent, contorted, and ——.

An oyster-shell sometimes —— a pearl.

—— in other men's affairs, he went down to their ruin.

JOURNEY (page 223).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what language is *journey* derived? What is its primary meaning? Its present meaning? **2.** What is *travel*? How does it differ from *journey*? **3.** What was the former meaning of *voyage*? its present meaning? **4.** What is a *trip*? a *tour*? **5.** What is the meaning and common use of *passage*? of[457] *transit*? **6.** What is the original meaning of *pilgrimage*? How is it now used?

EXAMPLES.

—— makes all men countrymen.

All the —— of their life is bound in shallows and in miseries.

It were a —— like the path to heaven,
To help you find them.

JUDGE (page 224).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *judge* in the legal sense? **2.** What other senses has the word *judge* in common use? **3.** What is a *referee*, and how appointed? an *arbitrator*? **4.** What is the popular sense of *umpire*? the legal sense? **5.** What is the present use of *arbiter*? **6.** What are the *judges* of the United States Supreme Court officially called?

EXAMPLES.

The end crowns all,
And that old common ——, Time,
Will one day end it.

A man who is no —— of law may be a good —— of poetry.

The —— is only the mouth of law, and the magistrate who punishes is only the hand.

JUSTICE (page 225).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *justice* in governmental relations? in social and personal relations? in matters of reasoning or literary treatment? **2.** To what do *integrity*, *rectitude*, *right*, *righteousness*, and *virtue* apply? What do all these include? **3.** What two contrasted senses has *lawfulness*? **4.** To what does *justness* refer, and in what sense is it used?

EXAMPLES.

—— exalteth a nation.

—— of life is fame's best friend.

He shall have merely ——, and his bond.

KEEP (page 226).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the general meaning of *keep*? **2.** How does *keep* compare with *preserve*? *fulfil*? *maintain*? **3.** What does *keep* imply when used as a synonym of *guard* or *defend*?

EXAMPLES.

These make and —— the balance of the mind.

The good old rule
Sufficeth them,—the simple plan,
That they should take who have the power
And they should —— who can.

—— thy shop, and thy shop will —— thee.

KILL (page 226).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *kill*? **2.** To what are *assassinate*, *execute*, and *murder* restricted? **3.** What is the specific meaning of *murder*? *execute*? *assassinate*? To what class of persons is the latter word ordinarily applied? **4.** What is it to *slay*? **5.** To what is *massacre* limited? With what special meaning is it used? **6.** To what do *butcher* and *slaughter* primarily apply? What is the sense of each when so used? **7.** What is it to *despatch*?

EXAMPLES.

To look into her eyes was to —— doubt.

Two presidents of the United States have been ——.

Hamilton was —— in a duel by Aaron Burr.

The place was carried by storm, and the inhabitants —— without distinction of age or sex.

KIN (page 227).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *kind* compare with *kin*? **2.** What do *kin* and *kindred* denote? **3.** What is *affinity*? How does it differ from *consanguinity*?

EXAMPLES.

A little more than ——, and less than ——.

He held his seat,—a friend to the human ——.

The patient bride, a little sad,
Leaving of home and ——.

KNOWLEDGE (page 227).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *knowledge*? How does it differ from *information*? **2.** What is *perception*? *apprehension*? *cognizance*? **3.** What is *intuition*? **4.** What is *experience*, and how does it differ from *intuition*? **5.** What is *learning*? *erudition*?

EXAMPLES.

—— comes, but wisdom lingers.

The child is continually seeking ——; hence his endless questions.

'Tis the sunset of life gives me mystical ——,
And coming events cast their shadows before.

——s lie at the very foundation of all reasoning.

LANGUAGE (page 228).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the derivation of *language*? What was its original signification? How wide is its present meaning? **2.** As regards the use of words, what does *language* denote in the general and in the restricted sense? **3.** What does *speech* always involve? **4.** Can we speak of the *speech* of animals? of their *language*? **5.** What is a *dialect*? a *barbarism*? an *idiom*? **6.** What is a *patois*? How does it differ from a *dialect*? **7.** What is a *vernacular*?[459]

EXAMPLES.

We must be free or die, who speak the ——
That Shakespeare spake: the faith and morals hold
Which Milton held.

—— is great; but silence is greater.

An infant crying in the night,
An infant crying for the light,
And with no —— but a cry.
Thought leapt out to wed with Thought,
Ere Thought could wed itself with ——.
A Babylonish ——
Which learned pedants much affect.

O! good, my lord, no Latin;
I'm not such a truant since my coming
As not to know the —— I have lived in.

LARGE (page 229).

QUESTIONS.

1. To how many dimensions does *large* apply? How does it differ from *long*? **2.** How does *large* compare with *great*? with *big*?

EXAMPLES.

Courage, the mighty attribute of powers above,
By which those —— in war, are —— in love.

Everything is twice as —— measured on a three-year-old's three-foot scale as on a thirty-year-old's six-foot scale.

And his —— manly voice,
Turning again toward childish treble,
Pipes and whistles in its sound.

LAW (page 229).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the definition of *law* in its ideal? What does it signify in common use? **2.** What are the characteristics of *command* and *commandment*? of an *edict*? **3.** What is a *mandate*? a *statute*? an *enactment*? **4.** In what special connection is *formula* commonly used? *ordinance*? *order*? **5.** What is the meaning of *law* in such an expression as "the *laws* of nature?" What in more strictly scientific use? **6.** What is a *code*? *jurisprudence*? *legislation*? What is an *economy*? Is *law* ever a synonym for these words, and in what way?

EXAMPLES.

Order is Heaven's first ——; and this confest,
Some are, and must be, greater than the rest.
Those he commands move only in ——,
Nothing in love.
His fair large front and eye sublime declared
Absolute ——.

We have strict ——, and most biting ——.

Napoleon gave France the best —— of —— she has ever possessed.[460]

—— is physical, established sequence; intellectual, a condition of intellectual action in order that truth may be reached; and moral, an imperative which determines the right guidance of our higher life.

LIBERTY (page 230).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *freedom*? **2.** What is *liberty* in the primary sense? in the widest sense? **3.** How do *freedom* and *liberty* compare? **4.** How is *independence* used in distinction from *freedom* and *liberty*? **5.** Is *freedom* or *liberty* more freely used in a figurative sense? **6.** What is *license*? How does it compare with *liberty* and *freedom*?

EXAMPLES.

In Rousseau's philosophy —— is conceived of as lawlessness.

When —— from her mountain-height
Unfurled her standard to the air,
She tore the azure robe of night,
And set the stars of glory there.

The —— to go higher than we are is given only when we have fulfilled amply the duty of our present sphere.

—— they mean when they cry ——!
For who loves that must first be wise and good.

LIGHT (page 231).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *light*? **2.** What are the characteristics of a *flame*? a *blaze*? **3.** What is a *flare*? a *flash*? **4.** What is the sense of *glare* and *glow*? How do they differ, and to what are they applied? **5.** To what do *shine* and *sheen* refer? **6.** What do *glimmer*, *glitter*, and *shimmer* denote? **7.** What is *gleam*? a *glitter*? a *sparkle*? *glistening*? **8.** What is *scintillation*? in what two senses used? **9.** To what are *twinkle* and *twinkling* applied? **10.** What is *illumination*? *incandescence*?

EXAMPLES.

From a little spark may burst a mighty ——.

A —— as of another life, my kindling soul received.

It is ——, that enables us to see the differences between things; and it is Christ that gives us ——.

White with the whiteness of the snow,
Pink with faintest rosy ——,
They blossom on their sprays.
Ghastly in the —— of day.
—— in golden coats like images.
So —— a good deed in a naughty world.
There's but the —— of a star
Between a man of peace and war.

LISTEN (page 232).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *hear* signify? What does *listen* add to the meaning of *hear*? **2.** What does *attend* add to the meaning of *listen*? **3.** What does *heed* further imply? **4.** What is the difference between *listen for* and *listen to*?

EXAMPLES.

And ——! how blithe the throstle sings;
He, too, is no mean preacher;
Till I —— and ——
If a step draweth near.
Chill airs and wintry winds! my ear
Has grown familiar with your song;
I —— it in the opening year,
I ——, and it cheers me long.
——, every one
That —— may, unto a tale
That's merrier than the nightingale.

The men lay silent in the tall grass —— for the signal gun that should bid them rise and charge.

LITERATURE (page 233).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *literature* in the most general sense? in more limited sense? **2.** What does *literature*, used absolutely, denote? **3.** How may *literature* include *science*? How is it ordinarily contrasted with *science*?

EXAMPLES.

Wherever —— consoles sorrow or assuages pain; wherever it brings gladness to eyes which fail with wakefulness and tears—there is exhibited in its noblest form the immortal influence of Athens.

—— are lifelong friends.

—— are embalmed minds.

In our own language we have a —— nowhere surpassed, in whose lock no foreign key will ever rust.

LOAD (page 233).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what language is *burden* derived, and with what primary meaning? *load*? **2.** What does *weight* signify? How does it compare with *load* and *burden*? **3.** What are *cargo*, *freight*, and *lading*? **4.** What is the distinctive sense of *pack*?

EXAMPLES.

Bear ye one another's ——.

Wearing all that ——
Of learning lightly like a flower.

The ass will carry his ——, but not a double ——.

LOOK (page 234).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the distinction between *look* and *see*? between these words and *behold*? **2.** What is it to *gaze*? to *glance*? to *stare*? **3.** What do *scan*, *inspect*, and *survey* respectively express, and how are they distinguished from one another? **4.** What element or elements does *watch* add to the meaning of *look*?

EXAMPLES.

It is always well to —— at people when addressing them.

Having eyes they —— not, and having ears hear not.

Then gently —— your brother man,
Still gentler sister woman;
Tho' they may gang a kennin wrang,
To step aside is human.

My soul waiteth for the Lord more than they that —— for the morning.

How peacefully the broad and golden moon
Comes up to —— upon the reaper's toil!
I am monarch of all I ——,
My right there is none to dispute;
From the center all round to the sea,
I am lord of the fowl and the brute.
But, ——, the morn in russet mantle clad,
Walks o'er the dew of yon high eastern hill.

LOVE (page 235).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *affection*? **2.** What may be given as a brief definition of *love*? **3.** Does *affection* apply to persons or things? To what does *love* apply? **4.** What term is preferable to *love* as applying to articles of food and the like? **5.** How does *love* differ from *affection*? from *friendship*?

EXAMPLES.

Peace, commerce, and honest —— with all nations help to form the bright constellation which has gone before us.

And you must love him ere to you he will seem worthy of your ——.

Yet pity for a horse o'erdriven
And —— in which my hound has part
Can hang no weight upon my heart,
In its assumptions up to heaven.
Such —— and unbroken faith
As temper life's worst bitterness.

MAKE (page 236).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the essential idea of *make*? **2.** How is *make* allied with *create*? **3.** How is *make* allied with *compose* or *constitute*? **4.** What are some chief antonyms for *make*? **5.** What are the prepositions chiefly used with *make*, and how employed?[463]

EXAMPLES.

In the beginning God —— the heaven and the earth.

The mason ——, the architect ——.

I assert confidently that it is in the power of one American mother to —— as many gentlemen as she has sons.

Newton discovered, but did not —— the law of gravitation.

The river flows over a bed of pebbles like those that —— the beach and the surrounding plains.

A hermit and a wolf or two
My whole acquaintance ——.

If we were not willing, they possessed the power of —— us to do them justice.

The lessons of adversity sometimes soften and ——, but as often they indurate and pervert.

MARRIAGE (page 236).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *matrimony* specifically denote? **2.** What two senses has *marriage*? **3.** From what language is *wedlock* derived? what is its distinctive use? **4.** What is the meaning of *wedding*? *nuptials*?

EXAMPLES.

Let me not to the —— of true minds admit impediments.

The lover was killed in a duel on the night before the intended ——.

I'll join my eldest daughter, and my joy,
To him forthwith in holy —— bonds.

MASCULINE (page 237).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what is *male* applied? To what *masculine*? **2.** To what does *manly* refer? *manful*? In what connection can *manly* be used where *manful* could not be substituted? **3.** What is the sense of *mannish*? *virile*?

EXAMPLES.

Every virtue in the higher phases of —— character begins in truth and pity or truth and reverence to all womanhood.

One brave and —— struggle
And he gained the solid land
And the cover of the mountains
And the carbines of his band.

So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; —— and female created he them.

MASSACRE (page 237).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *massacre*? *butchery*? *havoc*? **2.** To what does *carnage* especially refer? *slaughter*? **3.** Which of these words can be used of the destruction of life in open and honorable warfare?[464]

EXAMPLES.

Mark! where his —— and his conquests cease!
He makes a solitude and calls it peace!
Forbade to wade through —— to a throne,
And shut the gates of mercy on mankind.

The capture of Port Arthur was followed by a terrible ——.

MEDDLESOME (page 238).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the conduct specially characteristic of a *meddlesome* person? of an *intrusive* person? of one who is *obtrusive*? *officious*? **2.** To what is *obtrusive* chiefly applied? *intrusive*? *officious*? *meddlesome*?

EXAMPLES.

Where sorrow's held —— and turned out,
There wisdom will not enter nor true power,
Nor aught that dignifies humanity.

A —— monkey had been among the papers.

MELODY (page 238).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *harmony*? *melody*? In what special feature does the one differ from the other? **2.** How many parts are required for *harmony*? how many for *melody*? **3.** What is *unison*? **4.** What does *music* include?

EXAMPLES.

Sweetest ——
Are those that are by distance made more sweet.
——, when soft voices die,
Vibrates in the memory.
Ring out ye crystal spheres
And with your ninefold ——
Make up full consort to the angelic ——.

MEMORY (page 239).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *memory* in the special and in the general sense? **2.** What is *remembrance*, and how distinguished from *memory*? **3.** Is *remembrance* voluntary or involuntary? **4.** What is *recollection*, and what does it involve? **5.** What is *reminiscence*? *retrospection*? How do these two words differ?

EXAMPLES.

—— like a purse, if it be over-full that it can not shut, all will drop out of it; take heed of a gluttonous curiosity to feed on many things, lest the greediness of the appetite of thy —— spoil the digestion thereof.

—— wakes with all her busy train,
Swells at my breast, and turns the past to pain.

It is a favorite device of eminent men to devote their old age to writing their ——s, thus quietly living over again a busy or tumultuous life.

MERCY (page 239).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *mercy* in the strictest sense? **2.** To what class is *grace* shown? **3.** To what class are *mercy*, *forgiveness*, and *pardon* extended? **4.** In what wider significations is *mercy* used? **5.** What is *clemency*? *leniency* or *lenity*? How do these words compare with *mercy*?

EXAMPLES.

How would you be,
If He, which is the top of judgment, should
But judge you as you are? O, think on that;
And —— then will breathe within your lips,
Like man new made.

The only protection which the conquered could find was in the moderation, the ——, and the enlarged policy of the conquerors.

To favor sin is to discourage virtue; undue —— to the bad is unkindness to the good.

METER (page 240).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *euphony*? How does it differ from *meter*, *measure*, and *rhythm*? **2.** How are *rhythm* and *meter* produced? **3.** How does *meter* differ from *rhythm*? **4.** What is a *verse* in the strict sense? In what wider sense is the word often used?

EXAMPLES.

—— is a very vague and unscientific term. Each nation considers its own language, each tribe its own dialect, euphonic.

—— may be defined to be a succession of poetical feet arranged in regular order according to certain types recognized as standards, in verses of a determinate length.

We have three principal domains in which —— manifests its nature and power—dancing, music, poetry.

MIND (page 241).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *mind*? How does it differ from *intellect*? **2.** What does *consciousness* include? Is it attended with distinct thinking and willing? **3.** What is the *soul*? **4.** From what is *spirit* used in special contradistinction? How does it differ from *soul*? **5.** What is Paley's definition of *instinct*? **6.** In what contrasted meanings is the word *sense* employed? **7.** What is *thought*?

EXAMPLES.

A great —— will be strong to live, as well as to think.

God is a ——: and they that worship him must worship him in —— and in truth.

MINUTE (page 242).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *minute*? **2.** When is a thing said to be *comminuted*? **3.** How does *fine* differ from *comminuted*? **4.** What terms are applied to an account extended to *minute* particulars? to an examination similarly extended?[466]

EXAMPLES.

No —— room so warm and bright,
Wherein to read, wherein to write.

Life hangs on, held by a —— thread.

An organism so —— as to be visible only under the microscope, yet possessed of life, motion, and seeming intelligence is a source of ceaseless wonder.

MISFORTUNE (page 242).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *misfortune*? Is the sufferer considered blameworthy for it? **2.** What is *calamity*? *disaster*? **3.** In what special sense are the words *affliction*, *chastening*, *trial*, and *tribulation* used? How are these four words discriminated the one from another?

EXAMPLES.

He's not valiant that dares die,
But he that boldly bears ——.

I never knew a man in life who could not bear another's —— perfectly like a Christian.

MODEL (page 243).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *model*? a *pattern*? How are they distinguished from one another? **2.** Which admits of freedom or idealization?

EXAMPLES.

Things done without ——, in their issue
Are to be fear'd.

Be a —— to others, and then all will go well.

Washington and his compeers had no —— of a federal republic with constitutional bonds and limitations.

Moses was admonished, See that thou make all things according to the —— shewed to thee in the mount.

MODESTY (page 244).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *modesty* in the general sense? In what specific sense is the word also used? **2.** What is *bashfulness*? *diffidence*? *coyness*? *reserve*?

EXAMPLES.

For silence and chaste —— is woman's genuine praise, and to remain quiet within the house.

If a young lady has that discretion and ——, without which all knowledge is little worth, she will never make an ostentatious parade of it.

His shrinking —— was often mistaken for a proud ——.

MONEY (page 244).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *money*? *specie*? *cash*? **2.** How does *property* differ from *money*? **3.** What is *bullion*? *capital*?[467]

EXAMPLES.

I am not covetous for ——;
Nor care I who doth feed upon my cost.

For the love of —— is the root of all evil.

He converted all his —— into ready ——.

One who undertakes to do business without —— is likely to be speedily straitened for ——.

—— in reversion may be of far less value than —— in hand.

MOROSE (page 245).

QUESTIONS.

1. By what characteristics are the *morose* distinguished? the *sullen* and *sulky*? **2.** How does *sullen* differ from *sulky*? **3.** What is the meaning of *surly*? **4.** Which of these words denote transient moods and which denote enduring states or disposition?

EXAMPLES.

My master is of —— disposition,
And little recks to find the way to heaven
By doing deeds of hospitality.

A poet who fails in writing, becomes often a —— critic.

He answered with a —— growl.

Achilles remained in his tent in —— inaction.

MOTION (page 246).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *motion*? **2.** How does *motion* differ from *movement*? Give examples. **3.** In what sense is *move* employed? **4.** What is the special sense of *motion* in a deliberative assembly? **5.** Is *action* or *motion* the more comprehensive word? Which is commonly used in reference to the mind?

EXAMPLES.

That —— is best which procures the greatest happiness for the greatest numbers.

There is no death! What seems so is ——;
This life of mortal breath
Is but a suburb of the life elysian,
Whose portal we call Death.

The Copernican theory first clearly explained the —— of the planets.

MUTUAL (page 246).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *common*? *mutual*? *reciprocal*? **2.** Is it correct to speak of a *mutual* friend?

EXAMPLES.

—— friendships will admit of division, one may love the beauty of this, the good humor of that person.[468]

In all true family life there is a —— dependence which binds hearts together.

—— action is the rule in the human body, where every part is alternately means and end, and every action both cause and effect.

NAME (page 247).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *name* in the most general sense? **2.** In the more limited sense, how does a *name* differ from an *appellation*? a *title*? Give instances of the use of these three words. **3.** From what language is *epithet* derived? What is its primary meaning? **4.** What does *epithet* signify in literary use? **5.** What part of speech is an *epithet*? Is it favorable or unfavorable in signification? **6.** What is a *cognomen*? How does it differ from a *surname*? **7.** What is *style* considered as a synonym of *name*?

EXAMPLES.

Those he commands, move only in command
Nothing in love: now does he feel the ——

Hang loose about him, like a giant's robe
Upon a dwarfish thief.

O magnify the Lord with me, and let us exalt his —— together.

NATIVE (page 248).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *native* denote? *natal*? *natural*? **2.** What examples are given in the text of the correct use of these words?

EXAMPLES.

I would advise no child's being taught music who has not a —— aptitude for it.

It was the 4th of July, the —— day of American freedom.

NAUTICAL (page 248).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what is *marine* derived? *maritime*? What do these two words respectively signify? **2.** From what is *naval* derived? *nautical*? How do these words differ in meaning? **3.** How does *ocean*, used adjectively, differ from *oceanic*?

EXAMPLES.

That sea-beast,
Leviathan, which God of all his works
Created hugest that swim the —— stream.

NEAT (page 249).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *clean* signify? **2.** Does *orderly* apply to persons or things, and in what sense? **3.** What does *tidy* denote? **4.** What is the meaning of *neat*? **5.** How does *nice* compare with *neat*? **6.** What is the significance of *spruce*? *trim*? *dapper*?[469]

EXAMPLES.

If he (Jefferson) condescended to turn —— sentences for delicate ears—still, he was essentially an earnest man.

Still to be ——, still to be drest,
As you were going to a feast,
Still to be powder'd, still perfum'd.

NECESSARY (page 250).

QUESTIONS.

1. When is a thing properly said to be *necessary*? **2.** What is the meaning of *essential*? How does it differ from *indispensable*? **3.** With reference to what is a thing said to be *requisite*? How does *requisite* compare with *essential* and *indispensable*? **4.** How do *inevitable* and *unavoidable* compare? To what kind of things are both these words applied? **5.** How do *needed* and *needful* compare with *necessary*?

EXAMPLES.

As you grow ready for it, somewhere or other you will find what is —— for you in a book.

The ideas of space and time are called in philosophy —— ideas.

NECESSITY (page 250).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *necessity*? **2.** What do *need* and *want* imply? How does *need* compare with *want*? **3.** How does *necessity* compare with *need*? **4.** What is an *essential*?

EXAMPLES.

Courage is, on all hands, considered as an —— of high character.

No living man can send me to the shades
Before my time; no man of woman born,
Coward or brave, can shun his ——.

NEGLECT, *n.* (page 251).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *neglect*? *negligence*? How do the two words compare? **2.** What senses has *negligence* that *neglect* has not? **3.** Which of the two words may be used in a passive sense? **4.** What is the legal phrase for a punishable *omission* of duty?

EXAMPLES.

Ah, why
Should we, in the world's riper years, ——
God's ancient sanctuaries, and adore
Only among the crowd.
But, alas, to make
A fixed figure, for the hand of ——
To point his slow unmoving finger at.

NEW (page 252).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *new*? of *modern*? of *recent*? **2.** How does *recent* compare with *new*? **3.** What is the meaning of *novel*? of *fresh*? **4.** To what do *young* and *youthful* distinctively apply?

NIMBLE (page 253).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what does *nimble* properly refer? **2.** To what does *swift* apply? **3.** How does *alert* compare with *nimble*? For what is *alert* more properly a synonym?

EXAMPLES.

Win her with gifts, if she respect not words;
Dumb jewels often, in their silent kind,
More —— than words, do move a woman's mind.

Profound thinkers are often helpless in society, while shallow men have —— and ready minds.

NORMAL (page 253).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *natural* signify? *normal*? Give instances of the distinctive use of the two words. **2.** What does *typical* signify? *regular*? *common*?

EXAMPLES.

He does it with a better grace, but I do it more ——.

The —— round of work may grow monotonous, but it is evidently necessary.

NOTWITHSTANDING (page 254).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the signification of *however* as a conjunction? of *nevertheless*? **2.** Which is the most emphatic word of the group and what does it signify? **3.** How do *yet* and *still* compare with *notwithstanding*? with *but*? **4.** What is the force of *tho* and *altho*? **5.** How does *notwithstanding* as a preposition differ from *despite* or *in spite of*?

EXAMPLES.

—— do thy worst, old Time; despite thy wrong,
My love shall in my verse ever live young.

—— till all graces be in one woman, one woman shall not come in my grace.

There was an immense crowd —— the inclement weather.

OATH (page 254).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is an *oath*? an *affidavit*? How does the *affidavit* differ from the *oath*? **2.** What is an *adjuration*? **3.** What is a *vow*? How does it differ from an *oath*? **4.** Of what words is *oath* a popular synonym? **5.** In what do *anathema*,[471] *curse*, *execration*, and *imprecation* agree? **6.** What is an *anathema*? **7.** Is a *curse* just or unjust? **8.** What does *execration* express? *imprecation*?

EXAMPLES.

Better is it that thou shouldest not ——, than that thou shouldest —— and not pay.

Then how can any man be said
To break an —— he never made?

OBSCURE (page 255).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *obscure*? **2.** How does *obscure* compare with *complicated*? with *complex*? with *abstruse*? with *profound*?

OBSOLETE (page 256).

QUESTIONS.

1. When is a word *obsolete*? When is a word *archaic*? **2.** Is an *old* or *ancient* word necessarily *obsolete*? **3.** What is meant by saying that a word is *rare*? **4.** Is a *rare* word necessarily *obsolete* or an *obsolete* word necessarily *rare*?

EXAMPLES.

When the labors of modern philologists began, Sanscrit was the most —— of all the Aryan languages known to them.

Atlas, we read in —— song,
Was so exceeding tall and strong,
He bore the skies upon his back,
Just as the pedler does his pack.

It is wonderful that so few —— words are found in Shakespeare after the lapse of three centuries.

OBSTINATE (page 256).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *headstrong* differ from *obstinate* and *stubborn*? **2.** How do *obstinate* and *stubborn* differ from each other? Which is commonly applied to the inferior animals and to inanimate things? **3.** What is the meaning of *refractory*? How does it differ from *stubborn*? Which word is applied to metals, and in what sense? **4.** What is the meaning of *obdurate*? *contumacious*? *pertinacious*? **5.** What words do we apply to the *unyielding* character or conduct that we approve?

EXAMPLES.

Is it in heav'n a crime to love too well?
To bear too tender, or too —— a heart,
To act a Lover's or a Roman's part?

"I shall talk of what I like," she said wilfully, clasping her hands round her knees with the gesture of an —— child.

OBSTRUCT (page 257).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the literal meaning of *obstruct*? How does it compare with *hinder*? **2.** How does *obstruct* compare with *impede*? **3.** What does *arrest* signify in the sense here considered?

EXAMPLES.

There is a certain wisdom of humanity which is common to the greatest men with the lowest, and which our ordinary education often labors to silence and ——.

No, no ——ing the vast wheel of time,
That round and round still turns with onward might.

OLD (page 257).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *old* signify? **2.** How do *old* and *ancient* compare? **3.** What contrasted senses has *old*? **4.** What is the special force of *olden*? **5.** In what sense are *gray*, *hoary*, and *olden* used of material objects? **6.** To what is *aged* chiefly applied? **7.** To what do *decrepit*, *gray*, and *hoary* apply, as said of human beings? **8.** To what does *senile* apply? **9.** In what sense is *elderly* used? **10.** What are the primary and derived meanings of *remote*? **11.** What does *venerable* express?

EXAMPLES.

The hills,
Rock-ribbed and —— as the sun,—the vales
Stretching in pensive quietness between;
The —— woods, ...
... and, poured round all,
—— ocean's gray and melancholy waste,—
Are but the solemn decorations all
Of the great tomb of man.
Through the sequestered vale of rural life,
The —— patriarch guileless held
The tenor of his way.

O good —— head which all men knew!

Shall we, shall —— men, like —— trees,
Strike deeper their vile root, and closer cling,
Still more enamored of their wretched soil?

OPERATION (page 258).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *operation* denote? and by what kind of agent is it effected? **2.** What do *performance* and *execution* denote? and by what kind of agents are they effected? **3.** How does *performance* differ from *execution*?

EXAMPLES.

It requires a surgical —— to get a joke well into a Scotch understanding.

His promises were, as he then was, mighty;
But his ——, as he is now, nothing.

ORDER (page 258).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *instruction* imply? *direction*? **2.** How does *order* compare with *direction*? **3.** To what classes of persons are *orders* especially given? How does an *order* in the commercial sense become authoritative? **4.** How does *command* compare with *order*? **5.**

In what sense is *requirement* used? By what authority is a *requirement* made? **6.** In what sense is *prohibition* used? *injunction*?

EXAMPLES.

General Sherman writes in his Memoirs, "I have never in my life questioned or disobeyed an ——."

"Ye shall become like God"—transcendent fate!
That God's —— forgot, she plucked and ate.

OSTENTATION (page 259).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *ostentation*? How does it compare with *boasting*? *display*? *show*? **2.** What is *pomp*? *pageant* or *pageantry*? What do the two latter words suggest, and how do they compare with *pomp*? **3.** From what is *parade* derived? What is its primary meaning? With what implication is it always used in the metaphorical sense? How does *parade* compare with *ostentation*?

EXAMPLES.

The boast of heraldry, the —— of power,
And all that beauty, all that wealth e'er gave.
Await alike the inevitable hour;
The paths of glory lead but to the grave.

The President's salary does not permit ——, nor, indeed, is —— expected of him.

With all his wealth, talent, and learning, he was singularly free from ——.

OVERSIGHT (page 260).

QUESTIONS.

1. In what two contrasted senses is *oversight* used? **2.** How does *superintendence* compare with *oversight*? **3.** With what special reference is *control* used? **4.** What kind of a term is *surveillance*, and what does it imply?

EXAMPLES.

Those able to conduct great enterprises must be allowed wages of ——.

O Friendship, equal poised ——!

Feed the flock of God which is among you, taking the —— thereof not by constraint, but willingly.

OUGHT (page 260).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *ought* properly signify? **2.** How does *ought* compare with *should*? **3.** In what secondary sense is *ought* sometimes used?[474]

EXAMPLES.

He has not a right to do what he likes, but only what he —— with his own, which after all is his own only in a qualified sense.

Age —— have reverence, and —— be worthy to have it.

PAIN (page 261).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *pain*? *suffering*? **2.** How does *distress* rank as compared with *pain* and *suffering*? **3.** What is an *ache*? a *throe*? a *paroxysm*? **4.** What is *agony*? *anguish*?

EXAMPLES.

To each his ——s; all are men,
Condemned alike to groan;
The tender for another's ——,
The unfeeling for his own.
The weariest and most loathed worldly life
That age, ——, penury, and imprisonment
Can lay on nature.

PALLIATE (page 261).

QUESTIONS.

1. How do *cloak* and *palliate* agree in original meaning? How do they differ in the derived senses? **2.** What is it to *extenuate*, and how does that word compare with *palliate*?

EXAMPLES.

Speak of me as I am; nothing ——
Nor aught set down in malice.

We would not dissemble nor —— [our transgressions] before the face of Almighty God, our heavenly Father.

I shall never attempt to —— my own foibles by exposing the error of another.

PARDON, *v.* (page 262).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *pardon*? **2.** To what does *forgive* refer? **3.** How do *pardon* and *forgive* differ in use in accordance with the difference in meaning? **4.** What is it to *remit*? to *condone*? to *excuse*?

EXAMPLES.

How many will say ——,
And find a kind of license in the sound
To hate a little longer!
I —— him, as heaven shall —— me.
To err is human, to ——, divine.

---

[475]

PARDON, *n.* (page 262).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *acquittal*? How does it differ from *pardon* as regards the person acquitted or pardoned? **2.** Is an innocent person ever pardoned? **3.** What is *oblivion*? *amnesty*? *absolution*?

EXAMPLES.

For 'tis sweet to stammer one letter
Of the Eternal's language;—on earth it is called ——.

——, not wrath, is God's best attribute.

—— to the injured does belong,
But they ne'er —— who have done the wrong.

PART, *n.* (page 264).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *part*? **2.** What is a *fragment*? a *piece*? **3.** What do *division* and *fraction* signify? **4.** What is a *portion*? **5.** What is a *share*? an *instalment*? a *particle*? **6.** What do *component*, *constituent*, *ingredient*, and *element* signify? How do they differ from one another? **7.** What is a *subdivision*?

EXAMPLES.

The best —— of a good man's life,
His little, nameless, unremembered acts
Of kindness and of love.
Spirits that live throughout,
Vital in every —— ...
Can not but by annihilating die.

Many cheap houses were built to be sold by ——s.

PARTICLE (page 264).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *particle*? **2.** What does *atom* etymologically signify? What is its meaning in present scientific use? **3.** What is a *molecule*, and of what is it regarded as composed? **4.** What is an *element* in chemistry?

EXAMPLES.

Lucretius held that the universe originated from a fortuitous concourse of ——s.

But thou shalt flourish in immortal youth,
Unhurt amidst the war of ——s,
The wreck of matter and the crush of worlds.

Many aquatic animals, whose food consists of small —— diffused through the water, have an apparatus for creating currents so as to bring such —— within their reach.

PATIENCE (page 265).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *patience*? **2.** What is *endurance*? **3.** How does *patience* compare with *submission* and *endurance*? **4.** To what are *submission* and *resignation*[476] ordinarily applied? **5.** What is *forbearance*? How does it compare with *patience*?

EXAMPLES.

With —— bear the lot to thee assigned,
Nor think it chance, nor murmur at the load,
For know what man calls Fortune is from God.

There is, however, a limit at which —— ceases to be a virtue.

PAY (page 266).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *pay*? *compensation*? *remuneration*? *recompense*? **2.** What is an *allowance*? **3.** What are *wages*? *earnings*? **4.** What is *hire*? what does it imply? **5.** For what is *salary* paid? How does it differ from *wages*? **6.** What is a *fee*, and for what given?

EXAMPLES.

I am not aware that ——, or even favors, however gracious, bind any man's soul.

Our praises are our ——.

Carey, in early life, was a country minister with a small ——.

Laborers are remunerated by ——, and officials by ——.

PEOPLE (page 266).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *community*? a *commonwealth*? **2.** What is a *people*? a *race*? **3.** What is a *state*? a *nation*? **4.** What does *population* signify? *tribe*?

EXAMPLES.

A —— may let a king fall, and still remain a ——, but if a king let his —— slip from him, he is no longer a king.

Questions of —— have played a great part in the politics and wars of the latter half of the nineteenth century, the Germanic ——, the Slavonic ——, the Italian, and the Greek ——s struggling to assert their unity.

PERCEIVE (page 267).

QUESTIONS.

1. What class of things do we *perceive*? **2.** How does *apprehend* differ in scope from *perceive*? **3.** What does *conceive* signify? **4.** How does *comprehend* compare with *apprehend*? with *conceive*?

EXAMPLES.

We may —— the tokens of the divine agency without being able to —— or —— the divine Being.

... Admitted once to his embrace,
Thou shalt —— that thou wast blind before.
O horror! horror! horror! Tongue nor heart
Can not —— nor name thee!

PERFECT (page 268).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *perfect* in the fullest and highest sense? **2.** What is *absolute* in the fullest sense? **3.** What is *perfect* in the limited sense, and in popular language?

EXAMPLES.

We have the idea of a Being infinitely ——, and from this Descartes reasoned that such a being really exists.

'Shall remain'!
Hear you this Triton of the minnows? mark you
His —— 'shall'?

PERMANENT (page 269).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what is *durable* derived? to what class of substances is it applied? **2.** What is *permanent*, and in what connections used? **3.** How does *enduring* compare with *durable*? with *permanent*?

EXAMPLES.

My heart is wax, molded as she pleases, but —— as marble to retain.

A violet in the youth of primy nature,
Forward, not ——, sweet, not ——,
The perfume and suppliance of a minute.

For her merchandise shall be for them that dwell before the Lord, to eat sufficiently, and for —— clothing.

PERMISSION (page 269).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *authority*? **2.** What is *permission*? **3.** How does *permission* compare with *allowance*? **4.** What is a *permit*? **5.** What is *license*? How does it compare with *authority*? with *permission*? **6.** What does *consent* involve?

EXAMPLES.

God is more there than thou; for thou art there
Only by his ——.
Thieves for their robbery have ——,
When judges steal themselves.

Very few of the Egyptians avail themselves of the —— which their religion allows them, of having four wives.

PERNICIOUS (page 270).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what is *pernicious* derived, and what does it signify? **2.** How does *pernicious* compare with *injurious*? **3.** What does *noisome* denote? **4.** What is the distinctive sense of *noxious*? **5.** How does *noxious* compare with *noisome*?

EXAMPLES.

Inflaming wine, —— to mankind.

So bees with smoke, and doves with —— stench,
[478] Are from their hives, and houses, driven away.

The strong smell of sulfur, and a choking sensation of the lungs indicated the presence of —— gases.

PERPLEXITY (page 270).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *perplexity*? *confusion*? How do the two words compare? **2.** How do *bewilderment* and *confusion* compare? **3.** From what does *amazement* result?

EXAMPLES.

Caius.—Vere is mine host *de Jarterre*?
Host.—Here, master doctor, in —— and doubtful dilemma.

There is such —— in my powers
As, after some oration fairly spoke
By a beloved prince, there doth appear
Among the buzzing, pleased multitude.

PERSUADE (page 271).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *convince* denote? How does it differ from the other words of the group? **2.** What is it to *persuade*? **3.** How is *convincing* related to *persuasion*? **4.** How does *coax* compare with *persuade*?

EXAMPLES.

A long train of these practises has at length unwillingly —— me that there is something hid behind the throne greater than the king himself.

He had a head to contrive, a tongue to ——, and a hand to execute any mischief.

PERVERSE (page 272).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the etymological meaning of *perverse*? What does it signify in common use? **2.** What does *petulant* signify? *wayward*?

EXAMPLES.

And you, my lords—methinks you do not well,
To bear with their —— objections.

Whining, purblind, —— boy!

Good Lord! what madness rules in brainsick men
When, for so slight and frivolous a cause,
Such —— emulations shall arise.

PHYSICAL (page 272).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *material* signify? **2.** What idea does *physical* add to that contained in *material*? **3.** To what do *bodily*, *corporal*, and *corporeal* apply? **4.** How do *bodily* and *corporal* differ from *corporeal*? **5.** To what is *corporal* now for the most part limited?[479]

EXAMPLES.

—— punishment is practically abandoned in the greater number of American schools.

Man has two parts, the one —— and earthly, the other immaterial and spiritual.

These races are all clearly differentiated by other —— traits than the color of the skin.

We can not think of substance save in terms that imply —— properties.

PITIFUL (page 273).

QUESTIONS.

1. What was the original meaning of *pitiful*? What does it now signify? **2.** How does *pitiful* differ in use from *pitiable*? **3.** What was the early and what is the present sense of *piteous*?

EXAMPLES.

There is something pleading and —— in the simplicity of perfect ignorance.

The most —— sight one ever sees is a young man doing nothing; the Furies early drag him to his doom.

O, the most —— cry of the poor souls!

PITY (page 273).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *pity*? *sympathy*? **2.** How does *sympathy* in its exercise differ from *pity*? **3.** How does *pity* differ from *mercy*? **4.** How does *compassion* compare with *mercy* and *pity*? **5.** How does *commiseration* differ from *compassion*?

EXAMPLES.

Nothing but the Infinite —— is sufficient for the infinite pathos of human life.

He hallows every heart he once has swayed,
And when his presence we no longer share,
Still leaves —— as a relic there.

PLEAD (page 274).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *plead* in the ordinary sense? in the legal sense? **2.** How do *argue* and *advocate* differ? **3.** What do *beseech*, *entreat*, and *implore* imply? **4.** How does *solicit* compare with the above words?

EXAMPLES.

Speak to me low, my Savior, low and sweet,
...
Lest I should fear and fall, and miss thee so,
Who art not missed by any that ——.

Speaking of the honor paid to good men, is it not time to —— for a reform in the writing of biographies?

PLEASANT (page 275).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *pleasant* add to the sense of *pleasing*? **2.** How does *pleasant* compare with *kind*? **3.** What does *good-natured* signify? How does it compare with *pleasant*?

EXAMPLES.

Like one that wraps the drapery of his couch
About him, and lies down to —— dreams.
When fiction rises —— to the eye,
Men will believe because they love the lie.
... If we must part forever,
Give me but one —— word to think upon.

PLENTIFUL (page 276).

QUESTIONS.

1. What kind of a term is *enough*, and what does it mean? **2.** How does *sufficient* compare with *enough*? **3.** What is *ample*? **4.** To what do *abundant*, *ample*, *liberal*, and *plentiful* apply? **5.** How is *copious* used? *affluent*? *plentiful*? **6.** What does *complete* express? **7.** In what sense are *lavish* and *profuse* employed? **8.** To what is *luxuriant* applied?

EXAMPLES.

My —— joys,
Wanton in fulness, seek to hide themselves
In drops of sorrow.

Can anybody remember when the right sort of men and the right sort of women were ——?

Share the advice betwixt you; if both gain all,
The gift doth stretch itself as 'tis received,
And is —— for both.
He hasted, and opposed the rocky orb
Of tenfold adamant, his —— shield.

POETRY (page 277).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *poetry*? **2.** Does *poetry* involve *rime*? Does it require *meter*? **3.** What is imperatively required beyond *verse*, *rime*, or *meter* to constitute *poetry*?

EXAMPLES.

—— is rhythmical, imaginative language, expressing the invention, taste, thought, passion, and insight of a human soul.

He knew
Himself to sing, and build the lofty ——.
And ever against eating cares,
Lap me in soft Lydian airs,
Married to immortal ——.

POLITE (page 277).

QUESTIONS.

1. What are the characteristics of a *civil* person? What more is found in one who is *polite*? **2.** How does *courteous* compare with *civil*? **3.** What does *courtly* signify? *genteel*? *urbane*? **4.** In what sense is *polished* used? *complaisant*?

EXAMPLES.

She is not —— for the sake of seeming ——, but —— for the sake of being kind.

He was so generally —— that nobody thanked him for it.

Her air, her manners, all who saw admired; —— tho coy, and gentle tho retired.

POVERTY (page 279).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *poverty* strictly denote? What does it signify in ordinary use? **2.** What does *privation* signify? How does it compare with *distress*? **3.** What is *indigence*? *destitution*? *penury*? **4.** What does *pauperism* properly signify? How does it differ from *beggary* and *mendicancy*?

POWER (page 279).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *power*? **2.** Is *power* limited to intelligent agents, or how widely applied? **3.** How does *ability* compare with *power*? **4.** What is *capacity*, and how related to *power* and to *ability*? **5.** What is *competency*? *faculty*? *talent*? **6.** What are *dexterity* and *skill*? How are they related to *talent*? **7.** What is *efficacy*? *efficiency*?

EXAMPLES.

Bismarck was the one great figure of all Europe, with more —— for good or evil than any other human being possessed at that time.

The soul, in its highest sense, is a vast —— for God.

I reckon it is an oversight in a great body of metaphysicians that they have been afraid to ascribe our apprehensions of —— to intuition. In consequence of this neglect, some never get the idea of ——, but merely of succession, within the bare limits of experience.

PRAISE (page 280).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *praise*? By how many is it given, and how is it expressed? **2.** What is *applause*? by how many given? and how expressed? **3.** What is *acclamation*? How does it differ from *applause*? **4.** How does *approbation* differ from *praise*? **5.** What does *approval* add to the meaning of *praise*? **6.** How does *compliment* compare with *praise*? **7.** What is *flattery*?

EXAMPLES.

The —— of listening senates to command,
The threats of pain and ruin to despise,
[482] To scatter plenty o'er a smiling land,
And read their history in a nation's eyes.

—— no man e'er deserved who sought no more.

Gladly then he mixed
Among those friendly powers, who him received
With joy and ——s loud.

PRAY (page 281).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *pray* in the religious sense? **2.** In what lighter and more familiar sense may *pray* be used? Is this latter use now common?

EXAMPLES.

Hesiod exhorted the husbandman to —— for a harvest, but to do so with his hand upon the plow.

I kneel, and then —— her blessing.

PRECARIOUS (page 282).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what is the term *uncertain* applied? **2.** What did *precarious* originally signify? How is it now used, and how does it differ from *uncertain*?

EXAMPLES.

... Thou know'st, great son,
The end of war's ——.

Life seems to be —— in proportion to its value.

PRECEDENT (page 282).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *precedent*? **2.** How does *case* fall short of the meaning of *precedent*? **3.** What is an *obiter dictum*? How does it differ from a *precedent*?

EXAMPLES.

Where freedom broadens slowly down
From —— to ——.

Let us consider the reason of the ——, for nothing is law that is not reason.

PREDESTINATION (page 282).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *predestination*? **2.** How does *fate* differ from *predestination*? **3.** What does *necessity* signify in the philosophical sense? **4.** What is *foreknowledge*? Does it involve *foreordination* or *predestination*?

EXAMPLES.

For —— has wove the thread of life with pain.

All high truth is the union of two contradictories. Thus —— and free-will are opposites; and the truth does not lie between these two, but in a higher reconciling truth which leaves both true.

PREJUDICE (page 283).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *presumption*? On what is it founded? **2.** On what are *prejudice* and *prepossession* based? How do these two words differ from each other?

EXAMPLES.

When the judgment's weak, the —— is strong.

The —— is always in favor of what exists.

His fine features, manly form, and perfect manners awakened an instant —— in his favor.

PRETENSE (page 283).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *pretense*? How does it differ from a *pretext*? **2.** What is a *ruse*?

EXAMPLES.

The claim of a stronger nation to protect a weaker has commonly been but a —— for conquest.

It is not poverty so much as —— that harasses a ruined man—the struggle between a proud mind and an empty purse.

The independent English nobility conspired to make an insurrection, and to support the prince's ——s.

PREVENT (page 284).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the original meaning of *prevent*? **2.** What word is now commonly used in that sense? **3.** What is the meaning of *obviate*? *preclude*? **4.** How is *prevent* at present used?

EXAMPLES.

The contrary supposition is obviously ——.

When the Siberian Pacific Railway is finished, what is there to —— Russia from annexing nearly the whole of China?

There appears to be no way to —— the difficulty.

PREVIOUS (page 285).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *antecedent* denote? **2.** How does *preceding* differ from *antecedent* and *previous*? **3.** How is *anterior* commonly used? *prior*? **4.** Of what is *former* used? What does *former* always imply?

EXAMPLES.

These matters have been fully explained in —— chapters of this work.

The reader will be helped to an understanding of this process by a careful study of the diagram on the —— page.

In —— times many things were attributed to witchcraft that now have a scientific explanation.

PRICE (page 285).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the *cost* of an article? the *price*? **2.** How do *cost* and *price* ordinarily differ? **3.** In what exceptional case may *cost* and *price* agree? **4.** What does *price* always imply? **5.** What is the meaning of *value*? How does market *value* differ from intrinsic *value*? **6.** How does *value* differ from *worth*? **7.** To what are *charge* and *expense* ordinarily applied?

EXAMPLES.

—— is the life-giving power of anything; ——, the quantity of labor required to produce it; ——, the quantity of labor which its possessor will take in exchange for it.

No man can permanently do business by making the —— of his goods the same as their —— to him, however such a method may help him momentarily in an emergency.

PRIDE (page 286).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *pride*? *haughtiness*? *arrogance*? *disdain*? How do these qualities compare with *pride*? **2.** What does *superciliousness* imply according to its etymology? **3.** How do *pride* and *vanity* differ? **4.** What difference is noted between *self-conceit* and *conceit*? **5.** How do *self-respect* and *self-esteem* compare with each other and with the other words of the group?

EXAMPLES.

—— may puff a man up, but never prop him up.

There is nothing —— can so little bear with as —— itself.

—— is as ill at ease under indifference, as tenderness is under the love which it can not return.

PRIMEVAL (page 287).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the derivation and signification of *aboriginal*? *autochthonic*? *primeval*? **2.** What do *prime* and *primary* denote? What special sense has *primary* as in reference to a school? **3.** How is *primordial* used? **4.** What does *primitive* suggest, as in the expressions, the *primitive* church, *primitive* simplicity? **5.** What is *pristine*? **6.** How do *native* and *indigenous* compare?

EXAMPLES.

Thou from —— nothingness didst call
First chaos, then existence, Lord.

The —— inhabitants of America are long since extinct, for even the races whom the white men conquered had themselves supplanted an earlier race.

All the later ages have wondered at and admired the whole-souled consecration of the —— church.

PROFIT (page 288).

QUESTIONS.

1. What are *returns* or *receipts*? **2.** What is *profit* in the commercial sense? What in the intellectual and moral sense? **3.** What is *utility*? **4.** What does *advantage*[485] originally signify? Does it now necessarily imply having or gaining superiority to another person, or securing anything at another's expense? **5.** What is *gain*? *benefit*? *emolument*? **6.** To what does *expediency* especially refer?

EXAMPLES.

Silence has many ——s.

No man can read with —— that which he can not learn to read with pleasure.

Godliness with contentment is great ——.

PROGRESS (page 289).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *progress*? **2.** What do *attainment*, *proficiency*, and *development* imply? **3.** What is *advance*? How does it differ from *progress*?

EXAMPLES.

What is thy —— compared with an Alexander's, a Mahomet's, a Napoleon's?

And dreams in their —— have breath,
And tears, and tortures, and the touch of joy.

Human —— consists in a continual increase in the number of those who, ceasing to live by the animal life alone and to feel the pleasures of sense only, come to participate in the intellectual life also.

PROHIBIT (page 290).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *prohibit*? **2.** How does *forbid* compare with *prohibit*? **3.** How does *prohibit* compare with *prevent*?

EXAMPLES.

Tho much I want which most would have,
Yet still my mind —— to crave.

The laws of England, from the early Plantagenets, sternly —— the conversion of malt into alcohol, excepting a small portion for medicinal purposes.

Human law must —— many things that human administration of law can not absolutely ——; is not this true also of the divine government?

PROMOTE (page 291).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *promote*? **2.** To what does *promote* apply? To persons or things, and in what way?

EXAMPLES.

The outlawed pirate of one year was —— the next to be a governor and his country's representative.

The imperial ensign, which full high ——ed,
Shone like a meteor streaming in the wind.

PROPITIATION (page 291).

QUESTIONS.

1. What did *atonement* originally denote? What is its present theological and popular sense? **2.** What does *expiation* signify? *propitiation*? *satisfaction*?

EXAMPLES.

—— has respect to the bearing which satisfaction has upon sin or the sinner. —— has respect to the effect of satisfaction in removing the judicial displeasure of God.

When a man has been guilty of any sin or folly, I think the best —— he can make is to warn others not to fall into the like.

Redemption implies the complete deliverance from the penalty, power, and all the consequences of sin; —— is used in the sense of the sacrificial work, whereby the redemption from the condemning power of the law was insured.

PROPOSAL (page 291).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does an *offer* or *proposal* do? **2.** What does a *proposition* set forth? **3.** For what is the *proposition* designed? the *proposal*? **4.** In what way does *proposition* come to have nearly the sense of *proposal* in certain uses? **5.** What is a *bid*? **6.** What does an *overture* accomplish? In what special application is the word commonly used?

EXAMPLES.

Garrison emphatically declared, "I can not listen to any —— for a gradual abolition of wickedness."

The theme in confirmation must always admit of being expressed in a logical ——, with subject, predicate, and copula.

PROPOSE (page 292).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *propose* in its most frequent use differ from *purpose*? **2.** How is *propose* used so as to be nearly equivalent to *purpose*? What important difference appears in this latter use?

EXAMPLES.

I know, indeed, the evil of that I ——, but my inclination gets the better of my judgment.

Man ——s, but God disposes.

PROTRACT (page 293).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *protract*? **2.** What is the significance of *defer* and *delay*, and how do these words differ in usage from *protract*? **3.** How does *elongate* differ from *protract*? **4.** Is *protract* ordinarily favorable or unfavorable in sense? **5.** Is *continue* favorable or unfavorable?[487]

EXAMPLES.

Unseen hands ——
The coming of what oft seems close in ken.

Burton, a hypochondriac, wrote the "Anatomy of Melancholy," that marvel of learning, and —— his life to the age of sixty-four.

PROVERB (page 293).

QUESTIONS.

1. In what do the *proverb* and the *adage* agree? In what respects do they differ? **2.** What is an *apothegm*? an *aphorism*? How do these two words differ? **3.** What is a *dictum*? a *saying*? **4.** What is a *precept*? How does it differ from a *motto* or *maxim*? **5.** How do *motto* and *maxim* differ from each other?

EXAMPLES.

The —— must be verified,
That beggars mounted, run their horse to death.

Books, like ——s, receive their chief value from the stamp and esteem of ages through which they have passed.

PRUDENCE (page 294).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the definition of *prudence*? **2.** How does *providence* differ from *prudence*? **3.** How does *care* compare with *prudence* and *providence*? **4.** How is *frugality* related to *prudence*? **5.** How do *foresight* and *forethought* compare with each other, and both with *providence*?

EXAMPLES.

When desp'rate ills demand a speedy cure,
Distrust is cowardice, and —— folly.

With a —— unknown in other parts of Scotland, the peasantry have in most places planted orchards around their cottages.

PURCHASE (page 295).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what language is *purchase* derived? **2.** From what is *buy* derived? **3.** How do *buy* and *purchase* agree in meaning? What single definition would answer for either? **4.** How do *buy* and *purchase* differ in use? Give instances.

EXAMPLES.

I'll give thee England's treasure,
Enough to —— such another island,
So thou wilt make me live.
'Tis gold which ——s admittance.
—— the truth, and sell it not.

PURE (page 296).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *pure* signify? **2.** In what sense are material substances said to be *pure*? **3.** What does *pure* denote in moral and religious use? **4.** How does *pure* compare with *innocent*? with *virtuous*?

EXAMPLES.

Water from melted snow is ——r than rain-water, as it descends through the air in a solid form, incapable of absorbing atmospheric gases.

Stone walls do not a prison make,
Nor iron bars a cage;
Minds —— and quiet take
That for a hermitage.

In every place incense shall be offered unto my name and a —— offering, saith the Lord of hosts.

QUEER (page 297).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *odd*? *singular*? Are *odd* and *singular* precise equivalents? **2.** When is a thing called *strange*? **3.** What is the primary meaning of *peculiar*? With what implication is it now commonly used? **4.** What is the meaning of *eccentric*? How does it differ in use from *odd* or *queer*? **5.** How does *erratic* compare with *eccentric*? **6.** What is the primary meaning of *queer*? its common meaning? **7.** What is the significance of *quaint*? *grotesque*?

EXAMPLES.

A ——, shy man was this pastor—a sort of living mummy, dried up and bleached by Icelandic snows.

In setting a hen, says Grose, the good women hold it an indispensable rule to put an —— number of eggs.

Only a man of undoubted genius can afford to be ——.

The —— architecture of these medieval towns has a strange fascination.

QUICKEN (page 297).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *accelerate*? to *despatch*? **2.** What does the verb *speed* signify? *hasten*? *hurry*? What does *hurry* suggest in addition to the meaning of *hasten*?

EXAMPLES.

The motion of a falling body is continually ——ed.

The muster-place is Lanrick mead!
—— forth the signal! Norman, ——!

The pulsations of the heart are ——ed by exertion.

QUOTE (page 298).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *cite* differ from *quote*? **2.** What is it to *paraphrase*? to *plagiarize*?[489]

EXAMPLES.

A great man —— bravely, and will not draw on his invention when his memory serves him with a word as good.

The Devil can —— Scripture for his purpose.

To appropriate others' thoughts or words mechanically and without credit is to ——.

RACY (page 299).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what does *racy* in the first instance refer? *pungent*? **2.** How does *piquant* differ from *pungent*? **3.** How are these words and the word *spicy* used in reference to literary products?

EXAMPLES.

Pure mother English, —— and fresh with idiomatic graces.

The atmosphere was strangely impregnated with the —— odor of burning peat.

The spruce, the cedar, and the juniper, with their balsamic breath, filled the air with a —— fragrance.

RADICAL (page 299).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the primary meaning of *radical*? **2.** What contrasted senses are derived from this primary meaning?

EXAMPLES.

Timidity is a —— defect in a reformer.

Social and political leaders look to vested interests, and hence are inclined to regard all —— measures as ——.

RARE (page 300).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *unique*? Can any one of a number of things of the same kind be *unique*? **2.** What is the primary meaning of *rare*? What added sense is often blended with this primary meaning? **3.** Is *extraordinary* favorable or unfavorable in meaning?

EXAMPLES.

Nothing is so —— as time.

That which gives to the Jews their —— position among the nations is what we are accustomed to regard as their sacred history.

And what is so —— as a day in June?
Then, if ever, come perfect days.

REACH (page 300).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *reach* in the sense here considered? **2.** What is it to *arrive*? **3.** What does *attain* add to the meaning of *arrive*? What does *gain* add?[490]

EXAMPLES.

And grasping down the boughs
I ——ed the shore.
He gathered the ripe nuts in the fall,
And berries that grew by fence and wall
So high she could not —— them at all.
The heights by great men ——ed and kept
Were not ——ed by sudden flight,
But they, while their companions slept,
Were toiling upward in the night.

It is only in this way that we can hope to —— at truth.

REAL (page 301).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what is *real* derived? What does it mean? **2.** From what is the *real* distinguished? **3.** To what is *actual* opposed? **4.** What shades of difference may be pointed out between the four words *actual*, *real*, *developed*, and *positive*?

EXAMPLES.

In —— life we do not die when all that makes life bright dies to us.

If there was any trouble, —— or impending, affecting those she had served, her place was with them.

This was regarded as proof —— of conspiracy.

REASON, *v.* (page 302).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *reason* about a matter? **2.** From what is *argue* derived, and what does it mean? **3.** What is it to *demonstrate*? to *prove*? How do these two words agree and differ?

EXAMPLES.

There are two ways of reaching truth: by ——ing it out and by feeling it out.

In ——ing, too, the person owned his skill,
For e'en tho vanquished, he could —— still.

A matter of fact may be ——ed by adequate evidence; only a mathematical proposition can be ——ed.

REASON, *n.* (page 302).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *cause* differ from *reason* in the strict sense of each of the two words? **2.** How is *reason* often used so as to be a partial equivalent of *cause*?

EXAMPLES.

No one is at liberty to speak ill of another without a justifiable ——, even tho he knows he is speaking truth.

I am not only witty myself, but the —— that wit is in other men.

Necessity is the —— of tyrants; it is the creed of slaves.

Alas! how light a —— may move
Dissension between hearts that love!

REASONING (page 303).

QUESTIONS.

1. What do *argumentation* and *debate* ordinarily imply? **2.** How does *reasoning* differ from both the above words in this respect? **3.** To what kind of *reasoning* were *argument* and *argumentation* formerly restricted? How widely are the words now applied? **4.** How do *argument* and *argumentation* compare with *reasoning* as regards logical form?

EXAMPLES.

All ——, Inductive or Deductive, is a reaching of the unknown through the known; and where nothing unknown is reached there is no ——.

Early at Bus'ness, and at Hazard late,
Mad at a fox-chase, wise at a ——.

If thou continuest to take delight in idle ——, thou mayest be qualified to combat with the sophists, but never know how to live with men.

REFINEMENT (page 305).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what does *civilization* apply, and what does it denote? **2.** What is *refinement*? **3.** What is the primary meaning of *cultivation*? the derived meaning? **4.** By what word is *cultivation* now largely superseded? **5.** What does *culture* denote?

EXAMPLES.

What is ——? It is the humanization of man in society, the satisfaction for him in society of the true law of human nature.

Giving up wrong pleasure is not self-sacrifice, but self-——.

This refined taste is the consequence of education and habit; we are born only with a capacity of entertaining this ——.

RELIABLE (page 306).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is to be said of the controversy regarding the formation and use of the word *reliable*? **2.** What do *trusty* and *trustworthy* denote? **3.** How does *reliable* compare with these words? **4.** What meaning may *reliable* convey that *trusty* and *trustworthy* would not?

EXAMPLES.

Good lack! quoth he, yet bring it me
My leathern belt likewise,
In which I bear my —— sword,
When I do exercise.

The first voyage to America, of which we have any perfectly —— account, was performed by the Norsemen.

RELIGION (page 307).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the original sense of *piety*? the derived sense? **2.** What is *religion*?[492] What does it include? **3.** What is *worship*? *devotion*? **4.** What is *morality*? *godliness*? *holiness*? **5.** How is *theology* related to *religion*?

EXAMPLES.

—— is man's belief in a being or beings, mightier than himself and inaccessible to his senses, but not indifferent to his sentiments and actions, with the feelings and practises which flow from such belief.

——, whose soul sincere
Fears God, and knows no other fear.

To deny the freedom of the will is to make —— impossible.

Systematic —— may be defined as the substance of the Christian faith in a scientific form.

REND (page 309).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what are *rend* and *tear* usually applied? Which is the stronger word? **2.** In what connection is *rive* used, and in what sense? **3.** What does *lacerate* signify? **4.** How does *mangle* compare with *lacerate*? **5.** What do *burst* and *rupture* signify? Which is the stronger word? When is a steam-boiler said to be *ruptured*? **6.** What does *rip* signify?

EXAMPLES.

Storms do not —— the sail that is furled.

Oh, it offends me to the soul to hear a robustious, periwig-pated fellow —— a passion to tatters, to very rags, to split the ears of the groundlings.

And now a bubble ——s, and now a world.

The first blood shed in the revolutionary struggle; a mere drop in amount, but a deluge in its effects, ——ing the colonies forever from the mother country.

RENOUNCE (page 309).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what is *renounce* derived, and in what sense used? *recant*? *retract*? **2.** What is it to *discard*? **3.** How does *revoke* compare with *recall* in original meaning and in present use? **4.** What is the derivation and the distinctive meaning of *abjure*? **5.** In what sense is *repudiate* used?

EXAMPLES.

On his knees, with his hand on the Bible, Galileo was compelled to —— and curse the doctrine of the movement of the earth.

He adds his soul to every other loss, and by the act of suicide, —— earth to forfeit heaven.

He had no spiritual adviser, no human comforter, and was entirely in the hands of those who were determined that he should —— or die.

REPENTANCE (page 310).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *regret*? **2.** What does *penitence* add to *regret*? **3.** How does *repentance* surpass the meaning of *penitence*, *regret*, *sorrow*, etc.? **4.** What is *compunction*?[493] *contrition*? **5.** What is *remorse*, and how does it compare with *repentance*?

EXAMPLES.

What then? what rests?
Try what —— can: what can it not?
Forgive me, Valentine, if hearty ——
Be a sufficient ransom for offense,
I tender't here.
So writhes the mind —— has riven,
Unmeet for earth, undoomed to heaven,
Darkness above, despair beneath,
Around it flame, within it death.

REPROOF (page 311).

QUESTIONS.

1. Are *blame*, *censure*, and *disapproval* spoken or silent? **2.** Are *comment*, *criticism*, *rebuke*, *reflection*, *reprehension*, and *reproof* expressed or not? **3.** How of *admonition* and *animadversion*? **4.** Are *comment* and *criticism* favorable or unfavorable? Do they imply superiority on the part of commentator or critic? **5.** Do *reflection* and *reprehension* imply such superiority? How are these two words discriminated? **6.** What does *rebuke* literally signify? To what kind of person is a *rebuke* administered? **7.** To what kind of person is *reproof* administered? **8.** What do *rebuke* and *reproof* imply on the part of him who administers them? **9.** What is *animadversion*? *admonition*?

EXAMPLES.

A —— is intolerable when it is administered out of pride or hatred.

The best preservative to keep the mind in health is the faithful —— of a friend.

Open —— is better than secret love.

REPROVE (page 312).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *censure*? to *reprove*? to *reprimand* **2.** How does *admonish* compare with the other words in the group? Is its reference to the past or to the future? **3.** What is it to *reproach*? Does this word imply authority or superiority? **4.** What is the force of *expostulate* and *remonstrate*?

EXAMPLES.

He that oppresseth the poor ——eth his Maker.

Her answer ——ed me; for she said, "I never ask their crimes, for we have all come short."

Moses was ——ed of God when he was about to make the tabernacle: for, see, saith he, that thou make all things according to the pattern shewed to thee in the mount.

This witness is true. Therefore —— them sharply, that they may be sound in the faith.

REST (page 313).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *ease*? *quiet*? *rest*? **2.** What is *recreation*, and how is it related to *rest*? **3.** What is *repose* in the primary, and what in the derived, sense? **4.** How does *repose* compare with *rest*? **5.** What is a *pause*? **6.** How does *sleep* compare with *repose* and *rest*?

EXAMPLES.

Seek out, less often sought than found,
A soldier's grave—for thee the best;
Then look around, and choose thy ground,
And take thy ——.
Her manners had not that ——
That stamps the cast of Vere de Vere.
Shall I not take mine —— in mine inn?

RESTRAIN (page 315).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *restrain*? **2.** How does *constrain* differ from *restrain*? **3.** How does *restrain* differ from *restrict*? **4.** How does *repress* compare with *restrain*? *suppress*?

EXAMPLES.

The English Puritans, ——ed at home, fled for freedom to America.

In no political system is it so necessary to —— the powers of the government as in a democratic state.

REVENGE (page 316).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *revenge*? **2.** How does *retaliation* compare with *revenge*? **3.** What did *vengeance* formerly mean, and what does it now imply? **4.** What is a *requital*? **5.** How do *avenging* and *retribution* differ from *retaliation*, *revenge*, and *vengeance*? **6.** What difference may be noted between *avenging* and *retribution*?

EXAMPLES.

According to the wish of Sulla himself, ... his monument was erected in the Campus Martius, bearing an inscription composed by himself: "No friend ever did me a kindness, no enemy a wrong, without receiving full ——."

By the spirit of ——, as we sometimes express it, we generally understand a disposition, not merely to return suffering for suffering, but to inflict a degree of pain on the person who is supposed to have injured us, beyond what strict justice requires.

In all great religions we find one God, and in all, personal immortality with ——.

REVOLUTION (page 317).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the essential idea of *revolution*? **2.** Does a *revolution* necessarily involve war? **3.** What is *anarchy*? *insubordination*? *sedition*? *revolt*? *rebellion*? **4.** How does *rebellion* differ from *revolution*? **5.** By what class of persons is *insurrection* made? *mutiny*?[495]

EXAMPLES.

——s are not made; they come.

—— to tyrants is obedience to God.

Since government is of God, —— must be contrary to his will.

REVOLVE (page 318).

QUESTIONS.

1. When is a body said to *roll*? to *rotate*? to *revolve*? **2.** In what sense may the earth be said to *revolve*? and in what sense to *rotate*? **3.** What are some of the extended uses of *roll*? **4.** What kind of a word is *turn*, and what is its meaning?

EXAMPLES.

Any bright star close by the pole is seen to —— in a very small circle whose center is the pole itself.

The sun ——s on an axis in the same direction in which the planets —— in their orbits.

Human nature can never rest; once in motion it ——s like the stone of Sisyphus every instant when the resisting force is suspended.

RIGHT (page 319).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *right*? Is it general or special? **2.** What is a *privilege*? an *exemption*? an *immunity*? **3.** What is a *franchise*? a *prerogative*?

EXAMPLES.

Friendship gives no —— to make ourselves disagreeable.

All men are created equal, and endowed with certain inalienable ——s.

RUSTIC (page 321).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what are *rural* and *rustic* alike derived? How do the two words agree in general signification? How are they discriminated in use? **2.** What is the meaning of *pastoral*? of *bucolic*?

EXAMPLES.

How still the morning of the hallowed day!
Mute is the voice of —— labor, hush'd
The plowboy's whistle and the milkmaid's song.
The —— arbor which the summit crowned
Was woven of shining smilax, trumpet-vine,
Clematis, and the wild white eglantine.

When hunting tribes begin to domesticate animals, they enter usually upon the —— stage.

SACRAMENT (page 321).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a religious *service* in the extended sense? **2.** What is a *sacrament*?[496] **3.** What is an *observance*? an *ordinance*? **4.** How do *sacrament* and *ordinance* differ? **5.** What is a *rite*?

EXAMPLES.

Religion will glide by degrees out of the mind unless it be invigorated and reimpressed by external ——s.

Nothing tends more to unite men's hearts than joining together in the same prayers and ——s.

SALE (page 323).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *change* or *exchange*? **2.** What is *barter*? *sale*? **3.** What is a *bargain* in the strict sense? **4.** What is *trade* in the broad and in the limited sense?

EXAMPLES.

Honor sits smiling at the —— of truth.
I'll give thrice as much land to any well-deserving friend,
But in the way of ——, mark ye me,
I'll cavil on the ninth part of a hair.
Stamps God's own name upon a lie just made
To coin a penny in the way of ——.

SAMPLE (page 323).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *sample*? a *specimen*? **2.** How do *sample* and *specimen* compare as indications of the quality of that which they respectively represent?

EXAMPLES.

There is, therefore, in this country, an implied warranty that the goods correspond to the ——.

Curzola is a perfect —— of a Venetian town.

SCHOLAR (page 324).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the primary sense of *scholar*? the derived sense? **2.** What does *pupil* signify? How is it technically used in educational work? **3.** In what sense is *student* employed?

EXAMPLES.

The accent or turn of expression of a single sentence will at once mark a ——.

The State of New York supplies all needed text-books free of charge to the ——s in the public schools.

The ——s in American colleges have taken up athletics with intense enthusiasm.

SCIENCE (page 325).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *science* compare with *knowledge*? **2.** How does *art* compare with *science*? **3.** What two senses of *art* must be discriminated from each other? **4.** In[497] which sense is *art* a system of rules? 5. In which sense does *art* transcend rule?

EXAMPLES.

Beethoven took his —— as seriously as a saint and martyr takes his religion.

Modern —— may be regarded as one vast miracle, whether we view it in relation to the Almighty Being, by whom its objects and its laws were formed, or to the feeble intellect of man, by which its depths have been sounded, and its mysteries explored.

Printing has been aptly termed the —— preservative of all other ——s.

SECURITY (page 326).

QUESTIONS.

1. Of what kind of value or property must an *earnest* consist? **2.** How do *pledge* and *security* differ from *earnest*? **3.** How does *security* differ from *pledge*? **4.** What is *bail*? *gage*?

EXAMPLES.

The —— for a national or state debt is the honesty of its people.

The surest —— of a deathless name
Is the silent homage of thoughts unspoken.
And for an —— of a greater honor,
He bade me, from him, call thee Thane of Cawdor.

SENSATION (page 328).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *sensation*? a *perception*? **2.** How does an *emotion* differ from a *sensation*? **3.** How does the popular term *feeling* compare with *sensation* and *emotion*? **4.** What is a *sense*?

EXAMPLES.

But ——, in the technical and limited sense of the term, is appropriated to the knowledge of material objects, and of the external world. This knowledge is gained or acquired by means of the ——s, and hence, to be more exact, we call it sensible ——, or, more briefly, sense ——.

——s sweet,
Felt in the blood, and felt along the heart.

SENSIBILITY (page 328).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *sensibility* in the philosophical sense? in popular use? **2.** What does *sensitiveness* denote? **3.** What is *susceptibility*? How does it compare with *sensitiveness*? **4.** How are *susceptibility* and *sensitiveness* discriminated in physics?

EXAMPLES.

The —— of the external surface of the body is a special endowment adapted to the elements around and calculated to protect the interior parts from injury.

—— to pleasure is of necessity also —— to pain.

Every mind is in a peculiar state of —— to certain impressions.

SEVERE (page 329).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *severe*? *rigid*? *strict*? **2.** How does *rigorous* compare with *rigid*? **3.** What does *austere* signify? What element is always found in an *austere* character?

EXAMPLES.

In mathematics we arrive at certitude by —— demonstration.

He who the sword of heaven will bear
Should be as holy as ——.

—— law is often —— injustice.

By —— adherence to truth in official dealing with the natives, the English have come to be always believed in India.

SHELTER, *v.* (page 331).

QUESTIONS.

1. When is anything said to be *covered*? **2.** How does *shelter* compare with *cover*? **3.** What does *defend* signify? **4.** What does *guard* imply? **5.** How does *protect* surpass *guard* and *defend*? **6.** What does *shield* signify? How does it compare with *guard* or *defend*? **7.** In what sense is the verb *harbor* commonly used?

EXAMPLES.

He that ——eth his sins shall not prosper, but he that forsaketh them shall find mercy.

Thou who trod'st the billowy sea,
—— us in our jeopardy!
In youth it ——ed me,
And I'll protect it now.

SIN (page 332).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *sin*? **2.** How is *transgression* discriminated from *sin* in the general sense? **3.** What is *crime*? *guilt*? *depravity*?

EXAMPLES.

Commit
The oldest ——s the newest kind of ways.

—— is not punished as an offense against God, but as prejudicial to society.

How —— once harbored in the conscious breast,
Intimidates the brave, degrades the great.

SKETCH (page 334).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *sketch*? How does it compare with *outline*? **2.** In what special connection are *draft* and *plan* used? **3.** How does a mechanical *drawing* differ from a *draft*? **4.** What is a *design*? How does it exceed the meaning of *drawing*? **5.** What is an *outline* in written composition? How does a *sketch*[499] in this sense compare with an *outline*? **6.** What is an *outline* of a sermon technically called? **7.** What is a lawyer's *brief*? How does it compare with an *outline* or *sketch*?

EXAMPLES.

A —— that is without vigor, and in which the anatomy has not been defined, is a bad foundation for a good picture.

A little model the master wrought,
Which should be to the larger ——
What the child is to the man.

SKILFUL (page 335).

QUESTIONS.

1. What does *skilful* signify? **2.** How does *dexterous* compare with *skilful*? **3.** How does a *skilled* compare with a *skilful* workman?

EXAMPLES.

So —— seamen ken the land from far,
Which shows like mists to the dull passenger.

Thousands of —— workmen are thrown into enforced idleness by the strikes and lockouts of every year.

Much that has been received as the work of disembodied spirits has been but the —— sleight of hand of spirits embodied.

SLANDER (page 336).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *slander*? to *defame*? to *libel*? **2.** When is *defame* equivalent to *slander*? When is it equivalent to *libel*? **3.** What is it to *asperse*? to *malign*? to *traduce*? to *disparage*? **4.** How do *slander* and *libel* differ in legal signification from the other words? **5.** Which words of the group apply to open attack in one's presence, and which to attack in his absence?

EXAMPLES.

——ed to death by villains
That dare as well answer a man, indeed,
As I dare take a serpent by the tongue.

If the Scriptures seem to —— knowledge, it is the knowledge that despises virtue.

Challenging each recreant doubter
Who ——ed her spotless name.

SLANG (page 336).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *colloquialism*? **2.** What is *slang* in the primary and ordinary sense? in special senses? **3.** What is a *vulgarism*? **4.** What is *cant* in the sense here considered?

EXAMPLES.

[500]

There is a —— bred of vileness that is never redeemed; there is also a —— that is the vigorous utterance of uncultured wit, that fills a gap in the language and mounts ultimately to the highest places.

A —— is worse than ——, because it bears the ineffaceable stamp of ignorance.

SOCIALISM (page 338).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *socialism*? What term do many of its advocates prefer? **2.** What is *communism*? *anarchism*?

EXAMPLES.

—— in its full sense means the abolition of inheritance, the abolition of the family, the abolition of nationalities, the abolition of religion, the abolition of property.

——, in some modified form, is steadily making its way among thinking men under the guise of cooperation.

—— is the offspring of sore hearts and shallow brains. It is the wisdom of the man who burned down his house because his chimney smoked.

SPONTANEOUS (page 340).

QUESTIONS.

1. When is anything properly said to be *spontaneous*? *voluntary*? *involuntary*? **2.** How do *voluntary* and *involuntary* compare with each other? both with *spontaneous*?

EXAMPLES.

—— is opposed to reflective. Those operations of mind which are continually going on without any effort or intention on our part are *spontaneous*.

No action that is not —— has any merit.

SPY (page 340).

QUESTIONS.

1. In what are the *spy* and the *scout* alike? **2.** In what do they differ? **3.** What are their respective rights in case of capture? **4.** What is an *emissary*?

EXAMPLES.

A daring —— of General Stuart made his way to my quarters, and informed me that General Imboden had planned an attack upon the town.

I had grown uneasy in regard to the disjointed situation of our army and, to inform myself of what was going on, determined to send a —— into the enemy's lines.

STATE, *v.* (page 341).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what is *state* derived? What does it mean? **2.** What is the significance of *assert*? What element is prominent in this word? **3.** What is the relative force of *affirm* and *assert*? *asseverate*? *aver*? *assure*? **4.** What does *affirm* signify in legal use, and how does it differ from *swear*? **5.** What is it to *certify*? **6.** What does *vindicate* signify?[501]

EXAMPLES.

The first condition of intelligent debate is that the question be clearly ——ed.

We —— that the sciences dispose themselves round two great axes of thought, parallel and not unrelated, yet distinct—the natural sciences held together by the one, the moral by the other.

It is impossible for the mind to —— anything of that of which it knows nothing.

STORM (page 343).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the essential meaning of *storm*? **2.** What is a *tempest*?

EXAMPLES.

The —— is hard at hand will sweep away
Thrones, churches, ranks, traditions, customs, marriage.

Were any considerable mass of air to be suddenly transferred from beyond the tropics to the equator, the difference of the rotatory velocity proper to the two situations would be so great as to produce not merely a wind, but a —— of the most destructive violence.

STORY (page 343).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *story*? Is it true or false? **2.** What is an *anecdote*? a *narrative* or *narration*?

EXAMPLES.

There are ——, common to the different branches of the Aryan stock.... They are ancient Aryan ——, ... older than the Odyssey, older than the dispersion of the Aryan race.

——s are relations of detached, interesting particulars.

Fairy ——s have for children an inexhaustible charm.

SUBJECTIVE (page 345).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *subjective*? of *objective*? **2.** How are these words illustrated in the case of a mountain? **3.** What matters are purely *subjective*? **4.** What matters are purely *objective*? **5.** What is meant by saying that an author has a *subjective* or an *objective* style?

EXAMPLES.

Subject therefore, denotes the mind itself; and ——, that which belongs to, or proceeds from, the thinking subject. Object is a term for that about which the knowing subject is conversant, ... while —— means that which belongs to, or proceeds from, the object known, and not from the subject knowing; and thus denotes what is real, in opposition to what is ideal,—what exists in nature, in contrast to what exists merely in the thought of the individual.

SUGGESTION (page 347).

QUESTIONS.

1. In what way does a *suggestion* bring a matter before the mind? **2.** What is an *intimation*? a *hint*? **3.** What are the special characteristics of *insinuation* and *innuendo*?

EXAMPLES.

Behold in the bloom of apples,
And the violets in the sward,
A —— of the old, lost beauty
Of the garden of the Lord!

Time is truly the comforter, at once lessening the tendency to —— of images of sorrow, and softening that very sorrow when the images arise.

An —— is cowardly because it can seldom be directly answered, and the one who makes it can always retreat behind an assumed misconstruction of his words; but the —— is the stab in the back, sneaking as it is malicious.

SUPERNATURAL (page 347).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the original meaning of *supernatural*? of *preternatural*? **2.** What is commonly implied in the use of *preternatural*? **3.** In what sense do some hold a miracle to be *supernatural*? What descriptive term would others prefer? **4.** What is the meaning of *superhuman*? In what secondary sense is it often used?

EXAMPLES.

It was something altogether ——, as when God said, 'Let there be light,' and there was light.

With an imagination of intense vividness and —— activity, Choate was as practical as the most sordid capitalist that ever became an "incarnation of fat dividends."

SUPPORT (page 348).

QUESTIONS.

1. What do *support* and *sustain* alike signify? **2.** How does *sustain* surpass *support* in meaning and force? **3.** What is the force and use of *bear* in this connection? **4.** What is it to *maintain*? **5.** How does *maintain* compare with *support* as to fulness and as to dignity? **6.** What is it to *prop*? What is the limit upon the meaning of this word?

EXAMPLES.

And Cain said, My punishment is great than I can ——.

You take my house when you do take the prop
That doth —— my house.
Can a soul like mine,
Unus'd to power, and form'd for humbler scenes,
—— the splendid miseries of greatness?
While less expert, tho stronger far,
The Gael ——ed unequal war.

SUPPOSE (page 348).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *suppose*? **2.** How does *conjecture* differ from *suppose*? **3.** What does *think* signify in the sense here considered? How does it compare with *conjecture* or *suppose*?

EXAMPLES.

Newton ——ed that if the earth were to be so compressed as to be absolutely without pores, its dimensions might not exceed a cubic inch.

Let it not be ——ed that principles and opinions always go together.

SYNONYMOUS (page 349).

QUESTIONS.

1. Are there any *synonymous* words in the strict sense of the term? **2.** What is meant by *synonymous* words? **3.** What are the two common faults with reference to *synonymous* words or *synonyms*?

EXAMPLES.

The great source of a loose style is the injudicious use of those words termed ——.

To raise, with fitting observances, over the ruins of the historic fortress [Sumter] the —— flag which had waved over it during its first bombardment.

SYSTEM (page 350).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *order,* in the sense here considered? **2.** What does *method* denote? **3.** What is a *system*? **4.** To what does *manner* refer? **5.** To what does *regularity* apply? **6.** Can there be *order* without *regularity* or *regularity* without *order*, and how?

EXAMPLES.

If this be madness, there is —— in it.

A —— is ... an organized body of truth, or truths arranged under one and the same idea, which idea is as the life or soul which assimilates all those truths.

TEACH (page 353).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is it to *teach*? **2.** How does *instruct* surpass *teach* in signification? **3.** What secondary sense has *instruct*? **4.** What is the full meaning of *educate*? **5.** What is it to *train*? **6.** To what is *train* commonly applied where *educate* could not well be used? **7.**

What is it to *discipline*? **8.** What does *nurture* signify, and how does it compare with *educate*?

EXAMPLES.

Plato returned to Athens and began to ——; like his master, he —— without money and without price.

For the most effective mechanical work both mind and hand must be ——ed in childhood.[504]

The Highlanders flocking to him from all quarters, though ill-armed, and worse ——ed, made him undervalue any enemy who, he thought, was yet to encounter him.

TERM (page 354).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the literal meaning of *term*? **2.** Is this meaning retained in the figurative uses of the word? **3.** What are the *articles* of a contract? the *terms* of a contract? **4.** What is a *condition*? **5.** What is a *term* in the logical sense? **6.** How does *term* in ordinary use compare with *word*, *expression*, or *phrase*?

EXAMPLES.

For beauty's acme hath a —— as brief
As the wave's poise before it break in pearl.

But what are these moral sermons [of Seneca]? ——s, nothing but ——s.

The very —— miser is a confession of the misery which attends avarice.

TERSE (page 354).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *short* or *brief*? **2.** What is the derivation and meaning of *concise*? of *condensed*? of *compendious*? **3.** What is the derivation and meaning of *succinct*? of *terse*? **4.** What is the force of *summary*? **5.** What is a *sententious* style? a *pithy* utterance?

EXAMPLES.

With all his lucidity of statement, Hamilton was not always ——.

In most cases it will be found that the Victorian idiom is clearer, but less —— than the corresponding Elizabethan idiom which it has supplanted.

TESTIMONY (page 355).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *testimony*? **2.** How does it compare with *evidence*? **3.** How does a *deposition* differ from an *affidavit*?

EXAMPLES.

The word ——, in legal acceptation, includes all the means by which any alleged matter of fact, the truth of which is submitted to us for investigation, is established or disproved.

As to the fruits of Sodom, fair without, full of ashes within, I saw nothing of them, tho from the —— we have, something of this kind has been produced.

TIME (page 356).

QUESTIONS.

1. To what do *sequence* and *succession* apply? **2.** What does *time* denote? How is it conceived of with reference to events? **3.** How do *duration* and *succession* compare with *time*?[505]

EXAMPLES.

Every event remembered is remembered as having happened in —— past. This gives us the idea in the concrete.... We can now, by a process of abstraction, separate the —— from the event, and we have the abstract idea of *time*.

The —— of each earthquake is measured generally only by seconds, or even parts of a second.

It has been conjectured that our idea of —— is founded upon the conscious —— of sensations and ideas in our own minds.

TOOL (page 358).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a *tool*? **2.** How does *instrument* compare in meaning with *tool*? **3.** What special *tools* are ordinarily called *instruments*? **4.** What is an *implement*? **5.** What is a *utensil*? In what special relations is the word used? **6.** What is an *appliance*? How does *appliance* compare with *tool*? **7.** What is a *mechanism*? **8.** What is a *machine* in the most general sense? in the technical and common use? **9.** What is an *apparatus*? **10.** Which of these words have figurative use? **11.** How are *instrument* and *tool* contrasted in figurative use?

EXAMPLES.

The time is coming when the ——s of husbandry shall supplant the weapons of war.

Mix salt and sand, and it shall puzzle the wisest of men, with his mere natural ——s, to separate all the grains of sand from all the grains of salt.

The pick, stone-saw, wedge, chisel, and other ——s were already in use when the pyramids were built.

TOPIC (page 359).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what is *topic* derived, and with what meaning? **2.** How is *question* used in a similar sense, and why? **3.** Is the general *subject* or *theme* properly known as the *topic*? To what is that name more appropriately given?

EXAMPLES.

My father ... always took care to start some ingenious or useful —— of discourse, which might tend to improve the minds of his children.

One of the most important rules in a deliberative assembly is, that every speaker shall speak to the ——.

The —— of the Iliad is not the war of Troy, but the wrath of Achilles exhibited during and in connection with the war of Troy.

TRANSACT, TRANSACTION (page 360).

QUESTIONS.

1. How does *transact* differ from *do*? **2.** How does *transact* differ from *treat* and *negotiate*? **3.** How does *negotiate* compare with *treat*? **4.** How do *transactions* differ from *proceedings*?[506]

EXAMPLES.

In the first Parliament of James the House of Commons refused for the first time to —— business on a Sunday.

The treaty of peace that closed the war of 1812 had been already —— before the battle of New Orleans was fought.

Any direction of Christ or any direction or act of his apostles respecting the —— of business in the church, is binding upon us, unless such direction or act was grounded upon peculiar circumstances then existing.

TRANSIENT (page 361).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the derivation of *transient* and *transitory*? **2.** How does *transient* differ in signification from *transitory*? **3.** What is the distinctive meaning of *temporary*? **4.** From what is *ephemeral* derived, and with what sense? **5.** How does *ephemeral* differ from *transient* or *transitory*? **6.** What does *ephemeral* suggest besides brevity of time? **7.** What is the derivation and meaning of *fugitive*? **8.** What is the distinctive meaning of *evanescent*?

EXAMPLES.

Mirth is short and ——, cheerfulness fixed and permanent.

Neither gratitude nor revenge had any share in determining his [Charles II.'s] course; for never was there a mind on which both services and injuries left such faint and —— impressions.

A —— chairman is commonly appointed at the opening of a meeting to conduct proceedings till a permanent presiding officer shall be elected.

UNION (page 362).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is *unity*? **2.** What is *union*? **3.** How are *unity* and *union* contrasted? **4.** When may *unity* be predicated of that which is made up of parts?

EXAMPLES.

Behold how good and how pleasant it is for brethren to dwell together in ——.

Out of the —— of Roman and Teutonic elements arose the modern world of Europe.

UTILITY (page 363).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what is *utility* derived, and what is its primary meaning? **2.** How is *utility* discriminated from *use* and *usefulness*? **3.** What is the derivation and primary meaning of *expediency*? **4.** How are *expediency* and *utility* used as regards moral action? Which is the inferior word in such use? **5.** How does *policy* in such use compare with *expediency* and *utility*?

EXAMPLES.

Principle is ever my motto, not ——.

Two words form the key of the Baconian doctrine, —— and progress. The ancient philosophy disdained to be useful, and was content to be stationary.[507]

Justice itself is the great standing —— of civil society, and any departure from it, under any circumstances, rests under the suspicion of being no —— at all.

The fundamental objection to the doctrine of ——, in all its modifications is that taken by Dr. Reid, viz., "that agreeableness and —— are not moral conceptions, nor have they any connection with morality. What a man does merely because it is agreeable is not virtue."

VACANT (page 363).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the meaning of *empty*? of *vacant*? **2.** To what does *vacant* especially refer? **3.** What is the difference between an *empty* house and a *vacant* house? **4.** What is the difference in dignity between the two words? **5.** What is the significance of *void* and *devoid*? **6.** What does *waste* imply? **7.** In what sense is *vacuous* used?

EXAMPLES.

—— heads console with —— sound.
The watch-dog's voice that bay'd the whispering wind
And the loud laugh that spoke the —— mind.

VENAL (page 365).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what is *venal* derived, and with what meaning? *mercenary*? *hireling*? **2.** How are *mercenary* and *venal* discriminated from *hireling*?

EXAMPLES.

The closing quarter of the nineteenth century may be termed the —— era of American politics. Never before has legislation been so universally, so unscrupulously, and unblushingly for sale.

The body of Greeks, immortalized under the name of the Ten Thousand, ... though embarking on a foreign —— service, were by no means outcasts, or even men of extreme poverty.

It is not the hire, but the working only for the hire that makes the ——.

VENERATION (page 366).

QUESTIONS.

1. By what qualities is *awe* inspired? **2.** What elements are present and what lacking in *awe*? **3.** What is *dread* and by what aroused? **4.** How do *reverence* and *veneration* differ from *awe* or *dread*? **5.** How does *adoration* compare with *veneration*?

EXAMPLES.

Man craves an object of ——; and if not supplied with that which God has appointed, will take what offers.

The Italian climate robs age of its ——, and makes it look newer than it is.

VENIAL (page 367).

QUESTIONS.

1. From what is *venial* derived, and what does it signify? **2.** How does *venial* compare with *pardonable*? **3.** How does *excusable* differ from the above words? **4.** What very different word is sometimes confounded with *venial*?

EXAMPLES.

Theft on the part of a starving man is one of the most —— of offenses.

Under all the circumstances, the error was ——.

VERACITY (page 367).

QUESTIONS.

1. Do *truth* and *verity* apply to thought and speech or to persons? **2.** To what does *veracity* apply? *truthfulness*? **3.** Into what two classes may the words in this group of synonyms be divided, and what words will be found in each class?

EXAMPLES.

On a certain confidence in the —— of mankind is founded so much of the knowledge on which we constantly depend, that, without it, the whole system of human things would go into confusion.

If all the world and love were young,
And —— in every shepherd's tongue,
These pretty pleasures might me move
To live with thee and be thy love.

VIRTUE (page 370).

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the prominent idea in *virtue*? **2.** How does *goodness* differ from *virtue*? **3.** Of what relations are *honesty* and *probity* used? **4.** How is *honesty* used in a sense higher than the commercial? **5.** What, in the full sense, is *integrity*? **6.** What is *honor*? **7.** What is *purity*? *duty*? **8.** What do *rectitude* and *righteousness* denote? **9.** To what does *uprightness* especially refer? **10.** What is *virtuousness*?

EXAMPLES.

—— is the fruit of exertion; it supposes conquest of temptation.

In seeing that a thing is right, we see at the same time that it is our —— to do it.

It is true that —— is the best policy; but if this be the motive of honest dealing, there is no real ——.

Where is that chastity of —— that felt a stain like a wound?

INDEX.

Transcriber's Note:

The following linked table, covering the index, has been added for convenience.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M

N O P Q R S T U V W Y Z

- *abandon*, 1
  - " *renounce*, 309
  - " *surrender*, 349
- abandoned, *addicted*, 19
- *abase*, 2
- *abash*, 3
- *abate*, 3
  - " *abolish*, 6
  - " *alleviate*, 33
- *abbreviation*, 4

  - " *abridgment*, 7
- abdicate, *abandon*, 1
- aberration, *insanity*, 221
- *abet*, 4
  - " *help*, 195
- abetter, *accessory*, 13
- abettor, *accessory*, 13
- *abhor*, 5
- abhorrence, *abomination*, 7
  - " *antipathy*, 48
  - " *hatred*, 193
- *abide*, 5
  - " *endure*, 150
- abiding, *permanent*, 269
- ability, *power*, 279
- abject, *pitiful*, 273
- abjure, *abandon*, 1
  - " *renounce*, 309
- able, *adequate*, 21
  - " *clever*, 109
  - " *sagacious*, 322
- abode, *home*, 201
- *abolish*, 6
  - " *cancel*, 92
- abominable, *criminal*, 120
- abominate, *abhor*, 5
- *abomination*, 7
- aboriginal, *primeval*, 287
- abortive, *vain*, 364
- abounding, *plentiful*, 276
- aboveboard, *candid*, 93
- abridge, *restrain*, 315
- *abridgment*, 7
  - " *abbreviation*, 4
- abrogate, *abolish*, 6
  - " *cancel*, 92
- abrupt, *bluff*, 83
  - " *steep*, 342
- absent, *abstracted*, 11
- absent-minded, *abstracted*, 11
- *absolute*, 8
  - " *infinite*, 216
  - " *perfect*, 268
  - " *pure*, 296
- absolution, *pardon*, 262
- *absolve*, 9

  - " *pardon*, 262
- *absorb*, 9
- absorbed, *abstracted*, 11
- abstain, *cease*, 98
- abstemiousness, *abstinence*, 10
- *abstinence*, 10
- *abstract*, *v.*, 10
- abstract, *n.*, *abridgment*, 7
- *abstracted*, 11
- abstruse, *complex*, 112
  - " *mysterious*, 247
  - " *obscure*, 255
- *absurd*, 11
  - " *incongruous*, 214
- abundant, *large*, 229
  - " *plentiful*, 276
- *abuse*, 12
  - " *abomination*, 7
- abutting, *adjacent*, 22
- accede, *agree*, 25
- accelerate, *quicken*, 297
- accept, *agree*, 25
  - " *assume*, 61
  - " *confess*, 114
- acceptable, *delightful*, 126
- accepted, *authentic*, 67
- access, *entrance*, 154
- accessible, *friendly*, 178
- accession, *entrance*, 154
- accessory, *a.*, *auxiliary*, 67
- *accessory*, *n.*, 13
  - " *appendage*, 53
- *accident*, 14
  - " *hazard*, 194
- acclaim, *praise*, 280
- acclamation, *praise*, 280
- accompaniment, *appendage*, 53
  - " *circumstance*, 105
- accompany, *follow*, 174
- accomplice, *accessory*, 13
  - " *associate*, 60
- accomplish, *attain*, 64
  - " *do*, 135
  - " *transact*, 360
- accomplished, *polite*, 277
  - " *skilful*, 335

- accomplishment, *act*, 16
    - " *end*, *n.*, 148
- accord, *v.*, *agree*, 25
- accord, *n.*, *harmony*, 191
- accordance, *harmony*, 191
- accordingly, *therefore*, 355
- accost, *address*, *v.*, 19
- account, *v.*, *calculate*, 90
- account, *n.*, *history*, 200
    - " *reason*, *n.*, 302
    - " *record*, 304
    - " *report*, 311
    - " *story*, 343
- accountability, *duty*, 142
- [510]accouterments, *arms*, 55
    - " *caparison*, 93
- accredited, *authentic*, 67
- accumulate, *amass*, 38
- accurate, *perfect*, 268
- accuse, *arraign*, 56
- accustomed, *addicted*, 19
    - " *usual*, 362
- acerb, *bitter*, 81
- acerbity, *acrimony*, 15
- acetous, *bitter*, 81
- ache, *pain*, 261
- achieve, *attain*, 64
    - " *do*, 135
    - " *get*, 183
    - " *succeed*, 346
- achievement, *act*, 16
    - " *career*, 95
    - " *end*, *n.*, 148
    - " *victory*, 369
    - " *work*, 374
- acid, *bitter*, 81
- acidulated, *bitter*, 81
- acidulous, *bitter*, 81
- acknowledge, *avow*, 69
    - " *confess*, 114
- acknowledgment, *apology*, 51
- *acquaintance*, 15
    - " *knowledge*, 227
- acquiesce, *agree*, 25
- acquire, *attain*, 64
    - " *get*, 183

  - " *purchase*, 295
- acquit, *absolve*, 9
  - " *pardon*, 262
- acquittal, *pardon*, 262
- acrid, *bitter*, 81
- acrimonious, *bitter*, 81
  - " *morose*, 245
- *acrimony*, 15
  - " *enmity*, 152
- act, *v.*, *transact*, 360
- *act*, *n.*, 16
  - " *exercise*, 162
  - " *motion*, 245
  - " *transaction*, 360
- action, *act*, 16
  - " *battle*, 74
  - " *behavior*, 79
  - " *exercise*, 162
  - " *motion*, 245
  - " *operation*, 258
  - " *transaction*, 360
  - " *work*, 374
- *active*, 17
  - " *alert*, 28
  - " *alive*, 30
  - " *industrious*, 215
  - " *nimble*, 253
- activity, *exercise*, 162
- actor, *agent*, 24
  - " *cause*, 98
- actual, *real*, 301
- actualize, *do*, 135
- actuate, *influence*, 217
- *acumen*, 18
- acute, *astute*, 62
  - " *sagacious*, 322
- acuteness, *acumen*, 18
- adage, *proverb*, 293
- adapted, *adequate*, 21
- *add*, 18
- addendum, *appendage*, 53
- *addicted*, 19
- addition, *appendage*, 53
- *address*, *v.*, 19
- *address*, *n.*, 20
  - " *speech*, 339

- adduce, *allege*, 31
- adept, *skilful*, 335
- *adequate*, 21
    - " *plentiful*, 276
- adherence, *attachment*, 63
- *adherent*, 21
- adhesion, *attachment*, 63
- *adhesive*, 22
- adieu, *farewell*, 168
- adit, *entrance*, 154
- *adjacent*, 22
- adjoin, *add*, 18
- adjoining, *adjacent*, 22
- adjunct, *appendage*, 53
- adjuration, *oath*, 254
- administer, *execute*, 161
- admiration, *amazement*, 39
- *admire*, 23
- admission, *entrance*, 154
- admit, *agree*, 25
    - " *allow*, 35
    - " *avow*, 69
    - " *confess*, 114
- admittance, *entrance*, 154
- admixture, *alloy*, 36
- admonish, *reprove*, 312
- admonition, *reproof*, 311
- adolescent, *youthful*, 375
- adoration, *veneration*, 366
- adore, *admire*, 23
    - " *venerate*, 366
- *adorn*, 23
- adroit, *clever*, 109
    - " *skilful*, 335
- adroitness, *address*, *n.*, 20
    - " *dexterity*, 129
- adulation, *praise*, 280
- adulteration, *alloy*, 36
- advance, *v.*, *allege*, 31
    - " *amend*, 41
    - " *promote*, 291
    - " *quicken*, 297
- advance, *n.*, *progress*, 289
- advancement, *progress*, 289
- advantage, *profit*, 288
    - " *utility*, 363

  - " *victory*, 369
- adventure, *accident*, 14
- adventurous, *brave*, 85
- adversary, *enemy*, 151
- adversity, *misfortune*, 242
- advert, *allude*, 36
- advertise, *announce*, 46
- advised, *conscious*, 116
- advocate, *abet*, 4
  - " *plead*, 274
- aerial, *airy*, 27
- affable, *friendly*, 178
- affair, *battle*, 74
  - " *business*, 88
  - [511]" *transaction*, 360
- affect, *assume*, 61
- affectation, *hypocrisy*, 204
  - " *pretense*, 283
- affection, *attachment*, 63
  - " *disease*, 134
  - " *friendship*, 179
  - " *love*, 235
- affectionate, *friendly*, 178
- affidavit, *oath*, 254
  - " *testimony*, 355
- affinity, *analogy*, 43
  - " *kin*, 227
- affirm, *allege*, 31
  - " *state*, 341
- affirmation, *testimony*, 355
- afflict, *chasten*, 103
- affliction, *grief*, 187
  - " *misfortune*, 242
- affix, *add*, 18
- affluent, *plentiful*, 276
- afford, *endure*, 150
- affray, *feud*, 170
- affright, *n.*, *alarm*, 28
  - " *fear*, 168
- affright, *v.*, *frighten*, 180
- *affront*, 24
- age, *time*, 356
- aged, *old*, 257
- agency, *operation*, 258
- *agent*, 24
  - " *cause*, 98

- aggravate, *affront*, 24
- aggregate, *amass*, 38
- aggression, *attack*, *n.*, 64
- aggrieve, *abuse*, 12
- agile, *active*, 17
    - " *nimble*, 253
- agitate, *shake*, 330
- agitation, *storm*, 343
- agnomen, *name*, 247
- agnostic, *skeptic*, 334
- agony, *pain*, 261
- *agree*, 25
- agreeable, *amiable*, 42
    - " *comfortable*, 110
    - " *delightful*, 126
    - " *pleasant*, 275
- agreement, *contract*, 118
    - " *harmony*, 191
- agricultural, *rustic*, 321
- *agriculture*, 25
- aid, *v.*, *abet*, 4
    - " *promote*, 291
- aid, *n.*, *adherent*, 21
    - " *auxiliary*, 67
    - " *help*, 195
    - " *subsidy*, 345
- aider, *adherent*, 21
- ailment, *disease*, 134
- *aim*, 26
    - " *design*, 128
    - " *direction*, 132
    - " *reason*, *n.*, 302
- *air*, 27
    - " *pretense*, 283
- *airy*, 27
- akin, *alike*, 30
- *alarm*, 28
    - " *frighten*, 180
- alarming, *awful*, 70
- *alert*, 28
    - " *active*, 17
    - " *alive*, 30
    - " *nimble*, 253
    - " *vigilant*, 369
- *alien*, *a.* & *n.*, 29
- alienate, *surrender*, 349

- alienation, *insanity*, 221
- *alike*, 30
  - " *synonymous*, 349
- aliment, *food*, 175
- *alive*, 30
- all, *every*, 158
- *allay*, 31
- *allege*, 31
  - " *state*, 341
- *allegiance*, 32
- *allegory*, 33
  - " *fiction*, 170
- *alleviate*, 33
  - " *allay*, 31
- alley, *way*, 372
- *alliance*, 34
  - " *association*, 60
  - " *kin*, 227
- *allot*, 34
  - " *apportion*, 54
- *allow*, 35
  - " *confess*, 114
  - " *endure*, 150
- allowance, *pay*, 266
  - " *permission*, 269
  - " *subsidy*, 345
- *alloy*, 36
- *allude*, 36
- *allure*, 37
  - " *draw*, 138
  - " *persuade*, 271
- ally, *n.*, *accessory*, 13
  - " *adherent*, 21
  - " *associate*, 60
  - " *auxiliary*, 67
- almsgiving, *benevolence*, 80
- *also*, 37
- alter, *change*, *v.*, 100
- alteration, *change*, *n.*, 101
- *alternative*, 38
- altho, *notwithstanding*, *conj.*, 254
- *amass*, 38
- *amateur*, 39
- *amazement*, 39
  - " *perplexity*, 270
- ambiguous, *equivocal*, 155

    - " *obscure*, 255
- *ambition*, 40
- ameliorate, *amend*, 41
- amenable, *docile*, 136
- *amend*, 41
- *amiable*, 42
- amicable, *friendly*, 178
- *amid*, 42
- amidst, *amid*, 42
- amity, *friendship*, 179
    - " *harmony*, 191
- amnesty, *pardon*, 262
- among, *amid*, 42
- amongst, *amid*, 42
- [512]ample, *large*, 229
    - " *plentiful*, 276
- *amplify*, 43
    - " *add*, 18
- amuse, *entertain*, 152
- amusement, *entertainment*, 153
- analogous, *alike*, 30
- *analogy*, 43
- analysis, *abridgment*, 7
- anarchism, *socialism*, 338
- anarchy, *revolution*, 317
- anathema, *oath*, 254
- ancient, *antique*, 48
    - " *obsolete*, 256
    - " *old*, 257
    - " *primeval*, 287
- and, *but*, 89
- anecdote, *story*, 343
- *anger*, 44
    - " *hatred*, 193
- anguish, *anxiety*, 49
    - " *pain*, 261
- animadversion, *reproof*, 311
- animal, *a.*, *brutish*, 87
- *animal*, *n.*, 45
- animate, *alive*, 30
- animated, *airy*, 27
    - " *alive*, 30
    - " *eager*, 142
- animosity, *anger*, 44
    - " *enmity*, 152
    - " *feud*, 170

  - " *hatred*, 193
- annals, *history*, 200
- annex, *add*, 18
- annihilate, *abolish*, 6
  - " *exterminate*, 163
- annotation, *remark*, 308
- *announce*, 46
  - " *speak*, 339
- annoy, *affront*, 24
- annoyance, *abomination*, 7
- annul, *abolish*, 6
  - " *cancel*, 92
- anomalous, *absurd*, 11
  - " *queer*, 297
- *answer*, 46
- antagonism, *antipathy*, 48
  - " *enmity*, 152
- antagonist, *enemy*, 151
- antecedent, *a.*, *previous*, 285
- antecedent, *n.*, *cause*, 98
  - " *precedent*, 282
- antepast, *anticipation*, 48
- anterior, *previous*, 285
- *anticipate*, 47
  - " *abide*, 5
  - " *prevent*, 284
- *anticipation*, 48
- *antipathy*, 48
  - " *hatred*, 193
- antiquated, *antique*, 48
  - " *obsolete*, 256
  - " *old*, 257
- *antique*, 48
  - " *old*, 257
- *anxiety*, 49
  - " *care*, 94
- anxious, *eager*, 142
- any, *every*, 158
- *apathy*, 50
  - " *stupidity*, 344
  - " *stupor*, 344
- aphorism, *proverb*, 293
- *apiece*, 51
- apocalypse, *revelation*, 316
- apologize for, *palliate*, 261
- apologue, *fiction*, 170

- *apology*, 51
    - " *defense*, 123
- apothegm, *proverb*, 293
- appal, *frighten*, 180
- appalling, *awful*, 70
- apparatus, *tool*, 358
- apparel, *dress*, 140
- *apparent*, 52
    - " *clear*, 107
    - " *evident*, 159
- appeal, *address*, *v.*, 19
- *appear*, 52
- appearance *or* semblance of, have, *appear*, 52
- appearance, *air*, 27
- appease, *allay*, 31
- appellation, *name*, 247
- append, *add*, 18
- *appendage*, 53
- appendix, *appendage*, 53
- appetency, *appetite*, 54
    - " *desire*, 128
- *appetite*, 54
    - " *desire*, 128
- applaud, *admire*, 23
- applause, *praise*, 280
- appliance, *tool*, 358
- application, *exercise*, 162
    - " *industry*, 216
- appoint, *allot*, 34
    - " *apportion*, 54
- *apportion*, 54
    - " *allot*, 34
- appreciate, *esteem*, *v.*, 156
- apprehend, *anticipate*, 47
    - " *arrest*, 57
    - " *catch*, 97
    - " *perceive*, 267
- apprehension, *alarm*, 28
    - " *anticipation*, 48
    - " *anxiety*, 49
    - " *fear*, 168
    - " *idea*, 206
    - " *knowledge*, 227
- apprised, *conscious*, 116
- approach, *address*, *v.*, 19
- approach, *n.*, *approximation*, 55

  - " *entrance*, 154
- approbation, *praise*, 280
- appropriate, *abstract*, 10
  - " *apportion*, 54
  - " *assume*, 61
- approval, *praise*, 280
- approve, *admire*, 25
  - " *agree*, 25
- *approximation*, 55
- appurtenance, *appendage*, 53
- apostrophize, *address*, *v.*, 19
- a priori, *transcendental*, 361
- apt, *clever*, 109
  - [513]" *likely*, 232
  - " *sagacious*, 322
  - " *skilful*, 335
- aptitude, *dexterity*, 129
  - " *power*, 279
- arbiter, *judge*, 224
- arbitrary, *absolute*, 8
- arbitrate, *interpose*, 222
- arbitrator, *judge*, 224
- archaic, *obsolete*, 256
- archetype, *example*, 160
  - " *idea*, 206
  - " *ideal*, 206
  - " *model*, 243
- archive, *record*, 304
- archives, *history*, 200
- ardent, *eager*, 142
- ardor, *enthusiasm*, 153
- arduous, *difficult*, 132
- argue, *plead*, 274
  - " *reason*, *v.*, 302
- argument, *reason*, *n.*, 302
  - " *reasoning*, 303
- argumentation, *reasoning*, 303
- arise, *rise*, 319
- arising, *beginning*, 78
- armament, *army*, 56
- armor, *arms*, 55
- *arms*, 55
- *army*, 56
  - " *array*, 57
- *arraign*, 56
- arrangement, *array*, 57

  - " *contract*, 118
- *array*, 57
  - " *army*, 56
  - " *dress*, 140
- *arrest*, 57
  - " *obstruct*, 257
- arrive, *attain*, 64
  - " *reach*, 300
- arrogance, *assurance*, 61
  - " *pride*, 286
- arrogant, *absolute*, 8
  - " *dogmatic*, 137
- arrogate, *assume*, 61
- art, *artifice*, 58
  - " *business*, 88
  - " *science*, 325
- article, *term*, 354
- article of belief, *doctrine*, 136
  - " of faith, *doctrine*, 136
- articulate, *speak*, 339
- *artifice*, 58
  - " *fraud*, 177
- artificer, *artist*, 58
- artisan, *artist*, 58
- *artist*, 58
- artistic, *tasteful*, 352
- artless, *candid*, 93
  - " *rustic*, 321
- as, *because*, 77
- ascend, *rise*, 319
- ascertain, *discover*, 133
- ascribe, *attribute*, *v.*, 65
- ashes, *body*, 84
- *ask*, 59
  - " *plead*, 274
  - " *pray*, 281
- asperity, *acrimony*, 15
- asperse, *slander*, 336
- asphyxia, *stupor*, 344
- aspiration, *aim*, 26
  - " *ambition*, 40
  - " *desire*, 128
- assail, *attack*, *v.*, 63
- assassinate, *kill*, 226
- assault, *v.*, *attack*, *v.*, 63
- assault, *n.*, *attack*, *n.*, 64

- assemblage, *company*, 110
- assemble, *convoke*, 120
- assembly, *company*, 110
- assent, *v.*, *agree*, 25
- assent, *n.*, *faith*, 164
- assert, *allege*, 31
    - " *state*, 341
- assertion, *assurance*, 61
- asseverate, *allege*, 31
    - " *state*, 341
- assiduity, *industry*, 216
- assiduous, *industrious*, 215
- assign, *allege*, 31
    - " *allot*, 34
    - " *apportion*, 54
    - " *attribute*, *v.*, 65
    - " *commit*, 110
- assist, *abet*, 4
    - " *help*, 195
    - " *promote*, 291
- assistant, *accessory*, 13
    - " *auxiliary*, 67
- *associate*, 60
    - " *accessory*, 13
    - " *attribute*, *v.*, 65
- *association*, 60
    - " *acquaintance*, 15
    - " *class*, 106
- assuage, *alleviate*, 33
- *assume*, 61
- assumption, *assurance*, 61
    - " *pretense*, 283
    - " *pride*, 286
- *assurance*, 61
    - " *effrontery*, 144
    - " *faith*, 164
    - " *impudence*, 213
- assure, *confirm*, 114
    - " *state*, 341
- assured, *conscious*, 116
- astonishment, *amazement*, 39
    - " *perplexity*, 270
- *astute*, 62
- as well, *also*, 37
- as well as, *also*, 37
- at ease, *comfortable*, 110

- atheist, *skeptic*, 334
- atom, *part*, 264
    - " *particle*, 264
- at once, *immediately*, 211
- atonement, *propitiation*, 291
- at rest, *comfortable*, 110
- atrocious, *barbarous*, 73
- attach, *add*, 18
- attached, *addicted*, 19
    - " *adjacent*, 22
- *attachment*, 63
    - " *appendage*, 53
    - " *friendship*, 179
    - [514]" *love*, 235
- *attack*, *v.*, 63
- *attack*, *n.*, 64
- *attain*, 64
    - " *get*, 183
    - " *reach*, 300
    - " *succeed*, 346
- attainment, *progress*, 289
    - " *wisdom*, 372
- attempt, *v.*, *endeavor*, *v.*, 149
- attempt, *n.*, *endeavor*, *n.*, 150
- attend, *follow*, 174
    - " *listen*, 232
- attendant, *accessory*, 13
- attention, *care*, 94
    - " *industry*, 216
- attestation, *testimony*, 355
- attire, *dress*, 140
- *attitude*, 65
- attract, *allure*, 37
    - " *draw*, 138
- attraction, *love*, 235
- attractive, *amiable*, 42
    - " *beautiful*, 76
    - " *pleasant*, 275
- *attribute*, *v.*, 65
- *attribute*, *n.*, 66
    - " *characteristic*, 103
    - " *emblem*, 146
- audacity, *effrontery*, 144
    - " *temerity*, 353
- augment, *add*, 18
    - " *amplify*, 43

- *augur*, 66
- august, *awful*, 70
  - " *royal*, 320
- auspicious, *propitious*, 291
- austere, *severe*, 329
- *authentic*, 67
  - " *real*, 301
- author, *cause*, 98
- authoritative, *absolute*, 8
  - " *authentic*, 67
  - " *dogmatic*, 137
- authority, *permission*, 269
  - " *precedent*, 282
- authorization, *permission*, 269
- authorized, *authentic*, 67
- autobiography, *history*, 200
- autochthonic, *primeval*, 287
- autocratic, *absolute*, 8
- automatic, *spontaneous*, 340
- *auxiliary*, 67
  - " *appendage*, 53
- avail, *profit*, 288
  - " *utility*, 363
- *avaricious*, 68
- *avenge*, 69
  - " *requite*, 313
- avenging, *revenge*, 316
- avenue, *way*, 372
- aver, *allege*, 31
  - " *avow*, 69
  - " *state*, 341
- averse, *reluctant*, 308
- aversion, *abomination*, 7
  - " *antipathy*, 48
  - " *hatred*, 193
- avocation, *business*, 88
- avouch, *avow*, 69
  - " *state*, 341
- *avow*, 69
  - " *confess*, 114
  - " *state*, 341
- await, *abide*, 5
- awake, *vigilant*, 369
- award, *allot*, 34
- aware, *conscious*, 116
- awe, *amazement*, 39

  - " *fear*, 168
  - " *veneration*, 366
- *awful*, 70
- *awkward*, 70
  - " *rustic*, 321
- *axiom*, 71
  - " *proverb*, 293

- *babble*, 71
- backbite, *slander*, 336
- backer, *adherent*, 21
- backward, *reluctant*, 308
- backwardness, *modesty*, 244
- bad, *pernicious*, 270
- badinage, *banter*, 73
- baffle, *hinder*, 199
- bail, *security*, 326
- balk, *hinder*, 199
- balky, *restive*, 314
- ban, *v.*, *banish*, 72
- ban, *n.*, *oath*, 254
- bandit, *robber*, 320
- baneful, *pernicious*, 270
- *banish*, 72
  - " *exterminate*, 163
- *bank*, 72
- bankrupt, *break*, 86
- *banter*, 73
  - " *wit*, 373
- bar, *barrier*, 74
  - " *hinder*, 199
  - " *impediment*, 213
  - " *lock*, 234
  - " *obstruct*, 257
- barbarian, *barbarous*, 73
- barbaric, *barbarous*, 73
- barbarism, *language*, 228
- *barbarous*, 73
- barely, *but*, 89
- bargain, *contract*, 118
  - " *sale*, 323
- bargain for, *purchase*, 294
- barricade, *v.*, *obstruct*, 257
- barricade, *n.*, *barrier*, 74
- *barrier*, 74
  - " *boundary*, 84

  - " *impediment*, 213
- barter, *business*, 88
  - " *sale*, 323
- barter for, *purchase*, 295
- base, *brutish*, 87
  - " *pitiful*, 273
- baseless, *vain*, 364
- bashfulness, *modesty*, 244
- bastinado, *beat*, 75
- batter, *beat*, 75
- *battle*, 74
- battle array, *array*, 57
- bawl, *call*, 91
- beach, *bank*, 72
- [515]bear, *abide*, 5
  - " *carry*, 96
  - " *endure*, 150
  - " *support*, 348
- bearing, *air*, 27
  - " *behavior*, 79
  - " *direction*, 132
- bear up under, *endure*, 150
- bear with, *endure*, 150
- beast, *animal*, 45
- beastly, *brutish*, 87
- *beat*, 75
  - " *conquer*, 115
- beauteous, *beautiful*, 76
- *beautiful*, 76
  - " *fine*, 172
  - " *graceful*, 186
- beautify, *adorn*, 23
- *because*, 77
  - " *therefore*, 355
- bechance, *happen*, 188
- become, *make*, 236
- *becoming*, 77
- bedeck, *adorn*, 23
- befall, *happen*, 188
- befitting, *becoming*, 77
- befoul, *defile*, 124
- befriend, *help*, 195
- beg, *ask*, 59
  - " *plead*, 274
  - " *pray*, 281
- beggary, *poverty*, 279

- *beginning*, 78
- beguile, *entertain*, 152
- *behavior*, 79
    - " *air*, 27
- behold, *discern*, 133
    - " *look*, 234
- belabor, *beat*, 75
- beleaguer, *attack*, *v.*, 63
- belief, *doctrine*, 136
    - " *faith*, 164
    - " *fancy*, 167
    - " *idea*, 206
- belittle, *disparage*, 134
- belles-lettres, *literature*, 233
- bellow, *call*, 91
- bemoan, *mourn*, 246
- *bend*, 79
- benefaction, *gift*, 184
- beneficence, *benevolence*, 80
- benefit, *profit*, 288
    - " *utility*, 363
- *benevolence*, 80
    - " *mercy*, 239
- benevolent, *humane*, 203
- benign, *propitious*, 291
- benignant, *amiable*, 42
    - " *humane*, 203
- benignity, *benevolence*, 80
    - " *mercy*, 239
- bequest, *gift*, 184
- bereavement, *misfortune*, 242
- beseech, *ask*, 59
    - " *plead*, 274
    - " *pray*, 281
- beseeming, *becoming*, 77
- beset, *attack*, *v.*, 63
- beside, *adjacent*, 22
- besides, *also*, 37
    - " *but*, 89
    - " *yet*, 374
- besiege, *attack*, *v.*, 63
- bestial, *brutish*, 87
- bestow, *give*, 185
- betide, *happen*, 188
- betoken, *augur*, 66
- better, *amend*, 41

- between, *amid*, 42
- betwixt, *amid*, 42
- bevy, *flock*, 173
- bewail, *mourn*, 246
- bewilder, *abash*, 3
- bewilderment, *amazement*, 39
    - " *perplexity*, 270
- bewitching, *beautiful*, 76
    - " *charming*, 103
- bias, *bend*, 79
    - " *prejudice*, 283
- bid, *pray*, 281
    - " *proposal*, 292
- bide, *abide*, 5
- big, *large*, 229
- bigotry, *fanaticism*, 166
- bills, *money*, 244
- *bind*, 81
- biography, *history*, 200
- birth, *kin*, 227
- biting, *bitter*, 81
- *bitter*, 81
- bitterness, *acrimony*, 15
    - " *enmity*, 152
    - " *feud*, 170
- bizarre, *queer*, 297
- blab, *babble*, 71
- black, *dark*, 122
- blame, *v.*, *condemn*, 113
    - " *reprove*, 312
- blame, *n.*, *reproof*, 311
- blameless, *innocent*, 220
    - " *perfect*, 268
- blanch, *bleach*, 82
- blank, *vacant*, 363
- blaspheming, *oath*, 254
- blasphemy, *oath*, 254
- blaze, *v.*, *burn*, 87
- blaze, *n.*, *fire*, 173
    - " *light*, 231
- *bleach*, 82
- *blemish*, 82
    - " *injury*, 219
- blessed, *happy*, 190
    - " *holy*, 200
- blessedness, *happiness*, 189

- blessing, *mercy*, 239
- blind, *artifice*, 58
- bliss, *happiness*, 189
- blissful, *happy*, 190
- blithe, *happy*, 190
- blithesome, *happy*, 190
- block, *hinder*, 199
- blood, *kin*, 227
- blot, *blemish*, 82
    - " *stain*, 341
- blot out, *cancel*, 92
- *blow*, 83
    - " *misfortune*, 242
- *bluff*, 83
- [516]blunt, *bluff*, 83
- blur, *blemish*, 82
- blurt, *babble*, 71
- blustering, *bluff*, 83
- boast, *ostentation*, 259
- boasting, *ostentation*, 259
- bode, *augur*, 66
- bodily, *physical*, 272
- *body*, 84
- bold, *bluff*, 83
    - " *brave*, 85
- boldness, *assurance*, 61
    - " *effrontery*, 144
    - " *impudence*, 213
    - " *pertness*, 271
- bolt, *lock*, 234
- bondage, *fetter*, 169
- bonds, *fetter*, 169
- bonny, *beautiful*, 76
- bonus, *subsidy*, 345
- books, *literature*, 233
- boon, *gift*, 184
- boorish, *awkward*, 70
    - " *rustic*, 321
- bootless, *vain*, 364
- border, *bank*, 72
    - " *boundary*, 84
- bordering, *adjacent*, 22
- *both*, 84
    - " *every*, 158
- bound, *bank*, 72
    - " *boundary*, 84

  - " *end*, *n.*, 148
- *boundary*, 84
  - " *end*, *n.*, 148
- boundless, *infinite*, 216
- bounteous, *plentiful*, 276
- bountiful, *generous*, 182
  - " *plentiful*, 276
- bounty, *benevolence*, 80
  - " *gift*, 184
  - " *subsidy*, 345
- bourn, *boundary*, 84
- bourne, *boundary*, 84
- bout, *battle*, 74
- bow, *bend*, 79
- box, *blow*, 83
- boyish, *youthful*, 375
- brain, *mind*, 241
- brand, *v.*, *burn*, 87
- brand, *n.*, *blemish*, 82
- brandish, *shake*, 330
- brass, *effrontery*, 144
- *brave*, 85
- bravery, *prowess*, 294
- brawl, *feud*, 170
- *break*, 86
  - " *rend*, 309
- break off, *end*, *v.*, 148
- breastwork, *barrier*, 74
- breathing, *alive*, 30
- breeding, *behavior*, 79
  - " *education*, 143
- bribe, *gift*, 184
- bridle, *restrain*, 315
- bridle-path, *way*, 372
- brief, *a.*, *terse*, 354
  - " *transient*, 361
- brief, *n.*, *sketch*, 334
- brigand, *robber*, 320
- bright, *clever*, 109
  - " *happy*, 190
- brim, *bank*, 72
- bring, *carry*, 96
- bring about, *do*, 135
  - " *make*, 236
- bring into being, *make*, 236
- bring low, *abase*, 2

- bring over, *persuade*, 271
- bring to an end, *cease*, 98
- bring to pass, *do*, 135
    - " *make*, 236
- brink, *bank*, 72
- brisk, *active*, 17
    - " *alert*, 28
    - " *alive*, 30
    - " *nimble*, 253
- briskness, *pertness*, 271
- broad, *large*, 229
- broil, *feud*, 170
- brood, *flock*, 173
- brook, *endure*, 150
- brotherly, *friendly*, 178
- browbeat, *frighten*, 180
- bruise, *beat*, 75
- brush, *cleanse*, 107
- brusk, *bluff*, 83
- brutal, *barbarous*, 73
    - " *brutish*, 87
- brute, *a.*, *brutish*, 87
- brute, *n.*, *animal*, 45
- *brutish*, 87
- buccaneer, *robber*, 320
- bucolic, *rustic*, 321
- buffet, *blow*, 83
- bulky, *large*, 229
- bullion, *money*, 244
- bulwark, *barrier*, 74
    - " *defense*, 123
- bungling, *awkward*, 70
- buoyant, *happy*, 190
- burden, *load*, 233
- burglar, *robber*, 320
- burlesque, *caricature*, 95
    - " *wit*, 373
- *burn*, 87
- burning, *eager*, 142
    - " *fire*, 173
- burst, *break*, 86
    - " *rend*, 309
- bury, *hide*, 197
    - " *immerse*, 212
- *business*, 88
    - " *duty*, 142

  - " *transaction*, 360
  - " *work*, 374
- bustling, *active*, 17
  - " *alert*, 28
  - " *nimble*, 253
- busy, *active*, 17
  - " *industrious*, 215
- *but*, 89
  - " *notwithstanding, conj.*, 254
- butcher, *kill*, 226
- butchery, *massacre*, 237
- buy, *purchase*, 295
- *by*, 89
- by dint of, *by*, 89
- [517]by means of, *by*, 89
- byword, *proverb*, 293

- *cabal*, 90
- cabalistic, *mysterious*, 247
- cackle, *babble*, 71
- cajole, *allure*, 37
- calamity, *accident*, 14
  - " *blow*, 83
  - " *catastrophe*, 97
  - " *misfortune*, 242
- *calculate*, 90
  - " *esteem, v.*, 156
- *call*, 91
  - " *convoke*, 120
- calling, *business*, 88
- callow, *youthful*, 375
- call together, *convoke*, 120
- call upon, *pray*, 281
- calm, *v.*, *allay*, 31
- *calm*, *a.*, 91
- calm, *n.*, *rest*, 313
- calmness, *apathy*, 50
  - " *patience*, 265
  - " *rest*, 313
- calumniate, *slander*, 336
- canaille, *mob*, 243
- *cancel*, 92
- *candid*, 93
  - " *honest*, 202
- candor, *veracity*, 367
- canon, *law*, 229

- cant, *v.*, *tip*, 357
- cant, *hypocrisy*, 204
  - " *slang*, 336
- capability, *power*, 279
- capable, *adequate*, 21
  - " *clever*, 109
- capacious, *large*, 229
- capacity, *power*, 279
- *caparison*, 93
- *capital*, 94
  - " *money*, 244
- capitulate, *surrender*, 349
- caprice, *fancy*, 167
- captivate, *allure*, 37
- captivating, *charming*, 103
- capture, *arrest*, 57
  - " *catch*, 97
- carcass, *body*, 84
- *care*, 94
  - " *anxiety*, 49
  - " *oversight*, 260
  - " *prudence*, 294
- careen, *tip*, 357
- *career*, 95
- careful, *vigilant*, 369
- carefulness, *prudence*, 294
- carelessness, *neglect*, 251
- *caress*, 95
- cargo, *load*, 233
- *caricature*, 95
- carnage, *massacre*, 237
- carnal, *brutish*, 87
- carol, *sing*, 333
- carp at, *disparage*, 134
- carriage, *air*, 27
  - " *behavior*, 79
- *carry*, 96
  - " *convey*, 119
  - " *keep*, 226
  - " *support*, 348
- carry on, *keep*, 226
  - " *transact*, 360
- carry out, *do*, 135
  - " *execute*, 161
- carry through, *do*, 135
- cartel, *contract*, 118

- case, *event*, 158
    - " *precedent*, 282
    - " *sample*, 323
- cash, *money*, 244
- cashier, *break*, 86
- cast, *calculate*, 90
    - " *send*, 327
- cast down, *abase*, 2
- caste, *class*, 106
- castigate, *beat*, 75
    - " *chasten*, 103
- castle, *fortification*, 176
- cast off, *abandon*, 1
- cast up, *add*, 18
- casualty, *accident*, 14
    - " *hazard*, 194
- cataclysm, *catastrophe*, 97
- catalog(ue, *record*, 304
- *catastrophe*, 97
- *catch*, *v.*, 97
    - " *arrest*, 57
- catch, *n.*, *lock*, 234
- causality, *cause*, 98
- causation, *cause*, 98
- cause, *v.*, *make*, 236
- *cause*, *n.*, 98
    - " *design*, 128
    - " *reason*, *n.*, 302
- caustic, *bitter*, 81
- causticity, *acrimony*, 15
- cauterize, *burn*, 87
- caution, *care*, 94
    - " *prudence*, 294
- cautious, *vigilant*, 369
- *cease*, 98
    - " *abandon*, 1
    - " *die*, 130
    - " *end*, *v.*, 148
- ceaseless, *continual*, 117
- cede, *abandon*, 1
    - " *give*, 185
    - " *surrender*, 349
- *celebrate*, 99
    - " *keep*, 226
- celebrity, *fame*, 166
- censure, *v.*, *arraign*, 56

  - " *condemn*, 113
  - " *reprove*, 312
- censure, *n.*, *reproof*, 311
- *center*, 99
- ceremony, *sacrament*, 321
- certain, *authentic*, 67
  - " *conscious*, 116
  - " *real*, 301
- certainty, *demonstration*, 127
- certification, *testimony*, 355
- certified, *conscious*, 116
- certify, *confess*, 114
  - " *state*, 341
- cessation, *end*, *n.*, 148
  - " *rest*, 313
- [518]chaff, *banter*, 73
- chagrin, *v.*, *abash*, 3
- *chagrin*, *n.*, 100
- chains, *fetter*, 169
- chance, *v.*, *happen*, 188
- chance, *accident*, 14
  - " *event*, 158
  - " *hazard*, 194
- *change*, *v.*, 100
  - " *convey*, 119
- *change*, *n.*, 101
  - " *motion*, 245
  - " *sale*, 323
- changeless, *permanent*, 269
- channel, *way*, 372
- chant, *sing*, 333
- char, *burn*, 87
- *character*, 102
  - " *characteristic*, 103
- *characteristic*, 103
- charge, *v.*, *arraign*, 56
  - " *attack*, *v.*, 63
  - " *attribute*, *v.*, 65
- charge, *n.*, *care*, 94
  - " *career*, 95
  - " *load*, 233
  - " *oversight*, 260
  - " *price*, 285
- charitable, *humane*, 203
- charity, *benevolence*, 80
  - " *love*, 235

- *charming*, 103
    - " *amiable*, 42
    - " *beautiful*, 76
- chase, *follow*, 174
    - " *hunt*, 203
- chaste, *pure*, 296
    - " *tasteful*, 353
- *chasten*, 103
- chasten, *reprove*, 312
- chastening, *misfortune*, 242
- chastise, *beat*, 75
    - " *chasten*, 103
- chastisement, *misfortune*, 242
- chastity, *virtue*, 370
- chat, *babble*, 71
    - " *conversation*, 118
    - " *speak*, 339
- chatter, *babble*, 71
    - " *speak*, 339
- chattering, *garrulous*, 181
- cheat, *artifice*, 58
    - " *fraud*, 177
    - " *hypocrite*, 204
- cheating, *fraud*, 177
- check, *v.*, *hinder*, 199
    - " *obstruct*, 257
    - " *reprove*, 312
    - " *restrain*, 315
- check, *n.*, *reproof*, 311
- checkmate, *conquer*, 115
- cheer, *v.*, *cherish*, 104
    - " *entertain*, 152
- cheer, *n.*, *entertainment*, 153
    - " *happiness*, 189
- cheerful, *comfortable*, 110
    - " *happy*, 190
- cheering, *a.*, *happy*, 190
- cheering, *n.*, *praise*, 280
- cheers, *praise*, 280
- cheery, *comfortable*, 110
    - " *happy*, 190
- *cherish*, 104
    - " *support*, 348
- chide, *reprove*, 312
- chiding, *reproof*, 311
- chief city, *capital*, 94

- childish, *youthful*, 375
- childlike, *youthful*, 375
- chimerical, *absurd*, 11
    - " *fanciful*, 167
- chirp, *sing*, 333
- chirrup, *sing*, 333
- chivalric, *brave*, 85
- chivalrous, *brave*, 85
    - " *generous*, 182
- choice, *alternative*, 38
- choke, *obstruct*, 257
- choler, *anger*, 44
- *choose*, 104
- chronicle, *history*, 200
    - " *record*, 304
- chum, *associate*, 60
- churlish, *morose*, 245
- circle, *class*, 106
- circulate, *announce*, 46
- *circumlocution*, 105
- circumscribe, *restrain*, 315
- circumspect, *vigilant*, 369
- circumspection, *care*, 94
    - " *prudence*, 294
- *circumstance*, 105
    - " *event*, 158
- circumstantial, *minute*, 242
- citadel, *fortification*, 176
- cite, *allege*, 31
    - " *arraign*, 56
    - " *quote*, 298
- city, *capital*, 94
- civil, *polite*, 277
- civilization, *refinement*, 305
- claim, *allege*, 31
    - " *assume*, 61
    - " *right*, 319
    - " *state*, 341
- clamor, *call*, 91
- clan, *class*, 106
- clarified, *fine*, 172
- clash, *collision*, 109
- clashing, *collision*, 109
- clasp, *catch*, 97
    - " *lock*, 234
- *class*, 106

- classes, lower, *mob*, 243
- classic, *pure*, 296
- classical, *pure*, 296
- clay, *body*, 84
- clean, *cleanse*, 107
    - " *innocent*, 220
    - " *neat*, 249
    - " *pure*, 296
- cleanly, *neat*, 249
- *cleanse*, 107
    - " *amend*, 41
- clear, *v.*, *absolve*, 9
- *clear*, *a.*, 107
    - " *evident*, 159
    - " *fine*, 172
    - [519]" *innocent*, 220
    - " *pure*, 296
- clear-sighted, *astute*, 62
    - " *sagacious*, 322
- cleave, *rend*, 309
- clemency, *mercy*, 239
- clement, *humane*, 203
    - " *propitious*, 291
- *clever*, 109
    - " *skilful*, 335
- cleverness, *acumen*, 18
    - " *dexterity*, 129
    - " *power*, 279
- cling to, *cherish*, 104
- clique, *class*, 106
- cloak, *v.*, *hide*, 197
    - " *palliate*, 261
- cloak, *n.*, *pretense*, 283
- clog, *v.*, *hinder*, 199
    - " *obstruct*, 257
- clog, *n.*, *impediment*, 213
    - " *load*, 233
- close, *v.*, *end*, *v.*, 148
- close, *a.*, *adjacent*, 22
    - " *avaricious*, 68
    - " *taciturn*, 351
- close, *n.*, *end*, *n.*, 148
- clothes, *dress*, 140
- clothing, *dress*, 140
- cloudy, *obscure*, 255
- clownish, *awkward*, 70

    - " *rustic*, 321
- cloy, *satisfy*, 324
- club, *association*, 60
    - " *class*, 106
- clumsy, *awkward*, 70
- clutch, *catch*, 97
- coadjutor, *accessory*, 13
    - " *associate*, 60
    - " *auxiliary*, 67
- coalition, *alliance*, 34
    - " *union*, 362
- coarse, *bluff*, 83
    - " *brutish*, 87
    - " *large*, 229
    - " *rustic*, 321
- coast, *bank*, 72
- coax, *allure*, 37
    - " *persuade*, 271
- coddle, *caress*, 95
- code, *law*, 229
- coerce, *compel*, 111
- coercive, *absolute*, 8
- cogency, *power*, 279
- cognition, *knowledge*, 227
- cognizance, *knowledge*, 227
- cognizant, *conscious*, 116
- cognomen, *name*, 247
- cohesive, *adhesive*, 22
- coin, *money*, 244
- coincide, *agree*, 25
- coincidence, *analogy*, 43
- coldness, *modesty*, 244
- colleague, *accessory*, 13
    - " *associate*, 60
- collect, *amass*, 38
    - " *convoke*, 120
- collected, *calm*, 91
- collection, *array*, 57
    - " *company*, 110
- collectivism, *socialism*, 338
- *collision*, 109
- colloquialism, *slang*, 336
- colloquy, *conversation*, 118
- color, *pretense*, 283
    - " *stain*, 341
- colossal, *large*, 229

- coma, *stupor*, 344
- combat, *v.*, *attack*, *v.*, 63
- combat, *n.*, *battle*, 74
- combination, *cabal*, 90
  - " *union*, 362
- combine, *agree*, 25
- combustion, *fire*, 173
- come, *reach*, 300
- come after, *follow*, 174
- comely, *beautiful*, 76
  - " *becoming*, 77
- come to an end, *cease*, 98
- come to pass, *happen*, 188
- comfort, *cherish*, 104
  - " *console*, 117
  - " *happiness*, 189
- *comfortable*, 110
- comical, *queer*, 297
- comity, *friendship*, 179
- command, *v.*, *govern*, 185
- command, *n.*, *law*, 229
  - " *order*, 258
  - " *oversight*, 260
- commanding, *absolute*, 8
- commandment, *law*, 229
- commemorate, *celebrate*, 99
- commencement, *beginning*, 78
- commensurate, *adequate*, 21
- comment, *definition*, 124
  - " *remark*, 308
  - " *reproof*, 311
- commentary, *definition*, 124
- commerce, *business*, 88
- comminuted, *fine*, 172
  - " *minute*, 242
- commiseration, *pity*, 273
- *commit*, 110
  - " *do*, 135
- commodious, *comfortable*, 110
  - " *large*, 229
- common, *general*, 181
  - " *mutual*, 246
  - " *normal*, 253
  - " *usual*, 362
- commonplace, *general*, 181
- commonwealth, *people*, 266

- communicate, *announce*, 46
  - " *give*, 185
- communication, *conversation*, 118
- communion, *conversation*, 118
  - " *sacrament*, 321
- communism, *socialism*, 338
- community, *association*, 60
  - " *people*, 266
- commute, *change*, 100
- compact, *a.*, *terse*, 354
- compact, *n.*, *alliance*, 34
  - " *contract*, 118
- companion, *accessory*, 13
  - " *associate*, 60
- companionable, *friendly*, 178
- [520]companionship, *acquaintance*, 15
  - " *association*, 60
- *company*, 110
  - " *association*, 60
  - " *class*, 106
- compare, *contrast*, 118
- comparison, *analogy*, 43
- compass, *attain*, 64
- compassion, *mercy*, 239
  - " *pity*, 273
- compassionate, *humane*, 203
- *compel*, 111
  - " *bind*, 81
  - " *drive*, 140
  - " *influence*, 217
  - " *make*, 236
- compend, *abridgment*, 7
- compendious, *terse*, 354
- compendium, *abridgment*, 7
- compensate, *requite*, 313
- compensation, *pay*, 266
- competency, *power*, 279
- competent, *adequate*, 21
- competition, *ambition*, 40
- competitor, *enemy*, 151
- *complain*, 112
- complaint, *disease*, 134
- complaisant, *friendly*, 178
  - " *polite*, 277
- complete, *v.*, *do*, 135
  - " *end*, *v.*, 148

- complete, *a.*, *perfect*, 268
    - " *plentiful*, 276
    - " *radical*, 299
- completed, *perfect*, 268
- completion, *end*, *n.*, 148
- *complex*, 112
    - " *obscure*, 255
- compliant, *docile*, 136
- complicate, *involve*, 223
- complicated, *complex*, 112
    - " *obscure*, 255
- compliment, *praise*, 280
- comply, *agree*, 25
- component, *part*, 264
- compose, *allay*, 31
    - " *make*, 236
- composed, *calm*, 91
- composite, *complex*, 112
- composition, metrical, *poetry*, 277
- composure, *apathy*, 50
    - " *patience*, 265
- compound, *complex*, 112
- comprehend, *catch*, 97
    - " *perceive*, 267
- comprehension, *knowledge*, 227
- compulsion, *necessity*, 250
- compulsive, *absolute*, 8
- compulsory, *absolute*, 8
- compunction, *repentance*, 310
- compute, *calculate*, 90
- comrade, *associate*, 60
- conceal, *hide*, 197
    - " *palliate*, 261
- concede, *allow*, 35
    - " *confess*, 114
- conceit, *egotism*, 145
    - " *fancy*, 167
    - " *idea*, 206
    - " *pride*, 286
- conceivable, *likely*, 232
- conceive, *perceive*, 267
- concept, *idea*, 206
- conception, *fancy*, 167
    - " *idea*, 206
- concern, *anxiety*, 49
    - " *business*, 88

    - " *care*, 94
- concise, *terse*, 354
- conclave, *cabal*, 90
    - " *company*, 110
- conclude, *cease*, 98
    - " *end, v.*, 148
- conclusion, *end, n.*, 148
    - " *demonstration*, 127
- concomitant, *appendage*, 53
    - " *circumstance*, 105
- concord, *harmony*, 191
- concourse, *company*, 110
    - " *throng*, 356
- concupiscence, *desire*, 128
- concur, *agree*, 25
- concurrence, *harmony*, 191
- concussion, *blow*, 83
    - " *collision*, 109
- *condemn*, 113
    - " *reprove*, 312
- condemnation, *reproof*, 311
- condensed, *terse*, 354
- condition, *cause*, 98
    - " *term*, 354
- condolence, *pity*, 273
- condole with, *console*, 117
- condone, *pardon*, 262
- conduct, *v.*, *keep*, 226
    - " *transact*, 360
- conduct, *n.*, *behavior*, 79
- confabulation, *conversation*, 118
- confederacy, *alliance*, 34
    - " *association*, 60
    - " *cabal*, 90
- confederate, *accessory*, 13
    - " *associate*, 60
    - " *auxiliary*, 67
- confederation, *alliance*, 34
    - " *association*, 60
- confer, *deliberate*, 125
    - " *give*, 185
- conference, *company*, 110
    - " *conversation*, 118
- *confess*, 114
    - " *avow*, 69
- confession, *apology*, 51

- confide, *commit*, 110
- confidence, *assurance*, 61
    - " *faith*, 164
- confine, *restrain*, 315
- confines, *boundary*, 84
- *confirm*, 114
- conflagration, *fire*, 173
- conflict, *battle*, 74
    - " *collision*, 109
- conflicting, *alien*, *a.*, 29
    - " *incongruous*, 214
- conformity, *harmony*, 191
- confound, *abash*, 3
    - " *refute*, 306
- confront, *abide*, 5
- [521]confuse, *abash*, 3
    - " *displace*, 135
- confused, *complex*, 112
    - " *heterogeneous*, 196
- confusion, *amazement*, 39
    - " *chagrin*, 100
    - " *perplexity*, 270
    - " *revolution*, 317
- confute, *refute*, 306
- congé, *farewell*, 168
- congenial, *delightful*, 126
- congenital, *inherent*, 218
- conglomerate, *complex*, 112
    - " *heterogeneous*, 196
- *congratulate*, 115
- congregation, *company*, 110
- congruity, *harmony*, 191
- congruous, *becoming*, 67
- conjectural, *likely*, 232
- conjecture, *v.*, *suppose*, 348
- conjecture, *n.*, *hypothesis*, 204
- conjugal union, *marriage*, 236
- conjunction, *association*, 60
    - " *union*, 362
- conjure, *pray*, 281
- connect, *attribute*, *v.*, 65
- connection, *association*, 60
- connoisseur, *amateur*, 39
- *conquer*, 115
    - " *beat*, 75
- conquest, *victory*, 369

- consanguinity, *kin*, 227
- *conscious*, 116
- consciousness, *mind*, 241
- consecrated, *holy*, 200
- consent, *v.*, *agree*, 25
- consent, *n.*, *harmony*, 191
    - " *permission*, 269
- consent to, *allow*, 35
- *consequence*, 116
    - " *demonstration*, 127
    - " *end*, *n.*, 148
    - " *event*, 158
- consequent, *consequence*, 116
- consider, *calculate*, 90
    - " *deliberate*, 125
    - " *esteem*, 156
- considerable, *large*, 229
- consideration, *friendship*, 179
    - " *prudence*, 294
    - " *reason*, *n.*, 302
- consign, *commit*, 110
- consistency, *harmony*, 191
- *console*, 117
- consonance, *harmony*, 191
- consort, *associate*, 60
- conspicuous, *evident*, 159
- conspiracy, *cabal*, 90
- constancy, *industry*, 216
- constant, *continual*, 117
    - " *permanent*, 269
- consternation, *alarm*, 28
    - " *fear*, 168
- constituent, *part*, 264
- constitute, *make*, 236
- constitution, *character*, 102
- constitutional, *radical*, 299
- constrain, *compel*, 111
    - " *make*, 236
    - " *restrain*, 315
- constraint, *modesty*, 244
- construct, *make*, 236
- consult, *deliberate*, 125
- consume, *absorb*, 9
    - " *burn*, 87
- consummate, *v.*, *do*, 135
- consummate, *a.*, *perfect*, 268

- consummation, *act*, 16
    - " *end, n.*, 148
- contact, *collision*, 109
- *contagion*, 117
- contaminate, *defile*, 124
- contemplate, *look*, 234
- contemptible, *pitiful*, 273
- contend, *reason, v.*, 302
- content, *satisfy*, 324
- contented, *comfortable*, 110
- contention, *feud*, 170
- contentment, *happiness*, 189
- conterminous, *adjacent*, 22
- contest, *battle*, 74
    - " *feud*, 170
- contiguity, *approximation*, 55
- contiguous, *adjacent*, 22
- continence, *abstinence*, 10
- continent, *pure*, 296
- contingency, *accident*, 14
    - " *event*, 158
    - " *hazard*, 194
- *continual*, 117
- continue, *abide*, 5
    - " *protract*, 293
- continuous, *continual*, 117
- *contract*, 118
- contraction, *abbreviation*, 4
- contradictory, *alien, a.*, 29
    - " *incongruous*, 214
- contrariety, *difference*, 131
- contrary, *alien, a.*, 29
    - " *incongruous*, 214
    - " *perverse*, 272
- *contrast, v.*, 118
- contrast, *n.*, *difference*, 131
- contrasted, *alien, a.*, 29
- contriteness, *repentance*, 310
- contrition, *repentance*, 310
- contrivance, *artifice*, 58
- control, *v.*, *govern*, 185
- control, *n.*, *oversight*, 260
- controlling, *absolute*, 8
- controversy, *feud*, 170
- controvert, *reason, v.*, 302
- contumacious, *obstinate*, 256

  - " *rebellious*, 304
- conundrum, *riddle*, 318
- convene, *convoke*, 120
- convenient, *comfortable*, 110
- convention, *company*, 110
- *conversation*, 118
- converse, *conversation*, 118
  - " *speak*, 339
- conversion, *change*, *n.*, 101
- convert, *v.*, *change*, 100
- *convert*, *n.*, 119
- *convey*, 119
  - " *carry*, 96
- convict, *condemn*, 113
- conviction, *faith*, 164
- [522]convince, *persuade*, 271
- convocation, *company*, 110
- *convoke*, 120
- cool, *calm*, 91
- cooperate, *help*, 195
- copious, *plentiful*, 276
- copy, *v.*, *follow*, 174
- copy, *n.*, *duplicate*, 141
  - " *model*, 243
- cordial, *friendly*, 178
- corporal, *physical*, 272
- corporation, *association*, 60
- corporeal, *physical*, 272
- corpse, *body*, 84
- corpuscle, *particle*, 264
- correct, *v.*, *amend*, 41
  - " *chasten*, 103
- correct, *a.*, *perfect*, 268
- correlative, *mutual*, 246
- correspondent, *synonymous*, 349
- corresponding, *synonymous*, 349
- corroborate, *confirm*, 114
- corrupt, *decay*, 122
  - " *defile*, 124
- cost, *expense*, 162
  - " *price*, 285
- costume, *dress*, 140
- coterie, *class*, 106
- coterminous, *adjacent*, 22
- count, *calculate*, 90
- countenance, *abet*, 4

- counteract, *hinder*, 199
- counterpart, *duplicate*, 141
- countless, *infinite*, 216
- countrified, *rustic*, 321
- country, *rustic*, 321
- courage, *fortitude*, 176
    - " *prowess*, 294
- courageous, *brave*, 85
- course, *career*, 95
    - " *direction*, 132
    - " *way*, 372
- court, *address*, *v.*, 19
    - " *caress*, 95
- courteous, *polite*, 277
- courtesy, *address*, *n.*, 20
- courtly, *polite*, 277
- covenant, *contract*, 118
- cover, *hide*, 197
    - " *palliate*, 261
    - " *shelter*, 331
- coveting, *desire*, 128
- covetous, *avaricious*, 68
- covey, *flock*, 173
- cow, *frighten*, 180
- coyness, *modesty*, 244
- crabbed, *morose*, 245
- crack, *v.*, *break*, 86
- crack, *n.*, *blemish*, 82
- craft, *artifice*, 58
    - " *business*, 88
    - " *deception*, 123
- crafty, *astute*, 62
- crave, *ask*, 59
- craving, *appetite*, 54
    - " *desire*, 128
- craziness, *insanity*, 221
- create, *make*, 236
- creator, *cause*, 98
- creature, *animal*, 45
- credence, *faith*, 164
- credible, *likely*, 232
- credit, *faith*, 164
    - " *fame*, 166
- credulity, *fanaticism*, 166
- creed, *faith*, 164
- cremate, *burn*, 87

- crew, *cabal*, 90
- crime, *abomination*, 7
    - " *sin*, 332
- *criminal*, 120
- criminality, *sin*, 332
- critic, *amateur*, 39
- critical, *minute*, 242
- criticism, *reproof*, 311
- croak, *complain*, 112
- crook, *bend*, 79
- crop, *harvest*, 192
- cross off, or out, *cancel*, 92
- crotchety, *queer*, 297
- crowd, *company*, 110
    - " *mob*, 243
    - " *throng*, 356
- crowd out, *displace*, 135
- cruel, *barbarous*, 73
- crush, *break*, 86
    - " *conquer*, 115
- crusty, *morose*, 245
- cry, *call*, 91
- cudgel, *beat*, 75
- cuff, *blow*, 83
- cull, *choose*, 104
- culpable, *criminal*, 120
- cultivated, *polite*, 277
- cultivation, *agriculture*, 25
    - " *education*, 143
    - " *refinement*, 305
- culture, *agriculture*, 25
    - " *education*, 143
    - " *refinement*, 305
- cultured, *polite*, 277
- cunning, *a.*, *astute*, 62
- cunning, *n.*, *artifice*, 58
    - " *deception*, 123
- curb, *govern*, 185
    - " *restrain*, 315
- cure, *recover*, 305
- cured, be, *recover*, 305
- curious, *inquisitive*, 221
    - " *queer*, 297
    - " *rare*, 300
- currency, *money*, 244
- current, *authentic*, 67

- curse, *abomination*, 7
    - " *oath*, 254
- cursing, *oath*, 254
- curve, *bend*, 79
- custody, *fetter*, 169
- custom, *habit*, 187
- customary, *general*, 181
    - " *usual*, 362
- cut, *blow*, 83
- cutting, *bitter*, 81

- *daily*, 121
- dainty, *delicious*, 126
    - " *fine*, 172
    - " *tasteful*, 352
- damage, *abuse*, 12
    - [523]" *injury*, 219
- *danger*, 121
    - " *hazard*, 194
- dangerous, *formidable*, 176
- dapper, *neat*, 249
- daring, *brave*, 85
- *dark*, 122
    - " *mysterious*, 247
    - " *obscure*, 255
- darksome, *obscure*, 255
- dart, *send*, 327
- date, *time*, 356
- daub, *blemish*, 82
- daunt, *abash*, 3
    - " *frighten*, 180
- dauntless, *brave*, 85
- dawdling, *slow*, 337
- day-dream, *dream*, 139
- deadly, *pernicious*, 270
- deal, *apportion*, 54
    - " *sale*, 323
- deathless, *eternal*, 157
- debar, *prohibit*, 290
- debase, *abase*, 2
- debasement, *alloy*, 36
- debate, *v.*, *deliberate*, 125
    - " *reason*, *v.*, 302
- debate, *n.*, *reasoning*, 303
- *decay*, 122
- decease, *die*, 130

- deceit, *deception*, 123
    - " *fraud*, 177
- deceitful, *vain*, 364
- deceitfulness, *deception*, 123
- deceiver, *hypocrite*, 204
- decent, *becoming*, 77
- *deception*, 123
    - " *fraud*, 177
- deck, *adorn*, 23
- declaim, *speak*, 339
- declare, *allege*, 31
    - " *announce*, 46
    - " *avow*, 69
    - " *speak*, 339
    - " *state*, 341
- decline, *abate*, 3
    - " *die*, 130
- decompose, *decay*, 122
- decorate, *adorn*, 23
- decorous, *becoming*, 77
- decoy, *allure*, 37
- decrease, *abate*, 3
- decree, *law*, 229
- decrepit, *old*, 257
- decry, *disparage*, 134
    - " *slander*, 336
- deduction, *demonstration*, 127
    - " *induction*, 215
- deed, *act*, 16
    - " *work*, 374
    - " *transaction*, 360
- deem, *calculate*, 90
    - " *esteem, v.*, 156
    - " *suppose*, 348
- deep, *obscure*, 255
- defacement, *blemish*, 82
- defame, *abuse*, 12
    - " *slander*, 336
- default, *neglect*, 251
- defeat, *beat*, 75
    - " *conquer*, 115
- defect, *blemish*, 82
- defend, *keep*, 226
    - " *shelter*, 331
- *defense*, 123
    - " *apology*, 51

- defer, *protract*, 293
- *defile*, 124
    - " *abuse*, 12
- *definition*, 124
- deflect, *bend*, 79
- deformity, *blemish*, 82
- deft, *skilful*, 335
- degrade, *abase*, 2
- deist, *skeptic*, 334
- delay, *hinder*, 199
    - " *protract*, 293
- delaying, *slow*, 337
- delegate, *v.*, *send*, 327
- *delegate*, *n.*, 125
- deleterious, *pernicious*, 270
- *deliberate*, *v.*, 125
- deliberate, *a.*, *slow*, 337
- delicate, *fine*, 172
    - " *tasteful*, 352
- *delicious*, 126
    - " *delightful*, 126
    - " *tasteful*, 352
- delight, *v.*, *entertain*, 152
- delight, *n.*, *entertainment*, 153
    - " *happiness*, 189
- delighted, *happy*, 190
- *delightful*, 126
    - " *beautiful*, 76
    - " *charming*, 103
    - " *delicious*, 126
    - " *happy*, 190
- delight in, *admire*, 23
- delinquency, *sin*, 332
- delirium, *insanity*, 221
- deliver, *give*, 185
    - " *speak*, 339
- *delusion*, 127
    - " *deception*, 123
- delusive, *vain*, 364
- demand, *ask*, 59
- demeanor, *air*, 27
    - " *behavior*, 79
- dementia, *insanity*, 221
- *demolish*, 127
    - " *break*, 86
- demonstrable, *real*, 301

- demonstrate, *reason, v.*, 302
- *demonstration*, 127
- denomination, *name*, 247
  - " *term*, 354
- denouement, *catastrophe*, 97
- denounce, *condemn*, 113
- dense, *obscure*, 255
- dent, *blemish*, 82
- denunciation, *oath*, 254
  - " *reproof*, 311
- deny, *renounce*, 309
- depart, *die*, 130
- depart from, *abandon*, 1
- deplore, *mourn*, 246
- deportment, *behavior*, 79
- depose, *state*, 341
- [524]deposit, *put*, 296
- deposition, *testimony*, 355
- depravity, *sin*, 332
- depreciate, *disparage*, 134
  - " *slander*, 336
- depredator, *robber*, 320
- depress, *abase*, 2
- depth, *wisdom*, 372
- depute, *send*, 327
- deputy, *delegate*, 125
- derange, *displace*, 135
- derangement, *insanity*, 221
- derision, *banter*, 73
- derogate from, *disparage*, 134
- descent, *kin*, 227
- description, *definition*, 124
  - " *report*, 311
- descry, *discern*, 133
  - " *discover*, 133
  - " *look*, 234
- desert, *abandon*, 1
- *design*, 128
  - " *aim*, 26
  - " *end, n.*, 148
  - " *idea*, 206
  - " *model*, 243
  - " *reason, n.*, 302
  - " *sketch*, 334
- designation, *name*, 247
- designer, *cause*, 98

- *desire*, 128
  - " *appetite*, 54
  - " *fancy*, 167
- desirous, *eager*, 142
- desist, *cease*, 98
  - " *end, v.*, 148
- *despair*, 129
- despatch, *kill*, 226
  - " *quicken*, 297
  - " *send*, 327
- desperation, *despair*, 129
- despicable, *pitiful*, 273
- despise, *abhor*, 5
- despite, *notwithstanding, prep.*, 254
- despoiler, *robber*, 320
- despondency, *despair*, 129
- despotic, *absolute*, 8
- destine, *allot*, 34
- destiny, *necessity*, 250
- destitution, *poverty*, 279
- destroy, *abolish*, 6
  - " *break*, 86
  - " *demolish*, 127
  - " *exterminate*, 163
  - " *subvert*, 346
- destructive, *pernicious*, 270
- detach, *abstract*, 10
- detail, *circumstance*, 105
- detailed, *minute*, 242
- detain, *arrest*, 57
  - " *keep*, 226
- detect, *discover*, 133
- deterioration, *alloy*, 36
- determination, *aim*, 26
- determined, *obstinate*, 256
- detest, *abhor*, 5
- detestation, *abomination*, 7
  - " *antipathy*, 48
  - " *hatred*, 193
- detract from, *disparage*, 134
- detriment, *injury*, 219
- detrimental, *pernicious*, 270
- develop, *amplify*, 43
- developed, *real*, 301
- development, *education*, 143
  - " *progress*, 289

- deviate, *bend*, 79
    - " *wander*, 371
- device, *artifice*, 58
    - " *design*, 128
- devoted, *addicted*, 19
    - " *faithful*, 165
    - " *holy*, 200
- devotion, *allegiance*, 32
    - " *attachment*, 63
    - " *enthusiasm*, 153
    - " *friendship*, 179
    - " *love*, 235
    - " *religion*, 307
- *dexterity*, 129
    - " *address, n.*, 20
    - " *power*, 279
- dexterous, *clever*, 109
    - " *happy*, 190
    - " *skilful*, 335
- dialect, *language*, 228
- dialog(ue, *conversation*, 118
- diaphanous, *clear*, 107
- dictatorial, *absolute*, 8
    - " *dogmatic*, 137
- *diction*, 130
    - " *language*, 228
- dictum, *proverb*, 293
- *die*, 130
- diet, *food*, 175
- *difference*, 131
- differentiate, *contrast*, 118
- *difficult*, 132
    - " *obscure*, 255
- difficulty, *impediment*, 213
- diffidence, *modesty*, 244
- diffuseness, *circumlocution*, 105
- digest, *abridgment*, 7
- digress, *wander*, 371
- dilate, *amplify*, 43
- dilatory, *slow*, 337
- dilettante, *amateur*, 39
- diligence, *industry*, 216
- diligent, *active*, 17
    - " *industrious*, 215
- dim, *dark*, 122
    - " *faint*, 164

  - " *obscure*, 255
- diminish, *abate*, 3
- diminutive, *minute*, 242
- dip, *immerse*, 212
  - " *tip*, 357
- dire, *awful*, 70
- direct, *govern*, 185
- *direction*, 132
  - " *care*, 94
  - " *order*, 258
  - " *oversight*, 260
- directly, *immediately*, 211
- direful, *awful*, 70
- disadvantage, *injury*, 219
- disagreement, *difference*, 131
- disallow, *prohibit*, 290
- [525]disappointment, *chagrin*, 100
  - " *misfortune*, 242
- disapproval, *reproof*, 311
- disarrange, *displace*, 135
- disaster, *accident*, 14
  - " *blow*, 83
  - " *catastrophe*, 97
  - " *misfortune*, 242
- disavow, *renounce*, 309
- disbelief, *doubt*, *n.*, 138
- disbeliever, *skeptic*, 334
- discard, *renounce*, 309
- *discern*, 133
  - " *discover*, 133
  - " *look*, 234
- discernible, *evident*, 159
- discerning, *astute*, 62
  - " *sagacious*, 322
- discernment, *acumen*, 18
  - " *wisdom*, 372
- discharge, *absolve*, 9
  - " *banish*, 72
  - " *cancel*, 92
  - " *do*, 135
  - " *send*, 327
- disciple, *adherent*, 21
  - " *convert*, 119
  - " *scholar*, 324
- discipline, *v.*, *chasten*, 103
  - " *teach*, 353

- discipline, *n.*, *education*, 143
- disclaim, *renounce*, 309
- disclose, *confess*, 114
    - " *discover*, 133
- disclosure, *revelation*, 316
- discolor, *stain*, 341
- discomfit, *conquer*, 115
- discompose, *abash*, 3
- discomposure, *chagrin*, 100
- disconcert, *abash*, 3
- discontinue, *abandon*, 1
    - " *cease*, 98
- discordant, *heterogeneous*, 196
    - " *incongruous*, 214
- discouragement, *despair*, 129
- discourse, *conversation*, 118
    - " *speak*, 339
    - " *speech*, 339
- discourteous, *bluff*, 83
- *discover*, 133
    - " *catch*, 97
- discredit, *abase*, 2
    - " *disparage*, 134
- discrepancy, *difference*, 131
- discrepant, *incongruous*, 214
- discretion, *address*, *n.*, 20
    - " *prudence*, 294
    - " *wisdom*, 372
- discriminate, *abstract*, 10
    - " *contrast*, 118
    - " *discern*, 133
- discriminating, *astute*, 62
- discrimination, *difference*, 131
- discuss, *reason*, *v.*, 302
- disdain, *pride*, 286
- *disease*, 134
- disfigurement, *blemish*, 82
- disgrace, *v.*, *abase*, 2
    - " *stain*, 341
- disgrace, *n.*, *blemish*, 82
- disguise, *v.*, *hide*, 197
- disguise, *n.*, *pretense*, 283
- disgust, *abomination*, 7
    - " *antipathy*, 48
- dishearten, *abash*, 3
- dishonesty, *fraud*, 177

- dishonor, *v.*, *abase*, 2
    - " *disparage*, 134
    - " *stain*, 341
- dishonor, *n.*, *blemish*, 82
- disinclined, *reluctant*, 308
- disinfect, *cleanse*, 107
- disintegration, *revolution*, 317
- disinterested, *generous*, 182
- dislike, *v.*, *abhor*, 5
- dislike, *n.*, *antipathy*, 48
    - " *hatred*, 193
- dislodge, *banish*, 72
- dismal, *dark*, 122
- dismay, *v.*, *frighten*, 180
- dismay, *n.*, *alarm*, 28
    - " *chagrin*, 100
    - " *fear*, 168
- dismiss, *banish*, 72
    - " *send*, 327
- disobedient, *rebellious*, 304
- disorder, *disease*, 134
    - " *revolution*, 317
- disown, *renounce*, 309
- *disparage*, 134
    - " *abuse*, 12
    - " *slander*, 336
- disparity, *difference*, 131
- dispassionate, *calm*, 91
- dispense, *apportion*, 54
- *displace*, 135
- display, *ostentation*, 259
- displease, *affront*, 24
- displeasure, *anger*, 44
    - " *pique*, 272
- disport, *entertain*, 152
- dispose, *influence*, 217
    - " *persuade*, 271
- disposed, *addicted*, 19
- disposition, *appetite*, 54
    - " *array*, 57
    - " *character*, 102
    - " *mind*, 241
- disprove, *refute*, 306
- dispute, *v.*, *reason*, *v.*, 302
- dispute, *n.*, *feud*, 170
- disquiet, *anxiety*, 49

- disquietude, *alarm*, 28
    - " *fear*, 168
- disquisition, *speech*, 339
- disregard, *neglect*, 251
- disrespect, *neglect*, 251
- dissemble, *hide*, 197
- dissembler, *hypocrite*, 204
- dissension, *feud*, 170
- dissenter, *heretic*, 196
- dissertation, *speech*, 339
- dissimilar, *heterogeneous*, 196
- dissimilarity, *difference*, 131
- dissimilitude, *difference*, 131
- dissimulation, *deception*, 123
    - " *hypocrisy*, 204
    - " *pretense*, 283
- [526]dissipation, *excess*, 160
- distant, *alien*, *a.*, 29
- distaste, *antipathy*, 48
- distemper, *disease*, 134
- distinct, *clear*, 107
    - " *evident*, 159
- distinction, *characteristic*, 103
    - " *difference*, 131
    - " *fame*, 166
- distinguish, *abstract*, 10
    - " *discern*, 133
- distract, *abstract*, 10
- distraction, *perplexity*, 270
- distress, *grief*, 187
    - " *misfortune*, 242
    - " *pain*, 261
    - " *poverty*, 279
- distribute, *allot*, 34
    - " *apportion*, 54
- distributively, *apiece*, 51
- distrust, *v.*, *doubt*, *v.*, 137
- distrust, *n.*, *doubt*, *n.*, 138
- disturb, *displace*, 135
- disturbance, *anxiety*, 49
    - " *perplexity*, 270
    - " *storm*, 343
- disused, *obsolete*, 256
- diurnal, *daily*, 121
- diverge, *bend*, 79
    - " *wander*, 371

- divergence, *difference*, 131
- diversify, *change*, *v.*, 100
- diversion, *entertainment*, 153
- diversity, *change*, *n.*, 101
    - " *difference*, 131
- divert, *abstract*, 10
    - " *entertain*, 152
- divide, *allot*, 34
    - " *apportion*, 54
- divine, *v.*, *augur*, 66
- divine, *n.*, *holy*, 200
- division, *part*, 264
    - " *topic*, 359
- *do*, 135
    - " *execute*, 161
    - " *make*, 236
    - " *transact*, 360
- *docile*, 136
- doctrinal, *dogmatic*, 137
- *doctrine*, 136
    - " *faith*, 164
- document, *record*, 304
- dodge, *artifice*, 58
- doer, *agent*, 24
- dogged, *morose*, 245
    - " *obstinate*, 256
- dogma, *doctrine*, 136
- *dogmatic*, 137
    - " *absolute*, 8
- doing, *act*, 16
    - " *transaction*, 360
    - " *work*, 374
- domicil, *home*, 201
- domineering, *absolute*, 8
    - " *dogmatic*, 137
- donation, *gift*, 184
- doom, *condemn*, 131
- door, *entrance*, 154
- doorway, *entrance*, 154
- double-dealing, *deception*, 123
- *doubt*, *v.*, 137
- *doubt*, *n.*, 138
    - " *perplexity*, 270
- doubter, *skeptic*, 334
- doubtful, *equivocal*, 155
    - " *obscure*, 255

  - " *precarious*, 282
- doughty, *brave*, 85
- douse, *immerse*, 212
- down, *conquer*, 115
- draft, *sketch*, 334
- drag, *draw*, 138
- *draw*, 138
  - " *allure*, 37
  - " *influence*, 217
- drawing, *sketch*, 334
- draw out, *protract*, 293
- dread, *a.*, *awful*, 70
- dread, *n.*, *alarm*, 28
  - " *anxiety*, 49
  - " *fear*, 168
  - " *veneration*, 366
- dreadful, *awful*, 70
- *dream*, 139
- dregs of the people, *mob*, 243
- *dress*, 140
- drill, *exercise*, 162
  - " *teach*, 353
- drink in, drink up, *absorb*, 9
- *drive*, 140
  - " *banish*, 72
  - " *compel*, 111
  - " *influence*, 217
  - " quicken, 297
  - " *send*, 327
- drive on, *quicken*, 297
- drive out, *banish*, 172
- driveway, *way*, 372
- droll, *queer*, 297
- drollery, *wit*, 373
- drove, *flock*, 173
- drowsy, *slow*, 337
- drudgery, *work*, 374
- dubious, *equivocal*, 155
  - " *precarious*, 282
- duck, *immerse*, 212
- dull, *dark*, 122
  - " *slow*, 337
- dulness, *stupidity*, 344
- dumb, *taciturn*, 351
- *duplicate*, 141
- duplicity, *deception*, 123

  - " *fraud*, 177
- durable, *permanent*, 269
- durance, *fetter*, 169
- duration, *time*, 356
- duress, *fetter*, 169
- dusky, *dark*, 122
  - " *obscure*, 255
- dust, *v.*, *cleanse*, 107
- dust, *n.*, *body*, 84
- *duty*, 142
  - " *business*, 88
  - " *virtue*, 370
- dwell, *abide*, 5
- dwelling, *home*, 201
- dye, *stain*, 341

- [527]each, *apiece*, 51
  - " *every*, 158
- *eager*, 142
- eagerness, *enthusiasm*, 153
- earlier, *previous*, 285
- earn, *attain*, 64
  - " *get*, 183
- earnest, *eager*, 142
  - " *security*, 366
- earnestness, *enthusiasm*, 153
- earnings, *pay*, 266
- *ease*, 143
  - " *rest*, 313
- easiness, *ease*, 143
- ebb, *abate*, 3
- eccentric, *queer*, 297
- economy, *frugality*, 180
  - " *law*, 229
- ecstasy, *enthusiasm*, 153
  - " *happiness*, 189
- edge, *bank*, 72
  - " *boundary*, 84
- edict, *law*, 229
- educate, *teach*, 353
- *education*, 143
- efface, *cancel*, 92
- effect, *v.*, *do*, 135
  - " *make*, 236
- effect, *n.*, *act*, 16
  - " *consequence*, 116

    - " *end, n.*, 148
    - " *operation*, 258
- effeminate, *feminine*, 169
- efficacy, *power*, 279
- efficiency, *power*, 279
- effort, *endeavor, n.*, 150
    - " *industry*, 216
- *effrontery*, 144
    - " *assurance*, 61
    - " *impudence*, 213
- egoism, *egotism*, 145
- *egotism*, 145
- either, *every*, 158
- ejaculate, *call*, 91
- eject, *banish*, 72
- elderly, *old*, 257
- elect, *choose*, 104
- election, *alternative*, 38
- elegance, *refinement*, 305
- elegant, *beautiful*, 76
    - " *fine*, 172
    - " *polite*, 277
    - " *tasteful*, 352
- element, *part*, 264
    - " *particle*, 264
- elevate, *promote*, 291
- elevated, *high*, 198
- eliminate, *abstract*, 10
- elongate, *protract*, 293
- emanate, *rise*, 319
- emancipation, *liberty*, 230
- embarrass, *abash*, 3
    - " *hinder*, 199
    - " *involve*, 223
    - " *obstruct*, 257
- embarrassment, *perplexity*, 270
- embellish, *adorn*, 23
- *emblem*, 146
    - " *sign*, 332
- embolden, *abet*, 4
- embrace, *caress*, 95
- embroil, *involve*, 223
- emend, *amend*, 41
- emergency, *necessity*, 250
- *emigrate*, 147
- eminence, *fame*, 166

- eminent, *high*, 198
- emissary, *spy*, 340
- emit, *send*, 327
- emolument, *profit*, 288
- emotion, *sensation*, 328
- *employ*, 147
- employed, *industrious*, 215
- employment, *business*, 88
    - " *exercise*, 162
    - " *work*, 374
- empty, *vain*, 364
    - " *vacant*, 363
- emulation, *ambition*, 40
- enactment, *law*, 229
- enchanting, *charming*, 103
- enclosure, *boundary*, 84
- encomium, *praise*, 280
- encounter, *v.*, *attack*, *v.*, 63
- encounter, *n.*, *battle*, 74
    - " *collision*, 109
- encourage, *abet*, 4
    - " *cherish*, 104
    - " *console*, 117
    - " *help*, 195
    - " *promote*, 291
- encroachment, *attack*, *n.*, 64
- encumber, *hinder*, 199
- encumbrance, *impediment*, 213
    - " *load*, 233
- *end*, *v.*, 148
    - " *abolish*, 6
    - " *cease*, 98
- *end*, *n.*, 148
    - " *aim*, 26
    - " *consequence*, 116
    - " *design*, 128
    - " *event*, 158
    - " *reason*, *n.*, 302
- *endeavor*, *v.*, 149
- *endeavor*, *n.*, 150
    - " *aim*, 26
- endless, *eternal*, 157
- endorse, *confess*, 114
- endurance, *fortitude*, 176
    - " *patience*, 265
- *endure*, 150

  - " *abide*, 5
- enduring, *permanent*, 269
- *enemy*, 151
- energetic, *active*, 17
- energy, *power*, 279
- enforce, *execute*, 161
- engage, *bind*, 81
- engaged, *industrious*, 215
- engagement, *battle*, 74
  - " *contract*, 118
- engaging, *amiable*, 42
- engross, *absorb*, 9
  - " *employ*, 147
- enigma, *riddle*, 318
- enigmatic, *equivocal*, 155
- enigmatical, *equivocal*, 155
  - [528]" *mysterious*, 247
  - " *obscure*, 255
- enjoy, *admire*, 23
- enjoyment, *entertainment*, 153
  - " *happiness*, 189
- enlarge, *add*, 18
  - " *amplify*, 43
- enlighten, *teach*, 353
- enlightenment, *wisdom*, 372
- enliven, *entertain*, 152
- *enmity*, 152
  - " *feud*, 170
  - " *hatred*, 193
- enormous, *large*, 229
- enough, *plentiful*, 276
- enrapturing, *charming*, 103
- enrolment, *record*, 304
- ensample, *example*, 160
- ensnare, *catch*, 97
- ensue, *follow*, 174
- entangle, *involve*, 223
- entangled, *complex*, 112
- enter, *reach*, 300
- *entertain*, 152
  - " *cherish*, 104
- *entertainment*, 153
- *enthusiasm*, 153
- enthusiastic, *eager*, 142
- entice, *allure*, 37
  - " *draw*, 138

  - " *persuade*, 271
- entire, *radical*, 299
  - " *perfect*, 268
- entomb, *hide*, 197
- *entrance*, 154
- entrancing, *charming*, 103
- entrap, *catch*, 97
- entreat, *ask*, 59
  - " *plead*, 274
  - " *pray*, 281
- entrée, *entrance*, 154
- entrust, *commit*, 110
- entry, *entrance*, 154
  - " *record*, 304
- enumerate, *calculate*, 90
- enumeration, *record*, 304
- enunciate, *announce*, 46
  - " *speak*, 339
- *envious*, 155
- eon, *time*, 356
- eonian, *eternal*, 157
- ephemeral, *transient*, 361
- episode, *event*, 158
- epithet, *name*, 247
- epitome, *abridgment*, 7
- epoch, *time*, 356
- equal, *adequate*, 21
  - " *alike*, 30
- equitable, *honest*, 202
- equity, *justice*, 225
- equivalent, *alike*, 30
  - " *synonymous*, 349
- *equivocal*, 155
  - " *precarious*, 282
- era, *time*, 356
- eradicate, *abolish*, 6
  - " *exterminate*, 163
- erase, *cancel*, 92
- err, *wander*, 371
- erratic, *queer*, 297
- erroneous, *absurd*, 11
- error, *delusion*, 127
- erudition, *knowledge*, 227
  - " *wisdom*, 372
- espousal, *marriage*, 236
- essay, *v.*, *endeavor*, *v.*, 149

- essay, *n.*, *endeavor*, *n.*, 150
- essential, *inherent*, 218
    - " *necessary*, 250
    - " *necessity*, 250
    - " *radical*, 299
    - " *real*, 301
- establish, *confirm*, 114
    - " *make*, 236
    - " *reason*, *v.*, 302
- *esteem*, *v.*, 156
    - " *admire*, 23
- *esteem*, *n.*, 157
    - " *attachment*, 63
    - " *friendship*, 179
- esthetic, *tasteful*, 352
- esthetical, *tasteful*, 352
- estimate, *v.*, *calculate*, 90
    - " *esteem*, *v.*, 156
- estimate, *n.*, *esteem*, *n.*, 157
- estimation, *attachment*, 63
    - " *esteem*, *n.*, 157
- *eternal*, 157
    - " *infinite*, 216
- ethereal, *airy*, 27
- eucharist, *sacrament*, 321
- eulogy, *praise*, 280
- euphony, *meter*, 240
- evanescent, *transient*, 361
- even, *horizontal*, 202
- *event*, 158
    - " *circumstance*, 105
    - " *consequence*, 116
- everlasting, *eternal*, 157
- ever-living, *eternal*, 157
- *every*, 158
- everyday, *general*, 181
    - " *usual*, 362
- evict, *banish*, 72
- evidence, *demonstration*, 127
    - " *testimony*, 355
- *evident*, 159
    - " *clear*, 107
- evil, *a.*, *pernicious*, 270
- evil, *n.*, *abomination*, 7
    - " *injury*, 219
    - " *sin*, 332

- exact, *minute*, 242
- exacting, *absolute*, 8
- exaggeration, *caricature*, 95
- exalt, *promote*, 291
- exalted, *high*, 198
- *example*, 160
    - " *model*, 243
    - " *precedent*, 282
    - " *sample*, 323
- exasperate, *affront*, 24
- exasperation, *anger*, 44
- excellence, *virtue*, 370
- excellent, *fine*, 172
- except, *but*, 89
- excerpt, *quote*, 298
- *excess*, 160
- [529]exchange, *v.*, *change*, *v.*, 100
- exchange, *n.*, *sale*, 323
- excite, *influence*, 217
    - " *promote*, 291
- excitement, *enthusiasm*, 153
- exclaim, *call*, 91
- exculpate, *absolve*, 9
- exculpation, *apology*, 51
- excursion, *journey*, 223
- excusable, *venial*, 367
- excuse, *apology*, 51
    - " *pardon*, 262
    - " *pretense*, 283
- execration, *abomination*, 7
    - " *oath*, 254
- *execute*, 161
    - " *do*, 135
    - " *kill*, 226
    - " *make*, 236
- execution, *act*, 16
    - " *operation*, 258
- exemplar, *example*, 160
- exemplification, *example*, 160
    - " *sample*, 323
- exempt, *absolve*, 9
- exemption, *right*, 319
- *exercise*, 162
    - " *act*, 16
- exertion, *act*, 16
    - " *endeavor*, *n.*, 150

  - " *exercise*, 162
  - " *industry*, 216
  - " *work*, 374
- exhaust, *absorb*, 9
  - " *tire*, 357
- exhausted, *faint*, 164
- exhausting, *difficult*, 132
- exhibition, *array*, 57
- exigency, *necessity*, 250
- exile, *banish*, 72
- existent, *alive*, 30
- existing, *alive*, 30
- exonerate, *absolve*, 9
- exorbitance, *excess*, 160
- expand, *amplify*, 43
- expatiate, *amplify*, 43
- expatriate, *banish*, 72
- expect, *abide*, 5
  - " *anticipate*, 47
- expectancy, *anticipation*, 48
- expectation, *anticipation*, 48
- expediency, *profit*, 288
  - " *utility*, 363
- expedite, *quicken*, 297
- expedition, *journey*, 223
- expeditious, *active*, 17
- expel, *banish*, 72
  - " *exterminate*, 163
- expenditure, *expense*, 162
  - " *price*, 285
- *expense*, 162
  - " *price*, 285
- experience, *acquaintance*, 15
  - " *knowledge*, 227
- expert, *clever*, 109
  - " *skilful*, 335
- expertness, *dexterity*, 129
  - " *ease*, 143
  - " *power*, 279
- expiate, *amplify*, 43
- expiation, *propitiation*, 291
- expiration, *end, n.*, 148
- expire, *die*, 130
  - " *end, v.*, 148
- explanation, *definition*, 124
- *explicit*, 162

  - " *clear*, 107
- exploit, *act*, 16
- expose, *discover*, 133
- exposition, *definition*, 124
- expostulate with, *reprove*, 312
- express, *v.*, *speak*, 339
  - " *state*, 341
- express, *a.*, *explicit*, 162
- expression, *air*, 27
  - " *diction*, 130
  - " *language*, 228
  - " *term*, 354
- expunge, *cancel*, 92
- exquisite, *beautiful*, 76
  - " *delicious*, 126
  - " *fine*, 172
  - " *tasteful*, 352
- *extemporaneous*, 163
- extemporary, *extemporaneous*, 163
- extempore, *extemporaneous*, 163
- extend, *add*, 18
  - " *amplify*, 43
  - " *protract*, 293
- extension, *appendage*, 53
- extensive, *large*, 229
- extent, *end*, *n.*, 148
- extenuate, *palliate*, 261
- *exterminate*, 163
  - " *abolish*, 6
- extinguish, *subvert*, 346
- extirpate, *abolish*, 6
  - " *exterminate*, 163
- extol, *admire*, 23
- extract, *quote*, 298
- extraordinary, *queer*, 297
  - " *rare*, 300
- extravagance, *enthusiasm*, 153
  - " *excess*, 160
- extravaganza, *caricature*, 95
- extreme, *radical*, 299
- extremity, *end*, *n.*, 148
  - " *necessity*, 250
- exuberant, *plentiful*, 276

- fabianism, *socialism*, 338
- fable, *allegory*, 33

  - " *fiction*, 170
- fabricate, *make*, 236
- fabrication, *deception*, 123
  - " *fiction*, 170
- facetiousness, *wit*, 373
- facilitate, *quicken*, 297
- facility, *ease*, 143
- facsimile, *duplicate*, 141
  - " *model*, 243
- fact, *circumstance*, 105
  - " *event*, 158
- faction, *cabal*, 90
- factious, *perverse*, 272
- factor, *agent*, 24
- faculty, *power*, 279
- fade, *die*, 130
- faded, *faint*, 164
- [530]fadeless, *eternal*, 157
- fag, *tire*, 357
- failure, *misfortune*, 242
  - " *neglect*, 251
- *faint*, 164
- faint-hearted, *faint*, 164
- fainting, *stupor*, 344
- fair, *beautiful*, 76
  - " *candid*, 93
  - " *honest*, 202
- fairness, *justice*, 225
- fair play, *justice*, 225
- fairylike, *airy*, 27
- *faith*, 164
  - " *religion*, 307
  - " article of, *doctrine*, 136
- *faithful*, 165
  - " *honest*, 202
- faithfulness, *allegiance*, 32
  - " *justice*, 225
  - " *virtue*, 370
- fall, *happen*, 188
- fallacy, *delusion*, 127
- fall out, *happen*, 188
- fall upon, *attack*, *v.*, 63
- false, *absurd*, 11
- falsehood, *deception*, 123
  - " *fiction*, 170
- faltering, *faint*, 164

- *fame*, 166
- familiar, *general*, 181
    - " *usual*, 362
- familiarity, *acquaintance*, 15
    - " *association*, 60
- family, *kin*, 227
- *fanaticism*, 166
    - " *enthusiasm*, 153
- *fanciful*, 167
- *fancy*, 167
    - " *dream*, 139
    - " *idea*, 206
    - " *imagination*, 209
- fantastic, *fanciful*, 167
    - " *queer*, 297
- fantasy, *dream*, 139
    - " *idea*, 206
    - " *imagination*, 209
- fare, *food*, 175
- *farewell*, 168
- farming, *agriculture*, 25
- fascinating, *charming*, 103
- fashion, *v.*, *make*, 236
- fashion, *n.*, *air*, 27
    - " *habit*, 187
- fasten, *bind*, 81
- fastening, *lock*, 234
- fastidious, *tasteful*, 352
- fasting, *abstinence*, 10
- fastness, *fortification*, 176
- fatality, *necessity*, 250
- fate, *necessity*, 250
    - " *predestination*, 282
- fatigue, *tire*, 357
- fatigued, *faint*, 164
- fatuity, *idiocy*, 207
- fault, *blemish*, 82
    - " *sin*, 332
- faultless, *innocent*, 220
    - " *perfect*, 268
- fauna, *animal*, 45
- favor, *n.*, *esteem*, *n.*, 157
    - " *friendship*, 179
    - " *mercy*, 239
- favorable, *friendly*, 178
    - " *propitious*, 291

- favored, *fortunate*, 177
- fealty, *allegiance*, 32
- *fear*, 168
    - " *alarm*, 28
    - " *anxiety*, 49
- fearful, *awful*, 70
- fearless, *brave*, 85
- feat, *act*, 16
- feature, *characteristic*, 103
    - " *circumstance*, 105
- federation, *alliance*, 34
    - " *association*, 60
- fee, *pay*, 266
- feeble, *faint*, 164
- feed, *food*, 175
- feeling, *sensation*, 328
    - " *sensibility*, 328
- feign, *assume*, 61
- felicitate, *congratulate*, 115
- felicitous, *happy*, 190
- felicity, *happiness*, 189
- fellow, *associate*, 60
- fellowship, *acquaintance*, 15
    - " *association*, 60
- felonious, *criminal*, 120
- female, *feminine*, 169
- *feminine*, 169
- ferocious, *fierce*, 171
- ferret out, *discover*, 133
- fervency, *enthusiasm*, 153
- fervent, *eager*, 142
- fervor, *enthusiasm*, 153
- fetter, *v.*, *bind*, 81
- *fetter*, *n.*, 169
- *feud*, 170
- *fiction*, 170
    - " *allegory*, 33
- fidgety, *restive*, 314
- *fierce*, 171
- fiery, *fierce*, 171
- fight, *battle*, 74
- figment, *fiction*, 170
- figure, *emblem*, 146
- fill, *satisfy*, 324
- final cause, *design*, 128
- finale, *end*, *n.*, 148

- *financial*, 172
- find, *discover*, 133
- find fault, *complain*, 112
- find fault with, *reprove*, 312
- find out, *discover*, 133
- *fine*, 172
    - " *beautiful*, 76
    - " *minute*, 242
    - " *tasteful*, 352
- finesse, *artifice*, 58
    - " *deception*, 123
- finis, *end*, *n.*, 148
- finish, *v.*, *cease*, 98
    - " *do*, 135
    - " *end*, *v.*, 148
- finish, *n.*, *end*, *n.*, 148
- finished, *perfect*, 268
- [531]*fire*, 173
- fireside, *home*, 201
- firm, *faithful*, 165
    - " *obstinate*, 256
- fiscal, *financial*, 172
- fit, *adequate*, 21
    - " *becoming*, 77
- fitted, *adequate*, 21
- fitting, *adequate*, 21
    - " *becoming*, 77
- fix, *bind*, 81
    - " *confirm*, 114
- fixed, *obstinate*, 256
    - " *permanent*, 269
- flagitious, *criminal*, 120
- flame, *burn*, 87
    - " *fire*, 173
    - " *light*, 231
- flap, *shake*, 330
- flare, *light*, 231
- flash, *burn*, 87
    - " *light*, 231
- flat, *horizontal*, 202
- flatter, *caress*, 95
- flattery, *praise*, 280
- flavorous, *racy*, 299
- flaw, *blemish*, 82
- fleeting, *transient*, 361
- flicker, *light*, 231

- flight, *career*, 95
- fling, *send*, 327
    - " *sneer*, 337
- flippancy, *pertness*, 271
- flitting, *transient*, 361
- *flock*, 173
- flog, *beat*, 75
- floriculture, *agriculture*, 25
- flourish, *v.*, *succeed*, 346
- flourish, *n.*, *ostentation*, 269
- flow, *rise*, 319
- *fluctuate*, 173
    - " *shake*, 330
- *fluid*, 174
- flutter, *shake*, 330
- flying, *transient*, 361
- fodder, *food*, 175
- foe, *enemy*, 157
- foil, *hinder*, 199
- *follow*, 174
- follower, *accessory*, 13
    - " *adherent*, 21
- folly, *idiocy*, 207
- foment, *promote*, 291
- fond, *friendly*, 178
- fondle, *caress*, 95
- fondness, *love*, 235
- *food*, 175
- foolhardiness, *temerity*, 353
- foolish, *absurd*, 11
- foolishness, *idiocy*, 207
- footmark, *trace*, 359
- footpad, *robber*, 320
- footprint, *trace*, 359
- footstep, *trace*, 359
- for, *because*, 77
- forage, *food*, 175
- forager, *robber*, 320
- forbearance, *mercy*, 239
    - " *pardon*, 262
    - " *patience*, 265
- forbid, *prohibit*, 290
- force, *v.*, *compel*, 111
    - " *make*, 236
- force, *n.*, *army*, 56
    - " *operation*, 258

  - " *power*, 279
- forces, *army*, 56
- forcible, *racy*, 299
- forebode, *augur*, 66
- foreboding, *anticipation*, 48
  - " *anxiety*, 49
- forecast, *v.*, *anticipate*, 47
- forecast, *n.*, *anticipation*, 48
  - " *prudence*, 294
- forego, *abandon*, 1
- foregoing, *previous*, 285
- foreign, *alien*, *a.*, 29
- foreigner, *alien*, *n.*, 29
- foreknowledge, *predestination*, 282
- foreordination, *predestination*, 282
- foresight, *anticipation*, 48
  - " *prudence*, 294
  - " *wisdom*, 372
- forestall, *prevent*, 284
- foretaste, *v.*, *anticipate*, 47
- foretaste, *n.*, *anticipation*, 48
- foretell, *augur*, 66
- forethought, *anticipation*, 48
  - " *care*, 94
  - " *prudence*, 294
- forgive, *absolve*, 9
  - " *pardon*, 262
- forgiveness, *mercy*, 239
  - " *pardon*, 262
- forgiving, *humane*, 203
- form, *body*, 84
- formalism, *hypocrisy*, 204
- former, *previous*, 285
- *formidable*, 176
- form or system of government, *polity*, 278
- formula, *law*, 229
- forsake, *abandon*, 1
- forswear, *abandon*, 1
  - " *renounce*, 309
- fort, *fortification*, 176
- forthwith, *immediately*, 211
- *fortification*, 176
- *fortitude*, 176
  - " *patience*, 265
- fortress, *defense*, 123
  - " *fortification*, 176

- fortuity, *accident*, 14
    - " *hazard*, 194
- *fortunate*, 177
    - " *happy*, 190
- fortune, *event*, 158
- forward, *v.*, *promote*, 291
    - " *send*, 327
- forward, *a.*, *previous*, 285
- forwardness, *impudence*, 213
    - " *pertness*, 271
- foster, *cherish*, 104
    - " *help*, 195
    - " *promote*, 291
- foul, *pernicious*, 270
- fount, *beginning*, 78
- fountain, *beginning*, 78
    - " *cause*, 98
- [532]fraction, *part*, 264
- fractious, *perverse*, 272
    - " *restive*, 314
- fracture, *break*, 86
- fragment, *part*, 264
- frame, *body*, 84
    - " *make*, 236
- franchise, *right*, 319
- frank, *bluff*, 83
    - " *candid*, 93
    - " *honest*, 202
- frankness, *veracity*, 367
- fraternity, *association*, 60
- *fraud*, 177
    - " *artifice*, 58
    - " *deception*, 123
- fray, *feud*, 170
- free, *absolve*, 9
    - " *generous*, 182
    - " *spontaneous*, 340
- freebooter, *robber*, 320
- freedom, *liberty*, 230
- free-handed, *generous*, 182
- free-hearted, *generous*, 182
- freethinker, *skeptic*, 334
- freight, *load*, 233
- frenzy, *enthusiasm*, 153
    - " *insanity*, 221
- frequent, *general*, 181

  - " *usual*, 362
- fresh, *new*, 252
- fretful, *restive*, 314
- fretfulness, *anger*, 44
  - " *anxiety*, 49
- fretting, *anxiety*, 49
- friend, *associate*, 60
- friendliness, *friendship*, 179
- *friendly*, 178
  - " *propitious*, 291
- *friendship*, 179
  - " *acquaintance*, 15
  - " *association*, 60
  - " *attachment*, 63
  - " *love*, 235
- fright, *alarm*, 28
  - " *fear*, 168
- *frighten*, 180
- frightful, *awful*, 70
- frisky, *restive*, 314
- frolic, *entertainment*, 153
- frolicsome, *airy*, 27
- frontier, *boundary*, 84
- front, *previous*, 285
- froward, *perverse*, 272
- *frugality*, 180
  - " *abstinence*, 10
  - " *prudence*, 294
- fruit, *harvest*, 192
- fruitless, *vain*, 364
- frustrate, *hinder*, 199
- fugitive, *transient*, 361
- fulfil, *do*, 135
  - " *keep*, 226
- fulfilment, *end*, *n.*, 148
- full, *plentiful*, 276
- fun, *entertainment*, 153
  - " *wit*, 373
- function, *duty*, 142
- fundamental, *radical*, 299
- funds, *money*, 244
- funny, *queer*, 297
- furious, *fierce*, 171
- furnish, *give*, 185
- further, *v.*, *promote*, 291
  - " *quicken*, 297

- further, *adv.*, *but*, 89
    - " *yet*, 374
- fury, *anger*, 44
- fusion, *alliance*, 34
- futile, *vain*, 364

- gabble, *babble*, 71
- gage, *security*, 326
- gaiety, *happiness*, 189
    - " *harmony*, 191
- gain, *attain*, 64
    - " *get*, 183
    - " *profit*, 288
    - " *reach*, 300
- gallant, *brave*, 85
- gallantry, *prowess*, 294
- gang, *cabal*, 90
- garb, *dress*, 140
- gardening, *agriculture*, 25
- garments, *dress*, 140
- garnish, *adorn*, 23
- *garrulous*, 181
- gas, *fluid*, 174
- gate, *entrance*, 154
- gateway, *entrance*, 154
- gather, *amass*, 38
    - " *convoke*, 120
- gathering, *company*, 110
- gauzy, *fine*, 172
- gawky, *awkward*, 70
- gay, *airy*, 27
    - " *happy*, 190
- gaze, *look*, 234
- *gender*, 181
- *general*, 181
    - " *usual*, 362
- generosity, *benevolence*, 80
- *generous*, 182
    - " *plentiful*, 276
- genial, *comfortable*, 110
    - " *friendly*, 178
- *genius*, 183
    - " *character*, 102
- genteel, *polite*, 277
- gentle, *amiable*, 42
    - " *docile*, 136

  - " *humane*, 203
- gentleness, *mercy*, 239
- genuine, *authentic*, 67
  - " *honest*, 202
  - " *pure*, 296
  - " *real*, 301
- *get*, 183
  - " *attain*, 64
  - " *make*, 236
  - " *purchase*, 295
- get to, *reach*, 300
- gibe, *sneer*, 337
- *gift*, 184
  - " *subsidy*, 345
- gifted, *clever*, 109
- gigantic, *large*, 229
- gild, *adorn*, 23
- girlish, *youthful*, 375
- [533]*give*, 185
  - " *allot*, 34
  - " *convey*, 119
  - " *surrender*, 349
- give instruction, *teach*, 353
- give lessons, *teach*, 353
- given, *addicted*, 19
- given over *or* up, *addicted*, 19
- give notice of, *announce*, 46
- give oneself up, *surrender*, 349
- give out, *announce*, 46
- give over, *cease*, 98
  - " *surrender*, 349
- give up, *abandon*, 1
  - " *surrender*, 349
- glad, *happy*, 190
- gladness, *happiness*, 189
- glance, *look*, 234
- glare, *light*, 231
- glaring, *evident*, 159
- gleam, *light*, 231
- gleaming, *light*, 231
- glimmer, *light*, 231
- glistening, *light*, 231
- glistering, *light*, 231
- glitter, *light*, 231
- gloomy, *dark*, 122
  - " *morose*, 245

- glory, *fame*, 166
- gloss over, *palliate*, 261
- glow, *light*, 231
- glowing, *eager*, 142
- glut, *satisfy*, 324
- glutinous, *adhesive*, 22
- goal, *aim*, 26
    - " *end, n.*, 148
- go after, *follow*, 174
- go astray, *wander*, 371
- godliness, *religion*, 307
- gold, *money*, 244
- good, *honest*, 202
    - " *profit*, 288
- good-by, *farewell*, 168
- good-natured, *amiable*, 42
    - " *pleasant*, 275
- goodness, *virtue*, 370
- good will, *benevolence*, 80
    - " *friendship*, 179
- gossip, *babble*, 71
- *govern*, 185
- government, form or system of, *polity*, 278
- government, seat of, *capital*, 94
- grace, *mercy*, 239
- *graceful*, 186
    - " *beautiful*, 76
    - " *becoming*, 77
- gracious, *humane*, 203
    - " *polite*, 277
    - " *propitious*, 291
- grade, *class*, 106
- gradual, *slow*, 337
- grain, *particle*, 264
- grand, *awful*, 70
    - " *large*, 229
- grant, *allot*, 34
    - " *allow*, 35
    - " *apportion*, 54
    - " *confess*, 114
    - " *gift*, 184
    - " *give*, 185
    - " *subsidy*, 345
- grasp, *attain*, 64
    - " *catch*, 97
- grateful, *delightful*, 126

- gratification, *happiness*, 189
- gratify, *entertain*, 152
- gratifying, *delightful*, 126
- gratuity, *gift*, 184
- gray, *old*, 257
- great, *large*, 229
- greedy, *avaricious*, 68
- greet, *address*, *v.*, 19
- *grief*, 187
- grievance, *injustice*, 220
- grieve, *mourn*, 246
- grip, *catch*, 97
- gripe, *catch*, 97
- grotesque, *fanciful*, 167
    - " *queer*, 297
- ground, *reason*, *n.*, 302
- group, *company*, 110
    - " *flock*, 173
- growl, *complain*, 112
- growth, *harvest*, 192
    - " *progress*, 289
- grudge, *hatred*, 193
    - " *pique*, 272
- gruff, *morose*, 245
- grumble, *complain*, 112
- grunt, *complain*, 112
- guard, *v.*, *keep*, 226
- guard, *n.*, *defense*, 123
    - " *shelter*, 331
- guess, *hypothesis*, 205
    - " *suppose*, 348
- guile, *artifice*, 58
    - " *deception*, 123
- guileless, *candid*, 93
    - " *innocent*, 220
    - " *pure*, 296
- guilt, *sin*, 332
- guiltless, *innocent*, 220
    - " *pure*, 296
- guilty, *criminal*, 120
- gummy, *adhesive*, 22
- gyves, *fetter*, 169

- habiliments, *dress*, 140
- *habit*, 187
    - " *dress*, 140

- habitation, *home*, 201
- habitual, *general*, 181
    - " *usual*, 362
- habituated, *addicted*, 19
- habitude, *habit*, 187
- hail, *address*, *v.*, 19
- hale, *healthy*, 195
- half-hearted, *faint*, 164
- hallowed, *holy*, 200
- hallucination, *delusion*, 127
    - " *dream*, 139
    - " *insanity*, 221
- hamper, *hinder*, 199
- handcuffs, *fetter*, 169
- handicraft, *business*, 88
- handsome, *beautiful*, 76
    - " *fine*, 172
- handy, *skilful*, 335
- hankering, *desire*, 128
- [534]hap, *accident*, 14
- *happen*, 188
- happening, *accident*, 14
- *happiness*, 189
- *happy*, 190
    - " *clever*, 109
    - " *fortunate*, 177
    - " *skilful*, 335
- harangue, *speech*, 339
- harass, *tire*, 357
- harbor, *cherish*, 104
    - " *shelter*, 331
- hard, *difficult*, 132
    - " *severe*, 329
- hardihood, *temerity*, 353
    - " *effrontery*, 144
- hardship, *misfortune*, 242
- hark, *listen*, 232
- harken, *listen*, 232
- harm, *v.*, *abuse*, 12
- harm, *n.*, *injury*, 219
    - " *misfortune*, 242
- harmful, *pernicious*, 270
- harmonize, *agree*, 25
- *harmony*, 191
    - " *melody*, 238
- harness, *arms*, 55

  - " *caparison*, 93
- harsh, *bitter*, 81
  - " *severe*, 329
- harshness, *acrimony*, 15
- *harvest*, 192
- harvest-feast, *harvest*, 192
- harvest-festival, *harvest*, 192
- harvest-home, *harvest*, 192
- harvesting, *harvest*, 192
- harvest-tide, *harvest*, 192
- harvest-time, *harvest*, 192
- hasp, *lock*, 234
- hasten, *quicken*, 297
- hastiness, *temerity*, 353
- hatch, *flock*, 173
- hate, *abhor*, 5
  - " *hatred*, 193
- *hatred*, 193
  - " *abomination*, 7
  - " *antipathy*, 48
  - " *enmity*, 152
- haughtiness, *pride*, 286
- haughty, *absolute*, 8
- haul, *draw*, 138
- *have*, 194
- havoc, *massacre*, 237
- *hazard*, 194
  - " *accident*, 14
  - " *danger*, 121
- hazardous, *precarious*, 282
- head, *topic*, 359
- headstrong, *obstinate*, 256
- heady, *obstinate*, 256
- heal, *recover*, 305
- healthful, *healthy*, 195
- *healthy*, 195
- heap up, *amass*, 38
- hear, *listen*, 232
- hearth, *home*, 201
- hearthstone, *home*, 201
- hearty, *friendly*, 178
  - " *healthy*, 195
- heed, *v.*, *follow*, 174
  - " *listen*, 232
- heed, *n.*, *care*, 94
- heedless, *abstracted*, 11

- heedlessness, *neglect*, 251
    - " *temerity*, 353
- heel over, *tip*, 357
- *help*, 195
    - " *promote*, 291
- helper, *accessory*, 13
    - " *auxiliary*, 67
- helpmate, *associate*, 60
- hence, *therefore*, 355
- henchman, *accessory*, 13
- herald, *announce*, 46
- herd, *flock*, 173
- heresiarch, *heretic*, 196
- *heretic*, 196
- heroic, *brave*, 85
- heroism, *fortitude*, 176
    - " *prowess*, 294
- hesitancy, *doubt*, *n.*, 138
- hesitate, *fluctuate*, 173
- hesitation, *doubt*, *n.*, 138
- *heterogeneous*, 196
    - " *complex*, 112
- hidden, *mysterious*, 247
    - " *obscure*, 255
- *hide*, 197
    - " *palliate*, 261
- *high*, 198
    - " *steep*, 342
- highroad, *way*, 372
- highway, *way*, 372
- highwayman, *robber*, 320
- *hinder*, 199
    - " *obstruct*, 257
    - " *prohibit*, 290
    - " *restrain*, 315
- hindrance, *barrier*, 74
    - " *impediment*, 213
- hint, *allude*, 36
    - " *suggestion*, 347
- hire, *v.*, *employ*, 147
- hire, *n.*, *pay*, 266
- hireling, *venal*, 365
- *history*, 200
    - " *record*, 304
- hitherto, *yet*, 374
- hoard, *amass*, 38

- hoary, *old*, 257
- hoidenish, *rustic*, 321
- hold, *arrest*, 57
    - " *esteem, v.*, 156
    - " *have*, 194
    - " *keep*, 226
    - " *restrain*, 315
- hold back, *restrain*, 315
- hold dear, *cherish*, 104
- hold in, *restrain*, 315
- hold up, *support*, 348
- holiness, *religion*, 307
- *holy*, 200
    - " *perfect*, 268
    - " *pure*, 296
- homage, *allegiance*, 32
- *home*, 201
- homogeneous, *alike*, 30
- *honest*, 202
    - [535]" *candid*, 93
- honesty, *veracity*, 367
    - " *virtue*, 370
- honor, v., *admire*, 23
    - " *venerate*, 366
- honor, *n.*, *fame*, 166
    - " *justice*, 225
    - " *virtue*, 370
- honorable, *honest*, 202
- honorarium, *pay*, 266
- hook, *lock*, 234
- hope, *v.*, *anticipate*, 47
- hope, *n.*, *anticipation*, 48
- hopelessness, *despair*, 129
- *horizontal*, 202
- horrible, *awful*, 70
- horrific, *awful*, 70
- horror, *abomination*, 7
    - " *fear*, 168
- horticulture, *agriculture*, 25
- host, *army*, 56
    - " *company*, 110
    - " *throng*, 356
- hostile, *alien, a.*, 29
- hostility, *antipathy*, 48
    - " *enmity*, 152
    - " *feud*, 170

  - " *hatred*, 193
- hot, *eager*, 142
- house, *home*, 201
- housings, *caparison*, 93
- howbeit, *notwithstanding, conj.*, 254
- however, *but*, 89
  - " *notwithstanding, conj.*, 254
- huge, *large*, 229
- hum, *sing*, 333
- human, *humane*, 203
- *humane*, 203
- humanity, *benevolence*, 80
- humble, *abase*, 2
  - " *abash*, 3
  - " *chasten*, 103
  - " *conquer*, 115
- humiliate, *abase*, 2
  - " *abash*, 3
- humiliation, *chagrin*, 100
- humor, *fancy*, 167
  - " *wit*, 373
- *hunt*, 203
- hunting, *hunt*, 203
- hurl, *send*, 327
- hurry, *quicken*, 297
- hurt, *injury*, 219
- hurtful, *pernicious*, 270
- husbandry, *agriculture*, 25
- hygienic, *healthy*, 195
- *hypocrisy*, 204
  - " *deception*, 123
- *hypocrite*, 204
- *hypothesis*, 205

- *idea*, 206
  - " *fancy*, 167
  - " *ideal*, 206
- *ideal*, 206
  - " *example*, 160
  - " *idea*, 206
  - " *perfect*, 268
- identical, *alike*, 30
  - " *synonymous*, 349
- *idiocy*, 207
- idiom, *language*, 228
- *idle*, 208

  - " *vain*, 364
- ignite, *burn*, 87
- *ignorant*, 208
  - " *brutish*, 87
- ill, *misfortune*, 242
- ill-advised, *absurd*, 11
- ill-considered, *absurd*, 11
- ill-defined, *faint*, 164
- ill-doing, *sin*, 332
- illegal, *criminal*, 120
- ill-fortune, *misfortune*, 242
- ill-humored, *morose*, 245
- illimitable, *infinite*, 216
- ill-informed, *ignorant*, 208
- illiterate, *ignorant*, 208
- ill-judged, *absurd*, 11
- ill luck, *misfortune*, 242
- ill-matched, *incongruous*, 214
- ill-natured, *morose*, 245
- illness, *disease*, 134
- ill-treat, *abuse*, 12
- illumination, *light*, 231
- ill-use, *abuse*, 12
- illusion, *delusion*, 127
- illustrate, *adorn*, 23
- illustration, *allegory*, 33
  - " *sample*, 323
- ill-will, *enmity*, 152
  - " *hatred*, 193
- image, *emblem*, 146
  - " *fancy*, 167
  - " *idea*, 206
  - " *model*, 243
- *imagination*, 209
  - " *idea*, 206
  - " *fancy*, 167
- imaginative, *fanciful*, 167
- imagine, *suppose*, 348
- imbecility, *idiocy*, 207
- imbibe, *absorb*, 9
- imbruted, *brutish*, 87
- imitate, *follow*, 174
- imitation, *caricature*, 95
  - " *duplicate*, 141
  - " *model*, 243
- immaculate, *innocent*, 220

  - " *perfect*, 268
  - " *pure*, 296
- immanent, *inherent*, 218
- immature, *youthful*, 375
- immeasurable, *infinite*, 216
- *immediately*, 211
- immemorial, *old*, 257
  - " *primeval*, 287
- immense, *large*, 229
- immerge, *immerse*, 212
- *immerse*, 212
- immigrate, *emigrate*, 147
- *imminent*, 212
- immobility, *apathy*, 50
- immoral, *criminal*, 120
- immorality, *sin*, 332
- immortal, *eternal*, 157
- immovable, *obstinate*, 256
- immunity, *right*, 319
- immutable, *permanent*, 269
- [536]impact, *collision*, 109
- impairment, *injury*, 219
- impart, *give*, 185
- impartial, *candid*, 93
- impartiality, *justice*, 225
- impassibility, *apathy*, 50
- impatience, *anger*, 44
- impatient, *eager*, 142
  - " *restive*, 314
- impeach, *arraign*, 56
- impede, *hinder*, 199
  - " *obstruct*, 257
- *impediment*, 213
- impel, *drive*, 140
  - " *influence*, 217
  - " *persuade*, 271
  - " *send*, 327
- impending, *imminent*, 212
- imperative, *absolute*, 8
- imperfection, *blemish*, 82
- imperious, *absolute*, 8
  - " *dogmatic*, 137
- imperishable, *eternal*, 157
- impertinence, *impudence*, 213
  - " *pertness*, 271
- impertinent, *alien*, *a.*, 29

  - " *meddlesome*, 238
- imperturbable, *calm*, 91
- impetuous, *eager*, 142
  - " *fierce*, 171
- implement, *tool*, 358
- implicate, *involve*, 223
- implication, *suggestion*, 347
- implore, *ask*, 59
  - " *plead*, 274
  - " *pray*, 281
- imply, *allude*, 36
  - " *involve*, 223
- impolite, *bluff*, 83
- importunate, *eager*, 142
- importune, *pray*, 281
- impose on, *abuse*, 12
- imposing, *awful*, 70
- imposition, *deception*, 123
  - " *fraud*, 177
- impostor, *hypocrite*, 204
- imposture, *artifice*, 58
  - " *fraud*, 177
- imprecation, *oath*, 254
- impressibility, *sensibility*, 328
- impression, *idea*, 206
  - " *trace*, 359
- imprisonment, *fetter*, 169
- impromptu, *extemporaneous*, 163
- improve, *amend*, 41
- improvement, *profit*, 288
  - " *progress*, 289
- improvised, *extemporaneous*, 163
- *impudence*, 213
  - " *assurance*, 61
  - " *effrontery*, 144
  - " *pertness*, 271
- impulse, *appetite*, 54
- impulsive, *spontaneous*, 340
- impute, *attribute*, *v.*, 65
- inactive, *idle*, 208
  - " *slow*, 337
- in addition, *also*, 37
- inadvertence, *neglect*, 251
- inapposite, *incongruous*, 214
- inappropriate, *alien*, *a.*, 29
  - " *incongruous*, 214

- inasmuch as, *because*, 77
- inattention, *neglect*, 251
- inattentive, *abstracted*, 11
- inauguration, *beginning*, 78
- inborn, *inherent*, 218
- inbred, *inherent*, 218
- incandescence, *light*, 231
- incapacity, *idiocy*, 207
- inception, *beginning*, 78
- incessant, *continual*, 117
- incident, *accident*, 14
  - " *circumstance*, 105
  - " *event*, 158
  - " *story*, 343
- incinerate, *burn*, 87
  - " *influence*, 217
- incipience, *beginning*, 78
- incite, *abet*, 4
  - " *persuade*, 271
- incivility, *impudence*, 213
- inclination, *aim*, 26
  - " *appetite*, 54
  - " *attachment*, 63
  - " *desire*, 128
  - " *direction*, 132
  - " *fancy*, 167
- incline, *bend*, 79
  - " *draw*, 138
  - " *influence*, 217
  - " *persuade*, 271
  - " *tip*, 357
- inclined, *addicted*, 19
- include, *involve*, 223
- incommensurable, *incongruous*, 214
- incomparable, *rare*, 300
- incompatible, *incongruous*, 214
- incomprehensible, *mysterious*, 247
  - " *obscure*, 255
- inconclusive, *absurd*, 11
- *incongruous*, 214
- inconsiderate, *bluff*, 83
- inconsistency, *difference*, 131
- inconsistent, *incongruous*, 214
- inconstant, *vain*, 364
- incorrect, *absurd*, 11
- incorrupt, *pure*, 296

- incorruptible, *faithful*, 165
- increase, *add*, 18
    - " *amplify*, 43
    - " *harvest*, 192
    - " *progress*, 289
- incredulity, *doubt*, *n.*, 138
- incubus, *load*, 233
- inculcate, *teach*, 353
- incursion, *attack*, *n.*, 64
- indecision, *doubt*, *n.*, 138
- indefinite, *equivocal*, 155
- indemnity, *subsidy*, 345
- independence, *liberty*, 230
- indeterminate, *equivocal*, 155
- indicate, *allude*, 36
- indication, *characteristic*, 103
    - " *sign*, 332
- indict, *arraign*, 56
- indifference, *apathy*, 50
    - " *neglect*, 251
- [537]indifferent, *abstracted*, 11
- indigence, *poverty*, 279
- indigenous, *native*, 248
    - " *primeval*, 287
- indignation, *anger*, 44
- indispensable, *inherent*, 218
- indispensability, *necessity*, 250
- indispensable, *necessary*, 250
- indispensableness, *necessity*, 250
- indisposed, *reluctant*, 308
- indisposition, *disease*, 134
- indistinct, *equivocal*, 155
    - " *faint*, 164
    - " *obscure*, 255
- individually, *apiece*, 51
- indoctrinate, *teach*, 353
- indolent, *idle*, 208
- indomitable, *obstinate*, 256
- indubitable, *evident*, 159
- induce, *draw*, 138
    - " *influence*, 217
    - " *persuade*, 271
- *induction*, 215
    - " *demonstration*, 127
- *industrious*, 215
    - " *active*, 17

- *industry*, 216
- indwelling, *inherent*, 218
- ineffectual, *vain*, 364
- inelegant, *rustic*, 321
- inequality, *difference*, 131
- inert, *idle*, 208
    - " *slow*, 337
- inevitable, *necessary*, 250
- inexorable, *severe*, 329
- inexplicable, *mysterious*, 247
- infallible, *necessary*, 250
- infatuated, *absurd*, 11
- infect, *defile*, 124
- infection, *contagion*, 117
- inference, *demonstration*, 127
    - " *induction*, 215
- infidel, *skeptic*, 334
- infirmity, *disease*, 134
- *infinite*, 216
- infixed, *inherent*, 218
- inflexible, *severe*, 329
    - " *obstinate*, 256
- *influence*, 217
    - " *bend*, 79
    - " *govern*, 185
    - " *operation*, 258
    - " *persuade*, 271
- inform, *state*, 341
    - " *teach*, 353
- information, *education*, 143
    - " *knowledge*, 227
    - " *wisdom*, 372
- informed, *conscious*, 116
- infrequent, *rare*, 300
- infringement, *attack*, *n.*, 64
- ingathering, *harvest*, 192
- ingenious, *clever*, 109
    - " *skilful*, 335
- ingenuity, *address*, *n.*, 20
- ingenuous, *candid*, 93
    - " *honest*, 202
- ingenuousness, *veracity*, 367
- ingleside, *home*, 201
- ingrained, *inherent*, 218
    - " *radical*, 299
- ingredient, *part*, 264

- ingress, *entrance*, 154
- inhabit, *abide*, 5
- inharmonious, *incongruous*, 214
- *inherent*, 218
- inhering, *inherent*, 218
- inhibit, *prohibit*, 290
- inhuman, *barbarous*, 73
- iniquitous, *criminal*, 120
- iniquity, *abomination*, 7
  - " *injustice*, 220
  - " *sin*, 332
- initiate, *teach*, 353
- initiation, beginning, 78
- injunction, *order*, 258
- injure, *abuse*, 12
- injurious, *pernicious*, 270
- *injury*, 219
  - " *blemish*, 82
  - " *injustice*, 220
- *injustice*, 220
  - " *injury*, 219
- inlet, *entrance*, 154
- in like manner, *also*, 37
- innate, *inherent*, 218
  - " *native*, 248
  - " *radical*, 299
- *innocent*, 220
  - " *candid*, 93
  - " *pure*, 296
- innocuous, *innocent*, 220
- innovation, *change*, *n.*, 101
- innoxious, *innocent*, 220
- innuendo, *suggestion*, 347
- innumerable, *infinite*, 216
- inoffensive, *innocent*, 220
- inquiring, *inquisitive*, 221
- inquisition, *hunt*, 203
- *inquisitive*, 221
- insalubrious, *pernicious*, 270
- *insanity*, 221
- inscription, *record*, 304
- inscrutable, *mysterious*, 247
- insecure, *precarious*, 282
- insecurity, *danger*, 121
- insensibility, *apathy*, 50
  - " *stupidity*, 344

    - " *stupor*, 344
- insensible, *brutish*, 87
- inseparable, *inherent*, 218
- insight, *acumen*, 18
    - " *wisdom*, 372
- insinuate, *allude*, 36
- insinuation, *suggestion*, 347
- insolence, *effrontery*, 144
    - " *impudence*, 213
    - " *pride*, 286
- inspect, *look*, 234
- inspection, *oversight*, 260
- inspiration, *enthusiasm*, 153
- in spite of, *notwithstanding, prep.*, 254
- instalment, *part*, 264
- instance, *precedent*, 282
    - " *sample*, 323
- instanter, *immediately*, 211
- instantly, *immediately*, 211
- instigate, *abet*, 4
    - [538]" *influence*, 217
- instill, *teach*, 353
- instinct, *mind*, 241
- instinctive, *spontaneous*, 340
- instruct, *teach*, 353
- instruction, *education*, 143
    - " *order*, 258
- instrument, *agent*, 24
    - " *record*, 304
    - " *tool*, 358
- insubordinate, *rebellious*, 304
- insubordination, *revolution*, 317
- insult, *affront*, 24
- insurrection, *revolution*, 317
- integrity, *justice*, 225
    - " *virtue*, 370
- intellect, *mind*, 241
- intellectual, *clever*, 109
- intelligence, *knowledge*, 227
    - " *mind*, 241
- intelligent, *clever*, 109
    - " *sagacious*, 322
- intelligible, *clear*, 107
- intemperance, *excess*, 160
- intense, *eager*, 142
- intensity, *enthusiasm*, 153

- intent, *a.*, *eager*, 142
- intent, *n.*, *aim*, 26
    - " *design*, 128
    - " *end*, *n.*, 148
- intention, *aim*, 26
    - " *design*, 128
- intentness, *industry*, 216
- inter, *hide*, 197
- intercede, *interpose*, 222
- intercept, *interpose*, 222
- interchangeable, *mutual*, 246
    - " *synonymous*, 349
- intercourse, *conversation*, 118
- interdict, *prohibit*, 290
- interest, *entertain*, 152
- interfere, *interpose*, 222
- intermeddle, *interpose*, 222
- interminable, *eternal*, 157
    - " *infinite*, 216
- intermission, *rest*, 313
- intermit, *cease*, 98
- internal, *inherent*, 218
- *interpose*, 222
- interpretation, *definition*, 124
- interrupt, *hinder*, 199
    - " *interpose*, 222
    - " *obstruct*, 257
- in the midst of, *amid*, 42
- intimacy, *acquaintance*, 15
- intimate, *allude*, 36
- intimation, *suggestion*, 347
- intimidate, *frighten*, 180
- intolerance, *fanaticism*, 166
- intractable, *obstinate*, 256
    - " *perverse*, 272
    - " *rebellious*, 304
    - " *restive*, 314
- intrepid, *brave*, 85
- intrepidity, *prowess*, 294
- intricate, *complex*, 112
    - " *obscure*, 255
- intrinsic, *inherent*, 218
- introduce, *allege*, 31
- introduction, *entrance*, 154
- introductory, *previous*, 285
- intrusion, *attack*, *n.*, 64

- intrusive, *inquisitive*, 221
    - " *meddlesome*, 238
- intrusiveness, *impudence*, 213
- intuition, *knowledge*, 227
- intuitive, *transcendental*, 361
- invade, *attack*, *v.*, 63
- invariable, *continual*, 117
    - " *permanent*, 269
- invasion, *attack*, *n.*, 64
- inveigle, *allure*, 37
- invent, *discover*, 133
- invention, *artifice*, 58
    - " *fiction*, 170
- inventory, *record*, 304
- invoke, *pray*, 281
- involuntary, *spontaneous*, 340
- *involve*, 223
- involved, *complex*, 112
    - " *obscure*, 255
- inwrought, *inherent*, 218
- iota, *particle*, 264
- irate, *bitter*, 81
- ire, *anger*, 44
- irons, *fetter*, 169
- irony, *banter*, 73
- irrational, *absurd*, 11
- irreconcilable, *incongruous*, 214
- irresolute, *faint*, 164
- irresolution, *doubt*, *n.*, 138
- irresponsible, *absolute*, 8
- irrelevant, *alien*, *a.*, 29
- irritate, *affront*, 24
- irritation, *anger*, 44
    - " *pique*, 272
- issue, *v.*, *rise*, 318
- issue, *n.*, *consequence*, 116
    - " *end*, *n.*, 148
    - " *event*, 158
    - " *topic*, 359
- item, *circumstance*, 105

- jabber, *babble*, 71
- jade, *tire*, 357
- jam, *throng*, 356
- jar, *shake*, 330
- jealous, *envious*, 155

- jeer, *sneer*, 337
- jeering, *banter*, 73
- jeopardy, *danger*, 121
    - " *hazard*, 194
- jest, *wit*, 373
- job, *business*, 88
- jocularity, *wit*, 373
- jocund, *happy*, 190
- joggle, *shake*, 330
- join on, *add*, 18
- joint, *mutual*, 246
- joke, *wit*, 373
- jolly, *happy*, 190
- jolt, *shake*, 330
- jot, *particle*, 264
- jounce, *shake*, 330
- *journey*, 223
- joy, *happiness*, 189
- joyful, *happy*, 190
- joyous, *airy*, 27
    - " *happy*, 190
- [539]*judge*, 224
- judgment, *idea*, 206
    - " *prudence*, 294
    - " *wisdom*, 372
- judicious, *sagacious*, 322
- judiciousness, *prudence*, 294
    - " *wisdom*, 372
- jumble, *displace*, 135
- junction, *union*, 362
- juncture, *union*, 362
- junto, *cabal*, 90
- jurisprudence, *law*, 229
- just, *a.*, *honest*, 202
- just, *adv.*, *but*, 89
- *justice*, 225
    - " *judge*, 224
    - " *virtue*, 370
- justification, *apology*, 51
    - " *defense*, 123
- justness, *justice*, 225
- juvenile, *new*, 252
    - " *youthful*, 375

- keen, *astute*, 62
    - " *clever*, 109

  - " *eager*, 142
  - " *fine*, 172
  - " *sagacious*, 322
- keenness, *acumen*, 18
- keen-sighted, *sagacious*, 322
- keen-witted, *sagacious*, 322
- *keep*, 226
  - " *celebrate*, 99
  - " *restrain*, 315
  - " *support*, 348
- keep back, *restrain*, 315
- keep down, *restrain*, 315
- keep in, *restrain*, 315
- keep under, *restrain*, 315
- keep up, *support*, 348
- *kill*, 226
- *kin*, 227
- kind, *amiable*, 42
  - " *friendly*, 178
  - " *humane*, 203
  - " *kin*, 227
  - " *pleasant*, 275
  - " *propitious*, 291
- kind-hearted, *humane*, 203
- kind-heartedness, *benevolence*, 80
- kindle, *burn*, 87
- kindliness, *benevolence*, 80
- kindly, *friendly*, 178
  - " *pleasant*, 275
  - " *propitious*, 291
- kindness, *benevolence*, 80
  - " *mercy*, 239
- kindred, *a.*, *alike*, 30
- kindred, *n.*, *kin*, 227
- kinglike, *royal*, 320
- kingly, *royal*, 320
- kiss, *caress*, 95
- kitchen-gardening, *agriculture*, 25
- knack, *ease*, 143
- knock, *blow*, 83
- knowing, *astute*, 62
  - " *clever*, 109
- *knowledge*, 227
  - " *acquaintance*, 15
  - " *education*, 143
  - " *science*, 325

  - " *wisdom*, 372

- labor, *industry*, 216
  - " *work*, 374
- laborious, *difficult*, 132
- lacerate, *rend*, 309
- laconic, *terse*, 354
- lading, *load*, 233
- lament, *mourn*, 246
- lamentable, *pitiful*, 273
- lance, *send*, 327
- land, *reach*, 300
- landmark, *boundary*, 84
- lane, *way*, 372
- *language*, 228
  - " *diction*, 130
  - " *speech*, 339
- languid, *faint*, 164
- *large*, 229
  - " *plentiful*, 276
- largess, *gift*, 184
- lascivious, *brutish*, 87
- lash, *blow*, 83
- lasting, *permanent*, 269
- latch, *lock*, 234
- late, *new*, 252
- laudation, *praise*, 280
- laughable, *queer*, 297
- launch, *send*, 327
- laurels, *fame*, 166
- lave, *cleanse*, 107
- lavish, *plentiful*, 276
- lavishness, *excess*, 160
- *law*, 229
  - " *justice*, 225
- lawfulness, *justice*, 225
- lawlessness, *revolution*, 317
- lay, *put*, 296
- lay hold of, *catch*, 97
- lazy, *idle*, 208
- lead, *draw*, 138
  - " *influence*, 217
  - " *persuade*, 271
- league, *alliance*, 34
- lean, *tip*, 357
- learner, *scholar*, 324

- learning, *education*, 143
    - " *knowledge*, 227
    - " *wisdom*, 372
- leave, *abandon*, 1
    - " *permission*, 269
- leave-off, *cease*, 98
- leave-taking, *farewell*, 168
- legality, *justice*, 225
- legate, *delegate*, 125
- legend, *fiction*, 170
    - " *story*, 343
- legions, *army*, 56
- legislation, *law*, 229
- legitimate, *authentic*, 67
- leisure, *vacant*, 363
- lengthen, *protract*, 293
- lenience, *mercy*, 239
- leniency, *mercy*, 239
    - " *patience*, 265
- lenity, *mercy*, 239
- lessen, *abate*, 3
    - " *alleviate*, 33
- let, *allow*, 35
- [540]let go, *surrender*, 349
- lethargy, *apathy*, 50
    - " *stupor*, 344
- level, *horizontal*, 202
- liable, *likely*, 232
- libel, *slander*, 336
- liberal, *generous*, 182
    - " *plentiful*, 276
- liberality, *benevolence*, 80
- liberate, *absolve*, 9
- *liberty*, 230
    - " *permission*, 269
    - " *right*, 319
- license, *liberty*, 230
    - " *permission*, 269
    - " *right*, 319
- lie, *deception*, 123
- life, *behavior*, 79
- life, public, *career*, 95
- lift, *carry*, 96
- light, *a.*, *airy*, 27
- *light*, *n.*, 231
    - " *knowledge*, 227

- lighten, *alleviate*, 33
- like, *alike*, 30
    - " *likely*, 232
    - " *synonymous*, 349
- *likely*, 232
    - " *apparent*, 52
- likeness, *analogy*, 43
    - " *approximation*, 55
    - " *duplicate*, 141
- likewise, *also*, 37
- liking, *appetite*, 54
    - " *fancy*, 167
    - " *love*, 235
- limit, *boundary*, 84
    - " *end, n.*, 148
- limitless, *infinite*, 216
- limpid, *clear*, 107
- line, *boundary*, 84
- line of achievement, *career*, 95
- line of battle, *array*, 57
- lingering, *slow*, 337
- liquid, *fluid*, 174
- list, *listen*, 232
    - " *tip*, 357
- *listen*, 232
- listless, *abstracted*, 11
    - " *faint*, 164
- literal, *verbal*, 368
- literary productions, *literature*, 233
- literary works, *literature*, 233
- *literature*, 233
- litter, *flock*, 173
- little, *minute*, 242
- live, *v.*, *abide*, 5
- live, *a.*, *alive*, 30
- liveliness, *pertness*, 271
- lively, *active*, 17
    - " *airy*, 27
    - " *alert*, 28
    - " *alive*, 30
    - " *nimble*, 253
    - " *racy*, 299
- living, *alive*, 30
- living creature, *animal*, 45
- living organism, *animal*, 45
- *load*, 233

- loath, *reluctant*, 308
- loathe, *abhor*, 5
- *lock*, 234
- lodge, *abide*, 5
    - " *association*, 60
- lofty, *high*, 198
- loneliness, *retirement*, 315
- long, *large*, 229
- longing, *appetite*, 54
    - " *desire*, 128
    - " *eager*, 142
- long-suffering, *patience*, 265
- *look*, *v.*, 234
    - " *appear*, 52
- look, *n.*, *air*, 27
- look forward to, *anticipate*, 47
- loquacious, *garrulous*, 181
- lordly, *absolute*, 8
- Lord's Supper, *sacrament*, 331
- lore, *knowledge*, 227
- loss, *injury*, 219
- lot, *flock*, 173
    - " *portion*, 279
- lovable, *amiable*, 42
- *love*, *v.*, 235
    - " *admire*, 23
- love, *n.*, *attachment*, 63
    - " *friendship*, 179
- lovely, *amiable*, 42
    - " *beautiful*, 76
- loving, *amiable*, 42
    - " *friendly*, 178
- lower, *abase*, 2
    - " *abate*, 3
    - " *disparage*, 134
- lower classes, *mob*, 243
- loyal, *faithful*, 165
- loyalty, *allegiance*, 32
- lucid, *clear*, 107
- lucky, *fortunate*, 177
    - " *happy*, 190
- ludicrous, *absurd*, 11
    - " *queer*, 297
- lunacy, *insanity*, 221
- lure, *allure*, 37
    - " *draw*, 138

- luscious, *delicious*, 126
- lust, *appetite*, 54
- luster, *light*, 231
- luxuriant, *plentiful*, 276
- lying, *deception*, 123

- machination, *artifice*, 58
- machine, *tool*, 358
- madness, *insanity*, 221
- magisterial, *dogmatic*, 137
- magnanimous, *generous*, 182
- magnificent, *royal*, 320
- mail, *arms*, 55
- maintain, *allege*, 31
  - " *keep*, 226
  - " *state*, 341
  - " *support*, 348
- majestic, *awful*, 70
  - " *royal*, 320
- *make*, 236
  - " *compel*, 111
- make better, *amend*, 41
- make haste, *quicken*, 297
- make known, *announce*, 46
- [541]make out, *make*, 236
- make prisoner, *arrest*, 57
- make up, *add*, 18
  - " *make*, 236
- make use of, *employ*, 147
- make void, *cancel*, 92
- make white, *bleach*, 82
- maladroit, *awkward*, 70
- malady, *disease*, 134
- male, *masculine*, 237
- malediction, *oath*, 254
- malevolence, *enmity*, 152
  - " *hatred*, 193
- malice, *enmity*, 152
  - " *hatred*, 193
- malign, *abuse*, 12
  - " *slander*, 336
- malignity, *acrimony*, 15
  - " *enmity*, 152
  - " *hatred*, 193
- maltreat, *abuse*, 12
- manacles, *fetter*, 169

- manage, *govern*, 185
- manageable, *docile*, 136
- management, *care*, 94
    - " *oversight*, 260
- mandate, *law*, 229
    - " *order*, 258
- maneuver, *artifice*, 58
- manful, *masculine*, 237
- mangle, *rend*, 309
- mania, *insanity*, 221
- manifest, *clear*, 107
    - " *evident*, 159
- manifestation, *revelation*, 316
    - " *sign*, 332
- manifold, *complex*, 112
- manlike, *masculine*, 237
- manly, *masculine*, 237
- manner, *air*, 27
    - " *behavior*, 79
    - " *system*, 350
- manners, *address*, *n.*, 20
    - " *behavior*, 79
- mannish, *masculine*, 237
- manufacture, *make*, 236
- marauder, *robber*, 320
- marches, *boundary*, 84
- marge, *bank*, 72
    - " *boundary*, 84
- margin, *bank*, 72
    - " *boundary*, 84
- marine, *nautical*, 248
- maritime, *nautical*, 248
- mark, *aim*, 26
    - " *characteristic*, 103
    - " *sign*, 332
    - " *trace*, 359
- market-gardening, *agriculture*, 25
- *marriage*, 236
- *masculine*, 237
- mask, *v.*, *hide*, 197
- mask, *n.*, *pretense*, 283
- mass, *throng*, 356
- *massacre*, 237
    - " *kill*, 226
- masses, *mob*, 243
- massive, *large*, 229

- master, *attain*, 64
    - " *conquer*, 115
- mastery, *victory*, 369
- mate, *associate*, 60
- material, *physical*, 272
- matrimony, *marriage*, 236
- matter, *topic*, 359
- maxim, *proverb*, 293
- means, *agent*, 24
- measure, *meter*, 240
- measureless, *infinite*, 216
- mechanic, *artist*, 58
- mechanism, *tool*, 358
- meddle, *interpose*, 222
- *meddlesome*, 238
    - " *inquisitive*, 221
- meddling, *inquisitive*, 221
    - " *meddlesome*, 238
- mediate, *interpose*, 222
- meditate, *deliberate*, 135
- meet, *becoming*, 77
- meeting, *collision*, 109
    - " *company*, 110
- melancholy, *grief*, 187
- meliorate, *amend*, 41
- *melody*, 238
- member, *part*, 264
    - " *term*, 354
- memoir, *history*, 200
- memorandum, *record*, 304
- memorial, *record*, 304
    - " *trace*, 359
- memorials, *history*, 200
- *memory*, 239
- mend, *amend*, 41
- mendicancy, *poverty*, 279
- mention, *allude*, 36
- mercenary, *auxiliary*, 67
    - " *venal*, 365
- merciful, *humane*, 203
    - " *propitious*, 291
- merciless, *barbarous*, 73
- *mercy*, 239
    - " *pardon*, 262
    - " *pity*, 273
- mere, *pure*, 296

- merely, *but*, 89
- merriment, *entertainment*, 153
    - " *happiness*, 189
- merry, *happy*, 190
- metamorphose, *change*, *v.*, 100
- metaphor, *allegory*, 33
- mete out, *allot*, 34
- *meter*, 240
    - " *poetry*, 277
- method, *system*, 350
- metrical composition, *poetry*, 277
- metropolis, *capital*, 94
- middle, *center*, 99
- midst, *center*, 99
    - " (in the midst of), *amid*, 42
- mien, *air*, 27
- might, *power*, 279
- migrate, *emigrate*, 147
- mildness, *mercy*, 239
- military, *army*, 56
- mimicry, *caricature*, 95
- *mind*, 241
- mingled, *heterogeneous*, 196
    - " *complex*, 112
- [542]mingled with, *amid*, 42
- *minute*, 242
    - " *fine*, 172
- miraculous, *supernatural*, 347
- mirth, *happiness*, 189
- mirthful, *happy*, 190
- misadventure, *accident*, 14
    - " *misfortune*, 242
- miscellaneous, *heterogeneous*, 196
- mischance, *catastrophe*, 97
    - " *misfortune*, 242
- mischief, *injury*, 219
- mischievous, *pernicious*, 270
- misdeed, *sin*, 332
- misemploy, *abuse*, 12
- miserable, *pitiful*, 273
- miserly, *avaricious*, 68
- miserliness, *frugality*, 180
- misery, *misfortune*, 242
- *misfortune*, 242
    - " *accident*, 14
    - " *blow*, 83

    - " *catastrophe*, 97
- misgiving, *alarm*, 28
    - " *anxiety*, 49
    - " *doubt*, *n.*, 138
    - " *fear*, 168
- mishap, *accident*, 14
    - " *catastrophe*, 97
    - " *misfortune*, 242
- mislay, *displace*, 135
- mismatched, *incongruous*, 214
- mismated, *incongruous*, 214
- misplace, *displace*, 135
- mistaken, *absurd*, 11
- mistrust, *doubt*, *v.*, 137
- misuse, *abuse*, 12
- mite, *particle*, 264
- mitigate, *abate*, 3
    - " *alleviate*, 33
    - " *amend*, 41
    - " *palliate*, 261
- mixed, *complex*, 112
    - " *heterogeneous*, 196
- *mob*, 243
- mobile, *active*, 17
- mock, *sneer*, 337
- mockery, *banter*, 73
- mode, *system*, 350
- *model*, 243
    - " *example*, 160
    - " *idea*, 206
    - " *ideal*, 206
- moderate, *v.*, *abate*, 3
    - " *alleviate*, 33
- moderate, *a.*, *slow*, 337
- moderation, *abstinence*, 10
- modern, *new*, 252
- *modesty*, 244
- modify, *change*, *v.*, 100
- mold, *bend*, 79
    - " *govern*, 185
- mold, *model*, 243
- molder, *decay*, 122
- molecule, *particle*, 264
- molest, *abuse*, 12
- mollify, *allay*, 31
- momentary, *transient*, 361

- monetary, *financial*, 172
- *money*, 244
- monomania, *insanity*, 221
- monstrous, *absurd*, 11
- mood, *fancy*, 167
- mop, *cleanse*, 107
- morality, *religion*, 307
    - " *virtue*, 370
- moreover, *but*, 89
- *morose*, 245
    - " *severe*, 329
- moroseness, *acrimony*, 15
- mortification, *chagrin*, 100
- mortify, *abash*, 3
- mother tongue, *language*, 228
- *motion*, 245
    - " *act*, 16
    - " *topic*, 359
- motive, *cause*, 98
    - " *reason, n.*, 302
- motto, *proverb*, 293
- *mourn*, 246
- mournful, *pitiful*, 273
- mourning, *grief*, 187
- move, *v.*, *carry*, 96
    - " *convey*, 119
    - " *influence*, 217
    - " *persuade*, 271
- move, *n.*, *motion*, 245
- movement, *act*, 16
    - " *motion*, 245
- mover, *agent*, 24
- moving, *pitiful*, 273
- muddy, *obscure*, 255
- mulish, *restive*, 314
    - " *obstinate*, 256
- multiform, *complex*, 112
- multitude, *army*, 56
    - " *company*, 110
    - " *throng*, 356
- munificence, *benevolence*, 80
- munificent, *generous*, 182
    - " *royal*, 320
- muniment, *record*, 304
- muniments, *history*, 200
- murder, *kill*, 226

- murky, *dark*, 122
- murmur, *babble*, 71
    - " *complain*, 112
- music, *melody*, 238
- muster, *convoke*, 120
- mutation, *change, n.*, 101
- mute, *taciturn*, 351
- mutinous, *rebellious*, 304
    - " *restive*, 314
- mutiny, *revolution*, 317
- *mutual*, 246
- *mysterious*, 247
    - " *dark*, 122
    - " *obscure*, 255
- mystic, *mysterious*, 247
- mystical, *mysterious*, 247
- myth, *fiction*, 170
    - " *story*, 343

- naive, *candid*, 93
- *name*, 247
    - " *term*, 354
- narration, *history*, 200
    - " *report*, 311
    - " *story*, 343
- [543]narrative, *history*, 200
    - " *report*, 311
    - " *story*, 343
- natal, *native*, 248
- nation, *people*, 266
- *native*, 248
    - " *inherent*, 218
    - " *radical*, 299
- natty, *neat*, 249
- natural, *inherent*, 218
    - " *native*, 248
    - " *normal*, 253
    - " *physical*, 272
    - " *radical*, 299
- nature, *character*, 102
- nauseate, *abhor*, 5
- *nautical*, 248
- naval, *nautical*, 248
- near, *adjacent*, 22
- nearness, *approximation*, 55
- *neat*, 249

  - " *becoming*, 77
  - " *terse*, 354
- *necessary*, 150
- necessitate, *compel*, 111
- *necessity*, 250
  - " *predestination*, 282
- need, *necessity*, 250
  - " *poverty*, 279
- needed, *necessary*, 250
- needful, *necessary*, 250
- nefarious, *criminal*, 120
- *neglect*, 251
- neglectfulness, *neglect*, 251
- negligence, *neglect*, 251
- negligent, *abstracted*, 11
- negotiate, *transact*, 360
- neighborhood, *approximation*, 55
- neighboring, *adjacent*, 22
- neighborly, *friendly*, 178
- neophyte, *convert*, 119
- never-ending, *eternal*, 157
- never-failing, *eternal*, 157
- nevertheless, *but*, 89
  - " *notwithstanding, conj.*, 254
- *new*, 252
- new-fangled, *new*, 252
- new-fashioned, *new*, 252
- new-made, *new*, 252
- next, *adjacent*, 22
- nice, *fine*, 172
  - " *neat*, 249
  - " *tasteful*, 352
- niggardly, *avaricious*, 68
- nigh, *adjacent*, 22
- *nimble*, 253
  - " *active*, 17
  - " *alert*, 28
- noble, *awful*, 70
  - " *generous*, 182
  - " *high*, 198
- noise, *sound*, 338
- noisome, *pernicious*, 279
- non-conformist, *heretic*, 196
- non-homogeneous, *heterogeneous*, 196
- nonsensical, *absurd*, 11
- *normal*, 253

  - " *general*, 181
  - " *usual*, 368
- note, *remark*, 308
  - " *sign*, 332
  - " *sound*, 338
- notes, *money*, 244
- notify, *announce*, 46
- notion, *idea*, 206
- notoriety, *fame*, 166
- *notwithstanding*, *prep.*, 254
- *notwithstanding*, *conj.*, 254
  - " *but*, 89
- nourish, *cherish*, 104
- nourishment, *food*, 175
- novel, *a.*, *new*, 252
- novel, *n.*, *fiction*, 170
  - " *story*, 343
- novelty, *change*, *n.*, 101
- novice, *amateur*, 39
- now, *immediately*, 211
  - " *yet*, 374
- noxious, *pernicious*, 270
- nugatory, *vain*, 364
- nuisance, *abomination*, 7
- null, *vain*, 364
- nullify, *abolish*, 6
  - " *cancel*, 92
- number, *calculate*, 90
- numberless, *infinite*, 216
- numbers, *poetry*, 277
- nuptials, *marriage*, 236
- nurse, *cherish*, 104
- nurture, *cherish*, 104
  - " *education*, 143
  - " *teach*, 353
- nutriment, *food*, 175
- nutrition, *food*, 175

- *oath*, 254
- obdurate, *obstinate*, 256
- obedience, *allegiance*, 32
- obedient, *docile*, 136
- obey, *follow*, 174
  - " *keep*, 226
- obiter dictum, *precedent*, 282
- object, *aim*, 26

  - " *design*, 128
  - " *reason, n.*, 302
- objective, *subjective*, 345
- objurgation, *reproof*, 311
- obligation, *contract*, 118
  - " *duty*, 142
- oblige, *bind*, 81
  - " *compel*, 111
- obliging, *pleasant*, 275
  - " *polite*, 277
- obliterate, *abolish*, 6
  - " *cancel*, 92
- oblivion, *pardon, n.*, 262
- oblivious, *abstracted*, 11
- *obscure*, 255
  - " *complex*, 112
  - " *dark*, 122
  - " *equivocal*, 155
  - " *mysterious*, 247
- observance, *sacrament*, 321
- observation, *remark*, 308
- observe, *celebrate*, 99
  - " *discern*, 133
  - " *follow*, 174
  - " *keep*, 226
- obsolescent, *obsolete*, 256
- [544]*obsolete*, 256
- obstacle, *barrier*, 74
  - " *impediment*, 213
- *obstinate*, 256
  - " *restive*, 314
  - " *perverse*, 272
- *obstruct*, 257
  - " *hinder*, 199
- obstruction, *barrier*, 74
  - " *impediment*, 313
- obtain, *attain*, 64
  - " *get*, 183
  - " *purchase*, 295
- obtrusive, *meddlesome*, 238
- obtuseness, *stupidity*, 344
- obviate, *prevent*, 284
- obvious, *clear*, 107
  - " *evident*, 159
- occasion, *cause*, 98
  - " *make*, 236

- occult, *mysterious*, 247
- occupation, *business*, 88
    - " *exercise*, 162
    - " *work*, 374
- occupied, *industrious*, 215
- occupy, *entertain*, 152
    - " *have*, 194
- occur, *happen*, 188
- occurrence, *circumstance*, 105
    - " *event*, 158
- ocean, *a.*, *nautical*, 248
- oceanic, *nautical*, 248
- odd, *queer*, 297
    - " *rare*, 300
- offend, *affront*, 24
- offense, *abomination*, 7
    - " *anger*, 44
    - " *pique*, 272
    - " *sin*, 332
- offer, *v.*, *allege*, 31
- offer, *n.*, *proposal*, 292
- offhand, *extemporaneous*, 163
- office, *duty*, 142
- officious, *active*, 17
    - " *meddlesome*, 238
- officiousness, *impudence*, 213
- *old*, 257
    - " *obsolete*, 256
    - " *primeval*, 287
- olden, *old*, 257
- old-fashioned, *antique*, 48
- omen, *sign*, 332
- omission, *neglect*, 251
- oneness, *union*, 362
- onerous, *difficult*, 132
- only, *but*, 89
- onset, *attack*, *n.*, 64
- onslaught, *attack*, *n.*, 64
- on the alert, *vigilant*, 369
- on the lookout, *vigilant*, 369
- on the watch, *alert*, 28
- opaque, *dark*, 122
- open, *bluff*, 83
    - " *candid*, 93
    - " *evident*, 159
- open-handed, *generous*, 182

- open-hearted, *generous*, 182
- opening, *beginning*, 78
  - " *entrance*, 154
- *operation*, 258
  - " *act*, 16
  - " *exercise*, 162
- operative, *artist*, 58
- operator, *agent*, 24
- opinion, *faith*, 164
  - " *idea*, 206
- opinionated, *dogmatic*, 137
  - " *obstinate*, 256
- opponent, *enemy*, 151
- oppose, *contrast*, 118
  - " *hinder*, 199
  - " *obstruct*, 257
- opposed, *alien, a.*, 29
  - " *reluctant*, 308
- opposition, *ambition*, 40
  - " *antipathy*, 48
  - " *collision*, 109
- oppress, *abuse*, 12
- option, *alternative*, 38
- oral, *verbal*, 368
- oration, *speech*, 339
- oratory, *speech*, 339
- *order*, 258
  - " *array*, 57
  - " *class*, 106
  - " *law*, 229
  - " *system*, 350
- orderly, *neat*, 249
- order of battle, *array*, 57
- ordinance, *law*, 229
  - " *sacrament*, 321
- ordinary, *general*, 181
  - " *normal*, 253
  - " *usual*, 362
- organic, *radical*, 299
- origin, *beginning*, 78
  - " *cause*, 98
- original, *a.*, *authentic*, 67
  - " *native*, 248
- original, *n.*, *ideal*, 206
  - " *model*, 243
  - " *primeval*, 287

  - " *radical*, 299
  - " *transcendental*, 361
- originator, *cause*, 98
- ornament, *adorn*, 23
- oscillate, *fluctuate*, 173
  - " *shake*, 330
- *ostentation*, 259
  - " *pride*, 286
- ostracize, *banish*, 72
- *ought*, 260
- oust, *banish*, 72
- outcome, *consequence*, 116
  - " *end, n.*, 148
  - " *event*, 158
- outgo, *expense*, 162
- outgrowth, *consequence*, 116
- outlandish, *rustic*, 321
- outlay, *expense*, 162
  - " *price*, 285
- outline, *abridgment*, 7
  - " *sketch*, 334
- out of date, *obsolete*, 256
- outrage, *injury*, 219
- outset, *beginning*, 78
- overawe, *abash*, 3
- [545]overbearing, *absolute*, 8
  - " *dogmatic*, 137
- overcome, *beat*, 75
  - " *conquer*, 115
- over-confidence, *temerity*, 353
- overflowing, *plentiful*, 276
- overlook, *pardon, v.*, 262
- overmaster, *conquer*, 115
- overmatch, *conquer*, 115
- overplus, *excess*, 160
- overpower, *conquer*, 115
- *oversight*, 260
  - " *care*, 94
  - " *neglect*, 251
- overt, *evident*, 159
- overtake, *catch*, 97
- overthrow, *abolish*, 6
  - " *conquer*, 115
  - " *demolish*, 127
  - " *exterminate*, 163
  - " *refute*, 306

  - " *subvert*, 346
- overture, *proposal*, 292
- overturn, *demolish*, 127
  - " *subvert*, 346
- overwhelm, *hide*, 197
  - " *involve*, 223
- own, *avow*, 69
  - " *confess*, 114
  - " *have*, 194

- pabulum, *food*, 175
- pacify, *allay*, 31
- pack, *load*, 233
  - " *flock*, 173
- pact, *contract*, 118
- pageant, *ostentation*, 259
- pageantry, *ostentation*, 259
- *pain*, 261
- pains, *industry*, 216
- palaver, *babble*, 71
- *palliate*, 261
  - " *alleviate*, 33
- palpable, *evident*, 159
- paltry, *pitiful*, 273
- pamper, *caress*, 95
- panegyric, *praise*, 280
- pang, *pain*, 261
- panic, *alarm*, 28
  - " *fear*, 168
- parable, *allegory*, 33
- parade, *array*, 57
  - " *ostentation*, 259
- paradox, *riddle*, 318
- paradoxical, *absurd*, 11
- parapet, *barrier*, 74
- paraphrase, *quote*, 298
- parcel, *portion*, 279
- *pardon, v.*, 262
  - " *absolve*, 9
- *pardon, n.*, 262
  - " *mercy*, 239
- pardonable, *venial*, 367
- parity, *analogy*, 43
- parley, *conversation*, 118
- parody, *caricature*, 95
- paroxysm, *pain*, 261

- parsimonious, *avaricious*, 68
- parsimoniousness, *frugality*, 180
- parsimony, *frugality*, 180
- *part*, *n.*, 264
    - " *particle*, 264
    - " *portion*, 279
- partiality, *prejudice*, 264
- *particle*, 264
- particular, *circumstance*, 105
    - " *minute*, 242
- participation, *association*, 60
- participator, *accessory*, 13
- parting salutation, *farewell*, 168
- partisan, *adherent*, 21
- partner, *accessory*, 13
    - " *associate*, 60
- partnership, *alliance*, 34
    - " *association*, 60
- pass, *way*, 372
- passage, *career*, 95
    - " *motion*, 245
    - " *way*, 372
- passage of arms, *battle*, 74
- passageway, *way*, 372
- pass by, *pardon*, 262
- passing, *transient*, 361
- passion, *anger*, 44
    - " *appetite*, 54
    - " *enthusiasm*, 153
- pass over, *pardon*, 262
- pastime, *entertainment*, 153
- pastoral, *rustic*, 321
- patent, *evident*, 159
- path, *way*, 372
- pathetic, *pitiful*, 273
- pathway, *way*, 372
- *patience*, 265
    - " *industry*, 216
- patois, *language*, 228
- patriarchal, *old*, 257
    - " *primeval*, 287
- pattern, *example*, 160
    - " *idea*, 206
    - " *ideal*, 206
    - " *model*, 243
    - " *precedent*, 282

- pauperism, *poverty*, 279
- pause, *cease*, 98
  - " *rest*, 313
- *pay*, 266
  - " *requite*, 313
- payment, *pay*, 266
- pay off, *requite*, 313
- peace, *rest*, 313
- peaceful, *calm*, 91
- peacefulness, *rest*, 313
- peculiar, *queer*, 297
  - " *rare*, 300
- peculiarity, *characteristic*, 103
- pecuniary, *financial*, 172
- peeping, *inquisitive*, 221
- peer, *associate*, 60
- peevishness, *anger*, 44
- pellucid, *clear*, 107
- penetrating, *astute*, 62
- penetration, *acumen*, 18
  - " *entrance*, 154
- penetrative, *astute*, 62
- penitence, *repentance*, 310
- pension, *subsidy*, 345
- penurious, *avaricious*, 68
- penury, *poverty*, 279
- [546]*people*, 266
- people, dregs of the, *mob*, 243
- *perceive*, 267
  - " *discern*, 133
- perceptible, *evident*, 159
- perception, *knowledge*, 227
  - " *sensation*, 328
- peremptory, *absolute*, 8
- perennial, *eternal*, 157
- *perfect*, 268
  - " *pure*, 296
  - " *radical*, 299
- perform, *do*, 135
  - " *execute*, 161
  - " *make*, 236
  - " *transact*, 360
- performance, *act*, 16
  - " *exercise*, 162
  - " *operation*, 258
  - " *work*, 374

- performer, *agent*, 24
- peril, *danger*, 121
    - " *hazard*, 194
- perilous, *precarious*, 282
- period, *end*, *n.*, 148
    - " *time*, 356
- periphrasis, *circumlocution*, 105
- perish, *die*, 130
- *permanent*, 269
- *permission*, 269
- permit, *a.*, *allow*, 35
    - " *endure*, 150
- permit, *n.*, *permission*, 269
- *pernicious*, 270
- perpetrate, *do*, 135
- perpetual, *continual*, 117
    - " *eternal*, 157
    - " *permanent*, 269
- perplexing, *equivocal*, 155
- *perplexity*, 270
    - " *amazement*, 39
    - " *anxiety*, 49
    - " *care*, 94
    - " *doubt*, *n.*, 138
- persecute, *abuse*, 12
- perseverance, *industry*, 216
- persistence, *industry*, 216
- persistent, *permanent*, 269
    - " *obstinate*, 256
- personality, *character*, 102
- perspicacious, *astute*, 62
    - " *sagacious*, 322
- perspicacity, *acumen*, 18
- perspicuous, *clear*, 107
- *persuade*, 271
    - " *bend*, 79
    - " *influence*, 217
- pertinacious, *obstinate*, 256
- *pertness*, 271
    - " *impudence*, 213
- *perverse*, 272
- pervert, *abuse*, 12
- perverting, *pernicious*, 270
- pestiferous, *pernicious*, 270
- pestilential, *pernicious*, 270
- pet, *caress*, 95

- petition, *ask*, 59
    - " *pray*, 281
- pettishness, *anger*, 44
- petulance, *anger*, 44
- petulant, *perverse*, 272
- phalanx, *army*, 56
- phantasm, *delusion*, 127
- phantasy, *imagination*, 209
- pharisaism, *hypocrisy*, 204
- philanthropy, *benevolence*, 80
- phlegm, *apathy*, 50
- phrase, *diction*, 130
    - " *term*, 354
- phraseology, *diction*, 130
- *physical*, 272
- pick, *alternative*, 38
    - " *choose*, 104
- pick out, *choose*, 104
- picture, *sketch*, 334
- picturesque, *beautiful*, 76
- piece, *part*, 264
- pietism, *hypocrisy*, 204
    - " *religion*, 307
- piety, *religion*, 307
- pile up, *amass*, 38
- pilgrimage, *journey*, 223
- pillager, *robber*, 320
- piquant, *racy*, 299
- *pique*, 272
- pirate, *robber*, 320
- piteous, *pitiful*, 273
- pithy, *terse*, 354
- pitiable, *pitiful*, 273
- *pitiful*, 273
- *pity*, 273
    - " *mercy*, 239
- pitying, *humane*, 203
- place, *put*, 296
- placid, *calm*, 91
- plagiarize, *quote*, 298
- plague, *abomination*, 7
- plain, *clear*, 107
    - " *evident*, 159
    - " *rustic*, 321
- plain-spoken, *bluff*, 83
- plan, *design*, 128

  - " *idea*, 206
  - " *sketch*, 334
- plane, *horizontal*, 202
- *plant*, 274
- plaudit, *praise*, 280
- playfulness, *wit*, 373
- plea, *apology*, 51
- *plead*, 274
  - " *allege*, 31
  - " *pray*, 281
- *pleasant*, 275
  - " *amiable*, 42
  - " *comfortable*, 110
  - " *delightful*, 126
- pleasantry, *wit*, 373
- please, *entertain*, 152
- pleased, *happy*, 190
- pleasing, *amiable*, 42
  - " *delightful*, 126
  - " *pleasant*, 275
- pleasurable, *delightful*, 126
  - " *pleasant*, 275
- pleasure, *entertainment*, 153
  - " *happiness*, 189
- pledge, *contract*, 118
  - [547]" *security*, 326
- plenteous, *plentiful*, 276
- *plentiful*, 276
- pleonasm, *circumlocution*, 105
- pliable, *docile*, 136
- pliant, *docile*, 136
- plunderer, *robber*, 320
- plunge, *immerse*, 212
- poem, *poetry*, 277
- poesy, *poetry*, 277
- *poetry*, 277
- point, *v.*, *allude*, 36
- point, *n.*, *circumstance*, 105
  - " *end*, *n.*, 148
  - " *topic*, 359
- poisonous, *pernicious*, 270
- policy, *polity*, 278
- polished, *fine*, 172
  - " *polite*, 277
- *polite*, 277
- politeness, *address*, *n.*, 20

  - " *refinement*, 305
- *polity*, 278
  - " *law*, 229
- pollute, *defile*, 124
- pommel, *beat*, 75
- pomp, *ostentation*, 259
- pomposity, *ostentation*, 259
- pompousness, *ostentation*, 259
- ponder, *deliberate*, 125
- populace, *mob*, 243
- popular, *general*, 181
- population, *people*, 266
- port, *air*, 27
- portal, *entrance*, 154
- portend, *augur*, 66
- portentous, *awful*, 70
- *portion*, 279
  - " *part*, 264
- portion out, *allot*, 34
- pose, *attitude*, 65
- position, *attitude*, 65
  - " *circumstance*, 105
- positive, *absolute*, 8
  - " *dogmatic*, 137
  - " *radical*, 299
  - " *real*, 301
- possess, *have*, 194
- possession, be in, *have*, 194
- possibility, *accident*, 14
  - " *event*, 158
- postulate, *assume*, 61
- posture, *attitude*, 65
- pound, *beat*, 75
- *poverty*, 279
- *power*, 279
  - " *cause*, 98
- practise, *v.*, *follow*, 174
- practise, *n.*, *exercise*, 162
  - " *habit*, 187
- practised, *skilful*, 335
- *praise*, 280
- prate, *babble*, 71
- prattle, *babble*, 71
- *pray*, 281
  - " *ask*, 59
- *precarious*, 282

- precaution, *care*, 94
- precedent, *a.*, *previous*, 285
- *precedent*, *n.*, 282
    - " *cause*, 98
    - " *example*, 160
- preceding, *previous*, 285
- precept, *doctrine*, 136
    - " *proverb*, 293
- precious, *rare*, 300
- precipitancy, *temerity*, 353
- precipitation, *temerity*, 353
- precipitous, *steep*, 342
- precise, *minute*, 242
- preclude, *prevent*, 284
    - " *prohibit*, 290
- preconception, *prejudice*, 283
- *predestination*, 282
- predicate, *state*, 341
- predict, *augur*, 66
- predilection, *fancy*, 167
- prefer, *choose*, 104
    - " *promote*, 291
- preference, *alternative*, 38
- *prejudice*, 283
    - " *injury*, 219
- preliminary, *previous*, 285
- premium, *subsidy*, 345
- prenomen, *name*, 247
- preoccupied, *abstracted*, 11
- prepared, *alert*, 28
- prepossession, *prejudice*, 283
- preposterous, *absurd*, 11
    - " *queer*, 297
- prerogative, *right*, 319
- presage, *augur*, 66
    - " *sign*, 332
- prescience, *wisdom*, 372
- present, *gift*, 184
- presentiment, *anticipation*, 48
- presently, *immediately*, 211
- preserve, *keep*, 226
- press, *v.*, *plead*, 274
- press, *n.*, *throng*, 356
- press forward, *quicken*, 297
- prestige, *sign*, 332
- presumable, *apparent*, 52

  - " *likely*, 232
- presume, *assume*, 61
- presumption, *assurance*, 61
  - " *impudence*, 213
  - " *prejudice*, 283
  - " *pride*, 286
  - " *temerity*, 353
- pretend, *assume*, 61
- pretender, *hypocrite*, 204
- *pretense*, 283
  - " *hypocrisy*, 204
- pretension, *pretense*, 283
- preternatural, *supernatural*, 347
- pretext, *pretense*, 283
- pretty, *beautiful*, 76
- prevail, *succeed*, 346
- prevailing, *usual*, 362
- prevail over, *conquer*, 115
- prevail upon, *persuade*, 271
- prevalent, *general*, 181
  - " *usual*, 362
- prevarication, *deception*, 123
- *prevent*, 284
  - " *hinder*, 199
  - " *prohibit*, 290
- [548]*previous*, 285
- prevision, *anticipation*, 48
- *price*, 285
- *pride*, 286
- prim, *neat*, 249
- primal, *primeval*, 287
- primary, *primeval*, 287
- prime, *primeval*, 287
- *primeval*, 287
- primitive, *primeval*, 287
  - " *radical*, 299
- primordial, *primeval*, 287
  - " *transcendental*, 361
- princely, *royal*, 320
- principle, *doctrine*, 136
  - " *law*, 229
  - " *reason, n.*, 302
- prior, *previous*, 285
- pristine, *primeval*, 287
- privacy, *retirement*, 315
- privation, *poverty*, 279

- privilege, *right*, 319
- prize, *esteem*, *v.*, 156
- probable, *apparent*, 52
    - " *likely*, 232
- probity, *virtue*, 370
- problem, *riddle*, 318
- procedure, *operation*, 258
- proceed, *rise*, 319
- proceeding, *act*, 16
    - " *transaction*, 360
- proceeds, *harvest*, 192
    - " *profit*, 288
- process, *motion*, 245
- proclaim, *announce*, 46
    - " *avow*, 69
- proclivity, *appetite*, 54
    - " *desire*, 128
- procrastinate, *protract*, 293
- procrastinating, *slow*, 337
- procure, *attain*, 64
    - " *get*, 183
    - " *purchase*, 295
- prodigality, *excess*, 160
- produce, *v.*, *allege*, 31
- produce, *n.*, *harvest*, 192
- product, *harvest*, 192
    - " *work*, 374
- production, *work*, 374
- profane swearing, *oath*, 254
- profanity, *oath*, 254
- profess, *avow*, 69
- profession, *business*, 88
- proficiency, *progress*, 289
- proficient, *skilful*, 335
- *profit*, 288
    - " *utility*, 363
- profitless, *vain*, 364
- profound, *obscure*, 255
- profundity, *wisdom*, 372
- profuse, *plentiful*, 276
- profusion, *excess*, 160
- prognostic, *sign*, 332
- prognosticate, *augur*, 66
- *progress*, 289
- progression, *progress*, 289
- *prohibit*, 290

    - " *abolish*, 6
- prohibition, *barrier*, 74
    - " *order*, 258
- project, *v.*, *send*, 327
- project, *n.*, *design*, 128
- prolixity, *circumlocution*, 105
- prolong, *protract*, 293
- promise, *contract*, 118
- *promote*, 291
    - " *abet*, 4
    - " *quicken*, 297
- promoter, *agent*, 24
    - " *auxiliary*, 67
- prompt, *v.*, *influence*, 217
- prompt, *a.*, *active*, 17
    - " *alert*, 28
    - " *nimble*, 253
- promulgate, *announce*, 46
- prone, *addicted*, 19
- proneness, *appetite*, 54
- pronounce, *speak*, 339
    - " *state*, 341
- proof, *demonstration*, 127
    - " *testimony*, 355
- prop, *support*, 348
- propel, *drive*, 140
    - " *send*, 327
- propensity, *appetite*, 54
    - " *desire*, 128
- proper, *becoming*, 77
- property, *attribute*, *n.*, 66
    - " *characteristic*, 103
    - " *money*, 244
- prophesy, *augur*, 66
- propinquity, *approximation*, 55
- *propitiation*, 291
- *propitious*, 291
- proportion, *analogy*, 43
    - " *portion*, 279
- *proposal*, 292
    - " *design*, 128
- *propose*, 292
- proposition, *proposal*, 292
    - " *topic*, 359
- propound, *announce*, 46
    - " *state*, 341

- prosecute, *arraign*, 56
- proselyte, *convert*, 119
- prosper, *succeed*, 346
- prospered, *fortunate*, 177
- prosperous, *fortunate*, 177
  - " *happy*, 190
- prostitute, *abuse*, 12
- protect, *cherish*, 104
  - " *keep*, 226
  - " *shelter*, 331
- protection, *defense*, 123
- protest, *avow*, 69
  - " *state*, 341
- prototype, *example*, 160
  - " *ideal*, 206
  - " *model*, 243
- *protract*, 293
- proud, *high*, 198
- prove, *confirm*, 114
  - " *reason*, *v.*, 302
- provender, *food*, 175
- *proverb*, 293
- provided, *but*, 89
- providence, *frugality*, 180
  - " *prudence*, 294
- [549]provoke, *affront*, 24
- *prowess*, 294
- proxy, *delegate*, 125
- *prudence*, 294
  - " *care*, 94
  - " *frugality*, 180
  - " *wisdom*, 372
- prying, *inquisitive*, 221
- public, *general*, 181
  - " *usual*, 362
- publications, *literature*, 233
- public life, *career*, 95
- publish, *announce*, 46
- puerile, *youthful*, 375
- pull, *draw*, 138
- pungent, *bitter*, 81
  - " *racy*, 299
- punish, *avenge*, 69
  - " *chasten*, 103
  - " *requite*, 313
- pupil, *scholar*, 324

- purchasable, *venal*, 365
- *purchase*, 295
- *pure*, 296
    - " *fine*, 172
    - " *innocent*, 220
- purify, *amend*, 41
    - " *chasten*, 103
    - " *cleanse*, 107
- purity, *virtue*, 370
- purloin, *abstract*, 10
- purpose, *v.*, *propose*, 292
- purpose, *n.*, *aim*, 26
    - " *design*, 128
    - " *end*, *n.*, 148
    - " *idea*, 206
    - " *reason*, *n.*, 302
- purposeless, *faint*, 164
- pursue, *follow*, 174
- pursuit, *hunt*, 203
- push, *drive*, 140
    - " *promote*, 291
- *put*, 296
- put down, *conquer*, 115
- put on, *assume*, 61
- putrefy, *decay*, 122
- put to death, *kill*, 226
- put up with, *endure*, 150
- puzzle, *riddle*, 318

- quaint, *antique*, 48
    - " *queer*, 297
- quake, *shake*, 330
- qualification, *power*, 279
- qualified, *adequate*, 21
- qualify, *change*, *n.*, 100
- quality, *attribute*, *n.*, 66
    - " *characteristic*, 103
- quarrel, *feud*, 170
- quash, *cancel*, 92
- quaver, *shake*, 330
- *queer*, 297
- question, *v.*, *reason*, *v.*, 302
- question, *n.*, *doubt*, *n.*, 138
    - " *topic*, 359
- questionable, *equivocal*, 155
- quick, *active*, 17

  - " *alive*, 30
  - " *clever*, 109
  - " *nimble*, 253
- *quicken*, 297
- quick of scent, *sagacious*, 322
- quick-scented, *sagacious*, 322
- quick-witted, *clever*, 109
- quiescence, *rest*, 313
- quiet, *allay*, 31
  - " *calm*, 91
  - " *rest*, 313
- quietness, *apathy*, 50
  - " *rest*, 313
- quietude, *rest*, 313
- quit, *abandon*, 1
  - " *cease*, 98
  - " *end*, *v.*, 148
  - " *requite*, 313
- quiver, *shake*, 330
- *quote*, 298

- rabble, *mob*, 243
- race, *career*, 95
  - " *kin*, 227
  - " *people*, 266
- *racy*, 299
- *radical*, 299
- rage, *anger*, 44
- raging, *fierce*, 171
- raider, *robber*, 320
- rail at, *abuse*, 12
- raillery, *banter*, 73
  - " *wit*, 373
- raiment, *dress*, 140
- raise, *promote*, 291
- ramble, *wander*, 371
- rampart, *barrier*, 74
  - " *defense*, 123
- rancor, *enmity*, 152
  - " *hatred*, 193
- range, *wander*, 371
- rank, *class*, 106
- rap, *blow*, 83
- rapacious, *avaricious*, 68
- rapture, *enthusiasm*, 153
  - " *happiness*, 189

- rapturous, *happy*, 190
- *rare*, 300
    - " *obsolete*, 256
- rashness, *temerity*, 353
- rate, *calculate*, 90
- ratify, *confirm*, 114
- ratiocination, *reasoning*, 303
- rational, *sagacious*, 322
- ravish, *abuse*, 12
- raze, *demolish*, 127
- *reach*, 300
    - " *attain*, 64
    - " *make*, 236
- readiness, *address*, *n.*, 20
    - " *dexterity*, 129
    - " *ease*, 143
    - " *power*, 279
- reading, *education*, 143
- ready, *active*, 17
    - " *alert*, 28
- *real*, 301
    - " *authentic*, 67
    - " *pure*, 296
- reality, *veracity*, 367
- realize, *do*, 135
- reanimate, *recover*, 305
- reaping, *harvest*, 192
- [550]*reason*, *v.*, 302
- *reason*, *n.*, 302
    - " *cause*, 98
    - " *mind*, 241
    - " *wisdom*, 372
- reasonableness, *wisdom*, 372
- *reasoning*, 303
- rebellion, *revolution*, 317
- *rebellious*, 304
    - " *restive*, 314
- rebuke, *v.*, *reprove*, 312
- rebuke, *n.*, *reproof*, 311
- recalcitrant, *restive*, 314
- recall, *renounce*, 309
- recant, *abandon*, 1
    - " *renounce*, 309
- receipts, *profit*, 288
- receive, *get*, 183
- received, *authentic*, 67

- recent, *new*, 252
- reciprocal, *mutual*, 246
- reciprocate, *requite*, 313
- recital, *history*, 200
    - " *report*, 311
    - " *story*, 343
- recite, *quote*, 298
- recklessness, *temerity*, 353
- reckon, *calculate*, 90
- recognition, *knowledge*, 227
- recognize, *confess*, 114
    - " *discern*, 133
- recollection, *memory*, 239
- recompense, *pay*, 266
    - " *requite*, 313
- reconciliation, *propitiation*, 291
- recondite, *mysterious*, 247
- *record*, 304
    - " *character*, 102
    - " *history*, 200
    - " *report*, 311
    - " *story*, 343
- *recover*, 305
- recreate, *entertain*, 152
- recreation, *entertainment*, 153
    - " *rest*, 313
- recruit, *recover*, 305
- rectify, *amend*, 41
- rectitude, *justice*, 225
    - " *virtue*, 370
- recuperate, *recover*, 305
- redoubted, *formidable*, 176
- reduce, *abase*, 2
    - " *abate*, 3
    - " *alleviate*, 33
    - " *conquer*, 115
- redundance, *circumlocution*, 105
    - " *excess*, 160
- redundancy, *circumlocution*, 105
    - " *excess*, 160
- reel, *shake*, 330
- refer, *allude*, 36
    - " *attribute, v.*, 65
- referee, *judge*, 224
- refine, *chasten*, 103
- refined, *fine*, 172

- *refinement*, 305
- reflect, *deliberate*, 125
- reflection, *reproof*, 311
- reform, *amend*, 41
- refractory, *obstinate*, 256
    - " *rebellious*, 304
    - " *restive*, 314
- refrain, *cease*, 98
    - " *keep*, 226
- refreshing, *delightful*, 126
- refuse, *renounce*, 309
- *refute*, 306
- regain, *recover*, 305
- regal, *royal*, 320
- regard, *v.*, *esteem*, *v.*, 156
    - " *look*, 234
    - " *love*, 235
- regard, *n.*, *attachment*, 63
    - " *esteem*, *n.*, 157
    - " *friendship*, 179
- regeneration, *change*, *n.*, 101
- regimen, *food*, 175
- register, *history*, 200
    - " *record*, 304
- regret, *v.*, *mourn*, 246
- regret, *n.*, *grief*, 187
    - " *repentance*, 310
- regular, *continual*, 117
    - " *normal*, 253
    - " *usual*, 362
- regularity, *system*, 350
- regulation, *law*, 229
- rehearsal, *report*, 311
- reign over, *govern*, 185
- reject, *renounce*, 309
- rejoiced, *happy*, 190
- rejoicing, *a.*, *happy*, 190
- rejoicing, *n.*, *happiness*, 189
- rejoinder, *answer*, 46
- relation, *analogy*, 43
    - " *report*, 311
    - " *story*, 343
- relationship, *kin*, 227
- release, *absolve*, 9
- relegate, *commit*, 110
- relentless, *severe*, 329

- *reliable*, 306
    - " *authentic*, 67
- reliance, *faith*, 164
- relieve, *alleviate*, 33
- *religion*, 307
- relinquish, *abandon*, 1
    - " *surrender*, 349
- relish, *appetite*, 54
- *reluctant*, 308
- remain, *abide*, 5
- remains, *body*, 84
    - " *trace*, 359
- *remark*, 308
- remarkable, *rare*, 300
- remembrance, *memory*, 239
- reminiscence, *memory*, 239
- remission, *pardon*, 262
- remissness, *neglect*, 251
- remit, *pardon*, 262
- remnant, *trace*, 359
- remonstrate, *complain*, 112
    - " *reprove*, 312
- remorse, *repentance*, 310
- remote, *alien*, *a.*, 29
    - " *old*, 257
- remove, *abolish*, 6
    - " *abstract*, 10
    - [551]" *alleviate*, 33
    - " *cancel*, 92
    - " *carry*, 96
    - " *convey*, 119
    - " *displace*, 135
    - " *exterminate*, 163
- remunerate, *requite*, 313
- remuneration, *pay*, 266
- *rend*, 309
    - " *break*, 86
- render, *make*, 236
- rendering, *definition*, 124
- renewal, *change*, *n.*, 101
- renewing, *change*, *n.*, 101
- *renounce*, 309
    - " *abandon*, 1
- renown, *fame*, 166
- repair, *amend*, 41
- repartee, *answer*, 46

- repay, *requite*, 313
- repeal, *abolish*, 6
    - " *cancel*, 92
- repeat, *quote*, 298
- repel, *drive*, 140
    - " *refute*, 306
- *repentance*, 310
- repine, *complain*, 112
- replete, *plentiful*, 276
- replica, *duplicate*, 141
- reply, *answer*, 46
- report, *v.*, *announce*, 46
- *report*, *n.*, 311
- repose, *rest*, 313
- repossess, *recover*, 305
- reprehend, *reprove*, 312
- reprehension, *reproof*, 311
- representation, *model*, 243
- representative, *delegate*, 125
- repress, *restrain*, 315
- reprimand, *v.*, *reprove*, 312
- reprimand, *n.*, *reproof*, 311
- reproach, *v.*, *abuse*, 12
    - " *reprove*, 312
- reproach, *n.*, *blemish*, 82
    - " *reproof*, 311
- reprobate, *v.*, *condemn*, 113
- reprobation, *oath*, 254
- reproduction, *duplicate*, 141
- *reproof*, 311
- reproval, *reproof*, 311
- *reprove*, 312
    - " *condemn*, 113
- repudiate, *abandon*, 1
    - " *renounce*, 309
- repugnance, *antipathy*, 48
    - " *hatred*, 193
- repugnant, *incongruous*, 214
- repulse, *drive*, 140
- repulsion, *antipathy*, 48
- reputation, *character*, 102
    - " *fame*, 166
- repute, *fame*, 166
- request, *v.*, *ask*, 59
    - " *pray*, 281
- require, *ask*, 59

    - " *make*, 236
- required, *necessary*, 250
- requirement, *necessity*, 250
- requisite, *a.*, *necessary*, 250
    - " *order*, 258
- requisite, *n.*, *necessity*, 250
- requital, *pay*, 266
    - " *revenge*, 316
- *requite*, 313
- rescind, *cancel*, 92
- resemblance, *analogy*, 43
    - " *approximation*, 55
- resembling, *alike*, 30
- resentful, *restive*, 314
- resentment, *anger*, 44
    - " *hatred*, 193
    - " *pique*, 272
- reserve, *modesty*, 244
    - " *pride*, 286
- reserved, *taciturn*, 351
- reside, *abide*, 5
- residence, *home*, 201
- resign, *abandon*, 1
- resignation, *patience*, 265
- resist, *drive*, 140
    - " *hinder*, 199
- resistance, *defense*, 123
- resolute, *obstinate*, 256
- resolution, *fortitude*, 176
- resolved, *obstinate*, 256
- resource, *alternative*, 38
- respect, *v.*, *admire*, 23
    - " *venerate*, 366
- respect, *n.*, *esteem*, *n.*, 157
- response, *answer*, 46
- responsibility, *duty*, 142
- rest, *v.*, *abide*, 5
- *rest*, *n.*, 313
- restiff, *restive*, 314
- *restive*, 314
- restless, *active*, 17
    - " *restive*, 314
- restore, *recover*, 305
- *restrain*, 315
    - " *arrest*, 57
    - " *bind*, 81

  - " *govern*, 185
  - " *keep*, 226
- restraint, *barrier*, 74
- restrict, *bind*, 81
  - " *restrain*, 315
- restriction, *barrier*, 74
- result, *v.*, *follow*, 174
- result, *n.*, *consequence*, 116
  - " *end*, *n.*, 148
  - " *event*, 158
  - " *harvest*, 192
  - " *operation*, 258
- resume, *recover*, 305
- retain, *keep*, 226
- retainer, *accessory*, 13
- retaliate, *avenge*, 69
  - " *requite*, 313
- retaliation, *revenge*, 316
- retard, *hinder*, 199
  - " *obstruct*, 257
- reticent, *taciturn*, 351
- retire, *abandon*, 1
- *retirement*, 315
- retort, *answer*, 46
- retract, *abandon*, 1
- retribution, *revenge*, 316
- retrieve, *recover*, 305
- [552]retrospect, *memory*, 239
- retrospection, *memory*, 239
- return, *v.*, *requite*, 313
- return, *n.*, *harvest*, 192
  - " *profit*, 288
- returns, *profit*, 288
- reveal, *announce*, 46
- *revelation*, 316
- revenge, *v.*, *avenge*, 69
  - " *requite*, 313
- *revenge*, *n.*, 316
  - " *hatred*, 193
- revere, *admire*, 23
  - " *venerate*, 366
- reverence, *v.*, *venerate*, 366
- reverence, *n.*, *veneration*, 366
- reverie, *dream*, 139
- reverse, *v.*, *abolish*, 6
- reverse, *n.*, *misfortune*, 242

- revile, *abuse*, 12
    - " *slander*, 336
- revoke, *abolish*, 6
    - " *cancel*, 92
    - " *renounce*, 309
- revolt, *n.*, *revolution*, 317
- *revolution*, 317
    - " *change*, 101
- *revolve*, 318
- reward, *v.*, *requite*, 313
- reward, *n.*, *subsidy*, 345
- rhythm, *meter*, 240
- rich, *plentiful*, 276
    - " *racy*, 299
- ride, *drive*, 140
- *riddle*, 318
- ridicule, *banter*, 73
- ridiculous, *absurd*, 11
    - " *queer*, 297
- right, *a.*, *innocent*, 220
- *right*, *n.*, 319
    - " *duty*, 142
    - " *justice*, 225
- right away, right off, *immediately*, 211
- righteous, *innocent*, 220
- righteousness, *duty*, 142
    - " *justice*, 225
    - " *religion*, 307
    - " *virtue*, 370
- rightfulness, *justice*, 225
- rightness, *virtue*, 370
- rigid, *severe*, 329
- rigorous, *severe*, 329
- rim, *bank*, 72
- rime (rhyme), *poetry*, 277
- rinse, *cleanse*, 107
- riot, *revolution*, 317
- rip, *rend*, 309
- *rise*, *v.*, 319
- rise, *n.*, *beginning*, 78
- risk, *n.*, *danger*, 121
    - " *hazard*, 194
- risky, *precarious*, 282
- rite, *sacrament*, 321
- rival, *n.*, *enemy*, 151
- rivalry, *ambition*, 40

- rive, *break*, 86
    - " *rend*, 309
- road, *way*, 372
- roadway, *way*, 372
- roam, *wander*, 371
- roar, *call*, 91
- *robber*, 320
- robes, *dress*, 140
- rock, *shake*, 330
- roll, *v.*, *revolve*, 318
- roll, *n.*, *record*, *n.*, 304
- romance, *dream*, 139
    - " *fiction*, 170
- root out, *exterminate*, 163
- rot, *decay*, 122
- rotate, *revolve*, 318
- rough, *awkward*, 70
    - " *bluff*, 83
- rout, *conquer*, 115
- route, *way*, 372
- routine, *habit*, 187
- rove, *wander*, 371
- *royal*, 320
- rub off or out, *cancel*, 92
- rude, *barbarous*, 73
    - " *bluff*, 83
    - " *rustic*, 321
- rudeness, *impudence*, 213
- rue, *mourn*, 246
- ruin, *v.*, *abuse*, 12
    - " *demolish*, 127
    - " *subvert*, 346
- ruin, *n.*, *misfortune*, 242
- ruinous, *pernicious*, 270
- rule, *v.*, *govern*, 185
- rule, *n.*, *habit*, 187
    - " *law*, 229
    - " *system*, 350
- rumor, *report*, 311
- rupture, *break*, 86
    - " *rend*, 309
- rural, *rustic*, 321
- ruse, *artifice*, 58
    - " *pretense*, 283
- rush, *career*, 95
- *rustic*, 321

- sable, *dark*, 122
- *sacrament*, 321
- sacred, *holy*, 200
- sacrifice, *surrender*, 349
- sadness, *grief*, 187
- safeguard, *defense*, 123
- *sagacious*, 322
  - " *astute*, 62
- sagacity, *acumen*, 18
  - " *wisdom*, 372
- sage, *sagacious*, 322
- saintly, *holy*, 200
- salable, *venal*, 365
- salary, *pay*, 266
- *sale*, 323
- salubrious, *healthy*, 195
- salutary, *healthy*, 195
- salutation, parting, *farewell*, 168
- salute, *address*, *v.*, 19
- same, *alike*, 30
  - " *synonymous*, 349
- *sample*, 323
  - " *example*, 160
- sanctimoniousness, *hypocrisy*, 204
- sanctimony, *hypocrisy*, 204
- sanction, *v.*, *abet*, 4
  - " *allow*, 35
  - [553]" *confirm*, 114
- sanitary, *healthy*, 195
- sarcasm, *banter*, 73
- sate, *satisfy*, 324
- satiate, *satisfy*, 324
- satire, *banter*, 73
- satisfaction, *happiness*, 189
  - " *propitiation*, 291
- satisfactory, *adequate*, 21
  - " *comfortable*, 110
- satisfied, *comfortable*, 110
- *satisfy*, 324
  - " *requite*, 313
- satisfying, *delightful*, 126
- sauciness, *impudence*, 213
  - " *pertness*, 271
- savage, *barbarous*, 73
  - " *bitter*, 81
  - " *fierce*, 171

- savant, *scholar*, 324
- save, *but*, 89
- saving, *frugality*, 180
- savory, *delicious*, 126
- saw, *n.*, *proverb*, 293
- say, *allege*, 31
    - " *announce*, 46
    - " *speak*, 339
    - " *state*, 341
- saying, *proverb*, 293
- scan, *look*, 234
- scarce, *rare*, 300
- scare, *frighten*, 180
- schedule, *record*, 304
- scheme, *design*, 128
    - " *hypothesis*, 205
- schismatic, *heretic*, 196
- *scholar*, 324
- scholarship, *knowledge*, 227
- school, *v.*, *teach*, 353
- schooling, *education*, 143
- *science*, 325
    - " *knowledge*, 227
- scintilla, *particle*, 264
- scintillation, *light*, 231
- scoff, *sneer*, 337
- scorch, *burn*, 87
- scorn, *v.*, *abhor*, 5
- scorn, *n.*, *neglect*, 251
- scour, *cleanse*, 107
- scourge, *beat*, 75
- scout, *spy*, 340
- scrap, *particle*, 264
- scratch out, *cancel*, 92
- scream, *call*, 91
- screen, *hide*, 197
    - " *palliate*, 261
    - " *shelter*, 331
- scrimping, *frugality*, 180
- scroll, *record*, 304
- scrub, *cleanse*, 107
- scruple, *doubt*, *n.*, 138
- scrutinizing, *inquisitive*, 221
- search, *hunt*, 203
- searching, *inquisitive*, 221
- season, *time*, 356

- seat of government, *capital*, 94
- seclusion, *retirement*, 315
- second, *help*, 195
- secret, *mysterious*, 247
- secrete, *hide*, 197
- section, *part*, 264
- secure, *arrest*, 57
    - " *attain*, 64
    - " *bind*, 81
    - " *catch*, 97
    - " *get*, 183
    - " *purchase*, 295
- *security*, 326
- sedate, *calm*, 91
- sedition, *revolution*, 317
- seditious, *rebellious*, 304
- seduce, *allure*, 37
- sedulous, *industrious*, 215
- sedulousness, *industry*, 216
- see, *discern*, 133
    - " *look*, 234
- seed, *plant*, 274
- seed down, *plant*, 274
- seem, *appear*, 52
- seeming, *a.*, *apparent*, 52
- seeming, *n.*, *pretense*, 283
- seemly, *becoming*, 77
- segment, *part*, 264
- seize, *arrest*, 57
    - " *catch*, 97
- select, *allot*, 34
    - " *choose*, 104
- *self-abnegation*, 329
- self-assertion, *assurance*, 61
    - " *egotism*, 145
- self-complacency, *pride*, 286
- self-conceit, *egotism*, 145
    - " *pride*, 286
- self-condemnation, *repentance*, 310
- self-confidence, *assurance*, 61
    - " *egotism*, 145
- self-consciousness, *egotism*, 145
- self-control, *abstinence*, 10
    - " *self-abnegation*, 326
- self-denial, *abstinence*, 10
    - " *self-abnegation*, 326

- self-devotion, *self-abnegation*, 326
- self-esteem, *egotism*, 145
    - " *pride*, 286
- self-exaltation, *pride*, 286
- self-immolation, *self-abnegation*, 326
- self-opinionated, *dogmatic*, 137
- self-possessed, *calm*, 91
- self-reliance, *assurance*, 61
- self-renunciation, *self-abnegation*, 326
- self-respect, *pride*, 286
- self-restraint, *abstinence*, 10
- self-sacrifice, *self-abnegation*, 326
- sell, *convey*, 119
- semblance, *analogy*, 43
    - " *pretense*, 283
- *send*, 327
- senile, *old*, 257
- *sensation*, 328
- sense, *mind*, 241
    - " *sensation*, 328
    - " *wisdom*, 372
- senseless, *absurd*, 11
- senselessness, *idiocy*, 207
- *sensibility*, 328
- sensible, *conscious*, 116
    - " *physical*, 272
    - " *sagacious*, 322
- [554]sensitive, *fine*, 172
- sensitiveness, *sensibility*, 328
- sensual, *brutish*, 87
- sentence, *v.*, *condemn*, 113
- sententious, *terse*, 354
- sentient being, *animal*, 45
- sentiment, *idea*, 206
- separate, *abstract*, 10
- separately, *apiece*, 51
- sequel, *catastrophe*, 97
    - " *consequence*, 116
    - " *event*, 158
- sequence, *time*, 356
- serene, *calm*, 91
- sermon, *speech*, 339
- service, *profit*, 288
    - " *sacrament*, 321
    - " *utility*, 363
- serviceableness, *utility*, 363

- set, *v.*, *plant*, 274
    - " *put*, 296
- set, *n.*, *class*, 106
    - " *flock*, 173
- set apart, *allow*, 34
    - " *holy*, 200
- set aside, *abolish*, 6
- set fire to, *burn*, 87
- set forth, *state*, 341
- set free, *absolve*, 9
- set on fire, *burn*, 87
- set out, *plant*, 274
- settle, *confirm*, 114
- settle with, *requite*, 133
- set upon, *attack*, *v.*, 63
- sever, *break*, 86
    - " *rend*, 309
- severally, *apiece*, 51
- *severe*, 329
    - " *difficult*, 132
    - " *morose*, 245
- severity, *acrimony*, 15
- sex, *gender*, 181
- shackle, *v.*, *bind*, 81
- shackle, *n.*, *fetter*, 169
- shadowy, *dark*, 122
    - " *vain*, 364
- shady, *dark*, 122
- *shake*, 330
- sham, *hypocrisy*, 204
- shame, *v.*, *abash*, 3
- shame, *n.*, *abomination*, 7
    - " *chagrin*, 100
- shamelessness, *effrontery*, 144
- shape, *make*, 236
- share, *v.*, *apportion*, 54
- share, *n.*, *part*, 264
    - " *portion*, 279
- sharp, *astute*, 62
    - " *bitter*, 81
    - " *clever*, 109
    - " *fine*, 172
    - " *sagacious*, 322
    - " *steep*, 342
- sharpness, *acrimony*, 15
    - " *acumen*, 18

- sharp-witted, *sagacious*, 322
- shatter, *break*, 86
- sheen, *light*, 231
- sheer, *pure*, 296
    - " *steep*, 342
- *shelter, v.*, 331
    - " *cherish*, 104
- shelter, *n.*, *defense*, 123
- shield, *v.*, *shelter*, 331
- shield, *n.*, *defense*, 123
- shift, *v.*, *change*, *v.*, 100
    - " *convey*, 119
- shimmer, *light*, 231
- shine, *light*, 231
- shining, *light*, 231
- shiver, *break*, 86
    - " *shake*, 330
- shock, *blow*, 83
    - " *collision*, 109
- shocking, *awful*, 70
- shore, *bank*, 72
- short, *terse*, 354
    - " *transient*, 361
- should, *ought*, 260
- shout, *call*, 91
- show, *array*, 57
    - " *ostentation*, 259
    - " *pretense*, 283
- shred, *particle*, 264
- shrewd, *astute*, 62
    - " *sagacious*, 322
- shrewdness, *acumen*, 18
- shriek, *call*, 91
- shudder, *shake*, 330
- shun, *abhor*, 5
- shyness, *modesty*, 244
- sickness, *disease*, 134
- sight, *array*, 57
- *sign*, 332
    - " *characteristic*, 103
    - " *emblem*, 146
    - " *trace*, 359
- signal, *sign*, 332
- signify, *allude*, 36
- silent, *taciturn*, 351
- silver, *money*, 244

- similar, *alike*, 30
  - " *synonymous*, 349
- similarity, *analogy*, 43
  - " *approximation*, 55
- similarly, *also*, 37
- simile, *allegory*, 33
  - " *analogy*, 43
- similitude, *analogy*, 43
- simple, *candid*, 93
  - " *pure*, 296
- simulation, *pretense*, 283
- *sin*, 332
- since, *because*, 77
  - " *therefore*, 355
- sincere, *candid*, 93
  - " *honest*, 202
- sine qua non, *necessity*, 250
- sinful, *criminal*, 120
- *sing*, 333
- singe, *burn*, 87
- singular, *queer*, 297
  - " *rare*, 300
- singularity, *characteristic*, 103
- sink, *abase*, 2
  - " *immerse*, 212
- sinless, *innocent*, 220
  - " *perfect*, 268
- [555]situation, *circumstance*, 105
- skeleton, *sketch*, 334
- *skeptic*, 334
- skepticism, *doubt*, *n.*, 138
- *sketch*, 334
- *skilful*, 335
  - " *clever*, 109
- skill, *dexterity*, 129
  - " *power*, 279
  - " *wisdom*, 372
- skilled, *skilful*, 335
- skirmish, *battle*, 74
- skittish, *restive*, 314
- slack, *slow*, 337
- slackness, *neglect*, 251
- *slander*, 336
  - " *abuse*, 12
- *slang*, 336
- slant, *v.*, *tip*, 357

- slaughter, *kill*, 226
    - " *massacre*, 237
- slay, *kill*, 226
- sleep, *rest*, 313
- sleepless, *vigilant*, 369
- slender, *fine*, 172
    - " *minute*, 242
- slight, *a.*, *fine*, 172
    - " *venial*, 367
- slight, *n.*, *neglect*, 251
- sling, *send*, 327
- slit, *rend*, 309
- slope, *v.*, *tip*, 357
- slothful, *idle*, 208
- *slow*, 337
    - " *reluctant*, 308
- slowness, *stupidity*, 344
- sluggish, *idle*, 208
    - " *slow*, 337
- sluggishness, *apathy*, 50
    - " *stupidity*, 344
- slumber, *rest*, 313
- small, *fine*, 172
    - " *minute*, 242
- smart, *clever*, 109
- smartness, *pertness*, 271
- smash, *break*, 86
- smiling, *happy*, 190
- smirch, *blemish*, 82
- smite, *beat*, 75
- smooth, *calm*, 91
    - " *fine*, 172
- snappish, *morose*, 245
- snatch, *catch*, 97
- *sneer*, 337
- snug, *comfortable*, 110
- sobriety, *abstinence*, 10
- sociable, *friendly*, 178
- social, *friendly*, 178
- *socialism*, 338
- society, *association*, 60
- soften, *alleviate*, 33
    - " *chasten*, 103
- soil, *v.*, *defile*, 124
    - " *stain*, 341
- soil, *n.*, *blemish*, 82

- sojourn, *abide*, 5
- soldiers, *army*, 56
- soldiery, *army*, 56
- solemn, *awful*, 70
- solemnity, *sacrament*, 321
- solemnize, *celebrate*, 99
- solicit, *ask*, 59
    - " *plead*, 274
- solicitude, *alarm*, 28
    - " *anxiety*, 49
    - " *care*, 94
- solitude, *retirement*, 315
- somber, *dark*, 122
- song, *poetry*, 277
- soothe, *allay*, 31
- sordid, *avaricious*, 68
- sorrow, *v.*, *mourn*, 246
- sorrow, *n.*, *grief*, 187
    - " *misfortune*, 242
    - " *repentance*, 310
- sorrowful, *pitiful*, 273
- sort, *air*, 27
- sottish, *brutish*, 87
- soul, *mind*, 241
- sound, *a.*, *healthy*, 195
- *sound*, *n.*, 338
- sour, *bitter*, 81
    - " *morose*, 245
- source, *beginning*, 78
    - " *cause*, 98
- sourness, *acrimony*, 15
- sow, *plant*, 274
- spacious, *large*, 229
- spank, *beat*, 75
- sparing, *frugality*, 180
- sparkle, *light*, 231
- *speak*, 339
- speaking, *speech*, 339
- speak to, *address*, *v.*, 19
- specie, *money*, 244
- specify, *state*, 341
- specimen, *example*, 160
    - " *sample*, 323
- speck, *blemish*, 82
- speculation, *hypothesis*, 205
- *speech*, 339

  - " *language*, 228
- speechless, *taciturn*, 351
- speed, *v.*, *quicken*, 297
- speedy, *nimble*, 253
- spicy, *racy*, 299
- spirit, *character*, 102
  - " *mind*, 241
- spirited, *racy*, 299
- spite, *enmity*, 152
  - " *hatred*, 193
- splendid, *fine*, 172
- splenetic, *morose*, 245
- split, *break*, 86
- spoil, *decay*, 122
  - " *defile*, 124
- sponge, *cleanse*, 107
- *spontaneous*, 340
- sport, *entertainment*, 153
- spot, *v.*, *stain*, 341
- spot, *n.*, *blemish*, 82
- spotless, *innocent*, 220
  - " *perfect*, 268
  - " *pure*, 296
- spousal, *marriage*, 236
- spread abroad, *announce*, 46
- sprightliness, *pertness*, 271
- sprightly, *active*, 17
  - [556]" *airy*, 27
  - " *happy*, 190
  - " *nimble*, 253
- spring, *v.*, *rise*, 319
- spring, *n.*, *beginning*, 78
  - " *cause*, 98
- spruce, *neat*, 249
- spry, *active*, 17
  - " *nimble*, 253
- *spy*, 340
- stable, *permanent*, 269
- *stain*, *v.*, 341
  - " *defile*, 124
- stain, *n.*, *blemish*, 82
- stainless, *innocent*, 220
  - " *perfect*, 268
  - " *pure*, 296
- stamp out, *abolish*, 6
- stanch, *faithful*, 165

- standard, *example*, 160
    - " *ideal*, 206
    - " *model*, 243
- stand by, *help*, 195
- stare, *look*, 234
- start, *beginning*, 78
- *state*, *v.*, 341
    - " *allege*, 31
    - " *announce*, 46
- state, *n.*, *people*, 266
- stately, *awful*, 70
- statement, *report*, 311
- statute, *law*, 229
- stay, *abide*, 5
    - " *hinder*, 199
    - " *obstruct*, 257
    - " *rest*, 313
- steadfast, *permanent*, 269
- steal, *abstract*, 10
- *steep*, 342
    - " *high*, 198
- stern, *severe*, 329
- sticking, *adhesive*, 22
- sticky, *adhesive*, 22
- stiff, *severe*, 329
- stigma, *blemish*, 82
- still, *v.*, *allay*, 31
- still, *a.*, *calm*, 91
- still, *conj.*, *but*, 89
    - " *notwithstanding*, 254
    - " *yet*, 374
- stillness, *apathy*, 50
    - " *rest*, 313
- stinging, *bitter*, 81
- stingy, *avaricious*, 68
- stipend, *pay*, 266
- stipulation, *contract*, 118
- stir, *influence*, 217
- stoicism, *apathy*, 50
- stolid, *brutish*, 87
- stoop, *bend*, 79
- stop, *v.*, *abide*, 5
    - " *arrest*, 57
    - " *cease*, 98
    - " *end*, *v.*, 148
    - " *hinder*, 199

  - " *obstruct*, 257
- stop, *n.*, *rest*, 313
- store up, *amass*, 38
- storm, *v.*, *attack*, *v.*, 63
- *storm*, *n.*, 343
- *story*, 343
  - " *fiction*, 170
  - " *history*, 200
  - " *report*, 311
- straightforward, *candid*, 93
  - " *clear*, 107
  - " *honest*, 202
- straightway, *immediately*, 211
- strand, *bank*, 72
- strange, *alien*, *a.*, 29
  - " *queer*, 297
  - " *rare*, 300
- stranger, *alien*, *n.*, 29
- stratagem, *artifice*, 58
- stray, *wander*, 371
- street, *way*, 372
- strength, *power*, 279
- strengthen, *confirm*, 114
- strict, *severe*, 329
- strife, *battle*, 74
  - " *feud*, 170
- strike, *beat*, 75
- stripe, *blow*, 83
- strive, *endeavor*, *v.*, 149
- stroke, *blow*, 83
  - " *misfortune*, 242
- strong, *healthy*, 195
- stronghold, *fortification*, 176
- struggle, *endeavor*, *n.*, 150
- stubborn, *obstinate*, 256
  - " *perverse*, 272
  - " *restive*, 314
- student, *scholar*, 324
- study, *education*, 143
- stupefaction, *stupidity*, 344
  - " *stupor*, 344
- stupid, *absurd*, 11
  - " *brutish*, 87
- *stupidity*, 344
  - " *idiocy*, 207
- *stupor*, 344

  - " *stupidity*, 344
- style, *air*, 27
  - " *diction*, 130
  - " *name*, 247
- subdivision, *part*, 264
- subdue, *chasten*, 103
  - " *conquer*, 115
- subject, *v.*, *conquer*, 115
- subject, *n.*, *topic*, 359
- subjection, *allegiance*, 32
- *subjective*, 345
  - " *inherent*, 218
- subjoin, *add*, 18
- subjugate, *conquer*, 115
- submerge, *immerse*, 212
- submission, *patience*, 265
- submissive, *docile*, 136
- submit, *bend*, 79
- submit to, *endure*, 150
- subordinate, *auxiliary*, 67
- subside, *abate*, 3
- *subsidy*, 345
- subsisting, *alive*, 30
- substantial, *real*, 301
- substantiate, *confirm*, 114
- substitute, *v.*, *change*, *v.*, 100
- substitute, *n.*, *delegate*, 125
- [557]subterfuge, *artifice*, 58
  - " *pretense*, 283
- subtile, *astute*, 62
  - " *fine*, 172
- subtle, *astute*, 62
  - " *fine*, 172
- subvention, *subsidy*, 345
- *subvert*, 346
  - " *abolish*, 6
- *succeed*, 346
  - " *follow*, 174
- success, *victory*, 369
- successful, *fortunate*, 177
  - " *happy*, 190
- succession, *time*, 356
- succinct, *terse*, 354
- succor, *help*, 195
- suck up, *absorb*, 9
- suffer, *allow*, 35

  - " *endure*, 150
- sufferance, *patience*, 265
- suffering, *pain*, 261
- suffice, *satisfy*, 324
- sufficient, *adequate*, 21
  - " *plentiful*, 276
- suggest, *allude*, 36
- *suggestion*, 347
- suitable, *adequate*, 21
  - " *becoming*, 77
- sulky, *morose*, 245
- sullen, *morose*, 245
- sully, *defile*, 124
  - " *stain*, 341
- summary, *abridgment*, 7
- summon, *arraign*, 56
  - " *convoke*, 120
- sum up, *add*, 18
  - " *calculate*, 90
- sunder, *break*, 86
  - " *rend*, 309
- sunny, *happy*, 190
- superabundance, *excess*, 160
- superannuated, *antique*, 48
- superciliousness, *pride*, 286
- superfluity, *excess*, 160
- superhuman, *supernatural*, 347
- superintendence, *oversight*, 260
- *supernatural*, 347
- supersede, *subvert*, 346
- superstition, *fanaticism*, 166
- supervene, *happen*, 188
- supervision, *oversight*, 260
- supplant, *abolish*, 6
  - " *subvert*, 346
- supple, *active*, 17
- supplement, *appendage*, 53
- supplicate, *ask*, 59
  - " *pray*, 281
- supply, *give*, 185
- *support*, *v.*, 348
  - " *abet*, 4
  - " *endure*, 150
  - " *keep*, 226
- support, *n.*, *help*, 195
  - " *subsidy*, 345

- supporter, *adherent*, 21
- *suppose*, 348
- supposition, *fancy*, 167
    - " *hypothesis*, 205
    - " *idea*, 206
- suppress, *abolish*, 6
    - " *hide*, 197
    - " *restrain*, 315
    - " *subvert*, 346
- supremacy, *victory*, 369
- supreme, *absolute*, 8
- sure, *authentic*, 67
    - " *conscious*, 116
    - " *faithful*, 165
- surety, *security*, 326
- surfeit, *satisfy*, 324
- surly, *morose*, 245
- surmise, *v.*, *doubt*, *v.*, 137
    - " *suppose*, 348
- surmise, *n.*, *hypothesis*, 205
- surmount, *conquer*, 115
- surname, *name*, 247
- surpass, *beat*, 75
- surplus, *excess*, 160
- surplusage, *circumlocution*, 105
- surprise, *amazement*, 39
- *surrender*, 349
    - " *abandon*, 1
- surrounded by, *amid*, 42
- surveillance, *oversight*, 260
- survey, *look*, 234
- susceptibility, *power*, 279
    - " *sensibility*, 328
- suspect, *doubt*, *v.*, 137
- suspense, *doubt*, *n.*, 138
- suspicion, *doubt*, *n.*, 138
- suspicious, *envious*, 155
    - " *equivocal*, 155
- sustain, *carry*, 96
    - " *confirm*, 114
    - " *endure*, 150
    - " *help*, 195
    - " *keep*, 226
    - " *support*, 348
- sustenance, *food*, 175
- swallow, *absorb*, 9

- swallow up, *absorb*, 9
- swarm, *flock*, 173
- swart, *dark*, 122
- swarthy, *dark*, 122
- sway, *govern*, 185
    - " *influence*, 217
    - " *shake*, 330
- swear, *state*, 341
- swearing, *oath*, 254
- sweep, *cleanse*, 107
- sweet, *amiable*, 42
- swerve, *fluctuate*, 173
    - " *wander*, 371
- swift, *nimble*, 253
- swindle, *n.*, *fraud*, 177
- swindling, *fraud*, 177
- swing, *shake*, 330
- swinish, *brutish*, 87
- switch, *beat*, 75
- swoon, *stupor*, 344
- swooning, *stupor*, 344
- sworn statement, *oath*, 254
- sycophancy, *praise*, 280
- sylvan, *rustic*, 321
- symbol, *emblem*, 146
    - " *sign*, 332
- [558]symmetry, *harmony*, 191
- sympathetic, *humane*, 203
- sympathize with, *console*, 117
- sympathy, *benevolence*, 80
    - " *pity*, 273
- symphony, *melody*, 238
- symptom, *sign*, 332
- syncope, *stupor*, 344
- synonymic, *synonymous*, 349
- *synonymous*, 349
- synopsis, *abridgment*, 7
- *system*, 350
    - " *body*, 84
    - " *habit*, 187
    - " *hypothesis*, 205
- systematic, *dogmatic*, 137
- system of government, *polity*, 278

- *taciturn*, 351
- tact, *address*, *n.*, 20

- taint, *v.*, *defile*, 124
- taint, *n.*, *blemish*, 82
- take, *assume*, 61
    - " *carry*, 96
    - " *catch*, 97
- take away, *abstract*, 10
- take hold of, *catch*, 97
- take in, take up, *absorb*, 9
- take into custody, *arrest*, 57
- take-off, *caricature*, 95
- take place, *happen*, 188
- take prisoner, *arrest*, 57
- take to task, *reprove*, 312
- tale, *report*, 311
    - " *story*, 343
- talent, *genius*, 183
    - " *power*, 279
- talented, *clever*, 109
- talents, *genius*, 183
- talk, *speak*, 339
- talk, *n.*, *conversation*, 118
    - " *speech*, 339
- talkative, *garrulous*, 181
- tall, *high*, 198
- tame, *docile*, 136
- tangible, *evident*, 159
    - " *physical*, 272
- tangled, *complex*, 112
- tardy, *slow*, 337
- tarnish, *blemish*, 82
    - " *defile*, 124
    - " *stain*, 341
- tarry, *abide*, 5
- tart, *bitter*, 81
- tartness, *acrimony*, 15
- *tasteful*, 352
- tasty, *tasteful*, 352
- tattle, *babble*, 71
- taunt, *sneer*, 337
- tautology, *circumlocution*, 105
- *teach*, 353
- teachable, *docile*, 136
- teaching, *doctrine*, 136
    - " *education*, 143
- tear, *rend*, 309
- tease, *affront*, 24

- tediousness, *circumlocution*, 105
- teeming, *plentiful*, 276
- tell, *announce*, 46
    - " *speak*, 339
    - " *state*, 341
- *temerity*, 353
- temper, *anger*, 44
    - " *character*, 102
- temperament, *character*, 102
- temperance, *abstinence*, 10
- tempest, *storm*, 343
- temporary, *transient*, 361
- tempt, *allure*, 37
- tendency, *aim*, 26
    - " *direction*, 132
- tender, *friendly*, 178
    - " *humane*, 203
- tender-hearted, *humane*, 203
- tenderness, *attachment*, 63
    - " *love*, 235
    - " *mercy*, 239
    - " *pity*, 273
- tenet, *doctrine*, 136
- tenuous, *fine*, 172
- *term*, 354
    - " *boundary*, 84
    - " *time*, 356
- terminate, *abolish*, 6
    - " *cease*, 98
    - " *end, v.*, 148
- termination, *boundary*, 84
    - " *end, n.*, 148
- terminus, *end, n.*, 148
- terrible, *awful*, 70
    - " *formidable*, 176
- terrific, *awful*, 70
- terrify, *frighten*, 180
- terror, *alarm*, 28
    - " *fear*, 168
- *terse*, 354
- testify, *avow*, 69
    - " *state*, 341
- *testimony*, 355
- that, *but*, 89
- theme, *topic*, 359
- then, *therefore*, 355

- thence, *therefore*, 355
- theology, *religion*, 307
- theory, *hypothesis*, 205
    - " *idea*, 206
- *therefore*, 355
- thief, *robber*, 320
- thin, *fine*, 172
- think, *esteem*, *v.*, 156
    - " *suppose*, 348
- thirst, *appetite*, 54
- tho, *but*, 89
    - " *notwithstanding*, *conj.*, 254
- thorough, *radical*, 299
- thoroughfare, *way*, 372
- thoroughgoing, *radical*, 299
- thought, *idea*, 206
    - " *mind*, 241
- thoughtless, *abstracted*, 11
- thoughtlessness, *neglect*, 251
- thrash, *beat*, 75
- threatening, *imminent*, 212
- thrift, *frugality*, 180
- thrill, *shake*, 330
- thrive, *succeed*, 346
- throe, *pain*, 261
- *throng*, 356
    - " *company*, 110
- [559]through, *by*, 89
    - " *notwithstanding*, *conj.*, 254
- throw, *send*, 327
- thrust, *drive*, 140
- thump, *blow*, 83
- thus far, *yet*, 374
- thwart, *hinder*, 199
- tidy, *neat*, 249
- tie, *bind*, 81
- tillage, *agriculture*, 25
- tilt, *tip*, 357
- *time*, 356
- time-honored, *old*, 257
- timeless, *eternal*, 157
- time-worn, *old*, 257
- timid, *faint*, 164
- timidity, *alarm*, 28
    - " *fear*, 168
    - " *modesty*, 244

- tinge, *stain*, 341
- tint, *stain*, 341
- tiny, *minute*, 242
- *tip*, *v.*, 357
- tip, *n.*, *end*, *n.*, 148
- *tire*, *v.*, 357
- title, *name*, 247
- tittle, *particle*, 264
- toil, *work*, 374
- toilsome, *difficult*, 132
- token, *emblem*, 146
    - " *sign*, 332
    - " *trace*, 359
- tolerate, *abide*, 5
    - " *allow*, 35
    - " *endure*, 150
- tone, *sound*, 338
- tongue, *language*, 228
- too, *also*, 37
- *tool*, 358
- *topic*, 359
- torment, *pain*, 261
- torpor, *stupor*, 344
- torture, *pain*, 261
- total, *radical*, 299
- totter, *shake*, 330
- touching, *pitiful*, 273
- tour, *journey*, 223
- tow, *draw*, 138
- towering, *high*, 198
- *trace*, 359
    - " *characteristic*, 103
- track, *trace*, 359
    - " *way*, 372
- tractable, *docile*, 136
- trade, *business*, 88
    - " *sale*, 323
- trading, *business*, 88
- traduce, *slander*, 336
- traffic, *business*, 88
- trail, *trace*, 359
- train, *teach*, 353
- trained, *skilful*, 335
- training, *education*, 143
- trait, *characteristic*, 103
- trance, *dream*, 139

- tranquil, *calm*, 91
- tranquilize, *allay*, 31
- tranquillity, *apathy*, 50
  - " *rest*, 313
- *transact*, 360
  - " *do*, 135
- *transaction*, 360
  - " *act*, 16
  - " *business*, 88
- transcendent, *transcendental*, 361
- *transcendental*, 361
  - " *mysterious*, 247
- transcript, *duplicate*, 141
- transfer, *convey*, 119
- transfigure, *change*, *v.*, 100
- transform, *change*, *v.*, 100
- transformation, *change*, *n.*, 101
- transgress, *break*, 86
- transgression, *sin*, 332
- *transient*, 361
- transit, *journey*, 223
  - " *motion*, 245
- transition, *change*, 101
  - " *motion*, 245
- transitory, *transient*, 361
- translation, *definition*, 124
- translucent, *clear*, 107
- transmit, *carry*, 96
  - " *convey*, 119
  - " *send*, 327
- transmutation, *change*, *n.*, 101
- transmute, *change*, *v.*, 100
- transparent, *candid*, 93
  - " *clear*, 107
  - " *evident*, 159
- transport, *carry*, 96
  - " *convey*, 119
  - " *enthusiasm*, 153
- trappings, *caparison*, 93
- travel, *journey*, 223
- travesty, *caricature*, 95
- treachery, *fraud*, 177
- treason, *fraud*, 177
- treasure, *cherish*, 104
- treat, *transact*, 360
- tremble, *shake*, 330

- trembling, *fear*, 168
- tremendous, *formidable*, 176
- tremor, *fear*, 168
- trepidation, *fear*, 168
- trespass, *attack*, *n.*, 64
- trial, *endeavor*, *n.*, 150
  - " *misfortune*, 242
- tribe, *people*, 266
- tribulation, *grief*, 187
  - " *misfortune*, 242
- tribute, *subsidy*, 345
- trick, *artifice*, 58
  - " *fraud*, 177
  - " *pretense*, 283
- trickery, *deception*, 123
- trifling, *idle*, 208
  - " *vain*, 364
- trim, *neat*, 249
- trip, *journey*, 223
- triumph, *happiness*, 189
  - " *victory*, 369
- trivial, *vain*, 364
  - " *venial*, 367
- troops, *army*, 56
- trouble, *anxiety*, 49
  - " *care*, 94
  - " *grief*, 187
  - [560]" *misfortune*, 242
- true, *authentic*, 67
  - " *faithful*, 165
  - " *honest*, 202
  - " *pure*, 296
  - " *real*, 301
- truism, *axiom*, 71
  - " *proverb*, 293
- trunk, *body*, 84
- trust, *v.*, *commit*, 110
- trust, *n.*, *assurance*, 61
  - " *faith*, 164
- trustworthy, *authentic*, 67
  - " *faithful*, 165
  - " *honest*, 202
  - " *reliable*, 306
- trusty, *faithful*, 165
  - " *honest*, 202
  - " *reliable*, 306

- truth, *justice*, 225
  - " *veracity*, 367
  - " *virtue*, 370
- truthful, *candid*, 93
- truthfulness, *veracity*, 367
- try, *chasten*, 103
  - " *endeavor, v.*, 149
- trying, *difficult*, 132
- tug, *draw*, 138
- tuition, *education*, 143
- tumult, *revolution*, 317
- turbid, *obscure*, 255
- turn, *bend*, 79
  - " *change, v.*, 100
  - " *revolve*, 318
- tutor, *teach*, 353
- twaddle, *babble*, 71
- twain, *both*, 84
- twine, *bend*, 79
- twinge, *pain*, 261
- twinkle, *light*, 231
- twinkling, *light*, 231
- twist, *bend*, 79
- two, *both*, 84
- type, *emblem*, 146
  - " *example*, 160
  - " *model*, 243
  - " *sign*, 332
- typical, *normal*, 253
- tyrannical, *absolute*, 8
- tyro, *amateur*, 39

- umbrage, *pique*, 272
- umpire, *judge*, 224
- unadorned, *clear*, 107
- unadulterated, *pure*, 296
- unambiguous, *clear*, 107
- unanimity, *harmony*, 191
- unassured, *precarious*, 282
- unavailing, *vain*, 364
- unavoidable, *necessary*, 250
- unavoidableness, *necessity*, 250
- unbelief, *doubt, n.*, 138
- unbeliever, *skeptic*, 334
- unbiased, *candid*, 93
- unbidden, *spontaneous*, 340

- unblemished, *perfect*, 268
    - " *pure*, 296
- unbounded, *infinite*, 216
- unbroken, *continual*, 117
- unceasing, *continual*, 117
    - " *eternal*, 157
- uncertain, *equivocal*, 155
    - " *precarious*, 282
- uncertainty, *doubt, n.*, 138
- unchangeable, *permanent*, 269
- unchanging, *permanent*, 269
- uncivil, *bluff*, 83
- uncivilized, *barbarous*, 73
- uncommon, *queer*, 297
    - " *rare*, 300
- uncommunicative, *taciturn*, 351
- uncompromising, *severe*, 329
- unconcern, *apathy*, 50
- unconditional, *absolute*, 8
- unconditioned, *infinite*, 216
- uncongeniality, *antipathy*, 48
- unconnected, *alien, a.*, 29
- unconquerable, *obstinate*, 256
- unconsciousness, *stupor*, 344
- uncontrollable, *rebellious*, 304
- uncorrupted, *pure*, 296
- uncouth, *awkward*, 70
    - " *barbarous*, 73
    - " *rustic*, 321
- uncreated, *primeval*, 287
- uncultivated, *fierce*, 171
- undaunted, *brave*, 85
- undefiled, *perfect*, 268
    - " *pure*, 296
- undeniable, *necessary*, 250
- underestimate, *disparage*, 134
- undergo, *endure*, 150
- underrate, *disparage*, 134
- understand, *perceive*, 267
- understanding, *mind*, 241
    - " *wisdom*, 372
- undertake, *endeavor, v.*, 149
- undervalue, *disparage*, 134
- undismayed, *brave*, 85
- undisturbed, *calm*, 91
- undulate, *fluctuate*, 173

- undying, *eternal*, 157
- uneducated, *ignorant*, 208
- unemployed, *idle*, 208
    - " *vacant*, 363
- unending, *eternal*, 157
- unenlightened, *ignorant*, 208
- unequivocal, *absolute*, 8
    - " *clear*, 107
- unfading, *eternal*, 157
- unfailing, *eternal*, 157
- unfairness, *injustice*, 220
    - " *prejudice*, 283
- unfathomable, *infinite*, 216
    - " *mysterious*, 247
- unfathomed, *mysterious*, 247
- unfeelingness, *apathy*, 50
- unfilled, *vacant*, 363
- unflinching, *obstinate*, 256
- unfold, *amplify*, 43
- ungainly, *awkward*, 70
- ungodliness, *sin*, 332
- ungovernable, *perverse*, 272
    - " *rebellious*, 304
- unhandy, *awkward*, 70
- unhealthful, *pernicious*, 270
- unhealthiness, *disease*, 134
- unhomogeneous, *heterogeneous*, 196
- unification, *union*, 362
- [561]uniform, *a.*, *alike*, 30
- uniform, *n.*, *dress*, 140
- uniformity, *harmony*, 191
- unimportant, *vain*, 364
- uninformed, *ignorant*, 208
- uninstructed, *ignorant*, 208
- unintellectual, *brutish*, 87
- unintelligible, *obscure*, 255
- uninterrupted, *continual*, 117
- *union*, 362
    - " *alliance*, 34
    - " *association*, 60
    - " *attachment*, 63
    - " *harmony*, 191
    - " *marriage*, 236
- unique, *queer*, 297
    - " *rare*, 300
- unison, *harmony*, 191

  - " *melody*, 238
- unity, *harmony*, 191
  - " *union*, 362
- universal, *general*, 181
- unkindness, *acrimony*, 15
- unknown, *mysterious*, 247
- unlawful, *criminal*, 120
- unlearned, *ignorant*, 208
- unless, *but*, 89
- unlettered, *ignorant*, 208
- unlike, *alien, a.*, 29
  - " *heterogeneous*, 196
- unlikeness, *difference*, 131
- unlimited, *infinite*, 216
- unmanageable, *rebellious*, 304
- unmannerly, *bluff*, 83
- unmatched, *queer*, 297
- unmeasured, *infinite*, 216
- unmingled, *pure*, 296
- unmistakable, *evident*, 159
  - " *clear*, 107
- unmitigated, *severe*, 329
- unmixed, *pure*, 296
- unobtrusiveness, *modesty*, 244
- unoccupied, *idle*, 208
  - " *vacant*, 363
- unparalleled, *rare*, 300
- unpolished, *rustic*, 321
- unpolluted, *pure*, 296
- unprecedented, *rare*, 300
- unprejudiced, *candid*, 93
- unpremeditated, *extemporaneous*, 163
- unprofitable, *vain*, 364
- unquestionable, *real*, 301
- unreal, *vain*, 364
- unreasonable, *absurd*, 11
- unrelenting, *severe*, 329
- unremitting, *continual*, 117
- unreserved, *candid*, 93
- unrighteousness, *injustice*, 220
  - " *sin*, 332
- unruffled, *calm*, 91
- unruly, *restive*, 314
- unsatisfying, *vain*, 364
- unselfishness, *benevolence*, 80
- unserviceable, *vain*, 364

- unsettle, *displace*, 135
- unsettled, *precarious*, 282
- unskilful, *awkward*, 70
- unskilled, *ignorant*, 208
- unsophisticated, *candid*, 93
    - " *rustic*, 321
- unsoundness, *disease*, 134
- unspiritual, *brutish*, 87
- unspotted, *pure*, 296
- unstable, *precarious*, 282
- unstained, *pure*, 296
- unsteady, *precarious*, 282
- unsubstantial, *vain*, 364
- unsuitable, *incongruous*, 214
- unsullied, *pure*, 296
- untainted, *pure*, 296
- untamed, *barbarous*, 73
- untarnished, *pure*, 296
- untaught, *ignorant*, 208
    - " *rustic*, 321
- untenanted, *vacant*, 363
- untoward, *perverse*, 272
- untrained, *fierce*, 171
- untruth, *deception*, 123
- untutored, *ignorant*, 208
- unusual, *queer*, 287
    - " *rare*, 300
- unvarying, *continual*, 117
- unwavering, *faithful*, 165
- unwholesome, *pernicious*, 270
- unwilling, *reluctant*, 308
- unyielding, *severe*, 329
    - " *obstinate*, 256
- upbraid, *reprove*, 312
- upbraiding, *reproof*, 311
- uphold, *abet*, 4
    - " *confirm*, 114
    - " *help*, 195
    - " *support*, 348
- uplifted, *high*, 198
- upright, *honest*, 202
    - " *innocent*, 220
    - " *pure*, 296
- uprightness, *justice*, 225
    - " *virtue*, 370
- uproot, *exterminate*, 163

- upshot, *consequence*, 116
- upstart, *new*, 252
- urbane, *polite*, 277
- urge, *influence*, 217
    - " *persuade*, 271
    - " *plead*, 274
    - " *quicken*, 297
- urge forward, *promote*, 291
- urgency, *necessity*, 250
- urge on, *drive*, 140
    - " *promote*, 291
    - " *quicken*, 297
- usage, *habit*, 187
- use, *employ*, 147
    - " *exercise*, 162
    - " *habit*, 187
    - " *utility*, 363
- usefulness, *profit*, 288
    - " *utility*, 363
- useless, *vain*, 364
- use up, *employ*, 147
- *usual*, 362
    - " *general*, 181
    - " *normal*, 253
- usurp, *assume*, 61
- utensil, *tool*, 358
- *utility*, 363
    - " *profit*, 288
- [562]utmost, *end, n.*, 148
- utter, *speak*, 339
- utterance, *remark*, 308
    - " *speech*, 339
- uttermost, *end, n.*, 148

- *vacant*, 363
    - " *idle*, 208
- vacate, *abandon*, 1
    - " *cancel*, 92
- vacillate, *fluctuate*, 173
- vacuous, *vacant*, 363
- vagary, *fancy*, 167
- *vain*, 364
- vainglory, *pride*, 286
- valediction, *farewell*, 168
- valedictory, *farewell*, 168
- valiant, *brave*, 85

- valor, *prowess*, 294
- value, *cherish*, 104
  - " *esteem, v.*, 156
  - " *price*, 285
  - " *profit*, 288
- vanity, *egotism*, 145
  - " *pride*, 286
- vanquish, *beat*, 75
  - " *conquer*, 115
- vapid, *vain*, 364
- variant, *heterogeneous*, 196
- variation, *change*, 101
  - " *difference*, 131
- variety, *change*, 101
  - " *difference*, 131
- various, *heterogeneous*, 196
- vary, *change*, 100
  - " *fluctuate*, 173
- vast, *large*, 229
- vaunt, *ostentation*, 259
- vaunting, *ostentation*, 259
- veer, *change*, 100
  - " *fluctuate*, 173
  - " *wander*, 371
- vehemence, *enthusiasm*, 153
- vehement, *eager*, 142
- veil, *hide*, 197
  - " *palliate*, 261
- *venal*, 365
- venerable, *old*, 257
- *venerate*, 366
  - " *admire*, 23
- *veneration*, 366
- vengeance, *revenge*, 316
- *venial*, 367
- venture, *hazard*, 194
- venturesome, *brave*, 85
- venturesomeness, *temerity*, 353
- *veracity*, 367
- *verbal*, 368
- verbiage, *circumlocution*, 105
  - " *diction*, 130
- verbose, *garrulous*, 181
- verbosity, *circumlocution*, 105
- verdant, *rustic*, 321
- verge, *boundary*, 84

- veritable, *authentic*, 67
  - " *real*, 301
- verity, *veracity*, 367
- vernacular, *language*, 228
- verse, *meter*, 240
  - " *poetry*, 277
- vestige, *trace*, 359
- vestments, *dress*, 140
- vesture, *dress*, 140
- vex, *affront*, 24
- vexation, *anger*, 44
  - " *chagrin*, 100
- viands, *food*, 175
- vibrate, *shake*, 330
- vice, *sin*, 332
- vicious, *criminal*, 120
  - " *restive*, 314
- viciousness, *sin*, 332
- vicissitude, *change*, *n.*, 101
- victimize, *abuse*, 12
- *victory*, 369
- victuals, *food*, 175
- view, *look*, 234
- vigilance, *care*, 94
- *vigilant*, 369
  - " *alert*, 28
- vigorous, *active*, 17
  - " *healthy*, 195
- vile, *brutish*, 87
  - " *criminal*, 120
- vilify, *abuse*, 12
  - " *slander*, 336
- villainy, *abomination*, 7
- vindicate, *avenge*, 69
- vindication, *apology*, 51
  - " *defense*, 123
- vinegarish, *bitter*, 81
- violate, *abuse*, 12
- violent, *fierce*, 171
- virile, *masculine*, 237
- *virtue*, 370
  - " *justice*, 225
- virtuous, *innocent*, 220
  - " *pure*, 296
- virtuousness, *virtue*, 370
- virulence, *acrimony*, 15

- virulent, *bitter*, 81
- viscid, *adhesive*, 22
- viscous, *adhesive*, 22
- visible, *evident*, 159
    - " *physical*, 272
- vision, *dream*, 139
- visionary, *fanciful*, 167
    - " *vain*, 364
- visit, *avenge*, 69
- visitation, *misfortune*, 242
- vitiate, *defile*, 124
- vituperate, *abuse*, 12
- vivacious, *alive*, 30
- vocabulary, *diction*, 130
    - " *language*, 228
- vocal, *verbal*, 368
- vocation, *business*, 88
- vociferate, *call*, 91
- void, *vacant*, 363
- voluntary, *spontaneous*, 340
- vow, *oath*, 254
- voyage, *journey*, 223
- vulgar, the, *mob*, 243
- vulgarism, *slang*, 336
- vulgarity, *slang*, 336

- wages, *pay*, 266
- waggery, *wit*, 373
- waggishness, *wit*, 373
- wait, *abide*, 5
- [563]wakeful, *vigilant*, 369
- *wander*, 371
- want, *necessity*, 250
    - " *poverty*, 279
- warble, *sing*, 333
- ward, *shelter*, 331
- wariness, *care*, 94
- warmth, *enthusiasm*, 153
- warn, *reprove*, 312
- warning, *example*, 160
- warp, *bend*, 79
- warrant, *precedent*, 282
- wary, *vigilant*, 369
- wash, *cleanse*, 107
- waste, *excess*, 160
    - " *vacant*, 363

- wastefulness, *excess*, 160
- watch, *look*, 234
- watch for, *abide*, 5
- watchful, *alert*, 28
    - " *vigilant*, 369
- watchfulness, *care*, 94
- watch, on the, *alert*, 28
- wave, *shake*, 330
- waver, *fluctuate*, 173
    - " *shake*, 330
- *way*, 372
    - " *air*, 27
    - " *direction*, 132
- wayward, *perverse*, 272
- weak, *faint*, 164
- weapon, *tool*, 358
- weapons, *arms*, 55
- wearied, *faint*, 164
- wear out, *tire*, 357
- weary, *tire*, 357
- wedded, *addicted*, 19
- wedding, *marriage*, 236
- wedlock, *marriage*, 236
- weigh, *deliberate*, 125
- weight, *load*, 233
- welcome, *delightful*, 126
- well, *healthy*, 195
- well-behaved, *polite*, 277
- well-bred, *polite*, 277
- well-disposed, *friendly*, 178
- well-mannered, *polite*, 277
- well off, *comfortable*, 110
- well-provided, *comfortable*, 110
- well to do, *comfortable*, 110
- whence, *therefore*, 355
- wherefore, *therefore*, 355
- while, *time*, 356
- whim, *fancy*, 167
- whimsical, *queer*, 297
- whip, *beat*, 75
- whit, *particle*, 264
- whiten, *bleach*, 82
- whitewash, *bleach*, 82
- wholesome, *healthy*, 195
- wicked, *criminal*, 120
- wickedness, *abomination*, 7

  - " *sin*, 332
- wide, *large*, 229
- wide-awake, *active*, 17
  - " *alert*, 28
  - " *vigilant*, 369
- widen, *amplify*, 43
- wild, *absurd*, 11
  - " *fierce*, 171
- wile, *artifice*, 58
  - " *pretense*, 283
- wilful, *perverse*, 272
- willing, *spontaneous*, 340
- win, *allure*, 37
  - " *attain*, 64
  - " *conquer*, 115
  - " *get*, 183
  - " *succeed*, 346
- wind up, *end*, *v.*, 148
- winning, *amiable*, 42
  - " *charming*, 103
- win over, *persuade*, 271
- winsome, *amiable*, 42
- wipe, *cleanse*, 107
- wipe out, *exterminate*, 163
- *wisdom*, 372
  - " *knowledge*, 227
  - " *prudence*, 294
- wise, *sagacious*, 322
- wish, *desire*, 128
- *wit*, 373
- with, *by*, 89
- withal, *also*, 37
- withdraw, *abstract*, 10
- withdraw from, *abandon*, 1
- wither, *die*, 130
- withhold, *keep*, 226
  - " *restrain*, 315
- without delay, *immediately*, 211
- without end, *eternal*, 157
- witness, *avow*, 69
  - " *testimony*, 355
- witticism, *wit*, 373
- wo, *grief*, 187
  - " *pain*, 261
- woful, *pitiful*, 273
- womanish, *feminine*, 169

- womanly, *feminine*, 169
- wonder, *admire*, 23
    - " *amazement*, 39
- wont, *habit*, 187
- wonted, *usual*, 362
- woo, *address*, *v.*, 19
- word, *term*, 354
- wordiness, *circumlocution*, 105
- wording, *diction*, 130
- *work*, 374
    - " *act*, 16
    - " *business*, 88
- workman, *artist*, 58
- work out, *do*, 135
- worn, *faint*, 164
- worn down, *faint*, 164
- worn out, *faint*, 164
- worry, *anxiety*, 49
    - " *care*, 94
- worship, *religion*, 307
- worst, *beat*, 75
    - " *conquer*, 115
- worth, *price*, 285
    - " *virtue*, 370
- worthiness, *virtue*, 370
- worthless, *vain*, 364
- worthy, *becoming*, 77
- wound, *affront*, 24
- wrangle, *reason*, *v.*, 302
- wrath, *anger*, 44
- [564]wretched, *pitiful*, 273
- writing, metrical, *poetry*, 277
- writings, *literature*, 233
- wrong, *v.*, *abuse*, 12
- wrong, *a.*, *criminal*, 120
- wrong, *n.*, *injury*, 219
    - " *injustice*, 220
    - " *sin*, 332
- wrong-doing, *sin*, 332

- yearning, *eager*, 142
- yell, *call*, 91
- *yet*, 374
    - " *but*, 89
    - " *notwithstanding*, *conj.*, 254
- yield, *allow*, 35

    - " *bend*, 79
    - " *harvest*, 192
    - " *surrender*, 349
- yielding, *docile*, 136
- young, *new*, 252
    - " *youthful*, 375
- *youthful*, 375
    - " *new*, 252

- zeal, *enthusiasm*, 153
- zealous, *eager*, 142
- zest, *appetite*, 54

Transcriber's Endnotes:

Significant amendments, invalid links and further notes have been listed below.

p. 45, ANIMAL, synonyms re-ordered (*fauna* originally last);

p. 45, ANIMAL, 'individal' amended to *individual*;

p. 70, AWFUL, 'mein' amended to *mien*;

p. 75, BEAT, invalid reference: 'SHATTER', see INDEX;

p. 78, BEGINNING, '1 John 1' amended to *John i, 1*;

p. 82, BITTER, 'quinin, or strychnin' amended to *quinine, or strychnine*;

p. 98, CAUSE, 'conseqeunce' amended to *consequence*;

p. 128, DESIRE, 'concupisence' amended to *concupiscence*;

p. 148, END, *v.*, 'synonymns' amended to *synonyms*;

p. 148, END, *v.*, invalid reference: 'BEGIN', see INDEX;

p. 149, END, *n.*, 'CONSEQENCE' amended to *CONSEQUENCE*;

p. 153, ENTHUSIASM, 'ecstacy' amended to *ecstasy*;

p. 167, FANCIFUL, 'arangement' amended to *arrangement*;

p. 190, HAPPINESS, invalid reference: 'COMFORT', see INDEX;

p. 196, HETEROGENEOUS, 'heterogenious' amended to *heterogeneous* (twice);

p. 202, HONEST, 'fradulent' amended to *fraudulent*;

p. 212, IMMERSE, invalid reference: 'BURY', see INDEX;

p. 214, IMPUDENCE, invalid reference: 'ARROGANCE', see INDEX;

p. 227, KNOWLEDGE, 'or' amended to *of*—'... perception of external objects ...';

p. 276, PLENTIFUL, '(Compare synonyms especial reference to giving or expending.', amended, using a later edition, to *(Compare synonyms for ADEQUATE.)*;

p. 278, POLITE, 'devolopment' amended to *development*;

p. 297, QUEER, 'an' amended to *as*—'... and so uneven, as an *odd* number ...';

p. 305, RECORD, 'deposito' amended to *depository*;

p. 316, REVELATION, 'mistery' amended to *mystery*;

p. 334, SKETCH and p. 335, SKEPTIC, out-of-sequence entries re-ordered; estimated new placement of p. 335 marker; index amendments include: p. 511, agnostic; p. 513, atheist; p. 523, deist; p. 525, disbeliever; p. 526, doubter; p. 532, freethinker; p. 537, infidel; p. 555, skeptic; p. 560, unbeliever;

p. 400, ASSUME, 'and' amended to *or*—'Unless he do profane, steal, or ——.';

p. 418, DEXTERITY, 'imimitable' amended to *inimitable*;

p. 431, EXTERMINATE, added *is*—'... what is the original meaning ...';

p. 433, FEAR, 'right' amended to *fright*—'How does it compare with *fright* ...';

p. 434, FEUD, 'contentention' amended to *contention*;

p. 443, HAPPINESS, 'ecstacy' amended to *ecstasy*;

p. 487, PROVERB, 'apothem' amended to *apothegm*;

p. 515, INDEX, because: 'therefor' amended to *therefore*;

p. 516, INDEX, bodily: page number added to *physical*;

p. 530, INDEX, fancy: sub-listing ordered alphabetically;

p. 535, INDEX, 'immeasureable': amended to *immeasurable*;

p. 535, INDEX, imagination: page number corrected for *idea*;

p. 539, INDEX, kind: sub-listing ordered alphabetically;

p. 540, INDEX, loving: 'friendy' amended to *friendly*;

p. 543, INDEX, nutrition: *oath* removed from sub-listing and listed separately;

p. 546, INDEX, plan: *horizontal* removed from sub-listing.

End of the Project Gutenberg EBook of English Synonyms and Antonyms, by James Champlin Fernald

*** END OF THIS PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK ENGLISH SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS ***

LearningExpress®

SKILL BUILDERS IN FOCUS

501 Synonym & Antonym QUESTIONS

Master this vocabulary skill and score higher!

Achieve maximum results with proven practice

Build test-taking confidence—fast

Great for the SAT, GRE—and other standardized tests

Focus Fast on Synonyms and Antonyms

501
Synonym & Antonym Questions

501

Synonym & Antonym Questions

LearningExpress
NEW YORK

Copyright © 2002 LearningExpress, LLC.

All rights reserved under International and Pan-American Copyright Conventions.
Published in the United States by LearningExpress, LLC, New York.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data:
Dermott, Brigit.
501 synonym and antonym questions / Brigit Dermott.— 1st ed.
p. cm.
ISBN 1-57685-423-X (pbk.)
1. English language—Examinations—Study guides. 2. English language—Synonyms and antonyms—Problems, exercises, etc. I. Title: Five hundred one synonym and antonym questions. II. Title: Five hundred and one synonym and antonym questions. III. Title.
LB1631.5 .D47 2002
428'.0076—dc21
2002004439

Printed in the United States of America
9 8 7 6 5 4 3
First Edition

ISBN 1-57685-423-X

For more information or to place an order, contact LearningExpress at:
55 Broadway
8th Floor
New York, NY 10006

Or visit us at:
www.learnatest.com

The LearningExpress Skill Builder in Focus Writing Team is comprised of experts in test preparation, as well as educators and teachers who specialize in language arts and math.

LearningExpress Skill Builder in Focus Writing Team

Brigit Dermott
Freelance Writer
English Tutor, New York Cares
New York, New York

Sandy Gade
Project Editor
LearningExpress
New York, New York

Kerry McLean
Project Editor
Math Tutor
Shirley, New York

William Recco
Middle School Math Teacher, Grade 8
New York Shoreham/Wading River School District
Math Tutor
St. James, New York

Colleen Schultz
Middle School Math Teacher, Grade 8
Vestal Central School District
Math Tutor
Vestal, New York

Contents

Introduction ix

1 Synonyms 1

2 Antonyms 9

3 Synonyms 17

4 Antonyms 25

5 Synonyms 33

6 Antonyms 41

7 Synonyms and Antonyms 49

8 Synonyms 57

9 Antonyms 65

10 Synonyms 73

11 Antonyms 81

12 Synonyms 89

13 Antonyms 97

14 Synonyms and Antonyms 103

Introduction

Welcome to 501 Synonym and Antonym Questions! This book is designed to help you prepare for the verbal sections of many assessment and entrance exams. By completing the exercises in this book you will also increase your vocabulary and refine your knowledge of words.

Most standardized tests—including high school entrance exams, the SAT, civil service exams, and the GRE—use synonym and antonym questions to test verbal skills. These questions ask test takers to identify the word that is most similar or dissimilar to another word, effectively testing their knowledge of two words.

The questions in this book, for the most part, are grouped into sections of questions that ask you to select a word's synonym and sections that ask you to select a word's antonym. There are two sections that include questions asking for either the synonym or the antonym.

The questions increase in difficulty as you move through the exercises of each chapter. Because this book is designed for many levels of test takers, you may find that some of the more advanced questions are beyond your ability. If you are using this book to study for a high school entrance exam, you may get a number of questions that appear later in a section wrong. Don't worry! If you are getting the earlier questions correct, you are probably in good shape for your test. However, if you are studying for a graduate level exam such as the GRE, the full range of questions presented is appropriate for your level.

The questions in this book can help you prepare for your test in many ways. First, completing these practice exercises will make you familiar with the question format. They will also get you thinking of words in terms of other words with similar or opposite meanings. In the test-taking environment it can be difficult to switch gears from synonym questions to antonym questions; completing these exercises will make these mental gymnastics more comfortable.

Second, your performance on these questions will help you assess your vocabulary level. For example, a word may be familiar to you—you may have seen it in print and have a general sense of what it means—but when tested, you may discover that you do not know the word's precise meaning. These exercises will help you pinpoint those familiar words for which you need to learn the exact definition. In addition, you will probably encounter words that are totally unfamiliar. By memorizing their definitions, you can add these words to your vocabulary and call upon them at test time to improve your score.

Third, many of the questions in this book, and on assessment exams, test your ability to discern nuance of meaning. The question may ask you to identify the synonym for a secondary definition of a common word—for example, "inclination or natural ability" is a secondary definition of the word "bent." Also, the direction for these exercises usually ask you to identify the word that is "*most* similar" or "*most* dissimilar" in meaning to the word in the question. This means that you may be asked to pick between degrees of meaning. For example, “atrocious” means “utterly revolting”; in this case, “revolting” would be a more accurate synonym than “unpleasant.”

Each question is fully explained at the end of the chapter. The answer keys give you not only the right answer but also the definitions of the word in the question and the correct answer. Use your performance to create a study guide. For example, make a list of all the words that you missed and their definitions. Then study this list as a quick and concentrated method to improve your vocabulary. In some cases, you will also benefit from looking up the definitions of the words that you selected incorrectly to ensure that you know the precise meaning of these words. Then add these words to your study list as well.

You have already taken an important step toward improving your vocabulary and your score. You have shown your commitment by purchasing this book. Now all you need to do is to complete each 35 to 40 question exercise, study the answers, and watch your vocabulary increase. You can even work in pencil and do the exercises again to reinforce what you have learned. Good luck!

1

Synonyms

Which of these words is closest in meaning to the word provided?

1. remote
  a. automatic
  b. distant
  c. savage
  d. mean

2. detest
  a. argue
  b. hate
  c. discover
  d. reveal

3. gracious
  a. pretty
  b. clever
  c. pleasant
  d. present

4. predict
  a. foretell
  b. decide
  c. prevent
  d. discover

5. kin
  a. exult
  b. twist
  c. friend
  d. relative

6. pensive
  a. oppressed
  b. caged
  c. thoughtful
  d. happy

7. banish
a. exile
b. hate
c. fade
d. clean

8. fraud
a. malcontent
b. argument
c. imposter
d. clown

9. saccharine
a. leave
b. sweet
c. arid
d. quit

10. drag
a. sleepy
b. crush
c. proud
d. pull

11. jovial
a. incredulous
b. merry
c. revolting
d. dizzy

12. indifferent
a. neutral
b. unkind
c. precious
d. mean

13. simulate
a. excite
b. imitate
c. trick
d. apelike

14. charisma
a. ghost
b. force
c. charm
d. courage

15. apportion
a. divide
b. decide
c. cut
d. squabble

16. generic
a. general
b. cheap
c. fresh
d. elderly

17. qualm
a. distress
b. impunity
c. persevere
d. scruple

18. wary
a. calm
b. curved
c. confused
d. cautious

19. distort
a. wrong
b. evil
c. deform
d. harm

20. sumptuous
a. delirious
b. gorgeous
c. perilous
d. luxurious

21. reel
a. whirl
b. fish
c. hit
d. mistake

22. inscrutable
a. difficult
b. mysterious
c. inflexible
d. wary

23. appall
a. delirious
b. covered
c. dismay
d. confuse

24. upright
a. honorable
b. horizontal
c. humble
d. supine

25. reverie
a. palimpsest
b. phantom
c. daydream
d. curio

26. loot
a. destruction
b. waste
c. spoils
d. cavort

27. loquacious
a. talkative
b. thirsty
c. beautiful
d. complicated

28. chimera
a. chimney
b. protest
c. illusion
d. panache

29. temerity
a. audacity
b. fearfulness
c. shyness
d. stupidity

30. educe
a. demand
b. elicit
c. ideal
d. unlawful

31. nabob
a. bigwig
b. doubter
c. frolic
d. converse

32. pall
a. light
b. satiate
c. carry
d. horror

33. sacrosanct
a. prayer
b. sanctuary
c. pious
d. sacred

34. louche
a. gauche
b. fine
c. brilliant
d. indecent

35. stentorian
a. violent
b. misbegotten
c. loud
d. stealthy

Answers

1. **b.** remote means faraway, or **distant**

2. **b.** to detest means to feel intense or violent dislike, or to **hate**

3. **c.** gracious means to be **pleasant** or considerate in social interactions

4. **a.** to predict means to declare in advance or to **foretell**

5. **d.** kin means people with common ancestors, or **relative**s

6. **c.** pensive means moodily or dreamily **thoughtful**

7. **a.** to banish means to drive out from home or country, or to **exile**

8. **c.** a fraud is someone who is not what he or she pretends to be, or an **imposter**

9. **b.** saccharine means overly **sweet**

10. **d.** to drag is to **pull**, or to cause movement in a direction with applied force

11. **b.** jovial means good humored or **merry**

12. **a.** to be indifferent is to be marked by impartiality or to be **neutral**

13. **b.** to simulate is to assume the outward appearance of, or to **imitate**

14. **c.** charisma is magnetic **charm** or appeal

15. **a.** to apportion is to **divide** and share out

16. **a.** generic means having the characteristic of a whole group, or **general**

17. **d.** a qualm is a feeling of uneasiness about a moral issue, or a **scruple**

18. **d.** wary means to be attentive especially to danger, or to be **cautious**

19. **c.** to distort means to twist out of a normal state, or to **deform**

20. **d.** sumptuous means excessively costly, rich, or **luxurious**

21. **a.** one meaning of reel is to move round and round, or to **whirl**

22. **b.** inscrutable means not easily interpreted or understood, or **mysterious**

23. **c.** to appall is to overcome with shock, or to **dismay**

24. **a.** upright can mean either **honorable** or vertical; horizontal and supine are both antonyms of upright

25. **c.** a reverie means the state of being lost in thought, or a **daydream**

26. **c.** loot means goods seized in war, or **spoils**

27. **a.** loquacious means excessively **talkative**, or garrulous

28. **c.** a chimera is a fabrication of the mind, or an **illusion**

29. **a.** temerity means unreasonable contempt for danger or recklessness, or **audacity**

30. **b.** to educe means to develop something potential or latent; to **elicit** means to draw out something hidden or latent

31. **a.** a nabob is a person of great wealth or importance, or a **bigwig**

32. **b.** to pall can mean to deprive of pleasure in something by **satiating**

33. **d.** sacrosanct means the most **sacred**, or holy

34. **d.** louche means not reputable, or **indecent**

35. **c.** stentorian means **loud** and is usually used to imply a voice of great power and range

2

Antonyms

Which of these words is most nearly the opposite of the word provided?

36. withdraw
- **a.** reduce
- **b.** need
- **c.** advance
- **d.** want

37. secret
- **a.** friendly
- **b.** covert
- **c.** hidden
- **d.** overt

38. heartfelt
- **a.** loving
- **b.** insincere
- **c.** unhealthy
- **d.** humorous

39. impartial
- **a.** hostile
- **b.** biased
- **c.** dislike
- **d.** worried

40. luminous
- **a.** clear
- **b.** dim
- **c.** brittle
- **d.** clever

41. awe
- **a.** borrow
- **b.** shallow
- **c.** low
- **d.** contempt

42. pit
a. group
b. peak
c. select
d. marry

43. rotund
a. round
b. unimportant
c. thin
d. dull

44. talent
a. ungrateful
b. silent
c. show
d. inability

45. common
a. strange
b. uneasy
c. quick
d. fast

46. brazen
a. bashful
b. boisterous
c. noisy
d. heated

47. expect
a. attend
b. regret
c. despair
d. loathe

48. malodorous
a. acrid
b. pungent
c. fragrant
d. delicious

49. expound
a. besmirch
b. confuse
c. confine
d. condemn

50. pique
a. value
b. gully
c. smooth
d. soothe

51. abate
a. free
b. augment
c. provoke
d. wane

52. dearth
a. lack
b. poverty
c. abundance
d. foreign

53. peaked
a. tired
b. arrogant
c. pointy
d. ruddy

54. abridge
a. shorten
b. extend
c. stress
d. easy

55. kindle
a. smother
b. detest
c. enemy
d. discourage

56. meager
a. kind
b. generous
c. thoughtful
d. copious

57. philistine
a. novice
b. intellectual
c. pious
d. debutante

58. zenith
a. worst
b. apex
c. nadir
d. past

59. germane
a. irrelevant
b. indifferent
c. impartial
d. improvident

60. irascible
a. determined
b. placid
c. reasonable
d. pliant

61. approbate
a. ingratitude
b. condemn
c. dissatisfaction
d. master

62. supercilious
a. unimportant
b. relevant
c. serious
d. meek

63. improvident
a. cautious
b. fortunate
c. proven
d. intelligent

64. demur
a. embrace
b. crude
c. boisterous
d. falter

65. fatuous
a. crafty
b. frugal
c. sensible
d. inane

66. quiescent
- **a.** lackadaisical
- **b.** active
- **c.** dull
- **d.** prescient

67. sartorial
- **a.** cheerful
- **b.** sincere
- **c.** inelegant
- **d.** homespun

68. sapient
- **a.** hunched
- **b.** strong
- **c.** simple
- **d.** simian

69. matutinal
- **a.** paternal
- **b.** crepuscular
- **c.** maritime
- **d.** marsupial

70. impecunious
- **a.** wealthy
- **b.** cautious
- **c.** hungry
- **d.** tardy

Answers

36. **c.** to withdraw means to remove or retreat; to **advance** is the opposite of retreat

37. **d.** secret means hidden or covert; **overt** means open to view

38. **b.** heartfelt means expressing genuine feeling, or sincere, so **insincere** is its opposite

39. **b.** impartial means to be without prejudice or bias, therefore **biased** is the opposite

40. **b.** luminous means radiating or reflecting light, or glowing; **dim** means dark or dull

41. **d.** awe means a sense of deep respect or veneration; **contempt** means a lack of respect, or disdain

42. **b.** a pit is a hole and a **peak** is the top of a hill or mountain

43. **c.** rotund means rounded or plump, therefore **thin** is the opposite

44. **d.** a talent is a special creative or artistic ability, therefore **inability** is the opposite

45. **a.** common means ordinary or familiar; **strange** means unfamiliar

46. **a.** brazen means to be defiant or insolent; **bashful** means to be shy or timid

47. **c.** to expect is to wait for or to look forward to; to **despair** is to lose all hope

48. **c.** malodorous means to have a bad smell; **fragrant** means smelling sweet or delicate

49. **b.** to expound means to explain; to **confuse**, or confound, is the opposite of expound

50. **d.** to pique means to excite or irritate; to **soothe** means to calm

51. **b.** to abate means to reduce in degree or intensity; to **augment** means to increase

52. **c.** dearth means an inadequate supply or lack of something; **abundance** means an ample quantity, or wealth

53. **d.** to be peaked is to appear pale or wan; to be **ruddy** is to have a healthy, red complexion

54. **b.** to abridge means to shorten and to **extend** means to lengthen

55. **a.** to kindle means to start burning or ignite; to **smother** means to stifle or suppress

56. **d.** meager means lacking in quality or quantity; **copious** means present in large quantity, or abundant

57. **b.** philistine is used disparagingly to describe a person guided by material rather than intellectual values; an **intellectual** is a person who engages in creative use of his or her intellect

58. **a.** zenith means the highest point or the apex; **nadir** means the lowest point

59. **a.** germane means to be appropriate or relevant, therefore **irrelevant** is the opposite

60. **b.** irascible means easily angered; **placid** means calm or serene

61. **b.** to approbate means to approve or sanction; to **condemn** means to declare wrong or to convict

62. **d.** supercilious means coolly or patronizingly haughty; **meek** means enduring injury with patience and without resentment

63. **a.** improvident means lacking prudent foresight, or careless; **cautious** means to be wary or to exercise forethought

64. **a.** to demur means to delay or hesitate; to **embrace** means to accept readily or gladly; demure means coy

65. **c.** fatuous means inanely foolish; **sensible** is its nearest opposite

66. **b.** quiescent means marked by inactivity or repose, therefore **active** is the opposite

67. **a.** sartorial means of or relating to tailored clothes; **homespun** means homemade

68. **c.** sapient means possessing great wisdom, or sage; one meaning of **simple** is deficient in intelligence

69. **b.** matutinal means of or relating to the morning; **crepuscular** means relating to or resembling twilight

70. **a.** impecunious means having little or no money, therefore **wealthy** is the opposite

3

Synonyms

Select the word that most nearly means the word provided.

71. modest most nearly means
- **a.** attractive
- **b.** clever
- **c.** current
- **d.** humble

72. custom most nearly means
- **a.** dessert
- **b.** habit
- **c.** ethic
- **d.** deliver

73. prolong most nearly means
- **a.** extend
- **b.** inquire
- **c.** relax
- **d.** wait

74. hustle most nearly means
- **a.** dance
- **b.** hurry
- **c.** busy
- **d.** clean

75. solemn most nearly means
- **a.** amusing
- **b.** harmful
- **c.** speech
- **d.** serious

76. imply most nearly means
- **a.** suggest
- **b.** stab
- **c.** thick
- **d.** destroy

77. ramble most nearly means
- **a.** knot
- **b.** confuse
- **c.** wander
- **d.** wonder

78. beneficial most nearly means
- **a.** help
- **b.** advantageous
- **c.** charity
- **d.** wise

79. flare most nearly means
- **a.** judicial
- **b.** temper
- **c.** style
- **d.** blaze

80. negligent most nearly means
- **a.** pajamas
- **b.** morbid
- **c.** careless
- **d.** dark

81. aloof most nearly means
- **a.** above
- **b.** tidy
- **c.** clever
- **d.** reserved

82. resolve most nearly means
- **a.** turn
- **b.** puzzle
- **c.** decide
- **d.** want

83. congregate most nearly means
- **a.** worship
- **b.** gather
- **c.** disturb
- **d.** hurry

84. utter most nearly means
- **a.** express
- **b.** defer
- **c.** borrow
- **d.** laugh

85. fearless most nearly means
- **a.** powerful
- **b.** cowardly
- **c.** brave
- **d.** careful

86. negligible most nearly means
- **a.** insignificant
- **b.** arguable
- **c.** careless
- **d.** dark

87. placid most nearly means
- **a.** calm
- **b.** lazy
- **c.** solemn
- **d.** devious

88. rake most nearly means
- **a.** thin
- **b.** scoundrel
- **c.** gentleman
- **d.** shovel

89. dupe most nearly means
a. rancher
b. trick
c. simpleton
d. drug

90. stigma most nearly means
a. stain
b. trial
c. difficulty
d. holiness

91. reside most nearly means
a. remain
b. home
c. dwell
d. sediment

92. covetous most nearly means
a. quiet
b. sneaky
c. lurking
d. greedy

93. abide most nearly means
a. endure
b. hate
c. attendance
d. live

94. shrewd most nearly means
a. intractable
b. mean
c. astute
d. intelligent

95. fetter most nearly means
a. rancid
b. praise
c. hamper
d. persist

96. flagrant most nearly means
a. vibrant
b. glaring
c. vicious
d. pleasant

97. mitigate most nearly means
a. relieve
b. blend
c. defend
d. confuse

98. rail most nearly means
a. scold
b. push
c. try
d. punish

99. meld most nearly means
a. character
b. distinction
c. blend
d. firmness

100. rally most nearly means
a. demonstrate
b. muster
c. course
d. truly

101. abject most nearly means
- **a.** indigent
- **b.** desire
- **c.** despondent
- **d.** extreme

102. bespoke most nearly means
- **a.** gentle
- **b.** quiet
- **c.** tailored
- **d.** handsome

103. diffident most nearly means
- **a.** apathetic
- **b.** shy
- **c.** arrogant
- **d.** quarrelsome

104. proffer most nearly means
- **a.** mendicant
- **b.** wastrel
- **c.** predict
- **d.** tender

105. mordant most nearly means
- **a.** dead
- **b.** gruesome
- **c.** fetid
- **d.** caustic

106. churlish most nearly means
- **a.** childish
- **b.** boorish
- **c.** tempestuous
- **d.** disorderly

107. antediluvian most nearly means
- **a.** antiquated
- **b.** parched
- **c.** nonsectarian
- **d.** nonsensical

108. picayune most nearly means
- **a.** petty
- **b.** spicy
- **c.** paltry
- **d.** southern

109. smite most nearly means
- **a.** flee
- **b.** speck
- **c.** dirt
- **d.** strike

110. winnow most nearly means
- **a.** carve
- **b.** wind
- **c.** weed
- **d.** carry

Answers

71. **d.** modest means to be free of conceit or pretension, or **humble**

72. **b.** a custom means a long-established practice, or a **habit**

73. **a.** to prolong means to lengthen in time, or to **extend**

74. **b.** to hustle means to **hurry**

75. **d.** solemn means marked by grave sobriety, or **serious**

76. **a.** to imply means to express indirectly, or to **suggest**

77. **c.** to ramble means to move aimlessly from place to place, or to **wander**

78. **b.** beneficial means causing benefit, or **advantageous**

79. **d.** flare means a fire or **blaze** used to signal; flair means talent or style

80. **c.** negligent means marked by neglect, or **careless**

81. **d.** aloof means distant in feeling, or **reserved**

82. **c.** one meaning of resolve is to **decide**, often to stop from doing something

83. **b.** to congregate means to **gather** in a group

84. **a.** to utter means to **express** in words

85. **c.** fearless means lacking fear, or **brave**

86. **a.** negligible means so small or **insignificant** as to deserve little attention

87. **a.** placid means free of disturbance, or **calm**

88. **b.** a rake is a dissolute person, or a **scoundrel**

89. **b.** to dupe means to deceive or to **trick**

90. **a.** stigma means a mark of shame or discredit, or a **stain**

91. **c.** to reside means to occupy a place as one's home, or to **dwell**

92. **d.** covetous means having an inordinate desire for wealth, or **greedy**

93. **a.** to abide means to **endure** without yielding, or to withstand

94. **c.** shrewd means marked by clever awareness, or **astute**

95. **c.** to fetter means to **hamper**, or to restrain

96. **b.** flagrant means obviously wrong or immoral; **glaring** means painfully obvious

97. **a.** mitigate means to make less severe or painful, or to **relieve**

98. **a.** to rail means to **scold** in harsh, abusive language

99. **c.** to meld means to merge or to **blend**

100. **b.** to rally means to arouse for action, or to **muster**

101. **c.** abject means cast down in spirit, or utterly hopeless; **despondent** means having lost all hope

102. **c.** bespoke means custom-made; **tailored** also means custom-made

103. **b.** diffident means **shy** or lacking in confidence

104. **d.** to proffer means to put something forward for acceptance, or to **tender**

105. **d.** mordant means biting or **caustic** in means or speech

106. **b.** churlish means resembling an ill-bred or vulgar person, or **boorish**

107. **a.** antediluvian means so ancient that it could have come before the time of the flood and Noah's ark, or **antiquated**

108. **c.** picayune means trivial or of little value; **paltry** means trivial or meager

109. **d.** smite means to **strike** heavily especially with the hand

110. **c.** to winnow means to sift or get rid of, like **weed**, it is often used with "out"

4

Antonyms

Select the word that is most opposite to the word provided.

111. detain is most opposite to
- **a.** release
- **b.** silence
- **c.** forget
- **d.** prosper

112. famous is most opposite to
- **a.** boring
- **b.** poor
- **c.** obscure
- **d.** untalented

113. colossal is most opposite to
- **a.** easy
- **b.** tiny
- **c.** graceful
- **d.** roof

114. fluid is most opposite to
- **a.** solid
- **b.** liquid
- **c.** afraid
- **d.** decent

115. continue is most opposite to
- **a.** curve
- **b.** argue
- **c.** carry
- **d.** pause

116. labor is most opposite to
- **a.** amuse
- **b.** cat
- **c.** rest
- **d.** strive

117. brawny is most opposite to
a. swift
b. weak
c. strong
d. pale

118. fickle is most opposite to
a. steady
b. kind
c. please
d. finagle

119. inept is most opposite to
a. clumsy
b. infer
c. competent
d. foolish

120. pivotal is most opposite to
a. turning
b. wavy
c. unimportant
d. clear

121. cursed is most opposite to
a. swore
b. pious
c. unfortunate
d. lucky

122. candid is most opposite to
a. unkind
b. blunt
c. valid
d. dishonest

123. flaunt is most opposite to
a. regard
b. sink
c. hide
d. propose

124. heal is most opposite to
a. sew
b. foot
c. good
d. maim

125. pacify is most opposite to
a. excite
b. land
c. coddle
d. unhand

126. sullen is most opposite to
a. dirty
b. cheerful
c. clean
d. risen

127. assure is most opposite to
a. alarm
b. reassure
c. quiet
d. unsure

128. fallacious is most opposite to
a. perfect
b. truthful
c. accidental
d. disarming

129. gumption is most opposite to
a. seriousness
b. apathy
c. levity
d. despair

130. ecstasy is most opposite to
a. hate
b. agony
c. languor
d. fatigue

131. astute is most opposite to
a. distraught
b. careful
c. generous
d. gullible

132. winsome is most opposite to
a. dour
b. attractive
c. mysterious
d. clever

133. droll is most opposite to
a. forget
b. charm
c. sedate
d. absurd

134. enigmatic is most opposite to
a. healthy
b. watchful
c. disastrous
d. obvious

135. obtuse is most opposite to
a. slim
b. acute
c. opaque
d. thick

136. obsequious is most opposite to
a. clear
b. clever
c. domineering
d. dandified

137. doleful is most opposite to
a. empty
b. rich
c. witty
d. vivacious

138. wanton is most opposite to
a. merciful
b. repast
c. brilliant
d. vicious

139. banal is most opposite to
a. sincere
b. wealthy
c. extraordinary
d. trustworthy

140. lugubrious is most opposite to
a. quick
b. cheerful
c. salubrious
d. dry

141. perspicacious is most opposite to
- **a.** calm
- **b.** easy
- **c.** dull
- **d.** winsome

142. elan is most opposite to
- **a.** inelegance
- **b.** stupidity
- **c.** obscure
- **d.** despair

143. recondite is most opposite to
- **a.** manifest
- **b.** flexible
- **c.** provident
- **d.** sociable

144. gainsay is most opposite to
- **a.** regret
- **b.** own
- **c.** prudent
- **d.** prude

145. effluvium is most opposite to
- **a.** land
- **b.** essential
- **c.** fragrance
- **d.** solid

146. parsimony is most opposite to
- **a.** generosity
- **b.** sinfulness
- **c.** verbosity
- **d.** tenderness

147. truculent is most opposite to
- **a.** faltering
- **b.** gentle
- **c.** facile
- **d.** submissive

148. spurious is most opposite to
- **a.** disingenuous
- **b.** thoughtless
- **c.** placid
- **d.** genuine

149. welter is most opposite to
- **a.** order
- **b.** freeze
- **c.** patron
- **d.** sustain

150. eclat is most opposite to
- **a.** apathy
- **b.** dullness
- **c.** silence
- **d.** disinterest

Answers

111. **a.** to detain means to hold or keep back; to **release** means to let go

112. **c.** famous means widely known; **obscure** means little known

113. **b.** colossal means incredibly large, therefore **tiny** is the opposite

114. **a.** a fluid is a substance that flows; a **solid** does not flow

115. **d.** to continue means to act without interruption; to **pause** means to stop temporarily

116. **c.** to labor means to work; to **rest** means to cease working

117. **b.** brawny means muscled or strong, therefore **weak** is the opposite

118. **a.** fickle means to lack steadiness, therefore **steady** is the opposite

119. **c.** inept means to lack competence, therefore **competent** is the opposite

120. **c.** pivotal means very important, or crucial, therefore **unimportant** is the opposite

121. **d.** cursed means to be the subject of misfortune, or to be unlucky, therefore **lucky** is the opposite

122. **d.** candid means to be frank, or honest, therefore **dishonest** is the opposite

123. **c.** to flaunt means to display showily, or to show off, therefore **hide** is the opposite

124. **d.** to heal means to restore to health; to **maim** means to injure

125. **a.** to pacify means to soothe, or calm, therefore **excite** is the opposite

126. **b.** sullen means showing a disagreeable mood, or lacking cheer, therefore **cheerful** is the opposite

127. **a.** to assure means to make sure by removing doubt or worry; **alarm** means to give warning or to arouse fear

128. **b.** fallacious means tending to deceive; **truthful** means disposed to tell the truth

129. **b.** gumption means initiative, or drive; **apathy** means a lack of interest or concern

130. **b.** ecstasy means a state of rapturous delight; **agony** means intense pain of mind or body

131. **d.** astute means shrewd or showing acute mental vision; **gullible** means easily duped or cheated

132. **a.** winsome means cheerful and engaging; **dour** means gloomy or sullen

133. **c.** droll means to have a humorous or odd quality; **sedate** means unruffled or serious

134. **d.** enigmatic means mysterious or obscure, therefore **obvious** is the opposite

135. **b.** obtuse means insensitive or stupid; **acute** means marked by keen perception or shrewd

136. **c.** obsequious means subservient or fawning; **domineering** means exercising overbearing control

137. **d.** doleful means full of grief or cheerless; **vivacious** means full of life and spirit

138. **a.** one meaning of wanton is malicious or merciless, therefore **merciful** is the opposite

139. **c.** banal means trite or commonplace, therefore **extraordinary** is the opposite

140. **b.** lugubrious means mournful, or dismal, therefore **cheerful** is the opposite

141. **c.** perspicacious means keen or astute, therefore **dull** is the opposite

142. **d.** elan means vigorous spirit or enthusiasm; **despair** means an utter loss of hope

143. **a.** recondite means difficult for one of ordinary understanding to comprehend; **manifest** means easily understood or recognized

144. **b.** to gainsay means to deny; one meaning of to **own** is to admit

145. **c.** effluvium means an offensive smell; **fragrance** means a sweet or delicate odor

146. **a.** parsimony means thrift or stinginess, therefore **generosity** is the opposite

147. **b.** truculent means cruel or savage, therefore **gentle** is the opposite

148. **d.** spurious means lacking genuine qualities, or false, therefore **genuine** is the opposite

149. **a.** welter means a state of wild disorder, or turmoil, therefore **order** is the opposite

150. **b.** eclat means a dazzling effect, or brilliance, therefore **dullness** is the opposite

5

Synonyms

Which of these words most nearly means the word provided?

151. deplete
- **a.** decorate
- **b.** beg
- **c.** exhaust
- **d.** hurry

152. voluntary
- **a.** willing
- **b.** charity
- **c.** prisoner
- **d.** careless

153. refute
- **a.** garbage
- **b.** deny
- **c.** offer
- **d.** difficult

154. cheat
- **a.** stingy
- **b.** argue
- **c.** freckle
- **d.** defraud

155. miserable
- **a.** cruel
- **b.** wrong
- **c.** unhappy
- **d.** miss

156. vintage
- **a.** classic
- **b.** alcoholic
- **c.** disease
- **d.** spoiled

157. tart
- **a.** law
- **b.** acid
- **c.** angry
- **d.** desirable

158. corner
- **a.** display
- **b.** trap
- **c.** paint
- **d.** hurry

159. zest
- **a.** gusto
- **b.** cram
- **c.** worry
- **d.** trial

160. haggle
- **a.** tired
- **b.** climb
- **c.** decrease
- **d.** bargain

161. impel
- **a.** force
- **b.** block
- **c.** hinder
- **d.** discredit

162. throng
- **a.** garment
- **b.** bell
- **c.** mass
- **d.** weight

163. imperial
- **a.** bratty
- **b.** oppressive
- **c.** regal
- **d.** beautiful

164. diffuse
- **a.** difficult
- **b.** scatter
- **c.** incomprehensible
- **d.** unplug

165. hinder
- **a.** lose
- **b.** loose
- **c.** despair
- **d.** check

166. latent
- **a.** dormant
- **b.** recent
- **c.** effeminate
- **d.** desirable

167. wretched
- **a.** twisted
- **b.** forced
- **c.** miserable
- **d.** increased

168. irksome
- **a.** outrageous
- **b.** fearsome
- **c.** impoverished
- **d.** annoying

169. regulate
- **a.** even
- **b.** police
- **c.** flow
- **d.** position

170. warrant
- **a.** justify
- **b.** burrow
- **c.** hide
- **d.** integrity

171. protract
- **a.** hire
- **b.** fold
- **c.** delay
- **d.** corner

172. lax
- **a.** ensure
- **b.** slack
- **c.** servant
- **d.** strive

173. rigor
- **a.** austerity
- **b.** rope
- **c.** fix
- **d.** excess

174. discrete
- **a.** leave
- **b.** diminish
- **c.** squander
- **d.** distinct

175. lissome
- **a.** slow
- **b.** honest
- **c.** supple
- **d.** dull

176. misprize
- **a.** despise
- **b.** devalue
- **c.** erroneous
- **d.** covet

177. impugn
- **a.** imply
- **b.** fret
- **c.** assail
- **d.** recalcitrant

178. supervene
- **a.** intervene
- **b.** overreach
- **c.** displace
- **d.** follow

179. exigent
- **a.** urgent
- **b.** treatise
- **c.** miser
- **d.** expedient

180. fervid
- **a.** delightful
- **b.** difficult
- **c.** obstinate
- **d.** ardent

181. ersatz
- **a.** chaotic
- **b.** artificial
- **c.** impromptu
- **d.** vague

182. redolent
- **a.** ubiquitous
- **b.** odorous
- **c.** shy
- **d.** bellicose

183. turpitude
- **a.** lethargy
- **b.** honor
- **c.** belligerence
- **d.** depravity

184. propinquity
- **a.** habit
- **b.** nearness
- **c.** capacity
- **d.** tendency

185. vociferous
- **a.** numerous
- **b.** bountiful
- **c.** strident
- **d.** garrulous

Answers

151. **c.** deplete means to reduce or deprive or something essential; **exhaust** means to empty completely

152. **a.** voluntary means done by one's own will, or **willing**

153. **b.** to refute means to prove wrong, or to **deny** the truth of

154. **d.** to cheat means to influence by means of trickery, or to **defraud**

155. **c.** miserable means in a state of distress or **unhappiness**

156. **a.** vintage means of old and enduring interest, or **classic**

157. **b.** tart means pleasantly sharp or **acid** to the taste

158. **b.** to corner means to drive into a corner, or to **trap**

159. **a.** one meaning of zest is keen enjoyment, or **gusto**

160. **d.** to haggle means to negotiate over terms or price, or to **bargain**

161. **a.** to impel means to drive forward using strong moral pressure, or to **force**

162. **c.** a throng is a large number of assembled people, or a **mass**

163. **c.** imperial means befitting or suggesting an emperor; **regal** means befitting or suggesting a king

164. **b.** to diffuse means to break up or spread out, or to **scatter**

165. **d.** to hinder means to hold back; one meaning of to **check** means to slow or bring to a stop

166. **a.** latent means capable of becoming but not currently visible, or **dormant**

167. **c.** wretched means extremely distressed, or **miserable**

168. **d.** irksome means tedious or **annoying**

169. **b.** to regulate means to bring under the control of law; to **police** means to control or keep order

170. **a.** to warrant means to serve as adequate ground or reason, or to **justify**

171. **c.** to protract means to prolong in time or space, or to **delay**

172. **b.** lax means in a relaxed state, or **slack**

173. **a.** rigor means severity of life, or **austerity**

174. **d.** discrete means individually **distinct**

175. **c.** lissome means **supple** or flexible

176. **a.** to misprize means to hold in contempt, or to **despise**

177. **c.** to impugn means to attack verbally as false or lacking integrity; to **assail** means to attack

178. **d.** to supervene means to **follow** as an unexpected development

179. **a.** exigent means demanding immediate attention, or **urgent**

180. **d.** fervid means **ardent** or passionate

181. **b.** ersatz means a usually **artificial** or inferior substitute

182. **b.** redolent means aromatic or full of a specific scent, or **odorous**

183. **d.** turpitude means wickedness, or **depravity**

184. **b.** propinquity means **nearness** in place or time

185. **c.** vociferous means loud and insistent, often in presentation of demands or requests; **strident** also means loud and insistent

6

Antonyms

Which word is most dissimilar in meaning to the word provided?

186. gracious
- **a.** cordial
- **b.** rude
- **c.** furious
- **d.** tactile

187. valor
- **a.** cowardice
- **b.** false
- **c.** drop
- **d.** heavy

188. severe
- **a.** lenient
- **b.** cautious
- **c.** join
- **d.** one

189. imaginative
- **a.** playful
- **b.** written
- **c.** small
- **d.** dull

190. knowing
- **a.** wasteful
- **b.** dense
- **c.** clumsy
- **d.** fast

191. animosity
- **a.** love
- **b.** plantlike
- **c.** barren
- **d.** tiny

192. exact
a. join
b. sympathetic
c. incorrect
d. whole

193. extravagant
a. unknown
b. homebody
c. punctual
d. moderate

194. stamina
a. weakness
b. clear
c. decisive
d. calmness

195. rough
a. tumble
b. sleek
c. fast
d. distant

196. garner
a. unravel
b. mar
c. squander
d. tarnish

197. prodigal
a. thrifty
b. secondary
c. distant
d. squalid

198. tacit
a. grand
b. dictated
c. illicit
d. messy

199. repudiate
a. argue
b. soften
c. slander
d. admit

200. pristine
a. free
b. sullied
c. wide
d. thorough

201. concede
a. sit
b. withstand
c. dismiss
d. elaborate

202. placate
a. appease
b. strip
c. tremendous
d. enrage

203. popular
a. empty
b. uncommon
c. famous
d. feisty

204. felicitous
a. morbid
b. boorish
c. inopportune
d. delightful

205. austere
a. lavish
b. unfavorable
c. light
d. devout

206. insipid
a. cold
b. brave
c. exciting
d. bashful

207. wastrel
a. sober
b. spendthrift
c. mute
d. miser

208. temperate
a. Celsius
b. inordinate
c. lukewarm
d. safely

209. nebulous
a. cloudy
b. dim
c. distinct
d. desirable

210. adroit
a. clumsy
b. left
c. diplomatic
d. unpersuasive

211. mite
a. weakness
b. tend
c. bulk
d. drive

212. supernal
a. nocturnal
b. special
c. despicable
d. hellish

213. reprobate
a. sage
b. elevated
c. possess
d. dismiss

214. specious
a. genuine
b. logical
c. common
d. deliberate

215. effete
a. conquer
b. proper
c. prosperous
d. civilized

216. rabble
a. order
b. clear
c. open
d. union

217. protean
a. unformed
b. unchanging
c. elaborate
d. selective

218. vertiginous
a. horizontal
b. litigious
c. constant
d. lowly

219. parvenu
a. wallflower
b. highway
c. melody
d. plan

220. lapidarian
a. square
b. secular
c. pasture
d. inelegant

Answers

186. **b.** gracious means to be pleasant in a social situation, or cordial; **rude** means to be unpleasant

187. **a.** valor means strength of mind or spirit, or courage; **cowardice** means lack of courage

188. **a.** one meaning of severe is strict; **lenient** means mild or indulgent

189. **d.** imaginative means having imagination; **dull** means lacking imagination

190. **b.** knowing means having information or knowledge; **dense** means dull or stupid

191. **a.** animosity means resentment or hostility, therefore **love** is the opposite

192. **c.** exact means in complete accordance with fact, or correct, therefore **incorrect** is the opposite

193. **d.** extravagant means lacking in restraint and moderation, therefore **moderate** is the opposite

194. **a.** stamina means strength or endurance, therefore **weakness** is the opposite

195. **b.** rough means having an uneven, coarse surface; **sleek** means having a smooth, bright surface

196. **c.** to garner means to gather or to store; to **squander** means to cause to disperse or to scatter

197. **a.** prodigal means wasteful or extravagant; **thrifty** means thriving by industry and frugality

198. **b.** tacit means unspoken, or implied; **dictated** means spoken

199. **d.** to repudiate means to reject or deny, therefore to **admit** is the opposite

200. **b.** pristine means unspoiled or pure; **sullied** means spoiled or tarnished

201. **b.** to concede means to yield; to **withstand** means to successfully resist

202. **d.** to placate means to soothe or calm; to **enrage** means to anger

203. **b.** popular means frequently encountered or accepted, or common, therefore **uncommon** is the opposite

204. **c.** felicitous means very well-suited or apt; **inopportune** means inconvenient or not well-suited

205. **a.** austere means simple and unadorned; **lavish** means produced or expended in abundance

206. **c.** insipid means lacking in qualities that interest or excite, therefore **exciting** is the opposite

207. **d.** a wastrel is someone who spends foolishly or self-indulgently; a **miser** is someone who hoards his or her wealth

208. **b.** temperate means moderate; **inordinate** means excessive or immoderate

209. **c.** nebulous means vague or indistinct, therefore **distinct** is the opposite

210. **a.** adroit means skillful in the use of the hands, therefore **clumsy** is the opposite

211. **c.** mite means a very small or insignificant part; **bulk** means the main or greater part

212. **d.** supernal means coming from on high, or heavenly; **infernal** is a synonym for hellish

213. **b.** reprobate means morally debased or depraved; one meaning of **elevated** is to be on a moral or intellectual high plane

214. **a.** specious means having a false look of truth or genuineness, therefore **genuine** is the opposite

215. **b.** effete means weak or decadent; one meaning of **proper** is virtuous or respectable

216. **d.** a rabble is a disorderly or disorganized crowd of people; a **union** is a group of individuals joined in an organized manner

217. **b.** protean means showing great diversity or variability, or versatile, therefore **unchanging** is the opposite

218. **c.** vertiginous means inclined to frequent change, or inconstant, therefore **constant** is the opposite

219. **a.** a parvenu is an upstart or a social climber; a **wallflower** is someone who refrains from socializing

220. **d.** lapidarian means having elegance or precision and comes from the word lapidary, which means a cutter or engraver of precious stones, therefore **inelegant** is the opposite

7

Synonyms and Antonyms

Read each question carefully and select the word that is most similar or dissimilar in meaning to the word provided.

221. delirious is most similar to
- **a.** manic
- **b.** calm
- **c.** tasty
- **d.** suspicious

222. infirm is most similar to
- **a.** hospital
- **b.** weak
- **c.** short
- **d.** fortitude

223. cautious is most dissimilar to
- **a.** reasonable
- **b.** careful
- **c.** illogical
- **d.** reckless

224. lure is most similar to
- **a.** tickle
- **b.** decoy
- **c.** resist
- **d.** suspect

225. perilous is most dissimilar to
- **a.** disciplined
- **b.** similar
- **c.** safe
- **d.** honest

226. isolation is most similar to
- **a.** fear
- **b.** plentitude
- **c.** solitude
- **d.** disease

227. lull is most similar to
a. pause
b. noise
c. boring
d. mark

228. outfit is most similar to
a. indoors
b. strong
c. special
d. furnish

229. punctual is most dissimilar to
a. close
b. tardy
c. sloppy
d. precious

230. delude is most dissimilar to
a. drought
b. clever
c. enlighten
d. enrage

231. omit is most similar to
a. recluse
b. neglect
c. mistake
d. destroy

232. resilient is most dissimilar to
a. stubborn
b. careless
c. substantial
d. flimsy

233. mutiny is most similar to
a. rebellion
b. currency
c. sailor
d. hassle

234. naive is most similar to
a. rural
b. secular
c. unsophisticated
d. sultry

235. entice is most dissimilar to
a. piece
b. repulse
c. attract
d. repeat

236. solemnity is most similar to
a. lightheartedness
b. gravity
c. diligence
d. sleepiness

237. stingy is most dissimilar to
a. wasteful
b. democratic
c. spiteful
d. liberal

238. malign is most similar to
a. evil
b. malicious
c. slander
d. grandiose

239. impudent is most similar to
a. cautious
b. haphazard
c. gleeful
d. insolent

240. vacillate is most dissimilar to
a. decide
b. teeter
c. dilate
d. please

241. kinetic is most dissimilar to
a. cold
b. static
c. lewd
d. foolish

242. lambaste is most similar to
a. marinade
b. commotion
c. censure
d. tickle

243. kowtow is most dissimilar to
a. snub
b. pull
c. fawn
d. forage

244. rudimentary is most similar to
a. crass
b. gracious
c. deliberate
d. primitive

245. pitched is most similar to
a. undone
b. retracted
c. heated
d. lovely

246. tepid is most dissimilar to
a. dispassionate
b. scalding
c. crisp
d. clever

247. largesse is most similar to
a. greatness
b. generosity
c. miniscule
d. clumsiness

248. insidious is most dissimilar to
a. repellant
b. pure
c. charming
d. delicious

249. decorum is most similar to
a. etiquette
b. merit
c. parliament
d. slipshod

250. succor is most dissimilar to
a. genius
b. abet
c. injure
d. deciduous

251. enjoin is most dissimilar to
a. sever
b. dislike
c. permit
d. divorce

252. tumid is most similar to
a. swollen
b. fetid
c. aggressive
d. despondent

253. jejune is most similar to
a. youthful
b. insipid
c. charming
d. quick

254. ecumenical is most dissimilar to
a. spiritual
b. humanistic
c. secular
d. parochial

255. sinecure is most similar to
a. cakewalk
b. serpentine
c. evil
d. dishonest

256. castigate is most similar to
a. neuter
b. punish
c. banish
d. celebrate

257. reconnoiter is most dissimilar to
a. disarm
b. disassemble
c. distance
d. disregard

258. obloquy is most similar to
a. tirade
b. dependence
c. oval
d. circumlocution

259. recondite is most dissimilar to
a. give
b. obscure
c. patent
d. hardy

260. querulous is most similar to
a. nauseous
b. fretful
c. curious
d. dizzy

Answers

221. **a.** delirious means marked by frenzied excitement, or **manic**

222. **b.** infirm means feeble from age, or **weak**

223. **d.** cautious means careful; **reckless** means lacking caution

224. **b.** a lure is used to attract animals into a trap, like a **decoy**

225. **c.** perilous means dangerous, therefore **safe** is the opposite

226. **c.** isolation means the state of being alone or withdrawn, or **solitude**

227. **a.** a lull is a temporary **pause**

228. **d.** to outfit means to supply or to **furnish**

229. **b.** punctual means on time; **tardy** means late

230. **c.** to delude means to mislead the judgment of someone, or to trick; to **enlighten** means to give knowledge to someone

231. **b.** to omit means to leave out, to fail to perform, or to **neglect**

232. **d.** resilient means capable of withstanding shock; **flimsy** means lacking in physical strength or substance

233. **a.** mutiny means resistance to lawful authority, or **rebellion**

234. **c.** naive means unaffectedly simple, or **unsophisticated**

235. **b.** to entice means attract seductively, or to lure; to **repulse** means to cause aversion to, or to disgust

236. **b.** solemnity means formal or ceremonious observance, or seriousness; **gravity** means dignity of bearing, or seriousness

237. **d.** one meaning of **liberal** is giving freely, or generous; stingy means lacking generosity

238. **c.** to malign means to speak false or harmful things of, or to **slander**

239. **d.** impudent means contemptuously bold or cocky, or **insolent**

240. **a.** vacillate means to hesitate among choices, or to waver; **decide** means to choose

241. **b.** kinetic means relating to motion, or dynamic; **static** means at rest, or stationary

242. **c.** to lambaste means to attack verbally, or to **censure**

243. **a.** to kowtow means to show fawning deference; to **snub** means to treat with contempt

244. **d.** rudimentary means crude or **primitive**

245. **c.** pitched means intensely fought; one meaning of **heated** is marked by anger

246. **b.** tepid means lukewarm; **scalding** means boiling hot

247. **b.** largesse means liberal giving or **generosity**

248. **a.** insidious means harmful but enticing or seductive; **repellant** means arousing aversion or disgust

249. **a.** decorum means conduct required in social life, or **etiquette**

250. **c.** to succor means go to the aid of, or relieve; to **injure** means to harm

251. **c.** enjoin means to forbid or prohibit, therefore **permit** is the opposite

252. **a.** tumid means puffy or **swollen**

253. **b.** jejune means lacking in substance or interest; **insipid** means lacking in qualities to excite or interest

254. **d.** ecumenical means of or relating to the whole body of churches, or universal; **parochial** means of or relating to a parish, or limited in scope or range

255. **a.** a sinecure is a job for which little or no work is expected; a **cakewalk** is a one-sided competition

256. **b.** to castigate means to subject to severe **punish**ment

257. **d.** reconnoiter means to gain information or to explore; **disregard** means to pay no attention to

258. **a.** obloquy means abusive language; **tirade** means harshly censorious language

259. **c.** recondite means hidden from sight or obscure; **patent** means readily visible or intelligible

260. **b.** querulous means habitually complaining, or **fretful**

8

Synonyms

Select the word that is most similar in meaning to the word provided.

261. wrath
a. knot
b. anger
c. crime
d. smoke

262. plethora
a. trouble
b. foolish
c. wealth
d. love

263. calamity
a. potion
b. silence
c. shellfish
d. disaster

264. pompous
a. arrogant
b. supportive
c. busy
d. gaudy

265. prevalent
a. wind
b. servile
c. widespread
d. rare

266. wince
a. flinch
b. cheer
c. crush
d. solitary

267. superficial
- **a.** gorgeous
- **b.** shallow
- **c.** intelligent
- **d.** rich

268. tangle
- **a.** snarl
- **b.** growl
- **c.** dance
- **d.** shiver

269. reform
- **a.** punish
- **b.** destroy
- **c.** display
- **d.** correct

270. methodical
- **a.** rhythmic
- **b.** poetic
- **c.** systematic
- **d.** disrespectful

271. spite
- **a.** joy
- **b.** beverage
- **c.** wonder
- **d.** malice

272. scale
- **a.** climb
- **b.** sail
- **c.** swim
- **d.** skate

273. smudge
- **a.** gloat
- **b.** residue
- **c.** blur
- **d.** celebrate

274. drizzle
- **a.** curly
- **b.** sprinkle
- **c.** sear
- **d.** drench

275. mundane
- **a.** dirty
- **b.** commonplace
- **c.** confused
- **d.** extraordinary

276. pretension
- **a.** stress
- **b.** ambition
- **c.** waste
- **d.** strife

277. affect
- **a.** outcome
- **b.** share
- **c.** pompous
- **d.** cultivate

278. herald
- **a.** insignia
- **b.** postpone
- **c.** hail
- **d.** regal

279. faculty
- **a.** defective
- **b.** school
- **c.** gift
- **d.** desire

280. mirth
- **a.** anger
- **b.** glee
- **c.** sarcasm
- **d.** mistrust

281. drudgery
- **a.** silliness
- **b.** labor
- **c.** evil
- **d.** investigation

282. prerequisite
- **a.** necessary
- **b.** course
- **c.** difficult
- **d.** tar

283. dire
- **a.** questionable
- **b.** forthright
- **c.** traitor
- **d.** urgent

284. grapple
- **a.** struggle
- **b.** trap
- **c.** laugh
- **d.** intend

285. sundry
- **a.** aged
- **b.** supply
- **c.** various
- **d.** tremendous

286. supplant
- **a.** grow
- **b.** replace
- **c.** undo
- **d.** question

287. venerate
- **a.** ordain
- **b.** breathe
- **c.** polish
- **d.** revere

288. conciliate
- **a.** appease
- **b.** disagree
- **c.** revive
- **d.** separate

289. exultant
- **a.** afraid
- **b.** jubilant
- **c.** expectant
- **d.** demanding

290. surreptitious
- **a.** overbearing
- **b.** clandestine
- **c.** indirect
- **d.** impious

291. recalcitrant
a. hesitant
b. subdued
c. unruly
d. subtract

292. pretty
a. plain
b. confusing
c. ugly
d. terrible

293. coterie
a. various
b. flirtation
c. club
d. socialize

294. nefarious
a. infamous
b. macabre
c. evil
d. distinguished

295. curry
a. flatter
b. spicy
c. squander
d. game

296. preternatural
a. immature
b. extraordinary
c. removed
d. unearned

297. pernicious
a. noxious
b. illicit
c. open
d. undecided

298. reprisal
a. accusation
b. loathe
c. retaliation
d. insinuation

299. manifold
a. evident
b. contemporary
c. diverse
d. willing

300. factious
a. sham
b. unreliable
c. seditious
d. argumentative

Answers

261. **b.** wrath means strong, vengeful **anger**

262. **c.** abundance means an ample quantity, or **wealth**

263. **d.** a calamity is an extraordinarily grave event, or **disaster**

264. **a.** pompous means self-important, or **arrogant**

265. **c.** prevalent means generally accepted, or **widespread**

266. **a.** to wince means to shrink back involuntarily, or to **flinch**

267. **b.** superficial means to be concerned only with the surface or appearance, or **shallow**

268. **a.** a tangle is a twisted, knotted mass, or a **snarl**

269. **d.** to reform means to change for the better, or to **correct**

270. **c.** methodical means proceeding according to an order or system, or **systematic**

271. **d.** spite means petty ill will or hatred, or **malice**

272. **a.** one meaning of scale is to **climb**

273. **c.** a smudge is a **blur**ry spot or streak

274. **b.** one meaning of to drizzle is to rain in very small drops, or to **sprinkle**

275. **b.** mundane means ordinary, or **commonplace**

276. **b.** pretension means an effort to establish, or **ambition**

277. **d.** to affect means to make a display of using or liking something, or to **cultivate**

278. **c.** to herald means to greet with enthusiasm, or to **hail**

279. **c.** one meaning of faculty is an ability or **gift**

280. **b.** mirth means gladness expressed with laughter, or **glee**

281. **b.** drudgery means uninspiring or menial **labor**

282. **a.** prerequisite means **necessary** for carrying out a function

283. **d.** dire means desperately **urgent**

284. **a.** to grapple means to come to grips with, or to **struggle**

285. **c.** sundry means an indeterminate number, or **various**

286. **b.** to supplant means take the place of, or to **replace**

287. **d.** to venerate means to treat with reverential respect, or to **revere**

288. **a.** to conciliate means to gain goodwill with pleasing acts, or to **appease**

289. **b.** exultant means filled with or expressing great joy, or **jubilant**

290. **b.** surreptitious means done or acquired in stealth, or **clandestine**

291. **c.** recalcitrant means defiant of authority, or **unruly**

292. **d.** one meaning of pretty is miserable or **terrible**, as in the expression “a pretty pickle”

293. **c.** a coterie is an intimate or exclusive group or people who share a common interest or purpose; a **club** is an association of people for a common purpose

294. **c.** nefarious means flagrantly wicked, or **evil**

295. **a.** to curry means to seek to gain favor, or to **flatter**

296. **b.** preternatural means exceeding what is natural, or **extraordinary**

297. **a.** pernicious means highly injurious or deadly, or **noxious**

298. **c.** a reprisal is an act of vengeance, or a **retaliation**

299. **c.** manifold means marked by variety, or **diverse**

300. **c.** factious means inclined to form factions; **seditious** means disposed to insurrection

9

Antonyms

Select the word that is most dissimilar in meaning to the word provided.

301. tragic
- **a.** boring
- **b.** mysterious
- **c.** comic
- **d.** incredulous

302. able
- **a.** willful
- **b.** inept
- **c.** careful
- **d.** feasible

303. tireless
- **a.** exhausted
- **b.** unfailing
- **c.** broke
- **d.** driving

304. wean
- **a.** flourish
- **b.** flush
- **c.** strengthen
- **d.** addict

305. haste
- **a.** delay
- **b.** frugal
- **c.** debauchery
- **d.** solemnity

306. malice
- **a.** goodwill
- **b.** bitterness
- **c.** coddle
- **d.** distress

307. permanent
a. loose
b. fierce
c. fleeting
d. unhappy

308. attain
a. crave
b. lose
c. harbor
d. credit

309. taint
a. cheer
b. worry
c. clear
d. purify

310. belittle
a. plain
b. detract
c. magnify
d. torment

311. tedious
a. unwavering
b. frightening
c. horrible
d. pleasurable

312. license
a. restriction
b. allow
c. join
d. gather

313. frivolous
a. pious
b. inexpensive
c. serious
d. contemptuous

314. plain
a. meadow
b. ugly
c. lovely
d. unadorned

315. denounce
a. covet
b. condemn
c. blame
d. deplore

316. contrary
a. urbane
b. agreeable
c. unpleasant
d. despicable

317. glower
a. prairie
b. smile
c. raise
d. throw

318. exacting
a. upright
b. lenient
c. sober
d. general

319. curtail
a. remain
b. detain
c. placate
d. prolong

320. eminent
a. imminent
b. obscure
c. retire
d. unsure

321. abdicate
a. deny
b. usurp
c. blame
d. renounce

322. indolent
a. industrious
b. complimentary
c. native
d. smooth

323. fortuitous
a. undefended
b. gratuitous
c. deliberate
d. impoverished

324. disparage
a. hesitate
b. settle
c. trouble
d. applaud

325. dubious
a. reliable
b. pleasing
c. rhythmic
d. careful

326. interdict
a. continue
b. abstain
c. wallow
d. sanction

327. mendacious
a. bashful
b. capacious
c. veracious
d. quiet

328. lassitude
a. release
b. demure
c. fatigue
d. vigor

329. verdant
a. dishonest
b. suspicious
c. moldy
d. arid

330. ductile
a. unfeeling
b. arrogant
c. precious
d. rigid

331. asperity
a. moistness
b. amenity
c. sour
d. generosity

332. epicurean
a. ascetic
b. slovenly
c. imprecision
d. providential

333. traduce
a. deduce
b. laud
c. presuppose
d. converge

334. bridle
a. heckle
b. dissuade
c. vent
d. persist

335. spare
a. rotund
b. pacify
c. impolite
d. impose

336. proclivity
a. calm
b. antipathy
c. desire
d. dearth

337. vituperation
a. alacrity
b. alertness
c. reparation
d. acclaim

338. gambol
a. trudge
b. hedge
c. crone
d. misplace

339. quixotic
a. simple
b. staid
c. passe
d. unpredictable

340. lachrymose
a. quick
b. loquacious
c. blithe
d. plentiful

Answers

301. **c.** tragic means regrettably serious or sorrowful; **comic** means humorous

302. **b.** able means having skill or ability; **inept** means lacking skill

303. **a.** tireless means filled with energy; **exhausted** means depleted of energy

304. **d.** to wean means to detach from a dependence; to **addict** means to make dependent

305. **a.** haste means hurry; **delay** means postponement or procrastination

306. **a.** malice means a desire to see another suffer; **goodwill** means desire to see another benefit

307. **c.** permanent means lasting; **fleeting** means passing quickly or temporary

308. **b.** to attain means to achieve or to gain, therefore to **lose** is the most dissimilar

309. **d.** to taint means to contaminate or corrupt; to **purify** means to make pure

310. **c.** to belittle means to make seem little or less; to **magnify** means to enlarge

311. **d.** tedious means boring; **pleasurable** means enjoyable or delightful

312. **a.** one meaning of a license is permission; **restriction** means limitation

313. **c.** frivolous means lacking seriousness, therefore **serious** is the most dissimilar

314. **c.** plain means lacking in beauty; **lovely** means beautiful

315. **a.** one meaning of to denounce is to speak out against; to **covet** means to wish for enviously

316. **b.** contrary means unwilling to accept control or advice; **agreeable** means ready or willing to agree

317. **b.** glower means a sullen brooding look, therefore **smile** is the most dissimilar

318. **b.** exacting means severe; **lenient** means indulgent

319. **d.** to curtail means to cut short; to **prolong** means to lengthen or extend

320. **b.** eminent means prominent, or famous; **obscure** means not prominent, or unknown

321. **b.** to abdicate means to renounce power or high office; to **usurp** means seize power or high office

322. **a.** indolent means lazy; **industrious** means hardworking

323. **c.** fortuitous means occurring by chance, or accidental; **deliberate** means resulting from careful consideration, or voluntary

324. **d.** to disparage means to speak slightingly about; to **applaud** means to express approval

325. **a.** dubious means questionable or unreliable, therefore **reliable** is the most dissimilar

326. **d.** to interdict means to forbid; to **sanction** means to approve

327. **c.** mendacious means dishonest; **veracious** means truthful or honest

328. **d.** lassitude means weariness; **vigor** means strength or force

329. **d.** one meaning of verdant is green, especially with plant life; **arid** means dry, or lacking enough rainfall for agriculture

330. **d.** one meaning of ductile is easily led or influenced; one meaning of **rigid** is inflexible, set in opinion

331. **b.** asperity means roughness of surface or manner; **amenity** means pleasantness or smoothness of manner

332. **a.** epicurean means having sensitive and self-indulgent taste especially in food and wine; **ascetic** means practicing self-denial and austerity

333. **b.** to traduce means to expose to shame or blame; to **laud** means to praise or extol

334. **c.** to bridle means to restrain or keep under control; to **vent** means to relieve by means of an outlet

335. **a.** one meaning of spare is lean; **rotund** means round or fleshy

336. **b.** proclivity means inclination or predisposition; **antipathy** means settled aversion or dislike

337. **d.** vituperation means bitter condemnation; **acclaim** means praise

338. **a.** to gambol means to skip about in play; to **trudge** means to march steadily and laboriously

339. **b.** quixotic means foolishly impractical and marked by extravagantly romantic ideals; **staid** means sedate and marked by prim self-restraint

340. **c.** lachrymose means given to weeping, or morose; **blithe** means of a happy or lighthearted character, or merry

10

Synonyms

Select the word that is closest in meaning to the word provided.

341. glare is most similar to
- **a.** scowl
- **b.** hide
- **c.** display
- **d.** summon

342. erratic is most similar to
- **a.** enticing
- **b.** frequent
- **c.** difficult
- **d.** irregular

343. civil is most similar to
- **a.** unkind
- **b.** trite
- **c.** public
- **d.** questionable

344. peer is most similar to
- **a.** apple
- **b.** connote
- **c.** fellow
- **d.** recluse

345. fiasco is most similar to
- **a.** festival
- **b.** disaster
- **c.** happenstance
- **d.** ceremony

346. chasm is most similar to
- **a.** gorge
- **b.** charm
- **c.** bridle
- **d.** criticize

347. expertise is most similar to
a. activity
b. courage
c. mastery
d. effort

348. outlandish is most similar to
a. distant
b. absurd
c. pastoral
d. belligerent

349. pine is most similar to
a. clean
b. hate
c. resolve
d. crave

350. exploit is most similar to
a. answer
b. feat
c. accident
d. persuade

351. culmination is most similar to
a. realization
b. disaster
c. serendipity
d. persuasion

352. feign is most similar to
a. jab
b. swoon
c. pretend
d. dread

353. auspicious is most similar to
a. deceitful
b. foreboding
c. favorable
d. dangerous

354. gambit is most similar to
a. frolic
b. ploy
c. testimony
d. sentence

355. voracious is most similar to
a. ravenous
b. violent
c. voluble
d. rambunctious

356. facile is most similar to
a. ability
b. section
c. vindictive
d. glib

357. eschew is most similar to
a. revert
b. accompany
c. admire
d. abstain

358. abscond is most similar to
a. rob
b. obscure
c. flee
d. absolve

359. knack is most similar to
a. bruise
b. ability
c. keepsake
d. scoundrel

360. apropos is most similar to
a. opportune
b. unexpected
c. misspoken
d. idea

361. veritable is most similar to
a. deep
b. authentic
c. ancient
d. irascible

362. unmitigated is most similar to
a. audacious
b. unpersuasive
c. utter
d. dense

363. epitome is most similar to
a. volume
b. essence
c. summit
d. deliverance

364. edict is most similar to
a. decree
b. vacate
c. correction
d. destiny

365. extol is most similar to
a. praise
b. tax
c. burden
d. berate

366. abeyant is most similar to
a. false
b. disgusting
c. pending
d. novice

367. knell is most similar to
a. copse
b. hill
c. toll
d. rattle

368. soporific is most similar to
a. juvenile
b. drunken
c. delightful
d. hypnotic

369. iterate is most similar to
a. unsettled
b. repeat
c. impoverish
d. announce

370. bulwark is most similar to
a. conundrum
b. festival
c. rampart
d. confuse

371. pedantic is most similar to
a. pedestrian
b. arduous
c. fickle
d. consequential

372. bumptious is most similar to
a. backward
b. arrogant
c. clumsy
d. rugged

373. expiation is most similar to
a. breathing
b. immigration
c. divergence
d. atonement

374. flagitious is most similar to
a. deliberate
b. fatiguing
c. villainous
d. habitual

375. inveigle is most similar to
a. cajole
b. complexity
c. hoodwink
d. distress

Answers

341. **a.** to glare means to stare angrily; to **scowl** means to have an angry expression

342. **d.** erratic means lacking regularity, or **irregular**

343. **c.** one meaning of civil is involving the general **public**

344. **c.** a peer is a person belonging to the same group; a **fellow** is an equal in rank, or a member of the same group

345. **b.** a fiasco is a complete failure, or a **disaster**

346. **a.** a chasm is a deep split in the earth, or a **gorge**

347. **c.** expertise and **mastery** both mean special skills or knowledge

348. **b.** outlandish means extremely out of the ordinary; **absurd** means ridiculously unreasonable

349. **d.** to pine means to long for, or to **crave**

350. **b.** an exploit is a notable or heroic act; a **feat** is a courageous deed

351. **a.** culmination means the act of reaching the highest point, or decisive action; **realization** means the act of bringing into concrete existence

352. **c.** to feign means to assert as if true, or to **pretend**

353. **c.** auspicious means marked by **favorable** signs

354. **b.** one meaning of gambit is a calculated move; a **ploy** is a tactic

355. **a.** voracious and **ravenous** mean having a huge appetite

356. **d.** facile means easily achieved and often lacking sincerity; **glib** means marked by ease and lacking depth and substance

357. **d.** to eschew means to avoid habitually, or to **abstain**

358. **c.** to abscond means to depart secretly; to **flee** means to run away

359. **b.** a knack is a special **ability**

360. **a.** apropos means being both relevant and appropriate; **opportune** means occurring at an appropriate time

361. **b.** veritable means not false or imagined, or **authentic**

362. **c.** unmitigated means offering little chance of change or relief, or absolute; **utter** means total or absolute

363. **b.** an epitome is a typical or ideal example; **essence** is the real or very basic nature of something

364. **a.** an edict is an official proclamation; a **decree** is an order with the force of the law

365. **a.** to extol means to **praise** highly

366. **c.** abeyant means in a period of temporary inactivity, or **pending**

367. **c.** to knell means to sound in an ominous manner; to **toll** means to sound in long measured strokes; both words are used to describe the ringing of bells

368. **d.** soporific means causing sleep; **hypnotic** means tending to produce sleep

369. **b.** to iterate means to say or do again, or to **repeat**

370. **c.** a bulwark is a solid wall-like structure raised for defense, or a **rampart**

371. **a.** pedantic means ostentatiously or narrowly learned, or unimaginative; one meaning of **pedestrian** is commonplace or unimaginative

372. **b.** bumptious means noisily self-assertive; **arrogant** means disposed to exaggerate one's own worth

373. **d.** expiation means the act of making atonement; **atonement** means reparation for an offense or injury

374. **c.** flagitious means marked by outrageous crime or vice; **villainous** means having the characteristics of a deliberate criminal or scoundrel

375. **a.** to inveigle means to win over with flattery; to **cajole** means to persuade with flattery

11

Antonyms

Select the word that is most dissimilar in meaning to the word provided.

376. prudent is most dissimilar to
- **a.** simple
- **b.** rapid
- **c.** foolish
- **d.** verbose

377. forced is most dissimilar to
- **a.** quick
- **b.** solid
- **c.** trusting
- **d.** natural

378. acquaint is most dissimilar to
- **a.** alienate
- **b.** luxurious
- **c.** bleach
- **d.** stall

379. expansive is most dissimilar to
- **a.** generous
- **b.** honest
- **c.** narrow
- **d.** troublesome

380. benign is most dissimilar to
- **a.** malignant
- **b.** converse
- **c.** cautious
- **d.** malicious

381. foster is most dissimilar to
- **a.** discourage
- **b.** believe
- **c.** heal
- **d.** brag

382. ample is most dissimilar to
- **a.** complete
- **b.** insufficient
- **c.** quiet
- **d.** supple

383. deviant is most dissimilar to
- **a.** winding
- **b.** careful
- **c.** normal
- **d.** sad

384. abolish is most dissimilar to
- **a.** vote
- **b.** punish
- **c.** avoid
- **d.** establish

385. forsake is most dissimilar to
- **a.** craft
- **b.** embrace
- **c.** shun
- **d.** infer

386. tractable is most dissimilar to
- **a.** invisible
- **b.** stubborn
- **c.** unadvisable
- **d.** special

387. dexterous is most dissimilar to
- **a.** clumsy
- **b.** saline
- **c.** cunning
- **d.** precious

388. aerate is most dissimilar to
- **a.** argue
- **b.** placate
- **c.** suffocate
- **d.** destroy

389. venerable is most dissimilar to
- **a.** impervious
- **b.** constant
- **c.** sophomoric
- **d.** infirm

390. rancor is most dissimilar to
- **a.** ritual
- **b.** argument
- **c.** collect
- **d.** accord

391. daunt is most dissimilar to
- **a.** calm
- **b.** believe
- **c.** inspirit
- **d.** dispel

392. paucity is most dissimilar to
- **a.** excess
- **b.** certainty
- **c.** timidity
- **d.** beauty

393. heedless is most dissimilar to
- **a.** heartless
- **b.** attentive
- **c.** speedy
- **d.** unaware

394. abound is most dissimilar to
a. rest
b. discourage
c. bless
d. dwindle

395. confederate is most dissimilar to
a. enemy
b. confuse
c. wander
d. cluster

396. resplendent is most dissimilar to
a. illuminated
b. disarming
c. dowdy
d. delightful

397. onerous is most dissimilar to
a. permissive
b. easy
c. unforgiving
d. public

398. sagacity is most dissimilar to
a. incredulity
b. belligerence
c. stupidity
d. tolerance

399. dilettante is most dissimilar to
a. puritan
b. professional
c. aesthete
d. conniver

400. unalloyed is most dissimilar to
a. dismayed
b. impure
c. circumspect
d. disastrous

401. banner is most dissimilar to
a. forgettable
b. casual
c. unrestrained
d. unwitting

402. discalced is most dissimilar to
a. calculated
b. measured
c. inclined
d. shod

403. scurrilous is most dissimilar to
a. honest
b. decent
c. peaceful
d. satisfactory

404. pulchritudinous is most dissimilar to
a. pacifist
b. rare
c. smooth
d. unsightly

405. dyspeptic is most dissimilar to
a. trusting
b. functional
c. euphoric
d. talented

406. reliction is most dissimilar to
a. dedication
b. demolition
c. flood
d. problem

407. villenage is most dissimilar to
a. nobility
b. lineage
c. directness
d. dullness

408. craven is most dissimilar to
a. stalwart
b. release
c. distinguished
d. comfortable

409. prolix is most dissimilar to
a. brief
b. exquisite
c. reasonable
d. distinct

410. lambent is most dissimilar to
a. praise
b. present
c. dull
d. rough

Answers

376. **c.** prudent means marked by wisdom or good judgment; **foolish** means marked by a lack of good sense or prudence

377. **d.** forced means produced with effort; **natural** means uncultivated or spontaneous

378. **a.** to acquaint means to get to know or to become friendly; to **alienate** means to cause unfriendliness or hostility

379. **c.** expansive means sizeable or extensive; **narrow** means restricted

380. **d.** one meaning of benign is of a gentle disposition; **malicious** means marked by mischievous impulse

381. **a.** to foster means to encourage; to **discourage** means to deprive of courage or confidence

382. **b.** ample means more than adequate in size, scope, or capacity, or sufficient, therefore, **insufficient** is the most dissimilar

383. **c.** deviant means departing from the established norm, or abnormal, therefore **normal** is the most dissimilar

384. **d.** to abolish means to do away with entirely; to **establish** means to bring into existence

385. **b.** to forsake means to renounce; one meaning of to **embrace** is to welcome or include

386. **b.** tractable means easily handled or managed; **stubborn** means difficult to handle or manage

387. **a.** dexterous means skillful with the hands; **clumsy** means lacking dexterity, nimbleness, or grace

388. **c.** to aerate means to supply with oxygen; to **suffocate** means to deprive of oxygen

389. **c.** venerable means impressive by reason of age; **sophomoric** means poorly informed and immature

390. **d.** rancor means bitter ill-will; one meaning of **accord** is balanced interrelationship, or harmony

391. **c.** to daunt means to lessen the courage of; to **inspirit** means to give vigor or courage

392. **a.** paucity means smallness of number; **excess** means ample quantity

393. **b.** heedless means inconsiderate or thoughtless; **attentive** means heedful or mindful of the comfort of others

394. **d.** to abound means to be present in great numbers; to **dwindle** means to become steadily less

395. **a.** a confederate is an ally or accomplice; an **enemy** is an opponent

396. **c.** resplendent means characterized by glowing splendor; **dowdy** means not neat or attractive in appearance, or shabby

397. **b.** onerous means burdensome or troublesome, therefore **easy** is the most dissimilar

398. **c.** sagacity means wisdom; **stupidity** means a lack of wisdom

399. **b.** a dilettante is a person having a superficial interest in an art or branch or knowledge; a **professional** is a person who engages in a pursuit as a profession

400. **b.** unalloyed means pure, therefore **impure** is the most dissimilar

401. **a.** banner means distinguished from all others in excellence, or unforgettable, therefore **forgettable** is the most dissimilar

402. **d.** discalced means barefoot; **shod** means wearing shoes

403. **b.** scurrilous means given to using foul language, or crass; **decent** means conforming to standards of propriety

404. **d.** pulchritudinous means marked by physical beauty; **unsightly** means not pleasing to the sight, or ugly

405. **c.** dyspeptic means showing a sour disposition; **euphoric** means marked by feeling or well-being

406. **c.** reliction means the gradual recession of water leaving the land dry; **flood** means the rising and overflow of a body of water onto dry land

407. **a.** villenage means the peasant or commoner class; **nobility** means the noble class, or gentry

408. **a.** craven means cowardly; **stalwart** means marked by outstanding strength or vigor

409. **a.** prolix means unduly prolonged, therefore **brief** is the most dissimilar

410. **c.** lambent means softly bright or radiant; **dull** means lacking in brightness or shine

12

Synonyms

Select the word that is most similar in meaning to the word provided.

411. heed
- **a.** trek
- **b.** consider
- **c.** consolidate
- **d.** bound

412. edge
- **a.** diffuse
- **b.** point
- **c.** force
- **d.** dissuade

413. elevate
- **a.** lessen
- **b.** mention
- **c.** affix
- **d.** hoist

414. appoint
- **a.** score
- **b.** discuss
- **c.** nominate
- **d.** ensure

415. hoard
- **a.** stockpile
- **b.** burrow
- **c.** mine
- **d.** dessert

416. homogeneous
- **a.** alike
- **b.** strange
- **c.** polite
- **d.** alkaline

417. hub
a. counsel
b. elder
c. center
d. extension

418. tame
a. lost
b. evasive
c. pushy
d. submissive

419. irk
a. shrug
b. irritate
c. devour
d. avoid

420. loom
a. disappear
b. cut
c. surface
d. teach

421. fitful
a. erratic
b. angry
c. tired
d. pronounced

422. gaudy
a. massive
b. mindful
c. tasteful
d. flashy

423. flaunt
a. conceal
b. parade
c. trust
d. fray

424. flex
a. bend
b. binge
c. rid
d. consume

425. tantalize
a. pronounce
b. reign
c. equal
d. flirt

426. dastardly
a. devastating
b. cowardly
c. clever
d. munificent

427. aficionado
a. novice
b. trickster
c. devotee
d. agent

428. contiguous
a. catching
b. divided
c. adjoining
d. circumstantial

429. swindler
- **a.** charlatan
- **b.** expert
- **c.** divinity
- **d.** debonair

430. rogue
- **a.** knave
- **b.** wander
- **c.** buffoon
- **d.** color

431. apologist
- **a.** liar
- **b.** defender
- **c.** failure
- **d.** admirer

432. proxy
- **a.** spasm
- **b.** closeness
- **c.** delegate
- **d.** court

433. buffet
- **a.** protect
- **b.** barricade
- **c.** armoire
- **d.** strike

434. travesty
- **a.** confusion
- **b.** mockery
- **c.** disaster
- **d.** speculation

435. bristle
- **a.** aloof
- **b.** seethe
- **c.** wave
- **d.** doubt

436. admonish
- **a.** laud
- **b.** decorate
- **c.** caution
- **d.** admire

437. wheedle
- **a.** retreat
- **b.** deceive
- **c.** plead
- **d.** question

438. aplomb
- **a.** mine
- **b.** clumsiness
- **c.** complication
- **d.** poise

439. aver
- **a.** dissipate
- **b.** create
- **c.** hate
- **d.** state

440. mien
- **a.** carriage
- **b.** average
- **c.** vicious
- **d.** disguise

441. paroxysm
a. conundrum
b. fit
c. contraction
d. spite

442. aegis
a. superstition
b. reference
c. sponsorship
d. archive

443. sepulture
a. burial
b. parasite
c. verse
d. sermon

444. harridan
a. governor
b. vessel
c. witch
d. lawyer

445. apothegm
a. medicine
b. adage
c. speculation
d. resistance

446. grandiloquence
a. respect
b. bluster
c. denial
d. solemnity

447. fulmination
a. explosion
b. recession
c. achievement
d. blessing

448. pococurante
a. native
b. hot
c. blasé
d. hidden

449. escarpment
a. warning
b. cliff
c. campsite
d. tomb

450. plutocrat
a. banker
b. priest
c. judge
d. astronomer

Answers

411. **b.** to heed means to pay attention to, or to **consider**

412. **a.** to edge means to **force** or move gradually (as in to edge off the road)

413. **d.** to elevate means to lift up, or raise; to **hoist** means to raise into position

414. **c.** to appoint means to name officially, often to a position; to **nominate** means to appoint or propose for office

415. **a.** to hoard means to gather a hidden supply; to **stockpile** means accumulate a reserve of something

416. **a.** homogeneous means descended from the same ancestral type, or **alike**

417. **c.** a hub is a **center** of activity

418. **d.** tame means deficient in spirit or courage, or **submissive**

419. **b.** to irk means to annoy or **irritate**

420. **c.** to loom means to come into sight in enlarged or distorted form; to **surface** means to come to the surface or into view

421. **a.** fitful means having intermittent or irregular character; **erratic** means lacking regularity

422. **d.** gaudy means ostentatiously or tastelessly ornamented; **flashy** means ostentatious or showy

423. **b.** to flaunt means to display ostentatiously or impudently; to **parade** means to exhibit ostentatiously

424. **a.** to flex means to **bend**

425. **d.** to tantalize means to tease by presenting something desirable; to **flirt** means to behave amorously without serious intent

426. **b.** dastardly means despicably mean or **cowardly**

427. **c.** an aficionado is a fan, or a **devotee**

428. **c.** contiguous means touching along a boundary or point; **adjoining** means joining at a point or line

429. **a.** a swindler is a person who takes money or property through fraud or deceit; a **charlatan** is a person who pretends to have knowledge or ability, or a fraud

430. **a.** a rogue is a dishonest person; a **knave** is a tricky deceitful person

431. **b.** an apologist is a person who writes or speaks in defense of a cause, or a **defender**

432. **c.** a proxy is a person who has the power to act for another, or a **delegate**

433. **d.** to buffet means to **strike** repeatedly

434. **b.** a travesty is a distorted or grossly inferior imitation; a **mockery** is an insincere or contemptible imitation

435. **b.** to bristle is to take on an aggressive or angry appearance; to **seethe** means to experience violent internal agitation

436. **c.** to admonish means to express warning in a gentle manner, or to **caution**

437. **c.** to wheedle means to influence using soft words or flattery; to **plead** means to entreat or appeal earnestly

438. **d.** aplomb means complete composure or self-assurance, or **poise**

439. **d.** to aver means to declare positively, or to **state**

440. **a.** mien means appearance or demeanor; **carriage** means manner of holding one's body, or posture

441. **b.** a paroxysm is an attack or convulsion, or a **fit**

442. **c.** aegis means protection, or **sponsorship**

443. **a.** sepulture means **burial**

444. **c.** a harridan is a shrew, or a **witch**

445. **b.** an apothegm is a short, pithy saying; an **adage** is a saying that embodies a common observation

446. **b.** grandiloquence means lofty or pompous eloquence; one meaning of **bluster** is loudly boastful speech

447. **a.** a fulmination is a sudden or loud noise, or an **explosion**

448. **c.** pococurante means indifferent or nonchalant; **blasé** means apathetic to pleasure

449. **b.** an escarpment is a long **cliff** or a steep slope

450. **a.** a plutocrat is one who rules by virtue of wealth; a **banker** is one who engages in the business of finance

13

Antonyms

Select the word that is most dissimilar in meaning to the word provided.

451. subsequent
a. aloof
b. previous
c. following
d. dismissive

452. abrupt
a. continue
b. laudable
c. anticipated
d. careless

453. conserve
a. waste
b. silence
c. liberal
d. complicate

454. waive
a. retain
b. snub
c. imprison
d. display

455. erode
a. compost
b. clarify
c. ignore
d. restore

456. recall
a. rebate
b. demonstrate
c. forget
d. despise

457. dormant
a. clever
b. active
c. dreamy
d. invisible

458. procrastinate
a. lengthen
b. soothe
c. hurry
d. demolish

459. docile
a. intelligent
b. unruly
c. unreachable
d. pale

460. impromptu
a. rehearsed
b. bizarre
c. foolish
d. disarming

461. denigrate
a. blame
b. hide
c. query
d. uphold

462. bent
a. curved
b. disinclination
c. careful
d. lustrous

463. solvent
a. soggy
b. confusing
c. broke
d. critical

464. disconsolate
a. joyful
b. inhospitable
c. anguished
d. rude

465. brusque
a. cold
b. opulent
c. gracious
d. suspect

466. callow
a. kind
b. urbane
c. sensitive
d. gentle

467. countenance
a. force
b. genuine
c. deny
d. verify

468. cachet
a. release
b. explanation
c. thinness
d. ignominy

469. evince
a. convince
b. hallow
c. hide
d. interpret

470. vainglorious
a. horrible
b. fierce
c. greedy
d. modest

471. iniquitous
a. virtuous
b. complacent
c. equal
d. virulent

472. obstreperous
a. short
b. tame
c. strict
d. distant

473. ebullient
a. aggressive
b. acrid
c. unjust
d. glum

474. halcyon
a. obtrusive
b. advanced
c. tempestuous
d. unscientific

475. imprimatur
a. servant
b. teacher
c. disapproval
d. rustic

476. odium
a. fragrance
b. ease
c. admiration
d. trust

477. mephitic
a. honest
b. healthy
c. simple
d. rural

478. platitudinous
a. hilly
b. exhilarating
c. confounded
d. advantageous

479. facultative
a. compulsory
b. insipid
c. pending
d. decisive

480. persiflage
a. coddle
b. admiration
c. silence
d. clarity

Answers

451. **b.** subsequent means following in time or order; **previous** means going before in time or order

452. **c.** abrupt means occurring without warning, or sudden; **anticipated** means expected

453. **a.** to conserve means to keep safe or preserve, which is the opposite of to **waste**

454. **a.** to waive means to give up voluntarily; to **retain** means to keep

455. **d.** to erode means to wear away; to **restore** means to bring back to an original state

456. **c.** to recall means to remember, which is the opposite of to **forget**

457. **b.** dormant means temporarily inactive, which is the opposite of **active**

458. **c.** to procrastinate means to delay or put off, which is the opposite of to **hurry**

459. **b.** docile means easily taught; **unruly** means not easily managed or disciplined

460. **a.** impromptu means unplanned or unrehearsed; **rehearsed** means trained or practiced

461. **d.** to denigrate means to deny the importance of something, or to belittle; to **uphold** means to support or to elevate

462. **b.** a bent is a strong inclination or capacity; a **disinclination** is a slight aversion

463. **c.** one meaning of solvent is able to pay all debts; **broke** means penniless

464. **a.** disconsolate means cheerless or dejected, which is the opposite of **joyful**

465. **c.** brusque means blunt in manner or speech to the point of being ungracious; **gracious** means marked by charm and good taste

466. **b.** callow means unsophisticated; **urbane** means sophisticated

467. **c.** to countenance means to extend approval or sanction; to **deny** means to refuse to grant

468. **d.** cachet means prestige; **ignominy** means disgrace

469. **c.** to evince means to display clearly or reveal, which is the opposite of to **hide**

470. **d.** vainglorious means boastful, which is the opposite of **modest**

471. **a.** iniquitous means wicked; **virtuous** means morally excellent

472. **b.** obstreperous means stubbornly resistant to control or unruly; **tame** means docile or submissive

473. **d.** ebullient means lively or enthusiastic; **glum** means dreary or gloomy

474. **c.** halcyon means calm or peaceful; **tempestuous** means turbulent or stormy

475. **c.** imprimatur means sanction or approval, therefore **disapproval** is the most dissimilar

476. **c.** odium means hatred and condemnation; **admiration** means a feeling of delighted approval

477. **b.** mephitic means relating to a foul, noxious exhalation from the earth; a mephitic environment would be unhealthy, so **healthy** is its opposite

478. **b.** platitudinous means full of or characterized by banal, trite remarks; **exhilarating** means refreshing or exciting

479. **a.** facultative means optional; **compulsory** means mandatory, or not optional

480. **c.** persiflage means frivolous talk, therefore **silence** is the most dissimilar

14

Synonyms and Antonyms

Read each question carefully and select the word that is the most similar or most dissimilar in meaning to the word provided.

481. beckon is most similar to
a. light
b. beg
c. motion
d. hear

482. earnest is most dissimilar to
a. cheap
b. frivolous
c. release
d. civilized

483. execute is most similar to
a. perform
b. decide
c. wonder
d. dismiss

484. idiom is most similar to
a. stupidity
b. recipe
c. fastener
d. expression

485. accelerate is most dissimilar to
a. delay
b. risk
c. monitor
d. deny

486. engross is most similar to
a. fatten
b. absorb
c. disgust
d. destroy

487. impervious is most dissimilar to
- **a.** kind
- **b.** disastrous
- **c.** prone
- **d.** perfect

488. brood is most similar to
- **a.** wander
- **b.** direction
- **c.** progeny
- **d.** tribe

489. balk is most similar to
- **a.** crow
- **b.** fight
- **c.** distress
- **d.** hamper

490. conversant is most dissimilar to
- **a.** inexperienced
- **b.** unprepared
- **c.** shy
- **d.** unpretentious

491. staunch is most similar to
- **a.** faithful
- **b.** strict
- **c.** biased
- **d.** political

492. unctuous is most dissimilar to
- **a.** pliant
- **b.** cruel
- **c.** sincere
- **d.** rubbery

493. hubris is most similar to
- **a.** earth
- **b.** pride
- **c.** humility
- **d.** sorrow

494. bemuse is most dissimilar to
- **a.** depress
- **b.** inspire
- **c.** clarify
- **d.** desire

495. contrite is most similar to
- **a.** brief
- **b.** malicious
- **c.** banal
- **d.** rueful

496. beset is most similar to
- **a.** hector
- **b.** decorate
- **c.** establish
- **d.** suspect

497. penurious is most dissimilar to
- **a.** generous
- **b.** lenient
- **c.** injurious
- **d.** relaxed

498. perfidy is most similar to
- **a.** incompleteness
- **b.** ideal
- **c.** betrayal
- **d.** braggart

499. ascription is most similar to
- **a.** account
- **b.** attribution
- **c.** cure
- **d.** description

500. fustigate is most dissimilar to
- **a.** inveigle
- **b.** investigate
- **c.** explain
- **d.** praise

501. bagatelle is most similar to
- **a.** paste
- **b.** bread
- **c.** bauble
- **d.** pirouette

Answers

481. **c.** to beckon means to signal or summon with a wave or a nod; to **motion** means to gesture

482. **b.** earnest means grave or serious; **frivolous** means lacking in seriousness

483. **a.** one meaning of to execute is to carry out fully; one meaning of to **perform** is to carry out

484. **d.** an idiom is an **expression** that is unique either grammatically or in meaning

485. **a.** to accelerate means to cause to move faster; to **delay** means to move or act slowly

486. **b.** to engross means to occupy completely; one meaning of to **absorb** is to engage or engross wholly

487. **c.** impervious means to be incapable of being affected or disturbed; **prone** means having a tendency or inclination, or being likely

488. **c.** a brood is the young of an animal or a family of young; **progeny** is the offspring of animals or plants

489. **d.** one meaning of to balk is to check or to stop; to **hamper** means to impede or restrain

490. **a.** conversant means having knowledge or experience with, therefore **inexperienced** is the most dissimilar

491. **a.** staunch means steadfast in loyalty or principle, or **faithful**

492. **c.** unctuous means marked by a smug or false earnestness, or insincere, therefore **sincere** is the most dissimilar

493. **b.** hubris means exaggerated **pride** or self-confidence

494. **c.** to bemuse means to make confused, or to bewilder; to **clarify** means to make free from confusion

495. **d.** contrite means penitent for sin or failing; **rueful** means regretful

496. **a.** to beset means to trouble or harass; to **hector** means to intimidate or harass

497. **a.** penurious means given to extreme stinginess or frugality, which is the opposite of **generous**

498. **c.** perfidy means an act of disloyalty, or **betrayal**

499. **b.** ascription means the act of referring to a supposed cause, source, or author; **attribution** means the act of explaining by indicating a cause, or the act of ascribing a work to a particular author or artist

500. **d.** to fustigate means to criticize severely, which is the opposite of to **praise**

501. **c.** a bagatelle is a trifle (something of little value or importance); a **bauble** is a trinket or a trifle

OXFORD

Collocations

dictionary for students of English

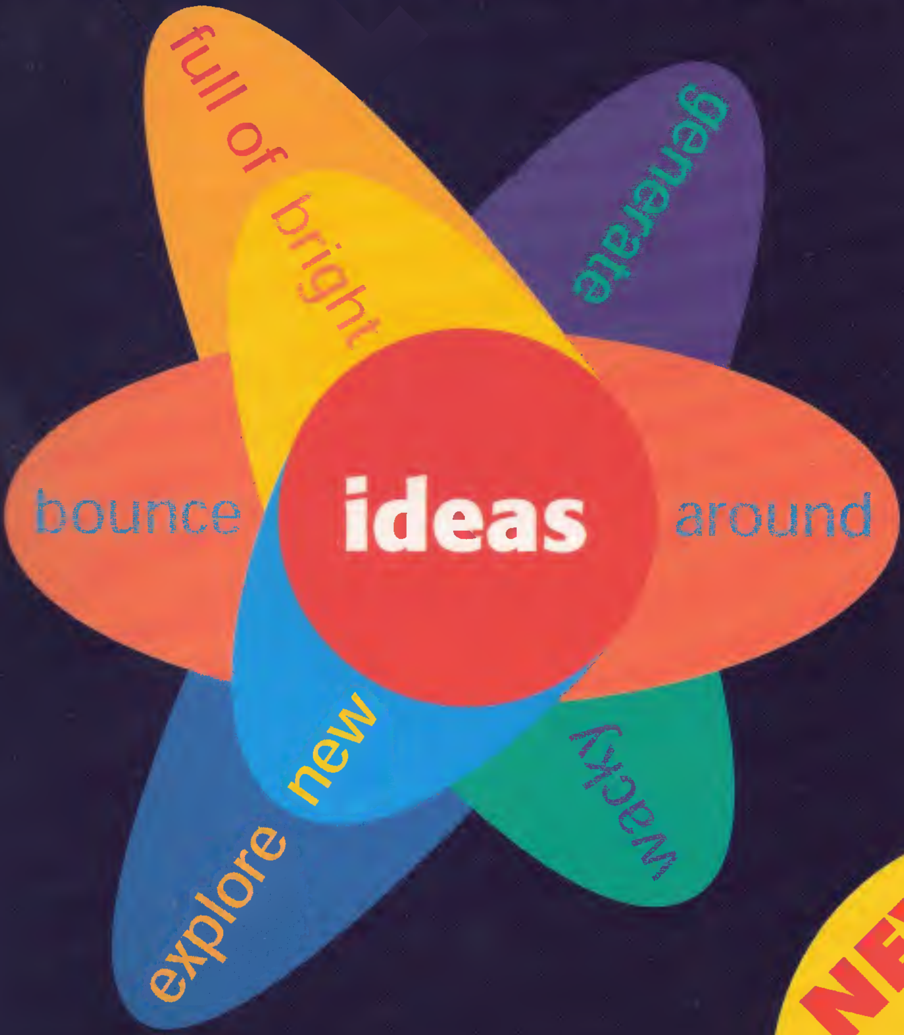
full of
bright
generate
bounce
ideas
around
new
explore
wacky

NEW

Oxford Collocations Dictionary

for students of English

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS
Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York
Auckland Bangkok Buenos Aires Cape Town Chennai
Dar es Salaam Delhi Hong Kong Istanbul Karachi Kolkata
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Mumbai Nairobi
São Paulo Shanghai Taipei Tokyo Toronto

Oxford and Oxford English are registered trademarks of
Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2002
Database right Oxford University Press (maker)
First published 2002
Fifth impression 2003

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose the same condition on any acquirer

This dictionary includes some words which have or are asserted to have proprietary status as trademarks or otherwise. Their inclusion does not imply that they have acquired for legal purposes a non-proprietary or general significance nor any other judgement concerning their legal status. In cases where the editorial staff have some evidence that a word has proprietary status this is indicated in the entry for that word but no judgement concerning the legal status of such words is made or implied thereby

The British National Corpus is a collaborative project involving Oxford University Press, Longman, Chambers, the Universities of Oxford and Lancaster and the British Library

ISBN 0 19 431 2437
10 9 8 7 6 5

Text capture and processing by Oxford University Press
Typesetting by Oxford University Press
Printed in China

CONTENTS

list of usage notes and special pages iv
preface v
acknowledgements vi
introduction vii–xi
guide to the entries xii–xiii

the dictionary **1–892**

study pages between **446 and 447**
ideas into words S2
using a noun entry S3–5
using a verb entry S6–7
using an adjective entry S8–9
common verbs S10–11
natural disasters S12
criminal justice S12
education S13
driving S13
politics S14
jobs S15
money S16

key to the study pages **893–7**

inside front cover

key to abbreviations, symbols and labels

List of usage notes

Usage note	**on page**	**at entry**
Aristocratic titles	560	peer
Crimes	177	crime
Currencies	184	currency
Days of the week	191	day
Financial indicators	562	per cent
Flowers	316	flower
Health practitioners	234	doctor
Illegal drugs	243	drug
Jobs	437	job
Languages	450	language
Meals	487	meal
Months	506	month
Organizations	541	organization
Performing arts	563	performance
Playing cards	98	card
Points of the compass	217	direction
Professionals	598	professional
Ranks in the armed forces	619	rank
Religions	641	religion
Seasons	688	season
Sounds	731	sound
Subjects of study	763	subject
Swimming strokes	760	stroke
Weights and measures	488	measure
Works of art	37	art

List of special pages

Special page	**on page**	**at entry**
Business	91	business
Clothes	126-7	clothes
Colours	133	colour
Computers	144	computer
Food and cooking	319	food
Fruit	332	fruit
Illnesses	392	illness
Meetings	490-1	meeting
Music	513	music
Sport	739	sport

Preface

In recent years, teachers and students have become increasingly aware of the importance of collocation in English language learning. However, no matter how convinced learners are in principle of the importance of collocation, it is difficult for them to put these principles into practice without the benefit of an up-to-date, corpus-based dictionary of collocations. We at Oxford University Press were determined to provide such a dictionary but it has taken us many years to produce the dictionary that we feel best meets the needs of students and teachers.

Over the years, a large number of lexicographers and editors have been involved in this project and I wish to take this opportunity to thank them all for the contributions they have made. In particular, I wish to thank the three Managing Editors, Sheila Dignen, Jonathan Crowther and Diana Lea. The Managing Editors worked on the policy for this dictionary, striving to ensure that it was in its design as helpful and accessible to users as possible. In the introduction that follows, Diana Lea explains the principles that were established through consultation and experiment to determine which collocates to include and where they should be listed.

It is our hope that this dictionary will provide you with invaluable assistance in expressing your ideas cogently in idiomatic English. If you wish to explore the dictionary's potential as a learning tool, you will find the Guide to the Entries (page xii-xiii) and the Study Pages (between pages 446 and 447) very helpful.

Moira Runcie
January 2002

Advisory Board

Dr Keith Brown
Professor Guy Cook
Dr Alan Cruse
Ms Moira Runcie
Professor Gabriele Stein
Dr Norman Whitney
Professor Henry Widdowson

Managing Editors

Jonathan Crowther
Sheila Dignen
Diana Lea

Editors

Margaret Deuter
James Greenan
Joseph Noble
Janet Phillips

Lexicographers

Colin Hope
Gillian Lazar
Fiona McIntosh
Carole Owen
Valerie Smith

Project administration

Julie Darbyshire
Julia Hiley

Publishing Systems Manager

Frank Keenan

Data capture and typesetting

Bill Coumbe
Tim Teasdale

Keyboarders

Anna Cotgreave
Kay Pepler
Ben Pritchett

Design

Page design: Peter Burgess and Holdsworth Associates, Isle of Wight
Study pages: Sarah Nicholson
Cover design: Richard Morris, Stonesfield Design

Illustrations

Harry Venning

Thanks are also due to those who helped with administration and keyboarding for shorter periods during the course of the project:
Anne-Marie Amphlett, Elizabeth Aracic, Stephanie Donaghy, Abigail Pringle, Katrina Ransom

Introduction

Imagine a student writing an essay on the environment. She knows the themes she wishes to cover and the ideas and arguments to get across. She already has a stock of useful vocabulary, especially high-content nouns like *environment, pollution, ozone layer*. What is missing are the words that can link these high-content vocabulary items together into a coherent whole – a narrative or an argument. Pollution is a problem, but what needs to be done about it? Looking up the entry for **pollution** in the *Oxford Collocations Dictionary* and skimming down to the verbs section offers the choice of *avoid/prevent, combat/control/fight/tackle, cut/limit/minimize/reduce* or *monitor*. With the back-up help of a good monolingual learner's dictionary (such as the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*) if need be, the student can choose the most appropriate verb, the one that expresses most exactly what she wants to say.

What is collocation?

Collocation is the way words combine in a language to produce natural-sounding speech and writing. For example, in English you say *strong wind* but *heavy rain*. It would not be normal to say **heavy wind* or **strong rain*. And whilst all four of these words would be recognized by a learner at pre-intermediate or even elementary level, it takes a greater degree of competence with the language to combine them correctly in productive use. To a native-speaker these combinations are highly predictable; to a learner they are anything but.

Combinations of words in a language can be ranged on a cline from the totally free – *see a man/car/book* – to the totally fixed and idiomatic – *not see the wood for the trees*. This idiom is not only fixed in form, it also has nothing whatever to do with wood or trees. Between these two extremes, there is a whole range of nouns that take the verb *see* in a way that is neither totally predictable nor totally opaque as to meaning. These run from the fairly 'weak' collocation *see a film* (which elementary students learn as a 'chunk' without pausing to reflect that this is not quite the literal meaning of *see*) through the 'medium strength' *see a doctor* to the 'stronger' collocations of *see danger/reason/the point*. All these combinations, apart from those at the very extremes of the cline, can be called collocation. And it is combinations such as these – particularly in the 'medium-strength' area – that are vital to communicative competence in English.

Why is collocation important?

Collocation runs through the whole of the English language. No piece of natural spoken or written English is totally free of collocation. For the student, choosing the right collocation will make his speech and writing sound much more natural, more native-speaker-like, even when basic intelligibility does not seem to be at issue. A student who talks about **strong rain* may make himself understood, but possibly not without provoking a smile or a correction, which may or may not matter. He will certainly be marked down for it in an exam.

But, perhaps even more importantly than this, language that is collocationally rich is also more precise. This is because most single words in the English language – especially the more common words – embrace a whole range of meanings, some quite distinct, and some that shade into each other by degrees. The precise meaning in any context is determined by that context: by the words that surround and combine with the core word – by collocation. A student who chooses the best collocation will express himself much more clearly and be able to convey not just a general meaning, but something quite precise. Compare, for example, the following two sentences:

This is a good book and contains a lot of interesting details.
This is a fascinating book and contains a wealth of historical detail.

Both sentences are perfectly 'correct' in terms of grammar and vocabulary, but which communicates more (both about the book under discussion *and* the person discussing it)?

Why use a Collocations Dictionary?

A normal dictionary, whether monolingual or bilingual, splits up meaning into individual words; it has a lot of power in dissecting the meaning of a text. Its power is more limited when it comes to constructing texts. Good learner's dictionaries give as much help as they can with usage, with grammar patterns clearly explained, register labels and example sentences showing words in context. Modern dictionaries are increasingly giving attention to collocation. But they are still hampered by trying to provide a whole range of information about any word besides its collocations. A grammar provides an analysis of the general patterns that exist in a language. But its productive power is limited by the degree to which it generalizes in order to come up with 'grammatical rules'. A collocational dictionary doesn't have to generalize to the same extent: it covers the entire language (or a large part of it!) on a word by word, collocation by collocation basis. It manages this by not attempting to account for every possible utterance, only for what is most typical.

By focusing on the specific rather than the general, a collocations dictionary is also able to 'pre-digest' a lot of the grammar involved, presenting collocates in their most typical form in context, even if this is not the usual dictionary citation form. For example at the entry for **baby**, you will find the collocation *be teething*, reflecting the fact that this verb is always used in the progressive tenses. Use the collocations dictionary systematically and you become much more aware of the extent to which English makes use of the passive, an aspect of grammar that even advanced students may be reluctant to put to full productive use.

By covering the language systematically from A-Z, a collocations dictionary allows students to build up their own collocational competence on a 'need-to-know' basis, starting from the words they already know – or know in part. Occasional, or even regular, collocations exercises in coursebooks cannot fulfil this role, although they do a useful job of raising the profile of collocation as an essential feature of the language, and teach some useful collocations in the process.

Which collocations are included in this dictionary?

The approach taken to this question was pragmatic, rather than theoretical. The questions asked were: is this a typical use of language? Might a student of English want to express this idea? Would they look up this entry to find out how? The aim was to give the full range of collocation – from the fairly weak (*see a film, an enjoyable holiday, extremely complicated*), through the medium-strength (*see a doctor, direct equivalent, highly intelligent*) to the strongest and most restricted (*see reason, burning ambition, blindingly obvious*) – for around 9,000 headwords. Totally free combinations are excluded and so, for the most part, are idioms. Exceptions to this rule are idioms that are only partly idiomatic: *not see the wood for the trees* may have nothing to do with wood or trees, but *drive a hard bargain* is very much about bargaining even if the expression as a whole can be considered an idiom.

The first question (Is this a typical use of language?) required that all the collocations be drawn from reliable data. The main source used was the 100 million word British National Corpus. From this, compilers of the dictionary were able to check how frequently any given combination occurred, in how many (and what kind of) sources, and in what particular contexts. The corpus also supplied many of the example sentences, most of which were either taken directly from the authentic texts included in the corpus, or with minor modifications to make them more accessible (but without, of course, altering any collocations). For fast-changing areas of language, such as computing – particularly rich in collocation – corpus information was supplemented by using the Internet as a resource.

The second question asked (Might a student of English want to express this idea?) led to a focus on current English: language that students not only need to understand but can be expected to reproduce. It was felt that, for productive use, students were better concentrating on one variety of English, and British English was chosen. Consideration was also given to the kind of texts that students might wish to write. Primary attention was given to what might be called 'moderately formal language' – the language of essay and report writing, and formal letters – treating all subjects – business, science, history, sport, etc. (this list could go on for half a page) at the level of the educated non-specialist. In addition, the dictionary includes some of the most important collocations from some specialist areas, particularly law and medicine; collocations from popular fiction, particularly useful in treating more personal subjects such as feelings and relationships; informal collocations and those very frequent in spoken language; and a few of the most frequent collocations from British journalism. Technical, informal and journalistic uses are labelled as such.

The third question asked (Would a student look up this entry to find this expression?) led to the exclusion of noun collocates from verb and adjective entries. When framing their ideas, people generally start from a noun. You might think of *rain* and want to know which adjective best describes rain when a lot falls in a short time. You would be unlikely to start with the adjective *heavy* and wonder what you could describe with it (*rain, breathing, damage, gunfire*?) Similarly, you might be looking for the verb to use when you do what you need to do in response to a *challenge*. But you would not choose meet and then choose what to meet (*a challenge, an acquaintance, your death, the expense*).

'The full range of collocation', as well as implying collocations of different strengths, also covers all the following types of combination:

adjective + noun: *bright/harsh/intense/strong* ***light***
quantifier + noun: *a beam/ray of* ***light***
verb + noun: *cast/emit/give/provide/shed* ***light***
noun + verb: ***light*** *gleams/glows/shines*
noun + noun: *a* ***light*** *source*
preposition + noun: *by the* ***light*** *of the moon*
noun + preposition: *the* ***light*** *from the window*

adverb + verb: ***choose*** *carefully*
verb + verb: *be free to* ***choose***
verb + preposition: ***choose*** *between two things*
verb + adjective: *make/keep/declare sth* ***safe***
adverb + adjective: *perfectly/not entirely/environmentally* ***safe***
adjective + preposition: ***safe*** *from attack*

plus short phrases including the headword: *the speed of* ***light****, pick and* ***choose****,* ***safe*** *and sound*

Most of the collocations in the dictionary can be called 'word collocations', that is, these are the precise words that combine with each other: *small fortune* cannot be changed to *little fortune*, even though *small* and *little* would seem to be synonymous. There is another area of collocation that might be called 'category collocation', where a word can combine with any word from a readily definable set. This set may be quite large, but its members are predictable, because they are all words for nationalities, or measurements of time, for example. At the entry for *walk*, one of the groups of collocates is given as 'three-minute, five minutes', etc.': the 'etc.' is to indicate that any figure may be substituted for 'three' or 'five' in these expressions.

It also happens that certain sets of words share all or most of their collocations. This is particularly true of very strictly defined sets such as days of the week, months and points of the compass, but it also applies to slightly less rigid, but still limited sets such as currencies, weights and measures and meals. In order to show how these collocations are shared by a number of headwords, the dictionary includes 25 usage notes, each treating the collocations of a particular set. The entries for the individual members of the set include a cross-reference to the usage note. In cases where all the collocations are shared (months, for example) the cross-reference replaces all other information in the entry. In cases where some of the collocations are shared, but others apply only to an individual member of the set (for example, seasons), the individual collocations are given at the entry, and a cross-reference directs the user to the shared collocations in the usage note. A full list of the usage notes and where they may be found is given on page iv. The 9,000 headwords include most of the commonest words in the language that upper-intermediate students will already know, plus some words that they will start to encounter as they move to a more advanced level of English. Some very common words – such as the verbs *make* and *do* – do not merit entries of their own. This is because these verbs have no real collocations of their own. They themselves *are* the collocations of lots of nouns, and appear in the entries for those nouns. There are also two pages of exercises in the central study section addressing this notorious area of difficulty.

How to use this dictionary

This dictionary is intended for productive use, most typically for help with writing. The collocations in each entry are divided according to part of speech; within each part of speech section they are grouped according to meaning or category. (In the example above from **pollution**, *avoid* and *prevent* are roughly synonymous, as are *combat, control, fight* and *tackle*, and so on). The groups are arranged in an order that tries to be as intuitive as possible: in this case from the 'strongest' form of action (*avoid/prevent*) to the 'mildest' (*monitor*). Many collocate groups have illustrative examples showing one or more of the collocations in context.

Because this is a type of dictionary that may be totally new to many students it is recommended that users familiarize themselves with how the dictionary works by working through some of the exercises in the photocopiable study section in the centre of the dictionary. The first of these aims to show the overall concept of the dictionary by looking at a single entry (**idea**) in some detail. The next few exercises take users systematically through the different sections of the entries for nouns, verbs and adjectives. Two pages of exercises get students thinking about the common verbs *make, do, have, give* and *take*; and the remaining exercises range across the whole dictionary, testing collocations linked to various themes, including politics, jobs and money.

Other information in this dictionary

The focus of this dictionary is very much on collocation. In order to make the collocational information as comprehensive and accessible as possible, non-collocational information has largely been excluded. Definitions of headwords are given only insofar as they are necessary to distinguish different senses of the same word, when they have different collocations and need to be treated separately. These are not full definitions, but rather 'sense discriminators', just detailed enough to allow the senses to be distinguished. Register information is given when any pair of words in *combination* take on a different register from the two words separately. Examples would be *do drugs* (*informal*) – though neither *do* nor *drugs* are informal in themselves – or *hear a lecture* (*formal*). (Exceptions to this rule are collocates labelled *taboo* where the label applies to the single word and to any combination it occurs in.) Collocations are also labelled if they belong to a particular field of language such as *law* or *medical*. For a full list of the usage labels used in this dictionary, see inside the front cover. In addition to these labels, more specific usage restrictions such as 'in football' or 'used in journalism' are given in brackets.

The most frequent usage label used in the dictionary is *figurative*. It is a feature of English that when the meaning of a word is extended and used in a non-literal sense, the collocations of the literal sense are often carried over: that is, both literal and figurative meanings of a word may share collocations. The dictionary indicates where this is so: for example, at **way**, the collocation *lose* is given, followed by the examples: *She lost her way in the fog*. and (*figurative*) *The project seems to have lost its way*. With strong collocations that are slightly idiomatic, a short explanation of the meaning may be given. For example, at **bargain**, the phrase *drive a hard bargain* has the gloss (= force sb to agree to the arrangement that is best for you).

The dictionary also includes ten special pages on different topics such as business, meetings and sport. These pull together collocations from the different topics and can be used as the basis for topic work in class, or for brainstorming vocabulary for an essay, for example. A full list of special topic pages and where to find them is given on page iv.

It is hoped that this dictionary will be of use not only to students of English of upper-intermediate level and above, but also to teachers (both non-native speaker and native-speaker teachers, looking for ways to present collocations to their students), translators, academics, business people, and all who wish to write fluent and idiomatic English. The Guide to the Entries (pages xii-xiii) is there as a quick reference, to give help as needed, but the whole dictionary has been designed to be accessible, and (we hope) enjoyable to use.

Guide to the entries

nouns

Sense numbers and short definitions distinguish between the different senses of **mountain**.

adjectives that collocate with **mountain** or nouns that function like adjectives

quantifiers: words that mean 'an amount/number of something'

verbs that come before **mountain**, and verbs that follow **mountain**

nouns that follow **mountain**

Collocates are grouped according to meaning or category.

prepositions that combine with **mountain**

common phrases that include **mountain**

mountain *noun*

1 very high hill

- ADJ. **big, great, high, huge, large, lofty, massive, tall, towering | small | steep | low | beautiful, dramatic, fine, majestic, spectacular | surrounding** *The surrounding mountains make the city difficult to evacuate.* | **distant | isolated, remote | inland | jagged, rocky, rugged, | snow-capped, snow-covered, snowy | holy** *the holy mountain of the Lapp community*
- QUANT. **chain, range** *a chain/range of mountains*
- VERB + MOUNTAIN **ascend, climb, come/go up, scale | come/go down, descend, walk down | walk in** *We enjoy walking in the mountains.* | **cross (over)**
- MOUNTAIN + VERB **rise, soar, tower** *The mountains here rise to well over 2 000m.* | **fall** *The mountains fall to the east to the flat expanse of the plateau.* | **surround sth** *Towering mountains surrounded the village.* | **shake** *The earth tremor made the mountains shake.*
- MOUNTAIN + NOUN **chain, range | area, country, environment, region** *Between the two towns was 50 miles of mountain country.* | **height** *We crossed the rugged mountain heights.* | **pass, path, road, route, track | landscape, scenery | crag, face, flank, peak, ridge, side, slope, top, valley, wall | cave | lake, stream | air** *Many people come to the resort simply to enjoy the fresh mountain air.* | **pasture | barrier** *The invading army could only penetrate the mountain barrier at one point.* | **village | fastness, fortress, stronghold | hut, lodge, resort | folk, men, people | climber, climbing, walking, walks | guide | rescue, rescue team | bike, biker, biking | sickness | boot | goat, gorilla, hare, sheep**
- PREP. **across/over/through the ~** *a pass through the mountains* **down/up a/the ~** *She arranged to meet the others halfway up the mountain.* **in the ~s** *This type of goat lives high up in the mountains.*
- PHRASES **the flank/side/slope of a mountain, the foot/bottom/top of a mountain**

2 large amount/number of sth

- ADJ. **great | debt | paper | butter, food, etc.** *They revealed a solution to reduce Europe's butter mountain.*
- VERB + MOUNTAIN **generate | reduce**
- PHRASES **a mountain of paper/paperwork** *The enquiry generated a mountain of paperwork.*

adjectives

verbs that come before **famous**

adverbs that collocate with **famous**

prepositions that follow **famous**

common phrases that include **famous**

famous *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | make sb/sth** *The school was made famous by its association with Charles Dickens.*
- ADV. **really, very | quite | internationally, locally** *internationally famous rock stars* | **justly, rightly** *The city is justly famous for its nightclubs.*
- PREP. **as** *He was famous as both a teacher and a scientist.* **for** *The town became famous for its lace.*
- PHRASES **rich and famous** *One day I'll be rich and famous, you'll see!* **world famous** *He became a world famous conductor.*

verbs

adverbs that collocate with **remind**

verbs that come before **remind**

prepositions that follow **remind**

common phrases that include **remind**

Phrasal verbs are treated separately at the end of the entry.

remind *verb*

- ADV. **constantly, frequently, repeatedly | gently** *She gently reminded him that the baby was getting cold and should be taken indoors.*
- VERB + REMIND **not have to, not need to** *I'm sure I don't need to remind you that we have lost our last ten matches.* | **serve to** *An event like this serves to remind us that we do not have control over nature.*
- PREP. **about** *I rang to remind him about the party.* **of** *She looked at her watch to remind him of the time.*
- PHRASES **keep reminding sb**

PHRASAL VERB

remind sb of sb/sth

- ADV. **forcefully, forcibly, sharply, strongly, vividly** *The building reminded me strongly of my old school.* | **irresistibly** | **suddenly** *I was suddenly reminded of a tiger defending its cubs.* | **always** *Mrs Nolan always reminded Marie of her own mother.*

other features of the entries

A short use note shows a restriction on the use of the collocation *pitch black.*

a cross-reference to the special page at **colour**, which has further collocations of **black** and other colours

black *adj.*

- ADV. **very** *The sky looks very black.* | **all** *His hands were all black from messing about with the car.*
- ADJ. **jet, pitch** (used about the night) *She had beautiful jet-black hair.* ◇ *It was pitch black outside.*

⇨ Special page at COLOUR

Register labels show that **abode** may be formal, humorous or a technical term in law, depending on its context and collocations.

short explanations of the meaning of particular phrases

abode *noun*

- ADJ. **humble** (*humorous*) *Welcome to my humble abode.*
- VERB + ABODE **take up your** (*formal or humorous*) *I had been invited to take up my abode at Government House.*
- PHRASES **of no fixed abode** (*law*) (= without a permanent address) *An 18-year-old man of no fixed abode appeared at Teesside magistrates court yesterday.* **the right of abode** (*law*) (= the right to live in a place)

In particular collocations **wilderness** takes on a figurative meaning.

wilderness *noun*

- ADJ. **last | great | barren, desert, desolate | frozen | uncharted | unspoilt | political** (*figurative*) *the man who brought the party back from the political wilderness*
- VERB + WILDERNESS **transform** *They transformed the wilderness into a garden.* | **explore** *They set out to explore the earth's last great wilderness, Antarctica.*
- WILDERNESS + NOUN **years** (*figurative*) *His wilderness years* (= when he was out of politics and the public eye) *in the 1990s were spent in North America.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *We were hopelessly lost in the wilderness.*

'etc.' shows that words for other nationalities also collocate with **aristocracy**.

aristocracy *noun*

- ADJ. **British, French, etc. | landed, landowning | local**
- PHRASES **a member of the aristocracy**

For more help with noun, verb and adjective entries, see study pages S3-9 in the central section of the dictionary.

Aa

abandon *verb*

1 leave sb/sth
- ADV. **hastily** *The village had been hastily abandoned.*
- PHRASES **be found/left abandoned** *The car was found abandoned in a nearby town.*

2 stop doing/supporting sth
- ADV. **altogether, completely, entirely, totally** *The government does not propose to abandon the project altogether.* | **effectively, largely, virtually** *This principle has now been effectively abandoned.* | **simply** *Traditional policies were simply abandoned.* | **formally** | **quickly** | **quietly** *The plans for reform were quietly abandoned.* | **temporarily** | **voluntarily**
- VERB + ABANDON **be forced to** | **decide to**
- PREP. **for** *He abandoned the army for politics.* **in favour of** *She abandoned teaching career in favour of sport.*

abashed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look**
- ADV. **a little, slightly** | **suitably** *He glanced at Juliet accusingly and she looked suitably abashed.*

abbreviation *noun*

- ADJ. **common, standard**
- ABBREVIATION + VERB **stand for** *The abbreviation PC stands for 'personal computer'.*
- PREP. **~ for** *A/C is the standard abbreviation for 'account'.* **~ of** *Ad lib is an abbreviation of the Latin phrase 'ad libitum'.*

abhorrent *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **find sth**
- ADV. **totally, utterly** *I find the idea totally abhorrent.*
- PREP. **to** *Such a savage punishment is abhorrent to a civilized society.*

ability *noun*

1 skill/power to do sth
- ADJ. **exceptional, extraordinary, great, outstanding, remarkable, uncanny** | **inherent, innate, natural** *discovering the natural abilities of each child* | **proven** | **academic, acting, artistic, athletic, creative, intellectual, linguistic, mathematical, musical, reading, technical** | **mental, physical**
- VERB + ABILITY **have** | **demonstrate, show** *Both players demonstrated their ability to hit the ball hard.* | **acquire, develop** | **lack** | **lose** *I seem to have lost my ability to attract clients.* | **appreciate, recognize** *Fox's abilities were soon recognized.*
- PHRASES **to the best of your ability** *We will keep you informed to the best of our ability.*

2 speed with which sb learns
- ADJ. **high** *The school does nothing for children of high ability.* | **limited, low** | **average, mixed** *It is much more difficult to teach a mixed-ability class.*
- VERB + ABILITY **assess, test**
- PHRASES **a level of ability** *There was a high level of ability among the school leavers.* **a range of ability/abilities** *I taught a wide range of abilities.*

ablaze *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **set sth** *Truck after truck was set ablaze as the fire spread.*
- ADV. **well** *By the time firefighters were called the house was well ablaze.*

able *adj.*

1 **able to do sth** having the ability to do sth
- VERBS **be, feel, prove, seem**
- ADV. **perfectly, quite, well** *He is well able to take care of himself.* | **better, more** *Once you've had some sleep you'll feel better able to cope.* | **just** *I was just able to make out a dark figure in the distance.* | **barely, hardly, only just, scarcely** | **less**

2 clever; doing your job well
- VERBS **be, seem** *She seems very able.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **fairly, reasonably**

abode *noun*

- ADJ. **humble** (*humorous*) *Welcome to my humble abode.*
- VERB + ABODE **take up your** (*formal or humorous*) *I had been invited to take up my abode at Government House.*
- PHRASES **of no fixed abode** (*law*) (= without a permanent address) *An 18-year-old man of no fixed abode appeared at Teesside magistrates court yesterday.* **the right of abode** (*law*) (= the right to live in a place)

abolish *verb*

- ADV. **altogether, completely, totally** *Some MPs want to abolish the tax altogether.* | **virtually** | **largely** *Foreign exchange controls were largely abolished.*
- VERB + ABOLISH **seek to** | **decide to, vote to**

abortion *noun*

- ADJ. **back-street, illegal** | **legal** | **induced, spontaneous, therapeutic**
- VERB + ABORTION **have** *When she got pregnant at 16 she decided to have an abortion.* | **carry out, do** (*informal*), **perform** *Some nurses wanted the right to refuse to perform abortions.*
- ABORTION + NOUN **law, legislation** *the country's strict abortion laws* | **clinic, counselling**
- PREP. **~ on** *He carried out an abortion on a fifteen-year-old girl.*
- PHRASES **abortion on demand** (= the right to have an abortion if you want one) *Women's groups are calling for free contraception and abortion on demand.*

abscess *noun*

- VERB + ABSCESS **develop, get** *I developed an abscess on my neck.* | **burst, drain, lance** | **treat**
- ABSCESS + VERB **burst** *Once an abscess has burst it should be bathed with antiseptic liquid.*

absence *noun*

1 fact of not being present
- ADJ. **lengthy, long, prolonged** | **brief, temporary** | **unauthorized**
- QUANT. **period, spell** *You will not be paid for the full period of absence.*
- PREP. **during/in sb's ~** (= while sb is not there) *My father did all the cooking in my mother's absence.* | **~ from** *absence from work*
- PHRASES **conspicuous/notable by your absence** (= very obviously absent when you ought to be present)

When it came to clearing up afterwards, Anne was conspicuous by her absence. **leave of absence** (= permission to be absent) *He asked for leave of absence from the army.*

2 lack

- ADJ. **complete, total | virtual | conspicuous, notable** *a conspicuous absence of evidence*
- PREP. **in the ~ of** *In the absence of stone, most houses in the area are built of wood.*

absent *adj.*

- VERBS **be | remain**
- ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | virtually | largely | temporarily | conspicuously, markedly, notably, noticeably, strikingly** *Local people were conspicuously absent from the meeting.* | **strangely** *He played with an abandon that was strangely absent from his performance last week.*
- PREP. **from** *He was absent from work for two weeks.*

absorb *verb*

1 liquid/gas/energy, etc.

- ADV. **quickly, rapidly | directly, easily, readily**
- PREP. **into** *Nutrients are absorbed into the bloodstream.*

2 make part of sth larger

- ADV. **gradually | increasingly**
- PHRASES **be absorbed into sth** *These committees were gradually absorbed into the local government machine.*

3 information/atmosphere

- ADV. **easily, readily** *The information is presented so that it can be readily absorbed.* | **passively**

4 interest

- ADV. **completely, totally, utterly** *His work absorbed him completely.* | **deeply**

absorbed *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become, get | keep sb** *A jigsaw puzzle can keep me absorbed for hours.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | completely, fully, totally, utterly** *He was totally absorbed in his book.*
- PREP. **in**

abstract *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly, very | entirely, purely** *purely abstract drawing* | **increasingly | fairly, rather, somewhat**

absurd *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become | find sth** *She found the whole concept faintly absurd.*
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, utterly | clearly, manifestly, patently | faintly, rather, slightly, somewhat | wonderfully**
- PHRASES **a sense of the absurd** *His sense of the absurd kept him from becoming too solemn.*

abundance *noun*

- ADJ. **great, sheer** *We were amazed by the sheer abundance of food.* | **relative**
- VERB + ABUNDANCE **have** *The country has an abundance of natural resources* | **produce, provide**
- PREP. **in ~** *Exotic plants grew there in great abundance.*

abuse *noun*

1 wrong/bad use of sth

- ADJ. **alcohol, drug, solvent, substance** (= drugs or solvents)
- VERB + ABUSE **be open to** *The legal system is open to abuse.*
- PHRASES **the abuse of power**

2 bad, usually violent treatment of sb

- ADJ. **emotional, physical, sex/sexual | child, elder** *victims of child abuse* | **human rights ~s** *allegations of human rights abuses* | **alleged, suspected**
- QUANT. **case** *six cases of suspected child abuse*
- VERB + ABUSE **carry out, subject sb to** *She was subjected to regular sexual abuse.* | **suffer, take** *The child had taken a lot of emotional abuse.* | **suspect sb of**
- ABUSE + VERB **happen, occur, take place**
- PHRASES **an allegation of abuse, a perpetrator of abuse, a victim of abuse**

3 insulting words

- ADJ. **verbal | personal, racial**
- QUANT. **stream, torrent** *He was subjected to a torrent of abuse.*
- VERB + ABUSE **hurl, scream, shout, shower sb with, subject sb to, yell | endure** *They had to endure continual racial abuse.*
- PHRASES **heap abuse on sb/sth** *Abuse and scorn were heaped on the proposals.* **a target for/of abuse** *The team who lost became a target of abuse for angry fans.* **a term of abuse** *Calling someone stupid is definitely a term of abuse.*

abuse *verb*

- ADV. **emotionally, mentally, physically, sexually, verbally** *All the children had been physically and emotionally abused.*

abusive *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become, get**
- ADV. **very | quite | openly** *He became openly abusive.*

academic *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **merely, purely, strictly** *The distinction being made is purely academic.* | **largely, rather, somewhat**

academy *noun*

- ADJ. **military, naval, police, riding**
- VERB + ACADEMY **attend, go to**
- PREP. **at an/the ~** *He later studied at the Royal Academy.*

accelerate *verb*

1 go faster

- ADV. **hard, quickly | smoothly** *The runners accelerated smoothly round the bend.* | **suddenly | away** *The car purred into life and accelerated away.*

2 develop quickly

- ADV. **dramatically, greatly, rapidly, sharply** *The Aids epidemic is accelerating dramatically.*

acceleration *noun*

1 increase in speed

- ADJ. **rapid**
- PREP. **~ in** *There has been a rapid acceleration in the growth of industry.*

2 ability of a car to accelerate

- ADJ. **fast, good** *This model has the best acceleration of any available sports car.* | **poor, slow**

accelerator *noun*

- VERB + ACCELERATOR **depress, hit, press, put your foot (down) on, step on** *She put her foot on the accelerator and we sped through the traffic lights.* | **take your foot off**
- ACCELERATOR + NOUN **pedal**

accent *noun*

- ADJ. **broad, marked, pronounced, strong, thick** *She had a pronounced Scottish accent.* | **slight | country, for-**

eign, local, regional | plummy, posh, public school | cockney | American, middle-class, northern, etc.

• QUANT. **hint, trace** *Her French was excellent, without a trace of an accent.*

• VERB + ACCENT **have, speak in/with | acquire | affect, assume, imitate, put on** *She put on a posh accent when she answered the phone.* **| cultivate | lose** *He lost his northern accent after moving south.*

• PREP. **in an ~** *She spoke in a broad Midlands accent.* **with/without an ~** *a tall man with an American accent*

accept *verb*

1 take/receive

• ADV. **gladly, graciously, gratefully, willingly** *She graciously accepted my apology.* **| reluctantly**

• VERB + ACCEPT **be glad to, be happy to | be reluctant to, be unwilling to | be unable to** *I am unfortunately unable to accept your kind invitation.*

• PREP. **from** *I accepted the gift from my sister.*

2 agree/admit

• ADV. **readily** *Some people readily accept that they may have to pay for medical treatment.* **| fully**

• VERB + ACCEPT **be happy to, be prepared to, be ready to, be willing to | be reluctant to, be unwilling to | be unable to, refuse to | can/cannot, could (not), will/won't, would (not)** *The university cannot accept responsibility for items lost or stolen on its premises.* **| be forced to**

• PHRASES **be commonly/generally/universally/widely accepted** *It is generally accepted that people are motivated by success.*

acceptable *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | make sth** *an attempt to make the reforms acceptable to both sides* **| consider sth, deem sth, find sth** *We must come up with a solution that our shareholders will find acceptable.*

• ADV. **eminently, highly, very** *Her breeding and background made her eminently acceptable in royal circles.* **| completely, entirely, fully, perfectly, quite, totally** *Yogurt is a perfectly acceptable substitute for cream in cooking.* **| fairly, reasonably | (not) remotely** *the only national newspaper even remotely acceptable to the left wing* **| generally, mutually, universally, widely | easily, readily | equally** *Are all political and religious groups equally acceptable?* **| publicly | commercially, culturally, environmentally, ethically, grammatically, morally, politically, socially** *a grammatically acceptable sentence ◇ socially acceptable behaviour*

• PREP. **to** *a compromise that is acceptable to both sides*

acceptance *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, full, total, unconditional, wholehearted | conditional, grudging, reluctant | gradual | greater, growing, increasing** *Alternative medicines are now winning greater acceptance among doctors.* **| general, popular, public, universal, wide, widespread | blind, easy, immediate, ready, uncritical, unquestioning, voluntary** *Their attitude was condemned as blind acceptance of authority.* **| implicit, passive, tacit | formal, official | social**

• VERB + ACCEPTANCE **find, gain, win** *The idea was slow to gain general acceptance.* **| seek** *The group is now seeking formal acceptance.*

• ACCEPTANCE + NOUN **speech**

access *noun*

• ADJ. **direct, easy, free, good, ready, unlimited, unrestricted** *I lived deep in the country, without easy access to shops.* **| limited, poor, restricted** *Access to this information is severely restricted.* **| improved | immediate, instant, quick, rapid | equal** *Men and women should have equal access to education and employment.* **| public | vehicular, wheelchair | random** (*computing*) *random access memory*

• VERB + ACCESS **have | gain, get | give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *The new computer provides access to all the files.* **| demand | seek | allow (sb), grant (sb) | deny sb, prevent, refuse (sb), restrict** *Some people are being denied access to proper medical care.*

• ACCESS + NOUN **road, route**

• PREP. **~ for** *improved access for disabled visitors* **~ to** *He was finally granted access to the medical records.*

accessible *adj.*

1 able to be reached

• VERBS **be | become | remain | make sth**

• ADV. **directly, easily, freely, readily | fully | reasonably, relatively | publicly**

• PREP. **by** *The museum is easily accessible by public transport.* **for** *All the buildings are accessible for people in wheelchairs.* **from** *The garden is accessible from the lane.* **to** *The beach should be accessible to everyone.*

2 easy to understand

• VERBS **be | become | make sth**

• ADV. **easily, highly, immediately, readily, very** *It is written in simple language, immediately accessible to the reader.* **| widely**

• PREP. **to** *The cartoon strips are designed to make Shakespeare accessible to children.*

accessory *noun*

1 extra item

• ADJ. **essential, perfect, useful** *This silk scarf is the perfect accessory for stylish summer evenings.* **| bathroom, car, fashion**

2 person who helps in crime

• PREP. **~ to** *an accessory to murder*

• PHRASES **an accessory before/after the fact** (= a person who knows about a crime before/after it was committed and protects the criminal) (*law*) *If you were lying to the police, then you have been an accessory after the fact for all these years.*

accident *noun*

1 unexpected event that causes damage/injury

• ADJ. **dreadful, horrific, major, nasty, serious, terrible, tragic, unfortunate | fatal** *a fatal road accident* **| minor, slight | freak** *Their boat sank in a freak accident.* **| near** (= that nearly happens, but does not) **| hit-and-run | aircraft, canoeing, car, climbing, flying, industrial, motor, nuclear, road, traffic, etc.**

• VERB + ACCIDENT **be involved in, have, meet with** *She met with an accident while on holiday in Spain.* **| cause | prevent | survive**

• ACCIDENT + VERB **happen, occur, take place**

• ACCIDENT + NOUN **prevention | rates, statistics**

• PREP. **in an/the ~**

• PHRASES **an accident involving** *He was badly hurt in an accident involving two cars and a lorry.* **the scene of the accident** *The ambulance took only six minutes to reach the scene of the accident.*

2 sth not planned in advance

• ADJ. **pure, sheer** *By pure accident he had come across the very man who could solve the mystery.*

• PREP. **by ~** *We met by accident at the airport.*

• PHRASES **be no accident that ...** *It is no accident that men fill most of the top jobs.* **by accident or design** *It happened, whether by accident or design, that Steve and I were the last two people to leave.*

accidental *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **completely, purely, quite | almost**

acclaim *noun*

- ADJ. **great | general, public, universal, wide, widespread | popular | critical** *Her latest novel has won great critical acclaim.* **| international, national, worldwide**
- VERB + ACCLAIM **earn (sb), gain (sb), meet with, receive, win** *His discoveries earned him wide acclaim.*
- PREP. **to ... ~** *The play opened last week to universal acclaim.* **| ~for** *She received international acclaim for her interpretation of Chopin.* **~from** *acclaim from the critics*

acclaim *verb*

- PHRASES **be critically acclaimed, be highly/internationally/widely acclaimed** *This book has been widely acclaimed as a modern classic.*

accolade *noun*

- ADJ. **greatest, highest, supreme, ultimate** *Four restaurants have been awarded the highest accolade of a three-star rating.*
- VERB + ACCOLADE **earn, receive, win | award (sb), bestow, grant (sb) | deserve**

accommodate *verb*

- ADV. **comfortably, easily** *It was a large hall, where a lot of people could be comfortably accommodated.*
- VERB + ACCOMMODATE **can/could** *The car park can accommodate about 200 cars.*

accommodation *noun*

1 place for sb to live/stay
- ADJ. **comfortable, decent, good, suitable | inadequate, poor, substandard | excellent, luxurious | overnight, temporary | permanent | free | private, rented | holiday, hotel | living, residential | sleeping | bed-and-breakfast | furnished | sheltered** *Many old people choose to live in sheltered accommodation.* **| secure** *We need more secure accommodation for young prisoners.* **| student**
- VERB + ACCOMMODATION **have** *The council should be able to help families who have no accommodation.* **| look for, seek | find, get, secure | offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *It is the duty of the local community to provide accommodation for the homeless.*
- ACCOMMODATION + NOUN **costs**
- PREP. **in~**

2 satisfactory arrangement
- VERB + ACCOMMODATION **come to, make, reach, work out | seek**
- PREP. **~between** *Some accommodation between conservation and tourism is essential.* **~to** *accommodation to the harsh circumstances of rural life* **~with** *They were forced to reach an accommodation with the rebels.*

accompaniment *noun*

1 sth eaten/drunk with food
- ADJ. **delicious, good, ideal**
- VERB + ACCOMPANIMENT **be, make**
- PREP. **~for/to** *These wines also make a good accompaniment for vegetarian dishes.*

2 music played to go with singing, etc.
- ADJ. **instrumental, musical, orchestral | piano, string, etc.**
- VERB + ACCOMPANIMENT **provide | compose, write**
- PREP. **to the ~ of** *She sang to the accompaniment of guitars.* **with an ~** *I prefer to sing with an accompaniment.*

3 sth that happens at the same time
- ADJ. **essential, inevitable, necessary**
- PREP. **to the ~ of** *The women's medical school opened in 1874, to the accompaniment of much ridicule of 'lady doctors'.* **with the ~ of** *the market, with its inevitable accompaniment of bustle and noise*

accomplice *noun*

- ADJ. **willing | unwilling | unwitting | alleged**
- PREP. **~in** *She became his unwitting accomplice in the robbery.* **~to** *an accomplice to murder*

accomplish *verb*

- ADV. **safely, successfully** *A rather difficult task had been successfully accomplished.* **| easily**

accomplished *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very | technically** *a technically accomplished musician*
- PREP. **at** *Sarah had become accomplished at running the house.* **in** *He came to London in 1976, already accomplished in the English language.*

accomplishment *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great, real, significant | technical** *Her technical accomplishment on the piano is startling.*
- PREP. **of ... ~** *a work of real accomplishment* **| ~in** *It is a great accomplishment in singing to take the melodic line up to a position of energy and hold it there.*

accord *noun*

- ADJ. **draft | peace, trade**
- VERB + ACCORD **draw up, negotiate, reach** *A peace accord was reached on 26 March.* **| endorse, ratify, sign**
- PREP. **~between** *a trade accord between Europe and the United States* **~on** *an accord on environmental protection* **~with** *They signed a trade accord with the Americans.*

accord *verb*

- ADV. **fully**
- PREP. **with** *His version of events does not accord fully with the facts.*

account *noun*

1 description
- ADJ. **brief, short | blow-by-blow, comprehensive, detailed, full, graphic, vivid** *He gave us a blow-by-blow account of the incident.* **| accurate, clear, eyewitness, factual, first-hand, true, verbatim | glowing, good** *She received a glowing account of her son's progress.* **| newspaper** *the newspaper account of the trial*
- VERB + ACCOUNT **give (sb), provide (sb with), write (sb)** *Can you give us an account of what happened?*
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *Dr Richards describes this very well in his account of the events.*
- PHRASES **by all accounts** (= according to what people say) *I've never been there, but it's a lovely place by all accounts.* **by sb's own account** *By his own account he had an unhappy childhood.*

2 arrangement with a bank
- ADJ. **bank, building society | current | deposit, investment, savings | personal | business | joint, separate** *My husband and I have separate accounts.* **| numbered** *They have a numbered account in Switzerland.*
- VERB + ACCOUNT **have, hold** *Go and see the manager of the bank where your account is held.* **| open** *She opened a savings account at the building society.* **| close | credit sth to, pay/put sth into** *The money will be credited to your account tomorrow.* **| debit (sth from), draw sth out (of),**

pay sth from, take sth out (of), withdraw sth (from) *She had taken all her money out of her account.* | **overdraw** *Your account is overdrawn.*
- PREP. **~at** *He opened an account at a bank in Germany.* **~with** *an account with Barclays Bank*

3 **accounts** record of money a business earns/spends
- VERB + ACCOUNTS **do, keep** *Try to keep accurate accounts.* | **audit, check, look at** | **submit** *Your accounts will need to be submitted to the tax office.*
- ACCOUNTS + VERB **be in order** *The accounts are all in order.*

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

4 arrangement with a shop/business
- ADJ. **expense** (= an arrangement to charge expenses to your own employers) *taking clients for expense account lunches*
- VERB + ACCOUNT **have** | **open** *I'd like to open an account, please.* | **close** | **pay off, settle** *It is best to settle the account each month.* | **charge sth to, debit (sth from), put sth on** *Charge this to my account, please.* | **credit sth to**
- PREP. **on ~** *Ring for a cab on account.* | **~at/with** *an account with a large store*

account *verb*

PHRASAL VERB

account for sth
- ADV. **fully** *The increase can be fully accounted for.* | **partly** *The differences in achievement between the pupils are partly accounted for by differences in age.*

accountability *noun*

- ADJ. **greater, increased** | **local, public** *demands for greater public accountability in the police service* | **democratic, financial, managerial, moral, parliamentary, police, political, professional** | **government, police**
- VERB + ACCOUNTABILITY **enhance, improve, increase, strengthen** | **reduce, weaken** *This process of centralization further weakens accountability.* | **ensure**
- PREP. **~for** *to ensure accountability for decisions made* **~to** *police accountability to the public*
- PHRASES **a demand for accountability, a lack of accountability** *the apparent lack of accountability of the security forces* **a need for accountability** *There is a need for increased professional accountability.*

accountable *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **make sb** | **hold sb** *The directors are held accountable by the shareholders.*
- ADV. **fully, properly** | **directly** *Senior managers are directly accountable to the Board of Directors.* | **publicly** *Local authorities should be publicly accountable to the communities they serve.* | **democratically** *a democratically accountable parliament* | **financially, politically**
- PREP. **for** *In the end, we are all accountable for our actions.* **to** *Politicians are accountable to Parliament.*

accountancy *noun*

- ADJ. **chartered** | **creative** *It had taken considerable 'creative accountancy' on my part to produce a set of figures that showed us making any profit at all.*
- ACCOUNTANCY + NOUN **firm, practice** | **body** *the members of the different professional accountancy bodies* | **profession**

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for more verbs and nouns)

accountant *noun*

- ADJ. **certified, chartered** | **professional, qualified** | **trainee** | **retired** | **independent, self-employed** | **company** | **chief** *We talked to the company's chief accountant.* | **management** | **investigating, reporting** *the investigating accountant's report*

⇨ Note at PROFESSIONAL (for verbs)

accumulate *verb*

- ADV. **gradually, slowly** | **steadily** | **rapidly**
- VERB + ACCUMULATE **begin to** | **be allowed to** *Dirt must not be allowed to accumulate.* | **tend to** *Toxic chemicals tend to accumulate in the body.*

accumulation *noun*

- ADJ. **rapid** | **steady** *the steady accumulation of evidence by the police* | **slow** | **great, impressive, large, massive** *a massive accumulation of facts about the motor industry* | **capital** (*finance*)
- VERB + ACCUMULATION **lead to** | **prevent**

accuracy *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, complete, deadly, perfect, pinpoint, total, unerring** *The needle has to be positioned with pinpoint accuracy.* | **amazing, considerable, great, high** (*technical*), **remarkable, uncanny** | **reasonable, sufficient** | **factual, historical, technical**
- QUANT. **degree, level** *The missiles are capable of a very high degree of accuracy.*
- VERB + ACCURACY **improve, increase** *We are hoping to improve the accuracy of our forecasts.* | **check, confirm, test** | **ensure** *Great care is taken to ensure the accuracy of research data.* | **doubt, question** *Many people began to question the accuracy of his statement.*
- PREP. **with ~** *It is possible to predict the outcome with reasonable accuracy.*

accurate *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove** *His predictions proved accurate.*
- ADV. **deadly, extremely, highly, very** | **amazingly, remarkably, surprisingly, uncannily** | **completely, perfectly, totally** | **not completely, not entirely, not quite, not strictly, not wholly** *The figures he gave were not strictly accurate.* | **partially** | **broadly, fairly, generally, largely, pretty, quite, reasonably, sufficiently** | **historically, statistically**
- PHRASES **full and accurate** *He gave a full and accurate account of his movements.*

accusation *noun*

- ADJ. **serious** | **false, groundless, unfounded, unjust, wild** | **bitter** | **mutual** *They sank into mutual accusation and incrimination.* | **public** | **veiled** *She made a lot of thinly veiled accusations.* | **renewed, repeated**
- VERB + ACCUSATION **level at, make** *an accusation frequently levelled at junior doctors* | **face** *Their father now faces an accusation of murder.* | **deny, dismiss, refute, reject** | **prove, support** *New evidence has emerged which supports the accusation against her.*
- ACCUSATION + VERB **fly about/around** *There seem to be a lot of wild accusations flying around.*
- PREP. **amid ~s** *He fled the country amid accusations of fraud.* | **~against** *You made a public accusation of misconduct against Nigel.*
- PHRASES **bring an accusation against sb** *She rejected all the accusations brought against her.*

accuse *verb*

- ADV. **practically, virtually** *She practically accused me of starting the fire!* | **falsely, unjustly, wrongly** | **angrily** | **openly, publicly** *They openly accused her of dishonesty.*
- VERB + ACCUSE **cannot/could not** *You can't accuse me of being selfish.*
- PREP. **of** *No one could ever accuse this government of not caring about the poor.*

- PHRASES **stand accused of** *He stands accused of murdering his wife and children.*

accustomed *adj.* accustomed to sth

- VERBS **be | become, get, grow** *She had grown accustomed to his long absences.*
- ADV. **quite, well** *He was well accustomed to hard work.*

ace *noun*

1 playing card
⇨ Note at CARD

2 winning first hit in tennis
- VERB + ACE **serve** *Rafter has served fifteen aces in the match so far.*

3 person who is very good at sth
- ADJ. **fighter, flying, goal, motorcycle, soccer, tennis**

ache *noun*

1 physical pain
- ADJ. **dull, nagging, throbbing | familiar | muscular, stomach, tummy**
- VERB + ACHE **be aware of, feel** *I felt the familiar ache in my lower back.* **| ease** *He changed his position once again to ease the ache in his back.*
- ACHE + VERB **throb** *A dull ache throbbed at the back of David's head.*
- PREP. **~in** *a nagging ache in her knee*
- PHRASES **aches and pains** *He was always complaining about his various aches and pains.*

2 great sorrow
- ADJ. **deep, dull, nagging**
- VERB + ACHE **feel, have** *She kept feeling the nagging ache in her heart.*
- PREP. **~in** *She could hardly speak for the ache in her heart.* **~inside, ~of** *the ache of loneliness inside him*

ache *verb*

- ADV. **badly, really** *My feet ached badly.* **| a bit** *My left foot ached a bit.*
- PREP. **from** *I still really ache from all that cycling yesterday.*
- PHRASES **ache all over** *Her head felt hot and she was aching all over.*

achieve *verb*

- VERB + ACHIEVE **fail to** *The present law has failed to achieve its objectives.* **| be designed to | be difficult to, be easy to, be impossible to, be possible to**

achievement *noun*

1 thing done successfully
- ADJ. **considerable, extraordinary, fine, great, important, impressive, major, no mean, notable, outstanding, real, remarkable, significant, tremendous** *This was no mean achievement for the government.* **| rare | unique | concrete, solid | crowning, main, proudest, supreme | lasting | modest | personal | architectural, artistic, cultural, economic, educational, engineering, literary, scientific, sporting, technical, technological**
- VERB + ACHIEVEMENT **be, constitute, represent** *This conference in itself constitutes a solid achievement.*
- PREP. **~in** *She was given a prize for her achievements in textile design.*
- PHRASES **quite an achievement** *To be offered a place at such a good university is quite an achievement.*

2 act of achieving sth
- ADJ. **high** *two years of consistently high achievement* **| positive | individual, personal | human** *He believes European civilization was the high point of human achievement.* **| academic, educational, intellectual** *Success should not be measured solely by educational achievement.*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of achievement** *Climbing the mountain gave him a tremendous sense of achievement.* **a lack of achievement, a level/standard of achievement, a record of achievement** *an impressive record of achievement*

acid *noun*

1 chemical compound
- ADJ. **concentrated, strong | dilute, weak | acetic, amino, carbolic, citric, folic, hydrochloric, lactic, nitric, nucleic, prussic, sulphuric, etc.**
- VERB + ACID **produce | neutralize** *You will need a special chemical to neutralize the acid.*
- ACID + VERB **burn sth** *The acid burned a hole in her overalls*

2 illegal drug
- VERB + ACID **drop** *smoking joints and dropping acid*
⇨ Note at DRUG

acknowledge *verb*

1 admit/recognize
- ADV. **fully | freely, readily | clearly, explicitly | effectively, implicitly, tacitly** *The peace settlement effectively acknowledged the country's independence.* **| formally, officially | openly, publicly** *He acknowledged publicly that he might have made a mistake.* **| privately | reluctantly, ruefully**
- VERB + ACKNOWLEDGE **fail to, refuse to | be forced to** *Mental illness can exist for years before families are forced to acknowledge the truth.*
- PHRASES **be generally/universally/widely acknowledged** *a truth that is universally acknowledged*

3 reply to letter
- ADV. **duly** *The company duly acknowledged receipt of the letter.* **| hereby** *I hereby acknowledge receipt of your letter of 25 July.*

acknowledgement *noun*

- ADJ. **brief | explicit | tacit | open, public | formal, official | belated | welcome**
- VERB + ACKNOWLEDGEMENT **amount to, be** *This amounted to an acknowledgement that she had been wrong.* **| get, receive** *I wrote to them but never got any acknowledgement.* **| grunt, nod, wave** *She merely nodded acknowledgement of his statement.*
- PREP. **in ~ (of)** *He raised his hand to her in acknowledgement.* **| ~from** *She is still waiting for some acknowledgement from her fellow academics.*
- PHRASES **with due acknowledgement** *He borrowed from a number of sources, with due acknowledgement.*

acne *noun*

- ADJ. **bad, terrible**
- VERB + ACNE **have, suffer from** *He had terrible acne when he was younger.* **| develop, get** *A lot of teenagers develop acne.* **| treat** *Doctors can treat acne with pills or creams.*
- ACNE + VERB **clear (up)** *Acne often clears up with a change in diet.*

acquaintance *noun*

1 person you know
- ADJ. **casual** *I bumped into a casual acquaintance in town.* **| new | close, old | business, mutual, personal, social**
- VERB + ACQUAINTANCE **bump into, meet | greet (sb as)** *He was greeted as an old acquaintance.*
- PHRASES **friends and acquaintances**

2 knowledge of sb/sth

- ADJ. **nodding, passing, slight** *a man with whom I had a passing acquaintance* | **brief, short** | **close, intimate**
- VERB + ACQUAINTANCE **make sb/sth's** (= become acquainted with sb/sth) *I first made his acquaintance in 1992.* | **strike up** *I first met Simon in 1998 and struck up an acquaintance with him.* | **renew**
- PREP. **of sb's ~** *He introduced me to a lady of his acquaintance.* | **~ with** *her acquaintance with modern French philosophy*
- PHRASES **have an acquaintance with** *They have little acquaintance with colloquial English.* **on close/closer acquaintance, on first acquaintance** *On first acquaintance she seemed a little odd*

acquainted *adj.*

1 familiar with sth

- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **well** | **fully**
- PREP. **with** *Are you fully acquainted with the facts?*

2 knowing sb personally

- VERBS **be** | **become, get** *I would like to get acquainted with her.* | **get sb** *Playing a game with the children is a good way of getting them acquainted.*
- ADV. **closely, intimately, well** | **personally**
- PREP. **with** *I am not personally acquainted with her.*

acquisition *noun*

1 thing you have obtained

- ADJ. **latest, new, recent**

2 act of obtaining sth

- ADJ. **data, language, property** *Language acquisition begins in the first months of a baby's life.*
- VERB + ACQUISITION **complete, make** *The company has just made another acquisition.*

acquittal *noun*

- VERB + ACQUITTAL **return** *The jury returned an acquittal after only seventeen minutes.* | **direct, order** *The trial judge had directed an acquittal.* | **gain (sb), obtain, secure** | **lead to, result in** *The trial resulted in an acquittal.* | **uphold** *The judge upheld their acquittal.*

acre *noun*

⇨ Note at MEASURE

act *noun*

1 thing that sb does

- ADJ. **charitable, kind** | **heroic** *a heroic act of bravery* | **aggressive, barbaric, hostile, provocative, terrorist, violent** | **appalling, despicable, outrageous, terrible** | **criminal, illegal, unlawful, wrongful** | **careless, foolish, impulsive** | **conscious, deliberate, positive, voluntary, wilful** | **private** *a private act of revenge* | **public** | **creative, dramatic, physical, political, symbolic** | **homosexual, sex/sexual** | **balancing, disappearing, juggling, vanishing** *The UN must perform a difficult balancing act between the two sides in the conflict.*
- VERB + ACT **commit** (*law*), **perform** *charged with committing an act of gross indecency*
- PREP. **in the ~ of** (= doing something) | **~ of** *For Jane, the act of writing was always difficult.*
- PHRASES **an act of faith, love, violence, will, worship, etc., catch sb in the act (of doing sth)** *He was caught in the act of stealing.* **the simple/very act of doing sth** *The very act of writing out your plan clarifies what you need to do.*

2 (also **Act**) law made by a government

- VERB + ACT **bring in, introduce, pass** *The Act was passed by a majority of 175 votes to 143.* | **amend** | **repeal** *The old Act has now been repealed.* | **breach, contravene** *The company had breached the 1994 Companies Act.*
- ACT + VERB **become law, come into force** *The new Children's Act will come into force next year.* | **contain sth, say sth, state sth** *The Act contains regulations for banks and building societies.*
- PREP. **under an/the ~** *He was charged under the Firearms Act of 1977.*

3 entertainment; entertainers

- ADJ. **class** (*informal*) (used for sb who does sth well) *Their new striker looks a class act.* | **double** *comedy double act French and Saunders* | **live** *their reputation as one of rock's most impressive live acts* | **main, support** *The main act will come on at about ten o'clock.* | **cabaret, circus, comedy, song-and-dance, stage, variety**
- VERB + ACT **do, perform** *He does a little song-and-dance act.* | **rehearse, work on**

4 division of a play

- ADJ. **opening** | **final, last** | **first, second, etc.**
- PREP. **in (the)~** *The king is killed in the opening act.*

5 insincere behaviour

- VERB + ACT **put on** *Don't take any notice—she's just putting on an act!*

act *verb*

1 do sth/behave

- ADV. **at once, immediately, promptly, quickly, swiftly** *The government must act promptly to change this law.* | **correctly, legally, properly** | **illegally, improperly, unconstitutionally, unlawfully, wrongly** | **reasonably, responsibly, sensibly, wisely** | **dishonestly, dishonourably, unreasonably** | **oddly, strangely, suspiciously** *Jenny has been acting rather strangely recently.* | **bravely** | **decisively** | **effectively** | **in good faith** *His defence was that he had acted in good faith.* | **in self defence** *The jury accepted that he had acted in self defence.* | **accordingly** *George knew about the letter and acted accordingly.*
- PREP. **against** *The government needs to act against the sale of these dangerous toys.* **for/on behalf of sb** *His solicitors are continuing to act for him.* **like** *Stop acting like a spoilt child.* ◇ *hormones in the brain that act like natural painkillers* **on** *Alcohol acts quickly on the brain.* **out of** *I suspected that he was acting out of malice.*
- PHRASES **act in sb's best interests** *We are all acting in the best interests of the children.*

2 perform in play/film

- ADV. **brilliantly, well** | **badly**

acting *noun*

- ADJ. **brilliant, excellent, good** | **bad, poor, wooden** *The film is spoiled by some very wooden acting.*
- VERB + ACTING **do** *I did quite a lot of acting when I was at college.*
- ACTING + NOUN **career, profession**

action *noun*

1 process of doing sth

- ADJ. **decisive, effective, firm, strong, vigorous** | **immediate, prompt, swift, urgent** | **drastic, emergency** *The situation calls for drastic action.* | **collective, concerted, joint, united** | **direct, positive** | **evasive** | **corrective, remedial** | **disciplinary, legal, military, political, strike** *Disciplinary action will be taken against students who cheat.* (see also **industrial action**)
- VERB + ACTION **take** | **call for** | **agree on** *The leaders have agreed on joint action to combat terrorism.* | **leap/spring/swing into** *The emergency services swung into action as soon as the disaster was reported.* | **carry out, perform, take** *Only the priest can perform these actions.* ◇ *We shall take whatever actions are necessary.* |

galvanize/prod/spur sb into *We have to galvanize people into action.* | **bring/put sth into** *We need to put these ideas into action.* | **keep/put sb/sth out of** *A fire has put the factory out of action.*

• PREP. **in ~** *I have not yet seen the machines in action.* **out of ~** *He is out of action following an ankle injury.* | **~ against** *against drug dealers* **~ on** *The government is taking strong action on refugees.*

• PHRASES **a course of action** *Is this the best course of action to follow?*

2 legal case

• ADJ. **court** | **civil, criminal, libel**

• VERB + ACTION **bring, take out** *Her husband brought a civil action against her after their divorce.*

• PREP. **~ against**

3 fighting

• ADJ. **enemy** *He was killed during enemy action.*

• VERB + ACTION **see** *I never saw action during the war.*

• PHRASES **killed/missing/wounded in action** *He was reported missing in action.*

active *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become** | **keep** (*informal*), **remain** *Try to keep active in the cold weather.*

• ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a highly active volcano* | **increasingly** | **fairly, quite, reasonably** | **equally** *a businessman who is equally active in politics* | **mentally, physically** *It's important to remain mentally active after retirement.* | **sexually** *A minority of children are sexually active before they are in their teens.* | **economically, politically** *When did you first become politically active?*

• PREP. **against** *drugs that are active against cancers* **in** *She has been active in local politics for some years.*

activity *noun*

• ADJ. **frantic, frenetic, heightened, increased, intense** | **criminal, illegal, subversive, terrorist** | **classroom, group** | **extra-curricular, leisure, leisure-time, outdoor, recreational, social** | **mental, physical, sexual** | **business, commercial, cultural, economic, industrial, intellectual, political, scientific** | **government, military, police, union** | **human** | **electrical, geological, volcanic**

• QUANT. **burst, flurry** *There was a flurry of activity as the film star appeared on the balcony.* | **level** *Newspapers report a higher level of activity in the foreign exchange markets.*

• VERB + ACTIVITY **do** *Here's an activity you can do with mixed ability classes.* | **be involved in, engage in, participate in, take part in, undertake** *We suspect he may be involved in illegal activities.* ◇ *Teachers here are not allowed to engage in any political activity.* | **stop, suspend, terminate** *The party's activities have been suspended.* | **stimulate** *It will only be possible to stimulate business activity with an injection of public funds.* | **curb** | **resume** | **buzz with** (only used when the activity is uncountable) *The room was buzzing with activity.*

• PHRASES **a hive of activity** (= a very busy place) *The classroom was a hive of activity as the children prepared for the concert.* **a sign of activity** *Police watched the house all day, but there was no sign of activity.*

actor, actress *noun*

• ADJ. **accomplished, born, brilliant, consummate, experienced, fine, good, great, talented, wonderful** *You're a born actor!* | **celebrated, famous, leading, principal, sought-after, star, veteran, well-known** | **successful** | **bit-part, struggling, unknown** | **out-of-work, unemployed** | **aspiring, would-be** | **frustrated** *Lecturers are often frustrated actors who enjoy performing before a live audience.* | **amateur** | **professional** | **character, classical, comedy/comic, Shakespearean, straight** | **film, Hollywood, screen, stage, television** | **child** | **supporting** *the award for best supporting actor*

• VERB + ACTOR, ACTRESS **audition, cast**

• ACTOR, ACTRESS + VERB **act** (**sth**), **perform** (**sth**), **play** (**sth**) *The same actor plays three different parts in the film.* | **rehearse** (**sth**) | **audition** *He was one of many actors who auditioned for the part of Hamlet.*

⇨ Note at JOB

acumen *noun*

• ADJ. **considerable, great** | **business, commercial, critical, financial, political**

• VERB + ACUMEN **demonstrate, show** *He had demonstrated considerable business acumen.*

acupuncture *noun*

• QUANT. **course** *My doctor recommended a course of acupuncture.*

• VERB + ACUPUNCTURE **have** *I'm having acupuncture for a bad back.* | **give sb, practise, use** *Acupuncture has been practised in China for thousands of years.*

• ACUPUNCTURE + NOUN **point** *Needles are inserted into specific acupuncture points in the body.* | **needle**

ad *noun*

• ADJ. **classified, full-page, small** *You can put your own small ads in local papers.* | **magazine, newspaper, radio, television/TV** | **detergent, job, tobacco, etc.**

• VERB + AD **place, put, take out** *She took out a full-page ad in a women's magazine.* | **publish, run, show** | **answer, reply to, respond to**

• AD + VERB **appear** *The ad appeared on all major channels.* | **say sth, show sth, state sth** | **feature sb/sth**

• AD + NOUN **campaign** | **agency**

• PREP. **in an/the ~** *A lot of claims are made in the ad.* | **~ for** *TV ads for cars*

adapt *verb*

1 change your behaviour

• ADV. **successfully, well** *The children have adapted well to the heat.* | **quickly** | **easily, readily** *The company can easily adapt to changing demand.* | **accordingly** *We need to assess the new situation and adapt accordingly.*

• VERB + ADAPT **be able/unable to, can/cannot** | **have to, must** | **need to**

• PREP. **to**

• PHRASES **the ability to adapt** *Some animals have a remarkable ability to adapt to changing environments.* **find it difficult/hard to adapt** *A lot of companies have found it hard to adapt to the new system.*

2 change a thing

• PREP. **for** *to adapt a book for television.* **from** *The radio play had been adapted from a novel.*

• PHRASES **specially adapted** *The classroom has been specially adapted to take wheelchairs.*

adaptable *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove** | **become** | **make sb/sth**

• ADV. **highly, very** *Many old market buildings have proved highly adaptable.* | **fairly, quite** | **easily, readily**

• PREP. **to** *The vehicles are large and not easily adaptable to new uses.*

adaptation *noun*

1 a change/the process of changing

• ADJ. **successful** | **special**

• VERB + ADAPTATION **make** *making adaptations to your home*

• ADAPTATION + VERB **occur** *Adaptations in plants occur over thousands of years.*

- PREP. **~for** *The Antarctic species have few special adaptations for polar life.* **~to** *adaptation to the workplace*
- PHRASES **a process of adaptation** *The process of adaptation to a new school is difficult for some children.*

2 film, TV programme
- ADJ. **film, screen, television/TV** *He specializes in screen adaptations of classic novels.*
- VERB + ADAPTATION **film, make, produce**

add *verb*

- ADV. **quickly, softly** *He added softly, 'I missed you.'*
- VERB + ADD **hasten to** *I hasten to add that I knew nothing of the fraud at the time.*

addict *noun*

- ADJ. **cocaine, drug, heroin, etc. | computer, television, etc.** *Many young boys become computer addicts.*

addicted *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become, get**
- ADV. **totally | hopelessly**
- PREP. **to** *She had become addicted to tranquillizers.*

addiction *noun*

- ADJ. **alcohol, cocaine, drug, etc.**
- VERB + ADDICTION **become, turn into** *A habit can easily become an addiction.* **| have | cause, lead to | feed** *He stole money from his parents to feed his addiction.* **| treat | beat, cure, overcome** *struggling to beat his heroin addiction*
- PREP. **~to** *She had an addiction to heroin.*

addictive *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *Cocaine is a highly addictive drug.*

addition *noun*

1 sth that is added
- ADJ. **useful, valuable, welcome, worthy | important, major, notable, significant | latest, new, recent**
- VERB + ADDITION **make** *We have made several additions to the collection recently.*
- PREP. **~to** *the latest addition to the family* (= a new baby)

2 process of adding numbers/amounts
- ADJ. **simple** *He worked it out through simple addition.*
- VERB + ADDITION **do** *She can do addition, but she hasn't learned subtraction yet.*

address *noun*

1 where you live/work
- ADJ. **home, private | business | contact** *Please leave a contact address.* **| forwarding, return** *There was no return address on the back of the envelope.* **| postal | full** *Please write your full postal address.* **| false, wrong** *He gave a false address to the police.* **| correct, right | useful | secret | fashionable** *Cheyne Walk was a very fashionable address.*
- VERB + ADDRESS **give, leave, write**
- ADDRESS + NOUN **book**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *I'm afraid there's nobody called Williams at this address.*
- PHRASES **a change of address** *Please inform us of any change of address.* **name and address, no fixed address** *a man of no fixed address*

2 speech
- ADJ. **short | inaugural, keynote, opening | public** *a public address system* **| radio, televised/television | election | presidential**
- VERB + ADDRESS **deliver, give** *The prime minister delivered the keynote address at the conference.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He gave details of the policy in an address to party members.* **| ~by** *an address by the Chancellor of the University* **~to** *a radio address to the nation*

address *verb*

1 write name and address
- ADV. **correctly, properly | personally** *The minister did not reply to my letter although I addressed it to him personally.*
- PREP. **to**
- PHRASES **a stamped addressed envelope** *Please send a stamped addressed envelope and we will send you a copy of our brochure.*

2 say sth to sb
- ADV. **by name, directly** *She did not address him by name.* ◇ *He never addressed her directly.*
- PREP. **to** *He addressed his comments to the chairman.*

3 deal with problem
- ADV. **directly, explicitly, specifically | fully | adequately** *These concerns were not adequately addressed in the report.* **| successfully**
- VERB + ADDRESS **seek to** *the problems we are seeking to address* **| fail to**
- PHRASES **address yourself to sth** *The authors of the book address themselves to the question of unemployment.*

adept *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very | quite**
- PREP. **at** *He was highly adept at avoiding trouble.*

adequate *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem | remain | consider sth, think sth** *The trains were not considered adequate for use on the modern railways.*
- ADV. **really, very | perfectly, quite, totally | more than** *The system is more than adequate to deal with any problems.* **| barely, hardly, less than, not entirely, not wholly** *The grants given to students are less than adequate.* **| more or less** *The amount of money we have been given is more or less adequate.* **| still | no longer**
- PREP. **for** *The old computer is still perfectly adequate for most tasks.*

adhere *verb*

- ADV. **properly** *The tiles may not adhere properly if you do not use the correct glue.*
- PREP. **to** *The glue would not adhere to the metal surface.*

PHRASAL VERB

adhere to
- ADV. **closely, firmly, rigidly, rigorously, scrupulously, strictly** *This principle must be strictly adhered to.* **| fully, properly** *The guidelines were not always fully adhered to.*

adherence *noun*

- ADJ. **blind, close, faithful, firm, rigid, slavish, strict**
- PREP. **~to** *strict adherence to a diet*

adjacent *adj.*

- VERBS **be, be situated, lie, stand** *The vineyards of Verzy lie adjacent to those of Verzenay.*
- ADJ. **directly, immediately** *There is a row of houses immediately adjacent to the factory.*
- PREP. **to** *The miller's house stands adjacent to the mill.*

adjective *noun*

• ADJ. **attributive, predicative** *Attributive adjectives precede the noun.* | **possessive** *'My' is a possessive adjective.*
• VERB + ADJECTIVE **apply** *'Enterprising' is not an adjective you would apply to him!*
• ADJECTIVE + VERB **describe** *adjectives describing texture* | **modify, qualify** *Adjectives qualify nouns.* | **follow** *Predicative adjectives follow the noun.* | **precede**

adjourn *verb*

• ADV. **indefinitely** *The trial was adjourned indefinitely.*
• PREP. **for** *At midday the meeting was adjourned for lunch.* **pending** *The inquest was adjourned pending further investigations.* **to** *Shall we adjourn to your office?*

adjust *verb*

1 change sth slightly
• ADV. **slightly** | **finely** *It is important to have equipment that can be finely adjusted.* | **automatically** | **carefully** | **accordingly** *Children are sensitive to disapproval and adjust their behaviour accordingly.* | **downwards, upwards** *This estimate may have to be adjusted downwards.*
• PREP. **for** *Salaries are adjusted for inflation.*

2 get used to new situation
• ADV. **quickly, rapidly** | **gradually, slowly**
• VERB + ADJUST **be difficult/hard to**
• VERB + ADJUST **need/take time to** *It may take a little time to adjust to the climate here.*
• VERB + ADJUST **try to**
• PREP. **to** *She will gradually adjust to her new role.*

adjustable *adj.*

• VERBS **be**
• ADV. **fully** *The straps are fully adjustable to fit any size.*

adjustment *noun*

1 small change made
• ADJ. **delicate, fine, minor, slight, small** | **important, major, significant** | **appropriate, necessary** | **automatic** | **financial**
• VERB + ADJUSTMENT **make** *The mechanic made the necessary adjustments to the engine.* | **need, require**
• PREP. **~ for** *a cut of 1.5% in real terms (after adjustment for inflation)* **~ in** *adjustments in the exchange rates* **~ to** *a few minor adjustments to the timetable*

2 process of changing
• ADJ. **successful** | **emotional, personal, social**
• PREP. **~ to** *The company's adjustment to the new markets has been successful.*
• PHRASES **a period of adjustment** *There was a long period of adjustment under the new boss.* **the process of adjustment** *The process of adjustment to life in another country can be very difficult.*

administer *verb*

• ADV. **effectively, efficiently** | **centrally, locally** *The legislation was to be centrally administered by the Board of Education.* | **jointly**
• VERB + ADMINISTER **be difficult/easy/simple to, be cheap/expensive to**

administration *noun*

1 organizing how sth is done
• ADJ. **effective, efficient, good** | **poor** *The college loses a lot of money through poor administration.* | **day-to-day, routine** | **general** | **office** | **bureaucratic** | **central** | **arts, business, educational, financial, justice, social** | **government, public**
• VERB + ADMINISTRATION **be in charge of, be responsible for**
• ADMINISTRATION + NOUN **costs**

2 people who manage an organization
• ADJ. **college, hospital, prison, etc.**

3 government
• ADJ. **colonial, federal, local, municipal, provincial, regional, state** | **civil, imperial, royal** | **Conservative, Labour, etc.** | **caretaker, interim, temporary** | **coalition, joint** | **minority** | **civilian, military**
• VERB + ADMINISTRATION **form** *On September 27 a new coalition administration was formed.*

4 giving a drug
• ADJ. **intravenous, oral** | **drug**

admirable *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **find sb/sth**
• ADV. **very** | **wholly** *She had acted in ways that he found wholly admirable.* | **truly**

admiral *noun*

• ADJ. **rear, vice**
⇨ Note at RANK

admiration *noun*

• ADJ. **deep, genuine, great, sincere, tremendous** | **frank, open** | **sneaking** *Inwardly, I had a sneaking admiration for them.* | **grudging, reluctant** | **mutual**
• VERB + ADMIRATION **be filled with, be full of, feel, have** *I'm full of admiration for him.* ◇ *I have the greatest admiration for the nurses.* | **express, show** *She wrote to him expressing her admiration.* | **compel, draw, fill sb with, gain, win** *a dignity that compels admiration* ◇ *The way he dealt with the crisis filled me with admiration.* ◇ *He gained the admiration of thousands of people.* | **be worthy of** *As a writer she is certainly worthy of admiration.* | **lose** *He never lost the admiration of his students.*
• PREP. **in ~** *She stared at him in open admiration.* **with ~** *gazing at her with admiration* | **~ for** *admiration for his work*
• PHRASES **a gasp of admiration** *The picture was greeted with gasps of admiration.* **have nothing but admiration for sb/sth** *I have nothing but admiration for the way she tackled those bullies.*

admire *verb*

1 have high opinion of sb/sth
• ADV. **deeply, enormously, greatly, hugely, particularly, really** *He admires you enormously.* | **rather** | **clearly, openly** | **secretly** *She secretly admired and envied him.*
• VERB + ADMIRE **have to** *You have to admire their dedication and commitment.*
• PREP. **about** *What do you most admire about her?* **for** *I rather admire him for his determination.*
• PHRASES **be generally/widely admired** *He is widely admired as a journalist.* **can't/couldn't help admiring/but admire** *I couldn't help but admire his determination.* **you can only admire sb/sth** *You can only admire her courage and determination.*

2 look at sth attractive
• VERB + ADMIRE **pause to, stop to** | **stand/step back to** *He stood back to admire his handiwork.*

admirer *noun*

• ADJ. **ardent, devoted, fervent, great, keen** | **secret** *Perhaps the flowers were sent by a secret admirer!*
• QUANT. **band, circle, host** *She was always surrounded by a circle of admirers.*
• VERB + ADMIRER **have** | **gain, win** *She soon gained admirers in England and France.*
• PHRASES **friends and admirers** *The funeral was attended by the singer's friends and admirers.*

admission *noun*

1 entrance

- ADJ. **free, half-price** | **emergency** *emergency admissions to hospital* | **cinema, hospital, school, university**
- VERB + ADMISSION **apply for, seek** *He's applied for admission to the local college.* | **gain** *to gain admission to university* | **grant sb** | **refuse sb**
- ADMISSION + NOUN **charge, fee, price** | **criteria, policy** | **procedure** | **rate** *hospital admission rates*
- PREP. **on ~** *On admission to hospital, you will be examined by a doctor.* | **~ to**

2 statement admitting sth

- ADJ. **clear, frank, full** *This is a clear admission that you were wrong.* | **tacit** | **grudging**
- VERB + ADMISSION **make**
- PREP. **~ of** *She has made no admission of any involvement in the plot.*
- PHRASES **an admission of defeat/failure/guilt/liability** *She saw his leaving the company as an admission of failure.* **by sb's own admission** *By his own admission he should never have driven so fast.*

admit *verb*

- ADV. **freely, readily** *He freely admitted that he had taken bribes.* | **frankly, honestly** | **openly** | **privately** *Some ministers admit privately that unemployment could continue to rise.* | **grudgingly, reluctantly** *In the end he'd done a good job, Caroline admitted grudgingly.*
- VERB + ADMIT **be forced to, have to, must** *I must admit that the results were disappointing.* | **refuse to** | **be honest enough to, be prepared to, be the first to, be willing to, dare (to), have the courage to** *He was honest enough to admit his mistake.* ◇ *She would be the first to admit that she is very difficult to work with.* ◇ *She dared not admit her fear.* | **be ashamed to, be embarrassed to, be loath to, be reluctant to, be unwilling to, hate to, not care to** *I hate to admit it, but I think he is right.* ◇ *He had caused her more pain than she cared to admit.*
- PREP. **to** *He admitted to feeling a bit tired.*
- PHRASES **I don't mind admitting** *I was scared and I don't mind admitting it.*

admittance *noun*

- VERB + ADMITTANCE **gain** *They were unable to gain admittance to the hall.* | **allow sb** | **deny sb, refuse sb**
- PREP. **~ to** *The ticket will allow you admittance to the theatre.*

adolescence *noun*

- ADJ. **early, late**
- VERB + ADOLESCENCE **reach**
- PREP. **during/in ~** *She developed the problem in early adolescence.*

adolescent *noun*

- ADJ. **young** | **spotty** | **awkward, disturbed**

adopt *verb*

1 child

- ADV. **legally** *The child has now been legally adopted.*
- PHRASES **have sb adopted** *She was forced to have her baby adopted.*

2 take and use sth

- ADV. **formally, officially** *The policy has not yet been formally adopted.*
- VERB + ADOPT **tend to** | **decide to** | **be forced to**
- PREP. **towards** *the policies employers adopt towards the labour force*

adoption *noun*

1 of child

- VERB + ADOPTION **offer sb for, place sb for, put sb up for** *She has decided to put the child up for adoption.* | **be available for** *When will the child be available for adoption?*
- ADOPTION + VERB **go through** *They were so happy when the adoption went through successfully.*
- ADOPTION + NOUN **agency**

2 taking/using sth

- ADJ. **general, widespread** | **formal** *The party announced the formal adoption of George Smith as their election candidate.*
- VERB + ADOPTION **recommend, urge** *The committee recommended the adoption of new safety procedures.*

adore *verb*

- ADV. **absolutely, simply** *She absolutely adores her grandchildren.* | **clearly, obviously**

adrenalin *noun*

- ADJ. **pure**
- QUANT. **burst, flow, rush, surge** *He felt a surge of pure adrenalin as he won the race.*
- VERB + ADRENALIN **feel**
- ADRENALIN + VERB **course, flow, pump, surge** *The adrenalin was coursing through his system.*
- ADRENALIN + NOUN **rush**
- PHRASES **get the adrenalin flowing/going** *We'll start with a bit of dancing to get the adrenalin going.*

adrift *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **come** *I nearly suffocated when the pipe of my breathing apparatus came adrift.* | **cast sb/sth, cut sb/sth, set sb/sth** *Their boat had been set adrift.*
- PREP. **from** (*figurative*) *She had been cut adrift from everything she had known.* **in** (*figurative*) *cast adrift in a vulgar, materialistic society*

adult *noun*

- ADJ. **young** *This book will definitely appeal to teenagers and young adults.* | **single** *The number of single adult households has doubled in the past 30 years.* | **consenting** *What consenting adults do in private is their own business.* | **responsible** *I simply can't believe that responsible adults allowed a child to wander the streets.*
- ADULT + NOUN **life** *She spent her entire adult life caring for others.* | **education, literacy** | **population**

adultery *noun*

- VERB + ADULTERY **be guilty of, commit** | **accuse sb of** | **admit**
- PREP. **~ with** *He admitted adultery with several women.*

adulthood *noun*

- ADJ. **early, young**
- VERB + ADULTHOOD **attain, reach** *children who lose their parents before reaching adulthood* | **make it to, survive into/to**
- PREP. **during/in ~** *His problems began in early adulthood.* **into ~** *Her childhood problems persisted into adulthood.* **towards ~** *a step towards adulthood*

advance *noun*

1 forward movement

- ADJ. **rapid** | **Allied, British, German, etc.**
- VERB + ADVANCE **make** *The regiment made an advance on the enemy lines.* | **order** *The general ordered an advance to the front line.* | **halt, resist, stop**

• PREP. **on ~** *the advance on Leningrad* **to ~, towards ~** *the Russian advance towards Berlin*

2 development

• ADJ. **big, considerable, dramatic, enormous, great, spectacular, substantial, tremendous | important, major, notable, remarkable, significant | rapid, steady** *rapid advances in science and technology* **| recent | economic, educational, medical, political, scientific, social, technical, technological | theoretical**

• VERB + ADVANCE **make** *We need more money if we are to make any further advances in this area of science.*

• PREP. **in ~** *two major advances in orthopaedic medicine* **on ~** *an advance on the existing techniques* **towards ~** *an advance towards a better understanding of God*

3 money

• ADJ. **large | cash**

• VERB + ADVANCES **give, pay** *The publishers have paid me an advance.* **| get, receive**

• PREP. **~ of** *an advance of £10 000* **~ on** *He was paid £5 000 as an advance on royalties.*

4 **advances** sexual

• ADJ. **amorous, sexual**

• VERB + ADVANCES **make** *He made amorous advances to one of his students.*

• PREP. **~ to**

advance *verb*

1 move forward

• ADV. **quickly, rapidly | cautiously, slowly**

• PREP. **from** *advancing from the south* **into** *The troops advanced into central Europe.* **on/upon** *The army advanced on the capital.* **towards** *He advanced towards me in aggressive style.*

2 develop

• ADV. **considerably, greatly, significantly | rapidly**

• PREP. **beyond** *Society needs to advance beyond prejudice and superstition.*

advanced *adj.*

1 modern and highly developed

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a highly advanced economy* **| fairly, quite, relatively | industrially, technically, technologically**

2 at a late stage of development

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **far, greatly, well** *The disease was too far advanced for doctors to operate.* **| fairly, quite | further**

advancement *noun*

• ADJ. **individual, personal | collective | career | social | material** *society's need for material advancement* **| economic, scientific, technical, technological**

• PREP. **~ in** *advancements in science* ◇ *advancement in the profession* **~ to** *her advancement to the position of Supervisor*

• PHRASES **an opportunity for advancement** *There are good opportunities for advancement within the company.*

advantage *noun*

1 thing that helps

• ADJ. **big, considerable, enormous, great, huge, overwhelming | clear, decided/decisive, definite, distinct, material, obvious, positive, real** *Breastfeeding offers a clear advantage to your baby.* **| key, main, major, important, significant | dubious | unfair** *The company has an unfair advantage over its competitors.* **| added, additional** *These computers have the added advantage of being cheap.* **| special | potential | comparative, relative | mutual** *The plan would be to our mutual advantage.* **| natural** *the natural advantages of countries with low labour costs* **| commercial, competitive, economic, educational, electoral, financial, military, personal, political, practical, psychological, social, strategic, tactical, technical, technological | cost, price, speed, tax**

• VERB + ADVANTAGE **have | gain, get** *He would gain considerable advantage from staying in that job.* **| bring (sb), give sb, offer (sb)** *Another qualification would give me a big advantage at job interviews.* **| press home** *The commanders were keen to press home their advantage with a further offensive in the north.* **| outweigh** *They argue that the possible risks attached to such vaccines vastly outweigh any advantages.*

• PREP. **to sb's ~** *It is to your advantage to delay things for as long as possible.* **| ~ in** *There may be some advantage in laying down a clearer procedure.* **~ over** *East coast resorts have the advantage over west coast ones.* **~ to** *the advantage to both countries of closer economic ties*

• PHRASES **to good advantage, to sb/sth's best advantage** *The bright lighting showed the jewels to their best advantage.*

2 take advantage of make use of

• ADJ. **full, maximum** *We took full advantage of the hotel facilities.*

advantageous *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove** *Membership of the union could prove advantageous.* **| become | make sth** *Lower fares make it advantageous to travel in winter.* **| find sth** *You may find it advantageous to wait a few weeks before replying.*

• ADV. **extremely, highly, very | fairly, quite | mutually** *This trade arrangement could be mutually advantageous* **| economically, financially | politically**

• PREP. **for** *This scheme could be advantageous for people on low incomes.* **to** *The new tax system is advantageous to higher-rate taxpayers.*

adventure *noun*

• ADJ. **big, exciting, great, wonderful | little** *We had a little adventure yesterday.* **| dangerous, perilous | hair-raising** *hair-raising adventure films* **| romantic | fantasy, foreign, historical, military, sexual**

• VERB + ADVENTURE **embark on, have | be looking for, want** *Those of you looking for adventure can shoot the rapids.* **| offer** *Perhaps the war offered adventure, travel, a use for his gifts.*

• ADVENTURE + NOUN **film, novel, story | holiday | playground**

• PHRASES **quite an adventure** (= very exciting) *Our trip to London was quite an adventure for the children.* **a sense/spirit of adventure** *The journey began cheerfully with a sense of adventure.*

adverb *noun*

• ADJ. **interrogative, sentence**

• ADVERB + VERB **modify sth, qualify sth** *Adverbs qualify verbs.*

• PHRASES **an adverb of degree/manner/place/time**

adversary *noun*

• ADJ. **fearsome, formidable | worthy** *The British considered him a worthy adversary.* **| old** *The two of them were old adversaries.*

adversity *noun*

• VERB + ADVERSITY **be faced with, meet with** *When faced with adversity she was never tempted to give up.* **| overcome, triumph over**

• PREP. **in ~** *patience in adversity*

• PHRASES **in the face of adversity** *courage in the face of adversity*

advert *noun*

• ADJ. **classified, front-page, full-page | magazine, newspaper, television/TV | chocolate, job, etc.**

• VERB + ADVERT **place, put, take out** *I put an advert in the local newspaper.* ◇ *She took out a full-page advert in a magazine.* | **carry, publish, run, show** *The paper ran our advert last week.* | **find, see, spot** *I saw the advert in 'The Times'.* | **answer, reply to, respond to**

• ADVERT + VERB **appear** *The advert appeared in 'The Guardian'.* | **say sth, show sth, state sth | feature sb/sth** *The advert featured a dolphin swimming around a goldfish bowl.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *A lot of claims are made in the advert.* | **~for** *an advert for jeans*

advertise *verb*

• ADV. **heavily** *These products have been advertised very heavily.* | **widely** *There are plans to advertise the job more widely.* | **locally, nationally**

• PREP. **for** *We are advertising for a babysitter.*

advertisement *noun*

• ADJ. **good | discreet | misleading | classified, front-page, full-page** *The classified advertisements are on page 25.* | **magazine, newspaper, press, television/TV | cigarette, job, etc.**

• VERB + ADVERTISEMENT **place, put, take out** *We placed advertisements in a number of national newspapers.* | **carry, display, publish, run, show** *Television and radio refused to carry advertisements for the record.* | **find, see, spot | answer, reply to, respond to**

• ADVERTISEMENT + VERB **appear | say sth, show sth, state sth | feature sb/sth**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *A lot of claims are made in the advertisement.* | **~for**

advice *noun*

• ADJ. **constructive, excellent, good, helpful, practical, sensible, sound, useful, valuable** *That's very sound advice.* | **bad, wrong** *I think my solicitor gave me the wrong advice.* | **clear | general | detailed | conflicting | confidential | impartial, independent | free | expert, professional, specialist | financial, legal, medical**

• QUANT. **bit, piece, word** *Can I give you a friendly word of advice?*

• VERB + ADVICE **give (sb), offer (sb), pass on, provide (sb with)** *I hope I can pass on some useful advice.* | **get, obtain, receive, take** *I think you need to take legal advice.* | **ask (for), go to sb for, seek, turn to sb for** *Go to your doctor and ask for advice.* ◇ *She asked her mother's advice.* | **accept, act on, follow, heed, listen to, take** *I wished that I had followed her advice.* | **ignore, reject**

• ADVICE + NOUN **centre** *The Local Authority runs an advice centre in the town.*

• PREP. **against sb's ~** *Permission was given against the advice of the planning officers.* **on sb's ~** *On the advice of his experts he bought another company.* | **~about** *advice about bringing up children* **~for** *Here is some advice for pregnant women.* **~on** *Can you give me some advice on where to buy good maps?* **~to** *My advice to you would be to wait a few months.*

advisable *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem | consider sth, deem sth, think sth** *We thought it advisable to seek police assistance.*

• ADV. **always** *It is always advisable to make a will.*

advise *verb*

1 tell sb what you think they should do

• ADV. **strenuously, strongly** *I strongly advise you not to do this.* | **badly, wrongly** *We were badly advised by our solicitor.* | **properly | legally**

• PREP. **about** *We can advise parents about education.* **against** *They advised me against sending cash by post.* **on** *We will be happy to advise on any financial matters.*

• PHRASES **be ill/well advised to do sth** *John would be ill advised to rely on their support.* ◇ *You would be better advised to consult an accountant.*

2 inform sb of sth

• VERB + ADVISE **be pleased to** *I am pleased to advise you that your application has been accepted.* | **regret to**

• PREP. **of**

• PHRASES **keep sb advised** *Please keep me advised of new developments in this case.*

adviser *noun*

• ADJ. **chief, lead, principal, senior, special** *the government's chief medical adviser* | **close, trusted** *The duke was the king's most trusted adviser.* | **personal | expert, professional | independent | government, presidential | business, careers, economic, environmental, financial, legal, medical, military, policy/political, public relations, scientific, security, technical**

• VERB + ADVISER **act as | appoint, appoint sb (as) | have** *Do you have a financial adviser?* | **consult (with), go to, see, speak to, talk to** *You ought to consult an independent legal adviser.*

• ADVISER + VERB **advise sb/sth**

• PREP. **~on** *an adviser on environmental issues* **~to** *She acts as an adviser to the president.*

advocate *noun*

1 sb who supports sth

• ADJ. **ardent, enthusiastic, firm, great, outspoken, powerful, staunch, strong** *She's a staunch advocate of free trade.* | **chief, leading, main, principal**

• PREP. **~for** *He is one of the leading advocates for a more modern style of worship.* **~of** *an advocate of pacifism*

2 lawyer

• ADJ. **defence**

⇨ Note at PROFESSIONAL (for verbs)

advocate *verb*

• ADV. **seriously, strongly** *Heart specialists strongly advocate low-cholesterol diets.*

• PHRASES **be widely advocated** *These policies have been widely advocated.*

aerial *noun*

• ADJ. **radio, television/TV**

• AERIAL + VERB **transmit sth | pick sth up, receive sth** *The aerial receives signals from the ground.*

aeroplane *noun*

• ADJ. **private | vintage | model, paper**

• VERB + AEROPLANE **fly in, go in, travel in** *I've never flown in an aeroplane.* | **fly, pilot**

• AEROPLANE + VERB **fly** *aeroplanes flying overhead* | **take off | come down, land | crash | carry sb/sth** *The aeroplane was carrying 350 people.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *flying in an aeroplane* **on a/the ~** *The president was never on the aeroplane at all.*

⇨ See PLANE

affair *noun*

1 event/situation

• ADJ. **whole** *She saw the whole affair as a great joke.* | **glittering, grand** *I knew that the wedding would be a grand affair.* | **sordid, sorry, squalid**

• VERB + AFFAIR **deal with, handle** *Many people have* *criticized the way the government handled the affair.* | **be involved in** | **investigate**

• PHRASES **sb's involvement in the affair** *He has tried to play down his involvement in the affair.* **a state of affairs** *How did this state of affairs come about?* **wash your hands of the affair** (= to refuse to be responsible for sth or involved in sth)

2 sexual relationship

• ADJ. **brief, casual** | **clandestine, secret** | **adulterous, extramarital** | **passionate, torrid** | **unhappy** | **love** *a torrid love affair*

• VERB + AFFAIR **carry on, conduct, have** *He's having an affair with a colleague.*

• AFFAIR + VERB **go on** *How long has the affair been going on?*

• PREP. **~ between** *It's the story of a secret affair between a married teacher and her teenage student.* **~ with** *an affair with a married man*

3 sth that concerns one person/small group

• ADJ. **family, personal, sb's own** *It's a family affair.*

• PHRASES **sb's affair** *What I do at the weekend is my affair.* **no affair of sb's** *That's no affair of yours.*

4 affairs important matters

• ADJ. **current** *a current affairs programme on television* | **private, public** | **domestic, home, internal, national** | **community, local** | **European, foreign, external, international, world** *the minister for foreign affairs* | **business, financial, legal** | **commercial, consumer, cultural, economic, environmental, military, political, religious, social**

• VERB + AFFAIRS **administer, arrange, attend to, conduct, manage, run** *I am trying to arrange my father's financial affairs.* | **settle, wind up** | **interfere in, meddle in**

• PHRASES **affairs of state** *The Cabinet will be discussing certain affairs of state.* **put/set your affairs in order** *I want to put my affairs in order before I die.* **a state of affairs** *the current state of affairs in schoools*

affect *verb*

1 influence

• ADV. **greatly, materially, radically, significantly, very much** | **barely, hardly, not unduly** *Sales did not seem unduly affected.* | **slightly** | **clearly** | **directly** | **indirectly** | **adversely, badly, seriously, severely**

• VERB + AFFECT **be likely to** *developments that are likely to affect the environment*

2 make sb sad/angry

• ADV. **deeply, profoundly** *Her death affected him deeply.*

affection *noun*

• ADJ. **deep, genuine, great, real, special, strong, warm** | **mutual**

• VERB + AFFECTION **feel, have, hold sb in, retain** *He was held in great affection by hundreds of students.* | **display, express, give sb, show (sb)** | **get, receive** | **crave, need, want** *He just wants a bit of affection.* | **gain, win** *She had tried hard to win his affection.* | **alienate**

• PREP. **with ~** *He'll be remembered with genuine affection.* | **~ for** *I have a deep affection for his mother.* **~ to/towards** *The teacher showed affection towards all her pupils.*

• PHRASES **a display of affection** *I don't go in for public displays of affection.* **a feeling of affection** *a strong feeling of affection,* **love and affection** *I yearn for the love and affection I once had.* **the object of sb's affections** *The object of his affections was a young opera singer.* **a sign of affection, a show of affection**

affinity *noun*

1 strong feeling that you like/understand sb/sth

• ADJ. **close, great, natural, real, special, strong** *I felt a great affinity with the people of the Highlands.* | **natural** *He has a natural affinity with numbers.*

• VERB + AFFINITY **feel, have, share** *It's important that you share an affinity with your husband.* | **display, show**

• PREP. **~ between** *an affinity between the two women* **~ for** *Many girls do show an affinity for craft skills.* **~ towards** *Jo feels a great affinity towards Pamela.* **~ with** *an affinity with animals*

2 similar quality in two or more people/things

• ADJ. **close, great**

• QUANT. **degree, level**

• VERB + AFFINITY **have** *A house design should have some affinity with the surrounding architecture.* | **show** *In his poems he showed some affinity with Coleridge.*

• PREP. **~ between** *There is a close affinity between these two species.* **~ with** *an affinity with earlier poets*

afflict *verb*

• ADV. **badly, severely**

• PHRASES **be afflicted with** *He's badly afflicted with a skin disorder.*

afford *verb*

• ADV. **easily, well** *She can well afford to pay for herself.* | **barely, hardly, ill, (only) just, not really** *an amount which we could ill afford to pay*

• VERB + AFFORD **be able/unable to, can/can't, could (not)** *I can't afford to eat in restaurants.*

affront *noun*

• ADJ. **personal**

• VERB + AFFRONT **cause** | **regard/see/take sth as** *He took his son's desertion as a personal affront.*

• PREP. **~ to** *This remark caused affront to many people.*

afloat *adj.*

1 floating on water

• VERBS **be** | **remain, stay** | **set sth** *The children set their new boat afloat on the lake.* | **keep sth** *struggling to keep the vessel afloat*

2 able to survive financially

• VERBS **keep, stay** *He is struggling to keep afloat after a series of emotional and health problems.* | **keep sth** *They had to sell their assets to keep the business afloat.*

afraid *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** | **become, grow** | **make sb** *What has made you so deeply afraid of your boss?*

• ADV. **deeply, desperately, extremely, horribly, mortally, really, terribly, very** | **almost** *She was tense, almost afraid to open the letter.* | **a bit, half, a little, rather, slightly** *He was half afraid to look at her.* | **just, simply** *You do know, don't you? You are just afraid to tell me.* | **genuinely** | **suddenly** *He stopped abruptly, suddenly afraid to say the words out loud.* | **physically**

• PREP. **for** *Roger was very afraid for her.* **of** *Charlie is afraid of marriage.*

• PHRASES **nothing to be afraid of** *Don't worry. There's nothing to be afraid of.*

aftermath *noun*

• ADJ. **immediate** *The president visited the region in the immediate aftermath of the disaster.*

• VERB + AFTERMATH **cope with, deal with** *How does a country cope with the aftermath of war?*

• PREP. **In the ~ of** *He first took office in the aftermath of the civil war.*

afternoon *noun*

• ADJ. **this, tomorrow, yesterday | Friday, Saturday, etc. | early, late | April, May, etc. | spring, summer, etc. | long** *the long sunny afternoons* **| golden, hot, sunny, warm | grey, rainy, wet**
• VERB + AFTERNOON **spend** *We spent the afternoon sitting by the pool.*
• AFTERNOON + VERB **progress, wear on** *As the afternoon wore on he began to look unhappy.*
• AFTERNOON + NOUN **tea** *Afternoon tea is served on the terrace.* **| light, sun** *The afternoon sun shone full on her.*
• PREP. **by ~, during the ~, in the ~, on Monday, etc. ~**
• PHRASES **an/the afternoon off** *You deserve an afternoon off.*

age *noun*

1 how old sb/sth is
• ADJ. **early, young** *He was sent away to school at an early age.* **| advanced, great, old** *He was still active even at the advanced age of 87.* ◇ *White hair is a sign of great age.* ◇ *She dreaded old age.* **| middle** *a pleasant woman in early middle age* **| childbearing, pensionable, retirement, school, school-leaving, voting, working** *children of school age*
• VERB + AGE **attain, get to, live to, reach** *When you get to my age you get a different perspective on life.* ◇ *She lived to the age of 75.* **| feel, look** *She was beginning to feel her age* (= feel that she was getting old). **| lower, raise** *The voting age was lowered from 21 to 18 years.*
• AGE + NOUN **group, range | limit**
• PREP. **at a/the ~** *At your age, I had already started work.* **between the ~s** *children between the ages of five and eleven* **by the ~** *He could read by the age of four.* **for sb's ~** *He's quite a big boy for his age.* **over the ~** *Twelve million people in Great Britain are over retirement age.* **under ~** *It is illegal to sell alcohol to children who are under age* (= not legally old enough). **under the ~** *It is illegal to sell alcohol to children under the age of 18.* **with ~** *A lot of wines improve with age.* **| ~ of** *He left school at the age of 18.*
• PHRASES **the age of consent** *The general age of consent for sexual activity is 16.* **sb's own age** *She needs a friend of her own age to play with.* **years of age** *He's 20 years of age.*
⇨ See OLD AGE

2 period of history
• ADJ. **another, different** *This exquisite little hotel seemed to belong to a different age.* **| Elizabethan, Victorian, etc. | Bronze, Ice, Stone | computer, modern, nuclear, etc. | golden** *the golden age of cinema*
• PREP. **during the ~** *He lived during the Elizabethan age.* **in a/the ~** *In an age when few women became politicians, her career was unusual.* **through the ~s** *an exhibition of spinning through the ages* **| ~ of** *the age of wireless communication*
• PHRASES **in this day and age** (= in the period we now live in) *Why dress so formally in this day and age?*

3 ages/an age a very long time
• VERB + AGE **spend, take** *It took an age for us all to get on the boat.*
• PHRASES **absolutely ages** *I've been sitting here for absolutely ages.* **ages ago** *Carlos left ages ago.* **for ages** *We had to wait for ages!*

age *verb*

• ADV. **considerably, greatly, a lot, really** *The shock has aged her considerably.* ◇ *My mother has really aged since she became ill.* **| a little** *He had put on weight and aged a little.* **| rapidly, suddenly** *a rapidly ageing population* **| prematurely | well** *This wine has not aged well.*

agency *noun*

• ADJ. **official | federal, government, public, state | UN | external, independent, outside | commercial, private | voluntary | international, local | multilateral | adoption, advertising, aid, dating, employment, estate, intelligence, marketing, news, press, recruitment, relief, research, travel, etc. | appropriate** *Details of the problem will be logged by the Help Desk staff who will then contact the appropriate agency.*
• PREP. **through an/the ~** *He managed to find a job through an agency.*
⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION (for verbs)

agenda *noun*

• ADJ. **agreed | clear** *A clear agenda will win votes in the next election.* **| five-point, etc.** *An 18-point agenda was drawn up for the meeting.* **| hidden, secret** *He accused the government of having a hidden agenda.* **| real | full | narrow** *The party has a rather narrow political agenda.* **| radical | public | domestic, international | economic, legislative, policy/political, research**
• VERB + AGENDA **have | agree on, draw up, establish, set** *The college needs to draw up an agenda for change.* **| follow** *We were following an agenda set by the students themselves.* **| add sth to, put sth on** *I will put this on the agenda for the next meeting.* **| leave sth off, remove sth from, take sth off** *The question of pay had been left off the agenda.* **| circulate** *A copy of the agenda is circulated to delegates a month before the conference.*
• AGENDA + NOUN **item**
• PREP. **on a/the ~** *Safety at work is on the agenda for next month's meeting.* **off the ~** (*figurative*) *An expensive holiday is definitely off the agenda this year* (= not sth we can consider). **| ~ for** *We have an agreed agenda for action.*
• PHRASES **firmly/high on the agenda** *In our company, quality is high on the agenda.* **an item/a point on the agenda, next on the agenda** *Next on the agenda is deciding where we're going to live.* **top of the agenda** *Improving trade between the two countries will be top of the agenda at the talks.*
⇨ Special page at MEETING

agent *noun*

1 works in an agency
• ADJ. **advertising, election, estate, insurance, land, letting, literary, managing, parliamentary, patent, press, publicity, travel | local** *The company has developed sales through local agents in key markets.*
• VERB + AGENT **employ, have, use** *I have an agent who deals with all my contracts.* **| appoint, engage, get (sb), hire** *If you want to get published, get yourself an agent!* **| act as | sack**
• PREP. **through an ~** *She got the work through an agent.* **| ~ for** *an agent for a shipping company*
⇨ Note at JOB

2 spy
• ADJ. **intelligence | enemy, foreign | federal, government | secret, undercover | double** *As a double agent, he worked for the Americans and the Russians.*
• VERB + AGENT **work as**

3 person/thing that has an effect
• ADJ. **chief, main, primary, prime, principal | effective | human | moral, rational | free** *I told him I couldn't stop him, he was a free agent.*
• PREP. **~ for** *The charity is an agent for social change.*
• PHRASES **an agent for/of change**

aggravate *verb*

• ADV. **greatly, seriously, severely** *Their negative reactions have greatly aggravated the situation.* | **further**

aggression *noun*

• ADJ. **extreme, intense** | **controlled, mild** | **naked, open** *a display of naked aggression* | **pent-up** *ways of releasing pent-up aggression* | **unprovoked** | **physical, verbal** | **human** | **external, foreign** *The president announced that the country would not tolerate foreign aggression.* | **American, British, etc.** | **military, police**
• QUANT. **act** *Acts of aggression against local shop owners should be reported to the police.*
• VERB + AGGRESSION **display, express, show** *the brutality and aggression displayed by the soldiers* | **channel, direct** *He managed to channel his aggression into sport.* | **control** | **release** | **encourage** *Do toy guns encourage aggression?*
• PREP. **~ against, ~ by** *Aggression by one nationality against another often leads to war.* **towards** *It showed no aggression towards other dogs.*

aggressive *adj.*

1 likely to fight/argue with other people
• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** | **make sb** *Watching violence on TV makes some children more aggressive.*
• ADV. **extremely, particularly, really, very** | **increasingly** | **quite, rather** | **openly** *Her mood became openly aggressive when his name was mentioned.*
• PREP. **towards** *He warned that his dog was aggressive towards strangers.*

2 behaving in a determined way
• VERBS **be**
• ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *the company's highly aggressive marketing techniques* | **fairly, somewhat**

aggrieved *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, sound**
• ADV. **deeply, much, very** | **rather, slightly, somewhat**
• PREP. **at** *James was rather aggrieved at Cameron.* **by** *The villagers felt deeply aggrieved by the closing of the railway station.*

agility *noun*

• ADJ. **considerable, great, surprising** | **mental, physical** *I admired his considerable mental agility.*
• VERB + AGILITY **have** | **show** *She shows great agility on the tennis court.*
• PREP. **with ~** *He jumped over the wall with surprising agility.*

agitated *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** *He sounded very agitated on the phone.* | **become, get, grow** | **make sb**
• ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, very** | **increasingly** | **a little, quite, rather, slightly** | **visibly**
• PREP. **about** *She's agitated about getting there on time.* **at** *She started to grow agitated at the sight of the spider.*
• PHRASES **in an agitated state** *By now he was in a very agitated state.*

agitation *noun*

1 worry/excitement
• ADJ. **acute, considerable, extreme, great**
• VERB + AGITATION **show** *trying not to show her agitation* | **conceal, hide** *He could not hide his agitation.*
• PREP. **in sb's ~** *He knocked his glass over in his agitation.* **with ~** *She was wriggling on the seat with agitation.*
• PHRASES **a feeling/state of agitation**

2 public protest
• ADJ. **growing** | **mass, popular, public** | **political**
• VERB + AGITATION **engage in, turn to** *The organization is turning to political agitation in order to achieve its aims.* | **stir up**
• PREP. **~ against** *There has been mass agitation against the president.* **~ for** *There is growing agitation for reform of local government.*

agony *noun*

• ADJ. **extreme, intense** | **absolute, pure, sheer** | **exquisite** | **mental, physical** | **death** *The little creature squirmed in its death agonies.*
• VERB + AGONY **endure, go through, suffer** *He endured agonies of loneliness and misery.* ◇ *They went through agony in the search for their missing relatives.* | **cause, inflict** *She was causing David a great deal of agony.* | **prolong** *Don't prolong the agony—just tell me the result!* | **groan in, scream in** | **be contorted in, writhe in** *His face was contorted in agony as he tried to lift himself out of the chair.*
• PREP. **in ~** *The soldier died in agony.* **in an ~ of** *She mumbled an apology in an agony of embarrassment.*
• PHRASES **a groan/scream of agony**

agree *verb*

1 share opinion
• ADV. **heartily, strongly, very much** *I very much agree with the prime minister.* | **absolutely, completely, entirely, fully, wholeheartedly** *I agree entirely with what you have said.* | **broadly, generally** *It is generally agreed that more funding is needed for education.* | **unanimously** | **gravely, lamely, meekly, soberly, tartly** *'That's true,' she agreed gravely.*
• VERB + AGREE **cannot** | **be inclined to** *I'm inclined to agree there's nothing we can do.*
• PREP. **about** *We don't always agree about everything.* **on/upon** *Are we all agreed on this?* **with** *Do you agree with me that the scheme won't work?*
• PHRASES **I couldn't agree more** *I couldn't agree more with what has just been said.* **I quite agree, I'm sure you will agree** *I'm sure you'll agree that this issue is vitally important to the success of the company.*

2 say yes
• ADV. **voluntarily** | **readily** *She suggested a walk in the open air and he readily agreed.* | **grudgingly, reluctantly** | **kindly** *Edith Harlow has kindly agreed to help.* | **tacitly** | **provisionally**
• PREP. **to** *He agreed to our proposals.*

3 decide
• ADV. **expressly** | **tacitly** | **verbally** | **provisionally** *It was provisionally agreed that 12 August was to be the date.*
• VERB + AGREE **be unable to, fail to** *The two countries were unable to agree on a common strategy.*
• PHRASES **agree to differ/disagree** *We must just agree to disagree on this point.* **(be) mutually agreed** *working towards mutually agreed goals* **internationally/nationally agreed** *nationally agreed guidelines*

agreeable *adj.*

1 pleasant
• VERBS **be, look, sound** *It all sounds very agreeable.* | **find sb/sth** *He finds her very agreeable.* | **make yourself** *She did her best to make herself agreeable.* **highly, most, particularly, very** *It was a most agreeable evening.* | **quite**
• ADV. **mutually** *We tried to negotiate a mutually agreeable solution.*

2 willing to accept/do sth
• VERBS **be**
• ADV. **perfectly, quite**
• PREP. **to** *He was perfectly agreeable to the idea.*

agreement *noun*

1 contract/decision

- ADJ. **draft** *The draft agreement will be available two weeks before the meeting.* | **formal, written** | **legal, (legally) binding** *The agreement will be legally binding.* | **informal, tacit, verbal** | **voluntary** | **definitive** | **bilateral, international, multilateral, national** | **ceasefire, credit, hire-purchase, peace, trade**
- VERB + AGREEMENT **negotiate, work towards** *We are working towards a formal ceasefire agreement.* | **conclude, enter into, reach, sign** *After hours of talks the government and the union have reached an agreement.* | **have** *We have an agreement to always tell each other the truth about everything.* | **be bound by** *We signed the agreement so we are now bound by it.* | **adhere to, honour, keep to, stick to** *You have not kept to our agreement.* | **break, go back on, renege on, violate** *Some employers reneged on agreements once the recession set in.*
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *a clause in the agreement* **under an/the ~** *Under the agreement, the farmer is not allowed to use this field.* | **~ between** *an agreement between the company and the unions* **~ on** *They signed two agreements on improving economic co-operation.* **~ with** *a trade agreement with China*
- PHRASES **breach of agreement** *He sued the company for breach of agreement.* **the terms of the agreement** *The terms of the agreement do not allow such exports.*

2 state of agreeing

- ADJ. **absolute, complete, full, total** | **broad, general, widespread** | **mutual**
- VERB + AGREEMENT **arrive at, come to, reach** *I am hopeful that we can come to an agreement.* ◇ *The two sides failed to reach agreement.* | **nod** *He nodded his agreement.* | **get** *We will need to get the agreement of the local council.*
- PREP. **by ~** *The separation is by mutual agreement.* **in ~** *I think we are all in agreement that prices should be kept low.* **in ~ with** *I am in agreement with you that she should be given more responsibilities.* **with ~** *With the agreement of all members of the club, we decided to organize a trip.* | **~ among** *There is agreement among teachers that changes need to be made.* **~ between** *As yet there is no agreement between the two sides.* **~ on** *As yet there is no agreement on policies.*

⇨ Special page at MEETING

agriculture *noun*

- ADJ. **modern** | **efficient** | **intensive** | **organic** | **sustainable** | **traditional** | **peasant** | **subsistence**
- VERB + AGRICULTURE **be employed in, be engaged in, work in** | **depend on** *50 % of the country's population depend on agriculture.*

aid *noun*

1 money, food, etc.

- ADJ. **emergency** | **humanitarian** | **cash, development, economic, financial, food, legal, medical, military, relief** *Legal aid* (= government money for legal advice) *is a fundamental part of our system of justice.* | **federal, government, state** | **bilateral, external, foreign, international, overseas** *The country relies on foreign aid*
- VERB + AID **appeal for, call for** *The country's president has appealed for international aid in the wake of the disaster.* | **extend, give (sb), grant (sb), provide (sb with), send (sb)** | **get, receive** | **depend on, rely on** | **promise** | **cut (off), suspend, withdraw, withhold** *The British government has now suspended humanitarian aid to the area.*
- AID + NOUN **agency, worker** | **budget, package, programme** *a $14 million aid package*

2 help

- VERB + AID **ask for, enlist** *We enlisted the aid of John and his family.* | **come/go to sb's** (= to help someone) *She screamed loudly and two people came to her aid.*
- PREP. **in ~ of** *collecting money in aid of charity* **with/without the ~ of** *She is now able to walk with the aid of a stick.*

3 person/thing that helps

- ADJ. **effective, essential, excellent, important, useful, valuable** | **classroom, teaching, training** | **audio-visual, computer, visual** | **hearing, walking** | **memory** | **buoyancy**
- PREP. **~ to** *essential aids to learning*

⇨ See FIRST AID

aide *noun*

- ADJ. **close, trusted** *one of the prime minister's closest aides* | **senior, top** | **junior** | **personal, presidential, royal**
- VERB + AIDE **act as, serve as, work as**
- PREP. **~ to** *He served as an aide to the former president.*

Aids *noun*

- ADJ. **full-blown** *Once you are infected you will—sooner or later—develop full-blown Aids.*
- QUANT. **case** *Six cases of Aids have been reported.*
- VERB + AIDS **have, suffer from** | **be/become infected with, contract, develop, get** | **die of** | **diagnose**
- AIDS + NOUN **patient, sufferer, victim** | **virus**
- PHRASES **the spread of Aids** *a worldwide campaign to prevent the spread of Aids*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

ailment *noun*

- ADJ. **common, minor, trivial** | **chronic, serious** | **childhood** | **physical** | **chest, heart, stomach**
- VERB + AILMENT **be afflicted with, get, have, suffer from** *I got all the usual childhood ailments.* | **cure, treat** | **cause**

aim *noun*

1 purpose/goal

- ADJ. **broad, general, overall** | **basic, central, essential, fundamental** | **chief, first, key, main, major, primary, prime, principal, overriding** | **sole** *His sole aim in life is to enjoy himself.* | **clear, explicit** *It is important to have a clear aim in view.* | **ambitious** | **high, worthy** *Simple truth must be the highest aim of any real enquiry.* | **limited, modest** | **legitimate** | **common** *I want to see a strong and united country in which people work together with common aims.* | **underlying** *Although the report covers many areas, its underlying aim is to ensure that another accident never happens.* | **immediate, initial** | **original** | **eventual, ultimate** *His ultimate aim was to force the prime minister to resign.* | **long-term, short-term** | **avowed, declared, express/expressed, stated** *The express aim of the treaty is to keep the whole region free from nuclear weapons.* | **war** | **policy/political, strategic**
- VERB + AIM **have** | **set youself** | **achieve, fulfil** *You will have to work hard to achieve your aim.* | **further, pursue** *They were intent on furthering their aims.* ◇ *The country is still pursuing its aim of joining the EU.*
- PREP. **with the ~ of** *She started the organization with the aim of helping local people.*
- PHRASES **aims and objectives** *What are the aims and objectives of this visit?*

2 pointing weapon, etc.

- ADJ. **careful** *I'll take more careful aim next time.* | **poor** *His aim was poor and he missed the target.*
- VERB + AIM **take**
- PREP. **~ at** *He took aim at the target and fired.*

aim *verb*

1 try/plan to achieve sth
- ADV. **directly**
- PREP. **at** *She's aiming at a scholarship this year.* ◇ *The initiative is aimed at helping young people.* **for** *He is aiming for a win in this race.*
- PHRASES **aim high** (= to attempt to achieve a lot) *a young man who is prepared to aim high*

2 intend sth for sb
- ADV. **clearly, directly, squarely | largely, mainly, mostly, primarily, principally | particularly, specifically**
- PHRASES **be aimed at** *educational courses aimed particularly at older people*

3 point/direct sth at sb
- ADV. **directly, straight | deliberately**
- PREP. **at** *She aimed the gun straight at the intruder.* **for** *Aim for his legs, not his body.*

air *noun*

1 gas/space
- ADJ. **hot, warm | chill, cold, cool, crisp | clean, clear, fresh, pure** *We need some fresh air in this stuffy room!* | **sweet** *The air was sweet with incense.* | **foul/foul-smelling, polluted, stale** *the polluted air of our cities* ◇ *the musty smell of stale air* | **damp, humid | dry | still** *Nothing moved in the still air.* | **thin** *It's difficult carrying such heavy loads in the thin air of the mountains.* | **thick** *The air was thick with cigarette smoke.* | **country, mountain, sea | evening, morning, night** *Music filled the night air.*
- QUANT. **blast, gust** *We felt a blast of cold air as she opened the door.* | **current** *warm currents of air* | **breath** *He drew in another breath of air.*
- VERB + AIR **breathe (in), gulp in, suck in** *Land crabs breathe air and cannot swim.* ◇ *She gulped in the fresh mountain air.* | **fight for, gasp for** *She was gasping for air as she ran out of the burning house.* | **smell, sniff** *The dog stretched and sniffed the air.* | **fill, hang in** *The tang of some wild herb hung in the air.*
- AIR + VERB **blow, rise, waft** *The cool night air wafted in the open windows.*
- AIR + NOUN **pollution | quality** *equipment to monitor air quality* | **pressure | current**
- PREP. **in/into the ~** *I kicked the ball high into the air.* **through the ~** *Spicy smells wafted through the air.*
- PHRASES **in the open air** (= outside) *The market is held in the open air.*

2 for planes
- AIR + NOUN **travel | fare | traffic** *We are cleared by Air Traffic Control to taxi and take off.* | **crash, disaster | attack, strike** *Three buildings were bombed last night in an air strike on the city.*
- PREP. **by ~** (= by plane) *It only takes three hours by air.* **from the ~** *The hideout is clearly visible from the air.*
- PHRASES **in mid-air** *The two planes collided in mid air.*

3 impression
- VERB + AIR **have, retain** *You have an air of authority.* | **add, bring, give (sth)** *A stone balcony gives the building an air of elegance.*
- PREP. **with an/the ~** *He leaned towards Melissa with an air of great confidentiality.* | **~ of**

air *verb*
- ADV. **in public, openly, publicly** *The issues were openly aired and discussed by the group.*

aircraft *noun*
- ADJ. **fixed-wing, jet, light, low-flying, microlight, supersonic** *attacks by helicopters and fixed-wing aircraft* | **cargo, civil/civilian, commercial, passenger, private | combat, fighter, military, reconnaissance, surveillance, transport | enemy | burning, crashed, damaged, stricken | model** *His passion is making model aircraft.*
- VERB + AIRCRAFT **fly, pilot** *The aircraft was flown by a young American pilot.* | **land | crash** *The pilot overshot the runway and crashed his aircraft.* | **shoot down** *To be an ace you had to shoot down five enemy aircraft.*
- AIRCRAFT + VERB **fly | take off** *The aircraft is due to take off at midnight.* | **land | taxi** *The aircraft taxied along the runway.* | **crash | carry sth | attack sth, bomb sth**
- AIRCRAFT + NOUN **industry | production | manufacturer | engine, parts | engineer | hangar | noise** *He claimed that aircraft noise was the worst form of air pollution in London.* | **wreckage**

airline *noun*
- ADJ. **big, large, major | domestic, international, national | commercial, private, state/state-owned** *He operates a private airline.* | **charter, scheduled** *Prices on charter airlines are usually lower.*
- VERB + AIRLINE **operate, run**
- AIRLINE + VERB **fly, operate** *The airline operates mainly between Florida and Puerto Rico.*
- AIRLINE + NOUN **business, company, industry | flight, service** *All scheduled airline services will be affected by the strike.* | **employee, operator, pilot | passenger | reservation, ticket**

airport *noun*
- ADJ. **big, large, major | small | busy | domestic, international, local, regional | civilian, military**
- VERB + AIRPORT **depart from, fly from, take off from** *We will fly from Chicago's O'Hare airport.* | **arrive at, land at, touch down at** *The plane touched down at Glasgow airport just before midday.* | **pass through, use**
- AIRPORT + NOUN **building, terminal | lounge | security | hotel**
- PREP. **at an/the ~** *waiting at the airport*

airspace *noun*
- ADJ. **controlled, restricted | British, French, etc.**
- VERB + AIRSPACE **cross (into), drift into, enter, fly into, stray into, violate** *The jet had crossed into Russian airspace.* | **fly out of, pass out of | open** *They have decided to open their airspace to commercial aircraft.* | **close**
- PREP. **in ~** *The glider was in Dutch airspace.* **out of ~** *They were now out of controlled airspace.*
- PHRASES **a violation of airspace** *The president said that all future violations of our airspace would result in serious consequences.*

ajar *adj.*
- VERBS **be, stand** *The office door stood ajar.* | **leave sth** *She had left the kitchen door slightly ajar.*
- ADV. **slightly**

akin *adj.* **akin to sth**
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **closely** *This game is closely akin to rugby.* | **somewhat** *A balalaika is an instrument somewhat akin to a guitar.*
- PHRASES **something akin to sth** *She was wearing something akin to a pineapple on her head.*

alarm *noun*

1 fear/worry
- ADJ. **considerable, great | growing | sudden | public** *There is growing public alarm at this increase in crime.* | **unnecessary**

• VERB + ALARM **cause, create, provoke** *The head teacher's policies have provoked alarm among parents.* | **express, register** *Many people have expressed alarm at the plans.* ◇ *His face registered no alarm at all when I told him the news.*

• PREP. **in ~** *He shouted out in alarm.* **to sb's ~** *To her parents' alarm, she announced that she intended to travel the world.* **with ~** *The news has been greeted with alarm.* | **~ about/at/over** *There has been considerable alarm about the new proposals.*

• PHRASES **alarm and despondency** (*often humorous*) *He loves spreading alarm and despondency.* **cause for alarm** *I see no cause for alarm, as she often arrives late.*

2 warning of danger

• ADJ. **false** *The fire service was called out, but it was a false alarm.*

• VERB + ALARM **give, raise, sound** *The guard raised the alarm when he discovered that six prisoners had escaped.*

• ALARM + NOUN **call** *Many birds give alarm calls to warn of danger.*

3 device

• ADJ. **fire, smoke** | **burglar, intruder, security** | **car** | **personal, rape** *Lizzie was carrying a rape alarm but it was out of reach in her handbag.* | **radio**

• VERB + ALARM **set** *I set my alarm for 6.30.* | **activate, set off, trigger** *Unfortunately any little noise can set off the alarm.* | **switch off, turn off** | **be fitted with** *The fire brigade recommends that every house is fitted with a smoke alarm.* | **fit, install** | **test**

• ALARM + VERB **go off, ring, sound** *The alarm went off at 7 o'clock.* ◇ *Suddenly the alarm sounded and they all had to leave the building.*

• ALARM + NOUN **bell, clock, signal, system** | **call** *Book an alarm call if you need to make an early start.*

alarmed *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get, grow** *She began to grow alarmed when she realized how late it was.*

• ADV. **extremely, greatly, seriously, thoroughly, very** | **increasingly** | **faintly, a little, quite, rather, slightly** | **(not) unduly** *The government is not unduly alarmed by these figures.*

• PREP. **at** *She was alarmed at the prospect of travelling alone.* **by** *I was slightly alarmed by what Susan told me.*

• PHRASES **nothing to be alarmed about** *The doctors have decided to keep him in hospital overnight but there is nothing to be alarmed about.*

alarming *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **find sth** *I find the prospect of being without work extremely alarming.*

• ADV. **extremely, particularly, very** | **faintly, a little, quite, rather, slightly**

album *noun*

1 book

• ADJ. **family, wedding** | **photo/photograph, stamp**

• PREP. **in an/the ~** *I keep the photographs in an album.*

2 CD/cassette/record

• ADJ. **best-selling, good, great** *Their best-selling album has won three awards.* | **debut, first** | **double** | **live** | **solo** *It's the singer's first solo album.* | **compilation**

• VERB + ALBUM **make, produce, record** *The singer recorded her second album in Los Angeles.* | **put out, release** *She has not put out a new album this year.*

• ALBUM + VERB **come out** *His latest album comes out in the spring.*

• ALBUM + NOUN **chart**

alcohol *noun*

• ADJ. **excess/excessive** *the dangers of excessive alcohol* | **pure** *Is it possible for cars to run on pure alcohol?*

• QUANT. **drop, unit** *You need to be careful how many units of alcohol you drink in a week.* | **level** *The driver had more than the permitted level of alcohol in his blood.*

• VERB + ALCOHOL **consume, drink** | **avoid, keep off, not touch, stay off** *I haven't touched a drop of alcohol for three weeks.* | **abuse** (*formal*) *Most drinkers do not abuse alcohol at all.*

• ALCOHOL + NOUN **content, level** *It can take a long time for blood alcohol levels to fall.* | **consumption, intake, use** | **abuse, addiction, misuse** | **problem** *People can find it hard to admit they have an alcohol problem.*

• PHRASES **low alcohol** (= containing very little alcohol) *a low alcohol beer*

alcoholic *noun*

• ADJ. **chronic** | **reformed**

• VERB + ALCOHOLIC **become, turn into** *Howe was turning into an alcoholic because of the stress of his job.*

• ALCOHOLIC + VERB **dry out, recover** *I don't think an alcoholic can dry out without proper medical help.*

alcoholism *noun*

• ADJ. **chronic**

• VERB + ALCOHOLISM **suffer from** *Three people in the family suffer from alcoholism.* | **combat, treat**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

ale *noun*

• ADJ. **fine, good** *This pub specializes in fine ales.* | **real** (= made and stored in the traditional way), **traditional** *the growth in demand for real ale* | **brown, light, pale** | **strong**

• QUANT. **pint** | **barrel, bottle, can, glass, tankard** *Fresh barrels of ale were brought up from the cellar.*

• VERB + ALE **down** (*informal*), **drink, sip** *He drank several pints of ale.* | **brew, make**

• ALE + NOUN **house**

alert *noun*

• ADJ. **red** *His sudden disappearance triggered a red alert among his friends.* | **nationwide** | **bomb, fire, flood, pollution, security** *A security alert was issued after four men escaped from the prison.*

• VERB + ALERT **issue, put out, raise, sound** *They rang the church bells to sound the alert and the villagers then fled.* | **spark, trigger** | **call off** *The alert was called off when it was found that the bomb was not live.*

• ALERT + VERB **go out** *A nationwide alert went out for three escaped prisoners.*

• PREP. **on the ~** | **~ for** *You should always be on the alert for anyone who looks suspicious.*

• PHRASES **be on full alert** *The security forces are now on full alert.* **keep/place/put sb on full alert** *Thousands of police were put on full alert at all main roads leading to the city.* **a state of alert** *The army was yesterday placed on a state of alert in case of more riots.*

alert *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, seem** | **become** | **remain, stay** | **keep sb** *The machine should help to keep the pilot alert.*

• ADV. **very** | **fully** | **immediately, instantly, suddenly** *There was a noise outside and he was suddenly alert.* | **always, constantly** | **mentally** *He was as mentally alert as a man half his age.*

• PREP. **to** *Climbers need to be alert to possible dangers.*

A level *noun*

• ADJ. **mock** *I did all right in my mock A levels and then failed the real exams.*

• VERB + A LEVEL **do, sit, take** *She's doing her A levels this year.* | **retake** | **do well in, pass** | **do badly in, fail, flunk** | **have** *She has four A levels.* | **prepare for, revise for** *He can't come out—he's revising for his A levels.*

• A LEVEL + NOUN **course** | **exam** | **preparation, revision** | **paper, questions** | **grades, results**

• PREP. **in your ~s** *What grades did you get in your A levels?* | **~ in** *He's got A levels in maths and history.*

alias *noun*

• VERB + ALIAS **adopt, use** *After her escape from prison, Claire Potter adopted the alias Margaret Smith.*

• PREP. **under an/the ~** (= using another name) *Five years ago he had lived in France under an alias.*

alibi *noun*

• ADJ. **cast-iron, good, perfect, solid** *She was in the office all of Wednesday and so has a cast-iron alibi.* | **false**

• VERB + ALIBI **have** | **establish, provide, supply** *The videotape would have been useful to establish alibis for the defendants.*

• PREP. **~ for** *The accused was not able to provide an alibi for the evening.*

alien *noun*

• ADJ. **enemy** *During the war, he was imprisoned as an enemy alien.* | **illegal** *Illegal aliens are usually deported to their country of origin.* | **undesirable** | **resident**

alien *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, seem** | **become** | **find sth** *It was an act of violence that she found alien and shocking.*

• ADV. **very** | **completely, entirely, totally, utterly** | **quite, somewhat** | **essentially** *living in an essentially alien culture*

• PREP. **to** *They spoke a language totally alien to him.*

alienation *noun*

• ADJ. **growing**

• PREP. **~ from** *his growing alienation from his family*

• PHRASES **a feeling/sense of alienation** *There is a growing feeling of alienation among young unemployed people.*

alight *adj.*

1 burning

• VERBS **be** | **catch** *His clothing caught alight.* | **remain, stay** *hoping that the fire would remain alight overnight* | **set sth** *The building had been set alight by the killer.* | **keep sth** *The fires had to be kept alight each night.*

• ADV. **well** *The fire should be well alight by now.*

2 excited

• VERBS **be**

• PHRASES **alight with excitement/laughter/pleasure** *The children's eyes were alight with excitement.*

align *verb*

• ADV. **accurately, correctly, properly** | **fully** | **roughly** | **horizontally, vertically**

• PREP. **along** *He argued that important historical sites were aligned along straight lines of mystic energy.* **with** *This pillar is roughly aligned with the others.*

PHRASAL VERB

align yourself with sb/sth

• ADV. **closely, firmly** *The group does not want to align itself too closely with the government.*

alignment *noun*

1 arrangement in correct position

• ADJ. **correct**

• VERB + ALIGNMENT **bring sth into**

• PREP. **in ~ (with sth)** *The door needs to be in alignment with the frame before you start work on it.* **out of ~** *A few of the tiles were clearly out of alignment.*

2 political support

• ADJ. **close** | **military, political**

• VERB + ALIGNMENT **establish, form** | **maintain**

• PREP. **~ between** *It is very difficult to maintain the alignment between the two countries since the trade dispute.* **~ with** *Britain formed a close alignment with Egypt in the last century.*

alike *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, seem**

• ADV. **remarkably, very (much)** | **exactly** *Though John and Andrew look exactly alike, they act quite differently.*

• PREP. **in** *The two towns are very much alike in size and population.*

alive *adj.*

1 living

• VERBS **be, seem** | **remain, stay** *Lost and so far from other human life, he faced a desperate struggle to stay alive.* | **keep sb** *Doctors fought to keep her alive.* | **be buried, be burnt**

• ADV. **very much** *The old rascal is still very much alive.* | **barely, only half** *For four days he seemed barely alive.* | **still** *I wasn't sure if he was still alive.*

• PHRASES **alive and kicking** *My mother is still alive and kicking.* **alive and well** *At any moment he may turn up alive and well.* **dead or alive** *The police are desperate to catch this man dead or alive.* **lucky to be alive** *It was a very narrow escape and we are lucky to be alive.* **more dead than alive** *Poor child, she looks more dead than alive.*

2 full of life

• VERBS **be, feel, seem** *I feel really alive in the country!* | **come** *The city comes alive at night.* | **bring sb/sth** *The wealth of detail in his book really brings it alive.*

• ADV. **really, truly, very** | **fully** | **intensely** | **only half** *She realized that she had only been half alive for the last four years.* | **suddenly** *His eyes were suddenly alive with excitement.*

• PREP. **with** *The hall was alive with the sound of voices.*

3 continuing to exist

• VERBS **be** | **remain** | **keep sth** *The people try to keep the old traditions alive.*

• ADV. **very much** *The old customs are still very much alive in this region.*

• PHRASES **alive and well** *The art of debate is alive and well in our schools.*

4 aware of sth

• VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**

• ADV. **very much** | **keenly**

• PREP. **to** *He remained keenly alive to the dangers.*

allegation *noun*

• ADJ. **damaging, serious** | **false, unfounded, unproven, unsubstantiated, untrue, wild** | **true** *The defendants in the libel case maintain that their allegations are true.* | **fresh, further, new** *There have been fresh allegations of atrocities.* | **widespread** | **corruption**

• VERB + ALLEGATION **make, publish** | **retract, withdraw** *I advise you to withdraw your allegation before I contact my lawyer.* | **be at the centre of, be confronted with, face** *the school at the centre of these allegations* | **deny, dismiss, dispute, reject** | **answer, counter, refute** *The minister has the right to answer specific allegations.* ◇ *He* *will need to counter allegations that he accepted money from criminals.* | **prove, support** *The committee found no evidence to support allegations of smuggling.* | **disprove** *It took over two months to disprove the allegation.* | **give rise to, lead to, prompt, provoke** *The sudden collapse of the business led to allegations of corrupt deals.* | **examine, investigate, look into, probe** (used in journalism) *The governor of the prison is investigating allegations that a prisoner was attacked and beaten by a prison warder.*

• PREP. **amid/amidst ~** *He has resigned amid corruption allegations.* | **~ about/concerning** *allegations about the president's private life* **~ against** *He has made certain allegations against the company.*

allegiance *noun*

• ADJ. **full, strong** *We will give our full allegiance to the party and everything it believes in.* | **traditional** | **changing, shifting** *It is hard to keep up with the changing allegiances between the various political parties.* | **political, religious** | **class, party**

• VERB + ALLEGIANCE **give, owe** *He owed his allegiance to the organization that had given him all his opportunities.* | **pledge, swear** *The rebels now have to swear allegiance to the queen they hate.* | **abandon** *Many people have abandoned their traditional party allegiances.* | **change, shift, switch, transfer** | **claim** *The various splinter groups all claim allegiance to the true spirit of the movement.* | **claim, command** *Catholicism claims allegiance from more than 80% of the population.* | **retain** *The union needs to retain the allegiance of all its members for the strike to succeed.*

• PREP. **to ~** *He is now very rich but his allegiance to his working-class origins is still strong.*

• PHRASES **an oath of allegiance** *Every day the schoolchildren pledge an oath of allegiance to their country.*

allergy *noun*

• ADJ. **food**

• VERB + ALLERGY **have, suffer from** | **develop** | **cause** *Hair and feathers can cause allergies.*

• ALLERGY + NOUN **sufferer**

• PREP. **~ to** *He developed an allergy to pollen.*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

alleviate *verb*

• ADV. **considerably, greatly** *These problems have been greatly alleviated by the passing of the new Act.* | **partly, somewhat**

• VERB + ALLEVIATE **be designed to, help (to)** *These measures are designed to alleviate the situation.* | **do little/nothing to** *Her words did little to alleviate his fears.*

alley *noun*

• ADJ. **dark** | **little, narrow** *a maze of narrow alleys* | **stinking** *I don't want to be left for dead in some stinking alley.* | **cobbled** | **back, side**

• ALLEY + VERB **lead onto sth, lead to sth** *The alley leads to the village square.*

• ALLEY + NOUN **cat**

• PREP. **along an/the ~** *I walked back along a side alley.* **down an/the ~** *a bookshop down a little alley* **in an/the ~** *They had cornered him in an alley.* **through an/the ~** *She wandered through the back alleys.* **up an/the ~**

alliance *noun*

• ADJ. **broad** *The organization is a broad alliance of many different groups.* | **grand** | **close** | **powerful, strong** | **fragile, loose, uneasy** *a loose alliance of opposition groups* ◇ *The uneasy alliance between such different people just cannot last.* | **shifting** *the shifting alliances among the various political groups* | **formal, informal** | **strategic, working** | **unholy** *an unholy alliance between the Fascists and the Communists* | **unlikely** | **temporary** | **global** | **defensive, military** | **electoral, political** | **class** | **marriage**

• VERB + ALLIANCE **have** *They have alliances with other companies.* | **build (up), create, enter into, forge, form, make, strike up** *The government has tried to forge alliances with environmentalists.* | **cement** *To cement the alliance with England, Charles married Margaret, sister of the English king.* | **break off** *They broke off the alliance with Sparta.* | **seek**

• PREP. **in ~ with** *The government, in alliance with the army, has decided to ban all public meetings for a month.* | **~ against** *old alliances against enemies that no longer exist* **~ between** *an alliance between Britain and France* **~ with** *an alliance with Germany*

allied *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **closely** | **loosely** *an offensive by seven loosely allied guerrilla groups*

• PREP. **to** *His decision to move to London is closely allied to his ambition to become manager of the company.* **with** *The party is allied with the Communists.*

allocate *verb*

• ADV. **efficiently** *Local authorities have to learn to allocate resources efficiently.* | **randomly**

• PREP. **for** *More money should be allocated for famine relief.* **to** *More funds will now be allocated to charitable organizations.*

allocation *noun*

1 process of giving sth out

• ADJ. **efficient, inefficient** | **random** | **budget, grant, housing, land, resource, time**

• VERB + ALLOCATION **make** *The allocation must be made according to a strict set of criteria.*

2 amount given to sb

• ADJ. **big, generous, large** | **modest** | **total**

• VERB + ALLOCATION **give** *The school gave them a generous allocation of money with which to purchase books.* | **get, receive** | **increase, up** *The charity is trying to get its allocation upped for next year.* | **cut, reduce**

allowance *noun*

1 amount of sth that you are allowed

• ADJ. **baggage, holiday**

• VERB + ALLOWANCE **be entitled to, get, have** *I get four weeks' holiday allowance a year.*

2 amount of money sb receives regularly

• ADJ. **generous, large** | **meagre, small** | **annual, daily, monthly, weekly** | **child, disability, family, housing, living, travel**

• VERB + ALLOWANCE **be entitled to** *You may be entitled to a housing allowance if you are in a low-paid job.* | **get, receive** | **give sb, grant** *The company gives me a travel allowance.*

• PREP. **~ for** *The weekly allowance for each child is £15.*

allusion *noun*

• ADJ. **clear, direct** | **indirect, veiled** *She was made uncomfortable by his veiled allusion to the previous night.* | **classical, cultural, literary**

• VERB + ALLUSION **make** *He makes several allusions to these events in his latest book.*

• PREP. **~ to**

ally *noun*

• ADJ. **great, important, powerful, strong** | **close**

Charles remained a close ally of the French king. | **loyal, reliable, staunch, trusted** | **natural, useful, valuable** | **old, traditional** *Portugal is a traditional ally of England.* | **erstwhile, former** | **wartime** | **potential** | **European, NATO, Western, etc.** | **political**

- VERB + ALLY **have** *Jane felt that she had an ally.* | **find, gain, get** | **lose**
- PREP. **~against** *He now had an ally against his boss.*
- PHRASES **find/have an ally in sb** *She had found an ally in her old teacher.* **a friend and ally** *a friend and ally of the president*

almond *noun*

- ADJ. **whole** | **blanched, flaked, ground** *biscuits made with ground almonds* | **sugared, toasted** | **bitter**
- ALMOND + NOUN **essence, oil, paste** | **blossom, tree**

alone *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, sit, stand** *These islands are too small to stand alone as independent states.* | **leave sb, let sb** *Don't touch me! Leave me alone!*
- ADV. **very much** *I felt vulnerable and very much alone.* | **all, completely, entirely, quite** *Carol felt all alone in the world.* ◇ *He felt lost and completely alone.* | **together** *Finally the two of us were alone together.*
- PREP. **with** *She did not want to be alone with him.*

aloof *adj.*

1 not friendly

- VERBS **be, look, seem** | **find sb** *Some people find her aloof and unfriendly.*
- ADV. **a bit, a little, somewhat**

2 not involved in sth

- VERBS **hold (yourself), keep (yourself), remain, stand** *Some thought that Britain was standing aloof from Europe.* | **keep sb** *There were many things that had kept her aloof and apart from the crowd.*
- ADV. **largely**
- PREP. **from** *He has remained largely aloof from the hurly-burly of parliamentary politics.*

alphabet *noun*

- ADJ. **Arabic, Cyrillic, Greek, Hebrew, Latin, Roman** | **phonetic, runic**
- VERB + ALPHABET **know, learn**
- PREP. **in the ~** *How many letters are there in the Greek alphabet?*
- PHRASES **the letters of the alphabet**

altar *noun*

- ADJ. **high, main** | **makeshift, portable** | **sacrificial**
- VERB + ALTAR **approach, go up to** *The bride approached the altar.*
- ALTAR + NOUN **boy** | **cloth, frontal** | **rail** | **table**
- PREP. **at an/the ~** *Helen and Tony knelt at the altar.* **before an/the ~** *He lay prostrate before the high altar.* **on an/the ~** *He placed the candles on the altar.*

alter *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, dramatically, drastically, fundamentally, greatly, radically, significantly, substantially** *He had not altered greatly in the last ten years.* | **slightly**
- PHRASES **not alter the fact that** *Unemployment has come down slightly but this does not alter the fact that it is still a major problem.*

alteration *noun*

- ADJ. **dramatic, extensive, fundamental, major, material, radical, significant, substantial** | **minor, slight, small, subtle**
- VERB + ALTERATION **make** | **need, require** *The leaflets require no alteration from year to year.*
- PREP. **~ in** *There will be no alteration in corporation tax.* **~ to** *We will have to make a slight alteration to the plans.*

alternative *noun*

- ADJ. **attractive, constructive, effective, good, radical, useful** | **acceptable, available, credible, possible, practical, real, realistic, reasonable, satisfactory, serious, suitable, viable** *Is there a viable alternative to prison?* | **clear, obvious** | **cheap, healthy, interesting, safe** *a healthier alternative to fizzy drinks*
- VERB + ALTERNATIVE **have** *We have two alternatives.* | **offer, provide** *His idea seemed to offer a possible alternative.* | **seek** *seeking alternatives to nuclear power* | **find** *We'll have to find an alternative.*
- PREP. **~ for** *There is no alternative for those with no car of their own.* **~ to** *Is there an alternative to surgery for this complaint?*
- PHRASES **have little/no alternative (but to)** *She had no alternative but to do as he said.* **leave sb with no alternative (but to)** *He was left with no alternative but to hobble to the nearest telephone box.*

altitude *noun*

- ADJ. **great, high** | **low** | **cruising** *The plane took off and climbed to cruising altitude.*
- VERB + ALTITUDE **cruise at, fly at, maintain** *The aircraft maintained an altitude of 28 000 feet.* | **reach, rise to** *The aviators reported the columns of smoke rising to an altitude of 2 000 feet.* | **gain** | **lose** *The plane suddenly started to lose altitude.*
- ALTITUDE + NOUN **sickness**
- PREP. **at an/the ~** *No trees will grow at that altitude.*

amateur *noun*

1 sb who does sport, etc. for pleasure, not money

- ADJ. **competent, gifted, talented, top** | **enthusiastic, keen** | **gentleman** *International affairs today are no longer for gentleman amateurs.*

2 sb who is not very good at sth

- ADJ. **rank, real** *The others had been skiing since they could walk and made her look a rank amateur.*

amaze *verb*

- ADV. **really** *His skill as a dancer really amazed me.*
- VERB + AMAZE **never cease to** *It never ceases to amaze me what some people will do for money.*

amazed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound, stand**
- ADV. **absolutely, quite, totally, utterly** | **mildly** | **genuinely** | **always, constantly, continually** | **still** *I am still amazed that she won first prize.*
- PREP. **at** *Frances was amazed at her sudden strength.* **by** *I was totally amazed by the brilliance of her paintings.*
- PHRASES **never cease to be amazed** *I never cease to be amazed at the way people hurt one another.*

amazement *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, sheer, utter** | **mock** *She raised her eyebrows in mock amazement.*
- VERB + AMAZEMENT **express**
- PREP. **in ~** *He stared at the animal in amazement.* **to sb's ~** *To her amazement she got the job.* **with ~** *Laura looked around her with amazement.* | **~ at** *He expressed amazement at being left out of the match.*

amazing *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, sound, taste | find sb/sth**
- ADV. **just, pretty, really, truly** *He remembered our names from ten years ago— isn't that just amazing? ◇ a truly amazing achievement* | **absolutely, most, quite** *I saw the most amazing film yesterday!*

ambassador *noun*

- ADJ. **former | British, French, etc.**
- VERB + AMBASSADOR **serve as | appoint, appoint sb (as), make sb** *She's been appointed British ambassador to the UN.* | **send** *The King sent an ambassador to Paris.* | **recall, withdraw** *The US ambassador was recalled to Washington in protest.* | **expel**
- PREP. **~ in** *the Israeli ambassador in London* **~ to** *He served as ambassador to Syria.*

ambiguity *noun*

- ADJ. **possible, potential | moral, sexual**
- QUANT. **degree, element** *There is a degree of ambiguity in this statement.*
- VERB + AMBIGUITY **lead to** *Incorrect choice of words leads to ambiguity for the reader.* | **avoid** *The document has been carefully written to avoid ambiguity.* | **reduce | remove, resolve** *They had to change some of the wording in the document to resolve the ambiguity.*
- AMBIGUITY + VERB **arise, occur** *Ambiguity arises when students' spoken English is very limited.*
- PREP. **~ about** *There will always be some ambiguity about what actually happened.* **~ in** *There was some ambiguity in what he said.*
- PHRASES **a source of ambiguity**

ambiguous *adj.*

- VERBS **be | remain | make sth, render sth** *The paragraph is rendered ambiguous by the writer's careless use of pronouns.*
- ADV. **highly, very | rather, slightly, somewhat | deliberately, intentionally** *I suspected that he was being deliberately ambiguous.*

ambition *noun*

1 strong desire to be successful

- ADJ. **driving, great, naked** *She's a woman of driving ambition.* | **personal**
- VERB + AMBITION **have** *He's got little ambition.* | **lack**
- AMBITION + VERB **burn** *Ambition burned within her.*

2 sth you very much want to have/do

- ADJ. **big, burning, driving, great, high, main, overriding, ultimate** *Her biggest ambition was to climb Everest.* | **lifelong, life's, longstanding** *At last he had realized his life's ambition.* | **modest | personal | secret | youthful | frustrated, thwarted, unfulfilled** *This is a tale of jealousy and thwarted ambitions.* | **career, imperial/imperialist, literary, political, presidential, social, sporting, territorial**
- VERB + AMBITION **cherish, harbour, have, nurture** *He had only one ambition in life.* | **abandon, give up | achieve, fulfil, realize | limit, restrain | frustrate, thwart** *He felt great resentment at having his ambition frustrated.*

ambitious *adj.*

1 determined to be successful

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *He is a highly ambitious politician.* | **socially**
- PREP. **for** *She is very ambitious for her four children.*

2 difficult to achieve

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, hugely, very | rather | overly** *Phases 2 and 3 seem overly ambitious.*

ambivalence *noun*

- VERB + AMBIVALENCE **feel | express, show** *The document expressed some ambivalence over the doctrine of predestination.*
- PREP. **with ~** *She viewed her daughter's education with ambivalence.* | **~ about** *their ambivalence about supporting the government* **~ over** *his ambivalence over money* **~ towards** *She felt a certain ambivalence towards him.*

ambivalent *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, sound | remain**
- ADV. **deeply, highly, very** *The party's position on nuclear weapons is deeply ambivalent.* | **fairly, rather, somewhat**
- PREP. **about** *He feels rather ambivalent about his role as teacher.*

ambulance *noun*

- ADJ. **air**
- VERB + AMBULANCE **call (for), get, phone/ring/telephone for, send for** *Quick, call an ambulance!* | **drive**
- AMBULANCE + VERB **be on its way** *Don't worry—the ambulance is on its way.* | **arrive, come** *When the ambulance came, I carried her out.*
- AMBULANCE + NOUN **service | crew, staff | driver, man, worker | station**
- PREP. **by ~** *She was rushed to hospital by air ambulance.* **in an/the ~** *He went in the ambulance with Lizzy.*

ambush *noun*

- VERB + AMBUSH **lay, prepare, set up** *The soldiers set up an ambush on the road.* | **lie in, wait in** *The soldiers lay in ambush for the enemy troops.* | **carry out, stage** *They staged an ambush on an army patrol.* | **be caught in, run into, walk into** *We ran into an ambush in the valley.*
- AMBUSH + VERB **take place**
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *Twelve men were killed in the ambush.* | **~ on** *an ambush on an army patrol*

amenable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | find sb/sth**
- ADV. **highly, most, very** *The manager was most amenable: nothing was too much trouble.*
- PREP. **to** *You should find him amenable to reasonable arguments.*

amendment *noun*

- ADJ. **important, major, significant** *A major amendment was introduced into the legislation.* | **minor, slight, small | draft, proposed | detailed | constitutional**
- VERB + AMENDMENT **introduce, make | draft** *The committee does not adequately consult others when drafting amendments.* | **move, propose, put forward, suggest, table** *He moved an amendment limiting capital punishment to certain very serious crimes.* | **withdraw** *She withdrew her amendment and left the meeting.* | **accept, adopt, approve, carry, pass, ratify, support, vote for** *Parliament accepted the amendment and the bill was passed. ◇ On a free vote, the amendment was carried by 292 votes to 246.* | **oppose, reject | be subject to** *The programme is subject to amendment.*
- PREP. **without ~** *The new clause was accepted without amendment.* | **~ to** *an amendment to the Clean Water Act*

amenity *noun*

- ADJ. **excellent | basic | local** *The campsite is close to all local amenities.* | **modern** *a hotel with all modern*

amenities | **public** *The building will be developed as a public amenity.* | **recreational, social**
- VERB + AMENITY **have** *The hotel has excellent amenities.* | **offer, provide** *They will provide an amenity for local residents.* | **lack** *The flats lacked basic amenities.*

amiable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**
- ADV. **very** | **perfectly** *a perfectly amiable young man* | **enough, quite** *I've only met Jane once but she seems amiable enough.*

ammunition *noun*

- ADJ. **live** | **blank**
- QUANT. **round**
- VERB + AMMUNITION **carry, have** | **issue** *They issued live ammunition to the troops.* | **fire, use** | **run out of** *A few of the jeeps had run out of ammunition.*
- AMMUNITION + NOUN **dump, store**

amnesty *noun*

- ADJ. **general, political**
- VERB + AMNESTY **give sb, grant, offer** *The government granted an amnesty to all political prisoners.* | **announce, declare**
- PREP. **under an/the ~** *He was released from prison under an amnesty.* | **~ for** *They announced a general amnesty for crimes committed during the war.*

amount *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, copious ~s, enormous, huge, large, massive, significant, substantial, tremendous, vast** *a considerable amount of money* ◇ *He drank copious amounts of beer.* | **disproportionate, excessive, inordinate** | **increasing** | **fair** *There was a fair amount of traffic on the roads.* | **limited, minute, moderate, negligible, small, tiny** | **full, total** *You must pay back the full amount of money that you owe.* | **maximum, minimum** *He aimed to cause the maximum amount of embarrassment.* | **exact** | **equal, equivalent** *Mix the colours in equal amounts.* ◇ *an amount equivalent to 0.3% per annum* | **varying** *Tap water also contains varying amounts of rust and grit.*
- VERB + AMOUNT **double, increase** | **decrease, limit, reduce** *They want to limit the amount of cash available.*
- AMOUNT + VERB **double, increase** *The amount of reclaimed glass used in industry has doubled in the last five years.* | **decrease, fall** *The average amount of pocket money received by teenagers fell to £4 a week this year.*
- PREP. **~ of**

amuse *verb*

- ADV. **greatly** *Her discomfort amused him greatly.*
- VERB + AMUSE **seem to** *The thought of me on the stage seemed to amuse him.* | **try to**
- PREP. **with** *He amused us with his stories.*

amused *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** *She looked faintly amused.* | **keep sb** *He kept the children amused for hours.*
- ADV. **greatly, highly, much, vastly, very** *He was much amused by all this talk.* | **not at all** *I was not at all amused to find they had eaten all the cake.* | **faintly, a little, mildly, quite, rather, slightly** | **clearly** *Mr Stopes was clearly amused by the confusion.* | **genuinely** | **wryly** | **quietly**
- PREP. **at** *Tony was very amused at the story.* **by** *She seemed greatly amused by his jokes.*

amusement *noun*

1 feeling of wanting to laugh
- ADJ. **great, much** | **faint, mild** | **quiet** | **ironic, sardonic, wry** | **genuine, real**
- QUANT. **gleam, glimmer** | **hint, note, trace** *There was a note of amusement in her voice.*
- VERB + AMUSEMENT **afford sb, cause, provide** *I am happy to have afforded you amusement.* | **derive, find, get** *He seemed to be deriving amusement from her discomfort.* | **show** | **conceal, hide**
- AMUSEMENT + VERB **show** *A glimmer of amusement showed in her eyes.*
- PREP. **for (sb's) ~** *What do you do for amusement round here?* ◇ *The play was written for the amusement of the other students.* **in ~** *Her wide mouth twitched in amusement.* **to sb's ~** *Much to their amusement, I couldn't get the door open.* **with ~** *She chuckled with amusement.*
- PHRASES **a source of amusement** *His son was a constant source of amusement to him.*

2 sth that makes time pass pleasantly
- ADJ. **popular** *She disapproved of popular amusements such as fairs.*
- AMUSEMENT + NOUN **arcade, park** | **machine**

amusing *adj.*

- VERBS **be, sound** | **find sth**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, most, really, very** | **mildly, quite, rather, vaguely** | **not remotely** *There is nothing even remotely amusing about the situation.*

anaesthetic *noun*

- ADJ. **general, local**
- VERB + ANAESTHETIC **administer, give sb** *He was given a general anaesthetic.* | **use** *The operation was completed in ten minutes using only local anaesthetic.* | **have** *She had a local anaesthetic to stop the pain.* | **come round from, recover from**
- ANAESTHETIC + VERB **take effect, work** *The anaesthetic began to take effect.* | **wear off**
- PREP. **under (an/the) ~** *It would have to be done under anaesthetic.* **without (an/the) ~** *They had to operate without anaesthetic.*

analogous *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **closely** | **directly, exactly** | **broadly, roughly** *The two situations are roughly analogous.*
- PREP. **to** *The company is in a position closely analogous to that of its main rival.* **with** *The national debt is analogous with private debt.*

analogy *noun*

- ADJ. **appropriate, apt, useful** | **close, obvious** *A close analogy with the art of singing can be made.*
- VERB + ANALOGY **draw, make, suggest, use** *She drew an analogy between running the economy and a housewife's weekly budget.*
- ANALOGY + VERB **fit, hold** *The Wild West analogy does not fit here.*
- PREP. **by ~ (to/with)** *We can understand this theory by analogy with human beings.* | **~ between** *She suggested an analogy between the human heart and a pump.* **~ for** *The computer is a useful analogy for the brain.* **~ with** *There is an analogy here with the way an engine works.*
- PHRASES **argument by/from analogy** *Argument from analogy is not always valid.*

analyse *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, critically, fully, in depth/detail, pains-**

takingly, scientifically, systematically *The results must be analysed in detail.*
- VERB + ANALYSE **attempt to, try to | be difficult to, be impossible to** *The precise reasons for the disaster are difficult to analyse.* | **be possible to**

analysis *noun*

- ADJ. **careful, close, comprehensive, detailed, in-depth, systematic, thorough | brief | objective, subjective | comparative, critical, qualitative, quantitative, statistical, theoretical | cost-benefit, discourse, economic, financial, historical, linguistic, strategic, structural, stylistic**
- VERB + ANALYSIS **carry out, do, make, perform** *They carried out an in-depth analysis of the results.* | **give** *He gave a brief analysis of the present economic situation.*
- ANALYSIS + VERB **indicate sth, show sth** *Analysis of the wine showed that it contained dangerous additives.*
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *In his analysis of the novel he discusses various aspects of the author's own life.*
- PHRASES **in the final/last analysis** *In the final analysis, the king's power was greater than the bishop's.*

analyst *noun*

- ADJ. **leading** *a leading business analyst* | **business, computer, data, financial, industry, investment, market, military, policy, political, retail, systems**
- PREP. **~ of** *He was a shrewd analyst of players' strengths and weaknesses.*

⇨ Note at JOB

anarchy *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, total | near, virtual** *The high number of strikes resulted in near anarchy.*
- VERB + ANARCHY **cause, create, lead to, result in** *The defeat of the government would lead to anarchy.* | **collapse into, descend into, slide into** *If prices rise the country could slide into anarchy.* | **prevent, save sth from** *The parties joined forces to save the country from anarchy.*

anatomy *noun*

- ADJ. **animal, human | female, male | comparative**
- VERB + ANATOMY **study** *studying human anatomy*
- PHRASES **part of your anatomy** (*often humorous*) *He was hit in a rather sensitive part of his anatomy.*

ancestor *noun*

- ADJ. **direct** *The builder of the manor house is a direct ancestor of the present owner.* | **immediate | distant, early, remote** *a distant ancestor of mine* ◇ *Our earliest ancestors lived in a world fraught with danger.* | **common** *The two species share a common ancestor.* | **illustrious** *The Romans built these monuments to glorify their illustrious ancestors.*
- VERB + ANCESTOR **be descended from, have, share** *A lot of the people there are descended from a common ancestor.* | **trace** *He can trace his ancestors back to the reign of James the First.*

ancestry *noun*

- ADJ. **common** *The two species have developed from a common ancestry.* | **Celtic, French, etc.**
- VERB + ANCESTRY **claim, have, share** *She shares a common ancestry with the Queen.* | **trace** *We can trace our ancestry back to the 16th century.*
- ANCESTRY + VERB **date/go/reach/stretch back to** *The firm claims an ancestry dating back to 1727.*
- PHRASES **be of French, German, etc. ancestry** *He is of Chinese ancestry.*

anchor *noun*

- VERB + ANCHOR **cast, drop** *The ship cast anchor in the bay.* ◇ *We dropped anchor off a small island.* | **raise, weigh** *We raised the anchor and set sail.* ◇ *We weighed anchor next morning and sailed south.* | **lie at, ride at** *The ship lay at anchor in the bay.*
- PREP. **at ~** *the ships at anchor in the harbour*

anchor *verb*

- ADV. **firmly, securely** *The crane is securely anchored at two points.*
- PREP. **to** *The ropes were anchored to the rocks.*

ancient *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look**
- ADV. **extremely, incredibly, very | quite | positively** *The man looked positively ancient.*

anecdote *noun*

- ADJ. **amusing, entertaining, humorous | personal**
- VERB + ANECDOTE **relate, tell** *She is good at telling anecdotes.* | **exchange, swap**
- PREP. **~ about** *We swapped anecdotes about old friends.*

angel *noun*

1 heavenly being
- ADJ. **guardian | avenging** *He liked to think of himself as an avenging angel fighting for justice.* | **fallen** *a book about anti-heroes and fallen angels*
- QUANT. **choir, host** *a whole host of angels*

2 good/kind person
- ADJ. **absolute, little** *Deborah's children are little angels.* | **ministering** *I could hardly see Lisa in the role of ministering angel.*
- PHRASES **be an angel** *Be an angel and make the tea, will you?* **be no angel** *I'm no angel, but I wouldn't dream of doing a thing like that.*

anger *noun*

- ADJ. **bitter, black, cold, deep, fierce, great, savage, terrible | genuine, real | growing, mounting, rising** *mounting anger among teachers and parents* | **sudden | righteous** *Catherine appeared in the doorway, shaking with righteous anger.* | **controlled, pent-up, suppressed | popular, public | widespread**
- QUANT. **burst, fit, outburst** *He slammed the door in a fit of anger.*
- VERB + ANGER **be filled with, feel, shake with, tremble with** *His eyes were filled with anger.* ◇ *She was trembling with anger.* | **express, give vent to, show, vent, voice** *Children give vent to their anger in various ways.* | **control, hide, suppress** *It is not healthy to suppress your anger.* | **arouse, cause, fill sb with, fuel, provoke, stir up** *His words fuelled her anger.* | **change to, give way to, turn to** *His joy soon turned to anger when he heard the full story.*
- ANGER + VERB **boil over/up, bubble up, build up, flare (up), grow, mount, rise, well up** *Henry stood up, his anger rising.* | **abate, drain, evaporate, fade, subside** *The anger drained from his face.* ◇ *Her anger subsided as quickly as it had flared up.*
- PREP. **in ~** *He raised his voice in anger.* **with ~** *His face was flushed with anger.* | **~ against** *her feelings of anger against the murderer* **~ at** *I felt a sudden anger at his suggestion.* **~ over** *There is much anger over plans to close the hospital.* **~ towards** *her anger towards her parents*
- PHRASES **a feeling of anger, in a moment of anger** *He had walked out in a moment of anger.*

anger *verb*

- ADV. **deeply, greatly** *I was deeply angered by their lack of concern.*

angle *noun*

1 space between lines/surfaces that meet

- ADJ. **acute, oblique, obtuse, right | external, internal | narrow, sharp, steep** *The plane started descending at a steep angle.* | **shallow, slight, wide** *The instrument has a wide angle of view.* | **awkward, crazy, odd** *The calf's legs were splayed out at awkward angles.*
- VERB + ANGLE **form, make** *The vertical line makes an angle with the horizontal line.* | **draw** *Draw a 130° angle in your exercise books.* | **adjust, alter, change** *She adjusted the angle of the legs to make the table stand more firmly.* | **increase, reduce | measure | move through, rotate through** *Each joint can move through an angle of 90°.*
- PREP. **at an ~** *The tower of Pisa leans at an angle.* | **~ between** *the angle between these two lines*

2 position

- ADJ. **unusual** *The subject is considered from an unusual angle.* | **camera** *The variety of camera angles gives her photographs interest.* | **viewing**
- VERB + ANGLE **consider/look at/see/view sth from** *We've looked at the problem from every possible angle but still haven't found a solution.* ◇ *Seeing herself from this angle, she realized how like her mother she looked.*
- PHRASES **angle of vision** *How you see the building depends on your angle of vision.* **from all angles** *You need to consider the question from all angles.*

angry *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow | remain, stay** *She couldn't stay angry with him for long.* | **make sb** *That man makes me angry every time I see him.*
- ADV. **bitterly, extremely, furiously, really, terribly, very, wildly | a bit, pretty, quite, rather | increasingly | coldly | suddenly**
- PREP. **about** *Local people are very angry about the plans to close another hospital.* **at** *The members of the group are frustrated and angry at their lack of power.* **with** *I got terribly angry with him.*

anguish *noun*

- ADJ. **bitter, deep, great, real | inner, personal, private | mental, physical, spiritual**
- VERB + ANGUISH **cause** *The loss of a pet can cause some people real anguish.* | **experience, feel, suffer** *He suffered the anguish of watching his son go to prison.*
- PREP. **in (sb's) ~** *to cry out/groan/scream in anguish* ◇ *In her anguish, she turned to her father for help.* **with ~** *His mouth felt dry with anguish.* | **~ at/over** *his anguish at the death of his son*
- PHRASES **a cry/groan/scream of anguish, pain and anguish** *All the pain and anguish inside her rose like a tidal wave.*

animal *noun*

- ADJ. **dead, live, living** *the export of live animals for slaughter* | **cold-blooded, warm-blooded | higher, lower | dumb | stuffed** *glass cases of stuffed animals* | **dangerous | endangered, rare | extinct | social, solitary | tame | feral, stray, wild | exotic | caged, trapped, wounded** *(often figurative) He was pacing the room like a caged animal.* | **domestic, farm, laboratory, zoo | forest, land, marine | draught, pack** *pack animals such as mules*
- VERB + ANIMAL **have, keep** *In court he was banned from keeping animals.* | **breed, raise, rear** *animals bred in captivity* | **tame, train** *This animal can be trained to follow simple orders.* | **hunt, trap | butcher, slaughter**
- ANIMAL + NOUN **life, species | behaviour, instinct | lover | husbandry | experiments, testing/tests** *protesting against animal experiments* | **rights, welfare | fat, products**
- PHRASES **the animal kingdom/world** *the wonders of the animal kingdom*

animosity *noun*

- ADJ. **personal**
- VERB + ANIMOSITY **bear** *Despite everything, she bore her former boss no animosity.* | **arouse, stir up**
- PREP. **without ~** *They managed to discuss their past disagreements without animosity.* | **~ between** *The two rivals for party leadership insist that there is no animosity between them.* **~ towards** *the animosity of some locals towards asylum seekers*

ankle *noun*

- ADJ. **bad, broken, injured, sprained, swollen, twisted | slender, slim, well-turned** *She has long legs and slender ankles.*
- VERB + ANKLE **break, hurt, injure, sprain, turn, twist**
- ANKLE + NOUN **boots, socks | injury | bone, joint, ligament**
- PHRASES **ankle deep in sth** *We waded through the river, ankle deep in mud.*

annex *verb*

- ADV. **formally** *The region was formally annexed in 1892.* | **illegally**
- PREP. **to** *The territory had been annexed to Poland.*

annihilation *noun*

- ADJ. **total | nuclear**
- VERB + ANNIHILATION **face** *They were to surrender immediately or face total annihilation.* | **threaten**

anniversary *noun*

1 of an important event

- ADJ. **first, second, etc.**
- VERB + ANNIVERSARY **celebrate, commemorate, mark** *They held celebrations to mark the anniversary of Mozart's death.*
- ANNIVERSARY + VERB **be, fall** *The anniversary of the founding of the charity falls on 12th November.*
- PREP. **on an/the ~** *on the 20th anniversary of his death*

2 of a wedding

- ADJ. **first, second, etc. | wedding**
- VERB + ANNIVERSARY **celebrate**
- PREP. **on sb's ~** *He bought her a diamond ring on their tenth wedding anniversary.*
- PHRASES **a diamond, golden, silver, etc. wedding anniversary**

announce *verb*

- ADV. **formally, officially, publicly | proudly** *The company proudly announced the launch of its new range of cars.*
- VERB + ANNOUNCE **be expected to, expect to** *We expect to announce details of the scheme later this week.* | **be delighted to, be pleased to, be proud to** *Mr and Mrs James are pleased to announce the engagement of their daughter, Henrietta.* | **regret to** *We regret to announce the death of our chairman, Alfred Sidebottom.*

announcement *noun*

- ADJ. **formal, official | public | government | dra-**

matic, surprise *Baker issued his surprise announcement in Paris after two hours of talks.*
• VERB + ANNOUNCEMENT **issue, make** *We will make a formal announcement tomorrow.* | **greet, welcome** *The announcement of the ceasefire was greeted with relief.*
• ANNOUNCEMENT + VERB **come** *The announcement of further job losses comes at a bad time.*
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *In an announcement to Parliament, the minister said that the peace negotiations would continue.* | **~ about** *an official announcement about the disaster* **~ by/from** *an announcement from the prime minister*

announcer *noun*

• ADJ. **continuity, radio, sports, station, television/TV** *The station announcer warned us that the train was running late.*
⇨ Note at JOB

annoy *verb*

• ADV. **intensely, really** *His air of calm superiority annoyed her intensely.* ◇ *It really annoys me when people forget to say thank you.* | **slightly**
• VERB + ANNOY **be beginning to** *The wasps were beginning to annoy me.*
• PHRASES **do sth just/only to annoy sb** *I only stay out late to annoy my parents.*

annoyance *noun*

1 feeling of being annoyed
• ADJ. **deep, great, intense** *A look of deep annoyance crossed his face.* | **obvious** *She tapped the table with her pen in obvious annoyance.*
• QUANT. **flicker** *A flicker of annoyance crossed his face.* | **surge** *He felt a violent surge of annoyance.*
• VERB + ANNOYANCE **cause** *He had been causing annoyance to the other guests.* | **feel** *I felt some annoyance when he told me his plans.* | **express, show** *She tried not to show her annoyance.* | **conceal, hide**
• PREP. **in ~** *He shook his head in annoyance.* **with ~** *Her cheeks flushed with annoyance.* | **~ at/over, ~ with** *her annoyance with him over his failure to cooperate*
• PHRASES **a look of annoyance** *There was a look of annoyance on his face.* **a source of annoyance** *A dog that barks constantly can be a source of annoyance to the neighbours.* **(much) to the annoyance of sb, (much) to sb's annoyance** *I dropped out of university, much to the annoyance of my parents.*

2 thing that annoys you
• ADJ. **minor, petty** *A leaking roof is just one of life's petty annoyances!*

annoyed *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** | **make sb** *His attitude made me extremely annoyed.*
• ADV. **extremely, really, very** | **thoroughly** | **increasingly** | **faintly, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat** | **clearly, obviously**
• PREP. **about** *I was a little annoyed about the whole thing.* **at** *We enjoyed the game but were rather annoyed at being beaten.* **by** *I was quite annoyed by her remarks.* **with** *Susan felt slightly annoyed with herself.*

annoying *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove** | **become, get** *Please stop making that noise—it's getting annoying.* | **make sth** | **find sth** *I found it really annoying not to be able to communicate.*
• ADV. **extremely, really, very** | **a bit, mildly, rather**
• PREP. **to** *The proposal will probably prove annoying to opposition MPs.*

anonymity *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, total** | **relative** *This British author has chosen to live in relative anonymity on a Pacific island.*
• VERB + ANONYMITY **ensure, guarantee, preserve, protect** *Our company promises to preserve the anonymity of all its clients.* | **demand, insist on, prefer, request, seek** *Some people prefer the anonymity of life in a big city.*

anonymous *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**
• ADV. **completely, entirely**
• PHRASES **prefer/wish to remain anonymous** *My client wishes to remain anonymous.*

answer *noun*

1 sth that you say/write/do as a reply
• ADJ. **brief, quick, short** *The short answer to your query is that he has acted completely illegally.* | **blunt, direct, straight** *I expect a straight answer to a straight question.* | **detailed, full, precise** | **immediate** | **final** | **affirmative, positive** | **negative** | **honest, reasonable, sensible** | **dusty** (= unsatisfactory) *I complained to the water company and received a very dusty answer.*
• VERB + ANSWER **get, have, receive** *Did you ever get an answer to your letter?* | **demand** | **wait for** | **give sb, offer** *Please give her your answer, so she can make the necessary arrangements.* ◇ *She repeated her question, but he offered no answer.* | **guess, know** *I think you can guess the answer—they won't lend us the money.*
• ANSWER + VERB **come** *The answer came in a postcard she sent from Devon.*
• PREP. **in ~ to** *In answer to your enquiries, I can only say that we did not find her work of a satisfactory standard.* | **~ to** *her answer to his question*

2 solution to a problem
• ADJ. **easy, instant, ready, simple** | **clear, clear-cut, obvious** *The obvious answer would be to cancel the party.* | **logical, reasonable, sensible** | **adequate, real, satisfactory** | **complete, convincing, definitive, effective, good, long-term, perfect** | **partial**
• VERB + ANSWER **have, know** *We are aware of this problem, but we do not have the answer.* | **look for, seek** | **arrive at, come up with, find** *We have arrived at an answer which we hope will satisfy everyone.* | **give sb, offer, provide** *If you want to save time, this machine will provide the answer.*
• PREP. **~ to** *There is no easy answer to the problem.*
• PHRASES **have/know all the answers** *He's so arrogant, he thinks he knows all the answers.*

3 to questions in a test
• ADJ. **acceptable, appropriate, correct, right** | **incorrect, wrong** | **written** *This part of the exam requires a written answer.*
• VERB + ANSWER **give** | **guess** *It's not worth guessing the answer, as you may lose marks.* | **know** | **print, write** *Please print the answers to questions 1 to 9.*
• PREP. **~ to** *Do you know the answer to the question?*

answer *verb*

• ADV. **affirmatively, in the affirmative** *She answered in the affirmative.* | **in the negative, negatively** | **honestly, truthfully** *He tried to answer as honestly as he could.* | **correctly** | **fully** *What he told me does not fully answer the question of what his motives were.* | **satisfactorily** | **evasively** | **coldly, curtly** | **calmly** | **quietly, softly**

antagonism *noun*

• ADJ. **great, strong** | **mutual** | **class, personal, racial**
• VERB + ANTAGONISM **feel, have** *She felt nothing but antagonism towards her boss.* ◇ *He seems to have an antagonism to the local people.* | **express, show** | **arouse,**

cause, create, lead to, provoke *The new rules will create a lot of antagonism.*
- PREP. **~ between** *the antagonism between the two brothers* **~ to/towards** *her antagonism towards her mother*

anthology *noun*
- VERB + ANTHOLOGY **compile, edit, publish, put together** *We have put together an anthology of children's poetry.*
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *The essay first appeared in an anthology of feminist criticism.* | **~ of**

anthropology *noun*
- ADJ. **cultural, social** *Social anthropology examines family relationships in detail.*

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

antibiotic *noun*
- ADJ. **effective**
- QUANT. **course, dose** *The doctor put her on a course of antibiotics.*
- VERB + ANTIBIOTIC **be on, take** *Did you remember to take your antibiotics?* | **give sb, prescribe, put sb on, treat sth with** *The doctor prescribed antibiotics.*

anticipate *verb*
- PHRASES **be eagerly/keenly anticipated** *one of the most eagerly anticipated arts events of the year* **be widely anticipated** *It is widely anticipated that she will resign.*

anticipation *noun*
- ADJ. **great, keen** | **eager, excited, happy, pleasurable** *We look forward to your lecture with eager anticipation.* ◇ *a feeling of pleasurable anticipation* | **growing** *There is growing anticipation that the prime minister will have to resign.*
- VERB + ANTICIPATION **be full of** *We are full of anticipation, and can't wait to visit you.*
- PREP. **in ~ of** *People are buying extra groceries in anticipation of heavy snowstorms.*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of anticipation, a shiver/thrill of anticipation** *The unexpected news sent a thrill of anticipation through the group.*

antics *noun*
- ADJ. **amusing, crazy, playful**
- VERB + ANTICS **get up to, perform** *The youngsters got up to all sorts of amusing antics.* | **enjoy, laugh at, smile at** *She was laughing at his antics.*

antidote *noun*

1 against poison/disease
- ADJ. **effective** | **natural**
- VERB + ANTIDOTE **administer, give** *The doctor administered an antidote.*
- PREP. **~ for** *Quinine is a natural antidote for this fever.* **~ to** *We do not have an effective antidote to this poison.*

2 thing that takes away the effects of sth unpleasant
- ADJ. **effective, good, perfect, powerful**
- VERB + ANTIDOTE **act as, serve as** | **offer, provide** *The resort offers the perfect antidote to the pressures of modern life.*
- PREP. **~ for** *I think that stricter punishment is the best antidote for crime.* **~ to** *Creative activity serves as an effective antidote to depression.*

antipathy *noun*
- ADJ. **deep, profound, strong, violent** | **growing, increasing** | **mutual** *They have a mutual antipathy to each other.* | **personal** *Despite his personal antipathy to me he was still able to be polite.* | **natural** *a natural antipathy towards people in authority*
- VERB + ANTIPATHY **feel, have** | **express, show**
- PREP. **~ between** *There was a lot of antipathy between the two doctors.* **~ for** *his antipathy for his boss* **~ to/towards** *I feel a profound antipathy to using any weapon.*

antique *noun*
- ADJ. **fine** | **genuine** | **priceless, valuable**
- VERB + ANTIQUE **collect**
- ANTIQUE + NOUN **dealer** | **antiques fair/shop**

antiquity *noun*

1 ancient times
- ADJ. **classical, Greek, Roman, etc.** *legends from Greek antiquity* | **late** | **immemorial, remote**
- VERB + ANTIQUITY **date from, survive from** | **be lost in** *The origins of this ancient structure are lost in antiquity.*
- PREP. **from ~** *a study of urban life from antiquity to the present day* **in ~** *vases that were manufactured in late classical antiquity*

2 a work of art, etc. from ancient times
- ADJ. **classical, Egyptian, Greek, Roman, etc.**
- VERB + ANTIQUITY **collect** *He collects Egyptian and Roman antiquities.*

3 great age
- ADJ. **considerable, great** *the considerable antiquity of the rocks in this region*

antiseptic *noun*
- ADJ. **powerful** | **mild** *Mint is a mild antiseptic.*
- VERB + ANTISEPTIC **apply, put on** *You should put some antiseptic on that cut.*

antithesis *noun*
- ADJ. **complete, exact, very** | **sharp**
- VERB + ANTITHESIS **be, represent**
- PREP. **~ between** *the sharp antithesis between their views* **~ of** *The company represented the antithesis of everything he admired.*

anxiety *noun*
- ADJ. **acute, considerable, deep, great** | **chronic, constant, nagging** | **growing, increasing, mounting** | **natural, understandable** | **needless, unnecessary** | **public**
- QUANT. **level** *the high level of anxiety created by entering a new environment*
- VERB + ANXIETY **arouse, bring, cause, create, provoke** | **lead to** | **experience, feel, suffer from** *She felt a nagging anxiety that could not be relieved.* | **express, share** *The mothers were able to share their anxieties with each other.* | **cope with, deal with** *skills to cope with anxiety* | **allay, alleviate, dispel, reduce, relieve** *The aim is to reduce anxiety and help the patients relax.* | **aggravate, increase**
- ANXIETY + VERB **grow** *The more reports I study the more my anxiety grows.* | **arise (from/out of sth), surface** *A few anxieties surfaced during the meeting.*
- ANXIETY + NOUN **attack** | **level**
- PREP. **~ about** *her growing anxiety about her health* **~ at** *anxiety at the deterioration of relations between the powers* **~ for** *deep anxiety for the whole family* **~ over** *There are anxieties over the effects of unemployment.*
- PHRASES **fear and anxiety** *They were encouraged to express their fears and anxieties.*

anxious *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow** *The bus was late and Sue began to get anxious.* | **make sb** *The delays only made him more anxious.*
- ADV. **desperately, extremely, very | increasingly** *She was watching the clock and becoming increasingly anxious.* | **a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | genuinely | naturally, understandably** *Final-year students are naturally anxious about getting work after graduation.* | **unduly** *There's no need to get unduly anxious on my account.* | **suddenly**
- PREP. **about** *I'm becoming very anxious about my son.* **for** *We are extremely anxious for her safety.*

apartment *noun*

1 a flat

- ADJ. **large, spacious | small | comfortable, luxury | modern | one-bedroomed, two-bedroomed, etc. | studio | first-floor, second-floor, etc. | basement, penthouse | holiday, self-catering**
- VERB + APARTMENT **buy | lease, rent** *We will be renting the apartment for a year.* | **live in, share, stay in** *I share an apartment with two friends.* | **look for** *I'm looking for an apartment on the east side of the city.* | **find | move into/out of**
- APARTMENT + NOUN **block, building, complex, house** *high-rise apartment blocks*

2 **apartments** set of rooms

- ADJ. **private, royal, state** *the private apartments of the imperial family*

apathy *noun*

- ADJ. **general, widespread | political, public**
- VERB + APATHY **suffer from | fall into, sink into** *Once defeated, he sank into apathy.* | **lead to** *Such attitudes can only lead to apathy.*
- PREP. **~ among** *widespread apathy among students* **~ towards** *a general apathy towards politics*

apologetic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, sound**
- ADV. **profusely, very | almost** *Barney sounded almost apologetic.* | **faintly, slightly, vaguely | suitably** *I hope she was suitably apologetic afterwards.*
- PREP. **about** *He was profusely apologetic about the mistake.* **for** *She was apologetic for taking so long.*

apologize *verb*

- ADV. **sincerely | profusely** *He apologized profusely for the damage he had caused.* | **humbly** *I do apologize most humbly.* | **publicly**
- VERB + APOLOGIZE **ought to, should | want to, wish to, would like to** *I would like to apologize most sincerely for any embarrassment caused.*
- PREP. **for** *She apologized for being late.* | **to** *He apologized to his colleagues.*
- PHRASES **I do/must apologize** *I must apologize for cancelling our meeting at such short notice.*

apology *noun*

- ADJ. **abject, humble, profuse** *It was a mistake. My profuse apologies.* | **heartfelt, profound, sincere | full | formal | public | written**
- VERB + APOLOGY **convey, give sb, issue, make, offer (sb), publish, send (sb)** *The newpaper has issued an apology to the minister.* | **get, receive | demand, deserve, expect** *We expect a full written apology.* | **owe sb** *She certainly owes you an apology.* | **mumble, murmur, mutter** *John muttered an apology then went back to his book.* | **accept** *Please accept my sincere apologies.* | **reject** *She rejected my apology, saying it was not enough.*
- PREP. **without ~** *He backed out arrogantly and without apology.* | **~ for** *an apology for arriving late* **~ from** *Apologies have been received from the Browns.* **~ to** *my apologies to your wife*
- PHRASES **a letter of apology, make no apology/apologies for** *I make no apologies for bringing this issue to your attention once again.*

appalling *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, sound**
- ADV. **really, truly | absolutely, the most, quite, utterly** *They had to wait for hours in the most appalling weather.*

apparatus *noun*

- ADJ. **breathing, chemical, electrical, experimental, laboratory, scientific | administrative, bureaucratic, legal, party, security, state** *the state's powerful security apparatus*
- QUANT. **piece** *a very sophisticated piece of laboratory apparatus*
- PHRASES **the apparatus of government/(the) state**

apparent *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become** *It soon became apparent that the company was losing money.* | **make sth** *He made it apparent that he was very annoyed.*
- ADV. **glaringly, strongly, very | fully, quite | increasingly | all too** *His unhappiness was all too apparent.* | **quickly, soon | immediately, instantly** *The extent of their injuries was not immediately apparent.* | **easily, readily | clearly | painfully** *Local suspicion of the incomers was painfully apparent.*
- PREP. **to** *His lack of experience was quite apparent to everyone.*

appeal *noun*

1 serious request for sth you need/want very much

- ADJ. **desperate, emergency, emotional, urgent | direct | fresh, further** *a fresh appeal for witnesses to come forward* | **mute** *She gazed at him in mute appeal.*
- VERB + APPEAL **issue, make** *They made a direct appeal to the government for funding.*
- PREP. **~ for** *an appeal for help* **~ to** *an appeal to reason*

2 formal request to sb in authority

- ADJ. **formal, personal**
- VERB + APPEAL **bring, file, lodge, make** *He's lodged an appeal against the size of the fine.* | **win | lose | allow** *(formal)*, **consider, hear** *The judge has agreed to allow his appeal.* ◇ *The court will hear the appeal on 10 June.* | **uphold** *His appeal was upheld and he was released immediately.* | **deny, dismiss, reject, throw out, turn down**
- APPEAL + VERB **fail | succeed**
- APPEAL + NOUN **court, tribunal | hearing | judge | procedure, process, system**
- PREP. **on ~** *On appeal, it was held that the judge was correct.* **under ~** *a case currently under appeal* | **~ against** *an appeal against his conviction of fraud* **~ for** *an appeal for leniency* **~ to** *an appeal to the High Court*
- PHRASES **a court of appeal, give/grant sb leave to appeal, grounds of appeal, pending appeal** *The players have been suspended pending appeal.* **a right of appeal** *You have the right of appeal to the Consitutional Court.*

3 event for raising money

- ADJ. **charity, fund-raising | radio, television**
- VERB + APPEAL **hold, launch** *An appeal is to be launched on behalf of the refugees.* | **back, support**
- APPEAL + VERB **raise sth** *The radio appeal raised over three million pounds.*
- APPEAL + NOUN **fund**

4 attraction/interest

- ADJ. **considerable, great, growing, obvious, powerful, special, strong | immediate, instant** *the book's immediate apeal to young children* | **limited, little | broad, mass, popular, universal, wide** *a publication designed for mass appeal* | **aesthetic, commercial, electoral, intellectual, sex, visual** *Unfortunately, the film lacks commercial appeal.*
- VERB + APPEAL **have, hold** *His views hold no appeal for me.* | **broaden, extend, widen** *We are trying to broaden the appeal of classical music.* | **lose**
- APPEAL + VERB **lie in sth** *His considerable appeal lies in his quiet, gentle manner.*
- PREP. **~ for** *School lost its appeal for her in the second year.*

appeal *verb*

1 make serious request for sth

- ADV. **directly** *He went over the heads of union officials, appealing directly to the workforce.*
- PREP. **for, to** *Police have appealed to the public for information about the crime.*

2 to sb in authority

- ADV. **succesfully, unsuccessfully | directly**
- PREP. **against** *She appealed unsuccessfully against her conviction for murder.* **to** *He has decided to appeal to the European Court.*

3 be attractive/interesting to sb

- ADV. **enormously, really, strongly** *The prospect of teaching such bright children appealed enormously.* ◇ *The idea of retiring early really appeals to me.* | **directly**
- PREP. **to** *These characters will appeal directly to children's imaginations.*

appealing *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | make sth** *The large salary made their offer even more appealing to him.* | **find sth** *I find his manner very appealing.*
- ADV. **enormously, extremely, very | quite, rather | immediately**
- PREP. **to** *These toys are not immediately appealing to children.*

appear *verb*

1 come into sight

- ADV. **suddenly** *A man suddenly appeared in the doorway.* | **from nowhere** *A police officer appeared as if from nowhere and ordered us to halt.*

2 perform in public

- ADV. **currently**
- PREP. **at** *She is currently appearing at the Liverpool Playhouse.*
- PHRASES **appear on television** *She regularly appears on television.*

3 in court

- PREP. **at** *He will appear at Manchester Crown Court next week.*
- PHRASES **appear before a court/judge/magistrate** *The man will appear before magistrates in Birmingham later today.* **appear in court** *A man has appeared in court charged with the murder of seven women.*

appearance *noun*

1 way that sb/sth looks

- ADJ. **attractive, handsome, youthful | distinctive, odd, strange, striking | dishevelled, scruffy, unkempt, unprepossessing | external, general, outward, overall, personal, physical, visual** *attempts to improve the general appearance of the town centre* ◇ *attention to personal appearance and hygiene*
- VERB + APPEARANCE **have** *Inside, the house had the appearance of a temple.* | **take on** *Towns merged to take on the appearance of a city.* | **give** *The report gives an appearance of scientific credibility.* | **alter, change** *Shaving off his beard changed his appearance dramatically.* | **enhance, improve | keep up** *When she lost all her money, she was determined to keep up appearances* (= hide the true situation and pretend that everything was going well). | **judge (sb/sth) by** *To judge by appearances, Roger was rather embarrassed.*
- PREP. **contrary to ~s, despite ~s** *The American president, despite appearances, has only limited power.* **in ~** *rather bird-like in appearance*

2 arrival of sb/sth

- ADJ. **dramatic, sudden, surprise, unexpected | brief**
- VERB + APPEARANCE **make, put in** *She made a sudden appearance just as we were about to leave.* ◇ *I feel I must put in at least a brief appearance at the party.*

3 act of appearing in public

- ADJ. **first, second, etc.** *her first appearance on the stage* | **final, last | frequent, occasional, rare, regular | live, personal | public | cameo, guest | court, radio, stage, television/TV** *one of the actor's rare television appearances*
- VERB + APPEARANCE **make** *She made a cameo appearance in the film.*
- APPEARANCE + NOUN **money** (*sport*)

appendicitis *noun*

- ADJ. **acute | suspected**
- QUANT. **case**
- VERB + APPENDICITIS **have | get | diagnose**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

appendix *noun*

- ADJ. **burst, grumbling** (= painful from time to time), **inflamed, perforated, ruptured** *He was taken to hospital with a burst appendix.*
- VERB + APPENDIX **remove, take out** *Doctors had to take out his appendix.* | **have out** *She might have to have her appendix out.*
- APPENDIX + VERB **burst, rupture** *If the condition is not treated, the appendix can rupture.*

appetite *noun*

1 desire for food

- ADJ. **big, enormous, gargantuan, good, healthy, hearty, huge, insatiable, large, ravenous** *special double-decker sandwiches for big appetites* | **poor, small** *The symptoms of depression can include poor appetite and weight loss.* ◇ *I have always had a small appetite.* | **jaded** *magnificent meals to tempt the most jaded appetites*
- VERB + APPETITE **have** *She had no appetite and began to lose weight.* | **lose | build up, develop, work up** *I went for a walk to work up an appetite for breakfast.* | **get back, regain** *After a week she had regained her appetite.* | **give sb** *All that digging has given me an appetite.* | **give an edge to, increase** *The cold air had given an edge to my appetite.* | **control, curb, suppress** (*technical*), **take away, take the edge off** *Some drugs can suppress the appetite.* | **ruin, spoil** *This is something you can eat between meals without ruining your appetite.* | **satisfy** *This meal will satisfy even the healthiest appetite.*
- APPETITE + VERB **grow, increase | come back, return** *His appetite has returned to normal.*
- PHRASES **a lack of appetite, a loss of appetite** *The symptoms include aching limbs and loss of appetite.*

2 strong desire for sth

- ADJ. **enormous, great, huge, insatiable, voracious** *an insatiable appetite for books* | **public** *The BBC recognizes the public appetite for serious information.* | **sexual**

• VERB + APPETITE **have | lose | give sb | increase, revive, whet** *Reading the first story whetted my appetite for more.* | **dull | satisfy**
• APPETITE + VERB **grow, increase**
• PREP. **~for** *His appetite for power had grown.*

applaud *verb*

1 clap your hands
• ADV. **loudly** *The audience applauded loudly.*

2 praise sb/sth
• ADV. **strongly, warmly** *The decision to save the company has been warmly applauded.*
• PHRASES **is to be applauded, should be applauded** *His efforts to help people should be applauded.*

applause *noun*

• ADJ. **deafening, loud, thunderous, tumultuous | enthusiastic, rapturous, warm, wild | prolonged, sustained | spontaneous** *a little burst of spontaneous applause* | **gentle, muted, polite** *To muted applause a small flag was raised over the building.*
• QUANT. **burst, ripple, roar, round** *The crowd gave them a round of applause.*
• VERB + APPLAUSE **be greeted with, draw, earn, get, receive, win** *The speech drew loud applause.* | **break into, burst into** *The audience broke into applause.* | **acknowledge** *She stood back and acknowledged the applause of the crowd.* | **deserve** *He deserves the respect and applause of his colleagues.*
• APPLAUSE + VERB **break out, greet sb/sth** *A great roar of applause broke out.* ◇ *Wild applause greeted this remark.* | **grow | die away/down, subside** *The applause died down as the curtain closed.*
• PREP. **to ~** *He left the stage to thunderous applause.* | **~for** *There was a ripple of applause for the speaker.*

apple *noun*

• ADJ. **sweet | sharp, sour, tart** *Add some sugar to the stewed apple—it's still a bit tart.* | **juicy | cider, cooking, dessert, eating | windfall | baked | bruised** *The apples were all bruised after being dropped on the floor.*
• VERB + APPLE **bite into, eat, munch (on)** *He just sat there munching on an apple.* | **core, grate, peel**
• APPLE + NOUN **crumble, pie | core, pip | tree**
⇨ Special page at FRUIT

appliance *noun*

• ADJ. **modern | faulty | electrical, gas | cooking, heating | domestic, household, kitchen | surgical**
• VERB + APPLIANCE **switch on, turn on | switch off, turn off** *Always switch off appliances that are not in use.* | **run, use** *Many household appliances are expensive to run.* | **maintain, service**

applicable *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove, seem** *new developments in research that could prove directly applicable to the treatment of some cancers* | **become | make sth**
• ADJ. **broadly, generally, widely | universally | directly | immediately | equally** *The rules have now been made equally applicable to all members.* | **easily, readily** *The theory does not seem easily applicable in this case.*
• PREP. **for** *The offer is only applicable for journeys made during the week.* **to** *The law is applicable to everyone.*

applicant *noun*

• ADJ. **potential, prospective | suitable, suitably qualified** *Grant payments will be made to suitable applicants.* | **unsuitable | lucky, successful | disappointed, unsuccessful** *Unsuccessful applicants may appeal against the decision.* | **job | asylum, refugee**
• VERB + APPLICANT **attract** *The advertisement attracted a number of applicants.* | **shortlist** *Eighteen applicants were shortlisted.* | **interview | appoint, select | reject, turn away/down**
• APPLICANT + VERB **apply** *All applicants should apply in writing.*
• PREP. **~for** *There were over fifty applicants for the job.*

application *noun*

1 written request
• ADJ. **formal, written | successful** *I am pleased to tell you that your application for the post of Assistant Editor has been successful.* | **unsuccessful | job, membership, patent, planning, etc.** *All planning applications should be submitted to the local council.*
• VERB + APPLICATION **file, lodge, make, send in, submit** *The applicant must file a written application to the court.* | **withdraw | consider, examine, process, screen** *It takes time to process each application.* | **invite** *Applications are invited for the post of Lecturer in French.* | **grant** *(law) His application for bail was granted.* | **refuse** *(law)*, **reject, turn down**
• APPLICATION + NOUN **form**
• PREP. **by ~** *(formal) Admission is obtained by written application.* **on ~** *A permit is available on application to the company.* | **~for** *an application for a new licence* **~to** *an application to the local authority*

2 practical use
• ADJ. **practical** *What are the practical applications of this work?* | **general** *The program is designed for general application.* | **wide | agricultural, industrial**

3 computing
• ADJ. **client-server, database, multimedia, software**
• VERB + APPLICATION **run** *You can run several applications at the same time.* | **develop**
• APPLICATION + VERB **run**
⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

apply *verb*

1 be relevant
• ADV. **equally** *These principles apply equally in all cases.*
• PREP. **to** *These restrictions do not apply to us.*
• PHRASES **the same applies** *British companies are subject to international laws and the same applies to companies in Europe.*

2 put/spread on a surface
• ADV. **directly | evenly | freely | sparingly** *Apply the insecticide sparingly.*
• PREP. **over** *Apply the glue evenly over both surfaces.* **to** *Never apply the cleaning liquid directly to the surface.*

appointment *noun*

1 agreement to meet sb
• ADJ. **important, pressing, urgent | first, initial | follow-up | business | dental, hair | hospital, outpatient** *The hospital needs to allow more time for outpatient appointments.*
• VERB + APPOINTMENT **have | arrange, book, fix, make** *I'd like to make an appointment to see the doctor, please.* | **get** *I didn't know if I would get an appointment at such short notice.* | **give sb** *Tom has been given an appointment at the local hospital.* | **keep** *He failed to keep his appointment.* | **break, miss** *She has already broken three appointments.* | **cancel**
• PREP. **by ~** *Viewing is only allowed by appointment.* **with/without an ~** *He called without an appointment.* | **~with** *an appointment with a doctor*

2 job/position

- ADJ. **permanent, temporary | senior | academic, cabinet, court, diplomatic, ecclesiastical, executive, government, judicial, military, ministerial, political, public, university**
- VERB + APPOINTMENT **hold** *Employees may not hold any other appointments.* | **give sb, offer sb** *He was offered an appointment in the Education Department.* | **accept | obtain | take up** *He takes up his appointment in January.* | **resign** *Miss Green resigned her appointment as our regional representative.* | **secure** *By reorganizing the church hierarchy, the king was able to secure the appointment of men whom he personally favoured.*

3 choosing sb for job
- ADJ. **key** *The company has announced five key appointments at its Teesside plant.* | **formal, official | staff**
- VERB + APPOINTMENT **make | announce | confirm** *The board has confirmed the appointment of Howard Kendall as Sales Manager.*
- PREP. **to** *the first appointments to the new government*

appraisal *noun*

- ADJ. **detailed, full, thorough** *A detailed appraisal of the scheme will now be carried out.* | **frank, honest, realistic | independent | critical | economic, financial | project | performance, staff, teacher** *a formal system of performance appraisal*
- VERB + APPRAISAL **carry out, give, make** *He was asked to give an independent appraisal.* ◇ *She made a quick appraisal of the other guests.*
- APPRAISAL + NOUN **interview** *We are holding staff appraisal interviews.*

appreciate *verb*

1 recognize good qualities
- ADV. **really | fully, properly** *The sound quality was poor so we couldn't fully appreciate the music.*

2 be grateful
- ADV. **deeply, greatly, really, very much** *We do really appreciate your help.*

3 understand
- ADV. **fully, properly** *I fully appreciate your concern. We will do all in our power to help.* | **easily, readily** *The problems should be easily appreciated.*
- VERB + APPRECIATE **fail to** *The government failed to appreciate the fact that voters were angry.*
- PHRASES **be generally/widely appreciated** *It is generally appreciated that the rail network needs a complete overhaul.*

appreciation *noun*

1 understanding and enjoyment of sth
- ADJ. **deep, fine, great, real | aesthetic**
- VERB + APPRECIATION **have** *They have little appreciation of the arts.* | **show | cultivate, develop, gain** *I have now developed an appreciation of poetry.*
- PREP. **in ~** *She gazed in appreciation at the scene.*

2 feeling of being grateful for sth
- ADJ. **deep, genuine, heartfelt**
- VERB + APPRECIATION **express, show** *I would like to express my appreciation and thanks to you all.*
- PREP. **in ~ (of)** *I'll be sending them a donation in appreciation of their help.* **with ~** *'Thank you,' she murmured, with heartfelt appreciation.* | **~ for** *his appreciation for all the work she had done*
- PHRASES **a lack of appreciation, (as) a token of your appreciation** *As a token of our appreciation we would like to offer you this small gift.*

3 understanding of what sth involves
- ADJ. **better, clear, deep, full, great, keen, real, wider | growing** *There is a growing appreciation of the need for change.*
- VERB + APPRECIATION **have | gain** *The course helped me to gain a deeper appreciation of what scientific research involves.*
- PREP. **~ of** *She had no appreciation of the difficulties we were facing.*

apprehension *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great, growing | sudden**
- VERB + APPREHENSION **be filled with, be full of, feel** *They were filled with apprehension as they approached the building.* | **express, show | overcome | cause** *The change in the law has caused apprehension among many people.* | **allay** *How can I allay your apprehensions?*
- APPREHENSION + VERB **grow** *There were still areas of doubt and her apprehension grew.*
- PREP. **with ~** *School reports are always received with some apprehension.* | **~ about/over** *her apprehension about being in hospital* **~ at** *She felt some apprehension at the thought of seeing him again.* **~ for** *There is great apprehension for the future.*
- PHRASES **a feeling/look of apprehension**

apprehensive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow | remain | make sb** *The long delay had made me quite apprehensive.*
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, very | a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly**
- PREP. **about** *She was deeply apprehensive about her future.* **of** *He was rather apprehensive of failure.*

approach *noun*

1 way of dealing with sb/sth
- ADJ. **conventional, orthodox, traditional | alternative, different, fresh, new, novel** *We need to try alternative approaches to the problem.* | **cautious, conservative | creative, innovative | flexible | direct, no-nonsense, positive, practical, pragmatic, problem-solving, rational, useful | indirect | formal | informal | right | wrong | analytical, scientific, structured, systematic theoretical, | holistic, integrated | basic, general | objective | simplistic**
- VERB + APPROACH **have** *Some teachers have a more formal approach to teaching.* | **adopt, develop, take, try, use** *We need to adopt a more pragmatic approach.* | **favour, prefer** *She favoured the direct approach.*
- PREP. **~ to** *I liked her approach to the problem*

2 act of coming nearer
- VERB + APPROACH **make** *The aircraft had to make a steep approach to the landing strip.*
- PREP. **at the ~ of** *The children fell silent at the approach of their teacher.* **with the ~ of** *The weather turned colder with the approach of autumn.* | **~ to** *The plane crashed during its approach to the runway.*

3 discussion with sb in order to ask them for sth
- VERB + APPROACH **make | have, receive**
- PREP. **~ from** *We've received an approach from the director of a rival firm.* **~ to** *We'll have to make an approach to the managing director.*

approach *verb*

1 come nearer
- ADV. **slowly | cautiously, warily, with caution**
- PREP. **from** *The army approached from the south.*

2 come nearer in time
- ADV. **fast, rapidly** *The time is fast approaching when we will have to replace these old machines.*

3 speak to sb, usually to ask for sth
- ADV. **directly** *It's best to approach her directly.*
- VERB + APPROACH **be easy to | be difficult to** *She found her father difficult to approach.*

- PREP. **about** *Have you approached John about doing a concert?* **for** *I approached the bank for a loan.*

4 come close in amount/quality/style

- ADV. **closely** *Here Wordsworth's verse movement closely approaches that of Gray.* | **not nearly, not remotely** *There is no other player even remotely approaching her calibre.*

appropriate *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **consider sth, deem sth, think sth** *It was thought appropriate to award her the prize.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **entirely, quite**
- PREP. **for** *It might be appropriate for him to attend the course.* **to** *Tutors can construct tests appropriate to individual students' needs.*

approval *noun*

- ADJ. **full, total, unqualified, warm, wholehearted** *The scheme did not meet unqualified approval.* | **grudging, qualified** | **general, overwhelming, popular, public, unanimous, universal, widespread** | **final, initial, preliminary, prior** *All development requires the prior approval of the planning authority.* | **tacit** | **written** | **formal, official** | **government, parliamentary, royal**
- VERB + APPROVAL **need, require** | **seek, submit sth for** *We have submitted a design for approval.* | **gain, get, meet with, obtain, receive, win** *You are not allowed to build anything without first obtaining the approval of the local authority.* | **give, grant** *The government has now given its approval for the new examinations.* | **refuse, withhold** | **express, nod, show** *The people listening nodded approval.*
- PREP. **on ~** *The goods were supplied on approval* (= they could be sent back if they were not satisfactory). **with ~** *Jane's father regards her fiancé with approval.* **with/without sb's ~** *You may not decorate the flat without the landlord's approval.* | **~ for** *He won approval for his project.* **~ from** *We're waiting for approval from the authorities.*
- PHRASES **a nod of approval** *She gave him a nod of approval.* **a roar of approval** *There was a roar of approval from the crowd.* **a seal/stamp of approval** *The government has given its seal of approval to the project.* **subject to approval** *The offer is subject to approval at the Annual General Meeting.*

approve *verb*

1 like sb/sth

- ADV. **heartily, strongly, thoroughly, very much, wholeheartedly** *I wholeheartedly approve of his actions.*
- PREP. **of** *I very much approve of these new tests.*

2 agree to sth

- ADV. **formally, officially** *His appointment has not been formally approved yet.* | **overwhelmingly, unanimously**

approximation *noun*

- ADJ. **close, good, nearest, reasonable** *This is the nearest approximation of cost that they can give us.* | **crude, rough** *This is only a crude approximation of the actual conditions in the area.*
- VERB + APPROXIMATION **make** *We do not have the true figures so we will have to make some approximations.* | **give (sb), provide (sb with)**

April *noun*

⇨ Note at MONTH

aptitude *noun*

- ADJ. **great, natural, special** *He has a natural aptitude for this work.*
- VERB + APTITUDE **have** | **display, show** *children who show an aptitude for sport*
- APTITUDE + NOUN **test**
- PREP. **~ for** *an aptitude for mathematics*

Arabic *noun*

- ADJ. **classical, modern**
- ARABIC + NOUN **script**

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

arbitrary *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **completely, entirely, purely, quite, wholly** | **fairly, rather, somewhat, to some extent** *The decision is to some extent arbitrary.* | **essentially** | **apparently**

arbitration *noun*

- ADJ. **binding** *Both sides have agreed that the arbitration will be binding.* | **independent, international**
- VERB + ARBITRATION **agree to, go to, refer sth to, submit (sth) to, take sth to** *Both parties agreed to independent arbitration.* ◇ *The matter will go to arbitration.* | **determine sth by, settle sth by** *The matter will be settled by arbitration.*
- ARBITRATION + NOUN **procedure, scheme, service, system**

arc *noun*

- ADJ. **great, high, long, sweeping, wide** *firing shells in a high arc over our heads* | **perfect**
- VERB + ARC **describe** (*technical*), **form, make** *forming a perfect arc in the sky*
- PREP. **in an ~** *The islands lie in a wide arc just off the mainland.*

arch *noun*

- ADJ. **pointed, round, semi-circular** | **brick, iron, masonry, stone** | **monumental, triumphal** | **Gothic, Romanesque, etc.** | **proscenium, railway** *an old theatre with a proscenium arch* ◇ *Mean little houses clustered under the railway arches.*
- VERB + ARCH **build, erect** *This huge triumphal arch was erected at the beginning of this century.* | **form, make** *The branches of the trees formed an arch over the bench.*
- PREP. **beneath an/the ~, through an/the ~, under an/the ~** *We rode under the arch.*

archaeologist *noun*

- ADJ. **amateur, professional**
- ARCHAEOLOGIST + VERB **excavate sth** | **dig sth up, discover sth, find sth, uncover sth, unearth sth** *examples of life thousands of years ago, unearthed by archaeologists*

⇨ Note at JOB

archaeology *noun*

- ADJ. **Anglo-Saxon, classical, medieval, etc.** | **environmental, industrial, marine, underwater**

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

archbishop *noun*

- ADJ. **Anglican, Roman Catholic**
- VERB + ARCHBISHOP **be appointed (as), become, be consecrated, be enthroned (as), be made, succeed sb as** *He was enthroned as archbishop in Canterbury Cathedral in 1980.*
- PREP. **~ of** *He was made Archbishop of Milan.*

architect *noun*

- ADJ. **famous, great, leading, talented | church, city, landscape, naval, railway**
- ARCHITECT + VERB **design sth, draw up plans (for sth)** *The house was designed by architect Louis Kahn.*

⇨ Note at PROFESSIONAL (for more verbs)

architecture *noun*

1 style/design of a building
- ADJ. **classical, medieval, modern | vernacular | Gothic, Romanesque, etc. | church, domestic, ecclesiastical, landscape, naval, railway**
- PHRASES **a school/style of architecture**

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

2 design and structure of a computer system
- ADJ. **client-server, hardware, network, processing, processor, software, system**

archive *noun*

- ADJ. **extensive | electronic, film, photo/photographic, sound** *The programme is preserved in the BBC sound archives.* **| company, corporate, county, family, local, national, official, personal, private, state**
- VERB + ARCHIVE **build up, create, set up** *collecting documents to build up an archive* **| house, keep, maintain** *the person responsible for keeping the archives* ◇ *the building which houses the state archives* **| hold sth in, keep sth in, preserve sth in** *The data is now held in the company archives.* **| consult, examine, look through**
- ARCHIVE + VERB **contain sth, hold sth**
- ARCHIVE + NOUN **collection | film, footage** *archive footage of the victory celebrations* **| material**
- PREP. **among/amongst the ~s** *There are many clues hidden amongst the archives of the local museum.* **from an/the ~** *some photographs from the library's archives* **in an/the ~** *No record of this letter exists in the archives.*

area *noun*

1 part of place
- ADJ. **huge, large, vast, wide | small | local** *She knows the local area very well.* **| surrounding** *The storms hit Edinburgh and the surrounding area.* **| central | geographical | isolated, outlying, remote | rural | built up, inner-city, metropolitan, urban | industrial | residential | coastal, mountain | conservation | deprived** *people living in socially deprived areas*
- VERB + AREA **live in | move into/to** *A lot of new people have moved into the area recently.* **| leave, move away from | cover | be scattered over, be spread over** *Wreckage from the plane was scattered over a large area.*
- AREA + NOUN **manager, office**
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *Few homes in the area had electricity.* **outside an/the ~** *I live outside the London area.* **within an/the ~ | ~ around/round** *the area around London*

2 space
- ADJ. **dining, lounge, reception | picnic, play | no smoking, smoking | penalty**
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *I'll meet you in the reception area.*

3 subject/activity
- ADJ. **important, key, main | complex, difficult, problem, sensitive** *Taxation is a very complex area.* **| growth** *The big growth area of recent years has been in health clubs.* **| subject | grey** *The proposals contain too many grey areas* (= aspects that are not clear).
- VERB + AREA **cover** *The course covers two main subject areas.* **| identify** *The primary need is to identify problem areas.*
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *There have been some exciting new developments in this area.*
- PHRASES **an area of activity/life** *People with this disability can cope well in most areas of life.* **an area of concern/difficulty** *We are generally pleased with how the scheme is operating but there are one or two areas of concern.* **an area of interest/research/study**

4 measurement
- ADJ. **large | small | total | floor, surface** *A large building with a floor area of 100m^2.*
- VERB + AREA **cover, have** *The estate covers an area of 106 acres.*

arena *noun*

1 for sports/entertainment
- ADJ. **Olympic | showjumping, sports | indoor**
- VERB + ARENA **enter | leave** *He left the arena to loud applause.*
- PREP. **in/into an/the ~** *The rider has to halt the horse in the arena.*

2 area of activity
- ADJ. **international, world | wider** *Trades unions are active both in individual workplaces and in the wider arena of the state.* **| public | commercial, political | competitive**
- VERB + ARENA **provide** *The conference should provide an arena for marketing our new products.* **| emerge into, enter, move into** *Some documents have now emerged into the public arena.* ◇ *He had no desire to enter the political arena.*
- PREP. **in/within an/the ~** *The company has been very successful in the commercial arena.* **outside an/the ~** *I want to work outside the arena of competition.*

argue *verb*

1 disagree
- ADV. **fiercely, furiously, heatedly | endlessly**
- PREP. **about** *arguing endlessly about money* **over** *They were arguing over who should have the car that day.* **with** *She's always arguing with her mother.*

2 give reasons to support opinion
- ADV. **forcefully, passionately, strongly | convincingly, persuasively, plausibly, successfully** *The report argues convincingly that economic help should be given to these countries.* **| sensibly**
- VERB + ARGUE **be disposed to, wish to** *I would wish to argue that appreciation of the arts should be encouraged for its own sake.* **| be prepared to** *Are you prepared to argue that killing is sometimes justified?* **| attempt to, try to | go on to** *In her paper she goes on to argue that scientists do not yet know enough about the nature of the disease.* **| be possible to** *It is possible to argue that the rules are too strict.* **| be difficult to**
- PREP. **against** *She argued against a rise in interest rates.* **for** *The general argued for extending the ceasefire.* **in favour of** *They argued in favour of stricter punishments.*

argument *noun*

1 angry discussion
- ADJ. **angry, bitter, heated, violent | big** *I had a big argument with my mother this morning.* **| little, silly, stupid**
- VERB + ARGUMENT **become/get involved in, get into, have** *I don't want to get into an argument with her.* **| cause, provoke, start | lose, win** *I was determined to win the argument.*
- ARGUMENT + VERB **arise, break out, develop, erupt** *Minutes later a violent argument erupted.*
- PREP. **~ about** *We had an argument about what we should buy.* **~ between** *an argument between her parents* **~ over** *The argument over decentralization will probably continue for ever.* **~ with** *an argument with his wife*

2 reason supporting opinion
- ADJ. **basic, general | main | good, major, powerful, sound, strong, valid | compelling, conclusive, convincing, persuasive | plausible** *Their argument sounds*

plausible but is it really valid? | **spurious, tenuous, weak** | **balanced** | **logical, rational, reasoned** | **economic, moral, political, theoretical**

- VERB + ARGUMENT **advance, deploy, offer, present, put forward** *He put forward some very convincing arguments.* | **develop** *This argument is developed further in the next chapter.* | **illustrate, support, underline** *Do you have any evidence to support your argument?* | **consider, hear, listen to** | **accept, agree with** | **dismiss, reject** *The company dismissed his arguments as alarmist.* | **counter, refute** *She tried to think how to refute the argument on moral grounds.*
- ARGUMENT + VERB **be based on sth** *The government's argument is always based on how much such a scheme would cost.* | **go, run** *Centralized government, so the argument goes, is too far removed from the problems of ordinary citizens.* | **apply (for sth)** *The same argument applies to fox-hunting.* | **justify sth** | **suggest sth** *These arguments suggest that the medical establishment had an interest in suppressing the research.*
- PREP. **~against** *the arguments against increasing taxes* **~concerning** *arguments concerning the nature of morality* **~for** *There is a very good argument for increasing spending on education.* **~in favour of** *What are the arguments in favour of change?*
- PHRASES **all/both sides of an argument** *He was able to see both sides of the argument.* **a flaw in the argument** *I can see no flaw in the argument as she has just explained it.* **a line of argument** *I can see a few problems with this line of argument.*

arise *verb*

- ADV. **naturally, spontaneously** | **directly**
- VERB + ARISE **may, might** | **be likely/unlikely to**
- PREP. **from** *Some learning difficulties arise from the way children are taught at school.* **out of** *The current debate arose out of the concerns of parents.*

aristocracy *noun*

- ADJ. **British, French, etc.** | **landed, landowning** | **local**
- PHRASES **a member of the aristocracy**

arithmetic *noun*

- ADJ. **basic, simple** | **mental** *a test of mental arithmetic*
- VERB + ARITHMETIC **do** *By the age of ten, the children can do simple arithmetic.* | **check** *I've worked out the price, but I need to check the arithmetic.*

arm *noun*

- ADJ. **left, right** | **upper** *the muscles of the upper arm* | **strong** | **good** *He used his good arm to support his weight.* | **bad, broken, weak, withered** *I've got a bad arm so I'm afraid I can't help you.* | **open** (*often figurative*), **outstretched** *They're sure to welcome you with open arms.* | **bare**
- VERB + ARM **bend, move** | **lower, raise** *The figure in the boat raised an arm.* | **break, dislocate, hurt, twist** | **hold out, open, stretch out** *He held out his arms with a broad smile.* | **cross, fold** *She folded her arms and stared at him.* | **link** *The couple linked arms and set off along the beach.* | **wave** *He was running towards them, waving his arms.* | **catch (at), catch hold of, grab, take** *A hand reached out and caught hold of her arm.* ◇ *She moved towards her father and took his arm.* | **grip, hold, squeeze, touch** | **fall into** *They fell into each other's arms.* | **draw/gather/pull sb into, take sb in** *He pulled her into his arms and kissed her.* | **hold sb in**
- ARM + VERB **drop** | **hang** *His arm hung awkwardly against his side.* | **tighten** *Her arms tightened convulsively round the child.*
- PREP. **by the ~** *The officer grabbed him by the arm* (= grabbed his arm). **in sb's ~** *The child lay in its mother's arms.* **on the ~** *She touched him gently on the arm.* **on your ~** *Lucy felt the warm sun on her bare arms.* ◇ *He walked in with a tall blonde on his arm* (= next to him and holding his arm). **under an/your ~** *She carried the dog under one arm.*
- PHRASES **arm in arm** *They walked along arm in arm* (= with the arm of one person linked with the arm of the other), **at arm's length** *He held the dirty rag at arm's length* (= as far away from his body as possible). **the crook of an/sb's arm** *She lay curled up in the crook of his arm.* **fling/put/throw, etc. your arms around/round sb/sth** *He ran towards her and flung his arms around her.* ◇ *He put an arm around her shoulders.* **in each other's arms** *They fell asleep in each other's arms* (= holding each other). **with arms akimbo** (= with your arms bent and your hands on your hips) *She stood looking at him with arms akimbo.*

armaments *noun*

- ADJ. **conventional, nuclear**
- VERB + ARMAMENTS **manufacture, produce**
- ARMAMENTS + NOUN **factory, industry, production**

armchair *noun*

- ADJ. **big, deep, large** | **comfortable, comfy** | **battered, old, worn** | **leather, upholstered, wicker, wooden**
- VERB + ARMCHAIR **be seated in, be slumped in, be sprawled in, sit in** | **collapse into, flop into, throw yourself into** | **curl up in, ease yourself into, settle into** *He eased himself into the big armchair.*

armed *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **heavily, well** | **lightly** | **fully**
- PREP. **with** *The soldiers were all armed with automatic rifles.*

armistice *noun*

- VERB + ARMISTICE **ask for, call for, seek** | **negotiate, work out** | **agree to, sign**
- PREP. **~with** *to sign an armistice with the Americans*

armour *noun*

- ADJ. **full, heavy** | **light** | **body** *the police should be protected by body armour.* | **protective**
- VERB + ARMOUR **have on, wear** | **put on, take off** | **penetrate, pierce** *An arrow had pierced his armour.*
- PREP. **in ~** *warriors in full armour*
- PHRASES **a suit of armour** *He wore a suit of heavy armour and carried a sword.*

armoured *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **heavily** *a convoy of heavily armoured vehicles* | **lightly** | **fully** *a horse capable of carrying a fully armoured knight*

arms *noun*

- ADJ. **nuclear** | **small** *fighters using small arms and home-made grenades*
- VERB + ARMS **bear, carry** *The right to bear arms is enshrined in the constitution.* | **call sb to** (*formal*) *He called his comrades to arms* (= urged them to fight). | **take up** (*formal*) *The people took up arms to defend their country.* | **lay down** (*formal*) *The government called on them to lay down their arms and surrender.* | **supply** *He was accused of supplying arms to terrorists*

- ARMS + NOUN **race | control, embargo | deal, industry, sales, trade**
- PREP. **under ~** (*formal*) *There were more than a million men under arms during the American Civil War.*

army *noun*

1 group of soldiers
- ADJ. **great, huge, large, mighty, powerful | small | professional, regular, standing | reserve | conscript | volunteer | disciplined | modern | allied | enemy | opposing | foreign | national | private | guerrilla | rebel | advancing, invading, occupying, victorious | defeated, retreating**
- VERB + ARMY **have | go into, join** *After leaving school Mike went into the army.* **| leave | be in command of, command, lead** *He was in command of the British Army in Egypt.* ◇ *He led the army into battle.* **| drill, train | amass, build up, raise, recruit** *The king was unable to raise an army.* **| equip, supply | mobilize | deploy, field** *The French army was deployed in the Western Desert.* **| concentrate | crush, decimate, defeat, put to flight, rout** *The army was finally defeated in the autumn.* **| demobilize, disband** *The emperor was deposed and his army disbanded.*
- ARMY + VERB **gather | advance, march** *A huge army marched on London.* **| camp | go into action, invade | attack, clash, fight** *The two opposing armies clashed in battle.* **| occupy | flee, pull back, retreat, withdraw**
- ARMY + NOUN **captain, chief, commander, general, officer | corps, personnel, unit | barracks, base, camp, headquarters | career | patrol | greatcoat, uniform | wife**
- PREP. **in the ~** *Her husband is in the army.*

2 large group
- ADJ. **vast** *a vast army of personnel* **| small** *a small army of volunteers* **| growing, increasing | reserve**
- PREP. **of** *He argued that unemployment created a useful reserve army of labour.*

aroma *noun*

- ADJ. **pungent, rich, strong | distinctive | lingering | faint, subtle | pleasant, sweet, wonderful | appetizing, mouth-watering**
- VERB + AROMA **savour, smell** *As soon as I opened the front door I smelled the distinctive aroma of fresh coffee.* **| be filled with, have** *The room was filled with a strong aroma of woodsmoke.*
- AROMA + VERB **linger, waft** *The aroma of fresh baking wafted towards her.*

arrange *verb*

1 plan/organize sth
- ADV. **easily | with difficulty** *These things can be arranged with difficulty.* **| hastily, hurriedly, quickly | secretly | specially**
- VERB + ARRANGE **try to | be able to, can/could** *Todd will be able to arrange matters.* **| be difficult/easy/possible to** *These matters are easy to arrange.*
- PREP. **for** *I'd be very grateful if you could arrange for this work to be carried out.*

2 put in order; make neat/attractive
- ADV. **carefully, neatly** *Her red hair was carefully arranged and her face made up.* **| alphabetically, chronologically, symmetrically, systematically** *The books are arranged alphabetically by author.*
- PREP. **in** *She arranged the chairs in neat rows.* **into** *She took the list of visitors' names and arranged them into groups of four.*
- PHRASES **arrange sth in alphabetical/chronological order** *The names are arranged in alphabetical order.*

arrangement *noun*

1 plans/organization
- ADJ. **alternative, better, different, new, other** *It may be necessary to make alternative arrangements.* **| final | practical | satisfactory, sensible, suitable | careful, detailed | flexible | conventional | unconventional, unusual | special** *There are special arrangements for people working overseas.* **| formal | necessary, proper | administrative, organizational | domestic, funeral, holiday, living, pension, seating, security, sleeping, travel, working** *Their domestic arrangements were considered unconventional at the time.*
- VERB + ARRANGEMENT **make | complete, confirm, finalize** *Arrangements for the trip have now been completed.* **| discuss** *We are just discussing the final arrangements for the concert.* **| upset** *All her careful arrangements had been upset!*
- ARRANGEMENT + VERB **stand** *As far as I know the arrangement still stands.* **| fall through** *The catering arrangements for the conference have fallen through.*
- PREP. **~ for** *Arrangements for the funeral are complete.* **~ with** *I have made arrangements with the shop for the goods to be delivered here.*

2 agreement
- ADJ. **business, financial** *It's purely a business arrangement—there's no need to get emotionally involved.* **| convenient | special | formal | informal | voluntary | private | reciprocal | long-standing, long-term, permanent | interim, temporary**
- VERB + ARRANGEMENT **have** *The company has a special arrangement with the bank.* **| agree, come to, make** *She made an arrangement with her employer whereby she worked a reduced number of hours.*
- PREP. **by (an/the) ~** *Viewing of the property is only possible by arrangement with the owner.* ◇ *The couple have an arrangement by which they each contribute equally to the cost of the house.* **under an/the ~** *Under this arrangement you can pay for the goods over a longer period.* **| ~ between** *an arrangement between the two men* **~ with** *He finally came to an arrangement with his landlord.*
- PHRASES **by prior arrangement** *A tour of the theatre is available by prior arrangement.*

3 group of things placed together
- ADJ. **complex, complicated** *a complex arrangement of rods and cogs* **| physical** *Even the physical arrangement of the classroom can influence the way children learn.* **| floral, flower**
- VERB + ARRANGEMENT **design, do** *Who did this beautiful flower arrangement?*

array *noun*

- ADJ. **broad, diverse, extensive, huge, vast, wide | bewildering, colourful, confusing, dazzling, fascinating, fine, formidable, glittering, impressive, remarkable, rich, splendid, staggering, stunning, wonderful** *a dazzling array of talent*
- VERB + ARRAY **have, offer, provide** *The store offers a bewildering array of garden tools.* **| be faced with** *The customer is faced with a formidable array of products.* **| choose from, select from** *It is difficult to choose from the vast array of wines on offer.*

arrears *noun*

- ADJ. **debt, mortgage, rent, tax**
- VERB + ARREARS **fall into, get into, owe** *They fell into arrears with their rent.* ◇ *The government has agreed to pay all arrears owed to members of the armed forces.* **| accumulate** *The country had accumulated arrears of \$80 million on loans of \$400 million.* **| pay (off)** *struggling to pay off her mortgage arrears* **| recover** *The local authority must try to recover arrears of rent.*

• ARREARS + VERB **amount to sth, total sth** *By this time the arrears amounted to £12 000.*
• PREP. **in ~** *She was six months in arrears with the mortgage.* ◇ *You will be paid monthly in arrears.* | **~ on** *There have been sharp increases in arrears on interest payments.*

arrest *noun*

• ADJ. **illegal, unlawful, wrongful** | **arbitrary** | **mass, widespread** | **citizen's** *He grabbed the intruder by the arm and said, 'I am making a citizen's arrest.'* | **house** *Following the coup, parliamentary leaders were put under house arrest.*
• VERB + ARREST **make** | **place sb under, put sb under** | **lead to** *A reward has been offered for information that leads to the arrest of the murderer.* | **avoid, escape, evade** | **resist** *He was charged with violent behaviour and resisting arrest.*
• ARREST + NOUN **warrant**
• PREP. **under ~** *The man is now under arrest in London.* | **~ for** *They made 11 arrests for possession of drugs.*
• PHRASES **the power of arrest** *The government may remove the power of arrest from military police.* **under close arrest** *Woolley was placed under close arrest for mutiny.* **a warrant for sb's arrest**

arrival *noun*

1 act of arriving
• ADJ. **early** | **late** | **timely** *The timely arrival of the cheque took away the need to borrow money.* | **eventual** | **dramatic, sudden, surprise, unexpected** | **expected, imminent, impending** *I told her of my brother's expected arrival.*
• VERB + ARRIVAL **announce, herald, signal** *A fanfare of trumpets heralded the arrival of the King.* | **expect** | **await** *a crowd awaiting the arrival of the film star* | **greet** *The staff greeted the arrival of the new head teacher with excitement.* | **celebrate, welcome** | **delay** | **hasten**
• ARRIVAL + NOUN **time**
• PREP. **on/upon (sb's) ~** *Guests receive dinner upon arrival at the hotel.* **with the ~** *With the arrival of John's friends, the party became really enjoyable.* | **~ at** *his arrival at the theatre* **~ in** *their arrival in Paris*
• PHRASES **arrival on the scene** *They were saved by the arrival on the scene of another boat.* **arrivals and departures** *There are 120 arrivals and departures every day.* **time of arrival** *your expected time of arrival is 7.15.*

2 sb/sth that arrives
• ADJ. **early, first** | **late** *Someone should stay here to meet the late arrivals.* | **latest, new, recent** *The club has a dinner to welcome new arrivals to the town.* ◇ *We're expecting a new arrival* (= a baby) *in the family soon.*
• VERB + ARRIVAL **expect** | **meet** | **welcome**

arrive *verb*

• ADV. **early, late** | **shortly, soon** *We should arrive shortly.* | **finally** *We finally arrived at our destination late that evening.* | **on time, punctually** | **safe and sound, safely** | **unannounced** *My uncle arrived unannounced yesterday evening.*
• VERB + ARRIVE **be due to** *We are due to arrive in Rome at ten o'clock.* | **fail to** *The package failed to arrive.*
• PREP. **at** *We arrived at the hotel late.* **in** *I should arrive in London tomorrow morning.*
• PHRASES **the first/last to arrive**

arrogance *noun*

• ADJ. **breathtaking, supreme** | **unconscious**
• VERB + ARROGANCE **have** *She had the arrogance to believe the law did not apply to her.* | **display, show**

arrow *noun*

1 weapon
• ADJ. **poison/poisoned**
• QUANT. **hail, volley** *A hail of arrows descended from the tower.*
• VERB + ARROW **fire, shoot**
• ARROW + VERB **hit sb/sth** *The arrow hit its target.* | **miss (sb/sth)** *She aimed carefully at the tree but the arrow missed.*
• ARROW + NOUN **head** (also **arrowhead**) | **slit** *the arrow slits in the castle's battlements*
• PHRASES **a bow and arrow** *The people used bows and arrows for hunting.*

2 symbol
• ADJ. **left, right** | **down, up** *The down arrow indicates rain.* | **broken, curved** *The old road is shown on the map by broken arrows.*
• VERB + ARROW **follow** *Follow the red arrows to get to the camp reception.*
• ARROW + VERB **denote sth, indicate sth, mark sth, point, show sth** *You will see an arrow pointing to the left.*
• ARROW + NOUN **key** *You can scroll through the text using the up and down arrow keys.*

arson *noun*

• ADJ. **attempted**
• ARSON + NOUN **attack**
⇨ Note at CRIME (for verbs)

NOTES

Works of art

a piece/work of art
Michelangelo's Pietà is a magnificent work of art.
collect ~
She collects Jacobean portraits.
display, exhibit, show ~
The works will be displayed in the new wing of the museum.
~ be (put) on display/exhibition/show
~ go on display/exhibition/show
paintings put on show for the first time
The photographs are on exhibition until the end of September.
house ~
An annexe was built to house the sculptures.
a series of ~
a series of paintings by Van Gogh
a collection/exhibition of ~
an exhibition of early 20th century French masterpieces
an art/photographic/photography exhibition
The open art exhibition will allow new artists to exhibit their work.
by ~
a sculpture by Barbara Hepworth

art *noun*

1 paintings, drawings, etc.
• ADJ. **great, high** | **abstract, avant-garde, commercial, conceptual, figurative, fine, graphic, performance, pop/popular, sacred, visual** | **contemporary, modern**
• VERB + ART **create, produce** *one of the greatest works of art ever produced*
• ART + NOUN **gallery** | **collector, critic, dealer, historian, lover** | **treasure, work** (also **artwork**) | **college, school** | **form** *Cinema became accepted as an art form.* | **history** | **market** | **world** *Many people from the art world attended the painter's funeral.*

2 **the arts** art, music, theatre, literature, etc.

- ADJ. **creative, decorative, dramatic, performing, plastic, visual**
- PHRASES **arts and crafts** *an exhibition of Peruvian arts and crafts* **funding for the arts, a patron of the arts, sponsorship of the arts**

3 arts not sciences
- ARTS + NOUN **subject | degree**
- PHRASES **arts and sciences**

4 ability/skill
- VERB + ART **master, perfect** *I've never mastered the art of making bread.*
- PREP. **~ of** *Television has ruined the art of conversation.*
- PHRASES **get sth down to a fine art** (= learn to do it very well) *She's got the business of buying Christmas presents down to a fine art.*

artery *noun*

- ADJ. **main, major | blocked, clogged | severed | carotid, coronary, pulmonary, etc.**
- VERB + ARTERY **block | widen** *The surgeon will widen her arteries.* **| rupture, sever**
- ARTERY + VERB **clog up** *Too much fatty food will make your arteries more likely to clog up.*
- PHRASES **hardening of the arteries** (= a disease of the arteries) *She suffers from hardening of the arteries.* **veins and arteries** *blood flowing through veins and arteries*

arthritis *noun*

- ADJ. **severe | chronic | rheumatoid**
- VERB + ARTHRITIS **have, suffer (from) | develop, get** *It is unclear why some people develop arthritis.* **| treat**
- ARTHRITIS + NOUN **sufferer**
- PHRASES **crippled with arthritis**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

article *noun*

1 piece of writing
- ADJ. **brilliant, excellent, good, informative, interesting | influential, major, seminal | controversial, critical, provocative | in-depth | feature, lead/leading, review** *A leading article in 'The Times' accused the minister of lying.* **| occasional** (= not part of a series) *It was her job to commission occasional articles.* **| offending** *An advertisement will now replace the offending article.* **| academic, learned, scholarly | journal, magazine, newspaper, periodical, press**
- QUANT. **series**
- VERB + ARTICLE **commission | do** *I'm doing an article about ways of preventing pollution.* **| contribute, submit | read, see** *Did you see the article on Europe in today's paper?* **| carry, feature, print, publish, run** *The magazine refused to print his article.*
- ARTICLE + VERB **appear** *The article appears in this week's edition of 'The Spectator'.* **| describe sth, detail sth, explain sth, point sth out, say sth, state sth | discuss sth, examine sth, explore sth, focus on sth, look at sth** *The article looks at two questions.* **| allege sth, argue sth, claim sth, imply sth, suggest sth | attack sb/sth, criticize sb/sth | cite sb/sth, quote sb/sth | continue, go on** *The article goes on to quote from Darwin's 'Origin of Species'.* **| conclude sth**
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *She admitted she was wrong in an article in the newspaper.* **| ~ about, ~ by** *an article about atomic clocks by Professor Keith Runcorn* **~ on** *an article on the dangers of sunbathing*
- PHRASES **an article called/entitled/headed sth** *an article entitled 'Think Yourself Thin'*

2 part of law
- ADJ. **key** *The key articles of the constitution can only be changed by referendum.*
- VERB + ARTICLE **be in breach of, breach, contravene, flout, infringe, violate** *The actions of the organization are in breach of Article 12 of the treaty.*
- ARTICLE + VERB **provide sth, specify sth, state sth** *Article 10 provides that all businesses must be registered correctly.*
- PREP. **under an/the ~** *The judge ordered the child's return home under Article 12 of the Convention.*
- PHRASES **the terms of an article** *The terms of Article 3 will be changed by the new government.*

3 thing
- ADJ. **finished** *The finished article takes two months to manufacture.* **| the genuine** *Fake designer watches are sold at a fraction of the price of the genuine article.* **| offending | household, toilet**
- VERB + ARTICLE **make, manufacture, produce**
- PHRASES **an article of clothing**

4 grammar
- ADJ. **definite, indefinite**
- VERB + ARTICLE **take** *Names of countries in English do not usually take an article.*

articulate *verb*

1 pronounce sth carefully
- ADV. **carefully, clearly, well** *She spoke slowly, articulating each word clearly.* **| poorly**

2 express sth
- ADV. **clearly, well** *She cannot articulate her feelings very well.* **| fully | poorly**

articulate *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **highly, very** *a highly articulate woman*
- PREP. **about** *The teachers help the children to be more articulate about their strengths and weaknesses.*

artificial *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem**
- ADV. **highly, very | completely, entirely, totally | increasingly | a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | patently** *a patently artificial contrivance*

artillery *noun*

- ADJ. **field | heavy** *The enemy has enough heavy artillery to win the war.*
- ARTILLERY + NOUN **attack, barrage, bombardment, fire | piece, shell | train, unit** *The soldiers of the artillery train had panicked and cut the traces of their horses.* ◇ *nuclear artillery units*

artist *noun*

1 person who creates works of art
- ADJ. **gifted, great, talented | distinguished, established, famous, leading, major, successful, well-known | aspiring, budding, up-and-coming | struggling, unknown | amateur, professional | self-taught | serious** *He is a serious artist, and totally committed to his work.* **| local | female, woman | male | creative | real, true** (*figurative*) *My husband is a real artist in the kitchen.* **| abstract, avant-garde, commercial, conceptual, figurative, fine, graffiti, graphic, landscape, make-up, pavement, performance, pop/popular, scenic, visual, war, watercolour, wildlife | contemporary, living, modern, nineteenth-century, etc.**
- VERB + ARTIST **commission** *In 1942 the city commissioned war artist John Piper to paint its bombed cathedral.* **| feature** *an exhibition featuring wildlife artist Emma Gray*
- ARTIST + VERB **create sth, draw (sth), paint (sth), produce sth** *an artist who paints in oils* **| work** *artists who work in different media* **| exhibit sth, show sth** *Local*

watercolour artists are currently exhibiting their work in the town hall.
- PHRASES **an artist in residence** *the new artist in residence at the Tate Gallery*

2 (*also* **artiste**) a professional entertainer
- ADJ. **guest** *The Blue Note Quartet will be the guest artists tomorrow night.* | **solo** | **recording** | **cabaret, escape, mime, music hall, rap, reggae, trapeze, variety**
- VERB + ARTIST **feature** *The festival featured artists such John Mclaughlin and Russell Malone.*
- ARTIST + VERB **perform (sth)** | **work**

⇨ Note at JOB

ascend *verb*

- ADV. **gently** | **steeply**
- PREP. **from** *The road ascends steeply from the harbour.*

ascent *noun*

1 act of climbing/moving up
- ADJ. **gradual, slow**
- VERB + ASCENT **make** *The climbers made their ascent of the mountain without oxygen.*
- PREP. **~from** *the ascent from the valley* **~to** *their ascent to the summit*

2 upward path/slope
- ADJ. **steep** | **long**
- VERB + ASCENT **climb** *climbing the steep ascent on to the plateau* | **to** *a steep ascent to the village*

3 becoming more important or powerful
- ADJ. **rapid** | **gradual** | **~to** *her rapid ascent to power*

ash *noun*

1 powder that is left after sth has burnt
- ADJ. **glowing, hot, red-hot, smouldering** *the glowing ashes of the dying fire* | **cold, dead** *The fire had died to cold ashes.* | **fine** *Fine ash covered the hill near the volcano.* | **bonfire, cigarette, coal, volcanic, wood**
- QUANT. **cloud** *A cloud of ash rose from the volcano.*
- VERB + ASH **flick, tap** (used about cigarette ash) *He flicked ash into the ashtray.* | **reduce sth to, turn to ~es** *a village reduced to ashes by war* ◇ (*figurative*) *All her dreams had turned to ashes.*
- ASH + VERB **fall** *Ash from the volcano fall over a wide area.*
- PHRASES **rise from the ashes** (*figurative*) *The party had risen, like a phoenix, from the ashes of electoral disaster.*

2 **ashes** remains of a dead body
- VERB + ASHES **scatter** *His ashes were scattered on his beloved farm.*

ashamed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **make sb** *His foul-mouthed way of speaking made me ashamed of him.*
- ADV. **deeply, really, terribly, very** | **thoroughly** | **a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** | **bitterly** | **instantly, suddenly** *Then she smiled and Rose was instantly ashamed of her jealous feelings.*
- PREP. **about** *I've done nothing to be ashamed about.* **at** *He was slightly ashamed at having run away.* **of** *She was ashamed of what she had done.*

ask *verb*

1 put a question to sb
- ADV. **gently, quietly, softly** *'How do you feel?' she asked softly.* | **amiably, conversationally, politely** *'Did you sleep well?' he asked politely.* | **belligerently, crossly, icily, nastily, querulously, sarcastically, slyly, testily** | **casually, dryly, innocently** *'Oh, Sue went too, did she?' I asked innocently* (= pretending I did not know that this was important). | **curiously, incredulously, pointedly, suspiciously** | **anxiously, apprehensively, fearfully, solicitously** *'Will he be all right?' Sabrina asked anxiously.* | **legitimately** *We can legitimately ask what competence an official based in Whitehall has to solve the problems of rural Scotland.* | **rhetorically**
- VERB + ASK **long to, want to** *She longed to ask Mary if she knew what was wrong.* ◇ *I wanted to ask him a question.* | **dare (to)** *I wondered how old she was but I didn't dare ask.* | **forget to** *I completely forgot to ask his name.*
- PREP. **about** *He asked about her family.*
- PHRASES **get asked sth** *I often get asked that.* **if you don't mind me/my asking** *How old are you—if you don't mind my asking?*

2 request sth
- ADV. **nicely** *If you ask her nicely, she'll give you a sweet.*
- PREP. **for** *asking for money*

asleep *adj.*

- VERBS **be, lie, seem** *The baby lay peacefully asleep in its pram.* ◇ *All the houses seemed asleep.* | **drop, fall** *I fell asleep almost immediately.* | **remain, stay**
- ADV. **deeply, fast, heavily, sound** *The children were all sound asleep in bed.* | **almost, half, nearly** *At the end of the afternoon they were exhausted and half asleep.* | **peacefully** | **still**

aspect *noun*

- ADJ. **central, crucial, essential, fundamental, important, key, main, major, principal, significant** | **basic, broad, general** *Questions also cover much broader aspects of general health and fitness.* | **appealing, attractive, beneficial, encouraging, exciting, fascinating, interesting, pleasing, positive** | **alarming, controversial, difficult, disappointing, disturbing, negative, sinister, terrible, worst** *the worst aspects of tourism* | **bizarre, curious, intriguing, puzzling** | **remarkable, striking** | **subtle** | **mundane** | **neglected** | **formal, functional, practical, theoretical** *the formal aspects of the language system* | **business, commercial, cultural, economic, environmental, ethical, financial, historical, human, legal, military, moral, physical, political, psychological, religious, scientific, social, technical**
- VERB + ASPECT **have** *The project has two main aspects.* | **take on** *Events began to take on a more sinister aspect.* | **consider, cover, deal with, discuss, emphasize, examine, explore, focus on, look at, study** *We will be looking at many different aspects of pollution.* | **demonstrate, illuminate, illustrate** *a unique collection illustrating aspects of Irish transport history* | **ignore, neglect**
- PREP. **from the ... ~** *This scheme is very good from the social aspect.* | **~to** *the positive aspects to retirement*
- PHRASES **all aspects of sth, (in) every aspect (of sth)** *The service was excellent in every aspect.*

aspiration *noun*

- ADJ. **high, lofty** *He has high aspirations and wants to improve his qualifications.* | **failed** | **career, national, personal, political, social**
- ADJ. **have** | **achieve, fulfil, meet, realize, satisfy** *a political party that fulfils the aspirations of the British people*
- PREP. **~ for** *an aspiration for personal power* **~ to** *the country's aspirations to independence* **~ towards** *aspirations towards starting his own business*
- PHRASES **dreams/hopes/needs/values and aspirations** *She talked about her hopes and aspirations.*

aspirin *noun*

- ADJ. **soluble**
- QUANT. **dose**
- VERB + ASPIRIN **take** *She took an aspirin and went to bed.* | **dissolve** *Dissolve two aspirin in water.*
- ASPIRIN + VERB **dissolve** *Aspirin dissolves quickly.*

assassin *noun*

• ADJ. **attempted, would-be | hired, professional** *He was killed by a hired assassin.* | **trained**

assassinate *verb*

• VERB + ASSASSINATE **attempt to, try to | plan to, plot to** *He was executed in 1887 for plotting to assassinate the tsar.*
• PHRASES **an attempt/a plot to assassinate sb**

assassination *noun*

• ADJ. **attempted | failed | political** *Three local leaders have been killed in political assassinations.* | **character** *a vicious campaign of character assassination*
• VERB + ASSASSINATION **carry out | plan, plot** *It is believed that they plotted the assassination of the king.* | **escape, survive** *The judge escaped assassination by drug dealers.*
• ASSASSINATION + NOUN **attempt, plot** *He has survived several assassination attempts.* | **squad**

assault *noun*

1 crime of attacking sb
• ADJ. **brutal, savage, vicious, violent | common** (*law*) | **aggravated** (*law*), **serious | alleged | attempted | indecent, physical, racial, sexual | police**
• QUANT. **series, wave**
• VERB + ASSAULT **carry out, commit** *assaults committed by teenagers* | **be the victim of, suffer**
• ASSAULT + VERB **happen, take place**
• PREP. **~ against** *Better street lighting has helped reduce the number of assaults against women.* **~ on/upon**
• PHRASES **allegations of assault** *allegations of police assault on the boy* **assault and battery** (*law*)
⇨ Note at CRIME (for more verbs)

2 military/verbal attack
• ADJ. **all-out, direct, frontal, full-scale, major, massive** *After an all-out assault the village was captured by the enemy.* | **fresh, further | sustained** *She used the article to make a sustained assault on her former political allies.* | **successful | air, amphibious, ground** *air assaults by fighter planes* | **military | verbal**
• QUANT. **series**
• VERB + ASSAULT **carry out, launch (into), lead, make, mount** *Enemy troops launched an assault on the town.* ◇ *He launched into a verbal assault on tabloid journalism.* | **come under** *The factory came under assault from soldiers in the mountains* | **withstand** *The garrison was built to withstand assaults.*
• ASSAULT + NOUN **course** *They took part in a vigorous army assault course.* | **rifle | force**
• PREP. **under ~** *Today these values are under assault.* | **~ on** *a series of assaults on enemy targets*

assault *verb*

• ADV. **badly, brutally, savagely, seriously, violently | indecently, physically, sexually, verbally**

assemble *verb*

• ADV. **carefully | badly | hastily, quickly** *a hastily assembled force of warriors* | **easily | together**
• VERB + ASSEMBLE **begin to** *The French began to assemble an army* | **manage to | be easy to, be possible to | be difficult to**
• PREP. **for** *We had assembled for the first rehearsal.* **into** *the force that permits atoms to assemble into molecules*
• PHRASES **fully/partially assembled** *The shelves are available in kit form or fully assembled.*

assembly *noun*

1 elected group
• ADJ. **elected, representative | consultative, general, legislative | local, national, provincial, regional, state**
• VERB + ASSEMBLY **create, form, set up | elect, vote for | dissolve**
• ASSEMBLY + VERB **meet** *Provincial assemblies meet once a year.* | **vote** *The assembly voted to delay the legislation to allow further consultation to take place.*
• ASSEMBLY + NOUN **member | seat**
• PREP. **in an/the ~** *These issues have been discussed in the regional assemblies.*
• PHRASES **a meeting/session of the assembly**
⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION

2 group gathered together
• ADJ. **public | peaceful | unlawful**
• VERB + ASSEMBLY **hold** *They demanded the right to hold peaceful assemblies.*
• ASSEMBLY + NOUN **point** *When the fire alarm sounds, leave the building and proceed to your assembly point.*
• PHRASES **freedom of assembly, the right of assembly** (= the right to gather freely)

3 at school
• ADJ. **school | morning**
• VERB + ASSEMBLY **conduct, have, hold** *We hold an assembly every morning.* | **attend, go to**
• ASSEMBLY + NOUN **hall**
• PREP. **at/during/in ~** *The announcement was made during morning assembly.*

4 putting parts together
• ADJ. **easy | home** *furniture designed for home assembly* | **correct | final** *This factory deals with final assembly and testing.*
• ASSEMBLY + NOUN **line** *workers on the assembly line* | **plant** *The company has twenty assembly plants in Europe.* | **work**

assent *noun*

• ADJ. **common, general, universal** *Medicine is, by common assent, a good profession.* ◇ *There was general assent about his achievements.* | **royal** *The Education Act received the royal assent in 1944.*
• VERB + ASSENT **give sth, grant** *The government gave their assent to the project.* | **withhold | meet with, obtain, receive | express, grunt, indicate, nod** *He nodded his assent when I asked if I could leave.*
• PREP. **in ~** *She smiled in assent.* **with/without sb's ~** *The raising of taxes without the assent of Parliament was declared illegal.*
• PHRASES **a murmur/nod of assent** *The suggestion was greeted with a murmur of assent.*

assert *verb*

1 say sth clearly and firmly
• ADV. **boldly, confidently, emphatically, forcefully, strongly** *The report asserts confidently that the industry will grow.* | **directly, explicitly | simply** *He had no real evidence—he simply asserted that what he said was true.* | **repeatedly | rightly**

2 make other people recognize your rights/authority
• ADV. **successfully** *They successfully asserted their right to protect their homes.*
• VERB + ASSERT **need to | be determined to, wish to** *She wished to assert her independence from her parents.* | **seek to, try to | be able to, manage to** *He managed to assert his power over the media.* | **be unable to, fail to**

assertion *noun*

• ADJ. **bold, confident, proud | categorical, dogmatic, general, sweeping** *sweeping assertions about the role of women in society* | **simple** *The argument needs to pro-*

gress beyond the simple assertion that criminals are made not born. | **unfounded, unsubstantiated, unsupported**
• VERB + ASSERTION **make** *How can you make such an assertion?* | **justify, prove, support** *Your assertion is not supported by the facts.* | **accept, agree with** | **challenge, question** *Researchers have recently challenged these assertions.* | **reject** | **refute**
• PREP. **~about** *assertions about human nature*

assess *verb*

1 form an opinion
• ADV. **fully** | **accurately, correctly, properly**
• VERB + ASSESS **attempt to, try to** | **help to** | **be difficult to** *It is difficult to fully assess the damage.*

2 amount/value
• ADV. **accurately, correctly, properly**
• VERB + ASSESS **attempt to, try to** | **be difficult to** *It is difficult to assess the building's value properly without seeing it.*
• PREP. **at** *The legal costs have been assessed at £75 000.*

assessment *noun*

• ADJ. **broad, general, overall** | **individual** | **continuous, regular** *Examination is by continuous assessment.* | **quick, rapid** | **external, internal** | **initial** | **final** | **accurate, balanced, fair, good, proper, realistic** | **careful, comprehensive, detailed, formal, systematic, thorough** | **independent, objective** | **personal, subjective** *He was shrewd in his personal assessments.* | **adequate** | **critical** | **optimistic, pessimistic** | **course** | **tax** | **needs, performance, quality, risk** *Needs assessment is crucial if the hospital is to deliver effective health care.* | **environmental, financial, medical, psychiatric, scientific**
• VERB + ASSESSMENT **carry out, do, give, make, undertake** *The new manager carried out an assessment of the sales department.*
• ASSESSMENT + NOUN **methods, procedures, technique** | **criteria** | **process, system**
• PHRASES **a form/method of assessment**

asset *noun*

1 useful person/thing
• ADJ. **big, considerable, great, important, invaluable, precious, priceless, real, tremendous, useful, valuable** *The teachers are the school's biggest asset.* | **best, main, major, principal, prize** | **cultural** *The tourist industry requires that the country's cultural assets be made more accessible.* | **natural** *Bow windows are a natural asset to any room and should be highlighted.*
• PREP. **~to** *She will be an asset to any school she attends.*

2 what a company owns
• ADJ. **combined, total** | **gross** | **net** *The company's net assets are worth millions.* | **business, company, corporate** | **commercial, financial** | **current, disposable, liquid** *Liquid assets can be sold more quickly.* | **capital, fixed, non-cash, non-monetary, physical, property** | **tangible** | **intangible** | **depreciable, wasting** | **hidden** *They have hidden assets in banks around the world.* | **foreign, overseas** | **personal** | **national, public, state**
• VERB + ASSET **have, hold, own, possess** *assets held by the company in Asia* | **transfer** *He transferred all his assets into his wife's name.* | **accumulate, acquire, buy** | **dispose of, realize, sell** *The business disposed of all its capital assets.* | **increase, reduce** *The company has increased its UK assets.* | **freeze** *The courts can order a company's assets to be frozen.* | **release, unfreeze**
• ASSET + VERB **appreciate, grow** *Net assets have grown to $169 million.* | **decline, depreciate, dwindle**
• ASSET + NOUN **value** | **management** | **sale** | **stripping** *measures to prevent asset stripping*
• PHRASES **assets and liabilities**

assignment *noun*

1 task
• ADJ. **special** | **important** | **dangerous, difficult, tough** | **business, work** | **modelling, photographic**
• VERB + ASSIGNMENT **accept, take on** *Why did you take on this assignment if you're so busy?* | **carry out** | **refuse** *If you refuse this assignment you risk losing your job.* | **complete, finish** | **give sb**
• PREP. **on ~** *The photographer is on assignment in China at the moment.*

2 piece of school/college work
• ADJ. **practical, reading, written**
• VERB + ASSIGNMENT **give, hand out, set** *The teacher set an assignment on pollution.* | **do** | **complete, finish** | **hand in** *The students handed in their assignments.*
• PREP. **~on** *an assignment on Roman history*

assimilate *verb*

1 learn/understand
• ADV. **easily, quickly, readily** *Children assimilate new information very quickly.*

2 become/make sb part of sth
• ADV. **fully** *Many new immigrants have not yet assimilated fully into the new culture.*
• PREP. **into**

assist *verb*

• ADV. **greatly, materially** *We have been greatly assisted by individuals and organizations.* | **actively**
• VERB + ASSIST **be designed to** *measures designed to assist people with disabilities*
• PREP. **in** *He had to assist her in opening the gates.* **with** *She offered to assist with the marketing of the product.*

assistance *noun*

• ADJ. **considerable, great, real, substantial** | **limited** | **invaluable, valuable** | **practical** | **special** | **direct, emergency, immediate** *People in the flooded areas are in need of direct assistance.* | **mutual** *The treaty pledged mutual assistance in the event of an attack on either country.* | **expert, professional** | **external, outside** | **foreign, international** | **government, national** *They argued the case for extra government assistance for the poorest regions.* | **public, social, welfare** *the stigma attached to receiving social assistance* | **personal** *disabled people who need personal assistance to enable them to live in their own homes* | **humanitarian** | **economic, financial, legal, material, medical, military, technical**
• VERB + ASSISTANCE **give sb, offer (sb), provide, render** *We provide assistance if your car breaks down.* | **get, receive** *Did you receive any assistance from the authorities?* | **pledge, promise (sb)** *The World Bank promised assistance to the value of $5 million.* | **be in need of, need, require** | **expect** | **ask for, call for, seek** *I advise you to seek assistance from the police.* | **turn to sb for** *She had no one to turn to for assistance.* | **be of, come to sb's** *Do let us know if we can be of any assistance to you.* ◇ *A sympathetic neighbour came to his assistance.* | **welcome**
• PREP. **with/without ~** *The work was completed with the assistance of local carpenters.* | **~ for** *humanitarian assistance for refugees* **~ from** *assistance from friends and family* **~ in** *assistance in finding suitable accommodation* **~with** *assistance with rent for people on a low income*

assistant *noun*

• ADJ. **chief, senior** | **personal** *I'll ask my personal assistant to deal with this.* | **administrative, care, catering, checkout, clerical, laboratory, library, production, research, sales, shop, technical** *She took up a post as research assistant in the Department of Pharmacology.*

- VERB + ASSISTANT **employ (sb as), have** *She had a clerical assistant to do her paperwork.* | **get, hire (sb as), recruit (sb as)** *I'm getting a new assistant next month.* | **sack**
- PREP. **~ to** *assistant to the Production Manager*

⇨ Note at JOB

associate *noun*

- ADJ. **close** *a close associate with whom he started a business* | **former, old** *Her former associates refused to see her.* | **business, political**

association *noun*

1 an organization

- ADJ. **international, local, national, regional** | **private, public, voluntary** | **arts, business, community, constituency, consumer, football, housing, industry, library, neighbourhood, parent-teacher, professional, student, trade, etc.**
- ASSOCIATION + VERB **meet** *The association meets four times a year.*

⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION (for more verbs)

2 relationship between people/organizations

- ADJ. **close** | **free** *It was to be a free association of equal partners.* | **loose** *a loose association of sovereign states* | **long, long-standing** | **personal**
- VERB + ASSOCIATION **form** | **maintain** *They have maintained a close association with a college in the US.*
- PREP. **in ~ with** (= together with) *The book was published in association with British Heritage.* | **~ between** *the association between the two countries* **~ with** *His association with such criminals can only destroy him.*
- PHRASES **freedom of association** *One of the most important political freedoms is freedom of association.*

3 connection between things

- ADJ. **clear, close, direct, intimate, strong** *a close association between the two nations* | **loose** | **early, long, traditional** | **formal** | **free** *the technique of free association in which the patient is encouraged to say the first thing that comes to mind*
- VERB + ASSOCIATION **have** *The city has had a long association with the mining industry.* | **form** *You want the child to form an association between good behaviour and rewards.* | **demonstrate, find, prove, show** *The research showed an association between diet and various diseases.*
- PREP. **by ~** *Dogs learn mainly by association.* **in ~ with** (= together with) *We are working in association with several charities.* | **~ between** *a clear association between good health and regular exercise* **~ with** *the traditional association of the Democrats with minority interests*
- PHRASES **guilty/tainted by association** *He was considered tainted by association with the corrupt regime.*

4 **associations** feelings/memories

- ADJ. **strong** | **happy, positive, pleasant** | **negative, unhappy, unpleasant** | **cultural, historical, literary** *Tourists visit the city for its historical associations.*
- VERB + ASSOCIATIONS **have, hold** *Does the name 'Baxter' have any associations for you?* | **call up, evoke, spark off, trigger** *The smell of fresh bread triggers all kinds of associations for me.*
- PREP. **~ for**

assortment *noun*

- ADJ. **large, rich, wide** | **mixed, varied** | **odd, strange** *She was wearing an odd assortment of clothes.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a mixed assortment of sweets*

assume *verb*

- ADV. **automatically, naturally** *I automatically assumed that you knew about this.* | **reasonably, safely** *I think we can safely assume that this situation will continue.*
- VERB + ASSUME **can, might** | **tend to** | **be fair to, be reasonable to, be safe to** *It is reasonable to assume that the economy will continue to improve.* | **be a mistake to, be wrong to** | **be easy to** *It's all too easy to assume that people know what they are doing.*
- PHRASES **let us assume** *Let us assume for a moment that the plan succeeds.*

assumption *noun*

- ADJ. **basic, fundamental, hidden, implicit, tacit, underlying, unspoken** | **common, conventional, general, shared, widespread** *shared assumptions between teachers and parents* | **correct, reasonable, valid** | **erroneous, false, flawed, incorrect, mistaken, questionable, wrong**
- QUANT. **number, series, set** *Your argument is based on a set of questionable assumptions.*
- VERB + ASSUMPTION **make** *She's always making assumptions about how much money people have.* | **base sth on, start from, work on** *We are working on the assumption that the techniques are safe.* | **accept** | **challenge, disprove, question, test**
- ASSUMPTION + VERB **underly sth, underpin sth** *the assumptions underlying their beliefs*
- PREP. **on the ~ that** *I set the table for eight people, on the assumption that Jo would come.* | **~ about** *assumptions about how women should behave*

assurance *noun*

1 promise

- ADJ. **absolute, categorical, clear, firm, full** | **further, repeated** | **formal, official, personal, verbal, written** *He gave me his personal assurance that the vehicle was safe.*
- VERB + ASSURANCE **have** *We now have a firm assurance of support from the government.* | **give sb, offer sb, provide** | **gain, get, obtain, receive** | **ask for, demand, seek, want** | **accept, be satisfied with** *They accepted his assurance that patients would be treated as soon as possible.* | **go back on, renege on** *He accused the minister of reneging on assurances given earlier.*
- PREP. **~ about** *an assurance about the safety of this equipment* **~ by/from** *assurances from the head teacher*
- PHRASES **despite/in spite of assurances** *Despite assurances from the government, the chemicals are known to be dangerous.*

2 feeling of calm and confidence

- ADJ. **calm, quiet** *She spoke with calm assurance.*
- VERB + ASSURANCE **have** | **show** *Even at a very young age she showed a great deal of assurance.*

assure *verb*

- VERB + ASSURE **can** | **hasten to** *He hastened to assure us that the press would not be informed.*
- PREP. **of** *We can assure you of our full support.*
- PHRASES **let me assure you**

assured *adj.*

1 confident

- VERBS **be, feel, look, rest, seem** *You can rest assured that your children are in good hands.*
- ADV. **very** *Although the situation was tense, her voice was calm and very assured.* | **totally**

2 certain to happen

- VERBS **be, look, seem**
- ADV. **absolutely** | **virtually**

asthma *noun*

- ADJ. **severe** | **acute, chronic** | **bronchial**
- VERB + ASTHMA **have, suffer from** | **treat**
- ASTHMA + NOUN **attack** | **sufferer**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

astonished *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**
- ADV. **absolutely, quite**
- PREP. **at** *She was quite astonished at his rudeness.* **by** *He was astonished by the amount of junk in the house.*

astonishing *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | find sth** *I find his attitude absolutely astonishing.*
- ADV. **really, truly | absolutely, quite**

astonishment *noun*

- ADJ. **great | absolute, utter | mild** *an air of mild astonishment* | **blank** *a look of blank astonishment*
- VERB + ASTONISHMENT **express | hide** *She could not hide her astonishment.*
- PREP. **in ~** *She gazed at him in astonishment.* **to sb's ~** *Then, to my great astonishment, he started to cry.* **with ~** *Everyone gasped with astonishment.* | **~ at** *He expressed astonishment at the results.*
- PHRASES **a cry/gasp/look of astonishment**

astute *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very | financially, politically**

asylum *noun*

1 protection given by a government

- ADJ. **temporary | political**
- VERB + ASYLUM **apply for, claim, request, seek** *She fled the country, and is now seeking asylum in Sweden.* | **give sb, grant sb, offer sb, provide (sb with) | get, receive | deny sb, refuse sb** *Over 400 people have been refused asylum.*
- ASYLUM + NOUN **seeker** *bogus/genuine asylum seekers* | **application, claim**
- PHRASES **an application for asylum, the right to asylum** *Those fleeing from the war have the right to asylum.*

2 mental hospital

- ADJ. **lunatic, mental**
- PREP. **in ~** *He spent three years in an asylum.*

atheist *noun*

- ADJ. **committed, confirmed, dedicated**

athlete *noun*

- ADJ. **fine, good, great, Olympic, outstanding, talented, top, world-class** *one of the greatest athletes of all time* | **natural** *She has the build and strength of a natural athlete.* | **all-round, field, track | amateur, professional**
- ATHLETE + VERB **train** *The athletes are training hard for the Olympics.* | **compete, perform** *Our field athletes have performed well.*

athletics *noun*

- ADJ. **indoor, outdoor | junior, senior | amateur, schools | international, world**
- VERB + ATHLETICS **compete in, do, take part in** *My daughter wants to compete in athletics.* | **take up** *She didn't take up athletics until she was 20.* | **quit**
- ATHLETICS + NOUN **championships, competition, event, meet, meeting | club, federation | stadium, track | star | coach | club, team | official | career** *the hardest event of her athletics career* | **circuit, scene, world** *competing on the international athletics circuit*

⇨ Special page at SPORT

atmosphere *noun*

1 general feeling in a place

- ADJ. **calm, congenial, convivial, cosy, family, friendly, happy, homely, informal, pleasant, relaxed, warm, welcoming | (highly) charged, emotional, heavy, hostile, oppressive, stifling, strained, tense | carnival, electric, heady, lively** *Before the parade, the atmosphere was electric.* | **intimate, romantic | gloomy | rarefied, unique** *the rarefied atmosphere of academic life*
- VERB + ATMOSPHERE **create** *She tries to create an atmosphere of calm and security for her children.* | **poison, ruin, sour, spoil** *His blunt comments really soured the atmosphere.* | **clear, improve, lighten** *His funny remarks lightened the atmosphere.* | **be aware of, be sensitive to, sense** *She could sense the hostile atmosphere in the room.*
- ATMOSPHERE + VERB **be charged (with sth)** *The atmosphere was charged with excitement.* | **pervade sth, prevail** *A relaxed atmosphere prevails in the club.*
- PREP. **~ between** *Since their argument there had been a strained atmosphere between them.*

2 the air

- ADJ. **heavy, humid, oppressive, polluted, smoky, stale, stifling, stuffy**
- VERB + ATMOSPHERE **poison, pollute** *Pesticides can kill wildlife and pollute the atmosphere.* | **clear** *Last night's storm had cleared the atmosphere.*

3 gases around the earth

- ADJ. **lower, upper**
- VERB + ATMOSPHERE **enter, leave, re-enter** *The spaceship should re-enter the earth's atmosphere later today.* | **be emitted/released into, escape into** *Dangerous gases have escaped into the upper atmosphere.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *levels of radiation in the atmosphere*

atom *noun*

- ADJ. **charged, unstable** *positively charged atoms* | **carbon, nitrogen, etc.**
- VERB + ATOM **split** *The scientist Ernest Rutherford was the first person to split the atom.*
- ATOM + NOUN **bomb**

atrocity *noun*

- ADJ. **appalling, dreadful, terrible, worst** *one of the worst atrocities of the war* | **alleged | terrorist**
- VERB + ATROCITY **be responsible for, carry out, commit, perpetrate** *In the war, both sides committed atrocities.* | **suffer**
- ATROCITY + VERB **occur, take place**
- ATROCITY + NOUN **stories**
- PREP. **~ against** *atrocities against the civilian population* **~ by** *reports of atrocities by gunmen*
- PHRASES **accounts/allegations/reports of atrocities**

attach *verb*

- ADV. **firmly, securely | loosely**
- PREP. **to** *He attached the rope securely to a tree.*

attached *adj.*

1 full of affection

- VERBS **be | become, grow** *We've grown very attached to this village and wouldn't want to move.* | **remain**
- ADV. **deeply, strongly, very | increasingly | quite | emotionally, personally**
- PREP. **to** *Mr Wells is obviously quite attached to you.*

2 joined to sth

- VERBS **be | remain, stay**
- ADV. **firmly, securely** *Make sure all the wires remain firmly attached.* | **loosely | directly | permanently | physically**
- PREP. **to** *The ball was attached to a length of thin chain.*

attachment *noun*

- ADJ. **close, deep, passionate, special, strong | enduring, lasting | emotional, romantic, sentimental**
- VERB + ATTACHMENT **feel, have** *I feel no attachment to the countryside.* | **develop, form** *Prisoners can develop attachments to their warders.*
- PREP. **to** *her strong attachment to her mother*

attack *noun*

1 violence against sb

- ADJ. **brutal, frenzied, horrific, savage, serious, vicious, violent | unprovoked | racist, sexual | arson, gun, knife** *an increase in knife attacks on police officers*
- QUANT. **series, spate, wave**
- VERB + ATTACK **carry out** *Two teenagers carried out a frenzied attack on a local shopkeeper.* | **be subjected to** *He was subjected to a violent attack.*
- ATTACK + VERB **happen, occur, take place** *Where did the attack happen?*
- PREP. **~against** *vicious attacks against pensioners* **~by** *an attack by an armed gang* **~on** *an attack on a bus driver*
- PHRASES **a victim of an attack**

2 act of violence in war

- ADJ. **all-out, full-scale, major | sustained | surprise | retaliatory | mock | flank, frontal | enemy, guerrilla, terrorist | air, bomb, missile, mortar, nuclear**
- QUANT. **series** *The southern border towns have suffered a series of attacks.*
- VERB + ATTACK **carry out, launch, lead, make, mount, spearhead** *The soldiers mounted an all-out attack on the village.* | **come under, suffer** *They came under sustained attack from the air.* | **repel, repulse, resist | survive, withstand** *Most of the population would stand little chance of surviving a nuclear attack.* | **press home, renew** *Bombers pressed home their attack, causing severe damage to harbour installations.*
- ATTACK + VERB **happen, occur, take place** *The attack took place under cover of darkness.* | **fail, succeed**
- PREP. **under~** *The province has been under attack from the rebels.* | **~against** *attacks against civilians* **~by** *an attack by rebel forces* **~on** *an attack on enemy positions*

3 criticism

- ADJ. **bitter, blistering, fierce, outspoken, savage, scathing, scurrilous, stinging, vigorous | personal** *Is this a personal attack on the president, or a criticism of the government?* | **concerted | verbal**
- VERB + ATTACK **deliver, go on the, launch, make, mount, unleash** *Doctors have gone on the attack, accusing the government of incompetence.* | **come under, provoke** *All politicians come under attack for their views.* ◇ *The government's decision has provoked an attack from leaders of the health service.*
- PREP. **~on/upon** *an attack on my integrity*
- PHRASES **a/the line of attack** *The first line of attack is often name-calling.* **open to attack** *He has laid himself wide open to attack.*

4 sudden illness

- ADJ. **acute, sudden | bad, nasty, severe | fatal | mild, slight | recurrent | asthma, heart, panic** *a fatal heart attack*
- VERB + ATTACK **experience, have, suffer (from)** *He suffers from attacks of anxiety.* | **bring on, cause, trigger** *a heart attack brought on by stress*
- ATTACK + VERB **happen, occur, take place**
- PREP. **~of** *a sudden attack of nerves*

attack *verb*

1 use violence

- ADV. **brutally, savagely, viciously, violently** *She was brutally attacked by two men.* | **physically**
- PREP. **with** *He attacked her with a knife.*

2 criticize

- ADV. **fiercely, savagely, sharply, strongly, vigorously**
- PREP. **for** *The police have been strongly attacked for not taking immediate action.*

attainable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **fully, perfectly** *We believe that this level of performance is fully attainable.* | **easily, readily**
- PREP. **by** *This standard of English should be easily attainable by every child in the class.*

attempt *noun*

- ADJ. **successful | abortive, botched, failed, fruitless, futile, ill-fated, unsuccessful, vain** *her vain attempt to save her son's life* | **conscious, deliberate | brave, bold, concerted, determined, serious, valiant | blatant | feeble, half-hearted, weak | clumsy, crude | desperate, frantic, last-ditch** *a desperate attempt to find survivors of the accident* | **repeated** *repeated attempts to break through enemy lines* | **assassination, coup, rescue, suicide** *Rescue attempts were stopped because of bad weather.*
- VERB + ATTEMPT **make** *She has made no attempt to contact her mother.* | **succeed in** *He succeeded in his attempt to break the world record.* | **abandon, fail in, give up** *He abandoned his attempt to reach the summit.* | **foil, thwart** *Their attempt to break out of prison was foiled.*
- ATTEMPT + VERB **succeed | fail**
- PREP. **in an/the~** *In an attempt to ward off criticism, the government has made education a priority.* | **~at** *He made a feeble attempt at a smile.* **~by** *an attempt by workers to prevent redundancies*
- PHRASES **an attempt on sb's life** (= to kill sb)

attend *verb*

- ADV. **regularly** *to attend church regularly.*
- VERB + ATTEND **be able/unable to | be asked to, be invited to** *He was invited to attend a seminar in Paris.*
- PHRASES **well attended** *The event was well attended.*

attendance *noun*

- ADJ. **good, large, record** *It was a record attendance for a midweek game.* | **low, poor | falling** *Despite falling attendances, the zoo will stay open.* | **average, daily** *The average attendance at matches increased last year.* | **total | constant, regular** *Regular attendance at lectures is important.* | **compulsory | church, cinema, school, etc.**
- VERB + ATTENDANCE **boost, improve, increase** *Building a new stadium has boosted attendances by 40%.*
- ATTENDANCE + VERB **drop, fall, go down** *Attendances at the pool always fall in winter.* | **go up, increase**
- ATTENDANCE + NOUN **figures, rate, record**
- PREP. **in~** *The emergency services were in attendance within 22 minutes.* | **~at** *attendance at the meetings*

attendant *noun*

- ADJ. **car park, cloakroom, garage, lavatory, museum, petrol pump, pool** *Pool attendants kept a constant watch on the swimmers.*

⇨ Note at JOB

attention *noun*

1 act of watching/listening/showing interest

- ADJ. **full, rapt, undivided** *They listened with rapt attention.* | **assiduous, careful, close, meticulous, scrupulous | scant** *Policy-makers paid scant attention to the wider issues.* | **urgent | special | unwanted, unwelcome | international, media, public**
- VERB + ATTENTION **devote, direct, give (sb/sth), pay, turn** *How many times do I have to ask you to pay attention?* ◇ *He had a cup of tea and then turned his attention*

to the report. | **get, have, receive** *Can I have your attention, please?* ◇ *These poems have received a lot of critical attention.* | **attract, call, capture, catch, command, compel, draw, excite, grab** *I tried to attract the waiter's attention.* ◇ *Wherever he goes, he commands attention.* ◇ *She doesn't like to draw attention to her illness.* | **deflect, distract, divert, draw** *The government is trying to divert attention away from the economy.* | **hold, keep, rivet** *There was something in the way he spoke that riveted her attention.* | **concentrate, confine, focus** *In this chapter we shall confine our attention to non-renewable energy sources.* | **refocus, transfer** *The firm decided to refocus its attention back onto its traditional strengths and expertise.* | **deserve, need, require** *a matter requiring urgent attention* | **jostle for, vie for** *dozens of concerns jostling for your attention* ◇ *She was surrounded by men all vying for her attention.* | **repay** *an interesting essay that repays close attention* | **bring sth to** *My boss was grateful that I had brought the matter to his attention.* | **come to** | **avoid, escape** *Her primary aim was to avoid the attentions of the newspapers.*

- ATTENTION + VERB **focus** *Media attention focused today on the prince's business affairs.* | **wander** *I felt my attention wandering during the lecture.*
- ATTENTION + NOUN **span**
- PREP. **for sb's ~, for the ~ of** *a letter for the attention of your doctor*
- PHRASES **attention to detail** *He is a designer known for his meticulous attention to detail.* **care and attention** *He was convicted of driving without due care and attention.* **the centre of attention** *Some children love being the centre of attention.* **the focus of attention** *The focus of attention must now be how to improve the economy.* **force your attentions on sb** *A man like Luke had no need to force his attentions on unwilling women.* **not pay much attention to sth, pay little/no attention to sth** (= not take something very seriously) *Pay no attention to what Bill said—he's a complete liar!*

2 care

- ADJ. **constant** | **individual, personal, special** *The child needs special attention.* | **medical**
- VERB + ATTENTION **devote, give, lavish** *He devoted all his attention to his mother.* ◇ *She lavishes attention on those silly little dogs.* | **be in need of, need, require, want** *a patient requiring attention*

attic *noun*

- ADJ. **cramped, little, small, tiny** | **converted** *Her photography studio was a converted attic.* | **dark, dusty**
- ATTIC + NOUN **bedroom, flat, room** | **stairs, steps** | **skylight, window**

attitude *noun*

- ADJ. **conciliatory, favourable, friendly, positive, responsible, right, sympathetic** *She seems to have the right attitude for the job.* | **aggressive, bad, belligerent, cavalier, critical, hostile, irreverent, negative, patronizing, wrong** | **carefree, casual, flexible, laid-back, liberal, relaxed** *The teachers seem to have a very relaxed attitude towards discipline.* | **conservative, inflexible, rigid, uncompromising** | **ambivalent** | **general, prevailing, public** *The general attitude of the public is sympathetic.* | **changing** | **mental, moral, sexual**
- VERB + ATTITUDE **adopt, have, take** *The government has taken a positive attitude to this problem.* | **change** *The experience changed his attitude to religion.*
- ATTITUDE + VERB **exist, persist, prevail** *This sort of attitude exists among certain groups of people.* | **change**
- ATTITUDE + NOUN **problem** *At school he was thought to have an attitude problem.*
- PREP. **~ about** *changing attitudes about death* **~ of** *an attitude of confidence and trust* ◇ *Youth is simply an attitude of mind.* **~ to/towards** *There has been a marked change in attitude towards the European single currency.*
- PHRASES **a change in/of attitude, with attitude** (*informal*) (= having a confident, aggressive attitude that challenges what people think) *a rock band with attitude*

attraction *noun*

1 fact of attracting/being attracted

- ADJ. **fatal, irresistible, obvious, powerful, strong** | **mutual** *They shared a powerful mutual attraction.* | **gravitational, magnetic, physical, sexual**
- VERB + ATTRACTION **feel** *the strong attraction that she felt for him* | **see** *I could now see the attraction of a steady job and regular income.* | **have, hold** *Long holidays hold no attraction for him.* | **exert** *All matter exerts a gravitational attraction.*
- PREP. **~ between** *the attraction between two people* **~ to/towards** *His attraction to you is obvious.*
- PHRASES **the centre of attraction** *Sophie was plainly the centre of attraction in the room.*

2 sth that attracts people

- ADJ. **added, big, chief, great, main, major, obvious, special, star** *The main attraction of the place is the nightlife.* | **popular, tourist**
- VERB + ATTRACTION **have** *A freelance career has the attraction of flexibility.* | **be, prove** *Feeding the animals proved a popular attraction for visitors to the farm.*
- PREP. **for** *The lack of heat was an attraction for cyclists.*

attractive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look** *She looked attractive and beautifully dressed.* | **become, grow** *She had grown more attractive with age.* | **make sb/sth** | **find sb/sth** *This is an idea that I find very attractive.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **stunningly** *a stunningly attractive woman* | **quite** | **physically, sexually, visually** *He no longer found her physically attractive.* ◇ *a visually attractive display*
- PREP. **to** *Schools must try to make science more attractive to youngsters.*

attribute *noun*

- ADJ. **chief, great, key, main** | **desirable, essential, important, necessary, positive, useful** *Patience is an essential attribute for a teacher.* | **common** | **divine, human** | **cultural, personal, physical, social** *Her physical attributes were much admired.*
- VERB + ATTRIBUTE **have, possess**

attribute *verb*

- ADV. **directly** | **solely** | **in large measure, largely, mainly** | **in part, partly**
- PREP. **to** *They claim that one in twenty deaths can be directly attributed to air pollution.*
- PHRASES **be commonly/generally/usually/widely attributed to** *The goals commonly attributed to management are status, power, salary and security.*

auction *noun*

- ADJ. **public** | **charity** | **art, cattle, furniture, etc.**
- VERB + AUCTION **hold** *The estate is holding an auction to raise money.* | **conduct** *My father will be conducting the auction tomorrow.* | **attend, go to** *He regularly attended auctions.* | **put sth up for** *The horse will be put up for public auction.* | **be/come/go up for** *The paintings will come up for auction next month.* | **pick sth up at** *a bargain that she had picked up at auction*
- AUCTION + VERB **take place**
- AUCTION + NOUN **house, room** | **price** | **market, mart, sale**
- PREP. **at ~** *I try to buy furniture at auctions because it is*

cheaper that way. o *The house was sold at auction for half a million pounds.* **by ~** *a jumble sale by auction*

audible *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become, grow**
- ADV. **clearly, perfectly** *The shot was clearly audible in the silence.* | **barely, hardly, scarcely | faintly, just** *The singer's voice was just audible.* | **almost**
- PREP. **above** *The noise was audible even above the roar of the engines.* **to** *The sounds made by bats are not audible to the human ear.*

audience *noun*

1 group of people watching/listening to sth
- ADJ. **big, capacity, large, mass, packed, vast, wide** *The museum is trying to attract a wider audience.* | **select, small | appreciative, enthusiastic, receptive, sympathetic | hostile | captive | potential, target | cinema, live, radio, studio, television**
- VERB + AUDIENCE **address, perform to, play to** *He prefers playing to live audiences.* | **attract, draw, pull in** *Such a well-known politician should draw a big audience.* | **reach** *We want to reach a target audience that's younger in age.* | **captivate, grip, thrill** *The film has thrilled audiences throughout the country.* | **move** *The audience was visibly moved.*
- AUDIENCE + VERB **applaud, cheer** *The audience cheered loudly.* | **boo, jeer | laugh**
- AUDIENCE + NOUN **participation**
- PREP. **before/in front of an/the ~** *He felt nervous standing up in front of the large audience.*

2 formal meeting with a very important person
- ADJ. **private**
- VERB + AUDIENCE **have | ask for, request, seek | give sb, grant sb** *The Pope granted him an audience.*
- PREP. **~ with** *He sought a private audience with the Queen.*

audition *noun*

- VERB + AUDITION **do, go for/to, have** *I did an audition for the part of the queen.* | **give sb, hold** *holding auditions for new actors* | **pass | fail**
- PREP. **~ for** *an audition for a place at drama school* **~ with** *an audition with the Royal Ballet*

auditor *noun*

- ADJ. **company/company's | appointed | internal | independent | statutory | district** *The council and district auditors have agreed that the deals were unlawful.*
- PREP. **~ to** *His firm has been appointed the auditors to the company.*
- PHRASES **the Auditor General, an auditors' report**

⇨ Note at PROFESSIONAL (for verbs)

auditorium *noun*

- ADJ. **huge, vast | 200-seat, 250-seater, etc. | empty, packed | darkened**
- VERB + AUDITORIUM **fill**
- AUDITORIUM + VERB **hold sb, seat sb** *The auditorium seats over a thousand people.* | **be filled with sth** *The darkened auditorium was filled with muttering.*

August *noun*

⇨ Note at MONTH

aunt *noun*

- ADJ. **aged, elderly | maiden, unmarried | maternal, paternal | great** (= the sister of one of your grandparents) *Great Aunt Emily*

aura *noun*

- ADJ. **magical | faint**
- VERB + AURA **be surrounded by, exude, have, retain** *He exuded an aura of wealth and power.* | **take on** *The picture seemed to take on the aura of an ancient work of art.* | **create, give sb/sth** *The sunlight created an aura of beauty around her.* | **lose**
- PREP. **~ about, ~ of** *There was always a faint aura of mystery about him.*

austerity *noun*

- ADJ. **post-war, wartime**
- AUSTERITY + NOUN **measures, package, plan, policies, programme**

authenticity *noun*

- VERB + AUTHENTICITY **cast doubt on, doubt** *Some journalists have cast doubt on the authenticity of the official version of events.* | **check, test | confirm, establish, prove, verify**
- PHRASES **a certificate of authenticity** *Despite its certificate of authenticity, the painting was found to be a fake.* **a debate over the authenticity of sth** *There has been some debate over the authenticity of his will.* **of doubtful authenticity** *a document of doubtful authenticity*

author *noun*

- ADJ. **best-selling | prolific | famous, well-known | anonymous** *the anonymous author of this pamphlet* | **children's** *Primarily a children's author, she has also written books for adults.*
- VERB + AUTHOR **read** *Stephen King is an author I've never read.*
- AUTHOR + VERB **write (sth)** *The author was writing in the seventeenth century.*

authoritarian *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **highly, very | increasingly | rather**

authority *noun*

1 sth with the power to give orders
- ADJ. **district, local, regional | government, public | education, health, military, planning, tax** *The government is urging education authorities to spend less money.* | **competent, lawful, relevant, statutory**
- AUTHORITY + VERB **agree sth, claim sth, decide sth, deny sth, promise sth** *The local health authority denied negligence.* | **allow (sb) sth, give (sb) sth, grant (sb) sth** *The local authority has not granted planning permission.*

2 power/right to give orders
- ADJ. **absolute, complete, full, supreme | governmental, judicial, legal, ministerial, parental, presidential**
- VERB + AUTHORITY **have** *Parents have the authority to discipline their children.* | **assume** *He assumed full authority as tsar in 1689.* | **give sb | assert, demonstrate, establish, exercise, exert, show, use, wield** *The new manager obviously felt the need to demonstrate her authority.* | **delegate | give up, relinquish | abuse | challenge, defy, deny, rebel against, reject, undermine** *She had challenged my authority once too often.* | **usurp**
- AUTHORITY + NOUN **figure** *adult authority figures such as parents and teachers*
- PREP. **in ~** *I need to talk to someone in authority.* **under the ~ of** *This can only be done under the authority of the government minister.* **without ~** *He took the car without authority.* | **~ over** *Central government has extensive authority over teachers.*
- PHRASES **an air of authority** *He bore an air of author-*

ity. **position of authority** *She holds a position of authority in the local church.*

3 person with special knowledge
- ADJ. **leading, respected, world | unimpeachable, unquestioned**
- VERB + AUTHORITY **cite, invoke** *Copernicus justified his innovation by citing respected authorities.*
- PREP. **~on** *She's a leading authority on genetics.*

authorization *noun*
- ADJ. **formal, official, written | prior** *You will need prior authorization from your bank.*
- VERB + AUTHORIZATION **need, require | ask for, seek** *He asked for authorization to proceed with the plan.* **| get, have, obtain | give sb, grant (sb) | refuse (sb)** *The government will probably refuse authorization under these conditions.* **| revoke**
- PREP. **with/without~** *You cannot take a day off without authorization.* **| ~for** *Formal authorization for the trip was given last week.* **~from** *The change of plan would require authorization from the minister.*

autistic *adj.*
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **severely** *a school for severely autistic children* **| mildly**

autobiography *noun*
- VERB + AUTOBIOGRAPHY **write | publish | read**
- PREP. **in an/the~** *In his autobiography, he recalls the poverty he grew up in.*

autograph *noun*
- VERB + AUTOGRAPH **give sb, sign** *He signed his autograph for the little girl.* **| ask for | get, have** *Can I have your autograph, please?*
- AUTOGRAPH + NOUN **album, book | hunter**

automatic *adj.*

1 working by itself
- VERBS **be** *The machine is fully automatic.*
- ADV. **completely, fully, totally**

2 certain to happen
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **almost, virtually** *Promotion was almost automatic after two or three years.*

autonomous *adj.*
- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **completely, fully, totally | largely | relatively | effectively** *Although officially a dependent territory the island is effectively autonomous.* **| politically**
- PREP. **from** *Higher education is relatively autonomous from the state.*

autonomy *noun*
- ADJ. **considerable, greater, more | complete, full | relative | individual, personal | local, national, regional | administrative, cultural, economic, financial, managerial, political, professional, etc. | pupil, teacher, worker, etc.**
- QUANT. **degree, measure** *a high degree of autonomy*
- VERB + AUTONOMY **enjoy, have** *The subsidiary companies will now have more autonomy.* **| gain | seek, struggle for, want | give sb, grant (sb)** *Head office is giving the regional offices more autonomy.* **| increase** *the need to increase worker autonomy* **| reduce**
- PREP. **~from** *Schools have gained greater autonomy from government control.*
- PHRASES **a demand for autonomy** *demands for cultural autonomy*

autopsy *noun*
- VERB + AUTOPSY **carry out, conduct, do, perform**
- AUTOPSY + VERB **find sth, reveal sth, show sth** *The autopsy revealed that he had been poisoned.*
- AUTOPSY + NOUN **report, result**
- PREP. **~on** *They carried out an autopsy on the victim.*

autumn *noun*
- ADJ. **last, next, this (coming) | early, late, mid- | wet**
- AUTUMN + NOUN **weather | sun, sunlight, sunshine | frost/frosts, rain/rains | gale, wind | landscape, sky | colours** *The trees were beginning to turn orange and yellow with autumn colours.* **| leaf** *the sound of autumn leaves rustling* **| equinox | term** *classes to be held for schoolchildren during the autumn term* **| collection, exhibition** *their autumn collection of dresses*

⇨ Note at SEASON (for more collocates)

availability *noun*
- ADJ. **easy, ready** *the easy availability of many illegal drugs* **| general, wide, widespread | greater, increased | limited | land, staff, ticket, etc.**
- VERB + AVAILABILITY **check, ensure** *Before travelling we must ensure the availability of petrol and oil.* **| increase | reduce, restrict** *They want to restrict the availability of abortion.*
- PHRASES **subject to availability** *All holiday bookings are subject to availability.*

available *adj.*

1 that you can get, buy, use, etc.
- VERBS **be | become | make sth** *The product will now be made available throughout the market.*
- ADV. **easily, freely, readily | widely**
- PREP. **for** *Grants should be available for all students.* **from** *Details are available from the above address.* **to** *This information is freely available to anyone wishing to see it.*
- PHRASES **available for hire/sale**

2 free to be seen, talked to, etc.
- VERBS **be | become** *She is in a meeting at present, but I will let you know as soon as she becomes available.*
- PHRASES **not available for comment** *The chairman was not available for comment.*

avalanche *noun*

1 large amount of snow falling
- AVALANCHE + VERB **happen, strike sth** *The avalanche struck the ski resort in the late afternoon.* **| engulf sb/sth | kill sb** *They were killed by an avalanche in the Swiss Alps.*
- PREP. **in an/the~** *They died in an avalanche.*

2 large number/amount of sth
- VERB + AVALANCHE **be buried under**
- AVALANCHE + VERB **engulf sth** *the avalanche of lawlessness threatening to engulf our civilization*
- PREP. **~of** *We've been almost buried under the avalanche of mail.*

avenue *noun*

1 wide street
- ADJ. **broad, wide | leafy, tree-lined**
- AVENUE + VERB **be lined with sth** *an avenue lined with elms*
- PREP. **along, down, in, through, up an/the~** *strolling down a tree-lined avenue*

2 way of doing/getting sth
- ADJ. **possible, promising | fruitful**

- VERB + AVENUE **explore, pursue, try** *We need to explore every possible avenue.* | **exhaust** *After two months of negotiations we had exhausted all avenues.* | **open (up), provide**
- AVENUE + VERB **be open to sb** *There was only one avenue open to him.*
- PREP. **~for** *to provide a new avenue for research* **~of** *the two main avenues of enquiry* **~to** *an avenue to success*

average *noun*

- ADJ. **annual** | **national** *The national average is just over two children per family.* | **overall** | **weighted** | **batting, bowling** (both in cricket)
- VERB + AVERAGE **arrive at, calculate, find, work out** *You'll have to calculate the average.*
- PREP. **above ~** *His test results are well above average.* **below ~, on ~** *On average, prices have risen 6%.*

average *adj.*

- ADV. **very** *Peter was a very average golfer.* | **fairly** | **above, below** *an above average climb in prices*

aversion *noun*

- ADJ. **strong** *He has a strong aversion to dogs.* | **natural**
- VERB + AVERSION **have** | **develop** | **overcome**
- AVERSION + NOUN **therapy** *I underwent aversion therapy for my addiction to smoking.*
- PREP. **~to** *Have you developed an aversion to babies?*

avert *verb*

1 prevent sth
- ADV. **narrowly** *A tragedy was narrowly averted when a lorry crashed into a crowded restaurant.*
- VERB + AVERT **attempt to, try to** | **manage to** *He managed to avert the closure of the factory.* | **fail to**
- PHRASES **an attempt/effort to avert sth**

2 turn sth away
- ADV. **hastily, quickly** *They hastily averted their faces to hide their giggles.*
- VERB + AVERT **try to**
- PREP. **from** *averting his eyes from the dead child*

avocado (*also* avocado pear) *noun*

- ADJ. **ripe**
- VERB + AVOCADO **eat, have** | **halve, peel, stone**
- AVOCADO + NOUN **dip, mousse**

⇨ Special page at FRUIT

avoid *verb*

1 prevent sth
- ADV. **altogether** *It is sometimes impossible to avoid conflict altogether.* | **narrowly** *They narrowly avoided defeat in the semi-final.* | **at all costs** *Getting involved in a court case is something to be avoided at all costs.*
- VERB + AVOID **be anxious to, want to, wish to** *They are anxious to avoid any further misunderstandings.* | **attempt to, try to** | **be careful to, take care to** *He was careful to avoid any sentimentality in his speech.* | **help (to)** | **be able to, manage to** | **be possible to** | **be difficult to, be impossible to**
- PHRASES **an attempt/effort to avoid sth** *He failed in his attempt to avoid having to pay.*

2 keep away from sb
- ADV. **carefully, deliberately, studiously** *The two men carefully avoided one another.*
- VERB + AVOID **try to**

3 not hit sb/sth when driving
- ADV. **narrowly** *He braked hard and narrowly avoided a parked van.*
- VERB + AVOID **brake to** | **swerve to** *She swerved to avoid a cyclist.*

avoidable *adj.*

- VERBS **be** *Most accidents are easily avoidable.*
- ADV. **entirely, wholly** | **easily**

await *verb*

- ADV. **anxiously** *She is anxiously awaiting a decision on her future.* | **eagerly, keenly, with interest** *The outcome of the appeal is awaited with interest.* | **patiently**
- PHRASES **long awaited** *her long awaited return to professional tennis*

awake *verb*

- ADV. **early, late** *She awoke early the next morning.*
- PREP. **from** *I awoke from a deep sleep at six o'clock.*

awake *adj.*

- VERBS **be, lie** *At night, he lay awake beside her.* | **come, jerk** *Claudia came awake slowly.* ◇ *Stephen jerked awake from a nightmare.* | **keep, remain, stay** *He was struggling to stay awake.* | **jerk sb, jolt sb, nudge sb, shake sb** *A few hours later Benjamin shook me awake.* | **keep sb** *The noise had kept her awake.*
- ADV. **fully, wide** *By now, the baby was wide awake.* | **hardly, only half** *It was very early and I was only half awake.* | **still** *The children were still awake when we went out.*

awaken *verb*

- ADV. **early, late**
- PREP. **from** *She was just awakening from sleep.*
- PHRASES **be rudely awakened** *He was rudely awakened by the sound of drilling.*

awakening *noun*

- ADJ. **rude, sudden** *If they expected a warm welcome, they were in for a rude awakening.* | **slow** | **political, sexual, spiritual** *the political awakening that followed the Second World War*
- PREP. **~from, ~to** *an awakening from a terrible vision to cheerful realities*

award *noun*

1 prize that sb gets for doing sth well
- ADJ. **annual** | **national** | **coveted, highest, major, prestigious, special, top** | **bravery, design, literary, man of the match, etc.** *His goalkeeping won him the man of the match award.*
- VERB + AWARD **give sb, hand out, make (sb), present (sb with)** *The award was made for his work in cancer research.* | **carry off, earn (sb), get, receive, win** *Stephen's quick thinking has earned him a bravery award.* | **accept**
- AWARD + VERB **go to sb** *The best director award went to Sam Mendes for 'American Beauty'.*
- AWARD + NOUN **ceremony, scheme**
- PREP. **~for** *the award for best actor* **~from** *to receive an award from the Queen*

2 money given to sb
- ADJ. **compensatory, discretionary, mandatory** | **pay** *The union is unhappy with this year's pay award.* | **damages, libel**
- VERB + AWARD **get, receive** | **grant, make** *The judge has the power to make discretionary awards.*

award *verb*

- ADV. **automatically** | **jointly** *He was jointly awarded*

the Nobel Prize with Alex Mueller. | **mentally** *She mentally awarded herself top marks for staying cool under pressure.* | **posthumously**
- PREP. **to** *Honours were automatically awarded to senior officials just because they were senior.*

aware *adj.*

1 conscious
- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **make sb** *We need to make people more aware of these problems.*
- ADV. **acutely, keenly, very, well** | **fully, perfectly** *Mr Bush did not appear fully aware of the importance of this act.* | **dimly, vaguely** | **hardly, not really** *He was not really aware of what he was doing.* | **horribly, painfully** *Moran was painfully aware of Luke's absence.*
- PREP. **of** *The police are well aware of the dangers.*

2 informed
- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **very** | **environmentally, politically, socially**

awareness *noun*

- ADJ. **full** | **greater, heightened, increased** | **dawning, growing, increasing** *a growing awareness of healthy living* | **acute, deep, intense, keen, strong** | **conscious, direct** | **intuitive** | **sudden** | **general, public** | **cultural, environmental, moral, political, religious, sexual, social, spatial, spiritual**
- VERB + AWARENESS **have** *Politicians now have much greater awareness of these problems.* | **build, develop, encourage, foster, heighten, increase, raise** *The group is trying to raise public awareness about homelessness.*
- AWARENESS + VERB **increase, spread** *Environmental awareness has increased over the years.*
- PREP. **~ among/amongst** *building awareness among the target audience* **~ of** *an increased awareness of the risks*
- PHRASES **a lack of awareness**

awe *noun*

- ADJ. **great**
- VERB + AWE **be/stand in, hold sb in** *Most people hold him in some awe.* | **feel** | **inspire** *Everest has always inspired awe and respect among climbers.*
- PREP. **in/with ~** *We gazed in awe at the massive building.* | **~ at** *What I mostly felt was awe at her achievement.*
- PHRASES **a sense of awe** *They experienced a tremendous sense of awe in the cathedral.*

awesome *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **really, simply, truly** *The Niagara Falls are a truly awesome sight.* | **fairly, pretty, quite, somewhat**

awful *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, smell, sound, taste** *I felt awful when I realized what I'd done.* ◇ *The fish tasted awful.*
- ADV. **bloody** (*taboo*), **fucking** (*taboo*), **just, quite, really, simply, truly** *a truly awful book* | **absolutely, the most** *She's the most awful snob.* | **pretty, rather**

awkward *adj.*

1 difficult
- VERBS **be, look, seem** | **make sth**
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **a bit, rather, slightly, somewhat** *She asked some rather awkward questions.*
- PHRASES **make things awkward** *He could make things very awkward for me if he wanted to.*

2 not relaxed
- VERBS **be, feel, look** | **become** | **make sb** *He was embarrassed, which made him awkward.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **a bit, rather** | **painfully** *As a teenager he was painfully awkward in company.*
- PREP. **about** *They felt awkward about having to leave so soon.* **with** *She is awkward with people she doesn't know.*

axe *noun*

1 tool
- VERB + AXE **brandish, carry, hold, wield** *A man used to wielding an axe fought best on foot.* | **chop sth down/up with, use** | **swing** | **sharpen**
- AXE + VERB **fall** *The executioner's axe fell.*
- PREP. **with an/the ~** *to chop a tree down with an axe*
- PHRASES **a blow from/of an axe** *With a few swift blows of the axe, she severed the cable.*

2 the axe complete loss of sth/big reduction in sth
- VERB + AXE **swing, wield** *Wielding the axe on the prison plan would be one way of saving money.* | **face** *Up to 300 workers are facing the axe at a struggling Merseyside firm.* | **save sb/sth from** *Patients are delighted their local hospital has been saved from the axe.*
- AXE + VERB **fall** *We were expecting bad news but had no idea where the axe would fall* (= where the loss/reduction would be).

axis *noun*

- ADJ. **horizontal, vertical** | **x, y, z**
- PREP. **along an/the ~** *the wage is measured along the horizontal axis* **on an/the ~** *The earth spins on its axis.*
- PHRASES **an axis of rotation** *the earth's axis of rotation* **an axis of symmetry**

Bb

baby *noun*

• ADJ. **new, newborn, tiny | low birthweight, small, tiny** *Smoking in pregnancy increases the risk of producing a low birthweight baby.* | **big | full-term | pre-term, premature | stillborn | unborn | little, young | three-day-old, six-week-old, ten-month-old, etc. | beautiful, bonny, lovely | bouncing** (*informal*), **healthy, normal** *A bonny, bouncing baby, Freddie was her heart's desire and joy.* | **contented, good, perfect | colicky, crying, screaming | sleeping | growing** *He took an interest in the growing baby even before it was born.* | **bottle-fed, breast-fed | illegitimate | test-tube | abandoned, unwanted | war** (= born during the war)

• VERB + BABY **have** *I want to have a baby.* | **conceive, make babies** (*informal*) *Darling, I just want to stay with you and make babies!* | **carry, expect** *She's not sure yet how many babies she's carrying.* ◇ *She's expecting a baby in July.* | **give birth to, produce | deliver** *The baby was delivered by a midwife.* | **lose** *She lost her baby* (= had a miscarriage) *three months into her pregnancy.* | **care for, look after | feed | bottle-feed | breastfeed, nurse | burp** *The baby needed burping after every bottle.* | **wean** *You can start weaning your baby when it's four months old.* | **change** *You should change your baby about six times a day.* | **bath | comfort, cradle, cuddle, hold, pick up, rock, take** *She rocked the baby to sleep in her arms.* ◇ *Could you take the baby? I need to bring in the washing.* | **swaddle | play with | adopt** *They would like to adopt a newborn baby.* | **have adopted, put up for adoption** *She decided to put her baby up for adoption.* | **abandon | sleep like** *He was so tired after all his exertions, he slept like a baby.*

• BABY + VERB **be due** *The baby is due in October.* | **arrive, be born** *Their first baby arrived exactly nine months after the wedding.* | **bawl, cry, scream | babble, coo** *The baby cooed happily on the rug.* | **be sick, dribble, drool** *Babies drool a lot when they are teething.* | **be teething | crawl, sit up, take his/her first steps, toddle, walk | kick, move** *I could feel the baby moving inside me.* | **sleep**

• BABY + NOUN **boy, girl | brother, daughter, sister, son | bird, rabbit, etc. | clothes | food | buggy, carrier | alarm, monitor | bath | talk** *I didn't use baby talk with my children, but used proper words right from the start.* | **unit** *the hospital's special care baby unit* | **boom** (= a period when many more babies are born than usual)

bachelor *noun*

• ADJ. **confirmed** *He was 38, and a confirmed bachelor.* | **eligible** *one of the country's most eligible bachelors*

• BACHELOR + NOUN **days, life | flat, pad | status**

back *noun*

1 part of the body

• ADJ. **broad | lean, slender | muscled, muscular, powerful, strong | bent | erect, straight | lower, upper | bad, stiff** *He's off work with a bad back.*

• VERB + BACK **bend, stiffen, straighten | stretch** *He yawned and stretched his back as he got out of bed.* | **break, hurt, injure | arch** *The cat arched its back and hissed at the dog.* | **support | knead, massage | scratch**

• BACK + VERB **arch | stiffen** *His back stiffened as he saw the photographers waiting.* | **ache**

• BACK + NOUN **injury, pain, trouble | muscles | support** *a seat with good back support*

• PREP. **behind your ~** *They blindfolded him and tied his hands behind his back.* ◇ (*figurative*) *People say bad things about him behind his back, but never to his face.* **flat on your ~** *I was flat on my back for six weeks when I broke my leg.* **on your ~** *He was carrying a small child on his back.* ◇ *She was lying on her back on the sofa.* **in the/your ~** *I've got a nagging pain in my lower back.* | **~ to** *He was standing with his back to the fire.*

• PHRASES **sb's back is turned** (*figurative*) *The boss was certain that the staff would stop working as soon as his back was turned.* **back to back** *The children sat back to back so they couldn't see each others' drawings.* **a pat/slap on the back** *He smiled and gave me a hearty slap on the back.* ◇ (*figurative*) *She deserves a pat on the back for her efforts.* **the small of your back** *She felt a sharp pain in the small* (= the lowest part of) *her back.* **turn your back (on sb/sth)** *Actors should never turn their backs on the audience.* ◇ (*figurative*) *She decided to turn her back on Paris and return to her home town.*

2 part furthest from the front

• PREP. **around/round the ~** *If you'd like to come round the back* (= to the area behind the house), *I'll show you the garden.* **at the ~** *We could only get seats at the back.* **down the ~** *My money's all fallen down the back of the cushion.* **in the ~** *Two passengers sat in the back of the car.* **to the ~** *The man was refusing to go to the back of the queue.* **towards the ~** *The arts page is usually towards the back of the newspaper.*

• PHRASES **back to front** *I had my pullover on back to front* (= with the back where the front should be).

back *verb*

1 move backwards

• ADV. **hastily, hurriedly** *She backed away hurriedly.* | **away, in, off, up** *If you can't drive in forwards, try backing it in.* ◇ *Back off! There's no need to yell at me.* ◇ *Can you back your car up so that I can get through?*

• VERB + BACK **try to** *He tried to back away.*

• PREP. **across** *She backed across the room.* **away from** *The children backed away from him in fear.* **into** *She backed into the garage.* **out of** *He backed out of the drive.*

2 support sb/sth

• ADV. **firmly, strongly** *Teachers are strongly backing the new educational policies.* | **fully | overwhelmingly | unanimously | openly, publicly | financially** *his election bid was financially backed by a soft drinks company.* | **up** *I'll back you up if they don't believe you.*

PHRASAL VERB

back down

• VERB + BACK DOWN **refuse to | be forced to, be obliged to**

• PREP. **from** *The government was forced to back down from implementing these proposals.* **on** *She refused to back down on a point of principle.* **over** *The committee finally backed down over the issue of spending cuts.*

backdrop *noun*

• ADJ. **dramatic, magnificent, perfect, picturesque, romantic | economic, historical, political**

• VERB + BACKDROP **have | provide**

• PREP. **against a/the ~ of** *The conference begins this week against a backdrop of unmitigated gloom.* | **~ for** *The Alps provided the perfect backdrop for a romantic holiday.* **~ of** *The large bay has a superb backdrop of* *mountains.* **~ to** *War is more than just a dramatic backdrop to the novel.*

backfire *verb*

- ADV. **badly, disastrously**
- PREP. **on** *The surprise I had planned backfired on me.*

background *noun*

1 type of family/social class sb comes from
- ADJ. **broad, narrow** *It is important to have a broad educational background.* | **mixed** | **privileged, wealthy** | **deprived, disadvantaged, poor** | **middle class, upper class, working class** | **academic, class, cultural, educational, ethnic, family, military, professional, religious, social, socio-economic**
- VERB + BACKGROUND **come from, have** *He came from a very privileged background.* | **be drawn from** *The students are drawn from very mixed social backgrounds.*
- BACKGROUND + VERB **be in sth** *Her background was in biology and medicine.*
- PREP. **from a ~** *children from deprived backgrounds* **with a ~** *an economist with a background in business* | **~ in**
- PHRASES **a range/variety of backgrounds**

2 facts connected with a situation/event
- ADJ. **general** | **factual** | **cultural, economic, historical, political, technical**
- VERB + BACKGROUND **describe, give (sb), outline, provide (sb with)** *The book provides the background to the revolution.* | **form** *Those discussions formed the background to the decision.*
- BACKGROUND + NOUN **information, knowledge, reading** *background information on the country*
- PREP. **against the ~** *Against that general background I shall give you a more detailed view of current medical practice.* | **~ to** *the technical background to the report*

3 part of a view/picture behind the main parts
- PREP. **against a/the ~** *The areas of water stood out against the dark background.* **in the ~** *The mountains in the background were capped with snow.* **on a/the ~** *bright blue on a red background*

4 position in which sb/sth is not important/noticed
- VERB + BACKGROUND **blend into, fade into, melt/merge into, recede/retreat into, slip into** *The dispute over the new contract allowed her other problems to fade into the background.* ◇ *He had learnt how to melt invisibly into the background.* | **keep/remain/stay in** *He prefers to remain in the background and let his assistant deal with the press.* | **hover in** *I could see my secretary hovering in the background.*
- BACKGROUND + NOUN **music, noise, radiation**
- PREP. **in the ~** *There was a radio on in the background.*

backing *noun*

- ADJ. **strong** | **full, unanimous, whole-hearted** *The teachers have the full backing of the school governors.* | **financial, legal** | **government, official, popular**
- VERB + BACKING **have** | **gain, get, receive, secure, win** *They have won financial backing from the EU.* | **need, seek** | **give sb, provide (sb with)** *Who's going to provide the backing?*
- BACKING + VERB **come from sb/sth** *The backing will come from the government.*
- PREP. **with/without the ~** *They brought the legal action with the backing of their MP.* | **~ for** *They want backing for more research.* **~ from** *backing from management*

backlash *noun*

- ADJ. **conservative** *a conservative backlash against the feminism of the 80s* | **political** | **public**
- VERB + BACKLASH **cause, produce, provoke** *Such a decision may provoke a backlash from their supporters.* | **expect, fear** | **face**
- PREP. **~ against** *a backlash against any future reforms* **~ from** *They face a backlash from shareholders.*

backlog *noun*

- ADJ. **big, considerable, enormous, huge, large**
- VERB + BACKLOG **be faced with, have** *We are faced with a backlog of orders we can't deal with.* | **catch up on, clear, deal with, reduce**
- BACKLOG + VERB **accumulate, build up** *A huge backlog of work had built up.*

backpack *noun*

⇨ See RUCKSACK

backstroke *noun*

⇨ Note at STROKE

backward *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **very** | **rather, somewhat** *a rather backward child* | **economically, educationally**

bacon *noun*

- ADJ. **lean** | **streaky** | **back** | **crisp/crispy** *Fry the bacon until crisp.* | **smoked, unsmoked**
- QUANT. **bit, piece, rasher, slice** *I'll have two rashers of bacon and a fried egg.* | **side** *A whole side of bacon was hanging from a hook on the ceiling.*
- VERB + BACON **eat, have** | **cook, fry, grill** | **cure**
- BACON + NOUN **fat, rind** | **butty, sandwich**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

bacteria *noun*

- ADJ. **harmful** | **beneficial**
- VERB + BACTERIA **attack, destroy, fight, kill** *Neither chilling nor freezing kills all bacteria.*
- PHRASES **a strain of bacteria**

bad *adj.*

1 not good; serious
- VERBS **be, look, sound** | **become, get** *The weather got very bad later in the day.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, very** | **enough** *Things are bad enough without our own guns shelling us.* | **fairly, pretty, quite, rather** *John's in a pretty bad mood this morning.*
- PREP. **at** *He's really bad at maths.* **for** *Smoking is very bad for you.*

2 not safe to eat
- VERBS **be, look, smell, taste** *The sausages tasted bad.* | **go, turn** *This meat has gone bad.*

3 guilty/sorry
- VERBS **feel**
- ADV. **really, very** | **enough** *I feel bad enough without you constantly telling me how it was all my fault!* | **fairly, pretty, quite, rather**
- PREP. **about** *She felt pretty bad about leaving him.*

badge *noun*

- ADJ. **blazer, cap, lapel** | **club** | **name** | **button**
- VERB + BADGE **wear**
- BADGE + NOUN **holder**
- PHRASES **a badge of office** *His badge of office, a large gold key, hung round his neck.*

bad-tempered *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** | **become, grow** | **make sb** *It is his illness that makes him bad-tempered.*

• ADV. **extremely, very | increasingly, more and more** *He grew more and more bad-tempered as the afternoon wore on.* | **rather**

baffled *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, sound | remain**
• ADV. **completely, totally, utterly | rather | clearly | frankly**
• PREP. **about** *Officials say they're baffled about the cause of the gas explosion.* **as to** *The referee remains baffled as to why his decision caused so much anger.* **by** *The doctors are completely baffled by her illness.*

bag *noun*

• ADJ. **strong | heavy | canvas, leather, paper, plastic, polythene, string | carrier, shopping | bin, dustbin, rubbish | clutch, shoulder** *Her crocodile skin clutch bag matched her shoes.* | **drawstring, duffel | evening | overnight, weekend, travel/travelling | sponge, toilet, wash | changing** *a baby changing bag* | **school | beach, camera, golf, sports | kit** (also **kitbag**) | **medical | crisp | sandwich | body** *The dead soldiers were put on the plane in body bags.* | **sick** (= a paper bag for a person to be sick into on a plane, boat, etc.) | **doggie** (= for taking uneaten food home from a restaurant) | **goody** (= a bag given as a gift with a variety of things in) *We're giving away a free goody bag with every children's meal.* | **sleeping | pannier, saddle** (also **saddlebag**) | **money** (*figurative*) *He could not convince those who held the money bags that his idea was viable.* | **diplomatic** (= an official government container that may not be opened by customs officials) | **mail** (also **mailbag**), **post** (also **postbag**)
• VERB + BAG **open, unfasten, unzip | close, zip up | pack | empty, unpack | seal sth in** *The mushrooms are sealed in a bag for freshness.* | **cram/push sth in/into, put sth in/into, shove sth in/into, slip sth in/into, stuff/thrust sth in/into** *The camera caught him slipping a CD into his bag.* | **draw sth out of, produce sth from, pull/take sth from/out of | delve in/into, dive into, ferret (around) in, fumble in, reach into, rummage in, scrabble in** *I rummaged in my bag for a pen.* | **clutch, hold | carry, drag, haul, lug** *There was no lift so I had to lug my bags up the stairs.* | **heave, lift | shoulder** *He shouldered his bag and left.* | **drop, dump, put down | deposit, drop off, leave** *We dropped our bags off at the hotel and went straight out.* | **grab, snatch** *She grabbed her bag and ran out of the door.* ◇ *Two youths snatched her bag as she was walking home.* | **swing** *He was walking along swinging his school bag.* | **look in, search | gather** *They were gathering their bags, preparing to leave.*
• BAG + VERB **bulge (with sth)** *The bag bulged with papers and letters.* | **contain sth, hold sth | be crammed with sth, be (stuffed) full of sth**
• PREP. **in a/the ~, inside a/the ~ | ~ of** *a bag of groceries*
• PHRASES **the contents of a bag** *The customs officer asked him to empty out the contents of his bag.* **sling your bag over your shoulder** *She stepped down off the bus with her bag slung over her shoulder.*

baggage *noun*

• ADJ. **carry-on, hand | excess** *At the airport I found that I had 100kg of excess baggage.* | **emotional, spiritual** (*figurative*) *She's still carrying all that emotional baggage from her first marriage.*
• QUANT. **item, piece**
• VERB + BAGGAGE **carry | go through, search | check in** *Where do we check in our baggage?* | **claim, reclaim** *Let's claim our baggage first.*
• BAGGAGE + NOUN **allowance | trolley | handler | claim, reclaim** *the baggage reclaim hall* | **train** *Extensive baggage trains followed the troops.*

bail *noun*

• ADJ. **conditional, unconditional | police**
• VERB + BAIL **apply for | allow sb, give sb, grant (sb)** *She has been granted conditional bail.* | **set** *The judge set bail at £50 000.* | **get** *She couldn't get bail and now she's lost those 20 months she spent on remand.* | **oppose** *The police were successful in opposing bail.* | **refuse (sb) | post, put up, stand** *A wealthy businessman has stood bail for him.* | **free sb on, release sb on, remand sb on** *They were released on police bail pending further enquiries.* | **jump, skip** (= not return for your trial after bail has been granted)
• BAIL + NOUN **application | conditions | hostel** *He was sent to a bail hostel until the case came to court.*
• PREP. **(out) on ~** *He committed another robbery while out on bail.* **without ~** *The accused were held without bail.*
• PHRASES **an application for bail**

bailiff *noun*

• ADJ. **court | private**
• VERB + BAILIFF **send in** *Their landlord has threatened to send in the bailiffs if they don't pay their rent.*
• BAILIFF + VERB **seize sth** *The bailiffs seized the car and house.*

bait *noun*

• ADJ. **fresh, live** *He used maggots as live bait.*
• VERB + BAIT **put out, set out** *We'll put out the bait and see what happens.* | **use sth as | nibble (at), rise to, take** (*all often figurative*) *We hope that potential investors will take the bait.*

bake *verb*

• PHRASES **freshly/newly baked** *The house was filled with the scent of freshly baked bread.*

balance *noun*

1 even combination/distribution
• ADJ. **correct, equal, even, exact, ideal, necessary, optimum, perfect, proper, right** *With children, it is important to achieve the right balance between love and discipline.* | **comfortable, equitable, excellent, good, happy, harmonious, healthy** *a healthy balance of foods* | **acceptable, adequate, appropriate, fair, reasonable, sensible** *How do you find an acceptable balance between closeness and distance in a relationship?* | **careful, delicate, fine, subtle** *Being a good boss requires a fine balance between kindness and authority.* | **fragile, precarious, uneasy | overall** *It is the overall balance of the diet that is important.* | **ecological, natural** *Pulling up all the plants will disturb the natural balance of the pond.* | **hormonal, nutritional | ethnic, gender, social** *There is an even gender balance amongst staff and students* (= equal numbers of men and women).
• VERB + BALANCE **require | seek | achieve, create, find, strike** *We need to strike a balance between these conflicting interests.* | **keep, maintain, sustain** *You have to maintain a balance in your life or else you'll go crazy.* | **disturb, upset** *Tourists often disturb the delicate balance of nature on the island.* | **redress, restore | affect | alter, change, shift**
• BALANCE + VERB **change, shift**
• PREP. **on ~** (= after considering all the information) *On balance, the company has had a successful year.* **in ~** *It is important to keep the different aspects of your life in balance.* | **~ between** *the balance between academic and practical work* **~ of** *the balance of animals and plants in the environment*
• PHRASES **the balance of nature**

2 division of power/influence
• ADJ. **changing, shifting | military, political**

- VERB + BALANCE **hold** *to hold the balance of power* (= to be in a position where your support would be just enough to give overall power to one group or another) | **affect** | **change, shift** | **swing, tilt, tip** (= to influence a result/decision) *In an interview, smart presentation can tip the balance in your favour.*
- BALANCE + VERB **change, shift**
- PHRASES **the balance of advantage** *The balance of advantage has shifted from the unions to employers.* **the balance of forces/power** *the changing balance of power between the working and middle class* **checks and balances** *Democracy depends on a system of checks and balances.*

3 of the body

- ADJ. **excellent, good** | **poor**
- VERB + BALANCE **have** *Gymnasts have excellent balance.* | **affect** *Tightness in one set of muscles will affect your whole balance.* | **keep** *I struggled to keep my balance on my new skates.* | **lose** *She lost her balance and fell.* | **recover, regain** | **knock sb off, throw sb off** *The sudden movement threw him off balance.*
- PREP. **off~**
- PHRASES **a sense of balance** *Cats have a very good sense of balance.*

4 money

- ADJ. **account, bank** | **cash, money** | **credit, favourable, healthy, positive** | **debit, negative** | **cleared, net** *Interest is calculated on the daily cleared balance and paid direct to your account.* | **opening** | **final, outstanding** | **trade**
- VERB + BALANCE **have** *Everyone likes to have a healthy bank balance.* | **ask for, request** *He asked the cashier for the balance of his current account.* | **check** *I'll need to check my bank balance before I spend so much money.* | **show** | **achieve** | **be due** *The final balance is due six weeks before departure.* | **pay** *I'll pay the balance later.* | **use** *The balance of the proceeds will be used for new equipment.* | **bring forward, carry forward** *the balance brought forward from the previous year*
- BALANCE + NOUN **sheet** *the company's balance sheet*
- PHRASES **the balance of payments** (= the difference between the amount of money coming into and going out of a country), **the balance of trade** (= the difference in value between imports and exports)

balance *verb*

1 keep steady

- ADV. **carefully, precariously**
- PREP. **on** *He balanced the glasses carefully on the tray.*

2 compare two things; give them equal value

- VERB + BALANCE **have to, need to** | **seek to, try to** *The plan seeks to balance two important objectives.* | **manage to**
- PREP. **against** *We have to balance the risks of the new strategy against the possible benefits.* **with** *She tries to balance the needs of her children with those of her employer.*

balanced *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **remain**
- ADV. **properly, well** *The report was accurate and well balanced.* ◇ *a properly balanced diet* | **completely, perfectly** *a perfectly balanced design* | **equally, evenly** | **fairly, reasonably, sufficiently** | **carefully, closely, delicately, finely, nicely** *The issues are finely balanced and there is no simple answer to the question.* | **beautifully** *a beautifully balanced orchestra* | **precariously**
- PREP. **between** *The parliament was evenly balanced between the two parties.*

bald *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **go** *He started to go bald in his twenties.*
- ADV. **completely, quite, totally** | **almost, nearly** | **prematurely** *young men who go prematurely bald*

balding *adj.*

- VERBS **be** *He's in his twenties but already balding.*
- ADV. **already, prematurely**

ball *noun*

1 round object in games

- ADJ. **billiard, cricket, golf, rugby, tennis, etc.** | **beach** | **match, practice**
- VERB + BALL **play with** | **bat, blast, bounce, bowl, chip, dribble, head, hit, kick, roll, strike, throw** *The kids love to kick a ball against my wall.* | **clear, cross, pass** | **catch, stop** *He caught the ball.* | **control, trap** | **chase** *She chased the ball all over the pitch.* | **retrieve, run down** | **return** *The fielders try to retrieve the ball quickly and return it to the bowler.* | **miss** *The goalkeeper missed the ball.* | **drop, let go of** *Oh no! He's dropped the ball.* | **handle** | **give away, lose** | **win** | **retain**
- BALL + VERB **fly, go, roll, sail** *The ball flew over the bar into the sea of Middlesbrough fans.* ◇ *The ball's gone over the fence.* | **hit, land** *The ball hit the wall and rolled along the road.* | **bounce, rebound**
- BALL + NOUN **game** | **control, skills** *His ball control was excellent.*

⇨ Special page at SPORT

2 kick/hit of a ball

- ADJ. **good, great, superb** | **bad, loose** | **high, low** *He sent over a high ball.* | **long, short** | **quick, slow** | **cross, through** *a superb through ball from John Scott* | **hand** *He was penalized for hand ball.*
- VERB + BALL **play, send** | **pick up, pounce on, punish** *He pounced on a loose ball and scored.*
- PREP. **~from** *a great ball from Beckham*

3 round object like a ball

- ADJ. **tight** | **fiery** *The sun was a fiery ball, low on the hills.* | **crystal** (= used for telling fortunes) *Without a crystal ball it's impossible to say where we'll be next year.* | **cannon, musket**
- VERB + BALL **curl/roll (up) into** *The little girl curled up into a ball in her mother's arms.* | **form/make sth into, roll/screw sth (up) into, shape sth into** *He screwed the letter up into a tight ball.*
- PHRASES **a ball of fire/flame, a ball of string/wool**
- PHRASES **a ball and chain** (*figurative*) *The responsibility was a ball and chain around my ankle.*

3 party

- ADJ. **college, charity, hunt** | **costume, fancy dress, masked** *We're going to a masked ball.*
- VERB + BALL **have, hold, organize** *We're organizing a charity ball.* | **attend, go to**
- BALL + NOUN **gown**
- ADJ. **at a/the~** *She met him at the college ball.*

ballet *noun*

1 style of dance

- ADJ. **classical, modern**
- VERB + BALLET **study** *He's studying classical ballet.*
- BALLET + NOUN **music** | **dancer** | **company** | **shoe** | **class, lesson, school** | **teacher**

2 performance of a ballet

- ADJ. **classical, modern, romantic**
- VERB + BALLET **compose, write** | **choreograph**

⇨ Note at PERFORMANCE (for more verbs)

balloon *noun*

1 toy

- ADJ. **helium** *helium balloons for the children's party*
- VERB + BALLOON **blow up, inflate** | **burst, pop**

- BALLOON + VERB **burst, pop**

2 in the sky
- ADJ. **barrage, hot-air**
- VERB + BALLOON **go up in** *We went up in a balloon.*
- BALLOON + NOUN **flight | race**
- PREP. **by ~** *She crossed the Atlantic by hot-air balloon.*

ballot *noun*

- ADJ. **secret | open | postal | national | first, second | leadership | strike**
- VERB + BALLOT **carry out, hold | organize | cast** *Only 40% of eligible voters cast their ballots.*
- BALLOT + NOUN **box | paper | rigging**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *They voted against him at the second ballot.* **by ~** *The jury cast their vote by secret ballot.* **in a/the ~** *The club members decided in a ballot to suspend the captain.* **on a/the ~** *I voted for her on the first ballot.* | **~ for** *a ballot for the Conservative leadership* **~ on** *a ballot on the new contracts* **~ over** *a ballot over strike action*

ban *noun*

- ADJ. **blanket, complete, total | partial | temporary | overtime | advertising** *a blanket advertising ban on tobacco* | **driving | test** *a nuclear test ban treaty*
- VERB + BAN **impose, introduce, place, put** *The EU has imposed a ban on the import of seal skins.* | **lift, overturn, remove | tighten | ease** *The ban on exports has now been eased.* | **call for, demand | oppose, reject | comply with | defy** *The students took to the streets, defying a ban on political gatherings.*
- BAN + VERB **come into force, start | apply to sth, cover sth** *The ban only covers tropical hardwood.*
- PREP. **~ on** *a ban on traffic in the town centre*

ban *verb*

- ADV. **effectively | formally, officially**
- VERB + BAN **attempt to, seek to, try to | vote to** *MPs voted to ban hunting with dogs.*
- PREP. **from** *He has been banned from driving for a year.*
- PHRASES **an attempt/a move to ban sth** *a move to ban cigarette adverts* **a decision to ban sth**

banana *noun*

- ADJ. **ripe | green | mashed**
- QUANT. **bunch** *I bought a small bunch of bananas.*
- VERB + BANANA **eat, have | pick | peel**
- BANANA + NOUN **skin** (*figurative*) *The company has acquired an unhappy knack of slipping on banana skins* (= being led into making mistakes that make it look stupid). | **plant, tree | leaf | grove, plantation**

⇨ Special page at FRUIT

band *noun*

1 group of musicians
- ADJ. **big | brass, string, wind | blues, dance, jazz, rock | marching, military, regimental | school | live** *the excitement of seeing a live band* | **one-man** (*often figurative*) *He runs the business as a one-man band* (= does everything himself).
- VERB + BAND **form | join, play in, sing in** *She plays in a rock band.* | **conduct, lead**
- BAND + VERB **perform, play | strike up** *We heard a band strike up in the park.*
- BAND + NOUN **leader, member**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *a singer in a rock band* **with a/the ~** *a drummer with a jazz band*
- PHRASES **a member of the band**

2 group of people
- ADJ. **select, small** *He is one of a select band of top class players.* | **dwindling | growing**
- VERB + BAND **join**
- PREP. **~ of** *a band of rebels*

3 range
- ADJ. **age, price, tax** *the 25–35 age band*
- VERB + BAND **be in, fall into** *Which tax band do you fall into?*

bandage *noun*

- ADJ. **tight | loose | crepe**
- VERB + BANDAGE **put on, wind around/round, wrap around/round** *Wrap the bandage firmly around the injured limb.* | **have on, wear | change, remove, take off**
- PREP. **~ around/round, ~ on** *She had a bandage on her arm.*
- PHRASES **be in bandages, be swathed/wrapped in bandages** *He'll be in bandages for a few weeks.*

bandwagon *noun*

- VERB + BANDWAGON **climb on, join, jump on** *Competitors have jumped on the bandwagon and started building similar machines.*
- BANDWAGON + VERB **be rolling, gather momentum/pace, sweep along** *The Scottish Nationalist bandwagon is gathering pace.* | **slow down**
- BANDWAGON + NOUN **effect** *There is now a bandwagon effect with more and more firms joining the scheme.*
- PHRASES **get/start a bandwagon rolling** *They seem to have got an anti-government bandwagon rolling.*

bang *noun*

1 sudden loud noise
- ADJ. **almighty, big, enormous, huge, loud, massive, terrific, tremendous**
- VERB + BANG **let out, make** *The engine let out a bang.* ◇ *Will the firework make a loud enough bang?* | **hear** *We suddenly heard an almighty bang from the kitchen.*
- BANG + VERB **echo**
- PREP. **with a ~** *She slammed the door with a loud bang.*

2 sudden hard hit
- ADJ. **nasty** *He got a nasty bang on the head.*
- VERB + BANG **get, have**

bang *verb*

1 hit noisily
- ADV. **hard, loudly**
- PREP. **against** *He kept banging his chair against the wall.* **on** *She banged loudly on the table.*
- PHRASES **bang sth about, bang (sth) down, bang (sth) open/shut** *The bedroom door banged shut.* ◇ *She banged the door shut.*

2 part of the body/person
- ADV. **badly, hard** *I had banged my head badly.*
- PREP. **into** *He banged into me in the corridor.* **on** *I banged my leg on the table.*

bank *noun*

1 for money
- ADJ. **big, large, major | small | central, clearing, commercial, investment, issuing, reserve, savings** *The central bank has put up interest rates.* ◇ *The bond will be priced by the issuing bank.* ◇ *She has her money in one of the largest savings banks.* | **private | foreign, international, overseas**
- VERB + BANK **go to | borrow (sth) from**
- BANK + VERB **lend sb sth** *The bank lent her money to buy a car.* | **underwrite sth** *A group of ten international banks is to underwrite and sell the bonds.* | **collapse, crash** *Investors lost millions when the bank crashed.*
- BANK + NOUN **account, balance, charges, deposit, loan, statement | manager | robber**

- PREP. **from a/the ~** *He got a large loan from the bank.* **in a/the ~** *I'll put half the money in the bank and spend the rest.* **out of a/the ~** *I need to get some money out of the bank.*

2 by a river/canal
- ADJ. **far, opposite, other** *We could see them waving on the opposite bank.* | **canal, river**
- VERB + BANK **burst, overflow** *The River Frome had burst its banks after torrential rain.*
- PREP. **along a/the ~** *We strolled along the river bank.* **on a/the ~** *a picnic on the banks of the Thames*

3 area of sloping ground
- ADJ. **steep | grassy**
- PREP. **down a/the ~** *The children rolled down the grassy bank.* **up a/the ~**

4 mass of cloud, etc./row of machines, etc.
- ADJ. **huge, vast** *a huge bank of switches and buttons*
- PREP. **~ of** *a vast bank of cloud*

banking *noun*
- ADJ. **business, commercial, corporate | investment, merchant | retail, wholesale | domestic, national | global, international | e-, electronic, Internet, online** *At first consumers were wary of e-banking.*
- BANKING + NOUN **system | market | group | business, industry, sector | community** *the international banking community*
- PREP. **in ~** *This software is used in banking.*

bankrupt *adj.*
- VERBS **be | become, go** *Hundreds of firms went bankrupt during the recession.* | **adjudge sb, adjudicate sb, declare sb, make sb** *She had to pay the mortgage after her husband was declared bankrupt.*
- ADV. **almost, nearly, virtually | economically, ideologically, morally** (*figurative*)
- PREP. **of** (*figurative*) *a government bankrupt of new ideas*

bankruptcy *noun*
- ADJ. **personal**
- VERB + BANKRUPTCY **face** *Small travel operators are facing bankruptcy.* | **be close to, be on the brink/verge of | be driven/forced/thrown into, go into | file for, petition for** *The company has been forced to file for bankruptcy.* | **declare** *It is the only country to have declared bankruptcy.* | **be saved from, escape (from)**
- BANKRUPTCY + NOUN **order, proceedings** *The defendant has a bankruptcy order against him.*
- PHRASES **the threat of bankruptcy**

banner *noun*
- VERB + BANNER **drape, hang (out) | carry | wave | unfurl**
- BANNER + VERB **hang | flutter, fly, wave** *banners waving in the wind* | **bear sth** *The demonstrators carried banners bearing various slogans.* | **demand sth, proclaim sth, read sth, say sth** *Banners demanded the president's resignation.* | **be strung across sth** *A banner strung across the road read, 'Welcome home, boys!'*

banquet *noun*
- ADJ. **grand, great, lavish, sumptuous | veritable** (*humorous*) *The meal that followed was a veritable banquet.* | **five-course, six-course, etc. | formal, official | royal, state | celebration/celebratory, farewell, wedding | medieval** *Visitors to the castle can enjoy a medieval banquet with entertainment, in an authentic setting.*
- VERB + BANQUET **give, hold | arrange, prepare (for)** *The kitchens are preparing for a lavish banquet.* | **attend** *The Lord Mayor attended a state banquet last night.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *He was suddenly taken ill at a banquet given in his honour.* | **~ for** *a banquet for the president*

banter *noun*
- ADJ. **easy, friendly, good-natured, lively, pleasant | idle | bawdy, ribald**
- VERB + BANTER **swap | be engaged in, engage in** *She engages in friendly banter with her customers.*

bar *noun*

1 for drinks/food
- ADJ. **licensed | crowded | lounge, public, saloon | gay, singles | cocktail, wine | breakfast, coffee, salad, sandwich, snack**
- VERB + BAR **drop into, go to, stop at** *He often drops into a bar on the way home from work.* | **manage, run**
- BAR + NOUN **food, menu, snacks | stool**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *There were not many people in the bar.*

2 counter
- VERB + BAR **be propping up** (*humorous*), **drink at, lean on, sit at, stand at** *You can usually find him propping up the bar of the Red Lion.* | **serve behind** *I didn't recognize the man who was serving behind the bar.*
- PREP. **at the ~** *They were chatting at the bar.* **behind the ~** *The barmaid stood behind the bar.*

3 in music
- VERB + BAR **hum, play, sing** *She played a few bars on the piano.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the notes in the first bar*
- PHRASES **two, four, etc. beats to the bar**

bar *verb*
- ADV. **effectively**
- PREP. **from** *The curfew has effectively barred migrant workers from their jobs.*

bare *adj.*

1 not covered by clothing
- VERBS **be** *He was standing there, completely bare!*
- ADV. **completely**

2 not containing/covered by anything
- VERBS **be, look | remain | leave sth** *You shouldn't have left the wires bare.* | **lay sth, strip sth** *The earth had been laid bare.* ◇ *The walls have been stripped bare.*
- ADV. **very | completely, quite** *The room was completely bare.* | **almost, rather | strangely** *The room looked strangely bare without the furniture.*
- PREP. **of** *The house was almost bare of furniture.*

barefoot *adj., adv.*
- VERBS **be, go, pad, stand, walk** *The children had to go barefoot because there was no money for shoes.* ◇ *He padded barefoot across the carpet.*

bargain *noun*

1 sth sold at a lower price
- ADJ. **absolute, amazing, good, real**
- VERB + BARGAIN **find, get, pick up** *I picked up a really good bargain in the market.*
- BARGAIN + NOUN **buy, price | hunter, hunting | holiday | basement**

2 agreement
- ADJ. **excellent, good**
- VERB + BARGAIN **make, strike**
- PREP. **into the ~** (= as well) *He's very strong and completely fearless into the bargain.* | **~ between** *A bargain was struck between the employers and the unions.* **~ with** *I'll make a bargain with you.*
- PHRASES **drive a hard bargain** (= force sb to agree to the arrangement that is best for you), **keep (to) your**

half/part/side of the bargain *You haven't kept your side of the bargain.* **sb's side/part/half of the bargain** *Her part of the bargain was to look after the car.*

bargain *verb*

- ADV. **hard** *He bargained hard and was stubborn.* | **collectively** *the right of workers to bargain collectively*
- PREP. **about** *He was prepared to bargain about money.* **for** *to bargain for a decent wage* **over** *crowds of men bargaining over horses* **with** *He tried to bargain with her.*

bargaining *noun*

- ADJ. **hard** *There will be some hard bargaining before an agreement is reached.* | **collective** *Unions were insistent on the right to collective bargaining.* | **plea** (= where a defendant pleads guilty to a lesser charge in return for having a more serious charge dropped)
- BARGAINING + NOUN **position, power** *We are now in a strong bargaining position.*

barge *noun*

- ADJ. **brightly painted** | **canal, river** | **sailing** | **cargo, coal, etc.**
- VERB + BARGE **tow** | **load (sth into), unload (sth from)** | **moor, tie up**
- BARGE + VERB **be laden/loaded with sth, carry sth**
- PREP. **by ~** *I travelled by barge.* **in/on a/the ~** *cruising the canals of France in a barge*

baritone *noun*

- ADJ. **lusty, melodious, pleasant, rich**
- BARITONE + NOUN **voice** | **solo**
- PREP. **in a … ~** *He sang in his rich baritone*

bark *noun*

1 on a tree
- ADJ. **rough** | **tree** | **birch, cinnamon, willow, etc.**
- VERB + BARK **peel off, strip** *The people strip the bark and use it in medicines.*
- BARK + VERB **peel off** *The bark peels off in summer.*
- BARK + NOUN **chippings**

2 of a dog
- ADJ. **loud, noisy**
- VERB + BARK **give** *The dog gave a loud bark.*

3 loud sound/voice
- ADJ. **short** | **harsh**
- VERB + BARK **give** *He gave a harsh bark of laughter.*
- PHRASES **a bark of laughter**

bark *verb*

- ADV. **excitedly, frantically, furiously, loudly**
- PREP. **at** *The dog was barking furiously at a cat.*

barley *noun*

- ADJ. **malted/malting** *Malt whisky is made from malted barley.* | **roast/roasted** | **pearl** | **spring, winter**
- QUANT. **ear** | **field**
- VERB + BARLEY **grow** | **sow** | **cut, harvest** | **thresh** | **grind**
- BARLEY + VERB **grow** | **ripen**
- BARLEY + NOUN **harvest** | **field**

barometer *noun*

1 instrument that measures air pressure
- ADJ. **aneroid, digital** | **high, low** | **steady** *The barometer has been steady for three days now.*
- VERB + BAROMETER **check, read** | **tap** *He tapped the barometer and noted where the needle was pointing.*
- BAROMETER + VERB **rise** | **drop, fall**

2 sth that shows the state of sth
- ADJ. **accurate, good, reliable, sensitive, useful** *Infant mortality is a highly sensitive barometer of socio-economic conditions.* | **political**
- PREP. **~ of**

baron *noun*

1 noble

⇨ Note at PEER

2 powerful businessman
- ADJ. **media, newspaper, press** | **cocaine, drug, oil** *the oil barons of Texas* | **robber**

baroness, baronet *noun*

⇨ Note at PEER

barracks *noun*

- ADJ. **army, military, police** | **fortified**
- VERB + BARRACKS **live in** | **be confined to** *He was confined to barracks for three weeks as a punishment.* | **besiege** | **go back to, return to, withdraw to**

barrage *noun*

1 firing of guns
- ADJ. **heavy, intense** | **artillery**
- VERB + BARRAGE **launch, unleash**
- BARRAGE + NOUN **balloon**
- PREP. **~ of** *Troops unleashed a barrage of grenades.*

2 large number of questions, etc.
- ADJ. **constant, continuous, endless**
- VERB + BARRAGE **be faced with, endure, face** | **keep up** *The reporters kept up a constant barrage of questions.*
- PHRASES **a barrage of abuse/complaints/criticism/questions** *The president is facing a barrage of criticism over his handling of the crisis.*

3 wall of earth
- ADJ. **tidal**
- VERB + BARRAGE **build, construct**
- PREP. **~ across** *They built a barrage across the bay.*

barrel *noun*

1 container
- ADJ. **beer, wine**
- VERB + BARREL **fill** *They filled the barrels with cider*
- BARREL + VERB **contain sth**
- PREP. **a/per ~** *The price of oil had fallen to $16 per barrel.* **by the ~** *Beer is sold by the barrel.* | **~ of** *a barrel of beer/oil*

2 of a gun
- ADJ. **gun, rifle** *I felt the gun barrel at my head*
- VERB + BARREL **look down, peer/squint along** *She found herself looking down the barrel of a gun.* ◇ *Pulling his rifle to his shoulder he squinted along the barrel.*
- BARREL + VERB **point**
- PHRASES **the barrel of a gun**

barren *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be** | **become** | **make sth** *The years of growing cotton had made the land completely barren.*
- ADV. **completely, entirely, utterly** | **almost** | **largely**

barricade *noun*

- ADJ. **human**
- VERB + BARRICADE **build, construct, erect, put up, set up** | **form** *The protesters formed a human barricade.* | **dismantle, remove, take down** | **smash, storm** *The army used tanks to storm the barricades.* | **man** *There were six miners manning the barricades.*
- PREP. **behind a/the ~** *fighting from behind their barri-*

cades **over a/the ~** *The two sides watched each other over the barricades.* | **~ across** *a barricade across the main road* **~ against** *Students built a barricade against the police.* **~ of** *a barricade of wooden benches*

barrier *noun*

1 fence/gate

- ADJ. **physical** | **crash, crush, flood, police, protective, security, ticket** | **sound** (*figurative*) *the first plane to break the sound barrier*
- VERB + BARRIER **build, erect, install** | **break through** *The crowd managed to break through the barriers and get onto the pitch.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *Please show your ticket at the barrier.* **behind a/the ~** *The police waited behind the barriers.* **through a/the ~** *There was a slow trickle of people through the barriers.*

2 thing that causes problems

- ADJ. **effective, formidable, major** | **class, cultural, language, racial, trade**
- VERB + BARRIER **build, create, erect, put up, set up** *The old laws created barriers to free trade.* | **break down, lift, lower, reduce, remove** | **cross** *They believe that sport can cross any barriers.* | **be faced with, encounter, face** | **overcome, transcend**
- PREP. **~ against** *The country has set up barriers against imports.* **~ between** *a class barrier between the two families* **~ to** *a formidable barrier to communication*

3 physical object that prevents sb/sth passing

- ADJ. **impassable, impenetrable** | **natural**
- VERB + BARRIER **form**
- PREP. **~ between** *The mountains form a natural barrier between the two countries.*

barrister *noun*

- ADJ. **brilliant, good, leading, successful, top** | **practising, qualified** | **junior, trainee** | **defence/defending, prosecuting/prosecution**
- PREP. **~ for** *the barrister for the ferry company* ◇

⇨ Note at PROFESSIONAL (for verbs)

base *noun*

1 lowest part

- ADJ. **firm, solid, strong**
- VERB + BASE **have** *The statue has a solid concrete base.*

2 original idea/situation

- ADJ. **firm, secure, solid, sound, strong** | **economic, ideological** *His arguments have a sound economic base.*
- VERB + BASE **have** | **establish, give sb, provide (sb with)** *These policies give us a solid base for winning the next election.* | **use sth as**
- PREP. **~ for** *He used the notes as a base for his lecture.*

3 of support/income/power

- ADJ. **solid, sound** | **broad, narrow** *These policies have a broad base of support.* | **power** *a politician with a rural power base* | **commercial, economic, financial, industrial, manufacturing, tax** *The country has a sound commercial base.* | **client, customer**
- VERB + BASE **have** | **develop, expand, improve, increase** *The company is trying to expand its customer base.*
- BASE + VERB **grow** | **shrink**

4 main place

- ADJ. **excellent, ideal, perfect**
- VERB + BASE **have** *The company has its base in New York.* | **establish, set up** *The company has set up its new base in the north.*
- BASE + NOUN **camp**
- PREP. **~ for** *an ideal base for mountain expeditions*

5 military centre

- ADJ. **foreign** *Demonstrators demanded the removal of foreign bases.* | **air, air force, military, missile, NATO, naval, RAF**
- VERB + BASE **have** | **build, establish** *The Americans established a naval base on the island in the 1960s.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *equipment kept at the base* **on a/the ~** *people living on the air force base* **to (the) ~** *The planes have all returned to base.*

base *verb*

PHRASAL VERB

base sth on/upon sth

- ADV. **closely, firmly** | **broadly, loosely** *The novels are all loosely based on the author's life.* | **largely** *Their research was based largely on anecdotal evidence.*

basement *noun*

- ADJ. **dark, unlit, wndowless** | **bargain** (*often figurative*) *bargain basement prices*
- BASEMENT + NOUN **apartment, bar, flat, kitchen, room, studio** | **door, stairs, steps, window** | **car park**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The canteen is down in the basement.*

bash *noun*

1 strong hit

- VERB + BASH **give sb/sth** | **get**
- PREP. **on** *She got a bash on the head.*

2 party

- ADJ. **big** | **birthday, charity, farewell**
- VERB + BASH **give, throw** *They're throwing a big bash to celebrate their anniversary.*

bash *verb*

- ADV. **hard** *She bashed him so hard she broke his nose.*
- PREP. **on** *Someone bashed him on the nose.* **with** *She bashed him with her book.*
- PHRASES **bash sb about/up** *He had been attacked and bashed about a bit.*

basics *noun*

- VERB + BASICS **grasp, know, learn, master, pick up, understand** | **cover** *The book covers the basics of massage.* | **concentrate on, stick to** *It's best to stick to basics when planning such a large party.* | **get/go back to, get down to** *It's time our education system got back to basics.*
- PHRASES **get the basics right** *The important thing is to get the basics right.*

basis *noun*

1 starting point

- ADJ. **firm, solid, sound**
- VERB + BASIS **form, provide**
- PREP. **~ for** *The proposal provides a sound basis for a book.*
- PHRASES **have no basis in sth** *These allegations have no basis in fact.*

2 principle/reason

- ADJ. **whole**
- PREP. **on the ~ of** *We made our decision on the basis of the information we had.* | **~ for** *The whole basis for your argument is false.*

3 way sth is done/organized

- ADJ. **regular** | **daily, monthly, weekly, etc.** *Staff are employed on a monthly basis.* | **permanent, temporary** | **casual, part-time, voluntary** | **commercial**
- PREP. **on a … ~**

basket *noun*

1 container

- ADJ. **cane, straw, wicker/wickerwork, wire, woven | laundry, sewing | bread, food, fruit, shopping | waste/waste-paper | cat, dog | bicycle** *She was cycling along with her bicycle basket full of shopping.* **| picnic | flower, hanging** *hanging baskets full of summer flowers*
- VERB + BASKET **make, weave | fill, load (sth into), pack (sth into), put sth in | take sth from/out of, unpack | carry, heave, pick up** *She heaved the huge basket onto the table.* **| swing | put down, set down**
- BASKET + VERB **be filled with sth, be full of sth, contain sth** *a basket filled with delicious fruit*
- PHRASES **in/into a/the ~** *The cat lay curled in its basket.* **| ~ of** *a basket of flowers/fruit*

2 in basketball

- VERB + BASKET **shoot | make, score, sink**

basketball *noun*

- ADJ. **college, professional**
- QUANT. **game**
- VERB + BASKETBALL **play | watch**
- BASKETBALL + NOUN **championship, match | court | coach, player, star, team | referee, umpire**

⇨ Special page at SPORT

bass *noun*

1 lowest part in music

- ADJ. **boomy, loud, pounding | solid** *The bass clarinet forms a solid bass for the woodwind group.* **| ground** *The church organist may improvise on a ground bass.* **| figured** (= a bass line in which the chords are represented by figures, not written out in full) *the abandonment in the late 18th century of figured bass in favour of completely written out orchestral scores*
- VERB + BASS **sing** *He sings bass in our local choir.* **| turn down/up** *He always plays his stereo with the bass turned right up.*
- BASS + NOUN **note, sound | line** *a pounding bass line* **| clef**

2 lowest male singing voice

- ADJ. **deep, low**
- VERB + BASS **sing** *Don has agreed to sing bass* (= sing the bass part).
- BASS + NOUN **voice | part**
- PREP. **in a ... ~** *He answered my question in a surprisingly deep bass.*

3 bass guitar

- ADJ. **electric | fretless**
- VERB + BASS **tune (up)**
- BASS + NOUN **guitar**

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

bassoon *noun*

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

bat *noun*

1 in games

- ADJ. **baseball, cricket, table tennis**
- VERB + BAT **grip, hold | carry | swing**

2 small flying animal

- ADJ. **fruit, pipistrelle, vampire**
- BAT + VERB **flutter, fly | roost | squeak**
- PHRASES **a species of bat**

bat *verb*

- VERB + BAT **go in to** *Hick went in to bat after Hussain.* **put sb in to** *India won the toss and put England in to bat.*
- PREP. **for** *Smith was first to bat for Warwickshire.*

batch *noun*

1 number of people/things

- ADJ. **large, small | whole** *A whole batch of original drawings will be on sale.* **| fresh, new** *He baked a fresh batch of rolls.* ◇ *Each summer a new batch of students tries to find work.* **| latest** *the latest batch of opinion polls*
- PREP. **in the ~** *How many books are there in each batch?* ◇ *We deliver the goods in batches.* **| ~ of** *a batch of letters*

2 in computing

- BATCH + NOUN **job** *to process a batch job* **| file, program | processing | mode** *to run in batch mode* **| queue**

bath *noun*

- ADJ. **hot, warm | cold | long | quick | bubble** *lying in a hot bubble bath* **| baby, bird**
- VERB + BATH **fill, run** *Could you run the bath for me?* **| have, take | lie in, soak in | need**
- BATH + NOUN **tap, water** (also **bathwater**) **| mat, towel | time** *It's the children's bath time.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *Please answer the phone. I'm in the bath!*

bathroom *noun*

- ADJ. **steamy | large, spacious | tiny | luxurious, luxury | fitted | tiled | adjoining, en suite | communal, shared | private | downstairs, upstairs**
- VERB + BATHROOM **go to, use** (= go to the toilet)
- BATHROOM + NOUN **cabinet, cupboard | accessories, equipment, fittings, suite | mirror | scales** *I weigh myself on the bathroom scales every day.* **| facilities**

baton *noun*

1 used by police/soldiers

- ADJ. **electric | wooden | police**
- VERB + BATON **carry, hold | draw, use** *The police were ordered to draw their batons and disperse the crowd.*
- BATON + NOUN **charge** *Five people were injured in the baton charge.*

2 used by a conductor

- VERB + BATON **raise, wave**
- PREP. **under the ~ of** *The orchestra made the recording under the baton of a young German conductor.*

3 used in a relay race

- ADJ. **hand, pass** *Each runner passes the baton to the next.* **| take (up) | drop**

4 used by a drum majorette

- VERB + BATON **swing, twirl**

battered *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look | become, get**
- ADV. **badly, very | a bit, a little, rather, slightly | emotionally** *She felt emotionally battered.*
- PHRASES **battered old** *She wore a battered old robe.*

battery *noun*

1 for electricity

- ADJ. **dead, flat** *The car won't start—the battery's flat.* **| rechargeable | car, torch | alkaline, lithium**
- VERB + BATTERY **charge, recharge | change, replace | connect** *Is the battery connected correctly?* **| be powered by, run on, use, work on** *The machine can also run on batteries.*
- BATTERY + VERB **give out, go dead, run down, run out** *After about six hours, the battery will run down.*
- BATTERY + NOUN **power | life** *With our product you get longer battery life.* **| failure | charger**
- PHRASES **battery-operated, battery-powered** *a small battery-powered car*

2 large group of similar things

- ADJ. **full, whole**
- PREP. **~of** *I had to answer a whole battery of questions.*
- PHRASES **a battery of tests**

battle *noun*

1 between armies
- ADJ. **bloody, fierce | pitched** *The two armies fought a pitched battle on the plain.* | **decisive | great, important, major | famous, historic | land, naval, sea**
- VERB + BATTLE **fight (in) | win | lose | do, give, go into, join** *Charles V refused to give battle. ◇ The two armies joined battle.* | **send sb into** *Many young men were sent into battle without proper training.*
- BATTLE + VERB **begin, take place | rage | continue | be over, end**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *Napoleon was defeated at the Battle of Waterloo.* **in (a/the) ~** *He died in battle.*

2 violent fight between two groups
- ADJ. **fierce | pitched | running | gun**
- VERB + BATTLE **fight**
- PREP. **~ against** *Police fought a pitched battle against demonstrators.* **~ between** *a gun battle between police and drug smugglers* **~ with** *Scores of people have been hurt in running battles with police.*

3 struggle
- ADJ. **bitter, fierce | real** *There's now a real battle at the top of the First Division.* | **constant, continuing, long, long-running, ongoing, prolonged | losing, uphill** *We seem to be fighting a losing battle.* | **successful | court, legal**
- VERB + BATTLE **be engaged in, do, fight** *Are you prepared to do battle with your insurance company over the claim?* | **face | win | lose**
- BATTLE + VERB **begin | be over, end**
- PREP. **~ against** *his long battle against cancer* **~ between** *a fierce battle between developers and the local community* **~ for** *the battle for human rights* **~ over** *The government now faces a new battle over tax increases.* **~ with** *They are engaged in a long-running legal battle with their neighbours.*
- PHRASES **a battle of ideas/words, a battle of wills/wits, a battle royal** (= a major battle in which all available forces take part), **fight your own battles** *My parents believed in leaving me to fight my own battles.*

battle *verb*

- ADV. **hard | bravely** *The child battled bravely for her life.* | **in vain** *Doctors battled in vain to save his life.* | **constantly | away** *We'll keep battling away and hope that the goals start to come.*
- PREP. **against** *Rescuers battled against torrential rain and high winds.* **for** *battling for control of the party* **over** *Residents are battling over plans for a new supermarket.* **through** *We battled through the snowstorm.* **with** *Riot police battled with 4 000 students. ◇ battling with leukaemia*
- PHRASES **battle it out** *Competitors battled it out against the clock.* **battle your way** *He battled his way to the bar.*

bay *noun*

1 part of a coast
- ADJ. **sheltered | wide | sandy**
- VERB + BAY **overlook** *holiday flats overlooking the bay*
- PREP. **across the ~** *Lights twinkled across the bay.*

2 area used for a particular purpose
- ADJ. **docking, landing, loading**

bayonet *noun*

- ADJ. **fixed** *troops with fixed bayonets*
- VERB + BAYONET **fix | thrust** *A bayonet had been thrust through his belly.*

beach *noun*

- ADJ. **beautiful, fine, lovely, magnificent, palm-fringed, sun-drenched | golden, sandy, white | pebble, shingle | bathing, pleasure | deserted, empty, private, secluded**
- BEACH + VERB **stretch** *a beautiful golden beach stretching for miles*
- PREP. **along a/the ~** *He walked along the beach.* **at a/the ~** *They met at the beach.* **on a/the ~** *She lay on the beach and read her book.*

bead *noun*

1 small piece of glass, wood, etc.
- ADJ. **amber, glass, wooden, etc. | prayer, rosary**
- QUANT. **strand, string** *a string of wooden beads*
- VERB + BEAD **wear | fasten, put on | take off, undo, unfasten | thread** *She threaded the beads carefully.*
- BEAD + VERB **hang** *A strand of coral beads hung round her neck.*
- BEAD + NOUN **curtain**

2 small drop of liquid
- PHRASES **a bead of moisture/perspiration/sweat**

beak *noun*

- ADJ. **short, small | large, long | curved, hooked, pointed, sharp | powerful | black, yellow**
- VERB + BEAK **open | close**

beaker *noun*

- ADJ. **glass, plastic** *a glass beaker containing copper sulphate solution ◇ She drank from a plastic beaker.*
- VERB + BEAKER **fill, refill | drain, empty | lift, pick up, raise | place, put down, replace, set down | drink from/out of**
- BEAKER + VERB **contain sth**

beam *noun*

1 ray of light
- ADJ. **bright, intense, piercing, powerful | narrow, thin | electron, laser, searchlight, torch**
- VERB + BEAM **direct, point, send, shine | play** *He played the beam of his torch over the wall of the cave.* | **catch sb/sth in** *He was suddenly caught in the full beam of a searchlight.*
- BEAM + VERB **shine | illuminate sth, light sth up**
- PREP. **~ from** *the beam from the lighthouse* **~ of** *A beam of sunlight shone in through the window.*
- PHRASES **on full beam** *car headlights on full beam*

2 long piece of wood/metal
- ADJ. **timber, wooden | oak | iron, metal, steel | old, original** *a cottage with original beams and a thatched roof* | **exposed** *a cosy pub with exposed oak beams* | **horizontal, vertical**
- BEAM + VERB **support sth**

beam *verb*

- ADV. **broadly** *He beamed broadly at them, clearly very pleased to see them.* | **positively** *She positively beamed with satisfaction.* | **cheerfully, happily, proudly**
- PREP. **at** *She beamed happily at Maxim.* **with** *His face beamed with pleasure.*

bean *noun*

1 vegetable
- ADJ. **black-eyed, broad, butter, chilli, French, green, haricot, kidney, runner, soya, string | canned, dried, refried | baked** *baked beans on toast*

- VERB + BEAN **eat, have | plant | grow** *She grows her own broad beans.* **| cook | drain, strain | soak** *If using dried beans, soak them overnight first.*
- BEAN + NOUN **curd | sprout**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

2 seed of other plants

- ADJ. **cocoa, coffee**
- VERB + BEAN **roast | grind**

bear *verb*

1 accept/deal with sth

- VERB + BEAR **be able/unable to, can/could (hardly/scarcely)** *Don't leave me alone. I wouldn't be able to bear it.* ◇ *How can you bear this awful noise?* ◇ *We could hardly bear to be outdoors in the blinding sunlight.*

2 be responsible for sth

- VERB + BEAR **have to, must** *Do parents have to bear the whole cost of tuition fees?* ◇ *You must bear at least some responsibility for what has happened.*

PHRASAL VERB

bear on/upon sb/sth

- ADV. **heavily** *The burden of the tax bore most heavily on the poor.*

bearable *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | make sth** *The camaraderie among fellow employees made the tedious work just bearable.* **| find sth** *He found the dullness of his work scarcely bearable.*
- ADV. **almost | hardly, scarcely | just**
- PREP. **for** *The money made life more bearable for her.*

beard *noun*

- ADJ. **bristling, bushy, full, shaggy | neat, neatly-clipped | patchy, straggly, wispy | goatee | pointed | ginger/gingery, greying, reddish, white, etc. | fake, false**
- VERB + BEARD **grow | have, sport, wear** *He sported a neat goatee beard.* **| clip, cut, trim | shave (off) | pull (at), stroke, tug (at)** *Jim stroked his beard reflectively.*
- BEARD + VERB **grow** *My beard's grown a lot.* **| be streaked with sth** *His beard is streaked with grey.*
- BEARD + NOUN **growth, stubble** *He had two days' beard growth across his jowls and chin.*
- PREP. **with a/the ~** *She's scared of men with beards.*
- PHRASES **a three-day/seven-day, etc. growth of beard, a three-day-old, etc. beard**

bearing *noun*

1 way in which sth is related

- ADJ. **direct, important, significant** *The rise in interest rates had a direct bearing on the company's profits.*
- VERB + BEARING **have**
- PREP. **~on**

2 direction/position

- ADJ. **compass**
- VERB + BEARING **check** *He checked his bearings on the map in the car.* **| find, get** *Everything was in darkness and it was difficult to get my bearings.* **| keep** *To keep your bearings in a desert sandstorm is impossible.* **| lose** *She lost her bearings in the thick forest.*
- PHRASES **take a (compass) bearing on sth** *Take a compass bearing on that mountain.*

beast *noun*

1 animal

- ADJ. **ferocious, savage, snarling, wild** *Savage beasts once roamed these forests.* **| exotic, fabled, fantastic, legendary, mythical, rare, strange** *paintings of mythical beasts* **| great, huge, magnificent, mighty**
- PHRASES **a beast of burden, a beast of prey**

2 unpleasant/cruel person

- ADJ. **filthy** *You filthy beast!* **| sex** *Local people live in fear of this unknown sex beast.*
- PHRASES **the beast in sb** (= the violent or sexual part of sb's character) *The beast in her wanted to destroy his house.* **bring out the beast in sb** *Somehow she brought out the beast in him.*

beat *noun*

1 rhythm

- ADJ. **regular, rhythmic, steady | pounding**
- VERB + BEAT **clap to, dance to, sway to** *They danced to the rhythmic beat of the music.*
- PHRASES **two, three, four, etc. beats to the bar** *The piece has four beats to the bar.* **sb's heart misses/skips a beat** (= sb feels very nervous) *As I opened the letter, my heart missed a beat.*

2 of a police officer

- VERB + BEAT **pound, walk** *We have two officers walking the beat after midnight.*
- PREP. **on the ~** *officers on the beat*

beat *verb*

1 in a game

- ADV. **comfortably, comprehensively, convincingly, easily, hands down, soundly** *He beat her hands down.* **| narrowly** *He was narrowly beaten by his opponent.*
- PREP. **at** *She beat him at chess.* **by** *beating her by just three points*
- PHRASES **beat sb into second, third, etc. place** *He was beaten into second place by the American.*

2 hit sb

- ADV. **badly, brutally, savagely, severely, violently**
- PREP. **with** *She was beaten with a metal bar.*
- PHRASES **beat sb about/over the head** *He had been beaten about the head with a rock.* **beat sb to death, beat sb unconscious**

4 of heart/wings

- ADV. **fast, frantically, painfully, rapidly, wildly** *I could feel my heart beating wildly.*

5 mix

- ADV. **thoroughly, well** *Beat the mixture well, until it is light and creamy.* **| lightly** *Add three eggs, lightly beaten.*

PHRASAL VERB

beat down

- ADV. **mercilessly, relentlessly**
- PREP. **on/upon** *The African sun beat relentlessly down on his aching head.*

beating *noun*

- ADJ. **brutal, savage, severe, terrible, violent**
- VERB + BEATING **get, receive, suffer, take** *The team took a terrible beating.* **| give sb/sth** *They caught him and gave him a violent beating.*

beautiful *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, grow | make sb/sth** *We did all we could to make the room beautiful.* **| find sb/sth** *He found her exquisitely beautiful.*
- ADV. **exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, outstandingly, really, remarkably, supremely, truly, very | absolutely, perfectly, quite, utterly | just, simply** (*informal*) *'They're just beautiful,' breathed Jo, when she saw the earrings.* **| almost** *I remember her as pretty, almost beautiful.* **| rather | astonishingly, breathtakingly, dazzlingly, incredibly, staggeringly, startlingly, strikingly, stunningly, unbelievably, wonderfully | uniquely | exquisitely | serenely | classically** *Her features were classically beautiful, with perfectly structured high cheek-*

bones. | **coldly** *The designs were pure, austere and coldly beautiful.* | **achingly, eerily, hauntingly, painfully** *a hauntingly beautiful melody*

beauty *noun*

1 quality of being beautiful

• ADJ. **breathtaking, extraordinary, great, outstanding, sheer** *an area of breathtaking beauty* | **classical** *the classical beauty of her face* | **natural** | **physical** | **scenic**

• BEAUTY + VERB **last** | **fade** *Her beauty faded as she got older.*

• BEAUTY + NOUN **competition, contest** | **queen** | **parlour, salon** | **treatment** | **spot**

• PHRASES **beauty is in the eye of the beholder, beauty is only skin-deep**

2 beautiful person or thing

• ADJ. **great** *She was known as a great beauty in her time.* | **absolute, real** *My new car's a real beauty!* | **little** *Isn't she a little beauty?*

bed *noun*

1 piece of furniture for sleeping on

• ADJ. **double, king-size, single, twin** | **bunk, camp, feather, folding, four-poster, hospital, sofa** | **warm** | **unmade** *a messy room, with an unmade bed and clothes on the floor* | **marriage**

• VERB + BED **do** (*informal*), **make, make up** | **strip** *Please strip the beds and put the sheets in the washing machine.* | **climb into, crawl into, get into, go to, tumble into** *She crawled into bed exhausted.* | **climb out of, get out of, leap out of** | **lie (down) on, lie in, sit on** *He lay in bed, reading his book.* ◇ *Elizabeth was sitting on her bed writing a letter.* | **put sb to, tuck sb up in** *It's your turn to put the children to bed.* | **wet** *Don't punish a child who wets the bed.*

• BED + NOUN **clothes, linen**

• PREP. **in ~** *I like to be in bed before 11 o'clock.* **out of ~** *Are you out of bed yet?*

• PHRASES **bed and breakfast, the edge/side of the bed, the foot/head of the bed, get sb into bed** (= have sex with sb), **go to bed with sb** (= have sex with sb), **take to your bed** (= go to bed because you are ill), **time for bed** *Come on, children, it's time for bed.*

2 piece of ground for growing flowers, vegetables, etc.

• ADJ. **flower, rose, strawberry** | **ornamental** | **raised**

• PREP. **~ of** *ornamental beds of roses*

bedroom *noun*

• ADJ. **attractive, elegant, pleasant, pretty** | **comfortable, cosy** | **big, enormous, large, spacious** | **cell-like, little, modest, small, tiny** | **double, single, twin** | **en suite** | **main, master, principal** | **nursery** | **study** | **attic, back, downstairs, first-floor, front, upstairs** | **guest, spare** | **hotel**

• VERB + BEDROOM **share** *I used to share a bedroom with my brother.* | **convert** *They converted the spare bedroom into an office.* | **decorate, redecorate**

• BEDROOM + NOUN **furniture, suite** | **window** | **slippers** | **scene** *The actress refused to appear naked in the bedroom scenes.*

• PREP. **around a/the ~** *There were dirty clothes strewn around the bedroom.* **in a/the ~**

• PHRASES **a 3-bedroom, etc. house** *The larger houses are four-bedroom houses.*

bedside *noun*

• VERB + BEDSIDE **be called to, be summoned to** *The doctor was summoned to his bedside.* | **stay at/by** | **leave** *His wife never left his bedside.*

• BEDSIDE + NOUN **cabinet, lamp, light, table**

• PREP. **at sb's/the ~, by sb's/the ~** *I like to keep a glass of water by my bedside.*

bedtime *noun*

• ADJ. **normal, usual**

• BEDTIME + NOUN **reading, story** | **drink**

• PREP. **at ~, before sb's ~, past sb's ~** *It's well past my normal bedtime.*

bee *noun*

• ADJ. **bumble** (also **bumblebee**), **honey, killer** | **queen, worker** | **angry** *He was stung by thousands of angry bees.*

• QUANT. **swarm**

• BEE + VERB **buzz, hum** *A bee buzzed in my ear.* | **sting (sb)** | **fly, swarm** *The bees swarmed round the hive.*

• BEE + NOUN **hive** (also **beehive**) | **sting** | **keeper** (also **bee-keeper**)

beef *noun*

• ADJ. **fresh** | **lean** | **fatty** | **tender** | **tough** | **prime** | **organic** | **medium, rare, well done** *'How would you like your beef?' 'Rare, please.'* | **roast** | **corned, minced, salted** *a kilo of very lean minced beef*

• QUANT. **bit, piece, slice** | **fillet, joint, rib, side**

• VERB + BEEF **eat** | **boil, braise, cook, fry, roast, stew** | **carve, cut** *carving a joint of beef*

• BEEF + NOUN **stew, stock** | **cattle** | **farmer** | **industry, production**

beer *noun*

• ADJ. **excellent, good, great, quality** | **strong** | **alcohol-free, light, low-alcohol, no-alcohol** | **cold, ice-cold** | **warm** | **foaming** *a glass of foaming ice-cold beer* | **black, blonde, dark** | **bottled, cask, draught, keg** | **flat** (= that the gas has gone out of) | **stale** *The pub smelled of stale beer.* | **home-brewed** | **designer** *The shop specializes in designer beers.*

• QUANT. **litre, pint** *I ordered half a pint of beer with my sandwich.* | **barrel, bottle, can, glass, keg, tankard** | **crate**

• VERB + BEER **drink** *Do you drink beer?* | **have** *Will you have a beer?* | **down** *He downed his beer in one go.* | **gulp (at), sip (at), swig, take a gulp/sip/swig of** | **draw, pour (sb)** *This beer should be drawn slowly.* ◇ *He poured us all a beer.* | **order** *I saw him at the bar ordering a beer.* | **go for** *I'm going for a beer with Carl tonight.* | **brew** | **chill**

• BEER + VERB **chill** *Put the beer in the fridge to chill.* | **foam** | **go flat** | **flow** (*figurative*) *The beer flowed freely after the match.* | **slop** *He slammed his glass down and the beer slopped over the sides.*

• BEER + NOUN **drinker, lover** | **maker** | **barrel, bottle, can, crate, glass, keg, mug, tankard** | **mat** | **festival** | **consumption, production, sales** | **cellar, garden** *The pub has a beer garden round the back.* | **belly** *He's only twenty but he's already got a beer belly* (= a fat stomach from drinking too much beer). | **money** *Playing non-league football keeps him in beer money* (= earns him enough money to buy beer, but he has to do another job to earn a living).

beg *verb*

1 ask sb for food, money, etc.

• VERB + BEG **be forced to, have to**

• PREP. **for** *begging for food* **from** *He had to beg food from passers-by.*

2 ask for sth with great emotion

• ADV. **almost, practically** *In the end they almost begged him to take the job.* | **humbly** *We humbly beg Your Majesty to show mercy.* | **silently** *Don't leave me, he begged her silently.*

- VERB + BEG **be forced to, have to**
- PREP. **for** *We went to him to beg for forgiveness.* **of** (*formal*) *Do not do that, I beg of you.*

begin *verb*

- ADV. **(all over) again** *Once it has finished, the video automatically begins again.* ◇ *We had to begin all over again.*
- VERB + BEGIN **be due to, be expected to, be scheduled to** *The entertainment was due to begin at 8.30.* | **be ready to** | **be about to, be going to** *A new life was about to begin for him.*
- PREP. **by** *Let's begin by writing down a few ideas.* **with** *We will begin with a brief discussion of the problems.* ◇ *Can you think of a word beginning with V?*
- PHRASES **begin at the beginning** *Begin your story at the beginning, and carry on to the end.*

beginner *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, complete, real**

beginning *noun*

- ADJ. **new** *She spoke of a new beginning for the nation.*
- VERB + BEGINNING **herald, mark** *This invention marked the beginning of the modern age.* | **see** *2001 saw the beginning of a period of rapid growth.*
- PREP. **at the ~ (of sth)** *I'm paid at the beginning of each month.* **from the ~** *Tell me the whole story, right from the beginning.* **in the ~** *In the beginning I found the course very difficult.*
- PHRASES **the beginning of the end** *That holiday together was the beginning of the end of our friendship.* **early/first beginnings** *The society had its early beginnings in discussion groups.* **from beginning to end** *The play was rubbish from beginning to end.* **from humble/modest/small beginnings** *From these small beginnings it grew into the vast company we know today.* **the very beginning** *I disliked her from the very beginning.*

behave *verb*

- ADV. **impeccably, perfectly, well** | **aggressively, badly, disgracefully, outrageously** *Children who behave badly are rejecting adult values.* | **appropriately, correctly, properly, responsibly** *The enquiry investigated whether officers had behaved correctly.* | **improperly, irresponsibly** | **rationally, reasonably** | **stupidly, unreasonably** | **normally** | **oddly, out of character, strangely, suspiciously** | **accordingly** *Children, if they are used to being treated with respect, will behave accordingly.* | **naturally** *the freedom to behave naturally*
- PREP. **as if/though** *He behaved as if nothing out of the ordinary was happening.* **like** *Stop behaving like a three-year-old!* **towards** *He had always behaved in a friendly manner towards us.*

behaviour *noun*

- ADJ. **exemplary, good** *He had his jail term cut for good behaviour.* | **acceptable** | **antisocial, bad, unacceptable, undesirable** | **deviant, problem** *Teachers can't always respond effectively to problem behaviour.* | **normal** | **strange** | **aggressive, criminal, disruptive, violent** | **animal, human, sexual, social**
- VERB + BEHAVIOUR **control, influence** *Parents can influence the behaviour of their children.* | **alter, change, modify** | **display, exhibit, show** *Animals in zoos often display disturbed behaviour.*
- BEHAVIOUR + NOUN **pattern**
- PREP. **~ towards** *his behaviour towards his parents*
- PHRASES **behaviour and attitudes, be on your best behaviour** (= to behave very well in order to impress sb), **a code of behaviour, a pattern of behaviour, standards of behaviour** *a new study looking at the behaviour and attitudes of young men*

being *noun*

1 living creature

- ADJ. **human, living** *the rights of all human beings* | **intelligent, rational** *I work on the assumption that people are rational beings.* | **strange, supernatural**

2 state of existing

- VERB + BEING **be brought into, come into** (= to start to exist) *How do you think the world came into being?*

belief *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, deep-seated, deeply held, fervent, firm, passionate, profound, strong, strongly held, unshakeable** | **genuine, honest, sincere** *She was strict with her children in the genuine belief that it was the right thing to do.* | **entrenched, fanatical** | **common, commonly held, general, popular, widely held, widespread** | **growing** | **long-held, long-standing** | **basic, central, core, fundamental** *the basic beliefs of Christianity* | **personal, private** *I think the rights and wrongs of eating meat are a matter of personal belief.* | **rational, reasonable** | **irrational, superstitious** | **instinctive** | **naive** | **strange** | **conflicting, contradictory** | **erroneous, false, misguided, mistaken** *I took the job in the mistaken belief that I would be able to stay in London.* | **ancient, traditional** *The people still follow their traditional beliefs.* | **orthodox** | **cultural, moral, political, religious, spiritual** *They were persecuted for their religious beliefs.* | **Catholic, Christian, pagan, etc.**
- QUANT. **set, system** *Each religion has its set of beliefs.*
- VERB + BELIEF **have, hold** *I have very firm beliefs about moral issues.* | **share** *He shared his father's belief that people should work hard for their living.* | **adhere to, cling to, follow, hold on to, stick to** *She clung to the belief that he would come back to her.* ◇ *The Labour Party must stick to its beliefs.* | **abandon, give up, renounce** | **lose** *She has lost her belief in God.* | **affirm, assert, declare, express, state** *Here the apostle Peter affirms his belief that the scriptures are 'inspired'.* | **emphasize, stress** | **encourage, foster, fuel** *The exam results encouraged the belief that he was a good teacher.* | **confirm, reinforce, strengthen, support** *This latest evidence strengthens our belief that the government is doing the right thing.* | **question, shake, shatter, undermine, weaken** *The child's death shook her belief in God.* | **respect** *You must respect other people's beliefs.* | **beggar, defy** (= to be impossible to believe) *It beggars belief how things could have got this bad.*
- BELIEF + VERB **persist** *Belief in the magical properties of this herb persisted down the centuries.*
- BELIEF + NOUN **system**
- PREP. **beyond ~** (= too great, difficult, etc. to be believed) *Dissatisfaction with the government has grown beyond belief.* ◇ *icy air that was cold beyond belief* **in the ~ that** *She did it in the belief that it would help her career.* | **~ about** *beliefs about the origin of the universe* **~ among** *There is a belief among young people that education is a waste of time.* **~ in** *a belief in God*
- PHRASES **contrary to popular belief** (= in spite of what people think) *Contrary to popular belief, rainforests are not jungles through which you have to slash a path.*

believable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, sound** | **find sth**
- ADV. **very** *All the characters were very believable.* | **hardly** *I find her story hardly believable.*

believe *verb*

- ADV. **firmly, really, seriously** (only used with negatives), **sincerely** *He firmly believed that he was right.* ◇ *No one seriously believes that this war will happen.* | **mistakenly**

- VERB + BELIEVE **can't/cannot, could not** *I couldn't believe what I was hearing.* | **be hard to** *It's hard to believe that this campaign has been going on for ten years.* | **give sb to** *The boss gave me to believe that we would all get a pay rise.* | **have reason to** *We have reason to believe that the escaped prisoner may be hiding in this house.* | **be inclined to** *I'm inclined to believe you.* | **lead sb to** *The advertisement led us to believe that all prices had been cut.*
- PHRASES **can/could hardly/scarcely believe sth, not believe a word of sth** *I didn't believe a word of what he said.*

believer *noun*

1 sb who has religious faith
- ADJ. **devout, genuine, true** | **religious**

2 sb who believes that sth is good
- ADJ. **fervent, firm, great, passionate, staunch, strong**
- PREP. **~in** *I'm a firm believer in the benefits of exercise.*

bell *noun*

1 hollow metal object that rings
- ADJ. **church, temple** | **wedding** (*often figurative*) *The two of them went everywhere together and their friends could already hear wedding bells* (= were sure they would get married). | **cow** | **distant**
- VERB + BELL **ring** | **hear**
- BELL + VERB **chime, clang, jangle, peal, ring (out), sound, tinkle, toll** *The bells on the harness tinkled softly.* ◇ *The church bells tolled for Evensong.*
- BELL + NOUN **tower** | **pull, rope**
- PHRASES **a chime of bells** *the faint chime of bells* **a peal of bells** *She heard a peal of church bells.* **a sound of bells** *The sound of bells echoed across the valley.*

2 other object that rings
- ADJ. **bicycle, door** (also **doorbell**) | **dinner, school** | **electric** | **alarm, warning** (*often figurative*) *Alarm bells were ringing inside Stuart's head.*
- VERB + BELL **press, ring, sound** | **answer** *She hurried to answer the doorbell.*
- BELL + VERB **go, ring, sound** *The school bell goes at three every afternoon.*
- BELL + NOUN **push**

bellow *noun*

- ADJ. **great, loud** | **angry**
- VERB + BELLOW **give, let out** *She gave a great bellow of laughter.* | **hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *He woke with a bellow of rage.* | **~of**
- PHRASES **a bellow of laughter, a bellow of rage**

⇨ Note at SOUND

belly *noun*

- ADJ. **empty, full** | **flat** | **fat, pot** *Since he turned 30 he's started to develop a pot belly.* | **distended, swollen** | **beer** (= a fat stomach from drinking too much beer)
- BELLY + VERB **bulge** | **hang** *He's so fat, his belly hangs over his trousers.* | **swell**
- PREP. **in your ~** *She felt the child in her belly kick.*

belongings *noun*

- ADJ. **personal**
- VERB + BELONGINGS **collect/gather (together/up), pack (up)** *She collected up her personal belongings and left.* | **go through, look through, rifle through, search** *In her absence, someone had gone through her belongings.* | **sort through** *He was trying to sort through his belongings and bring them to some sort of order.*

beloved *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **dearly, much** *the death of his much beloved wife*
- PREP. **by** *an area beloved by artists* **of** *She ran one of the little tea rooms so beloved of Londoners at the turn of the century.*

belt *noun*

1 narrow piece of leather, etc. worn round the waist
- ADJ. **broad, wide** | **narrow** | **thick** | **studded** | **cartridge, money, sword** | **trouser**
- VERB + BELT **buckle, do up, fasten** | **unbuckle, undo, unfasten** | **tighten** | **loosen**
- BELT + NOUN **buckle, loop**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

2 in a machine
- ADJ. **conveyor, drive, fan**

3 area of land
- ADJ. **wide** | **narrow, thin** | **coastal, mountain** | **corn, cotton, wheat** | **green, industrial** *New roads are cutting into the green belt* (= open land round a city where building is strictly controlled). | **commuter, stockbroker**
- PREP. **~of** *a narrow belt of trees*

bemused *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** | **become**
- ADV. **totally** *Sarah looked totally bemused.* | **a bit, faintly, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat** *I was beginning to feel slightly bemused.*
- PREP. **by** *Connie was rather bemused by all the attention she was getting.*

bench *noun*

1 long seat
- ADJ. **long** | **narrow** | **hard** | **padded** | **wooden** | **garden, park** | **replacements', subs', substitutes'** (*sport*) *They have several top players on the subs' bench.*
- VERB + BENCH **sit (down) on**
- BENCH + NOUN **seat**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *He often sleeps on park benches.*

2 in Parliament
- ADJ. **government, Opposition** | **Conservative, Labour, etc.** | **back, front** (Government ministers and the most important members of the Opposition sit on the **front benches**. **Back-bench** MPs have no official position besides that of MP.)
- VERB + BENCH **be on, sit on**
- PREP. **from the … ~s** *There were cheers from the Labour benches.* **on the … ~s** *Some MPs on the government back benches are starting to question the government's handling of the war.*

3 long narrow table that people work at
- ADJ. **work** (also **workbench**) | **carpenter's, laboratory**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *He was working at his bench.*

bend *noun*

- ADJ. **gentle, slight, wide** | **hairpin, sharp, tight** *Some of the hairpin bends had Ruth clinging to her seat.* | **dangerous** | **blind** *mountain roads with steep gradients and blind bends* | **left-hand, right-hand** | **final** (= in a race) *He had a winning lead off the final bend.*
- QUANT. **series** *a series of dangerous bends*
- VERB + BEND **come round, negotiate, round, take, turn** *He slowed down to negotiate the bend.*
- PREP. **around/round a/the ~** *The car vanished round a bend.* **into a/the ~** *I inched the car into the bend.* **off a/the ~** *He came off the bend in the lead.* **on a/the ~** *Slow down on the tight bends.* | **~in** *a wide bend in the river*

bend *verb*

- ADV. **slightly | quickly, swiftly | backwards, forwards | down, over** *I bent down and tied my shoelace.* | **close, nearer** *Sarah bent close to him.* | **double** *I had to bend double to get under the table.*
- PREP. **at** *Avoid bending at the waist when lifting heavy objects.* **towards** *He came closer and bent towards her.*

benefactor *noun*

- ADJ. **generous, kind | wealthy | great | anonymous, mysterious, unknown | private | public** *He was a great public benefactor and gave land for building the sea wall.*
- BENEFACTOR + VERB **donate sth, give sth** *A private benefactor donated £20 000.*
- PREP. **~to** *She was a generous benefactor to the library.*

beneficial *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove** *Some alternative treatments may prove highly beneficial.* | **consider sth**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very | entirely, wholly | clearly | mutually** *The arrangement was mutually beneficial.* | **medically, socially**
- PREP. **for** *I think it would be beneficial for each committee member to have a copy of the report.* **to** *Exercise is extremely beneficial to health.*

benefit *noun*

1 advantage

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, major, real, substantial** *This could bring real benefits for teachers.* | **maximum | additional** *The scheme has many additional benefits.* | **fringe** (= extra things that an employer gives as well as wages) *The fringe benefits include free health insurance.* | **mutual** *The different environmental groups could work together to their mutual benefit.* | **potential | long-term, short-term | economic, environmental, financial, health, social | tax**
- VERB + BENEFIT **enjoy, have** *The motor industry will be one of the first to enjoy the benefits of the recovery.* ◇ *children who have the benefit of a stable home background* | **derive, gain, get, obtain, reap, receive** *The company derived substantial benefit from the deal.* ◇ *I reaped the benefits of all my early training.* | **bring, offer, provide** *The new factory will bring considerable benefits to the area.* ◇ *This deal will offer major benefits to industrialists and investors.*
- BENEFIT + VERB **accrue** *the benefits that accrue from a good education*
- PREP. **for sb's ~** *We shall do this for the benefit of the patients.* **of ~ to** *This arrangement will be of great benefit to you both.* **to sb's ~** *It will be to everyone's benefit.* **with/without the ~ of** *managing to work without the benefit of modern technology* | **~ for** *the benefits for companies* **~ from** *the benefits from tourism* **~ of** *the benefit of a steady income* **~ to** *What are the benefits to investors?*

2 money

- ADJ. **welfare | state | means-tested, universal** *One way to cut spending is to move from universal benefits—those paid to everyone regardless of need—to means-tested ones.* | **cash | child, housing, sickness, social security, unemployment**
- QUANT. **amount, level**
- VERB + BENEFIT **be eligible for, be entitled to, qualify for | claim** *You may be able to claim housing benefit.* | **draw, get, receive** *He receives unemployment benefit.* | **be dependent on | lose** *She is worried that if she takes on a job she will lose her benefits.* | **cut** *The government has cut unemployment benefit.* | **increase**
- BENEFIT + VERB **be paid** *Benefit is paid monthly.*
- BENEFIT + NOUN **benefits agency | office | payment | system**
- PREP. **on ~** *He's on social security benefit.*

benefit *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, enormously, greatly, substantially | fully | clearly, obviously, undoubtedly** *The new law clearly benefits those earning the most money.* | **equally | disproportionately | directly** *We benefited directly from the reorganization.* | **indirectly | financially** *We both benefited financially from the arrangement.*
- PREP. **from**

benign *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem**
- ADV. **fairly, rather, relatively** *The effects of this chemical are fairly benign.* | **environmentally** *We are looking for an environmentally benign alternative to bleach.*

bent *noun*

- ADJ. **natural | artistic, intellectual, literary, philosophical, scientific**
- VERB + BENT **have** *She has an artistic bent.* | **show** *He showed a literary bent from a young age.*
- PREP. **with ~** *a child with a scientific bent* | **~ for** *a natural bent for languages*

bent *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look | become, get** *The lamp post got bent in the crash.*
- ADV. **slightly** *He stood with knees slightly bent.*
- PHRASES **bent double** *The man shuffled back a few paces, bent almost double.*

bequest *noun*

- ADJ. **generous, large, substantial** *The library has received a generous bequest from a local businessman.* | **small | charitable**
- VERB + BEQUEST **leave (sb), make (sb)** *In his will he made a substantial bequest to his wife.* | **receive**
- PREP. **by ~** *The picture was acquired by bequest in 1921.* | **~ from** *a bequest from the late Jack Dawkins* **~ to** *a bequest to his son*

bereaved *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADJ. **newly, recently** *a recently bereaved family*

bereavement *noun*

- ADJ. **recent | family, personal**
- VERB + BEREAVEMENT **suffer** *He has suffered a bereavement.* | **come to terms with, cope with, get over**
- BEREAVEMENT + NOUN **counselling, counsellor**
- PHRASES **the pain/shock of bereavement**

berry *noun*

- ADJ. **ripe | wild | poisonous | holly, juniper, etc.**
- VERB + BERRY **have, produce** *Does this bush have berries?* | **pick** *We picked a few of the berries.* | **eat**
- BERRY + VERB **ripen | drop off**

⇨ Special page at FRUIT

berth *noun*

- ADJ. **empty | upper | lower**
- VERB + BERTH **have | book, get, take** *I've managed to get berths on the overnight ferry.*
- PHRASES **a two-berth, three berth, etc. cabin**

best *adj.*

- VERBS **be | consider sth, deem sth, judge sth, think sth** *Owen judged it best to make no reply.*
- ADV. **very** *We aim to give our guests the very best attention.* **| by far, easily** *This is by far the best restaurant in the town.*
- PREP. **at** *Who in the class is best at maths?* **for** *I'm only trying to do what's best for you.*

bet *noun*

- ADJ. **good, safe, sure | fair | outside** (= with a very small chance of winning)
- VERB + BET **have, make, place, put** *I'm going to place a bet on that white horse.* **| accept, take** *We are now taking bets on the election result.* **| win | lose**
- PREP. **~on** *I had a bet on the three o'clock race.* **~with** *I made a bet with a friend.*
- PHRASES **do sth for a bet, my bet is/it is my bet (that)...** *My bet is that Liverpool will win.*

betrayal *noun*

- ADJ. **personal | final, ultimate** *His defection to the other side was the ultimate betrayal.*
- VERB + BETRAYAL **regard sth as, see sth as, view sth as** *The business community regarded the measures as a betrayal of election promises.*
- PREP. **~of** *a betrayal of his friends ◇ The decisions were a betrayal of everything my father stood for.*
- PHRASES **an act of betrayal, a betrayal of (sb's) trust, a feeling/sense of betrayal**

better *adj.*

1 comparative of 'good'

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | get** *Cars are getting better all the time.* **| make sth** *We must make our inner cities better to live and work in.* **| consider sth, deem sth, judge sth, think sth** *I thought it better to tackle him outside of business hours.*
- ADV. **a damned/darned sight, even, far, a lot, markedly, (very) much, still, substantially, ten/a hundred/a thousand times** *His latest book is a darned sight better than the one before.* **| a bit, a good/great deal, a little, marginally, slightly**
- PHRASES **no better** *Charles VII was a bad king, and Charles VIII was no better.* **nothing better than** *There's nothing better than a nice juicy peach!*

2 recovered from an illness

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | get** *I hope you get better soon.* **| get sb, make sb** *Don't worry. The doctor will soon make you better.* **| kiss sth** *Did you hurt yourself? Poor thing—come here and let me kiss it better.*
- ADV. **a lot, (very) much | a bit, a good/great deal, a little, slightly**

bewildered *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become | leave sb** *She packed her bags and left—leaving Matthew bewildered and confused.*
- ADV. **very | completely, quite, thoroughly, totally, utterly | a little, rather, slightly, somewhat**
- PREP. **at** *He was rather bewildered at seeing her there.* **by** *She was totally bewildered by his message.*

bewildering *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | find sth** *I found the experience quite bewildering.*
- ADV. **very** *It was all very bewildering.* **| completely, quite, totally** *a totally bewildering array of different wines* **| a bit, rather**

bias *noun*

- ADJ. **clear, definite, marked, obvious, strong | left-wing, right-wing | cultural, political**
- VERB + BIAS **have** *The newspaper has a clear bias towards the Conservative Party.* **| display, show | avoid, eliminate, reduce | correct** *We have now tried to correct the bias in our original report.* **| be free from** *The newspaper was free from political bias.*
- BIAS + VERB **creep in, exist** *Bias often creeps in through the wording of questions.*
- PREP. **with/without ~** *All material must be selected and presented without bias.* **with a ~** *a newspaper with a strong left-wing bias* **| ~ against** *a bias against women* **~ in favour of/towards** *a bias in favour of small firms*

biased *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, heavily, hopelessly, strongly, very | a little, slightly | naturally | inherently | ideologically, politically | racially**
- PREP. **against** *Fate was strongly biased against him.* **in favour of** *The methods they employed were heavily biased in the gentry's favour.* **towards** *Managers are naturally biased towards projects showing a quick return.*

Bible *noun*

- ADJ. **Holy**
- VERB + BIBLE **read, study**
- BIBLE + VERB **say sth, tell sb sth, teach sth** *The Bible teaches that all people are equal before God.*
- BIBLE + NOUN **reading, story | study**
- PREP. **in the ~** *You can read the story of Noah in the Bible.*

bibliography *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, select, selective | comprehensive, extensive** *an extensive bibliography of books and articles*
- VERB + BIBLIOGRAPHY **compile, put together | contain, include | publish | consult** *Consult the bibliography for further reading on the subject.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *You'll find the professor's book in the bibliography.* **| ~of** *The book includes a selective bibliography of works on French art.*

bicycle *noun*

- VERB + BICYCLE **ride | get on, mount** *He mounted his bicycle and rode off.* **| get off | come off, fall off** *She came off her bicycle when it skidded on some wet leaves.* **| knock sb off | pedal** *She pedalled her bicycle up the track.* **| push, wheel** *I dismounted and began to push my bicycle up the hill.* **| park | hire**
- BICYCLE + VERB **get/have a puncture**
- BICYCLE + NOUN **ride | chain, frame, wheel | rack, shed | hire**
- PREP. **by ~** *Did you come by bicycle?* **on a/the ~** *watching the boys on their bicycles*
- PHRASES **lean/prop a bicycle against sth**

bid *noun*

1 attempt

- ADJ. **successful | failed, unsuccessful | desperate | takeover**
- VERB + BID **launch, make, mount** *A German firm launched a takeover bid for the company.* **| succeed in | fail in** *They failed in their bid to buy the holiday company.*
- BID + VERB **succeed | fail**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He attacked his guards in a desperate bid for freedom.* **| ~by** *a bid by the president to boost his popularity* **~for** *This play was her last bid for recognition.*
- PHRASES **a bid for freedom/power, a bid to escape**

2 offer of a sum of money to buy sth
- ADJ. **high** | **low** | **opening** | **cash**
- VERB + BID **make, put in, submit** *He made a cash bid for the company.* | **retract** | **call for, invite** *They have invited bids for the property.* | **increase, raise** | **accept**
- PREP. **~ by/from** *a £24-million bid by a rival football club* **~ for** *a bid for the chair* **~ of** *a bid of £100*

bid *verb*

1 offer money for sth
- PREP. **against** *Two dealers bid against each other for the antique table.* **for** *She bid £10 000 for the painting.*

2 offer to do work
- ADV. **successfully**
- PREP. **for** *We have successfully bid for the contract.*

big *adj.*

1 large
- VERBS **be, look, seem** | **become, get, grow**
- ADV. **extremely, incredibly, really, very** | **fairly, pretty, quite, rather** *This house is rather big for us. We need something smaller.*
- PHRASES **big fat** *He was a big fat chap with a beard.*

2 important
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, really, very** *hoping the show would be a really big success* | **fairly, pretty** *This is a fairly big decision to make.*

bike *noun*

- ADJ. **mountain, racing, touring, trail** | **exercise**
- VERB + BIKE **ride** | **get on** *He got on his bike and rode off.* | **get off** | **come off, fall off** *She came off her bike when it skidded on some wet leaves.* | **knock sb off** | **pedal** *She pedalled her bike up the track.* | **push, wheel** *We had to push our bikes up the hill.* | **park** | **hire**
- BIKE + VERB **get/have a puncture**
- BIKE + NOUN **ride** | **shed**
- PREP. **by ~** *Did you come by bike?* **on a/the ~** *watching the boys on their bikes*
- PHRASES **lean/prop a bike against sth**

bikini *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, minuscule, skimpy**
- BIKINI + NOUN **bottoms, top** | **line**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

bilingual *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **fully** | **virtually**
- PREP. **in** *He is virtually bilingual in Spanish and Portuguese.*

bill *noun*

1 showing money owed for goods/services
- ADJ. **big, high, huge, large** | **outstanding, unpaid** | **itemized** | **electricity, fuel, gas, hospital, hotel, phone/telephone, etc.** | **tax**
- VERB + BILL **get, have** *Could I have the bill please?* ◇ *I've just got a huge tax bill.* | **be landed with, face** *The company could now face higher fuel bills.* | **run up** *We ran up a very large hotel bill.* | **foot, pay, pick up, settle** *Don't worry—the company will pick up the bill.* | **present sb with, send sb, submit** *They presented us with a very large bill.* | **cut, reduce** *We need to cut our electricity bills.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *Are the coffees on the bill?* | **~ for** *the bill for the meal*

2 proposal for a new law
- ADJ. **controversial** | **emergency** | **private member's**
- VERB + BILL **bring before Parliament, bring forward/in, introduce, propose, put forward, submit** *The bill will be brought before Parliament next year.* ◇ *The government has put forward an emergency bill to limit the powers of the police.* | **force through, push through, railroad through, rush through** *The opposition will try to force the bill through Parliament.* | **draft, prepare** | **amend** | **debate** | **adopt, approve, pass** | **support, vote for** | **defeat, reject, throw out, veto** | **oppose, vote against** | **shelve, withdraw**

3 programme of entertainment
- ADJ. **double**
- VERB + BILL **head, top** *Tom Jones is topping the bill.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *Mozart is on the bill this evening.*

bin *noun*

- ADJ. **litter, rubbish, waste, wastepaper** *She threw the letter in the wastepaper bin.* | **storage** | **pedal, wheelie**
- VERB + BIN **chuck sth in/into, put sth in, throw sth in/into**
- BIN + NOUN **bag, liner** | **man**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Put the wrapper in the bin.*

bind *noun*

- ADJ. **awful, dreadful, real, terrible** | **double**
- PREP. **in a ~** *He's in a double bind: he needs experience to get a job but he can't get experience without working.*

bind *verb*

1 tie with rope/fabric
- ADV. **tightly** *They bound his hands together tightly.*
- ADV. **together**
- PREP. **to, with** *The sails are bound to the mast with cord.*
- PHRASES **bind and gag sb, bind sb hand and foot** *She found herself bound hand and foot.*

2 make sb do sth
- ADV. **contractually, legally, morally**

3 book
- PHRASES **be beautifully/handsomely/richly bound be bound in sth** *two volumes bound in leather*

binding *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **absolutely** | **legally, morally**
- PREP. **on/upon** *The decisions of the European Court are binding on the United Kingdom.*

binge *noun*

- ADJ. **drinking, drunken** | **eating**
- VERB + BINGE **go on, have** *He went on a drunken binge when he heard the bad news.*

binoculars *noun*

- ADJ. **high-powered, powerful**
- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + BINOCULARS **look through** | **focus, train** *He focused his binoculars on the building in the distance.* | **adjust** | **lift, raise** *She raised her binoculars to the distant road across the valley.* | **lower**
- PREP. **through ~** *watching the race through binoculars*

biography *noun*

- ADJ. **authorized, official** | **unauthorized, unofficial** | **brief, potted** *The book gives potted biographies of all the major painters.*
- VERB + BIOGRAPHY **work on, write** | **publish** | **read**
- PREP. **~ by** *a biography by Antonia Fraser* **~ of** *a biography of the prime minister*

biologist *noun*

• ADJ. **distinguished, senior | field, research** *She's a research biologist for a pharmaceutical company.* | **evolutionary, forensic, marine, molecular | plant, wildlife**
⇨ Note at JOB

biology *noun*

• ADJ. **cell, developmental, environmental, evolutionary, human, marine, molecular, population, reproductive | applied | modern**
⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

bird *noun*

• ADJ. **wild | exotic, rare | game | predatory | migratory | land, sea** (also **seabird**), **tropical, wading, woodland** *Seabirds flocked above our heads.*
• QUANT. **flock**
• BIRD + VERB **flit, fly, glide, soar, swoop (down)** *We watched a bird of prey swoop down on a mouse.* | **flap its wings | flock | migrate** *The birds migrate in September.* | **chirp, sing, twitter, warble | peck** *birds pecking at the corn* | **build a nest, nest** *birds nesting on the roof of the church* | **breed, lay eggs | moult**
• BIRD + NOUN **call | sanctuary | life** *an area with a very varied bird life* | **watcher, watching**
• PHRASES **a bird of passage** (= a migratory bird), **a bird of prey** (= a predatory bird), **a breed/species/type of bird**

birth *noun*

• ADJ. **live** *Better living conditions mean more live births and fewer stillbirths.* | **normal | breech, Caesarean, premature | multiple | legitimate | illegitimate | home**
• VERB + BIRTH **give** *She gave birth to a baby boy.* | **register**
• BIRTH + NOUN **certificate | rate | weight**
• PREP. **at ~** *The baby weighed 7 pounds at birth.* **at/during a/the ~** *The child's father was present at the birth.* **by ~** *He was American by birth, but lived in France.*
• PHRASES **births, marriages and deaths** *a registry of births, marriages and deaths*, **your date/place of birth, of low/noble birth** (= born to a poor/aristocratic family), **the moment of birth**

birth control *noun*

• ADJ. **effective**
• VERB + BIRTH CONTROL **practise, use**
• PHRASES **a form/method of birth control**

birthday *noun*

• ADJ. **last, next** *I'll be 28 next birthday.*
• VERB + BIRTHDAY **have** *I hope you have a nice birthday.* | **spend** *She spent her 50th birthday in Paris.* | **celebrate | mark** *an exhibition to mark the artist's 70th birthday* | **forget, remember | approach** *He is approaching his 40th birthday, and thinking of retiring from sport.*
• BIRTHDAY + NOUN **gift, present | card | cake | party | surprise** *He had a portrait painted as a birthday surprise for his daughter.* | **treat** *We're taking him to see the new film for his birthday treat.*
• PREP. **for your ~** *What do you want for your birthday?* **on your ~** *She'll be 34 on her next birthday.*
• PHRASES **Happy birthday!, wish sb a happy birthday** *Wish John a happy birthday from me.*

birthmark *noun*

• ADJ. **large, small | disfiguring, unsightly | faint | purple, red**
• VERB + BIRTHMARK **have**
• BIRTHMARK + VERB **fade**

biscuit *noun*

• ADJ. **dry | soggy, stale | chocolate, ginger, etc. | digestive, shortbread, wafer | cat, dog**
• QUANT. **box, packet, tin** *a packet of coconut biscuits*
• VERB + BISCUIT **eat, have | nibble | bake, make | cut out** *He was cutting biscuits out and putting them on a baking tray.*
• BISCUIT + NOUN **barrel, tin | crumbs** *He brushed the biscuit crumbs from his jacket.*
• PHRASES **cheese and biscuits**
⇨ Special page at FOOD

bishop *noun*

• ADJ. **Anglican, Episcopal/Episcopalian, (Greek/Russian) Orthodox, Roman Catholic | diocesan** *He's the diocesan bishop and he has three suffragan bishops to help him.* | **assistant, suffragan**
• VERB + BISHOP **appoint, appoint sb (as), make sb | succeed sb as**
• PREP. **~ of** *He was appointed Bishop of Ely.*

bit *noun*

1 a bit small amount
• ADJ. **little, teensy** (*informal*), **wee** *He helped me a little bit in the afternoon.*
• PHRASES **just a bit** *I'm still just a bit confused.*

2 a **bit** large amount
• ADJ. **fair, good** *It rained a fair bit during the night.* ◇ *We made a good bit of progress.*
• VERB + BIT **take** *The new system will take quite a bit of getting used to* (= it will take a long time to get used to).
• PHRASES **quite a bit** *It rained quite a bit during the night.* **just a bit** (*ironic*) *'Has it been difficult for you at work?' 'Just a bit* (= it has been very difficult).*'*

2 part/piece of sth
• ADJ. **little, small, tiny | big, large** *A big bit of stone had fallen off the wall.* | **good, nice** *The best bit of the holiday was seeing the Grand Canyon.* ◇ *I've got us a nice bit of fish for dinner.* | **boring** *I read it, but I missed out the boring bits.* | **odd** *He managed to get odd bits of work, but no regular job.*
• VERB + BIT **pick out, pick up** *Listen to the interview again and pick out the bits you want to use in the article.* ◇ *She tore the letter up and threw it on the floor. Marion stooped to pick up the bits.* ◇ *I picked up a bit of information that might interest you.*
• BIT + VERB **fall off** *I'm worried because bits keep falling off my car.*
• PREP. **~ of**
• PHRASES **bits and bobs/pieces** (= small items of various kinds) *My mother has some bits and pieces to give you.* **blow/pull/smash sth to bits** *All the crockery had been smashed to bits.* **do your bit** (= do your share of a task) *We can finish this job on time if everyone does their bit.* **fall to bits** *My briefcase eventually fell to bits.*

bite *noun*

1 act of biting/amount of food
• VERB + BITE **have, take**
• PREP. **between ~s** *She tried to talk between bites.* | **~ from** *I took a bite from the apple.* **~ of** *Can I have a bite of your sandwich?* **~ out of** *She took a bite out of the slab of cake.*

2 of an insect/animal
• ADJ. **insect, mosquito, snake, etc.**
• VERB + BITE **get** *I got a lot of mosquito bites last night.*
• BITE + NOUN **mark**
• PREP. **~ from** *a bite from a poisonous snake*

3 small amount to eat
• ADJ. **quick**

- VERB + BITE **grab, have** *We managed to grab a bite at the theatre before the show started.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a quick bite of lunch*
- PHRASES **a bite to eat** *We'll have a bite to eat in town.*

bite *verb*

1 use your teeth
- ADV. **badly** *Their cat was badly bitten by a dog.* | **off** *He bit off a chunk of bread.*
- PREP. **at** *He bit at his lower lip.* **into** *She bit into the apple.* **through** *The dog had bitten right through its rope.*
- PHRASES **bite sth in half/two**

2 have an effect
- ADV. **deep, hard** *As the recession bites harder, many small companies are going bankrupt.*
- VERB + BITE **begin to, start to** *After two cold months, the coal shortage was beginning to bite.*

bitter *adj.*

1 angry/unhappy
- VERBS **be, feel, seem** | **become, grow, turn** *He had grown bitter as the years passed.* ◇ *Loving relationships can turn bitter.* | **remain** | **leave sb, make sb** *The divorce had left her bitter.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **quite, rather, slightly**
- PREP. **about** *She still seems quite bitter about it.* **towards** *I felt very bitter towards them.*

2 very cold
- VERBS **be** | **become, turn** *The weather turned bitter.* | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, really, very** | **quite, rather**

3 having a sharp taste
- VERBS **be, taste** *The drink tasted bitter.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **rather, slightly, somewhat**

bitterness *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great, real**
- QUANT. **edge, hint, touch, trace**
- VERB + BITTERNESS **feel** *She feels no bitterness towards him.* | **show** *He's never shown any bitterness.*
- PREP. **with/without ~** *She spoke slowly and with some bitterness.* | **~ about/over** *their bitterness over the strike* **~ against/towards** *his bitterness towards his own father* **~ among** *the bitterness among nurses about this pay deal* **~ between** *There is no bitterness between them.*

bizarre *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound** | **become** | **find sth** *I found the whole situation very bizarre.*
- ADV. **most, truly, very** *He walked off in a most bizarre fashion.* | **quite, totally** *He made some totally bizarre comments.* | **increasingly** | **a little, pretty, rather, slightly, somewhat** *It's a pretty bizarre film.*

black *adj.*

- ADV. **very** *The sky looks very black.* | **all** *His hands were all black from messing about with the car.*
- ADJ. **jet, pitch** (used about the night) *She had beautiful jet-black hair.* ◇ *It was pitch black outside.*

⇨ Special page at COLOUR

blackboard *noun*

- VERB + BLACKBOARD **write on** | **copy from** *Please copy the homework from the blackboard.* | **clean**
- BLACKBOARD + NOUN **work**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *You can't just stand at the blackboard and talk.* **on a/the ~** *The homework is on the blackboard.*

blacklist *noun*

- VERB + BLACKLIST **place sb on, put sb on** | **draw up**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *She was on the company's blacklist.*

blackmail *noun*

- ADJ. **emotional, moral**
- BLACKMAIL + NOUN **threat**

⇨ Note at CRIME (for verbs)

blackmail *verb*

- ADV. **virtually**
- VERB + BLACKMAIL **attempt to, try to**
- PREP. **into** *She says she was virtually blackmailed into giving up her claim to the property.*

black market *noun*

- ADJ. **thriving**
- PREP. **on the ~** *You could buy anything you needed on the black market.* | **~ in** *During the war, there was a thriving black market in food.*

bladder *noun*

- ADJ. **full** | **irritable, weak**
- VERB + BLADDER **empty**
- BLADDER + NOUN **control** | **cancer, infection, problem** *He died of bladder cancer.*

blade *noun*

- ADJ. **sharp** | **blunt** | **pointed, serrated** | **knife, razor, saw, sword** | **rotary**
- VERB + BLADE **sharpen**

blame *noun*

- VERB + BLAME **get** *My brother broke the window, but I got the blame.* | **accept, bear, shoulder, take** *The company refused to accept any blame for the damage.* | **apportion, attach, attribute, lay, pin, place, put** *They placed the blame squarely on the doctor.* | **share** *The government must share the blame for this confusion.* | **escape, shift** *trying to shift the blame onto someone else* | **absolve sb from/of** *He was absolved of all blame.*
- BLAME + VERB **fall on sb, lie with sb, rest with sb** *The blame lies with the police, who failed to act quickly enough.*
- PREP. **~ for** *He tried to escape blame for what he did.*
- PHRASES **lay the blame at sb's door, part of the blame, a share of the blame** *The government tried to lay the blame at the door of the unions.*

blame *verb*

- ADV. **unfairly, unjustly**
- VERB + BLAME **can't/cannot, couldn't, don't** *'I just slammed the phone down when he said that.' 'I don't blame you!'* | **can/could hardly** *You can hardly blame Peter for being angry with her.*
- PREP. **for** *I don't blame Jack for the mistake.* **on** *Whenever something goes wrong, everyone blames it on me.*
- PHRASES **be (partly) to blame (for sth)** *A spokesman said that bad weather was to blame for the delay.* **be widely blamed for sth** *The government has been widely blamed for the crisis.*

blameless *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **quite** (= totally) *She herself was quite blameless.* | **far from, not entirely** *Johnson himself was far from blameless.*

blank *noun*

1 empty space on paper

• VERB + BLANK **fill in** *In the test, we had to fill in the blanks.* | **leave** *If you don't know the answer, just leave a blank.*

2 cartridge for a gun

• VERB + BLANK **fire** *Soldiers fired blanks into the sky.*

blank *adj.*

1 with nothing written, recorded, etc. on

• VERBS **be** | **go** *The screen's gone blank.* | **remain** | **leave sth** *I left the third column blank.*

• ADV. **completely, entirely**

2 without emotion/interest/understanding

• VERBS **be, look** *Gina looked blank; then understanding dawned.* | **go** *What if my mind goes completely blank with panic?* | **remain**

• ADV. **completely** | **studiously** *His expression remained studiously blank.*

blanket *noun*

• ADJ. **heavy, thick** | **thin** | **warm** | **electric**

• VERB + BLANKET **cover sb with, wrap sb in** | **draw up, pull up** *She pulled the blanket up and went to sleep.* | **kick off, push off, throw off**

• PREP. **beneath/under a/the ~** *They shivered under their thin blankets.*

blasphemous *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **consider sth** | **declare sth, deem sth** *The book was declared blasphemous and all copies ordered to be burnt.*

• ADV. **almost**

blasphemy *noun*

• VERB + BLASPHEMY **commit**

• BLASPHEMY + NOUN **law**

• PREP. **~ against** *His writings were branded as obscene and a blasphemy against God.*

• PHRASES **a charge of blasphemy**

blast *noun*

1 explosion

• ADJ. **huge, powerful** | **bomb, nuclear, shotgun**

• BLAST + VERB **hit sth, rip through sth, rock sth** *A huge bomb blast rocked central London last night.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *Twenty people were killed in the blast.*

2 sudden rush of air/wind

• ADJ. **hot, icy** *She felt an icy blast of air.*

• PREP. **~ of** *a blast of cold air*

3 sudden loud sound

• ADJ. **long** | **short** | **shrill**

• VERB + BLAST **give**

• PREP. **~ on** *He gave a short blast on his trumpet.*

blaze *noun*

• ADJ. **fierce, intense, massive**

• VERB + BLAZE **attend, fight, tackle** *The fire brigade attended the blaze.* | **control, bring/get under control** | **extinguish, put out** | **fan** *Strong winds fanned the blaze.*

• BLAZE + VERB **spread, sweep through sth** *The blaze swept through the whole building.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *The antiques were destroyed in a blaze last year.*

bleak *adj.*

1 without hope

• VERBS **appear, be, look, seem** | **become** | **remain**

• ADV. **extremely, very** *Prospects for the industry are extremely bleak.* | **increasingly** | **unnecessarily** *The report paints an unnecessarily bleak picture of the town.*

2 bare/empty/without pleasant features

• VERBS **be, look, seem** *The moors looked bleak and desolate in the rain.* | **become**

• ADV. **very** | **a bit, rather** *It was a rather bleak and dismal place.*

bleed *verb*

• ADV. **badly, heavily, profusely** | **easily** *The small blood vessels in the nose bleed easily.*

• PREP. **from** *She was bleeding heavily from a head wound.*

• PHRASES **bleed to death**

bleeding *noun*

• ADJ. **heavy, massive** | **uncontrollable** | **internal**

• VERB + BLEEDING **have, suffer from** | **cause** | **control, staunch, stem, stop**

• PREP. **~ from** *Some drugs can cause bleeding from the small intestine.*

blemish *noun*

• ADJ. **minor, slight**

• VERB + BLEMISH **have** *The police say the suspect has a slight blemish on his left cheek.*

• PREP. **without (a) ~** *(figurative) He was pilloried, but she escaped without blemish.*

blend *noun*

• ADJ. **delightful, good, perfect, right** *just the right blend of work and relaxation* | **curious, special, strange, subtle, unique** *a scarf with a subtle blend of colours*

blend *verb*

1 mix

• ADV. **together** *Blend all the ingredients together.*

• PREP. **into** *Blend the cocoa into the eggs.* **with** *Blend a little milk with two tablespoons of treacle.*

2 combine well

• ADV. **happily, harmoniously, perfectly, well** | **in** *The colour of the carpet doesn't blend in.*

• PREP. **with** *The ornamental pool blends perfectly with its surroundings.*

blessing *noun*

1 thing that brings happiness/improves your life

• ADJ. **great, real** | **mixed** (= a thing that has advantages and disadvantages)

• PREP. **~ for** *A TV can be a real blessing for old people.*

• PHRASES **a blessing in disguise** (= a thing that seems unfortunate, but is later seen to be fortunate), **count your blessings** (= to be grateful for the good things you have)

2 approval/support

• ADJ. **full** | **official**

• VERB + BLESSING **have** | **give sb/sth** *The government has given its official blessing to the project.* | **get, receive** *She received the full blessing of her employers.*

• PREP. **with/without sb's ~** *He went off to Latin America with his mother's blessing.*

3 prayer

• ADJ. **traditional**

• VERB + BLESSING **give, make, pronounce, say** *The blessing was said in Hebrew.* | **ask (for)**

• PREP. **~ on** *ask God's blessing on their pastoral work*

blind *noun*

• ADJ. **roller, venetian**

- VERB + BLIND **open, pull up, raise | close, draw, lower, pull down**
- PREP. **through a/the ~** *She saw a shadowy figure through the blind.*

blind *verb*

- ADV. **almost, nearly** *The strong light almost blinded him.* | **momentarily, temporarily**

blind *adj.*

1 unable to see
- VERBS **be, be born | be registered (as) | go** *She went blind at the age of ten.* | **make sb**
- ADV. **totally | almost, virtually | partially**
- PHRASES **as blind as a bat, be blind in one eye/in both eyes** *He is almost blind in one eye.*

2 **blind to sth** not willing to notice/admit sth
- VERBS **be, seem | become | make sb**
- ADV. **completely, totally** *His own problems have made him completely blind to the sufferings of others.*

blink *verb*

- ADV. **hard** *He blinked hard and forced a smile.* | **rapidly**
- PREP. **at** *She blinked at him, astonished.* **in/with** *He blinked in surprise.*
- PHRASES **blink away a tear, blink back tears** *She had to blink back her tears before she continued her story.* **blink your eyes/your eyes blink**

bliss *noun*

- ADJ. **sheer** *The first six months of marriage were sheer bliss.* | **domestic | marital, married, wedded** *They're celebrating 25 years of wedded bliss.*
- PHRASES **sb's idea of bliss** *My idea of bliss is a hot day and an ice-cold beer.*

blister *verb*

- ADV. **badly** *Her feet were badly blistered.*

blitz *noun*

1 sudden military attack, often by air
- ADJ. **bombing | wartime**
- VERB + BLITZ **carry out**
- PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *Many people died in the London blitz.* | **~ on** *Enemy bombers carried out a blitz on the city.*

2 campaign; sudden, great effort
- ADJ. **marketing, media, sales**
- VERB + BLITZ **have, launch, mount** *We decided to have a blitz on the kitchen* (= to clean the kitchen thoroughly).
- PREP. **~ on** *a blitz on illegal parking*

blizzard *noun*

- ADJ. **fierce, howling**
- VERB + BLIZZARD **blow** *After a short while it began to blow a blizzard.*
- BLIZZARD + VERB **hit (sth), strike (sth)** *The blizzard struck while we were still on the mountain.* | **blow, rage**
- BLIZZARD + NOUN **conditions**
- PREP. **in/into ~** *We got stuck in a howling blizzard.* **through ~** *He fought his way through the blizzard.*

bloc *noun*

- ADJ. **large, solid, substantial** *A solid bloc of union members support the decision.* | **economic, military, trading | Communist, Eastern, Soviet** *Eastern bloc countries*
- PREP. **in/within a/the ~** *There have been growing tensions within the trading bloc.*
- PHRASES **en bloc** (= all together; all at the same time)

block *noun*

1 solid piece of sth
- ADJ. **big, huge, large, massive | small | solid | concrete, stone, wooden | building | starting** (for a runner) *aiming to be first out of the starting blocks* | **breeze**

2 large building divided into offices/flats
- ADJ. **high-rise, tower | administration, apartment, cell, office** *The prisoners had been transferred to a different cell block.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She lives in a modern apartment block.* | **~ of** *a block of flats*

3 temporary loss of abilities
- ADJ. **mental, writer's** *The author denies that she is experiencing writer's block.*
- VERB + BLOCK **experience, have, suffer from** *I suddenly had a mental block and couldn't remember his name.*

block *verb*

1 make it difficult to pass
- ADV. **completely | almost | partially, partly | off, up** *The old route is completely blocked off.* ◇ *Don't block up the corridor with all these boxes.*
- VERB + BLOCK **try to | move to** *One of the men moved to block their path.*
- PREP. **with** *The exit was blocked with beer crates.*

2 prevent sth being done
- ADV. **successfully | effectively** *The new rules would effectively block protesters' attempts to assert their rights.*
- VERB + BLOCK **attempt to, seek to, try to | move to** *The group has moved to block the government's proposals.*

PHRASAL VERB

block sth out
- ADV. **completely** *Black clouds had completely blocked out the sun.* | **almost**

blockade *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, total | tight | partial | virtual | economic, military, naval**
- VERB + BLOCKADE **impose | end, lift, remove | enforce, maintain | tighten | ease, relax | break, get through, run** *They attempted to break the blockade by using submarines.*
- PREP. **~ against** *the need to enforce a naval blockade against the country* **~ around/round** *a blockade around the city* **~ by** *the blockade by Western nations* **~ of, ~ on** *The president imposed a complete blockade on the island's harbours.*

blockage *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, total | partial**
- VERB + BLOCKAGE **cause, create | prevent | clear, remove** *They used chemicals to clear the blockage.*

bloke *noun*

- ADJ. **decent, good, great, lovely, nice | average, ordinary** *He's an ordinary bloke, despite being famous.* | **funny** *He's a funny bloke—you never really know what he's thinking.* | **poor** *He's got so many problems, poor bloke!*
- PHRASES **the kind/sort/type of bloke** *He's the sort of bloke who will never let you down.*

blonde *noun*

- ADJ. **attractive, beautiful, gorgeous, pretty, sexy, stunning | blue-eyed | dumb** *She's not just a dumb blonde.* | **natural** *She was slender and a natural blonde.* | **bottle | ash, platinum, strawberry** *a tall, strawberry blonde with stunning legs*

blonde (*also* **blond**) *adj.*
- VERBS **be, look | go, turn | dye sth**
- ADV. **very | quite**
- ADJ. **ash, dirty, platinum, strawberry** *ash blond hair*

blood *noun*
- ADJ. **cold, warm** *animals with warm blood* | **clotted, congealed, dried | arterial, venous | menstrual | contaminated | aristocratic, noble, royal** *I doubt if I have a single drop of aristocratic blood in my veins.* | **Mediterranean, Spanish, etc.**
- QUANT. **drop, pool, trickle** *The body lay in a pool of blood.* ◇ *A thin trickle of blood ran down from a cut above her eye.* | **spots, traces** *He worked to remove all traces of blood.*
- VERB + BLOOD **lose** *She'd lost a lot of blood and doctors decided to do a transfusion.* | **shed, spill** (*literary*) *He was a hot-headed warrior, always too quick to shed blood.* | **donate, give** *The hospital appealed for more people to give blood* (= for blood transfusions). | **pump** *The heart pumps blood around the body.* | **choke on** *He choked on his own blood after being shot in the throat.* | **smear** *There was blood smeared down his shirt.*
- BLOOD + VERB **dribble, drip, flow, gush, ooze, run, seep, splash, spurt, stream, trickle, well (up)** *Blood oozed slowly from the corner of his mouth.* | **spread** *The blood spread rapidly from where he lay.* | **spatter, splatter** *Blood spattered the seats of the vehicle.* | **soak (into) sth | cake sth, stain sth** *Dried blood caked his hands.* | **clot, coagulate, congeal | circulate** *He rubbed his limbs vigorously to get the blood circulating.* | **course, rush, surge** *I felt the blood coursing in my veins as I ran.* ◇ *The blood rushed to her face as she realized her error.* | **drum, hammer, pound, pulse, thud, thunder** *The blood drummed in her ears.* | **drain** *The blood drained from his face when I told him the news.* | **freeze, run/turn cold, turn to ice** (*figurative*) *Our blood ran cold at the thought of how easily we could have been killed.*
- BLOOD + NOUN **cell | group, type** *What blood group are you?* | **sample, test | loss | donation, donor | bank | circulation, flow, supply | pressure | clot, coagulation | cancer, disease, disorder, poisoning | cholesterol, fats, glucose, sugar**
- PREP. **in ~** *His shirt was soaked in blood.* **in sb's/the ~** *Traces of an illegal substance were found in his blood.* | **~ from** *My handkerchief was soaked in blood from my nose.*
- PHRASES **caked in/with blood** *The dog's fur was caked in blood when we found him.* **covered in/with blood** *He was lying on the floor, covered in blood.* **in cold blood** *He shot them in cold blood* (= in a way that was planned and deliberately cruel).

blood pressure *noun*
- ADJ. **high, low, normal**
- VERB + BLOOD PRESSURE **check, measure**

bloodshed *noun*
- ADJ. **further | massive, widespread**
- VERB + BLOODSHED **cause, end in, lead to** *This election result could well lead to further bloodshed.* | **end, halt, stop | avoid, prevent**

bloodstream *noun*
- VERB + BLOODSTREAM **enter | absorb sth into** *The drug is quickly absorbed into the bloodstream.*
- PREP. **in sb's/the ~** *Traces of banned substances were detected in his bloodstream.* **into sb's/the ~** *Bacteria was introduced into his bloodstream through an unsterile needle.* **through sb's/the ~** *Red blood cells transport oxygen through the bloodstream.*

blood transfusion *noun*
- ADJ. **emergency**
- VERB + BLOOD TRANSFUSION **have, receive | give sb | need, require**

blood vessel *noun*
- ADJ. **major | broken, burst**
- VERB + BLOOD VESSEL **block, constrict | dilate, enlarge | burst** *He burst a blood vessel in a fit of coughing.*
- BLOOD VESSEL + VERB **carry sth, supply sth** *Blood vessels supplying nutrition to the skin* | **burst | dilate, enlarge | contract**

bloom *noun*
- ADJ. **beautiful, exquisite, perfect** *a tree with exquisite blooms* | **fragrant | exotic**
- VERB + BLOOM **bear, have, produce | burst into, come into** *The spring flowers have come into bloom.*
- BLOOM + VERB **appear** *The small white blooms appear in May.* | **fade** *The blooms have started to fade now.*
- PREP. **in ~** *banks of rhododendrons in bloom*
- PHRASES **in full bloom** *The roses are now in full bloom.*

blossom *noun*
- ADJ. **beautiful, lovely | pale, pink, white** *a tree with pale pink blossoms* | **apple, peach, etc.**
- VERB + BLOSSOM **bear, have, produce** *Hopefully the tree will produce some blossom next year.*
- BLOSSOM + VERB **be out** *It's lovely in the spring when the cherry blossom is out.* | **come out**
- PREP. **in ~** *He loves it when the apple trees are in blossom.*
- PHRASES **in full blossom** *The plum tree is now in full blossom.*

blouse *noun*
- ADJ. **long-sleeved, short-sleeved, sleeveless | high-necked | cotton, silk, etc. | embroidered, frilled, frilly | see-through | school**
- VERB + BLOUSE **have on, wear | put on | button up, unbutton | take off**

blow *noun*

1 act of blowing
- VERB + BLOW **give sth** *Give your nose a blow.*

2 hard knock that hits sb/sth
- ADJ. **hard, heavy, nasty, painful, powerful, severe, sharp, stinging, violent | fatal, final, mortal | glancing, light** *Jack caught him a glancing blow on the jaw.* | **single** *He killed the man with a single blow of his cricket bat.*
- QUANT. **flurry, hail** *The man went down in a hail of blows.*
- VERB + BLOW **get, receive, suffer, take** *He suffered a severe blow to the head.* | **catch sb, deal sb, deliver, give sb, land, rain (down), strike sb** *It was the gardener who delivered the fatal blow.* ◇ *She landed a nasty blow on his nose.* ◇ *He rained heavy blows on the old woman.* | **exchange** *The boys exchanged blows with the police.* | **come to** *The children came to blows over the new toy.* | **aim** *She aimed a blow at Lucy.* | **avoid, deflect, dodge, parry, ward off**
- BLOW + VERB **fall, land** *The blow landed on my right shoulder.*
- PREP. **~ of** *two blows of the axe* **~ on** *a nasty blow on the head* **~ to** *a blow to the victim's chest*

3 sudden shock/disappointment
- ADJ. **big, great, major, serious, severe, terrible | bitter, crippling, cruel, crushing, devastating, knock-out | double | decisive, mortal** *a mortal blow to British industry* | **body**

- VERB + BLOW **deal (sb/sth), deliver, strike** *His defeat dealt a crushing blow to the party.* | **receive, suffer** | **cushion, soften** *to soften the blow of tax increases* | **come as** *The news came as a bitter blow to the staff.*
- BLOW + VERB **come, fall** *The blow came at a meeting on Saturday.*
- PREP. **~ for** *A tax on books would be a body blow for education.* **~ to** *Her decision to live abroad was a terrible blow to her parents.*
- PHRASES **a bit of a blow**

blow *verb*

1 of wind/air, etc.
- ADV. **hard, strongly** | **gently**
- PREP. **from** *a gale blowing from the west* **off** *The wind blew the papers off the table.*
- PHRASES **be blowing a gale** *It's blowing a gale out there!* **blow sth off course** *The ship was blown off course in the storm.*

2 send air out of your mouth
- ADV. **hard**
- PREP. **on** *He blew on his soup to cool it.*

blue *adj.*

- ADV. **very** | **quite, slightly**
- ADJ. **dark, deep, rich** | **light, pale** | **bright, brilliant, vivid** *a brilliant blue sky* ◇ *her vivid blue eyes* | **cobalt, navy, royal, slate** *a navy blue jumper*

⇨ Special page at COLOUR

blueprint *noun*

- ADJ. **new** | **final** | **economic, personal**
- VERB + BLUEPRINT **have** *The government does not have a blueprint for reform.* | **create, develop, draw up** | **act as, form, provide, serve as** *The charter should serve as a blueprint for cooperation.*
- PREP. **for** *a blueprint for change*

blues *noun*

1 type of slow sad music
- VERB + BLUES **play, sing** *He plays blues on the accordion.* ◇ *She was in the back of a smoky bar singing the blues.*
- BLUES + NOUN **band, musician, singer** | **song**

2 the blues state of feeling sad/depressed
- QUANT. **attack, fit** *a bad attack of the blues*
- VERB + BLUES **have** | **get, suffer from** | **banish, beat** *I plan a holiday as a way to beat the blues.*

blunder *noun*

- ADJ. **big, major** | **stupid** | **fatal, terrible, tragic** | **tactical** | **administrative, bureaucratic, economic, political**
- QUANT. **series**
- VERB + BLUNDER **commit, make** *The minister has made a series of political blunders.*

blur *noun*

- ADJ. **dim, faint, pale** *The object was a dim blur in the moonlight.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a blur of colours and patterns*
- PHRASES **be all a (bit of a) blur/just a blur** *I can't remember that day very well. It's all a bit of a blur.*

blush *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, fiery, hot, warm** | **faint**
- VERB + BLUSH **produce** *His jokes produced blushes from the ladies.* | **hide** *She tried to hide her fiery blush.*
- BLUSH + VERB **deepen** | **creep, rise, spread** *A deep blush spread from her head to her neck.*
- PREP. **with/without a ~** *She lowered her eyes with a deep blush.* | **~ of** *a hot blush of embarrassment*
- PHRASES **a blush comes to sb's cheeks/face, bring a blush to sb's cheeks/face, save/spare sb's blushes** (= to save sb from an embarrassing situation)

blush *verb*

- ADV. **deeply, furiously, hotly** | **faintly, a little, slightly** | **readily** *She blushed more readily when she was a teenager.* | **angrily, guiltily**
- VERB + BLUSH **make sb** *Stop teasing him—you're making him blush.*
- PREP. **at** *He blushed at the mention of her name.* **with** *She blushed crimson with embarrassment.*
- PHRASES **blush crimson/scarlet**

board *noun*

1 flat piece of wood, plastic, etc.
- ADJ. **chess, dart, drawing, emery, ironing, notice, running, skirting, sounding**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *There's a notice on the board.*

2 group of people who control an organization
- ADJ. **advisory, editorial, executive, management** | **health, school, etc.**
- VERB + BOARD **be on, serve on, sit on** *He sits on the company's management board.* | **join** | **appoint sb to** | **resign from** | **go to** *The project will go to the board for consideration.* | **put sth to, submit sth to, take sth to** *She put her ideas to the board.*
- BOARD + NOUN **member** | **meeting**
- PREP. **~ of** *the company's board of directors*
- PHRASES **at board level** *The issue has been discussed at board level.* **chairman of the board, a member of the board, a seat on the board** *She was promoted and offered a seat on the board.*

3 meals that are provided when you stay in a hotel
- ADJ. **full** | **half**
- PHRASES **board and lodging**

boardroom *noun*

- ADJ. **company, corporate**
- BOARDROOM + NOUN **battle, coup, row, shake-up** | **table** | **pay, salary** *The massive boardroom pay awards were criticized by the workers.*
- PHRASES **in a/the ~** *The directors were working overtime in the boardroom.*

boast *noun*

- ADJ. **proud** | **empty, idle, vain**
- VERB + BOAST **make**
- PREP. **~ about** *a boast he made about his achievements* **~ of** *her boast of having seen all the countries of Africa*

boast *verb*

1 talk with too much pride
- ADV. **openly**
- PREP. **about/of** *He openly boasted of his talents.*

2 have sth good/impressive
- ADV. **proudly** *This is a region which proudly boasts its own distinct culture.*

boat *noun*

- ADJ. **little, small** | **open** *He was adrift in an open boat for three days.* | **flat-bottomed** | **glass-bottomed** | **inflatable, plastic, rubber** | **wooden** | **motor, paddle, pedal, power, rowing, sailing, speed, steam** | **canal, narrow, river** *We spent our holiday going up a canal on a narrow boat.* ◇ *a Mississippi river boat* | **banana, cargo, charter, ferry, fishing, flying, passenger, patrol, pilot, pleasure, racing, rescue, torpedo, touring** | **model,**

paper, toy | **stricken** *The lifeboat was preparing to go to the aid of the stricken boat.* | **upturned**

- QUANT. **fleet, flotilla** *a flotilla of small boats*
- VERB + BOAT **take out** *You couldn't take a boat out in that wild sea.* | **take sb out in** *My brother took us all out in his new boat.* | **get into/on/onto** | **get off/out of** | **launch, lower** *A new type of patrol boat was launched from the Essex coast yesterday.* | **push out** *I pushed the boat out into the middle of the river.* | **propel, row, sail** *The boat is propelled by a powerful outboard motor.* | **handle** *Where did you learn to handle a boat?* | **guide, steer, turn** | **pilot, skipper** | **crew** *Normally the boat is crewed by five people.* | **beach** *He beached the boat and the children leapt out to explore.* | **moor, tie up** | **untie** | **anchor, berth** *The harbour was crowded, with boats berthed two and three abreast.* | **load, unload** | **rock** *Sit down, you're rocking the boat.* ◇ *(figurative) She was told to keep her mouth shut and not rock the boat* (= take unnecessary action that would cause problems). | **capsize, overturn, upset** | **swamp** *The boat was swamped by a huge wave.* | **build, design** | **catch, take** *They crossed the island to catch a boat for islands south of Skye.* | **miss** *(often figurative) If you don't buy now, you may find that you've missed the boat* (= cannot take advantage of this offer because it is too late). | **meet** *Beth had gone down to Bombay to meet the boat on which her sister was arriving.*
- BOAT + VERB **chug, go, sail** *The boat chugged out to sea.* | **head, pass** *The boat headed upriver.* | **arrive, come in, dock** | **return** | **bob** *boats bobbing up and down in the estuary* | **float, glide** | **drift** | **heave, lunge, lurch, pitch, rock, roll** *The boat pitched violently from side to side.* | **list** | **leak** | **fill** *The boat slowly filled with icy water.* | **capsize, overturn** | **founder, sink** | **operate, ply** *Ferry boats ply regularly between all the resorts on the lake.* | **carry sth, ferry sth, hold sth, take sth**
- BOAT + NOUN **cruise, excursion, ride, trip** | **race** | **club** | **house** (also **boathouse**) | **train** (= the train scheduled to connect with a particular sailing) *the 7.30 p.m. boat train to Harwich* | **building** | **builder, crew, owner** | **people** (= refugees who arrive by boat)
- PREP. **by ~** *The cave can only be reached by boat.* **in a/the ~** *I took them in my boat.* **on a/the ~** *They ate on the boat.* | **~ from, ~ to** *a boat from Jamaica to Trinidad*

bob *verb*

- ADV. **gently** | **about, along** *an old cigarette packet bobbing along in the current*
- PHRASES **bob up and down** *the small boats bobbing gently up and down in the harbour*

body *noun*

1 whole physical form of a person/an animal

- ADJ. **whole** *Her whole body trembled.* | **upper** | **lower** | **healthy** | **human**
- BODY + NOUN **heat, temperature** | **shape, size, weight** *to maintain your ideal body weight* | **fat** | **odour** | **language**
- PREP. **in the/your ~** *Extreme heat may cause changes in the body.* **on the/your ~** *She still had the marks from the ropes on her body.*
- PHRASES **part of the body, sell your body** (= to work as a prostitute)

2 dead human body

- ADJ. **dead** | **decomposed, decomposing** | **bloated**
- VERB + BODY **examine** | **bury, cremate, embalm** | **exhume**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *A diary was found on the body.*

3 amount of sth

- ADJ. **large, substantial, vast** *a large body of evidence*
- PHRASES **a body of water** *The two islands are separated by a large body of water.*

4 main part of sth

- ADJ. **main** *The bar is in the main body of the hotel.*

5 group of people who work/act together

- ADJ. **advisory, corporate, executive, governing, legislative, professional, statutory** | **national, public** | **government, student** | **independent** | **voluntary** | **elected** | **politic** (always after **body**) *Freedom of speech is necessary for the health of the body politic.*
- VERB + BODY **create, establish, form, set up** | **elect**
- PREP. **in a ~** *The students marched in a body to the government offices.*

⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION

6 object

- ADJ. **foreign** *They removed a foreign body from her eye.* | **celestial, heavenly** *Stars are celestial bodies.*

bodyguard *noun*

- ADJ. **armed** | **personal** *He never goes anywhere without his personal bodyguards.*
- VERB + BODYGUARD **have, keep** *She has to have an armed bodyguard wherever she goes.*
- BODYGUARD + VERB **protect sb**
- PREP. **~ of** *He keeps a bodyguard of ten men.* **~ to** *a former bodyguard to the prince*

⇨ Note at JOB

bog *noun*

- ADJ. **vast** | **stagnant, swampy** | **peat**
- VERB + BOG **sink into** *The more she struggled the deeper she sank into the bog.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He found himself in a vast stagnant bog.* **through a/the ~** *walking through a bog*

bogged down *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become, get**
- ADV. **badly, hopelessly, very** *The lorry had become hopelessly bogged down in the sand.* | **thoroughly, totally** | **rather** *I've been rather bogged down with work.*
- PREP. **by** *bogged down by small details* **in** *We mustn't get bogged down in all the detail.* **with**

bogus *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem** | **dismiss sth as** *75 paintings which art experts dismiss as bogus*
- ADV. **completely, entirely** | **largely**

boil *noun*

1 **the boil** state of boiling

- VERB + BOIL **come to** *Just before the milk comes to the boil, turn down the heat.* | **bring sth to** *Bring the soup to the boil, then simmer for five minutes.* | **go off** *(usually figurative) He played brilliantly for the first set but then went rather off the boil.*

2 infected spot

- VERB + BOIL **burst, lance** *The doctor lanced the boil.*
- BOIL + VERB **erupt** *A boil had erupted on his neck.* | **burst**

boil *verb*

- ADV. **rapidly** *Boil the beans rapidly for ten minutes.*
- VERB + BOIL **put sth on to** *I'll put the kettle on to boil.*

boiler *noun*

- ADJ. **coal-fired, coke, electric, gas, gas-fired, oil-fired, solid-fuel, steam, water** | **central-heating**
- VERB + BOILER **install, put in** | **service**
- BOILER + VERB **come on** *I've just heard the hot water boiler come on.* | **go off** | **burst, explode**
- BOILER + NOUN **system** | **suit**

boiling point *noun*

• VERB + BOILING POINT **reach | bring sth to, heat sth to** *Bring the sauce to boiling point.*
• PREP. **at ~** *Add the powder when the water is at boiling point.*

bold *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel | become, grow | make sb** *The exciting news had made him bold.* | **consider sth**
• ADV. **extremely, really, very | quite, rather**

bolt *noun*

1 for fastening things together
• VERB + BOLT **tighten (up) | loosen | undo, unscrew**
• PHRASES **nuts and bolts**

2 for fastening a door
• VERB + BOLT **draw back, pull back, slide back | push home, slide home** *She closed the door quickly and pushed the bolts home.*

bolt *verb*

• ADV. **firmly, securely** *Make sure that the rails are securely bolted in place.* | **together** *The two parts are bolted together.*
• PREP. **to** *The yacht's keel is bolted to the hull.*

bomb *noun*

• ADJ. **big, huge, large, massive | small | cluster, fire, high explosive, incendiary, mortar, nail, petrol, smoke | atom/atomic, hydrogen, neutron, nuclear | bouncing, flying | terrorist | home-made | unexploded | stray** *Their truck was hit by a stray bomb.* | **dummy, fake** *a practice flight with dummy bombs* | **car | letter, parcel | time** (*figurative*) *He described global warming as 'an environmental time bomb ticking away'.*
• VERB + BOMB **place, plant, put** *Police suspect terrorists planted the bomb.* | **carry** *The plane had been adapted to carry bombs.* | **drop, release** *Enemy planes dropped bombs along the railway line.* | **defuse | detonate, explode, set off | build, construct, develop** (These verbs are only used about countries.) *India started to build a nuclear bomb.* | **make** *He used a clock to make a home-made bomb.*
• BOMB + VERB **fall, rain (down)** *Eighty people died when bombs rained down on the city's crowded streets.* | **hit sth | detonate, explode, go off | blow sb/sth to pieces, blow sth up, destroy sth, kill sb, rip through sth** *Fifteen people were blown to pieces by the car bomb.* ◇ *A terrorist bomb ripped through the town's packed shopping centre.* | **be ticking away**
• BOMB + NOUN **attack, blast, explosion | alert, scare, threat, warning | hoax | disposal, squad | shelter | crater** *The land was scarred with bomb craters.* | **damage | site | victim | suspect | test** *the fallout from atomic bomb tests*

bomb *verb*

• ADV. **heavily** *The city had been very heavily bombed.*

bombard *verb*

1 attack with bombs
• ADV. **heavily** *The city has been heavily bombarded for the last three days.*

2 direct a lot of things at sb
• ADV. **constantly, continually**
• PREP. **with** *We're all constantly bombarded with television advertisements.*

bombardment *noun*

• ADJ. **constant, continuous | heavy, intense | aerial, artillery, naval**
• VERB + BOMBARDMENT **conduct, launch, mount | stop | be subjected to, be under, come under, suffer | survive, withstand** *They have withstood heavy bombardment for many months.*
• BOMBARDMENT + VERB **begin, start | continue, resume | (come to an) end, cease, stop**
• PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *Many people were killed in the bombardment.* **under ~** *The city has been under constant bombardment for three days.* | **~ against** *The army launched artillery bombardments against enemy positions.* **~ from** *bombardments from the sea* **~ with** *a three-hour bombardment with rockets and mortars*

bombing *noun*

• ADJ. **aerial** *the aerial bombing of ports* | **precision | wartime | area, carpet, indiscriminate, saturation | strategic | enemy** *The neighbourhood was badly damaged by enemy bombing.* | **terrorist | suicide**
• BOMBING + NOUN **attack | blitz, campaign | mission, raid, sortie** *He was shot down during a bombing raid over London.* | **target | victim**

bombshell *noun*

• VERB + BOMBSHELL **be, come as** *The news came as a bombshell.* | **drop** *Then she dropped the bombshell—she was pregnant.*
• BOMBSHELL + VERB **come, drop**

bond *noun*

1 feeling of friendship
• ADJ. **close, strong | common | natural | emotional, spiritual** *A strong spiritual bond exists between them.*
• VERB + BOND **be linked by, feel, have** *She felt a bond of affection for the other girls.* | **create, develop, forge, form | strengthen | break, destroy**
• BOND + VERB **exist | link sb** *the bond that links us*
• PREP. **~ between** *trying to forge bonds between the different communities* **~ of** *bonds of friendship*

2 certificate for money you have lent
• ADJ. **long-term | government, savings, treasury | junk** *the high yield on junk bonds*
• VERB + BOND **buy, invest in, purchase, put money into** *I decided to invest in some government bonds.* | **cash in, redeem** *The bonds were redeemed in 2002.* | **issue, sell**
• BOND + NOUN **market**

bone *noun*

• ADJ. **delicate, fine** *the delicate bones of her face* | **healthy | brittle, fragile** *She was diagnosed as having brittle bones.* | **broken, cracked, splintered | weary | bleached, dry** *Her eyes were black in a face the colour of bleached bones.* | **ankle, breast, cheek, collar, hip, leg, shin, thigh | animal, chicken, dinosaur, human**
• VERB + BONE **break, chip, crack, fracture | rest** *He longed to get home to bed and rest his weary bones.*
• BONE + NOUN **structure** *The black and white photographs emphasized her fine bone structure.* | **marrow** *a bone marrow transplant* | **cancer, disease, disorders | graft, surgery**
• PHRASES **(break/jar) every bone in sb's body** *The shock jarred every bone in his body.* **skin and bone** *He's all skin and bone after his illness.*

bonfire *noun*

• ADJ. **blazing, roaring**
• VERB + BONFIRE **build, have, make | light | put out | put sth on, throw sth on | gather/sit around/round**

- BONFIRE + VERB **blaze, burn**
- BONFIRE + NOUN **Night** *It was 5 November—Bonfire Night—and the children were excited.*

bonkers *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **go** *I went a bit bonkers when he told me the news.* | **drive sb** *The noise nearly drove me bonkers.*
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, plain, stark raving, totally** *I think he's absolutely stark raving bonkers!* ◇ *The whole idea is just plain bonkers.* | **a bit**

bonus *noun*

1 money added to wages, etc.

- ADJ. **big, huge, large** | **extra, special** | **cash** | **annual, Christmas** *All employees get an annual bonus before the summer holidays.* | **loyalty, performance, productivity** | **no claim(s)** (= a bonus for not claiming on your car insurance)
- VERB + BONUS **award (sb), give sb, pay sb** | **earn, get, receive** *You will receive a bonus for high levels of productivity.* | **lose** *If you don't meet our targets, you'll lose your bonus.*
- BONUS + NOUN **payment, scheme** *All workers participate in the bonus scheme.*
- PREP. **~ of** *He was awarded a cash bonus of £200.*

2 sth extra that is good

- ADJ. **great, huge, major, real** | **added, extra** *The house is very comfortable, and as an added bonus, it's near to buses and trains.* | **unexpected** | **welcome**
- PREP. **~ for** *The sunshine on the final day was a welcome bonus for the spectators.*

boo *noun*

- ADJ. **loud**
- VERB + BOO **be greeted/met with** *His speech was met with boos.*
- PREP. **~ from** *There were loud boos from the audience.*

book *noun*

1 for reading

- ADJ. **latest, new, recent** | **forthcoming** | **hardback, paperback** | **printed** *one of the earliest printed books* | **rare** | **second-hand** | **delightful, excellent, fascinating, fine, good, great, interesting, remarkable, useful** *There's nothing like curling up with a mug of tea and a good book.* | **famous, important, influential** | **controversial** *a controversial book about the royal family* | **favourite** *a survey to find the nation's favourite children's book* | **library** | **set** *'Emma' was one of our set books for A level.* | **children's, comic, cookery, guide, hymn, phrase, picture, prayer, reference, school, story, text** (also **textbook**), **travel** | **address, autograph, cheque, exercise, log, order, phone/telephone, sketch**
- QUANT. **copy** *How many copies of the book did you order?*
- VERB + BOOK **be deep/engrossed/immersed in, flick/skim through, look at, read** | **look up from** *She looked up from her book and smiled at him.* | **co-author, write** | **bring out, publish, put out** | **reprint** | **edit, proofread, revise** | **translate** | **illustrate** | **bind** | **ban, censor** | **dedicate, inscribe** *The book is dedicated to his mother.* ◇ *Her name was inscribed in the book.* ◇ *The collector had many books inscribed to him by famous authors.* | **review** | **borrow, have out, take out** (= from a library) *How many books have you got out?* | **return, take back** (= to a library) | **renew** *Do you want to renew any of your library books?* | **stock** | **plagiarize**
- BOOK + VERB **appear, come out** *His latest book will appear in December.* | **be/go out of print**
- BOOK + NOUN **title** | **shop** (also **bookshop**) | **review, reviewer** | **club**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *These issues are discussed in his latest book.* | **~ about/on** *She's busy writing a book on astrology.* **~ by** *a book by Robert Grout* **~ for** *a book for new parents* **~ from** *a new book from the publishing company, Bookworm* **~ of** *a book of walks in London*

2 **books** company records

- ADJ. **account**
- VERB + BOOKS **audit, do, keep** *She does the books for us.*

book *verb*

- ADV. **early, in advance** *There are few places on the course, so it is essential to book in advance.*
- PREP. **with** *Book with Suntours and kids go free!*
- PHRASES **be booked solid** (= be fully booked), **be booked up, be fully booked**

bookcase *noun*

- ADJ. **glass-fronted**
- PREP. **from a/the ~** *I chose a book from the bookcase.* **in a/the ~** *I found this book in your bookcase.*

booking *noun*

- ADJ. **advance, early** | **late** | **priority** | **double** (= two bookings for the same time) | **block** (= a large number of seats booked together) | **postal, telephone**
- VERB + BOOKING **make** *I made the booking through a travel agent.* | **cancel** | **confirm** | **change** | **accept, take** *We accept both telephone and postal bookings.*
- BOOKING + NOUN **fee, form, system** | **office** | **clerk**
- PREP. **~ for** *a booking for the Saturday performance*

bookkeeping *noun*

- ADJ. **double-entry** | **routine, simple**
- VERB + BOOKKEEPING **do** *I run the shop and my wife does the bookkeeping.*
- BOOKKEEPING + NOUN **entry** | **system**

boom *noun*

1 period of sudden increase

- ADJ. **great** | **post-war** | **consumer, credit, economic, investment, spending** | **building, housing, property** | **oil** | **baby**
- VERB + BOOM **cause, create, fuel, lead to** *The boom was fuelled by accelerated demand for consumer products.*
- BOOM + NOUN **period, time, year** | **town**
- PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *He was born during the post-war baby boom.* | **~ in** *a boom in house prices*
- PHRASES **boom and bust/slump** *the ordinary business cycle of boom and bust*

2 deep hollow sound

- ADJ. **big** | **deep** | **distant** | **sonic** (= the explosive sound made when an aircraft flies faster than the speed of sound) *We heard the sonic boom of a jet overhead.*
- VERB + BOOM **hear**
- BOOM + VERB **echo** *The deep boom of a foghorn echoed across the bay.*
- PREP. **with a ~**

boon *noun*

- ADJ. **enormous, great, real, tremendous**
- VERB + BOON **be, come as, prove**
- PREP. **~ for** *The building scheme comes as an enormous boon for the building industry.* **~ to** *These machines have proved a real boon to disabled people.*

boost *noun*

- ADJ. **big, great, major, tremendous** | **much-needed, welcome** | **unexpected** | **confidence, financial, morale, psychological**

- VERB + BOOST **give sb, provide (sb with) | need | get, receive**
- PREP. **~ for** *a boost for British products* **~ in** *a big boost in exports* **~ to** *a boost to the economy*

boost *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, greatly, substantially**
- VERB + BOOST **help (to)** *The new service helped boost pre-tax profits by 10%.*
- PREP. **to** *The total was boosted to nearly £200 by donations from parents.*

boot *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy | lightweight | high | ankle, calf-length, knee-length, thigh-length | muddy | polished | fabric, kid, leather, plastic, suede | gum, rubber, Wellington | high-heeled, hob-nailed, lace-up, nailed, steel-capped, studded, thick-soled | army, baseball, climbing, cowboy, desert, football, hiking, riding, rugby, ski, walking**
- QUANT. **pair** *a pair of heavy walking boots*
- VERB + BOOT **have on, wear | put on, take off | lace up, unlace | polish**
- BOOT + NOUN **polish**
- PHRASES **as tough as old boots** *The meat was as tough as old boots.* **the toe of sb's boot** *She kicked at the snow with the toe of her boot.*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

booth *noun*

- ADJ. **phone, photo, polling, ticket, voting**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She waited in the phone booth.*

booty *noun*

- ADJ. **war**
- VERB + BOOTY **capture, carry off, seize, take | divide, share, split** *They divided the booty among the troops.*

booze *noun*

- ADJ. **cheap | free** *There was free booze at the party.*
- VERB + BOOZE **smell** *I could smell booze on his breath.* | **bring, take** *We need to take some booze to the party.* | **turn to** *He turned to booze* (= started drinking a lot of alcohol) *when his wife died.* | **kick** *She's still trying to kick the booze* (= stop drinking so much alcohol).
- BOOZE + NOUN **problem**
- PREP. **off the ~** (= not drinking alcohol) *She's been off the booze for a month now.* **on the ~** (= drinking alcohol) *He was dry for years but now he's back on the booze.*

border *noun*

1 line that divides two countries

- ADJ. **open | closed | common** *Poland has a common border with Germany.* | **disputed**
- VERB + BORDER **arrive at, reach, stop at | cross, drive across/over, slip across/over** *They slipped across the border at nightfall.* | **escape across/over, flee across/over | form, mark** *A river forms the border.* | **draw (up), establish, fix | guard, patrol | open | close, seal**
- BORDER + NOUN **crossing, post | region, town | control, guard, troops | clash, dispute, war | raid | clash, incident, skirmish**
- PREP. **across/over a/the ~** *to smuggle goods across the border* **along a/the ~** *There has been fighting along the border.* **at/on a/the ~** *We were stopped on the border.* **on the ~ of** *a farm on the border of Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire* **up to the ~** *He drove us right up to the Russian border.* | **~ between/of** *the border between Austria and Switzerland* **~ with** *the border with Mexico*
- PHRASES **north/south of the border, one side/both sides of the border** *There has been fighting on both sides of the border.*

2 decorative band/strip round the edge of sth

- ADJ. **wide | narrow | decorative**
- VERB + BORDER **have** *The tablecloth has a narrow lace border.* | **draw**
- PREP. **with a/the ~** *a white handkerchief with a blue border* | **~ around/round** *She drew a decorative border around the picture.*

borderline *noun*

- BORDERLINE + NOUN **case | applicant, candidate**
- PREP. **on the ~** *She's on the borderline between a first- and second-class honours degree.* | **~ between** *the borderline between myth and philosophy*

bore *noun*

1 person

- ADJ. **awful, crashing, dreadful, real, terrible, utter** *Her husband is a crashing bore.*
- PHRASES **a bit of a bore**

2 **a bore** sth that you have to do

- ADJ. **awful, great, real, terrible** *It's an awful bore having to meet my aunt for lunch.*

bore *verb*

- ADV. **easily** *I'm very easily bored.*
- PREP. **with** *I won't bore you with too many details.*
- PHRASES **bore sb out of their (tiny) mind, bore sb rigid/silly/stiff, bore sb to death/distraction/tears** *That lecture bored me to tears!*

bored *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow** *Some children get bored very quickly.* | **remain**
- ADV. **really, terribly, very | thoroughly | a bit, faintly, a little, pretty, rather, slightly**
- PREP. **at** *bored at the prospect of going shopping* **by** *He seemed faintly bored by the whole process.* **with** *He was bored with their conversation.*
- PHRASES **bored out of your (tiny) mind** *He walked along, bored out of his mind.* **bored rigid/silly/stiff** *I remember being bored stiff during my entire time at school.* **bored to death/distraction/tears** *She was alone all day and bored to death.*

boredom *noun*

- ADJ. **sheer, utter | terminal**
- VERB + BOREDOM **prevent | alleviate, combat, relieve** *A walkman can relieve the boredom of running.* | **die from/of, go mad with** *I'd die of boredom if I lived in the country.* | **drive sb mad with** *Unemployment can drive you mad with boredom.*
- PHRASES **a high/low boredom threshold** *Sorting mail is not a job for people with a low boredom threshold.*

boring *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become, get | make sth** *Try not to make the diet boring.* | **consider sb/sth, find sb/sth, think sb/sth** *She found her job boring.*
- ADV. **awfully, dead, extremely, incredibly, really, terribly, very** *That film was dead boring.* | **completely, downright, utterly | a bit, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, slightly**
- PREP. **for** *The game was boring for the spectators.*
- PHRASES **boring old** *Green is much better than boring old white.*

born *verb* be born

- ADV. **prematurely**
- PREP. **into** *She was born into a wealthy family.* **of** (*formal*) *to be born of noble parents* **to** *babies who are born to very young mothers* **with** *Their child was born with a serious medical problem.*
- PHRASES **American, British, etc. born** *The part is played by an American-born actress.* **be born alive/dead, be born and bred/brought up/raised** *I was born and bred in Liverpool.* **be born blind, deaf, etc., be born out of wedlock/outside marriage**

borough *noun*

- ADJ. **county, metropolitan, municipal**
- BOROUGH + NOUN **council, councillor**
- PREP. **in/within a/the ~** *to establish unemployment committees in all metropolitan boroughs* **throughout a/the ~** *There are factories scattered throughout the borough.* | **~ of** *the London borough of Lambeth*

borrow *verb*

1 money/things
- ADV. **heavily** *He borrowed heavily to set the company up.*
- PREP. **from** *She borrowed £50 from her mother.* **off** (*informal*) *I'll borrow some coffee off the neighbours.*

2 ideas, etc.
- ADV. **freely**
- PREP. **from** *His designs borrow freely from the architecture of ancient Egypt.*

bosom *noun*

- ADJ. **ample, enormous, large, full**
- BOSOM + VERB **heave, rise and fall** *Her bosom rose and fell; she was out of breath from keeping up with him.*
- PHRASES **clutch sb/sth to your bosom** (*literary*) *She clutched her son tightly to her bosom.*

boss *noun*

- ADJ. **big** | **company, party, union**

bother *noun*

- VERB + BOTHER **have** *I had a little bother finding your house.* | **cause, give sb** *Your little boy didn't give me any bother.* | **go to** *I wouldn't go to the bother of making the cakes myself.* | **put sb to** *I'd love to come and stay with you, but I don't want to put you to any bother.* | **save sb** *Getting a taxi will save you the bother of picking me up from the station.*
- PHRASES **a bit/a little/a lot/a spot of bother** *He's in a spot of bother with the police.* **no bother** *The children were no bother.*
- PREP. **without any ~** *We found the hotel without any bother.* | **~ to** *I don't mind looking after your dog—it's no bother to me.* **~ with** *He's got a spot of bother with his eyes.*

bothered *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** | **get** *He never got too bothered about the mess.*
- ADV. **not at all, not in the least** *I'm not in the least bothered about the price.* | **not particularly, not really, not (all) that, not too** *They're not really bothered about what you do.* ◇ *He is not that bothered about his appearance.*
- PREP. **about** *He wasn't too bothered about the slight leak.* **by** *He was still bothered by a persistent leg injury.* **with** *They did not want to be bothered with her problems.*
- PHRASES **can't/couldn't be bothered** *He couldn't even be bothered to turn round.* **(get all) hot and bothered** *She had got herself all hot and bothered about the test.*

bottle *noun*

- ADJ. **full** | **empty** | **recyclable, returnable** | **beer, medicine, milk, etc.** | **hot-water** | **feeding**
- VERB + BOTTLE **fill** *She filled the bottle with water.* | **empty** | **break/crack open** (only used about alcoholic drinks), **open, uncork** *Let's crack open a bottle of champagne to celebrate.* | **drink, have, wash sth down with** *We washed the stew down with a bottle of cheap red wine.* | **share** | **bring** (= to bring a bottle of drink to a party)
- BOTTLE + NOUN **top** | **opener** | **bank** | **feeding**
- PREP. **over a/the ~** *We discussed the problem over a bottle of wine.* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **be on the bottle** (= to be an alcoholic), **hit the bottle/take to the bottle** (= to start drinking alcohol heavily)

bottom *noun*

1 lowest part of sth
- ADJ. **false** *a case with a false bottom*
- VERB + BOTTOM **arrive at, fall to, get to, reach, sink to** *He reached the bottom of the steps in no time.* ◇ *The boat sank to the bottom of the sea.* | **touch** *She could only just touch the bottom* (= of a swimming pool, etc.).
- BOTTOM + NOUN **end, half**
- PREP. **along the ~** *We rode along the bottom of the valley.* **at the ~** *at the bottom of the hill* **from the ~** *strange sounds from the bottom of the well* **in the ~** *in the bottom of my bag* **on the ~** *on the bottom of the box* **near/towards the ~** *near the bottom of the page*

2 least important position
- VERB + BOTTOM **start at, work up from** *He started at the bottom and worked his way up through the company.*
- PREP. **at the ~, near/towards the ~** *He's near the bottom of the class.*

3 part of the body
- ADJ. **bare**
- VERB + BOTTOM **smack**

4 basic cause of sth/truth about sth
- VERB + BOTTOM **be at, lie at** *I'd love to know what lies at the bottom of all this.* | **get to** *The only way to get to the bottom of it is to confront the chairman.*

boulevard *noun*

- ADJ. **broad, wide** | **tree-lined**
- BOULEVARD + VERB **be lined with sth** *a boulevard lined with pavement cafes*
- PREP. **along, down, up, etc. a/the ~** *They sauntered along the tree-lined boulevard.*

bounce *verb*

- ADV. **high** *The ball bounced high and she missed it.* | **back, off** *The stone hit the window but bounced off.*
- PREP. **against, down, into, off, on, towards** *Short sound waves bounce off even small objects.*

bound *adj.*

1 **bound to do sth** certain to do sth
- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **almost** *These problems were almost bound to arise.*

2 **bound (to do sth)** obliged to do sth
- VERBS **be, feel** | **become** | **remain** | **hold sb** *The president said the country could not be held bound by a treaty signed by the previous regime.*
- ADJ. **absolutely** | **irrevocably** | **by law, contractually, legally** *Officials are bound by law to investigate any possible fraud.* ◇ *He was legally bound to report them to the authorities.* | **(in) honour, in duty** (also **duty-bound**), **morally** *I felt in duty bound to report the incident.*
- PREP. **by** *We are legally bound by this decision.*

3 travelling in a particular direction
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **homeward, outward**
- PREP. **for** *tourists who are bound for Europe*

4 bound up closely connected
- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **closely, intimately | inevitably, inextricably | intrinsically | together** *A person's name and their sense of their own identity are often closely bound up together.*
- PREP. **with** *From that moment my life became inextricably bound up with hers.*

boundary *noun*

1 line that marks the limits of a place
- ADJ. **common | northern, southern, etc. | national, state | district, parish**
- VERB + BOUNDARY **have | form, mark** *The river forms the boundary.* **| share | draw, establish, fix, set** *The boundary was fixed just south of the farm.* **| redraw | cross** *We've just crossed the boundary into Sussex.* **| extend**
- BOUNDARY + NOUN **fence, hedge, line, wall | dispute** *a boundary dispute with their neighbours*
- PREP. **across/over the ~** *They drove across the boundary.* **along the ~** *We continued along the southern boundary of the county.* **at/on the ~** *We had to stop at the boundary.* ◇ *on the boundary of the two countries* **beyond the ~** *She had never strayed beyond the city boundaries.* **within the ~s** *within the boundaries of the old city walls* **| ~ between** *the boundary between Sussex and Surrey* **~ with** *The state has a boundary with Ontario.*

2 limit
- ADJ. **traditional**
- VERB + BOUNDARY **cross** *This job crosses the traditional boundary between social work and health care.* **| extend, push back** *research which extends the boundaries of human knowledge* **| overstep**
- PREP. **across ~s** *His policies appeal across party political boundaries.* **beyond the ~s** *going beyond the boundaries of accepted behaviour* **on the ~** *on the boundary of physics and chemistry* **within the ~s** *keeping within the boundaries of the law* **| ~ between** *the boundary between sanity and insanity*
- PHRASES **the boundaries of taste** *In her performance she had clearly overstepped the boundaries of good taste.*

bouquet *noun*

- ADJ. **huge, large | small | bridal, wedding**
- VERB + BOUQUET **carry | send (sb)**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Are there any roses in your bouquet?* **| ~ of** *He sent her a large bouquet of wild flowers.*

bout *noun*

- ADJ. **bad, nasty, prolonged, serious, severe** *I got a bad bout of flu last winter.* **| mild | drinking**
- VERB + BOUT **get, have, suffer from**
- PREP. **during a/the ~ | ~ of** *a bout of depression*

boutique *noun*

- ADJ. **chic, elegant, exclusive, smart | fashion**
- VERB + BOUTIQUE **open | run**

bow¹ /baʊ/ *noun*

1 act of bowing
- ADJ. **deep, low | little, slight | formal, stiff**
- VERB + BOW **give, make** *He gave a formal bow and left the room.* **| take** (= used about a performer) *The song ended and Albert took a bow.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The team's chairman takes his final bow at this match* (= is retiring after this match).
- PREP. **~ to** *He made a deep bow to the king.*

2 front part of a ship
- ADJ. **port, starboard** *There's a small boat on the port bow.*
- VERB + BOW **cross** *A huge whale crossed our bows.*
- PREP. **across the ~** *They fired a shot across our bows.* **in the ~** *We left two men in the bows to receive the cargo.* **off the ~** *100 yards off our bows* **on the ~** *The ship's name was printed on her bow.* **over the ~** *There were huge waves breaking over the bows.*

bow² /baʊ/ *verb*

- ADV. **deeply, low** *He swept off his hat and bowed deeply to the Queen.* **| slightly | politely, respectfully | down**
- PREP. **before** *The Emperor's subjects bowed down before him.* **to** *The pianist stood up and bowed to the audience.*

bow³ /bəʊ/ *noun*

1 knot with two loops
- ADJ. **neat | double**
- VERB + BOW **tie (sth into)** *Can you tie a bow?* ◇ *She tied the ribbon into a neat bow.*

2 weapon for shooting arrows
- VERB + BOW **be armed with, carry, have | aim, draw, raise** *She drew and aimed her bow.* **| lower**
- PHRASES **a bow and arrow**

3 for playing a violin, etc.
- VERB + BOW **draw** *She drew the bow across the strings.*

bowel *noun*

- ADJ. **large, small**
- VERB + BOWEL **empty, evacuate, move, open**
- BOWEL + NOUN **action, function, habit, movement** *Patients are asked to report any change in bowel habit.* ◇ *He's been having painful bowel movements.* **| frequency | wall | cancer, disease, disorder, obstruction, problems, tumour | biopsy, surgery**
- PREP. **in the ~**
- PHRASES **irritable bowel syndrome**

bowl *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, shallow | empty, full | ceramic, china, crystal, cut-glass, earthenware, enamel, glass | food, fruit, porridge, pudding, punch** (also **punchbowl**), **salad, soup, sugar, water** *I refilled the dog's water bowl.* **| mixing, serving | washing-up | finger** *I put down the chicken bone and rinsed my fingers in the finger bowl.* **| begging** (*figurative*) *The school is always having to get out the begging bowl for books and basic equipment.* **| goldfish | lavatory, toilet**
- VERB + BOWL **fill, pour (sb), pour sth into** *He poured himself a bowl of soup.* **| empty | drink from/out of, eat from/out of**
- BOWL + VERB **contain sth, hold sth** *a bowl containing flour* ◇ *This bowl holds about four pints.* **| overflow** *The washing-up bowl was overflowing.*
- PREP. **from a/the ~** *I helped myself to an apple from the bowl.* **out of a/the ~** *The boy was drinking milk out of a bowl.* **in/into a/the ~** *Mix the ingredients in a deep bowl.* ◇ *Sieve the flour into a bowl.* **| ~ of** *a bowl of cherries*

bowling *noun*

1 indoor game
- ADJ. **tenpin**
- VERB + BOWLING **go** *Let's go bowling on Saturday.*
- BOWLING + NOUN **ball | alley | green**

⇨ Special page at SPORT

2 in the game of cricket

- ADJ. **fast, pace, quick | slow | seam, spin, swing | short-pitched | intimidatory**
- VERB + BOWLING **open** *McArthur opened the bowling on the first day of the match.*
- BOWLING + NOUN **attack** *England were no match for the Indian bowling attack.* **| average | crease**

box *noun*

1 container

- ADJ. **oblong, rectangular, square | upturned** *They were sitting round the fire on upturned boxes.* **| cardboard | storage | chocolate, cigar, egg | jewel/jewellery, shoe, tool** (also **toolbox**) **| cassette, CD, video | gift | lunch, sandwich | first-aid | (safe/safety) deposit, security** *There is a safety deposit box in every room of the hotel.* **| cash, money** *The cash box was kept in the safe at the back of the shop.* ◇ *She opened her money box to see if she had saved enough for a tennis racket.* **| collection, donation** *The exhibition is free, but there is a collection box for donations.*
- QUANT. **pile, stack**
- VERB + BOX **fill, pack** *She filled the box with old clothes.* **| pack sth in/into, put sth in/into, put sth away in, store sth in** *We packed all the books into boxes.* **| remove sth from, take sth out of | empty, unpack | open | close, shut | lock**
- BOX + VERB **contain sth, be filled with/full of sth, hold sth** *This box holds ten candles and costs £21.* **| be labelled sth, be marked sth** *a box marked 'fragile'* **| be covered in/with sth, be lined with sth** *The dog sleeps in a box lined with an old blanket.*
- PREP. **in/into a/the ~, inside a/the ~, out of a/the ~ | ~ of** *a box of chocolates*
- PHRASES **the lid of a box**

2 enclosed area

- ADJ. **soundproof | call, phone, telephone | jury, witness | commentary, press** *There was a babble of languages in the commentary box when the race began.* **| director's, executive, hospitality** *They drank champagne as they watched the match from the executive box.* **| private, Royal** *a private box at the theatre* **| signal | horse** (also **horsebox**) *The car in front was pulling a horsebox.*
- PREP. **in/into a/the ~**

3 square on a form/screen

- ADJ. **appropriate, relevant** *Tick the relevant box below.* **| dialog/dialogue** *Click on 'open file' in the dialogue box.* **| question**
- VERB + BOX **fill in, put sth in, tick, write (sth) in** *Put a cross in the box if you agree with the comments.*
- PREP. **in/into a/the ~**

boxing *noun*

- ADJ. **heavyweight, lightweight, middleweight, etc. | amateur, professional, unlicensed** *Unlicensed boxing can be very dangerous.* **| world** *the most respected coach in world boxing* **| kick, Thai | shadow** (also **shadow-boxing**) (= boxing with an imaginary opponent) (*figurative*) *The two candidates engaged in shadow-boxing before the election.*
- VERB + BOXING **do** *He does boxing in his spare time.*
- BOXING + NOUN **boot, glove | competition, match, tournament | title | champion | ring | skill, technique | coach, promoter | career | enthusiast, fan | writer | circles** *He is highly respected in boxing circles.*

⇨ Special page at SPORT

box office *noun*

- BOX OFFICE + NOUN **hit, success | receipts, takings** *Box office receipts for the film have hit $50 million.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *Tickets are available at the box office.*
- PHRASES **do well/badly at the box office** *The musical has done very well at the box office* (= a lot of tickets have been sold).

boy *noun*

- ADJ. **big** *Your boy is quite big for his age.* ◇ *Don't cry—you're a big boy now.* **| little, small** *A little boy rode by on a tricycle.* ◇ *Their boy is small for his age.* **| young** *Our youngest boy is just starting school.* **| elder, eldest, older** *How old is your eldest boy?* **| baby | adolescent, teenage | good** *Eat up your greens—there's a good boy.* **| naughty | bright, clever**
- VERB + BOY **have** *They've had a baby boy.* ◇ *I've got three boys.*

boycott *noun*

- ADJ. **mass, total, worldwide | consumer, economic, trade** *a consumer boycott of GM foods*
- VERB + BOYCOTT **declare, impose, introduce** *Opposition groups declared a boycott of the elections.* **| call for, threaten** *Lawyers threatened a boycott of the courts.* **| end, lift** *Politicians want to end their boycott of the talks.* **| join** *There is pressure on the biggest union to join the boycott.*
- BOYCOTT + NOUN **campaign**
- PREP. **~ by** *a boycott by international singers* **~ of** *The group is calling for a mass consumer boycott of these products.* **~ on** *The US has imposed a boycott on some European goods.*

boycott *verb*

- ADV. **officially**
- VERB + BOYCOTT **threaten to | call on sb to, urge sb to** *They have urged people to boycott foreign products.*

boyfriend *noun*

- ADJ. **current, latest, new | ex-, former, old | long-standing, long-term, serious, steady | live-in | jealous | jilted** *She was stalked by a jilted ex-boyfriend.*
- QUANT. **string, succession** *She had a string of wealthy boyfriends before she finally married.*
- VERB + BOYFRIEND **have** *Have you got a boyfriend?* **| meet | live with | sleep with | marry**
- BOYFRIEND + NOUN **trouble** *She's unhappy because she's been having boyfriend trouble.*

bra *noun*

- ADJ. **padded, strapless, underwired, uplift | maternity, nursing | sports**
- VERB + BRA **put on | take off | do up | undo, unhook**
- BRA + NOUN **strap**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

brace *noun*

1 for supporting a part of the body

- ADJ. **leg, neck, shoulder**
- VERB + BRACE **have, wear** *I used to wear a brace.*
- PREP. **~ on** *a brace on his teeth*

2 **braces** for holding trousers up

- BRACES + VERB **hold sth up , support sth** *The braces held up his trousers.*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

bracket *noun*

1 **brackets** marks round extra information in writing

- ADJ. **angle, curly, round, square**
- VERB + BRACKETS **enclose sth in, give sth in, put sth in** *The prices are given in square brackets.*
- PREP. **in** *The words in brackets should be deleted.* **in-**

side, outside, within *The numbers outside the curly brackets are the sales figures.*

2 range

- ADJ. **age, income, price, tax | higher, top, upper | middle | lower**
- PREP. **in/within** *These machines are in the higher price bracket.* **outside** *people outside this age bracket*

brain *noun*

1 part of the body

- ADJ. **human | left, right** *The left brain controls the right-hand side of the body.*
- BRAIN + NOUN **cell, tissue | region | function, process | activity | damage, disease, disorder, failure, haemorrhage, illness, injury, tumour | scan | surgeon, surgery**
- PREP. **in the/your ~** *Doctors tried to reduce the swelling in his brain.* **on the/your ~** *He was found to have a blood clot on his brain.* ○ *(figurative) He's got football on the brain* (= thinks about nothing but football).
- PHRASES **blow your brains out** *While cleaning his shotgun he had accidentally blown his own brains out.*

2 ability to think/intelligence

- ADJ. **fertile, fine, good, great, quick | muddled, tired** *My tired brain couldn't cope with such a complex problem.* **| analytical**
- VERB + BRAIN **rack** *We racked our brains but we couldn't come up with a solution.* **| pick sb's** (= ask sb for information because they know more about a subject than you) *I need to pick your brains: what can you tell me about credit unions?* **| take** *It doesn't take much brain to work out that both stories can't be true.*
- BRAIN + VERB **function, tick over, work** *It's important to keep your brain ticking over.* **| reel** *His brain reeled as he realized the implication of his dismissal.* **| register sth** *The stopping distance includes the time taken for the brain to register the need to stop.*
- BRAIN + NOUN **power** (also **brainpower**)
- PREP. **~ behind** *the brains behind the robberies*
- PHRASES **brains and brawn/brains and not brawn, etc.** *They relied on brains rather than brawn* (= intelligence, not strength). **have a brain for sth** *She has a good brain for mathematics.*

brake *noun*

- ADJ. **defective, faulty | front, rear | foot, hand | air, anti-lock, disc, drum, vacuum**
- VERB + BRAKE **apply, hit, jam on, put/slam your foot on, put on, slam on** *She slammed on the brakes to try to avoid the dog.* **| keep your foot on | let off, release, take your foot off** *He released the brake and sped off.*
- BRAKE + VERB **work** *My brakes are not working properly.* **| fail** *The car crashed after its brakes failed.* **| screech, squeal | be on/off** *Is the brake on?*
- BRAKE + NOUN **failure | cable, fluid, lights, pads, pedal, pipes**
- PHRASES **act/serve as a brake on sth** *(figurative)*, **put a brake/the brakes on sth** *(figurative) The need to earn some money put the brakes on my wilder ambitions.* **a screech/squeal of brakes** *We heard the screech of brakes, followed by a loud crash.*

brake *verb*

- ADV. **hard, heavily, sharply, suddenly, violently**
- PHRASES **brake to a halt** *The train braked to a shuddering halt.* **brake to avoid sth** *She braked suddenly to avoid a cat.*

branch *noun*

1 part of a tree

- ADJ. **top/topmost | low, overhanging** *Be careful of overhanging branches.* **| bare, dead** *the bare branches of a tree in winter*

2 part of a larger organization

- ADJ. **central, high street, local, overseas, regional**
- VERB + BRANCH **establish, open, set up** *The store is opening more local branches.* **| close (down)**
- BRANCH + NOUN **chairman, manager, member, office, representative, secretary**

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

brand *noun*

1 type of product made by a particular manufacturer

- ADJ. **leading, major, principal, top** *the world's leading brand of whisky* **| famous, favourite, popular, well-known | own** (= goods marked with the name of a particular shop instead of that of the manufacturer) *Supermarkets make a lot of profit on their own brand products.*
- BRAND + NOUN **identity, image, name** *The company owes its success to brand image.* **| leader | loyalty**
- PREP. **~ of** *a well-known brand of toothpaste*

2 particular type of sth

- ADJ. **particular, special, unique** *His designs have a unique brand of stylishness.* **| ~ of** *his particular brand of humour*

brandy *noun*

- ADJ. **double, large | single, small | stiff** *a stiff brandy and soda* (= containing a lot of brandy and not much soda) **| straight | cherry, plum, etc.**
- QUANT. **dash, drop, nip** *He added a dash of brandy to his coffee.* **| measure, shot, tot** *She poured herself a large measure of brandy.* **| bottle, flask, glass, hip-flask**
- VERB + BRANDY **drink** *Do you drink brandy?* **| have** *I'll have some brandy, please.* **| pour (sb) | sip | gulp, swig | down, finish | distil, produce**
- BRANDY + NOUN **bottle | balloon** (= a kind of glass), **glass** *He sat cradling his brandy glass.*

brass *noun*

1 metal

- ADJ. **gleaming, glittering, polished, shiny | solid**
- VERB + BRASS **be made from/in/(out) of** *candlesticks made of solid brass*
- PREP. **in ~** *The door knocker was a female figure in brass.*

2 musical instruments made of brass

- BRASS + NOUN **band | instrument | section** *the brass section of the orchestra*

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

bravado *noun*

- ADJ. **sheer | mere | false, forced**
- PREP. **out of ~** *He behaved aggressively out of bravado.* **with ~** *'I'll be fine on my own,' she said with bravado.*
- PHRASES **a display/show of bravado**

brave *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | make sb** *The whisky had made me brave.*
- ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, really, terribly, very | quite | amazingly, incredibly**

bravery *noun*

- ADJ. **great, outstanding**
- VERB + BRAVERY **demonstrate, display, show**
- BRAVERY + NOUN **award, medal**
- PREP. **with ~** *The men fought with great bravery.*
- PHRASES **an act of bravery**

brawl *noun*

- ADJ. **drunken | bar-room, pub, street | mass**
- VERB + BRAWL **provoke, spark, start | be/become/get involved in, be/get caught up in, get into**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *They got caught up in a street brawl.* | **~ between** *a brawl between different gangs of football supporters.* **~ over** *a brawl over a woman*

breach *noun*

1 breaking of a law/an agreement/a rule
- ADJ. **clear, fundamental, grave, serious | deliberate, flagrant** *He refused to bow to the Queen, in deliberate breach of etiquette.* | **minor | security**
- VERB + BREACH **constitute** *Such behaviour constitutes a breach of confidentiality.* | **commit**
- PREP. **in ~ of** *The court's decision is in breach of the European Convention on human rights.* | **~ of** *a minor breach of discipline*
- PHRASES **a breach of confidence/trust, a breach of confidentiality/contract** *He was sued for breach of contract.* **a breach of security/the peace, a breach of the peace**

2 break in friendly relations
- VERB + BREACH **cause, lead to | heal, repair**
- PREP. **~ between** *What caused the breach between the two brothers?* **~ with** *She left home following the breach with her family.*

bread *noun*

- ADJ. **fresh | hard, mouldy, soggy, stale** *This bread is going stale.* | **crusty** *some nice crusty white bread* | **sliced | unleavened | home-baked, home-made | fried | garlic | black, brown, granary, naan, pitta, rye, soda, white, wholemeal | French, Italian, etc.**
- QUANT. **loaf | chunk, crumb, crust, hunk, morsel, piece, slice** *She tore off a large hunk of bread.*
- VERB + BREAD **bake, make** *the smell of freshly-baked bread* | **cut, slice | butter, put sth on, spread** *bread thickly spread with plum jam* | **toast**
- BREAD + NOUN **dough | pudding, roll, sauce | bin, knife**
- PREP. **on the ~** *What would you like on your bread?*
- PHRASES **bread and butter/margarine** *a plate of bread and butter* **bread and cheese/jam, bread and water** *He had to live on bread and water for two weeks.* **bread and wine** (= the food given to Christians during the Communion service) *People started going up to receive the bread and wine.*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

breadth *noun*

1 distance between two sides of sth
- PREP. **in ~** *The pool is 5 metres in breadth.*
- PHRASES **the length and breadth of sth** *He travels the length and breadth of* (= all over) *the country.*

2 great extent or variety
- ADJ. **full, great, sheer**
- PHRASES **breadth of experience** *I need a greater breadth of experience.* **breadth of interest/knowledge/understanding, breadth of mind, breadth of vision**

break *noun*

1 short rest/holiday
- ADJ. **short | coffee, lunch, tea | Christmas, Easter** *Are you going away for the Easter break?*
- VERB + BREAK **have, take** *We'll take a break now and resume in half an hour.* | **need**
- BREAK + NOUN **time**
- PREP. **at ~** *I'll see you at break.* **during (a/the) ~** *I had a word with John during the break.* **without a ~** *We worked all day without a break.* | **~ for** *a break for lunch* **~ from** *a break from looking after the children*

2 change/interruption in sth
- ADJ. **clean, complete | career | commercial**
- VERB + BREAK **make** *His new work makes a break with the past.* ◇ *I wanted to leave but was nervous about making the break.*
- PREP. **~ from** *a break from tradition* **~ in** *a break in the weather* **~ with**

3 opportunity
- ADJ. **big, lucky**
- VERB + BREAK **get** *I always knew I would get my lucky break one day.* | **give sb** *He's the director who gave her her first big break.*

break *verb*

- ADV. **easily | in half, in two** *She broke the chocolate bar in two and gave a piece to me.* | **up** *She broke the chocolate up into small pieces.*
- PREP. **into** *The glass broke into hundreds of pieces.*

PHRASAL VERBS

break down

1 fail
- ADV. **completely, irretrievably** *They were divorced on the grounds that their marriage had broken down irretrievably.*

2 start crying
- PHRASES **break down and cry/weep, break down in tears** *She broke down in tears as she spoke to reporters.*

break off
- ADV. **abruptly** *He broke off abruptly when Jo walked in.*
- PREP. **from** *She broke off from the conversation to answer the telephone.*

breakdown *noun*

1 mechanical failure
- ADJ. **electrical, mechanical**
- BREAKDOWN + VERB **occur**
- BREAKDOWN + NOUN **organization, service** *The national breakdown organizations are on hand to help motorists 24 hours a day.* | **crane, lorry, vehicle**

2 failure/end of sth
- ADJ. **serious | complete, irretrievable** *The only ground for divorce is the irretrievable breakdown of the marriage.* | **communication, family, marital, marriage, relationship**
- VERB + BREAKDOWN **cause, lead to**
- PREP. **~ in/of** *a breakdown in negotiations*

3 collapse of mental health
- ADJ. **emotional, mental, nervous, psychological**
- VERB + BREAKDOWN **have, suffer**

4 list of the details of sth
- ADJ. **detailed, full | cost**
- VERB + BREAKDOWN **prepare** *I have prepared a detailed cost breakdown for the project.* | **give sb, provide (sb with)**
- PREP. **~ by, ~ of** *Please provide us with a breakdown of expenditure by department.*

breakfast *noun*

- ADJ. **big, full, good, hearty, large, proper, solid, substantial | light, modest | cooked, fried | continental, English, American-style** *a full English breakfast of cereal, bacon and eggs and toast* | **buffet/buffet-style | hasty, hurried, quick | leisurely, long | early, late | working | champagne**
- BREAKFAST + NOUN **cereal | dishes, things** *Would you clear away the breakfast things?* | **room | meeting | show, television**

- PHRASES **bed and breakfast** *Bed and breakfast accommodation is available near the museum.* **breakfast in bed** *He treated his wife to breakfast in bed on her birthday.*

⇨ Note at MEAL (for verbs)

break-in *noun*

- ADJ. **attempted | factory, house, etc.**
- BREAK-IN + NOUN **happen, take place**
- PREP. **~ at** *a break-in at the factory*

breakthrough *noun*

- ADJ. **big, crucial, great, historic, important, major, real, significant | diplomatic, medical, political, scientific, technological**
- VERB + BREAKTHROUGH **be, represent | achieve, make** *We have achieved a real breakthrough in the search for peace.*
- BREAKTHROUGH + VERB **come, happen** *The crucial breakthrough came almost by accident.*
- PREP. **~ for** *The new deal represents a major breakthrough for the company.* **~ in** *a significant breakthrough in computer design*

breakup *noun*

- ADJ. **family, marital, marriage**
- VERB + BREAKUP **lead to**

breast *noun*

1 part of a woman's body

- ADJ. **ample, big, full, heavy, large | little, small | bare, naked | firm, pert, pointed | round, shapely | sagging**
- BREAST + NOUN **cancer | screening | milk**
- PHRASES **put a baby to the breast** (= to feed a baby from the breast), **take the breast** (= to feed from the breast)

2 your chest

- PHRASES **beat your breast, hold/clutch sb/sth to your breast** *He held the letter to his breast.*

breaststroke *noun*

⇨ Note at STROKE

breath *noun*

- ADJ. **big, deep, long, slow | quick, shallow, short | bad** *Smoking gives you bad breath.*
- VERB + BREATH **draw (in), suck in, take** *He spoke solidly for twenty minutes, barely pausing to draw breath.* ◇ *Take a deep breath and try to relax.* | **let out** *He let out a long breath.* | **hold** *How long can you hold your breath for?* | **get back** *I needed a few minutes to get my breath back after the run.* | **catch** *When he said he had resigned, I caught my breath in surprise.* | **gasp for** *He came up out of the water gasping for breath.* | **pause for** *She poured out her story, hardly pausing for breath.* | **save** (*figurative*) *It's useless talking to him—you may as well save your breath.* | **waste** (*figurative*) *Don't waste your breath. He never listens to advice.*
- BREATH + VERB **come in gasps/pants/puffs** *His breath came in short gasps.*
- PREP. **on sb's ~** *I could smell gin on her breath.* **out of ~** *I'm a bit out of breath after my run.* **under your ~** *He was whispering rude remarks about her under his breath.* | **~ of** *It was a still day, without a breath of wind.*
- PHRASES **a breath of fresh air** *I'm going outside for a breath of fresh air.* **an intake of breath** *When the news was announced, there was a sharp intake of breath.* **in the same breath** *How can we trust a government that mentions community care and cutbacks in the same breath?* **short of breath** *I felt a bit short of breath and had to sit down.* **take sb's breath away** (*figurative*) *The sheer audacity of the man took my breath away.*

breathe *verb*

1 air/breath

- ADV. **fast, quickly, rapidly | slowly | deeply | shallowly | hard, heavily** *They were both breathing hard from the steep climb.* | **gently | easily, steadily** *She was beginning to breathe more easily.* | **normally, properly** *I can't breathe properly—I'm gasping for air!* | **raggedly** *He was breathing raggedly, mouth open.* | **in, out** *She breathed slowly in and out.*
- VERB + BREATHE **can/can't, could/couldn't, could barely/hardly/scarcely | not dare** *He hardly dared breathe in case they heard him.*
- PREP. **through** *Always breathe through your nose.*

2 say quietly

- ADV. **huskily, softly** *'I love you,' she breathed softly.*

breather *noun*

- ADJ. **quick, short, slight**
- VERB + BREATHER **have, stop for, take | enjoy | give sb** *The weekend will give me a slight breather to finish this work in.*

breathing *noun*

- ADJ. **deep | shallow | controlled, even, regular, steady | hoarse, laboured, uneven** *His breathing was laboured, and he could hardly speak.* | **heavy** *She picked up the phone and heard sounds of heavy breathing.*
- BREATHING + NOUN **apparatus | difficulties | exercise** *Try breathing exercises to calm your nerves.*

breathless *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | become | leave sb, make sb** *The unaccustomed exercise left him breathless.*
- ADV. **very | a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat** *He felt quite breathless.* | **suddenly**
- PREP. **with** *By the end of the walk, she was breathless with exertion.* ◇ *The children peered through the open door, breathless with excitement.*

breathtaking *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **absolutely, quite, truly**

breed *noun*

1 type of animal

- ADJ. **new | rare | hardy**
- VERB + BREED **keep** *a farm that keeps rare breeds*
- PREP. **~ of** *a new breed of dairy cattle*

2 particular type of person

- ADJ. **new | dying, rare** *Entertainers of this sort are now a dying breed.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a new breed of international criminals*
- PHRASES **a breed apart** *Health workers are a breed apart in their commitment and dedication to duty.*

breed *verb*

- ADV. **in captivity | successfully | commercially | selectively** *fish that have been selectively bred for their appearance*
- PREP. **for** *dogs that are bred for their fighting ability* **from** *She's a lovely cat. Will you breed from her?*

breeding *noun*

1 activity of producing plants/animals

- ADJ. **animal, fish, plant | selective** *Certain character-*

istics can be developed through selective breeding. | **captive** *a campaign to save the condor by captive breeding*
- BREEDING + NOUN **season** | **stock** | **programme**

2 good manners/behaviour
- ADJ. **good** *Her good breeding shows in her exquisite manners.*
- VERB + BREEDING **have** *The young man clearly has breeding.*

breeze *noun*
- ADJ. **faint, gentle, light, little, slight, soft** | **stiff, strong** | **sudden** | **cold, cool, fresh** | **warm** | **pleasant** *pleasant sea breezes* | **evening, morning, night** | **sea, summer** | **northerly, westerly, etc.**
- BREEZE + VERB **blow, come, drift** *A light breeze came off the sea.* | **ruffle sth, rustle sth, stir sth** *A sudden breeze rustled the long dry grass.* | **come up** *A breeze came up in the late afternoon.* | **drop**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The curtains fluttered in the night breeze.*

breezy *adj.*

1 windy
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very** | **a little, slightly** *It's a little breezy up here.*
- PHRASES **bright and breezy** *The weather at the seaside was ideal—bright and breezy.*

2 cheerful and relaxed
- VERBS **be, seem, sound** *She tried to sound breezy on the phone.*
- PHRASES **bright and breezy** *His bright and breezy manner sometimes irritated people.*

bribe *noun*
- VERB + BRIBE **give sb, offer (sb), pay sb** *He admitted paying bribes to police officers.* | **accept, take**
- PREP. **in ~s** *He paid out millions of dollars in bribes.* | **~ of** *a bribe of £200*

bribery *noun*
- ADJ. **political**
- VERB + BRIBERY **resort to**
- BRIBERY + NOUN **scandal**
- PHRASES **bribery and corruption** *The charge in the present case is one of bribery and corruption.*

⇨ Note at CRIME (for more verbs)

brick *noun*
- ADJ. **red** *a house of red brick*
- VERB + BRICK **lay** *learning to lay bricks properly*
- BRICK + NOUN **wall** | **building** | **works** *He got a job at the local brick works.*
- PREP. **in/of ~** *houses of brick*
- PHRASES **brick by brick** *They moved the whole house, brick by brick.* **bricks and mortar** *investing in bricks and mortar* **a course of bricks** *They put an extra course of bricks round the pool.*

bride *noun*
- ADJ. **beautiful, lovely, radiant** | **blushing** | **child, teenage, young** | **new** | **future, intended, prospective** (also **bride-to-be**) | **jilted**
- VERB + BRIDE **give away** *The bride's father traditionally walks with her to the altar to give her away.* | **toast** *Everyone raised their glasses to toast the bride.*
- BRIDE + VERB **wear sth** | **receive the guests**
- PHRASES **the bride and groom**

bridegroom *noun*
- ADJ. **future, prospective**
- BRIDEGROOM + VERB **receive the guests** *The bride and bridegroom received their guests in the great hall.*
- PHRASES **the bride and bridegroom**

bridesmaid *noun*
- ADJ. **chief**
- VERB + BRIDESMAID **toast** *The bridegroom asked the guests to stand and then toasted the bridesmaids.*

bridge *noun*

1 structure across a river, road, etc.
- ADJ. **high, humpback, narrow** | **railway, road** | **Bailey, cantilever, pontoon, suspension** | **toll**
- VERB + BRIDGE **build, erect** | **destroy** | **wash away** *Floods washed away several bridges.* | **cross** *Cross the bridge and turn right into the town.*
- BRIDGE + VERB **cross sth, span sth** *The new bridge will cross the Thames at this point.* | **link sth**
- PREP. **across over a/the ~** *driving over a humpback bridge* **under a/the ~** *The road goes under the old railway bridge.* | **~ across, over** *a bridge over the river*

2 card game
- QUANT. **game, rubber** *I enjoy a game of bridge occasionally.*
- VERB + BRIDGE **play**
- BRIDGE + NOUN **tournament** | **partner, player**

brief *noun*
- ADJ. **clear, detailed, written** | **legal, technical**
- VERB + BRIEF **prepare, produce, write**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She makes all these points in her brief.* **outside sb's ~** *How the new policy is to be implemented is outside his brief.* | **~ on** *a technical brief on food hygiene*
- PHRASES **be part of sb's brief** *It's not part of my brief to advise on financial matters.*

brief *verb*
- ADV. **fully, properly, well**
- PREP. **about** *The men have been fully briefed about the intended mission.* **on** *Each member of my crew took it in turn to brief me on his particular duties.*

brief *adj.*
- VERBS **be** *I promised to be brief.* | **keep sth, make sth** *Could you make it brief? I've got a meeting in ten minutes.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **fairly, quite, rather** | **comparatively, relatively** | **necessarily** *This necessarily brief account concentrates on two main areas.* | **mercifully** *The wait was mercifully brief, little more than an hour.* | **tantalizingly** *The diary entries were tantalizingly brief.*

briefcase *noun*
- ADJ. **battered** *He wore a torn suit and carried a battered briefcase.* | **bulging** | **executive** | **leather, plastic**
- VERB + BRIEFCASE **open, snap open, unlock** | **close, lock, shut, snap shut** | **carry, hold, pick up** | **drop, put down**
- BRIEFCASE + VERB **be bulging with sth, be full of sth, be stuffed with sth, contain sth**

briefing *noun*
- ADJ. **detailed, full, thorough** | **formal, informal** | **final** *She returned to Washington for a final briefing.* | **press**
- VERB + BRIEFING **give sb** *All staff will be given a full briefing tomorrow.* | **get, receive** | **arrange, hold** *I asked him to arrange a formal briefing.* | **attend**

- BRIEFING + NOUN **session | document, paper**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *Details of the scheme will be announced at a press briefing later today.* | **~ by/from** *a briefing by the commanding officer* **~ on** *a briefing on security issues*

brigade *noun*

- ADJ. **armoured, fire, infantry**
- VERB + BRIGADE **command, lead | form** *A special army brigade is to be formed.* | **join**
- BRIGADE + NOUN **commander | headquarters**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *units in 1st Commando Brigade* | **~ of** *a brigade of infantry*

brigadier *noun*

⇨ Note at RANK

bright *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem** *The factory's future now looks quite bright.* | **become**
- ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, incredibly, intensely, really, surprisingly, unusually, very** *a really bright child* | **fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably** *The morning was quite bright, but it clouded over in the afternoon.* | **unnaturally** *Her eyes were unnaturally bright.*

brighten *verb*

- ADV. **considerably | a bit, a little | visibly** *Their rather heavy faces brightened visibly.* | **suddenly | up** *She brightened up a bit at the thought of the holiday.*

brilliance *noun*

- ADJ. **great, sheer | academic, intellectual, technical**
- QUANT. **flash** *There were flashes of brilliance from several of the players.*
- PREP. **with ~** *He played with great brilliance.*

brilliant *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look**
- ADV. **bloody** (*taboo*), **just, really** *Winning that race was just brilliant.* | **absolutely, quite, totally, utterly** *an absolutely brilliant idea* | **technically** *Her performance was technically brilliant but lacked feeling.*
- PREP. **at** *He's brilliant at football.*

brim *noun*

1 top edge of a cup, bowl, etc.

- PHRASES **be filled/full to the brim, fill sth to the brim** *She filled the bowl to the brim.*

2 flat edge around the bottom of a hat

- ADJ. **broad, deep, wide** *a straw hat with a wide brim*
- PREP. **beneath/under a/the ~** *She watched the crowd from beneath the brim of her hat.*

bring *verb*

PHRASAL VERB

bring sb up

- ADV. **badly, well** *children who have been well brought up*

brink *noun*

- ADJ. **very**
- VERB + BRINK **be (poised) on, hover on, stand on, teeter on** *Scientists are on the brink of making a major new discovery.* ◇ *animals hovering on the very brink of extinction* | **bring sb to | fight/pull back from | bring/pull sb/sth back from** *He pulled the company back from the brink* (= saved it from disaster).
- PREP. **~ of** *the brink of bankruptcy/death/war*

broad *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, pretty, quite, rather, reasonably, relatively | enough, sufficiently** *He questioned whether the school curriculum was broad enough in scope.* | **unusually** *His job gave him an acquaintance with an unusually broad spectrum of society.*

broadcast *noun*

- ADJ. **radio, satellite, television | live | outside | election, news, party political, religious**
- VERB + BROADCAST **give, make** *The president gave a radio broadcast to mark the end of the war.* | **hear, see**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *More details will be given in our news broadcast.* | **~ by** *a broadcast by the prime minister* **~ on** *a radio broadcast on the problems of unemployment*

broadcast *verb*

- ADV. **live**
- PREP. **from** *We will broadcast live from the ship.* **to** *a Christmas message broadcast to the nation*

broadcaster *noun*

- ADJ. **commercial** *Existing commercial broadcasters claim the new stations are illegal.* | **independent | public service** *The country needs a national public service broadcaster like the BBC.* | **local, national | satellite**

brochure *noun*

- ADJ. **(full) colour, glossy | illustrated** *Send for our illustrated brochure.* | **holiday, hotel, travel**
- QUANT. **copy**
- VERB + BROCHURE **browse/leaf/look through** *I leafed through the travel brochure.* | **produce, publish**

broke *adj.*

- VERBS **be | go** (= go bankrupt) *The company went broke last year.*
- ADV. **completely, flat** (*informal*), **stony** (*informal*) *I'm stony broke at the moment.* | **nearly**

broken *adj.*

- VERBS **be | get** *How did the jug get broken?*
- ADV. **badly** *One of his legs was badly broken.*

broker *noun*

- ADJ. **credit, insurance, mortgage** *Ask advice from an insurance broker.* | **honest** (= an independent person or country that acts between two sides in a dispute)
- VERB + BROKER **be, act as**
- PREP. **~ between** *acting as broker between the two opposing sides* **~ for** *a broker for the company*

⇨ Note at JOB

bronchitis *noun*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

bronze *noun*

1 metal

- VERB + BRONZE **be cast in, be made from/in/(out) of** *The figure was cast in bronze.*
- BRONZE + NOUN **ingot**
- PREP. **in ~** *She works mainly in bronze.*

2 (*also* **bronze medal**) in sports

- ADJ. **Olympic**
- VERB + BRONZE **get, take, win** *She got a bronze in the long jump.*

brooch *noun*

- ADJ. **cameo** | **diamond, pearl, etc.**
- VERB + BROOCH **have on, wear** | **pin** *She pinned a large amethyst brooch to her lapel.*

broom *noun*

- ADJ. **witch's** | **stiff**
- VERB + BROOM **sweep sth with, use**
- BROOM + NOUN **cupboard** | **handle**

brothel *noun*

- VERB + BROTHEL **go to, visit** *He used to visit a brothel in Paris.* | **run** *She ran a brothel in Soho.*
- BROTHEL + NOUN **keeper**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She works in a brothel in Brighton.*

brother *noun*

- ADJ. **big, elder, older** *Bill idolizes his big brother, who is a professional footballer.* | **baby, kid, little, small, wee, younger** | **twin** | **full** (= sharing both parents) | **half-** (= sharing one parent), **step-** (also **stepbrother**) (= the son from an earlier marriage of your stepfather or stepmother) | **beloved, much-loved** *She wrote daily to her beloved brother, Leo.* | **long-lost** *His old teacher greeted him like a long-lost brother.* | **dead, deceased, late** *He married the wife of his late brother.* | **bachelor, unmarried**
- PHRASES **blood brothers** (= close friends who have sworn to remain friends for life), **brother and sister** *Have you got any brothers and sisters?* **like brothers** *The boys are so close, they're like brothers.*

brow *noun*

1 eyebrow
- ADJ. **dark, heavy** | **bushy, shaggy** | **winged** | **delicate** | **sardonic** *She raised a sardonic brow.*
- VERB + BROW **arch, raise** *She arched a brow when she saw the bill.* | **draw together, knit** *He knitted his brows in concentration.*
- BROW + VERB **lift, rise** | **twitch** | **draw together, snap together** *His brows snapped together ferociously when he heard the remark.*

2 forehead
- ADJ. **broad, wide** | **furrowed** *He stared at the visitors beneath a furrowed brow.* | **stern** | **weary** | **damp, perspiring, sweating** | **fevered**
- VERB + BROW **mop, wipe** | **furrow, pucker, wrinkle** *She wrinkled her brow thoughtfully.*
- BROW + VERB **crease, furrow, pucker, wrinkle** *His brow furrowed as he racked his brains over the question.* | **clear** *For a while she looked puzzled; then her brow cleared.* | **darken** *His brow darkened in anger.*
- PREP. **across your ~** *His shaggy grey hair fell loosely across his brow.* **from your ~** *She brushed back a stray lock of hair from her brow.* **over your ~** *His hair fell over his brow as he turned his head.*

brown *adj.*

- ADV. **very** *He looked very brown after his holiday.* | **quite, rather, slightly** | **uniformly** *The once-green fields were now uniformly brown.*
- ADJ. **dark, deep** *her dark brown eyes* | **light, pale, soft** | **rich, warm** *a lovely warm brown colour* | **bright** *monkeys with bright brown fur* | **drab, dull, muddy** | **chestnut, chocolate, golden, reddish, rusty**

⇨ Special page at COLOUR

browser *noun*

- ADJ. **web** | **default** *What do you use as your default browser?* | **frames-capable, frames-enabled**
- VERB + BROWSER **update, upgrade**
- BROWSER + VERB **support frames**
- BROWSER + NOUN **toolbar, window**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *Click the 'back' button on your browser.*

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

bruise *noun*

- ADJ. **black, dark, livid, purple** | **swollen**
- VERB + BRUISE **suffer** *She suffered only minor cuts and bruises.*
- BRUISE + VERB **form** *A bruise had formed below his left eye.* | **fade**

bruise *verb*

- ADV. **badly** *His face was quite badly bruised.* | **easily** *She has delicate skin and bruises easily.*

brunt *noun*

- ADJ. **full, main**
- VERB + BRUNT **bear, take** *The prime minister has taken the brunt of the criticism.*
- PREP. **the ~ of**

brush *noun*

- ADJ. **fine, soft, stiff** *Scrub the wood thoroughly with water and a stiff brush.* | **nylon, wire** | **clothes, lavatory, nail, pastry, scrubbing, shaving, toilet**
- VERB + BRUSH **apply sth with** *Apply the paint with a clean brush.* | **use, wield**
- BRUSH + NOUN **stroke** *The artist has used tiny brush strokes.*
- PREP. **with a/the ~** *Remove all the rust with a wire brush.*
- PHRASES **a brush and comb, a dustpan and brush**

brush *verb*

1 clean with a brush
- ADV. **down** *She hummed happily as she brushed down her coat.*
- PREP. **at** *Lucille brushed at the blood on his jacket.*
- PHRASES **brush sth clean**

2 touch lightly
- ADV. **gently, lightly** | **accidentally**
- PREP. **against** *She carefully avoided brushing against the man sitting beside her at the table.* **by** *She brushed by him and dashed up the stairs.* **past** *I hardly noticed the man who brushed past me in the corridor.* **with** *He brushed her lips with his.*

brutality *noun*

- ADJ. **extreme, great** | **police** *There have been many complaints of police brutality.*
- QUANT. **act** *This was an act of extreme brutality.*
- PREP. **~ against** *brutality against prisoners* **~ by** *brutality by the security forces* **~ to/towards** *brutality to others*

bubble *noun*

- ADJ. **air, soap**
- VERB + BUBBLE **blow** *children blowing bubbles* | **burst** *They jumped about, bursting the bubbles.*
- BUBBLE + VERB **form** *Soap bubbles formed on the surface.* | **burst**

bubble *verb*

1 form bubbles
- ADV. **furiously** *The water in the saucepan was bubbling furiously.* | **away, up** *The soup was bubbling away on the stove.*

2 feeling

- ADV. **to the surface** *Emotions quickly bubble to the surface.* | **over, up** *He was bubbling over with excitement.*
- PREP. **inside** *She could feel the anger bubbling up inside her.* **with** *The business was still small but I was bubbling with ideas.*

bucket *noun*

- ADJ. **empty, full | galvanized, metal, plastic | leaky | champagne, ice | water | slop, waste** *a slop bucket full of scraps of food* | **mop | coal | fire** *The sand had spilt from the fire bucket.*
- VERB + BUCKET **fill** *She filled the bucket with fresh water.* | **carry | empty, pour, throw** *She poured the bucket of dirty water down the drain.*
- BUCKET + VERB **be filled with/full of sth, contain sth, hold sth | overflow**
- PREP. **in a/the ~ | ~ of** *a bucket of oats for the horses*
- PHRASES **a bucket and spade** *The children ran down to the beach with their buckets and spades.* **mop and bucket** *The cleaner put down his mop and bucket and sat down.*

buckle *noun*

- ADJ. **belt, shoe**
- VERB + BUCKLE **do up, fasten | undo, unfasten**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

bud *noun*

- ADJ. **flower, leaf**
- VERB + BUD **be in, come into** *The roses are in bud.*
- BUD + VERB **burst, open**

Buddhism *noun*

- ADJ. **Zen** *She became interested in Zen Buddhism.*

⇨ Note at RELIGION (for verbs and phrases)

Buddhist *noun*

- ADJ. **devout**
- BUDDHIST + NOUN **beliefs, philosophy, teaching | monk**

budge *verb*

- VERB + BUDGE **refuse to, will/would not**
- PREP. **from** *He refuses to budge from his principles.* **on** *The union won't budge on its demand.*
- PHRASES **not budge an inch** *He threw all his weight against the door, but it wouldn't budge an inch.*

budget *noun*

- ADJ. **fixed, limited, low, shoestring, small, tight | generous, large | annual, monthly, weekly, yearly | family, personal | federal, government, municipal, national, state | defence, education, health, housing, military, social security, (social) welfare | advertising, marketing, training | draft**
- VERB + BUDGET **get, have** *The organization has a large annual budget.* | **allocate, draw up, plan, set** *The council has to draw up its budget for next year.* | **present, propose, submit | approve | balance** *The school has a struggle to balance its budget.* | **adhere to, keep to, stick to** *Work out a weekly budget and stick to it.* | **exceed, go over, overspend | cut, reduce, slash | increase**
- BUDGET + NOUN **expenditure | deficit, surplus | constraint, limit | cuts | plans, proposals | allocation | Budget Day** (= when the government announces its budget)
- PREP. **in the ~** *Is there any money left in the budget?* **below/under ~** *Costs have been held below budget.* **on (a) ~** *All his projects are on time and on budget.* ◇ *This hotel caters for people travelling on a tight budget.* **over ~** *The project is now well over budget.* **within ~** *to keep within budget* | **~ for** *The budget for next year has not yet been set.* **~ of** *a budget of $5 000*

budget *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, sensibly** *If we budget carefully we should be able to afford a holiday this year.*
- PREP. **for** *We have budgeted £10 000 for advertising.*

buffer *noun*

- VERB + BUFFER **act as | provide | use sth as**
- BUFFER + NOUN **state, zone**
- PREP. **~ against** *A family can provide a buffer against stress at work.* **~ between** *The organization acts as a buffer between the management and the union.*

buffet *noun*

1 on a train/in a station

- ADJ. **station**
- BUFFET + NOUN **bar, car, service**

2 meal

- ADJ. **delicious, excellent | extensive, generous | cold, salad | running** *The running buffet is available from 6 p.m. to 2 a.m.* | **finger, fork | lunchtime**
- VERB + BUFFET **serve** *A finger buffet will be served.* | **lay out** *A buffet was laid out for the conference delegates.*
- BUFFET + NOUN **breakfast, dinner, lunch, meal, supper | table | reception | style** *Breakfast is served buffet style.*

bug *noun*

1 infectious illness

- ADJ. **nasty | flu, stomach, tummy**
- VERB + BUG **have | catch, come/go down with, get, pick up**
- BUG + VERB **go around/round** *A stomach bug has been going round at school.* | **strike sb down**
- PREP. **with a/the ~** *off work with a flu bug*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

2 sudden interest in sth

- VERB + BUG **be bitten by, catch, get** *She's been bitten by the travel bug.*
- BUG + VERB **bite (sb)**

3 sth wrong in a system/machine

- ADJ. **minor, slight | computer, software**

buggy *noun*

- ADJ. **baby | beach, golf**
- VERB + BUGGY **push** *parents pushing baby buggies*

build *noun*

- ADJ. **average, medium | slight, slim, thin | heavy, muscular, powerful, stocky, strong, thickset | athletic**
- PREP. **in ~** *He's heavier in build than his brother.* **of ~** *She is slight of build and very agile.* **with a ~** *a small woman with a slim build*

builder *noun*

- ADJ. **good, reputable | jobbing, self-employed | local** *We got a local builder to do the work for us.*
- VERB + BUILDER **be apprenticed to**
- BUILDER + VERB **build sth**
- PHRASES **builder's merchant, builder's yard** *The house looked like a builder's yard, with stacks of bricks and piles of sand in the garden.*

⇨ Note at JOB

building *noun*

1 house, church, school, etc.

- ADJ. **big, high-rise, large, tall | low, single-storey, small | attractive, beautiful, fine, imposing, impressive, magnificent | crumbling, derelict, dilapidated, ramshackle, tumbledown | ancient, historic, old | seventeenth-century, etc. | listed** *They were refused planning permission for a modern extension because it was a Grade II listed building.* **| brick, concrete, stone, timber, wooden | industrial, public, residential | airport, apartment, church, factory, farm, headquarters, hospital, office, prison, school**
- VERB + BUILDING **build, erect, put up** *Several new buildings are now being put up.* **| demolish, destroy, flatten, gut, knock down, pull down, raze, tear down** *The building was gutted by fire.* **| damage | renovate, restore** *They're renovating the old farm buildings.*
- BUILDING + VERB **collapse**

2 process/business of building sth

- ADJ. **nest, road | empire, team**
- BUILDING + NOUN **business, company, contractor, firm, industry, sector, trade | programme, project, scheme | activity, development, work** *We're having some building work done.* **| controls, regulations | land, site | materials | boom | costs | worker**

build-up *noun*

1 gradual increase

- ADJ. **gradual, slow | steady | rapid | massive**
- VERB + BUILD-UP **cause, lead to** *The leak led to a slow build-up of carbon dioxide.* **| avoid, prevent**
- PREP. **during/in the~ | ~of**

2 period of time before an event

- ADJ. **pre-match, pre-trial, etc.**
- PREP. **~to** *Tension is mounting in the build-up to the elections.*

bulb *noun*

1 (*also* **light bulb**) part of an electric lamp

- ADJ. **electric | bare, naked, unshaded | 100-watt, 60-watt, etc. | bright, dim | bayonet-cap, ES | energy-efficient, energy-saving, long-life, low-energy | fluorescent | halogen | clear, coloured, pearl | flash** *My camera needs a new flash bulb.*
- VERB + BULB **change, replace** *Switch the light off before you change the bulb.* **| put in | remove, take out** *Can you take out the clear bulb and put a pearl one in?* **| switch on | take** *The fitting in the kitchen takes a fluorescent bulb.*
- BULB + VERB **light sth** *The room was lit only by a single 40-watt light bulb.* **| fail, go** *I think the bulb over the sink is going to go. It's been flickering all evening.* **| flicker | flash, go off** *Coloured bulbs flashed on and off around the sign.* ◇ *There was a startled look on his face when the flash bulb went off.* **| dangle, hang** *A single electric light bulb dangled from the ceiling.* **| last** *These low-energy bulbs last much longer than the ordinary ones.*
- PHRASES **by the light of a … bulb** *They sat reading by the light of a 40-watt bulb.* **the glow of a light bulb**

2 round plant root

- ADJ. **autumn, spring, spring-flowering, summer, summer-flowering | daffodil, hyacinth, tulip, etc. | garden, indoor | dwarf**
- VERB + BULB **place, plant, put in** *I'm putting in some bulbs for next year.* ◇ *Place the bulbs close together.* **| dig up, take up, uproot | grow | water** *She usually waters the indoor bulbs once a week.* **| force, treat** *These daffodils flower so early because the bulbs have been forced.*
- BULB + VERB **grow | flower | be over, go over** *The bulbs were over. All that remained of them were clumps of brown leaves.* **| increase** *Over the years the bulbs gradually increase.* **| sprout | shrivel** *Get the bulbs into the ground, or they will begin to shrivel.*

bulk *noun*

1 large size

- ADJ. **considerable, formidable, huge, massive, sheer** *I was amazed by the sheer bulk of the creature.* **| dark, looming, solid**
- VERB + BULK **ease, heave, shift** (used about people) *He heaved his considerable bulk into the chair.*

2 large amount

- ADJ. **great, large, overwhelming, vast**
- BULK + NOUN **buying, order, purchasing**
- PREP. **in ~** *Sugar is imported in bulk from the mainland.*
- PHRASES **the bulk of** (= most of) *The great bulk of the work has now been done.* **buy in bulk** *It's usually cheaper to buy in bulk.*

bullet *noun*

- ADJ. **live | stray | explosive | plastic, rubber | .45 calibre, etc. | machine-gun, rifle, tracer**
- VERB + BULLET **fire, spray sth with** *The embassy was sprayed with bullets.* **| shoot** (used of a gun) *faster than a machine-gun can shoot bullets* **| be riddled with** *The body was riddled with bullets.* **| put** *They had put a bullet through his brain.*
- BULLET + VERB **hit sb/sth, shoot sb, strike sb/sth** *The second bullet hit her in the back.* **| miss sb/sth** *The bullet missed his heart by less than an inch.* **| enter sb/sth | kill sb | be lodged, lodge** *Surgeons are trying to remove a bullet lodged near his spine.* **| go, pass | fly across, around, etc. sb/sth, rip through sb/sth, smash/thud into sb/sth, whistle past sb/sth** *A stray bullet whistled past his ear.* **| bounce, ricochet** *The bullets ricocheted off the stones.*
- BULLET + NOUN **hole | wound | scar**
- PREP. **~from** *It is a bullet from the same gun that killed the Italian.* **~ in/through** *The second bullet hit her in the back.*
- PHRASES **a hail/volley of bullets** *They died in a hail of bullets.* **a sniper's bullet** *She was shot through the head by a sniper's bullet.*

bulletin *noun*

1 short news report/official statement

- ADJ. **official | news, weather**
- VERB + BULLETIN **issue, put out, release** *The government will issue an official bulletin later this week.*
- PREP. **in a/the~** *More details will be given in our next news bulletin.* **| ~on** *a bulletin on the president's health*

2 short newspaper

- ADJ. **annual, monthly, quarterly, weekly**
- VERB + BULLETIN **produce, publish | read**
- PREP. **in a/the~** *The details are in the June bulletin.*

bully *noun*

- ADJ. **big, real** *Leave him alone, you big bully!* ◇ *He's a real bully!* **| class, playground, school**

bum *noun*

1 person's bottom

- VERB + BUM **feel, pinch** *A man pinched her bum on the train so she hit him.* **| sit on** *They've been sitting on their bums all day, doing nothing.*

2 lazy/useless person

- ADJ. **low-down, no-good | lazy | beach** *He dropped out of college and became a beach bum.*

bump *noun*

1 sudden strong blow

• ADJ. **loud | slight**

• PREP. **with a ~** *We landed with a loud bump.*

2 lump on the body

• ADJ. **big | little, small**

• VERB + BUMP **have | get**

• PREP. **~ on** *He got a nasty bump on his head.*

3 lump in a flat surface

• VERB + BUMP **hit** *We hit a bump and the car swerved.*

• PREP. **~ in** *a bump in the road*

bump *verb*

• ADV. **accidentally**

• PREP. **against** *I ran after her, bumping against people in my rush.* **into** *I bumped into the corner of a table as I left.* **on** *I bumped my head on the door frame.*

bumper *noun*

• ADJ. **front | back, rear**

• PHRASES **bumper to bumper** *The cars crawled along bumper to bumper* (= very close to each other).

bun *noun*

1 small round cake

• ADJ. **fresh | stale | cinnamon, cream, currant, hot cross, iced, sticky | hamburger**

• VERB + BUN **eat, have | bake, make**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

2 hair fastened in a round shape

• ADJ. **neat, severe, tight | loose**

• PREP. **in a ~** *a woman with her hair in a loose bun*

• PHRASES **pull/draw your hair back in(to) a bun** *Her black hair was drawn back into a neat bun.* **tie your hair (back) in a bun, wear your hair in a bun**

bunch *noun*

1 things fastened/growing together

• ADJ. **big, huge, large | small**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *She put all the flowers together in one big bunch.* | **~ of** *He gave me a huge bunch of red roses.*

2 group of people

• ADJ. **mixed, motley**

• PREP. **~ of** *They are a bunch of amateurs.*

bundle *noun*

• ADJ. **big, large, thick** *carrying a thick bundle of clothes*

• VERB + BUNDLE **tie sth (up) in, wrap sth (up) in** *He tied his belongings up in a bundle and left.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *The papers are in a bundle on my desk.* | **~ of** *a bundle of newspapers*

bungalow *noun*

• ADJ. **two-bedroom/two-bedroomed, etc. | detached, semi-detached | suburban | ranch-type | modern | holiday, retirement**

burden *noun*

1 responsibility/worry

• ADJ. **great, heavy, onerous | crippling, intolerable | administrative, economic, financial, tax**

• VERB + BURDEN **bear, carry** *The manager carries the greatest burden of responsibility.* | **assume, shoulder, take on** *She had to shoulder the burden of childcare.* | **impose, place** *His illness placed an intolerable burden on his family.* | **increase | ease, lighten, reduce, relieve | lift, remove** *The administrative burden must be lifted from local government.* | **shift** *plans to shift the burden of taxation onto larger companies* | **share** *I need to share my burden with someone.*

• BURDEN + VERB **fall on sb/sth** *The economic burden falls mainly on businesses.*

• PREP. **~ for** *a burden for the whole family* **~ of** *the burden of high taxation* **~ on/upon** *easing the financial burden on families* **~ to** *She felt she was a burden to her parents.*

• PHRASES **the burden of proof** (*law*) (= the responsibility of proving that sth is true) *The burden of proof falls on the prosecution: the accused is presumed innocent until proved guilty.* **have a burden on your shoulders** *He has the burden of a large family on his shoulders.* **lift a burden from sb's shoulders**

2 heavy load

• VERB + BURDEN **carry** *The women carried their burdens on their backs.* | **pick up | lay down, put down**

• PHRASES **a beast of burden** (= an animal used to do heavy work such as pulling or carrying things)

bureau *noun*

• ADJ. **citizen's advice, employment, information, missing persons | government, press**

• VERB + BUREAU **contact, go to**

• BUREAU + VERB **deal with sth, handle sth** *The information bureau handles millions of enquiries each year.*

• BUREAU + NOUN **staff**

• PREP. **at a/the ~** *You can get more information at your local citizen's advice bureau.* **in a/the ~** *She had a friend in the press bureau.*

bureaucracy *noun*

1 administrative system

• ADJ. **vast | government, state**

2 official rules and procedures

• ADJ. **cumbersome, excessive, unnecessary**

• VERB + BUREAUCRACY **cut out, eliminate, reduce** *The organization has promised to eliminate cumbersome and unnecessary bureaucracy.* | **increase**

bureaucrat *noun*

• ADJ. **faceless** *He was just another faceless bureaucrat.* | **unelected | high-ranking, senior | career** *battles between political appointees and career bureaucrats* | **state | party**

bureaucratic *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become**

• ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *The organization is highly bureaucratic.* | **rather, somewhat | unnecessarily**

burglar *noun*

• ADJ. **professional | cat** (= a burglar who climbs up the outside of buildings) | **suspected**

• VERB + BURGLAR **hunt** (*informal*) *Police are hunting burglars who stole property worth £3 500.* | **catch**

• BURGLAR + VERB **break in** *The burglar had broken in through a window.* | **steal sth | strike** *Burglars had already struck twice that week in their road.*

• BURGLAR + NOUN **alarm**

burglary *noun*

• ADJ. **attempted | aggravated** (*law*) (= burglary involving further violence or unpleasant behaviour) | **house**

• BURGLARY + VERB **happen, take place**

• PREP. **~ at** *Audio equipment was stolen in a burglary at a house in Main Road.*

⇨ Note at CRIME (for more verbs)

burial *noun*

- ADJ. **decent, proper | Christian, etc.**
- VERB + BURIAL **give sb** *We want to give him a decent Christian burial.* | **attend, be present at, go to**
- BURIAL + VERB **take place**
- BURIAL + NOUN **chamber, ground/grounds, mound, place, plot, site, vault** *disturbing an ancient burial site* | **ceremony, rites, service**
- PREP. **for ~** *His body was returned home for burial.* | **~ in** *preventing the body's burial in consecrated ground*

burn *noun*

- ADJ. **horrific, nasty, serious, severe, terrible | minor, slight | first-/second-/third-degree | cigarette**
- VERB + BURN **suffer | die from/of | treat, treat sb for**
- BURN + NOUN **mark**
- PHRASES **20, 50, etc. per cent burns** *He was treated in hospital for 60 per cent burns.*

burn *verb*

1 damage/injure by fire/heat

- ADV. **badly, seriously, severely | completely** *The car was found abandoned in a wood, completely burnt out.* | **partially, partly | easily** *fair skin that burns easily* | **ceremonially** *Bishop Tunstall preached a sermon against the book, after which copies were ceremonially burnt.* | **down, out** *The factory burned down last year.*
- PHRASES **be burnt alive, be burnt to ashes/a cinder/a crisp** *I like my steak burnt to a cinder on the outside and blood red and juicy inside.* **burn/be burnt to death** *Several people were burnt to death.* **be burnt to the ground** *The building was burnt to the ground.*

2 be on fire

- ADV. **fiercely** *The fire was still burning fiercely.* | **steadily | slowly** *Fresh leaves will burn slowly with billows of smoke.*

3 produce light

- ADV. **brightly** *Their torches burnt brightly in the dark.*

4 be filled with strong feeling

- ADV. **fiercely** *Her eyes burned fiercely.* | **slowly** *She could sense the anger burning slowly inside him.*
- PREP. **with** *He was burning with indignation.*

burrow *verb*

- ADV. **deep | away, down** *He switched off the bedside lamp and burrowed down beneath the bedclothes.*
- PREP. **beneath/under** *Rabbits had burrowed under the fence.* **into** *Earthworms burrow deep into the subsoil.* **through** *worms that burrow through dead wood*
- PHRASES **burrow your way** *Ivy had burrowed its way through the walls.*

bursary *noun*

- ADJ. **sports, travel**
- VERB + BURSARY **award sb, offer sb, provide sb with**

burst *noun*

- ADJ. **short** *a short burst of energy* | **sudden** *a sudden burst of enthusiasm* | **rapid** *a rapid burst of gunfire* | **intense** *an intense burst of anger*
- PREP. **in ~s** *He works in short bursts.* | **~ of**

burst *verb*

- ADV. **suddenly | apart** *The ship was burst apart and its crew blasted to pieces.*
- VERB + BURST **be about to, be going to, be ready to** *My whole head felt like a ripe tomato, ready to burst.*
- PREP. **with** (*figurative*) *He felt he would burst with anger.*

PHRASAL VERB

burst into sth

- ADV. **suddenly | immediately, instantly, promptly** *She took one look at the mess and promptly burst into tears.*
- VERB + BURST INTO STH **be about to, be going to, be ready to** *He was just about to burst into song.*

bury *verb*

1 dead person

- PHRASES **be dead and buried** *Those people are now all dead and buried.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Their ambitions were finally dead and buried.* **bury sb alive**

2 hide in the ground

- ADV. **deep | underground** *The waste is buried deep underground.*

3 cover

- ADV. **completely** *a fallen tree trunk almost completely buried in the long grass*
- PHRASES **be buried alive** *The miners were buried alive when the tunnel collapsed.* **be/get buried beneath/under sth** *The building was now buried under three metres of soil.* ◇ *Your letter got buried under a pile of papers.*

4 put sth deeply into sth

- ADV. **deep/deeply** *He slumped forward, the knife buried deep in his chest.* ◇ (*figurative*) *her deeply buried pain*
- PHRASES **lie/remain buried** (*often figurative*) *The king is dead and lies buried at Jedburgh Abbey.* ◇ *What secrets lie buried in the past?*

bus *noun*

- ADJ. **regular** *There are regular buses to the city centre.* | **double-decker, open-topped | last** *I missed the last bus and had to walk.* | **airport, local, school, sightseeing, tourist**
- VERB + BUS **go by, go on, take, travel by, use | wait for** *I waited 40 minutes for a bus.* | **run for** *I left work a bit late and had to run for my bus.* | **catch, get | miss | board, get on/onto | get off | drive**
- BUS + VERB **go, run** *Local buses run regularly to and from the nearest town.* | **arrive, come | pull up, stop** *The bus pulled up and we got on.* ◇ *The buses stop outside the post office.* | **pick sb up** *The double-decker bus stopped to pick up some more passengers.* | **go from, leave (from)** *Buses leave from here every hour or so.* | **carry sb** *a bus carrying 56 passengers*
- BUS + NOUN **times, timetable** *Look up the bus times in the local timetable.* | **route | lane | depot, shelter, station, stop | queue | journey** *a short bus journey to work* | **conductor, driver, passenger | fare | pass, ticket | company, service**
- PREP. **by ~** *It's about 15 minutes away by bus.* **on a/the ~** *people travelling on buses* | **~ for** *Is this the bus for Oxford?* **~ from, ~ to** *We took the bus from Reading to Bristol.*

bush *noun*

1 plant

- ADJ. **gorse, rose, thorn, etc. | prickly, scrubby**
- QUANT. **clump** *a large clump of rose bushes*
- VERB + BUSH **plant | prune** *to prune the rose bushes*
- BUSH + VERB **grow**
- PREP. **among/in the ~es** *She was hiding in the bushes at the side of the lane.*

2 wild land in Africa/Australia

- ADJ. **dense, thick | native** *hills that have become a wasteland after the removal of native bush*
- BUSH + NOUN **fire**
- PREP. **in/into the ~** *going out into the bush*

business *noun*

1 buying and selling of goods

- ADJ. **big** | **profitable** | **private** | **core** *It's time to focus on the company's core business.* | **retail, wholesale** | **catering, computer, investment, etc.**
- VERB + BUSINESS **carry on** (*often law*), **conduct, do, transact** *a company that has ceased to carry on business* ◇ *He's someone I can do business with* (= that I find it easy/pleasant to do business with). | **work in** *She works in the computer business.* | **go into, set up in** | **go out of** *The firm went out of business during the recession.* | **put sb/sth out of** *The new regulations will put many small firms out of business.*
- BUSINESS + NOUN **deal, transaction** | **meeting** | **lunch** | **trip** | **community** | **executive, manager, partner** | **contact** | **affairs, interests, matters** | **investment** | **secret** *protecting business secrets* | **plan** | **acumen** | **card** | **hours** *You can call the helpline during normal business hours.* | **school** | **studies** | **park** *The company's offices are located in the new business park out of town.*
- PREP. **in~** *He's in business.* ◇ *What business are you in?* ◇ (*figurative*) *All we need is a car and we'll be in business* (= we'll have everything we need to start what we want to do). **on~** *going to Paris on business*
- PHRASES **business as usual** (= things will continue as normal in spite of a difficult situation) *It's business as usual at the factory, even while investigators sift through the bomb wreckage.* **business or pleasure** *Is the trip to Rome business or pleasure?* **mix business with pleasure** *When I travel abroad I like to mix business with pleasure.* **a place of business**

2 amount of trade done

- ADJ. **brisk, good** *Business was brisk and they had sold out by midday.* | **bad, slack, slow**
- VERB + BUSINESS **drum up, generate** *She's in Europe drumming up business for her new company.* | **tout for** *insurance salesmen touting for business* | **lose** *We're losing business to our main rivals.*
- BUSINESS + VERB **boom** *Business is booming for estate agents in the south as the property market hots up.* | **pick up** *After a slack period business is now picking up.*

3 firm/shop

- ADJ. **large, medium-sized, small** | **family** | **international, local** | **private** | **state-owned** | **profitable, successful** | **mail order, retail, wholesale**
- VERB + BUSINESS **have, own** | **manage, run** *It was always my dream to run my own business.* | **set up, start** *They decided to start their own business.* | **build up** *We built up the business from nothing.* | **work in** *He works in the family business.* | **take over** | **expand, grow** *We are looking to grow the business over the next couple of years.* | **join, leave**
- BUSINESS + VERB **do/go well, take off** *After six months the business really took off.* | **expand, grow** *The business is expanding fast.* | **collapse, fail**
- BUSINESS + NOUN **assets, premises** | **failure**

⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION

4 work/responsibility

- ADJ. **daily**
- VERB + BUSINESS **go about** *market traders going about their daily business* | **make sth** *I shall make it my business to find out who is responsible.*
- PHRASES **have no business doing sth/to do sth** *You have no business* (= no right) *being here.* **mind your own business** (= think about your own affairs and not try to get involved in other people's) *'What are you reading?' 'Mind your own business!'* ◇ *I was just sitting there, minding my own business, when a man started shouting at me.* **none of your business/no business of yours** *My private life is none of your business* (= does not concern you).

5 important matters

- ADJ. **private** | **important, pressing, urgent** | **unfinished** *We've got some unfinished business to discuss.*
- VERB + BUSINESS **get down to** *OK, let's get down to business.* | **deal with, discuss, talk** *I'm not going to talk business tonight.*
- PHRASES **any other business** (= items discussed at the end of a meeting) *I think we've finished item four. Now, is there any other business?*

6 situation/event

- ADJ. **whole** *I'll be glad when the whole business is over and done with.* | **awful, bad, dreadful, terrible** *It was an awful business—he couldn't work for months.* | **funny, strange**

businesslike *adj.*

- VERBS **be, sound** | **become** | **remain** | **keep sth** *I'd rather keep the relationship strictly businesslike.*
- ADV. **very** *a very businesslike manner* | **strictly** | **quite**

businessman, businesswoman *noun*

- ADJ. **leading, prominent, successful** | **astute, clever, good, shrewd** | **millionaire, wealthy** | **small** *an association of small businessmen* (= who run small businesses) | **local** *charities supported by local businessmen* | **retired**

busy *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem** | **become, get** | **keep, remain** *She needed to keep busy.* | **keep sb** *I've got enough work to keep you busy.*
- ADV. **awfully, extremely, really, terribly, very** | **exceptionally, particularly** | **desperately, frantically** | **a bit, fairly, pretty, quite, rather** | **constantly**
- PREP. **with** *She was busy with her make-up.*

butcher *noun*

- ADJ. **local** | **halal, kosher** | **master**

⇨ Note at JOB

butter *noun*

- ADJ. **fresh** | **rancid** | **melted** *Brush the pastry with a little melted butter.* | **clarified** | **salted, unsalted** | **brandy, cocoa, garlic, herb, peanut**
- QUANT. **knob, pat, slab** *He put a large knob of butter on the potatoes.*
- VERB + BUTTER **put on, spread (sth with)** *Put some butter on the crackers, please.* ◇ *He spread butter on the roll.* | **heat, melt, soften** | **beat (in), cream, mix, rub in** *Cream the butter and icing sugar together until light and fluffy.* ◇ *Rub the butter into the flour.* | **make**
- BUTTER + VERB **spread** *This butter doesn't spread very well.* | **melt** *The butter melted in the heat.*
- BUTTER + NOUN **sauce** | **dish, knife**
- PREP. **in~** *courgettes sautéed in butter*
- PHRASES **bread and butter**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

butter *verb*

- ADV. **generously, thickly** | **lightly** *lightly buttered toast*

butterfly *noun*

1 insect

- VERB + BUTTERFLY **collect**
- BUTTERFLY + VERB **flit, flutter, fly** | **emerge** *The butterfly emerged from the pupa.*
- BUTTERFLY + NOUN **wing**

2 swimming stroke

⇨ Note at STROKE

BUSINESS

Starting out ...

set up	**launch**
an agency	an advertising campaign
a branch	an initiative
a company	an operation
a firm	a product
in business	a programme
an organization	a project
a project	a scheme
a venture	a takeover bid

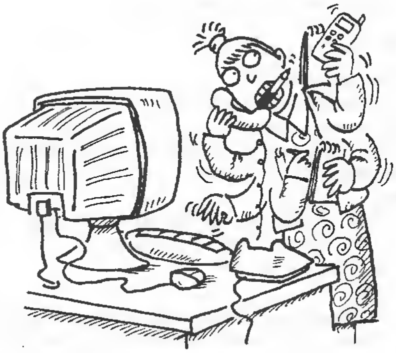

operating at full capacity

Now we're in business ...

do	**make**	**manage**	**operate**	**run**
the accounts	an appointment	a business	at full capacity	an airline
business	a bargain	a company	an airline	a bar
the catering	cutbacks	demand	a company	a business
a deal	a deal	the economy	a flight	a campaign
the marketing	an investment	a factory	the railways	a company
the paperwork	a killing	the finances		the economy
some research	a loan	a firm		a factory
the stocktaking	money	the funds		the finances
	a profit	a restaurant		a restaurant
	a transaction	a team		

Doing well ...

boost		**generate**	
demand	spending	capital	profit
the economy	takings	cash	publicity
employment	tourism	demand	revenue
production	trade	employment	
profits	turnover	income	

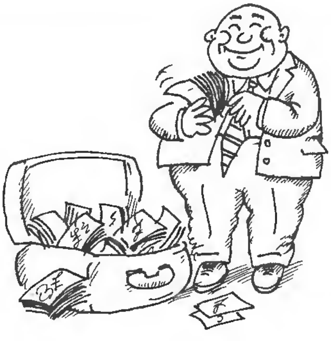

making a fat profit

... and not so well ...

a company goes under/goes to the wall
a deal falls apart/falls through
the euro falls to a new low
growth slows
negotiations break down
profits plummet/plunge
recession looms
sales are down
shares plummet/plunge

buttock *noun*

- ADJ. **firm** | **plump, rounded** | **scrawny**

button *noun*

1 for fastening clothes

- ADJ. **bottom, top** *The top button of his shirt was undone.* | **coat, shirt, etc.**
- VERB + BUTTON **do up, fasten** | **undo, unfasten** | **fumble with** | **lose** *My coat has lost a button.* | **rip off** | **sew on**
- BUTTON + VERB **be missing, come off, pop (off)** *There was a button missing from his shirt.*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

2 small switch

- ADJ. **on, start/starter** | **off, stop** | **control** | **fast forward, pause, play, rewind** | **alarm, panic** *She hit the alarm button as fast as she could.* | **mouse** | **self-destruct** (*often figurative*)
- VERB + BUTTON **click (on)** (*computing*), **depress, hit, hold down, press, push** *Click the left mouse button twice.* | **keep your finger on** | **release, take your finger off**
- PHRASES **at the touch of a button** *The remote control allows you to change channel at the touch of a button.*

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

buy *verb*

- ADV. **cheaply** *Old bikes can be bought quite cheaply.*
- VERB + BUY **can/can't afford to**
- PREP. **for** *He bought a car for his daughter.* ◇ *I bought it for £25.* **from** *I bought some books from a friend.*
- PHRASES **buy and sell** *She makes her living buying and selling antiques.* **money can/can't buy** *It's the best that money can buy.* ◇ *There are some things money can't buy.*

buyer *noun*

- ADJ. **potential, prospective** | **first-time** *The houses are small and inexpensive, ideal for first-time buyers.*
- VERB + BUYER **have** | **find, get** *They quickly found a buyer for their house.* | **sell sth to**
- PREP. **~for** *Have you got a buyer for your house yet?*
- PHRASES **buyer beware** *In matters of second-hand cars, your motto should be 'buyer beware'* (= the buyer is responsible for checking the quality of the goods). **a buyer's market** *In a buyer's market, the commodity is plentiful and so its price is not high.*

buzz *noun*

- ADJ. **a high/high-pitched** | **low** | **loud** | **angry** *the angry buzz of a wasp* | **background** *the background buzz of conversation*
- VERB + BUZZ **hear**
- PREP. **~of** (*figurative*) *I love the buzz* (= excitement) *of a big city.*
- PHRASES **a buzz of conversation, a buzz of excitement** *There was a buzz of excitement all round the room.*

buzzer *noun*

- VERB + BUZZER **press, sound** *Press the buzzer when you want to talk.*
- BUZZER + VERB **go (off), sound** *The buzzer went off at eight o'clock.*

bypass *noun*

- QUANT. **stretch** *That stretch of bypass will be finished by January.*
- VERB + BYPASS **build**
- PREP. **along a/the ~** *speeding along the bypass* **on a/the ~** *the traffic on the bypass* **round a/the ~** *We drove round the bypass to the airport.* | **~around/round** *building a new bypass around the town*

Cc

cab *noun*

- ADJ. **black, yellow** *London black cab drivers* | **taxi** | **hackney, hansom** | **horse-drawn**
- VERB + CAB **go by, take** *Let's take a cab.* | **call (sb), get (sb), order (sb), phone for** *I'll call you a cab.* | **find** *We couldn't find a cab anywhere near.* | **catch, hail** *I tried to hail a cab but none of them would stop.* | **get into/out of** | **drive** | **pay for/off** | **share** *We decided to share a cab.*
- CAB + VERB **draw up, pull up** *The cab pulled up and they got out.* | **pick sb up, take sb** *I ordered a cab to take him home.*
- CAB + NOUN **driver** | **rank** | **fare** | **ride**
- PREP. **by ~** *I came by cab.* **in a/the ~** *The driver was sitting in his cab.*
- PHRASES **the back of a cab** *I left my umbrella in the back of the cab.*

cabbage *noun*

- ADJ. **green, red, white** | **savoy, spring** | **boiled, pickled, raw**
- VERB + CABBAGE **eat, have** | **boil, cook, prepare** | **chop, shred**
- CABBAGE + NOUN **leaf** | **patch**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

cabinet *noun*

1 (usually **Cabinet**) in government

- ADJ. **full** *There was a meeting of the full Cabinet this afternoon.* | **inner** *The inner Cabinet is to meet again today.* | **shadow** (= the most important members of the opposition party) | **war**
- VERB + CABINET **appoint, choose, form** | **enlarge, expand** | **reshuffle** *The prime minister reshuffled* (= changed) *his Cabinet yesterday.* | **enter, join** | **leave, quit** | **consult** | **force** *The defeat in the vote forced the Cabinet to change its policy on immigration.* | **persuade, urge**
- CABINET + VERB **meet** | **discuss sth**
- CABINET + NOUN **member, minister** | **meeting** | **reshuffle** *The affair led to a mid-term Cabinet reshuffle* (= when the prime minister/president changes some of the people in the Cabinet).

2 cupboard

- ADJ. **glass/glass-fronted** | **bathroom, bedside, kitchen** | **medicine** | **china, display, trophy** *a glass-fronted china cabinet* | **cocktail, drinks** | **filing** | **storage**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Past reports are kept in the filing cabinet in my office.*

cable *noun*

- ADJ. **electric, telephone** | **overhead, underground** | **fibre-optic**
- QUANT. **length** *a length of electric cable*
- VERB + CABLE **lay, run** *Roads have to be dug up to lay underground cables.* ◇ *Engineers plan to run the telephone cables under the river.* | **connect** *Connect the cable to the correct terminal.*
- CABLE + VERB **go, run** *a cable running under the road* | **connect sth** *new cables connecting major cities in Europe* | **carry sth** *These fibre-optic cables can carry telephone calls and computer data.*

cackle *noun*

- VERB + CACKLE **give, let out** *The old woman gave a cackle of laughter.* | **hear**
- PHRASES **a cackle of laughter**

cackle *verb*

- ADV. **loudly, wildly** *He cackled wildly at the thought.*
- PREP. **with** *to cackle with delight/glee/laughter/mirth/pleasure*

cadet *noun*

- ADJ. **army, military, naval, police** | **officer** *The military academy trains up to 2 000 officer cadets each year.*
- VERB + CADET **train**
- CADET + NOUN **corps**

cafe *noun*

- ADJ. **pavement, transport**
- VERB + CAFE **go to** | **manage, run** | **own**
- CAFE + VERB **serve sth** *a pavement cafe serving drinks and light meals*
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

cake *noun*

- ADJ. **home-made** | **moist, rich, sticky** *a rich, moist fruit cake* | **apple, carrot, chocolate, cream, fruit, seed, sponge** | **layer, sandwich** | **birthday, Christmas, wedding** *I blew out the candles on my birthday cake.*
- QUANT. **bit, piece, slice** *He cut her a slice of cake.*
- VERB + CAKE **eat, have** | **bake, make** | **decorate, ice, spread with sth** *Spread the cake with the butter cream.* | **cut** *Everyone cheered as the bride and groom cut the wedding cake.*
- CAKE + NOUN **crumbs** *She brushed some cake crumbs off her lap.* | **recipe** | **mix, mixture** *a packet of cake mix* ◇ *Pour the cake mixture into a greased and lined tin.* | **board, tin** | **shop, stall, stand**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

calculate *verb*

1 work out a number, etc.

- ADV. **accurately, exactly**
- PREP. **according to** *The amount is calculated according to the number of years you have paid into the scheme.* **at** *The sum involved was calculated at $82 million.*

2 guess

- ADV. **carefully, shrewdly** | **correctly** *He correctly calculated that the others would not dare fight back.*

calculating *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **coldly, coolly** *She caught a coolly calculating glint in the other woman's eye.*
- PHRASES **cold and calculating** *He has a cold and calculating mind.*

calculation *noun*

1 act of calculating/sum calculated

- ADJ. **accurate, correct, exact, precise** *an exact calculation of the amount spent so far* ◇ *If your calculations are correct, then we will make a large profit.* | **incorrect, wrong** *It turned out that our calculations were incorrect.* |

approximate, rough *Even a rough calculation shows that you have spent too much.* | **complex, detailed** | **simple** | **quick, rapid** | **arithmetical, mathematical** | **economic, financial**

- VERB + CALCULATION **do, make** *She did a rapid calculation in her head.* ◇ *We cannot make a precise calculation of the price until we have all the costs.*
- PHRASES **a method of calculation**

2 careful planning to get what you want

- ADJ. **cold, cool**
- QUANT. **act** *an act of cold calculation*

calculator *noun*

- ADJ. **desk, hand-held, pocket** | **electronic, programmable** | **advanced** *Exam candidates are not allowed to use advanced calculators with database capability.*
- CALCULATOR + NOUN **display**

calendar *noun*

- ADJ. **busy, full** *The group has a busy sporting calendar.* | **golfing, racing, social, sporting, etc.**
- PREP. **in/on a/the ~** *the most important event in the year's golfing calendar*

calf *noun*

- ADJ. **bull, heifer** | **beef, dairy, veal** | **weaned**
- VERB + CALF **produce** *A dairy cow needs to produce a calf each year.* | **rear** *These calves are reared for beef.* | **graze** *The calves are grazed intensively during their first season.*
- CALF + VERB **graze, suckle**
- PREP. **in/with ~** *Their prize cow is in calf* (= pregnant).

call *noun*

1 on the telephone

- ADJ. **phone/telephone** | **long** | **quick, short** *I'll just make a quick phone call.* | **local** | **international, long-distance, trunk** | **direct-dialled** | **incoming** | **outgoing** | **emergency** | **anonymous, hoax, nuisance, obscene, unsolicited** | **wake-up** *I ordered a wake-up call for 6.30 the next morning.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Last night's defeat should be a wake-up call for the team.*
- VERB + CALL **give sb, make, place** *Give us a call to say when you have arrived.* ◇ *She asked her secretary to place a call through to England.* | **get, have, receive** | **answer, take** *I'll take the call upstairs.* | **return** *I left a message but he didn't return my call.* | **put through, transfer** *Ask the receptionist to put your call through to my room.*
- CALL + NOUN **box**
- PREP. **~for** *Were there any calls for me while I was out?* **~from** *You had a call from Fred.* **~to** *I made a call to a friend in London.*

2 sound to attract attention

- ADJ. **loud** | **distinctive** *the distinctive call of the cuckoo* | **plaintive** *the bird's plaintive call* | **distress** | **bird** | **clarion, rallying** (*both figurative*) *This election is a clarion call for our country to face the challenges of the new era.*
- VERB + CALL **let out** | **hear**
- PREP. **~for** *a call for help*

3 short visit

- ADJ. **business, courtesy, social**
- VERB + CALL **make, pay (sb)** *The doctor has several calls to make this morning.*
- PREP. **on a ~** *She's out on a call.* | **~on** *Her first call was on the local library.*
- PHRASES **first/last/next port of call** *Our first port of call* (= the first place we went to) *was the chemist's.*

4 request/demand

- ADJ. **renewed, repeated** | **last** *This is the last call for passengers travelling on British Airways flight 199 to Rome.* | **strike**
- VERB + CALL **issue** | **renew** *Drink-drive campaigners have renewed their call for the introduction of random breath tests.* | **answer, heed, respond to** *Around 10 000 workers heeded the union's strike call.* | **reject**
- PREP. **~for** *The charity issued a call for donations to assist victims of the earthquake.*
- PHRASES **a call to arms** (= a strong request for people to fight in the army) (*figurative*) *The president's speech was a call to arms to restore the vitality of the American dream.*

call *verb*

- ADV. **commonly** | **originally** | **collectively** *a range of very small organisms, collectively called nanoplankton* | **variously** *a plant variously called 'cow parsley' and 'Queen Anne's lace'* | **aptly** | **quaintly** | **euphemistically** *The prison is euphemistically called a 'rehabilitation centre'.*
- PREP. **by** *We usually call him by his nickname.*

calm *noun*

1 peaceful situation/manner/feeling

- ADJ. **apparent** *Under his apparent calm lay real anxiety.* | **inner** *the pursuit of inner calm* | **uneasy** | **forced, studied** *With a forced calm she said, 'How do you know?'* | **dead** *She felt not fear, but a kind of dead calm.* | **deadly, icy** *'I'm calling the police,' he stated with deadly calm.*
- VERB + CALM **appeal for, call for** *The government appealed for calm after the riots broke out.*
- CALM + VERB **descend, settle** *After the bomb, an uneasy calm settled on the city.*
- PHRASES **a period of calm**

2 at sea

- ADJ. **dead, flat** *Seals basked on boulders in a flat calm.*

calm *adj.*

1 not worried or angry

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** *I may have appeared calm, but I certainly did not feel it!* | **become** | **keep, remain, stay** *Sit down and keep calm!* ◇ *The pilot urged the passengers to remain calm.* | **keep sb** *Keep the patient calm.*
- ADV. **extremely, remarkably, very** *You seem remarkably calm.* | **completely, perfectly, utterly** *Her voice was firm and perfectly calm.* | **fairly, pretty, quite** | **apparently, outwardly** | **curiously, strangely** *The pain had receded and he felt curiously calm.* | **reassuringly** *The voice sounded reassuringly calm.*
- PREP. **about** *She seemed pretty calm about it.*
- PHRASES **cool, calm and collected** *He remained at all times cool, calm and collected.*

2 not rough or stormy

- VERBS **be, look** | **become**
- ADV. **absolutely, dead, flat, perfectly** *The sea was dead calm.* ◇ *flat calm conditions* | **fairly, quite, relatively**

calorie *noun*

- ADJ. **empty** *Sweets and biscuits have a lot of empty calories in them.*
- VERB + CALORIE **contain, have** | **consume, eat** | **burn (off)** *You need to exercise more to burn off the calories.* | **count, watch** *Some people count calories all their lives.* ◇ *I'm trying to watch my calories at the moment.*
- CALORIE + NOUN **content, intake** *foods with a high calorie content*
- PHRASES **high/low calorie** *a low calorie drink* **high/low in calories** *Fruit is relatively low in calories.*

camera *noun*

- ADJ. **3D, automatic, box, cine, closed-circuit, digital, electronic, infra-red, microfilm, movie, pinhole, polaroid, SLR, television/TV, underwater, video** | **compact** | **security, surveillance** | **hand-held, mobile** | **candid**
- VERB + CAMERA **focus, point** *Simply point your camera at the subject and press the button.* | **pose for** *The royal couple posed for the cameras.* | **brave, face** *He couldn't bring himself to face the cameras and left by a back exit.* | **mount** *The film was taken by a camera mounted on a hang-glider.* | **install** *Closed-circuit cameras have been installed throughout the building.* | **set up** *The crews have been setting up their cameras.* | **load**
- CAMERA + VERB **film sth** | **catch sth** *The camera has caught the expression on the Queen's face beautifully.* | **focus on** | **roll** *The director gave the signal and the cameras rolled.* | **click** *She stepped onto the balcony and a thousand cameras clicked.*
- CAMERA + NOUN **crew, team** | **assistant** | **bag, equipment, lens, tripod** | **angle, position** | **work**
- PREP. **in front of the ~s** *He played his first match at Everton in front of the TV cameras.* **off ~** *The incident occurred off camera* (= was not filmed). **on ~** *The moment was caught on camera.*

camouflage *noun*

- ADJ. **effective, excellent, good, perfect** | **protective** | **army** *He was wearing army camouflage.*
- VERB + CAMOUFLAGE **act as, provide** *The animal's markings provide effective camouflage.* | **wear**

camouflage *verb*

- PREP. **with** *They camouflaged their truck with fallen pine branches.*
- PHRASES **be carefully/heavily/well camouflaged** *The vehicles were all well camouflaged.*

camp *noun*

1 in tents/huts

- ADJ. **makeshift, temporary** | **holiday, summer** | **base** *The mountaineers set up their base camp at the foot of the mountain.* | **transit** | **gypsy, travellers'** | **army, military** | **training**
- VERB + CAMP **make, pitch, set up** *We pitched camp just outside the woods.* | **break, strike** *We broke camp early the next morning.* | **leave**
- CAMP + NOUN **fire** (also **campfire**) *sitting round the campfire* **site** (also **campsite**)
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *The children are spending a week at a summer camp.*

2 prison, etc.

- ADJ. **concentration, detention, internment, labour, prison, prisoner-of-war** | **death, extermination** | **refugee** *the appalling conditions in the refugee camps*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She spent five years in a labour camp.*

3 group with shared beliefs

- ADJ. **hostile, opposing, rebel, rival** | **ideological, political** | **armed** *The region split into two armed camps.*
- VERB + CAMP **switch** *a politician who switches camp when it suits him* | **divide into, split into**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *people in both main political camps*
- PHRASES **have a foot in both camps** (= show loyalty to two different groups) *He can unite the party because he has a foot in both camps.*

campaign *noun*

- ADJ. **big, huge, major, massive** | **lengthy, long, long-running, sustained** | **brief** | **effective, successful** | **unsuccessful** | **determined, intensive, strong, vigorous** | **bitter, fierce, vicious** | **concerted, orchestrated** *a carefully orchestrated campaign against striking workers* | **joint** | **official, public** | **local, international, national, nationwide, worldwide** | **one-man/one-woman, personal** *She has fought a one-woman campaign for ten years about the lack of childcare provision in the town.* | **election, electoral, leadership, political, presidential, re-election, referendum** | **advertising, marketing, promotional, sales** | **propaganda, publicity, public relations** | **media, poster, press, television/TV** | **anti-corruption, anti-drug, anti-smoking, etc.** | **protest** | **awareness** *a health awareness campaign to promote a healthy lifestyle* | **lobbying** | **fund-raising** | **literacy** | **recruitment** | **air, bombing, guerrilla, military** *the terrorists' bombing campaign* | **hate, terror/terrorist** | **dirty tricks, smear, whispering** *Her political opponents ran a wispering campaign against her.*
- VERB + CAMPAIGN **launch, mount, start** *The company launched a huge advertising campaign.* | **conduct, fight, organize, run, wage** *People have criticized the way in which she conducted her election campaign.* | **lead, manage, spearhead** *She led a successful campaign against the closure of the library.* | **take part in** | **intensify, step up** *The government has intensified the military campaign against the rebels.*
- CAMPAIGN + VERB **begin, get underway, start** *The general election campaign gets underway today.* | **be aimed at sb/sth** *a concerted campaign aimed at educating young people about the dangers of drugs* | **aim to** *The campaign aims to inform the public of the dangers of this disease.* | **call for sth, demand sth** | **fail to** *The campaign failed to achieve its objectives.*
- CAMPAIGN + NOUN **manager, team** | **strategy** | **issue** *Education has become an important campaign issue.* | **trail** *election candidates on the campaign trail* (= travelling around the country campaigning)
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *They met regularly during the campaign.* | **~ against** *a fierce campaign against hunting* **~ by** *the political campaign by the Labour Party* **~ for** *the campaign for racial equality*
- PHRASES **a plan of campaign** *After sliding in the opinion polls, the party had to rethink its plan of campaign.*

campaign *verb*

- ADV. **actively, hard, strongly, tirelessly, vigorously** *We will campaign hard for an end to the ivory trade.* | **effectively, successfully** *Local people have successfully campaigned against the building.* | **openly, publicly**
- PREP. **against** *Local communities are campaigning against the dumping of toxic waste.* **for** *We have campaigned for better rural transport.* **on** *The group campaigns on a range of environmental issues.* **on behalf of** *campaigning on behalf of the British consumer*

campaigner *noun*

- ADJ. **effective, good, great, successful** | **active, tireless, vigorous** | **experienced, seasoned, veteran** | **leading, prominent**
- PREP. **~ against** *a prominent campaigner against drugs* **~ for** *an active campaigner for animal rights* **~ on behalf of** *a veteran campaigner on behalf of the disabled*

campus *noun*

- ADJ. **large** | **small** | **college, university**
- VERB + CAMPUS **have** *De Montfort University has campuses in Milton Keynes and Leicester.*
- CAMPUS + NOUN **novel**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *Students at the Belfast campus have access to excellent sports facilities.* **off ~** *They moved off campus to share a flat in the town.* **on ~** *She lives on campus.*

can *noun*

- ADJ. **metal, tin** | **rusty** | **food** *The floor was littered* *with rusty food cans.* | **300g, 250ml, 11oz, etc.** *a 200g can of tuna* | **beer, coke** | **jerry, petrol** | **oil** | **paint** | **watering** | **aerosol, spray**

- VERB + CAN **come in** *This special type of milk comes in a can.* | **open** *We opened a can of sardines for lunch.* | **drain, empty** *She drained her can of beer and threw it away.* ◇ *He emptied a can of beans into the pan.* | **drink, sip at** | **fill** *He was filling a jerry can with petrol from the pump.* | **recycle**
- CAN + NOUN **opener** (also **can-opener**)
- PREP. **in a/the ~** | **~ of** *cans of oil*

canal *noun*

- ADJ. **irrigation** | **ship**
- VERB + CANAL **build, dig**
- CANAL + NOUN **barge, boat** | **bank** | **towpath**
- PREP. **along a/the ~** *The barge moved slowly along the canal.* **on a/the ~** *sailing on the canal*

cancellation *noun*

- ADJ. **last-minute** | **sudden** | **outright** *They opted for rescheduling rather than outright cancellation.*
- VERB + CANCELLATION **have** *We may be able to offer you some tickets if we have any cancellations.* | **make** *Cancellations must be made in writing.* | **cause** *Heavy seas can cause cancellation of ferry services.*
- CANCELLATION + NOUN **charge, fee**

cancer *noun*

- ADJ. **breast, cervical, lung, prostate, skin, etc.**
- VERB + CANCER **have, suffer from** | **contract, get, develop** | **cause** | **screen sb for** *Most of the women employees have now been screened for breast cancer.* | **diagnose** | **die from/of**
- CANCER + VERB **spread** *The cancer has spread to his stomach.*
- CANCER + NOUN **cell** | **patient, sufferer, victim** | **risk** *The cancer risk among smokers was found to be higher.* | **research** | **drug, treatment**
- PHRASES **a battle/struggle against cancer** *He died after an 18-month battle against cancer.*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

candid *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very** | **extraordinarily, remarkably** | **perfectly, quite** | **less than**
- PREP. **about** *He was quite candid about the way the case had been handled.* **with** *I felt she was being less than candid with me.*

candidate *noun*

- ADJ. **potential, prospective** *Prospective parliamentary candidates met party leaders last week.* | **likely, possible** *She's a likely candidate for promotion.* | **good, ideal, suitable** *There were no suitable candidates for the position.* | **unsuitable** | **successful** *The successful candidate will be fluent in French and German.* | **congressional, ministerial, parliamentary, presidential** | **Conservative, Democratic, etc.**
- VERB + CANDIDATE **put yourself forward as, stand as** *She decided to stand as a candidate in the union elections.* | **field, nominate, put up, run** *Our organization is putting up five candidates in the elections.* | **back, support, vote for** | **choose, select** *The committee will select the best candidate for the job.* | **reject** *We rejected most of the candidates as unsuitable.*
- PREP. **~ for** *She was the only candidate for the post.*

candle *noun*

- ADJ. **lighted** | **flickering**
- VERB + CANDLE **light** | **blow out, snuff (out)**
- CANDLE + VERB **burn** | **flicker** | **go out**
- CANDLE + NOUN **flame**

cannabis *noun*

- QUANT. **trace** *Traces of cannabis were found in the pilot's blood.*
- VERB + CANNABIS **smoke** | **grow**
- CANNABIS + NOUN **leaf, plant, resin**

⇨ Note at DRUG (for more verbs and nouns)

cannon *noun*

- ADJ. **water** *Riot police used water cannon and tear gas to disperse the crowd.*
- VERB + CANNON **load** | **aim** | **fire, shoot**
- CANNON + VERB **boom, roar, thunder** *Cannons thundered to their right.* | **fire (sth)** *As the king stepped ashore the cannons fired a salute.*
- CANNON + NOUN **ball, shell** | **fire, shot** | **crew** | **fodder** (*figurative*) *The foot soldiers were just used as cannon fodder* (= considered not as people but as material to be used up in war).

canoe *noun*

- ADJ. **dugout, open**
- VERB + CANOE **paddle**
- PREP. **by ~** *We crossed the lake by canoe.*

canopy *noun*

- ADJ. **dense, thick** *a thick canopy of branches* | **forest, leafy, tree**
- VERB + CANOPY **form** *The trees formed a leafy canopy above their heads.*
- PREP. **beneath/under a/the ~** | **~ of** *sitting beneath a canopy of branches*

cap *noun*

1 soft flat hat

- ADJ. **flat, peaked** | **cloth** | **baseball, bathing, cricket, forage, school, shower, skull, swimming**
- CAP + NOUN **badge**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

2 covering for the end/top of sth

- ADJ. **filler, hub, lens** | **screw** *The bottle has a screw cap.*
- VERB + CAP **put on, screw on** *Put the cap back on the pen.* | **remove, take off, unscrew**

capability *noun*

- ADJ. **enormous** | **limited** *The company's manufacturing capability is quite limited.* | **potential** | **proven** *the proven capability of this technology* | **human** *beyond the scope of human capability* | **intellectual, mental** | **technical, technological** | **manufacturing, production** | **research** | **computing, design, graphics, multimedia, networking, printing, processing, sound, video** | **defence, fighting, military, missile, nuclear, offensive, weapons**
- VERB + CAPABILITY **have** *She has the capability to become a very fine actress.* | **increase** *The government wants to increase its military capability.* | **lose**
- PREP. **beyond your ~** *Organizing a whole department is beyond his capability.* **within your ~** *I'm sure that your new job is well within your capabilities.* | **~ for** *her capability for making sensible decisions*

capable *adj.*

1 having a lot of skill
- VERBS **be, seem** *She seems very capable.*
- ADV. **extremely, highly, quite, very** *He has proved himself an extremely capable manager.*

2 **capable of** able to do sth
- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, prove, seem** | **become** | **believe sb, consider sb** *She could hardly believe him capable of such kindness.*
- ADV. **fully, more than, perfectly, quite, well** *She is more than capable of looking after herself.* | **barely, hardly, scarcely** *He was barely capable of writing his own name.* | **reasonably** | **clearly, obviously** | **potentially, theoretically** | **physically** *He was not physically capable of climbing out of the window.*

capacity *noun*

1 amount held/produced
- ADJ. **high, large** *a high capacity electric pump ◇ large capacity disk drives* | **limited, small** | **maximum, total** *a total capacity of 50 litres* | **excess, spare** *spare capacity in the health service* | **economic, productive** | **earning** *The qualification should increase my earning capacity.* | **carrying, nuclear, seating, storage** | **engine, lung**
- VERB + CAPACITY **have** | **be filled/packed to** *The theatre was filled to capacity* (= was full) *for every performance.* | **expand, increase** | **reduce**
- CAPACITY + NOUN **audience, crowd**
- PHRASES **operate/work at full capacity** (= to produce the maximum amount possible)

2 ability
- ADJ. **amazing, enormous, great, remarkable** | **limited** | **innate, natural** *Children have an innate capacity to understand language.* | **intellectual, mental** | **human** *the human capacity for compassion*
- VERB + CAPACITY **have** | **lose** *She seems to have lost the capacity to enjoy herself.* | **increase** | **reduce, restrict**
- PREP. **beyond your ~** *This maths is beyond the capacity of most school children.* **within your ~** *The mountain walk is well within the capacity of most fit people.* | **~ for** *her amazing capacity for organization*

3 official position
- ADJ. **official** | **personal, private, unofficial, voluntary** | **professional** | **acting, caretaker** | **advisory** | **judicial**
- VERB + CAPACITY **act in, work in** *I have worked in an advisory capacity with many hospitals.*
- PREP. **in your ~** *In my capacity as president, I would like to thank Jack for his hard work.*

capital *noun*

1 money used to start a business, etc.
- ADJ. **fixed, starting** | **working** | **foreign, private** | **equity, investment, share** | **risk, venture**
- VERB + CAPITAL **have** *We don't have enough capital to buy new premises.* | **accumulate, attract, borrow, generate, raise** *He had various ideas on how to raise capital for the project.* | **invest, provide, put (up), sink** *The company has put a lot of capital into the project. ◇ We can't expect the government to put up the capital. ◇ He sank vast amounts of capital in the venture.* | **free up, release, unlock** | **tie up** *Our capital is all tied up in property.*
- CAPITAL + NOUN **assets, goods, resources, stock** | **costs, expenditure, investment, outlay, repayment, spending** | **accumulation, growth** | **account** | **grant** | **project** *investment in major capital projects* | **gain, loss** | **flows, inflow, movement, outflow, receipt** | **value** *the capital value of the property* | **market**
- PHRASES **capital intensive** *capital intensive industries* **an injection of capital** *Inner city areas require a large injection of capital.* **a return on your capital** *Investors want an immediate return on their capital.*

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

2 city
- ADJ. **great, major** *The department store has branches in all major capitals.* | **British, Japanese, etc.** | **foreign** | **provincial, regional, state** | **cultural, financial, etc.**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the fast pace of life in the capital* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **... capital of the world** *Las Vegas is the gambling capital of the world.*

capitalism *noun*
- ADJ. **advanced, contemporary, late, modern** | **global, world** | **competitive, consumer, entrepreneurial, free market, industrial, laissez-faire, liberal, monopoly, popular, state, welfare**
- VERB + CAPITALISM **fight (against), protest against, struggle against** | **abolish, overthrow, replace**
- PREP. **under ~** *a study of the development of agriculture under capitalism*
- PHRASES **the advance/rise of capitalism, the fall of capitalism** *predicting the fall of world capitalism*

capsule *noun*
- VERB + CAPSULE **swallow, take** *To avoid capture by the enemy, he swallowed a cyanide capsule.*
- CAPSULE + VERB **contain sth** *capsules containing a poisonous drug*

captain *noun*

⇨ Note at RANK

captive *noun*
- VERB + CAPTIVE **free, release** *The terrorists will only release their captives if they get what they want.*

captive *adj.*
- VERBS **be** | **take sb** *He was taken captive on the border.* | **hold sb, keep sb** *She was held captive in a castle.*

captivity *noun*
- VERB + CAPTIVITY **hold/keep sb in** *The children were held in captivity until British soldiers entered the village.* | **bring/take sb into** | **free/release sb from** *The prisoners were released from captivity after three months.* | **escape from**
- PREP. **during (sb's) ~** *She was tortured many times during her captivity.* **in ~** *trout bred in captivity*

capture *noun*
- VERB + CAPTURE **avoid, escape, evade** *The refugees evaded capture by hiding in the forest.* | **lead to** *This information led to the capture of the murderer.*

capture *verb*
- ADV. **perfectly** *That description captures perfectly the feeling of being invisible.* | **brilliantly, neatly**
- VERB + CAPTURE **attempt to, try to** | **manage to** | **fail to** *The exhibition on India fails to capture the great diversity of this fascinating country.*

car *noun*
- ADJ. **fast** | **new** | **second-hand, used** *a used car salesman* | **veteran, vintage** | **private** *The government wants more people to use public transport instead of private cars.* | **diesel, electric, motor, petrol** | **estate, hatchback, saloon, sports** | **armoured, Panda, patrol, police, squad, unmarked** *Police in an unmarked car had been following the stolen vehicle for several minutes.* | **racing, rally, stock** | **company, hire** | **getaway** *The robbers aban-*

doned their getaway car in Sealand Road. | **parked** *There was a line of parked cars in front of the building.*

• VERB + CAR **go/travel by** | **drive** | **have, own, run** *It's very expensive to run a car these days.* | **take** *It's too far to walk. I'll take the car.* | **get in/into, pile into** *He got in the car and they drove off.* ◇ *The kids all piled into the car.* | **get out of** | **get out** *You lock up the house and I'll get the car out.* | **stop** | **back, reverse** | **overtake, pass** | **lose control of** *I lost control of the car and it spun off the road.* | **leave, park** | **abandon, dump** | **build, make, manufacture, produce** | **repair, service, work on** | **take in** *I've got to take the car in for service.* | **wash** | **hire** | **break into, steal**

• CAR + VERB **start** *Despite the cold, the car started first time.* | **run on sth** *cars that run on diesel* | **do sth** *The car does 55 miles per gallon.* ◇ *The car was doing over 100 miles an hour.* | **pull out, turn out** *What cheek! That car pulled out right in front of me!* | **drive off, pull away** | **overtake sb/sth, pass sb/sth** | **accelerate** | **slow down** | **come to a halt, draw up, pull up, stop** | **skid, spin** *Her car skidded on a patch of ice.* | **break down, stall** | **collide with sth, crash, hit sth, leave the road** *His car hit a van coming in the opposite direction.*

• CAR + NOUN **boot, door, engine, horn, key, phone, tyre, window** *a car boot sale* (= an outdoor sale where people sell things from the backs of their cars) | **park, parking** *There's not enough car parking in the town centre.* | **driver** | **dealer, salesman, showroom** | **accident, crash** | **wash** | **tax** | **ferry**

• PREP. **by ~** *They take the children to school by car.* **in a/the ~** *I'll wait for you in the car.*

• PHRASES **cars on the roads** *The number of cars on the roads is increasing all the time.* **a make/model of car**

caravan *noun*

• ADJ. **horse-drawn, motor** | **gypsy** | **holiday, touring**

• VERB + CARAVAN **pull, tow** | **live in, stay in**

• CARAVAN + VERB **park** *The local farmer lets holiday caravans park on his land.*

• CARAVAN + NOUN **holiday** | **park, site** | **rally**

carbohydrate *noun*

1 substance in food

• VERB + CARBOHYDRATE **be rich/high in, contain** *Cashew nuts are rich in carbohydrate.*

• CARBOHYDRATE + NOUN **content** | **diet** *a high carbohydrate diet*

• PHRASES **a source of carbohydrate**

2 food

• ADJ. **simple** | **complex** *complex carbohydrates such as pasta* | **refined** | **unrefined**

carbon *noun*

• ADJ. **pure** *Diamonds are crystals of pure carbon.* | **organic** | **radioactive** | **activated**

• CARBON + NOUN **content** *iron with a high carbon content* | **atom, isotope** | **fibre**

• PHRASES **a form of carbon**

carbon dioxide *noun*

• VERB + CARBON DIOXIDE **absorb, take in** *Trees absorb carbon dioxide and produce oxygen.* | **emit, give out, produce, release** | **form, give** *How is carbon dioxide formed?* ◇ *Coke burns with oxygen to give carbon dioxide.*

• CARBON DIOXIDE + NOUN **emissions**

• PHRASES **a build-up of carbon dioxide, emissions of carbon dioxide**

card *noun*

1 giving information

• ADJ. **business, calling, visiting** | **appointment, invitation** | **identity, membership** | **index, record, report** | **flash** (also **flashcard**) | **swipe** | **smart**

• PREP. **on a/the ~** *She wrote the main points of her speech on index cards.*

2 used to pay/get money

• ADJ. **plastic** *He had a wallet full of plastic cards.* | **cash, charge, cheque (guarantee), credit, debit** | **phone** | **ration**

• VERB + CARD **pay by, put sth on, use** *She paid for her holiday by credit card.* ◇ *I'll put the meal on my card.* | **accept, take** *The restaurant accepts all major credit cards.* | **issue (sb with)** *The bank hasn't issued me with a cheque card yet.*

• CARD + NOUN **number** | **holder** | **fraud**

3 greetings card

• ADJ. **greeting/greetings** | **birthday, Christmas, get-well, sympathy**

• VERB + CARD **give sb, send sb** | **sign, write** *Everyone at work signed a card for her.* | **get, receive**

4 used for a game

• ADJ. **playing** | **winning** | **court, picture** | **trump** (*figurative*) *This defender's ability to score vital goals has often proved a trump card.* | **wild**

• QUANT. **deck, pack**

• VERB + CARD **cut, deal, shuffle** | **pick** *'Pick a card,' said the conjurer.* | **hold** (*often figurative*) *The kidnappers hold all the cards* (= are in control of the situation).

• CARD + NOUN **game, player, table**

5 cards game

• QUANT. **game**

• VERB + CARDS **play** *We play cards every Friday night.* | **lose/win at** *He always wins at cards.*

• CARD + NOUN **game**

NOTE

Playing cards

two, three, etc. of ~s
the four of hearts
jack, queen, king, ace of ~s
the ace of spades
high, low ~
a low club
black, red ~
You can't put a red five on a red six.
pick up, take ~
Why didn't you pick up the king?
have, hold ~
He knew his opponents held only spades and diamonds.
lay/put down, play ~
She put down a joker.
lead ~
You should have led a high spade.
draw ~
Use your ace and king to draw the trumps.
trump ~
He trumped my ace!
~ be trumps/wild/high
Spades are trumps.
Let's play again. This time twos are wild, aces high.
~ trick (in games like bridge and whist)
We needed to take three more spade tricks.
on a/the ~
You can play either a nine or a jack on a ten.

cardboard *noun*

• ADJ. **thick** | **thin** | **stiff** | **corrugated**

• QUANT. **piece, sheet** *a sheet of stiff black cardboard*

- VERB + CARDBOARD **be made from/(out) of, make sth from/out of | cut**
- CARDBOARD + NOUN **box, carton, tube | cut-out** *There was a life-size cardboard cut-out of Elvis Presley in the shop window.*

cardigan *noun*

- ADJ. **wool/woollen/woolly | hand-knitted**
- VERB + CARDIGAN **knit**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

care *noun*

1 looking after sb/sth

- ADJ. **good, great** *He loved his books and took great care of them.* | **loving, tender** *She's still very frail and will need lots of tender loving care.* | **private | voluntary | constant, full-time, round-the-clock | continuing, long-term | short-term, temporary | daily, day-to-day, routine | intensive** *Last night she was critically ill in intensive care. ◇ an intensive care unit* | **clinical, emergency, health, medical, nursing, patient | hospital, inpatient, institutional, residential | day, non-hospital, outpatient | community | domestic, domiciliary, home, home-based | primary, secondary, tertiary | antenatal, dental, psychiatric | palliative | formal, informal** *The couple relied on informal care from relatives.* | **foster | public** *children in public care* | **pastoral, spiritual | client, customer | hair, skin**
- VERB + CARE **take** *He left his job to take care of his sick wife. ◇ I'll take care of hiring the car.* | **provide (sb with) | need, require | receive | take sb into** *The boys were taken into care when their parents died.*
- CARE + NOUN **services | centre, home, unit | manager, worker | management | plan, policy, programme | allowance | needs, order**
- PREP. **in ~** *He had been in foster care since he was five.* **in sb's ~** *You won't come to any harm while you're in their care. ◇ Many historic sites are in the care of the National Trust.* **under the ~ of** *He's under the care of Dr Parks.* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **the quality/standard of care**

2 attention/thought given to sth

- ADJ. **extreme, good, great** *Great care should be taken to ensure that the equipment is clean.* | **extra, special | infinite, the utmost | exquisite, meticulous, painstaking, scrupulous** *The little girl was writing her name with painstaking care.* | **exaggerated, excessive** *He takes excessive care of his appearance.* | **due** (*formal*), **proper, reasonable** *The householder has a duty to take reasonable care for the visitor's safety.*
- VERB + CARE **exercise, take**
- PREP. **with ~** *A label on the box read: 'Glass—handle with care'.* **without ~** *He was found guilty of driving without due care and attention.*

care *verb*

- ADV. **deeply, genuinely, a lot, passionately, really, truly | hardly, not greatly, not much, not particularly** *He hardly cares what he does any more. ◇ I don't know which she chose, nor do I greatly care.*
- PREP. **about** *He really cares about the environment.* **for** *You genuinely care for him, don't you?*
- PHRASES **be past caring** *I'm past caring what he does* (= I don't care any more).

career *noun*

1 series of jobs that a person has

- ADJ. **long | brief, short | brilliant, distinguished, glittering, good, great, successful** *He had a distinguished career as a diplomat.* | **promising | flagging** *He did a film for Hollywood to boost his flagging career.* | **chosen** *She achieved a lot in her chosen career.* | **academic, acting, diplomatic, literary, medical, military, musical, political, sporting, teaching | playing, professional, recording, stage** *the album that launched his recording career*
- VERB + CAREER **build, carve out, have, make, pursue** *He made a good career for himself in football. ◇ She pursued a successful career in medicine.* | **begin, embark on, launch, start (out on)** *young actors just starting out on their careers* | **boost | abandon, give up | cut short, end, ruin, wreck** *a car crash which wrecked his career* | **resume | change**
- CAREER + VERB **last sth, span sth** *Her stage career spans sixty years.* | **start, take off | be over, end**
- CAREER + NOUN **careers advice/guidance/information, careers adviser/officer, careers service | break** *a career break to have children* | **advancement, development, ladder, path, progression** *a move higher up the career ladder* | **choice, move** *a smart career move* | **opportunities, prospects, structure** *The profession has no clear career structure.* | **civil servant, diplomat, soldier | girl, woman**
- PREP. **during/throughout your ~** *She won many awards during her acting career.* | **~ in** *a career in computers* **~ with** *a brilliant career with the Royal Ballet*
- PHRASES **the peak/height of your career** *She was at the peak of her playing career when she injured herself.* **a change of career**

2 period of your life spent working/doing sth

- ADJ. **chequered, colourful, turbulent, varied** *He has had a somewhat chequered career.* | **school, working** *She started her working career as a waitress.*
- VERB + CAREER **have | start**

career *verb*

- ADV. **wildly** *A sudden gust caught her hat and sent it careering wildly down the road.* | **around** *children careering around the playground*
- PREP. **down, into, off, through** *The lorry careered off the road and hit a tree.*

careful *adj.*

- VERBS **be | make sb** *Bitter past experience had made her careful of what she confided to Nadia.*
- ADV. **awfully, doubly, especially, extra, extremely, particularly, really, specially, very** *Be extra careful when walking along country roads.* | **a bit, a little, fairly, quite | scrupulously**
- PREP. **about** *She was quite careful about how she spoke to him.* **of** *He's very careful of his reputation.* **with** *She's extremely careful with money.*

careless *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become, get, grow** *She had begun to grow careless.* | **make sb** *Boredom made him careless.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | a bit, a little, rather** *a rather careless mistake* | **notoriously**
- PREP. **about** *She's careless about her spelling.* **of** *When performing his stunts he was notoriously careless of his own safety.* **with** *He's very careless with money.*

caress *noun*

- ADJ. **gentle, light** *the gentle caress of his fingers* | **warm**

caress *verb*

- ADV. **gently, lightly** *His fingers gently caressed her cheek.*

cargo *noun*

- ADJ. **big, bulk, heavy, large | small | precious, valuable** *a precious cargo of antiques* | **deadly** *The terrorists parked the van with its deadly cargo in a dark alleyway.* | **dry** *dry cargo, such as fruit* | **human** *The boats discharged their human cargo a little way from the shore.*
- VERB + CARGO **carry | load, take on** *The ship stopped to take on a cargo of fruit.* | **discharge, unload | handle** *The port handles cargo from all over Europe.*
- CARGO + NOUN **aircraft, boat, carrier, plane, ship, vessel | bay, hold | handler, handling**

caricature *noun*

1 funny drawing of sb
- VERB + CARICATURE **draw** *She draws caricatures of well-known politicians.*
- PREP. **~of** *a caricature of Sherlock Holmes*

2 exaggerated description of sb/sth
- ADJ. **crude, grotesque**
- VERB + CARICATURE **give** *The film gives a crude caricature of African history.*
- PREP. **~of**

carpet *noun*

1 material for covering floors
- ADJ. **deep-pile, soft, thick | threadbare, worn | patterned, plain | woven | oriental, Persian | fitted, wall-to-wall | flying, magic | red** (*figurative*) *I didn't expect to get the red carpet treatment* (= be treated like an important person).
- QUANT. **roll**
- VERB + CARPET **make, weave | fit, lay** *I'm having the carpets fitted today.* | **roll back/up, take up | beat**
- CARPET + NOUN **design | tile** *They grey vinyl floor gave way to carpet tiles.* | **fitter | cleaner, sweeper**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *The cat curled up on the carpet.*

2 thick layer of sth that covers the ground
- ADJ. **deep, thick**
- VERB + CARPET **form** *The leaves formed a carpet under the trees.*
- PREP. **~of** *a deep carpet of snow*

carpeted *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **richly, softly, thickly** *the quiet, thickly carpeted corridors* | **fully, throughout** *a comfortable, fully carpeted bedroom* ◇ *The house is carpeted throughout.*
- PREP. **with** (*figurative*) *The churchyard was thickly carpeted with snowdrops and primroses.*

carriage *noun*

1 vehicle pulled by horses
- ADJ. **horse-drawn, open**
- VERB + CARRIAGE **ride in | drive | climb into, get into | alight from, get out of, step out of**
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

2 part of a train
- ADJ. **railway | full | empty | first-class, second-class | no-smoking/non-smoking, smoking**
- VERB + CARRIAGE **get in/into | get out of | pull**
- CARRIAGE + NOUN **door, window**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *There's a seat in the next carriage.*

carriageway *noun*

- ADJ. **dual, single | northbound, etc.**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *The accident happened on the southbound carriageway of the M1.*

carrot *noun*

1 vegetable
- ADJ. **raw | baby | diced, grated**
- VERB + CARROT **eat, have | cook, prepare | peel, scrape | chop, dice, grate**
- CARROT + NOUN **top | cake | juice**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

2 sth attractive offered to sb
- VERB + CARROT **dangle, hold out, offer (sb)** *They dangled the carrot of a large salary in front of me.*
- PHRASES **a carrot and stick** *to adopt the carrot-and-stick approach* (= to persuade sb to try harder by offering them a reward if they do, or a punishment if they do not)

cart *noun*

1 vehicle pulled by animals
- ADJ. **heavy | bullock, donkey, horse-drawn, ox | farm**
- VERB + CART **drive | draw, pull | ride in | climb off/on/onto, get off/on/onto | load, unload**
- CART + VERB **roll | creak, lumber** *The cart creaked on up the street.* | **carry sth**
- CART + NOUN **track**
- PREP. **by ~** *In the old days coal supplies came by cart.* **in a/the ~** *She brought the vegetables in an ox cart.* **on/onto a/the ~** *piling their furniture onto a cart*
- PHRASES **the back of a cart** *Jump in the back of my cart.* **a horse/pony and cart**

2 small vehicle
- ADJ. **golf, hand, ice-cream**
- VERB + CART **push, trundle, wheel** *a man wheeling an ice-cream cart along* | **drive** *driving a golf cart*

carton *noun*

- ADJ. **cardboard, plastic | ice-cream, juice, milk, yogurt** *Why are these milk cartons so difficult to open?*
- VERB + CARTON **open**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The soup is sold in cartons.* | **~of** *a carton of cream*

cartoon *noun*

- ADJ. **animated, strip**
- VERB + CARTOON **draw** *He draws strip cartoons for 'The Guardian'.*
- CARTOON + NOUN **character | strip | series**

carved *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **beautifully, delicately, elaborately, finely, intricately, ornately, richly** *a richly carved doorway* | **crudely, roughly** *a crudely carved wooden figure*

case *noun*

1 example
- ADJ. **classic, textbook, typical | clear, obvious, simple** *It was a simple case of mistaken identity.* | **borderline** *After the exams, the teacher gave all borderline cases a spoken test.* | **extreme | isolated, rare** *Except in a few rare cases, bee stings are not dangerous.* | **exceptional, special | striking**
- VERB + CASE **highlight, illustrate, show** *He highlighted the case of Harry Farr, 25, who was executed for cowardice in 1916.*
- CASE + VERB **arise, occur** *The committee has full powers to deal with any cases of malpractice that arise.*
- CASE + NOUN **study** *a case study of an Amazonian tribe* | **example**
- PREP. **in sb's/this ~** *In her case, she failed the exam because she wasn't well.* | **~of** *a case of animal cruelty*
- PHRASES **case by case/on a case by case basis** *Com-*

plaints are dealt with on a case by case basis. **a case in point** *Many professions feel they deserve higher pay, and nurses are a case in point.*

2 true situation

- VERB + CASE **be, remain** *It remains the case that not enough graduates are going into teaching.* | **overstate, understate** *I agree with him, but don't you think he slightly overstates the case?*

3 of a disease

- ADJ. **acute, chronic** | **advanced, serious, severe** | **mild**
- CASE + NOUN **history** *Medical students study the case histories of many patients.* | **file, notes, records, report**
- PREP. **~of** *a severe case of food poisoning*

4 police investigation

- ADJ. **notorious** | **tragic** | **murder, robbery**
- VERB + CASE **investigate, work on** *Four police officers are investigating the case.* | **crack, solve** *They never solved the Jones murder case.*
- CASE + NOUN **officer** *Carter was the senior case officer on the investigation.*
- PREP. **on the~** *A detective is on the case at the moment.* | **~of** *a case of theft*

5 in a court of law

- ADJ. **court** | **criminal** | **civil** | **test** *This is a test case which will influence what other judges decide.* | **divorce**
- VERB + CASE **bring** *The victim decided to bring a case of rape against him.* | **handle** *This was the hardest case she had handled since becoming a lawyer.* | **consider, hear, try** *The court will consider the case soon.* ◇ *The case will be heard in the Court of Appeal.* | **adjourn** | **dismiss, throw out** *The case was thrown out for lack of evidence.* | **drop** *The prosecution decided to drop the case.* | **decide, settle** *The case was settled out of court.* | **win** | **lose** | **review**
- CASE + VERB **come before sb, come to court, go to court, go to trial** *The case came before Judge Hales in the Crown Court.* ◇ *He was so clearly innocent, the case should never have gone to court.* | **collapse** *The case against her collapsed when a key witness was proved to have lied.* | **centre on sth, hinge on sth, rest on sth, turn on sth** *The case hinged on the evidence of the only witness to the killing.* | **raise sth** *The case raises a number of issues.*
- PREP. **in a/the~** *the evidence in the case* | **~against** *The case against her was very weak.* **~of**
- PHRASES **a/no case to answer** *The judge ruled that the defendant had no case to answer, as the evidence had been discredited.* **the circumstances/facts of a case**

6 arguments

- ADJ. **convincing, good, powerful, strong** | **open-and-shut, unanswerable** *With his current superb form, he presents an unanswerable case for selection in the team.* | **weak** | **defence, prosecution/prosecution's**
- VERB + CASE **have** *Our lawyer didn't think we had a case* (= had enough good arguments to win in a court of law). | **prepare** *The defendant requested more time to prepare his case.* | **outline, set out** | **deliver, make (out), present, put, state** *You can make out a case for changing our teaching methods.* | **argue, plead** *I thought she argued her case very well.* | **take up** *The local MP has taken up the case of the family of six who have been left homeless.* | **judge** *The teacher must judge each case according to its merits.* | **bolster, help, support** *What evidence do you have to support your case?* | **weaken**
- CASE + VERB **exist** *A strong case exists for adopting a similar system in this country.*
- PREP. **~against** *Is there a case against wearing school uniforms?* **~for**
- PHRASES **the case for the defence/prosecution, the merits of a case** *The disciplinary committee considered the merits of his case before fining him.*

7 container

- ADJ. **display** *She kept all her trophies in a display case.* | **presentation** *a gold wristwatch in a presentation case* | **carrying** *He put the binoculars back in their carrying case.* | **packing** | **glass** *The room was full of stuffed animals in glass cases.* | **cigarette, glasses, jewellery, pencil, pillow** | **guitar, violin, etc.**
- PREP. **in/inside a/the~, out of a/the~**

8 suitcase

- ADJ. **attaché** | **overnight**

⇨ See SUITCASE (for other collocates with **case**)

9 grammar

- ADJ. **ablative, accusative, dative, genitive, instrumental, locative, nominative, vocative**
- VERB + CASE **take** *In Polish the verb 'to be' takes the instrumental case.*
- CASE + NOUN **ending**

cash *noun*

1 money in the form of coins or notes

- ADJ. **hard, ready** *The drugs are sold for hard cash.* | **petty**
- VERB + CASH **pay (in)** *We'll have to pay cash for the tickets.* | **hold** *The bank should hold enough cash to satisfy customer demand.* | **convert/turn sth into**
- CASH + NOUN **desk, register** | **dispenser, machine** | **balance** | **book**
- PREP. **in~** *The thieves stole £200 in cash.* ◇ *You can pay by cheque or in cash.*
- PHRASES **cash in hand** (= if you pay for goods and services **cash in hand**, you pay in cash, especially so that the person being paid can avoid paying tax on the amount), **cash on delivery** (= a system of paying for goods when they are delivered)

2 money in any form

- ADJ. **ready, spare** | **hard-earned** *Imagine having to pay some of my hard-earned cash on a parking fine!*
- VERB + CASH **generate, raise** *They had a football match to raise cash for the hospital.* | **be short of, be strapped for, run out of**
- CASH + NOUN **holdings, reserves, resources** | **flow** *The company is having cash flow problems.* **inflow, injection** | **outflow** | **deposit, payment, settlement** | **benefits, offer, prize** | **management** | **limit** | **market** | **crisis** | **crop** *farmers who grow cash crops for export* **economy** | **cow** (= the part of a business that always makes a profit)

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

casserole *noun*

1 dish of meat/vegetables

- ADJ. **beef, chicken, vegetable, etc.**
- VERB + CASSEROLE **eat, have** | **cook, make, prepare**
- CASSEROLE + NOUN **dish**

2 dish for cooking casseroles

- ADJ. **deep, large** | **shallow** | **flameproof, ovenproof**
- PREP. **in a/the~** *Put the chicken pieces in a casserole.*

cassette *noun*

- ADJ. **audio, video** | **tape** | **blank** | **bootleg, pirated** | **music** | **accompanying** *a set of four course books, each with an accompanying cassette*
- VERB + CASSETTE **insert** *He inserted a cassette into the machine.* | **play, put on** *She put on a U2 cassette.* | **pause, stop** | **eject** | **fast forward, rewind**
- CASSETTE + NOUN **deck, player, recorder** | **tape** | **box** | **format, version**
- PREP. **on~** *I've got it on cassette.*

cast *noun*

- ADJ. **huge, large** | **small** | **strong** | **all-star, star-studded** | **supporting** | **all-female, all-male**

- VERB + CAST **have** *The play has a large cast of characters.* | **join** | **head** *Jane Simms heads the cast of this brilliant production.*
- CAST + VERB **perform sth**
- CAST + NOUN **list, member**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Who is in the cast?*
- PHRASES **a cast of characters, a member of the cast**

caste *noun*

- ADJ. **high, low** *He belongs to one of the highest castes.*
- VERB + CASTE **belong to**
- CASTE + NOUN **system** *the Hindu caste system*
- PHRASES **a member of a caste, of high/low caste**

castle *noun*

- ADJ. **grand, great, magnificent, splendid** | **strong** | **turreted** | **historic** | **ancient, medieval** | **royal** | **ruined** | **fairy/fairy-tale, fantasy**
- VERB + CASTLE **approach** *They had to approach the castle through thick swamps.* | **build, fortify** | **attack, besiege, lay siege to** | **capture, seize, take** | **defend, hold** *Edinburgh castle was loyally held in the queen's name.*
- CASTLE + VERB **perch, stand** *The castle perches on a high rocky outcrop.* | **overlook sth** *The castle overlooks the town.*
- CASTLE + NOUN **gate, grounds, keep, tower, wall** | **ruins**
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

casual *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, sound** | **become**
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **almost** *She sounded almost casual.* | **fairly, quite, rather** | **apparently, seemingly** | **carefully, elaborately, studiedly** *There was something a little too carefully casual in his tone.* | **deceptively**
- PREP. **about** *He was very casual about it all.*

casualty *noun*

1 person killed/injured in a war/an accident
- ADJ. **heavy, high, serious** | **light** | **pedestrian** | **road** | **civilian, military** | **human**
- VERB + CASUALTY **cause, inflict** *The guerrillas inflicted heavy casualties on the local population.* | **incur, suffer** *Our division suffered only light casualties.*
- CASUALTY + NOUN **figures, list, rate**

2 part of a hospital
- VERB + CASUALTY **be admitted to** *He was admitted to casualty with head injuries.* | **rush sb to, take sb to**
- CASUALTY + NOUN **department, unit, ward**
- PREP. **in ~** *He works as a doctor in casualty.*

cat *noun*

- ADJ. **domestic, family, household, pet** | **big** *She went to Africa to photograph big cats.* | **feral, wild** | **alley, stray** | **pedigree** | **long-haired, short-haired** | **black, tabby, tortoiseshell, etc.** | **tom** (also **tomcat**) | **playful** | **sleek** | **Cheshire** *He was grinning like a Cheshire cat.* | **fat** (*figurative*) *the fat cats of big business*
- VERB + CAT **have, keep, own** *We have a pet cat called Archie.* | **feed** | **stroke** | **neuter, spay** *They didn't want kittens, so they had their cat spayed.* | **worm** *The stray cats are wormed and treated with flea powder.* | **put down** *The cat was in constant pain so they had it put down.*
- CAT + VERB **hiss, mew, miaow, purr, spit, yowl** *The cat miaowed pitifully.* ◇ *There was a cat yowling outside my window last night.* | **bite (sb), scratch (sb)** | **creep, pad, (be on the) prowl, slink** *A cat padded silently past.* ◇ *The cat slunk away into the darkness.* | **arch its back** | **cower, crouch** | **curl up** | **catch sth, hunt (sth), stalk sth** | **leap, pounce (on sth), spring** | **spray (sth)** *Cats mark their territory by spraying.*
- CAT + NOUN **door, flap** | **food** | **litter** | **lover, owner** | **phobia** | **nap** (also **catnap**) *A catnap at lunchtime can make you feel refreshed.*
- PHRASES **fight like cat and dog** *In our childhood Irina and I fought like cat and dog.* **play (a game of) cat and mouse** *Young car thieves enjoy playing cat and mouse with the police.*

catalogue *noun*

1 list of books/objects
- ADJ. **exhibition, library**
- VERB + CATALOGUE **produce, publish** *The gallery produced a catalogue of young artists.* | **look through** *Look through the catalogue and find this picture.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *More details are given in our catalogue.*

2 book of goods for sale
- ADJ. **colour, illustrated** | **mail-order**
- VERB + CATALOGUE **produce, publish** | **browse through, look at/through** | **send (off) for** *Send off for our illustrated catalogue of garden plants.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

cataract *noun*

- VERB + CATARACT **have** | **develop** | **remove** *A cataract can be removed under local anaesthetic.*
- CATARACT + NOUN **operation, surgery**

catastrophe *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, big, complete, great, major, terrible, total** | **minor** | **national** | **global, international, world** | **ecological, economic, environmental, natural, nuclear**
- VERB + CATASTROPHE **cause, lead (sth) to** *These policies could lead the country to environmental catastrophe.* | **have** *We had a few catastrophes with the food for the party.* | **be faced with, be heading for, face** *The area is now facing economic catastrophe.* | **avert, avoid, head off, prevent** *moves to avert a national catastrophe*
- CATASTROPHE + VERB **happen, occur, take place**

catastrophic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove**
- ADV. **absolutely, quite** | **potentially**
- PREP. **for** *potentially catastrophic for the environment*

catch *noun*

1 act of catching sth
- ADJ. **brilliant, clean, easy, fine, good, nice**
- VERB + CATCH **take** *Roger took some brilliant catches at today's match.* | **drop, miss**

2 number of fish that sb has caught
- ADJ. **big, bumper, good, huge, large, record** *Fishermen have been landing record catches this season.* | **poor**
- VERB + CATCH **land, make**
- CATCH + VERB **decline, fall** *Catches fell because of the new dam.* | **go up, increase**
- PREP. **~ of** *a bumper catch of tuna*
- PHRASES **the day's catch** *a restaurant where you can sample the day's catch*

3 device for fastening sth
- ADJ. **door, window** | **safety** *the safety catch on a gun*
- VERB + CATCH **slip (off), undo, unfasten, unlock** *Fran slipped the catch on the door, then turned to say goodbye.* | **close**

categorize *verb*

- ADV. **conveniently, easily** *These factors can be conveniently categorized under three headings.*
- VERB + CATEGORIZE **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *Her work is difficult to categorize.*
- PREP. **according to** *categorizing people according to*

their jobs **by** *We categorize voters by their choice of newspaper.* **Into** *Categorize the plants into four groups.*

category *noun*

- ADJ. **broad, general | narrow | distinct, separate | special** *We have created a special category for part-time workers.* | **high** (*law*) *the highest category of sexual assault* | **high-risk** *Intravenous drug users are in a high-risk category for hepatitis C.* | **age, social**
- VERB + CATEGORY **be included in, belong to, come into, fall into, fit (into)** *The towns investigated fell into two broad categories.* | **assign sb/sth to, divide sb/sth into, group sb/sth under, put sb/sth in/into | create, define, establish**
- CATEGORY + VERB **comprise sth, include sth**
- PREP. **in/within a/the ~** *He competed in the youngest age category.* | **~ of** *a higher category of prison*
- PHRASES **be in a category (all) of its/your own** (= to be unique)

catering *noun*

- ADJ. **commercial, contract, industrial | hotel, in-flight, school**
- VERB + CATERING **do** *Who's doing the catering for the party?*
- CATERING + NOUN **business, industry, service | establishment, firm | equipment, facility | assistant, manager, staff, team | college, student | course | management**

cathedral *noun*

- ADJ. **great, magnificent | medieval, modern | baroque, Gothic, Romanesque | Anglican, Catholic**
- VERB + CATHEDRAL **build | see, visit**
- CATHEDRAL + VERB **dominate sth** *The great Gothic cathedral dominates the city.*
- CATHEDRAL + NOUN **city, town | church**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *We went to mass in the cathedral.*

Catholic *noun*

- ADJ. **Roman | devout | practising | lapsed**
- VERB + CATHOLIC **be brought up (as)**

Catholicism *noun*

- ADJ. **ardent, fervent | Roman**
- VERB + CATHOLICISM **convert to**

cattle *noun*

- ADJ. **beef, dairy | horned | highland, hill, upland | lowland | indigenous, native | wild**
- QUANT. **head** *5 000 head of cattle died of the disease in one month.* | **herd**
- VERB + CATTLE **keep, rear | breed | tend | graze** *Villagers traditionally have the right to graze their cattle on the common land.* | **drive, herd, round up** *Farmers drove cattle along major roads as a protest against high taxes.* | **slaughter | raid, rustle, steal | domesticate** *Cattle were first domesticated in Neolithic times.*
- CATTLE + VERB **browse, graze** *cattle grazing in the fields* | **low | stray, wander** *Cattle that stray onto the electric railway line are killed instantly.*
- CATTLE + NOUN **auction, market | breeding, ranching, rearing | breeder, dealer, farmer | farm, ranch | feed, food | grid** *There was a cattle grid across the road to stop the cows escaping.* | **prod** *Electric cattle prods were used against the demonstrators.* | **truck**
- PHRASES **a breed of cattle**

cause *noun*

1 sb/sth that makes sth happen

- ADJ. **real, root, true, underlying** *the root cause of the problem* | **deeper, greater** *A greater cause for resentment is the discrepancy in pay.* | **biggest, chief, clear, fundamental, important, main, major, primary, prime, principal, significant | common** *Smoking is a common cause of premature death.* | **likely, possible | known, unknown | direct, indirect | immediate, initial | long-term, short-term | reasonable** *There is no reasonable cause to suspect an unnatural death.* | **contributory | hidden | social** *the social causes of ill health*
- VERB + CAUSE **discover, find, identify** *attempts to identify the immediate cause of the breakdown*
- CAUSE + VERB **be, lie in sth** *The real cause of the problem lies in the poor construction of the bridge.*
- PHRASES **cause and effect, the cause of death, due to/from/of natural causes** *He died of natural causes.*

2 reason

- ADJ. **good, great, real, reasonable**
- VERB + CAUSE **have** *We have good cause to believe that he was involved in the crime.* | **find** *The experts may find cause to disagree with the school's decision.* | **give (sb)** *Her health is giving us great cause for concern.* | **show** *The onus is on government departments to show cause why information cannot be disclosed.*
- PREP. **~ for** *There is no cause for alarm.*
- PHRASES **cause for concern, with/without good cause, without just cause**

3 aim that people believe in

- ADJ. **deserving, good, just, noble, worthwhile, worthy** *The money she left went to various worthy causes.* | **bad, unjust | common** *The different groups support a common cause.* | **hopeless, lost** (= one that has failed or that cannot succeed) | **humanitarian, social | communist, socialist, etc.**
- VERB + CAUSE **be committed/sympathetic to, champion, fight for, further, help, promote, serve, support** *young men willing to fight for the cause* ◇ *She was keen to do anything that would further the cause.* | **take up** *She has taken up the cause of animal rights.* | **plead** *He pleaded the cause of the local fishermen.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *prominent figures in the socialist cause* **in the ~ of** *to disregard the strict letter of the law in the cause of true justice*
- PHRASES **a cause célèbre** (= a controversial issue that attracts a great deal of public attention), **(all) for/in a good cause** *The function took a lot of organizing, but was all in a good cause.*

caution *noun*

1 great care

- ADJ. **considerable, extreme, great, utmost** *The utmost caution must be exercised when handling explosives.* | **excessive | due** *We proceeded with due caution.*
- VERB + CAUTION **exercise | advise, counsel, urge** *We urge caution in the use of this medication.*
- PREP. **with ~** *The information should be treated with some caution.*
- PHRASES **err on the side of caution** (= to be too cautious), **the need for caution** *I must stress the need for caution.* **sound a note of caution** *The minister sounded a note of caution about the economy.* **cast/throw caution to the wind/winds** (= to start taking risks), **a word of caution** *I would just like to add a word of caution.*

2 spoken warning given by a judge/policeman

- ADJ. **formal** *He received a formal caution.*
- VERB + CAUTION **get off with, receive | give sb, issue, let sb off with** *They let her off with a caution.*

cautious *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become, get, grow** | **remain** | **make sb** *Her experiences have made her cautious.*
- ADV. **distinctly, extremely, highly, very** | **fairly, a little, quite, rather** | **sensibly, suitably, understandably** *Doctors are understandably cautious about this new treatment.* | **excessively, unduly** *He accused the government of being unduly cautious.* | **deliberately** | **suddenly** *What's made you so suddenly cautious?*
- PREP. **about** *cautious about spending money* **of** *He warned us to be cautious of accepting their statements as fact.*

cave *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, large** | **shallow, small** | **dark** | **damp, dank** | **rocky, mountain, underground** *We explored the rocky caves along the beach.* | **crystal, limestone**
- VERB + CAVE **explore**
- CAVE + VERB **collapse** *a collapsed limestone cave*
- CAVE + NOUN **ceiling, entrance, floor, mouth, roof, wall** | **system** | **art, drawing, painting** | **dweller**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *We took shelter in a dark, dank cave.*
- PHRASES **the ceiling/floor/roof/wall of a cave, the entrance to/mouth of a cave**

CD *noun*

- ADJ. **budget, full-price, mid-price** | **double** | **audio, music, multimedia, photo**
- VERB + CD **insert** *She inserted a CD into the machine.* | **play, put on** | **record** *You can record your own CD if you have the right equipment.* | **burn, burn sth onto, copy, duplicate, record** | **listen to** | **release** *The band's new CD is released next week.*
- CD + NOUN **drive** | **player, sound system** | **burner, maker, recorder, rewriter, ripper, writer** | **burning, duplication, recording** | **cover, sleeve** | **format**
- PREP. **on ~** *That was the first album to come out on CD.* **on a/the ~** *How many tracks are on the CD?* | **~ of**

CD-ROM *noun*

- ADJ. **multimedia** | **interactive** | **educational**
- VERB + CD-ROM **burn (sth onto), duplicate** *Now you can burn your photos onto a CD-ROM.* | **install**
- CD-ROM + VERB **contain sth**
- CD-ROM + NOUN **drive** | **driver** | **player** | **burner, burning** | **title** | **edition** *This is the CD-ROM edition of the encyclopedia.*
- PREP. **on ~** *This dictionary is also available on CD-ROM.*

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

cease *verb*

- ADV. **altogether, completely, entirely** *The flow slowed, then ceased altogether.* | **all but, almost, virtually** | **largely** | **effectively** *My job had effectively ceased to exist.* | **forthwith, immediately** *These violations of the code must cease forthwith.* | **soon** | **abruptly, suddenly** *The bird's song ceased abruptly.* | **rapidly** | **gradually** | **momentarily** | **eventually, finally** | **long (since)** *The conversation had long ceased to interest me.* | **automatically**
- PREP. **with** *The matches ceased with the outbreak of war.*
- PHRASES **without ceasing** *Prayer was made without ceasing.*

ceasefire *noun*

- ADJ. **complete** | **immediate** | **unilateral**
- VERB + CEASEFIRE **call for, demand, order** *The UN has passed a resolution calling for an immediate ceasefire.* | **achieve, secure** | **agree (to), declare, sign** | **broker, negotiate** | **call** *A 24-hour ceasefire was called to allow the distribution of aid.* | **observe** | **break, violate**
- CEASEFIRE + VERB **come/go into effect** | **hold, last** *There are concerns that the ceasefire might not hold.*
- CEASEFIRE + NOUN **agreement, terms**
- PREP. **~ between** *a ceasefire between the government and the rebels*
- PHRASES **a violation of a ceasefire**

ceiling *noun*

1 top surface inside a room

- ADJ. **high, low** | **domed, sloping, suspended, vaulted** | **painted** *The palace is famous for its 17th-century painted ceilings.*
- CEILING + VERB **collapse**
- PREP. **on the ~** *a fly on the ceiling*
- PHRASES **from ceiling to floor/from floor to ceiling** *The bathroom has mirrors from ceiling to floor.*

2 top limit on wages/prices, etc.

- ADJ. **expenditure, price**
- VERB + CEILING **impose, place, put, set** *They have put a ceiling on the price of petrol.* | **abolish** | **lift, raise** *The government has decided to lift price ceilings on bread, milk and other staples.* | **lower**
- PREP. **~ on** *a ceiling on imports*

celebrated *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **very** | **justly, rightly** *his justly celebrated portrait of Queen Juliana* | **internationally**
- PREP. **as** *He has become celebrated as an artist.* **for** *The area is celebrated for its food and wine.*

celebration *noun*

- ADJ. **big, great, noisy** | **little, quiet, small** | **family** | **joyous** *a joyous celebration of life* | **double** *a double birthday celebration* | **special** | **national, official, public, street** *There were wild street celebrations when England won the Cup.* | **anniversary, birthday, centenary, Christmas, New Year, victory, wedding** (usually with **celebrations**) *50th anniversary celebrations* | **religious**
- VERB + CELEBRATION **have, hold** *They held a special celebration in his honour.* | **join (in)** *I hope you'll join in the Christmas celebrations.*
- CELEBRATION + NOUN **dinner**
- PREP. **in ~ of** *They organized a dinner in celebration of the year's successes.*
- PHRASES **a cause for celebration** *The victory was a cause for great celebration.* **a celebration of (sb's) life, a celebration to mark sth** *They held a celebration to mark forty years of the lifeboat service.*

celebrity *noun*

- ADJ. **minor** | **local, international, national** | **overnight** | **guest, visiting** | **showbiz, sporting, television**
- QUANT. **host** *Tonight show features a host of celebrities.*
- VERB + CELEBRITY **make sb** *The show's success made her an overnight celebrity.*
- CELEBRITY + NOUN **status** | **chef**
- PHRASES **something of a celebrity** *He became something of a celebrity in his home town.*

celery *noun*

- QUANT. **stick**
- VERB + CELERY **eat, have** | **cook, prepare** | **chop, dice, slice** *Chop the celery and add it to the salad.*
- CELERY + NOUN **leaf, salt, stalk, stick**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

cell *noun*

1 smallest living part of an animal/a plant body
- ADJ. **dead, living | abnormal, normal | blood, brain, muscle, nerve, skin** *red and white blood cells* | **egg, sperm | cancer | animal, human, plant, etc.**
- VERB + CELL **form**
- CELL + VERB **divide** *Cells divide and form new cells.*
- CELL + NOUN **proliferation**
- PHRASES **the nucleus of a cell, the proliferation of cells** *the proliferation of cells in leukaemia*

2 small room
- ADJ. **monk's, nun's | police, prison | padded**
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

cellar *noun*

- ADJ. **damp, dark | deep, underground | vaulted | coal, wine | pub | beer, jazz | disused**
- CELLAR + NOUN **steps | bar, bistro**
- PREP. **in/into the ~** *I went down into the cellar for more wine.*

cello *noun*

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

cement *noun*

- ADJ. **wet | dental**
- VERB + CEMENT **mix**
- CEMENT + VERB **harden, set**
- CEMENT + NOUN **mixer | factory, works**

cemetery *noun*

- ADJ. **local | private, public** *He was buried in a private cemetery.* | **military | Catholic, Jewish, etc.**
- VERB + CEMETERY **be buried in | visit**
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

censor *verb*

- ADV. **heavily** *The film has been heavily censored.*

censorship *noun*

- ADJ. **strict | government, military, state, wartime | film, media, political, press**
- VERB + CENSORSHIP **impose** *The government has imposed strict censorship on the press.* | **abolish, lift | tighten** *Political censorship has been tightened under the new regime.* | **relax | practise** *to take action against institutions practising censorship*

censure *noun*

- ADJ. **severe | public**
- VERB + CENSURE **come under, face** *He could face censure from his colleagues.* | **avoid, escape** *Costs will have to be kept down if severe public censure is to be avoided.*
- CENSURE + NOUN **motion**
- PHRASES **a motion/vote of censure** *Right-wing parties tabled a motion of censure against the government.*

censure *verb*

- ADV. **severely** *The manager was severely censured for negligence.*
- PREP. **for**

census *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, full | general, national, official | decennial | population**
- VERB + CENSUS **carry out, conduct, take** *A national census is taken every ten years.*
- CENSUS + NOUN **data, figures, records, results, return, statistics**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the questions asked in the census*

centenary *noun*

- VERB + CENTENARY **celebrate, commemorate, mark** *The club will hold a party to celebrate its centenary.*
- CENTENARY + NOUN **celebrations, year**

centimetre *noun*

⇨ Note at MEASURE

central *adj.*

1 in the centre
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very** *Our house is very central, so we can easily get to theatres and cinemas.* | **quite**

2 most important
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **absolutely** *This distinction is of absolutely central importance.*
- PREP. **to** *These facts are central to the case.*

centralized *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly** *a highly centralized bureaucracy* | **fully | increasingly**

centre *noun*

1 middle point/part of sth
- ADJ. **dead, very** *We've bought a flat in the very centre of Cambridge.* | **city, town | soft** *chocolates with soft centres*
- PREP. **at the ~ (of)** *at the centre of the universe* **in the ~ (of)** *a museum in the centre of Birmingham*
- PHRASES **the centre of the city, the centre of (the) town**

2 important place for sth
- ADJ. **important, leading, main, major, nerve** *(figurative) the economic nerve centre of Germany* | **international, local, national, regional, world | commercial, cultural, economic, financial, industrial, trading, urban** *London is one of the main financial centres of the world.*
- PREP. **~ for** *The university is a major centre for scientific research.*
- PHRASES **a centre of excellence** (= a place where a particular kind of work is done well), **a centre of government/population/power**

3 **the centre** moderate political position
- CENTRE + NOUN **party | ground** *a party that occupies the centre ground of British politics*
- PHRASES **left/right of centre** *Politically, she is slightly left of centre.*

century *noun*

- ADJ. **19th, 20th, etc.** *a 17th-century building* | **earlier, last, later, past, previous** *Later centuries saw the development of a complex transport system.* | **new, next** *a celebration to welcome the new century* | **present**
- PREP. **during the ~** *The town's population doubled during the 19th century.* **for ~s** *There have been orchards in this region for centuries.* **in the… ~** *He lived in the 16th century.* **over the ~s** *a marble floor worn smooth over the centuries* **through the ~s** *a tradition passed down through the centuries* **throughout the ~** *America's influence on culture grew throughout the 20th century.*
- PHRASES **centuries old** *a centuries old custom* **the turn of the century**

cereal *noun*

1 plant

- VERB + CEREAL **grow, produce | harvest**
- CEREAL + NOUN **crop, foods, products | farmer, grower, producer | production**

2 food

- ADJ. **fortified** *fortfied breakfast cereals* | **breakfast | bran, wholegrain, wholewheat**
- QUANT. **bowl** *a big bowl of cereal* | **packet**
- VERB + CEREAL **eat, have** *having cereal for breakfast*
- CEREAL + VERB **be fortified** *a wholewheat cereal fortified with B group vitamins*
- CEREAL + NOUN **bowl, packet**

ceremonial *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **purely** *The monarch's role is purely ceremonial.* | **essentially, largely, primarily**

ceremony *noun*

1 formal public/religious event

- ADJ. **brief, short | quiet, simple | elaborate, glittering | moving, solemn | private, public | formal, important, official, special** *an official ceremony to welcome the new director* | **opening** *the opening ceremony of the Olympic games* | **closing | award/awards | civil | cake-cutting, dedication, degree, funeral, graduation, inauguration, initiation, marriage, naming, presentation, prize-giving, signing, swearing-in, tea, unveiling, wedding, wreath-laying** *the Japanese tea ceremony*
- VERB + CEREMONY **conduct, hold, perform** *The marriage ceremony was performed by the bishop.* | **attend, be present at, take part in**
- CEREMONY + VERB **take place | mark sth** *a special ceremony to mark the end of the war*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *the guest of honour at the ceremony* **during a/the ~** *A lot of people wept during the funeral ceremony.* **in a/the ~** *They were married in a simple ceremony.*

2 formal behaviour/traditional actions and words

- VERB + CEREMONY **stand on** *I won't stand on ceremony* (= be formal).
- PREP. **without ~** *Without ceremony, the woman slammed the door shut in my face.*
- PHRASES **pomp and ceremony** *the pomp and ceremony of a royal wedding* **with due/great ceremony** *With due ceremony, he took the oath to become president.*

certain *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *Digby looked certain to be the next president.* | **become, grow** *I grew more and more certain that she was lying to me.* | **make** *Make certain that you lock the door if you go out.*
- ADV. **very | absolutely, quite | by no means** *It's by no means certain that she'll get the job.* | **almost | fairly, pretty**
- PREP. **about/of** *Are you quite certain about this?*
- PHRASES **can't/couldn't say for certain** *I think she's a teacher, but I couldn't say for certain.* **not know for certain** *I don't know for certain how many people are coming.*

certainty *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, complete | reasonable, virtual** *It's a virtual certainty that petrol will go up in price.*
- QUANT. **degree** *It's difficult to predict with any degree of certainty how much it will cost.*
- PREP. **with ~** *I couldn't say with absolute certainty that he's here.*
- PHRASES **a lack of certainty** *There seems to be a lack of certainty over what we should do.* **the one/only certainty** *The one certainty left in a changing world is death.*

certificate *noun*

- ADJ. **birth, death, marriage | medical | school, school-leaving**
- VERB + CERTIFICATE **award (sb), issue** *The police are waiting for the doctor to issue a death certificate.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a certificate of motor insurance*

chain *noun*

1 line of rings joined together

- ADJ. **long** *She wore a long gold chain round her neck.* | **rusty | bicycle | daisy, paper**
- QUANT. **length**
- CHAIN + VERB **clank**
- CHAIN + NOUN **mail** (= armour made of chains)
- PREP. **in ~s** *The prisoner was led away in chains.* **off sb's/the ~** *Let the dog off its chain.* **on a/the ~** *They kept the dog on a chain all day long.*
- PHRASES **a chain of office** *The mayor was wearing his chain of office.* **a chain on the door** *Put the chain on the door before you go to bed.* **a link in the chain**

2 number of things in a line

- ADJ. **island, mountain | human**
- VERB + CHAIN **form** *The people formed a human chain to pass the supplies up the beach.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a chain of volcanic islands*
- PHRASES **a chain of command** (= a system by which instructions are passed from one person to another)

3 group of shops, etc. owned by the same company

- ADJ. **big, large | small | hotel, supermarket, etc.**
- CHAIN + NOUN **store**
- PREP. **~ of** *a chain of clothes shops*
- PHRASES **part of a chain** *This hotel is part of a large chain.*

4 number of connected events/situations

- ADJ. **complex** *the complex chain of events that led to the war* | **unbroken** *There has been an unbroken chain of great violinists in the family.* | **causal | food** *efforts to ensure that dioxins do not enter the food chain*
- CHAIN + NOUN **reaction**
- PHRASES **a chain of events**

chair *noun*

1 piece of furniture

- ADJ. **comfortable, comfy, cushioned, padded, plush, soft, upholstered | hard, uncomfortable | deep, low | high-backed, straight-backed, wing-backed, winged | rush-seated, tubular | rickety | reclining, swivel** *He lay back in the reclining chair and went to sleep.* ◇ *She returned to the swivel chair behind her desk.* | **folding | matching** *a dining table and four matching chairs* | **empty** *'Please, be my guest.' He gestured towards an empty chair.* | **antique | mahogany, plastic, steel, wooden | dining, fireside, kitchen**
- QUANT. **row | set** *a set of antique mahogany dining chairs*
- VERB + CHAIR **draw up, pull up** *'Can I join you?' 'Yes, pull up a chair.'* | **pull out** *He pulled out a chair for her.* | **have, take** *Come in and take a chair.* | **give sb** *He gave her his chair.* | **push back** *He pushed back his chair and got to his feet.* | **collapse into/onto, flop (back/down) in/into/on/onto, lower yourself into, settle (back) in/into/on, sink (back/down) into, slump (back/down) in/into, sit (down) in/on** *She dropped her bags and flopped down into the nearest chair.* | **lean back in, lie back in, lounge (back) in, recline (back) in, relax (back) in, sprawl/be sprawled in** *He put his feet up on the desk and lay back in his chair.* | **lean forward in | straighten (up) in** *They straightened in their chairs when the manager burst in.* | **get out of, get up from/off, jump (up) from/out of, leap out of/from, rise from** *He got up from his chair to address the meeting.* | **rock backwards and forwards**

in/on, shift (about) in, tip back *He was shifting about uneasily in his chair.* ◇ *She tipped her chair back and fixed her gaze full upon him.* | **swivel (on), swivel (round) in** *She swivelled round in her chair and picked up the phone.*

- CHAIR + VERB **be placed, stand** *A chair stood facing the window.* | **swivel** | **fall over, tip up, topple over** | **creak** *The chair creaked every time I moved.*
- CHAIR + NOUN **arm, back, leg, seat** | **cover, frame** | **lift** *A chair lift carried us to the top of the ski run.*
- PREP. **into a/the ~** *He sank into his chair and opened the letter.* **in a/the ~** *She leaned back in her chair and lit a cigarette.* **on a/the ~** *A cat was asleep on the chair.*
- PHRASES **the arm/back/edge/leg of a chair** *She gripped the arm of her chair as she spoke.* ◇ *He sat nervously on the edge of his chair.*

⇨ See ARMCHAIR

2 person controlling a meeting

- ADJ. **acting, deputy**
- VERB + CHAIR **occupy, take** *Anne took the chair* (= was chairperson) *in Carol's absence.* | **address (sth to)** *Please address your questions to the chair.* | **appoint sb (as), elect sb (as)**
- PREP. **in the ~** *Paul Ryan was in the chair* (= was chairman) *at today's meeting.*

3 position of university professor

- ADJ. **professorial**
- VERB + CHAIR **hold, occupy** *He held the Chair of Botany at Cambridge University for thirty years.* | **appoint sb to** | **relinquish, resign** | **endow, establish** *A private benefactor endowed the new Chair of Japanese Literature.*

chairman, chairwoman *noun*

- ADJ. **club, committee, company, party** *She is married to a company chairman.* | **acting, former, incoming, new, outgoing** *a report by the outgoing chairman*
- VERB + CHAIRMAN, CHAIRWOMAN **hold the post of** | **elect (sb)**
- CHAIRMAN, CHAIRWOMAN + VERB **resign, stand down** *The chairman resigned following the allegations.*

⇨ Note at JOB

chalk *noun*

1 white rock

- VERB + CHALK **quarry**
- CHALK + NOUN **cliff, downs, hill** | **pit, quarry**

2 small stick of chalk

- ADJ. **coloured** *a box of coloured chalks*
- QUANT. **piece, stick**
- CHALK + NOUN **drawing** | **dust**
- PREP. **in ~** *She had scrawled a note in chalk across the blackboard.* **with ~** *to write with chalk*

challenge *noun*

1 sth new and difficult

- ADJ. **big, considerable, enormous, great, huge, radical, real, serious, significant, strong** | **difficult, tough** | **major, main** | **fresh, new** | **exciting, interesting** | **economic, environmental, intellectual, political, technical, technological** *Liszt's piano music presents an enormous technical challenge.*
- VERB + CHALLENGE **be, pose, present** | **face, meet, respond to, rise to, take on/up** *The gallery has risen to the challenge of exhibiting the works of young artists.* ◇ *He has taken on some exciting new challenges with this job.*
- CHALLENGE + VERB **face sb** *the challenges facing nurses in casualty*

2 that shows that sb refuses to accept sth

- ADJ. **serious** | **direct** | **effective** | **legal**
- VERB + CHALLENGE **be, present, represent** *The demonstration represents a direct challenge to the new law.*
- PREP. **~ to** *a legal challenge to the president's power*

3 invitation to compete

- ADJ. **leadership, title** *his title challenge to the heavyweight champion*
- VERB + CHALLENGE **issue, mount** *plans to mount a leadership challenge within the party* | **accept, take up** *I accepted his challenge to a game of chess.* | **beat off, fight off** *Our team will have to fight off the challenge from better trained teams.*
- PREP. **~ from** *a challenge from the other political party*

challenge *verb*

1 question whether sth is right/true

- ADV. **directly** *The newspaper was directly challenging the government's legitimacy.* | **seriously** | **effectively** *She was effectively challenging the whole basis on which society was run.* | **successfully** *The story was completely untrue and was successfully challenged in court.*
- PREP. **on** *She challenged him on his old-fashioned views.*

2 invite sb to compete, argue, etc.

- ADV. **seriously** *No one has seriously challenged the champion.* | **successfully, unsuccessfully**
- PREP. **for** *She was poised to challenge for the party leadership.* **to** *The count challenged him to a duel.*

challenger *noun*

- ADJ. **closest, main, nearest, serious, strong** *Her nearest challenger is the vice-president.*
- VERB + CHALLENGER **take on** *He took on various challengers, but refused to fight Jackson.*
- PREP. **~ for** *the main challengers for the European title* **~ to** *a challenger to the prime minister*

challenging *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove** | **make sth** *We have changed the course to make it more challenging.* | **find sth** *He found the course academically challenging.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **quite** | **enough, sufficiently** *The tasks were not challenging enough for me and I got bored.* | **academically, intellectually, politically**

chamber *noun*

1 room/enclosed space

- ADJ. **dark, dim** | **secret** | **inner, main, outer** | **underground, subterranean** | **burial, tomb** *a Bronze Age burial chamber* | **torture** | **gas** *Millions died in the gas chambers in the war.* | **decompression**
- CHAMBER + NOUN **door**

2 large room, especially used for formal meetings

- ADJ. **grand, great, large, vast** | **high-ceilinged, vaulted** | **conference, council, debating**
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

3 part of a government

- ADJ. **first, lower, second, upper** | **elected** *She believes there should be an elected second chamber to replace the House of Lords.* | **legislative, parliamentary**
- PHRASES **the Chamber of Deputies**

champagne *noun*

- ADJ. **excellent, fine, good** | **French** | **expensive** | **cheap** | **vintage** | **non-vintage** | **fake** | **pink** | **chilled, iced**
- QUANT. **bottle, magnum** | **glass**
- VERB + CHAMPAGNE **have** *I'll have some champagne, please.* | **drink, quaff, sip** *Do you drink champagne?* ◇ *They sat there sipping their champagne.* | **pour (sb)** | **celebrate (sth) with** | **chill**
- CHAMPAGNE + VERB **flow** (*figurative*) *The champagne flowed like water at the wedding reception.* | **be/go flat** *The champagne had been left open and had gone flat.*

• CHAMPAGNE + NOUN **bottle, flute** (= a kind of glass), **glass | cork** *We heard the sound of popping champagne corks next door.* | **breakfast, reception** *There was a champagne reception before the concert.* | **house** (= company)

champion *noun*

• ADJ. **great, supreme, undisputed | defending, reigning** *The reigning champion will defend her title tonight.* | **former | national, world | Olympic** *the Olympic skating champion* | **boxing, snooker, etc.**
• VERB + CHAMPION **become, be crowned** *He was crowned champion after his fight in Atlanta.*
• CHAMPION + VERB **defend her/his title**
• CHAMPION + NOUN **fighter, jockey, etc.**

championship *noun*

1 competition
• ADJ. **major | international, national, world | British, European, etc. | swimming, tennis, etc.**
• VERB + CHAMPIONSHIP **hold** *The championships are to be held in Rome.* | **compete in, take part in** *Over thirty children will compete in the swimming championships.* | **win** *She has won four major championships in the last five years.* | **lose**
• CHAMPIONSHIP + VERB **take place**
• CHAMPIONSHIP + NOUN **final, game, match, race | title, winner**
• PREP. **at a/the ~** *I saw him play at last year's tennis championship.* **in a/the ~** *the teams in the championship*

2 position/title of champion
• VERB + CHAMPIONSHIP **hold** *Who holds the championship at the moment?* | **take, win** *He's won the championship for the third time in a row.* | **lose | regain | retain** *She managed to retain the championship.*

chance *noun*

1 possibility
• ADJ. **excellent, good, high, strong | fair, fighting, sporting, realistic, reasonable** *There's a fair chance that nobody will come to the talk.* | **little, the merest, million-to-one, minimal, outside, slender, slim, slight** *There was only a million-to-one chance of it happening.* ◇ *As long as there is an outside chance, we will go for it.* | **fifty-fifty, one-in-three, -four, etc., 10, 20, etc. per cent** *They have a 90 per cent chance of success.* | **survival** *What are his survival chances?* | **election, electoral**
• VERB + CHANCE **give sb** *The doctors gave him* (= said that he had) *little chance of surviving the night.* | **be in with, have, stand** *After a poor start, they are now in with a chance of winning the league.* ◇ *He doesn't stand a chance of winning against such an experienced player.* | **assess, rate** *How do you rate our chances of finding her?* | **fancy** *I don't fancy our chances of getting there on time.* | **boost, enhance, improve, increase, maximize | compromise, jeopardize, lessen, minimize, prejudice, reduce, ruin, scupper, spoil**
• PREP. **by any ~** *Are you by any chance Mr Ludd?* | **~ of** *The missing climber's chances of survival are slim.*
• PHRASES **fat chance** (*informal*) *Fat chance* (= there is no chance) *of him helping you!* **have every chance** *She has every chance of passing the exam if she works hard.* **no chance!** *'Will he lend us his car?' 'No chance!'* **on the off chance** (= just in case) *I rang the firm just on the off chance that they might have a vacancy.*

2 opportunity
• ADJ. **fair, good, great, ideal, wonderful** *She played left-handed to give her opponent a fair chance.* ◇ *This is the ideal chance for him to show his ability.* | **big** *This is your big chance—grab it with both hands.* | **once-in-a-lifetime | last, second** *The teacher gave her one last chance to prove she could behave.* ◇ *There are no second chances in this business.* | **educational, life** *The new college is intended to improve the life chances of children in the inner city.* | **clear, clear-cut, scoring** (*sport*)
• QUANT. **element** *There is always an element of chance in buying a used car.*
• VERB + CHANCE **get, have** *I finally had the chance to meet my hero.* | **deserve** *He deserves the chance to give his side of the story.* | **welcome** *I would welcome the chance to give my opinion.* | **give sb, offer (sb), provide (sb with) | deny sb** *No child should be denied the chance of growing up in a family.* | **wait for | create, make** (*sport*) *The team created several clear chances but failed to score.* | **spot** *She spotted her chance of making a quick profit.* | **grab, grasp, jump at, seize, take** *Travis had left the door open—she seized her chance and was through it like a shot.* ◇ *Take every chance that comes your way.* | **blow, miss, pass up, squander, throw away, turn down, waste** *They blew their chance to go second in the league.* ◇ *I wouldn't pass up the chance of working for them.*
• CHANCE + VERB **arise, come up, come your way** *When the chance came up to go to Paris, she jumped at it.*
• PHRASES **given the chance** *Given the chance, I'd stop work tomorrow.* **half a chance** *The dog always runs off when it gets half a chance.* **let a chance slip (by)** *If she let this chance slip, she would regret it for the rest of her life.*

3 risk
• VERB + CHANCE **take** *The guide book didn't mention the hotel, but we decided to take a chance.*
• PREP. **~ on** *The manager took a chance on the young goalkeeper.* **~ with** *The police were taking no chances with the protesters.*

4 luck/fortune
• ADJ. **pure, sheer | happy, lucky** *By a happy chance he bumped into an old friend on the plane.* | **unlucky**
• VERB + CHANCE **leave sth to** *Leaving nothing to chance, he delivered the letter himself.*
• PREP. **by ~** *The police came upon the hideout purely by chance.* **due to ~** *The results could simply be due to chance.* **through ~** *I got most answers right through sheer chance.*
• PHRASES **a game of chance** *Chess is not a game of chance.* **take your chances** (= take a risk in the hope that things will turn out well) *He took his chances and jumped into the water.*

change *noun*

1 becoming/making sb/sth different
• ADJ. **big, considerable, dramatic, drastic, enormous, extensive, far-reaching, fundamental, important, major, marked, massive, momentous, profound, radical, revolutionary, sea, significant, substantial, sweeping, wholesale** *Television has undergone a sea change in the last two years.* | **complete | irreversible | systematic | cosmetic, marginal, minimal, minor, slight, small, subtle | long-term, short-term | abrupt, rapid, sudden | gradual | seasonal | net, overall** *net change in incomes* | **global | qualitative, quantitative | beneficial, desirable, effective, exciting, nice, pleasant, refreshing, welcome | unwelcome | unanticipated, unexpected, unforeseen | climate, constitutional, cultural, demographic, economic, environmental, legislative, organizational, political, population, social, structural, technological | culture, gear, name, policy, rule, sex** *the need for a culture change within the industry* ◇ *He made a rapid gear change as he approached the bend.*
• VERB + CHANGE **make** *I made a couple of minor changes to my opening paragraph.* ◇ *It made a pleasant change not having to work.* | **bring about, cause, effect, force, produce** *How far does war bring about social change?* | **introduce** *We are going to introduce a few changes to the system.* | **undergo | show** *He needs to show a change in attitude if he is to succeed.* | **reflect** *Courses offered in schools reflect changes in the job market.* | **adapt to** *Businesses have to adapt to change.* | **call for, demand** *He called for a change of mood in Scottish polit-*

ics. | **oppose**, **resist** *We resist change because of fear of the unknown.* | **prevent** | **be subject to** *Train times are subject to change without notice.*

- CHANGE + VERB **occur, take place** *Major economic changes have occurred recently.*
- PREP. **for a ~** *I usually take the bus to town, but today I cycled for a change.* | **~ from, ~ in** *The last few years have seen a change in attitudes to single parents.* **~ of** *a change of government* **~ to** *the change from the old to the new system*
- PHRASES **a change for the better/worse** *I reckon we've all made a big change for the better.* **a change of clothes** (= an extra set of clothes to change into) *Take a change of clothes in case you get dirty.* **a change of heart/mind** *He said he's not coming, but he might have a change of heart.* **a change of scene** *I needed a change of scene after being in the job for so long.* **a climate of change** *In the current climate of change, adaptability is vital.* **the pace/rate of change** *A successful company must keep up with the pace of technological change.* **a period of change** *The eighties were a period of great change in publishing.* **the tide of change** *The president realized he could not hold back the tide of change, and resigned.*

2 coins/notes of low value

- ADJ. **loose, small** *He emptied his pockets of loose change.*
- PREP. **in ~** *I've got about 25 dollars in change.* | **~ for** *Ask the cashier if she has change for a £20 note.*

3 money you get back if you pay too much

- VERB + CHANGE **check, count** | **give** *This machine does not give change.* | **get** | **take** | **keep** *I told the taxi driver to keep the change.*
- PREP. **~ from/out of** *The meal left me with not much change from £100.*

change *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, dramatically, fundamentally, a lot, radically, significantly** *Our way of life has changed dramatically over the last ten years.* ◇ *Jane has changed a lot since she went to university.* | **completely** | **(very) little** *The village has actually changed very little in the last hundred years.* | **all the time, constantly, continually** *The language is changing all the time.* | **fast, rapidly, suddenly** *Attitudes to marriage are changing fast.* | **gradually, slowly**
- PREP. **from** *Leeds changed from a small market town into a busy city.* **into, to** *His anger changed to sadness.*
- PHRASES **change out of all recognition** *The town had changed out of all recognition.*

channel *noun*

1 television/radio station

- ADJ. **radio, television/TV, video** | **cable, satellite, terrestrial** | **commercial, independent** | **movie, sports, etc.**
- VERB + CHANNEL **change (to), switch (to/over to), tune (in) to** *I changed channels when the news came on.*
- CHANNEL + VERB **broadcast** *This channel broadcasts 24 hours a day.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *There's an interesting documentary on Channel 4 tonight.*

2 route for sending information

- ADJ. **direct, indirect** *Journalists always have indirect channels for getting information.* | **formal, official** *She first tried to get a doctor's certificate through official channels.* | **informal** | **appropriate, conventional, normal, proper, right, usual** | **effective** *an effective channel for communication* | **diplomatic** | **communication, distribution** *worldwide distribution channels*
- VERB + CHANNEL **go through, use** *If you want a visa, you will have to go through the proper channels.* | **establish, open (up)** *attempts to open up new channels of communication*
- PREP. **through a/the ~** *The government hopes to settle the dispute through diplomatic channels.*
- PHRASES **a channel of communication, channels of distribution**

3 narrow area of water

- ADJ. **deep** | **narrow** | **drainage, irrigation** *Irrigation channels supply the crops with water.* | **river, water** *The estate has fountains and water channels.* | **shipping**

chant *noun*

- ADJ. **incessant** | **melodious** | **ritual, traditional** | **Gregorian** *a group of monks singing Gregorian chant* | **football** *You could hear the football chants a long way from the stadium.*
- VERB + CHANT **sing** | **keep up** *The crowd kept up an incessant chant of 'Out! Out! Out!'* | **hear**
- PREP. **amid ~s, to ~s** *The band left the stage to chants of 'We want more! We want more!'* | **~ of**

chaos *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, complete, total, utter** | **general** | **administrative, domestic, economic, financial, political, social, traffic**
- VERB + CHAOS **bring, cause, create, lead to** *A serious road accident caused traffic chaos yesterday.* | **end in, result in** *The game ended in chaos.* | **be plunged/thrown into, descend/slide into** *The country is sliding into economic chaos.* | **face** | **avert, avoid**
- CHAOS + VERB **break out, ensue** *Chaos broke out when the fire started.* ◇ *I lost my bag in the ensuing chaos.* | **reign, rule** *The government collapsed and chaos reigned.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The airport was in chaos during the strike.*
- PHRASES **on/to the brink of chaos** *The country was brought to the brink of chaos.* **order out of chaos** *His brave leadership has created order out of chaos.* **a route to chaos, a scene of chaos** *Doctors worked day and night amid scenes of utter chaos.* **a state of chaos**

chaotic *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem** *Things often appear chaotic to the outsider.* | **become, get** *Things have been getting chaotic in the office recently.*
- ADV. **really, very** *It was really chaotic just before the show started.* | **absolutely** *Heathrow airport is absolutely chaotic.* | **increasingly** | **a bit, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, somewhat** *Things can be fairly chaotic in our house.*

chap *noun*

- ADJ. **clever, decent, good, jolly, lucky, nice, pleasant** *He was a pleasant chap but didn't talk much.* | **good-looking, handsome** | **young** | **old** | **poor** *The poor old chap was very shaken by the experience.* | **ordinary**
- PHRASES **not (such) a bad chap** *He's not such a bad chap really.* **sort of chap** *He's a decent sort of chap.*

chapel *noun*

1 part of a church; room/building used as a church

- ADJ. **little, small** | **side** *The funeral was conducted in one of the smaller side chapels.* | **family, hospital, memorial, prison, private, royal, school, wedding** *They were married in a wedding chapel in Las Vegas.*
- CHAPEL + VERB **be dedicated to sb** *The chapel is dedicated to St Michael.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

2 church for some Protestant groups

- ADJ. **Baptist, Methodist, Nonconformist, etc.**
- VERB + CHAPEL **attend, go to** *He goes to chapel every Sunday.*
- PREP. **at ~** *They are still at chapel* (= at a service). **at a/the ~** *They agreed to meet at the chapel after the service.*

chapter *noun*

1 part of a book
- ADJ. **introductory, opening**
- VERB + CHAPTER **read** *I read the first few chapters and then got bored.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *His influence on other writers will be discussed in the next chapter.* | **~ about/on** *a chapter on the city's architecture*

2 particular period
- ADJ. **difficult, sad, unhappy** *Her return to France ended a particularly unhappy chapter in her life.*

character *noun*

1 person's nature/person with a particular nature
- ADJ. **good, excellent, exemplary, impeccable** | **generous, gentle, likeable, lovable, popular** | **colourful, larger-than-life, lively, real** *You must have come across some real characters, working in the circus.* | **reformed** *He used to go out every night, but now he's a reformed character.* | **complex, elusive, enigmatic, odd** | **forceful, formidable, strong** | **weak** | **volatile** | **prickly, unpleasant** | **bad, evil, ruthless, violent** | **dubious, shady, suspicious** *Who's that suspicious character hanging around outside?* | **true** | **local** *The pub was full of colourful local characters.* | **human** | **moral** *a woman of impeccable moral character*
- VERB + CHARACTER **be, have** | **form, make up** | **reveal** *She revealed her true character when anyone disagreed with her.* | **conceal, hide** | **reflect** *His scruffy appearance does not reflect his character.*
- CHARACTER + NOUN **trait** | **defect** | **change** *She's undergone a complete character change since her promotion.* | **reference** *Applicants were required to obtain character references before being considered for the work.* | **assassination** *The defence lawyer attempted a character assassination of the witness* (= tried to show the witness had a bad character). | **actor, actress**
- PREP. **in sb's ~** *It's not in his character to tell lies.* **out of ~** *The lawyer argued that his client's violent behaviour was out of character.*

2 nature of sth
- ADJ. **distinctive, individual, unique** | **essential, fundamental, intrinsic** | **original** | **traditional** *The renovated buildings retain their traditional character.* | **international, national, regional** *Food in Italy has a distinct regional character.* ◇ *the features that make up the national character* | **intimate** | **public** *the public character of material published on the Internet* | **serious** *offences of a serious character* | **military, political** | **rural, urban** *The development detracts from the rural character of the area.*
- VERB + CHARACTER **have** *Each house in the street has its own distinctive character.* | **assume, take on** *As you move north, the landscape takes on a different character.* | **form, make up** *factors that form the character of a nation* | **lose** *The town centre has lost much of its original character.* | **retain** | **preserve** | **give sth** *It's the basil that gives the sauce its essential character.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The houses are Mediterranean in character.*

3 interesting quality that sth has
- ADJ. **considerable, great**
- VERB + CHARACTER **have** *His face has character—I'll say that for it.* | **add, give sth** *the individual touches that give character to a house*
- PREP. **of ~** *buildings of considerable character*
- PHRASES **full of character** *The restaurant is cheap and full of character.* **have a character of its own/all (of) its own** *Your handwriting has a character of its own.*

4 person's inner strength
- ADJ. **great**
- VERB + CHARACTER **show** *The team showed great character in coming back to win.* | **build** *Adventure camps are considered to be character-building.*
- PHRASES **strength of character**

5 person in a story/film, etc.
- ADJ. **central, chief, leading, main, principal** | **minor, supporting** | **fictional, fictitious** | **believable** | **sympathetic, unsympathetic** | **comic, heroic, tragic** | **cartoon**
- VERB + CHARACTER **play, portray** *The main character is played by Nicole Kidman.* | **develop** *the artist who developed the Superman character* | **kill off** *The writers killed off her character when she wanted to leave the soap.*
- CHARACTER + NOUN **development**
- PREP. **in ~** *The actors remained in character to answer questions from the audience.*

6 letter/sign in writing/printing
- ADJ. **Chinese** | **ASCII, numeric**
- QUANT. **set, string**
- VERB + CHARACTER **insert** | **delete**
- CHARACTER + NOUN **set, string**

characteristic *noun*
- ADJ. **defining, distinctive, distinguishing, identifying, individual, marked, special, striking, unique** | **personal** | **common, family, inherited, national, shared** | **basic, general** | **chief, dominant, main, major, outstanding, principal** | **essential, fundamental, important, key, salient** | **desirable** | **behavioural, biological, cultural, demographic, economic, genetic, physical, psychological, racial, sexual, social** | **human**
- VERB + CHARACTERISTIC **have** *The two species have several characteristics in common.*

characteristic *adj.*
- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, very** *his highly characteristic features* | **entirely, utterly** | **fairly, quite**
- PREP. **of** *a problem that was fairly characteristic of late eighteenth century society*

charade *noun*
- ADJ. **clever, elaborate** | **pathetic, ridiculous**
- VERB + CHARADE **continue, go along with, keep up, maintain, take part in** *I refused to go along with their pathetic charade.*
- PREP. **~ of** *She struggled to maintain the charade of not being afraid.*

charcoal *noun*
- ADJ. **activated**
- QUANT. **lump, piece**
- VERB + CHARCOAL **make, produce** | **burn**
- CHARCOAL + NOUN **stick** | **drawing, sketch**

charge *noun*

1 price asked for sth
- ADJ. **heavy, high** | **reasonable, small** | **minimum** | **fixed, standard** | **total** | **annual, daily, etc.** | **standing** *There is a quarterly standing charge.* | **additional, extra, further** | **admission, bank, call, call-out, cancellation, commission, cover, handling, hire, interest, maintenance, prescription, service**
- VERB + CHARGE **impose, introduce, levy, make** *We make a small charge for wrapping your gift.* | **waive** *They agreed to waive the cancellation charges.* | **incur** *All cancellations incur a charge.* | **pay** | **increase** | **reduce** | **reverse the ~s** (= when telephoning)
- PREP. **at a ~** *This service is available at a nominal charge.* **for a ~** *The hotel operates a bus service to the village for a small charge.* | **~ for** *There is no charge for cashing traveller's cheques.* **~ on** *a charge on company profits*
- PHRASES **free of charge** (= without any charge) *The company will deliver free of charge.*

2 official statement accusing sb of a crime

- ADJ. **grave, serious | lesser, reduced** *He was found guilty on a reduced charge of assault.* | **baseless, false, trumped-up | civil, criminal, disciplinary | assault, corruption, drug/drugs, fraud, murder, etc.**
- VERB + CHARGE **bring, file, lay, level, make** *Police have brought a charge of dangerous driving against the man.* | **bring, prefer, press** (only used with **charges**) | **drop, withdraw | answer, face** *She is almost certain to face criminal charges.* | **admit** *He has admitted the murder charge.* | **deny, dismiss, refute, reject** *The prime minister dismissed the charge that he had misled Parliament.* | **fabricate, trump up** *He accused the government of fabricating the charges for political reasons.* | **investigate | prove, substantiate** *The charges will be difficult to prove.* | **dismiss, throw out** *The court dismissed the charge against him.*
- CHARGE + VERB **allege sth** *new charges alleging the misuse of funds*
- CHARGE + NOUN **sheet** *At the police station a charge sheet was made out.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *She appeared in court on charges of kidnapping and assault.* **without ~** *to be detained/held/released without charge* | **~ against** *The charges against you have been dropped.* **~ of** *a charge of armed robbery* **~ relating to** *charges relating to the embezzlement of public funds*
- PHRASES **bring/prefer/press charges (against sb)** *Many victims of crime are reluctant to press charges against their attackers.*

3 control

- ADJ. **overall** *The conductor has overall charge of the train.* | **personal** *She took personal charge of the files.* | **sole** *Stephen will resume sole charge for the time being.* | **temporary**
- VERB + CHARGE **have | take** *We need somebody to take charge of the financial side.* | **resume | place/put sb in** *John has been put in charge of marketing.*
- PREP. **in ~ (of sb/sth)** *I need to feel more in charge of my life.* **in/under sb's ~** *The child is under my charge until the mother returns from abroad.*

4 sudden attack

- ADJ. **baton, cavalry** *They were driven back by a police baton charge.*
- VERB + CHARGE **lead** *Allen led the charge, but could they get a goal back?* | **sound** *The bugle sounded the charge.*
- CHARGE + VERB **drive sb back**

charge *verb*

1 ask sb to pay money

- ADV. **directly**
- VERB + CHARGE **be entitled to, be free to, have a right to** *Firms are free to charge whatever they like for their services.*
- PREP. **against** *Research and development expenditure is charged against profits in the year it is incurred.* **at** *Stamp Duty will be charged at one per cent.* **for** *We don't charge for delivery.* **on** *The bank charges a commission on all foreign currency transactions.* **to** *The cost is charged directly to the profit and loss account.*
- PHRASES **charge sth to sb's account** *£50 will be charged to your account.*

2 make an official accusation

- ADV. **formally | jointly** *The teenagers were jointly charged with attempted murder.*
- PREP. **in connection with** *A man has been charged in connection with the attack.* **with** *She has not yet been formally charged with the offence.*

3 rush/attack

- ADV. **headlong | around/round, in, out** *The children were all charging around outside.*
- PREP. **at** *I was worried that the animal might charge at us.* **down** *I heard the sound of feet charging down the stairs.* **into** *She charged into the room.* **out of, through, towards** *The rhino charged headlong towards us.* **up**

charged *adj.*

1 full of electricity

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **fully** *It's wise to take a fully charged spare battery with you.* | **negatively, positively | oppositely | electrically** *electrically charged particles*
- PREP. **with**

2 full of strong feeling

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly** *She had a highly charged emotional life.* | **emotionally, erotically, politically** *an emotionally charged atmosphere*
- PREP. **with** *The room was charged with hatred.*

charity *noun*

- ADJ. **local, national | registered | private | animal, cancer, conservation, educational, housing, medical**
- VERB + CHARITY **donate (money) to, give (money) to, support | go to** *All the proceeds from the sale will go to charity.* | **ask for | accept** *They are proud people who don't accept charity.* | **depend on, live on** *They have no money and are forced to live on charity.*
- CHARITY + NOUN **appeal, auction, ball, concert, event, match, show | school | shop | work | worker**
- PREP. **for ~** *The school raised over a hundred pounds for charity.* | **~ for** *a charity for sick children*
- PHRASES **an act of charity**

charm *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great, immense** *a woman of considerable charm* | **easy, natural, quiet, real, special** *His natural charm and wit made him very popular.* | **personal | boyish, feminine | old-fashioned, old-world, period, traditional | rural, rustic** *The farmhouse had a certain rustic charm about it.*
- VERB + CHARM **have, possess | keep, retain** *The village still retains a lot of its old-world charm.* | **turn on, use** *He can certainly turn on the charm when he wants to!* ◇ *I nagged him for a week and used all my feminine charm.* | **exude, ooze** *He oozes charm, but I wouldn't trust him.* | **be immune to, resist** *He was unable to resist her charms.* | **succumb to** *Many women had succumbed to his charms.* | **be lacking in, lack** *The dining room was dark and gloomy, and the food was similarly lacking in charm.* | **lose** *The idea of being a farmer had lost its charm for me by this time.*

charming *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem | find sb/sth**
- ADV. **extremely, really, very | absolutely, altogether, perfectly, quite, thoroughly, utterly** *She looked small and gentle and altogether charming.* | **rather | exquisitely** *an exquisitely charming portrait*

charred *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **badly | slightly** *The meat was slightly charred.* | **hideously** *her hideously charred and blackened features*

chart *noun*

1 diagram showing information

- ADJ. **bar, flow, pie | flip, wall** *Each classroom has a flip chart to write on.* | **organization, progress, weather**
- CHART + VERB **give sth, show sth** *a bar chart showing how sales have increased*

- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the information given in the chart* **on a/the ~** *The percentage of school-leavers is shown on the chart.*

2 detailed map of the sea/sky

- ADJ. **aviation, nautical, navigation**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *The islands were not marked on their chart.*

3 the charts list of pop music records

- ADJ. **album, pop, singles**
- VERB + CHART **enter, go into, hit** *Their single went straight into the charts at number one.* ◇ *His latest single hit the charts last week.* | **be top of, top** *The song topped the charts for three weeks.*
- CHART + NOUN **hit**
- PREP. **in the ~** *Is that song still in the charts?*

charter *noun*

1 official written statement of principles, rights, etc.

- ADJ. **draft** | **founding** | **environmental, social** | **national, UN/United Nations** | **citizens', patients', etc.**
- VERB + CHARTER **draw up** | **sign**
- CHARTER + VERB **set sth out** *The charter clearly sets out children's rights.*
- PREP. **~ for** *a national charter for the protection of animals* **~ of** *a charter of workers' rights*

2 document giving rights to a town/an organization

- ADJ. **royal**
- VERB + CHARTER **give sb/sth, grant sb/sth, issue** | **sign** | **apply for** | **receive** | **revoke**
- PREP. **by ~** *They were given this right by royal charter.*

chase *noun*

- ADJ. **long, short** | **high-speed** | **car** *The film ends with a long car chase.* | **police** | **wild goose** *He sent us on a wild goose chase* (= a search for sth that cannot be found).
- VERB + CHASE **give, take up** *The old lady shouted for help and then gave chase.* ◇ *A police officer arrived on the scene and took up the chase.* | **abandon, give up** *Exhausted and hungry, the hunters finally gave up the chase.* | **join (in)** *Several children joined in the chase.*
- PREP. **in ~ (of)** *She ran in chase of the pram.*
- PHRASES **the thrill of the chase** *What did he really want? Was it just the thrill of the chase?*

chasm *noun*

1 hole in the ground

- ADJ. **deep, gaping, great, huge, yawning**
- CHASM + VERB **open (up)** *Suddenly a huge chasm opened in the earth.*

2 great difference of feelings/interests

- ADJ. **great, huge, unbridgeable, wide, yawning**
- VERB + CHASM **bridge**
- CHASM + VERB **separate sth** *A chasm separates my generation from my parents'.*
- PREP. **~ between** *an attempt to bridge the unbridgeable chasm between the two cultures* **~ of** *a huge chasm of hate and prejudice*

chat *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, little, quick, short** | **long** | **cosy, fireside, friendly, good, nice** | **casual, informal** | **quiet** | **interesting** | **idle** | **confidential, private**
- VERB + CHAT **have** *We had a nice chat over a cup of tea.*
- CHAT + NOUN **show**
- PREP. **~ about** *a chat about his new job* **~ between** *a chat between Mr Blair and a journalist* **~ to/with** *I'll have a chat to John about it.* ◇ *a friendly chat with a neighbour*

chat *verb*

- ADV. **briefly** | **amicably, casually, easily, informally** *You will have a chance to circulate and chat informally.* | **politely** | **away** *They chatted away to each other.*
- PREP. **about** *We chatted briefly about the weather.* **to** *George was in the kitchen chatting to some friends.* **with** *I spent a happy half-hour chatting with a friend.*

chatter *noun*

- ADJ. **constant, endless, incessant** *Her constant chatter was starting to annoy me.* | **excited, nervous, noisy** | **idle** *I wish you'd stop wasting time in idle chatter.*
- PREP. **~ about** *She was full of chatter about her new friends.*

chatter *verb*

- ADV. **excitedly, happily** | **away, on** *He chattered on happily for about half an hour.*
- PREP. **about** *We chattered about work.* **to** *chattering excitedly to her friends*

chauffeur *noun*

- ADJ. **uniformed**
- CHAUFFEUR + VERB **drive (sb/sth)** *The chauffeur drove them straight to the theatre.*
- PHRASES **chauffeur-driven** *The newly-weds set off in a chauffeur-driven limousine.*

⇨ Note at JOB

chauvinism *noun*

- ADJ. **male** | **national** | **British, Russian, etc.**

chauvinist *noun*

- ADJ. **male**
- PHRASES **a male chauvinist pig**

cheap *adj., adv.*

1 low price

- VERBS **be, be going** *a brand new radio going cheap* | **buy sth, sell sth** *They're selling fabrics cheap this week.* | **not come** *Shoes like that don't come cheap.*
- ADV. **amazingly, extremely, incredibly, remarkably, ridiculously, very** *It's a good restaurant, and incredibly cheap.* | **comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively** | **hardly, not exactly** *At £60 000 the car is not exactly cheap* (= it is very expensive). | **suspiciously** *The watch was suspiciously cheap; it was probably a fake.* | **buy/get sth on the cheap** *The school managed to get a couple of computers on the cheap.*

2 poor quality

- VERBS **be, look** *The glasses are plain without looking cheap.*
- PHRASES **cheap and nasty** *cheap and nasty products with brand names you've never heard of*

check *noun*

1 close look to make sure sth is safe/correct

- ADJ. **complete, full, thorough** | **careful, close, rigorous, tight** | **cursory, quick** | **periodic, regular, routine** | **annual, daily, etc.** | **constant, continuous** | **random, spot** *In a series of spot checks, police searched buses crossing the border.* | **cross** (also **cross-check**), **double** (also **double-check**) | **independent** | **visual** *I did a quick visual check of the engine.* | **dental, fitness, health, medical** | **police, safety, security** | **identity** | **customs, immigration, passport** | **stock** | **quality** | **spell/spelling** *I do a spell check on all my emails.* | **sound** *The band wants to do a sound check before the concert.*
- VERB + CHECK **carry out, conduct, do, give sth,**

have, make, run *I'll just have a quick check to see if the letter's arrived.* ◇ *A thorough check is made before the luggage is put on the plane.* ◇ *We're running a police check on all applicants for the job.* | **keep, maintain** *Police are keeping a close check on the house.* | **go for** *I have to go for a dental check.*

- PREP. **~on** *a routine check on the factory*

2 control/restraint

- ADJ. **natural** *Leaving some fields fallow provided a natural check on insect populations.*
- VERB + CHECK **act as, provide** | **hold sth in, keep sth in** *You need to keep your temper in check!*
- PREP. **~on** *The law acts as a check on people's behaviour.*

check *verb*

- ADV. **always, daily, regularly** *Always check that the electricity is switched off before you start.* ◇ *Check the engine oil level regularly.* | **carefully, thoroughly**
- VERB + CHECK **had better, must, need to, should** *We had better check that all the doors are locked.*
- PREP. **against** *I'll need to check these figures against last year's.* **for** *Check the roof for loose slates.* **with** *I checked with her to see if she needed any help.*
- PHRASES **be worth checking** *It's worth checking that there is no rust on the car.* **check to see if/whether** *He was just checking to see if I was in my room.*

checklist *noun*

- ADJ. **useful** | **mental**
- VERB + CHECKLIST **have** | **use** | **draw up, produce** *My boss is drawing up a checklist of my duties.* | **go through, run through** *We ran through the checklist of points to consider when buying a computer.*
- PREP. **~ for** *a useful checklist for assessing different schools* **~ of** *a checklist of questions*

checkout *noun*

- ADJ. **supermarket**
- VERB + CHECKOUT **go through, walk through** *You can't just go through the checkout without paying!*
- CHECKOUT + NOUN **assistant, girl, operator**
- PREP. **at the ~** *He hates waiting at the checkout.*

checkpoint *noun*

- ADJ. **border** | **army, military** | **vehicle**
- VERB + CHECKPOINT **set up** *The army has set up checkpoints on all the major roads in the area.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *We were stopped at the checkpoint.* **through a/the ~** *The police waved our car through the border checkpoint.*

check-up *noun*

- ADJ. **thorough** | **regular** | **annual, monthly, etc.** | **routine** | **dental, health, medical**
- VERB + CHECK-UP **go for, have** *At your age, you should have regular check-ups.* | **do, give (sb)** *The company doctor does check-ups on Wednesdays.*

cheek *noun*

1 part of the face

- ADJ. **flushed, hot** | **cool** | **smooth, soft** | **ashen, pale, pallid, pasty** | **blushing, pink, rosy, scarlet** | **sunken** *His red-rimmed eyes and sunken cheeks betrayed his lack of sleep.* | **hamster/hamster-like, plump** | **unshaven** | **tear-stained, wet** *Her cheeks were wet with tears.*
- VERB + CHEEK **brush, dab (at), stroke, touch** *She dabbed at her cheeks with a handkerchief.* | **kiss, peck** | **give (sb), proffer** *She proffered her cheek to kiss.*
- CHEEK + VERB **blaze, burn, flame, grow hot, redden** *He felt his cheeks burning with shame.*
- PREP. **across sb's/the ~** *She gave him a sharp slap across his cheek.* **against sb's ~** *She laid her cheek against his.* **down sb's ~** *A tear slid down her cheek.* **in sb's ~s** *She had a healthy bloom in her cheeks.* **on sb's/the ~** *He kissed his mother on both cheeks and got on the train.*
- PHRASES **bring the colour (back) to your cheeks, the colour floods/rises/rushes to your cheeks** *The colour flooded to his cheeks when he realized he was being watched.* **a kiss/peck on the cheek** *She gave him a peck on the cheek and said goodbye.*

2 lack of respect

- ADJ. **awful, bare-faced, colossal** *It's an awful cheek, the way he keeps asking you to lend him money.* | **bleeding** (*taboo*), **bloody** (*taboo*), **damned**
- VERB + CHEEK **have** *He's got a cheek, making you wait outside his office.*
- PHRASES **Of all the cheek!/What (a) cheek!** *He asked you for money? Of all the cheek!*

cheekbone *noun*

- ADJ. **high, prominent** | **perfect, sculptured** | **broken, cracked, fractured**
- PREP. **beneath sb's ~s** *The hollows beneath his cheekbones showed his stress.* **on sb's ~s** *A flush of anger appeared on her cheekbones.* **over sb's ~s** *The skin stretched taut over his cheekbones.*

cheer *noun*

- ADJ. **big, deafening, great, hearty, huge, loud, rousing** *The players were greeted by rousing cheers.*
- VERB + CHEER **give (sb)** *They gave a big cheer when I finally arrived.* | **be greeted by/with, get, raise** *She got a loud cheer when she finished speaking.*
- CHEER + VERB **go up** *A deafening cheer went up from the crowd.*
- CHEER + NOUN **leader**
- PREP. **amid/amidst ~** *He accepted the prize amid cheers.* **to ~s** *She went off the stage to loud cheers.* | **~ for** *a cheer for democracy* **~ from** *There were loud cheers from the crowd.* **~ of** *cheers of welcome*
- PHRASES **three cheers for sb/sth** *Three cheers for Mr Jones, who has been such a wonderful teacher!*

cheer *verb*

1 shout to encourage sb

- ADV. **loudly, wildly** *The crowd cheered loudly as the goalkeeper made a brilliant save.*
- PREP. **for** *The fans cheered for their team.*

2 make sb happy/more hopeful

- ADV. **greatly, a lot** *I was greatly cheered by this news.* ◇ *Talking to Jane cheered me up a lot.* | **a bit** | **up**
- PREP. **(up) with** *I cheered her up with memories of our holidays together.*

cheerful *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become** | **keep, remain, stay** *I'm amazed that she keeps so cheerful.* | **keep sb** *We tried to keep him cheerful.*
- ADV. **amazingly, extremely, incredibly, remarkably, very** | **almost** | **fairly, quite** | **falsely** *'The doctor is on her way,' said Mrs Morris, sounding falsely cheerful.*

cheese *noun*

- ADJ. **hard** | **soft** | **sharp, strong** | **mild** | **full-fat, low-fat** | **grated, melted, toasted** | **processed** | **blue, cottage, cream, curd, goat's, smoked** | **Cheddar, Parmesan, etc.** | **Dutch, Swiss, etc.**
- QUANT. **chunk, crumb, hunk, lump, piece, slice**

- VERB + CHEESE **eat, have | make | cut, grate, slice** *Cut the cheese into cubes.* | **melt | sprinkle (sth with), top (sth with)** *Sprinkle the cheese over the beans.* ◇ *Sprinkle the potatoes with grated cheese and grill for a few minutes.*
- CHEESE + NOUN **fondue, omelette, roll, sandwich, sauce, soufflé | board** (= a board on which cheese is cut and served; a selection of cheeses served during a meal) | **factory**
- PHRASES **bread and cheese, cheese and biscuits, cheese on toast, a selection of cheeses**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

chef *noun*

- ADJ. **excellent, good | cordon bleu | head, maître, master | apprentice, second, sous, trainee** *He took a job as a sous chef in a London hotel.*

⇨ Note at JOB

chemical *noun*

- ADJ. **pure | organic | inorganic, synthetic | dangerous, harmful, hazardous, poisonous, toxic | agricultural, household, industrial**
- VERB + CHEMICAL **manufacture, produce | discharge, dump** *chemicals discharged by industry into our lakes and rivers* | **be exposed to** *Many workers are regularly exposed to dangerous chemicals.*
- CHEMICAL/CHEMICALS + NOUN **factory, plant, works** *pollution from a big chemicals plant* | **business, company | industry, manufacturing**

chemist *noun*

1 person who prepares and sells medicines

- ADJ. **local | dispensing**
- PHRASES **chemist's (shop), the chemist's** *I've just got to go to the chemist's.*

2 specialist in chemistry

- ADJ. **distinguished, leading | government, industrial | analytical, research | inorganic, organic**

⇨ Note at JOB

chemistry *noun*

1 subject of study

- ADJ. **analytical, applied, theoretical | environmental, physical | industrial | inorganic, organic**
- CHEMISTRY + NOUN **set** *For her twelfth birthday, she asked for a chemistry set.*

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

2 chemical structure of substance

- ADJ. **blood, soil, water, etc. | body** *natural changes in body chemistry*

3 personal feelings/attraction

- ADJ. **personal | sexual**
- PREP. **~ between** *The personal chemistry between the two stars of the film is obvious.*

cheque *noun*

- ADJ. **large | blank | bad, dud, forged | crossed, post-dated, signed | personal | giro, pay, traveller's**
- VERB + CHEQUE **issue, make out, sign, write (out), write sb** *Shall I make the cheque out to you?* ◇ *Can I write you a cheque?* | **draw** *He drew a large cheque on his company's account.* | **make payable** *Cheques should be made payable to Toyland plc.* | **give sb, hand sb, hand over | deposit, pay in** *She deposited the cheque in her husband's account.* ◇ *I've got to go to the bank to pay this cheque in.* | **pay by | cash** *I'll cash a traveller's cheque at the bank.* | **accept** *Does the restaurant accept cheques?* | **clear, honour, pass** *He was sacked for passing bad cheques.* | **bounce | cancel, stop | endorse**
- CHEQUE + VERB **bounce** *The cheque will bounce if your salary doesn't reach your account today.*
- CHEQUE + NOUN **account | (guarantee) card** *Cheques must be supported by a cheque guarantee card.* | **book, stub**
- PREP. **~ for** *a cheque for ten pounds*

cherry *noun*

- ADJ. **black, red | glacé, morello | juicy, sour, sweet**
- QUANT. **bunch**
- CHERRY + NOUN **stone**

⇨ Special page at FRUIT

chess *noun*

- ADJ. **computer, machine**
- QUANT. **game**
- VERB + CHESS **play**
- CHESS + NOUN **board, piece, set, table | move | position | grandmaster, master, player | buff | championship, match, tournament | club | computer | world** *a star of the chess world*

chest *noun*

- ADJ. **broad, manly, massive, muscular, muscled, powerful, strong | narrow, puny | flat** *She wears loose clothes to hide her flat chest.* | **bare, naked | hairy, hairless | bad, weak, wheezy | lower, upper**
- VERB + CHEST **clutch (at)** *Clutching his chest in agony, he fell to the ground.* | **thump** *'You've got to have courage,' he said, thumping his chest.*
- CHEST + VERB **expand, heave, rise and fall | puff (out/up), swell** *His chest puffed out with indignation at the suggestion.* ◇ *His chest swelled with pride as he accepted the award.* | **tighten** *Her chest tightened with fear.* | **ache** *She ran until her chest ached.*
- CHEST + NOUN **pain, tightness | injury | ailment, complaint, condition, disease, infection, problems, trouble | radiograph, X-ray | muscles | hair | cavity**
- PREP. **in the/your ~** *She was hit in the chest by two of the bullets.* **on the/your ~** *the hairs on his chest* **to the/your ~** *He suffered burns to the chest and neck.* ◇ *She clutched her baby tightly to her chest.*

chestnut *noun*

- ADJ. **bright, glossy, rich | dark, deep**

⇨ Special page at COLOUR

chew *verb*

- ADV. **well, thoroughly | vigorously | thoughtfully | up** *Chew your food up thoroughly before you swallow it.*
- PREP. **at** *She was chewing at her lower lip.* **on** *The baby chewed on a rusk.*

chicken *noun*

1 bird

- ADJ. **battery, corn-fed, free-range** *Battery chickens have miserable lives.* | **plump | scrawny | live** *a crate of live chickens*
- VERB + CHICKEN **keep | kill | pluck | truss (up)** *Are we just going to sit here like trussed up chickens?*
- CHICKEN + VERB **peck | scratch** *A few scrawny chickens were scratching around the yard.* | **cluck | roost | wander**
- CHICKEN + NOUN **farmer | coop, run | wire | feed**

2 meat

- ADJ. **fresh, frozen | juicy, succulent, tender | cold**
- QUANT. **piece**
- VERB + CHICKEN **eat, have | cook | barbecue, fry, grill, roast, etc. | stuff**
- CHICKEN + NOUN **breast, drumsticks, giblets, joint,**

leg, liver, piece, thigh, wing | casserole, curry, pie, salad, sandwich, soup, stock
• PHRASES **(a) breast/leg of chicken, chicken and chips**
⇨ Special page at FOOD

chickenpox *noun*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

chief *noun*

• ADJ. **tribal | army, council, industry, intelligence, military, party, police, security, union | education, health, etc.**
• PHRASES **chief of police, chief of staff**

child *noun*

• ADJ. **little, small, young** *My father died while I was still a small child.* | **teenage** *We've got three teenage children.* | **good, obedient, well-behaved | delinquent, difficult, disobedient, fractious, mischievous, naughty, problem, sulky, unruly, wayward, wilful** *She works in a centre for delinquent children.* ◇ *He's always been a problem child.* ◇ *The children were quite unruly and ran around the house as if they owned it.* | **bright, gifted, intelligent, precocious** *a school for gifted children* ◇ *What a precocious child—reading Jane Austen at the age of ten!* | **dull, slow** *Teaching is particularly difficult when a class contains both slow and bright children.* | **well-cared for | abandoned, abused, neglected** *therapy for sexually abused children* | **sickly | loving | only** *It was a bit lonely being an only child.* | **fatherless, motherless | illegitimate | unborn** *an organization that campaigns for the rights of the unborn child* | **dependent** *tax concessions for families with dependent children* | **street** *There are a lot of street children in the poorer parts of the city.*
• VERB + CHILD **have** *How many children have you got?* | **give birth to, have** *She didn't have her first child until she was nearly forty.* | **conceive** *We had trouble conceiving our first child.* | **expect** *They are expecting a child in June.* | **adopt | bring up, raise, rear** *He had old-fashioned ideas on how to bring up children.* | **indulge, pamper, spoil** *You can't spoil a child by giving it all the affection it wants.* | **abduct | abandon**
• CHILD + VERB **be born** *Their first child was born with a rare heart condition.* | **develop, grow (up)** *Children grow up so quickly!* ◇ *good food for growing children* | **cry, scream, whimper, whine | misbehave**
• CHILD + NOUN **actor, bride | welfare**
• PREP. **with ~** *(literary) big with child* (= pregnant)

childbirth *noun*

• ADJ. **natural**
• VERB + CHILDBIRTH **die in** *His wife died in childbirth in 1928.*
• PHRASES **the pain of childbirth** *She dreaded the pain of childbirth.*

childhood *noun*

• ADJ. **happy | deprived, difficult, lonely, traumatic, unhappy | normal | early** *From earliest childhood she'd had a love of dancing.* | **late** *His health remained poor into later childhood.*
• VERB + CHILDHOOD **have** *She had a very happy childhood.* | **spend** *He spent most of his childhood in Egypt.* | **survive** *Her second son didn't survive childhood.*
• CHILDHOOD + NOUN **days, years | dream, experience, fantasy, memories | friend, sweetheart | home | disease, illness, mortality**
• PREP. **during ~** *He became diabetic during childhood.* **from ~** *She still retained many friends from childhood.* **in ~** *She died in childhood.* **throughout ~** *He travelled a lot throughout his childhood.*
• PHRASES **scenes from/of sb's childhood**

chill *noun*

1 coldness
• ADJ. **bitter, deep | cold, damp | slight | evening, morning, night | autumn/autumnal, winter**
• VERB + CHILL **feel** *I could feel the chill as soon as I went outside.* | **take off** *I'll add some hot water to the milk to take the chill off it* (= to make it slightly warmer).
• CHILL + NOUN **factor** *With the chill factor, it's nearly minus forty here.*
• PHRASES **a chill in the air** *There's a slight chill in the air.*

2 feeling of fear
• ADJ. **sudden | icy**
• VERB + CHILL **feel** *She felt a sudden chill at the thought of the dangers he faced.* | **strike** *Her words struck a chill in his heart.*
• CHILL + VERB **run down/up sb's spine, run through sb** *A chill ran through me at the thought.*
• PREP. **~ of** *a chill of fear*
• PHRASES **send a chill through sb/down sb's spine** *The news sent a chill down her spine.*

3 mild illness
• ADJ. **bad, nasty, severe | slight**
• VERB + CHILL **catch, get** *I caught a nasty chill after my swim last week.*
⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

chilled *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel** *I suddenly felt chilled and had to go indoors.* | **serve sth** *The wine is best served chilled.*
• PHRASES **chilled to the bone/marrow** *You must be chilled to the bone sitting out here!*

chilli *noun*

• ADJ. **fresh | dried | hot | green, red**
• CHILLI + NOUN **pepper | oil, powder, sauce | beans**
⇨ Special page at FOOD

chilly *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel** *She was beginning to feel chilly.* | **get** *We were starting to get a bit chilly.* | **turn** (only used about the weather) *It turned chilly in the afternoon.*
• ADV. **decidedly, distinctly, very | a bit, pretty, quite, rather, somewhat**

chimney *noun*

• ADJ. **high, tall | short | narrow, wide | tapering | smoking** *The air was black from smoking chimneys.* | **sooty | factory, industrial**
• VERB + CHIMNEY **clean, sweep**
• CHIMNEY + VERB **belch sth** *factory chimneys belching smoke over the town* | **draw** *This chimney doesn't draw very well.*
• CHIMNEY + NOUN **breast, flue, piece, pot, stack | sweep**

chin *noun*

• ADJ. **square | pointed/pointy | firm, jutting | non-existent, receding, weak | dimpled | determined, resolute | smooth | stubbled/stubbly, unshaven | double**
• VERB + CHIN **lift, raise, stick out, tilt** *She tilted her chin at him defiantly.* | **finger, rub, scratch, stroke** *He stroked his chin thoughtfully.* | **rest** *She sat with her elbows on the table, resting her chin on her cupped hands.*
• CHIN + VERB **rise** *His chin rose in a proud gesture.*

- CHIN + NOUN **strap** *Fasten the chin strap or the helmet will fall off.*
- PREP. **beneath/under sb's ~** *He put his hand under her chin and lifted her face to his.* **down sb's ~** *The juice dribbled down his chin.* **on sb's/the ~** *He had bits of food on his chin.* ◇ *She caught him with a hard blow on the chin.*

china *noun*

1 hard white substance
- ADJ. **fine** | **bone** *fine bone china tableware*
- VERB + CHINA **be made of**
- CHINA + NOUN **cup, dish, etc.** | **clay**

2 cups/plates, made of china
- ADJ. **best** *She got out the best china for the visitors.* | **broken, cracked**
- QUANT. **set**

Chinese *noun*

- ADJ. **Mandarin**
- CHINESE + NOUN **character**

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

chip *noun*

1 (usually **chips**) long thin piece of fried potato
- ADJ. **greasy** | **frozen, oven-ready**
- QUANT. **bag, plate**
- VERB + CHIP **eat, have** *All he'll eat is chips.* | **live on** *I never cook anything grand—we live on chips and baked beans.* | **cook, fry**
- CHIP + NOUN **pan** | **shop**
- PHRASES **and/with chips** *fish and chips*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

2 microchip
- ADJ. **computer, silicon** | **graphics, memory, microprocessor**
- VERB + CHIP **make, manufacture, produce** | **design, develop** | **use** *This computer uses the DX chip.*
- CHIP + VERB **contain sth** *a chip containing the coding devices*
- CHIP + NOUN **design, technology** | **set** *a Pentium-compatible chip set*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *Advances in chip technology have made it possible to pack even more circuits on a chip.*

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

chip *verb*

- ADV. **badly** *She fell and chipped her tooth quite badly.* | **away** *He was chipping away at the stone.* ◇ *(figurative) They chipped away at the power of the government* (= gradually made it weaker).
- PREP. **off** *We chipped the paint off the wood.*

chocolate *noun*

1 sweet brown food
- ADJ. **dark, plain** | **milk** | **white** | **bitter** | **cooking**
- QUANT. **bar, slab** | **bit, piece, square** *He broke off a few squares of chocolate.* | **box** *I gave her a box of handmade Belgian chocolates.*
- VERB + CHOCOLATE **eat** | **have** | **break (up) into pieces/squares** *She broke a bar of dark chocolate into four pieces.* | **grate** | **melt** *Melt 100g of cooking chocolate in a basin over hot water.* | **coat/cover sth in/with, dip sth in, spread/sprinkle (sth with)** *a box of brazil nuts coated in chocolate*
- CHOCOLATE + VERB **melt** *Stir until the chocolate has melted.*
- CHOCOLATE + NOUN **bar, chip** | **biscuit, cake, eclair, egg, gateau, ice cream, mousse, sauce** | **factory**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

2 small sweet made from chocolate
- ADJ. **soft-centred** | **hand-made**
- QUANT. **box**
- CHOCOLATE + NOUN **box**

3 drink made from powdered chocolate
- ADJ. **hot** | **drinking**
- QUANT. **cup, mug**

choice *noun*

1 act of choosing
- ADJ. **careful, good, informed, right, wise** *a careful choice of words* | **bad, wrong** | **difficult, hard, stark** *She faced the stark choice of backing the new scheme or losing her job.* | **natural** | **moral** *Doctors have to make moral choices every day of their lives.* | **career**
- VERB + CHOICE **make** | **be faced with, face**
- PREP. **by/from/out of ~** (= because you have chosen) *I wouldn't have come to this bar by choice!* **of ~** (= that is/should be chosen by a particular group of people for a particular purpose) *It's the software of choice for business use.* **of your ~** (= that you choose yourself) *First prize will be a meal for two at a restaurant of your choice.* | **~ about** *to make choices about their future*

2 chance/ability to choose
- ADJ. **clear** | **free** *Students have a free choice from a range of subjects.* | **first** *You can have first choice of all the rooms.* | **multiple** *a test with multiple choice questions* | **consumer, parental**
- VERB + CHOICE **have** *I now had a clear choice: either I accept their terms or I leave.* | **exercise** *Everyone in a democracy has the right to exercise choice.* | **give sb, present sb with** *We gave her the choice, and she decided she'd like a bike for her birthday.* | **extend**
- PREP. **~ about** *He had no choice about that.* **~ as to** *to extend parental choice as to which schools children should attend* **~ between** *She has a choice between three different universities.* **~ of** *a choice of wines*
- PHRASES **freedom of choice, have little/no choice but to do sth** *I had no choice but to cancel my holiday.* **have no choice in the matter** *The way he behaved meant that we had no choice in the matter.* **leave sb with little/no choice** *Your decision leaves me with no choice but to resign.*

3 things from which you can/must choose
- ADJ. **good, wide** | **limited** | **available** *a range of available choices*
- VERB + CHOICE **have, offer** *We offer a choice of ten different holiday destinations.*
- CHOICE + VERB **be available (to sb), be open to sb** *a range of choices available to buyers*
- PREP. **~ of** *The shop has a very limited choice of ties.*
- PHRASES **be spoilt for choice** (= to have a large number of things from which to choose)

4 sb/sth that is chosen
- ADJ. **excellent, good, happy** *It was a happy choice of venue* | **obvious** *Bill is the obvious choice for captain of the team.* | **popular** | **first, second** *Our first choice for a holiday is the north of Scotland.*
- PREP. **~ as** *Mary is a popular choice as chair of the committee.* **~ for** *I think she's a very good choice for captain.*

choir *noun*

- ADJ. **massed** *a massed choir of local schoolchildren* | **50-strong, etc.** | **ladies', male-voice, mixed, etc.** | **school** | **cathedral, church, etc.**
- VERB + CHOIR **be in, sing in** *She sings in the church choir.* | **conduct** | **accompany**
- CHOIR + NOUN **practice** *Choir practice is on Wednesday evenings.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *two of the girls in the choir*

choke *verb*

- ADV. **almost, nearly**
- VERB + CHOKE **threaten to** *The panic rising in his throat threatened to choke him.* | **make sb** *The fumes from the burning tyres made her choke.*
- PREP. **on** *My son nearly choked on one of those sweets.*
- PHRASES **choke (sb) to death** *He choked to death when a fish bone got stuck in his throat.*

cholera *noun*

- VERB + CHOLERA **have, suffer from | catch, contract | die from/of**
- QUANT. **outbreak**
- CHOLERA + NOUN **epidemic, outbreak** *A cholera epidemic swept the country.* | **toxin | case, victim**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

cholesterol *noun*

- ADJ. **high, raised | low | blood** *raised blood cholesterol levels*
- QUANT. **level** *a high/low level of cholesterol*
- VERB + CHOLESTEROL **have** (only used with *high* or *low*) *He has high cholesterol.* | **contain** *chips containing no cholesterol* | **reduce** *Eating garlic can significantly reduce cholesterol in the blood.*
- CHOLESTEROL + NOUN **level**
- PHRASES **be high/low in cholesterol** *foods that are low in cholesterol*

choose *verb*

- ADV. **carefully** *He chose his words carefully.* | **freely** *They can choose freely from a wide range of courses.*
- VERB + CHOOSE **be able to, be free to, can** *You are free to choose whichever courses you want to take.*
- PREP. **between** *She had to choose between giving up her job or hiring a nanny.* **from** *There are several different models to choose from.*
- PHRASES **pick and choose** *You have to take any job you can get—you can't pick and choose.*

chop *noun*

- ADJ. **lamb, mutton, pork | loin** *pork loin chops*
- VERB + CHOP **eat, have | braise, cook, fry, grill**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

chop *verb*

- ADV. **finely** *Add finely chopped parsley.* | **roughly** *Roughly chop the cabbage.* | **up** *I spent the day chopping up wood.* | **down** *There are concerns over how quickly the forests are being chopped down.* | **off** *He chopped off the small branches before cutting down the tree.*
- PREP. **into** *Chop the meat into small cubes.*
- PHRASES **chop sth to pieces** *The furniture had been chopped to pieces.*

chord *noun*

- ADJ. **major, minor | C, D, etc. | augmented, diminished** *a diminished 7th chord* | **dominant, tonic, etc. | 7th, 9th, etc. | full | broken | jazz | guitar, piano**
- VERB + CHORD **play, strum**
- CHORD + NOUN **change, progression, sequence**

chore *noun*

- ADJ. **little, small | daily, day-to-day, routine | administrative, domestic, household**
- VERB + CHORE **carry out, do** *It'll take me an hour to do the household chores.*

chorus *noun*

1 part of a song that is repeated

- ADJ. **rousing | final**
- VERB + CHORUS **join in, sing**

2 sth that a lot of people say together

- ADJ. **general | growing** *There is a growing chorus of protest against the policy.*
- VERB + CHORUS **join** *Many teachers have joined the chorus of voices that disapprove of the new tests.* | **be met with, bring** *His suggestions were met with a chorus of jeers.*
- CHORUS + VERB **greet sb/sth**
- PREP. **in ~** (= all together) *'Hello,' they shouted in chorus.* | **~ of** *a chorus of boos*
- PHRASES **a chorus of voices**

3 large group of singers/dancers

- ADJ. **double | female, male | dawn** (= of birds before dawn)
- CHORUS + NOUN **girl, line**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She is singing in the chorus.*
- PHRASES **a member of the chorus**

christening *noun*

- VERB + CHRISTENING **attend, go to**
- CHRISTENING + VERB **take place**
- CHRISTENING + NOUN **gift, present | mug, spoon | robe/robes | party**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *We all got together at the christening.*

Christian *noun*

- ADJ. **believing, committed, devout, good, practising | born-again, evangelical, fundamentalist**
- VERB + CHRISTIAN **be brought up (as)**

Christianity *noun*

- ADJ. **evangelical, fundamentalist, orthodox | muscular** *Victorian 'muscular Christianity' was all about achieving self-control through strict mental and physical discipline.* | **Catholic, Orthodox, Protestant**

⇨ Note at RELIGION (for verbs and phrases)

Christmas *noun*

- ADJ. **good, nice | traditional | white** *hoping for a white Christmas* (= with snow on the ground)
- VERB + CHRISTMAS **have, spend** *Did you have a good Christmas?* ◇ *We're going to spend Christmas at home this year.* | **celebrate** *to celebrate Christmas in the traditional way* | **get sth for** *What did you get for Christmas?*
- CHRISTMAS + VERB **come** *Christmas is coming and the food shops are full.*
- CHRISTMAS + NOUN **dinner | party | present | cake, pudding | lights, tree** *We're going up to town to see the Christmas lights.* | **carol | Day | holiday/holidays | celebrations**
- PREP. **at ~** *There are lots of parties at Christmas.* **for ~** *For Christmas he gave her a silk blouse.* **over ~** *The library is closed over Christmas.*
- PHRASES **Happy/Merry Christmas!, wish sb a happy/merry Christmas**

chronological *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **strictly** *a strictly chronological account of the events* | **broadly** *The anthology is broadly chronological.*

chuckle *noun*

- ADJ. **little, soft | deep/deep-throated, low**
- VERB + CHUCKLE **give, have, let out** *She gave a little chuckle.* | **suppress | hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *'I was only kidding,' he said with a low*

chuckle. | **~ about/over** *We had a chuckle about it afterwards.*

chuckle *verb*

- ADV. **softly**
- PREP. **about/over** *She was still chuckling about the story the next day.* **at** *He chuckled at the thought of the two of them stuck in the snow.*
- PHRASES **chuckle to yourself** *She chuckled softly to herself as she remembered his astonished look.*

chug *verb*

- ADV. **slowly, steadily** *The train chugged steadily along the West Highland Line.*
- PREP. **along, down, in, out, past, etc.** *The boat chugged slowly down the river.*

chunk *noun*

- ADJ. **big, great, huge, large, sizeable, substantial** *He bit a great chunk out of the apple.* ◇ *This one project has taken a substantial chunk of our budget.* | **bite-size/bite-sized, manageable** *He cut the food up into bite-size chunks.* ◇ *(figurative) The listening texts consist of short, bite-sized chunks which are accessible to beginners.* | **pineapple** *a tin of pineapple chunks*
- VERB + CHUNK **cut sth (up) into**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *I bought the cheese in one big chunk.* | **~ of** *a huge chunk of meat/rock/text*

church *noun*

1 building where Christians go to worship
- ADJ. **local, parish, village**
- VERB + CHURCH **build** | **consecrate, found** *The church was consecrated in 1250.* | **dedicate** *The church is dedicated to St Paul.*
- CHURCH + NOUN **bells, clock, steeple, tower** | **hall** | **fête**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *a chamber concert at our local church* **in a/the ~** *There's an interesting organ in the village church.*

2 meeting for public worship in a church
- VERB + CHURCH **attend, go to** *Do you go to church?*
- CHURCH + NOUN **service** | **music**
- PREP. **after/before ~** *Come to our place for lunch after church.* **at/in ~** *Mrs Parsons wasn't at church this Sunday.*

3 **the Church** all Christians regarded as a group
- ADJ. **early** *The early Church believed miracles were proof of who Jesus was.*
- VERB + CHURCH **enter, go into** *He went into the Church* (= became a priest) *when he was 23.* | **leave** *He left the Church after a loss of faith.*
- CHURCH + NOUN **authorities, leaders, member**

4 particular group of Christians
- ADJ. **high, low** *He loves all the high church traditions—incense and processions and vestments.* | **evangelical, fundamentalist** | **established** (= official), **free** (= nonconformist) | **Christian, etc.**
- CHURCH + NOUN **authorities, elder, leader, member**
- PHRASES **a member of a church**

chute *noun*

- ADJ. **garbage, laundry, rubbish, water** *a swimming pool with a long water chute*
- PREP. **down a/the ~** *The rubbish goes down the chute into a large bin.*

cider *noun*

- ADJ. **dry** | **sweet** | **rough, strong** *The cider was very strong and went straight to our heads.* | **farmhouse**
- QUANT. **litre, pint** | **bottle, glass, jug**
- VERB + CIDER **have** *I'll have a glass of dry cider, please.* | **drink** | **sip, swig, take a sip/swig of**
- CIDER + NOUN **apples** | **vinegar**

cigar *noun*

- ADJ. **fat** | **expensive** | **cheap**
- QUANT. **box**
- VERB + CIGAR **smoke** | **draw on, pull on** *He paused and drew on his cigar.* | **light** | **extinguish, put out, stub out**
- CIGAR + VERB **burn** *Her thin cigar burned quite quickly.* | **glow** *His cigar glowed in the darkened room.*
- CIGAR + NOUN **ash, smoke** | **butt, end** | **case, holder** | **smoker**
- PHRASES **brandy/port and cigars** *They left the men to their port and cigars.*

cigarette *noun*

- ADJ. **lighted, lit** *carelessly throwing a lighted cigarette in the litter bin* | **half-smoked** | **illicit** *She slipped outside for an illicit cigarette.* | **filter tip, hand-rolled, king size, low-tar, menthol**
- QUANT. **pack, packet** *She smokes a packet of cigarettes a day.*
- VERB + CIGARETTE **smoke** | **draw on, pull on, suck on** *He pulled on his cigarette and waited for the train.* | **light** | **extinguish, put out, stub out** *Please extinguish all cigarettes now.* | **roll** *She rolls her own cigarettes.* | **flick (away)** *The old man flicked his cigarette onto the roadside.* | **advertise** *Posters advertising cigarettes have to carry government health warnings.*
- CIGARETTE + VERB **burn** *The cigarette burned slowly in the ashtray.* | **glow** *The cigarettes glowed in the dark.*
- CIGARETTE + NOUN **ash, smoke** *the smell of stale cigarette smoke* | **butt, end** | **case, packet** | **holder, lighter** | **smoker** | **burn** | **advertising**

cinder *noun*

- ADJ. **glowing, hot, red** *a fireplace full of glowing red cinders*
- CINDER + NOUN **path, track**
- PHRASES **burnt to a cinder** (= completely burnt) *By the time I got home, the cake was burnt to a cinder.*

cinema *noun*

1 place where you go to see a film
- ADJ. **packed** *The cinema was packed every night for 'Shrek'.* | **multiplex** *a new multiplex cinema on the edge of town*
- VERB + CINEMA **go to** *How often do you go to the cinema?* | **be on at** *What's on at the cinema tonight?*
- CINEMA + NOUN **screen** | **audience** | **advertising, commercial** | **chain**

2 films in general
- ADJ. **commercial, Hollywood, mainstream, popular** | **art, arthouse, independent** | **avant-garde, modernist, realist, social** | **silent** *She started making films in the last years of silent cinema.*

circle *noun*

1 shape
- ADJ. **complete, full** *The stones form a complete circle.* ◇ *How long does it take for the dial to rotate through a full circle?* | **concentric** | **widening** *The water rippled in widening circles round the fountain.* | **overlapping** *a design of overlapping circles* | **tight** *He turned the car in a tight circle.* | **half** | **Antarctic, Arctic, polar**
- VERB + CIRCLE **draw** | **describe** *(technical)*, **go around/round in** *If you follow the road signs you will simply find yourself going round in a circle.* | **form, make** | **cut out**

- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The children stood in a circle.* ◇ *The planets move in circles round the sun.* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **the area/circumference/diameter/radius of a circle, the centre/middle of a circle**

2 group of people

- ADJ. **wide** *She has a wide circle of acquaintances.* | **narrow, small** | **charmed, close/closed, intimate, magic, select** *He invited only a select circle of friends to the wedding.* | **exalted, high** | **immediate** *They treat anyone outside their immediate circle with suspicion.* | **inner** *He's joined the inner circles of the court early in his career.* | **academic, aristocratic, artistic, business, court, diplomatic, government, intellectual, literary, official, political, royal, social, sporting, theatrical ~s** *She moves in the highest social circles.* | **family**
- VERB + CIRCLE **have** | **move in** *My brother and I move in completely different circles* (= we have very different friends). | **join** | **widen** *You need to widen your circle of friends.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Talk of religion was forbidden in the family circle.* ◇ *friends in government circles*
- PHRASES **a circle of acquaintances/admirers/friends**

3 in a theatre

- ADJ. **dress, upper** *Our seats are in the front row of the dress circle.*

circle *verb*

1 move in a circle

- ADV. **slowly** *The helicopter was circling slowly, very low.* | **overhead** *A buzzard was circling overhead.*
- PREP. **above** *Several airliners were circling above the airport.* **around/round** *The vultures were already circling around the dead animal.*

2 draw a circle round sth

- PHRASES **circle sth in black, red, etc.** *She circled her birthday in red on the calendar.*

circuit *noun*

1 path for an electric current

- ADJ. **short** *The lights were not working because of a short circuit.* | **closed** | **integrated, printed** | **electrical, electronic**
- VERB + CIRCUIT **break**
- CIRCUIT + NOUN **diagram**

2 places visited by sb in a particular job/sport

- ADJ. **amateur, professional** *Talent scouts spotted him playing on the amateur circuit.* | **international, world** | **cabaret, festival, lecture, tennis, etc.**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *She's a well-known figure on the international lecture circuit.*

3 circular journey around sth

- ADJ. **complete**
- VERB + CIRCUIT **do, make** *We did a complete circuit of the park in twenty minutes.*
- PREP. **~ of**

circular *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look** *From a front view the small birds can look almost circular.*
- ADV. **perfectly** *He had round unblinking eyes and a perfectly circular head.* | **almost, nearly, roughly, virtually** *The crater was two miles across and roughly circular.*

circulate *verb*

1 liquid/gas/air

- ADV. **freely** *Air can circulate freely through the tunnels.*
- PREP. **around/round** *The heart circulates blood around the body.* **through** *Blood circulates through the arteries and veins.*

2 story/idea/information

- ADV. **widely** *The book was circulated widely in Russia.* | **freely**
- PREP. **among/amongst** *newspapers circulating among minority communities* **around/round** *There's a story circulating around the office that you are about to leave the company.* **to** *The document will be circulated to all members.*

circulation *noun*

1 movement of blood round the body

- ADJ. **good** | **bad, poor** | **blood**
- VERB + CIRCULATION **have** *I've got poor circulation.* | **improve, stimulate** *to have a massage to stimulate your circulation*
- PHRASES **the circulation of the blood**

2 passing of sth between different people

- ADJ. **general** | **restricted** *Restricted circulation of the report will reduce the risk of leaks outside the ministry.*
- VERB + CIRCULATION **go into** *The new banknotes will go into general circulation next year.* | **put sth into** | **take sth out of, withdraw sth from** *Copies of the magazine were withdrawn from circulation.*
- PREP. **in/out of ~** *the amount of money in circulation* ◇ *(figurative) I was out of circulation for months after the baby was born.*

3 of a newspaper/magazine

- ADJ. **large, mass, wide** | **limited, small** | **daily, monthly** | **national, nationwide**
- VERB + CIRCULATION **enjoy, have** *The newspaper has a daily circulation of 20 000.* | **boost, increase**
- CIRCULATION + VERB **increase, rise** | **fall**
- CIRCULATION + NOUN **figures**
- PREP. **~ of**

circumference *noun*

- VERB + CIRCUMFERENCE **have** | **calculate, measure** *to measure the circumference of a circle*
- PREP. **in ~** *an area three miles in circumference*

circumstance *noun*

1 (usually **circumstances**) facts/events that affect sth

- ADJ. **favourable** *The scheme might work better with more favourable circumstances.* | **adverse, difficult, tragic, trying, unfavourable** *people facing adverse circumstances* ◇ *He died in tragic circumstances.* | **normal** *In normal circumstances I would let you use my car, but today I need it.* | **exceptional, special, unusual** *Only if the circumstances are exceptional will we accept late applications.* | **mysterious, suspicious** *She died in rather suspicious circumstances.* | **extenuating, mitigating** *His sentence was reduced because of the extenuating circumstances.* | **changed, changing, different** | **unavoidable, unforeseen** | **economic, financial, political, social** *life in the changing economic circumstances of China*
- QUANT. **set** *an unfortunate set of circumstances that made her life difficult*
- CIRCUMSTANCE + VERB **change** | **conspire, dictate sth** *I felt that circumstances were conspiring against me.* ◇ *Circumstances dictate that I should leave this town forever.*
- PREP. **according to ~** *The amount paid will vary according to circumstances.* **due to … ~s** *Due to unforeseen circumstances, we have had to reschedule the concert.* **in … ~s** *She died in suspicious circumstances.* **in/under the ~s** *In the circumstances, you'd better ring the police.* | **~ surrounding** *The bank will investigate the circumstances surrounding the robbery.*
- PHRASES **by/through force of circumstance** *The survivors ate plants and insects through force of circumstance.* **circumstances beyond our control** *The delays were due to circumstances beyond our control.* **a combination of circumstances** *We lost our position in the market*

due to a combination of circumstances. **in/under no circumstances** *Under no circumstances should you leave the door unlocked.* **a victim of circumstance** *He was simply a victim of circumstance.*

2 circumstances amount of money you have

- ADJ. **desperate, reduced, straitened | domestic, family, personal**
- CIRCUMSTANCES + VERB **improve | worsen**
- PREP. **in … ~** *He was a writer living in straitened circumstances.*

cite *verb*

- ADV. **above, already, earlier, previously** *This is similar to the example cited above.* | **commonly, frequently, often** *The most commonly cited reasons for stopping the treatment were lack of efficacy and side effects.* | **widely**
- PREP. **as** *He cited the fall in unemployment as one of the government's successes.*

citizen *noun*

- ADJ. **full** *a group of indigenous people fighting for acceptance as full citizens of the country* | **naturalized | Italian, Thai, etc. | decent, good, honest, law-abiding, respectable, responsible, upright** *This terrible crime has shocked all law-abiding citizens.* | **leading, prominent** *She is a prominent citizen of the town.* | **average, ordinary** *It's not clear how the new law will affect the ordinary citizen.* | **second-class** *minorities who felt they had been treated as second-class citizens* | **private** *The king was visiting France as a private citizen.* | **senior** *travel concessions for senior citizens*

citizenship *noun*

- ADJ. **full | dual | British, Chinese, etc.**
- VERB + CITIZENSHIP **have, hold** *He has German citizenship.* | **give sb, grant sb** *They were granted full French citizenship.* | **acquire, take** *Ten years later, she chose to take Australian citizenship.* | **refuse sb | be stripped of, lose** *He was stripped of his citizenship when he criticized the government.* | **give up, renounce** *You will have to renounce citizenship of this country if you apply for citizenship of another.* | **apply for**

city *noun*

- ADJ. **big, large, major | small | great** *Rome is one of the great cities of the world.* | **ancient, historic, old | beautiful | industrial | cosmopolitan | coastal | home, native** *Her native city is Tokyo.* | **capital | provincial | cathedral, university | walled** *the old walled city of York* | **twin** *Bonn is Oxford's twin city.*
- VERB + CITY **build, found**
- CITY + VERB **grow** *The city grew rapidly in the nineteenth century.* | **flourish**
- CITY + NOUN **dweller | centre, street** *Parking is difficult in the city centre.* | **council | life**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *We live in a big city.* **outside a/the ~** *There's a park just outside the city.*
- PHRASES **the centre/middle/heart of a city, the edge/outskirts of a city**

civil *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **extremely, remarkably, very | perfectly, quite**
- PREP. **to** *The teachers were all quite civil to me.*

civilian *noun*

- ADJ. **innocent, unarmed** *We demand an end to the killing of innocent civilians.*

civilization *noun*

- ADJ. **ancient, early** *the early civilizations of the Middle East and China* | **modern** *the benefits of modern civilization* | **advanced | primitive | Greek, Roman, etc. | European, Western** *diseases that are common in Western civilization* | **great** *the great civilizations of the past* | **industrial | human** *Art and music are among the great products of human civilization.*
- VERB + CIVILIZATION **bring** *to bring civilization to the outer reaches of the country* | **create** *a movement that aims to create a new civilization* | **destroy | save**
- PHRASES **the beginnings/dawn of civilization, civilization as we know it** *Could this be the end of civilization as we know it?* **the collapse/decline/end of a civilization, a level of civilization** *to reach a higher level of civilization*

clad *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **fully** *He returned fully clad.* | **lightly, partially, scantily** *a scantily clad young woman* | **appropriately, suitably** *She went home and returned more suitably clad.* | **decently**
- PREP. **in** *Ed, clad in his best suit, was waiting for her.*

claim *noun*

1 statement saying that sth is true

- ADJ. **false, unfounded, unsubstantiated | conflicting** *There are conflicting claims about the cause of the fire.* | **absurd, astonishing, extravagant, grandiose**
- VERB + CLAIM **make** *The company had made false claims about its products.* ◇ *I make no claim to understand modern art.* | **accept** *They accepted her claim that she had been ill-treated.* | **challenge | deny, dismiss, dispute, reject** *Claims of a cover-up were dismissed.* | **back up, substantiate, support** *They were able to produce witnesses to support their claim.* | **investigate**
- PREP. **~ about** *to investigate claims about appalling prison conditions* **~ of** *Claims of corruption within the police force were denied.*

2 demand for sth

- ADJ. **large, small | excessive** *excessive wage claims* | **legal, legitimate | bogus, fraudulent** *The police are investigating fraudulent claims for fire damage.* | **accident, compensation, damage/damages, insurance, pay, wage | civil** *to file a civil claim for damages*
- VERB + CLAIM **bring, file, lodge, make, put forward/in, submit** *She brought a claim for damages against the company.* | **drop, waive, withdraw | investigate | allow, uphold** *His claim for compensation was upheld in court.* | **dismiss | win | meet, pay, settle** *We will need extra funds to meet all the insurance claims.*
- CLAIM + VERB **arise** *claims arising out of accidents at work* | **fail** *The claim failed because the company had not been misled.*
- CLAIM + NOUN **form**
- PREP. **~ against** *claims against the company for breach of contract* **~ for** *a claim for compensation* **~ on** *to make a claim on your insurance policy* ◇ *I have many claims on my time.*

3 right to have sth

- ADJ. **good, strong | competing, rival** *competing claims for public money* | **prior** *She had a prior claim on his affections.* | **moral | territorial**
- VERB + CLAIM **have** *He has a good claim to the land.* | **assert, lay, press, stake** *Four men laid claim to leadership of the country.* ◇ *to stake a claim to some of the prize money* | **establish, prove** *You will have to prove your claim to the property in a court of law.* | **relinquish, renounce, withdraw**
- PREP. **~ on** *His children have a claim on his estate.* **~ to** *She renounced her claim to the property.*

claim *verb*

1 say that sth is true
- ADV. **justifiably, rightfully, rightly | falsely, wrongly** *The company had falsely claimed that its products were biodegradable.*
- VERB + CLAIM **attempt to, try to** *He tried to claim that he had acted in self-defence.*

2 ask for sth you think you have a right to have
- ADV. **back** *You can claim back some of the cost of your treatment.*
- VERB + CLAIM **be able to, be entitled to, can/could** *You might be entitled to claim compensation if you are injured at work.* | **attempt to, try to**
- PREP. **on** *Can't you claim on your insurance?*

clamour *noun*
- ADJ. **noisy, raucous | growing | public | sudden**
- VERB + CLAMOUR **still** *He raised a hand to still the clamour.*
- CLAMOUR + VERB **break out | grow | subside**
- PREP. **above/amid the ~** *She could barely make herself heard above the clamour of the rain.* | **~ for** *The clamour for her resignation grew louder.*

clamp *verb*
- ADV. **firmly, tight/tightly | together** *Clamp the pieces of wood together while the glue sets.*
- PREP. **around/round** *She clamped her arms around him.* **on/onto** *He clamped his hand firmly onto Jack's shoulder.* **over** *A large hand clamped over her mouth.* **to** *The dog's jaws were clamped to his leg.*
- PHRASES **clamped between your teeth** *He had a large cigar clamped between his teeth.* **clamp shut** *His mouth clamped shut.*

PHRASAL VERB

clamp down
- ADV. **hard**
- PREP. **on** *to clamp down hard on bullying*

clang *noun*
- ADJ. **loud | metallic**
- VERB + CLANG **give, let out | hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *The door shut with a loud clang.* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **the clang of metal**

⇨ Note at SOUND

clank *noun*
- ADJ. **loud**
- PREP. **with a ~** *The door opened with a clank.* | **~ of** *the clank and rattle of the trams*
- PHRASES **the clank of machinery**

clap *noun*
- ADJ. **big**
- VERB + CLAP **give sb**
- PREP. **~ for** *A big clap for our last contestant!*

clap *verb*
- ADV. **enthusiastically, loudly** *The audience clapped enthusiastically.*

clarification *noun*
- ADJ. **further**
- VERB + CLARIFICATION **ask for, call for, seek** *Employers are seeking further clarification of the proposals.* | **need, require | give sb, provide sb with**

clarify *verb*
- ADV. **fully | further** *Headings and sub-headings further clarify the structure of the article.*
- VERB + CLARIFY **attempt to, seek to, try to | need to | help (to), serve to | should | be delighted to, be happy to, be pleased to** *I am happy to clarify any points that are still unclear.*

clarinet *noun*

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

clarity *noun*
- ADJ. **absolute, complete | admirable, crystal, exceptional, great | increasing | sufficient | chilling, painful, startling, terrible** *With painful clarity she remembered the day he had died.* | **conceptual**
- VERB + CLARITY **have | lack**
- PREP. **with (…) ~** *She expressed herself with great clarity.* | **~ of** *clarity of thought*
- PHRASES **for the sake of clarity** *For the sake of clarity she went back over the key points.*

clash *noun*
- ADJ. **angry, bitter, fierce, serious | armed, bloody, violent | head-on** *The leaders are preparing for a head-on clash at the summit.* | **culture, personality**
- VERB + CLASH **lead to**
- CLASH + VERB **break out**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Several people were injured in violent clashes with the police.* | **~ between** *Clashes between the rebels and government forces have broken out in the north.* **~ of** *a clash of opinions* **~ over** *Differences in the aims of the two unions have led to serious clashes over policy.* **~ with**
- PHRASES **a clash of cultures/interests/wills**

clash *verb*
- ADV. **violently | repeatedly**
- PREP. **on/over** *He has clashed repeatedly with the team coach over training schedules.***with** *They often clash violently with rival gangs.*

clasp *verb*
- ADV. **tightly** *She clasped her bag tightly as she walked through the crowd.* | **lightly, loosely | warmly** *He clasped my hand warmly in welcome.* | **together** *She faced Will, her hands clasped together.*

class *noun*

1 lesson/group of students
- ADJ. **big, large | small | advanced, beginners', elementary, intermediate | biology, history, etc. | evening**
- VERB + CLASS **attend, go to, take** *He's taking classes in pottery.* | **miss | hold** *The institute holds evening classes throughout the year.* | **conduct, give, take, teach** *Who's taking the class today?* | **dismiss** *Class dismissed!* | **observe, sit in on**
- CLASS + NOUN **member, teacher | size**
- PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *We'll start the exercise in class and you can finish it for homework.* ◇ *Which history class are you in?* | **~ in** *She's going to evening classes in Italian.*
- PHRASES **the back/front of the class** *He sat at the back of the class.* **be/come top of the class** *She came top of the class in maths.*

2 social/economic group
- ADJ. **lower, lower-middle, middle, upper, upper-middle, working** *sections of the working class* | **chattering** (*informal*), **educated, landed, landowning, privileged, professional, ruling** *topics being discussed at the breakfast tables of the chattering classes* | **dominant** |

social *Membership of gardening clubs is drawn from all social classes.*

• CLASS + NOUN **structure, system | consciousness | interests | conflict, differences, divisions, struggle, war**

3 group of things

• ADJ. **large, small | distinct | rare**

• VERB + CLASS **form** *These writers form a distinct class in Russian literature.*

• PREP. **~of** *a rare class of butterflies*

• PHRASES **be in a class of your own/in a different class** (= to be much better than sb/sth)

4 high quality/style

• ADJ. **great, real** *a player of great class*

• VERB + CLASS **have** *She's got real class.*

• PHRASES **a touch of class** *The musical entertainment added a touch of class to the occasion.*

classic *noun*

1 famous book/play, etc.

• ADJ. **great | minor | contemporary, modern | all-time | pop/popular**

• PREP. **~of** *one of the great classics of English literature*

2 Classics study of Greek/Roman culture

⇨ Note at SUBJECT

classification *noun*

• ADJ. **broad | detailed | simple | higher, lower** *The rooms are of the standard expected from a hotel in a higher classification.* **| arbitrary | social | security** *a document with the security classification 'confidential'*

• VERB + CLASSIFICATION **defy** *a style of dancing that defies classification*

• CLASSIFICATION + NOUN **system**

• PREP. **~into** *the broad classification of music into classical and pop*

• PHRASES **a system of classification**

clatter *noun*

• ADJ. **loud, noisy, terrible | metallic | sudden**

• VERB + CLATTER **make** *The wheels of the cart made a terrible clatter on the cobblestones.* **| hear**

• PREP. **with a~** *She dropped her fork with a clatter.* **| ~of** *There was a clatter of hooves and a party of riders drew up.*

clatter *verb*

• ADV. **noisily**

• PREP. **against** *The mug clattered against her teeth.* **down** *Something heavy came clattering down the stairs.* **on** *His boots clattered on the stairs.* **to** *The knife clattered noisily to the floor.*

• PHRASES **come clattering**

clause *noun*

1 in a legal document

• ADJ. **clawback** (= for retrieving money already paid out), **confidentiality, escalator** (= that allows for a rise in wages or prices under certain conditions), **force majeure, indemnity, liability, limitation, penalty** *The penalty clause specifies that late delivery will be fined.* **| escape, exclusion, exemption, get-out, let-out, opt-out**

• VERB + CLAUSE **contain, have** *The contract contains a confidentiality clause.* **| add, include, insert, put in** *We added an opt-out clause to the agreement.* **| delete, take out | amend**

• PREP. **in a/the~** *There is some ambiguity in this clause.* **under a/the~** *Under Clause 5.8, the company is responsible for the health of its employees.* **| ~on** *a clause on pollution*

2 in grammar

• ADJ. **main, subordinate | conditional, coordinate, dependent, finite, independent, infinitive, non-finite, relative | non-restrictive, restrictive** *a restrictive relative clause* **| adverbial, nominal, noun**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *The completed action is in the main clause.*

claustrophobia *noun*

• VERB + CLAUSTROPHOBIA **get, suffer from | give sb** *I hate lifts—they give me claustrophobia.*

• PHRASES **a feeling of claustrophobia**

claustrophobic *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, seem** *I felt a bit claustrophobic in the tiny room.* **| become, get | make sb** *Crowds make me claustrophobic.* **| find sth** *I find that building intensely claustrophobic.*

• ADV. **intensely, very | a bit, rather, somewhat** *The atmosphere was somewhat claustrophobic.*

claw *noun*

• ADJ. **sharp** *a cat with sharp claws* **| powerful, strong**

• VERB + CLAW **sharpen | dig, sink** *The tiger dug its claws into his leg.* **| show** *The lion growled and showed its claws.* **| retract**

• CLAW + NOUN **mark**

• PREP. **in sb's~s** *The cat held a bird in its claws.*

clay *noun*

• ADJ. **heavy | fine | soft | damp, sticky, wet | china, modelling**

• QUANT. **lump**

• VERB + CLAY **mould, shape** *She moulded the clay into the shape of a head.* **| bake, fire | be made from/in/(out) of, make/mould sth from/in/out of** *a figure made of clay*

• CLAY + NOUN **modelling | mould**

• PREP. **in~** *plants that grow in damp clay*

clean *verb*

• ADV. **effectively, well** *This product cleans baths very effectively.* **| properly, thoroughly** *I clean the house thoroughly once a week.* **| carefully, gently** *He gently cleaned the wound and dressed it.* **| out, up** *I cleaned out all the cupboards.*

• PREP. **off** *I cleaned the mud off the kitchen floor.* **with** *Clean the glass with a soft cloth.*

• PHRASES **need cleaning** *Your shoes need cleaning!*

clean *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, seem, smell** *The room smelled clean and fresh.* **| stay** *The bathroom doesn't stay clean for long.* **| brush sth, get sth, scrape sth, scrub sth, wipe sth** *scrubbing the floor to get it clean ◇ She wiped all the surfaces clean.* **| leave sth** *Please leave the kitchen clean.* **| keep sth** *You're supposed to keep your room clean.*

• ADV. **extremely, very | spotlessly** *The whole house was spotlessly clean.* **| almost, nearly** *It's almost clean. I've just got to wipe the table.* **| fairly, pretty, quite**

• PHRASES **clean and tidy** *Is your room clean and tidy now?* **lovely and clean** *The water was lovely and clean.*

cleaner *noun*

1 person who cleans

• ADJ. **hospital, office, school, street**

⇨ Note at JOB

2 substance/instrument used for cleaning

• ADJ. **bathroom, carpet, household, oven, toilet** *chemicals that are found in all household cleaners*

cleanliness *noun*

- ADJ. **excessive | personal** *His mother gave him a lecture about personal cleanliness.*
- PHRASES **a standard of cleanliness, a state of cleanliness** *The bathroom was in a good state of cleanliness.*

cleanse *verb*

- ADV. **thoroughly | gently**
- PREP. **of** *a treatment to cleanse the body of toxins*

clear *verb*

1 remove sth that is not wanted/needed
- ADV. **completely, totally** *The site must be completely cleared and made safe for children.* | **partially | hastily, quickly** *She hastily cleared a space for him to sit down.* | **away** *Can you clear away all your toys now?*
- PREP. **from** *They cleared the mud from the steps.* **of** *We cleared the path of leaves.* **off** *Clear those papers off the desk.*

2 your head/mind
- ADV. **suddenly** *His face suddenly cleared as understanding dawned.*
- VERB + CLEAR **try to** *I went for a walk to try to clear my head.* | **help (to)** *Correct breathing helps to clear the mind and reduce tension.*

3 prove sb innocent
- ADV. **formally** *The three defendants were formally cleared by the judge.*
- PREP. **of** *Four men accused of assault have been cleared of all charges.*

clear *adj.*

1 easy to understand
- VERBS **be, seem | become | make sth | find sth**
- ADV. **abundantly, extremely, very | crystal, perfectly, quite** *You've got to make your intentions crystal clear to them.* | **by no means, not entirely, not quite** *It wasn't entirely clear whether she wanted us to help.* | **fairly, pretty, reasonably**
- PREP. **to** *It was clear to us that there was a problem.*

2 sure/certain
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, quite**
- PREP. **about** *She was quite clear about her reasons for leaving.* **on** *Are you clear on that point?*

3 easy to see/hear
- VERBS **be, look | become**
- ADV. **extremely, very** *The photograph wasn't very clear.* | **fairly, pretty, reasonably**

4 easy to see through
- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, completely | fairly, reasonably** *The water was fairly clear.*

5 free from things that are blocking the way
- VERBS **be, look, seem | remain, stay | keep sth** *Make sure you keep all gutters and drainpipes clear of leaves.*
- ADV. **completely | fairly, pretty, reasonably**
- PREP. **of** *The roads are reasonably clear of snow.*

clearance *noun*

1 removal of sth old/unwanted
- ADJ. **forest, land, site, slum**
- CLEARANCE + NOUN **work | sale** (= in a shop when goods are sold cheaply to get rid of them quickly)

2 official permission
- ADJ. **official | customs, diplomatic, entry, security**
- VERB + CLEARANCE **get, obtain, receive** *You'll need to get security clearance for this job.* | **apply for, seek | give sb, grant sb** *The pilot was granted clearance to land.* | **refuse sb**

3 distance between sth and sth passing under/beside it
- ADJ. **ground** *We need to increase the vehicle's ground clearance.*
- VERB + CLEARANCE **allow (sb/sth), give sb/sth, leave** *Make sure you allow enough clearance on each side.* ◊ *Always give cyclists plenty of clearance.*
- PREP. **~ above** *clearance above the light to prevent overheating* **~ between** *There wasn't enough clearance between the bus and the top of the bridge.*

clench *verb*

- ADV. **tight/tightly** *His jaw was tightly clenched.* | **involuntarily** *Her hands clenched involuntarily.* | **together** *She sat with hands clenched together in her lap.*
- PHRASES **clenched between sb's teeth** *He had a pipe clenched between his teeth.*

clerk *noun*

- ADJ. **chief, senior | assistant, junior | articled** *an articled clerk working for a large law firm* | **bank, council, office, parish, railway, solicitor's | accounts, booking, filing**
- PREP. **~ to** *He held the post of Clerk to the Council.*
- PHRASES **the office/post of clerk**

⇨ Note at JOB

clever *adj.*

1 intelligent/skilful
- VERBS **be, seem, sound**
- ADV. **awfully, extraordinarily, extremely, incredibly, really, very | pretty, quite, rather**
- PREP. **at** *I'm not very clever at maths.* **with** *clever with his hands*
- PHRASES **too clever by half** *Bob irritates me—he's too clever by half!* **too clever for your own good**

2 (of a thing) ingenious
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, fiendishly, really, very** *a simple yet fiendishly clever idea* | **quite, rather**

cliché *noun*

- ADJ. **old, tired, usual, well-worn, worn-out | popular** *a popular cliché about the English*
- VERB + CLICHÉ **use** *Try to avoid using clichés in your writing.*
- PREP. **~ about**

click *noun*

- ADJ. **loud, sharp | audible | faint, little, quiet, soft | metallic | double, single** (used about clicks on a computer mouse) *a double click on the filename* | **mouse**
- VERB + CLICK **give (out)** *The answerphone gave a sharp click.* | **hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *He closed his briefcase with a click.* | **~ of** *She heard the click of shoes on the marble floor.*

client *noun*

- ADJ. **big** *The company needs to focus on its biggest clients.* | **new | potential, prospective | established, existing, regular | business, corporate | private**
- VERB + CLIENT **serve** *A new branch has been opened to serve clients in East London.* | **act for, represent | take on** *She's so busy that she's not taking on any new clients.* | **attract** *a campaign to attract new clients*
- PREP. **on behalf of ~** *On behalf of my client, I would like to remind you of your obligations in this matter.*

clientele *noun*

- ADJ. **large, small | broad, narrow | regular, usual | exclusive, fashionable, select | international**
- VERB + CLIENTELE **attract, have** *The restaurant has a large regular clientele.* | **cater for/to, serve** *The boutique caters for a rather select clientele.* | **build (up), establish** *It takes time to build up a clientele.*

cliff *noun*

- ADJ. **high, towering | low | dramatic, precipitous, sheer, steep | craggy, jagged, rocky, rugged | chalk, limestone, etc. | coastal, mountain, river, sea**
- QUANT. **line** *a long line of cliffs surrounding the bay*
- VERB + CLIFF **climb, scale**
- CLIFF + VERB **fall (away), rise (up)** *The cliffs fall away to the north.* ◇ *Rugged sandstone cliffs rose up from the beach.* | **overlook sth, tower** *Steep cliffs towered above the river.* | **crumble** *crumbling cliffs*
- CLIFF + NOUN **edge, face, ledge, top | path, walk**
- PHRASES **be perched (high) on a cliff** *The hotel was perched high on a cliff overlooking the sea.* **the base/bottom/edge/foot/top of the cliff**

climate *noun*

1 weather conditions of a particular region
- ADJ. **hot, warm | cold, cool | mild | extreme, harsh, inhospitable, severe** *the severe northern climate* | **damp, humid, wet | arid, dry | equatorial, Mediterranean, subtropical, temperate, tropical | northern, southern, etc. | global** *global climate change*
- VERB + CLIMATE **have** *The city has a warm climate.*
- CLIMATE + NOUN **change**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Little grows in such a dry climate.*

2 opinions, etc. people have at a particular time
- ADJ. **favourable | hostile, unfavourable | current, present, prevailing | changed, changing | business, economic, emotional, financial, ideological, intellectual, moral, political, social**
- VERB + CLIMATE **create**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *His ideas on equality are viewed as utopian in the current political climate.* | **~ for** *a climate for economic recovery* **~ of** *The new policies have created a climate of fear.*
- PHRASES **a climate of opinion**

climax *noun*

1 exciting/important event, point in time, etc.
- ADJ. **big, dramatic, exciting, grand, great, powerful, thrilling | fitting**
- VERB + CLIMAX **come to, reach** *The crisis reached its climax in the 1970s.* | **approach, near, rise to, build up to, work up to** *The story gradually builds up to a powerful climax.* | **bring sth to** *The affair was brought to a climax when the chairman resigned.* | **mark** *Yesterday marked the climax of the celebrations.*
- CLIMAX + VERB **come** *The climax came at the end of the second act of the play.*
- PREP. **at the ~** *The hero dies at the climax of the opera.* **in a/the ~** *In a dramatic climax, our team lost the match by one goal.* | **~ to** *His promotion was a fitting climax to a worthy career.*

2 highest point of sexual pleasure
- ADJ. **sexual**
- VERB + CLIMAX **achieve, reach** *She found it hard to achieve a/reach climax.*

climb *noun*

1 act of climbing
- ADJ. **long, slow | short | arduous, difficult, exhausting, hard, sharp, steep | easy | steady**
- VERB + CLIMB **do, make** *I was fitter the first time I did the climb.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *I broke my ankle on a climb last week.* | **~ from/to** *the short climb from the road to the summit* **~ up** *They began the long climb up the hill.*

2 increase in value/amount/status
- ADJ. **long, slow | rapid | gradual, steady**
- PREP. **~ against** *the dollar's climb against the euro* **~ in** *a steady climb in the cost of travel* **~ out of** *a long slow climb out of recession* **~ to** *her rapid climb to stardom*

climb *verb*

1 move up towards the top of sth
- ADV. **high** *Don't climb too high.* | **slowly**
- PREP. **up** *He climbed slowly up the ladder.*
- PHRASES **climb to the top** *We climbed right to the top of the mountain.* **go climbing** (= climb up mountains for sport) *He goes climbing in Scotland every summer.*

2 move/lead upwards
- ADV. **gradually, slowly | steadily | steeply | up**
- VERB + CLIMB **begin to** *The path began to climb quite steeply.*
- PREP. **from** *The road gradually climbs up from the village.* **to** *The plane took off and climbed to 20 000 feet.*

3 increase
- ADV. **sharply, steeply** *Prices have climbed sharply in recent months.* | **steadily**
- PREP. **above** *The temperature had climbed above 90 degrees.* **from, to** *Unemployment has climbed from two million to three million.*

cling *verb*

1 hold tightly
- ADV. **firmly, tightly | desperately, precariously** *houses clinging precariously to sheer cliffs* | **together** *The children clung together in fear.*
- PREP. **onto** *She clung onto my arm.* **to** *He clung tightly to the raft to keep himself afloat.*

2 stay close
- ADV. **close/closely** *The ground mist clung closely to the hedgerows.*
- PREP. **to**

PHRASAL VERB

cling (on) to sth
- ADV. **still | rigidly, stubbornly, tenaciously** *He still clings stubbornly to his socialist ideas.* | **desperately, fiercely** *She was desperately clinging on to life.*

clinic *noun*

- ADJ. **hospital | health | special | private | outpatient | abortion, antenatal, birth control, family planning, fertility/infertility, maternity | breast, eye, etc. | diabetic, psychiatric, etc.**
- VERB + CLINIC **attend, go to | hold** *The surgery holds a baby clinic every Wednesday afternoon.* | **be treated at** *She is being treated at a special diabetic clinic.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *He was treated at the hospital's eye clinic.* **in a/the ~** *She works in a birth control clinic.* | **~ for** *a clinic for asthma sufferers*

clinical *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **purely** *She regarded her patients from a purely clinical standpoint.* | **almost** *He looked at the body with an almost clinical detachment.*
- PREP. **about** *How can you be so cold and clinical about your son's accident?*

clip *noun*

1 used for holding things together

• ADJ. **bulldog, crocodile, spring | bicycle, hair, nose, paper, suspender, tie**

• VERB + CLIP **fasten, put (in/on)** *She put a clip in her hair. ◇ He put his bicycle clips on and set off.* **| take off, undo, unfasten**

• CLIP + VERB **hold sth** *Paper clips held the picture in place.*

2 small section from a film

• ADJ. **brief, short | film, movie, video**

• VERB + CLIP **see | show**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *You will see in this clip how well she acts.* **| ~from** *a clip from a Sherlock Holmes movie*

cloak *noun*

• ADJ. **heavy | hooded**

• VERB + CLOAK **be wrapped in | drape, throw** *She threw a heavy woollen cloak over her shoulders.* **| draw, pull, wrap** *He pulled his cloak tightly around himself.* **| throw off**

• CLOAK + VERB **flow, fly, sweep, swirl** *a flowing black cloak ◇ She stormed off, her cloak flying behind her.*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

clock *noun*

• ADJ. **12/24-hour | atomic, digital, electric | bedside, kitchen | alarm, carriage, cuckoo, grandfather, long-case, time, travelling, wall**

• VERB + CLOCK **set, wind** *I've set my alarm clock for six tomorrow.* **| put back/forward** *He forgot to put his clock forward and turned up an hour late.* **| stop** (for example in a game) *Pressing the 'Yes' or 'No' response button stops the clock.* **| glance at, look at | watch** *employees who are always watching the clock* (= wanting their day's work to end)

• CLOCK + VERB **chime (sth), strike sth, tick** *The clock struck the hour. ◇ I could hear a clock ticking somewhere in the house.* **| stop | be fast/slow, gain/keep/lose time** *This clock doesn't keep time.* **| go back/forward** *The clocks go back* (= for a return to standard time)/*forward* (= for summer time) *tonight.* **| say sth** *The clock on the mantelpiece said twelve o'clock.* **| go off** *My alarm clock didn't go off this morning.*

• CLOCK + NOUN **face, tower | radio**

• PREP. **against the ~** *to work against the clock* (= to work fast in order to finish before a particular time) **around/round the ~** (= all day and all night) *to work around the clock* **by the ~** *It's ten o'clock by the kitchen clock.*

• PHRASES **the dial/face/hands of a clock**

close *noun*

• VERB + CLOSE **bring sth to** *The chairperson brought the meeting to a close.* **| come to, draw to** *The decade drew to a close with the threat of war hanging over Europe.*

• PREP. **at/by/towards the ~ of** *At the close of trading, he had lost thousands of pounds on the stock market.*

close *verb*

1 door, book, eyes, etc.

• ADV. **firmly, tightly** *He closed the door firmly.*

2 shop, business, road, etc.

• ADV. **permanently, temporarily | down, off, up** *That factory's been closed down now.*

• PREP. **to** *The museum has been temporarily closed to the public.*

close *adj.*

1 near

• VERBS **be | draw, get** *She grew increasingly nervous as the date of the audition drew closer.* **| keep, stay** *Keep close to me.*

• ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, quite | together** *Their birthdays are very close together.*

• PREP. **to** *Get close to the microphone.*

2 friendly and loving

• VERBS **be, feel, seem** *The two sisters seemed very close.* **| become, grow** *After the death of their parents the two children grew very close.* **| remain**

• ADV. **very | quite**

• PREP. **to** *He was quite close to his older brother.*

closed *adj.*

• VERBS **be | remain** *The library will remain closed until next week.* **| keep sth** *Keep that door closed, will you?*

• ADV. **firmly, properly, tightly** *Are the windows firmly closed? ◇ Her mouth was tightly closed.* **| completely, fully** *Make sure the lid is completely closed. ◇ The valve can be adjusted from fully open to fully closed.* **| almost, nearly** *squinting through almost closed eyes* **| half, partially, partly** *Her eyes were half closed.* **| officially | permanently, temporarily**

• PREP. **for** *The building is closed for repairs.* **to** *Twenty-five miles of beaches were officially closed to the public.*

close-up *noun*

• ADJ. **extreme**

• CLOSE-UP + NOUN **detail** *The slide gave close-up detail of petal formation.* **| photograph, picture, shot, view**

• PREP. **in ~** *The wound was photographed in extreme close-up.*

closure *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, total** *The accident caused the complete closure of the road.* **| partial | immediate | eventual | permanent, temporary | indefinite | planned, possible, proposed, threatened | enforced | factory, hospital, pit, road, school, etc.**

• VERB + CLOSURE **be earmarked for, be threatened with, face** *Several schools face eventual closure.* **| cause, force** *Imposing higher taxes would force the closure of many bookshops.* **| prevent, save sth from, stop** *The mine has been saved from closure.*

• CLOSURE + NOUN **plan, programme | order**

• PHRASES **(be) under threat of closure**

clot *noun*

• ADJ. **blood** *a blood clot on her brain*

• VERB + CLOT **dissolve, remove**

• CLOT + VERB **form**

cloth *noun*

1 material used for making clothes, curtains, etc.

• ADJ. **coarse, fine | homespun | woven | cotton, damask, linen, woollen** *a jacket made from woollen cloth*

• QUANT. **bale, bolt, length | piece, scrap, strip**

• VERB + CLOTH **make, produce, weave | dye**

• CLOTH + NOUN **industry, manufacture, merchant, mill, trade**

2 piece of cloth used for a particular purpose

• ADJ. **damp, dry, soft** *Wipe the table with a damp cloth.* **| cleaning, floor, polishing | table** (also **tablecloth**) **| tea | loin** (also **loincloth**)

clothed *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

CLOTHES

You can **wear** clothes or jewellery or you can **have** clothes/jewellery **on**:
I'm going to wear my little black dress to the party.
He's got a very strange hat on.

You can **be dressed in** clothes, fabric or a colour:

She was dressed | *in jeans.*
all in black.
in green velvet.

You can **put on** and **take off** any sort of clothing. You can also:

I'll just slip into something more comfortable.

pull on	pull up	slip on	slip into	shrug into	throw on
boots	jeans	a dressing gown	something more comfortable	a coat	a coat
gloves	knickers	a jacket		a jacket	a jacket
a jacket	pants	a pair of sth			
a pair of sth	a skirt	a robe			
socks	socks	shoes			
a sweater	trousers				
tights					
trousers					

She pulled on a pair of faded jeans and a sweater.
Wait while I slip into something more comfortable.
Throwing on his coat, he made for the door.

• ADV. **fully** *Jenny was fully clothed.* | **lightly, partially** *It was warm and she was lightly clothed.* ◇ *Her partially clothed body was found in woods nearby.*
• PREP. **in** *clothed in white*
• PHRASES **fed and clothed** *the problems of keeping the family fed and clothed*

clothes *noun*

• ADJ. **beautiful, elegant, fancy, fine, lovely, nice, pretty** | **cheap, expensive** | **clean, fresh** | **dirty, dishevelled, ragged, shabby, soiled** | **tight** | **baggy, ill-fitting, loose, sloppy** | **designer, fashionable, trendy** | **dowdy, nerdy, old-fashioned** | **second-hand** | **comfortable, sensible** | **best, evening, formal, smart** *He wore his best clothes to the interview.* | **casual, everyday, ordinary** | **outrageous, strange, wacky** | **warm** | **summer, winter** | **outdoor, outer** | **baby, maternity, mourning, night, riding, school, sports, work, working** | **civilian, plain** *an officer in plain clothes* (= not in uniform)
• QUANT. **set, suit** *I'm going to take a set of clean clothes with me.* ◇ *a new suit of clothes for the baby*
• VERB + CLOTHES **put (back) on** | **remove** | **change** *Aren't you going to change your clothes for the party?* | **make** | **dry, iron, mend, wash**
• CLOTHES + NOUN **shop** | **designer** | **basket** | **sense**
• PREP. **in ~** *She didn't recognize him in his sloppy everyday clothes.*
• PHRASES **a change of clothes**

clothing *noun*

• ADJ. **light** | **heavy, warm** | **loose** | **tight** | **comfortable, sensible, suitable** | **casual** | **designer** | **cast-off, second-hand, used** | **summer, winter** | **outdoor** | **outer** | **protective, waterproof** *Workers at the factory wear protective clothing.* | **sports**
• QUANT. **article, item, piece** | **layer**
• CLOTHING + NOUN **business, company, factory, firm, industry, manufacturer, shop, store, trade**
• PHRASES **a change of clothing**

cloud *noun*

1 mass of very small drops of water in the sky
• ADJ. **dense, heavy, thick** | **light** | **fluffy** | **cirrus, cumulus** | **high, low** | **broken, scattered** *skies of broken cloud* | **fast-moving, scudding** | **black, dark, grey, white** | **rain, storm, threatening, thunder** *Rain clouds were looming on the horizon.*
• QUANT. **band, bank, layer, mass, wisp** *a layer of high cloud*
• VERB + CLOUD **seed** (= to place a substance in a cloud to make it produce rain)
• CLOUD + VERB **form, gather, mass** *Dark clouds were*

remove	pull off	pull down	drop	kick off	shrug off
clothes	a coat	knickers	pants	sandals	a coat
a coat	gloves	pants	trousers	shoes	a jacket
glasses	a hat	a skirt			
a hat	a jacket	trousers			
a jacket	a mask				
a mask	a shirt				
a shirt	shoes				
shoes	socks				

He removed his glasses and rubbed the bridge of his nose.
With a dramatic gesture she pulled off her mask.
I kicked off my sandals and felt the warm sand slipping between my toes.

fasteners

do up/undo	zip up/unzip	button up/ unbutton	lace up/unlace	fasten/ unfasten
a bra	an anorak	a blouse	boots	a belt
a buckle	a dress	a coat	shoes	a buckle
buttons	flies	flies	trainers	buttons
flies	a jacket	a jacket		
shoelaces	jeans	a shirt		
a zip	a skirt			

His fingers fumbled to do up the small buttons on his shirt.
My shoelaces came undone and I nearly tripped.
Tom buttoned his overcoat up to his neck and raised his collar.

gathering in the west. | **cover sth, envelop sth, obscure sth** | **break, clear, disperse, lift, part** *The clouds broke a little, and the sun came out.* | **drift, float, hang, hover, loom, move, pass, race, roll, scud, swirl** *Thick cloud hung over the moor.* ◇ *A cloud passed over the sun.* ◇ *White clouds scudded across the sky.*

- CLOUD + NOUN **bank, cover, formation** *The cloud cover is quite dense today.*
- PREP. **above/below the ~s** *flying above the clouds* **through the ~s** *She could see the sun through the clouds.*
- PHRASES **a break in the cloud(s), a layer of cloud**

2 mass of smoke, dust, etc.

- ADJ. **great, huge** *a great cloud of grey smoke* | **dense, thick** | **billowing, swirling** | **mushroom** *the mushroom cloud from a nuclear bomb* | **dust, radioactive, smoke**
- PREP. **~of** *a thick cloud of steam*

cloudy *adj.*

1 full of clouds

- VERBS **be** | **start** *England and Wales will start cloudy.* | **become** *Later it will become cloudy with rain in places.* | **remain, stay** *It stayed cloudy for most of the day.*
- ADV. **very** | **rather, slightly** *a rather cloudy sky*

2 not clear

- VERBS **be, look** *The beer looked cloudy.* | **become** | **make sth** *The warm water is made cloudy by adding some milk.*
- ADV. **very** | **rather, slightly** *Sometimes the drinking water becomes rather cloudy.*

clout *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous** *a politician with enormous clout* | **economic, financial, political** *the growing political clout of the army*
- VERB + CLOUT **carry, have, wield** *He has a lot of clout within the party.* | **exercise, use** *The companies used their clout to influence the policy.*

club *noun*

1 group of people who meet to share an interest

- ADJ. **exclusive, private, top** *one of the top football clubs in the country* | **local** | **social** | **youth** | **fan, sports** | **football, golf, etc.** *She plays at the local tennis club.* | **book, record**
- VERB + CLUB **belong to** *She belongs to a book club.* | **become a member of, join** | **form, start** | **run** *Who runs the tennis club?*
- CLUB + NOUN **chairman, manager, member, official, player, secretary** | **cricket, football** | **bar**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *How many people are there in the club?*

⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION

2 where people go and listen to music, dance, etc.

- ADJ. **jazz, night** (also **nightclub**)

- CLUB + NOUN **scene** *a new style of music on the London club scene*

3 playing card

⇨ Note at CARD

clue *noun*

- ADJ. **good, important, useful, valuable | vital | tell-tale | obvious**
- VERB + CLUE **have, hold** *So far, the police haven't got any clues as to the motive for the crime.* ◇ *Diet may hold the clue to the causes of migraine.* | **give (sb), furnish/provide/supply (sb with), yield** *The hat gives a clue to the identity of the killer.* ◇ *The letter yielded no clues.* | **hunt for, look for, search for | discover, find, uncover | leave** *The burglar left no clues.* | **follow (up)**
- PREP. **~ about** *This research might provide an important clue about how cancer develops.* **~ (as) to** *a clue as to her whereabouts*

clump *noun*

- ADJ. **great, large | little, small | dense** *These plants quickly form dense clumps.* | **straggling, tangled**
- VERB + CLUMP **form**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *situated in a clump of trees* | **~ of** *great clumps of rhododendrons*

cluster *noun*

- ADJ. **little, small | compact, dense**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The church stood in a small cluster of farmers' cottages.* | **~ of** *a dense cluster of buildings*

cluster *verb*

- ADV. **closely, tightly | together** *The group clustered together closely.*
- PREP. **about/around/round** *The children clustered around their teacher.*

clutch *noun*

1 sb/sth's clutches sb/sth's power/control
- VERB + CLUTCHES **fall into** *She fell into the clutches of the rebel forces.* | **escape (from)**
- PREP. **in sb's ~** *They had him in their clutches.* **out of sb's ~** *Once she was out of their clutches, she fled across the border.*

2 in a car
- VERB + CLUTCH **drop, engage, put your foot on | disengage, let in/out, release, take your foot off** *Put it into first gear and let the clutch out slowly.* | **ride** (= to keep in a state between full engagement and disengagement) *The driver at the traffic lights was riding his clutch.*
- CLUTCH + VERB **engage | disengage | slip**
- CLUTCH + NOUN **pedal**

clutch *verb*

- ADV. **firmly, tightly | desperately**
- PREP. **at** *He felt himself slipping and clutched at a branch.*
- PHRASES **clutch sth in your hand** *She clutched her handbag tightly in one hand.* **clutch sth to your chest** *She clutched the letter to her chest.*

clutter *noun*

- ADJ. **personal | screen** *to get rid of screen clutter* (= on a computer)
- VERB + CLUTTER **clear (up), get rid of**
- PREP. **amid/amidst/among/amongst the ~** *The cat managed to find a spot to sleep amidst all the clutter of my study.* **in a/the ~** *The garage is in such a clutter that we can't find anything.*

coach *noun*

1 bus for longer journeys
- ADJ. **express | private | luxury | air-conditioned**
- VERB + COACH **go by, travel by | board, get on | get off | drive | hire**
- COACH + NOUN **station | driver | holiday, journey, tour, trip | travel | party | company | service**
- PREP. **by ~** *They are planning to tour the United States by coach.* | **in/on a/the ~**

2 large carriage pulled by horses
- ADJ. **royal**
- VERB + COACH **drive | ride in**
- COACH + VERB **drive**
- COACH + NOUN **road** *This is the old coach road.* | **house**
- PHRASES **a coach and four/six** (= a coach and four/six horses) *a gateway wide enough for a coach and four to drive through* **a coach and horses**

3 person who trains people in sport, etc.
- ADJ. **good, successful, top** *a top football coach* | **professional | chief, head | assistant | national | club | athletics, basketball, football, tennis, etc. | sports | acting, drama, voice**

⇨ Note at JOB

coal *noun*

1 black mineral
- ADJ. **hard | soft | brown | bituminous, coking | opencast** *opencast coal mining*
- QUANT. **lump, piece**
- VERB + COAL **mine, produce | burn, use | shovel**
- COAL + VERB **burn**
- COAL + NOUN **fire | mine, pit | mining, production | merchant, miner | company | industry | field, seam | bucket, bunker, cellar, scuttle | dust, gas**

2 (usually **coals**) burning pieces of coal
- ADJ. **burning, glowing, hot, live, red-hot**
- VERB + COAL **glow** *Red-hot coals glowed in the fireplace.*

coalition *noun*

- ADJ. **strong | loose | broad, broad-based, rainbow, umbrella** *an umbrella coalition of human rights organizations* | **grand** *a grand coalition of various environmental groups* | **centre-left, centre-right, conservative, left-wing, liberal, radical, right-wing | two-party, three-party, etc. | cross-party | governing, government, ruling | opposition | wartime | political**
- VERB + COALITION **create, form** *The centre-right parties have formed a coalition.* | **join | lead** *a coalition led by the Socialist Party*
- COALITION + VERB **break up, collapse, fall (apart)**
- COALITION + NOUN **government | forces, member, partner, party**
- PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *The two parties governed in coalition for four years.* ◇ *the biggest party in the government coalition* | **~ between** *a coalition between the Socialists and Communists* **~ of** *a broad coalition of democratic and republican groups* **~ with** *They formed a coalition with the Greens.*

coast *noun*

- ADJ. **forbidding, rocky, rugged, wild | north, northern, etc. | indented | mainland | sea**
- QUANT. **stretch** *the long stretch of coast between Lowestoft and Felixstowe*
- VERB + COAST **follow, hug** *The path hugs the coast all the way to Tenby.*
- COAST + VERB **stretch** *The coast stretched far into the distance.*
- COAST + NOUN **road**

• PREP. **along the ~** *We travelled south along the coast.* **around/round the ~** *They sailed round the coast to Falmouth.* **at the ~** *We spent a day at the coast.* **off the ~** *an island two miles off the west coast of Scotland* **on the ~** *a village on the Mediterranean coast*

coastline *noun*

• ADJ. **long | beautiful, spectacular | rocky, rugged | wild | unspoilt | indented**
• QUANT. **stretch** *long stretches of unspoilt coastline*
• VERB + COASTLINE **follow** *The road follows the Pacific coastline.* **| erode**
• COASTLINE + VERB **stretch** *The coastline stretches for miles.*
• PREP. **along a/the ~** *They sailed along the rugged coastline.* **around/round a/the ~** *sailing around the Atlantic coastline of France* **off a/the ~** *the search for oil off the Welsh coastline*

coat *noun*

1 piece of clothing
• ADJ. **long | short | three-quarter-length | heavy | light | winter | waterproof | fur-trimmed | double-breasted, single-breasted | belted | duffle, frock, morning, tail, trench**
• VERB + COAT **pull on, shrug (yourself) into, shrug on, throw on | pull off, shrug off | button (up)** *The coat was buttoned up wrong.* **| unbutton | hang (up)**
• COAT + NOUN **collar, pocket, sleeve, tail | hook**
⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

2 fur/hair covering an animal's body
• ADJ. **long | short | thick | rough | smooth | curly, fluffy, furry, shaggy, silky, woolly** *a dog with a long shaggy coat* **| glossy | spotted, striped | winter**
• VERB + COAT **shed** *The dog sheds its winter coat once the weather becomes warmer.*

3 layer of sth covering a surface
• ADJ. **thick | thin | fresh, new** *The room needs a fresh coat of paint.* **| base | final, top**
• VERB + COAT **apply, put on** *Make sure the base coat has thoroughly dried before applying the top coat.*
• COAT + VERB **dry**
• PREP. **~ of** *a coat of paint/varnish*

coat *verb*

• ADV. **completely | heavily, thickly | lightly | specially** *The fabric has been specially coated to improve its water resistance.*
• PREP. **in** *Coat the fish in the sauce.* **with** *The furniture was thickly coated with dust.*

coating *noun*

• ADJ. **thick | fine, thin | outer, surface | protective | magnetic | chocolate, metal, plastic**
• VERB + COATING **be covered in/with, have** *The fruit is covered in a thick coating of milk chocolate.* **| apply** *Apply a thin coating of glue to the surface.*

coax *verb*

• ADV. **gently**
• VERB + COAX **try to | manage to | fail to**
• PREP. **from** *He could coax tears and laughter from his audience.* **into** *He gently coaxed life back into my frozen toes.* **out of** *She never failed to coax good results out of her pupils.*

cocaine *noun*

• ADJ. **crack, freebase**
• QUANT. **line, packet**
• VERB + COCAINE **freebase, inject, shoot, smoke, sniff, snort**
• COCAINE + NOUN **possession | injection | export | baron | cartel**
⇨ Note at DRUG (for more verbs and nouns)

cock *noun*

• ADJ. **fighting | barnyard** *The market traders cried out like barnyard cocks.*
• COCK + VERB **crow** *The cock crowed at dawn.*
• COCK + NOUN **fight, fighting**

cocktail *noun*

1 mixed alcoholic drink
• ADJ. **pre-dinner | champagne**
• VERB + COCKTAIL **mix | have, drink | sip**
• COCKTAIL + NOUN **bar, cabinet | circuit** *a familiar face on the cocktail circuit* **| dress | hour | lounge | party | shaker | waiter, waitress**

2 dish of small pieces of food
• ADJ. **prawn, seafood | fruit**

3 mixture of different things
• ADJ. **deadly, lethal | heady, powerful** *The show was a heady cocktail of jazz, dance and political satire.*
• PREP. **~ of** *a lethal cocktail of drink and drugs*

cock-up *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, real, total**
• VERB + COCK-UP **make** *He made a real cock-up of it.*
• PREP. **~ over** *There's been a bit of a cock-up over the travel arrangements.*

coconut *noun*

• ADJ. **dessicated, fresh**
• QUANT. **bunch** *huge bunches of fresh coconuts*
• VERB + COCONUT **eat, have | grow | harvest, pick | break open, open** *She broke open the coconut and drank its sweet milk.*
• COCONUT + NOUN **milk, oil | palm, tree** *a bay fringed with swaying coconut palms* **| fibre, husk, matting, shell**

code *noun*

1 system of letters, numbers, etc. for secret information
• ADJ. **secret | Morse**
• VERB + CODE **break, crack, decipher** *The code was difficult to crack.* **| use, write in | invent, make up**
• CODE + NOUN **word**
• PREP. **in ~** *All the messages were in code.*

2 numbers/letters for identifying sth
• ADJ. **area, dialling** *What's the area code for Bath?* **| post/postal | bar, charge | DNA, genetic | binary** (= a system of computer programming instructions) **| error** (= on a computer)
• CODE + NOUN **number**

3 set of rules for behaviour
• ADJ. **strict | ethical, moral | civil, criminal, disciplinary, penal | Highway** *the Highway Code* (= the official rules for users of public roads in Britain) **| dress**
• VERB + CODE **have | devise, draw up, establish, formulate, lay down** *The company has drawn up a new disciplinary code.* **| comply with, follow | break, infringe, violate** *He was thrown out for infringing the club's strict dress code.*
• PHRASES **a code of behaviour/conduct/ethics/honour/practice** *The profession has a strict code of practice.*

coexist *verb*

• ADV. **peacefully** *What makes it difficult for the communities to coexist peacefully?*

• PREP. **alongside/with** *Modern farming methods coexist with more traditional practices.*

coffee *noun*

• ADJ. **strong | weak | black, dark** *a mug of strong black coffee* **| milky, white** *She drinks very milky coffee with lots of sugar.* **| frothy | sugary, sweet | bitter | hot, steaming** *a pot of piping hot coffee ◇ He brought in two mugs of steaming coffee.* **| lukewarm, tepid | cold | iced | fresh** *The others will be back soon—I'll go and make some fresh coffee.* **| excellent, expensive, good | decaffeinated | ersatz | filter, percolated, real | instant** *Would you like real or instant coffee?* **| Irish** (= with whiskey added), **Turkish** (= very strong, black and sweet)
• QUANT. **cup, mug, pot**
• VERB + COFFEE **drink** *Do you drink coffee?* **| have** *I had two coffees while I waited.* **| take** *'How do you take your coffee?' 'Milk, no sugar, thanks.'* **| sip, take a mouthful/sip of** *He took a sip of his coffee.* **| drain, drink up, finish | stir | pour (sb) | go for** *Let's go for a coffee when you've finished your essay.* **| brew, make** *freshly-brewed coffee ◇ I'll make some coffee for breakfast.* **| grind** *a packet of freshly-ground coffee*
• COFFEE + VERB **get/go cold | be laced with sth** *coffee laced with cognac*
• COFFEE + NOUN **cup, mug | machine, percolator, pot | dregs | break**
• PREP. **in your ~** *I have milk but no sugar in my coffee.*
• PHRASES **an aroma/a smell of coffee** *An inviting smell of coffee wafted into the room.* **coffee-making facilities** *Tea and coffee-making facilities are available in the kitchen.*

coffin *noun*

• VERB + COFFIN **carry, take | lower** *The coffin was lowered into the grave.*
• PREP. **in a/the ~**

coherence *noun*

• ADJ. **internal** *Your essay lacks internal coherence.* **| ideological, intellectual, logical, theoretical** *theories which lack ideological coherence*
• VERB + COHERENCE **have, possess | achieve, create, give sth, maintain** *They have struggled to create coherence within the group.* **| lack**
• PREP. **~ between** *a lack of coherence between the policy and the speech* **~ in/within** *There's a strong sense of coherence in the school curriculum.*
• PHRASES **a degree/sense of coherence**

coherent *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem | become**
• ADV. **remarkably, very** *You're not being very coherent.* **| perfectly** *a perfectly coherent remark* **| reasonably**

coil *noun*

• ADJ. **neat, tight | thick** *thick coils of blonde hair*
• COIL + VERB **unwind**
• PREP. **in a ~** *She wore her hair in a neat coil.* **| ~ of** *a coil of rope*

coil *verb*

• ADV. **tightly | loosely | neatly | up** *He coiled the rope up tightly and put it away.*
• PREP. **around/round** *The snake coiled itself around a branch.* **into** *Her hair was neatly coiled into a bun.*

coin *noun*

• ADJ. **copper, gold, silver | antique, rare | commemorative | counterfeit, fake | penny, pound, etc.**
• VERB + COIN **issue | mint, strike** *The first English gold coin was struck in 1255.* **| flip, spin, toss** *They tossed a coin to see who should go first.* **| collect**
• COIN + VERB **be in circulation, circulate** *Very few old 5p coins are still in circulation.* **| clink, jingle** *coins jingling in his pockets*
• COIN + NOUN **collector**

coincide *verb*

1 happen at the same time
• ADV. **exactly** *Her visit coincided exactly with a visit by the American president.* **| roughly**
• VERB + COINCIDE **be planned to, be timed to**
• PREP. **with** *The singer's arrival was timed to coincide with the opening of the festival.*

2 be the same
• ADV. **closely | exactly**
• PREP. **with** *Our views on this issue coincide closely with yours.*

coincidence *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, pure, sheer** *It was pure coincidence that they were both in Paris on the same day.* **| mere | happy** *What a happy coincidence to meet you at the airport just when I wanted to see you.* **| unfortunate, unhappy | amazing, curious, extraordinary, funny, incredible, odd, remarkable, strange, wonderful**
• QUANT. **series, set, string** *They met through a series of strange coincidences.*
• COINCIDENCE + VERB **happen** *Remarkable coincidences do happen in real life.*
• PREP. **by (a) ~** *By coincidence, we both went to the same school. ◇ By an unfortunate coincidence, their house was burgled on the day he lost his job.*

coincidental *adj.*

• VERBS **be**
• ADV. **entirely, merely, purely, quite** *These parallels cannot be merely coincidental.* **| largely**

coke *noun*

1 **Coke** drink
• ADJ. **diet**
• QUANT. **bottle, can, glass**
• VERB + COKE **have** *I'll have a Coke, please.* **| drink, sip**
• COKE + NOUN **bottle, can | machine**
• PHRASES **rum and Coke**

2 cocaine
• QUANT. **line**
• VERB + COKE **sniff, snort**
• COKE + NOUN **fiend, sniffer**
⇨ Note at DRUG

3 fuel
• QUANT. **lump, piece**
• VERB + COKE **manufacture, produce | burn, use**
• COKE + NOUN **works | boiler, fire**

cold *noun*

1 lack of heat; low temperature
• ADJ. **biting, bitter, extreme, freezing**
• VERB + COLD **feel** *I don't feel the cold as badly as many people.* **| keep out** *The house has double glazing to keep out the cold.* **| be blue with, be numb with** *My hands were blue with cold.*
• PREP. **against the ~** *We were well wrapped up against the cold.* **out in the ~** *He stood out in the cold and waited. ◇ (figurative) When the coalition was formed the Liberals were left out in the cold* (= were not invited to join it).

2 common illness

- ADJ. **bad, heavy, nasty** *She won her match despite suffering from a heavy cold.* | **slight** | **common** *When will they find a cure for the common cold?* | **chest, head**
- VERB + COLD **have, nurse, suffer from** *Jim stayed at home because he was nursing a cold.* | **catch, go down with, take** *I must have caught a cold on the bus.* ◇ *If you stay out in the rain you'll catch cold!* ◇ *He took cold, developed pneumonia, and that was the end of him.*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

cold *adj.*

1 not hot or warm

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** | **become, get, grow, turn** *As evening fell it got very cold.* ◇ *The room grew cold.* ◇ *In January it turned very cold.* | **make sb/sth** *The rain overnight had made the water cold.* | **keep sth** *Use ice to keep the drinks cold.*
- ADV. **bitterly, extremely, freezing, ice-, icy, terribly, very** *It's bitterly cold outside.* ◇ *There was a freezing cold wind.* ◇ *an ice-cold beer* | **fairly, quite, rather**

2 not cooked/having become cold after cooking

- VERBS **be** | **get, go** *Your dinner's getting cold.* ◇ *I'm afraid the coffee's gone cold.* | **eat sth, serve sth** *Bake in the oven for twenty minutes. Serve hot or cold.*
- ADV. **stone** *This soup is stone cold!*

coldness *noun*

1 state of being cold

- ADJ. **icy** *The icy coldness of the water revived her.*

2 unfriendliness

- ADJ. **marked** *There was a marked coldness in her voice.*
- VERB + COLDNESS **treat sb with**
- PREP. **~between** *the coldness between Jack and Martha* **~towards** *his coldness towards his parents*

colic *noun*

- ADJ. **violent** | **biliary** | **infantile**
- QUANT. **attack, bout**
- VERB + COLIC **have, suffer from** | **develop** | **treat**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

collaborate *verb*

- ADV. **actively, closely**
- PREP. **on, with** *We have collaborated closely with the university on this project.*

collaboration *noun*

- ADJ. **active, close** | **effective, fruitful, happy, successful** | **international**
- PREP. **in ~with** *Rock musicians are working in collaboration with an orchestra to create a new opera.* | **~between** *a collaboration between two writers* **~with** *the results of a fruitful collaboration with the industry*
- PHRASES **a degree of collaboration**

collapse *noun*

1 building, etc. suddenly falling

- ADJ. **sudden** *the sudden collapse of the bridge*
- PHRASES **be in danger of collapse**

2 medical condition

- ADJ. **sudden** | **mental, nervous, physical**
- VERB + COLLAPSE **be close to, be on the point/verge of** *She was on the verge of nervous collapse.*
- PREP. **~from** *his collapse from exhaustion*
- PHRASES **a state of collapse** *He was in a state of mental and physical collapse.*

3 sudden/complete failure of sth

- ADJ. **complete, total** | **general** | **virtual** | **sudden** | **economic, financial** *the sudden economic collapse of 2001*
- VERB + COLLAPSE **bring about, contribute to, lead to, result in** *The war has led to the collapse of agriculture in the area.* | **face, be faced with** | **be on the brink/point/verge of** | **prevent**
- PREP. **~into** *a collapse into anarchy*

collapse *verb*

1 of a building

- ADV. **completely**
- PREP. **into** *Several buildings have collapsed into the sea.* **under** *The roof collapsed under the weight of snow.*

2 of a sick person

- ADV. **suddenly**
- PREP. **against** *The man collapsed against the wall and slid down it.* **from** *She collapsed suddenly from a heart attack.* **with** *He collapsed with shock.*

3 fail

- ADV. **eventually, finally** *In November the strike finally collapsed.* | **quickly, rapidly** | **suddenly** | **virtually**
- PHRASES **to collapse in the face of sth** *The scheme collapsed in the face of determined opposition.*

collar *noun*

1 on a shirt, coat, dress, etc.

- ADJ. **open, undone** *His tie was knotted below his open collar.* ◇ *His collar was undone.* | **button-down, turned-down** | **tight** | **starched, stiff** | **detachable** | **coat, shirt, etc.** | **high, stand-up, wing** | **clerical, dog** *The vicar had his dog collar on.*
- VERB + COLLAR **have** *The shirt had a button-down collar.* | **have on, wear** | **button, do up, fasten** | **unbutton, undo, unfasten** | **raise, turn up** *She turned up her coat collar for extra warmth.* | **turn down** | **loosen**
- COLLAR + NOUN **stud** | **size**
- PHRASES **collar and tie** *He wore a collar and tie for the occasion.*

2 round an animal's neck

- ADJ. **dog** | **flea**
- VERB + COLLAR **have on, wear** | **slip** *The dog slipped its collar and ran off.*

colleague *noun*

- ADJ. **close, trusted** | **junior, senior** | **female, male** | **professional, work** | **academic, business, medical** | **cabinet, parliamentary**

collection *noun*

1 group of objects

- ADJ. **big, extensive, huge, large, major, substantial, vast** | **small** | **growing** | **complete, comprehensive** | **core, permanent** *The permanent collection is displayed on the first floor, whilst the ground floor houses temporary exhibitions.* | **reserve** *The museum has a large reserve collection in storage, which members of the public rarely get to see.* | **amazing, extraordinary, fascinating, fine, good, great, important, impressive, interesting, magnificent, outstanding, remarkable, rich, stunning, superb, unique, useful, valuable** | **bizarre, disparate, diverse, heterogeneous, jumbled, miscellaneous, motley, odd, random, strange, varied** | **representative** *to assemble and analyse a representative collection of data* | **celebrated, distinguished, famous, prestigious, renowned** | **family, personal, private** *the largest private art collection in the world* | **public** | **international, local, national** | **historical** | **reference, research** *a research collection available for study by archaeologists* | **archive, library, museum** *a historical archive collection of 20 000 documents* | **antiques, art, book, CD, coin, manuscript, photographic, picture, plant, record, stamp**
- VERB + COLLECTION **boast, have** *The museum boasts a superb collection of medieval weapons.* | **ac-**

quire, amass, assemble, build up, compile, make *He built up his collection over a period of ten years.* ◇ *She made a collection of Roman coins and medals.* | **start** | **add to** *a new painting to add to their collection* | **complete** *She needed only one more stamp to complete her collection.* | **hold, house** *a new building to house the national collection of arms and armour* | **display, exhibit, show** *A glass-fronted cabinet displayed a collection of china figurines.* | **view, visit, see** *I was allowed to view his family collection of portrait miniatures.* | **consult, study** *Historians frequently ask to consult the collection.* | **organize** *She had the task of cataloguing the library and organizing the collection of rare manuscripts.*
- COLLECTION + VERB **consist of sth, contain sth, include sth** *The collection contains some 500 items.* | **cover sth** *The collection covers all phases of Picasso's career.* | **come from ...** | **date from ...** *major collections dating from the 11th to the 19th century* | **grow** *The museum's collection is growing all the time.* | **be available, be/go on display/show/view** *The collection is to go on public display for the first time next month.* ◇ *The collection is rarely on view to the public.*
- PREP. **~of** *a valuable collection of antique porcelain*

⇨ Note at ART

2 taking sth away/bringing sth together
- ADJ. **routine, systematic** *the systematic collection of data* | **efficient** | **free** *The council offers free collection of waste.* | **weekly** | **data** | **debt, rent, revenue, tax** *the need for more efficient tax collection* | **refuse, rubbish, waste**
- VERB + COLLECTION **await, be ready for** *Your car is awaiting collection at our garage.* | **arrange, organize** *They will arrange collection of the chairs.*
- COLLECTION + NOUN **point** *a lack of collection points for waste paper* | **service** *a refuse collection service*
- PREP. **~of** *There are some difficulties with the collection of reliable data.*
- PHRASES **a method of collection** *different methods of data collection*

3 poems/stories/music
- VERB + COLLECTION **compile, edit, publish** *to publish a collection of scholarly essays*
- PREP. **~of**

4 money
- ADJ. **house-to-house, street** | **charity, church**
- VERB + COLLECTION **have, make, organize, take** *We will have a collection for charity at the end of the concert.* ◇ *A collection will be taken at the end of the service.*
- COLLECTION + NOUN **box, plate** *the church collection plate*
- PREP. **~for** *a street collection for famine relief*

5 new clothes
- ADJ. **new** | **autumn, spring, etc.** | **ready-to-wear**
- VERB + COLLECTION **show, unveil** *the first designer to unveil his collection for the spring season*

collector *noun*

- ADJ. **great, major** *a major collector of Japanese art* | **ardent, assiduous, avid, enthusiastic, keen, serious** | **private** | **art, coin, plant, record, stamp**
- PHRASES **a collector's item** *This vase is quite rare and is almost a collector's item.*

college *noun*

- ADJ. **community, local** | **sixth form, tertiary** | **tutorial** | **university** | **agricultural, art, FE/further education, military, music, police, secretarial, teacher training, technical, theological, veterinary, etc.**
- VERB + COLLEGE **attend, go to** | **finish, graduate from**
- COLLEGE + NOUN **lecturer, principal, teacher** | **staff** | **student** | **course** | **chapel, library, room**
- PREP. **at~** *She's at college in Swindon.* **in~** *Not all the lecturers are in college at any one time.*
- PHRASES **a college of (further/higher) education**

collide *verb*

- ADV. **nearly** | **head-on** *Two trains collided head-on.*
- PREP. **with** *His car nearly collided with a bus.*

collision *noun*

- ADJ. **serious** | **near** | **multiple** | **head-on, mid-air**
- VERB + COLLISION **be involved in, have** *I had a near collision with a lorry.* | **avoid** | **cause**
- COLLISION + VERB **happen, occur** *The collision occurred near the hospital.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She was injured in a collision.* | **in~with** *The car was in collision with a lorry.* | **~between** *a head-on collision between two cars* **~with** *a collision with a train*
- PHRASES **be on a collision course with sth** *An iceberg was on a collision course with the ship.*

colonel *noun*

⇨ Note at RANK

colony *noun*

1 country ruled by another country
- ADJ. **overseas** *Britain's overseas colonies* | **self-governing** | **penal, plantation**
- VERB + COLONY **establish** *Settlers established a new colony in the early 18th century.*
- PREP. **in a/the~**

2 group of animals/plants
- ADJ. **huge, large, thriving** | **small** | **breeding** | **ant, bird, seal, etc.** | **coral**
- VERB + COLONY **form** *Some of the insects will leave to form a new colony.*
- PREP. **in a/the~** *The birds nest in huge colonies.* | **~of** *a colony of ants*

colour *noun*

1 quality that makes sth red, etc.
- ADJ. **bold, bright, brilliant, vivid, vibrant** | **dark, deep** *Dark colours suit you best.* | **intense, rich, strong** *the intense colour of new leaves* | **light, muted, pale, pastel, soft, subdued, subtle** | **dull** | **garish, gaudy, loud, lurid** | **autumn/autumnal, earthy, warm** | **sombre** | **attractive, beautiful, lovely** | **complementary, contrasting** | **matching** | **basic** | **primary, secondary** | **indeterminate, neutral** | **natural** | **blue, red, etc.** *The curtains went a strange orange colour when we washed them.* | **eye, hair, skin** *What is her natural hair colour?*
- QUANT. **dash, flash, splash** | **mass, riot** *The garden is a riot of colour in spring.* | **spot, touch**
- VERB + COLOUR **change** *The chameleon changes colour to match its surroundings.* | **add** *The silk cushions add colour to an otherwise dull room.*
- COLOUR + VERB **match (sth)** | **clash** | **fade** | **run** *This colour runs, so wash the shirt separately.*
- COLOUR + NOUN **combination, range, scheme** *We have to choose a colour scheme for the dining room.* | **illustration, photograph, photography, printing, reproduction** | **monitor, television**
- PREP. **in~** *The flowers are pale blue in colour.* ◇ *Is the film in colour or black and white?* ◇ *The book is lavishly illustrated in full colour.* **in a~** *The scarf is available in six different colours.*
- PHRASES **a combination/range of colours**

2 redness in the face
- ADJ. **heightened, high** *You could tell she was excited by the heightened colour in her cheeks.* | **faint**

COLOURS

Things can **be**, **look**, **go** or **turn** a particular colour. Or you can **make sth** or **colour**, **dye**, **paint** or **stain sth** a colour.

The pages of the book have gone yellow.
I've dyed the curtains green.

pale	**light**	**dark**	**deep**	**dull**
blue	blue	blue	blue	brown
brown	brown	brown	brown	green
green	green	green	orange	red
grey	grey	grey	pink	
orange	pink	pink	purple	
pink	purple	purple	red	
purple	red	red	yellow	
red	yellow			
yellow				

She was wearing a dark green skirt.
They chose deep purple for the curtains.
light blue eyes
a pale yellow blouse
The bricks are a dull red.

Other expressions:

a shade of ~

a beautiful shade of red

in ~

She was dressed all in pink.
Have you got this shirt in blue?

wear ~

I can't wear yellow—it makes my eyes look strange.

~ suits sb

Orange suits you.

bright	**brilliant**	**rich**	**vivid**	**warm**
blue	blue	blue	blue	brown
green	green	brown	green	orange
orange	orange	green	orange	red
pink	pink	orange	pink	
purple	red	pink	red	
red		red	yellow	
yellow		yellow		

a bright red car
The water was a brilliant blue.
The room was decorated in rich browns and oranges.
His eyes were a vivid green.
warm brown eyes

- VERB + COLOUR **have** *You have a bit more colour in your cheeks now.* | **bring** *The walk brought colour to her face.* | **be drained of, drain of, lose** *His face drained of all colour.*
- COLOUR + VERB **flood sth, rise** *Colour flooded her cheeks.* ◇ *The colour rose in his face.* | **drain** *The colour drained from her face when she saw him.* | **come back, return** *Gradually the colour returned to his cheeks.*
- PREP. **off~** (= looking or feeling ill)

3 interesting or exciting details

- ADJ. **local** *a journalist in search of a bit of local colour*
- VERB + COLOUR **add, give sth, lend** *His asides lent colour to the story.*
- PHRASES **full of colour**

colour *verb*

- ADV. **heavily, strongly** *His opinions are heavily coloured by his own experiences.* | **naturally**

coloured *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **boldly, brilliantly, brightly, gaily, highly, richly, strikingly, strongly, vividly** *She wore a richly coloured silk dress.* | **beautifully** | **delicately** | **uniformly** | **variously** *variously coloured birds*
- ADJ. **dark, light** | **cream, gold, etc.**

colouring *noun*

- ADJ. **natural** | **dark, fair**
- VERB + COLOURING **have** *Her daughter has very fair colouring.*

column *noun*

1 tall stone post
- ADJ. **huge, tall** | **fluted** *colonnades of fluted Doric columns* | **classical** | **Corinthian, Doric, Ionic**
- COLUMN + VERB **support sth** *The roof is supported by four huge columns.*

2 piece of writing in a newspaper
- ADJ. **regular** *He has a regular column in a weekly newspaper.* | **daily, weekly, etc.** | **newspaper** | **agony, correspondence, death, editorial, financial, gossip, leader, letters, lonely hearts** (= with advertisements for a new lover or friend), **obituary, personal, travel**
- VERB + COLUMN **have, write** | **syndicate**
- COLUMN + NOUN **inches** *So many column inches are devoted to film stars.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She saw his name in an obituary column.* | **~ about/on** *a weekly column on films showing in London*

3 long line of people, vehicles, etc.
- ADJ. **huge, long** | **armoured, tank** | **marching**
- PREP. **in ~s** *to march in columns* | **~ of** *a column of troops*
- PHRASES **the head of the column**

coma *noun*

- ADJ. **deep** | **irreversible**
- VERB + COMA **fall into, go into, sink into, slip into** *He sank into a coma after suffering a brain haemorrhage.* | **come out of**
- COMA + NOUN **victim**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He has been in a coma since his car accident three months ago.*

comb *noun*

1 used for making your hair tidy
- VERB + COMB **use**
- PHRASES **a brush and comb, drag/run a comb through sth** *She ran a comb through her tangled hair.*

2 act of combing
- VERB + COMB **could do with, need** *Your hair could do with a comb!* | **give sth** *She gave her hair a comb.*

combat *noun*

- ADJ. **fierce, mortal** | **armed, unarmed** | **close, hand-to-hand** | **open** | **single** | **aerial**
- VERB + COMBAT **be engaged in, be locked in, engage in** *The troops were locked in hand-to-hand combat.* | **send sb into**
- COMBAT + NOUN **mission** | **zone** | **force, troops, unit** | **aircraft, vehicle** | **boots, fatigues, gear, jacket, kit, suit, uniform**
- PREP. **in ~** *He was killed in combat.* **in ~ with** *The soldiers are in combat with rebel forces.* | **~ against** *in mortal combat against dragons* **~ between** *a fierce combat between two champions*

combat *verb*

- ADV. **effectively** *She argued that the only way to combat inflation effectively was to keep interest rates high.*
- VERB + COMBAT **help (to)** | **be designed to**
- PHRASES **action/efforts/measures/policies to combat sth** *proposing measures to combat crime*

combination *noun*

- ADJ. **perfect, right, unbeatable, winning** *The orchestra played with a winning combination of gusto and precision.* | **attractive, delicious, good, happy, powerful** | **curious, rare, strange, unique, unusual** | **colour** *an unusual colour combination*
- PREP. **in ~ (with)** *The materials can be used singly or in combination.* ◇ *Hepatitis D exists only in combination with the hepatitis B virus.* | **~ of** *a delicious combination of flavours*

combine *verb*

- ADV. **successfully** *She successfully combines her career with family life.*
- PREP. **against** *to combine against a common enemy* **with** *Combine the flour with the water to make a stiff paste.*

comeback *noun*

- ADJ. **big, dramatic, fighting, great, remarkable, successful** | **long-awaited** | **political**
- VERB + COMEBACK **make, stage** *He made one of the most remarkable comebacks in modern politics.* | **attempt**
- COMEBACK + NOUN **trail** *The player is on the comeback trail after a serious knee injury.*

comedian *noun*

- ADJ. **celebrated, great, popular** | **film, radio, stand-up, television/TV** *He started out as a stand-up comedian in Liverpool.* | **alternative**

⇨ Note at JOB

comedy *noun*

- ADJ. **high, low** | **alternative, black, light, musical, romantic, situation, slapstick, stand-up** *a popular romantic comedy* ◇ *The show contains some wonderful slapstick comedy.*
- VERB + COMEDY **do, play** *Does he play comedy?*
- COMEDY + NOUN **actor, actress, writer** | **film, series, show**
- PHRASES **a comedy of manners**

⇨ Note at PERFORMANCE (for more verbs)

comfort *noun*

1 having all your body needs/a pleasant life
- ADJ. **great, maximum, modest, reasonable** *They live in modest comfort.* | **comparative, relative** | **added** *a quilted cover for added comfort* | **domestic, personal, physical**
- PREP. **for ~** *I dress for comfort rather than glamour.* **in ~** *I like to travel in reasonable comfort.*
- PHRASES **a degree/standard of comfort, in the comfort of your own home, too close/hot for comfort** *The hotel offers a high standard of comfort.* ◇ *The sound of gunfire was too close for comfort.*

2 help/kindness to sb who is suffering
- ADJ. **great** | **cold** *A drop in the unemployment rate was cold comfort for those without a job* (= not much comfort at all).
- QUANT. **crumb, word**
- VERB + COMFORT **bring sb, give sb, offer sb, provide sb with** *His kind words brought some comfort to the grieving parents.* | **derive, draw, find, get, seek, take**

They sought comfort in each other. ◇ *We took great comfort from the fact that at least some of our savings were safe.*

- COMFORT + NOUN **food** *Chocolate is a great comfort food.*
- PREP. **~in** *She found comfort in music.*
- PHRASES **a source of comfort**

3 sb/sth that helps when you are suffering, etc.

- ADJ. **great**
- PREP. **~ to** *The children have been a great comfort to me through all of this.*

4 sth that makes life easier

- ADJ. **modern | creature, home, material** *I hate camping – I miss all my creature comforts.* | **spiritual**

comfort *verb*

- ADV. **greatly** *The idea that he was not alone comforted him greatly.*
- PHRASES **be comforted to know** *He was comforted to know that most people in the class knew even less than he.* **being comforted by family/friends/relatives** *The victim's widow was today being comforted by family and friends.* **feel comforted**

comfortable *adj.*

1 allowing you to feel relaxed

- VERBS **be, feel, look** *The bed felt comfortable.* | **make sth** *We must think how we can make the room more comfortable for you.*
- ADV. **extremely, incredibly, superbly, very, wonderfully** *an extremely comfortable chair* | **perfectly** | **enough, fairly, moderately, quite, reasonably** *The hotel was comfortable enough.* | **surprisingly**

2 not having any pain/worry

- VERBS **be, feel, look** *Did you feel comfortable and relaxed at the party?* | **become, get** *This bed is lumpy—I just can't seem to get comfortable.* | **make sb/yourself** *Make yourself comfortable!*
- ADV. **very** | **completely, entirely, quite, totally** *I was not entirely comfortable about the plans they had made.*
- PREP. **about** *They didn't feel comfortable about her travelling alone.* **with** *I don't feel comfortable with him.*

3 having/providing enough money for all your needs

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very** | **quite, relatively** *I had a relatively comfortable life in Brazil.*

comforting *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel** | **find sth**
- ADV. **extremely, most, very, wonderfully** | **hardly, not particularly** | **strangely** *She found his voice strangely comforting.*

comic *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **richly, truly, wonderfully** *Many of the scenes in the book are richly comic.* | **almost** | **faintly, mildly, slightly** | **blackly, grotesquely** *a blackly comic futuristic fantasy*

comical *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, sound** | **become** | **make sth** *What made it so comical was that their hats kept falling off.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **almost** | **faintly, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat** *He is a faintly comical figure who fears being made fun of.*

command *noun*

1 order

- ADJ. **peremptory**
- VERB + COMMAND **carry out, obey** | **bark, give, issue** *an army officer barking commands at his men* ◇ *He issued the command to retreat.*
- PREP. **at sb's ~** *I am at your command* (= ready to obey you). ◇ *At her command all work stopped.*

2 control over sb/sth

- ADJ. **complete, full, total** *He was in complete command of the situation.* | **direct** *under the direct command of Lieutenant Sykes* | **sole** *She was in sole command of one million pounds.* | **personal** | **integrated, joint, unified** *NATO's integrated military command* | **overall** | **high, supreme** *the military high command* | **army, military**
- VERB + COMMAND **have** *He had command of 3 000 soldiers.* | **assume, take (over)** | **give sb, put sb in** | **relinquish** | **lose, be relieved of** *She has lost command of her senses.*
- PREP. **in ~** *Who is in command?* ◇ *She is second in command.* **in ~ of** *He was put in command of the navy.* **under sb's ~** *The division was under the command of General George.* | **~ over** *his command over resources*
- PHRASES **the chain/line of command**

3 ability to do/use sth

- ADJ. **excellent, fluent, good, perfect** | **poor**
- VERB + COMMAND **have**
- PREP. **at your ~** *The vast knowledge of the country he has at his command will be invaluable in the job.* | **~ of** *She has an excellent command of French.*

commander *noun*

- ADJ. **supreme** | **deputy** | **air force, army, military, naval, navy, police** | **company, flight, group, platoon, squadron, station** | **Allied** *General Eisenhower was Supreme Allied Commander in Western Europe.*
- PHRASES **Commander-in-Chief**

⇨ Note at RANK

commend *verb*

- PREP. **for** *He was commended for his brave actions.* **to** *She said she would commend the proposal to the Board.*
- PHRASES **be highly/widely commended** *His book was highly commended.* **sth has little/much to commend it** *The proposed site has much to commend it.*

commendable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **highly, very** *The government's action here is highly commendable.* | **entirely, wholly**

comment *noun*

- ADJ. **brief** | **fair, favourable** *What she said was (a) fair comment.* | **adverse, derogatory, disparaging, hostile, negative, sad, unfair, unfavourable** *The attack is a sad comment on the public's understanding of mental illness.* | **critical** *Highly critical comments have been made about the conduct of some ministers.* ◇ *a book with critical comment on the various strands of feminism* | **caustic, ironic, sarcastic, sardonic, scathing, wry** | **constructive, helpful** | **cryptic** | **incisive, interesting, perceptive, shrewd** | **uninformed** | **general** | **detailed** | **casual, off-the-cuff, passing, throwaway** *He made a few casual comments to her about her hair and now she's gone and chopped it all off!* ◇ *This idea deserves more than passing comment.* | **editorial, official, personal, press, public** *Editorial comment in 'The Guardian' tended to support the government in this matter.* | **written** | **political, social** *Her novels were a vehicle for shrewd social comment.*
- VERB + COMMENT **have, make, pass** *If you have any comments, please send them to the above address.* ◇ *She made a cryptic comment about how the film mirrored her life.* ◇ *I would prefer not to pass comment before I have more information on the case.* | **attract, cause, draw, elicit, excite** *The programme attracted much adverse com-*

ment. | **invite, welcome** *The school has invited comments from parents about the new curriculum.* | **receive** *We have received many helpful comments from fellow-sufferers.*

• PREP. **without ~** *She accepted his diagnosis without comment.* | **~about/on** *a general comment on the weather*

• PHRASES **be available/not available/unavailable for comment** *The minister was unavailable for comment last night.* **no comment** *When asked about the rumours, the chairman replied, 'no comment'.* **a source of comment** *His visits were the source of much comment.*

comment *verb*

• ADV. **favourably** | **adversely, critically, unfavourably** | **bitterly** | **drily, wryly** | **publicly**

• VERB + COMMENT **decline to, refuse to** *The minister refused to comment on the affair.*

• PREP. **about** *People were commenting about her gifts and abilities.* **on** *He commented favourably on the proposals.* **to** *She commented to me that she liked it.*

commentary *noun*

1 on the radio/television

• ADJ. **brief** | **live** | **running** (= continuous) *She kept up a running commentary on the festivities.* | **radio, television** *listening to the radio commentary on the match*

• VERB + COMMENTARY **give, keep up, provide** | **listen to**

• COMMENTARY + NOUN **box** *the reporters in the commentary box*

• PREP. **~on** *BBC1 will give a live commentary on the election results.*

2 criticism/discussion of sth

• ADJ. **detailed** | **critical** | **political, social**

• VERB + COMMENTARY **provide** *The novel provides a powerful social commentary on post-war Germany.*

• PREP. **~on**

• PHRASES **be a sad commentary (on sth)** (= to reflect badly on sth) *The petty quarrels were a sad commentary on the state of the government.*

commentator *noun*

1 person who commentates on sth

• ADJ. **cricket, football, rugby, sports, etc.** | **match, race** | **radio, television/TV**

⇨ Note at JOB

2 person who gives opinions on sth in the media

• ADJ. **influential** | **independent** | **foreign** | **media** | **cultural, economic, political, social** *Political commentators are predicting that the minister will have to resign.*

• PREP. **~on** *a commentator on current affairs*

commerce *noun*

• ADJ. **domestic, international**

• VERB + COMMERCE **carry on, engage in** *The marketplace was where commerce was traditionally carried on.*

• PREP. **~between** *commerce between Germany and Italy* **~with** *the development of commerce with Asia*

• PHRASES **a chamber of commerce, the world of commerce** *She has little experience of the world of commerce.*

commercial *noun*

• ADJ. **cinema, radio, television/TV** | **30-second, etc.**

• VERB + COMMERCIAL **do, make** *She ended up doing commercials, which ironically revived her acting career.* ◇ *The company has made commercials for leading sportswear manufacturers.*

• COMMERCIAL + VERB **appear** | **feature sb/sth** *The commercial features a teenage girl with spots.*

• COMMERCIAL + NOUN **break** *The film was so full of commercial breaks it was impossible to enjoy.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *She's in a commercial for cars.* | **~for**

commission *noun*

1 asking sb to do a piece of work for you

• ADJ. **private, public**

• VERB + COMMISSION **accept, get, receive** *I have received a private commission to paint the prince's family.* | **give sb**

2 official group asked to report on sth

• ADJ. **international, national** | **joint** | **independent** | **government, judicial, official, parliamentary, royal** | **permanent, standing** | **special** | **roving** | **working** | **economic, election, electoral, fact-finding, investigating, investigative, planning**

• VERB + COMMISSION **appoint, establish, set up** *The government has set up a joint commission to consider the problem.* | **chair, head, preside over**

• PREP. **~for** *the commission for racial equality* **~on** *a commission on domestic violence*

• PHRASES **a commission of enquiry**

3 money for selling sth/providing a service

• ADJ. **big, high** | **small** | **fixed**

• VERB + COMMISSION **earn, get, receive** | **pay** | **charge** *That bank charges a high commission for cashing traveller's cheques.* | **deduct**

• PREP. **in ~** *She earned £2 000 in commission last month.* **on ~** *Most of the salespeople are on commission.* | **~for/on** *They get a 10% commission on every encyclopedia they sell.*

• PHRASES **on a commission basis** *to work on a commission basis*

commission *verb*

• ADV. **specially** *specially commissioned works*

• PREP. **from** *The report was commissioned from scientists in five countries.*

commissioner *noun*

• ADJ. **high** | **assistant, deputy** | **special** | **European Union/EU, police, United Nations/UN**

• VERB + COMMISSIONER **appoint, appoint sb (as)**

• PREP. **~for** *He was appointed United Nations High Commissioner for refugees.*

commitment *noun*

1 willingness to give time/energy to sth

• ADJ. **absolute, complete, full, total** | **clear, deep, firm, genuine, great, passionate, real, serious, strong** | **continued, continuing, increased, increasing, lifelong, long-term, ongoing** | **general, open-ended** | **government, personal, professional, public** | **emotional, ideological, moral, political, religious**

• QUANT. **degree, level**

• VERB + COMMITMENT **give, make** *The prime minister made a firm commitment to increasing spending on health.* | **demonstrate, display, show** *to demonstrate a commitment to human rights* | **lack** | **affirm, reaffirm** | **require** *Learning to play the violin requires strong commitment.* | **gain** *The government has managed to gain the commitment of employers to the scheme.*

• PREP. **~on** *The government avoided giving any commitments on pensions.* **~to** *his lifelong commitment to the socialist cause*

• PHRASES **a lack of commitment**

2 a responsibility

• ADJ. **big, considerable, major** | **binding** | **prior** | **international, overseas** | **business, domestic, family, financial, military, social, teaching, work**

• VERB + COMMITMENT **have, take on** *I don't want to take on any more commitments.* | **fulfil, honour, meet** *She*

can't meet her financial commitments. | **get out of, wriggle out of** *He is trying to wriggle out of his various domestic commitments.*
- PREP. **~on** *to honour commitments on reduction of air pollution*

3 agreeing to use money/time/people for sth
- ADJ. **heavy** *a heavy commitment of capital*

committed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **deeply, fiercely, firmly, heavily, highly, seriously, strongly, very** | **absolutely, completely, fully, totally, wholly** | **genuinely** | **irrevocably** *The country was now irrevocably committed to war.* | **actively** | **personally** *The prime minister is personally committed to this legislation.* | **emotionally, financially, ideologically, politically** *She cared for Jem in her way but did not want to become emotionally committed.*
- PREP. **to** *We are committed to improving services.*

committee *noun*

- ADJ. **central** | **joint** | **standing** | **ad hoc, special** | **select** | **executive, management, steering** | **advisory, consultative** | **disciplinary** | **appeal** | **audit, finance, planning, selection, strike**
- VERB + COMMITTEE **create, establish, form, set up** | **chair** *Lord Stansfield will chair the committee.* | **appoint (sb to), elect (sb to)** *He was appointed to the advisory committee last month.* | **be on, serve on, sit on** *She serves on several committees.* | **leave, stand down from** | **disband**
- COMMITTEE + VERB **meet** *The committee meets every Thursday.*
- COMMITTEE + NOUN **member** | **meeting**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *I talked to some of the people on the committee.* | **~on** *a committee on the safety of medicines*

⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION

commodity *noun*

1 product/raw material
- ADJ. **basic, important, primary** | **cheap** | **expensive** | **rare, scarce** *Coal is becoming a rare commodity.* | **export, marketable, saleable** | **perishable** | **agricultural, industrial** *basic agricultural commodities*
- VERB + COMMODITY **produce**
- COMMODITY + NOUN **market** | **futures, prices** | **export, trade, trading** | **broker, trader**
- PHRASES **trade in commodities**

2 sth that is useful
- ADJ. **precious, valuable** *Time is a very valuable commodity.* | **rare, scarce**

common *adj.*

1 happening/found often
- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **increasingly** | **fairly, quite** *These problems now seem fairly common.*

2 shared
- VERBS **be**
- PREP. **to** *This attitude is common to most young men in the armed services.*
- PHRASES **have sth in common** *Jane and I have nothing in common* (= share no interests, ideas, etc.). ◇ *I have nothing in common with Jane.* ◇ *The two cultures have a lot in common* (= have the same features, characteristics, etc.). **hold sth in common** *They hold the property as tenants in common* (= they share it). **in common with** *Britain, in common with* (= like) *many other industrialized countries, has experienced major changes over the last 100 years.*

3 showing a lack of education
- VERBS **be, seem, sound** *I wish you wouldn't use that word—it sounds so common.*
- ADV. **very** | **a bit, rather, slightly** *I don't like Sandra. She seems a bit common to me.*

common ground *noun*

- VERB + COMMON GROUND **have, share** *The people on the course all share a lot of common ground.* | **establish, find** | **find yourself on**
- PREP. **on ~** *We found ourselves on common ground on the question of education.* | **~ between** *to find common ground between the two sides*
- PHRASES **an area of common ground**

commonplace *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **regard sth as** *Such actions were regarded as commonplace during the war.*
- ADV. **very** | **almost** | **enough, fairly, quite, rather** *Her situation sounded commonplace enough.*
- PREP. **among/amongst** *These ideas are commonplace among teenagers.*

common sense *noun*

- ADJ. **good, sound** | **plain, pure, simple** | **practical**
- VERB + COMMON SENSE **have** *That child has got no common sense!* ◇ *At least he had the common sense to turn the water off before he left.* | **exercise, rely on/upon, show, use** *Use a bit of common sense!*
- COMMON SENSE + VERB **prevail** *I hope that common sense will prevail.* | **dictate sth, suggest sth, tell sb sth** *Common sense should tell you that people will find out sooner or later.*
- PHRASES **(not) an ounce of common sense** *He hasn't an ounce of common sense.*

commotion *noun*

- ADJ. **dreadful, great, terrible** | **sudden**
- VERB + COMMOTION **cause, make, set up** *The people upstairs were making a great commotion.* ◇ *The dogs set up a terrible commotion as we came near the house.* | **hear**
- COMMOTION + VERB **break out** | **die down**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Lots of furniture had been knocked over in the commotion.* | **~ about/over** *What's all the commotion about?*

commune *noun*

- ADJ. **hippy**
- VERB + COMMUNE **join** *He gave up his job in the city and joined a commune.* | **belong to** | **form, set up**
- PREP. **in/on a/the ~** *She lives in a commune.*

communicate *verb*

- ADV. **clearly, effectively, successfully, well** | **directly** | **easily** | **verbally** *By the age of two most children have begun to communicate verbally.* | **electronically**
- PREP. **by** *We usually communicate by letter.* **through** *We communicated through an interpreter.* **to** *She is unable to communicate her ideas to other people.* **with** *couples who communicate well with one another*

communication *noun*

1 act of communicating
- ADJ. **effective, good** *Good communication is important for business.* | **poor** | **direct** | **open** | **two-way** | **interpersonal** | **regular** | **electronic, non-verbal, verbal, written** | **business**
- VERB + COMMUNICATIONS **have** *I haven't had any communication with him for several years.* | **establish** | **facilitate, improve** | **prevent** *measures which prevented the prisoners' communication with the outside world*

- COMMUNICATION + VERB **break down** *Communication between the two sides has broken down.*
- COMMUNICATIONS + NOUN **skills | breakdown**
- PREP. **in ~ with** *We are in regular communication with the kidnappers.* | **~ between** *to establish direct communication between the lookout towers* **~ by** *communication by letter* **~ with** *We need better communication with clients.*
- PHRASES **a breakdown in communication(s), channels/lines of communication** *to keep open the channels of communication* **a lack of communication, a means/method/system of communication** *Letters are their only means of communication.*

2 communications systems for sending information

- ADJ. **good | online | global, international | mass | radio, rail, road, telephone**
- VERB + COMMUNICATIONS **have | cut off, disrupt**
- COMMUNICATIONS + NOUN **centre, links, network, satellite, system, technology**
- PREP. **~ between** *They tried to disrupt communications between the two headquarters.* **~ with** *Paris has good rail communications with other major cities.*

3 message

- ADJ. **formal, official**
- VERB + COMMUNICATION **receive | send**
- PREP. **~ about** *He received an official communication about the reorganization of the Ministry.* **~ from, ~ to** *a communication from the officer to the general*

communion *noun*

1 Communion in church

- ADJ. **Holy | First**
- VERB + COMMUNION **go to** *We went to Holy Communion in the cathedral.* | **administer, celebrate, give** *Communion was celebrated by the Reverend John Harris.* | **receive, take** *Most of the people present took Communion.*
- COMMUNION + NOUN **service**
- PREP. **at ~** *There were only half a dozen people at Communion.*

2 sharing thoughts/feelings

- ADJ. **close | personal**
- PREP. **in ~ with** *He lived in close communion with nature.* | **~ with** *her personal communion with God*

communiqué *noun*

- ADJ. **official, unofficial**
- VERB + COMMUNIQUÉ **issue**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The announcement was made in a communiqué issued by the Defence Minister.*

communism *noun*

- ADJ. **revolutionary | international**
- VERB + COMMUNISM **embrace | overthrow, reject**
- PREP. **under ~** *a book describing life under communism*
- PHRASES **the collapse/fall of communism, the fight/struggle against communism, the rise/spread of communism**

communist *noun* (also **Communist**)

- ADJ. **militant, revolutionary | hardline, old-style, orthodox | reform/reformed | former** *The president of the new democracy is actually a former Communist.*

community *noun*

- ADJ. **large, small | close, close-knit, tight-knit** *a close-knit fishing community* | **lively, thriving, vibrant | international, local | wider** *the concerns of the local and wider community* | **ethnic, immigrant, minority, religious | Asian, black, etc.** *the Asian community in Britain* | **Christian, Muslim, etc. | farming, mining, etc. | rural, village | academic, business, gay, scientific**
- COMMUNITY + NOUN **care, centre, college, service, work | action, relations | group, leader | spirit**
- PREP. **in/within a/the ~** *divisions within the scientific community*
- PHRASES **the community as a whole/at large** *a cultural programme that should benefit the community at large* **a member of the community, part of a community, a pillar of the community** (= a strong supporter of the community), **a sense of community** *There is a strong sense of community in this town.*

commute *verb*

- ADV. **daily, every day**
- PREP. **between** *He commuted daily between London and Surrey.* **from, to** *She commutes from Peterborough to London every day.*

companion *noun*

- ADJ. **agreeable, amusing, boon, charming, delightful, good, entertaining, pleasant, wonderful | close, constant, faithful, inseparable | life | female, male | canine, human | dinner, drinking, travelling, walking** *He was an entertaining travelling companion.*
- PREP. **~ for/to** *She lived in the house as a companion to our grandmother.*

companionship *noun*

- ADJ. **close | constant | female, male | human | intellectual**
- VERB + COMPANIONSHIP **need | provide (sb with)** *A dog provides some companionship.* | **seek | enjoy**
- PREP. **for ~** *She had only her cat for companionship.* | **~ with** *She had never had any close companionship with another woman.*

company *noun*

1 business organization

- ADJ. **big, large, major, medium-sized, small** *a major European company* | **start-up** *a small start-up software company* | **associated, commercial, joint-stock, limited, private, public** *a public limited company* | **international, multi-national, national | trading** *an international trading company* | **bus, record, etc.** *a small insurance company*
- QUANT. **group**
- VERB + COMPANY **create, establish, form, found, set up, start (up) | manage, operate, run | acquire, buy, take over | dissolve | work for** *She's been working for the same company for 15 years.* | **join | leave, resign from**
- COMPANY + VERB **make sth, produce sth** *The company produces cotton goods.* | **expand, grow | shrink | fail, go bankrupt, go bust, go into liquidation, go out of business, go to the wall** (*informal*), **go under** *During the recession many small companies went out of business.*
- COMPANY + NOUN **director, policy, profits | car**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He has shares in several companies.* **within a/the ~** *the division of power within a company*
- PHRASES **a director of a company**

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

2 group of actors/dancers, etc.

- ADJ. **large, small | touring | ballet, theatre, etc.** *a small touring theatre company*

⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION (for verbs)

3 being with sb else

- ADJ. **good, pleasant** *He's very good company.* | **poor**
- VERB + COMPANY **have** *It's nice to have a bit of company for a change.* | **keep sb** *I'll stay and keep you company.* | **need, want | provide (sb with)** *A cat would provide her with some company.* | **seek | enjoy** *I always enjoy her company.*

- PREP. **for ~** *I took my mother with me for company.* **in sb's ~** *He's nervous in the company of his colleagues.*
- PHRASES **have/request the pleasure of sb's company** (*formal*), **like/prefer your own company** (= to like being alone)

4 group of people together

- ADJ. **mixed** (= men and women) | **assembled** *He glanced round the assembled company.*
- VERB + COMPANY **keep** (= to spend time with) *John's mother was worried about the company he kept.*
- PREP. **in ~** *Those children don't know how to behave in company.* ◇ *That's not something to say in mixed company.*
- PHRASES **get into/keep bad company** (= to be friends with people that others disapprove of), **present company excepted** (= used after being rude or critical about sb to say that the people you are talking to are not included in the criticism)

5 visitor or visitors

- VERB + COMPANY **expect, have** *We're expecting company this afternoon.*

comparable *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **closely** *Its brain is closely comparable to the brain of a chimpanzee.* | **directly, exactly | almost | broadly, roughly | not strictly | not remotely** *No other country at that time had an organized public opinion remotely comparable to Britain's.* | **easily, readily**
- PREP. **in** *The two machines are comparable in size.* **to** *a job comparable to mine* **with** *The earthquake was comparable with others in recent years.*

compare *verb*

- ADV. **favourably, well** *The city compares favourably with other parts of Brazil.* | **unfavourably**
- VERB + COMPARE **cannot, do not** *These mountains do not compare with* (= are not nearly as high, impressive, etc. as) *the Himalayas.*
- PREP. **with** *Few things compare with* (= are as good as) *the joy of cycling on a bright, sunny spring morning.*
- PHRASES **be nothing compared to sb/sth** *I've had some difficulties but they were nothing compared to yours* (= they were not nearly as bad as yours).

comparison *noun*

- ADJ. **favourable, unfavourable | broad, crude, simple | close, detailed, direct | fair, good, meaningful, useful, valid | unfair**
- VERB + COMPARISON **draw, make** *It's difficult to make a direct comparison—the two things are so different.* | **allow, enable, facilitate, invite** *The similarity between the two invites comparison.* | **bear, stand** *Our problems don't bear comparison with those elsewhere.*
- PREP. **by ~ (with)** *Jane is still quite young, and Fiona seems old by comparison.* **for ~** *Let's put them side by side for comparison.* **in ~ to/with** *The glasses are small in comparison with the old ones.* | **~ between** *a comparison between figures for last year and this year* **~ with** *a comparison with other schools*
- PHRASES **a basis for comparison** *to provide a basis for comparison* **a point of comparison**

compartment *noun*

1 section of a railway carriage

- ADJ. **first-class, second-class | non-smoking, smoking | passenger, sleeping, luggage**
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

2 section of a container, etc.

- ADJ. **separate | secret | battery, freezer, glove, storage** *Your sunglasses are in the glove compartment.*
- VERB + COMPARTMENT **be divided into** *The case is divided into four separate compartments.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

compass *noun*

- ADJ. **magnetic**
- VERB + COMPASS **use | check**
- COMPASS + VERB **show sth** *A compass shows you which direction is north.*
- COMPASS + NOUN **needle | bearing, reading | direction, point | error**
- PHRASES **a map and compass, the points of the compass** *The railway fanned out from Moscow to all points of the compass.*

compassion *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, great | genuine**
- VERB + COMPASSION **be filled with, feel, have** *I survived. Someone or something had had compassion on me.* | **show (sb) | lack**
- PREP. **~ for** *He was filled with overwhelming love and compassion for his wife.* **~ towards** *I felt no compassion towards her.* | **with ~** *The old people are treated with great compassion.*
- PHRASES **love and compassion**

compassionate *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, sound**
- ADV. **deeply, very** *a deeply compassionate man*

compatible *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **highly, very | entirely, fully, perfectly, quite, totally, wholly** *three different, yet entirely compatible programs* | **directly | hardly | logically, sexually, technologically**
- ADV. • PREP. **with** *The theory does not seem compatible with his other ideas.*

compelling *adj.*

1 holding your attention

- VERBS **be | become | find sth**
- ADV. **very | utterly | oddly, strangely** *His eyes were strangely compelling.*

2 strong/convincing

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, very | logically** *There is no logically compelling argument to support their claims.*

compensate *verb*

1 remove/reduce the bad effect of sth

- ADV. **amply, fully | more than** *The advantages of the scheme more than compensate for the risks associated with it.* | **partially, partly**
- PREP. **for**

2 pay money for a loss/injury

- ADV. **adequately, properly | fully, in full** *People whose health has suffered will be compensated in full.* | **financially** *I expect to be compensated financially.*
- PREP. **for** *The company will compensate you for the losses you have suffered.*

compensation *noun*

- ADJ. **full | partial, small | adequate, appropriate, sufficient | financial, monetary**
- QUANT. **amount**
- VERB + COMPENSATION **award (sb), give (sb), grant (sb), offer (sb), pay (sb), provide (sb with) | accept, gain, get, obtain, receive** *She got some compensation for*

damages. | **deny sb, refuse sb** | **claim, demand, fight for, seek** | **be eligible for, be entitled to**

• COMPENSATION + VERB **be payable** *If the government is proved negligent, compensation will be payable.*

• COMPENSATION + NOUN **claim** | **fund** | **order** | **payment** | **scheme**

• PREP. **as ~ (for)** *She received £7 000 as compensation for her injuries.* **in ~ (for)** *They will have to pay £5 000 in compensation.* | **~ for** *The money was small compensation for unfair dismissal.* **~ from** *compensation from the government* **~ to** *compensation to Mrs Parker*

• PHRASES **compensation in money**

compete *verb*

• ADV. **effectively, successfully** | **directly** *Their products compete directly with ours.* | **internationally, nationally** *The price must be right in order to compete internationally.* | **fiercely** *The big firms are competing fiercely on price.*

• VERB + COMPETE **can't/cannot** *Small independent bookshops can't compete with the large stores.*

• PREP. **against** *He welcomed the chance to compete against professional athletes.* **for** *Animals in the wild have to compete for food.* **in** *He regularly competes in road races.* **with** *We have to compete with several larger companies.*

competence *noun*

1 ability to do sth well

• ADJ. **great** | **basic** | **administrative, managerial, professional, social, technical** | **communicative, language, linguistic, reading**

• VERB + COMPETENCE **have** | **demonstrate, display, prove, show** *She shows a high level of technical competence.* | **lack** | **achieve, acquire, develop, gain** *He gradually developed the competence to deal with the more difficult cases.* | **challenge, question**

• PREP. **beyond sb's ~** *I'm afraid the work is beyond his competence.* **within sb's ~** *This should be well within your competence.* | **~ as** *Students had questioned her competence as a teacher.* **~ for** *He displayed great competence for the job.* **~ in** *competence in English*

• PHRASES **a level/standard of competence**

2 power to deal with sth

• ADJ. **formal** | **exclusive**

• VERB + COMPETENCE **have** *The commission has no formal competence in cultural matters.*

• PREP. **outside sb/sth's ~** *matters that fall outside the court's competence* **within sb/sth's ~** *The decisions come within the competence of the council.*

• PHRASES **an area of competence**

competent *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** | **become** | **make sb** *A year of college had made her more socially competent.* | **consider sb, regard sb as** *He was not considered competent to teach seven-year-olds.*

• ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a small number of highly competent officials* | **fully, perfectly** | **fairly, moderately, quite, reasonably** | **mentally** *She was mentally competent and she had the capacity to decide for herself.* | **socially, technically**

• PREP. **in** *She is competent in five languages.*

competition *noun*

1 event in which people try to win sth

• ADJ. **international, national** | **knock-out** | **dancing, piano, sporting, etc.**

• VERB + COMPETITION **win** *She won an international dancing competition.* | **lose** | **have, hold, stage** *We're going to have a competition to see who can swim the furthest.* | **enter, take part in** | **withdraw from**

• COMPETITION + VERB **take place** | **be open to sb** *The competition is open to all readers of the magazine*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *I won the car in a competition.* | **~ between** *a competition between the best teams in the country* **~ for** *a competition for the best chef*

2 trying to achieve the same thing/gain an advantage

• ADJ. **cut-throat, fierce, intense, keen, serious, severe, stiff, strong, tough** *intense competition for the contract* | **direct** *Public transport is run in direct competition with the private sector.* | **fair, free, healthy, open** | **domestic** | **foreign, global, international, overseas** | **economic**

• VERB + COMPETITION **be up against, face** | **go into** *to go into competition with British Telecom* | **beat off, fight off** *to fight off competition from foreign firms*

• PREP. **against ~** *They won the order against fierce international competition.* **in ~ with** *We are in competition with some very large companies.* **in the face of ~** *The gas companies are having to lay off staff in the face of stiff competition from oil.* | **~ among/between** *There is a lot of competition between rival airlines.* **~ for, ~ from** *We face strong competition from other countries.*

competitive *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain, stay** | **make sth** *skills training to make our industries more competitive in world markets* | **keep sth**

• ADV. **extremely, fiercely, highly, intensely, very** *a fiercely competitive sport ◇ highly competitive prices ◇ a very competitive person* | **fairly, quite, rather**

• PREP. **with** *Investment in research is needed to keep Britain competitive with countries like Japan.*

competitor *noun*

1 in business

• ADJ. **biggest, chief, leading, main, major** | **fierce, serious, strong** *The company has no serious competitors in this area.* | **closest, direct, nearest** | **domestic, local** | **foreign, international, overseas**

• PREP. **~ for** *fierce competitors for the dominant position in the Asian market*

2 person who takes part in a competition

• ADJ. **strong, top** *She is one of the sport's top competitors.* | **successful**

• COMPETITOR + VERB **enter sth** *Ten competitors entered the race.*

complacent *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound** | **become, get, grow**

• ADV. **extremely, remarkably, very** | **far from** *Teachers are far from complacent about this problem.* | **rather, somewhat** | **alarmingly, dangerously** *This view seems alarmingly complacent.*

• PREP. **about** *It is vital that we do not get complacent about this disease.*

complain *verb*

• ADV. **bitterly** *She complained bitterly about the lack of help she received.* | **loudly** | **constantly, repeatedly**

• VERB + COMPLAIN **can't/couldn't, can/could hardly** *It was entirely my own idea, so I can hardly complain.* | **have cause to, have reason to, have a right to** *He really has no right to complain.* | **begin to, start to**

• PREP. **about** *All the guests complained about the noise.* **at** *She complained at the unfairness of it all.* **to** *I'm going to complain to the council about this!*

complaint *noun*

1 act of complaining

• ADJ. **bitter, serious** | **common, familiar, frequent** | **formal, official** | **consumer, customer**

- VERB + COMPLAINT **have** *I have a complaint about the food.* | **bring, file, lodge, make, register, voice** *He brought a complaint against his former manager.* ◇ *They filed a complaint with the European Commission.* | **get, have, receive** *We have had some serious complaints from parents.* | **deal with, handle, hear, investigate, respond to** *The tribunal heard complaints against the director.* | **resolve** | **reject**
- COMPLAINT + VERB **arise** *complaints arising from late payment* | **concern sth, relate to sth**
- COMPLAINT + NOUN **complaints procedure**
- PREP. **~ about** *a complaint about working conditions* **~ against** *a complaint against the police* **~ from** *a complaint from the neighbours* **~ of** *a complaint of unfair dismissal* **~ to** *to make a complaint to the authorities*
- PHRASES **cause/grounds for complaint** *The way I was treated gave me no cause for complaint.* **a chorus of complaint, a letter of complaint, a matter of complaint**

2 illness
- ADJ. **mild, minor** | **chronic** | **common** *Not being able to sleep at night is a very common complaint.* | **back, chest, etc.** | **medical**
- VERB + COMPLAINT **have, suffer from** *He has a minor skin complaint.*

complement *noun*

1 sth that goes well with sth else
- ADJ. **ideal, natural, necessary, perfect**
- PREP. **~ to** *This wine is the perfect complement to fish.*

2 total number that makes a group complete
- ADJ. **full** | **large** | **normal**
- VERB + COMPLEMENT **take** *We've taken our full complement of trainees this year.*
- PREP. **~ of**

complement *verb*

- ADV. **well** | **perfectly** *The flavours in the dish complement each other perfectly.*

complementary *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **essentially** | **mutually** *These two aims are not always mutually complementary: at times they conflict.*
- PREP. **to** *We provide a service that is essentially complementary to that of the banks.*

complete *verb*

1 finish sth
- ADV. **on schedule, on time** | **successfully** *The project has now been successfully completed.*

2 write information
- ADV. **accurately, correctly** *Has the form been correctly completed?*

complete *adj.*

1 having/including all the parts
- VERBS **be, seem** | **survive** *The book survives complete only in the second edition of 1533.* | **make sth** *You've made my life complete.*
- ADV. **remarkably, unusually** *a remarkably complete account of the negotiations* | **far from, less than, not quite** | **almost, nearly, virtually** | **fairly, reasonably**

2 finished
- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **almost, nearly, substantially, virtually** *The job is almost complete.* | **far from** | **not yet**

completion *noun*

- ADJ. **rapid, speedy** | **early** | **satisfactory, successful**
- VERB + COMPLETION **near, reach** *The renovation of the theatre is now nearing completion.* | **bring sth to** *to bring the project to completion* | **delay** | **be due for** *The bridge is due for completion in May.*
- COMPLETION + NOUN **date**
- PREP. **after/following ~** *Payment will be made following successful completion of the job.* **before/prior to ~** *The floorboards were replaced prior to completion of the sale.* **near ~** *The book is near completion.* **pending ~** *Development of the site has been delayed pending completion of the sewerage scheme.* **on/upon ~ of** *The committee will report back to us on completion of the study.*
- PHRASES **the date of completion**

complex *noun*

1 set of buildings
- ADJ. **huge, large, vast** | **conference, entertainment, factory, holiday, hospital, housing, industrial, leisure, museum, office, shopping, sports**
- VERB + COMPLEX **build**

2 mental/emotional problem
- ADJ. **real, terrible** | **inferiority, superiority** | **castration, guilt, Oedipus, persecution**
- VERB + COMPLEX **have, suffer from** | **develop, get** *Don't keep on at him about his handwriting or he'll get a complex.* | **give sb**
- PREP. **~ about** *She has a complex about her big ears.*

complex *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** | **become**
- ADV. **enormously, especially, exceedingly, exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, highly, hugely, immensely, incredibly, infinitely, particularly, very** *This is a highly complex matter.* | **increasingly** | **fairly, quite, rather, relatively, somewhat** | **surprisingly** | **unnecessarily** | **technically** *technically complex surgery*

complexion *noun*

1 colour/quality of the skin/face
- ADJ. **clear, flawless, fresh, glowing, healthy, lovely, nice, perfect** | **bad, blotchy, dull, pallid, pasty, sallow** | **ageing** | **creamy, fair, milky, pale** | **dark, olive, swarthy, tanned** | **florid, pink, rosy, ruddy** *a young girl with a rosy complexion* | **yellow** | **pitted** | **smooth**
- VERB + COMPLEXION **have** | **give sb** *Years of heavy drinking had given Alison a florid complexion.*

2 general nature/character of sth
- ADJ. **serious** | **different, new** | **political, social** *a change in the political complexion of the council*
- VERB + COMPLEXION **put, take on** *What you have told us puts quite a different complexion on the situation.* ◇ *The joke took on a rather serious complexion when the police became involved.*

complexity *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, extraordinary, extreme, great, immense** | **full, sheer** *Only now did he understand the full complexity of the problem.* | **growing, increasing** | **bewildering** | **unnecessary** | **added** | **economic, linguistic, structural, technical** *the linguistic complexity of Siberia*
- QUANT. **degree, level**
- VERB + COMPLEXITY **convey, highlight, illustrate, reveal** *It is difficult to convey the sheer complexity of the situation.* | **grasp, understand**
- COMPLEXITY + VERB **arise (from sth)**
- PREP. **of … ~** *a pay system of unnecessary complexity*

complicate *verb*

- ADV. **enormously, greatly** *These events will greatly complicate the situation.* | **further**

- PHRASES **be complicated by the fact that** *The issue is complicated by the fact that a vital document is missing.*

complicated *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** *It all sounds very complicated.* | **become, get** *This is where the story gets complicated.*
- ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, fiendishly, highly, immensely, incredibly, particularly, terribly, very** | **increasingly** | **a bit, fairly, a little, quite, rather, somewhat** | **unnecessarily**

complication *noun*

1 problem

- ADJ. **major** | **added, additional, further** | **undue, unnecessary** | **political**
- VERB + COMPLICATION **add, cause** *The presence of an armed gang added a major complication.* | **avoid** *We always try to avoid any unnecessary complications.*
- COMPLICATION + VERB **arise, occur** *Further complications arose when the newspapers published an interview with the prisoner's family.*

2 medical

- ADJ. **acute, dangerous, serious, severe** | **chronic, long-term** | **minor** | **common** | **rare** | **local** | **potential** | **birth, diabetic, medical, post-operative**
- VERB + COMPLICATION **develop, have, suffer** *She developed complications two weeks after the treatment.* | **die from/of** | **avoid, prevent**
- COMPLICATION + VERB **develop, occur, arise** *Complications develop if the drug is not used properly.* | **result from sth**
- PHRASES **a risk of complications** *The treatment carries a high risk of complications.*
- PREP. **~ with** *complications with her pregnancy.*

complicity *noun*

- ADJ. **alleged, apparent** *her alleged complicity in the bombing* | **active** | **government, police**
- PREP. **~ between** *the complicity between the army and drug smugglers* **~ in** *her complicity in a plot to kill the president* **~ with** *She did not suspect him of complicity with the authorities.*
- PHRASES **an act of complicity**

⇨ Note at CRIME (for verbs)

compliment *noun*

1 expression of praise

- ADJ. **great, higher/highest, tremendous** *To listen to someone is the greatest compliment you can pay.* | **pretty** | **unexpected** | **backhanded, double-edged, dubious** *In a backhanded compliment she said he looked very good for his age.*
- VERB + COMPLIMENT **pay sb** | **mean sth as** *Please don't misunderstand me—I meant it as a compliment.* | **get, receive** | **accept, acknowledge** *She acknowledged their compliments with a big smile.* | **regard sth as, take sth as** *I'll take that as a compliment.* | **fish for** *She's always fishing for compliments about her looks.* | **repay, return** *He returned her compliment by saying how well she looked.*
- PREP. **~ on** *She received several compliments on her speech.* **~ to** *If Mark's wearing a suit, that'll be a compliment to you!*

2 your compliments good wishes

- VERB + COMPLIMENTS **give sb, present (sb with), send sb** *Please give my compliments to your wife.*
- COMPLIMENTS + NOUN **slip** *The only enclosure was a formal compliments slip from the accounts department.*
- PREP. **with sb's ~** (= free) *All guests will receive a bottle of champagne with our compliments.* | **~ to** *my compliments to the chef* (= to show that you like a particular dish)

complimentary *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *She made some highly complimentary remarks about their school.* | **quite**
- PREP. **about**

comply *verb*

- ADV. **fully, strictly**
- VERB + COMPLY **fail to, refuse to** *When requested to leave, they refused to comply.*
- PREP. **with** *Candidates must comply strictly with these instructions.*

component *noun*

- ADJ. **basic, central, core, critical, crucial, essential, fundamental, important, integral, key, main, major, necessary, principal, significant, vital** | **minor** | **common** *The researchers discovered a common component in all types of the organism.* | **standard** *Our software is becoming a standard component of many computer systems.* | **individual, separate, simple** *Individual components for the car can be very expensive.* | **chemical, genetic** | **electrical, electronic** | **aircraft, engine, etc.** | **course**
- COMPONENT + NOUN **failure** *Component failure was the cause of the accident.* | **manufacturer, supplier**
- PREP. **~ in** *a crucial component in our success.*

compose *verb*

- ADV. **specially** *music specially composed for the occasion*

composed *adj.*

1 composed of made up of sth

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **entirely, exclusively, solely, wholly** *The committee was composed entirely of specialists.* | **chiefly, largely, mainly, mostly, overwhelmingly, predominantly, primarily** *Bones are largely composed of calcium.*

2 in control of your feelings

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, remarkably, very** | **perfectly** *He was pale but perfectly composed.* | **fairly, quite** | **outwardly**

composer *noun*

- ADJ. **famous, great** | **minor** | **established, leading, successful** | **prolific** *Verdi was a prolific composer of operas.* | **classical** | **avant-garde, modern** | **contemporary, living** | **opera/operatic**
- COMPOSER + VERB **compose sth, write sth**

⇨ Note at JOB

composition *noun*

1 parts that form sth

- ADJ. **overall** *The overall composition of the Senate was Democrats 57 and Republicans 43.* | **internal** *the character of the state and its internal composition* | **exact, precise** | **changing** *the changing composition of the labour force* | **age, class, demographic, ethnic, family, gender, household, population, racial, social** *the ethnic composition of the region* | **species** | **chemical, mineralogical**
- VERB + COMPOSITION **determine** *elections to determine the composition of the assembly*
- COMPOSITION + VERB **change, differ** *Has household composition changed in the last decade?*
- PHRASES **a change in the composition of sth**

2 piece of music

- ADJ. **classical, instrumental, musical | original** *an original composition by a popular young composer*
- VERB + COMPOSITION **write | perform, play**
- PREP. **~by** *a composition by John Cage* **~for** *a composition for violin and piano*

3 art of writing music
- ADJ. **classical, free, instrumental, musical**
- PHRASES **a method of composition**
- VERB + COMPOSITION **study**

4 piece of writing
- ADJ. **literary, original, prose**
- VERB + COMPOSITION **do, write** *In the exam, you have to do a composition.*
- PREP. **~on** *a composition on the effects of crime*

5 art of writing
- ADJ. **literary, metrical, poetic, prose, written**
- PHRASES **a method of composition**

6 work of art
- ADJ. **abstract, figure, formal, pictorial | original | perfect**
- PREP. **~by** *a composition by the sculptor, Bernt Notke*

composure *noun*

- ADJ. **cool, perfect**
- VERB + COMPOSURE **keep, maintain | lose** *She totally lost her composure and began shouting.* **| recover, regain | ruffle** *Nothing could ruffle his composure.*
- PREP. **with~** *She answered with perfect composure.*

compound *noun*

1 chemical
- ADJ. **chemical** *Scientists have produced a new chemical compound.* **| inorganic, organic | synthetic | molecular, simple** *Dalton believed that the simplest compound of two elements must have one atom of each.* **| active, dangerous, potent, toxic, volatile | carbon, iron, etc.**
- VERB + COMPOUND **form, produce** *At the right temperature, the chemicals will form a compound.*
- COMPOUND + VERB **contain sth | be derived from sth, derive from sth, be found in sth, occur** *compounds derived from rainforest plants*
- PREP. **~of** *a compound of oxygen and hydrogen*

2 area of land and buildings
- ADJ. **palace, prison, military | walled, secure** *Police are investigating a raid on a secure compound.*
- PREP. **in/inside a/the~** *life inside the prison compound*

comprehend *verb*

- ADV. **fully**
- VERB + COMPREHEND **be able/unable to, cannot | fail to** *She failed to comprehend the seriousness of the situation.* **| be difficult to, be impossible to** *It is difficult to comprehend how far away the stars are.*

comprehensible *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | make sth** *We changed the wording of the text to make it more comprehensible.*
- ADV. **easily, readily** *The instructions should be easily comprehensible to parents.* **| entirely, fully, perfectly | barely** *His French was barely comprehensible.*
- PREP. **to** *The system is perfectly comprehensible to most people.*

comprehension *noun*

1 understanding
- VERB + COMPREHENSION **have** *She has no comprehension of the seriousness of the situation.* **| check** *There are exercises for checking comprehension.*
- PREP. **beyond (your)~** *Why he can't do it himself is beyond my comprehension.* **without~**
- PHRASES **a lack of comprehension** *He showed a total lack of comprehension.*

2 language exercise
- ADJ. **listening, reading**
- VERB + COMPREHENSION **do** *We did a listening comprehension.*

comprehensive *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, very | fully, totally** *fully comprehensive insurance* **| increasingly | fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably** *The list is fairly comprehensive.* **| truly**

compromise *noun*

- ADJ. **acceptable, fair, good, happy, honourable, possible, pragmatic, reasonable, sensible, suitable | ideal | muddled, uneasy, unsatisfactory** *After months of negotiations, they have reached an uneasy compromise.* **| inevitable, necessary**
- VERB + COMPROMISE **agree on, arrive at, come to, find, make, reach, work out** *I'm not making any more compromises.* ◇ *They're still trying to work out an acceptable compromise.* **| look for, seek** *It is best to try to seek a compromise rather than a perfect solution.* **| offer, suggest** *After much discussion, she offered a compromise.* **| accept | reject**
- COMPROMISE + NOUN **agreement, deal, formula, proposal, resolution, solution | candidate** *He might be an attractive compromise candidate if both sides' first choices are rejected.*
- PREP. **~between** *It was a fair compromise between the two sides.* **~on/over** *They came to a compromise over the exact amount to be paid.* **~with** *There could be no compromise with the nationalists.*

⇨ Special page at MEETING

compromise *verb*

1 in order to reach agreement
- VERB + COMPROMISE **be prepared to, be ready to | refuse to** *He wanted his own way and refused to compromise.*
- PREP. **on** *Unions and management seem ready to compromise on the level of the pay increase.* **with** *They debated whether to compromise with the opposition parties.*

2 damage/put in danger
- ADV. **seriously** *The affair seriously compromised the party's prospects of electoral success.*
- VERB + COMPROMISE **be prepared to, be ready to | refuse to**
- PREP. **on** *We are not prepared to compromise on safety standards.*

compulsion *noun*

- ADJ. **strange | inner**
- QUANT. **element** *There is an element of compulsion in the new scheme for the unemployed.*
- VERB + COMPULSION **feel, have** *He felt an inner compulsion to write.*
- PREP. **under~** *You're under no compulsion to take part.*

computer *noun*

- ADJ. **powerful | desktop, home, laptop, mainframe, notebook, personal, portable** *the market for home computers* **| analogue, digital, parallel**
- VERB + COMPUTER **run, use | switch on | switch off | log onto | log off | boot up, start up | shut down | reboot, restart | program | link, network** *Computers can be networked using modems and telephone lines.* **| interface** *The software allows you to interface your computer and an OCR reader.* **| hold sth on, store sth on** *The data is all held on computer.*

COMPUTERS

installing software

- **boot up/start up** the **computer**
- **insert** the program **disk/CD-ROM**
- **follow** the set up **instructions**
- **reboot/restart** the **computer**

creating a document

- **select** the new document **option** from the **pull-down menus** or **click on** the new document **icon**
- **type**, **edit** and **format** the **document**
- **print out** the **document**
- **save** and **close** the **document**

resizing a window

cutting and pasting text

- **scroll down** the **text** to find the **block** of **text** you want to **move**
- **position** the **cursor** at the beginning of the block of text
- **hold down** the **left mouse button** and **drag** the **mouse** to **highlight** the block of **text**
- **release** the **left mouse button**
- **click on** the **right mouse button** and **select** the cut text **option from** the **pop-up menu**
- **move** the **cursor** to where you want the text to go
- **select** the paste text **option**

looking up something on the Internet

- **connect to** the **Internet**
- **type in** the **website address** or **click (on)/follow** a **link**
- **access** the **website**
- **browse/search** the **website** to find the information
- if necessary, **download** the **information**

running several applications at the same time

- **double click on** the different program **icons**
- **move** and **resize** the program **windows** as required
- **click on** a program's **window** to use that program
- when finished, **close** the **windows**

backing-up a file onto a floppy disk

- **insert** a **blank disk** and **format it** if necessary
- if using an old disk, **wipe** the **disk** or **delete/erase** some of the **files** to **create space**
- **compress/zip** the **file** if it is too large
- **copy/save** the **file** onto the disk
- if necessary, **rename** the backed-up **file**
- **eject/remove/take out** the **disk**

- COMPUTER + VERB **run | hold sth, store sth** *The computer stores data in a buffer until the printer can accept it.* | **crash | be down/up** *The computers are all down* (= not functioning) *at the moment.*
- COMPUTER + NOUN **network, program, system | equipment, hardware, software | language | science, technology | keyboard, screen, terminal, etc. | game, graphics, model** *A computer model is used to predict forces affecting the aircraft in flight.* | **expert, hacker, programmer, user | company, industry, manufacturer | time** *Such a large sorting operation can take up a lot of computer time.*
- PREP. **on (a/the)~** *It's all stored on the computer.*

computing *noun*

- COMPUTING + NOUN **skills**
- PREP. **in~** *He works in computing* ◇

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

con *noun*

1 (*also* **con trick**) trick
- ADJ. **big** *The scheme was all a big con.*
- CON + NOUN **artist, man**

2 (usually **the cons**) disadvantage
- VERB + CON **consider, discuss, weigh up** *Before making a decision, you need to weigh up the pros and cons of the situation.*
- PHRASES **the pros and cons**

conceal *verb*

- ADV. **completely | partially, partly | barely, scarcely** *He waited with barely concealed impatience.* | **carefully, cleverly, cunningly | dishonestly | effectively, successfully**
- VERB + CONCEAL **be able/unable to** *She was unable to conceal her surprise.* | **try to | manage to**
- PREP. **from** *He concealed the truth from her.*

concede *verb*

- ADV. **eventually, finally | readily** *She readily concedes that there is much work still to be done.* | **grudgingly, reluctantly** *He reluctantly conceded that he was not fit enough to play in the match.*
- VERB + CONCEDE **be forced to | be prepared to, be willing to** *He was not prepared to concede that he had acted illegally.* | **be reluctant to, be unwilling to | refuse to**
- PREP. **to** *The firm should concede a significant salary increase to its employees.*

conceivable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **entirely, perfectly, quite** *It's quite conceivable that she hasn't heard the news yet.* | **just** *I suppose it's just conceivable that we've made a mistake.* | **barely, scarcely**
- PHRASES **every conceivable sth** *We had to draw up plans for every conceivable emergency.*

conceive *verb*

1 think of/imagine
- ADV. **brilliantly, carefully** *The plan was brilliantly conceived.* | **poorly | broadly** *The course is very broadly conceived* (= it covers a wide range of topics). | **narrowly | originally** *The dam project was originally conceived in 1977.*
- VERB + CONCEIVE **can't/cannot** *I cannot conceive why you paid out so much money.* | **be difficult to, be impossible to** *It is difficult to conceive of a society without money.* | **be easy to, be possible to**
- PREP. **of** *We conceive of ourselves as individuals.*

2 become pregnant
- ADV. **naturally** *She was unable to conceive a child naturally and was offered fertility treatment.*
- VERB + CONCEIVE **be able/unable to**

concentrate *verb*

- ADV. **fiercely, hard, intently** *She was sitting at her desk concentrating hard.* | **fully, properly | mainly, predominantly, primarily | particularly | entirely, exclusively, purely, solely**
- VERB + CONCENTRATE **be unable to, can't, couldn't** *I tried to work but I found I couldn't concentrate.* | **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to | tend to** *UK banks tend to concentrate on short-term lending.* | **try to**
- PREP. **on/upon** *He concentrated mainly on the flying and spoke very little.*

concentrated *adj.*

1 of your attention
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **totally** *Kate sat up fully, her attention now totally concentrated.*

2 of a substance
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly, very** *The liquid is found in a highly concentrated form.*

3 found in one place
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **heavily, highly, particularly, strongly, very | increasingly | largely, mainly, mostly, overwhelmingly, primarily | disproportionately** *These jobs are disproportionately concentrated in the service sector.* | **geographically** *The immigrant community is strongly concentrated geographically.*
- PREP. **at, in** *Most of the country's industry is concentrated in the north.* **within** *Childbearing is concentrated within the first decade of married life.*

concentration *noun*

1 giving all your attention/effort to sth
- ADJ. **deep, great, intense | total** *a look of total concentration on her face* | **poor | exclusive**
- VERB + CONCENTRATION **demand, require** *The game requires great concentration.* | **lose | break, disturb** *Don's voice from outside broke my concentration.*
- CONCENTRATION + NOUN **span**
- PREP. **~on** *his concentration on his writing*
- PHRASES **a lack of concentration, a lapse in/of concentration** *One momentary lapse in concentration could prove fatal.* **powers of concentration** *She has great powers of concentration for a child her age.*

2 large number/amount of sth in one place
- ADJ. **great, heavy, high, large** *The greatest concentration of traffic is in the city centre.* | **low | geographical**
- CONCENTRATION + VERB **increase, rise** *The concentration of nitrates in the drinking water has risen in recent years.* | **decrease, fall**

concept *noun*

- ADJ. **basic, simple | broad, general, overall, wider** *'Mental handicap' should be replaced with the broader concept of 'learning difficulties'.* | **entire, whole** *The whole concept of responsibility was alien to him.* | **central, core, essential, fundamental, important, key | clear, precise | ambiguous, elusive, nebulous, vague** *The concept of 'adequate medical care' is too vague.* | **complex, difficult, sophisticated | abstract, intellectual, theoretical | alien, bizarre | underlying | useful | modern, new, novel | old-fashioned, traditional | business, design, economic, historical, legal, mathematical, political, psychological, religious, scientific**
- VERB + CONCEPT **have** *Teachers should have a clear*

concept of what a multiracial society is. | **grasp, understand** *She finds it difficult to grasp abstract concepts.* | **define, formulate, frame** *the need to create new words to frame new concepts* | **introduce** | **develop**

- PREP. **~ of** *He formulated the concept of imaginary time.*

conception *noun*

1 idea/understanding

- ADJ. **clear, distinct** *We now have a clearer conception of the problem.* | **broad, general** | **narrow** | **bold, grand** | **modern** | **traditional** | **popular** | **initial, original**
- VERB + CONCEPTION **have**
- PREP. **in ~** *His work is strikingly fresh in conception.*
- PHRASES **have no conception of sth** *You have no conception of what her life is like.*

2 becoming/making sb pregnant

- VERB + CONCEPTION **prevent**
- PREP. **at ~** *Sex identity is fixed at conception.*
- PHRASES **the moment of conception**

concern *noun*

1 feeling of worry

- ADJ. **considerable, deep, grave, great, major, serious** | **growing, mounting** | **common, widespread** | **national, public** *public concern about increased taxes*
- VERB + CONCERN **feel** *He felt some concern for her safety.* | **express, show, voice** | **cause** *The lack of firefighting equipment has caused concern.*
- PREP. **in sb's ~** *She forgot her own worries in her concern for him.* **out of ~** | **~ about/over** *She expressed her deep concern about conditions at the factory.* **~ for** *Out of concern for her health, we suggested she take a week off work.*
- PHRASES **be of (no) concern to sb** *Increased use of drugs is of great concern to parents.* **(a) cause for concern** *The president's health is giving serious cause for concern.* **a lack of concern** *I was surprised by her lack of concern.* **a matter of concern** *Stress at work is a matter of concern to staff and management.*

2 sth that worries/affects you

- ADJ. **chief, main, major, overriding, paramount, primary** *What are your main concerns as a writer?* | **common** *a common concern for new parents*
- PHRASES **be none of sb's concern** *How much we paid is none of your concern.*

concern *verb*

1 affect/involve

- ADV. **directly**
- PREP. **in** *Everyone who was directly concerned in* (= had some responsibility for) *the incident has now resigned.*

2 worry sb

- ADV. **a lot, really** *It really concerns me that he doesn't eat properly.* | **slightly**

concerned *adj.*

1 worried about sth

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get, grow** | **remain**
- ADV. **deeply, especially, extremely, genuinely, greatly, particularly, really, seriously, very** | **increasingly** | **a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat** | **(not) unduly** *She was not unduly concerned by the prospect of managing on her own.* | **naturally** | **rightly** | **simply**
- PREP. **about/at/by/over** *Doctors are concerned at the prospect of heart patients having to wait up to a year for surgery.* **for** *We are now deeply concerned for his safety.*

2 interested in sth

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **especially, particularly, specifically** | **entirely, exclusively, solely** | **centrally, chiefly, essentially, largely, mainly, mostly, predominantly, primarily, principally** *Mathematics is concerned essentially with understanding abstract concepts.* | **closely, directly, intimately**
- PREP. **with** *Social anthropology is centrally concerned with the diversity of culture.*

concert *noun*

- ADJ. **big** | **sell-out** | **evening, lunchtime** | **opening** | **closing, farewell, final** *He will be giving his farewell concert as Music Director of the Ulster Orchestra.* ◇ *The orchestra performs its final concert of the season tomorrow.* | **live, public** | **open-air, promenade** | **carol, classical, pop, rock** | **brass band, choral, orchestral, symphony** | **gala, subscription** *The Queen attended a gala concert at the Royal Festival Hall.* | **benefit, charity** | **tribute**
- QUANT. **series**
- VERB + CONCERT **attend, go to** | **give, perform (in), play (in)** | **have, hold, present, put on, stage** *The band is putting on its biggest concert of the year.* | **organize**
- CONCERT + NOUN **hall, platform, room, venue** | **performance, programme** | **artist, pianist** | **series, tour**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** | **~ of** *a concert of military music* **~ for/in aid of** *organizing a concert for charity*

concerto *noun*

- ADJ. **piano, violin, etc.** | **D major, B minor, etc.**
- VERB + CONCERTO **compose, write** | **perform, play** | **conduct** | **record**
- PREP. **~ for** *a concerto for clarinet and orchestra*

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

concession *noun*

1 sth you agree to in order to end an argument

- ADJ. **important, key, major, significant, substantial** | **limited, minor, small** | **special**
- VERB + CONCESSION **grant (sb/sth), make, offer (sb/sth)** | **get, obtain, win**
- PREP. **~ on** *The pressure group has won a number of concessions on environmental policy.* **~ to** *The firm will be forced to make concessions to the union.*
- PHRASES **make no concessions to sb/sth** *They made no concessions to his disability.*

2 special right to do sth

- ADJ. **trade**
- VERB + CONCESSION **grant (sb/sth)** | **obtain, secure, win** *The company has just won a mining concession in the north of the country.*

3 lower charge for certain groups of people

- ADJ. **tax, travel**
- CONCESSION + VERB **be available to** *travel concessions available to older people*

conclusion *noun*

1 opinion reached after considering the facts

- ADJ. **correct** | **logical, reasonable, valid** | **inescapable, inevitable, obvious** | **erroneous, false, wrong** | **main** | **hasty**
- VERB + CONCLUSION **arrive at, come to, draw, reach** *I can't draw any conclusions from what she said.* | **jump to, leap to** *We don't want to jump to the wrong conclusion.* ◇ *Don't go jumping to conclusions before you know the facts.* | **lead to, point to** *It all points to the conclusion that nobody knew what was going on.*

2 ending of sth

- ADJ. **satisfactory, successful** | **foregone** *The result of the match was a foregone conclusion.* | **hasty**
- VERB + CONCLUSION **bring about, bring sth to** *The meeting was brought to a hasty conclusion.* | **come to**
- PREP. **in ~** *In conclusion, I would like to thank you all for your hard work.*

⇨ Special page at MEETING

conclusive *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem**
- ADV. **absolutely | fairly, pretty** *They produced some fairly conclusive evidence.* | **by no means, far from, hardly, not very** *The argument was far from conclusive.*

concrete *noun*

- ADJ. **solid | bare** *a floor made of bare concrete* | **wet | pre-cast, ready-mix/ready-mixed, reinforced**
- QUANT. **layer, slab**
- VERB + CONCRETE **mix | lay, pour | be made from/(out) of | set sth in** *The pathway is formed from large pebbles set in concrete.* ◇ *(figurative) I do not regard the constitution of the United Kingdom as set in concrete.*
- CONCRETE + VERB **set** *Before the concrete sets the surface can be given a final smoothing over.*

concur *verb*

- ADV. **strongly** *I strongly concur with that idea.* | **entirely, fully**
- PREP. **in, with** *Historians have concurred with each other in this view.*

concussion *noun*

- ADJ. **bad | mild, minor, slight**
- VERB + CONCUSSION **have, suffer**
- PREP. **with ~** *He was carried off the field with slight concussion.*

condemn *verb*

- ADV. **fiercely, roundly, strongly, vehemently, vigorously, vociferously | unequivocally, utterly | unanimously, universally | openly, publicly** *She publicly condemned the opposition leader.*
- PREP. **for** *He was roundly condemned for his mistake.*
- PHRASES **be widely condemned** *The action has been widely condemned by human rights groups.*

condemnation *noun*

- ADJ. **utter, wholesale | firm, severe, strong | universal, widespread | official, public** *There's been no official condemnation of the bombing.*
- VERB + CONDEMNATION **express, issue** *I can only express my strong condemnation of this dreadful behaviour.* ◇ *The United Nations issued a condemnation of the regime.* | **draw** *The violence has drawn firm condemnation from all the main political leaders.*
- CONDEMNATION + VERB **come from sb/sth** *Condemnation of this policy has come from all political parties.*

condition *noun*

1 state of sth

- ADJ. **excellent, good, immaculate, mint, peak, perfect, pristine | fair, reasonable | bad, poor | original** *The clock was restored to its original condition.* | **physical**
- PREP. **in … ~** *The car is still in excellent condition.*

2 sb's state of health

- ADJ. **critical, serious | stable** *Doctors say his condition is now stable.* | **mental, physical** *There has been a serious deterioration in her mental condition.*
- CONDITION + VERB **get better, improve** *Without this treatment, her condition won't improve.* | **deteriorate, get worse**
- PREP. **in a … ~** *He is still in a critical condition in the local hospital.* **out of ~** *I haven't been excercising much recently, so I'm a bit out of condition.*
- PHRASES **be in no condition to do sth** *You're in no condition to tackle the stairs.*

3 illness

- ADJ. **medical | serious | chronic | incurable | rare | heart, skin, etc. | mental** *She was unable to give informed consent because of a mental condition.*
- VERB + CONDITION **have, suffer from** *He has a rare skin condition.* | **be born with** *All three babies were born with an incurable heart condition.*

4 conditions situation/circumstances

- ADJ. **favourable, good, ideal, optimum** *Conditions are very favourable for starting a business.* | **adverse, appalling, awful, difficult, dreadful, freak** (only used about the weather), **harsh, poor, severe, terrible, treacherous** *adverse conditions for driving* ◇ *freak weather conditions* | **normal, prevailing | controlled** *The experiment is conducted under strictly controlled conditions.* | **experimental, laboratory | driving, housing, living, operating, working** *The working conditions in the factory are dreadful.* | **economic, market, political, social | climatic, environmental, physical, soil, weather**
- VERB + CONDITIONS **live in, work in/under** *An enormous number of people live in conditions of severe poverty.*
- CONDITIONS + VERB **exist, prevail** *As long as these weather conditions prevail, we are unable to rescue the climbers.* | **change | improve | deteriorate**
- PREP. **in ~** *in normal operating conditions* **under ~** *The samples are heated under experimental conditions.*

5 rule

- ADJ. **strict | special**
- VERB + CONDITION **attach, impose, lay down, set out** *the conditions attached to the grant of a residential licence* ◇ *The United Nations has imposed strict conditions on the ceasefire.* | **accept, agree to** *They would not agree to our conditions.* | **abide by, comply with, fulfil, meet, observe, satisfy** *To get a basic pension you must satisfy two conditions: …* | **be subject to** *The bar was licensed subject to the condition that no children under 15 be admitted.* | **be in breach of** *He denied being in breach of bail conditions.*
- CONDITION + VERB **apply** *Special conditions apply to the use of the library's rare books.*
- PREP. **on ~ that** *They agreed to lend us the car on condition that* (= only if) *we returned it before the weekend.* **on … ~** *I'll agree to the scheme on one condition: my name doesn't get mentioned to the press.* **under the ~s of** *Under the conditions of the agreement, all foreign troops will leave by May.*
- PHRASES **a breach of a condition, conditions of employment/sale, terms and conditions** *the terms and conditions of the contract*

6 necessary situation

- ADJ. **necessary, sufficient** *a necessary and sufficient condition for the eradication of unemployment*
- PREP. **~ for**

7 state of group

- ADJ. **human** *Work is basic to the human condition* (= the fact of being alive).
- VERB + CONDITION **improve** *aiming to improve the condition of the urban poor*

condolences *noun*

- ADJ. **heartfelt, sincere**
- VERB + CONDOLENCES **convey, express, extend, offer (sb), send (sb)** *We would like to take this opportunity to convey our heartfelt condolences to the families of the victims.* | **accept** *Please accept our sincere condolences.*

condom *noun*

- QUANT. **packet**
- VERB + CONDOM **unroll | put on, use, wear**

condone *verb*

- ADV. **tacitly**

- VERB + CONDONE **cannot/could not** *We cannot condone violence of any sort.*

conducive *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly, very** *Daylight is highly conducive to good plant growth.* | **hardly** *The noise was hardly conducive to a good night's sleep.*
- PREP. **to** *an environment conducive to learning*

conduct *noun*

1 behaviour

- ADJ. **good** *The prisoner was released early for good conduct.* | **discreditable, disgraceful, immoral, improper, ungentlemanly, unprofessional, unseemly** | **aggressive, violent** | **criminal, fraudulent, illegal, negligent, unlawful, wrongful** | **homosexual, sexual** | **personal** | **business, professional** *The business conduct of this bank will be subject to UK rules.* ◇ *Our organization sets high standards of professional conduct.* | **police** | **human** *It is tempting to think of morality as a guide to human conduct.*
- VERB + CONDUCT **engage in** *The committee concluded that the senators had engaged in improper conduct.* | **regulate** *Efforts were made to regulate the conduct of crowds at football games.* | **explain** *The minister was called to court to explain his conduct.*
- CONDUCT + VERB **constitute sth** *conduct constituting a crime*
- PREP. **~ by** *The violent conduct by the strikers was condemned.* **~ towards** *her conduct towards her husband*
- PHRASES **a code of conduct, rules of conduct, standards of conduct**

2 management of sth

- ADJ. **proper** *The elders were responsible for the proper conduct of community life.* | **day-to-day** *the day-to-day conduct of the business of the company*

conduct *verb*

1 organize sth/carry sth out

- ADV. **independently** *The enquiry must be independently conducted.* | **personally** | **properly** | **successfully**

2 lead/guide sb

- ADV. **personally** *How about a personally conducted tour of the house?*
- PREP. **along, around/round, down, through, to, etc.** *A guide conducted us around the museum.*

3 **conduct yourself** behave

- ADV. **honourably, well, with dignity** *She conducts herself with great dignity.*

4 heat/electricity

- ADV. **well** *a substance which conducts electricity well*

conductor *noun*

1 person who directs an orchestra

- ADJ. **great** | **famous** | **chief, principal** | **guest** | **opera/operatic, orchestra/orchestral**
- PREP. **~ of/with** *the principal conductor of the Berlin Symphony Orchestra*
- PHRASES **the conductor's baton**

⇨ Note at JOB

2 substance that allows heat/electricity to pass through

- ADJ. **good** | **bad, poor** | **electrical** | **lightning**

confederation *noun*

- ADJ. **loose** *The Franks were originally a loose confederation of Germanic tribes.*
- VERB + CONFEDERATION **establish, form, found** | **join**
- PREP. **~ between** *a confederation between two states* **~ of** *a confederation of employers*

conference *noun*

- ADJ. **national, international, regional, world** | **one-day, etc.** | **annual, quarterly, etc.** | **inaugural, preliminary, preparatory** | **consultative** | **joint** | **private** | **video** | **formal** | **full** | **successful** | **well-attended** | **high-level, summit** | **news, press** | **diplomatic, industry, inter-governmental, management, ministerial, multi-party, party, staff** | **constitutional, disarmament, education, environment, peace, trade, etc.**
- QUANT. **series**
- VERB + CONFERENCE **attend, go to** | **hold** | **organize** | **call, convene**
- CONFERENCE + VERB **meet, take place** | **begin, open** | **close, end** | **bring sb together** *The conference brought together historians working in a variety of fields.* | **be entitled sth** *a conference entitled 'Strategies for Epidemic Control'* | **be devoted to sth, examine sth, focus on sth, look at sth** *a conference devoted to the topic of peace* ◇ *an inter-governmental conference examining cross-border cooperation* | **hear sth** *The conference heard an appeal from a representative from one of the more deprived areas.* | **agree sth, decide sth, vote sth** *The conference agreed to adopt a set of compromise proposals.* | **adopt sth, approve sth, back sth, support sth** *The conference adopted a resolution on minority rights.* | **recommend sth** | **condemn sth, reject sth**
- CONFERENCE + NOUN **building, centre, complex, facilities, suite, venue** | **chamber, hall, room** | **table** | **platform** *The party leader made a morale-boosting speech from the conference platform.* | **chairman, speaker** | **guests, delegates, participants** | **organizer** | **agenda, programme** | **theme** | **debate, discussion, talks** | **speech** | **resolution** | **paper** | **report** | **session** | **season**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *We met at an international conference.* **in ~ with** *He was in conference with* (= in a meeting with) *his lawyers all day.* | **~ about** *Few reporters turned up to his press conference about low pay.* **~ between** *a conference between the warring parties* **~ for** *a conference for catering managers* **~ on** *a conference on economic monetary union* **~ with** *Management had a joint conference with the union.*

confess *verb*

- ADV. **freely, openly** | **allegedly** | **ruefully, sheepishly**
- VERB + CONFESS **have to, must** *I must confess that I didn't have much faith in her ideas.*
- PREP. **to** *He was arrested and confessed to the murder.* ◇ *She confessed to me that she had known his true identity for some time.*

confession *noun*

1 admitting guilt

- ADJ. **detailed, full** | **honest, true** *It's difficult to believe it's an honest confession after all her lies.* | **false** | **alleged** | **uncorroborated** | **signed, taped/tape-recorded, written** | **deathbed**
- VERB + CONFESSION **make** | **sign** | **extract, get, obtain, secure** *He claims his confession was extracted under torture.* | **retract** *She made a false confession during the trial which she later retracted.* | **exclude** *The court excluded the confession wrongly obtained by the police.*
- PREP. **~ by** *an alleged confession by the defendant* **~ from** *a confession from the prisoner* **~ of** *a true confession of a terrible crime* **~ to** *a confession to murder*
- PHRASES **force/get a confession out of sb** *The police forced a confession out of him.*

2 embarrassing statement

- ADJ. **candid, open** | **shy**
- VERB + CONFESSION **made** *The government made open confession of its inability to cope with the crisis.*
- PREP. **~ of** *her shy confession of love*

- PHRASES **have a confession to make** *I have a confession to make. I read your private emails.*

3 to a priest

- VERB + CONFESSION **go to** *I used to go to confession every Saturday as a child.* | **hear** *The priest heard her confession and granted absolution.*
- CONFESSION + NOUN **box**
- PHRASES **an act of confession**

confetti *noun*

- QUANT. **shower**
- VERB + CONFETTI **shower (sb with), throw** *The winning team was showered with confetti.*
- CONFETTI + VERB **shower down** *Confetti showered down on the newly-weds.*

confidence *noun*

1 belief in others

- ADJ. **absolute, complete, full, total** *The company needs the full confidence of its investors.* | **great, high, real** *Confidence is high among the team's supporters.* | **reasonable** | **growing, increased, increasing** | **new, renewed** | **misplaced** *The general's confidence in his army proved misplaced.* | **international** | **popular, public** *public confidence in the government* | **business, consumer, customer, investor, market**
- VERB + CONFIDENCE **enjoy, feel, have** *This government no longer enjoys the confidence of the public.* ◇ *We all have complete confidence in this product.* | **express** *He expressed confidence in the new plans.* | **be lacking in, lack** | **share** *She wished that she shared his confidence.* | **maintain, preserve** *to maintain public confidence in the system of justice* | **bolster, boost, build (up), enhance, improve, increase, lift, raise** *Higher profits should raise business confidence.* | **gain** | **command, create, develop, encourage, engender, generate, give (sb), inspire, instil** *The training is designed to give staff confidence in managing problems.* ◇ *The company's record does not really inspire confidence.* | **rebuild, restore, revive** *Only if the chairperson resigns will we be able to restore the confidence of our members.* | **lose** *This government has lost the confidence of the public.* | **damage, dent, sap, shake, undermine, weaken** *Only one bank scandal is needed to shake the confidence in the financial markets.* | **destroy, shatter**
- CONFIDENCE + VERB **decrease** | **grow, increase, rise** | **return** *Confidence has returned to the market.*
- PREP. **~ about** *The captain was not lacking in confidence about his team's prospects.* **~ among** *a loss of confidence among investors* **~ between** *efforts to build confidence between employers and unions* **~ in** *They have no confidence in the legal system.*
- PHRASES **a crisis of confidence** *There is a crisis of confidence in the university about its future role.* **have every/little/no/some confidence** *The captain of the football team said he had every confidence in his men.* **a lack of confidence, a loss of confidence, a vote of (no) confidence** *This is a tremendous vote of confidence for the government.* **a (no) confidence motion/vote** *The government lost a parliamentary confidence vote.*

2 belief in yourself

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great** | **sublime, supreme, tremendous, utter** | **added, extra** | **fresh, new-found** | **increased, increasing, growing** | **calm, quiet** *giving an outward appearance of quiet confidence* | **easy** *She spoke in a tone of easy confidence.* | **false** *All his false confidence had drained away.* | **inner, personal** | **social**
- VERB + CONFIDENCE **have** *She has very little confidence in her own abilities.* | **show** | **feel** *'I can explain,' he said, with a confidence he did not feel.* | **brim with, exude, be full of, ooze, radiate** *Since she got the new job, she's been brimming with confidence.* ◇ *a man who exudes confidence* | **be lacking in, lack** *A lot of children are lacking in confidence.* | **acquire, develop, gain, gather** *She's gained a lot of confidence over the last year.* | **grow in** *As the weeks went by he grew in confidence.* | **lose** *During his illness he really lost his confidence.* | **get back, rebuild, recover, regain, restore** *He's really striking the ball well and has got his confidence back.* | **bolster, boost, build (up), enhance** *Winning the competition really boosted her confidence.* | **give sb, instil** *to instil confidence in staff who feel nervous about taking on new roles* | **dent, sap, shake, undermine, weaken** *Failing his exams really dented his confidence.* | **destroy, shatter**
- CONFIDENCE + VERB **drain (away), evaporate, go** *My confidence went completely after my first major defeat.* | **grow, increase, rise** *Their confidence grew with each success.* | **return**
- CONFIDENCE + NOUN **boost, booster** *The home side badly need a confidence booster.* | **building** *Getting the certificate does a lot in terms of confidence building.*
- PREP. **with ~** *She answered the question with confidence.* | **~ about** *I lacked confidence about how I looked* **~ in** *his confidence in himself*
- PHRASES **a lack of confidence, a loss of confidence**

3 trust

- ADJ. **absolute, complete, full, total** | **mutual**
- VERB + CONFIDENCE **enjoy, have** *The Cabinet must enjoy the confidence of Parliament.* | **keep, retain** | **gain, get, win** | **build** *an environment which builds mutual confidence* | **betray, break** | **place, put** *Are we to place confidence in a minister who cannot remember a phone call he made last week?* | **withhold** | **take sb into** *She thought she might take Leo into her confidence.*
- CONFIDENCE + NOUN **trick, trickster**
- PREP. **in ~** *She told me in confidence—I couldn't break that confidence, could I?*
- PHRASES **a breach of confidence** *Telling other people what I'd said was a total breach of confidence.* **in strict confidence** *Enquiries will be dealt with in the strictest confidence.*

4 secret

- ADJ. **whispered**
- VERB + CONFIDENCE **exchange, share** *The girls exchanged whispered confidences.* | **keep** | **betray** *I could never forgive Mike for betraying a confidence.* | **encourage, invite** *She didn't encourage confidences.*
- PHRASES **an exchange of confidences**

confident *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get, grow** *He's got more confident as he's got older.* ◇ *She gradually grew more confident.* | **remain** | **make sb** *Going to university has made her more confident.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, remarkably, very** | **absolutely, completely, entirely, fully, perfectly, supremely, totally** | **increasingly** | **fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably** | **calmly, quietly, serenely** *He came out of the interview feeling quietly confident.* ◇ *She sauntered onto the set, looking serenely confident.* | **cautiously** | **socially** *You get young people who appear to be socially confident, but inside they are a bundle of neuroses.*
- PREP. **about** *We are confident about the future.* **of** *I'm fully confident of winning the title.*

confidential *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **remain** | **keep sth, treat sth as** *The affair must be kept confidential.* ◇ *Information about prices is to be treated as confidential.*
- ADV. **extremely, highly** | **absolutely, completely, strictly, totally** *The findings are strictly confidential.* | **commercially** *commercially confidential data*

confidentiality *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, complete, strict, total** *It is important to maintain strict confidentiality at all times.* | **commercial, professional**
- VERB + CONFIDENTIALITY **ensure, maintain, preserve, protect** *efforts to protect the confidentiality of the client* | **breach, break** *He breached confidentiality by releasing information on weapons tests.*
- CONFIDENTIALITY + NOUN **agreement**

confine *verb*

- ADV. **entirely, exclusively, solely, strictly, totally** | **increasingly** | **largely, mainly, principally** *The discussion will be confined largely to general principles.* | **generally, normally** | **effectively** | **by no means, not necessarily** *Poverty and deprivation are by no means confined to the north of the country.*
- PREP. **to** *Let's confine our attention to the problem of illegal drugs.*

confinement *noun*

- ADJ. **close** *The animals are kept in close confinement.* | **solitary**
- VERB + CONFINEMENT **be held in, be kept in** | **be placed in, be put in**
- PREP. **in ~** *He spent eleven years in solitary confinement.* | **~ to** *their confinement to army barracks*

confines *noun*

- ADJ. **close, cramped, limited, narrow, strict** *issues that go beyond the limited confines of the book ◇ within the strict confines of the law* | **immediate** | **comfortable, comfy, safe**
- VERB + CONFINES **leave** *It took him some effort to leave the comfy confines of his armchair.*
- PREP. **beyond/outside the ~ of** *She wanted to experience things outside the close confines of family life.* **in/within the ~ of** *He spent three years within the narrow confines of the prison.*

confirm *verb*

- ADV. **merely, only, simply** *This latest tragedy merely confirms my view that the law must be tightened.* | **officially** *The plans were officially confirmed yesterday.*
- VERB + CONFIRM **be able/unable to, can/could** | **appear to, seem to, tend to** *These new symptoms tend to confirm my original diagnosis.*

confirmation *noun*

- ADJ. **further** | **independent** | **direct** | **final** | **official, written**
- VERB + CONFIRMATION **ask for** | **need, require** | **seek** *The police are seeking independent confirmation of certain details of the story.* | **await, wait for** | **get, have, obtain, receive** | **give sb, provide (sb with)**
- CONFIRMATION + VERB **come** *Written confirmation came three days later.*
- PREP. **in ~** *She nodded in confirmation.*
- PHRASES **confirmation in writing** *We need confirmation in writing before we can send your order out.*

conflict *noun*

1 fight/argument

- ADJ. **big, great, major** | **bitter, serious, violent** | **growing, increasing** | **constant, continued, continuing, unresolved** *He is in constant conflict with the authorities.* | **open, overt** | **global, internal, regional** | **armed, military** | **civil, class, cultural, ethnic, family, industrial, political, social, religious**
- VERB + CONFLICT **bring sb/sth into, cause, come into, create, lead to, provoke** *His work brought him into conflict with more conventional scientists. ◇ The decision led to a bitter conflict between the management and unions.* | **avert, avoid, prevent** *They hid their feelings to avoid conflict.* | **handle** | **end, resolve, settle, solve** *The United Nations are hoping to resolve the conflict quickly.*
- CONFLICT + VERB **arise (from sth), occur** *The conflict arose from different ambitions within the team.*
- PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *Thousands have been arrested in violent ethnic conflicts in the region.* **in ~** *They found themselves in conflict over the future of the firm.* **in ~ with** *in conflict with management* | **~ about/over** *a conflict over ownership of the land* **~ between** *conflicts between different ethnic groups* **~ with** *to end the conflict with France* **~ within** *serious conflicts within the ruling party*
- PHRASES **an area/a source of conflict, in direct conflict with sb**

2 difference between ideas/wishes, etc.

- ADJ. **fundamental, serious, sharp** | **direct** | **inherent** *the inherent conflict between the demands of farmers and wishes of environmentalists* | **inner** | **ideological**
- CONFLICT + NOUN **situation** | **management, resolution** *the key to successful conflict management*
- PREP. **in ~ with** *in direct conflict with his wishes* | **~ between** *the conflict between science and religion* **~ of** *a serious conflict of opinion*
- PHRASES **a conflict of interests/loyalties**

conflict *verb*

- ADV. **apparently** *how to reconcile apparently conflicting goals* | **potentially** *potentially conflicting values*
- PREP. **with** *His opinions conflicted with mine.*

conform *verb*

- ADV. **fully**
- VERB + CONFORM **be required to, must, should** | **fail to** *The toys fail to conform to current safety standards.*
- PREP. **to** *All companies are required to conform to these rules.* **with** *This equipment conforms fully with the latest safety regulations.*

conformity *noun*

- ADJ. **complete** | **strict** | **outward** *a society of outward religious conformity* | **political, religious, sexual, social**
- QUANT. **degree**
- VERB + CONFORMITY **achieve, bring sth into, ensure** *to bring national laws into conformity with European laws*
- PREP. **in ~ with** *The procedure is in strict conformity with standard international practices.* | **~ between** *to achieve conformity between all the schemes* **~ to** *conformity to the accepted standards* **~ with** *We work to ensure conformity with the customer's wishes.*

confront *verb*

- ADV. **directly** *He is willing to confront problems directly.* | **immediately, suddenly**
- PHRASES **be confronted with sth** *I was suddenly confronted by the task of rewriting the entire book.* **find yourself confronted by sth** *The demonstrators found themselves confronted by a line of police, blocking the road.*

confrontation *noun*

- ADJ. **full-scale, major, serious** *Their demands could lead to a serious confrontation with management.* | **direct, eyeball-to-eyeball, face-to-face, head-on, outright** | **open** | **bitter, bloody, heated, ugly, violent** | **armed, military** | **political**
- QUANT. **series**
- VERB + CONFRONTATION **have** | **cause, end in, lead**

to, provoke | bring sb into *His actions brought him into direct confrontation with the authorities.* **| avoid**

• CONFRONTATION + VERB **arise, take place**

• PREP. **~between** *a head-on confrontation between the two governments* **~over** *She had a series of heated confrontations with her parents over homework.* **~with** *a confrontation with the police*

confuse *verb*

1 make sb unable to think clearly; make sth unclear

• ADV. **completely, totally** *Seeing the two of them together totally confused me.* **| slightly, somewhat | further** *I will try to be brief and avoid further confusing the issue.*

2 mistake sb/sth for another person/thing

• ADV. **easily** *You can easily confuse the two paintings.*

• PREP. **with** *I sometimes confuse Jane with her sister.*

confused *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *He was beginning to get rather confused.* **| remain | leave sb** *He left his audience thoroughly confused.*

• ADV. **extremely, highly, hopelessly, very** *a highly confused picture of a complex situation* **| completely, thoroughly, totally, utterly | increasingly | a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat | momentarily** *George paused, momentarily confused.*

• PREP. **about** *He was very confused about his feelings.* **by** *I'm confused by the whole thing.*

confusing *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become, get | make sth** *Both teams were wearing the same colours, which made things confusing.* **| find sth** *I find the government policy extremely confusing.*

• ADV. **extremely, highly, hopelessly, very | a bit, a little, pretty, rather, slightly, somewhat | potentially**

• PREP. **for** *The new signs will be very confusing for tourists.* **to** *All this information can be confusing to the user.*

confusion *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, total, utter | considerable, great | slight | general, widespread | administrative | mental**

• VERB + CONFUSION **cause, create, lead to, result in | add to** *This latest decision has only added to the general confusion.* **| clear up | plunge sb/sth into, throw sb/sth into** *The local council has been thrown into total confusion by her resignation.*

• CONFUSION + VERB **arise, reign** *Confusion reigned when the two managers gave conflicting instructions.* **| surround sth** *The government needs to clear up the confusion surrounding its policy on water.*

• PREP. **in (the)~** *She stared at them both in utter confusion.* ◇ *In the confusion that followed, she managed to slip away unnoticed.* **| ~about/over** *There is widespread confusion about the government's transport policy.* **~among** *The announcement caused a lot of confusion among the students.* **~as to** *confusion as to the whereabouts of the man* **~between** *confusion between letters of the alphabet* **~with** *the confusion of this book with her last one*

• PHRASES **a scene/state of confusion, to avoid confusion** *To avoid confusion, label each box clearly.*

congested *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become, get**

• ADV. **heavily, highly, severely, very** *The roads to Bordeaux were heavily congested.*

• PREP. **with** *The city streets were congested with vehicles.*

congestion *noun*

• ADJ. **serious, severe | increased, increasing | road, traffic** *Parking near the school causes severe traffic congestion.* **| nasal**

• VERB + CONGESTION **cause, lead to | avoid, ease, reduce, relieve** *measures to ease the increasing congestion in the centre of London* **| increase**

conglomerate *noun*

• ADJ. **big, huge, large, vast | international, multinational | business, financial, industrial | food, media, mining, publishing, etc.**

congratulate *verb*

• ADV. **warmly**

• VERB + CONGRATULATE **must, wish to, would like to** *I must congratulate you on your excellent exam results.*

• PREP. **for** *The employees should be congratulated for the part they have played in the success.* **on** *She congratulated me warmly on my performance.*

• PHRASES **sb is to be congratulated** *The company is to be congratulated on its success.*

congratulations *noun*

• ADJ. **deepest | heartfelt, hearty, sincere, warm** *May I offer my heartiest congratulations on your promotion?*

• VERB + CONGRATULATIONS **express, extend, give (sb), offer (sb), send (sb)** *Please give your parents my congratulations.* **| accept**

• PREP. **~on/upon** *Please accept my warmest congratulations on your engagement.* **~to** *Congratulations to Tony on his new job!*

congregation *noun*

• ADJ. **full | large | small**

• VERB + CONGREGATION **address** *The vicar stood up to address the congregation.*

• PREP. **in a/the~**

• PHRASES **a member of a congregation**

congress *noun*

1 large formal meeting/series of meetings

• ADJ. **international, national, world | annual | party | all-party | founding, inaugural | emergency | extraordinary | full**

• VERB + CONGRESS **attend, go to** *Three hundred delegates attended the Liberal party congress.* **| address | convene, hold | organize, schedule | open** *The general secretary opened the congress on global warming.* **| close**

• CONGRESS + VERB **take place | agree to sth, approve sth, adopt sth** *The congress agreed to the tax-cutting package.* **| call for sth | elect sb | vote**

• CONGRESS + NOUN **delegate, leader | debate**

• PREP. **at a/the~** *We met again at the annual congress.* **in~** *It was a year before the association met again in congress.* **| ~on** *a congress on language in education*

2 **Congress** group of people elected to make laws

• CONGRESS + VERB **approve sth** *Congress approved most of the new powers.* **| pass sth** *Congress passed a series of important measures.* **| vote** *Congress voted to delay a decision.*

• PREP. **in~** *The Liberals in Congress felt the reforms did not go far enough.*

• PHRASES **a member of Congress, a session of Congress** *legislation for the next session of Congress*

conjecture *noun*

• ADJ. **pure** *Whether the business will survive another ten years is pure conjecture.*

- PREP. **~ about/as to** *There was a lot of conjecture as to the extent of her wealth.*
- PHRASES **a matter for conjecture, open to conjecture** *Whether she will run for a second term in office is open to conjecture.*

conjunctivitis *noun*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

connect *verb*

1 join

- ADV. **directly** *Downstairs toilets were connected directly to the drains.* | **up** *We need to connect all the pipes up to the water tank.*
- PREP. **to** *Connect the machine to the power supply.* **with** *A corridor connects his office with the main building.*

2 link

- ADV. **closely, intimately** *Bad diet is closely connected with many common illnesses.* | **directly**
- PREP. **with** *The police were looking for evidence to connect him with the crime.*

connection *noun*

1 relationship between two things

- ADJ. **clear, close, direct, intimate, strong** *There is a close connection between family background and academic achievement.* | **tenuous** | **obvious** | **causal**
- VERB + CONNECTION **have** *His death had no connection with drugs.* | **discover, establish, find, make, see** *Researchers have now established a connection between air pollution and asthma.* ◇ *She did not make the connection between her diet and her poor health.* | **break, sever** *She wanted to sever all her connections with the firm.*
- PREP. **in ~ with** *I am writing in connection with your recent job application.* | **~ between** *the connection between crime and alcohol* **~ to/with** *What is your connection with the school?*
- PHRASES **in that/this connection** (= for reasons connected with sth recently mentioned)

2 place where wires/pipes join together

- ADJ. **loose** | **electrical, pipe**
- VERB + CONNECTION **break** *If you break the connection, the light won't come on.*
- CONNECTION + NOUN **charge**
- PREP. **~ to** *waiting for connection to the water mains*

3 bus/train/plane

- ADJ. **good** | **bus, rail/railway, train**
- VERB + CONNECTION **make** | **miss**
- PREP. **~ between** *There are good connections between the resort and major cities.* **~ to** *We'll be lucky if we make our connection to Paris.* **~ with** *good connections with New York*

4 person you know

- ADJ. **good** | **aristocratic** | **business, family, personal, political, professional, social**
- VERB + CONNECTION **have** *I have some good business connections in New York.* ◇ *He has connections* (= he knows important people who would be able to help him). | **use** *She used her connections to get the job.*

connoisseur *noun*

- ADJ. **great, real** *Only the real connoisseur could tell the difference between these two wines.* | **art, music, wine**
- PREP. **~ of** *a great connoisseur of Japanese art*

connotation *noun*

- ADJ. **strong** | **wider** *The notion of abuse has wider connotations than the physical.* | **negative, pejorative** | **positive** | **humorous** | **moral, racial, sexual**
- VERB + CONNOTATION **carry, have** *That word has strong sexual connotations.* | **attach, give sth** *the negative connotations attached to the word 'academic'*
- PREP. **~ of** *The word carries connotations of romance.*

conquest *noun*

- ADJ. **rapid** *the rapid conquest of Madrid* | **military** | **Norman, Roman, Spanish, etc.** *the Roman conquest of Britain* | **sexual**
- VERB + CONQUEST **make** *The army made many conquests in the east.* | **complete**
- PREP. **by/through ~** *He continued to expand his kingdom by conquest.*

conscience *noun*

- ADJ. **clear, easy, good** *I have a clear conscience.* | **bad, guilty, terrible, troubled, uneasy** | **civic, moral, political, social** *a government with no social conscience*
- VERB + CONSCIENCE **have** *He had no conscience about taking his brother's money.* | **appease, ease, salve, soothe** *After the feast she spent a week dieting to salve her conscience.* | **prick, trouble** | **appeal to, arouse, rouse, stir** | **wrestle with** *He wrestled with his conscience all night long.*
- CONSCIENCE + VERB **trouble sb** *Her conscience was troubling her a little.* | **dictate sth** *My conscience dictates that I resign.*
- PREP. **on your ~** *I'm sure she has something on her conscience.* ◇ *It was on his conscience that he hadn't called her.*
- PHRASES **a crisis of conscience, freedom of conscience, in (all/good) conscience** (= honestly) *We cannot in all conscience refuse to help.* **a matter of conscience** *This question is a matter of individual conscience.* **a pang/prick/twinge of conscience** *I had a sudden pang of conscience that I really ought to tell the truth.* **the voice of conscience** *She refused to listen to the voice of conscience.*

conscious *adj.*

1 aware of sth

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **acutely, deeply** (*formal*), **extremely, highly, intensely, terribly, very** *She became acutely conscious that someone was watching her.* ◇ *We are now deeply conscious of these issues.* | **fully, perfectly** | **increasingly** | **hardly** *I was hardly conscious of my surroundings.* | **clearly** | **dimly, vaguely** *He fell, and was dimly conscious of Tara standing over him.* | **painfully** *All the time he was painfully conscious of how hard it was going to be to explain.* | **environmentally, politically, socially** *The company is extremely environmentally conscious* (= aware of environmental problems and how to deal with them).
- PREP. **of** *I am very conscious of the need for secrecy.*
- PHRASES **fashion/health/safety/security conscious** *fashion conscious teenagers*

2 able to see/hear/feel

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain** *She remained conscious throughout the operation.*
- ADV. **fully** *The patient is not yet fully conscious.* | **barely, hardly** *One man was so drunk as to be barely conscious.* | **half** *I was only half conscious.*

consciousness *noun*

1 being able to see/hear/feel things

- ADJ. **full** | **higher** *to aspire to a higher consciousness* | **individual** | **human**
- VERB + CONSCIOUSNESS **lose** *She hit her head on a rock and lost consciousness.* | **recover, regain** | **bring sb back to** *The cold water brought me back to full consciousness.* | **enter** *The words slowly entered her consciousness.*
- PHRASES **a level/state of consciousness** *an altered state of consciousness*

2 being aware of sth

• ADJ. **full** *I left the room with full consciousness of the impression I would make.* | **growing** | **altered** | **collective, public** | **national** | **modern** | **black** | **working-class** | **class, environmental, feminist, green, political, religious, social** *a new political consciousness among young people* | **false** (*technical*) *She sees racism as a form of false consciousness, where a society collectively believes untrue things about other races.*

• VERB + CONSCIOUSNESS **develop, raise** *They have succeeded in raising consciousness on many issues.* | **enter** *imagery that has entered the national consciousness through the media* | **be lodged in, lodge itself in** *The idea firmly lodged itself in the public consciousness.*

• PREP. **in (the)~** *a key position in feminist consciousness* | **~among, ~of** *a growing consciousness of environmental issues among children*

conscription *noun*

• ADJ. **universal** | **military**

• VERB + CONSCRIPTION **introduce** | **abolish, end** | **avoid** *He injured himself to avoid conscription.*

consensus *noun*

• ADJ. **broad, clear, common, general, overwhelming, strong** | **emerging, growing** | **tacit, unspoken** | **international, national** | **political, social**

• QUANT. **degree, level**

• VERB + CONSENSUS **achieve, arrive at, reach** | **break** *He was the first to break the consensus and criticize the proposal.*

• CONSENSUS + VERB **exist** *No clear consensus exists over the next stage of the scheme.* | **emerge** *A general consensus on the problem is beginning to emerge.*

• CONSENSUS + NOUN **view**

• PREP. **by ~** *They have always governed by consensus.* | **~about/on/over** *It is difficult to reach a consensus about electoral reform.* **~ among/between** *no consensus among the members*

• PHRASES **a consensus of opinion** *The general consensus of opinion is that a high-fat diet is bad for you.* **a lack of consensus**

consent *noun*

• ADJ. **full** | **common, general, mutual** | **express** | **tacit** *Your silence implies tacit consent to these proposals.* | **informed** *Doctors must obtain the informed consent of all patients before giving any treatment.* | **prior** *No action can be taken without the prior consent of the owner.* | **formal, written** | **parental**

• VERB + CONSENT **give (sb), grant (sb)** *You must give written consent before the documents can be released.* | **refuse (sb), withhold** | **gain, get, have, obtain** *Do you have the consent of your employer?* | **require, seek**

• PREP. **by (common/general/mutual) ~** *The contract can only be broken by mutual consent.* **with/without sb's ~** *Your property cannot be sold without your consent.* | **~for** *He gave his consent for treatment.* **~from** *consent from the parents* **~to** *He withheld his consent to the marriage.*

• PHRASES **the age of consent** (= the age at which sb is legally old enough to agree to have a sexual relationship)

consent *verb*

• ADV. **freely** | **kindly** *He has kindly consented to give us some of his valuable time.*

• PREP. **to** *Her father would not consent to the marriage.*

consequence *noun*

• ADJ. **full** | **far-reaching, important, profound** | **adverse, bad, catastrophic, damaging, dangerous, devastating, dire, disastrous, fatal, harmful, negative, serious, severe, terrible, tragic, unfortunate, unpleasant** | **beneficial, good, positive** | **major, main** | **direct, immediate** | **indirect** | **inevitable, necessary** | **likely, possible, potential** | **logical, natural** | **long-term, short-term** | **unintended** | **ecological, economic, electoral, environmental, financial, legal, physical, political, social** *to face up to the physical consequences of ageing*

• VERB + CONSEQUENCE **have, lead to** *The practice had far-reaching environmental consequences.* | **accept, bear, face (up to), suffer, take** *You must accept the full consequences of your behaviour.*

• CONSEQUENCE + VERB **arise, ensue, follow** *the important electoral consequences that will follow from this decision*

• PREP. **as a ~** *Hundreds of people lost their jobs as a direct consequence of the merger.* **in ~ (of)** (*formal*) *The child was born deformed in consequence of an injury to its mother.* | **~ for** *This could have serious consequences for the economy.*

conservation *noun*

• ADJ. **energy, environmental, forest, nature, soil, water, wildlife** | **bird, elephant, etc.** | **architectural, building** | **art, painting/paintings**

• CONSERVATION + NOUN **body, group, organization** | **efforts, measure, policy, programme, project, scheme, work** | **area** *No new building is permitted in conservation areas.*

conservatism *noun*

• ADJ. **diehard, entrenched** | **moderate, relative** | **inherent, innate, natural** *the innate conservatism of British businessmen* | **economic, fiscal, ideological, political, religious, social**

• PREP. **~in** *people's conservatism in musical taste*

conservative *noun*

• ADJ. **diehard, dyed-in-the-wool, hardline, staunch** | **right-wing** | **back-bench** *disagreement among back-bench Conservatives* | **senior** *Senior Conservatives are opposed to the change.* | **political**

conservative *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**

• ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, profoundly, very** | **increasingly** | **largely, predominantly** | **fairly, rather, relatively** | **basically, essentially** *She takes a basically conservative view of society.* | **generally** | **innately, instinctively, naturally** *the army's innately conservative values* | **notoriously** *Banks are notoriously conservative about their dealings with clients.* | **traditionally** *a traditionally conservative profession* | **culturally, morally, politically, socially** *the culturally conservative world of commerce and industry*

consider *verb*

• ADV. **carefully, seriously** *I'm seriously considering the possibility of emigrating.* | **briefly** *I did briefly consider going on my own.*

• PREP. **for** *We are considering her for the job of designer.*

consideration *noun*

1 careful thought about sth

• ADJ. **careful, detailed, full, serious** | **adequate, due, proper, sufficient** | **special, urgent** | **active**

• VERB + CONSIDERATION **give sth, take sth into** *We will give your proposals serious consideration.* ◇ *You must take the size of the room into consideration.* | **deserve, need, require** | **receive**

• PREP. **after ~** *After due consideration, it was decided not to offer her the job.* **for sb's ~** *I enclose the report for your consideration.* **in ~ of** (*formal*) (= as payment for sth), **on ~**

On consideration, we have decided not to come. **under ~** *proposals under active consideration*

2 thinking about other people's wishes and feelings

• VERB + CONSIDERATION **have** *Have some consideration for those without a job.* | **show sb, treat sb with** *She showed little consideration for the beginners.*

• PREP. **out of ~** *He did it out of consideration for his daughter.* **~ for**

3 sth you think about when deciding sth

• ADJ. **main, major, important, prime | overriding, paramount | minor | aesthetic, commercial, economic, environmental, ethical, financial, health, legal, moral, personal, political, practical, safety, security**

• VERB + CONSIDERATION **take account of, take into account** *There are several important safety considerations that must be taken into account.*

consist *verb*

PHRASAL VERB

consist of sth

• ADV. **entirely, exclusively, merely, only, simply, solely** *Their conversation consisted almost entirely of gossip.* | **chiefly, essentially, largely, mainly, mostly, predominantly, primarily, principally**

consistency *noun*

1 always having the same standard/opinions, etc.

• ADJ. **absolute, complete, total | great, remarkable | internal**

• QUANT. **degree, level**

• VERB + CONSISTENCY **show** *He has shown remarkable consistency in his exam results.* | **achieve, ensure, maintain | lack**

• PREP. **~ in/of** *a consistency in/of approach* **~ with** *to maintain consistency with past practice*

2 thickness/firmness of a liquid substance

• ADJ. **thick, thin | soft, stiff | creamy, smooth | sticky | dropping** *Add milk to produce a soft dropping consistency.* | **correct, right** *Knead the dough to the right consistency.*

• VERB + CONSISTENCY **have** *The mixture should have the consistency of thick cream.* | **give, produce**

consistent *adj.*

1 always behaving in the same way

• VERBS **be | remain**

• ADV. **highly, remarkably, very | absolutely, completely, entirely, quite, wholly** *His attitude isn't absolutely consistent.* | **largely | fairly, reasonably**

2 in agreement with sth

• VERBS **be, seem | remain**

• ADV. **completely, entirely, fully, perfectly | broadly, largely | fairly, quite, reasonably | internally** *His argument is not even internally consistent* (= different parts of the argument contradict each other). | **mutually** *It is desirable that domestic and EU law should be mutually consistent.* | **logically**

• PREP. **across** *These findings are consistent across all the studies.* **with** *The figures are fully consistent with last year's results.*

consolation *noun*

• ADJ. **great | small**

• VERB + CONSOLATION **have** *She had the consolation of coming second in her last race of the day.* | **seek** *He went to seek consolation in the local pub.* | **draw, find, gain, take** *He drew little consolation from this fact.* ◇ *When her mother died, she found consolation in her religious beliefs.* ◇ *Although we lost the game, we took some consolation from the fact that we played well.* | **afford (sb), bring (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *The next match will probably offer them the consolation of winning.*

• PREP. **~ for** *providing consolation for her loss* ◇ *There is some consolation for fans because the team still stands a chance of winning the local championship.* **~ to** *The children were a great consolation to me at that time.*

• PHRASES **be (of) little/small/some consolation to sb** *This news was of little consolation to us.* **if it is any consolation (to sb)** *If it's any consolation to you, the weather here is also awful.* **sb's one/only consolation** *When she lost her job, her only consolation was that she had some savings in the bank.*

conspicuous *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, seem | become | make sb** *Its colouring makes it highly conspicuous.*

• ADV. **highly, very | rather, somewhat** *The new building was rather conspicuous.* | **horribly, uncomfortably** *The stain on her dress was horribly conspicuous.*

conspiracy *noun*

• ADJ. **criminal, political** *charges of criminal conspiracy and corruption* | **alleged | international, worldwide**

• VERB + CONSPIRACY **be involved in, be part of** *I suspected that he was involved in the conspiracy.* ◇ *This action was part of a conspiracy to deceive the public.* | **organize** *Who organized the conspiracy against the president?* | **uncover** *Party officials have uncovered a conspiracy to discredit the prime minister.*

• PREP. **~ against** *a conspiracy against the king* **~ between** *a conspiracy between the police and the right-wing parties*

• PHRASES **a conspiracy of silence** *There is a conspiracy of silence about the killer* (= nobody will say what they know).

⇨ Note at CRIME (for more verbs)

constable *noun*

• ADJ. **police | Chief, Detective | beat, special, uniformed** *The force hopes to increase the number of its beat constables.* ◇ *Special constables provide part-time assistance for the regular police force.*

• PHRASES **the rank of constable**

constant *adj.*

• VERBS **be | remain, stay** *The level of unemployment remains fairly constant at around 10%.* | **hold sth** (*technical*), **keep sth** *All variables except one must be held constant.* ◇ *The temperature must be kept constant.*

• ADV. **remarkably | absolutely | almost, nearly, virtually | fairly, reasonably, relatively | more or less, roughly**

• PREP. **across** *These figures were virtually constant across the 1991 and 2001 censuses.*

consternation *noun*

• ADJ. **considerable, great | widespread**

• VERB + CONSTERNATION **cause, create, fill sb with** *The announcement created surprise and consternation.* ◇ *The thought of meeting him filled me with consternation.* | **express, feel, greet sth with** *Many greeted his resignation with consternation.*

• PREP. **in ~** *She stared at me in consternation.* | **~ among** *There is some consternation among business leaders.*

constipated *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become, get | make sb**

• ADV. **severely, very | a bit, slightly**

constipation *noun*

- ADJ. **severe | acute, chronic**
- QUANT. **bout**
- VERB + CONSTIPATION **have, suffer from | cause | prevent**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

constituency *noun*

1 district that elects an MP

- ADJ. **important, key | local | marginal** (= won or lost by only a small number of votes) *The Tories are concentrating their campaign in the key marginal constituencies.* | **target | electoral, parliamentary | inner-city, urban | suburban | county, rural | multi-member, single-member** *Japan's electoral system of multi-member constituencies*
- VERB + CONSTITUENCY **be elected for/to, represent** *She was elected to a rural constituency.* ◇ *He represents a constituency in the north of England.*
- CONSTITUENCY + NOUN **boundaries | MP**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the people in this constituency*

2 group in society likely to support a particular party

- ADJ. **broad, wider | natural, traditional** *These people are Labour's natural constituency.* | **political, social**
- VERB + CONSTITUENCY **appeal to** *The party needs to appeal to a broader constituency.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

constitution *noun*

1 laws/rules of a country

- ADJ. **federal, state | codified, written** *Britain does not have a written constitution.* | **unwritten | draft, proposed | interim**
- VERB + CONSTITUTION **draft, draw up, prepare** *plans to draft a new constitution* | **have | adopt, approve, enact, promulgate, ratify** *The new constitution will be adopted next year.* | **amend** *Parliament will vote to amend the constitution.* | **contravene, violate** *The president's actions violate the constitution.* | **suspend** *The constitution was suspended and the army was placed in full control.* | **be enshrined in** *These principles are enshrined in the country's constitution.*
- CONSTITUTION + VERB **forbid sth, guarantee sth, stipulate sth** *The constitution stipulated that a general election must be held within 120 days.*
- PREP. **according to/under a/the ~** *Under the constitution, an election must be called every five years.* **in a/the ~** *These rights are established in the federal constitution.*
- PHRASES **an amendment to a constitution, a clause in a constitution, the principles of a constitution, the provisions/terms of a constitution**

2 ability of the body to stay healthy

- ADJ. **good, strong | weak**
- VERB + CONSTITUTION **have** *The child had a weak constitution and was always ill.*

constrained *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel**
- ADV. **severely, tightly** *She felt tightly constrained by her family commitments.*

constraint *noun*

- ADJ. **important, major | severe, tight** *The government has placed tight constraints on spending this year.* | **budget, financial**
- VERB + CONSTRAINT **impose, place, put | remove**
- PREP. **within a/the ~** *We have to work within severe constraints.* **without ~** *I felt free to speak to her without constraint.* | **~ on/upon** *There are major financial constraints on all schools.*

construction *noun*

1 roads/buildings

- ADJ. **gigantic, huge, large, massive** *massive constructions of bamboo and paper* | **basic, simple** *It has a basic construction of brick under a tiled roof.* | **complex | heavy** *the heavy construction industry* | **solid** *walls of solid construction* | **careful** *The drainage system needs careful construction.* | **brick, fibreglass, steel, timber, timber-frame, wooden** *a two-storey brick construction* ◇ *a schoolhouse of brick construction* | **bridge, building, canal, house/housing, railway, road** *Road and bridge construction is underway.*
- VERB + CONSTRUCTION **begin, start | complete** *Construction of the new road has now been completed.*
- CONSTRUCTION + VERB **be underway**
- CONSTRUCTION + NOUN **industry, sector | company, firm, group | project, programme | contract | job | work | worker | site, yard | costs | materials | method, process, technique**
- PREP. **during (the) ~** *Major engineering challenges will be faced during construction.* **under ~** *A new factory is under construction.*

2 grammar

- ADJ. **grammatical, linguistic, sentence, syntactic | active, passive | adjectival, infinitive, predicative**

3 interpretation

- ADJ. **literal | logical, sensible | proper, true** *ruling on the proper construction to be given to section 78 of the Act* | **strict** *a strict construction of the clause* | **ideological, social, theoretical** *changes in the social construction of marriage* (= the meaning of marriage in society)
- VERB + CONSTRUCTION **give sth, put on sth** *What construction do you put on this letter* (= what do you think it means)*?*

consult *verb*

- ADV. **widely** *We consulted quite widely before deciding what to do.* | **closely | adequately, properly** *They felt they had not been properly consulted.*
- VERB + CONSULT **need to, should** *If the pain persists you should consult your doctor.*
- PREP. **about** *I need to consult my teacher about changing my course.* **with** *We are consulting closely with our partners and allies.*

consultant *noun*

1 sb who gives advice

- ADJ. **business, design, financial, management, public relations | independent, outside**
- VERB + CONSULTANT **act as** *He was happy to act as a consultant to the company.* | **bring in, employ (sb as), engage (sb as), hire (sb as), use** *We brought in a management consultant to sort out the mess.*
- PREP. **~ in** *a consultant in design, printing and advertising* **~ on** *a consultant on business ethics* **~ to/with** *They work as consultants to a software company.*

⇨ Note at JOB

2 hospital doctor of high rank

- ADJ. **hospital, NHS** *She is now a hospital consultant.*
- CONSULTANT + NOUN **cardiologist, gynaecologist, obstetrician, paediatrician, pathologist, physician, psychiatrist, etc.**
- PREP. **~ in** *a consultant in psychiatry*

⇨ Note at DOCTOR

consultation *noun*

- ADJ. **close | extensive, full, wide | proper | joint** *a joint consultation with doctors and patients* | **public** *There will be a period of public consultation before a decision is reached.*

- VERB + CONSULTATION **have, hold** *The prime minister will hold a consultation with all the relevant groups.*
- CONSULTATION + NOUN **document, paper | period**
- PREP. **in ~ with** *The scheme was developed in close consultation with the local community.* **without ~** *They have taken this decision without any consultation.* | **~ about/on** *The company has promised wide consultation on its expansion plans.* **~ between** *a consultation between teachers and parents* **~ with** *We need more consultation with trade unions.*

consumer *noun*

- ADJ. **big, great, large** *The UK is the biggest consumer of tropical hardwoods after Japan.* | **average, ordinary** | **potential** | **passive** *Mass culture turns audiences into passive consumers, their participation limited to the choice between buying and not buying.* | **sophisticated** | **domestic, foreign** | **commercial, industrial** | **green** *Green consumers should be wary of manufacturers' claims that their products are environmentally friendly.* | **electricity, energy**
- VERB + CONSUMER **supply** *supplying domestic consumers* | **persuade** | **exploit** *to exploit consumers by charging a high price* | **protect** *What can be done to protect the ordinary consumer from unscrupulous service operators?* | **satisfy**
- CONSUMER + VERB **buy sth, spend sth**
- CONSUMER + NOUN **durables, electronics, goods, products, services** *the market for consumer durables* | **attitudes, awareness, behaviour, choice, confidence, demand, expenditure, needs, preferences, spending, tastes** | **protection, rights** | **group, organization, watchdog** *Consumer watchdogs have accused banks of 'appalling arrogance' in the way they treat customers.* | **society** *We are living in a consumer society.* | **market** | **prices** | **boom** *Government policy encouraged a consumer boom followed by a deep recession.* | **boycott** *The country could face a consumer boycott of its beef exports.*
- PREP. **among ~** *two years of research among consumers*

consumption *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy, high** *the country with the highest fuel consumption in the world* | **low** | **average** | **overall, total** | **excessive** | **conspicuous** (= buying expensive goods in order to impress people and show how rich you are) | **annual, daily** *Annual consumption of wine has risen from five to eleven litres per head.* | **per capita** | **domestic, local, home** *It is important that the recovery be export-led rather than led by domestic consumption.* ◇ *Half the small crop was kept for home consumption.* | **foreign, world** | **household** | **individual, personal** | **mass** | **public** | **private** | **future** *households that save for future consumption* | **alcohol, beer, cigarette, food, meat, tobacco, water** | **electricity, energy, fuel, gas, oil, petrol, power**
- QUANT. **level**
- VERB + CONSUMPTION **boost, encourage, increase, stimulate** *Doctors say that children need to increase their consumption of fruit and vegetables.* ◇ *The industry faced a serious challenge in trying to stimulate consumption.* | **cut down, reduce** *You need to reduce your alcohol consumption.*
- CONSUMPTION + VERB **go up, increase, rise** | **decline, decrease, fall, go down**
- CONSUMPTION + NOUN **expenditure, spending** | **figures, levels** | **habits, patterns**
- PREP. **for sb's ~** (= intended to be read or heard by sb) *The documents were for the committee rather than for public consumption.*
- PHRASES **fit/unfit for human consumption** (= safe/not safe to be eaten) *meat that is unfit for human consumption*

contact *noun*

1 meeting/talking/writing to sb

- ADJ. **close** *She is still in close contact with Sarah.* | **regular** | **direct** *Have you had any direct contact with the director of the company?* | **face-to-face**
- VERB + CONTACT **be in, have** | **come into, establish, get in, make** *In his job, he comes into contact with many different people.* ◇ *We first established contact with the organization in 1999.* ◇ *When I arrive in New York, I'll get in contact with him.* | **put sb in** *I put my cousin in contact with a friend who works at the company.* | **keep, maintain, stay in** *Maintaining contact after many years can be difficult.* | **break off** | **lose**
- PREP. **~ between** *There has been no contact between them for several years.* **~ with** *I have very little contact with Simon now.*

2 person you know who can help you

- ADJ. **good, useful, valuable** | **business, personal**
- VERB + CONTACT **have** *He has a lot of good contacts in the music industry.* | **build up, make** *It takes time to build up contacts.* ◇ *I made a lot of useful business contacts at the conference.*

3 when people/things touch each other

- ADJ. **physical, sexual** *The disease is transmitted through physical contact.*
- VERB + CONTACT **come into** *Do not let the glue come into contact with water.*
- PREP. **in ~** *For a brief moment their lips were in contact.* **on ~** *The light will go out on contact with water.* | **~ between** *There should be no contact between the separate samples.* **~ with**

contact *verb*

- ADV. **immediately** | **directly** | **personally** | **by email, by phone/telephone** *He can be contacted by phone on the telephone number given below.*
- PHRASES **do not hesitate to contact sb** *Please do not hesitate to contact me if you have any questions.*

contact lens *noun*

- ADJ. **gas-permeable, hard, soft** | **daily-wear** | **tinted**
- VERB + CONTACT LENS **have in, wear** | **put in** | **remove, take out** | **clean, disinfect** | **rinse, soak**

contagious *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove** *The new disease proved contagious.*
- ADV. **highly, very** *Enthusiasm is highly contagious.*

container *noun*

1 box/bottle/packet, etc.

- ADJ. **shallow** | **airtight, closed, sealed, watertight** | **insulated** | **empty** | **full** | **durable** *Store food in durable containers with lids.* | **recyclable, refillable** | **childproof, child resistant** | **ideal, suitable, useful** *Tubes are the ideal container for paint as air is excluded.* | **special** | **storage** | **aluminium, cardboard, glass, metal, plastic, steel, wooden** | **food, milk, water**
- VERB + CONTAINER **fill** *Fill the container with water.* | **store sth in**
- CONTAINER + VERB **contain sth, hold sth** *a container holding five litres*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Keep the seeds in an airtight container.* | **~ for** *childproof containers for dangerous substances* **~ of** *a container of milk*

2 large metal box for transporting goods

- ADJ. **empty** | **full** | **bulk, cargo**
- CONTAINER + VERB **contain sth, hold sth** *containers holding shipments of bananas*
- CONTAINER + NOUN **lorry, ship, truck** | **port**

contaminated *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | remain**
- ADV. **badly, heavily, highly** *A lot of our drinking water is now heavily contaminated.* | **potentially**
- PREP. **with** *The meat was believed to be contaminated with salmonella.*

contamination *noun*

- ADJ. **massive, serious, widespread | cross-** *Chopping boards can be a source of cross-contamination.* | **environmental, food | bacterial, radioactive**
- QUANT. **level** *There is already a high level of environmental contamination.*
- VERB + CONTAMINATION **avoid, prevent | reduce**
- PREP. **~by** *Always keep food covered to prevent contamination by flies.* **~from** *There is a danger of serious contamination from radioactive waste.* **~with** *Wash everything thoroughly to avoid contamination with bacteria.*
- PHRASES **a source of contamination**

contemplate *verb*

- ADV. **seriously** *She was seriously contemplating working abroad.*
- VERB + CONTEMPLATE **be prepared to, be willing to** *Are you prepared to contemplate retraining?* | **cannot, could not | refuse to**
- PHRASES **too awful/horrible/horrific to contemplate** *The thought of war was too awful to contemplate.*

contemplation *noun*

- ADJ. **quiet, silent | deep**
- VERB + CONTEMPLATION **be deep in, be lost in** *She was lost in contemplation of the scene in front of her.*
- PREP. **in~(of)** *He spent many hours in deep contemplation.* | **~of** *the contemplation of beauty*

contemporary *adj.*

1 belonging to the same time as sb/sth else
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **strictly** *She used only strictly contemporary documents to research the book.* | **almost, nearly | broadly, roughly** *a period broadly contemporary with the Shang dynasty*
- PREP. **with** *a composer contemporary with Beethoven*

2 modern
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very** *His work is very contemporary.*

contempt *noun*

1 lack of respect
- ADJ. **deep, utter, withering | cold, icy | healthy** *She'd developed what she considered a healthy contempt for authority.* | **barely/thinly disguised**
- VERB + CONTEMPT **feel, have, hold sb/sth in** *He felt nothing but contempt for them.* ◇ *Politicians seem to be generally held in contempt by the police.* | **betray, demonstrate, display, show** *His remarks betray an utter contempt for the truth* (= are completely false). | **develop | regard sb/sth with, treat sb/sth with | deserve** *I shall treat that suggestion with the contempt it deserves.*
- PREP. **~for** *He has a deep contempt for racists.* | **beneath~** *His treatment of his children is beneath contempt* (= so bad it is not even worth feeling contempt for). **with~** *She looked at him with barely disguised contempt.*

2 (*also* **contempt of court**) refusal to obey a court
- ADJ. **civil, criminal**
- VERB + CONTEMPT **be held in** *She was held in contempt for refusing to testify.*
- PREP. **in~**

contemptuous *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, sound** *Her voice sounded almost contemptuous.*
- ADV. **savagely | utterly | almost | rather | openly**
- PREP. **of** *He was utterly contemptuous of her efforts.*

contender *noun*

- ADJ. **serious, strong | leading, main, major, number one, obvious, top | genuine, likely, possible**
- PREP. **~for** *a strong contender for the gold medal*

content *noun*

1 contents things inside sth
- VERB + CONTENTS **empty** *She emptied the contents of her bag on the floor*

2 amount of a substance that sth contains
- ADJ. **high** *foods with a high fibre content* | **low | alcohol, calorie, carbon, fat, fibre, moisture, protein, sugar, sulphur, vitamin, etc.**

content *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem**
- ADV. **perfectly, quite, utterly** *I'm perfectly content just to lie in the sun.* | **fairly, reasonably, relatively | apparently | curiously, strangely** *She felt curiously content.*
- PREP. **with** *She seemed quite content with the idea.*

contented *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem**
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, very** *He gave a deeply contented sigh.* | **perfectly, quite**

contention *noun*

1 opinion that sb expresses
- ADJ. **main** *Her main contention is that staff should get better training.*
- VERB + CONTENTION **support** *There is no evidence to support her contention.* | **reject**

2 disagreement between people
- PREP. **~between** *There is no contention between the two groups.*
- PHRASES **an area of contention, a bone/point/source of contention** *Where to go on holiday is always a bone of contention in our family.*

contentious *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove | become | remain**
- ADV. **highly, very** *Abortion is a highly contentious issue.* | **rather, somewhat | politically**

contentment *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, quiet, real, true** *He gazed out to sea, with a feeling of deep contentment.*
- VERB + CONTENTMENT **find** *They finally found contentment in living a simple life.*
- PREP. **with~** *She sighed with contentment.*
- PHRASES **a feeling of contentment**

contest *noun*

- ADJ. **close, closely fought, equal, even | one-sided, unequal** *The contest was too one-sided to be exciting.* | **open** *This contest is wide open: any of half a dozen teams could win it.* | **fair** *The other bidders for the contract complained that it had not been a fair contest.* | **exciting, good, great, thrilling | bitter | head-to-head** *The contestants are eliminated one by one until the last two compete in a head-to-head contest.* | **global, international, local, national, regional | election/electoral, guberna-**

torial, leadership, political, presidential | beauty, song, sporting, talent

• VERB + CONTEST **have, hold, run** *We have three major beauty contests a year.* ◇ *Sporting contests are held in the arena.* | **compete in, enter, take part in** *A third candidate has entered the contest for the Republican nomination.* | **win, lose**

• CONTEST + VERB **take place**

• PREP. **during a/the ~** *During the election contest newspapers are not allowed to publish public opinion polls.* **in a/the ~** *Both sides are predicting victory in this close contest.* **out of a/the ~** *Jackson has injured his knee and is now out of the contest.* | **~ against** *They won the doubles contest against the Williams sisters.* **~ between** *the contest between these two great boxers* **~ for** *the contest for the leadership of the party* **~ over** *In the animal kingdom intruders usually lose contests over territories.* **~ with** *The New Zealanders are looking forward to future contests with South Africa.*

• PHRASES **be no contest** (= used when one side in a contest is much stronger than the other and is sure to win), **the winner of a contest**

contest *verb*

1 in a competition

• ADV. **bitterly, fiercely, hotly, keenly** *The election was bitterly contested.* | **successfully, unsuccessfully**

2 oppose

• ADV. **fiercely, hotly, strongly, vigorously** *His views on evolution are strongly contested by other scientists.* | **successfully, unsuccessfully** *Defence lawyers successfully contested the case.*

context *noun*

• ADJ. **broad, general, larger, overall, wider** *You can't just look at it in terms of the immediate problem. You've got to see it in a wider context.* | **narrow** | **immediate** *A work which transcends its immediate historical context and speaks to later generations.* | **correct, proper, real, right** | **appropriate, realistic, relevant** *to present examples of language in use in an appropriate context* | **certain, given, particular, specific** *These actions only have meaning within certain specific contexts.* | **original** | **changed, changing, different, new, novel** | **meaningful** *Children need meaningful contexts for their work in science.* | **neutral** | **contemporary, modern** | **everyday, normal** | **global, international, local, national, regional** | **human** *It is natural to find conflict in the work environment, in the family, or any other human context.* | **communicative, conversational** | **experimental, practical, theoretical** | **classroom, school** | **business, commercial, cultural, economic, educational, fictional, geographical, historical, legal, literary, political, religious, social** | **Christian, Islamic, etc.** | **African, Asian, etc.**

• VERB + CONTEXT **offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *Institutions provide a context in which individuals can take on different roles.* | **place sth in, put sth into, set sth in** *This speech needs to be set in the context of Britain in the 1960s.* | **consider/examine/look at/see/understand/view sth in** *His decision can only be understood in context.* | **quote sth out of, take sth out of** *Her reply was quoted out of context and seemed to mean something quite different from what she had intended.*

• PREP. **in (a/the)~** *Similar problems have arisen in other contexts.* **within a/the ~** *You've got to look at these remarks within the context of the recent scandals.* | **~ for** *a neutral context for sharing and debating ideas*

• PHRASES **a range/variety of contexts**

continent *noun*

• ADJ. **Antarctic, Australian, African, etc.**

• VERB + CONTINENT **cross** *the first railway to cross the North American continent*

• CONTINENT + VERB **drift** *The evidence that the continents have drifted is overwhelming.*

• PREP. **across a/the ~** *He travelled across continents in his quest for adventure.* **on the ~** *Wolves are still found on the continent of Europe.*

contingent *noun*

• ADJ. **large, strong, substantial** | **military, naval, police** | **British, UN, etc.**

• PREP. **~ from** *a strong contingent from Camberwell Art School* **~ of** *a large contingent of American troops*

continuation *noun*

• ADJ. **direct** | **natural**

• VERB + CONTINUATION **see** *The years 2000–01 saw the continuation of the university's planned expansion.* | **ensure** | **be seen as** *His research could be seen as a natural continuation of the work done by Professor Lang.*

continuity *noun*

• ADJ. **greater** | **remarkable** | **unbroken** *After twelve or thirteen centuries of unbroken continuity the landscape was being changed out of all recognition.* | **underlying** | **historical, narrative**

• VERB + CONTINUITY **need** | **ensure, give sb/sth, maintain, provide (sb/sth with), secure** *More liaison between the old manager and the new one should ensure greater continuity.* | **break** *The author deliberately breaks the narrative continuity in order to confound the reader's expectations.*

• PREP. **~ between** *There is often a lack of continuity between one government and the next.* **~ in** *historical continuity in the feminist movement*

• PHRASES **a lack of continuity, a need for continuity** *the need for continuity of employment* **a sense of continuity** *giving children a sense of continuity*

contraception *noun*

• ADJ. **effective, safe** | **artificial** | **emergency** | **oral**

• VERB + CONTRACEPTION **practise, use** *A lot of couples now practise contraception.* ◇ *They never used any contraception.*

• PHRASES **the availability of contraception, a form/method of contraception** *a very reliable method of contraception*

contraceptive *noun*

• ADJ. **effective** | **oral**

• VERB + CONTRACEPTIVE **use**

contract *noun*

1 written agreement

• ADJ. **long-term, permanent** | **casual, fixed-term, short-term** | **three-year, two-year, etc.** | **formal, written** | **verbal** | **legal, valid** | **void** *The contract was declared void.* | **enforceable, unenforceable** (*law*) | **big, important, major** | **lucrative** | **business, commercial** | **employment, maintenance, research, service** | **catering, construction, haulage** | **marriage**

• VERB + CONTRACT **have** *Many workers do not have written contracts.* | **bid for, tender for** *Eighteen companies are bidding for the contract.* | **award (sb), give sb** | **get, win** | **lose** *The firm lost the contract to a large London company.* | **negotiate** *She managed to negotiate a permanent contract with the firm.* | **draw up, write** | **conclude, enter into, make, sign** *He entered into a contract with his former employer.* | **carry out, execute** *the firm carrying out the construction contract* | **cancel, end, repudiate** (*law*), **rescind** (*law*), **terminate** *Either party can* *terminate the contract at any time.* | **be subject to** *The offer has been accepted, subject to contract* (= the agreement is not legally binding before contracts are signed). | **be in breach of, break, violate** *If you go on strike you will be in breach of contract.* | **enforce** (*law*) | **exchange** (*law*) *When a house is auctioned the successful bidder must exchange contracts immediately and pay a deposit.*

• CONTRACT + VERB **expire** *The contract expires at the end of next year.* | **be worth sth** *a series of major contracts worth millions of pounds*

• CONTRACT + NOUN **worker** (= one on a fixed-term contract) | **law**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *They put a clause in the contract stipulating that the work should be finished by next month.* **on a ~** *He's on a three-year fixed-term contract.* **under ~ (to)** *At that stage of her career she was still under contract to one of the big Hollywood studios.* **under a/the ~** *Under her contract of employment, Mrs Lee could not be required to work at a different site.* | **~ between** *the contract between the employer and the employee* **~ for** *They won a contract for the delivery of five fighter planes.* **~ with** *Do you have a contract with your employer?*

• PHRASES **(a) breach of contract** *The company is being sued for breach of contract.* **a contract of employment/sale** *You should make sure that you have a formal contract of employment.* **the terms of a contract** *By using cheaper materials, the company has broken the terms of its contract.* **under the terms of a contract** *Under the terms of the contract the job should have been finished yesterday.*

2 agreement to kill sb

• VERB + CONTRACT **take out** | **have out** *He has a contract out on you.*

• CONTRACT + NOUN **killer, killing**

• PREP. **~ on** *She took out a contract on her ex-husband.*

contractor *noun*

• ADJ. **external, independent, outside, private** | **government** | **approved** *a list of approved contractors* | **building, defence, electrical, engineering, haulage**

• VERB + CONTRACTOR **employ, hire, use** *We'll need to employ a building contractor to do the work.*

contradict *verb*

• ADV. **clearly, completely, directly, flatly** *John's account of the event directly contradicts Stephen's.*

• VERB + CONTRADICT **appear to, seem to**

contradiction *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, direct, flat** | **flagrant, glaring, manifest, obvious** | **basic, fundamental** *There's a basic contradiction in the whole idea of paying for justice.* | **inherent** | **apparent** | **internal**

• PREP. **in ~ to/with** *That's in direct contradiction to what he said yesterday.* | **~ between** *There is an apparent contradiction between the needs of workers and those of employers.* **~ of** *That's a contradiction of what you just said.*

• PHRASES **a contradiction in terms** *The idea is almost a contradiction in terms.*

contradictory *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound**

• ADV. **completely, directly, totally** *The evidence is completely contradictory.* | **quite, rather, somewhat** | **apparently, seemingly** *two apparently contradictory opinions* | **internally** *The argument is internally contradictory* (= contradicts itself). | **mutually** *The evidence demonstrates how easily people can hold mutually contradictory beliefs.*

• PREP. **to** *He did something contradictory to his orders.*

contrary *adj.*

• VERBS **be, run, seem** *These results run contrary to our expectations.* ◇ *It seems contrary to common sense.*

• ADV. **completely, directly, entirely, quite, totally** *My own experience is completely contrary.* ◇ *The new claim is directly contrary to what was originally stated.* | **clearly**

• PREP. **to** *Contrary to what the public was told, weapons were still being exported.*

• PHRASES **contrary to expectations** *Contrary to expectations, we didn't have any hold-ups on the journey.* **contrary to popular belief** *Contrary to popular belief, the economy is doing well.*

contrast *noun*

• ADJ. **clear, marked, sharp, stark, startling, striking, strong** *There is a stark contrast between the lives of the rich and those of the poor.* | **complete, direct**

• VERB + CONTRAST **make, offer, provide** *The fresh fruit provides a contrast to the rich chocolate pudding.*

• PREP. **by ~** *When you look at their new system, ours seems very old-fashioned by contrast.* **in ~ (to/with)** *The company lost $13 million this year, in contrast with a profit of $15 million last year.* | **~ between, ~ in** *The contrast in appearance between the sisters was striking.* **~ to** *This busy social life was a complete contrast to his old quiet life.*

• PHRASES **stand in … contrast to sb/sth** *Their attitudes towards love and marriage stand in stark contrast to those of their parents.*

contrast *verb*

1 compare things in order to show differences

• ADV. **favourably, unfavourably** *He contrasted her brashness unfavourably with his mother's gentleness.*

• PREP. **with**

• PHRASES **compare and contrast** *Compare and contrast the two main characters in the play.*

2 be clearly different

• ADV. **markedly, sharply, starkly, strikingly, strongly, vividly** | **nicely** | **oddly** | **favourably, unfavourably** *The open approach contrasts favourably with the exclusivity of some universities.*

• PREP. **with** *This statement contrasts starkly with his previous statements.*

contravene *verb*

• ADV. **blatantly, clearly** *blatantly contravening the rules of civilized warfare*

contravention *noun*

• ADJ. **clear, direct**

• PREP. **in ~ of** *He was in direct contravention of the law.* | **~ of** *This was a clear contravention of the rules.*

contribute *verb*

1 give

• ADV. **enormously, generously, greatly, handsomely, heavily, substantially** *His research has contributed enormously to our understanding of this disease.* ◇ *Many people contributed generously to the appeal.* | **equally** *a situation where husband and wife contribute equally to the family budget* | **fully** | **financially**

• VERB + CONTRIBUTE **be asked to, be encouraged to**

• PREP. **to** *I would like to contribute to the church restoration fund.* **towards** *The company contributed £50 000 towards training costs.*

• PHRASES **have little/a lot/much to contribute (to sth)** *He had very little to contribute to the conversation.*

2 help cause sth

• ADV. **greatly, largely, significantly, substantially** *Parental involvement contributes significantly to children's*

learning. | **effectively** | **further** | **actively, directly** *Unemployment contributes directly to homelessness.* | **indirectly** | **undoubtedly** | **unwittingly**
- PREP. **to** *Several factors might contribute to the development of the disease.*

3 write for a newspaper, etc.
- ADV. **regularly** *a talented photographer who contributed regularly to 'The Face'*
- PREP. **to** *Students are encouraged to contribute articles to the university magazine.*

contribution *noun*

1 sth that helps cause/increase sth
- ADJ. **important, significant** | **big, enormous, great, huge, major, strong, substantial** | **minor, modest, small** | **invaluable, positive, useful, valuable** *We like to think that we are making a positive contribution to society.* | **notable, outstanding**
- VERB + CONTRIBUTION **make** *He made a major contribution to peace in the region.*
- PREP. **~to** *a valuable contribution to science*

2 money given to help pay for sth
- ADJ. **generous, large** | **small** | **voluntary** *We rely entirely on voluntary contributions.*
- VERB + CONTRIBUTION **make, offer, pay**
- PREP. **~to/towards** *I'd like to make a small contribution to the cost of the holiday.*

contributor *noun*

- ADJ. **important, significant** | **big, large** | **main, principal** | **net** *net contributors to the economy* | **regular** *The core of regular contributors is essential to the magazine.*
- PREP. **~to** *Carbon dioxide is the largest contributor to the greenhouse effect.*

contrived *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound**
- ADV. **highly, very** *highly contrived laboratory conditions* | **a little, rather, somewhat** | **carefully** *the carefully contrived image of party unity* | **cleverly, cunningly** | **artificially, deliberately**

control *noun*

1 power over sb/sth
- ADJ. **absolute, complete, full, total** | **effective, proper** | **close, strict** *Weeds should be kept under strict control.* | **direct** | **government, parental, political, state**
- VERB + CONTROL **have** | **assume, establish, gain, get, take, win** *A military junta took control of the country.* | **keep, maintain, retain** *She struggled to keep control of her voice.* | **lose, relinquish** *He lost control of the car when he swerved to avoid a cyclist.* | **wrest** *attempts to wrest control of the town from government forces* | **get out of, go out of** *The car went out of control on the icy road.* | **re-establish, regain** *Enemy forces have now regained control of the area.* | **give sb/sth** *The idea is to give councils full control of their own budgets.* | **exercise, exert** *Editors do not exercise control over large sections of their newspapers.* | **bring/get sth under** *They soon got the situation under control.*
- PREP. **beyond/outside your ~** *Parking is outside my control.* **in ~ (of)** *The elected government is back in control.* **out of ~** *I had this feeling that things were out of control.* **under (sb's) ~** *Everything is under control* ◇ *The department was under the control of Bryce Thompson.* | **~over** *They have little control over that side of the business.*
- PHRASES **circumstances beyond sb's control** *The event has been cancelled due to circumstances beyond our control.*

2 limiting/managing sth
- ADJ. **air-traffic, arms, birth, budgetary, cost, crowd, gun, pest, pollution, quality, rent, social, stock, traffic** *The police are experts in crowd control.*

3 (usually **controls**) method of limiting/managing sth
- ADJ. **strict, stringent, tight, tough** | **lax** | **border, export, price** *calls for tougher export controls*
- VERB + CONTROL **impose, introduce** *The government has imposed strict controls on new building.* | **tighten** *The country has tightened its border controls.* | **ease, relax** *plans to relax price controls* | **lift, remove**
- PREP. **~on** *They have introduced controls on public spending.*

4 for operating a machine
- ADJ. **remote** | **volume**
- VERB + CONTROL **take** *Once we were in the air, I was allowed to take the controls.*
- CONTROL + NOUN **panel**
- PREP. **at the ~s** *Chief Air Officer Sedley was at the controls of the Boeing 707.*

control *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, strictly, tightly** *Conditions in the greenhouse are carefully controlled.* ◇ *Expenditure within the company is tightly controlled.* | **effectively, properly** | **centrally, directly**

controller *noun*

- ADJ. **air traffic** | **programme** *He is the new programme controller for BBC2.* | **credit, financial, marketing, production** | **district, divisional, group, regional**
- PREP. **~for** *the company's marketing controller for the north-west*

⇨ Note at JOB

controversial *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a highly controversial subject* | **rather, somewhat** | **politically**

controversy *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great, major** | **bitter, fierce, raging, violent** | **lively** *His views have excited a lively controversy among fellow scientists.* | **fresh, further, new, renewed** | **continued, continuing, long-standing, prolonged** | **public** | **political** | **religious, theological** | **academic, critical, scholarly**
- VERB + CONTROVERSY **arouse, cause, create, excite, fuel, give rise to, provoke, spark (off), stir up** *What they are doing is bound to stir up controversy.* | **be dogged by, be marked by, be riven by, be surrounded by** *This year's championships have been dogged by controversy.* | **avoid** *The prime minister seemed anxious to avoid controversy about these appointments.* | **run into** *The network ran into controversy over claims of faked documentary footage.* | **be no stranger to** *The MP, who is no stranger to controversy herself, said the scandal could have serious repercussions.* | **court** *The singer deliberately courts controversy with his racist and sexist lyrics.*
- CONTROVERSY + VERB **arise, break out** *A fierce controversy has broken out over the issue.* | **rage** *Controversy is raging over the route of the new motorway.* | **exist** *Controversy exists as to how safe these drugs are.* | **centre on sth** *The controversy centred on the issue of compensation for the victims.* | **surround sth** *Much controversy surrounds the new exam.*
- PREP. **amid ~** *The minister has resigned amid continuing controversy over his education proposals.* | **~about/concerning/over** *There has been a lot of controversy over the use of these drugs.* **~among** *controversy among historians* **~between** *controversy between the two leaders* **~surrounding** *the bitter controversy surrounding*

the introduction of the new regulations ~ **with** *her long-running controversy with fellow academics*
• PHRASES **a matter/source/subject of controversy, a storm of controversy** *The book raised a storm of controversy.*

convenience *noun*

1 being useful/easy/suitable
• ADJ. **great | extra** *All our holiday chalets include a microwave and food processor for extra convenience.* | **administrative** *The system is based on administrative convenience rather than public benefit.*
• CONVENIENCE + NOUN **food** *The children like convenience food such as sausages or fish fingers and chips.* | **store**
• PREP. **at your ~** *Can you telephone me at your convenience* (= when it is convenient for you) *to arrange a further meeting?* **for (your) ~** *I keep my cookery books in the kitchen for convenience.* ◇ *An order form is enclosed for your convenience.*
• PHRASES **a marriage of convenience** (= a marriage for financial, political or practical reasons, not love), **at your earliest convenience** (*business*) (= as soon as possible), **comfort and convenience** *In this resort you can enjoy all the comfort and convenience of modern tourism.* **for the sake of convenience** *We leave the keys near the front door for the sake of convenience.*

2 sth useful
• ADJ. **great** *It's a great convenience living next door to a post office.* | **modern** *They wouldn't like to live without modern conveniences such as microwaves.*

convenient *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove, seem, sound | make sth | find sth** *I find the new system much more convenient.*
• ADV. **extremely, highly, very | quite | mutually** *We arranged a mutually convenient time to meet.* | **politically**
• PREP. **for** *Would this be convenient for you?* ◇ *The house is quite convenient for the shops.*

convent *noun*

• ADJ. **Carmelite, Catholic, Franciscan, Ursuline, etc.**
• VERB + CONVENT **enter** *She entered a convent* (= became a nun) *at the age of sixteen.* | **leave | establish, found, set up** *The nuns established a convent here in 1692.*
• CONVENT + NOUN **building, wall** *within the convent walls* (= inside the convent) | **education, school**
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *She spent her whole life in a convent.* | **~ of** *the Convent of St Saviour*

convention *noun*

1 way sth is done
• ADJ. **accepted, established, long-standing, old, traditional, well-established** *It's an established convention that the part of the prince is played by a woman.* | **normal, standard, usual | polite** *Her work refuses any concession to polite conventions of 'good taste'.* | **arbitrary | rigid, strict | cultural, legal, social** *the rigid social conventions of Victorian Britain* | **dramatic, fictional, literary, narrative, operatic, poetic** *The novel refuses to conform to the narrative conventions of 19th century realism.* | **orthographic, punctuation, rhetorical**
• QUANT. **set**
• VERB + CONVENTION **adhere to, conform to, follow, keep to, observe** *They followed the Greek convention of pinning gifts of money to the bride's dress.* | **be bound by, be hidebound by** *Life with the Leighs was not hidebound by rules or convention.* | **break (with), cut through, defy, flout** *She knew that she had broken an important social convention.* ◇ *He had the freedom of spirit to cut through convention.* ◇ *No young politician can afford to flout convention in this way.*
• CONVENTION + VERB **demand sth, dictate sth** *Convention dictated that dangerous physical action is the part of heroes, not heroines.*
• PREP. **according to/by ~** *By convention, the Queen gives the Royal Assent to all measures passed by Parliament.*
• PHRASES **a break with convention** *In a surprising break with convention, she wore a red wedding dress.* **a matter of convention**

2 conference
• ADJ. **annual | international, national | Democratic, Republican, etc. | careers, constitutional, party, political** *A constitutional convention was elected to try to agree on a new form of government.*
• VERB + CONVENTION **arrange, have, hold, organize | attend, go to | address** *He addressed the annual Republican convention.*
• CONVENTION + VERB **take place**
• CONVENTION + NOUN **centre | delegate**
• PREP. **at a/the ~** *She was at the Democratic convention.*
• PHRASES **delegates to a convention**

3 international agreement
• ADJ. **global, international | European, UN/United Nations, etc. | climate, human rights, etc. | draft**
• VERB + CONVENTION **adopt, ratify, sign** *Over 60 countries have yet to ratify the climate convention.* | **adhere to, comply with** *Most countries have adhered to the convention.* | **breach** *This practice breaches the arms convention.*
• CONVENTION + VERB **apply, govern sth** *a convention governing the conditions under which mining is permitted* | **establish sth** *The convention established procedures for the transport of toxic waste.* | **ban sth**
• PREP. **under a/the ~** *This is forbidden under the European Convention on Human Rights.* | **~ between** *the 1869 convention between Turkey and Persia* **~ for** *the Berne Convention for the Conservation of European Wildlife* **~ on** *the 1951 United Nations Convention on refugees*
• PHRASES **a breach of a convention**

conventional *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem**
• ADV. **highly, very | entirely, quite, strictly | largely | fairly, pretty, rather, relatively, somewhat**

conversation *noun*

• ADJ. **brief, short | lengthy, long** *We engaged in a long conversation.* | **endless** *listening to endless conversations about high prices and food shortages* | **casual, everyday, general, informal, normal, ordinary** *It's not a subject that often crops up in casual conversation.* | **intimate, personal, private | face-to-face | overheard, recorded, taped | phone/telephone | civilized, polite** *We sat making polite conversation and feeling rather uncomfortable.* | **friendly, pleasant | animated | fascinating, good, intelligent, interesting, stimulating** *He said that television had been the death of good conversation.* | **proper, real, serious** *There was no time for a proper conversation.* | **simple** *When you are struggling with an unfamiliar language, the simplest conversations can be misinterpreted.* | **strange | chance** *A chance conversation led to a brilliant new career for the young catering student.* | **desultory, halting, stilted** *We carried on a rather halting conversation.* | **hushed, low-voiced, murmured, muted, muttered, quiet, whispered | shouted | one-sided, two-way** *Think of prayer as a two-way conversation.* | **imaginary | after-dinner | adult** *Young children become quickly bored by adult conversation.*
• QUANT. **snatch** *I overheard snatches of a conversation between two doctors.*
• VERB + CONVERSATION **carry on, have, hold, make**

You can't hold a private conversation there. ◇ *I tried to make conversation with the three silent people round the table.* | **begin, draw sb into, engage sb in, fall into, get into, open, start, strike up** *I got into conversation with one of the directors.* ◇ *He was waiting for her to open the conversation.* ◇ *I was keen to strike up a conversation with him.* | **be deep in, be engaged in** *They were deep in conversation and didn't notice the time.* | **continue, keep up** *Cara kept up a one-sided conversation.* | **control, dominate** | **bring around/round, steer, turn** *I managed to bring the conversation round to why they were leaving.* ◇ *He tried to steer the conversation away from the topic of money.* ◇ *She turned the conversation to her work.* | **enter, join (in)** | **break off** | **conclude, end, finish** | **avoid** *She avoided conversation with the other passengers.* | **encourage** *I was courteous but didn't encourage conversation.* | **hear, listen to, overhear** | **interrupt** | **resume** | **have no** *a plain girl who had no conversation* (= could not make conversation) *and no social graces*

• CONVERSATION + VERB **take place** *When did this conversation take place?* | **continue, proceed** *The conversation proceeded in French.* | **flow** *They all relaxed and conversation flowed freely.* | **come back/round to, drift, move on (to), switch, turn to, veer back/off** *The conversation drifted into family chat.* ◇ *The conversation moved on to other things.* ◇ *The conversation turned to holidays in France.* | **cease, end, stop** *All conversation ceased and everyone turned round.* ◇ *The conversation ended when the vacuum cleaner started up.* | **run out** *All too soon the stilted conversation ran out.*

• PREP. **during ~** *In the Western world it is polite to maintain eye contact during conversation.* **in ~ with** *In the programme tonight we hear Dr Chris Toole in conversation with the artist Mary Witherspoon.* | **~ about** *We had a long conversation about old cars.* **~ between** *a conversation between Jane and her parents* **~ on** *a conversation on the topic of activities for children* **~ with** *I had an interesting conversation with Dick Whortly.*

• PHRASES **an attempt at conversation** *She ignored all my attempts at conversation.* **be in close/deep/earnest conversation (with sb)** *Don was in close conversation with the girl on his right.* **a babble/buzz/hum of conversation** *She could hear him over the buzz of conversation and laughter.* **during the course of (the) conversation** *During the course of conversation, it emerged that Sheila had lived in Nigeria.* **keep the conversation going** *Our hostess did her best to keep the conversation going.* **a lull in the conversation, a topic of conversation** *The main topic of conversation was the big football match.*

conversion *noun*

1 change to a new form/system/use

• ADJ. **careful** *Today, after a careful conversion, it is a very comfortable and elegant country home.* | **barn, loft** | **office** | **currency** *There are no charges for currency conversion.* | **data, file** | **energy** *Cheap solar energy conversion has been the dream of some scientists since the 1970s.*

• VERB + CONVERSION **carry out, undertake**

• PREP. **~ from, ~ into** *A local building firm will carry out the conversion of the farm buildings into business units.* **~ to** *conversion from analogue to digital data*

2 religious

• ADJ. **religious** | **deathbed** | **overnight, sudden** (*figurative*) *her overnight conversion to market economics*

• VERB + CONVERSION **experience, undergo** *In the late eighties he underwent a religious conversion.*

• CONVERSION + NOUN **experience**

• PREP. **~ from, ~ to** *her conversion from Buddhism to Christianity*

3 in rugby

• VERB + CONVERSION **kick** | **add** *The try came in the third minute and Jon Bland added the conversion.*

convert *noun*

• ADJ. **recent** | **enthusiastic** | **reluctant** | **Catholic, Jewish, etc.**

• VERB + CONVERT **become** | **gain, make, win** *an attempt to gain converts to Communism*

• PREP. **~ from** *One of the early popes, Clement was a convert from paganism.* **~ to** *a recent convert to Catholicism*

convey *verb*

• ADV. **clearly, vividly** *The novel vividly conveys the experience of growing up during the war.* | **accurately, adequately** | **effectively, successfully**

• VERB + CONVEY **can/could** *Gestures can convey meaning as well as words.* | **try to** | **manage to** | **fail to**

• PREP. **to** *He managed to convey his enthusiasm to her.*

convict *noun*

• ADJ. **escaped**

convict *verb*

• ADV. **rightly, wrongly**

• PREP. **for** *She was convicted for her part in the crime.* **of** *He was convicted of a serious driving offence.*

conviction *noun*

1 for a crime

• ADJ. **earlier, previous** | **spent** *You are not obliged to acknowledge spent convictions.* | **successful** | **unsafe, wrongful** *The men's convictions were declared unsafe.* | **criminal** | **manslaughter, murder, etc.**

• VERB + CONVICTION **have** *He has three previous criminal convictions.* | **lead to** *A reward is offered for information leading to the conviction of the attacker.* | **obtain, secure** *They need strong evidence to secure a conviction.* | **escape** *He believes that too many defendants are escaping conviction by claiming that they are insane.* | **appeal against** *He appealed against his conviction for murder.* | **overturn, quash** | **uphold**

• CONVICTION + NOUN **rate** *The conviction rate for rape is extremely low.*

• PREP. **on ~** *an offence which carries, on conviction, a sentence of not more than five years' imprisonment* | **~ against** *The appeal court overturned the conviction against her.* **~ for** *a conviction for murder*

• PHRASES **the rate of conviction**

2 belief/appearance of belief

• ADJ. **absolute, complete, total, unshakeable, utter** | **deep, deeply held, fervent, firm, fundamental, great, intense, passionate, real, strong** *It is the firm conviction of the governors that this child should not be admitted to the school.* ◇ *There was no great conviction in his voice.* | **growing** | **personal** | **inner** | **ideological, moral, political, religious** | **Catholic, Christian, etc.**

• VERB + CONVICTION **have** *She had this absolute conviction that what she liked others would like.* | **share** *The ex-leaders share a deep conviction that their views on world matters are still vitally important.* | **express** | **shake** *Nothing could shake her conviction that 'abroad' was a dangerous place.* | **strengthen** | **carry** *Her explanation failed to carry conviction in the face of the facts.* | **lack** *Her arguments lacked conviction.*

• CONVICTION + NOUN **politics** *The demise of consensus and the rise of conviction politics.*

• PREP. **with/without ~** *'Not true!' she said with conviction.* | **~ about** *He had a strong personal conviction about the power of the printed word.*

• PHRASES **have the courage of your convictions** (= to be brave enough to do what you feel to be right)

convinced *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem, sound | become** *She became convinced that something was wrong.* **| remain**
- ADV. **deeply, firmly | absolutely, completely, fully, quite, totally, utterly | increasingly | almost | by no means, not altogether, not entirely, not fully, not wholly | fairly | half** *She was still only half convinced.* **| apparently | clearly**
- PREP. **of** *He was convinced of her innocence.*

convincing *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | find sth** *I found his argument pretty convincing.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | completely, thoroughly, totally, utterly | hardly, not altogether, not entirely, not wholly | far from, not remotely** *He was far from convincing as a leader.* **| fairly, pretty, quite | enough, sufficiently** *She produced a convincing enough performance as the wronged wife.*

convoy *noun*

- ADJ. **armed, army, military, naval, troop | road, vehicle | aid, food, humanitarian, relief** *the proposal to send 500 armed soldiers to escort food convoys* **| UN/United Nations**
- VERB + CONVOY **lead | escort, protect | attack**
- CONVOY + VERB **carry sth | arrive**
- PREP. **in ~** *The ships travelled in convoy.* **| ~ of** *a large convoy of lorries carrying medical supplies* **~ to** *the next aid convoy to the war-torn region*

convulsion *noun*

- ADJ. **violent | slight | sudden**
- VERB + CONVULSION **go into, have, suffer** *The patient lost consciousness and went into convulsions.* **| cause**
- CONVULSION + VERB **shake sb** *A sudden convulsion shook him, and he fell to the ground.*

cook *noun*

- ADJ. **excellent, good** *He's a very good cook* **| amateur, professional** *She wants to become a professional cook.*

⇨ Note at JOB

cook *verb*

- ADV. **thoroughly, well** *Make sure you cook the meat well.* **| evenly, gently, slowly** *Turn the fish over so that it cooks evenly.* **| quickly**
- PHRASES **be cooked through** *Ensure that the meat is cooked through.*

cooker *noun*

- ADJ. **electric, gas | pressure | free-standing**
- COOKER + NOUN **hood, point**

cookery *noun*

- ADJ. **basic** *Before he leaves home, he needs to learn some basic cookery.* **| step-by-step** *a step-by-step cookery series for beginners* **| vegetarian | cordon bleu | microwave | Chinese, Eastern, French, etc.**
- VERB + COOKERY **learn**
- COOKERY + NOUN **demonstration | class, course, lesson, school | book, column, magazine, programme | expert, writer**

cooking *noun*

- ADJ. **good, superb, wonderful** *Her cooking is wonderful.* **| home** *I miss my mother's good home cooking.* **| traditional** *traditional English cooking* **| regional | Chinese, Italian, etc.** *French regional cooking* **| vegetarian | slow**
- VERB + COOKING **do** *Who does most of the cooking in your house?*
- PREP. **during ~** *Stir the mixture to prevent the beans sticking to the bottom during cooking.* **in ~** *I use yogurt quite a lot in cooking.*

cool *verb*

1 become colder

- ADV. **completely, thoroughly | a little, slightly | down, off** *He went for a swim to cool off.*
- VERB + COOL **allow sth to, let sth** *Allow the cake to cool thoroughly before removing it from the tin.*

2 become calmer

- ADV. **considerably | slightly, somewhat**

cool *adj.*

1 fairly cold

- VERBS **be, feel, look** *The forest looked cool and shady.* **| become, get** *It will probably get cool later, so bring a coat.* **| keep sth** *Try to keep the drinks cool.*
- ADV. **very | fairly, quite, rather | beautifully, blissfully, deliciously, pleasantly, refreshingly, wonderfully** *The temple was light, spacious and blissfully cool.*

2 calm

- VERBS **appear, be, look | keep, remain, stay** *She managed to stay cool during the meeting.* **| act, play it** *(informal) He forced himself to count to ten and act cool.* ◇ *For once I felt uncertain about my real feelings. I decided to play it cool.*
- ADV. **very | completely | pretty | professionally** *Professionally cool, she went back to her patient.*
- PHRASES **cool, calm and collected** *He did his best to appear cool, calm and collected.*

3 not friendly/enthusiastic

- VERBS **appear, be, sound | remain**
- ADV. **distinctly, very | rather, somewhat**
- PREP. **about** *She was distinctly cool about their plans.* **towards** *He was cool towards me.*

cooperate *verb*

- ADV. **fully** *He has said he will cooperate fully with the police enquiries.* **| closely**
- VERB + COOPERATE **will/would | agree to, be prepared to, be willing to | refuse to**
- PREP. **in** *The two companies are cooperating in the development of a new engine.* **on** *cooperating on a research project* **with** *The firm has agreed to cooperate with the employment survey.*

cooperation *noun*

- ADJ. **close | full | greater, increased | active | effective | international, local | mutual** *a society founded on mutual cooperation and shared prosperity* **| cultural, economic, military, political, social, technical**
- VERB + COOPERATION **need, require | ask for, call for, demand, seek** *She called for closer cooperation on drugs control.* ◇ *They are seeking the cooperation of senior medical staff.* **| enlist, get** *We are hoping to enlist the cooperation of women's groups.* **| give (sb), offer (sb) | encourage, promote** *promoting cooperation between universities and industry* **| ensure**
- PREP. **in ~ with** *The film was made in cooperation with the Sports Council.* **with/without sb's ~** *With the cooperation of the public, the police may be able to catch this man.* **| ~ among** *increased technical cooperation among large companies* **~ between** *political cooperation between the two groups* **~ from** *You will need a bit of cooperation from your family.* **~ in** *We asked for their cooperation in the collection of data.* **~ on** *They offered*

their cooperation on the project. **~ with** *We should like to thank you for your cooperation with us.*

• PHRASES **a lack of cooperation, a need for cooperation** *There is a need for greater economic cooperation.*

cooperative *noun*

• ADJ. **community, worker | agricultural, farmer/farming | production**

• VERB + COOPERATIVE **form | run sth as** *The family business is now run as a cooperative.*

coordinate *verb*

• ADV. **carefully** *a carefully coordinated policy*

• PREP. **with** *We try to coordinate our activities with those of other groups.*

• PHRASES **a coordinated approach/policy/programme**

coordination *noun*

1 working together

• ADJ. **better, greater | poor | international | economic, market, policy | colour** *advice on colour coordination* (= colours that look good together)

• VERB + COORDINATION **need, require | ensure, facilitate** *We must make a real effort to ensure greater coordination between the different groups.*

• PREP. **in ~ with** *a pamphlet produced by the government in coordination with the Sports Council* | **~ between** *to facilitate better coordination between departments* **~ in** *a lack of coordination in government policy* **~ with**

• PHRASES **a lack of coordination, a need for coordination** *a need for coordination with the training department*

2 ability to control your movements

• ADJ. **good | poor | physical | hand-eye** *You need good hand-eye coordination to play racket sports.*

• VERB + COORDINATION **have | lack**

• PHRASES **a lack of coordination**

cope *verb*

• ADV. **admirably, well** *She copes very well under pressure.* | **adequately** *Will the prison system cope adequately with the increasing numbers of prisoners?* | **easily**

• VERB + COPE **be able/unable to, can/can't** *She is unable to cope with her increasing workload.* ◇ *He felt that he couldn't cope any longer.* | **have to** *She had to cope without any help.* | **learn to | struggle to, try to** *struggling to cope with the demands of a new baby* | **be difficult to**

• PREP. **with** *Some people find unemployment very difficult to cope with.*

• PHRASES **sb's ability to cope, a way of coping** *a way of coping with bereavement*

copper *noun*

• ADJ. **molten | beaten | unalloyed | burnished** *Her hair shone like burnished copper.*

• VERB + COPPER **mine | produce | be alloyed with** *silver alloyed with copper*

• COPPER + VERB **be alloyed with sth** *copper alloyed with arsenic*

• COPPER + NOUN **mine | miner | mining, smelting | deposit, ore | alloy, sulphate | coin, ingot, pipe, plate, wire | engraving**

• PREP. **in ~** (= using copper) *She works mainly in copper.*

• PHRASES **an alloy of copper and/with sth** *Brass is an alloy of copper and zinc.*

copy *noun*

1 document/work of art

• ADJ. **accurate, faithful, good | cheap, crude, poor** *It was not the original painting, but a crude copy.* | **carbon, duplicate, exact, facsimile, identical, perfect, true** *The twins were carbon copies of each other.* ◇ *It must be certified as a true copy of the original document.* | **draft, working | clean, fair | master, original, top** *Take a photocopy of the master copy.* | **additional, extra, further, spare | multiple** *The photocopier had been set for multiple copies.* | **modern | certified | photographic, photostat | back-up** *Remember to make back-up copies of all your disks.* | **hard, paper, printed** (*computing*) *You will need to supply a hard copy version of all files.*

• VERB + COPY **make, print, run off, take** *I ran off a couple of copies of the letter.* | **attach, enclose, send** *I attach a copy of the report.* ◇ *Please find enclosed a copy of the draft document.* | **circulate, distribute, supply** *Copies of the article were circulated to members of the committee.* | **obtain, receive | keep** *Remember to keep copies of all your correspondence.*

2 book/newspaper/tape, etc.

• ADJ. **additional, extra, further, spare | back, old** *I have a few back copies of the newspaper.* | **advance** *Advance copies of the book were sent out to reviewers.* | **review | complimentary, free** *Free copies of the leaflet are available from the Department of the Environment.* | **illegal, illicit, pirate/pirated, unauthorized | manuscript, printed, proof | bound, hardback, leather-bound, paperback, presentation** *The candidate must submit two bound copies of his or her thesis.* | **battered, tattered, well-thumbed** *my battered copy of Shakespeare's plays* | **perfect, pristine | personal** *Charles I's personal copy of the psalter* | **signed**

• VERB + COPY **circulate, distribute | sign** *Author Bob Woodhouse will be signing copies of his new book.*

• COPY + VERB **circulate** *Even with the new legislation pirate copies will circulate.* | **be available**

3 written material

• ADJ. **good, great | advertising | editorial | knocking** (*informal*) *Knocking copy* (= writing that just says how bad sb/sth is) *is simply lazy journalism.*

• VERB + COPY **edit, prepare, produce, write** *The subeditors prepare the reporters' copy for the paper.* | **make** *This will make great copy for the advertisement.*

• COPY + NOUN **editor | date, deadline** *Copy date* (= the date for handing in copy) *for the next issue is 1 May.*

copy *verb*

1 make a copy

• ADV. **illegally** *illegally copied software*

• PREP. **from, onto** *Data can be copied from the computer onto floppy disks.*

2 write sth down exactly

• ADV. **carefully, laboriously, painstakingly | down, out** *I copied down several phone numbers from the list.* ◇ *laboriously copying out an old manuscript*

• PREP. **from, into** *She copied all the addresses into her address book.* **off** *copying a recipe off the packet* **onto** *He copied all the details from the brochure onto a piece of paper.*

3 do the same as sb else

• ADV. **slavishly** *She slavishly copies the older girl's style.*

• PREP. **from** *He's copied that mannerism from his brother.* **off** *She was caught copying off another student.*

copyright *noun*

• VERB + COPYRIGHT **have, hold, own** *The publisher has the copyright on all his books.* | **breach, infringe** *By publishing the book, they were guilty of infringing copy-*

right. | **be protected by** *Databases are generally protected by copyright.*

- COPYRIGHT + VERB **protect sth** *Copyright protects your work from being commercially exploited by someone else without your consent.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The songs remain in copyright.* **out of ~** *His work is now out of copyright.* | **~ in/on** *The family still holds the copyright on his works.*
- PHRASES **breach/infringement of copyright** *They sued her for breach of copyright.* **ownership of copyright** *Ownership of copyright can be transferred.*

cord *noun*

- ADJ. **thick, thin** | **strong** | **elastic, nylon, silk** | **gold** *a silk bag tied with a gold cord* | **dressing-gown, picture** | **nerve, spinal, vocal** (see also **umbilical cord**)
- QUANT. **length, piece** *You need a piece of thick cord about two metres long.*
- VERB + CORD **pull** | **knot, tie (sth with)** *He knotted the cord of his dressing-gown.* | **undo, untie**

cordial *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, remarkably, very** | **not entirely** | **quite** *Relations between the two governments remained quite cordial.*

cordon *noun*

- ADJ. **tight** | **police, security**
- VERB + CORDON **form, throw** *Police officers threw a cordon around his car to protect him.* | **break through** *The crowd managed to break through the police cordon.*
- CORDON + VERB **prevent sth** *A police cordon prevented the marchers from entering the main square.*
- PREP. **~ around/round** *There is a tight security cordon around the area.*

core *noun*

- ADJ. **hollow** *Each fibre has a hollow core trapping still air and aiding warmth.* ◇ *(figurative) There was a hollow core of sadness inside me.* | **solid** | **copper, iron, etc.** | **reactor** *nuclear reactor cores* | **central, essential, inner, innermost, very** *This is seen as the central core of the government's policy.* ◇ *A new spirit welled up from the very core of the nation.* | **common** *a common core of shared understanding about law and government* | **hard** *A hard core of supporters, mostly teenage girls, gathered at the airport to see the star arrive.* | **emotional** *the emotional core of her music*
- VERB + CORE **form, make up** *These ideas formed the core of his philosophy.* | **get to** *We want to get to the core of the problem.*
- CORE + NOUN **activity, area, course, curriculum, discipline, module, programme, skill, subject** *the core area of management studies* ◇ *Students study five core subjects.* | **component, element, group** | **business, service** *We need to stop this expansion and concentrate on the core business.* | **belief, value** | **vocabulary**
- PREP. **at sth's ~** *At the core of our convictions is belief in individual liberty.* **to the ~** *She was shaken to the core by the news.* ◇ *He's a politician to the core* (= in all his attitudes, beliefs and actions).

corn *noun*

1 grain crops

- ADJ. **ripe** | **green** *The corn is still green.* | **young** | **standing** *a field of standing corn*
- QUANT. **ear, sheaf** | **bag, sack** | **field**
- VERB + CORN **grow** | **sow** | **cut, harvest** | **thresh** | **grind** | **eat**
- CORN + VERB **grow**
- CORN + NOUN **field** | **harvest** | **cob** | **mill**
- PHRASES **corn on the cob** (= maize cooked with all the grains still attached to the cob)

2 area of hard skin on the toe

- VERB + CORN **have, suffer from** | **treat**

corner *noun*

1 where two lines/edges meet

- ADJ. **bottom, top** | **left/left-hand, right/right-hand** | **back, front** | **lower, upper** | **southern, south-western, etc.** | **external, outer, outside** | **inner, inside, internal** | **opposite** | **overhanging, projecting** | **sharp** | **rounded** *Smooth rounded corners make cleaning easier.* | **awkward** *Make sure the staircase is well lit, with no awkward corners.* | **extreme, far, very** *He parked in the far corner of the car park.*
- CORNER + NOUN **cupboard, seat, table** *The waiter led us to a corner table.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Put your address in the top right-hand corner of the page.*

2 of roads

- ADJ. **street** *There were a lot of young men hanging about on street corners.* | **sharp, tight** *It's a rather sharp corner and she took it a little too fast.* | **blind** *I hate coming out of that lane because it's a blind corner.*
- VERB + CORNER **round, take, turn** *As they turned the corner all the parcels slid to one side.*
- CORNER + NOUN **shop** *the local corner shop*
- PREP. **around/round a/the ~** *A white van came round the corner.* **at a/the ~** *at the corner of West Street and Park Street* ◇ *Turn right at the first corner.* **on a/the ~** *the shop on the corner of Mount Street*

3 place/region

- ADJ. **quiet** *He found a quiet corner and got on with his work.* | **little, small, tiny** *Welcome to our little corner of Surrey.* | **distant, far, far-flung, remote** *a remote corner of Afghanistan* | **picturesque** | **dark, gloomy, shadowed, shadowy** *She sat in a dark corner of the room.* | **shady, sheltered** *a cool shady corner of the garden* | **forgotten, hidden, obscure, odd, secret** *The box had been tucked away in an odd corner of the attic.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She tucked herself away in a corner and read all day.*
- PHRASES **the corner of your mind** *(figurative) He pushed the thought back into the darkest corner of his mind.*

4 difficult situation

- ADJ. **tight** *He was used to having to talk his way out of tight corners.*
- VERB + CORNER **back/drive/force sb into** | **get sb/yourself into** *They had got her in a corner and there was nothing she could do about it.*
- PHRASES **be in a bit of a corner** *I'm in a bit of a corner over finding staff for Friday evening.*

5 in sport

- ADJ. **penalty** | **short**
- VERB + CORNER **award (sb)** *The referee awarded a corner.* | **take** *Beckham took the corner and Scholes headed it into the net.* | **force, win** *He put the goalkeeper under pressure and managed to force a corner.* | **concede** *James blocked the shot but conceded a corner.* | **miss** | **clear**
- CORNER + NOUN **kick**

coroner *noun*

- ADJ. **deputy**
- CORONER + VERB **issue sth** *The coroner issued a burial certificate.* | **order sth** *The coroner ordered an investigation into the man's death.* | **record a verdict of sth** *The coroner recorded a verdict of accidental death.*
- PHRASES **a coroner's court/inquest, a coroner's report/verdict**

corporal *noun*

⇨ Note at RANK

corporation *noun*

• ADJ. **big, giant, large, major | powerful | foreign | global, international, multinational, transnational | private, public | broadcasting, business, finance, industrial, oil**
• CORPORATION + NOUN **tax**
⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION (for verbs)

corps *noun*

• ADJ. **elite** *the elite corps of the Sultan's army* | **multinational** *a multinational corps under UK command* | **cadet, officer, volunteer | army, diplomatic, medical | media, press** *the UN press corps*
• CORPS + NOUN **commander**
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *He's in the Royal Army Medical Corps.*

corpse *noun*

• ADJ. **human | naked | bloody, headless, mutilated | decaying, desiccated, rotting** *We passed the desiccated corpse of a brigand hanging on a gibbet.* | **shrouded | embalmed, mummified | living** *For over a year he lay in his hospital bed, a living corpse.*
• VERB + CORPSE **lay out** *The corpse had been laid out on a marble slab.* | **embalm | butcher, dismember, eviscerate, mutilate**
• CORPSE + VERB **be sprawled, lie, sprawl** *They saw the corpse sprawled on the steps.*
• PHRASES **be littered/strewn with corpses** *The ground was littered with the corpses of enemy soldiers.*

correct *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove, seem** *His first idea proved correct.*
• ADV. **absolutely, completely, entirely, perfectly, quite** *What you say is perfectly correct, but it gives the wrong impression.* | **not entirely, not strictly** *He is not entirely correct in his assumptions.* | **basically, broadly, essentially, fundamentally, largely, more or less, substantially** *His estimate has turned out to be more or less correct.* | **clearly, undoubtedly | demonstrably** *None of the explanations offered is demonstrably correct—or demonstrably incorrect.* | **ideologically, politically** (*sometimes disapproving*) (= avoiding language or behaviour that may offend some groups of people) *He was an interesting speaker, if not always politically correct in his views.* | **legally, technically | morally | anatomically, botanically, factually, grammatically** *The flower drawings are all to scale and botanically correct.*
• PREP. **in** *The diagram is correct in every detail.* ◇ *I think I am correct in saying that this project is the first of its kind in this country.*

correction *noun*

• ADJ. **minor, small | necessary** *Make any necessary corrections before the text is printed.* | **error, spelling**
• VERB + CORRECTION **make | need, require** *There are some programming errors that need correction.*
• PREP. **~ to** *I've got to make one or two small corrections to the text before it's finished.*

correctness *noun*

• ADJ. **grammatical, ideological, political** (*sometimes disapproving*) *Political correctness is the principle of avoiding language or behaviour that may offend certain groups of people.*
• VERB + CORRECTNESS **doubt, question** *She doubted the correctness of the information.* | **be convinced of** *She was convinced of the correctness of the decision.* | **confirm**

correlate *verb*

• ADV. **closely, highly, significantly, strongly, well | positively | inversely, negatively**
• VERB + CORRELATE **be found to, be shown to** *High morale among staff was found to correlate positively with productivity.*
• PREP. **to** *Property values are negatively correlated to the tax rate.* **with** *The average speed of the vehicles correlates closely with the severity of the accident caused.*

correlation *noun*

• ADJ. **close, good, high, remarkable, significant, strong | clear, obvious | direct, simple** *There is a direct correlation between exposure to sun and skin cancer.* | **broad, general, overall | low, poor, weak | positive | inverse, negative | statistical**
• VERB + CORRELATION **have** *The second group of measurements had a high correlation with the first.* | **discover, establish, find, observe, show** *The study showed a significant correlation between the baby's sleeping position and the risk of cot death.*
• CORRELATION + VERB **exist** *A strong correlation exists between the fatness of parents and their children.*
• PREP. **~ between** *the correlation between speed and risk of accident* **~ with** *the correlation of height with weight*
• PHRASES **lack of correlation**

correspond *verb*

1 be the same/match
• ADV. **closely | directly, exactly, precisely | approximately, broadly, roughly**
• PREP. **to** *Their nursery schools correspond roughly to our infant schools.* **with** *The movement of the dot on the screen corresponds exactly with the movement of the control lever.*

2 write letters
• ADV. **regularly**
• PREP. **with** *She corresponded regularly with her former music teacher.*

correspondence *noun*

1 letters exchanged
• ADJ. **confidential, personal, private | business, commercial, diplomatic, official | regular | voluminous | lively** *a lively correspondence in 'The Times' about ways of preparing tripe*
• QUANT. **item** *Numerous items of correspondence have been received on this subject.* | **pile** *He was leafing through piles of correspondence.*
• VERB + CORRESPONDENCE **enter into, have** *It would be foolish for a doctor to enter into correspondence with a patient.* ◇ *I have had correspondence with the company director on this matter.* | **carry on, keep up** *We kept up a correspondence for many months.* | **address, send** *Please send correspondence to 'Letters to the Editor, Model Railway Journal'.* | **receive | read | answer, deal with, handle** *The secretary deals with all the correspondence.* | **catch up on** *I would spend the time reading or catching up on my correspondence.* | **intercept** *The department intercepted the correspondence of foreign diplomats.*
• CORRESPONDENCE + NOUN **column** *the correspondence columns of the 'London Review of Books'* | **course** *I did a correspondence course in economics.*
• PREP. **by/through ~** *All our business is conducted by correspondence.* **in ~ with** *I have been in correspondence with the manager of the store.* | **~ about/on/concerning/regarding/relating to** *files full of confidential correspondence relating to the company's expansion plans* **~ between** *I have seen the correspondence between the company and the local authority.* **~ from** *The editor welcomes*

correspondence from readers on any subject. **~ with** *copies of his correspondence with the Queen*

2 connection
- ADJ. **direct, exact, one-to-one** *The child can see the one-to-one correspondence of the buttons and buttonholes.* | **close**
- PREP. **~ between** *a close correspondence between theory and practice*

correspondent *noun*

1 reporter
- ADJ. **newspaper, television** | **business, education, foreign, health, industrial, legal affairs, media, parliamentary, political, royal, science, sports, war** | **special** *A report from our special correspondent at the UN.* | **American, Moscow, New York Times, etc.**
- CORRESPONDENT + VERB **write (sth)**

corridor *noun*
- ADJ. **endless, long** | **short** | **broad, wide** | **narrow** | **labyrinthine** *the labyrinthine corridors of the ministry building* | **brightly-lit** | **badly-lit, dark, darkened, dim, gloomy, ill-lit** | **chilly, dank, draughty** | **bare, blank, featureless** | **deserted, empty** | **carpeted, lino-covered, marble-floored, stone, stone-flagged, tiled** | **picture-lined** | **white-walled, etc.** | **hospital, hotel, school** | **access** | **land, peace** (*both figurative*) *UN troops will secure the land corridor so that food supplies can reach the trapped civilians.*
- VERB + CORRIDOR **line** *Portraits line the corridors of the palace.*
- CORRIDOR + VERB **lead** *Narrow corridors lead off from the main hallway.* | **run along/down sth** *The corridor runs down the middle of the building.* | **link sth** *The corridor links the old part of the hospital with the new.*
- CORRIDOR + NOUN **wall**
- PREP. **along a/the ~, at/to the end of a/the ~, down a/the ~** *The office is just down the corridor on the left.* **in a/the ~** *I put my head down as I passed him in the corridor.*
- PHRASES **the corridors of power** (*figurative*) *She was a minister with considerable influence in the corridors of power.* **a labyrinth/maze of corridors** *She led us through a maze of hotel corridors to our room.*

corrode *verb*
- PHRASES **be badly corroded** *If the pipe is badly corroded, it should be replaced.*

corrosion *noun*
- VERB + CORROSION **cause** | **prevent** | **suffer from** *a building whose structure is suffering from corrosion*
- PHRASES **signs of corrosion**

corrosive *adj.*
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly, strongly, very** *Many highly corrosive substances are used in the nuclear industry.*

corrupt *adj.*
- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **thoroughly, totally** *The whole regime is thoroughly corrupt.* | **notoriously** *one of the most notoriously corrupt city councils* | **morally, politically**

corruption *noun*
- ADJ. **gross, massive, serious** | **petty** | **endemic, rampant, rife, widespread** *Corruption was rife before the election.* | **high-level** | **alleged** | **financial, moral, political** | **official** | **government, police**
- QUANT. **case**
- VERB + CORRUPTION **attack, combat, curb, eliminate, fight, root out, stem, tackle** *He strongly attacked corruption and favouritism in the government.* ◇ *This police unit was established to fight corruption.* | **be involved in**
- CORRUPTION + NOUN **scandal** *She was brought down by a corruption scandal.* | **allegation** *The corruption allegations proved false.* | **investigation**
- PREP. **~ among** *corruption among high-ranking government officials*
- PHRASES **accusations/allegations of corruption, bribery and corruption**

⇨ Note at CRIME

cosmetic *noun* (usually **cosmetics**)
- ADJ. **expensive** | **cheap**
- VERB + COSMETIC **use, wear** | **apply, put on**
- COSMETIC + NOUN **business, company, industry**

cosmetic *adj.*
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **merely, purely** *Opponents described the reforms as a purely cosmetic exercise.* | **largely**

cosmopolitan *adj.*
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **distinctly, truly, very**

cost *noun*

1 money needed to buy sth
- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, high, huge, prohibitive** *The high cost of energy was a problem for consumers.* ◇ *The cost of repairs would be prohibitive.* | **low** | **escalating, rising** | **basic** | **full, overall, total** *You will have to bear the full cost of the building work.* | **additional, extra** *She was unwilling to pay the extra cost to get a room to herself.* | **average** *A total of 3.6 million tickets at an average cost of $58 are available for the Games.* | **gross, net** | **estimated** | **budgeted** | **likely, potential** | **real** | **annual, monthly, etc.** | **replacement** *What is the current replacement cost of these assets?* | **capital, start-up** (*business*) *The capital cost of these projects* (= what it costs to set them up) *is some $100 million—then there'll be the operating costs.* | **marginal** (*business*) *Competition will drive the price down near to the marginal cost* (= the cost of the labour and materials to produce the product). | **unit** (*business*) (= the cost of producing one item) | **fixed, variable** (*business*) *Fixed costs include rent.* | **direct, indirect**
- VERB + COST **bear, cover, meet, pay** *Allow £15 per day to cover the cost of meals.* ◇ *MPs receive allowances to meet the cost of travel.* | **increase, push up** *Inflation is pushing up the cost of living beyond our reach.* | **bring down, cut, lower, reduce** | **keep down** | **estimate, put** *I would put the cost of a new employee at £30 000 a year.* | **calculate, work out** | **reimburse**
- COST + VERB **escalate, go up, increase, rise** *The cost of dental treatment is increasing.* | **fall, go down**
- COST + NOUN **reduction, savings** *the pursuit of cost reduction* | **overrun** *There were cost overruns on each project.* | **base** *It is essential that we operate with the lowest possible cost base and most efficient facilities.*
- PREP. **at a ~ of** *A new computer system has been installed at a cost of £80 000.* | **~ to** *The cost to the government will be quite high.*
- PHRASES **an increase/a reduction in cost, at no extra cost** *The hotel offers tea and coffee at no extra cost.* **cost of living** *The cost of living has risen sharply in the last year.*

2 costs money needed to run a business/home, etc.
- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, high, huge** | **low** | **escalating, rising** *We have had to raise our prices because of rising costs.* | **administration/administrative,**

fuel, labour, operating, production, (research and) development, running, transport, travel

• VERB + COSTS **incur** *The corporation will pay all costs and expenses incurred with its written consent.* | **pay** | **increase** | **bring down, cut, lower, reduce** *The company has to find ways of cutting costs.* | **keep down** *The use of cheap labour helped to keep costs down.* | **cover** *We're hoping that we'll at least cover costs at the conference.*

• COSTS + VERB **be associated, be involved** *the costs associated with buying and selling property* | **escalate, rise**

3 effort/loss/damage to achieve sth

• ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, heavy, huge** *They advanced a few hundred metres, but at a heavy cost in life.* | **dreadful, terrible** *the terrible cost of the war in death and suffering* | **real** | **environmental, financial, human, personal, political, social** *the environmental cost of nuclear power*

• VERB + COST **outweigh** *Do the benefits outweigh the costs?* | **count** *The town is now counting the cost of its failure to provide adequate flood protection.*

• PREP. **at (a) ~ (to)** *The raid was foiled, but at a cost: an injured officer who was lucky to escape with his life.* ◇ *He worked non-stop for three months, at considerable cost to his health.* **at the ~ of** *She saved him from the fire but at the cost of her own life.* | **~ in** *I felt a need to please people, whatever the cost in time and energy.*

• PHRASES **at all costs/at any cost** *You must stop the press cost finding out at all costs* (= whatever it takes to achieve this). **to your cost** *He's a ruthless businessman, as I know to my cost* (= I know from my own bad experience).

4 costs in a court case

• ADJ. **legal**

• VERB + COST **incur** *Both sides incurred costs of over £50 000.* | **pay** *He was fined £200 and ordered to pay costs.* | **be awarded** *If you win your case you will normally be awarded costs.*

cost *verb*

• ADV. **fully, properly** *The project has not been properly costed yet.*

• PREP. **at** *The programme was costed at £6 million.*

costly *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove**

• ADV. **enormously, exceptionally, excessively, extremely, very** | **increasingly** | **fairly, pretty, quite, rather** | **potentially** | **relatively**

• PREP. **for** *The six-month delay will be costly for the company.* **in** *This process is costly in computer time.* **in terms of** *These teaching methods are too costly in terms of staff resources.* **to** *These measures could be costly to employers.*

costume *noun*

• ADJ. **full** *For the dress rehearsal, the cast will be in full costume.* | **colourful, elaborate, lavish** | **national, traditional** | **period** | **eighteenth-century, Victorian, etc.** | **clown, fairy, etc.**

• VERB + COSTUME **be dressed in, dress in, have on, wear** *He had a cowboy costume on.*

• COSTUME + NOUN **design** | **designer** | **drama** *The film is a costume drama based on a 19th-century novel.* | **change** *The main character had five costume changes.*

• PREP. **in ~** *The battle was re-enacted by actors in period costume.*

cottage *noun*

• ADJ. **humble, little, small, tiny** | **charming, lovely, picturesque, pretty** | **country, rural** | **lonely** | **empty, unoccupied** | **derelict, run-down** | **half-timbered, thatched, thatch-roofed** | **detached, terraced** | **three-bed, three-bedroom, three-bedroomed, three-room, etc.** | **rented** | **farm, estate, tied** (= owned by a farmer and rented to one of his/her workers) *They lived in a tied cottage on the estate.* | **holiday, summer, weekend** | **retirement** | **guest** *They put us up in a guest cottage next to their house.*

• VERB + COTTAGE **have, own** *It was her dream to have a little cottage in the country* | **live in, stay in** *We stayed in a cottage on a farm.* | **rent, take** *We rented a holiday cottage for a week.* | **let** | **buy** | **sell**

• COTTAGE + NOUN **home** | **garden**

• PREP. **in a/the ~**

cotton *noun*

• ADJ. **pure** *a pure cotton T-shirt* | **light, thin** *shivering in her thin cotton nightdress* | **fine** | **rough** | **raw** | **printed** | **mercerized** | **sewing**

• QUANT. **reel** (= of cotton thread) | **bale, bolt** (= both of fabric)

• VERB + COTTON **grow** | **pick**

• COTTON + NOUN **thread** | **bud, wool** | **field, plantation** | **industry, manufacturing** | **mill** | **manufacturer** | **reel**

couch *noun*

• ADJ. **comfortable** | **wide** | **psychiatrist's** *She spends several hours a week on the psychiatrist's couch.*

• VERB + COUCH **lie (down) on, recline on, sink back on, sink into, sit (down) on, sprawl on, stretch (out) on** *They sat down on the wide couch.* | **get up from, rise from, slide off, swing your legs/yourself off**

• PREP. **on a/the ~** *He slept on the couch.*

• COUCH + NOUN **potato** (*figurative*) (= sb who spends all their time sitting on a couch) *He's turned into a real couch potato since he subscribed to the sports channel.*

cough *noun*

• ADJ. **little, polite, slight** *The butler gave a little cough to announce his presence.* | **violent** | **bad, nasty** | **chesty, croupy** | **barking, dry, hacking, racking, rasping** | **persistent** | **smoker's** *He had a smoker's cough and nicotine-yellowed fingers.*

• VERB + COUGH **give** *He gave a slight, apologetic cough and said, 'Excuse me.'* | **have, suffer from** | **catch, develop, get**

• COUGH + NOUN **medicine, mixture, sweet**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

cough *verb*

• ADV. **a bit, a little, slightly** | **apologetically, discreetly, nervously, politely** | **loudly, violently** | **up** *He vomited and began coughing up blood.*

• PHRASES **cough and splutter** *The whisky made her cough and splutter.* **a coughing fit** *He had a coughing fit and couldn't speak for a few moments.* **cough into life** (*figurative*) *The old engine coughed into life.*

council *noun*

1 local government

• ADJ. **local** | **metropolitan, rural, urban** | **borough, city, community, county, district, municipal, parish, provincial, regional, town** | **elected**

• VERB + COUNCIL **elect** | **control** *Many county councils are now controlled by the Conservatives.* | **apply to** *Students should apply to their local council for a grant.*

• COUNCIL + NOUN **elections** | **member** | **meeting** | **chamber** | **tax**

• PREP. **on a/the ~** *She's on the borough council.*

• PHRASES **a seat on a council** *Our party won the majority of seats on the city councils.*

2 group chosen to give advice, money, etc.

- ADJ. **advisory, funding, research | arts, sports**
- VERB + COUNCIL **create, establish, form, found, set up, start | apply to** *As a struggling young composer she applied to the Scottish Arts Council for a grant.*
- COUNCIL + VERB **award sb sth, give sb sth** *In Britain, the Arts Council gives grants to theatres.*
- COUNCIL + NOUN **member**
- PREP. **~for** *setting up a new council for the arts*

⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION

councillor *noun*

- ADJ. **borough, city, county, district, local, parish, town | Conservative, Labour, Liberal Democrat, Tory, etc. | former | newly-elected**
- VERB + COUNCILLOR **elect sb (as)**
- PHRASES **the office of councillor**

counsel *noun*

1 advice
- ADJ. **good, wise**
- VERB + COUNSEL **give (sb), offer (sb) | accept, follow, get, listen to, take** *Listen to the counsel of your elders.*
- COUNSEL + VERB **prevail** *In the end, wiser counsels prevailed.*
- PREP. **~on** *He is there to give you counsel on all matters.*
- PHRASES **a counsel of despair** (= advice not to try to do sth because it is too difficult), **a counsel of perfection** (= advice that is good but difficult or impossible to follow)

2 lawyer
- ADJ. **legal** *They were denied legal counsel or the right to call witnesses in their defence.* | **chief, senior | junior | leading** *The accused was represented by a leading counsel.* | **Crown, prosecuting/prosecution** *The witness was cross-examined by the prosecuting counsel.* | **defence/defending | King's/Queen's**
- VERB + COUNSEL **appoint | brief, instruct** *My solicitor will brief the senior counsel.*
- COUNSEL + VERB **represent sb | cross-examine sb, question sb | argue sth, claim sth, say sth, state sth, submit sth** *His counsel argued that he had not intended to harm the women.*
- PHRASES **counsel for the appellant/defendant/plaintiff/respondent, counsel for the defence/prosecution** *to be questioned by the counsel for the prosecution*

counselling *noun*

- ADJ. **group, individual | professional | proper | abortion, bereavement, business, career, debt, family, marriage guidance, retirement, stress**
- VERB + COUNSELLING **give sb, offer (sb), provide (sb with) | have, receive | be in need of, need** *Many of the victims of the tragedy still need counselling.* | **seek**
- COUNSELLING + NOUN **service** *the new student counselling and guidance service* | **session | skills**
- PREP. **~ for** *counselling for parents and children* ◇ *counselling for depression*

counsellor *noun*

- ADJ. **accredited, professional, trained | career, debt, marriage guidance, student**
- VERB + COUNSELLOR **see, talk to** *He talked to a counsellor about his marriage difficulties.*

⇨ Note at JOB

count *noun*

1 act of counting
- VERB + COUNT **do, have** *We did a quick count of the children and there were none missing.*
- PREP. **for a ~** *Raise your leg and hold it there for a count of ten.*
- PHRASES **at the last/latest count** *At the last count she had 43 cats!*

2 measurement/total
- ADJ. **high | low | blood, calorie, cell, pollen, sperm** *The pollen count is very high in the spring.* | **body, head** *The movie depends on good dialogue rather than violence and a high body count.* ◇ *The firm now has a head count of around 70 staff.*
- VERB + COUNT **keep** *Keep a count of your calorie intake for one week.* | **lose** *I've lost count of the times I've heard that joke.*
- COUNT + VERB **go up, increase, rise | drop, go down** *Her white cell count has gone down again.*

counter *noun*

1 long flat surface
- ADJ. **bar, delicatessen/deli, display, post office, reception, shop | kitchen | glass, mahogany, wooden, zinc**
- VERB + COUNTER **serve at/behind, work at/behind** *Mary served behind the counter at Bacon's for a few hours a week.* | **wipe (down)** *The barman wiped down the counter in silence.*
- COUNTER + NOUN **staff** *post office counter staff*
- PREP. **across a/the~** *He pushed the money across the counter to her.* **at/behind a/the ~** *The assistant behind the counter gave a curt nod.* **on a/the ~** *all the goods on the counter*

2 action used to prevent sth
- ADJ. **effective**
- PREP. **~ to** *The government's programme should be an effective counter to unemployment.*

counter-attack *noun*

- ADJ. **strong**
- VERB + COUNTER-ATTACK **launch, mount**
- PREP. **~ against** *The soldiers mounted a strong counter-attack against the rebels.*

counterpart *noun*

- ADJ. **direct** *the difficulty of translating terms with no direct counterpart in the other language* | **modern** *the modern counterparts of those medieval writers* | **female, male** *Women soldiers will join their male counterparts at the army base.* | **older, younger | domestic, foreign | rural, urban | northern, southern, etc. | British, French, etc.**
- VERB + COUNTERPART **have** *British environmentalists have their counterparts in Europe.*

country *noun*

1 area of land with its own government
- ADJ. **beautiful, fascinating, great** *this great country of ours* | **hot, tropical | temperate | cold | foreign, overseas, strange** *It's difficult to live in a foreign country when you don't speak the language.* ◇ *students from overseas countries* ◇ *What must it be like, to grow old in a strange country?* | **home, native | adopted** *Many refugee servicemen gave their lives for their adopted country.* | **host** *The refugees do jobs that workers in the host country refuse to do.* | **neighbouring | distant, far, faraway | independent | occupied | free** *'It's a free country!' he shouted. 'I can do what I like.'* | **enemy, friendly | neutral, non-aligned | Arab, African, etc. | Eastern, Western, etc. | Anglophone, English-speaking, etc. | EU, NATO, etc. | member, non-member** *OECD member countries* | **developed, industrial/industrialized | developing, Third World, underdeveloped | advanced** *economically advanced countries* | **backward** *industrially backward countries* | **low-income, poor | affluent,**

rich | capitalist, communist, democratic, socialist | Catholic, Muslim, etc. | oil-exporting, oil-producing

• VERB + COUNTRY **govern, rule, run** *The country was ruled by a brutal dictatorship.* ◇ *the politicians who run the country* | **lead** *He accused the government of leading the country to disaster.* | **divide, split** *The issue of the single currency has divided the country.* | **flee, leave** *The former president has been forced to flee the country.* | **serve | love** *He loved his country deeply.* | **betray | play for, represent** *She represented her country at the Sydney Olympics.* | **tour, travel, visit** *He travelled the country on his motorbike.*

• COUNTRY + VERB **border sth** *countries bordering the Black Sea* | **export sth, import sth** *The country exports around 80% of its output.* | **agree sth, sign sth** *The two countries signed a basic treaty of cooperation.*

• PREP. **across a/the ~** *travelling across the country* **all over a/the ~** *They are holding special events all over the country.* **around/round a/the ~** *This is just one of 30 sites around the country.* **in a/the ~** *people who live in this country* **throughout a/the ~** *New schools are being built throughout the country.*

• PHRASES **country of origin** *All goods must be clearly labelled with their country of origin.* **a part of a country** *There will be rain in many parts of the country tomorrow.* **the country as a whole** *The rich benefited from the reforms, not the country as a whole.*

2 area of land with particular features

• ADJ. **desert, hill/hilly, mountain/mountainous, open, wooded** *The village is surrounded by miles and miles of open country.* | **rough, wild | farming** *This part of Africa is rich farming country.* | **hunting, walking** *superb walking country*

• QUANT. **stretch, tract** *a beautiful stretch of country* ◇ *Whole tracts of country, once fertile, have become arid.*

3 land away from towns/cities

• COUNTRY + NOUN **life | air | lane, road | area, district | town, village | cottage, estate, home, house, mansion, residence, retreat, seat | park | walk | boy, girl | gentleman, squire | dweller, folk, people**

• PREP. **across ~** *riding across country* **in the ~** *She lives in the country.*

countryside *noun*

• ADJ. **attractive, beautiful, delightful, glorious, lovely, lush, magnificent, picturesque, pleasant, spectacular, stunning, unspoilt, wonderful** *miles of unspoilt countryside* | **open | green, wooded** *a walk through the lush green countryside* | **flat | hilly, mountainous, rolling, rugged, undulating | wild | peaceful, quiet, tranquil | local, nearby, surrounding | native** *The feel for his native countryside comes through strongly in his photographs.* | **English, Kent, etc.**

• QUANT. **area, stretch, tract** *a delightful stretch of countryside* ◇ *vast tracts of countryside*

• VERB + COUNTRYSIDE **conserve, preserve, protect | destroy, ravage, ruin, spoil** *The countryside has been ravaged by pollution.* | **roam, wander (around/through)** *In the afternoons they roamed the countryside roundabout.*

• PREP. **in the ~** *living in the countryside* **surrounded by ~** *a small village surrounded by glorious countryside* **through (the) ~** *travelling through pleasant open countryside* | **~ around** *the countryside around Oxford*

county *noun*

• ADJ. **border, coastal, rural** *the Welsh border counties* | **eastern, western, etc. | historic/historical** *the historic county of Westmorland* (= that no longer exists) | **home** *London and the home counties* (= the counties around London) | **native** *He was elected MP for his native county of Merioneth.* | **neighbouring | dry** (= where it is illegal to sell alcohol)

• VERB + COUNTY **represent** *She represents the county in Parliament.*

• COUNTY + NOUN **boundary** *The river forms the county boundary.* | **town** *Trowbridge is the county town of Wiltshire* (= the town where the local government offices are). | **council, councillor | court | library | cricket | championship, match** (= in cricket)

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *people who live in this county*

coup *noun*

1 (*also* **coup d'état**) violent change of government

• ADJ. **abortive, attempted, failed, unsuccessful | successful | bloody | bloodless | army, military | palace, presidential** *He deposed his father in a palace coup in 1970.* | **communist | boardroom** *She lost her position in a boardroom coup* (= a sudden change of power among senior managers in a company).

• VERB + COUP **launch, mount, stage | foil, put down** *The coup was immediately put down and the plotters were shot.* | **plan, plot | lead | come to power in, seize power in** *He seized power in a military coup*

• COUP + NOUN **attempt, plot | leader, plotter**

• PREP. **~ against** *an army coup against the president*

2 achievement

• ADJ. **big, brilliant, great, major, real, spectacular** *Winning that contract was her greatest coup.* | **diplomatic, financial, intelligence, propaganda, publicity**

• VERB + COUP **pull off** *He managed to pull off a major diplomatic coup.*

couple *noun*

• ADJ. **beautiful, handsome, lovely | elderly, middle-aged, retired, teenage, young | bridal, honeymoon, married, newly-married, newly-wed** *The bridal couple stood up for the first dance.* ◇ *The hotel was full of honeymoon couples.* | **cohabiting, unmarried | heterosexual | gay, homosexual, lesbian, same-sex | childless, infertile** *childless couples seeking to adopt*

• VERB + COUPLE **make** *They make a beautiful couple.*

• PHRASES **the happy couple** (= the bride and groom) *We stood and drank a toast to the happy couple.*

coupon *noun*

• ADJ. **valid** *This coupon is valid until 31 January.* | **money-off | entry** *To enter the competition, fill in the entry coupon on page 6.* | **clothing, petrol, etc.**

• VERB + COUPON **collect, save** *She had saved enough coupons to get a free flight.* | **complete, fill in | post, return, send (off)** *Cut out and return this coupon to claim your free holiday.*

courage *noun*

• ADJ. **considerable, great, outstanding, tremendous | moral, physical** *Caring for elderly relatives requires considerable moral courage.*

• VERB + COURAGE **require, take** *It takes courage to sing in public.* | **have** *I didn't have the courage to tell him.* | **show | find, pluck up** *I finally plucked up enough courage to speak to Rachel.*

courageous *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem**

• ADV. **exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, highly, incredibly, tremendously, very | quite, rather**

courier *noun*

• ADJ. **diplomatic | drug | cycle, motorcycle**

• VERB + COURIER **act as** *He has admitted to acting as a*

drug courier. | **send sth by** *Urgent deliveries of medicine may be sent by motorcycle courier.*
⇨ Note at JOB

course *noun*

1 complete series of lessons/studies
- ADJ. **full-time, part-time** | **one-year, two-year, etc.** | **day, evening** | **crash, intensive** | **advanced, intermediate, etc.** | **foundation, introductory** | **refresher** | **academic** | **graduate, postgraduate, undergraduate** | **degree, diploma, honours** *a joint honours course in French and Russian* | **correspondence, external, sandwich** | **induction** | **training, vocational**
- VERB + COURSE **do, take** *He took a crash course in Italian.* | **enrol on, join, sign up for** | **withdraw from** *She withdrew from the course because of illness.* | **teach** | **offer, run** *The school runs courses all year round.* | **complete** *It took him five years to complete the course.* | **pass** | **fail**
- COURSE + VERB **run** *The course runs from 10–15 May.*
- PREP. **~ in** *a course in applied linguistics* **~ on** *a course on the development of capitalism*

2 route/direction
- VERB + COURSE **alter, change** *The boat altered course during the storm.* | **chart, plot, set** *We set course for Malta.* | **be blown off** | **follow** *The path follows the course of the river.*
- PREP. **off ~** *We're a long way off course* **on ~** *We're on course for our destination.*
- PHRASES **on a collision course** *The two planes were on a collision course.*

3 (*also* **course of action**)
- ADJ. **best, better**
- VERB + COURSE **adopt, follow, pursue, take** *It was the best course of action to take in the circumstances.*
- COURSE + VERB **be open to sb** *It was the only course open to him.*

4 development of sth over a period of time
- VERB + COURSE **change** *an event that changed the course of his life* | **follow, run, take** *Her career followed a similar course to her sister's.* ◇ *We could do nothing but let the disease run its course.*
- PREP. **during the ~ of** *during the course of the war* **in the ~ of** *In the course of time, I began to understand.*
- PHRASES **the course of history** *This was an event that changed the course of history.* **in due course** (= at the appropriate time; eventually), **in the normal/ordinary course of events** *In the normal course of events, you should get a reply by Monday.* **let nature take its course** *When the dog responded so badly to the treatment, we decided to let nature take its course* (= stop treating it and let it die naturally).

5 part of a meal
- ADJ. **main** | **first, second, etc.**
- PREP. **for a/the ~** *We had chicken for our main course.*
- PHRASES **a two-/three-course, etc. meal**

6 in sport/a race
- ADJ. **golf, obstacle, race**
- VERB + COURSE **complete** *Only ten yachts completed the course.*

7 series of medical treatments
- VERB + COURSE **give sb, put sb on** *She's been put on a course of injections.* | **prescribe (sb)** | **take**
- PREP. **~ of** *a course of antibiotics*

court *noun*

1 law
- ADJ. **high** *This is the highest court in the land.* | **appeal, civil, crown, high, juvenile, magistrates, military** *They took their case to the appeal court.* | **supreme** | **county, federal, etc.** | **European, French, etc.**
- VERB + COURT **go to, take sb/sth to** *We are prepared to go to court to get our compensation.* ◇ *Their neighbours took them to court.* | **come to, get to, go to** *The case should not be allowed to go to court.* | **bring sth to** *There wasn't enough evidence to bring the case to court.* | **settle sth out of** *The dispute was settled out of court.* | **appear before, appear in, attend** *She is too young to appear before the court.* ◇ *He will appear in court tomorrow charged with the murder.* | **preside over** *The court was presided over by Judge Owen.*
- COURT + VERB **hear sth** *The court heard how the mother had beaten the 11-year-old boy.* | **acquit sb, clear sb** *The court acquitted Reece of the murder of his wife.* | **dismiss sth, quash sth** *The court dismissed the appeal.* ◇ *The guilty verdict was quashed by the appeal court.* | **uphold sth** *The court upheld the plaintiff's claim of unfair dismissal.* | **hold sth, order sth, rule sth** *The court held that she was entitled to receive compensation.*
- COURT + NOUN **action, case, proceedings** | **hearing, trial** | **injunction, order, summons** *She tried to get a court order to prevent him from coming near her.* ◇ *He received a court summons for non-payment of tax.* | **decision, ruling** | **appearance** *Divorce no longer requires a court appearance.* | **battle** *They could now face a court battle for compensation.* | **bailiff, clerk, judge, official, registrar, staff, usher** *She was appointed a high court judge in 1998.* | **procedure, process** | **system** | **building**
- PREP. **at ~** *He was found guilty at Swindon Crown Court.* **before a/the ~** *The case is now before the court.* **in ~** *Relatives of the dead girl were in court.*
- PHRASES **contempt of court** *He was charged with contempt of court after shouting at a witness.* **a court of appeal** *The case will be heard by the court of appeal next month.* **a court of law** *I don't think that argument would stand up in a court of law.* **a ward of court** *The child was made a ward of court when her parents were jailed.*

2 for sport
- ADJ. **basketball, squash, tennis, etc.** | **clay, grass, hard** *Do you prefer playing tennis on grass courts or hard courts?*
- PREP. **off (the) ~** *Off court she is just as aggressive as she is on the court.* **on (the) ~** *The players have been on court for an hour.*

3 kings/queens
- ADJ. **royal**
- COURT + NOUN **circles** *Mozart quickly became a favourite in court circles.*
- PREP. **at (a/the) ~** *life at the court of Charles I* ◇ *life at court*

court *verb*
- ADV. **assiduously** *He spent three months assiduously courting a newspaper editor.*

courteous *adj.*
- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **entirely, perfectly** | **always, invariably, unfailingly** *She was unfailingly courteous and helpful.* | **naturally**
- PREP. **to** *He was perfectly courteous to me.*

courtesy *noun*
- ADJ. **great, unfailing, utmost** | **common** *It's common courtesy to warn your neighbours if your children are going to have a party.* | **exaggerated** *He apologized with exaggerated courtesy.*
- VERB + COURTESY **do sb, have, show, treat sb with** *She might have done me the courtesy of replying to my letter.* ◇ *You could at least have had the courtesy to let me know.*
- PREP. **with ~** *He listened to all the complaints with great courtesy.* | **~ to** *her unfailing courtesy to everyone*

• PHRASES **a matter of courtesy** *It's a matter of courtesy to write and thank people after a party.*

court martial *noun*

• VERB + COURT MARTIAL **order** *The general ordered an immediate court martial.* | **hold** | **face**
• PREP. **at a/the ~** *The officer was convicted of desertion at a court martial.* **by ~** *He was tried by court martial.*

courtship *noun*

• ADJ. **long** | **brief, whirlwind** *After a whirlwind courtship, they married and went to live in Bath.*
• VERB + COURTSHIP **conduct** *Because of the war they were obliged to conduct their courtship by post.*
• COURTSHIP + NOUN **display, ritual** *the elaborate courtship display of the pigeon*
• PREP. **during a/the ~** *They went there together during their courtship.*

courtyard *noun*

• ADJ. **central, inner, interior, internal** | **outer** | **enclosed, walled** | **open** | **cobbled, paved**
• VERB + COURTYARD **surround** *The courtyard is surrounded on three sides by stables.*
• PREP. **around a/the ~** *The hotel is built around a paved central courtyard.* **in a/the ~** *sitting in the inner courtyard of the college*

cousin *noun*

• ADJ. **first** (= the child of the brother or sister of one of your parents), **second** (= the child of a cousin of one of your parents) | **distant, remote** | **close** (*figurative*) *These pigs are close cousins of the wild hog.* | **female, male** | **long-lost** *Completely out of the blue, she got a letter from her long-lost cousin in New York.*
• PHRASES **cousin once, twice, etc. removed** *She's my first cousin once removed* (= the daughter of my cousin).

cover *noun*

1 sth put on/over sth
• ADJ. **loose** *a sofa with a loose cover* | **protective** | **removable** | **dust** *We spread dust covers over the furniture while the builders were in.* | **cushion, duvet, mattress, seat** | **manhole**
• VERB + COVER **put on** | **take off**
• PREP. **~ for** *a cover for the swimming pool*

2 sth that is over sth
• ADJ. **thick** *a thick cover of snow* | **cloud, snow** *We descended into Heathrow through thick cloud cover.* | **forest, ground** *plants that provide good ground cover*

3 outside of a book/magazine
• ADJ. **back, front** | **hard, soft** | **book, magazine**
• COVER + NOUN **design** | **story** | **girl**
• PREP. **on a/the ~** *There's a picture of the author on the back cover.*

4 the covers blankets, sheets, etc.
• ADJ. **bed**
• VERB + COVERS **get under** | **pull up** | **pull back, throw back** *She threw back the covers and got out of bed.*
• PREP. **under the ~**

5 insurance against sth
• ADJ. **comprehensive, full** | **wide** *This company provides wider cover.* | **standard** | **additional** | **insurance** | **fire, health, indemnity, life, medical**
• VERB + COVER **have** | **give sb, provide (sb with)**
• PREP. **~ against** *cover against accidental damage* **~ for** *cover for contents*

6 shelter/protection from the weather/damage, etc.
• ADJ. **air** *The RAF provided air cover for the attack.*
• VERB + COVER **dive for, run for, take** *We ran for cover as it started to rain.* | **seek** | **find** | **give sb, provide (sb with)** | **break** (= leave) *The deer broke cover as the hunters approached.*
• PREP. **under ~** *All the seats are under cover.* | **under ~ of** *We attacked at night, under cover of darkness.* | **~ from** *They sought cover from the wind.*

7 sth that hides the real nature of sth
• ADJ. **perfect** | **diplomatic** *spies operating under diplomatic cover*
• VERB + COVER **blow** (= reveal) *He realized his cover had been blown*
• PREP. **~ for** *The club is a cover for various criminal activities.*

cover *verb*

1 put sth over sth to hide/protect it
• ADV. **completely** | **loosely** | **up** *She used dried leaves and twigs to cover up the hole.*
• VERB + COVER **try to** *She tried to cover her face with her hands.* ◇ (*figurative*) *He tried to cover his embarrassment by starting to rub his hands together.* | **use sth to**
• PREP. **with** *He covered the body with a cloth.*

2 form a layer on sth
• ADV. **completely**
• PREP. **in** *The cars were all covered in snow.* **with** *The children were completely covered with mud.*

3 money/tax/insurance
• ADV. **barely, hardly** *The payments he gets barely cover his expenses.*
• VERB + COVER **help (to)** | **be intended to** | **be extended to** *VAT may be extended to cover books.*
• PREP. **against** *This policy should cover you against accidental injury.* **for** *a policy that covers you for fire and theft*

coverage *noun*

• ADJ. **considerable, extensive, massive** *There's been massive television coverage of the World Cup.* | **comprehensive, full** | **detailed, in-depth** | **wide, widespread** | **national, international, worldwide** | **limited** | **media, news, newspaper, press, radio, television/TV** *The television company was given a special award for its news coverage.* | **live** *There's live coverage of the match on BBC1.* | **exclusive**
• VERB + COVERAGE **give sth, provide (sth with)** *The minister's resignation was given widespread coverage.* | **attract, get, have, receive** *The wedding had wide press coverage.*
• COVERAGE + VERB **focus on sth** *Media coverage of the march focused on the few fights that broke out.*

covered *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain** | **leave sb/sth** *The car sped past, leaving us covered in mud.*
• ADV. **well** *Make sure all cooked meat is well covered.* | **absolutely, completely, entirely, totally** | **closely, densely, thickly** *four sheets of paper closely covered in unfamiliar handwriting* | **evenly** | **sparsely, thinly** *the ground was sparsely covered with grass.* | **permanently, temporarily** *60% of the land is permanently covered in ice.* | **usually**
• PREP. **by** *Each body was covered by a blanket.* **in** *I was covered in blood.* **with** *The path was now completely covered with thick snow.*
• PHRASES **covered from head to foot/toe** *He crawled out, covered from head to foot in soot.*

cover-up *noun*

• ADJ. **big, major** | **government**
• VERB + COVER-UP **be engaged in, be implicated in,**

be involved in *Military leaders were involved in a major cover-up.* | **accuse sb of**
• PREP. **~ by** *cover-ups by the police* **~ over** *evidence of a cover-up over arms sales*
• PHRASES **allegations/claims of a cover-up**

cow *noun*

• ADJ. **beef | dairy, milch** (*often figurative*) | **sacred** (*often figurative*) *the sacred cow of free market economics*
• QUANT. **herd**
• VERB + COW **breed | milk**
• COW + VERB **low, moo | chew the cud, graze | calve** *The cow had difficulties calving.*
• COW + NOUN **byre, shed** (also **cowshed**) | **dung, manure, muck, pat** (also **cowpat**) | **bell**
• PHRASES **a breed of cow**

coward *noun*

• VERB + COWARD **brand sb, call sb, label sb** *He was branded a coward in some newspapers.*

cowardice *noun*

• ADJ. **moral** *It is an act of moral cowardice for a society to neglect its poor.*
• VERB + COWARDICE **display, show | accuse sb of**
• PHRASES **an act of cowardice, cowardice in the face of the enemy** *Any soldier displaying cowardice in the face of the enemy was shot.*

coy *adj.*

1 pretending to be shy
• VERBS **be | go**
• ADV. **all, extremely, very** *He went all coy when I mentioned her name.* | **a bit, a little, rather** *She gave him a rather coy look.*

2 unwilling to say sth directly
• VERBS **be | remain**
• ADV. **extremely, very | a little, rather** *Alicia was a little coy about how much the new dress had cost.* | **uncharacteristically**
• PREP. **about**

crack *noun*

1 line on the surface of sth where it has broken
• ADJ. **big, deep, huge, large, long, serious | short, small | fine, hairline, thin**
• CRACK + VERB **appear | develop, spread | run** *A fine crack ran up the wall.*

2 narrow opening
• ADJ. **narrow, small, tiny | wide**
• VERB + CRACK **fill** *We filled the cracks in the plaster before hanging the wallpaper.*
• CRACK + VERB **appear** *Wide cracks appeared in the ground during the drought.* | **open up, widen**
• PREP. **~ in** *There's a crack in the fence big enough to look through.*
• PHRASES **a crack of light** *a tiny crack of light under the door* **open a door/window a crack** *Could you open the window just a crack?*

3 sudden loud sound
• ADJ. **loud, sharp**
• VERB + CRACK **give, let out** *He gave a crack of laughter.* | **hear**
• PREP. **with a ~** *The chandelier hit the floor with a crack.* | **~ of**
• PHRASES **the crack of a whip, a crack of thunder**
⇨ Note at SOUND

crack *verb*

1 break
• ADV. **badly** *The dish had cracked quite badly.* | **slightly**

2 become mentally ill
• ADV. **completely | finally** *The stresses of her job became too great and she finally cracked.* | **up** *He thought he'd never get through the ordeal without cracking up.*
• PHRASES **crack under the pressure/strain, show signs of cracking** *He is under a lot of pressure but is showing no signs of cracking.*

PHRASAL VERB

crack down
• ADV. **hard**
• PREP. **on** *to crack down hard on crime*

crackdown *noun*

• ADJ. **bloody, violent | army, government, military, police**
• VERB + CRACKDOWN **promise, threaten | call for, demand, order** *The government has ordered a crackdown on truancy.* | **have, launch, mount**
• PREP. **~ on** *They're having a crackdown on private phone calls from the office.*

cradle *verb*

• ADV. **gently** *He picked the child up and gently cradled him in his arms.*
• PREP. **against** *She sat with the child cradled against her.*

craft *noun*

1 activity needing skill with your hands
• ADJ. **skilled** *Sheep shearing is a highly skilled craft.* | **ancient, traditional | country, local, rural**
• VERB + CRAFT **practise** *The men practised various traditional crafts, such as carving toys out of bone.*
• CRAFT + NOUN **activity, work | industry | worker | centre, exhibition, fair, shop, workshop | skill**
• PHRASES **art and craft** *Subjects taught include art and craft, drama, languages and maths.* **arts and crafts** *The gallery has major exhibitions of arts and crafts.*

2 all the skills needed for an activity
• VERB + CRAFT **learn, master, perfect** *It took her years to perfect her craft.*
• PHRASES **a master of your craft** *a carpenter who is a real master of his craft*

3 boat
• ADJ. **small | assault, fishing, landing, patrol, pleasure, river, sailing**

craftsman *noun*

• ADJ. **fine, good | master, skilled, trained | local | itinerant, travelling | independent**

craftsmanship *noun*

• ADJ. **exquisite, fine, skilled, superb** *We admired the superb craftsmanship of the furniture.*
• PREP. **with ~** *bowls made with exquisite craftsmanship*
• PHRASES **standard of craftsmanship** *a very high standard of craftsmanship*

cramp *noun*

• ADJ. **agonizing, painful | sudden** *She had a sudden painful cramp in her left leg.* | **abdominal, stomach**
• QUANT. **attack** *I was suddenly seized by an attack of cramp.*
• VERB + CRAMP **have**

crash *noun*

1 sudden loud noise

- ADJ. **almighty, deafening, great, loud, thunderous | distant | sickening, terrible** *There was a sickening crash as her head hit the ground.*
- VERB + CRASH **hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *The plates fell to the floor with an almighty crash.* | **~ of** *a distant crash of thunder*
- PHRASES **a crash of thunder, the crash of the waves**

2 car/plane, etc. accident

- ADJ. **horrific, major, serious** *a major air crash* | **fatal | head-on | high-speed | car, coach, helicopter, plane, train | air, motorway, rail, road**
- VERB + CRASH **cause**
- CRASH + VERB **happen, occur | involve sth** *a crash involving two cars and a lorry* | **kill sb | claim sth** *The crash claimed three lives.*
- CRASH + NOUN **victim | site | landing | barrier**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He was killed in a train crash.*

3 business failure

- ADJ. **financial | bank, property, stock market** *the stock market crash of 1987*
- PREP. **~ in** *a crash in share prices*

crate *noun*

- ADJ. **sealed | upturned** *The cat was sitting on an upturned crate.* | **beer, milk, orange | shipping** *Their possessions had all been packed into shipping crates.*
- QUANT. **pile, stack**
- VERB + CRATE **pile, stack** *They stacked the crates in the corner of the yard.* | **pack (sth in/into), unpack** *They packed the crates with books.* | **load, unload | ship** *a company specializing in shipping crates*
- CRATE + VERB **contain sth**
- PREP. **~ of** *a crate of oranges*

crater *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, gaping, huge, large** *The blast blew a gaping crater in the road.* | **shallow, small | bomb, shell | meteor | volcanic | lunar**
- VERB + CRATER **blow, form, leave, make**
- PREP. **in a/the ~**
- PHRASES **the edge/lip/side of a crater** *We peered over the lip of the crater into the volcano.*

craving *noun*

- ADJ. **desperate**
- VERB + CRAVING **feel, have** *He had a craving to see the world.* | **satisfy** *She skipped normal meals to satisfy her craving for chocolate and crisps.* | **curb, reduce**
- PREP. **~ for** *a desperate craving for affection*

crawl *noun*

1 very slow speed

- ADJ. **slow**
- PREP. **at a ~** *The traffic was moving at a slow crawl.*
- VERB + CRAWL **be down to** *The traffic on the motorway was down to a crawl.* **slow (down) to**

2 swimming stroke

⇨ Note at STROKE

crawl *verb*

- ADV. **slowly | about, along, around/round, away, back, forwards, through** *We spent an hour crawling around on our hands and knees looking for the key.*
- VERB + CRAWL **manage to** *As night fell, we managed to crawl back to our lines.* | **start to** *Has the baby started to crawl yet?*
- PREP. **across, along, into, over, out of, under, up** *There's an insect crawling up your leg!*
- PHRASES **crawl on (your) hands and knees**

crayon *noun*

- ADJ. **coloured | wax**
- QUANT. **box**
- VERB + CRAYON **colour sth in with, draw (sth) with, use** *She coloured the picture in with crayons.*
- CRAYON + NOUN **drawing**
- PREP. **in ~** *The notice was written in crayon.*

craze *noun*

- ADJ. **latest, new | passing** *Is this interest in health foods just a passing craze?* | **dance, fashion, fitness, etc.**
- VERB + CRAZE **start** *The princess started a craze for huge earrings.*
- CRAZE + VERB **sweep (across/through) sth** *Doctors warned of the latest drug craze to sweep America.* | **hit sth** *It's the latest craze to hit San Francisco.*
- PREP. **~ among** *the latest craze among children* **~ for** *the craze for fashionable sports clothing*

crazy *adj.*

1 mad/wild

- VERBS **be, seem, sound | go** *I'd go crazy if I lived here.* | **drive sb** *The group's performance always drives the audience crazy.*
- ADV. **really | absolutely, completely, totally | a bit, half, a little, pretty, quite, slightly**
- PREP. **with** *We were crazy with excitement.*

2 very angry

- VERBS **be | go | drive sb** *The kids would answer back, and that drove her crazy.*
- ADV. **absolutely, completely**
- PREP. **at** *He was crazy at me for letting the goal in.*

creak *noun*

- ADJ. **loud | little**
- VERB + CREAK **give, let out** *The gate gave a loud creak as he pushed it open.* | **hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *The gate swung open with a creak.* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **the creak of a floorboard/door**

⇨ Note at SOUND

creak *verb*

- ADV. **slightly**
- PREP. **under** *The chair creaked under his weight.*
- PHRASES **creak and groan** *The ice creaked and groaned underfoot.* **creak open** *The door creaked open an inch.*

cream *noun*

1 fatty part of milk

- ADJ. **clotted, thick, whipped | double, single | fresh | sour/soured | pouring, whipping**
- QUANT. **dollop** *She piled great dollops of cream onto her apple pie.*
- VERB + CREAM **beat, whip, whisk** *Whisk the cream and icing sugar together.* | **fill sth with, serve sth with, top sth with** *Fill the meringues with whipped cream.*
- CREAM + VERB **go off** *This cream's gone off!*
- CREAM + NOUN **bun, cake, cheese, sauce | tea** (= a meal of tea with scones with jam and cream)
- PHRASES **and/with cream** *We had strawberries and cream for pudding.*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

2 substance that you rub into your skin

- ADJ. **face, hand | day, night** *She was massaging night*

cream into her face and neck. | **antiseptic, barrier, cleansing, shaving, sun**
- VERB + CREAM **apply, massage, put on** *Put a little antiseptic cream on the grazed skin.*

creamy *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, taste** *Stir the mixture until it looks creamy.* ◇ *It tastes deliciously creamy.*
- ADV. **deliciously, very, wonderfully**
- PHRASES **creamy white** *creamy white flowers*

crease *noun*

1 untidy line/fold
- ADJ. **deep**
- VERB + CREASE **have** *She had lots of deep creases at the corners of her eyes.* | **iron out, remove, smooth (out)** *She smoothed the creases from the tablecloth.*
- PREP. **~in** *There were a lot of creases in her skirt.*

2 neat line that is put onto fabric/paper
- ADJ. **knife-edge, sharp**
- PREP. **~in** *a sharp crease in his trousers*

crease *verb*

- ADV. **badly, easily** *This material creases very easily.* | **a bit, slightly** *His shirt had creased a bit in the suitcase.*
- PHRASES **be/get creased** *Her clothes were badly creased.*

creation *noun*

- ADJ. **employment, job** | **wealth**
- VERB + CREATION **advocate, call for, propose, recommend, urge** *They recommended the creation of a new government agency to be responsible for the environment.* | **encourage, foster, support** | **allow for** *The new Act allows for the creation of vocational schools.* | **allow, enable** | **avoid, prevent** | **lead to**

creative *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel** *I don't always feel creative.* | **become**
- ADV. **highly, really, very** *a highly creative artist* | **genuinely, truly** *genuinely creative thinking*

creativity *noun*

- ADJ. **great** | **artistic, musical**
- VERB + CREATIVITY **develop, encourage, stimulate** *A good teacher can encourage artistic creativity.* | **inhibit, stifle** *This rigid approach stifles creativity.*
- PREP. **~in** *This exercise encourages creativity in the use of language.*
- PHRASES **scope for creativity** *My job does not give me much scope for creativity.*

creature *noun*

- ADJ. **living** *All living creatures need food.* | **primitive, simple** | **complex** | **intelligent** | **cold-blooded, warm-blooded** | **wild** *the wild creatures of the forest* | **social** *Dogs are more social creatures than cats.* | **solitary** | **night, nocturnal** | **aquatic, marine, sea, underwater, water** | **land-based** | **woodland** *Woodland creatures such as foxes and owls are increasingly common in towns.* | **ape-like, bat-like, etc.** | **little, small, tiny** *These timid little creatures exude a pungent smell when threatened.* | **helpless** *The newborn young are helpless creatures and easy prey for birds.* | **dangerous** | **furry** | **magnificent** *It is awesome to see these magnificent creatures in flight.* | **exotic, strange** *a strange creature from another planet* | **mythical** | **evil** *I dreamt of evil creatures who were trying to catch me.*

crèche *noun*

- VERB + CRÈCHE **establish, set up** | **have, offer, provide, run**
- CRÈCHE + NOUN **facilities** | **worker**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Younger children can be left in the crèche.*

credentials *noun*

1 qualities/training/experience
- ADJ. **excellent, impeccable, impressive, perfect** | **academic, educational** | **diplomatic, political, scientific, etc.** | **democratic, green, socialist, etc.**
- VERB + CREDENTIALS **have** *He has perfect credentials to make an officer.* | **establish, prove** *City established their championship credentials with a 6–0 win.* | **emphasize, strengthen, underline**
- PREP. **~as** *First, he had to establish his credentials as a researcher.* **~for** *She had excellent credentials for the job.*

2 documents
- VERB + CREDENTIALS **present** | **check, examine**

credibility *noun*

- VERB + CREDIBILITY **carry, have** *The certificate has great credibility in France and Germany.* | **be lacking in, lack** | **gain, regain** *The government is desperate to regain credibility with the public.* | **lose** | **establish, give, lend** *Recommendations from two previous clients helped to establish her credibility.* ◇ *Funding from the World Bank lends credibility to the project.* | **restore** | **add, enhance** *The use of computers adds credibility to the forecasts.* ◇ *BBC backing for the scheme will enhance its credibility.* | **damage, destroy, undermine**
- CREDIBILITY + VERB **suffer** *The prime minister's credibility suffered in his handling of the crisis.*
- CREDIBILITY + NOUN **gap** *Newspapers were talking of a credibility gap between her policies and her achievements.* | **problem** *Athletics' anti-dope campaigners are faced with a credibility problem.*
- PREP. **~among, ~as** *her credibility as a witness* | **~for** *There is little credibility among scientists for the book's claims.*

credible *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem** | **become** | **make sth** | **find sth** *I'm not sure that I find her story credible.*
- ADV. **highly, very** | **completely, fully, quite** *You need imagination to make what you write fully credible.* | **barely, hardly, scarcely** *It seems barely credible that anyone could have walked so far in a day.*

credit *noun*

1 buy now—pay later; money borrowed/lent
- ADJ. **long-term, short-term** | **interest-free** | **foreign** | **bank** | **consumer, export, trade**
- VERB + CREDIT **have, use** *When poorer people use credit, mail order is the key source.* | **get, obtain** *If you don't have a regular income you may be unable to get credit.* | **extend, give sb, grant (sb), offer (sb)** *Most shops selling furniture or electrical goods will offer credit.* | **deny sb, refuse sb** *The bank refused further credit to the company.* | **arrange** | **expand** *We propose to expand credit in order to create demand.*
- CREDIT + NOUN **account, agreement, arrangement, facilities, system, terms** | **limit** *Your credit limit is now £2 000.* | **period** | **sale, transaction, transfer** | **rating, scoring, standing** *He has a bad credit rating* (= seems unlikely to pay the money back). | **risk** *He's a bad credit risk.* | **control** | **crunch, squeeze** | **institution, market, union** | **note** *If damaged items have to be returned, the manufacturer may issue a credit note.*
- PREP. **on ~** *I bought it on credit.*

• PHRASES **a letter of credit** (= a letter from one bank to another that enables you to obtain money) *I have arranged for my branch to send a letter of credit to the branch nearest the hotel.*

2 money in a bank account

• ADJ. **direct** *I'm paid by direct credit into my bank account.*

• VERB + CREDIT **have** *I have three credits on my bank statement.*

• CREDIT + NOUN **balance** *a credit balance of £265*

• PREP. **in~** *My account is in credit.* | **~of** *a credit of £35*

3 praise/approval

• ADJ. **great** | **full** | **eternal, everlasting** | **due** *We should give due credit to all who helped make the event a success.*

• VERB + CREDIT **give sb** | **claim, get, receive, take** *Why should she get all the credit?* | **do sb, reflect** *Your concern does you credit.* ◇ *The success of the venture reflects great credit on the organizers.* | **deserve**

• PREP. **to sb's ~** *To her eternal credit, she gave them a home.* | **~for** *At least give him credit for trying.*

• PHRASES **give credit where credit is due**

4 the credits list of people who worked on a film, etc.

• ADJ. **opening** | **final** | **film**

• CREDIT + VERB **roll** *We left the cinema before the final credits began to roll.*

5 sb/sth that brings honour to sb/sth else

• ADJ. **great**

• PREP. **~to** *He's a great credit to the school.*

credit *verb*

1 put money in the bank

• PREP. **with** *The bank credited the oil company with £500 000.*

• PHRASES **credit sth to sb's account**

2 with an achievement/quality

• PREP. **with** *I credited you with a little more sense.*

• PHRASES **be credited as/with sth** *She is generally credited as having written over 50 novels.* **be credited to sb** *The work has been credited to a sixteenth century bishop.* **be generally/widely credited with sth** *He is widely credited with having started the Middle East peace process.*

3 believe

• VERB + CREDIT **can/could hardly/scarcely** *I could hardly credit it when she told me she was leaving.* | **be hard to** *I find what he says rather hard to credit.*

creditable *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **make sth**

• ADV. **highly, very** *She gave a highly creditable performance as the wicked queen.*

credit card *noun*

• ADJ. **valid** *Your credit card is no longer valid.*

• VERB + CREDIT CARD **pay by, use** *We paid by credit card.* | **accept, take** *Do you accept credit cards?* | **issue** | **put sth on** *I put the bill on my credit card.*

• CREDIT CARD + VERB **expire** *My credit card expires at the end of June.*

• CREDIT CARD + NOUN **details, number** *Can you give me your credit card number?*

• PREP. **on your ~** *He ran up a huge bill on his credit card.*

creditor *noun*

• VERB + CREDITOR **pay (off), repay** *They agreed to repay their creditors over a period of three years.*

credulity *noun*

• VERB + CREDULITY **strain, stretch** *The plot of the novel stretches credulity to the limit.*

creed *noun*

• ADJ. **political, religious**

• VERB + CREED **adopt, embrace** *Other countries have adopted this political creed enthusiastically.* | **reject**

creep *verb*

• ADV. **quietly** | **slowly** | **stealthily** | **about, around, back, in, out, up** *I could hear someone creeping around downstairs.* ◇ *He crept up behind me.*

• PREP. **along** *He crept stealthily along the corridor.* **down, into** (*figurative*) *Suspicion crept into her voice.* **over** (*figurative*) *A feeling of dread crept over him.* **out of, up on** *The cat quietly crept up on the pigeon.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Fatigue was creeping up on her.*

creepy *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *It feels a bit creepy in here.* | **get** *It can get pretty creepy in the cellar at night.*

• ADV. **a bit, pretty, slightly**

crescendo *noun*

• ADJ. **deafening**

• VERB + CRESCENDO **reach, rise to** *The music reached a deafening crescendo.*

crest *noun*

• VERB + CREST **gain, reach** *We finally reached the crest of the ridge.*

• PREP. **on a/the ~** *We stood on the crest of the hill.*

crew *noun*

• ADJ. **experienced** | **inexperienced, novice** | **emergency, skeleton** | **aircraft, bomber, lifeboat, ship's, submarine, tank, train** | **cabin, flight, ground, maintenance, support** | **ambulance, camera, demolition, film, fire, gun, production, road, stage, television, TV** *Fire crews were called to the scene.*

• CREW + NOUN **member**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *all the men and women in the crew*

• PHRASES **a member of the crew**

cricket *noun*

1 sport

• ADJ. **county, international, school, village** | **club, first-class** | **professional** | **championship, league, test, World Cup** | **one-day, four-day, etc.** | **limited-over(s)** | **Sunday** | **attacking** *The crowd loves to watch attacking cricket.*

• QUANT. **game**

• VERB + CRICKET **play** | **watch** | **follow**

• CRICKET + NOUN **game, match** | **championship, competition** | **field, ground, pitch** | **ball, bat** | **pavilion** | **captain, manager, team** | **club** | **enthusiast, fan, lover** | **season** | **tour** | **scene** *This game marks his comeback to the international cricket scene.* | **commentator** | **memorabilia** *an auction of cricket memorabilia*

⇨ Special page at SPORT

2 insect

• CRICKET + VERB **chirp** *The only sound was a cricket chirping.*

crime *noun*

1 illegal act

• ADJ. **appalling, awful, barbaric, barbarous, bloody, brutal, despicable, dreadful, grave, great, heinous, hor-**

NOTE

Crimes

be guilty of, commit ~
Two key witnesses at her trial committed perjury.
accuse sb of, charge sb with ~
He has been accused of her murder.
convict sb of, find sb guilty of ~
She was found guilty of high treason.
acquit sb of ~
The engineer responsible for the collapse of the bridge was acquitted of manslaughter.
admit, confess to, deny ~
All three men have denied assault.
She admitted 33 assault charges.
plead guilty/not guilty to ~
He pleaded guilty to a charge of gross indecency.
investigate (sb for) ~
She is being investigated for suspected bribery.
be suspected for/of ~
He was the least likely to be suspected of her murder.
be/come under investigation for ~
She was the second minister to come under investigation for corruption.
be wanted for ~, be wanted on charges of ~
He was wanted on charges of espionage.
solve a case, crime, murder, robbery, theft
The police and the public must work together to solve the murder.
arrest sb for ~
Jean was arrested for arson.
be tried for, stand trial for ~
to stand trial for extortion
~ case/trial
The nurse's murder trial continues.
~ charge
The police agreed to drop the conspiracy charges against him.
a charge/count of ~
The jury convicted her on two counts of theft.

rible, horrific, serious, terrible, vicious *one of the most horrific crimes of recent times* ◇ (*figurative*) *Not returning phone calls is a grave crime in today's culture.* | **big, major** *the biggest crime since the Great Train Robbery* | **lesser, minor, petty** *He was charged with the lesser crime of possessing a forged bond, rather than actually forging it.* | **real** *She claimed that the real crime is that burglars and muggers usually get a light sentence.* | **violent** | **non-violent** | **perfect** *He boasted of having carried out the perfect crime.* | **notorious** *one of the most notorious crimes in British history* | **capital** (= for which the penalty is death) *After the reforms the only capital crimes were treason and murder.* | **indictable** | **alleged** *She never faced trial for her many alleged crimes.* | **unsolved** | **copycat** *the danger of copycat crimes in the wake of the shootings* | **motiveless** *an apparently motiveless crime* | **victimless** *Insider dealing has been called a victimless crime.* | **white-collar** | **drug-related** | **sex/sexual** | **war** | **political** | **terrorist**

• VERB + CRIME **carry out, commit** | **report** *Many crimes are never reported to the police.*

• CRIME + VERB **involve sth** *crimes involving firearms* | **be punishable by sth** *crimes punishable by death*

• PREP. **~ against** *crimes against humanity*

• PHRASES **a crime of passion/violence, the scene of the crime** *No weapon was found at the scene of the crime.*

2 illegal activity in general

• ADJ. **serious** | **petty** | **violent** | **non-violent** | **recorded** | **unrecorded** | **growing, mounting, rising** | **drug-related** | **middle-class, working-class, etc.** | **white-collar** *Corporate crime—committed by businesses—should not be confused with white-collar crime, which refers to the occupation of the perpetrator and may be directed against a business.* | **business, corporate** | **organized** | **juvenile, youth** | **international, local, regional** | **rural, urban** | **car, computer, property, street** *attempts to prevent hacking and computer crime* | **sex/sexual**

• VERB + CRIME **carry out, commit** | **combat, fight, tackle** | **beat, crack** (*informal*) *Police forces will exchange ideas on cracking crime.* | **deter, prevent, stop** | **control, cut, reduce** | **detect, investigate** *The public have a crucial role to play in detecting crime.* | **solve** | **punish** | **cause** | **be driven to, turn to** *He says that bored youngsters turn to crime.*

• CRIME + VERB **double, increase, rise**

• CRIME + NOUN **figures, level, rate, statistics** | **control, prevention** | **problem, wave** *the country's crime problem* | **squad** *a senior detective with the serious crime squad* | **syndicate** *leading members of an organized crime syndicate* | **fiction, novel, series, story** *the latest TV crime series* | **reporter, writer** *the newspaper's crime reporter* ◇ *a new short story by the popular crime writer*

• PHRASES **a crackdown on crime** *a crackdown on drug-related crime* **crime and disorder, crime and punishment, fear of crime** *Fear of crime imprisons many elderly people in their homes.* **an increase in crime, a life of crime** *Unemployed young people were likely to be tempted into a life of crime.* **sb's partner in crime, a victim of crime** *Victims of crime may be able to obtain compensation.*

criminal *noun*

• ADJ. **dangerous, violent** | **serious** | **habitual, hardened** | **professional** | **master** | **petty** | **convicted** | **known** *He has been associating with known criminals.* | **notorious** | **common** *She was treated like a common criminal.* | **white-collar** | **war** *He was tried as a war criminal.*

• VERB + CRIMINAL **catch** *I told him to pass the information to the police so they could catch the criminals.*

crimson *adj.*

1 red

• ADJ. **dark, deep, rich** *a beautiful deep crimson colour*
⇨ Special page at COLOUR

2 red in the face

• VERBS **be** | **blush, flush, go, turn** *He flushed crimson and began to shout angrily at Frank.*

• ADJ. **bright, deep** *He turned bright crimson.*

• PREP. **with** *She was crimson with rage.*

cripple *verb*

1 injure

• ADV. **for life, permanently** *As a child she contracted polio and was crippled for life.*

• PHRASES **be crippled with** *He's eighty and crippled with arthritis.* **leave sb crippled** *The disease left him crippled.*

2 damage

• ADV. **financially** *The industry has been financially crippled by these policies.*

crisis *noun*

• ADJ. **acute, grave, major, serious, severe, terrible, worst** *the worst economic crisis for fifty years* | **growing, mounting** | **impending, looming** | **international, national** | **constitutional, economic, financial, fiscal, political** | **cash, debt, energy, hostage, housing, oil, refugee** *the Third World debt crisis* | **family, personal** | **identity** | **mid-life**

• VERB + CRISIS **be faced with, be hit by, face, go through, have** (*informal*), **suffer** *With competition from* *cheap imports, the British coal industry is facing a serious crisis.* ◇ *He's having a mid-life crisis.* | **cause, create, lead to, precipitate, provoke, spark off** | **deal with, defuse, ease, handle, overcome, resolve, respond to, solve, tackle** *Union leaders are taking immediate steps to defuse the crisis.* ◇ *attempts to ease the town's housing crisis* | **survive, weather** | **avert, prevent** | **aggravate**

• CRISIS + VERB **arise** *waiting for the next crisis to arise* | **deepen, worsen** | **be over** *As soon as the crisis was over, she relaxed.*

• PREP. **during a/the ~** *Three people died during the hostage crisis.* **in (a/the) ~** *The government is in crisis.* ◇ *She's no good in a crisis.* | **~ in** *the growing crisis in education* **~ over** *a crisis over pensions*

• CRISIS + NOUN **point** *The team's dismal season has reached crisis point.* | **management** *an expert in crisis management*

• PHRASES **a crisis of confidence** *The company is suffering a severe crisis of confidence.* **at/in moments/times of crisis** *In times of crisis it's good to have someone you can rely on for advice.*

crisp *noun* (usually **crisps**)

• ADJ. **potato** | **plain** | **cheese and onion, ready salted, salt and vinegar, etc.**

• QUANT. **bag, packet** *a packet of smoky bacon crisps*

• VERB + CRISP **eat**

• CRISP + NOUN **bag, packet**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

criterion *noun*

• ADJ. **sole** | **main** | **strict, stringent** | **objective** | **eligibility, selection**

• QUANT. **range, set**

• VERB + CRITERION **fulfil, meet, satisfy** *She failed to meet the stringent selection criteria.* | **establish, lay down** | **adopt, apply, use** *The other groups agreed to adopt our criteria.*

• PREP. **according to a/the ~** *Team members will be selected according to strict criteria.* **by a/the ~** *By this criterion, very few people are suitable.* | **~ for** *The report lays down criteria for disciplining staff.* **~ of** *What are the criteria of success for a training scheme?*

critic *noun*

1 says what is bad/wrong with sth

• ADJ. **bitter, fierce, harsh, hostile, severe, trenchant** *She is one of her husband's severest critics.* | **outspoken, vocal, vociferous** | **persistent** | **chief, great, leading, major** *He is now a major critic of the nuclear industry.*

• VERB + CRITIC **prove wrong** *She is looking for a chance to prove her critics wrong.*

• CRITIC + VERB **accuse sb** *Critics accused the government of giving in to pressure from the tobacco companies.* | **argue sth, believe sth, claim sth, charge sth, fear sth, point sth out, say sth, suggest sth** *Critics point out that poverty still exists.* | **be right/wrong**

• PREP. **~ of** *an outspoken critic of government policy*

2 gives opinions about plays/books/films, etc.

• ADJ. **good, great, incisive** | **distinguished, influential** | **art, drama, film, literary, music, restaurant, social, television, theatre**

• CRITIC + VERB **hail sth, praise sth** *The film was hailed by critics as a triumphant piece of realism.* | **attack sth, pan sth, slate sth** *The play was panned by critics.* | **describe sth** *Critics described the paintings as worthless rubbish.*

⇨ Note at JOB

critical *adj.*

1 disapproving

• VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**

• ADV. **bitterly, deeply, extremely, fiercely, harshly, highly, severely, sharply, strongly, very** | **increasingly** | **a little, mildly, quite** | **openly** *She became openly critical of party policy.*

• PREP. **of** *The report was highly critical of the railway's poor safety record.*

2 important

• VERBS **be** | **become**

• ADV. **really** | **absolutely** | **increasingly**

• PREP. **for** *Maintaining control of the the budget is absolutely critical for success.* **to** *This reorganization is critical to the long-term future of the company.*

criticism *noun*

1 expressing disapproval of sb/sth

• ADJ. **bitter, fierce, harsh, heavy, serious, severe, sharp, strident, strong, trenchant** | **telling** *A more telling criticism is that he reduces ethics to interpersonal relationships.* | **adverse, damaging, damning, hostile, negative, scathing** | **constructive, fair, just, justifiable, legitimate, valid** *She made a number of valid criticisms.* | **considerable, extensive, widespread** | **constant** | **basic, fundamental** | **main, major, substantial** | **minor, moderate** | **general** | **direct, explicit, outspoken** | **implicit, implied, indirect** | **fresh** *Two successive defeats have brought fresh criticism.* | **growing, increasing, mounting** | **media, press** | **public**

• QUANT. **barrage** *The film star faced a barrage of criticism for his behaviour.*

• VERB + CRITICISM **direct, express, level, make, voice** *Criticism was levelled at senior managers.* | **attract, be open to, be singled out for, come in for, come under, draw, face, get, meet with, prompt, provoke, receive** *The government came under fierce criticism for its policies.* ◇ *The proposal is open to several important criticisms.* | **avoid, deflect, escape, forestall, ward off** *She sought to deflect criticism by blaming her family.* | **accept, meet, reply to, respond to, take** *He finds it hard to take criticism.* | **counter, dismiss, reject** *She countered my criticisms by saying we had no choice in the matter.* | **imply** *None of what has been said should be taken to imply criticism.* | **offer** *to offer criticism and receive it*

• CRITICISM + VERB **come from sb** *The harshest criticism came from right-wing ideologists.* | **centre on sth** *Criticism centred on the lack of information provided.*

• PREP. **~ about** *The main criticism about the information provided is that it arrives too late.* **~ against** *criticisms against the European single currency* **~ for** *They received criticism for continuing to supply the faulty goods.* **~ from** *We are bound to face criticism from both sides.* **~ of** *There has been serious criticism of the teaching methods used in the school.* **~ over** *We came in for some sharp criticism over this decision.*

2 of a play, book, film, etc.

• ADJ. **practical, textual** | **academic, art, biblical, cultural, film, historical, literary, music, scientific, social** | **feminist, Marxist, structuralist**

criticize *verb*

• ADV. **bitterly, fiercely, heavily, roundly, severely, sharply, strongly** | **openly, publicly** *She has openly criticized the government.* | **implicitly** | **justifiably, rightly** *Their record on human rights has been justifiably criticized.* | **constantly, frequently, repeatedly** | **reportedly**

• PREP. **for** *She criticized the system for being secretive.*

• PHRASES **be widely criticized (as sth)** *The law was widely criticized as racist.* **criticize sb/sth on the grounds that** *The film was criticized on the grounds that it glorifies violence.*

critique *noun*

- ADJ. **detailed, devastating, effective, far-reaching, penetrating, radical, searching, telling, thorough, trenchant, wide-ranging | feminist, social, structuralist**
- VERB + CRITIQUE **give, present, provide**
- PREP. **~of** *The book provides a thorough critique of current theories.*

crook *noun*

- ADJ. **small-time**
- VERB + CROOK **catch**

crop *noun*

1 plants grown for food
- ADJ. **agricultural | cash, commercial, export | fodder, food, forage** *Fodder crops are used to feed livestock.* **| subsistence | staple | traditional** *the replacement of traditional crops with cash crops for export* **| spring, winter | standing** *Rivers burst their banks and flooded standing crops.* **| arable, cereal, fruit, root, vegetable**
- VERB + CROP **grow, produce** *Most of the farmers grow arable crops.* **| plant, sow | bring in, gather, harvest, reap | damage, destroy** *Summer flash floods destroyed the crops.* **| rotate | spray** *Crops are sprayed with highly toxic chemicals to prevent insect damage.*
- CROP + VERB **fail** *Isolated communities were extremely vulnerable if crops failed.*
- CROP + NOUN **rotation** *Crop rotation helps prevent soil erosion.* **| damage, failure | production, yield** *to boost crop yields* **| spraying**
- PREP. **~of** *a crop of carrots*

2 total amount of grain, fruit, etc. grown
- ADJ. **abundant, bumper, excellent, good, heavy, record | poor | early** *Bring strawberry plants indoors for an early crop.* **| potato, rice, etc.**
- VERB + CROP **gather, get, harvest, have, reap** *a record crop was harvested ◇ We had a very good crop of apples last year.* **| bear, produce, yield** *It takes three to five years for a new plantation to bear a crop.*
- PREP. **~of**

crop *verb*

- ADV. **closely** *His hair was closely cropped.*
- PHRASES **crop sth short** *His hair had been cropped short and he looked different.*

cross *noun*

1 mark made by drawing one line across another
- VERB + CROSS **draw, put** *I've put a cross on the map to show where the hotel is.*

2 Christian symbol
- ADJ. **gold, silver, stone, wooden** *She wore a gold cross on a chain around her neck. ◇ The grave was marked with a stone cross.* **| market, village, wayside**
- PREP. **on the ~** *a painting of Jesus Christ on the cross*
- PHRASES **(make) the sign of the cross** *The priest blessed her, and made the sign of the cross over her.*

3 in football or hockey
- ADJ. **deep, low, perfect**
- PREP. **~by/from** *a deep cross from Beckham*

cross *verb*

- ADV. **quickly, slowly | safely, successfully** *teaching children to cross the road safely* **| back, over** *Let's cross over now while the road is clear.*
- VERB + CROSS **try to** *They were arrested trying to cross the border.*
- PREP. **from, into** *They crossed from the States into Canada.* **over** *We crossed over the river into Sweden.* **to** *She crossed to the door.*

cross *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *I'm going to get very cross before long.* **| make sb** *It really makes me cross to see people dropping litter in the street.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, very | a bit, quite, rather, slightly**
- PREP. **about** *Are you still cross about me forgetting the flowers?* **at** *She was very cross at the way she'd been treated.* **for, with** *She was quite cross with him for being late.*

cross-examination *noun*

- VERB + CROSS-EXAMINATION **be subject to, face** *Evidence is given on oath and witnesses are subject to cross-examination.* **| bear, stand up to, withstand** *His alibi would not have withstood cross-examination.*
- PREP. **during/in ~** *He was found to have lied twice in cross-examination.* **under ~** *The defendant broke down under cross-examination.*

cross-eyed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look | go** *You'll go cross-eyed if you try to look at things so close to you.*
- ADV. **slightly**

crossing *noun*

1 journey across a stretch of water
- ADJ. **rough | smooth | ferry** *The price includes accommodation and ferry crossing.* **| river, sea | Atlantic, Channel, etc.**
- VERB + CROSSING **make** *You can only make the crossing in good weather.*
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *We discussed our plans during the crossing.* **| ~ from, ~ to** *a very rough crossing from England to Ireland*

2 place where you can cross sth
- ADJ. **border | level** (= over a railway) **| pedestrian, pelican, zebra** (These are all places where people walking can cross a road.)
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *They were stopped and searched at the border crossing.* **on a/the ~** *A passenger train smashed into a truck on a level crossing.*

crossroads *noun*

1 place where two roads cross
- VERB + CROSSROADS **come to**
- PREP. **at the ~** *Turn right at the next crossroads.*

2 important point in your life/career, etc.
- ADJ. **important | historic**
- VERB + CROSSROADS **stand at | reach**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *We are standing at an important crossroads in the history of Europe.* **| ~ in** *He had reached a crossroads in his career.*

cross section *noun*

- ADJ. **broad, fair, good, large, representative, wide**
- VERB + CROSS SECTION **be drawn from** *The contestants are drawn from a cross section of society.* **| represent**
- PREP. **~of** *We interviewed a wide cross section of people.*

crossword *noun*

- ADJ. **cryptic, quick**
- VERB + CROSSWORD **do, fill in, solve**
- CROSSWORD + NOUN **clue, puzzle**

crouch *verb*

- ADV. **low** *The hare crouches low on the ground.* **| down** *We crouched down to avoid being seen.*
- PREP. **behind** *crouching behind the sofa* **over** *They crouched over the dead animal.*

crow *noun*

- ADJ. **black | carrion**
- QUANT. **flock**
- CROW + VERB **fly | perch** *The black crow perched on the telephone pole.* | **caw, shriek**

crow *verb*

- ADV. **triumphantly, with delight** *She gave the purse to Ruby, who crowed with delight.*
- PREP. **about/over** *The company hasn't much to crow about, with sales down compared with last year.*

crowd *noun*

1 large number of people in one place
- ADJ. **big, bumper, capacity, good, great, huge, large, massive, record, sell-out, vast** *The show played to capacity crowds.* | **small | gathering, growing | assembled** *The president read a declaration to a vast assembled crowd.* | **jostling, madding, milling, surging** *We pushed our way through the milling crowds of guests.* | **admiring, appreciative, cheering, enthusiastic, excited, expectant | angry, hostile, partisan | rush-hour | motley** *the usual motley crowd of tourists, hawkers and pigeons* | **football, theatre | home** (at a football match)
- VERB + CROWD **attract, draw, pull (in)** *Boxing is a sport that always attracts large crowds.* | **break up, disperse** *Police were called to disperse the crowd.* | **control | address, play to | join, mingle with**
- CROWD + VERB **assemble, collect, gather** *An expectant crowd gathered outside his house.* | **grow, swell** *The crowd grew to over 15 000.* | **flock, mill, throng** *Crowds have been flocking to the beaches in this hot weather.* ◇ *A crowd thronged around the wounded man.* | **disperse, melt away, thin out** *After the ambulance drove off, the crowd dispersed.* | **cheer, roar | boo, hiss, jeer | line the street** *Crowds lined the streets of the city as the president's car approached.*
- PREP. **among a/the ~** *A bewildered child was wandering among the crowd.* **in a/the ~** *I saw some familiar faces in the crowd.* **through a/the ~** *She fought her way through the crowd.* | **~ of** *a big crowd of football supporters*
- CROWD + NOUN **control**
- PHRASES **the back/front/middle of a crowd**

2 **the crowd** ordinary people
- VERB + CROWD **be one of, follow** *She's happy to follow the crowd.* | **stand out from** *We all like to think we stand out from the crowd* (= are different from other people).

crowded *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become, get**
- ADV. **densely, extremely, very** *living in densely crowded conditions* ◇ *The shops were all very crowded.* | **increasingly | a bit, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, rather**
- PREP. **with** *The store was crowded with shoppers.*

crown *noun*

1 that a king/queen wears
- VERB + CROWN **wear | place, put on** *The crown was placed upon the new monarch's head.*

2 **the crown** position/power of a king/queen
- ADJ. **imperial, royal**
- VERB + CROWN **offer sb** *In 1688 the crown was offered to William and Mary.* | **refuse | succeed to** *He succeeded to the crown of Spain*
- CROWN + VERB **pass** *In 1553 the crown passed from Edward VI to Mary.*
- PHRASES **the heir to the crown**

2 **the Crown** the state as represented by a king/queen
- VERB + CROWN **serve**
- CROWN + NOUN **court | jewels | land** *a piece of Crown land*

3 honour of being the best in a sports competition
- ADJ. **Olympic, world, etc.**
- VERB + CROWN **take, win | lose** *He lost his Olympic crown to George Rice.* | **fight for | defend, retain**

4 top of the head
- ADJ. **bald**
- PREP. **at the ~** *She swept her hair into a bun at the crown of her head.* **on your ~** *There were raindrops on his bald crown.*

crucial *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove | become | remain | consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as**
- ADV. **really | absolutely** *It's absolutely crucial that we get this right.* | **fairly, quite | hardly | clearly, obviously**
- PREP. **for** *The talks are crucial for the success of the plan.* **to** *Secrecy is crucial to this police operation.*

cruel *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound | become**
- ADV. **extremely, unspeakably, very** *an extremely cruel regime* | **a little, rather | deliberately | unnecessarily**
- PREP. **to** *I can't stand people who are cruel to animals.*

cruelty *noun*

- ADJ. **extreme, great** *an act of extreme cruelty* | **deliberate | mental | animal, child** *Cases of child cruelty occur more often than they are observed.*
- VERB + CRUELTY **inflict, show (sb)** *How can you inflict such cruelty on a child?* ◇ *Her stepmother showed her nothing but cruelty.* | **suffer** *The children suffered mental cruelty and neglect.*
- PREP. **~ to/towards** *cruelty to animals*

cruise *noun*

- ADJ. **leisurely, luxury, pleasure** *a pleasure cruise around the bay* | **Caribbean, Mediterranean, world, etc.**
- VERB + CRUISE **go on, take** *She used all her savings to go on a world cruise.*
- CRUISE + NOUN **liner, operator, ship**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *They met on a cruise.* | **~ along** *a cruise along the coast* **~ around/round**

cruiser *noun*

- ADJ. **battle, heavy, light, merchant | cabin, motor, pleasure, sailing**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *He served on a merchant cruiser.*

crumb *noun*

- ADJ. **biscuit, bread** (also **breadcrumb**), **cake**
- VERB + CRUMB **brush (away), sweep (away)** *She brushed the cake crumbs off the table.* | **drop, scatter** *He bit into the roll, scattering crumbs.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a few crumbs of bread*

crunch *verb*

- ADV. **loudly | underfoot** *Snow crunched underfoot.* | **up**
- PREP. **on** *He was crunching loudly on an apple*

crusade *noun*

- ADJ. **great | moral, personal**
- VERB + CRUSADE **embark on, launch, mount** *The charity tonight launched its great crusade against homelessness.* | **be engaged in, carry out, conduct, join** *She seems to be carrying out a personal crusade to stop this building work.* | **lead**

- PREP. **on a ~** *He is on a crusade to take the church to the people.* | **~ against** *urging parents to join a crusade against crime* **~ for** *For 23 years he led a crusade for peace.*

crush *noun*

- ADJ. **huge | schoolgirl, teenage**
- VERB + CRUSH **have | develop, get**
- PREP. **~ on** *She had a huge crush on one of her teachers.*

crush *verb*

- ADV. **badly** *His hand was badly crushed in the accident.* | **slightly | finely** *Crush the biscuits finely before adding them to the mixture.* | **underfoot** *insects that had been crushed underfoot*
- PREP. **against** *She was crushed against the wall.* **beneath/under** *crushed beneath a bus* **between** *crushed between two cars*
- PHRASES **be/get crushed, crush sb to death**

crust *noun*

1 on a loaf of bread/pie

- ADJ. **thick, thin | pastry, pie**
- PHRASES **a crust of bread** *We saved a few crusts of bread for the birds.*

2 hard layer on the outside of sth

- ADJ. **thick, thin**
- VERB + CRUST **form** *The mud had formed a thick crust on the surface of the road.*
- CRUST + VERB **form** *Put the lid on properly, or a crust will form on the paints.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a thin crust of ice*
- PHRASES **the earth's crust**

crutch *noun*

- ADJ. **emotional, psychological** (*both figurative*) *He saw religion as a psychological crutch.*
- VERB + CRUTCH **need, use** *He needs crutches to walk.*
- PREP. **on/with ~** *She can only walk with crutches.*

crux *noun*

- CRUX + VERB **lie** *The crux of the matter lies in our lack of expert knowledge.*
- PHRASES **the crux of the matter/problem**

cry *noun*

1 shout/loud noise

- ADJ. **great, loud | little, low, small | choked/choking, muffled, stifled, strangled | piercing, shrill | hoarse** *the hoarse cry of a crow* | **agonized, anguished, bitter, despairing, desperate, plaintive, terrible | startled | involuntary | battle, rallying, war, warning | animal, bird**
- VERB + CRY **give, let out, raise, utter** *She gave an agonized cry as they lifted the fallen branch from her leg.* ◇ *He was too weak to raise even the smallest of cries.* | **hear**
- CRY + VERB **go up** *A cry went up when it was discovered their man had escaped.* | **escape** *An involuntary cry escaped her as he entered the room.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *He fell to the ground with a cry.* | **~ for** (*figurative*) *Her suicide attempt was really a desperate cry for help.* **~ of** *a cry of despair/delight*

⇨ Note at SOUND

2 act of crying

- ADJ. **good | little**
- VERB + CRY **have** *You'll feel better when you've had a good cry.*

cry *verb*

1 produce tears

- ADV. **a lot | a little | almost, nearly | never, rarely | bitterly** *He put his head on his arms and cried bitterly.* | **loudly | quietly, silently, softly | uncontrollably | alone**
- VERB + CRY **begin to, start to | make sb | leave sb to** *children who are left to cry alone*
- PREP. **about** *What are you crying about?* **for** *a child crying for his mother* **over** *I wasn't going to waste time crying over him!* **with** *Anna was almost crying with frustration.*
- PHRASES **cry like a baby** *Finally he broke down and cried like a baby.* **cry your eyes out, cry yourself to sleep, feel like crying** *I felt like crying when I found out what had happened.* **a shoulder to cry on** (*figurative*) *He was a fatherly shoulder to cry on when things went wrong.*

2 shout

- ADV. **aloud, out | suddenly | angrily, indignantly** *'Never!' he cried angrily.* | **despairingly, desperately | excitedly | passionately, wildly**
- VERB + CRY **want to** *She wanted to cry out to him not to be so stupid.* | **hear sb** *I heard her cry out in her sleep.*
- PREP. **in** *'What do you mean?' she cried in agitation.* ◇ *'Who's there?' she cried in a shrill voice.*
- PHRASES **cry for help** *She cried for help as the fire spread.* **cry out in anguish/fear/pain**

crystal *noun*

- ADJ. **single | quartz, rock, etc. | ice, snow**
- CRYSTAL + VERB **form, grow** *Ice crystals had formed on the window.*

crystal ball *noun*

- VERB + CRYSTAL BALL **gaze into, look into** *I can't gaze into my crystal ball and tell you what will happen!*

cubicle *noun*

- ADJ. **small, tiny | screened-off, separate | changing, shower, toilet**
- CUBICLE + NOUN **curtain, door**
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

cuddle *noun*

- ADJ. **big** *He gave her a big cuddle and told her not to worry.*
- VERB + CUDDLE **have** *They were having a cuddle on the sofa.* | **give** *Give Mummy a big cuddle.*
- PHRASES **a kiss and a cuddle** *He just wants a comforting kiss and a cuddle and he'll be all right.*

cue *noun*

- VERB + CUE **wait for | take** *Her husband took his cue, and said that it was time for them to leave.* | **miss | give sb** *She had not yet been given the cue to go on to the stage.*
- PREP. **on ~** *I can't just cry on cue!* | **~ for** *This was the cue for him to come into the room.*
- PHRASES **right on cue** *Ella came in right on cue, just as they were being rude about her.* **take your cue from sb/sth** *They all took their cue from their leader.*

cuisine *noun*

- ADJ. **excellent, fine, superb | local, regional** *We sampled the local cuisine.* | **traditional | haute, nouvelle | French, Italian, etc.**
- VERB + CUISINE **offer, serve** *The hotel has a large dining room serving superb local cuisine.* | **sample, try**
- PHRASES **a standard of cuisine**

culmination *noun*

- ADJ. **logical** *This massive autobiographical work was the logical culmination of her long career.*
- VERB + CULMINATION **mark, represent** *The show marked the culmination of months of hard work.* | **reach**

The space race reached its culmination in the first moon walk. | **see** *2001 saw the culmination of the project.*

- PREP. **at the ~ of** *A decision will be taken at the culmination of the initial research.*

culpable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | believe sb**
- ADV. **highly, very**
- PREP. **in** *The prime minister is highly culpable in this affair.* **of** *She believed him culpable of murder.*

culprit *noun*

- ADJ. **big, chief, main, major, prime, real, worst** *Keep the kitchen clear of all sources of bacteria, not forgetting the biggest culprit of all—the dishcloth.* | **likely, obvious**
- VERB + CULPRIT **hunt** *Police hunting the culprits have condemned the attack.* | **apprehend, catch, identify, find, track down**

cult *noun*

1 worship of a person/thing

- ADJ. **personality** *the personality cult of the president*
- CULT + NOUN **figure, hero** *He became a cult figure during the 1960s.* | **status** *The book achieved cult status as soon as it was published.* | **following** *The show has built up a cult following.* | **band, book, film**
- PREP. **~ of** *the cult of youth*

2 religious group

- ADJ. **religious** *the members of a religious cult*
- CULT + NOUN **leader, member | image, object, statue | practice**

cultivate *verb*

1 land

- ADV. **intensively** *The land here has been intensively cultivated for generations.*

2 crops

- ADV. **successfully** *Olives have been cultivated successfully in southern Australia.*

3 try to develop sth

- ADV. **actively, assiduously, carefully, deliberately** *This modern image is actively cultivated by the company.* | **successfully**

cultivated *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly** *a highly cultivated woman* | **carefully, deliberately** *a carefully cultivated image*

culture *noun*

1 customs/ideas/beliefs

- ADJ. **ancient | primitive | dominant | alien, foreign | indigenous, native | local, national | traditional | African, black, Greek, Western, world, etc.** *These ideas have always been central to Western culture.* | **rural, urban | mainstream | underground | wider** *Prisoners are isolated from the wider culture of society at large.* | **bourgeois, working-class, etc. | street, youth** *As young people started to have more money, a significant youth culture developed.* | **dance, drug, football, etc. | academic, business, company, corporate, intellectual, legal, political, professional, religious, scientific, etc.** *the political culture of the United States* | **capitalist, computer, consumer, enterprise, materialistic, etc.** *the development of the enterprise culture in Britain*
- VERB + CULTURE **assimilate (sb into)** *The Romans gradually assimilated the culture of the people they had conquered.* ◇ *Newcomers to the company are soon assimilated into the culture.* | **create, develop, foster, produce** *The new director is trying to foster a culture of open communication within the company.*
- CULTURE + VERB **develop**
- CULTURE + NOUN **group** *a country containing many language and culture groups* | **shock** *She experienced great culture shock when she first came to Europe.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *In some cultures children have an important place.* | **~ of** *The social security system has been accused of producing a culture of dependency.*

2 art/literature/music, etc

- ADJ. **contemporary, modern | mass, pop, popular | folk | high | wide | literary, oral** *Jokes are an important part of our popular, oral culture.*
- PREP. **a man/woman of culture** *She is a woman of wide culture.*

cultured *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **deeply, highly** *a highly cultured man*

cunning *noun*

- ADJ. **great | devious, low | animal | native** *She relied on her native cunning to survive.*
- VERB + CUNNING **have** *She had great cunning and ruthlessness.* | **show | use** *He had used cunning to get what he wanted.*
- PREP. **with ~** *She managed him with great cunning.*

cup *noun*

1 container

- ADJ. **empty | full | half-empty, half-full | broken, chipped, cracked | china, paper, plastic | coffee, tea**
- QUANT. **set**
- VERB + CUP **fill, refill | drain, empty** *She was so thirsty that she drained her cup.* | **lift, pick up, raise** *She raised her cup to her lips.* | **place, put down, replace, set down | drink from/out of** *Customers didn't like drinking out of plastic cups.*
- CUP + VERB **contain sth**
- PHRASES **a cup and saucer**

2 drink

- ADJ. **strong** *I like a good strong cup of tea first thing in the morning.* | **fresh** *My coffee was cold, so I ordered a fresh cup.*
- VERB + CUP **offer sb | make (sb) | pour (sb)** *I'm making tea. Can I pour you a cup?* | **help yourself to | stir** *Enrique stirred his fourth cup of coffee of the day.* | **drink, sip** *I drink about ten cups of coffee a day.*
- PREP. **~ of**
- PHRASES **a nice cup of tea** *You sit down and I'll make you a nice cup of tea.*

3 in sport

- ADJ. **challenge, knockout | European, World, etc.**
- VERB + CUP **win** *Who won the cup?* | **lose | present (sb with)** *The cup will be presented to the winning team by the president himself.* | **lift** *He lifted the cup for the sixth time this year* (= it was the sixth time he had won).
- CUP + NOUN **competition** *They were the first Turkish team to win a major cup competition.* | **clash, match** *The team are ready for next week's World Cup clash with Italy.* | **final, quarter-final, semi-finals | win, winner**
- PHRASES **the first, etc. round of the cup**

cupboard *noun*

- ADJ. **big, deep, large | little, small, tiny | high, low | walk-in | built-in, fitted | private | bare, empty | wall | bathroom, bedside, kitchen, hall | airing, broom, coat, clothes, drinks, food, linen, medicine, stationery, storage, store** *There's a broom cupboard under the stairs.*
- VERB + CUPBOARD **open | close | look in | put sth in** *Put the clothes in the airing cupboard.* | **keep sth in**

- CUPBOARD + VERB **be full of sth** *The cupboard was full of old toys.*
- CUPBOARD + NOUN **door | unit** *We had some new cupboard units fitted in the kitchen.* | **space** *Do you have much cupboard space in your new house?*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Put the plates in the cupboard.*

curb *noun*

- VERB + CURB **impose, introduce, put | act as** *Counselling acted as a curb on his violent behaviour.*
- PREP. **~ on** *Many companies have imposed curbs on smoking in the workplace.*

curb *verb*

- ADV. **drastically, greatly** *This legislation will greatly curb the power of local authorities.*
- VERB + CURB **attempt to, try to | be designed to, be intended to** *a new law designed to curb harmful emissions from factories*
- PHRASES **aimed at curbing sth** *a range of policies aimed at curbing inflation* **an attempt/effort to curb sth, measures to curb sth**

cure *noun*

1 medicine/treatment that can cure an illness

- ADJ. **effective, instant, miracle, wonder** *There is no instant cure for this condition.* | **rest** *His new job was almost a rest cure after the stresses of the army.* | **cancer**
- VERB + CURE **look for, seek | develop, discover, find**
- CURE + VERB **work** *The cure works by boosting the body's immune system.*
- PREP. **~ for** *scientists seeking a cure for Aids* **~ from** *He was hoping for a cure from his debilitating illness.*
- PHRASES **no (known) cure** *There is no known cure for the disease.* **prevention is better than cure** *Prevention is better than cure, so start looking after your heart now.* **the search for a cure** *the search for a cure for the common cold*

2 return to good health

- ADJ. **miraculous | complete, permanent**
- VERB + CURE **bring about, effect, provide** *These drugs can sometimes effect miraculous cures.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Science cannot provide a cure for all the world's problems.*

cure *verb*

- ADV. **completely | miraculously** *She still believed that somehow she could be miraculously cured.*
- PREP. **of** *He was now completely cured of his illness.*

curfew *noun*

- ADJ. **strict | dusk-to-dawn, night, night-time, 24-hour, 7 p.m., etc.**
- VERB + CURFEW **declare, impose, order, place sth under** *A five-day curfew was declared by the government.* ◇ *The whole area has been placed under curfew.* | **lift** *The strict curfew has now been lifted.* | **break, defy** *Protesters defied the curfew and took to the streets.*
- CURFEW + VERB **be in force** *A dusk-to-dawn curfew was in force.*
- PREP. **under ~** *The city is still under curfew.* | **~ on** *Many people are in favour of a curfew on young people.*

curiosity *noun*

- ADJ. **great, intense | insatiable** *She has an insatiable curiosity about life.* | **mild | idle, mere, simple** *'Why do you ask?' 'Mere curiosity.'* | **natural** *School should awaken a child's natural curiosity.* | **open** *staring with open curiosity* | **morbid**
- VERB + CURIOSITY **have | arouse, awaken** *Their curiosity was aroused by his strange behaviour.* | **satisfy**
- CURIOSITY + VERB **get the better of sb, overcome sb** *Harry's curiosity got the better of him and he unlocked the cupboard*
- PREP. **out of ~** *We went to the show out of curiosity more than anything else.* **with ~** *The children watched us with mild curiosity.* | **~ about** *I needed to satisfy my curiosity about what it was like to make records.*
- PHRASES **a sense of curiosity**

curious *adj.*

1 eager to find out about sb/sth

- VERBS **be, feel, seem | became, get, grow | remain | make sb** *Her secretive manner had made me curious.*
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, intensely, very** *I was intensely curious to know more about him.* | **a little, mildly, rather, slightly | frankly** *She coped with the frankly curious looks of the men.* | **genuinely | idly** *He saw a book on the table and picked it up, idly curious.* | **naturally** *Puppies are naturally curious.*
- PREP. **about** *I was curious about how she would react.* **as to** *She was curious as to why he was there.*
- PHRASES **curious to find out/know/see sb/sth**

2 strange/unusual

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, taste | find sb/sth**
- ADV. **extremely, very** *I find it very curious that you did not tell anyone.* | **a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** *The wine tasted rather curious.*

curl *noun*

1 piece of hair

- ADJ. **natural | soft | tight | corkscrew, spiral | auburn, blonde, dark, etc. | natural | stray** *She pushed a stray curl away from her eyes.* | **tangled, tumbling, unruly, untamed, wayward** *She smoothed down her tangled curls.* | **damp**
- VERB + CURL **press/push/stroke back, smooth back/down | ruffle, run your fingers through | tease** *He carefully teased his curls into place.* | **shake** *She shook her dark curls sadly.*
- CURL + VERB **fall, tumble** *Her auburn curls tumbled about her face.* | **bounce | frame sth** *Her face was framed by a mop of black curls.*
- PREP. **in ~s** *His hair spilled in curls over his forehead.* **through the/your ~s** *She raked a comb through her wayward curls.*
- PHRASES **a cascade/mass/mop of curls** *Her hair was styled into a cascade of spiral curls.* **lose its curl** *Her hair lost its curl as she got older.*

2 sth with a curved round shape

- ADJ. **faint, little, slight** *He acknowledged her remark with a faint curl of his lips.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a curl of smoke*

curl *verb*

- ADV. **tightly | slightly | up** *She curled her legs up under her.*
- PREP. **around/round** *His fingers curled tightly round the steering wheel.* **from** *Smoke was curling up from the chimney.* **into** *The cat curled into a ball and fell asleep.*
- PHRASES **be/lie/sit curled up** *She was lying curled up on her bed.* **curl (up) at the edges** *The photograph was brown and curling at the edges.*

curly *adj.*

- VERBS **be | go**
- ADV. **all** (*informal*), **very** *Your hair's gone all curly!* | **naturally** *She wished she had naturally curly hair.*

NOTE

Currencies

unit of money in a country

change/convert sth into/to ~
I want to change 100 dollars into euros.
buy, sell ~
The bank will sell you one Russian rouble for 4.14 Japanese yen.

Many of the collocates of MONEY (for example make, spend) can also be used with currencies:
The country spends millions of dollars on overseas aid every year.
50-, 100-, etc. ~ coin/note
a pound coin
50-, 100-, etc. dollar bill
for a ~
How many dinars will I get for a dollar?
in (the) ~
The contract is denominated in euros.
a tax of 30p in the pound
~ for ~
The company promises to match any money the charity makes dollar for dollar.
~'s worth of sth
a million pound's worth of books

value of a currency compared with others

high, rising, strong ~
Business should benefit from a stronger euro.
falling, low, weak ~
The yen gained 10 points against a weak dollar.
over-valued ~
Research suggests that the pound is over-valued.
float ~
The UK floated sterling in June 1972.
devalue ~
The Fiji dollar may have to be devalued.
defend, prop up, protect, shore up, support ~
She dismissed suggestions that the central bank would intervene to prop up the euro.
~ be worth sth
One Saudi Arabian riyal is worth approximately 0.27 US dollars.
~ strengthen
The peso strengthened on the foreign exchanges.
~ come under pressure
The pound came under pressure against the dollar.
~ close, open
The pound closed yesterday at 1.4130 dollars.
~ be fixed/pegged to
Many emerging countries have their currencies pegged to the dollar.
~ value
The dollar value of the stock rose to $11.5 billion.
~ terms
The rise in government spending was equivalent to only 9% in dollar terms.
~ exchange rate
All prices are based on the South African rand exchange rate.
~ traveller's cheques
sterling traveller's cheques
~ equivalent
She was paid the dollar equivalent of £10 000.
against the ~
The yen has strengthened against the pound.
to the ~
How many dollars are there to the pound?
depreciation/devaluation/reflation of the ~
the devaluation of the peso in 1994
a run on the ~
The government increased interest rates to avoid a run on the rouble (= sudden large buying of the currency).
the value of the ~
a rise in the value of the euro
⇨ See also the note at PER CENT

currency *noun*

1 money used in a particular country
• ADJ. **domestic | foreign** *They prefer to be paid in foreign currencies.* | **common, international** *US dollars are considered common currency in international transactions.* | **local** *You can convert sterling into the local currency.* | **national | European, Japanese, etc. | single** *the single European currency* | **major | stable, strong** *A stable currency means that your savings do not diminish in value* | **weak | hard | convertible**
• VERB + CURRENCY **change, convert sth into/to, exchange | buy, sell | devalue | support** *The fund supports weak currencies.* | **raise** *The country needs to raise enough hard currency to pay for its oil imports.*
• CURRENCY + VERB **rise | fall | float, fluctuate** *For four months all major currencies floated.* ◇ *The system allows currencies to fluctuate within certain limits.*
• CURRENCY + NOUN **conversion, exchange, translation** *The disappointing profits are due to unfavourable currency translations.* | **markets** *They make money by speculating on the currency markets.* | **deal, dealing, speculation, trade, trading | dealer, speculator, trader | crisis | fluctuation, movements | devaluation | system | reform | reserves**
• PREP. **in … ~** *She had £50 in foreign currency.*

2 being believed/accepted/used by many people
• ADJ. **general, wide, widespread**
• VERB + CURRENCY **enjoy, have** *This belief has general currency.* | **gain** *How did the idea gain currency?*

current *noun*

1 continuous flowing movement of water
• ADJ. **fast, fast-flowing, powerful, strong | dangerous, treacherous | ocean | prevailing** *The prevailing current flows from east to west.* | **off-shore | tidal**
• CURRENT + VERB **flow | carry sb/sth, sweep sb/sth** *The strong current carried the boat downstream.* ◇ *She was swept away by the treacherous currents.*
• PREP. **against a/the ~** *He was swimming against the current.* **in a/the ~** *The boat was carried along in the current.* **with a/the ~** *It's easier to go with the current.*

2 flow of air
• ADJ. **warm | air** *Birds of prey use warm air currents to lift them high in the sky.*
• PHRASES **a current of air**

3 flow of electricity through a wire
• ADJ. **strong, weak | electric, electrical | alternating | direct | input, output**
• VERB + CURRENT **generate, produce | carry, pass, transmit | switch off/on** *Check all your wiring before switching on the current.*
• CURRENT + VERB **flow, pass through sth** *Measure the current flowing in the wire.*

curriculum *noun*

• ADJ. **broad, broadly-based, wide | narrow** *Teachers feel that the present curriculum is too narrow.* | **core** *Student choose from optional subjects in addition to the core curriculum.* | **national, official, statutory | mainstream** *His disability does not prevent him from following the mainstream curriculum.* | **academic, educational |**

higher education, primary, school, secondary, undergraduate | subject-based | English, geography, mathematics, etc. | hidden *Children learn many of their attitudes to life from the hidden curriculum at school.*

• VERB + CURRICULUM **design, develop, plan | broaden | introduce sth into** *Film Studies has been introduced into the curriculum as an option.* **| follow**

• CURRICULUM + NOUN **content, subjects | materials | design, development, planning | aims, objectives | change, reform, review**

• PREP. **across the ~** *Pupils use computers across the curriculum* (= in all or most subjects). **on a/the ~** *They all have to study French because it's on the curriculum.* **in a/the ~** *More room should be given to foreign languages in the curriculum.* **within a/the ~** *the balance of subjects within the curriculum*

• PHRASES **areas of the curriculum** *We cover all areas of the curriculum.*

curry *noun*

• ADJ. **hot | mild | beef, chicken, vegetable, etc. | Indian | madras, vindaloo, etc.**

• VERB + CURRY **eat, have | cook, make, prepare | go for** *Let's go for a curry after the film.*

• CURRY + NOUN **paste, powder | sauce | house** (= a restaurant that serves curry)

⇨ Special page at FOOD

curse *noun*

1 word used for expressing anger

• ADJ. **impatient**

• VERB + CURSE **mutter, utter**

2 wish that sth terrible will happen to sb

• VERB + CURSE **utter | put**

• PREP. **under a ~** *She thought that she must be under a curse.* **| ~ on/upon** *The witch is supposed to have put a curse on the house.*

curse *verb*

• ADV. **roundly | loudly | quietly, softly, under your breath** *He cursed under his breath as the spanner slipped.* **| inwardly, silently**

• PREP. **for** *I cursed her roundly for being late.*

• PHRASES **curse the day** *He was now cursing the day he had ever got involved in the project.* **curse your luck** *She cursed her luck that she had had to queue for so long.*

cursor *noun*

• VERB + CURSOR **insert, move, place, position, put**

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

curtail *verb*

• ADV. **drastically, seriously, severely** *His power has been severely curtailed.* **| further | abruptly**

curtain *noun*

1 fabric that covers a window

• VERB + CURTAIN **close, draw, open, pull (across/aside/back/closed)** *They sat in the dark with the curtains drawn.* ◇ *She pulled back the curtains, and sunlight streamed in.*

• CURTAIN + VERB **hang** *Heavy red velvet curtains hung either side of the huge window.* **| billow** *The curtains billowed madly as the wind caught them.*

• PREP. **behind a/the ~** *He took a bag from a shelf behind some curtains.*

2 in a theatre

• ADJ. **final**

• CURTAIN + VERB **go up, open, part, rise | close, come down, fall** *At the end of the play the curtain came down to tremendous applause.*

curve *noun*

• ADJ. **gentle, graceful, slight, smooth | sharp, tight** *The road went round in a tight curve.* **| wide | sensual, voluptuous** *the voluptuous curve of her hips* **| downward, upward**

• VERB + CURVE **form, make** *The seats were arranged to form a curve.*

• PREP. **in a ~** *The road follows the coast in a wide curve.*

curve *verb*

• ADV. **gently, slightly** *a gently curving stream* **| away, down, up** *The path curved down towards the village.*

• PREP. **around/round, towards, etc.** *The road curved away round the back of the hill.*

cushion *noun*

• ADJ. **plump, soft** *He sank back into the soft cushions of the sofa.* **| sofa**

• VERB + CUSHION **plump (up)** *She plumped up the sofa cushions before the guests arrived.*

• CUSHION + NOUN **cover**

• PREP. **on a/the ~** *I rested my elbow on a cushion.*

custard *noun*

• ADJ. **creamy, thick | thin | smooth | lumpy | banana, egg, vanilla**

• VERB + CUSTARD **make | pour | strain** *Strain the custard to remove lumps.*

• CUSTARD + VERB **thicken | set**

• CUSTARD + NOUN **powder | pie**

• PHRASES **and/with custard** *some apple pie and custard*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

custody *noun*

1 legal right/duty to take care of sb/sth

• ADJ. **child** *a bitter child custody dispute* **| joint, sole | safe** *If valuables are placed in the safe, the hotel is responsible for their safe custody.*

• VERB + CUSTODY **ask for, claim, demand, fight for, seek | award sb, give sb, grant sb** *The parents were given joint custody of the two children.* **| gain, get | have**

• CUSTODY + NOUN **battle, dispute | hearing**

• PREP. **~ of**

2 being guarded/kept in prison

• ADJ. **military, police** *The man died while in police custody.* **| protective** *The opposition leader has been taken into protective custody.*

• VERB + CUSTODY **be remanded in, be taken into** *A man has been remanded in custody charged with the murder of an eight-year-old girl.* **| be held in, be kept in, be/remain in | escape from | be released from**

• PREP. **in ~** *She will remain in custody while reports are prepared about her mental condition.* **out of ~** *trying to keep young people out of custody*

custom *noun*

• ADJ. **accepted, age-old, ancient, established, old, traditional | quaint | local | social**

• VERB + CUSTOM **follow, observe, respect** *They still follow the custom of pinning money to the bride's dress.* **| maintain, preserve, revive**

• CUSTOM + VERB **die out, disappear** *The custom died out in the nineteenth century.* **| prevail, survive** *These customs still prevail in remote areas.*

• PREP. **according to a/the ~, in accordance with (a/the ~)** *They poured wine round the trees in accordance* *with local custom.* **through ~** *The rules have grown up through custom and are not laid down by law.* | **~of**

- PHRASES **as is/was the custom** *People threw coins onto the stage, as was the custom.*

customer *noun*

- ADJ. **big, favoured, good, important, key, large, major** *They are one of our biggest customers.* ◇ *They organized an evening's entertainment for favoured customers.* | **long-standing, long-time, loyal** | **regular** | **current, existing** | **potential, prospective, would-be** *There are a large number of potential customers for the new product.* | **dissatisfied, unhappy** | **satisfied** *We like to think that we have satisfied customers.* | **domestic** | **external, outside** | **international, overseas** | **personal, private** | **business, commercial, corporate, industrial**
- VERB + CUSTOMER **have** | **deal with, serve** | **attract, entice, get** *It's a special offer to attract new customers.* | **lose** *We can't afford to lose any more customers.*
- CUSTOMER + NOUN **care, relations, service, support** *If you have a complaint, contact the customer care unit.* ◇ *Part of good customer relations is knowing how to deal with complaints.* | **account, order** | **agreement** *The terms of the guarantee will be set out in the customer agreement.* | **demand/demands, needs, requirements, specifications** *This cheaper model was produced in response to customer demand.* | **reaction** *The questionnaire is to test customer reaction to the new store design.* | **dissatisfaction, satisfaction** *They carried out a customer satisfaction survey.* | **loyalty** | **complaints, enquiries** | **survey** | **profile, records** | **base** *They are hoping that TV advertising will increase their customer base.*

customs *noun*

- ADJ. **French, UK, etc.**
- VERB + CUSTOMS **clear, go through** *We cleared customs by five o'clock.* ◇ *You will have to declare these goods when you go through customs.* | **wave sb through** *We were waved through customs without a pause.*
- CUSTOMS + NOUN **control/controls, regulations** *the removal of European customs controls* | **duty/duties** *We had to pay customs duties on the beer.* | **building, hall, post** *the customs post on the border* | **agent, man, officer, official, staff** | **authorities** | **formalities, procedures** | **declaration, document, documentation, form** *We had to fill out customs forms on the plane.* | **clearance** *We were waiting for the goods to receive customs clearance.*
- PREP. **at ~** *We got stopped and searched at the Italian customs.* **through ~**

cut *noun*

1 hole/opening made by cutting

- ADJ. **clean, neat**
- VERB + CUT **make** | **give** *a high-quality blade that gives a clean cut*
- PREP. **~in** *Using sharp scissors, make a small cut in the material.*

2 wound

- ADJ. **bad, deep, nasty** | **minor, small, superficial** *He's got a small cut on his finger.* | **clean**
- VERB + CUT **have** | **get, suffer** *She got a bad cut over her right eye.* | **clean** *Clean the cut and cover it to prevent infection.* | **bandage, cover, dress**
- CUT + VERB **heal** *A clean cut heals quickly.*
- PREP. **~on** *a cut on her hand* **~to** *One man was attacked and suffered cuts to his face.*
- PHRASES **cuts and bruises**

3 act of cutting sth

- ADJ. **hair**
- VERB + CUT **have** *I've made an appointment to have a hair cut.*

4 reduction

- ADJ. **big, deep, drastic, large, major, massive, real, savage, severe, sharp, significant, substantial, swingeing** | **government** | **financial** | **budget, defence, education, expenditure, interest-rate, job, pay, price, service, spending, staff, tax, wage** | **power** *They get a lot of power cuts because they have overhead wires.*
- QUANT. **round** *The company has announced a new round of job cuts.*
- VERB + CUT **make** *They are planning to make substantial cuts in the service.* | **announce, propose** *proposed tax cuts* | **suffer, take** *The staff have all had to take a cut in salary.*
- CUT + VERB **come into effect** *The cuts will come into effect next May.*
- PREP. **~in** *cuts in public spending*

5 piece of meat

- ADJ. **choice, expensive, good, lean** | **cheap** | **cold~s**
- PREP. **~of** *The recipe calls for a good lean cut of beef.*

6 share in the profits

- VERB + CUT **get, have, take** *By the time the organizers have had their cut, there won't be much left.*
- PREP. **~of** *He takes a cut of the profits.*

cut *verb*

1 with a knife/scissors, etc.

- ADV. **thick** *Make sure you cut the bread nice and thick.* | **thinly** | **cleanly** *Cut the stem cleanly, just beneath a leaf joint.* | **easily** *Sandstone cuts easily.* | **crossways, lengthways** *Cut the courgette in half lengthways.* | **away, down** *cutting down trees*
- PREP. **from** *They cut away all the dead branches from the tree.* **into** *She picked up the knife and cut into the meat.* ◇ *He cut the bread into thin slices.* **through** *I can't cut through this wood.*
- PHRASES **cut and paste** (*computing*) *You can cut and paste between different programs.* **cut sb/sth free** *Two survivors were cut free after being trapped for twenty minutes.* **cut sth into pieces** *Cut the cake into six pieces.* **cut sth in half/two** *She cut the loaf in two and gave me one of the halves.* **cut sth open** *She fell and cut her head open.*

2 reduce sth

- ADV. **considerably, drastically, significantly** | **short** *His career was cut short by injury.*
- VERB + CUT **try to** | **manage to** *We have managed to cut our costs quite drastically.* | **be forced to, have to**
- PREP. **by** *The department has to cut its spending by 30%.* **from, to** *The price has been cut from £250 to £175.*

PHRASAL VERBS

cut back

- ADV. **drastically, savagely, severely, significantly** *Social work services have been cut back drastically.*
- VERB + CUT BACK **be forced to, have to**
- PREP. **on** *Local authorities have been forced to cut back on expenditure.*

cut down

- ADV. **considerably, drastically** | **gradually**
- VERB + CUT DOWN **try to** | **manage to** | **advise sb to**
- PREP. **on** *I'm trying to cut down on fatty foods.*

cut sb/sth off

1 interrupt sb/sth

- ADV. **abruptly, suddenly** *His thoughts were abruptly cut off by a blinding flash of pain.*

2 prevent sb/sth leaving/reaching a place

- ADV. **completely, totally, utterly, wholly** | **effectively, largely, virtually**
- PREP. **from** *They were completely cut off from the outside world.*

cutback *noun*

- ADJ. **major, severe, sharp | budget, budgetary, economic, financial | government**
- VERB + CUTBACK **impose, make** *Many theatres are having to make major cutbacks.* | **announce**
- PREP. **~in** *a sharp cutback in military spending*

cutting *noun*

1 piece cut out from a newspaper
- ADJ. **newspaper, press** *She had kept all the press cuttings about the murder.*
- PREP. **~from** *a cutting from 'The Guardian'*

2 piece cut off from a plant
- ADJ. **leaf, root, stem**
- VERB + CUTTING **take**
- CUTTING + VERB **root, take** *After about four weeks you will be able to see whether the cuttings have taken.*
- PREP. **from a/the ~** *These plants are easy to propagate from leaf cuttings.* | **~ from** *Take cuttings from mature plants in the spring.*

cycle *noun*

1 series of events that happen repeatedly
- ADJ. **annual, daily, monthly, regular, seasonal, weekly** *the annual cycle of church festivals* | **complete, entire, whole** | **endless** *the endless cycle of birth, death and rebirth* | **natural** *Life is a natural cycle, just like the changing seasons.* | **vicious** *caught up in a vicious cycle of bingeing and dieting* | **lunar, solar** *the 76-year solar cycle* | **breeding, menstrual, reproductive** | **business, economic** | **water** *a diagram of the water cycle* | **life** *the life cycle of the butterfly*
- VERB + CYCLE **go through** *The European market is simply going through an economic cycle.* | **complete** *To complete the cycle, oxygen is necessary.* | **repeat**
- CYCLE + VERB **begin again** *Male and female adults mate, the female lays eggs, and the cycle begins all over again.* | **repeat (itself)** *This cycle of events continually repeats itself.*
- CYCLE + NOUN **length, time**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *at this point in the cycle* **per ~** *The number of young produced per breeding cycle varies from species to species.*
- PHRASES **part of the cycle (of sth)** *part of the cycle of birth and death*

2 bicycle
- ADJ. **motor** (also **motorcycle**), **pedal**
- VERB + CYCLE **ride**
- CYCLE + NOUN **ride, tour** *We're going for a cycle ride this afternoon.* | **helmet** | **lane, path, route, track** *Cars are not allowed in the cycle lanes.* | **race**
- PREP. **by ~** *They completed their journey by cycle.* **on a/the ~** *lots of people in cars or on cycles*

cyclone *noun*

- ADJ. **violent | tropical**
- CYCLONE + VERB **hit sth, strike sth** *An exceptionally violent cyclone hit the town last night.* | **damage sth, destroy sth, devastate sth** *In 1974 Darwin was devastated by Cyclone Tracy.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *trees damaged in the cyclone*
- PHRASES **the eye of the cyclone** (= the central point)

cymbal *noun*

- ADJ. **clashing, crashing**
- VERB + CYMBAL **clash, hit**
- CYMBAL + NOUN **crash** *The piece ends with a cymbal crash.*
- PHRASES **a clash/crash of cymbals**

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

cynical *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem, sound** *I hope I don't sound unduly cynical.* | **become, get, grow | remain**
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, very** *his deeply cynical attitude* | **completely, totally, utterly | overly, unduly | a bit, fairly, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat**
- PREP. **about** *I'm a little cynical about her motives.*

cynicism *noun*

- ADJ. **bitter, weary** *He spoke in a tone of weary cynicism.* | **widespread**
- QUANT. **hint, note, touch, trace** *There was not a trace of cynicism in his voice.*
- PREP. **with ~** *She viewed his new interest in her with cynicism.* | **~ about** *There is now widespread cynicism about the political system.*

Dd

daft *adj., adv.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **act, talk** (*both informal*) *Don't talk daft!*

• ADV. **bloody** (*taboo*), **really** | **completely, plain** *The decision is just plain daft.* | **a bit, pretty, rather**

dagger *noun*

• ADJ. **curved** | **ceremonial, jewelled, ornamental**

• VERB + DAGGER **draw** | **sheathe**

dam *noun*

• ADJ. **hydroelectric**

• VERB + DAM **build, construct** | **breach** *The dam has been breached and there is a danger of flooding.*

• DAM + VERB **burst** *The dam burst and the valley was flooded.* | **hold sth back** *The dam holds back the water.*

• PREP. **~ across/on** *a large hydroelectric dam on the River Danube*

damage *noun*

1 harm/injury

• ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, serious, severe, substantial, untold** | **minor, slight** | **extensive, widespread** | **irreparable, irreversible, lasting, long-term, permanent** *The incident did permanent damage to relations between the two countries.* | **criminal, malicious, wilful** *He was prosecuted for criminal damage to a vehicle.* | **accidental** *The insurance policy covers the building for accidental damage.* | **emotional, environmental, mechanical, psychological, structural** | **brain** *She suffered serious brain damage at birth.*

• VERB + DAMAGE **cause, do, inflict** *The earthquake caused widespread damage to property.* ◇ *They inflicted severe psychological damage on their opponents.* | **suffer** | **repair** | **prevent**

• PREP. **~ by** *The palace suffered extensive damage by fire in 1825.* **~ from** *Crops are sprayed with chemicals to prevent damage from insects.* **~ to** *lasting damage to the environment*

• PHRASES **the cost/value of the damage** *The cost of the damage is estimated at around $2 billion.* **the extent of the damage** *At the moment it is difficult to assess the extent of the damage.*

2 damages money you can claim from sb

• ADJ. **heavy, substantial**

• VERB + DAMAGES **incur, suffer** *damages incurred by the unfairly sacked workers* | **claim, seek, sue (sb) for** *He decided to sue the company for damages.* | **assess** *The court will assess the damages.* | **apportion, award (sb)** | **pay (sb)** | **obtain, receive, recover, win** | **be liable for, be liable in** (*law*) *If goods are lost in transit, the carrier will be liable for damages.*

• DAMAGES + NOUN **action, claim** *A woman is to bring a civil damages action against the men she alleges murdered her son.* | **award**

• PREP. **in ~** *They are claiming £45 million in damages.* | **~ for** *He received damages for personal injury.* **~ of** *She was awarded damages of £90 000.*

• PHRASES **an action/a claim for damages** *The judge upheld her claim for damages against her former employer.*

damage *verb*

• ADV. **badly, seriously, severely** *The building was badly damaged by fire.* | **slightly** | **irreparably, permanently** *She may have damaged her health irreparably.*

damaging *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove** | **become**

• ADV. **deeply, extremely, gravely, highly, immensely, profoundly, seriously, severely, very** *This scandal could prove seriously damaging to the government.* | **quite, rather** | **possibly, potentially** | **positively** *These new measures will do nothing to raise school standards: they may be positively damaging.* | **economically, environmentally, politically, psychologically** *Building the proposed new road would be environmentally damaging.*

• PREP. **to** *Smoking is damaging to health.*

damp *noun*

• ADJ. **penetrating, rising**

• VERB + DAMP **have, suffer from** *The house had got woodworm and rising damp.* | **check for, look for** | **find** *The surveyor found damp in the kitchen.*

damp *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, smell** *The room smelled damp.* | **become, get** | **remain** | **make sth** *The rain had made the walls damp.*

• ADV. **very** | **a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly** *Our clothes had got a bit damp.*

dance *noun*

1 series of steps/movements to music

• ADJ. **little** | **fast, lively** | **slow, stately** | **traditional** | **ritual** | **ballroom, folk, square** | **rain** | **mating** *pigeons performing their mating dance*

• VERB + DANCE **dance, do, perform** *In her delight she got up and did a little dance.* | **have** *May I have the next dance?* ◇ *I felt like having a dance.* | **like** *Would you like a dance?* | **sit out** *She had to sit out the last dance because of a twisted ankle.*

• DANCE + NOUN **music, rhythm** | **routine, sequence, step** | **class, teacher** | **floor, hall, studio**

2 social meeting with dancing

• ADJ. **barn** | **school** | **dinner, supper, tea**

• VERB + DANCE **go to** | **hold**

• DANCE + NOUN **band**

• PREP. **at a/the ~** *They met at a dance.*

3 dancing as a form of art/entertainment

• ADJ. **contemporary, modern** | **classical**

• DANCE + NOUN **company, troupe**

• PHRASES **a school of dance, a style of dance**

dance *verb*

• ADV. **almost** | **wildly** *They danced wildly down the street.* | **about, around, away** | **together**

• VERB + DANCE **ask sb to** | **want to**

• PREP. **for** *He was almost dancing for joy.* **to** *We danced to the music.* **with** *Will you dance with me?*

dancer *noun*

• ADJ. **brilliant, excellent, good, great, wonderful** *He's a brilliant dancer!* | **professional** | **trained** | **leading, principal** *a principal dancer with the Royal Ballet* | **male** | **ballet, ballroom, classical, clog, disco, flamenco, go-go, tap** *She's a very good flamenco dancer.*

• DANCER + VERB **perform (sth)** *dancers performing in the street ◇ classical dancers performing modern work*
⇨ Note at JOB

dancing *noun*

• ADJ. **wild** | **ballet, ballroom, belly, country, disco, flamenco, folk, line, maypole, morris, sequence, traditional** *She does line dancing and yoga in the evenings.*
• VERB + DANCING **do, go** *They liked to go dancing every Saturday night.*
• DANCING + NOUN **display** | **lesson** *She's taking dancing lessons.* | **school** | **career** | **partner**
• PHRASES **dancing in the streets** *There was dancing in the streets when we heard that the war was over.*

danger *noun*

• ADJ. **big, considerable, enormous, extreme, grave, great, mortal, obvious, real, serious, terrible** *They are in grave danger of losing everything. ◇ She knew that she was now in mortal danger. ◇ There is a real danger that the bridge will collapse from the weight of traffic.* | **acute, immediate, imminent, impending** *They are in imminent danger of attack.* | **constant, ever-present** *the ever-present danger of crime* | **long-term** | **inherent** *There are inherent dangers in the system.* | **slight** | **possible, potential** | **personal** | **physical** | **public** *The pollution from the factory is a public danger.*
• VERB + DANGER **be exposed to, face** *On their journey across the desert they faced danger of all sorts.* | **be fraught with, involve** *The task was fraught with danger.* | **cause** *He was convicted of causing danger to other road users.* | **pose** *the dangers posed by the possession of nuclear weapons* | **be aware of, foresee, identify, realize, recognize, see, sense, smell, spot** *No one foresaw the danger. ◇ The animal seemed to sense danger.* | **run** *A company must keep developing or it runs the danger of stagnating.* | **court** *Some people take crazy risks because they get a thrill from courting danger.* | **avert** *Vigorous action is needed to avert the danger of runaway inflation.* | **lessen, minimize, reduce** | **avoid, escape** | **ignore**
• DANGER + VERB **exist, face sb, lie (in sth), lurk, threaten sb** *One of the biggest dangers facing us may be climate change. ◇ The danger lies in becoming too complacent. ◇ Where would they hide if danger threatened?* | **arise, come (from sb/sth)** *The biggest danger to gorillas comes from humans.* | **pass** *We waited until all danger had passed.*
• DANGER + NOUN **area, spot, zone** *Despite the high levels of radiation, people are now moving back into the danger zone.* | **signals, signs** *He recognized the danger signs and gave up smoking.* | **money** *The divers were paid danger money for working in such hazardous conditions.* | **man** *The United manager believes Figo is the opposition's danger man.*
• PREP. **in ~** *We weren't in any danger.* **in ~ of** *The plant is now in danger of extinction.* **out of ~** *They ran until they were out of danger.* | **~ from, ~ of** *We're in serious danger of becoming a nation of worriers.* **~ to** *There is no danger to the public from these chemicals.*
• PHRASES **be off/on the danger list** *He was admitted to hospital in critical condition, but is now off the danger list.*

dangerous *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, prove, seem, sound** | **become, get** *The situation could get quite dangerous.* | **remain** | **make sth** *The ice is making the roads very dangerous tonight.* | **consider sth, regard sth as**
• ADV. **bloody** (*taboo*), **exceedingly, extremely, highly, incredibly, really, terribly, very** *a highly dangerous situation* | **increasingly** | **a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly** | **possibly, potentially** | **downright, positively** *It's a risky idea, if not downright dangerous!* | **inherently** | **notoriously** *This route through the mountains is notoriously dangerous.* | **politically** *Raising income tax is considered politically dangerous.*
• PREP. **for** *This treatment is extremely dangerous for the mother.* **to** *not dangerous to humans*

dare *verb*

• ADV. **hardly, scarcely** *I hardly dared breathe.*
• VERB + DARE **wouldn't** *I wouldn't dare go by myself.*

daring *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel** | **become, get, grow** *He had grown more daring.* | **consider sth, think sth** *Her behaviour was considered very daring at the time.*
• ADV. **greatly, very** *Greatly daring, he covered her hand with his own.* | **a little, quite**

dark *noun*

• ADJ. **pitch** *I fumbled for the light switch in the pitch dark.* | **gathering** *We could just make out some figures in the gathering dark.*
• PREP. **after ~** *The girls weren't allowed out after dark.* **before ~** *We'd better try and finish this job before dark.* **in the ~** *I hate getting up in the dark.*
• PHRASES **afraid of the dark** *Many small children are afraid of the dark.*

dark *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look** | **get, go, grow** *It gets dark at about six o'clock. ◇ Suddenly the whole sky went dark. ◇ As it grew dark, they gathered round the fire.* | **remain, stay**
• ADV. **very** | **completely** | **almost, nearly** *It's only three o'clock and it's nearly dark already.* | **quite, rather**

darkness *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, pitch, total** *The building was in pitch darkness.* | **deep, inky** *the inky darkness of the tunnel* | **gathering** *It was becoming impossible to see the map in the gathering darkness.*
• VERB + DARKNESS **be plunged into** *The electricity failed and the house was plunged into darkness.* | **lie in, stand in** *The valley lay in darkness.*
• DARKNESS + VERB **come, close in, descend, fall, thicken** *We arrived at the village just as darkness fell.* | **lift** *waiting for the darkness to lift*
• PREP. **in (the) ~** *The building was in darkness. ◇ Her eyes seemed to glow in the darkness.* **into the ~** *The car disappeared into the darkness.* **out of the ~** *A figure appeared out of the darkness.*
• PHRASES **the hours of darkness** *The bombing took place during the hours of darkness.* **under cover of darkness** *They moved about under cover of darkness.*

dash *noun*

1 sudden quick movement
• ADJ. **quick, sudden** | **frantic, headlong, mad** | **final, last-minute**
• VERB + DASH **make**
• PREP. **~ across** *We had to make a frantic dash across town to get our plane* **~ for** *He made a sudden dash for the door.* **~ from, ~ through** *The book starts with a quick dash through the country's history.* **~ to** *He made a 200-mile dash to the hospital when a kidney donor became available.*

2 small amount of sth
• VERB + DASH **add** *Add a dash of lemon juice.*
• PREP. **~ of** *The food is European with a dash of Morocco.*

dash *verb*

1 go/run quickly

- ADV. **frantically | about, around, back, forward, off, out** *I've got to dash off now.*
- VERB + DASH **have to, must** *I must dash—I'm late.*
- PREP. **across, along, down, in, into, out of, through, to, up** *He dashed frantically across the road.*

2 destroy sth

- ADV. **quickly | cruelly** *Her hopes were cruelly dashed when her parents refused to let her go.*

data *noun*

- ADJ. **accurate, reliable | comprehensive, detailed, extensive | raw** *We have amassed the raw data and are about to begin analysing it.* | **factual, hard** *There is no hard data to support these theories.* | **empirical, experimental, numerical, observational, scientific, statistical | demographic, environmental, financial, geological, historical, technical**
- QUANT. **item, piece** *One vital item of data was missing from the table.* | **mass, set** *Special software is needed to manipulate the mass of data.* ◇ *Although we were using the same set of data, we obtained different results.*
- VERB + DATA **acquire, amass, capture, collect, gather, get, obtain** *We need to collect more data before we can do any more work.* | **enter, feed in | have, hold, record, store** *They are not allowed to hold data on people's private finances.* | **access, retrieve | analyse, examine, interpret, look at, study | handle, manage, manipulate, process** *The computer can manipulate massive amounts of data.* | **exchange, share, transfer | present (sb with) | provide (sb with)** *The government departments refused to provide the data that we required.*
- DATA + VERB **be derived from sth** *The data derived from this project has vastly increased our knowledge of how genes work.* | **indicate sth, reflect sth, show sth, suggest sth** *Data indicates that most crime is committed by young males.* ◇ *This data reflects the magnitude of the problem.* | **support sth**
- DATA + NOUN **acquisition, capture, collection | entry, input | storage | access, retrieval | analysis, handling, management, manipulation, processing | exchange, interchange, transfer, transmission | protection, security | source | archive, bank** (also **databank**), **base** (also **database**), **file | system**
- PREP. **in the ~** *We have found some very interesting things in the data.* | **~ about** *Data about patients is only released with their permission.* **~ for** *We have no data for southern Spain.* **~ from** *My aim is to synthesize data from all the surveys.* **~ on** *data on the effects of pollution*
- PHRASES **the acquisition/handling/storage, etc. of data, a source of data**

database *noun*

- ADJ. **large | comprehensive | national | computer, computerized, electronic | online**
- VERB + DATABASE **create, establish, set up** *We're trying to create our own computerized database.* | **add to, update** *The database is updated monthly.* | **access**
- DATABASE + VERB **contain sth** *The new database contains 200 000 images.*
- DATABASE + NOUN **application, engine, package, server, software, system | technology | creation, design, development | management | access | administrator, user**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *The information is stored on a large database.* | **~ of** *a very large database of information*

date *noun*

1 particular day

- ADJ. **earlier, earliest** *She suggested an earlier date for the meeting.* | **later, latest | exact, firm, specific** *I can't give you specific dates.* | **provisional, tentative | unspecified | significant** *7th May, 1999 was a very significant date in my life.* | **closing** *The closing date for applications is May 22.* | **expiry** *What's the expiry date on your credit card?* | **delivery | due** *The baby was born exactly on its due date.* | **birth | anniversary | sell-by** *This yogurt is past its sell-by date.* | **cut-off** *Historians disagree on the cut-off date for the medieval period.* | **commencement, completion** *The building was not finished by the completion date.*
- VERB + DATE **agree (on), arrange, decide (on), fix, set** *Can we fix dates for the holiday?* ◇ *Has a date been fixed for the meeting?* .
- PREP. **after a/the ~** *We cannot accept applications received after this date.* **at a… ~** *The election is scheduled to take place at an unspecified date in the autumn.* **before a/the ~, by a/the ~** *The building must be finished by the date agreed.* **from a/the ~** *The agreement runs from that date.* **on a/the ~** *I've got two meetings on that date.* | **~ for** *We need to set a date for the wedding.* **~ of** *the date of the election*
- PHRASES **the/your big date** *Joe's getting ready for his big date on 3rd March, when he gets married.* **at a/some future date** *More money will be made available at some future date.* **at a later date** *We can do that at a later date.* **date of birth** *Please give your name, address and date of birth.* **of recent date** *The foundations are Roman, but the rest of the building is of more recent date.* **put a date on/to sth** *It's difficult to put a date on when this neighbourhood became fashionable.* **today's date** *What's today's date?*

2 appointment to meet sb socially

- ADJ. **dinner, lunch | blind** (= a date with sb you have not met before) *She met her husband on a blind date.* | **hot** (= exciting) *She had a hot date and wanted to look her best.*
- VERB + DATE **have** *I've got a date with Camilla on Friday night.* | **make** *We must make a date to have lunch.* | **keep** *She wanted to arrive in time to keep her date.* | **break, cancel** *He was late, and ended up breaking their dinner date.*
- PREP. **on a ~** *She's out on a date with her new boyfriend.* | **~ with**

date *verb*

- ADV. **accurately, precisely** *It has not yet been possible to date the paintings accurately.*

dated *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become**
- ADV. **hopelessly, very | a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** *These ideas seem a bit dated now.* | **curiously** *This drama series is supposedly modern yet its characters live in a curiously dated world.*

daughter *noun*

- ADJ. **baby, newborn | little, small, young | teenage | grown-up | only | eldest, first-born, middle, oldest, youngest | elder, younger | illegitimate, legitimate | dutiful, good | long-lost | married, unmarried**
- VERB + DAUGHTER **have** *They've got three young daughters.* | **bear** (*formal*), **give birth to** *His wife recently gave birth to a daughter.* | **bring up** *Living alone and trying to bring up a small daughter is no easy task.*
- DAUGHTER + VERB **grow up**

dawn *noun*

1 early morning

- ADJ. **grey**
- VERB + DAWN **greet** (*literary*) *He always got up to greet the dawn.*

NOTE

Days of the week

last, next, that, this (coming) ~
~ last/next (week)
The concert is this coming Wednesday.
Are you free next Thursday?
She's arriving on Friday next.
the ~ before, the previous ~
I'd been paid the previous Friday.
the following ~
She was due to start work the following Monday.
~ of last/next/that/this week
He arrived on Monday of last week.
the ~ before last
We came here the Tuesday before last.
~ week, a week on ~
I've bought tickets for Thursday week (= for the performance that is seven days after Thursday).
the first/second/third/last ~ in/of the month
The museum is free on the last Sunday of every month.
alternate ~s, each, every ~
The competition is fixed for alternate Wednesdays.
all day ~
The restaurant is closed all day Saturday.
~ afternoon, evening, morning, night, etc.
I'll see you on Friday evening.
Saturday lunchtimes are very busy in the restaurant.
first thing (on) ~
I'll post it first thing on Monday morning.
late (on) ~
The crash occurred late on Tuesday night.
one ~ (*written*)
One Saturday morning, without telling anyone of my plan, I boarded a bus and headed out.
spend ~
She liked to spend Saturday afternoon shopping.
see sb ~ (*informal*)
So I'll see you Monday, then?
manage ~ (*informal*)
I could manage (= meet you on) *Tuesday, say 11.30?*
open/closed (on) ~
We're open every day except Sunday.
~ arrive, come, dawn (*written*)
Monday dawned still and misty, with a promise of autumn sunshine.
on (a) ~
A public meeting is to be held on Wednesday at the town hall.
She was born on a Sunday.
I like to just relax on Saturdays.
between ~ and ~
(from) ~ to ~
The ticket office is open until 5 p.m. Monday to Friday.
by, no later than ~
Entries are to arrive no later than Monday, 1 October.
for ~
A special meeting is arranged for Friday 17 May.
~'s deadline, election, game, meeting, performance, race, etc.
He was not present at Tuesday's meeting.

• DAWN + VERB **break, come (up)** *Dawn was breaking over the valley.*

• DAWN + NOUN **light, sky** | **chorus** *The dawn chorus* (= birds singing) *woke Robyn at five.* | **patrol, raid** *Ammunition was seized during a dawn raid on the flat.*

• PREP. **at ~** *That morning, she rose at dawn.* **before ~, by ~, till/until ~, towards ~**

• PHRASES **(at) the crack of dawn** (= as soon as it begins to be light), **from dawn to dusk** *He works from dawn to dusk, and often well into the night.*

2 beginning

• ADJ. **false** *This sudden success may prove to be a false dawn* (= not the beginning of continued success). | **new**

• PREP. **~ of** *the dawn of civilization/history/a new era* ◇ *Let's think back to the dawn of time.*

dawn *verb*

1 begin

• PHRASES **dawn bright, sunny, clear, cold, etc.** *The day dawned bright and sunny.*

2 become clear

• ADV. **suddenly** | **gradually, slowly** *It slowly dawned on me that he might have been mistaken.* | **eventually, finally**

• VERB + DAWN **begin to** *It was beginning to dawn on her that she had been fooled.*

• PREP. **on** *The dreadful truth finally dawned on me.*

day *noun*

1 period of 24 hours

• ADJ. **the following, (the) next** | **the previous** | **the other** *I was in your area the other day* (= recently). | **one, some** *I hope we meet again some day.* | **the very** *It happened on the very day* (= the same day) *that Kemp was murdered.* ◇ *The parcel arrived the very next day.* | **auspicious, big, eventful, field, historic, memorable, red-letter, special** *The tabloid press had a field day with the latest government scandal.* | **fateful, sad** *those killed in the hail of bullets fired on that fateful day* | **Christmas, Mother's, etc.** | **feast, holy** | **election, opening, market, pay, polling, sports, visiting, wedding** | **rest, school, study, training** *the pattern of the school day*

• DAY + VERB **pass** *He thought of her less as the days passed.*

• PREP. **by the ~** *He's getting stronger by the day.* **for a/the ~** *They stayed for ten days.* **in a/the ~** *We hope to finish the job in a few days.* **on the ~ (of)** *On the day of his wedding he was very nervous.* | **~ of** *It was the day of the big match.*

2 time between sunrise and sunset

• ADJ. **beautiful, bright, fine, glorious, hot, nice, sunny, warm** | **cold, grey, rainy, windy** | **autumn, spring, summer/summer's, winter/winter's** *a fine summer's day* | **fun, good, great, happy, lovely, wonderful** *Memories of happy days on the hills never fade.* | **bad** *On a bad day chaos reigns and nobody can predict when a plane will leave.* | **full** *I knew I had a full day's driving ahead of me.*

• VERB + DAY **spend** *We spent the day gardening.*

• DAY + VERB **break, dawn** *As day dawned I found her already hard at work.*

• PREP. **by ~** *We travelled at night and rested by day.* **during the ~, for a/the ~** *We went to the seaside for the day.*

• PHRASES **all day (long), at the end of the day, day and night, one of those days** *It's been one of those days when everything's gone wrong.*

3 hours of the day when you work

• ADJ. **working** | **bad, busy, hard, long, tiring** *a hard day at the office* | **good, quiet** | **7-hour, 8-hour, etc.** *a 9-hour working day*

• PHRASES **a good day's work**

4 (often **days**) particular period of time

• ADJ. **early, former, old, olden** *in the early days of the cinema* | **school, student, young** *in his younger days* | **golden, happy, heady** *the heady days of the 'swinging sixties'* | **dark** *the dark days of recession*

• PREP. **in sb's ~** *Things were very different in my grandfather's day.* **of the ~** *the government of the day* **since the ~s of** *Much has changed since the days of my youth.*

• PHRASES **gone are the days when …** *Gone are the days when you could do a week's shopping and still have* *change from £20.* **the bad/good old days** *That was in the bad old days of rampant inflation.* **in this day and age, in those days, the present day** (= the situation that exists in the world now) *a study of European drama, from Ibsen to the present day* **these days** *Kids grow up so quickly these days.* **those were the days** (= used to suggest that a time in the past was better than now)

daylight *noun*

- ADJ. **broad, full** *He was robbed in broad daylight.* | **natural** *I prefer to work in natural daylight.*
- VERB + DAYLIGHT **let in** *The thin curtains let in the daylight.* | **shut out** *The shutters were closed to keep out the daylight.* | **emerge into** *The prisoners emerged, blinking, into daylight.*
- DAYLIGHT + VERB **filter through sth, flood in, penetrate sth** *A little daylight was filtering through the curtains.* ◇ *He drew back the curtains and the daylight flooded in.* ◇ *The daylight penetrated to the far corners of the room.* | **break** *Towards 6 a.m. daylight broke.* | **fade** *The evening turned cool as daylight faded.*
- DAYLIGHT + NOUN **hours** *The public has access during daylight hours.*
- PREP. **before ~** *She was up before daylight.* **by ~** *By daylight the fire was almost under control.* **in ~** *I can see better in daylight.* **into the ~** *She went back out into the daylight.*
- PHRASES **the hours of daylight** *The machines roar incessantly during the hours of daylight.*

daytime *noun*

- DAYTIME + NOUN **phone number, telephone number** | **television** | **temperature** | **hours**
- PREP. **during the ~, in the ~** *Resist the temptation to nap in the daytime.*

dazed *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** *She looked dazed and frightened.* | **leave sb** *The punch left him dazed and bleeding.*
- ADV. **almost** | **half** | **a bit, a little, slightly** *I still felt a little dazed.*
- PREP. **by** *half dazed by shock*

dead *adj.*

- VERBS **be, lie** *His wife lay dead beside him.* | **look** | **sham** *The animal will sometimes escape danger by shamming dead.* | **drop** *He just dropped dead one day in his garden.* | **shoot sb, strike sb** *Gunmen shot dead a policeman.* ◇ *She had been struck dead by lightning.* | **find sb** *The woman was found dead with a rope round her neck.* | **declare sb, pronounce sb** *She was declared dead on arrival at the hospital.*
- ADV. **quite** *I'm afraid he's quite dead.*
- PHRASES **dead and buried** (*figurative*) *In ten years he'll be dead and buried as a politician.* **dead and gone** *That won't happen until long after I'm dead and gone.* **dead or alive** *We didn't know whether the fish was dead or alive.* **more dead than alive** *Poor child, she looks more dead than alive.*

deadline *noun*

- ADJ. **strict, tight**
- VERB + DEADLINE **have, work to** *We're working to a very tight deadline.* | **impose, set** *The deadline set by the High Court is Monday 3rd March.* | **extend** *We're asking them to extend the deadline.* | **meet** *It will be a struggle to meet the deadline.* | **miss**
- DEADLINE + VERB **approach** *She began to panic as the deadline approached.* | **expire, pass** *The Wednesday deadline passed without any communication from the rebel leader.*
- PREP. **before a/the ~, by a/the ~** *I must get this report finished by tomorrow's deadline.* | **~ for** *The deadline for entries is noon Thursday.*

deadlock *noun*

- ADJ. **complete** | **political**
- VERB + DEADLOCK **end in, reach** *The negotiations ended in deadlock.* ◇ *The strike appeared to have reached a deadlock.* | **break, resolve**
- PREP. **in ~** *The negotiations were adjourned in deadlock last week.* | **~ between** *the deadlock between striking workers and their employer* **~ in** *The summit called for an end to the deadlock in the peace talks.* **~ over** *The government has called new talks in an attempt to break the deadlock over the issue of redundancy money.*
- PHRASES **a state of deadlock** *Talks between the two sides remain in a state of complete deadlock.*

deaf *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **be born** *Their child was born deaf.* | **become, end up, go** *He eventually went deaf.* | **remain** *She remained deaf until she died.* | **leave sb, make sb** *Standing next to the machine all day left her deaf in one ear.*
- ADV. **very** | **profoundly** (*technical*), **stone, totally** *Many of these children are profoundly deaf.* ◇ *It's no good shouting—he's stone deaf.* | **a little, partially, rather, slightly** *She spoke loudly because her mother was a little deaf.* | **chronically** *helping chronically deaf patients*
- PREP. **~ to** (*figurative*) *The committee remained deaf to our suggestions.*
- PHRASES **deaf in one ear**

deal *noun*

- ADJ. **fair, good** | **major** *They are hoping to clinch a major deal to supply computers to the army.* | **exclusive** *The TV station has signed an exclusive deal to show all United's home games.* | **lucrative** | **five-year, etc.** | **long-term** | **compromise** | **cut-price** *The company are offering cut-price deals on many flights.* | **shady** *He has been mixed up in several shady deals with arms dealers.* | **package** *The union accepted a package deal including higher pension and longer holiday allowance.* | **business, financial, political, trade** | **pay, sponsorship** | **arms, weapons** | **two-book, three-film, etc.** *The band signed a two-album deal with a record company.*
- VERB + DEAL **agree, arrange, close, complete, conclude, cut** (*informal*), **do, make, negotiate, reach, seal, sign, strike** *Management and unions have agreed a new deal on pay and productivity.* ◇ *I'll make a deal with you—I'll work evenings if you'll work weekends.* | **clinch, get, secure, win** *Nurses have taken to the streets to get a fair deal from the government.* | **have** *She has a lucrative deal with a cosmetics company.* | **pull out of** *Britain pulled out of the deal because of rising costs.* | **scupper** *Any sponsorship deal would be scuppered if Jones misses the Olympics.* | **offer** (sb), **propose** | **accept** *Staff have accepted a deal offering them a 2% share of profits.* | **reject**
- DEAL + VERB **go ahead** *The pay deal will not now go ahead.* | **fall apart, fall through** *The deal fell through when the author received a more attractive offer.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *They took over the company in a £750 000 deal.* **under a/the ~** *Under the deal, you save money if you repay the loan early.* | **~ between** *a deal between France and Spain* **~ from** *You may get a better deal from another bank.* **~ on** *I got a very good deal on my new car.* **~ over** *The unions are ready to do a deal over pay.* **~ with** *The company has done a deal with the catering staff.*
- PHRASES **get/have a bad/raw/rotten/rough deal** *Immigrants often get a bad deal when it comes to pay.* **get/have a fair/square deal** *The union tries to get a square deal for all its members.* **part of the deal** *Increased holiday allowance is part of the deal.* **the terms of the deal** *Under*

the terms of the deal, the band has to make two albums a year.
⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

deal *verb*

- ADV. **directly**
- PREP. **in** *The shop deals in second-hand books.* **with** *Our factory deals directly with its customers.*

PHRASAL VERB

deal with sth

- ADV. **quickly, speedily | at length, fully** *This topic is dealt with at greater length in the following chapter.* | **effectively | fairly, properly** *You have not dealt fairly with me.* | **easily** *Not all complaints are so easily dealt with.* | **separately** *The two issues should be dealt with separately.* | **together**
- PHRASES **a way of dealing with sth** *We discussed different ways of dealing with the problem.*

dealer *noun*

- ADJ. **licensed** *It is always a good idea to sell through a licensed dealer.* | **reputable** *Always buy from a reputable dealer.* | **shady, unscrupulous | antique/antiques, arms, art, car, drug**
- PREP. **through a/the ~** *She sold the painting through a London art dealer.* | **~ in** *a dealer in antiques*

⇨ Note at JOB

dealings *noun*

- ADJ. **extensive | personal | day-to-day** *The new arrangements will help the banks in their ordinary day-to-day dealings.* | **future | corrupt, fraudulent, illegal, underhand | business, commercial, financial**
- VERB + DEALINGS **have** *They had extensive dealings with officials in Rome.*
- PREP. **in your ~ with** *We need to be very careful in our dealings with these distressed young people.*

death *noun*

- ADJ. **early, premature, untimely** *The president's untimely death has thrown the country into chaos.* | **sudden, unexpected | immediate, instant | quick | slow | approaching, imminent, impending | certain** *He had been miraculously saved from almost certain death.* | **terrible | tragic** *the tragic death of their son* | **mysterious, suspicious** *Police are not treating the death as suspicious.* | **natural, unnatural | accidental** *a verdict of accidental death* | **violent** *Police report a decrease in violent deaths.* | **painful | cot, road | living** *(figurative) the living death of captivity*
- VERB + DEATH **bring, cause, lead to, mean, result in** *the drivers who bring death to our roads ◇ Poor living conditions can lead to early death. ◇ Touching the wires means instant death. ◇ The brutal attack resulted in the man's death.* | **die, face, meet** *She died a slow and painful death. ◇ He met his death two years later.* | **contemplate | risk | fear | approach, be near, near | cheat, escape** *He escaped death by inches when a tree fell on his tent.* | **save sb from | mourn** *mourning the death of their daughter* | **bleed to, burn to, choke to, freeze to, starve to | condemn sb to, sentence sb to | batter sb to, beat sb to, burn sb to, choke sb to, club sb to, crush sb to, flog sb to, hack sb to, kick sb to, put sb to, stab sb to, stone sb to, torture sb to, trample sb to | be punishable/punished by** *Incest was punishable by death.*
- DEATH + VERB **come, happen, occur** *Her death came at the age of 82. ◇ More deaths occur in winter.* | **result from** *deaths resulting from disease*
- DEATH + NOUN **rate** *The government's campaign aims to cut the death rate from heart attacks.* | **toll** *The death toll in the earthquake has been put at over one thousand.* | **penalty, sentence** *If found guilty of drug trafficking, the pair could face the death penalty.* | **row** *There are currently over 3 000 prisoners on death row.* | **certificate | benefit** *Your next of kin will receive death benefit if you die in an accident.* | **duties** *After the death duties had been paid, there was little money left for the family.* | **threat** *The actor has received death threats since appearing in the controversial film.* | **wish** *He took drugs as if he had some kind of death wish.* | **agonies, throes** *The snake was writhing in its death agonies. ◇ (figurative) By 1740 European feudalism was in its death throes.* | **bed** (also **deathbed**) *On his deathbed, my father made me promise not to sell the house.* | **squad** *Paramilitary death squads are rumoured to be operating in the area.* | **warrant** *(often figurative) By publicly condemning the terrorists he was signing his own death warrant.* | **camp** *He died as a prisoner of war in an enemy death camp.*
- PREP. **after (sb's) ~** *Do you believe in life after death?* **at ~** *(formal) The average age at death of plague victims was 14.* **before (sb's) ~, in ~** *His face looked more peaceful in death than it had during his last days.* **near (to) ~** *It was clear that the dog was near death.* **on sb's ~** *On Samuel's death, the farm passed to his sons.* | **~ by** *death by starvation* **~ from** *Two deaths from cholera have been reported.*
- PHRASES **cause of death** *The coroner said the cause of death was a stroke.* **a matter of life and/or death** *Fulfilling orders on time is a matter of life and death for a small company.* **sentence of death** *Four prisoners were under sentence of death.*

debatable *adj.*

- VERBS **be | remain**
- ADV. **highly, very** *This is a highly debatable point.* | **somewhat**

debate *noun*

1 discussion

- ADJ. **considerable | fierce, heated, intense, lively, vigorous** *There has been heated debate about whether the film should be allowed.* | **wider** *You cannot separate unemployment from the wider debate about the economy.* | **public** *Television actually encourages public debate about such issues.* | **political**
- VERB + DEBATE **have | contribute to** *Many leading charities have contributed to the debate on world poverty.* | **encourage, promote** *A healthy society promotes vigorous debate.* | **provoke, spark off** *This accident has sparked off an intense debate on road safety.* | **stifle** *He accused the government of trying to stifle debate.* | **lose, win** *The environmentalists seem to have lost the debate over the building of this road.* | **be a matter for, be open to** *The benefits of the new law are open to debate.*
- DEBATE + VERB **rage, take place** *A debate about safety is taking place in schools everywhere.*
- PREP. **under ~** *The issue is still under debate.* | **~ about/on/over** *the debate on the environment* **~ among** *the debate among academics* **~ between, ~ surrounding** *the debate surrounding contemporary art* **~ with**
- PHRASES **the subject of debate** *The proposed changes to the law have been the subject of much debate.*

2 a formal discussion

- ADJ. **brief | lengthy, long | acrimonious, fierce, heated, lively, stormy** *a stormy debate in the House of Commons* | **congressional, parliamentary** *a parliamentary debate on the fishing industry*
- VERB + DEBATE **have, hold** *We had a brief debate about whether or not to accept the offer. ◇ The union holds debates for students.* | **participate in, speak in, take part in** *Do you ever speak in debates?* | **open** *The prime minister will open the debate.* | **close | lose, win** *The government lost the debate in the House of Commons.*

- PREP. **during/in a/the~ | ~ about/on** *Many of these points were raised during the debate on prison reform.*

debate *verb*

- ADV. **fully, properly, seriously, thoroughly | fiercely, hotly** *The issue is still being hotly debated.* | **openly, publicly** *The question of security needs to be debated publicly.* | **at length, endlessly, extensively**
- PREP. **with** *a presidential candidate debating with his opponent ◇ He sat there debating with himself what to do.*
- PHRASES **be widely debated** *The report has been widely debated in the industry.*

debit *verb*

- ADV. **automatically**
- PREP. **from** *The money will be debited from your account.* **with** *Your current account is automatically debited with the amount of your purchase.*

debris *noun*

- ADJ. **flying** *She was hit on the head by flying debris.* | **food, plant, rock** *These worms feed on plant debris.* | **garden, industrial, volcanic**
- QUANT. **piece | heap, pile**
- VERB + DEBRIS **scatter, shower** *The tank exploded, scattering debris all over the field.* | **clear (away/up), clear sth of, remove** *Teams of people are working to clear the debris. ◇ Remember to clear the drain of debris regularly.* | **search through, sift through** *Police have spent the day sifting throught the debris for clues.*
- DEBRIS + VERB **accumulate** *Debris accumulates at the bottom of the bottle.*
- PREP. **among the ~, in the ~** *She found a pair of children's shoes among the debris.* **through the ~**

debt *noun*

1 sum of money owed

- ADJ. **big, crippling, enormous, high, huge, large, massive, substantial** *He was burdened with crippling debts.* | **mounting** *a company faced with mounting debts* | **outstanding, unpaid** *She used her lottery winnings to pay off her outstanding debts.* | **overdue | bad** (= that cannot be repaid) *Bad debt has hit the bank's profits this year.* | **long-term, short-term | overall, total | gross, net | commercial, corporate | external, foreign, international | national, public** *The country has a national debt of 80% of GNP.* | **gambling**
- VERB + DEBT **be burdened with, have, owe (sb)** *the substantial debts that the company owed to the bank* | **incur, run up** *She ran up huge debts on her credit card.* | **clear, meet, pay (back/off), repay, settle** *Without a job, he'll never clear his debts. ◇ It'll take months to pay off all your debts.* | **reduce | tackle** *The new governments main aim is to tackle the country's massive debt.* | **default on** *The firm defaulted on its debt and its assets were seized.* | **cancel, wipe off/out, write off** *After a series of meetings, the banks were forced to write off the company's debts.* | **service** (= pay interest on) *The fall in exports has left the country unable to service its debts.* | **reschedule, restructure** *The company has reached a deal with its major creditors allowing it to restructure its debts.* | **secure** *a debt secured on property*
- DEBT + VERB **fall due | stand at sth, total sth** *The national debt stands at $7 000 million.* | **arise from sth** *debts arising from bad investments*
- DEBT + NOUN **collection, collector | burden**
- PREP. **of ~** *$80 million of debt*
- PHRASES **a burden of debt** *Faced with a mounting burden of debt, he sold off the company.* **payment/repayment/settlement of a debt**

2 state of owing money

- ADJ. **serious**
- VERB + DEBT **go into, get into, slip into** *It is easy to get into serious debt with a credit card.* | **get out of** *You can get out of debt by strict economizing.*
- PREP. **in ~** *He was heavily in debt by the time he sought advice.* **out of ~** *struggling to stay out of debt*
- PHRASES **deeply/heavily in debt**

3 sth that you owe sb

- ADJ. **great**
- VERB + DEBT **owe | acknowledge, recognize**
- PREP. **in sb's ~** *I am in Ruth's debt for the excellent advice she gave me.* | **~ to** *In the introduction, the author acknowledges her debt to other writers on the subject.*
- PHRASES **owe a debt of gratitude to sb** *We owe a great debt of gratitude to our families for their support.*

decade *noun*

- ADJ. **present | coming, following, next | last, past, preceding, previous, recent**
- DECADE + VERB **elapse, go by, pass** *This decade has passed uneventfully.* | **begin, open, start** *This decade began badly for us.* | **close, end | see sth** *The past decade has seen a huge rise in the number of computer owners.*
- PREP. **during a/the ~, for a/the ~, in a/the ~, over a/the ~, throughout a/the ~, within a/the ~**

decay *noun*

- VERB + DECAY **rapid | slow | dental, tooth | economic, industrial, urban | moral, physical, social**
- VERB + DECAY **cause** *Bacteria sticks to food debris in the teeth, causing decay.* | **stop** *Without a lot of money, the mayor won't be able to stop urban decay.* | **reverse** *This government promises to reverse industrial decay.* | **prevent** *The wood is treated with preservative to prevent decay.* | **fall into** *old buildings that had fallen into decay*
- PREP. **in ~** *The derelict buildings are the signs of a town in decay.* | **~ in** *Smoking accelerates age-related decay in the heart and arteries.* **~ of** *the slow decay of the castle and the surrounding buildings*
- PHRASES **the process of decay, signs of decay** *My dentist could not find any signs of decay.* **an odour/a smell/a stench of decay** *A smell of decay pervaded the air.* **a state of decay**

decayed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, smell | become**
- ADV. **badly** *Some of her teeth were very badly decayed.* | **completely** *The wood was completely decayed.* | **sadly** *New Shoreham, now sadly decayed, has barely 100 inhabitants.*

deceased *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **recently** *her recently deceased husband* | **sadly** *His mother is now sadly deceased.*

deceive *verb*

- ADV. **easily** *Human nature is such that we easily deceive ourselves.*
- VERB + DECEIVE **attempt to, try to**
- PREP. **into** *The public should not be deceived into buying inferior goods.*

December *noun*

⇨ Note at MONTH

decency *noun*

- ADJ. **common, human** *a lack of common decency* | **public** *Your behaviour is an affront to public decency.*

- VERB + DECENCY **have** *He might have had the decency to let us know.*
- PHRASES **a sense of decency, standards of decency**

decent *adj.*

1 good/acceptable

- VERBS **be, look** *The pub looked decent enough.*
- ADV. **really, very | perfectly | half/halfway, pretty, quite** *We had trouble finding a hotel that was halfway decent.* | **enough**
- PREP. **to** *My uncle has been pretty decent to me.*

2 honest/respectable

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very | perfectly, thoroughly**
- PHRASES **do the decent thing** *I think the minister should do the decent thing and resign.*

deception *noun*

- ADJ. **cruel | elaborate** *This elaborate deception fooled his family for ages.* | **deliberate**
- VERB + DECEPTION **practise, use** *He'll use deception to get what he wants.* | **see through** *She failed to see through his deception.* | **obtain sth by** (*especially law*) *She was charged with obtaining property by deception.*

deceptive *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly, very | dangerously**
- PHRASES **can be deceptive** *Appearances can be deceptive—dangerously deceptive.*

decide *verb*

- ADV. **finally** *We finally decided to stay where we were.* | **sensibly, wisely** *He decided very wisely to keep his money rather than spend it.*
- VERB + DECIDE **be able/unable to, can/can't could (not)** *I can't decide what to do.* | **have to, must** *You will have to decide soon.* | **try to | be difficult to**
- PREP. **against** *They decided against taking legal action* **between** *It was difficult to decide between the various options.* **in favour of** *They decided in favour of reducing the fees.* **on/upon** *We're still trying to decide on a venue.*
- PHRASES **decide for yourself** *She should be allowed to decide for herself.* **the task of deciding sth** *The committee will have the task of deciding whether more cash should be made available.* **to be decided** *The exact time of the meeting is still to be decided.*

decision *noun*

- ADJ. **big, crucial, fateful, important, key, landmark** (*law*), **major, momentous** *It was a big decision to make.* ◇ *In a landmark decision, the court agreed to hear evidence from twenty years earlier.* | **difficult, hard, tough** *the difficult decision of whether to go to university or nurse her sick mother* | **firm** *We need a firm decision by Friday.* | **prompt, snap** *I had to make a snap decision about what to do with the money.* | **hasty, knee-jerk, rash | final, irreversible, irrevocable** *On Monday, the board of directors will meet to make their final decision.* ◇ *The decision is irreversible.* | **informed** *I need more facts before I can make an informed decision.* | **arbitrary | good, rational, right, sensible, wise | bad, poor, unwise, wrong | collective, joint, unanimous** *In the end, the decision to scrap the project was unanimous.* | **majority, split | court, government, etc. | investment, policy, etc.**
- VERB + DECISION **arrive at, come to, make, reach, take** *Key decisions are always taken by the editor.* | **announce, give (sb)** *The committee will give us their decision tomorrow.* | **abide by** *The decision has been made, and we must all abide by it.* | **affirm, uphold** *The management committee upheld her decision to fire two of her staff.* | **reconsider | appeal against, challenge** *plans to challenge this decision in the High Court* | **overrule, overturn, quash, reverse** *Nobody has the authority to overrule his decision.* | **defer**
- DECISION + NOUN **maker**
- PREP. **~ about/on** *a decision on her future*

⇨ Special page at MEETING

decisive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove**
- ADV. **absolutely | potentially** *He had one potentially decisive factor in his favour: the element of surprise.* | **ultimately** *It is the chief executive's opinion which is ultimately decisive.*

deck *noun*

1 top outside floor of a ship/boat

- ADJ. **open**
- VERB + DECK **go up on** *When we heard the alarm, we went up on deck.*
- PREP. **below ~** *The passengers were trapped below deck.* **on ~** *I joined the others on deck.*

2 one of the floors of a bus/ship

- ADJ. **lower, top, upper | aft/after, main, poop, promenade, saloon, sun** (on a ship)
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *sitting on the top deck of the bus*

declaration *noun*

- ADJ. **formal, solemn | ringing** *The Russian leader received a ringing declaration of support yesterday.* | **joint | unilateral | public**
- VERB + DECLARATION **issue, make** *The government will issue a formal declaration tomorrow.* | **adopt, sign** *All four countries have adopted the declaration against hunting rare animals.*
- PREP. **~ about/on** *the UN declaration on Human Rights* **~ of** *a declaration of war*

declare *verb*

- ADV. **virtually** *He has virtually declared war on the right-wingers in his party.* | **immediately, promptly** *Martial law was immediately declared.* | **formally, officially | openly, publicly | grandly, proudly** *She proudly declared that she had once been introduced to the Queen.* | **loudly | boldly, confidently, firmly, roundly, stoutly | brightly** *'I'm as fresh as a daisy,' he declared brightly.* | **solemnly | unanimously | unilaterally** *The communists had unilaterally declared a ceasefire.* | **hereby** (*law or formal*) *We, the people of Indonesia, hereby declare Indonesia's independence.*
- PREP. **to** *He declared his true feelings to her.*

decline *noun*

- ADJ. **catastrophic, considerable, dramatic, drastic, massive, marked, precipitate, precipitous, rapid, serious, sharp, significant, steep, substantial | gentle, gradual, modest, slight, slow | continuing, progressive, steady** *a steady decline in manufacturing* | **general, long-term, overall | absolute, inevitable, inexorable, irreversible, terminal** *an industry in terminal decline* | **economic, industrial, moral, political, urban** *the moral decline of the nation* | **national**
- VERB + DECLINE **fall into, go into, suffer** *The cloth trade went into gradual decline.* | **cause, lead to** *The increased gold price lead to the decline of his jewellery business.* | **arrest, halt, stop** *We must halt this decline in health services.* | **prevent | reverse | accelerate | see** *We have seen a sharp decline in educational standards over recent years.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The motor industry is still in decline.* **on the ~**

This area has been on the decline for some years now. | **~in** *a steep decline in sales* **~of** *the decline of British farming*

• PHRASES **the decline and fall of sth** *the decline and fall of a great civilization*

decline *verb*

1 refuse

• ADV. **politely** | **absolutely** *I absolutely decline to discuss my dealings with him or anyone.*

2 become smaller/weaker

• ADV. **considerably, dramatically, drastically, markedly, sharply, significantly, steeply** *The economy has declined sharply in recent years.* | **a little, slightly** | **fast, rapidly** *The market for these products is declining fast.* | **steadily** | **gradually, slowly** | **further**

• PREP. **by** *Profits declined by 6% this year.* **from, to** *The number of full-time staff has declined from 300 to just 50.*

• PHRASES **decline in importance/numbers/size** *This section of the market has slowly declined in importance.*

decompose *verb*

• PHRASES **badly/partially/partly decomposed** *His badly decomposed body was found many weeks later.*

decorate *verb*

1 make sth attractive

• ADV. **beautifully, elaborately, elegantly, gaily, intricately, lavishly, ornately, richly** *The room was lavishly decorated with tinsel and holly.*

• PREP. **with** *Decorate the cake with raspberries and whipped cream.*

2 with paint/wallpaper

• ADV. **nicely, pleasantly, tastefully** *The bedrooms are tastefully decorated.*

• PREP. **in** *The room is decorated in pale blues and greens.*

3 give sb a medal

• PREP. **for** *He was decorated for bravery.*

• PHRASES **highly decorated** *the most highly decorated unit in the British Army*

decorative *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look**

• ADV. **extremely, highly, richly, very, wonderfully** *The style is ornate and highly decorative.* | **purely** *The items he makes are purely decorative.* | **quite**

decrease *noun*

• ADJ. **dramatic, large, sharp, significant** *There has been a sharp decrease in pollution since the law was introduced.* | **slight, small** | **gradual, progressive, steady** | **corresponding** *Fewer houses are available, but there is no corresponding decrease in demand.*

• VERB + DECREASE **show** *This year's figures show a decrease of 30% on last year.* | **report** *Half the companies in the survey reported a decrease in sales.* | **cause, lead to, result in**

• PREP. **on the ~** *Marriage is still on the decrease.* | **~from … to …** *a decrease from 62% to just under half* **~in** *The new treatment led to a huge decrease in the number of deaths.* **~of** *a decrease of 20%* | **~to**

decrease *verb*

• ADV. **considerably, dramatically, drastically, markedly, significantly** | **slightly** *Spending has decreased slightly this year.* | **rapidly** | **steadily** | **gradually**

• PREP. **by** *Crime has decreased by 20 per cent.* **from, to** *Average family size has decreased from five to three children.* **with** *The number of quarrels among children decreases with age.*

• PHRASES **decrease in number/size/value** *The heart gradually decreases in size.*

decree *noun*

• ADJ. **emergency** *The government had the power to legislate by emergency decree independently of Parliament.* | **papal, presidential, royal** | **court**

• VERB + DECREE **adopt, issue, pass, publish** *The president issued a decree prohibiting trade unions.* | **sign** | **enforce** *Local inspectors helped enforce presidential decrees.* | **revoke** | **defy** *10 000 demonstrators defied the decree and gathered in the square.* | **govern by, legislate by, rule by** *The general will rule by decree until a general election.*

• PREP. **in a/the~** *In an emergency decree, the government banned all rallies.* | **~on** *a decree on property rights*

dedicated *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, seem** | **become** | **remain**

• ADV. **highly, really, truly, very** *The workforce is small but highly dedicated.* | **absolutely, totally, utterly**

• PREP. **to** *She is totally dedicated to her job.*

dedication *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, total** | **great**

• VERB + DEDICATION **have** *Not everyone has the dedication and the talent to achieve this.* | **show** | **need, require** *You will need dedication and determination to complete the course.* ◇ *The job requires total dedication.*

• PREP. **~to** *I really admire Gina for her dedication to her family.*

deduce *verb*

• ADV. **easily** | **logically** *The total amount can be deduced logically from the figures available.*

• VERB + DEDUCE **be able to, can** | **be possible to** *Using the evidence available it is possible to deduce quite a lot about how these people lived.*

• PREP. **from** *We deduce from his behaviour that he is trying to gain attention.*

deduct *verb*

• ADV. **at source** *Tax is deducted at source.* | **automatically** *This amount will be deducted automatically from your salary.*

• PREP. **from**

deduction *noun*

1 working things out from the facts

• ADJ. **brilliant** | **logical** | **reasonable**

• VERB + DEDUCTION **make**

• PREP. **by~** *She arrived at this conclusion by logical deduction.* | **~about** *We can make some deductions about the history of the ruins.*

• PHRASES **powers of deduction** *a detective with excellent powers of deduction* **a process of deduction** *She arrived at the solution by a simple process of deduction.*

2 taking an amount from a total/the amount taken

• ADJ. **monthly, weekly** *monthly deductions for health insurance* | **tax**

• VERB + DEDUCTION **make** *The company automatically makes tax deductions from your salary.*

• PREP. **~for** *deductions for travel costs* **~from** *deductions from his wages*

deed *noun*

• ADJ. **brave, daring, glorious, good, great, heroic, mighty, noble** *She felt that she had done her good deed for the day.* | **dark, dastardly, dirty, evil, terrible** *The prince swore she would be punished for her dastardly deeds.*

- VERB + DEED **do, perform, perpetrate** *She would not be able to relax until the deed was done. ◇ warriors who performed glorious deeds ◇ evil deeds perpetrated by wicked people*
- PREP. **in ~(s)** *He frequently expressed his love for her in words if not in deeds.*

deep *adj.*

1 a long way from top to bottom/front to back
- VERBS **be, look** *The water looks quite deep there.*
- ADV. **really, very | fairly, pretty, quite**
- PHRASES **ankle/knee/waist deep** *She stood knee deep in the water.*

2 low in tone
- VERBS **be, sound** *Her voice sounded very deep on the telephone.* **| become**
- ADV. **very | fairly, quite**

3 strongly felt
- VERBS **be, go, run** *This suspicion runs very deep among some government members.* **| become**
- ADV. **very** *a very deep feeling of love* **| fairly, quite**

defeat *noun*

- ADJ. **bitter, catastrophic, complete, comprehensive, crushing, decisive, devastating, disastrous, heavy, humiliating, ignominious, overwhelming, resounding, serious, stunning** *Their party suffered a heavy defeat in the election. ◇ The battle ended in a humiliating defeat.* **| narrow** *They lost 4–3 in their second narrow defeat of the week.* **| consecutive, successive | election, electoral, political | military**
- VERB + DEFEAT **accept, admit, concede** *She is very determined, and will never admit defeat. ◇ The prime minister conceded defeat and resigned.* **| face | go down to, slump to, to suffer** *The team went down to their fifth consecutive defeat.* **| reverse** *A skilful politician can always reverse any defeats.* **| avoid** *We just need to avoid defeat in our last two matches.* **| inflict** *The army inflicted a heavy defeat on rebel forces.* **| end in | lead to**
- PREP. **~ against** *last week's crushing defeat against Manchester United* **~ by** *their defeat by the French*
- PHRASES **defeat at the hands of sb** *The team suffered defeat at the hands of their oldest rivals.*

defeat *verb*

- ADV. **comprehensively, convincingly, decisively, easily, heavily, soundly, totally** *The English were heavily defeated by the Scots in the battle that followed. ◇ The proposed bill was decisively defeated in Parliament.* **| narrowly** *Our team was narrowly defeated in the final.* **| eventually, finally, ultimately**
- PREP. **by** *The motion was defeated by 20 votes to 18.*

defect *noun*

- ADJ. **fundamental, important, major, serious** *a fundamental defect in the product* **| minor, slight, small** *Goods with slight defects are sold at half price.* **| building, mechanical, structural | birth, congenital, genetic** *All lambs are checked for birth defects when they are born.* **| eye, heart, physical, sight, speech, visual | character**
- VERB + DEFECT **contain, have, suffer from** *The book contains serious defects. ◇ He has a congenital heart defect.* **| find** *The inspector found defects in the aircraft's construction.* **| correct, cure, remedy, repair** *This is a physical defect that cannot be cured. ◇ The builders agreed to remedy the structural defects.*
- PREP. **~ in** *major defects in the education system* **~ of** *a defect of her character*

defective *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove** *If the goods prove defective, the customer has the right to compensation.*
- ADV. **highly, seriously, severely** *Her vision is seriously defective.*

defence *noun*

1 action to protect sb/sth from attack
- ADJ. **adequate, effective | natural** *the body's natural defence against viruses* **| national | air | civil | nuclear**
- VERB + DEFENCE **organize, plan** *to plan the defence of harbour* **| come to, leap to, rush to, spring to** *He always sprang to Rose's defence when Ed tried to criticize her.*
- PREP. **in ~ of** *to fight in defence of your country* **| ~ against** *defence against attacks from the north*
- PHRASES **weapons of defence**

2 sth that protects sb/sth from sth
- ADJ. **effective | coastal, sea**
- VERB + DEFENCE **put up** *They put up an effective defence against the guerrilla forces.* **| overcome, overwhelm** *With her tears and angry accusations she completely overwhelmed his defences.* **| build (up)** *They are building up defences along the river.* **| breach** *The sea breached the coastal defences in a number of spots.*
- DEFENCE + NOUN **mechanism**
- PREP. **~ against**

3 forces, etc. for protecting a country
- DEFENCE + NOUN **force/forces, system | minister, ministry | policy, strategy | industry | budget, cuts, expenditure, spending**

4 legal argument
- ADJ. **good | robust, spirited, strong | adequate | legal**
- VERB + DEFENCE **conduct, make, mount, put up, raise | destroy**
- DEFENCE + NOUN **counsel, lawyer**
- PREP. **in sb's ~** *She spoke in his defence.* **| ~ of, ~ to** *a defence to murder*
- PHRASES **counsel for the defence**

5 in sport
- ADJ. **good, strong, stubborn**
- VERB + DEFENCE **put up | destroy | strengthen**
- PREP. **in ~** *to play in defence*

defenceless *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, lie** *The city lay defenceless before the most powerful fighting force on the continent.* **| leave sb** *They were left virtually defenceless against enemy attack.*
- ADV. **entirely, quite, totally, utterly** *She felt utterly defenceless.* **| almost, virtually**
- PREP. **against** *They were completely defenceless against enemy attack.*
- PHRASES **poor defenceless** *stealing money from a poor defenceless old lady*

defend *verb*

1 protect against attack
- PREP. **against**
- PHRASES **heavily defended** *The city was heavily defended against attack.*

2 support
- ADV. **fiercely, hotly, robustly, staunchly, stoutly, strenuously, strongly, vigorously** *The company has strenuously defended its decision to reduce the workforce.* **| publicly**
- PREP. **against** *She defended her department against accusations of incompetence.*

3 in sport/competitions
- ADV. **successfully**

- PREP. **against** *The champion successfully defended his title against the American challenger.*

defendant *noun*

- VERB + DEFENDANT **charge** *The defendant was charged with disturbing the peace.* | **sue** *a defendant being sued by an insurance company* | **convict, find guilty** *The defendant was convicted of murder.* ◇ *The jury found the defendant guilty on all counts.* | **sentence** *The defendant was sentenced to three years in prison.* | **acquit, find not guilty** | **release**
- DEFENDANT + VERB **plead guilty/not guilty**
- PREP. **against the ~** *the plaintiff's claim against the defendant* **for the ~** *Several witnesses gave evidence for the defendant.* | **~ in** *a defendant in bankruptcy proceedings*

defensive *adj.*

1 protecting against attack
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **purely** *These are purely defensive measures.* | **essentially, largely** *a largely defensive campaign*

2 showing you feel sb is criticizing you
- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** *Whenever anyone mentions women's rights, he gets rather defensive.*
- ADV. **extremely, fiercely, very** *He did not once glance at his listeners and seemed fiercely defensive.* | **a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** | **oddly** *Her manner was oddly defensive, as he hadn't intended any criticism at all.*
- PREP. **about** *He is extremely defensive about his work.*

defer *verb*

- ADV. **further** | **indefinitely** *The decision has been deferred indefinitely.*
- VERB + DEFER **agree to, decide to**
- PREP. **for** *Sentence was deferred for six months.* **pending** *Diagnosis was deferred pending further assessment.* **till/until** *We agreed to defer discussion of these issues until the next meeting.*

deference *noun*

- ADJ. **great**
- VERB + DEFERENCE **accord, show, treat sb with** *The actress was accorded all the deference of a visiting celebrity.* ◇ *Why do you treat your boss with such deference?*
- PREP. **in/out of ~ to** *The traditional menu was changed in deference to Western tastes.* | **with ~** *She spoke with great deference.* | **~ to, ~ towards** *deference towards your elders*

defiance *noun*

- ADJ. **blatant, flagrant, open** *flagrant defiance of the rules* | **childish**
- PREP. **in ~ (of)** *She held up a clenched fist in defiance.* ◇ *They organized a street demonstration in defiance of the government ban.* **out of ~** *I left the room untidy out of sheer defiance.*
- PHRASES **an act of defiance, a gesture of defiance**

defiant *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem** | **become** | **remain** *Despite the criticisms, she remained defiant.*
- ADV. **very** | **slightly** *He had a slightly defiant air.* | **openly** *Sylvia tossed back her dark hair in a gesture that was openly defiant.* | **persistently**

deficiency *noun*

- ADJ. **major, serious, severe** | **slight, small** | **dietary, nutritional** | **enzyme, hormone, mineral, nutrient, vitamin** | **calcium, iron, etc.**
- VERB + DEFICIENCY **have, suffer from** *suffering from a severe vitamin deficiency* | **correct, make good, make up, overcome, remedy** *I've been prescribed iron tablets to make up the deficiency.* ◇ *An engineer could remedy the deficiencies in the design.*
- PREP. **~ in** *serious deficiencies in the health service*

deficient *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove** | **become**
- ADV. **sadly, seriously, severely, very, woefully** *An educational system which fails to teach basic arithmetic is seriously deficient.* | **totally** | **rather, slightly**
- PREP. **in** *Their food is deficient in iron.*

deficit *noun*

- ADJ. **huge, large, massive, serious, substantial** | **small** | **net, overall** | **balance-of-payments, budget, budgetary, financial, fiscal, trade**
- VERB + DEFICIT **face, have, run, show** *If the government didn't run such huge deficits, the country would not have financial problems.* ◇ *The trade balance shows a deficit of two million pounds.* | **go into, move into, run up, slip into** *to prevent the country moving into deficit* ◇ *The company has run up a deficit of £30 000.* | **cut, eliminate, make up, reduce, tackle, wipe out** *You cannot cut a budget deficit simply by raising taxes.* ◇ *We will find it hard to make up this deficit.* | **overcome, overturn** *United are hoping to overturn a two-goal deficit from the first leg.* | **finance, fund** *The government was forced to sell state-owned companies to fund the budget deficit.*
- DEFICIT + VERB **run at sth** *a budget deficit running at 7% of GDP* | **grow, increase, rise, widen** | **decrease, fall, narrow, shrink**
- PREP. **in ~** *The UK remained in deficit with all countries outside the EU.* | **~ with** *the US trade deficit with Japan*

define *verb*

- ADV. **accurately, carefully, correctly, exactly, explicitly, precisely, specifically** *It is important to define these terms accurately.* | **clearly, fully, strongly, well** | **adequately** *There may be problems if responsibilities are not adequately defined.* | **ill, poorly** | **broadly** *We have chosen to define the scope of our study quite broadly.* | **loosely, vaguely** | **closely, narrowly, rigidly, strictly, tightly** | **simply, solely** | **easily** | **formally, officially** | **traditionally** | **culturally, geographically, socially** *the culturally defined role of women* | **legally**
- VERB + DEFINE **be difficult to, be impossible to** | **be easy to** *Social values are not easy to define.*
- PREP. **in terms of** *The difficulty of a problem was defined in terms of how long it took to complete.*

definition *noun*

- ADJ. **careful, clear, concise, exact, precise, unambiguous** *The term 'partner' requires careful definition.* ◇ *The author provides a clear definition of cultural awareness.* | **comprehensive, exhaustive** | **adequate, satisfactory** | **broad, loose, wide** | **narrow, rigid, strict** *According to a strict definition, the expenses of a self-employed person can be deducted from tax.* | **official, statutory** *The firm falls within the statutory definition of a 'small company'.* | **conventional, standard** | **alternative** | **working** *We need a good working definition of 'pollution'.* | **dictionary**
- VERB + DEFINITION **give (sb), provide (sb with), offer (sb)** | **need, require** | **fit** *This unusual building barely fits the definition of a house.*
- DEFINITION + VERB **encompass sth, include sth**
- PREP. **according to a/the ~** *According to a strict definition of 'assault', she was not assaulted.* **by ~** *A clinic for women would, by definition, deal with pregnancy and*

childbirth. **under a/the ~** *Under the broader definition of 'poverty', thousands more people would be included.*

deformed *adj.*

- VERBS **be | be born | become**
- ADV. **badly, severely** *She had a badly deformed hand.* | **slightly | hideously, horribly**

deformity *noun*

- ADJ. **appalling, severe | slight | congenital, genetic | birth | physical | facial, hip, limb, etc.**
- VERB + DEFORMITY **have, suffer from**

defunct *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | make sth** *The long-playing record was made defunct by the arrival of the CD.* | **consider sth** *These machines are now considered defunct.*
- ADV. **almost, virtually | largely | sadly** *He wrote many articles for the now sadly defunct newspaper, the Daily Correspondent.* | **long, now** *the ruined buildings of a long defunct mine*

defy *verb*

- ADV. **openly** *openly defying the authorities*
- VERB + DEFY **be prepared to, be ready to** *Campaigners have said that they are prepared to defy the law in order to achieve their aims.* | **continue to**

degenerate *verb*

- ADV. **rapidly | easily**
- PREP. **into** *The solemn event rapidly degenerated into farce.*

degrading *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | find sth** *He found the work extremely degrading.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, very | rather, slightly** *the rather degrading conditions in the prison* | **socially**
- PREP. **to** *pictures that are degrading to women*

degree *noun*

1 measurement of angles

- VERB + DEGREE **rotate (through), spin (through), turn (through)** *The car had spun through 180 degrees on impact.*
- DEGREE + NOUN **angle** *Place the shelf at a 90 degree angle to the wall.*
- DEGREE + NOUN **through … ~s** *If you study the sky through 360 degrees you will see a whole range of colours.*

2 measurement of temperature

- VERB + DEGREE **reach** *Temperatures inside the burning building are estimated to have reached 600 degrees centigrade.*
- PREP. **at … ~s** *Water boils at 100 degrees centigrade.*
- PHRASES **degrees above/below zero, degrees Celsius/centigrade/Fahrenheit, minus 10, 20, etc. degrees**

3 amount/level

- ADJ. **considerable, exceptional, extraordinary, great, high, large, remarkable, substantial, surprising, unusual, the utmost** *the utmost degree of freedom* | **fair, moderate, modest** *It was possible to date these remains with a fair degree of accuracy.* | **low, minimal, slight, small** *He would try anything to make her even the smallest degree happier.* | **lesser** *The tax changes will especially hit those on high incomes and, to a lesser degree, small businesses.* | **varying** *keen amateurs who work hard, with varying degrees of success* | **alarming, dangerous, extreme** *His arguments are simplistic to an extreme degree.* | **acceptable, adequate, meaningful, real, significant** *The book fails to answer the question with any acceptable degree of certainty.* | **appropriate, necessary, proper, requisite, right | unacceptable**
- PREP. **in … ~s** *The party leaders were all found to be corrupt in varying degrees.* **of … ~** *employees of various degrees of ability* **to a … ~** *The boss sometimes follows her instincts to a dangerous degree.* **with a … ~ of** *We all tried to find out about the bus service, with varying degrees of success.* | **~ of** *There is a degree of risk in any sport.*
- PHRASES **by (slow) degrees** *By slow degrees, the company's turnover dwindled to nothing.* **in (an) equal degree** *I felt excitement and sadness in equal degree as I waved goodbye to my colleagues.* **a greater or lesser degree** *We were all disappointed to a greater or lesser degree.* **to the nth degree** (= to an extreme degree) *The children tested her patience to the nth degree.*

4 qualification

- ADJ. **college, university | first, ordinary, undergraduate | higher, master's, postgraduate, research | BA, BEd, BSc, MA, MSc, PhD, etc. | honours | pass | good, poor | first-class, (lower/upper) second-class, third-class** *Candidates must have at least an upper second class honours degree.* | **honorary | business, medical, history, law, philosophy, etc. | professional** *Candidates must hold a professional degree in architecture.* | **external | combined, joint, joint/combined subject, joint honours** *a joint honours degree in Business Studies and Modern Languages* | **modular | part-time**
- VERB + DEGREE **have, hold | do, take** *He took a degree in law then joined a law firm.* | **be awarded, gain, get, obtain, receive | award sb, confer on sb** *The university conferred on him the honorary degree of Doctor of Laws.*
- DEGREE + NOUN **course, level**
- PREP. **~ in** *a degree in economics*

dehydration *noun*

- ADJ. **severe** *He died from severe dehydration.*
- VERB + DEHYDRATION **suffer from | die from/of | cause | avoid**

deity *noun*

- ADJ. **major, supreme | lesser, minor** *one of the minor Greek deities* | **benevolent | patron** *a shrine to the patron deity of the city* | **female, male | heathen, local, pagan, Roman, etc.**
- VERB + DEITY **worship** *a tribe that worshipped two main deities*
- PHRASES **the incarnation/manifestation/representation of a deity** *Many animals were seen as the manifestation of a deity.*

dejected *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look** *She looked sorrowful and dejected.* | **become, grow**
- ADV. **completely, thoroughly, totally, utterly** *They were thoroughly dejected and miserable.* | **rather**
- PREP. **about** *feeling rather dejected about the future*

delay *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, lengthy, long, major, serious, significant, substantial** *After a considerable delay, the government has agreed to accept the recommendations.* | **excessive, inordinate, undue, unnecessary** *Undue delays have been caused by people not doing their jobs properly.* | **inevitable, unavoidable | short, slight | unforeseen | frustrating | further | airport, flight, traffic, travel | time** *There is a five-minute time delay on the bank's safe.*
- QUANT. **series** *After a series of lengthy delays, the case finally came to court.*
- VERB + DELAY **be subject to** *Flights to New York may*

be subject to delay. | **be plagued by, experience, face, suffer** *Passengers have experienced long delays.* ◇ *The project has been plagued by delays.* | **cause, lead to** *The strike has led to some delays in train services.* | **avoid, prevent, reduce** *Please address your letters properly so as to reduce delays.* | **apologize for** *I apologize for the delay in replying to you.*

• DELAY + VERB **occur** *Travellers complained about lack of information when travel delays occurred.*

• PREP. **without ~** *Please send him the information without delay.* | **~ in** *delays in getting to the airport* **~ of** *a delay of several weeks* **~ to** *further delays to the scheme*

delay *verb*

• ADV. **seriously, significantly** *Mellanby's arrival was seriously delayed by a late train.* ◇ *These drugs can significantly delay the onset of the disease.* | **further** | **unduly** | **slightly, somewhat** | **inevitably, unavoidably** | **unaccountably** | **deliberately**

delegate *noun*

• ADJ. **conference, congress, convention** | **government, party, trade union**

• VERB + DELEGATE **elect** | **send** *They decided not to send a delegate to the conference.*

• DELEGATE + VERB **attend (sth)** *No fewer than 2 000 delegates attended the conference.*

• PREP. **~ from** *a delegate from the local Labour party* **~ to** *the British delegate to the United Nations*

delegation *noun*

1 people who represent a company, country, etc.

• ADJ. **large, small** | **high-level, high-powered, high-ranking, important** | **international** | **all-party, joint** *The prime minister met with an all-party delegation from the city council.* | **government, military, official, parliamentary, trade union** | **business, peace, trade**

• VERB + DELEGATION **send** | **head, lead** *A well-known academic will head the delegation.* | **form** | **invite** *The government invited an international delegation to inspect the plant.* | **meet**

• DELEGATION + VERB **represent sth** *a delegation representing the new regime* | **include sth** *The delegation included representatives from nine nations.* | **visit sb/sth** *The delegation will visit several Middle Eastern countries for talks* | **meet sb** | **walk out** *The British delegation walked out of the discussions in protest.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *all the ministers in the delegation* | **~ from** *an official delegation from Austria* **~ of** *a high-powered delegation of Asian businessmen*

• PHRASES **the chairman/head/leader of a delegation, a member of a delegation**

2 giving a job to sb with a lower rank

• ADJ. **effective, successful** *All managers should learn effective delegation.*

• PREP. **by ~** *Many of these tasks can be dealt with by delegation.* | **~ of** *delegation of responsibility*

delete *verb*

• ADV. **accidentally, by mistake, inadvertently** | **automatically**

• PREP. **from** *His name will be deleted from the list.*

• PHRASES **delete as appropriate** *Mr/Mrs/Ms (delete as appropriate)*

deliberation *noun*

1 careful consideration/discussion of sth

• ADJ. **careful** *After careful deliberation, it was agreed to abandon the project.* | **considerable** | **lengthy, long**

• PREP. **~ about/on** *your deliberations on his future*

2 speaking/moving slowly and carefully

• ADJ. **calm, cool, quiet, slow** | **great**

• PREP. **with ~** *With slow deliberation, he tore the letter into pieces.*

delicacy *noun*

1 rare and expensive type of food

• ADJ. **great** | **exotic, rare** | **local** *Have you tried any of the local delicacies?*

• VERB + DELICACY **be considered** *The eggs of this bird are considered a great delicacy.* | **sample, try**

2 care and sensitivity/requiring care and sensitivity

• ADJ. **extreme, great, utmost** *He handled the situation with extreme delicacy.*

• PREP. **with ~** *These objects are very old and should be treated with great delicacy.*

• PHRASES **a matter of (some) delicacy**

3 lightness and gentleness

• ADJ. **exquisite** *the exquisite delicacy of the embroidery*

delicate *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look** *The glasses looked very delicate.* ◇ *Her bones felt as delicate as a bird's.* | **become**

• ADV. **extremely, very** | **quite, rather, somewhat** *a rather delicate child* ◇ *This is a somewhat delicate subject.* | **surprisingly** *He had a surprisingly delicate touch.* | **politically** *a politically delicate situation*

delicious *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, smell, sound, taste** *The recipe sounds delicious.* ◇ *The beef tasted delicious.*

• ADV. **most, really, truly** *The meal was really delicious.* | **absolutely, quite** | **rather**

delight *noun*

1 feeling of great pleasure

• ADJ. **deep, great, intense** | **absolute, utter** | **pure, sheer** | **mischievous, perverse** | **childish/childlike** | **endless** | **evident, obvious** | **mutual** | **aesthetic, sensual, spiritual** *His mind was reeling with an almost aesthetic delight at the beauty of the thing.*

• VERB + DELIGHT **express** | **find, take** *She took evident delight in frightening the children with horror stories.* | **give sb** | **scream with, squeal with, whoop with** *Alice squealed with sheer delight when she saw the monkeys.* | **be greeted with** *The news was greeted with great delight.*

• PREP. **in/with ~** *We danced around with childish delight.* **of ~** *She gave a whoop of delight and dived into the water.* **to your ~** *To my great delight, they phoned and offered me the job.* | **~ at** *He expressed his delight at seeing us all again.* **~ in** *I find a perverse delight in listening to traffic.*

• PHRASES **a cry/gasp/squeal of delight, much to sb's delight** *Much to the delight of the crowd, the band came back and did three encores.*

2 sth that gives great pleasure

• ADJ. **real** | **constant, continual** *The baby was a constant delight and source of amazement.* | **unexpected** | **culinary, gastronomic**

• VERB + DELIGHT **explore, sample** | **enjoy, savour** *Savour the culinary delights of Morocco.*

• PREP. **to** *The old lady's reminiscences were a continual delight to Constance.*

delighted *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem**

• ADV. **greatly, highly, only too, really** *Mrs Cartwright said she would be only too delighted to present the prizes.* | **absolutely, quite** | **clearly, obviously, plainly** | **secretly**

'Poor Gloria,' she said, although she was secretly delighted. | **genuinely**
• PREP. **at** *They were highly delighted at the court's decision.* **by** *I'm delighted by your news.* **with** *He's really delighted with his new CD player.*

delightful *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem**
• ADV. **most, really** *It has been a most delightful evening.* | **absolutely, entirely, quite, truly**
• PHRASES **delightful little** *It was a delightful little fishing village.*

deliver *verb*

1 goods/letters
• ADV. **free of charge** *The company will deliver free of charge.* | **by hand** *The package had been delivered by hand.*
• PREP. **to** *The letter was delivered to his office.*
• PHRASES **have sth delivered** *You can either collect the goods or have them delivered.*

2 baby
• ADV. **safely** *The baby was delivered safely on Tuesday night.* | **by Caesarean (section)**

delivery *noun*

1 act of delivering sth
• ADJ. **express, fast, immediate, prompt, quick** | **late** | **morning, next-day** | **recorded, scheduled, special** *Ensure all photographic material is properly packed and sent by recorded delivery.* | **guaranteed** *guaranteed express delivery to over 170 countries* | **safe** | **mail, milk, newspaper** *All mail deliveries were suspended during the strike.* | **service** *The cuts will inevitably impact on service delivery.*
• VERB + DELIVERY **do, make** *We do all our deliveries in the mornings.* | **accept, take** *The government has now taken delivery of the new fighter planes.*
• DELIVERY + NOUN **van** | **date, schedule, time** | **boy, man** *He was employed at the local grocery store as a delivery boy.* | **charge** | **service**
• PREP. **for ~** *completed orders for delivery* **on ~** *Please pay the driver on delivery.* | **~ to** *The company offers free delivery to your home.*

2 goods delivered
• ADJ. **large, small**
• VERB + DELIVERY **get, receive** *The shop receives only one delivery of books per week.*

3 giving birth to a baby
• ADJ. **difficult, easy** | **preterm** | **breech** | **vaginal** | **Caesarean** | **forceps, ventouse** | *The figures show an increase in forceps deliveries.*
• VERB + DELIVERY **have** *She had a very easy delivery with her second child.*
• DELIVERY + NOUN **room**

delusion *noun*

• ADJ. **dangerous** | **foolish** *I thought the whole idea was just a foolish and dangerous delusion.* | **paranoid**
• VERB + DELUSION **get, have, suffer (from)** *The psychiatrist said she was suffering from paranoid delusions.*
• PREP. **under a/the ~** *He seemed to be under the delusion that he would make his fortune within a few years.* | **~ about** *He had no delusions about his feelings for Kate.* **~ of** *She had delusions of persecution.*
• PHRASES **delusions of grandeur** (= a belief that you are more important than you actually are) *Don't go getting delusions of grandeur.*

demand *noun*

1 firm request
• ADJ. **legitimate, realistic, reasonable** *I think your demand for higher wages is perfectly reasonable.* | **unrealistic, unreasonable** | **radical** | **urgent** | **central, key, main, major** | **fresh, new, renewed** *There have been renewed demands for the government to take action to reduce crime.* | **growing, increasing** | **final** *A final demand for payment had been issued.* | **written** | **financial, political** | **government, opposition, popular, public, royal, union** *The management had no intention of meeting union demands.* | **pay, ransom, tax, wage** *A ransom demand has been made for the kidnapped racehorse.*
• VERB + DEMAND **issue, make, present, press, put forward** *Demands have been made for the immediate distribution of food to the refugees.* | **renew, repeat, step up** *Campaigners have stepped up their demands for immediate government action.* | **face** | **respond to** | **agree to, give in to, meet, satisfy, yield to** *My government cannot give in to the demands of an illegal organization.* | **reject, resist**
• PREP. **on ~** *Campaigners insist that abortion should be available on demand.* | **~ for, ~ from** *demands from the opposition for a recount of the votes*

2 need/desire for goods/services
• ADJ. **big, buoyant, considerable, enormous, great, heavy, high, huge, insatiable, peak, strong, unprecedented** *Demand for the product is buoyant.* ◇ *There's always a great demand for our soups in winter.* | **burgeoning, growing, increased/increasing, rising** | **excess, extra** | **constant, steady** *She is in constant demand to make public appearances and give interviews.* | **changing, fluctuating, seasonal** | **current, future** | **latent, likely, pent-up, potential, projected, prospective** | **overall, total** *We can estimate that total market demand for electrical goods will rise by 8%.* | **declining, falling, limited, low, reduced, sluggish** | **consumer, customer, market, popular, public** *By popular demand, the play will run for another week.* | **domestic, export, foreign, local, world, worldwide** *The slowdown in domestic demand was offset by an increase in exports.* | **electricity, energy, housing, labour, etc.**
• QUANT. **level** *a high level of demand*
• VERB + DEMAND **cope with, meet, satisfy** *The factories are staying open all weekend to try to meet the consumer demand for this product.* | **create, generate** *It is the job of the marketing manager to create demand for the new product.* | **boost, increase, stimulate** | **reduce** | **exceed, outstrip** *Supply normally exceeds demand for the bulk of consumer goods.* | **forecast** *It can be difficult to forecast demand in the construction industry.* | **manage** *policies aimed at managing demand*
• DEMAND + VERB **grow, increase, rise** *Demand for personal computers has risen sharply.* | **decline, fall, slow (down)** *As demand slows, the need to export will return.*
• PREP. **in ~** *These old machines are still in demand.* | **~ among** *the potential demand among children* **~ for** *increased demand for health products* **~ from** *the demand from consumers* **~ on** *This section of the population makes a high demand on health care resources.*
• PHRASES **supply and demand** *the law of supply and demand*
⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

3 demands difficult/tiring things you have to do
• ADJ. **considerable, enormous, excessive, extra, great, heavy, high, impossible** *I think the demands of this job are excessive.* | **exacting, pressing** | **growing, increasing** | **competing, conflicting, contradictory** | **day-to-day, everyday** *the day-to-day demands of the job* | **immediate** *the need for scientific research freed from the immediate demands of industry* | **external** *The person who cannot say 'no' to others' requests is likely to be overwhelmed by external demands.* | **economic, emotional,**

financial, physical, practical, sexual, social, technical *Life is hard for nurses on children's wards, where the emotional demands can be overwhelming.*

• VERB + DEMANDS **impose, make, place** *My elderly parents make a lot of demands on me.* | **respond to** | **cope with** *coping with the conflicting demands of work and family life*

• PREP. **~ on/upon** *My work seems to make more and more demands on my time.*

demand *verb*

• ADV. **aggressively, angrily, coldly, fiercely, furiously, harshly, indignantly, irritably, roughly, sharply** *'Where are the keys?' she demanded angrily.*

• PREP. **from** *He had demanded money from her.* **of** *They failed to provide the information demanded of them.*

demanding *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **become, get**

• ADV. **extremely, highly, very** | **fairly, pretty, quite** | **physically, technically** *a technically demanding piece of music to play*

demise *noun*

• ADJ. **sad** | **rapid, sudden** *The war brought about the industry's sudden demise.* | **early, premature** *He praised the union's aims but predicted its early demise.* | **imminent** | **eventual, final, ultimate** | **apparent** | **virtual** | **political** *the events which contributed to his political demise*

• VERB + DEMISE **bring about, contribute to, lead to**

democracy *noun*

• ADJ. **genuine, true** | **political** | **constitutional, parliamentary** | **multi-party** | **Western**

• VERB + DEMOCRACY **believe in, support** *people who believe in true democracy* | **fight for** | **establish** | **restore** *The military regime has promised to restore democracy soon.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *We live in a multi-party democracy.*

• PHRASES **pro-democracy** *a pro-democracy demonstration in the capital* **the road to democracy** *the need to overcome political apathy and advance on the road to democracy* **the spread of democracy**

democratic *adj.*

1 favouring/practising democracy

• VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain** *There have been major changes in the constitution, but the system remains democratic.*

• ADV. **genuinely, truly** | **fully, thoroughly** *a fully democratic society* | **fairly, quite, reasonably** *They have a fairly democratic form of government.* | **dangerously** *In 1776 these were considered dangerously democratic principles.*

2 being fair to different sides

• VERBS **be, seem**

• ADV. **extremely, very** | **fairly, quite, reasonably** *I think it was a reasonably democratic decision.*

demolition *noun*

• VERB + DEMOLITION **be due for, be threatened with** *The church has been threatened with demolition for years.* | **prevent, save sth from** *They started a campaign to save the houses from demolition.*

demon *noun*

• ADJ. **evil** *tales of travellers attacked by evil demons*

• VERB + DEMON **be plagued by, be possessed by** *He is plagued by demons which go back to his traumatic childhood.* ◇ *The villagers believed the girl was possessed by demons.* | **be pursued by** *He fled as if pursued by demons.* | **cast out, exorcise** *an ancient ritual to exorcise demons*

demonstrate *verb*

1 show

• ADV. **amply, beyond doubt, clearly, conclusively, convincingly, successfully, well** *Our study demonstrates beyond doubt that the play was written by Shakespeare.* | **adequately** | **further** | **easily** | **elegantly, neatly** | **empirically, experimentally** | **graphically, vividly** *This tragedy graphically demonstrates the dangers of walking on the fells after dark.*

• PREP. **to** *The prime minister must demonstrate to the country that he is really in control of his government.*

2 protest

• ADV. **peacefully**

• PREP. **against** *Campaigners were demonstrating against the slaughter of dolphins.* **for** *Their objective was to demonstrate peacefully for civil rights.*

demonstration *noun*

1 public protest/march

• ADJ. **big, huge, large, large-scale, major, massive** | **mass, popular, public** *mass demonstrations against cuts in the health service* ◇ *The president's decision provoked public demonstrations.* | **street** | **spontaneous** | **peaceful** *Thousands gathered for a peaceful demonstration.* | **violent** | **hostile** | **protest** *a protest demonstration against the war* | **student** | **opposition** | **anti-war, pro-democracy, etc.**

• VERB + DEMONSTRATION **hold, organize, stage** *Taxi drivers staged a demonstration against the new law.* | **go on, join, participate in, take part in** | **call off** *The demonstration was called off at the last minute.* | **break up, disperse** *Police in riot gear dispersed the demonstration.* | **ban, suppress** | **provoke, spark (off)** *The minister does not wish to provoke further demonstrations.*

• DEMONSTRATION + VERB **take place** | **call for sth** *demonstrations calling for an end to sanctions* | **greet** *The visiting president was greeted by hostile demonstrations.*

• PREP. **at a/the ~** *police intervention at demonstrations* **during a/the ~** *Hundreds were arrested during demonstrations in the capital.* | **~ against, ~ in protest at** *demonstrations in protest at the arrests* **~ in favour of, ~ in support of** *student demonstrations in favour of a multi-party system*

2 showing/explaining sth

• ADJ. **physical, practical** *physical demonstrations of affection* | **cookery, product, etc.**

• VERB + DEMONSTRATION **do, give sb** *I'll give a quick demonstration of some knitting techniques.* | **watch**

3 sth that shows clearly that sth is true

• ADJ. **clear, convincing, dramatic, impressive, perfect, vivid** *The strike was a dramatic demonstration of the power of the workforce.*

demonstrator *noun*

• ADJ. **angry** *Angry demonstrators threw stones.* | **peaceful** | **anti-government, pro-democracy, etc.**

• QUANT. **crowd, group** *Police opened fire on a crowd of peaceful demonstrators.*

• VERB + DEMONSTRATOR **disperse** *Troops were brought in to disperse the demonstrators.* | **clash with, fire on, open fire on, use sth against** *Water cannon and tear gas were used against the demonstrators.*

• DEMONSTRATOR + VERB **gather** *The demonstrators had gathered in the cathedral square.* | **march** *Demonstrators marched on the parliament building.* | **protest** *demonstrators protesting against the lack of housing* | **call for sth, demand sth** *demonstrators calling for the removal of the government* | **disperse** *The demonstrators dispersed when the soldiers arrived.* | **attack sb, clash**

with sb *Demonstrators clashed with government soldiers in the country's capital yesterday.* | **storm sth** *Demonstrators then tried to storm the police headquarters.*

- PHRASES **clashes between police and demonstrators**

denial *noun*

- ADJ. **firm, strong, vehement, vigorous** *When I asked if she had cheated in the exam, she answered with a vehement denial.* | **explicit** *The document contains an explicit denial that the company ever sold arms.* | **government, official** *Despite official denials, it appears the government did make a deal with the terrorists.*
- VERB + DENIAL **issue, make** *The chairman of the company issued a denial of the allegations.* ◇ *Jefferson made no denial of his actions on that night.*
- PREP. **~from** *a denial from senior officials*
- PHRASES **a chorus of denials** *His question was greeted with a chorus of denials.*

denounce *verb*

- ADV. **angrily, bitterly, fiercely, strongly** | **publicly** *He was publicly denounced as a traitor.* | **formally**
- PREP. **for** *The government was bitterly denounced for the emergency measures.* **to** *Someone in the village must have denounced them to the authorities.*
- PHRASES **be widely denounced** *These new regulations have been widely denounced.*

density *noun*

- ADJ. **high, low** | **average** *an average density of 2.4 people per hectare* | **population, traffic** *The population density in this city is very high.*
- VERB + DENSITY **calculate, measure**
- DENSITY + VERB **change, vary** | **increase, rise** | **decrease, fall**

dent *noun*

- ADJ. **big, great, large** | **considerable, serious, severe, significant** (*all figurative*) *The latest health scare has made a very considerable dent in the sales of beef.* | **little, slight, small**
- VERB + DENT **leave, make** *The impact of the stones made little dents in the metal.* | **have**
- PREP. **~in** *My side of the car had a large dent in it.*

dent *verb*

1 make a dent in sth

- ADV. **badly** *The car was quite badly dented on one side.* | **slightly**

2 damage sth

- ADV. **badly, seriously, severely** *Being turned down for the job dented his pride quite badly.* ◇ *The appearance of these cheap goods from abroad has severely dented the company's sales.* | **slightly**
- VERB + DENT **fail to** *The experience failed to dent her confidence.*

dentist *noun*

- ADJ. **good** | **qualified, registered** | **NHS, private**
- VERB + DENTIST **register with** *She couldn't get treatment because she wasn't registered with the dentist.* ◇

⇨ Note at DOCTOR (for more verbs)

dentures *noun*

- ADJ. **ill-fitting**
- QUANT. **set** *a new set of dentures*
- VERB + DENTURES **have in, wear** *She doesn't wear her dentures at night.* | **put in** | **remove, take out** *Remember to clean your dentures after you take them out.*

denunciation *noun*

- ADJ. **angry, bitter, fierce, violent** | **public**
- VERB + DENUNCIATION **issue, make** *In his speech, he made a fierce denunciation of government policy.*
- PREP. **~of** *a public denunciation of the corrupt system*

deny *verb*

1 say sth is not true

- ADV. **emphatically, fiercely, firmly, hotly, strenuously, strongly, vehemently, vigorously** *Both women vehemently deny the charges against them.* | **angrily, indignantly** | **categorically, flatly** *He has categorically denied being involved in the fraud.* | **explicitly, expressly** | **implicitly** | **formally** | **publicly** | **immediately, promptly** | **simply** *If anyone accuses me I shall simply deny it.* | **consistently, repeatedly** *He has consistently denied murdering his estranged wife.*
- VERB + DENY **cannot** *You can't deny that it seems a very attractive idea.* | **try to** *I know it was you I saw, so there's no use trying to deny it.*
- PHRASES **no one could/would deny that** *No one would deny that there is a very great need for change.* **there is no denying sth** *There is no denying the fact that she is an excellent scholar.*

2 refuse sb sth

- ADV. **cruelly** *They were cruelly denied victory by an injury-time strike from Owen.* | **effectively** *Children could be compelled to work on the farm, effectively denying them schooling.*
- PREP. **to** *You cannot deny this opportunity to me.*

depart *verb*

- VERB + DEPART **be due to, be scheduled to** *The plane was scheduled to depart at 8.30.* | **be waiting to** | **prepare to** *They shook hands all round and prepared to depart.*
- PREP. **for** *He departs for New York tomorrow morning.* **from** *We depart from Heathrow at ten o'clock tonight.*

department *noun*

1 of a government

- ADJ. **government** | **education, health, social services, etc.** | **fire, police** *The Tokyo police department is clamping down on organized crime.*
- DEPARTMENT + NOUN **official, spokesman, spokesperson, spokeswoman, staff**
- PREP. **~of** *the Department of the Environment*

2 of an organization

- ADJ. **accident and emergency, casualty, outpatient, physiotherapy** | **design, finance, marketing, personnel, planning, publicity, sales, etc.** | **biology, English, maths, etc.**
- VERB + DEPARTMENT **manage, run** *Staff criticized the way the history department was run.*
- DEPARTMENT + NOUN **head, manager, staff**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Complaints are dealt with in a different department.* **within a/the ~** *to gain promotion within the department* | **~of** *the Department of Town Planning*
- PHRASES **the head of (a) department, a member of a department**

departure *noun*

1 leaving/going away from a place

- ADJ. **abrupt, sudden** *Everyone was a bit puzzled by her sudden departure.* | **hasty, speedy** | **early** | **imminent, impending** *The guard blew his whistle to warn of the train's imminent departure.* | **flight** *The last check-in time is 45 minutes before flight departure.*
- VERB + DEPARTURE **make** *He made a hasty departure.* | **hasten** *Her row with the MD probably hastened her departure.* | **delay**

- DEPARTURE + NOUN **point** *Atocha station was the departure point for our tour.* | **date** | **gate, lounge** *We sat in the departure lounge waiting for our flight to be called.*
- PREP. **before ~, prior to ~** *You should receive your flight tickets at least a week prior to departure.* **on ~** *All visitors must sign the book on arrival and again on departure.* | **~ for** *his departure for Naples* **~ from** *her departure from London*
- PHRASES **the day/time of departure, the point of departure** (*figurative*) *The author takes Freud's dream theories as the point of departure for his essay.*

2 sth different from what is usual/expected
- ADJ. **fresh, new** | **dramatic, fundamental, major, radical, revolutionary, significant**
- VERB + DEPARTURE **be, mark, represent**
- PREP. **~ from** *This document marks a radical departure from earlier recommendations.*

depend *verb*

PHRASAL VERB

depend on/upon sb/sth

1 be affected by sth
- ADV. **crucially, greatly, very much** *The future of the company will depend crucially on how consumers respond.* | **entirely, solely** | **largely, mainly** | **partly, rather, to some extent** | **ultimately** *Whether or not we can go ultimately depends on the weather.*
- VERB + DEPEND ON SB/STH **seem to** *The outcome seems to depend on the type of soil used.*

2 need
- ADV. **heavily** | **entirely, solely**
- PREP. **for** *She depends entirely on her parents for money.*

dependable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **find sb** *I find him very dependable.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **absolutely, totally, utterly** *She is loyal and totally dependable.* | **not entirely**

dependence *noun*

1 needing sb's help/support
- ADJ. **great, heavy** *a heavy dependence on imported materials* | **absolute, complete, total** *his total dependence on his family* | **continuing, growing, increased, increasing** *The country has a growing dependence on foreign aid.* | **excessive** | **mutual** *Their relationship is based on a strong mutual dependence.* | **economic, financial** | **emotional, physical, psychological**
- VERB + DEPENDENCE **have** | **reduce** *The government wants to reduce industry's dependence on coal.*
- PREP. **~ on/upon** *her economic dependence on her husband*

2 being addicted to sth
- ADJ. **alcohol, drug, nicotine, etc.**
- PREP. **~ on** *dependence on alcohol*

dependent *adj.*

1 needing sb/sth
- VERBS **be, feel** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **closely, deeply, greatly, heavily, highly, very** *Many of the patients are closely dependent on staff for day-to-day emotional support.* ◇ *The country is heavily dependent on oil and gas imports.* | **critically, crucially** *Modern science is critically dependent on high-performance computing.* | **absolutely, completely, entirely, solely, totally, utterly, wholly** *Jane had never met anyone so utterly dependent.* ◇ *The land is dry and wholly dependent on irrigation.* | **increasingly** | **essentially, largely, mainly** | **partially, partly** *34% of people in the survey were at least partially dependent on public transport.* | **directly** | **mutually** *The various organs of the body do not function in isolation but are mutually dependent.* | **economically, financially** | **emotionally**
- PREP. **on/upon** *Small firms are dependent upon the local economy.*

2 dependent on/upon influenced/decided by sth
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **strongly** | **entirely, solely, totally** *The amount of benefit you receive is entirely dependent on the amount you have paid in.* | **essentially, largely, mainly** *Your access to a good education is largely dependent on where you live.* | **partially, partly**

depict *verb*

- ADV. **vividly** *The book vividly depicts French society of the 1930s.*

deplete *verb*

- ADV. **heavily, seriously, severely** *Both teams were severely depleted by injuries.*

depletion *noun*

- ADJ. **rapid** | **serious, severe, significant** | **resource** | **oxygen, ozone, etc.**
- VERB + DEPLETION **cause, lead to** *Increased consumption of water has led to rapid depletion of groundwater reserves.*

deploy *verb*

- ADV. **effectively** *Tanks were deployed effectively during the long campaign.*
- PREP. **against** *She rejected the arguments that had been deployed against her.*

deployment *noun*

- ADJ. **effective, efficient** | **rapid** | **full** *Without the full deployment of resources, we cannot achieve our aims.* | **staff** | **military, troop**
- VERB + DEPLOYMENT **be available for**

deport *verb*

- ADV. **forcibly**
- PREP. **(back) to** *Many refugees were forcibly deported back to the countries they had come from.* **from** *He was deported from Britain last week.*

deportation *noun*

- ADJ. **mass** *the mass deportation of refugees* | **forced**
- VERB + DEPORTATION **be threatened with, face** | **recommend sb for** *The Home Secretary has recommended the two drug dealers for deportation.*
- DEPORTATION + NOUN **order** *The government issued a deportation order against the four men.*
- PHRASES **the threat of deportation**

deposit *noun*

1 money paid into a bank account
- ADJ. **bank, building society** *Building society deposits have increased by 2.3%.* | **cash** | **dollar, sterling, etc.**
- VERB + DEPOSIT **make** *She made a deposit of £60 into her account.*
- DEPOSIT + NOUN **account**

2 money which is the first payment for sth
- VERB + DEPOSIT **pay, put down**
- PREP. **~ on** *We've put down the deposit on our new car.*

3 money paid when you rent sth
- ADJ. **refundable, returnable** *All deposits for holiday cottages are refundable.*
- VERB + DEPOSIT **give (sb), leave (sb), pay (sb)** *You have to pay a deposit of £100 as well as two months' rent.* |

get back *You'll get back your deposit once we've checked the bikes are all right.* | **forfeit, lose** *If furniture is damaged, you will forfeit your deposit.*
- PREP. **~on** *I had to leave a £50 deposit on the bike.*

4 layer of sth
- ADJ. **large** | **rich** | **thick, thin** *The floods left a thick deposit of mud over the fields.* | **gas, mineral, ore, etc.** *an area with large mineral deposits* | **geological, glacial, sedimentary**
- VERB + DEPOSIT **have** *The region has many deposits of valuable oil.* | **leave**

depot *noun*

- ADJ. **distribution, storage, supply** | **freight, goods** | **arms, fuel, gas, etc.** *an explosion at an arms depot* | **bus, tram** *on its way back to the bus depot*

depreciate *verb*

- ADV. **quickly, rapidly**
- VERB + DEPRECIATE **be expected to, be likely to**
- PREP. **against** *Sterling is expected to depreciate against the dollar.* **by** *The rupee depreciated by 9 per cent.*
- PHRASES **depreciate in value** *Cars depreciate in value fairly rapidly.*

depressed *adj.*

1 unhappy/mentally ill
- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** *You mustn't let yourself get depressed* | **remain, stay**
- ADV. **acutely, deeply, extremely, really, severely, terribly, very** *She became severely depressed after her mother's death.* | **thoroughly** | **increasingly** | **a bit, a little, mildly, quite, rather, slightly** | **clinically, suicidally** *There is medical evidence to show that he is suicidal and clinically depressed.*
- PREP. **about** *She's terribly depressed about losing her job.* **by** *I was depressed by our lack of progress.*

2 not economically successful
- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain, stay**
- ADV. **badly, severely, very** *The shipping trade was badly depressed.* | **relatively** | **economically**

depressing *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become, get** | **find sth**
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, profoundly, really, very** *We found it a deeply depressing experience.* | **infinitely** *I find politics infinitely depressing: none of the parties appeal to me.* | **a bit, faintly, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat**

depression *noun*

1 unhappiness/mental illness
- ADJ. **black, deep, serious, severe** | **acute, chronic** | **mild** | **clinical** | **manic** | **post-natal**
- QUANT. **bout, fit, period** *The actor says he suffers frequent bouts of depression.* ◇ *In a fit of depression, she threw away all her favourite books.* ◇ *A period of acute depression can sometimes follow childbirth.*
- VERB + DEPRESSION **develop, fall into, go into, succumb to** *She fell into a black depression and refused to leave her room.* | **experience, have, suffer (from)** *She was diagnosed as having clinical depression.* | **be treated for** *His wife had left him and he was being treated for depression.* | **come out of, get over** *She was gradually coming out of her depression.* | **cause, lead to** *Bereavement can often lead to depression.* | **relieve, treat** *a new drug used to treat depression*
- DEPRESSION + VERB **deepen** | **lift** *Her depression has lifted now.*
- PREP. **in ~** *He may have killed himself in depression.* **with ~** *He's been off work for months with depression.*
- PHRASES **(a) cause for depression** *These results should not be a cause for depression.* **the depths of depression** *I was in the depths of depression after receiving my exam results.* **feelings of depression, the onset of depression** *The onset of depression often follows a traumatic event.* **a state of depression** *He was in a state of acute depression.* **symptoms of depression, treatment for depression** *She had been receiving medical treatment for depression.*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

2 period of reduced economic activity
- ADJ. **great, major, serious, severe** | **economic** *The country is experiencing a severe economic depression.*
- VERB + DEPRESSION **be in the grip of, experience** | **go into** *The housing market has gone into depression.* | **face**
- DEPRESSION + VERB **deepen** *The depression seems to be deepening.* | **end**
- PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *Many people lost their jobs in the great depression of the 1930s.*
- PHRASES **the depths of a depression, a period of depression** *periods of severe economic depression*

3 hollow part in the surface of sth
- ADJ. **shallow, slight** | **deep**
- PREP. **~in, ~on** *From the air, the photos show a shallow depression on the planet's surface.*

deprivation *noun*

- ADJ. **acute, severe, terrible** | **sensory** | **emotional** | **economic, material, social** *an area of acute social and economic deprivation* | **inner-city, urban** | **rural** | **sleep** *a study of the effects of sleep deprivation*
- VERB + DEPRIVATION **experience, suffer** *Many of the people suffered terrible deprivation.*

deprived *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel**
- ADV. **extremely, severely, terribly, very** | **totally** | **relatively** | **economically, emotionally, materially, socially** *emotionally deprived children*
- PREP. **of** *children who are deprived of love*

depth *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great** *going down to great depths below the surface* ◇ *Younger students cannot be expected to have great depth of understanding.* | **shallow** *Water normally moves more slowly at shallower depths.* | **abyssal** *the abyssal depths of the ocean* | **black, dark, murky** | **surprising, unexpected** *the unexpected depth of his feelings for her* | **emotional** *music of great emotional depth*
- PREP. **at ~** *The camera must be strong enough to resist the immense water pressure at depth.* **at/from/to a ~ of** *These fish are found at a depth of over 100 metres.* **at/from/to a … ~** *The clam burrows in the sand to a considerable depth.* | **in ~** *I studied phonology in depth at university.* | **out of your ~** *I don't like going out of my depth in the sea.* | **~s of** *The rejection plunged her into the dark depths of despair.*
- PHRASES **the depths (of the ocean/sea)** *sharks lurking in the murky grey depths of the sea* **depth of emotion/feeling** *The demonstration showed the depth of feeling against the war.* **the ocean depths**

deputation *noun*

- VERB + DEPUTATION **organize** | **send** *They sent a deputation to the ministry to complain.* | **meet, receive**
- PREP. **~from** *The managing director agreed to receive a deputation from the factory.* **~of** *A deputation of 40 strikers was organized.*

deputy *noun*

1 second most important person
- ADJ. **acting** | **former** *a former deputy chairman of the Democratic Party*
- VERB + DEPUTY **appoint (sb as)** *A new deputy has not yet been appointed.* | **act as**
- DEPUTY + NOUN **chair, chairman, director, governor, head, leader, manager, minister, president, etc.** *He was appointed deputy head of the school.*
- PREP. **~ to** *She is acting as deputy to the chairman of the board.*

2 member of a parliament
- ADJ. **congressional, parliamentary** *133 of the parliamentary deputies voted against the treaty.* | **opposition** | **right-wing, socialist, etc.**
- VERB + DEPUTY **elect** *Three women were among the 77 deputies elected.*

deranged *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **a bit, slightly** | **mentally** *They took her into hospital because she was mentally deranged.*

derelict *adj.*

- VERBS **be, lie, look, seem, stand** *The land lay derelict for ten years.* | **become** | **make sth** *The houses were made derelict by the fire.*
- ADV. **totally** | **almost, virtually** | **partially, partly** *a partially derelict mill*

derive *verb*

- ADV. **clearly** *Females and cubs clearly derive some benefit from living in groups.* | **largely, mainly, primarily** | **partly** | **solely** | **directly** *This income was derived directly from his writing.* | **originally, ultimately**
- PREP. **from** *We can derive some comfort from this fact.*

descend *verb*

1 move downwards
- ADV. **quickly, rapidly** | **slowly**

2 lead downwards
- ADV. **sharply, steeply** | **gently, gradually**
- PREP. **into, to** *The path descends steeply to the village.*

3 **be descended from sb/sth** be related to sb/sth
- ADV. **directly** *The breed is almost directly descended from the Eurasian wild boar.*
- VERB + DESCEND **claim to** *He claims to be descended from a Spanish prince.*

descendant *noun*

- ADJ. **direct, lineal** *Quechua, the lineal descendant of the Inca language* | **collateral** | **immediate** | **distant, remote** *He was an O'Conor and a distant descendant of the last High King of Ireland.*

descent *noun*

1 movement down
- ADJ. **rapid, swift** | **slow** | **steep** | **gentle, gradual** | **difficult, easy** *They began the difficult descent of the mountain's south west face.* | **final** *The plane was making its final descent so we had to fasten our seat belts.*
- VERB + DESCENT **make**
- PREP. **on/during a/the ~** *The engines failed on the plane's descent to Orly.* | **~ down** *I made a slow and painful descent down the stairs.* **~ from** *the descent from the top of the mountain* **~ into** *(figurative) his descent into alcoholism* **~ to** *The plane began its gentle descent to Heathrow.*
- PHRASES **a rate of descent** *We slowed the balloon's rate of descent.*

2 surface that goes downwards
- ADJ. **gentle** | **steep**

3 family origins
- ADJ. **direct, lineal** *She claims direct descent from Queen Victoria.* | **common** *Most European languages have a common descent.* | **mixed** | **Chinese, Irish, etc.**
- VERB + DESCENT **claim, have** | **trace** | **share** *groups sharing common descent*
- PREP. **by ~** *She is Hungarian by descent.* | **~ from** *He claims to have traced descent from Christopher Columbus.*
- PHRASES **a line of descent** *Humans and other apes followed separate lines of descent from a common ancestor.* **of Mexican, Scottish, etc. descent** *She is of mixed European and African descent.*

describe *verb*

- ADV. **accurately, exactly, in detail** *Their daily lives are described in detail.* | **fully** *This process is fully described in section three of the book.* | **adequately** | **briefly** *He described briefly what happened.* | **vividly**
- VERB + DESCRIBE **cannot** *Words cannot describe our feelings at that moment.* | **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** | **go on to** *He goes on to describe very vividly how Caesar was stabbed to death.*

description *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, comprehensive, detailed, full** *The catalogue gives a full description of each product.* | **accurate, apt, exact, excellent, fair, fitting, good, perfect** *'Like a fish out of water' was an apt description of how I felt in my new job.* | **vivid** *a vivid description of life in Ancient Rome* | **graphic, lurid** *She gave us a lurid description of the birth.* | **lengthy, long** | **brief, short** | **basic, simple** | **vague** | **objective** *A report is generally an objective description rather than a statement of opinion.* | **physical** | **job** *There was no mention of any cleaning in my job description.*
- VERB + DESCRIPTION **give (sb), issue, provide (sb with)** *Police have issued a description of the gunman.* ◇ *She was able to provide a description of the intruder.* | **fit** *A man fitting your description was seen entering the building.* | **beggar, defy** *His face was so odd that it defies description.*
- DESCRIPTION + VERB **apply to sb, fit sb** *I realized to my horror that the description of the killer fitted me.*

descriptive *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly, very** *a highly descriptive account of her journey through Africa* | **entirely, purely** *The passage is purely descriptive.* | **merely, simply** | **essentially, largely, mainly**
- PREP. **of** *The terms are descriptive of strong emotion.*

desert *noun*

- ADJ. **arid, barren, dry** *green fields surrounded by arid desert* | **vast** | **inhospitable** | **Arctic, polar** | **cultural** *(figurative) The theatre and cinema closed and the town became a cultural desert.*
- VERB + DESERT **become, turn into/to** *The land loses its protective cover of vegetation and soon turns into desert.* | **cross** *He became the first person to cross the desert on foot.*
- DESERT + VERB **stretch** *The desert stretched for endless miles on all sides of us.*
- DESERT + NOUN **area, country, land, landscape, region** *vast tracts of desert land* | **conditions** | **heat** | **sand, soil** | **floor, surface** | **plain** | **animal, plant**
- PREP. **across/through the ~** *their journey across the desert* **in the ~** *cold nights in the desert* **into the ~** *He drove off into the desert.*

deserted *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become**
- ADV. **completely, quite, totally, utterly** *The streets were completely deserted.* | **almost, virtually | largely | apparently | temporarily**

deserve *verb*

- ADV. **certainly, really, surely** *You really deserve a medal!* | **justly, richly, rightly, truly** *He finally received the recognition that he so richly deserved.* | **fully, thoroughly** *This hotel fully deserves its four-star grading.* | **hardly, scarcely** *It's true she made a mistake but she hardly deserves to lose her job.*
- PREP. **for** *She deserves some reward for all her hard work.*
- PHRASES **deserve better** *His work received only a tiny mention in the journal; he deserves better.* **well deserved** *At last she managed to have a well-deserved rest.*

deserving *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **eminently, very | fairly | equally** *All the causes seem equally deserving.*
- PREP. **of** *the areas most deserving of study*

design *noun*

1 making drawings of how sth should be made
- ADJ. **graphic | computer-aided** *a specialist in computer-aided design* | **architectural, industrial, interior**
- DESIGN + NOUN **business, company, consultancy, firm | consultant, engineer, staff, team | centre, department, studio | work** *She's done some design work for us in the past.* | **process** *The new CAD program really speeds up the design process.* | **program, software | project | ability, expertise, skills**
- PHRASES **art and design** *I'm doing a course in art and design.*

2 the way sth is made/a drawing of this
- ADJ. **basic, simple | complex, sophisticated | excellent, good | poor | adventurous, bold, innovative, original, revolutionary | attractive, beautiful, stylish | classical, conventional, traditional | ergonomic**
- VERB + DESIGN **come up with, create, produce** *He's come up with a really good design for a solar-powered car.* | **follow, use** *We followed the traditional design.*
- DESIGN + NOUN **feature** *The latest model incorporates some novel design features.* | **concept, idea, solution** *The architect put forward two alternative design concepts for the new library.* | **brief, requirements, specifications** *The chair she had sketched was far bigger than stipulated in the design brief.* | **fault | award** *The car wouldn't win any design awards, but it's very reliable.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The machine is quite simple in design.* **of … ~** *a vehicle of revolutionary design* **to a … ~** *The other houses are built to a more conventional design.* | **~ for** *the architect's designs for the cathedral*
- PHRASES **at the design stage** *Their new car is still at the design stage.*

3 pattern that decorates sth
- ADJ. **elaborate, intricate | simple | abstract, circular, floral, geometric, symmetrical**
- VERB + DESIGN **have** *The building has intricate geometric designs on several of the walls.*

4 intention
- ADJ. **evil, sinister | grand** *His grand design was to connect up every academic institution in the world.*
- VERB + DESIGN **harbour, have** *I suspected that he had some sinister designs.*
- PREP. **by ~** *Had it happened by accident or by design?*

design *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, cleverly** *These shelves have been designed very cleverly to fit into corners.* | **specially, specifically** *They run specially designed courses for managers.*
- PREP. **for** *The instruments are designed for use in very cold conditions.*

designate *verb*

- ADV. **formally, officially** *The area has now been formally designated as a Site of Special Scientific Interest.* | **specially | clearly**
- PREP. **for** *These areas have been specially designated for children.*

designer *noun*

- ADJ. **good, talented | professional | chief, senior** *the company's chief fashion designer* | **dress, fashion, furniture, garden, graphic, industrial, interior, landscape, program, set, software, system/systems, textile, theatre** *They brought in an interior designer to suggest colour schemes for the house.* ◇ *She works as a set designer for the Royal Opera House.*
- VERB + DESIGNER **bring in**
- DESIGNER + NOUN **clothes, fashion | label, name**

⇨ Note at JOB

desirable *adj.*

1 to be wished for
- VERBS **be, seem | become | consider sth, deem sth, feel sth, regard/see/view sth as, think sth** *A new direction was felt desirable for both parties.* ◇ *This kind of work is seen as desirable.*
- ADV. **eminently, extremely, highly, very** *Experience of computers is highly desirable.* | **wholly | clearly, obviously** *It is clearly desirable that domestic and European law should be compatible.* | **inherently | theoretically | economically, morally, politically, socially**

2 causing sexual desire
- VERBS **be | become | find sb**
- ADV. **extremely, intensely, very** *He found her intensely desirable.* | **infinitely | sexually**

desire *noun*

- ADJ. **burning, deep, great, strong, urgent | insatiable, overwhelming** *Most children have an insatiable desire for knowledge.* | **genuine, real | natural | sexual**
- VERB + DESIRE **feel, have** *I suddenly felt an overwhelming desire to laugh* | **express** *The chairman expressed his desire to expand the company.* | **satisfy | be motivated by** *They were motivated by a deep desire for money and fame.*
- PREP. **~ for** *Horses need to satisfy their desire for space and freedom.*
- PHRASES **an object of desire** *He felt he was nothing more to her than an object of desire.*

desire *verb*

- ADV. **greatly, really, sincerely, very much** *A home of her own was something she had always very much desired.*

desk *noun*

1 type of table
- ADJ. **big, enormous, high, huge, large, vast | leather-topped | antique | empty** *The empty desk suggested she had already gone home.* | **cluttered, untidy | writing | office, school**
- VERB + DESK **sit at | get up from** *He got up from his desk and went to the window.* | **clear** *My desk gets very cluttered if I don't clear it at the end of each day.* | **arrive**

on, land on *A very strange request landed on my desk this morning.*

- DESK + NOUN **drawer | diary, lamp | job**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *He was sitting at his desk working when we got home.* **behind a/the ~** *The manager sat frowning behind his desk throughout the whole interview.* **on a/the ~** *I left the file on your desk.*

2 place in a building where a service is provided

- ADJ. **front, reception** *Leave your valuables at the reception desk.* | **cash, check-in, enquiry/enquiries, help, information, support** *She paid for the book at the cash desk.* ◇ *Staff experiencing problems with their computers should ring the help desk.*
- DESK + NOUN **clerk**
- PREP. **at the ... ~** *There was a long queue at the check-in desk.* **on the ... ~** *We asked the man on the information desk for a map of the city.*

desolate *adj.*

1 empty and depressing

- VERBS **be, seem, stand** *The house stands desolate and empty.* | **become | leave sth** *The land was left desolate.*
- ADV. **completely, quite** *The landscape was quite desolate.* | **rather** *a rather desolate place*

2 very unhappy

- VERBS **be, feel, look, sound** *He looked as desolate as Ruth felt.* | **become**
- ADV. **quite, utterly** *She was utterly desolate after losing her baby.* | **a little** *Her voice sounded a little desolate.*

despair *noun*

- ADJ. **black, bleak, deep | complete, total, utter**
- VERB + DESPAIR **feel | drive sb to** *The novel tells the story of a teenager driven to despair by the hypocrisy of the adult world.*
- PREP. **in ~** *Robert shook his head in despair.* **of ~** *She let out a cry of despair.* **with ~** *He cried out with despair.* | **~ at** *I felt despair at being deceived.*
- PHRASES **the depths of despair** *When he became ill he sank to the depths of despair.* **in a moment of despair, a feeling/sense of despair** *I was overcome with a feeling of utter despair.*

desperate *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *I was starting to get desperate.* | **make sb** *The sudden loss of his money had made him desperate.*
- ADV. **really | absolutely, utterly** *She felt utterly desperate.* | **increasingly | almost | a little, pretty, rather**
- PREP. **about** *I felt desperate about my future.*

desperation *noun*

- ADJ. **sheer | quiet | growing** *We realized with a sense of growing desperation that nobody knew we were in there.*
- QUANT. **hint, note** *There was a note of desperation in her voice.*
- VERB + DESPERATION **feel | drive sb to** *Driven to desperation by our noisy neighbours, we called the police.*
- PREP. **in (your) ~** *In desperation, I decided to try acupuncture.* ◇ *In his desperation to escape, Tom had slipped and broken a leg.* **out of ~** *At the end of the film, the man becomes a thief out of sheer desperation.* | **~ about/at** *Many of us feel a quiet desperation at the future.*
- PHRASES **an act of desperation** *The robbery was an act of desperation.* **courage, strength, etc. born of desperation** *With strength born of desperation, she managed to break down the door.*

despicable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | condemn sth as, consider sth, find sth** *Police have condemned the theft from an elderly widow as despicable.* ◇ *To fail was considered despicable.*
- ADV. **absolutely, quite** *It was an absolutely despicable thing to do.* | **pretty**

despise *verb*

- ADV. **thoroughly | clearly | secretly** *He secretly despised his father.* | **openly**
- PREP. **for** *She thoroughly despised him for his weakness.*

despondent *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel** *Patients often feel despondent.* | **become, get, grow** *His work was rejected again and again, and he grew more and more despondent.*
- ADV. **very | utterly** *She was feeling utterly despondent.* | **a bit, pretty, rather, somewhat**
- PREP. **about** *He had become rather despondent about his lack of progress.*

dessert *noun*

- ADJ. **delicious | rich** *This chestnut pudding is a rich dessert with a festive flavour.*
- VERB + DESSERT **eat, have**
- DESSERT + NOUN **apple, wine | menu, trolley**
- PREP. **for ~** *We had mousse for dessert.* | **~ of** *We finished off with a dessert of honey and nuts.*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

destination *noun*

- ADJ. **eventual, final, ultimate | favourite, popular** *The town is a popular destination for art lovers.* | **ideal, perfect | intended** *We got lost and ended up miles away from our intended destination.* | **exotic | holiday, tourist** *The island is an ideal holiday destination.* | **unknown**
- VERB + DESTINATION **arrive at, reach** *At around 1.00 p.m. we reached our final destination.*
- PREP. **to a/the ~** *The deposed leader is reported to have fled the capital to an unknown destination.* | **~ for** *a popular holiday destination for golf enthusiasts*
- PHRASES **the country/port/state of destination** *The goods are examined by customs at the port of destination.*

destiny *noun*

- VERB + DESTINY **fulfil, meet** *She was convinced that sooner or later she would fulfil her destiny.* ◇ *The time was right for him to meet his destiny.* | **avoid, escape** *No man can escape his destiny.* | **shape** *Something was about to happen that would shape her destiny.*
- DESTINY + VERB **await sb, lie** *the destiny that awaited him* ◇ *Her destiny lay in that city.*
- PHRASES **be in control of your own destiny/be master of your own destiny** *She set up her own business because she wanted to be in control of her own destiny.* **a sense of destiny** *He was driven on by a strong sense of destiny.*

destroy *verb*

1 damage sth so badly that it no longer exists

- ADV. **completely, entirely, totally, utterly | all but, almost, effectively, practically, virtually** *Their lives have been virtually destroyed by this tragedy.* | **largely | partly | systematically** *The rainforest is being systematically destroyed.* | **by fire** *The building was destroyed by fire last year.*
- VERB + DESTROY **can/could** *Drugs can destroy the health and lives of young people.* | **threaten to** *This disease threatens to destroy many of our native trees.*
- PHRASES **an attempt to destroy sth** *a new attempt to destroy enemy positions* **be capable of destroying sth** *These weapons are capable of destroying the entire planet.*

be intent on destroying sth *She seemed intent on destroying everything they had built up together.*

2 kill an animal

- ADV. **humanely**
- PHRASES **have to be destroyed** *The horse broke a leg and had to be destroyed.*

destruction *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, total, wholesale | large-scale, mass, massive, widespread** *modern weapons of mass destruction* | **rapid | systematic | wanton** *the wanton destruction of public property* | **environmental, forest, habitat** *the environmental destruction caused by road building*
- VERB + DESTRUCTION **bring (about), cause, lead to, result in, wreak** (*formal*) *the destruction brought about by war.* ◇ *He gasped as he saw how much destruction she had wrought with the hammer.* | **prevent** *Some shopkeepers closed early to prevent the wholesale destruction of their property by the hooligans.*
- PHRASES **leave a trail of destruction** *The tornado left a trail of destruction behind it.* **the seeds of destruction** *By doubling its prices, the industry sowed the seeds of its own destruction.* **test sth to destruction** *Children will quickly test their toys to destruction.*

destructive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very | downright, wholly** *downright destructive behaviour* | **quite | potentially** *potentially destructive emotions* | **environmentally** *environmentally destructive policies*
- PREP. **of** *Clearing trees by burning is highly destructive of the forest environment.* **to** *These substances can be destructive to health.*

detachable *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **fully** *The lid is fully detachable.* | **easily, readily**
- PREP. **from** *The handle is detachable from the bag.*

detached *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | become | remain**
- ADV. **largely, very | completely, totally, wholly | rather, slightly | curiously, oddly, strangely** *He felt curiously detached from what was going on.* | **emotionally**
- PREP. **from** *She tries to remain emotionally detached from her patients.*

detachment *noun*

- ADJ. **complete | clinical, professional** *She gazed at the body with almost clinical detachment.* | **cool | critical | emotional**
- VERB + DETACHMENT **have, show** *He shows impartiality and detachment.*
- PREP. **with ~** *She watched with complete detachment as the others made all the preparations.* | **~ from** *his increasing detachment from reality*
- PHRASES **an air of detachment, a feeling/sense of detachment**

detail *noun*

- ADJ. **little, minor, minute, small, tiny** *It is important to get even the small details right.* | **considerable, fine, great, meticulous** *Now let us examine this idea in greater detail.* ◇ *Every new animal or plant found was recorded in meticulous detail.* | **exact, precise** *I don't need to know the precise details of your quarrel.* | **colourful, vivid | graphic, sordid** *I can still remember the accident in graphic detail.* | **intimate** *The diary contains intimate details of their life together.* | **complete, full** *We'll give you full details of how to enter our competition later.* | **bare, brief, sketchy ~s** *He only managed to give the police a few sketchy details of the robbery.* | **essential** *I only know the barest details of his plans.* | **practical** *I haven't sorted out the practical details of getting there yet.* | **complex, intricate | final** *Everyone must approve the basic plan before the final details are drawn up.* | **concrete** *Can you give me some concrete details of how you've been saving money?* | **factual, historical, technical**
- QUANT. **point** *I must correct some points of detail in your article on Barcelona.* | **wealth** *The book provides a wealth of detail on daily life in Ancient Rome.* | **level** *Ensure that your diagrams contain the appropriate level of detail.*
- VERB + DETAIL **give, go into, provide, send, supply** *Briefly describe the product, but do not give any technical details at this stage.* ◇ *I don't want to go into any more detail than absolutely necessary.* | **lay out, lay sth out in, set out, set sth out in, spell out, spell sth out in** *Details of the pension plan are set out below.* ◇ *The rules are set out in detail in chapter seven.* | **establish, finalize, work out, work sth out in** *We haven't yet worked out the travel details.* | **discuss, negotiate** *We still need to negotiate the details of the contract.* | **fill sb** *I'll give you a call later and fill you in on the details.* | **spare sb** (*informal*) *'We had a terrible time—' 'Oh, spare me the details* (= don't tell me any more).*'* | **contain, have** *Tomorrow's papers will contain full details of the case.* | **show** *The receipt shows details of the item purchased.* | **disclose, pass on, release ~s** *The city council refused to disclose details of the proposed traffic ban.* | **find out ~s** *You can find out more details of the offer from your local travel agent.* | **enter ~s** *Enter your details in the form below then click on 'submit'.* | **take ~s** *The secretary took my details and said they would get back to me.* | **check** *Make sure you check the details of the policy before you sign it.* | **record** *The computer records the details of everyone entering the country.* | **be lacking in, lack** *The speech was well delivered but lacking in detail.*
- PREP. **for ~s** *For details contact Joanna Morland.* **in ~** *I haven't looked at the proposal in detail yet.* **over a/the ~** *They're still arguing over the details of the contract.* | **~ about** *I won't go into detail about the threats she made.* **~ on** *For more detail on how to obtain a visa, see page 8.*
- PHRASES **attention to detail** *The secret of their success lies in their attention to detail.* **down to the last detail** *an expedition planned down to the last detail* **every last detail** *She remembered every last detail of what I'd told her the month before.* **an eye for detail** *He has an excellent eye for detail.* **full of detail** *Her short stories are full of detail and humour.* **a lack of detail** *The report was criticized for its lack of detail.*

detailed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, highly, immensely, very** *a very detailed account of the events* | **fully | increasingly | fairly, quite | meticulously, minutely | exquisitely, finely, richly** *the exquisitely detailed carvings on the cathedral door* | **unusually | unnecessarily**

detain *verb*

- ADV. **briefly** *He was kidnapped and briefly detained by a terrorist group.*
- VERB + DETAIN **need not** *This issue need not detain us long.*
- PREP. **for** *She was arrested and detained for distributing pro-democracy leaflets.* **in connection with** *Over 60 people have been detained in connection with the coup attempt.*
- PHRASES **be detained in custody/hospital** *Two people were detained in hospital following the crash.* **detain sb without charge/trial** *He has been detained without trial for nearly two years now.*

detect *verb*

- ADV. **early, late** *A lot of cancers can now be cured if they are detected early.* | **quickly** | **easily, readily** *Some substances can be detected fairly easily.* | **accurately**
- VERB + DETECT **be able to, be sensitive enough to, can** *a machine that is sensitive enough to detect tiny amounts of explosives* | **be unable to** | **be designed to** | **fail to** *The test failed to detect any illegal substances.* | **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** | **be easy to, be possible to** | **be used to**
- PHRASES **be capable of detecting sth, a means/method/way of detecting sth**

detection *noun*

- ADJ. **early** *Our aim is the early detection and treatment of all cancers.*
- VERB + DETECTION **avoid, escape, evade** *Their prey can sometimes escape detection by remaining still.*
- DETECTION + NOUN **rate** *The latest figures show falling crime detection rates.*

detective *noun*

- ADJ. **private** *She hired a private detective to follow her husband.* | **undercover** | **store** *The store detective was keeping a close eye on a suspected shoplifter.*
- VERB + DETECTIVE **hire**
- DETECTIVE + VERB **investigate sth** *detectives investigating the case*
- DETECTIVE + NOUN **agency** | **work** *We are going to have to do some detective work on this.* | **fiction, novel, series, story**

detention *noun*

- ADJ. **arbitrary** *Opponents of the regime had been subject to arbitrary detention, torture and execution.* | **pre-trial** | **indefinite** *If found guilty of smuggling drugs, she could face indefinite detention.*
- VERB + DETENTION **be in, remain in** *147 of the illegal immigrants remain in detention.* | **hold sb in, place sb in, sentence sb to** *He was held in detention from 1991 to 2001.* ◇ *They were sentenced to 12 months' detention in a young offender institution.* | **be subject to, face** | **release sb from**
- DETENTION + NOUN **camp, centre**
- PREP. **in ~** *She spent 18 years in detention.* **under ~** *He made the confession while under detention.*
- PHRASES **a period/term of detention** *The judge will fix the period of detention.*

deter *verb*

- ADV. **hardly** *Her words of warning would hardly deter him.* | **effectively, sufficiently** *Will this harsher punishment effectively deter criminals?* | **easily**
- VERB + DETER **be likely/unlikely to** | **be enough to, be sufficient to** | **attempt to** | **be designed to** | **do little to, do nothing to** *The present system does little to deter corporate crime.*
- PREP. **from** *These new rules are likely to deter people from coming forward for help.*

deteriorate *verb*

- ADV. **badly, seriously** | **dramatically, sharply, quickly, rapidly** | **gradually** | **further**
- VERB + DETERIORATE **begin to** *His health began to deteriorate quite seriously.* | **continue to** | **be likely to**
- PREP. **into** *The unrest rapidly deteriorated into civil war.*

deterioration *noun*

- ADJ. **marked, serious, significant** *a serious deterioration in relations between the two governments* | **rapid, sharp** | **gradual, progressive** | **mental, physical** *Mental and physical deterioration both occur naturally with age.* | **environmental**
- VERB + DETERIORATION **cause, lead to, result in** *The stress led to a gradual deterioration in her health.* | **prevent** *Limits on the dumping of waste will at least prevent further environmental deterioration in the region.* | **arrest** *Steps need to be taken quickly to arrest the deterioration in the countries' relationship.*
- DETERIORATION + VERB **occur**
- PREP. **~ in** *a rapid deterioration in his condition*
- PHRASES **signs of deterioration** *The car's bodywork was already showing signs of deterioration.*

determination *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, dogged, fierce, great, grim, gritty, ruthless, single-minded, steely, strong** | **clear** *The prime minister's speech revealed a clear determination to break the power of the unions.*
- VERB + DETERMINATION **be full of, have** *She was full of determination to achieve her goals.* ◇ *He has the determination to succeed.* | **reveal, show** *She has shown great determination and skill.* | **express, signal** *The government last night signalled its determination to resist tax cuts.* | **require** | **lack**
- PREP. **with ~** *He hung on with grim determination.*
- PHRASES **determination to succeed/win**

determine *verb*

- ADV. **exactly, precisely** *We need a detailed investigation to determine exactly why these cancers are occurring.*
- VERB + DETERMINE **try to** | **be used to, help to** *Computer models help to determine whether a particular area is likely to flood.* | **be easy to, be possible to** | **be difficult to, be impossible to** *It is difficult to determine the exact cause of the illness.* | **be necessary to** | **be able to**

determined *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound** | **become** | **remain** | **make sb** *The opposition to her scheme made her more determined than ever.*
- ADV. **really, very** | **absolutely, quite, utterly** *They were quite determined that he wasn't going to do it.* | **fairly** | **clearly, obviously** | **fiercely, grimly** *His voice was grimly determined.* | **quietly** | **resolutely**

deterrent *noun*

- ADJ. **effective, good, great, powerful, real** | **the ultimate** *Defenders of the death penalty clearly regard it as the ultimate deterrent.* | **nuclear** *They stressed the need for an independent nuclear deterrent.*
- VERB + DETERRENT **act as, be** *a punishment that will act as a deterrent to other offenders*
- DETERRENT + NOUN **effect** *They were arguing about the deterrent effect of nuclear weapons.*
- PREP. **as a ~** *The bodies of executed criminals were hung on the city gates as a deterrent.* | **~ against** *a deterrent against cheating* **~ for** *There is no effective deterrent for these young criminals.* **~ to** *a deterrent to crime* ◇ *a deterrent to all but the most determined attacker*

detour *noun*

- ADJ. **lengthy, long** | **brief, short, small**
- VERB + DETOUR **make, take** *We had to make a lengthy detour through the backstreets.* | **be worth** *The monument is well worth a detour.*
- PREP. **~ around** *Trucks now face a five-mile detour around the bridge.* **~ through, ~ to** *The ship made a detour to the south.*

detrimental *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove, seem | become**

• ADV. **extremely, highly, seriously, very | positively** *Sugar is positively detrimental to bodybuilding.* **| rather**

• PREP. **to** *This move could be seriously detrimental to the economy.*

devalue *verb*

• ADV. **effectively**

• PREP. **against** *The pound was devalued against the US dollar.* **by** *The Cambodian currency was effectively devalued by 25 per cent.*

devastation *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, utter | widespread | ecological, environmental | economic**

• VERB + DEVASTATION **cause** *The hurricane caused widespread devastation.*

• DEVASTATION + VERB **be wrought** *We surveyed the devastation wrought by the fire.*

• PHRASES **a scene of devastation** *He surveyed the scene of utter devastation beneath him.* **a trail of devastation** *The tornado left a trail of devastation in its wake.*

developed *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem**

• ADV. **highly, strongly, well** *He's got a highly developed sense of humour.* **| fully | partially | finely | poorly** *She was born prematurely with poorly developed lungs.* **| newly | economically** *economically developed countries*

developer *noun*

• ADJ. **big, major | local** *A local developer is planning to build a supermarket on the site.* **| private** *The flats are being built by a private developer.* **| speculative | housing, property** *plans by a big property developer to build fifty new houses*

• DEVELOPER + VERB **build sth, develop sth**

development *noun*

1 developing sth

• ADJ. **full** *School should encourage the full development of a student's talents.* **| gradual | rapid | sustainable | healthy | commercial, economic, industrial | evolutionary, historical | regional | rural, suburban, urban | human | educational, emotional, intellectual, linguistic, personal, physical, psychological, sexual, social, spiritual | software | child | property**

• VERB + DEVELOPMENT **aid, allow, assist, encourage, enhance, facilitate, favour, foster, permit, promote, stimulate, support** *Education stimulates the development of rational thinking.* ◇ *A group of experts has been brought together to support the development of the project.* **| accelerate, speed up** *Environmental factors can accelerate the development of certain cancers.* **| arrest, discourage, halt, hinder, inhibit, prevent, restrict, retard, slow** *Too much emphasis on memorizing facts can inhibit the development of creative thinking.* **| finance** *The company went deep into debt to finance the development of the engine.* **| monitor, oversee** *A UN team is monitoring the development of the peace process.* **| trace** *In the opening chapter, the author traces the development of judo from its ancient roots.*

• DEVELOPMENT + VERB **occur, take place**

• DEVELOPMENT + NOUN **initiative, plan, programme, project, scheme | aid, assistance | work** *The invention requires more development work to make it viable.* **| process** *the lengthy development process of a new model of car* **| budget, capital, fund, grant | costs, expenditure**

• PREP. **during ~** *Cell divisions during development occur in a fixed sequence.* **in ~** *A more powerful version of this electric bus in currently in development.* **under ~** *The new vaccine is still under development.*

• PHRASES **research and development** *I do quite a lot of research and development work in my job.* **a stage in the development of sth** *an important stage in the development of Anglo-Irish relations* **a stage of development** *This is a perfectly normal stage of development.*

2 new event/idea

• ADJ. **exciting, important, major, radical, remarkable, significant, striking | the latest, new, recent | logical** *The move from TV to film was a logical development in her career.* **| unexpected | welcome | political, scientific, technical, technological**

• DEVELOPMENT + VERB **occur, take place** *the significant developments taking place in the health service*

• PREP. **~ in** *new developments in film-making*

3 new buildings

• ADJ. **housing, property | business, commercial | ribbon** *Ribbon developments* (= lines of buildings) *extended along the main road.*

deviate *verb*

• ADV. **considerably, significantly**

• PREP. **by** *Output may deviate from the average by as much as 30%.* **from** *We had to deviate significantly from our usual route.*

device *noun*

• ADJ. **clever, ingenious | labour-saving, useful | complex, sophisticated | simple | hi-tech | hand-held | automatic, electrical, electronic, mechanical | bugging, contraceptive, measuring, safety, timing, warning** *Police found several bugging devices in the room.* **| explosive, incendiary** *An incendiary device exploded in the store, setting fire to furniture.*

• VERB + DEVICE **be fitted with, have** *All new cars are now fitted with these safety devices.* **| design, develop, make | use** *He measured the room using an ingenious new electronic device.*

• DEVICE + VERB **consist of sth** *The device consists of a large wheel mounted on a metal post.* **| be designed to** *a tiny device designed to trace telephone calls* **| work** *The device worked exactly as I'd hoped.*

• PREP. **~ for** *a useful device for checking electrical circuits*

devil *noun*

• VERB + DEVIL **believe in** *Do you believe in the Devil?* **| worship | be possessed by** *He behaved like someone possessed by devils.* **| exorcize**

• DEVIL + NOUN **worship | worshipper**

• PHRASES **the devil incarnate** (*figurative*) *His strong left-wing views make him the devil incarnate to more extreme Conservatives.*

devoid *adj.* devoid of

• VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | remain**

• ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly** *Are you totally devoid of common sense?* **| almost, largely, practically, virtually** *The land is almost devoid of vegetation.*

devote *verb*

PHRASAL VERB

devote sth/yourself to sth

• ADV. **entirely, exclusively, solely, specifically** *She devoted herself entirely to writing.* **| mainly**

devoted *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**
- ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, completely, totally, utterly | passionately**
- PREP. **to** *They were totally devoted to each other.*

devotee *noun*

- ADJ. **ardent, committed, fervent, great, serious** *I'm a great devotee of jazz.*

devotion *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, enormous | great | fanatical, intense, passionate, single-minded** *Their single-minded devotion to the care of the dying was admirable.* | **total** *her total devotion to her husband* | **selfless | blind, dog-like** *He was mocked for his dog-like devotion to his boss.* | **lifelong, undying** *his lifelong devotion to his work* | **mutual** *a marriage rooted in mutual devotion and trust* | **religious** *a man of deep religious devotion*
- VERB + DEVOTION **show**
- PREP. **with ~** *He cared for his mother with great devotion.* | **~to** *They showed great devotion to each other.*
- PHRASES **devotion to duty** *The judge praised the firefighters for their bravery and devotion to duty.* **devotion to the cause** *She will be remembered for her selfless devotion to the cause of the poor.* **an object of devotion** *The statue of the emperor became an object of devotion.*

devour *verb*

- ADV. **eagerly, greedily, hungrily** *He devoured the food greedily.* | **quickly** *The animal quickly devoured its prey.*

dew *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy** *There was a heavy dew this morning.* | **morning** *The sun had dried the early morning dew.*
- QUANT. **drop** *Drops of dew shone on the grass.*
- DEW + VERB **fall, form**
- DEW + NOUN **drop** (also **dewdrop**)
- PHRASES **damp/heavy/wet with dew** *The grass was still wet with dew.*

dexterity *noun*

- ADJ. **great | manual**
- VERB + DEXTERITY **demand, require** *Video games demand great manual dexterity.* | **have** *I don't have the dexterity for juggling.*
- PREP. **with ~** *She handled the discussion with dexterity.*

diagnose *verb*

- ADV. **correctly | incorrectly, wrongly** *Her condition was wrongly diagnosed by the doctor.*
- PREP. **with** *He was diagnosed with leukaemia.*

diagnosis *noun*

- ADJ. **accurate, correct, right | incorrect, wrong | definite, definitive, firm, positive | provisional, tentative** *Without the results of the blood test, the doctor could only make a tentative diagnosis.* | **early** *Early diagnosis is critical for successful treatment.* | **initial | final | clinical, medical, psychiatric** *clinical diagnosis of schizophrenia* | **AIDS, cancer, etc. | fault**
- VERB + DIAGNOSIS **establish, give, make, reach** *The doctor cannot give a diagnosis without knowing the full medical history.* | **confirm** *Further tests have confirmed the diagnosis.*
- PREP. **after ~, before ~** *Patients may suffer from some of the symptoms years before diagnosis.* | **~ of** *the diagnosis of the disease ◇ a diagnosis of cancer*
- PHRASES **a method of diagnosis** *They are using new methods of diagnosis.*

diagram *noun*

- ADJ. **clear | detailed | rough | simple | flow, schematic | circuit, wiring**
- VERB + DIAGRAM **draw** *Draw a simple diagram of the leaf structure.*
- DIAGRAM + VERB **depict sth, illustrate sth, indicate sth, represent sth, show sth** *a flow diagram showing the stages in the printing process*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Compare this system to the one shown in diagram B.* **on a/the ~** *The trees will be planted at the points marked on the diagram.* | **~ of** *a diagram of the human nervous system*

dial *noun*

- VERB + DIAL **adjust, set, turn, twiddle, twist** *Set the dial for the number of copies required.*

dial *verb*

- ADV. **direct** *It is possible to dial direct to many countries.*

dialect *noun*

- ADJ. **local, native, regional | non-standard | northern, southern, etc. | Scottish, Ulster, etc.**
- VERB + DIALECT **speak (in)**
- DIALECT + NOUN **expression, form, word | speaker**

dialogue *noun*

- ADJ. **close** *There needs to be a closer dialogue between management and staff.* | **direct** *The government refused to engage in direct dialogue with the terrorists.* | **constructive, serious | political** *a serious political dialogue*
- VERB + DIALOGUE **engage in, have, hold** *Managers are willing to hold a dialogue with union leaders.* | **begin, enter into, open | resume**
- PREP. **~ about** *dialogue about concrete issues* **~ among** *The head encourages a climate of open dialogue among the teachers.* **~ between** *the need for dialogue between the two sides in the dispute* **~ on** *a constructive dialogue on pay and working conditions* **~ with** *They have agreed to resume their dialogue with the teachers.*

diameter *noun*

- ADJ. **inside, internal** *The tubes have an internal diameter of 2mm.* | **external, outside | large, small**
- VERB + DIAMETER **calculate, find, measure** *He used similar triangles to calculate the diameter of the earth.* | **have**
- PREP. **in ~** *The mirror is 25cm in diameter.*

diamond *noun*

1 precious stone

- ADJ. **flawless, perfect | real | paste | cut | uncut | industrial**
- VERB + DIAMOND **cut | polish | set | be encrusted with, be studded with** *a brooch encrusted with diamonds* | **drip with** *an old woman dripping with diamonds*
- DIAMOND + VERB **glitter, sparkle**
- DIAMOND + NOUN **mine | industry, trade | broker, dealer, merchant**

2 playing card

⇨ Note at CARD

diarrhoea *noun*

- ADJ. **severe | mild | acute, chronic | intermittent, persistent**
- VERB + DIARRHOEA **have, suffer from | develop, get**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

diary *noun*

1 for appointments

- ADJ. **appointments, bookings, engagement, social | desk, pocket | electronic**
- VERB + DIARY **have sth in** *I haven't got the meeting in my diary.* | **put sth in, write sth in** *Put it in your diary before you forget.*
- PREP. **in a/your ~**

2 for writing down what happens each day

- ADJ. **detailed | daily | personal, private, secret | field, gardening, travel** *He jotted down observations on the animals' habits in his field diary.*
- VERB + DIARY **keep** *I starting keeping a diary when I was thirteen.* | **write sth in, note sth in, record sth in** *'It's all over,' he wrote in his diary for April 21.*
- DIARY + NOUN **entry**
- PREP. **in a/your ~** *I've made a note in my diary.*
- PHRASES **an entry in a diary**

dice *noun*

- ADJ. **loaded**
- VERB + DICE **roll, throw** *You decide who's going to start by throwing the dice.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *You move forward according to the number on the dice.*
- PHRASES **a roll/throw of the dice** *The roll of the dice went against them.*

dictation *noun*

- VERB + DICTATION **do, have** *We did a French dictation in class.* | **give sb** *The teacher gave them a dictation.* | **take** *Her secretary is very good at taking dictation.*
- PREP. **at sb's ~** *I wrote some letters at his dictation.* **from ~** *I find it difficult to write letters from dictation.* **in a/the ~** *We had some very difficult words in our dictation.*

dictatorship *noun*

- ADJ. **communist, fascist | left-wing, right-wing | military | totalitarian | benevolent**
- VERB + DICTATORSHIP **establish, set up** *The generals established a military dictatorship.* | **overthrow** *They succeeded in overthrowing the fascist dictatorship.*
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *the atrocities that took place during his dictatorship* **under (a/the) ~** *These men had all lived under dictatorship.*

dictionary *noun*

- ADJ. **comprehensive, good | electronic, online | picture | pocket | English, French, etc. | English/French, French/English, etc. | bilingual, monolingual | learner's, native-speaker | standard | specialist, technical | collocation, etymological, historical, pronunciation | biographical, encyclopedic, medical** *I decided to consult a medical dictionary.*
- VERB + DICTIONARY **consult, look sth up in, use** *If you don't know the meaning of a word, look it up in the dictionary.* ◇ *teaching children how to use dictionaries* | **compile, write | edit | publish**
- DICTIONARY + NOUN **definition, entry**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *I couldn't find the word in the dictionary.*

die *verb*

- ADV. **in childbirth | in infancy, prematurely, young** *One of their children died in infancy.* | **peacefully | suddenly | tragically** *Her father died tragically in a car crash.*
- VERB + DIE **be going to** *I thought I was going to die.* | **be allowed to** *She should be allowed to die peacefully.*
- PREP. **for** *to die for your country* **from** *The accident victim died from her injuries.* **of** *He died of a heart attack.*
- PHRASES **die a natural sudden, violent, etc. death**

diesel *noun*

- VERB + DIESEL **run on, use** *These buses run on diesel.*
- DIESEL + NOUN **power | fuel, fumes, oil | car, engine, locomotive, model, train** *The diesel model is noisier than the petrol model.*

diet *noun*

1 food sb/sth usually eats

- ADJ. **balanced, good, healthy, sensible | adequate** *People can fight infection more easily if they have an adequate diet.* | **bad, poor, unhealthy | staple** *a staple diet of cornmeal and vegetables* | **vegan, vegetarian**
- VERB + DIET **eat, have** *It is important to eat a balanced diet.* | **live on, survive on** *They had to survive on a diet of insects and berries.* | **feed sb on**
- DIET + VERB **consist of sth** *The animal's diet consists mainly of grasses.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the amount of fat in your diet* | **on a ~** *These animals live on a mainly vegetarian diet.* | **~ of** *They were fed on a diet of rice and vegetables.*
- PHRASES **a diet high/rich in sth** *a diet rich in vitamins and minerals*

2 when you want to lose weight/are ill

- ADJ. **strict | slimming, weight-loss, weight-reducing | crash, starvation** *Crash diets are not the best way to lose weight.* | **calorie-controlled, low-calorie | restricted, special | fibre-rich, gluten-free, high/low-fibre, high/low-protein, low-fat, salt-free, etc.**
- VERB + DIET **follow, have** *If you follow this diet, you're bound to lose weight.* | **go on, start | stick to** *I have to stick to a low-fat diet.* | **be on** *I'd love some chips, but I'm on a diet.*
- DIET + NOUN **drink, food | plan** *Lose pounds with our new diet plan!*
- PREP. **on a ~** *They're on a special high-protein diet.*

differ *verb*

1 be different

- ADV. **considerably, enormously, fundamentally, greatly, markedly, radically, sharply, significantly, substantially, widely** *The two approaches differ markedly* ◇ *Opinions differ widely on this issue.* | **little | slightly, somewhat | clearly**
- PREP. **according to** *Conditions of employment differ according to the type of company you are working for.* **between** *Social organization differs significantly between the different groups.* **from** *His ideas differ little from those of his father.* **in** *The models differ in size and shape.*

2 have a different opinion

- VERB + DIFFER **agree to** *In the end we agreed to differ.* | **beg to** *I beg to differ* (= I disagree with you).
- PREP. **about/over** *The two sides still differ over details of the plan.* **on** *The two parties differ on all the major issues.* **with** *It didn't seem right that I should differ with him.*

difference *noun*

1 way in which people/things are not the same

- ADJ. **big, broad, considerable, dramatic, enormous, great, huge, large, major, profound, radical, real, sharp, substantial, vast, wide** *A little extra care makes a big difference.* ◇ *I noticed a real difference in his attitude.* | **basic, essential, fundamental | crucial, important, key, significant | clear, distinct, marked, notable, noticeable, obvious, striking | minor, slight, subtle | national, regional | age, class, cultural, ethnic, gender, genetic, physical, psychological, racial, sex, social | historical,**

ideological, **political** | **temperature**, **time** *What's the time difference between London and Tokyo?*

- VERB + DIFFERENCE **make** *The new central heating has made an enormous difference to the house.* ◇ *What difference does it make if he doesn't have a car?* | **mean** *One tiny mistake when you're climbing could mean the difference between life and death.* | **exaggerate, emphasize, focus on, highlight, stress, underline** *We should be focusing on what we have in common rather than emphasizing our differences.* | **appreciate, be aware of, feel, know, notice, perceive, see, spot, tell** *Only an expert would know the difference between the male and the female.* ◇ *Can you spot the difference between these two photos?* ◇ *It's difficult to tell the difference between butterflies and moths.* | **explain, illustrate** | **examine, explore, look at** *The study explores the differences between the way girls and boys talk.* | **show** *The questionnaire showed vast differences in what kind of product people want.* | **reflect** *Our different attitudes to life reflect the differences in our backgrounds.*
- DIFFERENCE + VERB **be, lie** *The difference lies in the way the fruit is prepared.* | **arise (from sth), exist** *The differences in size arise from the amount of sunshine each plant gets.*
- PREP. **~ between** *There's a big difference between reading about skiing and doing it yourself.* **~ from** *He was very aware of his difference from the other children.* **~ in** *The difference in price is not very significant.* **~ of** *a crucial difference of emphasis* **~ with** *There is one key difference with the earlier version of the software.* ◇ *The difference with this information service is that it's free.*
- PHRASES **a … with a difference** *If you want a holiday with a difference, come to Iceland.* **all the difference in the world** *There's all the difference in the world between choosing to do something and being forced to do it.* **a great deal of/a lot difference** *The extra money will make a lot of difference to us.* **make all the difference** *Just five minutes' exercise a day could make all the difference.* **no difference/not much difference** *There's not much difference between baseball and softball.*

2 sum of money in addition to the sum expected

- VERB + DIFFERENCE **pay** *If you decide you would prefer the more expensive model, you can bring this one back and pay the difference.* | **make up** *He hadn't got quite enough money, but his aunt agreed to make up the difference.* | **pocket** *He sold the car for more than he'd paid and pocketed the difference.* | **split** (*figurative*) *I wanted to leave early and Ian wanted to leave late, so we split the difference and left at noon.*

3 disagreement

- ADJ. **irreconcilable, major, serious, sharp** | **minor, slight** | **outstanding** *This round of talks aims to resolve the outstanding differences between the two sides.*
- VERB + DIFFERENCE **have** *They have had some minor differences, but in general they get on well together.* | **make up, patch up, put aside, reconcile, resolve, settle** *We're going to get the two sides together to see if they can't settle their differences.*
- DIFFERENCE + VERB **arise, emerge, occur** *Differences may arise when the young people do not have the same expectations as their parents.* | **remain** *Although the talks were generally successful, differences remain between the groups.*
- PREP. **~ as to/over** *There were some differences as to how to deal with the crisis.*
- PHRASES **a difference of opinion** *She and Luke had a difference of opinion over how much money they should spend.* **have your differences** *Like any married couple, we have our differences.*

different *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound, taste**
- ADV. **very** | **distinctly, markedly, radically, significantly, strikingly** *This school is radically different from most others.* | **completely, entirely, quite, totally** | **rather, slightly** | **subtly** *The same colour can appear subtly different on different types of paper.* | **materially, qualitatively** | **refreshingly** *a refreshingly different approach to language learning*
- PREP. **from** *Human beings are different from other animals.* **to** *Their customs are very different to ours.*

differentiate *verb*

- ADV. **clearly**
- VERB + DIFFERENTIATE **be important to** | **be easy to, be possible to** | **be difficult to**
- PREP. **between** *It is not always possible to differentiate between the two diseases.* **from** *features which clearly differentiate this product from other similar ones*

difficult *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, prove, seem, sound** | **become, get** *It is getting more and more difficult to find a job.* | **make sth** *The fog made driving very difficult.* | **find sth**
- ADV. **exceedingly, extraordinarily, extremely, incredibly, particularly, really, very** | **doubly** *Her disability made taking care of the home and raising a family doubly difficult.* | **increasingly** | **a bit, quite, rather** | **notoriously** *Birth rates are notoriously difficult to predict.*

difficulty *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, grave, great, major, real, serious, severe** *We had enormous difficulty in getting hold of the right equipment.* | **insurmountable** | **increasing** *questions of increasing difficulty* | **inherent** *the difficulties inherent in treating overdose patients* | **particular, special** *English spelling presents special difficulties for foreign learners.* | **economic, financial** | **practical, technical** *I think we've managed to overcome most of the practical difficulties.* | **behavioural, emotional, learning** *children with learning difficulties*
- QUANT. **level** *The games have various different levels of difficulty.*
- VERB + DIFFICULTY **encounter, experience, face, get into, have, run into** *Among the difficulties encountered was a lack of cooperation on the part of the authorities.* ◇ *Anyone experiencing difficulty with radio reception should call us on the new helpline.* ◇ *Let me know if you have any difficulties.* ◇ *I had little difficulty in persuading the others to come.* ◇ *The scheme has run into serious difficulties.* | **cause, create, make, present** *Will it cause any difficulties if I go early?* ◇ *She is always making difficulties for herself.* | **cope with, deal with, overcome, resolve, solve, surmount** | **avoid** *how to avoid technical difficulties* | **be fraught with** *The situation was fraught with difficulty.*
- DIFFICULTY + VERB **arise, crop up** *Difficulties arise when people fail to consult their colleagues.* | **lie (in sth)** *The difficulty lies in identifying the precise nature of the problem.*
- PREP. **despite a/the ~** *Despite all the difficulties, he still remains optimistic.* **in ~** *We could see that the swimmer was in difficulties.* **with/without ~** *We crossed the border without any difficulty.* ◇ *Life in the city was not without its difficulties.* | **~ in** *She had difficulty in starting her car.* **~ of** *the difficulty of finding affordable accommodation* **~ with** *having difficulty with the engine*

dig *noun*

1 hard push

- ADJ. **sharp**
- VERB + DIG **give** *She gave him a sharp dig in the ribs.* | **feel, get**
- PHRASES **a dig in the ribs**

2 critical remark

- ADJ. **little | sly** *I resisted the temptation to get in a sly dig at Fred.*
- VERB + DIG **get in, have, make**
- PREP. **~ about, ~ at** *They were having a little dig at her about the way she tells everybody else what to do.*

3 in the ground

- ADJ. **archaeological**
- VERB + DIG **go on** *I went on an archaeological dig over the summer.*
- DIG + VERB **reveal sth** *The dig revealed the site of a Roman villa.*

dig *verb*

- ADV. **deep** *We'll have to dig quite deep to get at the roots.*
- PREP. **for** *digging for buried treasure* **through** *digging through solid clay*

digest *verb*

- ADV. **easily** *Some foods are digested more easily than others.* | **fully** | **partially** *The parent bird partially digests food in its crop.*
- VERB + DIGEST **can/can't** *He has to avoid fat because his body can't digest it.* | **be difficult to, be easy to** *Cheese is very difficult to digest.*

digestion *noun*

- ADJ. **good | poor**
- VERB + DIGESTION **have** *She's got very poor digestion.* | **aid, help** *Peppermint aids digestion.*

digit *noun*

- ADJ. **binary, decimal** *the decimal digits 0 to 9*
- QUANT. **sequence, series, set, string** *a sequence of binary digits*
- PHRASES **three, four, etc. digits long** *The number can be up to eight digits long.*

dignified *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem | remain**
- ADV. **very | quite | quietly** *He remained quietly dignified in defeat.*

dignity *noun*

- ADJ. **enormous, great | calm, quiet** *She spoke to him with quiet dignity.* | **human, personal** *the importance of human dignity*
- VERB + DIGNITY **have, possess** *These people have enormous dignity.* | **keep, maintain, preserve, retain** *We all want to maintain our dignity in old age.* | **give sb** *Being treated in the privacy of your own room gives you more dignity.* | **lose** *The awful thing about old age is losing your dignity.* | **destroy, rob/strip sb of, threaten** *Slavery destroys human dignity.* ◇ *Keeping prisoners in such dreadful conditions strips them of all dignity.* | **muster** *With as much dignity as he could muster, he left the room.* | **stand on** (= insist on the respect you think you deserve) *She was never one to stand on her dignity.*
- PREP. **beneath your ~** *He clearly regarded manual work as beneath his dignity.* **with ~** *the right to die with dignity*
- PHRASES **an air of dignity** *His aristocratic voice gives him an air of dignity and power.* **lacking in dignity** *We felt that the way she was treated was lacking in dignity.* **a lack of dignity, a loss of dignity** *He hoped that he could change his mind without loss of dignity.* **a sense of dignity** *She had a strong sense of dignity.* **with your dignity intact** *He needed a way to retreat with his dignity intact.*

dilemma *noun*

- ADJ. **acute, appalling, big, difficult, genuine, great, impossible, real, serious, terrible, thorny | central, essential, fundamental** *The fundamental dilemma remains: in a tolerant society, should we tolerate intolerance?* | **familiar, perennial | human | personal | ethical, moral | policy, political**
- VERB + DILEMMA **create, pose** *This poses a difficult dilemma for teachers.* | **be caught in, be faced with, confront, face, have** *They were caught in a real dilemma.* | **resolve, solve** *I could see no way of resolving this moral dilemma.*
- DILEMMA + VERB **arise, occur, present itself** *the dilemma that arises when a doctor has to decide whether or not to prescribe an expensive treatment* | **lie** *The dilemma over human cloning lies at the heart of the ethical choices facing society.* | **confront sb, face sb** *The dilemma facing the country's allies was even more serious.* | **remain**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The minister is now in an impossible dilemma.* | **~ about/over** *She faced a dilemma about whether to accept the offer or not.* **~ between** *the perennial dilemma between getting on at work and fulfilling family commitments*
- PHRASES **a solution to a dilemma, a way out of a dilemma** *I couldn't see any way out of the dilemma.*

dilute *verb*

1 liquid

- ADV. **highly** *The fragrances are highly diluted.* | **slightly** *Dilute the juice slightly with water.*
- PREP. **in** *The perfumes are diluted in vegetable oils.* **with**

2 effect/quality

- ADV. **considerably, substantially** *The effect of this policy has now been considerably diluted.*

dimension *noun*

1 (often **dimensions**) measurements

- ADJ. **approximate | exact, precise** *It is important to measure the exact dimensions of the room.* | **overall | compact** *Despite the unit's compact dimensions, there's still plenty of room for expansion.* | **considerable** *a structure of considerable dimensions* | **fourth, second, third** *The fourth dimension, time, is also finite in extent.* | **physical, space/spatial, temporal/time | horizontal, vertical**
- VERB + DIMENSION **check, measure** *Can we just check the dimensions of the bedroom again?*
- PHRASES **in two/three dimensions** *a model in three dimensions*

2 aspect

- ADJ. **added, additional, different, extra, further, new | distinct** *In looking at population ageing we will consider two distinct dimensions.* | **wider** *There is a wider dimension to the question.* | **crucial, essential, important, main, major, significant | global, international, local, national, regional** *Communication via the Internet gives an important international dimension to the project.* | **aesthetic, class, cultural, economic, ethical, historical, human, ideological, moral, personal, political, religious, social, spiritual**
- VERB + DIMENSION **add, give (sth)** *Her illness adds an extra dimension to the problem.* | **have** *The affair had a different dimension now.* | **acquire, take on** *The crisis acquired a new dimension.*
- PREP. **~ to** *the spiritual dimension to our lives*

din *noun*

- ADJ. **awful, raucous, terrible | constant**
- VERB + DIN **make** *Who's making that awful din?* | **hear | hear sb above/over** *She could not be heard above the din of the crowd.*
- PREP. **above/over the ~** *Charles shouted above the din.* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **the din of battle**

dine *verb*

- ADV. **al fresco** *the joys of dining al fresco* | **in style** *We dined in style in the hotel restaurant.* | **out** *Dining out in attractive surroundings is one of life's great pleasures.*
- PREP. **on** *We dined on fresh local fish.*

dinghy *noun*

- ADJ. **inflatable, rubber** | **sailing**
- VERB + DINGHY **row, sail** *She sailed the dinghy across the bay.*
- DINGHY + NOUN **sailing, sailor**
- PREP. **in/into a/the ~** *She rowed ashore in the dinghy.*

dining room *noun*

- ADJ. **large, spacious** | **cosy, small** | **elegant** | **formal** | **panelled** | **communal** | **guest, residents', staff**
- DINING ROOM + VERB **seat sb** *The dining room seats up to 60 guests.* | **serve sth** *a cosy dining room serving excellent home-prepared cooking*
- DINING ROOM + NOUN **chair, table**

dinner *noun*

1 main meal of the day

- ADJ. **delicious, excellent, good, slap-up, sumptuous** *We were treated to a slap-up meal with every kind of seafood imaginable.* | **four-course, three-course, etc.** | **leisurely** | **candlelit, romantic** | **intimate, quiet** | **Christmas, Sunday** | **school** | **convenience, TV** (= eaten while sitting watching the TV) | **chicken, seafood, turkey, etc.**
- DINNER + NOUN **table** *There was never much conversation at the dinner table in my family.* | **things** *We didn't wash up the dinner things until the morning after.* | **plates, service** *a bone-china dinner service* | **menu** *The school dinner menu always includes a balance of food types.* | **bell** | **money** *I always forgot to take my dinner money to school.* | **dance** *the society's annual dinner dance*

⇨ Note at MEAL (for verbs)

2 formal evening occasion, with dinner

- ADJ. **elegant, lavish** | **formal, official** | **informal** | **annual** *The rugby club's annual dinner is this week.* | **anniversary, celebratory** | **farewell** | **awards, prize-giving** | **charity, fund-raising** | **gala** *A gala dinner was held to celebrate the world premiere of the film.* | **literary** | **state** *A state dinner was held in honour of the visiting Japanese premier.*
- VERB + DINNER **give, hold, throw** *My old school is giving a fund-raising dinner* | **attend** *We're going to attend a formal dinner in aid of cancer research.* | **be invited to** | **change for, dress for** *Are we expected to dress for dinner?* | **speak at** *The former Olympic champion was invited to speak at a charity dinner.*
- DINNER + NOUN **party** *They invited three couples to a dinner party at their house.* | **engagement** | **dance** | **guests** | **jacket, suit**
- PHRASES **an after-dinner speaker/speech**

dip *noun*

- ADJ. **sharp** | **slight** | **sudden**
- VERB + DIP **suffer, take** *Share prices have taken a slight dip.*
- PREP. **~ in** *a sharp dip in temperature*

dip *verb*

1 in liquid

- ADV. **lightly** *She dipped the brush lightly in the varnish.*
- PREP. **in, into** *He dipped his finger in the water*

2 go/move downwards

- ADV. **gently** *hills which dip gently to the east* | **steeply** | **down** *The road dipped steeply down into the town.*
- PREP. **below** *The sun dipped below the horizon.*

3 prices/support, etc.

- ADV. **slightly** | **sharply** *Support dipped sharply to 51%.*

diphtheria *noun*

- VERB + DIPHTHERIA **have, suffer from** | **catch, contract, get** | **immunize sb against** *Parents are advised to have their children immunized against diphtheria.*
- DIPHTHERIA + NOUN **epidemic** | **vaccine**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

diploma *noun*

- ADJ. **college, university** | **graduate, postgraduate, professional** | **higher** | **national** *The college offers the Higher National Diploma in computer studies.* | **full-time, part-time** | **one-year, two-year, etc.**
- VERB + DIPLOMA **study for, take** | **have, hold** | **be awarded, gain, get, obtain, receive** | **award (sb), confer (on sb)** *The university awards diplomas in higher education.* | **lead to** *The course leads to a diploma in psychiatric nursing.*
- DIPLOMA + NOUN **course, programme, studies** | **holder** *Diploma holders have a far better chance of employment than those with no qualification.*
- PREP. **~ in** *a diploma in hotel management* **~ of** *diploma of higher education*
- PHRASES **at diploma level** *Most students here are studying for a qualification at diploma level.*

diplomacy *noun*

1 managing international relations

- ADJ. **careful, shrewd** | **'gunboat ... '** *What they could not take by political intrigue they took by 'gunboat diplomacy'* (= threatening military action). | **international** | **secret** | **personal** *Churchill's highly personal diplomacy in seeking a meeting with the Russians* | **traditional** *a crisis lying outside the scope of traditional diplomacy* | **preventive** | **shuttle** *a round of shuttle diplomacy between Washington and Brussels* | **Anglo-French, European, Russian, etc.**
- VERB + DIPLOMACY **use** *prefering to use diplomacy rather than force*
- DIPLOMACY + VERB **go on** *Behind the scenes a lot of secret diplomacy was going on.*
- PREP. **by/through ~** *We must try and resolve this situation through diplomacy rather than conflict.*

2 skill in dealing with people

- ADJ. **great** | **quiet**
- VERB + DIPLOMACY **have** *We need someone who has tact and diplomacy.* | **exercise, show, use** *I thought you showed great diplomacy in dealing with him.* | **call for, need, require** *Trying to get the divorced couple to agree calls for a great deal of diplomacy.*
- PREP. **by/through ~** *The way forward in this situation is by diplomacy and negotiation.* **with ~** *She handled the awkward situation with her usual quiet diplomacy.*

diplomat *noun*

- ADJ. **senior** | **experienced, good, skilful, veteran** | **former, retired** | **foreign** | **career, professional** | **American, British, etc.**
- VERB + DIPLOMAT **be, serve as, work as** *He served as a diplomat in Russia before the war.*

direct *verb*

- ADV. **mainly, primarily, principally** *Tax cuts have been directed primarily at the better-off.* | **clearly** | **straight** *He directed the torch straight in her face.* | **specifically**
- PREP. **against** *anger directed specifically against ethnic minorities* **at** *criticism clearly directed at the Labour Party* **away from** *directing attention away from the real issues*

onto *The machine directs light onto a special film.* **to** *I directed my question to the chairman.* **towards** *We are directing our efforts towards helping young people.*

direct *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, very** *He asked me some very direct questions.* | **fairly, quite, rather** *Her manner can be rather direct.* | **disconcertingly** *his disconcertingly direct gaze*

direction *noun*

1 where to/from

- ADJ. **same** *They were both going in the same direction.* | **different, opposite** | **right, wrong** *Unfortunately, we were going in the wrong direction.* | **general** *I fired in the general direction of the officer's head and missed.* | **unexpected** *Support came from an unexpected direction.* | **anticlockwise, clockwise** *Turn the dial in a clockwise direction.* | **downward, upward** *These figures may have to be revised in an upward direction.* | **northerly, southerly, etc.** *The current flows in a south-easterly direction.* | **wind** *When sailing, keep a constant check on changes in wind direction.*
- VERB + DIRECTION **take** *Which direction do we have to take?* | **change, reverse** *The wind had changed direction.* ◇ *What happens if you reverse the direction of the current?* | **flow in, go (off) in** | **head in, move in, travel in** *The convoy is moving in the direction of the capital.* | **veer off in** *While he was studying in Paris, his thinking suddenly veered off in a new direction.* | **come from/in** *He was hit by a lorry coming in the opposite direction.* | **face (in)** *I didn't see the accident because I was facing in the opposite direction.* | **glance in, look in, nod in, point in** *She glanced in his direction.* ◇ *'Look!' she said, pointing in the direction of the coast.* | **nudge sb in, point sb in** (*figurative*) *We have to nudge politicians in the right direction.* ◇ *I can't come with you, but I can point you in the general direction.* | **pull (sb/sth) in** (*often figurative*) *There are different considerations, often pulling in different directions.*
- PREP. **from a/the ~** *There was shriek of laughter from the direction of Sarah's room.* ◇ *Let's approach the subject from a different direction.* **in a/the ~** *The aircraft was flying in a northerly direction.*
- PHRASES **the direction of flow/movement/travel** *I prefer to be facing the direction of travel.* **the direction of sb's gaze** *She followed the direction of his gaze.* **from/in all/both directions** *The blast sent debris flying in all directions.* ◇ *The road was blocked in both directions.* **a glance/nod in sb/sth's direction** *People passed by without a glance in her direction.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The report gives a brief nod in the direction of green issues before coming down firmly on the side of the market.* **a sense of direction** *I haven't got much sense of direction.*

2 development

- ADJ. **new** *The party must take a new direction if it is to survive.* | **right, wrong** | **clear** *No clear direction in policy can be identified.* | **future** *the debate about the future direction of socialism* | **policy**
- VERB + DIRECTION **take** *It is hard to know which direction the Church will take.* | **change** *It's time to change direction and find a new job.* | **go in, move in** *At least things are moving in the right direction now.*
- PHRASES **a change of direction** *This was a major change of direction for Britain's foreign policy.* **a step in the (right/wrong) direction** *The new law is undoubtedly a step in the right direction, but it doesn't go far enough.* ◇ *The first step in this direction will be by way of discussion with the unions.*

3 purpose

- ADJ. **clear** *Do not let the discussion fragment into a desultory conversation with no clear direction.*
- VERB + DIRECTION **be lacking in, lack** *Once again her life felt lacking in direction.*
- PHRASES **a sense of direction** *We are looking for somebody with a clear sense of direction.*

4 instructions

- ADJ. **clear, good, precise** *Isabel's directions are always very precise.* | **stage** *Shakespeare's famous stage direction, 'Exit, pursued by a bear.'*
- VERB + DIRECTION **ask for** *Let's stop and ask for directions.* | **give sb** *Can you give me directions for getting to John's?* | **get** *We got directions to the hall from a man in the village.* | **follow** *It's ever so easy to cook. You just follow the directions on the packet.*
- PREP. **~ for** *Are there any directions for putting up the tent?* **~ to** *Can you give me directions to the town centre?*

5 control/guidance

- ADJ. **clear** *In effective classrooms the teacher provided clear direction.* | **strategic** *the strategic direction of the company* | **spiritual** *The monarch looks to the archbishop for spiritual direction.* | **government** *All transport is under government direction.*
- VERB + DIRECTION **give sb, provide (sb with)**
- PREP. **under sb's ~** *working under the direction of a senior manager* | **~ from** *The new workers need direction from a supervisor.*

NOTE

Points of the compass

due ~ (of)
The village is due north of Paris.

far ~
a small village in the far north of Scotland.
The reserve is a little further south on the coast.

down south, up north (*informal*)
They have moved down south (= to the south of the country).

journey, way ~
On our way south we travelled through several small villages.

road, track ~
the road west out of the city

be/lie ~ of
Brighton is south of London.

~-east, etc.
The farm lies 60 kilometres north-east of Cape Town.

come, drive, fly, go, run, travel, walk ~
From Fort William drive north for a couple of miles.

set off ~
The troops set off north.

carry on, continue, proceed ~
The road continues west for 10 miles.

bear, head ~
Take the N1 motorway heading west from Bern.

turn ~
When you reach the top of the hill turn north-east.

face, look ~
The kitchen window faces south.
The painting depicts the Grand Canal, Venice, looking north from the Rialto Bridge.

~ bank, coast, shore
the south bank of the river

~ wind
a bitter east wind

in the ~ (of)
I live in the north.
There are lakes in the north-east of Poland.

from the ~ (of)
The wind is coming from the west.

to the ~ (of)
Oxford is to the north-west of London.

towards the ~
Towards the north the woods turn into pine forests.

Which way is ~?
Which way is west?

directive *noun*

- ADJ. **clear** *Don't start anything without a clear directive from management.* | **general** | **important** | **draft, proposed** | **EU, European (Commission/Union), government, ministerial** | **policy, political** | **banking, environmental, etc.**
- VERB + DIRECTIVE **issue** *The EU issued a new drinking water directive.* | **adopt, agree (on/upon), approve, sign** | **comply with, implement** *All companies must comply with the new directive.* | **block, oppose**
- DIRECTIVE + VERB **come into force** *A new EU directive on maternity leave will come into force next month.* | **require sth** *The directive requires member states to designate sites of special scientific interest.*
- PREP. **in accordance with a/the ~** *They acted in accordance with the latest directive from Brussels.* **in a/the ~** *The proposals are contained in a European directive on wild birds.* **under a/the ~** *Private health services will be allowed under the directive.* | **~ from** *a directive from the European Commission* **~ on** *a directive on data protection*
- PHRASES **the provisions/terms of a directive**

director *noun*

1 controls a company/an organization
- ADJ. **company, managing** | **executive, non-executive** | **assistant, deputy** | **commercial, finance, marketing, production, sales**
- PHRASES **the board of directors, the post of director**

⇨ Note at JOB

2 of a film/play, etc.
- ADJ. **film, theatre** | **artistic, musical**
- PHRASES **the role of director** *He now felt ready to take on the role of director.*

⇨ Note at JOB

directory *noun*

- ADJ. **business, shopping, telephone, trade** *I found the company's name in a trade directory.*
- VERB + DIRECTORY **consult, look sb/sth up in** | **compile, create** | **edit** | **produce, publish**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Names are listed alphabetically in the directory.* **~ of** *a directory of names and numbers*

dirt *noun*

1 dust/soil/mud
- ADJ. **loose** *She brushed the loose dirt off her coat.* | **ingrained** | **dog**
- QUANT. **speck** | **streak** *He had streaks of dirt all over his face.* | **layer**
- VERB + DIRT **be covered in/with** *His shoes were covered in dirt.* | **brush off, clean off, remove, wash off** | **show** *The white rug really shows the dirt.*
- DIRT + VERB **accumulate** *Dirt had accumulated in the corners of the windows.*
- DIRT + NOUN **road, track** | **floor**
- PREP. **in the ~** *children playing in the dirt*

2 harmful/unpleasant information about sb
- VERB + DIRT **have**
- PREP. **~ on** *Do you have any dirt on the new guy?*
- PHRASES **dish the dirt** *She just loves to dish the dirt* (= tell people unkind/unpleasant things about sb).

dirty *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look** | **get** *Go and play football if you like, but don't get dirty!* | **get sth, make sb/sth** *The soot had made everything dirty.* ◇ (*figurative*) *He's not frightened of getting his hands dirty* (= doing physical work).
- ADV. **extremely, filthy** (*informal*), **really, very** *Everything in the room was filthy dirty.* | **a bit, rather, slightly**

disability *noun*

- ADJ. **severe** | **permanent** | **learning, mental, physical** *children who have severe learning disabilities*
- VERB + DISABILITY **have** | **cope with, live with** *learning to live with disability*
- DISABILITY + NOUN **movement, organization** | **discrimination** | **allowance, pension**

disabled *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **be born** | **become** | **leave sb** *The accident left him badly disabled.*
- ADV. **badly, profoundly, seriously, severely, very** *a new home for severely disabled people* | **partially, slightly** | **chronically, permanently** | **mentally, physically**

disadvantage *noun*

- ADJ. **big, considerable, distinct, grave, great, main, major, manifest, obvious, real, serious, severe** *Lack of qualifications is an obvious disadvantage.* | **minor, slight** | **added, additional, further** | **long-term** | **competitive** *These requirements will have to be standardized if some banks are not to suffer a competitive disadvantage.* | **economic, educational, financial, racial, social** *the problems of racism, racial disadvantage and poverty*
- VERB + DISADVANTAGE **experience, have, suffer (from)** *the disadvantage experienced by older people in the workplace* ◇ *The present system has the disadvantage that nobody really understands how it works.* ◇ *Competition has its disadvantages.* | **offset, outweigh** *The scheme's advantages outweigh the disadvantages.* | **overcome, remove** | **avoid** | **feel at a** *There was no reason for her to feel at a disadvantage.* | **place/put sb at a** *The fact that he didn't speak a foreign language put him at a disadvantage.*
- PREP. **at a ~** *We were at a distinct disadvantage compared with children from richer families.* **despite a/the ~** *Despite these disadvantages, many older people maintain an active social life.* **to sb's ~** *This change in the law will be to the disadvantage of small firms.* | **~ for** *another disadvantage for the night-worker* **~ in** *There are disadvantages in using this treatment.* **~ to** *There are disadvantages to all those schemes.*
- PHRASES **advantages and disadvantages** *Each plan has its own advantages and disadvantages.*

disadvantaged *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain** *These social groups remain disadvantaged.*
- ADV. **badly, extremely, greatly, seriously, severely, very** | **doubly** *Part-time workers, the majority of whom are women, are doubly disadvantaged.* | **further** | **slightly** | **economically, educationally, financially, materially, socially**
- PREP. **by** *Many people will be greatly disadvantaged by the new tax system.*

disagree *verb*

- ADV. **profoundly, sharply, strongly, vehemently** *The only time we sharply disagreed was over the children's education.* | **completely, entirely, totally** *I disagree totally with this policy.* | **fundamentally**
- VERB + DISAGREE **be difficult to, be hard to, can/could hardly** *When I pointed out that it had been her idea in the first place, she could hardly disagree.*
- PREP. **about** *Jack and Robert disagree about everything.* **on** *We disagree on this matter.* **over** *Ministers disagree over the scale of the changes.* **with** *I disagree strongly with this idea.* ◇ *It is difficult to disagree with the chairman on this point.*

disagreement *noun*

• ADJ. **bitter, considerable, deep, major, serious, sharp, substantial, total, wide** *There is wide disagreement on this issue.* | **minor, slight** | **basic, fundamental** | **continuing** | **internal** *internal disagreements within the party* | **family** | **policy, political**

• VERB + DISAGREEMENT **be in, have** *They were in disagreement about the move to Cambridge.* ◇ *The things she said were always in disagreement, with the teacher or another member of the class.* ◇ *They had a disagreement about the best way to get to Manchester.* | **express** *She expressed disagreement with the government's policy.* | **resolve, settle, solve** *How is a basic disagreement of this nature to be resolved?* | **cause, lead to** | **be open to** *This view is subjective and therefore open to disagreement.*

• DISAGREEMENT + VERB **arise, occur** *A disagreement arose over who should pay for the trip.* | **exist** *Disagreement exists over the pattern of demand for coal.* | **remain** | **centre around/on sb/sth** *a disagreement centring on the link betweem crime and unemployment*

• PREP. **in ~** *He shook his head in disagreement.* | **~ about/over** *They had a major disagreement over who should clean the car.* **~ among/amongst, ~ as to** *There is considerable disagreement among archaeologists as to the age of the sculpture.* **~ between** *a serious disagreement between the two experts* **~ on** *There is fundamental disagreement on these matters.* **~ with** *He had a disagreement with his girlfriend.*

• PHRASES **an area of disagreement** *There are several areas of disagreement between the two governments.* **a source of disagreement** *Money was a constant source of disagreement.* **room/scope for disagreement** *There is plenty of room for disagreement in this controversial area.*

disappear *verb*

• ADV. **altogether, completely, entirely** | **all but, effectively, largely, practically, virtually** *The traditional way of life has all but disappeared.* | **gradually, slowly** | **overnight, quickly, soon** *He started the treatment and his symptoms disappeared overnight.* | **suddenly** | **eventually, finally** | **forever** *A number of species could soon disappear forever.* | **mysteriously, without trace** *Her father disappeared without trace when she was ten.* | **apparently** | **just, simply** *The plane suddenly just disappeared from the radar screen.*

• PREP. **behind** *The sun disappeared behind a cloud.* | **from** *Wildlife is fast disappearing from our countryside.* | **into, through, under, etc.**

• PHRASES **disappear from sight/view** *She watched until he had disappeared from view.* **fast/rapidly disappearing**

disappearance *noun*

• ADJ. **abrupt, sudden** *How could he explain his abrupt disappearance from the party?* | **rapid** *the rapid disappearance of our countryside* | **gradual** | **complete, total** | **virtual** | **apparent** | **mysterious**

• VERB + DISAPPEARANCE **lead to** *Modern farming practice has led to the virtual disappearance of this bird.* | **investigate** *Essex police are investigating the mysterious disappearance of two young men.* | **explain**

• PREP. **~ from** *the disappearance of money from my desk*

disappointed *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **leave sb** *The decision left them very disappointed.*

• ADV. **bitterly, deeply, desperately, extremely, greatly, hugely, really, sadly, sorely, terribly, very** *I was bitterly disappointed when I didn't get into university.* ◇ *If you think I'll agree to that, then you're going to be sadly disappointed.* | **almost** *He seemed almost disappointed when I agreed to go.* | **a bit, a little, mildly, pretty, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat** | **clearly, obviously** | **naturally** | **oddly** *After convincing myself that the result didn't matter, I felt oddly disappointed when we lost.* | **visibly**

• PREP. **about** *I'm disappointed about John not coming.* **at** *They're disappointed at the result.* **by** *I was slightly disappointed by her attitude.* **in** *He's disappointed in his daughter.* **with** *We're disappointed with the new car.*

disappointing *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove, seem** | **find sth**

• ADV. **bitterly, deeply, desperately, extremely, hugely, really, terribly, very** *The film was terribly disappointing.* | **a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat**

disappointment *noun*

1 sadness because sth has not happened, etc.

• ADJ. **bitter, considerable, deep, great, intense, sharp** | **slight** | **obvious**

• VERB + DISAPPOINTMENT **be aware of, feel** *He was aware of sharp disappointment and betrayal.* ◇ *She couldn't quite conceal the deep disappointment she felt.* | **express, voice** | **betray** *His voice betrayed his disappointment.* | **bite back, conceal, cover, hide, mask** *He bit back his disappointment.* ◇ *Her laugh covered her disappointment.* | **feign** *He feigned disappointment. Secretly, he was mightily relieved.* | **avoid** *To avoid disappointment, we recommend you book your holiday early.* | **be doomed to** *The scheme was doomed to disappointment.* | **share** *I know you will share our disappointment at the lack of progress on this issue.*

• DISAPPOINTMENT + VERB **show** *He let his disappointment show.* | **grip sb, surge through sb** *Disappointment gripped her.*

• PREP. **to your ~** *To her disappointment, they didn't go through Oxford but skirted round it.* | **~ at** *Paul couldn't hide his disappointment at not being asked to the party.* **~ over** *Campaigners have voiced disappointment over the government's decision.*

• PHRASES **a feeling/sense of disappointment, tears of disappointment**

2 sb/sth that is disappointing

• ADJ. **big, bitter, considerable, crushing, grave, great, huge, major, sad, serious, severe, terrible** *I'm afraid I was a sad disappointment to my mother.* | **slight** | **inevitable** | **personal**

• VERB + DISAPPOINTMENT **have** *She's had a lot of disappointments in the past.* | **come as** *This news has come as a disappointment to local business leaders.*

• DISAPPOINTMENT + VERB **come, follow sth** *His second disappointment came last year when he failed to get selected for the first team.* | **await sb** *A terrible disappointment awaited them.*

• PREP. **~ for** *The cancellation of the tour was a great disappointment for the many fans of the band.* **~ to** *It was a big disappointment to us when she left.*

disapproval *noun*

• ADJ. **strong** *Several countries have expressed their strong disapproval of the law.* | **faint, mild** | **widespread** | **official** | **public** *The decision met with widespread public disapproval.* | **moral, social**

• QUANT. **note** *There was more than a note of disapproval in her voice.*

• VERB + DISAPPROVAL **express, mark, register, show** *To mark his disapproval he refused to go to the wedding.* ◇ *Her face registered her disapproval.* ◇ *The students are showing their disapproval by refusing to attend lectures.* | **feel, sense** *Even at this distance she could sense his disapproval.*

• PREP. **in ~** *Her lip curled in disapproval.* **with ~** *Harold noted the boy's earring with disapproval.* | **~ at** *She was stiff with disapproval at the notion.* **~ of** *his disapproval of*

Wallace's conduct
- PHRASES **a chorus/roar of disapproval** *There was a chorus of disapproval from the crowd.* **an expression/a frown/a look of disapproval** *Seeing the look of disapproval on the doctor's face, I put out my cigarette.* **a murmur/sniff of disapproval** *Dr Ali gave a great sniff of disapproval.*

disapprove *verb*

- ADV. **strongly | thoroughly**
- PREP. **of** *He strongly disapproved of the way his daughter was behaving.*

disapproving *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look | become**
- ADV. **deeply, very | mildly, quite, rather, slightly | coldly** *her coldly disapproving smile*

disarmament *noun*

- ADJ. **nuclear** *They campaigned for nuclear disarmament.* | **international, multilateral** *The party supports multilateral disarmament.* | **unilateral**
- VERB + DISARMAMENT **campaign for | support**
- DISARMAMENT + NOUN **negotiations, talks, treaty**

disarray *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, total | some | financial**
- VERB + DISARRAY **fall into** *His personal life fell into disarray when his wife left him.* | **throw sth into** *Our plans were thrown into disarray by the rail strike.*
- PREP. **in~** *The meeting broke up in disarray.* | **~within** *a period of disarray within the National Party*
- PHRASES **a state of disarray**

disaster *noun*

1 bad event/situation
- ADJ. **awful, big, dreadful, great, major, terrible, worst** *the biggest disaster in British mining history* | **near** *a near disaster in the city centre* | **imminent, impending** *It seemed that nothing could prevent the impending disaster.* ◇ *Everyone had the feeling that disaster was imminent.* | **potential | global, national | natural** *earthquakes, floods and other natural disasters* | **man-made | air, ecological, environmental, flood, military, mining, nuclear, rail** *fears of a nuclear disaster* | **business, economic, financial | personal**
- VERB + DISASTER **bring, cause, lead to, spell** *One person's mistakes can bring disaster to someone else.* ◇ *attempts to find out what caused the disaster* ◇ *The drought spelt economic disaster for the country.* | **avert, avoid, prevent, save sb/sth from, stave off, ward off** *A major disaster was averted only just in time.* ◇ *What can be done to ward off environmental disaster?* | **predict, prophesy** *Independent analysts in the market predicted disaster.* | **court, invite** *It's courting disaster to go into the mountains without proper weatherproof clothing.* | **be heading for** *his firm belief that the whole world was heading for disaster* | **face** *In the last match of the series England were facing disaster.* | **suffer** *There are many who have suffered personal disasters but managed to rebuild their lives.* | **survive** *It was a miracle any of the passengers or crew survived the worst air disaster in Portugal for 20 years.* | **end in** *The show ended in disaster when the tent collapsed.*
- DISASTER + VERB **happen, occur, strike** *finding out why the disaster occurred* ◇ *Everything was going fine. Then, without warning, disaster struck.* | **befall sb/sth, hit sb/sth, strike sb/sth** *the economic disaster that befell the country* | **loom, threaten** *We could all see that disaster loomed for the company.*
- DISASTER + NOUN **area, zone** *Only rescue workers are allowed into the disaster area.* | **relief | victim**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *In a disaster everyone needs to keep calm.*
- PHRASES **a disaster waiting to happen** *Any one of these nuclear plants may be a disaster waiting to happen.* **in the aftermath of a disaster** *In the aftermath of the disaster people were too shocked to give a clear picture of what had happened.* **a recipe for disaster** *Letting her organize the party is a recipe for disaster* (= sth that is likely to go badly wrong). **a victim of a disaster** *providing help for the victims of the disaster*

2 a failure
- ADJ. **absolute, complete, real, total, unmitigated** *The play was a complete disaster from beginning to end.* | **economic, financial, social** *Buying that house turned out to be a financial disaster.*
- VERB + DISASTER **prove, turn out to be** *High-rise buildings proved a social disaster.*

disastrous *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove | become**
- ADV. **absolutely, quite, utterly** *The policy was absolutely disastrous for the economy.* | **fairly, pretty | potentially | ecologically, electorally, financially**

disbelief *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, outright, total, utter | widespread | open | mock** *He raised his eyebrows in mock disbelief.* | **amused, astonished, furious, horrified, shocked, stunned**
- VERB + DISBELIEF **feel** *I felt disbelief first of all, then outrage.* | **express** *The president publicly expressed his disbelief at what had happened.* | **hide | greet sth with** *My stories were greeted with disbelief.* | **shake your head in, stare/watch in | suspend** *If you don't mind suspending your disbelief, you should enjoy this movie.*
- PREP. **in~** *We could only watch in disbelief as the car rolled into the water.* **to your~** *To my horrified disbelief, the animal was running towards me.* | **~at** *Hilary shook her head in disbelief at the news.*
- PHRASES **an expression/a look of disbelief** *with looks of utter disbelief on their faces* **suspension of disbelief** *The film version requires greater suspension of disbelief than the book.*

disc *noun*

1 computer disk

⇨ See DISK

2 CD/record
- ADJ. **vinyl** *I've got an old vinyl disc of her singing.*
- VERB + DISC **play | hear, listen to | produce, record**
- PREP. **on (a/the)~** *He is one of the greatest opera singers on disc.* ◇ *The Prokofiev sonata comes first on the disc.* | **~of** *a disc of the two Mozart piano quartets*

⇨ See CD

3 part of the body
- ADJ. **prolapsed, slipped** *He's in bed with a slipped disc.*
- VERB + DISC **slip** *She's slipped a disc.*

discard *verb*

- ADV. **completely, entirely** *These ideas have now been completely discarded.*
- PREP. **in favour of** *Older managers have been discarded in favour of younger people.*

discern *verb*

- ADV. **clearly, easily** *She could clearly discern a figure walking up towards the house.* | **dimly, just**
- VERB + DISCERN **be able to, can/could | be difficult to, be hard to | be possible to**

discernible *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **clearly, easily, readily** *The difference between the two is readily discernible.* | **just | barely, scarcely** *Her face was barely discernible in the gloom.*

discharge *noun*

1 substance

- ADJ. **thick | nasal, vaginal, etc. | effluent, industrial, sewage, waste | electrical, radioactive** *thunder and lightning caused by an electrical discharge*
- PREP. **~from** *a thick discharge from the nose*

2 from court

- ADJ. **absolute | conditional**
- VERB + DISCHARGE **give** *He was given an absolute discharge but banned from driving for 12 months.*

discharge *verb*

1 from army/navy, etc.

- ADV. **dishonourably, honourably**
- PREP. **from** *He was found guilty and dishonourably discharged from the army.*

2 from prison/court

- ADV. **conditionally** *He was conditionally discharged after admitting the theft.*

3 gas/liquid

- ADV. **directly**
- PREP. **from, into** *Raw sewage was discharged from the treatment plant directly into the river.*

disciple *noun*

- ADJ. **ardent** *She was an ardent disciple of Freud.*
- VERB + DISCIPLE **become | make** *He commanded them to go out and make disciples of all nations.*

discipline *noun*

1 controlling behaviour

- ADJ. **effective, firm, good, strong** *We need better discipline in our schools.* | **harsh, iron, rigid, strict** *strict military discipline* | **lax, poor** *Discipline was too lax.* | **staff, team | military, naval, party, prison, school, work**
- VERB + DISCIPLINE **enforce, exercise, exert, impose** *the discipline that the party exercises over its members* | **keep, maintain** *The teacher was unable to maintain discipline.* | **accept, submit to** *They submitted to the discipline imposed by their leaders.* | **have** *The school was criticized for having very poor discipline.* | **lack** *Modern schools lack discipline.* | **tighten** *The new headmaster tightened discipline in the school.* | **relax | restore**
- PHRASES **a breach of discipline** *It's unfair to dismiss somebody for a single breach of discipline.* **a breakdown of discipline** *a breakdown of discipline in the classroom* **a lack of discipline**

2 controlling yourself

- ADJ. **good, great, useful, valuable** *It is good discipline to learn to delegate.* | **strict | personal | mental, spiritual | business, commercial, financial, fiscal, industrial, market, monetary** *The chancellor has stabilized the economy through strict fiscal discipline.*
- VERB + DISCIPLINE **have** *He'll never get anywhere working for himself—he's got no discipline.* | **show | lack | demand, require, take** *It takes great discipline to learn a musical instrument.*
- PHRASES **a lack of discipline**

3 subject of study

- ADJ. **core, main, major** *Students are to be tested on the three core disciplines: maths, English and science.* | **distinct, independent** *When did sociology emerge as a distinct discipline?* | **established, traditional | subject | academic, intellectual** *They established psychology as an academic discipline.* | **professional | humanities, science/scientific**
- PREP. **across ~s** *There is a lack of communication across disciplines* (= between teachers and students of different subjects). **within a/the ~** *Within a discipline there may be more than one school of thought.*
- PHRASES **a range of disciplines** *The university offers a wide range of disciplines.*

disclose *verb*

- ADV. **fully** *He had not fully disclosed all his business dealings.* | **publicly**
- VERB + DISCLOSE **be obliged to, be required to, must** *Members of Parliament are required to disclose all their financial interests.* | **be reluctant to | fail to, refuse to** *He failed to disclose all the information.*
- PREP. **to** *She was accused of disclosing confidential material to a competitor.*

discomfort *noun*

1 slight pain

- ADJ. **acute, considerable, great, severe, growing** *He became conscious of a growing discomfort.* | **mild, minor, slight** *You may experience some slight discomfort after the operation.* | **bodily, physical**
- QUANT. **amount, degree**
- VERB + DISCOMFORT **complain of, experience, feel, get, have, suffer** *Some of the patients complained of discomfort.* ◇ *I didn't have much discomfort after the operation.* | **cause | ease, lessen, reduce, relieve** *Not eating late at night should help to relieve the discomfort.*
- PREP. **in ~** *He appeared to be in great discomfort.* **with/without ~** *You should be able to drive without discomfort after about two weeks.*

2 embarrassment

- VERB + DISCOMFORT **cause** *The revelations caused some discomfort to the president.* | **enjoy** *Paula smiled, enjoying her sister's discomfort.*
- DISCOMFORT + VERB **grow, increase**

disconcerting *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | find sth**
- ADV. **highly, very | a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** *I found all that noise rather disconcerting.*

discontent *noun*

- ADJ. **general, widespread | growing, increasing | popular, public** *Public discontent with the economy remained at a high level.* | **political, social**
- VERB + DISCONTENT **breed, cause, give rise to, lead to, provoke** *The higher tax provoked widespread discontent among the poor.* | **fuel** *Overcrowded conditions fuelled discontent and facilitated the spread of radical ideas.* | **feel** *the discontent that many people felt* | **seethe with** *The country was seething with discontent and the threat of revolution was real.* | **express, voice** *The peasants expressed their discontent.* | **stem** *The reforms failed to stem social discontent.*
- DISCONTENT + VERB **grow, spread | simmer** *Discontent simmered and then came to a head with the nationalist protests.* | **come to a head**
- PREP. **~among, ~about/at/over** *discontent among students about the lack of funding for education* **~with** *growing discontent with the government* **~within** *There were reports of growing discontent within the army.*
- PHRASES **a cause/source of discontent, murmurs/rumbles/rumblings of discontent**

discord *noun*

- ADJ. **internal | family, marital**

- QUANT. **hint, note** *A note of discord surfaced during the leaders' meeting.*
- VERB + DISCORD **avoid**
- PHRASES **a source of discord** *The contrasts between rich and poor nations are a source of discord.*

discount *noun*

- ADJ. **big, generous, good, high, huge, large, massive, substantial | low | special** *There is a special discount for staff.* | **staff, trade** *They offer a trade discount to builders.* | **cash, volume** *We offer a 5% cash discount for prompt payment.*
- VERB + DISCOUNT **allow sb, give (sb), offer (sb)** *They only give you a discount if you buy more than a certain amount.* | **get, obtain, receive | be entitled to, qualify for** *If you collect ten bonus points, you will be entitled to a discount.* | **negotiate** *It is important to negotiate a good discount and obtain books on approval.*
- DISCOUNT + NOUN **card, voucher** *Members are given a discount card which entitles them to 20% off.* | **scheme, system | price, rate | house, shop, store** (= that regularly sells good at a discount)
- PREP. **at a ~** *Tickets are available to members at a discount.* | **~ of** *a discount of 30%* **~ on** *Customers are allowed a discount on orders over £500.*
- PHRASES **a rate of discount**

discourage *verb*

- ADV. **actively, firmly, positively, strongly** *Smoking is actively discouraged in the university.*
- VERB + DISCOURAGE **try to**
- PREP. **from** *We tried to discourage him from resigning.*
- PHRASES **be easily discouraged** *Children are easily discouraged from reading.*

discover *verb*

- ADV. **quickly, soon** *We soon discovered we'd been mistaken.* | **suddenly | subsequently | eventually**
- VERB + DISCOVER **be amazed to, be astonished to, be astounded to, be a surprise to, be surprised to** *She was surprised to discover he was perfectly capable around the house.* | **be alarmed to, be appalled to, be dismayed to, be horrified to, be a shock to, be shocked to** *It was a terrible shock to discover the full extent of the problem.* | **be delighted to, be fascinated to, be intrigued to | be fascinating to** *It would be fascinating to discover more about the town's history.* | **be difficult to | be possible to | aim to | attempt to, try to** *trying to discover the truth* | **be able/unable to**
- PHRASES **an attempt to discover sth, newly/recently discovered** *recently discovered evidence* **only to discover sth** *I arrived at the campsite, only to discover that it was closed for the winter.* **an opportunity to discover sth, waiting to be discovered** *There's great talent out there just waiting to be discovered.*

discovery *noun*

- ADJ. **amazing, big, exciting, great, important, major, remarkable, significant, startling, surprising, unexpected** *potentially the biggest archaeological discovery in Norway for fifty years* | **awful, chilling, grim, terrible** *the awful discovery that he had been deceiving her* | **latest, new, recent | accidental, chance** *All these were chance discoveries made by scientists engaged in other investigations.* | **archaeological, medical, scientific | personal** *The story tells of a man's journey of personal discovery up an African river.*
- VERB + DISCOVERY **make** *New scientific discoveries are being made all the time.* | **lead to** *Their work led to some important medical discoveries.* | **await** *There may be many unexpected treasures awaiting discovery.*
- PREP. **~ by** *a discovery by a French scientist* **~ of** *the discovery of oil in the North Sea*
- PHRASES **a process of discovery, a journey/voyage of discovery** (*figurative*) *To tour Sri Lanka is to take a voyage of discovery through a land of endless variety.*

discredit *noun*

- ADJ. **great**
- VERB + DISCREDIT **bring, reflect** *By telling lies he brought discredit upon Parliament.* ◇ *Your failure reflects no discredit upon you—you did your best.* | **bring sth into, do sb** *She brought the whole system into discredit.* ◇ *It does us great discredit to treat foreigners so badly.*
- PREP. **to sb's ~** *His selfish decision is greatly to his discredit.* | **~ to** *They were a discredit to their country.*

discrepancy *noun*

- ADJ. **glaring, great, huge, large, major, marked, material, serious, substantial, wide | minor, slight, small | apparent**
- VERB + DISCREPANCY **account for, explain** *How do you explain the apparent discrepancies between the money and the receipts?* | **find, note, notice, observe, perceive** *She failed to notice the discrepancy between the name on the cheque and the name on the driving licence.* | **ignore**
- DISCREPANCY + VERB **exist | arise, occur**
- PREP. **~ between** *Discrepancies occurred between the written and electronic records.* **~ in** *There were wide discrepancies in the evidence.*

discretion *noun*

1 freedom to make decisions

- ADJ. **considerable, full, greater, more, wide | absolute, complete, unfettered** *The school governors have absolute discretion over which pupils they admit.* | **executive, judicial, management/managerial, personal, professional** *The president used his executive discretion to pardon the two men.*
- VERB + DISCRETION **exercise, have, use** *The police exercise discretion in the area of minor traffic offences.* | **give sb** *They would like local authorities to be given greater discretion as to how the money is spent.* | **leave sth to** *'Do you want me to do the job myself or hire a photographer?' 'I leave it to your discretion.'*
- PREP. **at sb's ~** *Bail is granted at the discretion of the court.* ◇ *There is no service charge and tipping is at your discretion.* | **~ about** *We have discretion about how much to charge.* **~ as to** *She has considerable discretion as to how the money is spent.* **~ over** *giving judges more discretion over sentencing*
- PHRASES **the exercise/operation of discretion**

2 being discreet

- ADJ. **great, the utmost**
- VERB + DISCRETION **call for, need, require** *This case calls for the utmost discretion.* | **rely on** *This is confidential, but I know that I can rely on your discretion.*
- PREP. **with ~** *to conduct enquiries with discretion.*
- PHRASES **a lack of discretion, a need for discretion**

discriminate *verb*

- ADV. **positively | unfairly**
- PREP. **against** *The present law discriminates unfairly against women.* **in favour of** *discriminating positively in favour of people from ethnic minorities* **on (the) grounds of** *Workers must avoid discriminating on the grounds of race or sex.*

discrimination *noun*

1 treating a person/group unfairly

- ADJ. **age, class, gender, race/racial, religious, sex/sexual | widespread** *There is widespread discrimin-*

ation against doctors of Asian origin. | **active, blatant, direct, explicit, overt** *evidence of active discrimination against black workers* | **covert, indirect** | **positive, reverse** *positive discrimination in favour of disadvantaged racial groups* | **illegal, unlawful** *Overt sex or race discrimination is illegal.* | **employment, job** | **government, institutional/institutionalized** *institutionalized discrimination against women within the police force*

- QUANT. **level** *Levels of discrimination against recent immigrants are high.*
- VERB + DISCRIMINATION **amount to, constitute** *Racist remarks by an employer to an employee can amount to unlawful discrimination.* | **experience, face, suffer (from)** *Many disabled people suffer discrimination at work.* | **practise** | **allege** *law suits alleging discrimination* | **be opposed to, combat, fight** | **ban, end, forbid, outlaw, prohibit, stop**
- DISCRIMINATION + VERB **occur** *The discrimination occurred at the shortlisting stage, not the interviews.*
- PREP. **~ against** *discrimination against women* **~ by** *Discrimination by age is as vicious as discrimination by race.* **~ in favour of** *Some firms practise discrimination in favour of older people.* **~ on the grounds of** *It's time we banned discrimination on the grounds of age.*
- PHRASES **a victim of discrimination**

2 judgement

- ADJ. **great** | **careful, fine**
- VERB + DISCRIMINATION **make** *Young children find it difficult to make fine discriminations.* | **show** *She showed great discrimination in rejecting the poor quality teas.*
- PREP. **~ between** *discrimination between right and wrong*

discuss *verb*

- ADV. **exhaustively, fully, in detail, thoroughly** *The plan was discussed in great detail.* | **at length, endlessly, extensively** *These ideas will be discussed at greater length in the next chapter.* | **briefly** | **further** | **openly** *This problem has never been discussed openly before.* | **informally** | **critically, intelligently** *Pupils should be encouraged to discuss critically the information they are given.*
- VERB + DISCUSS **convene (sth) to, meet to** *to convene a conference to discuss the country's political future* ◇ *The committee meets regularly to discuss these issues.* | **want to, wish to, would like to** | **refuse to** *He refused to discuss it with me.* | **be able to** | **be prepared to, be willing to** *I'm not prepared to discuss this on the phone.*
- PREP. **with** *I'd like to discuss this matter with you later.*
- PHRASES **an opportunity to discuss sth, widely discussed** *The proposals have been widely discussed in the media.*

discussion *noun*

- ADJ. **detailed, full, in-depth, lengthy, long** *They had a detailed discussion of the issues.* | **brief** | **considerable** *After considerable discussion, they decided to accept our offer.* | **initial, preliminary** | **further** *The plan was agreed without further discussion.* | **general, wide-ranging** *a wide-ranging discussion on women's rights* | **public** | **formal, informal** *After the lecture there will be an opportunity for informal discussion.* | **bilateral, group, one-to-one, round-table** *a series of bilateral discussions between Israel and neighbouring states* ◇ *Women were asked to take part in small group discussions.* | **candid, frank, open** | **animated, heated, intense, lively** *a heated discussion about politics* | **serious** | **reasoned** | **useful** | **inconclusive**
- VERB + DISCUSSION **have, hold** *We had a long discussion about the plans for next year.* ◇ *The two governments are to hold discussions on the border issue.* | **enter into** *We are hoping to enter into discussions with leaders of the prison service.* | **be involved in, join in, participate in, take part in** *They refused to take part in the discussions.* | **generate, initiate, provoke, stimulate** *These latest findings have generated a lot of discussion of the moral issues involved.* | **set up** *ways of setting up discussions between children to explore each other's viewpoints* | **lead, open, start** *The discussion was led by the director of marketing.* ◇ *Who is going to start the discussion?* | **bring sth up for, come up for, open sth up for** *The issue should come up for discussion at the climate change conference.* ◇ *The topic must be opened up for general discussion.* | **open up** *We need to open up a discussion on the basic aspects of the theory.* | **confine** *I wish to confine the discussion to income taxation.* | **sum up** *Let us sum up the discussion so far.* | **break off, conclude, end** *The government has broken off discussions with the unions.* ◇ *We decided to end the discussion before it got out of hand.* | **defer, postpone** | **follow up** *Discussion should be followed up by a written report.*
- DISCUSSION + VERB **take place** *Discussions have taken place between the two leaders.* | **centre on** *Discussion centred on the contribution different groups would make to the project.* | **break out, ensue** *An intense discussion broke out about the importance of intuition.* ◇ *Adam raised the issue of multimedia applications and much useful discussion ensued.* | **continue**
- DISCUSSION + NOUN **group** | **document**
- PREP. **for ~** *the subject for discussion* **during/in a/the ~** *During our discussions we raised many issues that need deeper consideration.* **in ~ with** *The company had been in discussion with companies in Austria, Italy and Greece.* **under ~** *Plans for a new bypass are still under discussion.* | **~ about/on** *a discussion about reform of the health service* **~ as to** *Discussion continues as to the relative merits of the different schemes.* **~ between** *discussions between management and union officials* **~ of** *a discussion of the issues involved* **~ with** *discussions with the government*
- PHRASES **a basis for discussion** *We can use the draft document as a basis for discussion.* **a forum for discussion** *The group provides a forum for the discussion of ideas.* **the outcome of a discussion** *The outcome of the discussions is a decision to proceed with Phase 2 of the programme.* **a subject/topic for/of discussion**

⇨ Special page at MEETING

disdain *noun*

- ADJ. **great** | **utter** | **obvious** | **amused** | **cool, glacial** | **aristocratic, haughty**
- VERB + DISDAIN **feel, have** *She did not hesitate to express the disdain that she felt.* | **express, show** *Judges sometimes show great disdain for the law.* | **look on/upon sb/sth with, treat sb/sth with** *Traditionalists look upon the changes with disdain.*
- PREP. **in ~** *She turned her head away in disdain.* **with ~** *Why does he treat his father with such disdain?* | **~ for** *He has an aristocratic disdain for money.*
- PHRASES **an expression/a look of disdain**

disease *noun*

- ADJ. **common** | **obscure, rare** | **dangerous, serious** | **mild** | **chronic** | **acute** | **degenerative** | **deadly, fatal, incurable, killer, terminal** *fears of a new killer disease* | **curable** | **preventable** | **communicable, contagious, infectious** | **non-communicable** | **congenital, hereditary, inherited** | **childhood** *childhood diseases such as mumps and chicken pox* | **tropical** | **insect-borne, water-borne** | **occupational** | **bowel, (coronary) heart, liver, etc.** | **mental** | **sexually transmitted, social, venereal** *patients suffering from venereal disease* | **circulatory, respiratory** | **Alzheimer's, Crohn's, etc.**
- QUANT. **outbreak** *fears of an outbreak of Legionnaire's disease*

• VERB + DISEASE **have, suffer from** *He has a serious lung disease.* | **catch, contract, get** *You can't catch the disease just from physical contact.* ◇ *She got a rare liver disease when she was only twenty.* | **die from/of** *Children are still dying in their millions from preventable diseases.* | **cause** *a disease caused by a vitamin deficiency* | **carry, pass on, spread, transmit** *the ticks that carry the disease* ◇ *Such unhygienic practices spread disease.* ◇ *The disease is transmitted by mosquitoes.* | **diagnose** | **treat** | **combat, fight** *The government must take action to fight this deadly disease.* | **control, manage** *new drugs which help to control the disease* | **cure** | **prevent** *It's better to prevent disease by ensuring a clean water supply.* | **eradicate, stamp out, wipe out** *The disease has been eradicated from the world.*

• DISEASE + VERB **spread** *They want to stop the disease spreading.* | **afflict sb, strike sb** | **kill sb** *The disease has killed 500 people so far this year.*

• PREP. **with a/the ~** *the number of people with this disease* | **~ of** *a disease of the digestive system*

• PHRASES **a cure for a disease, the incidence of (a) disease** *the overall incidence of disease in the world* **a patient with/sufferer from a disease** *Sufferers from Alzheimer's disease can't cope at home.* **resistance to disease** *Tobacco lowers the body's resistance to disease.* **the risk of disease** *the risk of coronary heart disease* **the spread of (a) disease** *measures to prevent the spread of the disease* **the symptoms of a disease, the treatment for/of a disease**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

disfigure *verb* **be disfigured**

• ADV. **badly, grossly** *He was badly disfigured by the accident.* | **permanently**

disgrace *noun*

1 loss of respect

• VERB + DISGRACE **fall into** *Their father fell into disgrace and lost his business.* | **bring** *His crime had brought disgrace upon his whole family.* | **be sent away/home/off in** *She was sent home from the Olympics in disgrace.*

• PREP. **in ~** *He's in disgrace for having left his room in a mess.*

• PHRASES **there's no disgrace in sth** *There's no disgrace in being poor.*

2 disgraceful person/thing

• ADJ. **absolute, utter** *This room is an absolute disgrace* (= because it is very dirty/untidy)*!* | **national, public** *The state of our hospitals is a national disgrace.*

• PREP. **~ to** *The filthy streets are a disgrace to the town.*

disgraceful *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **absolutely, quite, utterly** *There's litter everywhere. It's absolutely disgraceful.*

disguise *noun*

• VERB + DISGUISE **adopt, put on, wear** *She adopted an elaborate disguise to help her pass through the town unrecognized.* | **see through** *We all saw through his disguise immediately.*

• PREP. **in ~** *The star travelled in disguise.*

disguise *verb*

• ADV. **cleverly, cunningly** *She was cleverly disguised as a policewoman.*

• VERB + DISGUISE **cannot/could not** | **try to**

• PREP. **from** *You cannot disguise what you are doing from your family.*

• PHRASES **an attempt to disguise sth** *He made no attempt to disguise his liking for her.* **heavily disguised** *speaking in a heavily disguised voice* **barely/thinly disguised** *In her speech she made several thinly disguised attacks on the president.*

disgust *noun*

• ADJ. **great** | **utter** | **obvious** *Mr Haynes shook his head in obvious disgust and walked off.* | **public**

• VERB + DISGUST **feel** | **express, show** | **hide** *trying to hide the disgust that she felt* | **fill sb with** *Decent people were filled with disgust for whoever committed the crimes.* | **turn/walk away in** *He threw her one look, then turned away in disgust.* | **shake your head in, wrinkle (up) your nose in**

• PREP. **in ~** *Marion threw down the book in disgust.* **with ~** *They both looked with disgust at the men.* | **~ at** *I couldn't find the words to express my disgust at his actions.* **~ over** *expressions of public disgust over the affair* **~ with** *People are showing their disgust with the existing regime.*

• PHRASES **an exclamation/a snort of disgust** *He gave a snort of disgust.* **an expression/a gesture/a grimace/a look of disgust, a feeling/sense of disgust, much to your disgust** *Much to his disgust, he found himself sharing a carriage with a noisy young family.*

disgusted *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look** | **become**

• ADV. **really** | **absolutely, quite, thoroughly, totally** | **rather, slightly** | **visibly** *She looked visibly disgusted.*

• PREP. **at** *I'm quite disgusted at the way he's treated you.* **by** *I was absolutely disgusted by the whole business.* **with** *I was thoroughly disgusted with her behaviour.*

disgusting *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, smell, sound, taste** *That soup tastes disgusting!* | **find sth** *I find his behaviour disgusting.*

• ADV. **really** | **absolutely, quite** *I think the way she's treated him is absolutely disgusting.* | **pretty, rather** *He's got some rather disgusting habits.*

dish *noun*

1 container

• ADJ. **deep** | **flat, shallow** | **empty** | **baking, cooking, roasting, serving** | **fireproof, heatproof, ovenproof** | **china, glass, metal, silver** | **casserole, gratin, pie, soufflé, soup** | **butter, food, soap, vegetable** *your pet's food dish*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *Arrange the chicken and salad in a serving dish.*

2 **the dishes** plates, bowls, etc.

• ADJ. **clean** | **dirty, unwashed** *The dirty breakfast dishes were still in the sink when we got home.* | **breakfast**

• VERB + DISHES **do, wash** *It's your turn to do the dishes.* | **dry** *He dried the dishes and put them away.* | **put away**

3 type of food

• ADJ. **main, side** *Serve one or two main dishes with a choice of salads and nibbles.* | **favourite** *Do you have a favourite dish?* | **delicious, tasty, wonderful** | **elaborate** | **simple** *a simple dish, beautifully prepared* | **classic, traditional** | **savoury, sweet** | **spiced/spicy** | **cold, hot** | **local, international, national, regional** *The national dish is 'bigos'—hunter's stew.* | **Chinese, French, etc.** | **vegetarian** | **cheese, egg, fish, meat, pasta, rice, seafood, vegetable** *Goulash is a meat dish.* | **breakfast, lunch, supper** *Kedgeree makes a wonderful supper dish.*

• VERB + DISH **cook, make, prepare** *She cooked us a delicious French dish with pork and tomatoes.* | **serve** *a restaurant that serves traditional Indian dishes* | **recommend** | **sample, try** *They sampled all the local dishes.*

• PHRASES **the dish of the day** *I can recommend the chef's dish of the day.*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

dishonest *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem | become | consider sth, regard sth as** *What they are doing is not considered dishonest.*
• ADV. **very | downright** *I think he's downright dishonest!* **| rather, slightly | basically, fundamentally**

dishwasher *noun*

• VERB + DISHWASHER **load, stack | empty | run** *It wastes energy to run the dishwasher half empty.*
• DISHWASHER + NOUN **detergent, powder, salt**
• PHRASES **dishwasher proof/safe** *Are these glasses dishwasher safe?*

disillusioned *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel | become, get, grow**
• ADV. **extremely, very | completely, thoroughly, totally, utterly | increasingly | rather | sadly** *If the king had hoped for peace, he was to be sadly disillusioned.*
• PREP. **by** *They felt bitter and disillusioned by the decision.* **with** *Later in life he grew rather disillusioned with communism.*

disillusionment *noun*

• ADJ. **general, public, widespread | growing**
• VERB + DISILLUSIONMENT **cause**
• PREP. **~ among** *causing widespread disillusionment among young people* **~ with** *There is growing public disillusionment with the present system of government.*

disintegrate *verb*

• ADV. **completely** *The plane completely disintegrated on impact.* **| slowly** *The social fabric of this country is slowly disintegrating.*
• VERB + DISINTEGRATE **begin to** *The bag had already begun to disintegrate.*
• PREP. **into** *The country has disintegrated into separate states.* **under** *He was a lawyer who had disintegrated under the strain.*

disintegration *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, total | gradual** *the gradual disintegration of traditional values* **| rapid | political, social** *indicators of social disintegration such as divorce, suicide and petty theft.*
• VERB + DISINTEGRATION **lead to, result in** *This defeat led to the disintegration of the empire.*

disk *noun*

• ADJ. **computer | hard | floppy | master** *The master disk can be duplicated as many times as required.* **| backup | program | server, system | blank | laser, magnetic, optical | high density**
• VERB + DISK **insert, put in** *Insert the disk into the drive slot.* **| remove, take out | format | read** *The computer reads the disk.* **| copy, duplicate** *I'll copy the disk into a file.* **| copy/save (sth) to, save sth on** *The program is set up so that you automatically save to disk every 15 minutes.* ◇ *Save the document to disk before closing it.* ◇ *The information can be saved on a disk.* **| wipe** *If you wipe that old disk, we can use it again.* **| hold sth on, store sth on** *The records will be stored on the computer's hard disk.*
• DISK + VERB **contain sth** *The disk contains the program you'll need.* **| hold sth** *Each disk holds 700 MB.*
• DISK + NOUN **capacity, space** *I'm running out of disk space on my computer.* **| drive | storage**
• PREP. **from ~** *The information required can then be retrieved from disk.* **on (a/the) ~** *Have you got the file on disk?* ◇ *the data on the disk* **onto ~** *It is safest to save your design onto disk.* **to ~** *You simply download the pages to disk.*
⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

dislike *noun*

1 feeling of not liking sb/sth
• ADJ. **acute, deep, great, hearty, intense, real, strong, violent** *Several committee members expressed their intense dislike of the chairman.* **| growing | particular | obvious, marked | instant | instinctive | open | active** *She threw him a look of active dislike.* **| cold** *He glanced at her with cold dislike.* **| pathological | personal | mutual** *In spite of their mutual dislike and hostility, they quite often worked together.*
• VERB + DISLIKE **feel, have** *She felt dislike rather than sympathy as he told his story.* ◇ *My grandfather has a great dislike of long hair on boys.* **| express, show | take** *I took an instant dislike to my new colleague.*
• PREP. **with ~** *Sonia stared at me with dislike and distrust.* **| ~ for** *She had a deep dislike for Robert's wife.*
• PHRASES **a feeling/look of dislike**

2 sth you do not like
• PHRASES **your likes and dislikes** *I've told you all my likes and dislikes.*

dislike *verb*

• ADV. **cordially, greatly, heartily, intensely, positively, really, strongly** *She disliked her boss intensely.* **| particularly | simply** *He simply disliked working with committees and avoided it whenever possible.* **| instinctively | actively** *There are very few foods that I actively dislike.* **| clearly, obviously**
• PHRASES **be universally/widely disliked** *The new teacher was universally disliked.*

disloyalty *noun*

• VERB + DISLOYALTY **show | accuse sb of** *Her friends accused her of disloyalty.*
• PREP. **~ to** *He has shown disloyalty to the party and is not to be trusted.*

dismal *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look | become**
• ADV. **really** *It was a really dismal day.* **| a bit, fairly, pretty, rather** *Last year's results were fairly dismal.*

dismay *noun*

• ADJ. **deep, great** *The government has expressed 'deep dismay' at police violence against protesters.* **| growing, mounting | widespread**
• VERB + DISMAY **feel** *I felt a mounting dismay at the prospect.* **| express | hide** *It was impossible to hide my dismay at what I had seen.* **| cause** *The laws on hunting cause dismay to many animal lovers.* **| be regarded with, be greeted with, be viewed with** *The news was greeted with widespread dismay.*
• PREP. **in ~** *Louise stared at the torn letter in dismay.* **with ~** *I read of her resignation with some dismay.* **| ~ at** *his dismay at her reaction* **~ over** *Brady made no secret of his dismay over his treatment.*
• PHRASES **(much) to your dismay** *Much to my dismay, she was out when I called.*

dismiss *verb*

1 decide sth is not important
• ADV. **quickly | out of hand, summarily** *He dismissed her suggestion out of hand.* **| easily, lightly, readily** *Children's fears should never be dismissed lightly.* **| contemptuously** *She contemptuously dismissed their complaints.*
• VERB + DISMISS **cannot/could not, unable to | be difficult to, be easy to, be possible to** *It was not easy to dismiss the matter from his thoughts.* **| try to**
• PREP. **as, from** *She dismissed their arguments as irrelevant.* ◇ *She tried to dismiss the idea from her mind.*

2 remove sb from a job

- ADV. **fairly | unfairly, wrongfully** *The court ruled that Ms Hill had been unfairly dismissed.* | **constructively | summarily**
- PREP. **from** *He was summarily dismissed from his job.*

dismissal *noun*

1 from a job

- ADJ. **automatic, immediate, instant, summary** *His attack on the manager led to his instant dismissal.* | **constructive, unfair, wrongful** *She won her claim for constructive dismissal because she had been pressured into resigning.*
- VERB + DISMISSAL **lead to | call for** *Crash victims are calling for the dismissal of the coach driver.* | **be faced with, be threatened with, face, risk** *They were warned that they risked dismissal if the strike continued.* | **appeal against, claim** *Cooke, who was with the firm 30 years, claims unfair dismissal.*
- PREP. **~ for** *his dismissal for poor performance* **~ on the grounds of** *She is now faced with dismissal on the grounds of misconduct.*
- PHRASES **grounds/reason for dismissal**

2 refusing to consider sth

- ADJ. **arrogant, callous, casual, disdainful, easy**
- PREP. **~ of** *his callous dismissal of her father's illness*

dismissive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound**
- ADV. **very | completely, entirely | mildly, rather, slightly, somewhat | coldly** *Her manner was coldly dismissive.*
- PREP. **of** *She was very dismissive of his achievements.*

disobedience *noun*

- ADJ. **civil** *He called for a campaign of civil disobedience if the president did not honour the election results.*
- VERB + DISOBEDIENCE **punish (sb for)**
- PREP. **~ to** *their disobedience to the king*
- PHRASES **an act of disobedience** *His behaviour was seen as another act of disobedience.*

disorder *noun*

1 untidy state

- ADJ. **complete**
- VERB + DISORDER **throw sth into** *The country was thrown into disorder by the strikes.*
- PREP. **in ~** *He died suddenly, leaving his financial affairs in complete disorder.*
- PHRASES **a state of disorder**

2 violent behaviour

- ADJ. **major, serious | widespread | violent | civil, crowd, public, social | political**
- QUANT. **outbreak** *There have been outbreaks of serious public disorder.*
- VERB + DISORDER **create, lead to | quell** *Troops were sent in to quell the disorder.* | **prevent** *new restrictions aimed at preventing social disorder*

3 illness

- ADJ. **serious, severe | chronic | common, rare | genetic, inherited | blood, brain, etc. | circulatory, eating, etc.** *Anorexia is a common eating disorder.* | **behavioural, emotional, mental, nervous, personality, physical, psychiatric, psychological**
- VERB + DISORDER **have, suffer from** *She suffers from a rare blood disorder.* | **treat**
- DISORDER + VERB **affect sth** *disorders affecting the very old, such as senile dementia*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

disorganized *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **highly, hopelessly, very** *She never gets anywhere on time. She's hopelessly disorganized.* | **completely, totally | rather, somewhat**

disparity *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, gross, wide | growing | clear, glaring, obvious**
- PREP. **~ between** *The great disparity between the teams did not make for an entertaining game.* **~ in** *the disparity in their salaries* **~ of** *a disparity of resources*

disperse *verb*

- ADV. **quickly, rapidly | quietly | widely** *The population in this area is quite widely dispersed.* | **geographically** *to decentralize and geographically disperse political and economic power*
- VERB + DISPERSE **begin to** *The crowd slowly began to disperse.*

display *noun*

1 arrangement of things

- ADJ. **attractive, beautiful, colourful, dazzling, excellent, eye-catching, fascinating, fine, good, interesting, stunning | special | public | permanent, temporary | static** *The locomotive is normally kept on static display in the National Railway Museum.* | **audio-visual, visual** *An audio-visual display gives visitors an idea of what life was like aboard a sailing ship.* | **floral, photographic** *a beautiful floral display outside the Town Hall* | **in-store, wall, window | museum, shop**
- VERB + DISPLAY **have** *The museum has a fine display of old medical instruments.* | **mount** *We plan to mount a display of the children's work in the lobby area.* | **go on** *Examples of her work will go on permanent display in the new museum.* | **put sth on** *The birds were put on display at the zoological society.*
- DISPLAY + VERB **illustrate sth, show sth** *The display illustrates the traditional industries of the town.*
- DISPLAY + NOUN **board, cabinet, case, stand** *a glass-fronted display cabinet*
- PREP. **on ~** *Designs for the new sports hall are on public display in the library.* ◇ *On display are earrings, necklaces and bracelets made from jade, amber and amethyst.* | **~ of** *a display of Roman coins*

⇨ Note at ART

2 performing a skill

- ADJ. **astonishing, awesome, breathtaking, brilliant, devastating, flamboyant, great, impressive, magnificent, outstanding, spectacular, spirited, superb, virtuoso** *a flamboyant display of footballing skills* | **disappointing, lacklustre, poor | firework | pyrotechnic** *The sun set in a pyrotechnic display that burnt up the whole western sky.* | **aerial, aerobatic, air, flying, parachute | courtship, mating, sexual**
- VERB + DISPLAY **give, perform, put on** *The male performs a magnificent courtship display.* ◇ *They put on a spectacular firework display.* | **treat sb to** *The crowd was treated to an impressive display of power tennis.* | **watch**
- DISPLAY + NOUN **team** *an aerobatic display team*
- PREP. **~ of** *They gave a virtuoso display of disco dancing.*

3 showing a particular feeling/quality

- ADJ. **brief | rare | impressive, incredible, striking** *Members of the community closed ranks in an impressive display of unity.* | **open, public** *an open display of affection for her husband* | **outward** *Despite his outward display of friendliness, I sensed he was concealing something.* | **ostentatious, overt** *an ostentatious display of wealth* |

aggressive *There may be specific events which trigger aggressive displays in your dog.*
• PREP. **~of** *She slammed the door behind her in a display of ill-temper.*

4 on a computer screen, etc.
• ADJ. **computer, screen | data, graphics, video, visual | colour, mono/monochrome | high resolution, low resolution** *a high resolution colour display* **| LCD/liquid crystal | analogue, digital | Windows**
• DISPLAY + NOUN **screen, terminal, unit** *display screen equipment ◇ a visual display unit*

display *verb*

• ADV. **clearly, prominently** *His football trophies were prominently displayed in the kitchen.* **| proudly**
• PREP. **to** *She proudly displayed her degree certificate to her parents.*

displeasure *noun*

• ADJ. **deep | divine, official, royal** *He saw the English victory as a sign of divine displeasure.*
• VERB + DISPLEASURE **cause, incur** *His tactless words had incurred his father's deep displeasure.* **| express, show, voice | conceal, hide** *He made no attempt to hide his displeasure.*
• PREP. **~at** *his displeasure at being ignored* **~with** *her displeasure with her colleagues*

disposal *noun*

• ADJ. **safe | routine | illegal | ultimate** *the problems of the ultimate disposal of nuclear waste* **| bomb, refuse, rubbish, sewage, waste | land, landfill, sea**
• DISPOSAL + NOUN **site | method | system, unit** *a kitchen waste disposal unit* **| company, expert, squad** *The device was defused by army bomb disposal experts.*
• PREP. **at your ~** (= available for your use) *He will have a car at his disposal for the whole month. ◇ Well, I'm at your disposal* (= I am ready to help you in any way I can).

disposed *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, seem**
• ADV. **agreeably, favourably, kindly, well | naturally**
• PREP. **to** *She seems favourably disposed to the move.* **towards** *being naturally disposed towards speculation*

disposition *noun*

• ADJ. **cheerful, happy, pleasant, sunny | friendly, sociable | placid | nervous | jealous | aggressive, touchy | criminal**
• VERB + DISPOSITION **have, show** *These dogs show a very sociable disposition.*
• PREP. **of a … ~** *This film is not recommended for those of a nervous disposition.*

disproportionate *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem**
• ADV. **grossly, vastly | quite, totally, wholly**
• PREP. **to** *The punishment was grossly disproportionate to the crime.*

dispute *noun*

• ADJ. **considerable, major, serious** *There is considerable dispute over the precise definition of 'social class' as a term. ◇ The incident sparked off a major dispute between the two countries.* **| minor | acrimonious, bitter, fierce, heated | damaging | simmering** *The simmering dispute erupted in public when the two men came to blows at the party conference.* **| continuing, lengthy, long-running, long-standing, prolonged, protracted | outstanding** *He proposed a negotiated settlement of the outstanding disputes between the two countries.* **| public | local, international | internal** *There were lengthy internal disputes between the two wings of the party.* **| domestic, family | labour, industrial, pay | border, boundary, land, territorial | legal | ideological, political | commercial, financial, trade | religious**
• VERB + DISPUTE **cause, lead to, provoke, spark (off)** *one of the many factors that led to the dispute* **| enter | be drawn into** *Governments are often drawn into disputes about matters of public taste and decency.* **| be embroiled in, be engaged in, be involved in** *They became embroiled in a dispute with their neighbours.* **| deal with, handle** *Police have difficulties in dealing with domestic disputes.* **| adjudicate, decide** *The purpose of industrial tribunals is to adjudicate disputes between employers and employees.* **| resolve, settle, solve | lose, win | avoid, prevent | be open to** *His theories are open to dispute* (= can be disagreed with).
• DISPUTE + VERB **arise, begin, erupt** *No one could remember exactly how the dispute had arisen.* **| escalate | concern sth** *disputes concerning environmental protection* **| involve sb/sth**
• PREP. **beyond ~** *The matter was settled beyond dispute by the court judgment* (= it could no longer be argued about). **in ~ (with)** *The actual sum of compensation due is still in dispute* (= being argued about). *◇ The employees have been in dispute with management for three weeks.* **under ~** *the matters under dispute* **| ~ about/over, ~among/amongst** *The exact relationship between the two languages is a matter of dispute amongst scholars.* **~as to** *There is no dispute as to the facts.* **~ between** *a long-standing dispute between the families over ownership of the land.* **~with**
• PHRASES **an area/a matter of dispute, potential/room/scope for dispute** *to minimize the scope for dispute over the meaning of the terms employed* **the resolution/settlement of a dispute**

dispute *verb*

• ADV. **fiercely, hotly** *The effectiveness of this treatment is still hotly disputed.*
• VERB + DISPUTE **can/cannot** *No one can dispute the fact that men still hold the majority of public offices.*

disregard *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, total, utter | blatant, flagrant | callous, cavalier, cynical | reckless, wanton** *their reckless disregard for human life* **| blithe, fine** (*ironic*) *With a fine disregard for geography, she decided to start her journey to Paris by sailing to the Hook of Holland.*
• VERB + DISREGARD **demonstrate, show**
• PREP. **~for** *He showed complete disregard for the feelings of his family.* **~of** *their flagrant disregard of the rules*

disrepair *noun*

• VERB + DISREPAIR **fall into** *The building had fallen into disrepair.*
• PREP. **in ~** *Much of the old building was still in disrepair.*
• PHRASES **a state of disrepair**

disreputable *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, seem**
• ADV. **highly, very | rather, slightly, vaguely** *He had a vaguely disreputable appearance.*

disrepute *noun*

• VERB + DISREPUTE **fall into** *The old system had fallen into disrepute.* **| bring sth into** *The players' behaviour on the field is likely to bring the game into disrepute.*
• PREP. **in ~** *This theory is now in disrepute.*

disrespect *noun*

- ADJ. **total | healthy**
- VERB + DISRESPECT **have, show, treat sb/sth with** *She felt he had total disrespect for women.* | **mean no** *I mean no disrespect to the team, but their performance was poor.*
- PREP. **~ for** *The new manager showed a healthy disrespect for formality.*
- PHRASES **no disrespect intended/to …** *No disrespect intended sir; it was just a joke.*

disrupt *verb*

- ADV. **badly, seriously, severely** *The bad weather has seriously disrupted supplies of food.* | **completely, totally**
- VERB + DISRUPT **threaten to | attempt to | be designed to** *The attacks are designed to disrupt plans for the elections.*
- PHRASES **an attempt to disrupt sth**

disruption *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, major, massive, serious, severe | minimum** *how to organize the building work so as to cause minimum disruption* | **widespread | undue** *to allow the school to function without undue disruption* | **inevitable | economic, family, political, social** *the effects of family disruption during childhood* | **traffic**
- VERB + DISRUPTION **cause, create, lead to | suffer** *The city centre suffered some disruption due to a bomb scare.* | **avoid, prevent | minimize**
- DISRUPTION + VERB **occur**
- PREP. **~ to** *The bombing campaign caused massive disruption to industry.*

disruptive *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *children with highly disruptive behaviour* | **slightly | potentially** *potentially disruptive elements in society* | **socially**
- PREP. **to** *Long working hours are very disruptive to home life.*

dissatisfaction *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, deep | growing, increasing | general, widespread | popular, public | customer | political, sexual | job**
- VERB + DISSATISFACTION **cause, give rise to, lead to** *Pay cuts have led to widespread dissatisfaction.* | **express**
- PREP. **~ about/over** *dissatisfaction over the slow progress of the peace process* **~ among** *There was widespread dissatisfaction among the public.* **~ at** *She expressed deep dissatisfaction at the way the interview had been conducted.* **~ with** *There is growing dissatisfaction with the current style of management.*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of dissatisfaction, a cause/source of dissatisfaction**

dissatisfied *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel | become | remain**
- ADV. **deeply, very** *The decision left us feeling deeply dissatisfied.* | **increasingly**
- PREP. **with** *She's very dissatisfied with her current job.*

dissent *noun*

- ADJ. **serious, strong** *He would brook no serious dissent.* | **growing | internal** *internal party dissent* | **political, religious** *Political dissent is not tolerated.*
- VERB + DISSENT **arouse, cause, provoke | express, show** *There are many ways of expressing dissent.* | **brook, tolerate | stifle, suppress** *The regime ruthlessly suppresses all dissent.*
- PREP. **~ against** *popular dissent against the Church* **~ from** *His dissent from his family's religious beliefs caused a lot of ill-feeling.*
- PHRASES **a voice of dissent** *In the early 1960s, the voices of dissent began to rise.*

dissertation *noun*

- ADJ. **research | doctoral, Master's, undergraduate | MSc, PhD, etc. | 15 000-word, etc.**
- VERB + DISSERTATION **do, prepare, write** *Students can either do a dissertation or take part in a practical project.* | **complete, finish | hand in, present, submit** *Candidates are required to present a dissertation of between 8 000 and 12 000 words.*
- PREP. **~ on** *He wrote his Master's dissertation on rats.*

disservice *noun*

- ADJ. **grave, great**
- VERB + DISSERVICE **do sb**
- PREP. **~ to** *This violence will do a grave disservice to their cause.*

dissident *noun*

- ADJ. **leading, prominent | political, religious | exiled, imprisoned**

dissimilar *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look**
- ADV. **very | quite, totally | not altogether, not entirely, not wholly**
- PREP. **from** *His views are not dissimilar from those of the Health Minister.* **to** *The way of life here is not altogether dissimilar to that in other parts of Europe.*

dissolve *verb*

1 become/make sth liquid

- ADV. **completely** *The tablet hasn't dissolved completely yet.* | **gradually, slowly | away** *The limestone has simply dissolved away.*
- PREP. **in** *Dissolve the sugar in water.*

2 end sth officially

- ADV. **formally, officially** *Their marriage was formally dissolved last year.*

distance *noun*

1 amount of space between two points

- ADJ. **appreciable, considerable, enormous, fair, good, great, huge, large, long, vast** *The town is a considerable distance from the coast.* ◇ *It's quite a good distance to the nearest village.* ◇ *The people travel vast distances to find food.* | **short, small | reasonable | certain, given | average, mean** *the average distance covered during pursuits by cheetahs* | **equal | maximum, minimum | optimum | correct, right | exact | full | extra | fixed | finite, infinite | careful, comfortable, convenient, discreet, respectful, safe** *The cat sat and watched us from a safe distance.* | **braking, stopping** *Allow for greater braking distances when pulling a loaded trailer.* | **geographical, physical** *These immigrants face problems of geographical distance and cultural isolation.*
- VERB + DISTANCE **cover, fly, go, travel, walk** *The young birds were soon flying distances of 200 feet or more.* ◇ *(figurative) Nobody thought he would last 15 rounds but he went the full distance.* | **keep** *I kept a comfortable distance behind the van.* | **determine, measure | gauge, judge** *It is very difficult to judge distances in the desert.*
- DISTANCE + NOUN **runner, running** *a long-distance runner*

- PREP. **at a ~ (from/of)** *When launching a kick it is essential to be at the correct distance from your opponent.* ◇ *The town is situated at a distance of twenty miles from Oxford.* ◇ *She followed them at a discreet distance.* **from a ~ (of)** *Visitors can only view the painting from a distance of three metres.* **over a ~ (of)** *The sound can be heard over a distance of more than five miles.* **within a ~** *children living within a certain distance of the school* | **~ away from** *The house is a short distance away from the bus station.* **~ between** *What's the distance between London and Edinburgh?* **~ from, ~ to** *the distance from our house to the school*
- PHRASES **a ... distance ahead, away, apart, etc.** *A bomb exploded some distance away.* **within commuting/driving/strolling/travelling/walking distance** *The shops are within walking distance.* **within hailing/shouting/sniffing/spitting/striking/touching distance** *The cat was now within striking distance of the duck.* ◇ *(figurative) We came within spitting distance of winning the cup.*

2 point a long way away/being far away

- ADJ. **far, middle** *I could just see the hills in the far distance.* | **blue** (*literary*) *The moors stretched away into the blue distance* (= the sky).
- DISTANCE + NOUN **learning** *The Open University offers a wide range of distance learning programmes.* | **vision** *to have good distance vision*
- PREP. **at a ~** *At a distance it is difficult to make out the detail on the building.* **from a ~** *We admired the palace from a distance.* **in the ~** *In the distance was a small village.*

3 not being too closely involved

- ADJ. **critical, professional** | **emotional, psychological, social**
- VERB + DISTANCE **keep, maintain** *She was warned to keep her distance from Charles if she didn't want to get hurt.* ◇ *Sociologists must maintain critical distance from the ideas of society at any particular time.*
- PREP. **~ from** *He felt a sense of distance from the others.*
- PHRASES **a sense of distance**

distant *adj.*

1 far away in space

- VERBS **be, sound** | **become, grow** *The sound of the engine was growing more and more distant.*
- ADV. **far** (*literary*), **very** *in far distant lands* | **increasingly** | **unimaginably** *It was only a few miles away but it seemed unimaginably distant.* | **geographically** *geographically distant areas of the world*
- PREP. **from** *The stars are more distant from the earth than the sun.*

2 far away in time

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very** | **increasingly** | **fairly, not too** *in the not too distant future*
- PHRASES **the dim and distant past** *stories from the dim and distant past*

3 not friendly/not paying attention

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain** | **find sb**
- ADV. **very** | **rather, slightly** | **strangely** *Even his children found him strangely distant and impersonal.*

distaste *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, extreme, great, intense, profound, strong** | **growing** | **evident, obvious** *She regarded the child with evident distaste.* | **irrational** | **mock**
- VERB + DISTASTE **feel, have** | **express, show** *trying not to show her distaste* | **conceal, hide** *He couldn't conceal the deep distaste that he felt for many of their customs.* | **look at sb/sth with, regard sb/sth with, view sb/sth with**
- PREP. **in ~** *She wrinkled her nose in mock distaste.* **with ~** *Jim looked with distaste at the cockroach in his soup.* | **~ at** *He couldn't hide his distaste at having to sleep in such a filthy room.* **~ for** *Joe had a profound distaste for violence.*
- PHRASES **an expression/a look of distaste, a feeling of distaste**

distasteful *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **find sth**
- ADV. **extremely, highly** *I find his attitude highly distasteful.* | **thoroughly** | **fairly, rather**
- PREP. **to** *The work was thoroughly distasteful to her.*

distinct *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain** | **keep sth** *It is necessary to keep these two issues distinct.* | **regard/see sth as**
- ADV. **very** | **completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly** | **fairly** | **essentially, fundamentally** | **clearly** | **analytically, conceptually, formally** (= distinct in form), **qualitatively** *Political power should be regarded as analytically distinct from economic power.* | **anatomically, geographically, historically** *geographically distinct regions*
- PREP. **from** *The various dialects are quite distinct from one another.*
- PHRASES **as distinct from** *She was studying lung cancer, as distinct from other types of cancer.*

distinction *noun*

1 clear difference

- ADJ. **critical, crucial, important, key, main, major, vital** | **basic, essential, fundamental, underlying** | **clear, clear-cut, definite, marked, obvious, real, rigid, sharp, strong** | **fine, subtle** | **broad, general** | **crude, simple** | **logical, valid** | **useful** | **arbitrary, artificial** | **invidious** *making invidious distinctions between the 'deserving' and the 'undeserving' poor* | **absolute** *Is there always an absolute distinction between right and wrong?* | **conventional, old, traditional** *the conventional distinction between pure and applied science* | **formal** | **conceptual** | **theoretical** | **class, cultural, gender, moral**
- VERB + DISTINCTION **draw, make** *She draws an important distinction between the different kinds of illness.* | **recognize, see** *We can see a sharp distinction between ambition and greed.* | **blur** *blurring the distinction between amateur and professional players*
- DISTINCTION + VERB **lie** *Cultural distinctions lie at the heart of these issues.*
- PREP. **without ~** *All groups are entitled to this money without distinction* (= without a difference being made between them). | **~ between**

2 excellence/fame

- ADJ. **considerable, great** | **modest** | **dubious** | **rare** | **unique** | **added** | **academic, intellectual, professional, social** *Wearing the county tie was a mark of modest social distinction.*
- VERB + DISTINCTION **have** *He has the dubious distinction of being the first railway baron to go bankrupt.* | **achieve** *She achieved distinction in several fields of scholarship.* | **add** *Fennel leaves add distinction to any dish.*
- PREP. **of ~** *She is a historian of great distinction.* **with ~** *He served with distinction in the First World War.*

distinctive *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *The shell has a highly distinctive pattern.* | **quite** | **fairly**

distinguish *verb*

- ADV. **clearly, sharply** | **carefully** | **easily, readily** *The adult can be readily distinguished by its orange bill.*
- VERB + DISTINGUISH **be able to, can/could** | **be unable to** | **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to, be**

possible to | be important to, be necessary to *It is important to distinguish between cause and effect.*
• PREP. **between** *It is often difficult to distinguish clearly between fact and fiction in this book.* **from** *She could not distinguish one child from another.*

distinguishable *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become**
• ADV. **clearly, easily, readily | barely, hardly, scarcely**
• PREP. **by** *The animal is easily distinguishable by the black stripes above its eye.* **from** *The male bird is barely distinguishable from the female.*

distort *verb*

• ADV. **grossly, seriously, severely** *He was accused of grossly distorting the facts.* **| completely | slightly | deliberately**

distortion *noun*

1 change in shape/sound
• ADJ. **severe | slight | inevitable**
• VERB + DISTORTION **cause, create, lead to** *The wrong chemical balance can cause severe distortion of the photographic image.* **| avoid**
2 changing sth so that it is shown falsely
• ADJ. **gross, serious** *His report was attacked as a gross distortion of the truth.* **| deliberate**

distract *verb*

• ADV. **easily** *He's easily distracted from his work* **| momentarily** *A noise outside momentarily distracted her.*
• PREP. **(away) from** *an attempt to distract attention away from the real problems in the country*

distracted *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become, get** *It's easy to get distracted when you're studying.*
• ADV. **very | a little, slightly, somewhat** *She seemed slightly distracted, as if something was worrying her.* **| momentarily** *Luke looked momentarily distracted.*

distraction *noun*

1 sth that takes your attention away
• ADJ. **unwanted | welcome**
• PREP. **without ~** *She worked hard all morning, without distraction.* **| ~ from** *Work was a welcome distraction from her problems at home.*
2 being unable to think clearly
• VERB + DISTRACTION **drive sb to** *My kids drive me to distraction at times.* **| be bored to | love sb to**

distraught *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound** *She sounded absolutely distraught.* **| become | remain** *Weeks after the accident she remained distraught.* **| leave sb** *His mother's death left him utterly distraught.*
• ADV. **extremely, really, terribly, very | absolutely, completely, quite, utterly**
• PREP. **at** *They were terribly distraught at the news of his accident.*

distress *noun*

• ADJ. **acute, considerable, deep, extreme, great, immense, severe | genuine, real | obvious | unnecessary | emotional, mental, personal, physical, psychological** *the physical distress of thirst and hunger* ◇ *the personal distress associated with unemployment* **| economic, financial, social** *The causes of social distress include inadequate housing.*
• VERB + DISTRESS **cause (sb) | feel, suffer** *the distress that she felt when her parents argued* ◇ *The animals suffer great pain and distress when hunted.* **| show (signs of)** *She seemed calm and showed no signs of distress.* **| conceal** *He tried to conceal his distress, but the tremor in his voice was unmistakable.* **| avoid | alleviate, ease, relieve**
• DISTRESS + NOUN **call, signal** *The sinking ship sent out a distress call.*
• PREP. **in ~** *The child was clearly in distress.* ◇ *a ship in distress* **to sb's ~** *He dropped out of college, to his family's distress.* **| ~ at** *her obvious distress at hearing such bad news* **~ over** *The president issued a statement expressing her distress over the affair.*
• PHRASES **a damsel in distress** *medieval ballads about a knight saving a damsel in distress* **a source of distress** *Grief over ageing is a source of distress to men and women.*

distressing *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become | find sth** *I found the story deeply distressing.*
• ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, very | quite, rather | emotionally**
• PREP. **for** *The divorce was extremely distressing for the children.*

distribute *verb*

1 give sth out
• ADV. **equally, fairly | unequally | widely** *The leaflets have been widely distributed.* **| free** *Copies of the book were distributed free to each school in the district.*
• PREP. **among** *We distributed the money equally among the team members.* **between, to** *distributing aid to people in need*
2 spread sth
• ADV. **evenly, uniformly** *Wealth is not evenly distributed between age groups.* **| unevenly | randomly** *Smokers were randomly distributed in the sample interviewed.* **| patchily, sparsely**
• PREP. **among, between throughout** *There are over 35 000 species of orchid distributed throughout the world.*

distribution *noun*

1 way sth is shared or exists over an area
• ADJ. **egalitarian, equitable, fair** *to ensure a fair distribution of wealth* **| inequitable, unfair | equal** *an equal distribution of wealth between people of different age groups* **| unequal | even, uniform** *After applying the cream, comb through to ensure even distribution.* **| uneven** *The country was noted for its uneven distribution of land resources.* **| optimal, optimum | relative** *the relative distribution of continents and oceans* **| general, overall** *the general distribution of earthquakes around the world* **| broad, wide, widespread** *the broad distribution of Bronze Age artefacts across Europe* ◇ *the wider distribution of wealth throughout society* **| local, localized** *Fish populations assume highly localized distributions within each river.* **| global, regional, worldwide | spatial | income, wealth | weight | age, class, geographical, population, sex, social** *the social class distribution of the male population* **| normal, random, skewed, smooth** (*all mathematics*) *a normal distribution with a bell-shaped frequency curve* **| binomial, frequency, probability** (*all mathematics*)
• VERB + DISTRIBUTION **achieve, ensure** *The engine is mounted in the middle to achieve a more even weight distribution.* **| determine** *Radiology was used to determine the distribution of the disease.* **| have, show** (*mathematics*) *These birds have a wide geographical distribution.* ◇ *IQs within the population show a normal distribution.*
• DISTRIBUTION + NOUN **pattern** *Animal herds may form in response to the distribution patterns of food.* **|**

map *an atlas containing distribution maps of the most important tropical diseases*

• PREP. **~ across** *the distribution of resources across society* **~ among** *data on wealth distribution among age groups* **~ between** *a disparity in age distribution between groups* **~ over** *the distribution of trees over the estate* **~ throughout** *uniform distribution of the chemical throughout the timber*

• PHRASES **a change in distribution** *changes in the distribution of wealth and income*

2 giving/delivering sth to people

• ADJ. **free** *The document contains sensitive information and is not suitable for free* (= unrestricted) *distribution.* ◇ *The previously free* (= not paid for) *distribution of textbooks will now be confined to students who are needy.* | **general** *Our catalogue lists all our books that are available for general distribution.* | **selective** | **exclusive** *The publisher has signed an agreement for the exclusive distribution of the books in the US.* | **proper** | **electronic** *the electronic distribution of software to customers* | **global, international, local, national, worldwide** *Roads are used for local distribution of goods.* | **electricity, food, fuel, gas, land, milk, water** *the creation of 1 500 smallholdings as part of a land distribution programme* | **retail, wholesale** *the wholesale and retail distribution of a huge variety of goods*

• VERB + DISTRIBUTION **control, handle, organize** *The company is to handle the distribution of the product in Europe.* | **available for** *2 000 copies of the booklet have been printed and are available for distribution.* | **ensure** *to ensure the proper distribution of medical aid* | **allow (for)** *to allow for the distribution of aid*

• DISTRIBUTION + NOUN **agreement, arrangement, deal** *Her company has signed a non-exclusive distribution agreement.* | **list** *I attach a copy of the distribution list so you can see who got the last edition.* | **rights** | **costs** | **channel** *We have many distribution channels for our software, including electronic distribution.* | **network** | **method** | **system** | **facilities** *The company wants to invest in new distribution facilities.* | **base, centre, depot, outlet, point** *The company has decided to use Belfast as its distribution base.* | **operation** *The company has manufacturing or distribution operations in 33 countries worldwide.* | **business, company** | **industry**

• PREP. **for ~** *free colour leaflets for distribution overseas* | **~ among** *food for distribution among the villagers* **~ between** *the distribution of the health budget between various hospitals* **~ by** *the distribution by the government of a leaflet explaining the new tax* **~ through** *distribution through department stores* **~ to** *The food was parcelled up for distribution to outlying communities.*

• PHRASES **a/the chain of distribution** *There are savings to be made where retailers are bypassed in the chain of distribution.* **a channel of distribution**

3 payment

• ADJ. **capital, dividend, share** | **cash**

• VERB + DISTRIBUTION **make** *When are distributions likely to be made to creditors?* | **be available for** *These are company reserves available for distribution as the directors may determine.*

• PREP. **~ to** *The promissory notes were purchased for distribution to investors.*

distributor *noun*

• ADJ. **global, international, overseas, worldwide** | **local, national** | **exclusive, sole** | **authorized, licensed** | **independent, third party** *Third party distributors are used to distribute the product in areas where the group does not have offices.* | **large, leading, main, major, primary** *We are the primary distributor of the system in France.* | **car, computer, film, food, software** | **electricity** *the national electricity distributor*

• VERB + DISTRIBUTOR **appoint (sb) as** *We have been appointed sole UK distributor of a number of Hungarian wines.* | **act as** *We will act as the exclusive distributor for these Russian goods to the world market.*

• PREP. **through a/the ~** *You can get the book through your local distributor.* | **~ for** *the exclusive distributor for these goods* ◇ *a distributor for the German market* ◇ *a distributor for Hewlett-Packard Co*

district *noun*

• ADJ. **neighbouring, surrounding** *Fire crews from all the surrounding districts helped to fight the fires in the city.* | **central** *Every city has its central business district.* | **outlying, remote** *a new railway station to help people commuting from outlying districts* | **northern, southern, etc.** | **affluent, exclusive, rich, wealthy** | **poor, working-class** *the shacks in the poorest districts of the city* | **slum** | **coastal, country, local, metropolitan, rural, suburban, urban** | **agricultural, business, commercial, financial, industrial, mining, residential, shopping** | **administrative, electoral, federal, health, military, polling, postal** *a federal district court in New York* ◇ *He has been transferred to a hospital in a different health district.*

• DISTRICT + VERB **stretch** *Their district stretches nearly 150 miles, from the mountains to the sea.*

• DISTRICT + NOUN **authority, council** *the district health authority* | **councillor, judge, nurse, etc.** | **court, hospital, etc.** | **boundary** *Redrawing district boundaries would change the election results.*

• PREP. **in/within a/the ~** *The hospital is only responsible for patients within its own district.*

distrust *noun*

• ADJ. **deep, deep-seated, profound** | **growing** | **widespread** | **popular, public** *the popular distrust of foreigners after the war* | **mutual** | **healthy** *She has a healthy distrust of door-to-door salesmen.*

• VERB + DISTRUST **feel, have** | **express, show** | **create** *The many policy changes have created growing distrust among employees.* | **overcome** *Great efforts were made to overcome public distrust.* | **retain** *Nonconformists retained a deep distrust of their Anglican neighbours.*

• PREP. **~ between** *distrust between the two police forces* **~ in** *his distrust in politics* **~ of** *a distrust of the media*

• PHRASES **a climate of distrust**

disturbance *noun*

1 actions that upset the normal state of sb/sth

• ADJ. **considerable, major, serious** | **minimal, minimum, minor, slight**

• QUANT. **level** *an unacceptable level of disturbance to occupiers of adjacent properties*

• VERB + DISTURBANCE **cause, create, make** *The traffic causes serious disturbance to residents.* | **suffer** | **prevent** *She moved the nest very carefully to prevent disturbance to the birds.*

• PREP. **without ~** *a place where you can work without disturbance* | **~ from** *disturbance from noisy lorries* **~ of** *the major disturbance of marine life caused by oil spillages* **~ to** *Buildings should create minimum disturbance to the environment.*

2 violent public event

• ADJ. **serious** *The decision led to serious disturbances in all the country's main cities.* | **violent** | **public** | **crowd, mass** | **serious** | **civil, ethnic, political, racial, social** | **inner city, rural, urban**

• VERB + DISTURBANCE **cause, give rise to, lead to, provoke, trigger (off)** *He was arrested and charged with causing a disturbance in a public place.* ◇ *An influx of refugees has triggered off disturbances.* | **be involved in** *Large numbers of workers involved in the disturbances*

have been arrested. | **deal with, put down, quell** *Troops were brought in to put down the disturbance.*
- DISTURBANCE + VERB **occur** | **involve sb** *disturbances involving members of a crowd of 550 demonstrators*
- PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *Several people were injured during a disturbance in the capital city.* | **~among** *There had been violent disturbances among the prisoners.* **~between** *disturbances between members of two rival factions*
- PHRASES **a disturbance of the peace** *The government advocated strong action against Mussolini's disturbance of the peace.*

3 emotional/physical upset
- ADJ. **serious, severe** | **behavioural, emotional, mental, psychiatric, psychological** *teenagers suffering from a kind of psychological disturbance* | **bowel, menstrual** | **sleep**
- VERB + DISTURBANCE **suffer from**
- PREP. **~in** *a disturbance in liver function ◇ behavioural disturbances in children*

disturbed *adj.*

1 mentally ill
- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **acutely, deeply, highly, seriously, severely, very** *Many of our patients are severely disturbed.* | **behaviourally, emotionally, mentally, psychiatrically, psychologically** *emotionally disturbed children*

2 very anxious
- VERBS **be, feel** | **become**
- ADV. **deeply, greatly, profoundly, very** | **a little, slightly, vaguely** | **oddly**
- PREP. **by** *I felt oddly disturbed by the incident.*

disturbing *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain** | **find sth**
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, profoundly, very** *a profoundly disturbing experience* | **rather, slightly, somewhat, vaguely** | **oddly, strangely** | **unexpectedly**

disuse *noun*

- VERB + DISUSE **be in** *The workforce has shrunk to less than a thousand and much of the plant is in disuse.* | **fall into** *A new bridge was built ten years ago and the old one has fallen into disuse.*
- PREP. **from/through/with ~** *Her muscles had become weak through disuse.*
- PHRASES **a period of disuse**

ditch *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, wide** | **shallow, small** | **open** *The drainage system consisted of a few open ditches to facilitate runoff.* | **muddy** | **drainage, irrigation** | **roadside**
- VERB + DITCH **dig**
- DITCH + VERB **run** *The ditch ran parallel to the road.* | **surround sth** *His lettuce garden was surrounded by a deep ditch.*
- PREP. **in/into a ~** *I tripped and fell into a muddy ditch.*

dive *noun*

1 of an aircraft
- ADJ. **steep, vertical** | **gentle, shallow** | **spiral**
- VERB + DIVE **go into** *The plane went into a steep dive.* | **pull out of** *The pilot seemed to be having difficulty in pulling out of the dive.*

2 move/jump/fall
- ADJ. **headlong, nose** (also **nosedive**) (*both often figurative*) *The economy is on a headlong dive to disaster. ◇ His acting career took a nosedive and he turned to drink for solace.* | **sudden** | **running** *She made a running dive to get across the crevasse.*
- VERB + DIVE **make, take** *She made a dive for the door. ◇ He took a dive in the penalty area and won his team a controversial penalty. ◇ (figurative) The market is volatile and profits could take a dive.*
- PREP. **~for** *There would be a dive for the bar as soon as the show finished.*

dive *verb*

1 jump into water
- ADV. **deep, head first** | **down**
- PREP. **for** *diving for pearls* **from** *She dived from the top diving board.* **into** *He dived headfirst into the water.* **off**
- PHRASES **go diving** *The main purpose of his holiday to Greece was to go diving.*

2 of birds/aircraft
- ADV. **suddenly** | **vertically** *Unlike some birds, it does not dive vertically.*
- PREP. **from, to** *The plane suddenly dived from 10 000 feet to 5 000.*

3 move/jump/fall
- ADV. **head first, headlong**
- PREP. **beneath, into** *He dived headlong into the ditch.* **through, under**
- PHRASES **dive for cover** *We heard an explosion and dived for cover.*

diverge *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, markedly, widely**
- PREP. **from** *This country's interests diverge considerably from those of other European countries.*

diverse *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **enormously, exceptionally, extremely, highly, remarkably, very, widely** | **increasingly** | **quite, relatively** | **apparently** | **culturally, ethnically, socially** *an ethnically diverse population*

diversion *noun*

1 change of direction
- ADJ. **brief, short** | **major**
- VERB + DIVERSION **make, take** *From Poiso we make a short diversion to drive to the top of the mountain.*
- PREP. **~from** *the diversion of water from the river into the reservoir* **~to** *The pilot set the aircraft up for a diversion to the nearest suitable airfield.*

2 temporary route
- ADJ. **temporary** *A temporary diversion has been set up to take traffic away from the accident site.* | **traffic**
- VERB + DIVERSION **set up** | **signpost** *The road will be closed for two days; diversions have been signposted.*
- DIVERSION + VERB **be in operation** *The main road is now closed and diversions are in operation.*

3 distraction
- ADJ. **welcome**
- VERB + DIVERSION **create, provide** *The fire was started to create a diversion, allowing some prisoners to escape.*
- PREP. **~from** *The cinema provided a welcome diversion from camp routine.*

4 pleasant activity
- ADJ. **pleasant, pleasurable** | **minor**
- VERB + DIVERSION **make, provide** *The party would make a pleasant diversion in his rather dull social life.*

diversity *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, extraordinary, great, immense, rich, wide** *There is need for greater diversity and choice in education. ◇ the rich diversity of the city's cultural life* | **growing, increased, increasing** | **bio-**

logical, genetic *the need to preserve biological diversity* | **cultural, ethnic, linguistic, political, regional**

- VERB + DIVERSITY **create** | **encourage, promote** *Our party believes in encouraging cultural diversity, not division.* | **maintain, preserve, protect** *The producer was under pressure to maintain a diversity in his output.* | **decrease, increase** | **allow (for)** *Tyrannies do not allow diversity and disagreement.*
- PREP. **~in** *diversity in the style of the reports* **~of** *There is a wide diversity of views on this subject.*

divide *noun*

- ADJ. **great, sharp** | **growing** | **north-south, etc.** | **class, cultural, ideological, religious, sectarian** | **party**
- VERB + DIVIDE **close**
- DIVIDE + VERB **widen** | **narrow** | **open (up)**
- PREP. **~between** *the sharp divide between rich and poor regions* **~in** *The leader's speech aimed to close the embarrassing divide in party ranks.*

divide *verb*

1 separate into parts

- ADV. **broadly, roughly** *This report is divided broadly into two parts.* | **exactly** | **clearly** | **conveniently, neatly** *Railway enthusiasts divide neatly into two groups.* | **evenly** | **up** *The country is divided up into nine regions.*
- PREP. **into** *The children divided into three teams.*
- PHRASES **divide in two** *the point where the river divides in two*

2 share

- ADV. **equally** | **up**
- PREP. **among/amongst** *The money was divided equally among his sons.* **between** *They divided their time between London and their country cottage.*

3 cause disagreement

- ADV. **bitterly, deeply, hopelessly, seriously, sharply** *This issue has bitterly divided the community.* | **evenly**
- PHRASES **be divided about/on/over sth** *Cabinet ministers were deeply divided on the issue.*

dividend *noun*

1 payment on a company share

- ADJ. **high** | **10%, etc.** | **fixed** | **increased** | **gross, total** | **net** | **expected** *a method of valuing shares based on expected dividends* | **annual, quarterly** | **interim** | **final** | **company** | **share** *Investors will still pay tax on their foreign share dividends.* | **cash**
- VERB + DIVIDEND **pay** | **receive** | **announce, declare** *The company has not yet declared its dividends for this year.* | **recommend** *The board has recommended a final dividend of 6 pence per share.* | **boost, increase, lift, raise** | **hold, maintain** *The interim dividend is maintained at 2.5 cents per share.* | **cut, reduce, slash** | **pass** *During that time, dividends were cut or passed* (= not paid) *and there were plenty of closures.*
- DIVIDEND + VERB **be up** *The dividend is up 10.6% to 11.3p.* | **go up, grow, jump, rise** *The dividend should jump to 5p.* | **stay** *The dividend stays at 0.5p.* | **be payable** *The final dividend, payable on July 1, is reduced to 1p.*
- DIVIDEND + NOUN **payment, payout** | **growth, increase** | **cut** | **income, total, yield** | **policy**
- PREP. **~on** *They have announced the quarterly dividend on the shares.*
- PHRASES **an increase in a dividend**

2 benefit/reward

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, handsome, rich** | **economic**
- VERB + DIVIDEND **bring, pay, produce, reap, yield** *Her hard work paid dividends when she won the school dancing competition.* ◇ *The company reaped rich dividends with its new strategy for packaging holidays.*
- PREP. **~in** *The chain's investment in new stores is bringing dividends in new customers.*

diving *noun*

- ADJ. **deep-sea, scuba, sub-aqua** | **commercial**
- VERB + DIVING **go**
- DIVING + NOUN **board** | **display** *The crowd enjoyed a diving display before the swimming races.* | **equipment, gear, suit** | **bell** *A diving bell is usually used for operations below 50 metres.*

divisible *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **infinitely** *He argued that all matter was infinitely divisible.*
- PREP. **by** *Twelve is divisible by four.* **into** *Plants are divisible into three main groups.*

division *noun*

1 dividing sth into separate parts

- ADJ. **clear, distinct, simple** *Sometimes there is no simple division between good and evil.* | **complex, elaborate** | **rigid** | **broad, rough** | **equal, fair** | **unequal, unfair** *an unequal division of the cake* ◇ *an unfair division of labour* | **conventional, time-honoured** *the conventional division of language into grammar and vocabulary* | **theoretical** | **hierarchical** *hierarchical division between 'workers' and 'management'* | **threefold, three-way, tripartite** | **cell**
- VERB + DIVISION **make** *You can make a rough division of his music into 'light' and 'serious'.*
- PREP. **~among** *His will detailed his assets and gave instructions for their division among his children.* **~between** *the division of the money between the members* **~into** *In selling there is a broad division into direct and indirect methods.*
- PHRASES **the division of labour, the division of wealth**

2 differences between two groups/things, etc.

- ADJ. **bitter, deep, great, sharp** *There are sharp divisions within the party over the privatization of the railways.* | **fundamental** | **factional, internal** *factional divisions within the party* | **traditional** | **north-south** | **class, cultural, ethnic, gender, ideological, linguistic, political, sexual, social, societal**
- VERB + DIVISION **create, provoke** | **exploit** | **heal** *The prime minister's speech will attempt to heal divisions within his party.*
- PREP. **~among** *There are reports of serious divisions among senior party members.* **~between, ~within** *division within the government*

3 section of an organization

- ADJ. **regional** | **industrial, manufacturing, marketing, retail, sales, training, wholesale** | **administrative** *the administrative divisions of the Roman Empire* | **airborne, armoured, infantry, etc.** | **first, high, low, premier, second, senior, top, etc.** (*sport*) *He's now playing football in the higher divisions.* | **heavyweight, lightweight, middleweight, etc.** (= in boxing, etc.)
- PREP. **in the … ~** *They compete in the senior division of the chess league.*

4 dividing one number by another

- ADJ. **long**
- VERB + DIVISION **do** *Can you do long division?*
- PREP. **~by** *division by three*

divisive *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **deeply** | **potentially** | **economically, politically, socially** *He believes that unemployment is socially divisive and is leading to the creation of an underclass.*

divorce *noun*

- ADJ. **amicable, uncontested | acrimonious, bitter | messy, painful | quick**
- VERB + DIVORCE **want | apply for, ask for, file for, petition for, seek, sue for** *She filed for divorce in 1996.* | **get, obtain** *He told her that he was married but getting a divorce.* | **experience, go through** *She watched her parents go through an acrimonious divorce.* | **agree to, consent to | contest** *These days divorce is rarely contested.* | **grant (sb)** *Over 50 000 divorces were granted last year.* | **end in** *An increasing number of marriages end in divorce.*
- DIVORCE + VERB **come through** *He is waiting for the divorce to come through before he remarries.*
- DIVORCE + NOUN **court | case, proceedings | decree, settlement | figures, rate, statistics** *The divorce rate has been growing steadily since 1971.* | **law**
- PREP. **~ from** *her divorce from the pop star* **~ on the grounds of** *seeking a divorce on the grounds of cruelty*
- PHRASES **grounds for divorce** *He cited adultery as grounds for divorce.*

dock *noun*

1 place for loading/unloading ships

- ADJ. **commercial | coal, fish, etc.**
- VERB + DOCK **build, construct | arrive at/in | enter**
- DOCK + NOUN **company | strike | worker**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *A car pulled up at the dock.* **in ~** *The ship is in dock for repairs.* **on a/the ~** *the cargo stacked on the dock*

2 the dock in a court of law

- VERB + DOCK **enter, go into, step into | appear in, be in** *She was in the dock on charges of attempted fraud.* | **be put in, end up in, land in** *After a night of drunken revelry they ended up in the dock.*
- PREP. **from the ~** *an outburst from the dock* **in the ~** *The defendant stood in the dock.*

doctor *noun*

- ADJ. **excellent, good | qualified | experienced | family, local** *Who is your family doctor?* | **hospital, school | NHS | private**
- VERB + DOCTOR **register with** *You should register with a doctor as soon as possible.* | **call, fetch, get, send for** *We called the doctor immediately.* (For more verbs see note.)

> **NOTE**
> **Health practitioners**
>
> **be, practise as ~**
> *He practises as a clinical psychologist.*
> **have a** dentist, doctor, psychiatrist, psychologist, therapist
> *Do you have a family doctor?*
> **need ~**
> *She took good care of her teeth and never needed a dentist.*
> **find ~**
> *What's the best way to find a therapist?*
> **consult, go to, see, visit ~**
> *I think you ought to see a psychologist.*
> **refer sb to ~**
> *referring patients to a specialist*
> **~ practise**
> *doctors who practise from home*
> **~ examine sb/sth, see sb**
> *I had an ear, nose and throat specialist examine my sinuses.*
> *The doctor will see you now.*
> **~ treat sb/sth**
> *He is being treated by the physiotherapist.*
> **~ advise sb/sth**
> *The optician has advised that I wear contact lenses.*
> a dentist, doctor, psychiatrist, specialist **prescribes (sb) sth**
> *The psychiatrist prescribed anti-depressants.*
> ⇨ See also the note at JOB

doctorate *noun*

- ADJ. **honorary | engineering, music, etc.**
- VERB + DOCTORATE **do, study for, take, write** *She's doing a doctorate in ancient history.* | **complete** *He's completed his doctorate on Victorian sexuality.* | **have** *The applicants all have doctorates from good universities.* | **be awarded, be granted, gain, get, obtain, receive**
- DOCTORATE + NOUN **degree | thesis, work**
- PREP. **~ from** *a doctorate from Edinburgh University* **~ in** *a doctorate in Business Administration* **~ of** *a doctorate of divinity* **~ on** *a doctorate on post-colonial development*

doctrine *noun*

- ADJ. **Catholic, Islamic, etc. | economic, legal, political, religious | revolutionary | classical, conventional, established, orthodox, traditional | high** *He expounded traditional Calvinism with its high doctrine of church order* (= its doctrine that church order is very important). | **old | prevailing | central, essential | general | false, untenable | influential**
- QUANT. **point** *communities divided on points of doctrine* | **body** *an influential body of doctrine*
- VERB + DOCTRINE **advocate, expound, preach, proclaim, teach | defend | develop, establish, formulate, produce | accept, adhere to, adopt, be committed to, believe (in), embrace, subscribe to, support, uphold** *They were all committed to the doctrine of social equality.* | **abandon, condemn, oppose, reject, undermine** *She rejected the traditional Christian doctrines.* | **apply, invoke | reconcile** *Thompson reconciled the doctrine of heat with that of mechanics in 1851.*
- DOCTRINE + VERB **advocate sth | allow sth** *Their doctrine allows the use of violence.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The Church welcomed all who were considered sound in doctrine.*

document *noun*

1 official paper/book

- ADJ. **important, key, seminal** *one of the key documents in this case* | **relevant | large, lengthy, long, weighty | brief, short | 10-page, etc. | complete, entire, whole** *This statement must be understood in the context of the entire document.* | **summary | detailed | draft | revised | final | original** *The original document has been lost or destroyed.* | **electronic, paper, printed, written | published, unpublished | enclosed** *Please sign the enclosed document and return it to me.* | **single** *A constitution need not be a single document.* | **classified, confidential, privileged** (*law*), **(top) secret | private | public | available** *Documents will be available at the news conference.* | **internal** *details of internal UN documents* | **approved, signed | unsigned | authentic, genuine | forged | disclosed, leaked | government, legal, official | policy, strategy | travel** *Keep your travel documents in a secure place.* | **registration** *a car's registration document* | **contract, offer, tender** (*all business*) *He has promised to post a formal offer document to shareholders by Monday.* | **briefing | consultation, consultative, discussion, proposal, working** *a working document in the discussions for a final treaty* | **basic, framework | guidance | supporting | (legally) binding** *A document signed abroad is as legally* *binding as one signed at home.* | **constitutional, contractual** | **historical**

• QUANT. **copy**

• VERB + DOCUMENT **draft, draw up, prepare, produce, publish, type, write** *The government has produced an important new policy document.* | **revise** | **disclose** (*law*), **issue** *a consultative document issued by the Department of Trade and Industry* | **receive** | **obtain** | **file** *Copies of the relevant documents must be filed at court.* | **hand over/sb, present, submit** *Supporting documents must be submitted to the supervisory authority.* | **produce** *He was unable to produce the document that he claimed would prove his case.* | **keep** | **circulate, send (out)** | **leak** *documents leaked from the government to the press* | **read** | **go through, read through** *Go through the document checking for errors.* | **search through, sort through** *I had to search through 4 000 documents to find the information I needed.* | **consider, examine, study** | **accept, adopt, approve, endorse, execute** (*law*), **sign** *The conference adopted a document on minority rights.* | **authenticate** | **forge** | **refer to** | **address** | **attach, enclose** *The relevant documents are enclosed for your information.* | **scan** *Existing paper documents could be scanned into a computer.*

• DOCUMENT + VERB **be concerned with sth, concern sth, deal with sth, focus on sth, relate to sth** | **contain sth, cover sth, include sth** *documents covering various points of concern* | **refer to sth** | **acknowledge sth, describe sth, detail sth, explain sth, indicate sth, list sth, note sth, outline sth, record sth, say sth, set out sth, state sth, tell sb sth** *The document says they are against tax rebates.* | **call for sth, propose sth, suggest sth** *a document calling for a ceasefire* | **aim at sth, envisage sth, seek sth** *documents aimed at stimulating discussion* | **reveal sth, show sth** | **purport sth** *Documents leaked to this newspaper purport to reveal that radioactive waste is being illegally dumped on the site.* | **summarize sth** | **confirm sth** | **be agreed (on/upon)** *a document agreed with the District Council* | **be called sth, be entitled sth, be headed sth, be known as sth** *a document entitled 'Guidelines for Good Practice'* | **be written** *The document is written in Chinese.* | **exist** *No other genuine document exists.* | **date back from/to …, be dated …** *documents dating back to the 1920s* ◇ *The document is dated 775.*

• PREP. **according to a/the ~** *According to leaked cabinet documents, no compensation would be paid.* **in a/the ~** *He particularly criticized the terminology in the document.* **throughout a/the ~** *There is a disclaimer throughout the official documents.* | **~ about/concerning** *a document concerning arbitration procedures in Cairo* **~ of** *a document of 2 000 words* ◇ *a document of 1999* ◇ *Her journal is an important document of Victorian rural life* **~ on** *a government document on transport policy*

• PHRASES **a draft/version of a document**

2 computer file

• ADJ. **active, current** *Highlight a passage in the active document and click on the print icon.* | **printed**

• VERB + DOCUMENT **open** | **close** | **display** *to display documents on screen* | **retrieve** | **scroll through** *Scroll through the document using the slider bar on the right of the window.* | **search** *a software tool for searching documents and retrieving information* | **create** *To create a new document, select New from the File menu.* | **edit** | **save** *Save the document before closing.* | **format** | **spell check** | **send** *Send and receive documents at the click of a button.* | **receive** | **print (out)**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *Cut and paste is used to move text to a new place in the document.*

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

documentary *noun*

• ADJ. **dramatized** | **fly-on-the-wall** | **film, radio, television/TV** | **controversial** | **science, wildlife, etc.** | **half-hour, hour-long, forty-minute, etc.**

• VERB + DOCUMENTARY **make** *She has made a television documentary on poverty in our cities.* | **film** | **show** | **see, watch**

• DOCUMENTARY + NOUN **feature, film, programme, series**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *There were some interesting interviews in the documentary.* | **~ about/on** *a documentary about identical twins*

dog *noun*

• ADJ. **domestic, family, household, pet** | **feral, wild** | **stray** | **mongrel** | **pedigree** | **lap, toy** *The lady was kissing a little lap dog.* | **faithful, friendly** | **good, well-behaved, well-trained** | **bad** *Bad dog! What are you doing there?* | **dangerous, fierce, killer, savage** | **mad, rabid** | **mangy** | **show** | **fighting, hunting, working** | **farm, guard, guide, gun, police, sheep, sledge, sniffer, tracker** *Sniffer dogs were used to find the drugs.* | **top** (*often figurative*) *The team wanted to prove that they were top dogs in the region.*

• QUANT. **pack**

• VERB + DOG **have, keep, own** *The dog's owner was fined £500 and banned from keeping dogs for five years.* | **breed** *These dogs have been bred to work as guide dogs for the blind.* | **train** *He's trained his dog to sit on the back of his bike.* | **feed** | **take for a walk, walk** *I'm just going to walk the dog.* | **neuter** *We didn't want puppies so we had the dog neutered.* | **worm** *The stray dogs are wormed and treated with flea powder.* | **muzzle** | **destroy, put down** *A dog that savaged a five-year-old child was later destroyed, police have confirmed.*

• DOG + VERB **bark, bay, growl, howl, pant, snarl, whine, yap, yelp** *The dog barked loudly at the stranger.* ◇ *The little dogs were yapping at my ankles.* | **bound, roam (sth), run, scamper, trot, walk, wander** *The dog bounded up to me and started licking my hand.* ◇ *Stray dogs roamed the streets at night.* | **come/walk to heel** | **attack sb/sth, bite sb/sth, go for sb/sth, maul sb/sth, savage sb/sth, set upon sb/sth, snap** | **lie, stretch (out)** | **lick** | **chew sth (up), gnaw (at) sth** *The dog chewed up one of my shoes.* ◇ *A dog was gnawing at an old bone.* | **sniff, snuffle** *A dog was sniffing round my heels.* | **prick up its ears, wag its tail** | **scratch** *The dog was scratching at the door to be let in.* | **foul sth** *Owners who allow their dogs to foul the footpath will be fined.*

• DOG + NOUN **basket** | **biscuit, food** | **collar** | **dirt, excrement, faeces, mess, poo, shit, turd** | **breeder, handler, lover, owner, trainer, warden** *The dog warden rounds up stray dogs and takes them to the dog pound until claimed.* | **fight** | **pound** | **show** | **racing** | **track** *Races have been held at this dog track for seventy years.*

dogma *noun*

• ADJ. **old** | **rigid** | **party, political, religious** *The newspaper seeks to be independent of political dogma.*

• VERB + DOGMA **accept** | **question, reject** *People are beginning to question the old dogmas.*

dole *noun*

• VERB + DOLE **claim, go on, sign on** *She lost her job and had to claim dole.* ◇ *As soon as he was made redundant, he signed on the dole.* | **draw, get** *The factory closure will mean another few hundred people drawing the dole.*

• DOLE + NOUN **money** | **queue** *School leavers were joining the dole queue every day.* | **office**

• PREP. **off the ~** *Many had come off the dole and set up their own small businesses.* **on the ~** *She was on the dole for three years before she got a job.*

doll *noun*

• ADJ. **little, tiny** | **china, paper, plastic, porcelain, rag,**

rubber, wooden *a child playing with a rag doll* | **baby** | **Barbie** | **mechanical** | **Russian**
- VERB + DOLL **play with**
- PHRASES **a dolls' house, dolls' clothes**

dollar *noun*

⇨ Note at CURRENCY

domain *noun*

- ADJ. **private, public** | **Internet**
- DOMAIN + NOUN **name** *Register a domain name if you want people to find your website.* | **registration**
- PREP. **in a/the ~, within a/the ~** *This information is all in the public domain.* **outside a/the ~** *things that happen outside the domain of the home*

domesticated *adj.*

1 used to living with people
- VERBS **be** *These animals are only partly domesticated.*
- ADV. **fully** | **partly**

2 able to cook/clean, etc.
- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **very** | **thoroughly** *He is thoroughly domesticated and cooks a delicious chicken casserole.* | **quite**

dominance *noun*

- ADJ. **clear, complete, overwhelming, total** | **growing, increasing** | **cultural, economic, military, political, territorial** | **market** | **male**
- VERB + DOMINANCE **achieve, assert, assume, establish, exert, gain** *The firm soon achieved complete dominance in the marketplace.* | **have, maintain, retain** *The firm is determined to maintain dominance in the market.* | **challenge, undermine** *Ex-colonial countries began to challenge the cultural dominance of Europe.*
- PREP. **~ in** *black American dominance in heavyweight boxing* **~ over** *He asserted his dominance over the other party members.*

dominant *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **completely, overwhelmingly, totally** | **increasingly** | **fairly, relatively** | **economically, politically, socially** *the economically dominant class*

dominate *verb*

- ADV. **completely, entirely, totally** *She completely dominated the conversation.* | **increasingly** *His work increasingly dominates his life.* | **largely** | **overwhelmingly**

domination *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, total** | **cultural, economic, ideological, political** | **class, male** | **colonial, foreign, imperial** | **world** | **market**
- VERB + DOMINATION **seek** *countries that seek world domination* | **achieve, establish** *They achieved political domination of the area.* | **maintain, retain** *The company has struggled to maintain its domination in the marketplace.* | **come under, fall under** *The country came under foreign domination.* | **be free from/of** *The country longs to be free of colonial domination.*
- PREP. **under sb's ~** *The country is still under foreign domination.* | **~ over** *their economic domination over the Far East*

donation *noun*

- ADJ. **generous, handsome, large, substantial** | **small** | **company, corporate** | **personal, private** | **public** *The project is funded by public donation.* | **voluntary** | **charitable, political** | **cash, financial** | **blood, organ**
- VERB + DONATION **give, make, send** *He made a generous donation to the charity.* | **get, receive** | **appeal for, ask for** | **depend on, need, rely on**
- PREP. **in ~s** *The charity has received over $10 million in donations.* | **~ to** *a donation to a charity* **~ towards** *a donation towards the building of a new hospital*

donkey *noun*

- VERB + DONKEY **ride**
- DONKEY + VERB **bray** | **graze**
- DONKEY + NOUN **cart** | **ride**

donor *noun*

1 gives a part of their body
- ADJ. **blood (transfusion), bone marrow, kidney, organ, etc.** | **potential** | **suitable** *The operation will go ahead as soon as a suitable donor can be found.*
- DONOR + VERB **donate sth, give sth** *Donors give blood twice a year.*
- DONOR + NOUN **blood, organ** *Donor organs are constantly required for transplant operations.* | **card**

2 gives money/goods
- ADJ. **anonymous** *The charity received £50 000 from an anonymous donor.* | **aid** *Japan has been one of the country's biggest aid donors.*
- DONOR + VERB **give sth, make a donation, pledge sth** *Donors pledged a total of $1 000 million in relief aid.*
- DONOR + NOUN **country, government** *loans from rich donor countries to developing nations*

doom *noun*

- ADJ. **approaching, impending**
- VERB + DOOM **spell** *Fuel shortages spelt the doom of such huge gas-guzzling cars.*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of doom** *As I approached the exam room, I had a feeling of impending doom.*

doomed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **inevitably** | **ultimately**
- PREP. **to** *The species was doomed to extinction.*
- PHRASES **doomed to disappointment/extinction/failure** *The project was doomed to failure from the start.*

door *noun*

- ADJ. **open** | **closed, shut** | **locked, unlocked** | **ajar, half-open** *He had left the door ajar.* ◇ *The door was half-open when we got there.* | **back, front, rear, side** *the back door of a house* ◇ *the rear door of a car* | **inner, internal** *The inner door leads to the safe and is always locked after 5 p.m.* | **external, outer** *All external doors should be bolted top and bottom.* | **big, great, heavy, huge, massive, solid, stout, thick** *She had trouble pushing the heavy door open.* | **narrow, wide** | **glass-panelled, glazed** | **double** *Go along the corridor and through the double doors.* | **unmarked** | **automatic, folding, revolving, sliding, swing** *He got stuck in a revolving door.* ◇ *She pushed her way through the swing doors.* | **bathroom, flat, kitchen, etc.** | **car, fridge, garage, lift, stage** | **trap** (also **trapdoor**) | **magic, mysterious, secret**
- VERB + DOOR **fling/throw open, open, pull/push open** *He flung the door open and caught them stuffing a document back into a briefcase.* | **bang, close, pull closed/shut, pull/push to, push closed/shut, shut, slam (shut)** *He pulled the door to.* | **bar, bolt, lock** *He arrived home to find the door barred.* ◇ *Remember to bolt the door before you go to bed.* | **unbar, unbolt, unlock** | **keep/leave closed/open/shut, keep/leave on the latch** (= closed but not locked), **prop ajar/open** *I left the door on the latch so that I could sneak back in later.* ◇ *Someone had*

propped the fire door open with a pile of books. | **come/go in** (through), **come/go out** (of/through), **come/go through, slip out of/through** *He came in the side door.* | **bang on, knock at/on** *I banged on the door for ages but still couldn't wake them.* | **answer** *Go and answer the door* (= open the door to sb who has knocked on it). | **see sb to** (= accompany sb who is leaving to the door) | **break down/in** *They had to break the door down to get into the flat.*

• DOOR + VERB **creak** | **burst open, clatter open, creak** (**open**), **fly open, open, slide open, swing open/shut/to** *The door burst open and a little boy ran in.* | **flap open, hang open** *The car drove off with its rear door flapping open.* | **be/stand ajar, be/stand open** *The door stood ajar so I could see a narrow section of the room.* | **be closed/shut, be jammed** (**open/shut**), **be stuck** | **bang** (**open/shut**), **clang open/shut, crash open/shut, rattle, shake** *I was woken by a door banging in the wind.* | **click** (**shut/to**), **close, shut, slam** (**shut**) | **connect sth, face sth, lead to sth, open onto sth** *The door connecting the two offices is kept locked.* ◇ *This door leads to my bedroom.* ◇ *The door opens onto a sunny terrace.* | **be set in/into the wall** *I stopped at a low oak door set into the stone wall.* | **bear a notice/plate/sign, be marked sth** *I went through the door marked 'Enquiries'.*

• DOOR + NOUN **handle, knob** | **frame, jamb** | **knocker** | **bolt, catch, chain, latch, lock** | **key** | **mat** (also **doormat**) | **stop** (also **doorstop**) *This big fat dictionary would make a good doorstop.* | **mirror, panel, pillar** (on a car)

• PREP. **at the ~** *There's someone at the door.* **in the ~** *He stood in the door for several minutes before deciding whether he'd stay.* **through the ~** *He looked through the door to make sure the children were all right.* | **~ into/to** *the door into the back garden*

• PHRASES **close/shut, etc. the door behind you** *He banged the front door behind him as he left.* **hold/open the door for sb, pop/stick you head round/through the door** *She popped her head through the door to say goodbye.* **shut/slam the door in sb's face**

doorbell *noun*

• VERB + DOORBELL **press, ring** (**on**) | **answer** *He refused to answer the doorbell.*

• DOORBELL + VERB **ring, sound** *I heard the doorbell ring, and went to see who was there.*

• PHRASES **a ring at/on the doorbell**

doorway *noun*

• ADJ. **open** | **shop** *We sheltered in a shop doorway.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *A tall figure was standing in the doorway.* **through a/the ~** *We passed through the doorway and found ourselves in a walled garden.*

dope *noun*

• VERB + DOPE **smoke** | **peddle**

• DOPE + NOUN **fiend** | **scandal** | **peddler** | **test** *She was disqualified from competing for a year after failing a dope test.*

⇨ Note at DRUG

dosage *noun*

• ADJ. **high, low** | **correct, recommended**

• VERB + DOSAGE **give** (**sb**), **take** *Always take the correct dosage.* | **increase** | **reduce**

dose *noun*

• ADJ. **hefty, high, large, massive, strong** *a strong dose of painkillers* ◇ (*figurative*) *The film also contains a hefty dose of comedy.* | **low, small** | **correct** | **double, full, single, standard** | **daily, frequent** | **fatal, lethal** *a lethal dose of radiation*

• VERB + DOSE **receive, take** *patients who receive high doses of this drug* ◇ *I had forgotten to take my dose of antibiotic.* | **administer, give sb** *The nurse will administer the correct dose.* ◇ *She needs to be given a daily dose of the medicine.* | **increase** | **reduce**

double *verb*

• ADV. **more than** *Our profits have more than doubled this year.* | **almost, nearly, practically, virtually** *The price of houses has nearly doubled in the last ten years.* | **effectively** | **approximately, roughly**

• PREP. **in** *The village has approximately doubled in size since 1960.* **to** *The party almost doubled its share of the vote to 21.5%.*

double bass *noun*

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

doubt *noun*

• ADJ. **considerable, grave, real, serious, severe** | **slight** *Without the slightest doubt this is a remarkable exhibition.* | **gnawing, lingering, nagging, niggling** | **growing, increasing** | **personal, private** *He made clear his own private doubts about it.* | **reasonable** *We have established beyond all reasonable doubt that the painting was indeed by Rembrandt.* | **religious**

• VERB + DOUBT **arouse, raise** *His failure to appear raises serious doubts as to his reliability.* | **entertain, feel, harbour, have** *She still felt the same niggling doubt: was he really telling the truth?* | **express, voice** | **clear up, dispel, remove, resolve** *The announcement dispelled any doubts as to the prince's intentions.* | **cast, throw** *Her record of dismissals casts doubt on her ability to hold down a job.* | **call sth into, throw sth into** *The proposed development has been thrown into doubt by the decision.* | **be open to** *Their honesty is open to doubt.*

• DOUBT + VERB **appear, arise** *Doubts have arisen over the viability of the schedule.* | **exist** *Considerable doubt exists as to the precise origin of this custom.* | **persist, remain** | **surround sth** *From the start, doubts surrounded her claim to be the missing heiress.*

• PREP. **beyond** (**a/all/any**) **~** *The evidence proves beyond doubt that he is innocent.* **in ~** *The arrangements for the event still seemed to be in doubt.* ◇ *If in doubt, consult your doctor.* **without** (**a**) **~** *She is without a doubt the best tennis player I know.* | **~ about/over** *Some committee members still harboured doubts about the plans.*

• PHRASES **beyond/without a shadow of** (**a**) **doubt** *This proves without a shadow of doubt that we were right.* **have your doubts about sth** *They say they'll be here on time, but I have my doubts about that.*

doubt *verb*

• ADV. **seriously, very much** *I never seriously doubted his story.* | **privately** *Lee privately doubted the truth of this statement.*

doubtful *adj.*

1 feeling doubt

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** *Eric was far from sure and Marion looked doubtful.* | **become** | **remain**

• ADV. **extremely, very** | **a bit, a little, rather**

• PREP. **about** *She was rather doubtful about the wisdom of eating the two-day-old food.*

2 unlikely

• VERBS **be, look, seem** | **remain**

• ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *Even if we could go, which is highly doubtful, John wouldn't be able to come with us.* | **increasingly** | **a bit, a little, rather, somewhat**

dough *noun*

- ADJ. **firm | soft | smooth | sticky | bread, pizza**
- QUANT. **ball, lump, piece**
- VERB + DOUGH **make | knead, shape** *Knead the dough lightly, then shape it into a round loaf.* **| roll out, turn out** *Turn the dough out onto a lightly floured surface.*
- DOUGH + VERB **rise** *Leave the dough to rise.*

downfall *noun*

- ADJ. **eventual, ultimate**
- VERB + DOWNFALL **bring about, cause, lead to** *a scandal that brought about his downfall* **| contribute to, hasten** *The failure of this scheme contributed to her eventual downfall.* **| plot** *They were found guilty of plotting the downfall of the government.*
- DOWNFALL + VERB **come** *The movement's downfall came with the failed coup d'état.*
- PHRASES **be sb's downfall** *His greed was eventually his downfall.*

downpour *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy, torrential | continuous, incessant, relentless, steady | sudden**
- PREP. **in ~** *We got caught in a torrential downpour.*

downturn *noun*

- ADJ. **serious, severe, sharp, significant | mild, slight | economic**
- VERB + DOWNTURN **experience, suffer** *The building industry is experiencing a severe downturn in its workload.* **| see, witness**
- PREP. **~ in** *The 1990s witnessed a sharp downturn in the party's fortunes.*

dowry *noun*

- ADJ. **large, substantial | small**
- VERB + DOWRY **give sb, pay (sb) | bring** *His family hoped that his bride would bring a large dowry.*
- DOWRY + NOUN **system**

doze *noun*

- VERB + DOZE **have** *She had a little doze after lunch.* **| drift into, fall into** *Sitting in an armchair in front of the fire, I soon fell into a doze.*

doze *verb*

- ADV. **fitfully** *I dozed fitfully for a few hours.*

draft *noun*

- ADJ. **early, first, initial, original, preliminary | rough | final**
- VERB + DRAFT **draw up, prepare, produce, write** *She produced an initial draft of her plans.* **| approve** *The preliminary draft of the agreement has been approved.*
- DRAFT + NOUN **agreement, bill, budget, constitution, contract, document, law, legislation, letter, plan, proposal, report, treaty**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *These details were not included in the preliminary draft.*
- PHRASES **in draft form** *The document is still in draft form.*

draft *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, properly | badly, poorly** *Some of the clauses in the contract had been very poorly drafted.*

drain *noun*

1 pipe/hole that dirty water goes down

- ADJ. **blocked**
- VERB + DRAIN **block | clear, unblock | lay** *They were busy laying the drains for the new houses.*

2 sth that uses up time/money/resources

- ADJ. **heavy, major, serious | brain** *scientists joining the brain drain* (= moving to a country where they can work in better conditions and earn more)
- PREP. **~ on** *These losses have been a major drain on the company's resources.*

drain *verb*

1 make sth empty/dry

- ADV. **thoroughly, well** *Remove the artichokes, drain thoroughly and allow to cool.* ◇ *well-drained soil*

2 make sb/sth weaker/poorer, etc.

- ADV. **totally, utterly | emotionally, physically | away** *draining away the country's coal reserves*
- PREP. **of** *His voice was utterly drained of emotion.*
- PHRASES **be/feel drained** *Sue felt exhausted and emotionally drained.*

drama *noun*

1 play/theatre

- ADJ. **powerful | classical, contemporary, modern | musical | radio, television/TV | costume, historical | courtroom, hospital, police** *Millions follow this hospital drama twice a week.*
- VERB + DRAMA **write** *It is very difficult to write good drama.* **| produce** *the first episode of a new police drama produced for television*
- DRAMA + NOUN **production | serial, series | festival | critic** *the drama critic for the 'Sunday Times'* **| school, training**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the actors in a drama* **| ~ about** *a powerful television drama about inner-city life*

⇨ Note at SUBJECT

2 exciting event

- ADJ. **human | real-life** *The actor was involved in a real-life drama when he was held up at gunpoint last night.*
- DRAMA + VERB **unfold** *a collection of people watching the drama unfold outside the nightclub*

3 excitement

- ADJ. **high**
- QUANT. **touch** *The argument added a touch of drama to an otherwise dull day.*
- VERB + DRAMA **be full of** *The afternoon was full of drama and excitement.* **| heighten** *The arrival of the police heightened the drama further.*
- PHRASES **a moment of drama**

dramatic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, sound**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, intensely, very | fairly, quite, rather | suitably** *Her entrance was accompanied by suitably dramatic music.*

drape *verb*

- ADV. **casually, loosely | elegantly | beautifully** *Some silk fabrics will drape beautifully.*
- PREP. **across, around/round, over** *He sat with his arm draped casually around her shoulders.*
- PHRASES **be draped in/with sth** *The body was draped in a blanket.*

draught *noun*

- ADJ. **cold, icy** *A cold draught of air blew in from the open window.*

- VERB + DRAUGHT **create | prevent**
- DRAUGHT + VERB **blow, come, whistle** *a draught coming under the door*
- DRAUGHT + NOUN **excluder, proofing** *Fit draught excluders to the bottoms of doors.*
- PREP. **~ from** *the draught from the window*
- PHRASES **a draught of air**

draw *noun*

- ADJ. **goalless, one-all, three-three, etc.**
- VERB + DRAW **end in** *The game ended in a two-all draw.* | **earn, get, hold sb to** *San Marino held them to a goalless draw.*
- PREP. **~ against, ~ with** *their 1–1 draw with United*

draw *verb*

1 make pictures

- ADV. **accurately, beautifully, carefully, clearly, well** *a beautifully drawn picture ◇ He draws very well.* | **badly, crudely, roughly** *a crudely drawn child's face*

2 pull

- ADV. **half, partly** *The blinds were partly drawn.* | **back** *She drew back the curtains and let the sunlight in.* | **up | aside, to one side** *I tried to draw him aside so I could talk to him in private.* | **together** *(figurative) The project enables students to draw together their knowledge, skills and experience.*
- PREP. **onto** *She drew me onto the balcony* **out of** *He drew the cork out of the bottle.* **to** *I drew my chair up to the fire.* **towards**

3 attract

- ADV. **immediately | inevitably, inexorably, irresistibly** *Her gaze was drawn irresistibly to the scene outside.*
- PREP. **from** *The scheme has drawn interest from local businessmen.* **to** *We asked the surfing champion what first drew him to the sport.*

PHRASAL VERBS

draw on/upon sth

- ADV. **heavily** *The novelist draws heavily on her personal experiences.*

draw sth up

- ADV. **professionally, properly** *Make sure the contract is properly drawn up.*

drawback *noun*

- ADJ. **big, main, major, real, serious | minor, slight | obvious | possible, potential**
- VERB + DRAWBACK **have (its/their), suffer from** *This strategy has its drawbacks. ◇ The system suffers from two major drawbacks.* | **overcome** *We have to find ways of overcoming these drawbacks.*
- PREP. **~ to** *Bad weather was the main drawback to camping in the far north.* **~ with** *The one big drawback with the planned scheme was its high cost.*

drawer *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, shallow** *a desk with two deep drawers either side* | **open | locked | bottom, middle, top | kitchen | desk, dresser, dressing table | cash, cutlery, filing | secret**
- VERB + DRAWER **open, pull open/out, slide open** *She pulled open the second drawer down to find the money had gone.* | **close, push in/shut, shut** *He pushed the drawer shut with a bang.* | **reach into** *She reached into the drawer and found the key to the safe.* | **go through, look through, ransack, rummage in/through** *What do you think you are doing, rummaging through my drawers?*
- PREP. **from/out of a/the ~** *She took the gun from the drawer.* **in a/the ~** *He put the letters in the drawer.*

drawing *noun*

- ADJ. **charcoal, ink, line, pencil** *a set of charcoal drawings by a local artist* | **scale** *a scale drawing of a jumbo jet* | **engineering, technical, working** *a working drawing of the proposed power station* | **life** *He earned money modelling for life drawing classes.*
- VERB + DRAWING **do, make** *He made a drawing of how the Roman villa must have looked.*
- DRAWING + VERB **show sth** *The drawing shows the Market Square.*
- DRAWING + NOUN **board** *These days, designers spend more time at the computer than at the drawing board.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The door opened onto a courtyard, as shown in the drawing.* | **~ by** *a pencil drawing by Picasso*

⇨ Note at ART

drawl *noun*

- ADJ. **flat, nasal, slow, soft | Brooklyn, Southern, etc.**
- PHRASES **in a ~** *'Howdy, pardner,' he said in his slow Texan drawl.* **with a ~** *She spoke with soft Southern drawl.*

drawl *verb*

- ADV. **lazily, sardonically, slowly, softly** *'Come in,' he drawled softly.*

dread *noun*

- ADJ. **great, mortal** *Her greatest dread was that she would lose her job.* | **constant**
- VERB + DREAD **feel, have** *He had a dread of hospitals. ◇ the dread she felt at the thought of meeting him again* | **live in** *He lived in constant dread that one day he might be found out.* | **fill sb with** *Does the thought of flying fill you with dread?*
- PREP. **in ~ of** *After her shoplifting spree she lived in mortal dread of being found out.* | **~ of** *her dread of discovery*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of dread**

dread *verb*

- ADV. **absolutely** *I've got to go and tell the headmaster tomorrow and I'm absolutely dreading it!* | **rather | always** *He had always dreaded being singled out.*

dreadful *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, smell, sound, taste** *Poor thing! You look absolutely dreadful!* (= very ill)
- ADV. **really** *I feel really dreadful about letting you down.* | **absolutely, quite, truly** *To be honest, her singing was quite dreadful. ◇ a truly dreadful hat* | **pretty, rather**
- PREP. **for** *It must have been dreadful for you!*

dream *noun*

1 while you are asleep

- ADJ. **awful, bad, disturbing, strange** *a child frightened by a bad dream* | **pleasant | vivid | recurrent | erotic, wet | prophetic** *He had a prophetic dream about a train crash the night before the rail disaster.*
- VERB + DREAM **dream, have** *She fell asleep and dreamed strange dreams. ◇ I had a very disturbing dream last night.* | **awake/wake from, be awoken/woken from** *I was awoken from my dream by a knock at the door.* | **interpret | haunt** *Images of the crash still haunted his dreams years later.*
- DREAM + VERB **come true** *I hope my dream about prison won't come true!* | **haunt sb** *vivid dreams that regularly haunted him*
- DREAM + NOUN **interpretation**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *In her dream, she was on board a ship heading for America.* | **~ about** *a recurrent dream about being late for an exam*
- PHRASES **as (if) in a dream** *She found herself standing*

in front of the crowded hall and making her speech, as if in a dream. **sweet dreams** *'Sweet dreams,' she said, turning off the light.*

2 sth that you want very much to happen

- ADJ. **big, great** *Her biggest dream was to become a singer.* | **lifelong** | **distant** *His plans to travel the world now seemed like a distant dream.* | **impossible** *Peace no longer seemed an impossible dream.* | **utopian** | **romantic** *She had this romantic dream of living in a windmill.*
- VERB + DREAM **cherish, have** *the great utopian dream that they have cherished for so long* | **achieve, fulfil, realize** *At last his dreams were fulfilled.* | **shatter** *The injury shattered her dream of running in the Olympics.* | **keep alive** *The victory keeps San Marino's dream of a World Cup place alive.*
- DREAM + VERB **come true** *He put all his efforts into making his dream of a united country come true.* | **turn into a nightmare, turn sour** *Their dream turned into a nightmare as the cruise ship began to sink.*
- DREAM + NOUN **holiday, home, house** *After Betty retired, she and her husband designed and built their dream house.* | **world** *The government is living in a dream world if they think voters will agree to higher taxes.*
- PREP. **~ of** *their dream of a fairer world*
- PHRASES **the … of sb's dreams** *the house of her dreams* **beyond sb's wildest dreams** *They achieved a success beyond their wildest dreams.* **a dream come true** *Their holiday in the Bahamas was a dream come true.*

dream *verb*

- ADV. **always** *As a child she always dreamt of working with animals.* | **never** *I never dreamt I'd actually get the job.* | **still** | **long** *People have long dreamt of an egalitarian society.* | **just, only** *It was the kind of trip most of us can only dream about.*
- VERB + DREAM **wouldn't** *I wouldn't dream of going without you* (= I would never go without you).
- PREP. **about, of**

dress *noun*

1 piece of clothing

- ADJ. **ankle-length, full-length, long** | **short** | **skimpy** | **clinging, figure-hugging, tight, tight-fitting** | **loose-fitting, shapeless** | **full-skirted** | **backless, high-necked, low-cut, off-the-shoulder, revealing, sleeveless, strapless** | **slinky** | **cotton, silk, etc.** | **day, evening, Sunday** | **ball, cocktail, dinner, maternity, party, wedding**
- VERB + DRESS **zip (up)** | **unzip** | **hitch up, lift, pull up** *She hitched up her long dress so it wouldn't drag in the mud.* | **pull down** | **smooth** *She sat down and smoothed her dress over her legs.*
- DRESS + NOUN **material** | **shop** | **designer** | **size**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She appeared in a slinky satin dress.*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

2 clothes for either men or women

- ADJ. **ceremonial, formal** | **casual, informal** | **correct** | **evening** | **modern** | **period** | **national, traditional** *He was wearing traditional Scottish dress.* | **fancy** | **battle, military** | **civilian**
- DRESS + NOUN **code** *The club has a strict dress code.* | **sense** *He's got poor dress sense.* | **shirt** | **uniform** *in full dress uniform*
- PREP. **in … ~** *a performance of 'Hamlet' in modern dress*

dress *verb*

1 put on clothes

- ADV. **hurriedly, quickly** | **slowly** | **carefully**
- PREP. **in** *He dressed carefully in the brown suit he had been married in.*
- PHRASES **be fully dressed** *She lay down on her bed, fully dressed.* **get dressed** *She got dressed quickly.*

2 wear clothes

- ADV. **beautifully, elegantly, fashionably, immaculately, impeccably, neatly, nicely, smartly, well** *Susan always dresses very elegantly.* ◇ *She was determined to be the best dressed woman at the wedding.* | **badly, poorly, shabbily** | **appropriately, suitably** | **unsuitably** | **decently, properly, respectably** | **improperly** | **plainly, simply, soberly** | **ostentatiously, nattily, richly** | **casually** | **formally** | **expensively** | **warmly** | **scantily** | **identically** *The twins were dressed identically.*
- PREP. **for** *I have to dress smartly for work.* **in** *The women were all dressed in blue skirts and white blouses.*

dressing *noun*

1 covering put on a wound

- ADJ. **clean, fresh, sterile** | **surgical, wound**
- VERB + DRESSING **apply, put on** *Clean the wound and put on a fresh dressing.* | **change** | **remove**

2 sauce for food, especially salads

- ADJ. **salad** | **French** | **herb** | **vinaigrette**
- PREP. **in a ~, with a ~** *salad with a vinaigrette dressing* | **~ for** *a herb dressing for fish*

drift *noun*

1 slow movement towards sth

- ADJ. **gradual, slow**
- PREP. **~ (away) from** *the drift of people away from rural areas into urban slums* **~ (back) to** *As the strike went on, there was a gradual drift back to work.* **~ into** *his drift into crime* **~ towards**

2 general meaning of sth

- ADJ. **general, main**
- VERB + DRIFT **catch, follow, get** *I didn't follow the speech exactly, but I caught the main drift of what was being said.* | **lose** *I lost the drift of what she was saying.*

3 pile of snow/sand made by the wind

- ADJ. **deep, great** | **sand, snow** (also **snowdrift**)

drift *verb*

1 be carried along by the wind/water

- ADV. **slowly** | **helplessly** *Cold and hungry, they drifted helplessly towards the Arctic.* | **downriver, downstream, downwind** *The boat drifted slowly downstream.* | **along, back, down, out**
- PREP. **from, to, towards, etc.** *drifting out to sea*

2 move slowly/without purpose

- ADV. **aimlessly** | **slowly** | **quietly, silently** | **about, around/round, apart, away, back, down, off, up** *Voices drifted up through the floorboards.*
- VERB + DRIFT **begin to** | **seem to** | **allow sth to** *He allowed his thoughts to drift back to his conversation with Carrie.*
- PREP. **about/around/round** *He spent the day drifting aimlessly about the house.* **across** *She drifted across the room to where we were standing.* **between** *She began to drift between sleep and wakefulness.* **from** *We seem to be drifting away from the point.* **in, into** *He drifted into teaching, but never really enjoyed it.* **out of** *He drifted in and out of consciousness.*

drink *noun*

- ADJ. **cold, cool, iced, refreshing** *I could do with a nice cool drink.* | **hot, warm** | **milky** | **fizzy** | **low-alcohol, non-alcoholic, reduced-alcohol, soft** | **alcoholic** | **stiff, strong** | **diet, low-calorie** | **long** *She took a long drink of cold water.* | **celebratory** | **welcome** *You will be offered a welcome drink on arrival at the hotel.* | **farewell** | **early-**

evening, lunchtime | **leisurely** *We were enjoying a leisurely drink before dinner.* | **quick** | **quiet**
• QUANT. **round** *We ordered a round of drinks while waiting for a table.*
• VERB + DRINK **drink, have** *I'll just drink my drink then we can go.* ◇ *She had a hot drink and went to bed.* | **sip** | **down, finish, knock back** *He knocked back his drink in one go and ordered another one.* | **take** *He took a drink of his beer and sat down.* | **go for** *Would you like to go for a drink after work?* | **buy (sb), get (sb), offer (sb), order (sb)** *Can I buy you a drink?* | **pour (sb), serve (sb)** *He poured himself a stiff drink to calm his nerves.* | **spike** *The robbers spiked his drink before taking his wallet and passport.* | **drive sb to** *Her money problems drove her to drink* (= made her start drinking a lot of alcohol). | **turn to** *After his wife died, he turned to drink.*
• DRINK + NOUN **drinks party** *We've been invited to a drinks party.* | **drinks cabinet/cupboard** *She took a bottle from the drinks cabinet.* | **problem** *She suspected her boss had a drink problem.*
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *Do you want ice in your drink?* | **~ of** *I'll have a drink of milk, please.*

drink *verb*

1 take liquid into the body
• ADV. **greedily** *I pulled the ring-top from the can and drank greedily.* | **down, up** *He filled a cup with water and drank it down in one gulp.* ◇ *Drink up, and let's go home.*
• VERB + DRINK **get yourself sth to, find sth to, have sth to** *Go and get yourself something to eat and drink.*
• PREP. **from** *He drank from a tumbler.* | **through** *drinking lemonade through a straw*
• PHRASES **eat and drink**

2 drink alcohol
• ADV. **excessively, heavily, to excess, too much** *He's been drinking heavily since he lost his job.* | **in moderation, moderately, sensibly** *One way of persuading people to drink sensibly is to provide good-tasting alternatives with less alcohol.* | **steadily** *She had been drinking steadily since the early morning.*
• PHRASES **drink and drive** *The campaign aims to persuade people not to drink and drive.* **drink like a fish** (= drink a lot) *Simon was drinking like a fish that evening.* **drink yourself to death** *He knew thot he was probably drinking himself to death.*

drinker *noun*

• ADJ. **habitual, hard, heavy** *This liver condition is common in heavy drinkers.* | **moderate** | **problem** *help for the families and friends of problem drinkers* | **social** *She is a social drinker only—she never drinks at home.* | **beer, coffee, tea, etc.** *I'm not a big tea drinker.*

drinking *noun*

• ADJ. **excessive, heavy** *the health problems associated with heavy drinking* | **moderate** | **underage** *new measures aimed at preventing underage drinking*
• VERB + DRINKING **cut down on, limit** *His doctor had advised him to limit his drinking.*
• DRINKING + NOUN **session** | **companion**
• PHRASES **a bout of drinking**

drip *noun*

1 water dripping
• ADJ. **slow, steady**
• PREP. **~ of** *the steady drip of water from the tap*

2 drop of water that falls down from sb/sth
• VERB + DRIP **catch** *There were buckets to catch the drips from the ceiling.*
• DRIP + VERB **fall** *Drips fell from the roof of the cave.*
• PREP. **~ from** *drips from the tap*

3 medical equipment
• ADJ. **intravenous** | **saline**
• VERB + DRIP **fix up, set up** | **be attached to, be on** *He is on a saline drip.* | **attach sb to, put sb on** | **take sb off** *He was taken off his drip last night.*

drive *noun*

1 car journey
• ADJ. **long** | **easy, short** | **eight-hour, sixty-mile, etc.** | **leisurely** | **pleasant, scenic** *It's a pleasant drive to the coast.* | **test**
• VERB + DRIVE **go for, take** *Let's go for a drive.*
• PREP. **within a ~** *All my family live within an hour's drive.*
• PHRASES **a … drive away** *The lakes are only a short drive away.*

2 way a vehicle is moved
• ADJ. **all-wheel, four-wheel, front-wheel, rear-wheel** | **left-hand, right-hand** *Left-hand drive cars make driving in Britain difficult.*

3 path/road outside a house
• ADJ. **sweeping, winding** | **gravel/gravelled** | **tree-lined** | **private** | **front**
• DRIVE + VERB **sweep, swing** *A gravel drive swept between manicured lawns.*
• PREP. **down the ~, in the ~, on the ~** *There was a car parked on the drive.* **up the ~** *He walked up the front drive of the vicarage.*

4 energy/determination
• ADJ. **competitive** | **personal** | **narrative** *A lack of narrative drive leaves the reader with piecemeal vignettes.*
• VERB + DRIVE **have** | **lack** *He lacks the competitive drive needed to succeed.*

5 desire/need
• ADJ. **innate, inner, instinctive/instinctual** | **creative** | **emotional, sex/sexual**

6 effort
• ADJ. **big** | **relentless** | **national, nationwide** | **cost-cutting, efficiency, export, fundraising, marketing, membership, modernization, recruitment, sales** | **anti-corruption, anti-drug, etc.**
• VERB + DRIVE **launch** *We're going to launch a big recruitment drive in the autumn.*
• PREP. **~ against** *a drive against corruption* **~ by** *the recent recruitment drive by the police* **~ for** *the country's drive for modernization* **~ towards** *a drive towards higher safety standards*

7 computing
• ADJ. **CD-ROM, disk, DVD, floppy, hard, zip**

8 in sport
• ADJ. **powerful, strong, thunderous** | **angled, crisp** | **left-foot, right-foot** (in football) *Cole scored with a thunderous left-foot drive.* | **backhand, forehand** (in tennis) *a forehand drive down the line*
• VERB + DRIVE **hit** | **hook, slice** (in golf)
⇨ Special page at SPORT

drive *verb*

• ADV. **fast, quickly** *You shouldn't drive so fast!* ◇ *She drove quickly back to the office.* | **slowly** | **carefully** | **recklessly** *He was arrested for driving recklessly.* | **around, away, back, off, on** *She got into the car and drove away.*
• PREP. **from, to** *driving from London to Manchester*
• PHRASES **drink and drive**

driver *noun*

• ADJ. **careful, good, safe** | **bad, dangerous, reckless** | **drunk/drunken, hit-and-run** *He was killed by a drunken driver.* | **experienced, inexperienced** | **learner** *Learner*

drivers are not allowed on the motorways. | **racing, rally | ambulance, bus, cab, car, coach, engine, lorry, tanker, taxi, train, truck, van**
⇨ Note at JOB

driving *noun*

• ADJ. **good, safe** *a new campaign to promote safe driving* | **aggressive, bad, careless, dangerous, reckless** *She was charged with reckless driving.* | **drink, drunk, drunken** *Police stopped 30 motorists for drink driving on New Year's Eve.*
• VERB + DRIVING **be banned from, be disqualified from** *He was banned from driving for six months after failing a breath test.*
• DRIVING + NOUN **seat | instructor, lesson | test | offence | charge** *There wasn't enough evidence for a dangerous driving charge.* | **ban** *She was given a large fine and a two-year driving ban.*

driving licence *noun*

• ADJ. **current | clean | full | provisional**
• VERB + DRIVING LICENCE **have, hold | lose**

drizzle *noun*

• ADJ. **fine, light, thin | steady | patchy**
• DRIZZLE + VERB **fall** *Light drizzle fell all afternoon.*
• PREP. **in/through a/the ~** *We walked home through the drizzle.*

drone *noun*

• ADJ. **faint | low | distant | constant, continuous, steady**
• VERB + DRONE **hear**
• PREP. **with a ~** *The planes flew overhead with a low drone.* | **~ of** *the continuous drone of the engine*

drop *noun*

1 reduction
• ADJ. **big, considerable, dramatic, huge, large, massive, significant, substantial | slight, small | rapid, sharp, sudden | steady | catastrophic**
• VERB + DROP **suffer** *The restaurant has suffered a big drop in trade.* | **cause, lead to**
• PREP. **~ in** *The glut of coffee led to a sharp drop in prices.*
2 vertical distance down from a place
• ADJ. **sheer, steep, vertical** *The cliff plunged in a sheer drop down to the beach.* | **long**
3 small round mass of liquid
• DROP + VERB **fall** *Great drops of rain started to fall.* | **roll down sth**
• PREP. **~ of** *Large drops of sweat rolled down her face.*

drop *verb*

1 allow sth to fall
• ADV. **accidentally, carelessly | almost, nearly | promptly** *He saw Emma and promptly dropped his tray of drinks.*
• PREP. **in/into, on/onto** *I accidentally dropped my glasses into the water.*
2 jump/move downwards
• ADV. **heavily | gently, lightly | quickly | limply, uselessly** *His arms dropped uselessly to his sides.* | **down, open** *Her mouth dropped open in disbelief.*
• VERB + DROP **let sth** *She smiled and let her eyes drop again.* | **be/feel ready to** *I feel ready to drop* (= because I am so tired).
• PREP. **into, onto, to** *He dropped lightly down onto the lawn beneath.*
• PHRASES **drop like a stone** (*figurative*) *Her heart dropped like a stone at this news.*
3 become lower
• ADV. **considerably, dramatically, drastically, sharply, significantly** *The price of oil has dropped significantly.* | **slightly | fast, rapidly | steadily | further**
• VERB + DROP **be likely/unlikely to** *Sales are likely to drop further.*
• PREP. **below** *The temperature rarely drops below 30°C.* **by** *The price has dropped by 15 per cent.* **from, to** *The number of children in the class has dropped from 25 to 18.*
4 slope downwards
• ADV. **sharply, steeply | away**
• PREP. **into/to/towards** *The land dropped steeply away into a small valley.*
5 no longer include sb in sth
• ADV. **quietly**
• PREP. **from** *He has been quietly dropped from the England team.* **in favour of**
6 stop doing sth/be stopped
• ADV. **quietly** *The subject was quietly dropped.* | **suddenly** *He suddenly dropped his habitual banter.* | **eventually, finally | altogether** *When nobody volunteered, the idea was finally dropped altogether.*
• VERB + DROP **let sth** *Can't we just let the matter drop?* | **agree to, decide to** *Both countries have agreed to drop border controls.*
• PREP. **in favour of** *The formal grade of Geologist was dropped in favour of Scientific Officer.*

drought *noun*

• ADJ. **severe, terrible, worst** *It has been the worst drought in the country's history.* | **long, prolonged | summer**
• VERB + DROUGHT **have** *England has had several summer droughts in recent years.* | **cause | break** *A week of good rains has broken the drought.*
• DROUGHT + VERB **affect sth** *Large areas of Africa are affected by severe drought.*
• DROUGHT + NOUN **conditions**
• PREP. **during/in ~** *Some of the newer plants in the garden died during the drought.*
• PHRASES **in times of drought, months/years of drought**

drug *noun*

1 substance used as a medicine
• ADJ. **powerful, strong | modern, new | wonder** *They're hailing it as the new wonder drug.* | **sedative | anti-cancer, anti-inflammatory, anti-malarial, etc. | prescription** *You used to be able to buy this medicine over the counter, but it is now a prescription drug.*
• QUANT. **course, dose**
• VERB + DRUG **be on, take** *Are you taking any other drugs at present?* | **prescribe (sb), put sb on** *The doctor put me on anti-inflammatory drugs.* | **give sb, treat sb with | administer, give sb** *The nurses came round to give the patients their drugs.* | **develop** *new drugs that have been developed recently* | **be resistant to, not respond to** *Some infections are now resistant to drugs.*
• DRUG + VERB **cure sth, help sth, treat sth** *drugs that help the growth of skin tissue*
• DRUG + NOUN **company**
• PREP. **~ against** *a powerful drug against tuberculosis* **~ for** *He's taking drugs for depression.*
2 illegal substance
• ADJ. **illegal | addictive, hallucinogenic | dangerous, hard** *heroin and other hard drugs* | **soft** (= not considered very dangerous) *Many addicts start on soft drugs, such as cannabis.* | **designer** (= artificially produced) *She took a tablet of the designer drug Ecstasy.*
• VERB + DRUG **inject** (See note for more verbs.)
• DRUG + NOUN **baron, pusher | cartel | misuse |**

drug/drugs charges, offence | **squad** | **war** *the latest moves in the drug war* (See note for more nouns.)

• PHRASES **drink and drugs** *the dangers of drink and drugs*

NOTE

Illegal Drugs

do (*informal*), **experiment with, take, try, use~**
The minister confessed to having experimented with cannabis in her youth.

be/get high on~
They committed the crime while high on drugs.

be addicted to, be dependent on, be/get hooked on, be on (*informal*)**~**
He seemed to be on acid most of the time.

be/come off~
He's tried several times to come off cocaine.

possess~
arrested on charges of possessing narcotics

deal (in), sell, smuggle, supply, traffic (in)~
The country imposes the death penalty for trafficking in marijuana.

seize~
The heroin seized has an estimated street value of £600 000.

~abuse, addiction, consumption, use
Cannabis consumption has increased sharply.

~habit, problem
She allegedly has a $500-a-day coke habit.

~overdose
Heroin overdose is a major cause of death among heroin users.

~addict, user

~dealer, trafficker, smuggler

~production, smuggling, trade, trafficking
The authorities have been accused of active involvement in the narcotics trade.

addiction to, dependence on, use of~
the use of cocaine

trade in~
measures to combat the trade in narcotics

drum *noun*

• ADJ. **bass, kettle, side, snare**

• VERB + DRUM **bang, beat, hit**

• DRUM + NOUN **kit, machine** | **beat, pattern, rhythm, roll** | **major, majorette**

• PHRASES **a roll of drums**

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

drunk *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, sound** *I was beginning to feel very drunk.* | **get** *Harry went out and got drunk last night.* | **get sb, make sb** *Andrew decided to try and get Sharon drunk.* ◇ *The wine had made him drunk.*

• ADV. **blind, completely, extremely, hideously, hopelessly, horribly, really, roaring, very** *He came home blind drunk, as usual.* | **almost** (*often figurative*) *She was almost drunk with all these new impressions.* | **fairly, half, a little, pretty, quite, rather, slightly** *He was still half drunk.*

• PREP. **with** (*figurative*) *drunk with fatigue*

dry *verb*

• ADV. **carefully, completely, thoroughly** *Wait until the paint has completely dried.* ◇ *Always dry clothes thoroughly before you wear them again.* | **quickly** | **slowly** | **naturally** | **off, out** *We left the wood in the shed to dry out.*

• VERB + DRY **allow sth to, leave sth to, let sth** *It's best to let your hair dry naturally.*

PHRASAL VERB

dry up

1 become empty of water

• ADV. **completely** *It's been so hot this year that the pond has dried up completely.*

2 be no longer available

• ADV. **completely** *Funds have completely dried up.* | **virtually**

dry *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** | **become, get, go, run** *Come into the warm and get dry, both of you.* ◇ *Ruth felt her mouth go dry.* ◇ *The wells in most villages in the region have run dry.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Vaccine supplies started to run dry as the flu outbreak reached epidemic proportions.* | **keep, remain, stay** *We managed to keep dry by huddling in a doorway.* ◇ *There is every prospect of the weather remaining dry this week.* | **pat sb/sth, rub sb/sth, towel sb** *Rinse the mushrooms and pat dry.* ◇ *He towelled himself dry.* | **bleed sb, milk sb, squeeze sb, suck sb** (*all figurative*) *The big corporations are bleeding some of these small countries dry* (= taking all their money). | **keep sth** *This type of wound is best kept dry without a dressing.*

• ADV. **excessively, extremely, very** | **bone, completely, perfectly, quite, thoroughly, totally** *The river was bone dry.* ◇ *Make sure the paint is thoroughly dry.* | **almost, nearly** | **barely, hardly, scarcely** (*often figurative*) *The ink was scarcely dry on the ceasefire agreement before fighting broke out again.* | **mainly, mostly** *The day will start bright and mainly dry.* | **a bit, a little, rather, reasonably, relatively**

dubious *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem, sound** | **become**

• ADV. **distinctly, extremely, highly, very** *some highly dubious information* | **rather, somewhat** | **morally** *It sounds a morally dubious proposition.*

duck *noun*

• ADJ. **wild** | **plastic, rubber** *A rubber duck floated in the bath.* | **roast**

• QUANT. **flock, flotilla** (only used for ducks that are swimming) *A flotilla of ducks bobbed near the shore.*

• VERB + DUCK **feed** *Every afternoon they went to the park to feed the ducks.*

• DUCK + VERB **quack** | **paddle, swim** *The ducks paddled furiously towards the bread.* | **bob** | **dive** | **dabble** *Some species of duck dive for food, while others dabble for plants and insects near the surface.* | **waddle** *A family of ducks waddled along the river bank.* | **nest** | **migrate**

• DUCK + NOUN **breast** *Slice the duck breast and serve.* | **egg** | **pond**

duke *noun*

⇨ Note at PEER

dull *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** *The work gets a bit dull at times.* | **make sth** *The long lectures made the afternoon dull.* | **find sth**

• ADV. **deadly, extremely, stupefyingly, very** *The film was long and deadly dull.* | **a bit, a little, fairly, pretty, rather, somewhat** | **disappointingly**

dumb *adj.*

1 unable to speak

• VERBS **be** | **become, be struck** *They were struck dumb by some sort of shock.*

• PREP. **with** *She sat there, dumb with rage.*

• PHRASES **deaf and dumb**

2 stupid

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** *I'm sure my question sounded really dumb.* | **act, play** *I decided to act dumb.*

• ADV. **really, very | pretty, rather**

dump *noun*

• ADJ. **garbage, refuse, rubbish, waste** *cleaning up a toxic waste dump* | **nuclear**

• DUMP + NOUN **site** *Local residents have organized a protest against the planned dump site.*

• PREP. **at a/the ~** *Radioactive waste has been found at the dump.* **to a/the ~** *taking rubbish to the dump* | **~ for** *a new dump for nuclear waste*

dump *verb*

• ADV. **illegally** *The firm had illegally dumped toxic waste.* | **legally | unceremoniously** *They carried him down to the beach and dumped him unceremoniously in the freezing water.* | **at sea** *dumping sewage at sea* | **down** *He dumped the boxes down in the kitchen.*

duplicate *noun*

• VERB + DUPLICATE **make** *We made a duplicate of the key.*

• PREP. **in ~** *The contract is prepared in duplicate, so that both parties can sign it.*

duplicate *verb*

• ADV. **exactly** *The original experiment cannot be exactly duplicated.* | **simply** *I wanted to avoid simply duplicating work that had already been done.*

duplication *noun*

• ADJ. **unnecessary, wasteful** *Duties have been reassigned to avoid wasteful duplication of work.*

• VERB + DUPLICATION **avoid, eliminate, prevent, reduce** *The new procedures should reduce duplication of medical care and treatment.*

duration *noun*

• ADJ. **brief, short | long | indefinite | maximum | overall, total** *We took four trains, and the overall duration of the journey was 72 hours.* | **average, expected, likely** *the expected duration of the disease*

• PREP. **for the ~ (of)** *She stayed there for the duration of the journey.* **of … ~** *The next contract will be of shorter duration.* **throughout the ~ of** *This continued throughout the duration of their marriage.*

dusk *noun*

• ADJ. **approaching, gathering**

• DUSK + VERB **approach, fall, gather** *Dusk was falling as we drove home.*

• PREP. **after ~, at ~, before ~, in the ~** *The lamps twinkled in the gathering dusk.*

• PHRASES **from dawn to dusk**

dust *noun*

• ADJ. **fine | brick, coal, radioactive**

• QUANT. **cloud, layer** *The tractor came up the track in a cloud of dust.* ◇ *There was a layer of fine dust on the table.* | **particle, speck** *Remove any particles of dust on the surface of the paint.* ◇ *microscopic specks of dust*

• VERB + DUST **gather** *Her chess set lay on a shelf gathering dust.* | **be covered in/with**

• DUST + VERB **lie** *The dust now lay in a thick layer on her piano.*

• DUST + NOUN **cloud | particle | storm**

dustbin *noun*

• VERB + DUSTBIN **chuck sth in, dump sth in, throw sth in** *She chucked the mouldy potatoes in the dustbin.* | **go in** *These old shoes can go in the dustbin now.* | **be consigned to, be destined for** (*figurative*) *The politicians who lost the elections will be consigned to the dustbin of history.* | **empty** *How regularly are the dustbins emptied?* | **put out** *We put out the dustbins on a Wednesday morning before the van comes.*

• DUSTBIN + NOUN **bag, liner | lid | man** *The dustbin men forgot to empty our bin this morning.*

• PREP. **~ of** (*figurative*) *The pollution in this country makes it the dustbin of Europe.*

duty *noun*

1 sth that you have to do because it is right or expected

• ADJ. **contractual, legal, mandatory, statutory** *Retailers have a statutory duty to provide goods suitable for their purpose.* | **general, primary** *the general duty of the police to preserve the peace* | **professional | civic, public** *I feel it is my civic duty to vote.* | **patriotic | family, filial, parental | ethical, moral** *He felt it was his moral duty to help his neighbour.* | **absolute, bounden, fundamental, sacred, solemn** *I feel it's my bounden duty to try and help her.*

• VERB + DUTY **have, owe** (*law*) *You have a legal duty to take reasonable care.* ◇ *The railway company owes a duty of care to all its customers.* | **carry out, do, fulfil, meet, perform** *She put down the phone and went out, her duty done.* ◇ *She felt she had fulfilled her duty by providing him with a son.* | **fail in** *He had failed in his duty towards his daughter.* | **neglect, shirk** *I'd be shirking my duty if I didn't warn him.* | **assign, charge sb with, impose** *It was a duty imposed by her father.* | **assume, take on** *He took on the duty of maintaining the family home.*

• DUTY + VERB **call** *I wanted to stop and chat, but duty called and I went back to the office.*

• PREP. **under a/the ~** *You are under a statutory duty to keep accurate records.* | **~ of** *It's the duty of each and every one of us to do their best for the team.* ◇ *They have a duty of confidentiality.* **~ to, ~ towards** *They have a duty to their parents to work hard.*

• PHRASES **a breach of duty** *It was a clear breach of professional duty.* **do your duty** *I suppose we'd better do our duty and report the accident.* **do your duty by sb** *You feel that you have to do your duty by your children.* **be duty bound to do sth** *An employer is not duty bound to provide a reference when an employee leaves.* **(above and) beyond the call of duty** *The time he put in helping new recruits went beyond the call of duty.* **feel it your duty to do sth** *I felt it my duty to go to the police.* **in breach of a duty** (*formal*) *It was ruled that the injured man was in breach of his duty by not wearing the safety equipment provided.* **a sense of duty** *I did it out of a sense of duty.*

2 tasks that you do when you are at work

• ADJ. **light** *When I returned to work after my illness I was put on light duties.* | **onerous | day, night** *At 10.45 p.m. she reported for night duty.* | **beat, escort, guard, point, sentry** *Police usually do beat duty in pairs.* ◇ *The traffic lights were not working so there was a policeman on point duty.* | **daily, routine | official | administrative, professional, secretarial | domestic, household** *My household duties were not particularly onerous.* | **military**

• VERB + DUTY **have** *The members of staff each have their own duties.* | **carry out, discharge, do, perform** *She was unable to carry out her duties because she was too ill.* | **come on, go on, report for** *Colleagues became suspicious when he failed to report for duty.* | **come off, go off** *What time do you go off duty?* | **neglect, shirk** *He was accused of neglecting his professional duties.* | **resume, return to** *He leaves hospital tomorrow and is expected to resume his duties at the beginning of next month.* | **be released from** *Her son was released from duty in the army to visit her in* *hospital.* | **be relieved of, be suspended from** *When he failed to turn up for training, he was relieved of his duties as captain.*

- DUTY + NOUN **doctor, nurse, officer, pharmacist** *He went to the police station and spoke to the duty officer.*
- PREP. **off ~** *I'm off duty tomorrow night.* **on ~** *You're not allowed to drink alcohol on duty.*
- PHRASES **the execution/performance of your duties** *The company is liable if you are injured during the execution of your duty.*

3 tax

- ADJ. **heavy, high** *the heavy duty on cigarettes* | **low** | **customs, excise, export, import** *excise duty on spirits* | **alcohol, fuel, tobacco, etc.** *Tobacco duty is a major source of revenue for the government.* | **death**
- QUANT. **amount** *We tried to estimate the amount of duty we would have to pay.*
- VERB + DUTY **put on, slap on** *They are going to put duty on foreign cars.* | **take off** | **increase, put up, raise** *They're going to put up the duty on tobacco.* | **cut, lower, reduce** | **pay** | **avoid, evade** *They claim that the wine is for personal use and so evade the duty.* | **be liable to** *Perfume is liable to import duty.* **carry** *Cider carries duty at the lower rate.* | **be exempt from** *Beer for personal use is exempt from duty.*
- PREP. **in ~** *By changing its supplier, the company saved thousands of pounds in import duty.* | **~ on** *You have to pay duty on all electrical goods.*

duvet *noun*

- ADJ. **double, king-size, single** | **light, lightweight, thick, thin** | **warm**
- VERB + DUVET **pull** *She climbed into bed and pulled the duvet over her.* | **fling back, kick off, throw back** *He flung back the duvet and got out of bed.*
- DUVET + NOUN **cover**
- PREP. **beneath/under a/the ~** *He snuggled down under the warm duvet.*

dweller *noun*

- ADJ. **city, town, urban** | **country, rural** | **slum** *the poor slum dwellers of the capital city* | **cave, forest, hill**

dwelling *noun*

- ADJ. **permanent** | **private** | **family** | **human** *The building looked more like a doll's house than a human dwelling.* | **characterful, elegant**
- VERB + DWELLING **convert sth into** *an application to convert the old barn into a dwelling* | **occupy**
- DWELLING + NOUN **house, place**

dwindle *verb*

- ADV. **fast, quickly, rapidly** *Supplies of coal are dwindling fast.* | **gradually, slowly** | **steadily** | **away** *Membership of the club had dwindled away to nothing.*
- PREP. **to** *Profits slowly dwindled to nothing.*

dye *noun*

- ADJ. **fabric, food, hair, wood, etc.** | **chemical, synthetic** | **natural, plant, vegetable**
- PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *The cloth is then soaked in blue dye.*

dynamic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain** *The business has managed to change and remain dynamic.*
- ADV. **highly, truly** *These countries are characterized by highly dynamic economies.* | **fully** | **increasingly** | **essentially, fundamentally** *The process is essentially dynamic with ideas and feedback flowing both ways.*

dynamite *noun*

1 explosive

- QUANT. **stick**
- VERB + DYNAMITE **blow sth up with, use** *They used five tons of dynamite to blow up the rock.* | **detonate**
- DYNAMITE + VERB **explode**

2 sb/sth that causes great excitement/shock, etc.

- ADJ. **absolute, pure** | **political** *Don't mention the single currency—it's political dynamite.*

dynasty *noun*

- ADJ. **ancient** *Scotland's ancient dynasty* | **great** | **royal** | **ruling** *the ruling dynasties of the Visigoths*
- VERB + DYNASTY **establish, found** | **bring to an end, overthrow**
- DYNASTY + VERB **begin** | **come to an end, end** | **last, reign**
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *a porcelain figure made during the Tang dynasty* **from a/the ~** *bowls and pots from the twelfth dynasty* **under a/the ~** *The civil service was established under the previous dynasty.*
- PHRASES **the end/fall of a dynasty, the founder of a dynasty, a member of a dynasty, the rise of a dynasty** *the rise and fall of the Habsburg dynasty*

dysentery *noun*

- ADJ. **amoebic**
- QUANT. **attack** | **outbreak**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

Ee

eager *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become**
- ADV. **only too, really, very** *They were only too eager to help us.* | **increasingly | quite**
- PREP. **for** *We were eager for news.*

eagle *noun*

- EAGLE + VERB **circle, fly, soar | swoop | catch sth, prey on sth | nest | breed**
- EAGLE + NOUN **eye** *(figurative) The tiny error didn't escape the eagle eye of her boss.*

ear *noun*

1 part of the body

- ADJ. **left, right | inner, middle, outer | big, large | long** *a rabbit with long floppy ears* | **pointed/pointy | floppy | torn** *Blood from his torn ear was soaking his collar.* | **sharp** *His sharp ears had picked up the uncertainty in her voice.* | **trained** *To the trained ear the calls of these birds sound quite different.* | **listening** *In the silence everyone seemed to be aware of listening ears.* | **receptive, sympathetic** *She did not like the scheme, as she made clear every time she found a receptive ear* (= sb willing to listen). ◇ *The counsellor provided a sympathetic ear for students with problems.*
- VERB + EAR **plug** *He plugged his ears with tissue paper to drown out the music.* | **close, shut, stop** *At first I stopped my ears to what I did not want to hear.* | **strain** *I strained my ears to catch the conversation in the other room.* | **prick up** *The dog pricked up its ears.* | **flatten, lay back, put back** *A horse may show annoyance by putting its ears back.* | **pierce** *I've just had my ears pierced so I'm going to buy some earrings.* | **syringe** *He could hear much better after having his ears syringed.* | **echo in, ring in** *The voices buzzing all around echoed in her ears.* ◇ *He went home with the teacher's warning ringing in his ears.* | **hiss in, whisper (sth) in | reach** *If news of the break-in reaches the boss's ears, we're in trouble.*
- EAR + VERB **hear sth, pick sth up** *When the notes are played so close together the ear hears no space between them.* | **prick (up), twitch** *His ears pricked up when he heard his name mentioned.* | **be alert** *He waited in the darkness, his ears alert for the slightest sound.* | **strain** *She stood outside the room, her ears straining to hear what they were saying.* | **pop** *If you suck a sweet as the plane takes off it stops your ears popping.* | **ring** *The explosion set my ears ringing and even made me jump a bit.*
- EAR + NOUN **canal, drum, lobe | infection | plug, protector | flap, muffs** *She put on her ear muffs and went out into the snow.* | **wax**
- PREP. **in your ~** *'Taxi?' said a voice in my ear.*
- PHRASES **beam/grin/smile from ear to ear, can't believe your ears** *She actually apologized. I couldn't believe my ears!* **(drop/have) a word in sb's ear** *Drop a quiet word in her ear about it before it's too late.* **fall on deaf ears** *Their complaints about the poor service fell on deaf ears* (= were ignored). **for sb's ears alone** *I have a few words for your ears alone.* **keep your ears open** *I'll keep my ears open for a second-hand bike for you.* **music to sb's ears** *He arrived home hungry, and the noise of saucepans from the kitchen was music to his ears.* **turn a deaf ear to sth** *The teacher turned a deaf ear to the boy's swearing* (= ignored it). **with half an ear** *He listened to her with only half an ear as he watched TV.*

2 ability to recognize sounds

- ADJ. **fine, good**
- VERB + EAR **have**
- PREP. **by ~** *She usually plays the guitar by ear, rather than reading the music.* | **~ for** *He has a good ear for accents and can usually tell where a speaker comes from.*

earl *noun*

⇨ Note at PEER

early *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, really, very | a bit, fairly, a little, quite, rather, relatively** *I'm sorry I'm a bit early.* | **surprisingly** *These discoveries were made at a surprisingly early date.*
- PREP. **for** *It's a little early for lunch.* **in** *He discovered these pleasures early in life.*

earn *verb*

- ADV. **really** *'I feel I've really earned this,' she said, taking up her mug of tea.* | **deservedly, richly, rightly** *He deservedly earned the admiration of his colleagues.*
- VERB + EARN **have to, need to** *First you have to earn their respect.* | **seek to, try to**

earnings *noun*

- ADJ. **high | low, meagre | average | annual, hourly, weekly | gross, pre-tax, taxable | pensionable | after-tax, net** *Her net earnings last year were £15 000.*
- QUANT. **level** *Levels of earnings are still rising.*
- VERB + EARNINGS **have** *People with a university education tend to have higher earnings than those with a basic education.* | **calculate | declare** *You must declare all earnings to the tax office.* | **tax**
- PREP. **~ from** *Germany's earnings from exports rose by 2%.* **~ of** *annual earnings of £20 000*
- PHRASES **earnings-related** *an earnings-related pension scheme* **growth in earnings** *the growth in average earnings over the last ten years* **loss of earnings** *She is also claiming compensation for loss of earnings.*

⇨ Note at PER CENT (for more verbs)
⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

earphones *noun*

- ADJ. **radio**
- QUANT. **pair, set**
- VERB + EARPHONES **have on, wear | put on | remove, take off**
- PREP. **through ~** *She was listening to a personal stereo through earphones.*

earring *noun*

- ADJ. **dangling, dangly | drop, hoop/hooped, stud**
- QUANT. **pair** *She wore a pair of dangly earrings.*
- VERB + EARRING **have on, wear | clip on, put in/on | take off**

earth *noun*

1 the world

- VERB + EARTH **orbit** *satellites orbiting the earth*
- EARTH + VERB **orbit sth, revolve, rotate** *The earth orbits the sun.* ◇ *The earth revolves on its axis.*

- EARTH + NOUN **tremor** *Furniture fell over as the room was shaken by an earth tremor.* | **sciences**
- PREP. **above the ~** *We are flying at 30 000 feet above the earth.* **around/round the ~** *the moon's orbit around the earth* **on (the) ~** *The island was there before there was life on earth.* **to ~** *The astronauts were able to send the information back to earth.*
- PHRASES **the centre/surface of the earth, the earth's core/crust/mantle/surface, (the) planet earth**

2 soil

- ADJ. **bare** *The fields had been ploughed, and there was nothing but bare earth to be seen.* | **fertile** | **barren, infertile** | **soft** | **solid** | **damp, moist, wet** | **fresh, freshly-dug** | **loose** *I filled the pot with a handful of loose earth.* | **baked** *The sun beat down on the baked earth.* | **scorched** *The wreckage of the plane was scattered across the scorched earth.* | **chalky, sandy**
- QUANT. **clod, clump, lump** *My boots were caked in big clods of wet earth.*
- EARTH + NOUN **bank, mound** *I scrambled to the top of the steep earth bank.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *The plants must have their roots in the earth.* **under the ~** *in mines deep under the earth*

earthquake *noun*

- ADJ. **big, great, huge, major, massive, severe** | **minor, small**
- EARTHQUAKE + VERB **happen, hit sth, occur, strike (sth)** *The earthquake hit the city at two in the morning.* | **shake sth** *The earthquake shook buildings throughout the business district.* | **destroy sth, devastate sth, kill sb, leave sb homeless** | **measure sth** *an earthquake measuring 5.8 on the Richter scale*
- EARTHQUAKE + NOUN **zone**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The block of flats was destroyed in an earthquake.*
- PHRASES **the epicentre of an earthquake, the magnitude of an earthquake**

ease *noun*

- ADJ. **alarming, astonishing, consummate, great, remarkable** *I obtained the drugs with alarming ease.* | **comparative, relative** | **apparent** *I was surprised at the apparent ease with which he had got into the building.* | **contemptuous** *She returned her opponent's serve with contemptuous ease.* | **practised**
- PREP. **for ~ in** *The back of the garment is split for ease in walking.* **for ~ of** *The whole machine is designed for ease of use.* **with ~** *They passed the exam with ease.* | **~ of** *The car brings ease of access to the countryside.*

ease *verb*

1 make sth less painful/serious/difficult

- ADV. **considerably, greatly** *The situation would be considerably eased if more money were made available.* | **slightly, somewhat** | **gradually, slowly** | **away** *The pain in my leg gradually eased away.*
- VERB + EASE **help (to)** *The new road should help ease traffic problems.* | **begin to** *Tensions between the two countries are beginning to ease.* | **try to**

2 move carefully

- ADV. **carefully, gently** | **away, back, down, forward, etc.** *Jean eased back on the pillows and relaxed.*
- PREP. **away from, into** *He eased himself into the driving seat.* **out of** *She carefully eased the car out of the garage*

east *noun, adj.*

⇨ Note at DIRECTION

Easter *noun*

- ADJ. **early, late** *Easter is early this year.*
- VERB + EASTER **have, spend** *Have a good Easter.* ◇ *I prefer to spend Easter at home.* | **celebrate**
- EASTER + NOUN **egg** | **break, holiday/holidays, vacation** | **Day, weekend, Monday, Saturday, Sunday, week** | **festival** | **celebrations**
- PREP. **at ~** *Our next holiday is at Easter.* **for ~** *We usually go away for Easter.* **over ~** *The library is closed over Easter.*
- PHRASES **Happy Easter!, wish sb a happy Easter**

easy *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** *Life is getting easier for us.* | **remain** | **make sth** *These changes should make your job easier.* | **find sth** *I found the exam quite easy.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, very** | **enough, fairly, quite, rather, relatively** *It is easy enough to see how it happened.* | **incredibly, ridiculously, surprisingly** *The written test was ridiculously easy.*
- PREP. **for** *Writing is not easy for her.*
- PHRASES **all too easy** *It was all too easy to forget why we had been sent there.* **the easiest thing in the world** *It is the easiest thing in the world to blame your parents.* **be no easy task** *Contacting everyone was no easy task.* **quick and easy** *a book designed for quick and easy reference*

eat *verb*

- ADV. **well** *We ate very well most of the time* (= had lots of nice food). | **healthily, properly, sensibly** *trying to eat more healthily* ◇ *He had not eaten properly for days.* ◇ *She doesn't eat sensibly* (= doesn't eat food that is good for her). | **hungrily** | **sparingly** *Barton did not feel very hungry and ate sparingly.* | **up** *Come on, eat up your lunch.*
- VERB + EAT **get yourself sth to, find sth to, have sth to** *Have you got anything to eat?* | **have enough to** | **try and/to** *Try and eat something. It will do you good.*
- PHRASES **eat and drink** *Go and get yourself something to eat and drink.* **eat like a horse** (= eat a lot) *She's very thin but she eats like a horse!*

eater *noun*

- ADJ. **meat** | **big, good, great, hearty** *All my children are big eaters.* | **fussy, picky** *He eats anything—he's not a fussy eater.* | **healthy** | **compulsive** | **messy**

ebb *noun*

- ADJ. **strong**
- EBB + NOUN **tide** *They left the harbour on the ebb tide.*
- PREP. **against an/the ~** *It was difficult sailing upstream against a strong ebb.* **on an/the ~** *By this time, the tide was on the ebb.* ◇ *We floated away from the beach on the ebb.* **with an/the ~** *They went out to sea with the ebb.*
- PHRASES **the ebb and flow of the tide**

ebb *verb*

- ADV. **away** *He knew that his life was ebbing away.*
- VERB + EBB **begin to** *Her strength began to ebb.* | **seem to**

eccentric *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem** | **become, get** *The old lady was getting very eccentric.* | **consider sb, find sb, regard sb as** *We were definitely regarded as eccentric.*
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very, wildly** | **a bit, faintly, fairly, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** | **endearingly, engagingly** *his engagingly eccentric brother*

echo *noun*

- ADJ. **distant, faint** | **clear, distinct, strong** (*often figurative*) *There are distinct echoes of Elvis Presley in his* *vocal style.* | **hollow** | **returning** *The bat compares the sound of its cry with the sound of the returning echo.*

- VERB + ECHO **hear, listen for/to** *We could just hear a faint echo.* | **produce, send back, send out** *Their footsteps on the bare boards sent out hollow echoes.* | **find** (*figurative*) *The political upheavals find an echo in the art of the time.*
- ECHO + VERB **sound** *A faint echo sounded in the cave.* | **die (away)** *The echo slowly died away.* | **come back, return** *An echo came back from the walls of the building.*
- PREP. **~ from** *the echo from a brick wall*

echo *verb*

1 come back as an echo

- ADV. **faintly** | **loudly** | **eerily, strangely, weirdly** | **flatly, hollowly** *The sound echoed hollowly through the tall empty house.* | **still** | **back** *Their voices echoed back across the water.*
- VERB + ECHO **seem to**
- PREP. **across** *The protest seemed to echo across the room.* **around/round** *His voice echoed around the room.* **down** *Her footsteps echoed down the corridor.* **in** *Her screams still echoed in his ears.* **off** *The call echoed off the walls of the cave.* **through** *Laughter echoed through the house.* **with** *The great hall echoed with laughter.*

2 repeat/agree with sb/sth

- ADV. **exactly** | **faithfully, wholeheartedly** | **widely** *an opinion that is widely echoed in the tabloid press* | **clearly** | **merely, only, simply** *In his statement, the minister merely echoed the views of the chief police officer.* | **disbelievingly, incredulously** *'He's gone!' Viv echoed incredulously.*
- VERB + ECHO **seem to** *They had ideas which seem to echo our own.*

eclipse *noun*

- ADJ. **lunar, solar** | **partial, total** *a total lunar eclipse*
- PHRASES **an eclipse of the moon/sun**

ecology *noun*

- ADJ. **fragile** | **animal, human, marine, plant**
- VERB + ECOLOGY **damage, disrupt**
- ECOLOGY + NOUN **movement**

economical *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** *Solid fuel would be more economical.*
- ADV. **extremely, highly, remarkably, very** *This new oven is highly economical.* | **fairly, quite**
- PREP. **in** *This arrangement is more economical in its use of staff.* **of** *more economical of time and resources* **with** *This arrangement is more economical with space.*

economics *noun*

- ADJ. **applied, theoretical** | **classical, free-market, Keynesian, liberal, market, neo-classical, supply-side** | **business, development, environmental, health, industrial, welfare**
- PHRASES **a school of economics**

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

economist *noun*

- ADJ. **chief, leading, senior** | **distinguished, respected** | **academic, government, professional** | **classical, free-market, Keynesian, liberal, neo-classical** | **agricultural, business, development, environmental, health, political**

⇨ Note at JOB

economy *noun*

1 operation of a country's money supply

- ADJ. **booming, buoyant, dynamic, healthy, sound, stable, strong** | **ailing, depressed, flagging, fragile, stagnant, weak** *The government devalued the currency to try to revive the flagging economy.* | **advanced, developed, modern** | **agrarian, agricultural, capitalist, industrial, liberal, market, mixed, monetary, planned, rural, service-based, socialist** *a modern industrial economy* | **domestic, global, internal, international, local, national, world** *the increasingly competitive global economy* | **black, informal, underground** *The black economy booms when there is high unemployment.*
- VERB + ECONOMY **build, rebuild** *Each party has its own strategy for building a strong economy.* | **control, handle, manage, manipulate, operate, regulate, run** *The government was accused of failing to run the economy competently.* | **boost, develop, expand, help, improve, kick-start, reinvigorate, rescue, revive, stabilize, stimulate, strengthen** | **liberalize** | **damage, harm, weaken, wreck**
- ECONOMY + VERB **develop, expand, flourish, grow** | **be in/go into recession, collapse, contract, fail, slow, stagnate** | **pick up, recover, stabilize**
- PHRASES **an area/a sector of the economy** *Transport workers are employed in all sectors of the economy.* **the backbone/mainstay of the economy** *Agriculture was the backbone of the economy.* **growth in/of the economy** *A small manufacturing sector inhibits growth in the economy.* **control/handling/management of the economy** *37% approved the president's handling of the economy.* **the size of the economy, the state of the economy** *The government has been criticized over the state of the economy.*

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

2 careful use of money/time/resources

- ADJ. **important, major, significant** | **false** *Buying cheap shoes is a false economy.*
- VERB + ECONOMY **achieve, make** *We could achieve major economies in time with this new machinery.*
- ECONOMY + NOUN **drive** *Savings are being planned as part of a huge economy drive.*
- PREP. **~ in** *possible economies in telephone costs*
- PHRASES **economy of effort/movement** *It was impressive to see her economy of movement as she worked the machine.* **economy of scale** *Large firms can benefit from economies of scale.*

ecstasy *noun*

1 feeling

- ADJ. **pure, sheer** | **religious, sexual**
- PREP. **in ~** | **~ at** *Kate closed her eyes in ecstasy at the thought of a cold drink.* **~ over** *I was in sheer ecstasy over the prospect of meeting my idol.*

2 Ecstasy drug

- ECSTASY + NOUN **tablet**

⇨ Note at DRUG (for more verbs and nouns)

ecstatic *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look** | **become**
- ADV. **absolutely** | **not exactly**
- PREP. **about** *Annie was ecstatic about the idea.* **at** *Martin was not exactly ecstatic at the news.*

edge *noun*

1 place where sth ends

- ADJ. **top** *the top edge of the picture frame* | **bottom, lower** | **inner, inside** | **outer, outside** | **front** | **northern, southern, etc.** | **very** *Erosion has left the house perched on the very edge of the cliff.* | **cliff, water's** *A row of boats was beached at the water's edge.*
- VERB + EDGE **reach** *We had reached the edge of the*

map and didn't know which way to go. | **skirt** *The road skirts the western edge of the forest.*

• PREP. **along the ~, around/round the ~** *Smoke was making its way around the edges of the door.* **at the ~** *Soon we were at the edge of the woods.* **on the ~** *She sat on the edge of her bed.* **over the ~** *The car rolled over the edge of the cliff.*

• PHRASES **right on the edge** *They live right on the edge of town.*

2 sharp side of sth

• ADJ. **sharp | cutting | serrated** *a knife with a serrated edge* | **jagged, ragged, rough | smooth | blunt**

• VERB + EDGE **sharpen**

3 advantage

• ADJ. **competitive | slight | decided**

• VERB + EDGE **give sb/sth | gain, have** *to gain a competitive edge over rival suppliers*

• PREP. **~ over** *The intensive training she had done gave her the edge over the other runners.*

edge *verb*

• ADV. **carefully, cautiously, nervously | quietly | slowly**

• PREP. **along** *He edged carefully along the narrow ledge.* **towards** *We slowly edged our way towards the exit.*

• PHRASES **edge your way**

edgy *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem, sound | become, get** *He began to get very edgy.* | **make sb** *She made Jeff edgy with her constant demands.*

• ADV. **all, very** *She was all edgy that evening.* | **a bit, rather** *She had been a bit edgy all day.*

• PREP. **about** *Hester seemed edgy about something.* **with** *He was rather edgy with her.*

edition *noun*

• ADJ. **first** *a bookshop that specializes in rare first editions* | **limited, special** *The book appeared in a limited edition of 3 000.* | **cheap | hardback, leather-bound, paperback | pocket | abridged** *They have brought out an abridged edition of the encyclopedia.* | **illustrated | revised | critical** *a critical edition of Shakespeare's plays* | **facsimile** *a facsimile edition of Dr Johnson's Dictionary of 1755* | **electronic | morning, evening** *The story made it into the evening edition of the newspaper.*

• VERB + EDITION **bring out, issue, produce, publish**

• EDITION + VERB **appear, be out, come out** *The first edition of the newspaper appeared in 1859.*

• PREP. **in a ... ~** *The encyclopedia will shortly be out in a revised edition.* | **~ of** *the November edition of 'Vogue'*

editor *noun*

1 prepares a book, television or radio programme

• ADJ. **commissioning | assistant, senior | copy | freelance | film, programme | art, cookery, fiction, music, picture**

2 in charge of a newspaper/part of a newspaper

• ADJ. **chief, executive, managing | deputy | assistant, associate | contributing | joint | magazine, newspaper, tabloid | features, news, picture | specialist | City, economics, fashion, financial, foreign, industrial, literary, political, sports, travel** *On page 12, our City editor comments on the takeover bid.*

• PHRASES **a letter to the editor**

⇨ Note at JOB

editorial *noun*

• ADJ. **newspaper | lengthy | hard-hitting**

• VERB + EDITORIAL **write | carry, publish, run** *The paper only occasionally carries editorials.* ◇ *The newspaper ran a hard-hitting editorial criticizing the government's economic policies.*

• PREP. **in an/the ~** *He declared his support for the minister in an editorial.* | **~ on** *an editorial on the problem of crime*

educated *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem, sound**

• ADV. **highly, impeccably, well** *She seemed intelligent and well educated.* | **badly, ill, poorly | reasonably, sufficiently | properly, suitably | fully | broadly** *the need for a broadly educated workforce* | **formally, traditionally** *Less formally educated people can acquire professional competence.* | **privately | expensively**

education *noun*

• ADJ. **decent, excellent, first-class, good | poor | compulsory | formal** *Although he had had little formal education, he could read and write well.* | **adult, further, higher, pre-school, primary, secondary** *a college of further education* | **university | professional, vocational | all-round | health, religious, sex | full-time, part-time | public, state | private** *parents who choose private education for their children*

• VERB + EDUCATION **have, receive** *He was at a disadvantage because of the poor education he had received.* | **give sb, provide (sb with)** *The school provides an excellent all-round education.* | **enter** *students entering higher education* | **continue, extend** *She went to college to continue her education.* | **leave** *young people who are just leaving full-time education* | **complete, finish** *He went to America to complete his education.*

• EDUCATION + NOUN **authority, committee, department, ministry, sector, service, system** *funds provided by the local education authority* | **minister, officer, official | policy | reform | campaign, initiative, programme, project, scheme** *The council has launched a new health education campaign.* | **facilities, materials, resources | class, course** *adult education courses* | **centre, college, establishment, institution**

• PREP. **in ~** *students in full-time education* **through ~** *We acquire much of our world knowledge through education.* | **~ about** *education about danger on the roads*

eerie *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, sound**

• ADV. **distinctly, downright** *This place has a distinctly eerie atmosphere.* | **almost** *a silence so long that it was almost eerie* | **rather, slightly**

effect *noun*

1 change that is caused by sth

• ADJ. **decisive, dramatic, far-reaching, important, marked, powerful, profound, significant, strong | marginal, minimal, modest, negligible | chief, main, major, principal | full** *The full effects of the new tax have not yet been felt.* | **apparent, appreciable, detectable, discernible, measurable, noticeable, visible | likely, possible, potential, predictable, probable | subtle | disproportionate | residual | adverse, catastrophic, crippling, damaging, debilitating, deleterious, destructive, detrimental, devastating, disastrous, harmful, ill, negative, serious, traumatic, undesirable, unfortunate** *the crippling effect of sanctions on the economy* ◇ *He didn't seem to have suffered any ill effects from his fall.* | **beneficial, positive, salutary | the desired** *We had problems with mosquitoes, but this spray had the desired effect.* | **magical, remarkable** *Giving up smoking had a magical effect on his stamina.* | **immediate | direct, indirect | short-term | lasting, long-term, permanent | domino, knock-on, ripple, spin-off** *Any delay in delivery of materials will* *have a knock-on effect throughout the production process.* (see also **side effect**) | **practical** | **aggregate, combined, cumulative, net, overall** | **qualitative, quantitative** | **cohesive** | **divisive** | **deterrent, disincentive** *The deterrent effect of the death penalty has long been questioned.* ◇ *Heavy taxation has a disincentive effect.* | **calming, hypnotic, soothing, soporific** | **curative, restorative, therapeutic** | **placebo** | **inflationary** | **corrosive** | **greenhouse** *policies to reduce emissions of gases which cause the greenhouse effect*

- VERB + EFFECT **bring about, exert, have, produce** *The drug exerts a powerful effect on the brain.* | **take** *The medicine started to take effect after a few minutes.* | **feel, experience, suffer (from)** *Women feel the effects of alcohol more quickly than men.* | **recover from** | **observe** | **show** | **assess, determine, estimate, examine, measure, study** | **ameliorate, cushion, lessen, minimize, mitigate, reduce, soften** *to minimize the effects of economic change* | **cancel out** | **counter, counteract, offset** | **compound, magnify, maximize** | **avoid** | **aim at** *That is precisely the effect I was aiming at.* | **be worried about, fear** | **underestimate** | **ignore**
- EFFECT + VERB **spread** | **last** | **wear off** *How soon will the effects of the drug wear off?*
- PREP. **in ~** *The border closure meant, in effect, that no trade took place between the countries.* **to this/that ~** *They told us to go away, or words to that effect.* **with … ~** *The plague struck London again with devastating effect.* | **~ on/upon** *The dry weather had an adverse effect on the potato crops.*
- PHRASES **cause and effect** *key historical concepts such as cause and effect* **to little/no effect** *The air-conditioning came on, to little effect.*

2 use of an official rule/plan, etc.

- ADJ. **immediate**
- VERB + EFFECT **come into** *The new regulations come into effect next month.* | **bring sth into, put sth into** *The recommendations will soon be put into effect.*
- PREP. **in ~** *Some laws from the eighteenth century are still in effect.* **with ~** *The bank has cut interest rates with immediate effect.*

3 impression that a speaker/book/film, etc. gives

- ADJ. **dramatic, startling, striking, stunning** | **maximum, optimum** | **the desired** *I found that by adding white I could achieve the desired effect.* | **overall** *The overall effect of the painting is overwhelming.*
- VERB + EFFECT **give (sth), have** *The stage lighting gives the effect of a moonlit scene.* | **achieve, create** | **enhance, heighten** *The dramatic effect was heightened by her black dress and dead white face.* | **mar, spoil**
- PREP. **for … ~** *'You know why I'm here?' Doug paused for maximum effect.* **to … ~** *She uses animal sounds to startling effect in her music.*

4 techniques used when making sth

- ADJ. **special** | **cinematic** | **audio, sound** | **optical, visual** | **lighting** | **elaborate** | **digital**

effective *adj.*

1 producing the result you want

- VERBS **be, look, prove, seem** | **make sth** | **find sth** *We find advertising on the radio very effective.*
- ADV. **brilliantly, especially, extremely, highly, particularly, really, remarkably, very** *a highly effective technique* | **completely, fully, perfectly** | **increasingly** | **fairly, moderately, partially, pretty, quite, rather, reasonably** | **enough** *This method is effective enough with greenfly.* | **not sufficiently** | **immediately** | **potentially** | **devastatingly, powerfully, surprisingly** *Sneezes are devastatingly effective at spreading infection.* | **politically** *What makes a TV programme politically effective?*
- PREP. **at** *effective at keeping out the wind* **in** *effective in helping people to stop smoking*

2 of laws/rules

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **fully** | **partially** | **directly, immediately** *directly effective treaty provisions* | **legally**

effectiveness *noun*

- ADJ. **overall** | **limited** | **operational, organizational, practical** | **educational, military, political** | **cost** *This hard-wearing material combines cost effectiveness with quality.*
- VERB + EFFECTIVENESS **assess, check, determine, evaluate, judge, measure, monitor, test** | **demonstrate** *The exam results demonstrated the effectiveness of personal tuition.* | **enhance, improve, increase, maximize** | **destroy, impair, limit, reduce** | **lose** *The drugs work well at first but gradually lose their effectiveness.*
- PREP. **~ as** *They're doing tests to evaluate the effectiveness of this herb as an antiseptic.* **~ in** *the effectiveness of penicillin in controlling bacterial infection*

efficiency *noun*

- ADJ. **ruthless** | **great, high** *attempts to achieve greater efficiency in the production process* | **maximum, optimum** | **low** | **cost** | **energy, fuel** | **mental, physical** | **administrative, business, economic, industrial, management, operational, organizational, production, productive, technical**
- VERB + EFFICIENCY **achieve** | **boost, enhance, improve, increase, maximize, promote** | **decrease, impair, reduce**
- EFFICIENCY + NOUN **drive, measures** *New timekeeping procedures had been introduced as part of an efficiency drive.* | **gains, improvements, savings** *the efficiency gains resulting from improved technology*
- PREP. **with ~** *The uprising was put down with ruthless efficiency.* | **~ in** *greater efficiency in energy use*

efficient *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound** | **become** | **make sth**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, really, remarkably, very** | **fully, perfectly** *The procedure is not fully efficient: improvements could be made.* ◇ *We already have a perfectly efficient system—why change it?* | **increasingly** | **fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively** | **briskly, quietly** *The receptionist was briskly efficient.* ◇ *A quietly efficient manservant brought them coffee and brandy.* | **formidably, incredibly, superbly, supremely** *His secretary was formidably efficient: her minutes were works of art.* | **economically, mechanically, technically**
- PREP. **at** *Their equipment was not as efficient at finding gold as today's machinery.* **in** *The heating system is very efficient in its use of of fuel.*

effort *noun*

1 physical/mental energy needed to do sth

- ADJ. **considerable** | **hard** *It took a whole day of hard effort to knock down the wall.* | **constant, sustained** | **extra** | **physical** | **intellectual, mental**
- QUANT. **amount** *the amount of effort required*
- VERB + EFFORT **demand, need, require, take** *It takes constant effort to become fluent in a language.* | **devote, expend, put in** *All the team members have put in a great deal of effort.* | **spare no** *No effort has been spared to make this hotel a welcoming, comfortable place.* | **be (well) worth** *The walk is difficult but well worth the effort.*
- EFFORT + VERB **go into** *A lot of effort went into making the costumes.*
- PREP. **with/without ~** *This can be done quickly and with very little effort.*
- PHRASES **a great deal of effort**

2 attempt to do sth

- ADJ. **all-out, big, brave, determined, enormous, great, herculean, heroic, huge, major, remarkable, special, strenuous, superhuman, tremendous, valiant** *I can see you have made a big effort to clean up.* | **desperate, frantic** *their frantic efforts to put out the fire* | **final, last, last-ditch** *The UN General Secretary flew in in a last-ditch effort to save the talks.* | **genuine, positive, real, serious** | **feeble** *She made a feeble effort to smile, then started crying again.* | **sporadic** *I make sporadic efforts to sort out my files.* | **successful** | **fruitless, futile, unsuccessful** | **collaborative, collective, concerted, cooperative, joint, team** *Students, teachers and families got together in a team effort to decorate the school.* | **conscious, deliberate** *I have to make a conscious effort to be polite so early in the morning.* | **voluntary** *The museum relies on the voluntary efforts of enthusiasts.* | **fund-raising**
- VERB + EFFORT **make** | **increase, intensify, redouble, renew, step up** *The police have renewed their efforts to find the murderer.* | **channel, concentrate, focus** *The police channelled their efforts into searching around the river.* | **fail in** *He failed in his efforts to give up smoking.* | **resist** *The wound resisted all my efforts to stop it bleeding.* | **abandon** | **be rewarded for, reward** *Her efforts were rewarded when she won an Oscar.* | **applaud** *The gallery owner applauded the efforts of firefighters to save the exhibits.*
- EFFORT + VERB **come to nothing, fail**
- PREP. **in an/your~** *The club has changed the rules in an effort to make them fairer.* **through sb's~** *Through their efforts, enough money was raised to buy the equipment.*
- PHRASES **your best efforts** *Despite our best efforts, we didn't manage to win the match.* **a reward for your efforts** *Second prize was a fair reward for his efforts.* **make every effort** *We are making every effort to obtain the release of the hostages.*

effortless *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem** *Burton made the jump look effortless.*
- ADV. **apparently, seemingly** *her apparently effortless performance*

egg *noun*

1 of birds/as food

- ADJ. **fresh** | **addled, bad, rotten** | **free-range, organic** | **chicken, duck, hen's, quail's, etc.** | **chocolate, Easter** | **boiled, fried, hard-boiled, poached, scrambled, soft-boiled** | **Scotch**
- QUANT. **clutch** *She lays a clutch of four eggs on average.* | **box**
- VERB + EGG **lay, produce** | **hatch** | **incubate** | **emerge from, hatch from** | **boil, cook, fry, poach, scramble** | **break, crack** *Crack two eggs into the mixture.* | **separate** *Separate the eggs, putting the whites to one side.* | **beat, whisk** | **brush sth with, glaze sth with** *Brush the pastry with a little beaten egg.*
- EGG + VERB **hatch** | **break, crack**
- EGG + NOUN **shell** (also **eggshell**) | **white, yolk** | **box** | **mayonnaise, noodles, pasta, sandwich**
- PHRASES **the white/yolk of an egg**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

2 cell from which a new young creature is formed

- ADJ. **fertilized** | **unfertilized**
- VERB + EGG **fertilize** *Only one sperm fertilizes an egg.*
- EGG + NOUN **donor**
- PHRASES **the nucleus of an egg**

ego *noun*

- ADJ. **big, enormous, huge, inflated, massive, strong** *a conceited man with a very big ego* | **fragile, weak**
- VERB + EGO **bolster, boost, feed, flatter, massage** *She likes to mix with people who flatter her ego.* | **bruise, damage, deflate, dent, wound** *He was lucky to escape with just a bruised ego when he fell off his bike.*
- PHRASES **a blow to your ego** *It was a huge blow to his ego to find out he was so unpopular.* **a boost to your ego**

eject *verb*

1 push/send sth out

- ADV. **forcibly** | **summarily** *They were summarily ejected by the security guard.*
- PREP. **from** *He was forcibly ejected from the restaurant.*

2 make an emergency exit

- ADV. **safely**
- PREP. **from** *All the crew members ejected safely from the plane.*

elaborate *verb*

- ADV. **further** *This point will be elaborated further in the next chapter.* | **at length**
- VERB + ELABORATE **attempt to, try to** | **refuse to**
- PREP. **on/upon** *They refused to elaborate on the reasons for their decision.*

elaborate *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** *The plans looked very elaborate.* | **become**
- ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, highly, very** *highly elaborate carvings* | **increasingly** | **fairly, quite, rather**

elastic *noun*

- ADJ. **loose, tight** *an old skirt with loose elastic*
- QUANT. **length, piece** *The trousers are held up by a length of elastic around the waist.*
- ELASTIC + VERB **break, go, snap** *The elastic in these socks has gone.*

elated *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound**
- ADV. **very** | **strangely**
- PREP. **at** *I felt strangely elated at the news.* **by** *elated by our victory* **with** *elated with his success*

elation *noun*

- ADJ. **great, sheer** | **unbelievable** | **mild** | **curious**
- VERB + ELATION **experience, feel** | **show**
- PREP. **~ at** *She showed her elation at having finally achieved her ambition.*
- PHRASES **a feeling/mood/sense/surge of elation** *I felt a strange sense of elation.* **tears of elation**

elbow *noun*

- ADJ. **dislocated, fractured**
- VERB + ELBOW **lean, place, rest** *He rested one elbow on the wall as he spoke.* | **lean on, prop/raise yourself up on** *She opened her eyes and propped herself up on one elbow to look at him.* | **catch, grasp, take** *He caught her elbow to steady her.* | **thrust** *She thrust her elbow into her attacker's face.* | **bang** *I banged my elbow on the table as I got up.* | **dislocate, fracture, injure**
- ELBOW + NOUN **joint** | **injury** | **room** *The tiny toilet compartment gives you hardly any elbow room.*
- PREP. **above the~, at your~** *A voice at my elbow said, 'Would Sir care to be seated?'* **below the~** *The whole of his arm below the elbow was badly burnt.* **beneath/under your~** *She slid a hand under his elbow to guide him into the shop.* **by the~** *He took his guest by the elbow and steered him in the direction of the bar.* **on one~** *He raised himself on one elbow and looked at the bedside clock.*
- PHRASES **be up to your elbows in sth** *He was up to his elbows in hot water, doing the washing-up.* **the crook of**

your elbow *She was cradling a small parcel in the crook of her elbow.* **dig your elbow into sb's ribs** *She dug her elbow into Jim's ribs to remind him not to give the secret away.*

elect *verb*

- ADV. **annually** *Members of the council are elected annually.* | **locally, nationally** | **democratically, freely, popularly** | **unanimously** | **directly, indirectly** *It was decided that the president should be elected directly in free elections.* | **duly, formally** | **lawfully, legally, legitimately**
- PREP. **to** *She has been elected to Parliament.*
- PHRASES **be/get elected** *What changes will he make if he gets elected?* **be declared elected** *Any candidate with more than half the votes shall be declared elected.* **be elected unopposed** *Five were successful, three being elected unopposed.* **newly elected** *the newly elected chairman*

election *noun*

- ADJ. **fair, free** | **democratic, multi-party** | **rigged** | **direct, indirect** | **fresh, new** | **early** *The prime minister may decide to call an early election.* | **primary, run-off** | **federal, local, municipal, national, regional, state** | **congressional, council, general, gubernatorial, leadership, legislative, local government, mayoral, parliamentary, party, presidential, Senate**
- VERB + ELECTION **have, hold** | **call** | **contest, fight** | **stand for** | **lose, win** | **rig**
- ELECTION + VERB **take place** | **be due, be scheduled for** *Elections are scheduled for November.*
- ELECTION + NOUN **campaign** | **manifesto, pledge, promise** | **broadcast** | **candidate** | **defeat, victory** | **day, night, year** | **fraud**
- PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *in the 2001 general election* **by ~** *Membership of the committee is by election.* | **~ to** *her election to the Senate*
- PHRASES **the outcome of an election, the run-up to an election** *opinion poll results in the run-up to elections*

elector *noun*

- ADJ. **eligible** | **registered**
- ELECTOR + VERB **choose sb, vote (for sb)** *Not all the registered electors actually voted.*
- PHRASES **the register of electors** *If your name is not on the register of electors, you will not be able to vote.*

electorate *noun*

- ADJ. **registered** | **total** | **local, national** | **mass** *The rise of a mass electorate forced politicians to try and broaden their appeal.* | **middle-class, working-class, etc.** | **American, British, etc.**
- ELECTORATE + VERB **choose sb, elect sb, go to the polls, vote** *the representative chosen by the electorate*
- PHRASES **the electorate as a whole/the electorate at large** *the need to appeal to the electorate at large*

electrician *noun*

- ADJ. **apprentice, qualified**
- VERB + ELECTRICIAN **call in** *We need to call in an electrician to sort out the wiring.*
- ELECTRICIAN + VERB **rewire sth, wire sth** *You'll need a qualified electrician to rewire your house.*

⇨ Note at JOB

electricity *noun*

- ADJ. **high-voltage, low-voltage** | **mains** | **static** | **off-peak** *We run the washing machine at night because off-peak electricity is much cheaper.*
- VERB + ELECTRICITY **generate, produce** | **provide, supply** *The hydroelectric plant provides electricity for half the island's population.* | **conduct** *Metals conduct electricity well.* | **be powered by, use** | **cut off, disconnect** *Her electricity was cut off when she didn't pay her bill.* | **save** *I switched the light off to save electricity.*
- ELECTRICITY + VERB **flow** *Electricity flows through the wires in the circuit.*
- ELECTRICITY + NOUN **bill** *Insulating your house could cut your electricity bill by half.* | **charges, costs, prices** *a 10% drop in electricity prices* | **meter** | **board, company, industry** | **supply** | **grid** *The village will soon be connected to the national electricity grid.* | **consumption, demand** | **generator** | **pylon** | **cable, line, wire**

electric shock *noun*

- ADJ. **massive, severe, strong** | **mild**
- VERB + ELECTRIC SHOCK **get, receive** | **give sb**
- ELECTRIC SHOCK + NOUN **therapy, treatment**

electronics *noun*

- ADJ. **high-tech, state-of-the-art** | **consumer, defence, medical**
- VERB + ELECTRONICS **work in** *About 45 000 people worked in electronics in Scotland.*
- ELECTRONICS + NOUN **company, firm, giant, group** *Their firm merged with a Japanese electronics giant.* | **industry, manufacturer** | **market, sector** | **product** | **engineer, specialist**

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for more verbs and nouns)

elegance *noun*

- ADJ. **great** | **classical** | **sartorial** *John has never been known for his sartorial elegance.*
- QUANT. **touch** *The ornamental ironwork lends a touch of elegance to the house.*
- VERB + ELEGANCE **display, have** *The building has great elegance and charm.* | **lack** | **add, give sth, lend sth** *The pillars give a classical elegance to the room.*

elegant *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look**
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **quite, rather** | **beautifully** *the beautifully elegant spire of the church* | **casually, quietly** *the quietly elegant wives of the directors* | **impossibly, supremely** *the foyer of an impossibly elegant Paris hotel*

element *noun*

1 one part of sth

- ADJ. **basic, critical, crucial, decisive, essential, fundamental, important, key, main, major, necessary, principal, significant, vital** | **dominant** *The promise of tax cuts became the dominant element in the campaign.* | **considerable, large** *There is a considerable element of danger in her job.* | **competitive** *There is too much of a competitive element in the sales department.* | **racial, sexual** *Police say there may have been a racial element to the attacks.*
- VERB + ELEMENT **be, constitute, form** | **contain, have, include, involve** *These rumours do contain an element of truth.* | **introduce**
- PREP. **~ in** *This constitutes one of the key elements in this reform programme.* **~ of** *Practical work will form a major element of the syllabus.* ◇ *There may have been an element of jealousy in her response.*

2 the elements bad weather

- VERB + ELEMENTS **brave** *I put on my thick coat ready to brave the elements.* | **battle (against)** *He told us stories of how he had battled the elements on his mountaineering trips.* | **be exposed to, be open to** *The place was completely exposed to the elements.* | **be protected from, be sheltered from**
- PHRASES **protection/shelter from the elements**

elephant *noun*

- ADJ. **African | Asian, Indian | bull, cow | baby | trained | wild | rogue**
- QUANT. **herd**
- VERB + ELEPHANT **hunt, poach | cull | drive, herd, round up**
- ELEPHANT + VERB **trumpet | charge, stampede | trample sb**
- ELEPHANT + NOUN **herd | tusk | conservation**

eliminate *verb*

- ADV. **altogether, completely, entirely, totally** *The risk cannot be eliminated altogether.* ◇ *This procedure does not completely eliminate the possibility of an accident.* | **virtually | largely | effectively** *Getting this job has effectively eliminated his financial worries.*
- VERB + ELIMINATE **seek to, take steps to, try to | help (to) | be designed to** *The single market is designed to eliminate barriers to the free movement of goods, services and people.* | **be impossible to**
- PREP. **from** *Try to eliminate fatty foods from your diet.*

elite *noun*

- ADJ. **governing, ruling | business, political, social**
- VERB + ELITE **create, form** *These people form an elite who have the power to make decisions.* | **join**
- PHRASES **a member of an elite** *a club for members of the business elite*

eloquent *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become, grow, wax** *He waxed eloquent about her talents as an actress.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** *a very eloquent speaker* | **quite**
- PREP. **about, on** *He grew quite eloquent on the subject.*

elusive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove** *Further movie roles have proved somewhat elusive for the young actor.* | **become | remain**
- ADV. **extremely, very | rather, somewhat | strangely** *Sleep was strangely elusive.* | **notoriously** *Truth is a notoriously elusive quality.*

emaciated *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look | become, grow**
- ADV. **painfully, severely** *his severely emaciated body*

email *noun*

- VERB + EMAIL **write | send, fire off** *When I saw what he'd written I fired off an angry email.* | **get, receive | read | reply to | delete | archive**
- EMAIL + NOUN **address | message**

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

embargo *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, strict, total | selective | international | economic | arms, oil, trade**
- VERB + EMBARGO **impose, place, put | enforce, tighten | lift** *The government has agreed to lift the embargo imposed ten years ago.* | **break, violate** *We knew the arms embargo was being broken.*
- PREP. **~ against** *the international embargo against the country* **~ on** *a strict embargo on oil imports*

embark *verb*

PHRASAL VERB

embark on/upon sth

- ADV. **immediately | seriously** *some advice for anyone seriously embarking on a career in the music business*
- VERB + EMBARK ON/UPON STH **be about to, be ready to** *She was now ready to embark on her journey of adventure.*

embarrassed *adj.*

1 shy/awkward/ashamed

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become**
- ADV. **acutely, deeply, excruciatingly, extremely, highly, particularly, really, terribly, very | almost | a bit, faintly, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat** *He looked a bit embarrassed.* | **clearly, obviously, visibly**
- PREP. **about** *She's embarrassed about her height.* **at** *He felt acutely embarrassed at being the centre of attention.* **by** *She seemed almost embarrassed by her own outburst.* **for** *His colour had risen and Isobel felt embarrassed for him.*

2 not having any money

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **financially**

embarrassing *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, sound | become, get | make sth** *My mother's presence made the situation even more embarrassing.* | **find sb/sth** *I found the whole evening intensely embarrassing.*
- ADV. **acutely, bloody** (*taboo*), **deeply, excruciatingly, extremely, highly, intensely, really, seriously, terribly, very** *a deeply embarrassing moment* | **increasingly | almost | a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | potentially | politically, socially**
- PREP. **for** *It was acutely embarrassing for us all.* **to** *This latest incident could be embarrassing to the government.*

embarrassment *noun*

1 feeling of being embarrassed

- ADJ. **acute, considerable, great, intense, severe | total | slight** *She smiled to hide her slight embarrassment.* | **further | obvious | silent**
- VERB + EMBARRASSMENT **feel** *I felt some embarrassment as we shook hands.* | **cover, hide | cause | avoid** *The government wishes to avoid further embarrassment over the affair.* | **blush/flush with, giggle with, squirm with** *I still squirm with embarrassment at the thought of it.* | **die from/of** (*figurative*) *I could have died of embarrassment when I saw her standing behind me.* | **ease, relieve | save sb, spare sb** *Helen changed the subject to save me the embarrassment of replying.*
- PREP. **in ~** *We all watched in silent embarrassment as Mr Rogers started to cry.* **with/without ~** *I could finally talk about my problem without embarrassment.* | **~ at** *her embarrassment at being found out* **~ over** *the government's embarrassment over the affair*
- PHRASES **(much) to sb's embarrassment** *Much to his embarrassment, Mike realized that a small crowd was watching him.* **feelings of embarrassment, a flush of embarrassment** *A flush of embarrassment came to her cheeks.* **a source of embarrassment**

2 sb/sth that makes you embarrassed

- ADJ. **considerable, great, huge, major, serious, severe | potential | financial, political, social**
- VERB + EMBARRASSMENT **be, become, prove** *The protests were becoming something of an embarrassment to the government.* | **consider sb/sth**
- PREP. **~ for** *The episode was a huge embarrassment for all concerned.* **~ to** *The poor child was considered an embarrassment to his family.*

embassy *noun*

- ADJ. **foreign | British, Chinese, etc.**
- VERB + EMBASSY **open, set up | close** *They broke off diplomatic relations and closed the embassies in each other's country.*

• EMBASSY + NOUN **building, grounds | official, spokesman/spokeswoman, staff**
• PREP. **at a/the ~** *She works at the Malaysian embassy in London.* **in a/the ~** *a fire in the Spanish embassy* **outside a/the ~** *a protest outside the American embassy*

embedded *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become**
• ADV. **deeply, firmly**
• PREP. **in/within** *These ideas are deeply embedded in our culture.*

embrace *noun*

• ADJ. **close, passionate, tight, warm** *the comfort of her warm embrace*
• VERB + EMBRACE **be locked in, hold sb in** *They were locked in a passionate embrace on the station platform.* | **escape (from), extract yourself from, free yourself from** *He managed to free himself from her embrace.* | **release sb from** *He released her from his embrace.*
• PREP. **in an ~** *two lovers in a tight embrace* **into an ~** *He drew her into his embrace.*

embrace *verb*

1 put your arms round sb
• ADV. **tightly, warmly** *He rose from his chair and embraced her warmly.*

2 accept sth
• ADV. **fully, genuinely** *the only party which fully embraces the concept of a united Europe* | **enthusiastically, wholeheartedly, with enthusiasm** *She embraced the feminist cause with enthusiasm.*

embroider *verb*

• ADV. **beautifully, delicately, exquisitely | heavily, richly** *a robe of richly embroidered silk*
• PREP. **on** *She embroidered flowers on the front of the dress.* **with** *She embroidered the dress with flowers.*

embryo *noun*

• ADJ. **developing | early** *the cells of an early embryo* | **human, frog, etc.**
• VERB + EMBRYO **implant** *Two or three embryos are implanted into the woman's body.*
• EMBRYO + VERB **develop**

emerge *verb*

1 come out
• ADV. **slowly | suddenly | finally, eventually**
• PREP. **from** *The world is only slowly emerging from recession.* **into** *They suddenly emerged into brilliant sunshine.* **out of** *the musical forms that emerged out of the American black experience*

2 become known
• ADV. **clearly, strongly** *One thing emerges very clearly from this study.* | **gradually | quickly** *The answer to the problem quickly emerged.* | **recently | later, subsequently** *It subsequently emerged that he had known about the deal all along.* | **eventually, ultimately** *What eventually emerged from the election disaster was a realization that it was time for change.*
• VERB + EMERGE **begin to, start to** *Problems with this drug are now beginning to emerge.*
• PREP. **from** *Several facts started to emerge from my investigation.*

3 start to exist
• ADV. **rapidly** *The Pacific region has rapidly emerged as a leading force on the world stage.* | **gradually, slowly**
• PHRASES **newly emerged/emerging** *newly emerging areas of science*

emergence *noun*

• ADJ. **gradual | rapid, sudden**
• VERB + EMERGENCE **lead to** *Conditions after the war led to the emergence of a new type of political party.* | **herald, mark, signal | see, witness** *The last decade saw the emergence of a dynamic economy.* | **encourage** *The annual competition has encouraged the emergence of several talented young musicians.* | **prevent**
• PREP. **~ as** *his emergence as the party's leader* **~ from** *the island's emergence from the sea*

emergency *noun*

• ADJ. **extreme** (*formal*), **major, real, serious** *Don't call me unless its a real emergency.* | **sudden, unexpected, unforeseen | international, national** *in times of national emergency* | **medical | military**
• VERB + EMERGENCY **cope with, deal with, handle, respond to** *firefighters on call to respond to emergencies*
• EMERGENCY + VERB **arise** *Call this number if any unforeseen emergency should arise.*
• EMERGENCY + NOUN **action, measures, procedures | laws, legislation, regulations | powers** *The police have been given emergency powers to deal with the crisis.* | **rule | meeting, session, talks | cover** *The army provided emergency cover when the ambulance service went on strike.* | **services** *The emergency services are struggling to cope with the number of call-outs.* | **aid, assistance, funds, relief, supply** *Emergency supplies of food have been flown to the area.* | **fund | call** *The ambulance crashed while answering an emergency call.* | **admission, case** *Emergency admissions to hospital are given top priority.* | **surgery, treatment | repairs | exit | landing**
• PREP. **for ~** *She told me to keep the money for emergencies.* **in an ~** *I need to know what to do in an emergency.*
• PHRASES **the accident and emergency department** *the closure of the hospital's accident and emergency department* **in case of emergency/emergencies** *There's a fire blanket on the kitchen wall in case of emergencies.* **a state of emergency** *The president immediately declared a state of emergency.*

emigration *noun*

• ADJ. **mass, massive**
• QUANT. **wave** *He called for a halt to the recent wave of emigration.*
• PREP. **~ from** *emigration from Europe to America* **~ to**

emission *noun*

• ADJ. **harmful, noxious, toxic | gaseous | exhaust, vehicle | industrial | atmospheric | acid, carbon, carbon dioxide, lead, sulphur, sulphur dioxide, etc.**
• VERB + EMISSION **cut, reduce** *We must take action to cut vehicle emissions.* | **control, limit, stabilize**
• EMISSION + VERB **increase | decrease, fall**
• EMISSION + NOUN **levels**
• PREP. **~s from** *measures to reduce harmful emissions from traffic*

emotion *noun*

• ADJ. **deep, extreme, intense, overwhelming, powerful, profound, strong, violent | complex | conflicting, contradictory, mixed, tangled** *She felt torn by conflicting emotions.* | **destructive, negative** *Counselling can teach people to handle negative emotions such as fear and anger.* | **positive | inner, innermost | painful | fragile** *The nurse was handling his fragile emotions very carefully.* | **raw** *a moving performance full of raw emotion* | **pent-up, suppressed** *Years of pent-up emotion came out as he sobbed.* | **human** *Fear is a normal human emotion.*
• QUANT. **flicker, hint, trace** *There wasn't a hint of emotion in his eyes.* | **flood, rush, surge, wave** *She felt a sud-*

den rush of emotion at the thought of seeing him again. | **display** *She could not cope with such public displays of emotion.*

- VERB + EMOTION **experience, feel** *the emotions that we experience as children* ◇ *He felt no emotion as she left.* | **be choked with, be filled with, be overcome with** *Her voice was choked with emotion.* | **be devoid of, be drained of** | **display, express, show** *Drama can help children to express their emotions.* ◇ *The woman's face showed no emotion.* | **release** *Releasing these emotions is part of the healing process.* | **betray** | **shake with, tremble with** *She realized she was shaking all over with emotion.* | **bottle up, control, hide, stifle, suppress** | **cope with, deal with, handle** | **confront** *Counsellors encourage victims of crime to confront their emotions.* | **arouse, provoke, stir (up)** *an incident that has aroused strong emotions locally* | **be charged with, be full of** *a speech that was charged with emotion*
- PREP. **with/without~** *She spoke with deep emotion.*
- PHRASES **depth/intensity of emotion** *The film has a surprising depth of emotion for a comedy.* **a gamut/range of emotions** *Her performance in the play covered the whole gamut of emotions.*

emotional *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, sound** | **become, get, grow** *He got quite emotional during the speech.* | **make sb** *Having all her friends around her made her very emotional.*
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, very** | **quite, rather**
- PREP. **about** *Don't be so emotional about everything!*
- PHRASES **in an emotional state** *He was in a very emotional state.*

emotive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **highly, powerfully, very** *He raised the highly emotive issue of bullfighting.* | **rather**

empathy *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, great, real** | **total**
- VERB + EMPATHY **feel, have** | **demonstrate, show** | **develop, establish**
- PREP. **~between** *The nurse should try to develop empathy between herself and the patient.* **~for** *I felt real empathy for my mother and what she had been through.* **~with** *She had a deep empathy with animals.*
- PHRASES **a feeling of empathy, a lack of empathy**

emperor *noun*

- ADJ. **reigning**
- VERB + EMPEROR **crown sb** *Charlemagne was crowned Emperor on Christmas Day 800 AD.*
- PREP. **under an/the ~** *It was under the emperor Justinian that these advances were made.* | **~ of** *the emperor of Japan*
- PHRASES **the reign of an emperor** *during the reign of the last emperor*

emphasis *noun*

1 special importance/attention

- ADJ. **considerable, great, heavy, increased** *schools that put a heavy emphasis on sporting achievement* | **strong** | **main** *discussing where the main emphasis should be placed* | **particular, special** *Examine the events leading to the war, with particular emphasis on France's role in them.*
- VERB + EMPHASIS **give, lay, place, put** *The company lays great emphasis on customer care.* | **shift** *The Democrats shifted the emphasis away from direct taxation.*
- EMPHASIS + VERB **move, shift** *In recent years, the emphasis has moved away from punishing drug addicts towards helping them.*
- PREP. **~on/upon** *The emphasis is on keeping fit rather than developing lots of muscles.*
- PHRASES **a change/shift of emphasis**

2 stress on a word/phrase

- ADJ. **great** *'I', he said with great emphasis, 'was the one.'* | **slight** *His slight emphasis on the word 'Lady' was definitely mocking.*
- VERB + EMPHASIS **put**
- PREP. **with~** *She repeated the question with emphasis.* | **~on** *Put the emphasis on the second syllable.*

emphasize *verb*

- ADV. **strongly** | **rightly** *The new law rightly emphasizes parental responsibility.*
- VERB + EMPHASIZE **must, should** *I must emphasize that this is only a summary, and the full report will not be available until next week.* | **be important to** *It is important to emphasize this point.* | **seem to, serve to, tend to** *All the arguments and counter-arguments serve to emphasize the controversy surrounding this disease.* | **fail to** | **be at pains to, be keen to** *I have been at pains to emphasize the positive aspects of discipline.*

emphatic *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **remain**
- ADV. **most, quite, very**
- PREP. **about** *He was most emphatic about me leaving.*

empire *noun*

1 group of countries

- ADJ. **big, great, large, mighty, vast** | **colonial, overseas** *the decline of the old colonial empires*
- VERB + EMPIRE **establish, found** | **dismantle** *The Japanese empire was quickly dismantled.* | **expand** | **lose** *By now Britain had lost its empire.*
- EMPIRE + VERB **grow** | **collapse, crumble, disintegrate** *The mighty empire finally crumbled.*
- PHRASES **the break-up/decline/fall of an empire, part of an empire** *a country that is still part of the empire*

2 group of companies/organizations

- ADJ. **big, huge, large** | **little** (= used to criticize sb's attitude to the things they control) *All the bureaucrats jealously guarded their own little empires.* | **business, commercial, financial, industrial, media**
- VERB + EMPIRE **build (up), create** *He has built a huge business empire from humble beginnings.*
- EMPIRE + VERB **collapse, crumble**
- PHRASES **the collapse of an empire**

employ *verb*

1 pay sb to work

- ADV. **directly, indirectly** *By 1960 the arms industry in America directly employed 3.5 million people.*
- PREP. **in** *A large part of the workforce is employed in agriculture.*
- PHRASES **be fully employed** *10% of 10–15-year-old girls were fully employed as late as 1911.* **be gainfully employed** *Those not gainfully employed are dependent on their savings.* **be permanently/temporarily employed, be regularly/irregularly employed**

2 use

- ADV. **commonly, extensively, frequently, often, widely** *The safety net is an image commonly employed in everyday life.* | **generally, usually** | **actively, deliberately** *teaching that actively employs computers in innovative and fruitful ways* | **successfully, usefully**
- VERB + EMPLOY **can/could** *The army has far more junior officers than it can usefully employ.*

3 be employed be busy doing sth
• ADV. **better** *You'd be far better employed taking care of your own affairs.* | **busily, usefully**
• PREP. **in** *Will and Joe were busily employed in clearing out all the furniture.*

employee *noun*

• ADJ. **salaried | full-time, part-time | permanent, temporary | retired | junior, senior | key | long-serving, loyal | potential, prospective | manual | skilled, unskilled | blue-collar, white-collar**
• VERB + EMPLOYEE **have** *The company has only 60 employees.* | **recruit | dismiss, lay off, make redundant, sack** *a fair reason for dismissing an employee* ◇ *The company made hundreds of employees redundant.*
• EMPLOYEE + VERB **join sth | work** *employees who work more than 20 hours per week* | **leave | earn sth**
• EMPLOYEE + NOUN **benefits** *In addition to a competitive salary, the company offers attractive employee benefits.* | **status** *Freelance workers do not enjoy the benefits of employee status.* | **relations**

employer *noun*

• ADJ. **big, large, large-scale, major** *one of the region's major employers* | **good** *The hotel prides itself on being a good employer that treats its staff well.* | **unscrupulous** *the use of illegal workers by unscrupulous employers* | **potential, prospective, would-be**
• VERB + EMPLOYER **have, work for**

employment *noun*

• ADJ. **paid, salaried | full-time, part-time | lifelong, lifetime, long-term, permanent, stable | short-term, temporary | regular | casual | seasonal | gainful, meaningful** *The company was one of the first to offer meaningful employment to the blind.* | **full, total** *The government aims to achieve full employment within three years.* | **high, low** *an area of very low employment* | **large-scale** *Steel making is the only local industry offering large-scale employment.* | **manual | skilled, unskilled | blue-collar, white-collar | factory, office**
• QUANT. **level** *policies aimed at maintaining a high level of employment*
• VERB + EMPLOYMENT **look for, seek** *recent graduates seeking employment* | **find, gain, get, obtain, secure** *He finally secured employment in a local factory.* | **take up** *(formal) He took up employment with the company in May 2002.* | **give up, lose** *She lost her employment when the firm closed.* | **give sb, offer sb | create, generate, provide** *This investment will certainly create employment in the area.* ◇ *The steelworks provided employment for thousands of people.* | **boost, increase, raise, stimulate** *policies designed to stimulate employment*
• EMPLOYMENT + VERB **increase, rise | fall**
• EMPLOYMENT + NOUN **opportunities, possibilities, prospects** *There are few employment prospects in the town for unqualified young people.* | **rights | training | status** *The survey studied the employment status and lifestyle of people within the community.* | **agency | contract | conditions, terms | figures, records, statistics | levels | patterns, trends | market** *school-leavers entering the employment market* | **policy** *the government's full-employment policy* | **practices** *The firm's employment practices have been widely criticized.*
• PREP. **in ~** *Most of last year's graduates are now in employment.* **out of ~** *She had been out of employment for three years.*
• PHRASES **conditions of employment** *trade union concerns such as conditions of employment and health and safety* **a contract of employment, patterns/trends of employment** *significant changes in patterns of employment*
⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

empty *verb*

1 make sth empty
• ADV. **completely** *The cupboards had all been completely emptied.* | **half | out** *We emptied out the tank.*
• PREP. **of** *He emptied the bottle of its contents.*

2 become empty
• ADV. **completely | half** *The hall half emptied as bored businessmen raced for the buffet tables.* | **out** *The room gradually emptied out.*
• PREP. **into** *The castle had a deep moat which emptied into the lake.* **of** *The streets soon emptied of shoppers.*

empty *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, feel, lie, look, seem** *The box lay empty on the bed.* | **become, end up** *The reservoirs could end up empty if this dry weather continues.* | **remain, stand, stay** *The council is letting useful housing stand empty.* | **leave sth** *The house had been left empty for several weeks.*
• ADV. **completely, quite, totally, utterly** *There was a vast expanse of utterly empty sky to look at.* | **almost, nearly, practically, virtually | largely, mostly | half** *a half-empty box of chocolates* | **fairly, relatively** *Some parts of the city are desperately overcrowded while others are relatively empty.* | **apparently | curiously, horribly** *The house felt curiously empty without the children.*
• PREP. **of** *The streets were empty of people.*

enclose *verb*

• ADV. **completely, fully, totally** *The garden is fully enclosed.* | **partially**
• PREP. **in/within** *The ring is enclosed in a plastic case.*

encore *noun*

• VERB + ENCORE **give, play, take** *The singer gave four encores.* ◇ *He took several encores before the crowd finally began to leave.* | **get** *You'll never get an encore if you perform like that!* | **call for** *The audience called for an encore.*
• PHRASES **as/for an ~** *For an encore, he sang an unaccompanied folk song.*

encounter *noun*

• ADJ. **brief** *I did not see him again except for a brief encounter on a train.* | **casual, chance, unexpected** *It was a chance encounter that led to the setting up of the new political party.* | **close** *I decided not to risk a second close encounter with the snakes.* | **face-to-face | direct** *The press conference was her first direct encounter with the media.* | **unpleasant, violent | social** *the language we use in everyday social encounters* | **sexual**
• VERB + ENCOUNTER **have** *I had my first encounter with the president two years ago.*
• ENCOUNTER + VERB **take place**
• PREP. **~ between** *violent encounters between police and protesters* **~ with** *my first encounter with my new boss*

encounter *verb*

• ADV. **commonly, frequently, often, regularly** *Walruses were commonly encountered in the Shetland Islands until quite recently.* | **rarely | inevitably**
• VERB + ENCOUNTER **be likely to** *What are the difficulties you are most likely to encounter?*

encourage *verb*

• ADV. **greatly, strongly** *We were greatly encouraged by the support we received.* | **actively, positively** *The government must actively encourage investment in these areas.*
• VERB + ENCOURAGE **aim to | try to | be designed to** *These questions are designed to encourage debate.* | **be likely to** *Newspapers should not publish material that is*

likely to encourage discrimination on the grounds of race or colour.

- PREP. **in** *Her head of department encouraged her in her research work.*

encouragement *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great | active, positive | the slightest** *Given the slightest encouragement, he'd be on his knees swearing eternal devotion.*
- VERB + ENCOURAGEMENT **give sb, offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *Mick was always ready to offer advice and encouragement.* | **need | draw, get, have, receive, take** *I draw great encouragement from the fact that the classroom is always full.*
- PREP. **with ~** *With a bit of encouragement, she could do really well.* | **~ by/from** *You need encouragement from people who understand what you are trying to do.* **~ to** *Getting the support of the Queen was a great encouragement to those involved in the project.*
- PHRASES **words of encouragement** *Perhaps I can offer a few words of encouragement to those who did not win any prizes this time.*

encouraging *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | remain**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, immensely, most, really, tremendously, very** *This news is most encouraging.* | **mildly, quite, reasonably | positively | hardly**

encyclopedia *noun*

- VERB + ENCYCLOPEDIA **consult, look sth up in, use | compile, write | edit | publish**
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *I looked the Civil War up in my encyclopedia.*
- PHRASES **an entry in an encyclopedia** *There are over 20 000 entries in the encyclopedia.*

end *noun*

1 furthest part of sth

- ADJ. **bottom, lower | top, upper | back, rear, tail** (*figurative*) *I just caught the tail end of the movie.* | **front | extreme, very | far, opposite, other** *That's his wife sitting at the far end of the table.* | **round, square, etc. | pointed, sharp | cheap** *housebuyers at the cheap end of the market* | **dear, expensive | dead** *We tried cutting through a back road but it was a dead end.* ◇ (*figurative*) *a dead-end job* | **deep, shallow** (of a swimming pool) (*figurative*) *The company believes in throwing new employees in at the deep end with no training.* | **free, knotted, loose** *Take the free end of the rope and pass it through the hole.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The author tied up all the loose ends of the story in the final chapter.* | **west, western, etc.** *the southern end of the lake*
- VERB + END **come to, get to, reach** *Continue until you reach the end of the road.* | **change** *The teams changed ends at half time.*
- PREP. **at the ~** *Turn into Hope Street and our house is right at the end.* **on ~** *Stand it on end* (= upright).
- PHRASES **end of the spectrum** *The two parties represent opposite ends of the political spectrum.* **(from) end to end** *We walked along the whole promenade, from end to end.* ◇ *They arranged the tables end to end.*

2 last part of sth

- ADJ. **abrupt, sudden | dramatic | early** *The injury brought her career to an early end.* | **fitting** *The award was a fitting end to a distinguished career.*
- VERB + END **come to, get to, reach** *The meeting finally came to an end at six.* ◇ *I'll never get to the end of this book!* | **approach, draw to, near** *As the evening was drawing to an end, the firework display took place.* | **bring (sth to), put** *Talks were in progress to bring an end to the fighting.* | **call for** *call for an end to the violence*
- END + VERB **be in sight** *There's no end in sight to the present crisis.*
- END + NOUN **product, result** *The film's backers were delighted with the end product.*
- PREP. **at an ~** *The proceedings are expected to be at an end by 6 p.m.* **at the ~** *They get married at the end of the movie.* **by the ~** *He wants the reports by the end of the month.* **in the ~** *In the end, they decided to spend the holiday at home.* **to the ~** *He won't win, but he'll keep fighting to the end.* **towards the ~** *I was getting bored towards the end of the talk.* **till/until the ~** *I'm staying until the end of this week.* **up to the ~** *It stayed hot right up to the end of September.* | **~ to** *What the business community wants is an end to the recession.*
- PHRASES **the end of an era** *Her death marks the end of an era.* **the end of the line/road** (*figurative*) *The loss of this contract could signal the end of the line for the shipyard.* **from beginning to end** *His story was one big lie from beginning to end.* **to/until the bitter end** *We will fight this court case to the bitter end.*

3 aim/purpose

- ADJ. **beneficial, desirable, worthwhile, worthy | destructive | practical, pragmatic | common** *Despite our differences, we were working to a common end.* | **selfish | commercial, economic, educational, ideological, political, social, utilitarian**
- VERB + END **achieve, further, pursue** *She was prepared to lie in order to achieve her ends.* | **work to**
- PREP. **to … ends** *The money might have been used to more beneficial ends.* **to this ~** *She wished to have a house built, and to this end she engaged a local architect.*
- PHRASES **an end in itself** *For her, travelling had become an end in itself rather than a means of seeing new places.* **a means to an end** *I don't enjoy studying computing—it's just a means to an end.* **the end justifies the means** *He defended a morality in which the end justifies the means.* **to/for your own ends** *She is exploiting the current situation for her own ends.* **with this end in view** (= in order to achieve this)

4 death

- ADJ. **sad, tragic | bad, sticky** *to come to a sticky* (= unpleasant, but deserved) *end* | **untimely**
- VERB + END **come to, meet** (*literary*) *He met his end at the Battle of Waterloo.*
- END + VERB **come** *The end came when he collapsed after playing golf.*

end *verb*

- ADV. **abruptly, suddenly** *The meeting ended abruptly when the chairman was called away.* | **prematurely | at last, eventually, finally** *At last the war ended.* | **all but, effectively, virtually** *A back injury effectively ended her career.* | **inconclusively** *The peace talks have ended inconclusively, with neither side prepared to give way on key points.* | **peacefully | disastrously, tragically | disappointingly, unhappily**
- PREP. **in** *The attempt finally ended in failure.* **with** *The show ended with a song.*
- PHRASES **end in disaster** *The military action could end in disaster.* **end in tears** (*figurative*) *After all that excitement the day was bound to end in tears* (= unhappily).

endanger *verb*

- ADV. **greatly, seriously** *Taking these drugs could seriously endanger your health.*
- VERB + ENDANGER **be likely to** *They are accused of causing an explosion likely to endanger life.*
- PHRASES **highly endangered** *14 per cent of primate species are highly endangered.*

endear *verb*

- ADV. **hardly, not exactly**
- VERB + ENDEAR **(not) be calculated to** *'All better now, are we?' he enquired in a patronizing manner hardly calculated to endear.*
- PREP. **to** *She had an unfriendly manner which did not exactly endear her to her colleagues.*

endeavour *noun*

- ADJ. **cooperative, joint** | **brave, gallant, heroic** | **earnest, honest** *the government's honest endeavours to improve the lives of the poor* | **lifelong** *Learning a foreign language well can be a lifelong endeavour.* | **fruitless, futile, unsuccessful** | **successful** | **human** *Enthusiasm is a vital ingredient in all human endeavour.* | **artistic, creative, educational, intellectual, political, scientific** *She always encourages her children in their artistic endeavours.*
- VERB + ENDEAVOUR **make** *You must make an endeavour to work harder.*
- PREP. **in an ~** *We wish her every success in this endeavour.* ◇ *In an endeavour to improve the service, they introduced free parking.*
- PHRASES **your best endeavours** *Despite her best endeavours, she couldn't persuade anyone to volunteer.* **a field of endeavour** *He has the ability to achieve success in whatever field of endeavour he should choose.* **make every endeavour** *We will make every endeavour to obtain sufficient supplies.*

ending *noun*

- ADJ. **happy** | **sad, tragic, unhappy** | **dramatic** | **fairy-tale** *The crowd cheered on the unknown Tunisian, hoping for a fairy-tale ending to the race.* | **perfect** *The meal was the perfect ending to a great weekend.* | **abrupt** *I was surprised by the abrupt ending to the conversation.*
- VERB + ENDING **have** *The book has a sad ending.*
- PREP. **~ to** *This is a happy ending to a rather sad story.*

endless *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** *The long walk back seemed endless.*
- ADV. **almost, virtually** | **apparently, seemingly** *a seemingly endless list of repairs to be carried out*

endorse *verb*

- ADV. **enthusiastically, firmly, heartily, strongly, warmly, wholeheartedly** | **entirely, fully** | **overwhelmingly, unanimously** | **broadly** *The government has broadly endorsed a research paper proposing new educational targets for 14-year-olds.* | **explicitly, implicitly** *The plan does not explicitly endorse the private ownership of land.* | **formally, officially** | **publicly** | **effectively**
- VERB + ENDORSE **fail to, refuse to**

endorsement *noun*

- ADJ. **enthusiastic, full, overwhelming, ringing, strong, unanimous** | **lukewarm** *The new design only received a lukewarm endorsement from head office.* | **official**
- VERB + ENDORSEMENT **give sth** *We are happy to give the product our full endorsement.* | **withdraw, withhold** | **require** | **seek** *They are now seeking endorsement for their ideas.* | **get, receive, win** | **have** *These measures have the strong endorsement of the Labour party.*
- PREP. **~ as** *her endorsement as leader of the delegation* **~ by** *endorsement of the product by the Consumer Council* **~ for** *endorsement for the plan* **~ from** *His presidential campaign won endorsement from several celebrities.*

endurance *noun*

- ADJ. **great, remarkable** | **sheer** | **mental, physical**
- VERB + ENDURANCE **have, show** *She showed great endurance in the face of pain.* | **test** *The astronauts will undergo a series of trials to test their physical and mental endurance in space.* | **build (up)** *Swimming a little further each session will build endurance.*
- ENDURANCE + NOUN **test**
- PREP. **beyond ~** *This behaviour is beyond endurance.*
- PHRASES **a feat of endurance** *They are capable of amazing feats of endurance.* **the limit/limits of your endurance** *She was almost at the limits of her endurance.* **powers of endurance** *The task was a test of their powers of endurance.* **a test of endurance** *Running a marathon is seen by many as the ultimate test of endurance.*

enemy *noun*

- ADJ. **arch, bitter, deadly, great, implacable, mortal, sworn** | **dangerous, formidable, powerful** | **ancient, old, traditional** *In today's match England play their old enemy, Scotland.* | **chief, main, principal** *The lion is the zebra's chief enemy.* | **natural** *The Church and the Communist Party were natural enemies.* | **common** *They united in the face of a common enemy.* | **political**
- VERB + ENEMY **have** *She didn't have an enemy in the world.* | **make** *He made many enemies during his brief reign.* ◇ *I didn't want to make an enemy of Mr Evans.* | **attack, fight (against)** *He was prepared to use any weapon to fight against his enemies.* | **defeat, destroy** | **confront, face** *He turned to face his enemy.* | **defend sth against, protect sb/sth against/from** *The cat uses its claws to protect itself against enemies.* | **deter** *The skunk releases a pungent smell to deter the enemy.*
- ENEMY + VERB **attack sb/sth**
- ENEMY + NOUN **army, forces, soldiers, troops, unit** | **defences, front (line), lines, positions, ranks** *The spies managed to penetrate behind enemy lines.* | **camp** | **action, bombing, fire** *The men came under enemy fire.* ◇ *the first casualty from enemy action* | **activity** *Intelligence reported enemy activity just off the coast.* | **country** | **territory** | **aircraft, fighter, plane, ship** | **propaganda**
- PREP. **against an/the ~** *They decided to use the weapon against the enemy.*
- PHRASES **fall into enemy hands** *The document must not at any price fall into enemy hands.* **in the face of the enemy** *He was shot for desertion in the face of the enemy.* **public enemy (number one)** *Since the scandal, the former minister has become public enemy number one.*

energetic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, really, remarkably, very** *Quasars are the highly energetic cores of distant galaxies.* ◇ *She seems remarkably energetic for a woman her age.* | **quite** *I'm feeling quite energetic today.*

energy *noun*

1 ability to be active/work hard

- ADJ. **boundless, indefatigable, inexhaustible, unflagging** *I admire her boundless energy.* | **surplus** | **nervous, restless** | **youthful** | **creative** *There was a lack of creative energy in the British film industry.*
- QUANT. **amount, level** *You can judge how healthy you are by the amount of energy you have.* | **great deal** *Bringing up twins requires a great deal of energy.* | **burst** *With a sudden burst of energy, he ran to the top of the hill.*
- VERB + ENERGY **be bursting with, be full of, have** *The children are always full of energy.* ◇ *I don't seem to have any energy these days.* | **lack** *He never seems to lack energy.* | **expend, put** *She put all her energies into her work.* | **channel, devote, direct, turn** *We're trying to deal with young offenders by channelling their energy into*

sport rather than crime. | **conserve, save** | **work off** *The kids were running around crazily, working off their surplus energy.* | **waste** *We don't want to waste our energy trying to persuade people who are just not interested.* | **sap** *The hills sapped his energy and he got off his bike for frequent rests.* | **dissipate** *The volunteers' energy was dissipated by the enormous amounts of paperwork involved in the project.*

- ENERGY + VERB **flag** *It was late and my energy was beginning to flag.*
- PHRASES **an outlet for your energy** *Football gives them an outlet for their energy.* **a waste of energy** *It's a waste of energy cutting this grass—nobody's going to see it.*

2 source of power

- ADJ. **renewable** *the change from fossil fuels to renewable energy* | **atomic, nuclear, solar, wave, wind**
- QUANT. **amount** *The new power station produces vast amounts of energy.*
- VERB + ENERGY **generate, produce** | **harness** *attempts to harness solar energy* | **provide, supply** | **consume, use** | **store** *No battery could store enough energy to turn over a car's engine.* | **conserve, save** | **waste** | **need, require**
- ENERGY + NOUN **production** | **consumption, use** | **demand, needs, requirements** *total energy requirements for the coming year* | **supply** *The nuclear plant provides a fifth of the nation's energy supplies.* | **resources, sources** | **conservation, savings** *equipment that offers long-term energy savings* | **efficiency** | **bill, costs, prices** | **crisis, problem, shortage** *The country could face an energy crisis if demand continues to rise.* | **company, industry, sector** *state control of the energy industries* | **market** *The cost of solar power needs to fall before it makes an impact on the energy market.* | **management, plan, policy, programme, project, strategy** *a government-sponsored renewable energy project*
- PHRASES **a demand for energy** *The demand for energy and fuel is expected to increase dramatically.* **energy-saving** *energy-saving features that can reduce energy bills by 50%* **a form of energy, a source of energy**

enforce *verb*

- ADV. **fully, properly, rigidly, rigorously, strictly, vigorously** *The rules were strictly enforced.* | **legally**
- VERB + ENFORCE **can/cannot, could/could not** *The ban cannot be legally enforced.* | **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** | **help (to)** *a system of local inspectors to help enforce presidential decrees* | **seek to, take steps to** *The government may take steps to enforce compliance with the new measures.* | **decline to, refuse to**

enforcement *noun*

- ADJ. **effective, proper** | **rigorous, strict, stringent, tighter, tougher, vigorous** *MPs called for tougher enforcement of the existing laws on drugs.* | **law** | **legal, police**
- ENFORCEMENT + NOUN **agent, officer** | **authority, body** *law enforcement bodies* | **machinery, mechanism, powers, system** *The court is ineffective because it lacks the necessary enforcement machinery.* | **measures, methods, practices, procedures, proceedings**

engage *verb*

- ADV. **directly, fully**
- VERB + ENGAGE **fail to, refuse to**
- PREP. **with** *acknowledging the need to engage directly with these problems*

PHRASAL VERB

engage (sb) in sth

- ADV. **actively** *people who actively engage in shaping the world they live in*
- VERB + ENGAGE (SB) IN STH **attempt to, seek to, try to** *He tried to engage me in conversation.* | **be eager to, be willing to** | **be reluctant to, be unwilling to**

engaged *adj.*

1 doing sth

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **deeply, heavily** *those who are deeply engaged in party politics* | **fully, totally** | **largely, mainly, primarily** | **directly** | **constantly** | **currently** | **actively, busily** | **otherwise** *I'm afraid Mr Wilson cannot see you now as he is otherwise engaged.*
- PREP. **in** *She was engaged in conversation with a client.* **on** *He is actively engaged on several projects.* **with** *Mrs Scott is engaged with a customer at the moment.*

2 having promised to marry sb

- VERBS **be** | **become, get** *The couple got engaged last month.*
- PREP. **to** *She's engaged to an actor.*

engagement *noun*

1 appointment

- ADJ. **previous, prior** *Mrs Spratt regrets that she is unable to attend owing to a previous engagement.* | **important** | **business, official, public, social** | **dinner, lunch**
- VERB + ENGAGEMENT **have** | **keep** *It is important that I keep this engagement.* | **carry out** (*formal*) *The prime minister will carry out no official public engagements during the month of August.* | **cancel, fail to keep** *The president fell ill and was forced to cancel all public engagements.*
- ENGAGEMENT + NOUN **diary**
- PREP. **~ with** *He had an important engagement with his financial adviser.*

2 agreement to get married

- ADJ. **long** | **broken**
- VERB + ENGAGEMENT **announce** | **break (off)**
- ENGAGEMENT + NOUN **ring**
- PREP. **~ to** *He announced his engagement to his long-time girlfriend.*

engine *noun*

1 part of a vehicle that produces power

- ADJ. **big, powerful** | **small** | **twin~s** *a large plane with twin engines* | **1.4-litre, 1200cc, 20-valve, four-cylinder, two-stroke, etc.** | **diesel, internal-combustion, jet, outboard, petrol, piston, turbine, turbo/turbocharged** | **aircraft, car, rocket**
- VERB + ENGINE **crank (up), start, switch on** | **cut** (*informal*), **kill** (*informal*), **switch off** *He pulled up under some trees and cut the engine.* | **rev (up), run** *She sat at the traffic lights revving the engine.* | **repair, service, tune** | **lubricate** | **fit (sth with)** *The new model is fitted with a more powerful engine.*
- ENGINE + VERB **run** *She waited with the engine running while he bought a paper.* ◇ *The engine runs on unleaded petrol.* | **idle, tick over, turn over** *The engine was just ticking over.* | **catch, start** *I pressed the starter and the engine caught first time.* | **stop** | **fire** *The engine's firing on all four cylinders now.* | **break down, die, fail, misfire, overheat, seize up, stall** | **cough, splutter** *The engine coughed and died.* | **roar, scream** *The plane's engine roared as it prepared for take-off.* | **race, rev (up)** *He heard a car engine racing behind him.* | **power sth** *This model is powered by a 1.8-litre petrol engine.*
- ENGINE + NOUN **capacity, power, speed** | **compartment, room** *the ship's engine room* | **component** | **failure, problems, trouble** *It looks as if we've got a spot of engine trouble.* | **noise**
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *You need more oil in the engine.*
- PHRASES **the noise/roar/sound of the engine**

2 vehicle that pulls a train
- ADJ. **large, powerful | diesel, electric, steam | railway, tank**
- VERB + ENGINE **build**
- ENGINE + VERB **break down, fail** *The engine broke down just outside the station.*
- ENGINE + NOUN **driver | failure | speed | shed**

engineer *noun*

1 designs/builds engines/roads, etc.
- ADJ. **chief | chartered, qualified, skilled, trained** *You need the advice of a qualified engineer.* **| consultant/consulting, production | aeronautical, agricultural, aircraft, chemical, civil, design, electrical, electronics, flight, marine, mechanical, mining, railway, recording, software, sound, structural**
- VERB + ENGINEER **produce, train** *Britain isn't producing enough engineers.*

⇨ Note at PROFESSIONAL (for more verbs)

2 repairs machines/equipment
- ADJ. **qualified, registered, skilled, trained | maintenance, service | heating, lighting, telephone**
- VERB + ENGINEER **call in/out**

⇨ Note at JOB (for more verbs)

engineer *verb*

1 manage to arrange sth
- ADV. **brilliantly, carefully** *She carefully engineered a meeting with the chairman.*
- VERB + ENGINEER **seek to, try to**

2 design and build sth
- ADV. **carefully, finely, precisely, superbly** *the car is superbly engineered and a pleasure to drive.*

engineering *noun*
- ADJ. **heavy, light | conventional | precision | advanced | aeronautical, agricultural, chemical, civil, design, ecological, electrical, electronic, genetic, mechanical, process, software, systems, etc.**
- QUANT. **piece** *The bridge is a fine piece of engineering.*
- ENGINEERING + NOUN **company, firm, group | industry | services | work/works** *Train services on Sunday will be restricted, because of engineering works.*
- PHRASES **a feat of engineering** *The new building is a remarkable feat of engineering.* ◇

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for more verbs and nouns)

English *noun*
- ADJ. **plain** *You'd have no trouble understanding his point if he'd written the article in plain English!* **| spoken, written | American, British, Indian, etc. | BBC, the Queen's | Early, Middle, Modern, Old**

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE (for more collocates)

engrossed *adj.*
- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become, get**
- ADV. **deeply, very | completely, entirely, thoroughly, totally | apparently | happily**
- PREP. **in** *He seemed completely engrossed in his book.*

enhance *verb*
- ADV. **considerably, dramatically, enormously, greatly, much, significantly, substantially** *The attractiveness of the book is much enhanced by Mark Stevens's drawings.* **| directly | further | undoubtedly**
- VERB + ENHANCE **can/could, may/might** *things that can significantly enhance the quality of your life* **| help (to), serve to | be designed to, seek to** *reforms designed to enhance market efficiency*

enigmatic *adj.*
- VERBS **be | remain**
- ADV. **highly, very** *His reply was highly enigmatic.* **| slightly, somewhat | curiously, strangely**

enjoy *verb*
- ADV. **enormously, greatly, hugely, immensely, really, thoroughly, tremendously** *She greatly enjoys her work.* ◇ *We enjoyed the game immensely.*
- VERB + ENJOY **be able to | seem to** *The kids all seemed to enjoy themselves.* **| begin to** *I was just beginning to enjoy it when the rain came down.*

enjoyable *adj.*
- VERBS **be, look, sound | become | make sth** *I always try to make my lessons enjoyable.* **| find sth**
- ADV. **enormously, extremely, highly, hugely, immensely, most, really, very** *We had a most enjoyable evening.* **| thoroughly | quite**

enjoyment *noun*
- ADJ. **full, great, huge, maximum, real** *A large income is not necessary for the full enjoyment of life.* **| pure, sheer** *For sheer enjoyment, you can't beat this game.* **| evident, obvious | quiet, simple**
- VERB + ENJOYMENT **derive, find, get, have** *They found real enjoyment just in being together.* **| bring (sb), give sb, provide (sb with)** *The show brought enjoyment to millions of viewers.* **| add to, enhance, increase** *Food is there to keep you healthy and enhance your enjoyment of life.* **| spoil**
- PREP. **for (sb's) ~** *I play rugby purely for enjoyment.* **with ~** *Mackie was smiling with enjoyment.* **| ~ in** *The noise really spoilt her enjoyment in living there.*
- PHRASES **a source of enjoyment** *Her little grandson has been a source of great enjoyment to her.*

enlarge *verb*
- ADV. **considerably, greatly** *The castle was enlarged considerably in the fifteenth century.* **| slightly**
- VERB + ENLARGE **seek to** *The gallery is seeking to enlarge its holdings of Danish art.*

enmity *noun*
- ADJ. **bitter, fierce | lasting, long-standing, old, traditional** *He had earned their lasting enmity.*
- VERB + ENMITY **earn (sb), incur**
- PREP. **~ between** *the fierce enmity between the two groups* **~ towards** *his enmity towards the Church*

enormity *noun*
- ADJ. **full, sheer**
- VERB + ENORMITY **appreciate, grasp, realize** *It's difficult to grasp the sheer enormity of the tragedy.* **| bring home** *Her words brought home the enormity of what was happening.*

enquire (*also* **inquire**) *verb*
- ADV. **further | pleasantly, politely** *Adam enquired politely whether they had enjoyed the show.* **| anxiously, solicitously | eagerly, hopefully | casually, evenly, mildly | coldly, coolly** *'You wish to speak with me?' he enquired coldly.* **| drily, sarcastically, sweetly** (*ironic*), **tartly** *'Do you mean blackmail?' she enquired sweetly.*
- PREP. **about** *To enquire about tickets, phone the number below.* **after** *Rose was enquiring after you* (= asking how you were). ◇ *She enquired after my mother's health.* **as to** *He didn't enquire as to my identity.* **into** *A commission has been set up to enquire into alleged malpractice.*

enquiry (*also* **inquiry**) *noun*

1 official investigation

• ADJ. **full/full-scale, major | detailed | preliminary | immediate | open, public | confidential | internal | joint** *a joint enquiry undertaken by the Department of Health and the Dental Association* | **impartial, independent | informal | formal, official | congressional, government, judicial, parliamentary, police | disciplinary | fatal accident, murder, etc.**

• VERB + ENQUIRY **carry out, conduct, have, hold, undertake | announce** *The governor announced an enquiry into the events.* | **initiate, launch, open (up), set up, start** *Police have launched a murder enquiry.* | **adjourn | reopen | call for** *Local MPs are calling for a full independent enquiry into the way the police handled the affair.* | **demand, order** *The government has ordered a public enquiry into the affair.* | **be subjected to, face** *You may be subjected to a disciplinary enquiry.* | **attend | be involved in | chair, head, lead** *The enquiry will be chaired by a judge.*

• ENQUIRY + VERB **be underway, take place** *A major enquiry is underway after the death of a union official.* ◇ *The enquiry will take place behind closed doors.* | **begin, commence, start | hear sth** *The enquiry heard this week that the crash was unavoidable.* | **consider sth, examine sth, investigate sth | reveal sth | conclude sth, establish sth, find sth** *An enquiry found that the vintage plane was in good working order.* | **rule sth** *The enquiry ruled that the cars should be fitted with bigger bumpers.* | **blame sb/sth**

• ENQUIRY + NOUN **report | team**

• PREP. **at an/the ~** *At the enquiry the minister maintained that nothing illegal had been done.* **during/in an/the ~** *arguments during the enquiry* **pending an ~** *The director has been suspended on full pay, pending an internal enquiry.* | **~ by** *an enquiry by the Charity Commission* **~ into** *a public enquiry into the environmental effects of the proposed new road*

• PHRASES **the outcome/result of an enquiry, the subject of an enquiry** *He now finds himself the subject of an enquiry after reports of financial irregularities.*

2 request for information

• ADJ. **exhaustive, extensive, thorough** *I've made exhaustive enquiries, but haven't been able to find what I want.* | **detailed | specific | general** *Our national enquiry centre is open every day and can help you with all your general enquiries.* | **discreet | informal | routine | preliminary | customer | house-to-house, phone/telephone, written**

• QUANT. **flood, stream** *After the disaster, the police had a flood of enquiries about missing relatives.*

• VERB + ENQUIRY **make, pursue, direct, undertake** *The police are still pursuing their enquiries.* ◇ *The committee directed its enquiries to Mrs Taylor.* | **complete | welcome** *The faculty welcomes enquiries from prospective entrants.* | **get, have, receive | be inundated with | answer, respond to, deal with, handle | assist (sb) in/with, help (sb) in/with** *Police believe he can help them with their enquiries into a robbery.*

• ENQUIRY + NOUN **desk, office | service | form** *You are requested to complete an enquiry form.*

• PREP. **pending an/the ~** *She has been released on bail pending further enquiries.* | **~ about/as to/concerning/regarding/relating to/with regard to** *enquiries as to the whereabouts of Erin Smith* **~ by** *enquiries by police* **~ from** *enquiries from the public* **~ into** *I'm making enquiries into the possibility of going by train.*

3 asking questions/collecting information

• ADJ. **careful | further | critical | intellectual | empirical | historical, philosophical, scientific, sociological** *The purpose is one of scientific enquiry.*

• VERB + ENQUIRY **encourage** *The subjects on the curriculum encourage intellectual enquiry.*

• PREP. **~ concerning/into** *enquiry into the origins of the universe*

• PHRASES **an area of enquiry** *The purpose of the research is to put this area of enquiry on a sound experimental footing.* **a board/commission/committee of enquiry, a line of enquiry** *No one has yet been arrested but the police have assured us that all possible lines of enquiry are being pursued.* **a method of enquiry** *Methods of enquiry vary from subject to subject.* **a spirit of enquiry** *Children are born with a spirit of enquiry.*

enrolment *noun*

• ADJ. **high, low | total** *Total enrolment fell between 1991 and 1997.* | **open** (= not restricted) | **school | candidate, student**

• ENROLMENT + VERB **take place** *Enrolment will take place in the main hall.* | **be/go up, rise | be/go down, fall**

• PREP. **at ~** *You will be given a reading list at enrolment.* **on ~** *The full fee is payable on enrolment.* | **~ for** *Enrolment for engineering courses is low this year.* **~ in** *enrolments in evening classes* **~ on** *enrolment on a computer course*

ensure *verb*

• VERB + ENSURE **must | aim to, try to | take action/care/steps to** *We must take steps now to ensure the survival of these animals.* | **be designed to** *provisions designed to ensure safe conditions of work* | **help (to) | be important to, be necessary to, be sufficient to** *It is important to ensure that delegates have been properly briefed.*

• PHRASES **an attempt to ensure sth, efforts/measures to ensure sth**

entail *verb*

• ADV. **actually** *What does the job actually entail?* | **inevitably, necessarily** *Restructuring will inevitably entail compromises.*

entangled *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become, get** *The fishing lines had become hopelessly entangled.*

• ADV. **hopelessly**

• PREP. **in** *He became entangled in legal disputes.* **with** *Sara had got entangled with some political group.*

enter *verb*

1 come/go into a place

• ADV. **illegally** *people who enter the country illegally*

• VERB + ENTER **allow sb/sth to, permit sb/sth to** *He stood back to allow us to enter.* | **forbid sb to**

• PREP. **by/through** *We entered through a large iron gate.*

2 add information to sth

• ADV. **manually** *You may need to enter this information manually.*

• PREP. **in** *Your details have been entered in our database.* **into, on** *Please enter all your personal details on the form provided.* **onto** *Enter the data onto the computer.*

enterprise *noun*

1 plan/project

• ADJ. **great | exciting | ambitious, difficult, hazardous | common, cooperative, joint** *The programme is a joint enterprise with the National Business School.*

• VERB + ENTERPRISE **embark on/upon, start, undertake** *They are willing to undertake a new enterprise.* | **abandon**

• ENTERPRISE + VERB **fail, succeed**

• PREP. **in an/the ~** *The team leader will be the most important factor in this difficult enterprise.*

2 a business

- ADJ. **large, large-scale, medium-sized, small, small-scale | profitable, successful | family, private | public, state, state-owned | multinational | agricultural, business, commercial, economic, farming, industrial, manufacturing** *the complex organization of a business enterprise*
- VERB + ENTERPRISE **control, manage, run** *He runs a successful small enterprise.* | **invest in**
- ENTERPRISE + VERB **expand, grow, succeed | fail**
- PREP. **in/within an ~** *something that affects all the workers in the enterprise*

3 development of businesses

- ADJ. **free, private** *The Act will encourage private enterprise.* | **local | corporate, individual, municipal**
- VERB + ENTERPRISE **encourage, promote**
- ENTERPRISE + NOUN **culture** *The government has promoted the small firm and the enterprise culture.*

4 abilities/imagination

- ADJ. **great** *I thought she showed great enterprise.*
- VERB + ENTERPRISE **show**
- PHRASES **a spirit of enterprise**

entertain *verb*

1 invite sb to eat/drink with you

- ADV. **lavishly** *The Bradfords always entertained lavishly at Christmas.*
- PREP. **to** *They entertained us to lunch in their new house.*

2 interest/amuse sb

- ADV. **thoroughly** *Everyone was thoroughly entertained.*
- PREP. **with** *She entertained us with stories of her travels.*
- PHRASES **keep sb entertained** *We hired a magician to keep the children entertained.*

3 think about an idea/hope/feeling

- ADV. **seriously** *I am amazed that such a crackpot scheme could be seriously entertained.* | **briefly** *briefly entertaining hopes that he might keep the affair a secret*
- VERB + ENTERTAIN **be prepared to, be willing to** *She would make no promises, but was prepared to entertain the idea.* | **refuse to**

entertaining *adj.*

- VERBS **be, sound | become | make sth** *He tried to make his speech more entertaining.* | **find sth** *The others seemed to find my discomfort hugely entertaining.*
- ADV. **extremely, highly, hugely, marvellously, vastly, very, wonderfully** *It was highly entertaining for the people around them.* | **thoroughly | fairly, quite**

entertainment *noun*

- ADJ. **lavish | pure** *Soaps like 'Neighbours' are pure entertainment and there is nothing wrong with that.* | **free | live | evening, nightly** *The hotel has a varied programme of nightly entertainment.* | **mass, popular** *Cinema is a medium of mass entertainment.* | **family, light, musical** *Vote for your top light entertainment show.* | **home, public, street**
- VERB + ENTERTAINMENT **lay on, offer, provide, put on** *They laid on lavish entertainment for their guests.*
- ENTERTAINMENT + NOUN **business, industry, world | centre, venue | programme | value** *The films were bought chiefly for their entertainment value.*
- PREP. **for sb's ~** *Ladies and gentlemen, for your entertainment, we present Magic Man.*
- PHRASES **a form of entertainment, a place of entertainment** *places of entertainment such as cinemas*

enthral *verb*

- PHRASES **be enthralled by/with sth** *They were enthralled with the play.* **hold/keep sb enthralled** *She kept her audience enthralled throughout her twenty-minute performance.* **listen/watch enthralled** *The children listened enthralled as the storyteller unfolded her tale.*

enthusiasm *noun*

- ADJ. **burning, considerable, enormous, extraordinary, great, immense, passionate, tremendous | genuine, real | growing | boundless, unbounded, unbridled | undiminished | excessive | spontaneous, sudden | new, new-found, renewed** *We went about our task with renewed enthusiasm.* | **early, initial | general, widespread | popular, public | personal | infectious | boyish, youthful | innocent | natural | religious**
- QUANT. **burst, surge** *After an initial burst of enthusiasm for jogging, I gradually lost interest.*
- VERB + ENTHUSIASM **be full of, feel, have** *Her voice was full of enthusiasm.* | **convey, express, show** *She managed to convey an enthusiasm she did not feel.* ◇ *The team have shown enthusiasm and commitment.* | **summon up | feign** *He accepted the invitation with feigned enthusiasm.* | **conceal, hide | share | maintain | lose | arouse, engender, fire (sb with), generate** *The trip has fired his enthusiasm for all things French.* | **dampen, dent** *This weather would dampen anyone's enthusiasm for swimming.*
- ENTHUSIASM + VERB **bubble over/up** *trying to hide the boyish enthusiasm bubbling up inside him* | **grow | fade, wane, wear off**
- PREP. **with/without ~** *I look forward to the challenge ahead with great enthusiasm.* | **~ about** *Few people expressed enthusiasm about the current leaders.* **~ among** *The idea aroused immense enthusiasm among party workers.* **~ for** *The initial enthusiasm for the project was wearing off.*
- PHRASES **a lack of enthusiasm** *Both sides have shown a distinct lack of enthusiasm for discussion.*

enthusiastic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get**
- ADV. **all, extremely, highly, immensely, incredibly, really, very, wildly** *She's all enthusiastic about China now that she's been there.* ◇ *The audience was wildly enthusiastic.* | **less than, not overly, not particularly** *Mrs Neil did not seem particularly enthusiastic about her job.* | **largely** *Film critics are largely enthusiastic about the thriller.* | **fairly, quite | genuinely**
- PREP. **about** *He was quite enthusiastic about the idea.* **in** *enthusiastic in their support of him*

entity *noun*

- ADJ. **discrete, distinct, independent, separate, single** *Church and empire were fused in a single entity.* | **basic | abstract | artificial | physical | living | business, corporate, economic, legal, national, political, social** *A company is a separate legal entity.*
- VERB + ENTITY **form** *The two companies will combine to form a new entity.*

entrance *noun*

1 door/place through which you enter sth

- ADJ. **narrow, wide | main | back, front, rear, side | cave, church, harbour, school, tunnel, etc.**
- VERB + ENTRANCE **use** *While the front door is being repaired, please use the side entrance.* | **mark** *The little porch marked the entrance to a churchyard.* | **have** *The building has only one entrance.* | **block** *She stood firm, blocking the entrance.*

- ENTRANCE + NOUN **area, foyer, hall, lobby | door, doorway, gate, porch | passage**
- PREP. **at the ~, by a/the ~** *The band left by the rear entrance to escape photographers.* **in the ~** *She stood in the entrance to the ward.* **through the ~** *Go through the main entrance into the yard.* | **~ from** *There is a back entrance from West Street.* **~ into** *the entrance into the car park* **~ to** *He was waiting at the entrance to the cave.*

2 act of coming in
- ADJ. **dramatic, grand**
- VERB + ENTRANCE **make** *She made a grand entrance once all the guests were assembled.* | **gain** *Some of the protesters tried to gain entrance to the meeting.*
- PREP. **~ into** *her entrance into politics*

3 right to enter a place
- VERB + ENTRANCE **gain** *students hoping to gain entrance to university*
- ENTRANCE + NOUN **charge, fee | ticket** *an entrance ticket to the zoo* | **requirements | exam/examination**

entrant *noun*

- ADJ. **school, university | competition | winning** *The winning entrant received tickets to the theatre.*
- VERB + ENTRANT **attract** *The essay competition attracted 46 entrants.*
- PREP. **~ for** *the entrants for the award* **~ in** *You will automatically be registered as an entrant in the Prize Draw.* **~ into** *another new entrant into the multimedia market* **~ to** *the number of entrants to higher education*

entrepreneur *noun*

- ADJ. **good, great, successful | creative, innovative | ambitious, dynamic | large-scale, small/small-scale | individual, private | budding, potential, would-be | business, music, property, etc.**

entry *noun*

1 right to enter sth
- ADJ. **free** *The club offers free entry to women on Thursdays.* | **school, university**
- VERB + ENTRY **apply for | gain | allow sb, grant sb** *They were later allowed entry into the country.* | **refuse sb, restrict** *It has been necessary to restrict entry into the club.* | **guarantee sb**
- ENTRY + NOUN **criteria, qualifications, requirements, standard | visa | ticket** *Entry tickets to most attractions are included in the price of the holiday.*
- PREP. **~ into** *These qualifications will not guarantee you entry into the police force.* **~ to** *She applied for entry to Nottingham University.*
- PHRASES **right of entry** *The landlord had the right of entry to the flat with due warning.*

2 act of coming in
- ADJ. **forced, forcible** *The house was quiet, and there were no signs of a forced entry.* | **unauthorized** *The sign on the gates read 'No Unauthorized Entry'.* | **illegal | dramatic | triumphal** *Caesar's triumphal entry into Rome*
- VERB + ENTRY **force, gain** *He found the door locked, but he forced an entry.* | **make** *The champion made his usual dramatic entry into the arena.*
- ENTRY + NOUN **point** *Drugs are believed to come into the country through five main entry points.*
- PREP. **~ into** *Hungary's entry into the EU* **~ to** *She wondered how she could gain entry to the building.*

3 sb/sth that enters a competition
- ADJ. **winning** *The winning entry will be published in next month's issue.*
- VERB + ENTRY **post, send (in)** *Send in your entry as soon as possible!* | **attract, get, have, receive** *The show attracted entries from all over the country.* ◇ *We have had a lot of entries this year.* | **judge**
- ENTRY + NOUN **coupon, form | fee**
- PREP. **~ for** *We had too many entries for this event.* **~ in** *There were a record 2 000 entries in the under-17 section.* **~ to** *one of the best entries to our competition*

4 one item in a list/book
- ADJ. **diary | dictionary**
- VERB + ENTRY **make, write**
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *Very little information is given in the diary entries.* | **~ for** *Look at the dictionary entry for 'welcome'.* **~ in** *the last entry she made in her diary* **~ on** *First examine the entries on the marriage register.*

envelope *noun*

- ADJ. **bulky, fat, thick | self-addressed, stamped addressed** *Please enclose a stamped addressed envelope if you would like a reply.* | **post-paid, pre-paid, reply-paid** *To apply, use the enclosed reply-paid envelope (no stamp needed).* | **padded | airmail | brown, buff, manila, plain, white** *an official-looking manila envelope*
- VERB + ENVELOPE **open, rip open, slit open, steam open, tear open** *The letter was suspicious, and I considered steaming open the envelope.* | **address, mark** *an envelope addressed in my mother's round handwriting* ◇ *The envelope was marked 'Personal'.* | **seal**
- ENVELOPE + VERB **contain sth**
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *I had put the letter in the wrong envelope.* **into an/the ~** *He quickly stuffed the money back into the envelope.* **on an/the ~** *I couldn't read the address on the envelope.* | **~ of** *He gave her the envelope of certificates.*
- PHRASES **the back of an envelope** *I scribbled his phone number on the back of an envelope.*

envious *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** *She tried not to appear envious.* | **become | make sb** *Don't tell me any more—you're making me envious!*
- ADV. **extremely, very | almost | a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat**
- PREP. **of** *He had always felt envious of his brother.*

environment *noun*

1 conditions of the place where you are
- ADJ. **immediate** *Cold-blooded animals depend on the temperature of their immediate environment.* | **alien, new, unfamiliar | changing | protected, safe, secure, stable | friendly | pleasant | clean, healthy | stimulating | favourable** *This period provided a favourable environment for the spread of communism.* | **uncertain, unstable | dangerous | noisy | competitive | hostile | extreme, harsh | fragile** *Walkers can unwittingly damage the fragile environment in which the birds live.* | **rural, urban | arid, cold, warm | aquatic, coastal, forest, mountain | domestic, family, home** *Children learn best in their home environment.* | **physical | cultural, emotional, social | office, work, working, workplace** *A comfortable working environment will increase productivity.* | **classroom, educational, learning, school, teaching, training | economic, financial** *Investors are showing more caution in the current economic environment.* | **political | business, commercial, corporate** *She now had to transfer her design skills to a commercial environment.* | **professional**
- VERB + ENVIRONMENT **create, provide** *parents who strive to provide a stimulating environment for their children to grow up in* | **adapt to** *creatures that have adapted to hostile desert environments* | **improve | explore** *The cat walked round, exploring its new environment.*
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *people working in increasingly competitive environments*

2 the environment the natural world
- ADJ. **natural | global, world | local**

- VERB + ENVIRONMENT **preserve, protect, safeguard** *The government should do more to protect the environment.* | **clean up, improve** | **have an impact on** *factors that have a huge impact on the environment* | **damage, harm, pollute** *industries which damage the environment*
- ENVIRONMENT + NOUN **agency, committee, department, group, ministry** | **minister, official, spokesman, spokeswoman** | **policy** | **conference** | **protection** | **issues**
- PREP. **in the ~** *the amount of carbon in the environment*
- PHRASES **conservation/protection of the environment, damage to the environment** *farming methods that minimize damage to the environment* **harmful to the environment** *The label identifies the products that are least harmful to the environment.* **pollution of the environment**

envisage *verb*

- ADV. **originally** *It was originally envisaged that the talks would take place in the spring.* | **always, never**
- VERB + ENVISAGE **can/could** *I can envisage difficulties if we continue with this policy.* | **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** | **be easy to, be possible to**

envoy *noun*

- ADJ. **papal, personal, royal, special** | **diplomatic, peace** | **UN/United Nations** | **American, British, etc.**
- VERB + ENVOY **be, serve as** | **appoint (sb as)** *The government has not yet appointed an envoy to the area.* | **dispatch, send** *A special peace envoy was sent to the area.*
- PREP. **~ from** *a special envoy from the American president* **~ to** *He served as envoy to the French government.*

envy *noun*

- ADJ. **extreme** | **unconscious** | **class, social**
- QUANT. **tinge, touch** *I detected a tinge of envy in her tone.* | **pang, stab, twinge** *I felt a twinge of envy for the people who lived there.*
- VERB + ENVY **be consumed with, be green with, feel, have** *I had no envy of his success.* | **express, show** | **arouse, excite, fill sb with, inspire** *Her youth and looks aroused extreme envy in her rivals.*
- PREP. **with ~** *I look with envy on those lucky people with big families.* | **~ at** *I was filled with envy at their adventurous lifestyle.* **~ for** *the envy she felt for her sister*
- PHRASES **be the envy of sb/sth** *British television is the envy of the world* (= is admired by everyone). **an object of envy** *Her car was an object of envy in the neighbourhood.*

envy *verb*

- ADV. **greatly, really** | **secretly**
- PREP. **for** *I secretly envied her for her good looks.*

epidemic *noun*

- ADJ. **major** | **widespread, worldwide** | **cholera, flu, typhoid, etc.**
- EPIDEMIC + VERB **break out, strike (sth)** *A typhus epidemic struck in the winter of 1919–20.* | **spread, sweep (sth)** *the flu epidemic sweeping the country*
- PREP. **during/in an/the ~** *Over fifty people died during the flu epidemic last winter.* **~ of** *an epidemic of cholera*
- PHRASES **reach epidemic proportions** *Marriage breakdown in the West has reached epidemic proportions.*

episode *noun*

1 one separate event in sb's life/a story

- ADJ. **dramatic, exciting** | **bizarre, extraordinary** | **sad, tragic, unfortunate, unpleasant** | **major** | **brief** | **acute, severe** (*medical*) *an acute episode of pneumonia* | **latest** *She has only told you about the latest episode in a long history of mental illness.*
- VERB + EPISODE **remember** | **forget**
- PREP. **during an ~** *during a brief episode of socialist rule* | **~ from** *remembering episodes from our childhood* **~ in** *an extraordinary episode in American history*
- PHRASES **the entire/whole episode** *He says he just wants to forget the whole unfortunate episode.*

2 one part of a TV/radio drama

- ADJ. **exciting, thrilling** *Don't miss next week's exciting episode!* | **next,** | **final, last**
- VERB + EPISODE **see, watch** | **miss** | **film, make** *The next episode has not yet been filmed.*
- PREP. **during/in an/the ~** *It happened in the final episode of 'Star Trek'.*

epitaph *noun*

- ADJ. **fitting, perfect**
- VERB + EPITAPH **write** | **make, stand as** *These films stand as an epitaph to the great director.*
- PREP. **as an ~** *He wanted these lines as his epitaph.* | **~ for** *She wrote the perfect epitaph for the poet.* **~ on** *Joyce's epitaph on King Edward VIII* **~ to** *It makes a fitting epitaph to a great career.*

epoch *noun*

- ADJ. **new** | **present** | **past** | **historical**
- VERB + EPOCH **mark** *The dropping of the first atom bomb marked a new epoch in warfare.*
- PREP. **during/in an/the ~** *the importance of the computer in the present epoch* **~ of** *an epoch of great social change*
- PHRASES **the beginning/end of an epoch**

equal *noun*

- ADJ. **intellectual, social**
- VERB + EQUAL **regard sb as, treat sb as** *He did not regard himself as her intellectual equal.*
- PREP. **as an ~** *He talks even to small children as equals.* **between ~s** *An interview should be a conversation between equals.* **without ~** *His guitar playing is without equal.*
- PHRASES **be sb's equal** *I shall never be his equal at chess.* **first among equals** *He was regarded as the 'first among equals' by the other office clerks.* **have few equals** *When it comes to plain speaking, she has few equals.* **have no equal** *In fighting, they had no equals.*

equal *adj.*

1 same in size/quantity/value, etc.

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **make sth** *We moved some of the better players to make the two sides equal.*
- ADV. **absolutely, exactly, in every way, precisely** *Their test results were equal in every way.* | **almost, nearly, virtually** | **about, approximately, more or less, roughly** *The EU nations together have an economy about equal in size to that of the US.* | **just** | **at least** *Fitness is important in sport, but of at least equal importance are skills.*
- PREP. **in** *The two books are more or less equal in length.* **to** *Three feet is roughly equal to one metre.*

2 having the same rights

- VERBS **be** | **be born** *I believe everyone is born equal.*
- ADV. **genuinely, truly**

3 equal to sth able to do sth

- VERBS **be, feel, prove, seem** *I hope that he proves equal to the challenge.* | **become** | **make sb** *I felt that nothing could make me equal to the demands being made of me.*
- ADV. **more than** *I felt more than equal to the task.*

equality *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, full, genuine, true | greater | economic, legal, political, racial, sexual, social**
• VERB + EQUALITY **have** *Women do not yet have true equality in the company.* **| achieve | demand, fight for, strive for | promote | establish | ensure, guarantee**
• PHRASES **equality of opportunity** *People from these minority groups must have equality of opportunity.*
• PREP. **~ between** *fighting for greater equality between the sexes* **~ for** *the task of achieving equality for gay men* **~ in** *These women are demanding fairness and equality in their pay.* **~ with** *The women are demanding full equality with the men of their tribe.*

equate *verb*

• ADV. **directly** *The constellations in the night sky cannot be directly equated with the heroes of Greek mythology.* **| roughly | simply | crudely** *crudely equating happiness with a high income*
• VERB + EQUATE **can/cannot, could/could not | be difficult to, be hard to** *It's hard to equate this gentle woman with the monster portrayed in the newspapers.*
• PREP. **with** *We are taught to equate beauty with success.*

equation *noun*

1 mathematical statement
• ADJ. **complicated, simple** *This can be shown by a simple equation.* **| algebraic, mathematical**
• VERB + EQUATION **solve, work out** *I could not find a way of solving the equation.* **| satisfy** *the range of values of x which would satisfy this equation*
• PREP. **~ for** *the equation for a straight line*
• PHRASES **a side of the equation** *the numbers on the right-hand side of the equation*

2 situation
• VERB + EQUATION **be a part of, come into, enter (into)** *The availability of public transport is also part of the equation.* ◇ *Money also comes into the equation.*

equator *noun*

• VERB + EQUATOR **cross**
• PREP. **around the ~** *Rainforests occur around the equator.* **at the ~** *The sun heats the sea more at the equator than at the poles.* **close to/near the ~** *in an area near the equator* **on the ~** *The lake lies exactly on the equator.*
• PHRASES **north/south of the equator** *The island is just 80 miles north of the equator.*

equip *verb*

• ADV. **lavishly, splendidly, superbly, well** *The centre is well equipped for sailing.* **| badly, poorly | comprehensively, fully, properly | adequately, suitably | specially**
• VERB + EQUIP **seek to, try to**
• PREP. **for** *The hostel is specially equipped for wheelchair access.* **with** *The flat is fully equipped with a cooker and fridge.*
• PHRASES **come equipped with** *Rooms vary in size and come equipped with hairdryers, television and telephone.*

equipment *noun*

• ADJ. **the latest, modern, state-of-the-art, up-to-date | sophisticated | sensitive | heavy | portable | basic, standard | essential, necessary, vital** *Hospitals are increasingly depending on charity for vital equipment.* **| specialist | defective, faulty | outdated | labour-saving | domestic, household, kitchen | school | sports | play** *The local council is supplying new play equipment for the playground.* **| business, office | laboratory, scientific | computer, electrical, electronic, high-tech, technical | medical | military | communication, navigation, radar, radio, telecommunications | camera, photographic, video | life-saving, protective, safety, security | rescue | garden, gardening | intellectual, mental, physical, sensory** *He lacks the intellectual equipment to succeed in politics.*
• QUANT. **item, piece**
• VERB + EQUIPMENT **provide, supply | use** *The plane uses state-of-the-art navigation equipment.* **| install | need, require** *No specialist equipment is needed.*
• EQUIPMENT + VERB **consist of sth** *The basic equipment consists of a plastic mask and a length of rope.*
• PREP. **~ for** *high-tech equipment for keeping the temperature steady*

equivalent *noun*

• ADJ. **direct, exact, nearest** *the nearest equivalent we have to a carnival* **| approximate | modern** *the modern equivalent of the village inn* **| American, British, etc.**
• VERB + EQUIVALENT **have** *a word which has no direct equivalent in English*
• PREP. **~ for** *There is no exact male equivalent for witches.* **~ in** *It is the approximate equivalent in height to the Matterhorn.* **~ of** *This qualification is the equivalent of a degree.* **~ to** *This concert hall has been described as the American equivalent to London's Albert Hall.*

equivalent *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem | become**
• ADV. **exactly, precisely | almost, closely, essentially, practically | approximately, broadly, more or less, roughly** *the price we would pay elsewhere for a broadly equivalent house*
• PREP. **in, to** *These first computers were equivalent in power to a modern calculator.*

era *noun*

• ADJ. **golden, great** *the golden era of radio* **| new | present | modern | bygone, past, previous** *The room had the elegance of a bygone era.* **| post-imperial, post-war | Edwardian, Victorian, etc. | Clinton, Thatcher, etc. | Christian, Common** *the early centuries of the Christian/Common Era*
• VERB + ERA **usher in** *The fall of the Berlin Wall ushered in a whole new era.* **| enter, move into** *The country has entered an era of high unemployment.*
• ERA + VERB **begin | end**
• PREP. **during/in an/the ~** *We live in an era of religious uncertainty.* **into ~** *a practice that has survived into the present era* **| ~ in** *a new era in the history of art*
• PHRASES **the beginning/dawn/dawning of a (new) era, be on the threshold of a new era, the end of an era**

eradicate *verb*

• ADV. **completely, entirely, totally | successfully**
• VERB + ERADICATE **try to | help (to) | be difficult to, be impossible to** *These insects are very difficult to eradicate.*
• PREP. **from** *The disease has now been successfully eradicated from the world.*
• PHRASES **an attempt/effort to eradicate sth**

erase *verb*

• ADV. **completely | virtually | partially**
• VERB + ERASE **try to | be determined to** *They are determined to erase the bad memories of last year's defeats.*
• PREP. **from** *These people have been virtually erased from the history book.*

erect *verb*

• ADV. **hastily, quickly | specially** *The event will take place in a specially erected marquee.*

- PHRASES **newly/recently erected** *the newly erected station buildings*

erect *adj.*

1 standing/sitting straight up

- VERBS **be, sit, stand** *He sat very erect, listening intently.* | **hold sth** *She held her head erect as she walked proudly up to the platform.*
- ADV. **very**

2 stiff

- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **completely, fully** | **stiffly**

erection *noun*

- VERB + ERECTION **get, have** | **lose** | **give sb**

erode *verb*

- ADV. **badly, deeply, seriously, severely** *Walkers should stick to obvious paths, even if they are badly eroded.* ◇ *The experience had seriously eroded his confidence in himself.* | **completely** | **further** | **gradually, slowly** *The distinction between social classes is slowly being eroded.* | **steadily** *The river bank had been steadily eroded over the years.* | **rapidly** | **easily** | **away** *The rocks have eroded away over time.*
- VERB + ERODE **threaten to** *The pressure towards uniformity that constantly threatens to erode local traditions.* | **tend to**

erosion *noun*

- ADJ. **serious, severe** *Acid rain has caused severe erosion on the hillside.* | **rapid** | **gradual, steady** *the steady erosion of their civil liberties* | **coastal, soil** | **glacial, water, wind**
- VERB + EROSION **cause, contribute to, lead to, result in** | **protect sth from, reduce** | **suffer (from)** *The area suffers badly from coastal erosion.*
- EROSION + VERB **affect sth** *the areas worst affected by soil erosion*
- PHRASES **the rate of erosion**

erotic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel** | **become** | **find sth**
- ADV. **highly, powerfully** | **mildly** | **blatantly, overtly** *There were some overtly erotic scenes in the film.*

errand *noun*

- ADJ. **little, simple**
- VERB + ERRAND **do, go on, run** *She made her brother run some little errands for her.* | **send sb on** *My boss kept sending me out on errands.*
- PREP. **on an ~** *She's gone on an errand for her mother.*

erratic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, very, wildly** | **completely** | **increasingly** *her increasingly erratic behaviour* | **fairly, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat**

error *noun*

- ADJ. **fundamental, glaring, grave, great, major, monumental, serious** *The report contained some glaring errors.* | **fatal** *He made the fatal error of borrowing more than he could pay back.* | **minor, small** | **embarrassing, unfortunate** | **past** *The ability to learn from past errors is vital in business.* | **common** | **grammatical, spelling, typing** | **factual** | **tactical** *The Kenyan athlete made a tactical error in starting too fast.* | **administrative, clerical** | **human, pilot** *The plane crash was caused by human error, not mechanical failure.*
- VERB + ERROR **commit, make** *He had committed a grave error in letting them see the document.* ◇ *She made several serious errors during the race.* | **contain** *The document contained a lot of typing errors.* | **detect, discover, find, spot** *I found several factual errors in the report.* | **point out** *The error was pointed out to her by one of her colleagues.* | **realize** *I only realized my error when it was too late.* | **avoid** *She has avoided the common error of writing too much.* | **correct, rectify** *Glasses can correct most errors in your vision.* | **compound** *The paper accidentally printed the victim's address, then compounded their error by printing her name the next day.*
- ERROR + VERB **arise (from sth), occur** *errors arising from inadequate information*
- ERROR + NOUN **detection** | **correction** | **message** *An error message comes up when I try to open the program.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The machine had been switched off in error* (= by mistake). | **~ in** *He checked his letter for errors in spelling.* ◇ *He realized his error in not attending the funeral.* **~ of** *The speech contained many errors of fact.*
- PHRASES **a comedy of errors** *His attempts to arrange a party ended up as a comedy of errors.* **an error of judgement** *The minister had made an amazing error of judgement.* **a margin of error** *The margin of error for a racing driver is tiny.*

erupt *verb*

- ADV. **violently** *the volcano which erupted violently last month* | **suddenly** *His anger suddenly erupted into furious shouting.*
- VERB + ERUPT **threaten to**
- PREP. **into** *violence that threatened to erupt into a full-scale war*

eruption *noun*

1 explosion of a volcano

- ADJ. **big, great, major, violent** *It was the biggest eruption of Vesuvius for some years.* | **minor** | **volcanic**
- VERB + ERUPTION **predict**
- ERUPTION + VERB **happen, occur, take place**
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *The temple was destroyed in the violent eruption of 1470 BC.*

2 sudden start of sth loud/violent

- ADJ. **sudden** *a sudden eruption of fighting*
- PREP. **~ of**

escalate *verb*

1 become/make sth worse

- ADV. **rapidly** | **steadily** *Violence between the two sides has been steadily escalating.* | **suddenly**
- PREP. **into** *The conflict could escalate rapidly into a full-scale war.*

2 increase

- ADV. **sharply** *The cost of raw materials has escalated sharply.*

escalation *noun*

- ADJ. **dramatic, major, serious** | **further** | **rapid**
- VERB + ESCALATION **lead to** *The reorganization has led to a dramatic escalation in costs.* | **prevent**
- PREP. **~ in** *a serious escalation in the fighting* **~ into** *the escalation of the conflict into an all-out war*

escalator *noun*

- ADJ. **down, up** *kids running up a down escalator*
- VERB + ESCALATOR **take** *Take the escalator down to the lower level.* | **go up** | **descend, go down**
- ESCALATOR + VERB **carry sb** *Passengers are carried by escalator to the first floor.*

escape *noun*

1 getting away from a place

- ADJ. **attempted | successful | great** *one of the greatest escapes of all time*
- VERB + ESCAPE **effect, make, make good** *He made his escape through the window.* ◇ *I found an open door and made good my escape.* | **plan | foil, prevent**
- ESCAPE + NOUN **attempt, bid | route**
- PREP. **~from** *his escape from the prison camp*
- PHRASES **a means/way of escape** *She looked round for a means of escape.* **a possibility of escape** *There was clearly no possibility of escape.*

2 avoiding sth unpleasant or boring

- ADJ. **close, narrow, near | lucky, miraculous, remarkable** *A driver had a lucky escape after a brick was dropped on his car from an overhead bridge.*
- VERB + ESCAPE **have**
- PREP. **~from** *He had a narrow escape from gunfire.*

escape *verb*

- ADV. **narrowly** *They narrowly escaped being killed in the fire.* | **not entirely** *The head of department cannot entirely escape responsibility for this situation.*
- VERB + ESCAPE **cannot/could not | be impossible to | attempt to, try to | manage to | let sb** *It was stupid of Lee to let them escape.* | **help sb (to)**
- PREP. **from** *to escape from prison* **into** *They escaped into the forest.* **to** *The family escaped to England.* **with** *Thieves escaped with property worth over £5 000.*
- PHRASES **escape alive** *Only two of the men escaped alive.* **escape sb's clutches** *He had managed to escape the clutches of the police yet again.* **escape unharmed/unhurt/uninjured/unscathed, escape with your life** *She was very lucky to escape with her life.*

escort *noun*

- ADJ. **armed, military, motorcycle, police**
- VERB + ESCORT **be accompanied by, have** *She had a police escort to the hospital.* | **give sb, provide (sb with), send** *Can you give us an escort?* ◇ *The army provided a small armed escort for the delegation.* | **need** *The referee needed a police escort as he left the stadium.*
- ESCORT + NOUN **vehicle**
- PREP. **under ~** *The opposition leader was arrested and taken to the capital under escort.* **with/without an ~** *They left with a small escort.* | **~for** *an escort for the Queen's car* **~of** *an escort of ten soldiers*

espionage *noun*

- ADJ. **industrial** *The big computer companies are very worried about industrial espionage.* | **international | American, British, etc.**
- VERB + ESPIONAGE **be engaged in, be involved in, engage in | be executed for, be expelled for, be imprisoned for** *Two members of the embassy staff had been expelled for espionage.*
- ESPIONAGE + NOUN **activities**
- PREP. **~ against** *She was found guilty of espionage against the United States.* **~on behalf of** *espionage on behalf of foreign states*
- PHRASES **the world of espionage** *the shadowy world of espionage*

⇨ Note at CRIME (for more verbs)

essay *noun*

- QUANT. **collection** *In 2001 she published a collection of essays.*
- VERB + ESSAY **do, write** *Have you done your essay yet?* | **give in, hand in** *Essays handed in late will not be accepted.*
- ESSAY + NOUN **question, title, topic** *You have to answer 3 out of 8 essay questions in the exam.*
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *He made some very good points in his essay.* | **~about/on** *We've got to write an essay on the environment.* **~by** *an essay by Montaigne*

essence *noun*

1 basic/most important quality of sth

- ADJ. **real, true, very**
- VERB + ESSENCE **capture, convey, embody, encapsulate, represent** *His paintings embody the very essence of the immediate post-war years.*
- PREP. **in ~** *His theory was not new in essence.*

2 concentrated substance

- ADJ. **almond, vanilla, etc.**
- QUANT. **dash, drop** *Add a few drops of vanilla essence.*
- VERB + ESSENCE **add, use**

essential *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem | become** *It is becoming almost essential for students to have a second language.* | **remain | make sth** *Increased competition makes it essential for the business to innovate.* | **consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as, think sth** *Do you consider these textbooks essential for the course?*
- ADV. **really | absolutely | almost, virtually | fairly | by no means** *Although useful, the accessories are by no means essential.*
- PREP. **for** *the skills essential for success* **to** *He believed that some form of religion was essential to human life.*

essentials *noun*

- ADJ. **bare, basic** *the bare essentials for existence*
- VERB + ESSENTIALS **grasp** *Just try and grasp the essentials of the argument.* | **provide** *The relief agencies are trying to provide food and other basic essentials.* | **concentrate on** *Don't let's worry about the details at this stage. Let's concentrate on the essentials.*

establish *verb*

1 start/create sth

- VERB + ESTABLISH **attempt to, seek to, try to** *trying to establish links with local schools* | **help (to), help sb (to) | agree to** *The two countries agreed to establish full diplomatic relations.* | **be able to | be important to**
- PHRASES **an attempt/effort to establish sth, newly/recently established** *He was appointed to the newly established Department of the Environment.*

2 make sth known and accepted

- ADV. **firmly, securely** *His position in the organization is now firmly established.*
- VERB + ESTABLISH **attempt to, seek to, try to | help (to), help sb (to)** *The exhibition helped her establish herself as an artist.*
- PREP. **as** *He has now established his reputation as a popular musician.*
- PHRASES **become/get established** *The festival has become established as one of the town's annual events.*

3 make certain of sth

- ADV. **conclusively, definitely | empirically**
- VERB + ESTABLISH **attempt to, seek to, try to** *Police are still trying to establish the identity of the dead man.* | **help (to) | be able to | be possible to | be difficult to | be important to**
- PHRASES **an attempt/effort to establish sth**

establishment *noun*

1 act of starting sth

- ADJ. **formal** *the formal establishment of the republic in 1948* | **gradual, rapid**

- VERB + ESTABLISHMENT **call for, support** *Opposition MPs are calling for the establishment of an independent food and drugs agency.* | **agree to, consent to** | **lead to** *This report led to the establishment of a special committee to investigate the matter.* | **allow (for), enable, provide for** *a law allowing the establishment of private television stations* | **announce** | **see** *The months that followed saw the establishment of a strong military presence in the region.*
- PREP. **with the ~ of** *With the establishment of major new markets, the economy is thriving.*

2 shop/business/organization

- ADJ. **catering, educational, military, research, training** *She's now running a small government research establishment.*

⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION (for verbs)

3 **the establishment** people in positions of power

- ADJ. **academic, art, literary, medical, musical, political, religious, scientific** | **British, French, etc.** *The British Establishment is very slow to accept change.*
- VERB + ESTABLISHMENT **offend** *His abstract paintings offended the art establishment.*

estate *noun*

1 land owned by a person/family/organization

- ADJ. **big, great, large, substantial, vast** | **small**
- VERB + ESTATE **have, own** *The family owns a large estate in the north of the country.* | **buy** *Queen Victoria bought the estate in 1848.* | **manage, run**
- ESTATE + NOUN **employee, manager, owner, worker** | **management**
- PREP. **on an/the ~** *the number of people living on the estate* | **~ of** *an estate of 20 000 acres*
- PHRASES **an heir to an estate** *The young prince is the heir to a vast estate in the west of the country.*

2 land with a lot of buildings of the same type

- ADJ. **large, massive** | **small** | **council, housing** | **private** | **industrial, trading** *The factory is on a large industrial estate on the outskirts of town.*
- VERB + ESTATE **build**
- PREP. **on an/the ~** *She lives on a council estate in Leeds.*

3 property that sb leaves when they die

- ADJ. **personal**
- VERB + ESTATE **leave** *She left her whole estate to her niece.* | **inherit** *She inherited her father's estate.* | **own** *He owns personal estate worth $30 million.*
- ESTATE + VERB **be valued at sth, be worth sth**

esteem *noun*

- ADJ. **great, high** | **low** | **personal, self-** *I needed to do it for my own personal esteem.* | **popular, public, social**
- VERB + ESTEEM **earn** *She had earned the esteem of everyone in the town.* | **lose** *It is easy for children to lose their self-esteem.* | **accord sb** *the level of social esteem accorded to doctors* | **fall in, rise in** *He fell in public esteem following the scandal.*
- PREP. **in … ~** *the status of teachers in the public esteem* | **~ for** *the public's esteem for the prime minister* **~ of** *The school's aim is to build the self-esteem of the children.*
- PHRASES **hold sb/sth in great/high/low esteem** *He is held in the highest esteem by all who know him.* **a mark/token of esteem** *We would like to offer you this gift as a mark of our esteem.*

estimate *noun*

- ADJ. **official, unofficial** | **current, recent** *Current estimates suggest that supplies will run out within six months.* | **early, initial, preliminary** | **accurate, fair, good, realistic, reasonable, reliable** | **best** *Flight times in the brochure are based on our best estimate, and will be confirmed as soon as possible.* | **approximate, rough** | **conservative, low** *I think 15 000 will turn out to be a very low estimate.* | **high** *According to the highest estimate, over 100 000 men died in the battle.* | **optimistic, pessimistic** | **cost**
- VERB + ESTIMATE **make** *Can you make an estimate of the numbers involved?* | **give (sb), provide (sb with), submit** *Three firms submitted estimates for the work.* | **revise**
- ESTIMATE + VERB **be based on sth** | **indicate sth, predict sth, show sth, suggest sth** *One estimate suggests that 30 000 jobs may be lost.* | **put sth at** *Some estimates put the figure as high as 50%.* | **range, vary** *Cost estimates vary from $50 000 to $200 000.*
- PREP. **according to an/the ~** *According to the revised estimate, four million people will be without homes.* **at an ~** *Even at a conservative estimate, there is a lot of work to be done.* **in an/the ~** *In his first estimate, he suggested a figure of £5 000.* | **~ by, ~ from** *According to an estimate by a leading newspaper, she earns £40 million a year.* **~ for** *We will send you an estimate for the repairs.* **~ of** *an estimate of profits ◇ an estimate of £300*

estimate *verb*

- ADV. **currently** | **accurately, reliably** | **provisionally** | **conservatively** *It is conservatively estimated that not less than half a million people died in the famine.* | **officially, unofficially** *The strike was officially estimated to have cost $80 million.*
- VERB + ESTIMATE **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** | **be used to** *The results of the survey were used to estimate the preferences of the population at large.*
- PREP. **at** *We estimated the cost at £50 000.*

estimation *noun*

- VERB + ESTIMATION **go up in, rise in** *He went up in my estimation when I heard about his charity work.* | **go down in**
- PREP. **in sb's ~** *In my estimation, you've done a good job.*

estranged *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel** | **become**
- ADV. **deeply** | **completely** | **increasingly**
- PREP. **from** *He felt deeply estranged from the society he lived in.*

ethics *noun*

- ADJ. **personal** *She resigned over an issue of personal ethics.* | **Christian** | **business, medical, professional** *The study was approved by the medical ethics committee.*
- PHRASES **a code of ethics** *There should be a code of business ethics which indicates how clients are to be served.* **a matter/question of ethics.** *It's the committee's job to decide on matters of ethics.*

etiquette *noun*

- ADJ. **professional, social** *He showed his contempt for social etiquette by not wearing a tie.* | **correct** *What's the correct etiquette when addressing a judge?* | **strict** *the strict etiquette of palace life*
- VERB + ETIQUETTE **breach** *He had breached etiquette by not informing his superiors of his decision.*
- ETIQUETTE + VERB **require sth** *Etiquette requires that the bride's father makes a speech.*
- PHRASES **a breach of etiquette** *The solicitor was accused of a breach of professional etiquette.* **matters of etiquette** *He is an expert on matters of etiquette.* **the rules of etiquette** *She knew how to address bishops according to the rules of etiquette.* **a stickler for etiquette** *She's a real stickler for etiquette, so you'd better ask her advice.*

euphoria *noun*

- ADJ. **early, initial** *after the initial euphoria* | **general**
- QUANT. **wave** *The news sparked a wave of euphoria across the country.*
- VERB + EUPHORIA **feel** *the euphoria we all felt when they were finally defeated*
- EUPHORIA + VERB **evaporate, fade**
- PREP. **~ about** *All the euphoria about the 'new methods' soon faded.* **~ over** *By then, the euphoria over the fall of the Berlin Wall had evaporated.*
- PHRASES **a feeling of euphoria, a state of euphoria**

euro *noun*

⇨ Note at CURRENCY

euthanasia *noun*

- ADJ. **voluntary | involuntary**
- VERB + EUTHANASIA **perform, practise | legalize**

evacuate *verb*

- ADV. **safely**
- VERB + EVACUATE **help (to)** *to provide aircraft to help evacuate refugees*
- PREP. **from** *Helicopters were used to evacuate people from their homes.* **to** *The man has now been safely evacuated to the mainland.*

evacuation *noun*

- ADJ. **large-scale, mass | emergency, immediate | casualty | wartime**
- EVACUATION + NOUN **area, zone | order | plan, programme, scheme | procedures**
- PREP. **~ from** *the evacuation of civilians from the area*

evade *verb*

1 escape

- ADV. **narrowly** *They narrowly evaded a police car which was approaching.* | **successfully**
- VERB + EVADE **attempt to, try to | manage to** *He managed to evade capture and escaped over the border.*

2 avoid dealing with sth

- ADV. **simply** *Her response was simply to evade the problem altogether.* | **carefully, skilfully | easily** *Responsibility could not be so easily evaded.* | **altogether**
- VERB + EVADE **attempt to, try to**

evaluate *verb*

- ADV. **fully, properly, thoroughly | carefully, systematically** *The evidence should be carefully evaluated.* | **critically | positively** *The role of stay-at-home mother is more positively evaluated in working-class communities.*
- VERB + EVALUATE **aim to, attempt to, be designed to | help (to)** *to help evaluate the success of the campaign* | **be used to** *criteria used to evaluate employees' performance* | **be difficult to, be hard to**

evaluation *noun*

- ADJ. **comprehensive, thorough | objective | critical** *a critical evaluation of the film* | **job** *a new pay structure based on job evaluations*
- VERB + EVALUATION **carry out, make** *We've still got to carry out an evaluation of the results.*
- EVALUATION + NOUN **procedure, process | study**
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *In their evaluation of the project, they considered only certain aspects of it.* **under ~** *The new scheme is still under evaluation.*

eve *noun*

- ADJ. **Christmas, Midsummer's, New Year's**
- PREP. **on the ~ of** *opinion polls published on the eve of the election*

even *adj.*

1 level/smooth

- VERBS **be, look** *The floor isn't completely even.*
- ADV. **very | absolutely, completely**

2 same size/level

- VERBS **be | become | keep sth** *Try to keep your stitches absolutely even.*
- ADV. **very | absolutely, completely | fairly** *Try to keep the room at a fairly even temperature.*

3 equal

- VERBS **be, seem | remain**
- ADV. **very | fairly, more or less** *The scores remained more or less even throughout the competition.*

evening *noun*

1 part of the day

- ADJ. **this, tomorrow, yesterday | Friday, Saturday, etc. | April, May, etc. | spring, summer, etc. | long** *the long winter evenings* | **dark | quiet | balmy, beautiful, fine, golden, warm | cold, cool, dry | early, late** *It was early evening and very still.*
- VERB + EVENING **spend** *We spent the evening walking round the town.*
- EVENING + VERB **progress, wear on** *As the evening wore on, Phil became very drunk.*
- EVENING + NOUN **light, star | meal | shift, work | class, course | entertainment, performance | prayer, service | rush hour | news, newspaper, paper**
- PREP. **during the ~, for an/the ~** *Her parents were out for the evening.* **in the ~, on Friday, etc. ~**
- PHRASES **an/the evening off/out** *You deserve an occasional evening out.* **good evening**

2 event happening in the evening

- ADJ. **gala, musical, social | open, parents'** *Prospective students were invited to the school's open evening.* | **convivial, enjoyable, lovely, memorable, pleasant, successful, wonderful**
- VERB + EVENING **hold** *The club will hold a social evening to welcome new members.*
- EVENING + NOUN **clothes, dress, gown, wear**
- PREP. **during the ~, for the ~**

event *noun*

1 sth that happens

- ADJ. **big, great, historic, important, key, main, major, momentous, significant** *Tonight's programme looks back at the main events of the year.* | **dramatic, remarkable | happy | sad, tragic, traumatic | rare** *Outside big cities, murder is a rare event.* | **subsequent** *Subsequent events proved him wrong.* | **historical, political**
- VERB + EVENT **witness** *When the ship finally reached land, only a few of the crew were left to witness the event.* | **record** *We had a huge party, and hired a photographer to record the event.* | **celebrate, commemorate, mark** *Today is the hospital's fiftieth anniversary, and there will be a party to mark the event.*
- EVENT + VERB **happen, occur, take place, unfold** *TV viewers watched in horror as events unfolded.* | **lead to sth** *These events quickly led to confusion.* | **lead up to sth** *The police are trying to establish a picture of events leading up to the killing.*
- PHRASES **a chain/sequence/series of events, the course of events** *Would it have been possible to change the course of events?*

2 planned social occasion

- ADJ. **big, important, main, major, special | popular | prestigious** *The Birmingham meeting is one of the most prestigious events in the racing calendar.* | **inaugural |**

annual, regular | **forthcoming** *Forthcoming events are listed on the back page of the local newspaper.* | **fund-raising, musical, social, sporting**

- VERB + EVENT **hold, organize, stage** *The event will be held in the grounds of the manor house.* | **publicize** | **attend, support** *I would like to thank everyone who attended our charity evening for supporting the event.* | **boycott** *Several leading players boycotted the event in protest at the reduced prize money.*
- EVENT + VERB **take place**

3 race/competition

- ADJ. **big, main** *This race will be the main event of the afternoon.* | **individual, team** | **men's, women's** | **field, track** | **jumping, running, throwing** | **distance, long-distance, middle-distance, sprint**
- VERB + EVENT **enter (for), take part in** *A record number of teams have entered the event.* | **win**
- EVENT + VERB **take place** *The team events will take place later this week.*
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *African runners swept the medals in the distance events.*

evict *verb*

- ADV. **forcibly** | **unlawfully**
- VERB + EVICT **seek to, try to**
- PREP. **from** *They were forcibly evicted from their home.*

eviction *noun*

- ADJ. **illegal, unlawful** *He claimed damages for unlawful eviction.* | **forcible**
- VERB + EVICTION **be threatened with, face** | **resist**
- EVICTION + NOUN **notice, order, warrant**
- PREP. **~ from** *They are facing eviction from their home.*

evidence *noun*

- ADJ. **abundant, ample, considerable, extensive, plentiful, substantial, widespread** | **growing** | **clear, compelling, conclusive, convincing, decisive, good, hard, incontrovertible, irrefutable, overwhelming, persuasive, positive, powerful, solid, striking, strong, unambiguous, unequivocal** | **adequate** | **flimsy, inadequate, insufficient, scant** | **concrete, direct, firm, first-hand, objective, tangible** *The figures provide concrete evidence of the bank's claim to provide the best service.* | **indirect** | **available, current, present** *Available evidence points to pilot error as the cause of the crash.* | **fresh, further, more, new** | **crucial, important, valuable, vital** *The defence accused the prosecution of withholding crucial evidence.* | **corroborative** *They convicted the wrong man on the basis of a signed confession with no corroborative evidence.* | **conflicting** *Another team of scientists has come up with conflicting evidence.* | **damning** *The scandal is damning evidence of the government's contempt for democracy.* | **anecdotal, archaeological, circumstantial, documentary, empirical, experimental, factual, forensic, formal, historical, material, medical, photographic, scientific, statistical, video, visible, visual** *There was a mass of circumstantial evidence linking Watson to the murder.* | **false** *She admitted giving false evidence to the court.*
- QUANT. **piece** | **body, mass** *A body of evidence emerged suggesting that smoking tobacco caused serious diseases.*
- VERB + EVIDENCE **have** *We do not have the evidence to prove these claims.* | **look for, search for** | **accumulate, collect, come up with, find, gather, obtain, produce** *Scientists have found fresh evidence to suggest that a huge explosion led to the death of the dinosaurs.* | **offer (sb), provide (sb with), show (sb)** *The tapes provided evidence of her intentions.* | **give, present (sb with)** *She was hoping she would not have to give evidence in court.* | **see** *He says he's been working hard, but I haven't seen any evidence of it.* | **consider, examine, study** | **review** | **cite (sth as)** *The team cited evidence from a recent earthquake to back up their idea.* ◇ *The rise in crime is often cited as evidence of a general breakdown of authority.* | **use sth in** *The police officer took a statement which was later used in evidence.* | **hear** *We must wait to hear his evidence before we make any judgement.* | **admit, allow** *The judge can decide whether to admit or exclude evidence.* | **exclude**
- EVIDENCE + VERB **exist** | **come to light, emerge** | **accumulate, grow** *Evidence is accumulating that a defective gene may be responsible for this disease.* | **confirm sth, demonstrate sth, establish sth, point to sth, show sth, suggest sth, support sth** *The evidence pointed to the existence of an international smuggling network.* | **be based on sth, be derived from sth, come from sth** *evidence of growing poverty based on extensive surveys* | **implicate sb/sth, link sb/sth** *evidence linking her to the crime*
- PREP. **as ~** *He cited Australia's sporting success as evidence for his theory.* **in ~** *A photo of the victim's injuries was produced in evidence.* **on … ~** *On present evidence the team will be lucky to make the final.* **on the ~ of** *On the evidence of his latest exhibition, Miller is an artist who is past his best.* | **~ about, ~ concerning, ~ regarding, ~ relating to** *The team have been collecting evidence about war crimes.* **~ against** *The woman went to court to give evidence against her attacker.* **~ for** *What evidence do you have for that claim?* **~ of** *Archaeologists found evidence of a rich and varied culture at the settlement.* **~ on** *The first chapter reviews the evidence on how children learn language.*
- PHRASES **in the face/teeth of evidence** *The company denies, in the face of overwhelming evidence, that smoking causes cancer.* **in the light of evidence** *In the light of new evidence, a new enquiry into the crash is likely to take place.* **lack of evidence** *The kidnapping charge was dropped because of lack of evidence.* **not a scrap/shred of evidence** *He made the accusations without a shred of evidence to back them up.*

evident *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain** | **make sth** *The silence of the forest was made evident by the occasional snap of a twig.*
- ADV. **clearly, plainly, strongly, very** | **perfectly, quite** | **increasingly** | **especially, particularly** | **fairly** | **sufficiently** | **immediately** | **already** *It is already evident that new roads only generate new traffic.* | **painfully** *The strain of her work schedule became painfully evident as she jetted from New York to London and on to Milan.*
- PREP. **from** *It was fairly evident from her tone of voice that she disapproved.* **in** *His anger was evident in his attitude to the others.* **to** *It was evident to me that the mission would fail.*

evil *noun*

- ADJ. **great** | **lesser** *This sort of job is a lesser evil than unemployment.* | **moral, social** *combating the social evils of poverty, disease and ignorance*
- VERB + EVIL **do** *His simple message was that God will punish those that do evil.* | **combat, fight, resist, turn (away) from** *You can always choose to resist evil.*
- PHRASES **the forces of evil** *a perpetual struggle between the forces of good and the forces of evil* **good and evil** *not a simple choice between good and evil* **the root of all evil** *He sees money as the root of all evil.*

evil *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **really, truly, very** | **wholly** | **basically, inherently, intrinsically** *He believes that all people are basically evil.*

evoke *verb*

• ADV. **clearly, vividly | still** *Her face, though sad, still evoked a feeling of serenity.*

• VERB + EVOKE **try to | be designed to, be intended to** *narrative techniques that are intended to evoke sympathy from the reader*

evolution *noun*

• ADJ. **gradual | rapid | continuous | natural | peaceful** *the peaceful evolution to democracy* **| biological, cultural, historical, political, social, technological | animal, human | Darwinian**

• VERB + EVOLUTION **trace** *a book tracing the evolution of the English language*

• EVOLUTION + VERB **occur, proceed, take place** *Evolution proceeds by a series of small changes.*

• PREP. **~ from … to …** *his evolution from comedian to serious actor* **~ towards** *the country's gradual evolution towards democracy*

• PHRASES **the theory of evolution** *people who reject the theory of evolution*

evolve *verb*

• ADV. **gradually, slowly | rapidly | eventually** *the theory which eventually evolved from this study* **| constantly, continually | naturally | independently, separately** *Monkeys in the New World evolved quite separately from those in the Old World.*

• VERB + EVOLVE **continue to**

• PREP. **from** *More complex animals gradually evolved from these very simple creatures.* **into** *The protest movement has evolved into a well organized political party.*

• PHRASES **fully/highly evolved** *These are very highly evolved animals.*

exaggerate *verb*

• ADV. **greatly, grossly, vastly, wildly** *These figures have been greatly exaggerated.* **| a little, rather, slightly, somewhat | further | easily** *The historical significance of these events can be easily exaggerated* (= it is easy to think they are more significant than they are). **| artificially, deliberately**

• VERB + EXAGGERATE **tend to** *John does tend to exaggerate slightly.* **| be easy to | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *It is difficult to exaggerate the importance of developing good study habits.*

exaggeration *noun*

• ADJ. **great, gross, wild | mild, slight**

• QUANT. **degree** *There was a degree of exaggeration in his description of events.*

• VERB + EXAGGERATION **be given to, be prone to** *John is rather given to exaggeration.* **| allow for** *Their results, even allowing for exaggeration, are impressive.*

• PREP. **without ~** *There were, without exaggeration, hundreds of applications for the job.*

• PHRASES **a bit of an exaggeration** *It would be a bit of an exaggeration to say that I'm desperate to leave.* **it is no exaggeration to say sth** *It is no exaggeration to say that having a baby changes your life.*

exam *noun*

• ADJ. **difficult, stiff | easy | entrance, matriculation, placement | end of term/year, final | professional, school | chemistry, French, geography, etc. | external | mock** *I did badly in the mock exam but passed the real thing.* **| multiple choice, oral, practical, written**

• VERB + EXAM **prepare for, revise for, study for** *I can't go out because I'm revising for end of year exams.* **| do, sit, take** *When do you sit your final exams?* **| resit, retake | do well in, pass, scrape through** *In spite of her worries, she passed the exam with flying colours.* ◇ *I wrote two awful essays and was lucky to scrape through the exam.* **| do badly in, fail, flunk | cheat in** *Candidates found cheating in any exam will be disqualified from all their exams.* **| set** *The final exam is set by a board of professors.* **| administer, invigilate | mark**

• EXAM + VERB **begin, start | be over, finish** *As soon as the exams are over I'm going on holiday.*

• EXAM + NOUN **practice, preparation, revision | paper, question | marks, results | failure, pass | technique | nerves** *Most students suffer from exam nerves to some extent.* **| fee | time** *There is a subdued atmosphere in the school at exam time.* **| format** *The exam format has been changed to include multiple choice questions.* **| board** *The regional exam boards all get together regularly to ensure equal standards.*

• PREP. **in an/the ~** *He did badly in his maths exam.* **| ~ for** *an exam for school leavers* **~ in** *an exam in chemistry*

examination *noun*

1 exam

• ADJ. **difficult, stiff** *The stiff entrance examination removes 60 per cent of prospective students.* **| easy | important | entrance, matriculation, selection | end of term/year, final** *He has just completed his final examinations at London University.* **| professional, school | formal | competitive | external, public** *One of the teacher's principal duties is to prepare students for external examinations.* **| A level, GCSE, etc. | mock | multiple choice, oral, practical, written, viva voce**

• VERB + EXAMINATION **prepare for, revise for, study for | enter for** *Students may enter for both examinations.* **| do, sit, take** *She will take her professional examinations later this year.* **| resit, retake | do well in, pass | do badly in, fail | set** *The examinations are set by individual teachers.* **| administer, invigilate | mark**

• EXAMINATION + NOUN **paper, question | syllabus | candidate | grades, marks, results | certificate | hall, room | fee | technique | success**

• PREP. **~ in** *He failed his examination in history.* **~ on** *an examination on human anatomy*

2 looking at sth carefully

• ADJ. **careful, close, detailed, full, lengthy, rigorous, thorough** *Each of the proposals deserves careful examination.* **| brief, cursory, superficial | initial, preliminary | critical** *The school curriculum has undergone critical examination in recent years.* **| clinical, forensic, medical, physical, post-mortem, psychiatric, scientific**

• VERB + EXAMINATION **carry out, conduct, do, make, perform** *He carried out a post-mortem examination.* ◇ *We will make a more thorough examination of the area later.* **| come under, have, be subject/subjected to, undergo** *I was advised to have a full eyesight examination.* **| stand up to** *His ideas about social change do not stand up to close examination.*

• EXAMINATION + VERB **reveal sth, show sth** *A medical examination showed no signs of hypertension.*

• EXAMINATION + NOUN **couch** *She lay on the examination couch and waited for the doctor to return.*

• PREP. **on ~** *On closer examination the wood was found to be rotten.* **under ~** *Several items of clothing are still under examination.* **| ~ by** *The school's controversial methods have come under examination by the local authority.*

⇨ See CROSS-EXAMINATION

examine *verb*

1 consider/look at sb/sth carefully

• ADV. **carefully, closely, in detail, minutely** *Each case must be carefully examined.* ◇ *We shall now proceed to examine these two aspects of the problem in detail.* **| ex-**

haustively, fully, properly, thoroughly | briefly | further | critically *Critically examine your work as if you were looking at someone else's efforts.* | **medically**

• VERB + EXAMINE **aim to, be designed to, seek to, set out to** *This study sets out to examine the possible effects of climate change.* | **proceed to | stop to** *Anna stopped to examine a plant growing by the stream.* | **be necessary to, need to | want to, wish to**

• PREP. **for** *The room was examined minutely for clues.*

• PHRASES **let us examine …** *Let us examine the implications of this theory.*

2 test what sb knows/can do

• ADV. **externally, internally** *The course is externally examined* (= by people from outside the college, university, etc.).

• PREP. **in** *The students will be examined in all subjects at the end of term.* **on** *You are only being examined on this semester's work.*

example *noun*

1 sth that is typical/demonstrates a point

• ADJ. **characteristic, classic, prime, representative, typical** *This is a classic example of a badly designed building.* | **excellent, fine, good, impressive, magnificent, outstanding, perfect, superb, wonderful** *a magnificent example of sixteenth-century architecture* | **fascinating, interesting, intriguing | notable, remarkable, striking | graphic, vivid | dramatic, extreme, spectacular | clear, obvious, simple, straightforward | blatant, flagrant, glaring** *His treatment of his secretary was a blatant example of managerial arrogance.* | **familiar, famous, well-known | notorious | common | rare | much-quoted, oft-quoted, often-quoted** *The oft-quoted example of Nero playing the violin as Rome burned shows the Emperor's detachment from reality.* | **illustrative | helpful, illuminating, instructive, useful | practical** *The book is full of practical examples of classroom activities.* | **concrete** *Let me give a concrete example of what I mean.* | **hypothetical**

• VERB + EXAMPLE **give sb, provide (sb with)** *Let me give you a few examples of what I mean.* | **contain, include** *The leaflet includes several examples of bad grammar.* | **cite, draw, take (sth as)** *She illustrates her point with examples drawn from contemporary newspaper accounts.* ◇ *To take an obvious example, if there is a good harvest the price of grain will fall.* | **find**

• EXAMPLE + VERB **illustrate sth, show sth**

• PREP. **for ~** *A touring cyclist, for example, might turn the pedals 80 times a minute.* **in an/the ~** *The teacher in our example is clearly wrong.* | **~ of** *We can still find examples of discrimination today.*

2 sb whose behaviour is good and should be copied

• ADJ. **good, great, inspiring, shining** *She is a shining example of how to organize your time.* | **bad, poor**

• VERB + EXAMPLE **set, show** *You must set a good example to the children.* | **follow** *I think all schools should follow the example of this one.* | **hold sb/sth up as** *The film was held up as an example of good cinema.*

• PREP. **by ~** *Children learn by example.* | **~ to** *His generosity is an example to us all.*

• PHRASES **make an example of sb** *The headmaster had made an example of him by scolding him in front of the whole school.*

exasperation *noun*

• ADJ. **sheer | mild**

• QUANT. **hint**

• VERB + EXASPERATION **feel | express, give vent to** *The organization has expressed its exasperation with the government.* | **control, hide, suppress**

• PREP. **in ~** *She rolled her eyes in sheer exasperation.* **with ~** *He snorted with exasperation.* | **~ at** *the exasperation he felt at his failure* **~ with** *their exasperation with the government rules*

• PHRASES **a groan/grunt/sigh of exasperation** *With a groan of exasperation, he picked up the luggage himself.*

excavate *verb*

• ADV. **completely, fully** *The area has not yet been fully excavated.* | **extensively | partially, partly | carefully**

• PREP. **from** *Pottery has been excavated from the site.*

excavation *noun*

• ADJ. **archaeological**

• VERB + EXCAVATION **carry out, conduct** *Further archaeological excavations are now being carried out.*

• EXCAVATION + VERB **reveal sth, uncover sth, unearth sth** *Excavations of the site have revealed an Iron Age settlement.* | **proceed, take place** *More discoveries were made as the excavation proceeded.*

exceed *verb*

• ADV. **considerably, far, greatly, significantly, substantially | comfortably, easily** *The House voted by 327 votes to 93, comfortably exceeding the required two-thirds majority.* | **slightly | clearly | regularly | rarely** *Summer temperatures rarely exceed 27°C.* | **generally, normally, usually**

• VERB + EXCEED **be expected to, be likely to** *Income is expected to exceed expenditure.* | **be unlikely to**

excellence *noun*

• ADJ. **all-round | academic, artistic, culinary, educational, manufacturing, scientific, sporting, technical**

• VERB + EXCELLENCE **pursue, strive for** *The school strives for academic excellence.* | **achieve**

• PREP. **~ in** *The Business School has a reputation for excellence in research.*

• PHRASES **a centre of excellence** *The college aims to be a world centre of excellence in the field of marine biology.* **levels/standards of excellence** *The restaurant's standards of excellence have won it several awards.* **the pursuit of excellence** *her relentless pursuit of sporting excellence*

excellent *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, look, prove, seem, sound | become | consider sth** *The school is considered excellent.*

• ADV. **most, really, truly | absolutely, quite | rather | generally** *The meals are generally excellent.* | **uniformly** *The performances and recordings are uniformly excellent.* | **apparently | potentially | otherwise** *In an otherwise excellent issue about global warming, I found Jeremy Creed's article very unconvincing.*

• PREP. **at** *Clancey was excellent at keeping the kids under control.* **for** *These potatoes are excellent for baking.*

exception *noun*

• ADJ. **conspicuous, important, major, notable, obvious, significant, striking** *Most industries have suffered badly in the recession, but there have been a few notable exceptions.* | **minor, rare | honourable** *With a few honourable exceptions, MPs kept quiet about the corruption.*

• VERB + EXCEPTION **make** *No parking is allowed, but an exception is made for disabled drivers.*

• PREP. **with the ~ of** *The whole of the island was flooded with the exception of a small area in the north.* **without ~** *Without exception, all employees must carry their identity card with them at all times.* | **~ to** *Guide dogs are the one exception to the store's ban on dogs.*

• PHRASES **be no exception** *The weather had been rainy for days, and the day of the race was no exception.* **be the exception rather than the rule** *Nowadays a job for life is very much the exception rather than the rule.* **be the**

exception to the rule *Most of his family are sports enthusiasts, but he's the exception to the rule.*

exceptional *adj.*

- VERBS **be | remain | consider sb/sth** *The head teacher considers Jamie's performance altogether exceptional.*
- ADV. **highly, really, very | altogether, quite, wholly**

excerpt *noun*

- ADJ. **short**
- VERB + EXCERPT **feature, give, include, play, publish, quote, show** *The programme included excerpts from Verdi's operas.*
- PREP. **~from** *The paper published some short excerpts from Mandela's memoirs.*

excess *noun*

1 large amount of sth
- ADJ. **large**
- PREP. **in~** *The drug can be harmful if taken in excess.* **in~of** *The vehicle had been travelling at speeds in excess of 90 miles per hour.* **to~** *They never smoked or drank to excess.* | **~of** *a large excess of gas*

2 **excesses** harmful actions
- ADJ. **worst**
- VERB + EXCESSES **avoid, curb | commit, perpetrate** *the worst excesses committed by the occupying army*

excessive *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | consider sth, regard sth as, see sth as** *He considered the level of tax excessive.*
- ADV. **grossly | a bit, a little, rather, somewhat**

exchange *noun*

1 giving/receiving sth in return for sth else
- ADJ. **fair | mutual, two-way** *We get together once a month for a mutual exchange of ideas.*
- PREP. **in~(for)** *Woollen cloth and timber were sent to Egypt in exchange for linen or papyrus.* | **~between** *There were exchanges of goods between the two regions.* **~for** *She considered free language lessons a fair exchange for free accommodation.*

2 angry conversation/argument
- ADJ. **brief | acrimonious, angry, bitter, heated, sharp | verbal** *a bitter verbal exchange*
- PREP. **~about** *angry exchanges about the problem of unemployment* **~between** *There were many acrimonious exchanges between the two men.* **~with** *Opposition MPs were involved in heated exchanges with the prime minister.*
- PHRASES **an exchange of views** *She had a full and frank exchange of views with her boss before resigning.*

3 of foreign currencies
- EXCHANGE + NOUN **rate**

4 visit
- ADJ. **academic, cultural | student, youth | official**
- VERB + EXCHANGE **go on**
- PREP. **on an/the~** *She is in France on a student exchange.* | **~to** *He's gone on an exchange to Rome.* **~with** *an exchange with a German student*

excise *noun*

- VERB + EXCISE **impose, levy** *the excise levied on beer and tobacco* | **pay | increase, raise | cut, reduce**
- EXCISE + NOUN **duty, revenue, tax | licence** *applications for vehicle excise licences* | **officer**
- PREP. **~on** *to increase the excise on whisky*

excitable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **highly, very | quite, rather, somewhat | easily** *The horses have easily excitable nervous systems.*

excited *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow | get sb** *Don't get the children too excited.*
- ADV. **all, extraordinarily, extremely, highly, really, terribly, tremendously, very, wildly** *He was all excited about his new car.* ◇ *By now the crowd was wildly excited.* | **increasingly | a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather | strangely | sexually**
- PREP. **about** *The kids seem pretty excited about the holiday.* **at** *excited at the news* **by** *He was puzzled but strangely excited by the commotion.*

excitement *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, fierce, great, high, intense, tremendous | breathless, febrile, feverish, heady, wild | genuine, real, sheer | initial | sudden | growing, heightened, mounting | added, further | suppressed | nervous, restless | guilty | pleasurable | strange | vicarious** *The reader of adventure stories wants romance and vicarious excitement.* | **youthful | intellectual, physical, political, sexual**
- QUANT. **flicker, flurry, flush, frisson, ripple, surge** *She felt a surge of excitement when she heard the song.*
- VERB + EXCITEMENT **be bubbling with, be filled with, be flushed with, be sick with, be trembling/tingling with, feel** *Her face was flushed with excitement.* ◇ *She was almost sick with excitement and apprehension.* | **cause, generate** *The news caused tremendous excitement among scientists.* | **conceal, control, hide, suppress** *He couldn't suppress the excitement in his voice.* | **add** *The element of risk just adds excitement.*
- EXCITEMENT + VERB **build up, grow, mount, rise** *The tension and excitement built up gradually all day.* | **die down, evaporate, wear off**
- PREP. **in~** *clapping her hands in excitement* | **~among** *The news has caused great excitement among scientists.* **~at** *her excitement at the prospect of a new job* **~of** *the excitement of meeting new people*
- PHRASES **an air of excitement** *There was an air of excitement about the place.* **a feeling/sense of excitement, a fever/state of excitement**

exciting *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become, get** *The film was just getting exciting when we had to leave.* | **find sth** *She found the idea terrifically exciting.*
- ADV. **enormously, extraordinarily, extremely, immensely, incredibly, really, terribly, terrifically, tremendously, unbelievably, very, wildly, wonderfully | pretty, quite, rather | potentially** *the germ of a potentially exciting innovation* | **undeniably | visually** *a book that is attractive and visually exciting* | **sexually**
- PHRASES **exciting new** *an exciting new magazine*

exclaim *verb*

- ADV. **loudly, softly | angrily, indignantly | helplessly, weakly | triumphantly | suddenly**
- PREP. **at, in** *They exclaimed in horror at the price.* **over** *standing in front of shop windows exclaiming over the beautiful clothes* **with** *She exclaimed with delight at the sight of the presents.*

exclamation *noun*

- ADJ. **sharp, sudden | loud | muffled, small**
- VERB + EXCLAMATION **give, let out, utter** *She gave a loud exclamation of delight.* | **stifle, suppress**

exclude *verb*

- ADV. **rigorously** | **altogether, completely, entirely, totally** | **not absolutely, not wholly** *The possibility of error cannot be absolutely excluded.* | **virtually** | **largely** | **permanently** | **apparently** | **clearly** | **automatically** *Unlawfully obtained evidence is not automatically excluded from a criminal trial.* | **necessarily** | **deliberately** | **explicitly, expressly, specifically** | **effectively** *By excluding children from pubs we are effectively excluding many parents.* | **systematically** | **unfairly**
- VERB + EXCLUDE **attempt to, be designed to, purport to, seek to** *a clause that seeks to exclude liability for death or serious injury* | **tend to** *tending to exclude certain groups from full participation in society*
- PREP. **from** *Women were excluded from the council.*
- PHRASES **feel excluded** *Many local people felt excluded from decisions that affected their own community.*

exclusion *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, total** | **virtual** | **continued** *women's continued exclusion from political life* | **social** *the problem of social exclusion*
- EXCLUSION + NOUN **zone** *A 20-mile exclusion zone was set up around the power station to guard against further explosions.*
- PREP. **to the ~ of** *Don't revise a few topics to the exclusion of all others.* | **~ from** *disciplinary measures including exclusion from school*

exclusive *adj.*

1 belonging to/used by only one person/group

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **almost** *the course's almost exclusive concentration on grammar* | **not necessarily** *The recording deal is not necessarily exclusive. The band can record material for other companies as well.*
- PREP. **to** *These products are exclusive to our shops.*

2 not welcoming to everyone

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain** | **keep sth** *The owners of the golf club are determined to keep it exclusive.*
- ADV. **very** | **quite, rather, somewhat** *a somewhat exclusive venue* | **necessarily** *The school is expensive and necessarily exclusive.* | **racially, socially**

3 not able to exist/be true at the same time

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **mutually** *The two options are not mutually exclusive* (= you can have them both).

excursion *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, short** | **day, evening, full-day, half-day, weekend** | **annual** | **organized** | **boat, coach, train** | **holiday, shopping, sightseeing**
- VERB + EXCURSION **go on, make** *We decided to make an all-day excursion to the island.* | **arrange, organize** | **take sb on**
- PREP. **~ to** *He took us on an excursion to the ruined city.*

excuse *noun*

1 reason given

- ADJ. **perfect, wonderful** | **good, legitimate, valid** | **convincing, plausible, reasonable** | **feeble, flimsy, lame, pathetic, poor** | **convenient, easy** *The children provided a convenient excuse for missing the party.* | **standard, usual** | **every** *She seized on every excuse to avoid doing the work.* | **the slightest** *He became moody and unreasonable, flailing out at Katherine at the slightest excuse.*
- VERB + EXCUSE **have** *He had no excuse for being so late.* | **give, make, offer** *She made some feeble excuse about the car having broken down.* ◇ *You don't have to make excuses for her* (= try to think of reasons for her behaviour). ◇ *It's late. I'm afraid I'll have to make my excuses* (= say I'm sorry, give my reasons and leave). | **give sb, offer sb, provide (sb with)** *Delivering the stuff for Rodney gave me an excuse to take the car.* ◇ *Her mother's illness provided her with an excuse to stay at home.* | **need** | **look for** | **find, invent, make up, seize on, think up** *She had to find a valid excuse for leaving the room.* ◇ *He made up a rather lame excuse for the work being late.* | **use sth as** *The political crisis is being used as an excuse to dock people's pay.* | **run out of** *He's run out of excuses for not tidying his room.* | **accept, believe** | **reject**
- PREP. **~ about** *He invented a pathetic excuse about losing his watch.* **~ for** *It's just an excuse for a party.*
- PHRASES **there is no excuse for …** *There's no excuse for such behaviour.*

2 bad example of sth

- ADJ. **pathetic, poor**
- PREP. **~ for** *Why get involved with that pathetic excuse for a human being?*

execute *verb*

1 kill sb as an official punishment

- ADV. **summarily** | **extrajudicially, illegally** | **publicly** | **wrongly** *innocent people who are wrongly executed*
- PREP. **for** *He was executed for treason.*

2 perform/carry out sth

- ADV. **beautifully, boldly, brilliantly, cleanly, meticulously, neatly, skilfully, successfully, well** *The movement was beautifully executed.* | **poorly**

execution *noun*

1 killing sb as an official punishment

- ADJ. **public** | **mass** | **judicial** | **extrajudicial** | **summary** | **political** | **mock**
- VERB + EXECUTION **order** *The tribunal ordered the execution of 42 coup plotters.* | **carry out** *Executions were carried out in the prison yard.* | **face** *If caught, the men could face execution.* | **await** *prisoners who are on death row awaiting execution* | **suffer** (*formal*) *She was taken prisoner and suffered eventual execution.* | **attend, watch, witness**
- EXECUTION + VERB **take place** *A bell was tolled when executions took place.*
- PREP. **~ by** *execution by hanging*
- PHRASES **a stay of execution** (= a delay in an execution being carried out) *The judge had granted a stay of execution.*

2 carrying out a plan/order

- ADJ. **successful** *the successful execution of the contract*
- VERB + EXECUTION **stay, suspend** *The court has discretion to stay or suspend execution of the order.*
- PHRASES **the execution of your duty** *She was charged with obstruction of a police officer in the execution of his duty.* **a stay of execution** (= a delay in an order being carried out)

executive *noun*

1 person with an important job in business

- ADJ. **chief, senior, top** *a top executive in a large corporation* | **junior** | **key** *contracts to prevent the loss of key executives* | **busy** | **high-flying, high-powered** | **female, woman** *The contract gives a female executive maternity leave rights.* | **business, company, corporate, industry** | **advertising, legal, marketing, media, public relations, sales, television**

2 group of people who run a company/organization

- ADJ. **central, national** | **political** | **government, party, union** *She is a member of the party's national executive.* | **strong** *Conservatives are by tradition believers in a strong executive.* | **elected**

- VERB + EXECUTIVE **control** *Parliament's ability to control the executive*
- EXECUTIVE + VERB **decide sth**
- EXECUTIVE + NOUN **member | meeting**
- PHRASES **a member of an executive**

exemplify *verb*

- ADV. **clearly, well**

exempt *verb*

- ADV. **expressly, specifically**
- PREP. **from** *Small businesses are expressly exempted from the requirements of this legislation.*

exempt *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | remain**
- ADV. **completely, entirely, totally, wholly | partially | automatically** *Pensioners are automatically exempt from prescription charges.*
- PREP. **from** *This income is totally exempt from taxation.*

exemption *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, full, total | blanket** *The bill gives sensitive police files a blanket exemption.* **| partial | temporary | special | tax**
- VERB + EXEMPTION **be entitled to, be subject to, enjoy, qualify for** *These goods are subject to exemption from tax.* ◇ *They enjoyed exemption from customs duties on goods to be used by themselves.* **| apply for, claim, seek | gain, get, obtain | give (sb), grant (sb) | refuse | waive** (*law*)
- EXEMPTION + VERB **apply (to sb/sth), cover sb/sth, relate to sb/sth** *The exemption which applies to homebuyers.*
- EXEMPTION + NOUN **clause**
- PREP. **~ for** *There are parking restrictions in the city centre with exemptions for disabled drivers.* **~ from** *You may be able to apply for exemption from local taxes.* **~ on** *tax exemptions on gifts to spouses*

exercise *noun*

1 use of the body to keep healthy

- ADJ. **good, healthy | hard, strenuous, vigorous | gentle, light, moderate** *Try to do fifteen minutes of gentle exercise every day.* **| regular | daily, morning | adequate | aerobic | mental, physical**
- VERB + EXERCISE **do, get, take** *John never does any exercise.* ◇ *Do you take enough exercise?* **| need**
- EXERCISE + NOUN **programme, regime, routine | class | bike | video**
- PREP. **during ~** *Stop frequently to rest during exercise until you are fitter.*
- PHRASES **a form/kind/type of exercise, lack of exercise** *Lack of exercise is a risk factor in heart disease.*

2 set of movements/activities

- ADJ. **basic, simple | keep-fit | warm-up | breathing, relaxation, strengthening, stretching | chest, leg, etc.**
- QUANT. **set**
- VERB + EXERCISE **do, perform** *Remember to do your breathing exercises every day.* ◇ *You may find it helpful to perform this exercise in front of the mirror.* **| devise** *You can devise your own exercises to music.* **| repeat**

3 set of questions

- ADJ. **easy, simple | difficult, hard | oral, practical, written | practice | comprehension, grammar, listening, translation, writing**
- QUANT. **set**
- VERB + EXERCISE **do | give sb, set (sb) | create**
- PREP. **~ in** *an exercise in translation*

4 use of a power/a right/a quality

- ADJ. **effective** *the effective exercise of power by the government* **| free** *the free exercise of informed choice* **| peaceful | legitimate, proper | improper**
- VERB + EXERCISE **limit, regulate | justify**
- PHRASES **the exercise of authority/power** *to limit the exercise of political power* **the exercise of discretion**

5 for a particular result

- ADJ. **simple, straightforward | major, massive | successful | interesting, useful, valuable, worthwhile | arbitrary, cosmetic, cynical, fruitless, futile, pointless** *In the end it proved a pointless exercise.* **| academic, intellectual, mental, (pen and) paper, technical, theoretical** *This is not a purely academic exercise: it should have a real impact on the way we work as a department.* ◇ *Role-playing situations allows a finer assessment to be made than in pen and paper exercises.* **| costly, expensive | political** *The whole consultation process was just a cynical political exercise.* **| joint | pilot** *After a successful pilot exercise last year, the new system is being introduced throughout the company.* **| consultation, cost-cutting, costing, damage limitation, evaluation, marketing, propaganda, publicity, public relations, research**
- VERB + EXERCISE **carry out, conduct, perform** *The company has just carried out a major cost-cutting exercise.* **| embark on, mount** *Before embarking on any exercise, you should conduct a cost-benefit analysis.* **| devise**
- PREP. **~ in** *The seminar was a valuable exercise in information exchange.*
- PHRASES **the aim/object of the exercise** *The object of the exercise is to increase public awareness of environmental issues.*

6 for soldiers/police

- ADJ. **training | flying, military, naval | joint** *US forces took part in joint exercises with the British Navy.*
- VERB + EXERCISE **do, go on, take part in** *The troops go on exercises twice a year.* **| mount**
- PREP. **on ~** *Half the regiment was away on exercise.*

exercise *verb*

- ADV. **effectively | properly | lawfully, rightfully** *the purposes for which power can be rightfully exercised*
- VERB + EXERCISE **be able to | be free to** *Managers are free to exercise their discretion in these cases.* **| be necessary to, need to** *It is necessary to exercise caution when making recommendations.* **| continue to** *The all-powerful steering committee continued to exercise control.* **| fail to** *You need to prove that the company's representative failed to exercise due care.*

exertion *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great | mental, physical** *Try to avoid physical exertion.*
- PREP. **from the ~** *She was hot and breathless from the exertion of cycling uphill.* **with ~** *flushed and sweating with exertion after digging the garden*

exhaust *noun*

- ADJ. **car, vehicle | diesel, petrol** *Diesel exhaust contains a lot of soot.*
- EXHAUST + NOUN **emission, fumes, gas, pollution, smoke | pipe, system**
- PREP. **from an/the ~** *pollution from car exhausts*

exhaust *verb*

1 make sb very tired

- ADV. **absolutely, completely, totally, utterly** *The swimming had completely exhausted him.* **| emotionally, mentally, physically** *The experience had exhausted her physically and emotionally.*

2 use sth up completely

• ADV. **completely, totally** | **almost, nearly** *The funds are nearly exhausted.* | **quickly, rapidly** *Their limited resources were quickly exhausted.*

exhausted *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** | **leave sb** *The row had left him physically exhausted.*

• ADV. **really** | **absolutely, completely, quite, thoroughly, totally, utterly** *He fell into bed utterly exhausted.* | **pretty, rather** | **emotionally, financially, mentally, physically** *financially exhausted countries*

• PREP. **from** *I was exhausted from the day's work.*

exhausting *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove** | **become** | **find sth**

• ADV. **really, very** *a really exhausting day* | **quite** | **a bit, fairly, pretty** | **emotionally, mentally, physically**

exhaustion *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, sheer, total, utter** | **emotional, mental, nervous, physical** | **heat**

• VERB + EXHAUSTION **suffer from** *She was taken to hospital suffering from exhaustion.* | **be close to** *He was hollow-eyed and seemed very close to exhaustion.* | **be overcome by, collapse from/with** *Two of the horses collapsed with exhaustion.* | **drive sb to, lead to** *Don't work too hard and drive yourself to exhaustion.* | **die from/of**

• PREP. **in ~** *He fell silent, with his head bowed in exhaustion.* **with ~** *She was faint with exhaustion.*

• PHRASES **at/to the point of exhaustion** *driven to the point of complete exhaustion* **a state of exhaustion**

exhaustive *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **by no means, not necessarily** *This list is by no means exhaustive.* | **fairly** *After a fairly exhaustive investigation, they were able to put things right.*

exhibition *noun*

• ADJ. **big, large** | **small** | **important, major** *a major exhibition of the painter's work* | **annual, summer** | **international, local** | **private, public** | **permanent** | **changing, special, temporary** *The library has a policy of mounting changing exhibitions.* ◇ *There is a series of special exhibitions throughout the year.* | **touring, travelling** *a touring exhibition of Impressionist drawings* | **collaborative, joint** | **one-man, one-person, one-woman, solo** *By 1914 Picasso had held one-man exhibitions in England, Germany and Spain.* | **retrospective** | **art, craft, photographic, etc.** | **trade** *the international food trade exhibition in Cologne*

• VERB + EXHIBITION **have, hold, host** *The museum hosted a big exhibition of her work last year.* | **house** *The old factory has been converted to house an exhibition.* | **attend, go to, see, visit** | **arrange, organize, plan** | **display, mount, present, put on, show, stage** *They plan to stage an art exhibition in a nearby town.* | **launch, open** *The mayor will open the exhibition next week.* | **sponsor** | **go on** *The Mappa Mundi will go on permanent exhibition at Hereford Cathedral.*

• EXHIBITION + VERB **open** *The exhibition opens at the Tate Gallery in July.* | **close, end** | **be on, be on view, run, take place** *The exhibition runs from 11 April to 5 July.* | **continue** | **move (on) to** *The exhibition moves on to the National Gallery, Washington, next month.* | **be called sth, be entitled sth** | **comprise sth, cover sth, feature sth, include sth, show sth** *The exhibition includes drawings by Rembrandt.* | **illustrate sth, trace sth** *an exhibition illustrating the history and development of the university* | **be dedicated to sb/sth, be devoted to sb/sth** *an exhibition devoted to female painters*

• EXHIBITION + NOUN **centre, gallery, hall, venue** | **space** *The new wing will provide 20 000 more square feet of exhibition space.* | **stand** *Hundreds of firms had exhibition stands.* | **catalogue** | **programme** *the gallery's exhibition programme for next year*

• PREP. **on ~** *A selection of her paintings is on exhibition at the Whitechapel Art Gallery.* | **~ of** *an exhibition of contemporary art* **~ on** *an exhibition on local history*

⇨ Note at ART

exile *noun*

1 being sent to live in another country

• ADJ. **long** | **permanent** | **enforced** | **self-imposed, voluntary** | **internal** *Many spent decades in labour camps or in internal exile.*

• VERB + EXILE **be driven/forced/sent into** | **flee into, go into** *The king went into exile after the overthrow of his government.* | **live in** *They joined the many other Armenians living in exile.* | **die in** | **return from** *He still hopes to return from exile one day.*

• PREP. **in ~** *She had spent 40 years in exile.* | **~ from** *Dante died in exile from Florence.*

• PHRASES **a place of exile**

2 person forced to live in another country

• ADJ. **political** | **tax** (= a rich person who moves to another country where taxes are lower)

• EXILE + VERB **return** *A general amnesty was granted, allowing political exiles to return freely.*

• PHRASES **the recall of exiles, the return of exiles**

exile *verb*

• ADV. **permanently, temporarily** | **effectively** *He was effectively exiled after a failed bid for power.*

• PREP. **from** *The family was exiled from France.* **to** *He was exiled to Siberia.*

exist *verb*

• ADV. **actually, really** *Do these creatures really exist?* | **already, still** *Few of these monkeys still exist in the wild.* | **currently** | **independently** *He argued that ideas do not exist independently of the language that expresses them.*

• VERB + EXIST **be known to** *the enormous volcanoes now known to exist on Mars* | **continue to** | **cease to**

existence *noun*

1 state of existing

• ADJ. **actual, real** *El Cid's actual existence is not in doubt.* ◇ *Since her illness, other people had become shadowy and had no real existence for her.* | **brief** | **continued, future** | **very** *The peasants depend on a good harvest for their very existence* (= in order to continue to live). | **mere** *The mere existence of these strange creatures fascinated him.* | **autonomous, independent, separate** *any organism capable of independent existence* | **human** *the mystery of human existence* | **material, physical** | **social**

• VERB + EXISTENCE **be in** *The idea of God in nature has been in existence for as long as human beings have worshipped.* | **come into, spring into** *The organization came into existence ten years ago.* ◇ *What are the chances of these molecules springing spontaneously into existence?* | **be crushed out of, go out of** *If you jump into a black hole you will get torn apart and crushed out of existence.* ◇ *There was a fear that the club might go out of existence for lack of support.* | **bring sth into, call sth into** *striving to bring into existence a new kind of society* | **be aware of, know of** | **be unaware of** | **assert** | **assume, postulate, presuppose** *The theory assumes the existence of a 'meritocracy'—that there is equal opportunity for all.* | **accept, acknowledge, believe in, recognize** *He didn't believe in the existence of God.* | **deny** | **doubt** | **imply, indicate, suggest** | **discover, reveal** | **confirm, demon-**

strate, establish, prove | disprove | explain *How do you explain the existence of closely related species in widely separated locations?* **| justify | forget, ignore** *The girl's parents continued to ignore her very existence.* **| resent** *Deep down I resented his existence.* **| jeopardize, threaten** *Climate changes threaten the continued existence of the species.* **| owe** *The school owed its existence to the generosity of one man.* **| be vital to** *A super-efficient sense of smell is no longer vital to our existence.*

• EXISTENCE + VERB **depend on/upon sth** *The company's existence depends on continued growth.*

• PREP. **in ~** *the only instrument of its kind in existence*

• PHRASES **a mode of existence** *the nature and significance of the temporal mode of existence* **the struggle for existence** *Darwin viewed the struggle for existence as being the major promoter of evolution.*

2 way of living

• ADJ. **bare, frugal, hand-to-mouth, miserable, precarious** *He lived a hand-to-mouth existence in the less attractive areas of London.* **| comfortable, ordered, peaceful, quiet | dull, humdrum, routine | isolated, lonely, solitary | nomadic | rural, suburban, urban | daily, day-to-day, everyday | previous, prior** *He claimed to be able to remember a previous existence.*

• VERB + EXISTENCE **enjoy, have, lead, live | eke out, endure** *They eke out a precarious existence foraging in rubbish dumps.*

exit *noun*

1 way out

• ADJ. **front, rear, side | emergency, fire | the nearest** *She headed for the nearest exit.*

• VERB + EXIT **head for, make for | bar, block** *Do not leave bags lying around which could block the emergency exits.*

• EXIT + NOUN **door, gate, route**

• PREP. **to/towards the ~** *They moved to the exits.*

2 act of leaving

• ADJ. **fast, hurried, quick, swift | dignified | early** *her early exit from the tournament, in only the second round* **| mass**

• VERB + EXIT **make** *She turned on her heel and made what she hoped was a dignified exit.*

• EXIT + NOUN **visa**

• PREP. **~ from** *a mass exit of members from the party*

3 for traffic

• ADJ. **motorway | northbound, southbound, etc.**

• VERB + EXIT **take**

• PREP. **~ for** *At the roundabout, take the exit for Swindon and Bristol.* **~ from** *Traffic lights control the exit from the M8 at Newbridge.*

exorbitant *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem**

• ADV. **grossly | quite** *The hotel charges quite exorbitant prices.* **| pretty**

expand *verb*

• ADV. **considerably, dramatically, enormously, greatly, hugely, massively, significantly, vastly** *The business has expanded greatly over the last year.* **| further | fast, quickly, rapidly | gradually, slowly | suddenly | steadily**

• VERB + EXPAND **aim to, be eager to, be keen to, hope to, look to, plan to, seek to, want to** *The firm is looking to expand its operations overseas.* **| help (to)** *The store has helped expand the British cheese market by encouraging small dairy farmers.* **| begin to | continue to | seem to**

• PREP. **from** *The number of managers has expanded from 700 to 1 300.* **into** *The village has expanded into a town.* **to**

expanse *noun*

• ADJ. **broad, endless, great, huge, large, vast, wide** *a vast expanse of sand* **| barren, bleak, empty** *a bleak expanse of concrete* **| flat** *looking out over the flat expanse of blackened fields* **| open | cold | grey, white** *the white expanses of the frozen north* **| shining** *the desk's shining expanse of polished wood*

• PREP. **~ of**

expansion *noun*

• ADJ. **big, considerable, enormous, great, huge, major, massive, significant, substantial, vast** *The company was now set for major expansion.* **| maximum | dramatic, marked, remarkable, unprecedented** *an unprecedented expansion in linguistic studies at British universities* **| rapid | gradual | steady | continued, further, sustained | eastward, westward, etc. | global, international, overseas, worldwide | successful | aggressive** *The board decided to embark on aggressive overseas expansion.* **| healthy | planned, proposed | uncontrolled | business, commercial, company | economic, industrial | colonial, imperial, territorial | population | urban**

• VERB + EXPANSION **show** *The economy is still showing healthy expansion.* **| allow (for), provide for** *The design of the front pockets allows for expansion.* **| be ripe for** *a ready-made hotel chain ripe for further expansion* **| be set for** *The company is set for further expansion into niche areas.* **| call for | go for, look for** *We are going for maximum expansion.* **| encourage, facilitate, promote | impede, limit, restrict | halt, stop | prevent | embark on | finance, fund** *In order to finance expansion on this scale, the government has relied heavily on borrowing.*

• EXPANSION + VERB **occur, take place**

• EXPANSION + NOUN **plan, programme**

• PREP. **~ into** *expansion into the luxury car market* **~ in** *a great age of expansion in trade and science*

• PHRASES **a period of expansion** *a period of rapid economic expansion* **the rate of expansion** *The rate of expansion of our overseas trade has been spectacular.* **potential/room/scope/space for expansion** *The company believes there is scope for expansion in this sector.*

expect *verb*

• ADV. **confidently** *She confidently expects to win.* **| fully** *My parents fully expect us to get married.* **| not really** *I didn't really expect them to come.* **| half** *I was half expecting to see Jim at the concert.* **| honestly** *Did you honestly expect me to believe that?*

• VERB + EXPECT **be reasonable to, can, can realistically, can reasonably** *We can expect to see an improvement in the weather over the next few days.* **| be unrealistic to, be unreasonable to, can hardly** *It would be unreasonable to expect them to do all that work for free.* ◇ *You can hardly expect to learn a foreign language in a few months.* **| would, would normally** *I would expect the factory to be working again as normal by next week.* **| be entitled to** *You are entitled to expect certain minimum standards of accommodation.*

• PREP. **from** *We expect good results from our employees.*

• PHRASES **(only) to be expected** *This kind of behaviour is to be expected from a two-year-old.* **expect a lot/too much of sb** *I think my parents always expected too much of me.* **when you least expect sth** *An accident can happen anywhere, at any time, just when you least expect it.*

expectation *noun*

• ADJ. **great, high | low** *Many children start with low expectations.* **| growing, rising | heightened, increased**

Heightened expectations for educational progress had not been realized. | **lowered** | **optimistic, positive** | **negative, pessimistic** | **normal** *The plaintiff is aged 30 and has a normal expectation of life.* | **clear, confident** | **legitimate** (*law*), **reasonable** | **false, naive, over-high, over-optimistic, unrealistic, unreasonable** | **disappointed** *There were disappointed expectations all round when the contents of his will became known.* | **wild** *This realization of our dreams surpassed even our wildest expectations.* | **future** | **general, widespread** *There is still a general expectation that married couples will have children.* | **popular, public** | **traditional** | **family, parental, social, teacher** | **market** | **economic** | **career, life**

• VERB + EXPECTATION **have, hold** *You have unrealistic expectations.* ◇ *differences in the expectations held by different social groups* | **form** *the way in which expectations are formed* | **arouse, build up, create, raise, set up** *the high expectations aroused by civil rights legislation* | **heighten** | **lower, reduce** *Her approach to welfare sought to lower people's expectations and impose work discipline.* | **influence, shape** *trying to influence public expectations of the police* | **come/live up to, fulfil, match, meet, realize, satisfy** *Her new car has not lived up to her expectations.* | **exceed, go beyond, surpass** | **fall short of** *The reality of the holiday fell short of our expectations.* | **confound** *The rise in share price confounded expectations.*

• EXPECTATION + VERB **rise, soar** *Once the government's promise was made, popular expectations soared.*

• PREP. **against ~** *Against all expectations, she was enjoying herself.* **contrary to ~** *The building work was completed on time, contrary to expectation.* **below ~** *What should you do when an employee's performance is disappointing and below expectation?* **beyond ~** *The scheme has produced results way beyond expectation.* ◇ *He had been successful beyond his expectations.* **in the ~ of/that** *The article was written before the election result in the clear expectation of a Labour victory.* | **~ about** *the government's expectations about the economy* **~ for** *We have high expectations for her future.* **~ of** *We certainly had a reasonable expectation of success.*

• PHRASES **have every expectation** *I have every expectation of cheering the team on to victory in the final.* **in line with expectations** *The various categories of operating expenditure are broadly in line with expectations.*

expedient *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove** | **become** | **consider sth, deem sth, think sth** | **find sth** *The government found it expedient to relax censorship a little.*

• ADV. **politically**

expedition *noun*

• ADJ. **great, major** *Finally, the great expedition set off for the long journey to the Holy Land.* | **small** | **joint, international** *The British agreed to a joint expedition with the French.* | **foreign** | **successful** | **collecting, fishing, foraging, hunting, shopping** | **archaeological, scientific** | **military, naval** | **punitive** *In response, Charles VI sent a punitive expedition to Brittany, raping and killing the populace.* | **Antarctic, Everest, etc.**

• VERB + EXPEDITION **go on, make** *He had made two expeditions to Spain to study wild plants.* | **embark on, set off/out on, undertake** *She was about to embark on a major expedition.* | **head, lead** | **join** | **organize, plan** | **launch, mount** *They plan to launch an expedition into the mountains.* | **send**

• EXPEDITION + VERB **leave, set off/out, start** | **return** *The expedition returned only two weeks after it had left.* | **reach sth** *On 21 January the expedition reached the South Pole.*

• EXPEDITION + NOUN **leader, member**

• PREP. **on an/the ~** *She was out on a shopping expedition.* | **~ against** *He led a military expedition against the rebels.* **~ into** *an expedition into the interior of Australia* **~ to** *a naval expedition to West Africa*

• PHRASES **a leader/member of an expedition**

expel *verb*

• ADV. **forcibly** *They were forcibly expelled from their farm by the occupying authorities.*

• PREP. **for, from** *He was expelled from school for disruptive behaviour.*

expenditure *noun*

• ADJ. **considerable, heavy, high, huge, major, massive** *The group is calling for higher expenditure on education.* | **low, modest** | **average** *the family's average expenditure on food* | **aggregate, overall, total** | **gross, net** | **additional, extra, further** | **increased** | **excessive** | **necessary, unnecessary** | **budget, budgeted, estimated, planned, projected, proposed** | **actual** *The next two items refer to actual expenditures incurred, rather than estimated needs.* | **current, future** *Pay constitutes two-thirds of all current expenditure.* | **annual** | **per capita** *the country with the highest per capita expenditure on health care in the EU* | **direct** *the total direct expenditure on training* | **operating** | **capital** *Capital expenditure can be financed by borrowing; operating expenditure should not.* | **local, national** | **federal, government, public, state** *Public expenditure was running at 44.6% of GNP.* | **departmental, household, personal** | **consumer** | **advertising, research and development** | **defence, health, military, social, welfare**

• QUANT. **item** *You may wish to take out a loan for a major item of expenditure.* | **level**

• VERB + EXPENDITURE **increase** | **control, curb, cut, limit, reduce** *plans to cut health expenditure* | **allow for, budget, provide for, plan, set** *The budget provided for expenditure of $2 billion.* ◇ *Expenditure was set at £16 million.* | **estimate, project, put** *Expenditure was put at 100 million euros.* | **incur** | **finance, meet** *Make sure you have enough in the current account to meet expenditure.* | **have** *Both brands had heavy advertising expenditure.* | **monitor**

• EXPENDITURE + VERB **go up, grow, increase, rise** | **fall, go down** | **amount to sth** *Total expenditure amounted to approximately £1 million.* | **run at sth** | **exceed sth** *people whose annual expenditure exceeds their income* | **arise from sth** *extra expenditure arising from the commission's report into health and safety*

• EXPENDITURE + NOUN **cut** *public expenditure cuts* | **level** | **pattern**

• PREP. **~ of** *government expenditure of more than £500 million* **~ on** *increased expenditure on the railway network*

• PHRASES **a cut/reduction in expenditure, an increase/a rise in expenditure**

expense *noun*

1 cost/money spent on sth

• ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, vast** | **additional, extra** | **unexpected** | **unnecessary** | **public** *The bridge was built at public expense.* | **personal**

• VERB + EXPENSE **go to, incur** *They went to all the expense of redecorating the house and then they moved.* | **put sb to** *Their visit put us to a lot of expense.* | **bear, cover, meet** *She had to meet the expense herself.* | **spare no** *No expense was spared* (= they spent as much money as was needed) *to make the party a success.* | **avoid** | **be worth** *The results are well worth the expense.*

• EXPENSE + VERB **arise**

• PREP. **at sb/sth's ~** *They had to repair the damage at their own expense.* ◇ *He built up the business at the expense of his health.* **at … ~** *The garden was transformed at great expense.* ◇ *The accommodation package includes admission to the golf course at no extra expense.*

2 sth that makes you spend money

- ADJ. **big, considerable | incidental** *Relocated employees received grants towards incidental expenses like buying carpets.* | **business, management** *Meetings, and the time for them, are a considerable management expense.*

3 expenses money spent for a particular purpose

- ADJ. **high** *Medical expenses can be quite high if you are not insured.* | **allowable, legitimate, reasonable** *You can claim back the tax on legitimate business expenses.* | **basic** *The guides are unpaid except for basic expenses.* | **out-of-pocket** (= paid for by an employee, to be claimed back later from the employer) *Any out-of-pocket expenses incurred on the firm's business will be reimbursed.* | **personal | living | household | operating, overhead, running | business, work-related | travel/travelling | relocation, removal | legal, medical | funeral**
- VERB + EXPENSE **incur | cover, defray, meet, pay, refund, reimburse** *He was given a sum of money to cover his travel expenses.* | **claim (back)** *They are claiming expenses for travel and overnight accommodation.* | **deduct** *You will have to pay income tax on the rent you receive, although you can deduct expenses such as insurance.*
- EXPENSES + VERB **arise** *You can expect to receive compensation for all expenses arising out of the accident.*
- EXPENSES + NOUN **expense account** *Put the cost of the meal on your expense account.* | **expense/expenses claim**
- PREP. **on ~** *a commercial traveller staying at the hotel on expenses*
- PHRASES **all expenses paid** *a two-day, all expenses paid trip to London*

expensive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, prove, seem, sound** *Her suit looked extremely expensive.* | **become, get** *Holidays in this country are getting very expensive.* | **make sth** *Adding these safety features would make the cars too expensive.* | **find sth** *I found the food very expensive.*
- ADV. **amazingly, astronomically, enormously, exceedingly, extortionately, extremely, frighteningly, hideously, highly, horrendously, horribly, hugely, immensely, incredibly, inordinately, ludicrously, massively, outrageously, ridiculously, ruinously, terribly, vastly, very** *Some of these legal cases are enormously expensive.* | **impossibly, prohibitively** *Giving every patient an annual anti-flu injection would be prohibitively expensive.* | **increasingly | a bit, comparatively, fairly, moderately, pretty, quite, rather, relatively | correspondingly** *Walls are generally the greatest source of heat loss and correspondingly expensive to tackle.* | **needlessly, unduly, unnecessarily | notoriously | obviously | discreetly** *discreetly expensive perfume*

experience *noun*

1 knowledge/skill got from seeing/doing sth

- ADJ. **considerable, extensive, long, wide | good, invaluable, relevant, unrivalled, valuable** *She didn't get paid much but it was all good experience.* ◇ *Both candidates for the presidency were short of relevant experience.* ◇ *Rolls Royce's unrivalled experience in high technology manufacturing* | **previous** *Do you have any previous experience of this type of work?* | **direct, first-hand, hands-on, practical** *the importance of hands-on experience as well as academic training* | **professional, work**
- VERB + EXPERIENCE **have | lack | gain, get | broaden** *She wanted to broaden her experience in international affairs.*
- PREP. **~ of** *She has considerable professional experience of translation.*
- PHRASES **a lack of experience, a wealth of experience** *The veteran goalkeeper will bring a wealth of experience to the team.*

2 the things that have happened to you

- ADJ. **past** *We're in for a difficult couple of weeks, if past experience is anything to go by.* | **direct, first-hand, hands-on, personal | subjective** *Experience is subjective and very hard to measure.* | **vicarious** *I love reading: I have an insatiable appetite for vicarious experience.* | **common, shared** *his peers, with whom he shares the common experience of being black in a white society* | **common** *It is a matter of common experience that disorder will increase if things are left to themselves.* | **everyday** *Choose illustrative examples from the children's everyday experience.* | **human** *There are few areas of human experience that have not been written about.* | **sensory**
- VERB + EXPERIENCE **have | share | draw on, learn by/from/through** *In her book, she draws on her first-hand experience of mental illness.* ◇ *We all learn by experience.* | **be based on** *The book is based on personal experience.*
- EXPERIENCE + VERB **suggest sth, teach (sb) sth** *Experience has taught me that life can be very unfair.*
- PREP. **by/from ~** *We know from experience that hot objects are painful to touch.* **in sb's ~** *In my experience, very few people really understand the problem.* **~ of** *He has direct experience of poverty.*

3 event/activity that affects you

- ADJ. **enjoyable, exhilarating, good, interesting, memorable, pleasant, rewarding, unforgettable, valuable | bad, harrowing, painful, traumatic, unnerving, unsettling** *I had a bad experience with fireworks once.* | **hair-raising, nerve-racking** *a hair-raising experience of white-water rafting* | **humbling, salutary, sobering | personal, subjective | common, shared** *The use of drama can motivate students by allowing them to share a common experience.* | **common** *It is a common experience to feel that an author writes well, without being able to say why.* | **real-life | past | childhood, early, formative** *Early experiences shape the way we face up to and deal with crises in later life.* | **educational, learning | mystical, religious, visionary | psychic | sexual | near-death**
- VERB + EXPERIENCE **enjoy, go through, have, undergo** *She has been through a very traumatic experience.* ◇ *I think you will enjoy the experience of taking part in the show.* | **come through, get over** *It could take him years to get over this experience.* | **describe, recount, talk about | share, swap** *Does anyone have any experiences—good or bad—that they would like to share with the group?* | **relive** *Reliving past experiences can release powerful feelings that have been pent up too long.* | **be based on** *The novel is based on his experiences in the war.*
- PHRASES **quite an experience** *It was quite an experience being involved in making a television programme.*

experience *verb*

- ADV. **actually | directly, first-hand** *He hadn't directly experienced the fighting in the city.* ◇ *people who have actually experienced these problems first-hand* | **subjectively**

experienced *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound | become**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, immensely, really, vastly, very** *The staff are all highly experienced.* | **fully | quite | sufficiently, suitably** *The task needs the skills of a suitably experienced engineer.* | **widely** *a widely experienced and articulate politician* | **sexually**
- PREP. **in** *She's very experienced in looking after children.*

experiment *noun*

- ADJ. **animal** *protesting against animal experiments* | **field, laboratory | educational, medical, psychological, scientific | practical | thought** *His efforts involved thought experiments and analogies, rather than detailed experimentation.* | **simple | brief | careful, control** (*sci-*

ence), **controlled** | **interesting** | **ingenious** | **pioneering** | **bold** *the country's bold experiment with economic reform* | **successful, unsuccessful** | **pilot, preliminary** | **further** *Further experiments will be carried out to verify this result.* | **celebrated, classic/classical, famous, well-known** *Pavlov's famous experiment with the dog and the dinner bell* | **unique** *Brazil's unique experiment with alcohol-fuelled cars*

- VERB + EXPERIMENT **carry out, conduct, do, perform** | **try** *The school decided to try an experiment in single-sex teaching.* | **design** | **set up** | **describe, report** *a classic experiment reported in 1964*
- EXPERIMENT + VERB **confirm sth, demonstrate sth, find sth, illustrate sth, prove sth, show sth** | **indicate sth, suggest sth** | **be aimed at sth, be designed to do sth** *an experiment aimed at cutting road deaths resulting from excessive speeding* | **involve sth, use sth** | **be successful, work** *If the conditions are not right, the experiment will not work.* | **fail**
- PREP. **by ~** *The appropriate concentration of the drug is best determined by experiment.* **during an/the ~** *The animals seemed healthy during the experiment.* **in an/the ~** *In these experiments, chilling is necessary.* | **~ in** *the country's brief experiment in multi-party democracy* **~ on** *The team carried out experiments on cancer tissue.* **~ with** *conducting an experiment with zinc chips and hydrochloric acid*

experiment *verb*

- ADV. **successfully**
- VERB + EXPERIMENT **begin to** | **continue to**
- PREP. **on** *They experimented successfully on the plants to discover disease-resistant varieties.* **with** *We have experimented with various different designs of kite.*

expert *noun*

- ADJ. **real** | **leading** | **acknowledged, recognized** | **professional, qualified** | **self-proclaimed, self-styled** | **so-called** | **international, world** *She is a world expert on butterflies.* | **local** | **independent, outside** | **computer, financial, gardening, health, legal, marketing, medical, military, scientific, technical, etc.**
- QUANT. **committee, panel, team** *A panel of experts will answer questions from the television audience.*
- VERB + EXPERT **consult, take advice from, talk to**
- EXPERT + VERB **advise sb/sth, agree sth, argue sth, believe sth, claim sth, fear sth, predict sth, reckon sth, recommend sth, say sth** *Experts agree that a balanced diet is the key to great health.*
- PREP. **~ at** *He's an expert at getting his own way.* **~ in** *an expert in skin care* **~ on** *an expert on European art*

expertise *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, extensive, great** | **limited** | **appropriate, relevant** *Each area of the curriculum should be led by a staff member with appropriate expertise.* | **necessary** *MPs may lack the necessary expertise to scrutinize legislation effectively.* | **established, existing** | **particular, special/specialist, specific** *areas of special expertise* | **collective, combined, shared** *They met regularly to share experiences and develop their collective expertise.* | **in-house, local, outside** *We sometimes have to call on outside expertise.* | **staff** | **subject** | **academic, business, clinical, engineering, financial, legal, management/managerial, marketing, medical, professional, scientific, technical, technological**
- QUANT. **degree, level** *A high degree of expertise is required for this stage of the manufacturing process.*
- VERB + EXPERTISE **have** *She has great expertise in these matters.* | **lack** | **need, require** | **acquire, develop, gain** | **build on** *This project builds on the existing expertise of staff at the centre.* | **provide** *Professor Simpson provided expertise in engineering.* | **apply, bring, bring to bear, use** *How could he apply his academic expertise to practical matters?* ◇ *He will bring a great deal of expertise to bear on this issue.* | **bring together, call on, draw on** *The project brings together expertise in teaching and library provision.* ◇ *We need to draw on the professional expertise of a large number of teachers.* | **rely on** | **pass on, share** *The teachers would be available to share expertise and offer advice.*
- EXPERTISE + VERB **be available** *We need to discover what relevant expertise is available to us.*
- PREP. **~ in** *gaining expertise in specialist financial areas* **~ on** *She brings expertise on general financial and technical matters.*
- PHRASES **an area/a field of expertise, a range of expertise** *The variety of technology requires a wide range of expertise.*

expire *verb*

- VERB + EXPIRE **be due to** *His contract is due to expire at the end of this year.*

explain *verb*

- ADV. **in detail** *I wrote explaining the issues in great detail.* | **fully** *The reasons for the accident have not been fully explained.* | **adequately, properly, satisfactorily** | **partly** *This partly explains why he was so late.* | **briefly** | **easily, readily** *This phenomenon can be easily explained.* | **clearly** | **carefully** | **patiently** *The doctor explained patiently what the treatment would be.* | **earnestly** | **concisely, succinctly, tersely** *The general principles behind the method used are explained clearly and concisely.* ◇ *'We've already paid,' I explained tersely.* | **awkwardly, lamely** | **breathlessly, excitedly**
- VERB + EXPLAIN **be able/unable to, can/could** *I know I'm late, but I can explain why.* | **attempt to, seek to, try to** | **help (to)** | **purport to** *Many theories purport to explain growth in terms of a single cause.* | **be difficult to, be hard to** *It's difficult to explain exactly how the system works.* | **hasten to** *She saw his quick frown and hastened to explain.* | **let sb** *Let me explain what I mean.*
- PREP. **about** *She tried to explain about her fears and anxieties.* **to** *She explained the plan to me very carefully.*
- PHRASES **explain everything** *I've got a letter here which explains everything.* **go a long way/some way towards explaining sth** *This goes some way towards explaining the hostility between the two groups.*

explanation *noun*

- ADJ. **convincing, credible, good, likely, logical, natural, obvious, plausible, probable, rational** *The most likely explanation is that his plane was delayed.* | **implausible, inadequate, unlikely** | **acceptable, adequate, reasonable, satisfactory, sufficient** | **no apparent** *There was no apparent explanation for the attack.* | **clear, coherent** | **complete, comprehensive, detailed, full** | **partial** | **complex, complicated** | **easy, simple** | **innocent, prosaic** *There's sure to be a perfectly innocent explanation for all this—though I admit it looks bizarre.* | **convenient** | **accepted, traditional** *There is no generally accepted explanation of this practice.* | **official** | **possible** | **correct, real, true** | **brief** | **lengthy, long** | **verbal** | **general** | **common** *the common explanations for hooliganism* | **only, sole** *It's the only explanation that makes any kind of sense.* | **causal** *The causal explanation must be that old age causes poverty, not that poverty causes people to be old.* | **ad hoc, post hoc** *post hoc* (= after the event) *explanations of historical changes that would have made no sense to anyone living at the time* | **cultural, historical, political, psychological, scientific, sociological, technical, theoretical**
- VERB + EXPLANATION **have** *I had no explanation for*

her strange behaviour. | **give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *He only offered a partial explanation for his lateness.* | **enter into, go into, launch into** *She launched into a detailed explanation of every aspect of her work.* | **advance, propose, put forward** *one explanation advanced by Marxist historians* | **call for, need, require** *An explanation is clearly called for.* | **look for, seek** | **find, think of** *I can think of one possible explanation for her behaviour.* | **ask for, demand** *She wrote to the company demanding an explanation.* | **wait for** | **deserve, merit** *I suppose you deserve an explanation.* | **owe sb** *I think you owe me an explanation.* | **accept** | **defy** *Her success has been so remarkable as to defy explanation.*

• EXPLANATION + VERB **lie** *The simplest explanation for his achievements lies in his greater ability and superiority over his contemporaries at university.* | **emerge, occur to sb, present itself, suggest itself** *No single clear explanation emerged from the experiments.* ◇ *A more credible explanation now occurred to her.* ◇ *Another quite plausible explanation presented itself.*

• PREP. **in ~** *'I've worked with them before, you see,' he added, in explanation.* **without ~** *She left suddenly and without explanation.* | **~ about** *He entered into a technical explanation about software and programming.* **~ as to** *He provided no explanation as to why he was late.* **~ for** *There is probably some perfectly logical explanation for their behaviour.* **~ from** *We are still waiting for a full explanation from the teacher concerned.*

• PHRASES **an attempt at explanation** *The men left quickly with no attempt at explanation.* **by way of explanation** *'I had to see you,' he said, by way of explanation.*

explicable *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **become**

• ADV. **easily, readily** *The sudden increase in sales is easily explicable.* | **entirely, perfectly, wholly** *His behaviour is entirely explicable.* | **largely** | **partly**

• PREP. **by** *The delay is partly explicable by the roadworks.* **in terms of** *The differences in the children's achievements were not wholly explicable in terms of their social backgrounds.*

explicit *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become** | **make sth, render sth** *We think such information should be made explicit and not left vague.*

• ADV. **highly** *a highly explicit description of torture* | **absolutely, fully, quite** *Our orders were quite explicit.* | **increasingly** | **fairly, relatively** | **sufficiently** | **sexually**

• PREP. **about** *The government has been quite explicit about its intentions.* **as to** *She told him he needed to be more creative, without being explicit as to what this meant in practice.*

explode *verb*

1 blow up

• VERB + EXPLODE **be liable to** *The chemical is liable to explode on contact with water.* | **fail to** *A blast bomb was thrown but the device failed to explode.*

2 get angry/dangerous/moving

• ADV. **literally** | **suddenly**

• VERB + EXPLODE **be about to, be ready to, be set to** *A row over public spending is set to explode.* | **be liable to, be likely to** | **seem to**

• PREP. **into** *He suddenly exploded into action.* **with** *She literally exploded with anger.*

exploit *noun*

• ADJ. **dare-devil, daring** | **legendary** *His courage and exploits were legendary.* | **military, sexual, sporting** *bragging about his sexual exploits*

exploit *verb*

1 treat sb unfairly for your own advantage

• ADV. **mercilessly, ruthlessly** *The workers are ruthlessly exploited by their employers.* | **cynically** *He pursued his own interests, cynically exploiting his privileged position as trustee.* | **deliberately** | **sexually**

2 make the best use of sth

• ADV. **extensively, heavily** | **fully, to the full** *The firm has been successful in exploiting new technology to the full.* | **further** | **widely** | **effectively, profitably, successfully** | **properly** | **quickly** | **easily** | **cleverly, skilfully** *The architect has cleverly exploited new materials and building techniques.* | **commercially** *She was keen to exploit her discovery commercially.*

• VERB + EXPLOIT **be determined to, be keen to, hope to, seek to** | **be quick to** *The team were quick to exploit their competitive advantage.* | **attempt to** | **fail to**

exploitation *noun*

1 unfair use of sb

• ADJ. **brutal, ruthless** *her ruthless exploitation of popular fear* | **capitalist, class, economic, industrial, sexual**

• VERB + EXPLOITATION **prevent** | **struggle against** *The party's avowed aim was to struggle against capitalist exploitation.* | **be open to, be vulnerable to** *Migrant workers are vulnerable to exploitation.* | **be based on** *societies based on the exploitation of slaves*

2 use of sth

• ADJ. **effective, efficient, full, successful** | **direct** *the direct exploitation of natural forests* | **large-scale** | **sustainable** | **commercial** | **mineral**

• VERB + EXPLOITATION **be open for, be ripe for** *Emergent democracies created markets that were ripe for exploitation.*

exploration *noun*

1 of a place

• ADJ. **gas, mineral, oil, petroleum** | **polar, space** | **offshore** *the heavy cost of offshore oil exploration* | **archaeological, scientific** | **speculative** | **extensive** | **detailed**

• VERB + EXPLORATION **carry out** *Extensive exploration was carried out using the latest drilling technology.* | **continue**

• EXPLORATION + VERB **take place** *areas where mineral exploration is taking place*

• EXPLORATION + NOUN **activity, drilling** *Exploration activity slowed during the 1970s.* | **programme** | **company** *an oil exploration company*

• PREP. **~ for** *speculative exploration for oil*

2 of an idea/subject

• ADJ. **brief** | **extensive** | **deep, full** | **careful, detailed** *My ideas on semantics needed more careful exploration.* | **creative, critical** *creative exploration of music as a medium in education* | **intellectual** | **personal** *her personal exploration of spirituality*

• VERB + EXPLORATION **need** | **continue**

explore *verb*

1 travel around an area

• VERB + EXPLORE **be keen to, want to, wish to** | **be free to** *In the afternoon you'll be free to explore a little on your own.*

• PREP. **for** *exploring for oil*

2 think about sth in detail

• ADV. **extensively** | **briefly** | **fully, thoroughly** *These questions have not been fully explored yet.* | **properly, systematically** | **carefully, in detail** *This idea is worth exploring in some detail.* | **further** | **usefully** *The film usefully explores some of the issues surrounding adoption.*

• VERB + EXPLORE **need to** | **be keen to, want to, wish to** | **aim to, seek to** | **begin to, continue to**

explorer *noun*

• ADJ. **great** *the great British explorers of the sixteenth century* | **intrepid** | **Antarctic, Arctic, polar**

explosion *noun*

1 sudden loud bursting/exploding

• ADJ. **almighty, big, deafening, enormous, huge, loud, major, massive, powerful, serious, tremendous, violent** | **minor, small** | **muffled** *There was a muffled explosion somewhere on their right.* | **distant** *The floor shook with a distant explosion.* | **controlled** | **test** *a nuclear test explosion* | **accidental** | **bomb, chemical, gas, mine, volcanic** | **atomic, nuclear** | **terrorist** | **political, social** (*figurative*) *The shock waves of this political explosion engulfed the whole of Europe.*

• VERB + EXPLOSION **cause, set off, trigger** *The build-up of gas caused a small explosion.* | **carry out** *Bomb disposal experts carried out a controlled explosion on the suspect package.* | **hear** | **prevent**

• EXPLOSION + VERB **come, happen, occur, take place** *The explosion came 20 minutes after a coded warning to the police.* ◇ *The explosion occurred just after midday.* | **shake sth** *The explosion shook nearby homes.* | **destroy sth, rip through sth, wreck sth** *A massive explosion ripped through the chemical works.* | **injure sb, kill sb** | **echo** *A loud explosion echoed round the valley.*

• PREP. **in an/the ~** *3 people were injured in the explosion.*

2 sudden large increase

• ADJ. **sudden** | **veritable** *In the 1860s a veritable explosion of major scientific publications took place.* | **population** | **information** *trying to keep up with the information explosion* | **price, wage**

• EXPLOSION + VERB **occur, take place**

• PREP. **~ in** *a sudden explosion in the number of students* **~ of** *an explosion of interest in learning Japanese*

explosive *noun*

• ADJ. **high** *a bomb containing 200 lb of high explosive* | **commercial, home-made** | **chemical, conventional, plastic, semtex**

• VERB + EXPLOSIVE **make, manufacture** | **plant** *They planted explosives in the tunnel.* | **detonate, set off**

• EXPLOSIVE + NOUN **explosives expert**

explosive *adj.*

1 capable of exploding

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **highly** *a highly explosive mixture of gases*

2 causing strong feelings

• VERBS **be** | **become**

• ADV. **highly** *Race is a highly explosive issue.* | **potentially** *The political situation is potentially explosive.*

exponent *noun*

• ADJ. **chief, foremost, leading, main, principal** | **great, outstanding** | **famous, well-known** | **early** *He was an early exponent of multimedia in the classroom.*

• PREP. **~ of** *a leading exponent of the Japanese flute*

export *noun*

• ADJ. **important, main, major, principal, staple** *Coconut is one of the staple exports of the islands.* | **record** *The industry has achieved record exports in the past year.* | **total** *In 2001 total exports were valued at $2 billion.* | **British, US, etc.** | **world** *The US share of world exports has declined.* | **illegal, illicit** *stopping the illegal export of live animals* | **live** *lambs for live export* | **invisible** *Earnings from the sale of banking, insurance and other services to foreigners are described as 'invisible exports'.* | **capital, commodity** | **agricultural, industrial, manufactured, manufacturing** | **arms, art, banana, beef, coal, coffee, food, grain, oil, timber, etc.**

• QUANT. **level, value, volume**

• VERB + EXPORT **boost, encourage, expand, increase, promote** | **reduce, restrict** *plans to restrict the export of arms to certain countries* | **allow** | **ban, prohibit** | **achieve** | **prevent, stop** | **await** *yards where thousands of cars await export*

• EXPORT + VERB **grow, increase, rise** *Oil exports have risen steadily.* | **drop, fall** | **be valued at sth, total sth** *Exports totalled $10 billion in 2002.* | **account for sth** *Oil exports account for nearly 80% of the country's foreign earnings.* | **be destined for sth** *Scottish exports destined for Western Europe*

• EXPORT + NOUN **crop, goods** | **business, industry, trade** | **market, sector** | **earnings, revenue, sales** | **figures, performance** *a strong export performance* | **growth** | **controls, licence, quota, restrictions** *a call for tougher art export controls* | **ban** *an export ban on live cattle* | **drive** *the export drive by Japanese industry* | **order** *how to win more export orders*

• PREP. **for ~** *This is where the fruit is packaged for export.* | **~ from** *exports from the EU to Canada* **~ to**

• PHRASES **a ban on exports** *to place a ban on exports of toxic waste* **a decline/fall in exports, an increase/a rise in exports**

⇨ Note at PER CENT (for more verbs)

export *verb*

• ADV. **widely** *a French breed of cattle that has been exported widely* | **illegally** *illegally exported works of art*

• PREP. **from** *Last year 2 000 birds were exported from the island.* **to** *The country exports sugar to Europe.*

exporter *noun*

• ADJ. **big, large** | **leading, major** | **food, oil** *the biggest oil exporter in the world* | **net** *The country is a net exporter of food.*

expose *verb*

1 uncover sth

• ADV. **completely, fully** | **briefly** | **suddenly** | **deliberately** *She lifted her chin in a gesture that deliberately exposed the line of her throat.*

• PREP. **to** *These drawings must not be exposed to the air.*

2 show the truth

• ADV. **fully** | **clearly** *a report which clearly exposes the weakness of the government's economic policy* | **publicly** *He was publicly exposed as a liar and a cheat.* | **cruelly** *He was outclassed by an Aston Villa side that cruelly exposed his lack of pace.*

• VERB + EXPOSE **threaten to** | **seek to, try to**

3 to sth harmful

• ADV. **directly** | **constantly** *The general public is constantly exposed to radiation.* | **regularly**

• PREP. **to**

exposed *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel** | **become** | **leave sb/sth** *Depletion of the ozone layer leaves the earth's surface increasingly exposed to harmful radiation from the sun.*

• ADV. **extremely, heavily** (*business*), **highly, very** *The country became highly exposed to the vagaries of international markets.* | **completely, fully, totally** | **increasingly** | **fairly, rather, relatively** | **dangerously, painfully** *The postponement of difficult decisions left the government dangerously exposed to American influence.*

• PREP. **to** *The garden was very exposed to westerly winds.*

exposure *noun*

1 to sth harmful

• ADJ. **high, massive | maximum | excessive | low-level | long, long-term, prolonged | brief | constant, continued, continuous, repeated | chemical, radiation, sun | human** *human exposure to asbestos*

• VERB + EXPOSURE **receive, suffer** *She suffered a massive exposure to toxic chemicals.* | **increase | limit, minimize, reduce** *Banks will seek to minimize their exposure to risk.* | **avoid**

• PREP. **~ to** *The report recommends people to avoid prolonged exposure to sunlight.*

2 to experience

• ADJ. **brief | greater | limited**

• VERB + EXPOSURE **give sb | get, have | increase**

• PREP. **~ to** *giving children greater exposure to other cultures*

3 showing the truth

• ADJ. **full** *full exposure of the links between government officials and the arms trade* | **public**

4 on TV/in newspapers, etc.

• ADJ. **regular | media, press, television**

• VERB + EXPOSURE **give sb/sth** *The magazine aims to give exposure to the work of women artists.* | **gain, get, have, receive** *a would-be television personality who is constantly trying to get media exposure*

express *verb*

• ADV. **well** *Perhaps I have not expressed myself very well.* | **fully** *She expresses herself most fully in her paintings.* | **openly** *He expressed his anger openly.* | **clearly | cogently** *Students must learn to express a point of view cogently and with clarity.* | **exactly, precisely | concisely, succinctly | eloquently** *The poet eloquently expresses the sense of lost innocence.*

• VERB + EXPRESS **be/feel able/unable to** *Many patients feel unable to express their fears.* | **find it difficult to**

• PHRASES **a chance/an opportunity to express sth**

expression *noun*

1 showing feelings/ideas

• ADJ. **clear, coherent** *Her statement was a clear expression of her views on this subject.* | **concrete, material, practical, tangible** *The report gave concrete expression to the fears of many immigrants.* | **direct** *Just because there is no direct expression of prejudice, that does not mean the prejudice does not exist.* | **full** *The new concept of form reached its fullest expression in the work of Picasso.* | **highest, perfect, ultimate** *His highest expression of praise was 'Not bad!' ◇ the highest expression of human creativity* | **effective, powerful | simple | natural** *He wanted to write a verse drama in which the verse would seem a natural expression of modern life.* | **spontaneous | free** *the right of free expression* | **open, overt, public** *the open expression of emotion* | **outward** *the outward expression of inner emotional feelings* | **formal | characteristic, classic** *Modernism was the characteristic expression of the experience of modernity.* | **unique | collective** *Harvest festival was the occasion for the collective expression of a community's religious values.* | **individual, personal** *to allow scope for individual expression* | **visible, visual | emotional, physical, sexual, verbal | artistic, creative, cultural, linguistic, literary, musical, poetic, political, religious | human**

• VERB + EXPRESSION **achieve, find, reach, receive** *an anger and frustration that finds expression in* (= is shown in) *violence* | **allow sth, give sth** *The method is to listen to the music and allow expression to whatever comes to you. ◇ Only in his dreams does he give expression to his fears.* | **demand, need, require** *Suddenly her deeper feelings demanded expression.*

• PREP. **beyond~** *She suddenly felt happy beyond expression* (= so happy that she could not express it).

• PHRASES **freedom of expression** *Freedom of expression* (= freedom to say what you think) *is a basic human right.* **a means of expression** *Words, as a means of expression, can be limiting.*

2 on sb's face

• ADJ. **bland, blank, frozen, set, vacant | dazed, glazed | deadpan** *cracking jokes with a deadpan expression on his face* | **curious, enigmatic, inscrutable, odd, strange, unreadable | guarded | searching | faraway | thoughtful, wistful | doubtful, wary | anxious, troubled, worried | bleak, grim, serious | angry, fierce, furious, stern | hangdog, hunted, lugubrious, melancholy, mournful, pained, sad | brooding, intense, rapt | surprised, shocked | baffled, bemused, bewildered, puzzled, quizzical | alert | amused, wry | benign, sympathetic | satisfied, smug | innocent | fleeting | facial**

• VERB + EXPRESSION **have, wear** *She had a very bewildered expression on her face. ◇ The children's faces all wore the same rapt expression.* | **assume, put on** *She carefully put on her most innocent expression.* | **take on** *Rose's face took on the fierce expression of a schoolgirl talking about her most hated teacher.* | **catch, see** *Catching a fleeting expression on Lucy's face, she persisted with her question.* | **watch | gauge, read** *I looked at her, trying to read the expression on her face.* | **change** *His face never changed expression.*

• EXPRESSION + VERB **alter, change** *His expression changed to embarrassment.* | **relax, soften** *His expression softened when he saw her.* | **darken, harden** *Her expression hardened into one of strong dislike.* | **freeze | betray sth, reveal sth, show sth, suggest sth, tell sb sth** *Her expression betrayed nothing of her thoughts. ◇ His grim expression told her it would be useless.* | **give nothing away | cross sth, flit across sth** *She had been watching the expression that crossed his face.*

• PREP. **without~** *'Go on,' she said, without expression.* | **~ of** *He wore an expression of anxiety on his face.*

• PHRASES **the expression in sb's eyes/on sb's face** *He looked at her with a very strange expression in his eyes.*

3 words

• ADJ. **common | outdated | colloquial, slang | favourite | memorable | strange, unusual | figurative, idiomatic | coarse, vulgar | American, English, etc. | geographical** *Until the mid-nineteenth century, 'Italy' was just a geographical expression.*

• VERB + EXPRESSION **use** *He tends to use strange expressions like 'It's enough to make a cat laugh'.*

• EXPRESSION + VERB **mean sth**

expressive *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become**

• ADV. **deeply, highly, very, wonderfully** *She has a wonderfully expressive voice.* | **emotionally**

• PREP. **of** *His art is deeply expressive of emotions.*

expulsion *noun*

• ADJ. **automatic | immediate | mass | forced**

• VERB + EXPULSION **lead to, result in** *Copying from another candidate results in automatic expulsion.* | **call for, demand | order** *The government ordered the immediate expulsion of the two men.* | **be threatened with, face** *Several pupils now face expulsion.* | **appeal against** *an ex-party member who intends to appeal against his expulsion*

• PREP. **~ from** *her expulsion from the society*

• PHRASES **ground(s) for expulsion** *His disruptive behaviour was felt to be sufficient grounds for his expulsion.*

extend *verb*

- ADV. **greatly, significantly** *Next year we will greatly extend the range of goods that we sell.*
- PREP. **from, to** *The repayment period will be extended from 20 years to 25 years.*

extension *noun*

1 part added to a building

- ADJ. **planned, proposed | home, kitchen | one-storey, two-storey, etc.**
- VERB + EXTENSION **add, build**
- PREP. **~ to** *They're building an extension to their house.*

2 extra time

- ADJ. **one-week, two-year, etc.**
- VERB + EXTENSION **apply for, ask for, request** *He's applied for an extension of his visa.* | **get, receive** *She got an extension for writing her essay.* | **give sb, grant sb**

3 making sth larger/taking sth further

- ADJ. **considerable, great, major, massive, significant | modest | further** *This new job is a further extension of his role as a manager.* | **general | gradual** *a gradual extension of the powers of central government* | **hair** *Hair extensions are pieces of artificial hair that are added to your hair to make it longer.*

4 taking an argument/a situation further

- ADJ. **logical, natural, obvious** *The team appraisal is a logical extension of the individual appraisal interview.*
- PREP. **by ~** *The blame lies with the teachers and, by extension, with the Education Service.*

extent *noun*

- ADJ. **full, greatest, maximum, overall** *The overall extent of civilian casualties remained unclear.* | **actual, exact, precise, true | geographical, territorial**
- VERB + EXTENT **reach** *The railway network had reached its greatest extent in route mileage.* | **see | consider, examine, explore, investigate | assess, calculate, estimate, evaluate, gauge, judge, measure | define, determine, establish, identify** *a statement defining the extent of Latvia's territory* | **discover | acknowledge, appreciate, realize, recognize | know, understand** *We do not yet know the extent of her injuries.* | **demonstrate, illustrate, indicate, make clear, reflect, reveal, show** *The operation revealed the extent of the cancer.* | **outline** *a lengthy agenda outlining the extent of global environmental problems* | **discuss | clarify, explain | emphasize, highlight, underline** *The victory underlined the extent to which Prussia had become a major power.* | **exaggerate, overstate** *She was exaggerating the true extent of the problem.* | **overestimate | underestimate | play down, underplay, understate** *The government sought to play down the extent of the problem.* | **ignore | conceal, obscure | limit, reduce, restrict** *to reduce the extent of deforestation*
- PREP. **in ~** *The park is about 20 acres in extent.* **to an ~** *To an extent* (= to some degree) *East-West distrust continued throughout the war.* **to a … ~** *He had withdrawn from the company of his friends to an alarming extent.*
- PHRASES **at sth's fullest/greatest extent** *At its fullest extent the Angevin Empire comprised most of western France.* **to a considerable/great/large/significant extent, to a certain/to some extent** *To some extent, we are all responsible for this tragic situation.* **to a lesser/limited/small extent** *The pollution of the forest has seriously affected plant life and, to a lesser extent, wildlife.* **to the same extent** *People no longer live in small communities to the same extent as they used to.*

exterior *noun*

1 outside of a building

- ADJ. **elegant | plain**
- PREP. **behind an/the ~** *Hidden behind a plain exterior is a wonderful hotel.* **on the ~** *There is an abundance of fine sculpture, both on the exterior and inside.*

2 sb's outward behaviour

- ADJ. **bland, bluff, calm, charming, confident, cool, glacial** *Her calm exterior hides very passionate feelings.*
- EXTERIOR + VERB **belie, conceal, hide** *His bluff exterior belied a connoisseur of antiques.*
- PREP. **behind sb's ~** *Behind his cool exterior lurks a reckless and frustrated person.* **beneath/underneath sb's ~** *Beneath her charming exterior lies a very determined woman.*

extinct *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become, go | presume sth, think sth** *The species was presumed extinct.*
- ADV. **completely, totally | all but, almost, nearly, practically, virtually** *The numbers of these animals have been falling steadily and they are now almost extinct.*

extinction *noun*

- ADJ. **mass, total, widespread** *the mass extinction of the dinosaurs* | **near, virtual | imminent, impending**
- VERB + EXTINCTION **cause, lead to** *Modern farming methods have led to the total extinction of many species of wild flowers.* | **be doomed to, be in danger of, be on the brink/edge/verge of, be threatened with, face** *The island's way of life is doomed to extinction.* ◇ *These animals are now on the verge of extinction.* | **be saved from**

extortion *noun*

- ADJ. **attempted | alleged**
- EXTORTION + NOUN **racket** *He was known for running a brutal extortion racket.*

⇨ Note at CRIME (for verbs)

extra *noun*

- ADJ. **little** *There was no money left over for luxuries or little extras.* | **optional | hidden** *£400 is a lot to pay for a weekend break, but there are no hidden extras.* | **added** *Regular guests also get added extras like free room service.*
- EXTRA + VERB **include sth** *Optional extras include anti-lock brakes and an electric sunroof.*

extract *noun*

1 passage from a book/piece of music

- ADJ. **brief, short | long | literary**
- VERB + EXTRACT **read | publish**
- EXTRACT + VERB **be from, be taken from** *The extract is taken from a long essay.*
- PREP. **~ from** *He read out a brief extract from his book.*

2 substance taken from another substance

- ADJ. **natural** *conditioners made from natural plant extracts* | **herbal, malt, meat, plant, vanilla, yeast** *Add a few drops of vanilla extract.*
- PREP. **~ of** *extract of apricot*

extradition *noun*

- VERB + EXTRADITION **avoid, escape** *It won't be easy for them to escape extradition.* | **ask for, call for, demand, request, seek** *The new government will seek the extradition of the suspected terrorists.* | **allow, order** *A judge ordered her extradition to Britain.* | **await, face** *The smuggler is in prison tonight, awaiting extradition to Britain.* | **fight, resist** *His lawyer announced that he will fight extradition.*
- EXTRADITION + NOUN **hearing, proceedings | agreement, treaty** *There is no extradition agreement between the two countries.* | **request**
- PREP. **~ from, ~ to**

extraordinary *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | make sth** *What makes it so extraordinary is that the experts had all dismissed her theories as rubbish.* | **find sth** *I find her attitude quite extraordinary.* | **regard sth as, see sth as**
• ADV. **most, really, truly | absolutely, altogether, quite** *It seems altogether extraordinary.* | **rather**

extravagant *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, seem** *I go to that restaurant for lunch if I'm feeling extravagant.* | **become**
• ADV. **terribly, very, wildly** *He had a wildly extravagant lifestyle.* | **a bit, a little, rather, somewhat**
• PREP. **with** *You mustn't be so extravagant with other people's money.*

extreme *noun*

• ADJ. **opposite, polar** *Their views are at opposite extremes from each other.* | **climatic, political, temperature** *It's a difficult place to live because of its climatic extremes.*
• VERB + EXTREME **avoid** *Avoid any extremes of emotional behaviour.* | **go to** *He went to the extreme of adulation, describing Churchill as the greatest man who ever lived.* | **carry sth to, take sth to** *It's foolish to take any dieting to extremes.*
• PREP. **at an/the** *At the extreme, some nuclear waste is so radioactive it has to be kept isolated for thousands of years.* **between ~s** *There has to be a solution between these extremes.* **in the ~** *His voice was scornful in the extreme.* **to the ~** *She was always kindly and generous to the extreme.* | **~s of** *These photographs show extremes of obesity and emaciation.*
• PHRASES **at one extreme, at the other extreme** *At the other extreme, women still childless at 32 were more likely to be from a professional background.* **go from one extreme to the other** *She goes from one extreme to the other, and either works very hard or does absolutely nothing.*

extreme *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem, sound | become**
• ADV. **very | a bit, fairly, a little, quite, rather, somewhat** *Some of his views seem rather extreme.* | **dangerously | politically**
• PHRASES **at its most extreme** *This is hero-worship at its most extreme.*

extremist *noun*

• ADJ. **left-wing, right-wing** *an attack by right-wing extremists* | **political, religious | Muslim, Republican, etc.**
• EXTREMIST + NOUN **group, party**

exuberance *noun*

• ADJ. **sheer** *She was laughing from the sheer exuberance of the performance.* | **natural, youthful**
• VERB + EXUBERANCE **curb** *He has to learn to curb his natural exuberance.*

eye *noun*

1 part of the body

• ADJ. **left, right | amber, blue, brown, dark, golden, green, grey, hazel | big, huge, large, enormous, wide** *She just looked at me with those big blue eyes of hers.* ◇ *His eyes were wide with horror.* | **narrow | close-set | wide-apart, wide-set | deep/deep-set, heavy-lidded, hollow, hooded, sunken | protuberant | beady, piggy | baggy, puffy, swollen | bleary, bloodshot, dark-ringed, exhausted, red, red-rimmed, sleepy, tired, weary** *Her dark-ringed eyes showed that she hadn't slept.* | **bright, brilliant, luminous, lustrous, sparkling, starry | clear, limpid, liquid | soft, velvety, warm | cloudy, misty, moist, rheumy, tear-filled, tearful, watery | dry | sightless, unseeing | short-sighted | half-closed, narrowed | unblinking | dazed, unfocused | mad, staring, wild | angry, cruel, fierce | anxious | greedy, hungry** *The dog's hungry eyes were on my sandwich.* | **curious, prying** *He drew the curtains to make sure no prying eyes saw what he was doing.* | **intelligent, keen, sharp, shrewd | penetrating, piercing | cold, expressionless, glassy, glazed, lifeless, steely, vacant | downcast, sad, solemn, soulful**
• VERB + EYE **open | close, shut | lift, raise | cast, turn** *I cast my eyes around the room but couldn't see any familiar faces.* ◇ *He turned his eyes to the door when he heard the handle turning.* | **avert** *She averted her eyes from his face.* | **screw up** *He screwed up his eyes against the glare of the sun.* | **strain** *I didn't want to strain my eyes to read, so I put the light on.* | **protect** *Skiers wear goggles to protect their eyes from the sun.* | **shade, shield** *He held up the newspaper to shield his eyes from the sun.* | **test | gouge** *She reached up and tried to gouge her attacker's eyes.* | **catch** *A movement in the reeds caught my eye* (= attracted my attention). | **look sb (straight) in, meet** *She looked her father straight in the eye and answered his question truthfully.* ◇ *He seemed unwilling to meet my eye.*
• EYE + VERB **dilate, fly open, grow wide, open, round, widen** *Her eyes dilated with horror at what she had done.* ◇ *Her eyes flew open in surprise.* ◇ *His eyes rounded in mock amazement.* | **close, shut | stream, water** *My eyes stream when I chop onions.* | **hold sth** *His eyes held a sceptical gleam.* | **be alight with sth, blaze, flare, flash, gleam, glint, glisten, glitter, glow, light up, shine, smoulder, spark, sparkle, twinkle** *She laughed, her eyes alight with excitement.* ◇ *His eyes blazed with menace.* | **mirror sth, reflect sth** *His eyes reflected his anguish.* | **blur, cloud, brim/fill with tears, mist | darken, dim, dull, glaze (over)** *Her eyes glazed over when I said I worked in dictionaries.* | **harden** *His eyes hardened as he remembered how they had laughed at him.* | **narrow, sharpen | burn, hurt, prick, prickle, smart, sting** *Her eyes prickled with unshed tears.* | **be drawn to sb/sth, follow sb/sth, turn to sb/sth** *His eyes were drawn to a bundle of papers in the corner.* ◇ *My eyes followed his every move.* | **fall on sb/sth, settle on sb/sth | dwell on sb/sth, fasten on sb/sth, fix on sb/sth, be fixed on sb/sth, be intent on sb/sth, focus on sb/sth, gaze (up) at sb/sth, be glued to sb/sth, linger on sb/sth, lock on sb/sth, rest on sb/sth, be riveted on/to sb/sth, stare (at) sb/sth, be trained on sb/sth, watch sb/sth** *She tried to sit up, her eyes fixed on Jean's face.* | **look at sb/sth, peer at sb/sth, regard sb/sth | glare at sb/sth | lock (together), meet** *Their eyes locked together in a battle of wills.* | **dart, flick, flicker, flit, glance, go, leap, move, run, shift** *His eyes darted from face to face.* | **roll, swivel** *She tried the door, her eyes rolling in panic.* | **dance** *Her eyes danced with amusement.* | **roam, rove** *He let his eyes roam round the scene.* | **drift, slide, slip, stray, wander** *His eyes drifted over to Helen's chair.* | **probe sth, rake sth, scan sth, scour sth, search sth, sweep sth** *His eyes scanned the room as he entered.* | **drop, fall, lower** *Her eyes dropped to her lap as she answered.* | **lift | bore into sb, lance (through) sb, pierce sb** *She could feel the old lady's eyes bore into her.* | **accustom to sth, adjust to sth, become/grow accustomed to sth** *As my eyes accustomed to the darkness, I could make out a shape by the window.* | **blink | crinkle (up), squint, wrinkle** *His eyes crinkled up at the corners as he smiled.* ◇ *Her eyes squinted against the brightness.* | **strain** *My eyes strained to make anything out in the darkness.* | **slant | bulge, pop** *His eyes bulged in fury.* | **betray sb/sth, give away sb/sth** *His narrow eyes betrayed his impatience.* | **question sb, quiz sb | smile | mock sb | appraise sb/sth, examine sb/sth, scrutinize sb/sth, study sb/sth, survey sb/sth | take sth in** *My eyes took in every detail as I entered the house for the first time in twenty years.*

- EYE + NOUN **muscles, socket | contact** *I knew he was lying because he wouldn't make eye contact with me.* | **movement** *Rapid eye movements frequently accompany dreaming.* | **doctor, specialist, surgeon | hospital | operation, surgery, treatment | examination, test | complaint, damage, defect, disease, disorder, infection, injury, strain, trouble | drops** *The doctor gave me eye drops to put in three times a day.* | **protection** *It is essential to wear some form of eye protection.* | **make-up | level** *Your computer screen should be at eye level so that you can work with your neck straight.*
- PREP. **in your ~s** *There were tears in his eyes as he spoke.* ◇ *The sun was in my eyes and I couldn't see the road.* **under sb's ~** *I want you under my eye* (= where I can see you).
- PHRASES **as far as the eye can see** *The tide was out, leaving nothing but mud as far as the eye could see.* **before your very eyes** *Before our very eyes, the bird snatched the fish from the plate and flew off.* **can't keep/take your eyes off sb/sth** *He couldn't keep his eyes off the girl sitting opposite him.* **cast/raise/roll your eyes heavenwards** (= to show that you are annoyed or impatient) *She rolled her eyes heavenwards when she saw what her husband was wearing.* **a gleam/glint/twinkle in sb's eye** *He looked at me with a twinkle in his eye.* **have an eye on sb/sth** (= be watching) *The store detective had his eye on a group of boys who were acting suspiciously.* **keep an eye on sb/sth** (= watch) *Could you keep an eye on my bag while I go to the toilet?* **keep an eye open/out for sb/sth** (= watch out for) *I walked round the shops, keeping an eye out for bargains.* **out of the corner of your eye** *Out of the corner of her eye, she saw Harry start forward.* **set eyes on sb/sth** *From the moment he set eyes on her he knew that he wanted to marry her.* **to/with the naked/unaided eye** *The planet should be visible to the naked eye* (= without a telescope). **under sb's critical, watchful, etc. eye** *The team went through their paces under their trainer's critical eye.* **with your own eyes** *If I hadn't seen his jump with my own eyes, I would never have believed it possible.*

2 ability to see

- ADJ. **eagle, good, keen, quick, sharp** *The children's eagle eyes spotted an ice-cream shop half a mile away.* ◇ *A surgeon needs a good eye and a steady hand.*
- PREP. **~ for** *Her skill at working with wood is coupled to a keen eye for design.*

3 way of seeing

- ADJ. **careful, cautious, close, suspicious, wary, watchful | critical, stern | jaundiced | fresh, new** *He saw his students with new eyes now that he had a child of his own.* | **kindly, sympathetic | fatherly | discerning | experienced, expert, practised** *To an expert eye, the painting is an obvious fake.* | **inexperienced, untrained | artistic**
- PREP. **in sb/sth's ~** *She can do no wrong in his eyes.* ◇ *In the eyes of the law his knife was an offensive weapon.* **through sb's ~s** *You need to look at your website through the user's eyes.* **to sb's ~** *To my eye, the windows seem out of proportion.* **with a … ~** *She viewed the findings with a critical eye.* **with the ~ of** *He looked at the design with the eye of an engineer.*
- PHRASES **in your mind's eye** (= your imagination) *He pictured the scene in his mind's eye.*

eye *verb*

- ADV. **keenly, narrowly, sharply, shrewdly | curiously, speculatively, thoughtfully | carefully, cautiously, suspiciously, warily | doubtfully, uncertainly | coldly, contemptuously, coolly | greedily, hungrily** *The children eyed the cakes greedily.*

eyebrow *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy, thick | thin | bushy, shaggy, unkempt | plucked, shaped | winged | dark, jet-black | lifted, raised | surprised | amused | derisive, mocking | cynical, sardonic, sceptical | enquiring, querying, questioning, quizzical**
- VERB + EYEBROW **arch, cock, lift, quirk, raise** *'Really?' she said, raising a sardonic eyebrow.* | **pluck** *She spent hours in front of the mirror, plucking her eyebrows.*
- EYEBROW + VERB **lift, rise** *His dark eyebrows lifted in surprise.*
- EYEBROW + NOUN **pencil**

eyelash *noun*

- ADJ. **thick | long | curling | artificial, false**
- VERB + EYELASH **bat, flutter** *She smiled and fluttered her eyelashes at the ticket inspector.*
- EYELASH + VERB **flicker, flutter**

eyelid *noun*

- ADJ. **lower, upper | closed, half-closed, lowered | drooping, heavy, hooded**
- VERB + EYELID **lift** *She lifted one eyelid to see what he was doing.*
- PREP. **behind (your) ~** *She watched him from behind half-closed eyelids.*

eyesight *noun*

- ADJ. **good, keen | bad, deteriorating, failing, poor** *Failing eyesight finally forced her into an old people's home.*
- VERB + EYESIGHT **have** *Owls have good eyesight.*
- EYESIGHT + VERB **deteriorate, fail**

Ff

fabric *noun*

1 cloth

- ADJ. **beautiful, rich** *rich fabric wall coverings* | **delicate, fine, lightweight, sheer, soft, thin** | **coarse, firm, hard-wearing, thick** | **stretch** | **floral, patterned, plain, printed, striped** | **knitted, woven** | **cotton, nylon, woollen, etc.** | **synthetic** | **curtain, dress, furnishing**
- QUANT. **length, piece, strip**
- VERB + FABRIC **produce, weave** *The fabric is woven on these machines.*

2 basic structure of a society/way of life

- ADJ. **basic** *the basic fabric of family life* | **economic, political, social**
- VERB + FABRIC **destroy** *The government's policies have destroyed the social fabric.*
- PHRASES **the very/whole fabric of sth** *a threat to the very fabric of society*

face *noun*

1 front part of the head

- ADJ. **angelic, beautiful, handsome, lovely, pleasant, pretty, sweet** | **plain, ugly, terrible** | **colourless, grey, pale, pallid, white** | **flushed, pink, red, ruddy** *Her face was flushed after her run.* | **tanned** | **dark** | **sallow** | **heart-shaped, oval, round, square** | **bearded, freckled, unshaven** | **lined, wrinkled** | **pock-marked, raddled** | **fat, plump** *She had a plump, pretty face.* | **gaunt, haggard, lean, pinched, thin, wizened** | **craggy, rugged** *a craggy face with deep-set eyes and bushy brows* | **elfin** *Her short hair suited her elfin face.* | **painted** | **happy, smiling** | **tear-stained, tear-streaked** | **human**
- VERB + FACE **tilt, turn** *She turned her face away.* ◇ *He tilted her face up to his.*
- FACE + VERB **look, peer, stare** *A face peered round the door at him.*
- PREP. **in the/sb's ~** *The ball hit him in the face.* ◇ *His eyes were sunken in his gaunt face.* **on the/sb's ~** *She put some powder on her face.*
- PHRASES **a sea of faces** (= a large crowd of faces) *From the stage, he looked down at a sea of faces.*

2 expression on sb's face

- ADJ. **animated, cheerful, friendly, grinning, happy, radiant, smiling** | **anxious, frightened, troubled** | **angry, furious** | **hard, set, stern** *His face was set and hard.* | **grave, serious** | **long, sad** *The news for the company isn't good, judging from the long faces in the boardroom.* | **funny** *She made a funny face and gave a snorting sort of laugh.* | **honest, kind** | **expectant** | **rapt** | **expressive, open** *She looked at the honest, open face of her husband.* | **blank, expressionless, impassive** *His face remained impassive, so strong was his self-control.*
- VERB + FACE **make, pull** *What are you pulling a face at now?* | **search** *He searched her face for some clue as to what she meant.*
- FACE + VERB **brighten, glow, light up** *Her little face lit up when I gave her the present.* | **beam, smile** *The face smiled benignly at him.* | **cloud, crumple, drop, fall** *Her face crumpled and she started crying.* ◇ *'I can't come,' she said. His face fell.* | **clear** *His face cleared and she smiled back.* | **darken, harden, set** *Her face darkened with anger.* ◇ *His face set in grim lines.* | **soften** *The father's face softened as he hugged his little boy.* | **flame, flush, go red, redden** *Jack's face flushed with embarrassment.* | **pale** *Her face paled with fright.* | **contort, crease, pucker, tighten, twist** *Her face contorted in pain.* | **betray sth, reveal sth** *Her face betrayed no emotion at all.*
- PREP. **on sb's ~** *She had a big smile on her face.*
- PHRASES **a face like thunder** (= a very angry face) *Mr Hibbs came in with a face like thunder.*

3 front part/side of sth

- ADJ. **front, rear** | **North, South, etc.** | **steep** *We slowly climbed the steep face of the crag.* | **cliff, rock** | **clock**
- PHRASES **face down/downwards, face up/upwards** *She placed the cards face downwards on the table.*

4 person

- ADJ. **familiar, (same) old** *I looked around for a familiar face.* ◇ *I'm so bored with seeing the same old faces!* | **different, fresh, new, strange, unfamiliar** | **famous, well-known** *a restaurant where you often see famous faces*
- VERB + FACE **see**

5 particular character/aspect of sth

- ADJ. **human** *bureaucracy with a human face* | **acceptable** | **unacceptable** *Social deprivation is the unacceptable face of capitalism.* | **true** | **changing** *the changing face of Britain*

facet *noun*

- ADJ. **essential, important** | **common** | **tiny** | **interesting** | **hidden**
- VERB + FACET **have** *She has another important facet to her personality.*

facilitate *verb*

- ADV. **greatly** *The use of computers has greatly facilitated the firm's ability to keep accurate records.* | **further**
- VERB + FACILITATE **be designed to, help (to)**

facility *noun*

1 facilities buildings/services/equipment

- ADJ. **excellent, first-class, good** | **adequate, appropriate, proper, suitable** | **inadequate, poor** | **basic, limited** *a hotel with only basic facilities* | **modern, up-to-date** | **extensive** | **extra** | **available, existing** *We are looking to upgrade the existing facilities.* | **essential, necessary** *to improve access to essential facilities* | **local, community** *hospitals, schools and other major community facilities* | **communal, shared** *The toilets and other communal facilities were in a shocking state.* | **public** | **disabled** *The railway station was criticized for its lack of disabled facilities.* | **conference** | **airport, hotel** | **bar, holiday, leisure, play, recreational, social, sporting/sports** | **transport, travel** | **parking** | **shopping** | **storage** | **canteen, dining, restaurant** | **catering, cooking, kitchen** | **baby changing, bathroom, laundry, sanitary, shower, toilet, washing** | **en suite, private** *All bedrooms offer private facilities* (= a private bathroom). | **health, health care, hospital, medical** | **childcare, crèche, day care, nursery** | **educational, training** | **library, research** | **laboratory** | **computing**
- VERB + FACILITIES **have, offer, provide** | **improve, upgrade** | **make use of, use** *I made full use of the computing facilities.*
- FACILITIES + VERB **be available, exist** | **include sth** *Facilities include a large indoor pool, jacuzzi and sauna.*
- PREP. **~ for** *The school has no facilities for the teaching of music.* ◇ *The hotel provides excellent facilities for children.*
- PHRASES **a range of facilities**

2 special feature of a machine/service

- ADJ. **central** *The archive offers a central facility for cataloguing and indexing data.* | **back-up** *The report warns that there are no back-up facilities if the reprocessing plant breaks down.* | **support** *training and other support facilities* | **special** | **useful** | **flexible** *A First National Bank loan is an extremely flexible facility.* | **technical** | **cheque book, credit, loan, overdraft** *a bank account with an overdraft facility* | **editing, graphics, help, mail, search, word processing** (*all computing*)
- VERB + FACILITY **have, offer, provide** | **use**
- FACILITY + VERB **allow (for) sth** *The cheque book facility allows for a minimum withdrawal of £200.*
- PREP. **~ for** *The device has a facility for storing any sound you like.*

3 natural ability

- ADJ. **amazing, great**
- VERB + FACILITY **have** | **show**
- PREP. **with ~** *He played with great facility.* | **~ for** *She showed an amazing facility for mind-reading.*

fact *noun*

- ADJ. **important, interesting, relevant, salient** *looking at all the relevant facts* | **basic** | **concrete, hard, incontrovertible, inescapable, observable, obvious, plain, straightforward, true, undeniable** *The police have to support their case with hard facts.* ◇ *These are all incontrovertible facts.* | **bare, brute, disturbing, harsh, sad, stark, unpalatable, unpleasant** *the bare facts of war* ◇ *a rather harsh fact of life* | **little-known, well-known** *It is a well-known fact that girls do better than boys at school.* | **mere** *The mere fact of your being there will arouse their suspicions.* | **historical**
- VERB + FACT **be aware of, have, know** *We haven't got all the facts yet.* ◇ *She already knew the facts she needed.* | **ascertain, establish, find out** *the best way of establishing the facts* | **check, examine, look at** *I think you need to check your facts.* ◇ *For God's sake, look at the facts!* | **prove** *These facts have not yet been proved.* | **collect, gather** | **select** *Historians must first select the facts that they present.* | **give, impart, present, state** *The job of the teacher is not simply to impart facts.* ◇ *I'm not making excuses—I'm just stating a fact.* | **interpret** *different ways of interpreting the facts* | **account for, explain** *How do you account for the fact that unemployment is still rising?* | **accept, acknowledge, face, recognize** *She wouldn't accept the fact that she had lost.* ◇ *I'm afraid you'll have to face facts. She'll never marry you.* | **grasp** *He doesn't seem able to grasp this basic fact.* | **learn** | **assimilate** *Students need time to assimilate the facts.* | **deny, dispute** *No one can deny this fact.* | **ignore, overlook** *This approach ignores the fact that people, not computers, commit crimes.* | **be oblivious to** | **conceal, disguise, hide** *If he was bored, he managed to hide the fact very well.* | **obscure** *The recent improvements should not obscure the fact that general standards are still far too low.* | **draw attention to** *The report draws attention to the fact that the country is now a net exporter of the product.* | **emphasize, underline** | **confine yourself to, keep to, stick to** *Just stick to the facts.* | **be based on** *a novel based on historical fact* | **reflect** *Prices reflect the fact that the company is aiming at the luxury market.* | **stem from** *He knew their bitterness stemmed from the fact that he was in charge.* | **be explained by** | **be complicated by, be compounded by, be exacerbated by** *The problem was compounded by the fact that I had no idea what I was looking for—only 'some sort of clue'.* | **lament, regret, resent** *We sat miserably in the pub, lamenting the fact that our dry clothes were a 60-mile bus journey away.* ◇ *She resented the fact that I was older and had more freedom than her.*
- FACT + VERB **remain** *The fact remains that we are still two teachers short.*
- PREP. **after the ~** *On some vital decisions employees were only informed after the fact* (= when it was too late to change them). **apart from the ~** *She was happy, apart from the fact that she could not return home.* **despite/in spite of/notwithstanding the ~** *She's taking her children on holiday, despite the fact that school starts tomorrow.* **due to the ~** *Due to the fact that they did not read English, the prisoners were unaware of what they were signing.* **given the ~** *The findings are not surprising, given the facts: …* **in ~** *I used to live in France; in fact, not far from where you're going.* | **~ about** *We learned several interesting facts about elephants.*
- PHRASES **(as) a matter of fact** *It's not wild speculation! It's plain matter of fact.* ◇ *'I suppose you'll be leaving soon, then?' 'No, as a matter of fact I'll be staying for another two years.'* **facts and figures** *presenting all the facts and figures to the meeting* **the fact of the matter** *A new car would be wonderful but the fact of the matter is that we can't afford one.* **the facts of the case** *The facts of the case are quite straightforward.* **a fact of life** (= a situation that cannot be changed) *It is an unpalatable fact of life that the most deserving people do not often achieve the most success.* **the facts of life** (= the details about sex and how babies are born, especially as told to children), **fact or fiction?** *The Loch Ness Monster: fact or fiction?* **the facts speak for themselves** (= further explanation about sth is unnecessary because the facts prove it is true), **get your facts right/wrong** *If you're going to make accusations, you'd better get your facts right.* **have the facts at your fingertips** *When making your presentation, it is important to have all the facts at your fingertips* (= to have the information you need and be able to find it and use it quickly). **in actual fact/in point of fact** *I thought the work would be difficult. In actual fact, it's very easy.* **in view of the fact that …** *Voluntary work was particularly important in view of the fact that women were often forced to give up paid work on marriage.* **know for a fact** *Do you know for a fact that he is in London?* **a question/statement of fact** *It's a simple statement of fact.* **a recognition of the fact that …** *a growing recognition of the fact that learning may take different forms*

faction *noun*

- ADJ. **dominant, leading, main, major** | **internal** | **competing, opposing, rival, warring** | **breakaway** | **dissident, rebel** | **disaffected** | **military, parliamentary, political** | **conservative, hard-line, left-wing, liberal, moderate, radical, right-wing** | **anti-reform, anti-talks, etc.**
- VERB + FACTION **lead**
- PREP. **~ in** *the largest faction in the civil war* **~ within** *the dominant faction within the government*

factor *noun*

- ADJ. **important, main, major, relevant, significant** *one of the most significant factors* | **critical, crucial, deciding, decisive, determining, key, vital** *This is regarded as the crucial factor in deciding who should get priority.* ◇ *Money proved to be the deciding factor.* | **contributing, contributory** *Poor organization was certainly a contributory factor to the crisis.* | **complicating, distorting** *A complicating factor is her parents' refusal to cooperate with the police.* | **limiting** | **mitigating** *The appeal judges spoke of strong mitigating factors in the case.* | **aggravating** | **additional** | **single** *The closure of the mine was the single most important factor in the town's decline.* | **common** *Look for the common factor in all these cases.* | **external, extraneous, extrinsic** *External factors in the production of disease include pollution of the environment.* | **internal, intrinsic** | **causal, causative** | **risk** *Studies have established that smoking is a risk factor for cancer.* | **contextual, demographic, economic, environmental, genetic, political, psychological, situational, social**

• VERB + FACTOR **consider, take into account** *A variety of other factors will be taken into account.* | **depend on**
• FACTOR + VERB **be involved, operate** *the contextual factors which operate to hinder understanding* | **affect sth, be responsible for sth, contribute to sth, determine sth, influence sth, precipitate sth, predispose sb/sth to sth** *environmental factors which predispose children to middle-ear infections* | **constrain sth, inhibit sth, militate against sth** *one of the factors that influenced his decision* | **interact** *looking at how economic and social factors interact* | **include sth**
• PREP. **~ behind** *the main factors behind the dollar's weakness* **~ in** *a key factor in the decision*
• PHRASES **a combination/number/range/variety of factors** *The outcome will depend on a number of factors.*

factory *noun*

• ADJ. **large** | **small** | **modern** | **disused** | **aircraft, car, chemical, clothing, munitions, etc.**
• VERB + FACTORY **open, set up** *capital to set up a ceramics factory* | **close (down), shut (down)** *They had to close the factory down in the recession.* | **manage, run**
• FACTORY + VERB **make sth, produce sth** | **open** | **close (down), shut (down)** *The factory closed down ten years ago.*
• FACTORY + NOUN **manager, owner, worker** | **job, production, work** | **buildings** | **closure**
• PREP. **at/in ~** *He works in a shoe factory.*

factual *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **keep sth** *Try to keep your account as factual as possible.*
• ADV. **entirely, purely, strictly** | **basically, largely** | **supposedly** *the speculative nature of the supposedly factual information conveyed through the media*

faculty *noun*

1 natural ability of the body/mind
• ADJ. **higher** *the evolution of man's higher faculties* | **cognitive, intellectual, mental, rational** *He is not in full possession of all his mental faculties.* | **creative, critical, imaginative, moral** | **human**
• VERB + FACULTY **be in possession of, have** *She is over eighty but still has all her faculties.* | **lose** | **develop** *trying to develop the student's critical faculties*
• PREP. **~ for** *our faculty for picking up speech even in noisy environments*

2 university department
• ADJ. **Arts, English, law, medical, etc.**
• FACULTY + NOUN **board, head, member**
• PREP. **across ~** *collaboration across faculties* **in a/the ~** *students who are doing degrees in the Arts Faculty* | **~ of** *the Faculty of Arts*

fad *noun*

• ADJ. **current, latest, new** | **passing** | **management** | **food** *Most children have food fads at some time.*
• PREP. **~ for** *the fad for cookery programmes*

fade *verb*

• ADV. **fast, quickly, rapidly** *Hopes of a peace settlement were fading fast.* | **gradually, slowly** | **quietly** *It was impossible for her to fade quietly into the background.* | **away**
• VERB + FADE **begin to** | **seem to** *All else seemed to fade into insignificance.*
• PREP. **from** *The smile faded from his face.* **into** *Their voices faded into the distance.*

faeces *noun*

• ADJ. **fresh** | **dog, human, etc.**
• QUANT. **mass, piece**
• VERB + FAECES **be excreted in, be expelled in, be passed in** *The larvae may be excreted in the faeces.* | **collect** *A sample of fresh faeces should be collected each day.*
• FAECES + NOUN **sample**
• PREP. **in the ~** *The amount of blood in the faeces was measured.*

fail *verb*

1 not succeed
• ADV. **dismally, miserably** *I tried to cheer her up, but failed miserably.* | **spectacularly** *The show didn't just fail, it failed spectacularly.*
• VERB + FAIL **cannot/could not, can/could hardly** *The song can't fail to be a hit* (= will definitely be a hit). | **be bound to, be destined to, be doomed to** *an enterprise that was doomed to fail from the start*
• PREP. **in** *Doctors are failing in their duty if they do not warn their patients of the dangers.*

2 **fail to do sth** not do sth
• ADV. **totally** *The authorities have totally failed to address this problem.*

failing *noun*

• ADJ. **major, worst** *Vanity is her worst failing.* | **common, human** *the very human failing of wanting to tell other people what to do* | **moral** | **personal**
• VERB + FAILING **have** *We all have our failings.*

failure *noun*

1 lack of success
• ADJ. **complete, total** | **abject, humiliating, ignominious** *The attempt ended in abject failure.* | **inevitable** | **costly** | **alleged, apparent, perceived** | **evident** | **comparative, relative** | **initial** *Initial failure was followed by unexpected, if modest, success.* | **ultimate** *War is the ultimate failure of public communication.* | **personal** | **moral** | **academic** | **economic, financial** | **military**
• VERB + FAILURE **be doomed to, end in, result in** *All her efforts were doomed to failure.* | **admit, confess** *He was too proud to admit failure.* | **expect** *Children who are doing badly tend to expect failure and criticism.* | **fear** | **avoid**
• FAILURE + NOUN **rate** *There is a high failure rate with this treatment.*
• PHRASES **fear of failure** *Fear of failure should not deter you from trying.* **a history of failure** *John had a long history of academic failure.* **a possibility/risk of failure, a sense of failure**

2 unsuccessful person/thing
• ADJ. **great, serious** | **complete, total, utter** | **catastrophic, disastrous** | **abject, conspicuous, dismal, humiliating, ignominious, lamentable, miserable** | **costly** | **heroic** *Her ideas were large: if she could not succeed, she would at least be a heroic failure.* | **alleged, apparent, perceived** | **evident** | **comparative, relative** | **past** *to learn from past failures* | **rare** *The film was one of the rare failures in his career.* | **unexpected** | **personal** | **collective** | **moral** | **academic** | **economic, financial** *economic failure and increasing unemployment* | **military**
• VERB + FAILURE **be, represent** | **prove** *The venture proved a costly failure.* | **feel** *I felt a complete failure.* | **consider sb/sth, regard sb/sth as** | **brand sb/sth, pronounce sb/sth** *Her parents had long since branded her a failure.*
• FAILURE + VERB **arise from sth** *failures arising from circumstances beyond your control*
• PREP. **~ of** *The decision to withdraw funding represents a failure of imagination.*

3 not doing sth

- ADJ. **fundamental | general | manifest | consistent, constant, continued/continuing, persistent, repeated | government, management** *government failure to listen to the voice of the electorate*
- VERB + FAILURE **excuse, justify** *seeking to excuse his failure to ask her permission*

4 of a machine/system/part of the body, etc.

- ADJ. **battery, brake, component, computer, engine, equipment, mechanical, power, system, technical | bank, business, commercial, company, corporate, market** *Business failures rose by 30% in 2001.* **| brain, heart, kidney, liver | crop, harvest | communication**
- VERB + FAILURE **cause, lead to, result in** *a rare viral infection that can lead to heart failure*
- FAILURE + VERB **occur** *A power failure occurred between 4 and 5 p.m.*
- PREP. **~in** *a failure in the computer system*

faint *verb*

- ADV. **almost, nearly**
- VERB + FAINT **be about to, be going to** *He was so pale she thought he was going to faint.*
- PREP. **at** *He would faint at the sight of blood.* **from** *She fainted from lack of air.* **with** *She almost fainted with shock.*

faint *adj.*

1 not strong or clear

- VERBS **be, look, sound** *His voice sounded faint and far away.* **| become, grow** *The whispers grew fainter and fainter, then stopped altogether.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** *I can't make out the number—it's very faint.* **| rather**

2 near to losing consciousness

- VERBS **be, feel, look**
- ADV. **extremely, very | almost | a bit, a little, quite** *I was beginning to feel a little faint.*
- PREP. **with** *I was faint with hunger.*

fair *noun*

- ADJ. **major | annual | trade | antiques, book, craft, horse**
- VERB + FAIR **attend, go to, visit | have, hold, host** *The city is holding its annual trade fair in May this year.* **| organize** *She is organizing next year's book fair.*
- FAIR + VERB **take place**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *I bought it at a local craft fair.*

fair *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | make sth** *I'll give you ten pounds each to make it fair.* **| consider sth, think sth** *I didn't think it fair that the others should be allowed to go but not me.*
- ADV. **scrupulously, very** *It's important to be scrupulously fair when marking the final exam paper.* **| absolutely, completely, entirely, perfectly, quite, totally** *I don't care what he thinks. It seems perfectly fair to me.* ◇ *That doesn't seem quite fair.* **| hardly** *It's hardly fair that I should be working while everyone else is enjoying themselves!* **| pretty, reasonably**
- PHRASES **to be fair** *To be fair, we hadn't really spent enough time on the job.*
- PREP. **to** *That seems fair to all sides.*

fairness *noun*

- ADJ. **strict**
- VERB + FAIRNESS **achieve, ensure, guarantee** *a way of achieving fairness to the accused*
- FAIRNESS + VERB **call for sth, demand sth, require sth** *Fairness demanded an equal division of the winnings.*
- PREP. **in (all) ~** *In all fairness to him, I should say that most of his story is true.* **with ~** *They were all treated with strict fairness.* **| ~ in** *the need for fairness in applying these rules* **~ to** *The new system of waiting lists should guarantee fairness to all patients.*
- PHRASES **a sense of fairness** *Children have a very strong sense of fairness.*

fairy *noun*

- ADJ. **good | bad, wicked**
- VERB + FAIRY **believe in**

faith *noun*

1 trust in sb/sth

- ADJ. **enormous, great, tremendous | absolute, complete, implicit, total, unshakeable | blind** *He seems to have a blind faith in his boss.* **| abiding** *an artist whose work reflects his abiding faith in humanity* **| touching** *She showed a touching faith in my ability to resolve any and every difficulty.* **| public** *Business crime undermines public faith in the business system.*
- VERB + FAITH **have | place, pin, put** *He distrusted political systems and placed his faith in the genius of individuals.* ◇ *She did not pin much faith on their chances of success.* **| show | lose** *people who lose faith in themselves* **| shake, undermine | destroy | restore** *trying to restore faith in the political system* **| regain | retain** *If the company can retain its customers' faith it could become the market leader.* **| affirm, express, proclaim**
- PREP. **~ in** *Her faith in human nature had been badly shaken.*
- PHRASES **an act of faith, a leap of faith** *These reforms are totally untested and will require a leap of faith on the part of teachers.* **have every faith in sb**

2 strong religious belief

- ADJ. **religious | genuine, strong, true | simple | unquestioning | active** *a large decline in the number of people who have an active faith of any sort* **| personal**
- VERB + FAITH **have | come to, find** *He found faith gradually, rather than in a sudden conversion.* **| lose | shake, undermine | regain | proclaim**
- FAITH + NOUN **healer, healing**
- PREP. **through ~** *They believe that people can come to salvation through faith.* **| ~ in** *After her son's death she lost her faith in God.*
- PHRASES **an article of faith** (*often figurative*) *Manchester United's greatness was an article of faith for him* (= a belief that could not be questioned).

3 religion

- ADJ. **living** *Christianity is a living faith which has shaped the history of Britain.* **| world** *The study of other world faiths is an important part of religious education.* **| Catholic, Jewish, Muslim, etc.**
- VERB + FAITH **profess | practise** *Christians were allowed to practise their faith unmolested by the authorities.* **| keep alive, uphold** *Their aim was to keep alive the traditional Jewish faith.* **| hand on, pass on, preach, spread, teach** *the role of parents in passing on the faith to their children* ◇ *feeling the call to preach the faith to others*
- PHRASES **people of different faiths**

4 intention to do right

- ADJ. **bad, good** *The judge did not find any bad faith* (= intention to do wrong) *on the part of the defendants.*
- VERB + FAITH **keep** *As club manager he was not prepared to keep faith with* (= keep a promise to) *the players who had failed him.* **| break** (= break a promise to sb)
- PREP. **in … ~** *We printed the report in good faith, but have now learnt that it was incorrect.*

faithful *adj.*

1 loyal

- VERBS **be | remain, stay** *soldiers who stayed faithful to the king*
- ADV. **extremely, very** *He has been a very faithful friend to me.* | **absolutely, entirely, utterly**
- PREP. **to** *He had remained entirely faithful to his wife.*

2 accurate

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **remarkably, very | fairly, quite**
- PREP. **to** *The film is quite faithful to the original novel.*

fall *noun*

1 accident

- ADJ. **bad, nasty, terrible** *She took a bad fall while out riding.* | **accidental**
- VERB + FALL **have, suffer, take** *The doctor says she's had a very nasty fall.* | **break, cushion** *Luckily a bush broke his fall.* | **survive** *The chances of surviving a fall under a train are almost nil.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He was hurt in a fall at his home yesterday.* | **~ from** *She broke her neck in a fall from a horse.*

2 of snow/rocks

- ADJ. **heavy | light | fresh** *a fresh fall of snow* | **rock, snow** (also **snowfall**)
- PREP. **~ of** *covered by a light fall of volcanic ash*

3 decrease

- ADJ. **big, dramatic, great, large, marked, massive, significant, substantial** *a big fall in house prices ◇ This triggered the recent dramatic falls on the Tokyo stock exchange.* | **modest, slight, small | steady | rapid, sharp, steep, sudden, swift | expected, projected** *a projected fall of 2%* | **unexpected | continuing, further | overall | catastrophic**
- VERB + FALL **bring, cause, contribute to, lead to, trigger | see, suffer** *Share prices suffered a slight fall yesterday.* | **record, reveal, show** *The opinion polls show a significant fall in her popularity.* | **report** *Both companies reported a fall in profits in the first quarter of this year.* | **represent** *This figure represents a fall of 21% on the same period last year.*
- FALL + VERB **occur** *The fall in age at first marriage occurred during the second half of the 18th century.*
- PREP. **~ in** *a large fall in share prices*

4 defeat

- VERB + FALL **bring about, cause, contribute to, lead to** *the actions that led to his eventual fall from power*
- PREP. **~ from**
- PHRASES **the rise and fall of sth** *a book charting the rise and fall of the Habsburg Empire*

fall *verb*

1 drop down towards the ground

- ADV. **heavily** *She fell heavily to the ground.* | **steadily** *The rain was falling steadily.* | **down, off, overboard** *A tile fell off the roof. ◇ He fell overboard in heavy seas.*
- VERB + FALL **be about to | let sb/sth** *She lifted her arm, but then let it fall.*
- PREP. **from, into** *One of the kids fell into the river.* **on** *the snow falling on the fields* **onto** *Loose bricks were falling down onto the ground.* **to** *The plate fell to the floor.*

2 suddenly stop standing

- ADV. **almost, nearly** *He stumbled and almost fell.* | **headlong** *She fell headlong, with a cry of alarm.* | **down, over** *One of the children fell over.*
- VERB + FALL **be about to** *The house looked as if it was about to fall down.*
- PHRASES **stumble/trip and fall**

3 decrease

- ADV. **dramatically, sharply, significantly, steeply** *The price of coal fell sharply.* | **slightly | steadily**
- VERB + FALL **be expected to, be likely to** *Demand is likely to fall by some 15%.* | **continue to**
- PREP. **below** *Winter temperatures never fall below 10°C.* **by** *Expenditure on education fell by 10% last year.* **from** *The number of people unemployed has fallen from two million to just over one and a half million.* **to** *Her voice fell to a whisper.*

4 belong to a group

- ADV. **squarely**
- PREP. **into** *Out of over 400 staff there are just 14 that fall into this category.* **outside** *That topic falls outside the scope of this thesis.* **under** *This falls under the heading of scientific research.* **within** *This case falls squarely within the committee's jurisdiction.*

false *adj.*

1 not true, genuine or real

- VERBS **be, look, prove, sound**
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly** *The gossip about her later proved to be entirely false.* | **partly | certainly, definitely | blatantly, clearly, obviously, patently, undoubtedly** *Their claim was patently false.*
- PHRASES **true or false** *Lagos is the capital of Nigeria. True or false?*

2 not showing your true feelings

- VERBS **be, ring, sound** *Ella's enthusiasm rang false.*
- ADV. **horribly, very** *She managed a horribly false smile.* | **slightly** *Helen's voice sounded slightly false.*

falter *verb*

- ADV. **slightly | never** *His courage never faltered.*
- VERB + FALTER **begin to** *The economy is beginning to falter.*

fame *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great** *the years of his greatest fame* | **widespread | local | national | international, world/worldwide** *She gained international fame as a dancer.* | **lasting, undying | brief | instant, sudden | new-found | posthumous** *Largely unknown in his lifetime, Mendel's discoveries earned him posthumous fame.*
- VERB + FAME **enjoy** *He was enjoying his new-found fame.* | **achieve, come to, find, gain, rise to, shoot to, win** *She found fame on the stage. ◇ He shot to fame in 1997 when he won the US Open.* | **bring sb, earn sb** *His adventure brought him both fame and notoriety.* | **seek**
- FAME + VERB **rest on sth** *Her fame rests on a single book.* | **come to sb** *a man to whom fame came very late* | **grow, spread** *The restaurant's fame spread quickly.*
- PHRASES **at the height of sb/sth's fame** *In 1934, when at the height of his fame, he disappeared.* **sb/sth's (chief/main/only) claim to fame** *The town's main claim to fame is being the home of one of the strangest buildings in the world.* **fame and fortune** *After this concert she was firmly on the road to fame and fortune.* **a/sb's rise to fame**

familiar *adj.*

1 well-known

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound** *The place felt faintly familiar to me.* | **become | make sth**
- ADV. **distinctly, very** *The room looked distinctly familiar.* | **entirely | increasingly | faintly, fairly, quite, rather, reasonably, slightly, vaguely | enough** *The report's conclusions were already familiar enough to the government.* | **already | immediately, instantly** *His face was instantly familiar, even after all those years.* | **somehow** *a name that was somehow familiar* | **curiously, disconcertingly, oddly, strangely** *Her face looked strangely familiar.* | **blessedly, comfortingly** *The kitchen smelled warm and inviting and blessedly familiar.* | **all too, de-**

pressingly, horribly, painfully, sickeningly *a situation which has become all too familiar to most teachers*

- PREP. **to** *The name sounded vaguely familiar to her.*

2 familiar with sth having a good knowledge of sth

- VERBS **be, seem | become, get, grow** *I was now getting much more familiar with the local area.*
- ADV. **extremely, intimately, very | completely, fully, perfectly, thoroughly** *You will need to be thoroughly familiar with our procedures.* **| increasingly | fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably | already**

familiarity *noun*

1 knowing sb/sth well

- ADJ. **detailed, greater, intimate | basic**
- VERB + FAMILIARITY **have** *I had only a basic familiarity with computers.* **| acquire, gain** *Over the years, he gained greater familiarity with the culture and way of life in the country.*
- PREP. **~with** *her detailed familiarity with her subject*
- PHRASES **a lack of familiarity**

2 friendly informal manner

- ADJ. **easy** *He treated her with the easy familiarity of an equal.*

family *noun*

1 group of people related to each other

- ADJ. **large | old, old-established | land-owning, wealthy, well-to-do | hard-up, low-income, poor** *tax incentives for low-income families* **| homeless | close, close-knit** *We are a very close-knit family and support each other through any crises.* **| immediate** *We've only told the immediate family* (= the closest relations). **| conjugal, nuclear** *the nuclear family of parents and children* **| extended** *maintaining contact with members of his extended family* **| lone-parent, one-parent, single-parent** *the difficulties faced by one-parent families* **| two-parent | adoptive** *helping emotionally damaged children to find placements with adoptive families* **| patriarchal | middle-class, working-class, etc. | royal | bereaved** *a counselling agency to help bereaved families*
- VERB + FAMILY **belong to, be one/part of, come from** *He belonged to an old-established family.* ◇ *We all knew her so well that we felt she was almost part of the family.* ◇ *Many of our students come from poor families.* **| marry into** *She married into a wealthy family.* **| run in** *a medical condition which runs in the family* **| be in** *This painting has been in our family for generations.*
- FAMILY + NOUN **background, history** *Do you know anything about her family background?* ◇ *a family history of heart disease* **| connections, relationships, ties** *They prefer to stay in their home country because of family ties.* **| member | life | business | home | commitments** *The job wouldn't really fit in with my family commitments.* **| income | doctor | holiday | feud | heirloom | motto | name** (= surname) **| planning** (= controlling the number of children you have by using contraception)
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *These problems occur in all families.* **within a/the ~** *creating conflict within the family*
- PHRASES **family and friends** *The support of family and friends is vital.* **a member of a family**

2 children

- ADJ. **large, small | young** *parents with young families*
- VERB + FAMILY **have** *I always wanted to have a large family.* **| start** *They got married last year and plan to start a family* (= have children) *soon.* **| bring up, raise** *struggling to bring up a family on a low income* **| feed, support** *It is difficult for them to earn enough to feed their families.*
- FAMILY + NOUN **size** *Average family size has decreased since the Victorian era.* **| man** *a good family man, completely devoted to his wife and kids*

famine *noun*

- ADJ. **great, severe, terrible | widespread | imminent, impending** *Against a background of impending famine, heavy fighting took place.*
- VERB + FAMINE **face, suffer** *Four million people are now facing famine.* ◇ *countries that regularly suffer famines* **| cause, produce | relieve**
- FAMINE + VERB **strike** *When famine strikes, it is often women and children who suffer the most.*
- FAMINE + NOUN **relief | victim**
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *Thousands of people died during the terrible famine of that year.*
- PHRASES **a threat of famine**

famous *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | make sb/sth** *The school was made famous by its association with Charles Dickens.*
- ADV. **really, very | quite | internationally, locally** *internationally famous rock stars* **| justly, rightly** *The city is justly famous for its nightclubs.*
- PREP. **as** *He was famous as both a teacher and a scientist.* **for** *The town became famous for its lace.*
- PHRASES **rich and famous** *One day I'll be rich and famous, you'll see!* **world famous** *He became a world famous conductor.*

fan *noun*

1 enjoys watching/listening to sb/sth very much

- ADJ. **adoring, ardent, avid, big, dedicated, devoted, great, keen, loyal, number one, real** *I'm a big fan of Italian food.* ◇ *one of the team's biggest fans* ◇ *The singer says her dad is her number one fan.* **| lifelong | armchair** *For armchair fans back home, it was one of the highlights of the Sydney Olympics.* **| obsessive** *The actress is asking the court to protect her from an obsessive fan who is making her life a misery.* **| cricket, football, rugby, soccer, sports, etc. | jazz, music, pop, etc. | film, movie | home** *The goal was greeted by jubilation from the home fans.* **| away, travelling, visiting | opposing/opposition, rival** *There were clashes between rival fans after the match.*
- VERB + FAN **delight** *The big band sound of Syd Lawrence and his Orchestra will delight fans.* **| disappoint, let down** *Fans will not be disappointed.*
- FAN + VERB **converge on sth, gather, turn out/up** *Soccer fans converged on the capital for the cup final.* ◇ *More than 40 000 fans turned up for the 12-hour event.* **| watch sth | applaud (sb/sth), boo (sb/sth), chant sth** *Over 25 000 fans applauded both teams off the field.* **| besiege sth** *Hundreds of fans besieged the star's hotel.*
- FAN + NOUN **club, letter, mail**

2 machine that creates a current of air

- ADJ. **electric | cooling | extractor | ceiling, overhead**
- FAN + NOUN **belt, heater**

fanatic *noun*

- ADJ. **real | cricket, fitness, football, keep-fit, health, sports** *He's a real football fanatic.* **| religious**

fancy dress *noun*

- VERB + FANCY DRESS **don, wear** *Several of the managers donned fancy dress for the office party.*
- FANCY DRESS + NOUN **ball, party**
- PREP. **in ~** *Many of the marathon runners compete in fancy dress.*

fanfare *noun*

- ADJ. **great** (*often figurative*) *The new building was opened with great fanfare in January 1895.* **| trumpet**

- VERB + FANFARE **give, play**
- FANFARE + VERB **sound** *A trumpet fanfare sounded and the procession began.*
- PHRASES **a fanfare of trumpets**

fang *noun*

- ADJ. **long** | **sharp**
- VERB + FANG **bare, show** *The wolf growled and bared its sharp fangs.* | **sink** *The snake sank its fangs into its victim.*

fantastic *adj.*

1 very good
- VERBS **be, feel, look, smell, sound, taste** *I felt fantastic after my swim.* ◇ *This cake tastes fantastic.*
- ADV. **really, truly** *We had a really fantastic holiday.* | **absolutely, just, quite** *The sense of freedom was absolutely fantastic.*

2 strange
- VERBS **be, look, sound**
- ADV. **rather** *It may sound rather fantastic, but it's the truth.* | **increasingly** *The plot gets increasingly fantastic as the film goes on.*

fantasy *noun*

- ADJ. **pure, sheer** *Most of what they told us was pure fantasy.* | **wild** *She dismissed the idea as a wild fantasy.* | **personal, private** | **childhood, childish** | **erotic, romantic, sexual** | **male**
- VERB + FANTASY **enjoy, have, indulge in** | **build, weave** *She had woven a whole fantasy about living in a cottage by the sea.* | **cherish, nourish** *I cherished the fantasy that I might one day have a son who would fulfil the dream.* | **act out** *Children can act out their fantasies in a secure environment.* | **fulfil, live (out), play out, satisfy** *My childhood fantasies were finally fulfilled.* ◇ *He was able to play out his fantasy of pop stardom.*
- FANTASY + NOUN **life, world** *living in a fantasy world*
- PREP. **~about** *She had a fantasy about going to live on a South Pacific island.*
- PHRASES **the realms of fantasy** *The idea belonged in the realms of fantasy.* **a world of fantasy** *She felt she had entered a world of fantasy.*

farce *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, total** *The whole procedure has become a complete farce.* | **French, Whitehall** (*both figurative*) *It was like a Whitehall farce the way I was sent from department to department and everyone said it was someone else's job to help me.*
- VERB + FARCE **become, degenerate into, end in, turn into** *The debate degenerated into farce when opposing speakers started shouting at each other.*

fare *noun*

1 money paid to travel by bus, taxi, etc.
- ADJ. **expensive, high** | **cheap, low** | **adult, full, normal, standard** | **children's, concessionary, discounted, half, reduced** | **return, single** | **first-class, second-class** | **air, bus, cab, coach, ferry, rail, taxi, train**
- VERB + FARE **pay** *I'm afraid you will have to pay the full fare.* | **charge** *Buses charged a standard fare of about 20 pence per mile.* | **increase, put up** | **bring down, cut, reduce, slash** *air fares slashed by a massive 30%* | **introduce, offer** *The airline has introduced a cheap return fare to New York.* | **dodge** *He faces charges of dodging taxi fares.*
- FARE + VERB **cost (sb) sth** *The return fare will cost you less than two single tickets.* | **go up, increase, rise** | **come down**
- FARE + NOUN **increase, rise** | **reduction** | **deal** *a special fare deal for air travellers*
- PREP. **at…~** *Children travel at half fare.*
- PHRASES **an increase/a rise in fares, a reduction in fares** *The company is promising reductions in fares.*

2 passenger in a taxi
- VERB + FARE **pick up** *The taxi driver picked up a fare outside the opera house.*

3 food; material for listening to, reading, etc.
- ADJ. **delicious, rich, wholesome** | **plain, rough, simple** | **daily, standard, staple, traditional, typical** *Court trials involving famous people are the daily fare of newspapers.* ◇ *The band's music was standard rock fare.* | **local** | **vegetarian** | **Chinese, English, French, etc.** | **Christmas, farmhouse**
- VERB + FARE **offer, serve** *a restaurant serving traditional Scottish fare* | **sample** *tourists seeing the sights and sampling the local Spanish fare*

fare *verb*

- ADV. **badly, well** *She should fare better in this competition.* ◇ *He fared well against his main rival.*

farewell *noun*

- ADJ. **fond** | **emotional, tearful** | **sad** | **silent** *I said a silent farewell to my village as I left for the city.* | **final**
- VERB + FAREWELL **bid sb/sth, say, wish sb** *We bade them a final farewell.* | **wave** *I waved farewell to my friends from the deck of the ship.* | **make** *The court dignitaries made their farewells to the emperor.* | **exchange** *They exchanged fond farewells at the railway station.* | **be** *Is this farewell or will we see each other again?*
- FAREWELL + NOUN **appearance** *This famous warplane is about to make its farewell appearance.* | **address, speech** | **performance, tour** *the band's farewell tour* | **dinner, party** | **card, gift, present**
- PREP. **in ~** *He raised his hand in farewell.* | **~to** *She was sorry to bid farewell to Portugal.*

far-fetched *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound**
- ADV. **extremely, impossibly, very** *The whole story was impossibly far-fetched.* | **a bit, a little, pretty, rather**

farm *noun*

- ADJ. **large** | **little, small** | **100-acre, 200-hectare, etc.** | **neighbouring, next** *She lives on the next farm.* | **local, nearby, surrounding** | **isolated, outlying, remote** | **border** | **hill** | **organic** | **intensive** | **commercial** | **factory** | **model** *Ten model farms have been set up to showcase modern production methods.* | **working** *The area combines a working farm and a farming museum.* | **family, home** | **traditional** | **private** | **state** | **cooperative, collective** | **arable, livestock, mixed** | **dairy, fur, stud** | **fish, fruit, pig, poultry, sheep, trout, turkey, etc.**
- VERB + FARM **have, own** | **manage, run** | **work (at/on)** *During the war, few men were left to work the farm.* ◇ *The children had to work on the family farm.* | **set up** | **live at/on** | **be brought up on** | **visit**
- FARM + VERB **lie** *The farm lies on the hills above the lake.* | **produce sth** *a dairy farm producing speciality cheeses*
- FARM + NOUN **produce, product** *Farm produce, including fruits and grains, was their principal export.* ◇ *farm products such as eggs and vegetables* | **animal** | **labourer, worker** | **labour** | **work** | **manager, owner** | **management** | **land** (also **farmland**) | **building** | **equipment, implements, machinery** | **policy** *the EU farm policy* | **subsidies, support** *The EU has decided to cut farm subsidies.* | **life** *village and farm life* | **cottage, house** (also **farmhouse**) | **shop** | **road, track**

- PREP. **at a/the ~** *The police are investigating a fire at a farm near Whitby.* **down on the ~** *The myth of happy and contented animals down on the farm is now far from the truth.* **on a/the ~** *He had lived on that farm all his life.*

farm *verb*

- ADV. **heavily, intensively** *The land has been intensively farmed.* | **organically** *They farm organically now.*

farmer *noun*

- ADJ. **big, large | small** *a new scheme to help the small farmer* | **peasant, tenant | gentleman | commercial | hill | organic | arable, livestock | dairy | cattle, chicken, pig, sheep, etc.**

farming *noun*

- ADJ. **commercial | intensive | battery, factory | subsistence | hill | organic | arable, livestock, mixed | dairy | fish, fruit, poultry, sheep, etc.**
- VERB + FARMING **be engaged in, work in**
- FARMING + NOUN **community | industry | land | method, practice**

fascinating *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, sound | become | make sth | find sth**
- ADV. **deeply, most, really, terribly, truly, very** *a most fascinating book* ◇ *'This is all very fascinating,' said Wilcox, 'but I've got a meeting in five minutes.'* | **absolutely, quite | endlessly** *I find the natural world endlessly fascinating.*
- PREP. **to** *What was fascinating to me was the way the creatures moved.*

fascination *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, great | growing | particular, peculiar, special | endless, enduring, lifelong, perennial | awful, horrible, horrified, morbid, unhealthy | strange** *a morbid fascination with death*
- VERB + FASCINATION **have, hold** *The sea holds a fascination for all children.* | **develop, feel, find, have** *He had a deep fascination with all forms of transport.* | **exercise, exert** *These exotic plants exert a fascination all of their own.* | **share** *She shared his fascination for motorbikes.* | **gaze in/with, look (on) in/with, stare in/with, watch in/with | listen in/with** *He looked on in horrified fascination as the ship drew nearer to the rocks.*
- PREP. **in/with ~** *She watched in fascination as the cat pounced on the mouse.* | **~ for** *She developed a fascination for these creatures.* **~ in** *He found great fascination in her quiet, frank manner.* **~ with** *a lifelong fascination with Baroque music*
- PHRASES **part of the fascination** *Seeing over a thousand species of fish is part of the fascination of the reef.* **a source of fascination to sb** *His letters have been a source of fascination to a wide audience.*

fashion *noun*

1 style of dressing, etc. popular at a particular time

- ADJ. **current, latest, modern, new | growing | changing, passing** *changing fashions in education* ◇ *This theory, though recent, is more than a passing fashion.* | **high** *The store sells everything from sports clothes to high fashion.* | **designer** *the influence of Italian designer fashion on the clothes industry* | **female, street, youth | architectural, cultural, intellectual**
- VERB + FASHION **be, be in** *She wore a powdered wig, as was the fashion of the day.* ◇ *Black is always in fashion.* | **become, come into** *Pessimism has become the fashion.* ◇ *When did flares first come into fashion?* | **fall out of, go out of** *Careful spending has gone out of fashion in our consumer society.* | **be out of | come back into | be back in | introduce, set, start** *He set a fashion for large hats.* | **follow, keep (up) with, keep pace with** *I've given up trying to keep up with the latest fashions.*
- FASHION + VERB **change** *watching how fashions change over the years*
- FASHION + NOUN **statement** *Flared trousers were a fashion statement of the seventies.* | **model** *She started her career as a fashion model.* | **show | shoot** *photographers at fashion shoots* | **magazine | scene** *fresh interest in the New York fashion scene* | **capital** *Paris, the world's fashion capital* | **business, industry, market, trade, world** *Her summer collection took the fashion world by storm.* | **company, house, label** *one of the most successful fashion houses in Milan* | **retailer, shop | design, photography | designer, editor, photographer | accessory, clothes, garment | victim** *this season's must-have accessories that no fashion victim will be seen without*
- PREP. **after the ~ of** *She spoke in French after* (= copying) *the fashion of the court.* | **~ for** *the fashion for long dresses* **~ in** *Fashions in art come and go.*
- PHRASES **changes in fashion, the fashion of the day, the height of fashion** *The palazzo represents the height of architectural fashion for the mid-17th century.* **the world of fashion** *household names in the world of fashion and design*

2 way you do sth

- ADJ. **true ...** *The inspector insisted the meeting be held, in true spy novel fashion, in the open air.* | **normal, orthodox, usual** *Application for the course can be made in the normal fashion.* | **conventional, time-honoured, traditional** *They celebrated their win, in time-honoured fashion, by spraying champagne everywhere.* | **typical** *We had just gone out when, in typical fashion, the rain came down.* | **limited** *He has a small vocabulary and is only able to express himself in a limited fashion.* | **positive | no uncertain** *Karpov struck back in no uncertain fashion to win the seventh game.* | **meaningful | parrot** *Students become frustrated with learning verbs parrot fashion.* | **best** (*often ironic*), **exemplary** *batons ready in best police fashion* | **civilized | appropriate | cavalier | controlled, orderly, organized, regular, systematic | ad hoc, desultory, haphazard, piecemeal, random, roundabout | arbitrary | straightforward | logical, predictable | linear** *Costs and revenues are assumed to behave in a linear fashion.* | **easy, leisurely, relaxed** *The descent of the footpath starts in easy fashion.* | **dramatic, spectacular | bizarre, peculiar | mysterious | friendly | jocular | businesslike | democratic**
- VERB + FASHION **behave in**
- PREP. **after a ~** *So they became friends, after a fashion* (= to some extent). **in a ~** *Why are they behaving in such a ridiculous fashion?* **in ... ~** *The troops embarked in orderly fashion.*

fashionable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look | become | remain | make sth | consider sth**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *Furnishings of this sort are now highly fashionable.* | **increasingly | quite, rather | currently | newly | suddenly** *a young and suddenly fashionable actor* | **no longer**
- PREP. **among** *These cars are no longer fashionable among the young.*

fast *noun*

- ADJ. **long | brief**
- VERB + FAST **go on, keep, observe** *All members of the religious community keep these fasts.* | **break** *In the evening the people break their fast.*

fast *adj., adv.*

• VERBS **be, seem** *Her pulse seemed very fast.*
• ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, really, remarkably, surprisingly, very** *I should make a very fast profit on these.* | **a bit, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively** *I suppose delivery in two days is quite fast really.* | **amazingly, blindingly, incredibly, unbelievably** *He came round the corner blindingly fast.* | **dangerously**

fasten *verb*

• ADV. **firmly, properly, securely, tightly** *We fastened all the windows securely.* | **up** | **together** *She fastened the papers together with a paper clip.*
• PREP. **to** *She fastened the rope to a tree.*

fat *noun*

1 substance directly under your skin
• ADJ. **excess, surplus** | **body** | **puppy** *It wasn't easy to lose puppy fat when Mum fed her on stodgy home cooking.*
• VERB + FAT **go to, put on, run to** *If you eat too much you will put on fat.* ◇ *She was middle-aged and running to fat.* | **burn (off), lose, shed** *Exercise helps you burn off excess fat.* | **break down** *Claims that anti-cellulite creams can break down fat are controversial.*
• FAT + VERB **accumulate** *The waistline is usually the first area where fat accumulates.*
• PHRASES **not an ounce of fat** *His body was all muscle, with not an ounce of fat.* **a roll of fat** *He had great rolls of fat round his middle.*

2 in your diet/used in cooking
• ADJ. **dietary** | **added, excess, extra, surplus** | **visible** | **animal, vegetable** | **mono-unsaturated, polyunsaturated, saturated, unsaturated** *margarines that contain polyunsaturated fats* | **cooking** | **bacon, beef, etc.** | **hot** *Put the chicken in hot fat and braise thoroughly.*
• VERB + FAT **contain, have** *This cheese has a lot of fat in it.* | **be high/low in fat** *Ice cream is high in fat and sugar.* | **eat** *The amount of fat you eat can affect the health of your heart.* | **cut down on** *It's easy to cut down on fat without changing your diet too much.* | **cut out** *She has cut out fat altogether in an effort to lose weight.* | **cut, trim** *Trim any visible fat off the meat before cooking.* | **drain (off), pour off, skim off** *Remove the turkey from the pan and drain off the excess fat.*
• FAT + VERB **contain sth** *Fats contain more calories than carbohydrates for the same weight.* | **spit** *The only sound from the kitchen was the lamb fat spitting.*
• FAT + NOUN **intake** *the relationship between fat intake and cholesterol levels* | **content** *Despite its very low fat content, it is deliciously creamy.*

fat *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look** | **become, get, grow** | **make sb** *Try to cut out the foods that are making you fat.*
• ADV. **enormously, hugely, immensely, really, very** | **quite, rather** | **grossly, monstrously**
• PHRASES **big/great fat** *sitting next to a big fat woman* ◇ *a big fat envelope stuffed with banknotes*

fatal *adj.*

1 causing death
• VERBS **be, prove**
• ADV. **near** *He has not driven since his near fatal crash earlier this year.* | **always, invariably, universally** | **often, sometimes, usually** | **rarely** | **potentially** *The disease is potentially fatal.*
• PREP. **for** *This kind of accident is almost always fatal for the pilot.* **to** *a chemical which is invariably fatal to small mammals*

2 causing serious trouble
• VERBS **be, prove**
• ADV. **absolutely** | **ultimately** *Her disregard of this advice was ultimately fatal.*
• PREP. **to** *Tax increases have proved fatal to the nation's business community.*

fate *noun*

1 sb/sth's future
• ADJ. **awful, dreadful, grim, terrible** | **cruel, unhappy** | **tragic** | **worse** *They decided to kill themselves rather than suffer a worse fate at the hands of their enemy.* | **common, normal, usual** | **likely** *Under-representation is the likely fate of small parties.* | **ultimate** | **unknown** *The ultimate fate of the captured troops is unknown.* | **the same, similar** *She broke her ankle before the big match, then suffered the same fate a month later.*
• VERB + FATE **face** *He faces a grim fate if he is sent back to his own country.* | **meet, suffer, undergo** | **share** *He had no desire to share the fate of his executed comrades.* | **avoid, escape** *She managed to escape the fate of the other rebels.* | **deserve** *What had he done to deserve such a terrible fate?* | **accept, be resigned to** *The condemned men were resigned to their fate.* | **bemoan, bewail** *Instead of just bemoaning your fate, why not do something to change it?* | **ponder** | **seal** *He had signed his confession and sealed his own fate.* | **decide** *An extraordinary general meeting to decide the company's fate will be held on Thursday.* | **abandon sb/sth to, leave sb/sth to** *The generals abandoned the men to their fate.* | **rescue/save sb/sth from** | **discover, hear (of), know (of), learn (of)** *He will learn of his fate in court tomorrow.* | **await** *The convicts awaited their fate in prison.*
• FATE + VERB **await sb/sth, be/lie in store for sb/sth** *They were warned of the dreadful fate that awaited them if ever they returned to their homes.* | **befall sb/sth** *Worst of all was the fate that befell the captured rebel general.* | **be/hang in the balance** *The fate of the African wild dog hangs in the balance* (= is uncertain).
• PHRASES **hold/have sb/sth's fate in your hands** *The jury held the fate of the accused in their hands.* **leave/place/put your fate in sb's hands, a fate worse than death** (*often humorous*) *Obeying her parents' wishes for her life seemed a fate worse than death.*

2 power controlling everything
• ADJ. **cruel** *He believed that the universe was controlled by the whims of a cruel fate.* | **kind** *Fate was kind to me.*
• VERB + FATE **believe in** *Such coincidences are almost enough to make one believe in fate.* | **tempt** *It would be tempting fate to say that we will definitely win the game.* | **leave sth to** *I have a great deal of trust and I leave everything to fate.*
• FATE + VERB **decide sth, decree sth** *Fate decreed that she would never reach America.* | **intervene** *He secretly hoped that fate would intervene and save him having to meet her.* | **strike** *Only weeks after her previous injury, fate struck again, leaving her unable to compete.* | **deal a/its hand, deal sb a hand** *Anne accepted the cruel hand that fate had dealt her.* | **take a hand** *Fate took a hand in* (= influenced) *the outcome of the championship.*
• PHRASES **an accident/quirk/turn/twist of fate** *It seemed a cruel twist of fate that the composer should have died so young.* **the hand of fate** *The new job had come at just the right time for him. Was it the hand of fate?*

father *noun*

• ADJ. **lone, single** *As a single father, he found it a struggle bringing up three children.* | **widowed** | **absent** | **biological, natural, real** | **adoptive, foster, step-** | **surrogate** *Elena's brother was a surrogate father to her kids after her husband died.* | **elderly, old** | **dead, deceased, late** | **caring, devoted, good, loving, marvellous** *He is very good with children and would make a marvellous* *father.* | **adoring, doting, indulgent** | **beloved** *She kept the books that had belonged to her beloved father.* | **proud** *He has just become the proud father of a baby girl.* | **domineering, overbearing, possessive** | **drunken, violent** | **doctor, engineer, immigrant, etc.** *Their musician father encouraged their love of music.*

• VERB + FATHER **resemble, take after** *The two boys were like their mother in character, but Louise took after her father.* | **follow, succeed** *She followed her father into the legal profession.* ◇ *He succeeded his father as Professor of Botany.* | **inherit sth from** *She inherited the urge to travel from her father.*

• FATHER + NOUN **figure** *Some of his students regard him as a father figure.*

• PHRASES **a father of two, etc.** *Boland, a father of two, was arrested on charges of theft.* **follow in your father's footsteps** *He followed in his father's footsteps and became a motor mechanic.* **the death/loss of your father**

fatigue *noun*

1 great tiredness

• ADJ. **extreme, severe** | **growing** | **general** | **mental, physical** | **battle, compassion** *soldiers suffering from battle fatigue* ◇ *Compassion fatigue among donor countries means there is less money for worthy causes.* | **driver** *car accidents caused by driver fatigue*

• VERB + FATIGUE **suffer from, drop (down) with** | **combat, fight (off), reduce** *The right vitamins help you combat fatigue.*

• FATIGUE + VERB **set in** *She had to stop work when fatigue set in.* | **overcome sb**

• PREP. **from ~** *crying from cold and fatigue* **with ~** *The man was shivering with fatigue.*

• PHRASES **a feeling of fatigue, signs of fatigue**

2 fatigues clothes worn by soldiers

• ADJ. **army, battle, combat** | **camouflage**

• PHRASES **in ~** *soldiers in combat fatigues*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

fault *noun*

1 responsibility for sth wrong

• ADJ. **stupid** *It's his own stupid fault his car was stolen—he should have kept it locked.*

• FAULT + VERB **lie with sb** *The fault lay not with her but with her manager.*

• PREP. **at ~** *The party at fault in a court case usually pays the other party's legal costs.* **through sb's ~** *Many of the soldiers died through his fault.* **without ~** *Having made an error of judgement she was not without fault in the matter.*

• PHRASES **be all/entirely your (own) fault** *It's all your own fault, you know.* **be largely/partly your (own) fault, be hardly your (own) fault, fault on sb's part** *(law) the absence of fault on the part of the prosecution* **through no fault of your own** *helping people who, through no fault of their own, have lost their homes*

2 weakness in sb's character

• ADJ. **great** *Her great fault was that she thought too well of herself.* | **moral**

• VERB + FAULT **have** *We all have our faults.* | **be blind to, overlook** *He is blind to his son's faults.* ◇ *She was prepared to overlook his faults.*

• PREP. **~ in** *Incorrectness in speech was considered a great fault in a gentleman.*

• PHRASES **for all sb's faults** *For all her faults* (= in spite of her faults) *she was a great woman.* **to a fault** *He is generous to a fault* (= very generous and perhaps too generous).

3 sth wrong or not perfect with sth

• ADJ. **bad, major, serious** | **basic** *There is a basic fault in the design of the engine. It cannot be fixed.* | **dangerous** | **minor** | **common** *a common fault with this type of machine* | **real** *The only real fault of the book is its looseness of structure.* | **obvious** | **possible** | **design** | **technical** | **electrical, engine, mechanical, structural** *Of course, minor mechanical faults sometimes occur.*

• VERB + FAULT **have** *The engine has a serious fault.* | **develop** *The car soon developed another fault.* | **look for** | **diagnose, discover, find, identify, locate** *They've found a major fault with the electrical system.* ◇ *When she tested the recorder she could find no fault with it.* | **find, pick** *My mother did nothing but find fault with my schoolboy manners.* ◇ *He's deliberately picking fault with the meal to get a reduction on the bill.* | **correct, fix, rectify, repair** *trying to correct the faults in the program* | **report** *You should report any fault directly to the phone company.*

• FAULT + VERB **occur** | **lie in sth** *The fault lay in the structure of the economy.*

• FAULT + NOUN **detection, diagnosis, finding**

• PREP. **~ in** *Diabetes is caused by a fault in the insulin production of the body.* **~ with** *She was always finding fault with his manners.*

• PHRASES **for all its faults** *For all its faults* (= in spite of the faults), *we love this city.*

4 in tennis

• ADJ. **double** | **foot**

• VERB + FAULT **serve** *Even tennis champions sometimes serve double faults.*

5 geology

• ADJ. **geological**

• FAULT + NOUN **line** | **scarp** | **system, zone**

favour *noun*

1 sth that helps sb

• ADJ. **big, great** | **little, small** | **special** | **personal** *As a personal favour to me, please don't release my story to the press.* | **political, sexual**

• VERB + FAVOUR **ask** *I came here to ask you a favour, a big favour.* | **expect** *Although I am friends with the tennis ace, I don't expect any favours from him on court.* | **bestow, do, grant sb** *Rodrigo accepted the favours bestowed on him by the new king.* ◇ *Do yourself a favour and cut your credit cards in half.* | **owe sb** *I'll ask Jane. She owes me a favour.* | **return** *Thanks very much. I'll return the favour one day.* | **seek** | **obtain** | **accept, receive**

2 approval or support for sb/sth

• ADJ. **great, high, particular** *Traditionally, vigilante groups have found greater favour on the political right.* ◇ *He stood in high favour at the court of Lewis the Pious.* | **divine, government, political, royal** *In the Christian tradition, the world exists only as an act of divine favour.*

• VERB + FAVOUR **be in, enjoy, have, stand in** *The bishop was said to have enjoyed the king's favour.* | **find, gain, win** *Her political views have not found favour in recent years.* | **curry** *trying to curry favour with the teachers* | **show** *As an examiner, she showed no favour to any candidate.* | **be out of** | **fall from, fall out of, lose** *The senior officials were punished and rapidly fell from favour.* ◇ *This idea has long since fallen out of favour.* | **be back in, bring sth back into, come back into** *A style of art can go out of fashion and then come back into favour fifty years later.* | **argue in, speak (out) in** *to argue in favour of this policy* | **come down/out in, decide in, find in, resolve in, rule in, vote in** *The committee came down in favour of setting up a national body.* ◇ *The High Court found in favour of the plaintiffs.* | **work in** *Environmental conservation generally works in favour of maintaining the status quo.* | **go in** *The golf tournament went in the Americans' favour* (= they won).

• PREP. **in ~ of** *He is strongly in favour of capital punishment.* ◇ *Early in his musical career he abandoned blues in favour of jazz.* **in sth's ~** *This piece of software has two points in its favour: it's fast and inexpensive.* | **~ with** *She is too popular with the public to find much favour with the critics.*

• PHRASES **an argument in sb/sth's favour** *an argu-*

ment in favour of censorship **a bias in sb/sth's favour, look with favour on/upon sb/sth** *Depth of training is looked upon with favour by many employers.* **without fear or favour** (= in a fair way)

favour *verb*

- ADV. **strongly** *We strongly favour reform of the system.*
- VERB + FAVOUR **appear to, be known to, be likely to, be thought to, seem to, tend to** *The prime minister is thought to favour an early referendum on the issue.*
- PREP. **at the expense of** *He favoured some individuals at the expense of others.* **over** *News coverage should not favour one party over another.*

favourable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem | become | remain**
- ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, highly, very** *She gained a highly favourable impression of the company.* | **extraordinarily, overwhelmingly | fairly, moderately, quite | broadly, generally** *His proposals met with a broadly favourable response.* | **uniquely**
- PREP. **for** *Conditions are now favourable for skiing.* **to** *The court's judgement was favourable to their client.*

favourite *noun*

1 sb/sth that you like more than others

- ADJ. **firm, great, huge, particular, special, very** *This painting is a particular favourite of mine.* ◇ *My very favourite film is 'The Wizard of Oz'.* | **all-time, established, old, perennial, traditional** *This movie is my all-time favourite.* ◇ *You will find all your old favourites in this book of poems.* | **family, personal, popular**
- VERB + FAVOURITE **choose** *If I had to choose a favourite, it would be Monet's 'Water Lilies'.*
- PREP. **~ for** *The woods surrounding the estate were a favourite for family walks.* **~ among** *He is a favourite among his teammates.* **~ with** *The song is a firm favourite with their fans.*

2 competitor expected to win

- ADJ. **clear, firm, hot, odds-on, overwhelming, red-hot** *She is odds-on favourite to win a coveted Academy Award.* | **second | joint | even money** *The horse is an even money favourite.* | **2–1, etc.** *Tiger Woods is 3–2 favourite to win the Million Dollar Challenge.* | **home, local | cup, race, title**
- VERB + FAVOURITE **look, start (as)** *The Brazilians still look firm favourites to take the title.* | **emerge as**
- PREP. **~ for** *Jopanini is second favourite for Saturday's race, behind Bright Spark.*
- PHRASES **favourite to win** *The Spanish are the favourites to win.*

favouritism *noun*

- VERB + FAVOURITISM **show | accuse sb of**
- PREP. **~ to/towards** *She denied showing favouritism to any of her students.*
- PHRASES **accusations of favouritism** *He resigned over accusations of favouritism.*

fax *noun*

- ADJ. **incoming**
- VERB + FAX **send (sb) | get, receive**
- FAX + NOUN **machine | number | line | signal** *Our fax machine differentiates between an incoming fax signal and a voice call.* | **message | modem, software**
- PREP. **by ~** *There was still time to receive copies by fax.* | **~ from, ~ to**

fear *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, great, real, terrible** *It was the first time she had experienced real fear.* | **growing | irrational | unfounded, well-founded** *Our fears proved unfounded.*
- VERB + FEAR **experience, feel, have** *She did not know why she should feel such fear.* | **be filled with, be gripped by, be paralysed by/with, be trembling with | express, show, voice** *The boy showed no fear.* ◇ *Doctors have voiced fears that we may be facing an epidemic.* | **cause, fuel, instil** *This incident has fuelled fears of a full-scale war.* ◇ *the fear that her mother had instilled in her* | **allay, dispel, overcome** *The government is keen to allay the public's fears.* ◇ *She managed to overcome her fear.* | **live in** *The people live in fear of attack by the bandits.*
- FEAR + VERB **abate, subside** *When she heard the news, some of her fear subsided.* | **grip sb, haunt sb** *A sudden fear gripped him.*
- PREP. **for ~ of** *Nobody refused for fear of losing their job.* **in ~** *He ran away in fear.* **out of ~** *He lied out of fear.* **through ~** *The pupils obeyed through fear of punishment.* **without ~** *She stared at him without fear.* **with ~** *His face was white with fear.* | **~ about** *his fear about what might happen* **~ for** *my fear for her safety* **~ of** *They have a terrible fear of failure.*
- PHRASES **fear and trepidation** *The men set off in fear and trepidation.* **strike fear into (the heart of) sb** *The sound of gunfire struck fear into the hearts of the villagers.*

fear *verb*

- ADV. **genuinely, greatly, really, seriously** *This disease is greatly feared.* ◇ *I really feared that this might be the end.* | **rightly** *Everyone rightly feared the coming war.*
- VERB + FEAR **seem to | begin to | have little/nothing to** *You have nothing to fear from him.* | **have reason to** *I have reason to fear that you might abuse your power.*
- PREP. **for** *We feared for their safety.*

fearful *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem | become, grow | remain | leave sb, make sb** *The experience had left her fearful and uncertain.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | almost | a bit, a little, rather, slightly | understandably**
- PREP. **about** *understandably fearful about the future* **for** *I felt fearful for my life.* **of** *He was fearful of every shadow.*

fearless *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | make sb**
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, totally, utterly**
- PREP. **in** *She was fearless in her attacks on public figures.*

feasibility *noun*

- ADJ. **economic, technical**
- VERB + FEASIBILITY **consider, discuss, examine, explore, investigate, look at, study | assess, determine, evaluate, test** *a drilling project to assess the feasibility of bringing the water four miles into the village* | **demonstrate | prove | doubt, express doubts about, question** *Some of them doubted the feasibility of the proposal.*
- FEASIBILITY + NOUN **study** *The local council called for a feasibility study into the new road scheme.*

feasible *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem | become | consider sth** *A tunnel was not considered economically feasible.*
- ADV. **entirely, perfectly, quite** *It's perfectly feasible to produce electricity without creating pollution.* | **barely, hardly, not really, scarcely | administratively, economically, financially, politically, technically**

feast *noun*

1 special meal

- ADJ. **delicious** | **great, sumptuous** *Villagers used to hold a great feast at harvest time.* | **village, wedding**
- VERB + FEAST **give, have, hold** | **make, prepare** *The women were busy preparing the wedding feast.* | **provide (sb with)** *The migrating salmon provide a delicious feast for the brown bear.* | **attend**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** | **~ of** *a feast of Spanish food and wine*

2 religious festival

- ADJ. **moveable** (the date of which varies from year to year)
- VERB + FEAST **celebrate**
- FEAST + NOUN **day**
- PREP. **on the ~ of** *on the feast of St John* | **~ of** *the feast of the Passover*

feat *noun*

- ADJ. **amazing, astonishing, brilliant, extraordinary, incredible, remarkable** | **considerable, great** | **major** | **difficult, no mean** *Dragging the fully laden boat across the sand dunes was no mean feat.* | **easy** | **impossible** | **acrobatic, intellectual** | **engineering** *The tunnel was one of the greatest engineering feats of the 19th century.*
- VERB + FEAT **accomplish, achieve, bring off, perform, pull off** *He has pulled off an extraordinary feat in completing the voyage single-handedly.* | **be capable of** *She was capable of remarkable feats of endurance.* | **repeat** | **emulate** *He emulated the feat of the legendary athlete Jesse Owens.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a remarkable feat of strength*

feather *noun*

- ADJ. **breast, neck, tail** | **ostrich, peacock, etc.** | **downy** *the downy feathers on the duck's breast*
- VERB + FEATHER **preen** *a swan preening its feathers* | **fluff (out/up)** *The owl fluffed out its feathers.* | **ruffle** *Its feathers were ruffled by the chill breeze.* | **pluck** *plucking the dead hen's feathers*
- FEATHER + NOUN **duster, pillow**
- PHRASES **as light as a feather**

feature *noun*

1 important part of sth

- ADJ. **basic, central, essential, important, key, main, major, significant** | **conspicuous, distinctive, distinguishing, dominant, notable, noteworthy, noticeable, predominant, prominent** *a distinctive feature of his poems* | **outstanding, remarkable, striking** | **attractive, endearing, eye-catching** | **interesting, special, unusual** | **salient** *He took me around our new offices, pointing out all the salient features.* | **useful** | **characteristic, typical** | **unique** | **common** *the common feature in all these cases* | **permanent, regular** *These walks became a regular feature of his day.* | **recurring** *Self-deprecation is a recurring feature as Stevenson talks.* | **redeeming** *The one redeeming feature of the scheme was its low cost to the council.* | **original** *The house retains most of its original features.* | **built-in** | **additional** | **constructional, design, physical, structural** | **energy-saving, safety** *a car with new built-in safety features*
- VERB + FEATURE **have** *The site had a number of interesting features.* | **retain** | **point out**
- FEATURE + VERB **distinguish sth** *the essential feature that distinguishes anorexia nervosa from other eating disorders* | **characterize sth** *A feature that characterizes all anteaters is an extremely slow metabolic rate.* | **include sth** *Special features include passenger airbags and an electric sunroof.*

2 features sb's face

- ADJ. **handsome** | **delicate, fine** | **rugged** *admiring his rugged features* | **chiselled** *a slim figure with strongly chiselled features* | **aquiline, hawk-like** | **facial**
- VERB + FEATURES **have** *She's got very delicate features.*
- PREP. **with ~** *a young woman with fine features*

3 newspaper article/television item

- ADJ. **big, major, special** | **regular** *The magazine runs a regular feature on ethnic cooking.* | **in-depth**
- VERB + FEATURE **do, have, publish, run** *Next month they will publish a special feature on computer books.*
- FEATURE + NOUN **writer**
- PREP. **~ on** *an in-depth feature on the Italian fashion scene*

feature *verb*

1 include sth as an important part

- ADV. **regularly** *Women's magazines regularly feature diets and exercise regimes.* | **rarely**
- PHRASES **be featured in/on sth** *His work is featured in a special documentary tonight.* ◇ *The school has been featured on television.*

2 have a part in sth

- ADV. **heavily, highly, largely, prominently, significantly, strongly** *Reading over his past speeches, you'll see that housing, public health and education feature strongly.*
- PREP. **in** *Garlic features prominently in her recipes.*

February *noun*

⇨ Note at MONTH

federation *noun*

- ADJ. **loose** *He proposed a loose federation of small, local groups.* | **national** | **international, world** *the International Federation of Football Clubs* | **athletics, soccer, etc.** *the British Athletics Federation* | **employers', industry, labour, police, trade union**
- VERB + FEDERATION **create, form, set up** *They were now ready to create a national labour federation.*
- FEDERATION + VERB **break up** *The federation broke up in 1989.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the six republics in the federation* **within a/the ~** *He urged them to remain within the federation.* | **~ of** *a federation of over 3 000 organizations*
- PHRASES **a member of a federation**

fed up *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** *The children were starting to get a bit fed up.*
- ADV. **really, very** *You look really fed up!* | **absolutely, thoroughly, totally** | **a bit, a little, pretty, rather**
- PREP. **about** *He still sounds pretty fed up about everything.* **with** *I'm absolutely fed up with the whole thing.*

fee *noun*

- ADJ. **exorbitant, fat** (*informal*), **hefty, high, huge, large, substantial** *I expect you had to pay a fat fee to your divorce lawyers.* | **low, modest, nominal, reasonable, small** *We had to pay a nominal fee to join the club.* ◇ *Their fees are quite reasonable.* | **fixed, flat, set** *Many tax advisers now offer fixed fee interviews.* | **full** | **concessionary, reduced** | **normal, standard, usual** | **appropriate** *Send the form, together with the appropriate fee, to the Land Registry.* | **additional, extra, top-up** *There is no additional fee or paperwork for this insurance cover.* | **outstanding, unpaid** *We will be taking active steps to collect the outstanding fees.* | **annual, hourly, monthly** | **court, legal** | **consultancy, professional** *the professional fees of the solicitors and accountants involved* | **admission, entrance, entry, joining, membership, subscription** *a £30 membership fee* | **administration, arrangement, booking, cancellation, handling, licence, regis-**

tration | college, course, school, student, tuition | transfer (= charges paid by a football club 'buying' a player from another team) | **green** (= a charge to use a golf course)

- VERB + FEE **charge, impose** *They charge higher fees to overseas students.* | **incur** *Employees are reimbursed for any legal fees incurred when they relocate.* | **pay | collect | waive** *He agreed to waive his usual fee.* | **refund, reimburse | increase, reduce | agree, negotiate** *She negotiated a fee of $1 800 a week.* | **cover** *You'll need money to cover fees and expenses.* | **afford**
- FEE + VERB **be due, be payable** *All fees are payable when the invoice is issued.* | **cover sth, include sth** *The fee includes the cost of testing the electric wiring.* | **go up** *The admission fee has gone up.*
- FEE + NOUN **income** *The firm's consultancy fee income rose by 3% last year.* | **structure**
- PREP. **for a ~** *For a small fee, anyone can use these facilities.* | **~ for** *We now charge a fee for museum entrance.*

feed *verb*

1 give food to a person/animal/plant

- ADV. **properly, well** *Have they been feeding you well?* | **regularly**
- VERB + FEED **help (to)** *Let us discipline ourselves so as to help feed a hungry world.*
- PREP. **on** *She fed the children on baked beans and fish fingers.* **to** *Most of the crop is fed to the cattle.* **with** *The animals are fed with hay and grass.*
- PHRASES **a mouth to feed** *He saw the new baby as just another mouth to feed.*

2 eat

- ADV. **voraciously** *The bears feed voraciously in summer and store energy as fat.* | **busily** *Egrets and a solitary grey heron were busily feeding.* | **mainly, predominantly | exclusively**
- PREP. **on** *The seals feed mainly on fish and squid.*

3 supply sth

- ADV. **directly**
- PREP. **into** *The data is fed directly into a computer.* **through** *This feeds the paper through to the printer.* **to, with** *feeding the media with rumours and accusations*

feedback *noun*

- ADJ. **constructive, favourable, good, positive, useful, valuable | negative | appropriate, relevant | direct | immediate, instant** *The writer gets no immediate feedback and simply has to imagine the reader's reaction.*
- VERB + FEEDBACK **give sb, provide (sb with) | get, have, obtain, receive | collect**
- PREP. **~ about/on** *They will be given feedback on their performance.* **~ from** *I've had a lot of very constructive feedback from the students about this.*

feel *verb*

- ADV. **deeply, strongly** *She felt her mother's death very deeply.*
- PREP. **about** *He feels very strongly about a lot of issues.*

feeling *noun*

1 sth that you feel/sense/believe

- ADJ. **strong | definite, distinct | nagging, sneaking/sneaky, vague** *I had a nagging feeling that I had forgotten something.* | **glorious, good, great, marvellous, warm, wonderful** *It was a good feeling to be arriving home again.* | **horrible, nasty, queasy, sick, sinking, terrible, tight, uncomfortable, uneasy** *He suddenly had a terrible sinking feeling in the pit of his stomach.* ◇ *I've got a tight feeling in my stomach.* | **guilty | curious, eerie, odd, peculiar, strange | gut, instinctive** *My gut feeling was that we couldn't trust her.* | **general, popular, public** *The general feeling of the meeting was against the decision.*
- VERB + FEELING **feel, get, have** *He felt a wonderful warm feeling come over him.* ◇ *Do you get the feeling that we're not welcome here?* | **give sb, leave sb with** *She was left with the feeling that he did not care.* | **know** (*informal*) *'I really resent the way he treated me.' 'I know the feeling* (= I know how you feel).*'* | **arouse, evoke, inspire** *a case that has aroused strong public feeling*
- FEELING + VERB **come over sb | be mutual** *'I'm going to miss you.' 'The feeling's mutual* (= I feel exactly the same).*'*
- PREP. **~ about** *I don't have any strong feelings about it one way or the other.* **~ of** *a feeling of excitement* **~ on** *What are your feelings on this issue?*

2 **feelings** emotions

- ADJ. **deep, intense, strong | ambivalent, mixed** *I had mixed feelings about meeting them again.* | **positive, warm | hostile, negative | hurt, injured | inner, innermost, real, true | pent-up** *releasing her pent-up feelings* | **personal | religious | sexual**
- VERB + FEELINGS **experience, harbour, have, suffer** *She experienced a whole range of feelings.* ◇ *He still harboured feelings of resentment.* ◇ *She was lucky that she had suffered no more than hurt feelings.* | **express, give vent to, release, show, vent** *He finds it difficult to express his feelings.* ◇ *I finally gave vent to my feelings and started yelling at him.* | **articulate, describe, discuss, talk about** *discussing his innermost feelings with me* | **bottle up, hide, mask, repress, suppress** *trying to hide her true feelings* | **banish** *He was determined to banish all feelings of guilt.* | **hurt** *I'm sorry if I've hurt your feelings.* | **spare** *We didn't tell Jane because we wanted to spare her feelings.* | **arouse, engender, evoke, inspire** *The debate aroused strong feelings on both sides.* | **heighten** *It was the practical aspect of life that heightened her feelings of loneliness and loss.* | **understand | reciprocate, return** *Although she did not reciprocate his feelings, she did not discourage him.*
- FEELINGS + VERB **come into sth** *Personal feelings don't come into it—we have to do what's right.* | **run high** *Feelings were running high* (= people became very angry or excited) *as the meeting continued.*
- PREP. **~ about, ~ for** *It makes no difference to my feelings for you.* **~ of** *his feelings of grief* **~ towards** *her feelings of anger towards him*
- PHRASES **no hard feelings** (*informal*) *Someone's got to lose. No hard feelings, Dave, eh?*

3 understanding/sensitivity

- ADJ. **great, wonderful**
- VERB + FEELING **have | develop** *He had developed a feeling for when not to disturb her.*
- PREP. **with ~** *She spoke with feeling about the plight of the homeless.* | **~ for** *She has a wonderful feeling for colour.*

4 sympathy/love

- VERB + FEELING **have** *You have no feeling for the sufferings of others.*
- PREP. **~ for** *She still had a lot of feeling for David.*

5 anger

- ADJ. **bad, ill**
- VERB + FEELING **cause, create, lead to | stir up**
- PREP. **~ against** *Their aim was to stir up feeling against the war.* **~ between** *There was a lot of bad feeling between the two groups of students.*

6 ability to feel physically

- VERB + FEELING **lose | regain**
- PREP. **~ in** *After the accident he lost all feeling in his legs.*

7 atmosphere

- VERB + FEELING **create, recreate** *They have managed to recreate the feeling of the original theatre.*
- PREP. **~ of** *Light colours create a feeling of spaciousness.*

fellow *noun*

1 man

- ADJ. **old, young | big, little | handsome | charming, fine, good, nice, splendid | lucky, poor** (= unlucky)

2 member of an academic society/college

- ADJ. **junior, senior | honorary, research, teaching**
- VERB + FELLOW **elect sb**
- PREP. **~ of** *He was elected a fellow of the Royal Society.*

feminine *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel**
- ADV. **really, very | almost | traditionally** *Girls may be given fancier names because this fits in with a traditionally feminine image.*

feminism *noun*

- ADJ. **contemporary, modern | egalitarian, liberal, socialist | militant, radical, revolutionary | Western**

feminist *noun*

- ADJ. **active, committed | egalitarian | militant, radical | Western**

fence *noun*

- ADJ. **high | low | barbed-wire, chain-link, iron, mesh, metal, picket, wire, wooden** *There was a cottage garden at the front and a white picket fence.* **| electric | boundary, garden, perimeter, security** *the airport perimeter fence* **| political** (*figurative*) *a proposal favoured by people on both sides of the political fence*
- VERB + FENCE **build, erect, put up | climb (over), jump (over)**
- FENCE + NOUN **post**
- PREP. **over a/the ~** *She leaned over the fence.* **| ~ around/round** *a fence around the site*

fend *verb*

PHRASAL VERB

fend for yourself

- VERB + FEND FOR YOURSELF **be able to | be left to, have to** *The children were left to fend for themselves.*

ferment *noun*

- ADJ. **heady, intense | artistic, creative, cultural, intellectual | political, revolutionary** *a period of intense political ferment*
- PREP. **in (a) ~** *The country was in ferment.*

ferocity *noun*

- ADJ. **great, sheer | unexpected**
- PREP. **with ~** *It attacks its prey with great ferocity.*

ferry *noun*

- ADJ. **cross-channel | night | car, passenger**
- VERB + FERRY **get, go on, take, travel on, use | wait for | catch | board, drive onto | drive off, get off**
- FERRY + VERB **carry sb, take sb** *a ferry carrying more than a thousand people* **| arrive, come in, dock** *We watched the ferry dock.* **| depart, go, leave, sail** *The last ferry sails at 4 p.m.* **| cross sth** *the ferries that cross the River Mersey* **| run** *Ferries run every hour or so.*
- FERRY + NOUN **crossing, journey | route | boat | passenger | port, terminal | line, operator, service**
- PREP. **aboard/on/on board a/the ~** *the people on the ferry* **by ~** *We went by night ferry.* **| ~ across/over** *We caught the ferry across the river.* **~ between** *the ferry between Dundee and Tayport* **~ for/to** *the ferry for Italy* **~ from** *the ferry from Ramsgate to Dunkirk*

fertile *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look | become | remain, stay**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a highly fertile soil*

fertilizer *noun*

- ADJ. **natural | artificial, chemical | liquid**
- VERB + FERTILIZER **spray, spread, use** *He spread fertilizer on the field with a rake.*

fervour *noun*

- ADJ. **great | evangelical, moral, religious | nationalist, patriotic, revolutionary**
- VERB + FERVOUR **arouse** *The speech aroused nationalist fervour.*
- PREP. **with ~** *He took up the cause with evangelical fervour.* **| ~ for** *their fervour for the cause*

festival *noun*

1 series of performances/events

- ADJ. **big, major | annual | autumn, spring, etc. | international, local | arts, beer, cultural, dance, drama, film, flower, folk, jazz, literary, music, rock, theatre**
- VERB + FESTIVAL **have, hold | attend, go to, visit | organize | appear at, take part in** *The school has taken part in the festival since 1997.*
- FESTIVAL + VERB **take place | begin, open, start | attract sb** *The festival attracts thousands of visitors every year.*
- FESTIVAL + NOUN **organizer | events, programme**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *He's appearing at a local folk festival tonight.* **during a/the ~** *the movies shown during the eight-day festival* **in a/the ~** *the events in this year's festival*

2 religious celebration

- ADJ. **great, important, major | annual | pagan, religious | Christian, Muslim, etc. | harvest**
- VERB + FESTIVAL **celebrate, observe** *The family always observes the Jewish festivals.*
- PREP. **at/on a/the ~** *the pilgrims who arrived on major festivals*

festivities *noun*

- ADJ. **Christmas, seasonal**
- VERB + FESTIVITIES **join in, take part in | enjoy**
- PREP. **during the ~** *She managed to disappear during the festivities.*

feud *noun*

- ADJ. **long, long-running, long-standing, old | bitter | petty | blood** *Blood feuds and general gangsterism added to the local crime rate.* **| family, internecine, personal, private** *a long-standing family feud*
- VERB + FEUD **have | start** *The incident started a family feud.* **| settle** *a time to settle old feuds*
- PREP. **~ between** *the feuds between rival companies* **~ over** *They had a long-running feud over money.* **~ with** *his personal feud with the city authorities*

fever *noun*

1 high temperature

- ADJ. **high, raging** *She had a very high fever.* **| slight | glandular, rheumatic, scarlet, etc.**
- QUANT. **bout** *He suffered from recurrent bouts of fever.*
- VERB + FEVER **have, run, suffer from** *He put his hand to my forehead as if I was running a fever.* **| catch, come/go down with, develop** *James has gone down with a fever.* **| die of | bring down, reduce** *drugs which can help to bring down the fever* **| be accompanied by** *Inflammation is frequently accompanied by fever.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *He was in bed with a fever.*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

2 nervous excitement

- ADJ. **election, World Cup**
- FEVER + VERB **grip sb** *Election fever suddenly gripped the nation.*
- PREP. **in a ~ of** *She was in a fever of anxiety about him.*

fib *noun*

- VERB + FIB **tell** *Don't tell fibs!*

fibre *noun*

1 in food

- ADJ. **dietary** *your total daily intake of dietary fibre* | **vegetable**
- VERB + FIBRE **be high/rich in** *foods that are rich in fibre*
- FIBRE + NOUN **content** *foods that have a high fibre content* | **intake**
- PHRASES **a high/low fibre diet** *the problems associated with a low fibre diet* **an intake of fibre, a source of fibre** *Peaches are a good source of fibre.*

2 material/body tissue

- ADJ. **coarse** *Mechanical filters draw air through flat, coarse fibres.* | **hollow** | **strong** | **natural** | **artificial, man-made, synthetic** | **carbon, coconut, cotton, nylon, paper, polyester, textile, wood** | **glass, optical** | **muscle, nerve** | **moral** (*figurative*) *It isn't just a lack of moral fibre that leads to a rising divorce rate.*
- VERB + FIBRE **be made from/of** *Wear underwear that is made from natural fibres.*
- FIBRE + NOUN **optics**

fickle *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very** | **a bit, rather** | **notoriously** *The television world was a notoriously fickle one.*

fiction *noun*

1 stories that are not true

- ADJ. **contemporary, modern** | **classic** | **light, popular, pulp** | **literary, serious** | **crime, detective, historical, romantic, science**
- VERB + FICTION **publish, write** | **read**
- PHRASES **a work of fiction** *He has written over 20 works of fiction.* **a writer of fiction** *a well-known writer of crime fiction*

2 sth that is not true

- ADJ. **pure** *Don't believe what she says—it's pure fiction!*
- VERB + FICTION **keep up, maintain** *She still tries to maintain the fiction that she is happily married.*
- PHRASES **fact and fiction** *Fact and fiction became all jumbled up in his report of the robbery.*

fictional *adj.*

- VERBS **be** *The names of the shops are entirely fictional.*
- ADV. **entirely, purely, wholly**

fictitious *adj.*

- VERBS **be** *His story is wholly fictitious.*
- ADV. **entirely, purely, totally, wholly** | **largely**

fidelity *noun*

- ADJ. **great** | **absolute** | **marital**
- PREP. **with ~** *telling the story with great fidelity to the original* | **~ to** *They swore an oath of fidelity to their king.*

fidget *verb*

- ADV. **nervously**
- PREP. **with** *She was fidgeting nervously with her pen.*

field *noun*

1 on a farm

- ADJ. **cultivated, green, ploughed** *looking out on the green fields of Shropshire* ◇ *We had to walk across a ploughed field.* | **enclosed** | **open** | **surrounding** | **fertile** | **arable** | **paddy, rice** | **corn, wheat, etc.**
- VERB + FIELD **work in** *People were working in the fields.* | **cultivate, work** *Despite the war, they continued to work the fields.* | **plough** | **plant** *He planted fields full of sunflowers.* | **graze in**
- PREP. **across/through a/the ~** *walking across the field* **(out) in a/the ~** *tractors working out in the field* | **~ of** *a field of wheat*

2 subject/activity

- ADJ. **chosen, specialist** *All of them are experts in their chosen field.* | **research**
- VERB + FIELD **work in** *people who work in this field* | **open up** *This discovery has opened up a whole new field of research.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *There has been no solid research in this field.* **outside a/sb's ~** *I can't answer that—I'm afraid it's outside my field* (= outside the subject I am studying/know sth about). | **~ of** *now working in the field of computer science*
- PHRASES **an expert/a leader in the field, a field of research/study**

3 practical work

- VERB + FIELD **work in**
- FIELD + NOUN **investigation, research, study, trial** | **methods** | **trip** *We went on a geology field trip.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *essential reading for those working in the field*

4 for playing a sport

- ADJ. **playing, sports** | **football, rugby, etc.**
- VERB + FIELD **take** *Today they take the field* (= go on to the field to play a match) *against county champions Essex.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *people walking their dogs on the school's playing field* **off the ~** *Players need discipline both on and off the field* (= when playing and in other areas of their lives).

5 the field competitors in a sport/business

- ADJ. **strong**
- VERB + FIELD **head, lead** *She managed to head the field across the finishing line of the London Marathon.* ◇ *They lead the field in home entertainment systems.*
- FIELD + VERB **include sb** *The strong field includes three world record holders.*
- PREP. **ahead of the ~** *His superb technique puts him head and shoulders ahead of the field.*

6 in science

- ADJ. **electric, electromagnetic, energy, force, gravitational, magnetic** *the earth's magnetic field*
- FIELD + NOUN **strength**

7 computing

- ADJ. **display, input**
- VERB + FIELD **create** *You will need to create separate fields for first name, surname and address.* | **move between** *the use of keys to move between fields*

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

fieldwork *noun*

- ADJ. **extensive, intensive** | **detailed**
- VERB + FIELDWORK **be engaged in, carry out, conduct, do, participate in, undertake**
- FIELDWORK + NOUN **student**
- PREP. **during/in the course of ~** *evidence obtained during fieldwork* | **~ on** *extensive fieldwork on chimpanzees*

fifty-fifty *adj., adv.*

- VERBS **be | divide sth, go, split sth** *We'll divide the profit fifty-fifty. ◇ We went fifty-fifty on the meal.*
- ADV. **about, roughly** *The chances of reaching the survivors in time are about fifty-fifty.*

fight *noun*

1 struggle using physical force

- ADJ. **big | fierce, furious | real** *Suddenly the argument developed into a real fight.* | **good** *There's nothing he likes so much as a good fight.* | **fair** *It was a fair fight and Stephen won.* | **free** *They inadvertently got mixed up in a free fight involving some 20 people.* | **running** *He was killed during a series of running fights outside a disco.* | **stand-up, straight** *In a straight fight the crusaders usually won; in skirmishes, the Saracens often overcame their more numerous opponents.* | **pub, street | gang | fist | food, pillow, water | championship, title** *watching the world title fight between Tyson and Lewis* | **professional | heavyweight, etc. | bull** (also **bullfight**), **cock, dog**
- VERB + FIGHT **pick, start** *He tried to pick a fight with me. ◇ I don't know who started the fight.* | **be looking for, be spoiling for, want** *Andy was drunk and spoiling for a fight.* | **be in, get into, get involved in, get mixed up in, have** *Don't get into any more fights!* | **break up, stop** *The fight was broken up by a teacher.* | **win | lose | watch**
- FIGHT + VERB **take place** *The dog fights took place every Sunday morning.* | **break out, erupt, start | ensue** *A fight ensued which left one man dead.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He killed a man in a fight.* | **~ about/over** *They nearly had a fight over who should move first.* **~ between** *fights between police and football fans* **~ with** *They got involved in a fight with some older boys.*

2 trying to get/do sth

- ADJ. **brave, good, strong** *She died at the age of 43 after a brave fight against cancer.* | **hard, long, real, tough** *a long fight to beat inflation* | **bitter, desperate | legal**
- VERB + FIGHT **put up** *Coal workers are determined to put up a fight to save their jobs.* | **lead, spearhead** *leading the fight for compensation for the sacked workers* | **join (in)** *Doctors have now joined in the fight to make this treatment available to all.* | **face** *Now he is facing his toughest fight yet—back to fitness after a series of injuries.* | **be engaged in** *He is still engaged in a bitter fight with his old firm.* | **carry on, continue, keep up** *She said they would continue their fight to find a cure for Aids.* | **step up** *The government has vowed to step up the fight against crime.* | **take** *She vowed to take her fight to the High Court.* | **win | lose** *Are we losing the fight against illegal drugs?* | **give up** *She just gave up her fight for life.*
- FIGHT + VERB **be on** *The fight is on to have this brutal practice stamped out.* | **continue, go on** *The fight for justice goes on.*
- PREP. **without a ~** *I'm not giving up without a fight!* | **~ against** *a new weapon in the fight against car crime* **~ for** *their fight for a fair deal*
- PHRASES **a fight for life/survival** *the firm's desperate fight for survival in a cut-throat market* **have a fight on your hands** *Union leaders know that they have got a real fight on their hands.*

3 competition

- ADJ. **brave, good, great, strong, tremendous | straight**
- VERB + FIGHT **put up** *The team put up a good fight* (= they played well) *but were finally beaten.*
- FIGHT + VERB **be on**
- PREP. **~ between** *This will be a straight fight between Labour and the Conservatives: the other parties are nowhere.* **~ for** *The fight for supremacy in the sport is on.*
- PHRASES **a fight to the death** (*figurative*) *By 1807 politics had become a fight to the death between the two factions.* **a fight to the finish** *If the polls are wrong and it's a fight to the finish, the result may not be known until all the votes have been counted.* **have a fight on your hands** *She now has a fight on her hands* (= will have to play very well) *to make it through to the next round.* **make a fight of it** *No doubt Ferguson wants his team to make a fight of it.*

fight *verb*

1 in a war/battle

- ADV. **bravely, gallantly, valiantly | bitterly, hard | back, off**
- VERB + FIGHT **be prepared to, be ready to** *He did not believe that the enemy was ready to fight.* | **continue to**
- PREP. **against** *They fought bravely against the enemy.* **alongside** *fighting alongside his comrades* **for** *They fought for control of the island.* **over** *fighting over disputed land*

2 struggle against/hit sb

- ADV. **bitterly, hard | back, off** *The jeweller was stabbed as he tried to fight the robbers off.*
- VERB + FIGHT **be prepared to**
- PREP. **against** *She fought hard against his strong grip.* **with** *Riot police fought with militants demonstrating in support of the uprising.*

3 in a contest

- ADV. **bitterly, hard | successfully**
- VERB + FIGHT **be determined to, be prepared to, be ready to** *We need a good manager who is prepared to fight for a fair share of the funds.* | **continue to**
- PREP. **for** *Regional monopolies were bitterly fought for.*
- PHRASES **fiercely/keenly fought** *The second half was keenly fought, but neither side managed to score.*

4 try to stop/achieve sth

- ADV. **hard, like a tiger, tooth and nail** (= in a very determined way) *He fought hard to overcome his disability. ◇ She'll fight like a tiger to protect her children. ◇ The residents are fighting tooth and nail to stop the new development.* | **doggedly, stubbornly, tenaciously | desperately | successfully | back, off** *It is time to fight back against street crime.*
- VERB + FIGHT **be determined to, be prepared to, be ready to, vow to | continue to | help (to)**
- PREP. **against** *They are committed to fighting against racism.* **for** *fighting for equal rights*

5 argue

- ADV. **bitterly**
- PREP. **about** *It's a trivial matter and not worth fighting about.* **over** *The children will fight over quite small things.* **with** *He's always fighting with his brother.*

fighting *noun*

- ADJ. **bitter, fierce, hard, heavy, intense, serious | continued/continuing | fresh, renewed | spasmodic, sporadic | hand-to-hand** *The sword and mace were favourite weapons for hand-to-hand fighting.* | **street**
- VERB + FIGHTING **end, halt, stop** *holding talks designed to end the fighting* | **take part in** *The conspirators took no part in the fighting which ensued.* | **be killed in, die in | escape, flee** *refugees fleeing the fighting*
- FIGHTING + VERB **take place | begin, break out, erupt, flare, start** *Fierce fighting broke out among the refugees.* | **ensue, follow | continue | rage** *For nearly two months the fighting raged.* | **intensify | die away/down, diminish** *Even if the fighting dies down, no answer is in sight to the political crisis.* | **stop | resume**
- PREP. **during/in the ~** *He was badly wounded during the fighting.* | **~ between** *There has been renewed fighting between the government forces and the rebels.*
- PHRASES **a lull in the fighting**

figure *noun*

1 amount/price

• ADJ. **high | low | double, single | accurate, exact | approximate, ballpark, rough, round | real, reliable, true | official | latest | inflated | target | sales, trade, unemployment, viewing, etc.**

• VERB + FIGURE **reach** *The rate of inflation has now reached double figures.* | **add (together/up) | release** *The government has just released new unemployment figures.*

• FIGURE + VERB **add up** *These figures don't add up.* | **be bandied about** *Lots of different figures were being bandied about.*

• PHRASES **according to (the) figures** *The industry remains in the doldrums, according to official figures out today.* **in round figures**

2 **figures** arithmetic

• PHRASES **good/bad at figures** *I was never very good at figures.* **have a head for figures**

3 person

• ADJ. **great | central, important, influential, key, leading, prominent, respected, well-known** *a key figure on the committee* | **public | national | senior | familiar** *He was a familiar figure in the local pub.* | **unlikely** *They were visited by the unlikely figure of Bill Clinton.* | **authority, dominant | father, mother, parental | tragic | comic, ridiculous | cult, legendary | historical | political, religious | government, opposition**

• PREP. **~of** *a figure of authority/fun*

4 shape of a person

• ADJ. **life-size | dark, shadowy | seated, standing, etc.** *The seated figure in the corner beckoned me over.* | **central** *the central figure in the photo* | **solitary | human**

• FIGURE + NOUN **painter, painting**

5 shape of sb's body

• ADJ. **beautiful, fine, good, handsome, hour-glass, lovely** *She's still got a lovely figure.* | **slender, slim | ample, bulky, full, large, stocky | tall | dashing, imposing, striking | neat, slight, small, tiny, trim | lithe**

• VERB + FIGURE **cut, have** *He cut a dashing figure in his uniform.* | **keep** *She's kept her figure after all these years.* | **watch** *You need to watch your figure.* | **lose**

• PHRASES **a fine figure of a man/woman**

6 picture/diagram

• VERB + FIGURE **see** *See Figure 8.*

• FIGURE + VERB **show sth**

figure *verb*

• ADV. **largely, prominently, significantly, strongly | hardly, scarcely** *Vegetables hardly figure at all in their diet.*

• PREP. **among** *This man did not figure among the suspects.* **in** *The issue figured prominently in our discussion.*

file *noun*

1 collection of papers

• ADJ. **bulging, bulky, fat, thick | card, box, lever-arch, Manila, paper** *six box files bulging with notes* | **official | confidential, personal, secret | detailed | case** *The work involves preparing case files and attending court.* | **information | client, customer, personnel | court, newspaper, office, police, security**

• QUANT. **stack** *A stack of files awaited me on my desk.*

• VERB + FILE **have, keep** *The company keeps secret files on all its employees.* ◇ *Personnel files are kept in secure storage.* | **keep sth on** *Your application will be kept on file* (= in a file). | **collate, compile, prepare** *He had compiled a file of largely circumstantial evidence.* | **enter sth into** *The details of the incident will be entered into the file.* | **open** *The police have opened a file on the case.* | **close** *The file on the murder was closed five years ago.* ◇ *She closed the file and put it aside.* | **reopen** *Police have reopened the file on the missing girl.* | **update** *It is important to update customer files.* | **pull out, take out** *She went to the filing cabinet and took out a file.* | **check, go through, look at, read** *I'll check the files for any information on the case.*

• FILE + VERB **contain sth**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *the information contained in the police files* **on ~** *All the details of the transaction are on file.* | **~on** *The police already have a thick file on that family.*

2 on a computer/disk

• ADJ. **large | computer | data, database, document, graphics, program, spreadsheet, system, text | master | back-up** *to make/take a back-up file* (When talking about a new file, not a back-up file or a copy, the correct verb is **create**.) | **Unix, ZIP, etc.**

• VERB + FILE **create | hold sth in, store sth in** *the information held in this file* | **enter sth into** *entering data into a file* | **open | close | save | load | access, read, view** *You need a special password to access this file.* | **back up, copy | edit | delete, erase | delete sth from** *deleting data from a file* | **name, rename | recover, retrieve** *how to recover deleted files* | **hold, store** *The files are stored in Mac format.* | **compress, stuff | transfer** *transferring files between workstations*

• FILE + VERB **contain sth**

• FILE + NOUN **name | format | server**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *The names and addresses are all kept in computer files.*

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

file *verb*

1 put sth in a file

• ADV. **carefully | alphabetically | away** *These notes should be carefully filed away for future reference.*

• PREP. **under** *The card is filed alphabetically under the name of the editor.*

2 record sth officially

• ADV. **formally** *He has now formally filed a complaint against the police.*

• PREP. **for** *to file for bankruptcy/divorce* **with** *A copy of the notice must be filed with the court.*

3 walk in line

• ADV. **silently | out, past** *The long line of mourners filed silently past.*

• PREP. **in, into, out of, past, through**

fill *verb*

• ADV. **fast, quickly, rapidly** *At the moment, most reservoirs are filling fast.* | **gradually, slowly | up**

• VERB + FILL **begin to** *The sails began to fill.* | **seem to** *He seemed to fill the room with his presence.*

• PREP. **with** *Fill the bucket with water.*

• PHRASES **be filled to capacity** *The school is filled to capacity—we simply can't take any more students.* **be filled to the brim (with sth)** *The drawers were all filled to the brim.*

fillet *noun*

• ADJ. **anchovy, cod, haddock, salmon, etc. | beef, pork**

• FILLET + NOUN **steak**

• PREP. **~of** *fillet of beef with a red wine sauce*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

filling *noun*

• ADJ. **dental | amalgam, gold**

• VERB + FILLING **have** *She's only eight years old and she's already got five fillings.* ◇ *I went to the dentist yesterday and had two fillings.* | **do, give sb** *The dentist said she would do the filling straightaway.* | **replace**

• FILLING + VERB **come out, fall out**

film *noun*

1 movie

• ADJ. **long | short | exciting, good, interesting | successful | awful, bad, boring | epic | violent** *She thought the film far too violent to show to children.* **| X-rated | silent | black-and-white | low-budget | Hollywood, independent | television, video | adventure, children's, comedy, documentary, feature, gangster, horror, pornographic**

• VERB + FILM **see, watch | go to (see), take sb to (see)** *We went to an awful film last night.* **| direct, make, produce, shoot** *She makes children's films.* ◇ *The film was shot on location in Kenya.* **| take** *film taken by security cameras* **| cut, edit** *The film was heavily edited for screening on television.* **| distribute, release, screen, show** *The film was finally released after weeks of protest by religious groups.* **| ban, censor**

• FILM + VERB **be on, show** *There's an interesting film on at the local cinema.* **| come out, open, premiere** *The film came out last week.* **| be based on sth** *a film based on the novel by Charles Potter* **| be called sth, be entitled sth** *a film entitled 'Bitter Moon'* **| capture sth** *The film manages to capture the mood of the times.* **| contain sth, include sth** *The film contains explicit scenes of violence.* **| depict sth, present sth, represent sth, show sth** *The film depicts immense courage amid the horrors of war.* **| tell sth** *This film tells the remarkable story of a disabled actor.* **| feature sb, star sb** *The film stars Nicole Kidman as a nightclub singer.* **| record sth** *a film recording the first powered flight* **| deal with sth** *a film dealing with old age* **| open** *The film opens with a bird's-eye shot of London.* **| end**

• FILM + NOUN **crew, director, editor, maker, people, producer, team, unit, writer** *The film has plenty of what film people call 'bankability'.* **| world | actor, actress, legend, star | part, role | career, debut, work | credits** *His film credits* (= the films he has made) *as director include 'Mood Music' and 'Lies'.* ◇ *We stayed for the film credits* (= the names of people involved in the making of a film) *to see who the music was by.* **| critic | buff, fan | premiere | censor, censorship | screenplay, script | music, score, soundtrack | narrative | scene | stunt** *He was killed when a film stunt went wrong.* **| poster | studio | set** *They built a massive film set of an airport.* **| props | adaptation, version** *the film version of the best-selling novel* **| classic** *the film classic 'Fantasia'* **| documentary, drama | genre | clip, footage, sequence | report** *The news always contains several film reports.* **| series** *the 'Star Wars' film series* **| archives, library | business, company, industry | mogul** *Tyrannical Hollywood film moguls ruled their stars' lives.* **| distributor | making, production | festival | show | awards | camera, equipment, projector, recorder | rights** *The scramble for the film rights to her next novel has already begun.* **| school, student**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *There is a great car chase in the film.* **on ~** *They captured the incident on film.* **| ~ about** *a film about Queen Victoria* **~ of** *They've just started shooting a film of the novel.*

• PHRASES **the beginning/end of the film, be in films** (= work in the film industry), **a film with subtitles, the screening/showing of a film**

2 used for taking photographs

• ADJ. **black-and-white, colour | fast** *Fast film would be best for such action shots.* **| 35 millimetre, etc.**

• QUANT. **length, reel, roll** *a roll of 35 millimetre film*

• VERB + FILM **load, put in | remove, take out | rewind | develop, process** *I get my films developed at a local shop.* **| expose** *In the darkroom they found that only half the film had been exposed.* **| splice** *He spliced the two lengths of film together.*

3 thin layer of a substance/material

• ADJ. **fine, thin**

• VERB + FILM **be covered in/with** *The books were covered in a thin film of dust.*

• PREP. **~ of** *There was a fine film of sweat on her forehead.*

film *verb*

• ADV. **secretly** *The controversial experiment involved secretly filming a group of children.* **| on location** *The serial was filmed on location in Italy.*

• PHRASES **beautifully filmed** *fast-paced, well acted and beautifully filmed in the Blue Ridge Mountains*

filthy *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, smell | get | leave sth, make sth** *He always leaves the bath absolutely filthy!*

• ADV. **really | absolutely, completely | pretty**

final *noun*

1 last game/match in a competition

• ADJ. **grand** *He got through to the grand final of the competition.* **| area, national, regional, world | men's, women's | championship, cup**

• VERB + FINAL **hold, stage | be/get through to, go through to, make it to, qualify for, reach** *If we play well, we hope to make it to the final.* **| compete in, meet sb in, play in** *Scotland met Wales in the final at Twickenham.*

• FINAL + VERB **be played, take place**

• PREP. **in the ~** *Who is in the men's final?*

2 **finals** final exams at university

• VERB + FINALS **do, sit, take | fail, pass**

finale *noun*

• ADJ. **dramatic, exciting, grand, rousing, thrilling** *The evening ended with a grand finale of fireworks and music.* **| fitting**

• VERB + FINALE **end in/with, have, reach** *The match had a thrilling finale, with three goals scored in the last five minutes.* **| provide** *This victory provided a fitting finale to a brilliant season for the club.*

• PREP. **~ to** *a rousing finale to an evening of enthralling music*

finance *noun*

1 money needed to fund sth

• ADJ. **cheap** (= borrowed at low interest) **| necessary | additonal, extra, further** *the need to obtain additional finance* **| long-term, medium-term, short-term | independent | joint | external, outside | international | private (sector), public (sector) | bridging** *You may require bridging finance until the sale of your own property is completed.* **| capital** (= money that is paid) **| credit, debt, loan** (= money that is borrowed) **| equity** (= money from issuing shares) **| bank** *the availability of bank finance* (= bank loans) *for small businesses* **| housing, mortgage**

• VERB + FINANCE **get, obtain, raise** *She struggled to get the necessary finance for her training.* **| allocate, arrange, provide | need, require**

• FINANCE + VERB **be available** *the finance available to local government*

• FINANCE + NOUN **company, house | sector** *The banking and finance sector was booming.*

• PREP. **~ for** *Several banks are providing finance for the housing programme.*

• PHRASES **a source of finance**

2 managing money

• ADJ. **high** *the world of high finance* (= finance involving large companies or countries) **| company, corporate | (local) government, public, state | consumer, personal** *that most emotive of personal finance issues—*

taxation | **international** | **capital** (= paying money for sth) | **credit, debt, loan** (= borrowing money for sth) | **equity** (= issuing shares to get money)

• FINANCE + NOUN **director, minister, officer** *Local government finance officers found the tax very difficult to administer.* | **committee, department**

3 finances money available

• ADJ. **healthy, sound** *Our family finances are not very healthy at the moment.* | **shaky** *The company's finances are looking a bit shaky.* | **company** | **government, public, state** | **family, household, personal, private**

• VERB + FINANCES **have** *We don't have the finances to go on holiday this year.* | **lack** | **raise** *They are not sure how they will raise the finances to go on the trip.* | **deal with, handle, manage, plan, run** *how to plan your finances for a comfortable retirement* | **get/keep in order, sort out** *The company was under pressure to get its finances in order.* | **boost, improve** | **be a drain on, put a strain on, strain, stretch** *Buying a new car need not put a strain on your finances.*

• FINANCES + VERB **be in a mess** *Their finances are in a mess: they plan to call in an accountant.*

• PHRASES **the state of sb's finances**

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

finance *verb*

• ADV. **entirely, wholly** | **largely, mainly** | **partially, partly** | **privately, publicly** *The new roads will be financed privately.* | **jointly** *financed jointly by the British and French governments* | **directly** | **properly** *the introduction of a properly financed dog warden scheme*

• VERB + FINANCE **help (to)** | **be needed to, be required to** *the £37 million needed to finance the redevelopment* | **be used to**

find *noun*

• ADJ. **exciting, good, great, important, interesting, real, remarkable, significant, spectacular, startling** *The letters were a real find and James went on to publish two volumes of them.* | **small** | **lucky** *A lucky find in the Cotswolds is helping archaeologists discover what life was like in Roman Britain.* | **unexpected** | **stray** *Stray finds are more commonly discovered than whole new sites.* | **archaeological** | **medieval, prehistoric**

• VERB + FIND **discover, make, unearth** *prehistoric finds made in an unexplored cave* | **yield** *To date the site has yielded many interesting finds.* | **report** *I reported my find to the landowner.*

finding *noun*

1 result of research into sth

• ADJ. **important, key, significant** | **main** | **general** | **interesting** | **striking, surprising, unexpected** | **novel** | **positive** | **conflicting** | **early, initial, original** *The original findings conflict with more recent findings.* | **interim, preliminary** | **new, recent** | **scientific** | **empirical, experimental, research** | **survey**

• VERB + FINDING **record, write up** *Students were asked to conduct a survey and write up their findings in the form of a report.* | **summarize** | **announce, make public, present, publish, report** *The findings of the commission have not yet been made public.* ◇ *They will present their findings to senior police officers.* | **explain, interpret** | **examine** | **comment on, discuss** | **confirm, support** *UN official reports supported the preliminary findings that the plane was brought down by a missile.* | **challenge** *Sociologists have challenged the findings of criminologists on the behaviour of prisoners.*

• FINDING + VERB **be based on sth** *The findings are based on interviews with more than 2 000 people.* | **relate to sth** *Our findings relate to physically rather than the visually handicapped pupils.* | **apply to sth** *The findings from the case study school may apply to schools elsewhere.* | **indicate sth, point to/towards sth, reveal sth, show sth, suggest sth** *Our findings point to a lack of training among social services staff.* | **agree with sth, be consistent with sth, be in agreement with sth, be in line with sth, confirm sth, support sth** *Our recent findings are in line with those of an earlier study.* | **conflict (with sth)** | **lead to sth** *The findings led to the conclusion that ...* | **provide sth** *The research findings will provide practical assistance for teachers.* | **be made** *Similar findings were made in Spain.* | **emerge** *A similar finding emerged from a later experiment.*

• PREP. **~about** *recent scientific findings about sleep patterns* **~for** *The findings for one group can be applied to the others.* **~from** *findings from a recent research project* **~on** *findings on the depopulation of the countryside*

2 decision by a court

• VERB + FINDING **make** | **justify** *The facts of this case do not justify a finding of negligence.* | **uphold** *The appeal court upheld a finding that the agreement was unlawful.*

• PREP. **~against** *a finding against him by the Independent Commission Against Corruption* **~ in favour of** *The court made a finding in favour of the defendant.*

fine *noun*

• ADJ. **big, heavy, hefty, large, massive, stiff, substantial** | **maximum** | **parking**

• VERB + FINE **get** *I got a parking fine for parking on double yellow lines.* | **pay** | **give (sb), impose, levy** *Heavy fines were levied on motoring offenders.* | **be liable for/to, face, risk** *Drivers risk heavy fines for driving without a licence.* | **be punishable by, carry, lead to** *The offence carries a maximum fine of £500.* | **increase**

• PREP. **in~** *The club is struggling to pay £75 000 in fines to the football league.* | **~for** *a fine for water pollution*

fine *verb*

• ADV. **heavily** *Any company found to be breaking these rules will be heavily fined.*

• PREP. **for** *He got fined £200 for parking illegally.*

• PHRASES **get fined**

fine *adj.*

1 good enough/suitable

• VERBS **be, look, seem, smell, sound, taste** | **turn out** *I knew that everything would turn out fine in the end.*

• ADV. **absolutely, just** *Don't worry. Your voice sounds absolutely fine.*

• PREP. **for** *This paper's not very good quality, but it's fine for rough work.*

2 in good health/happy and comfortable

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *George looks fine now.*

• ADV. **absolutely** *I feel absolutely fine.*

3 bright and sunny/not raining

• VERBS **be** | **turn out** *It's turned out fine again today.* | **keep, remain, stay** *Let's hope it stays fine for the wedding this afternoon.*

4 thin/small

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **extremely, very** *Her hair is very fine.* ◇ *a very fine distinction* | **quite**

finger *noun*

• ADJ. **first, index** | **middle** | **ring, third, wedding** *I noticed the ring on the third finger of her left hand.* | **little** | **ringed** | **broken, dislocated, injured** | **pointing** | **accusatory, accusing, admonitory, warning** *The teacher raised a warning finger and we stopped talking.* | **prying** *The ornaments had been put out of reach of the children's prying fingers.* | **delicate, elegant, slender, slim** | **bony, lean, skeletal, skinny** | **chubby, fat, plump, podgy** |

blunt, spatulate, square-tipped | **gnarled** | **arthritic** | **gentle** *She took off his bandages with gentle fingers.* | **capable, deft, nimble, skilful, skilled** *Her nimble fingers undid the knot in seconds.* | **nerveless** | **nervous** | **clumsy** *His clumsy fingers struggled with the buttons.* | **dirty, filthy, grubby, sticky**

- VERB + FINGER **point** *'It was them!', she cried, pointing an accusing finger at the boys.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The enquiry pointed the finger of blame at the driver of the crashed coach.* | **draw** *The man drew a finger across his throat in a threatening gesture.* | **jam, poke, put, stick** *Everyone put their fingers in their ears when the shooting started.* | **jab, stab** *The protester was jabbing a finger aggressively at a policeman.* | **hold up, raise** *She raised a finger to her lips to ask for silence.* | **wag, waggle** *'None of that!' cried the teacher, wagging her finger.* | **dip** *I dipped my finger in the sauce and licked it.* | **run** *She ran her finger along the dusty shelf.* | **drum, tap** *He was drumming his fingers nervously on the arm of the chair.* | **click, snap** *We were swaying and clicking our fingers in time to the music.* ◇ *He snapped his fingers and the waiter came running.* | **stub** *I stubbed my finger painfully while reaching for a book.* | **shut, trap** *The child needed treatment after trapping her finger in the car door.* | **crook** *He crooked a finger to tell us to go over to him.* | **extend** *He held up his hand with the fingers extended.* | **prick** *The nurse pricked my finger to get some blood.* | **count (sth) on** *Although she knew lots of people, she could count her friends on the fingers of one hand.*
- FINGER + NOUN **bones, joints** | **movement** | **injury**
- PREP. **with your ~s** *It's easiest to eat chicken legs with your fingers.*
- PHRASES **the finger of fate/suspicion** (*figurative*) *The finger of suspicion was pointed at the chicken served for lunch.* **the tips of the fingers**

fingernail *noun*

- ADJ. **long** | **black, dirty** | **broken, torn** | **manicured, well-manicured** | **painted, red, scarlet**
- VERB + FINGERNAIL **cut, manicure, polish** | **bite, chew** | **break, tear** | **dig in** *She dug her fingernails into my neck.* | **drag, draw, rake, scrape** *the sound of fingernails being dragged down a blackboard* | **examine** *'Actually, I'm leaving you', she said, continuing to examine her fingernails.*
- FINGERNAIL + VERB **dig in**
- PREP. **under the/your ~s** *I noticed I had dirt under my fingernails.*

fingerprint *noun*

- QUANT. **set** *The police were able to obtain a set of fingerprints from the suspect.*
- VERB + FINGERPRINT **leave** *She was careful not to leave any fingerprints.* | **check (sth) for, dust sth for, examine sth for, look for** *The car is being examined for fingerprints.* | **find** | **obtain, take** *The investigator questioned him and took his fingerprints.* | **match** *The suspect's fingerprints have been matched with those found at the scene of the crime.*

finish *noun*

1 last part/end of sth

- ADJ. **exciting, good, great, thrilling, tremendous** *His best finish was 11th in the Hungarian Grand Prix.* | **perfect** *It was the perfect finish to a wonderful day.* | **sprint, storming, strong** *The runners came round the bend for a sprint finish in the home straight.* | **close, dramatic, nail-biting, photo, tight** *It was a photo finish, with three horses neck and neck at the finishing line.*
- VERB + FINISH **provide** *The rules of the game were changed to provide a more exciting finish for the television audience.* | **be in at** *Her car suffered from gearbox trouble, but she was still in at the finish.*
- FINISH + NOUN **line**
- PREP. **at the ~** *Several runners needed medical attention at the finish.* **to a/the ~** *They fought bravely right to the finish.* | **~ to** *a dramatic finish to the match*
- PHRASES **from start to finish** *He was in the lead from start to finish.*

2 look/feel of sth

- ADJ. **good, neat, professional** | **perfect** | **attractive** | **decorative** | **fine,**   **smooth** | **textured** | **natural** | **paint/painted** | **eggshell, gloss/glossy, matt, satin, shiny** | **brass, metallic, wood** *a guitar with a natural wood finish* | **surface** | **floor, wall, etc.** *The wall and floor finishes are all of the the highest standard.*
- VERB + FINISH **have** *This paint has a gloss finish.* | **achieve, get, obtain** *With our new tool for putting up wallpaper you can get a perfect finish every time.* | **create, give (sth), produce, provide** *This trim really does give the garment a professional finish.* | **match** *The steel roof has been coloured to match the finish of the original wrought iron.* | **apply** *Make sure the surface is clean and smooth before the finish is applied.*
- PREP. **to a ~** *Sand the wood to a fine finish using steel wool.* **with a ~** *a door handle with a brass finish* | **~ on** *How did you achieve that finish on the wood?*

finish *verb*

- ADV. **almost, nearly** | **just** *She had just finished dressing when the telephone rang.* | **soon** | **eventually, finally** | **off** *He finished off by welcoming new arrivals to the school.*
- VERB + FINISH **let sb** *Let me just finish what I'm doing.*
- PREP. **by** *He finished by telling us about his trip to Spain.* **with** *The evening finished with a few songs.* ◇ *Have you finished with the vacuum cleaner yet? I need it.*

fire *noun*

1 destructive flames

- ADJ. **big,**   **huge** | **fierce** | **serious** | **disastrous** | **bush, forest, house**
- VERB + FIRE **be on** *The house is on fire!* | **catch** *A lantern was knocked over and the barn caught fire.* | **cause, set sth on, start** *Groups of rioters attacked and set the police headquarters on fire.* | **fan** *Strong winds fanned the fire.* | **add fuel to, fuel** (*both figurative*) *Frustrated ambitions can fuel the fire of anger and resentment.* | **extinguish, put out** | **fight** *He joined the crowds of men and women fighting the fire.* | **contain, control** *Firefighters struggled to control the fire.* | **be damaged by/in, be destroyed by/in** *The factory was destroyed in a fire started by arsonists.* | **be killed by/in, die in**
- FIRE + VERB **break out, start** *A fire broke out in the mail room.* | **go out** | **blaze, burn, rage** *The fire burnt for three days before it was finally contained.* | **spread, sweep through sth** *In 1925 a disastrous fire swept through the museum.* | **damage sth** | **destroy sth, gut sth** *The fire gutted the building, leaving just a charred shell.*
- FIRE + NOUN **safety** *legislation related to fire safety* | **hazard, risk** *Foam-filled couches are a serious fire hazard.* | **drill** *We have regular fire drills to ensure that the staff know how to evacuate the building.* | **alarm** | **brigade, department,**   **service** | **station** | **engine** | **hydrant** | **hose** | **extinguisher** | **escape** *The thief got away down the fire escape.* | **door**
- PHRASES **bring a fire under control** *Firefighters have now managed to bring the fire under control.* **set fire to sth** *Someone had set fire to her car.*

2 burning fuel for cooking/heating

- ADJ. **blazing, crackling, hot, roaring, warm** | **dying,**

smouldering | little | open | charcoal, coal, log, oil, peat, wood

- VERB + FIRE **build, make | kindle, light** *Kim had managed to kindle a little fire of dry grass.* | **poke, stir, stoke (up)** *On cold nights we stoked up the fire to a blaze.* | **put sth on** *Put some more wood on the fire.* | **cook on/over** *When we go on safari we like to cook on an open fire.*
- FIRE + VERB **burn** *Although it was summer a fire burned in the great stone hearth.* | **kindle, light** *We had plenty of dry wood, so the fire lit easily.* | **die (down)** *The fire was beginning to die down.* | **burn (itself) out, go out | crackle | glow | smoke** *The fire smoked instead of burning properly.*
- PHRASES **the glow from/of a fire** *The interior was only lit by the golden glow of the fire.*

3 apparatus for heating rooms

- ADJ. **electric, gas**
- VERB + FIRE **light, switch on, turn on** *Use a match to light the gas fire.* | **switch off, turn off**
- FIRE + VERB **be off/on** *Is the fire still on?*

4 shots from guns

- ADJ. **heavy | anti-aircraft, covering, friendly** *The commandos pushed forward under the covering fire of their artillery.* ◇ *Several soldiers were killed in friendly fire due a mistake by allied forces.* | **artillery, sniper | cannon, machine-gun, mortar, rifle**
- QUANT. **burst** *a burst of machine-gun fire*
- VERB + FIRE **open** *The troops opened fire on the crowd.* | **return** *She returned fire from behind the low wall.* | **cease, hold** *They were told to hold their fire until the enemy came closer.* | **be/come under** *We were under constant fire from enemy snipers.* ◇ *(figurative) The minister of transport came under fire* (= was heavily criticized) *for forcing increases in rail fares.* | **draw** *A few soldiers were sent out to draw* (= attract) *the enemy's fire.*
- PHRASES **be in the line of fire** *Unfortunately he was in the line of fire* (= between the people shooting and what they were shooting at) *and got shot.*

fire *verb*

- ADV. **blindly, wildly** *She fired blindly into the mass of shadows.* | **wide** *Whitlock purposely fired wide.* | **back | off** *They fired off a volley of shots.*
- VERB + FIRE **be ready to** *He grabbed the shotgun and levelled it, ready to fire if anyone entered.* | **order sb to** *He ordered the troops to fire over the heads of the crowd.*
- PREP. **at** *She fired a revolver at her attacker.* **into** *He fired the gun into the air.* **on/upon** *The police fired on protesters in the city centre.*

fire alarm *noun*

- VERB + FIRE ALARM **set off** *It was thought that the fire alarm had been set off as a prank.* | **install** *Fire alarms have been installed in the building.*
- FIRE ALARM + VERB **go (off), sound**

firearm *noun*

- ADJ. **imitation, replica | unlicensed**
- VERB + FIREARM **be in possession of, possess** *The police charged her with possessing a firearm with intent to endanger life.* | **carry**
- FIREARMS + NOUN **training | expert | certificate, licence | offence** *He is wanted for robbery and firearms offences.*

fire brigade *noun*

- ADJ. **local**
- VERB + FIRE BRIGADE **call (out), phone** *Dial 999 to call the fire brigade.* | **join**
- FIRE BRIGADE + VERB **put sth out** *The fire brigade have put out a blaze in a local post office.*

firefighter, fireman *noun*

- ADJ. **full-time, part-time**
- VERB + FIREFIGHTER, FIREMAN **call (out)** *Firefighters were called to a house in Chaucer Avenue.*
- FIREFIGHTER, FIREMAN + VERB **fight sth, tackle sth** *Firefighters from three counties tackled a warehouse blaze.* | **put sth out | rescue sb** *Firemen rescued a driver trapped in the wreckage of his car.*

⇨ Note at JOB

fireplace *noun*

- ADJ. **big, enormous, great, huge | empty | open | brick, cast-iron, marble, stone, etc.**
- VERB + FIREPLACE **have** *Every room in the house has a fireplace.* | **build, install**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *A log fire crackled in the fireplace.*

firework *noun*

- VERB + FIREWORK **light** *Be very careful when lighting fireworks.* | **let off, set off** *They set off fireworks in their back garden.*
- FIREWORK + VERB **explode, go off**
- FIREWORK + NOUN **display, show**

firing squad *noun*

- VERB + FIRING SQUAD **face** *He could face a firing squad if found guilty of the charges.* | **be executed by, be shot by** *She was executed by firing squad.*
- PREP. **before/in front of a/the ~** *Many died in front of the firing squad.*

firm *noun*

- ADJ. **big, large, major | medium-sized | small | well-known | successful | established | start-up** *start-up firms in the booming computer market* | **private | family | international, multinational | foreign | local | accountancy, audit/auditing, broking, consulting, engineering, law, manufacturing, software, stockbroking, telecommunications | mail order**
- VERB + FIRM **establish, found, set up, start (up)** *She set up her own software firm.* | **manage, run | merge with** *They are likely to merge with a bigger firm.* | **acquire, buy (out), take over** *The firm was taken over by a multinational consulting firm.* | **close (down), dissolve** *the decision to close down the firm* | **own | work for | join, leave | employ, hire** *She hired a firm of private detectives to follow him.*
- FIRM + VERB **be based in sth** *a firm called Data Incorporated, based in Chicago* | **expand, grow | merge | compete** *Local firms are finding it difficult to compete in the international market.* | **close (down), collapse, fail, go bust, go into liquidation** *The well-established firm closed down with the loss of 600 jobs.* | **develop sth, make sth, manufacture sth, produce sth | specialize in sth** *a firm specializing in high-technology products*
- PREP. **in/within a/the ~** *the different departments within the firm*
- PHRASES **a client of a firm, a firm of accountants/consultants/solicitors, a partner in a firm**

⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

firm *adj.*

1 solid/strong

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | remain, stay** *Exercise is important if you want your muscles to stay firm.* | **make sth** *Use extra stuffing to make the cushions firmer.* | **keep sth** *exercises to keep your muscles firm*
- ADV. **very | fairly, quite, reasonably**

2 not likely to change

- VERBS **be, sound | hold, remain, stand** *Jo held firm: nothing else would do. ◇ We stand firm on these principles.*
- ADV. **very | fairly, quite**
- PREP. **with** *I have always been quite firm with my children.*

first *noun*

1 (*also* **first gear**) lowest gear on a bicycle/vehicle

- VERB + FIRST **engage** *She engaged first gear and pulled off.* | **get into, move into, slam into** *As he moved into first the gear-lever knob came off in his hand.* | **put sth into** *Put the car into first and pull off slowly.* | **find** *It's very difficult to find first on this car.*
- PREP. **in ~** *There was something wrong with the gearbox and I had to drive all the way home in first.*

2 highest level of university degree

- ADJ. **double** *She did Philosophy and English Literature and got a double first.*
- VERB + FIRST **be awarded, gain, get, obtain**
- PREP. **~ in** *He got a first in modern history.*

first aid *noun*

- ADJ. **emergency**
- VERB + FIRST AID **administer, give** *While one of you gives first aid, the other should call an ambulance.* | **receive | be trained in** *At least one member of staff should be trained in first aid.*
- FIRST AID + NOUN **box, kit, manual | course | post** *Medics were bringing casualties to the first-aid post.*

fish *noun*

1 animal that lives and breathes in water

- ADJ. **freshwater, marine, salt-water, sea | tropical | predatory**
- QUANT. **school, shoal**
- VERB + FISH **catch, land** *He landed one very big fish.* | **breed, farm, have, keep** *fish farmed in Scotland ◇ He keeps tropical fish.*
- FISH + VERB **swim | hatch | bite** *The fish aren't biting* (= biting at the bait) *today.*
- FISH + NOUN **species | bowl, pond, tank | food | stocks** *the depletion of fish stocks*

2 fish as food

- ADJ. **fresh | dried, frozen, salted, smoked | oily | red, white**
- QUANT. **bit, piece | fillet**
- VERB + FISH **eat, have | clean, fillet, gut, prepare, skin** *I cleaned and filleted the fish.* | **marinade | bake, cook, fry, grill, poach, steam | flake** *Remove the skin and flake the cooked fish.*
- FISH + VERB **taste** *This fish tastes funny.*
- FISH + NOUN **bone | cake, dish, finger, oil, paste, pie, sauce, soup, stock | market, shop | knife, slice**
- PHRASES **fish and chips, fish in batter**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

fisherman *noun*

- ADJ. **keen | expert, skilled | local** *Local fishermen are protesting about the latest government regulations.* | **commercial | deep-sea | fly-** *A keen fly-fisherman caught a record-sized salmon.*
- FISHERMAN + VERB **catch sth**

⇨ Note at JOB

fishing *noun*

- ADJ. **good, great** *This stretch of the river is renowned for its good fishing.* | **coarse, deep-sea, drift-net, fly-, sea** *One of his hobbies was fly-fishing.* | **game, salmon, shark, trout, etc.** *She has been big game fishing off the coast of Kenya.* | **commercial, industrial**
- VERB + FISHING **go** *He goes fishing every weekend.*
- FISHING + NOUN **basket, equipment, gear, line, rod, stool, tackle | boat, craft, fleet, smack, trawler, vessel | hamlet, harbour, port, station, town, village | area, grounds, spot, zone** *the rich fishing grounds off the coast of Namibia ◇ Just below that bridge is a good fishing spot.* | **activity** *controls on fishing activity* | **quotas | agreement** *The two countries have signed a new fishing agreement.* | **ban | rights** *Fishing rights are held by the local angling club.* | **licence** *You need a fishing licence to fish in the lake.* | **expedition, holiday, trip | club | lodge | business, industry, trade | methods, techniques**
- PREP. **~ for** *Ecuador announced a ban on fishing for shrimps.*

fishy *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, smell, sound** *It all sounds very fishy to me.*
- ADV. **very | definitely, distinctly | a bit**
- PHRASES **something fishy** *There was definitely something fishy going on.*

fist *noun*

- ADJ. **clenched, tight | gloved**
- VERB + FIST **clench | bang, pound, slam, smack, smash, strike, thump** *He banged his fist loudly on the table.* | **shake, wave** *The man was shaking his fist at us through the window.* | **swing** *He swung his fists wildly at his attacker's head.* | **draw back** *She drew back her fist and threw a punch at his nose.*
- FIST + NOUN **fight**
- PREP. **in your ~** *She was holding a hammer in her fist.*
- PHRASES **clench/make your hand into a fist**

fit *noun*

1 sudden attack of illness

- ADJ. **bad, major | convulsive, epileptic, fainting**
- VERB + FIT **be seized by/with** (*literary*), **have, suffer** *She suffered a major fit last year.* | **suffer from** *He suffers from fits of depression.* | **die of | bring on, cause, trigger (off)** *He suffers from a brain disorder that can trigger off convulsive fits.* | **control** *new drugs that can control fits* | **prevent**
- FIT + VERB **happen, occur** *The fits usually occur at night.*
- PREP. **during/in a ~** *She hurt her arm during one of her fits.*

2 short period of coughing/laughter/strong feeling

- ADJ. **coughing, screaming, sneezing**
- VERB + FIT **have, throw** *My dad will throw a fit if he finds out!* | **burst into, collapse in/into, erupt in/into, fall into** *She collapsed in a fit of laughter.* | **bring on** *The cold air brought on one of his coughing fits.*
- FIT + VERB **be over, pass** *When her coughing fit was over she continued to speak.*
- PREP. **in a ~ of** *He pushed the referee in a fit of temper* | **~ of** *a fit of anger/giggles*
- PHRASES **have sb in fits (of laughter)** *The comedian had them all in fits of laughter.*

3 way sth fits/way two things match

- ADJ. **good** *We need to achieve the best fit between the staff required and the staff available.* | **correct, exact, perfect | poor** *The door was a poor fit and didn't open properly.* | **close, snug, tight | loose | comfortable** *The jersey is a comfortable fit—not too tight and not too loose.* | **statistical**
- VERB + FIT **achieve, get, produce** *File away any excess metal until a snug fit is achieved.* | **ensure** *The shoe has a special strap to ensure correct fit.* | **give (sth)** *The formula gives a much better fit to the experimental data.*
- PREP. **~ between** *the statistical fit between the interest rate and investment*

- PHRASES **a lack of fit** *He argues that there is a lack of fit between our system of values and capitalism.*

fit *verb*

1 right size/type

- ADV. **neatly, nicely, securely, snugly, tightly, well** *The pencils fit neatly into this box.* | **exactly, perfectly** *The screws fitted the holes exactly.* | **badly** *The top of the box fitted badly and some of the contents had spilled out.* | **easily** *That chair should fit into the room easily.* | **together** *These two pieces of wood fit together to make the base.*
- VERB + FIT **be designed to** *The waste unit is designed to fit under the sink.*
- PREP. **in, into, onto, over, under, etc.** *Will this box fit into the cupboard?*

2 agree/match

- ADV. **perfectly**
- PREP. **for** *Your experience fits you perfectly for the job.*

fit *adj.*

1 healthy

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** | **become, get** *the struggle to get fit and stay fit* | **keep, stay** *Go for a little jog to keep fit.* | **make sb** *Exercising once a week is not enough to make you fit.* | **keep sb** *gentle exercises designed to keep you fit*
- ADV. **extremely, fighting, really, very** *He seemed fighting fit and ready for action.* | **fully** *John isn't fully fit yet after his operation.* | **fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably** | **physically** *She felt physically fitter and more alive than she could ever remember.*
- PREP. **for** *The doctor said she was now fit for work.*
- PHRASES **as fit as a fiddle** (= very healthy), **fit and healthy/well** *She looks really fit and well.* **fit and ready**

2 suitable

- VERBS **consider sth, see, think** *The newspaper did not see fit to publish my letter* (= and I criticize it for that). ◇ *You must do as you think fit* (= but I don't agree with your decision).
- PREP. **for** *The food was not fit for human consumption.*
- PHRASES **fit and proper** (*law*) *circumstances in which someone is not considered a fit and proper person to run a bank* **fit for a king** *It was a meal fit for a king* (= of very good quality). **in no fit state** *He's so angry he's in no fit state to see anyone.*

fitness *noun*

- ADJ. **full, peak** | **low** | **all-round, general, overall** | **individual, personal** | **aerobic, physical** | **match** *Hendry is back to match fitness and is expected to play.*
- QUANT. **degree, level** *You need a good level of physical fitness for this sport.*
- VERB + FITNESS **attain** *He has attained peak fitness this season.* | **maintain** *Regular exercise helps to maintain physical fitness.* | **be back to, get (sb) back to, regain, return to** | **build (up), enhance, improve, increase, work on** *A special trainer has been brought in to work on the tennis player's fitness.* | **prove** *The coach has given him until next week to prove his fitness.*
- FITNESS + NOUN **level** *First, determine your present fitness level.* | **training** | **programme, regime** | **check, test** | **fanatic, freak** *She's a bit of a fitness freak. She goes running every night.* | **centre** *a fitness centre with gymnasium and squash courts*
- PHRASES **health and fitness** *Walking is good for health and fitness.*

fitting *noun*

- ADJ. **original** | **standard** | **special** | **interior, internal** | **electrical, plumbing** | **bathroom, kitchen** | **lamp, light** | **metal, plastic, etc.** | **brass, copper, etc.**
- VERB + FITTING **install** *Our bathroom fittings are easy to install.* | **remove** | **make** | **use** *a fitting used to join copper pipe*
- PHRASES **fixtures and fittings** *The room still has the original fixtures and fittings.*

fitting *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** *It seemed entirely fitting that she should be wearing black.* | **consider sth, regard sth as, think sth** *I did not think it fitting to ask James about his daughter's death.*
- ADV. **very** | **entirely, perfectly**

fix *noun*

1 solution to a problem

- ADJ. **quick** *There is no quick fix to the breakdown in negotiations between the two companies.* | **technical, technological** | **bug** *The new software incorporates many bug fixes and product improvements.*

2 amount of sth, especially a drug

- ADJ. **regular**
- VERB + FIX **have** *He gets withdrawal symptoms if he hasn't had his regular fix.* | **need** | **get**

3 difficult situation

- VERB + FIX **be in** *I was in a fix.* | **get in/into** *How did you get into such a fix?* | **put sb in** *The power cut put us in a fix because we had invited people to dinner.* | **get (sb) out of** *I lent her the money to get her out of a fix.*

fix *verb*

- ADV. **firmly, securely** | **directly**
- PREP. **onto, to** *The handrail can be fixed directly to the wall.*
- PHRASES **fix sth in place/position** *Fix the bars in position with the screws provided.*

fixed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain, stay**
- ADV. **very** | **firmly, securely** *Check that the boards are all securely fixed.* | **rigidly** *His gaze was rigidly fixed ahead.* | **relatively** | **irrevocably, permanently**

fixture *noun*

1 sporting event

- ADJ. **important, major** | **difficult** | **away, home** | **annual, regular** | **opening** | **final** | **international** | **friendly** | **league** | **sporting**
- VERB + FIXTURE **play** *playing an important fixture this evening* | **fulfil** *The club was fined for not fulfilling its fixtures at the weekend.* | **make sth** *There are plans to make the race an annual fixture.* | **arrange, schedule** | **stage** *The golf club has staged many international fixtures.* | **postpone**
- FIXTURE + NOUN **list** *a full fixture list of friendly matches*
- PREP. **~ against** *a home fixture against Leeds*

2 sth fixed in a house

- ADJ. **original** *an exceptional example of Victorian architecture with the original fixtures and fittings intact* | **permanent** (*often figurative*) *The new conductor is now a permanent fixture in the orchestra.*
- PHRASES **fixtures and fittings**

flag *noun*

- ADJ. **national** | **chequered** *Schumacher took the chequered flag to win his fourth Grand Prix of the season.* | **tattered** *A tattered flag hung from the roof of the burnt-out building.*

- VERB + FLAG **fly, hang (out), hoist, raise, run up** *a ship flying a Russian flag* | **lower** | **wave** *The crowd all waved flags as the president came past.* | **unfurl** | **carry**
- FLAG + VERB **hang** | **flap, flutter, fly, wave** *a flag fluttering in the breeze* | **be/fly at half mast**
- FLAG + NOUN **pole** (also **flagpole**)
- PREP. **under a/the ~** *a ship sailing under a British flag* | **~ of** *a flag of truce*

flail *verb*

- ADV. **desperately, helplessly, wildly** *She ran along, her arms flailing wildly.* | **about, around** *He flailed about in the water, shouting 'I can't swim!'*

flair *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great** | **real** | **natural** | **artistic, creative, design, entrepreneurial, imaginative**
- VERB + FLAIR **have** *She has a natural flair for languages.* | **show** | **lack** *His designs are all right, but he lacks artistic flair.* | **develop**
- PREP. **with ~** *jazz guitarists who improvise with flair* | **~ for** *an activist with a flair for publicity*

flame *noun*

1 hot bright stream of fire

- ADJ. **hot** | **small** | **bright** | **pale** | **dancing, flickering, leaping** | **steady** | **naked** *Never smoke or use spray paint near a naked flame.* | **candle, gas** | **Olympic**
- QUANT. **ball, sheet, tongue** *The plane crashed in a ball of flames.* ◇ *Sheets of flame shot into the air.*
- VERB + FLAME **ignite, spark** (*often figurative*) *His childhood interest in the game had ignited a flame of passion for football.* | **rekindle** (*often figurative*) *They tried to rekindle the flames of romance.* | **douse, extinguish, quench, snuff (out)** | **feel** (*often figurative*) *She felt a flame of anger flicker and grow.*
- FLAME + VERB **burn** *The flame burnt brightly.* | **grow** | **die, go out** *The candle flame flickered and went out.* | **leap, rise, shoot** *Flames leapt from the burning house.* ◇ *Flames shot high into the air.* | **lick (sth)** *Orange flames were already licking round the foot of the stairs.* | **dance, flicker** *Flames danced in the gas lantern.*
- FLAME + NOUN **thrower** *The infantry were equipped with flame throwers.*
- PHRASES **the crackle of flames**

2 flames fire

- ADJ. **roaring**
- VERB + FLAMES **be engulfed in, be in** *A large part of the building was in flames.* | **go up in** *All the historical records have gone up in flames* (= have been destroyed by fire). | **burst into, erupt in, explode in/into** *The helicopter burst into flames.* | **fuel** *Oxygen tanks fuelled the flames.* | **fan** *Winds fanned the flames.* | **shoot sb/sth down in** *The aircraft was shot down in flames.* | **fight** *He fought the flames for two hours.* | **control** *Firefighters have been trying to control the flames.* | **douse, extinguish, put out, quench, smother** *Men came with buckets of water and began to douse the flames.* | **be beaten back by** *They tried to get into to the house but were beaten back by the flames.*
- FLAMES + VERB **die down** | **spread, sweep through sth** *They watched the flames sweep through the old wooden barn.* | **engulf sth** *The flames quickly spread and engulfed their home.* | **light sth (up)** *The flames lit up the skyline.*

flammable *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly** *These materials are highly flammable.*

flank *noun*

- ADJ. **left, right** | **north, northern, etc.** | **lower** *the lower flanks of Vesuvius* | **mountain**
- VERB + FLANK **attack** *They decided to attack their enemy's southern flank.* | **defend, protect** | **expose** *West Ham exposed the right flank of Norwich's defence* (= showed that it could be attacked easily).
- FLANK + NOUN **attack**
- PREP. **along a/the ~** *along the eastern flank of Greenland* **down the ~** *a beautiful pass down the right flank* **on a/the ~** *The army was attacked on the left flank.*

flannel *noun*

- ADJ. **damp, wet** | **cold** | **face**
- VERB + FLANNEL **use** *Use a damp flannel to clean the skin.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *She wiped his eyes and nose with a wet face flannel.*

flap *noun*

1 flat piece of paper, metal, etc.

- ADJ. **small** | **hinged** | **loose** *a loose flap of skin* | **tent** | **pocket** *a stylish jacket with leather cuffs and pocket flaps*
- VERB + FLAP **undo** *The officer undid the flap of his holster and drew his gun.* | **draw back, lift back/up, open, pull back** *He drew back the tent flap.* | **close** | **lower** *The pilot lowered the flaps as the aircraft came into land.*

2 state of worry/excitement

- ADJ. **real**
- VERB + FLAP **get in/into** *Far from getting into a flap over the controversy, the government has used the media attention to its advantage.* | **put sb in/into** *Having to cook for everyone at Christmas put his mother in a real flap.*
- PREP. **in a ~** *I've never seen her in a flap; she's always so calm.* | **~ over** *a flap over nuclear issues*

flap *verb*

- ADV. **gently** | **wildly** *The sails flapped wildly in the stiff breeze.* | **about, around**

flare *noun*

1 bright unsteady light/flame; sudden feeling

- ADJ. **brief, sudden** *There was a sudden flare as a fuel tank exploded.* | **bright** | **solar** *Radiation comes from the sun during solar flares.*
- VERB + FLARE **see** | **feel** *She felt a sudden flare of anger.*

2 device producing a bright flame

- ADJ. **distress**
- VERB + FLARE **see** *If they did not see a green flare in ten minutes, they were to launch the attack.* | **fire, send up, set off** *The ship's crew sent up a distress flare.* | **drop** *The bomber dropped a flare to illuminate the target.*
- FLARE + VERB **go up** *The flare to mark the start of the attack went up at 0440.* | **burn** *They could see orange flares burning in the distance.* | **explode** | **hit sb/sth** *A flare fired by a supporter hit the referee in the face.* | **illuminate sth, light sth (up)** *Flares lit up the night sky.*
- FLARE + NOUN **gun**

flare *verb*

- ADV. **suddenly** *Anger suddenly flared in his eyes.* | **briefly** *A light flared briefly, then went out.* | **up** *Violence flared up in the capital last night.*
- PHRASES **flare into life** *The fire flared into life again.*

flash *noun*

1 sudden bright light; sudden idea/emotion/action

- ADJ. **great** | **blinding, bright, brilliant** | **sudden** |

brief, momentary, quick | **occasional** | **rare** *a rare flash of humour* | **light, lightning** | **news** (also **newsflash**)

- VERB + FLASH **feel, have** *He felt a brief flash of jealousy.* ◇ *She had a sudden flash of inspiration.* | **catch, detect, notice, see** *We caught a flash of white in the bushes.*
- FLASH + VERB **illuminate sth, light sth (up)** *A bright flash of lightning lit up the sky.*
- PREP. **~from** *The flashes from the guns illuminated the sky.* **~of** *a sudden flash of light*

2 bright light for a camera

- ADJ. **built-in** | **camera**
- VERB + FLASH **use** *I don't think the picture will come out in this light. Try using the flash.*
- FLASH + VERB **go off, work** *The flash didn't go off.*
- FLASH + NOUN **photography** | **bulb** | **unit** *a camera with a built-in flash unit*
- PREP. **with (a)~** *I took it with flash.*

flash *verb*

1 shine

- ADV. **briefly** *It was only the sun, flashing briefly on her bleached hair.*
- PREP. **at** *A car flashed its headlights at me.*

2 show emotion

- ADV. **suddenly** | **angrily** *Her eyes flashed angrily.*
- PREP. **with** *Her eyes suddenly flashed with anger.*

flashback *noun*

- ADJ. **sudden**
- VERB + FLASHBACK **get, have**
- PREP. **in (a)~** *The story is told in flashback.* | **~to** *I had a sudden flashback to the time immediately after the war.*

flask *noun*

- ADJ. **Thermos™, vacuum** | **hip** | **metal, silver** | **conical, culture, round bottom** (*all science*)
- VERB + FLASK **fill** | **carry** *When he climbed in the snow he always carried a silver flask of brandy for emergencies.* | **pull out** *She pulled out her flask and drank from it.* | **uncork, unscrew** | **drink (sth) from, take a swallow from, take a swig from**
- FLASK + VERB **contain sth** *a culture flask containing 4ml of the medium*
- PREP. **~of** *We took a flask of tea with us.*

flat *noun*

1 set of rooms

- ADJ. **big, spacious** | **modest** | **cramped, little, poky, small, tiny** | **comfortable, cosy** | **beautiful, nice** | **luxury, posh** | **shabby** | **modern** | **self-contained** | **purpose-built** | **furnished, unfurnished** | **one-room, studio** | **one-bedroomed, two-room, etc.** | **bachelor, granny** *Even the prices of small bachelor flats are unbelievable.* ◇ *They converted two rooms of their house into a granny flat for Tony's elderly mother.* | **attic, basement, bottom, downstairs, first-floor, ground-floor, penthouse, top, top-floor, upstairs** *the people who lived in the downstairs flat* | **high-rise** *a block of high-rise flats* | **empty, unoccupied, vacant** | **privately-owned** | **rented** | **council** | **holiday** | **next** *They live in the next flat.*
- QUANT **block** *The tall blocks of flats dominated the skyline.*
- VERB + FLAT **have, own** *They have a flat in Paris and a house in Normandy.* | **rent, take** *The musician took a flat in a fashionable area of London.* | **let, sublet** *The landlady found they had been illegally subletting the flat.* | **buy** | **sell** | **find (sb), look for** *Do you think that the council could find me another flat?* | **get (sb)** *We got her a flat in the same block as ours.* | **live in, occupy, stay in** *Our flat is one of the two occupied in the block.* | **share** | **move into, move (out) from, move out (of)** | **build** | **decorate, refurbish** *a contract to refurbish 18 council flats* | **lock (up)** | **let sb/yourself into** *She let herself into the flat with the spare key.* | **leave, let sb/yourself out (of)** | **break (into)** | **evict sb from**
- FLAT + VERB **be located** *The flat is located in a modern development.* | **face sth, overlook sth** *a luxury block of flats overlooking the marina*
- PREP. **at a/the~** *I'll meet you back at your flat.* **in a/the~** *She lives in the top flat.*
- PHRASES **convert/divide/make/turn sth into flats** *The house has now been converted into flats.*

2 land

- ADJ. **coastal** | **tidal** | **mud** (also **mudflat**), **sand, salt** *mud and sand flats rich in animal life*
- PREP. **on the~** *These birds live on the coastal flats.*

3 musical note

- ADJ. **A, B, etc.**
- VERB + FLAT **have** *The key of E flat major has three flats.* | **play**
- PREP. **in … ~** *Mendelssohn's Quintet in B flat*

flat *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look** | **become** | **lie, stay** *I can't get this material to lie flat.* ◇ *She lay flat on the ground.* | **fold sth, get sth, make sth, press sth** *Shall I fold the paper flat or roll it up?*
- ADV. **very** | **absolutely, completely, quite** *The sea was almost completely flat.* | **almost** | **fairly, quite, rather**

flattered *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel**
- ADV. **immensely, very** | **rather** | **a little, vaguely**
- PREP. **at** *She felt vaguely flattered at the suggestion.*

flattering *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **find sth**
- ADV. **enormously, extremely, tremendously, very** | **far from, hardly, less than, not entirely** *The descriptions of her were less than flattering.* | **quite, rather**
- PREP. **to** *This style of dress is flattering to most women.*

flattery *noun*

- ADJ. **artificial**
- VERB + FLATTERY **use** *Salespeople are often accused of using artificial flattery.* | **fall for** *She falls for his flattery every time.*
- PREP. **through~** *He thinks he can get his way through flattery.* **with~** *She persuaded him with flattery.*

flaunt *verb*

- ADV. **deliberately, openly** *openly flaunting their wealth*
- PREP. **in front of** *She flaunted her success in front of the others.*

flavour *noun*

1 taste of food

- ADJ. **delicious, exquisite, fine, good, lovely, pleasant, wonderful** | **characteristic, distinctive, particular, unique, unmistakable** | **true** | **full, pronounced, rich, strong** | **mellow, rounded** | **delicate, mild, subtle** | **bland** | **extra** | **fresh** | **sweet** | **bitter, sharp, sour, tangy, tart** | **salty** | **hot, spicy** | **smoky** | **exotic** | **cheese/cheesy, chocolate, fruit, lemon/lemony, minty, nutty, etc.**
- VERB + FLAVOUR **have** *It's got a very mild flavour.* | **take on** *Coffee takes on a flavour all of its own when enjoyed with freshly cooked pastry.* | **keep** *Delicate herbs keep their flavour better when frozen.* | **lose** | **add, give sth, impart, lend (sth), provide** *a herb that adds a charac-*

teristic flavour to a range of dishes | **bring out, release** *The lemon juice brings out the natural fruit flavours.* ◇ *Bay leaves should be broken to release their flavour.* | **enhance, improve** | **spoil** | **destroy** *Cooking the vegetable destroys its wonderful delicate flavour.* | **appreciate, enjoy, savour** *Enjoy the flavour of fresh fish.*

- FLAVOUR + NOUN **enhancer** *Salt is a common flavour enhancer.*
- PREP. **for ~** *Cream may be added to the sauce for extra flavour.* **with a ~** *a dish with a strong spicy flavour*
- PHRASES **full of flavour** *vegetables that are fresh and full of flavour*

2 particular quality/atmosphere

- ADJ. **distinctive, particular, true, unique** | **pronounced, strong** | **international, local, oriental, regional** | **American, Scandinavian, etc.** | **political**
- VERB + FLAVOUR **have** *The college has a truly international flavour.* | **acquire, take on** *The music festival has taken on a distinctly German flavour.* | **lose** | **add, give sth, impart, provide** *The intervention of the authorities gave union struggles a decidedly political flavour.* | **experience, get** *The children experienced the flavour of medieval life.* ◇ *She rotated around the departments to get a flavour of all aspects of the business.* | **appreciate, enjoy** | **capture** *The film captures the flavour of rural life in this area.* | **convey**
- PREP. **with a … ~** *a TV show with an American flavour*

flavoured *adj.*

- VERBS **be** *The food they eat is very highly flavoured.*
- ADV. **full, highly, richly, strongly, well** | **delicately** *a delicately flavoured clear soup*
- PREP. **with** *This dish is flavoured with lemon grass and garlic.*

flavouring *noun*

- ADJ. **artificial, natural** *This product contains only natural flavourings.* | **food** | **peppermint, vanilla, etc.**
- QUANT. **drop** *Add a few drops of peppermint flavouring.*
- VERB + FLAVOURING **contain** | **use** *We don't use any artificial flavourings in our products.* | **add**

flaw *noun*

- ADJ. **main, major, serious** | **basic, fatal, fundamental** | **minor, slight, small** | **obvious** | **design**
- VERB + FLAW **have** *Unfortunately, this plate has a slight flaw in it.* | **look for** | **discover, find, identify, see** *It took me a long time to find the flaw in her logic.* ◇ *Engineers have identified serious design flaws in the proposed nuclear waste dump.* | **expose, highlight, point out/to, reveal** *The markets have exposed the fatal flaw in the government's economic policy.*
- FLAW + VERB **appear** *Flaws have appeared in the new version of the software.*
- PREP. **~ in** *one of the major flaws in his character*

flawed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **remain**
- ADV. **badly, deeply, hopelessly, seriously** | **fatally** *a series of fatally flawed judgements* | **crucially, fundamentally** | **slightly, somewhat** | **conceptually, methodologically** *The study was methodologically flawed.*

flea *noun*

- ADJ. **cat, dog, etc.**
- VERB + FLEA **get, have** | **be riddled with** | **control** *This drug is given to dogs to control fleas.*
- FLEA + VERB **jump** | **bite** | **carry/spread disease**
- FLEA + NOUN **bite** | **collar, powder**

flee *verb*

- ADV. **abroad, across the border, into exile** *Hundreds of refugees fled across the border to escape the fighting.* | **north, south, etc.** | **in panic**
- VERB + FLEE **be forced to, have to** *They were forced to flee the country.* | **try to** | **manage to** | **turn** *They turned and fled when they saw the gang of youths approaching them.*
- PREP. **from** *She dropped the phone and fled from the office.* **into/to** *They fled to Britain when the war started.*
- PHRASES **flee empty-handed** *When the police arrived the burglars fled empty-handed.* **flee for your life** *She had to flee for her life when soldiers attacked her village.* **flee in panic/terror** *The children fled in terror as the hay caught fire.* **flee like the wind** *When danger threatens, collect your possessions and flee like the wind.* **flee to safety** *The family managed to flee to safety.*

fleet *noun*

- ADJ. **great, huge, large** *a large fleet of gunboats* | **small** | **fishing, whaling** | **merchant, shipping** | **battle, invasion** | **enemy, foreign** | **submarine, tanker** | **car, vehicle** *the company car fleet*
- VERB + FLEET **operate, own** *He operated a small fishing fleet.* | **command** | **mobilize, send (in)** *The fleet was mobilized and the country prepared for war.* | **disband, ground** | **defeat, destroy** | **join** *The ship sailed to join the fleet at Barbados.* | **maintain** *The fleet was is very expensive to maintain.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *There were over 500 ships in the enemy fleet.* | **~ of** *a fleet of taxis*

flesh *noun*

1 soft part of sb's body

- ADJ. **firm, smooth, soft, tender** | **pale, pink, white** | **bare, exposed** | **raw** | **torn** | **burning, burnt** | **rotting** | **living** | **dead** | **female, male** | **animal, human**
- VERB + FLESH **touch** | **cut (into)** *His shirt was too small for him and cut into the tender flesh at his armpit.* | **strip, tear at/off** *Peregrine falcons usually pluck the feathers and strip the flesh off their bird prey.* ◇ *African hunting dogs will tear at the flesh of their victim until it is weak.* | **dig into, pierce (into), tear (into)** *Cook the duck until the juices run pale yellow when the flesh is pierced.* ◇ *The weapon tore into his flesh.* | **eat** *According to Greek mythology, the minotaur would only eat human flesh.* | **become, make sth** (*literary*) *In the Christian tradition, God is made flesh* (= becomes human).
- FLESH + VERB **tingle** *My flesh tingled as I got out of the ice cold pool.* | **crawl, creep** (*both figurative*) *The scary story made his flesh creep* (= made him feel afraid).
- FLESH + NOUN **wound** *The injury was only a flesh wound and would heal in ten days or so.* | **tone** *In the centre of the painting there is a woman painted in blues, reds and flesh tones* (= colours used to paint human skin).
- PREP. **in the ~** *Thousands of fans gathered to see the band in the flesh* (= see the band in reality and not just in a picture).
- PHRASES **flesh and blood** *She wasn't a ghost. She was flesh and blood* (= alive/real). **flesh and bone** *Babies are born not just as bundles of flesh and bone* (= not simply living bodies without thoughts or feelings) *but with already distinctive personalities.* **the lusts/pleasures/sins/temptations of the flesh** *His moral sermons always denounced the lusts of the flesh* (= the fulfilment of purely physical or sexual desires). **the smell of flesh** *the smell of rotting flesh*

2 soft part of fruit/vegetables

- ADJ. **soft** | **sweet** | **juicy**
- VERB + FLESH **chop, cut** *Pare the mangoes and cut the flesh away from the stone.* | **scoop (out)** *Cut the melon in half, remove the seeds and scoop out the flesh.*

flex *noun*

- ADJ. **long** | **trailing** *Long trailing flexes are a serious trip hazard.* | **electric/electical** | **kettle, telephone, etc.**
- QUANT. **length**
- VERB + FLEX **cut** *Side cutters are useful for cutting electrical flex to length.*

flexibility *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great** | **added, additional, extra, increased, more** | **maximum, total** | **enough, sufficient** | **financial**
- QUANT. **degree** *Police work involves a considerable degree of flexibility and discretion.*
- VERB + FLEXIBILITY **have** *You have considerable flexibility in this job and can choose how to do things.* | **show** | **obtain** *Flexibility of labour was obtained through the break up of old trade union structures.* | **maintain, retain** | **restore** *She had physiotherapy to restore the flexibility of her muscles.* | **bring (sb/sth), give (sb/sth), introduce, provide (sb/sth with)** *The new range of machines will bring flexibility to your business computing.* | **allow (sb/sth), allow for, offer (sb/sth), permit (sb/sth)** *The courses are designed to allow maximum flexibility.* | **build, create** *reforms to build flexibility into the system* | **enhance, improve, increase** | **encourage** *an initiative to encourage greater flexibility in teaching and learning* | **reduce** | **need, require**
- PREP. **~ in** *This will give schools greater flexibility in their use of resources.* **~ over** *flexibility over the deadline*
- PHRASES **a need for flexibility** *There is a need for greater flexibility in the way the network is managed.*

flexible *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain** | **make sth** *We need to make the working day more flexible.* | **keep sth**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** | **completely, fully, perfectly, totally** | **infinitely** *Human beings are infinitely flexible and able to adjust when survival depends on it.* | **fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively** | **enough, sufficiently** | **insufficiently**
- PHRASES **about** *My mother is fairly flexible about what time I need to be home.*

flick *noun*

- ADJ. **quick**
- VERB + FLICK **give (sth)** *The fish gave a quick flick of its tail.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *With a flick of his wrist he removed the ash from the end of his cigarette.* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **at the flick of a switch** *Heat is available at the flick of a switch* (= instantly, by simply switching on the electricity).

flick *verb*

- ADV. **casually** | **nervously** | **quickly** | **away, back**
- PREP. **across** *His tongue flicked nervously across dry lips.* **from** *He casually flicked away some dust from his jacket.* **off** *She flicked the ash off her cigarette.* **over** *His eyes flicked quickly over the screen.*
- PHRASES **flick sth open** *She snatched up her briefcase and flicked it open.*

PHRASAL VERB

flick through sth

- ADV. **absent-mindedly, casually, idly** *She flicked idly through a magazine.* | **quickly**

flicker *noun*

- ADJ. **faint, slight, small, tiny** *She caught the faintest flicker of amusement on his face.* | **brief, momentary** | **last** (*often figurative*) *The secret police were determined to stamp out the last flickers of academic freedom.*
- VERB + FLICKER **give** *The candle gave one last flicker and went out.* | **show** | **catch, notice, see** | **detect, feel** *She felt a brief flicker of jealousy.*
- FLICKER + VERB **cross sth** *A flicker of guilt crossed his face.* | **catch your eye** *A flicker of movement caught her eye and she turned her head.*
- PREP. **with a ~ of** *'He'll soon be here,' she thought, with a flicker of excitement.* **without a ~ of** *She spoke without any flicker of fear.* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **the flicker of a candle/flame** *The brief flicker of a candle flame caught our eyes.* **the flicker of an eyelid, a flicker of sb's/the eyes** *Her only reaction was a slight flicker of her eyes.* **a flicker of hope/interest** *European stock markets showed barely a flicker of interest in the election result.* **a flicker of light/movement** *He saw a flicker of light in the darkness.* **a flicker of recognition** *The witness stared at the accused but she showed not a flicker of recognition.* **a flicker of a smile** *I noticed a flicker of a smile on her face.*

flicker *verb*

- ADV. **briefly, for a moment, momentarily** | **nervously** *Her eyes flickered nervously in anticipation.* | **(on and) off, out** *The lights flickered on and off.*
- PREP. **across/over** *His gaze flickered over her.*
- PHRASES **flicker into life** *The television screen flickered into life.* **flicker open** *Katherine's eyes flickered open.*

flight *noun*

1 journey by air; plane making journey

- ADJ. **return** *The first prize is a return flight to Delhi.* ◇ *The outbound flight was smooth but the return flight was held up by six hours.* | **outbound** | **connecting** | **shuttle** | **regular, scheduled** | **charter** | **commercial** | **direct, non-stop** | **special** | **delayed** | **domestic, internal, local** | **long, long-distance, long-haul** | **intercontinental, international, transatlantic** | **first** *I got to the airport early to be ready for the first flight out.* | **last** *She flew into London on the last flight from Frankfurt.* | **first, maiden** *The Wright Brothers made their first flight in the Kitty Hawk in 1903.* | **final, last** *This will be the last flight of the vintage aircraft before it is installed in the museum.* | **early** | **evening, morning, night** | **bumpy** *The bumpy flight brought on a bout of airsickness.* | **smooth** | **pleasure** | **mercy, relief** | **military** | **reconnaissance, surveillance** | **routine** | **training** *a routine air-force training flight* | **solo** | **air, space** | **airline, (hot-air) balloon, helicopter** | **cargo, passenger** | **cheap**
- VERB + FLIGHT **catch, take, travel on** *They caught an early flight back to London.* | **miss** | **have** *Did you have a good flight?* | **make** *The aeroplane made its maiden flight in 1976.* | **be booked on/onto, be on** *I'm on the first flight to Milan in the morning.* | **book (sb), book sb/yourself on/onto, get** *He asked her to book him on the next available flight to Geneva.* ◇ *We managed to get a non-stop flight to New York.* | **charter** *The club has chartered a special flight from Manchester to Bologna for their fans.* | **confirm** | **cancel, suspend** *The UN has suspended relief flights because of shelling around the airport.* | **change** | **board** | **operate** *The airline operates regular flights to Greece.* | **delay, hold up** | **divert** *The flight was diverted to Gatwick because of a bomb scare.* | **blow up** *She was accused of planting the bomb that blew up flight 217.*
- FLIGHT + VERB **be bound for sth** *a flight bound for Antigua* | **leave, take off** | **arrive** | **land** | **be full** *I'm afraid I can't book you onto that flight—it's full.*
- FLIGHT + NOUN **number** *We need your time of arrival and flight number.* | **time** *The flight time from Heathrow to Marseilles is less than two hours.* | **delay** *Your travel insurance compensates you for flight delays.* | **attendant, crew** | **commander, engineer** (*both military*) | **instru-**

ments | recorder *The flight recorder should help to establish why the plane suddenly crashed.* | **simulator | path** *They have persuaded the authorities to divert the flight path of the military jets away from their village.*

- PREP. **aboard/on/on board a/sth ~** *passengers aboard a flight bound for Johannesburg* **during a/the ~** *Please refrain from smoking during the flight.* | **~ for** *She took a flight for Los Angeles.* **~ from, ~ out of** *They waited for the first flight out of Lisbon.* **~ to** *a flight from Sidney to Tokyo*

2 action of flying

- ADJ. **sustained | steady | normal | forward | soaring | low-level | horizontal, level | vertical | circular, curving | high-speed, supersonic**
- VERB + FLIGHT **be capable of** *Barn owls are capable of flight at 56 days.* | **achieve** *Bats are the only mammals to have wings and to achieve sustained flight.* | **take** *They watched the young eagles take flight.*
- PREP. **during ~** *The wings vibrate during flight.* **in ~** *a flock of geese in flight*
- PHRASES **the line of flight** *Don't get into the line of flight of the bees—you'd be sure to get stung.*

3 number of stairs/steps

- ADJ. **long | short | steep | shallow | broad | narrow | double** *The villa is fronted by a double flight of stairs.*
- VERB + FLIGHT **climb (up), go/run/walk up | descend, go/run/walk down | fall down**
- FLIGHT + VERB **lead …** *a flight of steps leading to the foyer* | **go down/up sth** *A flight of steps goes up the left-hand side of the room.*
- PREP. **down/up a/the ~** *The office is just round that corner and up a short flight of stairs.*
- PHRASES **(at the bottom/top of) a flight of stairs/steps**

4 running away

- ADJ. **headlong, panicked**
- VERB + FLIGHT **put (sb/sth) to** (*literary*) *The army was defeated and the king put to flight.* | **take** *As soon as they detected the cheetah the antelope took flight.*
- PREP. **in ~** *Left-wing opposition leaders, in flight from persecution, went across the border.* | **~ from** *a headlong flight from danger* **~ into** *a flight into the unknown* **~ to** *The story tells of his flight from East to West Berlin.*

flinch *verb*

- ADV. **violently | almost | hardly** *He hardly flinched when he was hit.* | **slightly | visibly | inwardly** *She flinched inwardly as he took her hand.* | **away**
- VERB + FLINCH **make sb** *Her finger touched the scar on his forehead, making him flinch.*
- PREP. **at** *She flinched visibly at the sight of the body.* **from** *She flinched away from him.* ◇ (*figurative*) *She won't flinch from speaking her mind.* **with** *He flinched with the force of the blow.*

fling *noun*

- ADJ. **brief | (one) final, (one) last** *The athlete will have one final fling* (= participate in one final competition) *before retirement.*
- VERB + FLING **have** *She's had her fling and now she's got to settle down.*
- PREP. **~ with** *He had a fling with his neighbour's wife.*

float *verb*

1 on water/in air

- ADV. **gently | downstream, downwards | upwards** *In the dream my feet leave the ground and I start to float upwards.* | **about, around, away, off**
- VERB + FLOAT **seem to** *Her voice seemed to float on the water as gently as a slight mist.*
- PREP. **across** *A few small clouds floated across the sky.* **down** *chunks of ice floating down the river* **in** *pieces of wood floating in the water* **on** *A few leaves floated on the surface of the water.*

2 currency

- ADV. **freely** *The government decided to allow the peso to float freely.*
- VERB + FLOAT **allow sth to**

flog *verb*

- ADV. **publicly** *Offenders were publicly flogged.*
- PHRASES **flog sb to death**

flood *noun*

1 large amount of water

- ADJ. **devastating, great, heavy, severe | summer, winter**
- VERB + FLOOD **cause** *Heavy rainfall in the mountains caused the floods.*
- FLOOD + VERB **hit sth, strike sth** *This summer the region was struck by devastating floods.* | **inundate sth** *The meadowland was inundated by heavy floods.* | **cause sth** *The flood caused widespread destruction.* | **subside** *The floods are slowly subsiding.*
- FLOOD + NOUN **water/waters | alert, damage, victim | control, defence, prevention, protection, relief**
- PHRASES **be in (full) flood** *The river was in full flood* (= had flooded its banks).

2 large number/amount

- ADJ. **great | constant | sudden**
- FLOOD + VERB **inundate sb/sth** *She was inundated by floods of fan mail.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a great flood of refugees*
- PHRASES **in floods of tears** (= crying a lot) *The little girl was in floods of tears.*

flood *verb*

- VERB + FLOOD **be liable to** *The area near the river is liable to flood.*
- PHRASES **be badly flooded** *The village had been badly flooded.*

floor *noun*

1 lower surface of a room

- ADJ. **bare** *I can't sleep on the bare floor!* | **carpeted, parquet, tiled, wood, wooden | polished | bathroom, kitchen, etc.**
- VERB + FLOOR **clean, mop, polish, scrub, sweep, wash, wax, wipe | drop to, fall to** *His glass fell to the floor and broke.*
- FLOOR + NOUN **covering, tile | space**
- PREP. **on the ~** *Do you mind sitting on the floor?*
- PHRASES **from floor to ceiling** *Bookcases lined the walls from floor to ceiling.*

2 bottom of the sea, a forest, etc.

- ADJ. **cave, forest, ocean, sea, valley**

3 level in a building

- ADJ. **bottom, ground | top | first, second, etc. | mezzanine | lower, upper**
- VERB + FLOOR **occupy** *The offices occupy the two top floors of the building.*
- PREP. **on the ~** *a cafe on the mezzanine floor*

floorboard *noun*

- ADJ. **wooden | bare | polished | loose | creaking, squeaky**
- VERB + FLOORBOARD **lay** *The builders are still laying the floorboards.* | **lift (up)** *Lift some loose floorboards to get at the pipes.*
- FLOORBOARD + VERB **creak** *The wooden floorboards creaked as he walked down the corridor.*

- PREP. **beneath/under/underneath the ~** *They said that he kept his money under the floorboards.*
- PHRASES **a gap between/in the floorboards** *She could hear voices through the gaps in the floorboards.*

flop *noun*

- ADJ. **almighty, big, resounding, spectacular** *The show was the biggest flop in TV history.* | **complete** | **expensive** *The concert may prove an expensive flop unless more people decide to go.*

flour *noun*

- ADJ. **strong** | **plain, self-raising** | **white, wholemeal** | **stoneground** | **unbleached** | **rice, rye, wheat, etc.**
- QUANT. **bag, packet, sack**
- VERB + FLOUR **use** | **add, blend, fold in, mix (in), rub sth in/into, stir (in)** *Blend the flour with a little milk to make a smooth paste.* ◇ *Rub the butter into the flour.* | **sieve, sift** *Sift the flour and salt into a bowl.*
- FLOUR + NOUN **mill**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

flourish *noun*

- ADJ. **final** | **dramatic, rhetorical, theatrical** *a speech full of rhetorical flourishes*
- VERB + FLOURISH **end in/with, finish with** | **start (off) with** | **sign with** *Bill signed on the bottom line with a flourish.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *With a final flourish she laid down her pen.*
- PHRASES **a flourish of trumpets**

flout *verb*

- ADV. **deliberately, openly** *The protesters have openly flouted the law.*

flow *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy, large, massive** | **good** | **adequate** | **poor** *Our shower doesn't work very well because of the poor water flow.* | **main** | **increased, increasing** | **ceaseless, constant, continuous, endless** | **free, uninterrupted** *the uninterrupted flow of traffic* | **even, smooth, steady** *to maintain an even flow of work through the department* | **easy, natural** *I liked the concerto for its natural flow.* | **outward** *the outward flow of investment from the country* | **annual, daily, seasonal** | **data, information** | **air, blood, gas, lava, menstrual, river, water** | **capital, cash, financial, investment, production, trade**
- VERB + FLOW **have** *Big pension funds have a constant flow of cash.* | **get, obtain** *Squeeze the tube of sealant slowly to obtain an even flow.* | **allow** *We like to allow a free flow of ideas in our company.* | **produce, provide** *The system provides a continuous flow of information to the market.* | **keep, maintain** *He kept up a flow of chatter.* | **ensure** *You must use a wide pipe to ensure an adequate flow of water.* | **control, regulate** | **assist, encourage, facilitate, stimulate** *to encourage the flow of revenue into the country* | **enhance, improve, increase** *The company is trying to enhance its cash flow.* | **disrupt, impede, reduce, restrict, slow (down)** *The continual bombing disrupted the flow of supplies to the ground troops.* | **block, break (up), cut (off), halt, interrupt, staunch, stem, stop** *They tried to staunch the flow of blood.* | **divert** *The main flow of water has been diverted to a new course.* | **join** | **measure**
- FLOW + NOUN **rate** *The flow rate was measured at 9.5 litres per second.* | **chart, diagram**
- PREP. **against the ~** *They have to swim against the flow of the river.* | **~ around/round** *air flows around the wings of an aircraft* **~ from** *First cut off the water flow from the boiler.* **~ into** *She joined the flow of immigrants to the country.* **~ through** *the flow of data through the system*
- PHRASES **changes in the flow** *Changes in the flow of patients have reduced the number of beds available.* **the ebb and flow** *the ebb and flow of the tide* ◇ *(figurative) He was at the mercy of the ebb and flow of public opinion.* **in full flow** *She tried to interrupt his speech, but he was already in full flow* (= talking continuously and not thinking of stopping). **the rate of flow** *the rate of flow of water*

flow *verb*

- ADV. **easily, freely, smoothly** *We talked, and the conversation flowed freely.* ◇ *Wine and beer flowed freely.* | **fast, swiftly** *The river flows quite fast here.* | **slowly** | **naturally** *In a good production of the play, the action and the words flow naturally.* | **directly** *Some of these changes will flow directly from the legislation.* | **constantly, continuously** | **away, back, in, out, past**
- VERB + FLOW **seem to** | **begin to, start to** | **continue to** *Imported food aid continued to flow in.*
- PREP. **across, along, between, down** *a small stream that flowed down the hillside* **from** *Blood was still flowing from the wound.* **into** *One day seemed to flow into the next.* **out of, over, through** *Information flows continuously through the network.* **to** *to get blood flowing to the brain*

flower *noun*

- ADJ. **bright, brilliantly-coloured, colourful** | **fragrant, scented, sweet-scented, sweet-smelling** | **delicate, tiny** | **huge** | **lily-like, star-shaped, etc.** | **exotic, rare** | **alpine, garden, wild, woodland** | **autumn, spring, etc.** | **seasonal** | **out-of-season** | **beautiful, lovely, pretty** *What lovely flowers!* | **fresh** | **cut** *They sell a few pot plants, but they mainly sell cut flowers.* | **dried, pressed** | **dead** | **artificial, fake** | **closed, open** *The flowers were still tightly closed.* | **daffodil, tulip, etc.**
- QUANT. **bouquet, bunch**
- VERB + FLOWER **have, produce** *It has deep pink scented flowers.* ◇ *It was the first year that the cactus had produced flowers.* | **come into** *If the winter weather is mild, plants may come into flower too early.* | **pollinate** *The flowers are pollinated by insects.* | **press**
- FLOWER + VERB **go to seed, seed**
- FLOWER + NOUN **bud, head, petal, seed, stalk, stem** | **bed, border** | **arrangement, arranger, arranging** *I'm learning flower arranging.* | **display** | **pot** (also **flowerpot**) | **basket, container, vase** | **garden** | **festival, show** | **market, seller, shop, stall** | **garland, wreath**
- PREP. **in ~** *It was June and the roses were in flower.*
- PHRASES **a bank/carpet/mass of flowers** *The alleys were adorned with banks of flowers.* ◇ *The forest floor was a carpet of wild flowers.* **covered in flowers** *The bush was absolutely covered in flowers.*

⇨ Note on page 316.

flu *noun*

- ADJ. **mild** | **gastric** | **summer**
- QUANT. **bout, dose** *She's had a nasty dose of flu.*
- VERB + FLU **be in bed with, be laid up with, have, suffer from** | **catch, contract, get, go down with**
- FLU + NOUN **bug, virus** | **epidemic** | **victim** | **vaccine** | **jab**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

fluctuate *verb*

- ADV. **considerably** | **sharply, widely, wildly** *Prices have fluctuated wildly in recent years.* | **constantly, continually** *constantly fluctuating patterns*
- PREP. **according to** *Traffic congestion fluctuates according to the time of day.* **around** *The number of boys at the school fluctuates around 100.* **between** *The number of unemployed fluctuates between two and three million.*

NOTE

Flowers

grow ~
Tulips are grown everywhere.
breed ~
She breeds orchids in her greenhouse.
plant, put in ~
Autumn is the best time to plant peonies.
dig out/up, take out ~
Dig up your geraniums before the first frosts.
spray, water ~
It's a good idea to spray your roses against greenfly.
prune roses
deadhead ~
Don't forget to deadhead the pansies.
pick (sb) ~
I picked some daffodils for you.
smell ~
He stopped to smell the flowers.
arrange ~
She arranged the tulips in a vase.
bring/give/send/take (sb) ~
He took her flowers and chocolates.
~ grow
Daffodils grow wild in the mountains.
~ be in flower, be/come out, (be in) bloom, come into flower, come out, flower
The spring flowers were just coming out.
What time of year do daffodils flower?
~ smell
Some of these roses smell absolutely wonderful.
~ close/open (up)
You know it's summer when the first daisies open.
~ droop, wilt, wither
The petunias were already wilting in the hot sun.
~ be over
It was April and the snowdrops were long over.
a bouquet/bunch/garland/posy/spray/vase of ~
a spray of mixed violets and primroses

fluctuation *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, large, marked, sharp, violent, wide, wild | local, minor | rapid | short-term | cyclical, periodic, regular, seasonal** *seasonal fluctuations in the demand for labour* | **random | climatic, currency, economic, exchange rate, market, price, temperature**
- VERB + FLUCTUATION **cause, produce** *factors which cause these exchange rate fluctuations* | **be subject to** *The number of students at a college can be subject to considerable fluctuation.*
- FLUCTUATION + VERB **occur** *the climatic fluctuations that have occurred over the last ten years*
- PREP. **~ in** *There have been quite wide fluctuations in oil prices in recent years.*

fluency *noun*

- VERB + FLUENCY **achieve, acquire** *Some young children achieve great fluency in their reading.*
- PREP. **~ in** *Fluency in spoken English is essential.*

fluid *noun*

- ADJ. **excess | amniotic, bodily/body, intravenous | brake, cleaning**
- VERB + FLUID **drink** *Change your diet and drink plenty of fluids.* | **lose | replace** *replacing vital body fluids and salts that are lost when you sweat* | **retain** *Retaining excess fluid could be a problem.*

fluid *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | remain | keep sth** *I think we should try and keep our arrangements fluid at this stage.*
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *It's a highly fluid situation.* | **fairly, quite, rather, relatively**

flurry *noun*

1 small amount of rain/snow
- ADJ. **snow**
- PHRASES **a flurry of rain/snow**

2 short sudden burst of sth
- ADJ. **brief, sudden** *There was a sudden flurry of interest in the book.*
- PREP. **~ of**
- PHRASES **a flurry of activity/excitement**

flush *noun*

- ADJ. **faint, slight | deep, dull, pink, red, scarlet, warm | hectic, sudden** *a hectic flush of rising excitement* | **hot** *Hot drinks can cause sweating and hot flushes in the face and head.*
- VERB + FLUSH **feel** *She felt a dull flush of anger creeping into her face.* | **bring** *The promise in his voice brought a warm flush to her cheeks.*
- FLUSH + VERB **creep, rise, spread, suffuse sth** *A flush of embarrassment rose to her cheeks.*
- PREP. **~ of** *There was a faint flush of colour on those pale cheeks.*
- PHRASES **(in) the first flush of enthusiasm, passion, youth, etc.** (= a time when enthusiasm, etc. is new, exciting and strong)

flush *verb*

- ADV. **deeply | a little, slightly | angrily, guiltily, painfully** *He made his excuses, flushing guiltily.*
- PREP. **with** *He flushed scarlet with embarrassment.*

flushed *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look | become**
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, very | a bit, faintly, a little, quite, slightly | unnaturally**
- PREP. **with** *Her face was flushed with embarrassment.*

flute *noun*

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

flutter *noun*

1 quick, light movement
- ADJ. **little**
- VERB + FLUTTER **give** *His heart gave a little flutter as the ladder slipped a couple of inches.*

2 state of nervous excitement
- VERB + FLUTTER **be in, feel** *She felt a flutter of excitement.* | **get in | cause**
- PREP. **in a ~** *They arrived in a flutter.* | **~ of**

fly *noun*

1 insect
- VERB + FLY **swat** *I swatted the fly with a newspaper.*
- FLY + VERB **buzz** *A fly was buzzing against the window.* | **crawl | land (on sth), settle (on sth)** *A fly settled on the butter.*
- FLY + NOUN **larva | repellent, spray**

2 (also **flies**) on trousers
- ADJ. **button/button-up, zip/zipped**
- VERB + FLY **button (up), do up, zip up | undo, unzip** *Do you know your flies are undone?*
- FLY + NOUN **button**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

fly *verb*

- ADV. **high, low | fast, slowly | about, around, past**
- PREP. **above** *We watched the birds flying high above us.* **over** *an aeroplane flying low over the sea*

focal point *noun*

- VERB + FOCAL POINT **act as, become, form, make, provide (sth with), serve as**
- PREP. **~for** *The school provides a focal point for the local community.* **~in** *In what sense was the discovery of America a focal point in history?*

focus *noun*

1 centre of interest/attention

- ADJ. **central, main, major, primary, prime, principal | important, special | greater, increased | clear, sharp, strong** *The company's restructuring is designed to give a sharper focus on key growth markets.* | **narrow** *I found the focus of the debate too narrow.*
- VERB + FOCUS **act as, give sb/sth, provide (sb/sth with), serve as** *Cities have always acted as the principal focus of political life.* | **change, shift** *At this stage of the trial the defence lawyer often shifts the focus onto the victim.* | **bring sth into** *This case has brought the problem of drug abuse in schools into sharp focus.* | **come into** *The question of compensation comes into focus.*
- FOCUS + VERB **be on sb/sth** *Our primary focus this term will be on group work.* | **shift** *The focus has now shifted towards the problem of long-term unemployment.*
- PREP. **~for** *She became a focus for all his anger.* **~on** *an increased focus on younger people*
- PHRASES **a change/shift of focus, the focus of attention** *He found he was now their main focus of attention.*

2 point/distance at which sth is clearly seen

- ADJ. **sharp | soft** *soft focus shots of cuddly animals*
- VERB + FOCUS **come into** *When I got glasses suddenly the whole world came into focus* (= became clear to see).
- PREP. **in ~** *The binoculars were not in focus* (= were not showing things clearly). **out of ~** *The children's faces are badly out of focus* (= not clearly shown) *in the photograph.*

focus *verb*

1 give attention to sth

- ADV. **heavily, largely, mainly, particularly, primarily, principally | entirely, exclusively, solely** *The study focuses exclusively on secondary schools.* | **increasingly | fully | firmly** *The attention of the news media was firmly focused on the elections.* | **specifically | clearly | directly | closely, sharply | narrowly | initially | inevitably** *He inevitably focused on his own concerns, with only a passing query about Jeff.* | **traditionally** *Degree courses have traditionally focused on the established great writers of the past.*
- VERB + FOCUS **need to | try to | decide to | tend to | help (to)** *Think of some questions that will help focus the discussion.*
- PREP. **on/upon** *We need to focus upon the main issues.*
- PHRASES **highly/tightly focused** *The department undertakes highly focused research.* **narrowly focused** *The study was criticized for being too narrowly focused.*

2 direct your eyes towards sth

- ADV. **automatically**
- VERB + FOCUS **try to** *She blinked and tried to focus.*
- PREP. **on/upon** *The eye will automatically focus on the small group in the foreground.*

foe *noun*

- ADJ. **bitter, dangerous, deadly, formidable, implacable, terrible** *He knew that Carlton could be an implacable foe.* | **common | old** *playing in the final against their old foes Italy*
- VERB + FOE **vanquish** (*figurative*) *She had fought many battles, vanquished many foes.*
- PREP. **against a ~** *to join forces against a common foe*
- PHRASES **friend and foe** *His newspaper articles criticized friend and foe alike.* **friend or foe** *She was unsure as yet whether he was friend or foe.*

fog *noun*

- ADJ. **dense, heavy, thick | freezing | patchy** *Drizzle and patchy fog are forecast.* | **swirling**
- QUANT. **bank, blanket, patch** *The town was shrouded in a thick blanket of fog.*
- VERB + FOG **be shrouded in**
- FOG + VERB **cover sth, lie, shroud sth** *A freezing fog lay over the valley.* | **close in, come down, descend, roll in** *A dense fog came down in the afternoon.* ◇ *A heavy fog rolled in from the sea.* | **thicken | clear, disperse, lift** *The fog had lifted by late morning.* | **drift, swirl** *fog drifting over the water* | **obscure sth** *A bank of fog obscured the farmhouse.*
- FOG + NOUN **patches**
- PREP. **in/into (a/the) ~** *We got lost in the fog.* **through (a/the) ~** *We drove slowly through the fog.*

foil *noun*

1 metal in a thin sheet

- ADJ. **aluminium, gold, silver, tin | kitchen**
- QUANT. **piece, sheet | roll**
- VERB + FOIL **cover sth with, wrap sth in** *I wrapped the sandwiches in kitchen foil.*

2 sth that shows off the qualities of sth else

- ADJ. **good, ideal, perfect**
- VERB + FOIL **be, provide**
- PREP. **as a ~** *She has used mosses as a foil for the brightly coloured flowers in the bed.* | **~for/to** *The couple provided the perfect foil for one another.*

fold *noun*

1 part of sth folded

- ADJ. **billowing, loose, soft** *billowing folds of clouds* | **deep, heavy | neat | vertical**
- VERB + FOLD **be hidden behind/by/in** *The troops were hidden by the deep folds of the ground.* | **fall in, hang in ~s** *The fabric fell in soft folds.* ◇ *His face hung in heavy folds.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *It was a solitary spot in a fold between two hills.* | **~in** *a fold in the land*
- PHRASES **folds of flesh/skin** *the loose folds of flesh under her chin*

2 the fold group of people who feel they belong

- ADJ. **international | family | Anglican, Catholic, etc.**
- VERB + FOLD **join | leave | come back into/to, return to | be back in** *The country is now firmly back in the international fold.* | **bring sb (back) into/to** *The indigenous people were brought into the Catholic fold.* | **accept sb back into, welcome sb (back) into/to** *His father finally accepted him back into the family fold.*
- PREP. **within a/the ~** *opposing viewpoints within the Anglican fold*

fold *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, neatly | deftly** *He deftly folded the typed sheets and replaced them in the envelope.* | **gently** *Her hands lay gently folded in her lap.* | **in half, in two** *She folded the piece of paper in half.* | **back, down, over | up** *I folded up the clothes and put them away.*
- PREP. **into** *She folded the clothes into a neat bundle.*

foliage *noun*

- ADJ. **bright | dense, heavy, luxuriant | dead | ever-**

green, year-round | grassy | spring, summer, etc. | tropical

folk (*also* **folks**) *noun*

- ADJ. **decent, good, honest, law-abiding | common, everyday, ordinary** *It's the ordinary everyday folk who come to shop at this market.* | **humble, simple | friendly | rich | poor | working, working-class | elderly, old | young | black, white | men** (also **menfolk**) *He described the customs of the menfolk of his family.* | **city, country** *places that appeal to city folk* | **local**
- VERB + FOLKS **visit** *I am going to visit my folks* (= parents) *at the weekend.*
- FOLK + VERB **live** *ordinary working-class folk who live near the factory* | **say sth, talk (of sth), tell (sb) sth** *Folks say that he is a hard man.* ◇ *If only I'd listened to the old folk telling their stories.*
- FOLK + NOUN **culture, customs, memory, myth, tradition, wisdom** *She had an interest in the folk customs of ancient societies.* | **story, tale | hero** *He is something of a folk hero in these parts.* | **art, dancing, music, singing | dance, song | musician, singer | festival | medicine, remedy**
- PHRASES **the folks back home** *The visiting team lost 3–0, dismaying the folks back home* (= the people from the place the team had come from).

folklore *noun*

- ADJ. **popular | local | cricket, sporting, etc.**
- VERB + FOLKLORE **be part of | become part of, enter (into), pass into** *The victory became part of sporting folklore.*
- FOLKLORE + VERB **have it that ...** *Local folklore has it that prehistoric men drove cattle over these cliffs.*
- PREP. **according to ~** *According to popular folklore, anyone who owns such a picture will have bad luck.* **in ... ~** *a character in American folklore*

follow *verb*

1 go after sb/sth

- ADV. **closely** *Johnson finished first, closely followed by Stevens and Higgins.* | **dutifully, obediently** *The dog followed obediently at her heels.* | **blindly** *She followed blindly, stumbling over stones in her path.* | **on** *You go ahead and we'll follow on later.*
- VERB + FOLLOW **beckon (to) sb to** *She beckoned him to follow her.*

2 happen after sth

- ADV. **closely, quickly, shortly, swiftly** *The next programme will follow shortly.* | **immediately** *in the period immediately following the election*

3 happen/be true as a result of sth

- ADV. **not necessarily** *It does not necessarily follow that sleep loss would cause these symptoms.*
- PREP. **(on) from** *Several conclusions follow on from his statement.*

4 accept advice/instructions

- ADV. **carefully** *Follow my instructions very carefully.* | **dutifully, obediently**

5 copy

- ADV. **faithfully** *The film follows the book faithfully.* | **blindly, slavishly** *It wasn't in his nature to follow blindly.* ◇ *slavishly following the views of his teachers*
- VERB + FOLLOW **be expected to, be likely to** *Banks are expected to follow the building societies in raising mortgage rates.*
- PHRASES **follow suit** (*figurative*) (= act or behave in the way that sb else has just done)

6 understand sth

- ADV. **not quite** *I'm sorry but I don't quite follow you* (=understand what you are saying).
- VERB + FOLLOW **be easy to | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *His argument was difficult to follow.*

follower *noun*

- ADJ. **ardent, close, enthusiastic, keen** *a keen follower of football* | **dedicated, devoted, devout, faithful, loyal, true** *a true follower of Islam* | **local | sports | cricket, football, rugby, etc.**
- QUANT. **band**
- VERB + FOLLOWER **have** *She still has many loyal followers.* | **attract | lead** *The myth says that he led a small band of followers to seek their fortune in distant lands.*
- PREP. **among sb's ~** *The king was not powerful enough to command respect among his followers.*

following *noun*

- ADJ. **big, considerable, great, large, mass, strong | limited, small | local | dedicated, devoted, faithful, fanatical, loyal | enthusiastic | personal | cult** *They enjoy a cult following in the UK.*
- VERB + FOLLOWING **command, enjoy, have | acquire, attract, build up, create, gain, gather**
- PREP. **~ among** *Top of the range Scotches attract a fanatical following among whisky buffs.*

follow-up *noun*

- ADJ. **long-term | immediate | six-month, two-year, etc. | regular**
- VERB + FOLLOW-UP **plan | write** *She is writing a follow-up to her best-selling novel.*
- FOLLOW-UP + NOUN **period | action, work** *After the report, advisers are expected to carry out follow-up work.* | **discussion, interview, meeting, session | visit** *You will receive a follow-up visit from the person conducting the assessment.* | **operation** *a follow-up operation to consolidate military successes* | **treatment** *They were attending hospital for follow-up treatment.* | **report, study, survey** *a long-term follow-up study of all children born in Great Britain in one week*
- PREP. **~ to** *We are planning a follow-up to today's event.*

folly *noun*

1 lack of good judgement

- ADJ. **absolute, sheer | ultimate | youthful | human | economic, political**
- VERB + FOLLY **realize, recognize, see** *Suddenly she saw the folly of it all.* | **demonstrate, show** *These facts demonstrate the folly of the policy.* | **underline**
- PHRASES **an act of folly** *That would be an act of sheer folly!* **the folly of your ways** *They have finally seen the folly of their ways.* **the height of folly** *To sign away his rights to the book would have been the height of folly.*

2 building

- ADJ. **Gothic, Victorian | monumental | architectural**
- VERB + FOLLY **build**

fond *adj.* **fond of sb/sth**

- VERBS **be, feel, seem | become, grow | remain**
- ADV. **especially, extremely, genuinely, immensely, particularly, really, very** *She seems genuinely fond of the children.* | **quite, rather**

fondness *noun*

- ADJ. **great | certain, special**
- VERB + FONDNESS **feel, have**
- PREP. **~ for** *I've always had a certain fondness for her.*

food *noun*

- ADJ. **delicious, excellent, good, superb, tasty, wonderful | favourite | decent | adequate, enough, suffi-**

FOOD AND COOKING

describing food

- moist, rich, sticky **cake**
- a delicious, rich **dessert**
- a classic, delicious, savoury, tasty **dish**
- a/an appetizing, delicious, excellent, healthy, nourishing, substantial, tasty, wholesome **meal**
- crisp, crunchy, fresh, green **salad**
- creamy, piquant, rich, spicy, sweet and sour, tangy, thick **sauce**
- a healthy, light, quick, savoury, tasty **snack**
- chunky, clear, creamy, hearty, thick, thin **soup**

a substantial meal

quantifiers

- a **clove** of garlic
- a **fillet** of fish
- a **knob** of butter
- a **pinch** of salt
- a **rasher** of bacon
- a **sprig** of parsley
- a **stick** of celery
- a **wedge** of lemon

cooking

- melt, soften **butter**
- (hard/soft-)boil, fry, poach, scramble **eggs**
- bake, fry, grill, poach, steam **fish**
- brown, soften **onions**
- heat up, simmer **soup**; bring **soup** to the boil
- boil, parboil, steam **vegetables**
- preheat **the oven** to 450°
- lower, remove the pan from, take the pan off, turn down/up **the heat**

preparation

- sprinkle, top with grated **cheese**
- beat, whisk **eggs**
- clean, fillet, gut, skin **fish**
- chop, cube, dice, marinate, mince, tenderize **meat**
- add, blend, combine, mix, pour in, stir in **ingredients**
- chop, peel **vegetables**

serving

- garnish with **herbs**
- sprinkle with **lemon juice**
- drizzle, pour **oil**
- drain **pasta**
- dress, toss a **salad**
- season (with **salt** and **pepper**) to taste

cient *Everyone has the right to adequate food and clean water.* | **ample** | **basic, everyday, staple** *lower fat alternatives to everyday foods* ◇ *Retail prices of staple foods remain unchanged.* | **plain, simple** | **exotic, speciality** | **fine, gourmet, quality** *Our restaurant serves the finest food.* | **cheap** | **bad, poor, unhealthy** | **healthy, nourishing, nutritious, proper, the right, wholesome** *Healthy food can and should be delicious* ◇ *Lack of proper food led to much illness among seamen.* ◇ *It's is important to get plenty of exercise and to eat the right foods.* | **diet, health** *Essential oils can be bought from most good health food shops* | **rabbit** (*informal, disapproving*) *My father preferred to eat meat and hated rabbit food* (= lettuce and other raw vegetables normally found in salads). | **fast, junk, snack, takeaway** | **hot** | **cold** | **raw, uncooked** | **leftover** | **rotten** | **fresh** | **natural** | **organic** | **frozen** | **canned, tinned** | **processed** | **convenience, ready-made, ready-prepared** | **fatty, fried, starchy, stodgy** *She is trying to cut down on fatty foods.* | **high-calorie, rich** *Avoid rich foods like pastries.* | **sugary, sweet** | **savoury, spicy** | **Greek, Indian, etc.** | **vegetarian** | **genetically-modified** *Campaigners are challenging the safety of genetically-modified food.* | **ani-**

mal, vegetable *Omnivores are able to eat animal or vegetable food.* | **solid** *The baby refuses to swallow any solid food.* | **baby** | **cat, dog, fish, pet** | **hospital, party, prison, pub, restaurant** | **imported**

• QUANT. **portion, plate** | **morsel, scrap** *They moved from village to village begging scraps of food.*

• VERB + FOOD **consume, eat, have** *the amount of food that an average family consumes in a week* ◇ *You should eat more fresh foods.* ◇ *She had had no food for two days.* | **enjoy, like** *He obviously enjoys good food.* | **live on** *people who live on junk food* | **be off, go off** *The dog has gone off its food.* | **avoid, cut down on, cut out** | **be/go short of, run short of** *The city was under siege and began to run short of food.* | **be without, go without, live without** *We had been days without food.* | **offer (sb)** *The centre offers food and accommodation for students.* | **give sb, provide (sb with), serve (sb), supply (sb with)** *a restaurant that serves good healthy food* ◇ *Thanks to international aid, the town had been supplied with food for nine months.* | **feed sb/sth (on)** *He always fed Whiskers the best cat food.* ◇ *She fed her baby on wholesome food.* | **handle** *Always take great care when handling food.* | **cook, do, make, prepare** *A lot of people can't be bothered to cook good food.* ◇ *Who's doing the food for the party?* | **smell, taste** *Taste the food and tell me what you think.* | **cut (up)** *Please cut up the food for your baby sister.* | **pick at** *He had lost his appetite and picked at his food.* | **play with** *Stop playing with your food like a baby!* | **chew** | **swallow** | **bolt, gulp (down)** *She told the kids not to gulp down their food.* | **digest** | **order** *They sat down at the restaurant table and immediately ordered their food.* | **grow** | **import** | **beg (for), hunt for, look for, search for, scavenge for** *The female eagle broods and the male hunts for food.* | **find** *Most mammals use their sense of smell to find food.* | **keep, store** *Keep food fresher for longer with our new sealable containers.* ◇ *Bears store food for the winter.* | **put out** *He put out food for the birds.* | **share**

• FOOD + VERB **smell, taste** *Does the food taste good?* | **be in short supply, be short** *We have strikes, food is short and the queues grow longer.* | **run out**

• FOOD + NOUN **resource, source, supply** *Fruits are an important food source for bats.* ◇ *The seaside fish market is a ready food supply for scavenging seabirds.* | **supplies** *The UN has been issuing emergency food supplies to the refugees.* | **stuff** (also **foodstuff**) *Many basic foodstuffs, such as bread and milk, are tax-free.* | **crop, plant** *Peasants were encouraged to grow basic food crops such as beans and corn.* | **product** *The labels on food products give a lot of information about their nutritional content.* | **consumption** | **intake** *His doctor warned him to reduce his daily food intake.* | **preparation** | **hygiene, safety** | **scare** *There has been a food scare over salmonella in eggs.* | **distribution** | **crisis, shortage** | **rationing, rations** | **industry, market** *The country intends to increase its share of the European food market.* | **manufacturing, production** | **company, manufacturer, producer** | **market, outlet, retailer, shop, store, supplier** *Britain's first organic food market* ◇ *a fast food outlet* | **prices** | **bill** *I am trying to cut my weekly food bill by one third.* | **policy** *EU food policy* | **poisoning** | **additives** | **colouring** | **processor** *Blend the egg yolks, lemon juice and herbs in a food processor.* | **chain** *Plankton is at the bottom of the marine food chain.*

• PREP. **for ~** *killing animals for food* **without ~** *After three days without food, the men were close to starvation.*

• PHRASES **food and drink** *Gina had prepared food and drink for the work party.* **food and water** *Food and water were running out.* **food and wine** *The Dordogne region is famous for its food and wine.* **a smell of food** *There was a smell of food from the kitchen* **a supply of food** *The ocean provided the villagers with an endless supply of food.* **the taste of food** *the characteristic taste of our food*

fool *noun*

• ADJ. **awful, big, bloody** (*taboo*), **damned, great, silly, stupid** *You're an even bigger fool than I thought.* | **absolute, complete, utter** | **poor** (= unfortunate) | **old** (= used to show sympathy, affection or a lack of respect) *The poor old fool was imprisoned on my account.* | **young** | **little** *You silly little fool!* | **court** *court fools who used to provide entertainment in the royal court*

• VERB + FOOL **feel (like)** *I felt such a fool when I realized what I'd done.* | **look (like)** *They had left me looking like a fool.* | **act (like), behave like, play** *Stop behaving like a fool!* ◇ *He thought that being an actor only involved tap dancing and playing the fool* (= acting in a childish/funny way). | **suffer, tolerate** *She doesn't suffer fools gladly.* | **call sb** | **take sb for** *He had taken me for a complete fool.* | **be no/nobody's** (= be too clever to be deceived by sb/sth) *She's nobody's fool. She had the car checked by a mechanic before buying it.*

• PREP. **like a ~** *Like a fool, I told her everything.* | **~ of a sth** *That fool of a doctor has prescribed me the wrong medicine!*

• PHRASES **make a fool (out) of sb/yourself** *She was angry at having been made a fool of.* **more fool (sb)** *I thought it was safe to leave my suitcase there. More fool me* (= I was stupid to think so).

fool *verb*

• ADV. **completely** | **easily** *I'm not easily fooled by anyone, least of all you.*

• VERB + FOOL **can't/couldn't** | **try to**

• PREP. **into** *He fooled them into thinking he was a detective.* **with** *You can't fool me with all that nonsense!*

• PHRASES **have sb fooled** *She had me completely fooled for a moment.*

foolish *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound**

• ADV. **exceedingly, extremely, incredibly, really, singularly, very** | **utterly** | **a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly, vaguely**

foolproof *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, seem** | **make sth** *We're trying to work out a way to make the system foolproof.*

• ADV. **absolutely, quite** | **nearly, pretty well, virtually** *The system is pretty well foolproof.*

foot *noun*

1 part of the body

• ADJ. **left, right** | **back, front** *He shifted his weight onto his back foot.* | **dainty (little), small** | **big, enormous** | **narrow, wide** | **flat** *He was excused military service because of his flat feet.* | **bare** *It's dangerous to walk on the beach in/with bare feet.* | **blistered, swollen** | **dirty, smelly, unwashed** | **booted, stockinged** *the rumble of many booted feet on the bridge* ◇ *He padded across the room in his stockinged feet* (= wearing socks but no shoes). | **webbed** *Ducks' webbed feet help them to swim.* | **silent** *He slipped across the corridor on silent feet.* | **leaden** (*figurative*) *He walked towards the examination room with leaden feet* (= slowly). | **winged** (*figurative*) *She flew on winged feet* (= fast) *up the narrow stair.*

• VERB + FOOT **get to, jump to, leap to, rise to, scramble to** *He got shakily to his feet.* | **be on** *I've been on my feet all day and I need to sit down for a rest.* | **plant, put** *I planted my feet firmly on the chair and reached up to the top window.* ◇ *She put her foot down on the accelerator and the car lurched forward.* | **raise** *He raised his foot off the accelerator pedal.* | **stamp** | **swing** *He swung a foot at the ball but missed completely.* | **shuffle** | **drag** *She dragged her* *feet as she reluctantly followed her parents.* | **wipe** *Wipe your feet when you come in from the street.* | **tread on** *That man trod on my foot and he didn't even apologize.*

• FOOT + VERB **catch** *His foot caught in the cable and he fell under the train.* | **slip** *My foot slipped as I was about to shoot and I missed the ball.* | **crunch, patter, pound, shuffle** *I heard feet crunching over the gravel outside the house.* | **dangle** *I sat by the river with my feet dangling in the water.* | **kick** *They carried him out of the room with his feet kicking.* | **sink** *My feet sank deep into the mud.*

• FOOT + NOUN **massage** | **injury** | **passenger, soldier** *Foot passengers were allowed to leave the ferry before the vehicles.* | **patrol** *soldiers on foot patrol*

• PREP. **beneath/under your ~** *The snow crunched beneath her feet.* **from ~ to ~** *They looked unsure and shifted uneasily from foot to foot.* **on ~** *The city is best explored on foot.* **in the/your ~** *He's broken several bones in his left foot.* **with the/your ~** *She kicked the ball with her right foot.*

• PHRASES **the ball of the/your foot** *I squatted down to speak to the boy, balancing on the balls of my feet.* **from head to foot** *She was dressed from head to foot in green velvet.* **put your feet up** *He likes to put his feet up and watch TV when he gets home.* **set foot in/on sth** *Cook claimed to be the first European to set foot in Australia.* **the sole of the/your foot** *The soles of my feet were covered in blisters.*

2 measurement

⇨ Note at MEASURE

football *noun*

• ADJ. **adventurous, attractive, classy, creative, entertaining, exciting, fine, fluent, good, great, neat** | **one-touch** *The Dutch team impressed the fans with their classy one-touch football.* | **amateur, professional** | **junior** | **first-team** | **club, league** | **international, world** | **domestic** | **five-a-side** | **indoor** | **live** | **American, Aussie rules/Australian rules, Gaelic**

• QUANT. **game**

• VERB + FOOTBALL **play** | **watch** | **follow** *Young Italians follow football like we follow the royal family.*

• FOOTBALL + NOUN **club, league** | **squad, team** | **hero, player, star** | **field, ground, pitch, stadium** | **terraces** *The government is trying to tackle violence on the football terraces.* | **boots, kit, shirt, shorts, strip** | **agent, management, manager** | **authorities** *The police say the players' behaviour is a matter for the football authorities.* | **enthusiast, fan, follower, supporter** | **crowd** | **programme** | **championship, game, match, tournament** | **training** | **career** | **hooliganism, riot, violence** | **hooligan** | **chant** *Obscene football chants stop people taking their children to matches.* | **commentator, writer** | **action, coverage** *Join Radio 5 for all the top football action.* | **world** *The football world was rocked by the scandal.* | **culture** *The World Cup is fascinating for its clash of football cultures.*

⇨ Special page at SPORT

footballer *noun*

• ADJ. **brilliant, good, skilful, talented** | **famous** | **keen** | **amateur, professional** | **international**

• FOOTBALLER + VERB **play**

foothold *noun*

1 place to put your foot when climbing

• ADJ. **firm, secure**

• VERB + FOOTHOLD **have** | **find, get, scrabble for** *He found a secure foothold and pulled himself up.* ◇ *scrabbling for a foothold on the steep grassy bank* | **give sb** *The bench gave me the foothold I needed to climb into the tree.*

2 strong position for making further progress

• ADJ. **firm, secure** | **permanent** | **big** | **small**

• VERB + FOOTHOLD **have** | **establish, gain, get, obtain, secure** *The company is trying to gain a foothold in the European market.* | **maintain** | **lose** | **regain** | **give (sb/sth), provide (sb with)** *I hope the textbook will provide a foothold for students of the subject.*

• PREP. **~ in** *The firm has a firm foothold in this market.*

footing *noun*

1 secure grip with your feet

• ADJ. **firm, sure**

• VERB + FOOTING **keep** *He struggled to keep his footing on the slippery floor.* | **be sure of** *She looked over her shoulder to be sure of her footing.* | **struggle for** | **lose, miss** | **give (sb), provide (sb with)** *The sole of this shoe will give a firm footing even on slippery surfaces.*

2 basis on which sth exists/operates

• ADJ. **firm, proper, right, secure, solid, sound** | **wrong** | **equal, the same** *All claimants stand on an equal legal footing.* | **different, unequal** | **normal** | **permanent** *The arrangement was put on a permanent footing earlier this year.* | **commercial, competitive, financial, legal** | **war** *The army was placed on a war footing* (= prepared for war).

• VERB + FOOTING **be on, stand on** *The two teams stand on an equal footing.* | **be back on** | **gain** *Town planning procedures gained a footing in local government.* | **get (sb/sth) off on** *Being inconsiderate to the doctor will get you off on the wrong footing.* | **get (sth) on, place sth on, set sth on** *We need to get the business on a sound footing.* | **get (sth) back on, put sth back on**

• PREP. **on a ... ~** *an attempt to put the economy on a more secure footing*

footpath *noun*

• ADJ. **public** | **long-distance**

• VERB + FOOTPATH **follow, take, use** | **keep to**

• FOOTPATH + VERB **follow sth, lead, run** *The footpath runs along the canal.* | **cross sth** *a footpath crossing farmland* | **link sth** *the footpath linking Sprotton and Lumm*

• FOOTPATH + NOUN **network, system**

• PREP. **along a/the ~** *We walked along the footpath.* **by (a/the) ~** *The monastery is an hour away by footpath.* **down a/the ~, on the ~** *We stood on the footpath and waited for a gap in the traffic.* **up a/the ~** | **~ across, ~ along, ~ alongside, ~ from, ~ over, ~ through, ~ to** *the footpath through the wood*

footprint *noun*

• ADJ. **clear** | **fresh** | **muddy, wet**

• VERB + FOOTPRINT **leave, make** *The intruder had left some clear footprints in the flower beds.* ◇ *Her wet boots made footprints on the dusty floor.* | **find** *The detective found fresh footprints in the mud next to the victim.* | **follow** *They had fled through the snow, and police had followed their footprints.*

footstep *noun* (usually **footsteps**)

• ADJ. **heavy** | **light** | **dragging** *He heard the sound of heavy, dragging footsteps in the corridor.* | **measured, slow** | **brisk, hurried, hurrying, quick, rapid, running** | **loud** | **soft** | **uncertain** | **approaching** | **receding**

• VERB + FOOTSTEPS **hear, listen to** | **listen for** *listening for her mother's footsteps* | **retrace** *I am retracing the footsteps of the lost expedition.*

• FOOTSTEPS + VERB **run, walk** | **halt, stop** *The footsteps halted in the doorway.* | **approach, come** *The footsteps came closer as she listened.* | **recede** | **pass (on)** *The footsteps passed on, receding down the corridor.* | **descend the stairs** | **falter** | **die away, fade (away)** *Her footsteps died away as she walked down the path.* |

crunch, echo, pound, sound *Hurried footsteps sounded on the stairs.*
- PHRASES **the sound of (sb's) footsteps**

footwork *noun*
- ADJ. **deft, fancy, fine, good, neat, nimble**
- VERB + FOOTWORK **show** *She showed some nimble footwork and looked a promising player.*

forbid *verb*
- ADV. **strictly** *Smoking is strictly forbidden.* | **absolutely, totally, utterly** *You cannot do that. I absolutely forbid it.* | **expressly, specifically**
- PREP. **from** *He was forbidden from leaving the country.*

force *noun*

1 physical strength, power or violence
- ADJ. **considerable, great, terrible, tremendous | full, maximum | brute, sheer | reasonable | sufficient | excessive | unlawful | deadly, lethal | explosive | physical | gale** *The wind was increasing to gale force.*
- VERB + FORCE **resort to, use** *In the end, we had to resort to brute force to get the door open.* | **take sth by** *The troops marched in and took the city by force.* | **feel** *Even the opposition MPs felt the force of the prime minister's argument.*
- PREP. **by ~** *The king made laws and imposed them by force.*
- PHRASES **catch/experience/feel/meet/take the full force of sth** *Our shop took the full force of the bomb blast.* ◇ *I felt the full force of her criticism.* **meet force with force** *The country's attempts to meet force with force* (= resist an attack using force) *led to the outbreak of war.* **the use of force** *The regulations allow the use of force if necessary.*

2 effect that causes sth to move
- ADJ. **powerful, strong | weak | attractive | repulsive | balanced | external, internal** *Deep internal forces cause movements of the earth's crust.* | **lateral | centrifugal, centripetal, electromagnetic, electromotive, gravitational, mechanical, nuclear, tidal**
- VERB + FORCE **exert** *The sun exerts a force on the earth.* | **increase | decrease | balance** *The forces of expansion are balanced by forces of contraction.*
- FORCE + VERB **balance sth**
- FORCE + NOUN **field** *the force field of a magnet* ◇ *(figurative) It was as if an invisible force field kept us apart.*
- PREP. **~ between** *the attractive and repulsive forces between individual particles*
- PHRASES **a balance of forces** *the balance of nuclear forces in atoms* **the force of gravity**

3 authority of sth
- ADJ. **binding, legal, statutory** *The contract was not signed and has no binding force.*
- VERB + FORCE **come into** *The new law comes into force as from midnight tomorrow.* | **bring sth into**
- PREP. **in ~** *Some laws relating to obsolete customs are still in force.*
- PHRASES **the force of law** *Professional standards often do not have the force of law* (= cannot be enforced).

4 sb/sth with power/influence
- ADJ. **considerable, formidable, great, irresistible, major, overwhelming, potent, powerful, significant, strong | active, controlling, dominant, driving, moving | motivating | persuasive | constructive, creative, dynamic, positive, progressive | destructive, disruptive, negative, subversive** *She was seen as a potentially subversive force within the party.* | **cohesive, unifying | competitive, conflicting, countervailing, reactionary | internal | external, international, outside** *The play portrays a marriage torn apart by external forces.* | **natural** *powerful natural forces such as earthquakes and drought* | **spiritual, supernatural | dark, demonic, evil, malevolent** *'There are dark forces in the universe,' he raved, 'and we are powerless against them!'* | **cultural, economic, intellectual, market, moral, political, productive, revolutionary, social** *powerful social and economic forces*
- VERB + FORCE **remain** *Though officially retired, she remains the creative force behind the design business.* | **balance** *This is a politician who does not like to balance market forces.*
- PREP. **~ behind** *Local parents were the driving force behind the project.* **~ for** *Competition is a force for change in industry.*
- PHRASES **a balance of forces** *shifts in the balance of political forces in Europe* **a force to be reckoned with** *With its new players, the team is now very much a force to be reckoned with.*

5 group of people trained for a particular purpose
- ADJ. **large | small, token** *a token force of only 300 men* | **100-strong, etc. | crack, elite, special** *These elite forces are the best equipped and trained in the world.* | **combined, joint** *the combined forces of MI5 and Scotland Yard* ◇ *a joint task force* | **allied, coalition, multinational | strategic | labour, sales** *a company's labour force* ◇ *the country's labour force* | **armed, military, paramilitary | government, loyal | enemy, guerrilla, hostile, occupying, opposition, rebel | regular | reserve | volunteer | conventional | nuclear | assault, defence, expeditionary, fighting, invasion, peace, peacekeeping, police, security, strike** (See also **task force**.) | **air, airborne, amphibious, ground, land, naval**
- VERB + FORCE **assemble, create, form, mobilize, set up** *A large expeditionary force is now being assembled.* | **send** *the decision to send armed forces over the border* | **deploy, use** *A small peacekeeping force will be deployed in the area.* | **withdraw | demobilize | command, head (up), lead | join** *She decided to join the armed forces.* | **combine, join** *The two companies have joined forces to form a new consortium.*
- FORCE + VERB **control sth** *Rebel forces now control most of the capital.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *people in the security forces*
- PHRASES **a member of a force, the withdrawal of a force** *a UN deadline for the withdrawal of forces*

foreboding *noun*
- ADJ. **deep, gloomy**
- VERB + FOREBODING **feel, have** *I felt a gloomy foreboding that something was going to go wrong.* | **be full of** *He returned, full of foreboding, to the scene of the accident.* | **fill sb with**
- PREP. **with (a) ~** *The sky was dull, with a foreboding of rain.* | **~ of** *She had a foreboding of danger.*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of foreboding**

forecast *noun*
- ADJ. **good, optimistic, promising | gloomy, pessimistic | conservative | accurate, correct | detailed | revised | annual | early | long-range, long-term** *a long-range weather forecast* | **short-term** *a short-term forecast of the UK economy* | **official | economic, financial, market, traffic, weather | cash-flow, cost, earnings, growth, profit, revenue, sales**
- VERB + FORECAST **prepare, produce | give, issue, make, provide** *The government has issued a pessimistic economic forecast.* | **revise, update | rely on | be in line with** *The interest rate is in line with the forecast.*
- FORECAST + VERB **predict sth, say sth, suggest sth** *Some forecasts suggest that the increase in heart disease will continue for some time.* | **assume sth | be based on sth** *forecasts based on a complicated procedure*
- PREP. **~ about** *Forecasts about the economy are often*

misleading. ~ **for** *forecasts for earnings ◇ forecasts for different sectors of the industry ◇ forecasts for the year*

forecast *verb*

- ADV. **accurately, correctly | originally** *higher costs than those originally forecast*
- VERB + FORECAST **be difficult to, be hard to**
- PHRASES **be widely forecast** *a result that was widely forecast*

forefront *noun* **the forefront**

- VERB + FOREFRONT **remain at/in** *Education remains at the forefront of the state's planning.* | **keep sb/sth at/in/to | come into/to** *She came to the forefront as governor after the political change.* | **bring sb/sth to, place sb/sth at/in/to, push sb/sth into/to, put sb/sth (back) at/in, take sb/sth into/to, thrust sb/sth into/to** *The new factory could put the town back at the forefront of steelmaking.*
- PREP. **at/in the ~ (of)** *issues at the forefront of government policy*
- PHRASES **at/in/to the forefront of sb's mind** *This question remained at the forefront of her mind.*

foreground *noun*

- VERB + FOREGROUND **occupy** *A happy family occupies the foreground of the painting.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *This issue is very much in the foreground.*

forehead *noun*

- ADJ. **broad, high, wide | domed | sloping | bald | furrowed, wrinkled | smooth**
- VERB + FOREHEAD **wrinkle | mop, wipe | hit, rub, slap, smack, tap** *He groaned and slapped his forehead, as if suddenly remembering something obvious.*
- PREP. **across your ~** *He rubbed a hand across his forehead as though he were tired.* **from your ~** *He wiped the sweat from his forehead.* **in the ~** *He went to bed complaining of a pain in the forehead.* **off your ~** *She pushed her wet hair off her forehead.* **over your ~** *His hair fell over his forehead.*

foreign *adj.*

1 not coming from your own country

- VERBS **be, look, sound** *The name sounded foreign.*
- ADV. **slightly** *a slightly foreign accent* | **distinctly** *He was a small man, distinctly foreign in appearance.*

2 **foreign to sb** not typical of sb/not known to sb

- VERBS **be, feel, seem**
- ADV. **very | completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly** *This kind of behaviour is completely foreign to her.*

forerunner *noun*

- ADJ. **early, immediate** *an early forerunner of the modern jet engine* | **direct**

foresee *verb*

- ADV. **clearly | reasonably** *He could not reasonably have foreseen the consequences.*
- VERB + FORESEE **can/could** *We could foresee no difficulties with these proposals.* | **be difficult to, be impossible to** *It is impossible to foresee the future.*

foresight *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great**
- VERB + FORESIGHT **have** *He had had the foresight to bring in the washing before the rain started.* | **show** *The plans showed great foresight.* | **lack**
- PHRASES **a lack of foresight**

forest *noun*

- ADJ. **dense, thick | impenetrable | dark | native, natural | ancient, primeval, virgin | rain** (also **rainforest**), **tropical | coniferous, deciduous | beech, birch, pine, etc.**
- QUANT. **stretch, tract** *a large stretch of virgin forest*
- VERB + FOREST **plant | chop down, clear, cut down, destroy** *Forest is being cleared to make way for new farming land.* | **be covered by/in/with** *Much of Europe was once covered in forest.*
- FOREST + VERB **stretch** *Thick forest stretched as far as the eye could see.*
- FOREST + NOUN **tree | floor | land | fire**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *They got lost in the forest.* **through a/the ~** *We slashed our way through the dense forest.*
- PHRASES **the edge/heart/middle of the forest**

forestry *noun*

- ADJ. **commercial, plantation | sustainable | tropical**
- FORESTRY + NOUN **plantation | practice | track | worker | industry, management | policy, programme, project, strategy | department**

forethought *noun*

- VERB + FORETHOUGHT **have** *We had had the forethought to book places in advance.*
- PREP. **with/without ~** *He had made the remark completely without forethought.*
- PHRASES **a lack of forethought**

forgery *noun*

⇨ Note at CRIME

forget *verb*

- ADV. **clean, completely, entirely, quite, totally** *I'm terribly sorry—I clean forgot to give your brother the message.* | **almost, nearly | never** *I'll never forget the expression on his face.* | **quickly, soon | instantly, promptly** *'I will,' she promised, and promptly forgot about it.* | **momentarily, temporarily** *Her joy was so infectious that he momentarily forgot his own fears for the future.* | **easily** *The experience of nearly getting killed is not easily forgotten.* | **conveniently** (*ironic*) *He conveniently forgot to tell me he was married.*
- VERB + FORGET **seem to** *You seem to forget that it was your idea in the first place.* | **tend to | want to | try to | be easy to** *It is easy to forget that not all countries have these advantages.* | **let sb** *Let's forget last night, shall we?* | **make sb**
- PREP. **about** *Oh yes! I almost forgot about the party.*
- PHRASES **forget all about sth** *In the excitement I forgot all about my little brother.* **forgive and forget** *It was all a long time ago and now Ellen found she could forgive and forget.* **keep forgetting** *She keeps forgetting where she's put her glasses.* **largely forgotten** *His pioneering work in the field was largely forgotten until the late 1940s.*

forgive *verb*

- ADV. **quite** *I suspect that Rodney has never quite forgiven either of them.* | **never | easily** *Donna would not easily forgive Beth's silly attempt to trick her.*
- VERB + FORGIVE **be able/unable to, can/could** *I couldn't forgive him.* | **be easy to** *An insult like that isn't easy to forgive.* | **ask sb to, beg sb to** *He fell to his knees and begged God to forgive him.* | **try to**
- PREP. **for** *She never forgave him for losing her ring.*
- PHRASES **forgive and forget** *He was not the sort of man to forgive and forget.*

forgiveness *noun*

- ADJ. **complete**
- VERB + FORGIVENESS **find, have, receive** *Do I have your forgiveness?* | **ask (for), beg (for), pray for, seek** | **find** *victims of violence who can nevertheless find forgiveness in their hearts* | **offer (sb), show (sb)**
- PREP. **~ for** *He begged her forgiveness for his mistake.*

forgo *verb*

- ADV. **willingly** *She would willingly forgo a birthday treat if only her warring parents would declare a truce.*
- VERB + FORGO **have to** *Time to prepare was a luxury he would have to forgo.* | **decide to** | **be prepared to, be willing to**

fork *noun*

1 tool for eating

- ADJ. **toasting**
- VERB + FORK **pick up** | **put down** | **use**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *She impaled a piece of meat on her fork.* **with a ~** *Mash the mixture with a fork.*
- PHRASES **a knife and fork** *He put the knives and forks on the table.*

2 place where sth divides into two parts

- ADJ. **left/left-hand, right/right-hand**
- VERB + FORK **take** *As you pass the farm, take the right fork of the track up the hill.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *Bear left at the fork in the road.* | **~ in** *sitting in the fork of the tree*

forlorn *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound, stand** *The house stood forlorn and empty.* | **become**
- ADV. **very** | **quite, utterly** *She didn't belong, and felt utterly forlorn.* | **almost** | **rather, somewhat**

form *noun*

1 type of sth/way of doing sth

- ADJ. **common** *Strikes are the most common form of industrial protest.* | **extreme** *an extreme form of socialism* | **pure** *In its purest form, the substance is highly explosive.* | **complex, simple** | **mild** | **virulent** *a virulent form of flu* | **early, final** *an early form of bicycle ◇ The document was edited before being circulated in its final form.* | **art, literary, musical** *Story-telling has acquired the status of an art form.* | **life** *primitive life forms at the bottom of the sea* | **digital, electronic** *The data is stored in digital form.* | **graphic, tabular** *The results of the survey are shown below in tabular form.* | **liquid**
- VERB + FORM **take** *Bullying can take many forms.*
- PREP. **in … ~** *The gas is stored in liquid form.* **in the ~ of** *These costs were passed on to the tenants in the form of higher rents.* | **~ of** *Swimming is one of the best forms of exercise.*
- PHRASES **in any shape or form** *The company will not tolerate discrimination in any shape or form.* **in some form or other** *We spend most of our time communicating in some form or other.*

2 shape

- ADJ. **human** *paintings of the human form* | **adult**
- VERB + FORM **alter, change** *a mythical creature that could change its form* | **assume, take on** *a god who could take on human form*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Two weeks later the moth will emerge in its adult form.*

3 piece of paper with questions on it

- ADJ. **application, booking, entry, order**
- VERB + FORM **complete, fill in/out** *Please complete the application form and return it to us.* | **sign** | **return**

4 strength/fitness

- ADJ. **fine, good** | **poor** | **current, present**
- VERB + FORM **maintain** *The team is hoping that it can maintain its current form.*
- PREP. **in ~** *She was in fine form for the tournament. ◇ Barcelona are the team in form.* **off ~** *Her recent illness possibly explains why she was off form in this race.* **on (sb's) ~** *He'll be a difficult opponent to beat: he's really on form today. ◇ On his present form it seems likely that he will win the match.* **out of ~** *The team was out of form and did not play as well as expected.*

form *verb*

1 make/organize sth

- VERB + FORM **attempt to, try to** | **agree to, decide to** | **ask sb to, invite sb to** *The leader of the party with the most seats is invited to form a government.* | **help (to)**
- PHRASES **newly/recently formed** *a newly formed political party*

2 make sth into a shape

- PREP. **into** *She formed the clay into a ball.*
- PHRASES **fully formed** *The plan came in a flash of inspiration, fully formed.* **perfectly formed** *a perfectly formed body*

formal *adj.*

1 very correct/official

- VERBS **be, seem, sound** | **become**
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **strictly** *Learning was by rote and strictly formal.* | **almost** *The greeting was polite, almost formal.* | **fairly, quite, rather, relatively** | **oddly** *Her words sounded oddly formal.* | **stiffly** *His manner was stiffly formal.*

2 concerned with the way sth is done

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **merely, purely** *Getting approval for the plan is a purely formal matter: nobody will seriously oppose it.* | **largely** *The monarch retains largely formal duties.*

formality *noun*

1 action that is necessary according to custom/law

- ADJ. **mere, simple** *Your acceptance into the club will be a mere formality.* | **customs, immigration, legal**
- VERB + FORMALITY **complete, deal with, go through** *It only took a few minutes to complete the legal formalities.* | **dispense with** *Let's dispense with the formalities and get down to work.*
- PHRASES **just/merely/only a formality** *She was clearly the best candidate for the job, so her interview was just a formality.*

2 polite formal behaviour

- ADJ. **cold, cool, icy, stiff**
- QUANT. **degree, level** *It is important to be aware of the level of formality required at any social function.*
- VERB + FORMALITY **maintain** *She preferred to maintain a cool formality in her dealings with her manager.*

format *noun*

- ADJ. **large, small** | **standard**
- VERB + FORMAT **change** *For this year, we have decided to change the format of the conference slightly.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The book is now available in a slightly smaller format.*

formation *noun*

1 making/developing sth

- ADJ. **policy** *the top civil servants who are responsible for policy formation*
- VERB + FORMATION **lead to, result in** *This dispute led to the formation of a new breakaway group.*

2 arrangement/group/pattern

- ADJ. **close, tight | battle** *The troops advanced in battle formation.* **| family, household, social** *changing patterns of marriage and family formation*
- FORMATION + NOUN **dancing, flying**
- PREP. **in a ... ~** *The men were grouped in a close formation.* **in ~** *a squadron of planes flying in formation*

3 sth that has been formed

- ADJ. **cloud, geological, rock | military, political**

formidable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** *The task looks formidable.* **| remain | find sth** *Men found her formidable.*
- ADV. **really, truly, very** *a very formidable opponent* **| a bit, pretty, quite, rather, somewhat**

formula *noun*

1 group of signs/letters/numbers

- ADJ. **complex, complicated | simple | algebraic, chemical, mathematical, scientific**
- VERB + FORMULA **devise, work out** *A simple mathematical formula has been devised to allow you to calculate the interest due.* **| apply, use**
- PREP. **~ for** *Do you know the formula for finding the area of a circle?*

2 method of solving a problem

- ADJ. **good, magic, successful, winning | time-honoured, traditional | face-saving** *The government was forced to find a face-saving formula to cover its misjudgement.* **| peace** *No one has yet come up with a successful peace formula.* **| political**
- VERB + FORMULA **have** *No one has a magic formula for keeping youngsters away from crime.* **| come up with, devise, find, hit on, provide, work out** *We think we might have hit on a winning formula.*
- PREP. **~ for** *What is their formula for success?*

formulate *verb*

- ADV. **fully | carefully, properly** *His ideas are always very carefully formulated.* **| clearly, explicitly | consciously** *He claims that Marx never consciously formulated his own theoretical position.*
- VERB + FORMULATE **try to | help (to)**

fort *noun*

- ADJ. **hill | Iron Age, Roman, Saxon, etc.** *an Iron Age hill fort*
- VERB + FORT **attack, besiege | hold** *Government forces managed to hold the fort.*
- FORT + VERB **be/come under attack, be/come under siege** *The fort was under attack for three days.* **| fall** *The fort finally fell after a week of intense fighting.*
- PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *All was calm at the fort that night.*

forthcoming *adj.*

1 available

- VERBS **be** *Help was duly forthcoming.*
- ADV. **duly | readily | immediately**

2 willing to give information

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **unusually | not very**
- PREP. **about** *She wasn't very forthcoming about where she'd been.*

forthright *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **very | pretty | characteristically** *MacTavish was characteristically forthright in his reply.*
- PREP. **about** *She's always been very forthright about her preferences.*

fortified *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **heavily, strongly**
- PREP. **against** *The town was heavily fortified against attack.*

fortnight *noun*

- ADJ. **next | last, past, previous | whole**
- VERB + FORTNIGHT **spend** *We've spent the last fortnight in Spain.*
- FORTNIGHT + VERB **elapse, go by, pass** *A fortnight passed and we still hadn't heard from them.*
- PREP. **after a/the ~, during a/the ~, for a/the ~, in a/the ~** *We hope to leave in the next fortnight.* **over a/the ~, within a/the ~**

fortress *noun*

- ADJ. **great | formidable, impregnable, strong | grim**
- VERB + FORTRESS **attack, besiege, lay siege to | take** *Greek warriors took the fortress with little effort.* **| hold, occupy**
- FORTRESS + VERB **be/come under attack, be/come under siege | fall** *The fortress fell after a nine-day siege.*
- FORTRESS + NOUN **town**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *They took refuge in the fortress.*

fortunate *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem | consider sb, count yourself, think sb** *We consider ourselves extremely fortunate.*
- ADV. **extremely, particularly, really, very | comparatively, quite, rather | indeed** *He was indeed fortunate in his friends.*
- PREP. **for** *It was fortunate for us that the rain stopped.* **in** *We are fortunate in having quite a lot of land.*

fortune *noun*

1 luck

- ADJ. **good | ill**
- QUANT. **piece, stroke** *By a stroke of good fortune, Steven was still in his office.*
- VERB + FORTUNE **have | bring (sb)** *A horseshoe nailed to your door is supposed to bring good fortune.*
- FORTUNE + VERB **be on sb's side, favour sb** *For once, fortune was on our side: the weather improved in time for the match.* **smile on sb** *Fortune smiled on me that day* (= I had good fortune).
- PHRASES **as good/ill fortune would have it** *As good fortune would have it, a bus came along just when I needed it.* **a change in/of fortune** *All we can do is hope for a change in fortune.* **have the good fortune to do sth** *I had the good fortune to work with people I liked.*

2 **fortunes** what happens to sb/sth

- ADJ. **declining, flagging | changing, fluctuating, mixed** *a year of mixed fortunes for the company* **| economic, electoral**
- VERB + FORTUNES **revive** *The party still hopes to revive its flagging electoral fortunes.* **| follow** *fans who follow the fortunes of their chosen team*
- FORTUNES + VERB **change, fluctuate** *A company's fortunes can change overnight.* **| improve, rise | decline, fall** *as the country's fortunes rose and fell*
- PHRASES **a reversal of fortunes** *The company suffered a great reversal of fortunes when public taste changed.*

3 what is going to happen to sb in the future

- VERB + FORTUNE **read, tell** *They went to have their fortunes read.*
- FORTUNE + NOUN **teller, telling**

4 very large amount of money

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, immense, large, substantial, vast | small** (= quite large) *Rebuild-*

ing the house must have cost a small fortune. | **family, personal**

- VERB + FORTUNE **accumulate, acquire, amass, build (up), make, win** | **inherit** | **leave (sb)** *Her aunt died and left her a fortune.* | **lose, squander** *He lost his fortune in the stock market crash of 1929.* ◇ *squandering the family fortune* | **seek** *They went to seek their fortune abroad.* | **be worth** (*informal*) *Some of those old toys are worth a fortune now.* | **cost** (*informal*) | **pay, spend** (*both informal*) *She spends a fortune on clothes!*
- PREP. **~from** *He built his fortune from breeding horses.* **~in** *She made a fortune in the property boom.* **~on** *They sold their house at the right time and made a fortune on it.* **~out** *He has amassed a considerable fortune out of trading shares.*
- PHRASES **fame and fortune** *They went to America in search of fame and fortune.* **heir/heiress to a fortune** *He was sole heir to the family fortune.*

forum *noun*

1 way people can exchange ideas
- ADJ. **important, useful, valuable** | **public**
- VERB + FORUM **create, provide (sb with)** | **act as, be used as, serve as**
- PREP. **~for** *The conference provides a useful forum for the exchange of views and ideas.*

2 meeting at which people can exchange ideas
- ADJ. **open** *The film show was followed by an open forum on editing techniques.* | **international, national**
- VERB + FORUM **hold** | **attend, go to**
- FORUM + VERB **take place**
- PREP. **~on** *An international forum on economic development took place in Brussels.*

foster *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, deliberately** *The school has carefully fostered its progressive image.* | **energetically**
- VERB + FOSTER **help (to)** | **be designed to**

foul *noun*

- ADJ. **blatant, clear, deliberate, nasty**
- VERB + FOUL **commit** *He committed a second clear foul and was sent off.*
- PREP. **~on** *He was sent off for a blatant foul on Giggs.*

foul play *noun*

1 criminal activity
- VERB + FOUL PLAY **suspect** | **rule out** *The police have ruled out foul play in the case of his death.*

2 play that is against the rules
- ADJ. **deliberate, serious**
- VERB + FOUL PLAY **be guilty of** *He was clearly guilty of foul play and deserved to be sent off.*

foundation *noun*

1 organization that provides money for sth
- ADJ. **charitable, private**
- VERB + FOUNDATION **establish, set up** *a charitable foundation established in 1983*
- PREP. **~for** *a private foundation for sport and the arts*

2 foundations parts of a building below the ground
- ADJ. **deep** | **concrete**
- VERB + FOUNDATIONS **dig, lay** *digging trenches and laying concrete foundations* | **shake, undermine** *The thunder seemed to shake the very foundations of the building.* ◇ *They had dug too deep and undermined the foundations of the house.*
- FOUNDATION + NOUN **stone** *In 1853 Queen Victoria laid the foundation stone of the new palace.*

3 basis for sth
- ADJ. **excellent, firm, good, secure, solid, sound, strong** | **insecure, shaky, weak** | **ideological, intellectual, philosophical, political, theoretical** | **economic**
- VERB + FOUNDATION **build, lay, provide (sth with)** *This agreement laid a sound foundation for future cooperation between the two countries.* | **build on** *We now have a firm foundation to build on.* | **rest on** *The peace treaty rests on shaky foundations.* | **rock, shake, strike at, threaten, undermine** *an event which rocked the foundations of British politics*
- FOUNDATION + NOUN **course, year** *The Fine Arts degree starts with a foundation year.* | **subjects** *All students have to do the foundation subjects of maths and English.*
- PREP. **~for** *providing a solid foundation for this new democracy*
- PHRASES **rock/shake sth to its foundations** *The scandal rocked the legal establishment to its foundations.*

4 facts that show that sth is true
- VERB + FOUNDATION **have no** *malicious rumours which have no foundation*
- PREP. **without~** *Rumours of his resignation are entirely without foundation.*

founder *noun*

- ADJ. **original** | **joint** *a wife and husband who are joint founders of the company* | **company**
- FOUNDER + NOUN **member** *a founder member of the band*

fountain *noun*

- ADJ. **ornamental** | **drinking** *Children were queuing at the drinking fountain.*
- FOUNTAIN + VERB **play, splash** *A white marble fountain played in the middle of the square.*

fox *noun*

- ADJ. **urban** | **rural**
- VERB + FOX **hunt**
- FOX + VERB **bark** *I heard a fox bark in the dark.*
- FOX + NOUN **cub** | **hunt, hunting**

foyer *noun*

- ADJ. **entrance, reception** | **cinema, hospital, hotel, school, station, theatre** | **crowded, deserted**
- PREP. **across the~, in the~** *We arranged to meet up in the foyer of the Hyatt hotel.*

fraction *noun*

1 part/amount
- ADJ. **large, significant, sizeable, substantial** | **mere, small, tiny** *A mere fraction of available wind energy is currently utilized.*
- PREP. **~of** *Why not grow your own fruit at a fraction of the price?*
- PHRASES **just/only a fraction** *The average income is high, though many people earn just a fraction of that average.*

2 exact part of a number
- ADJ. **vulgar** | **decimal** | **improper** *11/8 is an improper fraction, equivalent to one and three-eighths.*
- VERB + FRACTION **express sth as** *Express 25% as a fraction.*

fracture *noun*

- ADJ. **fatigue, stress** *He suffered a stress fracture of the right foot.* | **hairline** | **compound, depressed, double, multiple, simple, spiral** | **hip, leg, skull, spinal, etc.**
- VERB + FRACTURE **suffer, sustain**

fragile *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | remain**
- ADV. **exceedingly, extremely, very | a little, rather | ecologically** *the ecologically fragile mountain forests*

fragrance *noun*

- ADJ. **exquisite, fresh, pleasant, sweet | delicate, faint, gentle, light, soft, subtle | floral**
- VERB + FRAGRANCE **have** *This perfume has a light, fresh fragrance.* | **smell**
- FRAGRANCE + VERB **fill sth** *The fragrance of lavender filled the room.* | **be reminiscent of sth** *Geranium oil has a sweet fragrance reminiscent of roses.*
- PHRASES **full of fragrance** *fruits full of exquisite fragrance and flavour*

fragrant *adj.*

- VERBS **be, smell | become**
- ADV. **extremely, very, wonderfully** *a garden full of wonderfully fragrant flowers* | **mildly, slightly, subtly**
- PREP. **with** *The air was fragrant with lavender.*

frail *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get, grow**
- ADV. **extremely, very | increasingly | rather | mentally, physically** *Many old people become mentally frail.*
- PHRASES **old and frail** *She looked old and frail.*

frailty *noun*

- ADJ. **increasing** *Despite increasing physical frailty, he continued to write stories.* | **human** *a figure of authority, but one all too prone to human frailties* | **mental, physical**

frame *noun*

1 of a door/picture/window
- ADJ. **door, window | photo, photograph, picture**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *pictures in gold frames*

3 shape of sb's body
- ADJ. **athletic, big, bony, large, lean, muscular, powerful, skinny, slender, slight, small, tall, wiry**
- VERB + FRAME **have** *She has quite a small frame.*
- PREP. **with a … ~** *a man with a lean, athletic frame*

framework *noun*

- ADJ. **basic, broad, general | wider** *The needs of individual schools need to be considered in a wider framework.* | **existing | flexible | comprehensive | coherent | analytical, conceptual, theoretical | legal, political | administrative, management, policy | economic, financial | chronological, historical** *Carbon dating provides the archaeologist with a basic chronological framework.*
- VERB + FRAMEWORK **establish, have, set** *They established a basic framework of ground rules for discussions.* | **offer (sb), provide (sb with)**
- PREP. **outside a/the ~** *Negotiations were also conducted outside the framework of the treaty talks proper.* **within a/the ~** *The committee will work within the framework of certain broad objectives.* | **~ for** *a legal framework for the regulation of public access to databases*

franchise *noun*

1 right to vote in elections
- ADJ. **democratic | universal** *the fight for a universal franchise* | **limited, restricted | parliamentary**
- VERB + FRANCHISE **qualify for** *It was decided that all men in the armed forces should qualify for the franchise.* | **exercise** *He had to exercise the franchise on behalf of other council members.* | **enlarge, extend, widen** *After the Second World War the franchise was extended to all adults over eighteen.* | **restrict**

2 permission to sell a company's goods/services
- ADJ. **catering, fast food, rail, television, etc.**
- VERB + FRANCHISE **have, hold** *the company that holds the rail franchise for the south-east of the country* | **acquire, buy, win** *The company has just won a television franchise.* | **award (sb), give sb, grant sb** *The franchise was awarded to a French company.* | **auction, sell** *TV franchises will be auctioned to the highest bidder.* | **retain | lose** *The ITV licensee lost its franchise to Carlton TV.*
- FRANCHISE + NOUN **system | business, company, operation | holder | agreement | auction, bid | fee**
- PREP. **~ for** *The diving school has acquired a franchise for scuba equipment.*
- PHRASES **on a franchise basis** *Catering in the schools is run on a franchise basis.*

frank *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, remarkably, very | absolutely, perfectly, quite** *Let me be perfectly frank with you.* | **fairly | delightfully, disarmingly, refreshingly** *She surveyed Sophie from top to toe in a disarmingly frank way.* | **brutally** *She was brutally frank in her assessment of our chances.* | **surprisingly**
- PREP. **about** *Macmillan was quite frank about his concerns.* **with** *To be frank with you, I don't really think you've got a chance.*
- PHRASES **full and frank** *a full and frank exchange of views*

frantic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become, get, go | drive sb** *The children have been driving me frantic all day!*
- ADV. **really | absolutely, quite** *He was quite frantic by the time we got home.* | **increasingly | almost**
- PREP. **with** *We were starting to get frantic with worry.*

fraud *noun*

- ADJ. **serious | massive | complex, sophisticated | attempted | alleged | computer** *A bank lost several million pounds through a sophisticated computer fraud.* | **electoral, financial, insurance, tax, etc.**
- FRAUD + NOUN **squad** *detectives from the fraud squad*

⇨ Note at CRIME (for verbs)

freak *noun*

1 strange/unusual event
- FREAK + NOUN **accident, result, storm, wave** *A driver was killed in a freak accident when a cow fell from a bridge.* ◇ *The manager described the 8–0 defeat as a freak result.*
- PREP. **~ of** *This was no more than a freak of history.*
- PHRASES **by some freak of sth** *By some freak of fate, she won an enormous sum of money.*

2 person with a very strong interest in sth
- ADJ. **computer, fitness, health, speed** *For the real speed freak, there is a 2-litre, fuel-injection version of the car.* | **control** *Her dad seems to be a bit of a control freak, always keeping a close watch on what anybody's doing.*
- PHRASES **a bit of a freak**

3 sb who is considered to be strange
- VERB + FREAK **feel | regard sb as** *Other students regarded him as a freak.*
- PHRASES **a bit of a freak** *I felt a bit of a freak in my strange clothes.*

freckle *noun*

- ADJ. **brown, dark, golden, light, pale**

• VERB + FRECKLE **be covered with, have**
• PHRASES **a crop/sprinkling of freckles** *She had wonderful clear skin with an attractive sprinkling of freckles.*

free *verb*

• VERB + FREE **struggle to, try to** *She struggled to free herself from his grip.* | **manage to**
• PREP. **from** *They succeeded in freeing their friends from prison.* **of** *He had finally been freed of his responsibilities.*
• PHRASES **be freed on bail** *The court ruled that he should be freed on bail of $50 000.*

free *adj., adv.*

1 not controlled by rules
• VERBS **be, feel, seem** | **become** | **remain** | **leave sb** *The government wants to leave companies free to make their own decisions.*
• ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally** *The students are entirely free to choose their own courses.* | **fairly, reasonably, relatively**
• PREP. **from** *The organization wants to remain free from government control.*

2 not in prison; not restricted/trapped
• VERBS **be, roam** *animals roaming free across the plains* | **break, get, pull, walk** *The ship broke free from its moorings.* ◇ *They tied him up but he managed to get free.* ◇ *She managed to pull free of her attacker.* ◇ *She walked free from jail.* | **remain** | **cut sb/sth, let sb/sth, pull sb/sth, set sb/sth** *He was trapped by his leg, but his rescuers cut him free.* ◇ *They let their prisoner free.* ◇ *The birds were set free.*
• ADV. **completely, entirely, totally**

3 costing nothing
• VERBS **be, come** *This full-colour poster comes free with the magazine.*
• ADV. **absolutely, completely, entirely, totally**
• PHRASES **for free** *We might be able to get some plants for free.* **free of charge** *We will send you our booklet free of charge.*

4 **free from/of sth** without sth
• VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain, stay** | **keep sth** *We've managed to keep the garden free of weeds this year.*
• ADV. **completely, entirely, totally** *At last he's totally free from pain.* | **relatively**

5 not being used
• VERBS **be, look, seem** | **become** | **keep sth** *The hospital needs to keep some beds free for emergencies.*
• ADV. **completely**

6 not busy
• VERBS **be** *Are you free this afternoon?* | **keep sth** *We try and keep Sundays free.*
• ADV. **completely, entirely, totally** | **fairly, pretty, reasonably**

freedom *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, full, maximum, perfect, total** | **considerable, great** *The new syllabus allows students greater freedom of choice.* | **comparative, relative** | **basic, fundamental** *Living without war is a fundamental freedom.* | **individual, personal** *Individual freedom should be balanced against the rights of the community.* | **new-found** *When she lost her job, she at first relished her new-found freedom.* | **academic, artistic, creative, economic, intellectual, political, press, religious, sexual** *Without academic freedom, we cannot do any research.*
• QUANT. **measure** *Teachers can exercise a measure of freedom in their choice of materials.*
• VERB + FREEDOM **enjoy, have** *Publishers here enjoy comparative freedom to publish what they want.* | **enjoy, relish** *I was enjoying the freedom of not having to go to work.* | **exercise** | **achieve, gain, obtain, secure, win** *The women have won many new freedoms for themselves.* | **maintain, retain** | **give up, lose, surrender** *As Mike saw it, marriage would mean giving up his freedom.* | **cost sb** *His inability to resist temptation would eventually cost him his freedom.* | **allow sb, give sb, permit sb** | **curtail, inhibit, reduce, restrict, threaten** *I don't want to curtail my daughter's freedom.* ◇ *Our freedom was threatened by press censorship.*
• PREP. **~ from** *freedom from fear and pain* **~ in** *Branch managers have considerable freedom in running their offices.* **~ of** *The Official Secrets Act was amended to allow greater freedom of information.*
• PHRASES **freedom of choice, freedom of expression/speech, freedom of movement, freedom of the press**

freelance *adj., adv.*

• VERBS **be, work** *He's been freelance for several years.* ◇ *She works freelance from home.* | **go, turn** *She decided to give in her notice and go freelance.* | **remain, stay**
• PHRASES **on a freelance basis** *She continued to work for the company on a freelance basis.*

freeze *noun*

1 period of weather with a temperature below 0°
• ADJ. **big** *The weather report advised us to prepare for a big freeze.*

2 putting a particular level on sth
• ADJ. **immediate** | **complete, total** *a total freeze on gas emissions* | **virtual** | **pay, price, wage**
• VERB + FREEZE **bring in, impose** *The government has imposed a price freeze on petrol.* | **announce, declare** | **lift** *It's too expensive to lift the freeze on pay.*
• PREP. **~ on** *a freeze on bus fares*

freeze *verb*

1 become ice/extremely cold
• ADV. **solid** *The pond had frozen solid.* | **over, up** *The lake has frozen over.* ◇ *The pipes have frozen up.*
• PHRASES **freeze to death** *Hundreds of homeless people could freeze to death this winter.*

2 preserve food
• ADV. **well** *Many vegetables freeze very well.*

3 stop moving
• ADV. **suddenly** | **for a moment/second, momentarily** *His smile froze for a moment.*
• VERB + FREEZE **seem to** *Suddenly, Ronny seemed to freeze.*
• PREP. **in/with** *She froze with horror when she saw the body.* **into** *Maggie's face had frozen into a cold mask.*
• PHRASES **freeze to the spot** *He was so surprised he froze to the spot.*

4 wages/prices
• ADV. **effectively** *Wages were effectively frozen for six months.*
• PREP. **at** *Prices have been frozen at this level for over a year now.*

freezer *noun*

• ADJ. **domestic** | **fridge** | **chest** | **deep**
• VERB + FREEZER **fill, stock** | **defrost**
• FREEZER + NOUN **cabinet, compartment** | **bag, container** | **centre** *They bought all their frozen food from the same freezer centre.* | **contents** *Your freezer contents can be insured against loss.*

freezing *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look** *That water looks freezing.*

- ADV. **bloody** (*taboo*) | **absolutely** *It's absolutely freezing out there!*
- PHRASES **freezing cold** *It was a freezing cold day.*

freezing point *noun*

- VERB + FREEZING POINT **get to, reach**
- PREP. **above ~** *In the Antarctic, the temperature rarely rises above freezing point.* **at ~** *the changes that take place at freezing point* **below ~** *The temperature dropped below freezing point this afternoon.*

freight *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy | air, rail, road**
- VERB + FREIGHT **carry, handle, haul, move, transfer, transport** *All vehicles carrying freight need a special licence.* ◇ *an agent handling freight and passengers* ◇ *The freight was transferred to a train at Rotterdam.*
- FREIGHT + NOUN **car, locomotive, train, transport, wagon** *The train's freight wagons can carry a fully-laden lorry.* | **traffic | depot, terminal, yard | carrier, company | business, industry | service | charges, costs**

French *noun*

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

frenzy *noun*

- ADJ. **erotic | feeding** *The smell of blood sent the sharks into a feeding frenzy.*
- VERB + FRENZY **drive sb/sth into, send sb/sth into, throw sb/sth into, whip sb/sth (up) into, work sb/sth into** *He was so angry that he worked himself into a frenzy.*
- PREP. **in a/your ~** *She tore the letter open in a frenzy.*
- PHRASES **a frenzy of activity, in a frenzy of excitement/rage/violence**

frequency *noun*

1 rate at which sth happens

- ADJ. **great | increased, increasing | relative** *The relative frequency of this illness in the area is of concern to all doctors.* | **alarming** *Bullets bounced off the rock with alarming frequency.*
- VERB + FREQUENCY **decrease in, increase in** *Crime increases in frequency in less settled neighbourhoods.* | **decrease, increase, reduce** *The drug can reduce the frequency and severity of attacks.*
- PREP. **with ~** *Accidents of this sort are happening with increasing frequency.*

2 of a wave

- ADJ. **high, low | ultrasonic | microwave, radio, television, vibration, wave | signal**
- FREQUENCY + NOUN **range | band**

frequent *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become** *The attacks have become increasingly frequent.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | increasingly | fairly, quite, relatively** *She was a fairly frequent visitor to the house.*
- PREP. **among** *Coughs and colds are frequent among young children.*
- PHRASES **at frequent intervals** *She phoned home at frequent intervals.*

fresh *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, smell, taste | stay** *Mushrooms don't stay fresh for long.* | **eat sth, have sth** *It's best to eat them fresh.* | **keep sth** *Put it in the fridge to keep it fresh.*
- ADV. **really, very | quite**
- PHRASES **lovely/nice (and) fresh** *There's some cold beef and a nice fresh loaf.*

friction *noun*

1 disagreement between people/groups

- ADJ. **considerable, serious | increasing | constant** *I'm exhausted from the constant friction between my boss and my colleagues.*
- VERB + FRICTION **cause, create, generate, lead to, produce** *His decision led to considerable friction in his family.* | **prevent**
- PREP. **~ between** *friction between neighbours* **~ with** *Her requests for time off created friction with her boss.*
- PHRASES **a cause/source of friction**

2 rubbing of one thing against another

- VERB + FRICTION **cause, generate, produce** *Rubbing the stones together produces friction.* | **reduce**

Friday *noun*

⇨ Note at DAY

fridge *noun*

- ADJ. **domestic**
- VERB + FRIDGE **raid** *The kids tend to raid the fridge when they get home from school.* | **fill, stock** *The fridge was stocked with food and drink.* | **defrost**
- FRIDGE + NOUN **freezer | door**

friend *noun*

- ADJ. **best, bosom, close, dear, good, great, intimate, real, special** *Her best friend at school was called Anna.* ◇ *I'm inviting only my closest friends to the party.* | **faithful, loyal, true | lifelong, long-standing, old** *It was so relaxing to be among old friends.* | **female, male, woman** *He was last seen leaving a restaurant with a female friend.* | **fair-weather** *People he had trusted turned out to be only fair-weather friends* (= stopped being his friends when he was in trouble). | **mutual** *We met each other through a mutual friend.* | **family, personal | childhood, school** *Do you keep in touch with any school friends?*
- VERB + FRIEND **become** *They became friends after meeting on holiday.* | **remain, stay** *We stayed friends even after we grew up and left home.* | **find, make** *He finds it difficult to make friends.* ◇ *She's made friends with the little girl who lives next door.* | **win** *He won't win any friends if he carries on talking like that.* | **have** *She doesn't have many good friends.*
- PHRASES **a circle of friends** *He introduced me to his circle of friends.* **a friend of mine, yours, etc.** *I was given this necklace by a good friend of mine.*

friendless *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel | leave sb** *With the departure of his remaining colleague he was left friendless.*
- ADV. **totally, utterly | virtually**

friendly *adj.*

1 behaving in a kind/pleasant way

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become**
- ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, genuinely, really, very** *Frank was a genuinely friendly sort.* | **perfectly** *He seemed detached, almost bored, but perfectly friendly.* | **almost** *For once he seemed almost friendly.* | **quite, reasonably | not exactly, not particularly** *Her manner was not exactly friendly* | **naturally**
- PREP. **to, towards** *He was always friendly towards me.*

2 being friends

- VERBS **be, seem | become, get | remain**
- ADV. **very | pretty, quite** *They were quite friendly when they worked together.*
- PREP. **with** *She's very friendly with Maureen.*
- PHRASES **be on friendly terms (with sb)** *We have managed to remain on friendly terms.*

3 easy to use/helpful/not harmful

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **environmentally** *environmentally friendly cleaning products*
- PHRASES **child-/family-friendly** *Employers are being encouraged to adopt family-friendly measures like flexible hours.* **ozone-friendly, user-friendly**

friendship *noun*

- ADJ. **beautiful, close, intimate, deep, firm, great, warm** *Their quarrel meant the end of a beautiful friendship.* ◇ *They formed a close friendship at university.* | **innocent** *Their affair had started out as an innocent friendship.* | **eternal, lasting, lifelong, long, long-standing** *They made vows of eternal friendship to each other.* ◇ *It was a period of her life when she made some lifelong friendships.*
- VERB + FRIENDSHIP **develop, establish, form, make, start up, strike up** *He finds it difficult to make lasting friendships.* ◇ *Jo struck up a friendship with a girl on her course.* | **cement** *We cemented our friendship with a meal and a few drinks.* | **cultivate** *He's keen on cultivating his friendship with the Edwards family.* | **promote** *The aim of the culture festival is to promote friendship between the two countries.* | **renew** *It will be a pleasure to renew our friendship.* | **destroy, spoil, wreck** *How can you let such a silly incident wreck your friendship?* | **betray** *He betrayed our friendship by revealing my secret to his cousin.*
- FRIENDSHIP + VERB **develop** *Friendships need time to develop.*
- PREP. **~ between** *He was jealous of the friendship between his wife and daughters.* **~ with** *Her mother did not approve of her friendship with Ahmed.*
- PHRASES **bonds/ties of friendship** *The ties of friendship between us will never be broken.* **the hand of friendship** *The president extended the hand of friendship towards the country's former enemy.* **a gesture of friendship** *In a gesture of friendship, the president invited his former enemies to a reception.* **an offer of friendship** *She offended them by turning down their offer of friendship.* **a spirit of friendship** *We hope the spirit of friendship and cooperation between our countries will remain strong.* **a token of your friendship** *Please accept this gift as a token of our friendship.*

fright *noun*

1 fear

- VERB + FRIGHT **take** | **be shaking/trembling with** | **die of** (*informal*) *He almost died of fright when the fish jumped out of the water.*
- PREP. **in ~** *She cried out in fright.* **with ~** *They were paralysed with fright.* | **~ at** *The birds took fright at the sight of the cat and flew off.*

2 sudden feeling of fear

- ADJ. **awful, bad, dreadful, nasty, terrible**
- VERB + FRIGHT **get, have** *Emma got such a fright that she dropped the tray.* ◇ *I had a terrible fright this morning when I saw you there.* | **give sb**
- PHRASES **a bit of a fright, the fright of your life** *You gave me the fright of my life, jumping out like that!* **quite a fright**

frighten *verb*

- ADV. **really** *The prospect of war really frightens me.* | **quite** | **almost** | **easily** *a man who doesn't frighten easily* (= become frightened easily)
- VERB + FRIGHTEN **want to** | **not mean to** *I didn't mean to frighten you.* | **try to**
- PHRASES **frighten sb out of their wits, frighten sb to death, frighten the life out of sb** (*all informal*) *Don't creep around like that! You frightened the life out of me!*

frightened *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** *I got quite frightened when he lost his temper.* | **remain**
- ADV. **badly, desperately, extremely, genuinely, really, terribly, very** | **thoroughly** | **almost** | **a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather** | **suddenly** | **physically** *I felt frightened, physically frightened.*
- PREP. **about** *I was nervous and frightened about the future.* **at** *Simon was badly frightened at the result of his action.* **by** *Most of us are frightened by our emotions.* **of** *I'm rather frightened of dogs.*
- PHRASES **frightened out of your wits, frightened to death** (*both informal*) *She was frightened to death when she saw her small daughter on the edge of the cliff.*

frightening *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** *The situation was getting quite frightening.* | **make sth** *What can we do to make the experience less frightening?* | **find sth** *He found the responsibility rather frightening.*
- ADV. **extremely, genuinely, positively, really, truly, very** | **almost** | **a bit, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, rather**
- PREP. **for** *This is extremely frightening for elderly people.* **to** *It was all very frightening to a small boy.*

fringe *noun*

1 hair

- ADJ. **heavy, thick** | **light, wispy**
- VERB + FRINGE **grow** | **cut, trim** *My fringe needs trimming.* | **brush, push** *She kept brushing her fringe off her forehead.*
- PREP. **from beneath/under your ~** *She stared at us from beneath her fringe.* **in a ~** *She has her hair pulled forward in a fringe.*

2 outer edge of a place/group/society, etc.

- ADJ. **outer** | **marginal** | **eastern, western, etc.** | **coastal, urban** | **delinquent, lunatic** *the delinquent fringe of the Nationalist Party*
- VERB + FRINGE **keep to, remain on, stand on** *He has always remained on the fringes of mainstream politics.*
- FRINGE + NOUN **area** | **group** | **meeting** | **theatre, venue** *He moved from fringe theatre to mainstream when he was chosen to play a leading role on Broadway.*
- PREP. **along the ~** *the forests along the eastern fringe of the Andes* **around the ~** *new housing around the urban fringe* **at the ~** *They pitched their tents at the fringe of the open fields.* **beyond the ~** *Beyond this marginal fringe no agriculture is possible.* **on the ~(s)** *These people live on the fringes of society.*

frog *noun*

- FROG + VERB **hop, jump, leap, plop into sth** *The frog plopped into the pond.* | **croak**
- FROG + NOUN **spawn** (also **frogspawn**)

front *noun*

1 line/area where fighting takes place in a war

- ADJ. **eastern, western, etc.** *Thousands were killed on the eastern front.*
- VERB + FRONT **send sb to** *Even young teenagers were sent to the front.*
- PREP. **at the ~** *A new battalion arrived at the front.* **on the ~** *They had to fight on two fronts.*

2 way of behaving that hides your true feelings

- ADJ. **bold, brave**
- VERB + FRONT **put on** *She put on a brave front, but I knew how miserable she was.*
- PREP. **~ for** *Her aggressive behaviour is just a front for her shyness.*
- PHRASES **present a united front** *However much the*

directors disagree with each other, they always present a united front to the world.

frontier *noun*

1 border between countries

- ADJ. **common** *Neither country would guarantee the integrity of their common frontier.* | **eastern, northern, etc.** *There were very few border controls on the south-western frontier.* | **Franco-Spanish, Hispano-French, Spanish-French, French, etc.**
- VERB + FRONTIER **cross** *The army crossed the frontier in the middle of the night.* | **control, defend, guard** *The rebels control the frontier and the surrounding area.*
- FRONTIER + NOUN **controls, post** | **guard** | **area, province, region, town, zone** | **line**
- PREP. **across the ~** *Many people travelling across the frontier were illegal immigrants.* **along the ~** *an army grouping along the frontier* **at the ~** *There was an army checkpoint at the frontier.* **on the ~** *people living on the German frontier* **over the ~** *They were forced to retreat back over the frontier.* | **~ between** *the frontier between India and Pakistan* **~ with** *France's frontier with Germany*

2 border between what we know and do not know

- ADJ. **final, new**
- VERB + FRONTIER **explore** *Space is the final frontier for us to explore.* | **advance, push back** *The scientists' work will push back the frontiers of physics.*

frost *noun*

1 weather condition

- ADJ. **bitter, great, hard, heavy, severe, sharp** | **light** | **early, first, late** *The young plants all died in the late frost.* | **autumn, spring, winter** | **ground** *a heavy ground frost* | **night**
- QUANT. **touch** *There was just a touch of frost in the air.* | **degree** *There were ten degrees of frost last night.*
- FROST + VERB **set in** *The winter frosts have set in up north.* | **nip at sth** *The sharp frost nipped at our noses.*

2 very thin layer of little pieces of ice

- ADJ. **white**
- VERB + FROST **be covered in/with** *The windows were covered in frost.*
- VERB + FROST **melt** *The car was wet with melting frost.*

frosty *adj.*

1 cold enough for frost

- VERBS **be, look** | **become, get, turn** *when the weather turns frosty* | **remain, stay**
- ADV. **very**
- PHRASES **cold and frosty** *The day dawned cold and frosty.*

2 unfriendly

- VERBS **be, look, seem** | **become, turn** *He cool green eyes became positively frosty.* | **remain**
- ADV. **decidedly, distinctly, positively, very** *The atmosphere in the room was decidedly frosty.* | **pretty**

frown *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, heavy** | **faint, quick, slight, small, tiny** | **puzzled, thoughtful, worried** | **angry, black, fierce, grim, warning** | **deepening**
- VERB + FROWN **give** *The boy gave a small frown.* | **wear** *She wore a worried frown.* | **crease into, pucker into, wrinkle in** *Her face creased into a frown.* | **be drawn/draw together in** *His brows drew together in a frown.*
- FROWN + VERB **deepen, grow darker/deeper** *Her frown grew deeper at the memory.* | **crease sth** *Her frown creased her forehead.* | **marr sth** *A frown marred his handsome features.* | **cross sth, touch sth** *A frown crossed her brow.*
- FROWN + NOUN **line**
- PREP. **with a ~** | **~ of** *a frown of concentration/disapproval/puzzlement*
- PHRASES **a frown in your eyes** *He looked at her with a puzzled frown in his eyes.* **a frown on your face**

frown *verb*

- ADV. **darkly, deeply, heavily, sharply** | **slightly** | **impatiently** | **thoughtfully** *She studied the letter, frowning thoughtfully.*
- PREP. **at** *She turned and frowned at him.* **in** *He looked at the coded message, frowning in concentration.* **with** *He frowned with annoyance.*

fruit *noun*

1 part of a plant

- ADJ. **fresh** | **ripe, unripe** | **rotten** | **candied, crystallized, dried** | **canned, tinned** | **exotic, tropical** | **citrus** *citrus fruits such as limes and lemons*
- QUANT. **piece** *Finish the meal with a piece of fresh fruit.*
- VERB + FRUIT **eat, have** | **bear** *The crab apple bears a small, bitter fruit.* | **pick** | **core, peel, prepare**
- FRUIT + NOUN **tree** | **juice, salad**

2 **the fruits** good result/reward

- VERB + FRUITS **enjoy** *Their work left them enough time to enjoy the fruits of their success.* | **reap** *He was now reaping the fruits of all his hard work.*
- PHRASES **the first fruits of sth** *the first fruits of the government's health campaign*

⇨ Special page on page 332.

fruitful *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove**
- ADV. **enormously, extremely, remarkably, very** | **quite, reasonably** | **potentially**
- PREP. **in** *This research has been enormously fruitful in helping our understanding of the disease.*

fruition *noun*

- ADJ. **full**
- VERB + FRUITION **come to, reach** *Their efforts came to fruition many years later.* | **bring sth to** *It was left to her successor to bring the plan to its full fruition.*

fruitless *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem** | **render sth** *Dunbar's departure rendered the whole operation quite fruitless.*
- ADV. **quite, utterly** | **largely** | **apparently**

frustrated *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** *starting to get frustrated* | **leave sb, make sb** *This failure leaves the child depressed and frustrated.*
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, really, very** | **completely, totally** | **increasingly** | **a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly** *She sounded rather frustrated to me.* | **sexually**
- PREP. **at** *Both sides in the dispute appeared very frustrated at the lack of progress.* **by** *We were frustrated by the long delays.* **with** *Sometimes he gets really frustrated with his violin playing.*

frustrating *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove** | **become, get** | **make sth** | **find sth** *I found the delays intensely frustrating.*
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, incredibly, intensely, particularly, really, terribly, very** | **increasingly** | **a bit,**

FRUIT

growing

Pineapples ***grow*** *in tropical climates.*

We have been ***growing*** *redcurrants for many years.*

Blackberries ***ripen*** *in the autumn.*

We haven't ***had*** *any pears yet this year.*

This tree ***produces*** *very sweet plums.*

She ***picked*** *a ripe apricot and started to eat it.*

Growers are expecting a bumper apple ***harvest*** *this year.*

a bumper apple ***crop/crop of*** *apples*

He's a peach ***grower****.*

a bumper crop of apples

plants

- apple, cherry, lemon, lime, mango, mulberry, olive, orange, peach, pear, plum **trees**
- blackcurrant, bramble, gooseberry **bushes**
- banana, strawberry **plants**
- grape **vines**
- raspberry **canes**

seeds

- apple, orange **pips**
- cherry, peach, plum **stones**
- melon **seeds**
- apple **cores**

flowers

- apple, cherry, lemon, orange **blossom**
- banana, lemon, melon **flowers**

plantations

- apple, cherry **orchards**
- citrus, lemon, olive, orange **groves**
- banana **plantations**

skin

- citrus, grapefruit, lemon, orange **peel**
- banana **skin**

quite, rather, slightly | ultimately *It was a demeaning and ultimately frustrating experience.*
• PREP. **for** *It was rather frustrating for all of us.*

frustration *noun*

• ADJ. **considerable, great | sheer** *I shouted at him in sheer frustration.* **| angry, bitter | pent-up | sexual**
• VERB + FRUSTRATION **experience, feel, seethe with** *He was still seething with angry frustration.* **| express, show, take out, vent** *He took his pent-up frustration out on his family.* **| hide | cause, lead to** *These petty rules can lead to frustration and anger.*
• PREP. **in ~** *He clenched his fists in frustration.* **out of ~** *crying out of bitter frustration* **through ~** *Several people resigned through frustration.* **with ~** *weeping with frustration* **| ~ at** *Many have expressed frustration at the delays.* **~ over** *showing frustration over the lack of progress* **~ with** *their frustration with bureaucracy*

- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of frustration, tears of frustration** *There were tears of frustration in her eyes.*

fry *verb*

- ADV. **gently, lightly**
- PREP. **in** *Fry the vegetables gently in oil.*

fuel *noun*

- ADJ. **clean, smokeless, unleaded | fossil, nuclear, solid | domestic, household | aviation | spent** *The plant reprocesses spent fuel from nuclear power stations.*
- VERB + FUEL **burn, run on, use** *power stations which burn fossil fuels ◇ What sort of fuel does the car run on?* | **burn sth as, use sth as** *The power plant burns used vehicle tyres as fuel.* | **save, waste | process, reprocess**
- FUEL + NOUN **bill, costs, prices | consumption** *a car with high fuel consumption* | **economy, efficiency** *The engine gives good fuel economy.* | **pump, tank**

fugitive *noun*

- ADJ. **hunted, wanted** *one of the most wanted fugitives sought by the Italian police*
- PREP. **~ from** *a sanctuary where fugitives from justice could shelter*

fulfil *verb*

- ADV. **amply, really** *He amply fulfilled the weight of expectation that they had placed on him.* | **completely | not quite** *Turkey is a market that has never quite fulfilled its potential.* | **adequately | properly | effectively | successfully | admirably** *The building is still fulfilling its original purpose admirably.* | **finally, ultimately**
- VERB + FULFIL **be able/unable to, can/could** *Alan was finally able to fulfil his promise to Sarah.* | **must** *Students must fulfil the following entry criteria.* | **seek to, try to | fail to**

fulfilment *noun*

1 doing sth to the required standard
- ADJ. **proper** *the proper fulfilment of their duties*

2 feeling of satisfaction
- ADJ. **great** *She needed greater fulfilment in her job.* | **complete, perfect | partial | personal** *her search for personal fulfilment* | **intellectual, physical, sexual | wish** *Most computer games provide some kind of wish fulfilment.*
- VERB + FULFILMENT **derive, find, gain, obtain | provide (sb with)**
- PREP. **~ from** *He derives a lot of fulfilment from his charity work.* **~ in** *I can't find fulfilment in doing housework.*
- PHRASES **a desire/need for fulfilment, a sense of fulfilment** *They gain a sense of fulfilment from their work.*

full *adj.*

1 holding/containing as much as it will hold
- VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get** *The garage has got full of junk again.* | **leave sth** *He left the bath full of water.*
- ADV. **absolutely, completely** *The kitchen was absolutely full of flies!* | **almost, nearly, virtually** *The reservoirs are all virtually full.* | **half**
- PREP. **of** *The bottle was half full of mineral water.*

2 containing a lot of sth
- VERBS **be, look, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, pretty, quite** *Her wine glass was still quite full.*

3 having had enough to eat or drink
- VERBS **be, feel**
- ADV. **absolutely | rather**
- PHRASES **full up** *I'm full up. I can't eat another thing.*

fume *verb*

- ADV. **inwardly, quietly**
- PREP. **about/over** *She was still quietly fuming about Peter's remarks.* **at** *We were all fuming at the delay.*
- PHRASES **be left fuming** *Motorists were left fuming as police closed the motorway for six hours.* **sit/stand (there) fuming** *He sat fuming over what he had just learnt.*

fumes *noun*

- ADJ. **acrid, choking, dangerous, noxious, poisonous, toxic | diesel, exhaust, petrol, traffic | cooking | petrol, solvent | carbon monoxide, sulphurous, etc.**
- QUANT. **cloud** *Clouds of toxic fumes escaped from the chemical plant.*
- VERB + FUMES **give off, produce** *The fire gave off choking fumes. ◇ an industrial process which produces toxic fumes* | **breathe (in), inhale**
- FUMES + VERB **kill sb, overcome sb** *A firefighter was overcome by fumes at a blaze in a plastics factory.* | **escape** *Sometimes exhaust fumes escape into the vehicle.*

fun *noun*

- ADJ. **enormous, excellent, good, great, terrific, tremendous, wonderful | harmless, innocent** *The boys' game started as harmless fun but ended in tragedy.*
- VERB + FUN **have** *We had a lot of fun at Mick's party.* | **spoil** *We won't let a bit of rain spoil our fun.*
- FUN + NOUN **day** *She organized an annual fun day for local children.*
- PREP. **for ~** *I write for fun, not because I expect to make money.* **in ~** *She only said that in fun—please don't take it seriously!*
- PHRASES **be no fun** *It's no fun getting up at 4 a.m. on a cold, rainy morning.* **a bit of fun** *I was only having a bit of fun.* **just for fun, just for the fun of it** *They took up motor racing just for the fun of it, rather than to win anything.* **a sense of fun** *You have to have a sense of fun to be a good teacher.*

function *noun*

1 purpose/special duty of sb/sth
- ADJ. **crucial, essential, important, useful, valuable, vital | chief, main, major, primary, prime | dual** *The committee has a dual function, both advisory and regulatory.* | **bodily, brain, liver, mental, etc.** *Fortunately, his head injuries left his bodily functions unimpaired.*
- VERB + FUNCTION **have | carry out, fulfil, perform, serve** *All members carry out their own particular functions. ◇ The club serves a useful function as a meeting place.*

2 important social event
- ADJ. **charity, official, social** *The princess attended a charity function in aid of cancer research.*
- VERB + FUNCTION **hold | attend, go to**
- FUNCTION + NOUN **room** *The wedding reception will be held in the Swan Hotel's function room.*

function *verb*

- ADV. **effectively, efficiently, smoothly, successfully, well | perfectly | correctly, normally, properly** *All the instruments were functioning normally.* | **adequately, satisfactorily** *Problems arise when the body's immune system is not functioning adequately.* | **independently** *Can we devise a system in which judges function independently of party poltics?* | **actually** *This model does not describe accurately the way a market economy actually functions.* | **still** *The bombs continued to fall, but somehow the city still functioned.*
- VERB + FUNCTION **be able/unable to, can/could** *When nutrients are in short supply the body cannot function properly.* | **begin to | continue to | cease to**

• PHRASES **fully functioning** *The group has now become a fully functioning political organization.*

fund *noun*

1 sum of money collected for a particular purpose

• ADJ. **large | appeal, charitable, charity** *The newspaper launched an appeal fund for victims of the disaster.* | **benevolent, campaign, investment, memorial, pension, prize, social, trust** *a benevolent fund for retired actors*

• VERB + FUND **create, establish, launch, set up, start** *They set up an investment fund to provide money for their retirement.* | **administer, manage | draw on** *They don't want to draw on the fund unless they have to.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *There is currently over £200 000 in the fund.* **into a/the ~** *The money received is paid directly into a pension fund.*

• FUND + NOUN **holder, manager**

2 funds money that is available and can be spent

• ADJ. **sufficient | insufficient | limited** *There are only limited funds available.* | **unlimited | surplus | available | government, private, public**

• VERB + FUNDS **have** *We have insufficient funds to pay for the building work.* | **be out of, be short of** *We are short of funds at the moment, so we are not going on holiday.* | **appeal for** *The school is appealing for funds to invest in new equipment.* | **borrow, boost, build up, collect, generate, get, obtain, raise, receive, secure | allocate, lend, make available, provide, release** *Funds will be made available to ensure the provision of hospital services.* | **channel, direct, use** *The government is to channel more funds into local development schemes.*

• FUND + NOUN **raiser** (also **fund-raiser**), **raising** (also **fund-raising**)

• PREP. **~ for** *a charity event to raise funds for local schools* **~ from** *Funds from the event will support the work of the hospice.*

• PHRASES **access to funds** *The current account offers savers instant access to funds.* **a flow of funds** *the flow of funds between various economic sectors* **a lack/shortage of funds** *The project was hampered by lack of funds.*

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

fund *verb*

• ADV. **largely, mainly | entirely** *The venture is funded entirely by its board of directors.* | **partially, partly | generously, properly, well | fully** *a new, fully funded training scheme* | **adequately | inadequately, poorly | centrally, directly** *The school opted out of local authority control and is funded directly by the government.* | **publicly | externally, independently, privately | jointly** *a scheme jointly funded by central and local government*

• VERB + FUND **be used to, help (to)** *This money will help to fund administration costs.* | **agree to | refuse to**

fundamental *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem | remain | consider sth, regard sth as** *We consider these freedoms fundamental to democracy.*

• ADV. **truly, very | absolutely, quite** *This principle is clear and absolutely fundamental.* | **fairly, rather**

• PREP. **to** *Improved funding is fundamental to the success of the project.*

fundamentals *noun*

• ADJ. **basic | very** *The new law strikes at the very fundamentals of a free press.*

• VERB + FUNDAMENTALS **teach | grasp, learn, master** *We quickly mastered the basic fundamentals of navigation.* | **go back to, return to** *The government went back to fundamentals, concentrating on avoiding food shortages.*

funding *noun*

• ADJ. **adequate, proper | generous, substantial | inadequate | additional, extra, further | direct | long-term | annual, three-year, etc.** *the airline industry's annual funding requirement* | **emergency, short-term, stop-gap | official | clandestine, illegal, secret** *the clandestine funding of an illegal group* | **core | central | internal | external, outside** *Half the university research posts depend on outside funding.* | **international, local, national | foreign | government, public/public-sector, state | private/private-sector | corporate | development, education, research, science, venture, etc. | hospital, library, university, etc.**

• VERB + FUNDING **give sb/sth, grant sb/sth, provide (sb/sth with)** *The refusal to grant extra funding to schools in the poorest areas caused a political storm.* | **attract, secure, seek, win | get, obtain, receive | increase | cut, reduce | withdraw, withhold**

• PREP. **… in/of ~** *£25 million in funding* | **~ for** *The president called for greater funding for housing for the poor.* **~ from** *The school has attracted funding from a number of sources.* **~ to** *an increase in funding to drug rehabilitation clinics*

• PHRASES **a cut/an increase in funding, a lack of funding, a level of funding** *Present levels of funding have forced the school to cut its teaching staff.* **a means/source of funding**

funeral *noun*

• ADJ. **church | family | simple | state | respectable** *His savings were just enough to pay for a respectable funeral.* | **mass** *a mass funeral of the victims of the fire*

• VERB + FUNERAL **attend, come to, go to | arrange** *The dead man's son arranged the funeral.* | **conduct** *A clergyman friend of the family conducted the funeral.* | **have** *She had a simple funeral, as she had requested.*

• FUNERAL + VERB **take place**

• FUNERAL + NOUN **ceremony, mass, rites, service | oration, sermon | cortège, procession | gathering** *Everyone went back to the house after the service for the funeral gathering.* | **car | director | home, parlour | costs, expenses | arrangements | business, industry | pyre** *the flames of the funeral pyre*

• PREP. **at a/the ~** *He gave the address at her funeral.*

funny *adj.*

1 making you laugh

• VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get** *The movie gets funnier towards the end.* | **find sth**

• ADV. **achingly, bloody** (*taboo*), **brilliantly, dead, extraordinarily, extremely, genuinely, hilariously, hysterically, really, riotously, terribly, uproariously, very, wickedly, wildly, wonderfully** *At last, a genuinely funny comedy show!* ◇ *His performance was hilariously funny.* ◇ *You should have seen it—it was terribly funny!* | **almost | pretty, quite | unintentionally**

2 strange

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, strike sb as, taste** *Didn't it strike you as funny that Adam wasn't there?* ◇ *This wine tastes funny.* | **find sth** *Don't you find it a bit funny that she never mentions her husband?*

• ADV. **extremely, really, very | a bit, a little, pretty, rather** *Helen gave me a rather funny look.*

• PHRASES **funny little** *He's a funny little man.* **funny old** *It's a funny old world, isn't it?*

fur *noun*

• ADJ. **thick | soft | real | artificial, fake, imitation, synthetic | matted** *The cat's fur was matted with blood.* | **fox, rabbit, etc.**

• VERB + FUR **be wrapped in, wear** *She was wearing*

her fur (= for example, a fur coat). | **be lined with, be trimmed with** *a cloak lined with fur*
- FUR + NOUN **trade** | **farm**
- PREP. **in a/sb's ~** (= wearing a fur coat, etc.) *elegant women in furs* **of ~** *a collar of fur*

furious *adj.*
- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** | **make sb** *Their incompetence made me furious.*
- ADV. **absolutely** | **simply** | **coldly** | **suddenly**
- PREP. **about** *He was simply furious about what had happened to his mother.* **at** *The prime minister is said to be furious at the newspaper report.* **over** *She was still furious over suggestions that she had lied to the public.* **with** *I got absolutely furious with him.*

furnace *noun*
- ADJ. **blazing, fiery, hot, red-hot** | **electric, gas** | **glass, steel** | **blast**
- VERB + FURNACE **fire** *enough coal to fire the furnaces*
- FURNACE + VERB **burn, glow** *The furnaces glowed fiercely.* | **roar** *A dark shed, lit only by the glow of roaring furnaces.*

furnished *adj.*
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **fully** *The flat is fully furnished.* | **partially, partly** | **attractively, beautifully, charmingly, comfortably, elegantly, expensively, luxuriously, nicely, ornately, pleasantly, prettily, richly, sumptuously, tastefully, well** *His rooms were comfortably furnished.* ◇ *The villa was expensively furnished throughout.* | **basically, modestly, plainly, simply** *a simply furnished room* | **adequately** | **barely, sparsely** | **individually** *Each of the ten bedrooms is individually furnished.*

furniture *noun*
- ADJ. **antique, period** *an eighteenth-century town house, complete with period furniture* | **modern** | **fine** *The wood is used for making fine furniture.* | **cheap, second-hand** | **foam-filled, upholstered** | **bedroom, garden, office, outdoor** | **cane, pine, rattan, wooden, etc.**
- QUANT. **piece**
- VERB + FURNITURE **arrange, move around, rearrange** *The room would look bigger if we rearranged the furniture.*

furore *noun*
- ADJ. **considerable** | **public** | **political**
- VERB + FURORE **cause, create, provoke** *His choice of words created quite a furore.*
- FURORE + VERB **surround sth** *the furore which surrounded her appointment as chairman* | **follow, result from sth** | **die down**
- PREP. **amid a/the ~ (of)** *His resignation passed almost unnoticed amid the furore of the elections.* | **~ about/over/surrounding** *the furore over the proposed introduction of tax on fuel* **~ among** *The sale of the two best players caused a furore among the fans.*

furtive *adj.*
- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become** *The look in his eyes became furtive.*
- ADV. **very** | **almost** *The secretary looked almost furtive when I walked in.* | **slightly** | **oddly** *He cast an oddly furtive glance at her.*

fury *noun*
- ADJ. **cold** | **controlled, inner, pent-up** *He growled with barely controlled fury.*
- VERB + FURY **be beside yourself with, be shaking with, feel** *He was beside himself with fury.* ◇ *I had never felt such fury before.* | **vent** *He vented his fury on a telephone box.* | **arouse, drive sb to, provoke** *That kind of treatment would drive anyone to fury.* ◇ *The decision to close the factory has provoked fury.*
- FURY + VERB **mount, rise** | **drain, fade** *His face and body sagged as the fury drained from him.*
- PREP. **in (a) ~** *She turned on him in a fury.* **with ~** *He reacted with cold fury* | **~ against** *Her fury against him rose.* **~ at** *He kicked the tree in fury at his own stupidity.*
- PHRASES **turn your fury on sb** *I hoped she wouldn't turn her fury on me.*

fuse *noun*

1 device that makes a bomb explode
- ADJ. **short** | **long, slow** | **safety**
- VERB + FUSE **set** *He set the fuse to thirty minutes.* | **light**

2 in an electric circuit
- ADJ. **5-amp, 10-amp, 13-amp, etc.**
- VERB + FUSE **fit** *Make sure that the correct fuse is fitted.* | **change, replace** | **blow** *When the machine was switched on it blew a fuse.*
- FUSE + VERB **blow** *Fuses blow if they are overloaded.*
- FUSE + NOUN **wire** | **box** *The fire started in the fuse box downstairs.*

fuss *noun*
- ADJ. **awful, big, great, terrible**
- VERB + FUSS **cause, kick up, make** *She kicked up an awful fuss when she heard about it.*
- FUSS + VERB **blow over, die down** *Once the fuss has blown over, we'll be able to get on with work as usual.*
- PREP. **without ~** *They left quietly, without fuss.* | **~ about** *She made a big fuss about not having a window seat on the plane.* **~ over** *I think it's all a lot of fuss over nothing.*
- PHRASES **make a fuss of sb** *The children were all making a great fuss of the new baby.* **with the minimum of fuss** *The job was done with the minimum of fuss.*

futile *adj.*
- VERBS **be, prove, seem** | **consider sth, describe sth as** *The president described these activities as futile.*
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, totally, utterly** *an utterly futile struggle for justice* | **largely, rather** | **apparently, seemingly** | **ultimately** *Their attempts were impressive but ultimately futile.*

futility *noun*
- ADJ. **complete, utter**
- VERB + FUTILITY **know, realize, see, sense** *She could see the utter futility of trying to protest.*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of futility**

future *noun*

1 time that will come after the present
- ADJ. **foreseeable, immediate, near, not-too-distant** *Things will continue as they are for the foreseeable future.* ◇ *A new branch of the shop will be opening in the near future.* | **distant, remote**
- VERB + FUTURE **look to, plan for** *Don't think too much about past troubles—look to the future.* | **foretell, look into, predict**
- FUTURE + VERB **bring (sb), hold** *whatever the future may bring you* ◇ *Who can tell what the future holds?*

• PREP. **for the ~** *What are your plans for the future?* **in (the) ~** *In future, employees will park their vehicles away from the works entrance.* ◇ *The possibility of travel to other solar systems still lies in the distant future.* **of the ~** *The stars of the future are competing in the world junior athletics championships this month.*

• PHRASES **a vision for/of the future** *In her speech, the director outlined her vision for the future.*

2 what will happen to sb/sth

• ADJ. **bright, great, promising, rosy, secure** *He has a great future as a designer.* | **bleak, dire, gloomy, grim, uncertain** *He forecasts a dire future for the industry.* | **long-term** | **economic, financial, political**

• VERB + FUTURE **face, have** *The firm faces a very uncertain future.* | **determine, shape** *the right to determine their own future in a democratic fashion* | **forecast, predict, see** | **consider, ponder (on)** *After being dropped from the team the young defender is considering his future.* | **invest in** *She decided to invest in her future by taking a management course.*

• PREP. **~ as** *She has a very promising future as a musician.* **~ in** *He could see no future in his job.*

• PHRASES **a question mark over the future of sb/sth** *A question mark hangs over the future of the company after shares plunged to a record low.*

fuzzy *adj.*

1 unclear

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, go** *The screen suddenly went fuzzy.*

• ADV. **all, extremely, very** *The truck's headlights were all fuzzy and ghostlike.* | **a bit, rather, slightly**

2 sticking up

• VERBS **be** | **go**

• ADV. **all** *My hair's gone all fuzzy!* | **a bit, rather**

Gg

gadget *noun*

- ADJ. **little | clever, neat, nifty | useless | latest, modern, new | electrical, electronic | kitchen**
- VERB + GADGET **invent**
- PREP. **~for** *She has invented a nifty little gadget for undoing stubborn nuts and bolts.*

gag *noun*

1 piece of cloth
- VERB + GAG **put on** *They tied him up and put a gag on him.* | **take off**

2 joke
- ADJ. **good, great | sight, visual** *a mixture of wit and instant visual gags* | **running** *There was this running gag about a penguin* (= they kept telling penguin jokes).
- VERB + GAG **crack** *a non-stop comedian, cracking gags by the dozen*
- PREP. **~about**

gag *verb*

- PHRASES **bind and gag sb** *The men left the security guards bound and gagged.*

gain *noun*

- ADJ. **big, considerable, huge, major, real, significant, substantial** *This change in the tax system will mean big gains for some companies.* | **modest, small | long-term, short-term | potential | pre-tax | net, overall** *Labour made an overall gain of 39 seats.* | **ill-gotten** *She tucked her ill-gotten gains into her purse and left.* | **personal, private** *using the investments for their private gain* | **commercial, economic, financial, material** *There will be no financial gain for mothers from this new system.* | **electoral, political** *the far right made huge electoral gains* | **military, territorial | weight** *She was most upset by her recent weight gain.* | **efficiency, productivity** *There is still scope for efficiency gains* (= gains to be made by being more efficient).
- VERB + GAIN **make | bring (sb)** *Better workplace design can bring real gains in productivity.*
- PREP. **for~** *It's amazing what some people will do for gain.* | **~from** *£3.9 million gains from the sale of stock* **~in** *Last year there was only a modest gain in earnings.*

gain *verb*

- ADV. **certainly, undoubtedly** *Consumers have certainly gained from the increased competition in the telecommunications industry.* | **clearly | quickly, rapidly | gradually, slowly** *His ideas gradually gained acceptance.* | **steadily | eventually, finally, ultimately | successfully | automatically** *Husbands and wives of British nationals do not automatically gain citizenship.* | **easily**
- VERB + GAIN **stand to** *The company stands to gain* (= is likely to gain) *quite a lot from this government scheme.* | **expect to, hope to** *What do you hope to gain by this action?* | **attempt to, seek to, strive to, try to** *Protesters tried to gain access to the presidential palace.* | **fail to**
- PREP. **by** *There is nothing to be gained by forcing people to comply.* **from** *We all gained a lot from the experience.*
- PHRASES **have everything/much/little/a lot/nothing to gain/be gained** *Why not give it a go? You've nothing to lose and everything to gain.* ◇ *I don't think there's anything to be gained from this course of action.*

gait *noun*

- ADJ. **rolling, strolling, stumbling, waddling**
- PREP. **with a~** *He walked with a rolling gait.*

gala *noun*

- ADJ. **charity, Royal | swimming**
- VERB + GALA **have, hold | attend, go to**
- GALA + NOUN **concert, day, dinner, evening, event, night, occasion, performance, weekend**

galaxy *noun*

- ADJ. **distant | nearby, nearest, neighbouring**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *scientists observing phenomena in nearby galaxies*

gale *noun*

- ADJ. **fierce, full, great, heavy, howling, severe, strong | Force 9, Force 10, etc. | northerly, westerly, etc. | autumn, winter, etc. | equinoctial | Atlantic, North Sea, etc.**
- VERB + GALE **blow** *It was blowing a gale outside.* | **get caught in** *We got caught in a howling gale.*
- GALE + VERB **blow** *A severe gale was blowing along the coast.*
- GALE + NOUN **force** *gale force winds* | **warning**
- PREP. **in ~** *The tree had come down in a fierce gale the night before.*

gallantry *noun*

- ADJ. **great, outstanding**
- VERB + GALLANTRY **demonstrate, show** *a soldier who had demonstrated outstanding gallantry*
- GALLANTRY + NOUN **award, medal**

gallery *noun*

1 for art
- ADJ. **art, exhibition, picture, portrait | commercial, private, public | national** *He offered ten major paintings to start a national gallery of modern British art.*
- VERB + GALLERY **go to, visit**
- GALLERY + VERB **exhibit sth, show sth** *Some of his work has been exhibited by local art galleries.* | **specialize in sth** *a gallery specializing in ceramics* | **close, open**
- GALLERY + NOUN **space** *The extension will provide 600 square metres of new gallery space.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *The painting is now on display at the National Gallery in London.* **in a/the ~** *There were very few people in the gallery.*

2 in a hall
- ADJ. **long, wide | first-floor, upper | public** *The packed public gallery at Teesside Crown Court erupted in a roar of approval.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *I found myself in a wide gallery looking down on the floor below.*

gallon *noun*

⇨ Note at MEASURE

gallop *noun*

- ADJ. **fast, good, head-down, mad | steady**

- VERB + GALLOP **break into** *The horses broke into a mad gallop when they heard the gunshot.*
- PREP. **at a ~** *They reached the farm at a gallop.* **into a ~** *The noise startled the horse into a gallop.* | **~ through** (*figurative*) *The programme starts with a gallop through the history of the railway.*
- PHRASES **at full gallop** *riders coming at full gallop*

gamble *noun*

- ADJ. **big, huge, major** | **calculated** | **desperate** *It was time for a last desperate gamble.* | **political**
- VERB + GAMBLE **take**
- GAMBLE + VERB **pay off, work** *I took a calculated gamble and it paid off.*
- PREP. **~ on** *Backpackers with a heavy load should resist taking a gamble on the weather.*
- PHRASES **a bit/something of a gamble** *Trying to find the right pension can be a bit of a gamble.*

gambler *noun*

- ADJ. **compulsive, heavy, inveterate** *Most compulsive gamblers are not successful.* | **notorious** | **professional**

gambling *noun*

- ADJ. **compulsive** *He went to a psychiatrist about his compulsive gambling.* | **illegal** *The police are trying to stop all illegal gambling.* | **legalized, legitimate**
- GAMBLING + NOUN **casino, club, den** | **table** | **debt** *She ran up gambling debts worth a million pounds.* | **man** *If I were a gambling man, I'd put my money on him resigning soon.*

game *noun*

1 activity/sport

- ADJ. **ball, board, card, computer, video** | **good** *This is a good game for getting people to mix.* | **competitive** *competitive games in which there is always a winner and a loser* | **team** *How I hated team games at school!* | **party** | **children's** *children's party games like Musical Chairs* | **indoor, outdoor** *finding good indoor games for children*
- VERB + GAME **have, play** *Shall we have a game of chess?* | **draw, lose, win**
- PREP. **~ against/with, ~ of** *To pass the time, we played a game of cards.*

2 sports match

- ADJ. **big** (= important) *The team are in training for their big game.* | **first, opening** | **final, last** | **away, home** | **Cup, League** *their first League game of the season*
- VERB + GAME **have, play** *United are playing a home game this week.* | **draw, lose, win** *We won the first game and drew the second.*
- PREP. **~ against/with** *He's hoping to be fit before next week's game with Liverpool.* **~ of** *a game of tennis*

3 how sb plays

- ADJ. **good, great** *That girl plays a great game of bridge.*
- VERB + GAME **have, play** *Trescothick had a good game and was man of the match.* | **improve, raise** *Hendry raised his game to collect the £40 000 first prize.*

4 games sports competition

- ADJ. **Commonwealth, Olympic**
- VERB + GAMES **compete in, participate in, take part in** *She's hoping to participate in the next Olympic Games.* | **host** *Beijing's bid to host the Olympic Games*

5 business/activity

- VERB + GAME **be in** *How long have you been in this game?*
- PREP. **~ of** *the game of life/politics*
- PHRASES **all part of the game** *Getting dirty was all part of the game to the kids.* **new to this game** *I'm new to this game myself.*

6 secret plan

- ADJ. **little, silly, stupid**
- VERB + GAME **play** *I realized that he had been playing a stupid game with me.* | **put an end to, put a stop to** *I'll soon put an end to her silly little games.* | **give away** *Don't let him talk to anybody or he'll give the game away.*

gamut *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, entire, full, whole**
- VERB + GAMUT **cover, run (through)**
- PREP. **~ of** *The exhibition runs the whole gamut of artistic styles.*

gang *noun*

1 group of criminals

- ADJ. **street** *a street gang known as the Hooligans* | **armed, criminal, organized, terror/terrorist** *The robbery was carried out by an armed gang.* | **teenage** | **rival** *Fights had ensued between rival gangs of football fans.*
- VERB + GANG **belong to, join** *A lot of the lads belong to gangs.* ◇ *He pressed me to join his gang.*
- GANG + NOUN **attack, fight, violence, warfare** *a gang fight between two rival teenage gangs* | **leader, member** | **life** *a tale of LA gang life* | **rape**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *We were in the same gang.* | **~ of** *a gang of skinheads*
- PHRASES **a member of a gang**

2 group of friends

- PREP. **~ of** *You probably go with a gang of friends to the same pub most Saturdays.*
- PHRASES **one of the gang** *Her friends made me feel welcome and treated me as one of the gang.*

gangrene *noun*

- VERB + GANGRENE **have, suffer from** | **develop**
- GANGRENE + VERB **set in** *The wound was not properly disinfected and gangrene set in.*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

gaol *noun*

⇨ See JAIL

gap *noun*

1 space between things

- ADJ. **big, huge, large, wide** | **narrow, small** | **awkward** *an awkward gap between the bed and the door*
- VERB + GAP **leave** | **fill, seal** *Seal the gaps around the windows with an exterior-quality sealant.*
- GAP + VERB **appear, open up** *He flashed his headlights and jumped lanes whenever a gap opened up.*
- PREP. **through a/the ~** *A rabbit ran along the fence and darted through a gap.* | **~ between** *Position the tiles, leaving a narrow gap between the edges.* **~ in** *A huge gap had appeared in the hedge.*

2 period of time

- ADJ. **awkward** | **long, short** | **time**
- VERB + GAP **fill** *wondering how to fill an awkward gap in the conversation*
- GAP + NOUN **year** *I'm planning to travel in my gap year* (= the year between school and university).
- PREP. **after a/the ~** *She returned to teaching after a twelve-year gap.* | **~ between** *a job to fill the gap between school and university* **~ in** *a gap in his career*

3 difference

- ADJ. **big, huge, large, significant, substantial, wide, yawning** | **unbridgeable** *the unbridgeable gap between the two cultures* | **growing, widening** | **narrow** | **age, generation** *Despite the age gap, romance blossomed.* | **cultural/culture** | **gender** *the gender gap in earnings* |

credibility *Newspapers were talking of a credibility gap between what he said and what he did.* | **information, knowledge, skills** *the knowledge gap between doctor and patient* | **trade** (= the gap between export and imports; used in journalism)
- VERB + GAP **bridge** *an attempt to bridge the gap between the academic world and industry*
- GAP + VERB **widen** | **narrow** | **separate sb/sth** *He realized how narrow was the gap separating him from his pagan ancestors.*
- PREP. **~ between** *The gap between rich and poor widened.*

4 where sth is missing
- ADJ. **big, enormous, great, huge, important, large, serious, significant, terrible, yawning** *serious gaps in their knowledge*
- VERB + GAP **create, leave** *His death left a huge gap in my life.* | **identify** | **close, fill (in), plug** *Her appointment will fill the gap created when the marketing manager left.*
- PREP. **~in** *legislation to close a gap in the law*
- PHRASES **a gap in the market** *We think we've identified a gap in the market* (= a business opportunity to make or sell sth that is not yet available).

gape *verb*

- PREP. **at** *What are you gaping at?*
- PHRASES **gape open** *She watched him, her mouth gaping open.* ◇ *(figurative) The empty cash box lay gaping open in one corner.*

garage *noun*

1 for keeping cars in
- ADJ. **double, single** | **detached, integral, lean-to, lock-up** | **underground** | **bus**
- GARAGE + NOUN **door**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Don't forget to put the car in the garage.*

2 for repairing cars/buying petrol
- ADJ. **local**
- VERB + GARAGE **own, run** | **take sth to** *I took the car to the local garage to get it fixed.*
- GARAGE + NOUN **mechanic, owner**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *The car's still at the garage.*

garden *noun*

- ADJ. **beautiful, lovely, pretty** | **big, large** | **small, tiny** | **back, front** *people hanging out washing in their back gardens* | **flower, herb, kitchen, rose, vegetable** *Most of the hotel's salads are grown in its own kitchen garden.* | **rock, water** *a rock garden with an astonishing variety of alpine plants* | **botanical, cottage, formal, landscaped, public, town, walled** *a large country house with beautiful landscaped gardens* ◇ *plants suitable for a small town garden* ◇ *a lovely Victorian walled garden*
- VERB + GARDEN **create, design, lay out, plan, plant** *creating a garden out of a wilderness* ◇ *We got someone to design the garden for us.* ◇ *The garden is laid out in eighteenth century style.* | **plant** *We planted the garden with herbs and wild flowers.* | **dig, do, tend, tidy (up), weed** *Weekends were spent doing the garden.*
- GARDEN + NOUN **flower, plant** | **pest** *aphids, one of the commonest garden pests* | **tools** | **gate, path, shed, wall** | **furniture, seat** | **centre** *We got the gravel at our local garden centre.*
- PREP. **in/into a/the ~** *Mary's out in the garden.*
- PHRASES **the bottom/end of a garden**

gardener *noun*

- ADJ. **enthusiastic, keen** | **experienced, expert, good** | **amateur** | **jobbing** *She employs a jobbing gardener to keep the garden tidy.* | **assistant, head** *head gardener to the Duke of Devonshire* | **organic** *The organic gardener avoids the use of pesticides.* | **landscape, market**

⇨ Note at JOB

gardening *noun*

- ADJ. **organic** | **landscape, market**
- VERB + GARDENING **do** *It's my husband who does the gardening.*
- GARDENING + NOUN **business** *She started up her own market gardening business two years ago.* | **book, magazine** | **programme, show** *a TV gardening show* | **equipment, gloves, tools** | **expert**

garlic *noun*

- ADJ. **wild**
- QUANT. **clove**
- VERB + GARLIC **peel** | **chop, crush**
- GARLIC + NOUN **clove** | **bread** | **sausage**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

garment *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy** | **shapeless** | **knitted, woollen**
- VERB + GARMENT **have on, wear** *She wore a shapeless knitted garment.*

gas *noun*

1 substance like air
- ADJ. **noxious, poisonous, toxic** | **explosive, inflammable, radioactive** | **inert** | **exhaust, greenhouse** *pollution from greenhouse gases* | **nerve, tear** *Police used water cannon and tear gas against demonstrators.*
- VERB + GAS **give off, produce** *It gives off a poisonous gas as it rots down.*
- GAS + VERB **build up** *Noxious gases had built up in the sewer.* | **escape, leak** *Toxic gases can escape through one of the pipes.*

2 for heating/cooking
- ADJ. **butane, coal, natural, propane** | **bottled, Calor**
- VERB + GAS **cook with** *I prefer to cook with gas.* | **light, turn on** *I lit the gas and put the soup on to warm.*
- GAS + NOUN **appliance, boiler, central heating, cooker, fire, lamp, oven** | **bottle, cylinder, pipeline** | **board** | **industry** | **field** *tapping the North Sea gas fields* | **supply** | **works** *Local gas works were closed as natural gas became available.* | **leak** *All gas leaks should be reported as soon as possible.*
- PHRASES **gas mark 2, 3, etc.** *Set the oven at gas mark 4.*

gash *noun*

1 deep wound
- ADJ. **deep, great, long** | **nasty, terrible**
- VERB + GASH **get, have**
- PREP. **on the ~** *She got a nasty gash on the head.*

2 large hole
- ADJ. **deep, great, long**
- VERB + GASH **carve, cut, tear** *The bulldozers carved a great gash through the forest.* ◇ *The rocks tore a long gash in the ship's hull.*

gasp *noun*

- ADJ. **big, great** | **little, short, small** | **quick, sharp, sudden** | **loud** | **low** | **audible** | **shocked** | **strangled** | **involuntary**
- VERB + GASP **give, let out** | **stifle** | **bring** *The stunt brought shocked gasps from the audience.* | **hear** | **take (in)** *taking in great gasps of air*
- GASP + VERB **escape sb**
- PREP. **between ~s** *'Listen carefully,' he said, between gasps of breath.* **in ~s** *He leant against the railing, his*

breath coming in short gasps. **with a ~** *She spun round with a little gasp of delight.* | **~ of**
⇨ Note at SOUND

gasp *verb*

• ADV. **almost** | **aloud** | **breathlessly**
• VERB + GASP **make sb** *The cold made her gasp.* | **manage to** *'No!' she managed to gasp.*
• PREP. **at** *She gasped at his boldness.* **in** *Denis almost gasped aloud in astonishment.* **with** *gasping with pain*
• PHRASES **gasp for air/breath, leave sb gasping** *Her breath went and left her gasping for air.*

gate *noun*

• ADJ. **entrance, front, main** | **back, postern** (in a castle), **side** | **inner, outer** | **double, five-bar/five-barred, portcullis** *a wide driveway with double gates* | **great** *The great gates of the abbey were shut fast.* | **heavy** | **high** | **narrow** | **ornamental** | **open** | **iron, metal, steel, wooden, wrought-iron** | **city, factory, farm, garden, park, prison, school, etc.** | **security** | **sluice**
• QUANT. **set** *a set of ornamental gates*
• VERB + GATE **open** | **bar, close, fasten, lock, shut** *Don't forget to shut the gate when you leave.* ◇ *The defenders had closed and barred all the city gates.* | **go through** *Go through the gate and continue down the track.*
• GATE + VERB **open, swing open** *The heavy gate swung open.* | **close, shut** *The gate shut behind him.*
• PREP. **through a/the ~** *He led us through a gate into a little garden.*

gather *verb*

1 come together in a group
• ADV. **quickly** | **around/round, together**
• PREP. **about/around/round** *The boys gathered around the car.* **for** *They are all gathering for a major conference.*

2 bring people/things together
• ADV. **hastily, quickly** *She hastily gathered all her belongings together.* | **carefully** | **together, up**

3 increase
• ADV. **quickly, rapidly** *The movement for reform rapidly gathered momentum.* | **slowly** | **steadily**
• VERB + GATHER **begin to, start to** *As the weeks passed, Charlotte began to gather strength.*

gathering *noun*

1 meeting
• ADJ. **big, large** | **small** | **informal, private, public** | **illegal** | **family, political, religious, social**
• VERB + GATHERING **attend, go to** *Women are not allowed to attend public gatherings.* | **have, hold, organize** *We're having a small family gathering to mark our wedding anniversary.* | **address**
• GATHERING + VERB **take place**
• PREP. **~ of** *The prime minister addressed a gathering of local government officials.*
• PHRASES **a gathering of the clan/clans** (*humorous*) *All the children and grandchildren are going to my parents' at Christmas for the annual gathering of the clan.*

2 collecting
• ADJ. **information, intelligence**

gauge *noun*

1 measuring instrument
• ADJ. **accurate** | **fuel, oil, petrol** | **depth, pressure, temperature**
• VERB + GAUGE **check, glance at, look at, read** *The pilot checked the fuel gauge frequently.*
• GAUGE + VERB **read sth, show sth, tell sb sth** *The petrol gauge was reading 'full'.* ◇ *The depth gauge tells you how deep you have dived.*

2 distance between rails
• ADJ. **broad, narrow, standard**
• VERB + GAUGE **adopt** *Eventually all the British railway companies adopted the standard gauge of 4 feet 8½ inches.*

3 fact for judging sth
• ADJ. **reliable, useful**
• VERB + GAUGE **be seen as, serve as** *This company is seen as a gauge of Britain's industrial well-being.*
• PREP. **~ of**

gauge *verb*

• ADV. **accurately, correctly** | **carefully**
• VERB + GAUGE **be able to, can/could** | **try to** | **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *It is difficult to gauge accurately how much fuel is needed*

gay *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, sound**
• ADV. **openly** *He is now openly gay.*

gaze *noun*

• ADJ. **direct, fixed, level, steady, unblinking, watchful** *She felt embarrassed under his steady gaze.* | **intense, intent, penetrating, piercing, searching** | **clear** | **cold, cool, hard, steely, stony** | **admiring, angry, critical, etc.** | **blue, brown, dark, grey** *His deep blue gaze held hers.* | **public** (*figurative*) *Pop stars are constantly exposed to the public gaze.*
• VERB + GAZE **direct, fix (sb with), focus, turn** *They fixed their gaze on the dark line of the coast ahead.* ◇ *She fixed him with a level gaze.* ◇ *He turned his gaze on me.* | **meet** *She refused to meet my gaze.* | **hold** | **follow** *I followed her gaze and spotted a new arrival at the far side of the room.* | **avert, drop, lower** *She deliberately averted her gaze when he came in.* | **avoid** *She avoided his gaze.*
• GAZE + VERB **drift, flick, flicker, fly, move, rake (sth), roam (sth), run, shift, slide, sweep (sth), travel, wander** *His gaze flickered an instant.* ◇ *His gaze flickered over the room.* | **follow sth** *Her gaze followed Simon's through the archway.* | **fix on sth, lock (with sth), meet sth** *Her gaze fixed on his and held it unblinkingly.* ◇ *His gaze locked with hers.* | **hold sth** | **linger, rest** *Rebecca's gaze rested on the child thoughtfully.* | **fall** *Her gaze fell on Kate's tousled hair.* | **narrow** *The dark gaze narrowed.*
• PREP. **under sb's ~** *He blushed under her angry gaze.*

gaze *verb*

• ADV. **calmly, steadily** | **intently, unblinkingly** *He gazed unblinkingly into the distance.* | **absently, blankly, unseeingly** *He gazed absently at the passing crowd.* | **thoughtfully** | **admiringly, adoringly, fondly, longingly, lovingly** *She gazed admiringly up at him.* | **down, out, up** *gazing out over the lake*
• PREP. **at** *gazing at her beautiful jewellery* **in** *They gazed in wonder at the mighty peaks.* **into** *She gazed steadily into his face.*

gear *noun*

1 in a vehicle
• ADJ. **bottom, top** *driving along in top gear* | **high, low** | **first, second, etc.** | **reverse**
• VERB + GEAR **engage, select** *Engage first gear and move off.* | **change, change into, move into, put/slam/slip sth into, shift (into), switch** *It's difficult to steer and change gear at the same time.* ◇ *She put the car into first gear and drove off.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The party organization is moving into top gear as the election approaches.* | **move up, step up** (*often figurative*) *Coming out of the*

final bend, the runner stepped up a gear to overtake the rest of the pack. | **crash, grind** *He was crashing the gears because he was so nervous.*

• GEAR + NOUN **change** *She made a smooth gear change.* | **lever, stick** (also **gearstick**)

• PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *driving along in third gear* ◇ *Some drivers leave the car in gear when parking on hills.* **out of ~** *Leave the car out of gear.*

2 equipment/clothes

• ADJ. **camping, climbing, fishing, running, sports, swimming, walking** | **breathing** *firemen in breathing gear* | **landing, winding** *the plane's landing gear* | **combat, riot** | **outdoor** | **designer** *wearing expensive designer gear*

• VERB + GEAR **be dressed in, have on, wear** *She had her running gear on.* | **put on, take off**

• PREP. **in ... ~** *a group of young men in combat gear*

gear *verb* **be geared to/towards sth**

• ADV. **completely, entirely, exclusively, totally** *an economy exclusively geared towards tourism* | **primarily** | **specifically** *Our training programmes are geared specifically to the needs of older workers.* | **clearly**

gem *noun*

1 jewel

• ADJ. **precious, priceless**

• PHRASES **dripping with gems** *a millionairess dripping with gems and pearls* **encrusted/studded with gems** *a belt studded with priceless gems*

2 person/thing

• ADJ. **little** | **absolute, real** *The second side of their new album contains some real gems.* | **hidden** *She worked in the antiques trade, searching out hidden gems in the most unlikely places.* | **architectural** *architectural gems like York Minster*

• PHRASES **a gem of a sth** *This is a little gem of a flower.*

gender *noun*

• GENDER + NOUN **relations** | **differences, divisions** *She examines the interplay between changing gender divisions and urban change.* | **bias, imbalance, inequality** *The government is working on tackling gender inequalities in employment.* | **identity, role, stereotype** *Managers may value different qualities in men than in women, reinforcing gender stereotypes.* | **issues, politics**

gene *noun*

• ADJ. **dominant, recessive** | **abnormal, defective, mutant** | **human**

• VERB + GENE **carry, have** *people who carry the gene that causes this disease* | **pass on** *The gene is passed on to their children.*

• GENE + VERB **be responsible for sth, cause sth, control sth, influence sth** *Genes control the development of an embryo.* | **mutate**

• GENE + NOUN **pool** *Scientists have estimated that a gene pool of at least 300 animals is necessary to maintain a healthy tiger population.* | **defect, mutation** *Gene mutations are alterations in the DNA code.* | **sequence** | **therapy**

• PREP. **~ for** *An individual may pass on to future generations its genes for tallness.*

general *noun*

• GENERAL + VERB **command sth, lead sth** *Both generals had commanded units in that area.*

⇨ Note at RANK

generalization *noun*

• ADJ. **broad, sweeping** | **abstract** | **useful, valid**

• VERB + GENERALIZATION **make**

• PREP. **~ about** *The author makes several sweeping generalizations about the causes of the crisis.*

generalize *verb*

• VERB + GENERALIZE **can/could** | **be easy to, be possible to** | **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** | **be dangerous to, be unsafe to, be unwise to**

• PREP. **about** *It is impossible to generalize about such a complicated subject.* **from** *We cannot generalize from these few examples.*

generate *verb*

• ADV. **quickly** | **automatically, spontaneously** *People used to believe that dirt spontaneously generated disaese.* | **randomly** *a sequence of randomly generated fractions* | **externally, internally** *internally generated revenue* | **locally**

• VERB + GENERATE **help (to)** *the opportunity to help generate ideas* | **be used to** *The wind turbines are used to generate electricity.* | **be expected to, be likely to** *The lottery is expected to generate substantial funds for charities.*

• PREP. **from** *Living cells generate energy from food.* ◇ *profits generated from the company's activities*

generation *noun*

1 people/period of time

• ADJ. **current, present** | **new, younger** | **older** *The older generation prefer a darker and more traditional kind of clothing.* | **coming, future, later, next, rising** *The forest will be preserved for future generations.* | **earlier, former, last, past, preceding, previous** *These children seem to have a stronger sense of purpose than the previous generation.* ◇ *the wisdom of past generations* | **first, second, etc.** *The second generation of immigrants often adopted British forenames.* | **subsequent, succeeding, successive** *Succeeding generations have added to the stock of stories and legends.* | **whole** *The First World War slaughtered a whole generation.*

• VERB + GENERATION **belong to** *people who belong to a younger generation*

• GENERATION + NOUN **gap** *I was aware of a real generation gap between us.*

• PREP. **for a ~** *The consequences of the radioactive leakage may not become apparent for a generation or more.* **for ~s** *This kind of apple has been grown for generations.*

• PHRASES **from generation to generation** *The recipe for making the liqueur has been handed down from generation to generation.* **from one generation to the next**

2 production of sth

• ADJ. **electricity, gas, income, power** *different methods of power generation*

generator *noun*

• ADJ. **diesel, gas, petrol, steam, wind** | **electrical, electricity, power**

• VERB + GENERATOR **drive, power** *A water turbine drives the generator.*

• GENERATOR + VERB **deliver sth** *The wind generator delivers 120 watts in a strong breeze.*

generosity *noun*

• ADJ. **extraordinary, great, unusual**

• VERB + GENEROSITY **show (sb)** *He thanked them for the extraordinary generosity they had shown.* | **take advantage of** *Their guests took advantage of their generosity, overstaying their welcome by several days.*

• PREP. **~ to/towards** *their great generosity to the school*

• PHRASES **an act of generosity, generosity of spirit** *She showed an unusual generosity of spirit to those who had opposed her.* **thanks to the generosity of sb** *The hospital has now bought a new body scanner, thanks to the generosity of local fund-raisers.*

generous *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem, sound | become, get** *John's getting very generous with the wine!*
• ADV. **amazingly, exceedingly, exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, incredibly, most, very, wonderfully** *You have been most generous.* | **excessively, overly** *The review panel criticized the payments as overly generous.* | **fairly, pretty, quite, rather, reasonably, relatively**
• PREP. **of** *Thank you for your donation. It was very generous of you.* **to** *They have been extremely generous to the mosque.* **with** *She's quite generous with her praise.*

genetics *noun*

• ADJ. **evolutionary | molecular | medical | human, plant | population | Mendelian**
• PHRASES **the science of genetics**
⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

genitals *noun*

• ADJ. **female, male**
• VERB + GENITALS **cover | display, exhibit, expose**

genius *noun*

1 very great and unusual ability
• ADJ. **great, pure, real | natural**
• QUANT. **flash, stroke, touch** *In a flash of pure genius, she realized the answer to the problem.* ◇ *It was a stroke of genius on my part to avoid such awkward questions.*
• VERB + GENIUS **have** *She has a genius for sorting things out.* **show** *a work which shows real genius*
• GENIUS + VERB **lie in sth** *His genius lies in his ability to convey pure terror in his work.*
• PREP. **of ~** *a writer of genius* | **~ for** *his genius for pinpointing the absurd*

2 person with great and unusual ability
• ADJ. **great | natural | eccentric, wayward | artistic, comic, creative, literary, mathematical, military, musical, etc.**

genocide *noun*

• ADJ. **mass** *Refugees gave accounts of the mass genocide.* | **cultural**
• PREP. **~ against** *genocide against ethnic minorities*
⇨ Note at CRIME (for verbs)

gentle *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become**
• ADV. **extremely, very | almost | fairly, quite | surprisingly, unusually | deceptively** *His mouth looked deceptively gentle.*
• PREP. **on** *The new treatments are gentle on your hair.* **with** *She was very gentle with the children.*

gentleman *noun*

1 man who is polite/behaves well towards others
• ADJ. **perfect, real, true** *He's a real gentleman, always kind and considerate.*
• PHRASES **be no gentleman** *He may be a lord, but he's no gentleman.* **too much of a gentleman** *He was too much of a gentleman to ask them for any money.*

2 rich man with a high social position
• ADJ. **country, landed** *He retired to his estate in Norfolk, and lived the life of a country gentleman.*
• GENTLEMAN + NOUN **farmer**

genuine *adj.*

1 real
• VERBS **be, look, prove | consider sth** *The document is not considered genuine.*
• ADV. **absolutely, completely, perfectly, quite** *Her happiness was perfectly genuine.* | **apparently | obviously | undoubtedly**

2 sincere
• VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound**
• ADV. **really, very | absolutely, completely, perfectly, quite** *I'm convinced she is absolutely genuine.* | **enough** *His offer sounded genuine enough.* | **apparently | obviously | undoubtedly**

geography *noun*

• ADJ. **economic, historical, human, physical, political, social**
⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

geology *noun*

• ADJ. **applied, engineering | physical, structural | environmental, marine | petroleum | Pleistocene, Quaternary, etc.**
• PHRASES **the science of geology**
⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

geometry *noun*

• ADJ. **algebraic, co-ordinate, differential, fractal, solid, three-dimensional | Euclidean | basic | internal, local | sacred** *Pre-Christian sacred geometry was incorporated into church architecture.*
⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

germ *noun*

• ADJ. **virulent** *The epidemic was caused by a particularly virulent flu germ.* | **flu, typhoid, etc.**
• VERB + GERM **carry** *Children carry all kinds of germs home from school.* | **harbour** *Cracks and scratches in work surfaces can harbour germs.* | **destroy, kill** *They used bleach to kill any germs in the sink and drain.*
• GERM + NOUN **warfare**

German *noun*

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

German measles *noun*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

gesticulate *verb*

• ADV. **wildly** *He gesticulated wildly as he tried to make her understand.*
• PREP. **at** *The other woman was gesticulating at the ambulance.* **to** *gesticulating to me with her hands* **towards** *The officer gesticulated towards the refugees.* **with**

gesture *noun*

1 movement that expresses sth
• ADJ. **dramatic, expansive, expressive, extravagant, flamboyant, melodramatic, sweeping, theatrical** *She made an expansive gesture with her arms.* | **abrupt | careless, vague** *He responded with a vague gesture in the direction of the pub.* | **obscene, rude | angry, defiant, threatening | dismissive, impatient, irritable | helpless | imperious | placatory**
• VERB + GESTURE **make** *The children made rude gestures at them.*
• PREP. **by ~** *They communicate entirely by gesture.* **in a ~** *He waved his arms in a melodramatic gesture.* **with a ~** *She*

waved us away with an impatient gesture. | **~ of** *a gesture of despair*

2 sth that shows other people what you think/feel

- ADJ. **nice** *I thought it was a nice gesture to send everyone a card.* | **bold** *a bold gesture of reconciliation* | **dramatic, extravagant, grand** *He had the respect of his people without the need for grand gestures.* | **conciliatory, friendly, goodwill** | **charitable, philanthropic** | **empty, small, symbolic, token** *Words and empty gestures are not enough—we demand action!* ◇ *a token gesture of their good intentions* | **futile** | **political**
- PREP. **as a ~** *Several hostages were released as a goodwill gesture.* **in a ~** *In a dramatic gesture, the prime minister refused to attend the meeting.* | **~ against** *The invasion attempt was intended as a political gesture against his opponents.* **~ of** *His gift was a gesture of friendship.* **~ towards** *The president's speech was seen as a conciliatory gesture towards former enemies.*

gesture *verb*

- ADV. **vaguely** | **wildly** | **expansively** | **abruptly, impatiently** | **helplessly**
- PREP. **at** *She gestured at him to step back.* **about/around** *He gestured around the room, lost for words.* **for** *He gestured abruptly for Virginia to get in the car.* **to** *Mrs Davis gestured to the waiter.* **towards** *He gestured vaguely towards the house.* **with** *gesturing wildly with her hands*

ghost *noun*

- VERB + GHOST **see** *You look as if you've seen a ghost!* | **believe in** *I don't believe in ghosts.* | **exorcise, lay to rest** *A priest was called in to exorcise the ghost.*
- GHOST + VERB **appear, haunt sth, walk** *dark, cold nights when ghosts walk*
- GHOST + NOUN **story**
- PREP. **~ of** *The ghost of a hanged poacher is said to haunt the manor house.*
- PHRASES **as pale/white as a ghost** *He looked as pale as a ghost as he climbed out of the wrecked car.*

giant *noun*

1 very large man

- PHRASES **a gentle giant** *Some people are intimidated by his size, but in fact he's a gentle giant.* **a giant of a man** *He was a giant of a man, standing nearly seven feet tall.*

2 sth that is very large/important

- ADJ. **corporate, multinational** | **car, chemicals, financial, food, industrial, oil, retail, etc.** *The oil giant Esso is planning to set up a new refinery in the port.* | **literary** *Camus is considered to be one of the twentieth century's literary giants.*
- PREP. **~ among/amongst** *The Amazon is a giant amongst rivers.* **~ of** *The company is now one of the giants of the computer industry.*

giddy *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel** | **become, come over all** (*informal*), **get** *My mum came over all giddy and had to sit down.* | **leave sb, make sb** *Steep stairs may leave you giddy and faint.*
- ADV. **quite** | **a bit, rather, slightly**
- PREP. **from** *He felt tired and giddy from the sleeping pill.* **with** *I was giddy with the heat.*

gift *noun*

1 sth that you give to sb

- ADJ. **expensive, generous, kind, lavish, valuable** *Thank you all for your kind gifts.* ◇ *She received lavish gifts of jewellery and clothes.* | **perfect** | **small** | **free** *When you place your first order with us, we will send you the free gift of your choice.* | **birthday, Christmas, parting, retirement, wedding** | **unwanted** *the problem of what to do with unwanted gifts*
- VERB + GIFT **bear, bring (sb), exchange, give sb, make sb, offer sb** *He arrived home bearing gifts for everyone.* ◇ *They gave each other gifts at Christmas.* ◇ *She wanted to make a gift to her grandchildren.* | **accept, get, receive** *Please accept this small gift.* ◇ *The children all received gifts.*
- GIFT + NOUN **shop** | **box, pack, set, token, voucher** *New customers will receive a free gift pack containing a selection of our products.* ◇ *a gift set of shampoo, soap and hand cream* | **token, voucher**
- PREP. **as a ~** *The messengers brought the king a fine suit of armour as a gift.* | **~ for** *There were gifts for all the children.* **~ from** *This vase was a gift from my mother.* **~ to** *The golf clubs were her gift to her husband.*
- PHRASES **shower gifts on sb, shower sb with gifts**

2 natural ability

- ADJ. **great, outstanding, remarkable, special, wonderful** *his great gifts as a teacher* | **rare** | **God-given, innate, natural, special** | **artistic, musical**
- VERB + GIFT **have, possess**
- PREP. **~ for** *She has a natural gift for music.*

gifted *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, highly, immensely, prodigiously, supremely, very** | **undeniably** | **naturally** *a naturally gifted sportswoman* | **uniquely** | **precociously** | **academically, athletically, intellectually, musically** *academically gifted children*
- PREP. **at** *He's very gifted at maths.* **in** *gifted in the art of healing* **with** *Their helpers are gifted with amazing powers of patience.*

gig *noun*

- ADJ. **benefit, charity** | **free** | **live** | **pub**
- VERB + GIG **do, play (in)** *They're doing a gig in Leeds tonight.* | **go to**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *They're performing at a local pub gig.*

giggle *noun*

- ADJ. **little** | **high-pitched** | **nervous** | **girlish**
- VERB + GIGGLE **give, have, let out** | **collapse into, dissolve into, get ~s** *We all collapsed into giggles.* ◇ *Susan tends to get the giggles at the most inappropriate moments.* | **stifle, suppress** *I just managed to stifle a giggle at the absurd idea.* | **hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *'Age before beauty!' she said with a giggle.* | **~ about/at** *We had quite a giggle about the new office romance.*
- PHRASES **a fit of (the) giggles**

giggle *verb*

- ADV. **helplessly, hysterically, nervously** *The children giggled hysterically.*
- PREP. **about** *They giggled about their teacher's accident.* **at** *We giggled at the picture.* **over** *giggling over old photographs* **with** *The children giggled with delight.*
- PHRASES **a fit of giggling**

gimmick *noun*

- ADJ. **latest, new** *a new gimmick to encourage people to go to the cinema* | **election, marketing, publicity, sales** *The promise of lower taxation may have been just an election gimmick to gain votes.*
- PHRASES **just/nothing more than/only a gimmick** *He dismissed the event as just a publicity gimmick.*

gin *noun*

- ADJ. **stiff | double, large | small | pink, sloe**
- VERB + GIN **drink, have** *'What are you drinking?' 'I'll have a gin and tonic, please.'* **| sip | pour (sb)** *She poured herself a large gin.*
- PHRASES **a gin and tonic**

girl *noun*

- ADJ. **baby** *They've had a baby girl.* **| little, small, young** *When she was a little girl, she dreamed of becoming a ballerina.* **| adolescent, teenage | bubbly, happy, lively | lovely, nice | attractive, beautiful, good-looking, gorgeous, handsome, pretty, stunning | single, unmarried**

girlfriend *noun*

- ADJ. **current, latest, new | ex-, former, old | long-standing, long-term, serious, steady | live-in | pregnant | jealous | jilted**
- QUANT. **string, succession**
- VERB + GIRLFRIEND **have | meet | live with | sleep with | propose to | marry**

gist *noun* **the gist**

- ADJ. **general**
- VERB + GIST **convey, give (sb)** *It is difficult to convey the gist of Reich's ideas simply.* **| follow, get, understand**
- PREP. **~ of** *I could follow the general gist of their conversation.*

glad *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | make sb** *The smell of the sea air makes you glad to be alive!*
- ADV. **awfully, extremely, heartily, only too, really, terribly, very** *She was only too glad to escape them all.* **| just** *I'm just glad it's all over.* **| almost** *Danny looked almost glad to be going.* **| quite, rather | secretly** *She was secretly glad of his company.*
- PREP. **about** *What have I got to be glad about?* **for** *We're glad for you both.* **of** *I was quite glad of his help.*

glamorous *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become | consider sth, regard sth as, see sth as** *Canoeing is not seen as glamorous in the way that skiing is.*
- ADV. **really, very | less than, not exactly, not in the least** *Working in publishing turned out to be less than glamorous.* **| quite, rather**

glamour *noun*

- QUANT. **touch** *Several film stars were invited to add a touch of glamour to the occasion.*
- VERB + GLAMOUR **have** *He had a glamour about him that she found very attractive.* **| lack** *Jumbo jets somehow lack the glamour of the transatlantic liner.* **| add, give sb/sth, lend sb/sth** *Her long dark hair lent her a certain glamour.*
- PHRASES **a certain glamour**

glance *noun*

- ADJ. **backward, sidelong, sideways** *She cast a sidelong glance at Fern.* **| brief, cursory, fleeting, quick, swift** *After a cursory glance at the report he frowned.* **| casual | covert, furtive, surreptitious** *The man walked slowly along, casting furtive glances behind him.* **| accusing, angry, baleful, disapproving, mocking, reproachful, scornful, sharp, suspicious, withering** *Meena threw him an angry glance.* **| curious, puzzled, questioning, quizzical | admiring, approving | knowing | meaningful** *The couple exchanged meaningful glances but said nothing.* **| amused, wry | anxious, nervous, worried | plaintive**
- VERB + GLANCE **cast (sb), dart, give (sb/sth), have, shoot (sb), steal, take, throw (sb)** *He gave her a mocking glance. ◇ I had a quick glance at the article, but I haven't read it yet. ◇ He stole a sidelong glance at the young woman sitting next to him on the train. ◇ She took one last glance in the mirror and then left.* **| exchange** *They exchanged knowing glances.* **| catch** *I caught the teacher's glance and nearly burst into nervous laughter.* **| attract, draw** *Their vintage car attracted admiring glances wherever they went.*
- GLANCE + VERB **flick, flicker, move** *Her glance flickered briefly across to the group standing at the other side of the street.* **| meet** *Their glances met, then they both looked away.* **| fall on sb/sth, rest on sb/sth** *His glance fell on a pile of papers at one side of the desk.*
- PREP. **at a ~** *The software allows you to see at a glance what fonts you have on the computer.* **with a ~** *With a quick glance at the time, she stood up and prepared to leave.* **without a ~** *He left without a backward glance.* **| ~ at** *A glance at my watch told me it was already past six o'clock.* **~ of** *He ignored my glance of disapproval.* **~ over** *He kept throwing nervous glances over his shoulder.*

glance *verb*

- ADV. **briefly, quickly, sharply** *Norton glanced sharply at him.* **| anxiously, fearfully, nervously** *She glanced nervously over her shoulder.* **| curiously** *glancing curiously about him* **| covertly** *He glanced covertly at his watch.* **| barely, hardly** *She barely glanced at him.* **| down, up** *She glanced up at him.*
- VERB + GLANCE **pause to, turn to** *He turned to glance in our direction.* **| happen to** *At that moment she happened to glance up.*
- PREP. **about/around/round** *She glanced around the room.* **across/over** *She glanced across to where the others were standing chatting.* **at** *She glanced briefly at his lapel badge.* **towards** *He glanced towards the kitchen.*

gland *noun*

- ADJ. **enlarged, swollen** *She's gone to bed with swollen glands and a temperature.* **| adrenal, endocrine, exocrine, pineal, pituitary, prostate, sebaceous, thyroid | poison, salivary, scent, sweat, venom** *Female ants release pheromones from their scent glands.*
- GLAND + VERB **release sth, secrete sth**

glandular fever *noun*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

glare *noun*

1 strong light

- ADJ. **blinding, full, harsh, hot | sudden** *A sudden glare of headlights lit the driveway.*
- VERB + GLARE **reflect** *The walls were whitewashed to reflect the glare of the sun.* **| reduce** *We wore sunglasses to reduce the glare from the road.* **| be blinded by, be dazzled by** *For a moment she was blinded by the harsh glare of the sun.* **| be caught in** *The rabbit was caught in the glare of the car's headlights.*
- PREP. **against the ~** *We screwed up our eyes against the blinding glare from the searchlights.* **in/under the ~ of** *Under the glare of the street lamps, visibility was good.* **| ~ from**
- PHRASES **the glare of publicity** (*figurative*) *The divorce was conducted in the full glare of media publicity.*

2 angry look

- ADJ. **angry, baleful, defiant, furious, hostile, malevolent, menacing, withering | icy, steely, stony | warning**
- VERB + GLARE **fix sb with, give sb, send sb, shoot**

(sb), turn on sb *She fixed her questioner with an icy glare. ◇ He sent her a glare that was full of suspicion. ◇ She shot a warning glare at her companion. ◇ He turned his baleful glare on the cowering suspect.*

glare *verb*

- ADV. **angrily, balefully, fiercely, furiously | back** *I looked at her and she glared angrily back.*
- PREP. **(down/up) at** *He stood at the bottom of the stairs, glaring up at us.*

glass *noun*

1 transparent substance

- ADJ. **clear, coloured, opaque, plain, smoked, tinted | broken | flying** *A bomb went off, and many people were injured by flying glass.* **| bulletproof, cut, frosted, plate, safety, stained, toughened**
- QUANT. **piece | pane, sheet | fragment, sliver, splinter** *The floor was littered with fragments of broken glass.*
- VERB + GLASS **blow, make** *watching the Venetian craftsmen blowing glass ◇ The factory makes safety glass.* **| break, crack, shatter, smash**
- GLASS + VERB **break, crack, shatter, smash, splinter** *the sound of breaking glass*
- GLASS + NOUN **beads, bottle, bowl, eye, jar, vase | cabinet, case | door, panel, partition, roof, wall | fibre** *a boat made of glass fibre*
- PREP. **behind ~** *The books were all behind glass* (= in glass cases). **on ~** *She cut her foot on some glass.* **under ~** *growing fruit under glass* (= in a glasshouse) **through ~** *He could see the light through the frosted glass.*

2 for drinking

- ADJ. **brimming, full | half-empty, half-full | empty | beer, brandy, champagne, sherry, whisky, wine | crystal** *a set of crystal glasses* **| tall** *a tall glass of milk* **| fresh** *He poured her a fresh glass of sherry.* **| pint** *beer in a pint glass*
- VERB + GLASS **have** *He had a small glass of lager with his meal.* **| drink, sip** *She sat sipping a glass of champagne.* **| drain, empty | fill, pour, refill, top up** *The waiter filled their glasses.* **| clean, polish, wash** *The butler was polishing the brandy glasses.* **| raise** *She raised the glass to her lips.* **| hand sb** *I handed her a glass of wine.* **| put down, set down** *I put my glass down on the table.* **| clink** *They clinked glasses, still laughing.*
- GLASS + VERB **clink** *He heard glasses clinking in the other room.*
- PREP. **in a/the/sb's ~** *the red liquid in his glass* **| ~ of** *She had had three glasses of whisky already.*
- PHRASES **(a) glass in (your) hand** *He sat back, glass in hand.*

glasses *noun*

- ADJ. **dark, sun** (also **sunglasses**), **tinted** *I wear blue-tinted glasses on sunny days.* **| reading | half-moon, (little) round | pebble, thick, thick-lensed** *a short, fat man with greasy black hair and thick pebble glasses* **| granny | owlish | heavy | gold-rimmed, horn-rimmed, steel-rimmed, wire-framed/wire-rimmed | rimless | field, opera**
- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + GLASSES **have on, wear | put on | remove, take off | look over, peer over** *Her father lowered his paper and peered over his glasses at her.* **| adjust, push up** *She pushed her glasses up and rubbed the bridge of her nose.* **| clean, polish, wipe**
- GLASSES + VERB **steam up** *His glasses steamed up as soon as he came indoors.* **| be perched on sth, perch on sth** *Horn-rimmed glasses perched on the bridge of her nose.*
- PREP. **behind (your)~** *She blinked behind her glasses. ◇ Their anxious faces were hidden behind dark glasses.*

gleam *noun*

1 soft light

- ADJ. **dull, faint | distant**
- PREP. **~ of** *the distant gleam of the sea*
- PHRASES **a gleam of light** *a faint gleam of light from the doorway*

2 in sb's eyes

- ADJ. **cold, dark, strange | predatory, speculative | mischievous, sardonic, wicked | sudden**
- VERB + GLEAM **have** *He had a speculative gleam in his eyes.*
- GLEAM + VERB **come into/enter/light sb's eye/eyes** *A sudden gleam came into her eye as she remembered that tomorrow was her day off.*
- PREP. **~ of** *A gleam of laughter lit his eyes.*
- PHRASES **a gleam in sb's eye/eyes**

gleam *verb*

- ADV. **dully, faintly, softly** *The knife's blade gleamed dully in the dark.*
- PREP. **with** *The long oak table gleamed with polish.*
- PHRASES **gleam golden, white, etc.** *The pebble beach gleamed white in the moonlight.*

glimmer *noun*

- ADJ. **faint, tiny** *In the east we could see the first faint glimmer of dawn. ◇ (figurative) The faint glimmer of an idea had crept into his mind.*
- PREP. **~ of**

glimpse *noun*

1 brief sight of sb/sth

- ADJ. **brief, fleeting, the merest, momentary, quick | occasional** *They caught occasional glimpses of great birds circling.* **| tantalizing** *This was my first tantalizing glimpse of the islands.*
- VERB + GLIMPSE **catch, get, have, take** *Thousands of people had gathered, hoping to catch a glimpse of the Queen. ◇ We only had a fleeting glimpse of the sun all day.* **| afford sb**
- PREP. **~ at** *He took a quick glimpse at the map.* **~ of** *We got just a brief glimpse of the car as it rushed by.*

2 brief experience of sth

- ADJ. **brief | fascinating, intriguing | rare** *This scene may give a rare glimpse of Charles's personal style as king.*
- VERB + GLIMPSE **get, have, take | afford sb, allow sb, give sb, offer (sb), provide** *That smile afforded her a brief glimpse of the other side of Adam Burns.*
- PREP. **~ at** *The exhibition offers a fascinating glimpse at life beneath the waves.* **~ into** *Take a glimpse into the future of rail travel.* **~ of** *She got a glimpse of a very different way of life.*

glint *noun*

1 flash of light

- ADJ. **golden, metallic**
- VERB + GLINT **catch, see** *Among the trees I caught a glint of blue.*
- PREP. **~ of**

2 in sb's eye

- ADJ. **dangerous, determined | mischievous, playful, teasing**
- VERB + GLINT **have** *He had a dangerous glint in his eyes.*
- GLINT + VERB **appear in sb's eye/eyes, come into/to sb's eye/eyes** *A determined glint appeared in her eye.*
- PREP. **~ in, ~ of** *There was a glint of amusement in her eyes.*

glint *verb*

- ADV. **angrily** *His eyes glinted angrily.*
- PREP. **with** *Her eyes glinted with amusement.*

glitter *verb*

1 shine brightly

- ADV. **brightly** *Crystal chandeliers glittered brightly above them.*
- PREP. **in** *His metal buttons glittered in the sunlight.* **with** *Trees and grass glittered with dew.*

2 show emotion

- ADV. **coldly, dangerously, darkly, fiercely, strangely** *His deep-set eyes glittered coldly.*
- PREP. **with** *Her eyes glittered with delight.*

globe *noun* **the globe**

- VERB + GLOBE **span** *a commercial service that will soon span the globe* | **circumnavigate, travel** *one of the first boats to circumnavigate the globe* ◇ *She travelled the globe in search of good writers of children's stories.*
- PREP. **across the ~** *The railway network soon spread across the globe.* **all over the ~** *Motor vehicles are found all over the globe.* **around/round the ~** *Chess fans around the globe watched the match with breathless interest.*
- PHRASES **all parts of the globe, every corner of the globe** *Athletes from every corner of the globe competed in the Games.*

gloom *noun*

1 sadness

- ADJ. **black, deep** *She was in deep gloom because not even a postcard had arrived from Ricky.* | **general** | **economic** *the general economic gloom*
- VERB + GLOOM **be filled with, be sunk in, sink into** *He was sunk in deep gloom at the prospect of being alone.* ◇ *I sank into gloom and depression.* | **fill sb with** *The news filled me with gloom.* | **cast** *Rumours of his ill health cast gloom over the celebrations.* | **combat, dispel, lift** *efforts to dispel their gloom*
- GLOOM + VERB **deepen, descend** *Their gloom deepened as the election results came in.* ◇ *She felt gloom descend on her shoulders.* | **lift** *When the gloom finally lifts, the pessimists will be surprised at how much has been going right.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The nation was deep in gloom.* | **~ about** *There is a general gloom about the farming industry.*
- PHRASES **doom and gloom** *Despite falling demand, the year has not been all doom and gloom.* **gloom and despondency** *the darkest feelings of gloom and despondency*

2 darkness

- ADJ. **deep** | **deepening, descending, gathering** *He peered into the gathering gloom.* | **cold, damp, dingy** | **evening** *The fog looked ominous in the evening gloom.*
- VERB + GLOOM **penetrate, pierce** *The sound of distant police whistles pierced the gloom.* | **adjust to, become/get accustomed to** *Slowly, my eyes became accustomed to the gloom.* | **peer into/through** | **be shrouded in** *The sun went in and the house was again shrouded in gloom.*
- GLOOM + VERB **deepen, descend** *We sat and watched as the gloom descended.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *We lost sight of them in the gloom.* **into the ~** *The tram rattled off into the gloom.* **out of the ~** *Two figures materialized out of the gloom.* **through the ~** *She could see the house faintly through the gloom.*

gloomy *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** *Now, don't start to get gloomy.* | **remain**
- ADV. **decidedly, very** *The future looked decidedly gloomy.* | **far from** *The committee's view was in fact far from gloomy.* | **pretty, rather**
- PREP. **about** *Her trainer was even more gloomy about the prospects for British tennis.*

glory *noun*

1 fame/honour

- ADJ. **personal** *They are driven by a craving for personal glory.* | **reflected** *She basked in the reflected glory of her daughter's success.* | **greater** *The force behind all Peter's reforms was the greater glory of the Russian state.* | **military** *young soldiers keen to win military glory*
- VERB + GLORY **cover yourself in/with, get, win** *He covered himself in glory and came home a rich man.* ◇ *(informal) Typical! I do all the work and she gets all the glory.* | **bring (sb)** *Victory brought them glory, fame and riches.* | **bask in** | **steal, take** *It was 19-year-old David Hogan who stole the points and the glory with a brilliant goal in the closing minutes of the game.*
- GLORY + NOUN **days** *We remember the team's glory days in the 1960s, when they won the World Cup.*
- PREP. **for/to the ~ of** *They built many churches, great and small, to the glory of God.*
- PHRASES **a blaze of glory** *It's my last ever tournament and I hope to go out in a blaze of glory!* **sb's moment of glory** *His moment of glory came when he won the Olympic downhill skiing event.*

2 beauty/beautiful feature

- ADJ. **full** *You cannot appreciate the bridge's full glory by going over it; it is best viewed from below.* | **crowning** *The city's crowning glory is its Gothic cathedral.*
- PHRASES **in all her/his/its/their glory** *Autumn is the time to see the beech woods in all their glory.* **restore sth to its former glory** *The eighteenth-century building has been restored to its former glory.*

gloss *noun*

- ADJ. **clear, high** *Use a high gloss paint.* | **healthy, natural** *Your hair has lost its natural gloss.*
- VERB + GLOSS **add** *We used a gel to add gloss to her hair.* | **lose**
- GLOSS + NOUN **finish, paint, varnish** *furniture with a dark gloss finish*

glove *noun*

- ADJ. **long** | **fingerless** | **protective** | **cotton, kid** *(often figurative)*, **latex, leather, rubber, woollen** *Treat her with kid gloves—she's very sensitive.* | **boxing, driving, evening, gardening, oven, surgical**
- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + GLOVE **pull on** | **peel off, pull off** *She peeled off her glove to reveal a wedding ring.*
- GLOVE + NOUN **compartment** *Don't keep important documents in the glove compartment of your car.*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

glow *noun*

1 steady light

- ADJ. **cosy, rich, soft, warm** | **dim, dull, faint, pale** | **fierce** | **steady** | **eerie, ghostly**
- VERB + GLOW **cast, give sth, throw** *The lamplight gave a cosy glow to the room.* ◇ *The sunset threw an orange glow on the cliffs.* | **be bathed in** *The whole village was bathed in the glow of the setting sun.*
- GLOW + VERB **light sth** *Our faces were lit by the faint green glow of the dashboard lights.*
- PREP. **~ from** *the soft glow from the lamp* **~ of**

2 in sb's face

- ADJ. **healthy, pink, rosy, warm**
- VERB + GLOW **have** *Her cheeks had a healthy glow.*

- PHRASES **bring a glow to sb's cheeks/face** *The wine had brought a warm glow to her cheeks.*

3 feeling
- ADJ. **rosy, warm**
- VERB + GLOW **bask in, bathe in, feel** *She bathed in the warm glow of first love.*
- PREP. **~of** *He felt a glow of pride as he watched them.*

glow *verb*

1 give out light/heat
- ADV. **dully, faintly, softly** *Two lamps glowed softly in the lounge.*
- PHRASES **glow orange, red, etc.** *The stones around the bonfire glowed red with the heat.*

2 look healthy, happy, angry, etc.
- ADV. **positively**
- PREP. **with** *She was positively glowing with happiness.*

glue *noun*
- QUANT. **pot, tube** *All you will need is a sharp knife and a pot of glue.*
- VERB + GLUE **apply, put on** *Put glue on both the surfaces.* | **sniff** *He took to drinking and sniffing glue.*
- GLUE + VERB **dry, set** *It takes about half an hour for the glue to set.*

glue *verb*
- ADV. **firmly** | **down, in/into place, together** *Glue the pieces firmly together.*
- PREP. **onto/to** *Someone's glued this coin to the table!*

go *verb*

1 happen
- ADV. **smoothly, well** *Everything went very smoothly.* | **badly**

2 pass
- ADV. **quickly, slowly** *The holiday went very quickly.* | **by** *The days seemed to go by very slowly.*

3 look/taste good with sth
- ADV. **well** | **together** *Leeks and potatoes go well together in a soup.*
- PREP. **with** *That tie goes well with that shirt.*

PHRASAL VERBS

go down
- ADV. **badly, well**
- PREP. **with** *The novel went down well with the public.*

go on
- ADV. **endlessly**
- PREP. **about** *He goes on endlessly about his health problems.* **at** *Stop going on at me about that money.* **with** *We'll go on with the presentations after lunch.*
- PHRASES **go on and on** *The journey just seemed to go on and on.*

goal *noun*

1 wooden frame into which a ball is kicked/hit
- ADJ. **open** *He kicked the ball into an open goal.*
- VERB + GOAL **go in, play in** *The goalkeeper was injured so a defender had to go in goal.*
- PREP. **in~** *Who's in goal for Arsenal?*

2 point scored in a game
- ADJ. **brilliant, excellent, good, great, spectacular, stunning, superb, well-taken** | **scrappy, soft** *The fans were annoyed that the team gave away such a soft goal.* | **decisive, winning** | **equalizing** | **important, useful, vital** | **own** *Vega scored an unfortunate own goal when he slipped as he tried to clear the ball.*
- VERB + GOAL **get, score** | **kick** (in rugby) | **head** (in) | **make** *Visconti scored one goal himself and made two for Lupo.* | **concede, give away, let in** | **allow, disallow** *The referee disallowed the goal.*
- GOAL + VERB **come from sb/sth** *The equalizing goal came from Cole.* ◇ *The second goal came from a penalty.*
- PREP. **~ against** *They scored three goals against the home team.* **~for** *his first goal for Spain* **~from** *A late goal from Owen won the game for Liverpool.*

⇨ Special page at SPORT

3 aim
- ADJ. **immediate, short-term** *Our immediate goal is to earn enough money to keep the business going.* | **long-term, ultimate** | **main, major, primary, prime** | **clear, explicit, specific** | **ambitious** *They have set themselves some ambitious goals.* | **modest** | **desirable** | **achievable, attainable, realistic** | **unattainable, unrealistic** | **elusive** | **personal** | **common** *We are all working towards a common goal.* | **twin** *The prison service pursues the twin goals of the punishment and rehabilitation of offenders.* | **strategic** | **political**
- VERB + GOAL **have** *It is important to have explicit goals.* | **establish, set** (sb) | **pursue, strive for, work towards** | **achieve, attain, reach**
- PREP. **~of** *their goal of providing free university education for everyone*

goalkeeper *noun*
- ADJ. **brilliant, excellent, good** | **England, Liverpool, etc.** *The England goalkeeper played brilliantly.* | **international** | **reserve, substitute** | **veteran, young**
- PREP. **~for** *He now plays as goalkeeper for Liverpool.*

goat *noun*
- ADJ. **billy, male** | **female, nanny** | **wild** | **mountain**
- QUANT. **flock, herd**
- VERB + GOAT **keep** | **milk** | **tether** *Tethered goats grazed among the apple trees.*
- GOAT + VERB **bleat** | **graze** | **wander**
- PHRASES **goat's cheese/milk**

god *noun*
- ADJ. **pagan** | **Christian, Greek, Roman, etc.** | **heathen, false** *those who follow false gods* | **fertility** | **sun**
- VERB + GOD **believe in, follow, have** *Do you believe in God?* ◇ *Muslims have only one God.* | **praise, pray to, thank, worship** *The people worshipped pagan gods.*
- GOD + VERB **exist** *Can we prove that God exists?*
- PREP. **~of** *the Roman god of war*
- PHRASES **faith in God** *Nothing ever shook her faith in God.* **the will of God** *He saw the accident as the will of God.*

goddess *noun*
- ADJ. **pagan** | **Egyptian, Roman, etc.** | **fertility, mother** | **moon, sun** | **screen** (*figurative*) *She dreamed of becoming a Hollywood screen goddess.*
- VERB + GODDESS **pray to, worship**
- PREP. **~of** *Aphrodite, the goddess of love*

goggles *noun*
- ADJ. **protective, safety** | **driving, flying, motorcycle, ski, snow, swimming**
- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + GOGGLES **have on, wear** | **put on, take off**
- GOGGLES + VERB **steam up** *My swimming goggles keep steaming up so I can't see.*

gold *noun*

1 yellow metal
- ADJ. **pure** | **real** | **solid** | **fool's** | **9-carat, 18-carat, etc.** | **molten** | **beaten, rolled** | **burnished** | **tarnished**
- VERB + GOLD **extract, mine, produce** | **look for, pan**

for, prospect for *He spent weeks panning for gold in the river.* | **discover, find, strike** | **be set in** *The rubies were set in 18-carat gold.*

- GOLD + NOUN **mine, miner, mining, prospecting, prospector** | **rush** *a gold rush town* | **deposit, dust, nugget** | **bar, bullion, ingot** | **leaf, plate** | **market, reserves, stocks** *falling government gold stocks* | **standard** *The currency was tied to the gold standard.*
- PHRASES **a vein of gold** *In the afternoon he struck a rich vein of gold.*

2 (*also* **gold medal**) in sports

- ADJ. **Olympic**
- VERB + GOLD **get, take, win** *She got a gold in the long jump.* | **go for** *She's going for gold this time.*

golden *adj.*

- VERBS **be, gleam, look** *The abbey walls gleamed golden in the light of the setting sun.* | **turn** *The whole sky turned golden and red.*
- ADV. **faintly, softly** *the faintly golden afternoon light*

golf *noun*

- ADJ. **amateur, pro, pro-am, professional** *Amateur golf is very competitive.* | **mini/miniature** *The hotel offers miniature golf and other activities for children.*
- QUANT. **game, round**
- VERB + GOLF **play** | **take up** | **watch**
- GOLF + NOUN **course, links** | **hole** *The eighth at Banff is one of the world's great golf holes.* | **club** *She decided to join a golf club.* | **ball, bag, buggy, cart, club, equipment, glove, shoes, tee, umbrella** *You can borrow golf clubs if you want a game.* | **swing** *His coach says his golf swing needs improving.* | **game, match, tournament** | **title** | **handicap** *She has a golf handicap of 18.* | **professional, star** | **fan/fanatic** | **season** | **circuit, scene, tour** | **clinic, lesson** *The club is holding a golf clinic next week, where golfers can get advice from the pros.* | **correspondent, journalist, reporter, writer** | **magazine** | **holiday, package** *Choose from over 100 golf packages in our brochure.* | **widow** *She's been a golf widow since she gave her husband his first set of clubs.*

⇨ Special page at SPORT

golfer *noun*

- ADJ. **brilliant, good** | **experienced** | **handicap** *a low handicap golfer* | **champion, top** | **keen** | **amateur, professional** | **club**
- GOLFER + VERB **play**

good *noun*

- ADJ. **common** *The results of the research should be used for the common good rather than for individual profit.*
- VERB + GOOD **do (sb)** *You can try talking to her, but I don't think it will do much good.* ◇ *It will do you good to get out of the house more often.*
- PREP. **for sb/sth's ~** *When the prime minister's health problems continued, he resigned for the good of the party.*
- PHRASES **a force for good** *In disadvantaged areas, schools can be a force for good.* **for sb's (own) good** *I know you don't want to go into hospital, but it's for your own good.* **for the good of sth, good and evil** *the struggle between good and evil* **a power of good** *That holiday has done me a power of good.*

good *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste** | **become, get** *She's getting quite good at reading now.*
- ADV. **dead, extremely, really, very** *a really good film* | **fairly, pretty, quite** *You've done a pretty good job.*
- PREP. **at** *He's very good at music.* **for** *Vegetables are good for you.* **to** *She was very good to me when my husband died.* **with** *She's good with figures.*

good-looking *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, really, strikingly, terribly, very** | **not exactly, not particularly** *She was not exactly good-looking, but definitely attractive.* | **quite, rather, reasonably** *He was tall and quite good-looking.*

goods *noun*

- ADJ. **consumer, electrical, electronic, household, luxury** *a shop selling electrical goods* | **durable, perishable** *A 'use by' date must be stamped on all perishable goods.* | **mass-produced** | **cheap, low-priced** | **branded, own-label** *The supermarket's own-label goods are cheaper than branded goods.* | **duty-free** | **second-hand** | **defective, faulty, shoddy** | **stolen** *He was accused of handling stolen goods.* | **counterfeit, fake**
- VERB + GOODS **make, manufacture, produce** *factories which produce luxury goods for the export market* | **buy, purchase** | **export, import** | **sell, supply** | **deliver** *The goods will be delivered within ten days.* | **transport**
- GOODS + NOUN **train, vehicle, wagon** | **depot, yard**

goodwill *noun*

- VERB + GOODWILL **enjoy, have** | **create** *Addressing customers in their own language helps create goodwill.* | **win** | **lose** *They are in danger of losing the government's goodwill.* | **depend on, rely on** | **express, show**
- PREP. **~ to, ~ towards** *He expressed goodwill towards his former colleagues.*
- PHRASES **a gesture of goodwill** *The government released him as a gesture of goodwill.* **in a spirit of goodwill** *They made the offer in a spirit of goodwill.*

goose *noun*

- ADJ. **wild** | **roast**
- QUANT. **flock, gaggle** (only used for geese on the ground), **skein** (only used for geese that are flying)
- GOOSE + VERB **waddle** | **hiss, honk** | **feed, graze** | **migrate**

gorgeous *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, sound** *Doesn't Kate look gorgeous?*
- ADV. **really** | **absolutely, drop-dead, simply** *a drop-dead gorgeous Hollywood icon* | **rather**

gospel *noun* **the gospel**

- ADJ. **Christian**
- VERB + GOSPEL **bring, preach, proclaim, spread, take** *She preached the Christian gospel to the poor and destitute.* | **hear** *Thousands came to hear the gospel.*
- GOSPEL + NOUN **message, story**

gossip *noun*

1 rumours about other people

- ADJ. **latest** | **common** *It's common gossip in the office that she's about to leave her husband.* | **idle, malicious, salacious, silly**
- QUANT. **bit, piece, titbit** *I heard an interesting bit of gossip yesterday.*
- VERB + GOSSIP **spread** *Someone has been spreading malicious gossip about me.* | **exchange, swap** | **hear, listen to, pay attention to** *You shouldn't listen to idle gossip.*
- GOSSIP + VERB **circulate, go around/round** *A piece of silly gossip was going round the school.*
- GOSSIP + NOUN **column, columnist** *I saw it in the gossip column of the local newspaper.*

• PREP. **~about** *a magazine full of gossip about famous people*

2 conversation about other people

• ADJ. **good**

• VERB + GOSSIP **have**

• PREP. **~about** *We had a good gossip about the boss.* **~with** *She's having a gossip with Maria.*

govern *verb*

• ADV. **well | directly** *The colony was governed directly from Paris.*

• VERB + GOVERN **be fit/unfit to** *He accused the opposition party of being unfit to govern.*

government *noun*

1 people in control of a country

• ADJ. **central, federal, local, national, provincial, regional | Communist, Conservative, Labour, etc.** *the country's new Communist government* **| left-wing, right-wing | coalition | minority** *The socialists won 42% of the seats and formed a minority government.* **| caretaker, interim, transitional** *The president dissolved the assembly and swore in an interim government.* **| military | puppet | French, Western, etc.** *The report on world poverty calls for urgent action from Western governments.*

• VERB + GOVERNMENT **elect** *The present government was elected last year.* **| form** *A new government was formed in September of that year.* **| install** *A puppet government was installed as the occupying forces withdrew.* **| swear in | head, run** *a new government headed by a former military leader* **| bring down, destabilize, oust, overthrow, topple** *This crisis could bring down the British government.* ◇ *The group aims to overthrow the military government.*

• GOVERNMENT + VERB **come to power | take office** *On May 23 a coalition government took office.* **| fall, resign** *a national emergency that could cause the government to fall* **| announce sth** *The government announced the cancellation of the dam project.* **| introduce sth, launch sth**

• GOVERNMENT + NOUN **agency, body, department | funds, money | aid, assistance, backing, funding, grant, subsidy, support | expenditure, spending | cuts** *The hospital has been hit by government cuts.* **| control | intervention, involvement** *calls for government intervention in the dispute* **| minister, official, representative, spokesman | sources** *According to government sources, two people died in the incident.* **| figures, statistics | post | reshuffle** *The former minister was relieved of his post in last month's extensive government reshuffle.* **| decisions, legislation, measures, plans, policy, proposals | report | propaganda**

• PREP. **in ~** *a problem facing whichever party is in government* **under a/the ~** *measures that were introduced under the last government*

• PHRASES **a change of government** *It is time we had a change of government.* **the government of the day** *This was a decision taken by the government of the day.* **a member of a government** *The prime minister has been meeting members of the French government.*

2 act of governing

• ADJ. **democratic, representative | firm, good, strong** *We need strong government to take the country through this crisis.* **| weak**

governor *noun*

• ADJ. **deputy | acting, interim** *She was appointed as acting governor until an election could be held.* **| colonial, district, provincial, regional, state | imperial | military | prison, school | parent** *She served as a parent governor at her children's school.*

• VERB + GOVERNOR **appoint, appoint sb (as), co-opt, co-opt sb (as), elect, elect sb (as) | serve as**

• PHRASES **a board of governors**

gown *noun*

1 woman's long dress

• ADJ. **long | flowing** *She was dressed in a long flowing gown.* **| ball, bridal, evening, wedding**

• GOWN + VERB **be trimmed with sth** *She wore a white satin gown trimmed with lace.*

• PREP. **in a/the~**

2 worn by judges, surgeons, etc.

• ADJ. **academic | hospital, surgical**

• PREP. **in a/the~**

• PHRASES **town and gown** (= the permanent members of a university town and the members of its university)

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

GP *noun*

• ADJ. **excellent, good | qualified | experienced | family, local** *Who is your local GP?*

• VERB + GP **register with** *You should register with a GP as soon as possible.*

• GP + VERB **refer sb** *The GP referred her to a specialist.*

⇨ Note at DOCTOR (for more verbs)

grab *verb*

• ADV. **suddenly**

• VERB + GRAB **try to | manage to** *He managed to grab a couple of hours' sleep.*

• PREP. **at** *I grabbed at his arm as he ran past.* **by** *As he walked past the boys, one of them grabbed him by the arm.* **from** *Somebody tried to grab her handbag from her.*

• PHRASES **grab hold of sth** *He grabbed hold of a handrail to save himself from falling.*

grace *noun*

• ADJ. **easy, lithe, supple | natural | feline**

• VERB + GRACE **have, move with**

• PREP. **with ~** *Ann moved with easy grace.*

grade *noun*

1 level/quality

• ADJ. **high, top** *a piece of high grade building land* ◇ *He still wants to play top grade football.* **| low, poor** *low grade steel*

2 mark given for a piece of work/an exam

• ADJ. **final** *The oral exam constitutes 10% of the final grade.* **| excellent, good, high | low, poor**

• VERB + GRADE **achieve, attain, get, receive** *She got very good grades in her exams.* **| award (sb)**

3 level of importance/level of pay at work

• ADJ. **high, senior** *He has asked to be put onto a higher grade.* ◇ *large pay rises for senior grades* **| junior, low | management | manual**

• PREP. **at a/the ... ~** *She was offered a job at a lower grade.* **on a/the ... ~** *the people on management grades*

grade *verb*

• ADV. **carefully** *a series of modern stories carefully graded for beginner to intermediate students*

• PREP. **according to** *The timber is graded according to its thickness.* **by** *The containers are graded by size.* **from ... to ...** *Eggs are graded from small to extra large.*

gradient *noun*

• ADJ. **steep | gentle, slight | downhill, uphill**

• VERB + GRADIENT **have** *The road has a fairly steep gradient.*

• PREP. **on a ~** *The football pitch was on a slight gradient.*

graduate *noun*

- ADJ. **college, university** *job opportunities for university graduates* | **arts, engineering, history, law, medical, science, etc.** | **new, recent**
- GRADUATE + NOUN **course, degree, diploma** | **school** | **student** | **recruit, trainee** *He joined the company as a graduate trainee.* | **employment, recruitment** *The company places great importance on graduate recruitment and training.* | **unemployment**
- PREP. **~ in** *a graduate in sociology*

graduation *noun*

- ADJ. **college, university**
- GRADUATION + NOUN **ceremony, day** *Mark's whole family attended his graduation ceremony.*
- PREP. **after ~** *She managed to find a job immediately after graduation.* **on/upon ~** *On graduation, he plans to travel around Asia.*

graffiti *noun*

- ADJ. **political, racist**
- QUANT. **piece**
- VERB + GRAFFITI **daub, draw, scrawl, scribble, spray, write** *Graffiti was scribbled all over the walls.* | **be covered with, be daubed with, be sprayed with** *The buildings were covered with racist graffiti.*
- GRAFFITI + NOUN **artist** *a fashionable graffiti artist*

graft *noun*

1 on part of the body
- ADJ. **bone, skin**
- VERB + GRAFT **do** *Doctors are hoping to do a bone graft to repair the damaged bone.*
- GRAFT + VERB **take** *If the skin graft takes, then surgeons will do another operation a few weeks later.*

2 hard work
- ADJ. **hard** *Starting a new business involves a lot of hard graft.*
- VERB + GRAFT **do** *Most of the graft was done for them by their assistants.*

grain *noun*

1 seeds of wheat, etc.
- VERB + GRAIN **grow, produce** | **sow** | **store**
- GRAIN + NOUN **harvest, production, yield** | **exports, imports**

2 natural pattern of lines in wood
- ADJ. **fine, smooth** | **coarse, rough** | **natural** *This wood has a beautiful natural grain.*
- PREP. **across/against the ~, along/with the ~** *Cut the wood along the grain.*

gram *noun*

⇨ Note at MEASURE

grammar *noun*

- ADJ. **correct, good** *Spelling and good grammar are both very important.* | **bad, incorrect** | **Arabic, French, Latin, etc.** *the complexities of English grammar*
- VERB + GRAMMAR **correct, teach** *People were too polite to correct my grammar when spoke I German.* | **learn**
- GRAMMAR + NOUN **rules**
- PHRASES **the rules of grammar**

grammatical *adj.*

- VERBS **be, sound**
- ADV. **perfectly** *This sentence is perfectly grammatical.*

grandeur *noun*

- ADJ. **rugged** *the rugged grandeur of the mountains* | **breathtaking, dramatic, majestic, sheer** *the breathtaking grandeur of the cathedral* | **faded, former**

grandfather, grandmother *noun*

- ADJ. **maternal, paternal** | **doting**

grandparent *noun*

- ADJ. **maternal, paternal** | **doting** *a present from his doting grandparents*
- QUANT. **set** *I've sent photos of the children to both sets of grandparents.*

grant *noun*

- ADJ. **large, substantial** | **small** | **full** *The full student maintenance grant was rather less than £2 000.* | **annual** | **capital, lump-sum, purchase** *The school has received a large capital grant to improve its buildings.* | **maintenance** | **emergency** *emergency grants for special needs for items such as cookers and clothing* | **discretionary** | **mandatory** | **student** | **project, research** *There is a lot of competition for research grants.* | **clothing, conservation, (home) improvement, land, maternity, renovation, training, etc.** | **Arts Council, EU, government, local authority, etc.**
- VERB + GRANT **apply for** | **be eligible for, qualify for** *You may be eligible for a clothing grant.* | **get, obtain, receive** *You can get a grant if you've lived in the area for three years.* | **award (sb), give sb, make (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *The government has awarded a 3.5 million pound grant for the restoration of the opera house.* | **refuse sb** | **cut** *The theatre's annual grant from the Arts Council has been cut.*
- PREP. **~ for** *a grant for a youth project* **~ from** *a grant from the local authority*

grant *verb*

- ADV. **expressly, specifically** *the rights expressly granted by the terms of the lease* | **effectively** *The law effectively grants the company immunity from prosecution.*
- VERB + GRANT **agree to, decide to** | **refuse to** *The judge refused to grant him bail.* | **be willing to**

grape *noun*

- ADJ. **juicy, sweet** *lovely sweet grapes* | **black, green, purple, white** | **seedless**
- QUANT. **bunch**
- VERB + GRAPE **eat, have** | **harvest, pick** *The first grapes are harvested in mid-August.* | **crush, tread** *The peasants were treading the grapes in huge vats.*
- GRAPE + NOUN **harvest**

⇨ Special page at FRUIT

graph *noun*

- ADJ. **bar, line**
- VERB + GRAPH **draw, produce** | **depict sth as/on, show sth as/in/on** *The statistics can be depicted as a graph.* | **plot sth on** *The figures are all plotted on a graph.*
- GRAPH + VERB **show sth** *She drew a graph showing the relationship between costs and sales.*
- GRAPH + NOUN **paper**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *I decided to show the results in a bar graph.* **on a/the ~** *We can see on this graph how the company has grown over the last year.*
- PHRASES **in graph form** *Results can be shown in numeric or graph form.*

graphics *noun*

- ADJ. **computer | basic, simple** *The screen can display simple graphics as well as text.* **| colour | high-resolution | three-dimensional, two-dimensional**
- VERB + GRAPHICS **produce | display | manipulate** *The program can produce and manipulate text and graphics.* **| support** *The editor's PC should support desktop publishing and graphics.*
- GRAPHICS + NOUN **application, package, program, software, system | capability, performance | card, file, tablet, workstation | design, designer**

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

grasp *noun*

1 holding sth
- ADJ. **firm, strong** *She felt a firm grasp on her hand.*
- VERB + GRASP **slip from** *As she jumped forward, the ball slipped from her grasp.* **| prise sth from, rip sth from, snatch sth from, wrench sth from, wrest sth from** *She wrenched the bottle from his grasp.*
- PREP. **beyond your ~** *The key was on a high shelf, just beyond her grasp.* **in your ~** *He kept the letter firmly in his grasp.* **from sb's ~** *The robber tried to free the case from her grasp.* **out of sb's ~** *She kicked the gun out of his grasp.* **within (your) ~** (*often figurative*) *Just when victory seemed within grasp, the referee blew his whistle.*

2 understanding
- ADJ. **fine, firm, good, impressive, proper, sound | limited, poor | intellectual** *The task was beyond the intellectual grasp of some of the students.* **| intuitive** *We have no intuitive grasp of the immensity of time.*
- VERB + GRASP **have | get** *Working with native speakers helped me get a good grasp of the language.*
- PREP. **beyond your ~** *These ideas are all beyond his grasp.* **within your ~ | ~ of** *a poor grasp of mathematics*

grasp *verb*

1 take hold of sb/sth suddenly and firmly
- ADV. **firmly, tightly**
- PREP. **at** *Her hands were grasping at his coat.* **by** *She grasped him tightly by the wrist.*
- PHRASES **grasp hold of sb/sth** *She grasped hold of the banister to support herself.*

2 understand sth
- ADV. **fully** *He had not fully grasped the fact that he was the one who would pay for all this.* **| not really** *I hadn't really grasped what they were talking about.* **| quickly | easily, readily** *a means by which students can more easily grasp the basics of science*
- VERB + GRASP **try to | be unable to, fail to** *She failed to grasp the significance of these facts.* **| quick to** *He was quick to grasp the basic principles.* **| be difficult to, be hard to** *Some of these concepts are very difficult to grasp.*

grass *noun*

- ADJ. **green | coarse, rough, thick | lush | long, tall | short | fresh-cut, freshly-cut, freshly-mown | damp, wet | dry | wild**
- QUANT. **blade** *I've walked along that path for so many years I know every blade of grass.* **| clump, tuft** *There were only a few clumps of coarse grass for the animals to eat.*
- VERB + GRASS **eat | cut, mow | sow**
- GRASS + VERB **grow**
- GRASS + NOUN **clippings, cuttings | seed | verge** *We parked on the grass verge by the side of the road.*
- PREP. **across the ~** *They all set off across the grass.* **in the ~** *I found the wallet lying in the grass.* **on the ~** *You're not allowed to walk on the grass.* **through the ~** *The dog came running through the long grass.*

grate *verb*

1 rub sth into small pieces
- ADV. **coarsely | finely** *Sprinkle the top of the dish with some finely grated cheese.*
- PHRASES **freshly grated** *a teaspoon of freshly grated nutmeg*

2 make a sharp unpleasant sound
- ADV. **harshly**
- PREP. **against** *The steel of the helmet grated against the door.* **on** *The grit beneath her soles grated harshly on the wooden deck.*

grateful *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | remain**
- ADV. **deeply, enormously, especially, extremely, genuinely, immensely, more than, most, particularly, profoundly, really, terribly, truly, very** *We are deeply grateful to you and your family.* ◇ *I am more than grateful for their generous response.* ◇ *Thank you for your help. I really am most grateful.* **| almost** *His father looked almost grateful for once.* **| quite, rather | just, simply** *I'm just grateful the injury is not as bad as we'd feared.* **| always | eternally** *I'm eternally grateful that we managed to go there before the war.*
- PREP. **for** *I'm really grateful for your help.* **to** *I'm immensely grateful to you for your support.*

gratifying *adj.*

- VERBS **be | find sth**
- ADV. **extremely, most, particularly, very**
- PREP. **for** *It is most gratifying for me to know that my work has been useful.*

gratitude *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, profound | heartfelt, real, sincere | eternal, undying**
- VERB + GRATITUDE **feel** *the very deep gratitude I felt towards her* **| express, show | earn (sb)** *His kindness and support earned him her eternal gratitude.*
- PREP. **in ~** *He almost wept in gratitude when he saw the money.* **with ~** *I remember them with gratitude.* **| ~ at** *my gratitude at her thoughtfulness* **~ for, ~ to/towards** *I would like to express my deep sense of gratitude to the staff for their patience.*
- PHRASES **as a token of your gratitude** *I sent him some money as a token of my gratitude.* **owe a debt of gratitude to sb** *We owe her a deep debt of gratitude for her services.* **a feeling/sense of gratitude**

grave *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, shallow** *The body was found in a shallow grave in a nearby wood.* **| open** *The mourners threw flowers into the open grave.* **| freshly-dug | unmarked** *His body is buried in an unmarked grave.* **| mass** *A mass grave has been discovered in a wood outside the village.* **| watery** *He rescued her from a watery grave* (= saved her from drowning).
- VERB + GRAVE **dig | mark** *The grave was marked by a simple headstone.* **| desecrate** *Some of the graves have been desecrated by vandals.*
- PREP. **beyond the ~** *The old lady still influences the family from beyond the grave.* **in a/the ~** *I'll be in my grave by the time that happens!* **on a/the ~** *She puts fresh flowers on her husband's grave every Sunday.*

gravity *noun*

1 natural force
- ADJ. **weak, zero** *the weak gravity on the moon* **| strong**
- VERB + GRAVITY **be subject to** *All objects are subject*

to gravity. | **defy** *The building leans so much that it seems to defy gravity.*
- PREP. **by ~** *The water flows from the tank by gravity to the houses below.*
- PHRASES **centre of gravity** (*often figurative*) *Europe's economic centre of gravity shifted northwards.* **the force of gravity, the law/laws of gravity**

2 seriousness
- ADJ. **extreme** *I don't think you realize the extreme gravity of this offence.*
- VERB + GRAVITY **appreciate, realize, understand**
- PREP. **with ~** *Criminal law does not treat traffic offences with the gravity they deserve.*

graze *noun*

- ADJ. **minor, slight, small**
- VERB + GRAZE **get, have, suffer** *She suffered only minor grazes in the crash.*
- PREP. **~ on** *I've got a graze on my leg.*

graze *verb*

1 of animals
- ADV. **peacefully, quietly** *Sheep were grazing peacefully in the fields.*
- VERB + GRAZE **allow sth to, turn sth out to** *The cattle were turned out to graze.*
- PREP. **on/upon** *lambs grazing on the rough moorland pasture*

2 break the surface of your skin
- ADV. **badly** *She had grazed her elbow quite badly.*
- PREP. **on** *He fell and grazed his knees on a rock*

grease *noun*

- VERB + GREASE **be covered in/with, be smeared in/with** *The kitchen surfaces were all smeared with grease.* | **dissolve, remove**
- GREASE + NOUN **mark, spot, stain**
- PHRASES **a blob/smear of grease**

grease *verb*

- ADV. **well** | **lightly** *Place the cakes on a lightly greased baking tray.*

great *adj.*

1 large in amount/degree/size, etc.
- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **very** *The play was a very great success.*
- PHRASES **great big** *There's a great big hole in this sleeve.* **no great** *Don't worry. It's no great problem.*

2 admired
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **really, truly, very** *He was a truly great man.*

3 very good/pleasant
- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste** *You're looking great. Marriage must suit you!*
- ADV. **really** *That's really great news!* | **absolutely** *The food smells absolutely great.*

greatness *noun*

- ADJ. **true** *This book tells you nothing about the true greatness of his paintings.*
- VERB + GREATNESS **achieve** *those people who have achieved greatness* | **be destined for** *a woman who was destined for greatness*
- GREATNESS + VERB **lie** *Her greatness lies in her deep understanding of human nature.*

greed *noun*

- ADJ. **pure, sheer, simple** | **human, personal**
- VERB + GREED **satisfy** *She killed him to satisfy her greed.* | **be consumed by, be driven by**
- PREP. **~ for** *He was driven by greed for money and power.*

Greek *noun*

- ADJ. **ancient, classical** | **New Testament** | **modern**
- GREEK + NOUN **alphabet**

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

green *adj.*

- ADV. **very** | **quite, slightly** *The cloth looked slightly green in that light.*
- ADJ. **bottle, dark** | **light, pale** | **bright, brilliant, emerald, lime, lush, rich, vivid** *wearing an emerald green dress* ◇ *the lush green grass* | **dull** | **olive** *an olive green carpet*

⇨ Special page at COLOUR

greet *verb*

1 say hello to sb
- ADV. **cheerfully, enthusiastically, pleasantly, warmly** *The two men greeted one another warmly.* | **courteously, politely** | **coolly** *Stella greeted her mother coolly.*
- VERB + GREET **be there to, be waiting to** *You must be there to greet your guests.* ◇ *My parents were waiting to greet us at the door.* | **come to, rise to, turn to** *The president rose to greet his guests.*
- PREP. **with** *She greeted him with a quick kiss.*
- PHRASES **greet sb by name** *The head teacher greeted all the pupils by name.*

2 react to sth in particular way
- ADV. **enthusiastically** | **coolly** | **angrily** *The announcement was greeted angrily by the workers.*
- PREP. **with** *The news was greeted with astonishment.*

greeting *noun*

1 first words you say when you meet sb
- ADJ. **formal, friendly, polite**
- VERB + GREETING **call (out), nod, shout, smile, wave** *He jumped to his feet and called out a greeting.* ◇ *They said nothing, but nodded a polite greeting.* | **exchange** *The delegates shook hands and exchanged greetings.* | **acknowledge, respond to, return** *I said 'Good morning!', but she didn't return the greeting.* | **ignore**
- PREP. **in ~** *He held out his hand in greeting.*

2 greetings good wishes
- ADJ. **affectionate, personal, warm** | **birthday, Christmas, New Year, seasonal**
- VERB + GREETINGS **bring, extend, send (sb)** *He brought Christmas greetings from the whole family.* ◇ *We extend our greetings to you and thank you for listening to us.*
- GREETINGS + NOUN **card**

gregarious *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **highly, very** *These animals are highly gregarious.*

grenade *noun*

- ADJ. **hand, smoke, stun** | **rocket-propelled** | **live**
- VERB + GRENADE **be armed with, carry, have** *The hijackers were armed with hand grenades.* | **hold** *She was holding the grenade above her head, ready to throw.* | **hurl, lob, throw, toss** *I tossed the grenade through the open door.* | **pull the pin out of**
- GRENADE + VERB **fall, land** | **explode, go off**
- GRENADE + NOUN **attack** | **launcher**

grey *adj.*

1 of the colour between black and white
- ADV. **very** *The sky looks very grey. I think it's going to rain.* | **quite, rather, slightly**
- ADJ. **dark** | **light, pale** *a light grey suit* | **silvery, slate**

⇨ Special page at COLOUR

2 with grey hair
- VERBS **be** | **go, turn** *He went grey before he was forty.*
- ADV. **very** | **completely** *She was completely grey by the age of thirty.*

grid *noun*

1 pattern of lines that cross each other
- ADJ. **rectangular, square** | **regular**
- GRID + NOUN **line, pattern, square, system** *The artist drew a set of grid lines over the area to be painted.*

2 system of squares drawn on a map
- GRID + NOUN **line, reference, square** *The grid lines on the map run north-south. ◇ An Ordnance Survey grid reference gives the position of a place to within 100 metres.*

3 system of electric cables
- ADJ. **national** | **electricity**
- GRID + NOUN **system** *Power can be fed from wind generators into the electricity grid system.*

grief *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, deep, great, inconsolable, real** | **private** *I felt awkward at intruding on their private grief.*
- VERB + GRIEF **be overcome with, be stricken with, experience, feel** *Her parents were stricken with grief.* | **express, show** | **die from/of** | **come to terms with, cope with, deal with** *struggling to come to terms with their grief* | **cause (sb)** *Such behaviour can cause considerable grief.*
- PREP. **~ at** *Children can feel real grief at the loss of a pet.* **~ for** *her grief for her dead husband*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of grief**

grievance *noun*

- ADJ. **genuine, legitimate, real** *Some people will complain even if they have no genuine grievance.* | **imaginary, imagined** | **long-standing, old** | **individual, personal** | **economic, social** *By the 1530s social grievances were again being voiced.*
- VERB + GRIEVANCE **harbour, have, nurse** *She still nursed her old grievance.* | **air, express, vent, voice** | **hear** (*formal*), **listen to** *MPs spend many hours listening to the real or imagined grievances of their constituents.* | **redress, remedy, settle** *Managers would make every effort to remedy individual grievances as they arose.*
- PREP. **~ about/over** *The meeting will be a chance to air your grievances about the organization.* **~ against** *He had a personal grievance against the professor.*
- PHRASES **a sense of grievance**

grieve *verb*

- ADV. **deeply** *She had grieved deeply for her father.* | **still**
- PREP. **for** *They are still grieving for their child.* **over** *grieving over the loss of his daughter*

grill *noun*

1 part of a cooker
- ADJ. **hot** *Cook under a hot grill for 7 minutes.* | **eye-level** | **electric, gas**
- VERB + GRILL **preheat** *Preheat the grill to medium.*
- GRILL + NOUN **pan**
- PREP. **under a/the ~** *Place the chops in the grill pan, and put it under the grill.*

2 framework of metal bars that you cook food on
- ADJ. **charcoal**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *Once the charcoal is glowing, place the food on the grill, turning it regularly.*

grimace *noun*

- ADJ. **little, slight, small** | **ugly** | **rueful, wry** | **facial**
- VERB + GRIMACE **give, make** *She made a wry grimace.* | **twist into** *His face twisted into a grimace.*
- GRIMACE + VERB **twist sth** *An ugly grimace twisted her face.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *He acknowledged his mistake with a wry grimace.* | **~ of** *a grimace of disgust/pain*

grimace *verb*

- ADV. **slightly** | **ruefully, wryly**
- PREP. **at** *He grimaced slightly at the pain. ◇ She grimaced at him.* **in** *She grimaced in disgust.*

grime *noun*

- VERB + GRIME **be covered in/with**
- PHRASES **a layer of grime** *Over the years, the painting has become covered in a thick layer of grime*

grin *noun*

- ADJ. **big, broad, huge, large, wide** | **faint, feeble** | **friendly, sympathetic** | **infectious** | **lazy** | **fatuous, foolish, goofy, silly** | **boyish, cheeky, impish, mischievous, sly** *Edmund looked up with an impish grin.* | **bashful, sheepish** | **sickly** | **rueful, sardonic, wry** | **self-deprecatory, self-mocking** | **knowing** | **insane, manic** | **grim, humourless, mirthless** | **evil, ferocious, hideous, wicked, wolfish** | **crooked, lopsided** | **gap-toothed, toothless, toothy**
- VERB + GRIN **crack, force, give (sb)** *He gave the photographer a big grin.* | **break into, split into** *The old man's face broke into a grin.* | **hide, restrain, stifle** *She tried to stifle a grin.*
- GRIN + VERB **broaden, grow broader/wider, widen** | **appear, spread across/over sth** *A mischievous grin spread across the little girl's face.* | **disappear, fade** *His wry grin faded.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *'Fooled you!' he said, with a cheeky grin.* | **~ at** *a grin at his wife* **~ of** *a grin of triumph*
- PHRASES **take/wipe the grin off your face** *Take that grin off your face!* **wipe the grin off sb's face** *I'll soon wipe that silly grin off her face.*

grin *verb*

- ADV. **broadly, widely** *He appeared in the doorway grinning broadly.* | **weakly** | **crookedly** | **cheerfully, happily** | **amiably** | **cheekily, impishly, mischievously** | **triumphantly** | **inanely** | **sheepishly** *He just stood there, tongue-tied and grinning sheepishly.* | **apologetically, ruefully, wryly** *She grinned apologetically when she saw him.* | **unrepentantly** | **conspiratorially** | **wickedly** | **maliciously, wolfishly** | **sourly** | **back, down, up** *She relaxed and grinned wickedly back at him. ◇ He lay grinning impishly up at me.*
- PREP. **at** *He stopped eating to grin at me.* **to** *She grinned to herself at the thought.* **with** *They grinned with pleasure.*
- PHRASES **grin from ear to ear** *She looked at us, grinning from ear to ear.*

grind *verb*

- ADV. **coarsely** | **finely** *The cement need not be finely ground.* | **down, up** *Grind the seeds down to a powder.*
- PREP. **into** *machinery for grinding wheat into flour* **to** *The coffee is ground to a fine powder.*
- PHRASES **freshly ground** *freshly ground black pepper*

grip *noun*

1 hold on sth

• ADJ. **firm, good, secure, strong, tight | cruel, crushing, fierce, iron, painful, punishing, vice-like** *Her upper arms were seized in an iron grip.* | **restraining**

• VERB + GRIP **have** *He still had a firm grip on my arm.* | **get, take** *Taking a tight grip on the hook, he began to pull it towards himself.* | **keep** *Keep a secure grip on the rope at all times.* | **lose** *She slipped and lost her grip of the rope.* | **tighten** *Robert tightened his grip on her shoulder.* | **loosen, relax, release, slacken**

• GRIP + VERB **tighten | loosen, relax, slacken** *His grip slackened and she tore herself away.*

• PREP. **in a/sb's ~** *Hold the microphone in a firm grip.* ◇ *She was powerless in his vice-like grip.* | **~ on** *She relaxed her grip on the door frame.*

2 power/control

• ADJ. **firm, iron, powerful, strong, tight, vice-like**

• VERB + GRIP **have** *The Church does not have a strong grip on the population.* | **get, take** *The government needs to get a grip on this problem.* ◇ (*informal*) *Get a grip!* (= take control of yourself, your life, etc.) | **keep** *We need to keep a tight grip on costs.* | **strengthen, tighten** *They managed to strengthen their grip on the southern part of the country.* | **lose** (*informal*) *Sometimes I feel I'm losing my grip* (= losing control of my life, etc.)

• PREP. **in sth's ~** *Winter still held them in its iron grip.* ◇ *a country in the grip of recession* | **~ on** *The government does not seem to have a very firm grip on the economy.*

• PHRASES **come/get to grips with sth** (= to begin to take control of sth or understand sth difficult) *I'm slowly getting to grips with the language.*

grip *verb*

• ADV. **firmly, hard, tightly | gently, lightly**

• PREP. **at** *She gripped hard at the arms of her chair.* **by** *He gripped her gently by the shoulders.*

grit *noun*

1 small pieces of stone

• QUANT. **bit, piece** *A bit of grit had got into my eye.*

2 courage/determination

• ADJ. **sheer, true**

• VERB + GRIT **have** *Don't give in yet. You have more grit than that.* | **display, show** *The team showed their true grit and played a magnificent game.* | **take** *It takes sheer grit to stand up to a bully like that.*

groan *noun*

• ADJ. **loud** *He let out a loud groan of frustration.* | **little, small | deep, low | harsh, hoarse | muffled**

• VERB + GROAN **give, let out, utter | stifle, suppress | hear**

• PREP. **with a ~** *He stood up slowly with a groan of pain.* | **~ of**

⇨ Note at SOUND

groan *verb*

• ADV. **loudly | quietly, softly | aloud, out loud | inwardly** *He groaned inwardly at the thought of spending another day in that place.*

• PREP. **at, in** *She groaned out loud in protest.* **with** *Some of the patients were groaning with pain.*

• PHRASES **moan and groan** *There's no point in moaning and groaning about not having any money.*

groomed *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look** *She is always perfectly groomed.*

• ADV. **well | immaculately, impeccably, meticulously, perfectly | beautifully | sleekly, smoothly**

groove *noun*

• ADJ. **deep, shallow | narrow, wide**

• VERB + GROOVE **carve, cut, make** *Running water had carved a groove down the face of the wall.*

• PREP. **~ in** *a deep groove in the surface of the rock*

grope *verb*

• ADV. **blindly | vaguely | about/around/round**

• PREP. **for** *She groped blindly for the door handle.*

• PHRASES **grope your way** *I groped my way across the pitch-black stage.*

ground *noun*

1 solid surface of the earth

• ADJ. **firm, hard | muddy, soft, wet | dry, dusty | fertile** (*often figurative*) *The fall of the old regime provided fertile ground for opportunism.*

• VERB + GROUND **fall to, hit** *The helicopter burst into flames when it hit the ground.* | **reach** *She's so short, her feet don't reach the ground when she sits down.* | **get off, leave** *The plane was so overloaded it couldn't leave the ground.* ◇ (*figurative*) *His plan is too costly to ever get off the ground.*

• GROUND + NOUN **level** *A waterproof membrane is built into the wall just above ground level.*

• PREP. **above/below ~** *The roots may spread as far below ground as does the foliage above ground.* **in the ~** *a hole in the ground* **on the ~** *He sat down on the ground.* **under the ~** *The tunnel goes deep under the ground.*

2 area of land

• ADJ. **high, low** *The village stands on high ground and is not prone to flooding.* | **open | difficult, rocky, rough, stony, uneven | marshy**

• QUANT. **patch, piece** *We found a patch of open ground in the middle of the woods.*

3 piece of land used for a particular purpose

• ADJ. **burial | dumping | cricket, football, practice, rugby, sports, training | parade | breeding, feeding, hunting**

• PREP. **at a/the ~** *I'll meet you at the football ground.* **in a/the ~** *all the graves in the burial ground*

4 **grounds** land surrounding a large building

• ADJ. **extensive | castle, hospital, palace, school, etc.**

• VERB + GROUNDS **be set in, have** *The palace is set in extensive grounds.*

• PREP. **in the ~ (of)** *Many estate workers lived in cottages in the grounds of the castle.*

5 area of interest/study/discussion

• ADJ. **familiar, firm, home** *I was on more familiar ground now that we were talking about our own system.* | **dangerous, shaky** *Legally, we're on very shaky ground* (= our actions may not be legal). | **safe | common** *Both parties in the debate shared some common ground.*

• VERB + GROUND **cover, go over** *Several researchers have published articles covering this ground.* ◇ *We just seem to be going over the same ground that we covered last year.*

• PREP. **on … ~** *He knew he was on dangerous ground talking about money.*

• PHRASES **break new ground** *Her architectural designs have broken new ground.*

6 **grounds** reason for sth

• ADJ. **good, reasonable, sufficient, valid**

• VERB + GROUNDS **have** *The constable had reasonable grounds for arresting her.* | **give (sb)** *His evasiveness gave grounds for the suspicion that he knew more than he was saying.*

• PREP. **on … ~s** *Permission to open a mine was denied on environmental grounds.* **on the ~s of** *He resigned from his post on the grounds of ill health.* | **~ for** *Drunkenness at work was sufficient grounds for instant dismissal.*

ground *verb* **be grounded in/on sth**

- ADV. **firmly** *His book is firmly grounded in memories of his own childhood.*

grounding *noun*

- ADJ. **good, solid, thorough | basic**
- VERB + GROUNDING **have** *All applicants for the job should have a basic grounding in computer skills.* | **get | give (sb), provide (sb with)** *The course should give you a thorough grounding in financial matters.*
- PREP. **~in** *to get a good grounding in science*

groundless *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem**
- ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly** *Our fears proved totally groundless.* | **largely**

groundwork *noun*

- ADJ. **basic**
- VERB + GROUNDWORK **do, lay, prepare, provide (sb with)** *The first meeting laid the groundwork for the final agreement.* ◇ *The first year provides the basic groundwork for the pupils' study of maths.*
- PREP. **~for** *We are already doing the groundwork for the introduction of the scheme next year.*

group *noun*

- ADJ. **big, large, wide** *She has a very wide group of friends.* | **select, small** *The president met with a select group of senior ministers.* | **coherent, cohesive, tight, tightly-knit** *The strangers who came together for the course soon became a cohesive group.* | **minority** *Disabled drivers are an ever-growing minority group.* | **cultural, ethnic, racial | family** *The animals live in family groups of 10–20 individuals.* | **age, peer** *young people in this age group* ◇ *He started smoking because of peer-group pressure.* | **discussion** *a discussion group that meets once a month* | **self-help | action, pressure** *Local parents have formed an action group to campaign for better road safety.* | **splinter** *A few members of the party broke away to form a splinter group.* | **theatre | pop, rock | blood** *What blood group are you?*
- VERB + GROUP **form, found, set up, start | divide sb/sth into** *We divided the class into small groups.* | **manage, run | become a member of, join | leave** *He left the group last year to pursue a solo career.*
- GROUP + VERB **form** *The group formed back in 1992.* | **split up** *The group has split up and re-formed several times with different musicians.*
- GROUP + NOUN **member**
- PREP. **as a ~** *The gorillas go foraging for food as a group.* **in a/the ~** *There are fifteen of us in the group.* **within a/the ~** *Within a group, each individual had a definite status.* | **~of** *a group of young mothers*

⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION

group *verb*

- ADV. **closely | loosely | thematically** *Works in the exhibition are grouped thematically.* | **together**
- PREP. **according to** *Eggs were grouped according to colour and size.* **around/round** *They sat grouped around the fire.* **by** *The children were grouped by age.* **in/into** *These stories can be loosely grouped into three types.* **with** *The England team was grouped with Uruguay and Holland.*
- PHRASES **group sth under a heading** *The names were grouped under four different headings.*

grow *verb*

1 increase

- ADV. **fast, quickly, rapidly | slowly | steadily | exponentially** *Well before a billionth of a second had elapsed the universe started to grow exponentially.*
- VERB + GROW **seem to | begin to, start to | continue to | be expected to**
- PREP. **by** *Profits are expected to grow by 10% next year.* **from** *Her media empire grew from quite small beginnings.* **in** *She continued to grow in confidence* **into** *The village grew into a town.*

2 of a person/animal

- ADV. **fast, quickly, rapidly | slowly**
- PREP. **into** *The small puppy quickly grew into a very large dog.*

3 of plants/hair

- ADV. **well** *Tomatoes grow best in direct sunlight.* | **fast, quickly, rapidly | slowly | steadily | thickly** *the nettles that grew thickly round the boathouse* | **outwards, upwards** *As the island subsided the reef grew upwards and outwards.*
- VERB + GROW **allow sth to, let sth** *She decided to let her hair grow.*
- PREP. **from** *The tree grew from a small acorn.* **into** *Small acorns grow into great oak trees.*
- PHRASES **grow unchecked** *A rose in full bloom had been allowed to grow unchecked up one of the walls.*

4 make plants grow

- ADV. **organically** *organically grown produce*
- VERB + GROW **be easy to** *an attractive plant which is very hardy and easy to grow*

growl *noun*

- ADJ. **low | husky, soft, throaty | aggressive, threatening** *The dog gave a threatening growl.*
- VERB + GROWL **give, let out | hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *He spoke with a deep soft growl in his throat.* | **~of** *The growl of the engine.*

⇨ Note at SOUND

growl *verb*

- ADV. **angrily, savagely** *'I'm a desperate man,' he growled savagely.* | **softly, throatily**
- PREP. **at** *The dog growled softly at me.* **with** *Her stomach was growling with hunger.*

growth *noun*

1 increase in sth

- ADJ. **considerable, dramatic, enormous, exponential, impressive, phenomenal, significant, spectacular, strong, tremendous** *the exponential growth in world population* | **explosive, fast, rapid** *the explosive growth of personal computers in the 1990s* | **modest, slow, steady** *The factory has achieved a steady growth in output.* | **low** *a vicious circle of low growth and low productivity* | **long-term | economic, industrial | population**
- VERB + GROWTH **achieve | maintain, sustain | encourage, promote, stimulate | control** *new measures to control the growth of traffic on the roads*
- GROWTH + NOUN **rate** *The economy enjoyed the highest growth rate in Asia.* | **area, industry** *Communications technology has proved to be a growth area.*
- PREP. **~in** *There was a rapid growth in the numbers of private cars.*
- PHRASES **a rate of growth**

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

2 growing

- ADJ. **healthy, normal** *A good diet is vital for healthy growth.* | **excessive** *the excessive growth of algae in rivers* | **intellectual, personal, spiritual**
- VERB + GROWTH **encourage** *Give the plants a good pruning to encourage growth.* | **stunt** *Lack of food had stunted his growth.*
- GROWTH + NOUN **hormone**

3 abnormal lump in the body

- ADJ. **cancerous, malignant | benign**
- VERB + GROWTH **have**
- PREP. **~on** *He had a cancerous growth on his lung.*

grudge *noun*

- ADJ. **long-standing, old** *It's time to forget old grudges.* **| personal**
- VERB + GRUDGE **bear, harbour, have, hold, nurse** *I don't hold grudges for very long.*
- PREP. **~against** *Do you know anyone who might harbour a grudge against you?*

gruesome *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **horribly, particularly, truly | pretty, rather** *a rather gruesome sight*

grunt *noun*

- ADJ. **little | low | non-committal** *He gave a non-committal grunt in reply.*
- VERB + GRUNT **give, let out | hear**
- PREP. **with a~** *He lifted the heavy box with a grunt.* **| ~of** *a grunt of pain*

⇨ Note at SOUND

grunt *verb*

- ADV. **loudly | merely, only** *He merely grunted at her and nodded his head.*
- PREP. **at** *His father grunted at him as he left the room.* **in** *She asked him a question and he grunted in reply.* ◇ *He grunted in pain.* **with** *She stirred the soup, grunting with satisfaction.*
- PHRASES **grunt and groan** *Grunting and groaning, they heaved the wardrobe up the stairs.*

guarantee *noun*

1 written promise by a company

- ADJ. **full | lifetime, three-year, two-year, etc. | money-back**
- VERB + GUARANTEE **carry, come with, have** *All our products come with a two-year guarantee.* **| give (sb), issue, offer (sb)**
- PREP. **under~** *The car is still under guarantee, so you should be able to get it repaired free of charge.* **| ~against** *The window frames carry a 20-year guarantee against rot or decay.* **~for** *The garage gives a year's guarantee for all repair work.* **~on** *The contractors offer a full money-back guarantee on all their work.*

2 promise that sth will be done/will happen

- ADJ. **absolute, cast-iron, firm, reliable | long-term | constitutional, personal** *The country gives a constitutional guarantee of the rights of minorities.*
- VERB + GUARANTEE **give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with) | demand, want | get** *We didn't get any firm guarantee of a loan.*
- PREP. **~against** *There was no guarantee against misuse of the king's power.* **~for** *The demonstrators were demanding guarantees for fair elections.* **~of** *Driving into town early is no longer a guarantee of getting a parking space.*

guarantee *verb*

1 promise to do sth/promise sth will happen

- ADV. **absolutely** *I can absolutely guarantee that you will enjoy the show.* **| personally** *I personally guarantee total and immediate support in all measures undertaken.*
- VERB + GUARANTEE **be able to, can**

2 give a written promise about the quality of sth

- PHRASES **be fully guaranteed** *All our electrical goods are fully guaranteed.*

3 make sth certain to happen

- ADV. **absolutely | almost, practically, virtually | effectively** *The complicated electoral system effectively guarantees the president's re-election.* **| automatically** *The process of training and qualification does not automatically guarantee you a job.* **| by no means, not necessarily** *The outcome is by no means guaranteed.*

guard *noun*

1 person who guards sb/sth

- ADJ. **armed, uniformed** *The building is protected by armed guards.* **| border, prison, security**
- VERB + GUARD **post** *Guards had been posted all around the radio station.*
- GUARD + VERB **patrol sth** *Guards patrolled the perimeter fence.* **| protect sth**
- GUARD + NOUN **duty | dog**

2 being ready to prevent attack or danger

- ADJ. **close | constant | armed** *The accused was taken to court under armed guard.* **| police**
- VERB + GUARD **keep, mount, stand** *Soldiers stood guard on the city gates.*
- PREP. **off your~** *The question seemed to catch him off his guard.* **on (your)~** *Several police officers were on guard outside the factory.* ◇ *He was always on his guard against moneymaking schemes.* **under~** *The prisoners were under close guard.* **| ~against, ~over** *Two police officers kept guard over the burnt-out building.*

3 group of soldiers/policemen who guard sb/sth

- ADJ. **civil, national, palace, presidential | advance**
- VERB + GUARD **change** *The guard was changed every two hours.* **| call out** *It would only be a matter of minutes before the alarm was raised and the guard called out.*
- PHRASES **guard of honour** *Fellow soldiers from Corporal Smith's regiment formed a guard of honour at his wedding.*

guard *verb*

- ADV. **well** *The mountain pass is well guarded.* **| carefully** *a bird carefully guarding its eggs* **| fiercely, jealously** *She jealously guarded her position of power.*
- PREP. **against** *guarding the city against attack* **from** *pop stars who need to be guarded from their fans*
- PHRASES **closely/heavily/securely guarded** *The military base is closely guarded.* **guard sb/sth with your life** *He was under instructions to guard the key with his life.* **strictly/tightly guarded** *strictly guarded privacy*

guardian *noun*

1 person/institution that guards/protects sth

- ADJ. **self-appointed** *She has become the self-appointed guardian of the nation's conscience.* **| moral**
- VERB + GUARDIAN **act as** *The village people act as guardians of the land.*

2 person who is responsible for a child

- ADJ. **legal**
- VERB + GUARDIAN **appoint, appoint sb (as)** *The court appoints a legal guardian for the child.* **| act as**

guerrilla *noun*

- ADJ. **armed | urban** *Urban guerrillas detonated a car bomb in front of the company's headquarters.* **| communist, opposition, right-wing, separatist, etc.**
- GUERRILLA + NOUN **army, band, force, group, movement, organization, unit | commander, fighter, leader | activity, attack, campaign, offensive, raid, resistance, struggle, war, warfare** *Ten years of guerrilla resistance followed the occupation.* **| tactics**

guess *noun*

- ADJ. **fair, good, reasonable, safe** *April is the best guess for first deliveries.* | **calculated, educated, informed, inspired, intelligent** *As a vet, he could make an educated guess as to what was wrong with his stomach.* | **rough, wild** *At a rough guess, I'd say we're about twenty miles from home.* | **lucky** *'How did you know?' 'It was just a lucky guess.'*
- VERB + GUESS **have, hazard, make, take** *If you don't know the answer, have a guess.* ◇ *If I might hazard a guess ...* | **give sb** *'Where's Tom?' 'I'll give you three guesses!'* (= the answer is fairly obvious and you should guess it easily)
- PREP. **at a ~** *At a guess, I'd say there's a problem with the fuel pump.* | **~ about/as to/at** *He made a wild guess as to how much the piano might cost.*

guess *verb*

- ADV. **correctly, right** | **incorrectly, wrong** *Jane had guessed wrong about who was responsible for the fire.* | **never** *You'll never guess what she told me.*
- VERB + GUESS **can/could** *Can you guess his age?* | **can only** *We can only guess how fast a dinosaur might have run.* | **try to** | **be easy to, not be difficult to, not be hard to** *It's not hard to guess where they went.*
- PREP. **at** *I was only guessing at her age.* **from** *She guessed from his expression that he had not won.*
- PHRASES **could/might/should have guessed** *So it was Rob who broke the window? I might have guessed!* **let me guess** *What star sign are you? No, let me guess.*

guesswork *noun*

- ADJ. **pure** | **informed, inspired** *Their results owe more to informed guesswork than to actual knowledge.*
- VERB + GUESSWORK **be based on** *Their price estimates are based on pure guesswork.*
- PHRASES **a matter of guesswork** *Long-term forecasts were largely a matter of guesswork.*

guest *noun*

1 person that you invite to your home
- ADJ. **house** | **honoured, welcome** *She was treated as an honoured guest.* ◇ *You are always a welcome guest in our house.* | **unexpected, uninvited** *She tactfully discouraged their uninvited guests from staying longer.* | **unwanted, unwelcome** *The refugees were made to feel like unwanted guests in the country.*
- VERB + GUEST **invite** *She had invited six guests.* | **entertain** *She felt that she had to entertain her guests.*
- GUEST + NOUN **room**

2 person invited to an event
- ADJ. **chief, principal** *The athlete was chief guest at the schools sports day.* | **dinner, party, reception, restaurant, wedding** *The best man and his assistants welcomed the reception guests as they arrived.*
- VERB + GUEST **greet, welcome**
- GUEST + VERB **attend sth** *The banquet was attended by 200 guests.*
- GUEST + NOUN **list**
- PHRASES **a guest of honour**

3 person who is staying at a hotel
- ADJ. **hotel** | **frequent, regular**

4 at a public event/on a radio or television show
- ADJ. **special** *Film star Matt Damon is one of the special guests on tonight's programme.*
- GUEST + NOUN **artist, celebrity, star** *Guest artists from all over Europe will take part in the concert.* | **speaker** | **appearance** *She made a rare guest appearance on the programme.*

guidance *noun*

- ADJ. **careful, clear, detailed, precise** | **firm** *Parents need to provide their children with firm guidance.* | **gentle** | **helpful** *The handbook gives helpful guidance on writing articles.* | **practical** | **general** *These notes are for general guidance only.* | **divine, expert, parental** *She prayed for divine guidance.* | **technical** | **marriage** | **career, vocational** | **ethical, moral**
- VERB + GUIDANCE **give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *We can give guidance to students on which courses to choose.* | **need** | **ask for, look to sb for, seek** *Children look to their parents for guidance.* ◇ *I think you should seek guidance from your solicitor on this matter.*
- PREP. **under ... ~, under the ~ of** *Volunteers are restoring the building under expert guidance.* | **~ about** *The Careers Officer also offers guidance about university courses.* **~ as to** *Guidance must be given as to what tasks the learner should attempt.* **~ on** *The Safety Officer provides guidance on firefighting and office safety.*

guide *noun*

1 sth that helps you plan what you are going to do
- ADJ. **approximate, rough** | **accurate**
- VERB + GUIDE **give (sb), provide (sb with)** | **use sth as** *Use the table below as a guide to how much washing powder to use.*
- PREP. **~ as to** *These figures give a rough guide as to the sales we can expect.* **~ to**

2 book that gives information about a subject
- ADJ. **essential, good, helpful, informative, invaluable, practical, reliable, useful, valuable** | **brief, quick, short, simple** | **complete, comprehensive, definitive, in-depth** *This book is the definitive guide to world cuisine.* | **step-by-step** *a step-by-step guide to creating your own website* | **reference** *The book contains a quick reference guide to essential grammar at the back.*
- PREP. **~ to** *a guide to British birds*

3 person
- ADJ. **tour, tourist** *Our tour guide showed us around the old town.*
- VERB + GUIDE **act as, be** *He agreed to go with them and act as their guide.*

4 book for tourists
- ADJ. **holiday, travel** | **hotel** | **street**
- VERB + GUIDE **consult** *We consulted our guides as we walked around the cathedral.* | **write** | **publish**

guide *verb*

1 influence sb's behaviour
- ADV. **firmly**
- VERB + GUIDE **help (to)** *the information and data which help guide the affairs of the business* | **try to**
- PREP. **into** *the ways in which young people are guided into employment* **on** *Schools were firmly guided on the details of the curriculum*

2 explain sth/help sb
- ADV. **carefully** *Their teacher Phil Bailey carefully guides them through rehearsals.*
- VERB + GUIDE **help (to)**
- PREP. **in** *He guided me in my research.* **on** *guiding teachers on how to maintain discipline* **through** *He guided us through the intricacies of the divorce law.*

3 help sb move
- ADV. **gently** *He took her arm, gently guiding her.*
- PREP. **across, along, etc.** *She guided him across the busy road.* **to/towards** *He guided her hand to his face.*

guideline *noun*

- ADJ. **clear, good, helpful, practical, reliable, useful** | **broad, general, simple** | **detailed, explicit** | **strict, tight**

| **EU, government** | **planning, safety** | **ethical, financial, legal**
- QUANT. **set** *The organization has issued a set of guidelines for builders to follow.*
- VERB + GUIDELINE **develop, draw up, lay down, set out** | **give (sb), issue, offer (sb), provide (sb with), suggest** *The document gives clear guidelines on the use of pesticides.* | **adhere to, apply, follow, stick to** *We have to follow the safety guidelines laid down by the government.* | **breach, ignore** *The minister is accused of allowing the company to breach guidelines on arms sales.*
- GUIDELINE + VERB **apply** *The same general guidelines on when to dress formally apply to both men and women.*
- PREP. **within ~** *Within clear guidelines, managers can use their budget to entertain clients.* | **~ about** *detailed guidelines for doctors about how to deal with difficult patients* **~ for** *The article suggests some guidelines for healthy eating.* **~ from** *guidelines from the Department of Health* **~ on** *new EU guidelines on food hygiene*

guilt *noun*

1 feeling
- ADJ. **dreadful, terrible**
- QUANT. **pang, twinge**
- VERB + GUILT **be consumed with, be haunted by, be overwhelmed with, be racked with, feel, suffer** *I knew that the next day I would be consumed with guilt.* ◇ *You needn't feel any guilt about me.* | **assuage** *Talking to her helped to assuage my guilt.*
- GUILT + VERB **sear sb, sweep over sb, wash over sb** *Guilt swept over her.*
- GUILT + NOUN **complex** | **feelings**
- PREP. **~ about/at/over** *He had no feelings of guilt over what he had done.*
- PHRASES **a burden of guilt** *the burden of guilt that she carried with her* **a feeling/sense of guilt**

2 fact of having broken a law/done sth wrong
- VERB + GUILT **admit** | **establish, prove** *It might be difficult to prove his guilt.*
- GUILT + VERB **lie** *There is no doubt as to where the guilt lies.*
- PHRASES **an admission of guilt** *I took his silence as an admission of guilt.* **proof of guilt**

guilty *adj.*

1 feeling/showing guilt
- VERBS **feel, look**
- ADV. **extremely, incredibly, really, terribly, very** *She's got a terribly guilty conscience about it.* | **almost** *I feel almost guilty that so many good things are happening to us.* | **a bit, faintly, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat, vaguely** *She was looking rather guilty when I came into the room.* | **oddly, ridiculously**
- PREP. **about** *I feel very guilty about leaving her.*

2 having broken the law/done sth wrong
- VERBS **be, plead** *He pleaded guilty to starting the fire.* | **believe sb, presume sb** *No one believed him guilty of this terrible crime.* ◇ *A person should never be presumed guilty.* | **deem sb, find sb, hold sb, prove sb** *Company directors may be deemed guilty of an offence if their company causes pollution.* ◇ *He was found guilty of murder.*
- ADV. **certainly, clearly** *She was certainly guilty, but the police couldn't prove it.*
- PREP. **of** *She was guilty of fraud.*

guinea pig *noun*

- VERB + GUINEA PIG **act as** *Twenty students volunteered to act as guinea pigs.* | **use sb as**
- PREP. **~ for** *Dealers used their clients as guinea pigs for their untried techniques.*

guitar *noun*

- ADJ. **acoustic, electric** | **bass, lead, rhythm** | **classical, jazz, rock** | **6/12-string**
- VERB + GUITAR **strum (on)** *As she sang, she strummed her guitar.* | **tune (up)** | **build, make**
- GUITAR + NOUN **string** | **lick, riff**

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

Gujarati *noun*

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

gulf *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, great, huge, unbridgeable, wide, yawning** | **growing, widening** *There appeared to be a growing gulf between the prosperous south and the declining towns of the north.*
- VERB + GULF **cause, create** *This atrocity has created a huge gulf between the two groups.* | **widen** *Other factors widened the gulf that separated rich from poor.* | **emphasize, illustrate** *The documentary illustrated the gulf between industrialized and developing countries.* | **bridge, span** *The new degree course aims to bridge the gulf between education and industry.*
- GULF + VERB **exist** | **separate sb/sth** *the yawning gulf that separates the two cultures* | **open up** *A gulf had opened up between the former friends.*
- PREP. **~ between** *For many teachers, there existed an unbridgeable gulf between home and school life.* **~ in** *the huge gulf in level between professional and amateur teams*

gull *noun*

⇨ See SEAGULL

gulp *noun*

1 amount you swallow when you gulp
- ADJ. **deep, great, huge, large, long**
- VERB + GULP **take** *She took a large gulp of wine from the bottle.*
- PREP. **in ~s** *She drank the tea in great gulps.* | **~ of**

2 act of gulping
- ADJ. **loud, noisy**
- VERB + GULP **give** *He gave a loud gulp and stopped mid-sentence.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *'I'm afraid I've broken it,' she said with a gulp.*
- PHRASES **at a/one gulp, in one/a single gulp** *He downed half the contents of the glass in one loud gulp.*

gulp *verb*

1 eat/drink sth quickly
- ADV. **greedily** | **noisily** | **down** *She gulped down her coffee and left.*

2 make a swallowing movement
- ADV. **nervously** *'Do you know where she is?' asked Chris. The man gulped nervously and nodded.*
- PHRASES **gulp for air/breath** *Keith swam to the surface and gulped for air.*

gum *noun*

- ADJ. **lower, upper** | **toothless** *The old man smiled to reveal toothless gums.* | **bleeding, swollen**
- GUM + NOUN **disease**

gun *noun*

- ADJ. **big, heavy** | **enemy** *They succeeded in silencing the enemy guns.* | **replica, toy** | **anti-aircraft, anti-tank, Bren, field, hand, harpoon, laser, machine, spear, Sten, stun, sub-machine** | **grease, spray, staple**
- VERB + GUN **be armed with, carry, have** *Look out!*

He's got a gun! | **load** *I loaded the gun with my last two bullets.* | **draw, produce, pull (out)** | **aim, hold, point, raise** *He raised his gun, aimed and fired.* | **man** *Enemy ship approaching! Man the guns!* | **handle, use** | **fire, shoot sb/sth with** | **lay down, put down** | **silence**
- GUN + VERB **blaze, fire, go off** *Guns were firing and grenades going off all around.* | **shoot sth** *This new gun shoots a laser beam at the target.* | **jam** | **be mounted** *There were several guns mounted in the back of the vehicle.*
- GUN + NOUN **club** | **control, law** *a state that has strict gun controls* | **lobby** *the powerful gun lobby in the US* | **emplacement, position** | **attack, battle** | **crew** | **barrel** | **rack**
- PHRASES **the barrel of a gun** *I found myself looking down the barrel of a gun.* **guns and ammunition** *We're very short of guns and ammunition.* **hold a gun on sb, hold a gun to sb's head** *Two armed men held a gun to his head and made him empty the safe.* **turn a gun on yourself** *The gunman then turned the gun on himself and blew his brains out.*

gunfire *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy, intense** | **scattered, sporadic** | **indiscriminate** *Seventy protesters were killed by indiscriminate gunfire.* | **distant** | **automatic** *We heard the rapid crackle of automatic gunfire.*
- QUANT. **burst** *A burst of gunfire echoed across the square.*
- VERB + GUNFIRE **hear** | **spray sb/sth with** *The terrorists boarded the bus and sprayed the passengers with gunfire.* | **be hit/wounded by** *A convoy was hit by gunfire.*
- GUNFIRE + VERB **break out** *Heavy gunfire broke out in the capital last night.* | **echo**
- PHRASES **the crack/crackle/rattle/sound of gunfire, an exchange of gunfire** *They were killed in an exchange of gunfire between riot police and demonstrators.*

gunshot *noun*

- VERB + GUNSHOT **hear** *We heard gunshots round about midnight.*
- GUNSHOT + NOUN **wound** *He died of gunshot wounds to the chest.*
- PHRASES **the noise/sound of a gunshot**

gurgle *noun*

- ADJ. **little** | **low**
- VERB + GURGLE **give, let out** | **hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *The water emptied with a gurgle.* | **~ of** *He gave a low gurgle of laughter.*

⇨ Note at SOUND

gust *noun*

- ADJ. **great** | **little** | **strong** | **sudden** | **occasional**
- PREP. **~ of** *a sudden gust of wind*
- PHRASES **blow/come in gusts** *The wind came in great gusts off the Pacific.*

gut *noun*

1 tube in the lower part of the body
- ADJ. **healthy**
- VERB + GUT **pass through**
- GUT + NOUN **flora, wall**
- PREP. **in the/your ~**

2 guts organs inside the body
- PHRASES **blood and guts** (*figurative*) *I don't like films that are full of blood and guts.* **a pain in your guts** *I had a terrible pain in my guts after eating too many plums.*

3 guts courage/determination
- VERB + GUTS **have** *She had the guts to stand up to the school bully.* | **take** *It takes guts to keep on running even though you have blistered feet.*

gut *verb*

- ADV. **completely** *The hotel was completely gutted by fire last year.*

guy *noun*

- ADJ. **decent, friendly, funny, good, great, nice, sweet, wonderful** | **bad** | **ordinary, regular** *Neighbours described the killer as 'just a regular guy'.* | **big, little** | **middle-aged, old, young** | **black, white** | **gay** | **tough** | **crazy**

gym *noun*

- ADJ. **fully-equipped** | **school**
- GYM + NOUN **session, workout** | **equipment**

gymnast *noun*

- ADJ. **brilliant, expert, good** | **Olympic**
- GYMNAST + VERB **train** *young gymnasts who have to train for up to five hours a day* | **compete, perform**

gymnastics *noun*

- ADJ. **rhythmic**
- VERB + GYMNASTICS **do** *She does gymnastics at school.*
- GYMNASTICS + NOUN **display, exhibition** | **championships** | **coach**
- PREP. **in (the) ~**

⇨ Special page at SPORT

Hh

habit *noun*

• ADJ. **annoying, anti-social, bad, dirty, disconcerting, horrible, irritating, nasty, unfortunate** *Life has a nasty habit of repeating itself.* | **charming** (*often ironic*), **endearing, good** *one of his more endearing habits ◇ her charming habit of setting fire to cats* | **eccentric, odd** | **old** | **daily, regular** | **personal, sexual, social** *I found some of his personal habits rather disconcerting.* | **buying, shopping, spending** *an effort to change the buying habits of the British public* | **dietary, drinking, eating, feeding** | **reading, viewing** *women's television viewing habits* | **drug, smoking** *trying to kick the smoking habit*

• VERB + HABIT **be in, have** *She had been in the habit of drinking five or six cups of coffee a day. ◇ She's got some very annoying habits. ◇ He had an irritating habit of singing tunelessly about the house.* | **acquire, develop, fall into, form, get into, make** *I had fallen into my old bad habit of leaving everything until the last minute. ◇ Try to get into good habits and eat regular healthy meals. ◇ Make a habit of noting down any telephone messages.* | **become** *Don't let eating between meals become a habit.* | **break (yourself of), get out of, give up, kick** *a difficult habit to break ◇ You must break yourself of the habit. ◇ I had got out of the habit of going to the pub.* | **change**

• HABIT + VERB **change** *Even last year the nation's eating habits changed significantly.*

• PREP. **by ~** *Much of what we do in daily life is done by habit.* **out of ~** *I sat in my old seat purely out of habit.*

• PHRASES **a creature of habit** *Horses are creatures of habit and like to have a daily routine.* **force of habit** *Mr Norris bellowed from force of habit.* **the habit of a lifetime** *It's hard to change the habits of a lifetime.*

habitable *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **remain** | **make sth, render sth** *They've done their best to make the house habitable.* | **consider sth** *The houses were not considered habitable.*

• ADV. **barely** *The room was barely habitable.*

habitat *noun*

• ADJ. **native, natural** *her observations of wild chimps in their natural habitat* | **important** | **endangered, fragile, threatened** *Peat bogs are one of Europe's most threatened habitats.* | **coastal, forest, wetland, wildlife, woodland**

• VERB + HABITAT **provide** *The forest provides a habitat for hundreds of species of plants and animals.* | **conserve, protect** *new measures to protect wildlife habitats* | **damage, destroy, disrupt** *Development is destroying the animal's native habitat.*

• HABITAT + VERB **support sth** *The many different habitats support a wide variety of birds.*

• HABITAT + NOUN **destruction, loss** *Many species are threatened in the wild due to habitat destruction by man.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *the animals and plants in this woodland habitat* | **~ for** *The moorland is an important habitat for many rare bird species.*

• PHRASES **loss of habitat** *The greatest danger to tigers now is through loss of habitat.*

hack *verb*

• ADV. **away, off** *They hacked away at the dense vegetation. ◇ hacking off the dead branches*

• PREP. **at** *She hacked at the hedge with the shears.*

• PHRASES **hack sth to bits/pieces** *The body had been hacked to pieces.* **hack sb to death** *He was hacked to death by the mob.* **hack your way** *The explorers had to hack their way through dense jungle.*

haemorrhage *noun*

• ADJ. **massive, severe** | **recurrent** | **acute** *The patient died from acute cerebral haemorrhage.* | **brain, cerebral**

• VERB + HAEMORRHAGE **have, suffer** *Twelve hours later she suffered a massive brain haemorrhage.* | **die from/of** | **halt, stop** (*both usually figurative*) *The company is desperate to halt the haemorrhage of skilled staff.*

hail *noun*

• HAIL + VERB **fall** *Hail fell shortly after lunch.* | **melt** *The hail melted once the sun came out.*

• PREP. **in (the) ~** *We got caught in the hail.* **through (the) ~** *driving through the hail*

hair *noun*

• ADJ. **auburn, black, blond, brown, chestnut, dark, fair, ginger, golden, grey, grizzled, jet-black, red, sandy, white, yellow** | **bushy, coarse, crinkly, curly, fine, frizzy, smooth, straight, thick, wavy, wiry** | **beautiful, glossy, shiny, sleek** | **dishevelled, dry, dull, fuzzy, greasy, scruffy, tousled, unruly, untidy, windswept** *a new shampoo for dull or dry hair ◇ His hair was tousled and he looked as if he'd just woken up.* | **cropped, long, short, shoulder-length** *She had shoulder-length black hair.* | **body, facial, pubic** | **cat, dog, etc.** *The rug was covered with cat hairs.*

• QUANT. **lock, wisp**

• VERB + HAIR **have** *She had beautiful auburn hair.* | **lose** *He had turned forty and was beginning to lose his hair.* | **wear** *She wore her long hair loose on her shoulders.* | **arrange, do, tidy** *I don't like the way she's arranged her hair, do you? ◇ I'll be down in a minute, I'm just doing my hair.* | **plait, put up, tie back** *Why don't you put your hair up for this evening?* | **brush, comb** | **shampoo, wash** | **cut, trim** *He went to the barber's to have his hair cut.* | **curl, perm** *I've decided to have my hair permed.* | **grow** *I'm trying to grow my hair.*

• HAIR + VERB **grow** *Why don't you let your hair grow?* | **curl** *His hair curls naturally.* | **fall, hang, lie** *Her blond hair fell over her eyes.* | **gleam, glint, glisten**

• HAIR + NOUN **loss** *how to cope with hair loss*

haircut *noun*

• ADJ. **decent, good** | **new** | **short, skinhead**

• VERB + HAIRCUT **get, have** *You ought to smarten up and have a haircut before the interview.* | **need** *He was unshaven, and badly needed a haircut.*

half *noun*

• ADJ. **first, second** | **last, latter** *in the latter half of the nineteenth century* | **top, upper** | **bottom, lower** *the lower half of the window* | **front** | **back, rear** *the rear half of the car* | **left, right** *the left half of the brain* | **northern, western, etc.** *the northern half of the country*

• PREP. **by a ~** *Costs rose by a half.* **in ~** *We divided the money in half.* **in the … ~** *He played well in the second half of the match.* | **~ of** *the first half of the concert ◇ Over a half of all accidents happen in the home.*

• PHRASES **about/almost/at least/over a half** *Over a half of all the people interviewed said they were disappointed in the government.* **half and half** *We split the work* *half and half.* **one/two/three, etc. and a half** *She's four and a half years old now.*

hall *noun*

1 inside the front entrance of a house/building
- ADJ. **entrance | reception | narrow | dark, darkened, unlit** *He hurried them along the narrow, dark hall.*
- VERB + HALL **lead to** *The hall led to a locked door.*
- PREP. **across the ~** *the room across the hall* **along the ~, at/to the end of the ~, down the ~** *There were strange noises coming from the room down the hall.* **in the ~**

2 building/large room
- ADJ. **cavernous, huge, spacious, vast | magnificent | bare** *Our voices echoed round the huge bare hall.* **| gloomy | cold, draughty | crowded, packed | main** *More than 200 members of the public packed the main hall at the community centre.* **| baronial, great | assembly, conference, congress, meeting | booking, ticket | banquet, banqueting, dining | concert, dance, examination, exhibition, lecture, market, sports | church, city, communal, community, council, county, parish, public, school, village | bingo, pool, snooker**
- VERB + HALL **crowd into, fill, pack** *The strains of the national anthem filled the hall.*
- PREP. **in the ~, into the ~, through the ~** *His voice echoed through the hall.*
- PHRASES **hall of residence** *Most first-year students live in the halls of residence.*

hallucination *noun*
- ADJ. **mild | weird | auditory, visual | drug-induced**
- VERB + HALLUCINATION **have** *For a moment I thought I was having hallucinations.* **| cause, induce**

halt *noun*
- ADJ. **abrupt, sudden** *The bus came to an abrupt halt outside the school.* **| grinding, shuddering** *The strike brought the capital city to a grinding halt.* **| temporary | immediate**
- VERB + HALT **come to, draw to, grind to, jolt to, lurch to, scream to, screech to, shudder to, skid to, slide to, slither to** *The economy seems to be grinding to a halt.* ◇ *The car skidded to a halt just inches from the river.* **| bring sth to** *Production was brought to a temporary halt when power supplies failed.* **| call** *Scientists have decided to call a halt to the tests.* **| call for, demand**
- PREP. **~ in** *a halt in nuclear testing* **~ to** *The protesters are calling for a halt to the export of live animals.*

halt *verb*
- ADV. **virtually | effectively** *The strike effectively halted production at the factory.* **| abruptly** *All these ideas for expansion were abruptly halted by the outbreak of war.* **| briefly, temporarily | finally**
- VERB + HALT **try to | threaten to | fail to** *failing to halt the destruction of the rainforest*
- PHRASES **halt in your tracks** *A sudden shout made them halt in their tracks and look round.* **halt sth in its tracks** *The development programme has been halted in its tracks by this intervention.*

halve *verb*
- ADV. **more than | almost, nearly, virtually | approximately, roughly | effectively**
- PREP. **in** *The shares have more than halved in value since the summer high of 572p.* **to** *Overall operating profits halved to $24 million.*

ham *noun*
- ADJ. **lean | baked, boiled, cooked, cured, honey-roast, Parma, smoked | cold** *cold ham and salad* **| sliced**
- QUANT. **bit, piece, slice | joint, leg**
- VERB + HAM **eat, have | boil, cook, roast | carve, slice**
- HAM + NOUN **roll, salad, sandwich**
- PHRASES **ham on the bone** *We had boiled ham on the bone for dinner.*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

hammer *noun*
- VERB + HAMMER **hit sth with, tap sth with, use, wield | swing** *He swung the hammer with all his strength.*
- HAMMER + NOUN **blow** (*often figurative*) *The decision is a hammer blow for the coal industry.*
- PHRASES **a hammer and chisel, a hammer and nails, hammer and sickle** *the hammer and sickle of the Soviet flag*

hammering *noun*

1 noise
- ADJ. **loud**
- VERB + HAMMERING **hear**
- PREP. **~ at/on** *a loud hammering on the door*

2 very bad defeat
- ADJ. **real**
- VERB + HAMMERING **give sb | take** *They took a real hammering at the hands of their opponents.*

hamper *verb*
- ADV. **badly, greatly, seriously, severely** *Rescue efforts were severely hampered by the bad weather.* **| further**

hand *noun*

1 part of the body
- ADJ. **left, right | beautiful, delicate, long-fingered, pretty | well-manicured | coarse, rough, work-reddened, work-roughened, work-worn | soft | firm, strong | limp** *He offered a limp hand to shake.* **| frail | arthritic | gnarled, knotted | claw-like | hairy | clammy** *He clutched the cane in his clammy hand.* **| cool** *His hand, when she shook it, was cool and firm.* **| dirty, filthy, greasy, grubby, sticky, sweaty, unwashed** *He wiped his greasy hands on the front of his overalls.* **| clean | gloved | ringed | ringless | open, outspread** *She gestured towards the window with an open hand.* **| outstretched** *She walked towards him with her hand outstretched to take his.* **| free** *With his free hand he took hold of the knife.* **| cupped** *She rested her chin in her cupped hand.* **| busy, deft** *Her busy hands had transformed the tiny room into a work of art.* **| willing** *There's plenty of work for willing hands* **| eager** *Eager hands reached out to help him.* **| nervous, shaking, trembling, unsteady | steady** *A surgeon needs a good eye and a steady hand.* **| friendly, sympathetic** *He put a friendly hand on his friend's knee.* **| generous, liberal** (*both figurative*) *She filled our glasses with a generous hand.* **| capable, expert, practised, skilful, skilled** *With a practised hand he motioned a waiter to bring a fresh pot of coffee.* **| careless, clumsy**
- VERB + HAND **take** *She took the child's hand and helped him climb the steps.* **| hold, hold on to** *They walked along, holding hands.* ◇ *She held on to my hand as I tried to leave.* **| reach for** *He reached for her hand and held it tightly.* **| press, squeeze, touch** *She pressed his hand. 'I know,' she said softly.* **| shake** *He shook Blake's hand as if they were long lost friends.* ◇ *He shook hands with all of us before leaving.* **| feel** *I felt a hand on my shoulder.* **| extend, hold out, put out, reach out** *She smiled and extended a hand in welcome.* ◇ *He put out a hand as if to touch her.* **| lay, place, press, put** *He laid a*

hand on her arm. ◇ *She put her hands to her cheeks in embarrassment.* | **slide** *He slid his hands into his pockets.* | **withdraw** *Slowly Ruth withdrew her hand from his.* | **hold up, lift, put up, raise, throw up** *He lifted his hand to her face.* ◇ *Several students put up their hands to answer the question.* ◇ *She raised her hand in farewell.* ◇ *He threw up his hands in despair when he saw the damage.* | **spread** *She shrugged and spread her hands. 'That's all I can tell you.'* | **wave** | **clap** *We were all clapping our hands in time to the music.* | **clasp, clench, rub, wring** *He had his hands clasped behind his head.* ◇ *She clenched her hands in her lap to hide their trembling.* ◇ *He rubbed his hands together in satisfaction.* ◇ *He was sobbing and wringing his hands by the grave.* | **beat** *He beat his hands on the steering wheel in frustration.* | **cup** *I cupped my hand over the mouthpiece of the phone so they couldn't hear me.* | **wash** | **wipe**

• HAND + VERB **shake, tremble** *Her hand shook as she lifted the glass to her lips.* | **reach out, shoot out** *A strong hand reached out and caught hold of her arm.* | **grope for sth, reach for sth, seek sth** *My hand groped for the door handle.* ◇ *His hand sought hers.* | **find sth** *His hand eventually found the light switch.* | **catch sth, clamp, clasp sth, close around/on/round sth, fasten around/on/round sth, grab sth, grasp sth, seize sth** *The policeman kept a firm hand clamped on his shoulder.* | **clutch sth, grip sth, hold sth** | **claw (at) sth, pull sth, tug sth** *His hands clawed at the muddy earth.* | **push sth** | **squeeze sth, tighten sth** | **brush (across/against) sth, caress sth, stroke sth, touch sth** *His hand brushed against hers.* | **creep, go, move, slide, slip, steal, stray** *Muriel's hand crept to her neck to hold her pearls.* | **fly** *Her hand flew to her mouth. 'Oh no!'* | **jerk, twitch** | **run over/through sth, trail** *Her hand ran over the surface, feeling the different textures.* | **freeze, still** *His hand froze in mid-gesture.* | **hover, waver** *My hand hovered over the switch for a moment.* | **lie, rest** *His hand rested on her shoulder.* | **go up, shoot up** | **come down, descend, drop** *A large hand descended on his shoulder.* ◇ *His hands dropped to his sides and he fell to the floor.* | **withdraw** | **lift, rise** *Her hand lifted to place a cigarette in her mouth.* | **cover sth** *Her hand moved to cover his.*

• HAND + NOUN **gesture, movement, position, signal** | **dryer, towel** | **drill, saw** (also **handsaw**), **tools** | **pump** | **mirror** | **baggage, luggage** *You can take your laptop on the plane as hand luggage.* | **cream** | **delivery** *Mail for hand delivery is put in a separate tray.* | **grenade, gun** (also **handgun**) | **injury**

• PREP. **by ~** *Delicate clothes should be washed by hand.* **by … ~s** *The rocks looked like they had been shaped by human hands.* **in your ~** *She had a piece of paper in her hand.* ◇ *(figurative) Can I leave these queries in your capable hands?* **on your ~** *She had large rings on both hands.* **with your ~** *Operate the gears with your left hand.*

• PHRASES **fall into the wrong hands** *(figurative) Guards made sure that the food supplies didn't fall into the wrong hands.* **get/keep/take your hands off sb/sth** *She warned her brother to keep his hands off her bag.* **get/lay your hands on sth** *I desperately need to lay my hands on some money by Monday.* **hand in hand** *They walked hand in hand along the path.* **hands on hips** *She stood in the doorway, hands on hips.* **in safe hands** *(figurative) He retired feeling confident that his company was in safe hands.* **on (your) hands and knees** *He was on his hands and knees, looking for a contact lens.* **out of sb's hands** *(figurative) I don't work in that department any more, so the problem is out of my hands.* **the palm of your hand** *She studied the object in the palm of her hand.* **run a hand/your hands over/through, etc. sth** *Clive ran a hand through his hair.* **with your bare hands** *He killed the lion with his bare hands.*

2 a hand help

• VERB + HAND **give sb, lend (sb)** *Can you give me a hand with loading the van?* ◇ *At harvest time all the villagers lend a hand.* | **need** *Do you need a hand with those invoices?*

3 role in a situation

• VERB + HAND **have** | **strengthen** *The strategic alliance served to strengthen the country's hand in the region.*

• PREP. **~ in** *Several of his colleagues had a hand in his downfall.*

4 in card games

• ADJ. **bad, good**

• VERB + HAND **deal (sb)** *Who dealt the last hand?* ◇ *(figurative) She felt that life had dealt her a bad hand.* | **get, have** | **play**

hand *verb*

• ADV. **effectively** | **formally, officially** *formally handing over power to the new government* | **personally** *She wanted to hand the petition to the prime minister personally.* | **just, merely, simply** *They would simply hand her over to the magistrate as a thief.* | **quickly** | **immediately, promptly** | **grudgingly, reluctantly** *He grudgingly handed me the money.* | **silently** | **back, in, out, over** *She handed out the exam papers.*

• VERB + HAND **be prepared to, be ready to, be willing to** | **refuse to** | **force sb to**

• PREP. **to** *He handed the book to Sally.*

handbag *noun*

• ADJ. **big, capacious, large**

• VERB + HANDBAG **clutch, hold** | **carry** | **swing** | **delve into, fish about/around in, fumble in, reach into, rummage (around) in, search (in/through)** *She was rummaging in her handbag for her keys.* | **snatch** *She had her handbag snatched as she sat having a coffee.*

• PREP. **from a/the ~, out of a/the ~** *She took a pen out of her large leather handbag.* **in a/the ~, into a/the ~** *She put her purse into her handbag.*

• PHRASES **the contents of a handbag**

handcuffs *noun*

• QUANT. **pair, set** *The policeman slipped a pair of handcuffs on his wrists.*

• VERB + HANDCUFFS **have on, wear** | **put on, slip on** *The other policeman put the handcuffs on him.* | **remove, take off, undo, unfasten, unlock**

• PREP. **in ~** *He was taken away in handcuffs.*

handful *noun*

1 amount that can be held in one hand

• ADJ. **good** | **double** *She bent and pulled up a double handful of weeds.*

• PREP. **~ of** *She grabbed handfuls of the dirty snow.*

2 small number of people/things

• ADJ. **small, tiny** | **mere** *having to cope with a mere handful of staff* | **good** *He has a good handful of letters after his name.*

• PREP. **~ of** *a handful of people*

• PHRASES **just/only a handful of sth** *We have received only a small handful of letters on this subject.*

handicap *noun*

1 physical/mental disability

• ADJ. **serious, severe** | **mild** | **mental, physical, visual** *She can't drive because of her visual handicap.*

• VERB + HANDICAP **be born with, have, suffer (from)** *Over a million people in Great Britain suffer from mental handicap.* | **cause** | **cope with, overcome** *She has managed to overcome her physical handicaps.*

• PREP. **despite a/the ~** *Despite her handicap, Jane is able to hold down a full-time job.*

2 disadvantage

• ADJ. **big, considerable, great, major, real, serious, severe, terrible** *Lack of transport was a major handicap.*

• VERB + HANDICAP **have, suffer** *If you don't speak the language, you've got a real handicap.* | **prove** *His lack of height can prove a handicap against tall players.*

• PREP. **despite a/the ~** | **~ to** *This could be a serious handicap to her education.*

handicapped *adj.*

• VERBS **be, be born** *Steven was born severely handicapped.* | **leave sb** *An accident at birth left him badly handicapped.*

• ADV. **badly, profoundly, seriously, severely** | **mildly, slightly** | **permanently** | **mentally, physically, visually** *special equipment for visually handicapped children*

handkerchief *noun*

• ADJ. **clean** | **crumpled, dirty, grubby, used** | **pocket** | **lace, linen, paper, silk** | **embroidered**

• VERB + HANDKERCHIEF **blow your nose on, use** *He blew his nose on a grubby handkerchief.* | **wave**

handle *noun*

• ADJ. **long, short** | **carrying** *The table folds up and comes complete with a carrying handle.* | **door** | **knife, fork, pickaxe, etc.**

• VERB + HANDLE **have** | **pull, push, try, turn** *You have to turn the handle and then pull it towards you.* ◇ *He tried the handle but the door was locked.*

• PREP. **on a/the ~** *His initials were on the knife handle.*

handle *verb*

1 touch sth with your hands

• ADV. **carefully, with care** *A label on the crate read: 'Handle with care'.* | **carelessly** *Garden tools can be hazardous if carelessly handled.* | **roughly** *Many of the prisoners were roughly handled; some were killed.*

2 deal with sb/sth

• ADV. **competently, efficiently, properly, skilfully, successfully, well** *I think you handled that situation very well.* | **badly** | **carefully, delicately** *This issue may need to be handled carefully.* | **easily** *Her next question was not so easily handled.* | **routinely** *The library routinely handles a wide variety of enquiries.*

• VERB + HANDLE **be able/unable to, can/could, know how to** *This was a problem that I just couldn't handle.* ◇ *She knew how to handle publicity.* | **be designed to, be equipped to** *He wasn't mentally equipped to handle this situation.* | **learn how to** | **be easy to** | **be difficult to, be hard to** *Large meetings are notoriously less productive and more difficult to handle.*

• PREP. **with** *She handled the crisis with total assurance.*

handling *noun*

• ADJ. **careful, delicate, gentle** *Timid children need gentle handling to build up their confidence.* | **careless, clumsy** | **sensitive, sympathetic** *Issues such as drug addiction require sensitive handling when featured in TV dramas.* | **insensitive** | **competent** *She was praised for her competent handling of the crisis.* | **baggage, cargo, freight, stock** | **customer, passenger** *a small airport with limited passenger handling facilities* | **food** *hygienic food handling practice* | **data, information**

• VERB + HANDLING **need, require**

handout *noun*

1 food/money given to people who need it badly

• ADJ. **free** | **government, state** | **cash**

• VERB + HANDOUT **give (sb)** | **get, receive** *All those eligible will receive a cash handout.*

• PREP. **~ from** *a handout from the government* **~ to** *state handouts to the poor*

2 sheet/leaflet

• VERB + HANDOUT **distribute, give sb, give out**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *More information can be found in the handout.* | **~ on** *We were given a handout on job hunting.*

handshake *noun*

• ADJ. **firm, hearty** | **limp** *She wasn't impressed by his limp handshake.*

• VERB + HANDSHAKE **have** *He had a firm handshake.* | **give sb** *Fawcett gave me a hearty handshake.*

• PREP. **with a ~** *They sealed the agreement with a handshake.* | **~ from** *a handshake from the chairman*

handsome *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look** | **become, grow**

• ADV. **devastatingly, exceedingly, extraordinarily, extremely, incredibly, strikingly, very, wonderfully** *He was young and devastatingly handsome.* | **almost** | **quite, rather** | **classically, darkly, elegantly, ruggedly, youthfully** *his ruggedly handsome features*

• PHRASES **tall, dark (and) handsome** *a tall, dark, handsome stranger*

handwriting *noun*

• ADJ. **clear, good, legible, neat** *Her handwriting was neat and legible.* | **awful, bad, illegible, poor, terrible** *Why do doctors have such terrible handwriting?*

• VERB + HANDWRITING **have** | **read** *Her handwriting is very difficult to read.* | **recognize** *I didn't recognize the handwriting on the envelope.*

• PREP. **in your ~** *She copied out the lines in her best handwriting.*

handy *adj.*

1 useful

• VERBS **be** | **come in** *I advise you to buy one—it may come in handy one day.*

• ADV. **very** | **quite**

• PREP. **for** *The arrangement was handy for both of us.*

2 nearby

• VERBS **be** | **keep sth** *Always keep a cloth handy to wipe up any mess.*

• ADV. **very** | **quite**

• PREP. **for** *The house was near Drury Lane, very handy for the theatre.*

3 good at using sth

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **very** | **fairly, pretty, quite**

• PREP. **at** *'I'm pretty handy at giving out advice,' claimed Mark.* **with** *Lucy is quite handy with a drill!*

hang *verb*

• ADV. **limply, loosely** *He had lost weight and the suit hung loosely on him.* | **uselessly** *Her injured arm hung uselessly at her side.* | **upside down** *The sloth spends most of its time hanging upside down from the branches.* | **down** *Large leaves hung down from the branches of the trees.*

• PREP. **by** *The monkey was hanging by its tail from the beams overhead.* **from** *Banners hung from every window.*

PHRASAL VERB

hang on

1 keep hold of sth

• ADV. **tight** *Hang on tight—we're off.*

• VERB + HANG ON **try to**

- PREP. **for** *She hung on for dear life.* **to** *Hang on to (= keep) those old photographs—they may be valuable.* **with** *Martin tried to hold on with his toes as well as his feet.*

2 wait

- ADV. **a minute** *Hang on a minute—I'll just see if he's here.*

hanker *verb*

- ADV. **secretly | always | still**
- PREP. **after** *She's always hankering after excitement.* **for** *I still hankered for the farm life.*

haphazard *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **very | entirely, totally** *The local authority's approach to health care seems totally haphazard.* **| fairly, rather, somewhat | apparently, seemingly**
- PHRASES **in a haphazard fashion/manner/way** *The town had grown in a somewhat haphazard way.*

happen *verb*

- ADV. **actually, really** *She couldn't quite believe that all this was actually happening to her.* **| just** *I don't remember learning to swim, it just happened.* **| spontaneously** *Sometimes fun activities just happen spontaneously; at other times they take careful planning.* **| overnight** *Change doesn't happen overnight.*
- VERB + HAPPEN **be going to** *They could only wait and see what was going to happen.* **| be likely to | be bound to** *Mistakes are bound to happen sometimes.* **| tend to** *What tends to happen is that students spend the first week of the course in a blind panic, but settle down by the second or third week.* **| want sth to | make sth** *You have to make things happen if you want them to happen.* **| let sth** *Don't just sit back and let it happen.*
- PREP. **to** *She didn't know what was happening to her.*

happiness *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, great | perfect, pure, sheer, true | eternal, lasting | future** *Living together before you marry is no guarantee of future happiness.* **| earthly | human | personal | domestic, family, marital**
- VERB + HAPPINESS **be filled with, feel | glow with** *Her face was glowing with happiness.* **| cry with, sigh with, weep with | achieve, find** *She seems to have found happiness with her new husband.* **| bring (sb)** *It is easy to believe that money brings happiness.* **| buy (sb)** *You cannot buy happiness.* **| wish sb**
- PREP. **with ~ | ~ at** *He was weeping with happiness at being free.*
- PHRASES **a feeling of happiness, wish sb every happiness** *We wish them every happiness in their new life.*

happy *adj.*

1 feeling pleasure

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** *Outwardly the couple appeared happy.* ◇ *Andrew felt happier than he had been for a long time.* **| become | make sb** *Money won't make you happy.* **| keep sb** *He went home from time to time, to keep his mother happy.*
- ADV. **extremely, only too, particularly, really, very** *We'd be only too happy to accept your invitation.* **| completely, perfectly, quite** *Mum seemed perfectly happy with my explanation.* **| genuinely, truly** *For the first time in her life, she felt truly happy.* **| far from, not altogether, not at all, not entirely, not exactly, not particularly, not too, not totally** *Her boss was not entirely happy about the situation.* **| fairly, pretty, reasonably, relatively | just** *I'm just happy to be back home.* **| absurdly, amazingly, blissfully, deliriously, ecstatically, radiantly, ridiculously, strangely, surprisingly | clearly, obviously**
- PREP. **about** *I'm not too happy about her attitude.* **for** *So you're getting married, I hear. I'm really happy for you!* **with** *I was quite happy with the way things went.*

2 giving pleasure

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, gloriously, particularly, very, wonderfully** *It had been a gloriously happy time.* **| quite**

harass *verb*

- ADV. **racially, sexually** *She had been sexually harassed at work.*

harassment *noun*

- ADJ. **racial, sexual | police | constant, continual**
- VERB + HARASSMENT **be subject to, be subjected to, suffer** *She had been subjected to continual sexual harassment.*
- PREP. **~ by** *They are complaining about harassment by the police*
- PHRASES **a victim of harassment**

⇨ Note at CRIME (for more verbs)

harbour *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, deep-water | good, safe, sheltered | natural | busy | picturesque, pretty | fishing**
- VERB + HARBOUR **have** *The town has a small natural harbour.* **| come into, go into, enter** *They entered the harbour with flags flying.* **| go out of, leave**
- HARBOUR + NOUN **wall**
- PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *The fishing fleet is in harbour.* ◇ *the activity in the harbour* **into (a/the) ~** *The damaged vessel was towed into harbour.* **out of a/the ~** *We sailed out of the harbour at daybreak.*
- PHRASES **the entrance to/the mouth of a harbour**

hard *adj.*

1 solid/stiff

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *The chairs felt hard and uncomfortable.* **| become, go** *Don't leave the cake uncovered or the icing will go hard.* **| stay**
- ADV. **extremely, very | a bit, fairly, quite, rather**
- PHRASES **rock hard** *The toffee was rock hard.*

2 difficult

- VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get** *Life got very hard.* **| make sth** *If you tell the children the answers, it only makes it harder for them to do the work on their own.* **| find sth** *I found the exam quite hard.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, very | a bit, fairly, pretty, quite, rather**

hardback *noun*

- VERB + HARDBACK **publish | come out in** *His second book came out in hardback last month.*
- HARDBACK + NOUN **book, edition**
- PREP. **in ~** *It's only available in hardback.*

hardship *noun*

- ADJ. **appalling, considerable, dreadful, extreme, genuine, great, immense, real, severe | widespread | undue, unnecessary | economic, financial, material, personal, physical**
- VERB + HARDSHIP **cause | bear, endure, experience, face, suffer, survive** *a close community which makes these hardships easier to bear* ◇ *Students may suffer severe financial hardship as a result of the government's decision.* ◇ *They have already survived considerable hardship.*
- HARDSHIP + NOUN **payment** *The union made hardship payments to some of the sacked workers.*
- PREP. **in ~** *They are living in genuine hardship.* **with-**

out ~ *Rail services to rural areas could be withdrawn without undue hardship.* | ~ **among** *widespread hardship among students* ~ **to** *The cold was no real hardship to me.*

- PHRASES **times of hardship** *In times of economic hardship, firms cut back on training.*

hardware *noun*

1 of a computer

- ADJ. **computer**
- QUANT. **piece** *The laptop drawing tablet is a very useful piece of hardware.*
- VERB + HARDWARE **design, develop** | **provide, supply** *supplying computer hardware to business*
- HARDWARE + NOUN **component, device, product** | **environment, platform, system** *This application runs on a wide variety of hardware platforms.* | **configuration** | **design, development** | **company, manufacturer, supplier, vendor**

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

2 heavy machinery/weapons

- ADJ. **military** *firms selling military hardware*

harm *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great, serious, untold** *He was clearly intent on inflicting serious harm on someone.* | **irreparable, lasting, permanent** | **emotional, mental, physical, psychological** *elderly people in danger of physical or emotional harm* | **economic, environmental**
- VERB + HARM **cause, do, inflict** *The huge fall in exports has done a great deal of harm to the economy.* | **mean (sb), wish sb** *I'm sorry if I upset you—I didn't mean any harm.* ◇ *No one wishes you harm.* | **come to, suffer** *I don't think he'll come to any harm if his mother is with him.* | **keep sb from, prevent, protect sb from, shield sb from** *The children were removed from their parents to prevent harm to them.* ◇ *She tried to shield her child from harm.*
- HARM + VERB **come to sb/sth** *I don't want any harm to come to these pictures.*
- PREP. ~ **from** *babies at risk of serious harm from their parents* ~ **to** *the harm done to the environment*
- PHRASES **more harm than good** *The drugs he was prescribed did him more harm than good.* **out of harm's way** *The younger children were kept out of harm's way.*

harm *verb*

- ADV. **seriously** *Misusing drugs in pregnancy can seriously harm your baby.* | **deliberately** | **physically**
- VERB + HARM **intend to, want to** *He claimed that he had not intended to harm the girl.* | **try to**

harmful *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **consider sth** *She actually considered fresh air harmful.*
- ADV. **extremely, particularly, positively, very** *These products are often positively harmful.* | **quite** | **possibly, potentially** *A lot of these chemicals are potentially very harmful.* | **allegedly** | **(not) necessarily** *Not all virus infections are necessarily harmful to vines.* | **intrinsically** | **environmentally, socially** *These pesticides are environmentally harmful.*
- PREP. **to** *pesticides that are harmful to the environment*

harmless *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound** | **make sth, render sth** *chemical wastes which have to be rendered harmless* | **consider sth**
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, perfectly, quite, totally** | **almost, virtually** | **enough** *He looks harmless enough.* | **comparatively, fairly, pretty, reasonably, relatively** | **apparently, seemingly** *a small and seemingly harmless creature* | **environmentally**
- PREP. **to** *The substance is harmless to people.*

harmony *noun*

1 state of agreement

- ADJ. **absolute, complete, perfect** | **reasonable, relative** *They've lived together in reasonable harmony for many years.* | **domestic, political, racial, social** *On the surface, their life seemed a model of domestic harmony.*
- VERB + HARMONY **achieve** | **maintain, preserve** *They try to maintain harmony between the two communities.* | **foster, promote** *The Church tries to promote racial harmony.* | **live in**
- PREP. **in** ~ *They work together in harmony.* | ~ **between** *They try to foster harmony between different groups of people.* ~ **with** *living in perfect harmony with nature*
- PHRASES **a sense of harmony** *A new sense of harmony developed in the community.*

2 pleasant combination of different musical notes

- ADJ. **musical** | **five-part, four-part, etc.** *an arrangement with four-part harmony*
- PREP. **in** ~ *to sing in harmony*

harness *noun*

1 for a horse

- ADJ. **leather**
- VERB + HARNESS **put on** | **remove, take off**
- PREP. **in (a)** ~ *a horse in harness*

2 for a person

- ADJ. **child** | **safety** | **climbing, parachute**
- VERB + HARNESS **have on, wear** | **do up, fasten** *She fastened the safety harness tightly round her waist before starting the descent.* | **undo, unfasten**
- PREP. **in a/the** ~ *Another man in a harness was being lowered from the helicopter.*

harness *verb*

- ADV. **effectively, successfully** | **fully**
- VERB + HARNESS **attempt to, seek to, try to** *attempting to harness the power of the sun* | **manage to**
- PREP. **for** *How can this energy be harnessed effectively for the good of humankind?*

harp *noun*

- VERB + HARP **set, tune** *By means of pedals, a harp can be set in any desired key.*

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

harp *verb*

PHRASAL VERB

harp on

- ADV. **always, constantly** *He is always harping on about the war.* | **still**
- PREP. **about**
- PHRASES **keep harping on** *Don't keep harping on about my age!*

harsh *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, prove, seem, sound** *It may seem harsh to criticize him after his death.* | **become**
- ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, particularly, very** | **increasingly** | **a bit, a little, rather, somewhat** | **unduly, unnecessarily** *He accused her of being unduly harsh.* | **surprisingly**

harvest *noun*

- ADJ. **abundant, bumper, good, large, rich** *We've had a bumper harvest of apples this year.* ◇ *(figurative) She re-*

turned from the conference with a rich harvest of knowledge. | **bad, disastrous, poor** *a series of poor harvests in the 1830s* | **cereal, corn, grain, potato, wheat, etc.**

• VERB + HARVEST **bring in, gather (in), get in, reap** *They were busy getting the harvest in.* ◇ (*figurative*) *We are now reaping the harvest of our hard work last year.*

• HARVEST + VERB **fail** *The strawberry harvest failed because of the drought.*

• HARVEST + NOUN **time** | **feast, festival**

• PREP. **after (the) ~** *Potatoes are normally sprayed after harvest.* **during (the) ~** *During harvest they work from dawn to dusk.* | **~ of** *a good harvest of potatoes*

hassle *noun*

• ADJ. **legal** *They faced interminable legal hassles if they wanted to claim compensation.*

• VERB + HASSLE **get, have** *I started to get all this hassle from my boss about increasing productivity.* | **give sb** *He gave me so much hassle I decided it wasn't worth it.* | **save** *It saves a lot of hassle if you buy them by post.* | **be worth** *Camping holidays aren't really worth all the hassle.*

• PREP. **with no/without ~** *She got the computer set up with no hassle at all.* | **~ about/over** *I've had so much hassle over this business.*

• PHRASES **take the hassle out of sth** *Package holidays take all the hassle out of travel arrangements.*

haste *noun*

• ADJ. **blind, breathless, frantic, great** *She worked with frantic haste.* | **indecent, reckless, undue** *He accused the government of undue haste in bringing in the new law.*

• VERB + HASTE **make** *I had to make haste if I wasn't to be late.*

• PREP. **in (your) ~** *They obviously left in great haste.* ◇ *In his haste to get home, he forgot to go to the library.* **with ~** *He married again with almost indecent haste.* **without ~** *They approached without haste.*

• PHRASES **with all haste** *The ships were ordered to sea with all haste.*

hat *noun*

• ADJ. **broad-brimmed, wide-brimmed** | **floppy** | **battered** | **pointed** | **fur, straw, woollen, woolly** | **bobble, bowler, hard, panama, party, peaked, picture, riding, sun** (also **sunhat**), **ten-gallon, three-cornered, top**

• VERB + HAT **don, place** *He placed a battered felt hat on his head.* | **doff, remove** | **raise, tip, touch** *The doorman tipped his hat as we entered.*

• HAT + VERB **be trimmed with sth** *The governor wore a cocked hat trimmed with white feathers.*

• HAT + NOUN **box** | **shop** | **stand**

• PHRASES **pull a hat (down) over your ears/eyes/face**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

hatch *noun*

• ADJ. **closed, open** *Leave the hatch open.* | **escape** | **inspection, service** *The engineer was peering into the service hatch.* | **serving** *She opened the serving hatch and put the soup on the counter.* | **kitchen, loft**

• VERB + HATCH **lift, open, raise** *She lifted the hatch and slid it away from the opening.* | **batten down, close, shut** *They battened down the hatches and prepared for the storm.* ◇ *He ordered the hatches to be closed.*

• PREP. **through a/the ~** *They got out through the escape hatch.* | **~ between** *a hatch between the kitchen and the dining room* **~ to** *a hatch to the dining room*

hate *noun*

1 strong feeling of dislike

• ADJ. **absolute, naked, pure** *In her eyes he could see naked hate.*

• VERB + HATE **be filled with, be full of, burn with** *He burned with hate for everyone and everything.*

• HATE + NOUN **campaign, figure, mail** *victim of a vicious hate campaign* ◇ *She became a hate figure for politicians on the left.*

• PREP. **~ for** *full of hate for the people who had betrayed her*

2 sb/sth you hate

• ADJ. **pet** *Jazz has always been a pet hate of mine.*

hate *verb*

• ADV. **particularly, really** | **absolutely** *I absolutely hate cooking.* | **almost** *For a moment she almost hated him.* | **just** *Don't you just hate people who are always right?* | **always** *I always hated school.* | **still**

• VERB + HATE **begin to, come to, grow to** *He came to hate the town, with its narrow prejudices.* | **love to** *the media baron all the socialists love to hate*

• PREP. **for** *He hated me for standing up to him.*

• PHRASES **hate it when** *I hate it when you lose your temper like that.*

hatred *noun*

• ADJ. **bitter, deep, intense, passionate, pure, violent** *She shot him a look of pure hatred.* | **absolute, implacable** | **blind, irrational** | **class, ethnic, racial, religious**

• VERB + HATRED **be filled with, be full of, feel, have** *She was full of hatred and bitterness.* ◇ *He has a deep hatred of the police.* | **incite, stir up** *He is accused of stirring up racial hatred.*

• HATRED + VERB **flare (up)** *Hatred flared up inside her.*

• PREP. **in/with ~** *She stared at it in hatred.* | **~ against** *inciting religious hatred against the Catholic minority* **~ between** *the intense hatred between the two communities* **~ for** *I felt no hatred for him.* **~ of** *his hatred of women* **~ towards** *their hatred towards the oppressors*

• PHRASES **a feeling of hatred**

haul *noun*

1 act of hauling

• VERB + HAUL **give sth**

• PREP. **~ on** *When I shout, give a haul on the rope.*

2 distance to be travelled

• ADJ. **long, short** *the long haul back to Cape Town* ◇ *a short-haul passenger plane* | **final, last** *the final haul up the hill to the finishing line*

• PREP. **~ from, ~ to**

3 of fish/stolen goods, etc.

• ADJ. **big, large, record** *The thieves got away with a record haul of £25 million.* | **arms, drugs**

• VERB + HAUL **get, get away with** *The gang did not expect to get such a large haul.*

• HAUL + VERB **be worth sth** *a haul worth £30 000*

• PREP. **~ of** *the biggest ever haul of illegal drugs*

haunt *noun*

• ADJ. **favourite, old, popular, regular, usual** | **tourist** *The area was a popular tourist haunt.*

• VERB + HAUNT **go back to, return to, revisit** *We've been back to some of our old haunts.*

haunt *verb*

1 appear as a ghost in a place

• ADV. **reputedly, supposedly** *a Norman castle which is reputedly haunted*

• VERB + HAUNT **come back to, return to** *He said he would come back to haunt her.* ◇ (*figurative*) *That decision came back to haunt him in later life.*

2 be always in your mind

• ADV. **still** *the great fear that still haunts her*

• VERB + HAUNT **continue to** *These visions continued to haunt her for many years.*

haven *noun*

• ADJ. **safe** *The aim is to create a safe haven for the thousands of refugees.*
• VERB + HAVEN **create, offer (sb), provide (sb with)**
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *They were living in a safe haven away from the fighting.* | **~ for** *The wood is a haven for wildlife.* **~ of** *This house is a haven of peace compared with ours.*

havoc *noun*

• VERB + HAVOC **cause, create, play, wreak**
• PREP. **~ among** *The new tax could wreak havoc among smaller companies.* **~ for** *High winds have been creating havoc for farmers.* **~ in** *The disease can cause havoc in commercial orchards.* **~ on** *The flood wrought havoc on the countryside.* **~ to** *The storm caused havoc to wildlife.* **~ with** *The fog played havoc with flight schedules.*

hawk *noun*

• HAWK + VERB **hover | swoop (down)** *The hawk swooped low over the field.*
• PHRASES **watch (sb) like a hawk** *He waited, watching her like a hawk.*

hay *noun*

• QUANT. **bale**
• VERB + HAY **cut, harvest, make** *The freshly harvested hay was taken into the big hay barn.* ◇ *They make hay to feed the cattle in winter.*
• HAY + NOUN **meadow | bale | barn, loft**
• PREP. **in the ~** *The children were playing in the hay.*

hazard *noun*

• ADJ. **big, great, major, real, serious | constant | possible, potential | hidden, unexpected, unseen | environmental, industrial, natural, occupational** *industrial hazards such as excessive noise and pollution* ◇ *Loneliness is one of the occupational hazards of being a writer.* | **health** *Other people's smoke is now seen as a health hazard.* | **fire** *The rubbish under the flooring is a serious fire hazard.*
• VERB + HAZARD **cause, create, pose** *Production of these chemicals poses serious environmental hazards.* | **be exposed to, encounter, face, meet** *The worst hazard we faced was having our money stolen.* | **avoid** *Go in September if you want to avoid the hazard of extreme heat.* | **eliminate, minimize | cope with, deal with, negotiate** *Companies should have systems for dealing with work hazards.*
• PREP. **~ for** *Holes in the pavement are a hazard for blind people.* **~ to** *The burning of industrial waste is a major hazard to human health.*
• PHRASES **exposure to a hazard** *Try and reduce your exposure to hazards such as poor quality air.*

hazardous *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove | become | consider sth**
• ADV. **extremely, highly, particularly, very | rather, somewhat | potentially** *burning potentially hazardous medical waste* | **environmentally** *environmentally hazardous substances*
• PREP. **for** *These conditions are very hazardous for shipping.* **to** *chemicals that are hazardous to human beings*

haze *noun*

• ADJ. **thick** *a thick haze of smoke* | **faint, thin** *The sun now had a faint golden haze around it.* | **shimmering | heat** *A heat haze shimmered above the fields.*
• HAZE + VERB **hang, shimmer** *In the evenings a blue haze hung in the valleys.*
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *Meetings are always conducted in a haze of cigarette smoke.* **through a/the ~** *He watched the world through a haze of tobacco smoke.*

hazy *adj.*

1 not clear because the air is difficult to see through
• VERBS **be, look** *The distant mountains looked hazy and mysterious.* | **become | remain**
• ADV. **very | a little, quite, rather, slightly** *Generally, it will be rather hazy today, with some hill fog.*
• PREP. **with** *The summers were hazy with pollution.*

2 confused
• VERBS **be | become | remain**
• ADV. **extremely, very** *I have only a very hazy idea about how the economy works.* | **a bit, fairly, a little, rather, somewhat** *My memory of that day is somewhat hazy now.*
• PREP. **about** *I'm a bit hazy about my family history.*

head *noun*

1 part of the body
• ADJ. **bare | bald | shaved | blonde, dark, fair, grey, greying | bent, bowed** *She sat with bowed head.* | **severed** *The city gates were adorned with severed heads.*
• VERB + HEAD **poke, pop, put, stick** *He put his head round the door.* | **bob, cock, crane, incline, jerk, tilt, turn** *She jerked her head in the direction of the door.* | **lift, raise | bend, bow, drop, duck, hang, lower** *He hung his head in shame.* | **swing, throw back, toss** *He threw his head back and laughed out loud.* | **nod, shake** *They nodded their heads in agreement.* ◇ *She shook her head in disbelief.* | **scratch** *He scratched his head. 'I don't understand,' he said.* ◇ *(figurative) Detectives have been left scratching their heads over the stolen painting's sudden reappearance.* | **clutch, hold** *He lay writhing on the ground, clutching his head in pain.* | **bury** *She buried her head in the pillow.* | **shave**
• HEAD + VERB **ache, throb | bob, jerk, nod, tilt, turn** *Her head tilted to one side as she considered the question.* | **droop, drop, hang down, hang low** *His head drooped and tears fell into his lap.*
• HEAD + NOUN **injury | cold**
• PREP. **above your ~** *The thunder burst with a grand crash above our heads.* **over your ~** *The soldiers were ordered to fire over the heads of the crowd.*
• PHRASES **from head to foot/toe** *We were covered from head to foot in mud.* **a fine/good, etc. head of hair** (= a lot of hair) *a woman with a lovely head of chestnut hair* **have/hold/put, etc. your head in your hands** *He put his head in his hands, exasperated.* **head first** *He dived head first into the water.* ◇ *(figurative) She got divorced and rushed head first into another marriage.* **a nod of the head** *The ambassador dismissed him with a curt nod of the head.* **a shake of the head** *She declined with a brief shake of the head.*

2 mind
• ADJ. **clear, cool, level** *She needed to keep a clear head if she was to remain in control.* | **good** *I have a good head for figures.*
• VERB + HEAD **use** *I wish you'd use your head* (= think carefully before doing or saying something). | **enter** *It never entered my head that he might be lying.* | **get it into** *When will you get it into your head* (= understand) *that I don't want to discuss this any more!* ◇ *For some reason she's got it into her head* (= believes) *that the others don't like her.* | **put sth into** *Who's been putting such weird ideas into your head?* | **get sth out of, put sth out of** *I can't get that tune out of my head.* ◇ *Try to put the exams out of your head for tonight.* | **bother** *Don't bother your pretty little head with things like that!*

- HEAD + VERB **spin** *He could feel his head spinning after only one drink.*
- PREP. **in your ~** *I can't work it out in my head—I need a calculator.* **inside your ~** *It was an accident, said a voice inside his head.*
- PHRASES **can't get your head round sth** (= can't understand sth) *She's dead. I can't get my head round it yet.* **need your head examined** *He looked at me as if I needed my head examined* (= as if I were crazy).

3 heads side of a coin

- VERB + HEADS **call** *I called heads and it came down tails.* | **come down/up**
- PHRASES **heads or tails?**

4 of a group/organization/school, etc.

- ADJ. **deputy** | **departmental** | **nominal, titular** *The Queen is titular head of the Church of England.* | **crowned** *The message was sent to all the crowned heads* (= kings and queens) *of Europe.*
- HEAD + NOUN **gardener, teacher, waiter** | **boy, girl** (= in a school)
- PHRASES **a head of department, the head of the family, a head of government/state** *a summit meeting of heads of state* **a head of (the) household**

⇨ Note at JOB

head *verb*

1 go

- ADV. **north, northwards, etc.** *We headed west for two days.* | **back** *Let's head back home.*
- PREP. **back to** *We headed straight back to school.* **for** *He turned and headed for the door.* **towards** *heading towards London*

2 be in charge of sth

- ADV. **jointly** *The committee will be headed jointly by two men.* | **up**
- VERB + HEAD **appoint sb to** *She has been appointed to head up the research team.*

headache *noun*

1 pain in the head

- ADJ. **bad, severe, terrible, violent** | **mild, slight** | **dull** | **pounding, splitting, throbbing** | **migraine, tension** *He developed a severe migraine headache.*
- VERB + HEADACHE **have, suffer from** *I've got a splitting headache.* | **get, develop** *We all get headaches from time to time.* | **complain of** *The workers had complained of headaches and nausea.* | **bring on, cause, give sb** *Exhaust fumes made him drowsy and brought on a headache.* ◇ *Red wine gives me a headache.* | **plead** *She had left the party early, pleading a headache.*
- HEADACHE + NOUN **pill, tablet**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

2 sb/sth that causes worry/difficulty

- ADJ. **big, major, real** | **constant**
- PREP. **~ for** *Uneven cash flow proved to be a major headache for the company.*

heading *noun*

- ADJ. **broad, general** *Books on bridges should be listed under 'bridges' and not under a broader heading such as 'engineering'.* | **main, major** | **chapter, page, section** | **subject, topic** | **letter** *With the computer, we can print our own letter headings.*
- VERB + HEADING **come under, fall under** *These drugs come under the heading of non-medical substances.*
- PREP. **under a/the ~** *I've organized what I have to say about unemployment under three main headings.*

headlights *noun*

- ADJ. **dimmed, undimmed** *I kept my headlights undimmed along the country lanes.*
- VERB + HEADLIGHTS **put on, switch on, turn on** | **dip** | **flash** *He flashed his headlights at the oncoming car.*
- HEADLIGHTS + VERB **be (full) on** | **blaze, flash, shine** *The headlights shone on empty streets as we drove through the town.* | **pick sth out** *My headlights finally picked out a road sign.* | **sweep** *The car's headlights swept across the front of the house.*
- PHRASES **the glare of headlights**

headline *noun*

1 title of an article in a newspaper

- ADJ. **newspaper, tabloid** *'Carnage at Airport', screamed the tabloid headline.* | **banner, front-page** | **screaming** | **lurid** *lurid headlines about the sex lives of the stars* | **sporting, sports**
- VERB + HEADLINE **carry, have, run** *The Guardian carried the front-page headline 'Drugs Firms Shamed'.* | **read, scan, see** *I just had time to scan the headlines before leaving for work.* | **be in, capture, dominate, grab, hit, hog, make ~s** *She's always in the headlines.* ◇ *He always manages to grab the headlines.* ◇ *The hospital hit the headlines when a number of suspicious deaths occurred.* ◇ *The story has been hogging the headlines for weeks.* ◇ *The story was important enough to make the headlines.*
- HEADLINE + VERB **proclaim sth, read sth, say sth, scream sth** *The Sunday Observer had a headline saying, 'Pop Star Arrested on Drugs Charges'.*
- HEADLINE + NOUN **news** *'Queen Mother goes on Holiday' is hardly headline news!*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The most unusual fact in the story is often used in the headline.* **under a/the ~** *The Daily Gazette ran a story under the headline 'Pope's Last Words'.* **with a/the ~** *a story in the newspaper with the headline 'Woman Gives Birth on Train'* | **~ about** *There was a banner headline about drugs in schools.*
- PHRASES **make headline news** *The engagement of the two tennis stars made headline news.*

2 the headlines main news stories on TV/radio

- ADJ. **news**
- VERB + HEADLINES **hear, listen to** *Let's just hear the news headlines.* | **look at, see, watch**

headquarters *noun*

- ADJ. **international, local, national, regional** | **permanent** | **temporary** | **field** | **enemy** | **rebel** | **administrative, campaign, operational** | **army, military** | **police** | **business, company, corporate, group** | **party**
- VERB + HEADQUARTERS **have** *The organization has its headquarters in Brussels.* | **establish, set up** *The company has set up its European headquarters in the UK.* | **open** | **close** *They're planning to close their headquarters in Washington.*
- PREP. **at (the) ~** *They're very worried about this at headquarters.* ◇ *She works at the company's headquarters.*

heal *verb*

- ADV. **completely, properly** *The wound hasn't healed properly yet.* | **partially** | **beautifully, nicely, well** | **gradually, slowly** | **quickly** | **eventually, finally** | **up** *The wound healed up very nicely.*

health *noun*

- ADJ. **excellent, full, good, perfect** | **bad, declining, delicate, failing, fragile, frail, ill, poor** *He had to retire due to ill health.* | **general, mental, physical, sexual** | **environmental, occupational** *environmental health officers* | **public** *The poisoned food has been removed from the shops and there is no threat to public health.* | **human**
- VERB + HEALTH **enjoy, have** *She's never really enjoyed good health.* | **look after, maintain** *You need to maintain your physical and mental health.* | **improve**

ways to improve the nation's general health | **promote** *a programme to promote better health in the workplace* | **recover, regain** | **nurse sb back to** *She was nursed back to full health.* | **damage, harm, ruin, undermine** | **risk**

• HEALTH + VERB **improve** *Her health gradually improved.* | **deteriorate, fail, worsen** *His health began to fail under the heavy pressures of the job.*

• HEALTH + NOUN **care** *How is primary health care best delivered?* | **authority, board** *the district/local/regional health authority* | **issue, needs, problem** | **hazard, risk** | **education** | **centre** *a community health centre* | **insurance** *private health insurance* | **food** *health food stores* | **professional, visitor, worker** *Your doctor, midwife or health visitor will advise.* | **warning** *The air quality was so bad that the government issued a health warning.* | **minister**

• PHRASES **bad/good for your health** *Smoking is bad for your health.* **health and safety** *health and safety at work* **(not) in the best of health, in good/poor health** *He felt in much better health.* **sb's state of health** *He is unable to travel far because of his state of health.*

health service *noun*

• ADJ. **comprehensive, good** | **free** | **community, family, national, public**

• VERB + HEALTH SERVICE **manage, run** *the problems of managing the health service* | **establish, introduce, set up** *plans to set up a national health service* | **improve, reform** | **finance, pay for** | **nationalize, privatize**

• HEALTH SERVICE + VERB **provide sth** *The health service can't provide cosmetic surgery.*

• HEALTH SERVICE + NOUN **employee, manager, official, staff, worker**

• PREP. **in the ~** *a shortage of labour in the health service* **on the ~** *Are you going to have your operation done on the national health service?* **under the ~** *This treatment is difficult to obtain under the national health service.* **within the ~** *decision-making within the health service*

healthy *adj.*

1 not ill

• VERBS **appear, be, be born, feel, look, seem** | **become** | **keep, remain, stay** | **make sb** *Working in the open air has made him very healthy.* | **keep sb** *Her good diet had kept her healthy.*

• ADV. **extremely, fantastically, really, very** | **perfectly** *He's a perfectly healthy child.* | **fairly, quite, reasonably** | **apparently** *The rare disorder strikes apparently healthy boys between the ages of five and twelve.* | **disgustingly** (*informal, ironic*) *You look disgustingly healthy! How do you manage it?* | **otherwise** *She looked pale, but otherwise healthy.* | **mentally, physically**

• PHRASES **fit and healthy**

2 producing good health

• VERBS **be** | **consider sth** *a new diet which is considered much healthier than previous ones*

• ADV. **extremely, very** *We have a very healthy diet.* | **quite** *Their lifestyle is quite healthy.* | **generally**

3 working well

• VERBS **be** | **remain**

• ADV. **extremely, very** *The economy is extremely healthy at the moment.* | **fairly, quite, reasonably, relatively** | **basically, fundamentally, generally** | **financially**

heap *noun*

• ADJ. **big, great, large** | **little, small** | **crumpled, untidy** | **compost, manure, muck, rubbish, scrap, slag, spoil** *colliery spoil heaps*

• VERB + HEAP **be piled in** *Papers were piled in great heaps on the desk.* | **collapse in, fall (down) in** (*both figurative*) *He collapsed in an exhausted heap on the floor.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *His clothes lay in a crumpled heap on the floor.* **on/onto a/the ~** *Throw the potato peelings on the compost heap.* | **~ of** *a great heap of stones*

• PHRASES **the bottom/top of the heap** (*figurative*) *These workers are at the bottom of the economic heap.*

hear *verb*

1 be aware of sounds

• ADV. **clearly, well** *He's getting old and he can't hear very well.* | **just** *I could just hear the music in the distance.* | **distantly** *Distantly he heard the report of another gun.* | **aright, correctly** *'Sheep?' It sounded so unlikely that Julia did not think she could have heard aright.*

• VERB + HEAR **can/could** *Can you hear me clearly at the back?* | **pretend not to** | **strain to**

2 be told about sth

• VERB + HEAR **be delighted to, be glad to, be gratified to, be pleased to** *I was delighted to hear about your promotion.* | **be sorry to** *I was sorry to hear of your father's death.* | **be interested to, be surprised to** *I was surprised to hear that she was married.* | **want to** *I told Michael what he wanted to hear.* | **let sb** *Let's hear you sing, then.* ◇ *You'd better not let Dad hear you say that.*

• PREP. **about** *I've heard about this sort of thing before.* **of** *On hearing of his plight, the council offered him a home.*

• PHRASES **hear little, a lot, nothing, etc. about sth** *We hear very little about these issues nowadays.*

hearing *noun*

1 ability to hear

• ADJ. **acute, excellent, good, normal, sharp** | **bad, impaired, poor**

• VERB + HEARING **have, possess** *Whales have acute hearing.* | **lose** *She lost her hearing when she was a child.* | **get back, regain** *Is there any chance that he'll get his hearing back?* | **affect, impair, make worse**

• HEARING + VERB **deteriorate, get worse, go** *His hearing began to deteriorate.* ◇ *Her hearing was already going.* | **come back, get better, improve** *Two months after the accident her hearing came back.*

• HEARING + NOUN **impairment, loss, problems** | **aid** *to have/wear a hearing aid* | **person** *a course in sign language for both deaf and hearing people*

• PHRASES **hard of hearing** *You'll have to speak more loudly. I'm afraid she's rather hard of hearing.*

2 trial in a court of law/similar investigation

• ADJ. **final, preliminary** | **fair** | **formal, full** | **open, public** | **private, secret** | **oral** | **appeal, custody, disciplinary, petition, pre-trial** | **committee, congressional, court, tribunal**

• VERB + HEARING **conduct, hold** *Most councils hold hearings in public.* | **ask for, call for, demand** *Protesters are calling for a public hearing.* | **get, have** *She said that she had had a very fair hearing from the disciplinary tribunal.* | **attend** | **adjourn** | **tell** *The hearing was told that the child had been left with a 14-year-old babysitter.*

• HEARING + VERB **take place** | **begin, open**

• PREP. **at a/the ~** *At a preliminary hearing the judge announced that the trial would begin on March 21.* **in a/the ~** *She was granted a divorce in a five-minute hearing.* **pending a/the ~** *Pending the hearing of the case by the court, the business will be allowed to continue trading.* **without a ~** *A High Court judge dismissed the case without a hearing.*

3 chance for an opinion to be considered

• ADJ. **fair, sympathetic**

• VERB + HEARING **give sb/sth** *At least give our ideas a fair hearing before you reject them.* | **get** *You haven't got much chance of your plan getting a sympathetic hearing.* | **deserve** *Their views deserve a hearing.*

• PREP. **~ for** *All I'm asking is a fair hearing for my ideas.*

hearsay *noun*

- VERB + HEARSAY **be based on, rely on** *Her judgements are based on hearsay rather than evidence.*
- HEARSAY + NOUN **evidence**
- PREP. **by ~** *She discovered a world of parties and pleasure she had hitherto only known by hearsay.* **from ~** *They started to piece the story together from hearsay.*

heart *noun*

1 part of the body
- ADJ. **healthy, strong | bad, weak | artificial | human**
- HEART + VERB **beat | pump sth** *The heart pumps blood through the body.* **| fail, stop | hammer, palpitate, pound, race, throb, thud, thump**
- HEART + NOUN **rate | complaint, condition, defect, disease, failure, murmur, problem, trouble | bypass, operation, surgery, transplant** *a triple heart bypass operation ◇ open-heart surgery*

2 feelings/emotions
- ADJ. **big, good, kind, soft, tender, warm | cold, hard | broken | heavy, sinking** *With a heavy heart, she watched him go.* **| light** *He set off with a light heart.*
- VERB + HEART **have** *She has a kind heart. ◇ Have you no heart?* **| break** *He broke her heart.* **| gladden | steal, win | harden | open, pour out** *Finally, he broke down in tears and poured out his heart to her.*
- HEART + VERB **jump, leap, lurch, miss/skip a beat** *Her heart leapt with joy.* **| ache** *My heart aches when I think of their sorrow.* **| desire sth** *everything your heart could desire* **| sink | go out** *Our hearts go out to* (= we sympathize deeply with) *the families of the victims.*
- PREP. **at ~** *At heart he is a republican.* **from the ~** *I could tell he spoke from the heart.* **in your ~** *In my heart, I knew it wasn't true.*
- PHRASES **an affair of the heart** (= a romance) *Her novels tend to deal with affairs of the heart* **a change of heart** (= a change of attitude) *He could have a change of heart and settle down to family life.* **from the bottom of your heart** *I beg you, from the bottom of my heart, to spare his life.* **heart and soul** *He committed himself heart and soul to the cause.* **have a heart of gold/stone** (= to be a kind/cruel person) (= no sympathetic feelings), **the hearts and minds of sb** *to win the hearts and minds of the nation's youth* **in good heart** (= cheerful and well), **put some/more heart into sth** *Let's sing it one more time from the beginning—and put some heart into it!* **sick at heart** (= very unhappy), **with all your heart** *I wish you well with all my heart.*

3 important/central part
- ADJ. **very**
- VERB + HEART **lie at** *The distinction between right and wrong lies at the heart of all questions of morality.* **| go to** *The committee's report went to the heart of the government's dilemma.*
- PREP. **at the ~** *the issue at the heart of modern government* **| ~ of** *We live in the very heart of the city.*
- PHRASES **the heart of the matter/problem**

4 playing card
⇨ Note at CARD

heart attack *noun*

- ADJ. **fatal | massive, serious** *She died of a massive heart attack.* **| mild, minor | suspected**
- VERB + HEART ATTACK **have, suffer** *He suffered a fatal heart attack while cycling.* **| die from/of**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

heartbeat *noun*

- ADJ. **irregular, regular | racing** *She was suddenly aware of her racing heartbeat.*
- VERB + HEARTBEAT **monitor | feel**
- PHRASES **the sound/thud of a heartbeat** *I could feel the thud of my heartbeat.*

heartland *noun*

- ADJ. **agricultural, industrial** *the industrial heartland of Germany* **| Conservative, Labour, etc. | traditional**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The party has lost seats in its traditional heartland of southern Thailand.*

heat *noun*

1 being hot/level of temperature
- ADJ. **burning, fierce, great, intense, searing, terrible, tremendous** *The soil is baked dry by the fierce heat of the sun.* **| gentle | excess, excessive** *If circulation is impaired, the body cannot lose excess heat.* **| red, white** (*often figurative*) *Everything he did was at white heat and lightning speed.* **| blood, body**
- VERB + HEAT **feel** *We could feel the tremendous heat coming from the fire.* **| disperse, dissipate, give out, lose** *Even after the sun had set, the stones continued to give out heat.* **| conserve, retain** *The thick walls retain the heat.* **| absorb** *Darker surfaces absorb heat.* **| conduct** *Being a metal, aluminium readily conducts heat.* **| generate, produce, provide, radiate** *Computers, faxes and photocopiers all generate heat of their own.* **| withstand** *a material which can withstand heats of up to 2 000°C*
- HEAT + VERB **build up, increase** *He tried to ignore the heat building up in the confined space.*
- HEAT + NOUN **loss | exhaustion, stress, stroke** (also **heatstroke**) *She slumped to the ground, near to heat exhaustion.*
- PREP. **~ from** *the heat from the fire*

2 hot weather/conditions
- ADJ. **baking, blazing, blinding, blistering, boiling, extreme, great, intense, oppressive, scorching, searing, shimmering, stifling, suffocating, sweltering** *We walked more than ten miles in the blistering heat.* **| dry | humid, steamy, sultry** *the steamy heat of New York in summer* **| 80-degree, 90-degree, etc. | afternoon, midday, morning | summer | desert, tropical**
- HEAT + VERB **grow** *Daily the heat grew.*
- HEAT + NOUN **haze** *A heat haze shimmered above the fields.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *I can't work in this heat.*
- PHRASES **the heat of the day** *To avoid the heat of the day we went out in the mornings.*

3 source of heat
- ADJ. **high | gentle, low | medium, moderate | direct** *Chocolate should never be melted over direct heat.* **| dry**
- VERB + HEAT **turn up** *Towards the end of the cooking, turn up the heat to brown the outside.* **| lower, reduce, turn down | remove sth from, take sth off** *Bring to the boil slowly, then remove from the heat.* **| return sth to** *Return the pan to the heat and stir.*
- PREP. **off the ~** *Make sure the pan is off the heat.* **on a ~** *Cook on a low heat for five minutes.* **over a ~** *Simmer the sauce over a gentle heat.*

4 strong feelings
- ADJ. **sudden** *He stared at her, sudden heat in his eyes.*
- HEAT + VERB **flare, flood sth, rise** *Heat flooded her cheeks.*
- PREP. **in the ~ of** *in the heat of battle/passion* **with ~** *'It was your hare-brained idea,' Henry said with heat.* **without ~** *She spoke without heat.*
- PHRASES **in the heat of the moment** *Michael bitterly regretted those angry words, spoken in the heat of the moment.*

5 race/competition
- ADJ. **qualifying, regional | dead** *Competition was fierce, with a dead heat in one of the races* (= with two competitors finishing in exactly the same time).

- VERB + HEAT **win** *She won her heat.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He fell in the first heat.*

heat *verb*

- ADV. **gently** *Heat the sauce gently for a few minutes.* | **through, up** *Allow the food enough time to heat through.* ◇ *They heat up the food in a microwave oven.*

heated *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **adequately, properly, well** | **badly, inadequately** | **slightly** *a slightly heated aquarium* | **centrally** *modern, centrally heated homes* | **electrically**

heater *noun*

- ADJ. **convector, fan, immersion, instantaneous, multi-point, storage** | **electric, gas, oil, paraffin** | **aquarium, car, greenhouse, pool, room, water**
- VERB + HEATER **have off/on** | **turn off/on** | **turn down/up**
- HEATER + VERB **be off/on** *Even with the heater full on, the room felt cold.*

heating *noun*

- ADJ. **electric, gas-fired, solar** | **central, domestic, home, underfloor** | **water**
- VERB + HEATING **have** *The flat has gas-fired central heating.* | **have on, keep on, leave on, run, use** *We haven't had the heating on this evening.* | **put on, switch on, turn on** *They are afraid to put the heating on because it's so expensive.* | **switch off, turn off** *They have their heating turned off during the morning.* | **turn down/up** | **fit, install, put in** *We're having central heating installed.*
- HEATING + VERB **be (full) on, be on high/low** *The heating was on but the window was open.* ◇ *The heating's on low.* | **be off** | **come on** | **go off** *Our heating goes off at eleven o'clock and comes on again at seven.* | **work** *The heating doesn't work.* | **break down** *The house was very cold because the heating had broken down.*
- HEATING + NOUN **bill** | **system** *What sort of heating system has your new flat got?*

heave *noun*

- ADJ. **great, mighty**
- VERB + HEAVE **give (sth)** *She gave a great heave and the box inched forward.*

heaven *noun*

1 believed to be the home of God

- VERB + HEAVEN **ascend to, go to** *I feel like I've died and gone to heaven.*
- PREP. **from ~** *Our child seemed a gift from heaven.* **in ~** (*figurative*) *It was a marriage made in heaven.*
- PHRASES **the kingdom of heaven**

2 place/situation in which you are very happy

- ADJ. **absolute, sheer** *It was sheer heaven being alone at last.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The kids were in absolute heaven at the fair.*
- PHRASES **a heaven on earth** *The island is truly a heaven on earth.* **sb's idea of heaven** *Building up a tan by the pool with a good book is my idea of heaven.*

heavy *adj.*

1 weighing a lot

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *My suitcase was beginning to feel very heavy.* | **become, get** *You're getting too heavy to carry!* | **make sth** *The bottles of wine made the bag even heavier.* | **find sth** *I didn't find it too heavy to carry.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, very** | **fairly, pretty, quite, rather** *Be careful. That box is rather heavy.*

2 worse than usual

- VERBS **be** | **become, get** *The rain was getting quite heavy.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, very** *The traffic's really heavy on the bypass.* | **fairly, pretty, quite**

Hebrew *noun*

- ADJ. **ancient, biblical** | **medieval** | **modern**
- HEBREW + NOUN **alphabet, script** | **scripture**

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

hedge *noun*

- ADJ. **high, low, tall, thick** | **boundary, garden, roadside** *Establish which boundary hedges are yours, and which belong to a neighbour.* | **beech, box, hawthorn, privet, yew, etc.** *a thick hawthorn hedge*
- VERB + HEDGE **plant** | **clip, trim** *Trim the hedge and collect the trimmings.*
- HEDGE + NOUN **clippings, trimmings** | **trimmer**

heel *noun*

1 back part of the foot

- VERB + HEEL **lean back on, sit back on, squat on** *She took a potato from the fire and sat back on her heels.* | **rock (back) on** *The punch rocked him back on his heels.* ◇ *He rocked back and forth on his heels as he laughed.* | **pivot on, spin on, turn on** *He turned on his heel and marched away angrily.* | **click (together)** *The officer clicked his heels together and saluted.* | **catch** *She caught her heel and tripped.* | **injure**
- HEEL + VERB **click**
- HEEL + NOUN **injury**
- PREP. **at your ~s** *She came up the path with two little dogs at her heels.* **under the ~** (*figurative*) *For years the nation had been under the heel of a dictatorial regime.*
- PHRASES **(close/hard/hot) on your heels** (*figurative*) *They reached the border with the police hot on their heels.*

2 part of a shoe/sock

- ADJ. **flat, low** | **high, spike, stiletto** | **three-inch, etc.**
- HEEL + NOUN **bar** *I took my shoes to a heel bar to have them repaired.*

height *noun*

1 how tall sb/sth is

- ADJ. **full, maximum** *He drew himself up to his full height and glared at us.* | **considerable, great, towering** *Her great height was rather a handicap.* | **average, medium, middle** *a man of middle height*
- VERB + HEIGHT **measure** | **grow to, reach** *The plants grow to a maximum height of 24 inches.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The wall is 2.5 metres in height.*

2 distance above the ground/sea level

- ADJ. **considerable, great** *The object had clearly fallen from a considerable height.* | **ceiling, chest, head, shoulder, waist, etc.** *Bring your hands to shoulder height.*
- VERB + HEIGHT **gain** | **lose** *The plane was beginning to lose height.* | **maintain** *The pilot was unable to maintain height.* | **attain, climb to, reach, rise to** *The balloon reached a height of 20 000 feet.*
- PREP. **at a ~ of** *The animal lives in lakes near Mexico City, at a height of 6 000 to 7 000 feet above sea level.*

3 (usually **heights**) high place

- ADJ. **mountain, rocky** *The condor soars above the mountain heights.*
- VERB + HEIGHT **scale** *They were the first expedition to scale the heights of Everest.* | **be afraid of, have no head for** | **have a head for** *A steeplejack has to have a good head for heights.*
- PREP. **from a ~** *The pattern of the ancient fields is clearly visible from a height.*
- PHRASES **a fear of heights**

4 heights high level of achievement

• ADJ. **commanding, dizzy, giddy, lofty** *They have risen to the dizzy heights of the semi-finals.* | **new** *The group's popularity reached new heights when they got a top ten hit.*

• VERB + HEIGHTS **reach, rise to, scale** *She rose to undreamed-of heights of power and fame.*

heighten *verb*

• ADV. **greatly** *This latest attack has greatly heightened fears of an all-out war.* | **further**

• VERB + HEIGHTEN **serve to** *Seeing others enjoying themselves only served to heighten his sense of loneliness.* | **seek to** *an exercise which seeks to heighten people's awareness of the problems*

heir *noun*

• ADJ. **lawful, legal, legitimate, rightful** *the rightful heir to the throne* | **natural, real, true** *The socialists saw themselves as true heirs of the Enlightenment.* | **direct** *When the Earl of Surrey died in 1347 he left no direct heir.* | **immediate** | **designated** | **apparent, presumptive** (both only after **heir**) *On his brother's death he became heir apparent to the title.* | **sole** | **female, male** | **political, spiritual** *The house was her spiritual home for which she sought a spiritual heir.*

• VERB + HEIR **have** *He has no heir to leave his fortune to.* | **beget, get, produce** *He planned to marry and produce an heir for his estate.* | **become, fall** *At the age of twenty he fell heir to a large estate.*

• PREP. **~ to** *He is the sole heir to a large mining fortune.*

• PHRASES **the heir to the throne, sb's son and heir** *He left most of his property to his eldest son and heir.*

heirloom *noun*

• ADJ. **family** | **ancient**

• HEIRLOOM + VERB **be passed down, come down** *The brooch is a family heirloom which came down to her from her great-grandmother.*

helicopter *noun*

• ADJ. **air force, military, police** | **civilian, private** | **rescue** | **model**

• VERB + HELICOPTER **fly** *He flew helicopters during the Gulf War.*

• HELICOPTER + VERB **fly** | **hover** *The helicopter hovered above the air strip.* | **take off** | **land** | **crash** | **carry sb** *a helicopter carrying troops*

• HELICOPTER + NOUN **flight** | **pad** | **pilot** | **gunship**

• PREP. **by ~** *The victims were flown to hospital by helicopter.* **in a/the ~** *There were three people in the helicopter when it crashed.*

hell *noun*

1 place bad people are said to go to when they die

• VERB + HELL **go to** *He was terrified of going to hell when he died.*

• HELL + NOUN **fire**

• PREP. **in ~** *tormented souls in hell*

• PHRASES **the fires/flames of hell** *Lava poured out of the volcano, glowing like the fires of hell.*

2 very unpleasant place/situation

• ADJ. **absolute, pure, sheer** *It was sheer hell having to sit through hours of boring lectures!* | **living** *The last few weeks have been a living hell for the refugees.*

• VERB + HELL **go through** *She's been going through hell with that bad tooth.* | **give sb, make sb's life** *Her boss is making her life hell.*

• PREP. **in ~** *'We're living in hell,' said one of the refugees.*

• PHRASES **the … from hell** *It really was the holiday from hell—it rained all the time, we all got colds, and we missed the plane home.* **hell on earth** *For someone who doesn't like heat, Florida would be hell on earth.*

helmet *noun*

• ADJ. **visored** | **crash, cycle, flying, motorcycle, safety** | **fireman's, policeman's, etc.**

• VERB + HELMET **have on, wear** | **put on** | **remove, take off**

help *noun*

• ADJ. **big, enormous, great, invaluable, real, substantial, tremendous, valuable** *You've been a big help—thanks.* ◇ *It's a great help having you around.* ◇ *This is the first scheme to offer real help to working mothers.* | **generous** | **direct** *The careers officer gives direct help as well as advice.* | **mutual, self-** *The system is based on mutual help rather than on payment for services.* ◇ *a best-selling author of self-help books* | **voluntary** *The homeless centre relies entirely on voluntary help.* | **immediate** | **individual** *Teachers have little time to give individual help to students.* | **expert, skilled, technical** | **outside** *They can usually manage by themselves, but occasionally need outside help.* | **financial, legal, medical, practical, professional** *When the symptoms persisted, I decided to seek medical help.*

• VERB + HELP **appeal for, ask for, beg for, call for, scream for, seek, send for, shout for, summon** *Police are appealing for help in catching the killers.* ◇ *I opened the window and called for help.* | **bring, enlist, fetch, find, get** *He enlisted the help of a private detective in his search for the truth.* ◇ *He ran to get help.* | **need, want** *Do you need any help unloading the car?* | **get, receive** | **accept** *He's too proud to accept help.* | **come to, give sb, offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *Passers-by came to the woman's help when she was mugged.*

• HELP + VERB **arrive, come** *He lay injured for four hours before help arrived.* | **be at hand** (*informal*) *Don't panic—help is at hand.*

• HELP + NOUN **desk, line** (also **helpline**) *For further information, phone our helpline.*

• PREP. **beyond ~** *Some of the injured animals were beyond help and had to be destroyed.* **of ~** *The manual is too technical to be of help to the inexperienced user.* **with ~** *With a little help, I think I could fix the computer myself.* ◇ *We broke open the lock with the help of a spanner.* | **~ for** *The training centre provides special help for the long-term unemployed.* **~ from** *With help from a parent, a child can do simple cooking.* **~ in** *Local teachers provided invaluable help in developing the material.* **~ to** *She's been a big help to her father.* **~ with** *He'll need help with this homework.*

• PHRASES **an appeal/a plea/a request for help** *The family's request for help went unanswered.* **a cry for help** *I heard a cry for help from inside the building.* **in need of help** *The man was clearly in need of urgent medical help.* **an offer of help** *He rudely rejected her kind offer of help.*

help *verb*

1 do sth for sb

• ADV. **a lot** *My mother helps me a lot.* | **a bit** | **solicitously** *He solicitously helped her back into the chair.* | **out**

• VERB + HELP **be able/unable to, can/could** *Can you help me with my homework?* | **try to** *I was only trying to help out.*

• PREP. **across** *I helped her across the road.* **into, out of** *She helped the old man out of the car.* **with** *We all help with the housework.*

• PHRASES **help sb to their feet** *Mike helped the old lady to her feet.* **a way of helping** *the best way of helping your child*

2 make sth easier/better

• ADV. **enormously, greatly, immeasurably, a lot, really, tremendously** *Talking to a counsellor helped her enor-*

mously. ◇ *The whole process was greatly helped by the widespread availability of computers.* | **a bit, a little** | **certainly** *It certainly helped that her father is a duke!*

• VERB + HELP **be designed to** *The minimum wage is designed to help people in low-pay service industries.*

• PREP. **in** *Iron helps in the formation of red blood cells.*

helper *noun*

• ADJ. **voluntary, volunteer** | **willing**

• QUANT. **band** *He recruited a band of willing helpers.*

helpful *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove** | **consider sth, find sb/sth**

• ADV. **enormously, especially, extremely, immensely, most, particularly, really, unusually, very** *Thank you, you have been most helpful.* | **not at all, not particularly** *Demanding peace short of victory would not be at all helpful.* | **fairly, quite** | **immediately** *indulging in ambitious, but not immediately helpful plans* | **generally, usually** | **always, invariably**

• PREP. **for** *This information would be extremely helpful for teenagers.* **in** *Graphs are helpful in presenting the information.* **on** *He was quite helpful on how to do the accounts.* **to** *The lifts will be helpful to the older patients.*

• PHRASES **friendly and helpful** *I found all the staff friendly and helpful.*

helping *noun*

• ADJ. **big, generous, huge, large** *a generous helping of potatoes* | **small** | **extra, second**

• VERB + HELPING **eat, have**

• PREP. **~of** *I had an extra helping of meat.*

helpless *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, lie, look, seem, stand, watch** *John felt completely helpless.* ◇ *He lay helpless in the hospital ward.* | **become** | **leave sb, render sb** *He was left helpless and alone.* ◇ *She was rendered helpless by panic.*

• ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, totally, utterly** | **apparently, seemingly** | **physically**

• PREP. **against** *She was helpless against his strength.* **before** *Kirk stood helpless before this giant of a man.* **in the face of** *feeling helpless in the face of all these rules and regulations* **with** *She was helpless with anger.*

helplessness *noun*

• ADJ. **utter**

• PHRASES **a feeling/sense of helplessness** *A feeling of utter helplessness washed over him.*

hen *noun*

• ADJ. **speckled** | **battery, free-range** | **mother** *She fussed around like mother hen.* | **broody**

• VERB + HEN **keep**

• HEN + VERB **lay (eggs)** *The hen layed three beautiful speckled eggs.* | **cackle, cluck, squawk** *I could hear the hens clucking in the farmyard.* | **roost** | **peck, scratch** *The hens pecked hopefully at the dusty floor.*

• HEN + NOUN **coop, house, roost**

hepatitis *noun*

• ADJ. **severe** | **acute, chronic** | **active** | **viral**

• VERB + HEPATITIS **have, suffer from** | **be infected with, contract, get**

• HEPATITIS + NOUN **virus** | **patient**

• PHRASES **hepatitis A/B/C**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

herb *noun*

• ADJ. **dried, fresh** | **mixed** *Add a teaspoonful of mixed herbs.* | **aromatic, fragrant** | **culinary, medicinal**

• QUANT. **bunch**

• VERB + HERB **garnish sth with** *Serve cold, garnished with fresh herbs.*

• HERB + NOUN **bed, border, garden**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

herd *noun*

1 group of animals

• ADJ. **great, large** | **small** | **beef, breeding, dairy** *The farm has only a small dairy herd.* | **cattle, elephant, etc.**

• HERD + NOUN **instinct**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *The animals tend to graze in a herd.* | **~of** *a large herd of cows*

• PHRASES **a member of a herd**

2 group of people

• ADJ. **common**

• VERB + HERD **follow** *If you feel so strongly, why follow the herd* (= do the same as everybody else)*?* | **stand out from** *She prided herself on standing out from the common herd* (= being different from ordinary people).

• HERD + NOUN **instinct**

heritage *noun*

• ADJ. **rich** | **natural** | **common, national** *Folk songs are part of our common heritage.* | **architectural, artistic, cultural, historical, literary**

• VERB + HERITAGE **have** *The city has an exceptionally rich heritage of historic buildings.* | **preserve, protect** *protecting our heritage of wild plants*

• HERITAGE + NOUN **centre, museum, site**

hernia *noun*

• VERB + HERNIA **have, suffer from** | **remove, repair**

• HERNIA + NOUN **operation, repair**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

hero *noun*

• ADJ. **big, great** *He was one of the great football heroes of his day.* | **real** | **all-time** *Einstein is the all-time hero of many scientists.* | **unsung** *She was an unsung hero of the British film industry.* | **reluctant, unlikely** | **brave, gallant** *The song remembers the brave heroes who died for their country.* | **romantic, tragic** *Being short and overweight, he was an unlikely romantic hero.* | **square-jawed, swashbuckling** *Tired of playing the square-jawed hero, he sought out more challenging roles.* | **all-conquering, conquering** *In his war stories he portrayed himself as the all-conquering hero.* ◇ *He returned home from the tournament a conquering hero.* | **fallen** *a fallen hero trying to regain his position* | **cult** *James Dean was a cult hero of the fifties.* | **folk, local, national, popular** | **fictional, legendary, mythical** | **eponymous** *Don Quixote, the eponymous hero of the novel by Cervantes* | **boyhood, childhood** *Bugs Bunny was one of my childhood heroes.* | **proletarian, working-class** | **military** | **celluloid** | **musical** *In this album she pays tribute to her musical heroes.* | **film, football, guitar, sporting, war** *Jimi Hendrix was her guitar hero.*

• VERB + HERO **be hailed (as)** *He was hailed as a hero after the rescue.* | **become, make sb into, turn sb into** *The fight to save the forest turned him into a local hero.* | **die** *He died a national hero.*

• PREP. **~to** *He was a hero to all his schoolmates.*

• PHRASES. **be no hero** *John was no hero—he stood back as his friends approached the two armed border guards.* **give sb/receive a hero's welcome, hero of the hour** *Everyone played brilliantly, but Jones was the hero of the hour.* **(die) a hero's death**

heroic *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **truly** *a truly heroic battle* | **suitably** *He struck a suitably heroic pose.*

heroin *noun*

- ADJ. **pure** | **street**
- QUANT. **dose, gram, ounce, shot, wrap**
- VERB + HEROIN **fix, inject, smoke**
- HEROIN + NOUN **injector** | **possession** | **injection** | **overdose** *a fatal heroin overdose* | **dealing**

⇨ Note at DRUG (for more verbs and nouns)

heroine *noun*

- ADJ. **great** *Violetta is one of the great tragic heroines of Verdi's operas.* | **national** | **romantic, tragic** | **unsung** *She remains one of the unsung heroines of the Second World War.* | **childhood** *She was thrilled to be interviewing her childhood heroine.* | **eponymous** *Jane Eyre, the eponymous heroine of the novel by Charlotte Brontë* | **sporting**

heroism *noun*

- ADJ. **great, real, true**
- PHRASES **an act of heroism**

herring *noun*

- ADJ. **fresh** | **pickled, salted, smoked, soused**
- VERB + HERRING **catch** | **eat, have**
- HERRING + NOUN **fillet**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

hesitate *verb*

- ADV. **briefly, a little, (for) a minute/moment/second, momentarily** *Alison hesitated a moment, as if she were waiting for him.*
- VERB + HESITATE **appear to, seem to** | **make sb** *Something about his smile made her hesitate.*
- PREP. **about** *I didn't hesitate about working with Craig.* **between** *He was hesitating between a glass of wine and an orange juice.* **over** *He stood hesitating over whether to join the fight.*

hesitation *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, fractional, momentary, slight** *There was a momentary hesitation before he replied.* | **initial** *After some initial hesitation, teachers seem to have accepted the new system.*
- PREP. **after ... ~** *After much hesitation, they decided to leave.* **without ~** *She answered immediately, without any hesitation.*
- PHRASES **have no hesitation in doing sth** *I have no hesitation in recommending him for the job.* **a moment's hesitation, a moment of hesitation** *After a moment's hesitation, he nodded.*

hibernation *noun*

- ADJ. **long** | **winter**
- VERB + HIBERNATION **go into** *At the first cold of autumn, many insects go into hibernation.* | **emerge from**
- PREP. **in ~** *The tortoise spends the winter months in hibernation.*

hiccup *noun*

1 sound made in the throat

- ADJ. **small** | **loud**
- VERB + HICCUP **give, let out** *She gave a loud hiccup.*

2 (the) hiccups series of hiccups

- QUANT. **attack** *He suddenly had an attack of the hiccups.*
- VERB + HICCUPS **get, suffer from** *I ate too quickly and got hiccups.*

3 small problem

- ADJ. **little, slight** | **occasional** | **temporary**
- PREP. **~ in** *This one defeat was the only hiccup in the team's steady progress up the League.*

hide *noun*

- ADJ. **thick, tough** *Elephants have a very tough hide.* | **buffalo, elephant, elk, ox, rhino**
- VERB + HIDE **tan** *The hide is tanned for leather.*

hide *verb*

1 go/put sth where you/it cannot be seen

- ADV. **away** *She hid the documents away in a drawer.*
- VERB + HIDE **prefer to, want to** *She wanted to run away and hide.* ◇ *(figurative) He accused the prime minister of preferring to hide from the truth.*
- PREP. **among** *hiding among the bushes* **behind** *(figurative) He hid behind a false identity.* **beneath** *He had a weak mouth which he hid beneath a moustache and beard.* **from** *hiding from their enemies* **in** *hiding in the shadows* **under** *He hid the book under his bed.*
- PHRASES **carefully/completely/well hidden** *The letters were well hidden in the back of the cupboard.* **half hidden** *The buildings were half hidden by the trees.* **hidden deep beneath/in sth** *tiny villages hidden deep in the softly rolling hills* **hidden from sight/view** *The house was hidden from view by a large hedge.* **lie/remain hidden** *treasures which have lain hidden in bank vaults since the war* **partially/partly hidden** *The house was partially hidden behind some trees.* **a place to hide (sth)** *I'll find a better place to hide it.*

2 keep sth secret

- ADV. **well** | **completely**
- VERB + HIDE **be able/unable to** *She was unable to hide her delight at his failure.* | **try to** | **make no attempt to** *He made no attempt to hide his anger* | **manage to**
- PREP. **from** *The government tried to hide the evidence from the public.*
- PHRASES **keep sth hidden** *feelings that she had kept completely hidden all these years* **remain/stay hidden** *The truth may well remain hidden for ever.*

hiding *noun*

- VERB + HIDING **go into** *He had gone into hiding just after war broke out.* | **come out of** *After the car had passed by they came out of hiding.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The fugitive had spent five weeks in hiding.*

hierarchical *adj.*

- VERBS **be** *The company's structure is rigidly hierarchical.* | **become**
- ADV. **extremely, rigidly, strictly, strongly, very** | **fairly** | **essentially**

hierarchy *noun*

- ADJ. **complex** | **rigid, strict** *the rigid class hierarchy of rural society* | **administrative, bureaucratic, corporate, management, managerial, organizational** | **class, social** | **church, ecclesiastical** | **party, political** *high up in the party hierarchy* | **military**
- VERB + HIERARCHY **create, establish** *A new management hierarchy was created within the company.* | **move up, rise in/through** *He joined the party in 1966 and quickly moved up the hierarchy.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She is above me in the hierarchy.* **within a/the ~** *There was a range of opinion within the ecclesias-*

tical hierarchy on the issue. | **~ of** *There was a clear hierarchy of power in the company.*

- PHRASES **sb's level/position/status in a hierarchy**

high *noun*

1 high level or point

- ADJ. **all-time, new, record**
- VERB + HIGH **hit, reach** *Share prices reached an all-time high yesterday.*

2 feeling of great pleasure or happiness

- ADJ. **real, tremendous** | **emotional**
- VERB + HIGH **experience, get** *the high she got from cocaine* | **give sb** *The drug gives you a tremendous high.*
- PREP. **on a ~** *She's been on a real high since she got her exam results.* ◇ *This show is our swansong—we want to finish on a high.*
- PHRASES **the highs and lows** *the emotional highs and lows of an actor's life*

highlight *noun*

- ADJ. **real, undoubted** *The real highlight of the trip for me was the visit to the Tower of London.* | **personal** | **edited, recorded ~s** (used to talk about sports broadcasts) *Recorded highlights of the match will be shown later tonight.*
- PHRASES **the highlight of the day, week, year, etc.** *The highlight of the week was Saturday's firework display.*

highlight *verb*

- ADV. **clearly** *These figures clearly highlight the difference in world living standards.* | **dramatically, graphically** *The needs of these children were dramatically highlighted by the Child Poverty Action Group.* | **merely, only, simply** *The peace talks merely highlighted the great gulf in understanding between the two sides.*
- VERB + HIGHLIGHT **serve to** *The incident has sadly only served to highlight the differences within the party.*

highway *noun*

- ADJ. **broad** | **three-lane, two-lane, etc.** *a four-lane highway* | **public** (*formal*) *He was fined for obstructing the public highway.* | **main, major, national** | **trans-Amazon, trans-European, etc.** | **coastal, desert** | **east-west, north-south**
- VERB + HIGHWAY **pull off** *We pulled off the highway and stopped for a break.* | **obstruct**
- PREP. **along the ~** *They tore along the highway.* **down the ~, off the ~, on the ~, onto the ~, up the ~** | **~ to** *the highway to Sydney*

hike *noun*

- ADJ. **long** | **strenuous** | **ten-mile, two-day, etc.**
- VERB + HIKE **go on** *The boys have gone on a long hike with the Boy Scouts.*
- PREP. **on a ~** *They met on a hike.* | **~ from, ~ to** *It's a hell of a hike from Sydney to Perth.*

hill *noun*

- ADJ. **big, high, long** *The bus sped down the long hill.* | **little, low, small** *The village is set on a small hill.* | **steep** | **gentle** | **rolling, undulating ~s** *The landscape is made up of low, rolling hills.* | **conical, rounded** | **blue, dark, green, purple** | **bare, forested, grassy, open, rocky, rugged, wooded** | **distant, far** *the distant blue hills* | **isolated, lonely** | **encircling, surrounding ~s** *Troops forced villagers to flee to the surrounding hills.* | **prominent** | **coastal** | **chalk** *the chalk hills of southern England*
- VERB + HILL **climb (up), go up** *They climbed a steep hill and came to the village.* | **come down** | **take to ~s** (*literary*) *We took to the hills in a variety of four-wheel-drive vehicles.*
- HILL + VERB **overlook sth, rise** *a hill overlooking the wide valley below* ◇ *Wooded hills rise behind the town.*
- HILL + NOUN **climbing, walking** | **walker** | **farming** | **farmer** | **farm, fort, station** (= a small town in the hills, especially in India), **town, village** *In the heat of summer the rich fled to the hill stations.* | **country** | **top** (= also hilltop) | **start** (= starting a vehicle on a slope)
- PREP. **down a/the ~** *A grassy path led down the hill.* **in the ~s** *There are several lead mines in the hills above Grassington.* **on a/the ~** *The church is perched on a hill.* **over a/the ~** *Over the hill lies another village.* **up a/the ~** *A few yards up the hill, on the left, was a turning.* | **~ above** *the hills above the town*
- PHRASES **the bottom/foot of a/the hill** *A spring emerges at the bottom of the hill.* **the top of a/the hill**

hillside *noun*

- ADJ. **steep** | **bare, exposed, open, rocky** | **grassy, green, wooded** *On our left was a wooded hillside.* | **terraced** *I was back in wine country, with terraced hillsides on both sides of the road.* | **distant**
- VERB + HILLSIDE **be set on** *Many of the chalets are set on a hillside reached by steps.*
- PREP. **down a/the ~** *A stream tumbles down the steep hillside.* **on a/the ~** *The house was on a hillside outside the town.* **up a/the ~** *We clambered up the hillside to the ridge above.* | **~ above** *the hillside above the village*

hinder *verb*

- ADV. **greatly, seriously** *These killings have seriously hindered progress towards peace.*
- VERB + HINDER **be likely to, tend to** *Bulky clothes tend to hinder movement.*
- PHRASES **help or hinder sth** *factors which might help or hinder a child's progress at school*

hindrance *noun*

- ADJ. **great**
- VERB + HINDRANCE **be, prove** *Having a car in the city might prove a hindrance.*
- PREP. **without ~** (*formal*) *The cook needs room to get at the cooker, sink and cupboards without hindrance.* | **~ to** *The new regulations are actually a great hindrance to teachers.*
- PHRASES **without let or hindrance** (*law*)

hindsight *noun*

- PREP. **in ~** *Their first scheme was deemed, in hindsight, a mistake.* **with ~** *This all seems obvious with hindsight.*
- PHRASES **(with) the advantage/benefit/wisdom of hindsight** *It is easy to criticize others when you have the benefit of hindsight.*

Hinduism *noun*

⇨ Note at RELIGION

hint *noun*

1 suggestion

- ADJ. **broad, clear, heavy, strong** *He gave a broad hint that he was on the verge of leaving.* | **gentle, subtle, veiled** | **tantalizing**
- VERB + HINT **drop, give (sb)** *I dropped a few subtle hints about the payment being due.* | **get, take** *OK, I get the hint!* ◇ *Can't you take a hint and leave me alone?*
- PREP. **~ about, ~ from** *a hint from my boss about my absences from the office* **~ to** *Is that a hint to me to leave?*

2 small amount of sth

- ADJ. **strong** *a dish with a strong hint of garlic* | **faint, merest, slightest** *The slightest hint of gossip upset her.*
- PREP. **~of** *There was a hint of amusement in his voice.*
- PHRASES **at the first hint of sth** *At the first hint of trouble, I will call the police.*

3 piece of advice

- ADJ. **handy, helpful, practical, useful**
- VERB + HINT **give (sb)**
- PREP. **~about** *The book gives some useful hints about how to plan your garden.* **~on** *a book full of handy hints on painting and decorating*

hint *verb*

- ADV. **strongly** *He hinted strongly that he would be resigning soon.* | **discreetly** | **darkly** *She hinted darkly that all was not well.* | **only**
- PREP. **at** *The problems are only hinted at in the report.*

hip *noun*

- ADJ. **lean, narrow** *Her hips were still narrow like a girl's.* | **sturdy, wide** | **broken, dislocated, fractured** | **arthritic** | **artificial**
- VERB + HIP **have/put your hands on** *He put his hands on his hips and sighed.* | **roll, sway, swing, wiggle** *She wiggled her hips seductively as she walked.* | **rotate, turn, twist** *Twist your hips towards your opponent as you punch.* | **thrust** | **break, dislocate, fracture**
- HIP + VERB **spread** *Her hips had spread since having a baby.*
- HIP + NOUN **fracture, injury** | **deformity** | **operation, replacement** *My grandmother's having a hip replacement.* | **bone, joint, socket** | **flask** *He took a swig of whisky from his hip flask.* | **pocket** *Don't carry money or documents in your hip pocket.*
- PREP. **across the ~s** *She was wearing a short blue dress, belted across the hips.* **at the ~** *He had his leg amputated at the hip.* **from the ~** *The gun could be fired from the shoulder or from the hip.* **on the ~** *She was carrying a baby on her hip.* **to the ~** *The skirt is slit to the hip on one side.*
- PHRASES **hands on hips** *He leaned casually against the door frame, hands on hips.*

hire *noun*

- ADJ. **bicycle, car, equipment, etc.**
- HIRE + NOUN **car** *Our hire car broke down after only an hour.* | **charge, cost** | **company, firm, shop**
- PREP. **for ~** *There are boats for hire on the lake.* **on ~ (from/to)** *The equipment is on hire from a local company.* | **~of** *The main expense was the hire of a car.*

hire *verb*

- ADV. **promptly** *The entire workforce was laid off and a fresh one promptly hired.* | **by the day, week, etc.** *What's the cost of hiring by the day?* | **locally** *Ski equipment can be hired locally.*
- PREP. **from** *Bicycles can be hired from several local shops.*

hiss *noun*

- ADJ. **sharp** | **faint, soft, low** *There was a low hiss on the tape.* | **audible**
- VERB + HISS **give, let out** *The snake gave a hiss.* | **hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *She drew in her breath with a hiss.* | **~of** *We could hear the faint hiss of escaping gas.*
- PHRASES **boos and hisses, a hiss of air, the hiss of a snake**

⇨ Note at SOUND

hiss *verb*

1 make a sound like a long 's'

- ADV. **gently** *The gas lamp hissed gently.*

2 say sth in an angry, hissing voice

- ADV. **angrily, furiously** *'Don't be stupid!' she hissed furiously.* | **quietly**
- PREP. **at** *She hissed at me to be quiet.*
- PHRASES **hiss (sth) through your teeth** *'Go away!' he hissed through clenched teeth.*

historian *noun*

- ADJ. **distinguished, eminent, great, leading, respected** *a talk given by an eminent social historian* | **serious** *No serious historian today accepts this theory.* | **academic, professional** | **amateur** | **official** *the official historian of the Labour Party* | **contemporary, early, future** *The oldest tradition goes back to the contemporary historian John Foxe.* ◇ *What will future historians make of the late twentieth century?* | **ancient, medieval, modern** *She is a writer as well as a distinguished modern historian.* | **local** | **family** | **art, church, cultural, economic, human, literary, military, political, social, etc.** | **revisionist** *Revisionist historians have questioned the accepted version of events.*

history *noun*

1 the past, especially as a subject of study

- ADJ. **contemporary, early, recent** *the early history of the trade union movement* ◇ *things that happened in recent history* | **ancient, medieval, modern** | **local** | **family** | **British, world, etc.** | **official** *the official history of the Labour Party* | **recorded** *The debate about the origins of the universe has been going on throughout recorded history.* | **oral** *Oral history enables us to take account of those many aspects of history that are not recorded in documents.* | **art, church, cultural, economic, human, literary, military, political, social, etc.**
- QUANT. **piece** *She created a piece of history by winning her fourth title.*
- VERB + HISTORY **be steeped in** *a building that is steeped in history* | **go down in, make, pass into** *He will go down in history as a wise adviser and a kind man.* ◇ *He made history by being the first man to walk on the moon.* | **trace** *The regiment traces its history back to 1803.* | **distort, rewrite** *her attempt to rewrite history with herself in the role of heroine*
- HISTORY + VERB **go back (to) …** *The town's history goes back to Roman times.* | **reveal sth, show sth** *History shows that New Zealand are almost unbeatable by British teams on their own turf.* | **repeat itself** *Years later, family history repeated itself with Eve's daughters.*
- HISTORY + NOUN **book** (*figurative*) *She has earned her place in the history books.*
- PREP. **during sth's ~** *The country has suffered several invasions during its history.* **in (sth's) ~** *the most extraordinary royal meeting in history* ◇ *the best player in the sport's history* **throughout ~** *There have been conflicts such as this throughout history.*
- PHRASES **change the course of history** *events that could change the course of history* **a period of history** *This is a fascinating period of history.* **the rest is history** (= the rest of the story does not need to be told because it is well-known) **a sense of history** *a people with no sense of history* **a slice of history** *The team grabbed a slice of history here today* (= achieved sth that will be remembered).

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for more verbs and nouns)

2 facts about sb/sth's life/existence in the past

- ADJ. **chequered, colourful, fascinating, interesting, rich** *The city has a rich and colourful history.* | **long** *She has a long history of mental illness.* | **previous, subsequent** | **case** *She familiarized herself with the case history of her new patient.* | **employment, family, life, med-**

ical, personal, sexual *The doctor will need some details of your medical history.* ◇ *I know nothing about his personal history.*

- VERB + HISTORY **have**
- PREP. **~of** *a history of heart disease in the family*

3 sth in the past that is no longer important

- ADJ. **past** *They had an affair once, but that's past history now.*

hit *noun*

1 act of hitting sth/sb

- ADJ. **direct**
- VERB + HIT **give sth, make, score** *Give it a good hit* ◇ *At last he managed to score a hit.* | **receive, suffer, take** *One of the tanks took a direct hit.*
- HIT + NOUN **list** *She was at the top of the terrorists' hit list* (= the list of people they intended to kill) *for over two years.* ◇ *Which services are on the government's hit list?* | **man, squad** *He claimed that a hit man had been paid £20 000 to kill him.*

2 sb/sth that is very popular

- ADJ. **big, greatest, huge, massive, real, smash** *The show has been a smash hit.* | **immediate, instant** | **box-office, chart** *The band are here to promote their latest chart hit.*
- HIT + NOUN **album, film, movie, record, show, single, song** | **parade** (*old-fashioned*) *The single was number one in the British hit parade*
- PREP. **~with** *The series has been a big hit with children.*

hit *verb*

1 touch sb/sth with a lot of force

- ADV. **hard** *She didn't hit me very hard.* | **almost, nearly** *A taxi almost hit him as he was crossing the street.* | **accidentally** *I accidentally hit my knee on the desk.*
- VERB + HIT **want to** *I was so angry, I wanted to hit him.* | **be going to** *I was afraid he was going to hit me.*
- PREP. **in** *She hit him in the face.* **on** *I hit my head on the low doorway.* **with** *He hit her with a stick.*
- PHRASES **hit sb over the head** *He was hit over the head with a broken bottle.*

2 have a bad effect on sb/sth

- ADV. **badly, hard, heavily, severely** *Our department has been badly hit by the cutbacks.* ◇ *Some businesses have been hit very hard by the rise in interest rates.*

PHRASAL VERB

hit out

- ADV. **hard** | **wildly** *I just hit out wildly in all directions.*
- PREP. **at** *In a rousing speech the minister hit out at racism in the armed forces.*

hitch *noun*

- ADJ. **slight** | **last-minute** *There are always a few last-minute hitches at the dress rehearsal.* | **legal, technical** *There was a slight technical hitch which delayed the plane's take-off.*
- PREP. **without a ~** *Everything went without a hitch.* | **~in** *There's been a hitch in the plans.*

HIV *noun*

- VERB + HIV **be at risk from** | **contract, get** | **have, suffer from** *people suffering from HIV and Aids* | **be affected by, be infected by** | **spread, transmit** | **be/test negative for, be/test positive for** | **test sb/sth for, screen sth for** *screening blood for HIV* | **treat**
- HIV + NOUN **infection** | **antibody, virus** | **carrier, sufferer** | **status** *If you are unsure of your HIV status, consider having a test.* | **test**
- PHRASES **HIV negative/positive**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

hoard *noun*

- ADJ. **big, large, major, vast** *one of the biggest hoards of Roman coins ever found* | **small** | **secret** *her secret hoard of food*
- PREP. **in ~s** *Gold coins have been found in hoards in many parts of the country.* | **~of** *a vast hoard of treasure*

hoarse *adj.*

- VERBS **be, sound** | **become, get, go** | **leave sb, make sb/sth, scream yourself, shout yourself** *All the shouting had left her rather hoarse.* ◇ *Excitement made her voice hoarse.* ◇ *He shouted himself hoarse, but still no one came.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **rather, slightly**
- PREP. **from** *Her voice was hoarse from shouting.* **with** *His voice was hoarse with anxiety.*

hoax *noun*

- ADJ. **elaborate** *It turned out to be an elaborate hoax.* | **cruel** *He described the deception as a cruel hoax.* | **bomb**
- VERB + HOAX **perpetrate, play, stage** *a hoax perpetrated by the British government*
- HOAX + NOUN **call, caller**
- PREP. **~on** *The organizers staged a hoax on some of the competitors.*

hobby *noun*

- ADJ. **absorbing, enjoyable, relaxing, satisfying** | **favourite, pet** *Cooking is her pet hobby.*
- VERB + HOBBY **have** *Have you got any hobbies?* | **enjoy, follow, indulge (in), pursue** *She never had any time to pursue her hobbies.* | **start, take up** *Why don't you take up a new hobby?*
- PREP. **among your ~s** *Cycling and karate are among her hobbies.* **as a ~** *He takes photographs as a hobby.*

hockey *noun*

- ADJ. **field, ice, indoor, roller** | **ladies', mens', mixed** | **senior, under-18, etc.**
- VERB + HOCKEY **play** *She plays hockey in the winter.*
- HOCKEY + NOUN **stick** | **pitch** | **match, tournament** | **coach, player** | **star** | **fan** | **club, squad, team** *the Olympic hockey squad* | **league, tournament**

⇨ Special page at SPORT

hold *noun*

1 act/way of holding sth

- ADJ. **firm, tight** *He still had me in a tight hold.*
- VERB + HOLD **catch, get, grab, grasp, seize, take** *Take hold of the handle and give it a hard pull.* | **have, keep** *He kept a firm hold on my hand.* | **lose** *He lost his hold on the rock and was swept away by the tide.* | **tighten** | **relax, release** *She finally released her hold on me.*
- PREP. **~on** *He tightened his hold on her.*

2 influence/control over sb

- ADJ. **firm, powerful, strong, tight** *He still has a firm hold on the party.* | **increasing** | **fragile, tenuous, weak** *Her hold on power was now quite tenuous.*
- VERB + HOLD **have** | **lose** *The allies lost their hold on northern France.* | **consolidate, strengthen, tighten** *Enemy forces have consolidated their hold on the northern province.* | **break, weaken** *an attempt to break the hold of the Church*
- PREP. **~on** *This had weakened his hold on power.* **~over** *He no longer had any hold over her.*

holder *noun*

- ADJ. **licence, passport, ticket** *Only ticket holders will be allowed into the ground.* | **account, credit card, policy** *Account holders with the bank qualify for a discount on loans.* | **championship, cup, record, title** *the current 800* *metres record holder* | **job, office, post** *She wondered why the previous job holder had left.*

hold-up *noun*

1 robbery

- ADJ. **armed** | **bank**
- VERB + HOLD-UP **carry out**

2 delay

- ADJ. **lengthy** | **traffic**

hole *noun*

- ADJ. **big, deep, gaping, great, huge, large, massive, yawning** | **small, tiny** | **circular, round** | **jagged, ragged** *The missile had torn a jagged hole in the side of the ship.* | **neat** | **bullet** *The wall was full of bullet holes.* | **mouse, rabbit, etc.**
- VERB + HOLE **bore, break, cut, dig, drill, make, punch, tear, wear** *We dug a deep hole to bury the animals in.* ◇ *She punched two holes in each sheet of paper.* ◇ *He had worn a hole in the knees of his trousers.* | **fill (in), plug** *I uprooted the tree and filled the hole with earth.* ◇ *We used cement to plug the holes.*
- PREP. **down a/the ~** *The snake disappeared down a hole.* **in a/the ~** *There was water in the hole.* **through a/the ~** *We climbed through the hole.* | **~ in** *I used a skewer to make an extra hole in my belt.*
- PHRASES **full of holes** *The old blankets were now full of holes.* **riddled with holes** *The car was riddled with bullet holes.*

holiday *noun*

1 period of time away from home for pleasure

- ADJ. **enjoyable, exciting, fun-filled, good, lovely, wonderful** | **disastrous** *We had a disastrous camping holiday.* | **dream** *What would be your dream holiday?* | **foreign, overseas** | **summer, winter** | **7-night, two-week, etc.** | **package** | **family** | **activity, adventure, camping, skiing** *I learned to windsurf on an activity holiday.*
- VERB + HOLIDAY **go on, have, take** *We're going on holiday to France this summer.* ◇ *Are you having a holiday this year?* | **book** *Have you booked your summer holiday yet?* | **cancel** *I got ill and had to cancel my holiday.*
- HOLIDAY + NOUN **destination, resort, venue** *a popular seaside holiday resort* | **accommodation, cottage, home** *They also have a holiday home at the seaside.* | **camp, complex, village** | **period, season** *The pool is open throughout the holiday season.* | **brochure** | **business, company, firm** *The recession hit the package holiday business hard.* | **insurance** *You should take out holiday insurance before you leave.* | **arrangements, plans** | **romance** *Their holiday romance turned into a lasting relationship.* | **photos, snaps**
- PREP. **on (a) ~** *They met while on holiday in Spain.*
- PHRASES **a holiday of a lifetime** *This is your chance to win the holiday of a lifetime.*

2 period of rest from work/school

- ADJ. **annual, Christmas, Easter, summer** *The centre is now closed for the Christmas holidays.* | **school** | **paid**
- VERB + HOLIDAY **be entitled to, get, have** *You are entitled to 24 days' paid holiday per year.* ◇ *I have three weeks' holiday a year.* | **take** *I'm taking the rest of my holiday in October.* | **spend** *She spent her holiday decorating the flat.* | **need** *I really need a holiday!*
- HOLIDAY + NOUN **time** | **entitlement** | **pay** | **job** *She had a holiday job as a gardener when she was a student.*
- PREP. **during the ~s** *It can be difficult to keep children occupied during the long summer holidays.* **in the ~s** *My aunt's coming to stay in the holidays.* **on ~** *I'm afraid Mr Adamek is on holiday this week.*

3 day when people do not go to work/school

- ADJ. **bank, national, public, religious**
- HOLIDAY + NOUN **weekend** *The roads will be busy on Monday as it's a holiday weekend.*

hollow *noun*

- ADJ. **deep** | **little, shallow, slight** | **damp, dark, grassy** | **sheltered** | **natural**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Snow lay in dark hollows.* | **~ in** *a hollow in the ground* **~ of** *the hollow of her throat*

home *noun*

1 place where sb/sth lives

- ADJ. **boyhood, childhood, family, marital, matrimonial, natural, parental** *Placing a child in public care is sometimes the only solution to ill-treatment in the natural home.* ◇ *It's unusual for young people over 25 to still live in the parental home.* | **native** *She left her native home in Ireland and went to America.* | **permanent, temporary** *a shelter for people with no permanent home* | **comfortable, luxurious, luxury, magnificent, nice, pleasant** | **humble** | **happy, secure, stable, supportive** *These children badly need a stable and secure home life.* ◇ *The lock-up garage provides a secure home for your car.* | **broken** *children from a broken home* (= whose parents are no longer together) | **single-parent** *More and more children in the school are from single-parent homes.* | **middle-class, working-class, etc.** | **dream** *They found their dream home on the shore of a lake.* | **detached, semi-detached, terrace/terraced** | **rented** | **council** | **country, island, mountain, riverside, seaside, suburban, valley, village** *He used to spend the summer painting at his country home.* | **holiday, weekend** *They also have a holiday home in Spain.* | **caravan, mobile, motor** *The storm wrecked the family's caravan home.* | **ancestral** | **stately** *Priceless antique furniture was destroyed in the fire at the stately home.* | **forest** *These birds are in danger of becoming extinct as their forest home disappears.* | **winter** *The mudflats offer a winter home to thousands of migrating swans.* | **legendary** *The hill is the legendary home of King Arthur.* | **spiritual** *The first time he visited New Orleans he knew he had found his spiritual home.*
- VERB + HOME **arrive, come, get, go, make your way** *Let's go home—I'm tired.* | **bring sb/sth, take sb/sth** | **be away from, get away from, leave** *He didn't leave home until he was 24.* | **abandon** *The people abandoned their homes and headed for the hills.* | **find (sb/sth), give sb/sth** *Perhaps we could find a home for the kitten.*
- HOME + NOUN **address, number** *Try phoning me on my home number after six o'clock.* | **buyer, owner** | **ownership** | **purchase** | **sales** | **background, conditions, environment, life, situation** *He came from an appalling home background.* ◇ *She had never had a stable home life.* | **area, base, country, district, state, town** | **territory, turf** *I arranged to meet her in her office, as she seemed more relaxed on her home territory.* | **improvement, maintenance, repairs** | **extension** | **loan** | **help** *My grandmother has a home help who comes and cleans twice a week.* | **appliance** | **computer** | **furnishings** | **contents** *Make sure you insure your home contents for an adequate amount.* | **comforts** *She desperately missed her home comforts while camping.* | **insurance** | **security** *Fitting a burglar alarm is the most effective way to increase home security.* | **entertainment** *the market for home entertainment systems* | **use** *This video is for home use only.* | **user** *a laser printer aimed at the home user* | **trial** *We are offering a free 15-day home trial on our software.* | **student, study** *The course is suitable for classroom or home study.* | **tutor** | **work, worker** *He supplements his income with part-time or home work.* | **baking, cooking** *She missed her mother's home cooking.* | **nursing** | **visit** *The doctor was assaulted on a home visit.* | **remedy, treatment** *I've tried all the home remedies for headaches without success.* | **leave** *He went missing while on home leave from prison.*

| **movie, video** *We have a home movie of my dad teaching me to swim.* | **consumption** *He claimed he had bought the cigarettes for home consumption, not to sell them.* | **market** *They hope to sell as many computers on the home market as they export.* | **affairs, news** *the party's spokesman for home affairs ◇ The newspaper gives priority to home news over international news.* | **port, waters** *seamen serving in home waters*

• PREP. **at ~, away from ~** *Her job means she's away from home for weeks at a time.* **back ~, in your own ~** | **~ of** *Andalusia, the home of flamenco*

• PHRASES **a home from home** *The hotel's friendly atmosphere makes it a real home from home.* **home-grown** *home-grown vegetables ◇ (figurative) The show gives home-grown musical talent the chance to show what they can do.* **home-made** *home-made bread* **on the home front** (= used to introduce domestic news) *On the home front, the fuel crisis continues to worsen.* **welcome home** *The banner said 'Welcome home dad!'*

2 place that provides care for sb/sth

• ADJ. **care, charity, children's, convalescent, foster, nursing, old people's, remand, residential, rest, retirement** | **purpose-built** *Work begins this week on a purpose-built home for the city's homeless.*

• VERB + HOME **provide (sb with)** *We have to provide a good home for the children.* | **run** *They run a retirement home for the elderly.*

homeland *noun*

• ADJ. **beloved** *They were devastated that they had to leave their beloved homeland.* | **ancient, traditional** *the struggle to defend their ancient homeland* | **former** | **tribal** | **adopted** *He wants his children to grow up in his adopted homeland.* | **Jewish, Palestinian**

• VERB + HOMELAND **flee, leave** *During the war, they were forced to flee their homeland.* | **go back to, return to, visit** *He longs to return to his homeland.*

• PREP. **in a/sb's ~** *They hope to remain in their homeland.*

homeless *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become, end up, find yourself** *He found himself homeless after his marriage broke up.* | **leave sb, make sb, render sb** *Three hundred people were made homeless by the earthquake.*

• ADV. **officially** | **intentionally, voluntarily** *The local authority ruled that he had made himself intentionally homeless and was therefore not entitled to be rehoused.*

homesick *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel** | **become, get** | **make sb** *Seeing other families together made him terribly homesick.*

• ADV. **desperately, terribly, very** | **a bit, a little**

homework *noun*

• ADJ. **English, science, etc.**

• QUANT. **piece**

• VERB + HOMEWORK **do** *Have you done your maths homework yet?* | **finish** | **hand in** *I want you to hand in this homework on Friday.* | **get, have** *They get masses of homework at secondary school.* | **give (sb), set (sb)** *The science teacher always sets a lot of homework.* | **correct, mark**

• PREP. **for ~** *We had to write out one of the exercises for homework.* | **~ on** *I've got some homework to do on the Industrial Revolution.*

homicide *noun*

• ADJ. **criminal, culpable, unlawful** | **justifiable** *The jury returned a verdict of justifiable homicide.*

⇨ Note at CRIME (for verbs)

homogeneous *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become**

• ADV. **remarkably, very** | **totally** | **largely** | **fairly, relatively** | **increasingly** | **apparently** | **supposedly** | **internally** | **culturally, ethnically, linguistically, racially, socially** *a culturally homogeneous society*

homosexual *noun*

• ADJ. **practising** | **closet, repressed** | **female, male**

• VERB + HOMOSEXUAL **come out as** *He came out as a homosexual after his mother died.*

• HOMOSEXUAL + VERB **come out of the closet**

• PHRASES **discrimination against homosexuals**

honest *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem**

• ADV. **extremely, really, scrupulously, truly, very** | **absolutely, completely, perfectly, quite, totally** | **less than, not altogether, not entirely** *I don't think you've been altogether honest with me.* | **basically, enough, reasonably** *She seems honest enough.* | **refreshingly** | **brutally, painfully, ruthlessly** *Let's be brutally honest about this: you haven't a hope of succeeding.*

• PREP. **about** *Try to be honest about how you feel.* **in** *He is always scrupulously honest in his business activities.* **with** *My parents were always completely honest with me.*

• PHRASES **to be honest (with you)** *To be quite honest with you, I don't think he's the right person for the job.* **open and honest** *She was totally open and honest about her feelings.*

honesty *noun*

• ADJ. **absolute, complete, scrupulous, total** *I always expect total honesty from my employees.* | **transparent** | **brutal, painful, ruthless** *'Don't you believe me?' 'I don't know,' she said with painful honesty.* | **disarming** | **intellectual** *You need ruthless intellectual honesty about your own skills, weaknesses and motives.*

• VERB + HONESTY **have** *She had the honesty to admit her mother was right.* | **lack** | **expect**

• PREP. **in ~** (= honestly) *Who in honesty can blame her?* **with ~** *She answered the questions with complete honesty.* | **~ about** *I appreciate your honesty about this.*

• PHRASES **honesty and integrity** *He has the honesty and integrity to be chairman.* **in all honesty** (= used to say sth which, though true, may seem disappointing) *In all honesty, the book was not as good as I expected.*

honey *noun*

• ADJ. **clear** | **runny** | **wild**

• QUANT. **dollop** | **jar, pot**

• VERB + HONEY **make, produce** *learning how bees make honey ◇ a jar of locally-produced honey* | **gather** *to gather honey from the hive* | **spread (sth with)** *He spread some honey on his bread.*

• HONEY + NOUN **bee**

• PHRASES **as sweet as honey**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

honeymoon *noun*

• ADJ. **brief, short** *We had a brief honeymoon in Paris.* | **long** | **second** *After so many years of marriage, we're planning a second honeymoon.*

• VERB + HONEYMOON **go on, have, leave for, spend** *They go on honeymoon the day after the wedding.*

• HONEYMOON + VERB **be over** (*usually figurative*) *The honeymoon was over and the reality of what she had taken on began to dawn.*

• HONEYMOON + NOUN **couple** | **suite** | **period** (*figurative*) *There was always a honeymoon period when Mum started a new job.*

- PREP. **for a ~** *They can't decide where to go for their honeymoon.* **on ~** *While on honeymoon in Bali, she learned to scuba dive.*

honour *noun*

1 sth that makes you feel proud

- ADJ. **great, rare, signal, special, tremendous | doubtful, dubious** *Max was given the dubious honour of organizing the children's party.*
- VERB + HONOUR **have** *I had the rare honour of being allowed into the artist's studio.* **| do sb** (*formal*), **give sb** *Will you do me the honour of dining with me?* **| share** *He shared the honour of being the season's top scorer with Andy Cole.*

2 great respect

- PREP. **in sb's ~** *They organized a party in his honour.*
- PHRASES **a guard of honour** *The princess's coffin was accompanied by a guard of honour.* **(the) guest of honour** *The president was guest of honour at the society's banquet.* **a lap of honour** *The crowd cheered while the athletes ran their lap of honour.* **a mark of honour** *They stood in silence as a mark of honour to the drowned sailors.* **the place/seat of honour, a roll of honour** *The school's roll of honour lists everyone killed in the war.*

3 good reputation

- ADJ. **family, national, personal, professional** *He was now satisfied that the family honour had been restored.*
- VERB + HONOUR **defend, fight for, save, uphold** *She felt she had to defend the honour of her profession.* **| restore | do, bring** *This biography does great honour to the poet's achievements.* ◇ *She brought honour to her country as an Olympic medal-winner.*
- HONOUR + VERB **be satisfied** *In the return match the home team won 3–0 and honour was satisfied.* **| be at stake** *National honour is at stake in this match between France and England.*
- PREP. **on your ~** (*old-fashioned*) *I swear on my honour* (= very seriously) *that I knew nothing about this.* **with ~** *The prime minister sought an agreement that would bring peace with honour.* **without ~** *a man without honour*
- PHRASES **be/feel (in) honour bound (to …)** *He felt honour bound to help her.* **a code of honour** *Knights in the Middle Ages had a strong code of honour.* **a man of honour, a matter/point of honour** *It is a matter of professional honour to keep our standards as high as possible.* **a sense of honour, sb's word of honour** *I give you my word of honour I will not forget what I owe you.*

4 award/official title, etc.

- ADJ. **full ~s, highest, major, top** *the stars who took top honours at the MTV Awards* **| academic, battle, civilian, military, political, royal**
- VERB + HONOUR **award (sb), bestow, confer, give sb** *The Order of Merit is the highest civilian honour that can be conferred on someone.* **| accept, pick up, receive, scoop, take, win** *She has confirmed that she will accept the honour of a peerage.* ◇ *It was the British who scooped the honours at last night's Oscars.*
- HONOUR + NOUN **list, system** *He was made a life peer in the New Year's honours list.*
- PHRASES **with full military honours** *He was buried with full military honours.*

5 honours type of degree course

- ADJ. **combined, joint**
- VERB + HONOURS **do, take** (*formal*) *All students taking honours in Greek may also study Modern Greek.*
- HONOURS + NOUN **course, degree** *He's in the third year of his honours course.* **| graduate, student**
- PREP. **~ in** *joint honours in mathematics and statistics*

6 honours high mark in a degree course

- ADJ. **first-class, second-class, third-class**
- HONOURS + NOUN **degree | graduate**
- PREP. **with ~** *She passed with second class honours.*

honourable *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very** *a very honourable man* **| completely, entirely, perfectly** *My intentions were perfectly honourable.*

honoured *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel**
- ADV. **deeply, greatly, highly, truly** *I am deeply honoured to be invited to this momentous occasion.*

hood *noun*

- VERB + HOOD **pull back, pull off, pull up, put up** *He walked into the room and pulled off his hood.* ◇ *She put up her hood when it started to rain.*
- PHRASES **with the hood down/up** *He was wearing a blue anorak with the hood up.*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

hooked *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become, get** *I first got hooked on scuba diving when I was twelve.* **| get sb | keep sb** *a master storyteller who knows how to keep his readers hooked*
- ADV. **truly** *People who are truly hooked will go to any lengths to satisfy their craving for the drug.* **| completely, totally**
- PREP. **on** *She's completely hooked on soap operas.*

hope *noun*

1 belief that sth you want will happen

- ADJ. **considerable, fervent, great, high** *a feeling of considerable hope* ◇ *It is my fervent hope that you will be able to take this project forward.* **| high** (only used with **hopes**) *Hopes are high that a resolution to the conflict can be found.* **| best, main** *Privatization seems to offer the best hope for the industry.* **| faint, frail, slight, vague** *There was still a faint hope that they would accept the offer.* **| real, sincere** *without any real hope of success* ◇ *It is my sincere hope that she will find happiness at last.* **| realistic, reasonable | desperate, wild | false, forlorn, vain** *He wasn't trying to give her false hope.* ◇ *It seemed a forlorn hope that we would find a taxi.* **| early** *His early hopes of freedom were now gone.* **| last, only** *He had one last hope to cling to.* **| fresh, renewed** *the treatment gave him renewed hope* **| sudden** *Her dark eyes lit with sudden hope.* **| lingering, remaining** *These figures kill off any lingering hopes of an early economic recovery.* **| personal**
- QUANT. **flicker, glimmer, ray, spark** *I looked at her and felt a glimmer of hope.*
- VERB + HOPE **be full of, cherish, entertain, have, see** *Lord Mountbatten secretly cherished hopes that Charles would marry his granddaughter.* ◇ *Political leaders do now entertain the hope that a settlement can be found.* ◇ *She saw little hope of meeting the targets.* **| express, voice** *The Mexican president expressed hope for cooperation on trade.* **| share | pin** *He pinned all his hopes on getting that job.* **| cling to, keep alive, live in** *keeping alive the hope that a peace settlement might be found* ◇ *I haven't yet found a flat, but I live in hope.* **| not hold out** *I don't hold out much hope of finding a buyer.* **| abandon, give up, lose** *I didn't give up hope of being released.* **| arouse, bring sb, give sb, offer (sb), raise** *The use of fish oil to treat cancer has brought fresh hope to millions of sufferers.* ◇ *This announcement has raised hopes that the crisis may be coming to an end.* **| boost** *The latest jobs figures have boosted hopes for the economy.* **| jeopardize | dash, destroy, kill (off), shatter, wreck** *Her hopes of going to university have now been dashed.*
- HOPE + VERB **lie, rest** *Her only hope lay in escape.* ◇ *Their main hopes rest on their new striker.* **| grow, rise** *Hopes of a peaceful end to the strike are now growing.* **|**

flare (up), spring (up), surge *Hope flared up inside her.* | **disappear, fade** *Hope faded after wrecked remains of the ship were washed onto the shore.*
- PREP. **beyond ~** *damaged beyond hope of repair* **in ~ of, in the ~ that** *I am writing to you in the hope that you can help me obtain some information.* **without ~** *She felt weak and without hope.* | **~ for** *young people who are full of hope for the future* **~ of** *I have no hope of winning.*
- PHRASES **every/little/no/some hope of sth** *We have every hope of completing the project this year.* ◇ *There is little hope that they will be found alive.* **grounds/reason for hope** *We now have good grounds for hope.* **(not) a hope in hell** *You haven't got a hope in hell of finding a job.* **a sign/symbol of hope**

2 sth you wish for
- ADJ. **high ~s** *They have high hopes for their children.* | **future** | **distant** *Peace is a distant hope in this war-torn region.* | **personal** | **disappointed, unfulfilled** *a bitter tale of disappointed hopes* | **championship, medal, Olympic, etc.** *the team's championship hopes*
- PREP. **~ for, ~ of**
- PHRASES **your hopes and dreams/expectations/fears** *She told me all her hopes and dreams.*

3 sb/sth that will help you get what you want
- ADJ. **bright** | **last, only** *He turned to her in despair and said, 'You're my last hope.'* | **medal**
- PREP. **~ for** *She is Britain's brightest hope for a medal.* **~ of** *The operation was Kelly's only hope of survival.*

hope *verb*

- ADV. **desperately, fervently, really, sincerely, very much** *hoping desperately that their missing son would come home* ◇ *I sincerely hope that you will be successful.*
- VERB + HOPE **(not) dare (to)** *I scarcely dared hope the plan would succeed.* | **begin to** | **continue to**
- PREP. **for** *We are hoping for good weather.*
- PHRASES **hope against hope** (= to continue to hope for sth even though it is very unlikely), **hope for the best** (= to hope that sth will happen successfully, especially where it seems likely that it will not)

hopeful *adj.*

1 thinking that sth good will happen
- VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound** *I feel quite hopeful that a peaceful solution will be found.* | **become, get** *Don't get too hopeful. We may not be able to go.* | **remain** *The police remained hopeful that she would be found alive.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **almost** | **fairly, pretty, quite** | **eternally** *Only Janet, eternally hopeful, thought it was worth trying again.*
- PREP. **about** *She was not very hopeful about her situation.* **of** *The police are quite hopeful of catching the thieves.*

2 making you think that sth good will happen
- VERBS **be, look, seem** *Things aren't looking very hopeful at the moment.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **fairly, quite** *There are some fairly hopeful signs of recovery in the US market.*

hopeless *adj.*

1 giving no hope
- VERBS **be, look, seem**
- ADV. **completely, quite, utterly** *The situation seemed completely hopeless.* | **apparently, seemingly**

2 feeling no hope
- VERBS **feel** *She felt lonely and completely hopeless.*
- ADV. **completely** | **rather**

3 very bad
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **absolutely** | **pretty** *He's a pretty hopeless dancer.*
- PREP. **at** *I'm absolutely hopeless at languages.* **with** *I've always been hopeless with machinery.*

horizon *noun*

1 line where earth and sky meet
- ADJ. **northern, southern, etc.** | **distant, far** *The sea stretched away to the distant horizon.*
- VERB + HORIZON **scan** *The captain scanned the horizon for any sign of other vessels.*
- PREP. **above the ~** *I watched the pale sun climb over the horizon.* **below the ~** *The sun was sinking rapidly below the western horizon.* **beyond the ~** *Land was still out of sight beyond the horizon.* **on the ~** *A cloud of dust on the horizon announced the arrival of the cavalry.* **over the ~** *The moon was rising over the horizon.*

2 horizons limits to knowledge/experience
- ADJ. **limited, narrow** | **new** | **cultural, intellectual, musical** *My first trip to the theatre broadened my cultural horizons.*
- VERB + HORIZONS **broaden, expand, open up, widen** *It is hoped that the course will open up new horizons for students.* | **limit, narrow, restrict** *Their horizons were limited to events within the village community.*
- HORIZONS + VERB **stretch** *His horizons didn't stretch beyond his next night out.*
- PREP. **beyond your ~** *They had become aware of possibilities beyond their own limited horizons.*

hormone *noun*

- ADJ. **female, male** | **growth, sex** *children who do not produce enough growth hormone*
- VERB + HORMONE **produce, release, secrete** *Hormones are secreted into the bloodstream.*
- HORMONE + NOUN **production** | **replacement therapy, treatment** | **deficiency, imbalance** | **balance, level**

horn *noun*

1 part of an animal
- ADJ. **buffalo, bull's, cow's, rhino, etc.** *ornaments made of rhino horn* | **curled, curved** *a large bull with curved horns* | **sharp**

2 warning device on a vehicle
- ADJ. **car**
- VERB + HORN **blow, honk, sound, toot** *Passing motorists honked their horns.*
- HORN + VERB **beep, blare, hoot, sound** *Another horn blared behind me.*
- HORN + NOUN **blast** *Impatient horn blasts began to sound behind him.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *He gave a furious blast on his horn.*

3 musical instrument
- VERB + HORN **blow**
- HORN + NOUN **section**

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

horoscope *noun*

- VERB + HOROSCOPE **cast, draw up** *To draw up someone's horoscope, you need to know their date and exact time of birth.* | **consult, read** | **believe in** *Do you believe in horoscopes?*
- HOROSCOPE + VERB **say sth** *What does your horoscope say?*

horrible *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste**
- ADV. **bloody** (*taboo*), **really** *That was a really horrible thing to say!* | **absolutely, perfectly, quite, truly** *a truly horrible sight* | **pretty, rather** *a pretty horrible experience*
- PREP. **to** *My sister has always been horrible to me.*

horrific *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look | describe sth as** *Police described the attack as horrific.*

• ADV. **really | absolutely, quite, truly** *Some of the scenes we witnessed were quite horrific.* **| fairly, pretty**

horror *noun*

1 feeling of fear/shock

• ADJ. **abject, absolute, utter** *The thought of working nights fills me with abject horror.* **| mock** *She raised her hands in mock horror when she saw my new haircut.*

• VERB + HORROR **feel, have** *She felt horror and pity at seeing Marcus so ill.* ◇ *She had a horror of pubs.* **| fill sb with** *The possibility of meeting him again filled me with horror.* **| overcome | recoil in** *Anna recoiled in horror as the snake approached.*

• HORROR + NOUN **film, story** *They were trying to scare each other with horror stories about going to the dentist.*

• PREP. **in ~** *They watched in horror as the aircraft crashed to the ground.* **to your ~** *To his horror, he saw a dead body lying beside the road.* **with ~** *He realized with absolute horror that he no longer had the money.* **| ~ of** *I'm trying to overcome my horror of insects.*

• PHRASES **a look of horror, shock horror** *newspapers full of shock horror headlines*

2 sth frightening/shocking

• ADJ. **full** *He never experienced the full horrors of trench warfare.* **| ultimate** *I used to regard public speaking as the ultimate horror.*

• VERB + HORROR **commit, inflict, perpetrate** *He had witnessed horrors committed by the enemy.* **| experience, suffer | witness**

horse *noun*

• ADJ. **beautiful, fine, good, lovely, magnificent** *He was mounted on the finest horse you could ever see.* **| bay, black, chestnut, grey, piebald, roan, skewbald | thoroughbred | feral, wild | unbroken | highly-strung, nervous, restless, skittish | frightened, startled, terrified | placid | fancied** *The race organizers became suspicious when the two most fancied horses finished last.* **| loose, riderless, runaway** *Three horses fell when a loose horse ran across the track.* **| fresh** *They would need fresh horses if they were to reach the border the next day.* **| lame | heavy, shire** *The brewery had 25 heavy horses delivering beer in London.* **| riding, saddle | carriage, cart** (also **carthorse**), **draught, dray | pack | cavalry, police | race** (also **racehorse**) **| pantomime** *He got a part as the rear end of a pantomime horse.* **| rocking**

• VERB + HORSE **breed | get ready** *Get my horse ready and wait for me.* **| saddle | be mounted on, mount | ride | lead | brush down, groom | shoe | stable | handle** *She has a knack for handling horses.* **| ill-treat | frighten | hobble, tether | nobble** *He was jailed for 15 years for nobbling a horse that had been going to run in the Derby.*

• HORSE + VERB **canter, gallop, trot, walk** *Several horses trotted past us.* **| prance | run** *There are ten horses running in the next race.* **| plod** *The weary horse plodded up the hill.* **| neigh, snort, whinny | bolt | rear (up), shy | plunge** *The cart overturned, the horse plunging and rearing in its traces.* **| fall, slip, stumble** *The horse stumbled and threw its rider.* **| throw sb | jump | pull sth** *They passed an old horse pulling a cart full of apples.* **| prick up its ears | graze**

• HORSE + NOUN **box** *The car in front was pulling a horse box.* **| breeder, dealer, lover, owner, rider, trainer | droppings, dung, manure, shit** (*taboo*) **| fair** *Hundreds of horses are bought and sold at the annual horse fair.* **| race | racing, riding | show, trials** *He won second prize in a horse show.* **| trough** *The horse trough was full of stagnant water.* **| whip | trading** (also **horse-trading**) (*figurative*) *political horse-trading*

• PREP. **on a/the ~**

• PHRASES **a horse and carriage/cart, horse-drawn** *horse-drawn vehicles*

hospital *noun*

• ADJ. **community, district, local | NHS, private | day, long-stay | general | children's, maternity, mental, psychiatric, etc. | teaching**

• VERB + HOSPITAL **go into/to** *He's had to go into hospital rather suddenly.* **| rush sb to, take sb to | admit sb to, readmit sb to | stay in | come out of, leave** *She came out of hospital this morning.* **| discharge sb from**

• HOSPITAL + NOUN **doctor, staff | inpatient, outpatient, patient | care, services, treatment | clinic, unit, ward | bed | admission, stay**

• PREP. **at a/the ~** *She works at the John Radcliffe Hospital.* **in (a/the) ~** *He is in hospital recovering from a heart operation.* ◇ *I used to work as a cleaner in a hospital.* **to (a/the) ~** *He's been taken to hospital for tests.* ◇ *We went to the hospital to visit my gran.*

• PHRASES **admission to hospital, a stay in hospital**

hospitality *noun*

• ADJ. **generous, lavish, warm | corporate** *the company's corporate hospitality budget*

• VERB + HOSPITALITY **extend, offer (sb), provide (sb with), show sb** *We wish to thank the people of Norway for the warm hospitality extended to us during our recent visit.* **| accept** *We were glad to accept their generous hospitality.* **| repay, return** *You must allow me to repay your hospitality.* **| abuse**

host *noun*

1 person who receives and entertains visitors

• ADJ. **charming, generous, genial, good, perfect, welcoming** *George was a perfect host.*

• VERB + HOST **act as, play** *The village is playing host to a film crew.*

• HOST + NOUN **club, community, country, family, government, nation, society, state** *The host club is to be congratulated on its organization of the tournament.*

• PREP. **~ to** *The acre of garden is host to a splendid bank of rhododendrons.*

2 person who introduces a television or radio show

• ADJ. **chat-show, game-show, talk-show, television, TV** *The event will be opened by television host Bill Punter.*

host *verb*

• ADV. **jointly** *The tournament is to be jointly hosted by India, Pakistan and Sri Lanka.*

• VERB + HOST **agree to, offer to | be keen to** *The country is very keen to host the Winter Olympics in six years' time.*

• PHRASES **a bid to host sth** *the city's bid to host the Olympic Games in the year 2008*

hostage *noun*

• VERB + HOSTAGE **hold (sb)** *Eight people were held hostage for four months.* **| seize, take (sb)** *The gunmen took 24 hostages.* **| free, release, set free** *diplomatic efforts to get the hostages released*

hostel *noun*

• ADJ. **refugee, student, youth | bed and breakfast | bail, probation** *a probation hostel for young offenders*

• VERB + HOSTEL **stay at/in** *homeless families staying in bed and breakfast hostels*

• HOSTEL + NOUN **accommodation**

- PREP. **at a/the ~** *We stayed at a student hostel during the conference.* **in a/the ~** *He lives in a hostel for the homeless.*

hostile *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel | become | remain | make sb** *The experience has made him generally hostile towards women.* | **consider sth, construe sth as, deem sth, perceive sth as, regard sth as, see sth as** *They were reluctant to take any step that might be regarded as hostile.*
- ADV. **bitterly, decidedly, deeply, downright, distinctly, extremely, fiercely, markedly, positively, uncompromisingly, unremittingly, very** *He was deeply hostile to the idea of psychotherapy.* ◇ *The audience gave him a downright hostile reception.* | **entirely, totally | increasingly | almost | apparently | potentially | basically, generally | actively, openly | mutually | uniformly** *The press became uniformly hostile to the new administration.* | **politically** *politically hostile newspapers*
- PREP. **to** *Many people were openly hostile to the idea.* **towards** *He was extremely hostile towards her.*

hostility *noun*

1 opposition/aggressive feelings or behaviour

- ADJ. **bitter, considerable, deep, extreme, great, implacable | downright, open, outright** *Mixed-race couples faced open hostility.* | **veiled** *There was a barely veiled hostility in her tone.* | **general, widespread | popular, public** *the widespread popular hostility towards the war* | **personal | continuing, growing | mutual**
- VERB + HOSTILITY **feel** *the deep hostility felt by many teenagers against the police* | **express, show | arouse, attract, provoke** *The prime minister was concerned that such a move would arouse public hostility.* | **be greeted with, be met with, encounter, face, meet with** *The proposal was met with outright hostility.*
- PREP. **~ between** *You could almost feel the hostility between her and her mother.* **~ against/to/towards** *the bitter hostility towards the occupying forces*

2 **hostilities** fighting in a war

- VERB + HOSTILITIES **cease, end, suspend** *Both sides finally agreed to suspend hostilities.* | **resume** *Hostilities were resumed later that year.*
- HOSTILITIES + VERB **begin, break out | cease, end** *On the 11th of November 1918 hostilities ceased.* | **resume**
- PREP. **~ against** *the beginning of hostilities against Germany in 1914* **~ between** *Hostilities broke out between the two provinces later that year.*
- PHRASES **the cessation of hostilities, an outbreak of hostilities**

hot *adj.*

1 of the weather

- VERBS **be | become, get, grow** *The sun shone fiercely down and it grew hotter and hotter.*
- ADV. **baking, blazing, bloody** (*taboo*), **boiling, exceedingly, exceptionally, extremely, incredibly, insufferably, intensely, oppressively, really, scorching, stiflingly, swelteringly, unbearably, uncomfortably, unusually, very** *a boiling hot summer's day* ◇ *It was unbearably hot in the car.* | **a bit, fairly, pretty, quite, rather** *This weather's a bit hot for me.*

2 of a person

- VERBS **be, feel, look** *Don't you feel hot so close to the fire?* | **get, grow** *They had been going steadily up for half an hour and she was beginning to get uncomfortably hot.* ◇ *His face grew hot at the memory of his embarrassment.*
- ADV. **boiling, burning, extremely, really, uncomfortably, very** *I was boiling hot and sweaty.* ◇ *His forehead was burning hot.* | **a bit, quite, rather**

3 of a thing

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | get**
- ADV. **extremely, really, red-, scalding, very, white-** *white-hot metal* | **a bit, fairly, moderately, quite, rather, slightly** *Wash the tablecloth in fairly hot soapy water.* ◇ *Bake in a moderately hot oven.* | **enough, sufficiently** *The ground was hot enough to fry an egg on.*

4 of food: not cold

- VERBS **be | keep, stay** *The food should stay hot until we're ready to eat.* | **keep sth** *The containers keep the food hot for five hours.* | **eat sth, serve sth** *Serve hot or cold accompanied by bread and a salad.*
- ADV. **piping, really, scalding, sizzling, steaming, very** *a bowl of piping hot soup* ◇ *Make sure the fat is sizzling hot.* | **a bit, fairly, quite, rather**

5 of food: spicy

- VERBS **be, taste**
- ADV. **extremely, really, very** *I love really hot food.* | **a bit, pretty, quite, slightly** *That was a pretty hot curry!*

hotel *noun*

- ADJ. **big, large | little, small | cheap, expensive | five-star, four-star, etc. | attractive, beautiful, comfortable, delightful, deluxe, good, grand, elegant, excellent, fine, first-class, luxurious, luxury, pleasant, posh, quality, smart, top** *all the style and comfort that only the best hotels can provide* ◇ *It was a luxury hotel with its own swimming pool and restaurant.* | **seedy | modern | air-conditioned** *The hotel is fully air-conditioned.* | **traditional | friendly | family, family-run** *a family hotel with a playground for small children* ◇ *a friendly family-run hotel* | **independent, private | international | country, country-house** *a small country hotel* | **holiday, resort, tourist | seafront, seaside | local, nearby | bed and breakfast** *homeless families living in bed and breakfast hotels*
- VERB + HOTEL **stay at/in** *We're staying at a cheap hotel near the station.* | **book in at/into, check in at/into, check out of** *We checked into the hotel, then went for a walk along the beachfront.* | **own | manage, run**
- HOTEL + VERB **be located, be situated** *The hotel is situated in the historic heart of the city.* | **feature sth, have sth, offer sth, provide sth** *The hotel features a lovely dining room overlooking the lake.* ◇ *The hotel offers excellent facilities.*
- HOTEL + NOUN **accommodation, bedroom, room, suite | restaurant | foyer, lobby | guest, manager | industry | chain, group**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *We met at the hotel.* **in a/the ~** *We're staying in a two-star hotel in the centre of the city.*

hotline *noun*

- ADJ. **24-hour | information, technical support, ticket | credit card | telephone**
- VERB + HOTLINE **call, dial, phone, ring** *Dial our 24-hour hotline to find out if you have won a prize.* | **establish, set up** *A telephone hotline has been set up to give information about the changed train services.* | **operate, run** *The company will be operating an information hotline that customers can call if they are worried about products.*

hound *noun*

- ADJ. **hunting**
- QUANT. **pack**
- HOUND + VERB **bark, bay** *We could hear the hounds barking at the fox.* | **pick up the scent** *The hounds picked up the scent of the fox.* | **chase sth, follow sth, pursue sth** *In drag hunting, hounds chase an artificial scent.* | **run**
- PHRASES **ride to hounds** *Days off were spent riding to hounds* (= hunting).

hour *noun*

1 period of sixty minutes

- ADJ. **solid** *I slept for eight solid hours.*
- VERB + HOUR **take** *It takes two hours to get to London.* | **spend** | **last** *The performance lasted three hours.* | **gain, lose** *You gain five hours when you fly from New York to London.*
- HOUR + VERB **go by, pass** *An hour passed and she still hadn't arrived.*
- PREP. **by the ~** *They're paid by the hour.* **for an ~** *She worked for three hours.* **in/within an ~** *I should be back within a couple of hours.* **over/under an ~** *He's been gone for over an hour.* **per ~** *Top speed is 120 miles per hour.* **within the ~** *We hope to be there within the hour* (= in less than an hour). | **~ of** *There are still two hours of daylight left.*
- PHRASES **half an hour, hour after hour, an hour's time, with every passing hour** *She grew more worried with every passing hour.*

⇨ Note at MEASURE

2 the hour time when a new hour starts

- VERB + HOURS **chime, strike** *The clock struck the hour.*
- PREP. **on the ~** *Buses leave every hour on the hour.* **past the ~** *ten minutes past the hour* **to the ~** *ten minutes to the hour*

3 time when you do a particular activity

- ADJ. **lunch** | **peak, rush** *rush-hour traffic*
- VERB + HOUR **spend** *I spent my lunch hour shopping.*
- PREP. **~ of** *an hour of rest*

4 hours time when sb is working/a shop is open

- ADJ. **office, opening, working** | **licensing, visiting** *Britain's licensing hours* (= when pubs are allowed to open) ◇ *the hospital's visiting hours* | **flexible** | **long** | **regular**
- VERB + HOURS **work** *She works very long hours.* | **keep** *He keeps regular hours.*
- PREP. **after ~** *He spends a lot of time in his office after hours.* **out of ~** *Doctors often have to work out of hours.*

5 time when sth happens

- ADJ. **darkest, finest** *This was often thought of as the country's finest hour.* | **antisocial, unearthly, ungodly, unsocial** *I apologize for phoning you at this ungodly hour.*
- HOUR + VERB **come** *The hour had come for us to leave.*
- PREP. **between the ~s of** *The office is closed between the hours of twelve and two.* | **~ of** *the hours of darkness*
- PHRASES **your hour of need** *She helped me in my hour of need.*

house *noun*

1 building that is made for one family to live in

- ADJ. **beautiful, comfortable, delightful, elegant, fine, grand, handsome, lovely, luxurious, magnificent, posh, pretty, splendid** | **dream** *They built their own dream house overlooking the river.* | **depressing, dingy, gloomy, ugly** | **derelict, dilapidated, ramshackle, shabby, untidy** | **detached, semi-detached, terrace/terraced** | **big, enormous, gigantic, huge, large, palatial, spacious** | **rambling** *It was easy to get lost in the rambling house.* | **little, modest, small, tiny** *They lived in a modest semi-detached house in the suburbs.* | **single-storey, single-storeyed, two-storey, etc.** | **four-bedroom, four-bedroomed, eight-room, eight-roomed, etc.** | **gabled, half-timbered, red-brick, thatched** | **exclusive, expensive** | **private** | **council** (= rented from the local council) | **rented** | **empty, unoccupied, vacant** | **country, suburban, town** | **great, manor, mansion** *The great house stood on the edge of the village.* | **farm** (also **farmhouse**), **ranch** | **ancestral** | **communal** | **summer** | **tree** | **halfway, safe** *a halfway house for prisoners returning to society* ◇ *The police provided a safe house for the informer.*
- VERB + HOUSE **live in, occupy** *a house occupied by students* | **share** *She shares a house with three other nurses.* | **buy, rent** | **sell** | **let (out)** *We let out our house when we moved to America.* | **repossess** *Their house was repossessed when they couldn't keep up their mortgage payments.* | **move, move into, move out of** *It's stressful moving house.* | **set up** *They want to set up house together* | **keep** *She kept house* (= cooked, cleaned, etc.) *for her elderly parents.* | **play (at)** *The children were playing house, giving dinner to their teddies.* | **build** | **demolish, knock down, tear down** | **maintain** | **decorate, do up, redecorate, refurbish, renovate** *They bought a dilapidated house when they got married, and are gradually doing it up.* | **furnish** | **insulate, rewire** | **extend** *We're hoping to extend the house.*
- HOUSE + VERB **be situated, lie, stand** *The house stood a short distance from the wood.* | **face sth, overlook sth** *The house faces south, making the most of the sun.* ◇ *houses overlooking the park* | **loom** *The house loomed over him as he waited at the front door.* | **be worth sth** | **collapse, fall down** | **burn down, catch fire** | **come into view**
- HOUSE + NOUN **agent** | **buyer, owner** *The bank offers attractive rates to first-time house buyers.* | **tenant** | **building, construction** | **decoration, improvement, renovation, repairs** | **builder, decorator, painter** | **contents** | **design, plan, planning** | **hunting** | **move** *They helped us with our house move.* | **prices, rents, values** | **purchase** | **sales** | **mortgage** | **insurance** | **repossession** | **front, interior** | **number** | **keys** | **guest** | **call** *In the morning, the doctor makes house calls.* | **arrest** *The former dictator is under house arrest in his country mansion.* | **dust** | **blaze, fire** | **party, -warming** *They've moved house and have invited us to their house-warming on Saturday.* | **husband** *He's happy being a house husband while his wife goes out to work.* | **plant** | **fly, mouse, sparrow, etc.**
- PREP. **at sb's/the ~** *I finally tracked him down at his house in London.* **from ~ to ~** *She went from house to house collecting signatures for her campaign.* **in a/the ~** *It was so hot outside we stayed in the house.*
- PHRASES **house-to-house** *Police are making house-to-house enquiries following the discovery of the body.*

2 all the people who live in one house

- ADJ. **friendly, happy**
- VERB + HOUSE **wake (up)** *You'll wake up the whole house with that noise.*

3 in a theatre/cinema

- ADJ. **empty** | **full, packed**
- VERB + HOUSE **play to** *They played to a packed house.*
- HOUSE + NOUN **lights** | **manager**
- PHRASES **bring the house down** (= please the audience very much) **front-of-house** (= the parts of a theatre used by the audience) *the front-of-house staff*

house *verb*

- ADV. **adequately** *At no time in the 19th century were the working classes adequately housed.* | **badly, inadequately** *The losers in this society are the old, the sick, the jobless, the homeless and badly housed.* | **temporarily** *The fish can be temporarily housed in a smaller aquarium.*

household *noun*

- ADJ. **average** *The average household pays 27p a day in water rates.* | **domestic, private, etc.** | **rural, urban** | **middle-class, working-class** | **high-income, low-income, poor, etc.** | **family, married-couple, single-person, etc.**
- VERB + HOUSEHOLD **manage, run** | **set up** *Becoming an adult and setting up a household no longer mean the same thing.*
- HOUSEHOLD + NOUN **appliance, contents, furniture,**

goods, item, product *The household contents are covered by a separate insurance policy.* | **bills, budget, expenditure, expenses, income** | **chore, duties, task** | **rubbish, waste**

• PHRASES **the head of the household** *The head of the household is responsible for completing the Council Tax form.*

housekeeping *noun*

• ADJ. **careful, good, prudent** *The company has made considerable savings through good housekeeping, such as avoiding wastage.* | **bad, poor** *My financial problems were made worse by my bad housekeeping.*

• HOUSEKEEPING + NOUN **allowance, money** *Her husband spent the housekeeping money on gambling.*

housework *noun*

• VERB + HOUSEWORK **do** *I spent all morning doing housework.* | **share** *The cook their own meals but they share the housework.* | **help with** *Her husband never helps with the housework.*

housing *noun*

• ADJ. **affordable, cheap, good, low-cost** *The aim of the scheme was to provide good low-cost housing for workers.* | **decent, good** | **adequate** | **bad, inadequate, poor, substandard** *Many health problems are made worse by poor housing.* | **permanent, temporary** | **council, local authority, public, social** *Public expenditure on social housing provision has doubled in the last five years.* | **rented** | **private** | **sheltered** *sheltered housing for old people* | **high-rise** | **rural, urban**

• VERB + HOUSING **provide**

• HOUSING + NOUN **association, authority, committee, department, office** | **conditions** | **development, estate, scheme** *Many new housing developments had sprung up around the city.* | **construction** | **provision** | **market** | **crisis, shortage** | **allowance, benefit** *She receives a substantial housing allowance on top of her salary.* ◇ *I received housing benefit when I was unemployed.*

• PREP. **in … ~** *Too many families are still living in substandard housing.*

hover *verb*

• ADV. **nearby** | **anxiously, uneasily** *He was hovering anxiously outside.* | **indecisively, uncertainly** *She hovered uncertainly near the front door.* | **impatiently**

• PREP. **about/around, behind, by, near** *She couldn't bear him hovering around her.*

• PHRASES **hover in the background** *Phoebe was hovering in the background, uncertain what to do.* **hover in the doorway**

howl *noun*

• ADJ. **deep** | **mournful** *The dog gave a mournful howl.*

• VERB + HOWL **give, let out** | **hear**

• PREP. **with a ~** *With a howl he leapt at his foe.* | **~ of** *a howl of laughter/protest*

• PHRASES **be greeted/met with howls of sth** *His comments were met with howls of outrage.* **the howl of the wind/a wolf, howls of laughter, howls of outrage/protest/rage**

⇨ Note at SOUND

huddle *noun*

• ADJ. **little, small, tight**

• VERB + HUDDLE **get into, go into** *The team went into a huddle at half-time to discuss their tactics.*

• PREP. **in a ~** *They stood in a tight huddle, whispering.* | **~ of** *A little huddle of men stood in one corner.*

huddled *adj.*

• VERBS **be, lie, sit, stand** *Phil sat huddled miserably in his chair.* | **find sb** *She found him huddled in a corner, shaking violently.*

• ADV. **miserably**

• PREP. **against** *Karen was huddled against the wall.* **beneath/under** *She lay huddled under the blankets.* **in** *He slept, huddled in an armchair.*

huff *noun*

• VERB + HUFF **get in, go into** | **go off in, march off in, storm off in, walk off in** *She went off in a huff after losing the game.*

• PREP. **in a ~** *He's in a huff because he wasn't invited.* | **~ at** *She got in a huff at being doubted.* **~ over** *Alison's in a huff over the joke they played on her.*

hug *noun*

• ADJ. **big** | **affectionate, comforting, friendly, loving, reassuring, warm** | **quick**

• VERB + HUG **give sb** *He gave the children a quick hug, then got into the car.*

hug *verb*

• ADV. **close, tight/tightly** *James went to his daughter and hugged her tightly.* | **gently** | **fiercely**

• PREP. **to** *He reached out and hugged her to him.*

• PHRASES **hug and kiss sb**

huge *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look** | **become, grow** *Her eyes grew huge.*

• ADV. **really** *This is a really huge amount of money.* | **absolutely, simply** *Their house is absolutely huge!* | **potentially** *There's a potentially huge demand for this product.*

hum *noun*

• ADJ. **faint, soft** | **low** | **high-pitched** | **constant, continuous, steady** *I could hear the constant hum of distant traffic.* | **background**

• VERB + HUM **hear**

• PREP. **~ of** *the background hum of the air-conditioning*

hum *verb*

• ADV. **quietly, softly** | **happily** | **tunelessly** | **along** *humming along with the music*

• VERB + HUM **begin to** *He began to hum, somewhat tunelessly.*

• PHRASES **hum to yourself** *She was humming softly to herself.*

humanitarian *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **purely** *Both countries say their intervention is purely humanitarian.* | **essentially**

humanity *noun*

• ADJ. **great, true** | **common** *Guilt and a sense of common humanity make people less harsh.*

humidity *noun*

• ADJ. **high, low** | **ambient, relative** *in dry weather, when the ambient humidity is low*

• QUANT. **level**

• HUMIDITY + VERB **increase, rise** | **decrease, fall**

• HUMIDITY + NOUN **level** | **control** *The museum is equipped with sophisticated humidity controls.*

humiliate *verb*

- ADV. **deeply | totally, utterly | publicly** *Lowe was publicly humiliated by his colleagues.*
- PREP. **in front of** *I had been assaulted and deeply humiliated in front of all my friends.*
- PHRASES **feel humiliated** *I have never felt so humiliated in all my life.*

humiliating *adj.*

- VERBS **be | find sth**
- ADV. **deeply, profoundly, very | utterly** *He found the experience utterly humiliating.* **| somewhat**
- PREP. **for** *The whole experience was somewhat humiliating for us.* **to** *a settlement that was deeply humiliating to their country*

humiliation *noun*

- ADJ. **great, intense, painful | total | further | public | national | final, ultimate** *He was forced to face the ultimate humiliation the next morning.* **| military**
- VERB + HUMILIATION **be subjected to, endure, face, suffer** *She suffered the humiliation of having her house searched.* **| feel** *feeling the intense humiliation of having failed*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of humiliation**

humorous *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, sound | become | find sth**
- ADV. **extremely, very | mildly, quite, slightly** *She has written her description of him in a mildly humorous vein.* **| delightfully** *The film is delightfullly humorous in the best traditions of romantic comedy.* **| darkly**

humour *noun*

1 amusing quality/ability to find things funny

- ADJ. **wry** *With wry humour, they laugh at their misfortunes.* **| irreverent | caustic, sardonic | black, dark, gallows, grim | self-deprecating | gentle | tongue-in-cheek | slapstick, visual | unconscious, unintentional | deadpan, dry | schoolboy** *His colleagues soon got fed up with his schoolboy humour.* **| lavatorial**
- QUANT. **touch** *Her speech was serious, but not without the occasional touch of humour.*
- VERB + HUMOUR **be full of, contain** *The stories are full of humour.* **| appreciate, see** *The man who lost his shoes failed to see the humour of the situation.*
- PHRASES **a brand of humour** *a television sitcom with its own peculiar brand of humour* **sense of humour** *to have a dry/good/great/warped/weird/wicked sense of humour*

2 mood

- ADJ. **good** *Her good humour was restored by the excellent meal.*
- PHRASES **in (a) good humour** *The remarks were made in good humour.* ◇ *He was obviously in a good humour this evening.*

hunch *noun*

- VERB + HUNCH **have** *I had a hunch that she was not telling the truth.* **| act on, follow, play** *Acting on a hunch, I waited outside her house to see if she went out.* ◇ *I decided to follow my hunch and come and see you.* **| back, confirm** *They now have a database of information to back their hunches about customers' preferences.*
- PREP. **on a ~** *I phoned on a hunch to ask if they had any work for me.*

hunger *noun*

1 feeling of wanting to eat

- ADJ. **extreme** *Any good weight loss regime should not lead to extreme hunger.* **| world**
- VERB + HUNGER **feel** *It is usual to feel hunger during exercise.* **| be weak with | die from/of** *Thousands of people have died of hunger.* **| alleviate, relieve, satisfy** *looking for ways to alleviate world hunger* ◇ *Perhaps the cat was killing to satisfy hunger.*
- HUNGER + NOUN **pangs** *The new snack bar will keep those hunger pangs at bay.* **| strike** *About 60 prisoners have gone on hunger strike.*
- PHRASES **pangs of hunger**

2 strong desire for sth

- ADJ. **great, insatiable | land** *Peasant land hunger grew ever more acute as the population swelled.*
- VERB + HUNGER **feel, have | satisfy**
- HUNGER + VERB **grow**
- PREP. **~ for** *She has an insatiable hunger for knowledge.*

hungry *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, go, look** *the number of children who have to go hungry* **| become, get | make sb** *Seeing everyone eating had made him extremely hungry.*
- ADV. **desperately, dreadfully, extremely, ravenously, really, starving** (*informal*), **terribly, very** *We were all ravenously hungry after the walk.* **| a bit, quite, rather | always, permanently**

hunt *noun*

1 hunting wild animals

- ADJ. **fox, seal, tiger, etc.**
- VERB + HUNT **take part in** *She had never taken part in a fox hunt before.*
- HUNT + NOUN **follower, supporter** *Hunt followers deny the sport is cruel.* **| saboteur** *clashes between hunt supporters and hunt saboteurs* **| meeting**

2 searching for sb/sth

- ADJ. **massive, nationwide** *Police launched a nationwide hunt for the woman, amid fears for her safety.* **| police | murder** *Police forces in five counties are now involved in the murder hunt.* **| treasure | witch** (*often figurative*) *The investigation turned into a full-scale Communist witch hunt.*
- HUNT + VERB **begin, launch** *A massive police hunt was launched for the missing child.* **| lead** *Detectives leading the hunt for the killer believe he may be in hiding.* **| step up** *The mountain rescue team is stepping up its hunt for the missing climbers.* **| call off** *The hunt for survivors has now been called off.*
- HUNT + VERB **begin, be on** *The hunt is on for potential employees with experience of electronic publishing.*
- PREP. **~ for**

hunting *noun*

1 chasing wild animals

- ADJ. **big-game, deer, fox** (also **fox-hunting**), **etc.** *He was killed by a lion while big-game hunting in Africa.* **| commercial** *commercial hunting of minke whales*
- VERB + HUNTING **go** *Local people go hunting in the woods.* **| ban** *Should fox-hunting be banned?*
- HUNTING + NOUN **knife, rifle | ground** *These waters are a hunting ground for sharks.* **| lodge** *The king built a large hunting lodge in the mountains.* **| trip | season**

2 trying to find sth

- ADJ. **bargain, house, job, treasure** *Archaeologists have called for a ban on treasure hunting in the region.*
- VERB + HUNTING **go** *We went bargain hunting at the antique market.*
- HUNTING + NOUN **ground** (*figurative*) *Crowded markets are a happy hunting ground for pickpockets.*

hurdle *noun*

1 in a race

- VERB + HURDLE **clear, jump (over)** *She cleared the first few hurdles easily.* | **fall at, hit** *His horse fell at the final hurdle.*

2 problem/difficulty

- ADJ. **big, difficult** | **main, major** | **final, first, last, next** *The first big hurdle in putting your car on the road is getting insurance.*
- VERB + HURDLE **face** *This is perhaps the most difficult hurdle that we face.* | **clear, jump, overcome, pass** *We'll jump each hurdle as we come to it.* ◇ *You have already overcome the first major hurdle by passing the entrance exam.* | **fall at** *The plan fell at the first hurdle.*

hurricane *noun*

- HURRICANE + VERB **hit sth, strike (sth)** *A hurricane hit the city yesterday at 5 p.m.* | **damage sth, destroy sth, devastate sth** *The fields were devastated by the hurricane.* | **blow, blow itself out** *The hurricane took several days to blow itself out.*
- HURRICANE + NOUN **force** *hurricane-force winds*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The roof blew off in a hurricane.*
- PHRASES **the eye of the hurricane** (= the central point)

hurry *noun*

- ADJ. **big, desperate, great, tearing, terrible** *I was late for the match and in a tearing hurry.*
- PREP. **in a ~** *They were in a hurry to set off.* **in no ~** *She's in no hurry to find out how much her phone bill comes to.* **in your ~** *In his hurry to leave, he forgot his briefcase.*

hurt *noun*

- ADJ. **bitter, deep, great**
- VERB + HURT **feel** *the deep hurt that he felt when Jane left him* | **cause** *She knew that she had caused her husband a lot of hurt.*

hurt *verb*

1 cause pain/injury

- ADV. **badly, seriously** *She fell and hurt her leg quite badly.* ◇ *No one was seriously hurt in the accident.* | **slightly**

2 be/feel painful

- ADV. **badly, a lot, really** *My ankle still hurts quite badly.* ◇ *Does it hurt a lot?* ◇ *Ouch! It really hurts.* | **slightly**
- VERB + HURT **be going to** *I knew it was going to hurt—but not that much!* | **begin to**

3 upset sb

- ADV. **badly, deeply, really, terribly** *Her remarks hurt him deeply.* ◇ *They never told me why and that really hurt.*
- VERB + HURT **attempt to, try to** *Are you deliberately trying to hurt me?* | **want to** *Why would I want to hurt her?* | **not mean to** *I never meant to hurt anyone.*

hurt *adj.*

1 injured

- VERBS **be, look** | **get** *Stop that or you'll get hurt!*
- ADV. **badly, seriously** *Steve didn't look seriously hurt.* | **slightly**

2 upset

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **get**
- ADV. **bitterly, deeply, extremely, really, terribly, very** | **a bit, quite, rather, slightly**
- PREP. **by** *Roy seemed deeply hurt by this remark.*

hurtful *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **find sth** *I found some of his comments rather hurtful.*
- ADV. **deeply, very** *She made some very hurtful remarks.* | **a bit, rather**
- PREP. **to** *What he said was deeply hurtful to me.*

husband *noun*

- ADJ. **future, prospective** | **suitable** | **ex-, former** | **dead, deceased, late** | **good, loving, wonderful** | **faithful** | **errant, unfaithful** | **estranged** | **absent** | **jealous** | **dominant, domineering** | **brutal, violent** | **house** (= a man who stays at home to look after children, cook, clean, etc. while his wife works)
- VERB + HUSBAND **meet** *That was the day she met her future husband.* | **marry** | **be divorced from, be separated from, divorce, leave, walk out on** *She suddenly walked out on her husband, leaving him to bring up the children.*
- PHRASES **husband and wife** *They lived together as husband and wife for over thirty years.* **husband-to-be**

hush *noun*

- ADJ. **sudden** | **breathless, deathly** | **expectant**
- HUSH + VERB **descend, fall** *A sudden hush fell over the room as the head teacher entered.* | **follow sth** *A deathly hush followed the explosion.*

hut *noun*

- ADJ. **makeshift** | **prefabricated** | **bamboo, metal, mud, stone, straw, wooden** | **thatched** | **circular, round** | **single-storey/single-storeyed** | **ramshackle, rickety** | **derelict** | **beach, garden, mountain** | **fisherman's, fishing, shepherd's, etc.** | **army, barrack** | **site** *The builders were collecting their wages from the site hut.* | **refreshment** | **changing**
- VERB + HUT **build** *huts built with mud bricks*
- HUT + VERB **stand** *The wooden hut stood on a lonely stretch of beach.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The scheme housed children in large numbers in prefabricated huts.*

hygiene *noun*

- ADJ. **good, scrupulous** | **poor** *infections that are the result of poor food hygiene* | **dental, food, oral, personal, public** *Many skin diseases can be prevented by good personal hygiene.*
- HYGIENE + NOUN **practices, regulations, standards**
- PHRASES **standards of hygiene**

hymn *noun*

- ADJ. **rousing** *The service began with a rousing hymn.* | **traditional** | **modern**
- VERB + HYMN **play, sing**
- HYMN + NOUN **book** | **tune**

hype *noun*

- ADJ. **media** | **marketing** | **pre-match, pre-race, pre-season, etc.**
- VERB + HYPE **live up to** *The movie failed to live up to all the hype.* | **believe**
- HYPE + VERB **surround sth** *the hype surrounding her latest book*
- PREP. **~ about** *I don't believe all the hype about how good the French team will be this season.*

hypnosis *noun*

- VERB + HYPNOSIS **be given, have, undergo** | **practise, put sb under** *I decided to put him under hypnosis and ask him again.* | **induce** | **be susceptible to**

- HYPNOSIS + NOUN **session**
- PREP. **during ~** *changes in breathing observed during hypnosis* **under ~** *the things that people remember under hypnosis*

hypothesis *noun*

- ADJ. **acceptable, plausible | bold** *Scientists have proposed a bold hypothesis.* **| unlikely | speculative | testable | working** *These observations appear to support our working hypothesis.* **| scientific**
- VERB + HYPOTHESIS **construct, form, formulate, have, make, propose, put forward, suggest** *It is possible to make a hypothesis on the basis of this graph.* ◇ *A number of hypotheses have been put forward.* **| consider, discuss, examine, test (out)** *using this data to test her hypothesis* **| confirm, prove, support | accept | reject** *None of the hypotheses can be rejected at this stage.*
- VERB + HYPOTHESIS **concern sth** *Her hypothesis concerns the role of electromagnetic radiation.* **| predict sth** *The hypothesis predicts that children will perform better on task A than on task B.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *Her study is based on the hypothesis that language simplification is possible.* **| ~ about** *an interesting hypothesis about the development of language* **~ on** *The results confirmed his hypothesis on the use of modal verbs.*

hypothetical *adj.*

- VERBS **be** *This is a purely hypothetical situation.*
- ADV. **entirely, purely, totally**

hysteria *noun*

- ADJ. **mass, public | mild, near | rising | media, tabloid** *Unnecessary anxiety has been caused by media hysteria and misinformation.* **| religious**
- QUANT. **fit** *She smashed the place up in a fit of hysteria.* **| note, touch** *the touch of hysteria in her voice*
- VERB + HYSTERIA **border on** *Sam arrived in a state of excitement bordering on hysteria.* **| bring on, engender, generate** *That thought was enough to bring on near hysteria.*
- HYSTERIA + VERB **mount, rise** *She felt hysteria rising.* **| die down, diminish** *Eventually the hysteria died down.* **| sweep (across/through) sth** *the hysteria that swept through the country*
- PREP. **~ about** *public hysteria about the bombings* **~ over** *hysteria over Aids*
- PHRASES **on the brink/point/verge of hysteria** *She was babbling, on the verge of hysteria.*

hysterical *adj.*

1 suffering from/caused by hysteria

- VERBS **be, feel, sound** *Emily realized that she sounded hysterical.* **| become, get** *Calm down, you're getting hysterical.*
- ADV. **completely | almost, nearly** *By this time Mary was almost hysterical.* **| faintly, mildly, rather, slightly**

2 very funny

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **absolutely, totally** *The whole episode was absolutely hysterical!*

Ii

ice *noun*

- ADJ. **thick** *Is the ice thick enough to walk on?* | **thin** | **black** *Motorists have been warned about black ice on the roads.*
- QUANT. **block, slab** *The spray froze and formed great blocks of ice on the front of the ship.*
- VERB + ICE **form**
- ICE + VERB **form** *Ice had formed on the pond.* | **crack, melt** *The ice was beginning to melt.*
- PREP. **on the ~** *skating on the ice*

ice cream *noun*

- ADJ. **chocolate, strawberry, vanilla, etc.**
- QUANT. **scoop** | **carton, tub**
- VERB + ICE CREAM **eat, have**
- ICE CREAM + VERB **melt**
- ICE CREAM + NOUN **carton, cone** | **parlour, van**
- PHRASES **and/with ice-cream** *apple pie with ice cream*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

icing *noun*

- ADJ. **fondant, gelatine, royal, sugar paste** | **chocolate, lemon, etc.**
- VERB + ICING **roll out** *Roll out the icing into a large square.* | **cover sth with, pipe, smooth, spread, squeeze** *Pipe a little green icing around the strawberries.* | **trim off** *Trim off excess icing around the base.* | **colour** *Colour the remaining icing red.*
- ICING + VERB **dry**
- ICING + NOUN **sugar** | **bag**

icon *noun*

1 small symbol on a computer screen

- ADJ. **folder, network, printer, program, window, etc.**
- VERB + ICON **click (on), double-click (on), right-click (on)** *Click the 'modems' icon.* | **drag**

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

2 person considered to be a symbol

- ADJ. **national** | **cultural** | **gay, lesbian** | **fashion, pop, sporting, style**

idea *noun*

1 plan/suggestion

- ADJ. **bright, brilliant, clever, excellent, good, great, marvellous** | **valuable, worthwhile** | **exciting, inspirational, interesting, stimulating** | **constructive, positive** | **creative, imaginative, innovative, original** | **wacky** | **big** *The latest big idea is to make women more interested in sport.* | **alternative** *Group counselling is used as an alternative idea to punishment.* | **fresh, new** | **absurd, bad, mistaken, ridiculous** | **crackpot, crazy, mad, outlandish, wild** | **half-baked** | **ambitious, big, grand** *He joined the company as an office assistant with big ideas.* | **grandiose** | **basic** *The basic idea is that we all meet up in London.*
- VERB + IDEA **have** *Do you have any ideas for a present for Lara?* | **come up with, dream up, hit on/upon, produce, think up** | **draw, get** *Her ideas are drawn mainly from Chinese art.* | **contribute, input** | **moot, put forward** | **promote, push (forward), sell** *They managed to push the idea of moving office through the committee.* | **welcome** *Most employees welcome the idea of a ban on smoking.* | **consider, entertain, flirt with, toy with** *I'm toying with the idea of packing in my job.* | **mull over, turn over** *He kept turning the idea of resigning over in his mind.* | **encourage, generate** *Brainstorming is a good way of generating ideas.* | **stifle** *a system of decision-making that stifles original ideas* | **reject, scoff at, veto** | **test, try out** | **bounce around, bounce off sb, brainstorm, discuss, explore, talk about** *I met up with a designer to bounce a few ideas around.* ◇ *It's useful to have someone to bounce ideas off.* | **exchange, pool, share** | **give sb** *What gave you the idea to go freelance?* | **apply, implement, put into action/effect/practice** *The idea had long been mooted but nothing had been done to put it into practice.* | **transform, translate** *How could we translate the idea into business reality?* | **steal** *She accused the company of stealing her idea.* | **impose** *She always tries to impose her own ideas on the rest of the team.*
- IDEA + VERB **come into sb's head/mind, come to sb, flash across/into sb's mind/brain, hit sb, occur to sb, pop into sb's head, strike sb** *The idea for the invention came to him in the bath.* | **emerge, evolve, form, grow** *An idea began to form in his mind.* | **flow** *His ideas flowed faster than he could express them.* | **come from sb/sth, date back from/to sth, originate, start, stem from sth** *The idea for the Olympics originated with Pierre de Coubertin.* | **blossom, work (out)** *The idea has now blossomed into a successful mail-order business.* | **lead** *The idea eventually led to the invention of the telephone.* | **come to nothing**
- PREP. **~ about** *I have an idea about how to tackle the problem.* **~ for** *We were asked to suggest ideas for improving efficiency.* **~ of** *She had the idea of advertising on the Internet.*
- PHRASES **be open to ideas** *I don't know what to do, but I'm open to ideas.* **the germ/glimmering of an idea** *The germ of his idea came from watching a bird make a nest.* **have other ideas** *I wanted to take the week off, but my boss had other ideas.* **it might be an idea** *It might be an idea to leave a note on the door for Mark.*

2 thought/impression

- ADJ. **clear, concrete, precise** | **abstract** | **theoretical** | **basic, rough, vague** *He gave me a rough idea of what was wanted.* | **key, main** *The book introduces the key ideas of sociology.* | **dominant** | **fixed, inflexible** | **preconceived** | **definite, firm, strong** *She has very definite ideas about what kind of a job she wants.* | **complex, difficult** | **simplistic** | **conventional** | **traditional** | **radical, revolutionary** | **contradictory** | **erroneous, false, wrong** *I don't want anyone getting the wrong idea about me.* | **funny, strange** | **utopian** | **romantic** *People have a romantic idea of the police force.* | **new-fangled** | **outdated** | **not the faintest/foggiest/remotest/slightest** (*informal*) *I haven't got the faintest idea what she meant.* | **artistic, economic, intellectual, moral, musical, philosophical, political, scientific** | **fascist, feminist, nationalist, socialist**
- VERB + IDEA **get** *They seem to have got the idea that we will be giving them a lift.* ◇ *You'll soon get the idea* (= understand). | **espouse, have, hold** *He holds very different ideas to mine about discipline.* | **develop, form, shape** *the experiences that shaped her ideas* | **express** | **communicate, convey, get across, get over, present, put across** *The book puts across complex ideas in a way anyone can understand.* | **demonstrate, explain, expound, illustrate** | **clarify, formalize, formulate, organize, structure** *Give careful thought to how to structure your ideas in the essay.* | **change, reconsider, reshape, revise** *They had to reconsider their ideas in the light of new evi-*

dence. | **accept** | **dismiss, reject** | **harbour** *I hope he's not still harbouring ideas about asking me out.* | **be obsessed with** *He's obsessed with the idea of getting a motorbike.* | **relish** *I don't relish the idea of sharing an office with Tony.*

- IDEA + VERB **amuse sb, appeal to sb, please sb** *The idea of going to his rescue amused her.* | **catch on, take hold** *Some students started wearing denim, and the idea caught on.*
- PREP. **~about** *She's got some funny ideas about how to motivate staff.* **~behind** *The idea behind the ceremony is to keep the gods happy to ensure a good crop.* **~ of** *Swimming in an icy river is not my idea of fun.*

ideal *noun*

- ADJ. **high, lofty, noble** *Sam was a real leader who had high moral ideals.* | **unattainable** *This is not an unattainable ideal.* | **aesthetic, artistic, ethical, moral, political** | **democratic, liberal, revolutionary, socialist**
- VERB + IDEAL **be committed to, be devoted to, believe in, cling to, espouse, have, support** *They still clung to the old ideals.* | **pursue, strive for** | **achieve, attain, be true to, conform to, live up to** *A journalist should always live up to the ideals of truth, decency, and justice.* | **fall short of** *This agreement falls far short of the ideal.* | **abandon, betray** *She was accused of betraying her political ideals.* | **embody, reflect** *the democratic ideals embodied in the charter*

ideal *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** | **make sth** *The hotel's size makes it ideal for large conferences.* | **consider sth**
- ADV. **absolutely** | **almost** | **less than** *Language learning often takes place in a less than ideal environment.*
- PREP. **for** *The houses are absolutely ideal for families with young children.*

identical *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem** | **remain**
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, exactly** | **not necessarily** *Different spreadsheet packages tend to be similar, though not necessarily identical.* | **almost, more or less, nearly, practically, virtually** *The two houses were more or less identical.* | **effectively** | **apparently** | **basically, essentially** | **chemically, formally, genetically**
- PREP. **to** *This knife is identical to the one used in the attack.* **with** *offspring that are genetically identical with the parents*

identification *noun*

1 act of identifying sb/sth

- ADJ. **accurate, correct** | **positive**
- VERB + IDENTIFICATION **make** *She was unable to make a positive identification of the suspect.*
- IDENTIFICATION + NOUN **parade** *A witness picked him out of an identity parade as the robber.*

2 proof of identity

- VERB + IDENTIFICATION **carry, have** *Always carry some identification.* ◇ *Do you have any identification?* | **ask for, check** *The police checked their identification.*
- IDENTIFICATION + NOUN **card, papers** | **code, number** *The vehicle's identification number is stamped on the engine.*
- PHRASES **a means of identification** *My only means of identification was my cheque book.*

identify *verb*

- ADV. **accurately, correctly** *The new test will enable us to identify more accurately patients who are most at risk.* ◇ *Did you identify all the pictures correctly?* | **falsely, incorrectly, wrongly** | **positively** | **clearly, unambiguously, unequivocally** *We have not yet clearly identified the source of the pollution.* | **formally** *Someone has to formally identify the body.* | **easily, readily** *I could identify him easily if I saw him again.* | **tentatively** *All three structures dated to the third century and were tentatively identified as shrines.*
- VERB + IDENTIFY **be able/unable to, can** *tests that can identify people at risk of cancer* | **be easy to, be possible to** | **be difficult to** | **be necessary to** | **attempt to, seek to, try to** | **be used to, enable sb to, help to** | **decline to** *The newspaper declined to identify the source of the allegations.*
- PHRASES **a means/way of identifying sb/sth** *one means of identifying the disease in its early stages*

PHRASAL VERBS

identify with sb

- ADV. **closely, strongly** *She identified strongly with the main character in the play.*
- VERB + IDENTIFY WITH SB **can/could** *I can't identify with men like him.*

identify sb with sth

- ADV. **closely** *The policy is closely identified with the prime minister himself.* | **clearly**

identity *noun*

- ADJ. **true** | **assumed, false** *He was discovered living under an assumed identity in South America.* | **mistaken** *This is obviously a case of mistaken identity.* | **new** | **common, corporate, cultural, national, personal, political, racial, sexual**
- VERB + IDENTITY **create, develop, establish, forge** *They are still struggling to establish their identity as a political party.* ◇ *The company forged its own identity by producing specialist vehicles.* | **give sb/sth** *He felt that having a job gave him an identity.* | **maintain, preserve** *Many minority groups are struggling to maintain their cultural identity.* | **lose** | **change** *He changed his identity and moved abroad on his release from prison.* | **assume** *She was given a false passport and assumed a new identity.* | **disclose, reveal** *He refused to reveal the identity of his client.* | **discover, find out** | **guess** *It was easy to guess the identity of the thief.* | **conceal, hide, keep secret, protect** *Her voice was disguised to conceal her identity.*
- IDENTITY + NOUN **bracelet, tag** | **card, documents, papers** | **code** | **parade** *The victim picked out her attacker in an identity parade.* | **crisis** *The country suffered from an identity crisis for years after the civil war.*
- PREP. **~as** *Scotland has never lost its identity as a separate nation.*
- PHRASES **proof of identity** *The police officer asked him for proof of identity.* **a search for identity** *His search for his cultural identity took him to where his parents were born.* **a sense of identity**

ideology *noun*

- ADJ. **dominant** | **official** | **coherent** *The party's policies were based on prejudice rather than on any coherent ideology.* | **strong** | **cultural, economic, educational, political, religious** | **bourgeois, capitalist, communist, Marxist, revolutionary, socialist, etc.**
- VERB + IDEOLOGY **have** *The party had a Marxist ideology.* | **adopt** *They distanced themselves from the upper class and adopted a communist ideology.* | **reject**

idiot *noun*

- ADJ. **blithering, complete, gibbering, prize, right, silly, stupid** *What stupid idiot left their shoes on the stairs?*
- VERB + IDIOT **be, feel (like), look like** *I felt a right idiot, standing there in front of all those people!*
- PHRASES **make an idiot of yourself** *He's made a complete idiot of himself over this woman!*

idle *adj.*

1 lazy

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **very | bone** (*informal*), **totally** *She never lifts a finger to help. She's bone idle.* **| rather**

2 not in use

- VERBS **be, lie, sit, stand** *Half their machines are lying idle.* ◇ *The pumps are standing idle.* **| remain | leave sth, make sth** *The land was left idle for years.*

idol *noun*

- ADJ. **film, football, pop, rock, sports, etc. | teen, teenage** *By this time Pitt had become a teenage idol.*
- VERB + IDOL **make (sb)** *Teenagers made Dean their idol.* ◇ *The film made an idol of her.*

ignite *verb*

- ADV. **spontaneously** *The burning foam generates such heat that other items in the room can ignite spontaneously.*
- VERB + IGNITE **fail to** *The gunpowder sometimes fails to ignite.*

ignition *noun*

- VERB + IGNITION **switch on, turn on** *She got into the car and switched on the ignition.* **| switch off, turn off**
- IGNITION + NOUN **key** *He turned the ignition key.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *I must have left my key in the ignition.*

ignorance *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, total | remarkable | widespread | blissful**
- VERB + IGNORANCE **betray, show** *I tried not to betray my ignorance.* ◇ *He showed a remarkable ignorance of the facts.* **| admit, confess, plead** *I had to confess my ignorance.* ◇ *He pleaded ignorance of any wrongdoing.* **| live in, remain in** *The sisters lived in total ignorance of each other.* **| keep sb in** *He was kept in ignorance of his true identity.* **| be based on** *These attitudes are based on ignorance and fear.*
- PREP. **due to ~** *mistakes due to ignorance* **in ~ (of)** *She remained in blissful ignorance of these events.* **through ~** *Many lives are lost through ignorance.* **| ~ about** *There is still widespread ignorance about this disease.*

ignorant *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem | remain** *The general public remained totally ignorant of the danger.* **| keep sb** *We were kept ignorant of the facts.*
- ADV. **completely, entirely, pig** (*informal*), **quite, totally, utterly, very, wholly** *Don't ask Paul. He's pig ignorant.* **| largely | rather | blissfully** *We went to bed that night blissfully ignorant of the storm to come.* **| grossly, lamentably, woefully**
- PREP. **about** *He was completely ignorant about the country's political system.* **of** *We are still woefully ignorant of the causes of this disease.*

ignore *verb*

- ADV. **altogether, completely, entirely, quite, totally | almost, practically, virtually | largely | generally | just, simply** *The government has simply ignored the problem altogether.* **| consistently | apparently | duly** *Her mother's opinions on how babies should be cared for were freely given and duly ignored.* **| easily** *The diesel fumes from Oxford's buses are not easily ignored.* **| conveniently** (*ironic*) *The managers have conveniently ignored these statistics.* **| blatantly** *Safety guidelines had been blatantly ignored.* **| assiduously, carefully, deliberately, determinedly, pointedly, resolutely, steadfastly, studiously** *She sat at her desk and studiously ignored me.* **| blithely, cheerfully** *He blithely ignored her protests and went on talking as if all were agreed between them.* **| coldly**
- VERB + IGNORE **cannot (afford to)** *a warning the prime minister cannot afford to ignore* **| be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to | tend to** *Scientists have tended to ignore these creatures.* **| try to | choose to** *The judge chose to ignore the views of the doctors.*
- PHRASES **be widely ignored** *Safety standards are widely ignored in the industry.* **ignore sth at your peril** *The pernicious effect of this advertising on children is a problem that we ignore at our peril.* **ignore the fact that …** *Did you think I'd ignore the fact that you were suffering from shock?* **sth can be safely ignored** (*ironic*) *These people occupy such a marginal position in society that the authorities think they can be safely ignored.*

ill *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look | become, be taken, fall, get | make sb** *I can't eat bananas. They make me ill.*
- ADV. **critically, dangerously, desperately, extremely, gravely, really, seriously, severely, terribly, very** *His mother is seriously ill in hospital.* **| almost** *Robyn was almost ill with excitement and outrage.* **| pretty, quite, rather, slightly | genuinely | violently** *She was taken violently ill and had to be put to bed.* **| acutely | chronically** *chronically ill patients* **| fatally, incurably, mortally, terminally** *a hospice for the terminally ill* **| mentally, physically** *the problems faced by mentally ill people*

illegal *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | remain | declare sth, deem sth, judge, make sth, pronounce sth, rule sth** *Their action was judged illegal by the International Court.* ◇ *The sale of these knives should be made illegal.*
- ADV. **highly | absolutely, quite, strictly, totally | allegedly | technically** *Prize-fighting remained popular, though technically illegal, until the 1880s.*

illegitimate *adj.*

- VERBS **be | consider sth, regard sth as**
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, entirely, quite, wholly** *It is quite illegitimate to argue that the government had no choice.*

illiteracy *noun*

- ADJ. **widespread** *Illiteracy was widespread at that time.*
- QUANT. **level, rate**
- ILLITERACY + NOUN **rate** *Illiteracy rates have fallen in recent years.*

illiterate *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **completely, totally | almost, largely, virtually | functionally** *People judged to be functionally illiterate lack the basic reading and writing skills required in everyday life.* **| economically, politically** *Is it surprising that young people who are politically illiterate do not bother to vote?*

illness *noun*

- ADJ. **fatal, incurable, terminal | debilitating, life-threatening, major, serious, severe | minor | lingering, long, long-standing, long-term, prolonged | brief, short | final, last | acute, chronic | infectious | painful | depressive, mental, psychiatric, psychotic | psychosomatic | physical | respiratory | childhood**
- QUANT. **bout, episode** *an acute episode of mental illness*
- VERB + ILLNESS **have, suffer (from)** *Badly fed children suffer a lot of minor illnesses.* ◇ *people who suffer*

ILLNESSES

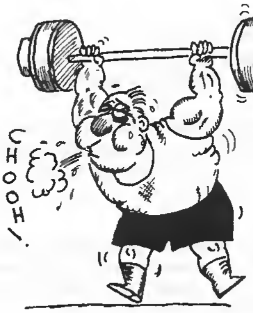

a heavy cold

You can **have** any illness or disease:
I'm warning you—I've got a bad cold.
Have the kids had chickenpox yet?

Get can be used with diseases or illnesses that you often have:
He gets really bad hay fever every summer.

Suffer from is used in more formal contexts and with more serious diseases:
This medicine is often recommended for patients who suffer from arthritis.

You can also:

catch	**develop**	**come/go down with**	**contract**	**suffer**
chickenpox	Aids	appendicitis	Aids	a breakdown
a cold	an allergy (to sth)	bronchitis	cancer	a heart attack
a cough	arthritis	chickenpox	conjunctivitis	a stroke
flu	cancer	diarrhoea	hepatitis	
German measles	cataracts	flu	HIV	
glandular fever	epilepsy	food poisoning	meningitis	
measles	heart/liver trouble	measles	pneumonia	
mumps	high blood pressure	mumps		
a stomach bug	an infection			
whooping cough	pneumonia			
	rheumatism			

*an **attack of** flu, nerves, shingles; an asthma **attack***
*a **bout of** bronchitis, coughing, flu, pneumonia, sickness*
*a coughing, an epileptic **fit***

Is it serious?

no	**yes**
a bit of a cold, a cough, an infection	a **bad/heavy/nasty** cold
mild depression	a **bad/nasty/severe** attack of sth, bout of sth
a **mild** attack of sth, bout of sth	a **bad/hacking/racking** cough
a **mild** heart attack, infection	a **bad/splitting** headache
a **slight** cold, headache	a **massive/serious** heart attack, stroke

What's the treatment?

take	**be given/ be on/take**	**have/undergo**	**have/be given**	**have/be given/ undergo**
medicine	antibiotics	an operation	acupuncture	hypnosis
pills	drugs	surgery	an anaesthetic	therapy
tablets	medication	a transplant	a blood transfusion	treatment
	painkillers		an injection	
			a scan	
			an X-ray	

from mental illness | **contract, develop, get** *He contracted a serious illness and died a month later.* | **diagnose** | **treat** *The drug is used to treat a wide range of illnesses.* | **cause** *illnesses caused by poverty* | **prevent** *a drug that may be helpful in preventing illnesses such as cancer* | **recover from** | **fight (off)** *The immune system enables the body to fight off illness.* | **feign** *She feigned illness so that she wouldn't have to go to school.* | **nurse sb through** *She nursed her father through his final illness.*

- ILLNESS + VERB **affect sb** *The mystery illness affected hundreds of people in the city.*
- PREP. **after ~** *He's just returned to work after illness.* **because of/due to/through ~** *earnings lost due to illness* **with ~** *people with serious psychological illnesses* | **~ among** *a high rate of illness among the workers* **~ associated with** *the illnesses associated with HIV infection* **~ in** *episodes of illness in children*
- PHRASES **the onset of illness** *the sudden onset of illness in a parent* **a smoking-/Aids-, etc. related illness** *the most common stress-related illnesses*

illogical *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound**
- ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally** | **rather, slightly** | **apparently** | **strictly** *Although strictly illogical, Martin's interpretation of this paradox seems the best.*

ill-treatment *noun*

- VERB + ILL-TREATMENT **suffer**
- PHRASES **ill-treatment at sb's hands** *They suffered ill-treatment at the hands of the guards.*

illuminate *verb*

1 give light to sth

- ADV. **brightly, clearly** | **dimly, faintly, softly** *The room was dimly illuminated by the soft glow of his bedside lamp.* | **briefly** | **suddenly**

2 make sth clear

- ADV. **greatly, vividly** *an incident which vividly illuminated the problems we faced*
- VERB + ILLUMINATE **help (to)** *The study of the present also helps to illuminate the past.*

illuminating *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove** | **find sth**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, most, very** *I found his talk most illuminating.* | **not particularly** | **quite**

illumination *noun*

- ADJ. **bright, good, strong**
- QUANT. **level** *providing an excellent level of illumination*
- VERB + ILLUMINATION **provide** *The skylight will provide good illumination from above.*
- ILLUMINATION + VERB **come from sth** *Most of the illumination came from candles.*
- PHRASES **a source of illumination** *The only source of illumination was a single small window.*

illusion *noun*

- ADJ. **dangerous** *To believe you have nothing more to learn is a dangerous illusion.* | **optical, visual** *The road ahead looks wet, but in fact this is an optical illusion.*
- VERB + ILLUSION **be under, entertain, have** *They are under no illusions about the difficulties ahead of them.* | **create, give (sb)** *The huge size of the vehicle gives the illusion of safety.* | **foster, maintain, preserve, sustain** *They are trying to maintain the illusion that the company is in good shape.* | **break, destroy, dispel, shatter** *Within the first week at university all my illusions were shattered.* | **shed** *Now is the time to shed our illusions.*
- PREP. **~ about/as to** *She had no illusions about her attractiveness to men.*
- PHRASES **be all an illusion** *It turned out that their happy marriage was all an illusion.*

illustrate *verb*

1 put pictures in sth

- ADV. **heavily, lavishly, richly** | **fully** | **attractively, beautifully, delightfully, handsomely, superbly**
- PREP. **with** *The new edition is heavily illustrated with photographs of aircraft.*

2 make sth clear using examples/pictures

- ADV. **amply** | **admirably, aptly, neatly, nicely, well** *The dire consequences of chronic underfunding are nowhere better illustrated than in the nation's schools.* | **perfectly** | **merely, simply** *His question merely illustrates his ignorance of the subject.* | **clearly, dramatically, graphically, strikingly, vividly** | **brutally, starkly, tragically** *The case tragically illustrates the dangers of fireworks.*
- VERB + ILLUSTRATE **serve to** *Two examples serve to illustrate this point.* | **be chosen to, be designed to, be intended to**
- PREP. **to** *a way of illustrating to the chairman the folly of his decision*

illustration *noun*

1 picture in a book etc.

- ADJ. **black and white, colour/coloured, full-colour** | **beautiful, lively** *The clear, lively illustrations are in full colour.* | **clear** | **book, cover**
- ILLUSTRATION + VERB **show sth** | **accompany sth** *the illustrations accompanying the text*
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *The kite is assembled as shown in the illustration.* **with an/the ~** | **~ by** *'The Black Cat' by Alan Ahlberg, with illustrations by Arthur Robins*

2 example

- ADJ. **good, excellent, perfect** | **clear, dramatic, graphic, striking, vivid** *These events are a graphic illustration of the fact that their promises cannot be trusted.* | **simple** *Let us take a very simple illustration.* | **classic**
- VERB + ILLUSTRATION **serve as** *Chicago serves as an illustration of the problems faced by such cities.* | **give (sb), provide** *Explain the policy of détente and provide some illustrations of how it worked in practice.* | **take, use sth as/for** *I will use one recent example as an illustration.*
- PREP. **as an ~** *As an illustration of this point, I'm going to tell you a true story.* **by way of ~** *He quoted several famous writers by way of illustration.*

image *noun*

1 impression of sb/sth given to the public

- ADJ. **positive** | **negative** | **upmarket** | **downmarket** | **tarnished** *The party needs to clean up its somewhat tarnished image.* | **clean-cut, girl-next-door, wholesome** *She was aiming for a wholesome, girl-next-door image.* | **macho** | **hackneyed** *the hackneyed image of the poor student* | **media, public, screen** *In real life she looks nothing like her screen image.* | **brand, corporate** *Champagne houses owe their success to brand image.*
- VERB + IMAGE **create** *The company needs to create a new image for itself.* | **present, project, promote** *a book which presents positive images of older people* | **aim for, go for** | **change** | **clean up, enhance, improve, polish, revive** *an effort to improve the organization's public image* | **keep up, live up to** *The group has failed to live up to its macho image.* | **discard, shed** *The industry is trying to shed its negative image.* | **tarnish**

2 mental picture of sb/sth

- ADJ. **powerful, vivid** | **sudden** *She had a sudden* *mental image of herself in a wedding dress.* | **positive** | **negative** | **distorted** *the distorted images in his dreams* | **popular** | **stereotyped/stereotypical** | **mental** | **literary, poetic** | **dream**

- VERB + IMAGE **have** | **conjure up, summon up** *Dieting always seems to conjure up images of endless cottage cheese salads.* ◇ *the ability to summon up images in the mind* | **build up** *I like to build up images of the characters and setting before I start to write.* | **use** | **reinforce** *Treating disabled people like children only reinforces negative images of disability.*
- PREP. **~from** *images from his past*

3 copy

- ADJ. **living, spitting** *He's the spitting image of his father!* | **mirror** *Charity was a mirror image of her twin.* ◇ *(figurative) The return journey was almost a mirror image of the outward one* (= the same things happened in the reverse order).

4 picture

- ADJ. **disturbing, poignant, powerful, striking** *powerful and disturbing images of the war* | **visual** *The visual image is steadily replacing the written word.* | **flickering, moving** *flickering images on a screen* | **still** *the use of still and moving video images* | **colour** | **black-and-white, monochrome** | **photographic, video** | **screen** *Each illustration is displayed as a complete screen image.* | **digital** | **graven** *(literary) It was forbidden to worship graven* (= carved) *images.* | **religious** | **pornographic**
- VERB + IMAGE **produce** *the images produced on laser printers* | **capture, scan** *She longed to capture the image on film.* | **edit** | **display, show** *the pixel information used to display a digital image* | **store** *You can store these images in a separate computer file.* | **juxtapose** *The display juxtaposed images from serious and popular art.*
- IMAGE + VERB **show sth** *heat images that show where most of the activity in the brain is*
- IMAGE + NOUN **capture, processing** | **database**

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

imagery *noun*

- ADJ. **powerful, resonant, telling, vivid** *the vivid visual imagery of dreams* | **slick** *the slick imagery of rock stardom* | **popular** *drawing on popular imagery from newspapers and magazines* | **visual** | **mental** *Illustration may come between the text and the reader's own mental imagery.* | **religious, sexual**
- VERB + IMAGERY **draw on, use**

imaginable *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **barely, hardly, scarcely** *To such poor people, the idea of having a choice of food is barely imaginable.*
- PHRASES **the best/worst … imaginable** *They live in the worst conditions imaginable.* **every imaginable sth** *They had every imaginable colour.* ◇ *They had every colour imaginable.* **the most … imaginable** *It was the most boring film imaginable!*

imaginary *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **completely, purely, wholly** *The characters in this book are purely imaginary.*

imagination *noun*

- ADJ. **great** | **active, creative, fertile, vivid** | **fevered, overactive, overheated** *It's just a product of your fevered imagination!* | **collective, popular, public** *a popular hero who inspired the collective imagination* | **visual** *I was no good at art—I have a very poor visual imagination.* | **historical, literary** *It requires a strong effort of historical imagination to understand the Roman attitude to death.* | **human** *the powers of the human imagination*
- VERB + IMAGINATION **have** | **show** | **lack** *Today's pop music lacks imagination.* | **require, take** *It does not take great imagination to guess what happened next.* | **use** *I haven't got a picture of this so you'll just have to use your imagination.* | **capture, captivate, catch, excite, fire, inspire, seize, stimulate, stir** *Victorian writers fired the popular imagination with their tales of adventure.* | **grip, hold** *Dinosaurs caught and have held the imagination of us all because they seem like dragons.* | **stretch, tax** | **defy** *The scale of the disaster defied imagination* (= was greater than you could imagine). | **leave sth to** *As for their reaction, I'll leave that to your imagination!*
- IMAGINATION + VERB **conjure sth up** *His imagination conjured up a vision of the normal family life he had never had.* | **run away with you, run riot/wild**
- PREP. **beyond (your) ~** *misery that is beyond most people's imagination* **in the/your ~** *Nobody hates you—it's all in your imagination!* **with/without ~** *He was totally without imagination.*
- PHRASES **a lack of imagination, a figment/product of sb's imagination** *The figure vanished as silently as if it had simply been a figment of her imagination.* **not by any/by no stretch of the imagination** *Not by any stretch of the imagination could she be called beautiful* (= she was definitely not beautiful in any way). **only your imagination** *Is it only my imagination or have you lost weight?* **with a little imagination** *With a little imagination you can create a delicious meal from yesterday's leftovers.*

imaginative *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **brilliantly, extremely, highly, most, very, wonderfully** *a wonderfully imaginative story* | **quite**

imagine *verb*

1 form a picture of sth in your mind

- ADV. **clearly, easily, readily** *I could clearly imagine the scene in the office.* | **hardly, scarcely** *I could hardly imagine living in such a remote and desolate spot.* | **just** *She could just imagine her mother's look of horror.* | **actually** *I can't actually imagine her falling for that trick.* | **always** *I always imagined him following in his father's footsteps.* | **fondly, naively** *I had fondly imagined that riding a mule would be easy.*
- VERB + IMAGINE **can/could (well)** *I can well imagine the atmosphere at home at this moment.* | **can/could not (possibly)** *There's more at stake here than you can possibly imagine.* | **try to** | **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *It is difficult to imagine Blackpool without its famous Tower.* | **be easy to**
- PHRASES **let us imagine** *Let us imagine what really might have happened.*

2 see/hear/think sth that is not true/does not exist

- ADV. **really, seriously** *You don't seriously imagine I'll agree to that?* | **almost** *I could almost imagine you were jealous.* | **actually** | **fondly, naively**
- VERB + IMAGINE **be easy to**
- PHRASES **be imagining things** *Had I really heard a noise, or was I just imagining things?* **real or imagined** *He was always keen to avenge insults, real or imagined.*

imbalance *noun*

- ADJ. **growing** | **regional** | **gender, power, trade** | **chemical, hormonal**
- VERB + IMBALANCE **cause, create** | **correct, redress** *Increased recruitment of women engineers will help correct the gender imbalance in the profession.*
- IMBALANCE + VERB **arise, occur**
- PREP. **~between** *an imbalance between imports and*

exports **~ in** *An imbalance in certain chemicals leads to disturbances in the brain's function.*

imitation *noun*

1 copy of a thing
- ADJ. **accurate, good, passable | cheap, crude, pale, poor** *Accept no cheap imitations of our product!* ◇ *Their version of jazz funk is a pale imitation of the real thing.*

2 act of copying sth
- ADJ. **faithful, slavish | direct** *Children are seen as learning to write by direct imitation of adult models.*
- PREP. **in ~ of** *The poems, some in imitation of Ossian, are graceful if unremarkable.*

3 copy of sb's speech/behaviour
- ADJ. **fair, good, passable | poor**
- VERB + IMITATION **do, give, perform** *He does a very good imitation of George W. Bush.*

immaculate *adj.*
- VERBS **be, look | keep sth**
- ADV. **absolutely, totally**

immaterial *adj.*
- VERBS **be, prove, seem | become**
- ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, wholly** *The condition of the car is quite immaterial as long as it works.* **| almost, virtually | relatively**
- PREP. **to** *These facts are immaterial to the problem.*

immature *adj.*
- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **very | rather, relatively | emotionally, physically, politically, sexually**

immediacy *noun*
- VERB + IMMEDIACY **lack**
- PHRASES **a lack of immediacy, a loss of immediacy** *Television allows viewers to experience an event without any loss of immediacy.*

immediate *adj.*
- VERBS **be, seem** *The effect seems immediate.*
- ADV. **almost** *The painkillers brought almost immediate relief.*

immerse *verb*

1 put sth in liquid
- ADV. **completely, fully, totally | partially**
- PREP. **in** *The seeds need to be completely immersed in water.*

2 concentrate completely on sth
- ADV. **deeply** *Clare and Phil were deeply immersed in conversation.* **| completely, totally | in** *For six months I totally immersed myself in my work.*

immigrant *noun*
- ADJ. **illegal | foreign | Irish, Italian, Jewish, etc. | recent | would-be | first-generation, second-generation** *First-generation immigrants may dream of returning 'home'; their children say Britain is their home.*
- QUANT. **flood, influx, wave**
- VERB + IMMIGRANT **accept, welcome | deport, return** *ships laden with would-be immigrants who were forcibly returned*
- IMMIGRANT + VERB **arrive, enter sth** *immigrants seeking to enter the country* **| come from sth | settle (sth)** *European immigrants settled much of Australia.*
- IMMIGRANT + NOUN **community, family, group, population | worker | labour**
- PREP. **~ from, ~ to** *She was the daughter of Chinese immigrants to America.*

immigration *noun*

1 coming to live in a country
- ADJ. **illegal | large-scale, mass**
- VERB + IMMIGRATION **control, restrict** *laws restricting immigration into the US*
- IMMIGRATION + NOUN **control, law, policy, rules | authority, officer, official, service**
- PREP. **~ from** *There was a sudden increase in immigration from Eastern Europe.*

2 (*also* **immigration control**) at a port/airport
- VERB + IMMIGRATION **go/pass through** *We landed at Heathrow and went through customs and immigration.*
- IMMIGRATION + NOUN **checks, formalities, procedures** *calls for tighter immigration procedures*

immobile *adj.*
- VERBS **lie, remain, sit, stand** *She seemed scarcely to breathe as she lay immobile.* **| become | hold sb, leave sb** *For a moment shock held her immobile.* ◇ *The accident left him totally immobile.*
- ADV. **completely, perfectly, totally, utterly | almost, virtually | relatively**

immoral *adj.*
- VERBS **be, seem, sound | condemn sth as, consider sth, regard sth as, think sth** *He condemned the government's action as immoral.*
- ADV. **downright, quite, totally, utterly | rather, slightly, vaguely** *That sounds vaguely immoral.*

immortal *adj.*
- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **almost, virtually | effectively** *The wild cocoa tree is effectively immortal.* **| potentially**

immortality *noun*
- ADJ. **personal** *Some religions include a doctrine of personal immortality.*
- VERB + IMMORTALITY **achieve | confer, give sb** *It was in the power of the gods to confer immortality upon mortals.*
- PHRASES **the immortality of the soul** *They believe in the immortality of the soul.*

immune *adj.*

1 protected against a disease
- VERBS **be, seem | become | remain, stay | make sb** *The vaccination doesn't necessarily make you completely immune.*
- ADV. **completely, totally**
- PREP. **to** *Many people are immune to this disease.*

2 not affected by sth
- VERBS **appear, be, prove, seem | become | remain**
- ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | by no means, far from** *Children are far from immune to the virus of cruelty that is latent in all human beings.* **| almost, largely, virtually | relatively**
- PREP. **to** *She's quite immune to criticism.*

immunity *noun*

1 protection against disease
- ADJ. **strong | acquired, natural**
- VERB + IMMUNITY **have** *The island's inhabitants had no immunity to the diseases carried by the explorers and quickly succumbed.* **| lack | acquire, build up, develop** *Once you have had a cold you build up immunity to that particular virus.* **| stimulate** *the use of vaccines to stimu-*

late immunity | **boost** | **lower** *High levels of stress may lower your immunity to common illnesses.*

- IMMUNITY + VERB **develop** *A strong immunity to reinfection develops after one year.*
- PREP. **~ against/to** *The newcomers lacked immunity against local strains of the disease.*

2 protection from danger/punishment

- ADJ. **complete, total** | **effective** | **diplomatic, legal, parliamentary** *Several ministers were stripped of parliamentary immunity as a prelude to facing corruption charges.* | **public interest** *The newspaper claimed public interest immunity when threatened with prosecution for publishing the story* (= claimed that the public had a right to know about the story).
- VERB + IMMUNITY **enjoy** | **claim, seek** | **confer, give sb, grant (sb), guarantee (sb), provide** | **abolish, lift, strip sb of** *The Supreme Court lifted the company's immunity from criminal prosecution.* | **lose**
- PREP. **~ from** *Unions were granted immunity from prosecution for non-violent acts.*

immunize *verb*

- ADV. **routinely**
- PREP. **against** *Children have been routinely immunized against polio since 1958.* **with** *They immunized some mice with a dose of the live vaccine.*

impact *noun*

1 effect/impression

- ADJ. **big, considerable, dramatic, enormous, great, high, huge, important, main, major, massive, powerful, profound, real, significant, strong, substantial, tremendous** *a high-impact message aimed at changing high risk behaviour among drug-users* | **limited, marginal, minimal/minimum, negligible** | **full** *The industrial north of the country felt the full impact of the recession.* | **maximum** *We'll show you how to dress for maximum impact at the all-important audition.* | **overall, total** | **growing, increasing** | **added** | **disproportionate** | **uneven** *the uneven impact of the debt crisis on developing countries* | **aggregate, combined, cumulative** *considering the cumulative impact of a series of damaging events* | **decisive** | **direct** *The railways made a direct physical impact on the landscape.* | **immediate, instant** | **initial, short-term** | **lasting, long-term** | **far-reaching, wider** *It is important to appreciate the wider impact and implications of this proposal.* | **future, likely, possible, potential** | **beneficial, favourable, positive** | **adverse, catastrophic, damaging, devastating, disastrous, heavy, negative, serious, severe** | **human** *The severest human impact on the dolphins has been the loss of habitat.* | **personal** *The personal impact of party leaders has been very important.* | **physical, visual** *seeking to reduce the visual impact of wind farms on the landscape* | **cultural, ecological, economic, emotional, environmental, financial, health, political, psychological, social** *The environmental impact of power generation is being assessed.*
- VERB + IMPACT **achieve, create, exert, have, make** *Variations in the interest rate will have an impact on the whole housing market.* ◇ *You certainly made a big impact on Carter.* | **feel** *The initial impact of the reforms will be felt most keenly in primary schools.* | **analyse, assess, consider, evaluate, examine, explore, judge, measure, monitor, study** *It is difficult to judge the likely impact of the changes on employment patterns.* | **enhance, increase, maximize** | **alleviate, cushion, lessen, minimize, reduce, soften** *We are trying to minimize the impact of price rises on our customers.* | **diminish, lessen, reduce, weaken** *Listening to the speech through an interpreter lessened its impact somewhat.* | **lose** *When peace returned, the hardline message lost much of its impact.* | **resist, withstand** *This section explores how mothers resist the impact of poverty on the health of their children.* | **be concerned about** | **appreciate** | **highlight** | **address** | **predict** | **reflect** *Architecturally, these churches reflected the impact of the Renaissance.*
- PREP. **under the ~ of** *Manufacturing fell sharply under the impact of the recession.* | **~ on/upon** *to highlight the impact of technology on working practices*

2 act/force of one object hitting another

- ADJ. **full** | **initial**
- VERB + IMPACT **take** *The front coach of the train took the full impact of the crash.* | **feel** | **absorb** *A well-designed sports shoe should absorb the impact on the 28 bones in each foot.* | **lessen, soften** *Air bags are designed to soften the impact for crash victims.* | **survive, withstand** *The crew of six may have survived the initial impact, but the whole plane went up in flames seconds later.*
- IMPACT + VERB **occur** *Impact occurred seconds after the pilot signalled for help.* | **knock sb/sth …** *The impact knocked him off balance.*
- IMPACT + NOUN **speed** | **crater** *Small meteorites have left impact craters all over the planet's surface.*
- PREP. **on ~** *The front of the car had crumpled on impact.*
- PHRASES **the moment/point/time of impact**

impair *verb*

- ADV. **dramatically, gravely, greatly, seriously, severely, significantly, substantially** | **directly** *factors which directly impair memory*
- PHRASES **badly impaired** *Her sight is badly impaired.* **hearing/mentally/visually impaired** *the problems faced by people who are hearing impaired*

impartial *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **remain** *The judge must remain impartial.*
- ADV. **completely, quite, strictly, totally** | **fairly, reasonably, relatively**

impartiality *noun*

- ADJ. **complete** | **due** *The BBC must ensure that due impartiality is preserved in its news programmes.*
- VERB + IMPARTIALITY **guarantee, maintain, preserve** | **compromise, prejudice** *The newspaper sought to present a range of opinions without compromising its impartiality.*

impassable *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain** | **make sth** | **think sth** *The river's broad mudflats were thought completely impassable.*
- ADV. **completely, totally** *The mud made the roads impassable.* | **almost, virtually**

impasse *noun*

- ADJ. **diplomatic, legal, political**
- VERB + IMPASSE **reach** *Negotiations seemed to have reached an impasse.* | **break, end, overcome, resolve**
- PHRASES **a way out of an impasse** *The proposal offered both sides a way out of the diplomatic impasse.*

impassive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, sit, stand** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **completely, quite, totally** | **almost** *Her expression was cool, almost impassive.* | **rather** | **usually** *A smile transformed her usually impassive face.*

impatience *noun*

- ADJ. **growing, mounting** | **slight** | **barely concealed/controlled**
- QUANT. **hint, note, touch**
- VERB + IMPATIENCE **feel** *She felt a growing impa-*

tience. | **express, show** *He was trying hard not to show his impatience.* | **contain, control, curb, restrain** *unable to contain her impatience* | **conceal, hide**
- IMPATIENCE + VERB **grow**
- PREP. **with ~** *He stamped his feet as he waited with barely concealed impatience for the telephone.* | **~ at** *He expressed impatience at the slow rate of progress.* **~ for** *his impatience for her to return* **~ with** *impatience with the slowness of change*
- PHRASES **a gesture of impatience** *He shook his head in a gesture of impatience.* **a sigh of impatience** *He bit back a sigh of impatience.* **signs of impatience** *The children were beginning to show signs of impatience.*

impatient *adj.*
- VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem, sound** | **become, get, grow** *The children were growing impatient.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, very** | **increasingly** | **almost** | **a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat, a touch** *He spoke in a somewhat impatient tone.* | **suddenly**
- PREP. **about** *She's getting impatient about the delays.* **at** *Sean was a touch impatient at the time Valerie devoted to her mother.* **for** *impatient for change* **with** *Sometimes he is very impatient with his wife.*

impede *verb*
- ADV. **greatly, seriously, significantly** *The bad weather seriously impeded our progress.*

impediment *noun*
- ADJ. **great, major, serious** | **absolute** | **chief, main** | **lawful, legal** *There are no legal impediments to their appealing against the decision.*
- VERB + IMPEDIMENT **be, constitute, provide** | **remove** *The agreement is designed to remove impediments to trade between the two countries.*
- PREP. **~to** *Their boycott of the talks constitutes a serious impediment to peace negotiations.*

impenetrable *adj.*

1 impossible to enter/get through
- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem** | **become** | **find sth** *They found the jungle virtually impenetrable.*
- ADV. **almost, nearly, virtually**

2 impossible to understand
- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain** | **find sth**
- ADV. **almost, virtually** | **somewhat** *I find his style somewhat impenetrable.* | **seemingly**
- PREP. **to** *The language of this document would be impenetrable to anyone except a specialist.*

imperative *adj.*
- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain** *It remains imperative that all sides should be involved in the talks.* | **make sth** *The collapse of the wall made it imperative to keep the water out by some other means.* | **consider sth** *We consider it absolutely imperative to start work immediately.*
- ADV. **absolutely**

imperceptible *adj.*
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **almost, virtually** *His head moved in an almost imperceptible nod.*
- PREP. **to** *The slight change in the taste was imperceptible to most people.*

imperfect *adj.*
- VERBS **be** | **remain** *Our understanding of cancer remains imperfect.*
- ADV. **highly, very** *The system is highly imperfect.* | **rather, slightly** *These goods are slightly imperfect.*

imperfection *noun*
- ADJ. **moral, physical**
- VERB + IMPERFECTION **cover up** | **reveal, show up**
- PREP. **~ in** *Careful inspection in daylight revealed imperfections in the paintwork.*

imperialism *noun*
- ADJ. **American, British, Roman, Western, etc.** | **capitalist, cultural, economic**

impersonal *adj.*

1 not showing friendly human feelings
- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **find sth** *I find the atmosphere there rather impersonal.*
- ADV. **very** | **totally** | **a bit, rather** | **coldly, coolly** *His voice was coolly impersonal.* | **oddly**

2 not referring to any particular person
- VERBS **be** | **keep sth** *I think we should keep things entirely impersonal.*
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, entirely, totally**

impertinence *noun*
- ADJ. **gross** *I consider his remark a gross impertinence.*
- VERB + IMPERTINENCE **have** *She had the impertinence to suggest I needed a holiday.*
- PHRASES **the height of impertinence**

impertinent *adj.*
- VERBS **be, seem** | **get** *Don't you get impertinent with me!* | **find sth** *She found the question highly impertinent.*
- ADV. **highly, very** | **slightly, somewhat**

impervious *adj.*
- VERBS **appear, be, seem** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **completely, quite, totally, wholly** *He was completely impervious to criticism.* | **almost, largely, virtually** | **apparently**
- PREP. **to** *She was impervious to his charms.*

impetus *noun*
- ADJ. **considerable, great, powerful, strong** | **main, major** | **immediate, initial, original** | **fresh, new, renewed** *Each new rumour added fresh impetus to the smear campaign.* | **added, extra, further** | **necessary** *His disappointment in the World Championships provided the necessary impetus to give everything for this final race.*
- VERB + IMPETUS **add, give sb/sth, provide (sb/sth with)** *The slope added impetus to his speed.* | **gain, gather, receive** *The movement is steadily gaining impetus.* | **lose** *With the death of its founder, the campaign lost much of its impetus.*
- IMPETUS + VERB **come from sth** *Much of the impetus for change came from customers' opinions.*
- PREP. **~ behind sb/sth** *The main impetus behind the move west was to find gold and other minerals.* **~ for** *the impetus for arms control agreements* **~ towards** *the impetus towards urban development*

impinge *verb*
- ADV. **seriously** *actions which seriously impinge on other people's personal freedoms* | **hardly** | **directly, indirectly**
- PREP. **on/upon** *measures which directly or indirectly impinge upon women's lives*

implausible *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem, sound | consider sth, deem sth** *These results might be considered implausible.*

• ADV. **highly | quite, totally, wholly** *This idea is totally implausible.* **| increasingly** *He gave a series of increasingly implausible excuses.* **| not altogether, not entirely | pretty, rather, somewhat | inherently**

implement *noun*

• ADJ. **agricultural, farm, garden, kitchen, surgical | sharp** *Make sure that all sharp implements, such as scythes, have covers.* **| flint, metal, stone, wooden**

implement *verb*

• ADV. **fully, properly** *These policies have never been fully implemented.* **| partially | adequately | actually** *The proposed changes were never actually implemented.* **| widely** *These reforms have now been widely implemented in schools.* **| effectively, successfully | quickly**

• VERB + IMPLEMENT **agree to, decide to, intend to, promise to | attempt to, seek to, try to | fail to** *The government failed to implement the plan.* **| refuse to | be forced to, be obliged to | be difficult to, be hard to** *The decision will be difficult to implement.*

implementation *noun*

• ADJ. **effective, successful | complete, full | detailed** *Detailed implementation of the plans was left to the regional offices.* **| strict | smooth** *We will consult widely to ensure smooth implementation.* **| practical** *The practical implementation of the regulations proved difficult.* **| early, immediate | gradual | policy**

• VERB + IMPLEMENTATION **achieve, ensure, secure** *To achieve implementation of the programme is a long, slow task.* **| monitor, oversee, supervise** *The UN is to supervise the implementation of the peace treaty.* **| consider, discuss**

• IMPLEMENTATION + NOUN **plan | process** *The restructuring will take place in phases, to simplify the implementation process.* **| problem**

implicate *verb* **be implicated in sth**

• ADV. **deeply, heavily, strongly** *These groups are very strongly implicated in the violence.* **| directly**

implication *noun*

1 possible effect/result

• ADJ. **considerable, crucial, enormous, important, major, massive, strong | main | deeper, fundamental, profound | broad, far-reaching, wider** *discussing the broader implications of the medical plan* **| full** *Now they realized the full implications of the new system.* **| direct | clear, obvious | underlying | general | further | possible, potential | future, long-term | grave, serious | disturbing, frightening, ominous, sinister | adverse, damaging, negative | interesting | radical, revolutionary | practical** *These results have important practical implications.* **| commercial, constitutional, economic, educational, environmental, ethical, financial, ideological, legal, moral, philosophical, political, psychological, social** *the constitutional implications of a royal divorce* **| cost, health, policy, resource, safety, security, tax**

• VERB + IMPLICATION **carry, have** *The emphasis on testing leads to greater stress among students and carries implications of failure.* **| grasp, realize, understand | assess, consider, examine, explore, ponder, study** *You need to consider the legal implications before you publish anything.* **| digest | discuss | explain | accept** *a society that fully accepts the implications of disability* **| reject | ignore**

• IMPLICATION + VERB **arise** *Several interesting implications arise from these developments.* **| be involved** *Given the resource implications involved, the plan will have to be scaled down.*

• PREP. **~ about** *disturbing implications about the company's future* **~ for** *The research has far-reaching implications for medicine as a whole.*

2 sth suggested but not said openly

• ADJ. **clear, obvious** *The implication is clear: young females do better if they mate with a new male.* **| possible** *His remark seemed to have various possible implications.* **| unspoken**

• VERB + IMPLICATION **carry, have | understand | digest** *Brian paused for a moment while he digested the implications of this statement.* **| resent** *I resent the implication that I don't care about my father.*

• PREP. **by ~** *In refusing to believe our story, he is saying by implication that we are lying.*

imply *verb*

• ADV. **clearly, heavily, strongly | simply | generally, normally, usually | automatically | not necessarily** *This does not necessarily imply that children achieve better results in private schools.* **| in no way** *They believe that submission in no way implies inferiority.*

• VERB + IMPLY **seem to** *The letter seems to imply that the minister knew about the business deals.* **| intend to, mean to** *I never meant to imply any criticism.* **| take sth to** *This statement should not be taken to imply that the government is exonerated of all blame.*

• PHRASES **express or implied** *the express or implied terms of the contract*

import *noun*

• ADJ. **main, major | foreign, overseas | cheap | annual** *The value of annual imports rose rapidly.* **| net** *the UK's net imports of food* **| total | essential | luxury | illegal | agricultural, car, coal, energy, food, grain, oil, steel, etc.**

• VERB + IMPORT **boost, increase** *pressure on the government to stimulate the faltering economy and boost imports* **| curb, cut, reduce, restrict | discourage | control | block, prevent, stop | ban, prohibit** *The government decided to prohibit the import of toxic waste.* **| finance** *Most of their oil revenues are used to finance imports of consumer and capital goods.* **| replace** *The industry aims both to increase exports and replace imports.*

• IMPORT + VERB **grow, increase, rise | drop, fall | be valued at sth, total sth** *Imports were valued at £516 million last month.* **| account for sth** *Imports of foodstuffs accounted for a small proportion of total imports.*

• IMPORT + NOUN **ban, control, restrictions | duty, tariff | price** *rising import prices* **| licence | quota** *A restricted import quota was set for meat products.* **| penetration** *greater import penetration of the domestic market*

• PREP. **~ from** *America has cut its oil imports from the Middle East by 73%.* **~ into** *Special duties were imposed on imports into the republic.*

• PHRASES **a ban/restriction on imports, the demand for imports, a fall/rise in imports**

⇨ Note at PER CENT (for more verbs)

import *verb*

• ADV. **directly | illegally, legally | specially**

• PREP. **from** *The store's croissants are imported directly from France.* **into** *These dogs are illegally imported into the country.* **to** *goods that are imported to Britain*

importance *noun*

• ADJ. **cardinal, central, considerable, critical, crucial, enormous, especial, extreme, fundamental, great, high,**

immense, key, major, outstanding, overriding, overwhelming, paramount, particular, primary, prime, profound, real, special, supreme, tremendous, vital | first, greatest, highest, utmost *This information is of the first importance.* ◇ *It is of the utmost importance that you arrive on time.* | **growing, increasing | declining** *the declining importance of manufacturing industry* | **lesser, limited, marginal, minor, secondary | direct | general | added | immediate | continued/continuing, lasting | equal | relative | intrinsic | obvious | perceived** *differences in the perceived importance of the different subjects in the curriculum* | **potential | public | international, national | practical | theoretical | symbolic** *the symbolic importance of iron in German culture* | **archaeological, commercial, constitutional, cultural, ecological, economic, environmental, historical, legal, military, political, social, strategic**

- VERB + IMPORTANCE **have** *These finds have considerable archaeological importance.* | **assume, take on** *Childcare schemes take on an added importance at a time of national recession.* | **grow in, increase in, rise in | decline in, diminish in, fall in** *The overseas markets have now declined in importance.* | **attach, give sth, place** *To what objectives do you attach most importance?* ◇ *the importance placed on cleanliness* | **accept, acknowledge, appreciate, be aware of, grasp, realize, recognize, see, understand** *People were aware of the importance of working with nature.* | **demonstrate, illustrate, indicate, point to, reflect, show, suggest** *Figure 2.2 shows the relative importance of the different service industries.* | **assert | deny | confirm | draw attention to, emphasize, highlight, point up, promote, stress, underline** *The manual stresses the importance of regular maintenance.* | **diminish, downplay, minimize, play down, underplay** *She was inclined to play down the importance of her own role in the affair.* | **exaggerate, overestimate | underestimate, undervalue** *Don't underestimate the importance of neat presentation.* | **increase | reduce | consider, discuss | explain | cast/throw doubt on, doubt, question** *No one can seriously question the political importance of the environment.* | **forget, ignore, overlook**
- IMPORTANCE + VERB **arise from sth, lie in sth** *The town's importance lies in the richness and quality of its architecture.* | **depend on sth**
- PREP. **of … ~** *The railways were of crucial importance in opening up the American West.* | **~ for** *an area of enormous importance for wildlife* **~ to** *the importance to the country of a healthy economy*
- PHRASES **in order of importance** *Deal with the issues in order of importance.* **a matter of importance**

important *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become | remain | make sth** *This is what makes our work so important.* | **believe sth, consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as, think sth** *These ideas are considered enormously important.*
- ADV. **critically, crucially, enormously, especially, extremely, hugely, most, particularly, really, terribly, very, vitally** *This is most important: you must deliver the letter to Johnson himself.* | **increasingly | doubly | fairly, quite | equally** *These two factors are equally important.* | **internationally, regionally** *an internationally important site for these rare birds* | **economically, functionally, historically, politically, strategically** *historically important buildings*
- PREP. **for** *It's important for you to understand this.* **to** *Spending time with my children is important to me.* ◇ *The work of the intelligence services was crucially important to victory in the war.*

impose *verb*

- ADV. **effectively** *The terms of the contract were effectively imposed rather than agreed.* | **simply** *New technology cannot be used successfully if it is simply imposed on an unwilling workforce.* | **centrally** *a centrally imposed school curriculum* | **externally** *the pressure of having to meet externally imposed targets* | **artificially** *Motivation to learn must come from the child; it cannot be artificially imposed.*
- VERB + IMPOSE **seek to, strive to, try to**
- PREP. **on/upon** *The government has imposed a ban on the sale of handguns.*

imposition *noun*

1 act of imposing sth

- VERB + IMPOSITION **justify** *Several reasons were put forward to justify the imposition of censorship.* | **oppose, resist | resent**
- PREP. **~ on** *resisting the imposition of VAT on fuel*

2 unreasonable thing sb expects you to do

- ADJ. **unacceptable, unwelcome**
- PREP. **~ on** *She felt the journey to be an unwelcome imposition on her time.*

impossible *adj.*

1 not possible

- VERBS **appear, be, look, prove, seem, sound | become | remain | make sth, render sth** *Darkness made it impossible to continue.* | **believe sth, consider sth, deem sth, find sth, regard sth as, see sth as, think sth** *I found his offer impossible to resist.*
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, totally, utterly | frankly** *Cooking for forty would be frankly impossible without my new assistant.* | **just, simply** *I'm really sorry. It's just impossible.* | **by no means, far from, not altogether** *a desirable and far from impossible objective to achieve* | **almost, more or less, near, nearly, next to, nigh on, practically, virtually, well-nigh** *It was well-nigh impossible for him to convince her that he was right.* | **pretty | effectively | literally | apparently, seemingly | theoretically | clearly, obviously | equally** *Both options are equally impossible.* | **generally | hitherto, previously** *With the new equipment we will be able to accomplish hitherto impossible tasks.* | **ultimately | economically, financially, logically, logistically, mathematically, politically, physically, scientifically, socially, technically** *The high cost of childcare made returning to work economically impossible.*
- PREP. **for** *The situation is quite impossible for us.* ◇ *It's impossible for me to say.*

2 bad-tempered; difficult to talk to/deal with

- VERBS **be | become | find sb** *I find her impossible.*
- ADV. **bloody** (*taboo*), **really | absolutely, completely, quite, totally** *You can be absolutely impossible at times!* | **just**

impotence *noun*

- ADJ. **total | relative | male | political, sexual**
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of impotence** *Violence may result from a sense of impotence.*

impotent *adj.*

1 without enough power/influence

- VERBS **be, feel, prove | remain | leave sb, make sb, render sb** *Companies are rendered impotent by all the rules and regulations.*
- ADV. **completely, quite, totally | virtually | politically**
- PREP. **against** *They were virtually impotent against the power of the large companies.*

2 not capable of having sex

- VERBS **be | become | leave sb, make sb** *The operation left him impotent.*
- ADV. **sexually**

impracticable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | make sth, render sth** *The damage it would cause makes the idea utterly impracticable.* | **consider sth, find sth** *This idea was considered completely impracticable.*
- ADV. **highly | completely, quite, totally, utterly**

impractical *adj.*

1 not sensible or reasonable

- VERBS **be, prove** *Such a solution proved impractical.* | **become | make sth** *The weight of the machine makes lifting it impractical.* | **consider sth, deem sth, find sth, regard sth as** *They found his ideas impractical.*
- ADV. **highly, hopelessly** *The long flowing dress was highly impractical.* | **completely, downright, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | rather, somewhat | fundamentally** *a fundamentally impractical design* | **obviously**

2 not good at everyday jobs

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **hopelessly** *He was hopelessly impractical when it came to planning new projects.*

imprecise *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, rather, somewhat | notoriously** *'Breach of the peace' is a notoriously imprecise notion.*
- PREP. **about** *She was rather imprecise about the cost of the trip.*

impress *verb*

- ADV. **really** *His work really impressed me.*
- VERB + IMPRESS **be determined to, be keen to, hope to, want to | attempt to, seek to, try to | be designed to | fail to** *The results failed to impress us.*
- PREP. **with** *She impressed us with both the depth and range of her knowledge.*
- PHRASES **an attempt/effort to impress sb, be easily impressed** *I was young and easily impressed.*

impressed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**
- ADV. **deeply, enormously, especially, extremely, greatly, immensely, mightily, much, overwhelmingly, particularly, profoundly, really, terribly, tremendously, very (much) | less than, not overly** *I was not overly impressed by the proposals.* | **fairly, mildly, quite | enough, sufficiently** *The prince was impressed enough to commission a portrait from the artist.* | **genuinely | immediately, instantly | favourably | duly, suitably** *He mentioned a few famous acquaintances, and we were suitably impressed.* | **clearly, obviously**
- PREP. **by** *The manager was favourably impressed by Jo's work.* **with** *He was very impressed with her house.*

impression *noun*

1 idea/feeling/opinion about sth

- ADJ. **distinct, firm, strong | main, overriding, overwhelming | convincing | clear, vivid | fleeting, vague | accurate | distorted, erroneous, false, mistaken, misleading, spurious, wrong | good** *The village gives a good impression of what a medieval city would have looked like.* | **favourable | negative | opposite | early, first, immediate, initial** *First impressions can be misleading.* | **final | general, overall | general, widespread** *There is a widespread impression that schooling needs to be improved.* | **public | personal, subjective**
- VERB + IMPRESSION **form, gain, get, have, obtain, receive** *I got the distinct impression that you disliked her.* | **convey, create, give (sb), leave sb with, provide (sb wtih)** *The book leaves you with a distorted impression of politics.* | **maintain** *She was trying to maintain the impression that she was in control.* | **confirm | heighten, reinforce, strengthen | avoid** *It was difficult to avoid the impression that he was assisting them for selfish reasons.* | **correct** *I must correct a false impression that I gave you just now.* | **record** *She recorded her impressions of the city in her diary.*
- IMPRESSION + VERB **count** *When it comes to finding a partner, first impressions do count.*
- PREP. **under a/the ~** *I was under the impression that you weren't coming until tomorrow.* | **~ about** *I had the wrong impression about him.* **~ as to** *mistaken impressions as to the strength of the market*

2 effect that an experience/person has on sb/sth

- ADJ. **considerable, deep, powerful, profound, strong, tremendous | superficial | abiding, indelible, lasting | excellent, favourable, good, great | bad, poor, unfavourable | false, misleading, wrong | right** *If you want to create the right impression, I suggest you wear a suit.* | **first, immediate** *The new striker failed to make an immediate impression on the team.*
- VERB + IMPRESSION **create, leave, make**
- PREP. **~ on/upon** *The day's events left a lasting impression on them.*

3 drawing

- ADJ. **artist's**
- VERB + IMPRESSION **issue** *The police have issued an artist's impression of the attacker.*

4 amusing copy of sb

- ADJ. **good, reasonable**
- VERB + IMPRESSION **do** *He does some very good impressions of pop stars.*

5 mark left on an object

- VERB + IMPRESSION **bear** *The sealing wax bore the impression of a sailing ship.*

impressionable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **highly, very** *He is in a highly impressionable state.*

impressive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem | become | remain | make sth** *The fact that he is so young makes his achievements even more impressive.* | **find sth**
- ADV. **decidedly, enormously, extremely, highly, hugely, immensely, mightily, most, particularly, really, tremendously, truly, very** *The new building looks most impressive.* | **far from, hardly, not unduly** *He was far from impressive in his semi-final against Federer.* | **fairly, pretty, quite, rather | undeniably, undoubtedly | suitably** *A large portico provides a suitably impressive entrance to the chapel.* | **equally, similarly** *The scenery to the north of the lake is equally impressive.* | **consistently | technically, visually** *The film is technically impressive, but lacks real excitement.*

imprint *noun*

- ADJ. **indelible, permanent | unmistakable**
- VERB + IMPRINT **bear** *The ceramics bore the imprint of Luca della Robbia.* | **leave, make** *Glaciation has left a permanent imprint on the landscape.* ◇ *(figurative) The sinister atmosphere of the place left an indelible imprint on my memory.*
- PREP. **~ on/upon**

imprison *verb*

- ADV. **virtually** *Her fear virtually imprisoned her in her home.* | **falsely, unlawfully, wrongfully, wrongly** *working on behalf of people who have been wrongly imprisoned* | **briefly, temporarily**

- PREP. **for** *He was imprisoned for debt.* **in** *He was imprisoned in a local castle.*

imprisonment *noun*

- ADJ. **six months', ten years', etc.** | **life** | **indefinite** | **immediate** | **false, unlawful, wrongful**
- VERB + IMPRISONMENT **be liable to, face** *The Act states that anyone committing the offence is liable to imprisonment.* ◇ *The coup leaders could face life imprisonment.* | **receive, suffer** *Those who were captured suffered imprisonment.* | **be released from** | **sentence sb to**
- IMPRISONMENT + VERB **be suspended for sth** *The judge sentenced her to 6 months imprisonment suspended for 15 months.*
- PREP. **~ for** *imprisonment for illegal possession of weapons*
- PHRASES **(carry) a penalty of … imprisonment** *The offence carries a penalty of 2 years' imprisonment.* **imprisonment without trial, a period/sentence/term of imprisonment, punishable by imprisonment** *a felony punishable by imprisonment*

improbable *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound** | **become** | **make sth** *These new facts make the theory improbable.*
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very, wildly** *a wildly improbable idea* | **completely, quite** | **not altogether** | **fairly, rather, slightly** | **inherently, intrinsically** *There is nothing inherently improbable in the idea.*

improper *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **consider sth, regard sth as, think sth** *She thought it quite improper for a woman to ride a motorbike.*
- ADV. **highly, most** | **entirely, quite**

impropriety *noun*

- ADJ. **gross** | **constitutional, financial, procedural** (*law*), **sexual**
- VERB + IMPROPRIETY **commit** *Several employees were suspended amid allegations that financial improprieties had been committed.* | **accuse sb of** *Parliament was was accused of constitutional impropriety.*
- PHRASES **a suggestion of impropriety** *There is no suggestion of impropriety by the minister.*

improve *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, dramatically, greatly, immeasurably, materially, radically, significantly, substantially, vastly** | **markedly, noticeably** | **marginally, slightly** | **rapidly** | **steadily**
- VERB + IMPROVE **continue to** *The weather should continue to improve over the weekend.* | **strive to, try to** *trying to improve their working conditions* | **help to** | **be designed to**
- PHRASES **aimed at improving sth** *measures aimed at improving government efficiency* **an attempt/effort to improve sth, an incentive to improve sth** *Workers need to be given an incentive to improve their performance.* **much improved** *We now offer a much improved service to our customers.*

improvement *noun*

- ADJ. **big, considerable, enormous, great, huge, marked, massive, material, radical, remarkable, significant, substantial, vast** | **marginal, minor, modest, slight, small** | **noticeable, obvious, visible** | **actual, definite, distinct, genuine, real, tangible** | **measurable** | **dramatic, rapid, sharp** | **gradual, incremental, steady** | **constant, continued, continuing, continuous, progressive, sustained** | **long-term** | **short-term** | **temporary** | **further** | **all-round, general, overall** | **important, notable** | **much-needed, necessary** | **welcome** | **useful** | **positive** | **recent** | **immediate** | **desired, expected** | **suggested** *If suggested improvements are not carried out, we have the right to suspend the insurance cover.* | **intended** | **possible, potential** | **underlying** *Their policies have resulted in a definite underlying improvement in the economy.* | **moral** | **economic, educational, environmental, health, safety, social** | **organizational, productivity, quality, service, technical, technological** | **agricultural, land** | **ground, home, housing, rail, road, school** *The club will spend £300 000 on ground improvements.*
- VERB + IMPROVEMENT **be, constitute, reflect, represent** *The country's economic record since 1945 represents an improvement on the period between the world wars.* | **show** *Exports have showed some improvement.* | **need, require** | **carry out, effect, make** *He made a steady improvement and was released within 10 days of admission.* | **lead to, produce, provide, result in, yield** *The drug produced an improvement in all but one case.* | **achieve, bring (about), secure** *steps taken to secure improvement in pupils' attendance* | **seek** | **call for, demand** | **recommend, suggest** | **encourage, promote** | **announce, report** *Wholesalers reported an improvement in sales for the third quarter.* | **notice, see, witness** *With this exercise plan you will notice an enormous improvement in your stamina.* | **find** *No improvement was found after the tenth day of treatment.*
- IMPROVEMENT + VERB **take place** | **result from sth**
- IMPROVEMENT + NOUN **programme, scheme** *The proposed road improvement scheme involves bypassing several villages.* | **work** *The improvement work to houses will create jobs.*
- PREP. **~ in** *The new factory brought a huge improvement in working conditions.* **~ on/over/upon** *These results are a distinct improvement on last year's.* **~ to** *Several improvements were made to the design during its production run.*
- PHRASES **an area for/of improvement** *The new assessment system could pinpoint areas for improvement within the company.* **room/scope for improvement** *Their average marks have risen, but there is still room for improvement.* **signs of improvement** *The economy is showing signs of improvement.*

improvisation *noun*

- ADJ. **spontaneous** *Most of their music was spontaneous improvisation.* | **dramatic, musical** | **jazz** | **piano**

improvise *verb*

- ADV. **hastily** *We hastily improvised a screen out of an old blanket.*
- VERB + IMPROVISE **have to** *There isn't much equipment. We're going to have to improvise.*

impulse *noun*

1 sudden strong wish

- ADJ. **strong** | **irresistible** | **first, original** *My first impulse was to run away.* | **sudden** | **basic** | **instinctual, natural** | **repressed** | **conflicting, contradictory, contrary** | **aggressive, violent** | **creative** | **sexual**
- VERB + IMPULSE **feel, have** *She felt a sudden impulse to look to her left.* | **be subject to** *We are all subject to aggressive impulses.* | **be driven by** | **check, control, deny, fight (back/down), resist, restrain, stifle, suppress** *He fought down an impulse to scream.* | **give in to, obey, yield to** *She gave in to an impulse and took the money.* | **act on** *Acting on impulse, he picked up the keys and slipped them into his pocket.* | **buy sth on** *Some people will buy a puppy on impulse without any idea of what is involved.*

- IMPULSE + VERB **arise** *Impulses that are repeatedly denied can arise in other forms.*
- IMPULSE + NOUN **buy, purchase** *The little black designer dress had been an impulse buy.* | **buying** | **buyer**
- PREP. **on (an) ~** *On an impulse, I went into the shop and bought a box of chocolates.* | **~ towards** *basic impulses towards things such as food and drink*

2 movement of energy

- ADJ. **electrical, nerve/nervous**
- VERB + IMPULSE **transmit** *Nerve impulses are transmitted to the brain.* | **convert sth into, transform sth into** *Radio waves are converted into electrical impulses.*

3 sth that causes sb/sth to do sth

- ADJ. **positive** | **political, social**
- IMPULSE + VERB **lead (sb/sth) to sth, prompt (sb/sth to sth)** *the impulse that prompted economic change*
- PREP. **~ behind** *the impulse behind a concept* **~ for** *the impulse for social reform* **~ toward** *the political impulses towards joining a trade union*

inability *noun*

- ADJ. **apparent** | **complete, total** | **chronic** *the government's chronic inability to face facts* | **physical**
- VERB + INABILITY **be/feel frustrated by** *She felt increasingly frustrated by her inability to demonstrate her ideas.* | **overcome** *He has to overcome his inability to assert himself.*

inaccessible *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem** *The mouth of the river proved inaccessible.* | **become** | **remain** | **make sth, render sth** *A high wall made the building inaccessible.*
- ADV. **very** | **completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly** | **almost, practically, virtually** | **largely** | **rather** | **effectively** | **otherwise**
- PREP. **by** *areas inaccessible by road* **to** *The hall is inaccessible to wheelchair users.*

inaccuracy *noun*

- ADJ. **major, material, significant** | **factual, historical**
- VERB + INACCURACY **contain** | **be fraught with, be full of** *Reference works on that country, when available, are full of inaccuracies.* | **correct** *I am writing to correct factual inaccuracies contained in your article of June 3rd.*
- PREP. **~ in** *inaccuracies in reporting*

inaccurate *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove** | **become**
- ADV. **extremely, grossly, hopelessly, seriously, terribly, very, wildly** *a wildly inaccurate account of events* | **quite, totally, wholly** | **a bit, rather, slightly, somewhat** *These figures are somewhat inaccurate.* | **notoriously** *Maps of the region are notoriously inaccurate.* | **historically** *It was good drama, but historically inaccurate.*

inactive *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **totally** *He had been totally inactive for two weeks.* | **fairly, relatively** | **physically, sexually** | **economically, politically**

inactivity *noun*

- ADJ. **relative** *Her most brilliant work was done during several months of relative inactivity.* | **economic, political** | **enforced** *It was good to be home again after the enforced inactivity of the hospital bed.*
- PHRASES **a period of inactivity** *The job entailed long periods of inactivity.*

inadequacy *noun*

- ADJ. **total** | **fundamental** | **glaring, obvious** | **personal** | **sexual, social** | **theoretical**
- VERB + INADEQUACY **demonstrate, expose, highlight, point out/to, reveal, show (up)** *She rightly points to the inadequacy of the argument.* ◇ *The test soon revealed several inadequacies in the equipment.* | **realize, recognize, see** *I now see the inadequacy of the explanation.* | **admit to** *His advice was to be defensive and never admit to any inadequacy.* | **cover up, disguise, hide** *They possibly falsified the results to cover up the inadequacies of their theory.* | **overcome** *Clear legislative reform is needed to overcome the inadequacies of the current situation.*
- INADEQUACY + VERB **arise from sth, stem from sth**
- PREP. **~ in** *inadequacies in educational facilities*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of inadequacy**

inadequate *adj.*

1 not good enough

- VERBS **appear, be, look, prove, seem** | **become** | **consider sth, find sth, judge sth, regard sth as, think sth** *These precautions have been judged inadequate.*
- ADV. **deeply, grossly, hopelessly, ludicrously, pitifully, ridiculously, seriously, very, woefully** *His wages were pitifully inadequate for the needs of his growing family.* | **completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly, wholly** | **increasingly** | **somewhat** | **clearly, manifestly, obviously, patently, plainly** | **curiously** | **notoriously**
- PREP. **at** *People, despite their intelligence, are curiously inadequate at communicating with horses.* **for** *This computer is clearly inadequate for my needs.*

2 not able to deal with a situation

- VERBS **be, feel, seem** *I felt dreadfully inadequate.*
- ADV. **deeply, dreadfully, hopelessly, very** | **quite, totally, wholly** | **rather** | **generally** | **personally, professionally, sexually** *The staff at the consulate seemed not only insensitive, but professionally inadequate.*
- PREP. **to** *She was inadequate to the demands that were made on her.*

inadvisable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **make sth** *Her condition made surgery inadvisable.* | **feel sth, think sth**
- ADV. **highly** *It was thought highly inadvisable for young women to go there alone.*

inappropriate *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **make sth** *The size of the machines makes them inappropriate for domestic use.* | **consider sth, feel sth, judge sth, regard sth as, see sth as, think sth** *It was felt inappropriate by some that such a serious occasion should include dancing.*
- ADV. **highly, particularly, singularly, very** *This treatment was singularly inappropriate in her case.* | **completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly, wholly** | **increasingly** | **somewhat** | **clearly** | **embarrassingly, grotesquely** | **culturally**
- PREP. **for** *Your bright red coat would be quite inappropriate for a funeral.* **to** *The existing library is totally inappropriate to our needs.*

inattention *noun*

- ADJ. **momentary**
- PREP. **~ to** *He was dismissed for inattention to his duty.*
- PHRASES **a moment of inattention** *One moment of inattention when driving could be fatal.*

inaudible *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become**

- ADV. **quite, totally | almost, practically, virtually** *His voice was almost inaudible.* | **largely**
- PREP. **to** *The sound is inaudible to the human ear.*

inaugurate *verb*

- ADV. **formally, officially** *The assembly was formally inaugurated on December 13.*

inauguration *noun*

- ADJ. **formal | presidential**
- VERB + INAUGURATION **attend | mark** *a ceremony to mark the inauguration of the president's third term in office*
- INAUGURATION + VERB **be held, take place**
- INAUGURATION + NOUN **ceremony | speech**

incapable *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, prove, seem | become | make sb, render sb** *The wine had made him incapable of thinking clearly.* | **adjudge sb, deem sb**
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, totally, utterly, wholly | almost | largely | clearly | inherently | constitutionally, temperamentally** *She was constitutionally incapable of bad temper.* | **physically** *He was apparently physically incapable of lowering his voice.* | **mentally** *This type of arrangement remains valid even if you become mentally incapable.*
- PREP. **of** *Computers are incapable of creative thought.*

incapacitate *verb* **be incapacitated**

- ADV. **severely | totally** *By this time my father was totally incapacitated by his illness.* | **temporarily | mentally, physically**

incarnation *noun*

- ADJ. **current, latest, modern, new, present** *(figurative) In its new incarnation, the car has a more rounded body shape.* | **last | earlier, previous | future**
- PREP. **~as** *her previous incarnation as a Norse explorer*

incense *noun*

- ADJ. **fragrant**
- VERB + INCENSE **burn**
- INCENSE + NOUN **stick | burner**
- PHRASES **a scent/smell of incense**

incentive *noun*

- ADJ. **big, considerable, great, massive | powerful, strong | adequate, sufficient | main, major | added, additional, extra, more | less | real | direct** *The most direct financial incentive to prevent rubbish is to charge people by the amount of rubbish they put out.* | **important | positive | special | commercial, economic, financial, fiscal, monetary | cash | price, tax | sales | work | government**
- VERB + INCENTIVE **act as, be** *He argues that the free supply of skilled labour will act as an incentive for employees to be more diligent.* | **have** *She had the added incentive of being within reach of the world record.* | **need | give (sb/sth), offer (sb/sth), provide (sb/sth with) | create** *The government has created tax incentives to encourage investment.* | **increase | reduce | undermine** *High taxation rates have undermined work incentives.* | **remove**
- INCENTIVE + NOUN **programme, scheme, system** *The company operates a share incentive scheme for its workers.* | **payment**
- PREP. **~to** *an incentive to investment*
- PHRASES **have every incentive** *The absence of penalties for anti-competitive behaviour means that firms have every incentive to engage in price-fixing.* **a lack of incentive** *Low levels of profitability mean there is a lack of incentive to undertake new investment.*

incest *noun*

- ADJ. **brother-sister, father-daughter, etc.**
- VERB + INCEST **criminalize, forbid, prohibit** *taboos forbidding incest*
- INCEST + NOUN **survivor, victim | taboo**
- PREP. **~between** *incest between brother and sister*

⇨ Note at CRIME (for more verbs)

inch *noun*

⇨ Note at MEASURE

incidence *noun*

- ADJ. **great, high** *There is a greater incidence of cancer in the families of radiation workers.* | **low | increased/increasing, rising | actual | overall | annual | recorded** *the highest recorded incidence of air pollution*
- VERB + INCIDENCE **have, show** *The country had the lowest incidence of Aids cases proportional to its population.* ◇ *The medical histories of our patients show a high incidence of past diseases.* | **increase, raise | reduce | find** *They found an increased incidence of childhood leukaemia in some areas.* | **measure | compare** *We compared the incidence of coronary heart disease and total mortality.* | **analyse, consider, investigate | explain** *The lack of vitamins may explain the higher incidence of heart disease.*
- INCIDENCE + VERB **increase | decrease, fall**
- INCIDENCE + NOUN **rate** *an incidence rate of 4 or 5 per 10 000 of the population*
- PREP. **~among** *The report analyses the incidence of cancer among people aged 0–24.* **~in** *The study noted an increased incidence of heart disease in women.*
- PHRASES **a decrease/an increase/a variation in the incidence of sth**

incident *noun*

- ADJ. **major, serious | little, minor, small, trivial | further** *After nearly falling twice, she managed to make it to the top of the cliff without further incident.* | **whole** *He came to regret the whole incident.* | **actual, real/real-life** *The story is based on an actual incident.* | **alleged | reported | recorded | latest, recent | past | bad, horrific, horrifying, nasty, terrible, ugly, unpleasant, unsavoury** *some of the worst incidents of urban violence* | **violent | fatal, tragic | dramatic | controversial | famous | regrettable, unfortunate | embarrassing | bizarre, curious, mysterious, strange, unusual | amusing | unrelated, separate** *The police said that two men had been arrested after the match in unrelated incidents.* | **isolated** *It is feared that the attack may not have been an isolated incident.* | **scattered** *scattered incidents of violence across the country* | **domestic | international | border** *Talks between the neighbouring countries were called off following a border incident.* | **racial | diplomatic** *An error in the translation nearly caused a diplomatic incident.* | **terrorist | nuclear | bomb/bombing, shooting, stabbing | pollution | off-the-ball** *(sport) She received a serious jaw injury in an off-the-ball incident.*
- VERB + INCIDENT **cause, provoke | be responsible for** *The group is believed to have been responsible for several terrorist incidents.* | **be involved in** *The hot-headed tennis star became involved in an incident with the umpire.* | **deal with, handle** *The incident was extremely well handled.* | **avoid, prevent | regret | see, witness | recall, remember** *He recalled a similar incident 14 months earlier.* | **forget | describe, recount** *She described the incident as outrageous.* ◇ *They all laughed as he recounted the amusing incident.* | **discuss, talk about | play down** *the government's desire to play down the incident* | **report**

The pedestrian who had nearly been run over reported the incident to the police. | **investigate** | **be hurt in, be injured in, be killed in** | **pass (off) without, proceed without, take place without** *The demonstration passed without incident.*

• INCIDENT + VERB **happen, occur, take place** | **arise (from/out of sth)** *incidents arising out of an industrial dispute* | **involve sb/sth** *a minor incident involving a petrol tanker* | **cause sth, lead to sth, spark sth (off)** *The incident sparked off a riot which lasted three days.*

• INCIDENT + NOUN **room** *An incident room was set up at a police station near the site of the crash.*

• PREP. **following an/the ~** *He was asked to leave the club following an incident at a training camp.* **in an/the ~** *Three soldiers were wounded in the incident.* **over an/the ~** *She was never disciplined over the incident.* **without ~** *The patrol had covered 200 miles without incident.*

incidental *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become** | **consider sth, declare sth, deem sth** *The fact that the concert made a profit was considered incidental.*

• ADV. **completely, entirely, purely** *Any resemblance of a character in this book to a living person is purely incidental.* | **merely** *Information skills are not merely incidental to the curriculum but central to it.* | **almost** | **seemingly**

• PREP. **to** *It's just a risk incidental to the job.*

incision *noun*

• ADJ. **deep** | **small, tiny** | **abdominal, etc.** | **surgical**

• VERB + INCISION **make** *The surgeon made a small incision in the patient's cornea.*

incite *verb*

• ADV. **deliberately**

• PREP. **to** *deliberately inciting the crowd to violence*

inclination *noun*

• ADJ. **strong** | **slight** *I did not feel the slightest inclination to hurry.* | **true** | **natural, own, personal** *The king's own inclination was always towards a pro-French policy.* | **homosexual, sexual** | **artistic, political**

• VERB + INCLINATION **feel, have** | **show** | **lack** | **curb** *Hopes of advancement in the company may curb any inclination to deviate from the requirements of superiors.* | **follow** *In matters of dress she followed her personal inclinations rather than fashion.*

• PREP. **by ~** *He is a teacher by occupation but a philosopher by inclination.* | **~ for** *an inclination for war* **~ towards** *She has no inclination towards mysticism.*

• PHRASES **the time nor/or the inclination** *I have neither the time nor the inclination to play stupid games!*

incline *verb*

1 bend forward

• ADV. **slightly** *Luke inclined his head slightly in acknowledgement.* | **graciously, politely**

2 lean/slope

• ADV. **gently, steeply**

• PREP. **towards** *The land inclined gently towards the shore.*

inclined *adj.*

1 wanting to do sth

• VERBS **be, feel, seem** *I only write when I feel inclined to.* ◇ *There's time for a swim if you feel so inclined.*

• ADV. **strongly, very** | **rather** *I'm rather inclined to wait a few days before deciding.* | **favourably**

• PREP. **towards** *Advertising aims to make people aware of a product and favourably inclined towards it.*

2 tending/likely to do sth

• VERBS **appear, be, seem** | **become, grow**

• ADV. **strongly, very** | **increasingly** | **a bit, half, a little, rather, slightly** *I'm half inclined to believe you.* ◇ *She's rather inclined to become impatient.* | **naturally** | **criminally, liberally, mystically, romantically, suicidally** *The club was a notorious hang-out for the criminally inclined.*

• PREP. **to** (*formal*) *people who are naturally inclined to melancholy*

• PHRASES **that way inclined** (*informal*) *What's that? The 'Model Railway Journal'? I didn't know you were that way inclined* (= interested in model railways).

3 having a natural ability for sth

• VERBS **appear, be, seem**

• ADV. **academically, artistically, musically** *children who are academically inclined*

inclusion *noun*

• ADJ. **possible** *We welcome readers' letters for possible inclusion on this page.*

• VERB + INCLUSION **be worthy of, justify, merit, warrant** *Some words are too infrequent to be worthy of inclusion in the dictionary.* | **be eligible for, be suitable for, qualify for** *All work by current students is eligible for inclusion in the journal.* | **be unsuitable for** | **be available for** | **consider sth for, welcome sth for** | **welcome, accept** *The rebels refused to accept the inclusion of representatives of the existing regime in the negotiations.* | **prevent** *They tried to prevent the inclusion of any wording in the statement that would cause offence.*

• PREP. **for ~** *an article for inclusion in the newsletter*

• PHRASES **criteria for inclusion** *There are strict criteria for inclusion in the competition.*

inclusive *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **fully** *a fully inclusive price*

• PREP. **of** *The charge is inclusive of food.*

• PHRASES **all inclusive** *The price is all inclusive.*

income *noun*

• ADJ. **above-average, high, large** | **sufficient** | **average** *Average incomes are rising more slowly.* | **below-average, low, meagre, small** | **rising** | **additional** *They hope that the lottery will provide additional income for charities.* | **total** | **future** | **permanent, secure** | **regular, steady** | **annual, monthly, weekly** | **national** | **per capita** *the average per capita income* | **personal, private** *He has a large private income on top of what he earns as a teacher.* | **family, household** | **gross, pre-tax** | **taxable** | **after-tax, net, post-tax** | **disposable** | **real** | **earned** | **unearned** | **money** *the money incomes of individuals* | **retirement** | **capital, fee, foreign, investment**

• VERB + INCOME **have** | **receive** *She received an income for life as a result of her father's will.* | **earn, generate, provide (sb with)** *Financial assets have the advantage of earning income.* ◇ *The return on your investment can provide you with regular income.* | **boost, increase, supplement** *ways of boosting your retirement income* ◇ *She supplements her income by doing an evening job.* | **reduce** | **exceed** *For 2001, expenditure exceeded income by £10 000.* | **depend on** | **live on** *A large number of families in the area are living on below-average incomes.* | **redistribute** *They aim to redistribute income from the rich to the poor.* | **treat sth as** *Interest is treated as income for tax purposes.*

• INCOME + VERB **arise (from sth), come from sth, derive from sth** *If a person's income arises in the UK it is subject to UK income tax.* ◇ *A lot of our income comes from bank interest.* | **grow, increase, rise** | **drop, fall** | **exceed sth**

• INCOME + NOUN **bracket, group, level** *Elderly people* *often belong to a low income group.* | **distribution, redistribution** | **incomes policy** *There are internal disputes over the party's incomes policy.* | **support** *A single mother of three, she relies on income support.* | **statement** *a company's income statement* | **tax**

- PREP. **on an ~** *Many families on a low income are dependent on state support.* | **~ from** *income from tourism*
- PHRASES **the distribution/redistribution of income, a drop in income, income and expenditure** *Every company must keep control of its income and expenditure.* **income per capita/head** *Real income per head of population was at a low point five years ago.* **a source of income**

⇨ Note at PER CENT (for more verbs)
⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

incompatibility *noun*

- ADJ. **basic** | **inherent** | **mutual** *the mutual incompatibility of socialist and capitalist economic systems*
- VERB + INCOMPATIBILITY **demonstrate** *The disastrous merger demonstrated the incompatibility of the two companies.*
- PREP. **~ between** *Incompatibility between systems has been a major problem for video users.* **~ with** *Critics of the new machine point to its incompatibility with other products on the market.*
- PHRASES **grounds of incompatibility** *A divorce was sought and granted on grounds of incompatibility.*

incompatible *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, prove, seem** | **become** | **consider sth, see sth as**
- ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly** | **increasingly** | **by no means, not entirely, not necessarily** *Scepticism and trust are not necessarily incompatible.* | **largely** | **somewhat** | **apparently, seemingly** | **potentially** | **simply** | **basically, fundamentally** | **clearly** | **mutually** *The two systems are mutually incompatible.*
- PREP. **with** *This behaviour is completely incompatible with his role as a teacher.*

incompetence *noun*

- ADJ. **gross, monumental** | **sheer** | **alleged** | **economic, professional, technical** | **government, managerial, police**
- VERB + INCOMPETENCE **display** *He displayed his incompetence by turning in a report that was full of errors.* | **tolerate** *I will not tolerate your incompetence any longer!* | **accuse sb/sth of, allege** | **be dismissed for**
- PREP. **~ at/in** *incompetence in writing* **~ on the part of** *Several officers had alleged incompetence on the part of the general.*

incompetent *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be** | **adjudge sb/sth, consider sb/sth** *I know my boss considers me incompetent.*
- ADV. **grossly, hopelessly, singularly** *a grossly incompetent piece of reporting* | **completely, totally, utterly** | **managerially, socially, technically** | **mentally**
- PREP. **at** *He is utterly incompetent at his job.*

incomplete *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **remain** *Her collection remained incomplete.* | **leave sth** *The building was left incomplete.*
- ADV. **seriously, very, woefully** *Any view of Shostakovich is seriously incomplete without knowledge of these recordings.* | **somewhat** | **inevitably, necessarily** *We begin with a brief and necessarily incomplete review of UK statistics.* | **unfortunately**

incomprehensible *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **remain** | **find sth** *She found his accent virtually incomprehensible.*
- ADV. **completely, quite, totally, utterly** | **almost, nearly, virtually** | **largely** | **pretty**
- PREP. **to** *Latin verse remained completely incomprehensible to me.*

inconceivable *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem** | **become** | **find sth** *She found the idea quite inconceivable.*
- ADV. **quite, totally, utterly, wholly** | **almost, practically, virtually**
- PREP. **to** *The thought of leaving her family was inconceivable to her.*

inconclusive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove** | **remain**
- ADV. **largely** | **fairly, rather, somewhat** | **apparently** | **ultimately** | **curiously** *the curiously inconclusive finish to the symphony*

incongruous *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem** | **find sth**
- ADV. **entirely, utterly** | **doubly** | **a little, rather, somewhat** *I found the scene somewhat incongruous.*

inconsistency *noun*

- ADJ. **serious** | **glaring** | **apparent** | **internal** *Researchers have found that internal inconsistencies in hospital case notes are common.* | **logical**
- VERB + INCONSISTENCY **contain** | **be filled with** *The script is filled with logical inconsistencies.* | **lead to, result in** *The lack of a clear set of competition rules resulted in inconsistency in the awarding of prizes.* | **find, see, spot** *The program has found an inconsistency in the database files.* ◇ *She was quick to spot the inconsistencies between his two reports.* | **point out, reveal** *Commentators have pointed out the inconsistencies in the government's financial policy.* | **remove, resolve** *The amendment will remove the inconsistency between the two laws.*
- INCONSISTENCY + VERB **emerge** | **creep in, creep into sth** *Inconsistencies began to creep into his testimony.*
- PREP. **~ in** *inconsistencies in the evidence*

inconsistent *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem**
- ADV. **highly, very** | **quite, totally, wholly** | **not necessarily** | **rather, somewhat** | **apparently** | **clearly, plainly** | **internally, logically** *Her argument is internally inconsistent.* | **mutually** *The two accounts are mutually inconsistent.*
- PREP. **in** *The company is inconsistent in the way it disciplines staff.* **with** *His statement was inconsistent with other accounts of the events.*

incontinence *noun*

- ADJ. **faecal, urinary** | **stress**
- VERB + INCONTINENCE **suffer from**
- INCONTINENCE + NOUN **pad**

inconvenience *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great, serious** | **minor** | **public** *The rail strike is likely to cause considerable public inconvenience.* | **administrative**
- VERB + INCONVENIENCE **have, suffer** | **avoid** *I chose a different route to avoid the inconvenience of going through the town centre.* | **cause (sb), put sb to** *I don't want to put you to any inconvenience.* | **minimize, save (sb)** *You could have fetched me from the airport and saved*

me the inconvenience of having to take the bus! | **apologize for, regret** *This shop is closed today for staff training. We regret any inconvenience caused.*

- INCONVENIENCE + VERB **arise from sth** *inconvenience arising from errors in the timetable*
- PREP. **~ to** *Every effort will be made to minimize inconvenience to customers while work is in progress.*
- PHRASES **with a minimum of inconvenience** *The club management will try to ensure that the building work is carried out with the minimum of inconvenience to guests.*

inconvenience *verb*

- ADV. **greatly** *The general public has been greatly inconvenienced by this strike.*

inconvenient *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove | become | find sth**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, most, terribly, very** *She called at a most inconvenient time.* | **a bit, rather, somewhat | politically** *Further environmental legislation could be politically inconvenient for the government.*
- PREP. **for** *Would this afternoon be inconvenient for you?* **to** *This is a time of the evening that is inconvenient to many viewers.*

incorporate *verb*

- ADV. **fully | largely | clearly | expressly** *These conditions must be expressly incorporated into the contract of employment.* | **properly | gradually | quickly | eventually, finally | easily, readily** *These new features can easily be incorporated.* | **neatly | effectively | satisfactorily, successfully | necessarily | forcibly** *the countries which Stalin forcibly incorporated into the Soviet empire*
- PREP. **as** *In 1940 the area was incorporated as part of the city of London.* **in** *The data is now incorporated in the total figures.* **into** *We can incorporate this information into our report.* **within** *Results are incorporated within personalized medical records.*

incorrect *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove | consider sth**
- ADV. **quite, totally | clearly, obviously | simply** *That statement is simply incorrect.* | **factually, grammatically, politically, technically** *a factually incorrect statement*

increase *noun*

- ADJ. **big, considerable, dramatic, enormous, exponential, huge, large, major, marked, massive, significant, substantial, vast | moderate, modest, small | apparent | rapid, sharp | gradual, steady | fivefold, tenfold, etc. | 10%, etc. | net, overall | across-the-board** *The pay rise represented an across-the-board increase of between 9% for the highest paid and 32% for the lowest paid worker.* | **annual, monthly, etc. | dividend, fare, pay, price, rent, salary, tax, temperature, wage**
- VERB + INCREASE **experience, see, show** *Many parts of the country have experienced an increase in unemployment.* ◇ *This year saw an increase in the number of job applicants.* ◇ *Profits show a steady increase.* | **enjoy** *The country is enjoying the biggest increase in business confidence for years.* | **achieve** *We achieved a small increase in profits of £3 257.* | **bring (about), cause, lead to, result in** *Intensive farming has brought about an increase in outbreaks of food poisoning.* ◇ *The war resulted in a massive increase in government spending.* | **reflect, represent | entail, involve, mean** *The measures to improve the health service will involve an increase in government spending.* | **announce, report** *The company reported a 9.5% increase in third quarter losses.*
- INCREASE + VERB **occur**
- PREP. **on the ~** *Burglaries in the area are on the increase.* | **~ in** *There has been an increase in demand for two-bedroom flats.* **~ on/over** *The figures show a sharp increase on last year's turnover.* **~ to** *a dividend increase to 11.4pence*
- PHRASES **a rate of increase**

increase *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, dramatically, enormously, greatly, significantly, substantially | slightly | gradually | rapidly, sharply, steeply | steadily | twofold, threefold, etc.** *Sales increased almost fourfold in this period.*
- VERB + INCREASE **be expected to, be likely to** *Demand is expected to increase over the next decade.*
- PREP. **by** *The budget has increased by more than a third in the last year.* **from, in** *to increase in amount/number/price/size* **to** *Last month the reward was increased from £20 000 to £40 000.* **with** *Disability increases with age.*

incredible *adj.*

1 impossible to believe

- VERBS **be, seem, sound | find sth** *I find this quite incredible!*
- ADV. **really, truly | absolutely, quite | just, simply | almost**
- PREP. **to** *It seems incredible to me that we didn't think of this before.*

2 extremely good/extremely large

- VERBS **be, look, smell, taste | find sth**
- ADV. **really, truly | absolutely, quite | just, simply | pretty** *You're pretty incredible, Belinda.*

indebted *adj.*

1 feeling grateful to sb

- VERBS **be, feel | remain**
- ADV. **deeply, greatly, much, profoundly**
- PREP. **to** *I am deeply indebted to all the doctors and nurses who treated me.*

2 owing money to sb

- VERBS **be | remain**
- ADV. **heavily, highly, severely** *The company is heavily indebted.* ◇ *highly indebted countries*
- PREP. **to** *indebted to the bank*

indecency *noun*

- ADJ. **gross | public**
- PHRASES **an act of indecency**

⇨ Note at CRIME (for verbs)

indecent *adj.*

1 involving naked people, sex, etc.

- VERBS **be | class sth as, consider sth, regard sth as, think sth** *photographs that are classed as indecent*
- ADV. **grossly, positively** *That skirt of hers is positively indecent.*

2 not morally right

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **positively** *The rush to get hold of their father's money seemed positively indecent.* | **almost** *She started a new relationship with almost indecent haste.*

indefensible *adj.*

- VERBS **be | find sth** *I find such behaviour indefensible.*
- ADV. **totally | morally, politically** *It would be morally indefensible for her to desert her father now.*

independence *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great | complete, full, total | relative** *The council's relative independence of the government means it can negotiate its own agreements.* | **nomin-**

al | genuine, real, true | de facto *Aquitaine's de facto independence from the king of France* **| continued/continuing, growing | hard-won | local, national | academic, economic, editorial, financial, judicial, personal, political, professional**

- QUANT. **degree, measure**
- VERB + INDEPENDENCE **have** *Young people have more independence these days.* **| lack | enjoy, value** *I value my independence too much to get married.* **| display, show** *She displayed independence of judgement in choosing a career quite different from that of her parents.* **| assert** *Edward III tried to assert his independence of the regime at court.* **| achieve, gain, win** *Mexico achieved independence from Spain in 1821.* **| bring (about)** *the need to bring independence to the country ◇ a colonial crisis which brought about independence* **| declare, proclaim | ensure, maintain, preserve, retain, sustain** *The army is committed to ensuring the independence of the country.* **| give up, lose** *She doesn't want to lose her hard-won independence.* **| regain, restore | encourage, promote** *Parents should encourage independence in their children.* **| undermine** *Economic aid tends to undermine the national independence of third world countries.* **| seek | call for, demand | vote for | give sb/sth, grant sb/sth | recognize** *They have agreed to recognize the breakaway republic's independence.*
- INDEPENDENCE + VERB **come** *Independence came to the British colonial territories in Africa in the late fifties and early sixties.*
- INDEPENDENCE + NOUN **day | celebrations | movement | struggle**
- PREP. **at ~** *Namibia became a full member of the UN at independence.* **| ~ from** *independence from Spain* **~ of** *the church's independence of the state ◇ independence of mind*
- PHRASES **a declaration of independence, a lack of independence, the loss of independence, a sign/symbol of independence** *The car became a symbol of independence.* **the struggle for independence, a war of independence** *the American War of Independence*

independent *adj.*

1 not needing other people

- VERBS **be, feel, seem | become | remain | make sb** *Travelling in Asia has made her a lot more independent.*
- ADV. **fiercely, sturdily, very** *Many disabled people are fiercely independent.* **| completely | fairly, pretty, quite | economically, financially**
- PREP. **of** *By the age of eighteen he was completely independent of his parents.*

2 not influenced or controlled by anyone else

- VERBS **be | become | remain | make sth | declare sth** *In 1961 the country was declared independent.*
- ADV. **completely, entirely, fully, genuinely, quite, totally, truly, wholly | almost, fairly, largely, virtually | increasingly | effectively, essentially** *The country has pursued an effectively independent line on military issues.* **| nominally, supposedly | newly** *newly independent countries* **| politically**
- PREP. **from** *The country became fully independent from France in 1960.* **of** *an organization that is independent of the government*

indestructible *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem**
- ADV. **completely | almost, virtually** *Their shells are so hard they are virtually indestructible.* **| seemingly**

index *noun*

1 list of names/topics in a book

- ADJ. **comprehensive, complete | detailed | general | alphabetical**
- VERB + INDEX **appear in, be in** *Although the book was devoted to cancer, the word 'cancer' did not even appear in the index.* **| consult, look (sth up) in** *Why don't you look up her name in the index?* **| compile**
- INDEX + VERB **give sth, list sth** *The index only gives the main towns.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Is there any reference to it in the index?* **| ~ to** *It's a general index to the whole work.*

2 ordered record of books/files

- ADJ. **subject, title | card | computer, computerized**
- VERB + INDEX **have, keep** *We keep a card index of all the titles on the shelves.* **| compile, create | consult, look (sth up) in, search** *Look up 'The Waste Land' in the index. ◇ Search the index to find the address of the data file.*
- INDEX + NOUN **card**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *cards in a card index*

3 system showing the level of sth; measure of sth

- ADJ. **good, reliable, sensitive | high | low | weighted | official | general** *a general index calculated from death and population information* **| world** *The world index fell 3.1%.* **| cost-of-living, market, retail price | futures, share, stock | Dow Jones, FT-SE 100, etc.**
- VERB + INDEX **have** *Those who lived in the inner cities had a high index of deprivation.* **| use (sth as)** *The test results were used as an index of language proficiency.* **| compile, construct, create | calculate, compute** *The index was calculated with a computer.* **| publish** *The retail price index is published monthly.* **| drag, drive, push, take** *A wave of frenzied buying pushed the index up 136.2 points.*
- INDEX + VERB **measure sth** *an index designed to measure monthly changes in the volume of industrial production* **| be based on sth** *an index based on incidents causing a loss of production* **| be linked to sth** *The increase in our standard rates will be linked to the retail price index.* **| cover sth** *an index covering some 1 700 companies* **| open | close, end** *The hundred shares index closed down 15 points.*
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *dividends on shares in the index* **on an/the ~** *people dealing in options on the FT-SE 100 index*
- PHRASES **a drop/fall in an index** *a 28.2 point drop in the FT-SE 100 index* **changes in an index, an increase in an index, as measured by an index** *Inflation, as measured by the retail price index, is expected to drop.*

⇨ Note at PER CENT (for more verbs)

indicate *verb*

- ADV. **clearly | not necessarily** *Expense does not necessarily indicate worth.*
- VERB + INDICATE **appear to, seem to** *These facts would seem to indicate that the family was wealthy.* **| be used to** *Symbols are used to indicate the facilities available at each hotel.*
- PREP. **to** *These figures indicate to me that the company is in serious trouble.*

indication *noun*

- ADJ. **firm, good, great, strong | accurate, reliable, true | clear, definite, sure | important | useful, valuable | sufficient | approximate, broad, fair, general, reasonable, rough | simple | positive | initial, preliminary | outward, visual, visible** *Rising interest rates were an outward indication of the change in government attitude to economic controls. ◇ Some car alarms have no visual indication that they are in operation.*
- VERB + INDICATION **be, constitute, serve as** *The popularity of the government building project served as an indication of public support.* **| have** *A government spokesperson said they had no indication who was responsible for the attack.* **| give (sb), provide (sb with)** *His early successes gave some indication of his ability.* **| get, receive | find, see** *The researchers say they can find no indication that television has harmful physical effects on children.* |

regard sth as, see sth as, take sth as *The comments made by management may be taken as an indication of how they felt about their workers.*
• INDICATION + VERB **show sth, suggest sth** *Indications show that at least 2 000 more businesses will go bankrupt before the end of the year.*
• PREP. **amid ~s of** *Amid indications of growing disorder in the capital, the president is to make a speech on television tonight.* | **~ as to** *He gave us no indication as to what was the matter.* **~ to** *This is an indication to drivers who break the law that they will be punished*
• PHRASES **(all) the indications are that ...** *All the indications are that she will make a full recovery.* **there is every indication that ...** *There's every indication that the operation has been a success.*

indicative *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **consider sth, interpret sth as, regard sth as, see sth as, take sth as** *The rise in unemployment is seen as indicative of a new economic recession.*
• ADV. **clearly** | **(not) necessarily** *Recurrent dreams are not necessarily indicative of psychological problems.*
• PREP. **of**

indicator *noun*

1 sign showing what sth is like
• ADJ. **good, reliable, sure** | **poor, unreliable** *Level of education is actually quite a poor indicator of ability to run a business well.* | **sensitive** | **crude, partial, rough** | **simple** | **key, leading, main, major** | **important, significant** | **useful, valuable** | **economic, financial, performance, social, socio-economic** *performance indicators such as language and numeracy skills*
• VERB + INDICATOR **be, serve as** *These warts can serve as an indicator of other infections.* | **provide (sb with)** | **regard sth as, see sth as, take sth as** *Gold prices are often seen as an indicator of inflation.* | **use (sth as)** | **develop** *It is still difficult to develop indicators for many concepts used in social science.*
• INDICATOR + VERB **show sth, suggest sth** *Economic indicators suggest that a recovery is on the way.*
• PREP. **~ for** *an indicator for the presence of minerals*

indictment *noun*

1 sign that sth is bad/wrong
• ADJ. **powerful** | **damning, scathing, terrible** *Her speech was a scathing indictment of the government's record on crime.* | **sad**
2 accusing sb of a crime
• ADJ. **criminal** | **fresh**
• VERB + INDICTMENT **issue, bring** *A New York jury brought criminal indictments against the founder of the organization.* | **be charged on, be convicted on, be tried on** | **plead (not) guilty to**
• INDICTMENT + VERB **charge (sb/sth with sth)** *an indictment charging theft*
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *Two men were named in the indictment.* **on ~** *a trial on indictment* | **~ against** *They issued an indictment against them.* **~ for** *She was convicted on an indictment for conspiracy.*

indifference *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, supreme, total** | **a certain** | **growing** | **studied** | **apparent, feigned, pretended, seeming** | **bland, casual** | **callous, cold, cool, cruel** | **public**
• VERB + INDIFFERENCE **feel** | **express, show** *She showed total indifference to his fate.* | **affect, assume, feign, pretend** *He feigned indifference to criticism of his work.* | **regard sb/sth with** *The more recent members of staff regard the change in corporate culture with a certain indifference.* | **treat sb/sth with** | **be met with** *Constable's landscapes met with indifference when they were first exhibited.* | **be resigned to** *The president is resigned to public indifference to his latest initiative.*
• PREP. **with an ~** *Ellis spoke with a casual indifference that he did not feel.* | **~ to/towards** *his indifference towards art*
• PHRASES **an attitude of indifference** *She adopted an attitude of supreme indifference.* **a matter of indifference** *It's a matter of indifference to me whether he goes or not.*

indifferent *adj.*

1 not interested
• VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem, sound** *He appeared indifferent to her suffering.* | **become** | **remain**
• ADV. **completely, quite, totally** | **almost** *Pat sounded almost indifferent.* | **largely** | **apparently** | **coldly**
• PREP. **about** *Most staff were indiffferent about the plans.* **to** *He was coldly indifferent to other people.*
2 of low quality
• VERBS **be**
• ADV. **very** *We enjoyed the day, in spite of very indifferent weather.* | **rather** *a rather indifferent performance*
• PHRASES **good, bad and indifferent** *The festival has the usual mix of films—good, bad and indifferent.*

indigenous *adj.*

• VERBS **be**
• ADV. **truly** *examples of truly indigenous music*
• PREP. **to** *The tree is indigenous to China.*

indigestion *noun*

• ADJ. **serious, severe** | **acute, chronic** | **slight**
• VERB + INDIGESTION **get, have, suffer from** | **give sb** *Rich food always gives me indigestion.*
• INDIGESTION + NOUN **tablet**
⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

indignant *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, grow, wax** *She waxes righteously indignant if anyone tries to contradict her.* | **make sb**
• ADV. **extremely, fiercely, highly, very** *'He deserves to be thrashed,' she protested, fiercely indignant.* | **almost, mildly, quite, rather** | **justly, righteously**
• PREP. **about/over** *She became rather indignant over suggestions that she had lied.* **at** *They were quite indignant at his remarks.*

indignation *noun*

• ADJ. **considerable, great, high** *His response was one of high indignation.* | **widespread** | **public** | **moral, righteous** | **mock**
• VERB + INDIGNATION **be filled with, be full of, feel** *They were full of righteous indignation at the thought of being cheated.* | **express, show** | **blush/burn/flush with, quiver/shudder/tremble with** *His plump face flushed with indignation.* ◇ *Bertha's voice quivered with indignation.* | **arouse, cause, provoke**
• INDIGNATION + VERB **grow, rise** *Indignation grew as more nightclubs opened.* ◇ *She could feel her indignation rising.*
• PREP. **in ~** *She turned to him in indignation.* **with ~** *He refused it with some indignation.* | **~ about/at/over** *The government expressed its indignation over the way the incident had been handled.* **~ against** *public indignation against the government*

indiscretion *noun*

• ADJ. **serious** | **minor, slight, small** | **personal** | **political** | **youthful** | **dietary, sexual**

• VERB + INDISCRETION **commit** *He had committed a minor sexual indiscretion.* | **regret** *I instantly regretted my indiscretion and asked her to keep the news to herself.* | **report** *He had never forgiven her for reporting his indiscretion in front of his friends.*

indispensable *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove** | **become** | **make sb/sth** *He had soon made himself indispensable.* | **consider sb/sth**
• ADV. **absolutely** | **almost, virtually**
• PREP. **for** *Written sources are considered virtually indispensable for today's history teaching.* **in** *These drugs are almost indispensable in the fight against the disease.* **to** *skills which turned out to be indispensable to her career*

individual *noun*

• ADJ. **outstanding, talented** | **key** | **powerful** | **creative** | **average, ordinary** *Their research shows that the average individual watches around three and a half hours of television per day.* | **private** *He was carrying out his functions as a trustee in the course of his business, rather than as a private individual.* | **single** | **particular, certain** *The motives influencing a particular individual may change from time to time.* | **autonomous, independent** *His philosophy is about becoming aware of oneself as an autonomous individual.* | **isolated** *Society does not consist of isolated individuals, but people in a network of relationships.* | **unique** *She saw the artist as a unique individual, possessing a heightened awareness of reality.* | **like-minded** *a group of like-minded individuals* | **named** *The book recommends that you sign 'Yours sincerely' if you are sending the letter to a named individual.* | **qualified** *We welcome applications from suitably qualified individuals.* | **human** *We know that all human individuals are unique.*
• VERB + INDIVIDUAL **treat sb as** *The teacher should treat each pupil as an individual.*
• INDIVIDUAL + VERB **vary** *Although individuals vary widely, the bones of the average female skeleton are smaller and lighter than the male.*
• INDIVIDUAL + NOUN **level** *His writings are concerned with religious phenomena at the individual level.*
• PHRASES **any/no/one individual** *No single individual had done so much for the development of the motor vehicle.* **concern for the individual, the freedom of the individual** *the issue of the freedom of the individual versus the intervention of the state* **a group of individuals** *She had taken a group of individuals and made them into a superb team.* **the individual concerned** *It's up to the individual concerned to contact the police.* **the needs of the individual** *Each course has to be tailored to the needs of the individual.* **respect for the individual, vary from individual to individual** *Eating habits are bound to vary from individual to individual.*

individuality *noun*

• ADJ. **human**
• VERB + INDIVIDUALITY **have** *Each song has its own individuality.* | **express, reflect, show** *clothes that reflect your individuality* | **give sth** *The small items of hand-crafted furniture give individuality to the room.* | **recognize** *This book will help you recognize your individuality.* | **retain** | **lose**
• PHRASES **a feeling/sense of individuality, the suppression of individuality** *Becoming part of a team should not mean the suppression of individuality.*

inducement *noun*

• ADJ. **big, massive, powerful, strong** | **sufficient** | **extra, further** | **positive** | **cash, financial**
• VERB + INDUCEMENT **offer (sb/sth as), provide (sb/sth as)** *The higher payments were offered as an inducement.* | **receive**
• PREP. **~for** *The reduced tax is a major inducement for first-time buyers.* **~to** *an inducement to crime and violence* ◇ *inducements to employees*

indulge *verb*

• VERB + INDULGE **be able to, be free to, can**
• PREP. **in** *She was free to indulge in a little romantic daydreaming.* **with** *For a special treat indulge yourself with one of these luxury flavours of ice cream.*

indulgence *noun*

1 having whatever you want
• ADJ. **excessive** | **personal, self-** *guilty of self-indulgence* | **sexual**
• PREP. **~in** *She allowed herself only a few moments' indulgence in self-pity.*
• PHRASES **a life of indulgence**

2 sth you allow yourself
• ADJ. **expensive, private, small**
• VERB + INDULGENCE **allow yourself** *As a relief from work she allowed herself a few small indulgences.*

3 acceptance of change to the normal way of doing sth
• VERB + INDULGENCE **ask, beg, request** *He begged the audience's indulgence to read some passages from his latest book.* | **grant** (*law*), **show (sb)** *He attacked the indulgence shown to religious dissenters.*

industrial action *noun*

• ADJ. **continuing** | **unlawful**
• VERB + INDUSTRIAL ACTION **take** | **threaten** | **call for** | **vote for** | **start** | **step up** *The union is considering stepping up its industrial action.* | **suspend** | **stop** | **take part in, be/become involved in** *His research indicates an increase in the number of women involved in industrial action.* | **support**
• PREP. **~against** *The union is threatening industrial action against the company.* **~by** *industrial action by railway workers* **~in support of** *industrial action in support of demands for a ten per cent salary adjustment* **~over** *to take industrial action over pay*

industrialist *noun*

• ADJ. **leading, prominent, top** | **local** | **wealthy**

industry *noun*

• ADJ. **thriving** | **important, key, major** | **(fastest) growing** | **declining** | **modern** | **traditional** | **cottage** *Weaving and knitting are traditional cottage industries.* | **domestic, international, local, national** | **private, privatized** | **government-owned, nationalized, state-run** | **heavy** | **light** | **strategic** *strategic industries such as the extraction of oil and natural gas* | **manufacturing, service** *the shift away from manufacturing to service industry* | **labour-intensive** | **high-tech/high-technology** | **building, construction** | **engineering** | **shipbuilding** | **chemical, coal, electricity, energy, gas, mining, nuclear, oil, petrochemical** | **agricultural, fishing, food, timber** | **pharmaceutical** | **automobile, automotive, car, motor** | **computer, electronics** | **textiles** | **advertising** | **insurance** | **entertainment, film, music/record** | **catering, hospitality, hotel, leisure, tourist**
• VERB + INDUSTRY **assist, develop, encourage, help, stimulate** *The government decided to encourage industries based on biotechnology.* ◇ *government measures to stimulate new industry* | **run down** *Running down the nuclear industry will result in heavy job losses.* | **damage** *They claim that a commercial port would damage the local tourist industry.* | **cripple, destroy, ruin** | **nationalize** | **privatize** | **regulate** | **protect** *trade barriers erected to protect domestic industry* | **subsidize** *The state's timber industry is heavily subsidized.* | **interfere in/with** *The*

government has interfered in industry, with disastrous results, by attempting to alter economic trends. | **be involved in/with** *More than 140 000 people are directly involved in the industry.* | **enter, go into** *students training to enter the catering industry* ◇ *She decided to leave teaching and go into industry.*
- INDUSTRY + VERB **develop, grow up, spring up** *In the favourable economic environment, new light industries are constantly springing up.* | **boom, expand, grow** *The tourist industry is still expanding rapidly.* | **decline, shrink** | **close down, disappear** *When the railway disappeared, other industries associated with it closed down.* | **compete** | **produce sth**
- INDUSTRY + NOUN **leader** | **standard** *They hope that the disk drive will become an industry standard.*
- PREP. **in/within ~** *In the computer industry, change comes about very rapidly.*
- PHRASES **a captain of industry, commerce and industry** *The banks lend money to commerce and industry.* **regulation of (an) industry** *proposals for regulation of the water industry* **the revival of (an) industry** *the revival of the British film industry* **a sector of industry, trade and industry** *the Department of Trade and Industry*

inedible *adj.*
- VERBS **be, look** | **become** | **make sth** *These chemicals make the fruit inedible.*
- ADV. **totally** *The food was totally inedible.* | **almost**

ineffective *adj.*
- VERBS **be, prove, seem** *These policies have proved ineffective.* | **become** | **make sth, render sth** *The contract was rendered ineffective by this careless wording.*
- ADV. **highly, singularly, very** | **completely, entirely, totally, wholly** | **largely** | **pretty, rather, relatively, somewhat** | **apparently** | **politically**
- PREP. **against** *These weapons are totally ineffective against tanks.* **in** *chemicals that are very ineffective in killing weeds*

inefficiency *noun*
- ADJ. **gross** | **inherent** | **bureaucratic, economic, managerial**
- VERB + INEFFICIENCY **cause, create, lead to, make for** *Conflict between management and workers makes for inefficiency in the workplace.* | **minimize, reduce** | **overcome, root out** *We need to root out inefficiencies in the production process.*
- INEFFICIENCY + VERB **arise** *This type of inefficiency arises because workers and management are ill-equipped.*

inefficient *adj.*
- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **extremely, grossly, highly, hopelessly, terribly, very** | **quite, rather, relatively, somewhat** | **generally** | **potentially** | **inherently** | **notoriously** | **economically** *an economically inefficient system*

ineligible *adj.*
- VERBS **be** | **become** | **make sb/sth** | **consider sb/sth, declare sb/sth, deem sb/sth** *The country had been declared ineligible for World Bank lending.*
- PREP. **for** *The new rules have made thousands more people ineligible for legal aid.*

inept *adj.*
- VERBS **be, prove** | **become**
- ADV. **very** | **quite** | **rather** | **politically, socially** *It would be politically inept to cut these training programmes now.*
- PREP. **at** *He was rather inept at word games.*

inequality *noun*
- ADJ. **considerable, great, marked, substantial** *Inequalities of income would lead to even greater inequalities in access to health care.* | **real** | **growing, increased/increasing** | **global, regional** | **class, economic, educational, gender, income, pay, racial, sex/sexual, social, socio-economic, structural**
- VERB + INEQUALITY **cause, create, lead to** *The introduction of school fees would create inequality between schools.* | **maintain, perpetuate** *Many sociologists have regarded education as central in perpetuating inequality.* | **reinforce** *Sex inequality in pay reinforces class inequality.* | **increase** | **reduce** | **remove** *They can build a more harmonious society once inequality and exploitation are removed.* | **rectify, redress** *The country has had some success in redressing racial inequalities.*
- INEQUALITY + VERB **exist** *inequalities that exist in wealth and income* | **arise from sth, be based on sth** *inequalities based on racism and social class* | **persist, remain** *Even in the age of compulsory school, inequalities have remained.* | **increase** | **decline**
- PREP. **~ between** *economic inequality between men and women* **~ in** *gender inequality in education*
- PHRASES **inequalities of opportunity/power/wealth, a pattern of inequality**

inert *adj.*
- VERBS **be, lie, remain** | **become**
- ADV. **completely** *She lay completely inert on her bed.* | **relatively** | **chemically** *chemically inert radioactive waste*

inertia *noun*
- ADJ. **sheer** | **bureaucratic, institutional, organizational, political**
- VERB + INERTIA **lapse into** *She lapsed into inertia and lay there as if asleep.* | **overcome** *The forces for change in the government are not sufficient to overcome bureaucratic inertia.*
- PREP. **out of ~** *He stayed where he was, not because he really wanted to, but out of inertia.* **through ~** *Projects were frequently abandoned through sheer inertia.*
- PHRASES **a state of inertia**

inevitability *noun*
- ADJ. **terrible, tragic** | **a certain** | **historical**
- VERB + INEVITABILITY **have** | **accept** *She was learning to accept the inevitability of death.*
- PREP. **~ about** *The tragedy had a certain inevitability about it.*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of inevitability**

inevitable *adj.*
- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem** | **become** | **make sth** *The scandal made her resignation inevitable.* | **regard sth as, see sth as** *They came to see defeat as inevitable.*
- ADV. **absolutely, quite** | **almost, virtually** | **apparently, seemingly** | **probably** | **historically, politically**
- PHRASES **bow to the inevitable** *She bowed to the inevitable* (= accepted a situation in which she had no choice) *and resigned.*

inexhaustible *adj.*
- VERBS **be, seem** *Her energy seemed inexhaustible.*
- ADV. **virtually** | **apparently, seemingly**

inexpensive *adj.*
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very** | **comparatively, fairly, quite, reasonably, relatively** *Paper is relatively inexpensive here.*

inexperience *noun*

- ADJ. **relative | youthful | political**
- VERB + INEXPERIENCE **reveal, show** *She showed her inexperience by asking lots of trivial questions.* | **be down to** *The team's defensive errors were down to* (= a result of their) *inexperience.* | **put sth down to** *He put his mistakes down to* (= believed they were caused by his) *inexperience.*
- INEXPERIENCE + VERB **show** *Her inexperience in politics did not show as she debated with the other candidates.*
- PREP. **because of/from/through ~** *They made mistakes through inexperience.* | **~ in** *inexperience in teaching*

inexperienced *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem**
- ADV. **hopelessly, very | totally** *He was unqualified and totally inexperienced.* | **relatively** *She was still a relatively inexperienced pilot.* | **politically, sexually**
- PREP. **in** *She was inexperienced in teaching art.* **with** *men who are inexperienced with children*
- PHRASES **young and inexperienced**

inexplicable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | remain | find sth**
- ADV. **completely, quite, totally** *Their actions are completely inexplicable.* | **apparently | otherwise** *This theory makes sense of an otherwise inexplicable phenomenon.*

infancy *noun*

- ADJ. **early** *The vaccination is given in early infancy.*
- VERB + INFANCY **survive (beyond)** *Their first child did not survive infancy.* | **die in** *She died in infancy.*
- PREP. **during/in ~** *Deaths during infancy have fallen dramatically in the last hundred years.* ◇ *(figurative) The new company is still in its infancy.* **from ~** *from infancy to late childhood* **since (sb's) ~** *Since her infancy she has been a healthy baby.* **throughout (sb's) ~** *He was ill many times throughout his infancy.*

infant *noun*

- ADJ. **young** *He is studying hearing in very young infants.* | **newborn | unborn | stillborn | pre-term, premature** *jaundice in premature infants* | **full-term | healthy, normal | low birthweight | human** *a book on intellectual development in the human infant* | **female, male | screaming, sleeping** *Marjorie looked down at the sleeping infant in her arms.*
- INFANT + NOUN **death, mortality** *countries with high infant mortality* | **child, daughter, son**
- PHRASES **sudden infant death syndrome**

infected *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become, get**
- ADV. **badly, heavily | chronically**
- PREP. **with** *patients who are infected with this virus*

infection *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy, nasty, serious, severe | mild, minor, moderate | acute | chronic | recurrent | further | primary, secondary** *If the primary infection is not treated further outbreaks may occur.* | **new** *Over 90% of all new infections occur in the developing world.* | **rare | bacterial, fungal, viral | chest, ear, etc. | respiratory, urinary, etc. | herpes, HIV, etc.**
- VERB + INFECTION **have, suffer (from)** *He's suffering from an acute infection of the lower respiratory tract.* | **be at risk from/of, be prone/susceptible/vulnerable to** *Goats appear to be more susceptible to the infection than sheep.* | **be exposed to** *Vaccination is essential to protect people exposed to hepatitis B infection.* | **acquire, catch, contract, develop, get** *She's always getting chest infections.* | **pass (on), spread, transmit** *The infection is passed on through the horse feed.* | **carry** *Almost all the sheep on the farm carried the infection.* | **guard against, protect sb/sth from** *to protect the body from infection* | **avoid, prevent | combat, fight** *The virus affects the body's immune system so that it cannot fight infection.* | **fight off, kill** *Normally, white blood cells fight off and kill infections.* | **recover from | leave/make sb susceptible to, leave/make sb vulnerable to | die from/of | diagnose (sb with) | treat (sb for)**
- INFECTION + VERB **develop, occur** *an infection that occurs in swans* | **spread** *They want to prevent the infection spreading to other parts of the body.* | **cause sth, result in sth** *Heavy lung infections may result in pneumonia.*
- PREP. **in ~** *In acute infections of the urinary tract the patient may suffer severe pain.* | **~ by** *infection of people by the virus* **~ from** *infection from sewage water* **~ through** *infection through unsafe sex* **~ with** *infection with bacteria*
- PHRASES **a cause of infection, the onset of infection** *The drug must be taken from the onset of the infection.* **resistance to infection** *Taking vitamin C builds up your resistance to infection.* **a risk of infection, a site of infection** *(medical) The urethra was the primary site of infection* **a source of infection** *We are trying to trace the source of infection.* **the spread of infection**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

infectious *adj.*

- VERBS **be, remain**
- ADV. **highly, very | potentially**

infer *verb*

- ADV. **reasonably**
- VERB + INFER **can/could | be possible to | be difficult to, be hard to** *It is difficult to infer anything from such scanty evidence.* | **be reasonable to | be wrong to**
- PREP. **from** *From this study we can reasonably infer that this behaviour is inherited.*

inference *noun*

- ADJ. **fair, logical, reasonable | obvious**
- VERB + INFERENCE **draw, make**
- INFERENCE + VERB **be based on sth** *inferences based on their answers to a number of set questions*
- PREP. **~ about** *In the absence of detailed documentary evidence, we can only make inferences about Minoan religion.* **~ from** *The value of data depends on our skill in drawing inferences from it.*

inferior *noun*

- ADJ. **intellectual, social**
- VERB + INFERIOR **consider sb** *She considered everyone her intellectual inferior.*

inferior *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem** *Her obvious popularity made me feel inferior.* | **consider sb/sth, regard sb/sth as, see sb/sth as** *Women are often regarded as inferior.*
- ADV. **decidedly, distinctly, greatly, markedly, significantly, vastly, very | slightly, somewhat | demonstrably | instrinsically | intellectually, morally, socially, technically**
- PREP. **in** *These later paintings are slightly inferior in value.* **to** *His later work was vastly inferior to his early work.*

inferiority *noun*

- ADJ. **moral, racial, social** *the myth of racial inferiority* | **numerical** *The invading force, conscious of their numerical inferiority at sea, decided on an airborne attack.*

- VERB + INFERIORITY **accept**
- INFERIORITY + NOUN **complex** *He had an inferiority complex about his looks.*
- PREP. **~to** *She accepted her inferiority to her rivals.*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of inferiority, a position of inferiority, a sign of inferiority** *Using a false accent over the phone is a sign of inferiority.*

infertility *noun*

- ADJ. **female, male**
- VERB + INFERTILITY **cause, lead to | treat**
- INFERTILITY + NOUN **clinic, treatment**

infested *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **badly, heavily** *The building was heavily infested with cockroaches.*
- PREP. **with**

infiltration *noun*

- ADJ. **large-scale | communist, right-wing, etc.**
- VERB + INFILTRATION **reduce | prevent**
- PREP. **~by** *The police tried to prevent infiltration by drug traffickers.* **~into** *the infiltration of rain into the soil*

infinite *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **almost, practically, virtually** *an almost infinite variety of colours* **| apparently | potentially**

infinitive *noun*

- ADJ. **bare** *Modal verbs generally take the bare infinitive.* **| perfect** *You use 'have' to form the perfect infinitive of a verb.* **| passive | split** *The use of the split infinitive is now generally acceptable.*
- VERB + INFINITIVE **form | take | split**

infinity *noun*

1 endless space/time

- VERB + INFINITY **extend into/to, stretch into/to** *Theoretically, a line can extend into infinity.*
- PREP. **at ~** *Parallel lines meet at infinity.* **into ~** *In this weather the cliff face was a foggy drop into infinity.*

2 number larger than any other

- VERB + INFINITY **approach, tend to/towards** *As x approaches infinity y approaches zero.*
- PREP. **at ~** *The usual convention is to choose the reference point at infinity.*

infirm *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **mentally, physically**

infirmity *noun*

- ADJ. **mental, physical | increasing**
- PHRASES **age and infirmity** (*literary*) *those incapable of supporting themselves by reason of age and infirmity*

inflamed *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become, get**
- ADV. **highly, severely, very** *Her joints are severely inflamed.* **| further | acutely | chronically**

inflammable *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly, very** *These gases are highly inflammable.*

inflammation *noun*

- ADJ. **painful, severe | mild | acute, chronic | colonic, intestinal, etc.**
- VERB + INFLAMMATION **reduce** *Steroids often help reduce the inflammation and itching in the skin.*
- PREP. **~of** *inflammation of the stomach*
- PHRASES **signs of inflammation**

inflate *verb*

- ADV. **fully | partially**
- PREP. **with** *The balloon was kept fully inflated with hydrogen.*

inflated *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **greatly, grossly, hugely, vastly | artificially, falsely** *The prices of meals are often artificially inflated.*

inflation *noun*

- ADJ. **high | low, moderate | zero | galloping, raging, rampant, rising, runaway, soaring, spiralling, uncontrollable | double-digit** (= 10 per cent or more) **| consumer-price, price, wage | domestic**
- VERB + INFLATION **cause | fuel, push up, raise | beat, bring down/under control, check, combat, control, curb, cut, fight, get down/under control, keep down, keep in check, keep under control, reduce** *policies to beat inflation ◇ It is vital that inflation is kept in check.* **| keep pace with** *Wages are not keeping pace with inflation.*
- INFLATION + VERB **be up | be down** *Inflation is down to its lowest level in three years.* **| exceed sth, reach sth** *Inflation reached a monthly rate of 5%.* **| average sth, be at sth, run at sth, stand at sth** *Inflation is running at 4%.* **| edge up, go up, increase, rise | fall, go down, slow** *Inflation has slowed to 7%.* **| erode sth** *savings eroded by inflation*
- INFLATION + NOUN **figures, rate** *an inflation rate of 2%* **| forecast, target**
- PHRASES **the battle/fight against inflation, a drop/fall in inflation, an increase/a rise in inflation** *an increase in inflation to 3.5%* **a rate of inflation**

inflexible *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem** *The rules seemed arbitrary and inflexible.* **| become | remain**
- ADV. **highly, very | completely, totally** *The seven-year period is not totally inflexible.* **| rather, relatively, somewhat** *She's a good teacher, but she can be rather inflexible.*

inflict *verb*

- ADV. **deliberately** *When someone deliberately inflicts damage, it is a matter for the police.* **| maliciously, negligently** (*both law*) *He was charged with maliciously inflicting grievous bodily harm.*
- PREP. **on/upon** *They inflicted a humiliating defeat on their rivals.*

influence *noun*

1 effect sb/sth has; power to control sb/sth

- ADJ. **big, considerable, enormous, great, significant | growing | chief, dominant, major, overwhelming | powerful, profound, strong** *He had a profound influence on modern poets.* **| important | crucial, decisive | undue** (*law*) *The court found that the bank exerted undue influence over Mrs Black in getting her to sign the contract.* **| beneficial, positive | adverse, corrupting, destructive, disruptive, evil, negative | stabilizing, steadying | calming, restraining | civilizing | direct | pervasive, wide | external, outside** *The religious community wished* *to be independent of outside influence.* | **foreign** | **cultural, economic, genetic, political**

• VERB + INFLUENCE **have** | **give sb** *Her wealth gave her influence over affairs of state.* | **exercise, exert, use, wield** *Can you use your influence with the director to get me a part in the film?* ◇ *Drug cartels wielded enormous influence in the city.* | **extend** *The unions have been able to extend their influence over all industries.* | **be under** *The court was told that he was under the influence of alcohol when he committed the offence.* | **come/fall under** *She came under the influence of Sartre at this period.* | **be independent of** | **show** *Spanish architecture shows Moorish influence.* | **attribute sth to** *Much of his writing can be attributed to the influence of Freud.*

• INFLUENCE + VERB **extend** *Their influence extended as far as China.*

• PREP. **under the ~** *The town grew under the influence of colonialism.* | **~ from** *There was no influence from outside.* **~ in** *She has a certain amount of influence in the way things are organized.* **~ on/upon** *They were a major influence upon the development of the sport.* **~ over** *I have absolutely no influence over him.* **~ with** *Queen Isabella was urged to use her influence with the French monarch.*

• PHRASES **a sphere of influence** *Rome's sphere of influence extended across Europe, North Africa and the Middle East.* **bring your influence to bear on sb/sth** *The king tried to bring his influence to bear on* (= tried to influence) *the parliament.* **under the influence (of alcohol/drink)** *He was arrested for driving under the influence.*

2 sb/sth that affects the way sb behaves/thinks

• ADJ. **big, considerable, great, significant** | **dominant, major, overwhelming** | **powerful, profound, strong** | **important** | **early** *Who were your early influences* (= influences at the start of your career)*?* | **formative** *The massive intellect of his mother had been a formative influence from his earliest years.* | **diverse** *He is a writer of Indian descent and draws upon diverse cultural influences.* | **outside** *Parents often seek to shelter their children from outside influences* | **good** | **adverse, bad, corrupting, destructive, disruptive, harmful, negative** | **stabilizing, steadying** | **calming, restraining** | **civilizing** | **environmental, genetic** | **artistic, cultural, musical**

• VERB + INFLUENCE **be, represent** *The legacy of Ancient Rome represented the overwhelming influence on Romanesque architecture.* | **have** *The band had many influences.* | **be exposed to** *a study of children exposed to different cultural influences* | **draw from/on/upon**

• INFLUENCE + VERB **be at work** *There were a number of influences at work in Gaudi's architecture.*

• PREP. **~ on** *She's by far the biggest influence on my writing.*

influence *verb*

• ADV. **considerably, deeply, enormously, greatly, heavily, powerfully, profoundly, strongly** *This book influenced her profoundly.* | **increasingly** | **largely, mainly, primarily** | **partly, slightly** | **directly, indirectly** *Pressure from industry bosses has directly influenced government policy.* | **clearly, obviously, undoubtedly** | **actively** | **critically, crucially, decisively, significantly** | **inevitably** | **positively** *actions that positively influence health* | **adversely** | **unduly** *Try to be aware of external factors which may unduly influence your judgement.*

• VERB + INFLUENCE **seem to** | **attempt to, seek to, try to** *seeking to influence university appointments*

• PREP. **in** *Her parents tried to influence her in her choice of university.*

• PHRASES **be easily/readily influenced** *He was naive and easily influenced by his friends.*

influential *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove** | **become**

• ADV. **deeply, enormously, especially, extraordinarily, extremely, highly, hugely, immensely, particularly, really, very** *This was a highly influential work.* ◇ *As a writer she was hugely influential.* | **increasingly** | **fairly, quite** | **widely** | **politically**

• PREP. **in** *The group was influential in setting up the new schools.*

influenza *noun*

• QUANT. **attack, bout**

• VERB + INFLUENZA **have, suffer from** | **catch, contract**

• INFLUENZA + NOUN **epidemic** | **virus**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

influx *noun*

• ADJ. **great, huge, large, massive, vast** | **small** | **new** | **sudden** | **continuing** | **steady** | **daily** *the daily influx of sightseers to the city*

• VERB + INFLUX **have, receive** *The hotel has received a large influx of guests.* | **prevent** *The country sealed its borders to prevent the influx of illegal immigrants.* | **cope with** *They didn't know how they were going to cope with the sudden influx of refugees.*

• PREP. **~ into/to** *a massive influx of foreign tourists into London*

inform *verb*

• ADV. **merely, simply** *I am not advising you. I am merely informing you of the situation.* | **regularly** | **immediately** | **officially** | **personally** | **kindly, politely** *Next time you decide to take some action, kindly inform me.* | **bluntly** *'I won't do it!' she informed him bluntly.* | **coldly, coolly**

• VERB + INFORM **be pleased to** | **regret to** *I regret to inform you that you have been unsuccessful in your application.* | **be required to** *The clinic is required to inform the patient about possible alternative treatments.*

• PREP. **about** *efforts to inform young people about the dangers of drugs* **of** *We will immediately inform you of any changes to the programme.*

informal *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**

• ADV. **extremely, highly, very** | **fairly, quite, rather, relatively** *Our meetings are relatively informal.* | **purely** *These meetings should remain purely informal, with no obligation on either side.* | **cheerfully, delightfully**

information *noun*

• ADJ. **accurate, correct, precise** | **false** *It is alleged that he gave false information to the tax authorities.* | **relevant, useful, valuable** | **useless** | **available** *Further information is available on request.* | **missing** | **fresh, new** | **latest, up-to-date** *the latest information on lung conditions* | **additional, extra, further** | **general** *general information about the company as a whole* | **basic** *basic information like date of birth, doctor's name and phone number* | **background** | **detailed** | **factual** | **classified, confidential, secret** | **price-sensitive** *There are legal constraints on the use of price-sensitive information.* | **bibliographic, economic, educational, financial, social, technological, etc.**

• QUANT. **item, piece** *an interesting piece of information* | **bit, fragment, nugget, scrap, snippet** *She let slip a few nuggets of information about herself.* | **mine, wealth** *This book is a mine of information on the Romans.*

• VERB + INFORMATION **contain** | **have** *Do you have the information I need?* | **retain, store** *James is able to retain an enormous amount of factual information in his head.* ◇ *database systems that process and store information* | **need, require** | **ask for, request** | **look for, seek** |

find, gain, get, obtain *information gained from research* | **collect, gather** *The police are still questioning witnesses and gathering information.* | **receive** | **dig up** *Have you dug up any further information on the suspect?* | **extract, retrieve** *the difficulties of extracting information from government officials ◇ software that retrieves information from a variety of different sources* | **access** *Portable computers are good for accessing information while travelling.* | **download** | **disclose, give, impart, make available, provide (sb with), supply (sb with)** *a court order preventing an ex-employee from disclosing confidential information* | **leak** *Someone leaked information to the press.* | **pass on** *They passed on the information about the crime to the police.* | **circulate, disseminate** *an organization that collects and disseminates information about women in science* | **exchange** *The French and British police will exchange information on wanted criminals.* | **withhold** *It was improper of the broker to withhold the information from the stock exchange.* | **cover up, suppress** | **collate, organize** | **check** | **analyse** | **present** *The way you present the information is important.* | **publish** | **act on, go on** *At the moment we've very little information to go on.*

• INFORMATION + VERB **relate to sth** *information relating to the social background of the child* | **lead to sth** *a reward for information leading to an arrest*

• INFORMATION + NOUN **service** | **bureau, desk, office, centre** | **source** | **system** | **processing**

• PREP. **according to ~** *According to information received by the police, the terrorists have left the country.* **for sb's ~** *This leaflet is produced for the information of our customers.* | **~ about/concerning/on/regarding** *financial information concerning a company*

• PHRASES **access to information, the exchange of information, the flow of information** *to improve the flow of information within the company* **a lack of information, a request for information, a source of information**

informative *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove** | **find sth**

• ADV. **extremely, highly, most, particularly, very, wonderfully** *The survey proved most informative.* | **quite**

• PREP. **about** *The book is extremely informative about life in Roman times.*

informed *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **keep** | **keep sb**

• ADV. **closely, well** *The kids are much better informed than I was at their age.* | **fully, properly** *Consumers must be fully informed of the services available.* | **adequately, reasonably** *I offer my observations as those of an interested and reasonably informed member of the general public.* | **badly, ill, poorly** | **reliably** *I am reliably informed that there are plans to close this school.* | **politically** *a politically informed public* | **theoretically** *theoretically informed research*

• PREP. **about** *They were poorly informed about their rights.* **of** *We will keep you informed of any developments.* **on** *Keep me informed on progress.*

informer *noun*

• ADJ. **police** *He later became a police informer.*

• VERB + INFORMER **become, turn** *One of the gang members had turned informer.*

• PHRASES **a network of informers**

infrequent *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become**

• ADV. **very** | **comparatively, fairly, rather, relatively** *Disturbances are relatively infrequent in British prisons.*

infringement *noun*

• ADJ. **serious** | **minor** | **clear** | **alleged** | **possible** | **copyright, patent, trademark**

• VERB + INFRINGEMENT **be, constitute** *The committee ruled that the US ban constituted an infringement of free trade.* | **commit** *sympathy for people who commit minor infringements under difficult circumstances*

• PHRASES **an infringement of copyright/the law**

ingenious *adj.*

• VERBS **be, sound** *The idea sounds quite ingenious*

• ADV. **extremely, highly, most, quite, very** *a most ingenious device*

ingenuity *noun*

• ADJ. **considerable, great** | **intellectual, technical** | **human**

• QUANT. **amount, degree** *Getting out of this mess was going to require a fair degree of ingenuity.*

• VERB + INGENUITY **have** *someone who has the ingenuity to solve problems* | **apply, use** *There is always a solution, so long as you are prepared to use your ingenuity.* | **display, show** *The children showed a lot of ingenuity.* | **admire** | **call for, need, require, take** *Considerable ingenuity is needed to minimize costs. ◇ It didn't take much ingenuity to transform the door into a table.*

• PREP. **with ~** *They adapted the available materials with great ingenuity.* | **~ in** *We have to admire his ingenuity in redesigning the machinery.*

ingrained *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**

• ADV. **deeply** *Prejudice remains deeply ingrained in many organizations.*

• PREP. **in**

ingredient *noun*

1 thing from which sth is made

• ADJ. **excellent, good** *It always pays to use the best ingredients when cooking.* | **main, major, principal** *the principal ingredient of smog* | **important, vital** | **secret, special** | **basic** | **common** | **active** *salicylic acid, the active ingredient in aspirin* | **remaining** *Add all the remaining ingredients and bring to the boil.* | **fresh** | **natural** | **artificial** | **exotic** | **dry** *Use a spoon to mix the dry ingredients.* | **raw** | **food**

• VERB + INGREDIENT **use** *I only use natural ingredients.* | **add, pour in/on/over** *Mix the marinade ingredients and pour over the goose.* | **blend, combine, mix, stir (in)** *Blend all the ingredients together in a bowl.*

• PHRASES **a list of ingredients** *All food products should carry a list of ingredients on the packet.*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

2 thing/quality necessary to make sth successful

• ADJ. **crucial, essential, fundamental, important, key, vital** *Hard work is a vital ingredient for success.* | **main, major, principal** | **basic, necessary** *Forecasting is a basic ingredient of business planning.* | **right** *The little town has all the right ingredients for a murder mystery.* | **magic, secret, special** | **added/additional, extra** | **missing**

• VERB + INGREDIENT **have** *The Australian team had the added ingredient of perseverance.* | **provide, supply** *She hopes the change of career will supply the missing ingredient in her life—excitement.*

• PREP. **~ for** *Tolerance is an essential ingredient for a happy marriage.* **~ in** *Individualism has been the secret ingredient in developing his chain of fashion stores.*

• PHRASES **an ingredient for success**

inhabitant *noun*

- ADJ. **local | old** *He is Brixham's oldest inhabitant.* | **younger | present | permanent | early** *The island's earliest inhabitants came from India.* | **original | indigenous, native | rural, village | human**
- VERB + INHABITANT **have** *London has over seven million inhabitants.*
- INHABITANT + VERB **live** *77% of the inhabitants lived in the countryside.*
- PREP. **of/with ... ~** *towns of about 10 000 inhabitants*

inhale *verb*

- ADV. **deeply | sharply** *Janet inhaled sharply when she saw him.* | **slowly**

inherit *verb*

- VERB + INHERIT **stand to** *He stood to inherit* (= was likely to inherit) *property worth £5 million.*
- PREP. **from** *She inherited some money from her mother.*
- PHRASES **be genetically inherited** *How many of these traits are genetically inherited?*

inheritance *noun*

1 money/property

- ADJ. **large | small | rightful** (*literary*) *He accused his younger brother of trying to steal his rightful inheritance.* | **shared**
- VERB + INHERITANCE **leave sb** *She left him an inheritance of £100 000.* | **come into, enter (into/on/upon)** (*literary*), **receive** *When he was 21 he came into a large inheritance.* | **claim** *When his father died, he returned to England to claim his inheritance.* | **renounce | challenge** *Jealous relatives tried to challenge her inheritance.* | **steal | restore (sb to)** *The Earl of Arundel's heir was restored to his inheritance and granted the lordship of Chirk.* | **divide** *The inheritance was divided equally among all the sons.* | **share (in)** *Under their law, all children shared in the inheritance.*
- INHERITANCE + NOUN **tax | law**
- PREP. **~by** *The system involved inheritance by the eldest son.* **~through** *inheritance through marriage*

2 sth from the past/your family

- PREP. **common** *a common inheritance of language and culture* | **cultural | genetic, physical | classical** *the influence of the classical inheritance* (= the culture of ancient Greece and Rome) *on Renaissance thought*

inhibit *verb*

- ADV. **seriously, severely, significantly** *Alcohol significantly inhibits the action of the drug.* | **completely | slightly**
- VERB + INHIBIT **tend to** *A large service sector and a small manufacturing sector would tend to inhibit growth in the economy.*
- PREP. **from** *The fear of dismissal inhibited employees from raising problems.*

inhibited *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel | become**
- ADV. **very | rather, slightly | emotionally**
- PREP. **about** *He was rather inhibited about discussing politics.* **by** *She felt very inhibited by her own lack of experience.* **from** *No one should feel inhibited from taking part in the show.*

inhibition *noun*

- VERB + INHIBITION **have (no) | show (no) | get rid of, lose, overcome** *The children, at first shy, soon lost their inhibitions.*
- PREP. **without ~** *Young children will participate in a drama class without inhibition.* | **~about** *They had no inhibitions about voicing their feelings.* **~against** *an inhibition against certain behaviour*

inhuman *adj.*

- VERBS **be | consider sth, regard sth as** *We regard their treatment of the prisoners as inhuman.*
- ADV. **positively** *What she proposes is positively inhuman!* | **totally, utterly | almost**

initial *noun*

- VERB + INITIAL **have** *The two authors have the same initials.* | **be/become known by** *She's always been known by her initials.* | **use | bear, carry** *A stone over the door bears the initials 'R.P.', which stand for 'Ralph Piggot'.* | **carve, embroider, engrave (sth with), mark sth with, monogram sth with, put, sign, stamp (sth with), write** *He carved his girlfriend's initials in the rock.* ◇ *Now that she was managing director she could put the initials MD after her name.*
- INITIAL + VERB **stand for sth**
- PREP. **~for** *When writing, if you use initials for a long name, make sure you spell out the name at least once.*

initiate *verb*

- ADV. **formally** *The enquiry was formally initiated last month.*

initiation *noun*

- INITIATION + NOUN **ceremony, rite, ritual** *an initiation ceremony for new members of the organization*
- PREP. **~into** *It was my initiation into the world of high fashion.*
- PHRASES **a ceremony/rite of initiation**

initiative *noun*

1 new plan

- ADJ. **fresh, new** *fresh initiatives to find a peaceful end to the conflict* | **pioneering** *pioneering initiatives in bioengineering* | **current, latest, recent | important, major | welcome | successful | practical | exciting | private | co-operative, joint | international, local, national, regional | government | business, diplomatic, economic, education/educational, environmental, marketing, peace, policy, political, research, training**
- QUANT. **range, series**
- VERB + INITIATIVE **undertake** *The research initiative is being undertaken by a group of environmentalists.* | **plan | develop | announce | introduce, launch, set up, start** *The government has launched a new policy initiative.* | **be/become involved in** *Ten schools have been involved in the initiative.* | **lead | approve | reject** *The peace initiative was rejected out of hand.* | **sponsor** *a peace initiative sponsored by the Organization of African Unity* | **endorse, support** *The committee endorsed an initiative by the chairman to enter discussion about a possible merger.* | **welcome** *We welcome the government's initiative to help the homeless.* | **praise | encourage**
- INITIATIVE + VERB **be aimed at sth, be designed to** *a local initiative aimed at economic regeneration* ◇ *an initiative designed to promote collaborative research* | **involve sth, relate to sth | founder** *The initiative foundered because there was no market interest in redevelopment.*
- PREP. **~against** *a new initiative against car theft* **~by** *the latest initiative by the UN Secretary General* **~for** *an initiative for peace and human rights* **~on** *the government's major new initiative on crime*

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

2 ability to decide/act independently

- ADJ. **considerable, great, real | individual, personal,**

- **private** *It is a very hierarchical company and there's little place for individual initiative.* | **entrepreneurial**
- VERB + INITIATIVE **have** *He had the initiative to ask what time the last train left.* | **display, show** | **act/work on your own, use** *He acted on his own initiative and wasn't following orders.* ◇ *Don't ask me what you should do all the time. Use your initiative!* | **lack** | **encourage, promote** | **stifle** *Raising taxes on small businesses will stifle initiative.*
- PREP. **on sb's ~** *The project was set up on the initiative of a local landowner.* | **~ in** *Some scientists show little initiative in applying their knowledge.*
- PHRASES **a lack of initiative, on your own initiative** *In an unprecedented action, the army, on its own initiative, arrested seven civilians.*

3 **the initiative** opportunity to gain an advantage

- VERB + INITIATIVE **have, hold** *After their latest setback, the rebel forces no longer hold the initiative.* | **gain, seize, take** | **regain** *In the second half, Manchester United regained the initiative.* | **lose**
- INITIATIVE + VERB **comes from sb/sth, lie with sb** *The initiative to re-open negotiations came from Moscow.*
- PREP. **~ in** *She took the initiative in asking the board to conduct an enquiry.*

injection *noun*

1 act of injecting sb

- ADJ. **intramuscular, intravenous** | **anti-tetanus/tetanus, flu, pain-killing** | **insulin, penicillin, etc.** | **booster** *Can I bring my dog in for his booster injection?* | **lethal** *In some US states execution is by lethal injection.* | **regular** | **daily**
- VERB + INJECTION **have** *He had to have a tetanus injection after injuring himself with a shovel.* | **administer, give sb, perform** *They gave her an injection to stop the pain.* | **receive** *The rats received a daily injection of the drug.*
- PREP. **by ~** *The best treatment is antibiotics, preferably by injection.* | **~ against** *an injection against whooping cough* **~ for** *injections for diabetes* **~ in/into** *an injection into the vein* **~ with** *Both groups received a second injection with the same solution.*

2 money

- ADJ. **massive, substantial** | **much-needed** | **capital, cash** *An undisclosed buyer will provide a much-needed cash injection for the fragile balance sheet.*
- VERB + INJECTION **need, require** | **give sth, provide (sth with)** | **receive**
- PREP. **~ from** *a cash injection from the Belgian state* **~ into** *an injection of cash into the economy*
- PHRASES **an injection of capital/cash/money/resources** *The company had reached the size where it needed an injection of capital.*

injunction *noun*

1 court order

- ADJ. **interim, preliminary** | **temporary** | **permanent** | **court**
- VERB + INJUNCTION **apply for, seek** | **get, obtain, take out, win** *She took out an injunction to prevent the press publishing the information.* | **grant (sb), issue** | **refuse (sb/sth)** | **vary** *an application to court to vary an injunction* | **lift** *It was agreed that the temporary injunction should be lifted.* | **uphold** | **overturn** | **ignore**
- INJUNCTION + VERB **order sth, require sth** | **ban sth, bar sth, forbid sth, prohibit sth, restrain sb/sth** *The court upheld an injunction barring protesters from blocking access to the company.* ◇ *an injunction restraining the disclosure of company secrets* | **prevent sth**
- PREP. **~ against/on** *They got an interim injunction against the union.*
- PHRASES **a breach of an injunction**

2 warning/order from sb in authority

- ADJ. **stern**
- VERB + INJUNCTION **follow, obey** *The rank and file members will follow the injunction of the party leadership.* | **ignore**

injure *verb*

1 harm yourself/sb physically

- ADV. **badly, seriously, severely** | **slightly** | **accidentally** *insurance to cover you in case one of your employees accidentally injures someone* | **deliberately**

2 damage sb's reputation, pride, etc.

- ADV. **seriously, severely** *This incident could seriously injure the company's reputation.*
- VERB + INJURE **be calculated to** (*law*), **be likely to** *espionage activity which was likely to injure the national interest*

injured *adj.*

- VERBS **be, lie** *He could have been lying injured on the moors after a fall from his horse.* | **get**
- ADV. **badly, critically, gravely, seriously, severely** *her badly injured ankle* ◇ *Several people were seriously injured.* | **slightly** *a slightly injured arm* | **fatally**

injury *noun*

- ADJ. **appalling, bad, horrendous, major, nasty, serious, severe, terrible** | **crippling** | **fatal** | **multiple** | **extensive** | **minor, slight, superficial** | **old** | **nagging, niggling, recurring** | **long-term** | **permanent** *Researchers have determined that heading a football can cause permanent injury.* | **accidental** | **internal** | **visible** | **facial, head, knee, leg, spinal, etc.** | **sports** | **industrial** | **bodily, emotional, personal** (*all law*)
- QUANT. **run, series, spate** *He missed most of the season with a spate of injuries.*
- VERB + INJURY **do yourself, incur, pick up, receive, suffer** *You'll do yourself an injury riding that old bike.* ◇ *She picked up an injury during the quarter-final.* | **risk** *The doctor said he would risk serious injury if he were to fall again.* | **cause (sb/sth), inflict** *The car turned right over, causing severe injury to the driver.* ◇ *Please help me before our dogs inflict serious injury on each other!* | **carry, have, nurse, suffer from** *She has replaced him in the team while he nurses a shoulder injury.* | **be prone to** | **feign** *He was accused of feigning injury.* | **aggravate** *He aggravated a neck injury while playing for Derby County.* | **die from/of** *The inquest heard that he died from multiple injuries.* | **avoid, escape** *Stretching exercises can help avoid injury.* ◇ *Fortunately, the passengers escaped serious injury.* | **overcome, shake off** *She has failed to shake off her stomach injury.* | **recover from** | **deal with, treat, be treated for** *Finger injuries should be dealt with immediately.* ◇ *He is still being treated for injuries to his legs.* | **go off with** *He went off* (= off the playing field) *with an injury in the second half.* | **be out with** *She is out* (= out of the competition/team) *for six weeks with a hamstring injury.* | **pull out because of/due to/with** *He pulled out with* (= decided not to compete because of) *an injury at the last moment.* | **be back after/from, come back from, return after/from** *She should be back from injury.* | **have sb back after** *India had wicketkeeper More back after injury.*
- INJURY + VERB **happen (to sb), occur** *This type of injury could happen to any player at any time.* | **result from sth** *injuries resulting from exposure to harmful substances* | **heal** | **dog sb/sth, hamper sb/sth, trouble sb** *Her athletics career has been dogged by injury.* | **sideline sb** *Both defenders have been sidelined by injury.* | **force sb to** *The knee injury forced him to give up playing at the age of 23.* | **arise from/out of** (*law*) *personal injuries arising from negligence*

• INJURY + NOUN **problems** *The team has a lot of injury problems.* | **time** *They scored two goals in injury time* (= time added at the end of a game because the game has been interrupted by injured players needing treatment).

• PREP. **because of ~** *She's unable to play because of injury.* **through ~** *He has pulled out of the match through injury.* **with ~** *She slumped to the floor with injuries to her back and neck.* **without ~** *a step-by-step guide to lifting without injury* | **~ from** *injuries from the fire* **~ to**

• PHRASES **add insult to injury** *It adds insult to injury* (= it make things worse) *that banks are allowed to increase their charges without our knowledge or consent.* **a claim for injury** (*law*) *a claim for personal injury* **a risk of injury** *There is a real risk of injury in sports such as climbing.*

injustice *noun*

• ADJ. **cruel, grave, great, gross, terrible** | **perceived** | **racial, social**

• VERB + INJUSTICE **experience, suffer** *He suffered the injustice of being punished for a crime which he did not commit.* | **regard sth as** *The trial was regarded as the greatest injustice of the post-war criminal justice system.* | **cause** (*law*), **commit, do (sb/yourself)** *She remains adamant that an injustice was done.* ◇ *We may have been doing him an injustice* (= criticizing him unfairly). *This work is good.* | **expose** *a novel that sets out to expose social injustice* | **fight against, protest against, speak out against, struggle against, work against** *She was acclaimed for speaking out against injustice.* | **correct, remedy** *people who work hard to correct society's injustices* | **stop**

• PREP. **~ by** *a terrible injustice by the police* **~ to** *It would be an injustice to the man to imprison him for life.*

• PHRASES **the injustice of it all** *She was overwhelmed by the injustice of it all* (= of the situation). **a sense of injustice, a victim of injustice**

ink *noun*

• ADJ. **wet** *Be careful. The ink is still wet.* | **coloured** | **India/Indian** | **indelible, permanent, waterproof** | **washable** | **invisible** | **printing**

• VERB + INK **use** *Most people now use ballpoints rather than ink.* | **write in** *He wrote very neatly in blue ink.* | **spill**

• INK + VERB **dry** *Allow the ink to dry.* | **smudge** *The drawback of this printer is that the ink tends to smudge.*

• INK + NOUN **blot, spot** | **pen** | **cartridge** *We need to replace the ink cartridge in the printer.* | **drawing**

• PREP. **in ~** *There were several alterations in ink.*

• PHRASES **pen and ink** *a pen and ink drawing*

inkling *noun*

• ADJ. **first** *The first inkling we had of Cliff's problem was when he didn't come to work.* | **faintest, slightest** *We didn't have the slightest inkling of the dramatic news we were about to hear.*

• VERB + INKLING **have (no)** | **get** | **give (sb)** *She never gave us any inkling of what she was planning.*

• PREP. **~ of**

inmate *noun*

• ADJ. **fellow** | **former** *a former inmate of Gloucester jail* | **young** | **male, female** | **camp, prison**

• VERB + INMATE **move, transfer** *The inmates were moved to an undisclosed location.*

• INMATE + VERB **escape**

• INMATE + NOUN **population**

• PREP. **among ~** *drug and alcohol misuse among inmates*

innocence *noun*

1 being not guilty of a crime, etc.

• ADJ. **total**

• VERB + INNOCENCE **declare, proclaim** *The prisoners passionately proclaimed their innocence in front of the jury.* | **claim** *She claimed total innocence of all charges.* | **protest** *Hayes has protested his innocence throughout the case.* | **demonstrate, establish, prove** | **be convinced of** *The solicitors were convinced of his innocence and urged him to appeal the conviction.*

• PHRASES **in all innocence** *I asked her the question in all innocence. I didn't know it was going to upset her.* **the presumption of innocence** (*law*)

2 lack of knowledge/experience

• ADJ. **childlike, wide-eyed** | **lost** | **injured** *She replied to her father's accusations in tones of injured innocence.* | **apparent** | **mock**

• VERB + INNOCENCE **lose** *He had lost the innocence of childhood.* | **retain** | **take advantage of** *She had taken advantage of his innocence.*

• PREP. **in your ~** *In his innocence he had allowed the salesman in to discuss vacuum cleaners.* **with … ~** *He grinned with apparent innocence.* | **~ about** *There is an innocence about the story.*

• PHRASES **an air of innocence** *There was a touching air of innocence about the boy.* **a look of innocence, the picture of innocence** *'You cheated!' 'I what?' asked David, the picture of innocence* (= pretending to look innocent). **a state of innocence**

innocent *adj.*

1 not guilty

• VERBS **be, plead** *He pleaded innocent to the charges.* | **believe sb, presume sb** *I had always believed her innocent.* ◇ *The accused person should always be presumed innocent until proved guilty.* | **declare sb, find sb, prove sb** *The court found her innocent of the crime.*

• ADV. **completely, entirely, totally, wholly**

• PREP. **of** *I am totally innocent of this crime.*

2 not intended/intending to cause harm

• VERBS **be, look, play, seem, sound** *Stop playing innocent and answer my questions, please.*

• ADV. **very** | **all, altogether, perfectly** *She tried to sound all innocent as she asked the question.* ◇ *The circumstance could be altogether innocent, but suspicions have been raised.* | **relatively** | **apparently, seemingly**

3 with no experience of the world

• VERBS **be, seem** *She was sixteen and sweetly innocent.*

• ADV. **remarkably, very** | **sweetly** | **strangely** *the strangely innocent world of her childhood* | **sexually**

innocuous *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, look, seem**

• ADV. **perfectly, totally, wholly** *His comment seemed perfectly innocuous.* | **fairly, pretty, quite, relatively** *The liquid looked fairly innocuous.* | **enough** *The question appeared innocuous enough, but I still did not trust her.* | **apparently, seemingly**

innovation *noun*

1 introduction of new ideas

• ADJ. **constant, continuous** | **successful** | **cultural, educational, industrial, scientific, technical, technological** | **design, policy, product** *industries where constant product innovation is a criterion for survival*

• VERB + INNOVATION **encourage, facilitate, foster, stimulate** | **stifle** *Too strict a regulatory system will stifle innovation.*

• INNOVATION + VERB **occur** *Technical innovation may occur directly in the factory.*

• INNOVATION + NOUN **process**

- PREP. **~in** *innovation in engineering*
- PHRASES **scope for innovation**

2 new idea

- ADJ. **great, major, important, significant | successful | welcome | interesting | latest, new | recent | scientific, technical, technological**
- VERB + INNOVATION **come up with** *She believed she had come up with one of the greatest innovations of modern times.* | **introduce** *Many innovations were introduced by the 1919 Act.* | **design, develop** *technological innovations designed to save energy*
- INNOVATION + VERB **occur**
- PREP. **~by** *Mathematical astronomy was the great innovation by the Greeks of the 5th century BC.* **~in** *innovations in machinery and instruments*

input *noun*

1 of time/knowledge/ideas

- ADJ. **considerable, great, important, major, significant, substantial | additional | direct | regular | local | specialist, technical**
- VERB + INPUT **have | need | get, receive | provide** *constructive criticism which provided an input into the school's decision-making process*
- PREP. **~by** *The report contains a substantial input by the police.* **~from** *input from various interested parties* **~in** *They all had some input in the discussion.* **~into** *her input into the survey* **~on** *The union would like more input on redundancies.* **~to** *an additional input to market analysis*

2 for a computer

- ADJ. **data | user | keyboard | computer**
- VERB + INPUT **require** *Early computers required input in the form of punched cards.* | **accept** *The software will accept input from a variety of other programs.* | **process** *It may be beyond the capability of the hardware to process the input.* | **be used as/for** *Decision tables can be used as computer input.* | **check** *Check your input and make sure you have selected only one item.*
- INPUT + NOUN **data | file | field, form, screen** *The cursor is positioned on the first input field of the page.* | **device** *an input device such as a keyboard*
- PREP. **~for** *inputs for the printers* **~from** *input from a mouse* **~to** *input to a computer database*
- PHRASES **input and output**

inquest *noun*

- ADJ. **full | fresh | coroner's**
- VERB + INQUEST **conduct, hold | order** *The court ordered a fresh inquest into the tragedy.* | **open | adjourn | attend**
- INQUEST + VERB **open | hear sth** *An elderly woman froze to death, an inquest heard yesterday.* | **decide sth, find sth** *An inquest found that the deceased had died of a drugs overdose.* | **return a verdict** *The inquest returned a verdict of accidental death.*
- INQUEST + NOUN **jury | verdict**
- PREP. **at a/the~** *A verdict of suicide was recorded at the inquest.* | **~into** *an inquest into the team's poor performance* **~on** *an inquest on three fishermen*

inquire, inquiry

⇨ See ENQUIRE, ENQUIRY

inquisitive *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem | become**
- ADV. **highly, very** *a highly inquisitive mind* | **naturally** *Children are naturally inquisitive.* | **incurably**
- PREP. **about** *We try not to be too inquisitive about what he's doing.*

insane *adj.*

1 mentally ill/crazy

- VERBS **be, look | become, go** *He later became insane and was confined to an asylum.* ◇ *He went almost insane when he heard that his daughter had died.* | **drive sb** *You're driving me nearly insane with that noise.* | **certify sb, declare sb** *In 1975 she was certified clinically insane and sent to a mental hospital.*
- ADV. **completely, totally | almost, nearly | a little | dangerously | clinically | criminally** *He is criminally insane, unable to stop himself attacking women.*

2 very stupid/dangerous

- VERBS **be, seem** *It seems insane to cut the budget now.*
- ADV. **quite, totally** *The whole idea is quite insane.*

insanity *noun*

- ADJ. **total**
- VERB + INSANITY **plead** *At the murder trial, he pleaded insanity.*

inscribe *verb*

- ADV. **personally** *The volume had been personally inscribed by the author.* | **suitably** *He sent me a number of his books, all suitably inscribed.*
- PREP. **on** *Her name was inscribed on the watch.* **with** *The watch was inscribed with her name.*

inscription *noun*

- ADJ. **faded | famous | dedicatory, funerary, memorial, monumental | Greek, Latin, etc.**
- VERB + INSCRIPTION **bear, carry, have** *The monument carries the inscription: 'To the fallen in two world wars'.* | **carve, engrave** *an inscription carved in the stone*
- INSCRIPTION + VERB **bear sth, read sth, record sth, say sth, show sth, tell sb sth** *The inscription bears the date 1655.* ◇ *The simple inscription on her grave reads: 'She sleeps in peace.'*

insect *noun*

- ADJ. **flying, winged | aquatic | beneficial** *Unfortunately, pesticides kill off beneficial insects as well as harmful ones.* | **harmful, poisonous | social** *Social insects, such as ants, live in large colonies.*
- QUANT. **swarm**
- INSECT + VERB **buzz** *An insect was buzzing around the room.* | **fly | crawl | swarm | bore** *Insects had bored deep into the wood.* | **bite, sting**
- INSECT + NOUN **attack** *The wood should be treated against insect attack.* | **bite | eggs, larva | pests** *Gardeners welcome birds as they control insect pests.* | **repellent, spray | species | world** *Wasps are the master builders of the insect world.*

insecure *adj.*

1 not safe

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become | remain**
- ADV. **extremely, very | increasingly | a little, rather, somewhat | financially** *men who are worried about losing their jobs and becoming financially insecure*

2 anxious

- VERBS **be, feel | become, grow**
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, profoundly, really, very | increasingly | a bit, a little, quite, rather | basically | notoriously** *a star who is notoriously insecure about her looks*
- PREP. **about** *He felt a bit insecure about being left alone.*

insecurity *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, great | growing, increased | general** *The* *prime minister spoke of the general insecurity in the country.* | **economic, emotional, financial** | **job**

- PREP. **~about** *her insecurities about her abilities*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of insecurity**

insensitive *adj.*

1 not knowing or caring how sb else feels

- VERBS **appear, be, seem** | **become, grow** | **make sb** | **think sb** *I don't want to be thought insensitive, but I do think we should go ahead despite the accident.*
- ADV. **extremely, highly, incredibly, remarkably, very** | **totally** | **a bit, rather, somewhat**
- PREP. **to** *Years of abuse at boarding school had made him insensitive to others' suffering.*

2 not able to feel/be influenced by sth

- VERBS **be** | **remain**
- ADV. **completely, totally** | **almost** | **largely** | **fairly, relatively**
- PREP. **to** *The machine is relatively insensitive to changes in the atmosphere.*

insensitivity *noun*

- ADJ. **complete** | **crass**
- VERB + INSENSITIVITY **display, show**
- PREP. **~to/towards** *The government has shown complete insensitivity to the refugees.*

inseparable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **absolutely, quite** | **almost, practically, virtually** *The two brothers are almost inseparable.* | **effectively**
- PREP. **from** *Religion is inseparable from politics.*

insert *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, gently**
- PREP. **between** *The English translation is inserted between the lines of text.* **in/into** *Fine needles are gently inserted into the patient's skin.* **through** *A probe was inserted through his mouth.*

insight *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great, real, significant** | **deep** | **detailed** | **brief** | **good, remarkable** *The objective of the research is to gain a better insight into labour market processes.* | **penetrating, profound, revealing, illuminating** | **crucial, important, invaluable, valuable** | **useful** | **fascinating, interesting** | **startling** | **fresh, new** | **original, unique** *Freud's original insights into the working of the mind* | **rare** | **clear** | **basic** | **direct** *The research will provide direct insight into molecular mechanisms.* | **further** | **sufficient** | **individual, personal** | **critical, historical, theoretical**
- QUANT. **flash** *With a flash of insight, she found the solution to the problem.* | **degree**
- VERB + INSIGHT **have** *The experienced specialist has professional skills and insight.* | **be lacking in, lack** | **show** | **allow (sb), afford (sb), give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with), produce, yield** | **gain, get, obtain** | **apply** *Teachers have to apply in the classroom the insights that they gain in educational courses.*
- PREP. **~ about** *Schopenhauer's insight about music* **~into** *a fresh insight into Picasso's mind* **~(as) to** *an insight as to how the gene works*
- PHRASES **a lack of insight**

insignificance *noun*

- ADJ. **comparative, relative**
- VERB + INSIGNIFICANCE **pale into, fade into** *Her achievements fade into insignificance beside those of her sisters.*

insignificant *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem** *He made her feel insignificant.* | **become** | **remain** | **consider sth** *an event that was considered insignificant*
- ADV. **very** | **completely, quite** | **almost** | **comparatively, fairly, rather, relatively** | **apparently, seemingly** | **statistically** *These results are statistically insignificant.* | **socially**

insinuation *noun*

- ADJ. **veiled**
- VERB + INSINUATION **make** | **resent** *I deeply resent the insinuation that I'm only interested in the money.*
- PREP. **~about** *Why did you make those veiled insinuations about me?* **~against** *insinuations against the unsuccessful candidate*

insist *verb*

- ADV. **firmly, strongly** | **stubbornly** *He stubbornly insisted on doing it all himself.* | **absolutely** *I'm paying for this—no, I absolutely insist.* | **gently, quietly** *He quietly but firmly insisted.* | **always** | **repeatedly** | **still** *She still insists her critics are wrong.* | **rightly** *People rightly insist on being treated as individuals.*
- VERB + INSIST **continue to** | **try to** | **be entitled to** *Employers are entitled to insist that employees honour the terms of their agreement.*
- PREP. **on/upon** *He insists on speaking to you personally*

insistence *noun*

- ADJ. **strict** | **gentle** | **earlier, previous**
- VERB + INSISTENCE **abandon, drop** *The union has dropped its earlier insistence that workers should receive bonus payments.*
- PREP. **at/on sb's ~** *At the insistence of his father, he bought himself a new suit.* | **~by** *insistence by the government that 25% of all household waste be recycled* **~on/upon** *an insistence upon the highest standards of grammatical correctness*

insistent *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become, grow** | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, most, very** *She was most insistent that we shouldn't leave the door unlocked.* | **fairly, quite**
- PREP. **about** *She was insistent about inviting him.* **on/upon** *He was insistent on a formal written agreement.*

insoluble *adj.*

1 that cannot be solved/explained

- VERBS **be, seem** | **remain**
- ADV. **absolutely** | **almost** | **apparently, seemingly**

2 impossible to dissolve in a liquid

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly** | **practically, virtually**
- PREP. **~in** *These chemicals are practically insoluble in water.*

inspect *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, closely, thoroughly** | **regularly**
- VERB + INSPECT **allow sb to, be entitled to** *Each party in the case is entitled to inspect the documents held by the other.*
- PREP. **for** *He inspected the water tank carefully for cracks.*

inspection *noun*

- ADJ. **careful, close, detailed, thorough** | **full** | **brief, cursory** | **routine** | **frequent, regular** | **annual, daily, etc.** | **surprise** *a surprise inspection of the premises by the* *health inspector* | **preliminary** | **public** *The records are open to public inspection.* | **independent** | **international** *They have refused to allow international inspection of their nuclear facilities.* | **physical, visual** | **safety** | **medical** | **on-site, site** *Following an on-site inspection, the surveyor prepared a written report on the property.*

• VERB + INSPECTION **be available for, be open for/to, be subject to** *A company's accounting records must be open for inspection at all times.* ◇ *Nursing agencies are subject to inspection by the health authority.* | **bear** (*literary*) *He knew that his motives would not bear too close an inspection* (= that his motives were not good). | **carry out, conduct, make** *The architect is carrying out a thorough inspection of the building.* | **allow** | **pass** *The hotel passed its annual inspection.* | **fail**

• INSPECTION + VERB **reveal sth, show sth, suggest sth** *Closer inspection of the vase revealed it to be a fake.* | **take place**

• INSPECTION + NOUN **visit** | **report** | **team** | **hatch, panel**

• PREP. **for ~** *He held out the saucepan for inspection.* **on/upon ~** *The report seemed impressive at first, but on closer inspection there were several inaccuracies.* | **~ by** *an inspection of the troops by the commander-in-chief*

• PHRASES **a tour of inspection** *The head went on a tour of inspection of all the classrooms.*

inspector *noun*

1 official who inspects sth

• ADJ. **chief, principal** | **deputy** | **local** | **independent** | **official** | **government, ministry, RSPCA, UN/United Nations, etc.** | **building, factory, (health and) safety, planning, (public) health, school, tax, ticket, weapons** *UN weapons inspectors*

• VERB + INSPECTOR **call in** *The school inspectors were called in.*

• INSPECTOR + VERB **be in charge of sth** *the inspector in charge of producing the report* | **look at sth** | **report (on) sth**

• PREP. **~ of** *an inspector of prisons*

⇨ Note at JOB

2 police officer

• ADJ. **police** | **Chief, detective**

• PHRASES **the rank of Inspector**

inspiration *noun*

• ADJ. **great, sheer** | **direct** *His wife was the direct inspiration for the main character in the book.* | **sudden** | **fresh** | **artistic, creative, poetic** | **divine**

• QUANT. **flash, moment** *In a flash of sheer inspiration, I decided to paint the whole house white.*

• VERB + INSPIRATION **derive, draw, find, gain, get, owe, take** *The movement draws much of its inspiration from the Greek philosophers.* ◇ *Many of us found inspiration in her teaching.* ◇ *Where did you get the inspiration for the book?* ◇ *Her latest book owes its inspiration to childhood memories.* | **give sb, provide (sb with)** | **look for, seek** *He peered into his glass, as if seeking inspiration there.* | **be lacking (in), lack**

• INSPIRATION + VERB **come (from sth)** *One day the inspiration just came.* ◇ *Her inspiration comes from Asia.*

• PREP. **~ behind** *He was the inspiration behind last week's victory.* **~ for** *The sea has provided an inspiration for many of his paintings.* **to** *She's been a great inspiration to me.*

• PHRASES **a source of inspiration**

inspired *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, seem** | **become**

• ADV. **divinely** *divinely inspired wisdom* | **ideologically, politically** *politically inspired violence*

inspiring *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** *None of the leaders seems very inspiring.* | **find sth/sb** *People find her inspiring.*

• ADV. **deeply, really, very** *a very inspiring sight* | **far from, hardly, less than, not particularly** *A pile of ironing is hardly inspiring.*

instability *noun*

• ADJ. **increased** | **growing, increasing** | **continuing** | **inherent, internal** | **economic, financial, political, social** | **emotional, mental**

• QUANT. **degree** *The increased inflation will inject a degree of instability into the economy.*

• VERB + INSTABILITY **cause, create** *Racism causes political instability and violence.* | **avoid** *The law was introduced to avoid instability during the transition.*

• INSTABILITY + VERB **arise, occur** *Instability may arise at times of change.*

• PHRASES **a period of instability** *a long period of economic instability* **a source of instability**

install *verb*

• ADV. **properly, safely** *Make sure the equipment is properly installed.* ◇ (*figurative*) *She saw her guests safely installed in their rooms and then went downstairs.* | **easily** *The loft ladder is easily installed.* | **successfully** | **professionally** *A professionally installed alarm will cost from about £500.*

• VERB + INSTALL **be easy to, be simple to** *The switches are cheap to buy and easy to install.*

• PHRASES **newly/recently installed** *a recently installed swimming pool*

instalment *noun*

1 regular payment

• ADJ. **fixed** | **equal** *a loan repaid in equal annual instalments* | **first, initial** | **second, third, etc.** | **final, last** | **next** | **annual, monthly, weekly, quarterly**

• VERB + INSTALMENT **pay (off), pay (sth) by/in, pay sth off in** *She sold the car before she had paid the instalments.* ◇ *The tenants agreed to pay off the arrears in instalments.* | **repay (sth) by/in**

• INSTALMENT + VERB **be/become due, be payable by/in** *The next instalment is not due until July.*

• INSTALMENT + NOUN **payment** | **plan, terms** *We offer an instalment plan.*

• PREP. **by ~** *The amounts are repayable by instalment.* **in ~** *Repayment is in ten instalments.*

2 part of a story

• ADJ. **first, second, etc.** | **final, last** | **daily, weekly** | **next**

• VERB + INSTALMENT **publish (sth in)** *The 'Screwtape Letters' were published in instalments from May to November 1941.*

• PREP. **~ in** *the final instalment in the trilogy*

instance *noun*

• ADJ. **countless, innumerable, numerous** | **occasional, rare** | **isolated** | **(any) given, particular, specific** *Further information is required to determine the correct answer in any given instance.* | **extreme** | **striking** | **classic** *This is a classic instance of Dostoevsky's writing operating on two levels.*

• VERB + INSTANCE **give, provide** *North America provides the most striking instance of European settlement on a grand scale.* | **cite (sth as), take** *Experts cite the country as an instance where human rights violations could lead to international intervention.* ◇ *To take a particular instance of this problem: ...* | **recall** *I cannot recall any other instance in modern times in which a huge and mighty state crumbled to dust.*

• INSTANCE + VERB **occur** *An instance of this controversy occurred last year.* | **show sth** *This instance shows how important it is to check that the machine is working properly before you use it.*
• PREP. **for ~** (= for example) *Murder, petty theft and tax evasion, for instance, all have different motives and consequences.* **in … ~** *In one instance, several people had their mobile phones stolen.* ◇ *It is not always helpful to draw analogies between sexism and racism, but in this instance it is useful.* **~ of** *This is an instance of his general attitude to his employees.*
• PHRASES **in the first instance** (*formal*) *In the first instance, a letter from your employer may be all you need.*

instant *noun*

1 short period of time
• ADJ. **brief, fleeting** *For a brief instant, I thought she was going to fall.* | **one, single** *His news was too important to be contained for a single instant longer.*
• VERB + INSTANT **pause for** *He paused for an instant before continuing.*
• PREP. **for an ~** *Just for an instant I thought he was going to refuse.* **in an ~** *It was all over in an instant.* | **~ after/before** *She woke up in the instant before the phone rang.*

2 single point in time
• ADJ. **(any) given, (any) one** *At any given instant the distribution of molecular speeds is always constant under the same conditions.* | **very** *He took out his keys to lock the door. At that very instant the door flew open and a man ran into the room.*
• PREP. **at … ~** *The bomb could go off at any instant.*

instant *adj.*

• VERBS **be**
• ADV. **almost** *His response was almost instant.*

instantaneous *adj.*

• VERBS **be** *Her death was almost instantaneous.*
• ADV. **almost, virtually**

instinct *noun*

• ADJ. **deep, powerful, strong** | **gut** | **first, initial** *His first instinct was to run away from danger.* | **good, unerring** *Against her better instincts, she ran back into the burning house to save some of her jewellery.* ◇ *He had an unerring instinct for when people were lying to him.* | **base** | **basic** | **natural** | **primitive** | **creative** | **aggressive, competitive** | **maternal, mothering, protective** | **fighting, hunting, killer, predatory** (*often figurative*) *He plays well but lacks that killer instinct that wins matches.* | **survival** | **herd** *What makes all these people come to the club? In my view it's the herd instinct.* | **sexual** | **business, commercial, political** | **animal, human**
• VERB + INSTINCT **have** | **lack** | **develop** *In negotiating you have to develop an instinct for when to be tough and when to make a deal.* | **follow, go on, obey, rely on, trust** *Why don't you just follow your natural instincts?* | **ignore, suppress** | **satisfy** | **appeal to** *They accused the campaign of appealing to the electorate's baser instincts.* | **share** *Both superpowers shared the same instinct for self-preservation.*
• INSTINCT + VERB **tell sb sth** *Her instinct told her that she was being followed.* | **guide sb** *Artists have to learn to be guided by their instincts.* | **take over** *Her instincts took over and she dived on the escaping thief.* | **be right/wrong** *I've trusted my instincts in the past and they've usually been right.*
• PREP. **by ~** *Babies know by instinct who their mother is.* **on ~** *I acted purely on instinct.* | **~ for** *He's got an instinct for survival in a tough job.*

instinctive *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
• ADV. **totally** | **purely** *My reaction was purely instinctive.* | **almost**

institute *noun*

• ADJ. **professional** | **independent** | **government** | **international, national** | **economic, education, educational, research, scientific, technical**
• VERB + INSTITUTE **establish, found, set up** | **open** | **belong to** *She belongs to the Chartered Institute of Management.* | **join**
• INSTITUTE + VERB **find sth** *The environmental research institute found that the global average temperature had risen by 1.2°C.* | **claim sth, say sth** *The Institute says that an unidentified virus is to blame for the syndrome.* | **publish sth** | **provide sth** *an institute providing opportunities to veterinary graduates*
• PREP. **at an/the ~** *She used to give lectures at the Mechanics' Institute.* **in/within an/the ~** *He is a key figure in the Institute of Mathematics.* | **~ for** *the International Institute for Economic Development* **~ of**
• PHRASES **a founder of an institute, a member of an institute**
⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION

institution *noun*

1 large organization
• ADJ. **central, major** *Parliament remains the central institution of the constitution of the United Kingdom.* | **established** | **existing** *They argue for the reform of existing political institutions.* | **traditional** | **public** | **private** | **government, governmental, state** | **international, national** | **local** | **democratic** | **academic, administrative, charitable, cultural, economic, educational, financial, legal, lending, political, religious, research** *cultural institutions such as the Danish Institute*
• PREP. **at a/the ~** *a course at an institution of higher education* **in/within ~** *examination procedures within educational institutions*
⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION (for verbs)

2 building for people with special needs
• ADJ. **mental, penal**
• VERB + INSTITUTION **be admitted to, be placed in** *Many people with dementia would rather remain at home than be placed in an institution.* | **be kept in**
• PREP. **at/in ~** *patients in mental institutions* | **~ for** *an institution for mentally ill offenders*

3 custom
• ADJ. **national** *Fish and chips became a national institution in Britain.* | **cultural, economic, legal, political, religious, social** *cultural institutions such as religious and legal codes*

instruct *verb*

• ADV. **carefully** | **explicitly, specifically** *You were explicitly instructed to wait here.*
• PHRASES **as instructed** *I took the pills as instructed.*

instruction *noun*

1 **instructions** information on how to do sth
• ADJ. **comprehensive, full** | **adequate** | **clear, explicit** | **detailed, precise, specific, step-by-step** | **complex** | **simple** | **general** | **special** | **careful** | **printed, verbal, written** | **pack, packet** | **technical** | **safety** | **operating, cooking, washing** | **manufacturer's**
• QUANT. **list, series, set**
• VERB + INSTRUCTIONS **read** *You should always read the instructions on medicines thoroughly.* | **understand** | **follow** *These fondant decorations are easy to master if you follow our simple step-by-step instructions.* | **give (sb),**

leave (sb), supply *He gave her detailed instructions on the procedure to be followed.* ◇ *instructions supplied with a product* | **repeat** | **come with** *Did it come with any instructions about assembling it?*

- INSTRUCTIONS + VERB **tell sb sth** *instructions that tell you where everything goes*
- INSTRUCTION + NOUN **book/booklet, leaflet, manual** *I had to refer to the instruction booklet.*
- PREP. **according to the ~** *Microwave ovens should be serviced according to the manufacturer's instructions.* **in accordance with the ~, in the ~** *It tells you in the instructions not to let the machine get too hot.* | **~ about, ~ as to** *The organizer will give instructions as to what to do.* **~ on** *instructions on how to use the photocopier*
- PHRASES **follow (sb's) instructions to the letter** *The jockey followed his trainer's instructions to the letter* (= followed them in every detail).

2 instructions sth that sb tells/permits you to do

- ADJ. **clear, explicit, express, specific** | **firm, strict** *I have strict instructions not to let anyone else in.* | **direct** | **special** | **fresh, new** | **further** | **final** | **written**
- VERB + INSTRUCTIONS **be under, have** | **act on/under** *She is acting under direct instructions from the president.* | **carry out, comply with, follow, obey** *Failure to obey a policeman's instructions may amount to an offence.* | **disobey** | **ignore** | **await, wait (for)** *He remained under cover and waited further instructions from headquarters.* | **accept** *Solicitors may not accept instructions in cases where they would have a conflict of interests.* | **receive** | **give (sb), issue, leave (sb), send (sb)** *The government has issued specific instructions on reducing waste disposal.* | **bark (out), shout, yell** *The director sat in his chair barking instructions at the cast.* | **repeat**
- PREP. **according to the ~** *We acted according to the instructions we received.* **in accordance with the ~, on (sb's) ~** *She was released on instruction from the Foreign Ministry.* **under (sb/sth's) ~** *Under Charlemagne's instructions, many classical texts were recopied.* **with/without ~** *They were not empowered to negotiate without instructions.* | **~ from, ~ to** *an instruction to Lieutenant-General Gough from General Clark*
- PHRASES **carry out/follow/obey (sb's) instructions to the letter** (= follow them in every detail)

3 in a computer

- QUANT. **series, set**
- VERB + INSTRUCTION **carry out, execute** *The chip runs at speeds of up to 100MHz and executes two instructions per clock cycle.*

4 teaching

- ADJ. **proper** | **formal, informal** | **advanced, basic** | **further** | **individual, individualized** | **practical, professional, technical** | **moral, religious** | **flying**
- QUANT. **course**
- VERB + INSTRUCTION **get, have, receive** *She had no formal instruction in music.* | **need** | **offer (sb)** *The Cleveland Clog Dancers were on hand to offer instruction on the important steps.* | **give (sb), provide (sb with)**
- PREP. **for the ~ of** *The information is for the instruction of passengers.* **under ~** *drivers under instruction* | **~ by** *The two-day course features instruction by leading professionals and academics.* **~ in** *He claimed that he was not capable of giving instruction in poetry.* **~ on** *basic instruction on using the Internet*
- PHRASES **a medium of instruction** *The medium of instruction throughout the course is English.*

instructive *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, most, particularly, very** *It was a most instructive day.* | **quite**

instructor *noun*

- ADJ. **qualified, trained** | **experienced** | **chief, senior** | **driving, flying, parachute, riding, ski, swimming, etc.**
- INSTRUCTOR + VERB **teach sb/sth**

⇨ Note at JOB

instrument *noun*

1 tool for a particular task

- ADJ. **precision** | **sophisticated** | **reliable** | **crude** | **blunt** *The autopsy revealed that the deceased had been hit with a blunt instrument.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Even though it was a somewhat blunt instrument* (= not very precise), *our questionnaire provided us with some interesting ideas.* | **sharp** | **small** | **delicate** | **appropriate** | **research** | **drawing, measuring, writing** | **astronomical, flight, flying, mathematical, medical, navigation, navigational, optical, scientific, surgical** | **cockpit**
- QUANT. **set** *a set of mathematical instruments*
- VERB + INSTRUMENT **use** *All pupils should learn to use drawing instruments.* | **check, read** *to read the instruments and make a note of the wind speed and direction* | **design, develop, devise, invent** | **build, make** *All the instruments are made from glass capillary tubing.*
- INSTRUMENT + VERB **measure sth** *an instrument that measures light intensity*
- INSTRUMENT + NOUN **check** *The pilot did his instrument checks and taxied towards the runway.* | **maker** | **panel** *There was a warning light flashing on the instrument panel.*
- PHRASES **an instrument of torture** *medieval instruments of torture such as the rack and the wheel*

2 for playing music

- ADJ. **musical** | **beautiful, fine** | **classical** | **modern** | **period** *baroque music played on period instruments* | **solo** | **orchestral** | **brass, keyboard, percussion, string/stringed, wind, woodwind** | **acoustic, electric, electronic**
- VERB + INSTRUMENT **play (on)** *She plays three musical instruments.* ◇ *The score was written to be played on a keyboard instrument.* | **learn, learn (how) to play** | **tune** *Ensure the instrument is tuned to concert pitch.* | **make** *an instrument made by a woman guitar maker in Canada*
- INSTRUMENT + VERB **sound** *The instrument sounds like a cello.*
- INSTRUMENT + NOUN **maker**

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

3 sb/sth used to make sth happen

- ADJ. **chief, key, main, major, prime, principal** | **good, great** *They agreed that the UN was the best instrument for reaching agreement.* | **ideal** | **important, valuable** | **powerful** | **useful** | **effective** | **flexible** | **mere** *Some cynics say that sport is a mere instrument of capitalist domination.* | **chosen** *The despot claimed to be the chosen instrument of divine providence.* | **divine** | **political**
- VERB + INSTRUMENT **perceive sb/sth as, regard sb/sth as, see sb/sth as, view sb/sth as** *They saw criminal law as an instrument for improving public morals.* | **use sb/sth as** | **make sb/sth**
- PREP. **~ for** *Criminal law is not the best instrument for dealing with family matters.* **~ of** *She was accused of making a public service an instrument of private advantage.*

instrumental *adj.*

1 important in making sth happen

- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **highly** | **largely** | **partly**
- PREP. **in** *They were highly instrumental in bringing the business to Newtown.*

2 being only a means to an end

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very** | **purely** | **merely** | **essentially**

insufficient *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove**
- ADV. **quite, wholly | simply | clearly**
- PREP. **for** *The resources available are quite insufficient for the task.*

insulated *adj.*

1 protected against the cold, sound, etc.

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **well | badly, poorly | heavily | properly**
- PREP. **against** *The laboratory was well insulated against all outside noise.* **with** *The hot water tank should be insulated with proper insulating materials.*

2 protected from unpleasant experiences

- ADV. **completely, totally | largely**
- PREP. **from** *The community was totally insulated from the outside world.*

insult *noun*

- ADJ. **bad, terrible** *one of the worst insults you can throw at somebody* | **ultimate** *Whatever you do, don't call a 'railway enthusiast' a trainspotter—it's the ultimate insult.* | **calculated, deliberate | personal**
- VERB + INSULT **hurl, offer** (*literary*), **shout, throw** *They were hurling insults at the police.* ◇ *The king is unlikely to forgive the insult offered to his ambassador.* | **mean sth as** *I don't mean this as an insult, but I think the team would play better without you.* | **take sth as** *I meant it as a bit of constructive advice, but he took it as a personal insult* | **endure, suffer** *Foreigners have to suffer constant insults from the local population.* | **exchange, trade** *The two groups of fans exchanged insults.*
- INSULT + VERB **fly** *Insults were flying back and forth.*
- PREP. **~ to** *It was an insult to his wife.*
- PHRASES **add insult to injury** *Only 300 people came to the match and to add insult to injury* (= to make things worse), *the floodlights went out during the second half.* **an insult to your intelligence** *The questions were a real insult to our intelligence* (= because they were too easy).

insult *verb*

- ADV. **publicly** *He was dismissed for publicly insulting prominent politicians.*
- PHRASES **be/feel (deeply) insulted** *I felt deeply insulted that she hadn't asked me to the meeting.*

insulting *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound | become | find sth, regard sth as** *I find it insulting to be spoken to in that way.*
- ADV. **highly, very | quite | almost** *He made the question sound almost insulting.* | **a little, rather, vaguely | deliberately** *Her tone was deliberately insulting.*
- PREP. **to** *His opinions are highly insulting to women.*

insurance *noun*

- ADJ. **(fully) comprehensive | adequate | additional | long-term, short-term | national, social, state | personal, private | commercial | compulsory | voluntary | life | health, medical | animal, car, home, house, household, marine, motor | travel | accident, fire, legal expenses, unemployment | civil liability, liability, professional indemnity, public liability, third party | general | special**
- VERB + INSURANCE **have, maintain** *Have you got fully comprehensive insurance?* ◇ (*formal*) *The company maintains liability insurance for its directors and officers.* | **apply for | arrange, buy, get, obtain, purchase, take out** *The contract requires me to arrange my own insurance.* ◇ *The travel agent recommended that I take out travel insurance.* | **sell | pay** *I haven't paid the insurance yet this month.* | **claim (on)** *She set fire to her house and then claimed insurance.* ◇ *We claimed for the car repairs on the insurance.* | **offer (sb) | provide (sb with)**
- INSURANCE + VERB **cover sb/sth, pay for sth** *Does your personal accident insurance cover mountain rescue?* ◇ *Millions of people in the US are not covered by health insurance.* ◇ *The insurance will pay for the damage.*
- INSURANCE + NOUN **cover** *insurance cover for bodily injury to third parties* | **policy** *a personal insurance policy* | **scheme** *a national insurance scheme* | **contribution, payment, premium** *a monthly insurance premium* | **costs** *rising insurance costs* | **claim | money, payout** *He bought a new suit out of the insurance money.* | **broking, services | business, industry, market, sector | company, firm, fund, group | agent, broker, salesman, underwriter | certificate**
- PREP. **~ against** *More people are taking out insurance against the high cost of dental care.* **~ for** *compulsory insurance for personal injury to employees* **~ on** *The court heard that he stood to gain millions in insurance on his wife.* **~ with** *Her insurance is with General Accident.*
- PHRASES **a certificate of insurance, a contract of insurance, a period of insurance** *If you make more than two claims in any period of insurance you may lose your no claim bonus.*

insured *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **fully | adequately | inadequately | privately** *There is evidence that privately insured patients are offered a higher level of care.*
- PREP. **against** *Your video is not insured against accidental damage.* **for** *I was not adequately insured for the damage my tenants caused.*

insurmountable *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, prove, seem** *The age barrier appeared insurmountable.* | **become | remain**
- ADV. **nearly, virtually | apparently, seemingly** *They were now faced with seemingly insurmountable technical problems.*

insurrection *noun*

- ADJ. **armed** *Years of discontent turned into armed insurrection.* | **popular** *There was a popular insurrection against the police.*
- VERB + INSURRECTION **plan, plot** *They were accused of plotting insurrection against the government.* | **lead | launch | crush, put down**
- PREP. **~ against** *insurrection against the monarchy*

intact *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be | remain, stay, survive** *The building survived almost intact.* | **emerge** *a hero who always escaped by the skin of his teeth, emerging miraculously intact after each cliff-hanging episode* | **find sth** *We found the tomb perfectly intact.* | **keep sth, maintain sth, preserve sth** *The collection should be kept completely intact.* | **leave sth** *a group of old army buildings that had been left largely intact*
- ADV. **remarkably, substantially, very much** *The character of the original house is very much intact.* | **completely, entirely, perfectly, wholly | almost, nearly, virtually | basically, essentially, largely, more or less | fairly, reasonably, relatively | apparently | still** *The mill machinery is still intact.* | **miraculously**

intake *noun*

1 amount of food/drink taken into the body

- ADJ. **high | moderate | low | increased | total | good | excessive | adequate | balanced | normal |**

average | (recommended) daily | regular | dietary, nutritional | calorie | alcohol, calcium, energy, fat, fibre, fluid, food, oxygen, protein, salt, sugar, water

- VERB + INTAKE **have** *Make sure you have a balanced intake of vitamins A, B, C and D.* | **maintain** *You should maintain a low intake of fat.* | **increase, raise** | **control, watch** *You need to watch your alcohol intake.* | **cut, cut down (on), limit, lower, reduce, restrict** *One of the best ways to get to your ideal size is to cut fat intake right down.*

2 number of students in a year

- ADJ. **high | low | new | annual | graduate, student**
- VERB + INTAKE **have** *The school has an annual intake of 20 to 30.* | **cut, reduce | increase**

3 where liquid/air enters a machine

- ADJ. **air, water | pump**
- VERB + INTAKE **clog (up)** *Algae has clogged the intake to the water turbine.*

4 of breath

- ADJ. **harsh, sharp** *She gave a sharp intake of breath.*
- VERB + INTAKE **give**
- PHRASES **an intake of breath**

integrate *verb*

1 combine two things

- ADV. **closely, tightly, well** *They called for the defence system to be more closely integrated.* | **completely, fully, seamlessly, thoroughly | properly | successfully** *The department has successfully integrated new ideas into the traditional course structure.*
- PREP. **into** *The results should be integrated into the final report.* **with** *This computer program can be integrated with existing programs.*
- PHRASES **highly integrated** (= with many different parts working successfully together) *a highly integrated approach to planning* **poorly integrated**

2 mix with other people

- ADV. **well** *The lower primary pupils are well integrated into the life of the school.* | **completely, fully | quickly**
- PREP. **into** *They soon became fully integrated into the local community.* **with** *They didn't integrate with the other children.*

integration *noun*

- ADJ. **true | complete, full | close, seamless | further, greater, improved, increased | rapid | economic, monetary, political, racial, social** *We are working to bring about closer political integration in the EU.* | **internal | systems** (*computing*)
- QUANT. **degree, level**
- VERB + INTEGRATION **achieve, bring about | accelerate, encourage, facilitate, promote, speed up, stimulate** *measures to promote the social integration of mentally handicapped people* | **require | lead to**
- PREP. **~ between** *integration between research and higher education* **~ into** *the integration of disabled pupils into the general education system* **~ with** *He called for greater integration with Europe.* **~ within** *economic integration within the three communities*
- PHRASES **a move towards integration** *a move towards greater internal integration in Europe* **a need for integration, a process of integration**

integrity *noun*

- ADJ. **great, high | absolute, complete | personal | artistic, financial, moral, political, professional | physical, structural, territorial** *The country is fighting to preserve its territorial integrity.* | **data** (*computing*)
- VERB + INTEGRITY **have** *Her photography had great artistic integrity.* | **lack | lose | restore** *The minister promised to restore the honesty and integrity of the government.* | **ensure** *It's up to the user to ensure the integrity of the data they enter.* | **maintain, retain** *We all have an interest in maintaining the integrity of the ecosystem.* | **defend, preserve, safeguard | threaten** *The project threatens the integrity of one of the world's most important wetlands.* | **compromise, impair, undermine** *I would never do anything to compromise the integrity of the company.* | **destroy** *Nuclear weapons have the capability to destroy the physical integrity of the planet.* | **question** *She questioned his integrity as a councillor.*
- PREP. **with ~** *The code calls on members to behave with integrity at all times.*
- PHRASES **an attack on sb/sth's integrity, a challenge/threat to sb/sth's integrity**

intellect *noun*

- ADJ. **brilliant, considerable, formidable, keen, powerful, superior, sharp | limited, low, weak | creative, rational, scientific | human**
- VERB + INTELLECT **have** *She has a formidable intellect.* | **exercise** *He enjoyed exercising his intellect in analysing the controversies of his day.*

intelligence *noun*

1 ability to understand

- ADJ. **acute, considerable, great, high** *a writer with an acute intelligence* ◇ *This essay shows considerable intelligence.* | **quick | average, normal | limited, low | innate, native | human | artificial** *Computer scientists study artificial intelligence.*
- VERB + INTELLIGENCE **have** *At least he had the intelligence to turn off the gas.* | **demonstrate, show | use**
- INTELLIGENCE + NOUN **test**

2 information

- ADJ. **secret** *We've obtained secret intelligence about enemy plans.* | **reliable | military** *Military intelligence is gathered using sophisticated technology.* | **criminal**
- VERB + INTELLIGENCE **collect, gather**
- INTELLIGENCE + NOUN **agency, service** *He works for the French intelligence service.* | **officer | gathering** *His unit was responsible for intelligence gathering in North Africa.* | **report | operation**

intelligent *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, incredibly, most, remarkably, very** *a highly intelligent woman* | **fairly, quite, reasonably** *He should be able to solve the problem. He's reasonably intelligent.* | **obviously | seemingly**

intelligible *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | make sth** *They do their best to make science intelligible to young children.* | **find sth** *She found his motives perfectly intelligible.*
- ADV. **perfectly | easily, immediately, readily | barely, scarcely** *His reply was barely intelligible.* | **mutually** *Czech and Slovak are separate languages but they are mutually intelligible.*
- PREP. **to** *We need an explanation that is readily intelligible to ordinary people.*

intend *verb*

- ADV. **fully** *She fully intends to continue her sporting career once she has recovered from her injuries.* | **clearly | originally** *He had originally intended to stay in the country for only a year or two.*
- PREP. **for** *It was thought that the bomb might have been intended for a visiting MP.*

intense *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | remain**

- ADV. **extremely, incredibly, particularly, really, very | fairly, pretty, quite**

intensify *verb*

- ADV. **greatly | sharply** *The fighting in the area has intensified sharply.* | **further**
- VERB + INTENSIFY **appear to, seem to** *The extreme cold seemed, if anything, to intensify.* | **tend to | be likely to | serve to** *The reforms served only to intensify the misery of the poorer peasants.*

intensity *noun*

- ADJ. **high, low** *a band of light with high intensity* | **fierce, great** *The sun beat down with fierce intensity.* ◇ *He studied the report with great intensity.* | **emotional | passionate**
- VERB + INTENSITY **decrease (in), reduce (in) | grow in, increase (in)** *Her headaches started to increase in intensity.* | **vary in**
- PREP. **in ~** *The pain was growing in intensity.*

intensive *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly, very** *highly intensive courses for business and professional people* | **increasingly**
- PHRASES **labour intensive** *Rice production is very labour intensive* (= requires a lot of labour).

intent *adj.*

1 determined to do sth
- VERBS **appear, be, seem**
- ADV. **apparently, seemingly | clearly, evidently, obviously** *They are clearly intent on maintaining standards.*
- PREP. **on/upon** *He was intent on murder.*

2 concentrating on sth
- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **very | suddenly** *Her gaze was suddenly intent.*
- PREP. **on** *She was very intent on her work.*

intention *noun*

- ADJ. **original** *My original intention was to study all morning, but this turned out to be impractical.* | **declared, stated | firm | general | deliberate**
- VERB + INTENTION **have** *I have no intention of changing jobs.* | **announce, declare, state** *The council has announced its intention to crack down on parking offences.*
- PREP. **with a/the ~ of** *I went to the bank with the intention of getting some traveller's cheques.* | **~ behind** *The general intention behind the project is a good one.* **~ by** *The intention by the local authority to build 2 000 new houses is unrealistic.* **~ in** *His intention in inviting us to dinner was to persuade us to back his project.*
- PHRASES **good/the best intentions** *It was done with the best intentions, I assure you* **have every/no intention of doing sth** *We have every intention of winning the next election.* **make your intention clear** *He didn't make his intentions clear in his letter.*

interact *verb*

1 have an effect on each other
- ADV. **closely | directly**
- PREP. **with** *This hormone interacts closely with other hormones in the body.*

2 mix with other people
- ADV. **well | socially**
- PREP. **with** *He interacts very well with other children.*

interaction *noun*

- ADJ. **complex | informal | social | human | face-to-face, group | classroom**
- INTERACTION + NOUN **processes** *the interaction processes of chimpanzees*
- PREP. **~ among** *Informal interaction among employees is seen as part of the ongoing training process.* **~ between** *the complex interaction between animals and their environment* **~ with** *What is her interaction with her boss like?* **~ within** *interaction within the group*
- PHRASES **patterns of interaction** *Specific patterns of interaction in the family have been observed.*

interactive *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **highly | fully** *The program is fully interactive.*

interchangeable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **fully, totally | almost, virtually**
- PREP. **with** *These parts are fully interchangeable with those in other machines.*

intercom *noun*

- INTERCOM + VERB **buzz, sound**
- INTERCOM + NOUN **system**
- PREP. **on the ~** *I spoke to her on the intercom and said I'd call round later.* **over the ~** *Mr Jack's arrival was announced over the intercom.*

intercourse *noun*

1 sex
- ADJ. **sexual | heterosexual, homosexual | anal, vaginal | non-consensual | unlawful**
- VERB + INTERCOURSE **engage in, have, indulge in** *She never had sexual intercourse before she was married.* | **consent to** *The judge asked if she had consented to intercourse.*
- INTERCOURSE + VERB **occur, take place** *He admitted that intercourse had taken place.*
- PREP. **~ between** *intercourse between consenting adults* **~ with** *He accused her of intercourse with another man.*

2 exchange of ideas, feelings, etc.
- ADJ. **social** *Life is a pleasant blend of work and social intercourse.*

interest *noun*

1 desire to learn/hear more about sb/sth
- ADJ. **avid, burning, close, considerable, consuming, deep, great, intense, keen, lively, passionate, strong** *The police were starting to take a close interest in the company's activities.* ◇ *She always had a great interest in the supernatural.* | **particular | growing, increasing | slightest** *He's never shown the slightest interest in football.* | **general, widespread | worldwide | serious | genuine | abiding, lifelong | passing | renewed | added** *I'll watch the programme with added interest now I know you're in it.* | **active | passive | polite** *He showed a polite interest in her story.* | **personal | media** *The event attracted a lot of media interest.*
- VERB + INTEREST **have | evince, express, show, take** *My cousin expressed an interest in seeing where I work.* | **feign, simulate** *She feigned interest in a magazine article to avoid meeting the man's stare.* | **lose | arouse, attract, awaken, catch, drum up, excite, generate, kindle, spark, stimulate, stir up, whip up** *A sticker on a bag caught my interest.* ◇ *The government failed to drum up any public interest in the referendum.* ◇ *A childhood journey sparked his lifelong interest in railways.* | **develop** *While in prison he developed an interest in art.* | **maintain, sustain** *Despite intensive publicity, Channel 4 failed to maintain interest in its expensive new show.* | **revive**
- INTEREST + VERB **grow | flag, wane** *The children's interest began to flag after half an hour of the lesson.*

• PREP. **for/out of ~** *I'm asking purely out of interest.* **with ~** *They listened with interest.* | **~ among** *to stimulate interest among teachers* **~ from** *growing interest from younger members* **~ in** *She took an active interest in their welfare.*

2 quality that attracts attention

• ADJ. **great** | **particular** *Her comments are of particular interest to me.* | **broad, general, wide** | **architectural, artistic, historic/historical, scientific** | **academic** *Since the championship has already been decided, this match is of purely academic interest.* | **human** *a plot devoid of human interest* | **love** *Angelina Jolie supplies the love interest in the film.*

• VERB + INTEREST **be of** *His books are of no interest to me at all.* | **hold no** *Their conversation held no interest for me.* | **add** *Bushes that flower in winter will add interest to your garden.* | **supply**

• INTEREST + VERB **lie in** *The interest of the painting lies in its unusual use of colour.*

• PREP. **of ~** *a building of great architectural interest*

3 sth you enjoy doing/learning about

• ADJ. **diverse, varied, wide, wide-ranging** | **private** | **artistic, musical, etc.**

• VERB + INTEREST **have** | **share** | **pursue** *He wanted time to pursue his many and varied musical interests.*

4 money earned from investments

• ADJ. **annual, monthly, etc.** | **compound, simple**

• VERB + INTEREST **earn, make, receive** | **pay** | **charge**

• INTEREST + VERB **accrue, bear**

• INTEREST + NOUN **rate** | **payment** | **charge**

• PREP. **~ on** *to pay interest on a loan*

• PHRASES **a rate of interest** *a mortgage with a fixed/flexible rate of interest*

5 benefits that sth has for sb

• ADJ. **best** *It's not in your best interests to let your boss know you're looking for a new job.* | **self-, selfish** | **common, mutual** | **competing, contradictory** | **long-term, short-term** | **narrow** *narrow sectional interests* | **direct** *Lawyers have a direct financial interest in the outcome of the debate.* | **paramount, vital** | **vested** | **national, public** | **class, sectional** | **foreign, outside** | **economic, financial, political, strategic, etc.**

• VERB + INTEREST **defend, guard, look after, protect, safeguard** | **act in, advance, champion, further, promote, serve** *He claimed to be acting in the public interest.* | **represent** | **act against, jeopardize, threaten**

• INTEREST + VERB **lie in sth** | **be at stake**

• INTEREST + NOUN **group** *Various interest groups have expressed their opposition to the policy.*

• PREP. **against sb/sth's ~(s)** *The solicitor refused to act against his client's interests.* **contrary to sb/sth's ~** *The union refused to support proposals that it saw as contrary to the interests of its members.* **in sb/sth's ~(s)** *New work practices were introduced in the interests of efficiency.* **of ~** *We met to discuss matters of common interest.* **out of ~** *He was obviously acting purely out of selfish interest.*

• PHRASES **a conflict of interests** *One member of the planning committee had a conflict of interests as he lived near the proposed motorway.* **have sb's (best) interests at heart** *Although he was sometimes too strict with his children, he had their best interests at heart.*

6 legal right to share in profits

• ADJ. **powerful** | **controlling, majority** | **minority** | **joint** | **banking, business, commercial, shipping**

• VERB + INTEREST **have** *He has controlling interests in several ventures.* | **sell**

• PREP. **~ in**

interest *verb*

• ADV. **greatly, particularly, really, very much** *It is this aspect of the work that really interests me.*

• VERB + INTEREST **try to** *She tried to interest the director in her scheme.*

interested *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** *She got very interested in politics.* | **remain** | **get sb** *We need to get more young people interested in the sport.* | **keep sb** *You need to keep your audience interested.*

• ADV. **deeply, especially, extremely, greatly, intensely, keenly, more than a little, most, particularly, passionately, really, seriously, specially, terribly, very (much)** *Ben must have been more than a little interested in the possibility to have pursued it so far.* | **genuinely, truly** | **increasingly** | **not at all, not (in) the least bit, not in the least, not remotely** *He's not in the least bit interested in girls.* | **only half, not much, not very** *Carrie was only half interested in the conversation.* | **fairly, mildly, quite, vaguely** | **just** *'Why do you ask?' 'I'm just interested, that's all.'* | **enough, sufficiently** *I wasn't interested enough in the argument to take sides one way or the other.* | **chiefly, mainly, primarily, principally** | **always, long** *I am always interested in how differently people can look at the same event.* ◇ *Charles had long been interested in architecture.* | **still** | **no longer** | **potentially** | **apparently, reportedly** | **clearly, obviously** | **actively** *As a landowner, he was actively interested in agricultural improvements.* | **professionally**

• PREP. **in** *She's always been interested in other people.*

interesting *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** | **make sth** | **find sb/sth** *I find her ideas really interesting.*

• ADV. **deeply, especially, extraordinarily, extremely, highly, immensely, incredibly, intensely, most, particularly, really, terribly, very** | **equally** | **doubly** | **fairly, mildly, pretty, quite, rather** | **enough, sufficiently** *Some topics appeared interesting enough to require more detailed information.* | **potentially** | **inherently, intrinsically, in itself** *This subject is intrinsically interesting and worthy of study in its own right.* | **always** *It was always interesting to hear his stories.* | **architecturally, geologically, historically, sociologically** *architecturally interesting buildings*

• PREP. **for** *It's not very interesting for visitors.* **to** *How can we make the subject more interesting to young people?*

interfere *verb*

• ADV. **seriously** *Emotional problems can seriously interfere with a student's work.* | **directly** *The judge cannot interfere directly in these proceedings.* | **not lightly** *The court will not lightly interfere while an interim order is in place.*

• VERB + INTERFERE **have a right to** *Britain has no right to interfere in the internal affairs of other countries.* | **try and/to** *If you try and interfere in my life, I'll leave.* | **be reluctant to** *The courts are reluctant to interfere in these matters.*

• PREP. **in** *outsiders interfering in local politics* **with** *You mustn't interfere with her work.*

interference *noun*

• ADJ. **undue, unwarranted** | **gross** *I will not tolerate such gross interference.* | **bureaucratic, government, political, state** | **external, outside**

• VERB + INTERFERENCE **avoid, prevent** *The law is designed to prevent interference by local police.* | **tolerate** | **brook no** *My boss said she would brook no interference from other departments.*

• PREP. **without ~** *I told her I wanted to make decisions without interference from her.* | **~ in** *political interference in the legal process* **~ with** *interference with proper medical procedures*

interim *noun*

- INTERIM + NOUN **period** *The value of the property almost doubled during the interim period.* | **measure** | **agreement, arrangement** | **payment** | **award, damages** *The injured passenger received an interim award of £50 000 damages.* | **profits** | **figures, results** | **report** | **government**
- PREP. **in the ~** *Her job was done by her deputy in the interim before she returned to work.*
- PHRASES **on an interim basis** *The company uses the agency when a vacancy needs to be filled on an interim basis.*

interior *noun*

- ADJ. **original** *The original interior of the hotel has been replaced.* | **dark, dim, gloomy, shadowy** | **spacious**
- INTERIOR + NOUN **decorator, designer**
- PREP. **in the ~** *There is ample space in the interior of the car.*

interlude *noun*

- ADJ. **brief** | **romantic** | **peaceful, pleasant** | **musical** *a musical interlude between two the acts of the play*
- PREP. **~ between** *a peaceful interlude between periods of intense activity* **~ in** *He'd had two romantic interludes in a rather lonely life.* | **~ of** *interludes of calm*

intermediary *noun*

- ADJ. **financial**
- VERB + INTERMEDIARY **act as**
- PREP. **through an ~** *They were approached indirectly through an intermediary.* **via an ~** *The product is then sold to the end-user via an intermediary.* | **~ between** *She agreed to act as intermediary between the two tribes.*

interminable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** *The journey seemed interminable.*
- ADV. **seemingly** *For several seemingly interminable seconds no one spoke.*

Internet *noun*

- ADJ. **wireless**
- VERB + INTERNET **access, go on, use** *She likes to go on the Internet in the evenings.*
- INTERNET + NOUN **site, website** | **portal** | **bulletin board, chat room** | **magazine** | **auction, broadcast, link** *Thousands logged on to view the live Internet broadcast of the concert.* ◇ *The auction was held in Paris with an Internet link to New York.* | **cafe** *Travellers can check their email at the Internet cafe in the square.* | **domain** *Registering an Internet domain name is now an essential part of setting up a company.* | **access, usage, use** *unlimited/unmetered Internet access* | **connection** *a broadband/high-speed Internet connection* | **search engine, (service) provider** | **customer, user** | **traffic** *the laying of fast networks to carry Internet traffic* | **brand, group** | **services** | **arm, division, operation, subsidiary** *the bank's Internet arm* | **entrepreneur** | **analyst, expert** | **banking, betting, dating, shopping** | **bank, bookie/bookmaker, business, company, firm, retailer, start-up, venture** | **industry, sector** | **fraud** | **security** | **economy** | **file** *software for downloading Internet files* | **image** | **software** | **technology** | **age** *issues facing the music industry in the Internet age* | **boom, revolution** *Many of the sites launched at the peak of the Internet boom have now disappeared.*
- PREP. **on the ~** *More and more people are shopping on the Internet.*

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

interpret *verb*

- ADV. **correctly, rightly** | **wrongly** | **differently** *Different people might interpret events differently.* | **clearly** | **broadly, liberally** *The term 'business' is here interpreted broadly to include all types of organization in the public and private sectors.* ◇ *The strictness of the rules, even when liberally interpreted, has the effect of restricting innovation.* | **narrowly, restrictively, strictly** | **literally** | **metaphorically** *It is context and convention that determine whether a term will be interpreted literally or metaphorically.* | **easily, readily** *These figures cannot be easily interpreted.* | **cautiously** *These results must be interpreted cautiously.*
- VERB + INTERPRET **be difficult to, be hard to** | **be able/unable to** | **seek to, try to** *We all seek to interpret what we hear and what we read.*
- PREP. **as** *Her message was interpreted as a warning to the general.*
- PHRASES **be variously interpreted (as sth)** *The figure of the Ancient Mariner has been variously interpreted* (= interpreted in various different ways). **be widely interpreted as sth** *Her resignation has been widely interpreted as an admission of her guilt.*

interpretation *noun*

- ADJ. **correct, right, true, valid** | **erroneous, false, wrong** | **plausible, reasonable** | **simplistic** | **literal, narrow, strict** | **free, generous, liberal, loose, wide** | **alternative, competing, conflicting, different, diverse, multiple** | **artistic**
- VERB + INTERPRETATION **give sth, make** *In practice, this law is often given a wide interpretation by the police.* ◇ *Scientists made an interpretation based on the data available.* | **be open to** *The wording of this section of the contract is open to interpretation.*
- PHRASES **put an interpretation on sth** *It is possible to put an entirely different interpretation on her behaviour.*

interpreter *noun*

- VERB + INTERPRETER **act as** | **speak through** *Speaking through an interpreter, a Japanese fisherman gave his account of the tidal wave.*
- PREP. **~ for** *Susan acted as interpreter for us.*

⇨ Note at JOB

interrelated *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **closely** *The two problems are closely interrelated.*
- PREP. **with** *Feminist ideas are interrelated with philosophical ideas.*

interrogation *noun*

- ADJ. **police** | **further**
- VERB + INTERROGATION **conduct** *The interrogation was conducted by senior police officers.*
- INTERROGATION + NOUN **cell, room** | **methods, procedures, techniques**
- PREP. **during ~** *She revealed the name of her accomplice during interrogation.* **under ~** *Under interrogation, he refused to say anything at first.*
- PHRASES **power/powers of interrogation** *The committee has no power of interrogation.*

interrupt *verb*

- ADV. **impatiently** | **rudely** *What was I saying, before we were so rudely interrupted?* | **harshly, sharply** *'Don't talk like that!' he interrupted harshly.* | **brutally, cruelly, violently** *Their luncheon was brutally interrupted by gunfire.* | **abruptly, suddenly** | **temporarily** | **constantly, repeatedly** *The morning's work was constantly interrupted by phone calls.* | **occasionally, periodically**

- VERB + INTERRUPT **be sorry to** *I'm sorry to interrupt, but there's a telephone call for you.* | **(not) dare (to)** *It was all irrelevant, but I didn't dare interrupt him in mid-flow.*
- PREP. **with** *I thought it better not to interrupt her with any comment.*
- PHRASES **get interrupted** *I didn't manage to finish the report. I kept getting interrupted.*

interruption *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, minor, short, temporary** *The game continued after a short interruption because of rain.* | **major** | **constant, endless, repeated** *I found it hard to work with all the noise and constant interruptions.*
- VERB + INTERRUPTION **ignore** *He ignored her interruption and carried on talking.*
- PREP. **without ~** *Can I please have this conversation on the phone without interruptions?* | **~ from** *He continued speaking despite regular interruptions from the Opposition.* **~ to** *The birth of her son was a minor interruption to her career.*

interval *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, short** *She ruled for ten years, except for a brief interval.* | **long, wide** *You are advised to leave a wide interval before you have your next child.* | **decent**
- PREP. **at ~s** *At intervals a bell rings and workers stop for a drink.* | **~ between** *The intervals between his various illnesses grew shorter and shorter.*
- PHRASES **at fixed/frequent/periodic/regular intervals** *Trains run at fixed intervals.* ◇ *He returned home during the day at regular intervals.* **at hourly/weekly/fortnightly/monthly, etc. intervals** *Meetings are held at monthly intervals.*

intervene *verb*

- ADV. **actively, directly** | **personally** | **decisively** | **effectively, successfully** | **militarily** *Intervening militarily will not bring peace.*
- VERB + INTERVENE **be forced to, have to** *Eventually, the army was forced to intervene.* | **be reluctant to** | **be powerless to** *Local people feel strongly about the proposed development but are virtually powerless to intervene.* | **have the power to, have the right to** | **refuse to** *The UN refused to intervene.*
- PREP. **against** *They would not intervene against the rebels themselves.* **between** *She went over to intervene between the two men.* **in** *She was reluctant to intervene in a private dispute.* **on behalf of, with** *to intervene with the authorities on the prisoners' behalf*

intervene *verb*

1 become involved in a situation

- ADV. **actively, directly** | **personally** | **decisively** | **effectively, successfully** | **militarily** *Intervening militarily will not bring peace.*
- VERB + INTERVENE **be forced to, have to** *Eventually, the army was forced to intervene.* | **be reluctant to** | **be powerless to** *Local people feel strongly about the proposed development but are virtually powerless to intervene.* | **have the power to, have the right to** *Our government has no right to intervene.* | **refuse to** *The UN refused to intervene.*
- PREP. **against** *They would not intervene against the rebels themselves.* **between** *She went over to intervene between the two men.* **in** *She was reluctant to intervene in what was essentially a private dispute.* **on behalf of** *The King intervened personally on behalf of the children.* **with** *to intervene with the authorities on the prisoners' behalf*

intervention *noun*

- ADJ. **direct** *direct intervention to stop abuses of the environment* | **active, decisive, forceful** | **early, immediate, timely** *A full-scale riot was prevented by the timely intervention of the police.* | **effective, successful** | **limited** | **personal** *the Emperor's personal intervention* | **government, ministerial, official, state** | **external, foreign, outside** | **armed, military** *We would resist any armed intervention from outside in our country's affairs.* | **police** | **judicial, legal** | **medical, surgical** | **economic, political, social** | **divine, human** *The king saw this victory as the direct result of divine intervention.*
- VERB + INTERVENTION **make** *to make a forceful intervention in a dispute* | **call for, demand** *The prime minister was always demanding active intervention early on.* | **resist**
- PREP. **~ against** *armed intervention against the rebels* **~ by** *intervention by a senior judge* **~ from** *He was furious at this intervention from the press.* **~ in** *the government's intervention in the dispute* **~ on behalf of** *state intervention on behalf of the British film industry*
- PHRASES **the power/right of intervention**

interview *noun*

- ADJ. **face-to-face** | **telephone** | **group** | **in-depth** | **police** *a police interview with suspected terrorists* | **newspaper, press, radio, television** | **job** *I've got a job interview tomorrow.*
- VERB + INTERVIEW **carry out, conduct, do, hold** *The survey team carried out over 200 interviews with retired people.* | **do, give (sb), grant (sb)** *He's a very private man and rarely does interviews.* | **attend, be called for, have**
- INTERVIEW + NOUN **board, panel** | **techniques** | **procedure**
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *He said in an interview that he wanted to get married.* | **~ about** *The prime minister gave the paper an interview about his musical tastes.* **~ between** *an interview between the French Foreign Minister and the President of Egypt* **~ for** *an interview for the post of sales manager* **~ with** *He had an interview with United Biscuits.* ◇ *an interview with the Vietnamese leader*
- PHRASES **a round of interviews** *We're about to start the second round of interviews for the post.*

interviewer *noun*

- ADJ. **clever, experienced, good, skilled, trained** | **radio, television/TV**

intestine *noun*

- ADJ. **large, small**
- PREP. **along the ~, in the ~** *bacteria in the small intestine* **through the ~**
- PHRASES **the wall of the intestine**

intimacy *noun*

- ADJ. **genuine, real, true** | **close, deep, great** | **enforced** | **emotional, physical, sexual**
- VERB + INTIMACY **be capable of** *She isn't capable of real intimacy.* | **enjoy** (*formal*) *He enjoys an intimacy with the prime minister.* | **create, promote** | **develop** | **destroy** *The noise destroyed the intimacy of their conversation.* | **sense** *I sensed a close intimacy between them.*
- INTIMACY + VERB **develop**
- PREP. **~ between** *the intimacy created between student and teacher* **~ with** *A writer must develop an intimacy with the subject at hand.*
- PHRASES **fear of intimacy** *He was prevented from declaring his love by his fear of intimacy.* **a feeling/sense of intimacy**

intimidate *verb*

- VERB + INTIMIDATE **try to**
- PREP. **into** *The police had tried to intimidate him into signing a confession.*
- PHRASES **an attempt to intimidate sb, be easily intimidated** *He was not a man to be easily intimidated.* **feel intimidated** *She did not feel intimidated by him.*

intimidation *noun*

- ADJ. **physical, verbal | police**
- VERB + INTIMIDATION **be subjected to, experience, face, suffer** *Workers were subjected to intimidation as they crossed the picket line.*
- PREP. **~against** *intimidation against trade unions* **~by** *Workers continue to enter the plant despite intimidation by mass pickets.* **~from** *fear of intimidation from paramilitary organizations*
- PHRASES **an act of intimidation, a campaign of intimidation**

intolerable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | make sth** *The constant pain made her life intolerable.* | **consider sth, find sth** *I find his rudeness intolerable.*
- ADV. **absolutely, quite | increasingly | almost, nearly** *The job placed almost intolerable pressure on her.*
- PREP. **to** *The situation had become intolerable to him.*

intolerance *noun*

1 lack of tolerance
- ADJ. **racial, religious**
- VERB + INTOLERANCE **display, show**
- PREP. **~of** *The town began to show increasing intolerance of immigrants.* **~to** *the professor's intolerance to any views other than his own* **~towards** *the intolerance of local residents towards refugees*

2 inability to digest certain substances
- ADJ. **food | glucose, lactose, etc.**
- PREP. **~of** *intolerance of potatoes* **~to** *an intolerance to milk products*

intolerant *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, very | utterly**
- PREP. **of** *They are deeply intolerant of all opposition.*

intonation *noun*

- ADJ. **falling, flat, rising** *the rising intonation at the end of spoken questions* | **foreign** *He speaks excellent Spanish but with a distinctly foreign intonation.*
- INTONATION + NOUN **pattern**

intricacy *noun*

- VERB + INTRICACY **learn, master, understand** *I've never mastered the intricacies of cricket.* | **guide/steer sb through, steer sb through**

intricate *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **amazingly, extraordinarily, extremely, highly, very** *an amazingly intricate structure* | **quite**

intrigue *noun*

- ADJ. **international, political | court** *a tale of treachery and court intrigue*
- VERB + INTRIGUE **carry on, engage in**
- PREP. **~against** *The prime minister engaged in political intrigues against the king.*
- PHRASES **a web of intrigue**

intriguing *adj.*

- VERBS **be, sound** *It all sounds very intriguing.* | **find sth** *I found the story rather intriguing.*
- ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, highly, most, very | quite, rather**

introduce *verb*

1 tell people sb's name
- ADV. **formally, properly** *We have met before, but we haven't been formally introduced.*
- VERB + INTRODUCE **allow me to, can, let me, may** *Let me introduce myself.* ◇ *May I introduce my wife, Sarah?*
- PREP. **as** *He introduced me as a new member of the company.* **to** *She introduced me to her neighbours.*

2 start using/doing sth for the first time
- ADV. **gradually | rapidly**
- VERB + INTRODUCE **intend to, plan to, want to** *The local council plans to introduce new regulations on parking.* | **attempt to, try to** *She attempted in vain to introduce some order into the classroom.*
- PREP. **into** *New technology is rapidly being introduced into factories.*
- PHRASES **newly/recently introduced** *These measures have only been recently introduced.*

introduction *noun*

1 first use
- ADJ. **early, gradual, recent, widespread**
- PREP. **~into** *the gradual introduction of modern farming methods into traditional societies*

2 first part of a book/talk
- ADJ. **brief, short** *He began with a brief introduction.*
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *His mother is mentioned in the introduction.* | **~to** *the introduction to her latest book*

3 book for studying a subject
- ADJ. **excellent, general, useful** *It serves as an excellent introduction to 19th-century painting.*
- PREP. **~to**

4 telling people each other's names
- ADJ. **formal**
- VERB + INTRODUCTION **make** *I can never remember names, so I don't like to make the introductions.*
- PHRASES **a letter of introduction** *He gave me a letter of introduction to the manager.*

intruder *noun*

- ADJ. **unwanted, unwelcome | masked**
- VERB + INTRUDER **catch, disturb, find, startle, surprise** *He surprised a masked intruder in the kitchen.* | **deter, keep away/out** *Dogs can deter unwelcome intruders.* | **tackle** *He was stabbed when he tackled an intruder armed with a knife.* | **repel** *Staff were instructed to repel intruders with physical force, if need be.*
- INTRUDER + VERB **break into, force their way into** *Intruders had forced their way into the house.*
- INTRUDER + NOUN **alarm**
- PREP. **against ~s** *security measures against intruders*

intrusion *noun*

- ADJ. **media, press | unnecessary, unwanted, unwarranted, unwelcome**
- VERB + INTRUSION **resent**
- PREP. **~in** *I really resented his intrusion in a family matter.* **~into** *media intrusion into the lives of celebrities* **~on/upon** *an unwarranted intrusion upon the singer's privacy*

intrusive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | find sth**

- ADV. **extremely, very | increasingly | rather, somewhat | visually** *Planning permission was refused on the grounds that the proposed building would be 'visually intrusive'.*

intuition *noun*

- ADJ. **feminine, women's** *Her feminine intuition told her that he was unhappy.*
- QUANT. **flash** *It came upon him in a flash of intuition.*
- VERB + INTUITION **have** *She had an intuition that her mother wasn't very well.* | **rely on, trust, use** *She learned to trust her intuitions about other people's motives.*
- INTUITION + VERB **suggest sth, tell sb sth** *Intuition told me we were going in the wrong direction.*
- PREP. **by ~** *By intuition, he sensed what was wrong.* | **~ about** *an intuition about where to find wild strawberries* **~ behind** *the intuition behind her theory*

intuitive *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a highly intuitive thinker* | **purely | almost | fairly, quite**

invalid *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | make sth, render sth** *This action would render the agreement invalid.* | **consider sth, declare sth, deem sth, regard sth as** *The contract was declared invalid.*

invaluable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove | become | remain | make sb/sth** *His knowledge of the area made him invaluable.* | **find sth** *You will find their help absolutely invaluable.*
- ADV. **absolutely, quite**
- PREP. **for** *This technology is invaluable for pupils with poor sight.* **to** *Your support has been invaluable to us.*

invasion *noun*

- ADJ. **full-scale | military** *Latest reports are of a full-scale military invasion.*
- VERB + INVASION **carry out, launch, mount | repel, repulse | counter, resist**
- PHRASES **an invasion of privacy** *Having all those photographers in the house was a terrible invasion of privacy.* **fear of invasion, a threat of invasion**

invent *verb*

- PHRASES **newly invented** *using the then newly invented automatic rifle*

invention *noun*

1 new thing

- ADJ. **latest, new | modern | brilliant, ingenious, wonderful | successful**
- VERB + INVENTION **come up with, design | patent, register** *He failed to patent his invention and never made a penny from it.*

2 untrue story

- ADJ. **pure** *Most of what he says is pure invention!*
- PHRASES **power/powers of invention** *His powers of invention are somewhat limited.*

inventive *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **brilliantly, highly, very | quite**

inventory *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, comprehensive, detailed, full**
- VERB + INVENTORY **compile, draw up, make, produce, take** *The manager is compiling an inventory of all the hotel furniture.* | **list sth on**
- INVENTORY + VERB **list sth** *The inventory lists many rare items.*
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *There were no forks in the inventory.* **on an/the ~** *That lamp isn't listed on the inventory.*

invest *verb*

- ADV. **heavily** *The company invested heavily in new technology.* | **directly** *If you invest directly in the stock market potential profits are greater, but so are potential losses.* | **carefully, safely, wisely | tax-free** *We can invest your money tax-free abroad.* | **abroad, overseas**
- VERB + INVEST **be willing to** *Are you willing to invest the time and effort necessary to make the scheme work?* | **look to, plan to, seek to** *investors looking to invest in US companies* | **decide to | rush to** *When exchange controls were lifted Swedes rushed to invest abroad.* | **fail to** *The industry has failed to invest in new product development.*
- PREP. **in** *encouraging people to invest in pension plans* **with** *Her savings are invested with a building society.*

investigate *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, closely | extensively | fully, properly, thoroughly** *The allegations have not yet been properly investigated.* | **further | actively**
- VERB + INVESTIGATE **ask sb to, be called in to** *Police have been called in to investigate the complaints.* | **agree to, pledge to, promise to** *The company has pledged to investigate claims that its products are unsafe.* | **aim to, be designed to, seek to**

investigation *noun*

- ADJ. **careful, close, detailed | extensive** *The authorities conducted an extensive investigation into his tax affairs.* | **full, thorough | criminal, murder, police | scientific | government**
- VERB + INVESTIGATION **carry out, conduct, pursue** *Police are still pursuing their investigations.* | **launch | head, lead | complete**
- INVESTIGATION + VERB **reveal sth, show sth** *Closer investigation showed this idea to be untenable.*
- PREP. **on ~** *On investigation, the noise turned out to be only a door banging.* **under ~** *The singer is currently under investigation for possessing illegal drugs.* | **~ into** *Police have launched an investigation into the allegations.*
- PHRASES **the subject of an investigation** *The matter is the subject of a police investigation, and we have been advised not to comment.*

investment *noun*

- ADJ. **good, excellent, profitable, sound, successful, wise, worthwhile | bad, poor, unwise** *He lost a lot of money through poor investments.* | **high-risk, risky, speculative | safe | considerable, enormous, great, heavy, high, huge, large, large-scale, major, massive, significant, sizeable, substantial** *The president has called for massive investment to rebuild the country's economy.* | **low, modest, small | inadequate** *The country's infrastructure is crumbling because of inadequate investment.* | **maximum, minimum | additional, extra, further | gross, net | overall | new | necessary | strategic | direct | domestic, local | cross-border, foreign, international, inward, offshore, outside, overseas | long-term, short-term | initial, original** *an initial investment of $5 million* | **capital, financial | business, industrial, infrastructural, manufacturing | government, public, public-sector, state | corporate, insitutional | private, private-sector** *private investment in the health service* | **personal** *I had made a personal investment in time and energy.* | **emotional** *parents' emotional investment in their children*

- QUANT. **level, rate**
- VERB + INVESTMENT **make** | **attract, encourage, promote, stimulate** *a business plan to encourage new investment* | **increase** | **cut** | **recoup** *It took two years before I recouped my investment.* | **realize** *She felt the time was right to realize her investment, and sold all her shares.* | **spread** *When buying shares, it's wise to spread your investment over several companies.* | **protect**
- INVESTMENT + VERB **increase, rise** | **fall**
- INVESTMENT + NOUN **funds** | **levels, rates** *inadequate investment levels* | **scheme** | **decision** | **company, trust**
- PREP. **as an ~** *I don't really like modern art but I bought it as an investment.* | **~ from** *investment from American pension funds* **~ in** *investment in local industry*
- PHRASES **a loss on an investment** *losses made on investments in stocks and bonds* **a profit/return on an investment** *I'm hoping for a good return on my investment.*

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

investor *noun*

- ADJ. **big, large, major** | **ordinary, small** *Many ordinary investors stand to lose money in this affair.* | **potential, prospective, would-be** | **business, institutional** | **personal, private** | **domestic, local** | **foreign, international, inward, outside, overseas**
- VERB + INVESTOR **attract, encourage** *A stable firm is more likely to attract potential investors.* | **advise** *advising investors where to put their money*
- INVESTOR + VERB **buy sth, invest in sth** *Investors will be able to buy the shares from next week.* | **sell sth**
- INVESTOR + NOUN **confidence** *the need to restore investor confidence* | **protection**
- PREP. **~ in** *investors in plantation forestry* ◇ *(figurative) encouraging companies to become investors in people*

invincible *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** | **become** | **make sb** *a secret weapon that will make us invincible.*
- ADV. **almost, virtually** | **apparently, seemingly**

invisible *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain** | **make sb/sth, render sb/sth** *He wished that he could make himself invisible.* ◇ *It's interesting how women are rendered invisible in these statistics.*
- ADV. **altogether, completely, totally** | **almost, nearly, practically, virtually** | **largely** | **effectively**
- PREP. **to** *Infrared light is invisible to the human eye.*

invitation *noun*

- ADJ. **kind** | **formal** | **open** *We have an open invitation to use their holiday cottage whenever we like.* ◇ *(figurative) An unlocked door is an open invitation to any burglar.* | **dinner, party, wedding**
- VERB + INVITATION **get, have, receive** | **accept, take sb up on, take up** *We'd love to to take up your invitation to visit you some time.* | **decline, refuse, turn down** *I must sadly decline your generous invitation.* | **extend** *(formal)*, **issue, send, send out**
- PREP. **at sb's ~** *He is here to give a concert at the invitation of the British Council.* **by ~** *Membership of the club is by invitation only.* **from ~** *We got a wedding invitation from Shashi and Len.* **to ~** *Have you received your invitation to the exhibition?* ◇ *The head extended an invitation to all parents to come and see the school.*

invite *verb*

1 ask sb to do sth

- ADV. **formally, officially** | **cordially, kindly, warmly** *You are cordially invited to attend the annual parish meeting.* ◇ *She very kindly invited me to lunch.* | **personally** | **along, around/round/over, back, in, out** *They've invited us over for a drink.*
- PREP. **into** *As a child I was allowed to play in the garden at the Manor, but I never got invited into the house.* **for** *Let's invite them all for dinner.* **to** *Thank you for inviting me to the meeting.*

2 encourage sth

- ADV. **positively** *The hype and fervour surrounding the event positively invited scepticism.*
- VERB + INVITE **seem to** *The film seems to invite comparison with 'The Italian Job'.*

inviting *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, sound**
- ADV. **very** | **hardly, not particularly** *The house, with its boarded-up windows, was hardly inviting.* | **quite**

invoice *noun*

- ADJ. **original** | **final** *Please pay the final invoice within two weeks.* | **tax, VAT** *The seller has to issue a tax invoice.*
- VERB + INVOICE **issue, raise, send** | **get, receive** | **pay**
- INVOICE + NOUN **price, value** *The shipping costs can be as high as 50% of the invoice value of the goods.*

involve *verb*

1 make sth necessary

- ADV. **ordinarily, typically, usually** *Inventions typically involve minor improvements in technology.* | **inevitably, necessarily** *The reforms will inevitably involve a lot of new paperwork for teachers.*

2 include sb

- ADV. **actively, directly** *methods that actively involve students in learning*
- PREP. **in** *I didn't mean to involve you in all this.*

involved *adj.*

1 taking part in sth

- VERBS **be** | **become, get**
- ADV. **closely, deeply, heavily, intimately, very** *She became heavily involved in politics.* | **actively** *He wanted to be actively involved in school life.* | **directly** *Drugs were not directly involved in her death.* | **personally**
- PREP. **in** *He was involved in a road accident.* **with** *She first became involved with the organization in 1998.*

2 emotionally connected with sb

- VERBS **be** | **become, get**
- ADV. **deeply, heavily, very** | **personally** | **emotionally, romantically, sexually**
- PREP. **with** *I never wanted to get emotionally involved with him.*

3 complicated

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** | **become, get**
- ADV. **extremely, terribly, very** *It all sounds terribly involved and complicated.* | **rather**

involvement *noun*

- ADJ. **active, direct** | **close, deep, intense** | **full** | **day-to-day** *When she was promoted, she missed the day-to-day involvement with customers.* | **personal** | **emotional** *Nurses usually try to avoid emotional involvement with patients.* | **parental** *He encourages parental involvement in the running of school.* | **political** | **military** *The US government has ruled out military involvement in the region.* | **alleged** *He is serving a 15-year sentence for his alleged involvement in a plot to overthrow the government.*
- VERB + INVOLVEMENT **accuse sb of** | **suspect sb of** | **admit, deny** *Winters denies any involvement in the robbery.*
- PREP. **~ by** *The success of the venture may lead to in-*

volvement by other foreign companies. **~from** *The project needs full involvement from all members of the group.* **~in** *He was found to have a deep involvement in drug dealing.* **~with** *Her husband's involvement with another woman led to their divorce.*

iron *noun*

1 metal

- ADJ. **rusty | cast, corrugated, galvanized, wrought** *a hut with a corrugated iron roof* | **pig | scrap**
- VERB + IRON **make, produce, smelt** *Germany produced enormous quantities of coal, iron and steel.* | **be rich in, contain** *foods that are rich in iron* | **be made from/(out) of, be cast in** *a bridge made of wrought iron*
- IRON + VERB **go rusty, rust**
- IRON + NOUN **ore** *mining iron ore locally* | **bar, ingot | filings | industry | foundry, works | deficiency** *patients with iron deficiency* | **tablets** *I was put on iron tablets for my anaemia.*

2 tool

- ADJ. **cool, hot, warm | electric, steam | travel**
- VERB + IRON **use** *Use a cool iron on synthetics.*
- PHRASES **run an iron over sth** *I just need to run an iron over my shirt, then I'm ready.*

iron *verb*

- ADV. **beautifully, carefully, properly** *Her clothes were always beautifully ironed.*
- PHRASES **freshly/newly ironed** *a neat pile of freshly ironed shirts* **need ironing** *My jeans need ironing.*

ironic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | find sth**
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, heavily, particularly, very | quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | doubly | deliciously, suitably | tragically**

ironing *noun*

- QUANT. **pile** *There's a pile of ironing waiting to be done.*
- VERB + IRONING **do** *Who does the ironing in your house?* | **need** *This shirt needs ironing.*
- IRONING + NOUN **board**

irony *noun*

- ADJ. **great, heavy** *She tried to ignore the heavy irony in his voice.* | **gentle** *She congratulated him with gentle irony.* | **bitter, cruel, tragic | neat, nice** *It is a nice irony that the Minister of Transport missed the meeting because her train was delayed.* | **final, supreme, ultimate** *The final irony was that he became Minister of Education having left school at 12.* | **dramatic** (= in a play, when a character's words carry an extra meaning that the character is not aware of)
- QUANT. **hint, touch, trace** *He thanked us all without a touch of irony.*
- PREP. **by a … ~** *By a cruel irony, he died in a crash while returning home from the war.*

irrational *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | consider sth, regard sth as, see sth as | dismiss sth as** *He dismissed her fears as irrational.*
- ADV. **quite, totally, wholly | increasingly | somewhat | apparently, seemingly**

irreconcilable *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | remain**
- ADV. **absolutely, totally, utterly | apparently, seemingly** *a seemingly irreconcilable conflict*
- PREP. **with** *These practices are irreconcilable with the law of the Church.*

irregular *adj.*

1 not regular in size/shape/frequency

- VERBS **be, look | become**
- ADV. **highly, very | rather, slightly, somewhat** *The cells are slightly irregular in shape.*

2 not allowed according to the rules

- VERBS **be, seem, sound**
- ADV. **highly, most, very** *It would be highly irregular for a police officer to accept money in this way.* | **slightly, somewhat** *some somewhat irregular business practices*

irregularity *noun*

- ADJ. **serious | minor, slight** *a slight irregularity in the surface of the wood* | **widespread** *The newspaper claimed there were widespread irregularities in the election.* | **electoral, financial, procedural, voting** *Investigators found no evidence of financial irregularity.*
- VERB + IRREGULARITY **investigate, uncover**
- IRREGULARITY + VERB **occur, take place** *Irregularities occur when there is no central control.*
- PREP. **~in** *Auditors have uncovered serious irregularities in the accounts.*

irrelevant *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | make sth, render sth | consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as, view sth as | dismiss sth as** *These arguments were dismissed as irrelevant.*
- ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly, wholly | increasingly | almost, more or less, virtually | largely | rather, somewhat | simply | strictly** *The matter is strictly irrelevant at this point in the proceedings.* | **apparently, seemingly | ludicrously** *Ludicrously irrelevant thoughts swarmed in her head.* | **politically**
- PREP. **to** *Her statement is irrelevant to this case.* ◇ *It's all irrelevant to me.*

irresistible *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove | become | remain | make sb/sth** *The very high salary made the job irresistible.* | **find sb/sth** *You'll find our offer irresistible.*
- ADV. **quite, totally | almost | simply | apparently, seemingly** *Public spending has an apparently irresistible momentum.* | **somehow**
- PREP. **to** *His rugged good looks made him irresistible to women.*

irresponsible *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound | become | consider sb/sth**
- ADV. **extremely, grossly, highly, terribly, very** *This was highly irresponsible behaviour.* | **completely, totally, utterly, wholly** *He's fun, but totally irresponsible.* | **rather, slightly, somewhat | socially** *It is socially irresponsible to refuse young people advice on sexual matters.*

irrigation *noun*

- ADJ. **large-scale, small-scale**
- IRRIGATION + NOUN **project, scheme, system | canal, channel, ditch | pump**
- PREP. **under ~** *two million acres under irrigation*

irritate *verb*

- ADV. **intensely, really** *The noise was beginning to irritate me intensely.* ◇ *That man really irritates me!* | **slightly | easily** *She was moody at times and easily irritated.*

irritated *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, sound | become, get**
• ADV. **deeply, profoundly | thoroughly | increasingly | faintly, a little, mildly, rather, slightly | visibly**
• PREP. **at** *She was deeply irritated at being thwarted.* **by** *He was slightly irritated by her forgetfulness.*

irritation *noun*

1 feeling/cause of being irritated
• ADJ. **considerable, great, intense, major, serious, some | growing, increasing | mild, minor, slight** *the minor irritation of having to queue* **| constant**
• VERB + IRRITATION **feel** *He felt slight irritation at being kept waiting.* **| express, show** *He showed no irritation at the delay.* **| conceal, hide, suppress** *She made no attempt to conceal her irritation.* **| cause** *Such delays can cause considerable irritation.*
• IRRITATION + VERB **grow, rise** *She felt irritation rising in her.* **| show** *She didn't let her irritation show.*
• PREP. **in ~** *Gary shook his head in irritation.* **to your ~** *I found to my great irritation that I'd forgotten the film.* **with ~** *'Of course not' she said with some irritation.* **| ~ at** *our irritation at the delay* **~ to** *This is a major irritation to travellers.* **~ with** *her irritation with people who were slow*
• PHRASES **a feeling/sense of irritation, a source of irritation** *Traffic noise is a source of constant irritation.*

2 slight pain in part of the body
• ADJ. **intense, severe | mild | eye, skin** *a new cream to treat skin irritation*
• VERB + IRRITATION **cause, lead to** *The infection can cause intense irritation of the throat.* **| experience, get, suffer** *Stop using the cream if you get any irritation.*

Islam *noun*

• ADJ. **Shia, Sunni**
⇨ Note at RELIGION (for verbs and phrases)

island *noun*

• ADJ. **outlying, remote** *a ferry service to the outlying islands* **| coral, tropical, volcanic | desert, uninhabited | offshore** *His money is in an offshore island bank.*
• QUANT. **chain, group** *a group of tropical islands*
• ISLAND + NOUN **chain, group** *the island chain of the Outer Hebrides* **| home** *They were forced to leave their island home and start a new life on the mainland.* **| paradise** *the island paradise of Phuket*
• PREP. **on an/the ~** *He owns a house on the island.*
• PHRASES **the … coast/end/side/tip of an island** *The best beaches are on the southern tip of the island.*

isolated *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, feel | become, get | remain | leave sb/sth** *Without help, many elderly people would be left isolated.* **| keep sb/sth** *She kept herself almost isolated from her colleagues.*
• ADV. **extremely, very | completely, entirely, totally, utterly | increasingly, progressively | almost | largely | quite, rather, relatively, somewhat | effectively, essentially | apparently** *an apparently isolated incident* **| culturally, diplomatically, economically, geographically, physically, socially** *a culturally isolated community* ◇ *Unless a compromise could be reached the country would be diplomatically isolated on this issue.*
• PREP. **from** *a child who is isolated from other children*

isolation *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, total | enforced** *the enforced isolation of life in an Arctic weather station* **| diplomatic, geographical, political | international** *The country could face international isolation if it does not withdraw its troops.* **| emotional, social** *the social isolation of single mothers at home with their babies*
• VERB + ISOLATION **experience, suffer (from)** *Many immigrants experience isolation.*
• ISOLATION + NOUN **hospital, ward**
• PREP. **in ~** *The figures should not be looked at in isolation but as part of a pattern.*
• PHRASES **in splendid isolation** *The tower stands in splendid isolation on the cliff edge.*

issue *noun*

1 problem
• ADJ. **big, burning, central, critical, crucial, important, key, main, major, vital** *Europe remains the burning issue within the party.* **| wider** *The problem raises wider issues of gender and identity.* **| minor, side | basic, fundamental | real** *The real issue is where the power lies.* **| contentious, controversial, difficult, thorny** *the controversial issue of censorship* **| complex | live, unresolved** *The strike of ten years ago is still very much a live issue in the town.* **| domestic, global, international, local, national, regional | commercial, constitutional, economic, educational, environmental, ethical, health, moral, policy, political, social, technical, theoretical**
• QUANT. **number, range, series**
• VERB + ISSUE **raise | debate, discuss** *This evening we're debating the issue of the legalization of soft drugs.* **| decide, settle** *A referendum was held to settle the issue.* **| address, consider, deal with, examine, explore, look at, tackle | clarify | focus on** *We really need to focus on this one issue and not get sidetracked.* **| touch on** *The issue of birth control was touched on, but we need to examine it in more detail.* **| highlight** *The report highlights three issues.* **| confuse** *This argument should not be allowed to confuse the issue.* **| avoid, evade**
• ISSUE + VERB **arise** *issues arising from the survey* **| underlie sth** *A more important issue underlies this debate.*
• PREP. **at ~** *What you say is interesting, but it does not affect the point at issue here.* **on an/the ~** *She spoke on the issue of private health care.* **| ~ about** *fundamental issues about working conditions* **~ concerning** *issues concerning the environment* **~ relating to** *The conference examined key issues relating to the reform.*

2 one in a series of publications
• ADJ. **current | back | special** *a special issue of stamps*
• VERB + ISSUE **bring out, publish**
• ISSUE + VERB **come out, go on sale | be out**
• PREP. **in an/the ~** *an article in the current issue of 'Newsweek'*

issue *verb*

• ADV. **formally** *the bank which formally issues and handles these credit cards* **| directly** *The safest cheques are those issued directly by the bank—known as bankers' draughts.* **| jointly** *a document issued jointly by the Treasury and the Home Office* **| immediately, promptly** *He left the company and promptly issued a writ claiming $45 million in damages.*
• PREP. **against** (*formal*) *Arrest warrants were issued against 16 of the protesters.* **on behalf of** *a statement issued on behalf of the UN Secretary-General* **to** *The new guidelines have been issued to all doctors.* **with** *Some of the police were issued with rifles.*
• PHRASES **newly issued** *newly issued banknotes*

Italian *noun*

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

itch *noun*

• ADJ. **irritating**

- VERB + ITCH **relieve, scratch (at)** *The dog was scratching at an itch behind its left ear.*

itch *verb*

- ADV. **positively**
- VERB + ITCH **make sb** *The heat made me itch all over.*
- PREP. **for** *He was itching for a chance to show how good he was.* **with** *Her fingers positively itched with the desire to slap his face.*

item *noun*

- ADJ. **individual, particular, single, specific** *Each individual item has a number.* | **essential, important** *I keep essential items in my hand luggage when I fly.* | **main, major** *the main item on the agenda ◇ a major item of expenditure* | **expensive, valuable** *Several valuable items were stolen.* | **commodity, consumer** *Computers became a consumer item in the early 1990s.* | **luxury** *There is a higher tax on luxury items.* | **food** | **household** *household items such as brushes and bedclothes* | **collector's** *The 1970s American model has become something of a collector's item.* | **agenda** | **data** | **news**
- PREP. **~of** *Several items of clothing were found near the scene of the crime.* **~on** *The programme featured an item on clothes for young children.*
- PHRASES **item by item** *Check the list carefully, item by item.* **an item on the agenda/menu**

itinerary *noun*

- ADJ. **detailed, full** | **demanding** | **tourist**
- VERB + ITINERARY **arrange, plan** | **follow** *tourists following a demanding itinerary*
- ITINERARY + VERB **include sth** *Your itinerary includes a visit to Stonehenge.*
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *Historic sites are featured prominently in their itineraries.* **on an/the ~** *The National Gallery is on most tourists' itinerary.*

ivory *noun*

- ADJ. **solid** | **carved** | **poached**
- VERB + IVORY **be made from/(out) of, carve sth from/in** *a figure delicately carved in ivory* | **be inlaid with** *a table made of polished wood, inlaid with ivory*
- IVORY + NOUN **trade**
- PREP. **in ~** *a statuette in ivory and gold*
- PHRASES **the trade in ivory**

ivy *noun*

- ADJ. **dense, thick** | **trailing** | **variegated**
- VERB + IVY **grow** *We're going to grow a variegated ivy up the back of the house.* | **plant, put in** | **cut back, cut down, keep down** *The ivy's got very thick. It needs cutting back a bit.* | **be covered in** *The walls were covered in ivy.*
- IVY + VERB **grow** *Ivy grew up the side of the house.* | **climb, cling, crawl, creep, trail, twine** *There was ivy clinging to the wall.*
- IVY + NOUN **leaves**

Jj

jab *noun*

1 sudden hit/push
- ADJ. **left, right | hard, painful, sharp | elbow**
- VERB + JAB **give sb | feel**
- PREP. **~ in/to** *Scott gave him a sharp left jab to the ribs.*

2 injection
- ADJ. **flu, tetanus, typhoid, etc.**
- VERB + JAB **have** *Did you have a flu jab this year?* | **give sb**

jack *noun*

⇨ Note at CARD

jacket *noun*

- ADJ. **fitted, tailored | baggy, loose | heavy | light, lightweight | double-breasted, single-breasted | belted, zip-up | padded, quilted | bolero | waterproof, waxed | bulletproof | camouflage, check/checked, striped | corduroy, cotton, denim, fleece, leather, linen, sheepskin, suede, tweed, wool | pyjama, suit, uniform | bomber, combat, dinner, flak, flying, life, shooting, ski, smoking, sports** *He wore a tweed sports jacket.*
- VERB + JACKET **pull on, shrug (sth) into, shrug on, slip on, throw on** *She shrugged her shoulders into her jacket.* | **pull off, remove, shrug off/out of, slip off | button (up), do up, zip up | unbutton, undo, unzip | hang up | drape, sling** *A light cotton jacket was draped over her shoulders.*
- JACKET + VERB **hang** *His jacket hung over the back of his chair.*
- JACKET + NOUN **pocket, sleeve** *He pulled his passport from his inside jacket pocket.*
- PHRASES **a jacket and tie** *Gentlemen are requested to wear a jacket and tie for dinner.*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

jackpot *noun*

- ADJ. **£1 million, etc.**
- VERB + JACKPOT **get, hit, scoop, win** (*figurative*) *The National Theatre hit the jackpot with its first musical, 'Guys and Dolls'.*
- JACKPOT + NOUN **prize | winner**
- PREP. **~ in** *They scooped the jackpot in yesterday's lottery.* **~ of** *a prize jackpot of £100 000* **~ on** *He won the jackpot on the football pools.*

jail (*also* **gaol**) *noun*

- ADJ. **county, local | high-security, maximum security, top security | private | overcrowded**
- VERB + JAIL **go to** *He's gone to jail for fraud.* | **put sb in, send sb to, throw sb into | keep sb in | be freed from, be/get out of, be released from** *With good behaviour, she could be out of jail in two years.* | **escape from | threaten sb with** *He was threatened with jail if evidence of a hoax was discovered.* | **face | avoid, escape** *She avoided jail by pleading self-defence.*
- JAIL + NOUN **sentence, term**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *riots at Strangeways jail* **in (a/the) ~** *How long has she been in jail?* ◇ *There was a fire in the jail last night.*

jam *noun*

- ADJ. **home-made | plum, strawberry, etc.**
- QUANT. **dollop | jar, pot**
- VERB + JAM **make | spread (sth with)** *She spread the toast thinly with raspberry jam.*
- JAM + NOUN **jar | doughnut, sandwich, sponge, tart**
- PHRASES **bread and jam**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

jam *verb*

- ADV. **completely**
- PHRASES **be jammed full (of sth)** *The cupboards were jammed full of old newspapers.* **be jammed solid** *The traffic was jammed solid in the city centre.* **be jammed tight with sth** *The room is jammed tight with furniture.* **be jammed (up) with** *The streets were completely jammed with traffic.*

January *noun*

⇨ Note at MONTH

Japanese *noun*

- JAPANESE + NOUN **script | character**

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

jar *noun*

- ADJ. **screw-top/screw-topped | airtight, sealed, stoppered | sterilized | preserving, storage | earthenware, glass, stone/stoneware | coffee, cookie, jam, marmalade, pickle, sweet**
- VERB + JAR **fill** *He was filling a jar with coins for his holiday.* | **seal | preserve sth in, store sth in**
- JAR + VERB **be filled with sth, be full of sth, contain sth** *a jar full of pickled onions*
- PREP. **in/into a/the ~ | ~ of** *a jar of marmalade*

jargon *noun*

- ADJ. **current | incomprehensible, obscure | unnecessary | academic, computer, legal, scientific, technical**
- QUANT. **piece**
- VERB + JARGON **speak (in), use** *He always speaks in obscure legal jargon.* | **avoid**
- PREP. **in ~** *in computer jargon* | **~ for** *'All necessary means' is diplomatic jargon for 'war'.*

jaw *noun*

1 bone that contains teeth
- ADJ. **bottom, lower | top, upper | firm, strong | clenched, set | slack | jutting, lantern** (= in which the lower part sticks out), **thrusting | pointed, square | broken, dislocated, fractured**
- VERB + JAW **clench, set | finger, rub, stroke** *He fingered his jaw thoughtfully.* | **break, dislocate, fracture**
- JAW + VERB **drop, sag** *My jaw dropped in astonishment when I saw the size of the audience.* | **be set, clench, set, tighten** *Her jaw was set, ready for a fight.* | **jut** *His jaw jutted stubbornly forward; he would not be denied.*
- JAW + NOUN **bone, muscle | injury**
- PREP. **in your ~** *A muscle in his jaw pulsed angrily.* **on your ~** *He had two days' growth of stubble on his jaw.* **to the ~** *a punch to the jaw* **under your ~** *She had a fold of flesh under her jaw.*
- PHRASES **the line/set of your jaw** *The stern set of the officer's jaw made Tony realize he was in trouble.*

2 jaws mouth

- ADJ. **gaping, open | massive, powerful** *A shark can crush a boat with its massive jaws.* | **slavering** *The slavering jaws of the guard dog stopped anyone going near.*
- VERB + JAWS **clamp, close, lock, sink** *The dog locked its jaws on her leg and wouldn't let go.* ◇ *A spider sank its jaws into my ankle.* | **escape (from)** *The antelope could not escape the crocodile's gaping jaws.*
- PREP. **between its ~s** *The dog had his arm clamped between its jaws.*

jazz *noun*

- ADJ. **live | free/free-form, modern, trad/traditional**
- VERB + JAZZ **play | improvise | listen to**
- JAZZ + NOUN **music | clarinettist, guitarist, musician, player, singer, etc. | clarinet, guitar, vocals, etc. | band, combo, group, quartet, trio | improvisation | chords, rhythms | club, venue | festival | scene** *the rising stars of the New York jazz scene*
- PREP. **in ~** *harmonies and rhythms common in jazz*

jealous *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, sound | become, get, grow | make sb** *Ignore her—she's only trying to make you jealous.*
- ADV. **bitterly, furiously, insanely, madly, really, very** *I can remember feeling madly jealous when he was with other women.* | **a bit, a little, quite, rather | obsessively** *Peter was obsessively jealous and his behaviour was driving his wife away.* | **sexually**
- PREP. **about** *There's nothing for you to feel jealous about.* **of** *She was rather jealous of me.* ◇ *He had started to get jealous of her success.*

jealousy *noun*

- ADJ. **bitter, extreme, intense, obsessive, pure, violent | irrational | professional, sexual**
- QUANT. **fit** *He broke off the engagement in a fit of jealousy.* | **pang, rush, stab, twinge** *I felt a pang of jealousy.*
- VERB + JEALOUSY **feel** *She'd never felt jealousy before.* | **arouse, cause, create, provoke** *Her promotion aroused intense jealousy among her colleagues.*
- PREP. **~ of** *his obsessive jealousy of his ex-wife*
- PHRASES **feelings of jealousy**

jeans *noun*

- ADJ. **stretch, tight | baggy, flared | denim | black, blue | bleached, faded, stonewashed | patched, ripped, scruffy, torn | cut-off | designer**
- QUANT. **pair** *She pulled on a pair of faded blue jeans.*
- VERB + JEANS **pull on, pull up | pull off, strip off | zip up | unzip**
- JEANS + NOUN **pocket**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

jelly *noun*

- VERB + JELLY **eat, have | make** *Shall I make a jelly for pudding?*
- JELLY + VERB **set** *Put the jelly in the fridge to set.* | **wobble**
- PREP. **in ~** *fruit in jelly*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

jeopardize *verb*

- ADV. **seriously** *This scandal could seriously jeopardize his chances of being re-elected.*

jerk *noun*

- ADJ. **sharp, sudden | painful**
- VERB + JERK **give** *His thigh muscle gave a sudden jerk.*
- PREP. **with a ~ of** *She answered with a jerk of her head.*

jerk *verb*

- ADV. **suddenly | sharply, violently | convulsively, spasmodically | away, back, backwards, downwards, forward, round, up, upright, upwards** *She suddenly jerked her hand away.* ◇ *His head jerked up.*
- PHRASES **jerk awake** *The train stopped and she jerked awake.* **jerk sth open** *He jerked the door open.* **jerk to a halt/stop** *The bus jerked to a stop.*

jersey *noun*

- ADJ. **thick | polo-neck, V-neck, etc. | cashmere | football, rugby**
- VERB + JERSEY **pull on | knit**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

jet *noun*

1 plane with a jet engine

- ADJ. **jumbo | supersonic | commercial, passenger | private | business, corporate, executive | holiday | cargo | air force, fighter, military | low-flying**
- VERB + JET **fly, pilot**
- JET + VERB **fly | take off | land | crash, explode**
- JET + NOUN **aircraft, airliner, bomber, fighter, plane | engine | fuel | pilot**
- PREP. **by ~** *Australia was a mere couple of hours away by jet.* ◇ *She was flown by private jet to the capital Lusaka.* **in a/the ~** *He flew to Majorca in his private jet.*

2 stream of gas, water, etc.

- ADJ. **little | air, gas, water**
- PREP. **~ of** *Little jets of steam spurted from the engine.*

Jew *noun*

- ADJ. **devout, pious, practising, religious** *His family are all practising Jews.* | **secular | Hasidic, orthodox | Progressive, Reform | Ashkenazi, Sephardic**
- VERB + JEW **be born** *He was born a Jew in first century Palestine.* | **become**

jewel *noun*

- ADJ. **precious, priceless | bright, brilliant, sparkling**
- VERB + JEWEL **wear**
- JEWEL + VERB **sparkle**
- JEWEL + NOUN **thief | box, case**

jewellery *noun*

- ADJ. **expensive, valuable | cheap | beautiful, fine | costume** (= which may be designed to look expensive but is made with cheap materials) | **designer | antique | family, personal** *She inherited the family jewellery.* | **diamond, gold, etc.**
- QUANT. **piece**
- VERB + JEWELLERY **wear | make | design | steal**
- JEWELLERY + NOUN **box, case | shop | design | designer**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

jigsaw *noun*

- ADJ. **giant, huge | 200-piece, etc.**
- QUANT. **bit, piece** *One piece of the jigsaw is still missing.*
- VERB + JIGSAW **do** *I used to enjoy doing jigsaws.* | **piece together** (*figurative*) *The police managed to piece together the jigsaw and reconstruct the victim's last hours.* | **finish**
- JIGSAW + NOUN **puzzle | piece**
- PHRASES **a piece in a jigsaw** (*figurative*) *This is an-*

other piece in the jigsaw that will help us understand the biology of cancer.

jinx *noun*

• VERB + JINX **shake off** *The team seems to have shaken off the jinx that's been dogging them for months.*
• JINX + VERB **hit sb, strike sb** *The injury jinx has struck Real Madrid.* | **dog sb, haunt sb**
• PREP. **~on** *I'm sure there's a jinx on this car.*

job *noun*

1 employment

• ADJ. **high-powered, top** *It's one of the top jobs in management.* | **decent, good, worthwhile** | **interesting** | **plum** *The plum jobs all went to friends of the prime minister.* | **cushy** *His father found him a cushy job in the office, with almost nothing to do and a whacking great salary.* | **dream, ideal** *What would be your dream job?* | **boring, dead-end, menial, routine, undemanding** *He was forced to take a series of menial jobs.* | **challenging, demanding, difficult, taxing** | **highly-paid, well-paid** | **badly-paid, low-paid** | **full-time, part-time** | **9-to-5** | **regular, steady** *He was tempted to give up freelancing and get a regular job.* | **permanent, temporary** | **holiday, summer, vac/vacation** | **evening, Saturday, weekend** | **paid, unpaid** | **manual, non-manual** | **semi-skilled, skilled, unskilled** | **blue-collar, white-collar** | **desk** *a desk job in the police housing department* | **proper** *He'd done lots of part-time work, but this was his first proper job.* | **manufacturing, teaching**
• VERB + JOB **have** *She's got a very good job with a local firm of solicitors.* | **look for** | **apply for, go for** | **find, get, land, take** *She got a temporary job stacking shelves.* ◇ *He's just landed himself a highly-paid job in the City.* | **lose** *He's frightened of losing his job.* | **give up, pack in, resign from** | **hold down, keep** *He's always had difficulty holding down a job.* | **advertise** *I saw the job advertised on the Internet.* | **interview (sb) for** *We're interviewing for the job in the Sales Department.* | **give sb, offer sb** | **create, provide (sb with)** *It is hoped that the scheme will create new jobs in the region.* | **axe, cut, shed** *Management are hoping to shed 200 jobs.* | **protect, safeguard** *The deal between the union and management should safeguard 6 000 jobs.* | **do** *I'm only doing my job* (= doing what I am paid to do). | **know** *He certainly knows his job* (= is very good at his job).-
• JOB + VERB **pay** *The job doesn't pay very well.* | **go** *250 jobs are to go at the local steel plant.*
• JOB + NOUN **search** *The first step in a job search is to prepare an up-to-date CV.* | **ad, advertisement** | **vacancy** | **application** | **interview** | **title** *His job title is Chief Hygiene Operative.* | **description, specifications** *Cleaning the office is not in my job description.* | **market** *There is an enormous job market for teachers at the moment.* | **cuts, losses** | **creation** | **opportunities, prospects** | **satisfaction** *How would you rate your job satisfaction?* | **security** *Workers questioned rated job security as being more important than high salary.* | **hunter, seeker** *Local companies are holding an open day for job seekers.* | **sharing** *The introduction of job sharing could prevent the need for redundancies.*
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *There's not much chance of promotion in a job like that.* **on the ~** *You will receive training on the job.* **out of a ~** *She found herself out of a job when her boss died.* | **~ as** *She's got a job as a waitress.* **~ at** *She got a teaching job at the university.* **~ for** *jobs for women* **~ in** *a job in food retailing* ◇ *a job in a large firm* **~ with** *He moved to a better-paid job with another employer.*
• PHRASES **a loss of jobs** *The closure of the cement factory will mean the loss of over 800 jobs.* **the right person for the job** *Despite the small number of applicants, they managed to find the right person for the job.*

2 task

• ADJ. **admirable, amazing, excellent, fine, first-rate, good, grand, magnificent, marvellous, professional, terrific, thorough, wonderful** | **difficult, hard, tough** *They gave me the tough job of telling applicants that they'd been rejected.* | **easy** | **important** | **big, long** | **little, small** | **fiddly, tedious** *fiddly little jobs like wiring plugs* | **dirty** | **unenviable** *Cooper had the unenviable job of announcing the redundancies.*
• VERB + JOB **do, make** *You've done a grand job with that decorating.* ◇ *Try wedging it open—that should do the job* (= be effective/successful). ◇ *She made a very good job of covering up the damage.* | **have (on)** *You'll have a hard job convincing them that you're right.* ◇ *The builder has a couple of jobs on at the moment.* | **give sb** | **take on** *She's taken on the job of organizing the Christmas party.* | **get on with** *I want to get on with the job of painting my room today.*
• PREP. **~ in** *The author has done an admirable job in compiling all this material.* **~ of** *He made a very professional job of replacing the windows.* **~ on** *You've done a good job on the car.*
• PHRASES **get a job done** *We're hoping to get the job done this weekend.* **odd jobs** (= small, practical jobs) *I spend most Saturdays doing odd jobs around the house.*

3 crime

• ADJ. **bank** | **inside** (= done by sb in the organization where the crime happens)
• VERB + JOB **do** *He got six months for that last job he did.* | **bungle** *The gang bungled the job and got caught.*

NOTE

Jobs

be, work as ~
She's a well-known writer.
Her father, a trained chef, now works as a bus driver.
study to be, train as, train to be ~
She trained as a painter and sculptor.
start (work) as ~
He started work as a trainee chef.
become, qualify as ~
She qualified as a vet last year.
employ (sb as), have
The company employs more than 1500 engineers.
engage (sb as), get, hire (sb as), recruit, take on ~
They have recruited a new designer.
appoint, appoint sb (as), make sb ~ are usually used with academic, official or highly responsible jobs:
He was appointed Professor of Law at Yale.
At 39 she was made chairman of the board.
dismiss, fire, sack ~
The club have sacked their coach.
⇨ See also the note at PROFESSIONAL

jockey *noun*

• ADJ. **champion, top** | **winning** | **apprentice** | **amateur** | **jump** (= who rides in races that involve jumping) | **stable** (= who rides the horses of a particular trainer or training stable)
• JOCKEY + VERB **ride (sth)** *Which jockey will be riding tomorrow?* | **win (sth)** *The race was won by top jockey Eddie Andrews.*

jog *noun*

• ADJ. **brisk** | **slow**
• VERB + JOG **go for** *He goes for a brisk jog before work each morning.*
• PREP. **at a ~** *I began at a slow jog and gradually increased my pace.*

jog *verb*

• ADV. **slowly, steadily**
• PREP. **along, down, up** *They jogged steadily up the hill.*
• PHRASES **go jogging** *She decided to go jogging each morning.* **jog on the spot** *She was jogging on the spot to keep warm.*

join *verb*

1 become a member of sth
• VERB + JOIN **want to, wish to** | **flock to** *By this time people were flocking to join the cult.* | **decide to** | **persuade sb to** | **be allowed to** | **refuse to**
• PHRASES **an invitation to join sth**

2 do sth with sb else
• VERB + JOIN **wish to** | **invite sb to** *They've invited us to join them on their yacht.* | **be allowed to** *She was now old enough to be allowed to join the adults.* | **be expected to** *Thousands of people are expected to join the sponsored walk.* | **decide to** | **refuse to**
• PREP. **for** *Will you join me shortly for a drink in the bar?* **in** *I'm sure you will all wish to join me in thanking our speaker tonight.* **with** *Please will you all join with me in singing the national anthem.*
• PHRASES **come and join sb** *He waved a fork in greeting. 'Come and join us!'* **an invitation to join sb/sth**

PHRASAL VERB

join in
• ADV. **enthusiastically** *They all joined enthusiastically in the dancing.*
• VERB + JOIN IN **want to** | **refuse to**
• PREP. **with** *Everyone joined in with the singing.* ◇ *I wish he would join in with the other children.*

joint *noun*

1 in the body
• ADJ. **elbow, hip, knee, etc.** | **inflamed, painful, rheumatic, stiff, swollen** | **artificial**
• VERB + JOINT **replace** *He's going to have his hip joint replaced.*
• JOINT + VERB **ache** | **move** *The joint should be able to move freely.*
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *You've got fluid in the joint.* | **~ between** *the joint between the lower and upper parts of the arm*
• PHRASES **put sth out of joint** *She fell and put her knee out of joint.*

2 connecting point
• ADJ. **airtight, watertight** | **leaking**
• VERB + JOINT **make, seal**
• PREP. **~ between** *a joint between two lengths of copper*

3 piece of meat
• ADJ. **bacon**
• VERB + JOINT **cook, roast** | **carve**
• PREP. **~ of** *a joint of beef/lamb/pork*

joke *noun*

• ADJ. **funny, good** | **old** *That's an old joke—I've heard it lots of times.* | **cruel, sick** | **huge** | **dirty**
• VERB + JOKE **crack, make, tell** *He's marvellous at telling jokes.* | **play** *He's always playing jokes on people.* | **have, share** *She likes to have a joke with her employees.* | **hear** | **get, laugh at** *We all fell about laughing, but he didn't get the joke.* | **take** *The trouble is she can't take a joke.* | **treat sth as** *He treated his exams as a huge joke.*
• JOKE + VERB **fall flat** *The audience weren't very responsive and the jokes fell a bit flat.* | **be on sb** *I thought I'd play a trick on them, but in the end the joke was on me.*
• PREP. **as a ~** *It was only said as a joke.* | **~ about** *Have you heard the joke about the elephant and the mouse?*
• PHRASES **make a joke of sth** *We tried to make a joke of our situation, but it wasn't really funny.*

joke *verb*

• ADV. **half** *She was only half joking about being prime minister one day.*
• PREP. **about** *We joked about the amount of luggage we had to carry.* **with** *joking with her friends*
• PHRASES **be only joking** *Don't worry, I'm only joking!* **joking apart/aside** (= used to show you are now being serious after you have said sth funny), **laugh and joke** *They laughed and joked as they walked along.* **you must be joking** *No way am I doing that. You must be joking!*

joker *noun*

⇨ Note at CARD

jolt *noun*

• ADJ. **nasty, severe, sharp, sickening, sudden, unpleasant** | **little, slight**
• VERB + JOLT **feel** | **give** *My mother's death gave me a severe jolt.* | **send** | **receive** *She received such a jolt that she nearly dropped her cup.*
• PHRASES **with a ~** *The train started with a jolt.* | **~ of** *The blow sent a jolt of pain through his body.* **~ to** *His dismissal was a severe jolt to his pride.*

journal *noun*

1 serious magazine
• ADJ. **academic, learned, scholarly** | **professional, technical, trade** | **house/in-house** *the house journal of the South Western Gas Board* | **non-specialist, specialist** | **research, reviewing** | **business, literary, medical, science/scientific** | **august, highly-ranked/high-ranking, leading, major, prestigious** *'Nature' was the highest-ranked journal in the survey.* | **official** *It's the official journal of the Medical Foundation.* | **international, national** | **monthly, quarterly, weekly**
• QUANT. **copy** *Please send me two copies of your new journal.* | **edition, issue, volume**
• VERB + JOURNAL **read** | **edit, write for** *an academic who writes for specialist journals* | **produce, publish** | **buy, get, subscribe to** *She subscribes to quite a few academic journals.*
• JOURNAL + VERB **come out** *The journal comes out five times a year.*
• JOURNAL + NOUN **article** | **editor**
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *an article in a medical journal* | **~ of** *the British Journal of Geology*

2 diary
• ADJ. **private** | **daily**
• VERB + JOURNAL **keep, write** *Lady Franklin kept a daily journal of the voyage.* | **read**
• JOURNAL + NOUN **entry** *Her journal entry for that day describes a thunder storm.*
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *The events are all recorded in her journal.* | **~ of** *He wrote a journal of his travels.*

journalism *noun*

• ADJ. **good** | **professional** | **investigative** | **popular, tabloid** | **chequebook** (*disapproving*) | **magazine, newspaper, print** | **broadcast, radio, television** | **fashion, literary, medical, music, science, sports**
• QUANT. **piece** *a fine piece of investigative journalism*
• PHRASES **a career in journalism** *I'd like a career in journalism.* **the world of journalism**
⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

journalist *noun*

• ADJ. **brilliant, good** | **experienced** | **leading, well-**

known | professional | freelance | investigative | foreign | magazine, newspaper, print, tabloid | broadcast, radio, television | business, environmental, fashion, financial, literary, political, sports

• VERB + JOURNALIST **speak to, talk to, tell** *She was warned against speaking to journalists about the affair.*

• JOURNALIST + VERB **investigate sth | write (sth)** *a journalist writing for a current affairs publication* **| report (on) sth**

• PREP. **~ on/with** *an investigative journalist with a French newspaper*

⇨ Note at JOB

journey *noun*

• ADJ. **long, marathon | brief, short | outward | homeward, return | onward** *The bus driver told us where to change buses for our onward journey.* **| bus, car, rail, railway, train, etc. | five-mile, four-hour, etc. | comfortable, easy, good, pleasant, safe** *I hope you had a good journey. ◇ Have a safe journey.* **| arduous, awkward, bad, difficult, gruelling, hard, tedious, terrible, tiring, tortuous | dangerous, hazardous, perilous | overland | cross-country | daily | overnight | epic** *an epic journey across Africa on foot* **| wasted** *The library was closed when I got there, so it was a wasted journey.* **| emotional, sentimental, spiritual** *He made the emotional journey back to the house he grew up in.*

• VERB + JOURNEY **go on, have, make** *He wasn't there and we had a wasted journey.* **| break** *We broke our return journey in San Francisco.* **| begin, set out on | continue, resume** *They continued their journey on foot.* **| complete**

• JOURNEY + VERB **take (sb)** *The journey takes about five hours. ◇ His journey took him across central Asia.* **| begin | end**

• JOURNEY + NOUN **time**

• PREP. **on ~** *They were on a journey to the Far East.* **| ~ by** *a journey by air/bus/land/rail/sea, etc.* **~ across, ~ between, ~ down** *the journey down the Rhine* **~ from, ~ of** *a journey of 300 miles ◇ a journey of five days* **~ through, ~ to** *The bus journey from London to Athens took 60 hours.* **~ up**

• PHRASES **be tired after/from a journey, a leg/stage of a journey** *Dawn was breaking as we set out on the last leg of our journey.*

joy *noun*

• ADJ. **delirious, ecstatic, fierce, great, heady, overwhelming, pure, real, sheer, true, wild, wonderful | simple | sudden | inner | physical** *the physical joys of fine wines and gourmet foods*

• VERB + JOY **bring sb** *Her books have brought great joy to millions of people.* **| experience, feel** *the pure joy I felt at being free again* **| be filled with, be full of | express | find, get, take** *I find joy in many kinds of music. ◇ She got no joy out of working. ◇ I took a fierce joy in telling them the truth.*

• JOY + VERB **go** *All the joy had gone out of his life.*

• PREP. **to your ~** *She found to her joy that the house had a large garden.* **with ~** *I could have shouted with joy.* **| ~ at** *Protesters expressed joy at the government's decision.*

• PHRASES **dance, jump, sing, weep, etc. for joy** *I literally jumped for joy when I heard the news.* **a joy to behold, see, watch, etc.** *The children's expressions were a joy to behold.* **your pride and joy** (= a person or thing that makes you feel great pride or satisfaction) *The pride and joy of the town is the splendid castle.* **tears of joy**

Judaism *noun*

• ADJ. **Hasidic, orthodox | Progressive, Reform | Ashkenazi, Sephardic**

⇨ Note at RELIGION (for verbs and phrases)

judge *noun*

1 applies the law

• ADJ. **experienced | learned | senior | presiding, trial | deputy | appeal (court), appellate, circuit, county court, district, federal, High Court, Supreme Court**

• VERB + JUDGE **be, sit as** *By next year you could be sitting as a High Court judge.* **| appoint (sb as)**

• JUDGE + VERB **preside, sit** *Which judge will be sitting next week?* **| call sb** *The judge called the remaining witness for the Crown.* **| direct sb** *The judge must direct the jury on points of law.* **| consider sth | accept sth, admit sth** *The judge admitted the notes of the interview as evidence.* **| dismiss sth, refuse sth, reject sth** *The trial judge dismissed her compensation claim.* **| conclude sth, decide sth, find sth, hold sth, rule sth, uphold sth** *The judge held that the company had been negligent.* **| sum up** *The judge summed up and the jury retired to consider its verdict.* **| sentence sb | order sth** *The judge ordered the company to pay compensation to the claimant.* **| award (sb) sth, grant (sb) sth** *The judge awarded him damages of £20 000.*

2 decides who has won a competition

• ADJ. **competition | independent**

• QUANT. **panel** *a panel of independent judges*

• VERB + JUDGE **choose sb/sth, decide sth**

• PHRASES **the judges' decision** *The judges' decision on the entries is final.*

3 has the ability/knowledge to give an opinion

• ADJ. **astute, good, great, shrewd** *You are the best judge of what your body needs. ◇ a shrewd judge of character* **| poor | impartial**

• PREP. **~ of** *He is a good judge of footballing talent.*

judge *verb*

• ADV. **correctly, rightly | wrongly** *I think I judged the distance wrongly.* **| fairly, properly | harshly** *I think you're judging her rather harshly.* **| objectively | beautifully, carefully, finely, nicely, perfectly, well** *Their performance of the concerto was beautifully judged and finely controlled. ◇ 'There's something I haven't told you.' She judged her words carefully. ◇ The bowler judged it well, timing the ball to perfection.* **| accordingly** *Those who preach intolerance should be judged accordingly.*

• VERB + JUDGE **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to | be able to, be in a position to** *I am in no position to judge whether what she is doing is right or wrong.* **| learn to** *learning to judge distances*

• PREP. **according to** *He believed that schools should be judged according to strictly academic criteria.* **against** *judging his own performance against the performance of others* **by** *You will be judged by the work you have produced over the year.* **from** *The age of the furniture can be judged from the type of wood used.* **on** *Your slogan will be judged on its originality and style.*

• PHRASES **criteria for judging** *People use different criteria for judging success at school.* **don't judge a book by its cover** (*figurative*) (= don't judge sth by how it looks), **judge by appearances, judging by/from sth** *He seems to have been a popular person, judging by the number of people at his funeral.* **to judge by/from sth** *To judge from what she said, she was very disappointed.* **judge for yourself** *Readers are left to judge for themselves whether McCrombie is hero or villain.* **judge sth on its merits** *Each painting must be judged on its own merits.*

judgement *noun*

1 decision/opinion

• ADJ. **accurate | balanced | impartial, independent, objective | personal, subjective | intuitive | qualitative | harsh | snap** *I hate having to make snap judgements.* **| definitive**

- VERB + JUDGEMENT **form, make** *It's difficult to form a judgement when you don't have all the facts.* | **express** *Remember to be tactful when expressing a personal judgement.* | **confirm** *This latest case confirms my earlier judgement.* | **come to, reach** *It is too soon to reach any definitive judgement.* | **deliver, give, pass, pronounce** *The school inspector's function is not merely to pronounce judgement, but also to suggest improvements.* | **reserve, suspend** *The court reserved judgement on the two appeals.* | **obtain, win** *They obtained a judgement in their favour.* | **reverse** *They are trying to get the judgement reversed.* | **abide by**
- PREP. **in sb's ~** *What, in your judgement, would be the best way to deal with the problem?* | **~ about** *She must make her own judgement about when to go.* **~ against** *The sacked workers won a judgement against the company.* **~ as to** *Experience helps us to form judgements as to the best course of action in given circumstances.* **~ on** *I'm not equipped to pass judgement on such matters.*

2 decision making

- ADJ. **fine, good, remarkable, shrewd, sound** *Landing a plane requires fine judgement.* | **impartial, independent** | **impaired, weak** | **aesthetic, artistic, critical, ethical, moral, political, professional** *She has a reputation for sound professional judgement.*
- VERB + JUDGEMENT **display, show** | **rely on** | **respect, trust** *He trusted his wife's judgement.* | **doubt** | **back** *The company backed her judgement and implemented all her recommendations.* | **exercise, use** | **colour, influence** *He never allows any prejudices to colour his judgement.* | **sit in** *He felt he had no right to sit in judgement on someone he had only just met.*
- PREP. **~ about** *You will need to exercise your own judgement about what clothes to wear.* **~ in** *The speaker showed good judgement in his choice of topic.*
- PHRASES **an error of judgement** *Accepting the gift was an error of judgement on the part of the party chairman.* **a lack of judgement, a matter of judgement** *How much money you should invest is a matter of judgement.*

judo *noun*

- VERB + JUDO **do, practise**
- JUDO + NOUN **hold, move, throw** *She managed to get the man in a judo hold.* | **mat**
- PHRASES **a black, etc. belt in judo** *He's a black belt in judo.* ◇ *He's got a brown belt in judo.*

⇨ Special page at SPORT

jug *noun*

- ADJ. **measuring** | **china, earthenware, enamel, enamelled, glass, plastic** | **cream, milk, water, wine**
- VERB + JUG **fill, pour sth into** *He filled a jug with juice.* | **pour, tip** *She poured a jug of water over his head.* | **empty, pour sth from/out of**
- PREP. **~ of** *a jug of milk*

juice *noun*

- ADJ. **fruit, lemon, tomato, etc.** | **fresh, freshly-squeezed** | **concentrated** | **unsweetened**
- VERB + JUICE **extract, squeeze** | **strain** | **sprinkle** *Sprinkle the avocado slices with lemon juice.*
- PREP. **~ from** *The juice from the meat is used to make the sauce.* **~ of** *the grated rind and juice of two lemons*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

July *noun*

⇨ Note at MONTH

jump *noun*

1 movement

- ADJ. **little** | **running, standing** *Cats can clear two metres with a standing jump.* | **high, long, triple** | **bungee, parachute, ski**
- VERB + JUMP **make** *She made a jump for the river bank.* | **take** *He took a running jump and just managed to clear the stream.* | **do** *He's going to do a parachute jump for charity.* | **give** *Her heart gave a little jump at his smile.*
- PREP. **in the ... ~** *Allen won silver in the high jump.* **with a ~** *I sat up with a jump* (= suddenly.). | **~ into** (*figurative*) *The new law is a jump into the unknown.* **~ onto**

2 increase

- ADJ. **big, quantum, sharp** | **small**
- VERB + JUMP **make** *Is he good enough to make the jump into Formula One?*
- PREP. **~ in** *The sportswear company reports a jump in sales since the Olympics.*

jump *verb*

1 move off the ground

- ADV. **suddenly** | **about, around, back, down, in, off, out, up, up and down** *He was jumping up and down with excitement.*
- VERB + JUMP **try to** *He tried to jump back on board.*
- PREP. **from** *He had to jump from a first floor window.* **into, off, on** *Stop jumping on the furniture!* **onto** *She jumped up onto the table.* **out of, over** *Can you jump over that fence?* **through**

2 make a sudden movement because of surprise/fear

- ADV. **almost, nearly** *He almost jumped in surprise.*
- VERB + JUMP **make sb** *He crept up behind me and made me jump.*
- PHRASES **jump out of your skin** (*figurative*) *I nearly jumped out of my skin when he told me.*

jumper *noun*

- ADJ. **baggy, loose, sloppy** | **tight** | **heavy, thick** | **light, thin** | **cashmere, cotton, woollen, woolly, etc.** | **knitted** | **crew-neck, polo-neck, turtleneck** | **Fair Isle** *a Fair Isle jumper in navy and red*
- VERB + JUMPER **pull on** | **knit, make**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

junction *noun*

- ADJ. **busy** | **dangerous** | **motorway, road** | **railway**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *Turn off the motorway at junction 6.* | **~ with** *The college is on the Manchester road, by the junction with the A5.*

June *noun*

⇨ Note at MONTH

jungle *noun*

- ADJ. **dense, impenetrable, thick** | **tropical** | **concrete, urban** (*figurative*) *This outback area is a far cry from the city's concrete jungle.*
- JUNGLE + NOUN **warfare**
- PREP. **in ~** *a temple deep in the Brazilian jungle* **through ~** *They hacked their way through dense jungle.*

junior *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very** *a very junior officer* | **comparatively, fairly, quite, relatively** *She's quite junior in the organization.*
- PREP. **to** *John is still junior to me at work.*

junk *noun*

- ADJ. **old** *sculptures made from old junk and scrap metal*
- QUANT. **bit, piece** *There were bits of junk lying around.*
- JUNK + VERB **lie about/around**

- JUNK + NOUN **shop | room** *They cleared out the junk room to make a tiny bedroom.* | **heap | material** *He made the boat out of junk materials.*

junta *noun*

- ADJ. **ruling | civilian, military, revolutionary**
- VERB + JUNTA **form | dissolve, overthrow**
- JUNTA + VERB **appoint sb** *The civilian junta appointed a prime minister.*
- JUNTA + NOUN **leader, member**

jurisdiction *noun*

- ADJ. **limited | exclusive** *The commissioners had exclusive jurisdiction to decide.* | **civil, criminal, ecclesiastical**
- VERB + JURISDICTION **have, retain** *The court has no jurisdiction in this case.* | **exercise** *The court may exercise its jurisdiction to compel the husband to make a settlement upon his wife.* | **claim** *The offshore government claims jurisdiction over the mainland.* | **be subject to, come under** *He is subject to the jurisdiction of the English courts.*
- PREP. **beyond your ~** *She acted beyond the jurisdiction of any teacher.* **outside your ~** *The matter is outside the jurisdiction of UK administrative agencies.* **under ~** *The territory is still under Russian jurisdiction.* **within your ~** *The matter was not within the jurisdiction of the court.* | **~ over** *The senate committees have exclusive jurisdiction over the FBI.*

juror *noun*

- VERB + JUROR **swear in** *The jurors were sworn in.*

jury *noun*

1 in a court of law

- ADJ. **inquest, trial | unanimous** (only after **jury**) *The jury were unanimous in their verdict.* | **hung** *A retrial was necessary after the original trial ended with a hung jury.*
- VERB + JURY **serve on, sit on | tell** *Tell the jury what happened, in your own words.* | **direct** *The judge directed the jury to return a verdict of not guilty.* | **swear in** *The new jury were sworn in.*
- JURY + VERB **hear sth** *The jury heard how the boy had obtained a carving knife from a friend's house.* | **retire | consider its verdict** *The jury has retired to consider its verdict.* | **be out** *The jury is still out* (= still deciding). ◇ (*figurative*) *The jury is still out on this new policy.* | **agree (on) a verdict, arrive at/reach a verdict, give its verdict, return a verdict | convict sb, find sb guilty** *The jury convicted Menzies of assaulting Smith.* | **acquit sb, clear sb, find sb not guilty | award sb** *The jury awarded her damages of £30 000.*
- JURY + NOUN **service** *It was the second time he had been called up for jury service.* | **trial | foreman, member | system** *a review of the jury system*
- PREP. **before a ~** *The trial will take place before a jury.* **on a/the ~** *There were only three women on the jury.* | **~ of** *the jury of seven women and five men*
- PHRASES **trial by jury** *You have a right to trial by jury.*

2 of a competition

- VERB + JURY **choose, select** *The jury is selected from the winners in previous years.*
- JURY + VERB **judge sth | consist of sb** *The jury consisted of an architect, a photographer and an artist.* | **award (sb) sth, give sb sth** *The jury has awarded the prize for best exhibit in the show to Harry Pearson.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *He was on a jury judging a songwriting competition.*

justice *noun*

1 fairness

- ADJ. **economic, natural, social | rough** *He saw it as rough justice when he got food poisoning from the stolen meat.* | **divine** *Some people saw the epidemic as divine justice.*
- VERB + JUSTICE **ask for, want** *All I'm asking for is justice.* | **get | deny sb** *We have been denied justice for too long.*
- PHRASES **a sense of justice** *The teacher's system of punishments appealed to the children's sense of justice.*

2 law

- ADJ. **civil, criminal, juvenile**
- VERB + JUSTICE **do** *Justice must be done in every case.* | **bring sb to | escape** *So far the robbers have escaped justice.*
- JUSTICE + NOUN **department**
- PHRASES **a miscarriage of justice** *He spent twenty years in prison as a result of a miscarriage of justice.* **pervert the course of justice** *She was charged with perverting the course of justice after admitting to burning vital evidence.*

justifiable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become | consider sth, think sth** *We consider this action justifiable.*
- ADV. **entirely | commercially, economically | ethically, morally**
- PREP. **~ on the grounds of/that** *The cutbacks are justifiable on the grounds of cost.* **~ on … grounds** *The rule is justifiable on safety grounds.*

justification *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, every, some** *You have every justification for feeling angry.* | **the slightest** *She had not given him the slightest justification for thinking she was interested in him.* | **ample, sufficient | ethical, moral | intellectual, rational, theoretical | legal, political**
- VERB + JUSTIFICATION **give (sb), provide (sb with)** *She's unable to provide any justification for her actions.* | **see**
- PREP. **in ~** *the argument which he put forward in justification* **with ~** *He felt, with some justification, that he had been unfairly treated.* **without ~** *She was arrested entirely without justification.* | **~ for** *I can see some justification for her remarks.*

justified *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, prove, seem**
- ADV. **amply** *The suspicion proved amply justified.* | **completely, entirely, fully, perfectly, quite, totally | hardly | partially, partly | clearly | easily, readily** *a logical and easily justified decision* | **economically, financially, legally, morally, rationally, scientifically, theoretically** *Can her actions be morally justified?*
- PREP. **in** *She felt fully justified in asking for a refund.*

justify *verb*

- ADV. **really, truly** *Can you really justify the destruction of such a fine old building?* | **hardly** *The meagre result hardly justified the risks they took to get it.*
- VERB + JUSTIFY **can/could | attempt to, seek to, try to | need to | be difficult to, be hard to** *He found it very difficult to justify his decision.*
- PREP. **on the grounds of/that** *The decision is justified on the grounds that there is no realistic alternative.* **to** *How will you justify this pay cut to your employees?*

Kk

karate *noun*

- ADJ. **full-contact**
- VERB + KARATE **do**
- KARATE + NOUN **stance | jacket, suit | blow, chop, kick, punch | bout, competition, tournament | training | champion, expert | instructor**
- PHRASES **a black, etc. belt in karate** *She's a black belt in karate. ◇ She's got a brown belt in karate.*

⇨ Special page at SPORT

keen *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | remain**
- ADV. **awfully, desperately, especially, extremely, frightfully, mad** (*informal*), **more than, particularly, really, terribly, very** *He's mad keen on football. ◇ She's a very keen gardener.* **| not at all, not overly, not too** *The banks were not at all keen to lend to somebody who actually seemed to need money.* **| fairly, pretty, quite, rather | always** *She was always keen to hear the local gossip.* **| obviously | naturally, understandably** *She was naturally keen to make a good impression.*
- PREP. **for** *They were desperately keen for information.* **on** *Sally's quite keen on the idea.*
- PHRASES **as keen as mustard** (= very keen)

keep *noun*

- VERB + KEEP **earn** *It's time you did a job to earn your keep.*

keep *verb*

- ADV. **well** *Milk and cream should keep quite well in a fridge.*

kerb *noun*

- ADJ. **dropped** *Dropped kerbs make wheelchair access easier.*
- VERB + KERB **draw away from, pull away/out from** *The car pulled away from the kerb.* **| draw up at/to, pull in/over to | step off** *He stepped off the kerb without looking and was hit by a cyclist.* **| clip, hit | mount** *The car mounted the kerb and knocked over a pedestrian.*
- PREP. **at the ~** *I parked at the kerb and waited.* **on the ~** *They stood on the kerb waiting to cross the road.*

kettle *noun*

- ADJ. **electric**
- VERB + KETTLE **fill | plug in | have on** *Get yourself in, Pat, I've got the kettle on.* **| put on, switch on** *I'll just put the kettle on.* **| boil**
- KETTLE + VERB **boil** *She made herself a sandwich while she waited for the kettle to boil.* **| sing, whistle** *The kettle started to sing.* **| switch itself off**

key *noun*

1 for a door

- ADJ. **master, skeleton | duplicate, spare | car, desk, front door, house, ignition, etc.**
- QUANT. **bunch, set** *a large bunch of keys ◇ a set of car keys*
- VERB + KEY **turn** *She turned the key in the lock.* **| insert, put in | remove, take out | use** *She must have used a key to get in.*
- KEY + VERB **open, unlock** *You need a key to open the garage.* **| lock | turn** *They heard a key turn in the back door lock.*
- PREP. **with a/the ~** *You have to close it with the key.* **| ~ to** *the key to the front door*
- PHRASES **get a key cut** *I'll get another key cut so that you can have one.*

2 on a computer

- ADJ. **Alt, arrow, backspace, control, delete, escape, function, return, shift, etc. | shortcut** *F1 is the shortcut key for calling up help.*
- QUANT. **row** *the top row of keys*
- VERB + KEY **hit, hold down, press, touch** *Hold down the Alt key while pressing the arrow keys.* **| release**

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

3 explanation of symbols, etc.

- KEY + VERB **tell sb sth** *The key tells you what all the symbols mean.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *You can find the symbols in the key at the bottom of the page.* **| ~ to** *the key to the signs and symbols*

4 decisive factor

- VERB + KEY **have, hold** *First-time voters could hold the key to the election result.*
- PREP. **~ to** *Language is the key to understanding those around you.*

5 in music

- ADJ. **major, minor | high, low**
- VERB + KEY **change**
- KEY + VERB **change** *The key changes from C major to A minor.*
- KEY + NOUN **change | signature** *There are two sharps in the key signature of D major.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *What key's it in? ◇ Can we try it in a lower key?* **| ~ of** *the key of G major*

keyboard *noun*

1 set of keys on a computer, etc.

- ADJ. **British, Cyrillic, etc. | qwerty | computer, PC, typewriter**
- VERB + KEYBOARD **lock** *The program locks the keyboard until a password is given.*
- KEYBOARD + NOUN **operator**
- PREP. **on the ~** *Using the mouse is quicker than typing it on the keyboard.*

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

2 set of keys on a piano, etc.

- ADJ. **piano**
- KEYBOARD + NOUN **instrument**

3 electrical musical instrument

- ADJ. **electric, electronic**
- PREP. **at the ~** *Ed Duke was at the keyboard.* **on (a/the) ~** *He played the song on his keyboard. ◇ The recording features Herbie Hancock on keyboard.*

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

kick *noun*

1 act of kicking

- ADJ. **good, hard, hefty, painful | corner, free, goal, overhead, penalty, spot** (all in football) **| high** *an energetic performer using dance routines and high kicks*
- VERB + KICK **give sb/sth** *Give the door a good kick if it won't open.* **| get, receive** *He had received a painful kick on the knee.*
- PREP. **~ at** *a kick at goal* **~ by/from** *a kick from Maynard*

in the last minute of the game ~ **in** *a kick in the stomach* ~ **on** *a kick on the ankle* ~ **to** *a kick to the ribs*

2 feeling of great pleasure/excitement

• ADJ. **real**

• VERB + KICK **get** *He gets a real kick out of mending something so that it can be used again.* | **give sb** *It gave the youngsters a kick to see their own play on television.*

• PREP. **for ~s** *They don't really want the things they steal. They just do it for kicks.*

kick *verb*

1 hit sb/sth with your foot

• ADV. **hard, savagely, vigorously** *Don't kick the ball too hard.* | **deliberately** | **repeatedly** *Foster admitted punching and kicking the man repeatedly.* | **around** *The boys were kicking a ball around in the yard.*

• PREP. **against** *She could feel the baby kicking against her stomach wall.* ◇ *(figurative) Young people often kick against convention.* **at** *She kicked at the loose pebbles by the roadside.* **in** *They threw him to the ground and kicked him hard in the stomach.* **on** *She kicked me on the knee.*

• PHRASES **kick a door down/open/shut** *Suddenly the far door was kicked open.* **kick sb to death**

2 move your feet in the air

• ADV. **frantically, wildly** *He rolled over in the sand, kicking wildly.*

• PREP. **out at** *The horse kicked out at the yapping dog.*

• PHRASES **drag sb kicking and screaming** *The police had to drag her kicking and screaming out of the house.* **kick your legs/your legs kick** *The little boy was now lying on his back kicking his legs in the air.* ◇ *I was carried upstairs, arms waving and legs kicking.*

kid *noun*

• ADJ. **little, young** | **big, older** *The older kids had lessons in the afternoon as well.* | **cute, good, lovely, nice** | **poor** *I feel desperately sorry for the poor kid.* | **rich** *a spoilt little rich kid* | **local** *a gang of local kids* | **street** *street kids who rely on their ingenuity to keep alive* | **school** (also **schoolkid**)

• QUANT. **bunch, couple** *They're just a bunch of kids.*

• VERB + KID **have** *We both wanted to have kids.* | **bring up** *I've tried to bring my kids up to respect other people.* | **look after, take care of**

• PHRASES **just/only a kid** *He's only a kid. You can't expect him to understand what's going on.* **like a kid** *She was crying like a kid.*

kill *noun*

• ADJ. **easy, quick**

• VERB + KILL **make** *The lion made a quick kill.* | **be in at** *I didn't even get to see the fox, let alone be in at the kill.* | **close in for, move in for** *The hunters moved in for the kill.*

• PREP. **at the ~** *The meat is divided up among all those present at the kill.* **for the ~** *The animal crouched down, getting ready for the kill.*

kill *verb*

• ADV. **outright** *He has fought more than fifty bulls, killing three outright.* | **almost, nearly** | **instantly** | **accidentally** | **unlawfully**

• VERB + KILL **want to** | **be prepared to** *They are quite prepared to kill to achieve their ends.* | **threaten to** | **be going to, intend to** *(figurative) Mum's going to kill me when she finds out.* | **plot to** *plotting to kill the dictator* | **try to** | **help (to)** | **make sb** *It must have been really awful to make her kill herself.*

• PHRASES **admit/deny killing sb, be accused of killing sb, be charged with killing sb, be killed in sth** *soldiers killed in battle* **be tragically killed** *Their daughter was tragically killed in a road accident.*

killer *noun*

• ADJ. **big, major** *Overdoses were the single biggest killer among the city's young.* | **real** *I don't care what they ask me if it helps them find the real killer.* | **alleged** | **convicted** | **notorious** | **brutal, vicious** | **crazed, psychopathic** | **mass, serial** | **contract, hired** | **child, wife, etc.** *a convicted child killer* | **giant** *(figurative) Salford Juniors proved to be the giant killers in last week's semi-finals* (= by beating a much better team).

• VERB + KILLER **hunt, track down** | **catch, find**

• KILLER + VERB **strike** *The killer has struck again.*

• KILLER + NOUN **bug, disease, virus** *Heart attacks have become Britain's No. 1 killer disease.* | **instinct** *(figurative) He plays well but still lacks the killer instinct.* | **blow** *(figurative) Owen delivered the killer blow soon after half-time.*

killing *noun*

1 killing sb deliberately

• ADJ. **brutal, cold-blooded** *the cold-blooded killing of a defenceless woman* | **deliberate** | **indiscriminate, random** | **mass, serial** *This was the fourth mass killing in Australia in four years.* | **contract, gangland, political, revenge, sectarian** *a brutal revenge killing* | **mercy** *Should the law allow mercy killing?* | **unlawful** *(law) a verdict of unlawful killing*

• VERB + KILLING **be responsible for, carry out** | **order** *The Mafia ordered the killing.* | **prevent, stop** *It is difficult to prevent such killings.* | **confess to** | **deny** *The sentenced man had denied the killings.*

• KILLING + VERB **happen, occur, take place**

• PHRASES **a motive for the killing** *No motive for the killing has yet been established.*

2 making a lot of money quickly

• VERB + KILLING **make** *Investors are set to make a killing from the sell-off.*

kilo, kilogram, kilometre

⇨ Note at MEASURE

kin *noun*

• ADJ. **close, intimate, near** *Marriage between close kin is prohibited.* | **extended** *Ties with extended kin vary from family to family.* | **distant** | **female, male**

• KIN + NOUN **group, network** | **relationships**

• PREP. **between ~**

• PHRASES **next of kin** *One of the drivers was fatally injured; his next of kin has been informed.*

kind *noun*

• ADJ. **different, same** *She does the same kind of work as me.* | **all, another, any, some, various** *You need some kind of cover over it to protect it from the rain.* ◇ *We stock various kinds of lawnmower.* | **each, every** | **certain, particular, special** *Certain kinds of food are unsuitable for small children.* | **best, worst** | **right, wrong** *Be sure to eat enough of the right kind of food.* | **funny, odd, strange**

• PREP. **in ~** *The regions differ in size, but not in kind.* **of a ~** *You're making progress of a kind* (= some progress, but not very much, or not of the best type). ◇ *They're two of a kind* (= very like each other)*—both workaholics!* **of … ~** *books of every kind* ◇ *music of different kinds* **of its ~** *The new school was the first of its kind.* | **~ of** *a special kind of oil*

• PHRASES **a/the kind of thing** *Do you know the kind of thing I mean?* ◇ *They sell all kinds of things.* **a kind of way** *I missed him, in a funny kind of way.* **nothing/something of that/the kind** *'I was terrible!' 'You were nothing of the kind!'* ◇ *'He's resigning.' 'I'd suspected something of the kind.'*

kind *adj.*

• VERBS **be** *She was endlessly kind and sympathetic.*
• ADV. **especially, extremely, most, particularly, really, very | quite | endlessly**
• PREP. **of** *It really was most kind of you to help.* **to** *My boss has been extremely kind to me.*

kindness *noun*

• ADJ. **great | loving | simple | natural | unexpected** *This unexpected kindness touched her deeply.* | **human**
• VERB + KINDNESS **show sb, treat sb with** *They had shown him great kindness.* ◇ *They treated us with kindness and courtesy.* | **meet with, receive** *We met with much kindness and help.* | **appreciate** *I really appreciate your kindness.* | **repay** *I tried to think of a way to repay his kindness.* | **not forget**
• PREP. **out of~** *I went with her out of kindness.* | **~to/towards** *I'll never forget your kindness to me.*
• PHRASES **an act of kindness** *Show your appreciation by little acts of kindness.* **kindness itself** *She has always been kindness itself to me.*

king *noun*

1 male ruler
• ADJ. **rightful | anointed, crowned | uncrowned** (*figurative*) *He became the uncrowned king of the East End, scoring 28 goals in his first season.* | **deposed, exiled**
• VERB + KING **become | crown (sb), make sb, proclaim sb** *He was crowned king at the age of fifteen.* ◇ *The new king was crowned immediately.* | **depose, put aside**
• KING + VERB **reign, rule, rule (over) sb/sth** *The kings of Sicily also ruled over the southern part of Italy.* | **abdicate** *the king's decision to abdicate*
• PREP. **under a/the ~** *Life under the new king was very different.* | **~of** *the King of Spain*

2 playing card
⇨ Note at CARD

kingdom *noun*

• ADJ. **independent**
• VERB + KINGDOM **rule**
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *It was one of the richest towns in the kingdom.* **throughout a/the ~** *changes that were taking place throughout the kingdom* | **~of** *He ruled the ancient kingdom of Kaffa.*

kip *noun*

• VERB + KIP **catch, get, have** *Try to catch some kip while you can.* | **need**
• PHRASES **an hour's, a night's, etc. kip** *I was feeling much better after a good night's kip.*

kiss *noun*

• ADJ. **brief, quick, swift | lingering, long | gentle, light, soft | big, smacking | hard | sloppy | affectionate, loving, tender, warm | ardent, hungry, passionate | brotherly, chaste, friendly, innocent, sisterly | farewell, goodbye, goodnight**
• VERB + KISS **give sb** *He gave his daughter a gentle kiss on the forehead.* | **drop, plant, press** *She planted a big kiss on his cheek.* | **steal** *The children hid behind the bike shed to steal a kiss.* | **return** *She returned his kiss with passion.* | **deepen | blow (sb)** *As the train drew away he blew her a kiss.*
• KISS + VERB **deepen** *His kiss deepened and became hungrier.*
• PREP. **with a ~ | ~on** *He greeted her with a kiss on the cheek.*
• PHRASES **give sb the kiss of life** *A policeman pulled the man out of the river and gave him the kiss of life.* **hugs and kisses** *We were greeted with hugs and kisses.* **the kiss of death** *That TV commercial was the kiss of death to his career as a serious actor.*

kiss *verb*

• ADV. **gently, lightly | lovingly, softly, tenderly | deeply, fiercely, firmly, hard, hungrily, passionately, soundly, violently | briefly, quickly | lingeringly, long** *He kissed her long and hard on the mouth.*
• VERB + KISS **bend to, stoop to** *He bent to kiss her again.* | **try to | let sb**
• PREP. **on** *She let him kiss her lightly on the cheek.*
• PHRASES **kiss and cuddle** *The love-struck pair have been spotted kissing and cuddling at parties.* **kiss sb full on the lips/mouth, kiss sb goodbye/goodnight, kiss goodbye to sth** (*figurative*) *Well, you can kiss goodbye to your chances of promotion.*

kit *noun*

1 set of clothes/equipment
• ADJ. **combat, football, sports | first-aid, repair, sewing, shaving, survival, test, tool** *Check the acidity of the soil with a test kit.*
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *There should be a needle and thread in the sewing kit.*

2 set of parts
• ADJ. **construction**
• VERB + KIT **make up** *Have you made up the kit yet?*
• KIT + VERB **comprise sth, contain sth, include sth** *The kit contains everything you need to make six candles.*
• PREP. **from a ~** *They built the garage from a kit.* | **~for** *a kit for making candles*
• PHRASES **in kit form** *The doll's house comes in kit form.*

kitchen *noun*

• ADJ. **clean, spotless | dirty, grubby | big, cavernous, huge, roomy, spacious, vast | small, tiny | fully-equipped, fully-fitted, well-equipped | ultra-modern | fitted | stone-flagged, tiled | communal, shared | domestic, professional | mobile | kosher**
• KITCHEN + NOUN **area | cabinet, chair, counter, cupboard, drawers, dresser, fitments, fittings, sink, surface, table, unit, worktop | equipment, gadgets, implements, knife, scales, scissors, utensils | foil, paper, roll, towels | hatch** *We handed our trays through the kitchen hatch as we left.* | **fire, range, stove | facilities** *All our chalets have kitchen facilities.* | **waste | maid, porter, staff | garden** (= for growing food for the kitchen)
• PREP. **in a/the ~**

kite *noun*

• ADJ. **stunt** *John wants to fly his new stunt kite.*
• VERB + KITE **fly**
• KITE + NOUN **flying** *the joys of kite flying*

knack *noun*

• ADJ. **happy | uncanny | unhappy** *He had the unhappy knack of making enemies in the party.*
• VERB + KNACK **have | acquire, develop, get** *Once you get the knack, it's easy.* | **lose** *I don't cook much these days and I think I may have lost the knack.*
• PREP. **~for** *a woman with a knack for handling horses* **~of** *He has the knack of scoring goals just when they are most needed.* **~to** *Making omelettes isn't difficult, but there's a knack to it.*

knead *verb*

• ADV. **gently, lightly** *She gently kneaded the muscles in his back.* | **well** *Add the water and knead the mixture well.*

knee *noun*

- ADJ. **bony | bare | bent | drawn-up** *I rested my chin on my drawn-up knees.* | **arthritic, bad, dodgy, injured, stiff, troublesome, twisted**
- VERB + KNEE **bend | straighten | draw up | hug** *He hugged his knees to keep warm.* | **drop (down) on, drop to, fall on/to, go down on, sink to** *He went down on his knees and begged for forgiveness.* | **sit on** *She sat on her father's knee* (= lap) *while he read her a story.* | **sprain, twist | graze, skin | slap** *He slapped his knee as he rocked with laughter.* | **pat** *He patted her knee reassuringly.*
- KNEE + VERB **buckle, give way** *Suddenly her knees buckled and she fell to the floor.* | **knock, shake, tremble**
- KNEE + NOUN **injury, problem, trouble | operation, surgery | joint, ligament | socks | pad**
- PREP. **above the ~, across your ~s** *She had a blanket draped across her knees.* **at sb's ~** *The children had learnt these stories at their mother's knee.* **below the ~** *His leg was missing below the knee.* **between your ~s** *If you hear the crash-landing warning, put your head between your knees.* **in your ~** *He's snapped a ligament in his knee.* **on one ~** *I went down on one knee to plug in the vacuum cleaner.* **on your ~** *I balanced the pile of books on my knees.* ◇ *He was on his knees, searching for the missing spring.* **to your ~s** *The blow knocked him to his knees.*
- PHRASES **bring sth to its knees** (*figurative*) *The fuel shortage brought the country to its knees within weeks.* **on bended knee** (*figurative*) *She would ask for a rise, but would not beg for one on bended knee.*

knickers *noun*

- ADJ. **French**
- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + KNICKERS **pull down/up**
- PHRASES **bra and knickers**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

knife *noun*

1 tool for cutting

- ADJ. **blunt, sharp | long | bone, bone-handled, silver, steel | bread, butcher's, carving, craft, fish, flick, hunting, kitchen, palette, pocket, sheath, Stanley™, surgeon's, table**
- QUANT. **set** *a set of kitchen knives*
- VERB + KNIFE **pick up** *She picked up her knife and fork and started to eat.* | **lay down, put down | use** *Use a sharp knife to cut away the spare pastry.* | **sharpen | hold**
- KNIFE + VERB **cut** *That knife doesn't cut very well—it needs sharpening.* | **clatter**
- KNIFE + NOUN **blade, handle**
- PREP. **with a/the ~** *The lines can be cut with a craft knife.*
- PHRASES **the blade of a knife, the handle of a knife, a knife and fork**

2 used as a weapon

- ADJ. **long, sharp**
- VERB + KNIFE **be armed with, carry, have** *She carries a knife in her bag now.* | **brandish, wield | draw (out), produce, pull (out), take out** *He suddenly pulled a knife on me.* | **come at sb with, stab sb with, threaten sb with** *She stabbed him in the back with a 12-inch knife.* | **plunge, push, put, stick** *He plunged the knife deep into her heart.* | **sharpen, whet**
- KNIFE + VERB **cut | clatter** *As he fell, the knife clattered to the floor.*
- KNIFE + NOUN **attack** *a frenzied knife attack* | **wound | blade**
- PREP. **with a/the ~**
- PHRASES **the blade of a knife, the hilt of a knife hold a knife against/at/to sb's throat, a knife in sb's heart** (*figurative*) *Each word he uttered was a knife in her heart.* **put a knife to sb's throat** *She put the knife to his throat to frighten him into silence.*

knight *noun*

1 in the Middle Ages

- ADJ. **medieval | chivalrous, noble | armoured | mounted**
- PHRASES **a knight errant** *tales of medieval knights errant, wandering in search of chivalrous adventures* **a knight in armour, a knight in shining armour** (*figurative, humorous*) *She's still waiting for a knight in shining armour to come and rescue her.*

2 man given an honour by the king/queen

⇨ Note at PEER

knighthood *noun*

- ADJ. **honorary**
- VERB + KNIGHTHOOD **get, receive | refuse | award sb, bestow on sb, confer on sb, give sb, offer sb, reward sb with** *He was rewarded with a knighthood for his services to the government.*

knitting *noun*

- ADJ. **hand, machine | plain, purl**
- QUANT. **piece** *Sew the two pieces of knitting together* | **row** *I had to undo several rows of knitting.*
- VERB + KNITTING **do** *She sat doing her knitting while she watched television.* | **undo**
- KNITTING + NOUN **machine, needle | wool, yarn | pattern**

knob *noun*

- ADJ. **door | control, volume** *Adjust the control knobs by pressing lightly.*
- VERB + KNOB **adjust, fiddle with, touch, turn, twiddle** *I've tried twiddling the knobs, but nothing seems to happen.*
- KNOB + VERB **adjust sth, control sth**
- PREP. **~on** *the knobs on the radio*

knock *noun*

1 firm sharp sound

- ADJ. **loud, sharp | gentle, light | determined | timid**
- VERB + KNOCK **hear | answer** *She hurried to answer the knock at the door.*
- PHRASES **a knock at/on the door** *There was a loud knock at the door.*

2 sharp blow from sth

- ADJ. **hard, nasty, severe** (*figurative*) *the hard knocks of life* | **minor**
- VERB + KNOCK **get, have, take** *You've had a nasty knock on the head.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Their pride took quite a knock when they lost 5–0.* | **give sb/sth**
- PREP. **~on**

knock *verb*

1 hit/bump

- ADV. **accidentally** *I accidentally knocked the vase off the table.* | **about, aside, over** *Her boyfriend had been knocking her about.* ◇ *Mind you don't knock that glass over.*
- PREP. **against** *The stick knocked against the wall.* **off** *He had knocked one of the pictures off the wall.* **on** *I knocked my head on one of the beams.*
- PHRASES **knock sb/sth flying** *He was knocked flying as two policemen came crashing through the door.* **knock sb off their feet** *The explosion knocked him off his feet.* **knock sb out/senseless/unconscious** *The blow knocked him unconscious.* **knock sb to the ground**

2 bang on a door

- ADV. **loudly | softly | politely, timidly**
- PREP. **at** *Someone knocked loudly at the door.* **on** *She knocked timidly on the study door and entered.*
- PHRASES **without knocking** *Dobson walked straight into her office without knocking.*

knot *noun*

- ADJ. **loose, tight | granny, reef, slip, etc.**
- VERB + KNOT **do, tie** *Tie a knot in the rope.* | **undo, untie | loosen, tighten**

knot *verb*

- ADV. **securely, tightly | loosely | neatly | badly, clumsily | together** *I knotted the ropes together securely.*
- PREP. **around/round** *She knotted the scarf loosely around her neck.*

know *verb*

1 have information about sth
- ADV. **for certain, full well, perfectly well, very well** *I don't know for certain, but I think she lives in the next village.* ◇ *You know very well what I'm talking about!* | **honestly not** *I honestly don't know what they mean to do.*
- VERB + KNOW **let sb** *Please let me know* (= tell me) *if there's anything I can do to help.*
- PREP. **about** *He knows a lot about early music.* **of** *I don't know of anyone who might be interested in the job.*
- PHRASES **be widely known** *It is widely known that CFCs can damage the ozone layer.* **know a lot, nothing, very little, etc.**

2 realize
- ADV. **exactly, precisely** *I know exactly how you feel.* | **instinctively** *He knew instinctively where he would find her.*

3 be familiar with sb/sth
- ADV. **well** *I don't know John very well.* | **hardly** *But I hardly know the woman!*
- VERB + KNOW **get to** *She's very nice when you get to know her*
- PHRASES **be known to sb** *This man is known to the police* (= as a criminal). **be widely known**

5 **be known as** have a particular name
- ADV. **colloquially, commonly, popularly | affectionately, familiarly | collectively** *parts of the body known collectively as the sensory system* | **variously** *The drug is variously known as crack or freebase.* | **locally | formerly** *Xinjiang was formerly known as eastern Turkestan.*
- PREP. **to** *He was known as Bonzo to his friends.*

know-how *noun*

- ADJ. **practical, technical**
- VERB + KNOW-HOW **have | acquire, get**
- PREP. **~ about** *to acquire a little know-how about the job* **~ for** *He doesn't have the technical know-how for this kind of job.* **~ in** *know-how in various high-tech fields*

knowledge *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great, vast | complete, comprehensive, sound, thorough | deep, detailed, intimate, profound** *She has an intimate knowledge of the Asian market.* | **broad, encyclopedic, extensive, wide | unrivalled | expert, specialist | inside** *He managed to find contacts who had inside knowledge of the organization.* | **local | direct, first-hand | up-to-date | limited, rudimentary, superficial** *I have a limited knowledge of French.* | **general** *I don't like quizzes because my general knowledge is so poor.* | **factual | practical | working** *He has a good working knowledge of the subject.* | **professional | academic, linguistic, medical, scientific, technical, etc. | common** *It's common knowledge that he's left his wife.* | **public | full** *She had acted with her parents' full knowledge and consent.* | **previous, prior**
- VERB + KNOWLEDGE **acquire, gain | have | demonstrate, flaunt, parade, show (off) | test | apply** *The job gave her the chance to apply the knowledge she had acquired at university.* | **share** *The barman was happy to share his knowledge of wine with us.* | **spread** *The volunteers' task is to spread knowledge of how to prevent the disease.* | **broaden, extend, improve, increase | deny** *He denied all knowledge of what had happened.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *They put the car on the market in the full knowledge that it had design faults.* **to sb's ~** *He's never worked here to my knowledge.* **with sb's ~** *The letter was sent with the full knowledge of the head of department.* **without sb's ~** *She borrowed my car without my knowledge.* | **~ of** *a wide knowledge of antiques*
- PHRASES **a gap in your knowledge** *I did some research to fill in the gaps in my knowledge.* **to the best of your knowledge** *She still lives in San Francisco to the best of my knowledge.*

knowledgeable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound** *Her lawyer seemed very knowledgeable and experienced.* | **become**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very | quite, reasonably**
- PREP. **about** *He's quite knowledgeable about the theatre.*

knuckle *noun*

- ADJ. **bony | bleeding, bloodied, bruised, grazed, swollen**
- VERB + KNUCKLE **crack** *He rubbed his hands together, cracking his knuckles as he tried to control his anger.* | **bruise, graze, scrape, skin**
- KNUCKLE + NOUN **bone**
- PHRASES **rap sb on/over the knuckles** (*figurative*) *The Assistant Manager was rapped over the knuckles for criticizing the company in the press.*

Korean *noun*

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

kosher *adj.*

1 suitable to be eaten by religious Jews
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **strictly** *All their food is strictly kosher.*

2 correct/honest
- VERBS **be, seem** *It all seems kosher enough.*
- ADV. **strictly | enough**

kudos *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable | personal**
- VERB + KUDOS **acquire, gain | lose | bring** *Employees enjoy the kudos that the job brings as much as the financial rewards.*
- KUDOS + VERB **be attached to sth** *There was considerable kudos attached to being on the advisory board.*

Ll

label *noun*

1 paper, etc. attached to sth
- ADJ. **adhesive, sticky | designer** *clothes with a designer label* | **address, luggage | price | warning**
- VERB + LABEL **bear, carry, have** *It doesn't have a price label on it.* | **attach, put on, stick on** *She stuck labels on all the jars.* | **remove, take off | read** *Always read the label before taking any medicine.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *What does it say on the label?* | **~ on** *the label on the bottle*

2 description
- VERB + LABEL **apply, attach, use** *One sometimes feels that the label 'classic' is applied to any book that is dull.*

3 company that produces records
- ADJ. **record | major | independent**
- VERB + LABEL **sign to/with** *The band are hoping to sign with a major label by the end of the year.*
- PREP. **under a/the ~** *The record was produced under the Virgin label.*

label *verb*

1 put a label on sth
- ADV. **correctly, properly | wrongly** *Some of the plants were wrongly labelled.* | **carefully, clearly, neatly** *a pile of small plastic bags, each carefully labelled*
- PREP. **with** *The samples were all labelled with a date and place of origin.*

2 describe sb/sth as a particular thing
- ADV. **falsely, wrongly** *She was wrongly labelled a liar.* | **automatically**
- PREP **as** *She had automatically labelled the boys as troublemakers.*

laboratory *noun*

- ADJ. **up-to-date, well-equipped | commercial, industrial | school, university | biology, chemistry, physics, science | chemical, pharmaceutical | analytical, clinical, development, experimental, forensic, medical, nuclear, pathology, photographic, public health, quality control, research, testing**
- VERB + LABORATORY **build, establish, set up** *She has donated money to establish a pharmaceutical laboratory.* | **run** *He runs his own research laboratory.* | **work in** *They work in a laboratory studying growth patterns.*
- LABORATORY + NOUN **assistant, chemist, manager, scientist, technician, worker | apparatus, bench, equipment, facilities | animal | analysis, experiment, investigation, measurement, simulation, study, test, testing, trial, work** *laboratory tests on animals* | **science, subject | practices, procedures | data, evidence, findings, report, results | conditions, setting** *The athletes' reflexes were tested under laboratory conditions.* ◇ *simulated driving in a laboratory setting*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The effects of weathering can be simulated in the laboratory.*

labour *noun*

1 work
- ADJ. **manual, physical | forced, hard** *He was sentenced to four years hard labour for his crime.*
- VERB + LABOUR **withdraw** *The miners are threatening to withdraw their labour.*
- LABOUR + NOUN **market** *an increasingly competitive labour market*

2 workers
- ADJ. **cheap | casual | skilled, unskilled | child, migrant, slave** *It is thought that Stonehenge was built using slave labour.*
- LABOUR + NOUN **force** *the size of the labour force* | **cost/costs | relations**

3 giving birth
- ADJ. **difficult, easy | long, short** *The baby was born after a long labour.*
- VERB + LABOUR **go into** *She went into labour two weeks early.* | **induce** *Labour was induced when the baby was ten days overdue.*
- LABOUR + NOUN **room, ward | pains**
- PREP. **in ~** *She was in labour for ten hours.*

labourer *noun*

- ADJ. **casual, seasonal | migrant | manual | skilled, unskilled | general | agricultural, farm, rural | builder's** *He got a job as a builder's labourer.*
- QUANT. **gang** *Gangs of labourers dug the canals.*

⇨ Note at JOB

lace *noun*

1 for a shoe
- VERB + LACE **do, do up, tie** *He's still a bit young to tie his own laces.* | **undo, untie | loosen, tighten**

2 decorative cloth
- ADJ. **delicate, fine**
- VERB + LACE **knit, make** *a machine for knitting lace*
- PHRASES **edged/trimmed with lace** *a silk dress trimmed with lace*

lack *noun*

- ADJ. **profound, serious, severe | conspicuous, distinct, notable, obvious** *There was a distinct lack of urgency in his manner.* | **complete, sheer, total** *a complete lack of confidence* | **relative | abysmal** *an abysmal lack of knowledge*
- PREP. **by ~ of** *The situation was worsened by lack of communication.* **for ~ of** *They lost the game, but not for lack of trying.* **from ~ of** *She thought she would collapse from lack of sleep.* **through ~ of** *I've lost those skills through lack of practice.* | **~ of** *I couldn't hide my lack of enthusiasm.*
- PHRASES **no lack of sth** *There is certainly no lack of interest in the subject.*

lack *verb*

- ADV. **really | completely, entirely** *She completely lacks confidence.* | **apparently** *He apparently lacked the desire to learn.* | **clearly, conspicuously, manifestly, obviously | simply** *Perhaps you simply lack the intelligence to realize just how serious this is?* | **otherwise** *Her high-heeled shoes gave her the height she otherwise lacked.* | **somehow** *His claim somehow lacked conviction.*
- VERB + LACK **appear to, seem to** *His life seemed to lack direction.*

lacking *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem** *Her life felt lacking in direction and purpose.* | **find sth** *an area of policy where the government has been found seriously lacking*
- ADV. **seriously | altogether, completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly** *The book is altogether lacking in ori-*

ginality. | **a bit, a little, rather, somewhat** | **apparently** | **clearly, conspicuously, distinctly, notably, noticeably, obviously** *Tom was conspicuously lacking in enthusiasm for the idea.* | **singularly** | **curiously, strangely** | **sadly, sorely, woefully**
- PREP. **from** *the passion sadly lacking from his performance* **in** *Her remarks were curiously lacking in perception.*

lacquer *noun*
- ADJ. **protective** | **clear, matt**
- VERB + LACQUER **be coated with, be varnished with** | **apply, put on, spray on** *Apply the lacquer evenly.*
- LACQUER + NOUN **finish**

lad *noun*
- ADJ. **little, young** | **big, strapping** *He's a strapping lad—already bigger than his father.* | **handsome** | **decent, fine, good, great, lovely, nice, smashing** | **bright, sensible**
- QUANT. **bunch, group** *They're a nice bunch of lads.*

ladder *noun*

1 piece of equipment for climbing up sth
- ADJ. **rickety** | **wooden** | **loft, rope**
- VERB + LADDER **ascend, clamber up, climb (up), mount, go up** *He went up the ladder onto the deck.* | **come down, descend, go down** | **put up** *We put up the ladder and went to get the paint.* | **fall off, step off**
- PREP. **on/up a/the ~** *She was up a ladder mending the roof.* **down a/the ~** *I was standing lower down the ladder.* | **~ to** *the ladder to the gallery*
- PHRASES **the bottom/foot of a ladder, a rung/step of a ladder** *Several of the ladder's rungs were broken.* **the top of a ladder**

2 levels in a system
- ADJ. **evolutionary, social** *the people at the top of the social ladder* | **career, corporate, housing, promotion**
- VERB + LADDER **ascend, climb, move up** *She was anxious to move up the promotion ladder.* | **get onto**
- PREP. **higher up the ~** *creatures higher up the evolutionary ladder* **lower down the ~** | **~ of** *the ladder of fame* **~ to** *helping her on the ladder to success*
- PHRASES **get/have one foot on the ladder** *He finally managed to get one foot on the career ladder.* **a rung/step on the ladder** *the old problem of how to get onto the first step on the ladder*

laden *adj.*
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **heavily** *He took the heavily laden tray from her.* | **absolutely, fully** *The trees were absolutely laden with apples.* ◇ *a fully laden basket*
- PREP. **with** *They arrived laden with gifts.*

lady *noun*
- ADJ. **elderly, middle-aged, old, young** *A little old lady opened the door.* | **attractive, beautiful, lovely, pretty** | **charming, fine, lovely, nice** | **cleaning, dinner, tea** *The school employs four dinner ladies.*
- LADY + NOUN **friend** *We teased my uncle about his new lady friend.*
- PHRASES **a lady of leisure** *She's a lady of leisure now that she's retired.* **the lady of the house**

⇨ Note at PEER

lag *verb*
- ADV. **badly, seriously** | **behind** *She did well in her first year at school but then started to lag behind.*
- PREP. **behind** *Britain still lags badly behind the rest of Europe on this.*
- PHRASES **lag far/way/well behind (sb/sth)** *The Tories are still lagging way behind in the opinion polls.*

lake *noun*
- ADJ. **big, great, huge, large** | **little, small** | **deep** | **shallow** | **beautiful, lovely** | **blue** | **freshwater, salt** | **frozen** | **artificial, man-made, ornamental** | **inland, mountain** | **boating**
- VERB + LAKE **cross** *You should cross the lake before nightfall.*
- LAKE + NOUN **bed, water**
- PREP. **across a/the ~** *A ferry takes people across the lake.* **around/round a/the ~** *We walked around the lake.* **at a/the ~** *We had a holiday at Lake Como.* **in a/the ~** *Carp live in the lake.* **into a/the ~** *She fell into the lake.* **on a/the ~** *We went boating on the lake* ◇ *a cottage on the lake*
- PHRASES **the edge/middle/shores/side/surface of the lake** *There is a cafe on the other side of the lake.*

lamb *noun*

1 young sheep
- ADJ. **newborn** | **orphaned** | **sacrificial** (*often figurative*) *I am not going to be a sacrificial lamb on the altar of political correctness.*
- VERB + LAMB **fatten** | **kill, slaughter** *the traffic in illegally slaughtered lamb*
- LAMB + VERB **bleat** | **frolic, gambol**

2 meat
- ADJ. **spring** | **curried, grilled, minced, roast**
- LAMB + NOUN **chop, cutlet** | **casserole, curry, stew**
- PHRASES **breast/leg/neck/rack/shoulder of lamb**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

lame *adj.*
- VERBS **be, look** | **go** *His horse had gone lame.* | **leave sb, make sb** *an accident which had left him lame*
- ADV. **completely, quite** | **slightly**

lamp *noun*
- ADJ. **bedside, desk, reading, standard, table** | **gas, oil, paraffin**
- VERB + LAMP **light, switch on, turn on** | **switch off, turn off**
- LAMP + VERB **burn, glow, shine** *An oil lamp burned in the darkness.* | **flicker, go out**

land *noun*

1 surface of the earth
- ADJ. **dry** *It was good to be on dry land again after months at sea.*
- VERB + LAND **reach** *The explorers reached land after a long voyage.* | **sight** *In the distance the crew sighted land.* | **reclaim** *The new project will reclaim the land from the sea.*
- LAND + NOUN **mass** *chains of volcanoes running along the edge of continental land masses* | **animal, mammal** | **battle, war** | **forces** *With the land forces defeated, everything now rested on the navy.*
- PREP. **by ~** *It's impossible to reach this beach by land because of the high cliffs.* **on ~** *Some animals can live both on land and in water.*

2 piece of ground
- ADJ. **good, prime** *prime building land* | **fertile, rich** *rich agricultural land* ◇ *land that is rich in mineral deposits* | **marginal, poor** *animals grazing on marginal land that was previously heath or moorland* | **arid, dry, hard, parched** *The land was very dry and hard after the long, hot summer.* | **marshy** | **barren** | **derelict, waste** (also **wasteland**) *A new shopping centre will be built on the derelict land.* | **contaminated** | **empty, unused, va-**

cant | **uncultivated, virgin, wild** | **agricultural, arable, cultivated, farm** (also **farmland**), **farming** | **grazing** | **industrial** | **building, housing** | **green belt** | **rural, urban** | **private** | **public** | **common** *This used to be common land, where everyone had the right to graze animals.* | **open** *They finally got out of the town and reached open land.* | **flat, low-lying** | **hill, undulating** | **coastal, forest, meadow**

- QUANT. **parcel, piece, plot, scrap, strip, tract** *Every scrap of land is used for growing food.* ◇ *The college owns vast tracts of land.*
- VERB + LAND **have, hold, own** *The inhabitants of a village held land in common.* | **acquire, buy, purchase** | **sell** | **cultivate, farm, plough, work** | **irrigate** | **clear** *The land has been cleared ready for building.* | **develop** *They were refused permission to develop the land.* | **occupy** *During the war their lands were occupied by the enemy.* | **seize** | **allocate, distribute, redistribute** | **grant sb** *He was granted land by the king.*
- LAND + VERB **adjoin sth** *a piece of land adjoining a disused railway line*
- LAND + NOUN **owner, ownership** | **acquisition, purchase** | **reclamation** | **development** | **use** | **prices, values** | **dispute**

3 the land farming land

- VERB + LAND **live off** *It's very fertile countryside where you can just live off the land.* | **farm, work (on)** *His family had always worked the land.* | **leave** *Many people leave the land to find work in towns and cities.* | **get/go back to** *He's tired of living in cities, and wants to get back to the land.*

4 country

- ADJ. **ancestral, native** *the tribe's ancestral lands* | **distant** *He travelled to many distant lands.* | **alien, foreign, strange** *She was all alone in a strange land.* | **promised** (*often figurative*) *the promised land of progressive education* | **cloud cuckoo, never-never** (*both figurative*) *Anyone who thinks this legislation will be effective is living in cloud cuckoo land.*

land *verb*

1 of an aircraft

- ADV. **safely** *The pilot managed to land the plane safely.*
- VERB + LAND **be due to** | **come down to** *The plane slowly came down to land.* | **be forced to** *The plane was forced to land in a nearby field.* | **manage to**
- PREP. **at** *We are due to land at Heathrow at 12.15.*

2 fall to the ground

- ADV. **awkwardly, badly** *I landed awkwardly and twisted my ankle.* | **expertly, neatly** *He tensed himself for the jump and landed expertly on the other side.* | **heavily** | **lightly**
- PREP. **on** *She fell and landed heavily on her back.*

landing *noun*

1 of an aircraft

- ADJ. **abrupt, bumpy** | **crash, emergency, forced** | **gentle, safe, smooth, soft**
- VERB + LANDING **make** *The pilot had to make an emergency landing in a field.*
- LANDING + NOUN **strip**

2 top of a staircase

- ADJ. **first-floor, second-floor, etc.**
- PREP. **off the ~** *The room opens off the landing.* **on the ~** *There's a phone on the landing outside your room.*

landlady, **landlord** *noun*

1 sb who lets a house/room

- ADJ. **resident** | **absentee** *The house has an absentee landlord, who visits the property once a year.*

2 sb who owns/runs a pub

- ADJ. **pub** *He left the army and became a pub landlord.*
- LANDLADY, LANDLORD + VERB **serve sb** *The landlady came over to serve me.*

landmark *noun*

1 feature of the landscape

- ADJ. **distinctive, prominent** | **famous, well-known** | **familiar** *After twenty years, all the familiar landmarks had disappeared.* | **local** | **historic**
- VERB + LANDMARK **recognize**
- PREP. **~ for** *The tower was once a landmark for ships.*

2 important stage in the development of sth

- ADJ. **great, important, major, significant**
- VERB + LANDMARK **be, represent** *The Russian Revolution represents a landmark in world history.*
- LANDMARK + NOUN **decision, ruling** *a landmark decision on the legal status of a foetus* | **case**
- PREP. **~ in** *The film is an important landmark in the history of the cinema.*

landscape *noun*

- VERB + LANDSLIDE **barren, bleak, dramatic, rocky, rugged** *the dramatic landscape of the desert* | **beautiful** | **rural, urban** *an urban landscape of factories and skyscrapers* | **industrial** | **winter** | **lunar** | **political, social** (*both figurative*) *The political landscape of the country has changed since unemployment rose.*
- VERB + LANDSCAPE **conserve, preserve, protect** *the need to conserve the rural landscape* | **dominate** *The power station dominates the landscape.*
- LANDSCAPE + NOUN **architect, gardener** | **design, gardening** | **painter, photographer** | **painting**

landslide *noun*

1 fall of earth or rocks

- VERB + LANDSLIDE **cause** *The floods caused a landslide.*
- LANDSLIDE + VERB **destroy sth** *The village was destroyed by a landslide.*

2 election victory

- ADJ. **electoral** *Nobody predicted such an electoral landslide.* | **Conservative, Labour, etc.**
- VERB + LANDSLIDE **win by** *The National Party won by a landslide.*
- LANDSLIDE + NOUN **victory**

lane *noun*

1 narrow road

- ADJ. **little, narrow, single-track, small** | **quiet** | **bumpy, rough** | **dusty, muddy** | **twisting, winding** | **grassy, green, leafy** | **cobbled** | **country** | **back** *Lighting is poor in the back lanes of the city.*
- VERB + LANE **turn down/into**
- LANE + VERB **go, lead, run** *the lane leading to the village* ◇ *The lane runs past the the lake.*
- PREP. **along a/the ~** *We cycled for miles along winding country lanes.* **down a/the ~, in a/the ~, up a/the ~**

2 part of a wide road for one line of traffic

- ADJ. **fast, slow** | **inside, left-hand, middle, outside, right-hand** | **overtaking** | **northbound, southbound, etc.** | **traffic** | **bus, cycle**
- VERB + LANE **change, get in** *I hate changing lanes on the motorway.* ◇ *Get in lane early when approaching a junction.* | **keep in, stay in**
- LANE + NOUN **closures, restrictions** *Lane closures are causing hold-ups on the M6 near junction 2.*
- PREP. **in (the) ~** *The bus was crawling along in the slow lane.*

NOTE
Language

excellent, fluent, good, perfect ~
He speaks fluent Japanese.
bad, broken, poor ~
I got by with broken Chinese and sign language.
colloquial, idiomatic, non-standard, pidgin, standard ~
The inhabitants speak a kind of pidgin Spanish.
spoken, written ~
My spoken Polish is better than my written Polish.
business ~
She is doing a course in business English.
original ~
The fable is translated from the original French.
know, read, speak, understand, use ~
I am more comfortable using Spanish, if you don't mind.
be fluent in ~
She was fluent in German, Urdu and Swahili.
do, learn ~
I did German at school but I've forgotten most of it.
I've been learning Arabic for four years.
improve, practise ~
I spent a month in Rome to improve my Italian.
master ~
I never really mastered Latin.
translate sth into ~
He has translated her latest book into Korean.
~ class, course, lesson
I'm late for my Russian class.
~ interpreter, speaker, a speaker of ~
the need for Gujarati interpreters
a command/knowledge of ~
He has a poor command of English.
in ~
What is 'apple' in French?
He addressed me in his best Portuguese.
⇨ See also the note at SUBJECT

language *noun*

1 system of communication
- ADJ. **first, native** *She grew up in Spain, so her first language is Spanish.* | **foreign, second** *How many foreign languages does she speak?* ◇ *the teaching of English as a second language* | **original** *Most local cinemas show films in the original language, with German subtitles.* | **source, target** (*both technical*) | **ancient, classical, dead** *Latin is a dead language.* | **modern** | **common, shared** | **indigenous, local** | **official** *Belgium has two official languages.* | **national** *Portuguese is the national language of Brazil.* | **international** | **minority** *Some minority languages are dying out.* | **spoken, written** *She could speak some Chinese, but never studied the written language.* | **colloquial, everyday, informal** | **formal** | **flowery, literary, poetic** | **racist, sexist** | **sign** *Not all deaf people use sign language.* | **body, non-verbal** *You could tell from his body language that he was very embarrassed.* | **legal, technical, etc.** | **computer, programming**
- VERB + LANGUAGE **speak** | **understand** | **use** | **learn, study** | **master** | **be couched in, be expressed in** | **enrich** *idiomatic expressions that enrich the language*
- LANGUAGE + NOUN **acquisition, learning** *new methods of language learning* | **course, lesson**
- PREP. **in ... ~** *His letter was couched in very formal language.*
- PHRASES **command/knowledge/mastery of (a) language** *Her command of language is very advanced for a six-year-old.* **use of language** *The writer's use of language reflects the personality of each character.*

2 offensive words
- ADJ. **bad, crude, foul, obscene, offensive, strong** *using foul language*
- VERB + LANGUAGE **use** | **mind, watch** *The referee warned the players to mind their language.*

lantern *noun*

- VERB + LANTERN **light, shine** *He shone his lantern into the dark room.* | **blow out, put out**
- LANTERN + VERB **glow, shine** | **hang** *The lantern hung from the roof.*

lap *noun*

- ADJ. **first, opening** | **final, last**
- VERB + LAP **complete, do, run**
- LAP + NOUN **record** *He set a new lap record.*
- PREP. **on the ... ~** *He tripped and fell on the final lap.*
- PHRASES **a lap of honour** *The silver medallist joined the winner in a lap of honour.*

lap *verb*

- ADV. **gently, softly**
- PREP. **against** *The waves lapped gently against the side of the ship.* **around** *The water lapped around his ankles.* **over** *The freezing water lapped over her boots.*

lapel *noun*

- ADJ. **narrow, wide** *a coat with wide lapels*
- VERB + LAPEL **be pinned to** *A silver brooch was pinned to her lapel.*
- LAPEL + NOUN **badge, pin**
- PREP. **in the/your ~** *He was wearing a carnation in his lapel.* **on the/your ~** *a jacket with a badge on the lapel*
- PHRASES **grab sb by the lapels** *He grabbed her by the lapels and shook her violently.*

lapse *noun*

1 small error
- ADJ. **minor** | **momentary, temporary** | **sudden** | **memory, mental** *I keep suffering these mental lapses.*
- VERB + LAPSE **have, suffer** *I had a momentary lapse when I couldn't remember his name.*
- PREP. **~ in** *a lapse in attention* **~ of** *sudden lapses of concentration*

2 bad behaviour
- ADJ. **curious, odd** *It was an odd lapse for one who is normally so polite.*

3 passing of time
- ADJ. **brief, considerable** | **time**
- PHRASES **~ of** *after a considerable lapse of time* ◇ *a time lapse of three months*

larder *noun*

- ADJ. **full, well-stocked** | **bare, empty** | **walk-in**
- VERB + LARDER **fill, stock** | **empty, raid** *He comes home from school and raids the larder.*
- LARDER + NOUN **door, shelf**
- PREP. **in the ~** *There wasn't much food left in the larder.*

large *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *Some of the clothes looked very large.* | **become, get, grow** *By this time his debt had got extremely large.* ◇ *The plant had grown quite large.* | **remain**
- ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, very** | **comparatively, fairly, moderately, quite, rather, reasonably, relatively** *Isn't that jumper rather large?* | **enough, sufficiently** *Are you sure the hall will be large enough?* | **indefinitely, infinitely** *The universe is infinitely large.* | **abnormally, dis-**

proportionately, surprisingly, unexpectedly, unusually *His eyes were abnormally large.*

laser *noun*

- ADJ. **powerful**
- VERB + LASER **use**
- LASER + NOUN **beam, light | printer | gun | surgery, therapy, treatment**

lash *noun*

- ADJ. **bottom, lower | long, thick**
- VERB + LASH **bat, flutter** *She batted her lashes flirtatiously.* | **lower** *She lowered her lashes in sudden embarrassment.*
- LASH + VERB **flicker, flutter** *Her lashes flickered and I knew she was lying.*

last *verb*

- ADV. **long** *Your car will last longer if you look after it.* | **forever, indefinitely** *Nothing lasts forever.* ◇ *With care, the vines will last indefinitely.* | **never** *Happiness never lasts.*
- VERB + LAST **can/cannot, could (not)** *The storm could last quite a long time.* | **will/won't, would (not)** *The kids are all very enthusiastic, but it won't last—it never does.* | **be likely/unlikely to** *I always thought his popularity was unlikely to last.* | **be expected to | seem to** *The journey seemed to last forever.* | **be built to** *This house was built to last.*
- PREP. **for** *The war lasted for three years.* **into** *The celebrations lasted well into the next week.* **until** *The trial is expected to last until the end of the week.*
- PHRASES **while sth lasts** *Make the most of this feeling while it lasts.*

late *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem** *I don't know what the time is, but it feels quite late.* | **make sb**
- ADV. **extremely, really, very | a bit, fairly, a little, quite, rather, relatively**
- PREP. **for** *I'm late for work.* **in** *He took up music late in life.* **with** *He was now three weeks late with his rent.*
- PHRASES **an hour, ten minutes, etc. late** *The train was 45 minutes late.* **leave it a bit/rather/very late** *You've left it a bit late to start your homework, haven't you?*

Latin *noun*

- ADJ. **classical | medieval**

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

latitude *noun*

1 geographical position

- ADJ. **high, low | northern, southern | polar, temperate** *These birds only survive in temperate latitudes.*
- VERB + LATITUDE **calculate, determine**
- PHRASES **a line of latitude**

2 freedom

- ADJ. **considerable, great**
- QUANT. **degree** *Some degree of latitude is required in interpreting the law on this point.*
- VERB + LATITUDE **allow (sb), give sb**
- PREP. **~ for** *This method allows very little latitude for error.* **~ in** *Nowadays, newspapers are allowed considerable latitude in criticizing the government.*

laugh *noun*

1 sound/act of laughing

- ADJ. **loud | light, little, short, slight, small | low | big, good, great** *The last joke got the biggest laugh.* | **belly, booming, hearty | barking, cackling, harsh, husky, throaty | silvery, tinkling | amused, delighted | embarrassed, nervous, shaky | polite | bitter, brittle, cynical, derisive, dry, forced, hollow, humourless, mirthless, mocking, rueful, scornful** *She forced a humourless laugh.* | **infectious**
- VERB + LAUGH **give, let out, utter** *He gave a short, amused laugh.* | **have | force, manage | enjoy, like** *He enjoys a good laugh.* | **get, raise** *Few of his jokes got a laugh.* ◇ *She got a laugh out of Jack.* | **hear**
- LAUGH + VERB **escape sb** *A small laugh escaped her.*
- PREP. **for a ~** *She dyed her hair green just for a laugh.* **with a ~** *He left the room with a cynical laugh.* | **~ about/at** *We all had a great laugh about it afterwards.*
- PHRASES **be good for a laugh** *Paul's always good for a laugh* (= always amusing). **have the last laugh** *We'll have the last laugh if she finds out that you're the one who played the trick.* **a laugh at sb's expense** *Oh yes, very funny—have your laugh at my expense!* **the laugh is on sb** (= sb looks ridiculous after they have tried to make fun of sb else)

2 sb/sth that is amusing

- ADJ. **good, real**
- PHRASES **a barrel of laughs, a bit of a laugh, a laugh a minute** (= very funny)

laugh *verb*

- ADV. **aloud, loudly, out loud** *It looked so funny that I almost laughed out loud.* | **gently, lightly, quietly, softly, silently, under your breath | deeply, heartily, a lot, really, uproariously** *He laughed heartily at his own joke.* | **just, merely, simply** *I thought she would be angry but she just laughed.* | **almost | briefly, a little, shortly | suddenly | easily, freely** *She smiles and laughs easily.* | **openly, outright | helplessly, uncontrollably | cheerfully, delightedly, excitedly, happily | hysterically, nervously | politely | incredulously, in disbelief | angrily, bitterly, cynically, derisively, grimly, harshly, hollowly, humourlessly, mirthlessly, ruefully, scornfully, sourly, wryly** *He realized how he had been fooled, and laughed bitterly.* | **together** *talking and laughing together*
- VERB + LAUGH **have to, want to** *He looked so funny I just had to laugh.* | **begin to, start to | try not to** *I was watching them and trying not to laugh.* | **make sb** *He pulled a funny face to make us laugh.* | **hear sb** *I heard him suddenly laugh aloud.*
- PREP. **about** *Tomorrow you'll be able to laugh about this.* **at** *The audience laughed at her jokes.* **with** *talking and laughing with the children* ◇ *Trent almost laughed with relief.*
- PHRASES **burst out laughing, can't/couldn't help/stop laughing** *She was telling us jokes and we couldn't stop laughing.* **fall about laughing** *It was so funny we just fell about laughing.* **find yourself laughing** *He laughed, and she found herself laughing with him.* **stop laughing**

laughter *noun*

- ADJ. **helpless, hysterical, loud, raucous, wild** *I heard sounds of raucous laughter upstairs.* | **delighted, happy | infectious** *Her infectious laughter had everyone smiling.* | **nervous | silent, suppressed** *She was bent over with suppressed laughter.* | **derisive, mocking**
- QUANT. **bellow, hoot, howl, roar, shriek, snort** *He gave a sudden bellow of laughter.* | **fit** *Everyone dissolved into fits of laughter when they saw my haircut.* | **gale, peal, ripple** *His suggestion was greeted with peals of laughter.* ◇ *A ripple of laughter ran round the room.*
- VERB + LAUGHTER **burst into, dissolve into/with, explode with | bellow with, cackle with, hoot with, howl with, roar with, scream with, shriek with, snort with, whoop with, yell with | rock with, shake with**

launch *noun*

- ADJ. **official, press, public** *She is signing copies of her book at the official launch.* | **successful** | **imminent** | **book, campaign, product** | **balloon, rocket, satellite, shuttle**
- VERB + LAUNCH **get (sth) ready for, prepare (sth) for** *They are preparing for the launch of the new campaign next month.* | **announce** | **mark** *a big Hollywood event to mark the launch of the movie* | **coincide with** *The show is timed to coincide with the launch of a new book on the subject.* | **attend, go to, speak at** | **delay, postpone, put off**
- LAUNCH + NOUN **date** | **party** (= for a product or book) | **pad, site**
- PREP. **after/following/since the ~** *In the six months since its launch the car has sold extremely well.* **at a/the ~** *I met her at the launch of her new book.* | **~ for** *a spring launch for the new TV system*

laundry *noun*

- ADJ. **clean, dirty**
- QUANT. **bundle, pile** *There was a pile of clean laundry on her bed.*
- VERB + LAUNDRY **do** *The housekeeper cooks, does the laundry and cleans.*
- LAUNDRY + NOUN **bag, basket** | **service** *The hotel offers a free laundry service.*

lavatory *noun*

- ADJ. **public** | **communal, shared** | **indoor, inside** | **outside** | **flush, flushing**
- VERB + LAVATORY **go to, use** | **need** | **flush, flush sth down**
- LAVATORY + NOUN **basin, bowl** | **seat** | **cistern** | **chain** | **paper** | **brush**
- PREP. **in the ~, on the ~**

law *noun*

1 official rule/rules

- ADJ. **administrative, case, civil, common, constitutional, contract, criminal, international, statute, etc.** (see also **martial law**)
- VERB + LAW **become** *Parliament voted for the bill to become law.* | **enforce, uphold** *It's the job of the police to enforce the law.* | **obey, observe** | **break, flout, violate** | **adopt, enact, pass** | **annul, repeal** | **interpret** *Judges interpret this law in different ways.*
- LAW + VERB **allow sth, forbid sth, prohibit sth** *The law forbids gambling of any kind.* | **permit sth** | **require sth** *The wearing of a crash helmet is required by law.* | **govern sth** *the law governing school attendance*
- LAW + NOUN **court** | **enforcement**
- PREP. **above the ~** *No one is above the law.* **against the ~** *What you did was clearly against the law.* **by ~** *By law, you are obliged to install smoke alarms in the factory.* **within the ~** *The company is operating entirely within the law.* | **~ against** *a local law against keeping horses* **~ concerning** *the law concerning industrial action ballots* **~ on** *A law on hunting will cause a lot of disagreements.* **~ relating to** *the law relating to the sale of goods*
- PHRASES **as the law stands** *As the law stands, you can get married while still too young to have a driving licence.* **law and order** *Martial law was imposed to prevent the breakdown of law and order.* **the letter of the law** *In spite of the difficulties it would cause her family, the judge stuck to the letter of the law and jailed her.* **take the law into your own hands** *When police failed to arrest the suspect, local people took the law into their own hands and beat him up.*

2 subject of study/profession

- VERB + LAW **practise**
- LAW + NOUN **firm**

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for more verbs and nouns)

lawful *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **consider sth, deem sth**
- ADV. **perfectly** *This is a perfectly lawful activity.*

lawn *noun*

- ADJ. **manicured, neat, tended** *a carefully tended lawn* | **overgrown** | **back, front**
- VERB + LAWN **cut, mow, trim** *The lawn really needs mowing.*
- PHRASES **a sweep of lawn** *The cottage sits on a hill above a sweep of lawn.*

lawsuit *noun*

- VERB + LAWSUIT **bring, file, issue** *A lawsuit has been filed against the company.* | **be involved in, pursue** | **drop** *They have agreed to drop their lawsuit against the Dutch company.* | **be faced with, face** *The company now faces several lawsuits over its failure to protect its employees.* | **defend** *She plans to defend the lawsuit vigorously.* | **win** | **lose** | **settle** *The two companies have settled the lawsuit.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *They are seeking damages in a lawsuit.* | **~ against** *a lawsuit against her former husband* **~ over** *a lawsuit over a disputed estate*

lawyer *noun*

- ADJ. **clever, competent, good, successful** | **leading, senior** | **experienced, qualified** | **practising** | **academic** | **defence, prosecuting, prosecution** | **corporate, government** | **foreign, international, local** | **civil, civil rights, commercial, constitutional, criminal, divorce, human rights, libel, personal injury**

⇨ Note at PROFESSIONAL (for verbs)

lay *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, gently, tenderly** | **down** *He laid the books down on the table.*
- PREP. **on** *She laid the child tenderly on the bed.* **over** *They carefully laid a blanket over the body.*

PHRASAL VERB

lay sth out

- ADV. **tastefully, well** *The owners have built a gift shop and a tastefully laid out caravan site.*

lay-by *noun*

- VERB + LAY-BY **pull into**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *I was parked in a lay-by, having a nap.*

layer *noun*

- ADJ. **fine, thin** *Everything was covered with a fine layer of dust.* | **deep, generous, heavy, thick** *Mulch with a generous layer of peat or compost.* | **bottom, inner, lower, middle, outer, surface, top, upper** *the upper layers of the earth's atmosphere* | **double** | **protective** *a protective layer of black plastic* | **ozone** *holes in the ozone layer*
- VERB + LAYER **form** *Use enough gravel to form a layer about 50mm thick.* | **be covered by/with** *The body had been covered with a thin layer of soil.*
- LAYER + NOUN **cake**
- PREP. **beneath/under a/the ~** *Beneath the surface layer of the skin are several further layers.* **in ~s** *The building is constructed in layers.* | **~ of** *an extra layer of clothing* ◇ *a layer of bureaucracy* ◇ *multiple layers of meaning*
- PHRASES **layer after/on/upon layer** *The remains lay buried under layer upon layer of black earth.*

layout *noun*

- ADJ. **basic, general** *Before designing the house we planned the basic layout of the rooms.* | **physical, spatial**

| **interior, internal** | **page, text** *page layout software* | **road, street**

lazy *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel** | **become, get, grow** *He had grown lazy and fat.* ◇ *We thought we were winning, so we got lazy.*
- ADV. **extremely, incredibly, really, very** | **downright** | **almost** *His smile was slow, almost lazy.* | **a bit, pretty, rather**

lead¹ /liːd/ *noun*

1 example set by sb's behaviour
- ADJ. **moral**
- VERB + LEAD **give, take** *The government should give a lead in tackling racism.* | **follow**
- PREP. **~ in** *We should follow their lead in banning chemical weapons.*

2 position ahead of other people
- ADJ. **big, clear, comfortable, commanding, good, strong** | **narrow** | **overall** | **early**
- VERB + LEAD **be in, have** *She has a narrow lead over the other runners.* | **go into, move into, take** *They took an early lead.* | **build up, establish** *The team has now built up a commanding lead.* | **hold, maintain** | **lose** | **regain** *They regained the lead with only a few minutes left to play.* | **put sb/sth (back) into** | **extend, increase** *Sheffield increased their lead just before half time.* | **give**
- PREP. **in/into the ~** *struggling to stay in the lead* | **~ over** *This win gives the team a two-point lead over their closest rival.*

3 main part in a play, show, etc.
- ADJ. **romantic** | **female, male**
- VERB + LEAD **play** *Her big break came when she was chosen to play the lead in a Broadway musical.*
- LEAD + NOUN **role** | **singer** | **guitar, guitarist**

4 clue
- ADJ. **good** | **new** | **possible** *The police are following every possible lead.*
- VERB + LEAD **have** | **follow, pursue** | **give**
- PREP. **~ on** *leads on the murderer's identity*

lead² /liːd/ *verb*

1 show the way
- ADV. **back, on** *'Lead on!' said Arnold.*
- VERB + LEAD **help (to)** *Five people helping to lead a convoy of aid are feared dead.* | **allow sb to, let sb** *Let me lead the way.*
- PREP. **along, down, into, out of, through, to, etc.** *She led them along a dark corridor to a small room.*
- PHRASES **lead the way** *You lead the way and we'll follow.*

2 go to a place
- ADV. **directly** | **back, down, up** *An old track led back through the wood.* | **nowhere, somewhere** (*often figurative*) *Often there are discoveries which lead nowhere.*
- PREP. **from, onto** *The gardens lead directly onto a beach.* **to** *a path leading from the village to the old church*

3 cause
- ADV. **normally, usually** | **inevitably, inexorably** *Industrialization inevitably led to the expansion of the urban working class.* | **(almost) certainly, undoubtedly** | **not necessarily** *The use of soft drugs does not necessarily lead to a progression to hard drugs.* | **automatically** *Business success does not automatically lead to financial success.* | **naturally** *Discussion of a client's tax affairs will lead naturally into consideration of investment options.* | **directly** | **indirectly** | **eventually, ultimately**
- VERB + LEAD **can/could (easily/only), may/might (well), must** *Sugar and fat can more easily lead to obesity than some other foods.* ◇ *The carbon tax might well lead to a doubling of prices for fossil fuels.* | **appear to, seem to** | **be expected to, be likely to, tend to** *Worrying about your weight is more likely to lead to comforting yourself with a piece of chocolate.* | **be bound to**
- PREP. **to** *the events that led eventually to war*

lead³ /led/ *noun*

- ADJ. **molten**
- VERB + LEAD **be made of**
- LEAD + NOUN **pipe, piping** | **paint** | **shot** | **poisoning** | **content, levels** | **industry, mine, miner, mining**

leader *noun*

1 person who is in charge of sth
- ADJ. **born, natural** | **charismatic, effective, good, great, inspiring, inspired, visionary** | **undisputed** | **powerful, strong** | **weak** | **deputy** | **former** | **joint** | **local, national** | **opposition, parliamentary, party** | **Conservative, Labour, etc.** | **military, political, religious, spiritual** | **gang, guerrilla, nationalist, rebel** | **group, project, squadron, team** *Discuss any problems with your team leader.* | **business, church, civic, community, council, government, strike, student, (trade) union, youth** *Business leaders have been in talks with the government.* | **miners', teachers', etc.**
- VERB + LEADER **be appointed, become, be elected** | **appoint (sb), appoint sb as, choose (sb as), elect (sb), elect sb as, nominate (sb), nominate sb as**
- PHRASES **a leader of the Opposition**

2 person/team that is best or in first place
- ADJ. **undisputed** | **brand, market, world** *The company is a world leader in electrical goods.* | **championship, league, tournament**
- VERB + LEADER **overtake** *aiming to overtake the market leaders within two years*
- PREP. **behind the ~** *ten points behind league leaders Manchester United* | **~ in** *the undisputed leader in her field*

leadership *noun*

- ADJ. **clear, effective, firm, outstanding, real, strong** *He was praised for his firm leadership.* | **poor, weak** | **charismatic, dynamic, visionary** | **hardline** | **traditional** | **personal** | **deputy** *He is standing in the deputy leadership election.* | **collective, joint** | **local, national, world** | **Conservative, Labour, etc.** | **cultural, industrial, intellectual, military, moral, political, spiritual** *Political leadership needs a particular combination of skills.* | **church, government, parliamentary, party, union**
- VERB + LEADERSHIP **assume, take on/over** *When Smith died, Blair took over the leadership of the party.* | **assert** *her method of asserting personal leadership* | **exercise, provide, show** *In the crisis he showed real leadership.*
- LEADERSHIP + NOUN **bid, campaign, challenge** | **ballot, battle, contest, election, race, struggle** | **role** | **structure** | **style** | **qualities, skills** *He lacks leadership qualities.*
- PREP. **under sb's ~** *The school has flourished under the leadership of Mr Buxton.* | **~ from** *What is really needed is clear leadership from the prime minister.* **~ in** *Leadership in science now went to the United States.*
- PHRASES **a challenge to sb's leadership** *She withstood several challenges to her leadership.* **a lack of leadership, sb's style of leadership**

leaf *noun*

- ADJ. **new, young** | **autumn, dead, dry, fallen, falling, rotting, rotten** *The ground was thick with dead leaves.* | **broad** (*especially technical*), **heart-shaped, oval** *broad leaf plants* | **green, yellow, etc.** | **glossy, hairy, leathery, mottled, shiny, spiky, variegated** | **bay, lettuce, oak, tea, etc.** *Throw the tea leaves on the flower bed.*

- VERB + LEAF **have** *This plant has beautifully variegated leaves.* | **break/burst/come into, grow, produce, put out** *It was spring and the trees were coming into leaf.* ◇ *In the spring the plant began to put out new leaves.* | **shed** *Deciduous trees shed their leaves in autumn.*
- LEAF + VERB **appear** *Spring arrived and the first green leaves began to appear.* | **turn, yellow** *The summer was over and the leaves were beginning to turn.* | **fall** | **rustle** *The leaves rustled in the light breeze.*
- LEAF + NOUN **litter, mould** *the leaf litter on the forest floor*
- PHRASES **in full leaf** *The corn was already ripening and the trees in full leaf.*

leaflet *noun*

- ADJ. **free** *a free leaflet explaining your tax return* | **helpful, useful** | **explanatory, information, instruction** | **promotional, publicity** | **campaign, election, party**
- QUANT. **copy**
- VERB + LEAFLET **issue, produce, publish** *The Health Council issued hundreds of leaflets.* | **deliver, distribute, give out, hand out, send out** *Campaigners handed out leaflets to passers by.* | **enclose** *I enclose a leaflet about some of the other services we offer.*
- LEAFLET + VERB **advertise sth, explain sth**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *More details are given in our promotional leaflet.*

league *noun*

1 group of sports clubs that compete with each other

- ADJ. **cricket, football, etc.** *They want to start a new football league.* | **European, northern, etc.** | **local, national** | **Sunday** *He played Sunday League cricket for years.* | **premier** | **major, minor** *major league baseball* | **super** *new proposals for a European super league*
- VERB + LEAGUE **create, form, set up, start** | **join** *The team joined the Northern League last year.* | **win**
- LEAGUE + NOUN **champions, leaders** | **championship, cup, title** | **club, side** | **player** | **game, match** | **table** | **cricket, football, etc.**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The team is now in the Premier League.*
- PHRASES **at the bottom/top of the league, (come) bottom/top of the league, a position in the league** *hoping to improve their position in the league*

2 level of quality, ability, etc.

- ADJ. **big, super, top, world** *This move propelled him into the political big league.*
- PHRASES **in a different league** *Today's technology is in a different league* (= very much better). **in a league of your own** *As a painter he is in a league of his own* (= much better than others). **not in the same league (as ...)** (= not nearly as good as), **out of sb's league** *A house like that is way out of our league* (= too expensive for us).

leak *noun*

1 small hole/crack

- VERB + LEAK **have** *The boat had a small leak.* | **spring** *The pipe has sprung a leak.* | **plug, stop** *I managed to plug the leak.*
- PREP. **~ in** *a leak in the roof*

2 when gas/liquid escapes

- ADJ. **major, serious** | **minor** | **slow** | **fuel, gas, oil, radiation, radioactive**
- VERB + LEAK **cause** *The dismantling of a nuclear reprocessing plant caused a leak of radioactivity yesterday.* | **detect, discover, find, notice, spot** *Fortunately, we spotted the leak in time.* | **fix, repair, stop** *The plumber fixed the leak.* | **prevent** *taking steps to prevent gas leaks in the future*
- LEAK + VERB **happen, occur**
- PREP. **~ from** *Pollution inspectors were called to a leak from a chemical factory.* **~ of** *a leak of dangerous chemicals*

3 giving away information

- ADJ. **security**
- LEAK + VERB **come from sth** *The leak could only have come from one source.*
- PREP. **~ about** *a security leak about a number of suspicious deaths among civil servants* **~ from** *a leak from the prime minister's office* **~ of** *a leak of confidential material* **~ to** *a leak to the American authorities*
- PHRASES **the source of a leak** *The organization's press secretary is thought to be the source of the leak.*

leak *verb*

1 allow sth to get out through a hole

- ADV. **badly** *The house was old and the roof leaked quite badly.* | **slightly**

2 tell sb about sth

- ADV. **carefully, deliberately** | **widely** *The document had been widely leaked.*
- PREP. **from** *Confidential information that has been leaked from the BBC.* **to** *The report was leaked to the press.*

lean *verb*

- ADV. **heavily** | **lightly** | **slightly** | **casually, easily, lazily, nonchalantly** | **eagerly** | **earnestly** | **confidentially, confidingly, conspiratorially** | **weakly, wearily** | **drunkenly** | **precariously** | **close, near** *He leaned closer, lowering his voice.* | **across, forward, down, out, over** *She leant forward eagerly to listen to him.* | **away, back, backwards** *He leaned back in his chair.* | **sideways**
- PREP. **across** *She was leaning confidentially across the table.* **against** *She leaned her head against his shoulder.* **into** *He leaned into the open doorway.* **on** *The old man was leaning heavily on a stick.* **out of** *She leaned precariously out of the window.* **over** *She leaned casually over the railings.* **through** *The taxi driver leaned through his window.* **towards** *He leaned towards her.*

PHRASAL VERB

lean on sb/sth

- ADV. **heavily** *Britain leans heavily on Europe for trade.*

leap *noun*

1 big jump

- ADJ. **big, giant, prodigious** | **little** | **flying, running** *He made a flying leap at the ball.*
- VERB + LEAP **make, take**
- PREP. **~ from, ~ into** *a leap into the air* **~ to**

2 great change/increase in sth

- ADJ. **big, enormous, giant, great, huge, quantum** *There has been a quantum leap in profits since 1995.* | **small** | **bold, dramatic, sudden** *a dramatic leap in the number of people out of work* | **imaginative, intuitive** | **technological**
- VERB + LEAP **make** *They've made a great leap forward with their road building in the last few years.*
- PREP. **~ from** *a leap from $632 to $735* **~ in** *a leap in prices* **~ of** *a leap of 750%* **~ to**
- PHRASES **a leap forward, by leaps and bounds, come on/improve in leaps and bounds** *His technique has come on in leaps and bounds this season.*

leap *verb*

- ADV. **almost, nearly** *He almost leaped down the stairs when he heard who it was.* | **immediately** | **suddenly** | **clear, high** *She leaped clear of the water.* | **about, around, back, down, forward, out, up (and down)** *children leaping about with excitement*
- VERB + LEAP **seem to** *(figurative) The photograph seemed to leap off the page at her.* | **be about to, be ready to** *Don't be so nervous—anyone would think I was about to leap on you.*

- PREP. **across** *leaping across the puddles* **from** *He leaped down from the ladder and ran over towards her.* **into, off, on, onto** *He leaped onto his horse and rode off.* **out of** *He leaped out of bed when he heard the telephone.* **over** *leaping over high fences*
- PHRASES **leap to your feet** *Rosie immediately leaped to her feet.*

learn *verb*

1 gain knowledge/skill
- ADV. **a lot** *I learned a lot from my father.* | **quickly, soon** *Children learn very quickly.* ◇ *They soon learn that bad behaviour is a sure-fire way of getting attention.*
- VERB + LEARN **need to** | **be eager to, want to** *He was eager to learn all she could teach him.* | **have a lot to** *I've got a lot to learn, haven't I?*
- PREP. **about** *learning about art* **from** *She learned from watching others.* **through** *Children learn through play.*

2 become aware
- VERB + LEARN **be astonished to, be astounded to, be intrigued to, be surprised to** *I was surprised to learn that he was only 24.* | **be dismayed to, be saddened to**
- PREP. **of** *We first learned of the problem from her school.*

learner *noun*

- ADJ. **quick, slow** *She was a quick learner, and her German got better by the day.* | **advanced, intermediate** *a book for advanced learners of English* | **adult, older** | **young** *The book has been written with the interests of young learners in mind.* | **language** | **foreign**
- LEARNER + NOUN **driver**

learning *noun*

1 process of learning sth
- ADJ. **effective, successful** *a model for effective learning* | **rapid** | **independent** | **distance** (= by correspondence course) | **early** (= the education of very young children, often through play) | **higher** *institutions of higher learning* | **active, passive** | **formal, informal** | **rote** | **computer-assisted** | **language**
- LEARNING + NOUN **curve** *The whole team has been on a steep learning curve since the project began.* | **environment** *The centre aims to provide a supportive learning environment.* | **experience, process** | **difficulty, disability** *severe learning difficulties*
- PHRASES **a seat of learning**

2 knowledge got from reading and studying
- ADJ. **great** | **book** (*old-fashioned*)
- VERB + LEARNING **acquire, gain**

lease *noun*

- ADJ. **long, long-term** | **short, short-term** | **ten-year, etc.** | **business, commercial** | **building, mining**
- VERB + LEASE **have, hold** *They've got a lease with five years to run.* | **draw up** | **acquire, buy, enter into, get, negotiate, obtain, sign, take (on/out/up)** *She has taken out a new ten-year lease on the flat.* | **grant (sb), sell (sb)** *A freeholder may grant a lease of any duration.* | **renew** | **forfeit, surrender** *They moved out and the lease was surrendered.* | **cancel, terminate** | **take over** | **transfer**
- LEASE + VERB **run** *The lease runs from April 19.* | **take effect** | **come up for renewal, expire, run out**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *a new clause in the lease* **on a ~** *The company holds the building on a long lease.* **under a/the ~** *Under the new lease, the rent would go up.* | **~ of** *He took a lease of the premises.* **~ on** *The club has a 20-year lease on the property.*
- PHRASES **a clause in a lease, a condition of a lease, the length/period/term of a lease, a provision in a lease, the terms of the lease**

leather *noun*

- ADJ. **thick** | **thin** | **tough** | **soft** | **shiny** | **worn** | **genuine, real** | **imitation, synthetic** | **calf, chamois, etc.** | **morocco, patent** | **shoe**
- VERB + LEATHER **tan** | **treat** *The leather has been treated with wax.* | **polish** | **be made from/in/(out) of** *a coat made from buffalo leather* | **bind sth in** *Each volume is bound in genuine leather.*
- LEATHER + VERB **crack** *a cracked leather belt*
- PREP. **in ~** (= made of leather) *I'm looking for a pair of boots in dark brown leather.* **in ~s** (= wearing leather) *a biker in black leathers*

leave *noun*

1 period of time when you do not go to work
- ADJ. **annual** | **paid, unpaid** | **extended, indefinite, weekend** | **compassionate, maternity, parental, paternity, sabbatical, sick, study** | **home, shore**
- VERB + LEAVE **be entitled to, get, have** *How much annual leave do you get?* ◇ *I've still got some leave left this year.* | **go on, spend, take, use (up)** *She spent most of her leave with her family.* ◇ *I've still got some leave to use up.* | **save** *I'm saving all my leave to have a long holiday later in the year.* | **cancel** *When the war broke out all leave was cancelled.* | **give sb, grant sb** | **be due for, be owed** | **apply for**
- LEAVE + NOUN **entitlement**
- PREP. **on ~** *She's on leave until the end of the month.*

2 official permission to do sth
- ADJ. **special**
- VERB + LEAVE **ask, request** *He asked leave to absent himself for four days.* | **give sb, grant sb** | **obtain** | **refuse sb**
- PREP. **by sb's ~** *The appeal can only be brought by leave of the trial judge.* **with/without sb's ~** *No application may be made without the leave of the court.*
- PHRASES **absent without leave, leave of absence, without (so much as) a by your leave** (= without asking permission)

leave *verb*

- VERB + LEAVE **decide to** | **intend to, plan to, want to** | **be ready to** *We were all packed and ready to leave.* | **be about to, be going to** *Did you want something? I was just about to leave.* | **threaten to** *My secretary has threatened to leave.* | **attempt to, try to** *They were caught trying to leave the country.* | **refuse to** | **be compelled to, be forced to, be obliged to** | **ask sb to, order sb to** *They were being extremely rowdy and the manager had to ask them leave.* | **allow sb to, let sb** *I wanted to leave but they wouldn't let me.* | **enable sb to**
- PREP. **for** *They left for Scotland this morning.*

lecture *noun*

1 talk given to a group of people
- ADJ. **fascinating, interesting** | **boring** | **formal** | **illustrated** | **impromptu** | **guest** *A two-day event of guest lectures, seminars and workshops.* | **popular, public** | **annual** | **inaugural, introductory** *Professor Pearson gave the inaugural lecture in the new lecture theatre.* | **keynote, plenary** | **memorial**
- QUANT. **course, programme, series**
- VERB + LECTURE **deliver, give, present** | **hold, put on** *The society is putting on a series of lectures on the subject next term.* | **attend, go to, hear** (*formal*), **listen to** | **miss, skip** | **prepare, write**
- LECTURE + NOUN **course, programme, series** | **hall, room, theatre** | **notes** | **tour** | **circuit** *a familiar figure on the international lecture circuit*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *She wasn't at the lecture.* **during a/the ~** *The fire bell went during his lecture.* **in a/the ~** *She referred*

to Professor Jones's work in her lecture on Shakespeare's imagery. | **~ by** *a lecture by Professor Snow* **~ about/on, ~ to** *a lecture to the Darwin Society*

• PHRASES **a lecture entitled sth** *a lecture entitled 'How to Prevent Food Poisoning'* **a lecture on the subject of sth**

2 serious talk to sb about their behaviour

• ADJ. **little, long** | **severe, stern**

• VERB + LECTURE **give sb, read sb** *She read me a stern lecture on ingratitude.* | **get** *I got a lecture from Dad about coming home on time.* | **take**

• PREP. **~ about/on** *I don't take lectures from anyone on how to behave.* **~ from**

lecturer *noun*

• ADJ. **principal, senior** | **assistant, junior** | **college, university** | **guest, visiting** | **English, physics, etc.**

• PREP. **~ in** *a lecturer in German at Plymouth University*

⇨ Note at JOB

ledge *noun*

• ADJ. **high** | **narrow, wide** | **cliff, mountain, window**

• VERB + LEDGE **cling to** *The climbers were clinging to a ledge hundreds of feet above the sea.* | **be perched on**

• LEDGE + VERB **go, run** *A narrow ledge runs across the northern face of the cliff.*

• PREP. **along a/the ~** *I felt along the ledge at the top of the door.* **on a/the ~** *The phone was perched precariously on the window ledge.*

left *noun*

1 side

• ADJ. **extreme, far** *My dad's in the front row, on the extreme left of the picture.*

• VERB + LEFT **turn to** *If you turn to your left you will see the parliament building.*

• PREP. **from the ~** *The car came from the left.* **on the/your ~** *The bank is on the left, just after the post office.* ◇ *As you go in the door, you'll see it on your left.* **on the ~ of** *The car park is on the left of the library.* **to the/your ~** *He looked to the left and then crossed.* **to the ~ of** *My office is just to the left of the main door.*

• PHRASES **from left to right; from right to left** *Arabic script reads from right to left.*

2 the left political groups

• ADJ. **extreme, far**

• PREP. **of the ~** *In recent years the country has been ruled only by governments of the left.* **on the ~** *They're both on the extreme left of the party.* **to the ~** *The party has moved further to the left.* ◇ *He is somewhat to the left of the previous leader.*

leg *noun*

1 part of the body

• ADJ. **left, right** | **front** | **back, hind** | **long** | **short, stumpy** | **beautiful, good, shapely** | **muscled, muscular, powerful, strong** | **skinny, spindly, thin** | **fat** | **bandy** | **hairy** | **bare** | **artificial, wooden** | **bad, stiff** | **broken, fractured** | **lame, withered** *He sat down with his lame leg outstretched.* | **tired** *She crossed the finish line on tired legs.* | **fresh** *They don't train the day before a match to ensure they have fresh legs.* | **outstretched**

• VERB + LEG **bend** | **brace** *He put his back against the car, braced his legs and pushed.* | **straighten** | **cross** *I moved the chair away from the table so I could cross my legs.* | **splay, spread** *They made him put his hands on the police car and spread his legs.* | **extend, stretch (out)** *She stretched her legs under the table.* ◇ (*figurative*) *It was good to get out of the car and stretch our legs* (= walk about). | **lift** *The dog lifted its leg against the lamp post.* | **draw up, tuck under** *She sat with her legs drawn up underneath her.* | **kick** | **swing** *She swung her legs over the side of the bed and reached for her crutches.* | **entwine, tangle** *They gazed at each other, their legs entwined under the table.* | **break, injure** | **amputate** *She had her leg amputated below the knee.* | **shave**

• LEG + VERB **move** *They ran together, their legs moving in unison.* | **flail, kick** *He jumped to avoid the flailing leg of the defender.* | **pump** *She started running, fat legs pumping.* | **bend** | **buckle, give way** *His legs buckled and he collapsed on the floor.* | **shake, tremble** | **dangle, hang, swing** *He sat with his legs dangling off the bridge.* | **ache**

• LEG + NOUN **exercise** | **muscle** | **injury, pains, trouble, ulcer, wound** | **room** (also **legroom**) *You don't get much legroom on economy-class flights.*

• PREP. **between the/your ~s** *The dog sloped off, its tail between its legs.* **in the ~** *He was shot in the leg by a sniper.* **on the/your ~** *I've got a big bruise on my leg.* **on one ~** *Many birds are able to stand on one leg for hours at a time.*

• PHRASES **(have, etc.) your leg in plaster** *He was wheeled out of the hospital with his leg in plaster.*

2 of trousers

• ADJ. **trouser**

• VERB + LEG **pull up, roll up** *He rolled up his trouser legs.* | **roll down**

• PHRASES **long/short in the leg** *These jeans are too long in the leg.*

3 of a journey/race

• ADJ. **first, second, etc.** | **final, last** | **anchor** *The fastest runner often runs the anchor leg* (= the last one) *of a relay.* | **outbound** | **homeward**

• PREP. **on the … ~** *At last we were on the homeward leg of our journey.*

legacy *noun*

1 money/property

• ADJ. **generous, large** | **small**

• VERB + LEGACY **bequeath (sb), leave (sb)** | **get, receive** *He received a large legacy from his uncle.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *She left her the money in a legacy.* | **~ from** *a legacy from my old teacher*

• PHRASES **heir to a legacy** *She is the heir to a legacy of £1 million.*

2 result of previous events

• ADJ. **enduring** | **historical** *These problems have arisen as a result of historical legacies.* | **bitter, grim**

• VERB + LEGACY **bequeath (sb), leave (sb), leave behind** *the enduring legacy bequeathed by the war years*

• PREP. **~ from** *Such attitudes are a legacy from colonial times.*

legal *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become**

• ADV. **completely, perfectly** *It is perfectly legal to charge extra for these services.*

legality *noun*

• ADJ. **doubtful, dubious**

• VERB + LEGALITY **challenge, question** *Her lawyer is challenging the legality of the court order.* | **assert, recognize, uphold** *The government does not recognize the legality of this court.*

• PHRASES **doubt/doubts about the legality of sth**

legend *noun*

1 well-known story

• ADJ. **ancient** | **Greek, Roman, etc.** | **local**

• VERB + LEGEND **become, pass into** *The story of how she was rescued has already passed into legend.* | **tell (sb)** *He told us the legend of the ghostly horseman.*

• LEGEND + VERB **live on** *The legend of his supernatural origins lives on.*

- PREP. **according to ~** *According to ancient legend, the river is a goddess.* **in (a/the) ~** *There have always been stories of human giants in Celtic legend and mythology.* | **~ about** *legends about the Vikings* **~ of** *The story is part of the ancient legend of King Arthur.*
- PHRASES **legend has it that …** *Legend has it that the Bridge of Sighs got its name from the cries of prisoners being led across it.* **myths and legends** *the myths and legends of Mexico* **the subject of legend** *The unusual shell has long been the subject of legend.*

2 famous person/event
- ADJ. **living** *pop stars who become living legends* | **basketball, motoring, racing, sporting, etc.**

legible *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **clearly, easily** *Her handwriting was clearly legible.* | **perfectly** | **barely, scarcely**
- PREP. **to** *The price must be legible to a purchaser.*

legislation *noun*

- ADJ. **parliamentary** | **draft** | **fresh, further, new** | **effective, tough** | **complex** | **controversial** | **unworkable** *The police think that such legislation would be unworkable.* | **knee-jerk** *The terrorist attack prompted knee-jerk legislation.* | **anti-abortion, anti-discrimination, employment, environmental, financial, gun control, health, housing, social, etc.**
- QUANT. **piece** *a major piece of legislation*
- VERB + LEGISLATION **need, require** | **call for, propose** *They are calling for tough legislation to tackle this problem.* | **draft, draw up** | **bring forward, initiate** *Anyone has the right to initiate legislation in Parliament by means of a private bill.* | **approve, enact, introduce, pass** *Congress approved legislation which outlawed the sale of the drug.* | **adopt** *Member states may not adopt legislation contrary to EU law.* | **block, delay** *The reform will make it more difficult for MPs to block legislation.* | **amend** | **repeal** | **comply with** *Companies have until December 31 to comply with the new legislation.*
- LEGISLATION + VERB **come into effect, come into force** *New legislation on drink-driving comes into effect at the end of the year.*
- PREP. **under ~** *This will be a criminal offence under the new legislation.* | **~ against** *They are planning the introduction of legislation against sex discrimination.* **~ on** *Legislation on this issue is urgently needed.*

legislature *noun*

- ADJ. **highest, supreme** | **bicameral, unicameral** | **109-member, etc.** | **elected** | **standing** | **central, federal, national, provincial, state**
- VERB + LEGISLATURE **be elected to** *She is the youngest woman to be elected to the national legislature.*
- LEGISLATURE + VERB **comprise sth, consist of sth** *The legislature comprises a 212-member Chamber of Deputies elected for a four-year term.* | **pass sth** *The legislature passed a law to prohibit the dumping of nuclear waste.* | **vote** *The legislature voted narrowly to table a motion of no-confidence in the government.*

legitimate *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as**
- ADV. **entirely, perfectly, quite** | **apparently**

leisure *noun*

- VERB + LEISURE **have** *We have more leisure than our parents had.*
- LEISURE + NOUN **hours, time** | **activities, interests, pursuits** | **centre, complex** | **facilities** | **equipment, goods** | **industry**

lemon *noun*

- ADJ. **fresh**
- QUANT. **slice, wedge** *Garnish the fish with wedges of lemon.*
- VERB + LEMON **squeeze** *Squeeze a quarter of a lemon over the fish.* | **slice** | **garnish sth with**
- LEMON + NOUN **tree** | **pip** | **peel, rind, zest** | **juice**

⇨ Special page at FRUIT

lend *verb*

- ADV. **kindly** *She very kindly lent me her bicycle.*
- VERB + LEND **be prepared to, be willing to** | **refuse to, be unwilling to** *The bank was unwilling to lend him the money.* | **persuade sb to**
- PREP. **to** *I've lent my car to George for the weekend.*

lender *noun*

- ADJ. **big, large, leading, major** *The bank is the largest mortgage lender in the country.* | **money, mortgage**
- PREP. **~ to** *The bank was an important lender to the British government.*

length *noun*

1 distance from one end to the other
- ADJ. **entire, full, maximum, whole** *There is a maximum length of 2 500 words.* ◇ *The queue stretched the whole length of the High Street.* | **great** *a ditch of great length and width* | **medium** | **overall, total**
- VERB + LENGTH **estimate, measure** *He measured the length and width of the table.* | **have** *The vehicle has an overall length of 12 feet.* | **grow to, reach** *These fish can reach a length of over two metres.* | **double in, increase in** | **cut sth to** *Measure the size of the window and cut the cloth to length.* | **drive, run, swim, travel, walk, etc.** *The fence runs the length of the footpath.*
- PREP. **along the ~ of** *There were coloured lights along the whole length of the street.* **in ~** *The pipe was two metres in length.*
- PHRASES **at arm's length** *He has to hold newspapers at arm's length to focus on the print.* **double, twice, three times, half, etc. the length of sth** *The queen bee is twice the length of a worker bee.*

2 amount of time that sth lasts
- ADJ. **considerable, great, inordinate** | **reasonable**
- VERB + LENGTH **cut, reduce, shorten** | **increase**
- LENGTH + VERB **increase** | **decrease**
- PREP. **at ~** *He told me at length about his new job.* **in ~** *Each lesson was an hour in length.*
- PHRASES **length of time** *They complained about the inordinate length of time they had to wait.*

3 length of a swimming pool
- VERB + LENGTH **do, swim** *I did 20 lengths today.*

lengthy *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, very** *Agreement was finally reached after very lengthy discussions.* | **fairly, quite, rather, reasonably, relatively, somewhat** *After a fairly lengthy delay, we were able to continue.*

leniency *noun*

- ADJ. **great** *Judges are advised to show greater leniency towards first-time offenders.* | **excessive, undue**
- VERB + LENIENCY **show** | **appeal for, beg for**
- PREP. **~ for** *She begged for leniency for her son.* **~ of** *the undue leniency of the sentence* **~ to** *Police offer leniency to*

criminals in return for information. **~towards** *Let's hope the judge shows leniency towards her.*
- PHRASES **a plea for leniency** *Even the victim's family made a plea for leniency on behalf of the accused.*

lenient *adj.*
- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **extremely, very | quite, relatively | excessively, unduly** *The appeal judge agreed that the original sentence was unduly lenient.*
- PREP. **with** *The police are sometimes more lenient with female offenders.*

lens *noun*
- ADJ. **strong, thick** *She wears glasses with very thick lenses.* | **coloured, tinted | contact | optical, spectacle | camera | fish-eye, long, long-focus, magnifying, telephoto, telescopic, wide-angle, zoom** *a long-lens shot of a rare bird ◇ The photograph was taken using a zoom lens.*
- LENS + NOUN **cap** *I took the lens cap off my camera and waited for a good shot.*
- PREP. **through a/the ~** *Put your hand in front of your right lens and just look through your left lens.*

leprosy *noun*
- VERB + LEPROSY **have, suffer from | contract**
- LEPROSY + NOUN **bacillus | patient, sufferer, victim**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

lesbian *noun*
- ADJ. **butch | femme, lipstick**
- VERB + LESBIAN **come out as** *She came out as a lesbian in her teens.*
- LESBIAN + NOUN **icon** *The singer has become a lesbian icon.*

lessen *verb*
- ADV. **considerably, greatly, significantly** *Eating a good diet significantly lessens the risk of heart disease.* | **gradually** *Time had gradually lessened the pain of her grief.*
- VERB + LESSEN **begin to** *The noise began to lessen.* | **try to | tend to** *Too much background detail tends to lessen the impact of the central image.* | **help (to)** *Regular exercise can help to lessen the pain.*

lesson *noun*
1 period of teaching or learning
- ADJ. **good, interesting | boring | individual | private | driving, English, geography, maths, piano, swimming, etc.**
- VERB + LESSON **attend, go to, have, take** *I go to Italian lessons at the local college. ◇ We had a history lesson followed by a double maths lesson. ◇ I'm taking driving lessons at the moment.* | **give (sb), offer (sb), provide, take, teach** *She gives singing lessons. ◇ They're offering free lessons in computing. ◇ I had to take a biology lesson this afternoon because the biology teacher was away. ◇ He doesn't teach very many lessons these days.* | **get** *Pupils get lessons on how to organize their study time.* | **prepare** *The trouble is that teachers don't prepare their lessons carefully enough.* | **skip** *He got into trouble for skipping lessons.*
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *No talking was allowed during the lesson.* **in a/the ~** *You can't expect to learn all there is to know about the subject in a 45-minute lesson.* | **~ about** *a lesson about the Civil War* **~ in** *He took lessons in Thai cookery.* **~ on** *a lesson on the Roman Empire* **~ with** *They've got a lesson with Mrs Evans at two o'clock.*

2 sth learnt through experience
- ADJ. **important, salutary, useful, valuable | bitter, hard, painful** *It's a hard lesson to learn.* | **clear**
- VERB + LESSON **draw, learn** *What lessons can we draw from this unfortunate experience?* | **teach sb** *It taught me some valuable lessons about working with other people.*
- PREP. **~ from** *There are important lessons to be learnt from this mistake.* **~ in** *I learned a lesson in harsh economics when I was made redundant.*

lethal *adj.*
- VERBS **be, prove**
- ADV. **absolutely** *All these knives are absolutely lethal.* | **pretty | potentially** *It was a potentially lethal mixture of drugs.*
- PREP. **to** *The pesticide is lethal to all insect life.*

lethargy *noun*
- VERB + LETHARGY **be overcome by, feel, suffer from** *She was suddenly overcome by lethargy.* | **sink into | drag/stir yourself out of, overcome, shake off** *He felt that he had to drag himself out of his lethargy and begin to write.*
- LETHARGY + VERB **creep over/through sb, overtake sb** *After the meal, I could feel lethargy overtaking me.*
- PHRASES **a feeling of lethargy**

letter *noun*
1 written/printed message
- ADJ. **lengthy, long | brief, short | ten-page, etc. | rambling | countless, endless, numerous** *She received countless letters of support while in jail.* | **occasional** *Apart from the occasional letter, they had not been in touch for years.* | **incoming** *The porter distributes incoming letters to the offices.* | **urgent | airmail | handwritten | anonymous | formal, official | business | personal | confidential, private | open, public** *The editor published an open letter to the prime minister.* | **circular | chain | form, standard | specimen | accompanying, covering, explanatory** *The conditions are explained in the accompanying letter. ◇ Send your CV with a covering letter.* | **thank-you** *I wrote my uncle a thank-you letter as soon as I opened the present.* | **congratulatory | warning | rejection** *I've had job interviews and received ten rejection letters.* | **resignation | suicide | fan | love | affectionate, intimate | charming, delightful | chatty, cheerful, friendly | heartfelt, impassioned** *She wrote an impassioned letter to her local newspaper to complain about the new road.* | **courteous, polite | apologetic | angry, rude, strong, strongly-worded, threatening | indignant | critical | frank | poison pen** *He had been sending poison pen letters to his neighbours, hoping to make them move away.*
- VERB + LETTER **draft, write** *drafting an angry letter to the newspaper* | **read | get, have, receive** *I haven't had a letter from her for ages.* | **post, send | fax | deliver | forward** *The letter was forwarded from my old address.* | **register | seal | open | acknowledge, answer, reply to, respond to** *I was angry that they didn't even acknowledge my letter.* | **address** *The letter was addressed to me.* | **sign | publish** *The newspaper refused to publish the letter.*
- LETTER + VERB **arrive, come, reach sb** *I hope my last letter has reached you.* | **be dated …** *The letter is dated 7 July.* | **cross** *Our letters crossed in the post.* | **be lost, go astray | announce sth, ask (sb) sth, begin, start (off)** *The letter started off by thanking us for our offer.* | **continue, go on** *His letter went on to give reasons for his refusal to take part.* | **conclude, end** *The letter concluded with a threat of possible legal action.* | **contain sth** *The letter contained information that only the killer could*

know. | **enclose sth** *The charity received an anonymous letter enclosing a large cheque.* | **appear** *A letter headed 'Advertising Mania' appeared in the paper.*

• LETTER + NOUN **writing** | **box** *The postman put a bundle of letters through the letter box.* | **bomb**

• PREP. **by~** *Please reply by letter.* **in a/the~** *In your letter of 5 June ...* | **~ about/concerning/regarding, ~ from, ~ of** *a letter of application/apology* **~ to** *a letter to the editor*

2 sign that represents a sound in a language

• ADJ. **big, large** | **block, capital, upper-case** *Fill in the form in block letters.* | **lower-case, small** | **bold** | **initial** *The company's name is made from the initial letters of his children's names.* | **double** *Words with double letters, such as 'accommodation', are commonly misspelt.* | **silent** *words such as 'debt' and 'half', which contain silent letters*

• PREP. **in ... ~s** *His name was written in large white letters over the doorway.*

• PHRASES **the letters of the alphabet**

lettuce *noun*

• ADJ. **crisp, crunchy** | **limp** | **chopped, shredded** | **cos, Iceberg, etc.**

• QUANT. **head** *You need one whole head of lettuce for this salad.*

• VERB + LETTUCE **eat, have** *All she had was a tomato and some lettuce.* | **wash**

• LETTUCE + NOUN **leaf**

• PHRASES **on a bed of lettuce**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

leukaemia *noun*

• ADJ. **childhood**

• VERB + LEUKAEMIA **have, suffer from** | **contract, develop** | **diagnose** | **treat sb for**

• LEUKAEMIA + NOUN **case, patient, sufferer, victim** | **research** | **cluster** *The newspapers are full of stories of leukaemia clusters near nuclear establishments.*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

level *noun*

1 amount/size/number

• ADJ. **high, record, significant, substantial** *Industrial output has reached record levels.* | **increasing, rising** | **excessive** *Excessive levels of lead were found in the water.* | **low** | **decreasing, falling** | **varying** *keen amateurs who work hard, with varying levels of success* | **generous** *a generous level of financial support for the arts* | **permitted, recommended, required** *permitted levels of chemical pollutants* | **acceptable, adequate, necessary, normal, realistic, reasonable, safe** *an acceptable level of risk ◇ Her blood pressure has returned to its normal level.* | **dangerous, unacceptable** | **worst** *the worst level of business failure since 1997* | **noise, pollution, radiation** | **crime** | **blood-sugar, cholesterol, hormone, etc.** | **stress**

• VERB + LEVEL **achieve, reach** *They have achieved higher levels of efficiency. ◇ Crime has reached its highest level ever.* | **remain at** *She predicts that fuel prices will remain at current levels.* | **improve, increase, raise** | **maintain** | **bring down, control, decrease, keep down, lower, reduce** | **change** | **set** *Emissions are well below the levels set by the World Health Authority.* | **exceed** *There will be stiff penalties if companies exceed these levels of pollution.*

• LEVEL + VERB **go up, rise, soar** | **fall, go down, plummet** | **change, vary**

• PREP. **above a/the ~** *Mortgage rates were 10% above their current level.* **at a/the ~** *Rents will be kept at this level for another year.* **below a/the ~** *Radiation is well below the permitted level.*

2 stage of progress/standard

• ADJ. **basic, elementary, low** *The teaching is at quite a basic level.* | **entry** *They have a good range of entry-level computers for beginners.* | **intermediate** | **advanced, high** *Her illness has reached an advanced level.* | **degree** | **difficulty** *The difficulty level of the exercises in the book varies widely.* | **fitness** *a sport suitable for people of all fitness levels*

• VERB + LEVEL **attain, reach** *students who have reached the intermediate level* | **complete, do, take** *You need to do all three levels to qualify as a canteen supervisor.*

• PREP. **above a/the ~** *His English is way above the level of the other students.* **at a/the ~** *students at intermediate level ◇ She has played tennis at a high level.* **below a/the ~** *The book is not suitable for students below degree level.*

3 grade in an organization or structure

• ADJ. **high, upper** *the upper levels of the civil service* | **low** | **senior** | **global, international, local, national, regional** | **grass-roots** *The party needs to win support at grass-roots level.* | **ministerial** | **board** *These decisions are made at board level.*

• VERB + LEVEL **reach, rise to** *He rose to the level of general manager.*

• PREP. **at a/the ~** *At the local level there's a lot to be said for the plan.* **on a/the ~** *The thing has got to be organized on an international level.*

4 way of considering sth

• ADJ. **conscious, unconscious** *At a conscious level, I was quite satisfied with my life.* | **deep** | **superficial** | **detailed** *We probably need to look at this problem at a more detailed level.* | **general** | **practical** | **theoretical** | **political**

• PREP. **at a/the ~, on a/the ~** *On a superficial level everything appears to be in order, but at a deeper level you an see that there's a lot wrong.*

5 height

• ADJ. **high, low** | **ground, sea, water** *the problem of rising sea levels* | **eye** *a shelf at eye level*

• VERB + LEVEL **adjust, change, lower, raise** *They are going to raise the level of the banks to prevent flooding.*

• PREP. **above a/the ~** *200m above sea level* **at a/the ~** *The plane was flying at a very low level.* **below a/the ~** *below the level of the cloud* **on a ~ with** *On the second floor you are on a level with the treetops.* **to a/the ~** *The water rose to the level of the ground floor windows.*

• PHRASES **a change in/of level**

6 floor in a building

• ADJ. **ground, lower** | **higher, top, upper**

• PREP. **on a/the ~** *Are we on the right level for the restaurant?* **to a/the ~** *Take the lift to Level Four.*

level *adj.*

1 with no part higher than any other

• VERBS **be, look, seem** | **get sth, keep sth** *Make sure you get the shelf level before screwing it in. ◇ Keep the pot level, or you'll spill the coffee.*

• ADV. **absolutely, completely** *The floor has got to be absolutely level.* | **approximately, more or less**

2 at the same height/position as sth

• VERBS **be** | **come, draw** *As they reached the final bend, Graham drew level and threatened too overtake him.*

• ADV. **almost**

• PREP. **with** *The top of the water came level with her chin.*

lever *noun*

1 handle for operating a machine

• ADJ. **brake, control, gear**

• VERB + LEVER **move, operate, position, press, pull, push, put, release, set, throw** *When the lever is operated, the machine sews backwards. ◇ To release the brake, pull the lever towards you. ◇ Push the gear lever into first. ◇ The machine will stop immediately once the lever is*

released. ◇ *Set all three levers to the 0 position.* ◇ *He threw a lever and the engines roared to life.*
- PREP. **by (means of) a ~** *The machine is operated by means of a lever.*
- PHRASES **the position of the lever**

2 means of achieving sth
- ADJ. **powerful, useful**
- VERB + LEVER **act as, be, give sb, provide (sb with), serve as | use sth as**
- PREP. **~against** *If this allegation is true, it will give us a useful lever against him.* **~for** *This could serve as a powerful lever for peace.*

leverage *noun*

1 force
- ADJ. **enough, sufficient | extra | maximum**
- VERB + LEVERAGE **have** *He tried to push the door open, but he didn't have sufficient leverage.* **| gain, get, obtain | apply, exert** *Position the piece of wood so that maximum leverage can be applied.* **| provide | increase**

2 influence
- ADJ. **economic, political**
- VERB + LEVERAGE **have | gain** *They are determined to gain more political leverage.* **| give sb**

liability *noun*

1 responsibility
- ADJ. **full | legal**
- VERB + LIABILITY **have** *They have no legal liability for damage to customers' possessions.* **| accept, acknowledge, admit, assume | deny**
- PREP. **~for** *They have denied liability for the accident.*

2 **liabilities** money owed
- ADJ. **substantial | financial, tax** *an assessment of the company's financial liabilities*
- VERB + LIABILITIES **have | take on, take over** *He wants to know the precise amount of the liabilities he is taking over.* **| cover, discharge, meet** *There is enough money to cover existing liabilities.* **| reduce**
- PREP. **~to** *The company has liabilities to its employees.*

liable *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | remain | make sb, render sb** *Failure to provide insurance rendered him liable to prosecution.* **| find sb, hold sb** *They could be found liable for the entire amount.*
- ADV. **strictly | fully | potentially | personally | jointly, severally** (*law*) *Partners are jointly and severally* (= together and individually) *liable for a partnership's debts.* **| vicariously** *Under this rule, if Y is employed by X, X will be vicariously liable for the actions of Y.* **| criminally, financially, legally**
- PREP. **for** *She's fully liable for the company's debts.*

liaise *verb*

- ADV. **closely, directly**
- PREP. **between** *Her job is to liaise between the school and the home.* **with** *The tax office liaises closely with our department on such matters.*

liaison *noun*

1 communication
- ADJ. **close, effective, good | poor | community, customer | military**
- VERB + LIAISON **maintain** *We maintained a close liaison with the trade union.* **| establish** *We are hoping to establish better customer liaison.* **| improve**
- LIAISON + NOUN **committee, group, unit | officer | work**
- PREP. **in ~ with** *It's important that we work in close liaison with other charities in this field.* **| ~ between** *good liaison between management and staff* **~ with** *She is responsible for liaison with researchers at other universities.*

2 sexual relationship
- ADJ. **romantic, sexual | adulterous**
- VERB + LIAISON **have** *She was having a romantic liaison with her husband's best friend.* **| form**
- PREP. **~with**

liar *noun*

- ADJ. **accomplished, good** *She's an accomplished liar—they believed every word she said.* **| bad, poor | big, terrible** *She's the biggest liar I've ever known.* **| compulsive, habitual, pathological**
- VERB + LIAR **call sb** *Are you calling me a liar?*

libel *noun*

- ADJ. **alleged | criminal, seditious**
- VERB + LIBEL **sue (sb) for | claim | deny**
- LIBEL + NOUN **action, case, proceedings, suit | writ | law, lawyer | damages**
- PREP. **~against** *He has issued a writ for libel against the radio star Michael Clery.*

⇨ Note at CRIME (for more verbs)

liberal *noun*

- ADJ. **leading | bourgeois, middle-class | old-fashioned, traditional | radical | market | economic, political, social**
- LIBERAL + NOUN **leader, party**

liberal *adj.*

1 respecting other opinions
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **remarkably, very | fairly, quite, relatively** *His attitudes are quite liberal.*

2 in politics
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **comparatively, relatively** *comparatively liberal in trade matters* **| broadly, essentially** *a broadly liberal policy programme*

2 generous
- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **very**
- PREP. **with** *She's very liberal with her advice!*

liberalism *noun*

- ADJ. **radical | bourgeois | laissez-faire | market | economic, political, social**

liberation *noun*

- ADJ. **animal, gay, national, personal, sexual, women's**
- VERB + LIBERATION **achieve**
- LIBERATION + NOUN **movement**
- PREP. **~ by** *the liberation of the capital by allied forces* **~ from** *the struggle for liberation from colonial rule*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of liberation** *Up in the mountains we had the most wonderful sense of liberation.* **a fight/struggle for liberation, a war of liberation**

liberty *noun*

- ADJ. **great | complete | basic** *a citizens' charter which gives people basic civil liberties* **| civil, individual, personal, political, religious**
- VERB + LIBERTY **enjoy, have | demand, fight for | win** *The city won its liberty in the sixteenth century.* **| lose** *If found guilty, she is in danger of losing her liberty.* **| defend, protect, safeguard** *The law should protect the lib-*

erty of the individual. | **threaten** *The new legislation threatens individual liberty.* | **erode, restrict** *Our personal liberty is being eroded.* | **deny, deprive sb of, destroy** | **allow sb, give sb** *The system allows us complete liberty to do the task as we like.*

- PREP. **at ~** *The escaped prisoner has been at liberty for five days.* | **~ for** *demanding greater liberty for women* **~ from** *liberty from the abuse of police power*
- PHRASES **an infringement of liberty, loss of liberty, a threat to liberty**

librarian *noun*

- ADJ. **professional, qualified** | **chief, head, senior** | **assistant** | **branch, country** | **academic, public, reference** | **college, school, university**

⇨ Note at JOB (for verbs)

library *noun*

1 building

- ADJ. **large, small** | **excellent, good** | **public** | **private** | **branch, county, local, national, regional** | **mobile** *A number of councils operate mobile libraries.* | **well-stocked** | **circulating** (*historical*), **lending, subscription** *In 1784 he established his first circulating library.* | **reference** | **general** | **special, specialist** | **academic, research** | **college, departmental, school, university** | **copyright** *It is a copyright library and receives three copies of all books published in Britain.*
- VERB + LIBRARY **have** *The school has an excellent library.* | **go to, use, visit** *How often do you go to the library?* | **borrow sth from, get/take sth out of** *I got this very interesting book out of the library.* | **return sth to, take sth back to** *Do you have any books to take back to the library?* | **be available at/from** *Do you know about the other services available at your local library?* | **have access to** *Everyone in the country should have access to a lending library.*
- LIBRARY + VERB **have sth, hold sth** *The library has an extensive collection of books on French history.*
- LIBRARY + NOUN **book** | **shelf** | **catalogue** | **ticket** | **assistant, staff** | **user** | **facilities, provision, resources, service** *the need to improve library provision* | **skills** *teaching library skills to schoolchildren*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *a holiday programme for children at the local library* **in a/the ~** *I've been reading newspapers in the library.*

2 collection of books, etc.

- ADJ. **considerable, extensive** | **fine, impressive, magnificent, valuable** | **personal** | **film, music, photographic, picture, video**
- VERB + LIBRARY **have, possess** *The family possessed an extensive library.* | **amass, build (up)** *She had built up an impressive library of art books.* | **add to**
- PREP. **~ of** *a personal library of over 1 000 volumes*

licence *noun*

- ADJ. **valid** | **special** | **car, driving** | **marriage** | **export, gaming, import, operating, trade, trading** *The government is currently granting no operating licences to foreign firms.* | **television/TV** | **gun** | **software, user** *The CD-ROM comes with a single-user licence.* | **entertainment, music** *The bar was refused a music licence.* | **hotel, refreshment, restaurant**
- VERB + LICENCE **have, hold** *You have to have a licence to sell beer.* ◇ *Applicants must hold a valid driving licence.* | **buy, gain, get, obtain, win** *You can buy a TV licence at the post office.* ◇ *She gained her private pilot's licence.* ◇ *I got my driving licence when I was eighteen.* ◇ *The company has won the licence to run trains from the south coast to London.* | **apply for, make an application for** | **grant (sb), issue** | **refuse sb** | **revoke, take away** *He's had his licence taken away.* | **renew** | **lose** *She lost her driving licence when she was caught drink-driving.*
- LICENCE + VERB **expire, run out** *The licence expires at the end of the year.*
- LICENCE + NOUN **fee, holder**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *All these details are specified in the licence.* **under a/the ~** *The weapons were exported under a special export licence.* **under ~** *They are Italian trains, but they will be built in Britain under licence.* | **~ for** *a licence for software manufacture* **~ from** *a licence from the Performing Rights Society*
- PHRASES **the holder of a licence**

lid *noun*

1 removable top

- ADJ. **airtight, close-fitting, sealed, tight-fitting, tight** *Choose a dish with a tight-fitting lid.* | **hinged** | **box, case, coffin, dustbin, piano, saucepan, etc.**
- VERB + LID **lift, open, prise off, raise, remove, take off** *She lifted the lid of the box.* ◇ *We managed to prise off the lid with a tyre lever.* | **close, put down, put on, replace, screw down, screw on, shut** *I poured some water and screwed the lid back on the bottle.* ◇ *The coffin lid had been screwed down.* | **keep on** *Keep the lid on the pan until the liquid comes to the boil.*
- PREP. **on the ~** *His name was on the lid.*

2 lids eyelids

- ADJ. **closed, drooping, half-closed, half-open, heavy, hooded, lowered, narrowed** *She felt the tears burning against her closed lids.*
- VERB + LIDS **close, lower** *She saw James walk in and hastily lowered her lids.* | **lift, open** *She lifted her lids and found him looking at her.*
- LIDS + VERB **droop** *Heavy lids drooped over her eyes.*
- PREP. **behind … ~** *She could still see the light flickering behind her closed lids.* **beneath … ~** *She glanced at him occasionally from beneath lowered lids.* **through … ~** *He was watching her through hooded lids.*

lie *noun*

- ADJ. **big, monstrous, (whopping) great** *He told a whopping great lie!* | **little** | **complete, downright, outright** *That's a downright lie!* | **white** *A little white lie is surely excusable.* | **deliberate** | **barefaced, blatant, obvious, transparent** | **elaborate** *a web of elaborate lies*
- VERB + LIE **tell (sb)** | **believe, swallow** *How could she swallow such a blatant lie?* | **live** *He lived a lie for thirty years, pretending to be the faithful husband of two different women living in two different towns.*
- LIE + NOUN **detector**
- PHRASES **a pack/tissue/web of lies**

lie *verb*

1 be in a flat position

- ADV. **down** *He was lying down on the bed.*
- PREP. **on** *She lay on her stomach.*
- PHRASES **lie asleep/awake** *I used to lie awake at night worrying about it.* **lie face down/prostrate** *lying face down in the mud* **lie flat** *lying flat on the floor* **lie motionless/still** *Lie still while I put the bandage on.* **lie sprawled** *She lay sprawled on the sofa.*

2 say sth that is not true

- ADV. **convincingly** *He was unable to lie convincingly.* | **easily**
- PREP. **about** *She lied about her age.* **to** *Don't lie to me.*

lieutenant *noun*

⇨ Note at RANK

life *noun*

1 living things
- ADJ. **intelligent** *Is there intelligent life on other planets?* | **animal, bird, human, insect, marine, plant**
- LIFE + NOUN **form** | **cycle**

2 existence
- VERB + LIFE **lose** *He lost his life in an air crash.* | **bring sb back to, restore sb to** | **cling to, fight for** *She clung to life for several weeks.* | **risk** *She risked her life for the sake of the children.* | **save** *a drug that will save lives* | **spare** *She begged the soldiers to spare her son's life.* | **give, lay down, sacrifice** | **claim, cost, end, take** *The crash claimed 43 lives.* ◇ *His foolishness almost cost him his life.* ◇ *She took her own life.* | **start** (*figurative*) *The restaurant started life as a cinema.*
- LIFE + VERB **be lost** *No lives were lost in the accident.*
- LIFE + NOUN **assurance, insurance**
- PHRASES **an attempt on sb's life** *There have been three attempts on the president's life.* **in fear for/of your life** *Witnesses are living in fear for their life after giving evidence against the gang.* **life after death** *Do you believe in life after death?* **loss of life** *The plane crashed with heavy loss of life.* **a matter of life and death** (*figurative*) *These talks are a matter of life and death for the factory.* **the right to life** *anti-abortionists campaigning for the right to life* **signs of life** *The driver showed no signs of life.*

3 period between birth and death
- ADJ. **long, short** | **entire, whole** | **early** | **adult** | **later** *In later life he took up writing.* | **past, previous** *He never discussed the unhappinesses of his past life.* ◇ *I think I may have been an animal in a previous life.* | **future, next** | **working** *He was a miner all his working life.*
- VERB + LIFE **go through, live, spend** *She went through life always wanting what she couldn't get.* ◇ *He spent his whole life in Cornwall.* | **end** *He ended his life a happy man.* | **shorten** | **prolong** | **dedicate, devote** *He devoted his life to the education of deaf children.*
- LIFE + NOUN **history, story** | **membership** | **imprisonment, sentence** | **expectancy, span** (also **lifespan**) *Japanese people have a very high life expectancy.* ◇ *the lifespan of a mouse*
- PREP. **for ~** *She thought marriage should be for life.* **in your ~** *for the first time in her life* **throughout your ~** *Throughout her life she was dogged by loneliness.*
- PHRASES **all your life** *I've known her all my life.* **at sb's time of life** *At his time of life he should be starting to take things easy.* **the end of your life** *Her paintings became more obscure towards the end of her life.* **late in life** *She discovered jazz quite late in life.* **the ... of your life** *I had the fright of my life when I saw the snake in my bed.* ◇ *He met the love of his life at college.* **a phase/stage in/of (your) life** *She sensed she was entering a new phase in her life.* **the prime of life** *You're still in the prime of life.* **the remainder/rest of your life** *He'll be haunted by the crash for the rest of his life.*

4 activity in the world
- ADJ. **daily, day-to-day, everyday** | **real** *a real-life drama* | **modern** | **personal, private** *She did not tolerate press intrusion into her private life.* | **inner** *Only his wife had access to his inner life.* | **family, married** | **social** | **love, sex** | **public** *His fame was so sudden that he was unprepared for public life.* | **academic, business, cultural, economic, intellectual, political, professional, school** | **night** (also **nightlife**) *What's the nightlife like in the town?* | **city, village, etc.**
- VERB + LIFE **build, rebuild** *He built his whole life around his children.* ◇ *She is still rebuilding her life after the accident.*
- PHRASES **an attitude to life, an outlook on life, a philosophy/view of life** *I've always had a fairly optimistic outlook on life.* **a love of life** *He always had a great love of life.* **a man/woman in your life** *There has only been one woman in his life.* **see sth of life** *I wanted to see something of life before I settled down.* **the ... side of life** *His time in London was his first glimpse of the seamier side of life.* **want sth from/in/out of life** *They both seem to want the same things out of life.*

5 way of living
- ADJ. **good, happy** | **lonely, miserable, sad, unhappy** | **hard** | **easy** | **active, busy, hectic** | **exciting** | **full** | **peaceful, quiet** | **normal, ordinary** | **healthy** | **sheltered** | **double** *He had been leading a double life, married to two women.*
- VERB + LIFE **have, lead, live** *She leads a busy social life.* | **enjoy** | **change** *Learning meditation changed her life.* | **dominate, take over** *He never let his work dominate his life.* | **ruin** *He ruined his life through drinking.*
- PHRASES **build/make/start a new life** *They went to Australia to start a new life.* **enjoy/live life to the full** *He always believed in living life to the full.* **the high life** *enjoying the high life in the smartest hotels and restaurants of New York* **live a life of ...** *They're living a life of luxury in the Bahamas.* **a/the pace of life** *The pace of life is much gentler on the island.* **the quality of life** *He gave up his high-flying job and now enjoys a better quality of life.* **a way of life** *She loved the Spanish way of life and immediately felt at home there.*

6 liveliness
- VERB + LIFE **come to** *The city only comes to life at night.* | **breathe, bring sth to, inject** *They need some new, younger staff to breathe some life into the company.* | **burst/hum/teem with** *a child bursting with life*
- PHRASES **full of life** *It's nice to see an old man still so full of life.*

lifeboat *noun*
- ADJ. **inshore, offshore**
- VERB + LIFEBOAT **get into, man, take to** *The crew took to the lifeboats.* | **call out** *The lifeboat was called out five times in the January storms.* | **launch**
- LIFEBOAT + VERB **be stationed ...** *The lifeboat is stationed just along the coast from here.*
- LIFEBOAT + NOUN **service** | **crew** | **house, shed, station**
- PREP. **aboard/on board a/the ~** *two survivors on board the lifeboat* **in/on a/the ~** *There was only room for ten people in the lifeboat.*

lifeless *adj.*

1 dead
- VERBS **appear, be, lie, look** *She lay lifeless in the snow.*
- ADV. **completely** | **almost, nearly** *His body was limp and almost lifeless.* | **apparently, seemingly** *She lay there, apparently lifeless.*

2 without living things
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **completely** *a time when they earth was completely lifeless*

3 dull/without interest
- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **completely** | **rather** *The acting was dull and rather lifeless.*

lifeline *noun*

1 rope
- VERB + LIFELINE **throw sb** | **catch, cling to** *He clung to the lifeline and the woman pulled him towards the bank.*

2 important help
- ADJ. **real, vital** *Visits from loved ones are a vital lifeline for prisoners.* | **financial** *The state pension is their financial lifeline.*
- VERB + LIFELINE **give sb, hold out, offer (sb), provide (sb with), throw sb (out)** *The organization provides*

a real lifeline for many women in poverty. ◇ *He threw me a lifeline when he offered me a job.* | **have** *With this one unexpected victory, the club now has a lifeline.*

lifestyle *noun*

- ADJ. **healthy, unhealthy | active | sedentary | busy, hectic | stressful | affluent, comfortable, expensive, extravagant, glamorous, lavish | modern | nomadic**
- VERB + LIFESTYLE **change** *She had to change her lifestyle and eating habits.* | **enjoy, have, lead** *They enjoy a very comfortable lifestyle.* | **adopt** *We want them to adopt a healthier lifestyle.*
- PHRASES **a change in lifestyle**

lifetime *noun*

- ADJ. **long** *wisdom gained in the course of a long lifetime* | **short** *A lifetime is too short for all the great books there are!* | **entire, whole**
- VERB + LIFETIME **devote, spend** *He devoted a lifetime to working with disabled children.* | **take (sb)** *It took a whole lifetime to solve the mystery of her father's disappearance.* | **last (sb)** *This watch should last you a lifetime.* | **seem (like)** *It seems a lifetime since we first met.*
- LIFETIME + NOUN **achievement** *The veteran director won a lifetime achievement award.* | **employment, income** *Payments are based on expected lifetime income.* | **lifetime's experience, lifetime's work**
- PREP. **after a ~** *After a lifetime as a journalist in the troublespots of the world, he retired to the country.* **during your ~** *I've seen many changes during my lifetime.* **in your ~** *The artist was little known in his lifetime.* **of a ~** *It was the holiday of a lifetime!* | **~ in** *She spent a lifetime in politics.* **~ of** *a lifetime of problems*
- PHRASES **the habits of a lifetime** *It's hard to break the habits of a lifetime.* **half a lifetime, a legend in your own lifetime** *Herbert von Karajan was a legend in his own lifetime.* **a lifetime ago/away** *University seems a half a lifetime away.* **once in a lifetime** *That sort of thing happens only once in a lifetime.*

lift *noun*

1 machine for taking people/goods up and down

- ADJ. **private, service** *The hotel has a private lift linking it to the beach.* | **baggage, goods, passenger, wheelchair | electric, hydraulic | basket, chair, gondola | ski**
- VERB + LIFT **go down in, go up in/on, take** *We took the lift down to the ground floor.* | **operate**
- LIFT + VERB **serve sth** *The lift serves the top four floors of the building.* | **arrive**
- LIFT + NOUN **button | doors | shaft | attendant | pass** *You'll need your lift pass for the ski lifts.*

2 free ride in a car, etc.

- ADJ. **free**
- VERB + LIFT **ask for, cadge, hitch, thumb** *We stood by the roadside and thumbed a lift.* | **give sb, offer sb | accept** *Don't accept lifts from strangers.*
- PHRASES **a lift back/home** *He offered us a lift home.*

3 feeling of increased happiness/excitement

- ADJ. **great, huge, real** *Winning the semi-final gave the team a huge lift.*
- VERB + LIFT **give sb | get**

lift *verb*

1 raise/move sb/sth

- ADV. **almost, half** *Her hugged her, almost lifting her off the ground.* | **fractionally, a little, slightly | slowly | sharply** *Her head lifted sharply* | **carefully, gently, gingerly** *Carefully lift the cake off the tray and cool on a wire rack.* | **bodily** *She was lifted bodily aboard by two sailors.* | **back, down, out, up** *She lifted back the sheet.*
- VERB + LIFT **can/could barely/hardly** *The box was so heavy I could barely lift it.* | **try to | manage to | be too heavy to**
- PREP. **above** *He stood, legs apart, arms lifted above his head.* **down** *She leaned on him and he half lifted her down the stairs.* **from** *He felt as if an enormous weight had been lifted from his shoulders.* **into** *The heavy beams were lifted into place.* **off** *She lifted the book up off the table.* **out of** *He lifted the baby out of its cot.* **over** *She lifted the child over the fence.* **to** *Juliet nodded, lifting her face to David's.*

2 remove a law/rule

- ADV. **completely | partially** *The police managed to restore calm and the curfew was partially lifted.*
- VERB + LIFT **agree to, decide to, vote to** *The government decided to lift the ban on arms exports.* | **refuse to**

ligament *noun*

- ADJ. **ankle, knee**
- VERB + LIGAMENT **bruise, pull, rupture, strain, tear**
- LIGAMENT + NOUN **damage, injury, problem**

light *noun*

1 brightness

- ADJ. **clear, good | bright, harsh, intense, strong | blinding | full** *In full light, you could see Alison was well over forty.* | **bad, dim, faint, feeble, murky, poor, uncertain, weak | subdued | failing** *We could hardly see the ball in the failing light.* | **gentle, pale, soft, watery | mellow, warm | cold, cool** *in the cold light of morning* | **early | artificial | natural | infrared, ultraviolet** *film that is sensitive to ultraviolet light* | **visible**
- QUANT. **beam, ray | burst, flash, gleam, glimmer** *There was a flash of light followed by an explosion.* | **patch, pool**
- VERB + LIGHT **have** *Have you got enough light for reading?* | **generate, produce | cast, emit, give (out), provide, shed** *light emitted by a star* | **be bathed in | be sensitive to**
- LIGHT + VERB **gleam, glow, shine | come, fall, pour** *Light from a tall lamp fell in a pool on the desk.* | **reflect** *The light reflecting off the snow was dazzling.* | **grow stronger, increase | fade, fail, thicken | blind sb, dazzle sb** *We were momentarily blinded by the light of the sun.* | **catch sth** *You could see the imperfections in the repair when the light caught it.*
- LIGHT + NOUN **level | source | beam**
- PREP. **against the ~** *She held up the letter against the light.* **by the ~ of** *They managed to see where the door was by the light of the moon.* **into the ~** *Bring it into the light and we'll have a look at it.* **in the ~** *The place looked calm in the golden evening light.* | **~ from** *the light from the kitchen window*
- PHRASES **(at) the speed of light** *Nothing can travel faster than the speed of light.* **a point of light, a source of light** *The lamp was the only source of light in the room.*

2 sth that produces light

- ADJ. **bright** *the bright lights of the city* | **flashing, twinkling | electric, fluorescent, gas, neon, strip | bedside, ceiling, outside, overhead, wall | street | hazard, security, warning** *The car was stopped at the side of the road with its hazard lights flashing.* ◇ *A warning light goes on when the battery is running low.* | **landing** *The pilot could just make out the runway landing lights.*
- VERB + LIGHT **put on, switch on, turn on | have on** *Some cars already had their lights on.* | **leave on | extinguish, put off/out, switch off, turn off/out | turn up | dim, turn down | shine** *Someone shone a light in my face.* | **flash** *He flashed his lights to warn the oncoming cars.*
- LIGHT + VERB **be off/on | come on** *The warning light came on.* | **go out | fuse | gleam, glimmer, glow, shine | flash** *The blue light was flashing.* | **flicker** *The light flickered a couple of times then went out.* | **blind sb, dazzle sb**

- LIGHT + NOUN **switch | fitting**

⇨ See TRAFFIC LIGHT

light *verb*

1 make sth begin to burn

- VERB + LIGHT **attempt to, try to | pause to, stop to** *She paused to light another cigarette.*

2 (often **be lit**) give light to sth

- ADV. **well** *a brightly lit room* | **badly, dimly, poorly** *a dimly lit street* | **brightly, brilliantly | softly | briefly, momentarily** (*figurative*) *A gleam of humour momentarily lit his face.* | **suddenly | artificially, electrically | up** *There was an explosion and the whole sky lit up.*
- PREP. **with** (*figurative*) *Her face lit up with pleasure.*

light *adj.*

1 not dark

- VERBS **be | become, get, grow** *It was starting to get light.* ◇ *As soon as it grew light, we got up and dressed.*
- ADV. **completely, quite** *We'll set out as soon as it's completely light.* | **almost** *It was almost light outside.* | **fairly | enough** *It was not light enough to see things clearly.* | **still | beautifully** *The whole house was beautifully light and airy.*

2 not weighing much

- VERBS **be, feel, seem | become**
- ADV. **exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, very** *wearing only very light clothes* | **fairly, quite, reasonably, relatively | enough** *The tent is light enough for backpacking and touring.* | **surprisingly**

3 not great in amount/degree

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very | comparatively, fairly, quite, relatively** *The traffic is usually fairly light in the afternoons.*

light bulb *noun*

⇨ See BULB

lighter *noun*

- ADJ. **cigar, cigarette | butane, gas, petrol | gold**
- VERB + LIGHTER **flick** *He flicked his lighter but it didn't catch.*
- LIGHTER + VERB **catch**

light-headed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel | become | make sb** *The wine had made him a little light-headed.*
- ADV. **very | a little, slightly | curiously** *She felt curiously light-headed.*

lighting *noun*

- ADJ. **bright, good, strong | low, poor, soft, subdued, subtle | adequate | artificial, natural | electric, fluorescent, gas, neon, strip | street | stage | domestic | emergency** *The generator supplies emergency lighting.* | **background | concealed | security**
- QUANT. **level**
- VERB + LIGHTING **have** *The kitchen hasn't really got adequate lighting.* | **fit, instal, put in**
- LIGHTING + NOUN **level | arrangement, scheme, system** *a typical lighting scheme for a house* | **effects | engineer**

lightning *noun*

- ADJ. **forked, sheet** *Forked lightning flickered across the sky.*
- QUANT. **bolt, flash** *A bolt of lightning struck the roof of the building.*
- LIGHTNING + VERB **flash, flicker, fork, light sth (up)** *Lightning flashed outside.* ◇ *Lightning lit up the night sky.* | **hit sb/sth, strike sb/sth** *Lightning hit the tree.* ◇ *He was struck by lightning.*
- LIGHTNING + NOUN **bolt, flash | strike** *Lightning strikes caused scores of fires across the state.* | **speed**
- PHRASES **thunder and lightning**

like *verb*

- ADV. **enormously, a lot, particularly, really** *I liked him enormously and was sorry when he left.* ◇ *I really like that restaurant.* | **best, better** *Which story do you like best?* | **quite, rather | always, never** *I have always liked Sue and I don't intend to stop now.*
- VERB + LIKE **seem to | get to** *I hope you will get to like our town.*
- PHRASES **be universally liked** *a man who was universally liked*

likeable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, immensely, most, very | quite**

likelihood *noun*

- ADJ. **every** *There's every likelihood that she'll be able to help us.* | **greater, increased | real, strong**
- VERB + LIKELIHOOD **decrease, minimize, reduce** *Taking regular exercise reduces the likelihood of a heart attack.* | **increase, maximize, raise | affect** *This shouldn't affect the likelihood of you getting the job.*
- LIKELIHOOD + VERB **grow | diminish**
- PREP. **~ of** *Is their any likelihood of our getting our money back?*
- PHRASES **in all likelihood** *In all likelihood, he'll be fit to play on Saturday.*

likely *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *It is highly likely that the factory will have to close.* | **hardly** *They're hardly likely to get home before ten.* | **quite**

likeness *noun*

- ADJ. **strong** *The children all share a strong family likeness.* | **good | superficial** *There's a superficial likeness, but they're really very different.* | **physical | family**
- VERB + LIKENESS **see | bear, show** *She bears a remarkable likeness to her grandmother.*
- PREP. **~ between** *I can't see any likeness between her children.* **~ to**

liking *noun*

- ADJ. **great | particular, special**
- VERB + LIKING **have** *They have little liking for each other.* | **demonstrate, develop | share**
- PREP. **for your ~** *The weather's too hot for my liking.* **to your ~** *The food wasn't really to my liking.* | **~ for** *We share a liking for Italian cooking.*

limb *noun*

- ADJ. **long | thin | silken | powerful | bare, naked | broken, injured | stiff** *I eased my stiff limbs into the hot bath.* | **weary | amputated | artificial, prosthetic | lower, upper | hind** *The animal is able to stand up on its hind limbs.*
- VERB + LIMB **amputate**
- LIMB + NOUN **development, growth**

lime *noun*

- ADJ. **fresh**
- QUANT. **slice, wedge** *Serve the dish garnished with wedges of lime.*

- VERB + LIME **squeeze | slice | garnish sth with**
- LIME + NOUN **tree | juice**

⇨ Special page at FRUIT

limelight *noun*

- VERB + LIMELIGHT **grab, hog, steal** *She accused her co-star of trying to hog the limelight.* | **enjoy | avoid, shun | share**
- PREP. **into the ~** *an ordinary person who was suddenly thrust into the limelight* **in the ~** *She likes being in the limelight.* **out of the ~** *The band started touring again after two years out of the limelight.*

limit *noun*

- ADJ. **outer | northern, southern, etc. | three-mile, etc. | absolute** *I can offer you £20 but that's my absolute limit.* | **higher, maximum, upper | lower | strict, stringent, tight** *The application must be made within a strict time limit.* | **age, speed, time, weight** *There's a weight limit on the bridge.* | **physical | safety | budget, cash, credit, earnings, financial, income, overdraft | legal, prescribed, statutory | recommended**
- VERB + LIMIT **reach | cross | establish, impose, place, put, set** *Central government has set a limit on spending by local councils.* | **increase, raise | lower | exceed** *exceeding the speed limit* | **push sb to** *She pushed me to the limit of my abilities.*
- PREP. **above a/the ~** *The level of radioactivity in the soil was found to be above recommended limits.* **at a/the ~** *I was almost at the limits of my patience.* **below a/the ~** *The price fell below the lower limit.* ◇ *The trees are found only below a limit of 500 metres.* **beyond a/the ~** *Heat levels rose beyond the recommended limits.* ◇ *fishing beyond the twelve-mile limit* **on a/the ~** *islands on the outer limit of the continent* **over a/the ~** *He'd been drinking and was well over the legal limit.* **up to a/the ~** *You can buy cigarettes up to a limit of 200 per person.* **within a/the ~** *They did well within the limits of their knowledge.* ◇ *There was no school within a limit of ten miles.* **within ~s** *The children can do what they like, within limits.* **without ~** *Banks may buy bills of exchange without limit.* | **~ on** *There's a limit on the number of tickets you can buy.* **~ to** *There's a limit to what we can do to help.*

limit *verb*

- ADV. **seriously, severely, strictly**
- VERB + LIMIT **attempt to, seek to, take steps to, try to | be designed to** *The change in the law was designed to limit the scope for corruption.* | **agree to | serve to, tend to** *Rigid job descriptions can serve to limit productivity.*
- PREP. **to** *The teaching of history should not be limited to dates and figures.*

limitation *noun*

1 limiting of sth

- ADJ. **important, major, serious, severe | family | damage** *an exercise in damage limitation* | **arms** *talks on arms limitation* | **budget, budgetary, financial**
- VERB + LIMITATION **impose, place | remove | accept** *a limitation of your personal freedom*
- PREP. **~ on** *limitations on one's freedom of action* **~ to** *There should be no limitations to progress in the talks.*

2 **limitations** sth that sb cannot do

- ADJ. **important, major, serious, severe | inherent | physical, technical**
- VERB + LIMITATIONS **have** *She has serious limitations as a mother.* | **overcome, transcend** *At times his technique seems to transcend the limitations of the piano.* | **know, recognize** *Please don't ask me to sing—I know my limitations!* | **expose, reveal, show** *The team's technical limitations were exposed by the Italians.* | **accept** *You've just got to accept your limitations.*
- PREP. **despite sb's/sth's ~** *It's a useful book despite its limitations.*

limited *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**
- ADV. **decidedly, distinctly, extremely, highly, really, remarkably, seriously, severely, sharply, strictly, very** *Places are strictly limited, so you should apply as soon as possible.* | **increasingly | a bit, comparatively, fairly, quite, rather, relatively, somewhat | apparently | inevitably | socially** *The role that women could play was socially limited.*
- PREP. **in** *We're really limited in what we can do these days.* **to** *The number of passengers is limited to fifteen.*

limousine *noun*

- ADJ. **big, long | black | gleaming | stretch | chauffeur-driven, hired | waiting** *They walked back to the waiting limousine.*

limp *noun*

- ADJ. **pronounced | slight**
- VERB + LIMP **walk with | leave sb with** *The accident had left him with a slight limp.*

limp *verb*

- ADV. **badly, heavily** *He had hurt his leg and was limping badly.* | **a little, slightly | along, away, off** *He limped away from his car.*

limp *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, hang, lie, look, seem** *His arm hung limp at his side.* ◇ *Her hair looked limp and lifeless.* | **become, go, grow** *Her body suddenly went limp.*
- ADV. **very | completely | rather**

line *noun*

1 long thin mark on the surface of sth

- ADJ. **long | short | thick | fine, thin | direct, straight | curved, wavy, wiggly, zigzag | diagonal, horizontal, parallel, perpendicular, vertical | continuous, solid | broken, dotted** *Sign on the dotted line.* | **finishing, starting | contour**
- VERB + LINE **draw**
- LINE + VERB **run | divide sth**
- PREP. **in a ~** *walk in a straight line*
- PHRASES **a line of latitude/longitude**

2 mark like a line on the skin

- ADJ. **deep** *Deep lines ran from her nose to her mouth.*
- VERB + LINE **have** *He has lines on his forehead.*
- LINE + VERB **run**

3 row of people, things, words on a page, etc.

- ADJ. **long | short | new | continuous**
- VERB + LINE **form**
- PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *children standing in a line* **on a/the ~** *Start each paragraph on a new line.*

4 telephone/electricity wire/connection

- ADJ. **direct | bad** *Speak up—it's rather a bad line.* | **busy | power | phone, telephone | outside, party, private** *What do I dial for an outside line?*
- VERB + LINE **hold** *Hold the line* (= Don't put the receiver down), *please.*
- LINE + VERB **be engaged | be/go dead**
- PREP. **down the ~** *He kept shouting down the line at me.* **on the ~** *It's your mother on the line* (= on the telephone). **on ~** (also **online**) (= connected to a computer system)

5 section of railway track

- ADJ. **railway, train | main | branch, commuter, feeder** *The branch line is threatened with closure.*
- VERB + LINE **take** *Take the Bakerloo line and change at Piccadilly.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *We live on the Northern Line.*
- PHRASES **the end of the line**

6 **lines** words spoken by an actor in a play
- VERB + LINES **learn | forget | fluff**

7 direction/course of thought/action
- ADJ. **broad** *The broad lines of company policy are already laid down.* | **firm, hard, strong, tough | official, party, political**
- VERB + LINE **adopt, follow, pursue, take | bring sb/sth into** *The other members of the board must be brought into line.*
- PREP. **in ~ with** (= in agreement with), **out of ~ with** (= not in agreement with) *out of line with party policies* | **~ on** *the official line on food safety*
- PHRASES **a line of argument/enquiry/questioning**

8 place where an army is fighting
- ADJ. **battle, firing, front**
- PHRASES **behind enemy lines, in/on the front line**

lined *adj.*

1 of skin
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **deeply, heavily** *Her deeply lined face was creased into a smile*

2 of clothes, etc.
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **fully** *The coat is fully lined.*
- PREP. **with** *The case was lined with black velvet.*

linen *noun*

1 fabric
- ADJ. **fine, pure** *a fine linen shirt* | **coarse | Irish**
- VERB + LINEN **weave (sth from) | spin**

2 sheets/tablecloths/underwear, etc.
- ADJ. **clean, fresh | dirty, soiled | crisp, starched | bed, table | household**
- VERB + LINEN **change** *We change the bed linen once a week.*
- LINEN + NOUN **basket, cupboard**

liner *noun*

- ADJ. **luxury | ocean, ocean-going, transatlantic | cruise, passenger** *a job aboard a luxury cruise liner*

linger *verb*

- ADV. **long | faintly** *The smell of lavender lingered faintly in the room.* | **still | on** *The feelings of hurt and resentment lingered on for years.*
- PREP. **on** *Her eyes lingered on the stranger's face.* **over** *They stayed in the restaurant, lingering over coffee.*

linguistics *noun*

- ADJ. **contemporary, modern | applied, theoretical | computational, contrastive, descriptive, generative, historical, structural | Saussurean**

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

link *noun*

- ADJ. **close, intimate | strong | tenuous, weak | clear, definite, obvious | possible** *Scientists have established possible links between cancer and diet.* | **crucial, essential, important, vital** *Social workers provide a vital link between hospital and community.* | **common** *The common link between the three artists is their age.* | **formal, informal | direct, indirect | historical, long-standing | connecting | causal** *The report failed to prove a causal link between violence on screen and in real life.* | **missing** *the missing link in the search for the causes of cancer* | **tangible** *a tangible link with the past* | **business, commercial, communication, cultural, diplomatic, economic, financial, military, political, professional, sporting, trade, etc. | family, kinship | air, rail/railway, road, transport | fast, high-speed | computer, modem, radio, satellite, telephone, video**
- VERB + LINK **have | build, create, develop, establish, forge, foster, make** *The college is keen to build links with local industries.* | **provide | maintain, preserve | strengthen | break, cut, sever** *She has severed her last links with her family.*
- LINK + VERB **connect sth, join sth**
- LINK + NOUN **road**
- PREP. **via a/the ~** *a programme transmitted via a satellite link* | **~ across** *trade links across the border* **~ between** *The statistics show a clear link between social class and crime.* **~ in** *The sales manager is regarded as the weakest link in the chain.* **~ to** *The driver has a radio link to base.* **~ with** *the city's traditional link with opera*

link *verb*

- ADV. **closely, intimately | firmly, strongly, tightly | loosely | directly, explicitly** *Diseases that can be directly linked to pollution.* | **indissolubly, inescapably, inevitably, inexorably, inextricably, inseparably** *Poverty and crime are inextricably linked.* | **clearly, obviously | necessarily | intrinsically | causally | physically | romantically** *She has never been romantically linked with anyone.* | **in some way, somehow** *I could not help feeling that these factors were somehow linked.* | **together, up** *The two spacecraft will link up in orbit.*
- PREP. **into** *The computers are linked into a network.* **to** *Scientists have linked the illness to the use of pesticides.* **with** *the road that links Cairo with Alexandria*

lion *noun*

- QUANT. **pride**
- LION + VERB **growl, purr, roar | attack sb, maul sb | catch sth, hunt sth (down) | kill sb/sth | prowl**
- LION + NOUN **cub | tamer**
- PHRASES **a lion's mane**

lip *noun*

- ADJ. **top, upper | bottom, lower | chapped, cracked, dry | moist | fleshy, thick | thin | firm**
- VERB + LIP **bite, chew** *He bit his lip nervously, trying not to cry.* | **press together, purse** *She pursed her lips in disapproval.* | **pout | lick, smack** *He licked his lips hungrily.* | **moisten** *He nervously moistened his lips with his tongue.*
- LIP + VERB **move, part** *Her lips parted with a cry of fear.* | **quiver, tremble | curl** *His lips curled contemptuously.* | **pout** *The firm lips pouted in a sulk.* | **protrude**
- PREP. **around/round your ~** *He ran his tongue round his lips.* **between your ~** *a cigarette between his lips* **on your ~** *There was a slight smile on her lips.*

lipstick *noun*

- QUANT. **dab** *She put on a quick dab of lipstick and rushed out.*
- VERB + LIPSTICK **have on, wear | apply, put on | renew, touch up** *She touched up her lipstick in the mirror.* | **remove, take off, wipe off**
- LIPSTICK + VERB **smudge** *Her lipstick had smudged and she looked a real mess.*

liquid *noun*

- ADJ. **glutinous, thick, viscous | thin | clear | col-**

ourless | cloudy | flammable | volatile | immiscible, miscible *immiscible liquids such as oil and water*
- QUANT. **drop, pool**
- VERB + LIQUID **empty, pour** *Empty the liquid into a large bowl.* | **spill | drain (off), pour off, strain (off)** *Drain off the liquid from the meat into a measuring jug.* | **boil, bring to the boil, simmer | reduce** *Reduce the liquid by boiling for two minutes.* | **absorb, soak up**
- LIQUID + VERB **boil, simmer**
- LIQUID + NOUN **refreshment** (*informal*) *After two hours of the meeting we stopped for liquid refreshment.* | **soap | waste** *unprocessed liquid waste from a nuclear power station*
- PHRASES **in liquid form** *The medicine is usually taken in liquid form.*

liquidation *noun*

- ADJ. **compulsory, voluntary**
- VERB + LIQUIDATION **be forced into, be placed in, be put into, go into** *The firm may be forced into liquidation.*
- PREP. **in ~** *a company in liquidation*

liquor *noun*

- ADJ. **alcoholic, hard, intoxicating, strong** *It is an offence to sell intoxicating liquor to anyone under the age of 18.*
- LIQUOR + NOUN **licence** *The restaurant finally obtained a liquor licence.*

list *noun*

- ADJ. **long, short | complete, comprehensive, full** *We are compiling a full list of all local businesses.* | **alphabetical | waiting** *We're on the waiting list for membership of the golf club.* | **shopping | mailing | reading** *For further information, see the reading list at the end of the chapter.* | **guest | cast** *The play has an impressive cast list.* | **transfer** (= in football) *The club captain has been put on the transfer list at his own request.*
- VERB + LIST **compile, draw up, make | put sth on** *Did you put bread on the shopping list?*
- LIST + VERB **comprise sth, contain sth** *a list comprising all the paintings in the gallery*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Names of past members are not included in the list.* **on a/the ~** *I can't see your name on the list.* | **~ of** *a list of 200 names*
- PHRASES **the bottom/top of a list** *Variety is near the top of many people's list of job requirements.* **high on a list** *Safety is high on our list of priorities.* **a list of priorities** *Phoning the bank is top of my list of priorities today.*

listen *verb*

- ADV. **attentively, carefully, closely, hard, intently** *Now, listen very carefully to what she says.* | **half** *Lucy was only half listening to their conversation.* | **patiently, politely, sympathetically** *We listened politely to his stories.* | **avidly, eagerly, with interest** *The guests were listening with great interest.* | **gravely, impassively** *Pym listened impassively until the woman had finished.* | **in silence, quietly** *They listened to the announcement in silence.* | **anxiously | in awe**
- VERB + LISTEN **(not) want to, will/would (not)** *Nobody will listen to me!* ◇ *I tried to warn her, but she wouldn't listen.* | **be prepared to, be willing to | refuse to** *He refused to listen to her explanation.*
- PREP. **for** *We listened anxiously for the sound of footsteps.* **to** *listening to the radio*
- PHRASES **listen with half an ear** *I listened with half an ear to the conversation at the next table.*

listener *noun*

- ADJ. **attentive, good, great, sympathetic | radio**

literacy *noun*

- ADJ. **basic** *All the children are tested in basic literacy.* | **adult | mass | computer**
- VERB + LITERACY **achieve, acquire** *different methods for acquiring literacy* | **develop, promote, teach**
- LITERACY + NOUN **campaign, programme**

literate *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **highly, very** *Only highly literate people are capable of discussing these subjects.* | **fully** *They are the first fully literate generation in the country.* | **barely, hardly** *He was uneducated and barely literate.* | **fairly, quite | economically, musically, politically, technologically** (= educated about economics, music, etc.)
- PREP. **in** *Both parents were literate in English.*
- PHRASES **computer literate** (= able to use a computer)

literature *noun*

1 written works of art
- ADJ. **classical, contemporary, modern | great**
- QUANT. **piece, work**
- VERB + LITERATURE **read, study**

2 writing on a particular subject
- ADJ. **extensive, voluminous | promotional, sales**
- QUANT. **body** *the growing body of literature on development issues*
- PREP. **~ about** *I picked up some literature about pensions.* **~ on** *There's an extensive literature on the subject.*

litigation *noun*

- ADJ. **costly, expensive | endless, lengthy, protracted | threatened | pending | ensuing, subsequent | civil, commercial, criminal**
- VERB + LITIGATION **be/become/get involved in, be engaged in, conduct, engage in | threaten | avoid** *The payment was made to avoid threatened litigation.*
- LITIGATION + NOUN **costs**
- PREP. **~ against** *He engaged in endless litigation against the media.* **~ between** *litigation between private parties*
- PHRASES **the cost of litigation, the risk/threat of litigation**

litre *noun*

⇨ Note at MEASURE

litter *noun*

- VERB + LITTER **drop, leave** *Please do not leave litter after your picnic.* | **clean up, clear up, pick up**
- LITTER + VERB **be strewn** *Litter was strewn all over the field.*
- LITTER + NOUN **basket, bin | lout** *The local council has pledged to clamp down on litter louts on the beach.*

live *verb*

1 in a place
- ADV. **alone | together** *She disapproves of unmarried couples living together.* | **apart** *The couple have lived apart for two years.*
- VERB + LIVE **come to, go to** *We went to live in London when I was three.*
- PREP. **among** *living among the people of this remote island* **in** *He lives in Manchester.* **near** *She lives quite near here.* **with** *I still live with my mum.*

• PHRASES **a place to live** *young couples looking for a place to live*

2 be alive

• ADV. **longer** *Women live longer than men in general.* | **forever** *Who wants to live forever? I don't.* | **happily (ever after)** *All she wanted was to get married and live happily ever after.* | **amicably, harmoniously, peaceably** *the need to live as harmoniously as possible with everyone else* | **well** *Most of the people live very well, with nice houses and plenty to eat.* | **frugally, modestly** *They lived frugally off a diet of porridge and lentils.* | **vicariously** *She tried to live vicariously through her children.*

• PREP. **in** *Many of the people live in poverty and misery.* **through** *She lived through two world wars.* **with** *living with Aids*

• PHRASES **(for) as long as you live** *I shall remember this day for as long as I live.* **learn to live with sth** *learning to live with disability* **live a life of sth** *He's now living a life of luxury in Australia.* **live to (be) 80, 90, etc., live to the age of 80, 90, etc.** *She lived to the age of 95.* **the world we live in** *teaching children about the world we live in*

live *adj., adv.*

• VERBS **appear, be, play** *He appeared live on the Song and Dance Show.* ◇ *Is the show live or recorded?* ◇ *The band have never played this song live before.* | **come to sb, go out** *This programme comes to you live from the Albert Hall.* ◇ *In those days the broadcasts all went out live.* | **be broadcast, be screened, be shown, be televised, be transmitted** *The match will be televised live this evening.* | **be recorded** *The CD was recorded live at a concert given last year.*

livelihood *noun*

• VERB + LIVELIHOOD **earn, gain** | **protect, secure** *an insurance policy to secure your livelihood in old age* | **affect, threaten** *The new law threatens the livelihood of thousands of farmers.* | **destroy, take away**

• LIVELIHOOD + VERB **depend on sth** *people whose livelihood depends on the forest*

• PHRASES **a means/source of livelihood** *The boat was his main source of livelihood.*

liver *noun*

1 organ in the body

• ADJ. **enlarged, fatty** | **donor** *a nationwide appeal for a donor liver*

• LIVER + NOUN **cancer, cirrhosis, damage, disease, dysfunction, failure, injury** | **cell, enzyme, tissue** | **function** | **biopsy, transplant, transplantation**

• PREP. **in the ~** *enzymes in the liver* **of the ~** *cirrhosis of the liver* **to the ~** *bile acids returning to the liver*

2 liver of an animal as food

• VERB + LIVER **eat, have** | **chop** | **braise, cook, fry**

• LIVER + NOUN **pâté, sausage**

• PHRASES **chicken/lamb's/pig's, etc. liver**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

living *noun*

• ADJ. **comfortable, decent, good** *He makes a good living as a builder.* | **meagre** *She eked out a meagre living as an artist's model.*

• VERB + LIVING **earn, make** *Her dream was to earn her living as a singer.* | **eke out, scrape (together), scratch** *They were forced to scrape a living by selling things on the streets.* | **do sth for** *He asked what I did for a living.*

load *noun*

• ADJ. **heavy, light** *He has a heavy teaching load this year.* | **full** *The plane took off with a full load.*

• VERB + LOAD **bear, carry** | **lighten, share, spread** *We're trying to spread the load by employing more staff.* | **drop, dump, shed** *A lorry has shed its load of wood on the motorway.*

• PREP. **under its, etc. ~** *The tables creaked under their heavy load.*

loaded *adj.*

1 carrying a load

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **heavily** *a convoy of heavily loaded lorries* | **fully** *a fully loaded truck* | **lightly**

• PREP. **with** *The lorry was loaded with crates of beer.*

2 biased

• VERBS **be, seem**

• ADV. **heavily** | **rather, slightly** | **emotionally, ideologically, politically** *Try to avoid politically loaded terms like 'nation'.*

• PREP. **against** *The odds were slightly loaded against us.* **in favour of** *The legislation is heavily loaded in favour of employers.*

loaf *noun*

• ADJ. **fresh, stale** | **cut, sliced** | **brown, white, wholemeal, etc.**

• VERB + LOAF **bake** | **cut, slice**

• LOAF + NOUN **tin**

• PHRASES **a loaf of bread**

loan *noun*

• ADJ. **large, massive** | **long-term, short-term** | **interest-free, low-interest** | **secured, unsecured** *As it was an unsecured loan, their property was not at risk.* | **outstanding** *They used the inheritance to pay off their outstanding loan.* | **personal** | **bank** | **bridging, temporary**

• VERB + LOAN **apply for, ask for, request** | **arrange, get, raise, take out** *She had to take out a bridging loan until she could sell her house.* | **give sb, grant sb, make sb** *My bank manager offered to make me a loan.* | **receive** | **pay off, repay** | **secure, underwrite**

• LOAN + VERB **average sth, total sth** *loans totalling a million pounds*

• LOAN + NOUN **application** | **agreement, arrangement, deal** | **charges, interest, rate** | **repayment** *They were struggling to meet their monthly loan repayments.* | **commitments** | **facility, service** *The bank provides personal loan facilities at competitive rates.* | **period** *The book must be returned by the end of the loan period.* | **shark** *He ran up massive debts borrowing from loan sharks.*

• PREP. **on ~ (from)** *The paintings are on loan from the Wallace Collection.* **~ from** *a loan from my brother*

• PHRASES **give sb/have the loan of sth** *He's given us the loan of his car for the weekend.* **security against/for a loan** *He had to use his house as security for the loan.*

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

loathing *noun*

• ADJ. **absolute, deep, intense**

• VERB + LOATHING **arouse, fill sb with** *People who took football too seriously aroused deep loathing in me.* | **develop, feel, have**

• PREP. **~ for** *She felt an intense loathing for her boss.* **~ of** *a deep loathing of war*

• PHRASES **fear and loathing** *The incident has created an atmosphere of fear and loathing among the people.*

lobby *noun*

• ADJ. **powerful, strong** *a powerful anti-smoking lobby* | **mass** | **anti-abortion, anti-hunt, environmental, industrial, nuclear, political, etc.**

- VERB + LOBBY **mount, organize**
- LOBBY + NOUN **group**
- PREP. **~against** *Many groups have together mounted a lobby against cuts in hospitals.* **~for** *Villagers have organized a lobby for improved local facilities.*

lobby *verb*

- ADV. **actively, hard | successfully**
- PREP. **against** *Head teachers have been lobbying hard against education cuts.* **for** *The group successfully lobbied for changes in the law.* **on behalf of** *The organization has been set up to lobby the government on behalf of all the people who have lost their pensions.*
- PHRASES **intense/intensive lobbying** *The decision followed months of intense lobbying of UN officials.* **political lobbying** *The group achieved its aims after months of political lobbying.*

locate *verb*

1 find the position of sb/sth

- ADV. **accurately, precisely** *The machine can accurately locate radioactive material.* | **quickly | easily**
- VERB + LOCATE **be able/unable to, can/could** *We haven't yet been able to locate a suitable site.* | **try to | fail to | be easy to** *Some stars are quite easy to locate with a telescope.* | **be difficult to**

2 be located be in a place

- ADV. **centrally** *The hotel is centrally located between Dam Square and Central Station.* | **conveniently, ideally, strategically | physically** *Two people can meet in virtual reality even if physically located in different continents.* | **abroad**
- PREP. **at, between, close to, in, near, on, outside, within, etc.** *Your accommodation is conveniently located within walking distance of the town centre.*

location *noun*

- ADJ. **exact, precise, specific** *We still do not know the precise location of the crash.* | **secret, undisclosed | convenient, ideal, suitable**
- VERB + LOCATION **show** *The map shows the exact location of the mine.*
- PREP. **at a/the … ~** *The meeting is taking place at a secret location.* **on ~** *The film is being made on location in India.*

lock *noun*

1 fastening device

- ADJ. **Chubb, combination, lever, mortise, Yale | door, window**
- VERB + LOCK **fit** *We had new locks fitted after the burglary.* | **break, force, pick | turn** *He turned the lock and pushed the door open.*
- PHRASES **insert/turn the key in the lock, (keep sb/sth) under lock and key** *Prisoners are kept under lock and key 24 hours a day.*

2 small bunch of hair

- ADJ. **stray** *She flicked a stray lock of hair off her face.* | **flowing** *She had long flowing locks and blue eyes.*

lock *verb*

1 close with a lock

- ADV. **carefully** *He carefully locked the door behind him.*
- VERB + LOCK **forget to**
- PHRASES **be firmly/securely locked, keep sth locked** *Keep your garage securely locked.*

2 put sb/sth inside sth that is locked

- ADV. **away, in, up** *I was terrified they would lock me up again.*
- PREP. **in** *I locked myself in the bathroom.*
- PHRASES **be safely/securely locked** *All the valuables were safely locked away.*

locust *noun*

- QUANT. **plague, swarm**
- LOCUST + NOUN **swarm**

log *noun*

1 wood

- ADJ. **cut, sawn** *a pile of sawn logs* | **fallen** *The road was blocked by fallen logs.* | **blazing, burning**
- VERB + LOG **chop, saw, split**
- LOG + VERB **blaze, burn, crackle** *logs crackling in the fireplace*
- LOG + NOUN **cabin | fire**

2 written record

- ADJ. **detailed | captain's, ship's**
- VERB + LOG **keep** *She kept a log of their voyage.*
- LOG + NOUN **book**

logic *noun*

1 system of reasoning

- ADJ. **formal | deductive, inductive**
- VERB + LOGIC **apply, use** *Philosophers use logic to prove their arguments.*

2 use of reason

- ADJ. **compelling, exquisite, impeccable, inexorable** *There is a compelling logic to his main theory.* | **strict | internal, underlying | commercial, economic, political, scientific** *There is sound commercial logic in never giving credit to retailers.*
- VERB + LOGIC **accept, follow, understand** *I can't follow the logic of what you are saying.* | **defy** *It's a stupid decision that completely defies logic.* | **apply, use** *You can't use the same logic in dealing with children.*
- PREP. **~ behind** *What's the logic behind this decision?* **~ in** *There doesn't seem to be any logic in the move.*

logical *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound** *It all sounds quite logical.*
- ADV. **eminently, extremely, highly, very | absolutely, completely, entirely, perfectly, quite** *His arguments seemed perfectly logical.* | **purely** *The issue here is purely logical: it has nothing to do with ethics.* | **hardly**

logo *noun*

- ADJ. **distinctive** *The company has a distinctive logo that makes it well known.* | **company, corporate**
- VERB + LOGO **bear, carry, display, feature** *The diary features the organization's distinctive new logo.* | **unveil** *The new logo was unveiled in a blaze of publicity.*
- PREP. **~ for** *the logo for the World Cup*

loneliness *noun*

- ADJ. **aching, great, intense, terrible, utter | personal**
- VERB + LONELINESS **experience, feel, suffer** *He experienced terrible loneliness after the loss of his wife*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of loneliness**

lonely *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get**
- ADV. **desperately, extremely, terribly, unbearably, very** *She was desperately lonely at school.* | **a bit, a little, pretty, rather | oddly** *She felt oddly lonely without her books.*

long *verb*

- ADV. **desperately** *He longed desperately to be back at home.* | **secretly** *They were the words she had secretly* *longed to hear.* | **always** *She had always longed to go abroad.*

• PREP. **for** *He hated the city and longed for the mountains.*

long *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, seem** *That dress looks a bit long to me.*

• ADV. **really, very** | **extra** *Economy class can be uncomfortable for those with extra-long legs.* | **a bit, fairly, quite, rather** *His journey to work is quite long.* | **enough** *Are you sure two hours will be long enough?*

longing *noun*

• ADJ. **deep, desperate, great, intense, overwhelming, passionate, terrible, wild** *She had a desperate longing to go back.* | **sudden** | **hopeless** | **nostalgic, wistful** *a wistful longing for the past* | **physical, sexual**

• VERB + LONGING **be filled with, be full of, feel, have** *He felt an overwhelming longing to hear her voice again.*

• PREP. **~for** *his intense longing for privacy*

longitude *noun*

• ADJ. **calculate, determine**

• PREP. **at (a) ~** *The town is at longitude 28° west.*

• PHRASES **a line of longitude** *This line of longitude cuts through the jungle.*

long-lived *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **extremely, remarkably, unusually, very** *Some of these creatures are remarkably long-lived.*

loo *noun*

• ADJ. **public** | **outside** | **gents', ladies', men's, women's**

• VERB + LOO **go to, use** *Can I use your loo?* | **be desperate for, need** *We got stuck in a traffic jam and I was desperate for the loo.* | **flush, flush sth down** *He flushed the letter down the loo.*

• LOO + NOUN **paper, roll**

• PREP. **in the ~, on the ~**

look *noun*

1 act of looking at/considering sth

• ADJ. **little** | **brief, cursory, quick** | **leisurely** | **careful, close** *Take a closer look at it.* | **furtive** *I had a furtive look in her bag when her back was turned.* | **overall** *We need to take an overall look at the situation.* | **nostalgic** *The book takes a nostalgic look at the golden age of the railway.* | **critical, hard, honest, radical, realistic, serious, uncompromising** *You should take a long, hard look at your reasons for wanting to join the army.* | **humorous, light-hearted** *The book takes a humorous look at parenthood.* | **fresh** *I think it's time to take a fresh look at our sales techniques.*

• VERB + LOOK **have, take** | **get** *Did you get a look at his new car?* | **sneak, steal**

• PREP. **~at** *I managed to steal a look at the exam paper.* **~in/into** *She couldn't resist a quick look in the mirror.* **~out of** *Have a look out of the window and see who's at the door.* **~through** *I had a brief look through the report before the meeting.* **~ towards** *The book concludes with a look towards the future.*

• PHRASES **without a backward look** *She walked out of the door without a backward look.*

2 exploring/looking for sth

• ADJ. **good** | **little, quick**

• VERB + LOOK **have**

• PREP. **~around/round** *We had a good look around the old town on the first day of our holiday.* **~for** *I had a look for websites on Egyptian music, but didn't find anything.*

3 expression on sb's face

• ADJ. **angry, black, dark, dirty, exasperated, fierce, furious, harsh, irritated, murderous, reproachful, savage, scathing, scornful, severe, sharp, withering** *She threw him a dirty look.* | **cold, cool, dry, frosty, steely** | **disgusted** | **pained** | **baleful, forbidding** | **glum, grim, hangdog** | **suspicious, wary** | **cautious** | **sideways** | **guilty, sheepish, shifty** *The guilty look on his face told us all we needed to know.* | **apprehensive, anxious, doubtful, worried** *They had worried looks on their faces.* | **sad** | **blank, dazed, distant, faraway, glazed, unfocused, vacant** | **wild** *The man had a wild look in his eyes.* | **funny, odd, strange** *He gave me a funny look.* | **curious, meaningful, puzzled, quizzical, searching, speculative, thoughtful** | **knowing, shrewd** | **penetrating, piercing** | **earnest, intense, intent, steady** | **bold, challenging** | **smug, triumphant** | **mischievous, wicked** | **amused, wry** | **innocent** | **coy, shy** | **compassionate, loving** | **grateful** | **apologetic** | **appealing, despairing, desperate, frantic** | **hungry**

• VERB + LOOK **have** | **cast (sb), dart (sb), give (sb), shoot (sb), throw (sb)** | **get** *I got a black look from Amy.* | **exchange** *They exchanged meaningful looks.*

• PREP. **~ from** *A withering look from his wife silenced him.* **~of** *He darted her a look of contempt.*

• PHRASES **a ... look in sb's eyes/on sb's face** *She had a puzzled look in her eyes.* ◇ *He opened the door with a scornful look on his face.* **take that (...) look off your face** *Take that smug look off your face before I slap you!*

4 sb/sth's appearance

• ADJ. **overall** *the overall look of the house* | **professional** *Use high-quality paper to give your CV a more professional look.* | **youthful**

• VERB + LOOK **have** | **like** *I didn't like the look of the salad so I didn't touch it.*

• PREP. **by/from the ~ of sb/sth** *Joe isn't getting much sleep from the look of him.* ◇ *By the looks of it, someone's already staying in this room.* | **~about** *He still had a youthful look about him.* **~of** *a fabric with the look of silk*

5 looks sb's attractiveness

• ADJ. **good** | **striking** | **classic** *He had classic good looks.* | **boyish, clean-cut, youthful** | **craggy**

• VERB + LOOKS **have** | **lose** *She's lost her looks.*

6 fashion/style

• ADJ. **latest, new** | **casual** | **classic** | **sophisticated** | **individual**

• VERB + LOOK **have** | **give sb/sth** *They've given the place a completely new look this year.*

• LOOK + VERB **be/come back in (fashion), go out (of fashion)** *The classic look never goes out of fashion.*

look *verb*

1 turn your eyes in a particular direction

• ADV. **carefully, closely** *Look at the machine quite carefully before you buy it.* | **sharply** *She looked up at me sharply when I said that.* | **intently, searchingly** | **archly** | **enquiringly, questioningly, quizzically, speculatively** | **doubtfully, dubiously** | **expectantly** | **anxiously, apprehensively** | **enviously, longingly** *He looked longingly at the food on the table.* | **beseechingly, imploringly, pleadingly** | **reproachfully** | **disapprovingly** | **pityingly** | **reflectively** | **studiously** *He was looking studiously down to avoid meeting her eyes.* | **impassively** | **blankly, dumbly, uncomprehendingly, unseeingly** | **across, away, down, over, round, up** *She looked over to where the others were chatting.*

• VERB + LOOK **turn to** *He turned to look as she came down the stairs.* | **let sb** *'It's beautiful!' 'Oh! Let me look!'*

• PREP. **at** *What are you looking at?* **towards** *She looked towards the door.*

- PHRASES **look and see** *I'll look and see if I've got any sugar in the cupboard.*

2 seem/appear

- VERB + LOOK **make sb/sth** *You made me look a complete fool!*
- PREP. **like** *an animal that looked like a large hedgehog* **to** *It looks to me as if the company is in real trouble.*
- PHRASES **look as if/as though**

loop *noun*

- ADJ. **continuous, endless**
- VERB + LOOP **form, make** *Lay the two ends of string so they make a loop over each other.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The audio tape runs in a continuous loop lasting thirty minutes.* **through a/the ~** *Put the other end of the string through the loop.*

loophole *noun*

- ADJ. **legal, security, tax**
- VERB + LOOPHOLE **find | exploit, use** *People who don't want to pay tax will exploit any loophole.* | **close, plug, tighten** *a law designed to close any loopholes in tax*
- LOOPHOLE + VERB **allow sb/sth, enable sb/sth** *a loophole enabling workers to take unnecessary sick leave*
- PREP. **~in** *a loophole in the regulations*

loose *adj.*

1 not firmly fixed

- VERBS **be, feel, seem** *One of the bricks feels slightly loose.* | **come, shake, work** *The top of the tap has come loose.* ◇ *A screw had worked loose from the door handle.* | **prise sth**
- ADV. **a bit, rather, slightly**

2 not tied back

- VERBS **be, hang** *Her hair hung loose about her shoulders.* | **leave sth, wear sth** *Shall I wear my hair loose?*

3 not shut in or tied up

- VERBS **be | cut** (*figurative*), **break, get** *The animals had broken loose from their pens.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The organization broke loose from its sponsors.* ◇ *He felt he had to cut loose from his family.* | **let sth, turn sth** *I'm going to let the dogs loose.*

lord *noun*

- ADJ. **great, noble | feudal**
- VERB + LORD **serve**
- LORD + VERB **rule sb/sth**

⇨ Note at PEER

lorry *noun*

- ADJ. **big, heavy, huge, large | ten-ton, etc. | articulated | open | long-distance | diesel | army | breakdown, container, delivery, gritting, refrigerated, tipper**
- QUANT. **convoy**
- VERB + LORRY **drive**
- LORRY + VERB **carry sth** *a refrigerated lorry carrying beer*
- LORRY + NOUN **driver | load**

lose *verb*

1 not keep

- ADV. **financially**
- VERB + LOSE **be going to, be likely to, stand to** *The company stands to lose financially if this deal falls through.* | **have nothing to** *You have nothing to lose by telling the truth.* | **not want to | cannot/could not afford to** *We cannot afford to lose any more senior members of staff.* | **begin to**

2 be defeated

- VERB + LOSE **cannot/could not afford to** *This is a game that Lazio cannot afford to lose.*
- PREP. **against** *We lost against Leeds.* **by** *We lost by five goals to two.* **to** *The visiting side lost to the home team.*
- PHRASES **win or lose** *Win or lose, the important thing is to remain calm.*

PHRASAL VERB

lose out

- ADV. **financially**
- PREP. **on** *Many of the canal children were constantly on the move, and lost out on regular schooling.* **to** *Our firm lost out to a larger company that could offer a lower price.*

loser *noun*

- ADJ. **good | bad, poor** *He's extremely competitive and a bad loser.* | **born | big, main** *The main loser was the United Left, which lost eight seats.* | **real, ultimate** *If the teachers go on strike, the children are the ultimate losers.*
- VERB + LOSER **back** *The film company thought they'd backed a loser until the film won an Oscar.*

loss *noun*

1 losing of sb/sth

- ADJ. **appreciable, dramatic, great, major, serious, significant, substantial, tremendous** *The ship sank with great loss of life.* ◇ *She suffered a significant loss of hearing after the operation.* | **slight | total | temporary | permanent | sad** *His death is a sad loss to all who knew him.* | **blood, hair, hearing, weight** *Weight loss can be a sign of a serious illness.* | **job** *The company is expected to announce 200 job losses.*
- VERB + LOSS **mourn** *China mourned the loss of a great leader.*
- PREP. **~of** *loss of appetite* ◇ *loss of confidence*
- PHRASES **no great loss** *She wouldn't be able to attend the lecture, which was no great loss.* **a sense of loss** *She was filled with an overwhelming sense of loss.*

2 amount of money lost

- ADJ. **heavy, huge, massive | slight, small | net | pre-tax | overall, total | economic, financial | trading**
- VERB + LOSS **incur, make, suffer, sustain** *There's no way you can make a loss on this deal.* ◇ *The business sustained losses of £20 million.* | **cut, minimize** *He decided to cut his losses and sell the shares before they sank further.* | **recoup, recover** *It took the firm five years to recoup its losses.* | **offset** *We can offset the loss against next year's budget.* | **underwrite** *No bank would be willing to underwrite such a loss.*
- PREP. **at a ~** *The bookshop was operating at a loss.* | **~on** *We made a net loss on the transaction.*

3 sb/sth lost/killed

- ADJ. **big, great, heavy, severe** *The enemy suffered heavy losses.*
- VERB + LOSS **suffer, sustain, take | inflict** *Fighter planes inflicted heavy losses on the enemy.*

lost *adj.*

1 unable to find the way

- VERBS **be | get** *We got lost in the woods.*
- ADV. **completely** *By this time we were completely lost.*

2 not knowing what to do

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *I felt lost without my watch.*
- ADV. **completely, totally** *Alina was looking totally lost.* | **very | a bit, a little, rather** *She looked rather lost and lonely, standing in a corner by herself.*

lot *noun*

1 whole amount

- ADJ. **whole** *She bought the whole lot.*

2 large amount
- ADJ. **awful** *I've got an awful lot of work to do before I go on holiday.*
- PHRASES **a hell of a lot** *a hell of a lot of money*

3 empty ground
- ADJ. **empty, vacant** *He parked his caravan on a vacant lot.*

lotion *noun*
- ADJ. **soothing | body, eye, face, foot, hand, skin | moisturizing, setting, sun/suntan | calamine**
- VERB + LOTION **apply, dab on, rub in** *She dabbed calamine lotion on her mosquito bites.*

lottery *noun*
- ADJ. **national, state**
- VERB + LOTTERY **have, hold** *We're having a lottery to raise money for homeless families.* **| win**
- LOTTERY + VERB **raise sth** *The lottery has raised millions of pounds.*
- LOTTERY + NOUN **ticket | winner | jackpot, prize** *a £3 million lottery jackpot* **| funds**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *I won my car in a lottery* **on the ~** *A couple have scooped £10 million on the national lottery.*

loud *adj.*
- VERBS **be, sound | turn sth up** *She turned the radio up loud.*
- ADV. **deafeningly, extremely, really, very | pretty, rather | unnaturally** *Her voice sounded unnaturally loud.*
- PHRASES **loud and clear** *Tommy's voice came loud and clear from the back row.*

loudspeaker *noun*
- LOUDSPEAKER + VERB **broadcast sth** *Loudspeakers broadcast the football results.*
- LOUDSPEAKER + NOUN **announcement | system**
- PREP. **from a/the ~** *Christmas songs blared from loudspeakers.* **over a/the ~** *We heard the news over the loudspeaker.* **through a/the ~** *A woman was addressing the crowd through a loudspeaker.*

lounge *noun*

1 room in a house/hotel
- ADJ. **bar, cocktail, coffee, reception, sun, television/TV | attractive, comfortable, cosy, elegant, pleasant, spacious | attractively-furnished, comfortably-furnished, etc. | communal | hotel | guest**
- LOUNGE + NOUN **area, bar**
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

2 room at an airport
- ADJ. **airport | arrivals, departure | passenger, VIP**
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

love *noun*
- ADJ. **deep, great, overwhelming, passionate** *her deep love for him* **| genuine, pure, real, true | unconditional | abiding, eternal, undying** *He had an abiding love of the English countryside.* ◇ *You have my undying love.* **| hopeless, unrequited** *a sad tale of unrequited love* **| thwarted** *a play about thwarted love* **| mutual | free** *They were into free love and avoided commitment.* **| first** *I like most sports but tennis is my first love.* **| brotherly, maternal, parental, sisterly | courtly, platonic, romantic** *the cult of courtly love in twelfth-century Aquitaine* **| erotic, physical, sexual | heterosexual, homosexual, lesbian | redemptive | divine, human**
- VERB + LOVE **feel, have** *She felt no love for him.* ◇ *He had a great love of life.* **| search for, seek | find** *At last she had found true love.* **| express, show | declare, profess** *They publicly declared their love for each other.* **| promise** *'You promised me love!' he cried despairingly.* **| return** *He didn't return her love.* **| share** *They share a love of music.* **| give sb, send (sb)** *Bob sends his love.* **| be in, fall in** *He fell in love with one of his students.* **| fall out of | make** (= have sex) *It was the first time they had made love.* ◇ *He wanted to make love to her.*
- LOVE + NOUN **affair | life | letter | scene, song, story**
- PREP. **for/out of ~** *I did it for love!* **in ~** *We are very much in love.* **| ~ between** *the love between parent and child* **~ for** *He did not know how to express his love for her.* **~ of** *She had a great love of painting.*
- PHRASES **an act of love, deeply/madly/passionately in love** *I was madly in love with her.* **desperately/hopelessly in love, head over heels in love, love at first sight** *Do you believe in love at first sight?* **the love of sb's life** *She was the love of his life.*

love *verb*
- ADV. **dearly, deeply, passionately, really, tenderly, very much** *He loved his wife dearly.* **| unconditionally** *He wanted to be unconditionally loved.*

lovely *adj.*
- VERBS **be, feel, look, sound** *The cool water felt lovely after being in the hot sun.* ◇ *Your idea of a day on the beach sounds lovely.*
- ADV. **breathtakingly, particularly, really, very** *She looked really lovely in the blue dress.* **| absolutely, perfectly, quite, utterly, wholly** *She's got an absolutely lovely face.* **| rather | hauntingly** *a hauntingly lovely melody*

lover *noun*
- ADJ. **good, great, passionate | jilted, rejected** *She was shot by her jilted lover.* **| unfaithful | long-time** *They're colleagues as well as being long-time lovers.* **| live-in | secret**
- VERB + LOVER **be, become** *They became lovers when her husband first went abroad.* **| have, take** *It was common for upper-class women to take lovers.*

low *noun*
- ADJ. **all-time, new, record** *The pound has hit a new low against the dollar.*
- VERB + LOW **fall to, hit, reach, sink to**
- PREP. **at a ~** *Morale is at an all-time low.*
- PHRASES **highs and lows** *He had experienced all the highs and lows of an actor's life.*

low *adj.*

1 not far above the ground
- VERBS **be, look, seem** *The windows look very low to me.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** *The river was extremely low for winter.* **| a bit, fairly, quite, rather**

2 small in degree/amount
- VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get, run** *Our stocks of food were getting low.* ◇ *Supplies ran low.* **| remain, stay | keep sth** *The government wants to keep taxes low.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** *The failure rate is extremely low.* **| comparatively, fairly, quite, rather, relatively**
- PREP. **in** *This dish is very low in fat.*

lower *verb*
- ADV. **carefully, gently | slowly | hastily, quickly** *Christina blushed and hastily lowered her eyes.* **| down**
- PREP. **into** *She lowered herself into the driver's seat.* **onto** *He carefully lowered the sleeping child onto the bed.* **to** *She lowered herself down to the floor.*

low-key *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem | keep sth** *We want to keep the whole affair as low-key as possible.*

• ADV. **extremely, very** *The wedding was a very low-key affair.* **| fairly, quite, rather, relatively** *We have a fairly low-key approach to discipline.* **| deliberately**

loyal *adj.*

• VERBS **be, remain, stay**

• ADV. **extremely, fiercely, intensely, very** *a fiercely loyal friend* **| absolutely, completely, entirely, totally, unfailingly, utterly | apparently**

• PREP. **to** *The troops remained loyal to the president.*

loyalty *noun*

• ADJ. **absolute, complete, total, undivided, unswerving** *He showed unswerving loyalty to his friends.* **| fierce, great, intense, strong, tremendous | conflicting, divided** *Rows with one's in-laws often create divided loyalties.* **| primary, prime** *His prime loyalty was to his family.* **| family, filial, group, personal, tribal | local, national, regional | religious | party, political | brand, customer**

• VERB + LOYALTY **command, inspire, win** *He inspires great loyalty from all his employees.* **| feel, have | display, express, prove, show | pledge, swear** *They pledged their loyalty to the king.* **| transfer** *Some party members found it hard to transfer their loyalty to the new leader.* **| expect**

• LOYALTY + VERB **be, lie, remain** *His loyalties lay with people from the same background as himself.*

• LOYALTY + NOUN **oath**

• PREP. **out of ~** *She stayed on at the school out of loyalty to her students.* **| ~ among** *The village is the object of fierce loyalty among its inhabitants.* **~ for** *Mass advertising creates brand loyalty for a product.* **~ from** *The company expects loyalty from its employees.* **~ to** *men whose loyalty is to their political careers* **~ towards** *The team members felt tremendous loyalty towards one another.*

• PHRASES **a conflict of loyalties, an oath/a pledge of loyalty, a sense of loyalty**

luck *noun*

• ADJ. **better, good | pure, sheer** *It was sheer luck that we met like that.* **| bad, ill, rotten, tough** *It was rotten luck to be ill on the day of the interview.*

• QUANT. **piece, stroke** *By a stroke of luck I came across it in a local bookshop.*

• VERB + LUCK **bring (sb), give sb** *This ring has always brought me good luck.* **try** *I decided to try my luck at the roulette wheel.*

• LUCK + VERB **run out** *It looks as though our luck's finally run out.* **| hold** *If our luck holds, we should win.* **| improve, turn** *He went on gambling, sure his luck was about to turn.*

• PREP. **by ... ~** *By ill luck, my flight had been cancelled.* **for ~** *I always carry it with me, just for luck.* **in ~** *You're in luck—there are just two tickets left.* **out of ~** *I had hoped there would be another train, but I was out of luck.* **with ~** *With luck, we'll get there before it closes.*

• PHRASES **beginner's luck** *I don't know why I did so well — it must be beginner's luck.* **better luck next time** *If you didn't win a prize, better luck next time.* **can't believe your luck** *He couldn't believe his luck when the other candidate for the job withdrew.* **just my luck** *Just my luck to get the broken chair!*

lucky *adj.*

• VERBS **be | get, strike (it)** *(both informal) hoping that some day she'll get lucky and win the jackpot* **| consider/count/think youself** *He considered himself lucky to have had the opportunity.*

• ADV. **bloody** *(taboo)*, **damn/damned, dead, exceedingly, extraordinarily, extremely, incredibly, really, remarkably, terribly, very** *She is incredibly lucky to be alive.* **| a bit, fairly, pretty, quite** *We've been pretty lucky so far.*

• PREP. **for** *It was lucky for you that no one saw you.* **with** *We certainly struck it lucky with the weather.*

lucrative *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove**

• ADV. **extremely, highly, very | fairly, quite, rather | potentially | commercially** *a commercially lucrative venture*

ludicrous *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become**

• ADV. **absolutely, perfectly, quite, simply, utterly** *The whole idea is absolutely ludicrous!* **| almost** *The plot was so simple, it was almost ludicrous.* **| faintly, rather**

luggage *noun*

• ADJ. **heavy | hand**

• QUANT. **item, piece** *You are only allowed one piece of hand luggage.*

• VERB + LUGGAGE **carry | claim, collect | check in** *They like you to check your luggage in an hour before the flight.* **| load, pack, unload** *She packed all the luggage into the boot of the car.*

• LUGGAGE + NOUN **compartment, locker | rack | trolley, van | label**

• PREP. **in your ~** *I always carry a first-aid kit in my luggage.*

lukewarm *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, seem**

• ADV. **decidedly, distinctly**

• PREP. **about** *She was distinctly lukewarm about my idea.*

lull *noun*

• ADJ. **brief, temporary | sudden**

• PREP. **during a/the ~** *They crossed the road during a lull in the traffic.* **| ~ in** *a brief lull in the fighting*

luminous *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **highly, very | almost** *The colours were bright, almost luminous.* **| faintly, slightly**

lump *noun*

• ADJ. **big, enormous, great, huge, large** *a great lump of cheese* **| heavy, solid** *a heavy lump of clay* **| small** *Stir the sauce to remove any small lumps.* **| painful** *He's developed a painful lump on his neck.* **| breast** *She's just had a breast lump removed.*

• VERB + LUMP **have | feel** *She felt a lump in her breast.*

• LUMP + VERB **form**

lunatic *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, raving | dangerous | criminal**

• LUNATIC + NOUN **asylum**

lunch *noun*

• ADJ. **cold, hot | delicious, tasty | hearty, slap-up, splendid, sumptuous | four-course, three-course, etc. | leisurely, long | heavy | healthy, light | meagre | sandwich** *We went for a sandwich lunch at the local bar.* **| packed | picnic | pub | early, late | Sunday | annual** *The society's annual lunch will be held next Wednesday.* **|**

business, **expense-account**, **working** | **school** | **literary** | **boozy**, **liquid** (= consisting only of alcoholic drinks)

- LUNCH + NOUN **box**, **break**, **date**, **hour**, **party**, **table** | **things** *I helped wash up the lunch things.* | **meeting** | **guest** | **bill** | **club**
- PHRASES **a spot of lunch** *Come and have a spot of lunch with me.*

⇨ Note at MEAL (for verbs)

luncheon *noun*

- ADJ. **buffet** | **annual** | **anniversary**, **charity**, **literary**
- VERB + LUNCHEON **have** | **attend** | **served** (= it is ready now) | **give** *The anniversary was marked by a luncheon given in the town hall.*
- LUNCHEON + NOUN **room**, **table** | **menu** | **party** | **engagement**
- PREP. **at ~** *They met at a literary luncheon.* **during ~**, **for ~**, **over ~**

lung *noun*

- ADJ. **collapsed**, **punctured**
- VERB + LUNG **fill**, **refill** *I opened the window and filled my lungs with cool fresh air.* | **clear**, **empty** *Coughing clears the lungs of mucus.* | **block**, **choke**, **clog** *The smoke was beginning to choke her lungs.* | **enter** *Water had entered his lungs and he was choking.* | **puncture**
- LUNG + VERB **heave** | **fill** *I let my lungs fill with the scented air.* | **collapse** | **burst** (*figurative*) *Lungs bursting, she flew across the finish line.*
- LUNG + NOUN **capacity**, **power** | **cancer**, **complaint**, **condition**, **disease**, **infection**, **problems**, **tumour** | **surface**, **tissue** | **function** | **transplant**
- PREP. **in the ~** *levels of carbon dioxide in the lungs* **into the ~** *These particles are breathed into the lungs.* **on the ~** *He had blood clots on the lung.*

lunge *noun*

- ADJ. **quick**, **sudden** | **despairing**, **desperate** *He skipped past the defender's despairing lunge.*
- VERB + LUNGE **make**
- PHRASES **~ at** *The burglar made a lunge at him with a knife.* **~ for** *The boy made a sudden lunge for his wallet.* **~ to** *a lunge to one side* **~ towards** *a lunge towards the door*

lurch *noun*

- ADJ. **little** | **sickening**, **sudden**, **violent**
- VERB + LURCH **give** *Her heart gave a little lurch when she saw him.* | **feel** *John felt a lurch of dismay.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *The train stopped with a lurch.* | **~ into** *Starting her own business was a lurch into the unknown.*

lurch *verb*

- ADV. **violently** *Suddenly the train lurched violently.* | **slightly** | **backwards**, **forward**, **sideways** *She gave a little cry and lurched forwards.*
- PREP. **along** *The coach lurched along the mountain road.* **into** *A man lurched into her office.* **towards** *He lurched towards the door.*
- PHRASES **lurch to your feet** *The drunk lurched to his feet and tried to follow us.*

lure *noun*

- ADJ. **irresistible**, **strong**
- VERB + LURE **resist** *She can't resist the lure of the bright lights.* | **feel** *He felt the lure of distant places.*

lust *noun*

1 sexual desire

- ADJ. **naked**, **pure** *a relationship based on pure lust* | **carnal**, **fleshly**, **physical**, **sexual**
- VERB + LUST **be consumed with**, **feel** *She felt no lust whatsoever for him.* | **sate**, **satisfy** *He used her just to sate his lust.*

2 strong desire for sth

- ADJ. **blood** *The ogre demanded the annual sacrifice of a young village lass to satisfy his blood lust.*
- VERB + LUST **be driven by**, **have** | **satisfy**
- PREP. **~ for** *She was driven by a lust for power.*
- PHRASES **a lust for life**

luxurious *adj.*

- VERBS **be**, **feel**, **look**, **seem** *The car felt luxurious.*
- ADV. **extremely**, **positively**, **very**, **wonderfully** *Camping these days can be positively luxurious.* | **almost** | **quite**

luxury *noun*

1 comfort and pleasure

- ADJ. **great**, **pure**, **sheer** *It was sheer luxury to step into a hot bath.* | **ultimate** *the ultimate luxury of a sauna in your own home*
- QUANT. **touch** *Silk sheets added the final touch of luxury.*
- VERB + LUXURY **enjoy** *enjoying the luxury of an expensive bottle of wine* | **afford** *We can't afford such luxury.* | **live in**
- LUXURY + NOUN **hotel** | **car**, **coach**, **liner**, **yacht** | **cruise** | **apartment**, **flat**, **home**
- PREP. **in ~** *brought up in luxury*
- PHRASES **(live) a life of luxury** *I found out that he wasn't dead, but living a life of luxury in Australia.*

2 sth expensive and unnecessary

- ADJ. **expensive** | **little**, **simple**, **small** *one of life's little luxuries* | **unnecessary**
- VERB + LUXURY **afford** *We can't afford luxuries.* | **enjoy**, **have**, **indulge in** | **do without** | **miss** *He missed the simple luxuries of life, like regular meals.*
- LUXURY + NOUN **goods**, **items**
- PHRASES **have every luxury** *She's had every luxury in life.*

lyrical *adj.*

- VERBS **be**, **feel** | **become**, **wax** *He waxed lyrical about the variety of fish in the river.*
- ADV. **intensely**, **very** *There are some intensely lyrical passages in his first symphony.* | **almost** *She wrote an almost lyrical account of her childhood.* | **quite**

lyrics *noun*

- ADJ. **song**
- VERB + LYRICS **write** | **set** *Strauss set several of Mackay's lyrics to music.*
- PREP. **~ about** *lyrics about death and misery* **~ by** *a song with lyrics by Lorenz Hart* **~ for** *the lyrics for a new tune* **~ to** *He wrote the lyrics to our first song.*

Mm

machine *noun*

1 piece of equipment
- ADJ. **great, huge, large, powerful | automatic, electronic | labour-saving | ingenious, versatile | sophisticated | reliable | defective | cash, coffee, exercise, fax, sewing, (telephone) answering, vending, video, washing | kidney, life-support** *The crash victim is now on a life-support machine.*
- VERB + MACHINE **operate, use, work | install** *We've had a new washing machine installed.* | **start, stop | plug in, unplug | build, make | service | design** *The machine is designed to fit under a counter.*
- MACHINE + VERB **go, work** *Have you got the machine working again?* | **break down | run** *The machine runs on solar power.*
- MACHINE + NOUN **operator | parts | tool** *machine tools for making weapons*
- PREP. **by** *The potatoes are planted by machine.* **in a/the ~** *Just put those clothes in the machine* (= the washing machine). **on a/the ~** *I make my own dresses on my sewing machine.* | **~ for** *a machine for making coffee*
- PHRASES **a make of machine** *What make of machine are they using?*

2 system/organization
- ADJ. **party, political** *The independent candidates did not have the support of a party machine.* | **administrative, government, state | propaganda, publicity | military, war** *the president's propaganda machine*
- PHRASES **a cog in the machine** (*figurative*) *Tired of being a tiny cog in a vast machine, he handed in his resignation.* **a well-oiled machine** (*figurative*) *The department ran like a well-oiled machine since the reorganization.*

machinery *noun*
- ADJ. **heavy | complex, complicated, elaborate, sophisticated | electrical | agricultural, construction, farm, industrial, manufacturing, office, textile**
- QUANT. **piece** *large and complex pieces of machinery*
- VERB + MACHINERY **maintain, service | install, set up | control, drive, operate | renew, replace, update | house** *The machinery is housed in a special building.*
- MACHINERY + VERB **drive sth, work sth | break down | hum**
- PREP. **~ for** *machinery for grinding wheat*
- PHRASES **the hum of machinery**

mad *adj.*

1 not sane; crazy/stupid
- VERBS **be, look, seem | go** *He went mad and spent the rest of his life locked up in a mental hospital.* ◇ *The world had gone completely mad.* | **drive sb** *His experiences in the First World War drove him mad.* ◇ *The children are driving me mad!* | **consider sb, think sb** *Her colleagues thought her quite mad.* | **pronounce sb**
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, utterly | barking, (stark) raving** *What a barking mad idea!* ◇ *You must be stark raving mad to risk your money like that!* | **almost | a bit, half, a little, slightly | dangerously**
- PREP. **with** *I went mad with joy and danced a little jig.*

2 angry
- VERBS **be, feel, look | get** *I get so mad when people don't take me seriously.* | **make sb** *It makes me really mad when people waste food.*
- ADV. **hopping, really | absolutely | pretty**
- PREP. **at/with** *My mum's absolutely mad with me!*

madness *noun*
- ADJ. **absolute, pure, sheer, utter** *It's sheer madness to go sailing in weather like this.*
- PHRASES **the first sign of madness** *They say that talking to yourself is the first sign of madness!* **a moment of madness** *In a moment of madness, I said I'd help him.*

magazine *noun*
- ADJ. **new, old | rolled-up** *She hit him with a rolled-up magazine.* | **colour, glossy | monthly, quarterly, weekly | local, national, parish | school, student | house, in-house, official** *the company's in-house magazine* | **in-flight | popular | quality | special interest, specialist | teen/teenage, women's | business, trade | listings** *Check a listings magazine for what's on this weekend.* | **computer, consumer, fashion, gardening, literary, motoring, music, news, satirical, style, travel | girlie, (hard/soft) porn, porno/pornographic, sex**
- QUANT. **copy** *Why did you buy three copies of the same magazine?* | **edition, issue**
- VERB + MAGAZINE **leaf through, look at, read** *leafing through the magazines in the waiting room* ◇ *I never read magazines.* | **edit, write for | produce, publish** *a company that produces fashion magazines* | **buy, get, subscribe to** *Which magazines do you get regularly?*
- MAGAZINE + VERB **come out** *The magazine comes out once a month.* | **be aimed at sb** *a magazine aimed at mothers with young children* | **be devoted to sth** *a magazine devoted to country life* | **carry sth, feature sth, run sth** *The magazine carried an interview with the actor considered Hollywood's hottest property.*
- MAGAZINE + NOUN **article, interview, story, survey | ad/advert/advertisement | cover | editor, writer**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *an article in a women's magazine*

magic *noun*

1 secret power
- ADJ. **black**
- VERB + MAGIC **do, practise** *He earns extra money doing magic at children's parties.* ◇ *People found guilty of practising black magic were hanged.* | **believe in** *I don't believe in magic.* | **work**
- MAGIC + VERB **work** *The magic slowly begins to work, and the princess starts to come to life again.*
- PREP. **by ~** *The rabbit disappeared by magic.*
- PHRASES **as if by magic** *The money had reappeared as if by magic.*

2 special quality
- ADJ. **absolute, pure, sheer** *The show is three hours of pure magic.*
- QUANT. **touch** *The fireworks brought a touch of magic to the occasion.*
- VERB + MAGIC **work** *A hot bath and a good night's sleep worked their usual magic.*

magical *adj.*
- VERBS **be | find sth**
- ADV. **truly, very** *a truly magical experience* | **quite, totally | almost** *Her beauty had an almost magical quality.*

magistrate *noun*
- ADJ. **examining, investigating, licensing | chief, senior | city, local, town**
- VERB + MAGISTRATE **appoint (sb), appoint sb as |**

appear before, come up before *He is due to appear before magistrates in connection with a public order offence.*
- MAGISTRATE + VERB **hear sth** *A thief who stole power tools from a store later sold them in a pub, Whitby magistrates heard yesterday.* | **fine sb** | **remand sb in custody** | **sentence sb** | **adjourn sth** *Magistrates adjourned the case until June 9.*
- PHRASES **magistrates' court**

magnet *noun*

- ADJ. **powerful, strong** | **weak** | **bar** | **fridge**
- VERB + MAGNET **act as/like** *The scent of flowers acts as a magnet to bees.*
- MAGNET + VERB **attract sth**
- PREP. **~for** *The place is a magnet for tourists.*

magnetism *noun*

- ADJ. **sheer, strong** | **animal, personal, sexual** | **the earth's, terrestrial** *changes in the earth's magnetism*
- VERB + MAGNETISM **exert, exude, project** *He exudes a strong sexual magnetism.*
- MAGNETISM + VERB **attract sth, draw sth** *The magnetism produced by the battery attracts the metal.* ◇ *His personal magnetism drew people to the church.*

magnificent *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look**
- ADV. **really, truly** | **absolutely, quite** *an absolutely magnificent performance* | **rather**

magnify *verb*

- ADV. **greatly, highly, hugely** *The daring of his exploits had been hugely magnified by constant telling.*
- PHRASES **magnify sth 10, 100, etc. times** *The picture shows the insect's head magnified ten times.*

magnitude *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great** | **sufficient** *a fall in costs of sufficient magnitude to enable us to reduce prices*
- PREP. **in ~** *The effects were substantial in magnitude.*
- PHRASES **of the first magnitude** *Stars of the first magnitude are visible to the naked eye.* ◇ *a disaster of the first magnitude* **(by) an order of magnitude** *Her calculation was out by several orders of magnitude.*

maid *noun*

- ADJ. **dairy, kennel, kitchen, laundry, parlour, scullery** | **lady's, personal** | **daily** *They had a daily maid, but no live-in servants.*

⇨ Note at JOB

mail *noun*

- ADJ. **first-class, second-class** | **surface** | **express** | **registered** | **internal** *If we want to send something to another department, we use the internal mail.* | **international** | **direct** *direct mail advertising* | **incoming, outgoing** | **unopened, unread** | **electronic, video, voice** | **junk** *I throw junk mail straight in the bin without reading it.* | **hate** *He has received death threats and hate mail from angry fans.* | **fan**
- QUANT. **item, sackful**
- VERB + MAIL **send** | **get, receive** | **deliver** | **forward, redirect** *We got the Post Office to redirect our mail when we moved.* | **collect** *The mail is collected twice a day.* | **sort** *The postcode allows the mail to be sorted automatically.* | **check** *She checked her mail before leaving the hotel.* | **pick up** | **open** | **read** | **answer, deal with**
- MAIL + VERB **come, go** *Has the mail come yet?*
- MAIL + NOUN **order** *All our products are available by mail order.* | **message** | **item** | **program** | **system**
- PREP. **by ~** *Send it by first-class mail.* | **in the ~** *My reply is in the mail.* ◇ *Is there anything interesting in the mail?*

mail *verb*

- ADV. **direct**
- PREP. **to** *The brochures are mailed direct to members.*

mailing list *noun*

- ADJ. **free** *Why not join our free mailing list?*
- VERB + MAILING LIST **go on, join, subscribe to** | **add sb to, put sb on** | **come off, unsubscribe from** | **remove sb from, take sb off**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *We're on the mailing list for the Film Centre.* | **~for** *a mailing list for primary teachers*

main *noun*

- ADJ. **gas, water** | **burst, leaking** *There's a burst water main in Quarry Road.*
- VERB + MAIN **lay** *They're laying a new gas main through the town.*
- MAIN + VERB **serve sth** *The main serves four villages.* | **explode, leak**
- MAINS + NOUN **electricity, gas, water** *an island without mains electricity*
- PREP. **at the ~s** *Turn the water off at the mains.* **on the ~s** *Some of the remoter houses in the village are not on the mains.*

mainstream *noun*

- ADJ. **cultural, educational, political, etc.**
- VERB + MAINSTREAM **enter, join** | **cut sb/sth off from, exclude sb/sth from** *These teachers have been cut off from the mainstream of educational activity.*
- MAINSTREAM + NOUN **society** | **education, schools** | **parties, politics** | **art, cinema** | **media**
- PREP. **in/within the ~** *He was in the mainstream of British contemporary music.* **into the ~** *This technology was designed for specialists but is now starting to move into the mainstream.* **out of/outside the ~** *He drifted out of the mainstream of society.*
- PHRASES **part of the mainstream** *This style of drama is not part of the mainstream.*

maintain *verb*

1 keep sth at the same level
- VERB + MAINTAIN **be anxious to, want to** *We are anxious to maintain our close links with the police.* | **have to, need to** | **strive to, try to** | **help (to)** | **be able to** | **be difficult to** *The government's position became increasingly difficult to maintain.*
- PHRASES **the duty/need to maintain sth** *He emphasized the need to maintain the status quo.*

2 keep sth in good condition
- ADV. **properly, well** | **poorly** *a poorly maintained central heating system*
- VERB + MAINTAIN **be difficult to** | **be easy to**
- PHRASES **be responsible for maintaining sth**

maintenance *noun*

1 keeping sth in good condition
- ADJ. **annual, regular, routine** | **long-term, ongoing** | **proper** | **essential** *The power station has been shut down for essential maintenance.* | **preventative** | **careful** | **easy** *The engine is designed for easy maintenance.* | **low, minimal** *This type of garden requires minimal maintenance.* | **on-site** | **aircraft, car, machine, etc.**
- VERB + MAINTENANCE **carry out** *We carry out routine maintenance of the equipment.* | **need, require**
- MAINTENANCE + NOUN **engineer, crew, man, staff, team** | **bill, costs** | **contract** | **service** *We provide a*

maintenance service on all our products. | **programme** | **work**

2 money paid to support sb

- ADJ. **child**
- VERB + MAINTENANCE **pay** | **claim**
- MAINTENANCE + NOUN **payments** | **arrears** *He was jailed for failing to pay maintenance arrears.*
- PREP. **in ~** *He pays £1 000 a month in child maintenance.*

major *noun*

⇨ Note at RANK

majority *noun*

1 most

- ADJ. **big, great, huge, overwhelming, substantial, vast** | **silent** *The march was by the silent majority who oppose terrorism.*
- VERB + MAJORITY **comprise, constitute, form, make up** *English speakers form the majority of the population.*
- MAJORITY + NOUN **culture, group, population** | **opinion, view** | **shareholder** | **stake** *The French company holds a majority stake in the retail chain.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *In the general population, right-handed people are in the majority.*
- PHRASES **in the majority of cases** *In the vast majority of cases, customers get their money back.*

2 in an election

- ADJ. **handsome, huge, large, massive, overwhelming, substantial** | **clear, comfortable, decisive** | **bare, narrow, slender, slight, slim, small, tiny, wafer-thin** | **ten-seat, three-to-one, two-thirds, etc.** | **absolute, outright, overall** *Although they are the biggest single party, they don't have an outright majority.* | **simple** | **decreased, increased** | **working** *the first Labour government with a clear working majority in the House* | **parliamentary** | **government** | **Conservative, Labour, etc.** | **necessary, requisite**
- VERB + MAJORITY **command, have** | **achieve, gain, get, secure, win** *They failed to win the requisite two-thirds majority.* | **defend, maintain, retain** | **lose** | **overturn** | **indicate, show**
- MAJORITY + NOUN **government, rule** | **party** | **decision** | **vote, voting** | **support**
- PREP. **by a ~** *They won by a huge majority.* | **~ against** *Latest opinion polls have a comfortable majority against the reform.* **~ in** *a majority in Parliament* **~ in favour of** *Opinion polls indicated a two-thirds majority in favour of ratification of the treaty.* **~ over** *He has a decisive majority over his main rivals.*

make-up *noun*

1 cosmetics

- ADJ. **heavy, thick** | **eye** | **stage**
- VERB + MAKE-UP **use, wear** *I never wear make-up.* | **apply, put on** | **remove, take off** | **touch up** | **smudge**
- MAKE-UP + NOUN **artist, girl** | **remover**

2 sb's character

- ADJ. **genetic, physical, psychological**
- PHRASES **part of sb's make-up** *Jealousy is not part of his make-up.*

malaria *noun*

- ADJ. **acute, severe**
- VERB + MALARIA **have, suffer from** | **catch, contract** | **carry, transmit** *Malaria is transmitted by mosquitoes.* | **treat** | **eradicate**
- MALARIA + NOUN **sufferer, victim** | **parasite** | **vaccine** | **control, eradication**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

male *noun*

- ADJ. **adult** | **immature, young** | **old** | **dominant** *the dominant male in the herd* | **large, powerful, strong**
- MALE + NOUN **hormone** | **sexuality** | **chauvinism, chauvinist** | **identity, role**
- PHRASES **the male of the species** *The male of the species has more brightly-coloured feathers than the female.*

male *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **entirely, exclusively** *The club is an exclusively male preserve.* | **largely, mainly, mostly, overwhelmingly, predominantly** *The workforce is predominantly male.* | **essentially** *an essentially male Western view of progress* | **typically** | **peculiarly** *He nodded with a peculiarly male satisfaction at her capitulation.* | **traditionally** *traditionally male interests*

malice *noun*

- ADJ. **pure, sheer**
- VERB + MALICE **bear (sb), feel, have** *He bore me no malice.* ◇ *She felt no malice.* ◇ *She has no malice in her.*
- PREP. **out of ~** *She sacked him out of sheer malice.* **with/without ~** *'You're lying,' he said, without malice.* | **~ towards** *I bear no malice towards anybody.*

malicious *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **faintly, rather** *He gave a faintly malicious smile at her furious expression.*

malnutrition *noun*

- ADJ. **severe** | **chronic** | **child**
- VERB + MALNUTRITION **suffer (from)** | **die from/of**

mammal *noun*

- ADJ. **large, small** | **higher, lower** | **common** | **endangered, rare** | **wild** | **aquatic, marine, sea** | **land, terrestrial** | **carnivorous, grazing, herbivorous** | **nocturnal** | **hoofed** | **warm-blooded**
- MAMMAL + NOUN **species** | **prey**
- PREP. **among ~s** *deaths among marine mammals*

man *noun*

1 male person

- ADJ. **elderly, middle-aged, old, older, young** *a little old man* | **attractive, good-looking, handsome** | **ugly** | **short, tall** | **fat, thin** | **big, burly** | **little** *a nice little man* | **black, white** | **dark, dark-haired, fair, fair-haired** | **bearded** | **blind** | **sick** | **dead** | **intelligent, wise** | **great** *Several people made speeches in honour of the great man.* | **brave** | **charming, fine, good, kind, nice** | **honest** | **proud** | **quiet** | **bad, horrible** *What a horrible man!* | **arrogant** | **strange** | **brutal, hard, violent** | **married, single** | **family** *He's a family man who rarely goes out with his friends.* | **gay** | **professional** | **lucky** *He was a lucky man to have found such a partner.* | **poor, rich** | **betting, gambling** *I've never been a gambling man.* | **self-made** | **right-hand** *He found success hard to come by after losing his right-hand man.* | **innocent** | **free** *He walked out of court a free man.* | **condemned**

2 human beings

- ADJ. **early, prehistoric, primitive** | **Stone Age, etc.** | **Neanderthal, etc.**
- PREP. **in ~** *In man the brain is highly developed.*
- PHRASES **known to man** *the most poisonous substance known to man*

manage *verb*

1 succeed in doing sth

• ADV. **nicely, perfectly/very well** *I can manage perfectly well on my own, thank you.* | **successfully** | **eventually, finally** | **somehow** | **financially** *She was finding it difficult to manage financially.*

• VERB + MANAGE **be able to, can/could** *Can you manage?* | **have to** *We'll just have to manage somehow.* | **be difficult to** | **be easy to**

• PREP. **on** *I don't know how they manage on only £50 a week.* **without** *I can manage without a dishwasher.*

• PHRASES **manage on your own**

2 control/direct sb/sth

• ADV. **competently, effectively, efficiently, properly, successfully, well** | **badly** | **actively** *We will actively manage your portfolio to maximize the return on your investment.* | **sustainably** *All our tropical timber products come from sustainably managed sources.*

• VERB + MANAGE **be difficult to** *The children were very difficult to manage.* | **be easy to** | **learn (how) to** *You need to learn how to manage your time effectively.*

manageable *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **become**

• ADV. **easily** *The journey is easily manageable in half an hour.* | **quite** | **just (about)** *The job is just about manageable in the time.* | **relatively**

management *noun*

1 managing sth

• ADJ. **careful, competent, effective, efficient, firm, good, sound** | **bad, inefficient, poor** | **day-to-day, routine** | **general, overall** | **business, corporate** | **personnel, staff** | **production** | **project, task** | **hospital, hotel, school** | **database, network, systems** | **asset, economic, financial, investment, money, resource** | **information** | **crisis** | **household** | **traffic** | **waste** | **forest, land** | **anger, anxiety, stress** *He's been sent on an anger management course to help him control his temper.* | **time**

• VERB + MANAGEMENT **need** *The project needs stronger management.* | **be responsible for** *She is responsible for the day-to-day management of the company.*

• MANAGEMENT + NOUN **company, consultancy, consultant, services** | **course, studies, training** | **plan, policy, strategy** | **expertise, skills** | **method, philosophy, practice, style, technique**

• PREP. **in ~** *She is now celebrating ten years in management.* **under sb's ~** *The club prospered under Ferguson's management.*

• PHRASES **a board of management, under new management** *The restaurant is under new management.*

2 managers

• ADJ. **junior, middle, senior, top**

• VERB + MANAGEMENT **criticize** *The unions have criticized management over their handling of the dispute.*

• MANAGEMENT + NOUN **board, committee, staff, team** | **meeting** | **decision** | **job, position, post, role** | **hierarchy, structure** | **buy-out** | **level** *This decision should be taken at a higher management level.*

• PREP. **in … ~** *young people in middle management*

• PHRASES **a layer/level/tier of management**

manager *noun*

1 controls an organization/part of an organization

• ADJ. **assistant, junior, middle, senior** | **general** | **accountable, responsible** *Each programme is discussed with the responsible manager.* ◇ *A product manager is responsible for product profitability.* | **bank, business, commercial, corporate** | **area, branch, departmental, divisional, office, regional** | **functional, operations, personnel, product** | **advertising, catering, development, fund, marketing, production, project, sales, technical** | **successful** | **sympathetic** *It helps to have a sympathetic manager.*

• VERB + MANAGER **promote sb to** *He has been promoted to business development manager.* | **assist** *Your job will be to assist the production manager.*

• PREP. **~ for** *the marketing manager for a large company*

2 looks after a sports team

• ADJ. **England, Scotland, etc.** | **team** | **caretaker** *He will be the club's caretaker manager until a new manager is appointed.* | **beleaguered** *another disappointing day for the beleaguered England manager*

⇨ Note at JOB

mandate *noun*

• ADJ. **popular** | **clear** | **legal** | **presidential** | **electoral** *It is undemocratic to govern an area without an electoral mandate.*

• VERB + MANDATE **have** | **give sb, issue** | **seek** *The party sought a mandate to reform the constitution.* | **get, obtain, receive, win** | **extend, implement**

• MANDATE + VERB **run** *The mandate ran until 1947.*

• PREP. **in your ~** *He failed in his mandate.* **under a/the ~** *They ruled the country under a United Nations mandate.* **with a/the ~** *The party was elected with a mandate to reduce the size of government.* **without a ~** *They accused him of acting without a mandate.* | **~ for** *She has received a clear mandate for educational reform.* **~ from** *a mandate from the United Nations to govern the territory*

• PHRASES **an extension/a renewal of a mandate**

mane *noun*

• ADJ. **flowing** | **shaggy, tangled, tousled** | **thick** | **luxuriant, shining**

• VERB + MANE **have** | **shake, toss** *She shook her mane of auburn hair.* ◇ *The horse tossed its flowing mane behind it.* | **braid** *She spent ages braiding her horse's mane.*

• MANE + VERB **stream** *The horse's mane streamed in the wind.*

• PREP. **~ of** *He has a mane of white hair.*

• PHRASES **a horse's/lion's mane**

manhood *noun*

• ADJ. **early, young**

• VERB + MANHOOD **grow to, reach** *He grew from adolescence to young manhood.* | **prove** *It seemed they were fighting to prove their manhood.*

• PREP. **in ~** *He began to go bald in early manhood.*

mania *noun*

1 extreme enthusiasm for sth

• ADJ. **gambling, railway, sex, etc.**

• VERB + MANIA **have**

• PREP. **~ for** *She had a mania for fast cars.*

2 serious mental illness

• ADJ. **collective** *The violence of the crowd can only be explained as a sign of some collective mania.* | **religious**

• VERB + MANIA **suffer from**

• PHRASES **a state of mania**

maniac *noun*

• ADJ. **sex** | **homicidal** | **religious**

• PREP. **like a ~** *He was driving like a maniac.*

manifestation *noun*

• ADJ. **concrete, physical, visible** | **obvious** | **public** *the public manifestation of private grief*

• PREP. **~ in** *The manifestation of the disease in adults is less dramatic.*

• PHRASES **in all its manifestations** *combating racism in all its manifestations*

manifesto *noun*

• ADJ. **Conservative, Labour, etc. | party, party's** *We must all support the party manifesto.* | **election**

• VERB + MANIFESTO **draft, draw up, write | sign | issue, launch, publish | support**

• MANIFESTO + VERB **pledge sth, promise sth** *The manifesto promised reform of the social security system.* | **call for sth, demand sth | contain sth | say sth**

• MANIFESTO + NOUN **commitment, pledge, promise | proposal**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *The policy is outlined in the party's election manifesto.* **on a/the ~** *Labour won the election on this manifesto.* | **~ for** *a manifesto for reform*

manipulate *verb*

• ADV. **easily** *They believe that voters can be easily manipulated.* | **successfully | deftly, delicately, skilfully | deliberately, systematically | genetically** *genetically manipulated organisms*

• VERB + MANIPULATE **be able to, can | attempt to, try to** *Children try to manipulate you.* | **be easy to | know how to, learn (how) to** *She knows how to manipulate the audience.*

• PHRASES **the ability to manipulate sb/sth**

manipulation *noun*

• ADJ. **careful, clever, skilful | conscious, cynical, deliberate, systematic | political** *People think that the investigation was independent, but in fact a lot of political manipulation went on.* | **data, image, text**

• PREP. **by ~** *The government has disguised the true situation by clever manipulation of the figures.*

mankind *noun*

• VERB + MANKIND **save** *to save mankind from misery and destruction*

• PHRASES **all mankind/the whole of mankind** *According to the Bible, the whole of mankind is descended from Adam.* **benefit to mankind** *It is doubtful whether this research is of any benefit to mankind.* **the dawn of mankind** *objects dating back to the dawn of mankind* **the fate/future of mankind** *politicians who care about the future of mankind* **for the benefit of mankind** *The results of the research were made freely available for the benefit of all mankind.* **the history of mankind, known to mankind** *one of the most toxic substances known to mankind*

manner *noun*

1 way of doing sth/behaving

• ADJ. **conventional, customary, normal, standard, time-honoured, traditional, usual | correct** *You are not approaching the problem in the correct manner.* | **appropriate, satisfactory** *I did my best to behave in the appropriate manner.* | **prudent, reasonable, responsible, safe, sensible** *Chemical waste must be disposed of in an environmentally-responsible manner.* | **efficient, productive, profitable | logical, methodical, orderly, rational, systematic | consistent, uniform | objective | arbitrary, haphazard** *Files have been stored in such a haphazard manner that they are impossible to find.* | **professional | constructive, positive** *The dispute could have been handled in a more constructive manner.* | **non-violent, peaceful | straightforward | suspicious** *He was behaving in a highly suspicious manner.* | **light-hearted | casual, easy, informal, leisurely, relaxed | formal | calm | off-hand** *He answered in such an off-hand manner that I wondered if he'd misheard me.* | **confident, decisive | dignified | diffident, mild, quiet, shy | charming, cheerful, friendly, jovial, kindly, pleasant, sympathetic | abrasive, aggressive, arrogant, unfriendly, unpleasant | forthright | brusque, cold | businesslike, no-nonsense** *His no-nonsense manner gave him the reputation of being a good doctor.* | **authoritarian, autocratic, high-handed | condescending, dismissive | authoritative** *The authoritative manner in which he talked concealed his ignorance.* | **bedside, telephone** *He's a good doctor with a sympathetic bedside manner.* ◇ *She has a very pleasant telephone manner.*

• VERB + MANNER **have | adopt** *He tends to adopt a condescending manner when talking to young women.* | **act in** *She accused the teacher of not acting in a professional manner.*

• MANNER + VERB **change** *His manner changed abruptly when he heard how much I wanted.* | **conceal sth** *Her brusque manner concealed a caring nature.* | **suggest sth** *He was not as loutish as his manner suggested.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *The inspection was conducted in a thoroughly professional manner.* **in the ~ of** *He lectured us in the manner of a headmaster.* **in your ~** *There was something in his manner that I found very irritating.*

• PHRASES **in a timely manner** *All claims must be settled in a professional and timely manner.* **in no uncertain manner** *He told her in no uncertain manner that her behaviour was unacceptable.*

2 **manners** polite behaviour

• ADJ. **beautiful, charming, excellent, good, impeccable, nice, perfect** *It's not good manners to stare at people.* | **bad | table** *His children have no table manners.*

• VERB + MANNERS **have | teach sb** *Didn't your parents teach you any manners?* | **learn | forget** *I'm sorry, I was forgetting my manners. Can I offer you a drink?*

• PHRASES **have the (good) manners to do sth** *He could at least have had the manners to answer my letter.* **a lack of manners** *Her lack of manners is quite appalling.*

mannerism *noun*

• ADJ. **odd | irritating**

• VERB + MANNERISM **have | acquire, adopt**

• PREP. **~ of** *He has this irritating mannerism of constantly scratching his nose.*

manoeuvre *noun*

1 skilful movement

• ADJ. **complex, complicated | difficult | dangerous | clever, skilful**

• QUANT. **series**

• VERB + MANOEUVRE **carry out, execute, perform** *The pilot has to carry out a series of complex manoeuvres.* | **attempt | complete**

2 clever plan

• ADJ. **successful | strategic, tactical** *Her withdrawal from the contest was a tactical manoeuvre.* | **diplomatic, political**

• VERB + MANOEUVRE **carry out, execute**

• MANOEUVRE + VERB **fail, succeed**

• PREP. **by a/the ~** *By this manoeuvre, he hopes to gain an advantage at a later stage.*

• PHRASES **freedom of manoeuvre** *The economic conditions are restricting the Chancellor's freedom of manoeuvre.* **room for manoeuvre** *The government has very little room for manoeuvre on this issue.*

3 military operation

• ADJ. **military, strategic, tactical**

• VERB + MANOEUVRE **carry out, conduct, execute, perform**

• PHRASES **be/go on manoeuvres** *The unit is on manoeuvres in southern Italy.*

manoeuvre *verb*

- ADV. **carefully | easily | expertly, skilfully**
- VERB + MANOEUVRE **be difficult to, be easy to**
- PREP. **around, past, through, etc.** *He skilfully manoeuvred the motor boat past the rocks.*
- PHRASES **manoeuvre (sth) into position, manoeuvre your way** (*figurative*) *He had manoevred his way into a position of strength in the party.* **room to manoeuvre** *The clutter of ships had little room to manoeuvre.*

manor *noun*

- ADJ. **ancient, former, medieval, old | country | royal | fortified, moated**
- MANOR + NOUN **farm, house**
- PREP. **of** *the ancient manor of Tregarrick*
- PHRASES **lord of the manor**

manpower *noun*

- ADJ. **qualified, skilled, trained** *a shortage of skilled manpower* **| medical, military, police, etc.**
- VERB + MANPOWER **need, require | provide | cut, reduce** *Manpower will be reduced by an average of 20 per cent.* **| increase**
- MANPOWER + NOUN **shortage | allocations, levels, requirements, resources**
- PREP. **in ~** *a reduction in manpower* **| ~ for** *a pool of manpower for the new industries*
- PHRASES **the availability of manpower** *The factory's opening hours over the holiday period will depend on the availability of manpower.* **a reduction in manpower, a shortage of manpower**

mansion *noun*

- ADJ. **great, huge, imposing, large | lavish, luxurious, luxury, palatial | fine | country | old | stone | historic | 17th century, 200-year-old, etc. | Elizabethan, Victorian, etc. | Beverly Hills, Hollywood, etc. | family | executive** *The rebels besieged the heavily-fortified executive mansion.* **| crumbling, deserted, ruined, run-down**
- VERB + MANSION **live in | build**
- MANSION + VERB **stand** *The historic mansion stands in 160 acres of parkland.*
- MANSION + NOUN **block, flat, house**

manslaughter *noun*

- ADJ. **attempted | involuntary | reckless | corporate** *The directors of the railway company could be charged with corporate manslaughter.*

⇨ Note at CRIME (for verbs)

manual *noun*

- ADJ. **instruction, training | owner's, user | car, computer, sewing, software, etc. | maintenance, operating, operation, operational, reference, technical, workshop | comprehensive, detailed**
- VERB + MANUAL **come with** *The computer comes with a comprehensive owner's manual.* **| check, consult, look at, read** *Check your manual for details.*
- PREP. **according to the ~** *According to the manual, the wires should be the other way round.* **in a/the ~** *What does it say in the manual?* **| ~ for** *an instruction manual for a knitting machine* **~ on** *a manual on teaching drama*

manufacture *noun*

- ADJ. **large-scale, small-scale | commercial, industrial | local** *cotton ropes of local manufacture* **| metal, steel, etc. | cloth, cotton, textile, woollen, etc. | car, vehicle, etc. | drug, food, etc.**
- VERB + MANUFACTURE **commence, start** *They commenced large-scale commercial manufacture of the chairs in January.* **| complete | be engaged in**
- MANUFACTURE + VERB **start**
- PHRASES **costs of manufacture, date of manufacture** *The date of manufacture of the jewellery has not been authenticated.* **the method/process of manufacture**

manufacturer *noun*

- ADJ. **big, large, leading, major** *the world's largest computer manufacturer* **| well-known | commercial | independent | foreign, overseas | car, chemical, computer, motor, textile, etc.**
- PHRASES **the manufacturer's instructions** *The guarantee may be rendered invalid if the manufacturer's instructions are not followed.*

manufacturing *noun*

- ADJ. **large-scale, small-scale | industrial | heavy | labour-intensive | computer-aided, computer-integrated, high-tech/high-technology | car, chemical, component, food, motor, textile, vehicle, etc.**
- MANUFACTURING + NOUN **business, company, enterprise, firm, organization | division, facility, operation, plant, site, subsidiary, unit** *The company set up a manufacturing operation in Lisbon.* **| side** *He now works on the manufacturing side of the business.* **| base, industry, sector** *the decline in the country's manufacturing base* **| area, centre, district, region, town | capability, capacity | output, production, productivity | costs | worker, workforce | employment, jobs | methods, process, system, techniques | expertise**

manure *noun*

- ADJ. **animal, chicken, cow, horse, pig | farmyard, garden | green** *A green manure is a crop grown mainly to improve soil fertility.* **| organic | well-rotted | liquid**
- VERB + MANURE **apply, spread** *the best time to spread manure on the fields* **| dig in, work in** *Work in plenty of well-rotted manure.*
- MANURE + NOUN **heap**

manuscript *noun*

1 copy of a book that has not yet been printed

- ADJ. **original | autograph, handwritten** *the original autograph manuscript of the poem* **| unpublished | unfinished | literary, music/musical**
- QUANT. **copy** *I only have one copy of the manuscript.*
- VERB + MANUSCRIPT **write | type | edit, revise | submit (for publication)** *He submitted the manuscript to an editor at Longman.* **| accept/reject (for publication)** *He was delighted when the manuscript was accepted for publication.*
- PREP. **in ~** *Her autobiography remained in manuscript* (= was not published).

2 very old book/document, written by hand

- ADJ. **ancient, early, medieval | contemporary** *One contemporary manuscript shows Henry II crowned by the hand of Christ.* **| rare | surviving** *the surviving manuscript of 'Beowulf'* **| illuminated**
- MANUSCRIPT + VERB **survive** *earlier manuscripts which no longer survive*

map *noun*

- ADJ. **large-scale | small-scale | accurate | detailed | quick** (only used with the verb **draw**), **rough, simple, sketch** *'How do you get there?' 'I'll draw you a quick map.'* **| local | road, street** *a street map of central London* ◇ *a road map of the British Isles* **| world | bus, tube, underground | contour, outline, relief | geological, political | weather | Ordnance Survey | tourist | route | wall**
- VERB + MAP **read** *Are you any good at reading maps?*

| check, consult, look at | draw | be marked on *The museum is clearly marked on the map.* **| spread out, unfold** *We spread the map out on the floor.* **| fold (up)**
- MAP + VERB **show sth**
- MAP + NOUN **projection**
- PREP. **off the ~** *Our village is just off the map.* **on a/the ~** *The lane isn't on the map.* **| ~ of** *a map of the area*

marathon *noun*

1 long race
- ADJ. **half, full**
- VERB + MARATHON **prepare for, train for | compete in, run, take part in | complete, finish | win**
- MARATHON + NOUN **champion, runner | racing, running** *He says that he keeps fit by marathon running.*

2 long activity
- ADJ. **12-hour, 700-mile, etc. | car, cycling, etc.**
- MARATHON + NOUN **journey, walk | effort | match, race** *a marathon five-set tennis match*

marble *noun*

- ADJ. **cool** *The hotel is traditionally furnished, with cool marble floors.* **| coloured | veined | polished | carved**
- QUANT. **block, slab**
- VERB + MARBLE **carve (sth from/in), make sth from/in/(out) of** *a statue of Cupid carved in black marble* **| quarry**
- MARBLE + NOUN **quarry**
- PREP. **in ~** *sculptures in polished white marble*

March *noun*

⇨ Note at MONTH

march *noun*

1 movement/journey
- ADJ. **long | brisk | steady | forced | approach** *They reached the enemy position after an arduous approach march.* **| fifty-mile, four-day, etc. | two hours, half a day's, etc.** *The camp was half a day's march away.* **| northward, southward, etc. | forward, onward** (*figurative*) *the forward march of technology* **| inevitable, inexorable** (*figurative*) *the inexorable march of time*
- VERB + MARCH **begin, set off on** *The army set off on a forced march towards Berlin.*
- PREP. **on the ~** *The army has been on the march for two weeks* **| ~ from** *the march from Paris to Brittany* **~ of** *a march of over 30 miles* ◇ (*figurative*) *the march of history/progress/science* **~ to, ~ towards** (*figurative*) *the steady march towards equality*
- PHRASES **line of march** *Villages in the army's line of march were burned to the ground.* **a … march away** *The border was still a day's march away.* **the march eastward, westward, etc.**

2 organized walk
- ADJ. **hunger, peace, protest, victory | anti-racism, pro-democracy, etc.**
- VERB + MARCH **hold, organize, stage | lead | be on, go on, join in, take part in | halt, stop** *The farmers halted the march outside the Ministry of Agriculture.* **| break up** *The march was broken up by police in riot gear.*
- MARCH + VERB **mark sth** *a march marking the thirtieth anniversary of the shootings*
- PREP. **at/on a/the ~** *There were in excess of 100 000 people at the march.* **| ~ against** *a march against racism* **~ for** *a march for the victims of the war* **~ from, ~ of** *a march of over 6 000 people* **~ to**
- PHRASES **a march past** *There will be a special march past of competitors.*

3 music
- ADJ. **military | funeral, wedding**
- VERB + MARCH **compose | play | strike up** *The orchestra struck up a military march.*

march *verb*

1 walk with regular steps
- ADV. **briskly, swiftly | boldly | purposefully | inexorably** (*figurative*) *Time marches inexorably on and we still have not made a decision.* **| north, south, etc. | ahead, away, back, forward, off, on, out, over, past, up (and down)** *Craig marched up to the front door and rang the bell.* ◇ *Soldiers were marching up and down outside the government buildings.*
- PREP. **from, into, on** *The invading army marched on Rome.* **out of** *So saying, she marched boldly out of the house.* **through, to** *They marched all the way from London to Edinburgh.* **towards**
- PHRASES **march in step** *conscripts learning to march in step* (= in time with each other)

2 walk in a large group to protest about sth
- ADV. **peacefully**
- PREP. **for** *marching for peace* **in support of** *protesters marching in support of the students' demands* **on** *The demonstrators marched on the Italian embassy.* **through** *marching peacefully through the town centre* **to, towards**

margarine *noun*

- ADJ. **hard | soft | low-fat, polyunsaturated** *a tub of low-fat margarine* **| sunflower, vegetable**
- QUANT. **tub**
- VERB + MARGARINE **put on, spread (sth with)** *She put some margarine on her roll.* ◇ *Spread some margarine on the toast, please.* **| heat, melt, soften | beat (in), cream, mix, rub in** *Cream the margarine and sugar together.* ◇ *Rub the margarine into the flour.*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

margin *noun*

1 empty space at the side of a page in a book, etc.
- ADJ. **generous, wide** *Leave a generous margin on the left.* **| narrow | left-hand, right-hand**
- VERB + MARGIN **leave, rule, set | adjust**
- PREP. **at the ~** *Start writing at the left-hand margin.* **in the ~** *She scribbled notes in the margin.*

2 space, time, votes, etc. by which sth is won
- ADJ. **comfortable, considerable, greater, huge, large, wide | narrow, slim, small | clear, safe**
- VERB + MARGIN **have**
- PREP. **by a ~** *She won by a clear margin.* **| ~ over** *He had an 18-second margin over his nearest rival.*
- PHRASES **by the largest/narrowest, etc. of margins** *He won by the narrowest of margins.* **a margin of victory**

3 amount of extra space, time, etc.
- ADJ. **good, greater, wide** *Sales predictions are open to wide margins of error.* **| narrow | adequate | safety**
- VERB + MARGIN **allow (sb/sth), give (sb/sth), leave, provide** *The device gives a greater margin of safety.*
- PREP. **~ for** *We have substantial reserves, which provide a good margin for uncertainties.*
- PHRASES **a margin for/of error** *The schedule left no margin for error.* **a margin of safety**

4 profit
- ADJ. **high, large | low, narrow, small, tight** *We're working to rather tight profit margins.* **| gross, net | profit | operating, pre-tax, retail**
- VERB + MARGIN **achieve, have** *These manufacturers have high gross margins.* **| operate at/on, work to | improve, increase** *Higher productivity has enabled them to increase their profit margins.* **| cut, erode, reduce, squeeze** *Price rises have eroded profit margins.*
- MARGIN + VERB **widen | narrow**

• PREP. **at a ~** *They are operating at very low margins.* | **~ on** *They hope to improve their margins on computers.*
⇨ Note at PER CENT (for more verbs)

marijuana *noun*

• QUANT. **joint**
• VERB + MARIJUANA **smoke**
• MARIJUANA + NOUN **cigarette, joint** | **plant**
⇨ Note at DRUG (for more verbs and nouns)

mark *noun*

1 spot/line
• ADJ. **dirty, grease, greasy, grubby** | **visible** | **distinguishing, identifying** *Does he have any distinguishing marks?* | **chalk, pencil** | **bite, burn, claw, finger** (also **fingermark**), **scorch, scratch, scuff, skid, stretch, tyre**
• VERB + MARK **get** *How did you get that mark on your shirt?* | **leave, make** *The dirty water left a mark round the side of the bath.* | **get off/out, remove** *I can't get the children's dirty fingermarks off the wall.*
• MARK + VERB **come off/out** *These greasy marks just won't come out.*
• PREP. **~ on** *There were grubby marks on the wall.*

2 sign of a quality/feeling
• ADJ. **deep, indelible, permanent** *The experience left a deep mark on her memory.* | **real** *the real mark of a master craftsman*
• VERB + MARK **bear, have** | **leave**
• PREP. **~ of** *Such thoughtful behaviour is the mark of a true gentleman.*
• PHRASES **as a mark of respect**

3 used to show the standard of sb's work
• ADJ. **good, high** | **bad, low, poor** | **full** *I got full marks for my homework.* | **top** | **pass** *What's the pass mark in maths?* | **total** | **average**
• VERB + MARK **get** | **give sb** | **take off** *She took off a mark for bad handwriting.* | **gain** | **lose**
• PREP. **above … ~s, below … ~s** *If you get below 40 marks, you're not allowed to go up into the next class.* | **~ for** *You get two marks for each correct answer.* ◇ *a good mark for geography* **~ out of** *How many marks out of ten would you give it?*

4 level of sth
• ADJ. **halfway** *We've reached the halfway mark in the show.* | **high-water, low-water, tide**
• VERB + MARK **set** | **reach** | **pass** *This year's sales figures have already passed the mark set last year.* | **fall short of**
• PREP. **above the ~, around the ~** *around the £500 mark* **at a/the ~** *The river was at its low-water mark.* **below the ~, up to the ~** (= as good as sb/sth should be) *Your grammar is not quite up to the mark.*

5 target
• ADJ. **easy**
• VERB + MARK **find, hit** *The shot found its mark.* | **miss**
• PHRASES **wide of the mark** (*figurative*) *Shock tactics often fall wide of their mark.*

mark *verb*

1 write/draw sth
• ADV. **clearly** *My room was clearly marked on the plan.* | **carefully** *She carefully marked where the screws were to go.* | **indelibly**
• PREP. **as** *Certain words were marked as important.* **for** *Some of the crates were marked for export.* **in** *Mark the position of all the building sites in black.* **on** *All buildings are marked on the map.* **with** *The boundary was marked with a dotted line.*

2 spoil/damage sth
• ADV. **badly, deeply** *The paperweight had fallen onto the desk, badly marking the surface.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The town is still deeply marked by the folk memory of the Depression.*

3 be a sign of sth
• ADV. **effectively** | **conveniently** *'Lyrical Ballads' conveniently marks the beginning of nineteenth-century poetry.* | **publicly** *The wedding ceremony publicly marks the beginning of commitment to another through marriage.*
• VERB + MARK **appear to, seem to** *This speech appears to mark a change in government policy.*

marked *adj.*

1 easy to see
• VERBS **be** | **become**
• ADV. **especially, extremely, particularly, strongly, very** *There is a strongly marked difference between the two creatures.* | **increasingly** | **quite**

2 with markings
• VERBS **be**
• ADV. **heavily** *Most cranes lay two heavily marked eggs.* | **attractively, beautifully, brightly, strikingly**
• PREP. **with** *These trout are beautifully marked with bright red spots.*

market *noun*

1 place where people go to buy and sell things
• ADJ. **open-air, outdoor, street** | **covered, indoor** | **antiques, cattle, fruit and vegetable, etc.** | **flea** (= that sells old or used goods at low prices)
• VERB + MARKET **hold** *The market is held on Wednesdays.* | **go to** | **take sth to** *They took the pigs to market.*
• MARKET + NOUN **square** | **town** | **day**
• PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *to buy some fish at the market*

2 business/trade
• ADJ. **competitive** | **active, booming, bullish, lively, strong, thriving** | **bull** (*finance*), **rising** | **depressed, dull, sluggish, weak** | **bear** (*finance*), **falling** | **steady** | **buyer's, seller's** | **foreign, global, international, overseas, world** | **domestic, home, internal, local** | **single** *the completion of the European single market in 1992* | **common** | **economic** | **free** | **open** | **black** (= illegal) | **bond, capital, commodity, consumer, currency, export, financial, foreign exchange, futures, housing, money, product, property, securities, stock** | **car, computer, etc.** | **job, labour**
• VERB + MARKET **put sth on** | **come on/onto** *A new model has come on the market.* | **develop** | **break into, get into, penetrate** *They're hoping to get into the Far Eastern market.* | **capture, corner, monopolize** | **supply** | **flood** *flooding the market with cheap foreign goods* | **lose** | **depress** | **play** *an investor who knows how to play the market—and win*
• MARKET + VERB **open up** *The Chinese market has opened up recently.* | **boom** | **pick up, rally** | **slump** | **be down, be up** *The market was down 15 per cent.* | **close** *The market closed weaker.* | **open**
• MARKET + NOUN **price, value** | **conditions** | **leader** | **position, share** | **sector** | **trends**
• PREP. **in/into a/the ~** *changes in the UK market* **on the ~** *one of the best car deals on the market* | **~ in** *a thriving market in second-hand cars*
• PHRASES **be in the market for sth** (= be interested in buying sth), **the bottom's dropped/fallen out of the market** (= the market has collapsed), **a gap in the market, the bottom/lower/top/upper end of the market**

3 people who want to buy sth
• ADJ. **big, good, huge, large** | **poor, small** | **expanding, growing** | **shrinking** | **ready** | **niche**
• VERB + MARKET **create** *The company has created a niche market for itself.*
• MARKET + VERB **expand, grow** | **shrink** | **collapse**

| **bear sth** *We will charge whatever the market will bear* (= as much as people can be persuaded to pay).
- MARKET + NOUN **segment | niche | research**
- PREP. **~ for** *the market for new cars*

4 the free market
- VERB + MARKET **leave sth to** *Some services cannot be left to the market.*
- MARKET + NOUN **forces | economy**

market *verb*
- ADV. **heavily | effectively, successfully | cleverly | aggressively | actively | selectively** *The printer is being selectively marketed in a handful of countries.*
- PREP. **as** *It will be marketed as a tonic for the elderly.* **through** *The product is being marketed through the existing sales force.* **to** *The company is not actively marketing its products to schools.*

marketable *adj.*
- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **easily, highly, readily, very | potentially**

marketing *noun*
- ADJ. **effective, good | poor | aggressive | direct | global, international, worldwide | niche**
- VERB + MARKETING **do** *The company has done some effective marketing of the new model.* | **improve**
- MARKETING + NOUN **campaign, exercise, strategy | ploy, tool | director, manager | agency, company, department**
- PREP. **in ~** *She works in marketing.* **through/with ~** *We could get more sales through better marketing.*
- PHRASES **sales and marketing**

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

marketplace *noun* (often **the marketplace**)
- ADJ. **competitive | commercial, financial | global, international | changing**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The company found it hard to survive in a changing marketplace.*

marquee *noun*
- ADJ. **giant, huge, large**
- VERB + MARQUEE **erect**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The wedding reception was held in a marquee.* **under a/the ~** *The guests sat on a platform under a large marquee.*

marquess *noun*

⇨ Note at PEER

marriage *noun*

1 state of being husband and wife
- ADJ. **good, happy, successful | broken, disastrous, failed, unhappy** *She was the child of a broken marriage.* | **first, second, etc. | previous | early | late | conventional | modern | open | morganatic | loveless | childless | mixed | arranged**
- VERB + MARRIAGE **have** *He had an unhappy marriage with an older woman.* | **propose | enter into | consummate | annul, dissolve | save** *They are struggling to save their marriage for the children's sake.*
- MARRIAGE + VERB **last | be over, break down/up, end, fall apart, fail** *Their marriage ended in divorce.*
- MARRIAGE + NOUN **vows | plans, proposal | partner | relationship | break-up, breakdown, problems | counselling, guidance | counsellor | certificate, contract | market** *Daughters were expected to join their well-bred friends on the marriage market.* | **bed**
- PREP. **by/from a ~** *She's his daughter by a previous marriage.* **by ~** *They are related by marriage.* **in a/the ~** *She was the dominant partner in the marriage.* **outside ~** *sex outside marriage* **within ~ | ~ between** *the marriage between John and Elizabeth* **~ into** *his marriage into a wealthy family* **~ to/with** *her marriage to Jim*
- PHRASES **ask for/win sb's hand in marriage** (*old-fashioned*), **the break-up/breakdown of a marriage, give sb in marriage** (*old-fashioned*), **the institution of marriage, a marriage of convenience, a proposal of marriage**

2 wedding ceremony
- ADJ. **Christian, Jewish, etc. | civil | shotgun** (= arranged quickly because the bride is pregnant)
- VERB + MARRIAGE **celebrate** *The marriage was celebrated in the cathedral.*
- MARRIAGE + VERB **be held, take place**
- MARRIAGE + NOUN **ceremony | licence**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *She wanted to be present at the marriage of her grandson.* | **~ to** *Mr and Mrs Wall invite you to the marriage of their daughter Ann to Mr Thomas Lea.*

married *adj.*
- VERBS **be, feel** *I wouldn't have felt properly married if it hadn't been a church wedding.* | **get** *When did you get married?* | **remain**
- ADV. **newly, recently** *The newly married couple left for their honeymoon in Spain.* | **previously | happily | unhappily | lawfully, legally | properly, safely, truly**
- PREP. **to** *She's married to an actor.*

marry *verb*
- VERB + MARRY **hope to, want to** *I don't want to marry Robert.* | **agree to, promise to** *He promised to marry her when he returned.* | **be going to, plan to** *Matt told me he was going to marry again.* ◇ *They plan to marry next year.* | **forbid sb to** *Duty forbade them to marry.* | **ask sb to** *He asked me to marry him but I said no.*
- PREP. **for** *He married her for love, not for money.* **into** *the difficulties of marrying into the royal family*
- PHRASES **get married** *They are hoping to get married next year.* **marry late/young** *People are marrying later these days.* **not be the marrying kind** (= not be the kind of person who wants to get married)

marsh *noun*
- ADJ. **coastal, salt | freshwater | grazing**
- VERB + MARSH **drain, reclaim**
- MARSH + NOUN **plant**
- PREP. **in/on a/the ~** *He keeps his cattle on the marshes.*

marshal *noun*

⇨ Note at RANK

martial law *noun*
- VERB + MARTIAL LAW **declare, impose, introduce, place sth under | lift**
- PREP. **under ~** *The city remains under martial law.*

martyr *noun*

1 sb who is killed/suffers for what they believe
- ADJ. **early | Christian**
- VERB + MARTYR **make sb** *Killing him would only make him a martyr.*
- PREP. **~ to** *a martyr to the cause*
- PHRASES **a martyr's death**

2 sb who tries to gain sympathy
- VERB + MARTYR **play** *Stop playing the martyr.*
- PHRASES **make a martyr of yourself**

marvel *verb*

- VERB + MARVEL **can/could only** *One can only marvel at the way the building has been constructed.* | **never cease to** *I never cease to marvel at his stupidity.*
- PREP. **at** *He marvelled at how easy it was to make money.*

marvellous *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, sound**
- ADV. **bloody** (*taboo, ironic*), **really** *This is really marvellous news!* | **absolutely, quite, simply** *The food looks absolutely marvellous!* | **pretty**

mascara *noun*

- ADJ. **thick** | **waterproof**
- VERB + MASCARA **wear** | **apply, put on** | **remove** | **smudge** *Her tears had smudged her mascara.*
- MASCARA + VERB **run, smudge**
- MASCARA + NOUN **brush, wand**

masculine *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **distinctly, extremely, heavily, severely, uncompromisingly, unmistakably, very** *an environment which is heavily masculine* ◇ *the severely masculine cut of his suit* | **exclusively** *The ceremony is exclusively masculine.* | **overwhelmingly, predominantly** | **essentially** | **typically** *That's a typically masculine attitude!* | **inherently, intrinsically** | **overtly** | **aggressively** *He has an aggressively masculine approach to these questions.*

mask *noun*

1 cover for sb's face

- ADJ. **face** | **gas** | **oxygen** | **surgical** | **Hallowe'en**
- VERB + MASK **have on, wear** | **put on** | **pull off, remove, strip off, take off, tear off** *In the second part of the play, the actors take off their masks.*
- MASK + VERB **cover sth**
- PREP. **behind/beneath a/the ~** *Two eyes glared at him from beneath the mask.* **in a/the ~** *two men in black masks* | **~ over** *She wore a mask over her face.*

2 sth that hides sb's real feelings

- ADJ. **blank, cold, expressionless, grim, rigid** *Her face was a blank mask as she answered my question.*
- MASK + VERB **slip** *For a moment her mask slipped, and I saw how scared she really was.*
- PREP. **behind a/the ~** *Behind the mask of friendliness, I know he really dislikes me.* | **~ for** *His fooling around is a mask for his lack of confidence.*

mask *verb*

- ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally** | **partly** | **barely** | **effectively**
- VERB + MASK **tend to** *Wood stains provide good protection but tend to mask the natural grain of the wood.*
- PREP. **with** *She masked her anger with a smile.*

masochism *noun*

- ADJ. **pure, sheer**
- QUANT. **streak, touch** *There's a streak of masochism in his personality.*
- PHRASES **a form of masochism**

mass *noun*

1 large amount/number of sth

- ADJ. **enormous, great, huge, large, vast** | **broad** *Their policies appeal to the broad mass of the population.* | **formless, shapeless** *When I washed the jumper, it just turned into a shapeless mass.* | **compact, dense, solid** | **chaotic** *a chaotic mass of ideas* | **tangled** *a tangled mass of hair*
- PREP. **~ of** *a dense mass of smoke* **~es of** (*informal*) *There were masses of people at the concert.*

2 Mass Christian ceremony

- ADJ. **requiem, Sunday**
- VERB + MASS **attend, go to, hear** *She never failed to attend Sunday Mass.* | **celebrate, offer, say** *The local priest celebrates Mass in the village church.*
- PREP. **~ for** *a requiem Mass for the sailors who drowned*

massacre *noun*

- ADJ. **appalling, bloody, cold-blooded, horrible, terrible** *an appalling massacre of women and children*
- VERB + MASSACRE **be responsible for, carry out, perpetrate, take part in** *The massacre was carried out by enemy troops.* ◇ *As many as fifty men took part in the massacre.* | **be killed in** | **escape, survive**
- MASSACRE + VERB **take place**
- PREP. **~ by** *a massacre by rebel soldiers*
- PHRASES **the victims of a massacre**

massage *noun*

- ADJ. **gentle, relaxing, soothing** | **vigorous** | **back, body, foot, full-body, neck** | **cardiac, heart** *They managed to revive the injured driver with cardiac massage.*
- VERB + MASSAGE **have, receive** | **give sb** *The physiotherapist gave me a massage to ease the pain.*
- MASSAGE + NOUN **parlour** *She went to the massage parlour for a full-body massage.*

massage *verb*

- ADV. **firmly, vigorously** | **gently, lightly**
- PREP. **into** *Gently massage the cream into your skin.* **with** *He massaged her back with scented oil.* ◇ *Massage it lightly with your fingertips.*

master *noun*

1 person in charge

- ADJ. **political** *His political masters are all old right-wing politicians.*
- PREP. **~ of** *He wants to be master of his own destiny.*

2 person with skill

- ADJ. **acknowledged, great** *This portrait is the work of an acknowledged master.*
- MASTER + NOUN **builder, craftsman**
- PREP. **~ of** *a master of disguise*
- PHRASES **be a past master at/in/of sth** (= to be very good at sth) *He's a past master at delaying meetings.*

3 Master's university degree

- VERB + MASTER'S **do, study for, take** *He did a Master's at Hull University.* | **get** *She got her Master's last year.*
- MASTER'S + NOUN **degree**
- PREP. **~ in** *a Master's in politics*

master *verb*

- ADV. **completely, entirely, fully, quite** | **quickly**
- VERB + MASTER **be difficult to** *a technique that was surprisingly difficult to master* | **struggle to, try to** *the challenge of trying to master a new language* | **fail to**
- PHRASES **master the art of sth** *He never completely mastered the art of lip-reading.*

masterpiece *noun*

- ADJ. **great** *It's one of the greatest masterpieces of Western art.* | **minor** | **architectural, literary, musical**
- VERB + MASTERPIECE **create, produce** | **be considered, be hailed as, be recognized as** *Within a week of publication, the novel was hailed as a masterpiece.*

- PREP. **~by** *a masterpiece by Picasso* **~of** *a masterpiece of classical architecture*

⇨ Note at ART

mastery *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, complete, total | gradual** *Children show gradual mastery of reading in the first years at school.* **| practical, technical** *He plays the violin with technical mastery, but no feeling.*
- VERB + MASTERY **have** *The allied bombers had total mastery of the skies.* **| demonstrate, display, show** *He shows complete mastery of the instrument.* **| achieve, acquire, attain, gain**
- PREP. **~of** *He acquired mastery of four languages.* **~over** *The king had absolute mastery over the country.*

mat *noun*

- ADJ. **dense, thick** *a thick mat of hair*
- PREP. **~of** *the dense mat of roots at the bottom of the tree*

match *noun*

1 in sports

- ADJ. **big, crucial, important | exciting, thrilling | championship, competitive, cup, league | friendly | away, home** *He's such a keen fan, he even goes to all the away matches.* **| cricket, football, rugby, wrestling, etc.**
- VERB + MATCH **play** *The match will be played in the new stadium.* **| have** *Figo had an outstanding match.* **| go to, see, watch | be defeated in, lose | clinch, win** *A late goal clinched the match for Porto.* **| draw** *We drew our first game of the season 1–1.*
- MATCH + VERB **take place**
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *an incident which took place during Saturday's match* **in a/the ~** *She was injured in last week's match.* **| ~against** *the match against Wales* **~between** *the match between Japan and Brazil* **~with** *They lost their match with Estonia.*

2 for lighting a fire

- ADJ. **lighted**
- QUANT. **box**
- VERB + MATCH **light, strike** *He lit a match so they could see in the cave.* **| blow out**
- PHRASES **put a match to sth** *Someone had put a match to the pile of papers.*

3 good combination

- ADJ. **excellent, good, perfect** *The blouse and skirt are a perfect match.*
- PREP. **~between** *an excellent match between our goals and what your company offers* **~for** *That jumper should be a good match for your trousers.*

4 sth the same

- ADJ. **exact**
- PREP. **~for** *To forge the certificate, she needed an exact match for the paper and the fonts.*

match *verb*

1 combine well

- ADV. **well** *As a couple they are not very well matched* (= they are not very suitable for each other). **| not quite** *The room was full of old furniture that didn't quite match.*
- PHRASES **to match** *I bought a duvet cover and some curtains to match.*

2 find sth similar/connected

- ADV. **correctly | carefully**
- PREP. **for** *The control group in the experiment was matched for age and sex.* **| to** *The aim of the competition is to match the quote to the person who said it.*

3 be/make sth equal/better

- ADV. **almost** *She found that his determination almost matched her own.* **| not quite** *Nothing quite matches the fine, subtle flavour of this cheese.*
- VERB + MATCH **come close to | be able/unable to** *The company was unable to match his current salary.* **| try to | fail to** *Children can be made to suffer when they fail to match their parents' expectations.*
- PREP. **for** *No other rock band comes even close to matching them for dynamism or style.*
- PHRASES **be equally/evenly/well matched** *The teams were very evenly matched.* **be unevenly matched**

5 provide sth suitable

- ADV. **carefully | up** *We have to match up the right pet with the right owner.*
- VERB + MATCH **seek to, try to**
- PREP. **to** *The available organs are carefully matched to people in need of transplants.* **with** *The agency tries to match single people with suitable partners.*

mate *noun*

1 friend

- ADJ. **best, good** *They've been good mates ever since they were at school together.*
- VERB + MATE **have** *He's got loads of mates at school.*

2 sexual partner

- VERB + MATE **attract, choose, find** *These birds have colourful feathers to attract a mate.*

material *noun*

1 substance

- ADJ. **combustible, flammable, hazardous, inflammable, radioactive, toxic | recyclable | man-made**

2 things for making sth

- ADJ. **raw** *Higher raw material costs have pushed up the price of many manufactured goods.* **| industrial | building** *a storeroom full of building materials* **| drawing, writing** *Prisoners were not allowed writing materials.*

3 cloth

- ADJ. **thick, thin | coarse, fine | woven**
- QUANT. **length, piece, roll, scrap, strip** *A patchwork quilt is a good way of using up scraps of material.*

4 written matter

- ADJ. **fascinating, good, relevant, useful | source** *The letter were used as source material in this new biography.* **| classified, confidential, sensitive | unpublished | educational, instructional, promotional, teaching | biographical, historical | indecent, obscene, pornographic** *He was convicted of importing indecent material.*
- VERB + MATERIAL **collect, find, gather, get hold of** *He's collecting material for a new book on space travel.* ◇ *I can't find any relevant material on him in the library.* **| contain, include** *This new biography contains a wealth of previously unpublished material.* **| produce, publish**
- PREP. **~for** *useful material for a documentary* **~on** *original material on the First World War*

materialize *verb*

- ADV. **never** *The hoped-for boom never materialized.*
- VERB + MATERIALIZE **fail to** *The rise in share prices failed to materialize.*

mathematician *noun*

- ADJ. **brilliant | distinguished, great** *one of the greatest mathematicians of all time* **| applied, pure**

mathematics *noun*

- ADJ. **applied, pure | investigative | school | elementary, higher, primary, secondary**
- PHRASES **a branch of mathematics**

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

maths *noun*

• ADJ. **basic | complicated** *Working out the quantities of the ingredients involved some complicated maths.*
• MATHS + NOUN **problem** *The class were struggling to find the solution to a maths problem.*
⇨ Note at SUBJECT

matter *noun*

1 subject/situation that must be dealt with
• ADJ. **important, pressing, serious, urgent, weighty** *He left, saying he had pressing matters to attend to.* ◇ *The question of his innocence is a weighty matter for this court.* | **awkward, complex, complicated, delicate, difficult** *I wasn't sure how to approach the delicate matter of pay.* | **no easy, (no) simple** *It is then a simple matter to print off the data you have collected.* ◇ *It is no simple matter starting a new business.* | **trifling, trivial | practical** *They've agreed in theory, but now we need to discuss practical matters.* | **family, personal | subject** *His articles deal with a wide range of subject matter.* | **economic, environmental, financial, legal, political, procedural, routine, technical** *The rest of the meeting was taken up by routine matters.* | **different** *I don't mind lizards, but snakes are a different matter.*
• VERB + MATTER **bring up, broach, raise** *I thought I'd better broach the matter with my boss.* ◇ *The matter will be raised at our next meeting.* | **address, debate, discuss, go into, take up** *I don't really want to go into this matter now.* | **pursue, take further** *After legal advice I chose to take the matter further.* | **drop** *His lawyer advised him to drop the matter.* | **consider, examine, look at/into, tackle | clarify, clear up, decide, resolve, settle** *It's a relief to have the matter settled.* | **approach, deal with, treat** *Police are treating the matter as a murder enquiry.*
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *I don't have much experience in these matters.* ◇ *Do I have any choice in the matter?* **on a/the ~** *Speak to your manager if you need help on this matter.* | **~ for** *The incident is definitely a matter for the police.* **~ of** *It's a matter of concern to all of us.* ◇ *We discussed the matter of whether or not to hire a bus.* ◇ *Getting the effect you want is a matter of trial and error.*
• PHRASES **the crux/heart of the matter** (= the most important part of a subject/situation), **let the matter drop/rest** *She refused to let the matter rest.* **the matter in hand** *Let's concentrate on the matter in hand for now, and leave other issues till later.*

2 **matters** situation you are in
• VERB + MATTERS **complicate, confuse, make worse, not help** *It didn't help matters that I had a terrible cold.* ◇ *To make matters worse, my friend then lost her keys.* | **arrange** *She always arranges matters to suit herself.*

3 substance
• ADJ. **solid | organic, vegetable** *composed entirely of organic matter* | **inanimate, inorganic | printed, written**

matter *verb*

• ADV. **a great deal, a lot, really** *These things matter a lot to young children.* | **hardly, little** (*formal*), **not much, scarcely** *She could find a job. It hardly mattered what.* | **no longer, not any more**
• VERB + MATTER **not seem to** *Somehow it didn't seem to matter much any more.*
• PREP. **about** *It doesn't matter about the mess.* **to** *It didn't matter to her that he was blind.*

mattress *noun*

• ADJ. **double, single | comfortable | firm, hard | soft | lumpy, sagging** *an old bed with a sagging mattress*
• PREP. **on a/the ~** *The children slept on mattresses on the floor.* **under a/the ~** *My grandmother keeps her money under the mattress.*

mature *verb*

• ADV. **fully** *a fully matured cheese* | **early** *This variety is easy to grow and matures early.* | **quickly, rapidly | slowly | emotionally, physically** *The teenage years cover a period in which people mature physically and emotionally.*
• VERB + MATURE **allow sth to, leave sth to** *The cheese is smoked and then left to mature.*
• PREP. **into** *She had matured into a beautiful young woman.* **to** *a young man who is maturing to adulthood*

mature *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become**
• ADV. **fully | emotionally, physically, sexually**

maturity *noun*

1 adult behaviour
• ADJ. **great, growing, increasing** *I can see an increasing maturity in how she understands the world.* | **emotional, intellectual**
• VERB + MATURITY **have | show** *She has shown great maturity in her behaviour this term.* | **grow in** *These latest paintings show how the artist has really grown in maturity.* | **lack**

2 full growth
• ADJ. **full** *It can take years for these plants to reach full maturity.* | **physical, psychological, sexual**
• VERB + MATURITY **approach, come to, grow to, reach** *The insects lay eggs when they approach maturity.*

maul *verb*

• ADV. **badly, severely** *She was badly mauled by a lion.*

maxim *noun*

• ADJ. **general, simple**
• VERB + MAXIM **apply, follow** *If you follow a few simple maxims, your business should be a success.*

maximum *noun*

• ADJ. **absolute | agreed, recommended** *Do not exceed the recommended maximum of three tablets a day.* | **legal, statutory**
• VERB + MAXIMUM **reach, rise to** *The temperature reached a maximum of 35°C yesterday.* | **exceed | allow (sb/sth), permit (sb/sth)** *In the exam, allow yourself a maximum of 30 minutes per question.* ◇ *the maximum permitted speeds* | **limit sth to, restrict sth to** *The amount you have to pay will be limited to a maximum of £500.*
• PREP. **above (the) ~, at (the) ~** *a journey of four hours at the maximum* **below (the) ~, to (the) ~** *He is using his talents to the maximum.* **(up) to a/the ~ | ~ of** *You can claim the allowance for a maximum of six months.*
• PHRASES **maximum possible** *They fined her the maximum possible for the offence.*

May *noun*

⇨ Note at MONTH

mayor *noun*

• ADJ. **local | deputy | lord** *In 1662–3 he served as Lord Mayor of London.* | **right-wing, socialist, etc.**
• VERB + MAYOR **run for** *running for mayor of Bogotá* | **elect (sb), elect sb as | serve as**
• PREP. **~ of** *the mayor of Southampton*

maze *noun*

• ADJ. **complex, intricate, tortuous**
• VERB + MAZE **be/get lost in | find your way through** *He found his way through the complex maze of corridors.*
• PREP. **in a/the ~, through a/the ~** *I followed him*

through a maze of narrow alleys. | **~ of** *I was lost in a maze of passages.*

meal *noun*

• ADJ. **big, filling, heavy** *I always want to go to sleep after a heavy meal.* | **slap-up** | **lavish, sumptuous** | **square, substantial** *She hadn't had a square meal for days.* | **light, simple** *The bar serves light meals.* | **meagre** *a meagre meal of bread and cheese* | **four-course, three-course, etc.** | **appetizing, decent, delicious, excellent, lovely, tasty** *Thanks for a delicious meal.* | **balanced, healthy, nourishing, wholesome** | **main** *When do you have your main meal of the day?* | **evening, midday** | **hot** *Hot meals are not available after 10 o'clock.* | **vegetarian**
⇨ Special page at FOOD

NOTE
Meals

eat, have, take *(formal)* **~**
Have you had breakfast?
grab, snatch ~
I'm so busy I have to snatch meals when I can.
ask sb to ~
have/invite/take sb for/to ~
come/go for/to ~
He wouldn't have asked her to supper if he didn't like her, she reasoned.
These verbs are often used with **around, out, over** and **round:**
We must have you over for dinner sometime.
Let's go out for a meal.
be out to lunch
He's out to lunch with a client.
stop for ~
We stopped for tea at the Ritz.
join sb for, stay for/to ~
You're sure you won't stay for tea?
sit down to, start ~
finish ~
We had just sat down to breakfast when the phone rang.
skip ~
I sometimes skip lunch if we're very busy.
cook (sb), fix (sb), get ready, make (sb), prepare ~
She hurried downstairs to fix herself some breakfast.
have ~ ready
We'll have supper ready for you.
serve ~
Lunch is served from noon till 3.
keep warm, warm up ~
I'll be home late, so keep my dinner warm.
provide, provide sb (with) ~
Dinner is provided in the superb hotel restaurant.
~ be available
A four course dinner is available by prior arrangement.
~ be ready
'Breakfast's ready!' shouted Christine.
~ time
The family was always noisy at meal times.
at/during/over ~
Nobody spoke during supper.
for ~
What did you have for lunch?
~ of
a breakfast of pancakes and maple syrup

mean *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, seem** | **become**
• ADV. **really, very** *I thought it was really mean of him not to let her use the car.* | **a bit, pretty, rather, slightly** *That was a pretty mean trick.* ◇ *He's rather mean when it comes to spending money on the children.*
• PREP. **to** *He's so mean to his mother!* **with** *She's very mean with her money.*

meaning *noun*

1 what sth means
• ADJ. **clear, exact, precise** *The context makes the meaning clear.* ◇ *What is the exact meaning of this phrase?* | **correct, true** | **original** | **double, hidden** *There's often a double meaning in jokes and riddles.* ◇ *I'm sure there's no hidden meaning in what he says.* | **figurative, metaphorical, symbolic** | **literal**
• VERB + MEANING **get, grasp, understand** *I can't grasp the meaning of this quotation.* | **decipher, interpret, work out** *Historians are trying to decipher the meaning of the documents.* | **assign, attribute** *She assigns a meaning to his words they just didn't have.* | **bear, carry, have** *Some of the symbols carry meaning and some just represent sounds.* ◇ *a word that has more than one meaning* | **take on** *The word 'gay' took on its modern meaning in the 1960s.* | **communicate, convey, express**
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *ambiguity in the meaning of a phrase* **with a/the ~** *I am using the word with its original meaning.* | **~ behind** *the meaning behind an event*
• PHRASES **a nuance/shade of meaning** *It is difficult for a non-Italian to grasp all the nuances of meaning.*

2 purpose/importance
• ADJ. **deep, real, true** *She's searching for the deeper meaning of life.* | **spiritual** *He found spiritual meaning through religion.*
• VERB + MEANING **have** *Her work no longer had any meaning for her.* | **find** | **lose** *After his death, she felt life had lost all meaning.* | **give** *Falling in love gave meaning to his life.*
• PREP. **without ~** *Young people can feel that life is without meaning.*

meaningless *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become** | **render sth**
• ADV. **absolutely, quite, totally** | **increasingly** | **almost, practically, virtually** *The phrase has become almost meaningless.* | **essentially, largely** | **fairly, pretty** | **apparently, seemingly** *apparently meaningless jargon*

means *noun*

1 method of doing sth
• ADJ. **appropriate, best, effective, efficient, reliable, useful** *an effective means of mass communication* | **necessary, possible, practicable** *We will use every possible means to achieve our objective.* | **alternative, other** *War is famously 'the continuation of policy by other means'.* | **conventional, traditional** | **legal, legitimate**
• VERB + MEANS **have** *We have no means of knowing how they will react.* | **use** | **offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *My English teacher provided me with the means to enjoy reading poetry.* | **devise** *Can you devise a means of overcoming the problem?*
• PREP. **by ~ (of)** *The stone was lifted by means of a rope and pulley.* **through ~** *They cannot achieve their goal through legal means.* | **~ for** *the means for achieving happiness* **~ of** *a means of access/communication/transport* ◇ *a means of getting what you want*
• PHRASES **a means to an end** *He saw his education merely as a means to an end.* **by fair means or foul, by no means/not by any means** (= not at all), **ways and means** *There are ways and means of raising money.*

2 money/wealth
• ADJ. **independent, private** *She must have independent means to live in such style.* | **limited, moderate, modest, slender** | **visible** *people who lack visible means of support*

- VERB + MEANS **have** | **lack**
- MEANS + NOUN **test** *Eligibility for the benefit was determined by a means test.*
- PREP. **according to your ~** (= according to what you can afford), **beyond your ~** *Private school fees are beyond the means of most people* (= more than they can afford). **within your ~** (= according to what you can afford) *She finds it difficult to live within her means.*
- PHRASES **a man/woman of means** (= a rich man/woman)

measles *noun*

- VERB + MEASLES **have** *All our children have had the measles.* | **catch, contract** | **immunize sb against, vaccinate sb against**
- MEASLES + NOUN **virus** | **vaccination, vaccine**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

measure *noun*

1 official action to deal with a problem

- ADJ. **appropriate, effective, necessary, practical** *We urge you to adopt all necessary measures to guarantee people's safety.* | **important, key, special** | **simple** | **desperate, draconian, drastic, extreme, harsh, radical, repressive, strong, tough** | **emergency, urgent** | **interim, short-term, temporary** | **defensive, precautionary, preventative** | **disciplinary, punitive** | **corrective, remedial** | **safety, security** *New security measures were implemented to prevent further violence.* | **austerity, cost-cutting, economy, efficiency** | **economic, policy** | **government**
- QUANT. **package, range, series** *a package of measures aimed at cutting pollution*
- VERB + MEASURE **adopt, implement, impose, introduce, take** *Special measures are being taken to protect the local water supplies.* | **propose, suggest**
- MEASURE + VERB **be aimed at sth, be designed to, be intended to**
- PREP. **~ against** *tougher measures against racism* **~ for** *measures for reducing delays*

2 amount/quantity of sth

- ADJ. **broad, considerable, fair, generous, great, significant, substantial, wide**
- PREP. **~ of** *He poured me a generous measure of whisky.*
- PHRASES **in large/some measure** *His success was due in large measure to your help.* **in equal measure, in no small measure**

3 unit of size/quantity

- ADJ. **accurate, direct, objective, precise**
- PREP. **~ of** *an accurate measure of length*
- PHRASES **weights and measures**

4 sign of sth

- ADJ. **crude, simple, true, useful**
- PREP. **~ of** *Landed income was the true measure of the gentry.*

measure *verb*

1 find the size of sth

- ADV. **accurately, exactly, precisely** | **carefully** | **directly** *Any type of data that could not be directly measured was rejected.* | **easily** | **experimentally** | **up** *We need to measure the room up for a new carpet.*
- VERB + MEASURE **be able to, can/cannot** *You can now measure its length more accurately.* | **be easy to, be possible to** | **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to**
- PREP. **for** *She's being measured for her wedding outfit.* **in** *Cloth is measured in metres.*

2 judge the importance/value/effect of sth

- ADV. **easily** *The policy's impact cannot be easily measured.* | **effectively** | **objectively**
- VERB + MEASURE **can/cannot** | **be easy to, be possible to** | **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *It is hard to measure the benefiits to society of this scheme* | **be used to** *the criteria that are used to measure performance*
- PREP. **according to** *Is it really possible to measure the skills of such jobs according to objective standards?* **against** *The school's performance is measured against a strict set of criteria.* **by** *The policy's effectiveness cannot be measured by numbers alone.* **in terms of** *Success cannot be measured merely in terms of the size of your salary.*
- PHRASES **a method/way of measuring sth**

NOTE

Weights and measures

~ of
I always drink gallons of water.
half a, a quarter of a ~
half a litre of milk
a half/quarter hour, inch, mile, ounce, pint, pound
They used to sell corned beef at 2d a quarter pound.
cubic, square ~
One litre is equivalent to 1 000 cubic centimetres.
~ square
The room is about 15 metres square.
~ broad, deep, high, long, tall, thick, wide
The new dock was 230 m long and 92 m broad.
~ bigger, cooler, faster, heavier, lighter, slower, etc.
The climate was several degrees warmer than it is now.
about, approximately, around ~
1 foot = approx. 0.3 metres
be, cover, measure, span, stretch (for) ~ used with measures of distance and area
The National Park covers 3 000 acres.
The sandy beach stretches for over four miles.
be, weigh ~ used with measures of weight
She weighed over ten stone.
be, last, take ~ used with measures of time
It takes approximately 365 and a quarter days for the earth to revolve around the sun.
in a ~
How many centilitres are there in a litre?
in ~s
We were asked to estimate the temperature of the room in degrees.
to a/the ~
My car does 10 miles to the litre.
a, per ~
They're 99p a dozen.
a safety threshold of 50 mg of nitrates per litre
by the ~
Apples are sold by the kilogram.
of ~
The path will be built to a width of 2 metres.
~ in area, length, volume, weight, size, etc.
Killer whales are up to ten metres in length.
~ by ~
a huge room measuring 50 m by 18 m
to the nearest ~
Give your answer to the nearest metre.

measurement *noun*

- ADJ. **accurate, careful, exact, objective, precise** *It is important to take precise measurements of the structure.* ◇ *Objective measurement is difficult with such poor equipment.* | **laboratory, scientific** | **imperial, metric** | **length, pressure, temperature, etc.** | **body, bust, chest, waist**
- VERB + MEASUREMENT **carry out, get, make, obtain, perform, record, take**
- MEASUREMENT + NOUN **system, technique** | **scale, unit** | **error**
- PHRASES **a scale/unit of measurement**

meat *noun*

- ADJ. **fresh | bad, rancid, rotten** *That meat smells rotten.* | **tender** *Simmer the meat for 30 minutes until tender.* | **tough | lean | fatty | dark, red, white | raw, uncooked | rare, undercooked | cooked, cured, processed, roast, salted, smoked | cold** *a plate of cold meats* | **frozen | minced | luncheon, potted, tinned | sausage | organic | halal, kosher | crab, horse, etc.**
- QUANT. **bit, chunk, lump, piece, slab, slice | cut, joint** *She always buys the cheaper cuts of meat.*
- VERB + MEAT **consume, eat** *The animals do not hunt and rarely consume meat.* ◇ *Do you eat meat?* | **chew (on)** *chewing on the tough meat* | **barbecue, cook, fry, grill, roast, stew** *Fry the meat in a little olive oil.* | **marinate | tenderize | seal** *Turn the meat frequently to seal it.* | **chop, cube, cut, dice, mince | bone | carve, slice**
- MEAT + VERB **be/go off, rot** *The meat has gone off.*
- MEAT + NOUN **dish, pie, products** *recipes for simple meat dishes* | **market | cleaver | eater** *I'm not a great meat eater.* | **content** *These pies have a low meat content.* | **production | consumption** *Britain's meat consumption*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

mechanic *noun*

- ADJ. **competent, good, skilled | chief | trained | car, garage, motor**

⇨ Note at JOB

mechanics *noun*

1 how sth works/is done

- ADJ. **actual, basic, detailed, sheer** *We need to discuss the actual mechanics of the operation.*

2 science of movement and force

- ADJ. **classical, fluid, Newtonian, quantum, statistical**

mechanism *noun*

1 part of a machine

- ADJ. **firing, locking, steering, trigger, winding**
- MECHANISM + VERB **operate, work** *The door locking mechanism doesn't work.* | **jam**

2 how sth works

- ADJ. **effective, precise** *an effective mechanism for enforcing the rules* | **underlying | complex | social**
- VERB + MECHANISM **provide** *The system provides a mechanism whereby information is channelled into the market.*
- MECHANISM + VERB **operate, work | allow sth, ensure sth**
- PREP. **by/through the ~ of** *The government is held accountable through the mechanism of regular general elections.* | **~ for** *a mechanism for dealing with complaints*

3 system of parts/behaviour that performs a function

- ADJ. **avoidance, control, defence, escape, survival** *The body has defence mechanisms against many diseases.* | **cellular, genetic, immunological, molecular, neural, physiological, psychological, etc.**
- PREP. **~ for**

medal *noun*

- ADJ. **bronze, gold, silver** *He won a gold medal in the 100 metres.* | **championship, Olympic | commemorative** *A commemorative medal was struck in honour of the event.*
- VERB + MEDAL **be awarded, collect, get, receive, win | award (sb), give sb, present (sb with) | strike**
- MEDAL + NOUN **winner | hope, hopes** *He is a major medal hope for Britain.* ◇ *Her medal hopes were dashed by injury.*
- PREP. **~ for** *a medal for bravery*

media *noun*

- ADJ. **audio-visual, broadcast, broadcasting, electronic, mass, news, print, visual** *The event was widely covered by the mass media.* | **foreign, international, local, national | mainstream, official, popular**
- MEDIA + VERB **report sth** *The local media reported rioting across the country.*
- MEDIA + NOUN **attention, coverage, interest, publicity, reporting** *There was a lot of media coverage of the wedding.* | **campaign | report | event** *Sport has been turned into a series of media events.* | **blitz, circus, hype** *The company is anxious to play down the media hype.* | **spotlight | image** *She's very different from her media image.* | **bias | blackout, censorship | freedom | relations | baron, magnate, mogul, person, pundit, tycoon | conglomerate, empire, group, interests, organization, outlet | awareness, studies**
- PREP. **through/via the ~** *propaganda through the media*
- PHRASES **access to the media, the role of the media**

mediation *noun*

- ADJ. **French, international, UN, etc.**
- VERB + MEDIATION **accept** *Unless management accepts mediation, the strike will never be resolved.*
- MEDIATION + NOUN **efforts, process**
- PREP. **through sb's ~** *The conflict ended through the mediation of the United Nations.* **under sb's ~** *under international mediation* | **~ between, ~ by** *mediation by the prime minister between the two sides*

medical *noun*

- ADJ. **full, regular** *Pilots undergo regular medicals.*
- VERB + MEDICAL **have, undergo | pass** *He was accepted onto the course after passing the medical.*

medication *noun*

- ADJ. **prescribed | over-the-counter | regular**
- VERB + MEDICATION **be on, receive, take | prescribe (sb) | administer, give sb | stop** *She stopped the medication because of side effects.* | **need, require**
- PREP. **~ for** *He is on regular medication for his fits.*

medicine *noun*

1 science of treating/preventing illness

- ADJ. **modern** *advances in modern medicine* | **traditional** *qualified in traditional Chinese medicine* | **folk** *Garlic was widely used in folk medicine.* | **conventional, orthodox | alternative, complementary, holistic, homeopathic | preventative, preventive | academic, clinical, forensic, scientific | general** *She gave up general medicine to specialize in geriatric medicine.* | **geriatric, obstetric, paediatric, veterinary, etc. | Chinese, Western | private, public health** *She believed private medicine was a threat to the existence of the National Health Service.*
- VERB + MEDICINE **train in | qualify in | practise** *people practising alternative medicine*
- PHRASES **a branch of medicine**

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for more verbs and nouns)

2 substance taken to treat an illness

- ADJ. **powerful, strong | cough** *a bottle of cough medicine* | **herbal | prescription**
- QUANT. **dose**
- VERB + MEDICINE **take | swallow | prescribe (sb) | administer, give sb | treat sb with**
- MEDICINE + NOUN **bottle, chest**
- PREP. **~ for** *medicine for a chest infection*

MEETINGS

before the meeting

- **call/convene** the meeting, or **invite** people to **attend** the meeting
- **draw up** an **agenda**
- **circulate** the **agenda**
- If too many people are not able to attend, you may need to **postpone** or **call off/cancel** the meeting.

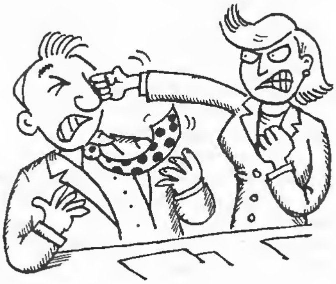

making a point

at the meeting

You usually appoint somebody to:

- **chair** the **meeting**
- **keep/take minutes**

After the chair has **opened** the meeting, the first **points/items** on the **agenda** are often to:

- **approve/agree** the **minutes** of the previous meeting
- **agree on** the **agenda** for the current meeting

It may be necessary to:

- **add** an **item** to the **agenda**
- **remove** sth **from** / **take** sth **off** / **leave** sth **off** the **agenda**

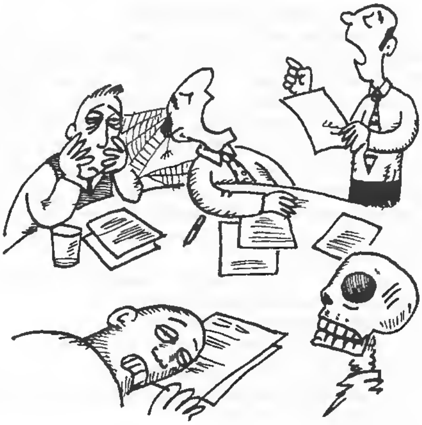

debating at length

In a meeting you can:

address consider deal with debate discuss look at/into tackle	issues / matters / problems

If you don't spend much time on an issue, you **touch on** the **issue**. If you pay a lot of attention to an issue you:

consider deal with discuss look at	the issue **in depth/detail**
debate discuss	the issue **at length**
have	an **in-depth discussion** about/ on the issue
have take	an **in-depth look** at the issue

You usually **make decisions** at meetings. You can also:

reach	**make**	**agree on**	**take**	**adopt**
(an) agreement	a proposal	a compromise	a decision	a resolution
a compromise	a recommendation	further action	a vote	
a conclusion				
a consensus				
a decision				

After hours of negotiation, workers and management reached a compromise.
The environmental commission made a proposal for a new park in the city.
The shareholders took a vote on the proposed merger.

reaching a consensus

giving your opinion

make	**raise**	**give/state**
a point	an issue	your opinion
a proposal	an objection	your view
a suggestion	a point	

May I make a suggestion to the chairman of the board?

The workers raised an objection to longer working hours.

He invited the committee members to give their opinion.

ending the meeting

You can:

- **adjourn** the **meeting** until a later date
  This meeting is adjourned until next week.
- **close** the **meeting**
- **bring** the meeting to **a close**
  The chairman brought the meeting to a close by thanking all those who had attended.
- **declare** the meeting **closed**
  The High Commissioner for Human Rights declared the meeting closed.

after the meeting

It is usual to:

- **write up** the **minutes**
- **circulate** the **minutes**

meditation *noun*

• ADJ. **deep, profound** *Techniques of deep meditation help people under stress.* | **quiet, silent** *He stared out of the window in silent meditation.* | **Buddhist, Christian** | **religious, transcendental**
• VERB + MEDITATION **do, practise**
• PREP. **in ~** *spending hours in meditation* | **~ on** *The novel is an extended meditation on art, love and loss.*

medium *noun*

1 means of expressing/communicating sth
• ADJ. **communication** *Radio is an important communication medium in many countries.* | **mass** | **print, written**
• PREP. **through the ~ of** *The government communicates through the medium of television.*
• PHRASES **a medium of communication**

2 sth used for a particular purpose
• ADJ. **storage** *An optical disk is just another kind of electronic storage medium.*
• PREP. **~ for** *She used her novels as a medium for encouraging political debate.* **~ of** *the medium of study*
• PHRASES **a medium of instruction** (= a language used for teaching) *English is the medium of instruction in many African countries.*

3 material/form that an artist, etc. uses
• ADJ. **mixed media** *mixed media artwork*
• PREP. **through a/the ~** | **~ of** *to express yourself through the medium of paint/poetry/drama*

meet *verb*

1 come together
• ADV. **first** *the place where they had first met* | **regularly** | **never** | **up** *We met up after school.*
• VERB + MEET **arrange to** | **chance to, happen to** *A year or so later I happened to meet him again.*
• PREP. **for** *I arranged to meet her for lunch.* **with** *Management will meet with union representatives next week.* ◇ *I met up with my friends in town.*
• PHRASES **look forward to meeting sb** *I look forward to meeting you next week.* **nice/pleased to meet you** (= a greeting used when you meet sb for the first time)

2 satisfy sth
• ADV. **head-on** *They were determined to meet the challenge head-on.*
• VERB + MEET **be able to, can** | **be unable to, fail to** *He had failed to meet his performance targets.* | **be designed to, be tailored to** *The course is designed to meet the needs of young learners.*

3 sb's eyes/gaze/look
• ADV. **levelly, squarely, unflinchingly, without flinching** *Leonora met his gaze without flinching.* | **fleetingly** | **challengingly, determinedly**
• PREP. **~ across** *Their eyes met across the crowded room.*

meeting *noun*

1 when people come together to discuss/decide sth
• ADJ. **frequent, regular** | **annual, biennial, half-yearly, monthly, quarterly, weekly, etc.** | **all-day, hour-long, two-hour, etc.** | **afternoon, breakfast, lunchtime, weekend, etc.** | **full, plenary** | **formal, informal** | **inaugural** | **mass** | **open-air** | **open, public** | **closed, private** | **secret** | **joint** *Management have called a joint meeting with staff and unions.* | **general** *The society is holding its Annual General Meeting in the conference room next Monday.* | **face-to-face, personal** | **bilateral, trilateral, tripartite** | **high-level, summit, top-level** | **exploratory, initial, introductory, preliminary, preparatory** | **follow-up** | **extraordinary, special** | **crisis, emergency, urgent** | **crucial, decisive, key, vital** | **impromptu** | **pre-inquiry, pre-session, pre-summit, etc.** | **post-election, post-results, etc.** | **board, cabinet, committee, council, departmental, family, ministerial, shareholders', staff, team, union** | **inter-governmental, inter-ministerial, inter-party, inter-tribal, etc.** | **business** | **political** | **discussion** | **protest** | **prayer** | **brief** | **endless, interminable, long** *We had endless meetings about the problem.* ◇ *The meeting seemed interminable.* | **angry, difficult, stormy** | **fruitless, inconclusive** | **successful, valuable**
• QUANT. **series**
• VERB + MEETING **have, hold** | **arrange, call, convene, organize, schedule, summon** *The committee has called a meeting to discuss the president's death.* | **attend** | **declare open, open** *The chairman declared the meeting open.* | **close, declare closed** | **adjourn, break up** | **call off, cancel** | **postpone** | **host** | **chair, conduct, preside over** *I've got to chair a meeting tomorrow.* | **call to order** *The chairman called the meeting to order.* | **participate in** | **address** *He always spoke as if he were addressing a public meeting.* | **ban** | **boycott** | **disrupt**
• MEETING + VERB **go ahead, take place** *It is unclear whether the meeting will go ahead as planned.* | **be aimed at sth** *a meeting aimed at restoring peace in the region* | **begin, open, proceed, start** | **adjourn** *The meeting adjourned for coffee at eleven.* | **break up** *The meeting broke up after a row over whether to allow cameras in.* | **close, end** *The meeting closed on a sour note.* | **vote** *The meeting voted 423–133 in favour of a strike.* | **discuss sth** | **agree to sth, approve sth** | **condemn sth** | **urge sth** *This meeting urges the company to reconsider its decision to close the factory.* | **express sth** *The meeting expressed concern that the problem had still not been addressed.* | **hear sth** *The meeting heard that two workers had been sacked on the spot with no official reason given.* | **conclude sth, decide sth, resolve sth** | **drag (on)** *The meeting dragged into the early hours of the next day.*
• MEETING + NOUN **house, place**
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *I'm afraid Mrs Haley is in a meeting at the moment.* | **~ about** *a meeting about the plans for a new road* **~ between** *a meeting between tutors and students* **~ for** *a meeting for parents* **~ over** *Directors called a crisis meeting over the future of the company.* **~ with** *a meeting with French officials*
• PHRASES **the purpose of a meeting, the minutes of a meeting** *The secretary circulated the minutes of the previous week's meeting to all committee members.* **the outcome/result of a meeting**
⇨ Special page on page 490

2 coming together of two or more people
• ADJ. **accidental, chance, unexpected** | **fateful** | **clandestine, secret** | **historic, unprecedented** | **emotional** | **romantic**
• VERB + MEETING **have**
• PREP. **~ with** *I had a chance meeting with an old schoolfriend last week.*

mellow *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** | **become, grow**
• ADV. **extremely, very** | **beautifully, delightfully, wonderfully** *a delightfully mellow flavour*

melody *noun*

• ADJ. **beautiful, lovely, sweet** | **bold, simple, strong** | **complex** | **haunting, memorable** | **familiar, popular, traditional**
• VERB + MELODY **play, sing** | **hear** | **have** *Most of her songs have a bold melody.* | **write**

member *noun*

• ADJ. **key, leading, powerful, prominent** | **junior, senior** | **long-serving, long-standing, long-time** | **board, club, committee, crew, family, group, party, staff, team, union** | **individual** *Subscriptions are cheaper for individual members.* | **founder** | **active, enthusiastic** *She's an*

active member of her local church. | **honorary** | **full** | **associate** | **life** *a life member of the Red Cross* | **paid-up** *He was a paid-up member of the Communist Party.*
- VERB + MEMBER **become** | **resign as**
- MEMBER + VERB **join sth** | **resign**
- MEMBER + NOUN **country, nation, state**
- PHRASES **a member of staff** *All members of staff will receive a pay rise.*
- PREP. **~ of** *I've become a member of our local sports club.*

membership *noun*

- ADJ. **associate, corporate, full, honorary, temporary** | **club, party, union** *to apply for union membership*
- VERB + MEMBERSHIP **apply for** | **renew** | **grant sb** | **resign** *He has resigned his membership of the club.*
- MEMBERSHIP + NOUN **fee**

membrane *noun*

- ADJ. **thin** | **permeable, semi-permeable** | **cell** | **cellular** | **mucous**
- MEMBRANE + VERB **surround sth**
- MEMBRANE + NOUN **wall**
- PREP. **through a/the ~** *The virus then passes through the cell membrane.*

memento *noun*

- ADJ. **family, personal** | **permanent**
- VERB + MEMENTO **be presented with, receive**
- PREP. **as a ~** *They gave him a watch as a memento of his time with the company.* | **~ for** *The director will be presented with a memento for his long years of service.* **~ from** *a memento from his dear friends* **~ of** *The photos will be a permanent memento of your wedding.*

memo *noun*

- ADJ. **internal**
- QUANT. **copy**
- VERB + MEMO **draft, write** | **circulate, send (out)** | **receive** | **sign** | **leak**
- MEMO + NOUN **pad**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** | **~ from, ~ of** *my memo of 28 June, 2001* **~ on** *A memo on the curriculum changes from the Head of Education.* **~ to** *She circulated a memo to the staff.*

memoirs *noun*

- ADJ. **political** *the market for political memoirs*
- VERB + MEMOIRS **publish, write** | **read**
- PREP. **in your ~** *She describes in her memoirs how she coped with her mother's death.*

memorable *adj.*

- VERBS **be** *It was a truly memorable experience.*
- ADV. **extremely, most, particularly, truly, very** *one particularly memorable evening last year*
- PREP. **for** *The holiday was memorable for the food.*

memorandum *noun*

- ADJ. **internal** | **confidential, private, secret** | **brief** | **detailed** | **explanatory, factual**
- QUANT. **copy**
- VERB + MEMORANDUM **draft, draw up, prepare, write** | **issue, send, submit** | **sign** | **date** *The memorandum was dated 23 August, 2001.* | **leak**
- MEMORANDUM + VERB **set sth out**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Refer to the terms set out in the company's memorandum.* | **~ from, ~ of** *your memorandum of 18 February, 2001* **~ on, ~ to**

memorial *noun*

- ADJ. **lasting, permanent** *The statue is a lasting memorial to those who died in the war.* | **fitting** | **war**
- VERB + MEMORIAL **build, erect, put up** | **unveil**
- MEMORIAL + VERB **commemorate sb/sth** | **stand** *The memorial stands on the village green.*
- MEMORIAL + NOUN **ceremony, service** *a memorial service for sailors drowned at sea*
- PREP. **~ for** *a memorial for victims of the air crash* **~ to** *The prime minister today unveiled a memorial to those who died in the disaster.*

memory *noun*

1 ability to remember
- ADJ. **excellent, good, long, prodigious, retentive** | **bad, poor, short** | **long-term, short-term** *His short-term memory was damaged in the accident.* | **visual** *Bad spellers have a weak visual memory.* | **photographic**
- VERB + MEMORY **jog, refresh** *Seeing your name in the paper jogged my memory.* | **lose** *Most people start to lose their memory as they get older.* | **commit sth to** *I committed the number to memory and threw the letter away.*
- PREP. **from ~** *He recited the whole poem from memory.* | **~ for** *I have a good memory for faces.*
- PHRASES **in living/recent memory** *the coldest winter in living memory*

2 thought of the past
- ADJ. **childhood, early** *My earliest childhood memory is of falling in a pond in winter.* | **dim, distant, fading, hazy, vague** | **clear, vivid** | **affectionate, fond, good, happy, lovely, nostalgic, pleasant, positive, precious, sweet, warm, wonderful** | **bitter-sweet** | **bad, bitter, disturbing, embarrassing, horrific, painful, sad, traumatic, unhappy, unpleasant** | **abiding, enduring, lasting, lingering** *My abiding memory of our first meeting is of a girl too shy to talk.*
- VERB + MEMORY **bring back, evoke, rekindle, revive, stir (up)** | **blot out** *He tried to blot out his memories of the ordeal.*
- MEMORY + VERB **come flooding back, flood back** *When we visited my old family home, memories came flooding back.* | **fade**
- PREP. **in ~ of** *He planted some apple trees in memory of his wife.* | **~ from** *Smells and tastes often evoke memories from the past.* **~ of** *fond memories of her childhood*

menace *noun*

1 danger
- ADJ. **growing, increased, increasing** *the growing menace of drugs* | **serious**
- VERB + MENACE **pose** *the menace posed by car fumes* | **combat, counter** *Shop owners are struggling to combat the menace of armed robbery.*
- PREP. **~ to** *He's a menace to society.*

2 threatening quality
- ADJ. **hidden, quiet, silent** *'Where do you think you're going?' he said with quiet menace.*
- PREP. **with ~** *eyes glittering with menace*
- PHRASES **an air of menace** *The scar down his face added to his air of menace.*

menacing *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **almost** *His voice was quiet and almost menacing.* | **faintly, rather, slightly** *She had a slightly menacing manner.* | **darkly** *darkly menacing alleys* | **quietly**

meningitis *noun*

- ADJ. **acute** | **bacterial, meningococcal, viral**
- QUANT. **case**

- VERB + MENINGITIS **have, suffer from** *He is suffering from viral meningitis.* | **catch, contract**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

menopause *noun*

- ADJ. **early** | **male** *The male menopause is said to affect men who are approaching middle age.*
- VERB + MENOPAUSE **reach** | **go through**
- PREP. **at the ~, after/past the ~** *a disease that can afflict women past the menopause* **during the ~**

mention *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, passing** | **special** | **earliest, first** *The earliest mention of the village is in a 16th-century manuscript.*
- VERB + MENTION **deserve** *My cousin deserves a mention for all his hard work.* | **get, receive** *His professor gets a mention in the acknowledgements.* | **make** *Special mention must be made of Yuki Yamagishi's wonderful performance as the doctor.* | **hear** *I've heard no mention of a salary increase this year.*
- PREP. **at the ~ of** *At the very mention of his name, Kate started shaking with fright.*

mention *verb*

- ADV. **already, earlier, just, previously, so far** *As already mentioned, the legislation does not consider low pay as an acceptable reason for turning down a job.* ◇ *This aspect is discussed further by Crane, whom I mentioned earlier.* ◇ *All the approaches mentioned so far are fairly conventional.* | **commonly, frequently** | **rarely, seldom** | **briefly, in passing** *He only mentioned his work in passing.* | **casually** *I casually mentioned that I might be interested in working abroad.* | **directly, explicitly, expressly, specifically** *She did not specifically mention your name.* | **inadvertently** | **barely, hardly, scarcely** | **not actually, not at all** *Although she didn't actually mention the move, I am sure that was in her mind.* ◇ *My name wasn't mentioned at all.*
- VERB + MENTION **fail to, forget to, omit to**
- PREP. **as** *Next spring has been mentioned as a possible time for the event.* **in** *She didn't mention the economy in her speech.* **in connection with sth** *I was very angry when I saw my name mentioned in connection with an incident that had absolutely nothing to do with me.* **to** *Please don't mention this to Sally.*
- PHRASES **avoid mentioning sb/sth** *He avoided mentioning his family.* **be worth mentioning sth** *At this point, it is worth mentioning that many people who were adopted as babies have no desire to meet their biological parents.* **mentioned above/below** *In the example mentioned above, either method of construction could have been used.* **mentioned in dispatches** *Wounded in action, he was twice mentioned in dispatches.* **mention the fact that … , not to mention** (= used to add extra information) *He has two big houses in this country, not to mention his villa in France.* **now you come to mention it** *Now that you come to mention it, he did say something about a ghost.* **to mention but a few** *plumbers, printers, dyers, glaziers and potters, to mention but a few*

menu *noun*

1 list of dishes

- ADJ. **extensive** | **varied** | **daily** | **fixed price, set, table d'hôte** | **à la carte** | **three-course, etc.** | **traditional** | **breakfast, dinner, lunch** | **bar, pub, restaurant** | **dinner-party** | **fish, vegetarian**
- VERB + MENU **consult, have, look at, read, see, study** *May we have the menu?* | **do, have, offer** *Many restaurants do a very reasonable set menu at lunchtime.* | **choose (sth) from, order (sth) from** | **plan**
- MENU + VERB **offer sth** *a menu offering many vegetarian dishes*
- MENU + NOUN **board** *The chef was chalking the daily specials on the menu board.*
- PREP. **on the ~** *What's on the menu this evening?*
- PHRASES **a choice of menu** *Passengers are offered a daily choice of menu.*

2 on a computer

- ADJ. **pop-up, pull-down** | **main** | **sub** | **edit, file, options, etc.**
- VERB + MENU **select sth from**
- MENU + NOUN **bar** | **item, option**

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

mercenary *noun*

- ADJ. **foreign**
- QUANT. **army, band** *a small army of mercenaries*
- VERB + MERCENARY **employ, hire, recruit** | **pay**
- MERCENARY + NOUN **army**

merchandise *noun*

- ADJ. **general**
- QUANT. **piece** *a substandard piece of merchandise*
- VERB + MERCHANDISE **buy, purchase** | **carry, sell** *The company carries a wide range of merchandise.*
- PHRASES **a range of merchandise**

merchant *noun*

- ADJ. **prosperous, rich, wealthy** | **powerful, prominent, substantial, successful** | **foreign, local** | **builders', coal, corn, timber, wine, wool** *We bought a ton of sand from the builders' merchant.*
- MERCHANT + NOUN **fleet, marine, seaman, ship, shipping, vessel**

mercy *noun*

- ADJ. **divine, infinite** *God's infinite mercy*
- VERB + MERCY **ask for, beg for, plead for, scream for** | **have, show (sb)** *God have mercy on us!* ◇ *They showed no mercy to their captives.*
- MERCY + NOUN **dash, flight, mission** *Aid agencies are making mercy flights into the flood region.* | **killing**
- PREP. **at the ~ of** *We're at the mercy of the weather.* **without ~** *The terrorists are completely without mercy.*

merger *noun*

- ADJ. **proposed**
- VERB + MERGER **plan** | **agree** | **carry out**
- MERGER + VERB **go through** *If the merger goes through, thousands of jobs will be lost.*
- MERGER + NOUN **activity** | **proposal** | **negotiations** | **agreement**
- PREP. **~ between** *the merger between Lake Biscuits and D M Confectionery*

merit *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, exceptional, great, outstanding** | **aesthetic, architectural, artistic, literary** *The film has no artistic merit whatsoever.* | **relative** *We need to consider the relative merits of both makes of cooker.* | **individual** *Each case should be judged on its individual merits.*
- VERB + MERIT **have** | **argue, assess, consider, debate, discuss, judge** *We need to assess the merits of both proposals before making our decision.*
- MERIT + NOUN **award** *She received a merit award for outstanding work.*
- PREP. **according to ~** *Films are given a rating of one to five stars according to merit.* **on ~** *Prizes are awarded entirely on merit.*
- PHRASES **no merit in doing sth** *I can see no merit in excluding the child from school.* **order of merit** *The winners are ranked in order of merit.*

merit *verb*

- ADV. **certainly, clearly | hardly** *The question hardly merits an answer.*

mess *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, complete, real, right, total | appalling, awful, bloody** (*taboo*), **nasty, terrible | confusing | tangled, untidy** *Her hair was a tangled mess.* | **gooey, slimy, soggy, sticky | emotional** *He's an emotional mess since his girlfriend left him.* | **economic, financial**
- VERB + MESS **leave, make** *Must you always leave such a mess?* ◇ *She felt she was making a terrible mess of her life.* | **clean up, clear up, tidy up, wipe up | feel** *I felt a mess.* | **look | create, get sb into** *Who got us into this mess in the first place?* | **deal with, get sb out of, sort out**
- PREP. **in a ~** *The kitchen's in an awful mess.* | **~ of** *There was a soggy mess of porridge on the table.*

message *noun*

1 from one person to another

- ADJ. **important, urgent, vital | brief, short | coded, cryptic, scrambled | secret | garbled | email, radio, text | heartfelt** *The family sent a heartfelt message of thanks to everyone who helped.*
- VERB + MESSAGE **convey, give sb, pass on, relay** *He's not here—I'll pass on the message.* | **take** *She's out—can I take a message?* | **carry, deliver, take sb | send, transmit | leave (sb)** *I left a message for her at reception.* | **get, receive** *I never got your message.*
- MESSAGE + VERB **come | say sth, tell sb sth**
- PREP. **~ about** *There was a message about the meeting.* **~ for** *Are there any messages for me?* **~ from** *a urgent message from your mother* **~ of** *They sent messages of hope to prisoners of war.* **~ to** *The message was to your sister, not you.*

2 main idea of a book, speech, etc.

- ADJ. **important | fundamental, main | clear, simple, unambiguous, unmistakeable | ambiguous, conflicting, mixed | powerful, strong | positive, upbeat | stark, uncomfortable | hidden, implicit, subliminal** *stories with hidden moral messages* | **anti-drugs, anti-war, etc.** *a party with an anti-immigrant message* | **ideological, moral, political, social**
- VERB + MESSAGE **spread** *spreading the message of the Bible* | **drive home, get/put across** *We need to get this important message across to teenage smokers.* | **reinforce**
- MESSAGE + VERB **emerge** *A clear message is emerging from these government statements.*
- PREP. **~ of** *The president toured the country spreading the message of national unity.*

metal *noun*

- ADJ. **soft | pure | ferrous, non-ferrous | base, heavy, noble, precious, rare, trace, transition | cold, hot** *the sudden pressure of cold metal against her cheek* | **bare | solid | gleaming, shining, shiny | tarnished | corroded, rusty | scrap** *to recycle scrap metal* | **twisted** *The bomb left a pile of jagged glass and twisted metal.* | **ductile | molten | sheet | toxic**
- QUANT. **lump, piece, strip**
- VERB + METAL **be cast from/in, be made from/(out) of** *a statue cast in metal* ◇ *The doors are made of metal.* | **recycle**
- METAL + VERB **contract, expand | rust**
- METAL + NOUN **alloy | band, bar, box, frame, mesh, plate, rod, sheet | fatigue | detector**
- PREP. **in ~** *a sculptor who works in metal*
- PHRASES **the clang/clash of metal**

metaphor *noun*

- ADJ. **appropriate, apt, striking | mixed**
- VERB + METAPHOR **use** *He uses the metaphor of fire to represent hatred.*
- METAPHOR + VERB **describe sth, represent sth**
- PREP. **~ for** *'This vale of tears' is a metaphor for the human condition.* **~ of** *the metaphor of life as a journey*

meter *noun*

- ADJ. **electricity, gas, light, moisture, parking, sound-level, water | card, prepayment, slot, token** *The token meter is operated by tokens costing £1 or £5.*
- VERB + METER **read** *The electricity company will send an employee to read your meter.* | **fit, install**
- METER + VERB **tick** *The taxi waited, its motor running, the meter ticking away.*
- METER + NOUN **reader, reading | box, cupboard**

method *noun*

- ADJ. **effective, efficient, good, practical, reliable** *Which method is the most effective?* | **simple | common, conventional, principal, traditional, usual | new | alternative, other | different, various | unorthodox, unusual | farming, research, scientific, teaching, working** ~s *modern farming methods*
- VERB + METHOD **adopt, employ, follow, use** *the method adopted by the party for the selection of its candidates* | **develop, devise, work out | change, improve**
- METHOD + VERB **involve sth** *This method involves cutting a very thin slice from the object.* **work** *How does this method work?*
- PREP. **~ for** *an alternative method for resolving disputes* **~ of** *This is the best method of settling such arguments.*

metre *noun*

⇨ Note at MEASURE

microphone *noun*

- ADJ. **extension, radio, stick, tie-clip | built-in, camcorder | omnidirectional, unidirectional | hidden**
- VERB + MICROPHONE **speak into, use | check, test**
- MICROPHONE + VERB **pick sth up, record sth** *the microphone picks up the surrounding sounds*
- MICROPHONE + NOUN **socket | stand**
- PREP. **behind a/the ~** *John Peel is back behind the microphone for a new series.* **in front of a/the ~** *Interviewees are placed in front of the microphone and grilled.*

microscope *noun*

- ADJ. **binocular, electron, optical**
- MICROSCOPE + NOUN **slide** *Place the specimen on a microscope slide.*
- PREP. **through a/the ~** *a section of a potato as seen through a microscope* **under a/the ~** *examining bacteria under the microscope*

middle age *noun*

- ADJ. **early | late** *a woman of late middle age* | **comfortable** *He settled into comfortable middle age.*
- VERB + MIDDLE AGE **approach** *a bald man approaching middle age* | **reach**
- PREP. **in ~** *He mellowed in middle age.*
- PHRASES **well into middle age** *She had her first child well into middle age.*

middle-aged *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look** *She felt middle-aged and dull.* | **become**
- ADV. **prematurely**

middleman *noun*

- VERB + MIDDLEMAN **act as, be** | **cut out** *Some factories have cut out the middleman and sell their products directly to customers.*
- PREP. **through a ~** *The firm sells through a middleman because it does not have its own salesforce.* **~ for** *He acts as middleman for companies seeking contracts abroad.*

midnight *noun*

- VERB + MIDNIGHT **chime, strike** *The church clock struck midnight.*
- MIDNIGHT + VERB **chime, strike** *Downstairs in the hall, midnight struck.*
- MIDNIGHT + NOUN **feast** | **blue**
- PREP. **around ~, at ~, by ~**
- PHRASES **on the stroke of midnight** *On the stroke of midnight, Prince Charming turned back into a rat.*

midwife *noun*

- ADJ. **qualified, registered** | **community, local**
- MIDWIFE + VERB **examine sb** | **deliver a baby**

⇨ Note at JOB

migraine *noun*

- ADJ. **severe**
- VERB + MIGRAINE **get, have, suffer from** | **bring on, trigger** *Even the smell of oranges can trigger his migraine.*
- MIGRAINE + NOUN **headache** | **attack**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

migrant *noun*

- ADJ. **economic** | **illegal** | **rural**
- MIGRANT + NOUN **labourer, worker** *entering the country as migrant workers* | **population** | **bird**
- PREP. **~ from** *migrants from rural areas* **~ into, ~ to** *Migrants to the city send money home to their relatives.*
- PHRASES **a flow/an influx of migrants**

migrate *verb*

- ADV. **north, northwards, etc.** *birds that migrate south in the winter* | **seasonally**
- PREP. **from, into, to** *migrating from Europe to Africa*

migration *noun*

- ADJ. **seasonal** *the seasonal migration of birds* | **internal, inward** | **international** | **mass**
- QUANT. **wave** *the great waves of migration that took Europeans to the New World*
- MIGRATION + VERB **occur** | **increase**
- MIGRATION + NOUN **path, pattern, route** *changes in the migration routes of reindeer*
- PREP. **~ from, ~ to** *migration from rural to urban areas*

mild *adj.*

1 not very cold

- VERBS **be** | **turn** *Towards the end of the week the weather turned very mild.* | **remain**
- ADV. **very** | **quite, relatively** *It's quite mild for this time of year.* | **surprisingly, unseasonably, unusually** *The late summer air was surprisingly mild.*

2 not severe or strong

- VERBS **be, seem** *The infection seems quite mild, so she should be better soon.*
- ADV. **very** | **comparatively, fairly, quite, pretty, reasonably, relatively** *a fairly mild flavour*

3 gentle and kind

- VERBS **be, sound** *His voice was deceptively mild.*
- ADV. **seemingly** | **deceptively**

mile *noun*

- ADJ. **nautical**
- VERB + MILE **cover, cycle, do, drive, go, ride, run, travel, trudge, walk** *Fell-runners who are out to win can cover the three miles in just over 15 minutes.* | **clock (up)** *Altogether on the trip we clocked up over 1 800 miles.*
- PHRASES **miles an/per hour** *The police stopped them doing 100 miles per hour on the motorway.*

⇨ Note at MEASURE

mileage *noun*

- ADJ. **annual, weekly** | **high, low** *Car for sale: one careful owner, low mileage.* | **unlimited** *Your car hire costs include unlimited mileage.*
- VERB + MILEAGE **cover, do** *There was no record of the mileage the car had done.*
- MILEAGE + NOUN **allowance** *The company gives a generous mileage allowance.*

milestone *noun*

- ADJ. **important, significant**
- VERB + MILESTONE **pass, reach** *The company passed the £6 million milestone this year.* | **celebrate, mark**
- PREP. **~ in** *The film proved to be a milestone in the history of cinema.* | **~ for** *a milestone for French technology*

militant *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *The women on the march were highly militant.* | **increasingly**

military *noun* **the military**

- VERB + MILITARY **serve in** *I wasn't surprised to learn that he'd served in the military.* | **call in** *The government called in the military to deal with the riots.*
- MILITARY + VERB **seize/take power**
- PREP. **among/in/within ~** *reports of growing discontent among the military*
- PHRASES **a member of the military**

militia *noun*

- ADJ. **armed** *a highly armed militia* | **voluntary, volunteer** | **local** | **government**
- VERB + MILITIA **join, serve in** | **raise, recruit** | **create, form, set up** *The anarchists started to form volunteer militias.* | **train** | **disarm, disband**
- MILITIA + NOUN **forces, group, unit** | **commander, leader**

milk *noun*

- ADJ. **fresh** | **curdled, off, sour** *The milk has gone off/turned sour.* | **full-cream, full-fat, whole** | **low-fat, semi-skimmed** | **non-fat, skimmed** | **creamy** | **cold, warm** | **cow's, goat's, etc.** | **breast** | **baby, formula** | **coconut, soya** | **condensed, evaporated** *a tin of condensed milk* | **dried, powdered** | **pasteurized, unpasteurized** | **homogenized** | **long-life, UHT** | **organic**
- QUANT. **litre, pint** | **bottle, carton, cup, glass, jug**
- VERB + MILK **drink, have, take** *Do you take milk in your coffee?* | **add** | **pour** | **spill** | **deliver** *They've stopped delivering milk in our area.* | **boil, heat, scald** | **produce** | **express** *She expressed some milk so her husband could do the night feeding.*
- MILK + NOUN **powder** | **pudding, shake** (also **milkshake**) | **chocolate** | **product** | **bottle, churn, jug** | **production, yield** | **float, round**
- PHRASES **the top of the milk** (= the creamy part at the top of a milk bottle)

mill *noun*

1 for making flour

- ADJ. **corn, flour | water** (also **watermill**)
- VERB + MILL **operate, work | convert, restore** *living in a converted watermill* | **drive, power** *The river was harnessed to drive many mills.*
- MILL + VERB **grind sth, work sth** *The mill can be seen grinding corn.*
- MILL + NOUN **house | wheel**

2 factory

- ADJ. **cotton, paper, steel, textile, woollen**
- VERB + MILL **operate, own, run | work in**
- MILL + VERB **manufacture sth, produce sth**
- MILL + NOUN **town** *a northern mill town* | **buildings**

mimic *verb*

- ADV. **accurately, closely** *The computer model is able to mimic very closely the actions of a golfer.* | **exactly, perfectly** *She could mimic her father perfectly.*
- VERB + MIMIC **try to**

mind *noun*

- ADJ. **human** *the complex nature of the human mind* | **conscious, subconscious, unconscious** *Our subconscious mind tries to protect us.* | **best, brilliant, finest** *a problem that has defeated the world's finest minds* | **agile, enquiring, lively | open** *Try to keep an open mind until you've heard all the facts.* | **impressionable** *influencing impressionable young minds* | **one-track** *Honestly, all you ever talk about is sex—you've got a one-track mind!*
- VERB + MIND **come into, come to, cross, flash across/into, go through, spring to** *The thought never crossed my mind!* ◇ *I'm sure someone can help you, but no one immediately springs to mind.* | **bear in, keep in** *Bear in mind the age of the vehicle when assessing its value.* ◇ *Here are some important points to keep in mind …* | **slip** *I'm sorry I forgot your birthday—it completely slipped my mind.* | **be imprinted on, stick in** *terrible images that will be imprinted on our minds for ever* | **prey on** *It's been preying on my mind ever since it happened.* | **occupy** *He occupied his mind by playing cards against himself.*
- MIND + VERB **wander** *Her mind began to wander.* | **race** *His mind raced, trying to think of a way out of the situation.* | **be in a turmoil, reel** *Her mind was still reeling from the shock.*
- PREP. **in your ~** *You've been in my mind a lot lately.* **in ~** *I'll keep what you say in mind.* **on your ~** *I've got a lot on my mind at the moment.*
- PHRASES **at/in the back of your mind** *The problem was always at the back of my mind.* **at/in the forefront of your mind** *Try to keep safety in the forefront of your mind at all times.* **a frame/state of mind** *He's in rather a negative frame of mind.* **have sth in mind** *What kind of party do you have in mind?* **in the recesses of your mind** *It was something she had never imagined, not even in the deepest recesses of her mind.* **mind and body** *refreshed in mind and body* **no doubt in your mind** *There was absolutely no doubt in my mind that he was guilty.* **uppermost in your mind** *Their own problems of course remained uppermost in their minds.*

mind *verb*

- ADV. **bitterly, terribly, very much** *They had thought the boys wouldn't mind sharing; as it turned out, they minded bitterly.* ◇ *Would you mind terribly if I went on my own?* | **not a bit, not at all** *I don't mind at all telling people my age.* | **not greatly, not much, not really** *Nobody really minded much about what happened to them.*
- VERB + MIND **not seem to** *His parents didn't seem to mind that he dropped out of university.*
- PREP. **about** *I didn't mind about the money.*

mine *noun*

1 for coal, etc.

- ADJ. **coal, copper, diamond, salt, tin, etc. | deep, drift, opencast | abandoned, disused**
- VERB + MINE **operate, run, work | go down, work at/down/in** *At 14, he went down the mines.*
- MINE + VERB **produce sth** *At its peak, the mine produced 5 000 tons of coal a day.*
- MINE + NOUN **shaft** (also **mineshaft**), **workings** *flooded mine workings* | **owner**

2 explosive device

- ADJ. **anti-personnel, land, limpet**
- VERB + MINE **lay, plant** *soldiers laying anti-personnel mines* | **clear, dispose of, remove** *The troops are slowly clearing the mines.* | **detonate, hit, set off, strike**
- MINE + VERB **blow up, explode, go off**

minefield *noun*

1 area where there are mines

- VERB + MINEFIELD **advance into/through, enter**

2 situation full of difficulties

- ADJ. **legal, political** *Suggesting changes to the benefits system would be a political minefield.*
- VERB + MINEFIELD **negotiate, pick your way through** *You will first have to pick your way through the minefield of professional advice.*
- PREP. **~ for** *Tax is a minefield for the unwary.*

miner *noun*

- ADJ. **coal, copper, gold, lead, tin, uranium, etc.**

⇨ Note at JOB

mineral *noun*

- ADJ. **essential, vital | trace | rare | industrial**
- VERB + MINERAL **be rich in, contain** *foods that are rich in essential minerals* | **extract** *to extract minerals from ores* | **absorb**
- MINERAL + VERB **be found in sth, be present in sth** *calcium and other minerals found in your bones*
- MINERAL + NOUN **deposits, resources, wealth | exploitation, exploration, extraction, working**
- PHRASES **vitamins and minerals**

mingle *verb*

- ADV. **freely** *The prince mingled freely with the crowd.* | **together** *a lot of emotions all mingled together*
- PREP. **with** *She felt fear mingled with excitement.*

minimum *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, bare, very | agreed, guaranteed | recommended | legal, mandatory, required, statutory**
- VERB + MINIMUM **keep sth to, reduce sth to** *Two fire crews managed to keep damage to a minimum.* | **reach** *The sun's temperature reached a minimum in the summer of 1981.* | **exceed | regard sth as** *A temperature of 121°C is regarded as the minimum necessary to achieve sterility.*
- PREP. **above (the) ~, at (a/the) ~** *Candidates must have a first degree at a minimum.* **below (the) ~, down to a ~** *We tried to keep costs down to a minimum.* | **~ of** *a minimum of £20* ◇ *a minimum of fuss*
- PHRASES **the minimum acceptable/necessary/needed/required, the minimum possible** *He's always done the minimum possible to pass his exams.* **with the minimum of delay/discomfort/disruption/effort/fuss/risk**

minister *noun*

1 member of the government

- ADJ. **prime | chief, principal** *Queen Elizabeth's chief minister, Lord Burghley* | **deputy | junior, senior | cabinet, departmental, EU, Foreign Office, government,**

Home Office | defence, education, environment, finance, foreign, health, interior, transport, etc. | relevant, responsible *Local authorities should submit schemes to the relevant minister for approval.* **| former, outgoing**

- VERB + MINISTER **appoint (sb), appoint sb as, nominate (sb), nominate sb as | elect (sb), elect sb as | dismiss (sb as) | serve as** *He served briefly as prime minister from 1920 to 1921.* **| lobby, persuade, urge** *lobbying the Transport Minister over the issue* **| advise, consult, instruct | accuse, criticize**
- MINISTER + VERB **resign, retire | be accountable to sb, be responsible for sth** *Ministers are accountable to Parliament.* ◇ *the minister responsible for the health service* **| announce sth, unveil sth | agree (to) sth, approve sth, decide sth, endorse sth | intervene (in sth)** *The foreign minister intervened with disastrous results.*
- PREP. **~for** *the new minister for the Arts* **~of** *A new minister of defence had been appointed.*

⇨ See PRIME MINISTER

2 priest

- ADJ. **church | Baptist, Congregational, Methodist, Nonconformist, Presbyterian**
- VERB + MINISTER **ordain (sb), ordain sb as** *He was ordained minister of a small rural congregation.*
- PHRASES **a minister of religion**

ministry *noun*

- ADJ. **government | Agriculture, Defence, Education, Environment, Finance, Foreign (Affairs), Health, Interior, Justice, Transport, etc. | key** *He assumed direct control of key ministries.*
- VERB + MINISTRY **run | take over** *The president took over the Ministry of Justice.* **| create**
- MINISTRY + VERB **approve sth, support sth** *The scheme was approved by the Ministry of Housing.* **| control sth | own sth** *on ministry-owned land*
- MINISTRY + NOUN **official, spokesperson**
- PREP. **at the ~** *staff at the Greek Foreign Ministry* **in/within the ~** *a senior man in the Ministry of Health* **| ~of** *a spokesman for the Ministry of Culture*
- PHRASES **a department at/in the ministry**

minor *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, very** *This is a very minor operation and there is very little risk involved.* **| comparatively, fairly, quite, relatively** *That's a relatively minor matter. We can leave it till later.* **| apparently, seemingly**

minority *noun*

- ADJ. **large, significant, sizeable, substantial | small, tiny | vociferous** *the view of a small but vociferous minority* **| ethnic, national, racial, religious | oppressed, persecuted**
- VERB + MINORITY **belong to | discriminate against**
- MINORITY + NOUN **opinion, view | community, group | government**
- PREP. **among a/the ~** *You are definitely among the minority.* **from a/the ~** *people from ethnic minorities* **in a/the ~** *We are in the minority on this issue.* **| ~of** *a sizeable minority of the population*
- PHRASES **only a minority** *Only a tiny minority of holidays are affected.*

minute *noun*

1 one sixtieth of an hour

- VERB + MINUTE **last, take**
- MINUTE + VERB **pass, tick by** *The minutes ticked by and still nothing happened.*
- MINUTE + NOUN **hand** *the minute hand on the clock*
- PREP. **after ... ~s** *After twenty minutes I started to get worried.* **for ... ~s** *We waited for ten minutes and then left.* **in ... ~s** *The film starts in ten minutes.* **| ~s past** *four minutes past two* **~s to** *ten minutes to three*

⇨ Note at MEASURE

2 moment

- ADJ. **last** *Don't leave everything till the last minute.*
- VERB + MINUTES **hang on, hold on, wait** *Could you wait a minute, please?* **| have, spare** *Do you have a minute, Miss Brown?* ◇ *Can you spare a minute?* **| take** *This will only take a minute.*
- PREP. **in a ~** *I'll be with you in a minute.* **within ~s** *The ship sank within minutes.*
- PHRASES **just a minute, the minute sth happens** *Tell him I want to see him the minute he arrives.* **not for a minute** *I never thought for a minute he'd refuse.* **this minute** *Come here this minute!*

3 minutes written record of what is said at a meeting

- VERB + MINUTES **keep, take** *Who's going to take the minutes?* **| circulate | read | agree, approve, sign | write up** *I wrote up the minutes of the meeting and circulated them by email.*
- PHRASES **the minutes of a meeting**

⇨ Special page at MEETING

miracle *noun*

- ADJ. **great | minor** *The letter's survival is something of a minor miracle.* **| economic**
- VERB + MIRACLE **perform, work** *Don't expect this medicine to work miracles.* **| believe in | ask for, expect, hope for, pray for | need, take** *It would take a miracle to get the old car going again.*
- MIRACLE + VERB **happen, occur**
- MIRACLE + NOUN **worker | cure**
- PREP. **by a ~** *By a miracle she escaped serious injury.*

miraculous *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **quite** *Something quite miraculous happened.* **| almost, near** *a near miraculous escape* **| apparently**
- PHRASES **little/nothing short of miraculous** *a transformation that was little short of miraculous*

mirage *noun*

- VERB + MIRAGE **see | chase** (*figurative*) *Perhaps we are all just chasing a mirage.*
- MIRAGE + VERB **vanish**

mirror *noun*

- ADJ. **bathroom, hand, shaving, wardrobe | full-length | gilt-framed, ornate | two-way** *He watched them through a two-way mirror.* **| driving, rear, rear-view, wing** *Always check your mirror before pulling out to overtake.*
- VERB + MIRROR **glance in, look in/into | admire yourself in, examine yourself in, look at yourself/your face in** *He was busy admiring himself in the wardrobe mirror.* **| sit at, stand in front of | check | catch sight of sb/sth in, see sb/sth in | fix, hang** *We hung a mirror over the fireplace.* **| break, crack**
- MIRROR + VERB **reflect sth**
- MIRROR + NOUN **image** *Art can be seen as a mirror image of society.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She stared at her face in the mirror.*

mirror *verb*

- ADV. **closely** *The trends here closely mirror those in America.* **| exactly, faithfully, perfectly | broadly**
- VERB + MIRROR **appear to, seem to**
- PHRASES **be mirrored by/in sth** *The jump in business confidence has been mirrored by the increase in employ-*

ment. **be mirrored in/on sb's face** *The shock was mirrored on her face.*

miscalculate *verb*

- ADV. **badly, seriously** *The government has seriously miscalculated the economic effect of this policy.*

miscalculation *noun*

- ADJ. **grave, serious, terrible | financial, political**
- VERB + MISCALCULATION **make**

miscarriage *noun*

- ADJ. **early | threatened | spontaneous**
- VERB + MISCARRIAGE **have, suffer | cause, induce | end in** *Her first pregnancy ended in miscarriage.*
- PHRASES **a risk of miscarriage** *Smoking during pregnancy increases the risk of miscarriage.*

mischief *noun*

- QUANT. **glint, hint** *There was a glint of mischief in her eyes.*
- VERB + MISCHIEF **cause, do, make** *Such people will do anything they can to make mischief.* **| get into/up to** *Don't get up to any mischief while we're out.* **| keep/stay out of** *Try to stay out of mischief, will you?*

misconception *noun*

- ADJ. **common, popular | basic | major**
- VERB + MISCONCEPTION **have | give rise to, lead to | break down, correct, dispel** *We hope the programme will dispel certain misconceptions about the disease.*
- MISCONCEPTION + VERB **be based on sth, stem from sth | grow up** *A number of misconceptions have grown up around this theory.*
- PREP. **~ about** *popular misconceptions about Aids*

misconduct *noun*

- ADJ. **alleged | gross, serious** *She was sacked last year for gross misconduct.* **| financial, professional, sexual**
- VERB + MISCONDUCT **dismiss sb for, sack sb for | deny** *The directors all deny financial misconduct.*
- PREP. **~ by** *allegations of misconduct by the security forces* **~ on the part of** *There was no misconduct on the part of the police.*
- PHRASES **on (the) grounds of misconduct** *Staff can lose their jobs only on grounds of professional misconduct.*

⇨ Note at CRIME (for more verbs)

miserable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look** *We got home feeling tired and miserable.* **| become**
- ADV. **bloody** (*taboo*), **damned, dead, intensely, really, very | thoroughly, utterly | pretty, quite, rather**
- PREP. **about** *feeling utterly miserable about his exams*

misery *noun*

- ADJ. **abject, deep, extreme, great, real, sheer, untold** *This phobia can cause untold misery for the sufferer.* **| complete** *Her misery was made complete when she was separated from her children.* **| personal | human | economic** *the country's economic misery*
- VERB + MISERY **be full of, be wrapped (up) in, endure, feel, live in, sink into, suffer** *He was too wrapped in misery to reply.* ◇ *I sank deeper into my misery.* ◇ *men who suffer the misery of unemployment* **| bring (sb), cause (sb), create** *The money brought him nothing but misery.* **| add to, heap, prolong** *War has now added to the misery of these starving people.* ◇ *The giant-killers heaped more misery on the home team.* **| alleviate, ease, relieve** *ways to alleviate human misery* **| put sb/sth out of** *In the end we asked the vet to put the poor creature out of its misery* (= kill it humanely). ◇ (*humorous*) *Oh, put her out of her misery—tell her who won.* **| spare sb** *At least we were spared the misery of having to do it all again.* **| forget**
- PREP. **~ of** *the sheer misery of homelessness*
- PHRASES **a feeling of misery, make sb's life a misery** *His constant criticism made her life a misery.*

misfire *verb*

- ADV. **badly** *Unfortunately their plan misfired badly.*

misfortune *noun*

- ADJ. **great | sheer**
- VERB + MISFORTUNE **be dogged by, have, suffer** *The expedition was dogged by misfortune.* ◇ *I had the misfortune to share a room with someone who snored loudly.*
- MISFORTUNE + VERB **befall sb, strike** *Misfortune struck before they had even left the harbour.*
- PHRASES **be sb's misfortune** *He is the rudest man it has ever been my misfortune to meet.*

misgivings *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, deep, grave, great, serious**
- VERB + MISGIVINGS **be filled with, harbour, have | express** *I felt I had to express my misgivings about her decision.* **| share** *She shared my misgivings about the planned weekend.* **| allay, quell**
- MISGIVINGS + VERB **be/prove unfounded, be/prove well-founded**
- PREP. **despite/in spite of sb's ~** *He agreed, despite his misgivings.* **with ~** *I viewed the process with grave misgivings.* **| ~ about** *She had serious misgivings about the whole affair, but they proved unfounded.* **~ at** *He had considerable misgivings at the prospect of moving jobs.* **~ over** *The local people still harboured considerable misgivings over the flood of workers into their village.*

misguided *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **entirely, quite, totally | rather, somewhat | fundamentally** *Their approach to the problem is fundamentally misguided.*

mishap *noun*

- ADJ. **serious | minor, slight**
- QUANT. **series** *The group suffered an extraordinary series of minor mishaps.*
- VERB + MISHAP **have, suffer** *I'm afraid your son had a slight mishap in the playground.* **| avoid, prevent**
- PREP. **without ~** *We reached home without mishap.*

misinform *verb*

- PREP. **about** *The parents had been misinformed about the incident.*
- PHRASES **be badly misinformed** *It became clear that the general had been badly misinformed.*

misinformation *noun*

- QUANT. **piece**
- VERB + MISINFORMATION **feed sb, spread** *The public have been fed misinformation about the health risks.* **| be based on**
- PREP. **~ about/on** *misinformation about Soviet policy*
- PHRASES **a campaign of misinformation**

misinterpret *verb*

- ADV. **grossly | deliberately**
- VERB + MISINTERPRET **be easy to** *It would be easy to misinterpret results from such a small sample.*

- PREP. **as** *I realized that what I'd said could be misinterpreted as criticism.*

misjudge *verb*

- ADV. **badly, seriously | completely | easily** *Quantities are easily misjudged.*

mislead *verb*

- ADV. **seriously | completely, totally | slightly | actively, deliberately** *She was accused of deliberately misleading Parliament.* **| allegedly | easily** *They were naive and easily misled.*
- VERB + MISLEAD **attempt to, try to | be liable to** *Statistics taken on their own are liable to mislead.*
- PREP. **about** *Parliament has been totally misled about this affair.* **into** *The company misled hundreds of people into investing their money unwisely.*

misleading *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be**
- ADV. **extremely, grossly, highly, positively, profoundly, seriously, very | completely, entirely, totally, wholly | a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | potentially | deliberately** *Her statement was deliberately misleading.* **| dangerously** *Some of the information was dangerously misleading.*
- PREP. **about** *The brochure was extremely misleading about the cost of the holiday.*

mismanage *verb*

- ADV. **badly, seriously** *The prison service has been badly mismanaged in recent years.*

mismanagement *noun*

- ADJ. **economic, financial | gross**
- VERB + MISMANAGEMENT **uncover** *An investigation uncovered mismanagement and a lack of proper financial controls.*
- PREP. **through ~** *The project collapsed through financial mismanagement.*

misplaced *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem**
- ADV. **entirely, quite, totally, wholly** *Her confidence in him was entirely misplaced.* **| not altogether | largely | rather | sadly** *His optimism proved sadly misplaced.*

misread *verb*

- ADV. **completely, totally** *I had completely misread his intentions.*
- PREP. **as** *I misread 'Mrs' as 'Mr'.*

misrepresent *verb*

- ADV. **grossly, seriously | completely | deliberately | easily** *Think carefully about what you say: your views could be easily misrepresented by the press.*
- PREP. **as** *Ecstasy is widely misrepresented as a soft drug.*
- PHRASES **be widely misrepresented**

miss *verb*

1 not hit/catch/reach sth
- ADV. **completely | just, narrowly** *The plane crashed, narrowly missing a hotel.*
- PREP. **by** *The bullet missed his head by only a few inches.*

2 not hear/see/understand
- ADV. **completely** *He completely missed the point of what I was saying.*
- VERB + MISS **can't** *The station is just down this road on the left. You can't miss it.*

3 feel sad because sb is not with you
- ADV. **dreadfully, a lot, really, terribly, very much** *Your father misses you dreadfully.* ◇ *I still miss her a lot.*
- PHRASES **be greatly/sadly/sorely missed** *Anne, who died on 22 July, will be sadly missed by all who knew her.*

missile *noun*

1 explosive weapon
- ADJ. **long-range, medium-range, short-range | ballistic, cruise, guided, heat-seeking | land-based | mobile | intercontinental | strategic, tactical | anti-aircraft, anti-ballistic, anti-missile, anti-tank | air-to-air, air-to-surface, surface-to-air, surface-to-surface | nuclear | conventional**
- VERB + MISSILE **be armed with, carry | aim | fire, launch | intercept, shoot down | deploy** *strategic missiles deployed in sparsely-populated desert areas*
- MISSILE + VERB **destroy sth, hit sth | miss sth** *All of the missiles missed their target.*
- MISSILE + NOUN **base, site | attack, strike | programme, system | warhead**

2 object fired or thrown
- VERB + MISSILE **be armed with, carry, hold** *a crowd of youths armed with missiles that included petrol bombs* **| hurl, pelt sb with, throw** *They pelted her with eggs and various other missiles.*
- MISSILE + VERB **hit sb/sth, strike sb/sth**

missing *adj.*

- VERBS **be | go** *a woman who went missing three months ago* **| discover sb** *It was six hours before the seamen were discovered missing.* **| list sb (as), post sb (as), report sb (as)** *A leading businessman has been reported missing from his home.*
- ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally** *The study of housework as work is a topic entirely missing from sociology.* **| sadly** *The spirit of fair play is sadly missing from the sport these days.*
- PREP. **from** *The file was missing from its place.*
- PHRASES **missing in action** *servicemen listed as missing in action* **missing, presumed dead**

mission *noun*

1 important task
- ADJ. **joint** *a joint Anglo-American mission* **| secret | dangerous | suicide | fact-finding | reconnaissance | bombing, combat, military | mercy, (search and) rescue | peacekeeping | diplomatic**
- VERB + MISSION **carry out, conduct, go on, undertake | accomplish, complete** *Our mission accomplished, we headed for home.* **| dispatch sb on, give, send sb on** *sending an aid team on a mercy mission to the earthquake zone* **| abandon, abort** (especially of military missions) *The captain instructed them to abort the mission.* **| fly (on)** (used of military planes) *He flew a total of 41 missions over Britain.*
- MISSION + VERB **end in failure, fail** *Their mission ended in failure.* **| be a success, succeed**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *He was often out of the office on various missions.*
- PHRASES **mission impossible** *Many regard his task as mission impossible.*

2 team sent to perform a task
- ADJ. **diplomatic, military, trade**
- VERB + MISSION **establish, set up | send**
- PREP. **~ to** *The US is sending a trade mission to China.*

3 space journey
- ADJ. **shuttle, space, spacecraft | manned**

- VERB + MISSION **go on, make** *He's been on several shuttle missions over the last decade.* | **abort**
- MISSION + NOUN **control** *The spacecraft lost contact with mission control.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *experiments conducted on a space mission* | **~ to** *a successful spacecraft mission to Venus*

4 special aim

- VERB + MISSION **have** *He now has a mission in life: to expand the horizons of those around him.*
- PHRASES **a man/woman with a mission** *You can tell by the determined way he talks that he is a man with a mission.* **a sense of mission** *A powerful sense of mission underpins everything he does.*

5 place where people work to help others

- ADJ. **Christian**
- VERB + MISSION **establish, found** | **run**
- MISSION + NOUN **work** | **hospital, school**

missionary *noun*

- ADJ. **foreign** | **pioneer** | **evangelical, medical** | **Baptist, Catholic, Christian, Jesuit, Protestant**
- VERB + MISSIONARY **work as** | **send (sb as)** *sending clergy as missionaries to Latin America* | **pray for**
- MISSIONARY + NOUN **work** | **zeal** *He argued the case for reorganization with missionary zeal.*
- PREP. **as a ~** *He spent 15 years as a missionary in Africa.*

mist *noun*

- ADJ. **dense, heavy, thick** *A heavy mist rolled over the fields.* | **faint, fine, light, slight, thin** | **dark, grey, red, white** *There was a red mist in front of his eyes.* | **dawn, evening, morning** *an early morning mist* | **autumn** | **sea**
- VERB + MIST **be cloaked in, be covered in, be shrouded in, be wreathed in** *The harbour was covered in a thick mist.* | **disappear into, vanish in/into** *The little town had vanished in the mist.* | **emerge from, loom out of** *A large figure loomed out of the mist.* | **break through, shine through** *Soon the sun would break through the mist.* | **peer into/through** | **be lost in** (*figurative*) *The origins of Morris dancing are lost in the mists of time.*
- MIST + VERB **hang, hover, lie** *A faint mist hung over the valley.* | **come down, descend** *When the mist comes down it comes quickly and covers everything.* | **clear, lift** *The mist had cleared by mid-morning.* | **drift, float, rise, roll, swirl** *A grey mist floated towards us.* ◇ *a swirling mist* ◇ *a thin mist rising from the river* | **cling to sth** *Early morning mist still clung to the hollows.* | **fill sth** | **cover sth, hide sth, obscure sth, shroud sth** *A white mist obscured the top of the hill.*
- PREP. **in/into the ~** *It was hard to make out the path in the mist.* **through the ~** *The cottage was scarcely visible through the mist.* | **~ over** *the mist over the lake*
- PHRASES **a curtain/veil of mist**

mistake *noun*

- ADJ. **big, great** *It is a great mistake to assume that your children will agree with you.* | **bad, dreadful, fundamental, ghastly, grave, serious, terrible** | **costly, expensive** *This dress was an expensive mistake.* | **disastrous, fatal** | **tragic** | **elementary, little, simple** *All those problems because of one little mistake!* | **common** | **genuine, honest** | **past** *The company has learned from its past mistakes.* | **stupid** | **spelling**
- VERB + MISTAKE **make** *Don't make the same mistakes as I did.* | **repeat** | **learn from** | **pay for** *Ordinary people are paying for the government's mistakes.* | **discover, realize** *Too late, she realized her mistake.* | **acknowledge, admit (to)** | **deliberate** | **correct, put right, rectify**
- MISTAKE + VERB **happen, occur** *Mistakes are bound to happen sometimes.*
- PREP. **by ~** *I picked up the wrong bag by mistake.* | **~ about** *I made a mistake about her.*
- PHRASES **all a mistake** *I kept telling myself that it was all a terrible mistake.* **an easy mistake to make** *Don't worry about it—it's an easy mistake to make!*

mistake *verb*

- ADV. **easily** *An unwary observer could easily mistake this constellation for a comet.*
- VERB + MISTAKE **can't** *You can't mistake him. He's got long ginger hair.*
- PREP. **for** *I'm sorry. I mistook you for George.*
- PHRASES **there is no mistaking sth** *There was no mistaking the admiration in his eyes.*

mistaken *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove**
- ADV. **badly, gravely, profoundly, sadly, seriously, very (much)** *You are very much mistaken if you think that people will agree to these changes.* | **completely, quite, utterly, wholly** | **somehow**
- PREP. **about** *I think you're mistaken about the time.*

mistress *noun*

- QUANT. **string** *The king kept a string of mistresses.*
- VERB + MISTRESS **have** | **take** | **keep**

mistrust *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, profound** | **growing** | **widespread** | **mutual** *trying to overcome their mutual distrust*
- VERB + MISTRUST **create, fuel** | **overcome**
- PREP. **~ between** *There is suspicion and mistrust between immigrants and the police.* **~ in** *The incident has increased workers' mistrust in the management.* **~ of** *His experience left him with a mistrust of banks.* **~ towards**
- PHRASES **an atmosphere/a climate/a sense of mistrust** *Corruption creates an climate of mistrust towards authority.*

misunderstand *verb*

- ADV. **badly** | **completely**
- PREP. **as** *My concern for their well-being was misunderstood as interference.*
- PHRASES **be often/widely misunderstood, much misunderstood** *a charming and much misunderstood man*

misunderstanding *noun*

- ADJ. **serious, terrible** | **complete, total** | **considerable, widespread** | **simple, slight** | **fundamental** | **genuine** | **possible**
- VERB + MISUNDERSTANDING **cause, give rise to, lead to** | **avoid** *I am anxious to avoid any possible misunderstanding.* | **clear up, correct**
- MISUNDERSTANDING + VERB **arise, occur, result** *Somehow a misunderstanding arose.* | **be based on sth, stem from sth**
- PREP. **~ about** *There was considerable misunderstanding about the aim of the project.* **~ between** *There must have been some misunderstanding between the minister and his secretary.* **~ by** *The oversimplification results in the possibility of misunderstanding by the reader.* **~ over** *a slight misunderstanding over the terms of the contract*
- PHRASES **a possibility/risk of misunderstanding, room/scope for misunderstanding** *Leave no scope for misunderstandings of any type.*

misuse *noun*

- ADJ. **alleged, possible** | **serious** | **alcohol, drug, substance** *alcohol misuse among teenagers* | **computer** *He was sacked for computer misuse.*
- VERB + MISUSE **prevent** | **investigate**

- PREP. **through ~** *causing pollution through misuse of pesticides*

misuse *verb*

- ADV. **grossly** *He had grossly misused his power.*
- PHRASES **widely misused** *'Marketing' is a widely misused word in the book business.*

mix *noun*

- ADJ. **good, right** *a party with just the right mix of people* | **judicious** | **curious, odd, strange** | **fascinating, interesting, intriguing** | **rich** | **heady, potent, powerful** | **eclectic** *an eclectic mix of theatrical styles* | **broad** | **cosmopolitan** | **cultural, ethnic, racial** | **marketing, product** | **cake** *a packet of cake mix* | **concrete, mortar**
- VERB + MIX **contain, have**
- MIX + VERB **vary** *The precise mix will vary.*
- PREP. **~ of** *The college has a broad mix of students.*

mix *verb*

1 combine things
- ADV. **thoroughly, well** *Mix all the ingredients together thoroughly.* | **gently** *When the rice is cooked, gently mix in all the other ingredients.* | **in, together**
- PREP. **with** *Mix yellow with blue to make green.*
- PHRASES **mix and match/pick and mix** (= combine things in different ways for different purposes) *You can mix and match courses to suit your requirements.*

2 meet people
- ADV. **easily, well** *a child who mixes well at school* | **freely** *Whites and blacks mixed freely at dance halls and clubs.* | **happily** | **socially** *They had attended university together and often mixed socially.*
- PREP. **with** *She mixed happily with the other children.*

mixed *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **decidedly, extremely, very** | **fairly, rather, somewhat** | **curiously, strangely** | **randomly** | **inextricably** *In his world-view, art and religions were inextricably mixed.* | **ethnically, racially, socially** *an ethnically mixed community*

mixture *noun*

- ADJ. **fascinating, good, interesting, intriguing** | **bizarre, curious, extraordinary, odd, peculiar, strange** | **eclectic** *an eclectic mixture of architectural styles* | **judicious** *a judicious mixture of young and experienced players* | **rich** | **chaotic, confusing** | **complex** | **explosive** | **heady, potent** *a heady mixture of desire and fire* | **cake**
- VERB + MIXTURE **be made from/of/with** *The cloth is made from a mixture of linen and cotton.* | **pour, spoon, spread, stir** *Pour the cake mixture into the tin.*
- MIXTURE + VERB **contain sth, have sth** *The mixture contains some ingredients that are difficult to find.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *He looked at me with a mixture of amazement and horror.* | **~ of** *The pond contains a mixture of goldfish and carp.*

moan *noun*

- ADJ. **faint, little, small, soft** | **deep, low**
- VERB + MOAN **give, let out, make** | **hear**
- MOAN + VERB **escape sb** *A low moan of despair escaped her as she realized what had gone wrong.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *He staggered about ten yards and fell down with a moan.* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **a moan of pleasure/despair, the moan of the wind**

⇨ Note at SOUND

moan *verb*

1 make a low sound of pain/pleasure
- ADV. **loudly** | **quietly, softly**
- PREP. **in** *He moaned in despair.* **with** *She was still conscious and was moaning loudly with pain.*

2 complain
- ADV. **on** *They kept moaning on about their illnesses.*
- PREP. **about** *What are you moaning about now?* **at** *My parents moan at me if I'm home late.* **to** *She's always moaning to me that she hasn't got enough money.*
- PHRASES **moan and groan** *The unwilling children climbed into the bus, moaning and groaning.*

mob *noun*

- ADJ. **angry, hostile, unruly** | **lynch**
- VERB + MOB **break up, disperse**
- MOB + VERB **attack sb/sth, set upon sb, surround sb/sth** | **chant (sth), shout (sth)** *a mob of chanting fans*
- MOB + NOUN **rule** *the lawless days of mob rule and anarchy* | **violence**

mobile *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become, get** *Babies start to get mobile around the age of eight months.* | **remain**
- ADV. **exceptionally, extraordinarily, freely, highly, very** | **fully** *The barbecue is fully mobile.* | **increasingly** | **fairly, quite, relatively** *She remained fairly mobile despite her disabilities.* | **geographically, socially** *a geographically mobile population* | **downwardly, upwardly** *downwardly mobile members of society* | **internationally** *internationally mobile investment*

mobility *noun*

- ADJ. **limited** | **full** | **greater, increased** | **downward, upward** | **personal** | **social** *Education was the key to upward social mobility.* | **career, job, labour, occupational** | **geographical**
- VERB + MOBILITY **have** *She has limited mobility in her arms.*
- PHRASES **mobility of labour** *The difference in regional house prices acts as an obstacle to mobility of labour.*

mobilize *verb*

- ADV. **effectively, successfully**
- PREP. **against** *They successfully mobilized public opinion against him.*

mock *verb*

- ADV. **bitterly, ruthlessly, scornfully** | **gently, softly** *'Too scary for you?' he mocked softly.* | **subtly** *The play subtly mocks the conventions of courtly love.*
- PREP. **at** *He mocked at her hopes of stardom.* **for** *mocking him for his failure* **with** *She mocked him with her smile.*
- PHRASES **faintly/slightly mocking** *a faintly mocking smile*

mode *noun*

- ADJ. **normal, traditional, usual** | **effective**
- VERB + MODE **use** *Try using some other mode of organization.* | **change, switch to** *He had no intention of changing his mode of attire.* ◇ *Switch from 'receive' mode to 'transmit' mode.*
- PREP. **in … ~** *The machine is in its 'suspend' mode.* | **~ of** *Their main mode of subsistence is hunting.*
- PHRASES **a mode of address, a mode of communication/expression, a mode of transport**

model *noun*

1 copy of sth
- ADJ. **full-scale, scale | three-dimensional | detailed | working | clay, plastic, wooden, etc.**
- VERB + MODEL **assemble** (used of models that you buy in a lot of parts), **build, construct, make**
- MODEL + NOUN **aeroplane, car**
- PREP. **~ of** *She made a fantastic clay model of her dog.*

2 type of product
- ADJ. **de luxe, popular, standard | latest, new**
- VERB + MODEL **do, make, produce** *They do several other models of washing machine.* | **sell | design, develop | recall** *They're recalling their new model for modifications to the engine.*

3 example
- ADJ. **excellent, good | conceptual, experimental, statistical, theoretical | clinical, economic, mathematical, medical, political, scientific | computer**
- VERB + MODEL **give sb, provide (sb with)** *The tape provides a model for students to copy* | **copy | use**
- PREP. **~ of** *She was a model of restraint.* | **~ for** *Successful state schools must be used as models for the rest.*

4 for clothes
- ADJ. **female, male | top | catwalk, fashion**
- VERB + MODEL **photograph, shoot**

⇨ Note at JOB

5 for painting, etc.
- ADJ. **artist's, photographic**
- MODEL + VERB **sit for sb/sth** *The model sits for me for three hours every day.*

model *verb*
- ADV. **closely | explicitly**
- PREP. **on/upon** *This system is closely modelled upon one used in French hospitals.*

modem *noun*
- ADJ. **data, facsimile, fax | external, internal | fast**
- VERB + MODEM **connect, plug in | drive**
- MODEM + NOUN **link** *Data is transmitted via a modem link to the central office.*
- PREP. **via (a/the) ~** *You can send the files to us on disk or via modem.*

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

moderate *adj.*
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very | fairly, quite, relatively** *a fairly moderate increase in the rate of inflation* | **surprisingly | politically**

moderation *noun*
- ADJ. **great**
- VERB + MODERATION **call for** *The government called for greater moderation on the part of the unions.* | **show**
- MODERATION + VERB **be the key to sth** *Moderation is the key to good health.*
- PREP. **in ~** *Drinking alcohol is all right in moderation.* **with ~** *Always act with moderation.*

modest *adj.*

1 not having a high opinion of your own abilities
- VERBS **be, look, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, very | quite | genuinely | falsely** *She would be falsely modest not to acknowledge that she had come a very long way since those early days.*
- PREP. **about** *He is modest about his achievements.*

2 not very large, expensive, important, etc.
- VERBS **be, seem** *Our requirements seem fairly modest.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively | apparently | admittedly** *He is looking to improve on his admittedly modest achievements so far.* | **surprisingly**

modesty *noun*
- ADJ. **characteristic, natural, typical | false | becoming** *She accepted their congratulations with becoming modesty.*
- VERB + MODESTY **display, show**
- MODESTY + VERB **forbid sb** *Modesty forbade me from mentioning that my novel had been published.*
- PREP. **with ~** *She spoke with characteristic modesty.* | **~ about** *his modesty about his achievements*

modification *noun*
- ADJ. **considerable, extensive, major | minor, slight | further | important, necessary, significant**
- VERB + MODIFICATION **involve, need, require** *The design requires considerable modification.* | **propose, suggest | carry out, introduce, make | receive, undergo** *The original plan had undergone fairly extensive modifications.*
- PREP. **with/without ~** *These bikes are designed for racing and cannot be used on the road without modification.* **~ in** *a modification in smoking behaviour among older men* **~ to** *We need to make a few modifications to the proposals.*

modify *verb*
- ADV. **considerably, drastically, greatly, heavily, profoundly, radically, significantly, substantially** *The original text has been modified so radically that it is barely recognizable.* | **a little, partially, partly, slightly, somewhat | gradually | constantly | specially | appropriately, suitably | accordingly | chemically, genetically** *genetically modified organisms*
- VERB + MODIFY **have to, need to** *You may need to modify your plans a little.*
- PHRASES **highly modified, in a modified form** *These ideas are still used today, though in a slightly modified form.* **a modified version** *using a highly modified version of the program*

module *noun*
- ADJ. **individual | compulsory, optional**
- VERB + MODULE **do, study** *I'm doing two optional modules.* | **complete | divide sth into** *The course material is divided into four modules.*

moist *adj.*
- VERBS **be, feel, look** *Her skin felt moist and feverish.* | **become, grow** *Beth's dark eyes grew moist as she kissed her son.* | **remain | keep sth** *Keep the atmosphere in your greenhouse slightly moist throughout the spring.*
- ADV. **very | reasonably, slightly**
- PREP. **with** *His fingers were becoming moist with sweat.*

moisture *noun*
- ADJ. **excess | earth, soil | body**
- QUANT. **bead, drop, droplet**
- VERB + MOISTURE **absorb, draw (in/up)** *Wind is caused by the sun drawing up moisture from the earth.* | **conserve, hold (in), retain | lose**
- MOISTURE + VERB **get in, penetrate sth** *Tiles stop moisture penetrating your walls.* | **evaporate**
- MOISTURE + NOUN **loss | content**
- PREP. **~ in** *the moisture in the soil*

mole *noun*

1 animal

- MOLE + VERB **dig, burrow, tunnel**

2 person

- VERB + MOLE **plant** *They suspected that a mole had been planted in the organization.*

3 mark on the skin

- ADJ. **hairy**
- VERB + MOLE **remove**

molecule *noun*

- ADJ. **complex | simple | stable | CO_2, DNA, hydrogen, water, etc.**
- VERB + MOLECULE **form**
- MOLECULE + VERB **combine | be composed of sth, contain sth**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the number of atoms in a molecule* | **~ in** *the molecules in the crystal*

moment *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, fleeting | long | precious, quiet** *making the most of those last precious moments together* | **anxious, awful, awkward, embarrassing, heart-stopping, terrifying** *For one heart-stopping moment, we thought she was going to fall.* | **bad, difficult** *That was a bad moment in my life.* | **spare** *Could you look through this report when you have a spare moment?* | **exact, precise, very** *I felt at home here from the very moment I arrived.* | **good, opportune, perfect, right** *I don't think this is the right moment to ask for a pay rise.* | **critical, crucial, decisive, important, key** *We have reached a critical moment in the negotiations.* | **historic | climactic, dramatic | magic/magical, marvellous, memorable | emotional, poignant | finest, great, happiest, proudest** *Her finest moment came when she won Wimbledon.* | **unguarded** *She let the news slip by mistake, in an unguarded moment.* | **last (possible)** *Why do you leave it until the last possible moment before getting ready to leave?*
- VERB + MOMENT **last, take** *The feeling only lasted a moment.* ◇ *This won't take a moment.* | **spend** *I spent a few moments thinking what I was going to say.* | **give sb, spare (sb)** *I can only spare you a moment, I'm afraid—I'm terribly busy.* | **enjoy, savour** *Victory was sweet, and he wanted to savour every moment.* | **choose, pick** *He's in a bad mood today—you need to choose your moment carefully.* | **capture** *I managed to capture the moment on film.*
- MOMENT + VERB **arrive, come** *The moment had finally come to make a move.* | **pass** *He opened his mouth to say he loved her, but the moment passed.*
- PREP. **after a/the ~** *After a moment we followed him.* **at a/the ~** *At that very moment the telephone rang.* ◇ *He might wake up at any moment.* **for a/the ~** *She paused for a moment.* **from a/the ~** *I loved her from the first moment I met her.* **in a/the ~** *I'll be back in a moment.* ◇ *in her rare moments of leisure* | **~ in** *a great moment in the country's history* **~ of** *at the moment of death* ◇ *It was the proudest moment of my entire life.* ◇ *There was a moment of silence.*
- PHRASES **a few moments** *Could you wait a few moments?* **a moment ago** *He was here just a moment ago.* **a moment later** *A moment later, the ceiling fell in.* **a moment longer/more** *I couldn't stand it a moment longer.* **a moment or two** *I stood there for a moment or two.* **never a dull moment** *There's never a dull moment in this job.*

momentum *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great, irresistible | initial | fresh** *She gave fresh momentum to the campaign.*
- VERB + MOMENTUM **have** *The campaign for change now has considerable momentum.* | **build up, gain, gather, increase** *The car gathered momentum as it rolled down the hill.* | **create, give sth, provide | keep up, maintain, sustain | lose** *The team has lost momentum in recent weeks.* | **slow**
- MOMENTUM + VERB **build up, increase | go** *Their momentum has gone, and they feel they cannot fight any longer.*
- PREP. **~ for** *keeping up the momentum for growth* **~ towards** *the irresistible momentum towards reunification of the two countries*
- PHRASES **keep the momentum going** *We have to keep the momentum of our sales operation going.*

monarch *noun*

- ADJ. **reigning | absolute | constitutional**
- MONARCH + VERB **reign, rule**
- PHRASES **the power of the monarch** *a new law which limited the power of the monarch*

monarchy *noun*

- ADJ. **strong, weak | absolute | constitutional | elective, hereditary**
- VERB + MONARCHY **establish, set up | have** *The country still has a strong monarchy.* | **abolish** *the arguments for abolishing the monarchy* | **overthrow** *rebels trying to overthrow the absolute monarchy* | **restore**

monastery *noun*

- ADJ. **great** *the great monstery of St-Quentin* | **medieval, old | ruined | Benedictine, Dominican, etc. | Buddhist**
- VERB + MONASTERY **enter, go into** (= become a monk) *He entered a monastery as a young man.* | **found** *The monastery was founded in 1665.*
- MONASTERY + NOUN **building, church**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *You can stay at the monastery.* **in a/the ~** *He lived in a monastery for most of his life.*

Monday *noun*

⇨ Note at DAY

money *noun*

- ADJ. **big** *There is big money in golf for the top players.* | **easy** *He started stealing as a way of making easy money.* | **government, public, taxpayers'** *Is this a good way to spend taxpayers' money?* | **private | pocket, spending** *Did your parents give you pocket money when you were little?* ◇ *I don't know how much spending money to take on holiday.* | **prize | sponsorship | paper** *The collection box was full of coins and paper money.* | **counterfeit**
- QUANT. **amount, sum** *the large sums of money we handle in this store*
- VERB + MONEY **have** *I haven't got any money left.* | **borrow, bring in, collect, earn, get, make, raise, receive** *He hoped the scheme would bring in quite a bit of money.* ◇ *Some people were in the street collecting money for charity.* ◇ *How much money did he earn last year?* ◇ *I'll have to get some more money from somewhere.* | **bank, deposit, pay in** *small shopkeepers banking their money at the end of the day* ◇ *I need to pay this money in today.* | **draw out, get out, take out, withdraw | fritter away, lose, run out of, spend, squander, throw away, waste** *She lost a lot of money at the casino.* ◇ *We ran out of money and had to come home early.* ◇ *He squandered his money on gambling and drink.* | **hoard, save, set aside, stash away** *an old miser who hoarded his money* ◇ *We're trying to set some money aside for a new car.* ◇ *She stashed the money away in the bank.* | **invest, tie up** *They sensibly invested their prize money rather than spending it.* ◇ *All their money was tied up in long-term investments.* | **donate, give sb, lend sb, pay (sb), provide (sb with), put up** *Half the money raised was donated to charity.* ◇ *He managed to persuade his friend to put up the money for the venture.* | **give (sb)**

back, pay (sb) back, refund (sb), repay (sb) *I'll pay the money back next week, I promise.* ◇ *The shop was unwilling to refund my money.* | **owe (sb)** *They owe lots of people money.* | **accept, take** *I don't think they'll accept French money on the plane.* ◇ *The bookmaker was quite happy to take his money.* | **cost** *These cars cost quite a lot of money.* | **be worth** *That painting is worth a lot of money.* | **change, exchange** *We changed our money into dollars at the airport.* | **allocate** *The quality of public health care depends on the amount of money allocated to it.* | **launder** *He was charged with laundering money.*

• MONEY + VERB **come from sth** *Money for the extension to the gallery came from the sale of old exhibits.* | **go (on sth), go to** *I don't know where all the money goes!* ◇ *All his money went on drink.* ◇ *Most of the money went to pay for the food and drink.* | **come in** *She had two children to support and no money coming in.*

• MONEY + NOUN **management** | **problems** | **laundering** | **market** *He made a fortune dealing on the money markets.* | **box**

• PREP. **for ~** *He'll do anything for money!* | **~ for** *Where's the money for the milk?*

• PHRASES **get money off sth** *You might get some money off the price if it's an old model.* **get your money's worth** *The boat trip lasts three hours, so you certainly get your money's worth.* **pay/put money in/into the bank** *I pay my money into the bank as soon as I get paid.* **put money on sth** *He stopped at the betting shop to put money on a horse.* **put/sink money into sth** *He sank most of his money into his struggling business.* **take money off sth** *He felt sorry for her and took some money off her bill.* **throw money at sth** *They tend to throw money at problems without trying to work out the best solution.* **throw your money around** *He thinks he can make friends by throwing his money around.*

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

monitor *noun*

1 television/computer screen

• ADJ. **colour** | **CCTV, computer, television/TV, video**

• PREP. **on a/the ~** *The security staff can see all the outside of the building on their CCTV monitors.*

2 machine that records/checks sth

• ADJ. **foetal, heart, oxygen, pulse, radiation**

• MONITOR + VERB **detect sth** | **show sth** *The heart monitor shows the strength of your pulse.*

3 sb who checks sth is done fairly/properly

• ADJ. **EU, UN** *UN monitors declared the referendum fair.* | **school** | **health, peace**

monitor *verb*

• ADV. **carefully, closely, rigorously, strictly** *Television advertising is strictly monitored.* | **regularly, routinely, systematically** | **constantly, continuously** | **effectively, properly** | **automatically**

• VERB + MONITOR **be able to** *We will now be able to monitor its progress more closely.* | **continue to** *The authorities will continue to monitor the situation.*

• PREP. **for** *The workers are constantly monitored for exposure to radiation.*

monitoring *noun*

• ADJ. **careful, close, systematic** | **frequent, regular** | **long-term, ongoing** | **constant, continuous** | **routine** *The problem was discovered during routine monitoring.* | **independent** | **environmental**

• VERB + MONITORING **need, require** *It is a problem that requires constant monitoring.*

• MONITORING + NOUN **agency, body, committee, group, network, organization, team, unit** *a UN monitoring team* | **device, equipment** | **procedure, process, system** | **programme** | **visit**

monk *noun*

• ADJ. **Buddhist, Christian** | **Benedictine, Dominican, etc.** | **novice**

monkey *noun*

• QUANT. **horde, troop**

• MONKEY + VERB **chatter** | **hang, swing** *monkeys swinging from branch to branch*

monologue *noun*

• ADJ. **long, rambling** | **short** | **comic, dramatic**

• VERB + MONOLOGUE **deliver, do, go into, launch into, recite** *She delivered her monologue in a deadpan voice.* ◇ *an entertainer who does comic monologues*

• PREP. **~ about** *She launched into a long monologue about how wonderful the company was.* **~ on** *He went straight into a rambling monologue on the state of the country.*

monopoly *noun*

1 control by one company

• ADJ. **effective, near, virtual** | **absolute, total** | **government, state** | **domestic, local, national**

• VERB + MONOPOLY **enjoy, exercise, have, hold** *The company has a virtual monopoly in world markets.* | **create, establish, gain, get, secure, set up** | **keep, maintain, preserve, retain** | **lose** | **give sb, grant sb, guarantee sb** *This Act of Parliament guaranteed solicitors a monopoly on particular legal services.* | **challenge** *companies who are challenging the state monopolies* | **break (up), end** *attempts to break the company's monopoly of the sugar industry*

• MONOPOLY + NOUN **position** *The company was able to exploit its monopoly position.*

• PREP. **~ in** *creating a monopoly in the export of wool* **~ of** *One company holds a monopoly of the raw materials.* **~ on** *The company lost its monopoly on exporting beer to India.* **~ over** *maintaining their monopoly over local bus services*

2 organization

• ADJ. **giant, huge, powerful** | **public, state, state-controlled, state-owned** *the privatization of state-owned monopolies such as the gas and electricity industries* | **private** | **statutory**

monsoon *noun*

• ADJ. **east, west, etc.**

• MONSOON + VERB **set in** *The south-west monsoon sets in during April.*

• MONSOON + NOUN **rains, season**

• PREP. **during a/the ~** *Travelling is much more difficult during the monsoon.*

monster *noun*

• ADJ. **big, huge, large** | **ugly** | **bug-eyed, hairy, scaly** *cheap sci-fi films with bug-eyed monsters* | **evil** | **alien, mythical, prehistoric** | **sea** | **sex** *The tabloid papers labelled him 'an evil sex monster'.* | **Frankenstein's** *Bad organizations are self-created Frankenstein's monsters, beyond the control or influence of their leaders.*

• VERB + MONSTER **create** (*often figurative*) *The government has created a bureaucratic monster.* | **fight** (*often figurative*) *I wanted to fight these monsters: I didn't want to go on living with them.* | **be inhabited by** *a barren wilderness inhabited by monsters*

• MONSTER + VERB **devour sb/sth**

NOTE

Months

the month of ~
The bus service will be offered free of charge to residents for the month of August.
last, next, that, this ~
the/this coming ~
the following/previous ~
She'll be 40 this coming September.
(of) last/next/that/this year
(of) the/this coming year
(of) the following/previous/same year
The construction work began in May of last year.
early, late, mid-~
The strike began in late March.
the beginning, end, middle of ~
I'm going on holiday at the end of April.
first/latter/second half of ~
The first half of January was marked by intense diplomatic activity.
the period ~
Throughout the period November to February flocks of 500 or more are regularly present.

the months/weeks/year to ~
In the year to June, sales were up 12% on a year ago.
spend ~
He spent August abroad.
~ arrive, come (*written*)
November came with especially nasty fog.
~ pass (into ~) (*written*)
January passed into February with the crime still a mystery.
a ~ day/morning/night, etc.
a misty December morning
~ ('s) edition/issue
His article will appear in May's issue of the magazine.
~ sales
I picked up lots of bargains in the January sales.
~ coup, demonstration, election, meeting, referendum, revolution, riot, summit, etc.
The party is to boycott the June elections.
about, around ~
We will write to you again around August.
after, before ~
We expect to take delivery some time after June.

between ~ and ~
The hotel is closed between October and April.
by ~
The refurbishment should be completed by December.
come ~
It's back to school for him come September (= when September comes).
during ~
The museum attracted 2 000 visitors during March.
for ~
The congress is planned for February 2003.
from ~
The exhibition is open from March to November.
in ~
We're getting married in April.
since ~
She has played only four games since November.
throughout ~
The freezing weather continued throughout January.
(up) to, until ~
The show runs until the end of October.

month *noun*

• ADJ. **last, past** *The past few months have been hectic.* | **preceding, previous, recent** | **current** | **coming, following, next, future** *Winning stories will be published in the magazine in future months.* | **consecutive, successive** | **alternate** | **intervening** *To occupy the intervening months she took a temporary job.* | **early, later** *the early months of 2003* | **cold, dry, hot, wet** | **autumn, spring, summer, winter** *hot summer months* | **lunar** | **calendar** | **record** *This has been a record month for sales.*

• VERB + MONTH **spend** *He spent about a month decorating the house.* | **take** *It took months to find another job.*

• MONTH + VERB **elapse, go by, pass**

• PREP. **by the ~** *paid by the month* **during/in a/the ~ of** *The festival is always held in the month of May.* **for a ~** *It hasn't rained for months.* **in a ~** *We're getting married in a month/in a month's time.* **over/under a ~** *I've been working on the illustration for over a month.* **per ~** *What does the salary work out as per month?* | **~ of** *The months of July and August are the hottest.*

• PHRASES **a time of the month** *Our money's usually running low by this time of the month.*

monument *noun*

• ADJ. **ancient, historic** | **national, public** | **great** | **famous** | **fitting** *The new boat is a fitting monument to the crew members who lost their lives.* | **lasting** *The museum was built as a lasting monument to the civil war.*

• VERB + MONUMENT **stand as** *The tower stands as a monument to the invasion of the island.* | **commission** *A monument has been commissioned in his memory.* | **build, erect, put up, set up** | **unveil** | **conserve, preserve, protect** *the best preserved Roman monument in Britain* | **destroy, pull down** *Monuments to the former leader were all pulled down.*

• MONUMENT + VERB **be, stand** *The monument will stand just inside the cathedral.* | **survive** *Some of the town's Roman monuments still survive.*

• PREP. **as a ~** | **~ of** *monuments of the army's past campaigns* **~ to** *The statue was built as a monument to victims of the war.*

mood *noun*

• ADJ. **amiable, cheerful, good, happy, jolly, jovial** *She was not in the best of moods.* | **exultant, jubilant** | **bullish, buoyant, confident, optimistic** *She was in a bullish mood about the future of the company.* | **bad, black, filthy, foul, rotten, terrible** | **pessimistic** | **gloomy, melancholy, sombre** | **contemplative, introspective, pensive, reflective, serious, sober, thoughtful** | **expansive, talkative** | **mellow, relaxed** | **restless** | **changeable, changing** *I can't keep up with his constantly changing moods.* | **defiant** *The sacked workers were in defiant mood as they entered the tribunal.* | **generous** | **funny, strange** *He's in a funny mood today—who knows how he'll react?* | **playful** | **festive** *It was Christmas and everyone was in festive mood.* | **national, popular, public** *a prime minister who can gauge the popular mood*

• VERB + MOOD **be in** *Don't talk to Miranda today—she's in a terrible mood!* | **get sb in, put sb in** *The music helped to put them in a more relaxed mood.* | **create, evoke** | **affect** | **match, reflect, suit** *Choose colours to match your mood.* ◇ *The weather seemed to reflect his sombre mood.* | **capture** *a film that captured the mood of the moment* | **gauge**

• MOOD + VERB **change** | **darken** | **improve, lift, lighten** *His mood lifted as he concentrated on his driving.*

• MOOD + NOUN **swing** *After the accident he suffered violent mood swings.*

• PHRASES **be in no mood for sth** *I tried to make him laugh, but he was in no mood for jokes.* **a change of mood** *Instantly he felt her change of mood.*

moon *noun*

- ADJ. **bright** *A bright moon shone high overhead.* | **crescent, full, half, new**
- VERB + MOON **cover, hide** *A large black cloud covered the moon.* | **fly to, go to, land on**
- MOON + VERB **appear, come out, rise** | **shine** | **set** *The moon had almost set and the night was now dark.* | **wane, wax** | **orbit sth**
- PREP. **on the ~** *the first man to walk on the moon* **under a/the ~** *The road shone frostily under the full moon.*
- PHRASES **the light of the moon** *They had to work by the light of the moon.* **the surface of the moon**

moonlight *noun*

- ADJ. **bright, clear** | **faint, pale**
- QUANT. **shaft** *a single shaft of moonlight*
- VERB + MOONLIGHT **be bathed in, gleam in, glint in, shine in** *The fields were bathed in bright moonlight that night.* ◇ *His helmet glinted in the moonlight.*
- MOONLIGHT + VERB **filter, shine, stream** *the faint moonlight filtering through the stained glass windows*
- PREP. **by ~** *The castle looks fantastic by moonlight.* **in the ~** *The leaves were silver in the moonlight.*

moor *noun*

- ADJ. **barren, bleak, desolate, open, wild, windswept**
- PREP. **across the ~** *the wind blowing across the moors* **down from the ~** *the slopes leading down from the moor* **on the ~** *We got lost on the moors.* **over the ~** *Don't walk over the moors in bad weather.*
- PHRASES **the edge of the moor**

mooring *noun*

- VERB + MOORING **be torn from, break/come loose from, slip** *During the storm several of our boats were torn from their moorings.* ◇ *The crowds cheered as the great ship slipped her moorings and slid out into the Atlantic.*
- MOORING + NOUN **post, rope**

moral *noun*

1 practical lesson

- ADJ. **clear**
- VERB + MORAL **draw** *There are clear morals to be drawn from the failure of these companies.*
- PREP. **~ to** *There is a clear moral to all this.*

2 morals principles

- ADJ. **good, strict** | **doubtful, loose** *Women who went to pubs alone would sometimes be assumed to have loose morals.* | **sexual** | **public** | **Christian**
- VERB + MORALS **have** *He has absolutely no morals, that man!* | **instil** *She had tried her best to instil morals into her daughters.* | **protect** | **corrupt**
- PHRASES **a decline in morals**

morale *noun*

- ADJ. **good, high** *Morale is very high in the school.* | **low, poor, shaky** | **national, popular** | **staff**
- VERB + MORALE **affect, be bad for, be damaging to, damage, hit, lower, sap, undermine** *These unfortunate incidents sapped both our morale and our resources.* | **be good for, bolster, boost, do wonders for, improve, lift, raise, restore** *measures designed to boost the morale of the police* | **keep up, maintain** *The bonus helped maintain morale among the staff.* | **destroy**
- MORALE + VERB **improve, rise** | **be at rock bottom, decline, sag, weaken**
- MORALE + NOUN **booster** *Mail from home is a great morale booster for our soldiers.*
- PREP. **~ among** *Morale among nurses is at rock bottom.*
- PHRASES **a collapse/loss of morale**

morality *noun*

- ADJ. **conventional, traditional** | **personal, private** | **public, social** | **political** | **sexual** | **Christian**
- VERB + MORALITY **preserve, protect, strengthen** *efforts to strengthen traditional morality*
- PHRASES **standards of morality** *She criticized politicians' standards of personal morality.*

moratorium *noun*

- ADJ. **six-month, etc.**
- VERB + MORATORIUM **impose, place** | **call for** | **announce, declare**
- PREP. **~ on/upon** *The government has called for a moratorium on weapons testing.*

morning *noun*

- ADJ. **this, tomorrow, yesterday** | **Friday, Saturday, etc.** | **early, late** *The side of the mountain appeared pink in the early morning light.* | **April, May, etc.** | **spring, summer, etc.** | **beautiful, bright, fine, sunny** | **cold, frosty, grey**
- VERB + MORNING **spend** *I spent the morning doing some sightseeing.*
- MORNING + VERB **dawn** *The morning dawned bright and sunny.* | **progress, wear on** *As the morning wore on she became more and more tired.*
- MORNING + NOUN **coffee, tea** | **prayer, service** | **rush hour, train** | **newspaper, paper** | **sickness**
- PREP. **by ~, during the ~, in the ~, on Monday, etc. ~, towards ~** *Towards morning the snow turned to rain.*
- PHRASES **first thing in the morning** *I'll see to it first thing in the morning.* **from morning till night, good morning** *He didn't even say 'Good morning'.* **morning, noon and night** *It's all she talks about, morning, noon and night* (= all the time). **the rest of the morning**

morsel *noun*

- ADJ. **choice, juicy, tasty** (*often figurative*) *a juicy morsel of gossip* | **tiny**
- VERB + MORSEL **eat** *I couldn't eat another morsel.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a few tiny morsels of bread*

mortal *noun*

- ADJ. **lesser, mere, ordinary** *I just assumed you were a mere mortal like the rest of us.* ◇ *a holiday resort that caters for royalty as well as for ordinary mortals*

mortality *noun*

- ADJ. **high** *Poor hygiene led to high mortality among children.* | **adult, child, infant**
- VERB + MORTALITY **reduce** *measures that should reduce infant mortality*
- MORTALITY + VERB **increase** | **decrease, fall**
- MORTALITY + NOUN **rate**
- PREP. **~ among** *Mortality among immigrant groups was higher than average.* **~ from** *a lower annual mortality from cancer*
- PHRASES **a change/a decline/an increase in mortality**

mortar *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy** *They could not move their heavy mortars over the swampy ground.*
- VERB + MORTAR **be armed with, have** *Their troops were armed with mortars and machine guns.* | **fire**
- MORTAR + VERB **burst, explode** *The occasional mortar burst near our truck.* | **hit sth**
- MORTAR + NOUN **attack, fire** *We were under constant mortar fire.* | **bomb, shell** *hit by a mortar shell*

mortgage *noun*

- ADJ. **big, huge** | **small** | **cheap** *Banks often offer their employees cheap mortgages.* | **endowment, fixed-rate, repayment**
- VERB + MORTGAGE **have** *We've got a big mortgage.* | **get, raise** (*formal*), **take out** *They were having trouble getting a mortgage.* ◇ *We'll have to take out a second mortgage to pay for this holiday!* | **pay, pay off, redeem, repay** *He didn't earn enough to support his family and pay the mortgage.* ◇ *There are penalties if you want to redeem your mortgage early.* | **be in arrears with, fall behind with, get behind with** *They were in arrears with their mortgage, so their home was repossessed.*
- MORTGAGE + NOUN **(interest) payment, repayment** *They were struggling to keep up with their mortgage repayments.* | **rate** *a rise in mortgage rates* | **lender**
- PREP. **~ of** *a mortgage of £80 000* **~ on** *I couldn't get a mortgage on the property.*

mosquito *noun*

- QUANT. **swarm**
- VERB + MOSQUITO **swat** *He swatted the mosquito with a newspaper.*
- MOSQUITO + VERB **fly** | **buzz, hum, whine** | **bite** | **carry sth, spread sth** *This strain of mosquito carries malaria and yellow fever.*
- MOSQUITO + NOUN **bite** *I was awake all night scratching my mosquito bites.* | **larva** *fish that feed on mosquito larvae* | **net/netting** | **repellent**
- PHRASES **a strain of mosquito**

motel *noun*

- VERB + MOTEL **check into/out of** | **stay at/in**
- PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *We spent a night at a motel on the way.*

mother *noun*

- ADJ. **lone, single, unmarried** *She felt proud that she had raised four children as a lone mother.* | **widowed** | **biological, birth, natural, real** | **surrogate** (= bearing a child for sb else) | **adoptive, foster, step-** (also **step-mother**) | **teenage, young** | **elderly, old** | **dead, deceased, late** | **good, excellent, loving, wonderful** | **proud** *the proud mother of the bride* | **doting, over-protective, possessive** | **stern, strict** | **dominant, domineering** | **bad, unfit** *The court decided she was an unfit mother.* | **anxious, distraught, frantic** *Her distraught mother had spent all night waiting by the phone.* | **expectant, pregnant** (also **mother-to-be** (*informal*)) | **first-time** | **new** | **full-time** | **breast-feeding** | **sick** *caring for his sick mother* | **working**
- VERB + MOTHER **resemble, take after** *The two boys were like their father in character, but Louise took after her mother.* | **inherit sth from** *She inherited the urge to travel from her mother.*

motif *noun*

- ADJ. **central, dominant** *Alienation is a central motif in her novels.* | **recurring** | **simple** *The rug was decorated with a simple flower motif.* | **decorative** | **fish, flower, etc.** *The jacket has a rose motif on the collar.*
- VERB + MOTIF **be decorated with, have**

motion *noun*

1 movement

- ADJ. **steady** | **circular, rolling, swaying** | **perpetual** *the search for the secret of perpetual motion*
- VERB + MOTION **feel** *She could feel the rolling motion of the ship under her feet.* | **make** *He made little flapping motions with his arms.*
- PREP. **into ~** *The insects are stirred into motion by the heat of the sun.* **in ~** *Do not open the door when the train is in motion.*

2 suggestion

- VERB + MOTION **propose, put, put forward, table** *The motion was put to the conference and fully debated.* ◇ *The Opposition tabled a motion calling for the prime minister's resignation.* | **debate, discuss** *The motion will be debated later today.* | **vote on** | **be in favour of, speak in favour of, support, vote for** | **accept, adopt, approve, carry, pass** *The motion was passed by 165 votes to 78.* | **be against, speak against, oppose, vote against** | **defeat, reject** *The motion was defeated by 51 votes to 43.*
- PHRASES **a motion of no confidence** *He proposed a motion of no confidence in the government.*

motionless *adj.*

- VERBS **be, crouch, hang, kneel, lie, remain, sit, stand, stay, wait** *The flag hung motionless on its pole.*
- ADV. **absolutely, perfectly, quite** | **almost, virtually** | **apparently**

motivated *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem** | **become** | **get sb** | **keep sb**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, strongly, very, well** *a highly motivated group of workers* | **poorly** | **ideologically, politically, racially** *The attack was racially motivated.*

motivation *noun*

- ADJ. **main, primary** | **real** | **underlying** | **high, strong** *students with high motivation* ◇ *his strong motivation to succeed* | **low, poor**
- QUANT. **level** *pupils who have a low level of motivation*
- VERB + MOTIVATION **have** *Many of the boys have very poor motivation.* | **lack** | **lose** *By this time the children had lost all their motivation for writing poetry.* | **generate, provide** *high rewards that generate the necessary motivation in the workers* | **improve, increase, strengthen**
- PREP. **~ for** *his main motivation for supporting the government* **~ in** *my main motivation in making the suggestion* **~ behind** *the primary motivation behind the government's intervention*
- PHRASES **a lack of motivation**

motive *noun*

- ADJ. **hidden, ulterior** | **clear, good, strong** *There seemed to be no clear motive for the attack.* ◇ *I'd say he had a very strong motive for wanting her dead.* | **high, pure** *He was acting from the highest motives when he offered her money.* | **base, selfish** | **prime** | **real** | **underlying** *She was not sure what his underlying motives were.* | **mixed** *We give aid to other countries with mixed motives.* | **financial, political, racial**
- VERB + MOTIVE **be inspired by, have** *She knew that he was inspired by base motives.* | **establish, find, suggest** *The police are still trying to establish a motive for the attack.* | **be suspicious of, examine, question** *He was suspicious of her motives in inviting him into the house.* ◇ *She should examine her motives for marrying him.* | **explain** *However you explain the motives behind his actions, he was still wrong.* | **understand**
- PREP. **~ in** *What was their motive in setting fire to the building?* **~ behind** *There is no doubt about the motive behind it all.* **~ for** *There may be a hidden motive for his departure.* **~ of** *acting from motives of revenge*

motor *noun*

- ADJ. **large, powerful** | **small** | **diesel, electric** | **outboard** *a boat with a powerful outboard motor*
- VERB + MOTOR **start, turn on** | **turn off**
- MOTOR + VERB **run, work** *He left the motor running.* | **drive sth** *A powerful motor drives the mill wheel.*

motorbike, motorcycle *noun*

- ADJ. **powerful | 250cc, 350cc, etc. | veteran, vintage** *a collection of vintage motorcycles* | **police**
- VERB + MOTORBIKE, MOTORCYCLE **ride** *He's learning to ride a motorcycle.* | **climb on, get on, mount | climb off, get off | come off, fall off** *The motorbike skidded and I came off it.* | **knock sb off | park | rev up** *a crowd of bikers all revving up their motorbikes*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *He was sitting on his motorbike.*
- PHRASES **the back of a motorbike/motorcycle** *She climbed onto the back of my motorbike.*

motorway *noun*

- ADJ. **busy | four-lane, three-lane, etc. | orbital, urban** *the M25 London orbital motorway*
- VERB + MOTORWAY **join | leave, turn off | build**
- MOTORWAY + NOUN **driving, traffic | network, system | bridge, junction | service area/station | crash, pile-up** *Five people have been killed in a motorway pile-up.*
- PREP. **along the ~** *driving along the motorway* **down the ~** *He sang as he rattled down the motorway.* **off the ~, onto the ~, on the ~, up the ~ | ~ from, ~ to** *We were on the motorway to London.*

motto *noun*

- ADJ. **club, family, school, etc.**
- VERB + MOTTO **have** *Surfers have a motto—'Life's a beach and then you die'.* | **coin, have sth as, use sth as** *He was the first to coin the motto 'Make Love, Not War'.* ◇ *Let's use that as our motto.*
- PREP. **~ for** *a good motto for gardeners*

mould *noun*

1 hollow container

- VERB + MOULD **cast sth in, make sth in** *The statues were cast in clay moulds.* | **fill, pour sth into**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Leave the clay in the mould overnight.* | **~ for** *a mould for a bronze statue*

2 type of sth

- ADJ. **old, traditional**
- VERB + MOULD **be/come from, be cast in, fit (into)** *She is clearly from a different mould from her team mate.* ◇ *He doesn't fit into the usual mould of head teachers.* | **break, break free of** *Breaking the traditional mould of local politics is not going to be easy.* ◇ *trying to break free of the old mould*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *a young politician in the mould of the great statesmen of the past*
- PHRASES **from/in a different/the same mould** *His brother came from a different mould, being a successful lawyer.*

3 organic growth

- VERB + MOULD **be covered in/with** *The biscuits were covered in green mould.*
- MOULD + VERB **form, grow**

mound *noun*

1 small hill

- ADJ. **high, large** *The church stands on a high mound just outside the village.* | **low, small | grassy**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *a small tree on a grassy mound*
- PHRASES **the foot/top of a mound**

2 pile

- ADJ. **great, huge, large | little, neat, small** *a neat mound of leaves*
- PREP. **~ of** *a great mound of paperwork*

mount *verb*

1 organize sth

- ADV. **successfully** *The company successfully mounted a takeover bid in 1996.*

2 increase

- ADV. **quickly, rapidly | steadily | gradually | hourly** *Election fever is mounting hourly.* | **up** *The cost quickly mounts up.*
- VERB + MOUNT **begin to, continue to**

3 picture/jewel, etc.

- ADV. **beautifully** *The prints were beautifully mounted.* | **carefully | directly** *The switch is mounted directly on the wall.* | **horizontally, vertically**
- PREP. **in** *The diamond is mounted in gold.* **on** *The specimens were carefully mounted on slides.*

mountain *noun*

1 very high hill

- ADJ. **big, great, high, huge, large, lofty, massive, tall, towering | small | steep | low | beautiful, dramatic, fine, majestic, spectacular | surrounding** *The surrounding mountains make the city difficult to evacuate.* | **distant | isolated, remote | inland | jagged, rocky, rugged | snow-capped, snow-covered, snowy | holy** *the holy mountain of the Lapp community*
- QUANT. **chain, range** *a chain/range of mountains*
- VERB + MOUNTAIN **ascend, climb, come/go up, scale | come/go down, descend, walk down | walk in** *We enjoy walking in the mountains.* | **cross (over)**
- MOUNTAIN + VERB **rise, soar, tower** *The mountains here rise to well over 2 000m.* | **fall** *The mountains fall to the east to the flat expanse of the plateau.* | **surround sth** *Towering mountains surrounded the village.* | **shake** *The earth tremor made the mountains shake.*
- MOUNTAIN + NOUN **chain, range | area, country, environment, region** *Between the two towns was 50 miles of mountain country.* | **height** *We crossed the rugged mountain heights.* | **pass, path, road, route, track | landscape, scenery | crag, face, flank, peak, ridge, side, slope, top, valley, wall | cave | lake, stream | air** *Many people come to the resort simply to enjoy the fresh mountain air.* | **pasture | barrier** *The invading army could only penetrate the mountain barrier at one point.* | **village | fastness, fortress, stronghold | hut, lodge, resort | folk, men, people | climber, climbing, walking, walks | guide | rescue, rescue team | bike, biker, biking | sickness | boot | goat, gorilla, hare, sheep**
- PREP. **across/over/through the ~** *a pass through the mountains* **down/up a/the ~** *She arranged to meet the others halfway up the mountain.* **in the ~s** *This type of goat lives high up in the mountains.*
- PHRASES **the flank/side/slope of a mountain, the foot/bottom/top of a mountain**

2 large amount/number of sth

- ADJ. **great | debt | paper | butter, food, etc.** *They revealed a solution to reduce Europe's butter mountain.*
- VERB + MOUNTAIN **generate | reduce**
- PHRASES **a mountain of paper/paperwork** *The enquiry generated a mountain of paperwork.*

mourning *noun*

1 sadness about sb's death

- ADJ. **deep | national, official**
- VERB + MOURNING **be in, go into** *He was in deep mourning for his dead wife.*
- MOURNING + NOUN **clothes**
- PHRASES **a day/period of mourning** *a day of mourning for the victims of the tragedy* **a state of mourning**

2 clothes

- ADJ. **full**
- VERB + MOURNING **wear**

- PREP. **in ~** *She was still in full mourning six months after her son's death.*

mouse *noun*

1 animal

- ADJ. **field, house | laboratory | white**
- VERB + MOUSE **catch**
- MOUSE + VERB **squeak | run, scamper, scurry | gnaw sth** *A mouse has gnawed its way through the telephone wire.*
- MOUSE + NOUN **droppings | hole | trap**
- PHRASES **as quiet as a mouse** *She crept upstairs, as quiet as a mouse.*

2 for a computer

- VERB + MOUSE **click, double click, move, use**
- MOUSE + NOUN **button | click** *Some of these mouse click short cuts are worth learning.* | **cursor, pointer**
- PREP. **with the ~** *Move the cursor around the screen with the mouse.*

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

moustache *noun*

- ADJ. **thick, thin | bushy, clipped, curly, drooping, droopy, handlebar, military, neat, pencil, toothbrush, tufty, walrus, waxed | nicotine-stained | false**
- VERB + MOUSTACHE **have, sport** *Her fiancé sported a neat ginger moustache.* | **grow** *He's trying to grow a moustache.* | **trim | shave off | tug at, twirl | stroke** *He stroked his moustache thoughtfully.*
- MOUSTACHE + VERB **droop** *An enormous black moustache drooped over his mouth.* | **bristle** *His grey moustache bristled with importance.*

mouth *noun*

- ADJ. **big, cavernous, enormous, generous, huge, large, wide | small | beautiful, chiselled, handsome, lovely, pretty, sensual, sensuous, well-shaped | firm, hard, strong** *A smile played around his strong mouth.* | **soft | hot, warm | loose, slack | full, full-lipped | lipless, thin | toothless | lopsided | wet | dry, tight** *A tight mouth was the only sign of her nerves.* | **gaping, half-open, open | cruel | hungry | swollen**
- VERB + MOUTH **open, shut | cover** *He covered his mouth to hide his yawn.* | **wipe** *He wiped his greasy mouth on his sleeve.* | **fill** *He coughed as the blood filled his mouth.* | **foam at, froth at** *The dog was foaming at the mouth and near death.*
- MOUTH + VERB **drop open, fall open, hang open, open, sag open** *Our mouths dropped open in surprise.* | **close, shut | be contorted, be distorted, be set, compress, contort, harden, purse, set, thin, tighten, turn down, twist** *His mouth compressed into a thin, hard line.* ◇ *'Get out!' she shouted, her mouth contorted by emotion.* ◇ *Her mouth suddenly set in a determined line.* | **curl, curve, lift, quirk, stretch, tilt, turn up** *Her mouth curved into a smile.* ◇ *His mouth lifted in a wry smile.* | **droop, sag | pout | twitch | quiver, tremble | water** *My mouth started watering when I smelled the food.* | **be/go dry**
- MOUTH + NOUN **ulcer**
- PREP. **about/around your ~** *There were lines of tension about his mouth.* **across your ~** *A cool smile played across her mouth.* **in your ~** *I could taste blood in my mouth.* **over your ~** *She put her hand over her mouth to stifle the cough.*
- PHRASES **the back/roof of the mouth** *I was so thirsty my tongue was sticking to the roof of my mouth.* **the corner/side of the mouth** *There was blood trickling from the corner of his mouth.* ◇ *The corners of her mouth turned up in a slight smile.* **keep your mouth shut** (= don't speak) **(have, etc.) your mouth full** (= full of food) *Don't talk with your mouth full!* **a mouth to feed** *Twins would mean two extra mouths to feed.* **mouth-to-mouth (resuscitation)** *He pulled the boy from the river and gave him mouth-to-mouth.*

mouthful *noun*

- ADJ. **great, large | small**
- VERB + MOUTHFUL **drink, eat, gulp (down), have, swallow, take** *She took a large mouthful of bread and started to read the letter.* | **chew | spit (out) | choke on** *choking on a mouthful of tea*
- PREP. **between ~s** *He told the story between mouthfuls.* **through a ~** *She answered through a mouthful of cake.* | **~ of** *a mouthful of coffee*

mouthpiece *noun*

1 part of a telephone

- ADJ. **phone/telephone**
- VERB + MOUTHPIECE **cover (up), put your hand over** *He put his hand over the mouthpiece and called his wife to the phone.*

2 sb/sth that informs the public about sb/sth's opinions

- ADJ. **official, political**
- VERB + MOUTHPIECE **act as, be**
- PREP. **~ for/of** *The media is controlled by the state and acts as a mouthpiece for the ruling party.*

move *noun*

1 action to achieve sth; change in ideas/behaviour

- ADJ. **big, important, major, radical, significant, substantial | decisive | astute, brilliant, clever, good, inspired, sensible, shrewd, smart, wise | bad | right** *She wondered whether she had made the right move in telling the truth.* | **false, wrong** *One false move could lead to war.* | **positive | bold, brave, strong | defensive | serious | dramatic, shock** (used in journalism), **surprise, unexpected** *The company was put up for sale yesterday in a shock move by management.* | **obvious | interesting | unusual | controversial | conciliatory | popular | gradual | rapid | new | current, present** *the current move towards networked organizations* | **latest, recent | first, initial** *If he wants to see me, he should make the first move.* | **far-sighted | strategic, tactical | precautionary | logical | diplomatic, legal, military, political | career** *Getting a job in advertising was a good career move.*
- VERB + MOVE **be, represent** *The talks represented the first significant move towards peace.* | **make** *The management has made no move to settle the strike.* | **prompt | initiate | signal** *The new legislation signalled a move away from state involvement in telecommunications.* | **spearhead** *The move is spearheaded by a former MP.* | **back, encourage, support | welcome | condemn | oppose, reject, resist | consider, contemplate | decide (on)** *They are waiting for the results of the opinion polls before deciding their next move.* | **announce** *The government announced its move to ban smoking in public spaces.*
- MOVE + VERB **take place | be afoot, be underway** *Moves are afoot to increase car insurance premiums.* | **fail | be aimed at sth, be designed to do sth** *a move designed to control inflation* | **reflect sth** *The move reflects a change in approach to research.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *In a move which surprised commentators, the president sacked several cabinet ministers.* | **~ against** *a move against drug dealers* **~ away from** *a move away from traditional Labour policies* **~ back to** *a move back to old teaching styles* **~ to/towards** *a move towards greater trade liberalization*
- PHRASES **a move in the right direction** *Although the new environmental regulations are flawed, they represent a move in the right direction* (= they do improve the current situation).

2 change of place

• ADJ. **false** *One false move and I'll shoot!* | **sudden**

• VERB + MOVE **make** *We should make a move* (= leave) *— it's really late.*

• PREP. **~to/towards** *She made a move towards the door.*

• PHRASES **be/keep (sb/sth) on the move** *His career as a petroleum engineer has kept him on the move* (= kept him moving about from place to place). **every/no/one move** *She made no move as the lion sniffed at the tent.* **follow/watch sb/sth's every move** *The cubs followed their mother on the hunt, watching her every move.* **get a move on** *We're leaving in five minutes so you'd better get a move on* (= hurry)! **make a move for sth** (*informal*) *He made a move for* (= towards) *the door.*

3 change of house/job

• ADJ. **permanent** | **sideways** *His new job was a sideways move rather than a promotion.* | **house**

• MOVE + VERB **take place**

• PREP. **~from, ~to** *a move from London to Leeds*

4 in a board game

• ADJ. **brilliant, good** | **bad** | **opening** | **chess**

• VERB + MOVE **learn** *She learned all the chess moves when she was four.* | **play**

• PREP. **on a/the ~** *She captured the rook with her bishop on the 32nd move.*

movement *noun*

1 act of moving

• ADJ. **big** | **little, slight, small, tiny** *The eyes of predators are highly sensitive to the slightest movement.* | **quick, rapid, swift** | **gentle, slow** | **easy, graceful, smooth** *She mounted the horse in one easy movement.* | **easy** *The refrigerator unit has rubber wheels for easy movement.* | **jerky** | **sudden** | **deft** | **controlled** | **free** *the free movement of goods in Europe* | **involuntary** | **random** | **constant, continuous** | **repetitive** | **rhythmic** | **backward, downward, forward, lateral, sideways, upward** | **body** | **eye, hand, etc.** | **dance** | **currency, price** *the volatility of currency movements in the foreign exchange markets* | **troop** | **pincer** *The army surrounded the town in a pincer movement.*

• VERB + MOVEMENT **make, produce** *He made a slight movement with his right hand.* ◇ *Hydraulic jacks under the machine produce the movement.* | **allow** *clothing that allows easy movement* | **control, direct** *As infants grow they become better able to direct their own movements.* | **facilitate** *an initiative to facilitate the movement of labour in the EU* | **restrict** | **prevent** *The striking farmers threatened to prevent movement of goods across the country.* | **sense** *She sensed a movement in the dark beneath the stairs.* | **monitor** *They are monitoring the movement of animals in and out of the country.* | **follow, watch ~s** *The police are following the suspect's movements very closely.* | **trace ~s** *The police have traced her movements to the time of her death.*

• MOVEMENT + VERB **occur** *Some movement in the building will occur as it settles into the subsoil.* | **catch your eye** *A movement caught his eye in the tangled undergrowth.*

• PREP. **in a ~** *She kicked down the door in one swift movement.* | **~away from, ~from, ~to** *movement from one level to the next* **~towards** (*figurative*) *Recently there's been a movement* (= a change in attitude) *away from tinned food towards fresh food.*

• PHRASES **the direction/rate/speed of movement, freedom of movement** *The government's decree allowed freedom of movement for all citizens.* **the movement of capital/goods/labour, a sense of movement** (*figurative*) *His music has a real sense of movement.*

2 group of people

• ADJ. **radical** | **mass, popular** | **organized** *The country has a well organized labour movement.* | **international, national** | **artistic, literary** | **avant-garde** | **Modern, Romantic, etc.** *Both architects were part of the Modern Movement.* | **political** | **protest** | **anti-nuclear, anti-war, etc.** | **peace** | **reform** | **civil/human rights** | **independence, liberation, opposition, resistance, revolutionary, separatist** | **democracy/pro-democracy, democratic, fascist, nationalist** | **labour, trade union** | **feminist, gay** | **consumer, student, women's, working-class, youth, etc.** | **ecumenical** | **scout** | **suffragette**

• VERB + MOVEMENT **create, establish, launch, set up, start (up)** *She started a movement for agricultural reform.* | **join, support** | **be involved in, be part of** | **lead** | **direct** *a protest movement directed against exploitative trade practices* | **suppress** | **ban, outlaw**

• MOVEMENT + VERB **begin, emerge (out of sth)** *The movement emerged out of concern for human rights abuses.* | **develop, gain/gather strength** *The movement gained strength during the 1970s.* | **reach a peak** *The student movement reached its peak in 1968.* | **lose strength**

• PREP. **~against** *a mass movement against the dictatorship* **~for** *He launched a movement for children's rights.*

• PHRASES **a leader/member of a movement, the rise of a movement** *the rise of the labour movement in France*

3 part of a long piece of music

• ADJ. **first, opening** | **second, etc.** | **final, last** *the last movement of Brahms's Fourth Symphony* | **slow** | **fast**

• VERB + MOVEMENT **perform, play**

• PREP. **in (the) … ~** *a symphony in four movements* ◇ *There is a cello solo in the second movement.*

movie *noun*

• ADJ. **good, great, wonderful** | **classic, cult** | **blockbuster/blockbusting, hit, smash-hit, successful** | **big, big-budget, top** | **low-budget** | **television/TV** | **home** *We watched a home movie of my second birthday party.* | **in-flight** | **silent** | **action, disaster, gangster, horror, war, etc.** | **blue, dirty, porn/porno**

• VERB + MOVIE **see, watch** | **go to (see), take sb to (see)** *I'd never go to a movie alone.* | **direct, make, produce, shoot**

• MOVIE + VERB **be based on sth** *a movie based on the novel by Betty Munn* | **be called sth, be entitled sth** *a movie entitled 'Short Legs'* | **star sb**

• MOVIE + NOUN **actor, actress, director, maker, mogul, people, producer, star** *The former footballer is now mixing with movie people in Hollywood.* | **audience** | **fan** | **première** | **company** | **business, industry, world** | **career** | **channel** | **score, script** | **rights** *the movie rights to her autobiography* | **version** *the movie version of the well-known novel* | **camera** | **poster**

• PREP. **~about** *a movie about the life of Castro*

moving *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **find sth** *I found the story intensely moving.*

• ADV. **deeply, extraordinarily, intensely, profoundly, very** *a deeply moving account of life on the streets* | **quite**

mucus *noun*

• ADJ. **copious, excess** | **cervical, nasal** | **sticky, stringy, thick, thin**

• VERB + MUCUS **produce, secrete**

• MUCUS + NOUN **discharge, production, secretion**

mud *noun*

• ADJ. **deep** | **glutinous, thick** | **hard** | **liquid, soft, sticky, wet** | **dried, dry** *footprints left in the hard dried mud* | **black, brown, grey, red**

• VERB + MUD **be caked in/with, be covered in/with, be plastered with, be smeared with, be streaked with mud** *Her boots were caked in mud.* | **get/become bogged (down) in, get stuck in** *Several cars got bogged down in the mud.* | **churn sth into, turn (sth) to** *The cars had* *churned the lane into mud.* | **wallow in** *pigs wallowing in the mud* | **spatter (sb/sth with)**

• MUD + VERB **ooze** *Wet mud oozed up between their toes.* | **crack** *The mud in the dried-up river bed had cracked.*

• MUD + NOUN **brick, floor, house, hut** | **flats**

• PREP. **in the ~** *She fell in the mud.* **through the ~** *We squelched through the mud.*

• PHRASES **a layer of mud, a sea of mud**

muddle *noun*

• ADJ. **awful** | **embarrassing** | **bureaucratic, financial**

• VERB + MUDDLE **get (sb) in/into** *I got into an awful muddle with my tax forms.* | **make** *The judge made a muddle of the case.*

• PREP. **in a ~** *The house was in a awful muddle by the time the children left.* | **~ about/over/with** *There was a bureaucratic muddle over his appointment.*

muddled *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel** | **become, get**

• ADV. **extremely, hopelessly, very** | **a bit, rather, slightly, somewhat** *Her ideas are slightly muddled.*

• PHRASES **be/get muddled up**

muddy *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look** | **become, get** | **get sth, make sth** *Don't get your shoes muddy!* ◇ *The rain had made the football pitch extremely muddy.*

• ADV. **extremely, very** | **all** *My boots were all muddy.* | **a bit, rather** *We all got a bit muddy and wet.*

mug *noun*

• ADJ. **large** | **empty** | **chipped, cracked** | **hot, steaming** *a hot mug of tea* | **beer, coffee** | **pint** | **commemorative, souvenir** | **shaving** | **china, plastic, etc.**

• VERB + MUG **fill, pour (out)** *She filled her mug with orange juice.* ◇ *He poured a mug of tea.* | **pour (sb) out** *Craig got up and poured himself a mug of soup.* | **pour sth into** *She poured hot water into the mug.* | **drink (sth from)** *He drank a mug of coffee and left.* ◇ *We drank champagne from tin mugs.*

• PHRASES **a mug of beer/coffee/tea, the rim of a mug** *He ran his finger around the rim of the mug.*

mule *noun*

• ADJ. **pack**

• QUANT. **team**

• VERB + MULE **ride (on)** | **drive** | **saddle**

• MULE + VERB **bray** | **carry sth**

• PREP. **by ~** *They travelled across the mountains by mule.* **on a/the ~** *a man on a mule*

multinational *noun*

• ADJ. **big, giant, large** | **leading, major** | **foreign**

• MULTINATIONAL + VERB **operate** *foreign multinationals operating in the UK*

multiply *verb*

• ADV. **fourfold, fivefold, manifold, etc.** *Just imagine all the problems we've been having, multiplied a thousandfold.* | **endlessly, indefinitely** | **quickly, rapidly** *micro-organisms that multiply rapidly* | **together, up** *Multiply these two figures together.* ◇ *If you are cooking for more people, just multiply up the quantities.*

• PREP. **by** *2 multiplied by 4 makes 8* (= 2 × 4 = 8)

mum *noun*

• ADJ. **young** | **single, unmarried** | **career, working** | **proud** | **expectant, pregnant** (also **mum-to-be**) | **new** *The group is aimed at new mums with young babies.* | **surrogate** *The cat acted as a surrogate mum to the chicks.*

• PHRASES **mum and dad**

mumble *verb*

• ADV. **incoherently** | **drowsily, sleepily**

• PREP. **about** *I couldn't understand what he was mumbling about.* **into** *She mumbled something into her pillow.* **to** *George mumbled incoherently to himself.*

mumps *noun*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

mundane *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem, sound** | **become** | **find sth** *I found the job very mundane*

• ADV. **very** | **thoroughly, utterly** | **fairly, pretty, rather, somewhat** *a rather mundane task* | **apparently**

mural *noun*

• ADJ. **giant, huge, large-scale** | **painted**

• VERB + MURAL **create, produce** | **paint** | **design**

• MURAL + VERB **depict sth, show sth** *murals depicting Aesop's fables*

murder *noun*

• ADJ. **brutal, horrific, terrible, vicious** | **cold-blooded, premeditated, wilful** (*law*) *a verdict of wilful murder* | **attempted** | **double, mass, multiple** | **terrorist** | **racial, sectarian** | **unsolved**

• VERB + MURDER **commit** *murders committed by terrorists* | **jail sb for** | **avenge** *He vowed to avenge his brother's murder.* | **witness** | **implicate sb in** *new evidence that implicated her in the murder* | **get away with** (*figurative*) *They let their children get away with murder!*

• MURDER + VERB **take place**

• MURDER + NOUN **victim** | **suspect** | **hunt** (*informal*), **inquiry, investigation** | **bid, plot** | **conviction** | **scene** | **mystery, story** *Her latest novel is a gripping murder mystery.*

⇨ Note at CRIME (for more verbs)

murder *verb*

• ADV. **barbarously, brutally, foully, in cold blood** *The boy was brutally murdered.* ◇ *They were murdered in cold blood.* | **ritually** | **allegedly**

• VERB + MURDER **attempt to, try to** | **plan to, plot to**

• PHRASES **admit/deny murdering sb, be accused of murdering sb, be charged with murdering sb** *She was arrested and charged with murdering the two children.* **be convicted/found guilty of murdering sb, be found murdered** *He was found murdered in the cemetery.*

murderer *noun*

• ADJ. **alleged** | **convicted** | **mass, multiple, serial** | **real** *He protested his innocence and promised to help police track down the real murderer.* | **notorious** | **child**

• VERB + MURDERER **hunt, track down** | **catch, find, reveal (sb as), uncover**

• MURDERER + VERB **strike** *The murderer has struck again.* | **kill sb**

• PHRASES **the identity of the murderer** *The identity of her murderer has not yet been revealed.*

murmur *noun*

1 sound of words that are spoken quietly

• ADJ. **dull, faint, low, quiet, soft** | **general** *a general murmur of assent* | **angry**

• VERB + MURMUR **give, let out** *He gave a little murmur of relief.* | **hear**

MUSIC

playing

*She **plays** the piano very well.*

*I **play** lead guitar in a rock band.*

*The oboe **plays** the main theme.*

*The trumpets **sounded** to mark the queen's arrival.*

- a bass, clarinet, guitar, horn, keyboard, sax, trumpet, viola, etc. **player**
- an orchestral **player**

learning

*My sister is **learning** the French horn.*

*I **practise** the clarinet an hour a day.*

*He **studied** piano at the Royal College of Music.*

*My father **took up** the trumpet in his retirement.*

*She **dropped/gave up** the violin when she was fifteen.*

*He **teaches** the flute.*

- a music, piano, singing **lesson/teacher**
- band, cello, choir **practice**
- an orchestral **rehearsal**

prepositions

on (the) ~

She sang three songs and I accompanied her on the piano.

That was Miles Davis on trumpet.

for (the) ~

a work for cello, oboe and harpsichord

performing

- a concerto, instrumental, violin **soloist**
- a clarinet, jazz **virtuoso**
- a brass, dance, military, rock **band**
- a jazz, string **quartet**
- a pop, rock **group**

- a **solo** album, artist, career, cello, instrument, passage, performance, voice, work
- **unaccompanied** singing, violin

- a bass, saxophone **solo**
- a gala, pop, symphony **concert**
- a concert, gala, virtuoso **performance**
- a live, rock, solo **gig**
- an organ, a piano **recital**

*James Levine **conducts** the orchestra of the Metropolitan Opera in New York.*

*the Scottish Symphony Orchestra, **led** by Elizabeth Leighton*

My sister has taken up the tuba.

• MURMUR + VERB **rise, run** *A murmur of excitement rose from the audience.* ◇ *A murmur of amusement ran round the room.*
• PREP. **in a ~** *She answered in a low murmur.* **with a ~** *He took the mug of coffee with a murmur of thanks.* **without a ~** *They did as they were told, without a murmur.* | **~ of**
• PHRASES **the murmur of voices**
⇨ Note at SOUND

2 low, gentle, continuous sound
• ADJ. **soft | low | distant, far-off**
• VERB + MURMUR **hear**
• PREP. **~ of** *the distant murmur of traffic*

murmur *verb*

• ADV. **gently, quietly, softly, under your breath** *'What a* *fool I've been,' he murmured softly.* | **huskily, thickly, throatily** | **sleepily** | **shakily** | **apologetically, appreciatively, politely, soothingly, thoughtfully** *'Mmm,' she murmured appreciatively.* | **drily, ironically, sarcastically, sardonically, silkily, sweetly** (*ironic*), **wryly**

- VERB + MURMUR **hear sb** *She heard him murmur something under his breath.*
- PREP. **to** *He held her tight and murmured to her.*

muscle *noun*

- ADJ. **hard, powerful, strong** | **taut, tense, tight** | **cramped** *I walked up and down the aisle to stretch my cramped muscles.* | **tired** | **abdominal, arm, calf, facial, heart, thigh, etc.** | **skeletal**
- VERB + MUSCLE **flex, tense** *He flexed his muscles, then set off to run.* | **relax** *Learn how to relax tense muscles.* | **stretch** | **build (up), strengthen, tone (up)** | **pull, tear** *I laughed so hard I almost pulled a muscle.*
- MUSCLE + VERB **ache** | **clench, contract, stiffen, tense, tighten** | **go limp, loosen, relax, slacken** | **quiver, ripple, twitch** *His muscles rippled beneath his T-shirt as he worked.* | **control sth** *the muscles controlling speech production*
- MUSCLE + NOUN **cell, fibre, tissue** | **group** | **disease, pain** | **contraction, relaxation, spasm, tension** | **tone**
- PREP. **~in** *The muscles in my face tensed.*

museum *noun*

- ADJ. **excellent, fascinating, great, interesting, major** *one of the world's great museums* | **local, municipal, national, provincial, regional, town** | **private, public** | **purpose-built** | **open-air** *an open-air museum of farming and the countryside* | **working** *Although the mill is no longer in commerical use, it is maintained as a working museum.* | **archaeological, folk, industrial, local history, maritime, military, railway, science, war, etc.**
- VERB + MUSEUM **go to, visit**
- MUSEUM + VERB **be devoted to sth, contain sth, house sth** *a museum devoted to railway memorabilia* ◇ *The museum houses a fine collection of textiles.*
- MUSEUM + NOUN **building** | **collection, display, exhibition** | **piece** *All the planes are museum pieces.* | **curator, director, staff** | **visit**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *an exhibition of Chinese ceramics at the Ashmolean Museum* **in a/the ~** *There's a gift shop in the museum.* | **~ of** *the Museum of Modern Art*

mushroom *noun*

- ADJ. **edible** | **poisonous** | **cultivated** | **wild** | **button, chestnut, field, oyster, porcini, shiitake** | **dried** | **hallucinogenic, magic, psychedelic** | **garlic**
- VERB + MUSHROOM **eat, have** *I'll have the garlic mushrooms for a starter.* | **cultivate, grow** | **pick** *They went into the woods to pick wild mushrooms.* | **chop, slice** *Slice the mushrooms and add to the salad.* | **cook, fry**
- MUSHROOM + NOUN **compost** | **omelette, sauce, soup** | **cloud**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

music *noun*

1 arrangement of sounds for singing/playing

- ADJ. **beautiful, good, great, wonderful** | **loud** | **quiet, soft, sweet** *The soft background music made her feel sleepy.* | **heavy** *Heavy music thundered from the basement.* | **light** | **serious** | **tonal** | **atonal, twelve-note** | **contrapuntal, polyphonic** | **original** | **live** | **recorded, taped** | **background** | **piped** | **band, choral, instrumental, orchestral, symphonic** | **guitar, keyboard, organ, piano, vocal, etc.** | **chamber** | **church, liturgical, religious, sacred** | **secular** | **ballet, film, incidental, theme** *the incidental music for a radio play* | **computer, electronic** | **Western** | **traditional** | **period** *Appropriate period music can be played on visits to a historic building.* | **experimental** | **avant-garde, Baroque, classical, contemporary, early, medieval, modern** | **black, calypso, country, dance, disco, ethnic, folk, gospel, indie, jazz, pop/popular, rap, rave, reggae, rock, soul, underground, world**
- QUANT. **piece** | **bar, line**
- VERB + MUSIC **listen to** *Listening to music is a great way to relax.* | **hear** *She could hear music coming from the upstairs flat.* | **make, perform, play** *We love to make music as a family.* | **play, put on** *Put some music on, would you?* (= play a CD/cassette) | **turn down/up** *Could you turn that music down?* | **compose, write** | **arrange** | **put/set sth to** *Schubert set several poems by Goethe to music.* | **create, produce** *With the guidance of the conductor, an orchestra creates music and harmonies.* ◇ *The city has produced a lot of good music.* | **provide** *a beach party with music provided by a local band* | **broadcast** | **record** | **be into, enjoy, like, love** *She's really into rock music.* | **get into** *He got into music* (= became involved in the music business) *by chance.*
- MUSIC + VERB **play** *Calypso music played faintly in the distance.* | **blare, thunder** *disco music blaring out of the open windows of a car* | **come, drift** *The music was coming from next door.*
- MUSIC + NOUN **business, industry** | **scene** *Birmingham's live music scene* | **world** *She is a rising star in the music world.* | **press** *The album has been praised in the music press.* | **charts** *The band are number one in the music charts.* | **festival** | **appreciation** | **fan, lover** | **critic, director, teacher** *the choir's music director* | **group** | **centre** *We bought a new television and music centre at the weekend.* | **video** | **room**
- PREP. **to (the) ~** *to dance to the music*
- PHRASES **in time to (the) music** *They did their exercises in time to the music.* **music and song** *an evening of Scottish music and song* **the sound of music** *The sound of pop music drifted through the open window.* **a style of music, taste in music** *Her taste in music was wide.* **words and music** *He made up the words and music for the song.*

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for more verbs and nouns)

⇨ Special page on page 513

2 written signs that represent musical sounds

- ADJ. **printed, sheet**
- QUANT. **bar, line, sheet**
- VERB + MUSIC **read** *Can you read music?*
- MUSIC + NOUN **score** | **stand** *Put your music on the music stand.* | **publisher, publishing**
- PREP. **~ for** *music for piano, cello and voice*
- PHRASES **play/sing, etc. with/without (the) music**

musical *noun*

- ADJ. **hit, popular, successful** | **Broadway, Hollywood, West End**
- MUSICAL + VERB **be based on sth** *a musical based on the biblical story of Job*

⇨ Note at PERFORMANCE (for more verbs)

musician *noun*

- ADJ. **excellent, fine, gifted, good, great, talented** | **distinguished, famous** | **aspiring** | **local** | **traditional** | **dedicated, serious, trained** *You have to be a very dedicated musician to get to the top.* | **amateur, performing, professional, working** | **backing, orchestral** *She had toured as a backing musician for a rock star.* | **classical, folk, jazz, pop/popular, rock**
- MUSICIAN + VERB **perform (sth), play (sth)** | **practise (sth), rehearse (sth)**

⇨ Note at JOB

Muslim *noun*

- ADJ. **devout, fervent | Shia, Shiite, Sunni**
- MUSLIM + NOUN **beliefs, faith | community | extremist, fundamentalist**

mustard *noun*

- ADJ. **hot** *Add some hot English mustard.* **| mild | wholegrain | Dijon, English, French**
- VERB + MUSTARD **spread (sth with)** *Spread the bread thinly with mustard.* **| add, mix (sth with)** *Mix together the mustard and olive oil.* **| eat sth with, serve sth with**
- MUSTARD + NOUN **seed | powder | sauce | colour**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

mutation *noun*

- ADJ. **chance, random | common | cell, gene/genetic**
- VERB + MUTATION **carry, contain** *The protein contained a mutation.* **| suffer** *The genetic material has suffered a mutation.* **| introduce** *Mutations were introduced in the region using various techniques.* **| cause, produce**
- MUTATION + VERB **arise, occur | affect sth** *These cells carry a mutation affecting the prevention mechanism.* **| cause sth, lead to sth, result in sth**
- MUTATION + NOUN **rate**

muted *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound | remain**
- ADV. **distinctly, extremely, noticeably, very** *a distinctly muted and moderate sermon* **| slightly, somewhat** *Their reaction to the news was somewhat muted.* **| curiously, strangely**

mutilate *verb*

- ADV. **badly, horribly, severely, terribly** *A lot of the bodies had been badly mutilated.*

mutiny *noun*

- ADJ. **army, prison | military**
- VERB + MUTINY **lead | be faced with, face**
- PREP. **~ against** *He led a military mutiny against the senior generals.* **~ by** *mutiny by the men*

⇨ Note at CRIME (for more verbs)

mutter *verb*

- ADV. **gruffly, harshly, hoarsely, huskily, thickly, through clenched/gritted teeth** *'I don't need a drink,' she muttered through clenched teeth.* **| quietly, softly, under your breath | incoherently, vaguely | angrily, bitterly, darkly, fiercely, grimly, irritably, savagely, ungraciously** *Helen began muttering darkly about hospitals.*
- VERB + MUTTER **be heard to, hear sb** *A number of non-British visitors were heard to mutter that it would not have happened in Frankfurt.* ◇ *She heard him mutter an oath under his breath.*
- PREP. **about** *muttering about the incompetence of the office staff* **to** *muttering incoherently to himself*

mystery *noun*

- ADJ. **big, great** *How the disease started is one of medicine's great mysteries.* **| little, minor, small** *one of life's little mysteries* **| complete, total** *She was a total mystery to him despite their long association.* **| whole** *He had found the clue to unlock the whole mystery* **| certain** *Her blue eyes had a certain mystery.* **| real | central** *the central mystery of the story* **| deep, profound** *a place of deep mystery and enchantment* **| arcane | dark, terrible | fascinating | insoluble | unexplained, unsolved | religious, sacred | scientific | murder** *He is the author of several murder mysteries.*
- VERB + MYSTERY **be, present (sb with), remain** *How these insects actually communicate presents something of a mystery.* **| have, hold** *It was easy to believe that the tiny hamlet held some great mystery.* **| be cloaked in, be shrouded in, be veiled in** *The whole incident was shrouded in mystery.* **| lose** *Air travel has lost much of its mystery.* **| clear up, explain, resolve, solve, uncover, unlock, unravel** *The police are close to solving the mystery of the missing murder weapon.* **| shed/throw light on** *The witness could shed no light on the mystery of the deceased's identity.* **| explore, fathom, grapple with, penetrate, understand** *Her poetry attempts to penetrate the dark mystery of death.* **| ponder (on)** *She pondered the mystery of the disappearing thief.*
- MYSTERY + VERB **deepen** *The mystery deepened when the police's only suspect was found murdered.* **| surround sth** *the mystery surrounding her resignation*
- MYSTERY + NOUN **man, woman** *Their suspect was a mystery man: a quiet, happily married man with no enemies.* **| caller, guest | tour | disease, illness, virus**
- PREP. **~ about** *There's a bit of a mystery about this child.* **~ as to** *It remains a mystery as to where he was buried.* **~ to** *My sister is a complete mystery to me.*
- PHRASES **an air/aura of mystery** *Wearing dark glasses gives him an air of mystery.* **something of a mystery, take the mystery out of sth** *Modern weather forecasts try to take the mystery out of meteorology.*

mystified *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look | remain**
- ADV. **completely | genuinely, truly** *She was genuinely mystified by her success.* **| rather, somewhat**

myth *noun*

1 story from ancient times

- ADJ. **ancient, classical | religious | Christian, Greek, Norse, Roman, etc. | creation** (= that explains how the world began) *the creation myths of the Eskimos*
- PREP. **~ about** *the myth about the golden apple*

2 idea/belief which is untrue/impossible

- ADJ. **great** *There is a great myth that all sports players are stupid.* **| powerful | enduring, persistent | complete, total** *It's a complete myth that he has royal blood.* **| modern | folk, popular, widely held | national** *The battle has become part of national myth.* **| historical, political** *The propaganda of both sides relies heavily on historical myth.* **| heroic, romantic** *Propaganda has turned the former president into a heroic myth.* **| pernicious | cosy** *The film tears down the cosy myths about fair play in war.*
- VERB + MYTH **create, cultivate, establish** *How did the myth get so firmly established in the popular consciousness?* **| counter, counteract | bury, debunk, destroy, dispel, dispose of, explode, lay to rest, puncture, scotch, tear down | feed, foster, keep alive, maintain, perpetuate, sustain | be based on** *People's faith in the Emperor was based on the myth that he was infallible.*
- MYTH + VERB **surround sth** *trying to lay to rest the myths surrounding mental disabilities* **| persist** *The myth persists that men are more intelligent than women.*
- PREP. **~ about** *a popular myth about twins* **~ of** *perpetuating the myth of racial superiority*
- PHRASES **contrary to popular myth** *Contrary to popular myth, women are not worse drivers than men.*

mythology *noun*

- ADJ. **powerful | popular | personal | cultural, political | ancient, classical | Greek, Roman, etc.**
- VERB + MYTHOLOGY **enter** *Stories about ghosts in the cathedral have entered the mythology of the town.* **| create** *She has created her own mythology in the books.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the characters in Greek mythology* **| ~ about/of** *a mythology about how to get fit*

Nn

nail *noun*

1 on the fingers/toes

• ADJ. **long | short | sharp | healthy, strong | brittle | broken | manicured, well-kept | painted, polished** (See also **fingernail** and **toenail**.)

• VERB + NAIL **bite, chew | do, manicure** *Do your nails after your bath as they will be softer.* **| scrub | clip, cut, trim | file | paint, polish, varnish | dig** *He screamed as she dug her nails into his shoulders.*

• NAIL + VERB **break, split | bite/dig into sth**

• NAIL + NOUN **brush | clippers, scissors | file | polish, varnish**

• PREP. **under your ~** *There was dirt under his nails.*

2 piece of metal

• ADJ. **long | small | six-inch, etc. | loose | protruding | bent | rusty | brass, iron, etc. | masonry, upholstery, wood**

• VERB + NAIL **drive (in), hammer (in), knock (in) | pull out, remove**

• NAIL + NOUN **head | hole | bomb**

nail varnish (*also* nail polish) *noun*

• ADJ. **chipped, cracked**

• VERB + NAIL VARNISH **have on, wear** *She wore red nail varnish.* **| apply, put on | remove, take off**

naive *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, prove, seem, sound | regard sth as** *He regarded the move as politically naive.*

• ADV. **extremely, incredibly, very | a bit, fairly, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat | politically**

naked *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, feel, go around, lie, look, stand** *Never had he felt so completely naked.* ◇ *He lay naked on the bed.* **| strip** *She quickly stripped naked.* **| strip sb | leave sb** *She had been left naked and alone.* **| find sb**

• ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, stark, totally** *She realized with a shock that she was stark naked.* **| almost, nearly, virtually | half** *I suggest you don't make a habit of going around half naked.*

name *noun*

1 word/words sb/sth is known by

• ADJ. **Christian, first, given | middle, second | family, last** (see also **surname**) **| married | maiden | full** *His full name was William Augustus Grove.* **| proper, real | pet** *She insisted on being called by her full name 'Clementia' rather than the pet name 'Clemmey'.* (see also **nickname**) **| assumed, false | official | joint** *The account is in joint names.* **| common** *'Smith' is a very common family name.* **| double-barrelled, hyphenated | strange-sounding | personal** *The village of Low Catton takes its name from the Old English personal name 'Catta'.* **| pen-, professional, stage** *George Eliot was a pen-name; her real name was Mary Ann Evans.* (see also **pseudonym**) **| brand, proprietary, trade | company | code | file | place, street**

• VERB + NAME **have** *Have you got a middle name?* **| bear, carry** *The Julian calendar was introduced by Julius Caesar and hence carries his name.* **| be known by, go by** *The island is more commonly known by the name 'Krakatoa'.* ◇ *He goes by the name of Jonno.* **| use** *She uses a different name in her professional life.* **| acquire, get, obtain** *The Brady bill acquired its name from its best-known sponsor, James Brady.* **| adopt, assume, take** *He was elected Pope in 1978 and took the name of John Paul II.* **| keep** *She decided to keep her maiden name for professional purposes.* **| abandon | change | carry on** *He wanted an heir to carry on the family name.* **| immortalize** *His name was immortalized in 1992 when he scored three goals in the space of five minutes.* **| choose, decide on/upon | give sb/sth** *She was given the name Maria, after her grandmother.* **| give sb, name, pass on** *Detectives believe that a hitman was sent to silence the witness before he could name names* (= give evidence to the court/police). **| call sb/sth by** *Please call me by my first name.* **| call sb ~s** *Stop calling me names* (= stop saying rude/insulting things about me)*!* **| call (out)** *Somebody called out her name from below.* **| mention** *We cannot mention the suspect's name for legal reasons.* **| drop** *She found him rather irritating to talk to; all he did was drop names* (= mention the names of famous people he knew or had met in order to impress her). **| invoke** *He invoked the name of Freud in support of his argument.* **| ask (sb)** *I asked him his name.* **| hear** *I've heard that name mentioned before.* **| know** *How do you know my name?* **| remember | print, sign, write | spell | enter, put down** *Have you put your name down for* (= applied to take part in) *the school quiz?* **| put forward** *They put his name forward* (= chose him) *as one of the five candidates for the post.*

• NAME + VERB **appear** *The name of the artist appears on the vase.* **| imply sth, suggest sth** *As the name implies, Oxford was the place at which oxen could ford the river.* **| mean sth | ring a bell** (*figurative*) *'Does that name mean anything to you* (= do you recognize it)*?' 'Yes, it does ring a bell* (= it is familiar).*'*

• NAME + NOUN **badge, plate**

• PREP. **by ~** *The head teacher knows every child in the school by name.* **by the ~ of** *an actor by the name of Tom Rees* **in sb/sth's ~** *The tickets were booked in the name of McLean.* ◇ *I arrest you in the name* (= on the authority) *of the law.* **under a/the ~** *The room was booked under* (= using) *a false name.* **| ~ for/of** *The common name for the flower is 'pineapple lily'.*

• PHRASES **a change of name, give your name to sth** *The invading Franks gave their name to the country in which they settled.* **name and address, names and faces** *I have a bad memory for names and faces.* **put a name to sb/sth** *Nobody puts their name to a business* (= uses their name for the name of a business) *they are not proud of.* **take sb's name in vain** *Have you been taking my name in vain* (= showing lack of respect when using my name)*?*

2 reputation

• ADJ. **big | good | bad**

• VERB + NAME **have | become** *She has become a big name in documentary photography.* **| make** *He made his name writing travel books.* ◇ *She's made quite a name for herself.* **| acquire, get** *The area got a bad name after a series of nasty murders.* **| protect** *They tried to protect the good name of the college.* **| give sb** *This kind of behaviour gives students a bad name.* **| blacken, damage** *The riots after the match only served to blacken the name of football.*

• PREP. **~ for** *The company has a name for reliability.*

• PHRASES **sb's name is mud** *If you tell our secret your name will be mud* (= you will not be popular) *round here.*

3 famous person/thing

• ADJ. **big, famous, household, well-known** *They are a big name in the world of rock music.*

name *verb* (often **be named**)

• ADV. **originally** | **appropriately, aptly, suitably, well** | **significantly** | **correctly, incorrectly** *The present Kew Bridge was opened by King Edward VII and is correctly named 'King Edward Bridge'.* | **curiously, delightfully, exotically, grandly, improbably, oddly, quaintly, romantically, strangely, wonderfully** *the curiously named Egg Castle* | **confusingly** | **euphemistically** | **ironically**

• PREP. **after** *I named my son after my father.* **for** (*literary*) *the dead sister for whom she had been named* **in honour of sb/sth** *The hospital was named in honour of its principal benefactor.*

nanny *noun*

• ADJ. **live-in** | **qualified, trained**

• PREP. **~ to** *She was taken on as a nanny to their two small children.*

⇨ Note at JOB

nap *noun*

• ADJ. **brief, little, quick, short** | **afternoon, morning** | **cat** (also **catnap**) *If you have difficulty sleeping at night, avoid taking catnaps during the day.* | **power** *A ten-minute power nap can boost your productivity.*

• VERB + NAP **have, take** *I had a short nap after lunch.*

napkin *noun*

• ADJ. **clean** | **folded** | **dinner** | **table** *She dabbed her mouth with her table napkin.* | **damask, linen, paper**

• VERB + NAPKIN **fold** | **unfold** | **tuck** *He tucked his napkin under his chin.* | **dab sth with, wipe sth on/with**

• NAPKIN + NOUN **ring** *napkin rings made of silver*

nappy *noun*

• ADJ. **clean** | **wet** | **dirty, soiled** | **disposable** | **washable** | **cloth, terry**

• VERB + NAPPY **have on, wear** | **change** | **put on** | **remove, take off** | **wash** | **dispose of**

• NAPPY + NOUN **change, changing** | **liner** | **pin** | **rash**

• PREP. **in ~** *Isn't he rather old to be still in nappies?*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

narcotic *noun*

• ADJ. **mild, powerful**

• VERB + NARCOTIC **inject, use** | **trade in** *He has been arrested for trading in narcotics.*

• NARCOTIC + NOUN **agent, officer, official, squad**

⇨ Note at DRUG (for more verbs and nouns)

narrative *noun*

• ADJ. **popular** | **coherent** | **simple, straightforward** | **complex, detailed** | **chronological, sequential** | **first-person, second-person, third-person** *The book is written in the style of first-person narrative.* | **fictional, prose** | **film** | **historical** | **biblical**

• VERB + NARRATIVE **construct, create, develop, produce** *It's difficult to construct a narrative out of a series of fast-moving events.* | **interrupt** *The author interrupts her narrative to tell us that the idea for the book had not been well received.*

• NARRATIVE + VERB **be based on sth**

• NARRATIVE + NOUN **form, style, technique** | **framework, structure** | **flow** *interruptions to the narrative flow* | **content** | **passage, sequence, text**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *events in the narrative*

narrow *verb*

1 of a road/river/gap/range

• ADV. **considerably** | **a bit, a little, slightly** *The river narrows a little here.* | **sharply** *The gap between the two parties narrowed sharply in the days before the election.* | **steadily**

• PREP. **to** *By the final round the gap had narrowed to three votes.*

2 of eyes

• ADV. **fractionally, slightly** *Though her eyes narrowed fractionally, she made no comment.* | **suddenly** | **dangerously, shrewdly, speculatively, suspiciously, thoughtfully** *The blue eyes narrowed thoughtfully.*

• PREP. **against** *Her eyes narrowed against the sun.* **at** *His eyes suddenly narrowed at the sight of her.* **to** *His eyes narrowed to slits.* **with** *His eyes narrowed with suspicion.*

narrow *adj.*

1 not wide

• VERBS **be, look, seem** | **become, get**

• ADV. **extremely, very** | **a bit, fairly, quite, rather, relatively** *The pass gets quite narrow towards the east.*

2 limited

• VERBS **be, seem** | **become**

• ADV. **excessively, extremely, peculiarly, very** | **increasingly** | **comparatively, fairly, quite, rather, relatively, somewhat**

• PREP. **in** *people who are rather narrow in outlook*

nasty *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, smell, sound, taste** *He made it all sound very nasty.* | **become, get, turn** *Things could turn nasty* (= dangerous) *if we're not careful.*

• ADV. **extremely, particularly, really, very** | **thoroughly** *gang warfare of a thoroughly nasty kind* | **pretty, quite, rather**

• PREP. **about** *She was nasty about everyone.* **to** *Kevin seems to enjoy being nasty to his sisters.*

• PHRASES **cheap and nasty** *a room full of cheap and nasty ornaments* **nasty little** *a nasty little man*

nation *noun*

• ADJ. **large** | **little, small** | **major** | **great, leading, powerful, strong** | **advanced, developed, industrial, industrialized** | **developing, emergent, emerging, less-developed, Third World** | **affluent, prosperous, rich, wealthy** *the richest nation on earth* | **poor** | **civilized** | **backward** | **new** | **young** | **ancient, old** | **free, independent, sovereign** | **democratic** | **capitalist** | **united** | **divided** | **entire, whole** *The entire nation mourned her death.* | **foreign** | **Western** *the imperialist expansion of Western nations in the 1880s* | **Arab, European, French, etc.** | **maritime, oil-producing, trading** | **nuclear** | **creditor, debtor** *In 1950 the UK was the world's largest debtor nation and the US the largest creditor.* | **host** *France was host nation for the 1998 World Cup.* | **member** *the member nations of the UN*

• VERB + NATION **create** *They wanted to create a new nation.* | **unite** *The fight against terrorism seemed to unite the nation.* | **divide** | **govern, lead** | **shock** *the savage murder that shocked the nation*

• NATION + NOUN **building** *The biggest task of the government was to address national unity and nation building.* | **state**

• PREP. **across a/the ~** *swings in public opinion across the nation* **among ~** *economic inequality among the nations of the world* **in/within a/the ~** *In the nation as a whole there is no desire for war.* | **~ of** *They are a nation of food lovers.*

• PHRASES **the birth of a nation, the interests of a nation, the life of a nation** *They hoped that the exhibition would enhance the cultural life of the nation.* **the nation as a whole, the nation at large** *The new economic policies were in the best interests of the nation at large.* **the nations of the world**

nationalism *noun*

• ADJ. **aggressive, extreme, fierce, militant, revolutionary | popular | conservative, radical | secular | black | cultural, economic, political, racial**

• PHRASES **the growth of nationalism, the resurgence/revival of nationalism, the rise in nationalism, a tide of nationalism** *a tide of militant nationalism*

nationalist *noun*

• ADJ. **ardent | extreme, hard-line, radical | militant | moderate | left-wing, liberal | conservative, right-wing | veteran | former | local | Basque, Irish, etc. | African, black**

• NATIONALIST + NOUN **leader | forces, troops | uprising** *leading a nationalist uprising*

nationalistic *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become | remain**

• ADV. **fiercely, intensely, strongly | increasingly**

nationality *noun*

• ADJ. **various** *cultural differences among various nationalities* **| mixed** *teams of mixed nationality* **| dual** *He has dual British and South African nationality.* **| foreign | minority | Argentinian, etc.**

• VERB + NATIONALITY **have | acquire, adopt, assume, obtain, take** *She is hoping to adopt Australian nationality.* **| inherit | retain | change | give up, renounce | lose | grant sb | refuse sb**

• NATIONALITY + VERB **be represented** *About 30 nationalities were represented at the tournament.*

• PHRASES **on (the) grounds of nationality** *He accused them of discrimination on the grounds of nationality.*

natural *adj.*

1 not made by people

• VERBS **be** *All the fibres are natural.*

• ADV. **completely** *completely natural materials*

2 usual/normal

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound**

• ADV. **only, perfectly, quite** *It's only natural that she should feel upset.* **| fairly**

nature *noun*

1 the physical world; plants, animals, etc.

• ADJ. **Mother** *Mother Nature had served up some terrible weather for their cruise.*

• VERB + NATURE **commune with** *He believed in spending half an hour each day to relax and commune with nature.* **| be/get back to** *We built our house in the country because we wanted to get back* (= be close) *to nature.* **| be found in** *man-made substances not found in nature*

• NATURE + VERB **endow (sb with) sth** *Nature had endowed her with exceptional vitality.* **| produce sth** *It's unlikely that this gully was produced by nature.*

• NATURE + NOUN **conservation | reserve | trail**

• PREP. **close to ~** *people who live in the country and are close to nature* **in ~** *We appreciate beauty in nature.*

• PHRASES **the forces of nature, the laws of nature, a love of nature** *His love of nature was expressed through his wildlife paintings.*

2 qualities/features of sb/sth

• ADJ. **basic, essential, fundamental, intrinsic, real, true | artificial | exact, precise, specific** *I'm not clear about the exact nature of their relationship.* **| general | selective | limited, restrictive | changing, seasonal, temporary, transitory | uncertain, unpredictable | arbitrary, random | subjective** *the subjective nature of an odour* **| abstract | capricious, fickle | intractable | distinctive, unusual | radical | complex | special, specialist | traditional | controversial | contradictory | problematic | unsatisfactory** *the unsatisfactory nature of the meeting* **| good** *People are always taking advantage of her good nature* (= her kindness). **| human** *It's only human nature to want more money.* **| divine | confidential, personal, private | public | international, local** *the international nature of the business* **| repetitive | routine** *matters of a routine nature* **| detailed** *Because of the detailed nature of the work, I have to use a very fine brush.* **| practical | physical, psychological, sexual** *They define sexual harassment as unwanted conduct of a sexual nature.* **| economic, legal, political, social** *Their problems are of an economic nature.* **| contemplative | inquisitive**

• VERB + NATURE **have** *He has an inquisitive nature.* **| reveal** *The parties would not reveal the exact nature of the dispute.* **| conceal | reflect | belie** *The gentle lower slopes belie the true nature of the mountain.* **| be contrary to, be/run against** *It was against his nature to tell lies.* **| alter, change** *This new information does not change the nature of our findings.* **| acknowledge, be aware of, recognize** *Are you aware of the nature of the risks involved?* **| define, specify** *It is important to define the nature of the problem.* **| assess, consider, discuss, examine, explore, investigate | comprehend, realize, understand | misconceive | clarify, elucidate, explain, give/offer/provide an insight into** *His theory provides a remarkable insight into the nature of the British constitution.* **| describe | determine | depend on** *The method employed will depend on the nature of the task.* **| appeal to** *There was no point appealing to her better nature* (= kindness).

• PREP. **by ~** *He's not by nature an inquisitive person.* **concerning the ~** *a debate concerning the nature of violence* **considering/given the ~** *Given the nature of this matter, I am inclined to think it should be managed by you personally.* **in ~** *Their strategy was essentially political in nature.* **in sb/sth's ~** *It's not in his nature to complain.* ◇ *A certain element of risk is in the nature of the job.* **of a … ~** *The legal concept of insanity is of a different nature from the medical.*

• PHRASES **by its very nature** *By its very nature a secret service is not open to public inspection.* **the extent and nature of sth** *We need to understand the true extent and nature of the problem.* **a part of sb's nature** *the expressive part of his nature* ◇ *Her view is that aggression is part of human nature.* **a side of/to sb's nature** *He had a vicious side to his nature.*

nausea *noun*

• ADJ. **intense, severe | sudden | nervous**

• QUANT. **wave** *I was overcome by waves of nausea.*

• VERB + NAUSEA **experience, feel | complain of | bring on, cause | relieve**

• NAUSEA + VERB **engulf sb, overcome sb, sweep over sb**

• PHRASES **a feeling/sensation of nausea**

navigate *verb*

• ADV. **accurately, successfully** *Pigeons navigate less accurately when the earth's magnetic field is disturbed.* ◇ *(figurative) Those who successfully navigate this social minefield are accepted by the royal family.*

• PREP. **across, by** *These birds navigate by the sun.* **through** *learning to navigate your way through a forest*

• PHRASES **navigate your way**

navigation *noun*

• ADJ. **accurate | radio, satellite**

• NAVIGATION + NOUN **system | aids, equipment, instruments, lights | beacon | rights**

• PREP. **~ through** *(often figurative) navigation through complex documents*

- PHRASES **an aid to navigation** *small boats equipped with electronic aids to navigation* **freedom/rights of navigation** *freedom of navigation through international waterways*

navy *noun*

- ADJ. **strong | merchant**
- VERB + NAVY **have | build | serve in | join**
- PREP. **in the ~** *He spent ten years in the merchant navy.*
- PHRASES **the Royal Navy**

neat *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | leave sth, make sth** *Be sure to leave the room neat and tidy.* **| keep sth** *She kept her desk extremely neat.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, quite, rather | surprisingly** *The handwriting was surprisingly neat.*
- PHRASES **neat and tidy**

necessary *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | remain | make sth** *The cold weather has made it necessary to protect the crops.* **| consider sth, feel sth, find sth, regard sth as, see sth as, think sth** *Make any alterations you consider necessary. ◇ You may find it necessary to readjust the wheels from time to time.*
- ADV. **really, strictly** *I was determined not to stay in hospital for any longer than was strictly necessary.* **| absolutely | causally, logically**
- PREP. **for** *qualifications which are necessary for work with the under-fives*
- PHRASES **if necessary** *These measures will be enforced, if necessary, by the army.* **as/when/where necessary** *We are here to give help and support when necessary.*

necessity *noun*

1 fact that sth must happen; sth that cannot be avoided

- ADJ. **overwhelming, sheer | absolute | fundamental, vital | real | dire, pressing, urgent | immediate | strategic | logical, physical, practical** *The people in the rural areas use mud bricks only as an immediate, practical necessity.* **| commercial, economic, financial, historical, military, political, social** *He argued that nuclear weapons were a political necessity.*
- VERB + NECESSITY **recognize, see** *She saw the necessity to make an immediate impression on him.* **| accept (sth as), be convinced of** *They have accepted the necessity of greater state intervention.* **| avoid, obviate, remove, spare | emphasize, highlight, stress** *Observers stressed the necessity for the ceasefire to be observed.* **| be born (out) of** *Culling of the animals was born out of the necessity for successful conservation.*
- NECESSITY + VERB **arise** *These animals don't like water but will swim if the necessity arises.* **| demand (sth)** *Where necessity demands, we can seat more guests in the gallery.* **| force sth** *Necessity forced an urgent solution.*
- PREP. **of ~** *The visit will, of necessity, be brief.* **out of ~** *He is changing job out of necessity, not because he particularly wants to.* **through ~** *Most of the women are forced, through economic necessity, to work in part-time low-paid jobs.* **without the ~ of** *You can dial direct without the necessity of going through the operator.* **| ~ for** *There's no necessity for you to come.* **~ to** *the necessity to earn a living*
- PHRASES **any/no necessity** *The company sees no necessity for a more cautious approach to investment.*

2 sth you must have

- ADJ. **absolute | vital | real | urgent** *Policies which address these issues are an urgent necessity.* **| bare, basic** *They have nothing but the barest necessities.* **| daily**
- VERB + NECESSITY **have | lack**
- PHRASES **a necessity of life** *Food is a necessity of life.*

neck *noun*

1 part of the body

- ADJ. **long, short | beautiful, elegant | slender, slim, swan-like | scraggy, scrawny, thin | strong, thick | wrinkled | stiff | broken**
- VERB + NECK **crane, strain** *I craned my neck to see what was happening at the head of the queue.* **| crick** *I cricked my neck playing tennis and now I can't turn round properly.* **| break, injure | wring** *He killed the chicken quickly by wringing its neck.* **| risk** (*often figurative*) *I'm not going to risk my neck playing rugby with you!* **| save** (*often figurative*) *He's out to save his own political neck* (= his political career).
- NECK + VERB **ache**
- NECK + NOUN **muscle | brace, collar, support** *She's been wearing a neck brace since her car crash.* **| injury**
- PREP. **around/round your ~** *I keep the key on a string round my neck.* **in the ~** *The veins in his neck stood out like knotted rope.*
- PHRASES **the back/nape of the neck** *The hairs on the back of my neck prickled with fear.* **the scruff of the neck** *The cat picked up her kitten by the scruff of its neck.*

2 part of a piece of clothing

- ADJ. **high | open** *He wore a casual shirt with an open neck.* **| crew, halter, polo, roll, round, scoop, square, turtle, V**

need *noun*

1 situation where sth is needed/necessary

- ADJ. **considerable, great, strong | special** *There is a special need for well-trained teachers.* **| overriding, overwhelming, paramount | burning, compelling, critical, crying, desperate, dire, driving, immediate, pressing, urgent** *a crying need for skilled workers ◇ These children are in dire need.* **| real | clear | basic, essential, fundamental | sudden | constant, continuing** *He's in constant need of treatment.* **| growing, increased/increasing | reduced | possible | perceived | common** *our common need for self-preservation* **| individual | human** *the human need to order existence* **| political, social**
- VERB + NEED **feel, have** *I felt the need to do something.* **| express** *Several governments have expressed the need for a cautious approach to the conflict.* **| demonstrate, prove, show, suggest** *The incident proved the need for a continuing military presence in the area.* **| reflect** *a law reflecting a need for better social conditions* **| create** *The war created a need for national unity.* **| address, fulfil, meet, satisfy | avoid, eliminate, obviate, remove** *I avoid the need to travel by plane.* **| reduce | be aware of, be sensitive to | accept, acknowledge, perceive, recognize, see** *I see no need to do anything hasty.* **| emphasize, heighten, highlight, reaffirm, stress, underline** *She stressed the need for cooperation with the authorities.* **| ignore, overlook | deny** *The government has denied the need for economic reform.* **| understand | consider**
- NEED + VERB **exist** *A need exists to bridge the gap between theory and practice in nursing.* **| arise** *The system can be switched to emergency power should the need arise.*
- PREP. **in ~ (of)** *a campaign to help children in need ◇ The room was sorely in need of a fresh coat of paint.* **| ~ for** *the need for change*
- PHRASES **any/little/no need** *There's no need to worry.*

2 sth that sb requires

- ADJ. **basic, essential, fundamental | particular, special, specific** *a school for children with special educational needs* **| immediate, pressing | long-term | changing | conflicting | unmet | local | individual | community | customer/customer's, patient/patient's | human** *Energy for cooking is a basic human need.* **| humanitarian | material, physical** *material needs of food and drink* **| dietary | health care, medical | biological, bodily, emotional, physical, psychological, sexual, spir-**

itual | educational | political, social | business | operational | energy | information

• VERB + NEED **be responsive to, be sensitive to | address, cater for/to, cover, fulfil, meet, provide (for), respond to, satisfy, serve, supply** *a new union set up to address the needs of seasonal labourers ◇ £10 a day was enough to cover all his needs. ◇ We have now met most of the humanitarian needs of the refugees.* | **suit, tailor sth to** *The coaching is informal and tailored to individual needs.* | **identify | assess, consider**

• PHRASES **needs and desires, sb's every need** *Our staff will cater to your every need.*

need *verb*

• ADV. **badly, desperately, really, urgently** *She needed some money badly. ◇ Research is urgently needed into the causes of this illness.* | **certainly, definitely | clearly, obviously | just, only, simply** *I just need some information.* | **hardly** *You hardly need me to tell you that your father is still very frail and must not be upset.* | **not necessarily** *These people may need 24-hour attention, but they do not necessarily need to be in hospital.* | **no longer | still**

• VERB + NEED **be going to | be expected to, be likely to, may well** *You may well need to look outside your preferred area to find affordable accommodation.*

needle *noun*

1 for sewing

• ADJ. **long | blunt | sharp | fine | darning, embroidery, sewing, tapestry**

• VERB + NEEDLE **use | thread**

• PHRASES **the eye of a needle, needle and thread** *She sewed it on with needle and thread.*

2 for knitting

• ADJ. **empty | knitting**

• NEEDLE + VERB **hold sth** *a needle holding two stitches*

3 for drugs

• ADJ. **hypodermic, syringe | long | sharp | fine | clean, sterile | contaminated, infected | used**

• VERB + NEEDLE **insert, jab (sb with), plunge, put, stick** *He saw her stick a needle into her arm.* | **use | share** *the dangers of sharing needles*

• NEEDLE + VERB **go in** *The needle went in easily.*

• NEEDLE + NOUN **tip | exchange** *He believes that needle exchange schemes* (= where drug users can change used needles for clean ones) *encourage drug addiction.*

• PHRASES **the prick of a needle**

4 on a compass/instrument

• ADJ. **magnetized | compass**

• NEEDLE + VERB **move** *The needle moved away from the wind.* | **point | settle** *Wait until the needle settles and is pointing in one direction.*

• PHRASES **the needle of a compass**

5 on a pine tree

• ADJ. **conifer, pine**

• VERB + NEEDLE **drop, lose**

needy *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look** *a woman who looked needy*

• ADV. **genuinely, really, truly, very**

• PHRASES **poor and needy** *helping the children of poor and needy parents*

negative *noun*

1 denial

• VERB + NEGATIVE **answer (sth) in, reply in** *She answered the question in the negative.*

2 developed photographic film

• ADJ. **original | photographic | film, glass**

• QUANT. **strip**

• VERB + NEGATIVE **produce | develop** *His interest in photography started with him developing negatives that he found lying around the house.* | **keep** *We must assume that the spy kept the negatives.* | **destroy**

negative *adj.*

1 only thinking about/showing sb/sth's bad qualities

• VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | become | remain**

• ADV. **distinctly, extremely, strongly, terribly, very** *the strongly negative implications of these survey results ◇ Their attitude was terribly negative.* | **completely, entirely, exclusively, purely, totally, wholly** *She spoke in entirely negative terms.* | **largely, mainly, overwhelmingly | fairly, rather, slightly, somewhat | apparently | essentially** *Critical thinking is essentially negative as it seeks to dissect and not to build.* | **generally**

• PREP. **about** *He's been rather negative about the idea.*

2 showing that sth has not happened/been found

• VERBS **be, prove, test** *The breathalyser test proved negative. ◇ He tested negative for HIV infection.*

• PREP. **for** *The urine tests were negative for protein.*

neglect *noun*

• ADJ. **general, total | comparative, relative | benign** *The eighteenth-century interior of the building has survived through benign neglect.* | **deliberate, serious, wilful | physical | child** *The maximum penalty for child neglect is ten years' imprisonment.*

• VERB + NEGLECT **suffer (from)** *The buildings suffered neglect for centuries.* | **be guilty of** *The doctor was guilty of serious neglect of duty.*

• PREP. **by ~** *cruelty by neglect* **through ~** *the suffering of children through neglect* **to the ~ of** *She had concentrated on her music to the neglect of her other studies.*

• PHRASES **centuries/years of neglect** *After years of neglect the house is at last being restored.*

neglect *verb*

• ADV. **grossly, seriously | completely, entirely, totally, wholly | largely | conveniently** (*ironic*), **deliberately, wilfully** *conveniently neglecting their responsibilities* | **conspicuously** *an aspect of the problem conspicuously neglected by social scientists* | **hitherto, previously**

• VERB + NEGLECT **tend to | cannot/could not afford to** *This sector is one of the major growth areas and we cannot afford to neglect it.*

• PREP. **in favour of** *Local communities have been neglected in favour of private sector interests.*

neglected *adj.*

1 not given enough attention

• VERBS **be, feel, lie, look, remain, seem, stand** *His tools lay neglected in the garden.* | **become, get**

• ADV. **badly, extremely, much, sadly, seriously, sorely, very, woefully** *It is a sadly neglected work. ◇ The building is sorely neglected.* | **largely | comparatively, rather, relatively, somewhat | hitherto, previously | unjustly** *She is an excellent and unjustly neglected author.*

2 not given enough food, clothing, etc.

• VERBS **be, look** *The group of street children looked ragged and neglected.*

• ADV. **badly, grossly, severely**

negligence *noun*

• ADJ. **gross | contributory** *The plaintiff was guilty of contributory negligence for failing to wear a crash helmet.* | **medical, professional | criminal**

• VERB + NEGLIGENCE **be guilty of | accuse sb of, allege, claim, sue for** *The solicitor was accused of profes-*

sional negligence. | **deny** | **prove** | **arise from** *death arising from negligence*

- NEGLIGENCE + NOUN **case** | **claim**
- PREP. **by ~** *His death was brought about by negligence on the doctor's part.* **through ~** *damage to company property through negligence* | **~ in** *negligence in navigation*
- PHRASES **a finding of negligence** *The court made a finding of contributory negligence.* **the result of (the) negligence** *The accident was the result of negligence on the part of the driver.*

⇨ Note at CRIME (for more verbs)

negligent *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, grossly, seriously, very** | **wholly** | **criminally**
- PREP. **in** *The hospital was negligent in the way it looked after this young man.* **over** *The court found him to be negligent over the loss of £18 million by the local authority.*

negligible *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **absolutely** | **by no means, far from** *Delays in the courts are far from negligible.* | **almost**

negotiate *verb*

1 try to reach an agreement

- ADV. **carefully** *a carefully negotiated series of concessions* | **successfully** | **freely** | **individually, separately** *Rents are individually negotiated between landlord and tenant.* | **jointly** | **directly** *negotiating directly with the rebels* | **secretly** | **constantly, continually** *The parameters of the job are being continually negotiated.*
- VERB + NEGOTIATE **be able to** | **be prepared to, be willing to** *Are the employers really willing to negotiate?* | **attempt to, seek to, try to** | **manage to** | **help (to)**
- PREP. **between** *to negotiate between the two sides* **for** *We are negotiating for the release of the prisoners.* **on** *They have refused to negotiate on this issue.* **on behalf of** *negotiating on behalf of Britain* **with** *I managed to negotiate successfully with the authorities.*

2 successfully get over/past sth

- ADV. **easily, safely** *He safely negotiated the slippery stepping stones.*
- VERB + NEGOTIATE **be difficult to** *The flight of steps was quite difficult to negotiate with a heavy suitcase.*

negotiation *noun*

- ADJ. **difficult, lengthy, protracted** | **direct** | **successful** | **fruitless, unsuccessful** | **behind-the-scenes, secret** | **bilateral, multilateral** | **constant, continuous** | **delicate** | **detailed** | **serious** *It's time for some serious negotiation.* | **high-level** | **pay, peace, trade, wage, etc.**
- VERB + NEGOTIATION **enter into, open** | **break off** | **resume** | **conduct** *Negotiations were conducted in secret.* | **conclude** | **be open to, be subject to** *The final price is open to negotiation.*
- NEGOTIATION + VERB **begin, start** | **continue, go on** *Negotiations continued all day to avert a strike.* | **break down, collapse**
- NEGOTIATION + NOUN **process**
- PREP. **by ~** *Rents are agreed by negotiation.* **in ~ (with)** *She is in negotiation with other heads of state on the question of oil prices.* **through ~** *The problem should be resolved through negotiation.* **under ~** *Contracts are under negotiation.* | **~ between** *The alliance is the product of months of negotiation between the two parties.* **~ of** *the negotiation of a new contract* **~ on** *international negotiations on reducing sulphur dioxide emissions* **~ over** *negotiations over the number of houses to be built* **~ with** *negotiations with the other side*
- PHRASES **a basis for negotiation, a matter for negotiation, months/years of negotiation** *They signed the treaty after several years of negotiation.* **a process of negotiation** *Compromise is reached by a process of negotiation.* **room for negotiation** *There is considerable room for negotiation on some of the details.*

⇨ Special page at MEETING

negotiator *noun*

- ADJ. **clever, good, skilled, tough** | **professional, trained** | **chief, principal, senior** *the trade union's chief negotiator* | **union**

⇨ Note at JOB

neighbour *noun*

- ADJ. **friendly, good** *She's been a very good neighbour to me.* | **close, immediate, near, next-door** *They are near neighbours of ours.* | **nearest** *She leaned towards her nearest neighbour and whispered something.* | **northern, southern, etc.** *England's northern neighbour now has its own parliament.*
- PHRASES **friends and neighbours**

neighbourhood *noun*

- ADJ. **friendly, nice** | **respectable, select, smart** | **poor, run-down** | **immediate, local, surrounding** *They often got together with other parents in the local neighbourhood.* | **residential** | **middle-class, working-class** | **Asian, black, white, etc.** | **entire, whole** *Before long the whole neighbourhood knew about it.*
- VERB + NEIGHBOURHOOD **move into** *A lot of new families have moved into the neighbourhood.*
- NEIGHBOURHOOD + NOUN **police, policing** | **school**
- PREP. **around/round the ~** *There were various parks around the neighbourhood.* **in a/the ~** *There was a large school in the neighbourhood.* **outside a/the ~** *It was a car from outside the immediate neighbourhood.*

nerve *noun*

1 in the body

- ADJ. **sensitive, trapped** | **facial, optic, spinal, etc.**
- VERB + NERVE **damage, strain, trap** *I've trapped a nerve in my spine.*
- NERVE + VERB **go, lead, run** *The nerve runs from the eye to the brain.* | **transmit sth** *The nerves transmit pain.* | **throb** *He lay awake, his nerves throbbing.*
- NERVE + NOUN **cell, end, ending, fibre, tissue** | **pathway** | **impulse** | **damage, injury** | **gas**
- PREP. **along a/the ~** *The message travels along the nerve to the brain.* | **~ in** *He's been off work with a trapped nerve in his back.* **~ to** *Cutting the nerves to the stomach does not affect hunger.*
- PHRASES **every nerve in sb's body** *Intense pain shot through every nerve in his body.* **hit a nerve, touch a (sensitive/raw) nerve** (*figurative*) *My remarks about divorce had unwittingly touched a raw nerve.*

2 **nerves** mental state

- ADJ. **good, steady** | **bad, frayed, ragged, shattered, taut** *At the end of a day's teaching, her nerves were absolutely shattered.*
- VERB + NERVES **stretch** *Her nerves were stretched to breaking point.*
- NERVES + VERB **be on edge** *After the bomb, my nerves were on edge.* | **jangle** *His nerves jangled every time the phone rang.* | **stand** *I'm not sure my nerves can stand another night like this.*
- PREP. **~s for** *Skydiving is all right for people who've got the nerves for it.*
- PHRASES **a battle/war of nerves** *The union has been fighting a war of nerves with the management over pay.* **get on sb's nerves** *His endless whining really gets on my*

nerves. **nerves of steel** *You need nerves of steel to be a good poker player.* **a strain on sb's nerves** *Looking after him while he was so ill has been a great strain on her nerves.*

3 nerves nervous state

- ADJ. **exam, first-night** *I've never suffered from first-night nerves.*
- VERB + NERVES **calm, control, soothe, steady** *She took a few deep breaths to calm her nerves.* | **suffer from**
- PHRASES **an attack of nerves** *I had an attack of nerves just before I went on stage.* **a bag/bundle/mass of nerves** *By the time of the interview, I was a bundle of nerves.*

4 courage

- ADJ. **sufficient**
- VERB + NERVE **have** *I didn't have the nerve to ask.* | **lack** | **lose** *At the last minute she almost lost her nerve.* | **keep** *He kept his nerve to win a thrilling match.* | **find** *You must find the nerve to ask for more money.* | **take** *It took a lot of nerve to stand up and speak.*
- NERVE + VERB **break, crack, fail (sb)** *At the last moment her nerve failed her.*
- PHRASES **a failure/loss of nerve, a test of nerve** *Singing in front of so many people was a real test of nerve.*

nervous *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** *Both men appeared nervous.* | **become, get, grow** | **make sb** *Sit down—you're making me nervous!*
- ADV. **desperately, extremely, highly, really, very** *He had worked himself up into a highly nervous state.* | **increasingly** | **almost** | **a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat** | **suddenly** | **clearly, obviously** | **understandably**
- PREP. **about** *nervous about the wedding* **at** *nervous at what might happen* **of** *I was slightly nervous of him.*

nervous breakdown *noun*

- ADJ. **complete**
- VERB + NERVOUS BREAKDOWN **have, suffer**
- PHRASES **the brink/edge/verge of a nervous breakdown** *The stress of her job had brought her to the brink of a nervous breakdown.*

nervousness *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, extreme, great** *With great nervousness she followed him.* | **increasing** | **slight** | **initial**
- VERB + NERVOUSNESS **feel** | **betray, show (signs of)** *She managed to speak without betraying her nervousness.* | **cover, hide** *She laughed to hide her nervousness.* | **overcome** | **sense** *I could sense his nervousness.*
- PREP. **from ~** *I was babbling from nervousness.* **out of ~** *He found himself chattering away out of nervousness.* | **~ about** *her nervousness about working with children* **~ at** *He felt some nervousness at the prospect of meeting her.*
- PHRASES **a sign of nervousness** *Adjusting your tie is often a sign of nervousness.*

nest *noun*

- ADJ. **ant's, bird's, wasp's, etc.**
- VERB + NEST **build, make** | **sit on** *The male and female take turns to sit on the nest.* | **fly, leave** *The young ones have flown the nest.*
- NEST + NOUN **site** *The male uses song to attract a female to his nest site.* | **hole**
- PREP. **away from a/the ~** *A rat took the egg while the mother was away from the nest.* **in/inside a/the ~** *The snake will attack if disturbed inside its nest.* **on a/the ~** *The female spends all her time on the nest.*

nestle *verb*

- ADV. **comfortably, safely**
- PREP. **against** *She sat back, nestling against his chest.* **among** *The town nestles comfortably among the hills.* **between, in** *a tiny village nestling in a valley*

net *noun*

- ADJ. **fine, fine-mesh** | **safety** | **fishing** | **mosquito**
- VERB + NET **mend** *The fishermen were mending their nets.* | **cast, spread (out)** | **haul in** | **slip through** (*often figurative*) *We tried to contact all former students but one or two slipped through the net.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Unfortunately the animals are often caught in fishing nets.* **into a/the ~** *The ball went into the net.* **over the ~** *to hit the ball over the net*

nettle *noun*

- ADJ. **stinging** | **dead** (= a variety that does not sting)
- QUANT. **clump, patch**
- VERB + NETTLE **cut (down), get rid of**
- NETTLE + VERB **grow** | **sting** | **spread** *The nettles had spread and now covered half the garden.*
- PREP. **in (the) ~s** *There was an old car half buried in the nettles.* **on ~s** *The butterflies lay their eggs on nettles.*

network *noun*

- ADJ. **extensive, large, vast, wide, widespread** | **complex, elaborate, intricate** | **dense** | **strong** *a strong network of friends* | **supportive** | **global, local, national, worldwide** | **communications, telephone** | **bus, motorway, rail, railway, road** | **social** | **news, radio, television** | **computer** | **distribution, support** | **integrated**
- VERB + NETWORK **build up, create, establish, form, set up** *They are establishing a network of pumps and pipelines to move the oil.* | **form** *The new rail services will form a network connecting the capital and major cities.* | **run** *They were unable to run the telephone network economically.* | **manage** *software to help you manage your network*
- PREP. **across a/the ~** *Users can access data across a network.* **in a/the ~** *Members are all linked together in a network.* **on a/the ~** *All computer users are connected on a network.* **over a/the ~** *The files are accessible over a network.* **through a/the ~** *Drinking water is brought to the village through a network of underground pipes.* **via a/the ~** *The newspapers are sent out via a national distribution network.* | **~ of** *a network of motorways*

⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION

neurosis *noun*

- ADJ. **individual, personal** | **anxiety, obsessional**
- VERB + NEUROSIS **have**
- PREP. **~ about** *the director's neurosis about actors arriving late for filming*

neutral *adj.*

1 not supporting either side

- VERBS **be** | **remain, stay**
- ADV. **strictly** *The government maintained its strictly neutral policy.* | **completely** | **basically, broadly** *The Russians took a broadly neutral position.* | **politically** *The meeting must be at a politically neutral location.*
- PREP. **about** *neutral about this issue*

2 not showing strong qualities/feelings/colour

- VERBS **be, seem** *Her expression seemed neutral.* | **remain** | **keep sth** *Dolly kept her voice carefully neutral.*
- ADV. **perfectly** | **fairly, quite, relatively** *She chose fairly neutral make-up.* | **apparently** | **carefully**

3 not affected by sth

- VERBS **be, seem**

• ADV. **culturally, ethically, ideologically, morally, politically** *Behaviour is never culturally neutral.*

• PHRASES **gender neutral** *She argued that the law should always be gender neutral* (= apply in exactly the same way to men and women).

neutrality *noun*

• ADJ. **political | armed** *a policy of armed neutrality.*

• VERB + NEUTRALITY **declare, proclaim** *Switzerland declared its neutrality.* | **maintain, preserve**

• PREP. **~ between** *the commission's neutrality between Protestants and Catholics*

neutralize *verb*

• ADV. **effectively** *This strategy effectively neutralized what the Conservatives had hoped would be a vote-winner.*

• PREP. **with** *Discarded acid should be neutralized with alkali before disposal.*

new *adj.*

1 recently built/made

• VERBS **be, look** *The car still looks quite new.*

• ADV. **brand, spanking** *a scratch on my brand new car* ◇ *very proud of their spanking new kitchen* | **fairly, quite**

2 different/not familiar

• VERBS **be** *These ideas are not entirely new.*

• ADV. **very | completely, entirely, quite | fairly, quite**

• PREP. **to** *It was all very new and strange to me.* ◇ *She's still quite new to the job and needs a lot of help.*

• PHRASES **be nothing new about/in sth** *There is nothing new in teenagers wanting to change the world.*

news *noun*

1 new information

• ADJ. **encouraging, excellent, good, great, marvellous, terrific, tremendous, welcome, wonderful** *The good news is that we've all been given an extra day's leave.* ◇ *Great news! We've bought the house.* | **bad, gloomy, grim, sad, terrible, tragic, unwelcome | dramatic, important, momentous | hot, late, latest, recent** *Some late news has just come in.* | **old, stale | exciting, interesting | front-page** *It was front-page news at the time.* | **domestic, home, local, national, regional | foreign, international | business, City, financial | sports, tennis, etc.**

• QUANT. **bit, item, piece** *We've had a bit of good news.*

• VERB + NEWS **get, have, hear, learn, receive** *Have you heard the latest news?* | **catch up on** *I want to catch up on all your news.* | **announce, break, bring (sb), give sb, tell sb** *The police had to break the news to the boy's parents.* | **spread** *She ran from office to office, spreading the exciting news.* | **leak** *News of their engagement was leaked to the press.* | **report** *I haven't really got any news to report.* | **carry** *'The Daily Nation' carried news of the event.* | **gather, get** *It's the reporter's job to go out and gather news.* | **await, expect, wait for** *They are waiting for news of their relatives.* | **greet, react to, welcome** *The news was greeted with astonishment.* | **make** *It was a very minor incident and barely made the news.*

• NEWS + VERB **come, come in, come through** *News is coming in of a large fire in central London.* | **break, leak out** *The news broke while we were on holiday.* | **spread, travel** *The news spread like wildfire.*

• NEWS + NOUN **bulletin, flash, item, release, report, story** *Programmes were interrupted for a news flash.* | **coverage** *News coverage of the fighting was extremely biased.* | **conference** *The former manager gave his first news conference since being sacked.* | **agency, service | programme | editor | source | media**

• PREP. **at the ~** *She went completely to pieces at the news of his death.* **in the ~** *She's been in the news a lot lately.* **with the ~** *Joan came in with the news that a pay rise had been agreed.* | **~ about** *I'm not interested in news about celebrities.* **~ from** *And now with news from the Games, over to our Olympic correspondent.* **~ of** *news of fresh killings* **~ on** *Is there any news on the car bomb attack?* **~ to** *It was news to me that they'd got married.*

2 the news on TV or radio

• ADJ. **radio, television, TV | evening, lunchtime, nine o'clock, etc.**

• VERB + NEWS **hear, listen to, see, watch | turn on | broadcast | read** *The news is read by Harriet Daly.*

• PREP. **in the ~** *Our school was mentioned in the news.* **on the ~** *I heard it on the ten o'clock news.*

newspaper *noun*

• ADJ. **daily, evening, morning, Sunday, weekly | today's, yesterday's | independent, left-wing, right-wing | local, national, provincial, regional | broadsheet, quality | tabloid | popular | financial | folded, rolled-up**

• QUANT. **copy** *Have you got a copy of yesterday's newspaper?* | **edition** *today's edition of the newspaper*

• VERB + NEWSPAPER **buy, get, take** *Do you take a daily newspaper?* | **flick through, read | print, produce, publish | edit, write for/in | appear in** *Her article appeared in the Saturday newspaper.* | **get into**

• NEWSPAPER + VERB **come out** *The newspaper comes out every Saturday.*

• NEWSPAPER + NOUN **article, clipping, column, coverage, cutting | baron, magnate, owner | correspondent, editor, reporter | kiosk, shop, stand**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *an article in a local newspaper* **on a/the ~** *She got a job on a national newspaper.*

nice *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste** *I felt nice and cosy.* ◇ *That bread smells nice.* ◇ *His mother sounded very nice on the phone.* | **make sth** *I tidied the room to make it nice for the others when they came home.*

• ADV. **awfully, exceptionally, extremely, incredibly, jolly, really, terribly, very** *an awfully nice man* | **perfectly, thoroughly** *I'm sure she's perfectly nice really.* | **not particularly** *It had not been a particularly nice experience.* | **pretty, quite, rather | enough** *Some of the boys were nice enough, but she didn't want to go out with them.*

• PREP. **about** *He was incredibly nice about it, though I am sure it caused him a lot of trouble.* **for** *It's nice for Mum to get out more.* **to** *Can't you be nice to each other for once?*

• PHRASES **nice little** *It's a nice little place you've got here.*

niche *noun*

• ADJ. **right, suitable | distinctive, particular, special | little** *He had found his own little niche in life.* | **market | ecological**

• VERB + NICHE **have** *Each animal has its ecological niche.* | **find, identify, see, spot** *He saw a niche in the market and exploited it.* | **carve out, create, establish, secure** *She's carved out quite a niche for herself in fashion design.* | **fill, occupy | exploit**

• NICHE + NOUN **market, marketing | product**

• PREP. **in/into a/the ~** *These animals are moving into the niche left vacant by the disappearance of the big predators.* | **~ for** *There's a niche for a small stylish car.* **~ in** *women who dared question their niche in society*

• PHRASES **a niche in the market**

nickname *noun*

• VERB + NICKNAME **give sb | acquire, get** *He got his nickname 'Ash' from his heavy smoking.* | **earn (sb) | live up to** *Leicester Tigers lived up to their nickname in a very attacking game.*

- NICKNAME + VERB **stick** *He got his nickname when he was at school and it stuck for the rest of his life.*
- PREP. **~ for** *'Chalky' is a common nickname for people called White.*
- PHRASES **hence her/his nickname** *He worked in a garage—hence his nickname 'Spanner'.*

nicotine *noun*

- ADJ. **pure**
- VERB + NICOTINE **be addicted to, be dependent on | be stained with**
- NICOTINE + NOUN **addiction, craving | addict | patch, substitute | stain** *The nicotine stains on his fingers told me he was under stress.*
- PHRASES **dependence on nicotine**

night *noun*

1 when it is dark and most people sleep
- ADJ. **last, tomorrow | Friday, Saturday, etc. | early, late** *I think I'll have an early night* (= go to bed early). **| long | winter, etc. | bad, restless, sleepless | black, dark | clear, moonlit, starlit, starry | cold, stormy | wedding**
- VERB + NIGHT **have | spend** *They spent the night in Bristol.* **| stay** *Ask your Mum if you can stay the night.*
- NIGHT + VERB **fall** *When it came the night fell quickly.* **| progress, wear on** *As the night wore on it grew colder.*
- NIGHT + NOUN **air, sky | duty, shift**
- PREP. **at ~** *lying awake at night* **by ~** *Paris by night* **during/in the ~** *I woke in the night.* **for a/the ~, on Friday, etc. ~, per ~** *The hotel costs £65 per person per night.* **through/throughout the ~**
- PHRASES **all night long, at this time of night, day and night/night and day** (= all the time), **a good night's sleep, good night** *She kissed him good night.* **in the dead of night** (= in the middle of the night), **morning, noon and night** (= all the time)

2 time between late afternoon and when you go to bed
- ADJ. **last, tomorrow | Friday, Saturday, etc. | the other** *I saw her the other night* (= a few nights ago).
- NIGHT + NOUN **school**
- PREP. **at ~** *She doesn't like to walk home late at night.* **by ~, on Friday, etc. ~**

3 evening when a special event happens
- ADJ. **first, opening | last** *the last night of the play's run* **| big, great, memorable | dance, election, quiz**
- PHRASES **make a night of it** *They decided to make a night of it and went on to a club.* **a night out** *Fancy a night out?*

nightclub *noun*

- ADJ. **top** *a top London nightclub* **| seedy**
- VERB + NIGHTCLUB **go to | run**
- NIGHTCLUB + NOUN **bouncer, owner, singer, staff**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *She's performing at a nightclub in Paris.* **in a/the ~** *He was murdered in a London nightclub.*

nightmare *noun*

1 bad dream
- ADJ. **awful, horrible, terrible, terrifying | continuing, recurring**
- VERB + NIGHTMARE **have, suffer | wake (up) from | give sb** *The film gave me nightmares.*
- PREP. **~ about** *I have nightmares about drowning.*

2 bad/feared experience
- ADJ. **absolute, awful, horrible, real, terrible, terrifying | worst** *Losing a child is my worst nightmare.* **| personal | living** *The refugees had survived a living nightmare.* **| administrative, bureaucratic, financial, etc.**
- VERB + NIGHTMARE **endure, face, suffer, survive | become, prove, turn into** *Their dream of living in the country turned into a nightmare when they both fell seriously ill.* **| create | escape (from)**
- NIGHTMARE + VERB **be over | come true**
- NIGHTMARE + NOUN **scenario, vision** *the nightmare scenario of mass unemployment* ◇ *The writer evokes a nightmare vision of a future on a polluted planet.* **| world | journey**

nipple *noun*

- ADJ. **pert, pointed | erect, hard, rigid, swollen, taut | sensitive, sore**
- VERB + NIPPLE **suck**
- NIPPLE + VERB **harden, rise, stiffen, tighten**

nod *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, brisk, quick, imperceptible, little, slight, small | curt, perfunctory, terse** *He dismissed them with a curt nod.* **| approving, satisfied** *She inspected my work and gave a satisfied nod.* **| reassuring | passing** (*figurative*) *He gave a passing nod* (= a brief acknowledgement) *to the show that had launched his career.*
- VERB + NOD **give (sb)** *My teacher gave me a nod of reassurance and I began.* **| get** *He's ready to play and just waiting to get the nod from the team coach.* **| wait for**
- PREP. **at a ~, with a ~ | ~ from** *At a nod from Lawton, he gently turned the handle.* **~ in the direction of, ~ of** *a nod of approval* **~ to, ~ towards** *'I couldn't have done this alone', he said with a nod towards his wife.*
- PHRASES **a nod of sb's/the head** *She answered with an almost imperceptible nod of the head.*

nod *verb*

- ADV. **just, merely, only, simply** *Ashamed, I could only nod.* **| fervently, furiously, vigorously, violently** *'That's exactly it,' she said, nodding vigorously.* **| gently** *She nodded gently to herself.* **| almost imperceptibly, slightly | slowly | quickly | abruptly, briefly, briskly, curtly** *He nodded curtly and walked away.* **| jerkily, stiffly | dumbly, mutely, silently, wordlessly** *She could not speak but just nodded mutely.* **| absently, abstractedly, vaguely** *He nodded absently, his mind obviously on other things.* **| meekly | politely, respectfully | amiably, cheerfully, happily | appreciatively, approvingly, eagerly, encouragingly, enthusiastically, gratefully, sympathetically, understandingly | doubtfully, reluctantly | coolly | grimly | glumly, miserably, sadly | gravely, seriously, solemnly, thoughtfully | intelligently, sagely, wisely** *She nodded sagely as she listened.* **| back**
- PREP. **at** *They nodded at us, so we nodded back.* **in** *She nodded in agreement.* **to** *She nodded to Duncan as she left.* **towards** *'Let's go,' he said, nodding towards the door.* **with** *He nodded with satisfaction.*

noise *noun*

- ADJ. **deafening, loud | awful, horrible, terrible | low, slight** *The slightest noise will wake him.* **| sudden | funny, strange | background** *There was constant background noise from the motorway.* **| constant, incessant | banging, buzzing, clattering, etc. | aircraft, engine, traffic | rude** *One of the children made a rude noise.*
- VERB + NOISE **create, generate, make** *the noise created by aircraft* ◇ *She was making a lot of noise.* **| hear, listen to** *We could hear funny little sucking noises.* **| deaden, reduce** *Wood is used to deaden the noise.*
- NOISE + VERB **come from sth** *There were strange noises coming from the sitting room.* **| become/get/grow louder, grow, increase, rise | abate, die away/down, drop, fade away, fall** *The deafening noise of the machine dropped to a rumble, then stopped.*
- NOISE + NOUN **level | pollution**
- PREP. **above/over the ~** *We had to shout over the noise of the traffic.* **| ~ from** *the noise from the engine room*

noisy *adj.*

- VERBS **be | get, grow** *The party was getting a bit noisy.*
- ADV. **deafeningly, extremely, particularly, really, terribly, very | a bit, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, rather**

nominate *verb*

- ADV. **formally, officially**
- VERB + NOMINATE **ask sb to, invite sb to** *Ten critics were asked to nominate their Book of the Year.*
- PREP. **as** *He has now been formally nominated as presidential candidate.* **for** *She was nominated for a special award.* **to** *He has been nominated to the committee.*
- PHRASES **the power/right to nominate sb**

nomination *noun*

- ADJ. **presidential | Democratic, Republican, etc. | Oscar, etc.**
- VERB + NOMINATION **secure, win | stand for** *She is standing for the Democratic Party presidential nomination.* **| accept | withdraw | support | invite** *Nominations are invited for the post of party chairman.* **| seek** *She is seeking nomination as a candidate in the elections.*
- NOMINATION + NOUN **form, paper | process**
- PREP. **~as** *She has withdrawn her nomination as chairman.* **~for** *his nomination for the Best Actor award* **~to** *He will not accept nomination to the committee.*

nominee *noun*

- ADJ. **presidential | Democratic, Republican Party, etc. | Oscar, etc.**
- VERB + NOMINEE **appoint**
- PREP. **through a/the~** *They were acting through nominees.* **| ~for** *the nominees for Best Director*

nonchalance *noun*

- ADJ. **cool**
- VERB + NONCHALANCE **affect, feign, pretend** *She shrugged, feigning nonchalance.*
- PREP. **with~** *declining the offer with cool nonchalance*
- PHRASES **an air of nonchalance** *'Oh, by the way ...' she started, with a false air of nonchalance.*

non-existent *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become** *Services for customers on public transport are becoming non-existent.*
- ADV. **completely, totally** *The hotel turned out to be completely non-existent.* **| almost, practically, virtually** *Crime is almost non-existent in these communities.*

nonsense *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, arrant, complete, pure, total, utter** *Most of his theories are arrant nonsense.* **| superstitious** *You don't believe that superstitious nonsense, do you?*
- VERB + NONSENSE **talk** *Don't talk nonsense!* **| put up with, stand** *I'm not going to stand any more of this nonsense.* **| stop** *Just stop this nonsense of refusing to talk to anybody.* **| believe**
- PREP. **~about** *What's all this nonsense about you giving up your job?*
- PHRASES **a load/lot of nonsense** *People are talking a lot of nonsense about him being the new Michael Jordan.* **make (a) nonsense of sth** *This decision makes absolute nonsense of all our hard work.*

noon *noun*

- ADJ. **12** *The football action starts at 12 noon.* **| high** *the glaring light of high noon*
- PREP. **around~, at~, by~, till/until~**
- PHRASES **morning, noon and night** (= all the time)

noose *noun*

- ADJ. **hangman's**
- VERB + NOOSE **fasten, tie | pull, tighten | make**
- NOOSE + VERB **tighten**
- PREP. **in/into a/the** *He put his head into the noose.* **| ~around/round** *They tied a noose round her neck.*

norm *noun*

- ADJ. **accepted, established | ethical, moral | cultural, social | statistical | community, family, group**
- VERB + NORM **conform to** *Their behaviour conforms to the group norm.* **| break, challenge | deviate from, differ from**
- PREP. **above the~, below the~, over the~** *They want to discourage pay settlements over the norm.* **| ~for** *Onscreen editing has become the norm for all student work.* **~of** *accepted norms of behaviour*
- PHRASES **a deviation/departure from the norm, an exception to the norm, the norm rather than the exception** *In the inner-city areas, poverty is the norm rather than the exception.*

normal *noun*

- VERB + NORMAL **be/go back to, return to** *After a week of festivities, life returned to normal.*
- PREP. **above~** *The rainfall has been above normal for the time of year.* **below~** *Sales to December are well below normal.* **near~** *His pulse rate had slowed to somewhere near normal.*

normal *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem | become | consider sth, regard sth as, view sth as** *It is now regarded as normal for women to work outside the home.*
- ADV. **very | completely, perfectly, quite** *It started out as a perfectly normal day.* **| fairly, near, pretty** *I'd say it was pretty normal to be upset if your house burned down.*
- PREP. **for** *The temperature is near normal for spring.*
- PHRASES **as normal** *First work out the answers as normal.* **in the normal way** *Go for your check-ups in the normal way until you are six months pregnant.* **in/under normal circumstances** *Under normal circumstances Martin would probably have gone to university.* **sb's normal self** *Mandy doesn't seem her normal self today.*

normality *noun*

- VERB + NORMALITY **restore, return to**
- PHRASES **a return to normality** *A complete return to normality may take weeks.* **some semblance of normality** *By now any semblance of normality had disappeared.*

north *noun*

- ADJ. **magnetic, true | frozen** *the white expanses of the frozen north*

⇨ Note at DIRECTION (for more collocates)

nose *noun*

1 part of the face

- ADJ. **big, bulbous, enormous, huge, large, long, prominent, strong | little, small, stubby, tiny | straight | aquiline, curved, Roman | beaky, crooked, hooked | snub, tip-tilted, turned-up, upturned | pointed, sharp** *The sharp nose and thin lips gave his face a very harsh look.* **| narrow, thin** *She had dark eyes and a long narrow nose.* **| flat, flattened | aristocratic, elegant | pink, red, shiny** *He stuck his bulbous red nose back into his pint of beer.* ◇ *She dressed up as a clown with a white face and red* *nose.* | **blocked, congested, dripping, runny, snotty** *a child with a runny nose* | **bleeding, bloodied, bloody, broken, swollen** | **wet** *The dog pushed its wet nose into my palm.* | **sensitive** *Cats have very sensitive noses and rely heavily on scent markings.* | **pierced** | **false** *I had to wear a black moustache and false nose for the role.*

- VERB + NOSE **breathe through** | **blow, wipe** | **pick, rub, scratch** | **tap** *He tapped his nose in a knowing gesture.* | **wrinkle** *She wrinkled her nose as if she had just smelt a bad smell.* | **break, split** | **turn up** (*figurative*) *The children turn up their noses at almost everything I cook.* | **look down** (*figurative*) *People who live in that area tend to look down their noses at their poorer neighbours.*
- NOSE + VERB **wrinkle** *His nose wrinkled with distaste.* | **twitch** | **point** *She walked with her shoulders back and her nose pointing skyward.* | **run** *She was weeping quite loudly and her nose was running.* | **bleed**
- NOSE + NOUN **job** *She wasn't happy with her appearance so she had a nose job.* | **bleed** (also **nosebleed**)
- PREP. **through the ~** *Breathe in through your nose and out through your mouth.* **up your ~** *The boy sat there with his finger up his nose.*
- PHRASES **the bridge of the nose** *He pushed his glasses up the bridge of his nose.* **(put/stick, etc.) your nose in the air** (*often figurative*) *She walked in with her nose in the air, ignoring everyone.* **press your nose against sth** *Charlie pressed his nose against the window.*

2 front part of a vehicle

- ADJ. **blunt**
- VERB + NOSE **push down, put down** *He pushed the nose down for the final approach.*
- NOSE + VERB **dip, drop** *The plane's nose dipped as it started descending towards the runway.*
- NOSE + NOUN **cone, section** | **dive** (also **nosedive**)
- PHRASES **nose to tail** *The traffic was nose to tail for miles.*

nostalgia *noun*

- ADJ. **great** | **pure** *an evening of pure nostalgia*
- QUANT. **wave** *A wave of nostalgia came over him.*
- VERB + NOSTALGIA **feel** *He thought back to his time as a student and felt no nostalgia for any of it.* | **evoke** | **indulge in, wallow in**
- NOSTALGIA + NOUN **buff** *Nostalgia buffs gathered for the auction of wartime memorabilia.* | **trip** *The college reunion was a great nostalgia trip.*
- PREP. **with ~** *I remember it with great nostalgia.* | **~ for** *She felt great nostalgia for the old way of life.*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of nostalgia**

nostril *noun*

- VERB + NOSTRIL **clog, fill** *The stench of the cellar filled my nostrils.*
- NOSTRIL + VERB **dilate, flare**
- NOSTRIL + NOUN **hair**
- PREP. **in your ~s** *The smell of decay lingered in her nostrils.* **through your ~s** *She drew on the cigarette and blew smoke through her nostrils.*

notable *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **especially, particularly**
- PREP. **for** *The drawing room is particularly notable for its splendid oak panelling.*

note *noun*

1 short letter

- ADJ. **brief, little, quick, short** *Just a quick note to wish you luck.* | **handwritten** | **covering, credit, delivery, love, promissory, ransom, sick, suicide, thank-you**
- VERB + NOTE **scribble (sb), write (sb)** | **send (sb)** | **leave (sb)** *She left me a note to say my supper was in the fridge.*
- PHRASES **a note of thanks**

2 (often **notes**) words that you write down quickly

- ADJ. **brief** | **copious, detailed** | **scrappy** | **lecture** | **case, clinical, medical**
- VERB + NOTE **jot down, keep, make, take** *She kept detailed notes of her travels.* | **go through, look through, read through, sift through**
- PREP. **~ of** *I've made a note of the book's title.* **~ on** *The catalogue has full notes on each artist.*
- PHRASES **make a mental note (of sth/to do sth)** *She made a mental note to ring them in the morning.*

3 (usually **notes**) extra piece of information

- ADJ. **detailed** | **explanatory** | **introductory** | **marginal** | **biographical** | **briefing, programme, usage**

4 piece of paper money

- ADJ. **crumpled** | **five-pound, ten-euro, etc.**
- QUANT. **bundle, roll, wad** *a thick wad of notes*

5 single musical sound

- ADJ. **high, top** *She's a bit wobbly on the top notes.* | **low** | **right** | **wrong** | **musical** | **dissonant** | **chromatic, diatonic**
- VERB + NOTE **play, sing** | **hit, strike** | **hold**

6 quality/feeling

- ADJ. **brighter, cheerful, happier, lighter, optimistic, positive** *On a brighter note ...* | **discordant, jarring, sad, sour** | **faint** | **serious** | **right** *His opening remarks struck the right note.* | **odd** | **false** | **cautionary, warning** *He sounded a cautionary note.* | **personal**
- VERB + NOTE **hit, sound, strike** | **inject, introduce** *His remarks injected a note of levity into the proceedings.* | **detect** *I detected a faint note of weariness in his voice.* | **end on** *The conference ended on an optimistic note.*
- NOTE + VERB **creep into/enter sb's voice**
- PREP. **~ of** *A note of suspicion entered his voice.*
- PHRASES **a note in sb's voice** *There was a sad note in her voice.* **on a brighter/happier, etc. note**

7 notice/attention

- ADJ. **careful**
- VERB + NOTE **take** *He took careful note of the suspicious-looking man in the corner of the bar.*
- PHRASES **worthy of note** *The frescoes are worthy of note.*

note *verb*

- ADV. **carefully** | **in passing** *He noted in passing that the government's record on unemployment was not very good.* | **duly** *Her lapse was duly noted by the stage manager and reported to the director.* | **above, already, earlier, previously** *These policies, as noted above, are not always successful.* | **approvingly** | **ruefully**
- VERB + NOTE **should** *Visitors should note that the tower is not open to the public.* | **be important to** | **be interesting to** | **be pleased to** *I was pleased to note that my name had been spelt correctly for once.*
- PHRASES **be worth noting** *There are a few points here that are worth noting.* **it must/should be noted that ... , a point to note** *There are two other points to note from this graph.*

notebook *noun*

- ADJ. **bound, leather-bound, spiral-bound** | **loose-leaf** | **pocket** | **shorthand** | **reporter's**
- VERB + NOTEBOOK **enter sth in, jot sth down in, record sth in, scribble (sth) in, write sth down in, write (sth) in** | **draw (out), get out, pull out, take out** *She drew a notebook from her bag.* | **tear a page/sheet from, tear out a page/sheet of** | **consult** | **fill** | **carry** | **keep** *She kept a notebook during the trip.*
- NOTEBOOK + NOUN **computer**

- PREP. **in a/your~**
- PHRASES **an entry in a notebook**

noted *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **especially, particularly**
- PREP. **for** *The lake is also noted for its bird population.*

noteworthy *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become | make sth** *the thing that makes this era so noteworthy* | **consider sth** *His reign has never been considered particuarly noteworthy.*
- ADV. **especially, particularly**
- PREP. **for** *The bridge is noteworthy for its sheer size.*

notice *noun*

1 attention

- VERB + NOTICE **take** *Take no notice of what you read in the papers.* | **come to** *Normally such matters would not come to my notice.* | **bring to** | **attract** *The change was too subtle to attract much notice.*

2 written statement

- ADJ. **warning**
- VERB + NOTICE **issue, place, post, put up** *The company has issued warning notices saying that all water should be boiled.* | **take down** | **read, see**
- NOTICE + VERB **appear, go up** *The notice about his resignation went up this morning.* | **say sth, tell sb sth**
- PREP. **~about** *There are notices about where to park.*

3 information given in advance

- ADJ. **written | advance, prior | short | reasonable**
- VERB + NOTICE **give, hand in your** *She's given notice that she intends to leave.* | **have, receive | need, require** *The bank requires three days' notice.*
- PREP. **without~** *They cut off the electricity without notice.* | **~of** *A landlord must give reasonable notice of his intention to inspect the property.*
- PHRASES **at a moment's notice** *The team is ready to go anywhere in the world at a moment's notice.* **at short notice** *It's the best we can do at such short notice.* **notice to quit** *His landlord gave him two months' notice to quit.* **on a month's/week's, etc. notice** *She's on a week's notice, which doesn't give her long to find another job.*

notice *verb*

- ADV. **not even** *My mum probably won't even notice I'm gone.* | **not really** *Nobody really noticed the changes.* | **barely, hardly, scarcely** | **(only) just** *I must go! I've only just noticed how late it is.* | **suddenly** | **at once, immediately** *He noticed at once that something was wrong.* | **quickly, soon** | **eventually, finally**
- VERB + NOTICE **fail to** | **not appear to, not seem to** *He didn't seem to notice her.*
- PHRASES **can't/couldn't help noticing sth** *You couldn't help noticing how his eyes kept following her.*

noticeable *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **especially, extremely, particularly, very | barely, hardly, scarcely | quite | immediately** *The smell was immediately noticeable when you walked in the front door.*
- PREP. **in** *These changes are more noticeable in women than in men.* **to** *This may not be noticeable to people from outside New York.*

notification *noun*

- ADJ. **formal, official, written | advance, prior**
- VERB + NOTIFICATION **have, receive | give (sb)**
- PREP. **without~** *The police are entitled to inspect the premises without notification.* | **~of** *They failed to give notification of their intention to demolish the building.*

notify *verb*

- ADV. **forthwith, immediately | in advance | by post, in writing | formally**
- VERB + NOTIFY **be obliged to, be required to, must, should** *If you see anything suspicious you should notify the police immediately.* | **fail to**
- PREP. **of** *All applicants will be notified of the result by post.* **to** *Changes must be notified to the chairman.*

notion *noun*

- ADJ. **absurd, peculiar, ridiculous | hazy, vague | faintest, foggiest** *I haven't the faintest notion how to get there.* | **romantic | accepted, conventional, traditional | preconceived | general** *There seems to be a general notion that nothing can be done about the problem.* | **simple, simplistic**
- VERB + NOTION **have** *He's got some vague notion that people will be queueing up to finance the project.* | **reject | accept | support | dispel** *We must dispel this notion that you can rely on the state for everything.*
- PREP. **~of** *They have come to reject the traditional notion of womanhood.*

notoriety *noun*

- ADJ. **sudden | certain | international, public**
- VERB + NOTORIETY **have | achieve, gain** *He achieved sudden notoriety when the details of his private life were revealed.* | **bring**
- PREP. **~for** *This make of car has a certain notoriety for rust problems.*

noun *noun*

- ADJ. **plural, singular** *'Sheep' is both a singular and plural noun.* | **countable | mass, uncountable | feminine, masculine, neuter** *Most feminine nouns in Polish end in the letter 'a'.* | **common, proper** *Proper nouns begin with a capital letter.* | **abstract, concrete** *'Happiness' is an abstract noun.* ◇ *'Car' is a concrete noun.* | **collective** *'Flock' is a collective noun.*
- VERB + NOUN **decline, inflect** *English nouns are not usually inflected.* | **modify, qualify** *a prepositional phrase qualifying a noun* | **follow** *The noun is followed by an intransitive verb.* | **precede** *an adjective preceding the noun*
- NOUN + VERB **end in sth** *Most English plural nouns end in an 's'.* | **follow sth | precede sth**
- NOUN + NOUN **class, phrase**

nourish *verb*

- PHRASES **properly/well nourished** *Patients recover quickly if they are well nourished.*

nourishment *noun*

- ADJ. **adequate, proper, sufficient** *lack of adequate nourishment* | **vital | emotional, intellectual**
- VERB + NOURISHMENT **draw, get, obtain, take | deprive sb/sth of, provide (sb/sth with)**
- PREP. **~from** *Every animal in the food chain draws nourishment from other animals or plants.*

novel *noun*

- ADJ. **hardback, paperback | first** *a prize for the best first novel of the year* | **latest, new | literary | best-selling, popular | acclaimed** *his critically acclaimed novel* | **famous | classic | contemporary, modern | nineteenth-century, Victorian | adult, children's | autobiographical | epistolary** *Samuel Richardson's novels are all epistolary in form.* | **adventure, comic,**

crime, detective, historical, satirical, spy, realist, romantic
- QUANT. **copy** *I took a copy of a Graham Greene novel on the train with me.*
- VERB + NOVEL **produce, write | publish | read | accept (for publication), reject (for publication)** *Her first novel was finally accepted for publication.* | **translate | adapt** *adapting the novel for television* | **review**
- NOVEL + VERB **be based on sth** *The novel was based on a true life story.* | **be set, take place** *The novel was set in a small village in France.*
- PREP. **~about** *a novel about growing up*

novel *adj.*
- VERBS **be, sound** *The scheme sounded rather novel.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | rather, relatively | essentially**

novelist *noun*
- ADJ. **great, leading** *one of the country's leading contemporary novelists* | **famous | best-selling, popular** *his ambition to become a best-selling novelist* | **neglected | prolific | contemporary | nineteenth-century, Victorian | crime, historical, romantic, satirical**
- NOVELIST + VERB **write sth** *A prolific novelist, she wrote more than forty books.*

novelty *noun*
- ADJ. **great** *This tropical fruit is still a great novelty in Europe.* | **sheer** *The sheer novelty of the band's performance won them many fans.*
- NOVELTY + VERB **wear off** *The novelty of her new job soon wore off.*
- NOVELTY + NOUN **value** *A trip down a mine has great novelty value for most people.*
- PHRASES **be something of a novelty** *At that time the motor car was still something of a novelty.*

November *noun*

⇨ Note at MONTH

novice *noun*
- ADJ. **absolute, complete | young**
- NOVICE + NOUN **user** *The on-screen manual shows the novice user the basics of the program.* | **pilot, sailor, teacher, etc.**
- PREP. **~at** *I'm still a novice at the sport.* **~in** *a novice in politics*

nuance *noun*
- ADJ. **delicate, fine, slight, subtle** *A baby is sensitive to the slightest nuances in its mother's voice.* ◇ *the painting's subtle nuances of colour and texture* | **social** *It took a while to get used to the social nuances of the office.*
- VERB + NUANCE **understand** *Spectators may not understand all the nuances of the game.*

nude *adj.*
- VERBS **appear, be, lie, sit, stand** *He refused to appear nude in the film.* ◇ *She was lying nude on a beach towel.*
- ADV. **completely | almost | semi-**

nudge *noun*
- ADJ. **gentle, little | affectionate**
- VERB + NUDGE **give sb** *She gave me a gentle nudge in the ribs to tell me to shut up.* | **feel**

nudge *verb*
- ADV. **gently, playfully**
- PHRASES **nudge sb in the ribs** *She nudged him playfully in the ribs.*

nuisance *noun*
- ADJ. **great | awful, bloody** (*taboo*), **confounded, damned** *It's an awful nuisance having builders in the house all day.* | **private, public, statutory** (*all law*) *He was charged with committing a public nuisance.*
- PREP. **~to** *I don't want to be a nuisance to you.*
- PHRASES **make a nuisance of yourself**

null *adj.* **null and void**
- VERBS **be | become | render sth** *Their actions rendered the contract null and void.* | **declare sth** *They declared the agreement null and void.*

numb *adj.*

1 unable to feel pain
- VERBS **be, feel** *Robin's hand felt numb with cold.* | **become, go, turn** *His fingers were beginning to turn numb.*
- ADV. **completely | almost | slightly**
- PREP. **from** *My legs were numb from kneeling.*
- PHRASES **numb with (the) cold** *Their fingers were going numb with cold.*

2 unable to feel/think/react
- VERBS **be, feel, sound** *Her voice sounded numb.* | **leave sb** *The news left us numb and confused.*
- ADV. **totally** *Laura felt totally numb.*
- PREP. **with** *He felt numb with weariness and grief.*

number *noun*

1 symbol/word
- ADJ. **cardinal, decimal, ordinal | even, odd** *Houses on this side of the road have even numbers.* | **high, low | prime | random | lucky, unlucky** *Many people think 13 is an unlucky number.* | **winning** *the winning numbers in tonight's lottery*
- VERB + NUMBER **add, divide, multiply, subtract, take away** *Add all the numbers together, divide by ten, and take away the number you first thought of.*
- PHRASES **in round numbers** *There were about 150 there, in round numbers.* **number crunching** (= doing calculations) *There's more to accountancy than just number crunching.*

2 quantity/amount
- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, huge, inordinate, large, substantial, vast | record** *a record number of enquiries* | **disproportionate, surprising | fair, reasonable, significant** *We've had a fair number of complaints about the new phone system.* | **finite, infinite** *There are an infinite number of solutions to the problem.* | **equal** *The candidates received an equal number of votes.* | **maximum, minimum | average, mean, median | adequate, sufficient | limited, small | growing, increasing, rising | exact, precise** *Many people have died in the epidemic—the precise number is not known.* | **indefinite, unspecified | approximate | total**
- VERB + NUMBER **grow in, increase in** *Factories had increased in number between the wars.* | **decrease in, reduce in**
- NUMBER + VERB **double, grow, increase | decline, diminish, drop, dwindle, fall (off/down)** *Shark numbers have dwindled as a result of hunting.*
- PREP. **in~** *The paintings, twelve in number, are over 200 years old.*
- PHRASES **a decline/drop in numbers** *The decline in numbers of young people means that fewer teachers will be needed.* **a growth/an increase in numbers, few/limited/small in number** *Wild dogs are now few in number.*

3 for identifying sb/sth

• ADJ. **account, identity, registration, serial, etc. | flat, house**
• PREP. **at~** *We live at number 21.*

4 telephone number
• ADJ. **fax, phone, telephone | home, office, work | wrong** *I keep getting the wrong number.*
• VERB + NUMBER **call, dial, phone, ring | get**

number *verb*

• ADV. **clearly | consecutively, sequentially**
• PREP. **according to, by** *Each pigeon hole is clearly numbered by floor and by room.* **from, to** *Number the car's features from 1 to 10 according to importance.*

numerous *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become**
• ADV. **especially, particularly, very | increasingly | reasonably, relatively | enough, sufficiently** *By the mid-twelfth century pilgrims were numerous enough to merit a guidebook.*
• PHRASES **too numerous to list/mention** *The related publications are far too numerous to list individually.*

nurse *noun*

• ADJ. **qualified, registered, trained | staff** *the children's ward staff nurse* **| ward | junior, senior | ancillary, auxiliary | student, trainee | male | day, night | community, district | hospital, practice, school** *This is a job for the school nurse.* **| private | specialist | maternity, psychiatric, triage, veterinary**
• NURSE + NOUN **manager, practitioner, specialist, tutor | education**
⇨ Note at JOB

nursery *noun*

• ADJ. **day, residential, workplace**
• NURSERY + NOUN **school | class | education | teacher | facilities, provision | assistant | nurse**
• PREP. **at a/the~** *The children are at nursery three days a week.* **in a/the~** *She works as an assistant in a nursery.*

nursing *noun*

• ADJ. **general | clinical | geriatric, mental health, psychiatric, surgical | community, district | home, hospital | private**
• NURSING + NOUN **care, services, skills | home | staff | student | practice**
⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and more nouns)

nut *noun*

1 food
• ADJ. **cashew, pistachio, etc. | chopped, salted**
• VERB + NUT **crack, shell**
• NUT + NOUN **oil**

2 for screwing onto a bolt
• VERB + NUT **put on, screw on, tighten | loosen, remove, unscrew**

nutrition *noun*

• ADJ. **adequate, good, proper | inadequate, poor** *Many children at the school were found to be suffering from inadequate nutrition.*
• PHRASES **a source of nutrition**

nutritious *adj.*

• VERBS **be | make sth** *Adapt your usual eating regime to make it more nutritious.*
• ADV. **extremely, highly, very | fairly**

Oo

oar *noun*

• VERB + OAR **take** *We each took an oar.* | **pull on** *We pulled hard on the oars.* | **ship** *We shipped the oars to get through the narrow opening.*

oath *noun*

1 formal promise

• ADJ. **sacred, solemn** | **Hippocratic** *a doctor's Hippocratic oath*

• VERB + OATH **swear, take** *He took an oath of allegiance to his adopted country.* | **break, violate**

• PREP. **~of** *an oath of allegiance/loyalty*

2 in a court of law

• VERB + OATH **administer** *Only a judge is allowed to administer the oath.*

• PREP. **on~** *He swore on oath that he had never seen me before.* **under~** *Witnesses must testify under oath.*

3 swear word

• ADJ. **obscene**

• QUANT. **stream, string** *He muttered a stream of oaths.*

• VERB + OATH **mutter, utter**

oats *noun*

• ADJ. **rolled** | **porridge**

• QUANT. **field**

• VERB + OATS **grow** | **sow** | **cut, harvest**

• OATS + VERB **grow**

obedience *noun*

• ADJ. **absolute, complete, total** *He demands absolute obedience from his men.* | **blind, passive, unquestioning**

• VERB + OBEDIENCE **demand, exact, expect** | **owe** *All clergy owed obedience to their superior.* | **pledge, swear**

• PREP. **in~to** *She acted in passive obedience to her boss's directions.* | **~to** *The slaves had to swear obedience to their masters.*

obey *verb*

• ADV. **immediately, instantly** *She was used to having her orders instantly obeyed.* | **automatically, blindly, meekly, unquestioningly** | **eagerly** | **reluctantly**

• VERB + OBEY **have to, must** | **refuse to** *He refuses to obey the school rules.* | **fail to** | **be willing to** | **promise to**

• PHRASES **be only obeying orders** *At the trial the soldiers made the excuse that they were only obeying orders.* **a duty/an obligation to obey** *People have a moral duty to obey the law.* **sth has to be/must be obeyed** *Rules are rules and they must be obeyed.*

obituary *noun*

• VERB + OBITUARY **write** | **print, publish** | **read**

• OBITUARY + NOUN **column, page**

object *noun*

1 solid thing

• ADJ. **solid** | **inanimate** | **everyday, household** *Her paintings are of ordinary everyday objects.*

2 purpose

• ADJ. **main, primary, principal** | **sole** *My sole object is to get to the bottom of this mystery.*

• OBJECT + NOUN **lesson** *The plans are an object lesson in how to ruin a city centre.*

• PHRASES **the object of the exercise** *The object of the exercise is to score as many points as possible.*

object *verb*

• ADV. **strenuously, strongly, vehemently**

• VERB + OBJECT **can/could hardly** *It was your own idea in the first place, so you can hardly object now.* | **be entitled to, have a/the right to**

• PREP. **to** *a petition objecting to the scheme*

• PHRASES **object on the grounds that …** *I objected on the grounds that it was unkind to the animals.*

objection *noun*

• ADJ. **serious, strenuous, strong** | **valid** | **main, major, principal** | **fundamental** | **common**

• VERB + OBJECTION **lodge, make, raise, state** | **have** *I'd like to open a window, unless anyone has any objections.* | **meet, overcome** | **withdraw**

• PREP. **over the~s of** *She was appointed over the objections of certain members of the board.* | **~against** *a common objection against nuclear power* **~to** *The committee has raised serious objections to the plans.*

objective *noun*

• ADJ. **key, main, major, primary, prime, principal** | **broad, overall, overriding, ultimate** | **limited, narrow** | **long-term, short-term** | **clear, specific** | **stated** *The legislation has failed to achieve its stated objectives.* | **common** *The two groups are pursuing a common objective.* | **economic, educational, environmental, military, political, strategic** | **business, policy**

• VERB + OBJECTIVE **accomplish, achieve, attain, fulfil, meet, reach, satisfy, succeed in** *The department needs more money to fulfil its objectives.* | **fail in** | **agree, define, establish, formulate, identify, set, specify** *We need to establish a clear objective.* | **declare, state** | **promote, pursue**

• PREP. **in an/the~** *The party is radical in its objectives.* | **~of** *We succeeded in our prime objective of cutting costs.*

objective *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **remain**

• ADV. **truly, very** | **completely, purely, totally, wholly** *It is impossible to be completely objective.* | **fairly, quite, reasonably** | **apparently** | **supposedly**

obligation *noun*

• ADJ. **contractual, legal, statutory** | **moral, social** | **financial** | **family** *I can't travel next month because of family obligations.* | **professional** | **mutual**

• VERB + OBLIGATION **discharge, fulfil, meet** *The builders failed to meet their contractual obligations.* | **comply with, honour** | **have** *We have a moral obligation to help.* | **feel** | **owe** | **assume, incur, take on** | **impose**

• OBLIGATION + VERB **arise from sth** *obligations arising from your contract of employment*

• PREP. **under an~** *I am under no obligation to tell you my name.* **without~** *Our mortgage advice is given free and without obligation.* | **~to** *A lawyer owes an obligation of confidence to the client.*

obligatory *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | remain | make sth** *The college authorities have now made these classes obligatory.*
- ADV. **almost, practically | legally**
- PREP. **for** *It is obligatory for vets to be registered.*

oblige *verb*

- ADV. **duly** *The fans were looking for another goal and Owen duly obliged* (= scored). **| kindly**
- VERB + OBLIGE **be delighted to, be glad to, be (only too) happy to, be pleased to, be willing to** *The staff are always happy to oblige.* **| hasten to**
- PREP. **by** *Will you oblige by filling in this form?* **with** *Would you be willing to oblige us with some information?*

obliged *adj.*

1 forced to do sth

- VERBS **be, feel**
- ADV. **virtually** *Libel plaintiffs are virtually obliged to go into the witness box.* **| by law, contractually, legally** *Parents are obliged by law to send their children to school.* **| morally** *I felt morally obliged to do the best I could for her.*

2 grateful

- VERBS **be, feel**
- ADV. **much**
- PREP. **for, to** *I'm much obliged to you for helping us.*

obliterate *verb*

- ADV. **completely, entirely, totally** *The village was totally obliterated by the bomb.* **| almost, virtually**

oblivion *noun*

- ADJ. **political**
- VERB + OBLIVION **fade into, fall into, pass into, sink into, slide into | be rescued from, be saved from** *a minor masterpiece saved from oblivion* **| consign to** *Most of his work has now been consigned to oblivion.*
- PREP. **in ~** *He died in oblivion in a remote village.*

oblivious *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem** *Chiko appeared oblivious to the uproar.* **| become | remain | make sb** *His own arrogance made him oblivious to the criticisms of others.*
- ADV. **completely, quite, totally | almost | apparently, seemingly | clearly**
- PREP. **of** *oblivious of the stares of the whole town* **to** *She seemed almost oblivious to the crowds of reporters.*

oboe *noun*

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

obscene *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look | declare sth, deem sth, judge sth** *The book was declared obscene.*
- ADV. **really | utterly | almost | allegedly**

obscenity *noun*

- QUANT. **stream, string**
- VERB + OBSCENITY **mutter, scream, shout** *He shouted a stream of obscenities.*

obscure *verb*

- ADV. **completely, totally | almost | largely | half, partially, partly, slightly, somewhat | deliberately** *All trace of his working-class background was deliberately obscured.* **| easily** *Solo passages in this register are very easily obscured by other instruments.*
- VERB + OBSCURE **serve to, tend to** *The emphasis on social integration often served to obscure the real differences within the community.* **| allow sth to**
- PREP. **behind/beneath** *The moon was obscured behind a wall of cloud.*
- PHRASES **obscure the fact that …** *These figures obscure the fact that a lot of older people live in great poverty.* **obscure sth from view** *The house was obscured from view by a high hedge.*

obscure *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become** *The origins of the tradition have become obscure.* **| remain** *The motives behind this decision remain somewhat obscure.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | completely, totally | largely | fairly, rather, relatively, somewhat**

obscurity *noun*

- ADJ. **total | comparative, relative | political, professional | impenetrable** *poems of impenetrable obscurity*
- VERB + OBSCURITY **fade into, sink into, slip into | be plucked from, emerge from** *After many years, his scientific work emerged from obscurity.* **| be consigned to, be relegated to**
- PREP. **in ~** *He spent his early life in relative obscurity.*

observant *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **acutely, highly, very** *She was intelligent and highly observant.* **| fairly, quite**

observation *noun*

1 examination

- ADJ. **careful, close, detailed | direct | systematic | casual | empirical, scientific | clinical | astronomical**
- PREP. **for ~** *She was admitted to hospital for observation.* **under ~** *The police have had him under observation for several weeks.* **| ~ of** *The survey was based on direct observation of over 500 schools.*
- PHRASES **powers of observation** *an artist with acute powers of observation*

2 remark

- ADJ. **general | astute, keen, shrewd | interesting**
- VERB + OBSERVATION **make**
- PREP. **~ about** *He smiled, and made some observation about the weather.* **~ on** *her witty observations on life*

observe *verb*

1 notice/watch

- ADV. **carefully, closely | precisely | directly** *It is not possible to observe this phenomenon directly, but its effects can be seen in the rise in global temperatures.* **| actually** *It is the parents who actually observe these behavioural problems in their children.* **| just, simply** *You can learn a lot by simply observing.* **| generally, normally | quietly** *She stood there, quietly observing the domestic scene.* **| secretly | experimentally** *This phenomenon has been observed experimentally.*
- VERB + OBSERVE **be able to | be possible | be difficult to | be interesting to** *It is interesting to observe the reaction of the children to these changes.*
- PREP. **from** *unaware that she was being observed from the window*
- PHRASES **be commonly/frequently/widely observed** *This behaviour is commonly observed among several species of finch.* **be easily/readily observed, an opportunity to observe sb/sth**

2 make a remark

- ADV. **correctly, justly, rightly, shrewdly** *She correctly observed that there was very little difference between the two parties on domestic policies.* **| drily, sardonically, wryly | tartly | coldly, coolly** *'You took your time,' he*

observed coolly. | **conversationally** | **mildly, quietly** | **sadly**
- PREP. **to** *'It's easy for him to say that,' she observed tartly to Michael, 'but can he prove it?'*

3 obey rules
- ADV. **correctly, faithfully, scrupulously, strictly** *This procedure must be correctly observed.*
- VERB + OBSERVE **fail to**
- PHRASES **failure to observe sth** *Failure to observe club rules may result in expulsion.*

observer *noun*
- ADJ. **casual** *To the casual observer, it would have looked like any other domestic argument.* | **informed** | **accurate, acute, astute, careful, experienced, keen, seasoned, shrewd** | **sceptical** | **sympathetic** | **detached, impartial, neutral** | **external, independent, outside** *Independent observers will monitor the elections.* | **foreign, international** | **American, Western, etc.** | **industry, military** *Some military observers fear the US could get entangled in another war.* | **human**
- VERB + OBSERVER **send** *sending observers to check the conduct of the elections* | **attend sth as** | **impress, puzzle, strike, surprise** *The suddenness of this move surprised many observers.*
- OBSERVER + VERB **attend sth** *The talks were attended by observers from eight Arab countries and Israel.* | **monitor sth**
- OBSERVER + NOUN **status** *The country was granted observer status at the summit.*
- PREP. **as an ~** *I attended the conference as an observer.*

obsession *noun*
- ADJ. **dangerous, unhealthy** | **current**
- VERB + OBSESSION **become** *Don't let this interest of yours become an obsession.*
- PREP. **~ with** *I don't understand television's current obsession with cookery programmes.*
- PHRASES **in the grip of an obsession** *He was in the grip of an obsession and would not listen to reason.*

obsolete *adj.*
- VERBS **be** | **become** | **make sth, render sth** *Their work is now rendered obsolete by machines.*
- ADV. **totally** | **increasingly** | **largely** | **almost, practically, virtually**

obstacle *noun*
- ADJ. **big, chief, main, major** | **enormous, formidable, serious** *The attitude of the unions is a serious obstacle.* | **impossible, insuperable, insurmountable** *Lack of money has proved an almost insurmountable obstacle.*
- VERB + OBSTACLE **pose, prove, remain** | **come across, encounter** | **overcome, remove, surmount** *He was determined to overcome all obstacles in his way.*
- PREP. **~ for** *Lack of childcare provision can be a major obstacle for women wishing to work.* **~ to** *The huge distances involved have proved an obstacle to communication between villages.*
- PHRASES **an obstacle in the path/way (of sb/sth)** *The release of prisoners remains an obstacle in the path of a peace agreement.*

obstruct *verb*
- ADV. **deliberately, wilfully** (*law*) *wilfully obstructing a police officer in the execution of his duty*
- PREP. **in**

obstruction *noun*
- ADJ. **physical** | **unlawful, wilful** (*law*) | **bureaucratic** *The asylum seekers had to contend with continued bureaucratic obstruction.*
- VERB + OBSTRUCTION **cause, create** *The lorry had been parked on the pavement, causing an obstruction.* | **clear, remove** *She had to have surgery to remove an obstruction from her throat.*

obstructive *adj.*
- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **positively** | **quite** | **deliberately** *He doesn't really have an alternative suggestion; he's just being deliberately obstructive.*

obtain *verb*
- ADV. **fraudulently, unlawfully** (*law*)
- VERB + OBTAIN **be able/unable to** | **attempt to, endeavour to** | **fail to** | **assist sb to, enable sb to** *The local authority may assist you to obtain alternative accommodation.* | **be easy to, be possible to** | **be difficult to, be impossible to** *goods which are difficult to obtain* | **be necessary to, be required to, need to** *It is necessary to obtain the patients' consent.*
- PREP. **from** *Anglers are required to obtain prior authorization from the park keeper.*
- PHRASES **be easily obtained** *Such information is easily obtained from the Internet.* **sth can/may be obtained** *Details of this offer can be obtained from any of our stores.* **a means/method/way of obtaining sth**

obtainable *adj.*
- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **easily, readily** | **commercially**

obvious *adj.*
- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound** | **become** *It soon became obvious that the machine did not work.* | **make sth** *His manner made it obvious he didn't like her.*
- ADV. **blatantly, blindingly, extremely, glaringly, patently, transparently, very** | **completely, perfectly, quite** *The answer is perfectly obvious!* | **increasingly** | **by no means, far from, less than, not at all, not entirely** *It was far from obvious how they were going to get off the island.* | **a bit, fairly, pretty, rather** *I'm not going to tell Jim about this, for fairly obvious reasons.* | **apparently, seemingly** | **immediately** *It was immediately obvious that the bag was too heavy.* | **intuitively** *Avoid making intuitively obvious but unfounded assertions.* | **depressingly, distressingly, painfully** *It was becoming painfully obvious that the two of them had nothing in common.*
- PREP. **to** *It is obvious to me that you're unhappy in your job.*

occasion *noun*

1 time when sth happens
- ADJ. **many, numerous** *It was the first of many such occasions.* | **rare** | **previous** | **separate**
- VERB + OCCASION **recall, remember**
- PREP. **on an/the ~** *The police were called out on 24 separate occasions.* **on ~(s)** *He has even been known to go shopping himself on occasion.*
- PHRASES **a number of occasions** *I have stayed there on a number of occasions.* **on one occasion** *On one occasion he even rang me in the middle of the night.* **on that/this ~** *On this occasion, as it happens, the engine started immediately.*

2 suitable time
- ADJ. **right, suitable**
- OCCASION + VERB **arise** *I'll speak to him if the occasion arises.*
- PREP. **~ for** *It should have been an occasion for rejoicing.*

- PHRASES **have occasion to do sth** *Last year we had occasion to visit relatives in Cornwall.*

3 special event

- ADJ. **auspicious, big, great, important, memorable, momentous, special | festive, happy, joyous | formal, sad, solemn | social | ceremonial, state** *The Queen's coach is only used for state occasions.*
- VERB + OCCASION **celebrate, mark** *a party to mark the occasion of their daughter's graduation* | **rise to** *The choir rose to the occasion and sang beautifully.*
- PHRASES **for all occasions, for every occasion** *We sell cards and notepaper for all occasions.* **a sense of occasion** *On the day of the wedding there was a real sense of occasion.*

occupant *noun*

- ADJ. **current, former, next, original, present, previous | sole** *The sole occupant of the car was an elderly man.*

occupation *noun*

1 job

- ADJ. **full-time | dangerous, hazardous | female, male** *Agricultural work is traditionally seen as a male occupation.* | **low-paid, well-paid | high-status, low-status | sedentary | managerial, professional, technical | skilled, unskilled | manual, non-manual | blue-collar, white-collar | industrial, service** *service occupations such as cleaning and catering*
- VERB + OCCUPATION **choose, find | take up | follow** *The people interviewed followed a variety of occupations* | **give up** *He gave up his occupation as a farmer and became a teacher.* | **resume | provide (sb with)**
- PHRASES **a range of occupations** *The college provides training in a wide range of occupations.*

2 control of another country

- ADJ. **continuing | military**
- VERB + OCCUPATION **begin, take up | be/remain in | give up** *The invaders have given up occupation of large parts of the territories.* | **resume**
- OCCUPATION + VERB **begin, end**
- OCCUPATION + NOUN **force, power | zone**
- PREP. **during the ~** *During the occupation, the church was used as a mosque.* **under ~** *Large parts of Britain were under Roman occupation.*

3 living in a room, house, etc.

- ADJ. **exclusive | joint, multiple** *the conversion of big old buildings to multiple occupation* | **peaceful** *the right to peaceful occupation of the property* | **land | illegal, unlawful** *illegal occupation of the premises*
- VERB + OCCUPATION **take up** *You can only take up occupation once the tenancy has been signed.* | **be/remain in, enjoy | share | give up | resume**
- PREP. **in ~ of** *He intends to remain in occupation of the building for as long as possible.*
- PHRASES **ready for occupation** *The flats will be ready for occupation by March.* **unfit for occupation** *The houses were judged to be unfit for human occupation.*

occupied *adj.*

1 being used by sb

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **densely** *the most densely occupied areas of the country* | **entirely** *The sofa was entirely occupied by two large cats.* | **permanently | illegally**

2 busy

- VERBS **be | become | keep sb** *We need something to keep the children occupied.*
- ADV. **fully | chiefly, mainly | busily | happily**
- PREP. **in** *You will be mainly occupied in checking sales records.* **with** *She was happily occupied with reading.*

occur *verb*

- ADV. **commonly, frequently | infrequently, rarely | sporadically | naturally** *These chemical changes occur quite naturally.* | **spontaneously** *Opportunities for learning occur spontaneously every day.*
- VERB + OCCUR **be likely to, tend to | be unlikely to**

occurrence *noun*

- ADJ. **common, everyday, widespread | daily, frequent, regular | rare, uncommon | isolated | strange, unexpected, unusual**
- VERB + OCCURRENCE **prevent | predict**
- PREP. **~ in** *These mild fits are quite a common occurrence in babies.*
- PHRASES **frequency of occurrence** *words with a high frequency of occurrence in language*

ocean *noun*

- ADJ. **deep | vast | great** *exploring the depths of the three great oceans* | **open** *A storm started up once we got out into the open ocean.* | **tropical, warm | southern** *penguins of the southern oceans*
- VERB + OCEAN **cross, sail | explore**
- OCEAN + NOUN **depths** *the darkness of the ocean depths* | **surface | bed, floor | basin | water | wave** *a life on the ocean wave* (= at sea) | **current | voyage | liner**
- PREP. **across the ~** *trade across the Atlantic Ocean* **in the ~** *Various toxic substances have been dumped in the ocean.*
- PHRASES **the bottom/depths/middle/surface of the ocean, the oceans of the world** *great ships that sailed the oceans of the world*

October *noun*

⇨ Note at MONTH

odd *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste | consider sth, find sth, think sth** *I find it odd that she takes so long to do that job.* ◇ *I didn't think it odd at the time.*
- ADV. **decidedly, distinctly, extremely, really, very** *There's something distinctly odd about her.* | **a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat**

odds *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great, high, impossible, insuperable, overwhelming, terrible** *She struggled against terrible odds to overcome her illness.* | **long, short** *Sometimes an outsider will win at long odds, but not often.* ◇ *The bookmakers are offering only short odds on the favourite.*
- VERB + ODDS **offer, quote | lay** *I'll lay odds we never see him again.* | **reduce, shorten | beat, defy, overcome** *She defied the odds to beat the clear favourite.*
- ODDS + VERB **shorten | lengthen**
- PREP. **against the ~** *The film is a heart-warming tale of triumph against the odds.* | **~ against** *The odds against their survival have lengthened.* **~ of** *They were offering odds of ten to one.* **~ on** *The odds on the outsider were 100–1.*
- PHRASES **against all (the) odds** *Against all the odds, we managed to get through to the final.*

odour *noun*

- ADJ. **foul, obnoxious, offensive, unpleasant | musty, stale | heavy, pungent, strong | faint | sweet | characteristic, distinctive, familiar, unmistakable | body**
- VERB + ODOUR **emit, give off**
- ODOUR + VERB **emanate from sth**
- PREP. **~ from** *odours from the local brewery*

offence *noun*

1 illegal act

- ADJ. **grave, heinous, major, serious | lesser, minor, petty, trivial | alleged | statutory | arrestable, bookable, imprisonable, indictable, punishable, sackable** *The offence is punishable by up to three months' imprisonment.* | **criminal, disciplinary | driving, political, sexual, terrorist** *Motorists may be fined on the spot for driving offences such as speeding.* | **violent | drug-related**
- PREP. **~against** *offences against public decency*

⇨ Note at CRIME (for verbs)

2 hurt feelings

- VERB + OFFENCE **cause, give | take**
- PREP. **~at** *He takes offence at the slightest joke against him.* **~to** *I didn't mean to give offence to anyone.*
- PHRASES **no offence (intended/meant)** *No offence intended, but are you sure your calculations are right?*

offend *verb*

- ADV. **deeply, gravely, greatly** *He knew that he had offended her deeply.* | **mortally | slightly | easily** *He was very sensitive and easily offended.*
- VERB + OFFEND **be likely to** *Omit anything that is likely to offend people.* | **be anxious not to, be careful not to, not mean to, take care not to** *She stopped mid-sentence, anxious not to offend him.*
- PREP. **against** *Viewers complained that the programme offended against good taste.*
- PHRASES **feel/look/sound offended** *She sounded offended when she replied.*

offender *noun*

1 person who commits a crime

- ADJ. **alleged | convicted | first** *As a first offender, he received a lenient sentence.* | **persistent | adult, juvenile, young | sex**
- VERB + OFFENDER **sentence**

2 sb/sth that causes trouble

- ADJ. **main, worst** *As regards pollution, old diesel-engined vehicles are the worst offenders.*

offensive *noun*

- ADJ. **all-out, full-scale, major | army, guerrilla, military, terrorist | air, bombing | ground | diplomatic, government**
- VERB + OFFENSIVE **launch, mount | be on, go on, take** *She took the offensive, challenging her critics to prove their allegations.*
- PREP. **~ against** *The government is launching an all-out offensive against the drug cartels*

offensive *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | consider sth, deem sth, find sth, think sth** *He's always making rude remarks about women. I find that deeply offensive.*
- ADV. **deeply, downright, extremely, grossly, highly, very | quite, rather | deliberately**
- PREP. **to** *This sort of attitude is very offensive to black people.*

offer *noun*

1 of help or sth that is needed

- ADJ. **generous, kind | conditional, unconditional | job | peace**
- VERB + OFFER **make (sb)** *He made me an offer I simply couldn't refuse* | **withdraw | accept, take up | decline, refuse, turn down**
- PREP. **on~** *the range of goods on offer* | **~from** *I had to turn down a job offer from a theatre because the pay was too low.* **~of** *They refused our offer of help.*

2 special price/deal

- ADJ. **special | cheap | free** *I got the conditioner in a free offer with my shampoo.* | **introductory** *Your first order is delivered free as an introductory offer.*
- PREP. **on~** *We have a number of bargains on offer.*

3 amount of money

- ADJ. **acceptable, attractive, fair, favourable, reasonable | tempting | high, low** *We realized we would not get a higher offer.* | **final, initial | firm, formal** *Several people have made enquiries but no one has made a firm offer.* | **lucrative | pay | takeover | cash**
- VERB + OFFER **make (sb), put in | withdraw | get, receive | listen to** *I'll listen to any reasonable offer.* | **accept | reject, turn down | increase, up** *They just kept upping their offer until I had to say yes.*
- OFFER + NOUN **price**
- PREP. **under~** *The property is currently under offer to a client.* | **~for** *Several people put in an offer for the house.* **~of** *They accepted our offer of £80 000.*
- PHRASES **be open to offers** *The asking price is £500 but I'm open to offers.* **or near offer** *They are selling their car for £2 500 or near offer.*

offer *verb*

1 give/provide sth; ask if sb would like sth

- ADV. **generously, kindly | helpfully | impulsively** *'Do you need any help?' he offered impulsively.*
- VERB + OFFER **be able/unable to, can/could** *the protection that life insurance can offer* | **appear to, seem to** *The plan seemed to offer real advantages.* | **fail to | be pleased to** (*formal*), **would like to** *I refer to your recent application and interview and am pleased to offer you the post of editor.* | **aim to, seek to | claim to** *They claim to offer a more comprehensive service than other firms.* | **be expected to, be likely to** *This investment is likely to offer a higher return.* | **be/feel compelled to, be forced to, be/feel obliged to** *She felt obliged to offer him a bed for the night.* | **have little/a lot/nothing, etc. to, have sth to** *This player has proved that he still has a lot to offer* (= can still play well). ◇ *The open evening is a chance to see what the college has to offer students.*
- PREP. **to** *She offered drinks to her guests.*

2 say that you will pay a certain amount

- VERB + OFFER **be able/unable to, can/could | be prepared to, be ready to, be willing to** *Would they be prepared to offer any more?*
- PREP. **for** *They have offered over £500 000 for the house.*

offering *noun*

- ADJ. **latest | peace** *I think the present she sent you was intended as a peace offering.* | **burnt, sacrificial, votive**
- VERB + OFFERING **make | accept**
- PREP. **~from** *The latest offering from this young band is their best album yet.* **~of** *offerings of food and drink* **~to** *They made sacrificial offerings to the gods.*

office *noun*

1 room/building where written work is done

- ADJ. **big, huge, large, spacious | cramped, small, tiny | plush | high-rise | five-storey, ten-storey, etc. | glass-fronted, glass-walled | busy, noisy | open-plan | air-conditioned | electronic, paperless | permanent, temporary** *The company set up its first permanent offices in the city centre.* | **private** *The prime minister arranged a meeting in his private office.* | **central, head, main | area, branch, district, local, overseas, regional, subsidiary | administrative, editorial, press, sales, etc. | council, government, newspaper, etc.**
- VERB + OFFICE **manage, run, supervise | come/go into, come/go to** *I sometimes go into the office on Saturdays when we're busy.* | **arrive at, get to | leave** *What time do you usually leave the office?*

- OFFICE + NOUN **job, work | hours** *Call this number outside normal office hours.* | **colleague, staff, worker | life | gossip, politics | party** *We have an office party every Christmas.* | **administrator, assistant, cleaner, clerk, manager | boy, girl, junior** (*all old-fashioned*) | **desk, door, equipment, furniture, safe, shredder, software, stationery | system, technology | environment** *Working in a busy office environment can be stressful.* | **accommodation, block, building, complex, development, premises, space, suite** *The old warehouses have been redeveloped for office accommodation.* | **facilities, services** *The conference centre provides office facilities such as computers and faxes.* | **expenses, overheads | administration, management | skills | procedures, routine**
- PREP. **at the ~** *I sometimes have to stay late at the office.* **in the ~** *I'm sorry, Mr Anders is not in the office today.*

2 official position

- ADJ. **exalted, great, high, important | minor | lucrative, prestigious | hereditary | national, public | ecclesiastical, judicial, ministerial, political**
- VERB + OFFICE **run for, stand for** *He ran for office in the last presidential election.* | **hold, remain in, retain, stay in** *The president holds office for a period of four years.* | **be appointed to, be elected to | be re-elected to, be returned to** *The government was returned to office by a large majority.* | **assume, be sworn into, come into, come to, enter, take, take up** *Martin was sworn into office as prime minister in March.* ◇ *The Labour Party took office in 1997.* | **give up, leave, lose, relinquish, resign from, retire from, vacate | be driven from, be forced from, be removed from, be suspended from, be turned out of**
- OFFICE + NOUN **holder**
- PREP. **in ~** *The government seemed likely to remain in office for the next five years.* **out of ~** *breaking promises made when out of office*
- PHRASES **a candidate for office, duties of the office, a term of office** *to be re-elected for a second term of office*

officer *noun*

1 in the army, navy, etc.

- ADJ. **air force, army, military, naval | commanding, high-ranking, ranking, senior, superior** *The decision rests with the ranking officer* (= the most senior officer present). | **junior, petty | commissioned, non-commissioned | recruiting | duty** *He telephoned the duty officer at regimental headquarters.* | **uniformed | retired**
- VERB + OFFICER **salute** *to salute a superior officer*
- OFFICER + VERB **command sth** *the officer commanding the infantry*
- OFFICER + NOUN **cadet, corps**

⇨ Note at RANK

2 in the government or other organization

- ADJ. **chief, principal, senior | full-time, part-time | presiding, responsible, supervising** *Report the incident to the responsible officer.* ◇ *the officer responsible for implementing the scheme* | **regional | administrative, customs, environmental health, financial, liaison, medical, press, trading standards, training, welfare**
- VERB + OFFICER **be, work as | be appointed (as), become | have** *The charity has a full-time press officer working with the national newspapers.*

3 policeman/policewoman

- ADJ. **police | chief, senior, superior | junior | investigating | duty** *We spoke to the duty officer at the police station.* | **uniformed | plain-clothes | undercover**
- OFFICER + VERB **investigate sth** *officers investigating the murder* | **patrol sth | raid sth, swoop on sth** (*informal*) *Officers raided an address in south London, seizing bomb-making equipment.* | **seize sth | arrest sb**

⇨ See POLICEMAN

official *noun*

- ADJ. **high-ranking, prominent, senior, top | junior, minor | local, provincial, regional | departmental | public | full-time, part-time | elected | permanent | retired | responsible** *Report the incident to the responsible official.* ◇ *the official responsible for handling the case* | **corrupt | bank, company, corporate, council, court, customs, government, judicial, military, ministry, party, royal, state, (trade) union**
- VERB + OFFICIAL **appoint (sb), appoint sb as | consult, meet | bribe** *attempting to bribe local officials*

off-putting *adj.*

- VERBS **be | find sth** *I find it very off-putting when people don't look me in the eye.*
- ADV. **distinctly, very | a bit, a little, rather, slightly** *The noise was rather off-putting.*

offset *verb*

- ADV. **largely, substantially | completely, exactly | more than** *The company's losses in the USA were more than offset by gains everywhere else.* | **partially, partly**
- VERB + OFFSET **help (to)** *The money will help offset big medical bills.*
- PREP. **against** *Your donations to charity can be offset against tax.*

offside *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look | catch sb, rule sb** *an attempt to catch an opponent offside* ◇ *He was ruled offside by the referee.*

oil *noun*

1 used as fuel/to make machines work smoothly

- ADJ. **heavy | light | crude | refined | offshore | engine, fuel, heating, lubricating, motor | linseed, paraffin** *Use a rag soaked in linseed oil.*
- QUANT. **barrel | film** *a rod coated with a film of oil* | **drop**
- VERB + OIL **extract, obtain, produce | drill for** *The company is drilling for oil in the North Sea.* | **discover, find, hit, strike | pump | export, import | burn, use | change** (in a car, etc.) | **soak sth in | smell of** *The place smelled of paint and oil.*
- OIL + NOUN **company, producer | industry, production | drilling, exploration | field, rig, well | drum | tanker | refinery | prices, revenue | slick, spill, spillage** *a seven-mile-long oil slick off the Scottish coast*

2 used in cooking

- ADJ. **cooking | polyunsaturated | rancid | coconut, cod liver, fish, groundnut, olive, sesame, sunflower, vegetable** *a bottle of extra virgin olive oil* | **salad**
- VERB + OIL **heat | boil sb/sth in, cook sth in, fry sth in | drizzle, pour** *Toast the bread, rub with garlic and drizzle over a little olive oil.*
- PREP. **in ~** *Fry the potato in a little sunflower oil.*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

3 used as a cosmetic/medicine

- ADJ. **aromatic, fragrant, scented | essential** *extracting essential oils from flowers* | **body, hair | baby, bath | aromatherapy, massage | castor, evening primrose, lavender, etc.**
- VERB + OIL **massage/rub into, massage/rub sth with** *She rubbed a scented oil into her hair.* | **anoint sb/sth with** *The sick were anointed with oil.* | **extract**
- PREP. **~ of** *oil of rosemary*

oily *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look | become**
- ADV. **very | rather, slightly** *He had rather oily hands.* |

naturally *Lank or naturally oil hair is often difficult to care for.*

ointment *noun*

- QUANT. **tube**
- VERB + OINTMENT **apply, put on, rub on** *He put some ointment on the cut.*

OK (*also* okay) *adj., adv.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste | do, go** *I think I did OK in the exam.* ◇ *I hope the meeting goes OK.*
- ADV. **perfectly, quite** *I'm quite OK now, thanks.*
- PREP. **~ by sb** *John has suggested meeting at six, and that's OK by me.* **~ with sb** *Is it OK with you if I come about six?*

old *adj.*

1 age
- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *You are as old as you feel.*
- ADV. **enough** *He's old enough by now to manage his own affairs.*
- PHRASES **six months, ten years, etc. old**

2 not young
- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** *The way the young people rushed about made her feel old.* ◇ *He was beginning to look old.* | **become, get, grow** *We're all getting older.* ◇ *As they grow older, they develop new interests.*
- ADV. **extremely, terribly, very | fairly, quite** *She was quite old when she got married.*

3 not new
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, really, terribly, very** *It's a very old tradition.* | **fairly, quite**
- PHRASES **oldest known** *These are some of the oldest known fossil remains.* **oldest remaining** *It's one of the oldest remaining parts of the church.* **oldest surviving** *It's the world's oldest surviving ship.*

4 shows affection/lack of respect
- PHRASES **boring/silly old** *boring old history books* ◇ *She's a silly old cow!* **dear/good old** *Good old Dad!* **funny old** *It's a funny old world.* **poor old** *You poor old thing!* **same old** *always the same old faces*

old age *noun*

- ADJ. **advanced, extreme | good** *He attained a good old age and died content.* | **happy** *She can look forward to a happy old age.* | **lonely** *fears about a lonely old age*
- VERB + OLD AGE **attain, live to, reach, survive into** *All my grandparents survived into advanced old age.* | **approach | look forward to | dread**
- OLD AGE + NOUN **pension, pensioner**
- PREP. **in (your) ~** *Loss of hearing often occurs in old age.* ◇ *He took up golf in his old age.* **into ~** *She was now well into old age.*
- PHRASES **the grand/ripe old age of sth** *She lived to the ripe old age of 98.*

old-fashioned *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem | become | consider sth, regard sth as, see sth as** *Wearing a hat is regarded as rather old-fashioned nowadays.*
- ADV. **terribly, very | plain** *It was plain old-fashioned instinct, the gut feeling that something was wrong.* | **a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat | curiously** *His clothes were curiously old-fashioned.*
- PREP. **in** *She's somewhat old-fashioned in her attitudes.*
- PHRASES **call me old-fashioned** *Call me old-fashioned, but I still believe in good manners.*

ombudsman *noun*

- ADJ. **consumer, insurance, local government, pensions** *A pensions ombudsman has been appointed.*
- VERB + OMBUDSMAN **appoint**

omen *noun*

- ADJ. **good | bad, evil, ill** *They took the storm as a bad omen.*
- VERB + OMEN **take sth as**
- PREP. **~ for** *The sunny weather was a good omen for the holiday.* **~ of** *an omen of death*

omission *noun*

- ADJ. **important, major, serious | complete | glaring, notable, obvious | curious, strange, surprising | deliberate | inadvertent**
- VERB + OMISSION **correct, rectify, remedy**
- PREP. **by ~** *Several offences such as manslaughter may be committed by omission.* | **~ from** *her omission from the guest list*
- PHRASES **an act or omission** *The accident was not caused by any act or omission of the transport company.* **errors and/or omissions, a sin of omission**

omit *verb*

- ADV. **altogether, completely, totally | accidentally, inadvertently | deliberately | conspicuously | controversially** *He was controversially omitted from the World Cup side.* | **wrongly**
- PREP. **from** *Some important details were deliberately omitted from the report.*

one-sided *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **very | totally, wholly | far from** *The violence was far from one-sided* (= both people, teams, etc. were violent). | **a little, rather, somewhat** *Their relationship seems rather one-sided.*

onion *noun*

- ADJ. **raw | pickled | spring, red, Spanish**
- VERB + ONION **chop, peel, slice | brown, soften | cook, fry, sauté | garnish sth with** *Garnish with a little chopped spring onion.* | **grow**
- ONION + NOUN **ring | soup | skin | set | dome**
- PHRASES **cheese and onion** *cheese and onion flavoured crisps* **sage and onion** *sage and onion stuffing*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

onset *noun*

- ADJ. **rapid, sudden** *the sudden onset of the disease* | **slow | early | delayed, late**
- VERB + ONSET **delay | mark** *His first hit record marked the onset of an astonishing career.*
- PREP. **after the ~** *after the onset of sleep* **at the ~** *at the onset of the war* **before/prior to the ~, since the ~**

onslaught *noun*

- ADJ. **sudden** *She could not withstand such a sudden onslaught.* | **first, initial | latest | renewed | verbal**
- VERB + ONSLAUGHT **face** *to face the verbal onslaught of an angry teenager* | **resist, survive, withstand | launch, mount**
- PREP. **~ against/on** *a renewed onslaught against the proposed bill* **~ from** *the latest onslaught from the Russian team*

ooze *verb*

- ADV. **slowly | out** *Cream oozed out at the sides.*

- PREP. **from** *Blood oozed slowly from his wound.* **out of, with** (*figurative*) *He was oozing with contempt for us.*

opaque *adj.*

1 not clear enough to see through
- VERBS **be, look | become** *Add the rice to the pan and cook until it becomes opaque.*
- ADV. **very | completely | almost, nearly | relatively, slightly** *The glasses looked slightly opaque.*
- PREP. **with** *The windows were nearly opaque with grime.*

2 difficult to understand
- VERBS **be | become | render sth** *The complex administrative arrangements render the decision-making process somewhat opaque.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | completely | relatively, slightly, somewhat**

open *verb*

1 door, window, box, etc.
- ADV. **wide** *She opened all the windows wide to let some fresh air in.* | **slowly | gingerly** *Fred opened it gingerly and peered inside.* | **automatically** *The glass doors opened automatically for him.* | **out, up** *I opened out the map and laid it on the table.* ◇ *'Open up!' He hammered on the door.*
- VERB + OPEN **try to | manage to | fail to** *Her parachute failed to open.*

2 building, road, etc.
- ADV. **formally, officially | up** *opening up new markets*
- VERB + OPEN **be due to, be expected to, be scheduled to** *The museum is due to open next year.* | **hope to, intend to, plan to, want to, wish to**
- PHRASES **newly/recently opened** *the newly opened gallery of Western decorative art*

open *adj.*

1 not closed
- VERBS **be, gape, lie, stand** *The book lay open in front of him.* ◇ *The door stood open.* | **burst, clang, creak, fall, fly, judder, sag, swing** *The bag fell open.* ◇ *Suddenly the door flew open.* ◇ *The woman's mouth sagged open.* ◇ *The gate swung open.* | **remain | fling sth, flip sth, get sth, prise sth, pull sth, push sth, tear sth, throw sth, wrench sth, yank sth** *She flung the door open and rushed in.* ◇ *She flipped open Chris's diary.* ◇ *He tore the letter open.* | **have sth, hold sth, keep sth, leave sth** *She held the door open for them.* | **find sth, see sth** *I found the door open.*
- ADV. **fully, wide** *The door was wide open.* | **slightly**

2 honest and willing to talk
- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, completely, quite**
- PREP. **about** *She's very open about her mistakes.* **with** *I don't think you've been completely open with me.*

3 available for people to use
- VERBS **be | remain, stay** *In spite of the snow, the roads remained open.* ◇ *Some of the supermarkets stay open till ten.* | **keep sth** *We want to keep the village store open.*
- PREP. **to** *The car park is only open to residents.*

4 having begun
- VERBS **be | declare sth** *The Australian premier declared the Olympic Games open.*
- ADV. **officially** *The bridge is officially open now.*

opening *noun*

1 beginning
- ADJ. **successful | chess, conversational**
- OPENING + NOUN **day, night | lines, pages | gambit**
- PREP. **~to** *the famous opening to the novel*

2 hole; way in/out
- ADJ. **large, wide | narrow, small | window**
- VERB + OPENING **cut | block, seal**
- PREP. **~ in** *to cut an opening in the fence*

3 opportunity; job which is available
- ADJ. **new | possible | clear** (used in the context of sport and games) *He missed one of the clearest openings in the game.* | **career, political**
- VERB + OPENING **create** *Cooper created the opening for Russell to shoot the first goal.* | **give sb | miss**
- PREP. **~ for, ~ in** *career openings for biologists in the Ministry of Health*

4 ceremony
- ADJ. **grand | formal | official, royal, state** *the state opening of Parliament*
- VERB + OPENING **attend**
- OPENING + NOUN **ceremony**

openness *noun*

- ADJ. **greater, more** *There is a need for greater openness in government.* | **complete**
- VERB + OPENNESS **demonstrate, show**
- PREP. **~about** *her openness about her marital problems* **~to/towards** *He demonstrated an openness to change.*

opera *noun*

- ADJ. **comic, grand, light**
- VERB + OPERA **compose, write**
- OPERA + NOUN **singer, star | company | house | season | buff, lover**

⇨ Note at PERFORMANCE (for more verbs)

operate *verb*

1 machine
- ADV. **effectively, efficiently, reliably | continuously** *The machine can operate for 15 hours continuously at full power.* | **electrically, electronically, hydraulically, manually, remotely** (= by remote control) *The doors can be manually operated in the event of fire.*
- VERB + OPERATE **be designed to** *systems designed to operate at the highest speeds* | **be easy to** *The machinery is easy to operate.*
- PHRASES **battery operated**

2 business/system
- ADV. **effectively, efficiently, profitably, successfully | autonomously, independently | commercially** *The laboratory is still owned by the government but is now commercially operated.*
- VERB + OPERATE **be able to | be allowed to | continue to**
- PREP. **according to** *The government does not operate according to fixed rules.* **as** *We operate as an advisory service for schools.* **within** *Local authorities operate within a wider political system.*

operation *noun*

1 medical
- ADJ. **major | minor, small | life-saving, vital | emergency | routine | delicate** *a delicate eye operation* | **exploratory | surgical, transplant | heart, knee, etc.**
- VERB + OPERATION **have, undergo** *He had an operation to remove a tumour.* | **come through, survive** *She came through the operation very well.* | **carry out, perform** *the surgeon performing the operation*
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *She woke during the operation.* | **~ for** *an operation for a kidney problem* **~ on** *a major operation on his heart*

2 organized activity
- ADJ. **big, large-scale, major, massive | covert, undercover | combined, joint | tricky** *a tricky rescue operation* | **intelligence, military, naval, police | guerrilla | clean-up, drilling, mining, mopping-up, offensive, peacekeeping, relief, rescue, salvage, security** *UN*

troops supervised the relief operations. | **banking, building, business** *restrictions placed on business operations*
- VERB + OPERATION **begin, launch, mount, undertake** *The authorities launched a massive security operation in the city.* | **carry out, conduct** | **supervise**
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *during joint military operations*
- PHRASES **a theatre of operations** (= where military operations take place)

3 fact of sth functioning
- ADJ. **effective, efficient, smooth** | **day-to-day** *the smooth day-to-day operation of the department*
- VERB + OPERATION **come into** *A ceasefire came into operation in May.* | **bring/put sth into** | **cease** *The factory will cease operation at the end of the year.*
- PREP. **during ~** *The machine can get very hot during operation.* **in ~** *The current tax system has been in operation for ten years.*
- PHRASES **in/into full operation** *the only reactor in full operation*

operational *adj.*
- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **fully** *The equipment is now fully operational.*

operative *adj.*
- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **fully** *The new system will not become fully operative until next year.*

operator *noun*
1 person who connects telephone calls
- ADJ. **switchboard, telephone**
- OPERATOR + VERB **connect sb, put sb through** *I asked the operator to put me through to her office.*

2 person who works a machine, etc.
- ADJ. **experienced, skilled** | **unskilled** | **machine, plant** | **computer, lathe, radio, word processor, etc.**

3 person/company that does particular business
- ADJ. **big, small** | **private** | **holiday, tour, travel** | **cable (television), satellite, telecommunications, etc.** | **airline, bus, coach, ferry**

4 sb who is skilful at getting what they want
- ADJ. **shrewd, slick, smooth**

opinion *noun*
1 what you think about sb/sth
- ADJ. **good, high** | **low, poor** | **strong** | **conflicting, different, mixed** *Opinions are mixed regarding genetically-modified food.* | **honest** *If you want my honest opinion, I think the book is awful.* | **expert, informed, professional** | **considered** | **personal, subjective** | **objective** | **contrary, dissenting** | **majority** | **minority** | **second** *If in doubt about your diagnosis, get a second opinion.*
- VERB + OPINION **entertain, have, hold** | **air, express, give (sb), offer (sb), pass, state, venture, voice** *The bishop spoke without passing any opinion on the scandal.* | **ask sb, seek** *He asked me for my opinion on the course.* | **get** | **form** *I formed the opinion that he was not to be trusted.* | **change**
- OPINION + VERB **change** | **differ, vary** *Opinions differ as to when this wine should be drunk.*
- PREP. **in your ~** *In my opinion, golf is a dull sport.* | **~ about/on** *She holds strong opinions on education.* **~ as to** *opinions as to the merits of the scheme* **~ of** *He has a very high opinion of your work.*
- PHRASES **be of the opinion that ...** (*formal*) (= to believe or think that), **a difference of opinion** *a genuine difference of opinion between the experts* **in my humble opinion** (*humorous*), **a matter of opinion** *'London is wonderful.' 'That's a matter of opinion.'*

2 what people in general think about sth
- ADJ. **prevailing** | **general, popular, public** *Contrary to popular opinion, many adult cats dislike milk.* | **international, local, national** | **expert, informed, professional** | **academic, legal, medical, political**
- QUANT. **body** *This view is supported by a growing body of professional opinion.*
- VERB + OPINION **mould, shape** *attempts to shape public opinion*
- OPINION + VERB **be against sth, be in favour of sth** *Prevailing local opinion is against the new road proposals.* | **be divided** *Public opinion is divided on the subject of capital punishment.*
- OPINION + NOUN **poll** | **former, leader**
- PREP. **~ among** *Opinion among doctors is that the medication is safe.*
- PHRASES **climate of opinion** *in the present climate of opinion* **shades of opinion** *all shades of political opinion*

opium *noun*
- VERB + OPIUM **smoke**
- OPIUM + NOUN **poppy** | **den**

⇨ Note at DRUG (for more verbs and nouns)

opponent *noun*
1 person who plays against sb
- ADJ. **chief, main** | **dangerous, tough** | **worthy**
- VERB + OPPONENT **attack, hit** | **beat, defeat** | **get past, outfox, outmanoeuvre, outwit** | **face** *Today she faces her toughest opponent on Centre Court.* | **mark** | **tackle** | **bring down, foul**

⇨ Special page at SPORT

2 sb who disagrees with sb's actions/plans/beliefs
- ADJ. **chief, leading, main** | **bitter, fierce, formidable, strong, vigorous** | **outspoken, vocal, vociferous** | **worthy** | **political** | **government**

opportunity *noun*
- ADJ. **ample, considerable, plenty of** *We'll have plenty of opportunity to talk later.* | **limited, little, not much** | **excellent, favourable, golden, good, great, marvellous, tremendous, welcome, wonderful** *a golden opportunity to invest and export into new markets* | **exciting** | **ideal, perfect** | **suitable** | **reasonable** *We need to give them a reasonable opportunity to look at the display.* | **available** | **every** *Students should take every opportunity to widen their experience.* | **historic, once-in-a-lifetime, rare, unique, unparalleled, unprecedented, unrivalled** | **lost, missed, wasted** | **career, educational, employment, job, training** | **business, commercial, economic, investment, market, sales** *a missed sales opportunity* | **photo** (= an opportunity to take photographs of famous or important people) | **equal opportunities** (= the principle of treating all people the same, regardless of sex, colour, etc.) *an equal opportunities employer*
- VERB + OPPORTUNITY **have** | **find, get** *We didn't get much opportunity to swim.* | **afford, create, give sb, offer (sb), open up, provide (sb with)** *to provide better educational opportunities* | **grasp, seize, take (up), take advantage of** *May I take this opportunity to congratulate Ruth on her promotion.* | **lose, miss** *He lost no opportunity to vent his anger on those around him.* | **pass up**
- OPPORTUNITY + VERB **exist** | **arise, come, occur, offer** *When the opportunity came, I seized it with both hands.* ◇ *(formal) The company aimed to expand as and when opportunity offered.*
- PREP. **~ for** *The job will offer you excellent opportunities for promotion.*
- PHRASES **at the earliest/first (possible) opportunity, at every (available) opportunity, equality of opportunity, the opportunity of a lifetime, a window of opportun-**

ity *The ceasefire has created a window of opportunity to rescue the peace process.*

oppose *verb*

- ADV. **adamantly, bitterly, fiercely, firmly, hotly, resolutely, strenuously, strongly, vehemently, vigorously, violently** *We would vigorously oppose such a policy.* | **totally** *We totally oppose the use of gas to kill any animal.* | **actively** | **openly, publicly** | **successfully, unsuccessfully** *Environmental lobby groups successfully opposed the plan.* | **initially** *The ban was initially opposed by the US.* | **consistently** *The minister has consistently opposed any relaxation in the law.*
- VERB + OPPOSE **vote to** | **continue to**

opposed *adj.*

1 opposed to disagreeing strongly with sth
- VERBS **be** | **remain**
- ADV. **adamantly, bitterly, deeply, fiercely, firmly, fundamentally, implacably, profoundly, resolutely, strongly, vehemently, very (much), violently** | **absolutely, categorically, completely, directly, totally, utterly, wholly** | **largely** | **actively, openly, publicly** *the party most openly opposed to military rule*

2 very different from sth
- VERBS **be, seem, stand** | **remain**
- ADV. **completely, diametrically, directly, entirely, fundamentally, utterly** *Our views are diametrically opposed on this issue.* | **mutually** *The two sets of values seemed mutually opposed.*
- PREP. **to** *The path he saw himself taking in his research seemed directly opposed to the ethos of the department.*

opposite *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, direct, exact, precise, very** | **polar**
- OPPOSITE + VERB **be the case, be true** *The oboe tends to lose power in the upper register, but with the clarinet the opposite is the case.*
- PREP. **the ~ of/to** *Doubt is not the opposite of faith—unbelief is.* ◇ *In temperament, she was the complete opposite to her sister.*
- PHRASES **exactly/just/quite the opposite** *The effect was exactly the opposite to what he intended.*

opposition *noun*

1 disagreeing with sth/trying to change it
- ADJ. **bitter, considerable, determined, fierce, stiff, strong, vehement** | **violent** | **growing, mounting** | **effective, powerful** | **direct** *a statement in direct opposition to party policy* | **active** | **organized** | **political** | **public** | **widespread**
- VERB + OPPOSITION **express** | **mount, put up** *They mounted an effective opposition to the bill.* | **arouse** | **crush, overcome, stifle, suppress, wear down** | **be/come/run up against, encounter, face, meet (with), run into** *He is up against stiff opposition from his colleagues.* | **brook** *We will brook no opposition to the strategy.* | **strengthen** | **weaken**
- OPPOSITION + VERB **come from sb** *Opposition came primarily from students.*
- OPPOSITION + NOUN **force, group, movement**
- PREP. **against/in the face of ~** *She won against determined opposition from last year's champion.* **despite/in spite of ~** *The authorities succeeded despite bitter opposition from teachers.* **in ~ to** *The warring factions had united in opposition to the common enemy.* | **~ from** *The proposals met with violent opposition from the environmental lobby.* **~ to** *There was fierce public opposition to the plan.*

2 (usually **the Opposition**) parties not in government
- OPPOSITION + NOUN **party** | **candidate, leader, member, MP, politician, spokesman** | **bench**
- PREP. **in ~** *The Conservative Party is now in opposition.*
- PHRASES **the Leader of the Opposition**

oppression *noun*

- ADJ. **class, economic, political, racial, sexual** | **black, colonial, gay, women's** | **male**
- VERB + OPPRESSION **face, suffer** *ethnic minorities suffering oppression at the hands of occupying forces*

optician *noun*

- ADJ. **dispensing, ophthalmic** *A dispensing optician supplies glasses, but doesn't test your eyes.*
- PHRASES **at/to the optician's** *I've got to go to the optician's tomorrow.*

⇨ Note at DOCTOR (for verbs)

optimism *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great, tremendous** | **some** | **cautious, guarded** | **false, misplaced** *Her optimism turned out to be misplaced.* | **early, initial** *By 1960, the initial optimism had evaporated.* | **renewed**
- QUANT. **surge, wave** *The news caused a wave of optimism.* | **note** *There was a note of optimism in his voice.*
- VERB + OPTIMISM **express** | **share** *I find it hard to share his optimism.*
- OPTIMISM + VERB **prevail, reign** *Despite the crisis a cautious optimism prevailed.* | **evaporate**
- PREP. **with ~** *We can look to the future with considerable optimism.* | **~ about/over** *The government expressed optimism about the success of the negotiations.* **~ among** *renewed optimism among mortgage lenders* **~ for** *great optimism for the future*
- PHRASES **cause/grounds/reason for optimism** *There are now very real grounds for optimism.* **full of optimism** *The 1970s began still full of optimism.* **a mood/sense/spirit of optimism**

optimist *noun*

- ADJ. **eternal, incurable**
- PHRASES **ever the optimist** *Pete, ever the optimist, said things were bound to improve.*

optimistic *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, strongly, very** *He remained strongly optimistic that an agreement could be reached.* | **excessively, hopelessly, incredibly, overly, ridiculously, unduly, wildly** *These estimates were wildly optimistic.* | **a bit, fairly, a little, quite, rather, reasonably, somewhat** | **basically, essentially, generally** *an essentially optimistic view of human nature* | **cautiously, guardedly, quietly** *I don't want to exaggerate our chances, but I'm cautiously optimistic.* | **cheerfully**
- PREP. **about** *He's very optimistic about his chances.*

option *noun*

1 freedom to choose
- VERB + OPTION **have** *You have the option of taking your holiday early.* | **give sb**
- PREP. **with/without the ~ of** *He was jailed without the option of a fine.*
- PHRASES **have little/no option but to** *We had no option but to leave without them.*

2 sth you choose/can choose
- ADJ. **available, possible, viable** | **real, realistic** | **attractive, good** *Deciding on your best option is not easy.* | **preferred** | **practical** | **easy, soft** *He thought General*

Studies would be a soft option. | **cheap** | **expensive** | **policy** | **menu** (on a computer)

• VERB + OPTION **choose, exercise, select, take** *Look at the on-screen menu and select the 'File' option.* | **give sb, offer (sb)** | **limit** | **look at** *Let's look at all the options available.*

• PHRASES **keep/leave your options open** (= to avoid making a decision now so that you still have a choice later)

3 right to buy/sell sth at some time in the future

• ADJ. **first** | **share, stock**

• VERB + OPTION **have** | **exercise, take (up)** *She took up an option in her contract to buy three million shares.*

• PREP. **~ on** *He's promised me first option on his car.*

optional *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **entirely, purely** *The extra language classes are entirely optional.*

orange *noun*

• ADJ. **juicy** | **sour, sweet** | **mouldy**

• QUANT. **segment**

• VERB + ORANGE **eat, have, squeeze** | **peel**

• ORANGE + NOUN **segment** | **pip** | **peel, rind, zest** *Add a little grated orange peel.* | **juice**

⇨ Special page at FRUIT

orange *adj.*

⇨ Special page at COLOUR

orbit *noun*

• ADJ. **circular, elliptical** | **eccentric** *Mercury's orbit is fairly eccentric.* | **stable** | **planetary**

• VERB + ORBIT **enter, go into** | **put/send sth into** | **complete, make** *The spaceship made an orbit of the moon.*

• PREP. **in ~** *The satellite will remain in orbit for several years.* | **~ around/round** *the moon's orbit around the earth*

orchestra *noun*

• ADJ. **large, small** | **full** *The full orchestra includes two pairs of French horns.* | **great, top** | **amateur, professional** | **philharmonic, symphony** | **chamber, dance, jazz, string, wind** | **school, youth**

• VERB + ORCHESTRA **conduct** | **lead**

• ORCHESTRA + VERB **perform (sth), play (sth)** | **strike (sth) up** *The orchestra struck up a lively march.* | **tune up**

• ORCHESTRA + NOUN **pit**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *She plays viola in a string orchestra.* | **~ under** *the Ulster Orchestra under Philip Ledger*

• PHRASES **the leader of the orchestra**

ordeal *noun*

• ADJ. **long** | **dreadful, terrible, terrifying**

• VERB + ORDEAL **endure, face, go through, suffer, undergo** | **subject sb to** *She was subjected to a terrible six-day ordeal.* | **survive** | **recover from** | **be spared**

• PREP. **~ by** *(often humorous) This is the fourth time the prime minister has faced ordeal by egg* (= had eggs thrown at him). **~ of** *They were spared the ordeal of giving evidence in court.*

• PHRASES **an ordeal at the hands of sb** *their 20-hour ordeal at the hands of a gunman*

order *noun*

1 way in which people/things are arranged

• ADJ. **correct, right** | **wrong** | **logical** *The paragraphs are not in a logical order.* | **ascending** *arranged in ascending order of size* | **descending** | **alphabetical, chronological, numerical, random, reverse** | **pecking** *the pecking order among the hospital staff* | **word**

• PREP. **in ~** *The winners were announced in reverse order.* **in ~ of** *I've listed the tasks in order of priority.*

2 organized state

• ADJ. **apple-pie** (= perfect) *The accounts were in apple-pie order.*

• VERB + ORDER **bring, create, impose** *to bring order out of chaos* ◇ *She attempted to impose some order on the chaos of her files.* | **put/set sth in** | **leave sth in**

• PREP. **in ~** *My notes are in order.*

• PHRASES **in good order** *The house is in good order.*

3 when laws, rules, authority, etc. are obeyed

• ADJ. **public**

• VERB + ORDER **keep, maintain, preserve** | **restore** | **keep sb/sth in** *Some teachers find it difficult to keep their classes in order.* | **call sb/sth to** *The argument continued until the chairman called them both to order* (= ordered them to obey the formal rules of the meeting).

• PREP. **in ~** (= allowed by the rules) *Would it be in order for us to examine the manuscript?* **out of ~** (= not allowed by the rules) *His objection was ruled out of order.*

• PHRASES **law and order, a point of order** *One of the committee members raised a point of order.*

4 way a society is arranged

• ADJ. **established, existing, old** *He was seen as a threat to the established order.* | **new** | **natural** *the natural order of things* | **economic, political, social** | **world** *a new world order*

5 instruction/demand

• ADJ. **direct, specific** | **executive** | **sealed** *He opened his sealed orders.* | **court** | **maintenance, preservation, restraining** *a wildlife preservation order*

• VERB + ORDER **give, issue, make** *(law) The captain gave the order to fire.* ◇ *The judge made an order for the costs to be paid.* | **receive** | **carry out, execute, follow, obey, take** *The local civilians don't take orders from the military.* | **disobey, ignore, violate** | **cancel, countermand, rescind, revoke** | **bark/bawl/shout (out)** *He barked out orders as he left.*

• PREP. **by ~** *The council's functions were established by order.* **by ~ of** *by order of the police* **on sb's ~s** *The ship was to set sail at once, on the admiral's orders.* **under ~s (from)** *A group of soldiers, under orders from the president, took control of the television station.* | **~s for** *The colonel had given orders for the spy's execution.*

• PHRASES **doctor's orders** *I'm not to drink any alcohol—doctor's orders!* **get your marching orders** (= be ordered to leave), **give sb their marching orders**

6 request for sth to be made/supplied/delivered

• ADJ. **bulk, large, record** | **small** | **firm** | **advance** | **back, outstanding** | **repeat** | **tall** (= difficult to fulfill; unreasonable) | **mail, money, postal, standing** | **export**

• VERB + ORDER **place, put in** *I've placed an order for the CD.* | **cancel** | **receive, win** *The company won a £10 million order for oil-drilling equipment.* | **have** | **fill, fulfil, meet** *trying to fill all the back orders* | **make sth to** *a cupboard made to order*

• ORDER + NOUN **form**

• PREP. **on ~** *We have ten boxes on order.* | **~ for** *We have a firm order for ten cases of wine.*

7 request for food, etc. in a restaurant, etc.

• ADJ. **side** *a side order of mixed salad* | **last ~s** *Last orders at the bar now please!*

• VERB + ORDER **take** *The waiter came to take their orders.* | **give sb**

• PREP. **~ for** *an order for steak and fries*

8 group of people living in a religious community

• ADJ. **monastic, religious** | **contemplative** | **closed** (= with little or no contact with the outside world) | **Benedictine, Cistercian, etc.**

order *verb*

1 tell sb to do sth

• ADV. **expressly, specifically | immediately | personally** *The army's Chief of Staff had personally ordered the raid.* | **formally | about, around** *Stop ordering me around!* | **back, home, off, out** *There were seven bookings and two players were ordered off.*

• PREP. **off, out of** *All journalists have been ordered out of the country.*

2 ask for sth

• ADV. **direct/directly**

• PREP. **for** *We can order the book for you, if you like.* **from** *You can order the book direct from the publisher.*

3 organize/arrange sth

• ADV. **alphabetically, chronologically, hierarchically, logically** *The entries are ordered alphabetically.*

• PREP. **according to** *Different senses of a word are ordered according to frequency.*

• PHRASES **highly/well ordered** *She led a highly ordered existence, with everything having its own time and place.*

orderly *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **very | fairly, more or less, relatively**

• PHRASES **in an orderly fashion/way** *We want to bring about this change in an orderly fashion.*

ordinary *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, seem | become**

• ADV. **decidedly, terribly, very** *He made all the other players on the field look decidedly ordinary.* | **perfectly, quite** *It was a perfectly ordinary day.* | **fairly, pretty, rather** *The meal was pretty ordinary.* | **essentially**

ore *noun*

• ADJ. **rich | metal/metallic, mineral | copper, iron, uranium, etc.**

• QUANT. **lode, vein | lump**

• VERB + ORE **extract, mine | dress, extract sth from, refine, smelt** *smelting the ore with charcoal*

• ORE + NOUN **deposits**

organ *noun*

1 part of the body

• ADJ. **internal | important, vital** *The eyes are an important organ of balance.* ◇ *to preserve blood flow to the brain and the other vital organs* | **abdominal, genital | digestive, olfactory, reproductive, sense/sensory, sex/sexual, etc. | human | donor** *waiting for a suitable donor organ*

• VERB + ORGAN **donate | transplant**

• ORGAN + NOUN **donation, donor | transplant, transplantation**

2 musical instrument

• ADJ. **pipe | mechanical | electric, electronic, Hammond™ | barrel, mouth | church, fairground**

• ORGAN + NOUN **pedal, pipe, stop | loft**

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

3 official organization

• ADJ. **central, major** *the central organs of state* | **administrative, constitutional, economic, judicial, legislative, political, security | party**

organic *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become, go**

• ADV. **fully, totally** *The farm went fully organic in 1996.*

organism *noun*

• ADJ. **developing, growing, living | simple | complex, complicated, higher | biological | human | aquatic, marine**

organization *noun*

1 organized group of people

• ADJ. **large, mass | small | community, international, local, national | government, state | official | party, political | professional | non-governmental | grassroots | voluntary | charitable, philanthropic | non-profit, not-for-profit | commercial, profit-making | environmental, human rights, labour, relief | student, women's, youth | terrorist | umbrella | front** *a front organization for drug trafficking*

• VERB + ORGANIZATION **disband** (For more verbs see note.)

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *There are several talented people in that organization.*

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

2 way in which sth is organized

• ADJ. **effective, efficient, smooth** *the smooth organization of the trip* | **poor | internal**

• QUANT. **degree** *a high degree of organization*

• VERB + ORGANIZATION **lack**

NOTE

Organizations

create, establish, form, found, set up, start ~
an association created to promote local industry
The company was founded in 1981.
dissolve ~ (*often law*)
She sought a court order to have the partnership dissolved.
run ~
He runs an accountancy firm.
manage ~
The executive committee manages the group on a day-to-day basis.
be/become a member of, join ~
She became a member of the Society of Arts.
leave ~
The country plans to leave the organization.

organize *verb*

• ADV. **effectively, efficiently, properly, successfully, well | badly, poorly | carefully, neatly | locally, nationally | centrally | jointly** *They organized the festival jointly with the French cultural service.* | **separately | independently, privately | formally**

• VERB + ORGANIZE **seek to, try to | help (to) | be able to | manage to | fail to | learn (how) to | be difficult to | be easy to, be possible to**

• PREP. **according to** *We need to organize the work according to the availability and skills of each volunteer.* **around** *We're organizing the evening around a Japanese theme.* **into** *It was difficult to organize the men into teams.*

organized *adj.*

1 arranged/planned

• VERBS **be, seem**

• ADV. **extremely, highly, strongly, very** *Although it doesn't look like it, the whole thing is highly organized.* | **carefully, efficiently, properly, superbly, well | badly, poorly | minutely, neatly | rigidly, tightly | loosely, weakly** *a loosely organized confederacy of allies* | **specially** *a specially organized programme of sightseeing and shopping* | **centrally, locally, nationally | faintly | separately | independently, privately | formally** *Often there is no formally organized system of childcare.* | **tradition-**

ally | systematically | hierarchically, sequentially *Each department is hierarchically organized.* **| socially**

2 able to plan things well

- VERBS **be, seem | get** *You need to get organized.*
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very | fairly**

orgasm *noun*

- ADJ. **female, male | multiple | simultaneous**
- VERB + ORGASM **achieve, have, reach | fake, simulate**

orgy *noun*

- ADJ. **drunken, sex/sexual**
- VERB + ORGY **have**
- PREP. **~ of** *an orgy of looting and vandalism*

orientated *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**
- ADV. **strongly, very | totally | sufficiently | correctly** *Make sure all the components remain correctly orientated.* **| academically, industrially, politically, technically, vocationally** *The organization is not politically orientated.*
- PREP. **to/towards** *The service is not sufficiently orientated to the needs of those who use it.*
- PHRASES **career/profit orientated** *She's very career orientated and not really interested in having a family.*

origin *noun*

1 time/place/reason that sth starts

- ADJ. **common | doubtful, obscure, unknown** *a letter of doubtful origin* **| true | ancient, early, primitive | recent** *The term 'black hole' is of very recent origin.* **| immediate** *The development had its immediate origins in discussions with management.* **| African, English, etc. | foreign | local | mixed | natural | supernatural | environmental, geographical, historical, intellectual | animal, human, mineral, plant, vegetable** *foods of animal origin ◇ We shouldn't forget our animal origins.*
- VERB + ORIGIN **have, share** *The vases share common origins.* **| investigate, trace | owe** *Population genetics owes its origin to Francis Galton.* **| explain | reflect**
- ORIGIN + VERB **go back to sth, lie in sth** *The origins of Gdańsk go back to the tenth century.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The rock is volcanic in origin.* **of … ~** *a painting of unknown origin*
- PHRASES **sth's country of origin** *Bottles are labelled by country of origin.* **have its origin in sth** *The dispute had its origin in the Battle of Wakefield.*

2 family, race, class, etc, that a person comes from

- ADJ. **African, English, etc. | foreign | mixed | class, ethnic, national, racial, social | noble, middle-class, peasant, slave, working-class | humble, lowly** *He had risen from humble origins through hard work.*
- VERB + ORIGIN **trace** *Their family can trace its origins back to the Norman Conquest.* **| betray** *Her accent betrayed her working-class origins.*
- PREP. **by ~** *He is a Londoner by origin.* **in ~** *Her family is Portuguese in origin.* **of … ~** *He was of lowly origins.*
- PHRASES **sb's country of origin**

original *noun*

- VERB + ORIGINAL **pass sth off as** *He copied paintings of famous artists and passed them off as originals.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *to read Tolstoy in the original*

original *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, startlingly, very** *She has a highly original mind. ◇ a startlingly original idea* **| completely** *tackling the problem in a completely original way*

originality *noun*

- ADJ. **great, startling, striking**
- VERB + ORIGINALITY **have | display, show | be lacking in, lack**
- ORIGINALITY + VERB **lie in sth** *His originality as a painter lies in his representation of light.*
- PREP. **~ in** *The government has shown great originality in its foreign policy.*
- PHRASES **a spark of originality**

ornamental *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly, very** *a plant which is highly ornamental in flower* **| purely** *The turrets are purely ornamental.*

ornate *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly, richly, very | quite, rather**

orphan *noun*

- ADJ. **little | poor** *a poor little orphan* **| war**
- VERB + ORPHAN **be left** *She was left an orphan at the age of five.* **| adopt**
- ORPHAN + NOUN **boy, girl**

orthodox *adj.*

- VERBS **be** *His ideas are all fairly orthodox.*
- ADV. **highly, strictly, very** *This is the strictly orthodox view. ◇ I am not a very orthodox kind of counsellor.* **| fairly**

orthodoxy *noun*

- ADJ. **rigid, strict | prevailing | Catholic, Christian, etc. | communist, liberal, etc. | party | economic, scientific, etc.**

ounce *noun*

⇨ Note at MEASURE

outbreak *noun*

- ADJ. **large, major, serious | fresh, further, new | occasional, periodic, sporadic | recurrent, repeated | sudden | cholera, salmonella, etc.**
- VERB + OUTBREAK **lead to** *the events that led to the outbreak of World War I*
- OUTBREAK + VERB **occur**
- PREP. **~ of** *A new outbreak of smallpox occurred in 1928.*
- PHRASES **an outbreak of disease, an outbreak of rain, an outbreak of war/fighting/hostilities/violence**

outburst *noun*

- ADJ. **sudden | spontaneous | occasional** *her occasional outbursts of temper* **| angry, furious, violent | emotional, hysterical, passionate**
- PREP. **~ against** *A player was cautioned for his angry outburst against the referee.* **~ of** *an outburst of anger/laughter/temper/violence*

outcast *noun*

- ADJ. **social** *He was treated as a social outcast.*
- VERB + OUTCAST **make sb** *Her criminal past made her an outcast.* **| treat sb as/like**
- PREP. **~ from** *an outcast from society*

outcome *noun*

- ADJ. **desirable, desired, favourable, good, happy,**

positive, satisfactory, successful | **negative, unfortunate, unsatisfactory** | **fatal, tragic** | **possible** | **likely, probable** | **anticipated, expected, inevitable, intended, logical, predicted** | **unexpected** | **immediate** | **actual, eventual, final, long-term, ultimate** | **direct** *a direct outcome of the strike* | **practical** | **educational, electoral, political, etc.** (*all technical*)
- VERB + OUTCOME **affect, influence** | **decide, determine** | **achieve, have, produce** *Their strategy produced the desired outcome.* | **evaluate, measure** (*technical*) *The aim is to evaluate possible outcomes.*
- PREP. **~ of** *the outcome of the election*
- PHRASES **whatever the outcome** *Whatever the final outcome of the talks, the war should end soon.*

outcry *noun*

- ADJ. **great, huge, massive** | **immediate** | **popular, public** | **national** | **international**
- VERB + OUTCRY **cause, provoke, spark** *The bombing caused an international outcry.*
- PREP. **~against/over** *There was a massive public outcry against the harsh prison sentence.* **~ from** *an immediate outcry from workers over pay reductions*

outfit *noun*

1 set of clothes worn together
- ADJ. **complete** | **new** | **summer, winter** | **interview, party, wedding, etc.** | **clown, cowboy, etc.**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He looked very smart in his new outfit.*

2 organization/company, etc.
- ADJ. **large** | **small** | **professional** | **cowboy, dodgy** | **computer, publishing, etc.**

outing *noun*

- ADJ. **little** | **special** | **day's, summer, weekend** | **annual** | **family, school, social**
- VERB + OUTING **be/go on**
- PREP. **~ from** *The children were on a day's outing from school.* **~ to** *a family outing to the seaside*

outlay *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, huge, large, massive** | **modest, small** | **initial** *The revenue from the farm could repay the initial outlay within three years.* | **total** | **capital, cash, financial, investment**
- VERB + OUTLAY **make** | **require** *The project would require little financial outlay.* | **recoup, recover** | **repay**
- PREP. **~ on** *The railway had made a considerable capital outlay on new rolling stock.*

outlet *noun*

1 place that sells goods of a particular company/type
- ADJ. **specialist** | **high-street, local** | **commercial, distribution, retail, sales** | **DIY, fast-food, etc.**
- PREP. **~ for** *a retail outlet for exotic plants*

2 means of releasing energy/strong feeling/talents
- ADJ. **emotional** | **creative**
- VERB + OUTLET **have** | **find** | **provide (sb with)** *Sport provided an outlet for his energy.* | **need**
- PREP. **~ for** *She needs an outlet for her talents.*

3 pipe/hole
- ADJ. **electrical, gas, sewage, socket, waste, water**
- OUTLET + NOUN **hose, pipe**

outline *noun*

1 line that shows the shape/outside edge of sb/sth
- ADJ. **clear, sharp** *The sharp outline of the island had become blurred.* | **blurred, dim, faint, vague** | **simple**
- VERB + OUTLINE **draw, make, trace** *The children made an outline of their hands.* | **make out, see** *I could just make out the dim outlines of the house in the mist.* | **soften**
- OUTLINE + NOUN **drawing, map**
- PREP. **around/round the ~** *to cut round the outline* **in ~** *He sketched the street in outline only.* | **~ of**

2 most important facts/ideas about sth
- ADJ. **bare, basic, brief, rough** *a brief outline of Polish history* | **broad, general** | **course**
- VERB + OUTLINE **give (sb), provide (sb with), write (sb)** *Write an outline for your essay.*
- PREP. **in ~** *Here's the plan in outline.* | **~ for, ~ of**

outline *verb*

- ADV. **briefly** | **clearly** | **roughly** *He roughly outlined the plot of the opera.* | **here** | **above, earlier, previously** *using the plan outlined above* | **below**
- VERB + OUTLINE **attempt to, seek to, try to**
- PREP. **to** *the policies outlined to Parliament on May 20th*

outlook *noun*

1 attitude to life
- ADJ. **optimistic, positive** | **negative, pessimistic** | **general** | **broad** *Having children gave her a broader outlook on life.* | **different, differing** | **mental** | **moral, philosophical, religious**
- VERB + OUTLOOK **have** | **give sb** | **change** | **broaden** *Travel broadens your outlook.*
- PREP. **in ~** *She is rather cautious in outlook.* **of (a) … ~** *people of widely differing religious outlooks* | **~ on** *Losing his job changed his whole outlook on life.*

2 what will probably happen
- ADJ. **bright, good** | **bleak, gloomy, grim** *The outlook for people on a state pension is grim.* | **uncertain** | **business, economic, political** | **long-term, short-term**
- VERB + OUTLOOK **improve** *The drug improves the long-term outlook of migraine sufferers.* | **worsen**
- PREP. **~ for** *a brighter outlook for the economy*

outnumber *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, easily, far, greatly, heavily, substantially, vastly** *Their failures vastly outnumber their successes.* | **almost** | **slightly**
- PREP. **by** *The Czechs outnumbered the Slovaks by at least two to one.*
- PHRASES **be hopelessly outnumbered** *The Spanish were hopelessly outnumbered in the battle.*

output *noun*

- ADJ. **high, large, massive** | **greater, increased** | **steady** | **low** | **aggregate, gross, overall, total** *10 per cent of the country's total output* | **net** | **real** | **average** | **annual, monthly, etc.** | **maximum** | **current** | **national, world** | **prodigious, prolific** *her prodigious literary output* | **agricultural, industrial, manufacturing** | **computer** | **data** | **literary**
- QUANT. **level** *changes in the level of output*
- VERB + OUTPUT **produce** | **double, expand, increase** *The plant plans to increase output to 10 000 cars a year.* | **reduce**
- OUTPUT + VERB **increase, rise** | **decrease, fall**
- PREP. **~ of** *a steady output of new ideas*
- PHRASES **a drop/fall in output** *the fall in output due to outdated equipment*, **a growth/an increase/a rise in output**

outrage *noun*

1 great anger
- ADJ. **genuine** | **widespread** | **international** | **public** | **moral** *Media reports generated moral outrage.*
- VERB + OUTRAGE **be greeted with, cause, generate, provoke, spark** *The news was greeted with outrage.* | **feel**

| **express, voice** *Shopkeepers voiced their outrage at the new tax.*
- OUTRAGE + VERB **be directed at sb/sth** *Much of the outrage was directed at foreign nationals.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The guests all shouted in outrage.* **with ~** *She was trembling with outrage.* | **~ at** *Campaigners have expressed outrage at the decision.* **~ over** *There is widespread public outrage over the massacre.*
- PHRASES **cries/howls of outrage** *The announcement provoked howls of outrage.* **a feeling/sense of outrage**

2 cruel/shocking act
- VERB + OUTRAGE **commit, perpetrate** *the outrages committed by the invading army*
- PREP. **~ against** *The new law on pensions is an outrage against the elderly.*

outrageous *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **consider sth, regard sth as, see sth as, think sth** *She thought it absolutely outrageous that he should be promoted over her.*
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, totally** | **morally**

outsider *noun*

1 not a member of a group
- ADJ. **complete** | **political, social**
- VERB + OUTSIDER **feel** *I felt a complete outsider.*
- PREP. **~ to** *an outsider to the group*

2 competitor who will probably not win
- ADJ. **complete, rank**
- PREP. **~ in** *The firm has gone from being an outsider in the market to being a market leader.*

outskirts *noun*

- ADJ. **sprawling** | **city** | **northern, etc.**
- VERB + OUTSKIRTS **reach**
- PREP. **in the ~** *a school in the outskirts of Athens* **on the ~** *We live on the outskirts of Leeds.* **through the ~** *driving through the outskirts of London*

outstanding *adj.*

1 excellent
- VERBS **be** | **consider sth**
- ADV. **particularly, really, truly** | **absolutely, quite** *That was a quite outstanding performance!*

2 not yet paid or done
- VERBS **be, remain** *Two or three tasks still remain outstanding.* | **leave sth** *One option may be to leave the debt outstanding and extend the payment terms.*
- ADV. **still** *75 per cent of the amount originally borrowed is still outstanding.*

outweigh *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, easily, far, greatly, heavily, more than, vastly** *The benefits would surely far outweigh the risks.* ◇ *The advantages of this scheme more than outweigh the costs involved.*

oval *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **perfectly** *her delicate, perfectly oval face* | **almost** *The leaves are long and almost oval.*
- PHRASES **oval in shape** *The handle is oval in shape* **oval-shaped** *an oval-shaped box*

ovation *noun*

- ADJ. **enthusiastic, huge, long, loud, rapturous, thunderous** | **standing** *The audience gave her a standing ovation for her performance.*
- VERB + OVATION **give sb** | **get, receive** *He received the longest ovation of the evening.* | **bring, earn, win**
- PREP. **to an ~** *He came off the field to a huge ovation.* | **~ from** *The final piece won her a rapturous ovation from the audience.*

oven *noun*

- ADJ. **electric, gas, microwave** | **hot, low, moderate, warm** *Bake them in a warm oven until risen and golden brown.* | **preheated** | **combination, convection, conventional, fan-assisted** | **domestic** | **self-cleaning** | **bread** | **clay** *Tandoori food is cooked in a clay oven.*
- VERB + OVEN **light, switch on, turn on** | **heat, preheat** *Preheat the oven to 190°C.* | **bake sth in, cook sth in** | **put sth in** | **remove sth from, take sth out of** | **clean**
- OVEN + VERB **heat (up)** *Switch on the oven and let it heat up.* | **cool (down)**
- OVEN + NOUN **dish** | **glove** | **temperature** | **door, rack** | **timer** | **cleaner** | **chips**
- PREP. **in an/the ~** *baking bread in the oven*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

overcast *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look** | **become** *The sky became heavily overcast.* | **remain, stay**
- ADV. **heavily, very**

overcoat *noun*

- ADJ. **long** | **heavy, thick** | **dark** | **tweed**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

overcome *verb*

1 defeat/conquer sb/sth
- ADV. **completely** | **successfully** | **not entirely** *These problems were never entirely overcome.* | **largely** | **partially** | **easily** | **quickly** | **gradually** | **eventually, finally** *He eventually overcame his disability.*
- VERB + OVERCOME **be able to** | **help (to), help sb (to)** *Therapy helped her overcome her fear.* | **be designed to** *methods designed to overcome these problems* | **attempt to, battle to, struggle to, try to** | **manage to**
- PHRASES **an attempt to overcome sth**

2 be/feel overcome become weak/ill; lose control
- ADV. **completely, quite** *She felt quite overcome by their kindness.* | **almost, nearly** *She felt almost overcome by a tide of relief.* | **visibly** *The officers on duty were visibly overcome, many of them in tears.* | **suddenly**
- PREP. **by** *Several firefighters had been overcome by smoke and fumes.* **with** *He was suddenly overcome with remorse for the harm he had done.*

overcrowded *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become, get**
- ADV. **extremely, grossly, severely, very** | **a little**

overdose *noun*

- ADJ. **large, massive** | **drug/drugs, heroin, paracetamol, etc.** | **fatal** | **accidental**
- VERB + OVERDOSE **take** | **die from/of**
- PREP. **~ of** *She took an overdose of paracetamol.*

overdraft *noun*

- ADJ. **enormous, huge, large** | **agreed, authorized** | **unauthorized** | **free** *We offer a free £400 overdraft.* | **bank**
- VERB + OVERDRAFT **have** | **get, take out** | **run up** *The president ran up a huge overdraft during her year in office.* | **arrange** | **extend, give sb, offer (sb)** | **pay off** | **increase** | **reduce** | **exceed** *They exceeded their overdraft by £200 000.*
- OVERDRAFT + NOUN **facility** | **limit**

overdrawn *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **go** *I never like to go overdrawn if I can help it.* | **remain**
- ADV. **badly, very** | **rather, slightly, somewhat**

overdue *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **long** *These reforms are long overdue.*
- PREP. **for** *This system is overdue for reform.*
- PHRASES **months/weeks/years overdue** *These changes are years overdue.*

overestimate *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, greatly, grossly, seriously, vastly** | **consistently** *The Ministry of Finance consistently overestimated its budget deficits.*
- VERB + OVERESTIMATE **tend to** | **be easy to** *It is easy to overestimate the cost of this kind of research.* | **be difficult to, be hard to**
- PREP. **by** *We overestimated the cost by about 2 per cent.*
- PHRASES **sth cannot be overestimated** *The importance of this group cannot be overestimated.*

overgrown *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look** | **become, get**
- ADV. **extremely, thickly, very** | **completely** *The path was completely overgrown.*
- PREP. **with** *The canal bank was thickly overgrown with last year's brambles.*

overhaul *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, major, massive, thorough** | **radical**
- VERB + OVERHAUL **have, undergo** *The tax system has undergone a complete overhaul.* | **give sth** | **need**

overhaul *verb*

- ADV. **drastically, radically** *Within a year the party had drastically overhauled its structure.* | **completely, thoroughly** *The plan was completely overhauled.*

overhead *adj., adv.*

- VERBS **be** | **appear, circle, fly, gather, hover, pass, soar, wheel** *The seagulls circled overhead.* ◇ *Storm clouds were gathering overhead.* | **buzz, roar, scream, whirr** *Helicopters buzzed overhead.* | **shine**
- ADV. **directly** *The storm must be directly overhead.* | **nearly** | **high** *The moon was high overhead.* | **low** *aircraft passing low overhead*

overhear *verb*

- ADV. **accidentally**
- PHRASES **couldn't help overhearing sth** *Excuse me for interrupting, but I couldn't help overhearing what you were saying.*

overjoyed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**
- ADV. **less than, not exactly** *She was not exactly overjoyed to see us again.*
- PREP. **about** *They're all overjoyed about it.* **at** *overjoyed at the thought of having a son* **by** *We are overjoyed by this decision.* **with** *Mr Crangle was overjoyed with his success.*

overlap *verb*

- ADV. **almost** | **partially, partly, slightly, to some extent** *Put the two pieces of paper together so that they overlap slightly.* ◇ *The two categories overlap to some extent.* | **clearly**
- PREP. **in** *terms which overlap slightly in meaning* **with** *a world which overlaps with the newspaper world*

overload *verb*

- PREP. **with** *Their staff are heavily overloaded with work.*
- PHRASES **be heavily/seriously overloaded**

overlook *verb*

- ADV. **completely, entirely** | **largely** | **frequently, often** | **generally** | **conveniently** *Conveniently overlooking the fact that she wouldn't be able to meet the commitment, she agreed enthusiastically.*
- VERB + OVERLOOK **cannot, cannot afford to, should not** *We should not overlook this possibility.* | **be inclined to, tend to** *Hospitals have tended to overlook this need.* | **seem to** | **be prepared to, be willing to** *I was prepared to overlook her mistakes this time.* | **be easy to** *It is easy to overlook the significance of this change.* | **be impossible to**
- PHRASES **be easily overlooked** *another fact which is all too easily overlooked* **sth should not be overlooked** *The importance of this should not be overlooked.*

oversee *verb*

- ADV. **directly** | **personally** *He personally oversaw the design of all the rooms.*
- VERB + OVERSEE **be appointed to, be created to, be set up to** *A committee has been appointed to oversee the work.*
- PHRASES **be responsible for overseeing sth** *the committee that is responsible for overseeing the day-to-day implementation of this policy*

oversight *noun*

- ADJ. **unfortunate**
- PREP. **by (an)~** *By an oversight, we did not send out the agenda for the meeting.* **due to (an)~** *The mistake was due to an unfortunate oversight on my part.* **through (an)~** *Through oversight, the bill was still unpaid.*

overthrow *noun*

- ADJ. **attempted** | **violent**
- VERB + OVERTHROW **bring about, lead to** | **plot**
- PREP. **~of** *to bring about the overthrow of the military dictatorship*

overtime *noun*

- ADJ. **excessive** *Doctors work excessive unpaid overtime.* | **unlimited** | **paid, unpaid**
- VERB + OVERTIME **do, put in, work** *I do about five hours' overtime a week.* ◇ *She puts in a lot of overtime.*
- OVERTIME + NOUN **earnings, pay, payments, rates** | **ban** *The union imposed an overtime ban in protest at the sacking of two workers.*

overtone *noun*

- ADJ. **strong** *a play with strong religious overtones* | **serious** | **negative** *The word 'cheap' has negative overtones.* | **emotional, moral, political, racial, religious, sexual** | **racist**
- VERB + OVERTONE **carry, have** | **take on** *The organization's cultural activities took on political overtones.*

overture *noun*

1 (usually **overtures**) friendly behaviour

- ADJ. **friendly** | **diplomatic, peace, sexual**
- VERB + OVERTURE **make** | **receive** | **respond to** | **reject, spurn** *She spurned his overtures of love.*

- PREP. **~s of** *overtures of friendship* **~s to** *He made friendly overtures to his new neighbours.*

2 piece of music

- ADJ. **operatic, symphonic**
- PREP. **~to** *the overture to Mozart's 'Don Giovanni'*

overturn *verb*

- ADV. **completely** *She completely overturned my preconceptions about film stars.*
- VERB + OVERTURN **seek to, try to** *seeking to overturn his conviction for armed robbery* | **fail to**
- PHRASES **be easily overturned** *This argument seems convincing, but is easily overturned.*

overview *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, short** | **broad, general** | **complete, comprehensive** | **detailed, in-depth** | **critical** | **balanced** | **historical** *The opening chapter gives a brief historical overview of transport.*
- VERB + OVERVIEW **give (sb), offer (sb), present, provide (sb with)** | **have** *Only the Head of Sales has an overview of the situation worldwide.*
- PREP. **~on** *The seminar aims to provide an overview on new media publishing.*

overweight *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look** *You don't look overweight.* | **become, get** *Don't let yourself get overweight.*
- ADV. **extremely, grossly, heavily, seriously, very** | **a bit, a little, rather, slightly**
- PHRASES **a few pounds, two stone, etc. overweight**

overwhelm *verb*

- ADV. **completely, totally** | **almost** | **suddenly**
- VERB + OVERWHELM **threaten to** *Deal with stress fast whenever it threatens to overwhelm you.*
- PREP. **with** *The children pressed around him eagerly, overwhelming him with questions.*
- PHRASES **be/feel overwhelmed (by/with sth)** *We were totally overwhelmed by the response to our appeal.* ◇ *She felt completely overwhelmed.*

overwhelming *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **completely, quite** | **almost** *The urge to look was almost overwhelming.* | **a little, pretty** *All these new experiences were a little overwhelming.* | **apparently, seemingly** *seemingly overwhelming obstacles*

owl *noun*

- ADJ. **wise** | **stuffed**
- OWL + VERB **fly** | **hoot, screech** | **catch sth, prey on sth** *Owls prey on small rodents.* | **nest, roost**
- OWL + NOUN **pellet**

own *verb*

- ADV. **communally, jointly** *Only when the means of production were communally owned would classes disappear.* ◇ *She owns the house jointly with her husband.* | **legally** *He committed the crime with a gun that he legally owned.*
- PHRASES **directly/indirectly owned by sb, own your own boat, home, etc.** *They dreamed of owning their own home.* **partly/wholly owned by sb** *The company is a wholly owned subsidiary of SNL Research.* **privately/publicly owned** *The museum is privately owned.*

owner *noun*

- ADJ. **sole** | **part** *I'm part owner of the restaurant.* | **joint** | **former, original, previous** | **current, present** | **new** | **future, prospective** | **lawful, legal, rightful** *The stolen painting has now been returned to its rightful owner.* | **private** | **lucky, proud** *the proud owner of a new stereo* | **car, dog, factory, home, land**
- VERB + OWNER **have** *The car had only one previous owner.* | **trace** *The police have been unable to trace the owner of the vehicle.*

ownership *noun*

- ADJ. **full** | **sole** | **collective, common, joint, shared** | **new** | **legal** | **private** | **corporate** | **public, state** | **foreign** | **car, home, land**
- VERB + OWNERSHIP **change, transfer** *The shop has changed ownership several times.* ◇ *He transferred the legal ownership of his property to his children.* | **pass into** *The railways passed into public ownership.* | **acquire, seize, take (over)** | **retain**
- OWNERSHIP + VERB **pass** *Ownership of the land passed from father to son.*
- PREP. **under (the)~** *The cafe is under new ownership.*
- PHRASES **a change in ownership**

oxygen *noun*

- ADJ. **pure** | **liquid** | **atmospheric**
- VERB + OXYGEN **carry, contain** *the blood which carries oxygen to the brain* | **absorb, breathe, consume, take in, use up** | **generate, produce, release** *After dark the plants stop producing oxygen.* | **administer, give sb** | **get, receive** *The patient didn't seem to be getting enough oxygen.* | **deprive sb/sth of, starve sb/sth of** *There was a risk the brain might be starved of oxygen.*
- OXYGEN + NOUN **atom** | **level, supply** | **mask**
- PHRASES **a lack of oxygen, a supply of oxygen**

ozone *noun*

- VERB + OZONE **deplete, destroy**
- OZONE + NOUN **levels** | **depletion, destruction, loss** | **hole** | **pollution**
- PHRASES **the loss of/reduction in ozone** *the discovery of massive springtime reductions in ozone over Antarctica*

ozone layer *noun*

- VERB + OZONE LAYER **be damaging to, damage, deplete, destroy** | **protect**
- OZONE LAYER + VERB **thin** | **disappear** *The ozone layer is disappearing over northern Europe.*
- PHRASES **damage to the ozone layer, depletion/destruction of the ozone layer, a hole in the ozone layer**

Pp

pace *noun*

1 one step

- VERB + PACE **take** *Take two paces forward.* | **step back** *Step back three paces.*
- PREP. **~ behind** *Two bodyguards remained a couple of paces behind the president throughout the walkabout.* **~ from** *I stopped a few paces from the edge of the cliff.*

2 speed

- ADJ. **blistering, breakneck, breathtaking, brisk, cracking, fast, frantic, frenetic, frenzied, furious, good, great, hectic, lightning, lively, rapid** | **gentle, leisurely, relaxed, slow, unhurried, walking** *the slow pace of economic reform* | **even, measured, moderate, steady**
- VERB + PACE **gather, increase, quicken** *The project had a slow start, but is now gathering pace.* ◇ *Thinking that she was being followed, she quickened her pace.* | **slacken, slow down** | **dictate, set** *Brown set the pace in the first mile.* | **keep (up), maintain** *The younger children struggled to keep pace with the older ones.* ◇ *She kept up a pace of ten miles an hour.* | **stand** *You shouldn't have such a job if you can't stand the pace.*
- PACE + VERB **increase** | **slow**
- PREP. **at a … ~** *They set off at a cracking pace.* | **~ of** *The pace of change means that equipment has to be constantly replaced.* ◇ *The pace of life is much slower on the islands.*
- PHRASES **at sb's own pace** *The students work at their own pace.* **at a snail's pace** *I set off at a snail's pace to conserve my energy for later in the race.* **a change of pace** *I try to get away at weekends for a change of pace.* **a turn of pace** *He's a skilful player with a good turn of pace.*

pace *verb*

- ADV. **slowly** | **anxiously, nervously, restlessly** *She paced restlessly up and down.* | **about/around/round, back and forth, to and fro, up and down** *He paced slowly back and forth.*
- VERB + PACE **begin to**
- PREP. **about, around/round**
- PHRASES **begin pacing** *She began pacing round the room.*

pack *noun*

1 things put together for carrying

- ADJ. **heavy**
- VERB + PACK **carry**
- PACK + NOUN **animal, horse, mule**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The water in his pack made it very heavy.*

2 things supplied together

- ADJ. **cigarette** | **battery, power** | **gift, sample** | **action, information, resource, starter, study, training**
- PACK + VERB **contain sth, include sth** *Your resource pack includes addresses of leading manufacturers.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *How many needles are there in a pack?* | **~ of** *It comes in packs of six.* ◇ *a pack of cigarettes*

3 group of animals

- ADJ. **wolf** | **hunting**
- VERB + PACK **lead**
- PACK + NOUN **instinct**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the dominant animal in the pack* **in ~s** *The animals hunt in packs.* | **~ of** *a pack of dogs/wolves*
- PHRASES **the leader of the pack**

4 playing cards

- VERB + PACK **shuffle** | **cut**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *There are 52 playing cards in a pack.*
- PHRASES **the bottom/top of the pack** *Take a card from the top of the pack.* **a pack of cards**

pack *verb*

1 put things into containers

- ADV. **carefully** | **tightly** *Live animals are transported across the continent, packed tightly into lorries.* | **away, together, up** *The passengers travelled packed together like cattle.* ◇ *I think we might as well pack up and go home.*
- PREP. **in, into** *She packed her clothes into a suitcase.*

2 fill a place/sth

- PREP. **into** *Crowds of people packed into the hall.*
- PHRASES **be packed full of sth** *Our new brochure is packed full of inspirational ideas.* **be packed out** *The cinema was packed out!* **be packed to bursting/capacity/overflowing** *The hall was packed to capacity.* **be packed to the gunwales/rafters** *The hostel was packed to the rafters.* **be packed with sb** *The place was packed with football fans.* **closely/densely/tightly packed**

package *noun*

1 parcel

- ADJ. **bulky** | **neat** | **suspect, suspicious** *Police destroyed the suspect package in a controlled explosion.*
- VERB + PACKAGE **unwrap, wrap** | **post, send** | **deliver** | **sign for**
- PACKAGE + VERB **contain**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *I sent the books in one big package.*

2 set of proposals

- ADJ. **complete, comprehensive, total** | **attractive, excellent** | **reform** | **benefits, compensation, financial, remuneration** *a comprehensive benefits package* | **redundancy** | **aid, assistance** | **austerity, economic, recovery, rescue** | **jobs** | **training**
- VERB + PACKAGE **offer, produce, put together** *The IMF has put together a rescue package for the country's faltering economy.* | **accept, approve** | **reject**
- PACKAGE + VERB **contain sth, include sth** | **be aimed at sth** *a jobs package aimed at helping the unemployed*
- PACKAGE + NOUN **holiday, tour** | **deal**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the measures included in the package* **under a/the ~** *Under the reform package spending on health will increase.* | **~ of** *a package of measures to assist industry*
- PHRASES **part of a package** *The pay freeze forms part of a package of budget cuts.*

3 computer software

- ADJ. **software** | **integrated** *an integrated business software package* | **application, desktop publishing, drawing, graphics, word-processing** | **accounting, business**
- VERB + PACKAGE **use** | **develop**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *word processing and database software in one package*

packaging *noun*

- ADJ. **fancy, glossy** *CDs would be far cheaper to produce without the glossy packaging.* | **discarded, waste** | **non-recyclable, recyclable** | **drinks, food, product, etc.**
- VERB + PACKAGING **recycle**

- PACKAGING + NOUN **materials | technology | waste | company, firm, group, manufacturer | industry**

packet *noun*

- ADJ. **empty | cereal, cigarette, cornflake, crisp, seed | pay, wage** *a weekly pay packet* (= wage) *of £200*
- VERB + PACKET **open, undo | take sth from/out of**
- PACKET + VERB **contain sth** *a packet containing seeds*
- PACKET + NOUN **soup**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *Follow the instructions on the packet.* | **~ of** *a packet of crisps*

packing *noun*

- VERB + PACKING **do** *When shall we do the packing?*
- PACKING + NOUN **case**
- PHRASES **postage and packing** *All prices include postage and packing.*

pact *noun*

- ADJ. **bilateral, mutual | defence, military, security | non-agression, peace | electoral, political, social, trade | suicide**
- VERB + PACT **have | conclude, enter into, form, make, strike** *The Social Democrats struck an electoral pact with the Liberals.* | **sign | break**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She died with her lover in a suicide pact.* **under a/the ~** *conditions under the recently signed non-aggression pact* | **~ between** *a defence pact between Pakistan and France* **~ with** *He made a pact with the devil.*

pad *noun*

- ADJ. **memo, message, note | drawing, sketch**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *She doodled on a pad as she spoke.*

pad *verb*

1 be padded be filled/covered with soft material
- ADV. **heavily, thickly** *She was wearing a warm coat and thickly padded gloves.* | **lightly**
- PREP. **with** *The shoulder straps are padded with foam.*

2 move quietly
- ADV. **silently, softly | barefoot | about/around**
- PREP. **about/around** *padding softly around the house* **across** *padding barefoot across the carpet* **along** *The cat padded silently along the track.* **to, towards**

paddle *verb*

- ADV. **downstream, upstream | frantically, furiously** *He paddled furiously against the current.* | **slowly**

page *noun*

- ADJ. **back, front | facing, opposite** *There's a photo of him on the opposite page/on the page opposite.* | **left-hand, right-hand | next, previous | opening | new** *Write each answer on a new page.* | **blank, empty | full | loose | dog-eared | printed** *The speech did not transfer well to the printed page.* | **contents, title | business, editorial, financial, sports** (all in a newspaper) | **problem** *reading the problem pages of magazines*
- VERB + PAGE **read | scan | turn (over), turn to** *I turned the dog-eared pages of my old address book.* ◇ *Turn to page 30 in the coursebook.* | **flick through, flip through, leaf through** *She sat idly flipping through the pages of a fashion magazine.* | **tear (out) | splash sth across** *The headlines were splashed across the front page of every newspaper.*
- PAGE + VERB **come loose** *Several pages had come loose.* | **yellow** *the yellowing pages of her old diary*
- PAGE + NOUN **number | layout, make-up**
- PREP. **at (a/the) ~** *Open your books at page 14.* **in the ~s** *The murder takes place in the opening pages of the novel.* **on a/the ~** *The crossword is on the back page.* **over the ~** *The article continues over the page.*
- PHRASES **at the bottom/foot of the page, at the head/top of the page** *Write your name at the top of each page.* **pages long** *The story is thirty pages long.* **run your eye/finger down a page** *I ran my finger down the page until I found the name I was looking for.*

paid *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly, well** *a well-paid job* | **badly, poorly** *poorly paid workers*

pain *noun*

1 physical pain
- ADJ. **acute, agonizing, awful, excruciating, extreme, great, intense, severe, sharp, terrible, unbearable | burning, searing, shooting, stabbing, throbbing** *She had a burning pain in one eye.* | **dull, little, slight | chronic, constant, nagging, persistent | sudden | intermittent | physical | abdominal, back, chest, leg, muscle, shoulder, stomach** *She's been off work with back pain.* ◇ *He went to the doctor with chest pains.* | **growing, labour, period**
- QUANT. **spasm, stab**
- VERB + PAIN **be in, be racked with, experience, feel, get, go through, have, suffer (from)** *He was obviously in a great deal of pain.* ◇ *Can you feel any pain?* ◇ *Marathon runners are used to going through pain.* ◇ *He was taken to hospital suffering from severe abdominal pain.* | **cause, give sb, inflict** *His back gives him great pain.* ◇ *It's wrong to inflict pain on any animal.* | **increase, make worse | alleviate, control, deaden, do something for, dull, ease, help, kill, relieve, stop** *Your doctor should be able to do something for the pain.* | **bear, endure, put up with, stand, take | cry out in, cry with, groan with, scream with | be contorted with, contort in** *His face was contorted with pain as he crossed the finish line.*
- PAIN + VERB **begin, come** *The pains began shortly after she started work as a gardener.* | **shoot through/up** *A sharp pain shot up his leg.* | **grow stronger, increase, intensify | disappear, go, stop, wear off** *Has the pain gone yet?* ◇ *A few hours after he'd had his tooth out, the pain began to wear off.* | **come back, return**
- PAIN + NOUN **control, relief | threshold**
- PREP. **~ in** *a pain in her side*
- PHRASES **aches and pains** *Eucalyptus oil is good for easing muscular aches and pains.* **a cry of pain, a threshold for/of pain** *I have a very low threshold for pain.*

2 unhappiness
- ADJ. **great, intense, terrible | emotional**
- VERB + PAIN **cause (sb), give sb, inflict** *Through her drug addiction she had inflicted a lot of pain on the family.* | **feel, go through | get over** *It took him several years to get over the pain of losing his job.* | **ease | spare sb** *We hoped to spare her the pain of having to meet her attacker.* | **express | conceal** *He tried to conceal his pain from her.* | **bear, endure | be worth** *The government has to persuade the people that the economic reforms are worth the pain.*

pained *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**
- ADV. **positively | slightly** *a slightly pained expression on his face*

painful *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get | find sth** *She found it unbearably painful to speak.*
- ADV. **acutely, excruciatingly, extremely, intensely, particularly, terribly, unbearably, very | increasingly |**

almost | pretty, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | potentially | emotionally, physically
- PREP. **to** *The subject of his failed marriage was quite painful to him.*

painless *adj.*

- VERBS **be** *The operation was relatively painless.*
- ADV. **completely, entirely, totally | almost, virtually | comparatively, relatively**

paint *noun*

- ADJ. **thick | runny, thin | fresh | dry, wet | emulsion, enamel, gloss, matt, metallic, satin, spray | lead, lead-based, oil-based, water-based | acrylic, oil, poster** *an artist working with acrylic paints*
- QUANT. **blob, speck, splash, spot** *Specks of paint found at the scene were found to match the accused's car.* | **coat** *I'll give the walls a fresh coat of paint.* | **layer** *The artist has used several layers of paint to create the stormy sky.* | **lick** (*informal*) *A lick of paint will do wonders for the room.* | **jar, pot, tube | box, set** *a set of watercolour paints*
- VERB + PAINT **apply, put on, spray | daub with, spatter with, splash with | remove, scrape off, strip (off) | mix | dilute, thin**
- PAINT + VERB **dry | blister, chip, crack, flake (off), peel** *Paint was peeling from the walls.*
- PAINT + NOUN **brush** (also **paintbrush**) **| pot | manufacturer, shop | job** *We did a quick paint job on the car and hoped the damage wasn't noticeable.*

paint *verb*

- ADV. **carefully | badly, crudely** *The walls had been painted very badly.* ◇ *a crudely painted human figure* | **beautifully, exquisitely | brightly, gaily** *the cheerful, brightly painted doors* | **garishly, gaudily**
- PREP. **in** *an artist who usually paints in oils* **on** *I like to paint on canvas.* **with** *Paint the box all over with varnish.*
- PHRASES **freshly/newly painted, paint sth blue, white, etc.** *We painted the walls light green.*

painter *noun*

1 person whose job is to paint buildings, walls, etc.
- ADJ. **self-employed | house**
- PHRASES **painter and decorator** *He now works as a painter and decorator.*

2 artist who paints pictures
- ADJ. **celebrated, distinguished, great, famous, master, well-known** *some of the great painters of the last century* ◇ *the Dutch master painter Jan Vermeer* | **good, talented | amateur, professional | contemporary, modern** *an exhibition of works by contemporary painters* | **court** *Rudolf II's court painter* | **abstract, animal, figurative, fresco, genre, landscape, miniature, portrait, realist, watercolour | Cubist, Impressionist, etc.**

⇨ Note at JOB

painting *noun*

1 act of painting
- ADJ. **acrylic, oil, watercolour | finger | miniature | abstract, decorative, figurative, genre, landscape, life, portrait, still-life, surrealist**
- VERB + PAINTING **do** *I'll do some painting this afternoon.* | **take up** *When she retired she took up painting.*
- PAINTING + NOUN **style, technique | course**
- PHRASES **painting and decorating** *The firm specializes in painting and decorating.*

2 picture
- ADJ. **fine, good, great | famous, well-known | valuable | original** *The design is based on an original painting by Matisse.* | **miniature | Cubist, Impressionist, Old Master, etc. | avant-garde | abstract, figurative, figure, genre, landscape, life, nude, still-life, surrealist | ceiling, fresco, wall | acrylic, gouache, oil, watercolour**
- QUANT. **series | collection, exhibition**
- VERB + PAINTING **do, execute, paint, work on** *Degas did several paintings of ballet dancers.* | **frame | hang, put up | display, exhibit, show | collect** *She collects paintings by nineteenth-century Australian artists.* | **clean, conserve, restore | copy, reproduce**
- PAINTING + VERB **depict sb/sth, portray sb/sth, show sb/sth | hang** *His most famous paintings hang in the Tate Gallery.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The woman in the painting is the artist's mistress.* | **~ by** *a painting by Gauguin* **~ in** *a fine painting in oils* **~ of** *paintings of flowers*

⇨ Note at ART

pair *noun*

1 two things the same
- ADJ. **matching** *a matching pair of vases* | **identical**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Answer one question in each pair.* **in ~s** *These candlesticks only come in pairs.* | **~ of** *a pair of shoes*
- PHRASES **one of a pair** *one of a pair of crystal vases*

2 people who are connected
- ADJ. **inseparable | good | happy** (= a newly married couple) | **odd** *They make an odd pair.*
- VERB + PAIR **match** *The pair were matched for age.* | **make** *I thought they would make a good pair so I arranged for them to meet.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The students worked in pairs.*

3 male and female animal
- ADJ. **breeding**
- PAIR + VERB **breed, mate**
- PREP. **~ of** *a pair of swans nesting by the river*

palace *noun*

- ADJ. **ancient | 14th-century, etc. | imperial, papal, presidential, royal | grand, great, magnificent, sumptuous, whacking great | veritable** (*figurative*) *Even this small house was a veritable palace compared to his tent.* | **fairy-tale**
- VERB + PALACE **build | live in**
- PALACE + VERB **stand** *The palace stands on the west bank of the river.*
- PALACE + NOUN **complex, compound | courtyard, gardens, grounds | gates | affairs | aide, guard, official, spokesman | coup, revolution** *The king was deposed by his son in a palace coup.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~, in a/the ~**
- PHRASES **the interior of the palace**

palate *noun*

1 part of the mouth
- ADJ. **hard | soft | cleft** *Their baby had an operation to repair a cleft palate.*

2 sense of taste
- ADJ. **discerning, discriminating, sophisticated | jaded** *Here is a dish that will revive jaded palates.*
- VERB + PALATE **have** *She has a discerning palate.* | **appeal to, suit** *This kind of food appeals to more sophisticated palates.* | **clean, cleanse** *Have an apple to cleanse your palate.*

pale *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become, go, grow, turn** *Ruth went pale as the news sank in.* | **remain**
- ADV. **deathly, extremely, sickly, terribly, very** *He turned deathly pale.* | **a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly | strangely, unnaturally**
- PHRASES **pale and drawn** *He looked pale and drawn.*

pallor *noun*

- ADJ. **slight | deathly, ghostly, sickly** *the deathly pallor of her face* | **green, grey, white**
- VERB + PALLOR **have** *He had a sickly green pallor.*

palm *noun*

1 flat part of the front of your hand
- ADJ. **soft | horny | sweaty | open | outstretched**
- VERB + PALM **hold up, raise** *He held up a palm for silence.* | **spread** *He spread his palms in a gesture of openness.* | **press** *I pressed my palm to the wound to stop the bleeding.* | **slap** *She slapped her palm against the desk in anger.*
- PALM + VERB **sweat | face** *Hold out your arms with the palms facing downwards.*
- PALM + NOUN **reading | print**
- PREP. **against your ~s** *The metal felt hot against my palms.* **between your ~s** *He took her hand between his palms and squeezed it.* **in your ~** *He showed me the coins in his palm.*
- PHRASES **palm/palms up/upwards** *She held out her hand to me, palm up.*

2 tree
- ADJ. **coconut, date, oil**
- PALM + NOUN **tree | branch, frond, leaf | grove | oil**

pamphlet *noun*

- ADJ. **political**
- VERB + PAMPHLET **print, produce, publish, write | circulate, distribute**
- PAMPHLET + VERB **be entitled sth**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *accusations that were made in the pamphlet*

pan *noun*

- ADJ. **chip, frying**
- PHRASES **pots and pans**

⇨ See SAUCEPAN (for other collocates of **pan**)

pancake *noun*

- ADJ. **savoury**
- VERB + PANCAKE **make | toss**

pane *noun*

- ADJ. **broken | missing** *The missing pane has been replaced.* | **glass | window**
- VERB + PANE **break, shatter, smash | blow in/out** *The wind blew in a pane of their front window.* | **replace**
- PREP. **against/to a/the ~** *Her face was pressed against the pane.* **down a/the ~** *The rain ran down the window pane.* **on a/the ~** *There was dirt on the pane.*
- PHRASES **a pane of glass** *The burglars got in by smashing a pane of glass in a door.*

panel *noun*

1 group of people
- ADJ. **distinguished** *a distinguished panel of academics* | **independent | international | advisory, interview, interviewing, judging, review, selection**
- VERB + PANEL **convene, select, set up | chair**
- PANEL + VERB **be drawn from sb/sth** *a panel of scientists drawn from universities*
- PANEL + NOUN **member | interview | discussion | game** *The comedian will chair a new TV panel game.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *The head of department serves on the advisory panel.* | **~ on** *an independent panel on takeovers and mergers*
- PHRASES **a member of a panel, a panel of experts/judges** *The winners were chosen by a panel of judges.*

2 part of a door, wall, etc.
- ADJ. **ceiling, door, wall | sliding**
- VERB + PANEL **fit, insert, put in | remove, take out**

3 section of vehicle body
- ADJ. **front, rear | nearside, offside | body** *My rear nearside body panel needed replacing after the accident.*
- VERB + PANEL **beat**
- PANEL + NOUN **beater, beating** *He works as a panel beater in a local garage.*

4 surface containing controls
- ADJ. **control, display, instrument**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *A red light flashed on the control panel.*

pang *noun*

- ADJ. **sharp | little | passing** *a passing pang of regret* | **sudden, unexpected | hunger | birth** (*figurative*) *the birth pangs of the new technology*
- VERB + PANG **experience, feel, suffer** *He experienced a sudden pang of conscience.* | **cause, give sb** *The photograph gave her a pang of homesickness.*
- PANG + VERB **shoot through sb** *A sharp pang of guilt shot through him.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *With a pang she recalled the last time she had seen him.* | **~ of** *She felt a little pang of jealousy.*

panic *noun*

- ADJ. **blind, mad, sheer, total | mild, minor | momentary | growing, mounting, rising | sudden | last-minute** *There was a last-minute panic when nobody could find the tickets.* | **moral** *a moral panic over rising crime rates*
- QUANT. **surge, wave** *I felt a surge of panic when I realized my mistake.*
- VERB + PANIC **feel** *He felt panic rising within him.* | **get into, go into** *She went into a mad panic when she couldn't find the exit.* | **cause, create, spread | fill sb with, throw sb into** *The thought of having to be in charge threw him into a mild panic.*
- PANIC + VERB **break out, spread (across/through, etc. sth), sweep over/through sth** *Panic swept through the crowd.* | **seize sb | grow, rise | subside | ensue** *In the ensuing panic, they lost each other.*
- PANIC + NOUN **attack** *She still has panic attacks, two years after the accident.* | **button** *The shopkeeper pressed the panic button and the police arrived in minutes.* | **buying, selling** *Panic buying turned the petrol shortage into a crisis.*
- PREP. **in (a) ~** *He jumped out of the car in a panic.* ◇ *People fled in panic.* **with ~** *Her mind went blank with panic.* | **~ about** *panic about food contamination* **~ among** *panic among the population* **~ over** *The keys were lost during the panic over the fire alarm.*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of panic, in a state of panic, a look of panic** *A look of panic spread across the boy's face.* **a moment of panic, a moment's panic**

pant *verb*

- ADV. **breathlessly | heavily, loudly | slightly**
- PREP. **for** *He was panting for breath.* **with** *She was panting with the effort of carrying the suitcase.*
- PHRASES **puff and pant** *Mason puffed and panted up the stairs.*

pantomime *noun*

- ADJ. **Christmas**
- PANTOMIME + NOUN **cow, dame, horse | season**

⇨ Note at PERFORMANCE (for verbs)

pants *noun*

- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + PANTS **pull on, pull up | drop, pull down | wet** *He was so frightened that he wet his pants.*

• PHRASES **bra and pants**
⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

paper *noun*

1 material

• ADJ. **thick, thin | see-through, transparent | plain, unlined | lined | graph, squared | A3, A4, etc. | foolscap | blank** *I stared at the blank paper, not knowing how to start the letter.* | **printed** *The Post Office has a special rate for printed paper.* | **brown, coloured** *a brown paper parcel of books* | **greaseproof, waxed | glossy, shiny | scrap, waste** *I made some notes on a piece of scrap paper.* | **computer, typing | writing | blotting | tracing | wrapping | crêpe | tissue | photographic | filter | kitchen | toilet | cigarette** *a packet of cigarette papers*

• QUANT. **bit, piece, scrap, sheet, slip, strip** *I scribbled down his number on a scrap of paper.* | **roll** *a roll of kitchen paper* | **side** *The essay filled seven sides of A4 paper.*

• VERB + PAPER **fold** *Fold the paper in half.* | **shred, tear | crumple (up), screw up** *I screwed up the paper and threw it in the bin.* | **recycle | wrap sth in**

• PAPER + VERB **be strewn** *There was paper strewn all over the floor.*

• PREP. **on ~** *I've had nothing on paper* (= in writing) *to say that I've been accepted.*

• PHRASES **put pen to paper** *I've thought about what I'm going to write, but I haven't yet put pen to paper.* **a waste of paper** *This report is a waste of paper.*

2 newspaper

• ADJ. **daily, evening, morning, Sunday, weekly | today's, yesterday's | independent, left-wing, right-wing | local, national | broadsheet, quality | tabloid**

• QUANT. **copy** *Have you got a copy of yesterday's paper?* | **edition** *today's edition of the paper*

• VERB + PAPER **buy, get, take** *Do you take a daily paper?* | **flick through, read** *What paper do you usually read?* | **print, produce, publish | edit, write for/in | appear in | get into** *The story got into the papers.*

• PAPER + VERB **come out** *The paper comes out every Saturday.*

• PAPER + NOUN **shop | boy, girl | round**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *I read about his arrest in the papers.* **on a/the ~** *She got a job on the local paper.*

3 (usually **papers**) official document

• ADJ. **commercial | necessary | official | identity | personal, private | ballot**

• QUANT. **pile, sheaf**

• VERB + PAPERS **show** *Be prepared to show your identity papers at the border.*

4 exam

• ADJ. **exam, examination, question, test | written** *I did well on the oral but not on the written paper.* | **English, geography, etc.**

• VERB + PAPER **do, sit, take | set** *The exam papers are set by experienced teachers.* | **mark | turn over** *You may now turn over your papers.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *the questions in the physics paper* **on a/the ~** *You must not write on the question paper.*

5 piece of writing on a specialist subject

• ADJ. **draft | consultation, consultative, discussion, position, working | research, scientific**

• VERB + PAPER **deliver, give, present, put forward, read | draft, prepare, produce, write | issue, publish, release**

• PAPER + VERB **consider sth, deal with sth, focus on/upon sth, look at sth** *The paper looks at the future of primary school education.* | **argue sth, propose sth | demonstrate sth | describe sth, outline sth, present sth | be called sth, be entitled sth**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *Freud first mentioned this concept in his paper 'On Narcissism'.* | **~ on** *a paper on the development of the novel*

paperback *noun*

• ADJ. **mass-market** *the demand for mass-market paperbacks* | **original** *The book is to be published as an original paperback* (= it is not being published in hardback first).

• VERB + PAPERBACK **read | produce, publish (sth as) | be out in, come out in** *The novel has just come out in paperback.*

• PAPERBACK + VERB **come out** *The paperback came out in June.*

• PAPERBACK + NOUN **book, edition, novel, version | original | fiction | rights, sales**

• PREP. **in ~** *The book is now available in paperback.*

paperwork *noun*

• ADJ. **routine | necessary**

• VERB + PAPERWORK **deal with, do, get through, go through, work through** *I've got a lot of routine paperwork to get through.* | **involve** *The project involved an enormous amount of paperwork.*

• PREP. **~ for** *Have you done all the necessary paperwork for the sale?*

• PHRASES **a backlog/mountain/pile of paperwork**

parachute *noun*

• VERB + PARACHUTE **pack**

• PARACHUTE + VERB **open | fail to open**

• PARACHUTE + NOUN **descent, drop, jump** *He made his first parachute jump at the age of seventy.* | **instructor**

• PREP. **by ~** *Supplies were dropped by parachute.*

parade *noun*

• ADJ. **grand | colourful | fashion | military, victory | identification, identity**

• VERB + PARADE **have, hold, stage** *The police held an identity parade.* | **go on** *The battalion went on parade to welcome the new commander-in-chief.* | **inspect, review** *The president reviewed the military parade.*

• PARADE + VERB **take place**

• PARADE + NOUN **ground**

• PREP. **at a/the ~** *Thousands of people were at the parade.* **on ~** *The soldiers will be on parade tomorrow.*

paradise *noun*

1 heaven

• VERB + PARADISE **go to** *They all expected to go to paradise.*

• PREP. **in ~** *an angel in paradise*

2 perfect place

• ADJ. **perfect, unspoilt | beautiful | lost** *the lost paradise of childhood* | **children's, walker's, etc. | earthly, island, tropical**

• VERB + PARADISE **create** *She worked on the garden until she had created her own little paradise.* | **find** *They moved to the country hoping to find paradise.*

• PARADISE + NOUN **island**

• PREP. **in (a) ~** *We found ourselves in a tropical paradise.* | **~ for** *The airport is a paradise for pickpockets.* **~ of** *a paradise of golden beaches*

• PHRASES **a paradise on earth**

paradox *noun*

• ADJ. **apparent | central | curious**

• VERB + PARADOX **pose, present** *The facts pose something of a paradox.* | **explain, resolve**

• PREP. **~ about** *The paradox about time is that it seems to go faster as we become older and less active.* **~ between** *the paradox between the real and the ideal* **~ in** *the paradox in the relationship between creativity and psychosis*

• PHRASES **by a curious paradox** *By a curious paradox, the team became less motivated the more games it won.*

paradoxical *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound**
- ADV. **distinctly, very | slightly, somewhat | seemingly** *trying to understand her seemingly paradoxical behaviour* **| inherently | curiously** *He found himself in a curiously paradoxical situation.*

paragraph *noun*

- ADJ. **new | introductory, opening**
- VERB + PARAGRAPH **begin, start** *Start each paragraph on a new line.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The identity of the murderer is revealed in the very last paragraph.* **in accordance with/under ~** *(law) Cancellation charges will apply in accordance with paragraph 4 above.* **| ~ about** *a paragraph about the writer's reaction to his mother's death*

parallel *noun*

- ADJ. **direct, exact | clear, close, obvious | interesting, striking**
- VERB + PARALLEL **have** *This weather pattern of the southern hemisphere has no parallel in the north.* **| find, see | draw, make** *He drew an interesting parallel with religious practices in Japan.* **| provide**
- PREP. **without ~** *a speed of development without parallel in post-war Europe* **| ~ between** *a parallel between economic and cultural advancement* **~ in** *We found a direct parallel in the attitudes of schoolchildren in other countries.* **~ to** *A close parallel to this behaviour is found in dolphins.* **~ with** *She saw an obvious parallel with her sister's predicament.*

parallel *adj.*

- VERBS **be, run**
- ADV. **exactly | nearly | roughly**
- PREP. **to** *The lane is roughly parallel to the main road.* **with** *The road runs parallel with the sea.*

paralyse *verb*

- ADV. **completely, totally | partially, partly** *He was partially paralysed by the fall.* **| almost, virtually**
- PHRASES **be paralysed from the chest/neck/waist down, be paralysed with fear, leave sb paralysed** *The accident left her paralysed.*

paralysis *noun*

1 being unable to move your body or a part of it

- ADJ. **complete | partial | instant** *The snake's venom induces instant paralysis.* **| permanent | infantile**
- VERB + PARALYSIS **be struck with | suffer from | cause, induce**
- PARALYSIS + VERB **spread** *He had been crippled by a rare type of paralysis spreading from his ankle.*

2 being unable to work in the normal way

- ADJ. **complete** *Strike leaders claimed 'almost complete paralysis' in the ports and mines.* **| emotional, political**

paranoia *noun*

- ADJ. **increasing, mounting**
- VERB + PARANOIA **suffer from | border on, verge on** *Her passion for cleanliness borders on paranoia.*
- PARANOIA + VERB **afflict sb**

parasite *noun*

- ADJ. **common | dangerous** *These flies carry a dangerous parasite.* **| external, internal | intestinal**
- VERB + PARASITE **carry, have**

parcel *noun*

- ADJ. **bulky | neat | brown-paper | gift-wrapped, tissue-wrapped, etc. | clothing, food**
- VERB + PARCEL **post, send | get, receive | make sth (up) into, pack (up), wrap, wrap sth (up) in** *The waiter had our left-over food made up into a parcel to take home.* **| open, unpack, unwrap**
- PARCEL + NOUN **bomb**
- PREP. **in a/the ~ | ~ from, ~ to**
- PHRASES **laden/loaded with parcels** *He came in laden with parcels for the children.*

pardon *noun*

- ADJ. **full | partial | conditional | general | free | posthumous | presidential, royal**
- VERB + PARDON **give sb, grant sb | offer sb** *The government offered a free pardon to the rebels.* **| buy, obtain, receive | ask (for), seek | refuse**
- PREP. **~ for** *She asked for pardon for her crime.*

parent *noun*

- ADJ. **lone, single | unmarried | widowed | divorced | absent | substitute, surrogate | elderly | prospective, would-be | new | biological, birth, natural, real | adoptive, foster, step- | good | proud** *They have just become the proud parents of a baby girl.* **| caring, devoted, fond, loving | doting, indulgent | over-protective | stern, strict | domineering | bad, inadequate | abusive | angry, anxious, distressed, heartbroken | working** *The government has promised a better deal for working parents.*
- PARENT + NOUN **company** *The subsidiary eventually outgrew its parent company and took it over.*
- PHRASES **lone/one/single-parent family**

parenthood *noun*

- ADJ. **lone, single | responsible** *education about family planning and responsible parenthood*
- PHRASES **preparation for parenthood**

park *noun*

- ADJ. **local | city | public | country | national** *The mountain has been designated as a national park.* **| safari, wildlife | amusement, leisure, theme**
- VERB + PARK **go to** *They go to the park most Sunday afternoons.* **| landscape, lay out** *a beautifully landscaped park*
- PARK + NOUN **bench | ranger** *The lion was shot dead by a park ranger.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *We met at Hyde Park.* **in a/the ~** *They went for a walk in the park.*

park *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, neatly, well | badly | illegally | discreetly** *The police car was discreetly parked in the furthest corner of the courtyard.*

parking *noun*

- ADJ. **convenient, easy | off-road, off-street, on-street, street, roadside | long-stay, short-stay | illegal | car**
- PARKING + NOUN **area, facilities, lot | bay, place, space, spot** *a restaurant with ample parking space* ◇ *I spent ages looking for a parking place/space.* **| meter | fine, ticket | restrictions**
- PREP. **~ for** *parking for 300 cars*

parliament *noun*

- ADJ. **current, present | outgoing | bicameral, unicameral | hung** *The election resulted in a hung parlia-*

ment, followed by the resignation of the prime minister. | **federal, national, provincial, regional, state**

- VERB + PARLIAMENT **stand for** *He first stood for Parliament in 2001.* | **enter, get into** | **be in, sit in** *He sat in Parliament for over forty years.* | **elect (sb to)** *a popularly elected parliament* | **return sb to** *He was returned to Parliament in 2001 as MP for Appleby.* | **represent sb/sth in** | **bring/lay/put sth before, introduce sth into, present sth to** | **be/come/go before** *The bill will come before Parliament next month.* | **go through, get through, pass through** | **put through, push through, force through** *The government was accused of forcing the bill through Parliament.* | **lobby** | **adjourn, convene** | **dissolve, suspend** | **be accountable to, be responsible to**
- PARLIAMENT + VERB **adopt sth, approve sth, enact sth, lay sth down, pass sth, ratify sth** *The Commission is guided by rules laid down by Parliament.* | **reject sth** | **vote (on sth)** | **debate sth** | **legislate (on sth)** *Parliament may legislate on any matter of penal law.* | **be in session, convene, meet, sit** *Parliament will be in session until 15th December.* | **adjourn, rise** | **resume**
- PARLIAMENT + NOUN **building**
- PREP. **in ~** *her first year in Parliament*
- PHRASES **an Act of Parliament, a (lower/upper) house of parliament** *The National Assembly is the lower house of the French Parliament.* **the lifetime of a parliament** *It will take at least the lifetime of a parliament to put the health service in order.* **a majority in Parliament** *The party has a two-thirds majority in Parliament.* **a Member of Parliament, a seat in Parliament sth's passage through Parliament** *Sponsors of the bill agreed to concessions in order to smooth its passage through Parliament. The party failed to win any seats in Parliament.* **a session of Parliament**

parody *noun*

1 writing/speech/music

- ADJ. **brilliant, clever** | **cruel**
- VERB + PARODY **compose, write**
- PREP. **through ~** *He attacked her ideas through parody.* | **~ of** *She has written a cruel parody of his book.* **~ on** *The show included a parody on current affairs programmes.*

2 bad example

- ADJ. **grotesque**
- PREP. **in a ~ of** *He sighed in a parody of deep emotion.* | **~ of** *She has become a grotesque parody of her former elegant self.*
- PHRASES **a parody of justice** *The trial was a parody of justice.*

parole *noun*

- ADJ. **early**
- VERB + PAROLE **be on** | **give sb, grant sb** | **get** *She's got (her) parole.* | **let sb out on, release sb on** *She was released on parole after serving just half of her sentence.* | **break** *He broke (his) parole.* | **be eligible for, be/come up for** *Her case comes up for parole in September.*
- PAROLE + NOUN **board, system**
- PREP. **on ~** *He committed a burglary while on parole.* **with ~** *With parole, he could be out in two years.* **without ~** *sentenced to life imprisonment without parole*

parsley *noun*

- QUANT. **sprig**
- VERB + PARSLEY **grow** | **chop** | **garnish sth with**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

part *noun*

1 piece/area/period/division, etc. of sth

- ADJ. **big, good, greater, large, major, significant, substantial** *We spent a good part of the day rehearsing.* ◇ *The greater part of the building has been refurbished.* | **minor, small** | **equal** *Cut it into four equal parts.* | **important, main, principal** | **basic, central, essential, fundamental, indispensable, vital** | **integral, intrinsic** | **separate** | **inseparable** | **component, constituent** | **best** | **worst** *The worst part was having to wait three hours.* | **difficult, hard** *I gave up once I got to the hard part.* | **easy** | **early** *In the early part of his career he worked in India.* | **latter** *the latter part of the century* | **different, distinct, various** | **foreign** *travellers returning from foreign parts* | **separate** | **inseparable** | **component, constituent** *Break it down into its constituent parts.* | **private** (= sexual organs)
- VERB + PART **constitute, fall into, form** *The book falls into three distinct parts.* | **break sth down into, divide sth into, split sth into**
- PREP. **in ~** *Your salary depends in part on your qualifications.* ◇ *The film is good in parts.* ◇ *a serial in four parts* | **~ of** *Part of me wants to stay and part of me doesn't.*
- PHRASES **the parts of the body**

2 a piece of a machine

- ADJ. **spare** *Where can I get spare parts for my bike?*

3 role in a play, film, etc.

- ADJ. **big, leading** | **bit, small, walk-on** | **speaking**
- VERB + PART **have, play, take** | **learn** | **look** *He was a pirate in the school play and certainly looked the part.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *He's very good in the part.* | **~ of** *She played the part of Juliet.*

4 share in an activity, event, etc.

- ADJ. **big, leading, major** *Luck played a big part in it.* | **minor** | **central, significant, vital** | **active**
- VERB + PART **have** *He had no part in the scam.* | **do, play, take** *She did her part in bringing them back together.*
- PREP. **~ in** *They took little part in the discussion.*

partial *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **remain**
- ADV. **very** | **only** | **inevitably, necessarily** *The information we have is inevitably partial.*

participant *noun*

- ADJ. **full** | **active** | **unwilling, willing** *She was an unwilling participant in his downfall.* | **key, leading, main, major** | **course** | **conference, seminar**
- VERB + PARTICIPANT **attract** *Protests on 12 April attracted 100 000 participants.*
- PARTICIPANT + VERB **attend sth**
- PREP. **~ in** *an active participant in the discussion*

participate *verb*

- ADV. **fully** | **actively**
- VERB + PARTICIPATE **be able to, have the opportunity to** | **be allowed to, be encouraged to, be invited to** *Other countries were invited to participate in the project.* | **agree to** | **refuse to**
- PREP. **in** *They will have the opportunity to participate actively in the decision-making process.*

participation *noun*

- ADJ. **full** | **broader, greater, increased** | **limited** | **direct** | **active** | **political** | **popular, public** | **audience, employee, student, worker** *Some of the magic tricks called for audience participation.*
- QUANT. **degree, extent, level** *We were very pleased with the high level of participation in the charity events.*
- VERB + PARTICIPATION **encourage** *The scheme aims to encourage increased participation in sporting activities.* | **increase**
- PARTICIPATION + VERB **increase**
- PARTICIPATION + NOUN **rate**

- PREP. **~ in** *direct participation by the masses in the running of the country*

parting *noun*

- ADJ. **final** | **sad**
- PARTING + NOUN **gift** | **shot, words** *As her parting shot she told me never to phone her again.*
- PHRASES **the moment of parting** *She was already dreading the moment of parting.*

partition *noun*

- ADJ. **movable** | **folding**
- VERB + PARTITION **build, erect, put up** | **remove, take down**
- PARTITION + VERB **divide sth (up), separate sth** *The cafe was divided up by glass partitions.*
- PARTITION + NOUN **wall**
- PREP. **~ between** *There were no partitions between the showers.*

partner *noun*

1 in a marriage/relationship

- ADJ. **former** | **dominant** *She was the dominant partner in the relationship.* | **female, male** | **marriage, sexual** *the choice of marriage partner*
- VERB + PARTNER **have**

2 in an activity

- ADJ. **bridge, doubles, playing, tennis** *I need a doubles partner for the table tennis tournament.* | **dancing** | **sparring** (*figurative*) *The old political sparring partners are now firm friends.* | **drinking**
- VERB + PARTNER **choose** *The teacher asked the students to choose a partner for the next activity.* | **change** *All change partners for the next dance!*

3 in business

- ADJ. **full** | **equal** | **active, managing** | **sleeping** | **junior, senior** | **business**
- VERB + PARTNER **make sb**
- PREP. **~ in** *He has recently been made a junior partner in the family business.*

4 in international relations

- ADJ. **biggest, main, principal** | **foreign** | **coalition, trading** *France's principal trading partners*
- PREP. **~ in** *Britain's partner in the aeronautic project*

partnership *noun*

- ADJ. **close** | **limited** | **effective, good, great, successful** | **working** *We are trying to develop a working partnership between local schools and industries.* | **unique** | **equal** *an equal partnership of men and women in government* | **international, multinational** | **business**
- VERB + PARTNERSHIP **have** | **create, establish, form, set up (in)** | **enter into, go into** *The company has gone into partnership with Swiss Bank Corporation.* | **take sb into** *We took him into partnership in 2002.* | **work in** *We shall be working in close partnership with our Japanese clients.* | **break up**
- PARTNERSHIP + NOUN **agreement, arrangement**
- PREP. **in ~ with** *They are in partnership with Apex software.* | **~ between** *a partnership between the university and local colleges* **~ in** *She has a partnership in the business.* **~ of** *a unique partnership of private companies and trade unions* **~ with** *a partnership with an American firm*

⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION

party *noun*

1 political group

- ADJ. **political** | **centre, left-wing, right-wing** | **centrist, fascist, populist, progressive, radical, reactionary, revolutionary, social democratic, socialist** | **Communist, Conservative, Democratic, Labour, Liberal, Republican, etc.** | **opposition** | **parliamentary** *members of the parliamentary party* (= MPs, not ordinary party members) | **main** *both main political parties* | **majority, minority** *They are now the majority party in Parliament.* | **governing, ruling**
- VERB + PARTY **establish, form, found, set up** | **dissolve, wind up** *The party was officially dissolved in 1927.* | **split** *a bitter dispute which finally split the party* | **be/become the leader of, lead** | **be/become a member of, belong to, join** | **be affiliated to, have links with** *He was accused of having strong links with the Communist Party.* | **leave, resign from** *She left the party in 2000.* | **expel sb from** | **vote for** | **elect, put in/into power, return to power** *The Labour Party was returned to power in 2001.*
- PARTY + VERB **come to power, gain power, win (sth)** | **lose (sth), lose power** *The Labour party lost the vote on this important issue.* | **contest sth** *the parties contesting the elections*
- PARTY + NOUN **conference, congress** | **activist, member, faithful** (= loyal members of the party) | **chairman, leader, leadership** | **line** *Most MPs will follow the party line* (= the official view of the party). | **politics**
- PHRASES **the left/right wing of the party**

2 social occasion

- ADJ. **cocktail, dinner, tea** | **birthday, Christmas, farewell, house-warming, leaving** | **garden, office, street** | **all-night** | **fancy-dress** | **surprise**
- VERB + PARTY **give, have, hold, organize, throw** *On moving in they threw a huge house-warming party.* | **invite sb to** | **attend, go to** | **gatecrash** | **leave**
- PARTY + VERB **go on** *There was a party going on next door.* | **be in full swing** (= to be very busy and noisy) *By now the party was in full swing.* | **break up** *The party broke up around midnight.*
- PARTY + NOUN **guest** | **pooper** (also **party-pooper**; = sb who does not want to join in the fun at a party)
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *I was at a party in London that night.* | **~ for** *I'm organizing a surprise party for my sister.*

3 group of people working/doing sth together

- ADJ. **boarding, coach, landing, raiding, reading, rescue, search, stretcher, working** *It was time for us to join the coach party.*
- PREP. **~ of** *She arrived with a party of helpers.*

4 person in a legal case

- ADJ. **guilty, innocent** | **aggrieved, injured** | **interested** *First we must notify all the interested parties.* | **third** *You must sign the document in the presence of an independent third party* (= another person apart from the two main people involved)
- VERB + PARTY **notify** | **be binding on/upon, bind** *This agreement shall be binding upon both parties.*

pass *noun*

1 in sport

- ADJ. **good, perfect** | **careless, sloppy** | **long, short** | **back, cross-field, square** (in football) | **forward** (in rugby) *The referee disallowed the try for a forward pass.*
- VERB + PASS **play** *Ziege played a pass behind the defence to Weiss.* | **get, pick up, receive** | **block, intercept**
- PREP. **~ from** *Owen picked up a long pass from Beckham to score.* **~ to** *He played a careless back pass to the goalkeeper.*

2 success in exam

- ADJ. **good** | **exam, examination, A Level, GCSE, etc.**
- VERB + PASS **get, manage, obtain, scrape** *She barely scraped a pass in chemistry.*
- PASS + NOUN **mark, rate** *The pass mark is 40%.* | **degree** *Applicants need a good degree pass.*
- PREP. **~ at** *It's difficult to obtain a pass at A Level.* **~ in** *He should get a good pass in mathematics.*

3 official piece of paper

- ADJ. **free | day, monthly, weekend, yearly | bus, rail, railway** *a monthly rail pass* **| security | boarding**
- VERB + PASS **have | use | give sb, issue (sb with)** *The visitors were issued with day passes.* **| produce, show**
- PREP. **on a ~** *soldiers on a weekend pass* **| ~ to** *We bought a two-day pass to Disneyland.*

4 way through mountains

- ADJ. **high, low | narrow | mountain**
- VERB + PASS **cross, take**
- PASS + VERB **be blocked**
- PREP. **over a/the ~** *struggling over the pass with their donkeys* **through a/the ~** *building a road through the pass* **| ~ over** *We took the high pass over the ridge.*
- PHRASES **the head/summit/top of the pass**

pass *verb*

1 of time

- ADV. **quickly, soon** *The time passed quickly.* **| slowly | peacefully, uneventfully** *The days passed uneventfully.*
- VERB + PASS **help (to)** *We played games to help pass the time.*

2 law

- ADV. **unanimously**
- PREP. **by … to …** *The bill was passed by 360 votes to 280.*

4 happen

- ADV. **peacefully | off** *The demonstration passed off peacefully.*
- VERB + PASS **come to** *(formal or old-fashioned) I wondered how it came to pass that a thinking man bore the prejudices of his unthinking parents.* **| let sth** *I don't like it, but I'll let it pass* (= will not object).
- PREP. **between** *They'll never be friends again after all that has passed between them.*
- PHRASES **pass unnoticed** *In the confusion her departure passed unnoticed.*

passage *noun*

1 narrow way through

- ADJ. **long, short | narrow, small | wide | twisting, winding | connecting, side | subterranean, underground | dark, secret**
- VERB + PASSAGE **clear** *to clear a passage for ships through the ice* **| force** *He forced a passage for the singer through the crowd.*
- PREP. **along/down/through a/the ~** *We ran through the dark passage.* **in/into a/the ~** *Someone was waiting outside in the passage.* **| ~ between** *the passage between the cottage and the house* **~ from** *There is an underground passage from the church to the house.* **~ through** *a narrow passage through the bushes* **~ to**
- PHRASES **the end of a passage** *There was a door at the end of the passage.* **a maze of passages** *the maze of secret passages which wound their way under the building*

2 tube in the body

- ADJ. **nasal | back** (= rectum)
- VERB + PASSAGE **block, obstruct | clear**

3 extract from a book/speech

- ADJ. **lengthy, long | short | opening | famous, well-known | descriptive, purple**
- VERB + PASSAGE **quote, read**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *There's a lot of slang in this passage.* **| ~ from** *a passage from the Bible*

4 extract from a piece of music

- ADJ. **lengthy, long | short | opening | fast, slow | loud | quiet, soft | solo**
- VERB + PASSAGE **play, quote** *In the 15th symphony he quotes a passage from Rossini's 'William Tell' overture.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~ | ~ from**

5 movement/progress

- ADJ. **rapid, speedy | slow | safe | smooth | free** *The UN Security Council has demanded free passage for families fleeing from the fighting.*
- VERB + PASSAGE **deny sb, refuse sb**
- PREP. **~ across** *the slow passage of a snail across the veranda* **~ down** *Steps cut in the hillside give walkers an easy passage down the mountain.* **~ from … to …** *We are not aware of our passage from consciousness to sleep.* **~ into** *Portugal's passage into the next round of the tournament* **~ out of** *a safe passage out of the war zone* **~ over** *State-of-the-art suspension guarantees a smooth passage over the bumpiest road.* **~ through** *They denied him passage through the territory.*
- PHRASES **the passage of time** *The problems only got worse with the passage of time.* **a rite of passage** *Marriage is seen as a rite of passage.*

6 journey by ship

- ADJ. **long, short | rough, stormy | homeward, outward | sea**
- VERB + PASSAGE **have | book | work** *He worked his passage* (= he worked to pay for his journey) *to Australia.*
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *During the passage, she taught herself basic Arabic.* **on sb's/the ~** *We met him on our outward passage.* **| ~ across** *a rough passage across the Atlantic* **~ to** *We had a stormy passage to India.*

7 of a bill through Parliament

- ADJ. **smooth | speedy**
- VERB + PASSAGE **begin, complete** *The bill will complete its passage in November.*
- PREP. **during the ~** *There was much controversy during the passage of the bill.* **| ~ through** *a strategy to ensure the bill's smooth passage through Parliament*

passenger *noun*

- ADJ. **business-class, economy-class, first-class, second-class, standard-class | front-seat, rear-seat | airline, bus, rail | pillion** (= riding on the back of a motorcycle) **| fellow** *I soon got talking to my fellow passengers.*
- VERB + PASSENGER **carry** *Last year the airline carried 4.6 million passengers.* **| let on, pick up, take on** *A taxi was picking up a passenger outside the hotel.* **| drop off, let off/out** *The bus stopped to let its passengers off.*
- PASSENGER + VERB **wait** *passengers waiting to board the plane* **| be aboard (sth), go in/on sth, travel in/on sth** *passengers travelling on the Orient Express* **| board (sth), embark (on sth), get on (sth), go aboard (sth) | disembark, get off/out | be stranded** *Thousands of passengers were stranded last night at Heathrow airport.*
- PASSENGER + NOUN **compartment | door | seat, side** *There is no air bag on the passenger side.* **| comfort, safety | aircraft, ferry, train | flight, services | list**
- PREP. **~ for** *Will all passengers for Frankfurt please go to Gate 21.* **~ in** *the passengers in her car* **~ on** *all the passengers on the ferry*

passing *noun*

- VERB + PASSING **mourn** *Few will mourn his passing.* **| mark** *Her death marks the passing of an era.*
- PHRASES **the passing of time** *The colour of the wood darkens with the passing of time.*

passion *noun*

1 strong sexual love/attraction

- ADJ. **grand, great** *She didn't believe in grand passion or love at first sight.* ◇ *She was his first great passion.* **| all-consuming, blind, consuming, fierce, fiery, intense | tender | animal, romantic, sexual**
- QUANT. **surge, wave**
- VERB + PASSION **arouse, awaken** *No one had ever aroused his passion as much as Sandra.* **| be filled with, feel** *the great passion he felt for her*
- PASSION + VERB **cool, wane**

- PREP. **with ~** *They kissed with passion.* | **~ between** *The passion between them had cooled.* **~ for** *his all-consuming passion for her*
- PHRASES **a night of passion** *They spent a night of passion in a hotel.* **the object of sb's passion** *the young girl who was the object of his passion*

2 strong feeling

- ADJ. **considerable, great, high, real** *a woman of great passion* ◇ *There were moments of high passion in the game.*
- VERB + PASSION **have** *A writer should have passion.* | **arouse, rouse** *This issue always arouses passion.*
- PREP. **with ~** *He argued his case with great passion.*
- PHRASES **a crime of passion** *She killed her husband's lover in a crime of passion.* **full of passion** *a speech full of passion*

3 strong liking for/interest in sth

- ADJ. **all-consuming, consuming, great, real** | **abiding, genuine, lifelong** *his lifelong passion for aeroplanes*
- VERB + PASSION **develop, have** | **share** *They shared a passion for food.* | **indulge** *She had very little time to indulge her passion for painting.*
- PREP. **~ for** *He developed a real passion for acting.*

passive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **became** | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **purely** | **fairly, rather, relatively, somewhat** | **essentially** *The heroine plays an essentially passive role in the drama.*

passport *noun*

- ADJ. **valid** | **false, forged** | **EU, Mexican, French, etc.** | **visitor's**
- VERB + PASSPORT **apply for** | **renew** | **get, obtain** | **be in possession of, carry, have, hold, travel on** *The police think the smugglers are travelling on Irish passports.* | **give sb, issue sb (with)** | **hand sb, produce, show (sb)** *You have to show your passport at the border.* | **surrender** *The Embassy made him surrender his passport.* | **ask for** | **check** | **stamp** | **hand back/over** *He examined my face carefully before handing back my passport.* | **confiscate, seize**
- PASSPORT + VERB **be valid** | **expire**
- PASSPORT + NOUN **number, photo, photograph** | **holder** | **Agency, Office** | **control** *We had to queue for ages at passport control.*
- PREP. **~ into** (*figurative*) *The gold medal is his passport into professional boxing.* **~ to** (*figurative*) *Good qualifications are a passport to success.*
- PHRASES **a full British/French, etc. passport** (= one showing that sb has all the rights of British/French, etc. citizenship)

password *noun*

- ADJ. **correct, valid** | **invalid** | **user** *Please supply a valid user password.*
- VERB + PASSWORD **know** | **give** *You must give the password before they'll let you in.* | **enter, provide, supply, type in** | **change**
- PHRASES **be password protected** *Your mailbox can be password protected to ensure security.*

past *noun*

1 time before the present

- ADJ. **immediate, recent** | **ancient, (dim and) distant, remote** *Many modern festivals can be traced back to an ancient past.* ◇ *It all happened in the distant past.*
- VERB + PAST **cling to, live in** *We're going to have to stop living in the past and invest in new technology if the firm is to survive.* | **belong in/to** *Those memories belong to the past and I don't want to think about them.*
- PREP. **from the ~** *Memories from the past came flooding back to him.* **in the ~** *I admit that I have made mistakes in the past.* **into the ~** *events stretching back many years into the past* **of the ~** *great artists of the past*
- PHRASES **be all in the past** *Don't worry about it—it's all in the past now.* **a break with the past** *In an effort to make a complete break with the past, she sold everything and went abroad.* **a glimpse of the past** *The uncovering of the buried town gives us a unique glimpse of the past.* **a link with the past** *The old market is a living link with the past, unchanged for hundreds of years.* **nostalgia for the past, a thing of the past** *a new device that makes such problems a thing of the past*

2 sb/sth's history

- ADJ. **historic, historical** | **colourful, rich** | **chequered, murky, sordid** | **criminal** | **glorious, illustrious** *Few remnants remain of the city's glorious past.* | **cultural, political** | **ancestral, evolutionary** | **imperial, industrial**
- VERB + PAST **reflect on/upon** | **recapture** *trying in vain to recapture his past* | **erase, escape from, put behind you, wipe out** *Political parties cannot escape from their pasts any more than individuals can.* ◇ *The counselling helped Dan to put the past behind him.*
- PREP. **from your ~** *ghosts from his past* **in your ~** *at some time in her past*

pasta *noun*

- ADJ. **fresh** | **dried** | **egg, wholemeal**
- VERB + PASTA **cook** | **drain, strain**
- PASTA + NOUN **bows, shapes, shells, etc.** | **sauce** | **dish, salad**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

paste *noun*

- ADJ. **firm, stiff, thick** | **lumpy, smooth** | **wallpaper** | **curry, fish, tomato, etc.**
- VERB + PASTE **make (up), mix (up), mix sth into/to** *Mix the sugar mixture to a smooth paste.* | **form** *Mix the flour with enough water to form a thick paste.* | **apply, put on** *Apply the wallpaper paste with a roller.*

pastime *noun*

- ADJ. **enjoyable, rewarding** | **favourite, popular** | **dangerous** | **expensive** | **national** *Eating out is the national pastime in France.*
- VERB + PASTIME **enjoy, indulge in, pursue**
- PREP. **~ among** *Fighting is a popular pastime among some of the town's boys.* **~ for** *Cycling is an enjoyable pastime for people of all ages.*

pastry *noun*

- ADJ. **crisp, light** *Bake until the pastry is crisp and golden.* | **soggy** | **golden** | **ready-made** | **sweet** | **choux, filo, flaky, puff, shortcrust**
- VERB + PASTRY **make** | **cut, knead, roll out** *Cut the filo pastry into 10 cm strips.* | **line sth with** *Line the tin with the pastry.* | **brush** *Brush the pastry with a little water.* | **bake/wrap sth in** *prawns wrapped in filo pastry*
- PASTRY + NOUN **base, case, parcel** | **board, cutter** | **chef**

pat *noun*

- ADJ. **affectionate, friendly** | **reassuring**
- VERB + PAT **give sb/sth** *He gave the dog a pat.*
- PREP. **~ on** *He gave her a reassuring pat on the shoulder.*

pat *verb*

- ADV. **gently, lightly** | **affectionately**
- PREP. **on** *He patted her gently on the shoulder.*

patch *noun*

1 material over a hole

• VERB + PATCH **have** *Her trousers have patches all over them.* | **sew on**

• PREP. **~ on** *dancers with patches on their costumes*

2 part of a surface that is different

• ADJ. **irregular** | **clear, coloured, dark** | **damp, wet** | **icy** *icy patches on the roads* | **bald** *He has a small bald patch on the crown of his head.* | **rough, sore**

• PREP. **in ~es** *The velvet curtains were faded in patches.* | **~ of** *There were some patches of clear blue sky.* **~ on** *A large damp patch had appeared on the ceiling.*

• PHRASES **a patch of colour** *flowers providing little bright patches of colour around the garden*

3 piece of land

• ADJ. **isolated** *an isolated patch of forest* | **cabbage, potato, vegetable**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *working in his vegetable patch* **on a/the ~** *located on a small patch of flat ground*

• PHRASES **a patch of grass/ground** *We found a nice patch of grass to sit on.*

4 period of time

• ADJ. **bad, difficult, rocky, rough, sticky** | **purple** *The team has hit a purple patch, with nine wins from their last ten games.*

• VERB + PATCH **go through, have, hit** *Their business hit a sticky patch last year.*

• PREP. **~ of** *going through a patch of poor health*

patchy *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain**

• ADV. **decidedly, extremely, very** *The local provision of facilities is decidedly patchy.* | **a bit, a little, rather** *Attendance at these matches has been rather patchy recently.*

patent *noun*

• VERB + PATENT **apply for, file** *In 1843 Bain filed a patent for his fax machine.* | **get, obtain, take out** | **protect sth by** *Genetically engineered plants can be protected by patent.* | **grant (sb), issue** | **refuse** *A patent will be refused if details of the item have already been released to the public.* | **have, hold** | **infringe**

• PATENT + NOUN **application** | **protection** | **law** *a leading authority on patent law* | **Office**

• PREP. **~ for** *In 1995 he was granted a patent for his invention.* **~ on** *Edison took out a patent on the light bulb.*

• PHRASES **patent pending** (= waiting to be issued) *The item is Patent Pending No. 912057.*

path *noun*

1 way across land

• ADJ. **long** | **narrow** | **steep** | **winding** | **cliff, coast, coastal, forest, garden, woodland** | **pedestrian, public** | **cycle** | **bridle**

• VERB + PATH **follow, go along/down/up, take** *Follow this path for about 100 metres, and it's on your right.* | **climb** | **keep on/to, stay on** | **leave, stray off** | **clear, make** *A path was cleared through the jungle.*

• PATH + VERB **go, run** *That path goes down to the sea.* | **descend** | **follow sth** *The path follows the stream for quite a way.* | **branch off, leave sth** *The path left the river bank and wound its way into the woods.* | **divide, fork** | **go to sth, lead (to) sth** *Where does this path lead?* | **bear left/right** | **wind, zig-zag** *Then the path zig-zags steeply uphill for a while.* | **be marked (sth), be signposted (sth)** *The path is clearly marked.* | **narrow, widen**

• PREP. **along/down/up a/the ~** *children running along the path* **on a/the ~** *I think we're on the path we used yesterday.* | **~ along/beside/by** *the path along the canal* **~ for** *a path for cyclists* **~ from** *the path from the hotel to the beach* **~ through** *I took the path through the park.* **~ to**

2 line of movement

• ADJ. **correct** | **flight** *The pilot was instructed to change his flight path.*

• VERB + PATH **steer** *He steered a path through the crowd.* | **trace** *Scientists can trace the path of the tornado.* | **block, stand in** *You're standing in my path!*

• PREP. **across sth's ~** *The car pulled right across the path of another vehicle.* **in/into the sth's ~** *She stepped into the path of an oncoming lorry.* **out of sth's ~** *I managed to jump out of the path of the bike just in time.* | **~ through** *Footsteps had scored a diagonal path through the snow.* **~ to** *He moved quickly to block her path to the door.*

• PHRASES **everything in sb/sth's path** *The tornado destroyed everything in its path.*

3 way of achieving sth

• ADJ. **well-trodden, well-worn** *Her education followed the usual well-worn path of rich youngsters in the 1930s.* | **chosen** | **career**

• VERB + PATH **choose, find** *Everyone has to find their own path in life.* | **follow, pursue, tread** | **deviate from**

• PREP. **on a/the ~** *His feet were now firmly on the path to success.* | **~ of** *The path of true love is never easy.* **~ to** *the path to happiness*

• PHRASES **obstacles in sb/sth's path**

pathologist *noun*

• ADJ. **consultant** | **forensic** | **independent** | **Home Office, police**

• PATHOLOGIST + VERB **examine sth** | **confirm sth** *The police pathologist examined the body and confirmed that death was due to poisoning.*

• PHRASES **pathologist's report**

patience *noun*

• ADJ. **endless, great, infinite**

• VERB + PATIENCE **exercise, have, show** *They thanked him for showing so much patience.* | **lack** | **be out of, lose, run out of** *It is quite clear that they are out of patience with me.* ◇ *We eventually ran out of patience with his childish behaviour.* | **keep** *I find it hard to keep my patience with them.* | **require, take** *Above all, fishing requires great patience.* | **exhaust, stretch, tax, test, try** *The children were beginning to try my patience.*

• PATIENCE + VERB **be exhausted, run out, snap, wear thin** *Molly could see Mr Kirkham's patience was running out, so she shut up.* ◇ *Her patience snapped and she walked out.* | **be rewarded** *Our patience was finally rewarded and we got the band's autographs.*

• PREP. **with ~** *She listened with infinite patience to his excuses.* | **~ for** *He has little patience for people who don't work.* **~ with** *The fans were losing patience with the team.*

• PHRASES **the patience of a saint** *These endless meetings are enough to tax the patience of a saint.*

patient *noun*

• ADJ. **Aids, cancer, diabetic, heart, etc.** | **mental, mentally-ill, psychiatric** | **seriously-ill, terminally-ill** | **hospital** | **long-stay** | **private** *He only takes private patients.* | **elderly, older** | **adult, child**

• VERB + PATIENT **examine, see, treat** *A GP sees an average of 35 patients every day.* | **admit** *The patient was admitted to hospital yesterday.* | **discharge** *patients waiting to be discharged from hospital* | **transfer**

• PATIENT + VERB **develop sth, have sth, suffer from sth** *The patient has a severe mental condition.* | **respond (to sth)** *These patients are responding well to the new drug.* | **improve**

• PATIENT + NOUN **care**

• PREP. **~ with** *patients with liver disease*

patient *adj.*

- VERBS **be, sound | remain**
- ADV. **extremely, incredibly, very | endlessly**
- PREP. **about** *She's been extremely patient about it all.* **with** *He was endlessly patient with the children.*

patriotic *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **fiercely, intensely, strongly, very | quite | unashamedly** *The party framed its message in unashamedly patriotic language.*

patrol *noun*

- ADJ. **routine | special | armed | foot** *Every police car and foot patrol in the area is on full alert.* **| dawn, night | air, army, military, naval, police, security | enemy | border, shore | traffic** *helicopters used for traffic patrols*
- VERB + PATROL **carry out, fly, go on** *The Italians flew regular patrols over the desert.* **| maintain** *Britain can maintain a continuous patrol of the seas with only three submarines.* **| send out** *They sent out four-man patrols to scout the area.*
- PATROL + NOUN **boat, car, vehicle | duty**
- PREP. **(out) on ~** *police officers on patrol*

patron *noun*

- ADJ. **official** *the official patron of the college* **| influential, powerful | generous | wealthy**
- PHRASES **a patron of the arts** *The BBC is a major patron of the arts.*

patronizing *adj.*

- VERBS **be, sound | become | find sb/sth** *I found his tone rather patronizing.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | almost | mildly, rather, slightly, somewhat | unduly**
- PREP. **towards** *He's always very patronizing towards my mother.*

patter *verb*

- ADV. **gently, lightly, softly | down** *The rain pattered down softly.*
- PREP. **across** *Footsteps pattered across the floor.* **against, along** *The child's feet pattered along the landing.* **on** *Rain pattered lightly on the window.*

pattern *noun*

1 arrangement of lines, shapes, etc.

- ADJ. **intricate | geometric | floral**
- VERB + PATTERN **have** *The jumper has a geometric pattern on it.* **| design, make, print, produce, weave**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He had arranged the glasses in a pattern on the table.* **| ~ on** *the pattern on the carpet*

2 usual manner

- ADJ. **basic, existing, familiar, normal, predictable, regular, set, traditional** *There is no set pattern for these meetings.* **| changing, ever-changing | complex | main | overall** *The overall pattern of our life changes little.* **| behaviour | employment | weather**
- VERB + PATTERN **establish, set | follow** *Their actions follow a very predictable pattern.* **| fall into, fit into** *ideas that do not fit neatly into his patterns of thought* **| show** *67% of patients showed a similar pattern of improvement.*
- PATTERN + VERB **develop, emerge** *Similar patterns are emerging all over Eastern Europe.* **| change**
- PREP. **~ for** *the normal pattern for a boy/girl relationship* **~ in** *the main patterns in English spelling* **~ of** *patterns of behaviour*

patterned *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **heavily, highly, richly** *a highly patterned fabric* **| attractively, beautifully, prettily | boldly, brightly, brilliantly, strikingly | delicately, intricately**
- PREP. **with** *patterned with flowers*

pause *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, momentary, short, slight, small | long, prolonged | frequent | awkward | pregnant**
- VERB + PAUSE **take** *Shall we take a pause here?*
- PAUSE + VERB **follow** *In the pause that followed, I noticed that he was shaking.*
- PAUSE + NOUN **button** (on a video recorder, etc.)
- PREP. **after a/the ~** *'I don't know,' he said after a long pause.* **in a/the ~** *Everyone nodded in agreement in the pauses.* **with a/ the ~** *He read very slowly and with frequent pauses.* **without a/the ~** *She read the whole text without a pause.* **| ~ before** *There was a long pause before he spoke again.* **~ between** *in the pauses between his jokes* **~ for** *a pause for breath* **~ in** *during a pause in the conversation*

pause *verb*

- ADV. **briefly, (for) a moment, (for) an instant, momentarily** *She paused a moment and then walked away.* **| barely, hardly** *He spoke for two hours and barely paused for breath.* **| deliberately** *She paused deliberately, her eyes holding his.* **| dramatically, impressively, meaningfully, significantly | reflectively, thoughtfully | irresolutely**
- PHRASES **pause for breath/thought, pause only (long enough) to do sth** *Pausing only to put out her cigarette, she left the room.* **pause to consider/look/reflect/think** *Just pause to think before giving me your answer.* **without pausing** *Without pausing to knock, she opened the door.*

pavement *noun*

- ADJ. **wide | narrow | hard** *She had sore feet from walking on hard pavements all day.* **| broken, uneven | crowded | empty**
- VERB + PAVEMENT **step off, step onto | keep to | mount** *The car mounted the pavement and crashed into a lamp post.*
- PAVEMENT + NOUN **cafe, table, terrace**
- PREP. **along the ~, down the ~, on the ~** *There was a car parked on the pavement and we couldn't get by.* **up the ~**
- PHRASES **the edge of the pavement**

pay *noun*

- ADJ. **monthly, weekly | full, half** *He has taken leave on half pay.* **| high | low, poor** *workers on low pay* **| equal** *equal pay for men and women* **| basic | gross | take-home** *the average take-home pay of a manual worker* **| holiday | maternity | overtime | redundancy, severance | unemployment | sick, sickness | back** *The workers are demanding their back pay.* **| merit, performance, performance-related | profit-related**
- QUANT. **level, rate** *The job offers good rates of pay and excellent conditions.*
- VERB + PAY **get | give sb**
- PAY + NOUN **day | cheque, packet** *the money in my weekly pay packet* **| slip | increase, rise | cut | freeze | claim, demand | bargaining, negotiations | agreement, award, deal, offer, settlement | dispute, strike | levels, rates** *industrial unrest over pay levels in the public sector* **| scale, structure** *He's at the top of his company's pay scale.*
- PREP. **on … ~** *Women are eligible for 18 weeks maternity leave on full pay.* **with ~** *holidays with pay* **without ~** *He has been suspended without pay.*
- PHRASES **a cut/an increase/a reduction in pay**

pay *verb*

• ADV. **handsomely, well** *She pays her workers very well.* | **gladly** *I would gladly pay for the extra security such a scheme would bring.* | **up** *I had a hard time getting him to pay up.*

• VERB + PAY **have to, must** | **be able/unable to, can/can't, can/can't afford to** *help for those genuinely unable to pay* ◇ *Protesters against the tax carried banners reading 'Can't pay! Won't pay!'* | **expect (sb) to** *You can expect to pay upwards of £200 a night at this exclusive hotel.* | **be liable to** *It is for the courts to decide who is liable to pay damages.* | **be ordered to, be required to** *The company was ordered to pay the five workers £5 000 in compensation each.* | **agree to, be prepared to, be willing to, offer to, promise to** | **fail to, neglect to** *He was made bankrupt for failing to pay debts totalling over £2 million.* | **refuse to** | **help (to)** *The revenue will be used to help pay for environmental improvements.* | **get sb to, make sb** *If Mac had killed Caroline, then he was going to make him pay the price.* | **let sb** *She wouldn't let me pay for my ticket.*

• PREP. **for** *How much did you pay for your new car?* **to** *We pay £200 a week to our landlord.*

• PHRASES **ability to pay** *Taxation should be based on ability to pay.*

payable *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become** *the date on which the rent becomes payable* | **make sth** *Cheques should be made payable to Brighton Borough Council.*

• ADV. **immediately** *This amount is payable immediately.*

• PREP. **by** *the costs payable by a client* **on** *No tax is payable on these earnings.* **to** *An initial fee is payable to the franchiser*

payment *noun*

1 paying/being paid

• ADJ. **immediate, prompt** | **late** *penalties for late payment of tax* | **early** | **full, part** *I enclose £65.20, in full payment of the bill.*

• VERB + PAYMENT **make** *How do you want to make payment—by cheque or in cash?* | **arrange for** | **accept, take** *Do you accept payment by credit card?* | **get, receive** | **stop, suspend, withhold** *I have authorized the bank to stop payment of the cheque.* | **refuse sb** | **defer, delay** *We may have to defer payment for a week.* | **demand**

• PAYMENT + VERB **be due**

• PREP. **in ~** *She wrote out a cheque in payment of the fees.* **on ~ of** *He was released on payment of the ransom.* | **~ for** *payment for work done* **~ from, ~ to** *payment to the company from its customers*

• PHRASES **a method of payment, payment in advance** *The hostel requires full payment in advance.*

2 amount of money paid

• ADJ. **annual, monthly, etc.** | **regular** | **one-off, single** *All families of the crash victims will receive a one-off payment of £100 000.* | **cash, lump sum** | **token** | **generous** | **down, initial** | **additional, further, subsequent** | **interim, transitional** | **final** | **credit card** | **benefit, compensation, interest, maintenance, mortgage, rent, tax**

• VERB + PAYMENT **keep up, meet** *My client was unable to meet her rent payments.* | **increase, reduce** | **collect** *It was my job to collect payment for the trip.*

• PREP. **in ~s** *an extra $9 million in interest payments* | **~ for** *a generous payment for his services* **~ from** *payments to the landlord from his tenants* **~ to**

• PHRASES **the balance of payments** *measures designed to reduce the balance of payments deficit*

pea *noun*

• ADJ. **dried, fresh, frozen, tinned** | **green** | **mushy** | **split**

• VERB + PEA **eat, have** | **shell** | **cook**

• PEA + NOUN **soup**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

peace *noun*

1 not war

• ADJ. **lasting, permanent** | **fragile, uneasy** | **relative** *The country is in a state of relative peace after ten years of fighting.* | **world** *obstacles in the way of world peace*

• VERB + PEACE **bring about, establish, make** | **keep** *UN troops are trying to keep the peace in the region.*

• PEACE + VERB **come** | **prevail, reign** *An uneasy peace prevailed in the first days of the ceasefire.*

• PEACE + NOUN **conference, congress, negotiations, process, talks** *This must not be allowed to hold up the peace process.* | **efforts, initiative** | **formula, plan, proposal** | **accord, agreement, deal, pact, settlement, treaty** | **broker, envoy** | **mission** *The president is visiting the country on a peace mission.* | **activist, campaigner, protester** | **group, movement** | **rally**

• PREP. **at ~ (with)** *Although the two countries were officially at peace, fighting continued.* | **~ between** *peace between the warring factions in the area* **~ with** *England finally made peace with France.*

2 state of being calm

• ADJ. **inner** | **perfect**

• VERB + PEACE **find, seek** *She finally found inner peace and happiness.* | **disturb, shatter** *The peace of the afternoon was suddenly shattered by a police siren.* | **leave sb in** *Go away and leave me in peace!*

• PEACE + VERB **reign** *She stopped shouting, and peace reigned supreme once again.* | **descend on sth, settle over sth** *Peace descended once more on the little town.*

• PREP. **at ~** *Her father is at peace (= dead) now.* **at ~ with** *For the first time in months, she felt calm and at peace with the world.* **in ~** *to live in peace and harmony*

• PHRASES **peace and quiet/tranquillity** *The island is a haven of peace and tranquillity.* **peace of mind** *The computer comes with a three-year guarantee for peace of mind.*

peaceful *adj.*

1 without war/violence

• VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**

• ADV. **extremely, very** | **wholly** *The aims of the organization are wholly peaceful.* | **largely** | **comparatively, fairly, quite, reasonably, relatively**

2 quiet and calm

• VERBS **be, feel, look** | **become** | **remain**

• ADV. **extremely, very** | **utterly** | **comparatively, fairly, quite, relatively** | **blissfully, delightfully, serenely** *The time without her in the house had been blissfully peaceful.*

peak *noun*

1 mountain top

• ADJ. **high** | **jagged, rocky** | **snow-capped, snow-covered** | **distant** | **mountain**

• VERB + PEAK **climb, conquer, scale**

• PEAK + VERB **rise, tower** *We looked up at the rocky peaks towering above us.*

• PREP. **on a/the ~** *climbers on the distant mountain peaks*

2 highest level, rate, etc.

• ADJ. **all-time** *The share index rose to a new all-time peak of 2732.* | **summer, winter, etc.** *The influx of tourists has reached its summer peak.*

• VERB + PEAK **rise to/towards** *Production is rising back towards its 1999 peak.* | **hit, reach** | **fall below/from, pass** | **be past** *Her performance is just past its peak.*

- PEAK + NOUN **hours, period, season, time, year** | **demand** *at times of peak demand* | **rate** *peak-rate phone calls* | **level** | **efficiency, performance** *The engine is tuned to peak efficiency.* | **fitness, form**
- PREP. **at a/the/your ~** *The crisis was now at its peak.* ◇ *At his peak he was the best player in the world.* | **~ of** *She is at the peak of her popularity.* ◇ *The party's numbers reached a peak of 40 000 in 2001.*
- PHRASES **in peak condition** *You want your hair to look in peak condition.* **peaks and troughs** *Economic life moves in cycles of peaks and troughs.*

peal *noun*

1 loud sound
- ADJ. **loud**
- VERB + PEAL **burst into, give, let out** *He burst into peals of laughter.* ◇ *She let out a peal of laughter.* | **hear**
- PEAL + VERB **ring out**
- PREP. **with a ~** *The bishop was welcomed to the church with a peal of bells.* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **a peal of bells/laughter/thunder**

⇨ Note at SOUND

2 loud ringing sound of a bell
- ADJ. **loud**
- VERB + PEAL **ring (out)** *The bells of the cathedral rang out their loud peal.*
- PEAL + VERB **ring out**
- PHRASES **a peal of bells**

peculiar *adj.*

1 odd/strange
- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste** | **become** | **find sb/sth, regard sb/sth as, think sb/sth** *I find her attitude a bit peculiar, to say the least.*
- ADV. **most, very** *He is a most peculiar man!* | **a bit, a little, quite, rather** *The meat tasted rather peculiar.*

2 only belonging to a particular person/place
- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **by no means** *These problems are by no means peculiar to this country.*
- PREP. **to** *the smell that is peculiar to hospitals*

peculiarity *noun*

- ADJ. **physical** | **individual** | **local**
- VERB + PECULIARITY **have** *The area has a few local peculiarities.*
- PREP. **~ about** *I noticed a certain peculiarity about his appearance.*

pedal *noun*

- ADJ. **accelerator, brake, clutch** | **foot** *To stop the machine push the foot pedal.* | **bicycle** | **organ, piano** | **wah/wah-wah** *Some guitar players tend to overuse the wah-wah pedal.*
- VERB + PEDAL **press, push, put your foot on, step on, use, work** *Her foot was working the pedal of the sewing machine.* | **release, take your foot off**
- PEDAL + VERB **control sth, operate sth**
- PEDAL + NOUN **boat, car, cycle** | **bin**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *with one foot on the pedal*

pedal *verb*

- ADV. **fast, furiously, hard, like mad, madly** *He pedalled furiously up the hill.* | **slowly** | **away** *She pedalled away as fast as she could.*
- PREP. **along, down, up** *He pedalled along the lane and up the hill.*

pedigree *noun*

- ADJ. **long** *Hereford cattle have a long pedigree.* | **distinguished, illustrious, impeccable, impressive**
- VERB + PEDIGREE **prove, show** *The champions really showed their pedigree today.*
- PEDIGREE + VERB **stretch back** *These trees have pedigrees stretching back thousands of years.*
- PEDIGREE + NOUN **cat, dog, etc.** | **breed**

pee *noun*

- VERB + PEE **do, have, take** *I'm going to have a pee.* | **be bursting for, be desperate for, need, want** *I need a pee really badly.* | **go for**

peep *noun*

- ADJ. **little, quick**
- VERB + PEEP **have, take** | **get**
- PREP. **~ at** *I noticed him take a little peep at his watch.* **~ behind** *The film gives us a peep behind the curtain at a Broadway musical.* **~ into** *a peep into the private life of a world leader* **~ through** *I took a peep through the keyhole.*

peep *verb*

- ADV. **cautiously** | **out** *He peeped out cautiously from behind the door.*
- PREP. **at** *She was tempted to peep at the letter.* **through** *The child peeped through a crack in the door.*

peer *noun*

1 person of the same age/status
- PEER + NOUN **group** *She was rejected by her peer group.* | **pressure** *Children often take up smoking because of peer pressure.*
- PREP. **among sb's ~s** *They adopt behaviour that is more socially acceptable among their peers.*

2 person of noble rank
- ADJ. **Conservative, Labour, etc.** | **hereditary** | **life** *The Act made it possible for a woman to be created a life peer.*
- PHRASES **a peer of the realm**

NOTE

Aristocratic titles

first, second, etc. ~
the 17th Earl of Lauderdale
be created/made, become ~
She was made a baroness in 1992.
succeed (sb) as ~
He was succeeded as third Baron Northwick by his nephew.

peer *verb*

- ADV. **closely, intently** | **anxiously, cautiously, nervously** | **curiously** | **short-sightedly** *peering short-sightedly at the book* | **around/round, down, in, inside, out, up, upwards** *A face was peering down at him.*
- VERB + PEER **try to**
- PREP. **around/round, at** *His pale blue eyes peered anxiously at Vic.* **into** *She peered round into the farmyard.* **out of** *She peered out of the window.* **over** *trying to peer over her shoulder* **past, through** *I peered through the letter box.*

peeved *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound**
- ADV. **distinctly, very** *Birkett was looking distinctly peeved.* | **a bit, a little, rather, somewhat** | **obviously**
- PREP. **about** *Ed was rather peeved about how Martin*

had handled the situation. **at** *peeved at her failure to contact him* **by** *Maisie seemed peeved by this question.*

peg *noun*

- ADJ. **steel, wooden | tent**
- VERB + PEG **drive in, hammer in** *She hammered in the steel tent pegs.* | **insert, put in** *The score is kept by inserting pegs into a board.*

pelvis *noun*

- ADJ. **narrow, wide | broken, fractured**
- VERB + PELVIS **tilt, thrust**

pen *noun*

- ADJ. **ballpoint, felt-tip/felt-tipped, fountain, ink, marker, quill | coloured**
- VERB + PEN **use, write (sth) with**
- PEN + VERB **write** *This pen won't write.* | **run out** *My pen's run out* (= has no more ink).
- PEN + NOUN **nib**
- PHRASES **pen and ink** *pen and ink drawings*

penalize *verb*

- ADV. **heavily | deliberately | unfairly, wrongly** *He claims he was unfairly penalized.* | **financially**
- PREP. **for** *Students will be penalized for mistakes in spelling and grammar.*

penalty *noun*

1 punishment
- ADJ. **harsh, heavy, severe, stiff, strict, tough | light | maximum, minimum | fixed, mandatory** *a new system of fixed penalties for most traffic offences* | **financial, tax** *the heavy financial penalties of leaving the scheme early* | **death** *the movement for the abolition of the death penalty*
- VERB + PENALTY **impose, introduce | threaten | increase | carry** *crimes which carry severe penalties* | **face, incur**
- PREP. **on/under ~ of** *They made him promise, under penalty of death.* | **~ for** *the penalty for murder* **~ on** *He threatened stiffer penalties on young offenders.*

2 disadvantage
- VERB + PENALTY **pay, suffer** *He's now paying the penalty for his misspent youth.* ◇ *People who lose their jobs are suffering the penalties for longer periods.* | **accept**
- PREP. **~ for** *You must accept the penalty for your rash behaviour.* **~ of** *It's just one of the penalties of fame.*

3 in football
- ADJ. **disputed | winning | first-half, second-half | early, late**
- VERB + PENALTY **award (sb), give (sb) | give away** *They were leading until Cole gave away a penalty.* | **appeal for | be awarded/given, get, have** *We were unlucky not to get a penalty.* | **kick, take | score from** *Owen scored from a first-half penalty.* | **miss | save**
- PENALTY + NOUN **area, box, spot | shoot-out**
- PREP. **~ by/from** *Thet won, thanks to a late penalty from Fry.*

⇨ Special page at SPORT

penance *noun*

- ADJ. **public**
- VERB + PENANCE **do, perform**
- PREP. **as a ~** *He devoted his life to helping the poor as a penance for his past crimes.* **in ~** *She knelt at her mother's feet in penance.* | **~ for** *He decided to do public penance for his sins.*
- PHRASES **an act of penance**

pencil *noun*

- ADJ. **blunt, sharp | hard, soft | coloured** *a box of coloured pencils* | **graphite, lead**
- VERB + PENCIL **colour sth in with, draw (sth) with, use, write (sth) with | sharpen**
- PENCIL + NOUN **lead, sharpener | drawing, sketch | line, mark**
- PREP. **in ~** *margin notes in pencil*

penetrate *verb*

- ADV. **deep, deeply, far** *caves penetrating deep into the hills* | **fully, totally | hardly** *The sunlight hardly penetrated the inner room.* | **quickly | slowly** *The news slowly penetrated his consciousness.* | **easily, readily** *These so-called secret societies were easily penetrated by intelligence agents.* | **successfully**
- VERB + PENETRATE **be able to, can/could | be difficult to | seem to** *The cold seemed to penetrate his bones.* | **fail to | allow sth to** *Cut two slashes on each side of the fish to allow heat to penetrate.*
- PREP. **into** *It is not yet known how deeply the radiation has penetrated into the soil.* **through** *The light could not penetrate through the thick curtains.* **to** *The dust had penetrated to all corners of the room.*

penetration *noun*

- ADJ. **deep | greater | import, market** *Our aim is to achieve greater market penetration.* | **water | sexual**
- VERB + PENETRATION **achieve**

penis *noun*

- ADJ. **erect | flaccid, limp**
- PENIS + VERB **become/get/go hard, harden, stiffen | become/go soft | shrivel**
- PENIS + NOUN **envy | length, size**

penniless *adj.*

- VERBS **be, die** *He died penniless in Paris.* | **find yourself** *Laura found herself virtually penniless.* | **leave sb** *The legal dispute left them penniless.*
- ADV. **totally | almost, practically, virtually**

pension *noun*

- ADJ. **big, comfortable, generous, good | small | basic | state | company, occupational | personal, private | old age, retirement**
- VERB + PENSION **draw, get, receive** *He draws his pension at the post office.* | **give sb, provide (sb with) | claim, qualify for** *You will have to find out whether or not you qualify for a pension.* | **live on** *She lives on her pension and her savings.*
- PENSION + NOUN **contributions, fund** *the company pension fund* | **plan, scheme**
- PREP. **on a ~** *He is now retired and on a pension.*

people *noun*

1 more than one person
- ADJ. **young | elderly, old | common, ordinary | (very) important** *a line of limousines carrying very important people* | **famous | middle-class, working-class | business, professional, working | unemployed | blind, deaf, disabled** *access for disabled people* | **intelligent | interesting, nice | strange | single | homeless**
- VERB + PEOPLE **meet | attract** *The local tourist board is trying to attract more people to the town.*

2 of a particular place/race
- ADJ. **local | country | indigenous, native | primitive** *the customs of primitive peoples of the Amazon Basin* | **tribal | Arab, Japanese, Slav, etc.** *the culture of the Basque people* | **black, white**

• VERB + PEOPLE **represent** *I was elected to represent the people of Bristol.*
• PHRASES **the peoples of the world**

pepper *noun*

1 spice
• ADJ. **ground** *freshly ground black pepper* | **black, white** | **cayenne**
• VERB + PEPPER **add, put in/on, season sth with, sprinkle** *He put some pepper on his steak.* | **grind**
• PEPPER + NOUN **mill, pot, shaker**
• PHRASES **salt and pepper** *Add salt and pepper to taste* (= in the quantity preferred).

2 vegetable
• ADJ. **bell, sweet** | **chilli, hot** | **green, red, yellow** | **stuffed** *peppers stuffed with meat and rice*
⇨ Special page at FOOD

perceive *verb*

• ADV. **clearly** | **dimly** *Babies are weak and vulnerable in the presence of huge shapes that they can only dimly perceive.* | **directly** *the world of directly perceived objects* | **differently** *Risks are perceived differently by different people.* | **easily, readily** *The industrial bias of canal building can be readily perceived by looking at Figure 7.3.* | **correctly** | **immediately**
• VERB + PERCEIVE **be able/unable to, can/could** | **fail to** | **be difficult to**
• PREP. **as** *The General's words were perceived as a threat by neighbouring countries.*
• PHRASES **commonly/generally/widely perceived** *It is widely perceived as a women's health problem, but it does also affect men.* **a failure/an inability to perceive sth**

per cent *noun*

• VERB + PER CENT **account for, amount to, be equal to, constitute, equal, represent** *Overseas earnings accounted for 9% of the total last year.* | **contain** *Roman coins containing about 25% zinc* | **reach, stand at** *Their share of the vote reached 6.5% in 1998.* | (All the verbs in the following collocate groups may be followed by **by**, **from** or **to** plus **per cent**. Sometimes the word **by** is left out.) **be/go/shoot up, expand, grow, improve, increase, jump, rise, soar** *Prices rose by 12% in 1998.* ◇ *Prices rose 12%.* | **be/go/come down, decline, decrease, depreciate, drop, fall, plummet, plunge, shrink** *Profitability is down from 16% to 12.2%.* | **boost sth, increase sth, raise sth** *hoping to boost sales by 10%.* | **cut sth, devalue sth, reduce sth, slash sth** *The currency was devalued 20% overnight.*
• PREP. **by 10, 20, etc. ~** *cutting carbon dioxide levels by 20% in 15 years* | **~ of sth** *In 40% of all cases, the parents had no idea of their child's problem.*
• PHRASES **about/around/only/over/up to 10, 20, etc. per cent ~** *Only 10% of the teenagers agreed with this statement.* ◇ *a process that can reduce the cost by up to 15%* **a boost/an improvement/an increase/a jump/a rise of 10, 20, etc. per cent** *a jump of 8% in cases of the disease* **a cut/decline/decrease/drop/fall/reduction of 10, 20, etc. per cent, fewer/less/more than 10, 20, etc. per cent** *Profits rose by more than 50% last year.* **growth of 10, 20, etc. precent, in the bottom/top 10, 20, etc. per cent** *His son was in the top 2% of the university's students.* **10, 20, etc. per cent less/more** *New cars use about 35% less fuel by the year 2001.* **10, 20, etc. per cent of all/of a total** *The tribe's land now amounts to around 50% of the total land area.*

percentage *noun*

• ADJ. **high, large** *The area has a high percentage of unemployed men.* | **low, small**

> NOTE
> **Financial indicators**
>
> **~ be down/up**
> *With the share price down at 234p, it might be time to start buying.*
> *The CAC index was up 18.84 points.*
> **~ reach sth, stand at sth**
> *Consumer confidence reached a 30-year high.*
> *Second quarter sales stood at £18 billion.*
> **~ be/remain unchanged**
> *The 100 Share Index remained unchanged at 5297.*
> **~ gain (sth)**
> *The share gained 19 cents to close at 4.38.*
> **~ suffer (sth)**
> *Profit margins suffered when the company lowered prices to remain competitive.*
> **~ climb, edge up, go up, increase (~ increase in value for currencies), jump, rise, rocket, shoot up, skyrocket, soar** (+ *by, from, to* or no preposition)
> *Earnings per share climbed from 3.5p to 5.1p.*
> *The pound has increased in value relative to the euro.*
> *Profits have shot up by a staggering 25%.*
> *Oil prices have skyrocketed.*
> **~ come/go down, crash, decline, decrease (~ decrease in value for currencies), dive, drop, fall, plummet, plunge, shrink, slip, slump** (+ *by, from, to* or no preposition)
> *Banana exports crashed nearly 50%.*
> *The pound fell to a 14-year low against the dollar.*
> *Net income plummeted to USD 3.7 million.*
> ⇨ See also the note at CURRENCY

• VERB + PERCENTAGE **calculate** | **express sth as** *This figure can be expressed as a percentage of the total.*
• PERCENTAGE + NOUN **point** *Unemployment has fallen by two percentage points this month.* | **rate** *Insurance contributions are paid at a fixed percentage rate on all earnings.* | **figure** | **increase, rise** *the percentage rise in the average salary* | **decline, fall, reduction** | **share**
• PREP. **~ of** *What percentage of women own a car?*
• PHRASES **in percentage terms** *The numbers are relatively low in percentage terms.* **on a percentage basis** *The artist's agent receives commission on a percentage basis.*

perceptible *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become**
• ADV. **clearly, easily** *a clearly perceptible decline in public confidence* | **barely, hardly, scarcely** *His lips curved in a barely perceptible smile.*
• PREP. **to** *The difference is scarcely perceptible to the average reader.*

perception *noun*

• ADJ. **clear** | **common, general, widely-held, widespread** | **growing** | **accurate** | **public** | **human** | **extrasensory, sensory, visual**
• VERB + PERCEPTION **have** *I was shocked to learn of the perception people have of me.* | **gain** *We need to gain a clearer perception of how young people feel about the problem.* | **affect** *These developments hardly affected the public perception of the crisis.*

perceptive *adj.*

• VERBS **be**
• ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a highly perceptive analysis of the problem* | **pretty, quite**
• PREP. **about** *He's very perceptive about people.*

perch *verb*

- ADV. **perilously, precariously** *The hotel was perched precariously on a steep hillside.*
- PREP. **on** *The birds perched on nearby buildings.*
- PHRASES **be perched high above/on sth** *The castle is perched high above the valley.* **perch/be perched on the edge of sth** *I perched on the edge of his desk to listen to him.* **perch/be perched on top of sth**

percussion *noun*

- ADJ. **tuned, untuned**
- PERCUSSION + NOUN **instrument | section**

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

perfect *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem | make sth** *Hove's position makes it perfect for touring.*
- ADV. **absolutely, quite | far from, less than** *The treaty is far from perfect, but it is clearly the way forward.* | **almost, near, practically, virtually | impossibly** *the impossibly perfect shine on the vinyl-tiled floors* | **seemingly** *a seemingly perfect alibi* | **physically | mathematically**
- PREP. **for** *The day seemed perfect for a picnic.*

perfection *noun*

- ADJ. **great | absolute, utter | near | moral, physical, technical**
- VERB + PERFECTION **achieve, bring sth to, reach | seek, strive for** *She strives for perfection in everything.* | **fall short of**
- PREP. **close to ~** *The cooking was close to perfection.* **near ~** *A night's labour brought the sculpture one step nearer perfection.* **to ~** (= perfectly) *The dress fitted to perfection.* **towards ~** *a sequence of developmental stages towards the perfection of his violin technique*
- PHRASES **a degree/point of perfection** *He brought the art of photography to the highest point of perfection.* **a model of perfection** *The building became the model of perfection that architects sought to emulate.* **the pursuit of perfection** *She sometimes stayed up painting all night in her pursuit of perfection.* **a quest/search for perfection**

perform *verb*

1 do a task/duty/piece of work

- ADV. **effectively, efficiently, properly, successfully, well** *ensuring that tasks are properly performed* | **poorly | adequately, competently, reliably, satisfactorily | correctly | duly, faithfully** *He duly performed his own half of the bargain and expected the others to do likewise.* | **automatically | manually**
- VERB + PERFORM **be able/unable to** *The prince is no longer able to perform his duties.* | **be expected to**
- PHRASES **failure to perform sth** *failure to perform a contract*

2 work/function/play

- ADV. **brilliantly, efficiently, excellently, faultlessly, strongly, well** *One or two of the players performed brilliantly.* ◇ *The company has been performing strongly over the past year.* | **badly, disappointingly, disastrously, poorly** *The car performed poorly at high speeds.* | **adequately, competently, reliably, satisfactorily**
- VERB + PERFORM **be able/unable to | be expected to** *students who are expected to perform well*

3 give a performance

- ADV. **live** *The group will be performing live on tonight's show.* | **in public, publicly | together** *The two artists have never performed together before.*
- PHRASES **first performed** *The play was first publicly performed in 1872.* **rarely performed, see sth performed** *I've never seen this play performed before.*

NOTE

Performing arts

write ~
He's written a new West End musical.
do, present, perform, produce, put on, stage ~
We are proud to present the play 'Rocket to the Moon'.
The drama group is doing a show.
direct ~
She is directing Verdi's opera 'La Traviata' at La Scala next year.
act in, appear in, perform in, sing in, star in ~
He starred in the West End hit musical 'Joseph and the Amazing Technicolour Dreamcoat'.
rehearse (for) ~
We had no time to rehearse for the play.
go to the ballet/opera/theatre
I haven't been to the theatre for ages.
see ~
Have you seen that new production of 'Macbeth'?
~ open
'The Nutcracker' opens in December.
~ play, run
The show has been playing to packed houses.
The show ran for years on Broadway.
~ close
The musical closes this week after a record number of performances.
a play/show **folds**
The play folded after poor reviews.
at the ballet/opera/theatre
We met at the opera.
in a/the ~
the characters in the play
~ by
a comedy by Molière

performance *noun*

1 sth performed

- ADJ. **live | public | evening, matinee | amateur, professional | cameo | solo | repeat** *The party are dreading a repeat performance of their defeat in the last election.* | **ballet, concert, dance, musical, opera, theatrical | benefit, charity**
- VERB + PERFORMANCE **give, put on** *The theatre is putting on a performance of the popular musical 'Cats'.* | **attend, go to**
- PERFORMANCE + NOUN **art | artist**
- PREP. **in ~** *The course aims to develop the children's appreciation of music in performance.*

2 way in which sth is done

- ADJ. **brilliant, convincing, dazzling, electrifying, excellent, fine, flawless, good, great, impressive, inspired, outstanding, polished, remarkable, sparkling, spirited, strong, superb, wonderful** *The recording gives the most convincing performance of Stravinsky's 'Rite of Spring' to date.* ◇ *the country's strong economic performance over the last two years* | **bad, disappointing, lacklustre, poor | satisfactory | consistent | central** *Mel Gibson's central performance in the film as Hamlet* | **all-round, overall** *He got top marks for overall academic performance.* | **business, economic, financial, sales | academic, school**
- VERB + PERFORMANCE **deliver, give, put in** *The team put in an excellent performance at the World Cup.* | **affect | assess, measure | improve**
- PERFORMANCE + NOUN **indicator, level, measure, measurement, standard, target**
- PREP. **~ as** *her fine performance as Ophelia* **~ from** *The film has a great performance from Jack Lemmon.* **~ on** *his flawless performance on the piano*
- PHRASES **a level/measure/quality/standard of per-**

formance *to maintain a high level of performance* **on past performance** *Sales forecasts were based on past performance.* **the proper performance of your duties**

3 of a machine

• ADJ. **high | low, poor | engine**

• VERB + PERFORMANCE **affect | assess, measure | enhance, improve**

performer *noun*

• ADJ. **key, star, top** *The star performer of the match was Bill Holland who scored 26 points.* | **good, great, impressive, outstanding, polished, talented | poor | seasoned** *She's a seasoned concert performer.* | **live | solo | amateur, professional | circus, concert, radio, stage, street, television** *The president was a polished television performer.*

perfume *noun*

1 liquid with a sweet smell that you put on your body

• ADJ. **expensive | cheap | strong | subtle | fragrant, sweet | exotic | musky | stale**

• QUANT. **bottle**

• VERB + PERFUME **use, wear | dab on, put on, spray on** *She dabbed some perfume on her wrists.* | **smell | reek of, smell of** *She reeked of cheap perfume.*

• PERFUME + NOUN **bottle | company, house**

• PHRASES **a waft/whiff of perfume** *He caught a faint whiff of her expensive French perfume.*

2 pleasant smell

• ADJ. **sweet | heady, strong | delicate, faint | exotic, strange**

• VERB + PERFUME **smell | give off, release** *The lilies release their heady perfume in the evening.*

• PERFUME + VERB **fill sth** *The perfume of the roses filled the room.*

peril *noun*

1 great danger

• ADJ. **deadly, dire, grave, great**

• VERB + PERIL **be at/in | put sth in**

• PREP. **~ of** *All aboard were in grave peril of drowning.*

• PHRASES **at your ~** *Ignore these warnings at your peril.*

2 sth dangerous

• ADJ. **great** *the great perils facing the environment* | **immediate | hidden**

• VERB + PERIL **face** *We face the immediate peril of being bought out by another company.* | **avoid**

• PERIL + VERB **face sth**

perimeter *noun*

• ADJ. **inner, outer | northern, southern, etc.**

• VERB + PERIMETER **mark** *The river marks the eastern perimeter of our land.*

• PERIMETER + NOUN **fence, wall | road, track**

• PREP. **along the ~** *I lugged my suitcase along the perimeter of the square.* **around/round the ~** *We walked round the perimeter of the prison.* **inside/outside the ~** *They demonstrated just outside the perimeter of the embassy.* **on the ~** *There's a small shop on the perimeter of the camp.*

period *noun*

1 length of time

• ADJ. **extended, lengthy, long, prolonged | brief, limited, short** *The offer is only available for a limited period.* | **full** *You have been paid for the full period of your employment with us.* | **fixed, set** *The medication is prescribed for a fixed period of time.* | **indefinite | early, late** *the late Victorian period* | **happy** *a happy period in her life* | **dark, difficult, lean** *a dark period in the country's history* | **critical** *a critical period in the development of the project* | **interim, intervening | transitional | off-peak, peak | Christmas | medieval, Tudor, etc. | inter-war, post-war | accounting | cooling-off** *The customer has the right to cancel the contract during the seven-day cooling-off period.* | **formative** *The most formative period of life is childhood.* | **gestation, incubation | rest | training | waiting | trial** *You can use the software free for a 30-day trial period.* | **time**

• VERB + PERIOD **cover** *the period covered by the book*

• PERIOD + VERB **begin, commence | end | last**

• PERIOD + NOUN **costume, furniture**

• PREP. **after a ~** *after a long period of waiting* **during/throughout the ~** *during the intervening period* **for a ~** *We lived in Caracas for a brief period.* **in/within a/the ~** *Sales have gone up in the last-five-year period.* **over a/the ~** *There will be a reduced bus service over the Christmas period.* ◇ *Changes were monitored over a period of two months.* **within a/the ~** *Committee members will not be eligible for re-election within a period of two years.* | **~ between** *the period between his resigning and finding a new job* **~ from … to …** *the period from 1 July to 31 December*

• PHRASES **the beginning/end/start of a period, a period of history, sb's period of office** *Public spending was cut during his period of office.* **a period of study** *Try breaking your period of study into 20-minute blocks.* **a period of time** *The balance must be paid within an agreed period of time.* **a period of transition** *a period of transition between communist rule and democratic government*

2 menstruation

• ADJ. **heavy, light | menstrual | monthly**

• VERB + PERIOD **have** *I've got my period and don't feel too great.* | **start** *I was thirteen when I started my periods.*

• PERIOD + VERB **start | stop | last**

• PERIOD + NOUN **pains**

perishable *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **highly** *Many fresh foods are highly perishable.*

perjury *noun*

⇨ Note at CRIME

permanent *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | make sth** *We decided to make the arrangement permanent.*

• ADV. **almost, virtually** *living in an almost permanent state of fear* | **relatively | apparently | not necessarily**

permissible *adj.*

• VERBS **be | consider sth**

• ADV. **perfectly** *This is perfectly permissible under the new regulations.* | **legally, morally**

permission *noun*

• ADJ. **full | special | express** *Staff may not leave early without the express permission of the director.* | **formal, government, official | written | necessary** *They chopped the trees down without having been granted the necessary permission.* | **prior** *He was not allowed to leave the city without the prior permission of the authorities.* | **planning** *You will need to obtain planning permission if you want to extend your house.*

• VERB + PERMISSION **have | gain, get, obtain, receive, secure | give (sb), grant (sb) | deny sb, refuse sb | need, require | apply for, ask (for), request, seek**

• PREP. **with/without sb's ~** *The information was published with the full permission of Amnesty International.* | **~ for** *The council refused planning permission for the erection of a block of flats.* **~ to** *permission to park*

• PHRASES **by (kind) permission of sb** *The illustrations are reproduced by kind permission of the British Library.*

permissive *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a highly permissive attitude* | **sexually** *a society that is sexually permissive*

permit *noun*

- ADJ. **government, official | export, import | residence, residency | work | travel | resident's, visitor's | building, filming, fishing, landing, parking**
- VERB + PERMIT **have | give (sb), grant (sb), issue | get, obtain, receive | revoke | renew | apply for | need, require**
- PERMIT + VERB **expire, run out**
- PERMIT + NOUN **holder**
- PREP. **by ~** *Entry is by permit only.* **with/without a ~** *You can't park here without a permit.* | **~ for** *They applied for a permit for a street demonstration against university fees.*

permit *verb*

- ADV. **legally | generally, normally** *Development is not normally permitted in conservation areas.*
- VERB + PERMIT **refuse to | be designed to** *The bill was designed to permit workers to take up to twelve weeks' unpaid leave annually for family reasons.*

perpendicular *adj.*

1 pointing straight up
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **almost, nearly** *an almost perpendicular staircase*

2 at an angle of 90° to sth
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **exactly | almost | mutually** *two mutually perpendicular directions*
- PREP. **to** *The axis of the moon will now be exactly perpendicular to that of the earth.*

perpetuate *verb*

- ADV. **merely, only, simply** *Giving these events a lot of media coverage merely perpetuates the problem.*
- VERB + PERPETUATE **help (to) | serve to, tend to** *Schools tend to perpetuate the myth that boys are better at sport than girls.* | **seek to**

perplexed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, sound**
- ADV. **deeply, genuinely, very | a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** *Gary looked rather perplexed.*

persecution *noun*

- ADJ. **systematic | political, religious**
- VERB + PERSECUTION **be subject/subjected to, face, suffer (from)** *Some students returning to the country may face political persecution.* | **escape from, flee from | fear**
- PERSECUTION + NOUN **complex** *She started to have a persecution complex when she couldn't get a job.*
- PHRASES **delusions/feelings of persecution, (a) fear of persecution, a victim of persecution**

perseverance *noun*

- ADJ. **great, sheer | dogged, untiring**
- VERB + PERSEVERANCE **have** *Does she have the perseverance to finish the work?* | **display, show** *He showed great perseverance by staying in the job.* | **require, take** *It may take some perseverance to find the right people.*
- PERSEVERANCE + VERB **pay off**
- PREP. **with ~** *Anyone can learn Japanese with perseverance.* | **~ with** *His perseverance with the new technique paid off.*

persist *verb*

1 continue doing sth
- ADV. **doggedly, stubbornly**
- PREP. **in** *If you persist in upsetting her, I will have to punish you.* **with** *The detective stubbornly persisted with his questions.*

2 continue to exist
- ADV. **still, to this day** *a belief that persists to this day* | **indefinitely**
- VERB + PERSIST **be likely to | tend to | be allowed to** *This situation cannot be allowed to persist.*
- PREP. **for** *If symptoms persist for more than a few days, see a doctor.* **into** *These practices persisted into the Middle Ages.* **through/throughout** *The depression persisted through much of the 1930s.* **until** *The snows persisted until the second month of the new year.*

persistence *noun*

- ADJ. **dogged, remarkable, sheer**
- VERB + PERSISTENCE **show**
- PERSISTENCE + VERB **be rewarded, pay off** *My persistence in demanding my rights finally paid off.*
- PREP. **by ~** *By sheer persistence, I eventually got her to change her mind.* **through ~** *He achieved success through dogged persistence.*

persistent *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, incredibly, really, very** *The weeds were very persistent.* | **quite, rather** *Some infections can be quite persistent.*

person *noun*

- ADJ. **young | elderly, old | married, single | decent, good, lovely, nice | caring, gentle, kind, warm | bad, evil, wicked | happy, outgoing | rational, reasonable, sensible** *Any reasonable person can see that it is not fair.* | **average, normal, ordinary | private** *She is a warm but very private person.* | **blind, deaf, disabled | ill, sick** *the care of a terminally-ill person* | **missing | displaced, homeless | unemployed | dead | famous | important | innocent** *the imprisonment of an innocent person* | **right, wrong** *She's the right person for the job.* ◊ *The police now realize that they had the wrong person.* | **religious | business**
- PREP. **as a ~** *What's she like as a person?* **in ~** *She appeared in person to collect her prize.* **in the ~ of** *Help arrived in the person of our next-door neighbour.*
- PHRASES **the person concerned** *The disciplinary panel will notify the person concerned of its findings.* **the person in charge** *Can I speak to the person in charge, please?* **the person responsible** *Police think they have found the person responsible for the of muggings.*

personal *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *highly personal information* | **rather**

personality *noun*

1 character
- ADJ. **bright, bubbly, extrovert, jovial, lively, outgoing, sparkling, vibrant, vivacious | attractive, charismatic, charming, engaging, lovely, magnetic, pleasant, warm | dominant, dynamic, forceful, formidable, powerful, striking, strong | vulnerable, weak | multiple, split** *He developed a split personality after the crash.*
- VERB + PERSONALITY **be, have** *Barbara is/has a very forceful personality.* | **develop | express, reflect** *His*

choice of clothes reflects his personality. | **suit** *The job didn't really suit my personality.*

- PERSONALITY + NOUN **characteristic, trait | type | disorder, problem | development | change | test** *All candidates have to undergo a personality test.* | **clash**
- PHRASES **an aspect of your personality** *For the first time she was seeing the more unpleasant aspects of her husband's personality.* **a clash of personalities, the force/power/strength of your personality** *He has achieved success by the sheer strength of his personality.* **impose/stamp your personality on sth** *She stamped her personality on the whole programme.*

2 famous person

- ADJ. **leading, prominent, top, well-known | sports | media, radio, television/TV**
- PERSONALITY + NOUN **cult** *the personality cult surrounding Stalin*

personnel *noun*

1 staff

- ADJ. **qualified, skilled, trained | key | senior | management | authorized** *Only authorized personnel have access to the computer system.* | **company, corporate | army, military, security (force), service** *an employment agency for ex-service personnel* | **civilian | government, state | hospital, medical | administrative | technical**

2 department of a company

- VERB + PERSONNEL **be in, work in** *He's is in personnel, isn't he?*
- PERSONNEL + NOUN **department | director, manager, officer | records**

perspective *noun*

1 in art

- ADJ. **distorted | horizontal, vertical**
- PREP. **in ~, out of ~** *That tree is out of perspective.*
- PHRASES **the laws of perspective**

2 attitude to sth

- ADJ. **different, new | broader, wider | proper, true** *We can now see things in their true perspective.* | **cultural, historical, political, social, theoretical, etc.**
- VERB + PERSPECTIVE **get sth in/into, place sth in/into, put sth in/into, see sth in** *Her death put everything else into perspective.* | **gain, get, put** *When you reach middle age you get a different perspective on life.* ◇ *This website puts a completely different perspective on world news.* | **keep | lose | adopt** *The book adopts a historical perspective.* | **shift | provide**
- PREP. **from the ~ of** *We should view this from the perspective of the people involved.* **in/into ~** *Let's get this into perspective.* | **~ in** *a feminist perspective in philosophy* **~ on/upon** *It's easy to lose perspective on things when you are under stress.*
- PHRASES **a sense of perspective**

perspiration *noun*

- QUANT. **bead, drop** *Great beads of perspiration trickled down his forehead.*
- VERB + PERSPIRATION **wipe** *He wiped the perspiration from his brow.* | **be bathed in, be drenched in, be soaked in** *My shirt was soaked in perspiration.* | **be clammy with, be damp with, be moist with, be wet with, glisten with** *Her face was wet with perspiration.*
- PERSPIRATION + VERB **run down sth, trickle down sth** *Perspiration ran down his face.* | **break out** *Perspiration broke out on my skin.* | **glisten**

perspire *verb*

- ADV. **heavily, profusely** *He had been working hard and was perspiring profusely.* | **a little**
- PREP. **with** *She was perspiring a little with the heat.*

persuade *verb*

- ADV. **successfully | almost | eventually, finally | quickly | easily** *She was easily persuaded to accompany us.* | **gently** *Dave gently persuaded the fish close enough to be lifted aboard the boat.* | **personally** *The education minister personally persuaded the prime minister to rethink.* | **somehow** *He somehow persuaded the studio to let him make the film.*
- VERB + PERSUADE **attempt to, endeavour to, seek to, try to | hope to | be able/unable to, can/could | manage to** *He eventually managed to persuade one of the staff to let him in.* | **help (to) | be difficult to | fail to**
- PREP. **into** *She was persuaded into buying an expensive dress.* **of** *We must persuade the government of the need for change.*
- PHRASES **an attempt/effort to persuade sb** *an unsuccessful attempt to persuade her colleagues* **be reluctantly persuaded** *I was reluctantly persuaded to join the committee.* **have difficulty (in) persuading sb** *They had difficulty in persuading the two sides to sit down together.*

persuasion *noun*

1 persuading

- ADJ. **gentle**
- VERB + PERSUASION **use** *I had to use a little gentle persuasion to get her to agree.* | **need, take** *She didn't need much persuasion.* | **be/seem open to** *He refused my offer at first, but seemed open to persuasion.*
- PHRASES **the art of persuasion** *She is very charming, and skilled in the art of persuasion.*

2 set of beliefs

- ADJ. **political, religious**
- PHRASES **of all/different/varying persuasions** *The meeting is open to people of all political persuasions.*

persuasive *adj.*

- VERBS **be | find sth**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *His analysis is in many ways highly persuasive.* | **fairly, quite | enough, sufficiently** *The evidence was not really persuasive enough.*

pertinent *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**
- ADV. **especially, extremely, highly, particularly, very**
- PREP. **to** *The issues dealt with in the report are highly pertinent to our own situation.*

pervasive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove | become | remain**
- ADV. **very | all-** *the all-pervasive influence of television*

perverse *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **deeply, very** *This kind of reasoning is deeply perverse.* | **quite | almost | a little, rather, slightly, somewhat | deliberately** *Had you truly forgotten or were you just being deliberately perverse?*

perversity *noun*

- ADJ. **sheer** *She's marrying him out of sheer perversity.*
- PREP. **out of ~**

pessimism *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, widespread**
- VERB + PESSIMISM **display** *He displayed his usual pessimism.* | **overcome**
- PREP. **~ about** *There were good grounds for pessimism about future progress.*
- PHRASES **a mood of pessimism**

pessimistic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, prove, seem, sound** *These figures look quite pessimistic.* | **become | remain**
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, terribly, very | increasingly | rather, somewhat | unduly, unnecessarily** *His predictions proved unduly pessimistic.* | **generally**
- PREP. **about** *I am deeply pessimistic about the future.*

pest *noun*

- ADJ. **common | serious | agricultural, crop, garden, plant | insect | sex** (in newspapers) *Police are looking for a sex pest who is frightening late-night travellers.*
- VERB + PEST **control, eradicate** *These birds provide a useful function in controlling insect pests.*
- PEST + NOUN **control, controller, management | population**

pesticide *noun*

- ADJ. **chemical | dangerous, hazardous | approved | banned, unapproved**
- QUANT. **level** *It is claimed that current levels of pesticide do not pose a threat to health.* | **trace** *Traces of pesticide in the water were ten times above permissible levels.*
- PESTICIDE + NOUN **use | levels | residues | contamination, pollution** *tests for pesticide contamination in food* | **poisoning | spray**
- PHRASES **the use of pesticide**

pet *noun*

- ADJ. **domestic, family, household**
- VERB + PET **have, keep**
- PET + NOUN **shop | cat, dog, rabbit, etc. | owner | food**

petition *noun*

- ADJ. **bankruptcy, divorce | protest**
- VERB + PETITION **sign | deliver, file, present, send, submit | draw up, get up, launch, organize, raise | support | hear** *The petition will be heard tomorrow.* | **grant** *Her petition for divorce was granted.* | **dismiss, oppose, reject** *The district court has opposed the petition by the local electricity company.*
- PETITION + VERB **call for sth, demand sth, urge sth | oppose sth** *The petition opposes the closures.* | **support sth** *The petition supports the scheme to rebuild the road.*
- PREP. **~ against** *We're getting up a petition against the proposed building plans.* **~ by/from** *a petition by local residents* **~ for** *Local government supports the petition for a new hospital.* **~ in favour of** *a petition in favour of reform*

petrol *noun*

- ADJ. **lead-free, ultra-low sulphur (= ULSP), unleaded | leaded, lead replacement (= LRP) | high-octane**
- QUANT. **litre, tankful**
- VERB + PETROL **fill up with, fill sth (up) with | run on, take, use** *My car runs on unleaded petrol.* | **run out of** *We ran out of petrol and had to walk to the nearest garage.* | **douse sb/sth in/with, pour** *Thugs poured petrol over a schoolboy and tried to set him alight.* | **smell (of)** *Can you smell petrol? ◇ The air smelled of petrol.*
- PETROL + VERB **burn, ignite**
- PETROL + NOUN **engine, tank | gauge, pump | station | tanker | fumes | prices | tax | bomb**

pharmacy *noun*

- ADJ. **hospital, local | dispensing, retail**
- PHARMACY + NOUN **business, chain | licence | counter**
- PHRASES **available from pharmacies** *The ointment is available from pharmacies without prescription.*

phase *noun*

- ADJ. **early, first, initial, primary | second, secondary, etc. | current, latest, new, present | final, last | intermediate, transition | temporary | critical, crucial, important** *the critical phase of the operation* | **distinct** *The period can be divided into three distinct phases.*
- VERB + PHASE **begin, enter, open, start** *Society has entered a technological phase of evolution.* | **go through** *It's just a phase he's going through.* | **complete, pass**
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *During the first phase of expansion staff will move to the new offices.* **in a/the ~** *In the earliest phase of mental disorder, relatives feel confused.* | **~ in** *a new phase in the European economy*

phenomenal *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **absolutely, quite, simply, truly** *This plant has truly phenomenal healing powers.*

phenomenon *noun*

- ADJ. **common, universal, widespread | isolated, rare, unique | new, recent | natural | curious, inexplicable, remarkable, strange | complex | observable | cultural, historical, linguistic, mental, physical, political, psychological, social, supernatural, urban**
- VERB + PHENOMENON **investigate** *His job is to investigate supernatural phenomena.*
- PHENOMENON + VERB **emerge, occur** *The phenomenon occurs during early foetal development.*

philosopher *noun*

- ADJ. **distinguished, eminent, famous, great** *the great philosophers of ancient Greece* | **ancient, classical | contemporary, modern | Eastern, Western | professional | experimental, legal, moral, natural** (*historical*), **political, social** *a talk by a distinguished moral philosopher ◇ He called himself a 'natural philosopher': today we would say a 'scientist'.* | **sceptical**
- PHRASES **a philosopher of religion/science**

philosophical *adj.*

1 of philosophy

- VERBS **be | become, get** *The debate was getting too philosophical for me.*
- ADV. **purely** *a purely philosophical argument* | **rather**

2 calm and accepting

- VERBS **be** *Try to be philosophical about it.* | **remain**
- ADV. **very | quite**
- PREP. **about** *Mum's being quite philosophical about the whole thing.*

philosophy *noun*

1 study of ideas about the meaning of life

- ADJ. **ancient, classical | contemporary, modern | Eastern, Western | experimental, moral, natural** (*historical*), **political, religious, social**
- PHRASES **the philosophy of history/religion/science**

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

2 particular system of beliefs

- ADJ. **competing, differing | prevailing** *humanism—the prevailing philosophy today in the Western world* | **basic, general, underlying | personal | homespun, simple** *the homespun philosophy that kept her going during this difficult period* | **liberal | design, economic, educational, management, market, political, religious, social** *a furniture-maker's design philosophy*
- VERB + PHILOSOPHY **develop, formulate** *developing a personal philosophy* | **articulate | adopt, embrace, espouse | reject**
- PHILOSOPHY + VERB **inform sth, underlie sth,**

underpin sth *the philosophy underlying the education system* | **prevail** *the management philosophy which prevailed at that time*

- PREP. **~behind** *The new measures were introduced with no explanation of the philosophy behind them.*
- PHRASES **a philosophy of life/mind**

phobia *noun*

- ADJ. **cat, water, etc.**
- VERB + PHOBIA **have, suffer from**
- PHOBIA + NOUN **sufferer**
- PREP. **~about/of sth** *He has a phobia about snakes.*

phone *noun*

- ADJ. **cellular, cordless, mobile, portable** | **car** | **pay** (also **payphone**), **public** *There's a public payphone in reception.* | **office, private**
- VERB + PHONE **be on** *She's on the phone at the moment.* | **use** *Can I use your phone?* | **answer, get** (*informal*), **lift, pick up** *If the phone rings, don't answer it.* ◇ *Can you get the phone?* | **hang up, put down, replace** *I hung up the phone when he started shouting at me.* | **slam down** *She slammed the phone down in a rage.* | **be wanted on** *Mum, you're wanted on the phone.* | **call sb to** *He was called to the phone just as he was leaving.* | **connect** | **disconnect** | **bug, tap** *I think our phone is being tapped.* | **wait by** *She waits by the phone all day but he doesn't ring.* | **leave/take off the hook** *I couldn't get through because you'd left the phone off the hook.*
- PHONE + VERB **ring** | **be engaged** *His phone is engaged.* | **be off the hook** | **go dead** *The phone suddenly went dead in the middle of our conversation.*
- PHONE + NOUN **number** | **book** | **bill** | **call, conversation, message** | **card** (also **phonecard**) | **company, network, service** | **booth, box** | **line** *The modem links the computer to a phone line.*
- PREP. **by~** *We keep in contact by phone but we rarely see each other.* **on the~** *We spoke on the phone the other day.* **over the~** *I haven't seen her but we spoke over the phone.*

photo *noun*

- ADJ. **old, recent** | **black-and-white, colour** | **clear** | **excellent, good, great** | **(good) quality** | **glossy** | **framed** | **signed** *His most treasured possession is a signed photo of his footballing hero.* | **group, team** | **family** | **wedding** | **school** | **cover, newspaper, press** | **passport, publicity, security** | **still** | **action** *The annual has a good range of features and colour action photos.* | **aerial, air** | **digital, polaroid** | **nude, pornographic, topless**
- VERB + PHOTO **get, take** *I got some great photos of the party.* ◇ *Can I have my photo taken with you?* | **pose for** *posing for a group photo* | **develop** *I can't wait till the photos have been developed.* | **blow up, enlarge** | **crop** | **mount** | **publish** | **make** *The sun rising over the horizon would have made a good photo.*
- PHOTO + NOUN **album** | **frame** | **call, opportunity, session, shoot** *The press followed the president round the hospital, waiting for a photo opportunity.* | **journalism, journalist** | **processing** | **booth** *We found a photo booth on the station.* | **story** | **caption**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Tell me who everyone is in the photo.* | **~of** *a photo of my son Edmund*

photocopy *noun*

- VERB + PHOTOCOPY **do, make, run off, take** *Could you take a photocopy of this letter for me, please?*

photograph *noun*

- ADJ. **old, recent** | **black-and-white, colour, coloured, sepia, tinted** *Tinted photographs were an early substitute for colour.* | **blurred, fuzzy, grainy, out of focus** *This photograph is out of focus.* | **faded** | **clear** | **sharp** | **excellent, good, great, lovely, stunning, superb, wonderful** | **(good) quality** | **glossy** | **framed** | **signed** | **studio** | **group, team** | **family** | **wedding** | **school** | **cover, magazine, newspaper, press** *The cover photograph of one magazine showed a dying soldier.* | **publicity** | **documentary** | **fashion** | **portrait-sized, postcard-sized** | **passport, passport-sized** | **facial** *Send a recent facial photograph of yourself with your application.* | **close-up** | **still** *Frame the subject in the video viewfinder as you would for a still photograph.* | **aerial, air, satellite** | **digital, polaroid** | **infrared** | **erotic, explicit, indecent, nude, obscene, pornographic, topless**
- VERB + PHOTOGRAPH **get, take** *Did you manage to get a photograph of the goal?* ◇ *I spent the day taking photographs of the city.* | **pose for** | **develop** | **blow up, enlarge** | **scan (in)** *I scanned in some photographs of the family to send to friends by email.* | **touch up** *The photograph has been touched up to conceal her double chin.* | **crop** | **mount** *I cropped the photograph and mounted it on some card.* | **publish** | **make** *The sun rising over the horizon would have made a good photograph.*
- PHOTOGRAPH + VERB **appear** *Her photograph appeared in all the papers.* | **depict sth, show sth** | **capture sth** *The photograph manages to capture the excitement of the occasion.*
- PHOTOGRAPH + NOUN **album** | **frame**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The wing is assembled as shown in the photograph below.* | **~of** *An aerial photograph of the field shows clearly where the buildings were.*
- PREP. **photograph courtesy (of) ...** *photograph courtesy Liverpool Evening News* (= acknowledging permission to publish a photograph)

⇨ Note at ART

photographer *noun*

- ADJ. **distinguished, famous, leading, top** | **brilliant, experienced, good** | **keen** | **amateur** | **commercial, freelance, professional** | **official** | **newspaper, press** | **police** | **fashion, landscape, portrait, sports, etc.**
- VERB + PHOTOGRAPHER **pose for**
- PHOTOGRAPHER + VERB **shoot sth, take pictures/shots** *The photographer shot the usual roll of pictures.* | **snap (away at) sb/sth** *She didn't think much of the photographers snapping away at her.* | **capture sb/sth** *Photographer Darren Kidd captured the unique atmosphere of the event.*
- PHRASES **a photographer's gallery/studio**

⇨ Note at JOB

photography *noun*

- ADJ. **black-and-white, colour** | **flash** | **infrared** | **aerial, underwater** | **close-up** | **still** | **trick** | **professional** | **documentary, news** | **art** | **fashion, portrait, sports, wildlife, etc.**
- PHOTOGRAPHY + NOUN **magazine** | **competition**

phrase *noun*

- ADJ. **colloquial, idiomatic** | **key** *'Start slowly' is the key phrase for the first-time marathon runner.* | **famous** | **empty, glib, hackneyed, stock** *He keeps coming out with the same old stock phrases* | **memorable, well-turned** | **musical** | **adjectival, adverbial, noun, verb**
- VERB + PHRASE **use** | **coin** *Who coined the phrase 'desktop publishing'?*
- PHRASE + NOUN **book**
- PREP. **in a/the~** *She was, in her own memorable phrase, 'a woman without a past'.*
- PHRASES **a choice of phrase** *Her unfortunate choice of phrase offended most of the audience.* **a turn of phrase** *He is meticulous in his choice of words and turns of phrase.*

phrase *verb*

- ADV. **carefully** *The statement was very carefully phrased.* | **differently** *I should have phrased my question differently.*

physical *adj.*

- VERBS **be** *The problem is purely physical, not mental.*
- ADV. **purely** | **almost** *The shock of the darkness was almost physical.*

physician *noun*

- ADJ. **eminent** | **experienced, qualified** | **junior, senior** | **practising** | **consultant** | **general** | **hospital** | **family, personal, royal** *the king's personal physician*
- PREP. **~to** *physician to the Duke of Albemarle*

⇨ Note at DOCTOR (for verbs)

physicist *noun*

- ADJ. **brilliant, distinguished, eminent** | **classical, modern** | **experimental, theoretical** | **atomic, mathematical, medical, nuclear, particle**

⇨ Note at JOB

physics *noun*

- ADJ. **classical** | **modern** | **experimental, theoretical** | **atomic, high-energy, mathematical, medical, Newtonian, nuclear, (elementary) particle, quantum** | **A-level** | **school, university**
- PHRASES **the laws of physics**

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

physiotherapist *noun*

- ADJ. **qualified, trained**

⇨ Note at DOCTOR (for verbs)

physiotherapy *noun*

- ADJ. **intensive** | **regular**
- VERB + PHYSIOTHERAPY **provide** | **have, receive, undergo** *I'm undergoing regular physiotherapy for a back problem.*
- PHYSIOTHERAPY + NOUN **clinic, department** | **treatment** | **equipment** | **training**

physique *noun*

- ADJ. **good, magnificent, muscular, powerful, strong, superb** | **frail**
- PREP. **~for** *She doesn't have the physique for a dancer.*

piano *noun*

- ADJ. **baby grand, grand, upright** | **digital, electric, electronic** | **tinny**
- VERB + PIANO **tune** | **build, make**
- PIANO + NOUN **key, lid, wire** | **stool** | **tuner** | **bar** *There is a piano bar for evening entertainment.*
- PREP. **at the ~** *sitting at the piano* **on the ~** *playing classical music on the piano*

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

pick *noun*

- VERB + PICK **have** *She had her pick of the single men.* **take** *Which do you want? Take your pick.*
- PHRASES **get/take first pick** *I got the first pick of the prizes because I was the oldest.*

pick *verb*

1 choose sb/sth

- ADV. **at random** *Names were picked at random out of a hat.* | **out** *He was picked out as the best player.*
- PREP. **as** *They picked Jane as the captain.* **for** *Have you been picked for the team?*

2 take sth from the place where it is growing

- PHRASES **freshly picked** *freshly picked strawberries*

PHRASAL VERB

pick sth up

- ADV. **carefully, gingerly** *Rather gingerly, George picked up the tiny bundle.* | **idly** *I idly picked up a magazine and flicked through it.*
- VERB + PICK STH UP **try to** | **bend to, stoop to**
- PREP. **by** *He picked the pan up carefully by the handle.* **from, off** *She stooped to pick the book up off the floor.*

picket *noun*

- ADJ. **mass** | **flying** *Flying pickets arrived from all over the country.*
- VERB + PICKET **organize** *They organized a mass picket of the governor's palace.*
- PICKET + NOUN **duty** | **line** *Abuse was hurled at workers who crossed the picket line.*

pickle *noun*

- ADJ. **sweet** | **dill** | **lime**
- QUANT. **jar**
- PHRASES **and/with pickle/pickles** *a cheese and pickle sandwich*

picnic *noun*

- VERB + PICNIC **go for/on, have** *Lets have a picnic down by the river.* | **make** *Will you help me make a picnic?* | **bring, take** *We took a picnic and spent the day watching the races.* | **pack, unpack**
- PICNIC + NOUN **basket, blanket, hamper, rug, set, table** | **lunch, tea** | **area, place, site, spot**

picture *noun*

1 painting/drawing/photograph

- ADJ. **attractive, beautiful, lovely, striking, stunning, wonderful** | **blurred** | **black and white, colour** | **posed**
- VERB + PICTURE **draw, paint** | **colour in** *The book has simple stories and pictures to colour in.* | **frame, hang, mount** | **display, exhibit, show** | **pose for, sit for** | **get, snap, take** *I got some good pictures of the procession.* | **touch up**
- PICTURE + VERB **depict sth, show sth** | **hang**
- PICTURE + NOUN **frame** | **book, postcard** | **gallery** | **hook, rail** | **editor**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *I can't see you in the picture.* ◇ *The story is told in pictures.* | **~of** *It's a picture of a country village.*

⇨ Note at ART

2 mental image

- ADJ. **vivid** *The book gives a vivid picture of life in Victorian England.* | **clear** | **complete, comprehensive, full, general, overall, total, whole** *The programme was interesting but it didn't give the full picture.* | **incomplete** | **broad** *My visits enabled me to build up a broad picture of the culture.* | **composite** *Through interviews and old photos we put together a composite picture of life in the village a hundred years ago.* | **accurate, balanced, realistic, representative, true** | **false, misleading, one-sided, over-simplified, unbalanced** | **idealized, optimistic, rosy** | **bleak, depressing, dismal, gloomy, grim, negative** *The report paints a dismal picture of the government's economic record.* | **confused, distorted** | **detailed** | **complex, complicated** | **disturbing** | **mental** *I tried to form a mental picture of the building being described.* | **historical**
- VERB + PICTURE **build (up), construct, create, develop, establish, form, gain, get, obtain, put together** *They're trying to build up a detailed picture of the incident.*

| **give, paint, present, project, reveal** *The figures reveal a disturbing picture of the state of our schools.* | **complete** | **conjure up** *The smell of the sea conjures up pictures of children playing on the beach.*
- PICTURE + VERB **emerge** *What emerges is a complex picture of family rivalry.*

pie *noun*

- ADJ. **apple, meat, etc.** | **mud** *The children are making mud pies in the garden.*
- QUANT. **piece, slice**
- VERB + PIE **eat, have** | **bake, cook, make**
- PIE + NOUN **filling** | **dish**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *What's the filling in these pies?*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

piece *noun*

1 separate amount; parts of sth
- ADJ. **big, huge, large, long** | **little, short, small, tiny** *The plate smashed into little pieces on the stone floor.* | **bite-sized** *The book breaks the information into bite-sized pieces.* | **equal** | **odd** *She makes her sculptures out of odd pieces of scrap metal.*
- PREP. **in ~s** *The vase was now in pieces on the kitchen floor.* | **~ of** *a piece of bread* ◇ *A few pieces of the jigsaw were missing.*
- PHRASES **bits and pieces** *I just need to get a few bits and pieces at the supermarket.* **break/smash into pieces** *The cake just broke into pieces when I cut it.* **come to pieces** *This chair comes to pieces.* **fall to pieces** *My old dictionary is falling to pieces.* **piece by piece** *We'll need to take the engine apart, piece by piece.* **smash sth to pieces, take sth to pieces** *Can I take this jigsaw to pieces?* **tear sth into/to pieces** *She tore the letter into tiny pieces.*

2 of art/music/writing, etc.
- ADJ. **amazing, beautiful, brilliant, fine, good, impressive, lovely, magnificent, marvellous, remarkable, superb, wonderful** *The best pieces include three paintings by El Greco.* | **effective, powerful** *This is an effective piece of writing.* | **atmospheric, dramatic** | **interesting** | **favourite** | **important** | **ambitious** | **original** *an original piece written specifically for the producer* | **short** *a short piece by Willie Simmonds on television satire* | **finished** | **occasional** *an occasional piece on the lives of ordinary people* | **centre** (also **centrepiece**) | **companion** *a companion piece to the portrait of Gauguin's empty chair* | **modern, period, traditional** | **choral, orchestral, piano** | **museum**
- VERB + PIECE **compose, produce, write** *He hasn't produced a single piece of writing this year.* | **commission** | **perform, play, sing** | **read, hear** | **publish** | **display, exhibit, show**
- PIECE + VERB **be called sth, be entitled sth**
- PREP. **~ by** *They are exhibiting two important pieces by Calder.* **~ for** *a piece for symphony orchestra, choir and four soloists* **~ from** *She read a piece from 'Alice in Wonderland'.* **~ of** *a piece of jewellery*
- PHRASES **a piece of music/sculpture/work/writing**

⇨ Note at ART

pig *noun*

1 animal
- ADJ. **domestic** | **feral, wild** | **sucking/suckling**
- VERB + PIG **breed** | **keep** | **feed** | **fatten** *pigs being fattened for slaughter* | **slaughter**
- PIG + VERB **grunt, oink, squeal** | **browse, root** *A pig rooted in the orchard.*
- PIG + NOUN **farm, farmer**

2 person
- ADJ. **fat** | **greedy** | **male chauvinist**
- PHRASES **make a pig of yourself** *We cooked up a load of pasta and all made pigs of ourselves.*

pigeon *noun*

- ADJ. **carrier, homing, racing** | **feral** | **wood** | **clay** *clay pigeon shooting*
- QUANT. **flock**
- PIGEON + VERB **fly** | **strut** *A pigeon strutted along the roof, cooing rhythmically.* | **nest, roost** | **coo, croon**
- PIGEON + NOUN **droppings, shit** (*taboo*) | **loft** | **fancier**

pile *noun*

- ADJ. **big, great, high, huge, large, massive, vast** | **thick** | **little, small, tiny** | **neat, tidy** | **untidy**
- VERB + PILE **place sth in/into/on, put sth in/into/on** *I put the letter in the envelope and placed it on the pile.* ◇ *I've put the books into three separate piles.* | **dump** *He dumped a pile of dirty clothes onto the floor.* | **add sth to** *Just add that application to the pile.* | **flick through, leaf through, look through, riffle through, shuffle through, sort through** *I leafed through the pile of documents until I found the one I wanted.*
- PREP. **amid a/the ~** *The money lay amid a pile of unopened letters.* **behind a/the ~** *He was busy behind a pile of papers on his desk.* **beneath/under a/the ~** *I pulled my diary from beneath a pile of files.* **in a/the ~** *The washing is in a pile on the floor.* **on a/the ~** *She closed the magazine and threw it back on the pile.* | **~ of** *a pile of books* ◇ *I've got piles of work to do.*
- PHRASES **be reduced to a pile of sth** *The house was reduced to a pile of rubble.* **the bottom/top of the pile** (*figurative*) *The government is doing little to help those on the bottom of the social pile.* **sort sth into piles** *I sorted the clothes into two piles.*

pile *verb*

- ADV. **neatly** | **up** *We piled the boxes up neatly.*
- PREP. **against** *We piled sandbags against the door.* **on, onto** *She piled food onto our plates.* **on top of** *They piled stones on top of the mound.* **with** *a table piled high with magazines*
- PHRASES **piled high**

pile-up *noun*

- ADJ. **multiple** *a multiple pile-up involving a minibus and five cars* | **eight-vehicle, five-car, etc.** | **motorway**
- PILE-UP + VERB **involve sth** | **happen, occur**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *A young man died in a pile-up on the M1 last night.*

pilgrimage *noun*

- ADJ. **annual** | **spiritual**
- VERB + PILGRIMAGE **go on, make**
- PILGRIMAGE + NOUN **route**
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *There was a ban on political protests during the pilgrimage.* **on a/the ~** *He was on his annual pilgrimage to Mecca when he fell ill.* | **~ to** *His parents made a pilgrimage to Lourdes.*
- PHRASES **a centre/place of pilgrimage, an object of pilgrimage** *The shrine was an object of pilgrimage.*

pill *noun*

1 small round flat piece of medicine
- ADJ. **diet, sleeping, vitamin**
- QUANT. **bottle**
- VERB + PILL **pop, swallow, take** | **give sb, prescribe (sb)** *The doctor prescribed her some pills to help her sleep.*

2 the pill to avoid becoming pregnant
- ADJ. **contraceptive**
- VERB + PILL **be on, go on, use** | **prescribe (sb), put sb on** *Her doctor put her on the pill at 16.* | **come off, stop**

pillar *noun*

• ADJ. **massive, solid, squat | supporting | concrete, marble, stone**
• PILLAR + VERB **hold sth up, support sth** *The roof is supported by eight massive stone pillars.*
• PREP. **behind a/the ~** *I hid behind a pillar when I saw my former teacher.* | **~ of** *a pillar of rock/smoke*

pillion *noun*

• VERB + PILLION **ride** *He drove his motorbike, with me riding pillion.*
• PILLION + NOUN **seat | passenger, rider**
• PREP. **on the ~** *I made the whole journey on the pillion.*

pillow *noun*

• ADJ. **feather | lumpy**
• VERB + PILLOW **fluff (up), plump up, pummel, punch** *She plumped up the pillows for her sick daughter.* | **fall/lie/sink back against/on** *He lay back on his pillows and closed his eyes.* | **be propped (up) on | bury your face/head in** *She buried her head in the pillow and wept.*
• PILLOW + NOUN **case, slip | fight**

pilot *noun*

• ADJ. **experienced, professional, qualified, trained | inexperienced, trainee | airforce, RAF | private | airline, bomber, fighter, glider, helicopter, jet | aerobatic | automatic** *The aircraft was set on automatic pilot.* ◇ *(figurative) She worked on automatic pilot, her hands carrying out the necessary movements.*
• PILOT + VERB **fly (sth) | crash (sth) | bale out, eject** *The pilot baled out as the aircraft crashed into the sea.*
• PILOT + NOUN **error** *The air crash is thought to have been caused by pilot error.*
⇨ Note at JOB

pin *noun*

• ADJ. **drawing, safety, tie | brass, bronze, diamond, metal, steel**
• VERB + PIN **drive in, stick in** *The map had a lot of little pins stuck into it.* | **remove**

pin *verb*

1 fasten sth with a pin
• ADV. **carefully** *She carefully pinned the two pieces of cloth together.* | **firmly | back, on, together, up** *Her hair was pinned back.* ◇ *pictures pinned up on the walls*
• PREP. **onto** *The poster had been pinned onto a large wooden board.* **to** *Maps were pinned to the walls.*
• PHRASES **pin sth in place**

2 hold sb in one position
• ADV. **helplessly | down** *He was pinned down on the floor.*
• PREP. **against** *He pinned her against the wall.* **behind** *His arms were pinned behind his back.* **to** *She was pinned helplessly to the desk.*

PHRASAL VERB

pin sth down
• ADV. **precisely** *The difference between the two approaches is hard to pin down precisely.*
• VERB + PIN STH DOWN **be difficult to, be hard to**

pinch *verb*

1 take hold of sth between your thumb and finger
• ADV. **firmly | gently | sharply | playfully | together** *Apply pressure to the nose by pinching the nostrils firmly together.*
• PREP. **between** *He pinched the leaf between his thumb and forefinger.* **on** *He pinched me sharply on the arm.*

2 be too tight
• ADV. **badly** *My shoes were pinching badly.*

pineapple *noun*

• ADJ. **juicy, sweet**
• PINEAPPLE + NOUN **chunks, rings** *a tin of pineapple chunks*
⇨ Special page at FRUIT

pink *adj.*

1 pale red
• VERBS **glow** *The western sky was glowing pink.*
• ADV. **very | slightly**
• ADJ. **bright, brilliant, fluorescent, hot, shocking, vivid | dark, deep, rich | baby, delicate, light, pale, pastel, soft | dusky | coral, pearly, rose, salmon**
⇨ Special page at COLOUR

2 red in the face
• VERBS **be, glow, look | go, grow, turn** *She could feel herself going pink.*
• ADV. **very | faintly, quite, slightly**
• ADJ. **bright**
• PREP. **with** *He was pink with anger.*

pinnacle *noun*

• VERB + PINNACLE **reach** *He had reached the pinnacle of his military career.*
• PREP. **at the ~ of** *She is at the pinnacle of her profession.*

pinpoint *verb*

• ADV. **exactly, precisely**
• VERB + PINPOINT **can/could** *With this you can pinpoint the precise location of the sound.* | **be difficult to**
• PREP. **as** *Stress at work was pinpointed as the cause of his illness.*

pint *noun*

1 measure of liquid
⇨ Note at MEASURE

2 pint of beer
• VERB + PINT **consume, drink, have | sip | down, drain, finish, knock back, sink** *He could sink a pint faster than anyone else I knew.* | **draw (sb), draw off, pull (sb)** *I got the barman to pull me another pint.* | **buy (sb), order, stand sb** *He stood me a pint in the pub after work.*
• PINT + NOUN **glass**

pioneer *noun*

• ADJ. **early | true**
• PIONEER + NOUN **spirit | missionary**
• PREP. **~ in** *one of the early pioneers in plastic surgery*

pipe *noun*

1 hollow tube that carries gas/liquid
• ADJ. **underground | gas, sewage, waste, water** *the hot and cold water pipes* | **brake, central heating, hose** (also **hosepipe**) | **drainage, drain** (also **drainpipe**), **exhaust, inlet, outfall, outflow, outlet, overflow, service, supply | blocked, broken, burst, cracked, frozen, leaking | concrete, copper, iron, lead, metal, plastic, steel**
• QUANT. **length** *to join two lengths of pipe together* ◇ *Copper pipe is sold in lengths.*
• VERB + PIPE **lay, run** *He laid the pipes under the floorboards.* | **connect | insulate, lag** *Insulating your pipes will save on your heating bills.*
• PIPE + VERB **lead, pass through sth, run** *The pipes lead into the river.* ◇ *The pipes will have to pass through the wall.* | **burst, freeze, leak**
• PIPE + NOUN **cutter, fitter | insulation**

- PREP. **through a/the ~** | **~ for** *the pipe for the hot water* **~ from, ~ to** *The pipe from the boiler to the bath.*

2 used for smoking tobacco

- ADJ. **clay** | **peace**
- VERB + PIPE **smoke** | **light** | **fill** | **draw on, puff away at/on, puff on** | **knock out** *He knocked out his pipe in the big glass ashtray.*
- PIPE + NOUN **smoker** | **tobacco** | **rack**
- PHRASES **the bowl/stem of a pipe**

pipeline *noun*

- ADJ. **gas, oil, water**
- VERB + PIPELINE **build, construct, lay**
- PIPELINE + VERB **supply sth** *The pipeline supplies Jordan with 15 per cent of its crude oil.* | **pass through sth, run through sth** *The pipeline runs through central Mozambique.* | **link sth** *The pipeline links the refinery with the port.*
- PIPELINE + NOUN **network, system**
- PREP. **in the ~** (*figurative*) (= being discussed or prepared) *Important changes are already in the pipeline.* | **~ across** *a pipeline across the desert* **~ through** *the construction of a gas pipeline through Morocco*

pistol *noun*

- ADJ. **automatic, machine, semi-automatic** | **unlicensed** | **loaded** | **air, water** | **duelling, starting** *runners waiting for the starting pistol*
- VERB + PISTOL **load** | **draw, produce** *He drew his pistol, aimed and fired.* | **cock** | **aim, level, point, raise** | **fire** | **carry** *There were two of them, both carrying pistols.*
- PISTOL + NOUN **shot**
- PHRASES **at pistol point** *He was robbed in his hotel at pistol point.*

pit *noun*

1 hole

- ADJ. **deep, shallow** | **bottomless** | **black, dark** | **chalk, gravel** *a disused gravel pit*
- VERB + PIT **dig**

2 coal mine

- ADJ. **open** *They extract the mineral from open pits and underground mines.*
- VERB + PIT **go down** *He went down the pit at the age of fifteen.*
- PIT + NOUN **village** *There's no more work in these pit villages.* | **closure**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Most boys in the village worked in the pits.*

pitch *noun*

1 sports field

- ADJ. **all-weather, grass, non-turf, synthetic** | **waterlogged** | **cricket, hockey, football, rugby**
- VERB + PITCH **invade, run onto** *The pitch was invaded by angry fans.*
- PITCH + NOUN **invasion** *Police could do nothing to stop the pitch invasion.*
- PREP. **off the ~** *The players have just come off the pitch.* ◇ *Negotiations about his transfer are continuing off the pitch.* **on a/the ~** *He was the best player on the pitch today.*

2 strength of feeling

- ADJ. **fever, high** *Excitement rose to fever pitch the day before the procession.*
- VERB + PITCH **reach, rise to**
- PREP. **~ of** *to reach a high pitch of excitement*

3 of a musical note

- ADJ. **high, low** | **correct** *The instrument is not tuned to the correct pitch.*
- VERB + PITCH **fall in, rise in** *Her voice fell slightly in pitch as she grew older.*
- PHRASES **have absolute/perfect pitch** (= to be able to recognize or produce any given note)

pitch *verb*

1 fall over/throw sb

- ADV. **violently** *The explosion pitched her violently into the air.* | **forward, headlong**
- PREP. **from** *There was a loud bang and he was pitched from his seat.* **into** *If they hit any unseen obstacle they would be pitched headlong into the snow.* **out of**

2 of a ship/aircraft

- ADV. **violently** *The boat pitched violently in a heavy swell.*

3 set sth at a particular level

- ADV. **deliberately** *Estimates have been deliberately pitched on the conservative side.*
- PREP. **at** *The test is pitched at a high GCSE standard.*
- PHRASES **pitch sth high/low** *The price has been pitched quite high.* ◇ *Her voice was pitched low.*

pitfall *noun*

- ADJ. **obvious** | **common** | **hidden** | **possible, potential, unforeseen** *We need to be alert to potential pitfalls.*
- VERB + PITFALL **be fraught with, be full of, have, hold** *Trading in a foreign country can be fraught with pitfalls.* | **avoid** | **overcome**
- PITFALL + VERB **await sb** *Numerous pitfalls await unsuspecting investors.*
- PREP. **~ for** *Buying property holds many pitfalls for the unwary.* **~ in** *pitfalls in the interpretation of statistics*

pity *noun*

1 feeling of sadness for sb/sth

- ADJ. **immense**
- VERB + PITY **be filled with, be full of, feel, have** | **show** | **arouse, inspire** *an unfortunate man who inspires pity*
- PREP. **out of ~** *I threw the child some money out of pity.* **without ~** *a cruel leader without pity* | **~ for** *She was full of pity for him.*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of pity, have pity on sb** *We begged him to have pity on us.* **an object of pity** *Deaf people do not want to be seen as objects of pity.* **take pity on sb** *I took pity on him and allowed him to stay.*

2 a pity sth that makes you feel disappointed

- ADJ. **great, real, terrible** | **slight**
- PREP. **~ about** *The place was lovely, but it was a pity about the weather.*
- PHRASES **a bit of a pity, rather/such a pity** *That would be rather a pity, wouldn't it?* **what a pity** *What a pity you didn't tell me earlier!*

pizza *noun*

- ADJ. **take-away**
- QUANT. **piece, slice** *a slice of cheese and tomato pizza*
- PIZZA + NOUN **topping** | **parlour, place, restaurant** *Let's go to that new pizza place tonight.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *What do you want on your pizza?*

place *noun*

1 particular position/area

- ADJ. **good, great, ideal** | **terrible** *It was a terrible place to live.* | **safe** *Keep your purse in a safe place.* | **right, suitable** *I happened to be in the right place at the right time.* | **wrong** | **beautiful, nice** *It's a nice place you've got here.* | **interesting** | **busy, crowded** | **quiet** | **strange** | **faraway, out-of-the way, remote** *holidays in faraway places* | **public** | **hiding, market, meeting, resting**
- VERB + PLACE **mark** *I forgot to mark my place* (= in a book). | **lose** *I've lost my place in the script.*

• PLACE + NOUN **name**

• PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *We had dinner at a crowded place in Soho.* **in ~** *It was held in place with tape.* ◇ *There will be rain in places.* **into ~** *She tapped the lid into place.* **out of ~** *Some of these files seem to be out of place.*

• PHRASES **all over the place** (= everywhere), **no place/not the place** *This is not the place for an argument.* **a place of birth/business/interest/learning/work/worship** *Please state your date and place of birth.*

2 seat/position for sb/sth

• VERB + PLACE **sit (down) in, take** *We took our places round the table.* | **go back to, return to** *The boy returned to his place* | **keep (sb), save (sb)** | **lose** *I've lost my place in the queue.* | **give up** | **change, swap** *He swapped places with me.* | **show sb to** *She showed them to their places.* | **lay, set** *I've laid four places for dinner.*

• PLACE + NOUN **mat** | **card**

• PHRASES **the place of honour** *He took the place of honour on his hostess's right.*

3 role/position/function

• ADJ. **central, important, prominent** | **special** *He holds a special place in her affections* | **proper, rightful**

• VERB + PLACE **have, hold, occupy** *Housing occupied a prominent place in the discussions.* | **know** *She knows her place.* | **forget** *I'm sorry—I was forgetting my place.* | **restore sth to** *He has been restored to his rightful place in the community.* | **put sb in** *At first he tried to take charge of the meeting but I soon put her in her place.*

• PREP. **~ in** *Dance has a central place in their culture.*

• PHRASES **it's not sb's place to** *It's not your place to correct her.* **a place in history** *a statesman who is assured a place in history*

4 opportunity to study at a college, play for a team, etc.

• ADJ. **free** | **college, nursery, school, university**

• VERB + PLACE **get, win** | **award sb, offer sb** | **lose** *He was injured and lost his place in the side.*

• PREP. **~ at/in** *He was awarded a place at Leeds University.* **~ on** *She got a place on the French course.*

5 sb's position at the end of a race, competition, etc.

• VERB + PLACE **finish in, take** *She took third place.*

• PLACE + VERB **go to sb** *Second place went to the Moroccan athlete.*

place *verb*

1 (often **be placed**) put sth in a position

• ADV. **carefully, neatly** | **haphazardly** *The books were placed haphazardly on the shelf.* | **firmly** *She produced a long silver whistle and placed it firmly between her lips.* | **gently, lightly** | **centrally** *The table was placed centrally.* | **ideally, conveniently, uniquely, well** *The hotel is well placed for restaurants, bars and clubs.* | **judiciously, strategically** *There are candles strategically placed—just in case we have another power cut.* | **side by side** *The boots, neatly placed side by side, were near the bed.*

• PREP. **between, in, inside, on, over, under, etc.** *He placed the letter in a drawer.*

2 (often **be placed**) put sb in a situation

• ADV. **firmly** | **ideally, conveniently, uniquely, well** *The company is ideally placed to win the contract.*

• VERB + PLACE **atttempt to, try to** | **be difficult to, be hard to** *children who are difficult to place in foster homes*

• PREP. **in, on** *an attempt to place the question firmly back on the political agenda*

• PHRASES **an attempt to place sth**

3 emphasis, value, blame, etc.

• ADV. **squarely**

• PREP. **on** *The blame was placed squarely on the doctor.*

plague *noun*

• ADJ. **bubonic** | **great** *Nearly a third of the population died in the Great Plague.*

• QUANT. **outbreak** *a decline in population following outbreaks of plague*

• VERB + PLAGUE **suffer** *The region has just suffered a plague of locusts.* | **be decimated by, be destroyed by**

• PLAGUE + VERB **break out, start, strike (sth)** *Bubonic plague struck London in 1665.* | **spread**

• PREP. **~ of** *The city is suffering a plague of rats.*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

plain *noun*

• ADJ. **open** *The horses galloped across the open plains.* | **rolling, sweeping** *miles of rolling plain, made fertile by the river* | **great, unbroken, vast** | **flat** | **fertile** *fertile plains suitable for farming* | **grassy** | **coastal**

• PREP. **across a/the ~** *Cattle move freely across the grassy plain.* **in a/the ~** *the Olduvai Gorge in the vast plain of Tanzania* **on a/the ~** *Nothing grew on the plain.*

plain *adj.*

1 simple/not decorated

• VERBS **be, look, seem**

• ADV. **extremely, very** | **absolutely, completely** *The dress was absolutely plain, but quite stunning.* | **fairly, quite, rather** *The food was fairly plain, but well cooked.*

• PHRASES **plain blue, white, etc.** *a plain white shirt*

2 not beautiful

• VERBS **be, look**

• ADV. **extremely, very** *She looked very plain and dowdy.* | **rather** *a rather plain woman*

3 clear

• VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **make sth** *They made it plain that they were against the idea.*

• ADV. **very** | **absolutely, perfectly, quite** *Within weeks, it became perfectly plain that we were in the grip of a tyrant.* | **increasingly** | **fairly, pretty, reasonably**

• PREP. **to** *It is all quite plain to me.*

plaintiff *noun*

• VERB + PLAINTIFF **compensate**

• PLAINTIFF + VERB **bring an action (against sb), sue sb** | **allege sth, argue sth, claim sth, contend sth, seek sth, submit sth** *The plaintiff claimed that the correct procedures had not been followed.* | **obtain sth, prove sth** *The plaintiffs obtained an injunction in the High Court.*

• PREP. **against the ~** *Costs were awarded against the plaintiff.* **on behalf of the ~** *the lawyer appearing on behalf of the plaintiff*

plan *noun*

1 for future

• ADJ. **ambitious, audacious, grand, grandiose** *The government has ambitious plans for prison reform.* | **future** | **long-term, three-year, etc.** | **immediate** *What are your immediate plans?* | **new** | **original** | **five-point, three-point, etc.** *a three-point action plan to improve hygiene at work* | **definite, firm** *A spokeswoman confirmed there was no definite plan to stage a concert in the park.* | **detailed** | **good** *The best plan is for me to meet you at the theatre.* | **best-laid** *Even the best-laid plans can go wrong.* | **brilliant, clever, cunning, fiendish, ingenious** | **feasible, realistic, sound** *We need to develop a sound business plan.* | **impractical** | **controversial** | **master** | **contingency** *Do you have any contingency plans if the scheme doesn't work?* | **secret** | **action** | **strategic** | **business, career, corporate, development, economic, financial** | **travel** | **marriage** | **peace**

• VERB + PLAN **have** | **come up with, develop, devise, draw up, formulate, make, prepare, work out** *I like to make plans well in advance.* | **present, propose, put forward** | **discuss** | **agree** *The moves contravene the peace plan agreed by both sides.* | **announce, launch, outline,**

unveil *The minister unveiled a new plan for reducing traffic accidents.* | **go ahead with, implement, press ahead with** | **keep to, stick to** *Let's stick to our original plan* | **cancel, change** | **abandon, cancel, drop, scrap, shelve** | **fight, oppose** *Local residents have vowed to fight plans to build a new road.*

- PLAN + VERB **be afoot** *Plans are afoot to stage a new opera.* | **be aimed at sth** *The government launched a five-year plan aimed at diversifying the economy.* | **call for sth, envisage sth, involve sth** *The plan calls for investments totalling $100 million.* | **contain sth, include sth** *The plan contains four main elements.* | **succeed** | **fail, fall through, founder**
- PREP. **~ for** *The president will now press ahead with his plans for reform.* **~ to** *Plans to build a dam have been shelved following protests.*
- PHRASES **a plan of action/attack/campaign** *To change anything in this organization, we'll need a plan of action.* **put a plan into action/effect/operation**

2 map
- ADJ. **street, town** | **seating**
- PLAN + VERB **show sth** *The plan shows the exact location of the house.*

plan *verb*

- ADV. **ahead, in advance** | **originally** *The government had originally planned to launch the review in June.* | **carefully, meticulously** | **intelligently, rationally** | **centrally** *centrally planned economies*
- VERB + PLAN **have to, need to** *You will need to plan your shopping carefully in advance.*
- PREP. **for** *We must plan for the future.* ◇ *A meeting has been planned for early next year.* **on** *I had planned on staying here for two or three years.*
- PHRASES **go as planned** *Everything went exactly as planned.* **plan sth down to the last detail**

plane *noun*

1 aeroplane
- ADJ. **private**
- VERB + PLANE **catch, get, take** *She caught the first plane out.* | **miss** | **board, get on** | **get off, step off** *I fell in love with the city the moment I stepped off the plane.* | **fly, pilot** | **charter**
- PLANE + VERB **take off** | **come down, land** | **crash** | **cruise, fly** | **carry sb/sth** *The plane was carrying 350 people.*
- PLANE + NOUN **crash, disaster**
- PREP. **by ~** *We left by plane for Peking.* **in a/the ~** *I've never flown in a plane.* **on a/the ~** *The president was never on the plane at all.*

2 flat surface
- ADJ. **horizontal, parallel, vertical**

3 standard/level of thought/activity
- ADJ. **higher** *With practice, an athlete can reach a higher plane of achievement.* | **mental, mystical, spiritual**
- PHRASES **be/exist/function/operate on a different plane** *Like all talented musicians, he operates on a different plane from most people.*

planet *noun*

- ADJ. **distant** | **alien, unknown** | **another** *He looked like something from another planet!*
- PLANET + VERB **orbit** *How many planets orbit the sun?*
- PREP. **from a/the ~** *creatures from an alien planet* **on a/the ~** *She believes there is life on other planets.*

plank *noun*

- ADJ. **timber, wooden** | **loose** | **rotten**
- PHRASES **a plank of wood**

planning *noun*

- ADJ. **careful, detailed, meticulous, thoughtful** | **initial** *the initial planning stage* | **advance, forward** *The trip calls for careful advance planning.* | **pre-match, pre-retirement, etc.** *Deciding the agenda is the most vital aspect of pre-meeting planning.* | **long-range, long-term** | **short-range, short-term** | **corporate** | **family** *They give free advice on contraception at the family planning clinic.* | **town, urban** | **economic, educational, environmental, financial, military, strategic**
- VERB + PLANNING **call for, demand, need, require** | **do** *The industry needs to do some long-term planning.*
- PLANNING + NOUN **phase, stage** *The scheme is still at the planning stage.* | **process** | **decisions** | **meeting** | **application** | **approval, consent, permission** *We've applied for planning permission to build an extension to the house.* | **authority, committee, department**
- PREP. **in the ~** *The festival was four years in the planning.* | **~ for** *Planning for future development is vital for the community.*

plant *noun*

1 living thing
- ADJ. **attractive** | **delicate** | **wild** | **rare** | **garden, house, indoor, potted** | **exotic, tropical** | **medicinal** | **food** *food plants of rare butterflies* | **crop** | **poisonous** | **perennial** | **aquatic, desert, marsh** | **bedding, climbing, flowering, ornamental** | **herbaceous, leguminous** | **strawberry, tomato, etc.**
- VERB + PLANT **cultivate, grow** | **water**
- PLANT + VERB **develop, grow** | **flourish** | **die** | **absorb sth, consume sth** *Plants absorb carbon in the form of carbon dioxide.*
- PLANT + NOUN **roots** | **growth** | **life** *Much of the local plant life has been destroyed by the chemicals.* | **species, variety** | **material, matter, tissue** | **pot** | **science**

2 factory
- ADJ. **industrial** | **assembly, manufacturing, production** | **car** | **nuclear, power** | **processing, reprocessing, sewage, treatment, water-treatment** *a waste reprocessing plant* | **chemical, petrochemical**
- VERB + PLANT **build** | **dismantle** | **manage, run**
- PLANT + NOUN **manager**

plant *verb*

1 put plants/seeds in the ground to grow
- ADV. **carefully** | **deliberately** *weeds that had not been deliberately planted*
- PREP. **in** *Carefully plant your cutting in the soil.* **with** *The garden was planted with roses and other shrubs.*
- PHRASES **densely/thickly planted** *a thickly planted orange grove* **freshly/newly/recently planted**

2 put sth firmly in a place/position
- ADV. **firmly, solidly, squarely** *She planted a kiss squarely on his cheek.*
- PREP. **on** *He was determined to keep both feet firmly planted on dry land.*

plantation *noun*

1 for growing a crop
- ADJ. **coconut, coffee, cotton, rubber, sugar, tea, etc.**
- VERB + PLANTATION **work (on)** *Hundreds of slaves worked on the plantations.*
- PLANTATION + NOUN **owner, worker** | **economy** | **house**

2 land planted with trees
- ADJ. **conifer, eucalyptus, etc.** | **forestry**
- PREP. **~ of** *a plantation of oaks*

plaque *noun*

1 on the wall
- ADJ. **commemorative, memorial**
- VERB + PLAQUE **put up** *The local historical society put up a plaque at the site of the battle.* | **unveil**
- PLAQUE + VERB **be dedicated to sb, commemorate sb/sth, honour sb** | **mark sth, record sth** *A plaque marks the place where the first printing press was built.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *Some Latin words were engraved on the plaque.* | **~ on** *a plaque on the wall* **~ to** *There is a commemorative plaque to the artist in the village hall.*

2 substance on teeth
- ADJ. **dental**
- VERB + PLAQUE **remove**
- PLAQUE + VERB **accumulate, build up**

plaster *noun*

1 smooth covering for a wall
- ADJ. **fresh** | **chipped, cracked, crumbling, peeling**
- QUANT. **chunk, flake** *Each blow of the hammer removed a great chunk of plaster.*
- VERB + PLASTER **apply** *Apply the plaster evenly.*
- PLASTER + VERB **come off (sth), fall off (sth), peel off (sth)** *Plaster was peeling off the ceiling.*
- PLASTER + NOUN **cast** *A plaster cast of Madame Fournier stood in the artist's studio.*

2 for covering a cut
- ADJ. **sticking**
- VERB + PLASTER **put on** | **peel off, take off**

3 for protecting broken bones
- PLASTER + NOUN **cast** *Her broken leg was put in a plaster cast*
- PREP. **in ~** *Your arm will have to be in plaster for at least six weeks.*

plastic *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy-duty, reinforced, strong, sturdy, tough** | **thin** | **flexible** | **rigid** | **moulded** | **clear, see-through, transparent** | **shiny** | **biodegradable** | **foam** | **sticky-backed**
- VERB + PLASTIC **make, manufacture, produce** | **recycle** | **make/mould sth from/in/(out) of** *dashboards moulded in plastic* | **cover sth with, wrap sth in**

plate *noun*

1 for food
- ADJ. **dessert, dinner, serving, side, soup** | **clean, dirty** *The sink was full of dirty plates.* | **empty, full**
- VERB + PLATE **clear, empty** *I could see how hungry she was from the way she cleared her plate.* | **clear (away), collect**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *She ate everything on her plate.* | **~ of** *a plate of rice*

2 piece of metal with writing on
- ADJ. **licence, number** *The driver was arrested for having false number plates on his car.* | **name** *He read the brass name plate by the door.*

plateau *noun*

- ADJ. **high** | **broad, rolling, vast** | **central**
- VERB + PLATEAU **reach** (*figurative*) *The children's standard of reading seems to have reached a plateau* (= they are not making any more progress).
- PLATEAU + VERB **overlook sth**
- PREP. **across a/the ~** *A terrible storm swept across the plateau.*

platform *noun*

1 raised floor
- ADJ. **high, raised** | **wooden**
- VERB + PLATFORM **mount, stand on** *The king mounted the platform to loud cheers.* | **appear on, speak from** | **share** *Union leaders shared the platform with business leaders in a debate on the future of the industry.*

2 at a railway station
- ADJ. **railway, station**
- PREP. **along a/the ~** *He ran along the platform to catch the train.* **at ~** *The train at platform 3 is the 13.15 service to Liverpool.* **from ~** *The next train to depart from platform 2 is the 10.30 for London Paddington.* **on ~** *the waiting room on platform 7*

3 in politics
- ADJ. **political** | **election, electoral**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the promises in their election platform* **on a/the ~ of** *They fought the election on a platform of economic reform.*

platonic *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **purely, strictly** *Their friendship remained purely platonic.*

plausible *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound** | **make sth** | **find sth, judge sth, think sth** *He did not think it plausible that all the differences could be explained in this way.*
- ADV. **extremely, highly, terribly, very** | **entirely, perfectly, quite** *a perfectly plausible theory* | **not remotely** *There was no way the story could be made to sound even remotely plausible.* | **barely, hardly** | **reasonably** | **superficially** | **intuitively, psychologically** *This explanation fits the facts and is psychologically plausible.*

play *noun*

1 activity done for fun
- ADJ. **outdoor** | **creative, imaginative, pretend**
- PLAY + NOUN **area** | **equipment** | **scheme** *The local council runs some good play schemes.*
- PREP. **at ~** *Children spend hours at play.* **in ~** *I only said it in play* (= not seriously).

2 drama
- ADJ. **one-act** | **radio, television** | **musical** | **miracle, morality, mystery, nativity, passion** *The children always perform a nativity play every Christmas.*
- VERB + PLAY **review** *The play is reviewed in most of today's papers.*
- PREP. **~ about** *a play about teenage runaways*

⇨ Note at PERFORMANCE (for more verbs)

3 in sport
- ADJ. **excellent, good** | **fair** | **dangerous, dirty, foul, rough, violent** *He was sent off for foul play.*
- VERB + PLAY **stop** *Rain stopped play 40 minutes into the match.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The ball is still in play.* **out of ~** *He kicked the ball out of play.*
- PHRASES **at close/start of play** (in cricket) *At close of play he had scored 38 not out.*

play *verb*

1 of children
- VERB + PLAY **let sb** *The other children wouldn't let him play.*
- PREP. **at** *Let's play at pirates!* **with** *a little girl playing with her toys*

2 game/sport
- ADV. **brilliantly, excellently, superbly, well** | **badly**
- VERB + PLAY **learn to** | **teach sb to** | **be difficult to, be easy to** | **see sb, watch sb**
- PREP. **against** *United are difficult to play against.* **at** *I've never played John at tennis.* **for** *He plays for Aston*

Villa. **in** *She has played in every match this season.* **with** *playing cards with her mother*

3 music

- ADV. **brilliantly, excellently, superbly, well | badly | live** *The band will be playing live in the studio.*
- VERB + PLAY **learn to** *learning to play the violin* **| teach sb to | be easy to, be difficult to** *a piece that is relatively easy to play* **| hear sb** *Have you ever heard her play?*

player *noun*

1 of a game

- ADJ. **accomplished, brilliant, dangerous, excellent, exciting, fine, gifted, good, great, outstanding, strong, talented, top, world-class** *one of the country's top tennis players* **| star** *The club were forced to sell their star player.* **| poor** *He's a poor player, but he tries very hard.* **| average** *These boots are for the professional rather than for the average player.* **| experienced | aggressive | attacking, midfield** (both in football) **| handicap, scratch** (both in golf) **| basketball, bridge, chess, rugby, snooker, tennis, etc.**

2 of a musical instrument

- ADJ. **accomplished, gifted, great, outstanding, talented | bass, horn, keyboard, sax, etc.**

3 in business

- ADJ. **key, leading, major**
- PREP. **~ in** *Their firm is a major player in the London property market.*

playground *noun*

- ADJ. **children's | adventure | school**
- PLAYGROUND + NOUN **bully, bullying | equipment | duty** *teachers on playground duty*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *children in the school playground.*

playgroup *noun*

- ADJ. **nursery, pre-school | local**
- VERB + PLAYGROUP **go to | run | start** *She started a playgroup in her own house.* **| start (at)** *He'll grow in confidence once he starts at playgroup.*
- PLAYGROUP + NOUN **leader**
- PREP. **at ~** *She goes shopping while her little girl's at playgroup.*

plea *noun*

1 request

- ADJ. **desperate, dramatic, strong, urgent | heartfelt, impassioned, passionate | repeated | personal**
- VERB + PLEA **make | ignore**
- PREP. **despite a/the ~, in spite of a/the ~** *Despite pleas from his mother, the gunman refused to give himself up.* **| ~ by/from** *Hospital visiting hours were extended in response to pleas from patients.* **~ for** *The director of the charity made an impassioned plea for help.*

2 statement in court

- ADJ. **guilty | not guilty**
- VERB + PLEA **enter | hear | change | accept, sustain** *The prosecution accepted a plea of manslaughter.* **| support | reject**
- PLEA + NOUN **bargain, bargaining**
- PREP. **~ for** *A senior judge heard a plea for damages on behalf of the accident victims.* **~ of** *Her solicitor entered a plea of guilty on her behalf.*

plead *verb*

1 ask sb for sth in a very serious way

- ADV. **almost** *She was almost pleading with him.* **| silently | successfully** *She successfully pleaded their cause with the mayor.*
- PREP. **for** *They pleaded for mercy.* **with** *His eyes silently pleaded with her.*

2 say that you are guilty/not guilty

- PHRASES **plead guilty/not guilty** *He pleaded not guilty to the murder.*

pleasant *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | find sth**
- ADV. **exceedingly, extraordinarily, extremely, very | perfectly** *His colleagues were perfectly pleasant and friendly but they had their own lives to lead.* **| less than, not altogether, not entirely, not exactly, not particularly** *It was not a particularly pleasant experience.* **| almost | fairly, quite, rather, reasonably | enough** *It was a pleasant enough day's journey.* **| undeniably**
- PREP. **to** *He has always been extremely pleasant to me.*

please *verb*

- ADV. **enormously** *The result pleased us enormously.*
- VERB + PLEASE **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *Some children are very difficult to please.* **| be easy to | be eager to** *He's always very eager to please.* **| try to | fail to** *The planning policy failed to please anyone.*
- PHRASES **there's no pleasing sb** *There's just no pleasing some people.* (= Some people are impossible to please.)

pleased *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound**
- ADV. **awfully, dead, especially, extremely, genuinely, immensely, inordinately, more than, only too, particularly, really, ridiculously, very, well | far from, not at all, not best** *She seemed surprised and not at all pleased to see him.* **| fairly, mildly, pretty, quite, rather, reasonably | half** *He laughed, half pleased and half resentful.* **| enough** *They seemed pleased enough with the result.* **| apparently | clearly, evidently, obviously | quietly, secretly | oddly, strangely | always** *I am always pleased to hear from former students.*
- PREP. **about** *pleased about the move* **at** *She seemed pleased at our success.* **by** *You must be pleased by their confidence in you.* **for** *I'm very pleased for you both.* **with** *We are immensely pleased with this result.*

pleasing *adj.*

- VERBS **be | find sth**
- ADV. **extremely, particularly, very | quite, rather | aesthetically** *aesthetically pleasing colour combinations*
- PREP. **to** *a design which is pleasing to the eye*

pleasurable *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | make sth | find sth** *activities which they find pleasurable and rewarding*
- ADV. **deeply, highly, intensely, very | mildly, quite** *a feeling of mildly pleasurable excitement*

pleasure *noun*

1 enjoyment

- ADJ. **considerable, deep, enormous, great, intense** *It gives me enormous pleasure to welcome my next guest.* **| genuine, real | pure, sheer | quiet** *The audience nodded with quiet pleasure at her remark.* **| obvious | endless** *Children find endless pleasure in playing with water.* **| malicious, perverse, sadistic | vicarious** *He gained vicarious pleasure from watching people laughing and joking.* **| aesthetic, physical, sensual, sexual**
- VERB + PLEASURE **bring (sb), give (sb), provide | derive, find, gain, get, take** *My grandfather got immense pleasure out of life until the end.*
- PREP. **for ~** *Some people read for pleasure, and others read to study.* **with ~** *His eyes lit up with pleasure.* **| ~ at** *He*

beamed with pleasure at seeing her. ~**from** *She was deriving a perverse pleasure from his discomfort.* ~**in** *They took great pleasure in each other's company.*
- PHRASES **business and pleasure** *I often meet useful people at parties, so I combine business with pleasure.* **have the pleasure of sth** *May I have the pleasure of the next dance?*

2 sth that makes you happy
- ADJ. **great** | **doubtful, dubious** *the dubious pleasure of growing up in the public eye* | **little, simple** *one of life's little pleasures* | **fleeting, momentary, temporary**
- VERB + PLEASURE **have** *(formal) I hope to have the pleasure of meeting you again.* | **enjoy** | **forego**
- PLEASURE + NOUN **boat, craft**
- PHRASES **the pleasures of life** *She enjoys the simple pleasures of life.* **the pleasures of the flesh** *Priests promise to forego the pleasures of the flesh.*

pledge *noun*
- ADJ. **campaign, election, manifesto** | **spending** *spending pledges given by the government*
- VERB + PLEDGE **give (sb), make, sign** | **fulfil, honour** | **betray, go back on, renege on**
- PREP. ~**on** *manifesto pledges on public spending*
- PHRASES **a pledge of support**

plight *noun*
- ADJ. **desperate, sad, sorry, tragic** *the desperate plight of flood victims* | **economic, financial**
- VERB + PLIGHT **recognize, see** | **draw attention to, highlight, publicize** *He has been sleeping rough in the streets to highlight the plight of the homeless.* | **alleviate, ease** | **ignore**

plot *noun*

1 plan
- ADJ. **fiendish** | **alleged** | **assassination, blackmail, coup, death, murder**
- VERB + PLOT **hatch** | **uncover** | **foil**
- PREP. ~**against** *They had taken part in a Jacobite plot against William III.* ~**by** *The police claim to have uncovered a plot by terrorists to assassinate the president.*

2 events in a story
- ADJ. **simple** | **complex, complicated**
- VERB + PLOT **construct** *She has constructed a complicated plot, with a large cast of characters.*
- PLOT + VERB **develop, unfold**
- PLOT + NOUN **development**
- PHRASES **a twist in/of the plot** *There are several unexpected twists in the plot before the murderer is revealed.*

3 piece of land
- ADJ. **garden, vegetable** | **farm, subsistence** | **building** | **burial** | **small** | **10-acre, 12-acre, etc.** *They own a five-acre plot of land.* | **family, private**
- VERB + PLOT **work**
- PLOT + VERB **measure sth** *The plots each measure 10 metres by 20 metres.*
- PHRASES **a plot of land**

plot *verb*

1 make secret plans
- ADV. **allegedly** | **secretly**
- PREP. **against** *He was arrested on suspicion of plotting against the king.* **with** *Taylor plotted with his daughter to murder her husband.*
- PHRASES **accuse/suspect sb of plotting sth**

2 mark sth on a chart
- ADV. **accurately** *The positions of the archaeological finds are accurately plotted.*
- PREP. **against** *Greenhouse temperature can be plotted against plant growth.* **on** *plotting the figures on a graph*

plough *noun*
- ADJ. **heavy**
- VERB + PLOUGH **draw, pull** *They need two horses to pull these heavy ploughs.* | **guide**
- PLOUGH + NOUN **boy, team** | **furrow**

ploy *noun*
- ADJ. **clever, effective, good, useful** | **deliberate, tactical** | **favourite, old, usual** | **marketing, sales**
- VERB + PLOY **resort to, try**
- PLOY + VERB **work**
- PREP. ~**for** *a ploy for deflecting criticism*

plug *noun*

1 electric
- ADJ. **electric** | **mains** | **three-pin, two-pin** *The iron is fitted with a three-pin plug.* | **jack** | **fused**
- VERB + PLUG **pull (out), take out** | **fit, wire** | **be fitted with** | **change**

2 for a sink, etc.
- ADJ. **basin, bath, sink**
- VERB + PLUG **put in** | **pull out**
- PLUG + NOUN **hole** (also **plughole**)

plumbing *noun*
- ADJ. **cold water, hot water** | **domestic, household**
- VERB + PLUMBING **put in** *They're going to have to put in new plumbing.*
- PLUMBING + NOUN **arrangements, system** | **fittings** | **tools** | **job, work** | **leak**

plunge *noun*
- ADJ. **headlong** | **cold** *Bathers would go straight from the hot room to take a cold plunge.*
- VERB + PLUNGE **take** *The river takes a headlong plunge into a maelstrom of rocks and boulders.* ◇ *(figurative) He finally took the plunge and gave in his notice.*
- PREP. ~**into** *a plunge into the icy water* ~**to** *a plunge to the ground*

plunge *verb*
- ADV. **downwards, forward, head first, headlong** *The car plunged headlong into the river.* | **in** *The pool was declared open and eager swimmers plunged in.*
- PREP. **down** *The bus came off the road and plunged down an embankment.* **from** *He plunged from a tenth floor window.* **into** *(often figurative) She plunged straight into her story.* **off** *The car had plunged off the road.*
- PHRASES **plunge to your death** *A climber plunged 300 feet to his death.*

plutonium *noun*
- ADJ. **radioactive** | **civil** | **military, weapons-grade**
- VERB + PLUTONIUM **extract, produce, recover** *one tonne of plutonium extracted from spent nuclear fuel*
- PLUTONIUM + NOUN **fuel**

pneumonia *noun*
- ADJ. **severe** | **bronchial, double** | **bacterial**
- QUANT. **bout**
- VERB + PNEUMONIA **have, suffer from** | **catch, contract, develop, get** | **die from/of** | **cause**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

pocket *noun*

1 for keeping things in
- ADJ. **bulging** *tourists with bulging pockets* | **deep** | **zipped** | **coat, jacket, shirt, trouser, waistcoat, etc.** | **back, breast, hip, inner, inside, outer, top** | **door, seat**

Please read the safety leaflet in the seat pocket in front of you. (= on a plane) | **secret** *Forged passports were found in a secret pocket in the suitcase.*

• VERB + POCKET **feel in, fish in, fumble in, go through, rummage in, search** *He went through all his pockets looking for his key.* | **reach in** *She reached in her pocket and pulled out her phone.* | **dip into** (*figurative*) *Once again club members have had to dip into their pockets* (= spend their own money) *to buy new equipment.* | **fish/get/pull/take sth from/out of** *I fished the number out of my pocket and dialled.* | **empty, turn out** *The security guard made them empty their pockets.* | **put/stuff/thrust sth in/into** *She stuffed the money into her pocket and walked out.* ◇ *He walked past with his collar turned up and his hands thrust into his pockets.* | **fill, stuff** *We filled our pockets with apples.* | **line** (*figurative*) *Dishonest officials have been lining their pockets with public funds.* | **pick** *He caught a boy trying to pick his pocket on the bus.*

• POCKET + VERB **bulge** *My pockets were bulging with loose change.*

• POCKET + NOUN **lining**

• PREP. **in the/your ~** *My wallet was in the back pocket of my jeans.* **out of the/your ~** *He took a few coins out of his pocket.*

• PHRASES **hands in pockets** *He stood there, hands in pockets.* **the lining of a pocket**

2 small area/group

• ADJ. **small** | **isolated**

• PHRASES **a pocket of resistance** *Government forces are mopping up the last pockets of resistance.*

poem *noun*

• ADJ. **fine, good, great, magnificent, remarkable** | **collected, selected** *His collected poems were published after the war.* | **anonymous** | **autobiographical** | **sad** | **dramatic, epic, lyric, heroic, narrative** | **prose** | **love** | **war** | **humorous, nonsense, satirical**

• QUANT. **anthology, collection**

• VERB + POEM **compose, write** | **read** *She read the poem aloud.* | **recite** | **learn by heart** | **dedicate** *He dedicated the poem to his mother.*

• POEM + VERB **be addressed to sb**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *In his autobiographical poem 'The Prelude', Wordsworth describes his boyhood in the Lakes.* | **~ about** *a poem about cultural differences*

poet *noun*

• ADJ. **accomplished, good, great** | **distinguished, famous, well-known** | **foremost** *the foremost poet of his generation* | **minor** | **unknown** | **aspiring** | **contemporary** | **epic, lyric** | **Romantic, metaphysical**

• VERB + POET **inspire** *These river banks have inspired poets for many centuries.*

• POET + VERB **write sth**

poetic *adj.*

• VERBS **be, sound**

• ADV. **very** | **truly** *The piece ends with a truly poetic slow movement.* | **almost** | **quite** | **self-consciously** *His writing is rather self-consciously poetic.*

poetry *noun*

• ADJ. **good, great** | **classical** | **contemporary, modern** | **18th-century, etc.** | **dramatic, epic, heroic, lyric, narrative** | **Modernist, Romantic, symbolist, etc.** | **love, pastoral, war, etc.**

• QUANT. **line** *He began his speech with a few lines of poetry.* | **piece** | **anthology, book, collection, volume**

• VERB + POETRY **compose, write** | **read** | **recite** | **learn by heart** *At school we had to learn a lot of poetry by heart.*

• POETRY + NOUN **book, collection** | **reading** *She invited me to one of her poetry readings.* | **competition, workshop** | **group**

• PREP. **in ~** *an essay on imagery in poetry*

poignant *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem, sound** | **become** | **make sth** *The presence of the rest of the family made John's absence even more poignant.* | **find sth**

• ADV. **deeply, extremely, particularly, unbearably, very** *I found his speech deeply poignant.* | **quite**

point *noun*

1 thing said as part of a discussion

• ADJ. **good, interesting, valid** | **important** | **minor** | **subtle** | **moot** | **central, crucial, key, major, salient** | **controversial** | **talking** *The possibility of an interest rate cut is a major talking point in the City.*

• VERB + POINT **have** *She's got a point.* | **see, take** *I see your point.* ◇ *Point taken.* | **concede** | **cover, make, raise** *She made some interesting points.* | **argue, discuss** *They argued the point for hours.* | **illustrate** | **get across, make, prove** *He had trouble getting his point across.* ◇ *That proves my point.* | **drive/hammer home, emphasize, labour, press, stress** *I understand what you're saying—there's no need to labour the point.*

• PHRASES **a case in point** (= an example relevant to the matter being discussed), **the point at issue, a point of agreement/disagreement, a point of law**

⇨ Special page at MEETING

2 **the point** essential aspect of sth

• ADJ. **basic** *The basic point is that …*

• VERB + POINT **come/get to** *Hurry up and get to the point!* | **get** *It took me a few minutes to get the point.* | **miss** | **wander from/off**

• PREP. **beside the ~** (= not relevant) *That's beside the point.* **to the ~** *His remarks were brief and to the point.*

• PHRASES **more to the point** (= what is more important) *More to the point, did they get away?*

3 meaning/reason/purpose of sth

• ADJ. **whole** *That's the whole point.*

• VERB + POINT **have** *It doesn't have any point to it.* | **see** *I don't see the point in arguing.*

• PREP. **~ in/of** *There's absolutely no point in complaining now.* ◇ *What's the point of worrying?*

4 item/detail/feature

• ADJ. **finer, good, strong** *We discussed the finer points of growing roses.* | **bad, weak** | **salient**

• PHRASES **a point of difference, a point of interest**

5 particular time/moment

• ADJ. **high** *He had reached the high point of his career.* | **low** | **breaking, bursting, saturation** *to fill a bag to bursting point* | **boiling, freezing, melting**

• VERB + POINT **get to, reach** *I've got to the point* (= in a book, etc.) *where his father is dying.*

• POINT + VERB **come** *There comes a point in most people's lives when they want to settle down.*

• PREP. **at a/the ~** *At one point he looked like winning.* **on the ~ of** *on the point of departure* **to the ~ of** *We worked all night to the point of collapse.* **up to a ~** *I agree with you up to a point.*

• PHRASES **a point in time** *At this point we can't give you a final answer.* **the point of no return** (= after which it is impossible to go back/undo what you have done)

6 particular place/position

• ADJ. **central, focal** *the focal point of his life* | **fixed** | **assembly, meeting, rallying** | **starting** | **vantage** | **reference** | **turning** *This proved to be the turning point of the game.* | **cut-off** | **pressure** | **vanishing**

- VERB + POINT **arrive at, reach**
- PHRASES **a point of contact, a point of reference**

7 punctuation

- ADJ. **decimal**

8 in a game/sports competition

- ADJ. **match, set** *It's set point to Henman.*
- VERB + POINT **get, score, win | lose**
- PHRASES **beat sb/win on points**

9 measurement

- ADJ. **percentage** *Interest rates fell by one percentage point.*
- VERB + POINT (All the verbs in the following collocate groups may be followed by **by**, **from** or **to** plus **point**. Sometimes the word **by** is left out.) **be/go/shoot up, improve, increase, jump, rise, soar** *The Nikkei index rose 710 points to 14894.* ◇ *His popularity rose by 18 points in public opinion polls.* | **be/come/go down, deline, decrease, depreciate, drop, fall, plummet, plunge** *The CAC-40 index is down 67 points at 4413.*
- PHRASES **about/around/only/over/up to 10, 20, etc. points** *The index was down only 4.6 points at the close.* **an improvement/an increase/a jump/a rise of 10, 20, etc. points** *to achieve an improvement of over 4.6 points in operating ratio* **a drop/fall/reduction of 10, 20, etc. points**

10 thin sharp end of sth

- ADJ. **fine, sharp**

point *verb*

- PREP. **at, in the direction of** *He pointed in the direction of the town centre.* **to** *The toddler pointed to the toy he wanted.* **towards, with** *She pointed with her finger at the map.*
- PHRASES **point straight at sb/sth** *The gun was pointing straight at me.* **point the way** *'You must cross that field,' she said, pointing the way.*

PHRASAL VERBS

point sth out

- ADV. **correctly, rightly** *As you so rightly pointed out, our funds are not unlimited.* | **tartly** *His wife pointed out tartly that none of them were exactly starving.*
- VERB + POINT STH OUT **must, should** *I should point out that not one of these paintings is original.* | **try to | fail to | be at pains to, be keen to, be quick to** *She was at pains to point out that she was no newcomer to the area.* | **be right to** *You were right to point out that this is only one of the difficulties we face.* | **be important to**
- PREP. **to** *She tried in vain to point out to him the unfairness of the situation.*

point to sth

- ADV. **clearly** *Fragments of woven cloth at the site, clearly point to the production of textiles.*
- VERB + POINT TO STH **seem to** *The evidence all seems to point to one conclusion.*

pointer *noun*

1 advice/indications

- ADJ. **good, important | clear, obvious | practical, useful**
- VERB + POINTER **give (sb), provide (sb with)**
- PREP. **~ for** *The examiners comments include pointers for future study.* **~ to** *His symptoms gave no obvious pointer to a possible diagnosis.* **~ towards** *pointers towards a new political agenda*
- PHRASES **a pointer to the future**

2 sth used for pointing

- ADJ. **mouse** *Move the mouse pointer to the menu bar.* | **light** *A light pointer is often useful with a slide projector.*

pointless *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become | consider sth, think sth** *She considered it pointless to plan in too much detail.*
- ADV. **absolutely, quite, totally, utterly | a bit, fairly, rather, somewhat | apparently**

point of view *noun*

- ADJ. **alternative, different** *He listened patiently to what we all had to say before putting across an alternative point of view.* | **aesthetic, business, commercial, economic, environmental, financial, legal, management, medical, personal, practical, psychological, safety, security, technical, theoretical, etc.**
- VERB + POINT OF VIEW **have | take** *He always seems to take the opposite point of view to me.* | **express, get across/over, present, put (across/forward/over)** *A union representative was present to put the farmers' point of view.* | **see (sth from), understand** *I can see your point of view, but I think we have to consider the long-term implications.* ◇ *Try to see the situation from my point of view.* | **agree with, share | come round to** *If we can talk to her for an hour I'm sure she'll come round to our point of view.* | **reflect** *I do not think the article reflects the point of view of the majority of the population.*
- PREP. **from a/sb's ~** *From a purely personal point of view, I'd like to see cars banned from the city centre.* **from the ~ of** *The book tells the story of a murder investigation from the point of view of the chief suspect.* ◇ *From the point of view of safety, a lower speed limit would certainly be a good thing.* | **~ on** *I don't have a point of view on this issue.*

poise *noun*

- ADJ. **natural** *the natural poise and balance of the body* | **social** *She never lost her social poise, however awkward the situation.*
- VERB + POISE **retain | lose | recover, regain** *She hesitated briefly but quickly regained her poise.*

poised *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, stand** *She stood poised for a moment.* | **remain**
- ADV. **delicately, finely | perfectly** *His manner was perfectly poised between gravity and teasing.*
- PREP. **above/over** *Peter hesitated, his hand poised above the telephone.* **between, for** *They hovered by the door, poised for flight.*
- PHRASES **poised on the brink/edge/threshold of sth** *The two countries were poised on the brink of war.*

poison *noun*

- ADJ. **strong, virulent | deadly | nerve, rat**
- QUANT. **trace**
- VERB + POISON **administer, give sb | lace sth with, put in/on** *She had laced his drink with poison.* ◇ *She had put poison in his wine.* | **put down** (= put somewhere to kill animals) *The farmer had put down some rat poison.* | **swallow, take**
- POISON + NOUN **gas, pill | arrow**

poisoning *noun*

- ADJ. **acute, chronic | blood | food** *a bad case of food poisoning* | **alcohol, arsenic, carbon monoxide, lead, mercury, pesticide, radiation, etc.**
- QUANT. **case**
- VERB + POISONING **die from/of**

poisonous *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **deadly, extremely, highly**
- PREP. **to** *The leaves of yew trees are poisonous to cattle.*

polarized *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | remain**
- ADV. **highly, sharply** *Public opinion is sharply polarized on this issue.* | **increasingly**
- PREP. **between** *In this period politics became polarized between extreme right and left.*

pole *noun*

- ADJ. **North, South | geographic, geomagnetic, magnetic** *The north magnetic pole lies to the west of the geographic North Pole.* | **opposite** (*figurative*) *The two authors represent the opposite poles of fictional genius*
- PREP. **between the (two) ~s of** (*figurative*) *an artistic compromise between the poles of abstraction and representation* **from ~ to ~** *The meridian is an imaginary line drawn from pole to pole.*
- PHRASES **be poles apart** (*figurative*) *In temperament, she and her sister are poles apart* (= completely different).

police *noun*

- ADJ. **armed, mounted | plain-clothes, uniformed | anti-riot, riot | paramilitary, secret, security | federal, local, national, state**
- VERB + POLICE **call | alert, tell**
- POLICE + VERB **arrest sb | patrol sth | interview sb, question sb | investigate sth | appeal for sth** *Police have appealed for witnesses to come forward.*
- POLICE + NOUN **chief, constable, officer | spokesman | headquarters, station | cell** *He spent the night in a police cell after his arrest.* | **custody | car, helicopter, van, vehicle** *an unmarked police car* | **driver, marksman | dog, horse | authorities, force, service | unit | enquiries, investigation | escort** *The visiting fans returned to the railway station under police escort.* | **patrol** *A routine police patrol spotted signs of a break-in at the offices.* | **raid** *Nine arrests were made in a series of police raids across the city.* | **presence** *There was a huge police presence at the demonstration.* | **protection** *All prosecution witnesses were given police protection.* | **cordon, lines** *Some protesters managed to break through the police cordon.* | **chase | informer | brutality, harassment**
- PHRASES **helping the police with their enquiries** *No arrest has been made, but a man is helping the police with their enquiries.*

policeman *noun*

- ADJ. **senior | ordinary** *the duties of the ordinary policeman* | **local, neighbourhood | uniformed | plain-clothes | undercover | military | off-duty | friendly | bent, crooked** *The robbery may have been carried out with the help of a bent policeman.*
- VERB + POLICEMAN **call, fetch** *A policeman was called to the house just after midnight.* ◇ *She went off to fetch a policeman.*
- POLICEMAN + VERB **patrol sth | arrest sb**

⇨ See OFFICER

policy *noun*

1 plan of action

- ADJ. **clear, coherent | conscious, deliberate** *a deliberate policy to involve people of all ages in the scheme* | **strict | controversial | official, public | government, party | company | domestic, internal, national, regional | open-door** *an open-door policy for migrant workers* | **agricultural, conservation, economic, educational, energy, environmental, financial, fiscal, foreign, housing, industrial, military, social, transport, etc.**
- VERB + POLICY **develop, formulate, frame, shape | establish, implement, introduce | adopt, carry out, follow, pursue** *The government followed a policy of restraint in public spending.* | **have, operate** *The company operates a strict no-smoking policy.*
- POLICY + VERB **be aimed at sth** *a policy aimed at halting economic recession*
- POLICY + NOUN **decision, making | change, review | document, statement**
- PREP. **~ of** *The company's policy of expansion has created many new jobs.* **~ on** *the party's policy on housing*
- PHRASES **a matter of policy** *It is a matter of company policy that we do not disclose the names of clients.*

2 insurance contract

- ADJ. **insurance | contents, life, motor, etc.**
- VERB + POLICY **take out | renew**
- POLICY + VERB **cover sb/sth** *The policy covers (you for) accidental loss or damage.* | **expire**
- POLICY + NOUN **holder | schedule**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *risks defined in the policy* **under a/the ~** *the types of claims covered under the policy*

polio *noun*

- VERB + POLIO **have | contract | immunize sb against, vaccinate sb against**
- POLIO + NOUN **vaccination, vaccine | virus | victim**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

Polish *noun*

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

polish *noun*

- ADJ. **boot, furniture, metal, nail, shoe, silver | French | beeswax, wax**
- VERB + POLISH **apply** *Apply polish with a soft brush.* | **give sth** *You'll need to give your shoes a good polish.* | **remove** *Use acetone to remove nail polish.*

polished *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **brightly, deeply, highly, well** *the brightly polished brasses* ◇ *slipping on the highly polished floor* | **beautifully, nicely | freshly, newly**

polite *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound | remain**
- ADV. **extremely, very | perfectly, scrupulously, unfailingly | fairly, quite | coolly, formally** *His manner was coolly polite and impersonal.*
- PREP. **to** *She was scrupulously polite to him.*

politeness *noun*

- ADJ. **common, conventional** *It's no more than common politeness to hear what she has to say.* | **formal | social | natural** *Her natural politeness could not hide the distress in her voice.* | **exaggerated, excessive**
- PREP. **out of ~** *They accepted the food more out of politeness than because they were hungry.* **with ~** *They greeted their visitor with formal politeness.*
- PHRASES **a veneer of politeness** *His veneer of politeness concealed a ruthless determination.*

political *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **highly, very** *This whole issue has become highly political.*

political asylum *noun*

- VERB + POLITICAL ASYLUM **apply for, ask for, claim, demand, seek | grant sb, offer sb**
- PHRASES **an application for political asylum**

politician *noun*

- ADJ. **leading, prominent, senior | experienced, veteran** *a veteran politician of the left* **| influential | astute, clever, shrewd | corrupt | career, professional | conviction | local | left-wing, right-wing | Conservative, Labour, etc. | Opposition**
- VERB + POLITICIAN **elect | bribe**

politics *noun*

1 work/ideas connected with getting/using power

- ADJ. **county, local** *She was active in local politics for many years.* **| domestic, internal, national** *the country's internal politics ◇ the internal politics of the legal profession* **| global, international, world | democratic, electoral, multiparty, parliamentary, party | contemporary, modern | mainstream | practical** *He argued that it was not practical politics to abolish private schools.* **| power** *They took the view that Casper was playing power politics with their jobs at stake.* **| consensus** *Consensus politics places a high value on existing political institutions.* **| conviction | cultural, gender, sexual | office**
- VERB + POLITICS **enter, go into** *They went into politics in the hope of changing society.* **| abandon, retire from** *He abandoned politics and went into business.* **| be interested in | be active in, be engaged in, be/get immersed in, be/get involved in, engage in, participate in | dabble in, play** (*informal*) **| get embroiled in | interfere in, intervene in, meddle in** *As a churchman, he was accused of meddling in politics.* **| dominate** *the issues which have dominated Irish politics* **| reshape** *reforms that are intended to reshape Italian politics*
- POLITICS + VERB **dominate sth** *In their world politics dominates everything.*
- PHRASES **the world of politics**

2 political beliefs

- ADJ. **extreme, radical** *His manners were as mild as his politics were extreme.* **| left-wing, right-wing | sectarian | working-class | feminist**
- VERB + POLITICS **discuss, talk (about)** (*informal*) *Let's not talk politics now.*

3 study of government

- ADJ. **comparative**

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

poll *noun*

1 survey of opinion

- ADJ. **local, national | opinion | political, popularity | exit** *Exit polls suggest a big Labour majority, but the true picture will only be known after the count.* **| straw** *I took a straw poll among my colleagues to find out how many can use chopsticks.* **| latest, recent**
- VERB + POLL **carry out, conduct, take | lead (in) | publish**
- POLL + VERB **indicate sth, reveal sth, show sth, suggest sth**
- POLL + NOUN **rating, results**
- PREP. **in the ~s** *success in the polls*
- PHRASES **be ahead/behind in the polls** *With a week to go until polling day, the Conservatives are still behind in the polls.* **a lead in the polls** *A tougher budget might have widened Labour's lead in the polls.*

2 (usually **the polls**) voting in an election

- ADJ. **presidential**
- VERB + POLLS **go to** *The country goes to the polls on May 7th to elect local councillors.*
- POLLS + VERB **open | close** *Counting will begin as soon as the polls close.*
- PREP. **at the ~s** *She was defeated at the polls.*

pollen *noun*

- VERB + POLLEN **collect, gather** *bees gathering pollen*
- POLLEN + NOUN **grain | count** *Hay fever sufferers have a worse time when the pollen count is high.* **| analysis | record** *The pollen record shows that this plant was never common on the island.*

pollutant *noun*

- ADJ. **air, atmospheric, environmental, water | chemical, toxic | major | industrial**
- VERB + POLLUTANT **discharge, emit, release**
- POLLUTANT + NOUN **emission**
- PREP. **~ from** *pollutants from nearby industries* **~ in** *pollutants in exhaust gases*
- PHRASES **the emission/release of pollutants**

polluted *adj.*

- ADV. **badly, heavily, highly, seriously, severely**
- PREP. **with** *The air is heavily polluted with traffic fumes.*

pollution *noun*

- ADJ. **air, atmospheric, environmental, marine, river, water | chemical, industrial, nuclear | lead, nitrate, noise, oil, ozone, sewage, vehicle, etc. | airborne**
- VERB + POLLUTION **cause | avoid, prevent | combat, control, fight, tackle** *a convention on combating atmospheric pollution* **| cut, limit, minimize, reduce** *The summit ended with a joint pledge to limit pollution.* **| monitor**
- POLLUTION + NOUN **level | abatement, control, prevention, reduction | limits | standards** *a tightening of water pollution standards* **| monitoring | inspectorate, watchdog** *a survey by the government's water pollution watchdog* **| incident, problem | laws, legislation, regulations | offence | sources** *The computer model assesses the likely impact of new pollution sources.*
- PHRASES **the cost of pollution** *the cost of air pollution in health and other terms* **a risk of pollution** *Environmentalists say there is a high risk of pollution from the landfill site.* **a source of pollution**

polythene *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy-duty**
- VERB + POLYTHENE **cover sth with, line sth with, wrap sth in**
- POLYTHENE + NOUN **bag | sheeting**

pond *noun*

- ADJ. **big, large | little, small | stagnant | muddy | ornamental | garden, village | duck, fish, lily**
- VERB + POND **build, construct, dig | fill | drain, empty** *The pond is drained every year.*
- POND + NOUN **life, water**
- PREP. **across a/the ~** *She swam across the pond.* **in a/the ~** *There are goldfish in the pond.* **into a/the ~** *Her sunglasses had fallen into the pond.* **on a/the ~** *some ducks swimming on a pond*
- PHRASES **the bottom/edge/middle/side/surface of a pond** *The dog raced around to the other side of the pond.*

ponder *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, deeply, hard | (for) a moment** *She pondered for a moment before replying.*
- VERB + PONDER **leave sb to** *He walked out of the room, leaving me to ponder what he had just said.* **| be forced to**
- PREP. **about** *This was something I had been pondering about for some time.* **on** *I walked up the stairs, pondering on her reaction to my news.* **over** *I pondered hard over the reply to his letter.*

pony *noun*

- VERB + PONY **pit** *Pit ponies were used in most mines at the turn of the last century.* | **polo | wild**
- VERB + PONY **ride | lead | brush down | saddle | shoe**
- PONY + VERB **neigh, whinny | canter, gallop, trot, walk | prance | jump**
- PONY + NOUN **club | ride | riding, trekking**
- PHRASES **a pony and cart/trap**

pool *noun*

1 swimming pool, etc.

- ADJ. **paddling, swimming | birthing** *babies born in birthing pools* | **big | little, small | deep | empty | indoor | open-air, outdoor | heated | inflatable** *We gave the children an inflatable paddling pool for Christmas.*
- VERB + POOL **swim in | dive/jump/plunge into**
- POOL + NOUN **attendant**
- PHRASES **the bottom/edge/middle/side of the pool, a length of the pool** *He swam three lengths of the pool.*

2 small shallow area of water

- ADJ. **big, large | little, small | deep | shallow | stagnant, still | freshwater, salt-water | muddy | rock | ornamental**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The children waded in the shallow rock pools.* | **~ of** *pools of water*

3 small area of liquid/light

- ADJ. **big | little, small | dark | mud**
- VERB + POOL **lie in** *The body lay in a dark pool of blood.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *animals wallowing in the mud pools* | **~ of** *pools of light*

4 supply of sth

- ADJ. **big, huge, large | small | common** *drawing on funds from a common pool* | **car, labour, typing**
- PREP. **~ of** *a large pool of cheap labour*

pop *noun*

1 short sharp sound

- ADJ. **loud | sudden**
- PREP. **with a ~** *The cork came out with a loud pop.*

2 popular music

- ADJ. **classic, melodic, psychedelic**
- VERB + POP **play | listen to**
- POP + NOUN **classic, hit, music, song, tune | artist, singer, star | band, group | concert, festival | record, video | fan | charts | culture**
- PREP. **in ~** *He was an important figure in pop during the seventies.*

pope *noun*

- VERB + POPE **elect**
- PHRASES **an audience with the pope** *He was granted an audience with the Pope.*

popular *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | remain | make sth** *What makes this subject so popular?*
- ADV. **enormously, especially, extremely, genuinely, highly, hugely, immensely, incredibly, massively, particularly, phenomenally, really, vastly, very, wildly | increasingly | less than, not exactly** *Jack was not exactly popular after the incident with the fire extinguisher.* | **fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively | deservedly** *a deservedly popular restaurant with all who enjoy Mexican food* | **instantly** *He was one of those people who are instantly popular.* | **always, enduringly, eternally, ever, perennially** *Seaside holidays are always popular.* ◇ *a concert featuring the ever popular music from Hollywood's silver screen* | **widely | universally | internationally | personally** *The prime minister remained personally popular despite his party's disastrous slide in the opinion polls.* | **politically**
- PREP. **among** *popular among young people* **as** *These animals are quite popular as pets.* **for** *a restaurant that is popular for light meals* **with** *This area is immensely popular with tourists.*

popularity *noun*

- ADJ. **enormous, great, huge, immense, massive, widespread | growing, increasing | dwindling | continued, continuing | personal | current**
- VERB + POPULARITY **achieve, win | deserve** *The film deserves its popularity.* | **court** *She is a tough decision-maker who does not court popularity.* | **enjoy | gain (in), grow in** *Organic produce appears to be gaining in popularity.* | **retain | regain**
- POPULARITY + VERB **grow | decline, wane**
- POPULARITY + NOUN **rating | stakes** *They are running neck-and-neck in the popularity stakes.*
- PREP. **~ among/amongst** *The current system has never enjoyed popularity among teachers.* **~ with** *She enjoys huge popularity with the voters.*
- PHRASES **a decline/drop in popularity, an increase/a rise/a surge/an upsurge in popularity** *the recent upsurge in the popularity of folk music.* **the peak of (sb/sth's) popularity** *At the peak of its popularity in the late nineties, the band sold ten million albums a year*

populated *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **densely, heavily, highly, thickly** *the most densely populated part of the island* | **sparsely, thinly**
- PREP. **with** *The prison was populated with people of every trade and profession.*

population *noun*

- ADJ. **large | small, sparse | overall, total** *The country has a total population of 65 million.* | **global, local, national, world | indigenous, native | adult, ageing, elderly, young, youthful | female, male | black, white | active, working** *Most of the economically active population is employed in the primary industries.* | **student | civil, civilian | prison, school | rural, urban | general** *The general population was in favour of the National Health Service.*
- POPULATION + VERB **be sth, stand at sth** *The population now stands at about 4 million.* | **reach sth | exceed sth | double, grow, increase, rise | decline, decrease, fall | consist of sth | live** *The majority of the population live in these two towns.*
- POPULATION + NOUN **levels, size | density | data, estimate, figures, projections, trends** *No reliable population estimates exist.* | **growth, increase | decline, loss | ageing | explosion | census | centre** *major population centres along the coast*
- PHRASES **a decline/an increase in population, the growth of population** *The rapid growth of population led to an acute shortage of housing.* **per head of population** *The income per head of population was under £1 000 per annum.*

porcelain *noun*

- ADJ. **exquisite, fine | Chinese, Meissen, etc.**
- QUANT. **piece** *some fine pieces of Chinese porcelain*
- PORCELAIN + NOUN **factory | manufacturer**

porch *noun*

- ADJ. **entrance | church | back, front | north, south, west (= of a church) | pillared, projecting**
- PORCH + NOUN **door, light**

- PREP. **in/on the~** *She stood in the porch and rang the doorbell.*

pore *noun*

- ADJ. **blocked | open**
- VERB + PORE **block | unblock | open** *A hot bath opens the pores.* | **close**

pork *noun*

- ADJ. **fresh | roast, smoked | organic**
- QUANT. **bit, piece, slice | belly, knuckle, leg, loin, shoulder** *roast leg of pork*
- PORK + NOUN **chop, pie, sausage | butcher**
- PHRASES **pork and apple sauce, sweet and sour pork**

pornography *noun*

- ADJ. **hard-core, soft | child**

port *noun*

- ADJ. **bustling, busy | Channel, coastal, foreign, sea | cargo, coal, commercial, ferry, fishing**
- VERB + PORT **come into, reach** *The vessel reached port the next morning.* | **leave**
- PORT + NOUN **area | authority | facilities**
- PREP. **in ~** *Bad weather kept the ship in port for three more days.* **into ~** *trying to steer the boat into port*
- PHRASES **a port of call** *Our next port of call was Piraeus.*

portable *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **easily, highly, very** *a machine that is designed to be easily portable* | **completely, fully**

porter *noun*

1 helps lift and carry things
- ADJ. **hospital, kitchen, railway**
- VERB + PORTER **act as** *Some Sherpas act as guides and porters for mountaineering expeditions.* | **call, hail** *On arriving at the station, we hailed a porter to carry the bags.*
- PORTER + VERB **carry sth**

2 in charge of the entrance of a large building
- ADJ. **head | hall, hotel | night | uniformed**
- PHRASES **porter's desk, porter's lodge**

⇨ Note at JOB

portion *noun*

1 part/share
- ADJ. **considerable, large, significant, sizeable, substantial | small**
- VERB + PORTION **make up, take up**
- PREP. **~ of** *Salaries take up a considerable portion of our total budget.*

2 of food
- ADJ. **double, generous, large** *a generous portion of vegetables* | **small, tiny | individual**
- PREP. **~ of** *He asked for a double portion of chips.*
- PHRASES **divide sth into portions**

portrait *noun*

- ADJ. **full-length, half-length, head and shoulders | oil, pastel, pencil, etc. | photographic, sculptural | equestrian, family, group, royal | literary, pen**
- VERB + PORTRAIT **do, paint, photograph | sit for | commission | write | display, exhibit, show**
- PORTRAIT + VERB **hang** *Ancient family portraits hung on the walls of the staircase.*
- PORTRAIT + NOUN **gallery | artist, painter, photographer** *sitting to a fashionable portrait painter*
- PREP. **~ by, ~ of** *a portrait of the Queen by Annigoni*

⇨ Note at ART

portray *verb*

- ADV. **accurately | clearly | dramatically, graphically, vividly** *an incident that graphically portrays the dangers associated with this sport* ◇ *The museum collection vividly portrays the heritage of 200 years of canals.*
- VERB + PORTRAY **attempt to, try to**
- PREP. **as** *trying to portray themselves as the victims*

portrayal *noun*

- ADJ. **accurate, realistic, vivid | moving, poignant | chilling, frightening** *He is best remembered for his chilling portrayal of Norman Bates in 'Psycho'.*
- PREP. **in the/its, etc. ~** *She shows a full range of emotions in her portrayal of an ambitious politician.* | **~ of** *His novel is a vivid portrayal of life in a mining community.*

Portuguese *noun*

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

position *noun*

1 place
- ADJ. **correct, exact | central | geographical | military, strategic | defensive**
- VERB + POSITION **take (up)** *The guards took up their positions on either side of the door.* | **jostle for** *Hordes of journalists jostled for position outside the conference hall.* | **play** (*sport*) *What position does he play?*
- PREP. **in ~** *Fix the pieces in position before gluing them together* **into ~** *Please get into position.* **out of ~** *Nakata had to play out of position when the defender was injured.*

2 way of sitting, standing, etc.
- ADJ. **comfortable, uncomfortable | crouched, kneeling, sitting | sleeping | horizontal, vertical | foetal**
- VERB + POSITION **change**

3 situation
- ADJ. **business, economic, financial, legal | dominant, impregnable, strong | favourable, good, ideal, perfect | envious, invidious | competitive | precarious, vulnerable, weak | awkward, difficult, embarrassing, impossible | current, present | bargaining, negotiating | trading** *the trading position of the British economy*
- VERB + POSITION **achieve, attain, reach** *It has taken years to achieve the position we are now in.* | **put sb in** *It put me in an awkward position when he asked me to keep a secret.* | **strengthen** *Their obvious desperation strengthens our bargaining position.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *We may be in a position to help you.* ◇ *I was in the embarrassing position of having completely forgotten her name.* | **~ of**

4 opinion
- ADJ. **extreme | ideological, philosophical, political, theoretical | official** *The country's official position is that there is no famine in the area.*
- VERB + POSITION **adopt, take | defend**
- PREP. **~ on** *He took an extreme position on religious matters.*

5 rank
- ADJ. **first, second, etc. | dominant, high, important, influential, pre-eminent | inferior, lowly | privileged, secure | social**
- VERB + POSITION **establish, gain, secure | hold, occupy** *They occupy a lowly position in society.*
- PREP. **~ among/amongst** *This latest novel confirms her*

pre-eminent position amongst today's writers. **~ in** *The firm gained a dominant position in the market.*
• PHRASES **a position of authority/influence/power**

6 job
• ADJ. **full-time, part-time | key, responsible, senior | junior, menial | official | skilled | administrative, management, managerial**
• VERB + POSITION **have, hold, occupy | apply for | obtain | fill | offer sb | resign**
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *How long were you in your previous position?* | **~ in/within** *his new position in the firm* **~ of** *She was offered the position of sales manager.*

position *verb* (often **be positioned**)

• ADV. **firmly** *The radiologist firmly positioned Phoebe in front of a ferocious-looking machine.* | **centrally** *The markers were not positioned centrally.* | **carefully | correctly | wrongly | favourably, well | ideally, perfectly, uniquely** *The company is uniquely positioned to compete in foreign markets.* | **strategically**
• PREP. **at, behind, between, in, in front of, near, on, etc.** *Police marksmen were positioned on the roof.*

positive *adj.*

1 certain
• VERBS **be, seem, sound**
• ADV. **absolutely, quite** *I'm absolutely positive it was him.* | **fairly**
• PREP. **about** *She seemed fairly positive about it.* **of** *Are you positive of your facts?*

2 hopeful and confident/encouraging
• VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem, sound | remain**
• ADV. **distinctly, extremely, highly, overwhelmingly, really, very** *He took a highly positive view of the matter.* | **entirely, wholly | fairly, mildly, moderately, quite | broadly, essentially, generally | apparently, seemingly**
• PREP. **about** *sounding very positive about his chances*

3 showing that sth has happened/is present
• VERBS **be, prove, test** *The test proved positive.*
• ADV. **strongly, weakly** (*both technical*)
• PREP. **for** *He tested positive for HIV.*

possession *noun*

1 having/owning sth
• ADJ. **exclusive** *They had exclusive possession of the property as tenants.* | **illegal, unlawful** *They were charged with unlawful possession of firearms.*
• VERB + POSSESSION **gain, get, obtain | take** *When do you take possession of your new house?* | **retain** *The team was struggling to retain possession of the ball.*
• POSSESSION + NOUN **order** *The judge made a possession order against the tenant.*
• PREP. **in ~ of sth** *Drivers must be in possession of a current driving licence.* **in your ~** *They have in their possession some very valuable pictures.*
• PHRASES **in full possession of sth** *Anyone in full possession of the facts would see that we are right.*

2 sth that sb has/owns
• ADJ. **family, personal, private | cherished, prized, proud, treasured, valuable, valued** *The sports car was her proudest possession.* | **material, worldly** *He carried all his worldly possessions in an old suitcase.* | **colonial, continental, overseas** *the country's overseas possessions* (= colonies).
• VERB + POSSESSION **acquire | collect | sell | lose**

possessive *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, seem | become, get** *Nick's starting to get possessive and jealous.*
• ADV. **extremely, fiercely, intensely, very** *her fiercely possessive love for him* | **rather**
• PREP. **about** *Why should he feel so possessive about some old photos?* **of** *She had always been possessive of her brother.* **towards** *He was very possessive towards her.*

possibility *noun*

• ADJ. **exciting, interesting | endless, many** *The resort offers endless possibilities for entertainment.* | **further, other | different, various | future | distinct, great, real, serious, strong** *There's a strong possibility that it will rain today.* | **reasonable | faint, remote** *There is a faint possibility that he might have got the wrong day.* | **practical | theoretical | obvious**
• VERB + POSSIBILITY **allow sb, offer sb, open up, raise | see | consider, discuss, examine, explore, study** *Have you explored the possibilities of setting up your own business?* | **accept, acknowledge, admit, concede, countenance, entertain, recognize | ignore, overlook | deny, discount, dismiss, eliminate, exclude, preclude, rule out** *We cannot rule out the possibility of mistaken identity.* | **face** *The club is facing the real possibility of relegation.* | **risk** *We don't want to risk the possibility of losing all our money.* | **allow for, cover** *Some reserves were named to cover the possibility of withdrawals.* | **avert | lessen, reduce**
• PREP. **~ for** *She was quick to see the possibilities for making money that her new skills gave her.* **~ of** *Careful checks will reduce the possibility of unpleasant surprises.*
• PHRASES **beyond/within the bounds of possibility** *It's not beyond the bounds of possibility that a similar situation could arise again.* **a number/range of possibilities** *The course offers a wide range of possibilities for personal development.*

possible *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem, sound | become | make sth** *New technology has made it possible to communicate more easily.* | **think sth** *In those circumstances, I thought it possible to work with him.*
• ADV. **perfectly, quite | just** *It is just possible that he's still here.* | **humanly** *I think that what he's suggesting is not humanly possible.* | **theoretically** *It's theoretically possible, but highly unlikely ever to happen.*
• PHRASES **as far/long/much as possible** *She did as much as possible to help him.* **as quickly/soon as possible** *Please come as soon as possible.* **if (at all) possible** *I'd like the money back by next week if possible.*

post *noun*

1 postal system
• ADJ. **first-class, second-class | registered | inland**
• PREP. **by ~** *I sent it by first-class post.* **in the ~** *My application for the job is in the post.*
• PHRASES **by return of post** *Orders will be sent by return of post.*

2 letters, parcels, etc.
• ADJ. **first, last** *If you hurry you'll just catch the last post.*
• VERB + POST **check, open** *She arrived at the office early and checked her post*
• POST + NOUN **box** (also **postbox**)

3 job
• ADJ **senior | full-time, part-time | permanent, temporary | vacant | managerial, teaching | government, university**
• VERB + POST **apply for | take up | hold | leave, quit, resign | appoint sb to, fill | dismiss sb from, relieve sb of** *He was relieved of his post when he was found to have accepted bribes.*
• PREP. **~ as** *He quit his post as chief executive.* **~ of** *She applied for the new post of training officer.*

4 place where sb is on duty

- ADJ. **army, police | command, observation | border, frontier**
- VERB + POST **take up** *The guard took up his post at the gate.* | **desert** *The sentries had deserted their posts.*
- PREP. **at your ~** *The gun crew were at their posts.*

5 upright piece of wood, etc.

- ADJ. **finishing, winning | far, near** (both in football) *He steered a shot between the keeper and the near post.*
- PHRASES **first past the post** *The first horse past the post wins the race.* **pip sb/sth at the post** *She led for most of the way before being pipped at the post.*

postage *noun*

- VERB + POSTAGE **pay** *I had to pay £4 postage.* | **cover** *Add £3 to each order to cover postage.* | **include**
- POSTAGE + NOUN **stamp | rates**
- PREP. **for ~** *It costs £60, plus £5 for postage.* **in ~** *Sending those books cost me a fortune in postage!* | **~ on** *What's the postage on this parcel?*
- PHRASES **postage and packing** *All prices include postage and packing.*

postcard *noun*

- ADJ. **picture | holiday**
- VERB + POSTCARD **write** *I hate writing holiday postcards.* | **post, send (sb) | get, receive**
- POSTCARD + VERB **arrive | depict sth, show sth**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *Write your answers on a postcard.* | **~ from, ~ of** *I sent my mum a postcard of the cathedral.* **~ to**

poster *noun*

- ADJ. **cinema, circus, election | wanted** *The police have put up wanted posters describing the man.*
- VERB + POSTER **display, exhibit, put up, stick up | be covered with, be plastered with** *His walls are plastered with posters of rock stars.* | **take down | design | print**
- POSTER + VERB **appear, go up** *Huge election posters suddenly went up all over the town.* | **feature sth, show sth | advertise sth**
- POSTER + NOUN **campaign** *Detectives have launched a massive poster campaign to help in the search for the two killers.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *the picture on the poster* | **~ for** *posters for tonight's concert* **~ of** *a poster of James Dean*

posting *noun*

- ADJ. **diplomatic, foreign, overseas | three-month, two-year, etc. | temporary**
- VERB + POSTING **get | accept, take up** *She was unable to take up the London posting.*
- PREP. **~ as** *She has now accepted a posting as ambassador to Latvia.* **~ to** *He received a posting to Japan as soon as his training was finished.*

postman *noun*

- ADJ. **local, village**
- POSTMAN + VERB **deliver sth**

⇨ Note at JOB

post-mortem *noun*

- VERB + POST-MORTEM **carry out, conduct, do | have, hold** *The coroner says we will have to hold a post-mortem.*
- POST-MORTEM + VERB **reveal sth, show sth**
- POST-MORTEM + NOUN **examination**
- PREP. **~ on** *They're doing a post-mortem on her today.*

post office *noun*

- ADJ. **head, main | sub | local, village**
- VERB + POST OFFICE **go to**
- POST OFFICE + NOUN **counter**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *You can buy stamps at the post office.*

postpone *verb*

- ADV. **indefinitely** *The event has been postponed indefinitely due to lack of interest.* | **merely** *The inevitable conflict was merely postponed till the next meeting.*
- VERB + POSTPONE **agree to, decide to, vote to | be forced to | ask sb to** *Ruth wrote at once, asking Maria to postpone her visit.*
- PREP. **for** *Our visit had been postponed for several weeks.* **from, to** *The match has been postponed from Wednesday night to Friday night.* **till/until** *The meeting has been postponed until next week.*

postponement *noun*

- ADJ. **further, repeated | indefinite**
- VERB + POSTPONEMENT **ask for, call for, request, seek** *They are calling for a further postponement of the election date.* | **announce | force, result in**
- PREP. **~ until** *The death of one of the candidates forced postponement of the voting until 1 June.*

posture *noun*

1 position of the body

- ADJ. **correct, good | bad, poor | erect, upright** *the normal upright posture* | **stiff, stooping | body**
- VERB + POSTURE **have** *She has very good posture.* | **adopt | maintain | change, improve**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He sat in a posture of absolute respect.* | **~ for** *a poor posture for driving*

2 attitude

- ADJ. **defensive | agressive, threatening | military**
- VERB + POSTURE **adopt, assume | maintain**
- PREP. **~ towards** *to adopt a threatening posture towards an opponent*

pot *noun*

1 for cooking

- ADJ. **cooking**
- VERB + POT **scour | cover** *Cook gently in a covered pot for 3 to 4 hours.*
- POT + VERB **brim (over) with sth** *The waiter brought over a steaming pot brimming with seafood.* | **bubble, steam** *He could hear the pot bubbling on the stove.*
- PREP. **for the ~** *Local people kill these animals for the pot* (= to eat). **in/into a/the ~** *Put all the ingredients in a large pot.* | **~ of** *a pot of soup*
- PHRASES **pots and pans** *I sat in the kitchen, among the dirty pots and pans.*

2 for tea/coffee

- ADJ. **steaming | fresh | coffee, tea** (also **teapot**)
- VERB + POT **brew, make, put on** *I'll make a fresh pot of tea.* | **share | fill, refill, top up** *She refilled the teapot with boiling water.* | **empty**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Is there any more tea in the pot?* | **~ of**

3 container for storing/growing things, etc.

- ADJ. **ceramic, clay, earthenware, glass, iron, pewter, plastic, terracotta | flower, plant | jam, paint, pepper, yogurt | chamber | chimney | lobster**
- VERB + POT **grow sth in, plant sth in**
- POT + VERB **be filled with sth, be full of sth, contain sth** *a clay pot full of oil*
- POT + NOUN **plant**
- PREP. **in/into a/the ~** *Plants in pots require more water than you might think.* | **~ of** *a pot of glue/jam*

potato *noun*

- ADJ. **baking, new | sweet | seed | baked, boiled,**

chipped, creamed, fried, jacket, mashed, roast, sauté *jacket potatoes with sour cream and chives*

- QUANT. **sack**
- VERB + POTATO **eat, have | peel, scrape | chop, mash, slice | bake, boil, cook, fry, roast, sauté** *potatoes baked in their jackets*
- POTATO + NOUN **chip, crisp, purée, salad | peel, skin | peeler | crop, harvest**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

potency *noun*

- ADJ. **sexual** *a man at the peak of his sexual potency*
- VERB + POTENCY **increase | affect | lose**

potent *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, particularly, very | pretty, quite** *The vodka must have been pretty potent stuff.*

potential *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, limitless | full** *You aren't using your computer to its full potential.* | **true | unfulfilled, untapped | commercial | growth**
- VERB + POTENTIAL **have, show** *This young man has enormous potential.* | **be aware of, see** *John Cadbury could see the potential for his product.* | **develop, exploit, unlock** *They were among the first companies to exploit the potential of the Internet.* | **fulfil, reach, realize** *Signing for a top club would enable him to fulfil his true potential.*
- PREP. **with ~** *looking for a trainee with potential* | **~ as** *She showed great potential as an actor.* **~ for** *an industry that has the potential for growth*

pottery *noun*

- ADJ. **decorated, glazed, painted | hand-thrown | coarse, fine**
- QUANT. **fragment, piece** *fragments of Iron Age pottery*
- VERB + POTTERY **make, manufacture, produce | fire** *the kilns in which the pottery is fired*
- POTTERY + NOUN **kiln**

⇨ Note at ART

potty *noun*

- VERB + POTTY **use | sit (sb) on**
- POTTY + NOUN **training**
- PREP. **on the ~**

poultry *noun*

- ADJ. **free-range**
- VERB + POULTRY **keep, rear** *He rears rabbits and poultry in the garden.*
- POULTRY + NOUN **farming, industry | dish** *a wine that goes well with fish and poultry dishes*

pound *noun*

1 money

⇨ Note at CURRENCY

2 measure of weight

⇨ Note at MEASURE

pour *verb*

- ADV. **carefully | deliberately | quickly | gradually, slowly | out** *Helen poured out two stiff drinks.*
- PREP. **from, into, on, onto, out of, over** *Pour the sauce over the pasta.*

pout *verb*

- ADV. **slightly | prettily, sulkily** *Her lips pouted sulkily.*
- PREP. **at** *She pouted prettily at him.*

poverty *noun*

- ADJ. **abject, absolute, extreme, grinding, severe | widespread | rural, urban**
- VERB + POVERTY **alleviate, combat, reduce | eliminate, eradicate** *hoping to eradicate urban poverty*
- POVERTY + NOUN **trap** *Caught in the poverty trap, they are unable to save money for business ventures.*
- PREP. **in ~** *Most of the population lives in grinding poverty.* | **~ among** *the true extent of poverty among the unemployed* **~ of** *His work displays a poverty of imagination.*
- PHRASES **below/on the poverty line** *families living on incomes below the poverty line*

powder *noun*

- ADJ. **fine | chilli, cocoa, coffee, curry, milk | baking | soap, washing | baby, face, talcum**
- VERB + POWDER **grind sth into** *The seeds are ground into a fine powder before use.* | **dust sth with, sprinkle on** *Before the photo dries, the image is dusted with a special powder.* | **dab on, put on** *She quickly dabbed some powder on her cheeks.* | **add, mix sth with, stir in** *Add a teaspoonful of curry powder.*
- POWDER + NOUN **snow**
- PHRASES **in powder form** *The tablets are also available in powder form.*

power *noun*

1 authority/control

- ADJ. **absolute, ultimate | considerable, enormous | limited | arbitrary | economic, legal, legislative, political | popular | secular**
- VERB + POWER **come to, rise to** *When did this government come to power?* | **assume, seize, take** *The Crown prince assumed power in his father's place.* | **restore sb to, return sb to | have, hold** *The court has no power to order a psychiatric examination of the child's parents.* ◇ *They held power for 18 years.* | **share | exercise, use, wield | confer, give sb, grant sb** *The new law delegates many of these powers to school governors.* | **fall from, lose** *They fell from power in 1992.* | **give up, relinquish, renounce | delegate, devolve**
- POWER + VERB **be concentrated in** (**the hands of sb/sth**), **rest with sb/sth** *The real legislative power still rests with the lower chamber.*
- POWER + NOUN **struggle** *getting the upper hand in a power struggle* | **base** *The party's power base is in the industrial north of the country.*
- PREP. **in** (**your**) **~** *the party in power* ◇ *They held us in their power.* | **~ of** *the power of veto* **~ over** *The government has limited legal powers over television.*
- PHRASES **abuse of power, the balance of power** *The war brought about a shift in the balance of power.* **a bid for power, the exercise of power, a position of power** *the father's position of power and influence in the home* **the power behind the throne** (= the person who is really in control) *People say that the prime minister's wife is the power behind the throne.* **power-hungry** *The company was too small to hold two such power-hungry men.* **a transfer of power** *the transfer of power from a military to a civilian government*

2 ability to do sth

- ADJ. **air, military, naval, sea** *an increase in Britain's air power* | **fire** *weapons with enormous fire power* | **bargaining | computing | healing** *the healing power of sleep* | **earning, purchasing | staying** *Having served in four governments, he has the greatest staying power of any politician today.* | **magic, magical, mystical, psychic, supernatural** *They believe he has supernatural powers.*
- VERB + POWER **have | use | develop | lose** *Religion is rapidly losing its power to shape our behaviour.*
- PREP. **beyond sb/sth's ~** *a task still beyond any computer's power* **in/within your** *I'm afraid it's not within my*

power to help you. **through the ~ of** *He wants to change the world through the power of prayer.* | **~s as** *a tribute to his powers as a teacher* **~ of** *her powers of observation ◇ I lost my power of speech for a while after the accident.*

- PHRASES **at the height/peak/zenith of your powers** *In 1946 Dali was at the peak of his powers.* **do all/everything in your power** *He did everything in his power to find us somewhere to live.*

3 country with influence

- ADJ. **great, major | world | foreign | allied, enemy | occupying | victorious | European, Western, etc.** *major European powers such as France and Germany* | **colonial, industrial, naval**

4 force

- ADJ. **great | destructive, terrible** *the destructive power of a hurricane*

5 energy

- ADJ. **full** *The plane was still climbing at full power.* | **reduced** *The transmitter is operating on reduced power.* | **electric, electrical, hydroelectric, nuclear, solar, steam, tidal, water, wind**
- VERB + POWER **generate, produce** *They use these streams to generate power for the mill.* | **provide (sb/sth with), supply (sb/sth with)** *This wheel provides the power to the cutting machine.* | **use | harness | turn on | cut off, turn off**
- POWER + VERB **drive sth** *Wind power is used to drive the machinery.*
- POWER + NOUN **cable, line, point, supply | tool** *DIY grew in popularity with the advent of power tools.* | **plant, station | worker | cut, failure**
- PREP. **~ for** *supplying power for the grinding process*
- PHRASES **a source of power**

powerful *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become**
- ADV. **enormously, especially, exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, immensely, incredibly, particularly, really, remarkably, surprisingly, tremendously, unusually, very | increasingly | fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively | enough, sufficiently** *She had a voice powerful enough not to need a microphone.* | **potentially | economically, politically** *a politically powerful figure* | **locally** *locally powerful landowners*

powerless *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem | become | remain | render sb** *If he took control, they would be rendered virtually powerless.*
- ADV. **completely, quite, totally, utterly | comparatively, relatively, virtually**
- PREP. **against** *They were completely powerless against such a large group.* **in the face of** *They felt powerless in the face of disaster.*

practicable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem | become**
- ADV. **perfectly | reasonably** *We will do this as soon as is reasonably practicable.* | **not very**
- PHRASES **as far/soon as practicable**

practical *noun*

- ADJ. **chemistry, physics, etc.**
- VERB + PRACTICAL **sit, take | pass | fail** *I passed the written exam but failed the practical.*

practical *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound | become**
- ADV. **eminently, extremely, highly, intensely, very | entirely, purely, strictly** *For entirely practical reasons, children are not invited.* | **hardly | quite, reasonably | essentially | severely** *She always adopted a severely practical tone.*

practice *noun*

1 actual doing of sth

- VERB + PRACTICE **put sth into** *I can't wait to put what I've learned into practice.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The idea sounds fine in theory, but would it work in practice?*

2 doing sth many times

- ADJ. **basketball, catching, piano, etc. | target**
- VERB + PRACTICE **do, get (in), have** *I'll be able to get in a bit of practice this weekend. ◇ I've had a lot of practice in saying 'no' recently!* | **need, require, take** *Don't worry if you can't do it at first—it takes practice!* | **give sb** *This chapter gives students practice in using adjectives.*
- PRACTICE + NOUN **ground | game, session**
- PREP. **out of ~** *If you don't play regularly you soon get out of practice.* **with ~** *His accent should improve with practice.* | **~ at** *practice at swimming underwater* **~ in** *The children need more practice in tying their shoelaces.*
- PHRASES **be good practice for sth** *It will be good practice for later, when you have to make speeches in public.*

3 way of doing sth

- ADJ. **good** *adopting current best practices in your business* | **corrupt, sharp, unethical, unfair | discriminatory, restrictive | accepted, common, current, established, normal, standard, universal, usual, widespread** *It is standard practice not to pay bills until the end of the month.* | **local | cultural, legal, medical, religious, sexual** *the medical practices of ancient Egypt* | **accounting, administrative, business, employment, management, working** *studying Japanese working practices*
- VERB + PRACTICE **introduce** *The practice of community policing was introduced in the 1970s.* | **adopt, follow, use | promote | change, modify** *Established practices are difficult to modify.* | **ban, outlaw, prevent, prohibit, stop**
- PRACTICE + VERB **begin | continue** *the ancient custom of log rolling, a practice which continues to this day* | **change, develop, evolve**
- PREP. **~ of** *the practice of acupuncture*
- PHRASES **a change in/of practice** *changes in employment practices* **a code of practice** *voluntary codes of practice between sellers and customers* **make a practice of sth** *I don't make a practice of forgetting to pay my bills, I assure you!*

4 work/office of a professional person

- ADJ. **successful | legal, medical, professional | general** (= medicine of a non-specialized type, not in a hospital), **private** (= accepting paying patients) | **group** *It's a group practice, so you can easily change doctors.*
- VERB + PRACTICE **be in, go into, set up in** *She wants to go into general practice.* | **retire from | suspend sb from** *He had been suspended from practice, pending legal investigations.* | **open, start** *She has opened a new practice in the town.* | **run** *He runs a successful legal practice in Ohio.* | **join** *A new partner has joined the practice.* | **leave**

practise *verb*

- ADV. **hard | regularly**
- PREP. **for** *She's practising hard for the piano competition.* **on** *I learned hairdressing by practising on my sister.*

pragmatic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **highly, very | entirely, purely, utterly | essentially, largely** *Our approach is essentially pragmatic.* | **quite, rather**

- PREP. **about** *They're pragmatic about the spending cuts.*

prairie *noun*

- ADJ. **high, rolling, wide** | **American**
- VERB + PRAIRIE **cross** *a train of covered wagons crossing the wide American prairies*
- PRAIRIE + NOUN **dog**
- PREP. **across the ~** *their route across the prairie* **on the ~** *settlers' houses on the prairies of Canada*

praise *noun*

- ADJ. **glowing, great, high, lavish, special, unstinting, warm** | **faint** | **universal**
- VERB + PRAISE **be full of, be fulsome/loud/unstinting in** *The critics were full of praise for the film.* ◇ *He was unstinting in his praise of his teacher.* | **give sb, offer** | **single sb out for** *The team's coach singled his goalkeeper out for praise.* | **heap, shower (sb with)** *an article heaping praise on the government* | **come in for, receive** | **attract, draw, earn, win** *The play has attracted universal praise.*
- PREP. **beyond ~** *This book is beyond praise.* **in ~ of** *He wrote many poems in praise of his wife.* | **~ for** *earning praise for their efforts* **~ from** *The decision also won praise from local people.* **~ of** *her praise of his skill*
- PHRASES **a chorus/paean of praise** *The French manager ted the chorus of praise for the German team.* **have nothing but praise for sb/sth** *The patients interviewed had nothing but praise for the hospital staff.* **sing sb's praises** *The newspapers were singing the president's praises.* **a word of praise** *There were words of praise for the show's designer.*

praise *verb*

- ADV. **highly, lavishly, warmly** *He praised all his staff highly.* | **privately, publicly** | **rightly** *Her achievements in this field have been rightly praised.*
- VERB + PRAISE **be quick to** *The defeated captain was quick to praise the winning team.*
- PREP. **for** *They praised him for his cooking.*
- PHRASES **be universally/widely praised**

pram *noun*

- VERB + PRAM **push, wheel**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She was pushing her baby along in a pram.*

pray *verb*

- ADV. **earnestly, fervently, hard** *He thought if he prayed hard enough God might eventually listen.* | **quietly, silently** | **regularly** | **together**
- PREP. **for** *He prayed for rain.* **to** *I prayed to God for guidance.* **with** *She asked the priest to pray with her.*
- PHRASES **hope and pray** *We can hope and pray that no one gets hurt.* **let us pray** *'Let us pray.' The congregation bowed their heads.* ◇ *Let's pray Mick doesn't find out.*

prayer *noun*

- ADJ. **little, short** | **private, silent** | **special** | **fervent** | **evening, morning** | **daily** | **family**
- VERB + PRAYER **offer (up), say, send up, utter** *I sent up a quick prayer and entered the interview room.* | **remember sb in** *Let us remember them in our prayers today.* | **hear** | **answer** *Does God answer our prayers?* | **kneel in** *The congregation knelt in prayer.* | **join in, meet for** *local groups meeting for prayer* | **have** *We had family prayers before breakfast.* | **attend** *Students are required to attend prayers twice a week.*
- PRAYER + NOUN **book** | **mat, rug** | **meeting, service**
- PREP. **at ~** *He spends an hour each day at prayer.* **in ~** *She moved her lips in silent prayer.* | **~ for** *a prayer for peace* **~ of** *I said a prayer of grateful thanks to God.* **~ to**
- PHRASES **the answer to (all) sb's prayers** (= exactly what sb needs) *The letter was the answer to her prayers.*

preacher *noun*

- ADJ. **celebrated, eminent, famous, good, great, leading** | **Baptist, Methodist, etc.** | **evangelical** | **lay** | **local** | **itinerant**
- VERB + PREACHER **hear, listen to**

precaution *noun*

- ADJ. **sensible, wise** | **adequate, proper, reasonable** | **necessary** | **elaborate** | **basic, simple** *You'll be quite safe if you observe certain basic precautions.* | **every** *We take every precaution to ensure that you have a comfortable journey.* | **extra, special** | **fire, safety, security**
- VERB + PRECAUTION **follow, observe, take**
- PREP. **as a ~** *She had to stay in hospital overnight, just as a precaution.* | **~ against** *a precaution against customers who try to leave without paying* **~ for** *Staff are expected to take reasonable precautions for their own safety.* **~ of** *I took the precaution of turning the water supply off first.*

precede *verb*

- ADV. **directly, immediately** *in the moments which immediately preceded the earthquake*

precedence *noun*

- ADJ. **historical**
- VERB + PRECEDENCE **have, take** | **give sb/sth** *You should give your schoolwork precedence.* | **claim** *The French kings claimed precedence over those of Spain.*
- PREP. **~ over** *The needs of the patient take precedence over those of the student doctor.*
- PHRASES **in order of precedence** *The guests were seated strictly in order of precedence.*

precedent *noun*

- ADJ. **bad, dangerous, unfortunate** | **good, important** | **historical** | **judicial, legal**
- VERB + PRECEDENT **serve as** *This case could could serve as a precedent for others against the tobacco companies.* | **have** | **create, establish, provide, set** *This lowering of standards sets a dangerous precedent for future developments.* | **cite, quote** | **find** | **base sth on, use sth as** *The judge based his decision on precedents set during the Middle Ages.* | **follow**
- PREP. **without ~** *The achievements of this period were without precedent in history.* | **~ for** *Many precedents can be found for this decision.*

precious *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **extremely, incredibly, infinitely, very**
- PREP. **to** *You are infinitely precious to me.*

precise *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **absolutely** | **increasingly** | **fairly, quite, reasonably** | **enough, sufficiently** *Are the measurements precise enough?* | **insufficiently** | **legally, mathematically** *You need to use legally precise terms.*
- PREP. **about** *You have to be precise about the numbers.*

precision *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute** | **great, high** *high precision measurement tools* | **analytical, mathematical, military, surgical, technical** *He organized the team with military precision.*

- QUANT. **degree** *Chimps are able to manipulate objects with a high degree of precision.*
- VERB + PRECISION **call for, demand, require** *surgery which requires great precision*
- PRECISION + NOUN **engineering | bombing**
- PREP. **with ~** *These items cannot be dated with any precision.* | **~ in** *a new era of precision in engineering*
- PHRASES **a lack of precision** *Any lack of precision in the contract could give rise to a dispute.*

preconception *noun*

- VERB + PRECONCEPTION **have | fit in with** *We like this approach because it fits in with our own preconceptions.* | **challenge, get away from** *It is important to challenge society's preconceptions about disabled people.*
- PREP. **with/without ~s** *It's important that you come to this task with no preconceptions.* | **~ about** *Most people have preconceptions about old age.* **~ of** *her preconceptions of life in the country*

predicament *noun*

- ADJ. **awful, awkward, dire, worse** *Other companies are in an even worse predicament than ourselves.* | **current, present | financial, personal**
- VERB + PREDICAMENT **be in, find yourself in, get into** *Many young people find themselves in this predicament.* | **place sb in, put sb in | escape (from), get out of** *How were we to escape this awful predicament?* | **solve**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Now I really was in a dire predicament.*

predict *verb*

- ADV. **accurately, correctly, reliably, successfully, with accuracy/certainty** *It is not possible to predict with any certainty what effect this will have.* | **exactly, precisely | confidently | wrongly**
- VERB + PREDICT **be able/unable to, can/could | try to | dare (to)** *Few would have dared to predict such a landslide victory.* | **fail to | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to | be easy to, be possible to | use sth to** *a computer model used to predict future weather patterns* | **allow sb to, enable sb to** *Newton's theories allow us to predict the flight of a cricket ball.*
- PREP. **from** *We can predict from this information what is likely to happen next.*
- PHRASES **be widely predicted** *This result had been widely predicted by the opinion polls.*

predictable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **easily, extremely, highly, very | completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | almost | largely | fairly, pretty, reasonably, relatively | sadly** *England's defeat in the third test match was sadly predictable.*
- PREP. **from** *He asked whether this was predictable from previous performances.*

prediction *noun*

- ADJ. **accurate, correct | dire, gloomy | long-term | reliable, safe | confident | definite, firm | computer | earthquake, weather**
- VERB + PREDICTION **make | confirm, fulfil** *The results of the experiment confirmed their predictions.* | **confound, contradict**
- PREDICTION + VERB **prove sth, turn out to be sth** *Our prediction turns out to be correct.* | **be borne out, come true**
- PREP. **amid ~s** *Six hundred workers there lost their jobs today, amid gloomy predictions that there could be worse to come.* **contrary to a/the ~** *Contrary to almost all predictions, however, the government did not fall.* **despite a/the ~** *Despite earlier dire predictions, shares remained steady.* | **~ about** *I've learnt not to make predictions about the weather.* **~ for** *the government's prediction for unemployment* **~ of** *their predictions of future growth*

prefer *verb*

- ADV. **greatly, much, strongly** *I much prefer the orchestra's 1998 recording of the symphony.* | **infinitely | simply** *You may simply prefer just to sit on the terrace with a cocktail.* | **really** *I would really prefer to teach girls.* | **rather, slightly | certainly** *Egg pasta is certainly preferred by many chefs.* | **clearly, obviously | apparently** *Huge majorities apparently prefer reducing unemployment to fighting inflation.* | **generally, usually | naturally** *Employers naturally prefer candidates with some previous experience of the job.* | **personally | still**
- VERB + PREFER **would** *We can eat out if you like, but I would prefer to stay in.* | **tend to** *Industries still tend to prefer virgin raw materials to recycled ones.* | **seem to**
- PREP. **to** *I prefer his earlier paintings to his later ones.*

preferable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become | remain | consider sth**
- ADV. **far, greatly, infinitely, vastly**
- PREP. **to** *Death was considered vastly preferable to dishonour.*

preference *noun*

- ADJ. **clear, definite, marked, strong | slight | individual, personal** *It's a matter of personal preference.* | **consumer | first, second, etc.** *Local voters gave Harry West first preference.*
- VERB + PREFERENCE **have** *Do you have any particular preference?* | **demonstrate | express, indicate, show, state | give sb** *Preference is given to students who have passed maths and chemistry.* | **receive**
- PREP. **for ~** *I choose motorways when driving, for preference.* **in ~ to** *They bought French planes in preference to British ones.* | **~ as to/with regard to** *He has not expressed a preference as to which school he wants to go to.* **~ between** *people's preferences between brown, white and wholemeal bread* **~ for sth (over sth)** *the government's preference for tax cuts over greater public spending* **~ in** *changing preferences in furniture styles*
- PHRASES **in order of preference** *List the candidates in order of preference.*

pregnancy *noun*

- ADJ. **early | late | full-term, post-term | easy, healthy, normal | difficult** *She had a difficult pregnancy with her first child.* | **teenage | premarital | unplanned, unwanted** *There are thousands of unwanted teenage pregnancies every year.*
- VERB + PREGNANCY **have | avoid, prevent** *taking precautions to avoid pregnancy* | **continue (with), keep** *the difficult decision about whether to continue with a pregnancy* | **terminate** *the right of a woman to terminate her pregnancy*
- PREGNANCY + VERB **be at/go to (full) term**
- PREGNANCY + NOUN **test** *a home pregnancy test kit*
- PREP. **during/in (a/the) ~** *Lower blood pressure is common in early pregnancy.* **throughout (a/the) ~** *You will be tested throughout your pregnancy.*

pregnant *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look | become, fall** (*informal*), **get | get sb, make sb** *He got her pregnant.*
- ADV. **heavily, very**
- PREP. **by** *She was pregnant by a former client.*
- PHRASES **six weeks, three months, etc. pregnant**

prejudice *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, deep-rooted, deep-seated, strong | blatant | serious, unfair** (*both law*) | **personal | old** *It's hard to break down old prejudices.* | **blind, irrational | anti-gay, anti-Catholic, etc. | class, cultural, political, racial, religious, sectarian, sexist**
- VERB + PREJUDICE **have, hold** *We all have prejudices of some kind.* | **air, express** *He sat there airing his personal prejudices.* | **arouse, feed, stir up | appeal to, pander to** *We must not pander to the irrational prejudices of a small minority.* | **confirm | come up against, encounter** *She had never encountered such deep prejudice before.* | **suffer | challenge | overcome | break down, eliminate, eradicate**
- PREP. **~ about** *a book written to challenge prejudices about disabled people* **~ against** *deep-rooted prejudice against homosexuals* **~ among** *prejudice among ignorant people* **~ towards** *prejudice towards immigrants*
- PHRASES **a victim of prejudice**

prejudice *verb*

1 cause sb to have a prejudice
- ADV. **unfairly**
- PREP. **against, in favour of** *Reading newspaper reports had unfairly prejudiced the jury in her favour.*

2 weaken sth/make it less fair
- ADV. **seriously, severely, substantially**
- VERB + PREJUDICE **be likely to** *She did not disclose evidence that was likely to prejudice her client's case*

prejudiced *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **deeply, extremely | racially**
- PREP. **against** *He's deeply prejudiced against women.*

preliminary *noun*

- ADJ. **essential, necessary, useful | usual** *After the usual preliminaries the meeting began.*
- PREP. **as a ~** *The two presidents met today, as a preliminary to resuming the peace talks.* **without preliminaries** *She began speaking intensely, without preliminaries.* | **~ to** *an essential preliminary to serious research*

prelude *noun*

- ADJ. **essential, inevitable, necessary**
- VERB + PRELUDE **consider sth, see sth as**
- PREP. **as a ~** *events held as a prelude to the Christmas festivities* | **~ for** *the prelude for the battles ahead* **~ to** *He considered the strikes a prelude to the great socialist revolution.*

premier *noun*

- ADJ. **acting, deputy | former | British, Chinese, etc. | Conservative, Labour, etc. | state**
- VERB + PREMIER **appoint (sb), appoint sb as, elect (sb), elect sb as, swear sb in as** *She was sworn in as premier on 4 June.* | **succeed sb as, take over as**
- PREP. **as ~** *during his 25 years as Liberal premier*

premises *noun*

- ADJ. **new** *The company is moving to new premises next month.* | **suitable | bigger, large | cramped, modest | city-centre | purpose-built | adjoining, neighbouring | temporary | private, residential | business, church, club, commercial, company, factory, hospital, hotel, industrial, office, retail, school, shop**
- VERB + PREMISES **enter** *The police have the power to enter the premises at any time.* | **find | own | acquire, lease | move to | occupy, use | leave, vacate**
- PREP. **on the ~** *Smoking is strictly forbidden on school premises.*

premium *noun*

1 extra value/price
- ADJ. **high | additional, extra | price**
- VERB + PREMIUM **pay** *Electricity companies pay a premium for renewable energy.* | **charge | place, put**
- PREMIUM + NOUN **price**
- PREP. **at a ~** *Good student accommodation is at a premium* (= difficult to obtain and therefore expensive). | **~ of** *bought at a premium of 40 per cent above the current market price* **~ on** *The company places a high premium on customer loyalty.*

2 payment for insurance
- ADJ. **annual, monthly, regular | high, low** *Intense competition has kept premiums low.* | **insurance**
- VERB + PREMIUM **pay | keep up** *We're struggling to keep up our premiums.* | **increase, raise** *The insurance company has increased our premiums.* | **cut, reduce**
- PREMIUM + VERB **go up, rise | fall, go down**
- PREMIUM + NOUN **payment, rate**
- PREP. **~ for** *the premiums for your pension plan* **~ on** *Premiums on many cars will go up this year.*

premonition *noun*

- ADJ. **shudder**
- VERB + PREMONITION **feel, have**
- PREP. **~ about** *Perhaps he had a premonition about what might happen in London.* **~ of** *I wonder if she had a premonition of her own fate.*

preoccupation *noun*

- ADJ. **current, present, recent | central, chief, main, major** *Their chief preoccupation was how to feed their families.* | **constant, continuing | growing | obsessive**
- PREP. **~ for** *By now this had become a major preoccupation for him.* **~ with** *his growing preoccupation with death*

preoccupied *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become | remain**
- ADV. **deeply, very | completely, entirely, totally | increasingly | a bit, a little, rather**
- PREP. **with** *He was too preoccupied with his own problems to worry about hers.*

preparation *noun*

1 getting sth ready
- ADJ. **careful, thorough | elaborate | adequate | initial** *It is the initial preparation that takes the time.*
- VERB + PREPARATION **need, require** *a dish that requires no elaborate preparation or cooking* | **do** *He's done a lot of preparation for this meeting.*
- PREPARATION + NOUN **time** *This simple dish takes very little preparation time.*
- PREP. **in ~ for** *Get a good night's sleep in preparation for the journey.*

2 **preparations** things done to get sth ready
- ADJ. **elaborate, meticulous, special | secret | necessary | final, last-minute | Christmas, wedding, etc. | military** *military preparations for full-scale action*
- VERB + PREPARATIONS **make** *making the final preparations for the party* | **begin, go ahead with | be busy with | complete, finalize**
- PREPARATIONS + VERB **be in hand, be under way** *Preparations are now in hand to close half the factories.* | **be complete**
- PREP. **~ for** *The family can now go ahead with preparations for the funeral.*

prepare *verb*

- ADV. **properly, well | fully | badly, inadequately, poorly | adequately | carefully, painstakingly | specially** *a table full of specially prepared food*
- VERB + PREPARE **help (sb), help (sb) to | fail to** *He had failed to prepare adequately for the task before him.* | **be easy to, be quick to** *a meal that is very quick and easy to prepare* | **be designed to** *The course is designed to prepare graduates for management careers.*
- PREP. **for** *We all set about preparing for the party.*
- PHRASES **time to prepare (sth)** *I haven't had time to prepare my arguments properly.*

prerequisite *noun*

- ADJ. **essential, important, necessary, vital | first**
- PREP. **~for** *Training is a prerequisite for competence.* **~to** *Recognition is a prerequisite to understanding.*

prerogative *noun*

- ADJ. **exclusive, sole** *Making such decisions is not the sole prerogative of managers.* | **judicial, managerial, royal | personal**
- VERB + PREROGATIVE **enjoy, have** *one of the prerogatives enjoyed by the president* | **exercise, use** *You can of course exercise your prerogative to leave at any time.* | **defend, preserve, protect** *The tsar protected his personal prerogatives.* | **give up, surrender**

prescribe *verb*

1 drugs
- ADV. **legally** *The drug can no longer be legally prescribed.* | **medically, medicinally**
- PREP. **for** *drugs prescribed for high blood pressure* ◇ *This drug is often prescribed for women with heart trouble.*

2 what should/should not be done
- ADV. **narrowly, rigidly, strictly, tightly** *The curriculum is rigidly prescribed from an early age.* ◇ *Everything about her life was strictly prescribed* (= there were strict rules about what she could and could not do).

prescription *noun*

- ADJ. **medical | free** *people who get free prescriptions* | **repeat** *I just get a repeat prescription every week.*
- VERB + PRESCRIPTION **give sb, write (out) | make up** *Would you like to wait while the pharmacist makes up your prescription?*
- PRESCRIPTION + NOUN **charge | drug, medicine**
- PREP. **on ~** *Some drugs are only available on prescription.* | **~for** *the usual prescription for asthma* ◇ *She gave him a prescription for antibiotics.*

presence *noun*

1 being present
- ADJ. **mere** *The mere presence of children in the room is enough to upset him.* | **constant, continued, continuing, permanent | strong** *The company now has a strong presence in Germany.*
- VERB + PRESENCE **indicate, reveal, show** *These chemicals could indicate the presence of water on the planet.* | **acknowledge** *He acknowledged our presence with a nod of his head.* | **detect | grace sb with** (*ironic or humorous*) *How nice of you to grace us with your presence!*
- PREP. **in sb's ~** *He should never have made those remarks in your presence.*
- PHRASES **make your presence felt/known** *She certainly made her presence felt in the boardroom.*

2 number of people
- ADJ. **constant | military, police** *There was a strong police presence throughout the demonstration.*
- VERB + PRESENCE **maintain** *The army maintains a constant presence in the area.*

3 force of personality
- ADJ. **charismatic, commanding, formidable, great, imposing, powerful, strong | stage** *He had a formidable stage presence.*
- VERB + PRESENCE **have**

present *noun*

- ADJ. **anniversary, birthday, Christmas, wedding**
- VERB + PRESENT **buy | get, receive | give sb, send sb | wrap (up) | open, unwrap**
- PREP. **~for** *a present for my daughter* **~from, ~to** *It's a present to us all from Granny.*
- PHRASES **make sb a present of sth** *My nephew loves this bike so I'm going to make him a present of it.*

present *verb*

- ADV. **clearly, well** *The arguments were well researched and clearly presented.* | **attractively, neatly | orally, visually** *The results can be presented visually in the form of a graph.*
- VERB + PRESENT **aim to, attempt to, seek to, try to** *We have tried to present both sides of the debate.* | **be designed to** *Hotel brochures are designed to present the most attractive aspects of the hotel.*
- PREP. **as** *He likes to present himself as a radical politician.* **to** *He presented the information to his colleagues.*

present *adj.*

- VERBS **be | remain**
- ADV. **ever** *the ever present risk of pollution*
- PHRASES **past and present** *a list of all club members, past and present*

presentable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look | make sb** *Could you try and make yourself a little more presentable?*
- ADV. **very | perfectly** *She was not exactly good-looking, but perfectly presentable.* | **quite, reasonably**

presentation *noun*

1 of a gift or prize
- ADJ. **annual | official | special | farewell, retirement**
- VERB + PRESENTATION **make**
- PRESENTATION + NOUN **ceremony, dinner, evening, night** *the school's annual presentation evening*
- PREP. **~to** *The president made a presentation to the businesswoman of the year.*

2 informative talk
- ADJ. **formal | effective | slick | upbeat | business, sales | audio-visual, slide, video**
- VERB + PRESENTATION **give, make**
- PRESENTATION + NOUN **skills | software**
- PREP. **~on** *Candidates have to give a short presentation on a subject of their choice.*

presenter *noun*

- ADJ. **radio, television/TV | BBC, ITV, etc. | programme, sports** *a BBC sports presenter*

⇨ Note at JOB

preservation *noun*

- ADJ. **environmental | building, railway, etc.**
- PRESERVATION + NOUN **order** *The council has placed a preservation order on the building.*
- PHRASES **a state of preservation** *Most of the buildings are in an excellent state of preservation.*

preservative *noun*

- ADJ. **food, wood | artificial** *Our products contain no artificial preservatives or colourings.*
- VERB + PRESERVATIVE **apply, treat sth with** *Make sure the panels are treated with a wood preservative.*

preserve *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, jealously, lovingly, zealously** *She carefully preserved all his letters.*
- VERB + PRESERVE **seek to, try to | be anxious to, want to, wish to** *We were anxious to preserve the original character of the house.* | **help (to)** *taking action to help preserve fish stocks* | **fight to** *campaigners fighting to preserve a historic railway line* | **be designed to** *The Act contained provisions designed to preserve the status quo.* | **be important to**
- PREP. **as** *The prison is preserved as a tourist attraction.* **for** *The collection has been sold to the British Museum where it will be preserved for the nation.* **from** *an attempt to preserve the corpse from decomposition*
- PHRASES **an attempt to preserve sth, beautifully/exquisitely/finely/perfectly/superbly/well preserved** *They were thrilled to discover a perfectly preserved specimen of Roman pottery.* **be preserved intact** *The bones had all been preserved intact.* **be worth preserving** *You need to say why the building is worth preserving.* **preserve sth for future generations/posterity**

presidency *noun*

- ADJ. **directly-elected | executive, federal**
- VERB + PRESIDENCY **be nominated for, run for, stand for | be elected to | assume, take on/over | hold** *She held the presidency of the association for three years.*
- PREP. **into sb's ~** *Three years into his presidency, he is more popular than ever.* **under sb's ~** *under the presidency of George W. Bush.*

president *noun*

- ADJ. **acting, caretaker, honorary, interim, provisional | deputy, vice | elect** *the president elect, Michael Roberts* | **incoming, outgoing | incumbent | former, past, previous | lame-duck | civilian, military | federal, national, state | club, company, party, university**
- VERB + PRESIDENT **appoint, appoint sb (as), elect, elect sb (as), name sb (as), swear sb in as** *He was sworn in as president on August 31.* | **serve as | impeach**
- PRESIDENT + VERB **veto sth | intervene (in sth)**

press *noun*

1 media
- ADJ. **foreign, international, local, national, provincial | gutter, popular, quality, tabloid | financial, music | free** *A free press is fundamental to democracy.*
- PRESS + NOUN **release, statement** *He issued a press statement insisting on his innocence.* | **coverage, report** *extensive press coverage of the event* | **cuttings** *He kept a scrapbook containing press cuttings of his concerts.* | **officer | photographer | agency | ad, advertisement | campaign | freedom**
- PREP. **in the ~** *There was no mention of the incident in the national press.*
- PHRASES **get/have a good/bad, etc. press** *His latest novel didn't get a very good press* (= was not praised in the media).

2 machine for printing
- ADJ. **printing**
- VERB + PRESS **go to** *The newspaper goes to press at 6 o'clock.*
- PRESS + VERB **roll** *The presses are already rolling.*
- PREP. **in ~** *Their new book is in press.*
- PHRASES **hot off the press** *We've just received a copy of her latest book, hot off the press.*

press *verb*

1 push sth firmly
- ADV. **firmly, hard** *She pressed down hard on the gas pedal.* | **gently, lightly | close/closely** *He pressed up closer against the wall, terrified of being seen.* | **back, down, forward, together, up** *The crowd pressed forward.* ◇ *She pressed her lips together.*
- PREP. **against** *She pressed her face against the window.* **into** *Bella pressed her face into the pillow.* **on** *She pressed on the doorbell.* **to** *He pressed a finger gently to her lips.*
- PHRASES **press sth flat/open/shut** *He pressed the lid firmly shut.*

2 try to persuade sb
- ADV. **strongly** *In the interview he strongly pressed his point of view.* | **consistently, continually, repeatedly | further | successfully**
- VERB + PRESS **continue to**
- PREP. **for** *The party will continue to press the case for a new electoral system.* **on** *I did not press him further on the issue.*

3 iron sth
- PHRASES **immaculately/neatly pressed** *his immaculately pressed suit*

PHRASAL VERB

press on
- ADV. **blindly | boldly**
- PREP. **with** *They pressed boldly on with their plan.*
- PHRASES **press on regardless** *The weather was dreadful but we pressed on regardless.*

press conference *noun*

- ADJ. **joint | formal | impromptu, informal | concluding** *At the concluding press conference, both leaders said that the talks had been constructive.* | **post-match, post-summit, etc.**
- VERB + PRESS CONFERENCE **call | arrange, organize, plan | give, hold | tell** *The chairman told a press conference of the forthcoming merger.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *The prime minister outlined the privatization plans at a press conference.* **during/in a/the ~** *The announcement was made in an impromptu press conference at the airport.*

pressure *noun*

1 force produced by pressing
- ADJ. **gentle, light | firm | downward**
- VERB + PRESSURE **apply, put | reduce**

2 force of a gas or liquid
- ADJ. **high, low | air, blood, water** *an instrument for measuring blood pressure* | **atmospheric, barometric**
- PRESSURE + VERB **build up, increase, rise | ease, fall**

3 cause of worry
- ADJ. **considerable, constant, intolerable, undue, unrelenting | commercial, competitive, economic, financial, political, social** *The economic pressures on small businesses are intense.*
- VERB + PRESSURE **place/put sb under | cope with, withstand | escape, get away from** *It's an ideal place in which to relax and escape the pressures of modern life.* | **reduce**
- PRESSURE - VERB **build up, increase**
- PREP. **under ~** *He's felt under pressure since his wife had the operation.* | **~ on** *There's a lot of pressure on the soldiers preparing for battle.*
- PHRASES **pressure of work** *The holiday was a welcome relief from the pressure of work.*

4 attempt to persuade/influence sb

- ADJ. **enormous, great, intense, strong, tremendous** *There is intense pressure on her to resign.* | **growing, increasing, mounting** | **popular** *The government bowed to popular pressure and repealed the law.* | **peer, peer-group** *She started smoking because of peer pressure.*
- VERB + PRESSURE **bring to bear, exert, place/put (sb under)** *This concession would not have happened but for the pressure that was brought to bear on the authorities.* ◇ *My parents never put any pressure on me to get a job.* | **be brought under, be under, come under, face** *Hospital staff are coming under pressure to work longer hours.* | **resist, withstand** | **bow to, give in to, respond to** *The editor bowed to pressure from his staff, and the article was suppressed.*
- PRESSURE + VERB **intensify, mount**
- PRESSURE + NOUN **group**
- PREP. **under ~** *Management is under pressure to set an example on pay restraint.* | **~ for** *pressure for change in the country's economy* **~ from** *pressure from religious groups* **~ on** *pressure on foreign diplomats*

prestige *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, high, immense** *Winning the prize carries immense prestige.* | **low** | **international, national** | **personal** | **military, political, social**
- VERB + PRESTIGE **enjoy, have** *an international company that enjoys immense prestige* | **lack** | **acquire, derive, gain, get** | **accord sb/sth, give sb/sth** *Different jobs are accorded different levels of prestige.* | **bring, carry** | **lose** | **rise in** | **boost, enhance, increase, raise** | **damage, lower** *The royal couple's prestige was damaged by the allegations.*
- PREP. **~ among/with** *the party's prestige among the public* **~ within** *The post carried great prestige within the police force.*
- PHRASES **a loss of prestige** *Doctors have suffered a loss of prestige following a spate of scandals.* **a matter of prestige** *Wearing designer clothes is a matter of personal prestige for many teenagers.*

prestigious *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *She won a highly prestigious award.*

presume *verb*

- ADV. **rightly, wrongly** *I had presumed wrongly that Jenny would be there.* | **reasonably** | **automatically** | **conclusively** *(law)*

presumption *noun*

- ADJ. **strong** | **general** *There is a general presumption that fatty foods are bad for your heart.*
- PREP. **~ about** *The argument is based on certain presumptions about human nature.* **~ against** *the presumption against changes in the common law* **~ of** *a strong presumption of guilt*

pretence *noun*

- ADJ. **elaborate** *It was all an elaborate pretence.*
- VERB + PRETENCE **keep up, maintain, sustain** *I don't know how long I can keep up this pretence.* | **abandon, drop, give up**
- PRETENCE + VERB **be over** *Now that the pretence was over, he could tell them what he really thought.*
- PREP. **under the ~ of** *He tried to get close to her under the pretence of examining the pictures on the wall.* | **~ at** *His pretence at friendliness fooled no one.* **~ of** *He was hanged without even the pretence of a proper trial.*
- PHRASES **make a/little/no pretence** *I make no pretence to be an expert on the subject.* **by/under false pretences** *obtaining money under false pretences*

pretend *verb*

- ADV. **otherwise** *You know what this is all about, Natasha. Why pretend otherwise?*
- VERB + PRETEND **can/could no longer** | **try to** | **be dishonest to, be idle to, be ridiculous to, be useless to** *It's useless to pretend that we might still win.*
- PREP. **to** *He pretended to his boss that he'd written the article.*
- PHRASES **go on pretending** *I can't go on pretending any longer.* **just/only pretending** *Maria knew he was only pretending.* **let's pretend** *Let's pretend it never happened.* **stop pretending, there's no point in pretending**

pretext *noun*

- VERB + PRETEXT **give sb, provide (sb with)** | **find, invent** *He considered inventing some pretext for calling her.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *He disappeared into his study on the pretext that he had work to do there.* **under a/the ~** *Under the pretext of checking her identity, the man had copied down her credit card details.* | **~ for** *He used his research as a pretext for travelling to Hungary.*
- PHRASES **at/on the slightest pretext** *He keeps popping into my office on the slightest pretext.*

pretty *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look**
- ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, ravishingly, really, strikingly, very, wonderfully** | **almost** | **quite, rather** | **undeniably**

prevail *verb*

- ADV. **always** *Her happy outlook always prevailed.* | **eventually, finally, in the end, ultimately**
- VERB + PREVAIL **be likely to** | **must, ought to** *Common sense must prevail in the end.*
- PREP. **against** *The wishes of 20 million people ought to prevail against those of 200 thousand.* **over** *His view eventually prevailed over theirs.*

prevent *verb*

- ADV. **effectively, successfully** *This new legislation effectively prevents us from trading.* | **forcibly, physically**
- VERB + PREVENT **be able/unable to, can/could** *No one can prevent you from attending this meeting.* | **attempt to, seek to, take action/steps to, try to** | **help (to)** *A good sun cream will help prevent sunburn.* | **be designed to** | **be/do nothing to** *There was nothing to prevent him setting up in business on the premises.* ◇ *The whole affair is an outrage and the authorities have done nothing to prevent it.*
- PREP. **from** *They took action to prevent the disease from spreading.*
- PHRASES **aimed at preventing sth** *new measures aimed at preventing accidents* **action/measures to prevent sth, an attempt to prevent sth, in order to prevent sth** *Action must be swift in order to prevent further damage.*

preventable *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **entirely** *These injuries are entirely preventable.* | **largely**

prevention *noun*

- ADJ. **accident, crime, drug, fire, flood, pollution** *a*

drug prevention programme | **primary, secondary, tertiary** (all used when talking about health care)
- PREVENTION + NOUN **programme, scheme, strategy** *a crime prevention scheme*

preview *noun*

- ADJ. **press** *a press preview of a new film* | **sneak** *Journalists have been given a sneak preview of the singer's latest album.*
- VERB + PREVIEW **get, have** | **see** | **give sb**
- PREVIEW + NOUN **audience** | **theatre**

prey *noun*

- ADJ. **easy** *Teenagers are easy prey for unscrupulous drug dealers.* | **ideal**
- VERB + PREY **chase, hunt for, look for, pursue, stalk** | **capture, pounce on** *a cat pouncing on its prey* | **kill**
- PREP. **~ for** *The young deer are ideal prey for the leopard.* **~ to** (*figurative*) *She was prey to all kinds of conflicting emotions.*
- PHRASES **a beast/bird of prey, be/fall prey to sth** (*figurative*) *The new government has fallen prey to corruption and fraud.*

price *noun*

- ADJ. **exorbitant, high, inflated, prohibitive, steep** | **low** | **bargain, budget** *designer clothes at bargain prices* | **attractive, fair, reasonable, right** *We sell quality tools at the right price.* | **good** *I managed to get a good price for my old car.* | **average** | **asking, purchase** *What's the asking price for this house?* ◇ *You need to pay a deposit of 10 per cent of the purchase price of the property.* | **retail, sale, selling** | **cost** *They are selling off summer shoes at cost price.* | **full, half** *Children travel half price until age ten.* | **market** *This website tells you the market price of all makes of second-hand car.* | **admission** *admission prices at the museum* | **consumer** | **commodity, food, house, land, property, share** | **electricity, energy, fuel, oil, petrol**
- VERB + PRICE **command, fetch, go for** *Property in the area is now fetching ridiculously high prices.* | **give sb, quote sb** *I got a number of suppliers to quote me their best prices.* | **charge, set** | **increase, push up, raise** | **bring down, cut, lower, mark down, push down, reduce, slash** | **go up in, increase in, rise in** *Oil is set to go up in price.* | **come down in** | **range in, vary in** *These computers range in price from £1 300 to £2 000.* | **undercut**
- PRICE + VERB **go up, rise, shoot up, skyrocket, soar** *House prices went up by 5 per cent last year.* ◇ *Prices soared during the war.* | **drop, fall, go down, slump** *If prices slump further, the farmers will starve.* | **go from … to …, range from … to …, start at** *Prices go from $30 for the standard model to $150 for the deluxe version.*
- PRICE + NOUN **level, range** | **increase, rise** | **cut** | **change, movement** | **war** | **tag** *I got a shock when I looked at the price tag.* | **list** | **index** *the share price index*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *Food is available, at a price* (= at a high price). ◇ *I can't afford it at that price.* **in ~** *Cigarettes have remained stable in price for some time.*
- PHRASES **a drop/a fall/a reduction in price, an increase/a rise in price, pay a heavy price (for sth)** *The team paid a heavy price for its lack of preparation.* **place/put a price on sth** *You can't put a price on happiness.* **the price of freedom/success, etc.** (= the unpleasant things you must suffer to have freedom, success, etc.), **a small price to pay (for sth)** *The cost of a policy premium is a small price to pay for peace of mind.*

⇨ Note at PER CENT (for more verbs)

price *verb* be priced

- ADV. **highly** | **attractively, competitively, economically, fairly, moderately, modestly, realistically, reasonably, sensibly** *a wide range of competitively priced office furniture* | **accordingly** *This is considered a luxury item and is priced accordingly.*
- PREP. **at** *The car is priced at $60 000.* **between** *Tickets for the concert are priced between £15 and £35.* **from, to** *The kits are priced from £8.50 to £20.*
- PHRASES **be priced high/low** *The house was priced much too high.*

pride *noun*

1 feeling of being proud of sb/sth
- ADJ. **fierce, great**
- VERB + PRIDE **feel, have, swell with** *They have a fierce pride in their traditions.* ◇ *He swelled with pride as he held the trophy.* | **express**
- PREP. **with ~** *I wear my policeman's uniform with pride.* ◇ *'My daughter's a writer,' he added with pride.* | **~ in** *She expressed pride in her child's achievement.*
- PHRASES **a cause/matter for pride** *Their reputation for fairness is a matter for pride.* **a source of pride, take (a) pride in sth** *She takes great pride in her work.*

2 self-respect
- ADJ. **great** | **civic, family, local, national, personal, professional** | **dented, hurt, injured, wounded** *He was nursing his hurt pride.* | **foolish, stubborn** *It was foolish pride that prevented me from believing her.*
- VERB + PRIDE **have** *I don't want your money—I have my pride, you know!* | **hurt** *I didn't mean to hurt your pride.* | **restore, salvage** *We want to restore pride in our public services.* ◇ *They managed to salvage some pride with a late goal.* | **swallow** *She swallowed her pride and phoned him.*
- PREP. **out of ~** *She refused their help out of pride.* **through ~** *It would be stupid to refuse through pride.*
- PHRASES **a matter of pride** *It is a matter of pride for him that he has never accepted money from his family.* **a sense of pride** *They have a strong sense of pride in their work.* **with your pride intact** *She refused his offer tactfully, allowing him to go away with his pride intact.*

priest *noun*

1 in Christianity
- ADJ. **local, parish, village** | **celibate** | **married** | **woman** | **Anglican, (Roman) Catholic, Jesuit, etc.**
- VERB + PRIEST **become, be ordained (as)**
- PRIEST + VERB **celebrate sth, officiate (at sth)** *the priest who was celebrating Mass*

2 in some other religions
- ADJ. **chief, high** *a ceremony led by the High Priest* ◇ (*figurative*) *He was considered the high priest of finance at that time.* | **temple** | **Brahmin, Buddhist, etc.**

prime minister *noun*

- ADJ. **deputy** | **acting, caretaker, interim, transitional** | **incumbent, present** | **former, previous** | **outgoing** | **strong** | **beleaguered** *The beleaguered prime minister is coming under yet more pressure.* | **Conservative, Labour, etc.**
- VERB + PRIME MINISTER **appoint, appoint sb (as), elect, elect sb (as)** | **serve as** *He served briefly as prime minister from 1920 to 1921.* (For more verbs see the entry for **minister**.)
- PREP. **under a/the ~** *She held office under two different prime ministers.*

principal *noun*

- ADJ. **college, school**

⇨ Note at JOB

principle *noun*

1 basic general rule

- ADJ. **basic, broad, central, fundamental, general** *the basic principles of car maintenance* | **cardinal, essential, key** | **universal** | **democratic, legal, market, political, scientific, theoretical**
- VERB + PRINCIPLE **establish, formulate, lay down** | **apply** | **explain**
- PRINCIPLE + VERB **apply** *This principle applies to all kinds of selling.* | **underlie sth, underpin sth** *the principles underlying Western philosophy*
- PREP. **in ~** *I agree with you in principle, but we'll need to discuss the details.* | **~ behind** *She went on to explain the principles behind what she was doing.*

2 rule for good behaviour

- ADJ. **high** | **guiding** | **Christian** | **moral** *He was a man of high moral principles.*
- VERB + PRINCIPLE **betray, compromise** *I refuse to compromise my principles by eating meat.* | **adhere to, stick to** *She sticks to the principle that everyone should be treated equally.*
- PREP. **against your ~s** *Eating meat was against her principles.* **on ~** *She's opposed to abortion on principle.*
- PHRASES **a matter of principle** *They reject the proposal as a matter of principle.* **a person of principle** (= a person with high moral standards)

print *noun*

- ADJ. **large** | **fine, small** *Always read the small print in a contract before signing.* | **clear** | **bold**
- PRINT + NOUN **journalist, worker** | **industry, union** | **run** *The initial print run for her book was 6 000 copies.*
- PREP. **in ~** *All her books are still in print.* **out of ~** *The shop specializes in out-of-print books.*

print *verb*

- ADV. **beautifully** *The book is beautifully printed on good quality paper.* | **badly** | **correctly** *I couldn't get the graphics to print correctly.* | **clearly** | **indelibly** (*figurative*) *The incident was indelibly printed in her memory.* | **privately** *She had the memoir privately printed in a limited edition.* | **specially** *We had the T-shirts specially printed with the firm's logo.*
- PREP. **from** *printing from a file* **in** *The message was printed in blue ink.* **on** *a leaflet printed on recycled paper* **with** *a dress printed with blue flowers*

printer *noun*

1 person/company that prints books, etc.

- ADJ. **book** | **lithographic** | **commercial** | **master** | **jobbing**
- PRINTER + VERB **print sth, run sth off** *The printer has run off 2 000 copies of the leaflet.*

⇨ Note at JOB

2 machine

- ADJ. **black-and-white, colour** | **computer** | **desktop** | **bubblejet, daisy wheel, dot matrix, inkjet, laser, line, page** | **compatible**
- VERB + PRINTER **control, drive** | **connect** *Connect the printer to your PC with a printer cable.*
- PRINTER + VERB **print (sth), work** *The printer won't print for some reason.*
- PRINTER + NOUN **cable** | **port** | **ribbon** | **driver** | **icon**

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

priority *noun*

- ADJ. **high, main, major, number one, top** | **first, immediate, urgent** *Getting food, medicine and blankets to flood victims is the most urgent priority.* | **low** *Material possessions have always been a low priority for Mike.*
- VERB + PRIORITY **choose, decide on, determine, identify, sort out** *You need to sort out your priorities before making a decision about the future.* | **get, have, take** *When hospital funds are being allocated children take priority.* | **give sb/sth** *The government is giving priority to school leavers in its job-creation programme.*
- PREP. **~ over** *Her family takes priority over her work.*
- PHRASES **a list of priorities, order of priority** *List the tasks in order of priority.*

prison *noun*

- ADJ. **local** | **overcrowded** | **high-security, maximum-security, top-security** | **closed** | **open** *Open prisons prepare prisoners for life back in the community.* | **private** | **women's** | **debtors'** (*historical*) | **military**
- VERB + PRISON **go to** *He went to prison for tax evasion.* | **put sb in, send sb to, throw sb into** *She was sent to prison for leaking state secrets.* ◇ *He was immediately seized and thrown into prison.* | **be discharged from, be released from, come out of, get out of** *When did he get out of prison?* | **escape from** *A dangerous criminal has escaped from a high-security prison.* | **avoid, escape** *You only escaped prison* (= escaped being sent to prison) *because of your previous good character.* | **face** *She was told by magistrates she could now face prison.*
- PRISON + NOUN **sentence, term** | **cell, hospital** | **conditions** | **population** | **authorities, governor, inmate, officer, staff, warder** | **service, system**
- PREP. **at a/the~** *The police are investigating disturbances at the prison.* **in (a/the) ~** *How long has her father been in prison?* ◇ *There have been riots in the prison.*

prisoner *noun*

- ADJ. **virtual** *Without a wheelchair, she is a virtual prisoner in her own home.* | **political** | **life, life-sentence, long-term** | **short-term** | **remand** | **condemned, convicted, sentenced** | **escaped** | **model** *He was a model prisoner, and was released after serving only half his five-year sentence.*
- VERB + PRISONER **capture, take** *They had captured over 100 prisoners.* ◇ *Many soldiers were taken prisoner.* | **hold, keep** *They were kept prisoner for eight months in a tiny flat.* | **free, release**
- PHRASES **a prisoner of conscience** *The former prisoner of conscience was elected president of the new democracy.* **a prisoner of war**

privacy *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, total** | **individual, personal**
- VERB + PRIVACY **preserve, protect, respect** | **disturb, intrude on, invade, violate** *I hope I'm not intruding on your privacy.*
- PREP. **in ~** *I want to be left in privacy.* **in the ~ of** *She longed to be in the privacy of her own room.* | **~ from** *privacy from prying eyes*
- PHRASES **an intrusion/invasion of privacy** *These phone calls are a gross invasion of privacy.* **an intrusion on (sb's) privacy**

privatization *noun*

- ADJ. **large-scale, mass, wholesale** | **partial** | **electricity, rail, water, etc.**
- PRIVATIZATION + NOUN **plan, programme, proposal**
- PREP. **under ~** *Several railway lines were closed under privatization.*

privilege *noun*

1 special right

- ADJ. **exclusive, special** *Club members have special privileges, like free use of the pool.* | **class** | **diplomatic**
- VERB + PRIVILEGE **enjoy, exercise, have** | **accord**

sb, give sb, grant sb | **abuse** *He was accused of abusing his diplomatic privileges.* | **revoke, withdraw**

2 opportunity to do sth pleasant

- ADJ. **enormous, great, rare, real** *It is a great privilege to be attending this conference.* | **doubtful, dubious** *I was given the dubious privilege of organizing the summer fair.*
- VERB + PRIVILEGE **have** *She had the rare privilege of a viewing of his private art collection.* | **give sb**

privileged *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel** | **consider sb/yourself** *I consider myself highly privileged to have this opportunity.*
- ADV. **highly, specially, very** | **absolutely** | **quite, relatively** | **financially, socially** *She came from a financially privileged background.*

prize *noun*

- ADJ. **big, great, prestigious** | **special** | **coveted** *She was the first woman to win this coveted prize.* | **glittering** *He strove for the glittering prizes of politics.* | **first, top** | **runner-up, second** | **consolation** | **booby** *The booby prize was awarded to the worst singer in the competition.* | **cash, money**
- VERB + PRIZE **award (sb), give (sb)** | **present** *The prize was presented by the mayor.* | **get, receive, take, win** | **accept**
- PRIZE + VERB **go to sb/sth** *The prize went to the grey long-haired cat.* | **be worth sth** *a prize worth over £3 000*
- PRIZE + NOUN **winner** (also **prizewinner**) | **money** | **draw**
- PREP. **~for** *He won the Nobel Prize for Literature.*

prize *verb*

- PREP. **above** *a precious thing to be prized above all else* **as** *The library is prized as the finest of its kind in England.* **for** *The berries are prized for their healing properties.*
- PHRASES **highly/much prized** *two fruits that are much prized in Madeira*

probability *noun*

- ADJ. **high, real, strong** *There is a high probability that it will snow tonight.* | **greater, increased** | **low**
- QUANT. **degree** *We can say with a high degree of probability that the poem was written by Shakespeare.*
- VERB + PROBABILITY **have** | **increase** | **reduce** | **assess, calculate, judge**
- PREP. **~of** *This surgical procedure has a high probability of success.*
- PHRASES **in all probability** *In all probability she wouldn't come even if we invited her.* **on a balance of probabilities** *The coroner thought that on the balance of probabilities, the pilot had suffered a stroke just before the crash.*

probable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** | **quite** | **equally** *The two outcomes are equally probable.*

probation *noun*

- ADJ. **give sb, place sb on, put sb on, sentence sb to** *He was placed on probation for two years.* ◇ *She was sentenced to a year's probation.* | **release sb on**
- PROBATION + NOUN **order** *He was under a probation order for attacking a photographer.* | **officer** | **service** | **hostel** | **period** *Once your probation period is successfully completed, you will be offered a contract.*
- PREP. **on ~** *The judge put her on probation for a year.* ◇ *He joined the company on six months' probation.*

probe *verb*

- ADV. **deep/deeply** (*figurative*) *probing deeper and deeper into the secrets of the universe* | **further** | **gently**
- PREP. **for** *using its long beak to probe for worms* **into** (*figurative*) *The police were probing into her personal life.* **with** *He probed the mud with his knife.*

problem *noun*

1 sth that causes difficulties

- ADJ. **acute, big, enormous, grave, great, serious** *Our greatest problem is the lack of funds.* | **little, minor, petty** | **complex, complicated, difficult, knotty, thorny** | **growing** | **basic, central, main, major** | **common** | **pressing, urgent** | **immediate** | **insoluble, insuperable, insurmountable, intractable** *Depression is a natural feeling if your problems seem intractable.* | **long-standing, long-term, perennial** | **practical** | **technical** | **attitude, behavioural, emotional, psychological** *His teachers say he has an attitude problem.* | **personal** | **health, physical, sexual** | **back, heart, knee** | **drink, drug** | **social** | **housing** | **economic, financial** *They sold their car to ease their financial problems.* | **environmental** | **legal**
- VERB + PROBLEM **be, pose, present (sb with)** *Inadequate resources pose a problem for all members of staff.* | **have** | **bring, cause, create** *Success brings its own problems.* ◇ *Staff shortages cause problems for the organization.* | **be beset with, be confronted by/with, be dogged by, be faced with, be fraught with, confront, encounter, face, run into** *He has been faced with all manner of problems in his new job.* ◇ *The scheme has been fraught with problems from the start.* | **raise** *She raised the problem of falling sales at the last meeting.* | **identify** | **consider, debate, discuss, look at/into** | **address, approach, attack, combat, come/get to grips with, grapple with, handle, tackle** *The next meeting will address the problem of truancy.* | **avoid, circumvent, find a way around/round, get around/round** | **clear up, cure, deal with, overcome, resolve, solve** *He had to undergo surgery to cure the problem with his knee.* | **alleviate, ease, reduce** | **exacerbate** | **analyse, explore**
- PROBLEM + VERB **arise, come up, occur** *problems arising from poor ventilation* | **exist** | **persist, remain** *If the problem persists you should see a doctor.* ◇ *The basic problem remains the lack of housing available.* | **confront sb, face sb** | **lie in sth** *The problem lies in the lack of communication between managers and staff.*
- PROBLEM + NOUN **area** | **child**
- PREP. **~ about** *I didn't imagine there would be a problem about getting tickets.* **~ for** *The rail strike is a problem for all commuters.* **~ of** *the problem of poverty* **~ with** *Have you got a problem with her?*
- PHRASES **an approach to a problem, the crux/heart/root of the problem** *We need to get to the root of the problem before we can solve it.* **a remedy/solution to a problem, the scale of a problem**

2 question to be solved

- ADJ. **complicated, difficult** | **easy, simple** | **mathematical** *solving simple mathematical problems*
- VERB + PROBLEM **do, find the answer to, solve** *I have five problems to do for homework.*
- PROBLEM + NOUN **solving** *This kind of activity develops the children's problem-solving skills.*

procedure *noun*

- ADJ. **complex, complicated** | **simple, straightforward** | **correct, normal, proper, standard, usual** *There are standard procedures for dismissing staff.* | **agreed, established** | **special** | **administrative, appeals, application, assessment, complaints, court, criminal, disciplinary, emergency, parliamentary, safety, scientific, selection, surgical** *a minor surgical procedure*
- PROCEDURE + NOUN **adopt, follow, use** *Did you fol-*

low the emergency procedure when you heard the alarm? | **establish** *A straightforward complaints procedure must be established from the outset.*
- PREP. **under a/the ~** *under a procedure established by legislation* | **~ for** *the correct procedure for hiring staff*

proceed *verb*

- ADV. **apace, quickly, rapidly** *Work is now proceeding apace.* | **slowly** | **carefully, cautiously, with caution** *It will be necessary to proceed with caution.* | **smoothly, uneventfully** | **directly** *In some cases appeals may proceed directly from the High Court to the House of Lords.* | **further**
- VERB + PROCEED **be able to** | **decide to, intend to, wish to** | **allow sb/sth to, enable sb/sth to** *This project cannot be allowed to proceed.* | **instruct sb to** *I will instruct my solicitor to proceed with the preparation of draft contracts.*
- PREP. **along** *Proceed along the Botley Road.* **down, through, to** *students who wish to proceed to university* **with** *She decided not to proceed with the treatment.*
- PHRASES **proceed on the basis of sth** *The council must proceed on the basis of the vote.*

proceedings *noun*

- ADJ. **court, criminal, judicial, legal** | **bankruptcy, divorce, extradition, impeachment, libel** | **appeal, civil, committal, summary**
- VERB + PROCEEDINGS **bring, institute, take** | **begin, commence, start**
- PROCEEDINGS + VERB **begin, commence**
- PREP. **in ~** *decisions made in court proceedings* | **~ against** *She is bringing divorce proceedings against her husband.* **~ before** *in appeal proceedings before a tribunal* **~ between** *proceedings between the four parties involved*

proceeds *noun*

- ADJ. **total** | **gross** | **net** | **sale**
- VERB + PROCEEDS **use** *The proceeds will be used to improve the school playground.* | **donate**
- PROCEEDS + VERB **go to sth** *All the proceeds will go to the local pensioners' club.*
- PREP. **on the ~** *I sold my car and I'm planning a long holiday on the proceeds.* **with the ~** *They bought a new minibus with the proceeds from the auction.* | **~ from**
- PHRASES **your share of the proceeds** *She bought a small flat with her share of the proceeds.*

process *noun*

- ADJ. **gradual, lengthy, long, slow** | **constant, continuous** | **complex, complicated, difficult** | **natural** | **due** *the due process of law* | **painful** *Removing the splinters from the wound was a long and painful process.* | **consultation, consultative, decision-making, management, planning** | **cognitive, creative, learning, mental** *Teachers are trained to stimulate the child's cognitive processes.* | **assessment, selection** | **democratic, electoral, political** *Churches are taking a key role in the democratic process.* | **chemical, industrial, manufacturing, production** | **ageing, biological, evolutionary, physical** | **judicial, legal** | **peace** *a stalemate in the peace process* | **historical, social**
- VERB + PROCESS **go through** *Each time we have to go through the whole decision-making process again.* | **accelerate, speed up, stimulate** *Excessive exposure to sunlight speeds up the ageing process of the skin.*
- PROCESS + VERB **take place** *The selection process takes place over a period of two weeks.*
- PREP. **~ for** *a legal process for dealing with defrauders* **~ of** *the process of change*
- PHRASES **a stage in/of the process**

process *verb*

- ADV. **efficiently** | **quickly** | **automatically** | **routinely**
- PREP. **for** *The plant is then processed for dye.* **into** *The berries are processed into juice or sauce.*
- PHRASES **highly processed** *highly processed foods*

procession *noun*

- ADJ. **grand, great, large, long** | **little, small** | **public, street** | **slow, solemn, stately** | **colourful** | **ceremonial** | **triumphal** | **constant, endless, never-ending** *(figurative) We've had an endless procession of new secretaries through the office since Amy left.* | **torchlight** | **funeral, religious, wedding**
- VERB + PROCESSION **head, lead** *The mayor of the town led the procession to the central square.*
- PROCESSION + VERB **make its way, move, pass, wind (its way)** *The funeral procession moved slowly down the avenue.* ◇ *The solemn procession wound its way through the narrow streets.* | **leave, move off, set off**
- PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *The children marched in procession behind the band.* | **~ of** *a procession of circus performers*

proclaim *verb*

- ADV. **loudly** | **formally, officially** | **openly, publicly** | **proudly** | **unilaterally** *The district unilaterally proclaimed its independence from the national government.*
- VERB + PROCLAIM **seem to** *His classic boyish looks seemed to proclaim his good humour and openness.*
- PREP. **as** *Everyone is proclaiming him as the next president.* **to** *proclaiming her innocence to the world*

proclamation *noun*

- ADJ. **official, public, royal**
- VERB + PROCLAMATION **issue, make**
- PROCLAMATION + VERB **forbid sth, prohibit sth**
- PREP. **by ~** *The government restricted the use of water by proclamation.*

produce *noun*

- ADJ. **fresh** | **local** | **seasonal** | **agricultural, animal, dairy, farm, garden, organic, primary** *fresh farm produce*
- VERB + PRODUCE **grow** | **export, market, sell**

produce *verb*

- ADV. **domestically, locally** *fruit and vegetables that are produced locally* | **commercially** | **organically** *organically produced food*
- VERB + PRODUCE **be able/unable to, can/could** | **be expected to, be likely to** *Which method is likely to produce the best results?* | **combine to** *All of these processes combine to produce a particular form of language.* | **be designed to** | **use sth to** *The technology can be used to produce interactive educational programs.*
- PREP. **from** *The wine is produced from Chardonnay grapes.*

producer *noun*

1 sb/sth that makes/grows sth
- ADJ. **big, large, leading, major** *one of the world's largest meat producers* | **small, small-scale** | **efficient** *a very efficient wine producer* | **domestic, local** | **foreign** | **private** | **specialist** *specialist producers of high-quality British beef* | **agricultural** | **milk, oil, software, steel, etc.**

2 organizes a play, film, etc.
- ADJ. **film, radio, television/TV** | **BBC, Hollywood, etc.** | **independent** *commissioning programmes from independent producers* | **executive** | **assistant, associate**
- PHRASES **the role of producer** *She was keen to take on the role of producer.*

⇨ Note at JOB

product *noun*

1 sth that is made or formed

• ADJ. **good, right** *We have a good product, but it needs to be marketed better.* ◇ *the right product in the right place at the right time* | **innovative** | **quality** | **everyday** | **natural** | **manufactured** | **finished** *the manufacture of chocolate from cocoa bean to the finished product* | **commercial, consumer** | **household, industrial** *everyday household products* | **waste** | **agricultural, cereal, dairy, food, meat** | **pharmaceutical** | **software** | **beauty**

• VERB + PRODUCT **buy** | **sell** | **market, promote** | **develop** | **launch**

• PRODUCT + NOUN **area, category, group, line, range, sector, type** | **design** | **development** | **package** | **price** | **quality**

• PHRASES **a range of products** *a wide range of beauty products*

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

2 result

• ADJ. **end, final** *A complicated string of chemical reactions leads to the end product.* | **natural**

• PREP. **~ of** *Like many of his generation, he was a product of Scotland's obsession with football.*

production *noun*

1 making/growing sth

• ADJ. **full** *The machine will go into full production in November 2002.* | **large-scale, mass** | **small-scale** | **efficient** | **annual** | **domestic** | **car, steel** | **coal, energy, gas, oil** | **agricultural, food, livestock, meat, milk** | **factory, industrial**

• QUANT. **level, volume** *The increase in volume of production brought down the price of the goods.*

• VERB + PRODUCTION **be in** *That particular model is no longer in production.* | **go into** | **go out of** | **begin, start** *They are going to start production of the car next year.* | **boost, increase, step up** | **cut, cut back (on)** | **halt, stop** | **speed up**

• PRODUCTION + NOUN **line, plant** *a car production plant* | **methods, process, system** | **director, manager, team** | **costs** | **capacity, level, volume**

• PRODUCTION + VERB **increase, rise** | **fall**

• PHRASES **a cut/fall in production, an increase/a rise in production, the means of production** *They believed that power largely derives from ownership of the means of production.*

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

2 play, film, etc.

• ADJ. **successful** | **controversial** | **amateur, professional** | **stage** | **Broadway, West End, etc.** | **school** | **film, television/TV, theatrical, video**

⇨ Note at PERFORMANCE (for verbs)

productive *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **become**

• ADV. **enormously, extremely, highly, remarkably, very** *It was a highly productive meeting.* | **fairly, quite** | **potentially**

productivity *noun*

• ADJ. **high, low** | **greater, improved, increased** | **lost** *The strike took a heavy toll in lost productivity.* | **agricultural, labour, manufacturing**

• QUANT. **level** *Farmers are struggling to maintain a level of productivity that generates an acceptable income.*

• VERB + PRODUCTIVITY **boost, improve, increase, raise** | **decrease, reduce**

• PRODUCTIVITY + VERB **increase, rise** | **decrease, drop, fall**

• PRODUCTIVITY + NOUN **level** | **gains, growth, increase** | **deal** *Management is negotiating a new productivity deal with the union.*

• PHRASES **a decline/reduction in productivity, a gain/an improvement/an increase in productivity, growth in productivity** *Wage increases outpaced growth in productivity.*

profession *noun*

• ADJ. **chosen** | **legal, medical, teaching, etc.**

• VERB + PROFESSION **practise** *In the 1930s he was forbidden to practise his profession.* | **enter, go into, join** *She entered the legal profession after university.*

• PREP. **by ~** *He was a consultant physician by profession.* **in a/sb's/the ~** *making an impact in her chosen profession*

• PHRASES **a choice of profession** *She was shocked at her daughter's choice of profession.* **the top of sb's profession** *He reached the top of his profession in very little time.*

professional *noun*

• ADJ. **committed, dedicated, experienced** | **real, true** *This is the work of a real professional.* | **leading, senior, top** *a top golf professional* | **independent** *The survey should be performed by an independent professional.* | **fellow** *an actor revered by his fellow professionals* | **computer, health (care), medical** | **golf, tennis, etc.**

NOTE

Professionals

be, practise as ~
to practise as a consulting engineer
act as ~
She is acting as architect on this project.
have ~
The group does not have an internal auditor.
need ~
We need an engineer to design us something better.
find ~
It pays to find a good accountant.
appoint, appoint sb (as), engage, get, instruct ~
Appoint a solicitor to act on your behalf.
consult (with), get/take advice from, go to, see, speak to, talk to ~
I demand to speak to my lawyer!
an advocate, barrister, lawyer, solicitor **acts for/defends/represents sb**
an in-house lawyer acting for a major company
advise sb/sth ~
His accountant has advised him to close down his business.
⇨ See also the note at JOB

professional *adj.*

1 connected with a job

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **purely, strictly** *He insisted that his relationship with the duchess was purely professional.*

2 extremely skilled

• VERBS **be, look** *Their designs look very professional.*

• ADV. **extremely, highly, really, truly, very** *He dealt with the problem in a highly professional way.* | **thoroughly** | **increasingly** | **almost** | **quite, rather**

3 done as a paid job, not a hobby

• VERBS **be** | **become, turn**

• ADV. **fully** *He wants to turn fully professional.*

professor *noun*

• ADJ. **distinguished, eminent** | **college, university** | **assistant, associate** | **emeritus** | **visiting** *I spent six*

months as a visiting professor at Brown University. | **history, law, etc.** | **absent-minded, mad** *He fitted perfectly the stereotype of the absent-minded professor.*
- PREP. **~ of** *an eminent professor of English*

⇨ Note at JOB

proficiency *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great** | **technical** | **language, oral, reading, written** | **cycling, skiing, etc.**
- QUANT. **degree, level** *He taught himself to carve to a high degree of proficiency.*
- VERB + PROFICIENCY **acquire, develop, increase** *He acquired greater proficiency after a three-month intensive course.* | **demonstrate, show**
- PROFICIENCY + NOUN **examination, test** *a language proficiency test* | **certificate**
- PREP. **~ in** *a certificate for proficiency in English*

proficient *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **very** | **fully** | **fairly, reasonably** | **technically** *a technically proficient performance of the piece*
- PREP. **at** *very proficient at sign language* **in** *She's fairly proficient in Italian.*

profile *noun*

1 face seen from the side
- ADJ. **beautiful, handsome** | **strong** | **three-quarter**
- VERB + PROFILE **present**
- PREP. **in ~** *The painting shows her in profile.*
- PHRASES **sb's best profile** *He presented his best profile to the camera.*

2 description of sb/sth
- ADJ. **detailed** | **age, career, psychological** | **company, customer** | **financial, social**
- VERB + PROFILE **build up, construct, develop**
- PREP. **~ of** *The data will enable us to construct a profile of the firm's customers.*

3 public image
- ADJ. **high, low** *She decided to keep a low profile until the scandal had died down.* | **public** | **political** | **corporate**
- VERB + PROFILE **have** | **give sb/sth** *The story was given a low profile in today's papers.* | **improve, increase, raise** *a campaign to raise the profile of the city as a cultural leader* | **lower** | **keep, maintain** | **adopt**

profit *noun*

- ADJ. **big, fat, good, greater, handsome, healthy, high, huge, large, record, substantial, tidy** | **low, modest, small** *They closed down after years of low profits.* | **excess** | **lost, unrealized** *Damaged goods mean lost profit.* | **realized** | **quick** *He's only interested in making a quick profit.* | **gross, pre-tax** | **after/post-tax, clear, net** | **taxable** | **interim, short-term** | **annual** *an annual profit of £50 000* | **first-quarter, full-year, half-year, second-quarter, etc.** | **corporate, group** | **operating, trading**
- VERB + PROFIT **bring (in), earn, generate, make, realize, reap, yield** *The CD generated record profits.* | **boost, increase** | **maximize** | **show** *The company started to show a profit in its first year.*
- PROFIT + VERB **grow, increase, rise** | **fall, plummet, plunge** | **accrue, arise** *profits accruing to the taxpayer from the sale of property*
- PROFIT + NOUN **margin, rate**
- PREP. **against ~s** *The firm made losses of 500 000 against profits of 750 000.* **at a ~** *We should be able to sell the piano at a profit.* **for ~** *The goods were sold for profit.* | **~ on** *Did you make a profit on your house when you sold it?*
- PHRASES **a decline/fall in profits, an increase/a rise in profits, profit after/before tax** *Profit before tax increased by 40% on last year.*

⇨ Note at PER CENT (for more verbs)
⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

profitability *noun*

- ADJ. **high, low** | **greater** | **declining** *concerns about the declining profitability of the industry* | **overall** | **long-term, short-term**
- QUANT. **level**
- VERB + PROFITABILITY **achieve** *measures to achieve greater profitability* | **maintain** | **improve, increase** | **maximize** | **reduce**
- PHRASES **a decline/fall in profitability, an increase in profitability, a return to profitability** *The firm is now showing signs of a return to profitability.*

⇨ Note at PER CENT (for more verbs)

profitable *adj.*

1 making a profit
- VERBS **be, prove, seem** *confident that the venture will prove profitable* | **become** | **remain** | **make sth** | **keep sth** *What can be done to keep the business profitable?*
- ADV. **extremely, highly, hugely, immensely, very** *a highly profitable chain of shops* | **barely** | **quite, relatively** | **enough, sufficiently** *The business is not really profitable enough.* | **financially** | **potentially**

2 helpful
- VERBS **be** | **find sth** *Some churches have found it profitable to hold services during the week.*
- ADV. **very** | **mutually** *Cooperation could be mutually profitable.* | **potentially**

program *noun*

- ADJ. **computer, software** | **analysis, database, design, desktop publishing, drawing, graphics, image-editing, page make-up, simulation, spreadsheet, video-editing, word-processing, etc.** | **shareware**
- VERB + PROGRAM **run, use** | **design, develop, write** *a program designed to evaluate road safety measures* | **download, execute, install, load** | **uninstall** | **copy**
- PROGRAM + VERB **crash** *I lost half a morning's work when the program crashed.* | **allow sth** *This program allows you to edit and catalogue digital photographs.* | **contain sth** *The program contains powerful new features.* | **provide sth** *This program provides everything you need to prepare your own publication.* | **require sth** *This program requires at least 24Mb of RAM.* | **create sth** *The program creates simulations of real-life driving conditions.* | **operate, run** | **close**
- PROGRAM + NOUN **file**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *There may be a bug in the program.* | **~ for** *a program for debugging*

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

programme *noun*

1 plan of things to do
- ADJ. **ambitious** | **comprehensive, major, massive, radical, wide-ranging** *a comprehensive programme of economic reform* | **modest** | **long-term** | **regular** | **varied** *a varied programme of entertainment* | **pilot** *The pilot programme of vaccination proved successful.* | **party, political** | **government** | **collaborative, joint** *joint programmes between government and industry* | **action, development, improvement, modernization, privatization, research** | **economic, expenditure, investment, recovery** *Mr Brown called for a national recovery programme.* | **austerity, closure, cost-cutting** | **aid, assistance, relief, welfare** | **assessment, testing** | **degree, education, educational, literacy, training** *students enrolled on the two-year MA degree programme* | **care, health** *a community care programme for psychiatric patients* | **exercise, weight-loss** | **breeding, building, conservation, de-**

fence *Female seals are needed for the breeding programme.*

- VERB + PROGRAMME **agree (on), develop, draw up, establish, organize, plan, set up | outline** *The course leader outlined the programme we would be following.* | **carry out, implement, launch, run | expand | offer** *The college offers a wide variety of programmes of study.* | **finance, fund** *How is the programme to be financed?* | **embark on, undertake | enrol on | follow | complete | disrupt** *Renewed fighting disrupted the relief programme.*
- PROGRAMME + VERB **aim to, be aimed at sb/sth, be designed to** *The programme aims to increase employment.* | **include sth, involve sb/sth | offer sth, provide sth**
- PREP. **in a/the ~, on the/your ~** *What's on your programme today* (= What are your plans)? | **~ for** *What's the programme for* (= What are we going to do) *tomorrow?* **~ of** *a programme of study*
- PHRASES **the aim/objective/purpose of a programme**

2 radio/televsion show

- ADJ. **radio, television/TV | current affairs, documentary, factual, news | comedy | educational | children's | cookery, wildlife, religious, etc. | phone-in**
- VERB + PROGRAMME **see, watch | listen to | record | do, make | host, present** *a phone-in programme hosted by Freddie Greenan* | **broadcast, screen, show**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *In today's programme, we'll be giving you advice on how to manage your money.* **on a/the ~** *He appeared on the programme last night.* | **~ about/on** *I saw a good programme on owls last night.*

3 booklet for a play/concert/event

- ADJ. **concert, theatre | match, race**
- PREP. **in the ~** *Her name doesn't appear in the concert programme.*

4 order of events

- ADJ. **exciting, interesting | musical, sporting**
- VERB + PROGRAMME **arrange, draw up, plan, organize** *planning an exciting programme of activities*
- PROGRAMME + VERB **include sth**
- PREP. **~ of** *a programme of 17th century music*

programmer *noun*

- ADJ. **senior | assistant | experienced, skilled, trained | freelance | computer, software**
- PROGRAMMER + VERB **write sth**

⇨ Note at JOB

progress *noun*

1 movement forwards

- ADJ. **considerable, dramatic, encouraging, excellent, genuine, good, great, impressive, real, remarkable, significant, substantial | fast, rapid, swift | inexorable | slow, stately** *We watched the ship's stately progress out of the harbour.* | **satisfactory, steady | further | academic, educational**
- VERB + PROGRESS **achieve, make | assess, chart, check (on), evaluate, monitor, observe, review, trace, track, watch** *Regular tests enable the teacher to monitor the progress of each child.* | **block, hamper, hinder, impede, obstruct, slow (down) | halt, stop | accelerate, facilitate**
- PROGRESS + NOUN **report**
- PREP. **in ~** *There was a cricket match in progress.* | **~ from … to …** *The book traced his steady progress from petty theft to serious crime.* **~ in** *He's making good progress in maths.* **~ on** *How much progress have the builders made on the extension?* **~ towards** *Who can halt Woods' inexorable progress towards yet another championship?* **~ with** *She's making steady progress with her thesis.*
- PHRASES **a lack of progress** *I was frustrated by my apparent lack of progress when I started the violin.* **a rate of progress** *At the present rate of progress we won't be finished before July.* **work in progress** *I have one file for completed work and one for work in progress.*

2 improvement in society

- ADJ. **economic, evolutionary, industrial, medical, scientific, social, technical, technological | human**
- VERB + PROGRESS **hold back**
- PHRASES **the march of progress** *the onward march of technological progress*

progress *verb*

- ADV. **satisfactorily, smoothly, well** *The talks are progressing very well.* | **further** *He felt he still needed to progress further in his learning.* | **rapidly** *progressing rapidly in his chosen career* | **slowly** *The work is progressing quite slowly.* | **steadily**
- VERB + PROGRESS **fail to**
- PREP. **beyond** *Samir failed to progress beyond this first step on the ladder.* **from, through** *allowing students to progress through the stages of the course* **to** *She soon progressed from the basics to more difficult work.* **towards** *slowly progressing towards a new kind of art* **up** *his ambition to progress up the career ladder* **with** *They are keen to progress with the scheme.*

progression *noun*

- ADJ. **rapid | gradual, slow, steady | smooth | upward | linear, logical, natural** *By a logical progression of thought, she worked out why the remark had caused offence.* | **career | chord, harmonic**
- PREP. **~ from … to …** *his progression from chubby teenager to handsome movie star* **~ through** *Her progression through the grades of the civil service had been rapid.* **~ within** *his steady upward progression within the company*
- PHRASES **the progression of a disease** *one of the later stages in the progression of the disease*

progressive *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly, very** *highly progressive in outlook* | **relatively | politically**

prohibit *verb*

- ADV. **strictly** *Smoking in the cinema is strictly prohibited.* | **expressly, specifically | effectively** *The very restrict regulations effectively prohibit the entry of soil or plants grown in soil into the country.* | **constitutionally** *The president is constitutionally prohibited from serving more than two terms in office.*
- PREP. **from** *The Act specifically prohibits any council from spending money for political purposes.*

prohibition *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, total | general | legal, statutory**
- VERB + PROHIBITION **impose | abolish, lift**
- PROHIBITION + NOUN **notice, order** *The prohibition order meant that the book could not be sold in this country.*
- PREP. **~ against** *prohibition against sales to under-18s of alcohol* **~ of** *a treaty for the prohibition of nuclear tests* **~ on** *the prohibition imposed on the sale of arms*

project *noun*

1 planned piece of work

- ADJ. **large, major | ambitious | exciting | worthwhile | successful | joint | community | pilot** *The scheme will be extended throughout the country after a successful six-month pilot project.* | **research** *They've set up a research project to investigate the harmful effects of air pollution.* | **building, construction | capital, investment | development, educational, environmental**

• VERB + PROJECT **set up | carry out, run | conceive, plan | launch | fund, support**
• PROJECT + VERB **aim to, be aimed at sth** *The project aims to reduce homelessness.*
• PROJECT + NOUN **management | leader, manager, team**
• PHRASES **the aim of the project** *The aims of the project are threefold …*
⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

2 piece of school work
• ADJ. **French, history, etc.**
• VERB + PROJECT **do**
• PREP. **~ on** *My class is doing a project on medieval towns.*
• PROJECT + NOUN **work**

projection *noun*

• ADJ. **current, latest | forward, future | population | financial, profit, sales**
• VERB + PROJECTION **make | revise**
• PREP. **on … ~s** *On current projections, there will be more than ten million people 65 or over in 2010.* | **~ about** *He declined to make projections about the next quarter's earnings.* **~ as to** *We have been making forward projections as to future profitability of the firm.* **~ for** *They presented profit projections for the rest of the year.* **~ of** *The council has revised its projections of funding requirements upwards.*

projector *noun*

• ADJ. **overhead | cine, film, slide, video**
• VERB + PROJECTOR **switch off/on | operate**

prolific *adj.*

• VERBS **be**
• ADV. **exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, highly, immensely, incredibly, very | fairly, quite**

prolong *verb*

• ADV. **indefinitely** *Might it be possible to prolong life indefinitely?* | **artificially | deliberately** *Doctors commented that some patients deliberately prolong their treatment.* | **unduly, unnecessarily** *We do not want to prolong the meeting unnecessarily.*

prolonged *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become**
• ADV. **very | not unduly** *The surgery must not be unduly prolonged.* | **fairly, quite, relatively, somewhat**

prominence *noun*

• ADJ. **great | growing, increasing | equal | special** *a performance which gives a special prominence to the part of Hamlet's mother* | **due | undue | international, local, national | political, public**
• VERB + PROMINENCE **achieve, come into/to, gain, rise to, shoot to** *She came to national prominence as an artist in the 1960s.* | **bring sb/sth into/to, give sb/sth** *His account gives due prominence to the role of the king.*
• PHRASES **a position of prominence** *The former rebels were given positions of prominence in the new government.* **a rise to prominence** *The city's rise to prominence as a port began in the early nineteenth century.*

prominent *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become | remain**
• ADV. **especially, extremely, particularly, unusually, very | increasingly | fairly, quite**
• PREP. **as** *prominent as a player and coach* **in** *prominent in the trade unions*

promise *noun*

1 statement that you will do sth
• ADJ. **big** *He makes all kinds of big promises he has little intention of keeping.* | **rash | broken, unfulfilled | empty, false, hollow | vague | binding, firm | campaign, election, pre-election**
• VERB + PROMISE **give sb, make (sb)** *You gave me your promise I could use the car tonight.* ◇ *I'll consider it, but I make no promises.* | **fulfil, honour, keep | break, go back on | extract** *We extracted a promise from them that they would repay the money by May.* | **hold sb to** *The Opposition is determined to hold the government to its election promises.*
• PREP. **~ about** *They've made all sorts of promises about reforming the health system.* **~ of** *promises of support*

2 signs that sb/sth will be successful
• ADJ. **considerable, great, real** *This new venture holds great promise for the future.* | **early, youthful**
• VERB + PROMISE **hold, show | fulfil, live up to** *His career failed to fulfil its early promise.*
• PREP. **of ~** *a pianist of promise* | **~ as** *She showed great promise as a runner.*
• PHRASES **full of promise** *The year began so full of promise, and ended in disappointment.*

promise *verb*

• ADV. **faithfully** *She promised faithfully that she would come.* | **solemnly**
• VERB + PROMISE **can/can't | seem to** *The plan seemed to promise a new beginning.*
• PREP. **to** *I've promised my old computer to Jane.*
• PHRASES **as promised** *I am sending you information on holidays as promised.* **I can't promise anything** *I can't promise anything, but I hope to have it finished next week.*

promising *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**
• ADV. **extremely, highly, particularly, very | hardly** *The outlook is hardly promising.* | **quite**

promote *verb*

1 encourage sth
• ADV. **strongly** *The idea of equal opportunities was strongly promoted by many Labour MPs.* | **actively, directly | indirectly | deliberately, intentionally** *They claimed that the authorities had deliberately promoted and condoned the violence.*
• VERB + PROMOTE **aim to, seek to, try to | help (to)** *Basketball stars from the United States have helped promote the sport in Italy and Spain.* | **be designed to** *measures designed to promote economic growth* | **be likely to | serve to, tend to** *Bonus payments to staff serve to promote commitment to the company.*
• PREP. **through** *Young people's awareness of agricultural issues is promoted through publicity material.*
• PHRASES **be aimed at promoting sth, be widely promoted, a campaign/scheme to promote sth, efforts/measures to promote sth**

2 advertise sth
• ADV. **aggressively, heavily** *The new products have been very heavily promoted.* | **widely**
• PREP. **as** *The town is now being promoted as a holiday destination.* **through** *The company's products have been promoted mainly through advertising in newspapers.*

promotion *noun*

1 to a higher position
• ADJ. **rapid | internal** *The company encourages internal promotion.*
• VERB + PROMOTION **gain, get, win** *If I can't get promotion soon, I'll look for another job.* | **deserve** *We con-*

gratulate James on his well-deserved promotion to Chief Executive. | **recommend sb for**

- PROMOTION + NOUN **opportunities, prospects** | **race** *With three matches remaining, there are six teams in the promotion race.*
- PREP. **~from, ~to** *his promotion from lecturer to senior lecturer*
- PHRASES **chance/chances of promotion** *The team's chances of promotion took a knock when they lost at home.*

2 advertising

- ADJ. **special** | **sales, trade** | **book, tobacco, etc.** | **health** *The new health promotion clinic will provide free check-ups.*
- VERB + PROMOTION **do** *We're doing a special book promotion at key bookshops this week.*

prone *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **leave sb/sth, make sb/sth** *Sun removes the oil and wax, leaving the leather prone to cracking.*
- ADV. **especially, highly, particularly, very** | **increasingly** | **rather, slightly** | **notoriously** *The M40 through Oxfordshire is notoriously prone to fog.*
- PREP. **to** *She seems very prone to chest infections.*
- PHRASES **accident prone**

pronoun *noun*

- ADJ. **plural, singular** | **first-person, second-person, etc.** | **definite, demonstrative, indefinite, interrogative, personal, possessive, relative** | **object, subject**

pronounce *verb*

1 make the sound of a word/letter

- ADV. **clearly, distinctly** | **correctly, properly**
- VERB + PRONOUNCE **can, know how to** *I don't know how to pronounce the name of the town.* | **be difficult to**
- PREP. **as** *'Gone back' is sometimes pronounced as 'gom back'.* **as in** *She pronounded the 'o' as in 'no'.*

2 state sth

- ADV. **confidently** *Press reports beforehand confidently pronounced that an agreement had already been reached.*
- PREP. **in favour of** *The committee has pronounced in favour of the merger.* **on/upon** *I do not feel competent to pronounce on this matter.*

pronounced *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **especially, particularly, very** *These blooms have a very pronounced tendency to hang their heads.* | **fairly, quite** *walking with a fairly pronounced limp*

pronunciation *noun*

- ADJ. **correct, good** | **bad, incorrect** | **alternative, different, variant** | **standard** | **American, Australian, etc.**
- VERB + PRONUNCIATION **correct** *She doesn't like having her pronunciation corrected.*
- PRONUNCIATION + NOUN **drill, exercise, practice**

proof *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, clear, conclusive, concrete, convincing, direct, good, incontrovertible, irrefutable, positive, real, tangible** *Have you got any positive proof that she took the money?* ◇ *We have proof positive that he is in hiding.* ◇ *I have no real proof that he was at the flat.* | **ample, sufficient** | **further** | **final, ultimate** *The photo was final proof of her husband's infidelity.* | **documentary, written** | **legal** | **scientific** | **living** *The lungfish is living proof that fish could evolve to breathe on land.*
- VERB + PROOF **have** | **give sb, offer (sb), produce, provide (sb with)** | **get, obtain** | **need, require**
- PREP. **without~** *He is unlikely to make wild accusations without proof.* | **~of** *Her account gives us no concrete proof of his guilt.*
- PHRASES **the burden/onus of proof** *The burden of proof lay on the plaintiff to prove negligence.* **a lack of proof** *The men were acquitted for lack of proof.* **proof of identity, proof of purchase** *Proof of purchase must be provided before a refund can be made.* **a standard of proof** *Civil proceedings require a lower standard of proof than criminal cases.*

propaganda *noun*

- ADJ. **government, official, party, state** | **political, religious, revolutionary** | **Conservative, socialist, etc.** | **enemy, hostile, war**
- VERB + PROPAGANDA **broadcast** *The pirate radio station broadcast anti-government propaganda.*
- PROPAGANDA + NOUN **battle, campaign, effort, exercise, war** | **triumph, victory** | **department, machine** | **film, material, tool, weapon** | **purposes** *The film was made in 1938 for propaganda purposes.* | **value** *The Olympics were of great propaganda value to the regime.*
- PREP. **~about** *The papers were full of political propaganda about nationalization.* **~ against** *Soviet propaganda against Fascism*

proper *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** *It seemed proper to pay tribute to her in this way.* | **consider sth, deem sth, think sth** *It was not considered proper for young ladies to go out alone.*
- ADV. **very** | **entirely, perfectly, quite** *The tribunal decided that his behaviour was perfectly proper.*
- PHRASES **(only) right and proper** *It is only right and proper that you should attend his funeral.*

property *noun*

1 possessions

- ADJ. **personal, private** | **common, public** | **intellectual** *Companies should protect their intellectual property with patents and trademarks.* | **stolen** | **lost** *I phoned the lost property office to see if someone had found my bag.*
- VERB + PROPERTY **dispose of** *The market was known as a place where people disposed of stolen property.*
- PROPERTY + NOUN **rights** *The firm was found to have infringed intellectual property rights.*

2 land/building

- ADJ. **freehold, leasehold** | **adjacent, adjoining, neighbouring** | **detached, semi-detached** | **two-bedroom, three-bedroom, etc.** | **business, commercial, hotel, residential** | **investment** | **private** | **council, council-owned** | **family**
- VERB + PROPERTY **hold, own** | **acquire, buy, invest in, purchase** | **inherit** | **sell** | **lease, let, rent out** *They decided to rent out the property while they were abroad.* | **rent** *living in rented property* | **view** *We have a potential buyer who wants to view the property.* | **value** *The property was valued at £250 000.* | **put on the market** *Once the tenants have left, the property will be put on the market.*
- PROPERTY + NOUN **market, prices, values** | **company, developer** | **owner** | **tax** | **boundary**
- PHRASES **a man/woman of property** *Now that you've paid off your mortgage, how does it feel to be a woman of property?*

3 characteristic

- ADJ. **biological, chemical, electrical, magnetic, mechanical, physical** | **antiseptic, health-giving, medicinal** *The medicinal properties of the leaves of this tree have been known for centuries.* | **observable** | **individual** | **general**

prophecy *noun*

- ADJ. **Biblical, Messianic, Old Testament | self-fulfilling** *low expectations that become a self-fulfilling prophecy*
- VERB + PROPHECY **make | fulfil**
- PREP. **~about** *Macbeth believed the witches' prophecy about his future.* **~of** *The poem contains a bleak prophecy of war and ruin.*
- PHRASES **the gift of prophecy**

prophet *noun*

- ADJ. **true** *Some believe that he was not a true prophet.* **| false | great | Old Testament**
- PHRASES **a prophet of doom** (*informal*) *In spite of the prophets of doom, her business proved very successful.*

prophetic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem** *His warnings about the journey proved prophetic.*
- ADV. **highly | almost | strangely**
- PREP. **of** *a book that was prophetic of future developments in science*

proportion *noun*

1 part/share of a whole

- ADJ. **appreciable, considerable, fair, good, great, high, huge, large, overwhelming, significant, sizeable, substantial | reasonable | low, small | minute, negligible, tiny | certain | equal** *The company employs men and women in roughly equal proportions.* **| equivalent, similar | different, differing, varying | fixed | exact | approximate | average | overall | growing, increasing, rising | declining, decreasing, diminishing**
- VERB + PROPORTION **express sth as** *The chart shows government spending expressed as a proportion of national income.* **| grow as, increase as, rise as | decline as, decrease as, diminish as, fall as** *The unskilled section of the working class was diminishing as a proportion of the workforce.*
- PROPORTION + VERB **grow, increase, rise | decline, decrease, fall**

2 relationship between the size/amount of two things

- ADJ. **correct | direct | inverse** *The human population in the region is expanding in inverse proportion to the wildlife.* **| relative**
- VERB + PROPORTION **keep sth in** *Try to keep your view of the situation in proportion* (= not think it is more serious than it is).
- PREP. **in~(to)** *The cost of insurance increases in proportion to the performance of the car.* **out of~(to)** *The costs of the plan are out of proportion to the budget available.* **| ~of sth to sth** *The proportion of sand to cement used was three to one.*
- PHRASES **out of all proportion** *The problem has been exaggerated out of all proportion.* **a sense of proportion** *Try to keep a sense of proportion* (= of the relative importance of different things).

3 **proportions** size and shape of sth

- ADJ. **enormous, epic, extraordinary, gargantuan, generous, gigantic, heroic, huge, immense, major, mammoth, massive, monumental, staggering | modest | manageable, unmanageable** *The computer brings the huge task of stock control down to more manageable proportions.* **| alarming | crisis, epidemic | classic, elegant, fine, noble, perfect** *There is an entrance hall of perfect proportions, twice as long as it is wide.* **| bodily**
- VERB + PROPORTIONS **reach** *The food shortage had reached crisis proportions.*

proportional *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **broadly, roughly** *The amount of food a child needs is roughly proportional to its size.* **| directly** *The speed of the glider is directly proportional to the speed of the wind.* **| inversely** *The amount of force needed is inversely proportional to the rigidity of the material.*
- PREP. **to**

proposal *noun*

1 plan

- ADJ. **concrete | detailed | controversial | compromise | peace, reform, research, etc.**
- QUANT. **package, set** *The government outlined a new set of proposals on human rights.*
- VERB + PROPOSAL **formulate | outline | bring forward, make, put forward, submit | accept, back, support, welcome** *I welcome the proposal to reduce taxes for the poorly paid.* **| block, oppose, reject, vote against | push through** *The government could face defeat if it tries to push through the controversial proposals.* **| drop, withdraw | consider, discuss**
- PREP. **~concerning/relating to** *proposals concerning the use of land* **~for** *The Ministry submitted a proposal for lower speed limits on motorways.*

⇨ Special page at MEETING

2 offer of marriage

- VERB + PROPOSAL **make | receive | accept** *She accepted his proposal of marriage.* **| turn down**
- PHRASES **a proposal of marriage**

propose *verb*

- ADV. **seriously** *Are you seriously proposing that we should allow this situation to continue?*
- PREP. **as** *The measures have been proposed as a way of improving standards.* **for** *He was proposed for the job of treasurer.*
- PHRASES **originally proposed** *The plan originally proposed was ruled completely unrealistic.*

proposition *noun*

1 arrangement/offer/suggestion

- ADJ. **attractive, tempting | feasible, practical, viable | business, commercial, economic, paying**
- VERB + PROPOSITION **put to sb** *Ring up your agent in New York and put your proposition to him.*

2 problem/task

- ADJ. **tough, tricky | different** *He's a different proposition from his father—much less tolerant.*

3 idea/opinion

- ADJ. **basic, central, fundamental | true | extreme | abstract, causal, empirical, ethical, existential, general, theoretical, universal**
- QUANT. **set**
- VERB + PROPOSITION **express, put forward**
- PROPOSITION + VERB **concern sth, relate to sth**
- PREP. **~about** *The book puts forward a number of extreme propositions about the nature of language.*

proprietor *noun*

- ADJ. **hotel, newspaper, restaurant | landed | sole** *He is now sole proprietor of the business.*

prose *noun*

- ADJ. **clear, plain, simple | elegant, flowing, rhythmic | flowery, purple** (= elaborate or exaggerated in style) **| descriptive | discursive | continuous** *I plan out an essay in note form before writing it up in continuous prose.* **| academic, literary**
- QUANT. **piece**
- VERB + PROSE **write (in)**

- PROSE + NOUN **works, writing | writer | style | narrative | passage, text | fiction**
- PREP. **in ~** *a passage in prose*

prosecution *noun*

1 trying to prove sb's guilt in court
- ADJ. **criminal, private | successful | impending, possible** *He faces possible prosecution.*
- VERB + PROSECUTION **bring, initiate | be liable to, face, risk | escape | lead to, result in**
- PREP. **~ against** *The police brought a prosecution against the driver involved.* **~ for** *Prosecutions for water pollution more than doubled.*
- PHRASES **immunity from prosecution**

2 lawyers trying to prove sb's guilt
- PROSECUTION + VERB **prove sth | allege sth, claim sth** *The prosecution alleged that he murdered his wife.*
- PROSECUTION + NOUN **case, evidence | counsel, lawyer, witness | costs**
- PREP. **for the ~** *a witness for the prosecution*

prospect *noun*

1 chance/hope that sth will happen
- ADJ. **reasonable | immediate**
- VERB + PROSPECT **have | offer**
- PREP. **in ~** *Major developments are in prospect for the company.* | **~ of sth** *There is little prospect of any improvement in the weather.*

2 idea of what may/will happen
- ADJ. **attractive, exciting, inviting | bleak, daunting**
- VERB + PROSPECT **be excited at, relish, welcome** *I don't relish the prospect of having to share an office.* | **be faced with, face**

3 prospects chances of being successful
- ADJ. **bright, excellent, exciting, good | limited, poor | future, long-term | development, economic, growth | career, employment, job, promotion | election, electoral, re-election**
- VERB + PROSPECTS **have | offer (sb)** *This position offers a good starting salary and excellent promotion prospects.* | **boost, enhance, improve** *Getting the right qualifications will enhance your employment prospects.* | **blight, damage, diminish, ruin, wreck | assess, examine, review**
- PROSPECTS + VERB **improve**
- PREP. **with/without ~** *At 25 he was an unemployed musician with no prospects.* | **~ for** *Long-term prospects for the economy have improved.* **~ of** *Their prospects of employment look better than last year.*

prospectus *noun*
- ADJ. **detailed | college, school**
- QUANT. **copy**
- VERB + PROSPECTUS **browse through, leaf through, look through | produce**

prosperity *noun*
- ADJ. **economic, material | growing, increasing, rising | relative | future, lasting, long-term | general, global, national, world | personal**
- QUANT. **level** *an area with a level of prosperity higher than the national average*
- VERB + PROSPERITY **bring, create** *The growth of tourism brought prosperity to the island.* | **achieve**
- PROSPERITY + VERB **depend on sth** *The island's prosperity depends on its fishing industry.*
- PHRASES **a period of prosperity**

prosperous *adj.*
- VERBS **be, seem | become, grow | remain**
- ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, quite, relatively | formerly, once** *this once prosperous region* | **newly** *Suburbs sprawled out to provide homes for the newly prosperous.* | **economically**

prostitute *noun*
- ADJ. **common** *She was arrested and charged with being a common prostitute.* | **child, female, girl, male | former, reformed** *a book written by a former prostitute*
- VERB + PROSTITUTE **be, work as | go to, use, visit** *the men who use prostitutes* | **control** *He was arrested on charges of controlling prostitutes.*
- PROSTITUTE + VERB **solicit** *The prostitutes solicit openly here.*

prostitution *noun*
- ADJ. **child, female, juvenile, male**
- VERB + PROSTITUTION **be involved in | turn to** *Some turned to prostitution in order to survive.*
- PROSTITUTION + NOUN **trade** *There is a long-standing prostitution trade in the port.*

prostrate *adj.*
- VERBS **be, lie** *lying prostrate on the ground* | **fall** *They fell prostrate before the king.*

protect *verb*
- ADV. **fully | adequately, properly, suitably | inadequately | carefully | effectively, successfully | jealously, rigorously** *a star who jealously protects her right to privacy*
- VERB + PROTECT **need to | seek to, strive to, try to | act to, fight to** *Each company is fighting to protect its own commercial interests.* | **take steps to** *We must take steps to protect the UK as a manufacturing base.* | **help (to) | serve to | be designed to**
- PREP. **against** *a cream that helps to protect your skin against the sun* **from** *The new measures are designed to protect the public from people like these.* **with** *Protect the exposed areas of wood with varnish.*
- PHRASES **be aimed at protecting sth, a desire/duty/need to protect sb/sth** *He felt it was his duty to protect the child.* **heavily/highly protected** *The Far Eastern markets are heavily protected* (= with high taxes for imported goods). **legally/officially/specially protected** *Many of these sites—of immense scientific interest—are not legally protected.* **measures to protect sb/sth, poorly/well protected** *Keep the camera well protected at all times.*

protection *noun*
- ADJ. **adequate, effective | legal | police** *Witnesses at the trial were given police protection.* | **animal, child, consumer, data, environmental, personal, wildlife** *Animal protection supporters gathered to protest against hunting.* ◇ *She carries a gun in her bag for personal protection.* | **fire, flood** *Fire protection equipment must be available on all floors.* | **sun** *sun protection products*
- QUANT. **degree** *A helmet affords the cyclist some degree of protection against injury.*
- VERB + PROTECTION **afford (sb), give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)**
- PROTECTION + NOUN **law, legislation, order** *The couple were was found guilty of violation of child protection laws.* | **measures, mechanism, scheme, system**
- PREP. **under the ~ of** *Many British wild animals are now under the protection of the Wildlife and Countryside Act.* | **~ against** *Fill the cooling system with antifreeze as a protection against frost.* **~ from** *The high walls give the garden protection from the wind.*

• PHRASES **a means of protection** *The skunk releases a pungent smell as a means of protection.*

protective *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel** | **become**
• ADV. **fiercely, highly, very** *The lionesses are fiercely protective of their young.*
• PREP. **of** *He's too jealous and protective of her.* **towards** *feeling suddenly very protective towards her mother*

protein *noun*

• ADJ. **essential** | **natural** | **animal, vegetable**
• VERB + PROTEIN **be high/rich in, contain, supply** *Cereals supply essential protein and vitamins.* | **produce**
• PROTEIN + NOUN **content** | **intake** | **deficiency**
• PHRASES **a high/low protein diet, a source of protein**

protest *noun*

• ADJ. **angry, strong, violent** | **peaceful** | **sit-down** | **mass** | **formal, official** | **popular, public, student** | **anti-government, political** | **continuing, further, renewed** | **rooftop, street** *a rooftop protest by prison inmates* | **widespread**
• QUANT. **flood, storm, tide, wave** *The new tax sparked a wave of public protest.*
• VERB + PROTEST **organize, stage** | **lodge, register** *The Samoan team lodged a formal protest after the referee sent off the wrong player.* | **lead to, spark**
• PROTEST + NOUN **group, movement** | **demonstration, march, meeting, rally** | **strike** | **petition** | **song**
• PREP. **in ~** *Prisoners shouted and hurled slates in protest.* **under ~** *The strikers returned to work, but under protest.* **without ~** *The crowd dispersed without protest.* | **~ about** *a protest about the new bypass* **~ against** *There had been a number of public protests against the new tax.* **~ at** *The party boycotted the election in protest at alleged vote rigging.* **~ over** *a student protest over tuition fees*
• PHRASES **a chorus/cry/howl of protest** *The announcement brought cries of protest from the crowd.* **the freedom/right of protest** *The constitution guarantees the right of peaceful protest.* **a letter of protest**

protest *verb*

• ADV. **strongly, vehemently, vigorously** | **formally** | **loudly** | **mildly** | **weakly** | **peacefully** *the right to protest peacefully* | **bitterly, desperately, indignantly**
• VERB + PROTEST **begin to, try to** *When he tried to protest, she insisted.* | **gather to** *Crowds gathered to protest about the police violence.*
• PREP. **about/over** *protesting over an income tax increase* **against** *protesting against the proposed agreement* **at** *Many people have protested at the cuts in state benefits.* **over, to** *We have protested to the government.*

protester *noun*

• ADJ. **student** | **anti-government, anti-nuclear, peace, political** | **peaceful, unarmed** | **angry**
• VERB + PROTESTER **arrest**
• PROTESTER + VERB **call for sth, demand sth** | **march** | **demonstrate, gather** | **clash, fight** *Protesters clashed with police outside the embassy.*
• PREP. **~ against** *The streets were crowded with protesters against the war.*

prototype *noun*

• ADJ. **pre-production** | **working**
• VERB + PROTOTYPE **build, develop** | **test**
• PROTOTYPE + NOUN **stage** *The car is presently at the prototype stage.*
• PREP. **~ for** *The team is developing a prototype for a digital compact camera.* **~ of** *He is working on the prototype of a new type of ventilator.*

proud *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **make sb**
• ADV. **enormously, especially, extremely, fiercely, immensely, inordinately, intensely, more than a little, particularly, really, terribly, tremendously, very** *She was fiercely proud of family traditions and continuity.* ◇ *He was more than a little proud of himself.* | **almost** *He seemed almost proud of his practical incompetence.* | **quite, rather** | **justifiably, justly, rightly** | **perversely** *Londoners have long been perversely proud of a health service that does not serve them well.* | **quietly** *He was not vain, but he was quietly proud of his literary achievements.* | **secretly**
• PREP. **of** *We are all really proud of you!*
• PHRASES **have every reason/right to be proud** *All those involved have every reason to be proud of their achievement.*

prove *verb*

• ADV. **conclusively, definitively** *All this proves conclusively that she couldn't have known the truth.* | **just** *Their behaviour just proves my point.*
• VERB + PROVE **be difficult to, be impossible to** | **be easy to** | **be able to** | **try to** *What are you trying to prove?* | **be determined to** | **have sth to** *I certainly don't have anything to prove—my record speaks for itself.*
• PREP. **to** *He tried to prove his theory to his friends.*
• PHRASES **a chance to prove sth, prove sb right/wrong** *I was determined to prove my critics wrong.*

proven *adj.*

• VERBS **be**
• ADV. **well** | **completely, conclusively, fully** *No funding will be available until the technology is completely proven.* | **not yet** | **scientifically, statistically**

provide *verb*

• ADV. **kindly** *a buffet supper, kindly provided by club members* | **free (of charge)** *Careers advice is provided free of charge.*
• VERB + PROVIDE **be able to, can/could** | **aim to, seek to, try to** *trying to provide the best possible medical care* | **fail to** | **be designed to, be intended to** *The scheme was intended to provide financial help to unemployed workers.* | **be expected to, be likely/unlikely to** *The report was not expected to provide any answers.*
• PREP. **for** *providing food and shelter for the refugees* **with** *He provided us with a lot of useful information.*

province *noun*

1 region
• ADJ. **northern, southern, etc.** | **central, coastal, frontier** *the central province of Ghor* | **English-speaking, French-speaking, etc.** | **autonomous**

2 the provinces not the capital city
• VERB + PROVINCES **tour** *The show is currently touring the provinces.*
• PREP. **from the ~** *She's from the provinces and not familiar with Rome.* **in the ~** *There are a number of press agencies based in London and in the provinces.*

provision *noun*

1 supply
• ADJ. **private, state** | **educational, housing, nursery, pension, service, welfare, etc.**
• PREP. **~ of** *Several firms are responsible for the provision of cleaning services.*

2 for a future situation; in a legal document

- ADJ. **full | adequate** *It is important to make adequate provision for your retirement.* | **detailed | express, particular, special, specific | relevant | constitutional, legal, legislative, statutory**
- VERB + PROVISION **make | contain** *provisions contained in the contract*
- PROVISION + VERB **apply** *The same provisions apply to foreign-owned companies.*
- PREP. **~against** *They had made all kinds of provisions against bad weather.* **~for** *The Act contains detailed provisions for appeal against the court's decision.*

3 provisions food and drink
- VERB + PROVISIONS **buy, stock up on/with** *We went into town to stock up on provisions.*

provocation *noun*
- ADJ. **extreme, severe | deliberate**
- QUANT. **element** *The victim's conduct had involved an element of provocation.*
- VERB + PROVOCATION **respond to**
- PREP. **under~** *The crime was committed under provocation.* **without~** *She attacked him without provocation.*
- PHRASES **at the least/slightest provocation** *He would lose his temper at the slightest provocation.*

provocative *adj.*
1 intending to cause an argument
- VERBS **be, seem | consider sth**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very | rather | deliberately | unnecessarily**

2 intending to cause sexual excitement
- VERBS **be, look**
- ADV. **highly, very | unconsciously | sexually**

provoke *verb*
- ADV. **deliberately | inevitably** *The suggestion inevitably provoked outrage from student leaders.* | **immediately | eventually, finally**
- VERB + PROVOKE **try to | be likely to** *The report is likely to provoke discussion of this issue.* | **be designed to, be intended to**
- PREP. **into** *She had been trying to provoke her sister into an argument.* **to** *Their laughter provoked him to anger.*
- PHRASES **be easily provoked** *He was sensitive and easily provoked.*

prowess *noun*
- ADJ. **academic, athletic, golfing, intellectual, military, physical, sexual, sporting, technical, etc.**
- VERB + PROWESS **demonstrate, show | boast about/of | admire | be famed/famous for**
- PREP. **~as** *He boasted of his prowess as a lover.* **~at** *her prowess at tennis* **~in** *The Gurkhas are famed for their prowess in battle.* **~with** *Their striker demonstrated all his prowess with the boot.*

proximity *noun*
- ADJ. **close | geographical, physical, spatial**
- PREP. **in~to** *The site is in close proximity to motorways and an airport.* | **~to** *House prices in the area are elevated by its proximity to London.*

proxy *noun*
- VERB + PROXY **appoint** *You may appoint a proxy to vote for you.*
- PROXY + VERB **vote | attend (sth)** *Your proxy may attend the meeting if you are unable to attend.*
- PROXY + NOUN **vote, voting | card, form**
- PREP. **by~** *If you will not be able to vote on polling day, you may vote by proxy.* | **~for** *Husbands are discouraged from voting as proxy for their wives.*
- PHRASES **a form of proxy** *We enclose a form of proxy for use at the Annual General Meeting.*

prudent *adj.*
- VERBS **be, seem | consider sth, think sth** *We thought it prudent to telephone first.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | reasonably**

prune *verb*
- ADV. **hard, heavily, savagely, severely** *Prune the trees hard in the winter.* ◇ *(figurative) Local councils could find their housing budgets severely pruned.* | **back** *The roses had been pruned back savagely.*

pseudonym *noun*
- VERB + PSEUDONYM **adopt, take, use**
- PREP. **under a/the~** *Eric Blair wrote under the pseudonym of George Orwell.*

psychiatrist *noun*
- ADJ. **leading, senior, top** *a leading child psychiatrist* | **consultant, research | child | forensic**
- PHRASES **the psychiatrist's couch** *the secrets revealed on the psychiatrist's couch*

⇨ Note at DOCTOR (for verbs)

psychiatry *noun*
- ADJ. **clinical, community, forensic | child, geriatric**
- PHRASES **a department of psychiatry, an institute of psychiatry**

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

psychological *adj.*
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **purely** *The symptoms are purely psychological.*

psychologist *noun*
- ADJ. **eminent, leading, top | clinical, consultant, professional** *He is now a consultant psychologist with a major London hospital.* | **academic, experimental | behavioural, child, developmental, educational, occupational, social, sports**

⇨ Note at DOCTOR (for verbs)

psychology *noun*
1 study of the mind/the way people behave
- PSYCHOLOGY + NOUN **clinical, professional | academic, experimental | applied | cognitive, developmental, educational, social | child**

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

2 type of mind that a person/group has
- ADJ. **individual, own** *The answers we give will reflect our own psychology.* | **crowd, group** *Watching the shoppers at the sales gave her a first-hand insight into crowd psychology.* | **human**

pub *noun*
- ADJ. **excellent, good | favourite | corner, local, nearby, nearest** *The corner pub is quite good.* | **crowded | friendly, welcoming | country, village | historic, traditional | modern | theme** *It's one of those modern theme pubs.*
- VERB + PUB **go down (to), go (round) to** *Let's go down the pub for a drink.*
- PUB + NOUN **food, lunch, meal | landlady, landlord**
- PREP. **at/in a/the~** *He spent all afternoon in the pub.*

puberty *noun*

- VERB + PUBERTY **reach** *He reached puberty at the age of fourteen.* | **approach**
- PREP. **at ~** *Girls start menstruating at puberty.* **during ~** *The body undergoes many changes during puberty.*
- PHRASES **the age of puberty, the onset of puberty**

public *noun*

1 **the public** people in general
- ADJ. **general**
- VERB + PUBLIC **inform** *The government was slow to inform the public about the health hazards of lead in petrol.* | **protect** | **serve** | **be open to** *The house is open to the public at weekends.*
- PREP. **in ~** *He rarely appears in public these days.*
- PHRASES **a member of the public**

2 group of people with sth in common
- ADJ. **book-buying, paying, reading, sporting, theatre-going, travelling, viewing, etc.** *Satellite television has provided the viewing public with a wide choice of programmes.* | **larger, wider** *Her work is now available to a wider public.*

publication *noun*

1 of a book, etc.
- VERB + PUBLICATION **begin** | **cease, stop** | **prepare sth for** | **be due/scheduled for** *The book is scheduled for publication in the autumn.* | **accept sth for**
- PUBLICATION + VERB **be due/scheduled** *The publication of her memoirs is scheduled for the autumn.*
- PUBLICATION + NOUN **date**
- PHRASES **the date/time of publication**

2 book, magazine, etc.
- ADJ. **new, recent** | **forthcoming** | **leading, major** | **sister** *'This Week''s German sister publication, 'Diese Woche', went out of business.* | **government, official** | **specialist** | **academic, business, scientific, trade**
- PUBLICATION + NOUN **publications catalogue/list**
- PREP. **~ about** *specialist publications about bees* **~ on** *She has several publications to her name on local history.*

publicity *noun*

1 media attention
- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, extensive, greater, wide, widespread** *The papers have begun to give greater publicity to the campaign against GM food.* | **maximum** *The release of the report was timed to generate maximum publicity.* | **favourable, good, positive** | **adverse, bad, negative, unfavourable, unwelcome** | **free** | **international, local, national**
- VERB + PUBLICITY **give sb/sth** | **gain, get, receive** | **attract, generate** | **seek** | **avoid, shun**
- PUBLICITY + VERB **surround sth** *There was a lot of negative publicity surrounding the film.*
- PREP. **~ about** *There has been a lot of unfavourable publicity about the hospital.* **~ for** *Taking part in the event will be good publicity for our school.* **~ over** *The firm had received bad publicity over a defective product.*
- PHRASES **amid/amidst a storm of publicity** *The chairman resigned amid a storm of publicity over the bonus payments.* **a blaze of publicity** *The film stars were married in a blaze of publicity.* **the glare of publicity** *He carried on his life in the full glare of publicity.*

2 advertising
- ADJ. **advance**
- PUBLICITY + NOUN **material, photograph, shot** *He's better-looking in his publicity shots than he is in real life.* | **campaign** | **stunt** *The actress denied that her marriage was just a publicity stunt.* | **agent, officer** | **machine** *The record company's publicity machine was working flat out.*
- PREP. **~ about** *I read some publicity about vaccinations while waiting my turn at the doctor's.* **~ for** *There have been months of advance publicity for the show.*
- PHRASES **a lack of publicity**

publicize *verb*

- ADV. **well** | **widely**
- VERB + PUBLICIZE **help (to)**
- PHRASES **little publicized, highly/much publicized** *her highly publicized affair with a leading politician*

publish *verb*

- ADV. **recently** | **posthumously** *Her last book was published posthumously in 1948.* | **anonymously**
- VERB + PUBLISH **decide to** | **intend to, plan to** | **refuse to** | **be free to** *The press should be free to publish and comment on all aspects of political and social life.* | **dare (to)** *Freud had not dared to publish the third chapter of his book in Vienna.*

publisher *noun*

- ADJ. **big, large, leading, major** *one of the country's biggest book publishers* | **small** | **local** *He's writing a history of the town for a local publisher.* | **commercial** | **mainstream** | **specialist** | **book, electronic, hardback, magazine, multimedia, music, newspaper, paperback, software** | **academic, educational, ELT, trade**
- VERB + PUBLISHER **find, have** *Finding a publisher is hard for all writers.* ◇ *She now has a publisher for her book.*

publishing *noun*

- ADJ. **book, newspaper, etc.** | **academic, music, etc.** *She works in music publishing.* | **desktop** | **electronic**
- VERB + PUBLISHING **work in**
- PUBLISHING + NOUN **agreement, deal** | **arm, company, firm, house** *The Cranfield Press is the publishing arm of the Cranfield Institute of Technology.* | **business, industry, sector, world** *The publishing world is extremely competitive.*

puff *noun*

1 of air/smoke/wind
- ADJ. **little, tiny**
- PREP. **~ of** *a little puff of smoke*

2 on a cigarette/pipe, etc.
- ADJ. **long** | **short**
- VERB + PUFF **have, take** *He took a long puff at his cigar and began his story.*
- PREP. **~ at/on** *a puff on her cigarette*

puff *verb*

1 smoke
- ADV. **furiously, vigorously**
- ADV. **contentedly, happily** | **thoughtfully** | **away** *He puffed away at his cigar.*
- PREP. **at** *She puffed furiously at her cigarette.* **on** *My father sat puffing contentedly on his pipe.*

2 breathe loudly
- ADV. **hard** *She was puffing quite hard by the time she reached the office.* | **loudly**
- PREP. **along, from** *She was still puffing from the climb.* **up** *puffing up the hill*
- PHRASES **huff and puff/puff and pant** *She puffed and panted behind the others.* **puffing and blowing** *Far behind us, puffing and blowing, came Matt.*

pull *noun*

1 act of pulling
- ADJ. **sharp** | **strong** | **gentle** | **downward** | **gravita-**

tional *the earth's gravitational pull* | **magnetic** (*figurative*) *The magnetic pull of the city was hard to resist.*
- VERB + PULL **give sth** *I gave the door a sharp pull.* | **feel** (*figurative*) *She felt the pull of her homeland.*
- PREP. **~ at** *A gentle pull at her sleeve got her attention.* **~ on** *He felt a strong pull on the rope.*

2 on a cigarette/drink
- ADJ. **long**
- VERB + PULL **take** *She took a long pull on her cigarette and sighed.*
- PREP. **~ at** *a pull at his flask* **~ on**

pull *verb*
- ADV. **hard** *He got hold of the rope and pulled hard.* | **gently** | **apart, off, on, out, over** *She pulled off her boots.* ◇ *He pulled his sweater on.* | **along, away, back** *She took his arm and pulled him along.* ◇ *The dog snapped at her and she pulled back her hand.*
- VERB + PULL **try to** *He tried to pull away.* | **manage to**
- PREP. **at** *He pulled at her coat sleeve.* **on** *She pulled on the lever.* **towards** *She pulled him gently towards her.*
- PHRASES **pull (yourself) free** *John finally managed to pull himself free.* **pull yourself to your feet**

pullover *noun*
- ADJ. **woollen, woolly** | **sleeveless** | **knitted** *She was wearing a knitted pullover.* | **Fair Isle**
- VERB + PULLOVER **knit**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

pulse *noun*
- ADJ. **fast, racing, rapid** | **slow** | **strong** | **faint, weak**
- VERB + PULSE **check, feel, take** *Last time I took my pulse, it was a bit fast.* | **check for, feel for** *She reached in through the driver's broken window and checked for a pulse.* | **find** | **quicken** *There was little to quicken the pulse in his dull routine.*
- PULSE + VERB **beat** | **quicken, race** *She felt her pulse quicken as she recognized the voice.* | **slow**
- PULSE + NOUN **rate** *My at-rest pulse rate is usually about 80 beats per minute.*

punch *noun*
- ADJ. **good, powerful** | **knockout**
- VERB + PUNCH **deliver, give sb, land, swing, throw** *She gave him a punch on the nose.* ◇ *He can throw a powerful punch.* | **pull** *He pulled his punches to avoid hurting his sparring partner.*
- PREP. **~ in** *a punch in the stomach* **~ on** *She gave him a punch on the nose.* **~ to** *a punch to the jaw*

punch *verb*
- ADV. **hard** | **lightly** | **repeatedly**
- PREP. **in** *His attacker had punched him hard in the face.* **on** *She punched him on the nose.*
- PHRASES **kick and punch/punch and kick** *He was repeatedly kicked and punched as he lay on the ground.*

puncture *noun*
- ADJ. **slow** *The tyre had a slow puncture and had to be pumped up every day.* | **bicycle**
- VERB + PUNCTURE **get, have, suffer** *She suffered a puncture in the fifth lap.* | **fix, mend, repair**

punish *verb*
- ADV. **severely** | **justifiably, justly** | **unfairly** | **accordingly, duly** *Those who had opposed the court were duly punished.*
- VERB + PUNISH **want to** | **try to** *He was trying to punish her for deserting him all those years ago.* | **be designed to** *Damages are not designed to punish the person in breach, but to compensate for the loss sustained.*
- PREP. **by** *Never punish children by making them go hungry.* **for** *They will be severely punished for their crimes.* **with** *Offenders will be punished with a £1 000 fine.*

punishment *noun*
- ADJ. **cruel, harsh, heavy, severe** | **unusual** *the constitutional prohibition on cruel and unusual punishment* | **appropriate, fitting** | **capital** | **corporal, physical**
- VERB + PUNISHMENT **administer, hand out, impose, inflict, mete out** *It is unlawful for a teacher to inflict corporal punishment on pupils.* ◇ *Harsh punishment is expected to be meted out to the murderer.* | **receive, suffer** | **avoid, escape** | **deserve**
- PUNISHMENT + VERB **fit the crime** *The victim's family do not believe that this punishment fits the crime.*
- PREP. **as ~ (for)** *She had to tidy the classroom as punishment for being late.* | **~ for** *Punishments for killing the king's deer were severe.*
- PHRASES **crime and punishment** *the sociology of crime and punishment* **on pain of punishment** (= with the threat of punishment) *He was compelled on pain of punishment to answer the question.* **reward and punishment** *They use a system of reward and punishment to discipline their children.*

pupil *noun*

1 child in school
- ADJ. **able, bright, good, star** | **first-year, second-year, etc.** | **older, senior** | **younger** | **disruptive** | **ex-, former** | **private** | **school** | **primary, secondary**
- VERB + PUPIL **teach** | **exclude, expel**
- PUPIL + NOUN **attendance, numbers** | **assessment** | **performance** | **behaviour**

2 of the eye
- ADJ. **dilated, enlarged**
- VERB + PUPIL **dilate**
- PUPIL + VERB **dilate**

puppet *noun*

1 model of a person/animal
- ADJ. **finger, glove, hand, rod, shadow**
- VERB + PUPPET **manipulate, work** *How do you work these puppets?*
- PUPPET + NOUN **play, show** | **theatre** | **master**

2 sb whose actions are controlled by sb else
- ADJ. **mere** *The king was a mere puppet of the mayor.*
- PUPPET + NOUN **government, king, regime, state**

purchase *noun*

1 buying sth
- ADJ. **cash** | **credit** | **online** | **bulk** *the bulk purchase of paper* | **outright** *Companies are moving away from outright purchase of company cars to contract hire.* | **compulsory** *The council applied for a compulsory purchase order on the the tennis courts.* | **arms, house, land, share**
- PURCHASE + NOUN **price** | **tax** | **order**
- PHRASES **the cost of purchase** *You can resell books and cut the original cost of purchase.* **the date/time of purchase** *I did not notice the defects at the time of purchase.* **the place/point of purchase** *Ticket holders should return to the point of purchase for a refund.* **proof of purchase** *Keep your receipt as proof of purchase.*

2 sth bought
- ADJ. **excellent, good** | **expensive**
- VERB + PURCHASE **make** *some ways to encourage customers to make a purchase* | **pay for**

purchase *verb*

- ADV. **compulsorily** *The land was compulsorily purchased from the owner to make way for the new road.*
- VERB + PURCHASE **agree to, be willing to | wish to | can/cannot afford to**
- PREP. **for** *They purchased the land for $1 million.* **from** *They purchased the house from an elderly couple.*

purity *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute** *the absolute purity of her love* | **great, high** *high-purity silver* | **ideological | racial | moral**
- VERB + PURITY **maintain, preserve** *He struggled to preserve his ideological purity.*
- PHRASES **purity of form/sound/style** *the building's unadorned purity of style*

purple *adj.*

- ADV. **almost | slightly**
- ADJ. **bright, vivid | dark, deep, rich | light, pale**
- PHRASES **purple in the face, purple with rage** *He turned purple with rage.*

⇨ Special page at COLOUR

purpose *noun*

1 aim/function

- ADJ. **limited | chief, main, primary, prime, principal | true | sole | practical, useful** *These bars serve no useful purpose.* | **general** *a general-purpose cleaning fluid* | **common** *a group of individuals sharing a common purpose* | **particular, special, specific | dual** *a toy with the dual purpose of entertaining and developing memory skills* | **stated | social** *the view that art should serve a social purpose*
- VERB + PURPOSE **have | lack | accomplish, achieve, fulfil, serve** *The scheme achieved its primary purpose, if nothing else.*
- PREP. **for a/the ~** *I put the chair there for a purpose.* ◇ *a measure introduced for the purpose of protecting the interests of investors* **on ~** (= intentionally) *He slammed the door on purpose.*
- PHRASES **at cross purposes** (= not understanding or having the same aims, etc. as each other) *I finally realized that we were talking at cross purposes.* **for/with the express purpose of sth** *The school was founded with the express purpose of teaching deaf children to speak.* **for (all) practical purposes** *Nominally she is the secretary, but for all practical purposes she runs the place.* **purpose-built** *The cycling events will take place in a purpose-built 20 000-seater stadium.* **your purpose in life** *She saw being a doctor as her purpose in life.* **put/use sth to (a/some) purpose** *The old mill has been put to good purpose.* **a sense of purpose** *Encouraged by her example, they all set to work with a fresh sense of purpose.* **strength of purpose** *They had great confidence and strength of purpose.*

2 **purposes** requirements of a particular situation

- ADJ. **administrative, business, commercial, domestic, educational, insurance, legal, medical, medicinal, political, research, tax, teaching** *You will need to have the vehicle valued for insurance purposes.*
- PREP. **for … ~** *The drug can be sold for medicinal purposes only.* **for the ~s of** *Let's assume he knows, for the purposes of our argument.*

pursue *verb*

1 continue sth/try to achieve sth

- ADV. **further, still | actively, energetically, vigorously | doggedly** *He was still doggedly pursuing his studies.* | **relentlessly | effectively, successfully** *How can we most effectively pursue these aims?*
- VERB + PURSUE **decide to** *We have decided not to pursue the matter further.* | **intend to, want to, wish to** *deciding on which career you wish to pursue* | **be/feel inclined to | be reluctant to | be able to, be at liberty to, be free to | continue to**
- PHRASES **the ability/freedom to pursue sth** *the freedom to pursue her own interests* **be not worth pursuing** *I decided the matter was not worth pursuing further.*

2 chase sb

- ADV. **relentlessly** *He pursued her relentlessly, refusing to take 'no' for an answer.*
- PHRASES **closely/hotly pursued by sb** *He ran past, hotly pursued by two policemen.*

pursuit *noun*

1 attempt to find sth

- ADJ. **relentless, ruthless, single-minded, vigorous | successful**
- VERB + PURSUIT **be engaged in**
- PREP. **in ~ of** *people travelling around the country in pursuit of work* | **~ of** *He is engaged in the ruthless pursuit of wealth.*
- PHRASES **the pursuit of a goal** *He devoted his waking hours to the single-minded pursuit of his goal.* **the pursuit of excellence/happiness/knowledge/pleasure/truth**

2 attempt to catch sb/sth

- VERB + PURSUIT **give** *The police gave pursuit.*
- PREP. **in ~ (of)** *Two boys ran past with a security guard in pursuit.* ◇ *The guard set off in pursuit of the thief.*
- PHRASES **in close/hot pursuit** *Away ran the fox, with the hunters in hot pursuit.*

3 (usually **pursuits**) pastime

- ADJ. **favourite, popular | active, energetic** *active leisure pursuits* | **country | indoor, outdoor | leisure, recreational | academic, artistic, cultural, educational, intellectual, sporting**
- VERB + PURSUIT **follow** *She has time now to follow her various artistic pursuits.*

pus *noun*

- ADJ. **yellow**
- VERB + PUS **discharge, ooze** *The wound had not healed properly and was oozing pus.*
- PUS + VERB **gather | ooze (out)**
- PUS + NOUN **cell**

push *noun*

1 act of pushing

- ADJ. **big, hard | gentle, little**
- VERB + PUSH **give sb/sth** *She gave him a gentle push towards the door.*
- PHRASES **at the push of a button** *The machine washes and dries at the push of a button.*

2 effort to do/obtain sth

- ADJ. **big | final**
- PREP. **~ against** *the final push against the enemy* **~ for** *There has been a big push for better public transport.* **~ towards** *a push towards organic food*

push *verb*

1 use force to move sb/sth away from you

- ADV. **firmly, hard** *You'll have to push harder if you want it to move.* | **roughly, violently | gently | carefully | deliberately** *He was deliberately pushed into the path of the vehicle.* | **hastily, hurriedly, quickly | slowly | suddenly | just, merely, simply** *Jack flung himself at Steve, but he simply pushed him away.* | **aside, away, back, down, home, inside, over, together** *She leaned on the door and pushed the bolt home.* ◇ *They pushed the two desks together.*
- VERB + PUSH **try to | manage to | begin to**
- PREP. **across, against** *The fans pushed against the barrier.* **at** *She pushed at the door but it wouldn't budge.* **into,**

off, out of *He pushed her roughly out of the door.* **through, to** *The woman had been pushed violently to the ground.* **towards, under** *She found a note pushed under the door.*
- PHRASES **push sth open/shut** *He managed to push the window open a few inches.*

2 move forward by pushing people
- ADV. **roughly | blindly**
- VERB + PUSH **try to | begin to** *I began to push my way through the crowd.*
- PREP. **past** *She pushed blindly past him and made for the door.* **through** *pushing through the crowd*
- PHRASES **push and shove** *People were pushing and shoving to get to the front.* **push your way** *A man pushed his way to the front of the crowd.*

3 put pressure on sb/yourself
- ADV. **hard** *Lucy should push herself a little harder.* **| too far** *Her parents are very tolerant, but sometimes she pushes them too far.* **| around** *Don't allow yourself to be pushed around by that bully.*
- PREP. **into** *Her parents pushed her into accepting the job.*
- PHRASES **push sb/yourself to the limit** *He felt he was being pushed to the limits of his self-control.*

PHRASAL VERB

push for sth
- ADV. **hard** *They're pushing hard for a ban on GM foods.*
- VERB + PUSH FOR STH **have to** *I'm going to have to push you for an answer.*

pushchair *noun*

- ADJ. **collapsible, folding**
- VERB + PUSHCHAIR **push (along), wheel (along) | collapse, fold (up)**
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

put *verb*

- ADV. **cleverly, well** *I thought you put your points very well.* **| badly | tactfully | bluntly, crudely | simply, succinctly** *Put simply, we accept their offer or go bankrupt.* **| mildly** (*ironic*) *I was, to put it mildly, annoyed* (= I was extremely angry).
- PHRASES **to put it another way** *He was too trusting—or, to put it another way, he had no head for business.*

puzzle *noun*

1 sth that is difficult to understand
- ADJ. **great | perplexing | scientific, theoretical**
- VERB + PUZZLE **solve | remain** *What happened to the ship remains a puzzle.*
- PUZZLE + VERB **remain** *The puzzle remains of what happened to the ship.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *They knew who the killer was, but there were still some gaps in the puzzle.* **| ~ about** *There is a puzzle about how the plant first came to Britain.* **~ of** *They're trying to solve the puzzle of how gravity works.*
- PHRASES **a bit/piece of the puzzle** *Another piece of the puzzle fell into place.* **the key to a puzzle** *Traces of explosives found among the wreckage were the key to the puzzle.* **a piece in the puzzle** *The police didn't know what the message meant, but it was another piece in the puzzle.* **a solution to a puzzle, something of a puzzle** *The origin of the word is something of a puzzle.*

2 game that tests your skill, intelligence, etc.
- ADJ. **crossword, jigsaw | number, picture, word | complicated**
- VERB + PUZZLE **do, solve**
- PUZZLE + NOUN **book**

puzzled *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *beginning to get a bit puzzled* **| remain**
- ADV. **extremely, very | a bit, faintly, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat | genuinely | clearly, obviously**
- PREP. **about** *You look very puzzled about something.* **at** *I was somewhat puzzled at his unwillingness to help.* **by** *Mrs Sykes seemed slightly puzzled by this.*

pyjamas *noun*

- QUANT. **pair**
- PYJAMA + NOUN **jacket, top | bottoms, trousers** *wearing only his pyjama trousers*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

Qq

qualification *noun*

1 skill/knowledge needed for a job, etc.
- ADJ. **formal, paper, recognized | basic, minimum | entry | further | appropriate, necessary | special, specialist | management, professional, vocational | academic, educational, postgraduate | technical | legal, medical, secretarial, teaching, etc.**
- VERB + QUALIFICATION **acquire, gain, obtain | have, hold** *Only two of the applicants had the necessary qualifications.*
- QUALIFICATION + NOUN **course, programme** *a qualification programme in business management* | **period** *The job usually has a three-year qualification period.*
- PREP. **~ for** *the minimum entry qualification for admission* **~ in** *He held no formal qualification in law.*

2 weakening of a statement
- ADJ. **important**
- VERB + QUALIFICATION **add | need, require** *The term 'population' as used here requires qualification.*
- PREP. **with ~s** *I agree with his view, with a few qualifications.* **without ~** *The committee supported her proposal, without qualification.*

qualified *adj.*

1 having completed a course of study
- VERBS **be | become, get**
- ADV. **highly, well** *The teaching staff are all highly qualified.* | **fully, properly** *a fully qualified electrician* | **newly, recently** *newly qualified doctors* | **appropriately, duly, suitably** *Applications are invited from suitably qualified individuals.* | **sufficiently | legally, medically, professionally** *She is a professionally qualified social worker.*
- PREP. **as** *She is now qualified as a teacher.*

2 having the skill needed to do sth
- VERBS **be, feel** *Elaine did not feel qualified to comment.*
- ADV. **eminently, ideally, well** *My father was well qualified to act the part of a head teacher.*

3 limited in some way
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **heavily** *The proposals received heavily qualified approval.*

qualify *verb*

1 have/give sb the right to sth
- ADV. **automatically**
- PREP. **for** *You will automatically qualify for a pension.*
- PHRASES **qualify on the grounds of sth** *people who qualify for the grant on the grounds of disability*

2 for a sports competition
- ADV. **easily | duly** *South Korea duly qualified for the finals when they beat Italy 6–1.*
- VERB + QUALIFY **fail to**
- PREP. **for** *England failed to qualify for the final.*

3 fit a description
- ADV. **hardly**
- PREP. **as** *A three-week course hardly qualifies as sufficient training.*

quality *noun*

1 how good/bad sth is
- ADJ. **excellent, good, high, outstanding, superior, top** *All our cakes are made with top quality ingredients.* | **inferior, low, poor | variable | product, service | recording, sound | air, water | artistic, technical**
- VERB + QUALITY **maintain | enhance, improve, raise | affect, impair, reduce | assess, determine, evaluate, monitor, test**
- QUALITY + VERB **improve | suffer** *When costs are cut product quality suffers.*
- QUALITY + NOUN **control | assurance | standards**
- PREP. **of … ~** *The photos are of variable quality.*
- PHRASES **quality of life** *Advances in technology would, it was hoped, improve the quality of life.*

2 characteristic
- ADJ. **admirable, desirable, fine, good, great, positive, valuable | negative | redeeming** *I found him thoroughly unpleasant, with no redeeming qualities whatsoever.* | **individual, personal | inborn, inherent, innate, intrinsic | distinctive, particular, special, unique | elusive, rare** *a singer with that elusive quality that sells records* | **essential, important | aesthetic, artistic, literary | moral | mental, psychological | feminine, masculine | leadership, managerial | aphrodisiac, medicinal**
- VERB + QUALITY **have | display, show**

quantity *noun*

- ADJ. **appreciable, considerable, enormous, fair, great, huge, large, massive, prodigious, sheer, substantial, vast | minute, modest, small | maximum, minimum | increasing | average | sufficient** *Gas was detected in sufficient quantity to warrant careful monitoring.*
- PREP. **in ~** *There is a discount for goods bought in quantity.* | **~ of** *A quantity of jewellery was taken during the burglary.*

quarantine *noun*

- ADJ. **strict**
- VERB + QUARANTINE **keep sb/sth in, put sb/sth in**
- QUARANTINE + NOUN **period | regulations**
- PREP. **in ~** *The animals are still in quarantine at the port.*

quarrel *noun*

- ADJ. **bitter, fierce, serious, violent | family, internal, lovers', private | long-standing, old**
- VERB + QUARREL **have | pick** *I don't want to pick a quarrel with her.* | **be/become/get involved in | make up, patch up, settle**
- QUARREL + VERB **break out, ensue**
- PREP. **~ about** *a quarrel about money* **~ between** *a quarrel between family members* **~ over** *a quarrel over the ownership of a piece of land* **~ with** *Our quarrel is not with the people, but with their leader.*
- PHRASES **have no quarrel with sb/sth** *We have no quarrel with their plans, in fact we support them.*

quarrel *verb*

- ADV. **bitterly, fiercely, violently**
- PREP. **about, over** *What did you two quarrel about?* **with** *He wished he hadn't quarrelled with Tania.*

quarter *noun*

1 one of four equal parts into which sth is divided
- VERB + QUARTER **break/cut/divide/fold sth into ~s**
- PREP. **~ of** *a quarter of a century/mile/million ◇ a quarter of an hour ◇ a quarter of all potential customers*

2 period of three months

- ADJ. **first, second, third, fourth/last** *Profits fell during the third quarter.* | **current, previous**
- PREP. **during the ~**

3 part of a town

- ADJ. **old** | **Arab, Chinese, Latin, etc.** | **diplomatic, historic, industrial, residential**

4 **quarters** place to live in

- ADJ. **comfortable, spacious** | **confined, cramped, modest** | **private** *the president's private quarters* | **living, sleeping** | **officers', servants', soldiers'** | **married** *The corporal and his family lived in married quarters.*
- VERB + QUARTERS **be confined to** *He was confined to quarters as a punishment.*

queen *noun*

1 female ruler/wife of a king

- ADJ. **rightful** | **crowned** | **future**
- VERB + QUEEN **become** | **crown (sb), make sb, proclaim sb** *She was crowned queen at the age of fifteen.* | **depose, put aside**
- QUEEN + VERB **reign, rule, rule (over) sb/sth** | **abdicate** *the queen's decision to abdicate*
- PREP. **under a/the ~** *England under Queen Elizabeth I* | **~ of** *the Queen of France*
- PHRASES **queen consort** (= the wife of a king)

2 playing card

⇨ Note at CARD

query *noun*

- VERB + QUERY **have** *If you have any queries regarding this offer, simply call our helpline.* | **raise** | **send in, write in with** | **put** *I've a query to put to the last speaker.* | **answer, deal with, reply to, respond to**
- PREP. **~ about/as to/concerning/on/regarding/relating to** *Have you any queries about what you're supposed to do?* ◇ *We regret that we cannot deal with queries on individual cases.* **~ from** *We had queries from people all over the country.*

quest *noun*

- ADJ. **continuing, endless, eternal, relentless** | **religious, spiritual**
- VERB + QUEST **begin, embark on, go on, set off on** | **continue, pursue** *The team will continue its quest for Olympic gold this afternoon.* | **abandon**
- QUEST + VERB **end** *It is possible that his quest will end in Geneva.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *an important stage in their quest for truth* **in ~ of** *We set off in quest of the perfect wedding dress.* | **~ for** *her quest for a better life*

question *noun*

1 sentence, etc. that asks sth

- ADJ. **pointed, probing, searching** *He became embarrassed when a journalist asked him pointed questions about his finances.* | **awkward, difficult, embarrassing, tricky** | **personal** | **academic, hypothetical, rhetorical** | **leading, loaded** *The judge told him not to ask the witness leading questions.* | **good, pertinent, relevant** | **simple** | **daft, inane, silly, stupid** | **direct, straight** *I wanted to find out how old he was without asking him a direct question.* | **exam, multiple choice, quiz, test**
- VERB + QUESTION **ask (sb)** | **have** *Have any of the audience got questions for our speaker?* | **address, put** *I'd like to put a question to the first speaker.* | **bombard sb with, fire** *The children bombarded us with questions.* ◇ *The interview panel fired questions at me from all angles.* | **frame, phrase** *I need to phrase my question rather carefully.* | **face** | **answer, reply to, respond to** | **do** (used only about written questions) *I couldn't do Question 6.* | **field** *The chairperson fielded technical questions that she could not answer herself.* | **evade, parry** *He skilfully parried all the interviewer's most probing questions.*
- PREP. **~ about** *She refused to answer questions about her private life.* **~ as to** *Don't be afraid to ask questions as to why things are done in the way they are.* **~ concerning/regarding/relating to** *The former minister faced questions concerning his role in the affair.*

2 issue

- ADJ. **burning, challenging, controversial, difficult, unanswerable, vexed** *We come now to the vexed question of pension rights.* | **crucial, fundamental, important, key** | **delicate, sensitive** | **economic, ethical, political, etc.**
- VERB + QUESTION **bring up, pose, raise** *The new play poses some challenging questions.* | **consider, discuss, examine** | **address, deal with, face, tackle** | **answer, decide, find a solution to** | **come to**
- QUESTION + VERB **arise** | **remain unanswered** *Only one question remains unanswered.*
- PREP. **~ about** *fundamental questions about the nature of our society* **~ for** *one of the crucial questions for the jury* **~ of** *questions of national security* ◇ *Now it's just a question of getting the wording of the statement right.*

3 doubt

- VERB + QUESTION **come into** | **call into** *It does call into question the decision to send troops into the area.* | **be open to** *The government's handling of the whole affair remains open to question.*
- PREP. **beyond ~** *Her loyalty is beyond question.* **in ~** *His sincerity is not in question.* **without ~** *It was, without question, the worst day of my life.* | **~ about** *There is no question about her enthusiasm for the job.* **~ as to** *I did have some questions as to his motive in coming.*

question *verb*

- ADV. **closely, further**
- PREP. **about** *She was closely questioned about her whereabouts on the night of the murder.* **in connection with** *A man is being questioned in connection with the robbery.* **on** *He was questioned on his role in the affair.*

questionable *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **highly, very** *Their motives for undertaking this study are highly questionable.* | **rather, somewhat**

questioning *noun*

- ADJ. **careful, close** | **direct** *She decided to confront her boss about the situation with direct questioning.* | **intensive** | **hostile, tough** | **gentle** | **fundamental**
- VERB + QUESTIONING **face** | **be wanted for** | **be detained for, be held for** *Four suspects have been detained for questioning in connection with the incident.*
- PREP. **on ~** *On closer questioning, I discovered that his whole story had been a lie.* **under ~** *The suspect remained silent under questioning.* | **~ about/on/over** *The prime minister faced tough questioning about his plans.* **~ by** *The man was released after questioning by detectives.* **~ from** *The group chairman faced hostile questioning from angry shareholders.*

question mark *noun*

- ADJ. **big, huge, serious**
- VERB + QUESTION MARK **put** *His arrival clearly puts a huge question mark against the future of the present team captain.*
- QUESTION MARK + VERB **hang over sth, remain** *A big question mark hangs over the wisdom of the move.*
- PREP. **~ against** *A slight question mark against her character remains.* **~ over** *There is now a serious question mark over his leadership ability.*

questionnaire *noun*

- ADJ. **short, simple | detailed, lengthy | postal**
- VERB + QUESTIONNAIRE **design, draw up, prepare | circulate, distribute, send (out) | receive | complete, fill in/out | reply to, respond to, return, send in** *Most of the staff who responded to the questionnaire were supportive.* | **analyse** *The college is now analysing thousands of questionnaires.*
- PREP. **~about** *Local companies were asked to complete a questionnaire about their exports.* **~concerning** *questionnaires concerning people's leisure preferences* **~on** *a questionnaire on the environment*

queue *noun*

- ADJ. **endless, long | growing, lengthening | orderly** *Please form an orderly queue.* | **bus, checkout, cinema, etc. | bread, dinner, food** *the country's soaring prices and growing food queues* | **traffic | dole** *More unemployed people are joining the dole queue each week.*
- VERB + QUEUE **form, line up in | join, stand in, wait in** *He had to join the queue for the toilets.* | **jump** *Don't jump the queue—take your turn like everyone else!*
- QUEUE + VERB **form | build up, grow** *Long queues are building up on most of Britain's motorways.* | **move** *The queue's not moving at all.* | **stretch** *The queue stretched for more than a mile.*
- PREP. **in a/the~** *the people in the queue* | **~for** *the queue for tickets* **~of** *a long queue of shoppers*
- PHRASES **the back/end of the queue, the front/head of the queue**

queue *verb*

- ADV. **patiently | up** *People queued up outside.*
- VERB + QUEUE **have to**
- PREP. **for** *We had to queue for tickets.*

quick *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** *We'd better be quick.* | **become, get**
- ADV. **extremely, particularly, really, very** *a really quick worker* | **fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively | amazingly, remarkably, surprisingly | mercifully** *It was a mercifully quick end for those condemned to die.*
- PREP. **at** *I was getting quite quick at putting up fences.*
- PHRASES **quick and easy** *meals that are quick and easy to prepare*

quiet *noun*

- ADJ. **comparative, relative** *a period of comparative quiet* | **sudden**
- VERB + QUIET **call for** *A man's voice was calling for quiet.* | **shatter** *A machine gun shattered the quiet.*
- QUIET + VERB **follow** *in the sudden quiet that followed the gunshot*
- PHRASES **peace and quiet** *I'm going home for a bit of peace and quiet!* **a place/time of quiet** *She made sure she had times of quiet in which to write.*

quiet *adj.*

1 with little or no noise; not talking

- VERBS **be | become, fall, go, grow | lie, keep, remain, sit, stay** *Just sit quiet for a moment, there's a good boy.* | **keep sb/sth** *Keep that dog quiet, will you!*
- ADV. **all, extraordinarily, extremely, really, remarkably, unusually, very** *Suddenly the room went all quiet.* | **absolutely, completely, perfectly | fairly, pretty, rather | enough | blissfully | deathly, eerily** *The house was eerily quiet.* | **dangerously, ominously** *His voice was dangerously quiet as he asked the question.* | **oddly, strangely, unnaturally** *She went back to a strangely quiet house.* | **uncharacteristically**
- PREP. **about** *I knew I had to keep quiet about it.*
- PHRASES **nice (and) quiet** *I was looking forward to a nice quiet afternoon.*

2 without much activity

- VERBS **be, look, seem | become | lie, remain, sit** *Lie quiet for an hour and you'll feel better.* | **keep sb/sth** *Keep the patient as quiet as possible.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, reasonably, relatively | enough** *Things seemed quiet enough, but it was an uneasy calm.*

quirk *noun*

- ADJ. **curious, odd, peculiar, strange | little**
- VERB + QUIRK **have** *The system has some odd little quirks.*
- PREP. **by a~of** *By a strange quirk of fate, she later married the first boyfriend she'd ever had.* | **~in** *as a result of some quirk in the social order*
- PHRASES **a quirk of fate**

quit *verb*

- VERB + QUIT **try to** *I'm still trying to quit smoking.* | **decide to | threaten to | be forced to, have to**
- PREP. **as** *He was forced to quit as the team's manager.* **over** *Their longest-serving employee is threatening to quit over pay.*
- PHRASES **give/issue notice to quit** *Landlords are normally required to give 28 days' written notice to quit.*

quiz *noun*

- ADJ. **film, general knowledge, sports, etc.**
- VERB + QUIZ **compile | hold, organize | enter, take part in | win**
- QUIZ + NOUN **competition, game, programme, show | evening, night** *The pub has a quiz night every Wednesday.* | **question**
- PREP. **~about** *a quiz about the week's news*

quota *noun*

- ADJ. **full** *He never takes his full quota of holidays.* | **annual, daily, monthly, weekly | national | fishing, milk, etc.** *the introduction of EU milk quotas* | **export, import, production**
- VERB + QUOTA **agree, determine, establish, set | allocate, impose, introduce | increase | reduce | achieve, fill, fulfil, reach** *We had to increase our output to fill the quota by the end of the year.* | **exceed** *Many countries are still exceeding their quotas.*
- QUOTA + NOUN **system**
- PREP. **~for** *quotas for oil production* **~on** *national quotas on imports of cars*

quotation *noun*

1 words taken from a book, etc.

- ADJ. **famous, memorable | direct, verbatim** *a direct quotation from a recent speech by the prime minister* | **illustrative | biblical**
- VERB + QUOTATION **take** *My quotation is taken from 'Hamlet'.*
- QUOTATION + VERB **come from sth** *Where does that quotation come from?*
- QUOTATION + NOUN **dictionary**
- PREP. **~from** *It's a quotation from a poem by Keats.*

2 price that will be charged for a piece of work

- ADJ. **written | free | detailed**
- VERB + QUOTATION **give (sb), provide (sb with), supply (sb with)** *Most builders will give you a free quotation.* | **get, obtain | accept**
- PREP. **~for** *Always get several quotations for the job.*

quote *noun*

1 words taken from a book, etc.

- ADJ. **famous**, **memorable**, **quotable** | **direct**, **verbatim** *a direct quote from this morning's paper*
- VERB + QUOTE **take** *quotes taken from various lifestyle magazines*
- QUOTE + VERB **come from sth** *The quote of the week comes from Mae West.*
- PREP. **~from** *a quote from Albert Einstein*

2 price that will be charged for a piece of work

- ADJ. **written** | **free**
- VERB + QUOTE **give (sb)** | **get**, **obtain** *Always get a written quote before proceeding with work.* | **accept**
- PREP. **~for** *a quote for the hire of the equipment*

quote *verb*

1 repeat exactly what sb has said/written

- ADV. **at length, extensively** *She quotes extensively from the author's diaries.* | **in full** *The passage is quoted in full.* | **accurately**, **exactly** | **directly** | **approvingly**, **with approval** | **above, below, earlier, here, previously** *The new text of Article 92, quoted above, gives member states more discretion on this issue.*
- PREP. **as** *She is wrongly quoted as saying 'Play it again, Sam.'* **from** *quoting from Shakespeare/'Hamlet'*

2 give sth as an example

- ADV. **frequently, often**
- PREP. **as** *an example that is often quoted as evidence of mismanagement* **on** *Don't quote me on this but I think the figure is in excess of £2 billion.*
- PHRASES **widely quoted** *the most widely quoted and influential study in this field*

Rr

rabbit *noun*

• VERB + RABBIT **hunt, shoot, trap | skin**
• RABBIT + VERB **hop, jump | bolt, run** *A frightened rabbit will bolt for its hole.* | **breed** *Rabbits breed very fast.*
• RABBIT + NOUN **fur, skin | burrow, hole, hutch, warren** (*often figurative*) *The building was a real rabbit warren of corridors.*

race *noun*

1 contest to find the fastest person, car, etc.
• ADJ. **big** *I get very nervous before a big race.* | **close, tight | long-distance | 10-kilometre, 24-hour, 7-lap, etc. | gruelling, hard, tough | relay, road | men's, women's | boat, motor, motorbike, yacht, etc. | dog, horse, etc. | Grand Prix, World Cup, etc.**
• VERB + RACE **have, hold, organize, stage** *Let's have a race!* | **be in, compete in, enter, go in for, run in, take part in** *Is she running in the big race on Saturday?* | **drop out of, pull out of, withdraw (sth) from** *He dropped out of the race with a pulled muscle after two laps.* ◇ *She had to pull out of the race at the last minute.* | **lead, win** *I was leading the race until the half-way point.* ◇ *She has won the race for the last five years.* | **lose | come first/second, etc. in | beat sb/sth in | fix** *There is a rumour that the race was fixed.* | **throw** (= to lose deliberately) *He was paid £1 000 to throw the race.*
• RACE + VERB **be run/held, take place**
• RACE + NOUN **meeting** *The horse was withdrawn from today's race meeting with an injured leg.* | **winner | official, organizer**
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *I'm not in this race.* | **~ against/with** *the race against the Danish team* **~ between** *the University Boat Race between Oxford and Cambridge* **~ over** *a race over 200 metres*

2 competitive situation
• ADJ. **two-horse** *Although there are five candidates, realistically it is a two-horse race.* | **presidential | arms** *the halting of the nuclear arms race*
• VERB + RACE **be (involved) in, join** *The rival TV companies are in a race to bring out the first film drama of his life.* | **be ahead in, lead, win** *Who will win the race for the White House?* | **be left behind in, lag behind in, lose**
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *lagging behind in the race for the presidency* | **~ between** *a race between the developing countries* **~ for** *the race for nuclear supremacy* **~ with** *the race with their rivals*

3 racial group
• ADJ. **human | mixed** *a child of mixed race* | **Irish, Jewish, Latin, etc. | master** *the ideology of the master race*
• RACE + NOUN **relations** *Immigration and race relations were key political issues at the time.* | **equality | discrimination, prejudice | riot**
• PREP. **among ~s** *The disease is more common among European races.* **between ~s** *greater understanding between nations and races* **from a ~** *children from all races and religions* **of a ~** *people of different races and cultures* | **~ of** *The Amazons were a race of female warriors.*
• PHRASES **on (the) grounds of race** *discriminating against people on the grounds of race*

race *verb*

• ADV. **frantically, madly** *She raced frantically towards the train.* | **ahead, away, back, by, downstairs, off, out, past, upstairs** *Farms and villages raced by.*
• PREP. **across, after, along, around/round, down, for, into, out of, through, to, towards, up** *He raced madly up the stairs.*
• PHRASES **come racing** *Two boys suddenly came racing round the corner.*

racing *noun*

1 sport of racing horses
• ADJ. **horse | flat, jump**
• RACING + NOUN **results | tip | expert, tipster** *Her racing tipster got the Derby winner right.* | **manager, owner, trainer | career | stable | trophy | calendar, programme, season** *He organizes his life according to the racing calendar.* | **business, game, industry** *He has ridden horses all his life, but he was a late starter in the racing game.* | **circles, scene** *He's known in racing circles as a fierce competitor.* ◇ *She's a familiar face on the racing scene.* | **correspondent** *the racing correspondent of 'The Times'*

2 sport of taking part in races
• ADJ. **competitive, top-level** *Today's cross-country event marks his return to top-level racing.* | **bike, dog, motor, yacht, etc. | Grand Prix | road, track**
• RACING + NOUN **champion | legend, star** *racing legend Ayrton Senna* | **cyclist, driver | team | programme, season | scene | career, days | debut** *He made his racing debut for Benetton three years ago.* | **car | circuit** *The bikes sped by on the racing circuit.* | **enthusiast, fan**

racism *noun*

• ADJ. **blatant, overt** *I was shocked by the blatant racism of his remarks.* | **rampant** *Racism is rampant in the armed forces.* | **institutional, institutionalized**
• VERB + RACISM **be a victim of, experience** *Many immigrants have experienced racism.* | **combat, fight (against), stamp out** *measures to combat racism*
• PREP. **against ~** *the fight against racism*
• PHRASES **a form of racism**

rack *noun*

• ADJ. **display, storage | cooling, drying | letter, luggage, magazine, plate, spice, toast, vegetable, wine, etc. | roof** *We fixed the canoe onto the car's roof rack.*
• VERB + RACK **hang sth on, put sth on/onto/in/into, stack sth in/on, store sth in/on** *The wine is stored in special racks.*
• RACK + VERB **contain sth, hold sth** *The racks along the wall held most of the costumes.*
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *He replaced the CD in the rack.* **on a/the ~** *Spread the flowers out to dry on a rack.* | **~ for** *a rack for storing apples* **~ of** *racks of magazines*

racket *noun*

1 noise
• ADJ. **appalling, frightful, hellish, terrible**
• VERB + RACKET **make** *Do you kids have to make such a terrible racket?*
• PREP. **above/over the ~** *He had to shout over the racket.*

2 illegal way of making money
• ADJ. **drugs, extortion, protection, smuggling**
• VERB + RACKET **set up** *He set up a protection racket and demanded thousands of pounds from local shopkeepers.* | **control, operate, run | be involved in**

- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the other people in this racket* | **~ in** *a racket in stolen goods*

radar *noun*

- ADJ. **enemy, police**
- VERB + RADAR **be equipped with**
- RADAR + NOUN **operator** | **screen** | **beam, signal** | **equipment, scanner, station, system, transmitter**
- PREP. **by ~** *navigating by radar* **on ~** *The submarine is impossible to detect on radar.*

radiation *noun*

- ADJ. **background** | **low-level** | **harmful** | **electromagnetic, gravitational, infrared, microwave, nuclear, solar, thermal, ultraviolet**
- QUANT. **dose** *Patients receive high doses of radiation during cancer treatment.*
- VERB + RADIATION **emit, give off** | **absorb** *The ozone layer absorbs solar radiation.* | **measure, monitor** | **expose sb to** *Nuclear testing has exposed millions of people to radiation.*
- RADIATION + NOUN **sickness** | **leak** | **dose, level** | **exposure** | **therapy**
- PREP. **~ from** *radiation from computer screens*

radiator *noun*

1 equipment used for heating a room
- ADJ. **central heating, convector, storage**
- VERB + RADIATOR **turn off/on** | **bleed** *You'll need to bleed the radiators to remove the airlocks.*
- RADIATOR + VERB **leak**
- RADIATOR + NOUN **key, valve**

2 equipment for keeping an engine cool
- ADJ. **car**
- VERB + RADIATOR **top up** *Top up the radiator before making a long journey.*
- RADIATOR + NOUN **grille**

radical *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound** | **become**
- ADV. **really, very** | **increasingly** | **fairly, quite, somewhat** | **genuinely, truly** *a truly radical concept* | **apparently** | **potentially** | **politically, socially**

radio *noun*

- ADJ. **cab, car** *There were calls for cab radios to link train drivers and signal boxes.* | **CB, mobile, portable, transistor, two-way** | **FM, long-wave, short-wave** | **army, police** | **community, local, national, state**
- VERB + RADIO **listen to** | **turn on, tune in to** | **tune** *His radio is permanently tuned to Radio 1.* | **turn down/up**
- RADIO + VERB **announce sth, report sth** *The radio announced that the president had been assassinated.* | **blare (out), play (sth)** *He drove along with his windows open and the radio blaring out.*
- RADIO + NOUN **receiver, set** | **alarm, cassette (player)** | **message, signal, waves** | **operator** | **system** | **transmitter** | **silence** *The troops maintained a strict radio silence while they moved into position.* | **station** | **advertisement, broadcast, interview, news, programme, report, show, transmission** | **frequency** | **amateur, ham** *The distress call was picked up by a young radio ham.* | **drama, play**
- PREP. **by ~** *The message was sent by radio.* **on the ~** *We were listening to a show on the radio.*

radioactive *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **dangerously, highly** | **slightly**

radioactivity *noun*

- QUANT. **level** *The soil contains 30 times the acceptable level of radioactivity.*
- VERB + RADIOACTIVITY **discharge, produce, release** | **measure, monitor**
- RADIOACTIVITY + VERB **be present** | **escape, leak** | **contaminate sth** *The site was found to be contaminated by radioactivity.*
- RADIOACTIVITY + NOUN **levels**

raffle *noun*

- ADJ. **charity**
- VERB + RAFFLE **have, hold, organize, run** | **enter** | **win** | **draw** *The club secretary will now draw the raffle.*
- RAFFLE + NOUN **ticket** *the winning raffle ticket* | **prize**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *I won a bottle of wine in the office Christmas raffle.* | **~ for** *He's organizing a raffle for the school playground appeal fund.*

raft *noun*

- ADJ. **life**
- VERB + RAFT **build, make** *They built a raft of logs.*
- RAFT + VERB **bob, float, sail** *The raft floated away down the river.* | **capsize, overturn**
- RAFT + NOUN **race, racing**
- PREP. **on/onto a/the ~** *floating on a raft*

rag *noun*

- ADJ. **clean** | **dirty, filthy, oily, old** | **bloodstained**
- QUANT. **bundle, heap, pile** *He noticed what looked like a bundle of rags beside the road.*
- VERB + RAG **wipe sth (off) with** | **be wrapped in** *The gun was wrapped in a dirty rag.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *He wiped his hands on an oily rag.* **with a ~** *I cleaned the board with an old rag.*

rage *noun*

1 great anger
- ADJ. **blind, cold, icy, pure** | **helpless, impotent** *burning with impotent rage* | **pent-up, suppressed**
- QUANT. **fit, burst** *He punched the wall in a fit of rage.*
- VERB + RAGE **be beside yourself with, be boiling/burning with, be choked with, be filled with, be full of, be purple/red/white with, be rigid/stiff with, be shaking/trembling with, feel, seethe with** *He glared at me, quite beside himself with rage.* ◇ *'How dare you!' she said, her voice choked with rage.* | **vent** *The people vented their rage on government buildings.* | **control, master** *He managed to master his rage.*
- RAGE + VERB **build up** *She felt the rage building up inside her.* | **erupt** *His rage suddenly erupted.* | **subside** *His rage was beginning to subside.*
- PREP. **with ~** *She was speechless with rage.* | **~ at** *boiling with rage at the unfairness of it all*
- PHRASES **a bellow/cry/roar/shout of rage** *He gave a roar of rage and punched me in the face.* **tears of rage**

2 sudden display of great anger
- ADJ. **blind, terrible, towering** | **jealous** | **drunken** *She smashed up his car in a drunken rage.*
- VERB + RAGE **be in, fly into, get in** *If something's too difficult she gets in a rage.*
- PREP. **in a ~** *She killed him in a rage of despair.* | **~ about** *He was in a towering rage about his lost watch.* **~ at** *He flew into a rage at the insult.* **~ of** *He left in a rage of humiliation.*

rage *verb*

1 show great anger
- ADV. **inwardly**

- PREP. **about** *She was still raging about the treatment she had received.* **against** *I raged inwardly against his injustice.* **at** *The team was left raging at the referee's decision.*

2 continue with great force

- ADV. **still, on** *The argument still rages on.*
- PREP. **around** *Even the dogs were quiet while the heated quarrel raged around them.* **within** *trying to control the fury raging within her*
- PHRASES **rage unabated** *The storm raged unabated.*

raid *noun*

1 surprise attack

- ADJ. **daring | destructive, heavy, major | punitive, retaliatory, revenge | dawn, daylight, night | border, cross-border | air, bombing | commando, guerrilla**
- VERB + RAID **carry out, conduct, make** *bombers carrying out daylight raids over northern France* | **launch, mount, stage | lead sb in | suffer**
- PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *Five civilians died in the raid.* **on a/the ~** *He led his men on a cross-border raid.* | **~ against** *The raids against Norway continued.* **~ by** *The town suffered several raids by Vikings.* **~ on** *air raids on Liverpool*

2 robbery from a building

- ADJ. **bank, post office, shop | armed, smash-and-grab | dawn, daylight, night | daring**
- VERB + RAID **plan | carry out | foil** *Two customers have foiled a smash-and-grab raid on a local shop.*
- PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *the jewels stolen in the raid* | **~ on** *She was shot during an armed raid on a security van.*

3 surprise visit by the police

- ADJ. **dawn, early morning | police | drug/drugs**
- VERB + RAID **carry out, launch, stage** *Police staged an early morning raid on the premises.*
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *He was injured during a police raid on his nightclub.* **in a/the ~** *the drugs seized in last night's raid* | **~ by** *a raid by drugs squad detectives* **~ on** *raids on houses in Catholic areas of the city*

rail *noun*

1 bar

- ADJ. **guard, safety | curtain, picture, towel** *heated towel rails* | **altar, balcony, banister**
- VERB + RAIL **grip, hold on to, lean on** *She held tightly on to the rail.* | **hang from** *Lace curtains hung from the brass rails over the bed.* | **fit, fix**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *She sat on the rail.* **over a/the ~** *He folded the towel over the rail.*

2 (usually **rails**) tracks

- VERB + RAIL **run along/on ~s** *Trams run along rails.*
- PREP. **along (the) ~s** *The train thundered along the rails.* **between the ~** *Weeds grew between the rails.* **off the ~s** *The train came off the rails.* **on (the) ~s** *The gun is mounted on rails.*

3 railway system

- RAIL + NOUN **fare, ticket | network** *modernizing the rail network* | **route | timetable | service | connection, line, link** *the Channel Tunnel rail link* | **journey | commuter, passenger, traveller, user | transport, travel | traffic | freight | bridge | accident, crash, disaster | employee, staff, worker | union | enthusiast**
- PREP. **by ~** *We went from London to Budapest by rail.*

railway *noun*

- ADJ. **mainline | high-speed | disused | narrow gauge, standard gauge | miniature** *A miniature railway runs around the park.* | **model | funicular, overhead** *Tourists can take the funicular railway to the top of the mountain.* | **private, regional, state | electric, steam**
- VERB + RAILWAY **manage, operate, run | nationalize, privatize | build, construct | close, open**
- RAILWAY + VERB **run | carry sth** *The railways carry millions of tons of freight every year.*
- RAILWAY + NOUN **carriage, coach, train, wagon | station, terminus | platform | ticket | ticket office | timetable | service | connection | journey, travel** *the pleasures of railway travel* | **passenger, traveller | employee, porter, staff, worker | architect, engineer | authorities, company | network, system | line, track | junction, sidings | bridge, tunnel, viaduct | enthusiast** *He is a lifelong railway enthusiast.* | **accident | age** *Such speed of travel was unimaginable before the railway age.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *doing maintenance work on the railway ◇ He works on the railways.* | **~ between** *the railway between Funchal and Monte* **~ from, ~ to**

rain *noun*

- ADJ. **driving, heavy, lashing, pouring, torrential | steady | fine, gentle, light, patchy** *The fine rain turned to mist in the early evening. ◇ The forecast is for wind and patchy rain.* | **warm | cold | constant, continuous, persistent | intermittent | overnight** *Overnight rain had freshened up the garden.* | **monsoon, tropical** *The monsoon rains started early this year.* | **autumn, spring, etc.**
- QUANT. **drop, spot** *A few spots of rain had fallen.* | **inch, shower, spot** (*informal*) *We had three inches of rain last night. ◇ We could do with a spot of rain.*
- VERB + RAIN **forecast** *Rain is forecast for tomorrow.* | **look like, threaten** *It looks like rain* (= it looks as though it is going to rain). *◇ Black clouds threatened rain.* | **pour with** *It poured with rain all afternoon.* | **get caught in** *We got caught in the rain on the way home.*
- RAIN + VERB **beat, come down, drip, drum, fall, lash, patter, pelt, pour down, splash, trickle** *Rain beat against the window all night. ◇ Rain dripped down his collar.* | **come, set in, start** *The rain came just as we set off. ◇ The rain had set in steadily by the time we got home.* | **cease, let up, stop** *The rain didn't let up all day.* | **continue** *The rain continued for most of the day.* | **threaten** *With rain threatening, we headed home as fast as we could.* | **drive sb** *The rain drove the players off the court.*
- RAIN + NOUN **cloud, water**
- PREP. **in the ~** *We found her sitting in the pouring rain.* **out of the ~** *Come in out of the rain.* **through the ~** *We drove slowly through the driving rain.*

rain *verb*

- ADV. **hard, heavily | a little, slightly | incessantly, non-stop, solidly, steadily** *It's been raining solidly for an hour now. ◇ It rained incessantly for the whole two weeks.*
- VERB + RAIN **begin to, start to | be going to** *I don't think it's going to rain.*
- PHRASES **start/stop raining**

rainfall *noun*

- ADJ. **abundant, excessive, heavy, high** *There have been heavy rainfalls this month.* | **low | moderate | normal | good, poor** *We need a good rainfall to save the crops.* | **annual | average | local | summer, winter**
- VERB + RAINFALL **have** *The area has a high annual rainfall.* | **measure** *Her work includes measuring the local rainfall.*

rally *noun*

1 political meeting

- ADJ. **big, huge, large, major, mass, massive | public | indoor, outdoor** *at a massive outdoor rally in Paris* | **campaign, election, political | opposition, protest | peace | anti-government, anti-war, etc.**
- VERB + RALLY **have, hold, stage** *The demonstrators marched to Trafalgar Square where they held a rally.* | **call for, organize, plan | attend, take part in** *About 5 000 people attended a rally calling for peace.* | **address,**

speak at | ban *The government closed the schools and banned all rallies.*
- RALLY + VERB **take place | break up, disperse, end** *The rally dispersed peacefully after six hours.* | **call for sth**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *She spoke at a public rally in Hyde Park.* | **~ against** *a mass rally against the treaty* **~ for** *a rally for the winning candidate* **~ in support of** *a rally in support of the strike*

2 motor race
- ADJ. **club, international | motor, motorcycle**
- VERB + RALLY **hold, organize | compete in, enter | win**
- RALLY + NOUN **circuit | driver, driving**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *He will join the team on the rally next week.*

3 in tennis
- ADJ. **long, short | exciting**
- VERB + RALLY **play | win | lose**

rally *verb*

- ADV. **around/round** *Neighbours rallied round and alerted the emergency services.*
- VERB + RALLY **try to** *The team captain vainly tried to rally his troops.*
- PREP. **around/round/behind** *She urged everyone to rally behind the president.* **to** *Friends rallied to her.*
- PHRASES **rally to sb's defence** *BBC leaders rallied to his defence.* **rally to sb's/the cause** *Friends and colleagues have rallied to her cause.*

ram *verb*

- ADV. **hard | deliberately**
- PREP. **into** *He deliberately rammed his truck into the back of the one in front.*

ramble *noun*

- ADJ. **country, nature**
- VERB + RAMBLE **go for/on** *We went for a ramble over the moors.*
- PREP. **on a ~** *The family made the amazing find while on a nature ramble in the woods.*

random *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **completely, entirely, purely, quite, totally | almost | fairly | truly | apparently, seemingly** *a seemingly random sequence of numbers*

range *noun*

1 different things within the same category
- ADJ. **broad, enormous, extensive, great, huge, large, vast, wide | complete, comprehensive, full, whole | infinite | excellent, exciting, good, superb | astonishing, extraordinary, impressive, remarkable | diverse** *people from a diverse range of backgrounds* | **acceptable | limited, poor | new** *Come and see our new range of furniture.* | **product** *For more information about our product range, call your local branch.*
- VERB + RANGE **have, stock** *They stock a very wide range of garden products.* | **make, produce | offer (sb), provide (sb with), supply (sb with)** *We provide a full range of financial services.* | **choose (sth) from, try out** *Students can choose from a wide range of options.* | **create, develop, launch** *The company is launching a new range of cosmetics.* | **expand, extend**
- RANGE + VERB **include sth** *Our comprehensive range of benefits includes pension and health insurance.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the other models in their new range*
- PHRASES **bottom/middle/top of the range** *This is a top of the range refrigerator.*

2 amount between particular limits
- ADJ. **broad, wide | narrow | normal | ability, age, price, size, temperature, etc.**
- VERB + RANGE **cover, encompass, feature, include** *The trade show will feature an enormous range of goods.* | **extend, increase** *trying to extend the range of children's language*
- PREP. **across a/the ~** *There is considerable variation in ability across the range.* **in a/the ~** *Most of the students are in the age range 17–21.* **outside a/the ~** *No, that's completely outside my price range.* **within a/the ~** *The level of mistakes is within the acceptable range of standards for a public organization.* | **~ of** *a broad range of abilities*

3 distance that it is possible to travel, see, etc.
- ADJ. **long** *missiles effective over a long range* | **close, point-blank, short** *He shot her at point-blank range.*
- PREP. **beyond ~** *This car is beyond the range of most people's pockets.* **in/within ~** *Are we within range of the local transmitter?* **out of ~** *Don't shoot yet—he's still out of range.* **outside a/the ~** *It's outside my range of vision.*

range *verb*

- ADV. **enormously, widely**
- PREP. **across** *The opinions they expressed ranged right across the political spectrum.* **between** *The town's population ranged between 15 and 20 000.* **from, in** *The disease ranges widely in severity.* **over** *Her lecture ranged over a number of topics.* **through** *an array of lilies, ranging through yellow to sombre purple* **to** *selling them at prices ranging from about $10 to $500.* **up to** *Their ages range up to 84.*

NOTE

Ranks in the armed forces

air force, army, navy ~
an air force/army sergeant
an army/navy captain
air/field marshal
a naval captain/commander/lieutenant/officer
have/hold the rank of, serve as ~
She joined the navy and held the rank of captain.
He served as a lieutenant in the marine corps.
be appointed, become, be made ~
He was made a colonel at the age of 40.
She ought to have been made sergeant by now.
under ~
383 men under General Miles attacked the camp.
the rank of ~
She was promoted to the rank of colonel.

rank *noun*

1 level of importance
- ADJ. **high, senior, superior, upper | middle | inferior, junior, low** *the lowest ranks of the aristocracy* | **first, second** *He is in the first rank of university teachers.* | **social | Cabinet, ministerial** *a government minister of Cabinet rank*
- VERB + RANK **achieve, attain, be promoted to, get to, reach, rise to** *She joined the navy, where she rose to the rank of captain.* | **have, hold** *He held officer rank in the air force for many years.* | **be stripped of** *He was stripped of his rank by a military court.*
- PREP. **above a/the ~** *He never rose above the rank of lieutenant.* **below a/the ~** *police officers below the rank of sergeant* **in ~** *He is higher in rank than I am.* | **~ in** *all ranks in society* **~ of** *She reached the rank of captain.*
- PHRASES **of high/low, etc. rank** *officers of senior rank*

2 group/line of things/people
- ADJ. **front, rear | massed, serried** *the serried ranks of hotel staff*

• PREP. **along a/the ~** *The president moved slowly along the ranks of men.* **in a/the ~** *standing in the second rank ◇ The soldiers marched in three ranks of ten.*
• PHRASES **break ranks** (= to leave a line of soldiers, police, etc.) *The police broke ranks and started hitting people with their batons.* **rank on/upon rank (of sth)** *Rank upon rank of caravans filled the field.*

3 (*also* **the ranks**) ordinary members of a large group
• VERB + RANK **be admitted into/to, enter, join, swell** *Each month thousands more swell the ranks of the unemployed.* | **serve in** *They had served in the ranks of the Sultan's army.* | **come up from/through, rise from/through** *He came up through the ranks to become a general.*
• PREP. **among/within the ~s of** *There is much disaffection among the ranks of the party.* **beyond/outside the ~s** *The group has little influence over those outside its own ranks.* **in the ~s** *There are few women in the highest ranks of the organization.*

rank *verb*

• ADV. **high/highly, low** *These subjects ranked low for most students.*
• PREP. **above** *She ranks above any other musician of her generation.* **according to** *The children were ranked according to academic ability.* **alongside** *This city ranks alongside London as one of the great tourist centres of the world.* **among** *He ranks among the greatest boxers of all time.* **as** *Their performance ranks as the best of the year.* **below, with** *This ranks with the great paintings of the nineteenth century.*
• PHRASES **be ranked/rank number two, three, etc.** *the tennis player ranked number two in the world* **high-/low-ranking** *He is a high-ranking officer in the Indian Army* **rank sth in order of sth** *ranked in order of size.* **rank in the top 10, 100, etc.** *She is now ranked in the top five hockey players in Britain.* **rank second, third, etc.** *The company ranks second among food manufacturers.*

ransom *noun*

• VERB + RANSOM **hold sb for/to, kidnap sb for** *She was kidnapped and held for ransom. ◇ (figurative) The company refused to be held to ransom by the union.* | **demand** | **pay**
• RANSOM + NOUN **demand, note** | **money, payment**
• PREP. **for ~** *stealing cattle for ransom*

rap *verb*

• ADV. **sharply** *He rapped sharply on the door.* | **gently**
• PREP. **on, with** *rapping on the window with his stick*

rape *noun*

• ADJ. **alleged** | **attempted** | **marital** | **date, gang**
• RAPE + NOUN **victim**
⇨ Note at CRIME (for verbs)

rape *verb*

• ADV. **brutally, forcibly, savagely** *She was attacked and brutally raped.* | **repeatedly** | **allegedly**
• VERB + RAPE **attempt to, try to**
• PHRASES **be/get raped** *worried about getting raped on her way home* **be accused/convicted of raping sb, be charged with raping sb, be found guilty of raping sb, deny raping sb**

rapid *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
• ADV. **exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, unusually, very** | **fairly, quite, relatively**

rapidity *noun*

• ADJ. **alarming, amazing, bewildering, extreme, great, remarkable** *The styles change with bewildering rapidity.* | **increasing**
• PREP. **with ~**

rapist *noun*

• ADJ. **potential, would-be** | **convicted** | **multiple, serial** *The serial rapist has struck again.*
• RAPIST + VERB **attack (sb), strike**

rapport *noun*

• ADJ. **close, easy, good, great, tremendous** | **personal** | **instant**
• VERB + RAPPORT **build, develop, establish** | **enjoy, have** | **feel**
• PREP. **~ between** *She felt an instant rapport between them* **~ with** *He had enjoyed a personal rapport with the former president.*

rare *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **become, get** | **remain**
• ADV. **decidedly, distinctly, especially, exceedingly, exceptionally, extremely, particularly, surprisingly, very** | **increasingly** | **comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively, somewhat** | **enough, sufficiently** *The stamps were not rare enough to be interesting.*

rash *noun*

• ADJ. **skin** | **itchy** | **allergic** | **heat, nappy, nettle**
• VERB + RASH **have** | **break out in, come out in** *When I'm stressed I break out in a rash.*
• RASH + VERB **appear, come out, spread** *The rash most commonly appears on the back.*
• PREP. **~ on** *He's got a slight rash on his chest.*

raspberry *noun*

• QUANT. **punnet** *I bought a punnet of fresh raspberries.*
• RASPBERRY + NOUN **cane** *rows of raspberry canes*
⇨ Special page at FRUIT

rat *noun*

• ADJ. **black, brown** | **laboratory** | **sewer** | **water**
• RAT + VERB **scurry, scuttle** *A brown rat scurried across the road.* | **squeak** | **gnaw** *Rats had gnawed through the wires.* | **carry/spread disease**
• RAT + NOUN **catcher** *The dog was a useful rat catcher in the warehouse.* | **droppings** | **poison**
• PHRASES **rat-infested** *a rat-infested cellar*

rate *noun*

1 speed/frequency
• ADJ. **constant, expected, regular, steady** | **slow** *the slow rate of change* | **fast, rapid** | **alarming, phenomenal** *The costs of the project are rising at an alarming rate.* | **low** *There is a low survival rate among babies born before 22 weeks.* | **high** | **ever-increasing, rocketing** | **seasonally-adjusted** *The seasonally-adjusted unemployment rate in December stood at 5%.* | **success** | **divorce, marriage** | **death, mortality** | **survival** | **birth, fertility** | **accident** | **crime** | **growth, inflation** | **metabolic, pulse, respiratory** *We need to eat less as we get older and our metabolic rate slows down.*
• VERB + RATE **improve, increase, speed up** | **cut, hold down, reduce, slow down** *trying to hold down the rate of inflation* | **stabilize** | **maintain** | **increase**
• RATE + VERB **be/go/shoot up, grow, increase, rise, rocket, skyrocket, soar** | **be/come/go down, decline, decrease, drop, fall, plummet, plunge, slow, slip**

- PREP. **at a/the ~** *The water was escaping at a rate of 200 gallons a minute.*

2 amount of money paid

- ADJ. **competitive, cheap, low, moderate, reasonable** *We have a wide range of vehicles available for hire at competitive rates.* ◇ *Calls are cheap rate after 6 p.m.* | **extortionate, high** | **excellent, good** | **poor** *The account offers a poor rate of interest.* | **fixed, flat** *You can opt to pay a flat rate for unlimited Internet access.* | **usual** | **going** *I'll pay you at the going rate* (= the present usual rate of payment). | **variable** | **annual, hourly, weekly** | **base, basic, standard** | **top** *paying the top rate of tax* | **average** | **market** *current market rates for borrowing* | **group, preferential, reduced** *Ask about the special group rates for entrance to the house and gardens.* | **bank, exchange, interest, lending, mortgage, tax**
- VERB + RATE **determine, fix, set** | **increase, lift, put up, raise** | **cut, lower, reduce** | **hold** *We will hold these rates until 1 April.* | **charge** *They charge the usual rate of interest.* | **pay** | **give (sb), offer (sb)**
- RATE + VERB **go/shoot up, increase, rise** *Their hourly rates have gone up.* | **come/go down, drop** | **fluctuate** *Exchange rates are fluctuating wildly.* | **apply to sth** *Standard rates of interest apply to these loans.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *borrowing money at a high rate of interest* | **~ for** *the average rate for an unskilled worker* **~ of** *an increase in the rate of taxation*
- PHRASES **a drop in interest rates, a rise in mortgage rates, etc.** *a one-point rise in base lending rates* **a rate of return** *safe investments which give a good rate of return*

⇨ Note at PER CENT (for more verbs)

rate *verb*

- ADV. **highly** *Silver was rated more highly than gold.*
- PREP. **among** *a golf course that is rated among the top ten in America* **as** *It is rated as one of the city's best hotels.* **for** *a university that is highly rated for its research work*

rating *noun*

1 measurement of how good sb/sth is

- ADJ. **high, top** | **low, poor** | **overall** *The overall performance rating puts the new model well ahead of its main rivals.* | **approval, opinion poll, popularity** *He has the highest opinion poll rating of any president this century.* | **performance** | **credit** *Most countries try to preserve their international credit rating in order to secure necessary loans.* | **personal**
- VERB + RATING **have** | **assign (sb/sth), give (sb/sth)** | **achieve, earn, get, receive, score** *The university scored a top rating among students.* | **preserve** | **improve**
- RATING + VERB **climb, improve, rise, rocket, soar** *The president's ratings have suddenly rocketed.* | **fall**
- RATING + NOUN **scale, system**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *a drop of 50 points in her personal rating* | **~ for** *The resort got a low rating for children's facilities.* **~ on** *The judges gave her the maximum rating on style.*

2 **ratings** number of TV viewers, etc.

- ADJ. **good** | **poor** | **audience, TV**
- VERB + RATINGS **get, have** *At this stage the series was getting good ratings.*
- RATINGS + VERB **go up, improve, pick up, shoot up, soar** *The ratings went shooting up overnight.* | **dip, fall, go down** *The programme's ratings have dipped sharply.*
- RATINGS + NOUN **battle, war**
- PREP. **in the ~s** *It has been ousted from top spot in the TV ratings.*

ratio *noun*

- ADJ. **high, low** | **male/female, pupil/teacher, etc.** | **benefit-to-risk, power-to-weight, etc.**
- VERB + RATIO **achieve, have** *They have a high ratio of imports to exports.* | **improve, increase** *The hospital is trying to improve its staff/patient ratio.* | **reduce** | **calculate, find, work out**
- RATIO + VERB **improve** | **worsen** *the worsening pupil/teacher ratio in our schools*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *We mixed the oil and water in a ratio of one to five.* | **~ between** *the ratio between the amount of time spent on the work and the profit produced* **~ of sth to sth** *the ratio of house prices to incomes*
- PHRASES **in direct ratio to sth** *Their sales rose in direct ration to the amount they spent on advertising.*

ration *noun*

- ADJ. **daily, monthly** | **double, entire, extra, full** *Pregnant women received a double ration of milk.* | **meagre** *The refugees queued up for their meagre rations of soup.* | **emergency, short, starvation, wartime ~s** *We've been put on short rations.* | **cigarette, food, petrol, etc.**
- VERB + RATION **give sb, hand out, provide (sb with)** | **get, receive** | **consume, have, use up** *You've had your ration of sweets for the day!* | **cut, reduce** *The guards are going to cut our rations again.*
- RATION + NOUN **book, card, coupon**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *living on starvation rations* | **~ of** *our daily ration of bread*

ration *verb*

- ADV. **strictly** *These foods had to be strictly rationed.*
- PREP. **to** *The soldiers were rationed to one litre of water each per day.*

rational *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** *It all seemed quite rational to me.*
- ADV. **highly, very** | **entirely, fully, perfectly, quite** *At the time she was perfectly rational.* | **purely, strictly** | **essentially** *Humans are essentially rational beings.* | **apparently** | **economically** *With children working from the age of ten, large families were economically rational.*
- PREP. **about** *Try to be rational about it.*

rationing *noun*

- ADJ. **strict** | **bread, credit, food, fuel, petrol, etc.** | **wartime**
- VERB + RATIONING **have** | **bring in, introduce** *The government introduced meat rationing in May.* | **end**
- RATIONING + VERB **be in force, exist**
- RATIONING + NOUN **system**
- PREP. **~ of** *Strict rationing of basic foodstuffs was still in force by the end of the year.*

ray *noun*

- ADJ. **powerful** | **bright** | **harmful** | **dying, last** *the dying rays of a winter sun* | **cathode, cosmic, gamma, heat, infrared, light, ultraviolet, X-** | **the moon's, the sun's**
- VERB + RAY **emit, give off, send out** *gamma rays given off by plutonium* | **expose sb/sth to** | **block, filter out, protect/shield sb/sth from** *creams which filter out the sun's harmful ultraviolet rays* | **bend, catch, deflect, reflect** *Her brooch caught the rays of the setting sun.*
- RAY + VERB **filter through sth, pass through sth, penetrate sth, travel** *the moon's rays filtering through the trees* | **hit sth** *When the sun's rays hit the earth, a lot of heat is reflected back into space.* | **damage sth** *Ultraviolet rays damage the skin.*
- PREP. **in the ~s of** *a stream sparkling in the rays of the June sun*
- PHRASES **a ray of light/sunlight/sunshine, the rays of the sun**

razor *noun*

- ADJ. **open | blunt | cut-throat, disposable, electric, safety**
- VERB + RAZOR **cut sb/sth with, shave with, slash sb/sth with, use** *We used a razor to cut the string.* | **be armed with** *He was armed with a cut-throat razor.*
- RAZOR + NOUN **blade | wire**
- PREP. **with a/the ~** *He slashed his wrists with a razor.*

reach *noun*

- ADJ. **long** *Gorillas have a very long reach.*
- VERB + REACH **have**
- PREP. **beyond (sb/sth's)** *The latch was just beyond her reach.* **in/within sb/sth's ~** *a holiday town within reach of Marseilles* **out of sb/sth's ~** *Keep all medicines out of reach of children.*
- PHRASES **within arm's reach** *I always keep my mobile phone within arm's reach.* **within easy reach (of sth)** *The house is within easy reach of the shops.*

reach *verb*

1 arrive at a place/condition
- ADV. **eventually, finally**
- VERB + REACH **attempt to, try to | be expected to, be likely/unlikely to, expect to** *Profits are expected to reach £2 billion this year.* | **be able to | be unable to, fail to** *The jury was unable to reach a verdict.*

2 stretch out your arm to touch/get sth
- ADV. **gingerly | out, over** *He reached out gingerly to touch it.*
- PREP. **for** *She reached for the telephone and picked it up.* **into** *He reached into his bag and took out a book.*

3 be able to touch sth
- ADV. **easily** *She had arranged her desk so that she could reach everything easily.*
- VERB + REACH **can/could** *I can't reach the top shelf.*

react *verb*

- ADV. **strongly | favourably, positively, sympathetically** *people who react positively to change* | **adversely, badly, negatively, unfavourably | aggressively, angrily, violently | cautiously, coolly | sharply | appropriately | immediately, instantly | quickly, swiftly** *The police must be able to react swiftly in an emergency.* | **differently | accordingly** *His insensitive remarks hurt and she reacted accordingly.* | **automatically, instinctively, spontaneously | physically**
- VERB + REACT **tend to | be slow to** *The industry has been slow to react to these breakthroughs in technology.* | **not know how to** *He did not know how to react to her sudden mood swings.*
- PREP. **against** *Many young people react against traditional values.* **by** *The government reacted by increasing taxation.* **to** *The university reacted unfavourably to the proposals.* **with** *Her family reacted with horror when she told them.*

reaction *noun*

1 response
- ADJ. **extreme, sharp, strong, violent | favourable, positive | adverse, hostile, negative | mixed** *The speech got a mixed reaction.* | **angry | first, immediate, initial | delayed** *Her outburst was a delayed reaction to an unpleasant letter she'd received that morning.* | **chain** *The change of plan set off a chain reaction of confusion.* | **mixed | common, general, public | natural, normal | automatic, gut, instinctive, knee-jerk, spontaneous** *The incident calls for a measured response, avoiding knee-jerk reactions.* | **nervous | emotional | critical** *The critical reaction to his first novel has been positive.*
- VERB + REACTION **get, have, meet with** *The play met with a mixed reaction from the critics.* | **bring, cause, produce, provoke, set off, spark (off), trigger (off)** *She was surprised at the reaction brought by the mention of his name.* | **gauge, judge (by/from)** *He eyed her cautiously, trying to gauge her reaction.* ◇ *Judging by her reaction, she liked the present.*
- PREP. **in ~ to** *There's been a drop in ticket sales in reaction to the review.* | **~ against** *Her rebellious attitude is just a reaction against her strict upbringing.* **~ to** *the public reaction to the news*

2 (usually **reactions**) ability to react quickly
- ADJ. **fast, good, lightning, quick | slow, sluggish**
- VERB + REACTION **have** *She has very quick reactions.* | **speed up | slow down** *Alcohol has the effect of slowing down your reactions.*
- REACTION + NOUN **time** *Your reaction time increases when you are tired.*

3 chemical reaction
- ADJ. **chain | chemical, nuclear**
- VERB + REACTION **cause, produce, start, trigger | stop | speed up | slow down**
- REACTION + VERB **occur, take place**
- PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *the energy given out during the reaction* | **~ between** *studying the reactions between certain gases* **~ with** *the fuel's chemical reaction with the surrounding water*

4 allergy
- ADJ. **adverse, bad | mild, slight | delayed** *a delayed reaction to the drugs* | **allergic**
- VERB + REACTION **have, suffer** *She had a very bad allergic reaction to the peanuts.* | **cause, produce**
- PREP. **~ to** *A small minority of patients suffer an adverse reaction to the treatment.*

reactionary *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very | politically**

reactor *noun*

- ADJ. **nuclear | fast, fast-breeder, fission, fusion, gas-cooled, pressurized-water, thermal**
- VERB + REACTOR **build | operate, run | close (down), decommission, shut down**
- REACTOR + VERB **operate, run**
- REACTOR + NOUN **building, site | fuel | core | accident, safety, shut-down**

read *noun*

1 activity of reading
- ADJ. **good | quiet**
- VERB + READ **have** *I had a good read of the paper before they arrived.*

2 writer/book
- ADJ. **compelling, good, great, interesting**
- VERB + READ **be, make** *The story made an interesting read.*

read *verb*

- ADV. **aloud** *listening to children reading aloud* | **silently | carefully, with interest** *He read her letter with interest.* | **avidly, voraciously** *She read avidly from an early age—books, magazines, anything.* | **out** *Shall I read this out to you?*
- VERB + READ **be able to, can/could** *Most children can read by the age of seven.* | **learn (how) to | teach sb (how) to**
- PREP. **about** *Hogan had read about her death in the papers.* **from** *She read from the letter.* **of** *I had read of the case in the local newspaper.* **through** *I read through the*

first paragraph again. **to** *I read a story to my son every night.*
- PHRASES **read and write** *She had great difficulty learning to read and write.*

readable *adj.*

1 enjoyable to read
- VERBS **be | make sth**
- ADV. **eminently, extremely, highly, immensely, very** *a stimulating and highly readable account* | **quite**

2 able to be read
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **clearly, easily** *The figures should be clearly readable.* ◇ *printed in large, easily readable type*
- PHRASES **machine readable**

reader *noun*

- ADJ. **careful, competent, fast, fluent, good | alert, attentive** *Alert readers may have noticed the misprint in last week's column.* | **discerning, sophisticated | poor, slow | avid, great, voracious | omnivorous | regular** *regular readers of this magazine* | **casual | adult, female, male, women, young | specialist | general, non-specialist** *a book that will be too difficult for the general reader* | **Daily Express, Guardian, etc. | tabloid**
- PREP. **~ of** *a voracious reader of science fiction*

readiness *noun*

- ADJ. **greater | constant | combat** *The troops were in a state of combat readiness.*
- VERB + READINESS **declare, express, indicate, show, signal** *Hungary has indicated its readiness to sign the treaty.* | **hold sb/sth in** *He held his gun in readiness.*
- PREP. **in ~ (for)** *service the car in readiness for the journey* | **~ for** *to express a readiness for change*
- PHRASES **a state of readiness**

reading *noun*

1 sth you can read
- ADJ. **compelling, compulsive, fascinating, good, interesting | depressing, disturbing | heavy, serious | light | compulsory, essential, required | recommended, suggested | background, introductory | further | bedtime, holiday** *some light holiday reading*
- VERB + READING **be, make (for)** *Their story makes compulsive reading.*
- READING + NOUN **list**

2 activity of reading
- ADJ. **extensive** *After extensive reading on the subject she set to work on an article.* | **careful, close, critical** *A close reading of the text reveals several contradictions.* | **serious | map** *My map-reading skills are not the best.*
- VERB + READING **do, get down to** *I haven't had time to do much reading lately.* ◇ *In the holidays I'll get down to some serious reading.*
- READING + NOUN **material, matter | ability, age, knowledge, skills** *He has a reading age of eight.* ◇ *She has a good reading knowledge of Russian.* | **glasses, light, room**
- PREP. **~ about/on** *His reading about Ruskin led him to the works of Turner.*

3 reading in public
- ADJ. **public | Bible, poetry**
- VERB + READING **give** *Dickens gave many public readings from his works.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *We met at a reading of his poetry.* | **~ from/of** *readings from the Koran*

4 figure/measurement shown on an instrument
- ADJ. **high, low | zero | normal | accurate, correct | false | meter, thermometer**
- VERB + READING **get, obtain, take | give** *The dials were giving higher readings than we had expected.*

ready *adj.*

1 prepared
- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem | get** *We were getting ready to go out.* | **get sb** *trying to get the children ready to leave* | **consider sb, declare sb, deem sb, judge sb** *She was concerned to protect the children from the truth until she judged them ready to hear it.*
- ADV. **all** *I was all ready to leave when the phone rang.* | **not quite** *He didn't feel quite ready for marriage.* | **(just) about, almost, nearly, practically** *I think we're just about ready to start.* | **always, ever | not yet | emotionally** *Though Paul had wanted a child, he wasn't emotionally ready for it.*
- PREP. **for** *I feel ready for anything!* **with** *He's always ready with a quick answer.*

2 prepared and available
- VERBS **be, stand** *The suitcases were standing ready by the front door.* | **have sth, hold sth, keep sth, leave sth** *Please have your tickets ready for inspection.* ◇ *holding his gun ready* ◇ *I've left everything ready in the kitchen.* | **get sth, make sth** *I'll get all the boxes ready.* ◇ *The warships were soon made ready.* | **consider sth, declare sth, deem sth, judge sth** *The plane was refuelled and declared ready for service again.*
- PREP. **for** *The cases are ready for delivery.*

3 willing
- VERBS **appear, be, seem | remain**
- ADV. **more than, only too, very** *Connors was more than ready to oblige.* ◇ *She was only too ready to believe the worst of him.* | **always, ever | apparently | clearly**
- PHRASES **ready and willing** *always ready and willing to help*

real *adj.*

1 serious
- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **all too, very** *Her suffering was all too real.* ◇ *the very real danger of war*

2 genuine
- VERBS **be, look, seem**
- ADV. **enough** *The pearls looked real enough.*

realism *noun*

- ADJ. **political | gritty, stark** *the stark realism of Loach's films*
- QUANT. **degree | element, note** *I hate to interject a note of realism, but we don't have any money to do any of this.*
- VERB + REALISM **add, bring, lend** *Clever lighting and sound effects brought greater realism to the play.* | **achieve** *Children can get frustrated when they are unable to achieve realism in their drawings.*
- PREP. **~ about** *the band's realism about their chances of success*
- PHRASES **a sense of realism**

realistic *adj.*

1 showing acceptance of the facts of a situation
- VERBS **be, seem | keep sth** *Try to keep your ambitions realistic.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, quite, reasonably | enough, sufficiently** *He was realistic enough to know this success could not last.*
- PREP. **about** *My friends were quite realistic about my problems.* **in** *being very realistic in their expectations*

2 showing things as they really are
- VERBS **be, look, sound | become | make sth** *You could make the hands a little more realistic.*

• ADV. **extremely, truly, very** | **fairly, quite** | **grimly** *his grimly realistic first novel about drug addicts*

reality *noun*

• ADJ. **awful, bitter, brutal, cold, grim, hard, harsh, painful, sad, stark** *We were faced with the awful reality of having nowhere to live.* | **complex** | **underlying** *He has no illusions about the underlying reality of army life.* | **objective, practical** *the practical realities of running a children's home* | **daily, everyday** | **external** *Painters at the time were largely concerned with reproducing external reality.* | **commercial, economic, historical, physical, political, psychological, social** *the harsh economic realities of life as a student* | **virtual** *the use of virtual reality in computer games*

• VERB + REALITY **become** *One day her dream will become a reality.* | **make sth** *It's our task to make the proposals a reality.* | **accept, confront (sb with), face (up to), get a grip on, grasp, wake up to** *She will have to face reality sooner or later.* ◇ *I don't think you have quite grasped the realities of our situation!* | **bear little/no, etc. relation/resemblance to, be cut off/divorced/removed from, be out of touch with, have little/not have much to do with** *They are out of touch with the realities of modern warfare.* ◇ *Most people's ideas of the disease do not have much to do with the reality.* | **escape from** | **deny, ignore** | **bring sb back to, come/get back to, return to** *He called for the committee to stop dreaming and return to reality.* | **distort** *Most comedy relies on distorting reality.* | **protect/shelter/shield sb from** *Her parents always tried to shield her from the realities of the world.* | **reflect**

• PREP. **in ~** *The media portray her as happy and successful, but in reality she has a difficult life.*

• PHRASES **a grasp of reality** *He has a rather tenuous grasp of reality.* **a perception/sense of reality**

realization *noun*

• ADJ. **full** | **dawning, growing** | **gradual** | **sudden** | **awful, terrible**

• VERB + REALIZATION **come to** *He came to the realization that he would never make a good teacher.*

• REALIZATION + VERB **come (to sb), dawn (on sb), hit sb** *The realization that the murderer must have been a close friend came as a shock.* ◇ *We saw the terrible realization of what she'd done dawn on her face.*

realize *verb*

• ADV. **fully** | **dimly** *She dimly realized that she was trembling.* | **suddenly** | **quickly, soon** | **now** | **for the first time** *I realized for the first time how difficult this would be.* | **at first** *The situation was more complicated than they had at first realized.* | **at last, belatedly, eventually, finally** | **never** *I never realized how much it meant to you.*

• VERB + REALIZE **begin to, come to** | **make sb** *The experience made me realize that people did care.* | **seem to** *You don't seem to realize the seriousness of the situation.* | **fail to** | **be important to**

• PHRASES **without realizing (sth)** *We are constantly using historic buildings, without even realizing it.*

realm *noun*

1 area of activity/interest/knowledge

• ADJ. **whole** *the whole realm of human intellect* | **new** | **international** | **public** | **domestic, private** | **political, social, spiritual**

• VERB + REALM **be/lie in, belong in/to** | **open up** *The research has opened up new realms for investigation.* | **enter, move into** | **descend into/to** (*disapproving*) *Most readers are likely to lose interest when he descends into the realms of* (= starts discussing) *rhetorical terminology.* | **move from/out of** *The euro has moved from the realms of theory into reality.*

• PREP. **beyond/out of/outside the ~ of** *His ambitions are way beyond the realms of possibility.* **in/within the ~ of** *The idea belongs in the realm of science fiction.*

• PHRASES **the realms of fantasy/possibility**

2 country ruled by a king/queen

• VERB + REALM **defend** *They fought to defend the realm.*

• PREP. **beyond/outside the ~** *wealth acquired outside the realm* **in/within the ~** *peace within the realm* **throughout the ~** *There was rejoicing throughout the realm.*

• PHRASES **a part of the realm, the defence of the realm** *Royal taxation usually had to be for the defence of the realm.*

reappraisal *noun*

• ADJ. **fundamental, major, radical** | **complete** | **constant** | **careful** | **critical** *a critical reappraisal of existing ideas and social institutions*

• VERB + REAPPRAISAL **cause, lead to** *Her theory is that disillusionment with employment leads to reappraisal of career goals.* | **undertake** *They have undertaken a reappraisal of pupils' needs.*

rear *noun*

• VERB + REAR **bring up** *Three drummers brought up the rear* (= were last in the parade). | **attack (sb/sth) from**

• PREP. **at the ~** *The socket for the printer cable is located at the rear of the computer.* **from the ~, in the ~** *The radio is loudest in the rear of the car.* **to/towards the ~** *A high gate blocks the only entrance to the rear.*

rear *verb*

• ADV. **intensively** *intensively reared beef cattle* | **naturally** *naturally reared pork and beef* | **successfully**

reason *noun*

1 cause/motive/justification; explanation of sth

• ADJ. **cogent, good, sound, strong** | **compelling, convincing** | **plausible** | **adequate, sufficient** | **bona fide, legitimate, valid** | **wrong** *He married her for all the wrong reasons.* | **opposite** *Tom's problem was that he lacked confidence; Ed failed for precisely the opposite reason.* | **important** | **special** | **chief, main, major, primary, principal** | **only, simple, sole** *The only reason I didn't become a professional golfer was because of my family commitments.* ◇ *I was never good at playing the trumpet for the simple reason that I never practised.* | **real, underlying** *She did not tell him the real reason for her change of heart.* ◇ *The underlying reasons for these differences will be explored in depth in the next chapter.* | **very** *There is an assumption that a state will protect its citizens. That is the very reason for the existence of states.* | **apparent, particular** *He was attacked for no apparent reason.* | **no earthly, (no) possible** *Surely there is no earthly reason why you wouldn't want to come with us?* | **clear, obvious** *The reasons for her decision soon became clear.* | **unclear** | **logical** | **understandable** | **justifiable** | **inexplicable, unexplained, unknown** *For some unexplained reason the pilot jettisoned all his fuel shortly after take-off.* | **unspecified** | **unconnected** *dismissal for reasons unconnected with redundancy* | **personal** | **sentimental** | **selfish** | **professional** | **commercial, economic, financial, legal, political, social, technical** | **practical, pragmatic** | **security** | **health** | **humanitarian**

• VERB + REASON **be aware of, see** *We see no reason why this band shouldn't be a huge success.* | **have** *I don't know why he did that, but I'm sure he had his reasons.* ◇ *I have no reason to believe that she was lying to me.* | **cite, give (sb/sth), set out, state** *Give me one good reason why I* *should help you.* ◇ *In the letter she carefully set out her reasons for leaving.* | **cite sth as, give sth as** | **suggest** | **explain** | **understand** | **uncover**

- PREP. **by ~ of** *(formal) persons in need of care by reason of* (= because of) *old age* **for a/the ~** *procedures carried out for reasons of national security* **for ~ of** *(formal) For reasons of security, you are requested to keep your luggage with you at all times.* **with/without ~** *They complained about the food, and with good reason* (= rightly). | **~ against** *There are obvious reasons against such a move.* **~ behind** *We are trying to uncover the reasons behind her decision.* **~ for** *They didn't give any reason for the delay.*
- PHRASES **all the more reason** *If he's unwell, that's all the more reason to go and see him.* **all sorts of reasons** *People buy things for all sorts of reasons.* **any/every/little/no/one/some reason** *I know you're angry with me, and you have every reason* (= very good reasons) *to be.* **for reasons best known to yourself** *For reasons best known to herself she has turned down the offer.* **for whatever reason** *people who, for whatever reason, are unable to support themselves* **a number/variety of reasons, rhyme or reason** *There's no rhyme or reason* (= logic) *to the new opening hours.*

2 power to think logically; what is possible/right

- ADJ. **human**
- VERB + REASON **lose** *He seems to have lost all sense and reason.* | **be open to, listen to, see** *I tried to persuade her, but she just wouldn't listen to reason.*
- PREP. **beyond ~** *He was beyond all reason.* **within ~** *I'll lend you the money you need—within reason, of course!*
- PHRASES **an appeal to reason** *The residents hope that an appeal to reason* (= asking the rioters to be reasonable) *will end the rioting.* **it stands to reason** *It stands to reason* (= it is logical) *that she wouldn't want them to find out about her personal problems.* **the voice of reason** *She was always the voice of reason, persuading him not to buy things they couldn't afford.*

reasonable *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound** | **consider sth, judge sth, regard sth as, think sth**
- ADV. **eminently, extremely, very** | **entirely, perfectly, utterly** *The police apparently thought this explanation perfectly reasonable.* | **fairly, quite** | **enough** *Her request sounded reasonable enough to me.* | **apparently**

reasoning *noun*

- ADJ. **careful, sound** | **false, faulty** | **underlying** | **abstract** | **practical** | **logical** | **deductive, inductive** | **judicial, legal, moral, scientific, theological** | **human**
- QUANT. **piece** *a rather confused piece of reasoning*
- VERB + REASONING **adopt, apply, employ, use** *the reasoning adopted by the court* | **follow, understand** *I can't quite follow your reasoning.* | **accept** | **reject** | **challenge** | **explain**
- REASONING + VERB **apply** *The same reasoning applies to the current situation.* | **lead sb/sth to sth** *I cannot accept the reasoning that led the trial court to its decision.*
- REASONING + NOUN **process** | **ability**
- PREP. **in your ~** *the circularity in their reasoning* | **~ about** *reasoning about art* **~ behind** *Many people challenged the reasoning behind the proposal.*
- PHRASES **a flaw in your reasoning, a form/kind/line of reasoning** *The implication of this line reasoning is that globalization of capital is destructive.* **power of reasoning** *She seemed to have lost her powers of reasoning.*

reassurance *noun*

- ADJ. **great** | **further** | **constant, continual** | **calm** *Continual calm reassurance should be given.*
- VERB + REASSURANCE **have** *We have had some reassurances from the council that the building will be saved.* | **need, want** | **look for, seek** *He glanced at her, seeking reassurance.* | **draw, find, gain, receive** *He drew reassurance from the enthusiastic applause.* ◇ *She found reassurance in the high attendance at her lectures.* | **bring (sb), give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *A system of beliefs can bring you reassurance at times of stress.*
- PREP. **despite ~** *She kept looking in the mirror despite my constant reassurances that her hair looked fine.* **for ~** *He held onto her hand for reassurance.* **in ~** *I patted her shoulder in reassurance.* | **~ about/on** *The ministry tried to offer reassurance on the safety of eating beef.* **~ from** *reassurances from the researchers about their work*

reassure *verb*

- ADV. **constantly** *He was constantly reassuring himself that he had acted for the best.* | **quickly**
- VERB + REASSURE **be able to, can** | **seek to, try to** | **hasten to** | **do little to, do nothing to** | **do much to** *The report will do much to reassure parents of children at the school.*
- PREP. **about** *trying to reassure the public about the safety of public transport* **of** *She needed to be reassured of his love for her.* **with** *He reassured her with a pat on the arm.*
- PHRASES **feel reassured** *Kate nodded, but she didn't feel reassured.* **need reassuring** *Often parents simply need reassuring that their children are happy at school.*

reassuring *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **find sth**
- ADV. **extremely, immensely, very** | **hardly** *Her comment—'You can always try again if you fail'—was hardly reassuring.* | **faintly, quite, vaguely** | **oddly** | **somehow**

rebate *noun*

- ADJ. **generous, substantial** | **maximum** | **rate, rent, tax** *She's claiming a 100% tax rebate.*
- VERB + REBATE **be eligible for, be entitled to** *People on low incomes are entitled to a rebate of up to 80%.* | **apply for, claim** | **get, receive** | **give sb, grant sb** | **introduce** | **scrap**
- REBATE + NOUN **scheme, system**
- PREP. **~ on** *rebates on the new council tax*
- PHRASES **a system of rebates**

rebel *noun*

- ADJ. **anti-government** | **left-wing, right-wing** | **US-backed, etc.** | **former** | **armed**
- QUANT. **band, group**
- VERB + REBEL **back, help, support** *They sent in troops to back the rebels.* | **repel** | **defeat** | **join** | **lead**
- REBEL + VERB **be based …** *The rebels were based in camps along the border.* | **advance** | **attack sth** | **capture sth, gain/regain/seize/take control (of sth)** *The rebels seized control of the national radio headquarters.*
- REBEL + NOUN **faction, group, movement** | **army, fighters, force/forces, officers, soldiers, troops** | **commander, leader** | **control** *The southern parts of the country had fallen into rebel control.* | **base, camp, position, stronghold** | **activity, advance, assault, attack, invasion** | **cause, movement** *new recruits to the rebel cause*
- PREP. **against the ~** *military operations against the rebels* | **~ against** *a group of rebels against the emperor*
- PHRASES **a bit/something of a rebel** *(figurative) He's a bit of a rebel* (= he doesn't like to obey rules).

rebellion *noun*

1 attempt to change the government

- ADJ. **full-scale, major** | **minor, small** | **general, open** | **armed** | **military, peasant, popular**

- VERB + REBELLION **rise (up) in** *Simon de Montfort rose in rebellion in 1258.* | **launch, raise** (*literary*), **stage** *They staged a rebellion against British rule in Ireland.* | **set off, spark off** *The re-introduction of conscription sparked off a major rebellion.* | **foment, provoke (sb/sth to)** *attempts to foment rebellion in the Cabinet* ◇ *The new taxes provoked the population to open rebellion.* | **threaten** *The opposition party members threatened rebellion.* | **join** | **take part in** | **lead** | **support** | **crush, put down, quell, suppress**
- REBELLION + VERB **occur** *Peasant rebellions occurred throughout the 16th century.* | **begin, break out** *Rebellion broke out in the Rhineland.* | **fail**
- PREP. **in ~** *They are in rebellion against the conservative hierarchy of the Church.* | **~ against** *a rebellion against the new king* **~ over** *a rebellion over an increase in VAT*

2 opposition to authority
- ADJ. **adolescent, teenage, youthful**
- REBELLION + VERB **stir** *The band refused to go on stage and rebellion began to stir in the audience.*
- PREP. **~ against** *rebellion against their parents*
- PHRASES **an act of rebellion, a form of rebellion**

rebuff *noun*

- ADJ. **harsh, sharp, stinging** | **humiliating**
- VERB + REBUFF **meet (sth) with, receive, suffer** *Her efforts were met with a sharp rebuff.* | **risk** *My father was too proud to risk a rebuff, so he simply did not ask her.* | **expect** *He avoided speaking to her, expecting a rebuff.* | **accept** | **ignore**
- PREP. **(in) a ~ to** *In a rebuff to the president, Congress voted against the bill.* | **~ from** *She suffered a rebuff from her manager when she raised the matter.*

rebuild *verb*

- ADV. **completely, entirely, totally** *The hall had to be completely rebuilt after the fire.* | **virtually** | **extensively, largely, substantially** | **partly** | **painstakingly**
- VERB + REBUILD **begin, start to** *beginning to rebuild her life* | **try to** | **help (to)** *The international community must step in to help rebuild the country.*
- PHRASES **newly/recently rebuilt, rebuild sth from scratch** *Much of the damaged vehicle had to be rebuilt from scratch.*

rebuke *noun*

- ADJ. **sharp, stern, stinging** | **gentle, mild** | **silent** | **implied** | **public**
- VERB + REBUKE **receive** | **draw, earn (sb)** *Even one minute's lateness would earn a stern rebuke.* | **accept** *He meekly accepted the rebuke.* | **administer** *If the general found his authority questioned he invariably administered a sharp rebuke.*
- PREP. **~ for, ~ from** *They received a public rebuke from the prime minister for their handling of the matter.* **~ to** *He hit back with a stinging rebuke to his critics.*

rebuke *verb*

- ADV. **sharply** | **gently** | **publicly**
- PREP. **for** *She rebuked herself sharply for her stupidity.*

recall *verb*

- ADV. **clearly, distinctly, vividly, well** *I well recall walking the five miles to school every morning.* | **dimly, vaguely** | **correctly** *If I recall correctly, he lives in Luton.* | **easily** *She could easily recall the smell of the orange groves.* | **suddenly** | **fondly** | **still** *Becky could still recall that first meeting clearly.*
- VERB + RECALL **seem to** *I seem to recall that she said she was going away.* | **be able to, can/could (barely), can't/couldn't (quite)** | **try to**

recede *verb*

- ADV. **a bit, a little, slightly** *His fine dark hair was receding a little.* | **further** | **gradually, slowly** *The pain was gradually receding.* | **fast, rapidly** *The January flood waters receded as fast as they had risen.*
- PREP. **from** *These worries now receded from his mind.*
- PHRASES **recede into the background/distance** *His footsteps receded into the distance.*

receipt *noun*

1 piece of paper showing what was paid for
- ADJ. **original**
- VERB + RECEIPT **ask (sb) for** | **get, obtain** | **receive** | **have** *Could I have a receipt for that please?* | **make out, write (out)** *a receipt made out for £5* | **sign** | **give sb, issue** | **keep** *You can claim a refund provided you keep the receipt.* | **produce** *The original receipt must be produced in order to reclaim your goods.*
- RECEIPT + NOUN **book**
- PREP. **~ for** *She issued a receipt for the goods.*

2 act of receiving sth
- VERB + RECEIPT **acknowledge** *I would be grateful if you would acknowledge receipt of this letter.*
- PREP. **in ~ of** *people in receipt of housing benefit* **on/upon ~ of** *The goods will be sent on receipt of your cheque.*
- PHRASES **the date for receipt** *The closing date for receipt of your application is July 14.* **within … days of receipt** *Items should be paid for within 14 days of receipt.*

3 receipts money received
- ADJ. **total** *Cash income is calculated by subtracting total trading income from total receipts.* | **net** | **capital** | **income, revenue** | **tax** | **cash** | **foreign currency/exchange** | **dollar, euro, etc.** | **box-office, gate, match**
- VERB + RECEIPTS **receive**
- RECEIPTS + VERB **rise** *Customs and excise receipts rose 2.5 per cent.* | **reach sth** *Cash receipts reached £70 million.* | **fall, slump** *Match receipts slumped by £89 000 compared to last season.*
- PREP. **~ from** *receipts from land sales*
- PHRASES **receipts and payments**

receive *verb*

1 get/accept sth
- ADV. **gratefully** *Any help or donations will be gratefully received.*
- VERB + RECEIVE **be entitled to** *You might be entitled to receive housing benefit.* | **expect to** *You can expect to receive compensation for all direct expenses arising out of the accident.*
- PREP. **from** *I received a parcel from my mother.*

2 react to sth in a particular way
- ADV. **well** *The play was very well received.* | **badly** *The speech was badly received by republican leaders.*
- PREP. **with** *The news was received with dismay.*

receiver *noun*

1 part of a telephone
- ADJ. **phone, telephone**
- VERB + RECEIVER **lift, pick up** *She took a deep breath and lifted the receiver off its hook.* | **hold** | **put back/down, replace** | **snatch up** | **bang down, slam down** *He slammed the receiver down and burst into tears.* | **drop**
- RECEIVER + VERB **dangle** *The receiver was dangling from the payphone.*
- PREP. **over the ~** *'It's your mother on the phone again!', said John with his hand over the receiver.*
- PHRASES **hold/put the receiver to your ear** *She picked up the receiver and put it to her ear.*

2 piece of radio/television equipment
- ADJ. **portable | radio, satellite, television**
- RECEIVER + NOUN **unit** *To change channel, select the desired number on the receiver unit.*

3 person in charge of a bankrupt company
- ADJ. **official | administrative**
- VERB + RECEIVER **appoint, appoint sb (as) | call in** *They had to lay off 200 staff and call in the receivers.*
- PHRASES **in the hands of the receiver** *The company remained in the hands* (= under the control) *of the receiver.*

recent *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very | comparatively, fairly, quite, relatively** *a relatively recent development*

reception *noun*

1 area in a building
- VERB + RECEPTION **wait (for sb) in** *Please wait for me downstairs in reception.* **| leave sth at/with** *I've left the keys at reception.* **| report to** *All delegates should report to reception on arrival.* **| phone, ring**
- RECEPTION + NOUN **area | counter, desk | hall | staff**
- PREP. **at (the) ~** *The man at reception says there's a call for you.* **in ~** *The documents are in reception.* **on ~** *I've been on reception* (= working at the reception desk) *the whole morning.*

2 formal party
- ADJ. **big, large | intimate, small | formal | informal | official | special | evening | civic, diplomatic, press, wedding | buffet, champagne, sherry, wine**
- VERB + RECEPTION **attend | give, have, hold, host** *Are you having a big reception after the wedding?* **| organize | invite sb to** *Friends and family are invited to a reception after the ceremony.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *We met at a reception.* **| ~ for** *a reception for the Japanese trade delegation*

3 type of welcome given to sb/sth
- ADJ. **enthusiastic, favourable, friendly, good, great, marvellous, positive, rapturous, rousing, sympathetic, warm | lukewarm, mixed | bad, chilly, cool, frosty, hostile | critical** *critical reception to a movie* **| public**
- VERB + RECEPTION **enjoy, get, have, meet (with), receive** *The returning soldiers enjoyed a rousing reception.* ◇ *The scheme has had a somewhat mixed reception from local people.* **| expect** *The managers did not expect a sympathetic reception from the striking workers.* **| give sb/sth** *She was given a rapturous reception by the crowd.*
- RECEPTION + NOUN **party** *A reception party of soldiers was there to greet the visiting head of state.* **| centre** *a reception centre for children who have run away from home*
- PREP. **~ by** *the book's reception by reviewers* **~ from** *a cool reception from the crowd* **~ into** *reception into the monastic order* **~ to** *the positive reception to the Chancellor's speech*

4 quality of radio/television signals
- ADJ. **good, strong** *Television reception is very good in this area.* **| bad, poor, weak | radio, television**

recess *noun*

1 period when a parliament, etc. does not meet
- ADJ. **Christmas, summer, Whitsun | parliamentary**
- VERB + RECESS **go into, rise for** (*formal*), **take** *Parliament is taking the Christmas recess a little early this year.* **| return from**
- PREP. **in ~** *The decision cannot be made while the council is in recess.*

2 part of a wall, set back from the rest of the wall
- ADJ. **deep | shallow | dark | window**
- PREP. **in/inside** *to fit a blind inside a window recess*

3 (usually **recesses**) part furthest from the light
- ADJ. **dark, deep, dim** *He stared into the dark recesses of the room.* **| far, inner | hidden**
- VERB + RECESS **lurk in** (*figurative*) *fears lurking deep in the recesses of our minds* **| push sth into/to** (*figurative*) *I had continually pushed my doubts to the darker recesses of my mind.*
- PREP. **in/within the ~ of** *The statue was in the inner recesses of the temple.*
- PHRASES **the recesses of your mind** (*figurative*)

recession *noun*

- ADJ. **bad, damaging, debilitating, deep, major, massive, painful, severe, sharp, steep** *It was the worst recession since the war.* **| mild | deepening | long, prolonged | short, short-lived | continuing | global, international, widespread, world, worldwide | economic, industrial, retail**
- VERB + RECESSION **cause | go into, move into, plunge (sth) into, sink into, slip into** *A rise in interest rates plunged Britain deeper into recession.* **| beat, combat | climb out of, come out of, emerge from, get (sth) out of, lead sth out of, move out of, pull (sth) out of** *active policies to pull the country out of recession* **| end | suffer from | escape (from) | ride out, survive** *As dozens of pubs go out of business, others are riding out the recession.* **| worsen**
- RECESSION + VERB **loom** *With a recession looming, consumers are spending less.* **| hit sth** *The country has been hit by recession.* **| bottom out** (= reach the lowest level)
- PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *The economy is in deep recession.*
- PHRASES **the depth of the recession, the effects/impact of the recession, in the depths of a recession, in times of recession, recovery from (the) recession, a way out of the recession**

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

recipe *noun*

- ADJ. **good | perfect | sure** (*figurative*) *Turning away under a strong attack is a sure recipe for defeat.* **| delicious, mouth-watering, tasty | favourite | basic** *The basic recipe can be adapted by adding grated lemon.* **| easy, simple | complicated | new | authentic, classic, old, original, traditional** *The ales are brewed to an original Yorkshire recipe.* **| original** *Was there rum in the original recipe?* **| secret, special | family | vegetarian | Italian, Mexican, etc. | cake, sauce, etc.**
- VERB + RECIPE **have** *I've got a good recipe for fudge.* **| cook, make** *This recipe can also be made with ricotta cheese.* **| try (out)** *I enjoy trying out new recipes.* **| read | follow, stick to, use** *If you want the dish to turn out right you should follow the recipe.* **| adapt | devise** *All the recipes in the book have been devised by our team of experts.* **| discover, find** *He is credited with having discovered the first recipe for gin back in the 1600s.*
- RECIPE + VERB **call for sth, use sth** *She always said that if a recipe calls for cream you shouldn't use yogurt instead.* **| contain sth** *The recipe contains lots of fat.* **| make sth, serve sb** *This recipe makes about thirty biscuits.* ◇ *This recipe serves four people.*
- RECIPE + NOUN **book, card, leaflet | idea** *a magazine filled with recipe ideas*
- PREP. **to a ~** *The dish is made to a traditional Italian recipe.* **| ~ for** *a recipe for leek soup* ◇ (*figurative*) *To live every day to the full is a recipe for happiness.*
- PHRASES **a recipe for disaster/success**

recipient *noun*

- ADJ. **largest | main, major | intended** *She was not the intended recipient of the reward.* **| ultimate** *the ultimate recipient of the money* **| suitable** *matching a donor kidney* *with the most suitable recipient* | **passive** *We are passive recipients of information from the world around us.* | **grateful** (*ironic*) *Dad was always the grateful recipient of her snobbery.* | **unwilling** | **lucky** *Our 1 000th member will be the lucky recipient of a mystery gift.*

recital *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, short** | **solo** | **lunchtime** | **organ, piano, etc.** | **poetry, song**
- VERB + RECITAL **give, play** | **attend, go to** | **listen to**
- PREP. **~ by** *a recital by the Grieg Trio*

recognition *noun*

1 remembering/identifying sb/sth

- ADJ. **immediate, instant** | **early** *the early recognition of a disease* | **dawning** | **character, face, handwriting, speech, text** (*computing*) | **automatic, computer** *the automatic recognition of handwriting by computer*
- QUANT. **flicker, sign** *She stared directly at the witness but he did not show a flicker of recognition* (= he did not show that he recognized her).
- VERB + RECOGNITION **show** | **avoid** *He pulled the hood of his cloak over his head to avoid recognition.* | **allow** *The monitoring system allows recognition of pollution hot spots.*
- RECOGNITION + VERB **dawn** *Recognition slowly dawned, 'Oh, it's you Mrs Foster!'*
- RECOGNITION + NOUN **software, system**
- PREP. **beyond (all) ~** (*figurative*) *Many of those interviewed said their job had changed beyond recognition* (= changed completely) *over the past five years.* **out of (all) ~** (*figurative*) *The equipment and methods of production have improved out of all recognition* (= greatly improved). **without ~** *He looked up, glanced at them without recognition, and went on his way.*
- PHRASES **recognition in sb's eyes** *There was no recognition in his eyes* (= he did not look as if he recognized her).

2 accepting that sth exists/is true; public praise/reward

- ADJ. **full** | **appropriate, due, proper** | **insufficient** | **greater, growing, increasing** *There needs to be a greater recognition of corporate crime as a social problem.* | **clear, explicit, overt** | **implicit** | **apparent** | **grudging** | **positive** | **equal** *equal recognition for the work women do* | **mutual** | **immediate, instant** | **belated** *The award is being made in belated recognition of her services to the industry.* | **individual, personal** *personal recognition for your achievements* | **general, universal, wide, widespread** *The young talent at the club deserves wider recognition.* | **international, national, worldwide** | **public, social** | **professional** | **diplomatic** | **formal, legal, legislative, official** | **de facto** *Twelve states have accorded de facto recognition to the new regime.* | **government**
- VERB + RECOGNITION **achieve, earn sb, gain, get, obtain, receive, win** *His recitals have earned him recognition as a talented performer.* | **deserve** | **require** *Both of these perspectives are valid and require recognition.* | **imply** *They claim that signature of the peace accord did not imply recognition of the state's sovereignty.* | **ask for, call for, demand, request, seek** | **apply for** | **qualify for** *to qualify for UN recognition as an International Biosphere Reserve* | **accord sb/sth, give sb/sth, grant sb/sth** | **refuse sb/sth**
- RECOGNITION + VERB **come** *Official recognition of the change came fast.*
- PREP. **in ~ of** *an award in recognition of his outstanding work* **without ~** *She has worked actively but without recognition.* | **~ as** *a country that has long sought recognition as a major power* **~ by/from** *recognition by his superiors of the service he had performed* **~ for** *They received recognition for their 20-year commitment to safety at sea.*
- PHRASES **a lack of recognition, recognition of the importance of sth, recognition of the need for sth, a struggle for recognition**

recognizable *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **clearly, easily, immediately, instantly, quite, readily** *John's car was easily recognizable in the car park.* ◇ *a building that was immediately recognizable as a prison* | **barely, hardly, scarcely**
- PREP. **as** *a language barely recognizable as English* **by** *recognizable by their distinctive uniforms* **to** *The scheme's benefits were recognizable to all interest groups.*

recognize *verb*

1 know sb/sth again

- ADV. **immediately, instantly** *I immediately recognized the building.* | **easily** *This is the only species of flamingo in the region, easily recognized by its pink plumage.* | **barely, hardly** *Stella hardly recognized her brother.*
- VERB + RECOGNIZE **learn to** *You learn to recognize the calls of different birds.* | **be easy to**
- PREP. **as** *He recognized the man as one of the police officers.* **by** *I recognized her by her red hair.* **from** *I recognized them from a television show.*

2 understand sth

- ADV. **fully** *They fully recognize the need to proceed carefully.* | **belatedly, finally** *The government has belatedly recognized the danger to health of passive smoking.*
- VERB + RECOGNIZE **must** | **be important to** | **begin to** | **be slow to** *The company had been slow to recognize the opportunities available to it.* | **fail to**
- PREP. **as** *This issue must be recognized as a priority for the next administration.*
- PHRASES **be generally/universally/widely recognized, be increasingly recognized** *The strength of this argument is being increasingly recognized.* **failure to recognize sth**

3 accept sth officially

- ADV. **clearly** *The law clearly recognizes that a company is separate from those who invest in it.* | **formally, officially** | **internationally, nationally** *The Medway estuary is recognized internationally as a conservation area.*
- VERB + RECOGNIZE **agree to** | **refuse to**
- PREP. **as** *All rivers should be officially recognized as public rights of way.*
- PHRASES **be legally recognized** *A bill of exchange is a legally recognized document.* **a refusal to recognize sth**

recoil *verb*

- ADV. **a little, slightly** | **instinctively** *As he leaned towards her she instinctively recoiled.*
- PREP. **at** *Howard recoiled a little at the sharpness in my voice.* **from** *She felt him recoil from her, frightened.* **in** *He recoiled in apparent disgust.*

recollection *noun*

- ADJ. **clear, distinct, vivid** | **dim, faint, hazy, vague** | **earliest** | **sudden** | **painful** | **personal**
- VERB + RECOLLECTION **have (no)** *I have only a vague recollection of sunshine and sand.* ◇ *I have absolutely no recollection of the incident.* | **bring back** *The place brought back painful recollections.* | **chuckle at/in, laugh at, smile at/in** | **shudder at**
- PREP. **in ~** *She stared at him in sudden recollection.* | **~ from** *recollections from Eliot's own life*
- PHRASES **to the best of your recollection** *To the best of my recollection* (= if I remember correctly), *he was not there that day.*

recommend *verb*

1 say that sb/sth is good

- ADV. **highly, thoroughly** *This book is highly recommended by teachers.* | **certainly, definitely** *I definitely recommend this film.* | **heartily** | **personally** *Consult a solicitor who is personally recommended to you.*
- PREP. **for** *Who would you recommend for the job?* **to** *I can recommend this book to anyone interested in food.*
- PHRASES **sth has a lot/much to recommend it** *Your idea has much to recommend it.*

2 advise sb to do sth

- ADV. **strongly** *I would strongly recommend that you get professional advice.* | **particularly, specifically**

recommendation *noun*

1 official suggestion

- ADJ. **firm, strong** | **clear** | **unanimous** | **detailed** | **specific** | **broad, general, wide-ranging** *The committee put forward broad recommendations for the improvement of safety at sports grounds.* | **far-reaching** | **important** | **central, key, main, major, principal** | **positive** | **first, initial** | **final** | **further** | **draft** | **written** | **word-of-mouth** | **medical, official, practical** | **policy, safety**
- QUANT. **list, series, set**
- VERB + RECOMMENDATION **come up with, make, produce** *The council has produced a set of recommendations on ethics in health care.* | **give, offer, put forward, submit** | **publish** | **consider, discuss, review** | **agree with** | **disagree with** | **accept, adopt, approve, endorse** *The UN Security Council endorsed the recommendation submitted by the Secretary General.* | **reject** | **act on, carry out, follow, implement** *The government gave assurances that it would implement the recommendations in full.* | **enforce** | **support** | **oppose** | **ignore** | **be in accordance with, be in line with** *to develop a plan in line with the recommendations of national policy* | **base sth on** *The design of the breakwater was based on the recommendations of an engineering study.*
- RECOMMENDATION + VERB **arise from sth, be based on sth, follow (from) sth, relate to sth** *a detailed set of recommendations following a comprehensive examination of the subject* | **aim at sth** *recommendations aimed at achieving a more equitable admissions policy*
- PREP. **on/upon sb/sth's ~** *I had the operation on the recommendation of my doctor.* | **~ about/as to/concerning/on** *recommendations on how health and safety standards might be improved* **~ by/from** *recommendations by the judges* **~ for** *recommendations for improving the quality of service* **~ in respect of** *recommendations in respect of bank officials* **~ to** *the board's recommendations to the minister* **~ with regard/respect to** *recommendations with regard to management procedures*

⇨ Special page at MEETING

2 saying sb/sth is good/suitable

- ADJ. **glowing, high/highest** | **personal** *It's best to find a builder through personal recommendation.*
- VERB + RECOMMENDATION **give sb/sth** | **get, receive** | **come on/with** *The new housekeeper came on the highest recommendation.* ◇ *The chef comes with her recommendation.* | **need no** *Swiss chocolates need no recommendation* (= their good reputation is enough to recommend them).
- PREP. **at/on/upon sb's ~** *At the recommendation of a psychiatrist, the accused will remain under observation.* ◇ *We went to Corfu on your recommendation* (= because you recommended it).
- PHRASES **a letter of recommendation**

recompense *noun*

- ADJ. **adequate, sufficient** | **financial**
- VERB + RECOMPENSE **have** *All struggles should have their recompense.* | **expect** | **receive** | **give (sth in), pay (sth in)** *Substantial damages were paid in recompense.*
- PREP. **as/in ~** *She received a gift as recompense.* | **~ for** *He was given £1 000 in recompense for his loss.* **~ from** *recompense from the government*

reconciliation *noun*

1 ending a disagreement/conflict

- ADJ. **full** | **lasting** | **national, personal, political**
- VERB + RECONCILIATION **seek** *He sought reconciliation with those he had stolen from.* | **attempt** | **achieve, bring about, effect, make, secure** | **promote, work for** | **call for** *The rebel leader called for reconciliation with the armed forces.*
- RECONCILIATION + NOUN **agreement** | **talks**
- PREP. **~ between** *They aimed to secure a lasting reconciliation between the two countries.* **~ with** *She attempted reconciliation with her estranged brother.*
- PHRASES **an attempt at reconciliation, efforts at/towards reconciliation, a gesture of reconciliation** *In a bold gesture of reconciliation, the government released the rebel leader.* **a mood/spirit of reconciliation, a policy of reconciliation**

reconnaissance *noun*

- ADJ. **general** | **preliminary** | **aerial/air, maritime, military** *Spotter planes made a preliminary aerial reconnaissance of the island.*
- VERB + RECONNAISSANCE **carry out, conduct, do, make**
- RECONNAISSANCE + VERB **reveal sth** *Reconnaissance revealed not a single large ship.*
- RECONNAISSANCE + NOUN **flight, mission, sortie** | **party, patrol, team, unit** | **aircraft, plane**

reconstruct *verb*

- ADV. **completely** | **partially** | **painstakingly** *Every aspect of the original has been closely studied and painstakingly reconstructed.*
- VERB + RECONSTRUCT **attempt to, try to** | **be possible to** *It is not possible to reconstruct the complete symphony from these manuscript sketches.*
- PREP. **from** *Local historians have reconstructed from contemporary descriptions how the hall may have looked in 1300.*
- PHRASES **an attempt to reconstruct sth**

reconstruction *noun*

- ADJ. **fundamental, major** | **complete, total** | **large/large-scale, life-size** *a life-size reconstruction of a Viking longboat* | **dramatic** *a dramatic reconstruction of school life in the 1940s* | **national** *The country faces a huge task of national reconstruction following the war.* | **post-war** | **economic, historical, social**
- VERB + RECONSTRUCTION **undertake** *A group of enthusiasts have undertaken the reconstruction of a steam locomotive.* | **stage** *The police have staged a reconstruction of the events leading up to the murder.*
- RECONSTRUCTION + NOUN **period** | **work** | **plan, programme, scheme** | **cost** *reconstruction costs following the cyclone*

record *noun*

1 account

- ADJ. **formal** *No formal record of the marriage now survives.* | **official, public** | **permanent** | **accurate, careful, exact** | **up-to-date** | **adequate, proper, reliable** | **inadequate** | **incomplete, sketchy** | **brief** | **complete, comprehensive, detailed, extensive, systematic** | **verbatim** | **authentic** | **daily** | **documentary, handwritten, written** | **photographic, pictorial** | **archival, historical** |

archaeological *This period of barbarian rule is poorly represented in the archaeological record.* | **fossil, geological** | **administrative, departmental, financial, personnel** | **dental, health, medical**

• VERB + RECORD **keep** *He has always kept an accurate record of his spending.* | **check, consult** *I checked the records but nobody of that name had worked here.* | **destroy** *Medical records should not be destroyed.* | **file** | **update** | **be on, go on** *She is on record as saying that she once took drugs.* ◇ *He is the latest public figure to go on (the) record about corruption in politics.*

• RECORD + VERB **contain sth** *The records contain the bank details of all employees.* | **show sth** *The records showed that the building had not been inspected for ten years.* | **suggest sth** *Fossil records suggest that the region was covered in water until relatively recently.* | **exist, survive** *No record exists of a battle on this site.* | **go back** *The university records go back as far as the 13th century.*

• PREP. **in the ~(s)** *The historic agreement is preserved in the university records.* **off/on the ~** *Off the record, he told the interviewer what he thought of his colleagues.* | **~ of** *a record of achievement* **~ on** *records on children's progress*

• PHRASES **access to the records** *Under the law, every citizen has access to their official records.* **put/set the record straight** *She called a press conference to set the record straight about her disappearance.*

2 best result, highest level, etc.

• ADJ. **all-comers, club, course, national, Olympic, track, world** | **unbeaten, unbroken** | **long-standing** *Bob Beamon's long-standing record for the long jump was eventually broken.* | **all-time** | **speed**

• VERB + RECORD **hold** *Who holds the 100 metre sprint record?* | **establish, set** *She has just set a new world record.* | **beat, break, shatter** *If she continues like this she could beat the record.* | **equal** *He has equalled the Olympic record.*

• RECORD + VERB **stand** *His mile record stood for twelve years.* | **fall**

• RECORD + NOUN **book/books** *Bubka rewrote the pole-vault record books during his career.* | **attempt** | **breaker, holder** | **high, number** *Unemployment has reached a record high* (= the highest level ever). ◇ *There was a record number of candidates for the post.*

• PREP. **~ for** *These viewing figures are an all-time record for a single broadcast.* **~ with** *Lewis established a new world record with a time of 9.86 seconds.*

• PHRASES **in record time** *I got to work in record time.*

3 sb's performance in a particular area

• ADJ. **past, track** | **distinguished, enviable, excellent, exceptional, exemplary, fine, formidable, good, impressive, magnificent, outstanding, proven, remarkable, unique, unparalleled, unrivalled** | **abysmal, appalling, atrocious, bad, dismal, mediocre, poor, sorry** | **unenviable** *He has an unenviable record of ill-health.* | **satisfactory** | **consistent** | **clean, unblemished** *Apart from a parking fine ten years before, she had an unblemished driving record.* | **academic, educational, school** | **military** | **attendance** *The teacher spoke to her about her poor attendance record.* | **economic, environmental, human-rights** *the government's economic record* | **disciplinary** | **criminal, police** | **accident, safety** *The airline's accident record makes it among the safest.*

• VERB + RECORD **have, possess** | **keep, maintain** *The company has maintained an accident-free record since it started business.*

• RECORD + VERB **show sth** *Her record shows that she is able to compete under great pressure.* | **compare with sth** *Our record compares favourably with that of any similar-sized company.* | **speak for itself** *When it comes to quality, our record speaks for itself.*

• PREP. **~ among** *They have the worst human-rights record among member countries.* **~ for** *He has an appalling record for dishonesty.* **~ in** *The ideal candidate will have a proven track record in project management.* **~ on** *the government's abysmal record on crime*

• PHRASES **on past records** *On past records, she should have no problem passing the exam.* **on sb's past record**

4 music

• ADJ. **long-playing** | **gramophone** | **classical, jazz, pop** | **best-selling**

• VERB + RECORD **cut, make** | **release** *They released their first record in 1963.* | **listen to, play, put on** *I'll put on one of my favourite records.*

• RECORD + NOUN **company, industry, label** | **producer** | **deal** *The band signed their first record deal a year after forming.* | **collection** | **shop** | **library** | **player** | **sleeve**

record *verb*

1 information

• ADV. **carefully, meticulously, painstakingly** | **accurately, correctly, properly** *The weights must be recorded accurately.* | **faithfully** *It was all there, faithfully recorded in his uncle's stiff and formal style.* | **duly** *The contract is witnessed by others and duly recorded.* | **automatically, routinely** *The mother's occupation was not routinely recorded on the birth certificate.* | **officially** | **electronically, manually** | **graphically, vividly** *The circumstances of her death were graphically recorded in the local press.*

• PREP. **as** *The time of the accident is recorded as 6.23 p.m.*

• PHRASES **be recorded for posterity** *The names of those who died are recorded for posterity on a tablet at the back of the church.* **historically recorded** *historically recorded events* **poorly/well recorded** *The geographical spread of the industry in the 16th century is hard to ascertain, for much of it is poorly recorded.*

2 sound/pictures

• ADV. **secretly** *She secretly recorded the conversation.*

• PREP. **from** *a programme she had recorded from the radio* **on** *I recorded the film on video.*

• PHRASES **beautifully/well recorded** *This CD has been beautifully recorded.* **digitally recorded**

recorder *noun*

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

recording *noun*

• ADJ. **excellent, fine, good** | **accurate, careful, detailed** *a detailed recording of facts* | **complete** *a complete recording of Mozart's piano sonatas* | **last, later/latest, new, recent** *the band's latest recording* | **modern** | **early, old** | **original** *to enhance the quality of the original recording* | **pirate** | **commercial** *one of the first commercial recordings of the artist* | **professional** | **live, studio** | **audio, video** | **cassette, tape** | **analogue, digital** | **mono, stereo** | **electrical, magnetic** *The principles of magnetic recording have been around for a long time.* | **music, sound** *before the invention of sound recording* | **orchestral, piano, etc.** | **test**

• VERB + RECORDING **make (sb)** *Make a few test recordings before you start the session in earnest.* | **play (sb), play (sb) back** *I want to play you a recording of the rehearsal.* | **hear, listen to** | **view, watch**

• RECORDING + VERB **give sth, show sth** *The recording gives an account of his kidnapping.* | **sound …** *The recording sounds just like a live performance.*

• RECORDING + NOUN **process** | **session** | **facilities, studio** | **device, equipment, system** | **engineer** | **artist** | **career** *The clarinet player has launched her recording career.* | **contract, deal** | **company** | **industry**

• PREP. **~ by** *a recording by the Amadeus Quartet*

recount *verb*

• ADV. **vividly** *The story of his life is vividly recounted in this new book.*

recourse *noun*

• ADJ. **constant, frequent | limited | no other, only** *I have no other recourse than to inform the police.* | **direct** *The study of these creatures has been conducted without direct recourse to living specimens.* | **legal**
• VERB + RECOURSE **have** *The mother of an illegitimate child had no legal recourse to the father.* | **seek** *An order was made against which he sought recourse in the supreme court.* | **avoid** *Their system of dispute resolution avoids recourse to the courts.*
• PREP. **by ~ to** *people who deal with emotional pain by recourse to drugs and alcohol* **without ~ to** *They tried to settle the dispute without recourse to the courts.* | **~ against** *Citizens have learnt that they do have recourse against governments.* **~ to** *She often had recourse to her dictionary.*

recover *verb*

• ADV. **completely, fully | partially | only just | hardly, never/not quite, never really** *She had hardly recovered from the birth of her last baby.* | **well** *Your baby is recovering well.* | **enough, sufficiently** *After a minute she recovered enough to speak.* | **quickly, soon | gradually, slowly | apparently | never**
• VERB + RECOVER **help sb (to) | struggle to** *Yates is struggling to recover form a serious knee injury.*
• PREP. **from** *Mrs Burton was last night recovering from her injuries in hospital.*

recovery *noun*

• ADJ. **amazing, astonishing, dramatic, excellent, miraculous, remarkable | good, satisfactory, significant, strong, substantial | complete, full | limited, modest, partial** *The FTSE index staged a modest recovery to be 6.5 points down.* | **fragile | fast, quick, rapid, speedy, swift | gradual, slow | steady | faltering | eventual | continuing, lasting, long-term, sustained | spontaneous | national | economic, industrial, physical, political | price, profits | post-war**
• VERB + RECOVERY **achieve, make, stage** *Many people make remarkable recoveries after strokes.* | **aid, speed (up), stimulate** *A holiday would speed his recovery.* ◇ *a reduction in interest rates to stimulate global economic recovery* | **delay, hamper, hinder | wish sb** *We wish them all a speedy recovery.*
• RECOVERY + VERB **be on the way, come** *The economic circumstances are right and recovery is on the way* (= recovery will occur soon). | **be ... way off** *Unemployment is high and economic recovery is still a long way off* (= it will be a long time until recovery). | **be underway, occur, take place | continue**
• RECOVERY + NOUN **time** *His injuries have returned as there was insufficient recovery time between matches.* | **period, phase | process | plan, programme | room** *After the operation she was taken to the recovery room.* | **position** *Continue resuscitation until the person starts breathing and then place them in the recovery position.*
• PREP. **beyond ~** *The region has been damaged by acid rain and rivers are fouled almost beyond recovery.* **in ~** *He's in recovery from the disease.* | **~ from** *recovery from his illness* **~ in** *the recent recovery in consumer spending* **~ to** *a slow recovery to full health*
• PHRASES **be on the road to recovery** *She is well on the road to recovery* (= making good progress towards recovery). **hopes/prospects of recovery, a sign of recovery** *The economy is showing the first signs of recovery.*

recreation *noun*

• ADJ. **popular | chief, main** *Playing billiards is my chief recreation.* | **informal | physical | countryside, outdoor | indoor**
• RECREATION + NOUN **area, centre, facilities, ground, room**
• PREP. **for ~** *She cycles for recreation.*
• PHRASES **a form of recreation** *His only form of recreation is playing cards.* **a source of recreation** *exploiting the countryside as a source of recreation*

recruit *noun*

• ADJ. **latest, new, raw, recent** *raw recruits marching up and down with the drill instructor* | **possible, potential | young | graduate | army**
• VERB + RECRUIT **find** *A common way for companies to find new recruits is by taking a stand at a job exhibition.* | **attract** *It's difficult to attract recruits when working conditions are so poor.* | **enlist, gain, sign up** *Thousands of recruits had been enlisted and partly trained.* ◇ *She tried to gain recruits for the party.* | **train** *Army recruits are all trained in first aid.* | **provide** *Their business schools provide recruits for domestic industry.*
• PREP. **~ to** *new recruits to the party*

recruit *verb*

• ADV. **directly** *The specialist institutions directly recruit their own staff.* | **actively | locally** *Most of the workers will be recruited locally.* | **personally** *She personally recruited the teachers.* | **specially** *Staff were recruited specially for the event.*
• VERB + RECRUIT **need to | seek to, try to**
• PREP. **as** *Peter Watson has been recruited as Sales Manager.* **for** *A hundred patients were recruited for the study.* **from** *Soldiers were recruited from the local villages.* **into** *Some of the men were recruited into the army.* **to** *Ten new members were recruited to the committee.*
• PHRASES **newly/recently recruited**

recruitment *noun*

• ADJ. **large/large-scale | annual | forced** *forced recruitment of labour* | **labour, staff | executive, graduate, student** *She has set up her own executive recruitment business in Paris.* | **army, military, police**
• RECRUITMENT + NOUN **policy | strategy | procedure, process | campaign, drive, programme | market | agency, consultancy, service | consultant, manager, officer, specialist** *the company's recruitment officer*
• PREP. **~ by** *recruitment by large companies* **~ into/to** *large-scale recruitment to the new industries*
• PHRASES **a method of recruitment, a source of recruitment** *One source of recruitment is the civil service.*

recur *verb*

• ADV. **constantly, frequently, regularly** *This is a constantly recurring problem which we must deal with.*
• VERB + RECUR **be likely to | tend to**
• PREP. **throughout** *a theme that recurs throughout the book*
• PHRASES **keep recurring**

recurrence *noun*

• ADJ. **high | frequent | tumour, ulcer, etc.**
• VERB + RECURRENCE **avoid, prevent | experience, have, suffer** *He has suffered a recurrence of his hamstring injury.*
• RECURRENCE + NOUN **rate**
• PHRASES **the likelihood of a recurrence, the risk of recurrence** *a high risk of recurrence*

recyclable *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **easily** *Paper is easily recyclable.* | **completely** *Glass products are completely recyclable.* | **potentially**

recycle *verb*

- ADV. **endlessly, regularly** (*often figurative*) *endlessly recycling the same worn-out arguments*
- PREP. **from** *made of plastic recycled from old packaging material* **into** *These materials can be recycled into other packaging products.*

red *adj.*

1 of the colour of blood

- VERBS **glow** *The coals glowed red in the dying fire.*
- ADV. **very** | **slightly** *The leaves looked slightly red.*
- ADJ. **bright, brilliant, fiery, flaming, vibrant, vivid** *flaming red hair* | **dark, deep, rich** | **light, pale** | **dull** | **blood, brick, ruby** *her ruby red lips*

⇨ Special page at COLOUR

2 of the face

- VERBS **be, look** | **flush, go, grow, turn** *Mr Grubb was shouting and growing redder and redder in the face.*
- ADV. **very** | **quite** | **rather, slightly**
- ADJ. **bright, fiery** *He could feel himself going bright red.*
- PREP. **with** *Ross flushed red with embarrassment.*
- PHRASES **as red as a beetroot, red in the face** *Charles was rapidly turning red in the face.*

redemption *noun*

1 being saved from the power of evil

- VERB + REDEMPTION **be in need of, need** *She believes that humanity is in need of redemption.*
- PREP. **beyond ~** *After another incident at the weekend, the club's reputation for violence is beyond redemption.* | **~ from** *redemption from evil*

2 repayment of money invested/borrowed

- ADJ. **early** *There is a fee for early redemption.* | **capital, loan, share**
- REDEMPTION + NOUN **date** | **price, value, yield**
- PREP. **on ~** *A charge is payable on redemption.*

redistribution *noun*

- ADJ. **major, massive, significant, substantial** | **equitable** | **income, land, population**
- VERB + REDISTRIBUTION **be/become available for** *a national tax available for redistribution to local government* | **bring about** *The tax brought about a significant redistribution of wealth.*
- PREP. **~ from, ~ to** *redistribution from the rich to the poor*

red tape *noun*

- ADJ. **bureaucratic**
- VERB + RED TAPE **cut (through), reduce**

reduce *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, dramatically, drastically, greatly, sharply, significantly, substantially** | **further** | **slightly** *We need to reduce the speed slightly.* | **gradually, progressively** *Legislation progressively reduced the number of situations in which industrial action could be taken.*
- VERB + REDUCE **aim to, attempt to, seek to, try to** | **help (to)** *Giving up smoking helps reduce the risk of heart disease.* | **manage to** | **be designed to, be intended to** | **be expected to, be likely to**
- PREP. **by** *Pollution from the works has been reduced by 70 per cent.* **from, to** *The price is reduced from 99p to 85p.*
- PHRASES **an attempt/effort to reduce sth, measures to reduce sth, reduce sth to a minimum** *The risks must be reduced to the absolute minimum.*

reduction *noun*

- ADJ. **big, considerable, dramatic, drastic, great, huge, large, major, marked, massive, remarkable, severe, significant, substantial** *The changes may result in a greater reduction in employee numbers than we had previously expected.* ◇ *a sale with massive reductions on selected items* | **minor, slight, small** | **further** | **possible** | **actual, net, overall, real** | **across-the-board, general** | **rapid, sharp, steep** | **slow** | **immediate, sudden** | **gradual, progressive, steady** | **initial** | **recent** | **long-term, permanent** | **proposed** | **percentage** *A small percentage reduction in the cost of materials would mean a significant increase in profit.* | **capital, cost, debt, deficit, expenditure, pay, price, tariff, tax, wage** | **emission, noise, pollution, waste** | **weight** | **staff** | **arms, troop**
- VERB + REDUCTION **achieve, make, secure** *The government has found it difficult to make real reductions in government spending.* ◇ *Every effort is made to secure the highest possible reduction in casualties.* | **cause, lead to, make, produce, result in** *These simple changes will make a substantial reduction in the fat content of your diet.* | **avoid** | **ask for, demand, seek** *I asked for a reduction as the dress was damaged.* | **get, receive** *Guests staying 14 nights will receive a ten per cent reduction.* | **suffer** *They suffered a severe reduction in income.* | **accept, welcome** | **give (sb), offer (sb)** | **propose** *She proposed a reduction in the state president's powers.* | **notice, observe, witness** *I haven't noticed any significant reduction in the performance of my car since switching to unleaded fuel.* | **announce** | **forecast** *The budget forecasts a deficit reduction of 27%.* | **mean, represent** *Our average margins dropped to 35%, which represents a reduction in gross margins of £109 million.* | **show** *Figures just released show a steady reduction in levels of emissions over the last four years.*
- REDUCTION + VERB **occur, take place**
- REDUCTION + NOUN **target** *the government's waste reduction targets*
- PREP. **through a/the ~** *economic growth through a reduction in interest rates* | **~ by** *reduction by 30%* **~ from, ~ in** *There has been a sharp reduction in the number of accidents on motorways.* **~ on** *a 25% reduction on normal subscription rates* **~ to** *a reduction in the speed limit from 50 to 40 miles per hour*
- PHRASES **a reduction in numbers** *They are concerned about the reduction in numbers of people eligible for legal aid.* **a reduction in the amount/number/size of sth** *the reduction in the number of hospital beds*

redundancy *noun*

- ADJ. **large-scale, major, mass, massive** *The closure of the mine led to large-scale redundancies.* | **widespread** | **threatened** | **compulsory, enforced, forced** | **voluntary**
- QUANT. **round, wave** *a fresh wave of redundancies*
- VERB + REDUNDANCY **make** *The bank will be making 3 500 redundancies over the next five years.* | **lead to, result in** | **avoid** | **announce** | **be threatened by/with, face** *Sixty workers at a clothing factory face redundancy because the firm is relocating.* | **accept, take, volunteer for** *Those choosing to take redundancy will receive the company's standard redundancy terms.*
- REDUNDANCY + VERB **occur, take place**
- REDUNDANCY + NOUN **policy** | **programme** | **notice** *Redundancy notices have been sent to 200 workers.* | **compensation, package, terms** | **money, pay, payment** | **costs** *Most of the companies' losses stemmed from redundancy costs.*
- PHRASES **the threat of redundancy**

redundant *adj.*

1 no longer needed for a job

- VERBS **be | become | make sb** *the decision to make 800 employees compulsorily redundant*
- ADV. **compulsorily**

2 not necessary or wanted

- VERBS **be, feel, seem | become | declare sth, make sth, render sth** *The chapel was declared redundant in 1995.*
- ADV. **completely | virtually | largely**

refer *verb*

PHRASAL VERB

refer to sb/sth

- ADV. **briefly, in passing** *He referred to the report in passing.* | **specifically | commonly** *The disease was commonly referred to as 'the green sickness'.* | **frequently, often | generally, usually | sometimes | always | never | jokingly**
- VERB + REFER TO SB/STH **be used to** *The term 'alexia' is used to refer to any acquired disorder of reading.*
- PREP. **as** *She always referred to Ben as 'that nice man'.*

referee *noun*

1 controls a sports match

- ADJ. **boxing, football | match, tournament** *decisions taken by the match referee* | **international**
- REFEREE + VERB **award sb sth** *The referee awarded a free kick to the home team.* | **book sb, send sb off** *The referee booked three players for offensive behaviour.*
- PHRASES **the referee's decision**

2 recommends sb for a job

- ADJ. **academic, professional**
- VERB + REFEREE **act as, be**
- PREP. **~for** *His former employer agreed to act as a referee for him.*

3 settles a dispute between people

- ADJ. **official**
- VERB + REFEREE **act as** *to act as referee between the parties involved*
- PREP. **~between**

reference *noun*

1 mentioning sb/sth

- ADJ. **extensive | brief, casual, passing | occasional | frequent, repeated | constant | further** *They could find no further reference to Mr LaMotte in the records.* | **general | particular, special, specific** *She won a grant to study political science with special reference to China.* | **definite | explicit, express | direct | cryptic, indirect, oblique, obscure, veiled | clear, obvious | ambiguous, confusing | early** *one of the earliest references to the game of chess* | **biblical, cultural, historical, literary | written**
- VERB + REFERENCE **contain, have** *Her diary contains no reference to the alleged appointment.* | **drop, make** *He dropped casual references to the legacy of his great work.* ◇ *The article makes no reference to his first marriage.* | **drop, omit** *The new constitution dropped all reference to previous wars.* | **find**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *In an obvious reference to the president, he talked of corruption in high places.* **in/with ~to** (*written*) *I am writing with reference to your job application.* | **~(back) to** *The summary should be comprehensible without reference back to the source work.*

2 consulting sb/sth for advice/help/information

- ADJ. **easy, quick** *The book is organized alphabetically for easy reference.* | **further, future**
- PREP. **by ~to** *Our charges are calculated by reference to an hourly rate.* **for ~** *Retain a copy of the form for future reference.* **without ~to** *The decision was taken without reference to local managers.*
- PHRASES **for reference purposes** *She needs the book for reference purposes.* **a source of reference** *The book is an invaluable source of reference for the art historian.*

3 book containing facts/information

- ADJ. **general** *The book is by far the best general reference on natural history.*
- REFERENCE + NOUN **book, material, source, work | library | section** *You'll find the information in the reference section of your local library.*

4 number/note/symbol

- ADJ. **copious | full** *For full references of all books cited, see Appendix B.* | **appropriate** *Please send a full CV, quoting the appropriate reference.* | **cross-** *The cross-references refer you to information in other parts of the dictionary.* | **bibliographic/bibliographical | grid, map**
- VERB + REFERENCE **quote | cite, give** *References to original sources are given at the end of each chapter.*
- REFERENCE + NOUN **number**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The date of publication should be included in the reference.* | **~to** *a reference to page 17*
- PHRASES **a list of references**

5 letter about your character/abilities

- ADJ. **glowing | character**
- VERB + REFERENCE **ask for | give (sb), provide (sb with), write (sb) | follow up, take up** *They've taken up my references* (= contacted the person who provided the reference), *so they must be interested in me.*
- PREP. **~from** *a reference from your current employer*

5 standards by which sth is judged

- REFERENCE + NOUN **point**
- PHRASES **a frame of reference** *People interpret events within their own frame of reference.* **a point of reference** *Unemployment serves as a useful point of reference in examining social problems.* **terms of reference** *The matter was outside the committee's terms of reference.*

referendum *noun*

- ADJ. **planned, proposed | popular | national, nationwide | constitutional, independence**
- VERB + REFERENDUM **conduct, hold** *The referendum will be held on July 14th.* | **put sth to** *The proposals were put to a referendum.* | **call** *The president called a referendum that he hoped would confirm him in power.* | **call for, demand, propose** *The group called for a referendum on the death penalty.* | **oppose | boycott** *The unions urged people to boycott the referendum.* | **declare, organize | be adopted by, be approved by, be confirmed by, be endorsed by** *a new constitution adopted by referendum*
- REFERENDUM + VERB **show sth** *A popular referendum showed that the majority of people want reform.*
- REFERENDUM + NOUN **proposal** *The Democrats rejected the referendum proposal.* | **campaign | result**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The issue will be decided in a national referendum.* | **~on** *a referendum on a new constitution*
- PHRASES **declare a referendum fair/illegal** *UN monitors declared the referendum fair.* **the result/results of a referendum**

refine *verb*

- ADV. **slightly | further | increasingly | constantly, continuously** *The information system is constantly refined and updated.* | **gradually**
- VERB + REFINE **attempt to, try to | help (to)**
- PREP. **into** *Sugar cane is refined into sugar.*

refinement *noun*

1 improvement to/on sth; process of improving sth

- ADJ. **considerable, great** *A greater refinement of the categorization is possible.* | **extra, further | continuous,**

endless *All programs have bugs and need endless refinement.* | **useful** *It is possible to add a few useful refinements to the basic system.* | **technical** | **modern**

- QUANT. **degree**
- VERB + REFINEMENT **need, require** *The technology requires a great deal of refinement.* | **add, introduce**
- PREP. **~in** *a refinement in the masonry* **~on** *a refinement on previous methods* **~to** *to add a further refinement to the computer system*

2 being polite/well educated; clever in design

- ADJ. **great** *a woman of great refinement and beauty*
- VERB + REFINEMENT **lack** *The kite was star shaped and lacked the refinement of current designs.*
- PREP. **~in** *a lack of refinement in engine design*
- PHRASES **a lack of refinement**

reflect *verb*

1 send back light/heat/sound

- ADV. **dimly, dully** *The sun reflected dully off the stone walls.* ◇ *(figurative) In Milton's poem, Satan, even after his fall, dimly reflects his former glory.* | **back**
- PREP. **from** *The screen reflects light from the sun.* **off**

2 show/express sth

- ADV. **clearly** | **directly** | **accurately, closely, correctly, faithfully, well** *Does this opinion poll accurately reflect the public mood?* | **adequately** *The punishment should adequately reflect the revulsion felt by most people for this appalling crime.* | **merely, simply** *This year's budget simply reflects the fact that we have fewer people out of work.* | **not necessarily** *The views expressed in this article do not necessarily reflect those of the editor.*
- VERB + REFLECT **be designed to** *The exhibition is designed to reflect the diversity of the nation and its regions.*
- PREP. **in** *The condition of the house is reflected in its low price.*

3 think deeply

- ADV. **bitterly, gloomily, ruefully, wryly** *reflecting ruefully that the great American dollar didn't buy as much as it used to*
- VERB + REFLECT **pause to** | **leave sb to** *He was left to reflect on the implications of his decision.*
- PREP. **on/upon** *She paused to reflect on what she had achieved.*
- PHRASES **time to reflect** *I need time to reflect.*

reflection *noun*

1 image in a mirror, etc.

- ADJ. **clear** | **faint** | **blurred, distorted**
- VERB + REFLECTION **catch a glimpse of, catch sight of, see** *He caught sight of her reflection in the window.* | **glance at, look at** | **gaze at, stare at, watch** | **examine, inspect, study**
- REFLECTION + VERB **look ...** *Her reflection in the mirror looked distorted.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *In the reflection on the glass door he could see the class behind him.* | **~in** *I saw my reflection in the polished marble.* **~on** *the reflection of the mountains on the calm waters of the lake*

2 sending light/heat/sound back from a surface

- ADJ. **heat, light, sound**
- PREP. **~from** *There is reflection of heat from the metal surface.*
- PHRASES **the angle of reflection**

3 indication/description of sth

- ADJ. **accurate, fair, true** | **inadequate** | **mere, pale** *This account is only a pale reflection of the true state of affairs.* | **direct, simple** *Young people's behaviour is a direct reflection of adults'.* | **sad**
- VERB + REFLECTION **give (sb), provide** *Such studies do not give a true reflection of population needs.*
- PREP. **~of/on/upon** *His low level of performance is no reflection on his general ability.*

4 careful thought about sth

- ADJ. **deep, mature, serious, sober** | **further** | **quiet** | **personal** | **critical, philosophical, theological**
- VERB + REFLECTION **encourage** *Counselling should encourage reflection on the past.*
- REFLECTION + VERB **show sb/sth** *A moment's reflection will show you that that can't be true.*
- PREP. **after/on/upon ~** *On further reflection, I'm not so sure it's a good idea.* | **~about/on/upon** *The party needs a period of sober reflection about what went wrong.*
- PHRASES **a moment's reflection, a period for/of reflection, time for reflection**

5 written or spoken thoughts about sth

- ADJ. **interesting** | **poignant**
- VERB + REFLECTION **have**
- PREP. **~about/on/upon** *She has some interesting reflections about the spiritual state of the country.*

reflective *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly, very** | **slightly**

reflex *noun*

- ADJ. **good, lightning, quick** | **poor** | **automatic** | **natural** | **conditioned**
- VERB + REFLEX **trigger** *The rapid movement of an object towards the eye triggers the blink reflex.* | **control** | **sharpen, speed up** *The training is designed to sharpen the fighter's reflexes.* | **slow (down)** *Alcohol can slow your reflexes.* | **suppress** | **test** *The doctor tested her reflexes.*
- REFLEX + NOUN **action, reaction** *Almost as a reflex action, I grab my pen as the phone rings.*
- PREP. **by ~** *Almost by reflex, he helped himself to a drink.*

reform *noun*

- ADJ. **drastic, fundamental, great, important, major, radical, significant, substantial** | **comprehensive, far-reaching, sweeping, wholesale, wide-ranging** | **minor** | **piecemeal** | **new** | **further** | **immediate** | **rapid** | **much needed, necessary, overdue** *Health care reform is long overdue.* | **effective** | **practical** | **moral, political, social** | **democratic, liberal** | **domestic, institutional, internal** | **procedural, structural** | **administrative, governmental** | **constitutional, electoral, judicial, law, legal, legislative** | **penal, prison** | **curriculum, educational** | **welfare** | **budgetary, economic, financial, monetary, tax** | **agrarian, agricultural, environmental, land**
- QUANT. **package**
- VERB + REFORM **adopt, bring about, introduce, put in place** | **push through** *They wanted a weak president and a strong one-chamber parliament able to push through radical reforms.* | **carry out/through, implement, put into practice, undertake** | **accelerate** *efforts to accelerate the structural reform of the economy* | **delay** | **block** *The conservative coalition could delay further reforms or block them altogether.* | **accept, welcome** | **advocate, call for, press for, propose** *They have issued a statement advocating reform of the legal system.* | **demand** | **back, encourage, support** *We are committed to supporting democracy and reform in the region.* | **require** *The practice of global politics requires reform.* | **plan** | **discuss**
- REFORM + VERB **go through** *The reforms went through in spite of opposition from teachers.* | **aim at sth** *tax reforms aimed at encouraging land development*
- REFORM + NOUN **process** | **movement** | **initiative, measure, package, programme** | **act, bill** | **policy**
- PREP. **~in** *reforms in housing and education*

- PHRASES **the need for reform, the pace of reform, a programme of reform, a timetable for reform**

reform *verb*

- ADV. **drastically, fundamentally, radically** *The health service must be radically reformed.*
- VERB + REFORM **attempt to, seek to, try to**
- PHRASES **attempts/efforts/proposals to reform sth, a need to reform sth**

refrain *noun*

- ADJ. **constant | familiar** *Complaints about school food have become a familiar refrain.*
- VERB + REFRAIN **sing, take up** *The choir's sopranos took up the refrain.*
- REFRAIN + VERB **go** *Shoppers, so the refrain goes, are never happy until they have found a bargain.*

refrain *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, deliberately** *He deliberately refrained from expressing his opinion on the matter.* | **wisely**
- PREP. **from** *I refrained from laughing.*

refreshing *adj.*

- VERBS **be | find sth**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, really, very, wonderfully** *The water was cold and wonderfully refreshing.* | **quite**

refreshment *noun*

- ADJ. **light | liquid** (*humorous*)
- VERB + REFRESHMENT **need | take | pause for, stop for** *We stopped for refreshment halfway through the journey.* | **provide (sb with), serve** *Light refreshments will be served in the interval.*
- REFRESHMENT + VERB **be available**
- REFRESHMENT + NOUN **area, hut, kiosk, room | facilities, service**
- PREP. **for ~** *We're allowed twenty minutes for refreshment.* **for ~s** *What are we going to have for refreshments?*
- PHRASES **a place of refreshment, rest and refreshment** *rest and refreshment for the mind and body*

refuge *noun*

- ADJ. **safe | temporary | wildlife | mountain** *a monk living in a mountain refuge* | **last** (*figurative*) *They looked to the country as the last refuge of liberty.*
- VERB + REFUGE **take** *They took refuge in the embassy.* | **look for, seek** *They sought refuge in the mountain villages.* | **find** *They were hoping to find a safe refuge for the night.* ◇ *They found refuge from the bright sun.* | **give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)**
- PREP. **~ against** (*figurative*) *Home is a refuge against the pressures of work.* **~ from** *The cave provided refuge from the storm.*
- PHRASES **a place of refuge**

refugee *noun*

- ADJ. **genuine, real | would-be | returning | economic, environmental, political, war** *Many claimed to be environmental refugees, leaving for the sake of their health.* | **civilian | child**
- VERB + REFUGEE **qualify as** *Those who did not qualify as refugees were returned to their home countries.* | **be considered, be found to be, be recognized as** *Only nine per cent were found to be genuine political refugees.* | **accept, resettle, take (back/in)** *The government has agreed to take only 150 refugees plus their dependants.* | **expel, return | house | help**
- REFUGEE + VERB **flee sth** *refugees fleeing political persecution* | **be displaced** *refugees displaced by the civil war* | **arrive | pour** *Hundreds of refugees are pouring over the border.* | **live** *refugees living in camps along the border* | **return**
- REFUGEE + NOUN **crisis, issue, problem, question, situation | exodus | resettlement | status** *The Home Office has refused him refugee status.* | **group, organization, worker | camp, centre, hostel | children, community, family, population**
- PREP. **among ~** *Unemployment among the refugees has risen sharply.* **~ from** *refugees from civil wars*
- PHRASES **a flood/influx of refugees** *a new influx of refugees from the combat zone* **the flow of refugees, the plight of refugees, the return of refugees**

refund *noun*

- ADJ. **full | cash | tax, ticket**
- VERB + REFUND **give (sb), make** *They'll only give you a refund if you've got the receipt.* | **offer (sb) | refuse (sb)** *He has been refused a refund on his air ticket.* | **be entitled to** *You're entitled to a full refund should you be unsatisfied with the quality of our goods.* | **ask (sb) for, claim, demand, request, seek | get, obtain, receive**
- PREP. **~ for** *There will be no refund for cancellations made within 10 working days of the conference.* **~ on** *She received a refund on the unused tickets.*

refund *verb*

- ADV. **in full** *Your money will be refunded in full.* | **promptly**
- PREP. **to** *If you are not satisfied with the goods, the price will be refunded to you.*

refusal *noun*

- ADJ. **blank, blunt, complete, flat, outright, point-blank | continued/continuing, obstinate, persistent, repeated, steadfast, stubborn | cowardly | wilful | polite | first** *If you decide to sell your car, I hope you'll give me first refusal* (= the opportunity to buy it before it is offered to others).
- VERB + REFUSAL **be met by/with** *Her appeals for funds to support the cause were met with blank refusal.*
- PREP. **~ by/of** *a refusal by a patient to accept the recommended treatment*
- PHRASES **a refusal of consent** *a refusal of consent to blood transfusions* **refusal on … grounds** *their refusal on religious grounds to perform military service*

refuse *noun*

- ADJ. **domestic, household | uncollected**
- QUANT. **heap, mound, pile**
- VERB + REFUSE **dump** *People dump their refuse in the surrounding woods instead of taking it to the tip.* | **collect** *What day do they collect the refuse?* | **recycle**
- REFUSE + NOUN **collection, disposal | bin | dump**

refuse *verb*

- ADV. **adamantly, obstinately, resolutely, steadfastly, stoutly, stubbornly | categorically, flatly, point-blank, simply** *Gerard refused point-blank to co-operate.* | **pointedly** *The demand for an apology was pointedly refused.* | **politely | consistently**
- VERB + REFUSE **can't/couldn't, can/could hardly** *They made me an offer I couldn't refuse.* | **be entitled to, have the right to** *Workers should be entitled to refuse to work under these conditions.* | **be/seem churlish to** *She offered them cups of tea and it seemed churlish to refuse.*

regain *verb*

- ADV. **completely** *He hadn't completely regained his strength.* | **quickly, rapidly | gradually, slowly | even-**

tually, finally | **never** *He was severely injured and never regained consciousness.*

• VERB + REGAIN **fight to, struggle to, try to** *The team are struggling to regain last season's form.* | **be desperate to, be determined to, hope to** *He was determined to regain what his father had lost.* | **help sb (to)** | **manage to** | **be unable to, fail to**

• PHRASES **an attempt/a bid/an effort to regain sth** *He is making a bid to regain his World No 1 ranking.* **a chance/an opportunity to regain sth** *a chance to regain the lead in the contest*

regard *noun*

1 attention to/thought for sb/sth

• ADJ. **due, full, proper** | **scant** | **particular, specific**

• VERB + REGARD **have** (*often law*) *When exercising its discretion, the court will have regard to all the circumstances.* | **pay, show** *The manifesto pays scant regard to green issues.*

• PREP. **in/with ~ to** *I am writing with regard to your recent order.* **without ~ for/to** *an attempt to plan the future of an industry without due regard to market forces* | **~ for** *a proper regard for human dignity*

• PHRASES **in that/this regard** *I have nothing further to say in this regard* (= in regard to what has just been said). **a lack of regard** *a lack of regard for public safety* **little/no regard for/to sb/sth**

2 respect/admiration for sb

• ADJ. **considerable, great, high** | **insufficient, low** | **mutual** | **critical**

• VERB + REGARD **have, hold sb/sth in** *I have the greatest regard for his abilities.* ◇ *He is held in the highest regard by his colleagues.* | **win** *The film has won critical regard in America.*

3 regards used to send greetings to sb

• ADJ. **best, kind, warm** (*all written*) *The letter ended, 'Kindest regards, Felicity.'*

• VERB + REGARDS **convey, give (sb), send (sb)** (*written*) *David sends his warmest regards to your parents.*

• PREP. **~ to** (*written*) *My regards to your aunt* (= please give my regards to your aunt).

regard *verb*

1 (often **be regarded**) think of sb/sth in a particular way

• ADV. **highly, well** *She was highly regarded as a sculptor.* | **generally, universally, widely** *The project was widely regarded as a success.* | **commonly, popularly, usually** | **conventionally, traditionally** *Foxes were traditionally regarded as vermin.* | **legitimately, properly, reasonably** *Civil contempt is not properly regarded as a criminal offence.* | **hitherto** | **still** | **no longer**

• VERB + REGARD **seem to** *He seemed to regard the whole thing as a joke.* | **tend to** *They tend to regard the open expression of emotion as being soft and feminine.* | **come to** *I had come to regard him as a close friend.* | **continue to** | **be tempted to, be tempting to** *The successful are often tempted to regard their success as a kind of reward.* | **be a mistake to** *It would be a mistake to regard the incident as unimportant.*

• PREP. **as** *Many of her works are regarded as classics.* **with** *They regarded people outside their own village with suspicion.*

2 look steadily at sb/sth

• ADV. **steadily** | **intently** | **curiously, suspiciously, thoughtfully, warily**

• VERB + REGARD **continue to** *His eyes continued to regard her steadily.*

• PREP. **with** *She regarded the mess with distaste.*

regime *noun*

1 system of government

• ADJ. **new** | **old** | **current, established, existing, present** | **former, previous** | **interim** | **political** | **conservative, liberal, radical** | **authoritarian, autocratic, dictatorial, totalitarian** | **communist, democratic, fascist, socialist** | **brutal, hard-line, harsh, oppressive, repressive** | **constitutional, parliamentary** | **revolutionary** | **military** | **colonial** | **puppet** *In 1940 a puppet regime was established by the invaders.*

• VERB + REGIME **establish, install, set up** | **defeat, overthrow, topple** | **bolster, strengthen** *Education was seen as a way of bolstering the existing regime.* | **destabilize** | **support** | **oppose** | **head** *a military regime headed by the general*

• REGIME + VERB **exist** | **come to power** *The communist regime came to power in 1975.* | **collapse, fall**

• PREP. **against a/the ~** *She called for sanctions against the regime.* **under a/the ~** *He spoke of the abhorrent crimes that had been committed under the regime.* | **~ under** *a military regime under Franco*

• PHRASES **a change of regime, the collapse/fall/overthrow of a regime, a member of a regime**

2 set of rules/procedures

• ADJ. **harsh, rigorous, strict, tight** | **relaxed** | **new** | **special** | **exercise, fitness, health, training** | **dietary** | **drug, therapeutic, treatment** | **educational** | **economic, financial, fiscal, legal, regulatory** *a financial regime imposed by the government* | **trade/trading, tax** | **safety**

• VERB + REGIME **create, introduce, set up, start** *It will be necessary to create a regime to monitor compliance with the agreements.* | **impose** | **subject sb to** *The children were subjected to a strict regime of meals, walks and lessons.* | **follow** *He suggested to me that I follow his fitness regime.*

• REGIME + VERB **be based on sth** *a regime based on discipline and training*

• PREP. **under a/the ~** *Under the new regime you will be liable for automatic penalties for late submission of tax returns.* | **~ for** *the new regime for accounting for charities*

regimen *noun*

• ADJ. **strict** | **combined** | **dietary** | **treatment** | **drug** | **dosage/dose**

• VERB + REGIMEN **use** *We used a combined regimen of injection treatment and radiation therapy.*

• REGIMEN + VERB **comprise sth** *a treatment regimen comprising two antibiotics*

region *noun*

1 area of land/part of a country

• ADJ. **large** | **small** | **entire, whole** | **distinct, particular, specific** | **northern, southern, etc.** | **central** | **border, far-flung, outlying, peripheral, remote** | **neighbouring, surrounding** | **unexplored** | **geographical** | **arid, coastal, desert, equatorial, jungle, mountain/mountainous, polar, tropical** | **Basque, Gulf, London, Pacific, etc.** | **autonomous** | **urbanized** | **rural** | **populated** *a sparsely populated region* | **economic** | **developed, industrial** | **developing** | **depressed, poor, underdeveloped** *the poorer regions of the continent* | **prosperous, rich** *Italy's richest region* | **oil-producing, etc.**

• VERB + REGION **inhabit, live in** *Nomads have inhabited this region for thousands of years.* | **work in** | **leave** | **visit** | **divide sth into** *The country is divided into 17 autonomous regions.* | **confine sb/sth to** *This bird is largely confined to the southern regions of the country.*

• REGION + VERB **cover sb/sth** *The champagne-producing region covers 34 500 hectares.*

• PREP. **across a/the ~** *Sports events across the region have been cancelled because of the weather.* **from a/the ~**

Twenty participants from the Asia-Pacific region will be invited to the seminar. **in/within a/the ~** *The animal is found in the northern regions of Sweden.* **in the ~ of** (*figurative*) *She earns in the region of* (= approximately) *£200 000.* **throughout a/the ~** *The plant is found throughout the western regions of the country.*

• PHRASES **sth varies from region to region** *Sanitary facilities varied widely from region to region.*

2 part of the body

• ADJ. **distinct, particular, specific | brain, etc.**

• PREP. **from a/the ~** *tissue from the mouth region* **in/within a/the ~** *cells in a particular region of the brain*

register *noun*

1 list of names

• ADJ. **detailed | full | up-to-date | annual | central, national, public | statutory | professional | attendance, membership | electoral, voters' | medical | birth, burial, marriage | address | class, school | church, parish | hotel | asset, land, property, share**

• VERB + REGISTER **appear on, be on** *All those appearing on the register must notify the authorities of any change of address.* **| remain on | keep, maintain** *They keep a register of all those who have contributed to the fund.* **| call, take** *The teacher takes the register at the beginning of each class.* **| inspect | compile, create, draw up, establish** *She was asked to draw up a register of suitable sites.* **| add sb/sth to, enter sb/sth in/on, register sb/sth in/on** *Their names had been entered in the register as owners of the company.* **| omit sb/sth from | remove sb from, strike sb from/off** *He was struck off the medical register for professional misconduct.* **| sign** *The bride and bridegroom signed the register.*

• REGISTER + VERB **contain sth, include sth** *a register containing details of four million cars*

• REGISTER + NOUN **office**

• PREP. **in a /the~** *It was the last entry in the register.* **on a/the ~** *There are 36 children on the register.*

• PHRASES **an entry in/on a register**

2 range of a voice/an instrument

• ADJ. **high, low, middle, upper** *the lower register of the piano*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *boy trebles singing in high registers*

3 level/style of a piece of writing/speech

• ADJ. **formal, informal | appropriate**

• VERB + REGISTER **adopt** *He has adopted an informal register so as not to alienate his audience.*

register *verb*

1 put sb/sth on an official list

• ADV. **fully** *On completion of the preregistration year, graduates become fully registered by the General Medical Council.* **| jointly** *About 68 per cent of illegitimate births were jointly registered by both parents.* **| formally, officially | legally | duly** *As I reached my eighteenth birthday I duly registered for military service.* **| automatically**

• VERB + REGISTER **be required to, have to, must** *You must register the death within three days.* **| be eligible to, be entitled to | fail to | refuse to**

• PREP. **as** *the number of people officially registering as unemployed* **at** *He registered at his local university.* **for** *There is still time to register for English classes.* **with** *Students living away from home are required to register with a local doctor.*

2 notice sth

• ADV. **barely, hardly, scarcely** *She had barely registered his presence.* **| vaguely** *He vaguely registered that the women had gone.*

• VERB + REGISTER **fail to** *His eyes failed to register Meredith's surprise.*

registration *noun*

• ADJ. **full | limited | formal | compulsory | civil** *civil registration of births* **| birth, death | student, voter | car, company, land, trademark, vehicle | VAT**

• VERB + REGISTRATION **require | be exempt from** *Certain charities are exempt from VAT registration.* **| be eligible for, qualify for** *You should be eligible for registration as a student member.* **| apply for, seek | obtain | grant sb** *Under the new regulation we can grant full registration to foreign lawyers.* **| refuse sb | renew | cancel**

• REGISTRATION + VERB **be required**

• REGISTRATION + NOUN **requirement** *a failure to comply with the registration requirements* **| period | procedure, process | scheme, system | records** *I traced my family history using the civil registration records.* **| form | book, card, document | number** *I gave the registration number of the robbers' car to the police.* **| plate** *The police are looking for a large black saloon with German registration plates.* **| officer | fee**

• PREP. **on ~** *You will receive a free CD on registration with the club.* **| ~ as** *registration as a political party* **~ by** *the registration of the vehicle by the appropriate authority* **~ with** *Registration with the council is compulsory.*

• PHRASES **an application for registration, a certificate of registration**

registry *noun*

• ADJ. **public | private | central** *a central registry for all applicants* **| district, national, regional | land, companies'** *The deed of transfer must be entered at the land registry.* **| land** *fees for land registry*

• VERB + REGISTRY **enter sth at/in, lodge sth at/in, register sth at** *The certificate will have to be lodged at the registry.*

• REGISTRY + VERB **have sth, hold sth, keep sth** *The registry holds records of all major operations.*

• REGISTRY + NOUN **fee | office | staff**

• PHRASES **at a/the ~** *The map is kept at the local land registry.*

regret *noun*

• ADJ. **big, bitter, deep, genuine, great, profound, real, sincere** *Her biggest regret was that she had never had children.* ◇ *She expressed deep regret at the incident.*

• QUANT. **pang, stab, tinge, twinge**

• VERB + REGRET **feel, have** *I have absolutely no regrets about resigning.* **| express, show**

• PREP. **to your ~** *To my regret, I lost touch with her years ago.* **with ~** *It is with deep regret that we announce the death of Mr Fred Fisher.* **without ~** *She thought of them without regret.* **| ~ about/over** *She showed no regret about leaving her country.* **~ at** *my sincere regret at what has happened* **~ for** *She enjoyed living alone, but felt a tiny pang of regret for her mother's cooking.*

• PHRASES **expression of regret** *The police offered no expression of regret at his wrongful arrest.* **a matter for/of regret** *I never learned to play an instrument and that's a matter of some regret.*

regret *verb*

• ADV. **bitterly, deeply, greatly, really, very much** *The president said that his country deeply regretted the incident.* **| rather | immediately, instantly** *I immediately regretted not asking for his name and address.* **| later** *Pierre told them some things he later regretted telling.* **| never**

• VERB + REGRET **begin to | come to, live to** *She knew that she would live to regret this decision.*

regrettable *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem**

• ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, very** *a deeply regret-*

table incident ◇ *It is highly regrettable that the minister cannot be here in person.* | **rather**

regular *adj.*

1 frequent
- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **very** | **fairly, quite** *at fairly regular intervals*

2 following a pattern
- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly, very** *highly regular patterns* | **perfectly** *Her face was perfectly regular.* | **fairly**

regularity *noun*
- QUANT. **degree** *Sons followed their fathers' trade with a high degree of regularity.*
- VERB + REGULARITY **maintain** *The idea is to maintain the regularity of the heartbeat.*
- PREP. **with (a) ~** *He exercised with a regularity that amazed us.* | **~ in** *Is there any regularity in English word stress?*
- PHRASES **with alarming/depressing/monotonous regularity** *the statistics that he quotes with monotonous regularity* **with great/increasing regularity**

regulate *verb*
- ADV. **carefully, closely, properly, strictly, tightly** *The use of these chemicals is strictly regulated.*
- VERB + REGULATE **attempt to, seek to** | **be designed to, be intended to** *a code of conduct intended to regulate press reporting on the royal family*
- PHRASES **an attempt to regulate sth, heavily/highly regulated** *a highly regulated economy*

regulation *noun*

1 control of sth
- ADJ. **strict, tight, tough** | **increased** | **government, international, official, professional, public, state** | **legal, statutory** | **self, voluntary** | **economic, environmental, financial** | **price, temperature**
- VERB + REGULATION **call for, demand** *They are calling for tighter regulation of the industry.* | **introduce** | **be subject to** *Theatre, cinema and broadcasting are all subject to regulation by local authorities.*
- PREP. **~ by** *regulation by local authorities*

2 (usually **regulations**) law/rule
- ADJ. **strict, stringent, tighter, tougher** *The Act imposes more stringent regulations on atmospheric pollution.* | **draft** | **emergency** | **statutory** | **building, fire, hygiene, planning, safety, traffic, etc.** | **EU, federal, government, international, official** | **prison, school**
- VERB + REGULATION **comply with, conform to, meet, observe, satisfy** *To comply with government hygiene regulations, there must be a separate sink for hand washing.* | **breach, break, contravene, flout, infringe** | **adopt, bring in, impose, introduce, issue, make** *These restrictions are set out in regulations made by the minister.* | **liberalize, relax** *The government is under pressure to relax censorship regulations.* | **tighten** | **enforce** *In practice, the regulations are rarely enforced.*
- REGULATION + VERB **be designed to** *The regulations are designed to encourage lower consumption of water.* | **control sth, govern sth, protect sth** *regulations governing trade and industry* | **impose sth, require sth, restrict sth, specify sth, stipulate sth** *Regulations require water authorities to test sea water for bacteria.* | **apply (to sth)** *These regulations apply to all cows sold after June 1998.* | **come into force**
- REGULATION + NOUN **uniform, white shirt, etc.** *She was wearing the regulation school uniform.*
- PREP. **against (the) ~s** *It's against safety regulations to fix these doors open.* **in (the) ~** *The limits are specified in the regulations.* **under (the) ~** *Under the new regulations, each worker must have a rest every two hours.* | **~s concerning/regarding** *There are strict regulations concerning the adoption of children.* **~ on** *regulations on hygiene*
- PHRASES **a breach of the regulations, compliance with a regulation, in accordance with (the) regulations** *The notice is in accordance with Regulation 7.* **rules and regulations**

rehabilitation *noun*
- ADJ. **economic, physical, psychiatric, social**
- REHABILITATION + NOUN **centre, unit** *a drug rehabilitation centre* | **services** | **plan, period, process, programme, scheme**

rehearsal *noun*
- ADJ. **dress**
- VERB + REHEARSAL **do, have, hold** *We only had one full rehearsal.* | **attend, go to**
- REHEARSAL + VERB **take place** | **go** *How did the rehearsal go?*
- REHEARSAL + NOUN **room, space, studio** | **time**
- PREP. **at (a/the) ~** *He apologized for his outburst at rehearsal.* **during (a/the) ~** *During the dress rehearsal she suddenly forgot her lines.* **in ~** *They're performing every night and they have another production in rehearsal.* | **~ for** *rehearsals for 'Romeo and Juliet'* **~ of** *a rehearsal of the final scene*

rehearse *verb*
- ADV. **carefully** | **mentally** *She mentally rehearsed what she would say to Jeff.*
- PREP. **for** *rehearsing for the show*
- PHRASES **well rehearsed** *He had all the words he needed typed out and well rehearsed.*

reimburse *verb*
- ADV. **fully, in full** *Any costs that you incur will be reimbursed in full.*
- PREP. **for** *You will be reimbursed for your expenses.*

rein *noun*

1 (often **reins**) for controlling a horse
- VERB + REINS **hold** *Can you hold the reins for a minute?* | **gather (up), pick up** *Sean gathered up the horse's reins.* | **grab (at), pull on** *She pulled sharply on the reins.* | **give/hand sb, let go of** | **lengthen, shorten**
- PREP. **on a ~** *She had the horse on a long rein.*

2 the reins being in control/the leader of sth
- VERB + REINS **hold** *It's the Treasury that effectively holds the reins.* | **grasp, take up** *The vice-president was forced to take up the reins of office.* | **hand over**
- PHRASES **the reins of government/office/power**

reinforce *verb*

1 support sth that already exists
- ADV. **enormously, greatly, massively, powerfully, strongly** *This report strongly reinforces the view that the system must be changed.* | **further** | **merely, only, simply** *All this simply reinforces my earlier point.* | **constantly, continually, continuously, repeatedly** | **implicitly** | **mutually** *Violent behaviour and rejection by society are mutually reinforcing.* | **unwittingly** | **positively**
- VERB + REINFORCE **help (to), serve to, tend to**

2 make sth stronger
- ADV. **heavily**
- PREP. **with** *The door was built of oak, heavily reinforced with iron.*

reinforcement *noun*

1 supporting/strengthening sth

- ADJ. **powerful**
- VERB + REINFORCEMENT **provide** *The minister's statement provides reinforcement for the view that tax cuts are likely in the budget.* | **receive** | **have** *The windows have steel reinforcement.* | **need**

2 reinforcements extra soldiers, etc.

- ADJ. **police, troop**
- VERB + REINFORCEMENTS **call for, call in, send for, summon** *The crowd was very large and police reinforcements were called in.* | **bring in, send**
- REINFORCEMENTS + VERB **arrive** *Reinforcements arrived too late.*

reject *verb*

- ADV. **decisively, emphatically, firmly, roundly, strongly, vehemently, vigorously** *She firmly rejected the suggestion that she had lied to Parliament.* | **categorically, completely, flatly, out of hand, outright, unequivocally, utterly** *Don't just reject their suggestions out of hand.* | **overwhelmingly** | **unanimously** | **narrowly** *Voters narrowly rejected the scheme.* | **immediately, instantly** | **quickly** | **consistently, constantly** | **eventually, finally** | **deliberately** | **explicitly, expressly, specifically** | **effectively** | **indignantly** *The paper indignantly rejected charges that it had invented the story to boost sales.* | **formally** | **publicly** | **instinctively** | **automatically** *No one knows why a foetus is not automatically rejected by the mother's immune system.* | **rightly** *It was an ill-researched product that consumers rightly rejected.*
- VERB + REJECT **vote to** | **be free to, have the right to** *Consumers have the right to reject faulty goods and demand a refund.* | **urge sb to** *He urged the committee to reject the plans.*
- PREP. **as** *The proposal was rejected as too costly.* **in favour of** *Their design was rejected in favour of one by a rival company.*
- PHRASES **reject sth on … grounds** *The scheme was rejected on economic grounds.*

rejection *noun*

- ADJ. **blanket, outright, total, wholesale** | **deliberate**
- VERB + REJECTION **fear** *Children who have had bad experiences fear rejection.* | **risk** | **cope with, take** *It takes a very buoyant personality to cope with constant rejection.*
- REJECTION + NOUN **letter, slip** *a publisher's rejection slip*
- PREP. **~ by** *the rejection of the child by its mother*
- PHRASES **fear of rejection, feelings of rejection, the rejection of an idea/a proposal/a theory**

rejoicing *noun*

- ADJ. **great, much** | **general, popular**
- PREP. **amid/amidst ~** *The bridge was completed in 1811 amidst much rejoicing.* | **~ at** *general rejoicing at the team's victory*
- PHRASES **a cause for rejoicing** *She had a personal cause for rejoicing.* **an occasion for rejoicing** *Finding a job should have been an occasion for rejoicing.* **scenes of rejoicing** *There were scenes of rejoicing at the news.*

relapse *noun*

- ADJ. **acute**
- VERB + RELAPSE **suffer** | **cause, trigger** *A wide range of emotionally stressful events may trigger a relapse.* | **prevent**
- RELAPSE + VERB **occur**
- PREP. **in ~** *Even in relapse there will be times when the patient's general condition improves.*
- PHRASES **a risk of relapse**

relate *verb*

- ADV. **closely** | **directly, specifically** *The issues raised in the report relate directly to Age Concern's ongoing work in this area.*
- VERB + RELATE **be able to, can/could** | **attempt to, try to** | **be difficult to, find sth difficult to** *I found it difficult to relate the two ideas in my mind.*
- PREP. **to** *Our product needs an image that people can relate to.*
- PHRASES **the ability to relate to sb/sth, an attempt to relate sth** *Attempts to relate studies on animals to those on humans are not really comparing like with like.*

related *adj.*

1 connected

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **closely, integrally, intimately, strongly** *The two ideas are very closely related.* | **inextricably** | **loosely** | **not necessarily** | **largely** | **partly** | **directly** | **indirectly** *The old rates were at least indirectly related to income; the new tax takes no account of a person's ability to pay.* | **broadly, roughly** | **specifically** | **fundamentally** | **positively** | **inversely, negatively** *The traditional approach has tended to regard unemployment and inflation as being inversely related.* | **apparently** | **clearly, obviously** | **causally, contextually, functionally, logically, thematically** *Is unemployment causally related to crime?*
- PREP. **to** *The occurrence of the disease is apparently related to standards of hygiene.*

2 of the same family

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **closely** | **distantly** | **genetically** *All the bees in the colony are genetically related.*
- PREP. **to** *He claims to be distantly related to the British royal family.*

relation *noun*

1 connection between two or more things

- ADJ. **causal** | **direct** *The energy an animal uses is in direct relation to speed and body mass.* | **close** *The study shows the close relation between poverty and ill health.* | **significant**
- VERB + RELATION **bear, have** *The film bore no relation to* (= was very different from) *the book.* ◇ *The fee bears little relation to the service provided.* | **show**
- PREP. **in ~ to** *Similar policies were pursued in the 1970s, particularly in relation to health services.* | **~ between, ~ to** *the relation of the subject to the object*

2 member of sb's family

- ADJ. **close, near** | **distant** | **blood** | **poor** (*often figurative*) *Other sparkling wines are often considered the poor relations of champagne.*
- VERB + RELATION **visit**
- PREP. **~ to** *What relation is Rita to you?*
- PHRASES **friends and relations**

3 relations between people/groups/countries

- ADJ. **close, cordial, friendly, good, harmonious** | **improved** | **difficult, poor, strained** | **class, diplomatic, economic, foreign, gender, human, industrial, international, labour, personal, political, power, public, race, sexual, social, trade** *The change of government led to improved industrial relations.* ◇ *a public relations exercise* | **Anglo-American, East-West, etc.**
- VERB + RELATIONS **cultivate, develop, establish, foster** *the need to establish good relations with our European partners* | **break off, damage, sever, suspend** *Diplomatic relations have been broken off between the two countries.* | **improve, strengthen** *Renewed efforts are being made to improve the strained relations between the two countries.* | **restore, resume** | **regulate** *the mechanisms that regulate the relations between labour and capital*

- RELATIONS + VERB **improve** *Relations between the two states have improved.* | **deteriorate, sour, worsen**
- PREP. **~among, ~between, ~with**
- PHRASES **an improvement in relations**

relationship *noun*

1 between people/groups/countries

- ADJ. **friendly, good, happy, harmonious, healthy, strong** | **broken, difficult, failed, fragile, poor, stormy, strained, troubled, uneasy** | **close, intense, intimate, special** *Britain's special relationship with the US* | **enduring, lasting, long-standing, long-term, permanent, serious, stable, steady** *He was not married, but he was in a stable relationship.* | **brief, casual** | **family, human, interpersonal, one-to-one, personal** | **doctor-patient, parent-child, etc.** | **business, contractual, formal, marital, physical, power, professional, sexual, social, working** | **caring, love-hate, loving**
- VERB + RELATIONSHIP **enjoy, have** *They enjoyed a close working relationship. ◇ The school has a very good relationship with the community. ◇ He had brief relationships with several women.* | **begin, build (up), develop, establish, foster** *Building strong relationships is essential. ◇ They established a relationship of trust.* | **cement, improve, strengthen** | **continue, maintain** | **handle, manage** *He's not very good at handling personal relationships.* | **break off** *She broke off the relationship when she found out about his gambling.* | **destroy** *Lack of trust destroys many relationships.*
- RELATIONSHIP + VERB **exist** *We want to improve the relationship that exists between the university and the town.* | **blossom, deepen, develop** | **flourish** | **work** *I tried everything to make our relationship work.* | **continue, last** | **deteriorate, go wrong, worsen** | **break down, break up, fail**
- RELATIONSHIP + NOUN **difficulties, problems** | **goals**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *In normal human relationships there has to be some give and take. ◇ At the moment he isn't in a relationship.* | **~ among** *The focus is on relationships among European countries.* **~ between, ~ to** *their relationship to each other* **~ with**
- PHRASES **the breakdown of a relationship, a network/web of relationships**

2 family connection

- ADJ. **blood, family, kin, kinship**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Some people think only about themselves, even in family relationships.* | **~ between** *'What's the relationship between you and Tony?' 'He's my cousin.'* **~ to** *What relationship are you to Pat?*

3 connection between two or more things

- ADJ. **close** *There's a close relationship between increased money supply and inflation.* | **direct** | **clear** | **complex** | **significant** | **true** | **particular** | **inverse, negative** *the inverse relationship between gas consumption and air temperature* | **positive** | **causal, dynamic, reciprocal** | **linear, spatial** | **economic, functional, legal** | **natural, organic** | **symbolic**
- VERB + RELATIONSHIP **bear, have** *The fee bears little relationship to the service provided.* | **examine, explore, look at, study** *His latest book examines the relationship between spatial awareness and mathematical ability.* | **discover, find** *They discovered a relationship between depression and lack of sunlight.* | **demonstrate, show** | **see, understand** | **stand in** *Women and men stand in a different relationship to language.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The different varieties of the language are in a dynamic relationship with each other.* | **~ between** *I can't see the relationship between the figures and the diagram.* **~ to** *the relationship of a parasite to its host* **~ with**
- PHRASES **the nature of the relationship**

relative *noun*

- ADJ. **close, near** *The succession passed to the nearest surviving relative.* | **distant** | **blood, family** *If you die without a will, only a husband, wife, children and blood relatives are entitled to inherit your property.* | **immediate** *The deceased's immediate relatives, her mother and father, will inherit her estate.* | **living, surviving** | **elderly, old** | **young** | **female, male** | **poor** (*often figurative*) *He believes that interior design is the poor relative of* (= inferior to) *architecture.* | **dependent** | **disabled, ill, sick** | **distressed, grieving**
- VERB + RELATIVE **have** *I have no parents or close relatives.* | **lose** *an organization that helps people who have lost their relatives* (= whose relatives have died) | **care for, give support to, help, look after, support** *She's looking after an elderly relative.* | **live with** | **stay with, visit** | **trace** *The police are trying to trace the relatives of the deceased.* | **inform** *The names of the victims are being withheld until the relatives have been informed.*
- PHRASES **friends and/or relatives** *an intimate reception for close friends and relatives* **a relative by marriage**

relax *verb*

- ADV. **deeply** *Deeply relax all your muscles.* | **completely, totally** | **a little, slightly** | **just, simply** *Just relax and take it easy.* | **gradually, slowly** *He gradually relaxed and began to enjoy himself.* | **consciously** *She realized how tense she was and consciously relaxed.* | **visibly**
- VERB + RELAX **begin to** | **try to** *Just try to relax completely.* | **learn to** | **help sb (to)** *Use music to help you relax.* | **make sb** | **appear to, seem to** *Julie seems to be relaxing a little now.*
- PREP. **against** *Jenna relaxed against the pillows.* **into** *His severe expression relaxed into a half-smile.*
- PHRASES **lie/sit back and relax, relax and enjoy sth/yourself**

relaxation *noun*

1 time spent resting/sth you do to rest

- ADJ. **deep, great** | **complete, total** | **muscle/muscular** *an ointment that helps muscle relaxation*
- VERB + RELAXATION **aid, promote** *Some people take up yoga to aid relaxation.*
- RELAXATION + NOUN **exercises, techniques** | **therapy** | **class** *He goes to relaxation class.*
- PREP. **for ~** *She listens to classical music for relaxation.* | **~from** *a chance for relaxation from work*
- PHRASES **a form/kind of relaxation, rest and relaxation, a state of relaxation**

2 making rules/controls less strict

- ADJ. **further** | **general** | **limited, partial, slight** | **temporary** | **gradual**
- VERB + RELAXATION **call for, seek** *Financiers are calling for a relaxation of these stringent measures.* | **promise** *The government has promised further relaxations in foreign exchange controls.*
- PREP. **~in/of** *a relaxation in the rules*

relaxed *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem** | **keep sb**
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, very** | **completely, perfectly, totally** | **fairly, quite** | **apparently, seemingly** | **enough, sufficiently** *You need to ensure that a patient feels relaxed enough to discuss things fully.* | **pleasantly**
- PREP. **about** *I was very relaxed about the decision.*

relay (*also* relay race) *noun*

- ADJ. **4 × 400, etc.** | **medley, sprint**
- VERB + RELAY **run (in)** *She ran in the 4 × 400 relay.* | **win**
- RELAY + NOUN **race** | **team**

release *noun*

1 freeing sb from prison, etc.

- ADJ. **immediate** *There have been calls for his immediate and unconditional release.* | **imminent** | **early** | **unconditional**
- VERB + RELEASE **grant sb** *He was granted early release.* | **secure** *A public outcry secured her release from detention.*
- RELEASE + NOUN **date**
- PREP. **~from** *his release from hospital*
- PHRASES **release on bail/parole**

2 freeing sb from an emotion, a pain, etc.

- ADJ. **welcome** *She saw death as a welcome release from pain.* | **emotional**
- VERB + RELEASE **give (sb)** *Crying gave some emotional release.*
- PREP. **~from**
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of release, a release of tension** *All societies have social mechanisms for the release of tension.*

3 book/film/record/piece of news

- ADJ. **latest, new, recent** | **commercial** | **book, CD, film's, news, press, record, video**
- RELEASE + VERB **be/come out** *The new CD releases will be out on Friday.*

release *verb*

1 allow sb to be free

- ADV. **quickly** | **immediately** | **eventually, finally** | **conditionally, unconditionally**
- PREP. **from** *She was released from prison last week.*
- PHRASES **newly/recently released**

2 allow sth to escape

- ADV. **accidentally** *The factory had accidentally released a quantity of toxic waste into the sea.*
- PREP. **from** *the gases that are released from aerosols* **into** *How much radiation was released into the air?*

3 make sth less tight

- ADV. **suddenly** *She laughed, the tension inside her suddenly released.*

4 make sth available

- ADV. **officially** *Figures to be officially released this week reveal that long-term unemployment is still rising.*
- VERB + RELEASE **refuse to** *Police have refused to release the name of the dead man.*
- PREP. **to** *Details of the attack have not yet been released to the public.*
- PHRASES **newly/recently released** *newly released recordings* **originally/previously released** *The album was originally released in 1974.*

relevance *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great, wider** | **limited, marginal** | **doubtful, dubious** | **equal** | **direct, immediate** | **continued/continuing** | **declining** | **obvious** | **real** | **possible, potential** | **general** | **particular, special** | **contemporary** *He claims that the laws are antiquated and have no contemporary relevance.* | **practical** | **political**
- VERB + RELEVANCE **be/remain of** *The book is of particular relevance to student nurses.* | **bear, have** *The theory bears little relevance to practice.* | **lack, lose** *Her ideas have lost all relevance to the modern world.* | **ensure** *Constant revision of the curriculum must be undertaken to ensure its continuing relevance.* | **increase** | **see** | **demonstrate, establish** *Skim the book in order to establish its relevance to your needs.* | **assess, consider, examine, explore, judge** | **question**
- PREP. **~for/to** *I can't see the relevance of his comment to the debate.*

relevant *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as**
- ADV. **especially, extremely, highly, particularly, specially, very** | **barely, hardly, not really, scarcely** *Past imperial glories are hardly relevant to the present day.* | **(only) marginally, partially** | **not necessarily, not strictly** *Resist the temptation to discuss topics that are not strictly relevant to the essay question.* | **directly** | **only indirectly** | **immediately** | **no longer** | **potentially** | **apparently** | **clearly, obviously** | **universally** | **morally, politically, socially** *Is there a morally relevant difference between human life and animal life?* | **vocationally** *vocationally relevant qualifications*
- PREP. **to** *information relevant to this case*

reliability *noun*

- ADJ. **greater/greatest, high** | **poor** | **absolute** | **improved, increased** | **statistical**
- QUANT. **degree, level**
- VERB + RELIABILITY **ensure** *Changes in design will ensure the quality and reliability of the printer.* | **improve, increase** | **reduce** | **assess, evaluate, judge** *It is important to assess the reliability of the data.* | **measure** *The reliability of the statistical estimates can be measured.*
- RELIABILITY + VERB **improve, increase**
- RELIABILITY + NOUN **problem**

reliable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem** | **become** | **consider sth**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *It has a highly reliable control system.* | **absolutely, completely, perfectly, totally** *He's a good musician and totally reliable.* | **not entirely, not exactly, not terribly, not wholly** | **fairly, quite, pretty, reasonably** | **enough, sufficiently** *These measurements are reliable enough for most purposes.*
- PREP. **as** *This statement is not reliable as evidence.*

reliance *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, total** | **considerable, great, heavy, strong** *Too heavy a reliance on a particular market may be dangerous for the company.* | **excessive, undue** | **misplaced** | **continued, continuing** | **growing, increasing** | **increased** | **reduced** | **self-**
- QUANT. **degree** *a high degree of reliance on newspaper reports*
- VERB + RELIANCE **place** *I don't think you should place too much reliance on these figures.* | **act in** (*law*) | **increase** | **reduce** | **eliminate** *the means by which individuals might reduce or eliminate reliance on the state* | **encourage** *They believe that modern farming techniques encourage an excessive reliance on harmful chemicals.* | **lead to**
- PREP. **in ~on/upon** (*law*) *He acted in complete reliance on the account of a couple of eyewitnesses.* | **~on/upon** *the increased reliance of the university on private funds*

reliant *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **heavily, highly** *The service has become heavily reliant on government support.* | **completely, entirely, totally, wholly** | **increasingly** | **largely** | **quite**
- PREP. **on/upon** *The charity is completely reliant on public donations.*

relic *noun*

- ADJ. **ancient** | **last** *It was the last relic of the old system.* | **historic/historical** | **precious** | **holy, religious, sacred, saintly**
- VERB + RELIC **discover** *The relics were discovered in a lead box in the ruins of an abbey.* | **shelter** *A shrine was*

constructed to shelter the relics. | **remove** *The duke secretly removed the relics from the reliquary.*
• RELIC + VERB **survive** *This silver belt buckle is the only relic of the imprisoned soldiers that survives.*
• PREP. **~from** *Most of these guns are relics from the Boer War.*
• PHRASES **a relic of an age/a time** *relics of a bygone age* ◇ *a relic of the time when people travelled by horse and carriage* **a relic of the past** *They believe that hunting is a relic of the past and are calling for it to be banned.*

relief *noun*

1 removal of anxiety/pain
• ADJ. **considerable, deep, enormous, great, huge, immense, intense, overwhelming, tremendous** | **certain** *The news of his appointment was received with a certain relief by most people.* | **sheer** | **complete** | **temporary** *The drugs only provided temporary relief from the pain.* | **fast, immediate, instant** | **evident, obvious** *She smiled with evident relief.* | **blessed, welcome** | **pain** *The injection gives complete pain relief.*
• VERB + RELIEF **bring (sb), give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *Morning brought no relief from the heat.* | **come as** *The news came as a welcome relief to Brian.* | **seek** *She sought relief in drink.* | **find, get** *He found relief from his fears in a world of fantasy and art.* | **experience, feel** *I felt enormous relief once they phoned.* | **sense** *She could sense his relief when she said she wouldn't be leaving.* | **express**
• RELIEF + VERB **come** *He believes that relief only comes from helping others with their suffering.* | **flood** *Relief flooded through me as the aeroplane landed safely.*
• PREP. **in ~** *She smiled in relief.* **out of ~** *He hugged her out of sheer relief.* **to your ~** *To my great relief, she didn't notice that anything was wrong.* **with ~** *He sighed with relief.* | **~at** *relief at not having been made a fool of* **~from** *relief from hunger* **~to** *The news was a huge relief to her.*
• PHRASES **a cry/a sigh/tears of relief** *He breathed a sigh of relief.* **a sense/wave of relief**

2 food/money/medicine given to people in need
• ADJ. **humanitarian** | **emergency** | **famine, flood** | **foreign, international**
• VERB + RELIEF **give sb, provide (sb with), send (sb)** *The organization provides emergency famine relief.*
• RELIEF + NOUN **work** *She said that the fighting has halted almost all relief work in the area.* | **effort, operation** *There was a huge international relief effort to bring help to the stricken area.* | **package, programme** *Congress has agreed on $11 million relief package for victims of the hurricane.* | **aid, supplies** | **agency, fund, organization** | **staff, worker** | **convoy, flight**

3 reduction in the amount of tax, etc. you have to pay
• ADJ. **debt, interest, mortgage, tax**
• VERB + RELIEF **get, obtain, receive** *You get mortgage relief of 10% on the next £5 000.* | **be entitled to, qualify for** | **apply for, claim, seek**
• RELIEF + VERB **be available** *No tax relief is available in respect of this loss.*

4 sth interesting that replaces sth boring
• ADJ. **light** | **comic**
• VERB + RELIEF **give (sb), provide (sb with)** *The scene provided some comic relief for the audience.*
• PREP. **for ~** *The comical characters are brought into the story for a little light relief.*
• PHRASES **a moment of relief**

5 way of decorating wood, stone, etc.
• ADJ. **high** *The scene has been carved in high relief.* | **bas, low** | **carved, sculptured** | **alabaster, bronze, marble, plaster, stucco** | **classical, Greek, Roman**
• VERB + RELIEF **carve (sth) in**
• RELIEF + NOUN **carving, sculpture** | **panel**
• PREP. **in ~** *a sculpture in high relief*

6 making sth noticeable
• ADJ. **sharp, stark**
• VERB + RELIEF **bring sth into, throw sth into** *(often figurative) The proximity of the wealthy suburb to the squatter camp throws the plight of the squatters into even sharper relief.* | **stand out in** *The snow-capped mountains stood out in sharp relief against the blue sky.*

relieve *verb*

• ADV. **temporarily**
• VERB + RELIEVE **attempt to, try to** *trying to relieve the symptoms of depression* | **help (to)** *Her jokes helped to relieve the tension.* | **be designed to, be intended to** *Respite care is intended to relieve parents temporarily of the burden of caring for severely disabled children.*

relieved *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem**
• ADV. **extremely, greatly, hugely, immensely, mightily, profoundly, very** | **almost** | **a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat** | **clearly, obviously, visibly** | **secretly** *I was secretly relieved when Ed said it was time to turn back.*
• PREP. **at** *We were greatly relieved at the the news of their safe return.*

NOTE
Religions

accept, adopt, convert to, embrace, follow, turn to ~
He converted to Judaism when he got married.
people who follow Hinduism
abandon, reject ~
He rejected Christianity and became a Buddhist.
~ spread
Islam spread rapidly through North Africa.
~ preaches, proclaims, teaches sth
Christianity preaches that sinners can be forgiven.
a follower of ~
followers of Sikhism
the rise/spread of ~
the rise of Christianity in the first century
the teachings/tenets of ~
the basic tenets of Buddhism

religion *noun*

• ADJ. **great, major** | **world** *Islam is one of the great world religions.* | **dominant** | **established, old** | **new** | **orthodox** | **true** | **false** | **alternative** *Football has become an alternative religion for many people.* | **organized** *I believe in God, but I don't belong to any organized religion.* | **primitive** | **pagan** | **monotheistic, polytheistic** | **eastern** *eastern religions such as Shintoism* | **Hindu, Jewish, etc.** | **Catholic, evangelical, Orthodox, Protestant** | **official, state**
• VERB + RELIGION **belong to, have** *She has no religion.* | **follow, practise** *Do you still practise your religion?* | **change** | **abandon, reject** | **defend** *She believed that her religion needed to be defended by philosophy and logic.* | **found** *He founded a new religion.* | **spread**
• RELIGION + VERB **be based on sth** *a religion based on reason* | **originate from sth** *He believes that all religions originated from a single source.* | **develop** | **spread**
• PREP. **by ~** *These people are predominantly Russian Orthodox by religion.* **in a/the ~** *In their religion, mountains are sacred.*
• PHRASES **an adherent/follower of a religion, a form/kind of religion**

religious *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become**

- ADV. **deeply, devoutly, highly, very** *a deeply religious person* | **strictly** *He distanced himself from the strictly religious aspects of the music.* | **quite | essentially, fundamentally** *Yoga is essentially religious and not just physical.* | **specifically** *the specifically religious content of the programme*

relinquish *verb*

- ADV. **voluntarily** *They will never voluntarily relinquish their independence.*
- VERB + RELINQUISH **be forced to** *He was forced to relinquish control of the company.* | **refuse to | be willing to | be reluctant to | persuade sb to**
- PREP. **to** *She has relinquished the post to her cousin, Sir Edward.*

relish *verb*

- ADV. **positively, really | not particularly** *He did not particularly relish the prospect of a meeting with his boss.* | **rather | clearly, obviously | secretly** *She secretly relished the thought of being alone with him.*
- VERB + RELISH **appear to, seem to**

reluctance *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, deep, extreme, great, marked | certain** *I noticed a certain reluctance among the teachers.* | **increased | clear, evident, obvious | apparent | initial | growing | continued/continuing | general | natural, understandable**
- VERB + RELUCTANCE **have | display, express, indicate, reflect, show** *His designs indicate a reluctance to conform to fashion.* ◇ *She showed considerable reluctance to leave.* | **pretend | overcome | notice, sense | understand** *I can quite understand your reluctance to talk about what happened to you.* | **explain** *These political tensions explain the reluctance of financiers to invest in the region.*
- PREP. **with ~** *With great reluctance, we have come to the decision to close the hospital.* | **~ by/on the part of** *reluctance by insurers to keep paying out heavy claims*
- PHRASES **a show of reluctance** *With a great show of reluctance, the government granted independence to the colony.* **a sign of reluctance**

reluctant *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem** *Students may feel reluctant to ask questions.* | **become | remain**
- ADV. **decidedly, deeply, extremely, remarkably, very | increasingly | a little, rather, somewhat | apparently | clearly | curiously, strangely** *She was curiously reluctant to talk about the experience.* | **understandably** *Children are sometimes understandably reluctant to wear glasses that are ugly or uncomfortable.* | **notoriously** *The monarchy was notoriously reluctant to embrace change.*

rely *verb*

PHRASAL VERB

rely on/upon sb/sth

1 need sb/sth

- ADV. **heavily, a lot, strongly** *countries that rely heavily on food aid* | **entirely, exclusively, solely | increasingly | largely, mainly | traditionally**
- VERB + RELY ON/UPON SB/STH **be forced to, have to, must** *people who are forced to rely on public transport* | **tend to**
- PREP. **for** *They relied entirely on these few weapons for their defence.*

2 trust sb/sth

- ADV. **safely** *You can safely rely on his judgement.* | **simply** *Most historians simply rely on archives.*
- VERB + RELY ON/UPON SB/STH **can/could | can/could always | can/could no longer** *The party could no longer rely on its traditional supporters.*
- PREP. **for** *I couldn't rely on John for information.*

remains *noun*

- ADJ. **abundant, considerable, extensive, substantial** *abundant remains of marine algae* ◇ *the extensive remains of a medieval abbey* | **impressive | fragmentary | visible | existing, surviving | ancient, prehistoric | Greek, Roman, etc. | battered, mangled, shattered** *the mangled remains of the bomber's van* | **burnt(-out), charred, smouldering | earthly, human, mortal** *This tomb holds the mortal remains of King Richard III.* | **animal, archaeological, fossil/fossilized, organic, plant, skeletal**
- VERB + REMAINS **discover, find, locate, reveal, uncover, unearth** *While excavating the site for a new hotel, workers unearthed the remains of several dinosaurs.* | **identify** *The remains have been identified as those of a Mr Thomas, who lived in Richmond.* | **excavate, exhume, remove** *They are excavating the remains of an Iron Age settlement.* ◇ *Marie Curie's remains were exhumed and interred in the Pantheon.* | **bury, inter | dump | destroy** *Environmentalists say that the road will destroy the remains of the world's first commercial railway.* | **feed on** *The ivory gull often follows polar bears to feed on the remains of seal kills.*
- REMAINS + VERB **survive** *Considerable remains survive of the great city walls begun by Theodosius in AD 413.* | **lie** *Her remains lie at rest in St Andrew's churchyard.* | **date from …** *The burnt-out remains date from the 13th century.*
- PREP. **among/in the ~** *The body was found among the remains of a burnt-out cottage.*

remand *noun*

- ADJ. **custodial**
- VERB + REMAND **be held on** *He was held on remand, charged with causing malicious damage to property.*
- REMAND + NOUN **centre, home | prisoner**
- PREP. **on ~** *I was in prison on remand for three weeks.*

remark *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, passing | occasional | casual, chance, off-the-cuff, throwaway | careless, tactless | barbed, cutting, derogatory, dismissive, disparaging, insulting, nasty, offensive, pointed, scathing, snide, uncomplimentary | complimentary, encouraging, kind | innocent | critical | cynical | controversial | provocative | famous | enigmatic | odd, strange | silly | funny, witty | racist, sexist | obscene, rude | defamatory | personal** *How dare you make personal remarks!* | **general | introductory, opening, preliminary | closing, concluding** *I agreed with most of what he said at the beginning of the speech but not with his closing remarks.*
- VERB + REMARK **make, pass, utter | withdraw** *He was expelled from the party for failing to withdraw his controversial remarks.* | **address** *Who were those rude remarks addressed to?* | **ignore, take no notice of** *I just ignored her last remark.*
- REMARK + VERB **apply to sb/sth** *These remarks apply equally to doctors.* | **be directed at/to sb** *The remark was directed at him.* | **suggest sth** *Her remarks suggest that the negotiations may be successful.* | **provoke sth** *The remark provoked an angry response from the crowd.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He made a few factual errors in his remarks on Rembrandt.* | **~ about/concerning/on** *I shall keep my remarks on the subject brief.* **~ by/from** *remarks by officials* **~ to** *a casual remark to his father*

remark *verb*

- ADV. **casually, idly** *She remarked casually that she was changing her job.* | **pointedly** | **lightly, mildly** | **drily, wryly** | **ruefully** | **jokingly** | **cheerfully** | **coolly** | **acidly, tartly**
- VERB + REMARK **be heard to**
- PREP. **on/upon** *Several people remarked on her outfit.* **to** *He remarked to Jane that he had not heard from Sally for a long time.*

remarkable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **most, quite, really, truly, very** *a most remarkable musician* ◇ *a truly remarkable discovery* | **rather**
- PREP. **for** *These cars are remarkable for the quietness of their engines.*

remedy *noun*

1 treatment/medicine

- ADJ. **effective, good** | **correct** | **wrong** | **common** | **traditional** | **ancient, old** | **folk** | **home** | **herbal, homoeopathic, natural** | **cold** *The player insists that he merely took a cold remedy and not a banned substance.*
- QUANT. **dose** *One dose of the remedy is sufficient.*
- VERB + REMEDY **take, use** | **need** | **try** | **give sb** *The remedy was given in different strengths to a group of volunteers.* | **prescribe (sb)** | **prepare** *The remedies are all prepared from wild flowers.* | **find** *They're hoping to find a remedy for the condition.*
- REMEDY + VERB **be available** | **work** *She tried various remedies, but none of them worked.*
- PREP. **~ for** *He took a herbal remedy for his hay fever.*

2 way of dealing with a problem

- ADJ. **adequate, effective, good** *Your best remedy is to go to the small claims court.* | **appropriate, suitable** | **easy, simple** *There's no easy remedy for unemployment.* | **common, usual** | **alternative** | **desperate, drastic** | **proposed** | **civil (law), common/private/public law, contractual, judicial, legal, statutory**
- VERB + REMEDY **have** | **pursue, seek** *They will have to seek a judicial remedy for breach of contract.* | **resort to** *Desperate remedies were resorted to in the search for food.* | **exhaust** *They advised him to exhaust all other remedies before applying to court.* | **create** | **offer** | **afford (sb), grant sb, provide (sb with)** *remedies afforded to creditors by a bankruptcy order*
- REMEDY + VERB **be available** | **lie in sth** *When the reservoir becomes blocked, the only remedy lies in cleaning the entire system.*
- PREP. **~ against** *The agreement states that he has a remedy against the subcontractor.* **~ for** *remedies for breach of contract* **~ in** *You have a remedy in civil law.*
- PHRASES **rights and remedies** *The Act created rights and remedies for consumers.*

remedy *verb*

- ADV. **easily** *This could easily be remedied if the authorities were willing.*
- VERB + REMEDY **attempt to, seek to, take steps to, try to** *The government should have taken steps to remedy the situation.*

remember *verb*

- ADV. **clearly, distinctly, vividly, well** *I distinctly remember Jane saying that the show started at eight.* ◇ *I remember Miss Scott very well.* | **dimly, vaguely** | **correctly, rightly** *If I remember correctly, you were supposed to collect the keys on your way here.* | **fondly** *She fondly remembered her early years in India.* | **still** | **always** *I'll always remember this holiday.* | **suddenly** | **belatedly** *Julia belatedly remembered what else she was supposed to do.*
- VERB + REMEMBER **can/could** *I can't remember her name.* | **try to** | **be important to**
- PREP. **as** *He still remembered her as the lively teenager he'd known years before.* **for** *She is best remembered for her first book, 'In the Ditch'.*

remind *verb*

- ADV. **constantly, frequently, repeatedly** | **gently** *She gently reminded him that the baby was getting cold and should be taken indoors.*
- VERB + REMIND **not have to, not need to** *I'm sure I don't need to remind you that we have lost our last ten matches.* | **serve to** *An event like this serves to remind us that we do not have control over nature.*
- PREP. **about** *I rang to remind him about the party.* **of** *She looked at her watch to remind him of the time.*
- PHRASES **keep reminding sb**

PHRASAL VERB

remind sb of sb/sth

- ADV. **forcefully, forcibly, sharply, strongly, vividly** *The building reminded me strongly of my old school.* | **irresistibly** | **suddenly** *I was suddenly reminded of a tiger defending its cubs.* | **always** *Mrs Nolan always reminded Marie of her own mother.*

reminder *noun*

- ADJ. **powerful, strong** | **lasting, permanent** | **constant, continual, daily** | **further** | **graphic, sharp, stark, visual, vivid** | **chilling, grim, painful, uncomfortable** | **poignant, solemn** | **salutary** | **timely** | **important** | **gentle, little, quick** | **final** *It always took a final reminder to get her to pay her share of the rent.* | **useful** *The list serves as a useful reminder of the issues to consider.*
- VERB + REMINDER **act/serve as, be, provide** *The ruined church acts as a constant reminder of the war.* | **give sb, issue, send (out)** *She gave him a gentle reminder that payment was due.* | **receive** | **need**
- REMINDER + NOUN **letter, note, notice**
- PREP. **~ about** *We were sent a reminder about the next meeting.* **~ to** *a timely reminder to people that leaving their doors open is an invitation to thieves*

reminiscent *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **closely, highly, strongly, very** *This painting is strongly reminiscent of da Vinci's 'Annunciation'.* | **faintly, slightly, somewhat** | **curiously, strangely** | **strikingly** | **irresistibly**
- PREP. **of**

remnant *noun*

- ADJ. **small** | **last, surviving** *The museum is one of the last remnants of the 17th-century palace.* | **faint, tattered** *the tattered remnants of the flag* ◇ *(figurative) faint remnants of the city's glorious past*
- PREP. **~ from** *(figurative) Their outdated attitudes are a remnant from colonial days.*
- PHRASES **a remnant from/of the past**

remorse *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, genuine, real**
- QUANT. **pang, stab**
- VERB + REMORSE **be filled with, be full of, be overcome with, be stricken with, feel, have, suffer** *She knew that the next day she would be guilty and full of remorse.* ◇ *I suffered no remorse.* | **display, express, show**
- PREP. **without ~** *He died without remorse.* | **~ at** *He felt some remorse at his behaviour.* **~ for** *She was filled with remorse for the crime.* **~ over** *She felt a sharp pang of remorse over the incident.*
- PHRASES **a feeling of remorse, tears of remorse**

remote *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, very | impossibly, infinitely, utterly** *Adulthood and responsibility seemed impossibly remote.* | **increasingly | comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively, somewhat** *a fairly remote possibility ◇ rural areas that are relatively remote* | **geographically, physically** *geographically remote areas*
- PREP. **from** *Jane felt remote from what was going on around her.*

removal *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, total, wholesale | temporary | effective, successful | immediate, speedy** *his immediate removal from power* | **easy** *a liquid for the easy removal of coffee stains* | **forced/forcible** *the forcible removal of the protesters' barricades.* | **surgical | hair, stain**
- VERB + REMOVAL **call for, demand, seek** *They demanded her removal from office.* | **order** *In a symbolic move, the new government ordered the removal of the dictator's statue.* | **require** *The programme required the removal of government subsidies.* | **allow | arrange for** *to arrange for the removal and disposal of waste.* | **facilitate | prevent**
- PREP. **~ from** *The local council does not allow the removal of sand from the beach.* **~ to** *the collection's temporary removal to storage*
- PHRASES **removal from office**

remove *verb*

- ADV. **altogether, completely, entirely | effectively** *By producing an heir, the Queen effectively removed her cousin's hopes of succeeding to the throne.* | **permanently, temporarily | quickly | easily** *The old cladding can be easily removed using a claw hammer.* | **painlessly | carefully | forcibly** *people who have been forcibly removed from their homes* | **surgically** *Unsightly moles can be removed surgically.* | **physically**
- ADV. **try to | be possible to | be difficult to** *These stains can be difficult to remove.*
- PREP. **for** *Fittings should be completely removed for cleaning.* **from** *She removed the dirty dishes from the table.* **with** *Bee stings should be removed with tweezers.*
- PHRASES **remove sth at a stroke** *The proposed law would remove at a stroke the long-cherished right to trial by jury.*

rendezvous *noun*

1 arrangement to meet sb

- ADJ. **secret**
- VERB + RENDEZVOUS **have | arrange | keep** *Although it was late, there was still enough time to keep the rendezvous.* | **make** *She made the rendezvous with only minutes to spare.* | **miss**
- PREP. **~ with** *I have a rendezvous with Peter at a restaurant on the harbour.*
- PHRASES **a place for a rendezvous**

2 place where people meet

- ADJ. **popular** *The cafe is a popular rendezvous for young lovers.* | **secret | pre-arranged**
- VERB + RENDEZVOUS **make your way (back) to/towards** *The platoon made its way to the pre-arranged rendezvous in the desert.*
- RENDEZVOUS + NOUN **point**

renew *verb*

- ADV. **completely | annually** *Membership must be renewed annually.* | **periodically, regularly | constantly, continually, repeatedly | automatically**
- VERB + RENEW **decide to | agree to | refuse to**
- PHRASES **a chance/an opportunity to renew sth** *a chance to renew acquaintance with old friends* **need renewing** *The paintwork will need renewing every five years.*

renewal *noun*

- ADJ. **annual | cultural, economic, national, physical, religious, spiritual, urban** *an urban renewal programme in the city centre*
- VERB + RENEWAL **seek** *He sought renewal of the grant. ◇ to seek spiritual renewal* | **apply for | obtain** *to obtain a renewal of the certificate* | **bring (about)** *They felt the need to bring about a renewal of society.* | **be/fall due for, come up for** *Her contract is coming up for renewal in the autumn.*
- RENEWAL + NOUN **programme, project | date | notice** *If you have any queries, please contact us on the number shown on your policy or last renewal notice.* | **fee**

renovate *verb*

- ADV. **extensively, substantially | completely** *The hotel has been completely renovated.*
- PHRASES **newly/recently renovated** *the newly renovated church*

renovation *noun*

- ADJ. **extensive, major** *The building has undergone major renovation.* | **complete, full-scale, total | house**
- VERB + RENOVATION **carry out** *The council is to carry out extensive renovations to the building.* | **complete | be in need of, need, require** *The old Victorian house is in need of renovation.* | **be closed for** *The gallery is closed for renovation.* | **undergo**
- RENOVATION + NOUN **work | programme**
- PREP. **~ to** *renovation to the town hall*

rent *noun*

- ADJ. **exorbitant, high** *The tenants were not prepared to pay the higher rents demanded.* | **affordable, low | nominal, peppercorn | fair | reduced | increased | rising** *Discontent resulted from sharply rising rents.* | **fixed | annual, monthly, weekly | initial** *The initial rent will be reviewed annually.* | **back, outstanding, unpaid | farm, ground, house/housing, land, office**
- VERB + RENT **pay | afford** *He couldn't afford the rent by himself.* | **be/fall behind with, owe** *You put your tenancy at risk if you fall behind with the rent.* | **charge** *The rent charged depends largely on the size and locality of the flat.* | **collect** *The landlord came around to collect the month's rent.* | **receive** *The council receives rent on local property that it owns.* | **fix** *The rent will be fixed at 18% of the market value of the property.* | **increase, push up, put up, raise** *The large stores have pushed up the rents in the area. ◇ The new lease will put her rent up to £200 a week.* | **calculate, determine**
- RENT + VERB **be/fall due, be payable** *The rent will fall due on the last day of the quarter.* | **go up, increase, rise** *Their rent has increased from £5 200 to £8 600 a year.* | **fall**
- RENT + NOUN **money, payment | arrears | level** *They took the landlord to court over increasing rent levels.* | **increase, rise | review | allowance, rebate, subsidy | control | collection | strike | man** *Thousands try to avoid the rent man so they can have more cash to spend.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The company has paid out a lot of money in rent.* | **~ for** *The rent for the four-roomed house is affordable.* **~ from** *They earned rent from their property in London.* **~ on** *the rent on a factory*
- PHRASES **arrears of rent** *to be liable for arrears of rent* **a month's/week's/year's rent, the non-payment/payment of rent** *The movement advocated the non-payment of rent and taxes.*

rental *noun*

• ADJ. **annual, monthly, weekly | short term | car, line, telephone, television, video** *The phone bill gives a breakdown of the cost of the line rental and of calls.*

• RENTAL + NOUN **company | terms | charge, fee, payment | income | accommodation**

reorganization *noun*

• ADJ. **comprehensive, fundamental, major, radical | corporate, internal | government, school**

• VERB + REORGANIZATION **undergo** *The company has undergone a major reorganization.* | **carry out**

• REORGANIZATION + VERB **take place**

• REORGANIZATION + NOUN **costs**

reorganize *verb*

• ADV. **completely, totally | systematically**

• PREP. **as** *The laboratory was reorganized as a separate establishment.* **into** *Their headquarters was reorganized into five regional offices.*

repair *noun*

• ADJ. **considerable, extensive, major | minor | essential, necessary, vital | emergency, immediate, urgent | quick, rapid | constant | temporary | running** *The rally drivers carried small tool-kits for making running repairs.* | **building, house/housing, roof, structural | car, motorway, road, vehicle | electrical, TV | shoe**

• VERB + REPAIR **carry out, do, make | complete** *It is unlikely that the repairs will be completed on time.* | **be in need of, need, require | be closed for** *The museum is currently closed for structural repairs.* | **undergo** *The highway is undergoing major repairs.*

• REPAIR + VERB **cost sth**

• REPAIR + NOUN **work | job** *The damage meant a nine-month repair job.* | **bill, cost | centre, facility, garage, shop, yard** *a repair yard for fishing boats* | **man** *Why don't you get a TV repair man to have a look at it before you buy a new one?* | **kit**

• PREP. **beyond ~** *The gearbox was damaged beyond repair.* **under ~** *We were given a courtesy car to use while our car was under repair.* | **~ to** *to carry out repairs to the railway track*

• PHRASES **a backlog of repairs** *Investment is needed to reduce the backlog of repairs.* **in good/poor repair** *The tools are old but in good repair.* **keep sth in (good) repair** *As a tenant you are required to keep the house in good repair.* **repair and maintenance** *They are responsible for the repair and maintenance of the buildings.* **a … state of repair** *The barn was in a poor state of repair.*

repair *verb*

• ADV. **properly, successfully** *Most of the damage has now been successfully repaired.* | **poorly | extensively | completely | partially | quickly | regularly**

• VERB + REPAIR **try to | help (to)** *Natural vitamins in the shampoo will help repair damaged hair.*

• PHRASES **the cost of repairing sth** *They estimate the cost of repairing the damaged roads at £1 million.* **have sth repaired** *I'm having my car repaired next week.*

repatriate *verb*

• ADV. **forcibly**

• PREP. **from, to** *The refugees were forcibly repatriated from Hong Kong to Vietnam.*

repatriation *noun*

• ADJ. **compulsory, forced/forcible, involuntary, mandatory | voluntary**

• VERB + REPATRIATION **await, face** *refugees awaiting repatriation*

• REPATRIATION + NOUN **programme**

• PREP. **~ from** *voluntary repatriation of people from the disputed territory to their homes* **~ to**

• PHRASES **the repatriation of profits**

repay *verb*

1 pay back money

• ADV. **fully, in full** *The loan must be repaid in full by December 31.*

• VERB + REPAY **be able/unable to, can/could (afford to) | use sth to** *The proceeds from the sale will be used to repay the loan.*

• PREP. **to** *This money must be repaid to the bank.*

2 bring you sth in return for your efforts

• ADV. **amply, more than, well** *The charter can be seen in the town museum, which more than repays a visit.*

• PREP. **for** *I felt that I had been amply repaid for my exertions.*

repayment *noun*

• ADJ. **full | partial | early** *Interest will be refunded in the event of early repayment of the loan.* | **regular | monthly, weekly, etc. | capital, principal | interest | debt, loan, mortgage**

• VERB + REPAYMENT **make** *The repayments can be made directly from your current account.* | **keep up, meet** *They are struggling to keep up their loan repayments.* | **claim, demand** *The bank has demanded repayment of the loan.* | **be due for** *The loans were due for repayment in July 2002.* | **spread** *Repayments can be spread over one to 25 years.* | **calculate**

• REPAYMENT + NOUN **period | method, schedule, terms | loan, mortgage**

• PREP. **~ on** *repayments on the mortgage* | **~ to** *repayment to the fund*

repeat *verb*

• ADV. **just, merely, simply** *There is no point in merely repeating what we've done before.* | **again | constantly, continually, endlessly, indefinitely, over and over (again)** *constantly repeating the same mistakes* ◇ *A single note repeated over and over again, throbbing in my head.* | **consistently, persistently, regularly | exactly, faithfully, word for word** *She faithfully repeated everything he had told her.* ◇ *He repeated what she had said word for word.* | **mechanically, parrot-fashion, parrot-like** *students repeating drills parrot-fashion* | **blandly, desperately, helplessly, lamely** *'Oh,' she repeated lamely.* | **slowly | quietly, softly | patiently | stubbornly**

• VERB + REPEAT **can/could only** *I can only repeat what I have already said to other journalists.* | **be necessary to, need to** *It may be necessary to repeat the dose several times to effect a cure.*

• PREP. **after** *The students repeated each sentence after their teacher.* **to** *You must not repeat this to anyone.*

• PHRASES **keep repeating sb/sth** *She kept repeating it over and over again like a robot.*

repellent *adj.*

• VERBS **be | find sb/sth**

• ADV. **utterly | slightly, vaguely | mutually** *mutually repellent substances such as oil and water*

• PREP. **to** *His arrogance was utterly repellent to her.*

repent *verb*

• ADV. **bitterly** *She bitterly repented what she had done.*

• VERB + REPENT **come to** *He came to repent his hasty decision.*

• PREP. **of** *She has repented of her sins.*

repentance *noun*

- ADJ. **genuine, sincere, true | deathbed**
- VERB + REPENTANCE **show** *They refused to showed repentance for their crimes.*
- PHRASES **a sign of repentance** *They were released on parole for showing signs of repentance.*

repercussion *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, important, major, serious, significant | wide/widespread | international | economic, political, social**
- VERB + REPERCUSSION **have**
- REPERCUSSION + VERB **be felt** *The repercussions of the change in policy will be felt throughout Europe.*
- PREP. **~ for** *Changes in the industry had major repercussions for the local community.* **~ on** *The pay cuts are likely to have serious repercussions on productivity.*

repertoire *noun*

- ADJ. **extensive, large, vast, wide | full | limited, small | mainstream, standard | emotional** *An actor has to build a character and extend his own emotional repertoire.* **| music/musical | concert, opera, etc. | classical, jazz, etc. | guitar, piano, etc.**
- VERB + REPERTOIRE **have** *She has a rather limited repertoire.* **| add (sth) to, broaden, build (up), develop, expand, extend, increase** *He has added considerably to his piano repertoire. ◇ She needs to build up a repertoire of pieces.*
- REPERTOIRE + VERB **include sth** *His repertoire includes a large number of Scottish folk songs.*
- PREP. **in the/your ~** *a key piece in the standard concert repertoire*

repetition *noun*

- ADJ. **exact | frequent | constant, endless**
- VERB + REPETITION **use** *Blues is a musical form that uses a lot of repetition.* **| avoid, prevent** *She said I should avoid repetition of words in my essay.*
- PHRASES **the risk of repetition** *At the risk of repetition* (= although I have already mentioned this), *it is worth mentioning again that young children are particularly vulnerable to accidents in the home.*

repetitive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become, get**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very | endlessly** *a boring and endlessly repetitive task* **| a bit, rather**

replace *verb*

1 take the place of sb/sth; exchange sb/sth

- ADV. **completely | largely | simply** *Putting in a new bathroom suite can cost as little as £800 if you are simply replacing an old one.* **| easily** *These losses are not easily replaced.* **| immediately | gradually | eventually**
- VERB + REPLACE **cannot/could not** *Machines cannot replace people in this work.* **| can/can't afford to | be built to, be designed to, be intended to, be used to** *It was built to replace the old Victorian jail.* **| appoint sb to, elect sb to | be expensive to** *Halogen lamps give excellent service, but the bulbs are expensive to replace.*
- PREP. **as** *She replaced Jane Stott as Managing Director.* **with** *We replaced the old television set with a newer one.*

2 put sth back in the right place

- ADV. **carefully, gently**
- PREP. **in** *She replaced the dress in the wardrobe.* **on** *He carefully replaced the vase on the shelf.*

replacement *noun*

1 replacing one thing with another

- ADJ. **complete, full** *Complete replacement of the roof tiles would be very costly.* **| partial | direct** *The series III gearbox is a direct replacement for a series II.* **| gradual | eventual**
- VERB + REPLACEMENT **be in need of, need, require** *The original furnishings are now in need of replacement.*
- REPLACEMENT + NOUN **programme | cost, value** *Rare instruments are usually insured for their full replacement value.* **| equipment**
- PHRASES **hormone replacement therapy**

2 sb/sth that replaces sb/sth else

- ADJ. **permanent | temporary | immediate | likely** *He is the most likely replacement for the captain.* **| possible | ideal | adequate | appropriate, suitable | hip, joint, knee | valve**
- VERB + REPLACEMENT **appoint, bring in (sb/sth as), hire** *We'll have to see how bad the injury is before deciding whether to bring in a replacement.* **| name (sb as)** *She was named as a possible replacement for the cabinet minister.* **| need | look for, seek | find** *We need to find a replacement for Jan when she goes on maternity leave.* **| get | come in/on as, go on as** *He came on as a replacement for the injured striker.* **| have** *She had a hip replacement six years ago.*
- REPLACEMENT + NOUN **teacher | part, unit** *Do you know where I can get the replacement part?* **| car, vehicle**
- PREP. **as ~** *Trams are now often preferred as replacements for buses.* **| ~ by** *the president's temporary replacement by the Chief of Staff* **~ for**

replay *noun*

1 game that is played again

- ADJ. **final, first-round, quarter-final, etc. | championship, cup**
- VERB + REPLAY **earn, force** *They earned a replay with their 1–1 draw.*
- PREP. **~ against/with** *a replay against Real Madrid* **~ between** *the replay between Liverpool and Portsmouth*

2 playing again of a short section of a film, tape, etc.

- ADJ. **action** (*often figurative*) *It was an action replay* (= repetition) *of the problems of his first marriage.* **| slow-motion | television/TV, video**
- VERB + REPLAY **see, study, view, watch** *He has watched a video replay of his fall on numerous occasions.*
- REPLAY + VERB **show sth** *The replay shows that it was a handball.*

replica *noun*

- ADJ. **exact | full-scale, full-size, life-sized | half-scale, 1:5 scale, etc. | miniature**
- VERB + REPLICA **build, create, construct, make** *She made a 1:5 scale replica of Captain Cook's ship, 'The Endeavour'.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The original conservatory has been rebuilt in replica.*

reply *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, monosyllabic | curt, sharp, tart | only** *'Billy, I think it's your turn to wash the dishes,' said Jane. A non-committal grunt was his only reply.* **| simple** *Her reply was simple. 'No,' she said.* **| standard, usual** *'No comment' is his standard reply to most questions.* **| straight** *She refused to give a straight reply, deciding rather to defer the question.* **| evasive, non-committal | unsatisfactory | proper, satisfactory | suitable | correct | positive | negative | early, immediate, prompt, quick | formal | personal | written**
- VERB + REPLY **get, have, receive** *Have you had a reply to your letter yet?* **| give sb, make** *He made no reply,*

but simply walked away. | **send (back), write** *I must write my letter in time for them to send back a reply.* | **elicit, produce** *The report elicited a formal reply from the minister.* ◇ *The questionnaire produced 9 000 replies.* | **await** (*written*), **wait for** | **expect**

• REPLY + VERB **come (back)** *'No,' came the reply.* ◇ *A reply came back almost by return of post.* | **be forthcoming** *They waited patiently for a reply but none seemed to be forthcoming.*

• REPLY + NOUN **card, form, slip** *Please fill in the reply card and return it to us as soon as possible.*

• PREP. **in ~ (to)** *What did they say in reply?* ◇ *I am writing in reply to your request for information on holidays in Italy.* | **~ from** *a reply from the minister* **~ to** *my reply to your query*

• PHRASES **a chance to reply** *She quickly left the room before he had a chance to reply.* **a right of reply** *I am grateful to you for having given me a right of reply* (= the opportunity to respond) *to the article in your magazine about my company.*

reply *verb*

• ADV. **merely, simply** *He simply replied that he hadn't the faintest idea.* | **directly** *She did not reply directly to the allegations.* | **personally** *Well, you weren't expecting the prime minister to reply personally, were you?* | **at once, immediately** | **hastily, hurriedly, promptly, quickly** | **slowly** | **at length** *'OK,' he replied at length.* ◇ *She replied at length, but not to the point.* | **briskly, briefly, curtly, shortly, tersely** | **abruptly, brusquely, sharply** | **bluntly, flatly** *'No, you're not,' Graham replied bluntly.* | **firmly** | **gently, politely, soothingly** | **lightly** | **seriously** | **quietly, softly** | **angrily, bitterly, crossly, indignantly, sourly** | **coldly, coolly, icily** | **cautiously, guardedly, hesitantly, nervously** | **calmly, equably, evenly, mildly** | **sternly, stiffly** | **brightly, cheerfully** | **bleakly, grimly** | **drily, sarcastically, sardonically, sweetly** (*ironic*), **tartly** | **absently, vaguely** | **evasively** | **honestly** | **in kind** *Charles was insulted and replied in kind* (= by insulting them back).

• VERB + REPLY **not bother to** *She didn't even bother to reply.*

• PREP. **to** *He did not reply to my letter.* **with** *She replied with a smile.*

report *noun*

1 written/spoken account of sth

• ADJ. **important, influential, major** | **lengthy** | **brief, short** | **complete, comprehensive, extensive, full, wide-ranging** *I will have to make a full report of the situation to my superiors.* | **detailed, in-depth** | **general** | **encouraging, excellent, favourable, positive** | **adverse, bad, critical, damning, hard-hitting, negative, pessimistic** | **sensational** | **latest, new, recent, up-to-date** | **previous** | **original** *There have been many new findings since the original report.* | **early, initial, interim, preliminary** | **further, later, subsequent** | **periodic, regular** | **annual, quarterly** | **final** | **draft** | **formal** | **written** | **verbal** | **published** | **unpublished** | **special** | **standard** | **verbatim** | **reliable** | **false, misleading** | **conflicting** *There have been conflicting reports on the number of people killed.* | **factual** | **anecdotal** | **eyewitness, first-hand, on-the-spot** | **second-hand** | **anonymous** | **unconfirmed** *unconfirmed reports of a shooting in the capital* | **independent** | **joint** | **official** | **unofficial** | **confidential, secret** | **public** | **government, parliamentary** | **intelligence, police** *Reliable intelligence reports suggest that the terrorists have bases in five cities.* | **media, press** | **magazine, newspaper, radio, television** | **news** | **weather** | **committee** | **company** | **economic, financial, market** | **environmental** | **medical, psychiatric** | **scientific, technical** | **lab/laboratory** | **case, research, survey** | **enquiry** | **accident, crash** | **autopsy** | **progress, status** | **probation** | **audit, due diligence** (*law*) | **law** *The case has not yet been reported in the law reports.*

• VERB + REPORT **deliver, give sb, make, present** *The committee presented its report to the Attorney General.* | **compile, do, draw up, prepare, produce, type (up), write** *I typed up a report about the morning's events for our clients.* | **file, give (sb/sth), let sb have, submit** *Our correspondent in Washington files a report most days.* ◇ *I'll let you have a report as soon as I can.* | **issue, release** *Auditors normally issue a report as to whether the company accounts have been prepared correctly.* | **leak** *a confidential report leaked to the press* | **have, hear, receive** *We've had reports of a gang shooting in the city.* | **call for** *The MPs called for a full report on the nuclear contract.* | **commission** *The government commissioned a report on the state of agriculture in the country.* | **launch, undertake** | **accept, endorse** *Following discussion, the annual report was accepted unanimously.* | **reject** | **confirm** | **deny** *They could neither confirm nor deny reports that the chairperson was to be replaced.* | **read** | **consider, discuss** | **publish** | **appear in** *A large number of tables and figures appear in the report.*

• REPORT + VERB **be based on sth** *This report is based on the analysis of 600 completed questionnaires.* | **concern sth, cover sth, detail sth, examine sth, look at sth, relate to sth** *The report looks at the health risks linked to obesity.* | **comprise sth, contain sth, include sth** | **comment (on) sth, describe sth, explain sth, express sth, indicate sth, mention sth, outline sth, say sth, state sth** *Reports have indicated that a growing number of medium-sized firms are under financial pressure.* | **cite sth, list sth, note sth** *The report notes evidence that secondary smoke from other people's cigarettes harms unborn children.* | **add sth, go on …** *The report went on to list her injuries.* | **acknowledge sth, admit (to) sth** *The report admits to several outstanding questions about the safety of the waste dumps.* | **allege sth, claim sth** | **argue sth** | **demonstrate sth, show sth** | **reveal sth** *The riots had been sparked off by police mishandling of a case, a report revealed yesterday.* | **draw attention to sth, emphasize sth, highlight sth, point sth out, stress sth** *The report draws attention to the appalling conditions in the country's prisons.* | **warn sth** *The report warns that more job losses are likely.* | **confirm sth** | **conclude sth, find sth, link sth with sth** *a report linking ill health with industrial pollution* | **advocate sth, call for sth, propose sth, recommend sth, suggest sth, urge sth** *The report called for sweeping changes in the education system.* | **accuse sb/sth, attack sb/sth, blame sb/sth, criticize sb/sth** | **be called sth, be entitled sth** *a report entitled 'Kick-start'* | **be out** *Criticism has been levelled at local businesses in a report out* (= released) *today.*

• REPORT + NOUN **writer, writing**

• PREP. **according to a/the ~** *According to this evening's weather report, there will be snow tomorrow.* **amid/amidst ~s** *The pro-democracy rally came amidst reports of dissatisfaction among army officers.* **in a/the ~** *The findings are summarized in the report.* | **~ about, ~ by** *a report by scientists* **~ from** *a report from the select committee* **~ into** *The department has launched a report into the bombing.* **~ on** *an official report on the accident*

2 written statement about a student's work

• ADJ. **good** | **bad** | **school** | **end-of-term**

• VERB + REPORT **get** *She got a better report this year.*

report *verb*

• ADV. **back** *The reconnaissance party reported back that the town was heavily fortified.*

• VERB + REPORT **be expected to, expect to** *The company is expected to report record profits this year.* | **be delighted to, be glad to, be happy to, be pleased to** *I am pleased to report that the scheme is going well.* | **have to** *It is with regret that I have to report the death of one of our* *members.* | **fail to** *He was charged with careless driving and failing to report an accident.*

• PREP. **from** *This is John Hutchins, reporting from Zimbabwe.* **on** *reporting on the situation in central Africa* **to** *Report the theft to the police as soon as possible.*

• PHRASES **be widely reported** *The incident was widely reported in the British press.*

reporter *noun*

• ADJ. **chief** | **cub, junior, trainee** | **foreign** | **local** | **newspaper, radio, television/TV** | **crime, financial, news, political, sports** | **investigative** | **freelance**

• VERB + REPORTER **speak to, talk to, tell** *We were warned not to talk to reporters.*

• PREP. **~ for/with** *She then became a crime reporter with a national newspaper.* **~ from** *The secret was leaked to a reporter from the 'New York Times'.* **~ on** *the chief reporter on the 'Daily Herald'*

⇨ Note at JOB

represent *verb*

1 be a member of a group

• ADV. **strongly, well** *Local businesses are well represented on the committee.* | **poorly** | **adequately** | **disproportionately** *Women are disproportionately represented among welfare recipients.*

2 act/speak officially for sb

• ADV. **legally** *The suspect must appear and may be legally represented.*

• VERB + REPRESENT **choose sb to, elect sb to, select sb to** *He was chosen to represent Scotland in three consecutive World Cup Finals.*

3 show sth

• ADV. **accurately** *Representing an image accurately requires a great many bytes of digital information.* | **fairly** | **falsely** | **diagrammatically, graphically, schematically, visually** *The data can be represented graphically in a line diagram.* | **symbolically**

• VERB + REPRESENT **be intended to** *It is not clear what these symbols were intended to represent.* | **purport to** *The film purported to represent the lives of ordinary people.*

• PREP. **as** *The film represents women as victims.* **to** *He admitted falsely representing to police officers that the car had been stolen.*

representation *noun*

1 sth that shows/describes sth

• ADJ. **accurate, faithful, good, true** | **simplified** | **diagrammatic, graphic, pictorial, visual** | **symbolic** | **written** *the written representation of a spoken text* | **two-dimensional, etc.**

• VERB + REPRESENTATION **generate, produce** *There are many ways of generating a two-dimensional representation of an object.*

• PHRASES **a form/means of representation**

2 having representatives to speak/vote for you

• ADJ. **large** | **increased** | **strong** | **effective** | **adequate** | **balanced, equal, fair** | **direct** *direct representation in Parliament* | **democratic, proportional** | **parliamentary, political** | **black, female, minority** | **legal** | **consular, diplomatic** | **union** | **employee, labour**

• VERB + REPRESENTATION **have** *They had a strong representation in government.* | **achieve, secure, win** *All parties won representation in the national assembly.* | **ensure, guarantee** *He claims that their electoral system ensures fair representation of all parties.* | **increase** *The party has increased its representation in Parliament.* | **reduce** | **allow sb, provide (sb with)** *The accused was not allowed legal representation.* | **get, obtain**

• PREP. **~ by** *representation by a lawyer* **~ for** *representation for employees* **~ from** *representation from all parties*

• PHRASES **a system of representation**

3 formal statements

• ADJ. **false** | **oral, written**

• VERB + REPRESENTATION **make** | **receive**

• PREP. **~ to** *They may make representation to government on matters affecting their organization.*

representative *noun*

• ADJ. **leading, main** | **senior** | **sole** *I was the sole representative of the general practitioners.* | **appointed, elected** | **accredited, authorized, official** | **local, national, regional** | **branch** | **personal** | **legal** | **parliamentary, political** | **council, government** | **diplomatic** | **UN** | **special** *the UN special representative for Cyprus* | **permanent** *the Algerian permanent representative at the UN* | **military** | **company, industry, management, trade** | **sales** (also *informal* **rep**) *She's a sales rep for sports equipment* (= she travels around selling sports equipment for a company). | **employee, union** | **student** | **community, public** | **club, committee** | **church**

• VERB + REPRESENTATIVE **appoint, appoint sb (as), choose (sb as), elect, elect sb (as), nominate, nominate sb (as)** | **send** *The association is sending representatives to the conference.* | **recall** *They have recalled their representatives from the negotiations.* | **consult (with), meet (with)** *Management are obliged to consult with union representatives about possible redundancies.* | **discuss (sth) with**

• REPRESENTATIVE + VERB **attend sth** *The negotiations were attended by representatives of several states.*

• REPRESENTATIVE + NOUN **body** *The country has a new supreme representative body.*

• PREP. **~ for** *a representative for international shipping companies* **~ from/of** *representatives from citizens' groups* **~ to** *representatives to a conference*

⇨ Note at JOB

representative *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **consider sb/sth**

• ADV. **very** | **fully, properly, truly** | **not necessarily** | **broadly, fairly, reasonably** *a broadly representative sample* | **widely** *Exhibits include a widely representative collection of railway rolling stock.* | **statistically** | **nationally** *a nationally representative picture of the employment situation*

• PREP. **of** *Is this group of people fully representative of the population in general?*

repress *verb*

• ADV. **firmly** *feelings that had been firmly repressed* | **barely** *She could barely repress a sigh of relief.*

• VERB + REPRESS **try to** | **be unable to**

repressed *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become**

• ADV. **extremely, severely, very** | **rather** | **sexually** *women who are sexually repressed*

repression *noun*

1 using force to control people

• ADJ. **extreme, massive, severe** | **bloody, brutal, ruthless** | **political** | **government, military, police, state**

• VERB + REPRESSION **suffer (from)** *The trade unions suffered brutal repression after the coup.* | **subject (sb/sth) to** *Reports claimed that civilians were being subjected to ruthless repression.*

• PREP. **~ against** *repression against ethnic minorities* **~ by** *repression by the state*

• PHRASES **a target for/of repression**

2 controlling strong emotions/desires
- ADJ. **emotional, sexual**

reprieve *noun*

- ADJ. **temporary | last-minute** *He was saved from the gallows by a last-minute reprieve.*
- VERB + REPRIEVE **earn, gain, get, win | give sb/sth, grant (sb/sth)** *The railway line, due for closure, has been granted a six-month reprieve.*
- PREP. **~from** *The family have won a temporary reprieve from eviction.*

reprimand *noun*

- ADJ. **severe | public | verbal, written**
- VERB + REPRIMAND **earn (yourself), get, receive** *The manager earned himself a severe reprimand for criticizing the referee.* | **give sb, issue (sb with)** *She was issued with a reprimand for leaking the news.*
- PREP. **~for** *a reprimand for a breach of the rules*

reprimand *verb*

- ADV. **severely | gently | officially | publicly**
- PREP. **for** *She was severely reprimanded for accepting the money.*

reprisal *noun*

- ADJ. **bloody, savage**
- VERB + REPRISAL **take** *The gang threatened to take reprisals against them.* | **threaten (sb with) | suffer** *She tried to persuade the soldiers that they would not suffer reprisals if they surrendered.* | **expect, fear**
- REPRISAL + NOUN **attack, raid**
- PREP. **in ~ for** *A dozen hostages were shot in reprisal for the killing of an army officer.* | **~against** *reprisals against witnesses for the evidence they have given* **~from** *reprisals from angry fans*
- PHRASES **fear of reprisals**

reproach *noun*

- ADJ. **bitter | mild** *There was mild reproach in his tone.*
- PREP. **beyond/above ~** *Her conduct had always been beyond reproach.* **with ~** *He glanced at her with reproach.* | **~about** *There was no reproach about his failure to turn up.* **~to** *Paul saw this as a reproach to himself.*
- PHRASES **full of reproach** *Her voice was full of reproach.* **a look of reproach** *He gave Helen a look of bitter reproach.* **a word of reproach** *She had never uttered a word of reproach.*

reproduce *verb*

1 produce a copy of sth; produce sth again
- ADV. **accurately, exactly, faithfully** *The colours can be reproduced fairly accurately.* ◇ *The book's characters are faithfully reproduced in the film.* | **merely, simply** *In her own work she simply reproduces the very conventions that she claims to despise.*
- VERB + REPRODUCE **be able to, can/could | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *It is difficult to reproduce a signature exactly.*
- PREP. **from** *The map is reproduced here from a Victorian original.*
- PHRASES **an attempt to reproduce sth** *Writing grew out of an attempt to reproduce speech in a permanent form.* **reproduced by courtesy/permission of sb/sth** *The painting is reproduced here by courtesy of the Tate Gallery.* **widely reproduced** *These works were popular and widely reproduced.*

2 produce young
- ADV. **asexually, sexually**
- VERB + REPRODUCE **be able to, can/could** *The offspring have to be able to reproduce in their turn.* | **fail to**
- PREP. **by** *Many single cell organisms reproduce by splitting in two.*

reproduction *noun*

1 producing babies/animals/plants
- ADJ. **human | biological | asexual, sexual**
- REPRODUCTION + VERB **take place**
- PHRASES **a method of reproduction**

2 act/process of producing a copy/recording
- ADJ. **accurate, faithful, (good/high) quality | colour, graphic, photographic, sound** *Using a wide tape gives better quality sound reproduction.*
- VERB + REPRODUCTION **give, provide | ensure** *The craftsmen have ensured faithful reproduction of the original painting.*

3 sth that has been reproduced
- ADJ. **exact, faithful** *an exact reproduction of an ancient building* | **large | black and white, colour | photographic** *The quality of a photographic reproduction decreases with time.*
- REPRODUCTION + NOUN **furniture** (= furniture made as a copy of an earlier style)
- PREP. **~from** *a reproduction from an old book*

republic *noun*

- ADJ. **new | autonomous, independent | breakaway** *the breakaway republics of the former Soviet empire* | **self-proclaimed | democratic, federal, Islamic, people's, socialist** *the People's Republic of China* | **banana** (*disapproving, offensive*) (= a small poor country with a weak government, that depends on foreign money)
- VERB + REPUBLIC **create, establish, form, found | abolish | declare (sth), proclaim (sth)** *They have declared themselves an independent democratic republic.* | **recognize (sth as) | overthrow**

repulsive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, smell | find sb/sth**
- ADV. **deeply, extremely** *She found the idea deeply repulsive.* | **utterly | slightly | morally, sexually**
- PREP. **to** *He was utterly repulsive to her.*

reputable *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly, very** *a highly reputable company*

reputation *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, enviable, excellent, fine, good, great, high, unrivalled, well-deserved, well-earned** *She has built up an enviable reputation as a harpist.* | **awesome, fearsome, formidable | bad, poor, unenviable, unsavoury | established | growing | undeserved | intact** (only after **reputation**) *He emerged from the trial with his reputation intact.* | **public | international, worldwide | professional**
- VERB + REPUTATION **enjoy, have** *He has the reputation of being a hard worker.* | **acquire, build (up), earn, establish, gain, make** *Her international reputation is built on an impressive list of publications.* | **damage, destroy, lose, ruin, tarnish | protect | live up to** *November is certainly living up to its reputation—we've had nothing but rain all week.* | **live down** *She found it hard to live down her reputation as a second-rate actress.* | **stake** *He has staked his reputation on the success of the play.*
- REPUTATION + VERB **grow | suffer** *The company's reputation suffered when it had to recall thousands of products that were unsafe.*

• PREP. **by ~** *He was by reputation difficult to please.* | **~ as** *You've made quite a reputation for yourself as a rebel!* **~ for** *The company has a well-deserved reputation for being reliable.*
• PHRASES **a loss of reputation**

request *noun*

• ADJ. **special** | **reasonable, unreasonable** | **formal, official** | **polite** | **strange, unusual** | **repeated** | **urgent** | **explicit, particular, specific** | **written**
• VERB + REQUEST **make, put in, submit** *I've put in a request for a room with a view of the sea.* | **get, have, receive** *We have had repeated requests for a pedestrian crossing near the school.* | **agree to, comply with, grant** | **respond to** | **refuse, reject, turn down** | **repeat**
• PREP. **at sb's ~** *The play was written by Agatha Christie at the request of Queen Mary.* **by ~** *The writer's name was withheld by request* (= because the writer had asked for this to be done). **on/upon ~** *We will arrange accommodation on request.* | **~ for** *The helpline was inundated with requests for information on the crash.*
• PHRASES **available on request** *A detailed list of our publications is available on request.* **by popular request** *The film is being shown again by popular request.* **a number of requests**

request *verb*

• ADV. **explicitly, expressly, specifically** | **formally** | **politely** | **reasonably** (*law*) *Auditors will be required to provide any information reasonably requested by the bank.* | **urgently** | **repeatedly**
• PREP. **from** *We have requested some information from the company.*

require *verb*

• ADV. **urgently** *Many of the refugees urgently require medical treatment.* | **reasonably** (*law*)

requirement *noun*

• ADJ. **absolute** *There's no absolute requirement to disclose your age.* | **important, key, main, prime** | **essential, fundamental** *An open system of criminal justice is a fundamental requirement of any democratic society.* | **demanding, strict, stringent** | **detailed** | **exact, precise** | **reasonable** | **basic** | **minimum** | **additional, further** | **general** | **special** | **particular, specific** | **individual, personal** | **annual, daily** *your daily requirement of vitamin C* | **constitutional, contractual, formal, legal, legislative, mandatory, procedural, regulatory, statutory** | **business, commercial** | **borrowing** *The public sector borrowing requirement is expected to rise.* | **client, customer, market** | **academic, course, curriculum, educational, entrance, entry** | **technical** | **environmental, safety** | **visa** | **dietary, nutritional** *patients with special dietary requirements* | **energy, food, housing, information, labour, manpower**
• VERB + REQUIREMENT **comply with, fulfil, meet, satisfy, suit** *We can arrange a holiday to meet your requirements exactly.* | **impose, lay down, set (down/out)** *The government has imposed strict safety requirements on fairground rides.* | **relax, waive** *to relax university entrance requirements*
• PREP. **for your ~** *We grow enough vegetables for our own requirements.* **to your ~** *Our conservatories and porches can be designed to your exact requirements.* | **~ for** *Large buildings have specific requirements for fire-brigade access.*
• PHRASES **subject to (the) requirements** *The school can decide which pupils will be given priority of admission, subject to the requirements of the law.* **surplus to requirements** (= more than is needed) *300 workers at the factory have been told they are surplus to requirements.*

rescue *noun*

• ADJ. **dramatic** | **daring** | **attempted** | **air-sea, mountain, sea** | **financial**
• VERB + RESCUE **attempt** *Her own boat capsized after she attempted a rescue.* | **come/go/rush to** *No one came to their rescue until the following day.*
• RESCUE + NOUN **attempt, effort, mission, operation** | **party, team, unit** *a mountain rescue team* | **service** | **worker** | **work** | **boat, helicopter, vehicle, vessel** | **centre** *an animal rescue centre* | **bid, package, plan, scheme** *a financial rescue package for the company*
• PREP. **to sb's/the ~** *Her wails of distress brought him running from the house, like a knight to the rescue.* | **~ from** *his rescue from a burning building*
• PHRASES **fire and rescue** *New Zealand fire and rescue services carried out several extensive searches for survivors.* **search and rescue** *The navy are on a search and rescue mission.*

research *noun*

• ADJ. **detailed, in-depth, painstaking** | **extensive** *He has carried out extensive research into renewable energy sources.* | **basic** | **original** | **further** | **ground-breaking, pioneering** *pioneering research into skin disease* | **collaborative** | **empirical** | **academic, clinical, historical, medical, military, scientific, social, space** | **AIDS, cancer, etc.** | **animal** *calling for a ban on animal research* | **market**
• QUANT. **piece** *a startling piece of historical research*
• VERB + RESEARCH **carry out, conduct, do, undertake** *She's doing research on Czech music between the wars.* | **be based on** *One paper based on research conducted at Oxford suggested that the drug may cause brain damage.*
• RESEARCH + VERB **demonstrate sth, indicate sth, prove sth, reveal sth, show sth, suggest sth** *What have their researches shown?* | **produce sth, yield sth** *Recent research on deaf children has produced some interesting findings about their speech.*
• RESEARCH + NOUN **degree** | **effort, programme, project, work** *directing the group's research effort* | **methods** | **findings, results** | **purposes** *Copies of the tape can be made for research purposes.* | **centre, institute, laboratory** | **assistant, group, student, team, worker** | **grant**
• PREP. **~ in** *Most research in the field has concentrated on the effects on children.* **~ into/on** *They are carrying out research into the natural flow patterns of water.*
• PHRASES **an area of research, research and development** *spending on military research and development*

research *verb*

• ADV. **carefully, exhaustively, extensively, fully, meticulously, properly, thoroughly, well** | **poorly** *The book has been poorly researched.*
• PREP. **for** *She is currently researching for her next novel.* **into** *I spent two years carefully researching into his background.*

researcher *noun*

• ADJ. **eminent, experienced, leading** | **chief, senior** | **young** | **early** *She based her work on that of earlier researchers.* | **independent** | **academic** | **post-doctoral, post-graduate** | **cancer, medical** | **educational, social** | **market**
• QUANT. **group, team**
• RESEARCHER + VERB **investigate sth, work in/on sth** *researchers working in different disciplines* ◇ *researchers working on the biochemistry of learning* | **believe sth, claim sth, note sth, say sth, suggest sth, think sth** | **discover sth, find sth** *Researchers found 17 per cent of their random sample to be severely depressed.* | **show sth** |

conclude sth *The researchers have concluded that further studies are needed.*
- PHRASES **researchers in the field** *The book is written by experts who are well known as researchers in the field.*

⇨ Note at JOB

resemblance *noun*

- ADJ. **close, great, marked, remarkable, striking, strong | uncanny | obvious | faint, passing, remote, slight, superficial | physical | family**
- VERB + RESEMBLANCE **bear, have, show** *The plot of the movie bears more than a passing resemblance to Jane Austen's 'Emma'.* | **see** *I can see the family resemblance.*
- RESEMBLANCE + VERB **end** *They are both called Nigel, but there the resemblance ends* (= they are not similar to each other in any other way).
- PREP. **~ between** *There is a close resemblance between her and her daughter.* **~ to** *Crocodiles still have a strong resemblance to their long-lost ancestors.*
- PHRASES **a point of resemblance** *The story has points of resemblance to a Hebrew myth.*

resemble *verb*

- ADV. **closely, greatly, strongly, very much** *He very much resembles a friend of mine.* | **in no way, not remotely** *He does not resemble his brother in any way.* ◇ *I have never seen anything remotely resembling the horrors of that day.* | **faintly, in some respects/ways, rather, somewhat, superficially, vaguely | oddly, uncannily**
- VERB + RESEMBLE **be designed to** *The house was designed to resemble a church.* | **tend to**
- PREP. **in** *The meat resembles chicken in flavour.*

resent *verb*

- ADV. **bitterly, deeply, greatly, strongly** *She bitterly resented the fact that her husband had been so successful.* | **rather | rightly | secretly**

resentful *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, grow** *They grew bitter and resentful.* | **remain**
- ADV. **bitterly, deeply, extremely, very** *They were bitterly resentful of the fact that they had to work such long hours.* | **increasingly | almost** *She looked at him, almost resentful now.* | **a little, slightly, vaguely | secretly**
- PREP. **about/at** *She felt resentful at the way she had been treated.* **of** *He was very resentful of their success.* **towards** *He felt deeply resentful towards his ex-wife.*

resentment *noun*

- ADJ. **angry, bitter, considerable, deep, deep-seated, great, intense, smouldering | growing, increasing | popular, widespread | old** *She felt all her old resentment flaring up.*
- VERB + RESENTMENT **bear, feel, harbour** *I bore him no resentment.* ◇ *You seem to be harbouring some resentment against your boss.* | **express, show | contain, hide** *He struggled to contain his resentment.* | **arouse, breed, cause, create, fuel, give rise to, lead to, provoke** *Inequality breeds resentment.*
- RESENTMENT + VERB **build up, grow** *Don't let your resentment build up.* | **flare up**
- PREP. **~ about/over** *Maggie was filled with resentment about her treatment.* **~ against** *the growing resentment against foreigners* **~ among** *The measures fuelled resentment among students.* **~ at** *I felt great resentment at having to work such long hours.* **~ between** *the bitter resentment between the two brothers* **~ towards** *their resentment towards each other*
- PHRASES **a cause/source of resentment, a feeling/sense of resentment**

reservation *noun*

1 arrangement for a seat/room
- ADJ. **airline, hotel**
- VERB + RESERVATION **have** *Do you have a reservation?* | **make | confirm | cancel**
- RESERVATION + NOUN **service | fee | form**
- PREP. **~ for** *I'd like to make a reservation for four people for Friday night, please.*

2 feeling of doubt about sth
- ADJ. **considerable, deep, grave, major, serious, severe, strong | minor, slight | certain** *I have certain reservations regarding several of the clauses in the contract.* | **initial**
- VERB + RESERVATION **have | express, voice** *NATO generals voiced reservations about making air strikes.*
- RESERVATION + VERB **concern sth**
- PREP. **despite ~s** *Despite his initial reservations, he came to love London.* **with ~s** *The employees are backing the reorganization plans, with reservations.* **without ~** *I can recommend her without reservation.* | **~ about/concerning/over/regarding** *They have expressed reservations concerning the provisions of the treaty.*
- PHRASES **one/only reservation** *My one reservation concerns the performance of the vehicle in wet conditions.*

reserve *noun*

1 supply of sth available to be used in the future
- ADJ. **great, huge, large, substantial, vast | sufficient | low, small | existing | additional | last** *It took my last reserves of strength and will to swim to the lifeboat.* | **untapped** *The region is thought to have some of the world's largest untapped oil reserves.* | **hidden** *She had hidden reserves of courage.* | **capital, cash, contingency, currency, financial, foreign currency/exchange, gold, international** *In the face of a severe crisis relating to international reserves, the government devalued the currency twice.* | **coal, energy, gas, oil | timber | food | fat** *The birds build up fat reserves to help them survive the winter.*
- VERB + RESERVE **have** *We have only a small reserve of coal.* | **hold sth in, leave sth in, keep sth in** *The crack troops were held in reserve behind the front line.* | **dig into, dip into, draw on/upon, tap, use** *He had to draw on reserves of strength just to finish the race.* | **call on/up/upon, summon (up)** *her ability to summon up reserves of concentration and energy* | **build (up) | deplete, exhaust** *The company has depleted its reserves to make the purchase.* | **pay sth out of** *The dividend had to be paid out of reserves.* | **take**
- RESERVE + VERB **be available | dwindle, fall**
- RESERVE + NOUN **currency, funds | tank** *The plane was fitted with fuel reserve tanks for long-distance flights.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The rail company has two trains in service and one in reserve.*

2 protected area for plants/animals, etc.
- ADJ. **national | bird, forest, game, natural/nature, wildlife**
- VERB + RESERVE **create, establish**

3 quality/feeling
- ADJ. **deep, strong | natural** *They made him feel at ease, despite his natural reserve.*
- PREP. **with ~** *Any contract should be treated with reserve until it has been checked.* **without ~** *She trusted him without reserve* (= completely).

4 extra player; second team
- VERB + RESERVE **play in** *He will continue to train and may play in the reserves next season.*
- RESERVE + NOUN **side, team | goalkeeper, striker, etc. | game, match**

5 extra military force
- ADJ. **army | strategic | volunteer**
- RESERVE + NOUN **force, police**

reserve *verb*

- ADV. **exclusively, expressly, specially, specifically, strictly** *The star has a ski slope reserved exclusively for her.* | **normally, usually** *a ceremony normally reserved for heads of state*
- PREP. **for** *The car park is reserved for customers only.*

reserved *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** *She seems quite reserved.*
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, very** | **quite, rather** | **naturally** *his naturally reserved manner*

reservoir *noun*

1 where water is stored
- ADJ. **natural** | **artificial, man-made** | **underground**
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

2 amount of sth that can be used
- ADJ. **huge, vast**
- VERB + RESERVOIR **tap (into)**
- PREP. **~ of** *tapping into the vast reservoir of information available on the Internet*

residence *noun*

1 house
- ADJ. **desirable** | **palatial** | **official** | **royal** | **private** | **main, principal** *Versailles was the principal residence of the kings of France until 1793.* | **summer** | **country, town** | **family** | **student**

2 living in a particular place
- ADJ. **long** | **permanent** | **temporary** | **main, normal, principal**
- VERB + RESIDENCE **establish, take up** *The family took up temporary residence in the manor house.* | **remain in, stay in** *The family house was sold off but she remained in residence on the ground floor.*
- RESIDENCE + NOUN **permit** *He has applied for a residence permit.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The flag flying above the palace indicates that the Queen is in residence.*
- PHRASES **a change of residence, a hall of residence** *The university has two halls of residence for its postgraduate students.* **a place of residence** *The notice was addressed to her last known place of residence.*

resign *verb*

- ADV. **formally**
- VERB + RESIGN **be forced to, be obliged to, have to** *He was forced to resign due to ill health.* | **intend to** | **offer to, threaten to** *The minister offered to resign after his affair became public.* ◇ *Two MPs threatened to resign if the government did not agree to examine this case.* | **decide to** | **refuse to** | **call on sb to** *They called on her to resign as chief executive.*
- PREP. **as** *He resigned as chairman.* **from** *She formally resigned from the government.* **over** *Three members of the committee resigned over the issue.*

resignation *noun*

1 giving up your job; letter of resignation
- ADJ. **immediate** | **shock, sudden, surprise, unexpected** | **forced** | **mass**
- VERB + RESIGNATION **hand in, submit, tender** *She handed in her resignation following the dispute over company policy.* | **announce** | **withdraw** | **offer (sb), proffer** | **threaten** | **prompt, provoke, lead to** *The accusation prompted the resignation of the cabinet minister.* | **force** *Illness forced his resignation from the squad.* | **call for, demand** *The protesters called for the immediate resignation of the minister.* | **accept** *She has refused to accept the resignation of her deputy.* | **reject**
- RESIGNATION + VERB **be/become effective** *My resignation is effective from May 1.*
- RESIGNATION + NOUN **letter** | **announcement** *His resignation announcement was widely expected.* | **speech, statement**
- PREP. **~ as** *her resignation as party leader* **~ from** *A scandal led to his resignation from office.*
- PHRASES **a call for sb's resignation, resignation on (the) grounds of sth** *She tendered her resignation on grounds of ill health.* **a letter of resignation**

2 willingness to accept a difficult situation
- ADJ. **weary**
- PREP. **in ~** *Hearing that the train was running late, he sighed in weary resignation.* **with ~** *She spoke with resignation.* | **~ to** *resignation to fate*
- PHRASES **a look/sigh of resignation**

resilience *noun*

- ADJ. **great, remarkable** | **natural**
- VERB + RESILIENCE **have** | **demonstrate, show**
- PREP. **~ to** *She has shown great resilience to stress.*
- PHRASES **strength and resilience**

resilient *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem** | **become** | **make sth**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, remarkably, very** *a remarkably resilient woman* | **pretty**
- PREP. **to** *The body of the camera makes it highly resilient to outdoor use.*

resist *verb*

- ADV. **fiercely, firmly, resolutely, strenuously, strongly, vigorously** | **successfully** *They successfully resisted pressure from their competitors to increase prices.* | **naturally** *People naturally resist change.* | **stubbornly** | **passively** *The civil population passively resisted.* | **physically** | **at first, initially, so far** *He has so far resisted pressure to resign.*
- VERB + RESIST **be able/unable to, can/could (hardly), can't/couldn't (easily)** *She could hardly resist the urge to turn and run.* ◇ *Trends in the national economy confront firms with pressures they cannot easily resist.* | **can/could never, can/could no longer** | **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** | **try to** | **manage to** | **be determined to** | **be helpless to, be powerless to** *She was powerless to resist the attraction that she felt to him.* | **tend to**
- PHRASES **the strength to resist sth**

resistance *noun*

1 trying to stop sth
- ADJ. **considerable, great, stiff, strong, substantial** | **determined, fierce, heroic, serious, spirited, stubborn** | **effective** | **token** | **active** | **passive** | **collective, organized** | **widespread** | **armed, military** | **political** | **popular, public** | **guerrilla, peasant**
- VERB + RESISTANCE **mount, offer, put up** *They mounted stiff resistance to the proposal.* | **encounter, meet (with), run into** *The advancing army met with little resistance.* | **break (down), crush, overcome**
- RESISTANCE + VERB **stiffen** | **collapse, crumble**
- RESISTANCE + NOUN **movement** | **fighter, forces, group, leader, worker**
- PREP. **without ~** *The attacks did not take place without resistance.* | **~ against** *armed resistance against the Nazis* **~ to** *There was fierce resistance to the new laws.*
- PHRASES **the line/path of least resistance** (= the easiest way of doing sth), **a pocket of resistance** (= an area of resistance)

2 to a disease/drugs
- ADJ. **high** | **low** | **disease** | **antibiotic, drug**

- VERB + RESISTANCE **have | build up, develop** *You need to build up your resistance to colds.* | **lower**
- PREP. **~to** *Aids lowers the body's resistance to infection.*

resistant *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, highly, particularly, remarkably, very | quite, relatively**
- PREP. **to** *a metal that is highly resistant to corrosion*

resolution *noun*

1 formal decision taken after a vote
- ADJ. **draft | formal | joint** *a joint US-British resolution* | **unanimous | ordinary | emergency, special | compromise | affirmative, negative** (*both law*) *An affirmative resolution of both Houses of Parliament is needed.* | **Security Council, UN, etc.**
- VERB + RESOLUTION **draft | propose, put forward, table | vote on | adopt, agree, approve, carry, pass** *The resolution was carried unanimously.* | **block, reject**
- RESOLUTION + VERB **be aimed at sth, call for sth** *The resolution called for the resumption of negotiations.* | **declare sth, proclaim sth** *a resolution declaring independence* | **approve sth, authorize sth** *The assembly adopted a resolution approving the scheme.* | **condemn sth** *a resolution condemning the invasion*
- PREP. **under (a/the) ~** *weapons banned under Resolution 687* | **~on** *The General Assembly rejected the resolution on the subject of arms control.*

⇨ Special page at MEETING

2 settling a dispute
- ADJ. **early, quick, rapid | final, ultimate | peaceful** *Hopes of a peaceful resolution to the conflict were fading.* | **satisfactory, successful | conflict, dispute** *methods of conflict resolution*
- VERB + RESOLUTION **require | press for** *The government is pressing for an early resolution of the hostage crisis.* | **achieve, reach**
- PREP. **~ to** *the likelihood of achieving a satisfactory resolution to the problem*

3 being firm and determined
- ADJ. **great**
- VERB + RESOLUTION **have | show** *She showed great resolution in her dealings with management.* | **lack**

4 firm decision to do/not to do sth
- ADJ. **firm, good | New Year/New Year's**
- VERB + RESOLUTION **make** *I made a New Year resolution to give up smoking.* | **keep**

5 power to give a clear image
- ADJ. **high** *high-resolution graphics* | **low | maximum | screen | pixel** *a monitor capable of a 1 024 by 768 pixel resolution*

resolve *verb*

- ADV. **completely, fully** *The matter is not yet fully resolved.* | **successfully | adequately, satisfactorily | amicably, peacefully** *We hope that the dispute can be resolved peacefully.* | **easily, readily | quickly, rapidly, speedily | immediately | eventually, finally, ultimately**
- VERB + RESOLVE **attempt to, take steps to, try to | be unable to, fail to** *The two countries have failed to resolve their differences on this.* | **help (to) | be difficult to**
- PREP. **by/through** *The crisis was finally resolved through high-level negotiations.*
- PHRASES **an attempt/effort to resolve sth** *They met in a last-ditch attempt to resolve their differences.* **a means/method/way of resolving sth**

resort *noun*

- ADJ. **fashionable, favourite, popular | attractive, bustling, lively | modern | purpose-built | health, holiday, ski, spa, tourist | beach, coastal, lakeside, mountain, seaside | summer, winter**
- RESORT + NOUN **area, town | hotel**
- PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *They spent a month at a fashionable ski resort in Switzerland.*

resource *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, large, major, substantial** *The library is an enormous resource for historians of medieval France.* | **important, vital | adequate, sufficient | limited, meagre, scarce | renewable, sustainable, unlimited | finite, limited, non-renewable | available | additional, extra | invaluable, useful, valuable** *Time is your most valuable resource, especially in examinations.* | **untapped | natural | material, physical | energy, mineral, oil, water | capital, economic, financial** *The school has limited financial resources.* | **human, staff | information, learning, library, teaching** *The database could be used as a teaching resource in colleges.* | **national | inner, personal** *She is someone of considerable personal resources.*
- VERB + RESOURCE **be rich in, have** *Australia is a country rich in natural resources.* ◇ *We do not have the resources* (= the money) *to update our computer software.* | **lack | pool, share** *We'll get by if we pool our resources.* | **allocate, distribute, provide | divert, reallocate, redistribute** *the government's role in diverting resources into social policies* | **draw on, exploit, manage, mobilize, tap, use** *to mobilize resources in the community to provide shelter for the homeless* ◇ *We need to manage our resources better.* | **deplete, use up | squander, waste | conserve**
- RESOURCE + NOUN **centre | allocation, management | depletion | constraints, implications**
- PHRASES **access to resources, the allocation/distribution/provision of resources, the exploitation of resources, a lack of resources, the use of resources** *We must make the most efficient use of the available resources.*

resourceful *adj.*

- VERBS **be** *He is very clever and endlessly resourceful.*
- ADV. **highly, very | endlessly**

respect *noun*

1 admiration
- ADJ. **considerable, deep, great | grudging | mutual** *a relationship based on mutual respect*
- VERB + RESPECT **feel, have, hold sb in** *She held him in considerable respect.* | **command, earn (sb), gain (sb), get, inspire, win (sb)** *a society in which age commands great respect* | **lose**
- PREP. **~for** *He felt a grudging respect for her talents as an organizer.*

2 polite behaviour/consideration/care
- ADJ. **great, utmost | due, proper** *the respect due to his great age*
- VERB + RESPECT **accord sb/sth, pay (sb/sth), show (sb/sth), treat sb/sth with** *the respect accorded to her memory* ◇ *He treats his grandparents with great respect.*
- PREP. **out of ~** *We observed a minute's silence out of respect for the disaster victims.* **with ~** *With all due respect, I think you've misunderstood what he said.* ◇ *The chainsaw is a dangerous tool—it should be used with respect.*
- PHRASES **a lack of respect** *to show a lack of respect for authority* **a mark/sign/token of respect**

3 detail/point
- ADJ. **certain | different | crucial, important, significant | material**
- VERB + RESPECT **differ in** *There was one respect, however, in which they differed.* | **be alike in, be identical in, be similar in, resemble sth in**
- PREP. **in ... ~(s)** *The report is accurate in all material respects.* **in ~ of** (= concerning) *A writ was served on the*

firm in respect of their unpaid bill. **with ~ to** (= concerning) *The two groups were similar with respect to income and status.*
- PHRASES **in all/many/some respects** *In many respects she is like her mother.* **in every/this respect** *The marriage was a disaster in every respect.*

respect *verb*

1 admire sb/sth
- ADV. **deeply, greatly, really, very much**
- PREP. **as** *She is widely respected as a politician.* **for** *She was much respected for her knowledge of herbs.*
- PHRASES **be highly/much/well respected** *a highly respected doctor* **be internationally/universally/widely respected** *WWF is internationally respected for its conservation work.*

2 pay attention to sth
- VERB + RESPECT **promise to, undertake to** *The government has promised to respect human rights.* | **fail to** *Her daughters failed to respect her last wishes.*
- PHRASES **a duty to respect sth, failure to respect sth**

respectability *noun*

- ADJ. **international** *The country has again achieved international respectability after years of isolation.* | **bourgeois, middle-class, working-class** | **academic, intellectual, political, scientific**
- VERB + RESPECTABILITY **achieve, gain** *The theory has now gained scientific respectability.* | **give sth**
- PHRASES **an air/a façade/a veneer of respectability**

respectable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **eminently, extremely, highly, very** *It was an eminently respectable boarding school.* | **entirely, perfectly, wholly** | **almost** | **fairly** | **enough** *She seems respectable enough.* | **apparently** | **academically, intellectually**

respite *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, moment's, temporary** *a moment's respite from the ringing of the phone* | **much needed, welcome**
- VERB + RESPITE **have** | **bring (sb), give (sb), provide (sb with)** *The tablets brought temporary respite from the excruciating pain.* | **gain (sb), win (sb)**
- RESPITE + NOUN **care**
- PREP. **without ~** *The storm continued for two hours without respite.* | **~ from** *They had no respite from the demands of their children.*
- PHRASES **a period of respite**

respond *verb*

1 react
- ADV. **immediately, instantly** | **promptly, quickly, rapidly, swiftly** | **enthusiastically, favourably, positively, well** *Both sides have responded positively to the plan.* ◇ *Their son is responding well to the treatment.* | **forcefully, vigorously** | **adequately, appropriately, constructively, effectively, intelligently** | **adversely, aggressively, angrily** | **cautiously, coolly** | **sensitively, sympathetically** | **generously** | **magnificently** *The teams responded magnificently to the challenge.* | **accordingly** *The government needs to listen to the public and respond accordingly.* | **readily** *The plants readily respond to these stimuli.* | **directly** | **automatically, instinctively** | **flexibly** | **differently** | **merely, simply** *We do not have a strategy. We merely respond to ideas from local people.* | **emotionally, imaginatively** *to respond emotionally to the landscape* | **in kind** *The terrorists declared all-out war on the government and the government responded in kind.*
- VERB + RESPOND **be able/unable to** | **be likely to** *She wasn't sure how he was likely to respond.* | **fail to** *His condition failed to respond to the treatment.* | **be slow to** | **enable sb to** *enabling teachers to respond flexibly to the needs of their students*
- PREP. **by** *The government responded by tightening the law on gun ownership.* **to** *Companies have to respond to the changing economic climate.* **with** *The demonstrators threw stones and the police responded with tear gas.*
- PHRASES **an ability/a capacity/a willingness to respond, a failure to respond**

2 say sth in reply
- ADV. **politely** | **angrily** | **coolly** | **drily**
- PREP. **to** *He responded politely to her questions.* **with** *He responded with a smile when she spoke.*

response *noun*

- ADJ. **encouraging, enthusiastic, favourable, good, positive** | **lukewarm, muted** | **angry, discouraging, negative** | **appropriate, correct** | **inappropriate, incorrect** *incorrect responses in a multiple choice test* | **strong** *These images are likely to evoke a strong response in the viewer.* | **direct** | **quick, rapid** | **slow** | **automatic, immediate** | **initial** *My initial response was one of anger.* | **public** | **natural** | **behavioural, emotional, physiological, political** | **verbal, written** | **immune** *the immune response to viral infections*
- VERB + RESPONSE **give, make** | **get, have, receive** *Have you had any responses to the advertisement yet?* | **bring/call forth, draw, elicit, evoke, produce, provoke** *His comments drew an angry response from the crowd.*
- RESPONSE + NOUN **rate, time** *We sent out over 100 letters but the response rate was low* (= few people replied).
- PREP. **in ~ (to)** *In response, she stormed out of the room.* | **~ from** *The response from local businesses has been muted.* **~ to** *What was their response to the question?*
- PHRASES **(a) lack of response** *Due to lack of response the event has been cancelled.*

responsibility *noun*

1 being responsible
- ADJ. **full, total** | **awesome, great, heavy, weighty** *It is a great responsibility looking after other people's children.* | **direct** | **overall** | **primary** | **ultimate** *Ultimate responsibility rests with the prime minister.* | **special** | **diminished** *He was found not guilty of murder on the grounds of diminished responsibility.* | **sole** | **collective, joint, shared** | **individual, personal** | **ministerial, parental** | **financial, legal, moral, social**
- VERB + RESPONSIBILITY **have** *She has responsibility for public transport.* | **accept, assume, bear, shoulder, take (on/over)** *The bank refuses to accept responsibility for the mistake.* ◇ *Will you take responsibility for arranging the food?* | **share** | **lay, place** *The government of the time placed responsibility for the poor on the Church.* | **delegate, devolve, hand over** *devolving responsibility downwards so decisions are taken nearer to the people they will affect* | **abdicate, evade, shirk, shift** *to shift legal responsibility for the correct labelling of goods onto the shopkeeper* | **admit, claim** *No organization has yet claimed responsibility for the bomb attack.* | **deny, disclaim, duck** *Ducking responsibility is fatal in a democracy.* | **allocate, assign (sb), give sb** | **attribute** *He attributed responsibility for the killing to the secret service.* | **burden sb with** | **absolve sb from/of**
- RESPONSIBILITY + VERB **fall on sb, lie/rest with sb**
- PREP. **~ for** *Full responsibility for the fiasco lies with the PR department.* **~ towards** *He feels a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents.*
- PHRASES **the age of criminal responsibility, the burden of responsibility** *The school governors carry a special burden of responsibility.* **do sth on your own responsibility** (= without being told to and being willing to take

the blame if it goes wrong), **a position of responsibility, a sense of responsibility**

2 job/duty

- ADJ. **heavy, onerous | additional, increased | altered | caring, departmental, domestic, family, financial, managerial, ministerial, parental, professional, teaching | contractual, statutory | particular, special**
- VERB + RESPONSIBILITY **have | carry out, discharge, fulfil | accept, face up to, take on, undertake** *He seems unwilling to face up to his responsibilities as a father.* ◇ *I don't feel ready to take on new responsibilities.* | **delegate | avoid, evade, shirk | relieve sb of**
- PREP. **~for** *The heads of school departments have particular responsibilities for the curriculum.* **~ to/towards** *The club has a responsibility to its members.*
- PHRASES **duties and responsibilities, rights and responsibilities** *parental rights and responsibilities*

responsible *adj.*

1 having the job/duty of doing sth

- VERBS **be | become | remain | make sb** *I am making you responsible for the cooking.*
- ADV. **entirely, totally, wholly | chiefly, largely, mainly, primarily | individually | collectively, jointly** *All members of the Cabinet are collectively responsible for decisions taken.* | **formally, legally | nominally** *The company could not indicate a person even nominally responsible for staff training.* | **ultimately** *The board is ultimately responsible for policy decisions.* | **financially**
- PREP. **for** *They're responsible for cleaning the engine.*

2 being the cause of sth/to blame for sth

- VERBS **be, feel | become | consider sb, deem sb, find sb, hold sb, regard sb as, see sb as, think sb** *They held him responsible for the failure of the policy.*
- ADV. **entirely, fully, wholly | partially, partly | directly | indirectly | personally | single-handedly, solely** *He was almost single-handedly responsible for the flourishing drug trade in the town.* | **ultimately | somehow** *Did he think her somehow responsible for Eddie's death?* | **morally**
- PREP. **for** *Who was responsible for the mistake?*

3 having to report to sb/sth

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **directly | ultimately** *a complex web of party bodies ultimately responsible to the Central Committee*
- PREP. **to** *The prime minister is directly responsible to Parliament.*

4 showing/needing good sense and reliability

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very | fairly, quite | ecologically, environmentally** *The organization needs to become more environmentally responsible.* | **morally, politically, socially** *allocating resources in a morally responsible way*

responsive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *The company is highly responsive to changes in demand.* | **fully | fairly, quite | directly, immediately | sexually**
- PREP. **to** *She's fairly responsive to new ideas.*

rest *noun*

- ADJ. **complete | good, long | little, short | well-deserved, well-earned | bed** *She's on complete bed rest, antibiotics and plenty of fluids.*
- VERB + REST **find** (*formal*), **get, have, take** *Her heart would find no rest until she knew the truth.* ◇ *Get some rest while you can.* ◇ *I had a good long rest before the party.* | **need | come to** *The ball rolled down the hill and came to rest against a tree.*
- REST + NOUN **day, period | area | home**
- PREP. **at ~** *At rest* (= when not moving) *the insect looks like a dead leaf.* | **~from** *The doctor advised him to take a complete rest from football.*
- PHRASES **a day of rest**

rest *verb*

- ADV. **casually, gently, lightly, loosely | heavily | comfortably** *Her head was resting comfortably against his chest.* | **peacefully, quietly | momentarily | awhile**
- VERB + REST **let sth** *She let his hand rest heavily on hers.*
- PREP. **against** *She rested the ladder against the wall.* **on/upon** *His hands rested lightly on her shoulders.*
- PHRASES **rest easy** *I can rest easy* (= stop worrying) *knowing that she's safely home.*

PHRASAL VERBS

rest on/upon sth

- ADV. **solely, squarely** *It is rare for the responsibility for causing conflict to rest solely on one side.*

rest with sb

- ADV. **squarely** *Surely the blame rests squarely with Sir Ralph?* | **ultimately** *The decision ultimately rests with the council.*

restaurant *noun*

- ADJ. **large | little, small | elegant, excellent, fine, good, smart, stylish | cheap, expensive | local | crowded | family | candlelit, intimate | à la carte | self-service | take-away | licensed | Chinese, French, etc. | fast-food, fish, seafood**
- VERB + RESTAURANT **go (out) to** *If you're too tired to cook, let's go to a restaurant.* | **leave, walk out of** *They walked out of the restaurant without paying.* | **manage, run** *She runs a family fish restaurant on the seafront.*
- RESTAURANT + VERB **offer sth, serve sth, specialize in sth** *a restaurant offering a wide variety of local specialities* ◇ *The hotel restaurant serves a buffet breakfast.* ◇ *an Asian restaurant specializing in Thai cuisine*
- RESTAURANT + NOUN **manager, owner, staff | chain**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *They argued the whole time we were at the restaurant.* **in a/the ~** *We had a quick meal in a small local restaurant.*

restoration *noun*

1 returning sth to its original condition

- ADJ. **complete, full | extensive** *Many of the older paintings have undergone extensive restoration.*
- VERB + RESTORATION **carry out | undergo | await, be in need of, need** *This historic watermill is currently awaiting restoration.*
- RESTORATION + NOUN **programme, project, work**
- PREP. **for ~** *The palace is closed for restoration.* **under ~** *a steam engine under restoration*

2 bringing sth back into use/existence

- ADJ. **full** *the full restoration of Sino-US relations* | **immediate** *Protesters called for the immediate restoration of civil liberties.*
- PHRASES **the restoration of diplomatic relations, the restoration of the monarchy**

restore *verb*

1 bring back a situation/feeling

- ADV. **quickly, soon** *Order was quickly restored.* | **formally** *Diplomatic relations were formally restored.*
- VERB + RESTORE **need to** *We need to restore public confidence in the industry.* | **attempt to, try to | help (to) | be designed to, be intended to**
- PREP. **to** *Peace has now been restored to the area.*

• PHRASES **an attempt/effort to restore sth** *an attempt to restore the company's finances* **be aimed at restoring sth, measures to restore sth, a way of restoring sth**

2 repair/rebuild sth

• ADV. **extensively** *The interior has recently been extensively restored.* | **completely, fully** | **partially, partly** | **beautifully, handsomely, sympathetically, tastefully** | **carefully, faithfully, lovingly, painstakingly**

• PREP. **to** *The train has been restored to full working order.*

• PHRASES **newly/recently restored, restore sth to its former glory** *The buildings have now been restored to their former glory.*

restrain *verb*

• ADV. **barely** *I barely restrained myself from hitting him.* | **effectively** | **forcibly, physically** *She had to be physically restrained.*

• VERB + RESTRAIN **be unable to, can't/couldn't, can/could no longer** *She could not restrain a flash of pride.* | **seek to, try to** | **manage to**

• PREP. **from** *He restrained himself from shouting at her.*

• PHRASES **an attempt/effort to restrain sb**

restrained *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become**

• ADV. **remarkably, unusually, very** *I thought she was remarkably restrained in the circumstances.* | **fairly, quite**

restraint *noun*

1 limit/control on sth

• ADJ. **effective** | **voluntary** *talks on voluntary wage restraint* | **conventional** *what happens when the conventional restraints on human cruelty are removed* | **physical** *Sometimes the care workers need to use physical restraint on the hospital patients.* | **budgetary, economic, expenditure, financial, fiscal, monetary, pay, spending, wage** | **contractual, judicial, legal, regulatory** | **cultural, moral, social**

• VERB + RESTRAINT **impose, use** | **remove**

• PREP. **without ~** *Prices continued to rise without restraint.* | **~ on/upon** *The government imposed restraints on spending.*

2 behaving in a calm/moderate way

• ADJ. **considerable, great, remarkable** | **mutual** *the mutual restraint shown by police and protesters* | **sexual**

• VERB + RESTRAINT **exercise, show** *Journalists have exercised remarkable restraint in not reporting all the sordid details of the case.* | **appeal for, call for**

• PREP. **~ by** *The government called for restraint by both sides.*

restrict *verb*

• ADV. **greatly, seriously, severely** | **further** *The government is considering new laws which will further restrict people's access to firearms.* | **effectively** | **unduly, unnecessarily** | **apparently** | **deliberately**

• VERB + RESTRICT **attempt to, seek to, try to** | **tend to** *Having small children tends to restrict your freedom.*

• PREP. **to** *I'm restricting myself to one glass of wine a day.*

• PHRASES **an attempt to restrict sth** *attempts to restrict the sale of alcohol* **measures to restrict sth**

restricted *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **remain**

• ADV. **heavily, highly, narrowly, seriously, severely, very** *New heavy industries were concentrated in narrowly restricted areas.* ○ *He has a severely restricted diet.* | **increasingly** | **fairly, rather, relatively, somewhat** | **apparently** | **unduly** *Access to higher education has been unduly restricted for people with disabilities.*

• PREP. **to** *Access to the documents remains restricted to civil servants.*

restriction *noun*

• ADJ. **severe, tight, tough** | **major** | **petty** *The removal of petty restrictions has made life easier.* | **absolute** | **further** | **artificial** *free movement of goods between member countries without any artificial restrictions* | **proposed** | **contractual, government, legal, statutory** | **advertising, age, credit, financial, import, parking, price, reporting** (= restrictions on information that newspapers may report), **speed, time, trade, travel, visa**

• VERB + RESTRICTION **impose, introduce, place** *The government has introduced tough new import restrictions.* | **lift, remove** *The press asked for restrictions on reporting the war to be lifted.* | **accept** | **be subject to** *The right of sale is subject to certain restrictions.*

• RESTRICTION + VERB **affect sth, apply** *The 30 mph speed restriction applies in all built-up areas.*

• RESTRICTION + NOUN **order**

• PREP. **without ~** *Citizens of the EU can travel without restriction within the EU.* | **~ on/upon** *The regulations were seen as a restriction on personal freedom.*

restrictive *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem**

• ADV. **extremely, highly, very** | **increasingly** | **fairly, rather, somewhat** | **unduly, unnecessarily** *He argued that the law was unduly restrictive.*

result *noun*

1 outcome/effect

• ADJ. **good, positive** *For the best results buy one of the more expensive brands.* | **disastrous, unfortunate** | **direct, indirect** | **net** | **inevitable, logical** | **dramatic, impressive, spectacular, surprising** | **lasting** | **desired** *And did your intervention produce the desired result?*

• VERB + RESULT **have, produce** *My interference had rather an unfortunate result.* | **achieve, get, obtain** *This was not the result we had hoped to achieve.*

• PREP. **as a/the ~** *These actions were taken as a direct result of the strike.* **with a/the ~** *Parking restrictions were lifted, with the result that the road is permanently blocked by cars.*

2 desired effect

• ADJ. **concrete, tangible** *We have yet to see any concrete results from the research.*

• VERB + RESULT **come up with, get, produce** | **give, show** *When is all your effort going to show some results?*

3 final position in a competition

• ADJ. **election** | **football, racing, etc.**

• VERB + RESULT **announce, read out** *The announcer was reading out the football results.*

4 (often **results**) mark given for an examination

• ADJ. **encouraging, good** | **disappointing, poor** | **exam, examination** | **A-level, degree, etc.**

• VERB + RESULT **get, have** *When do you get your exam results?*

5 of an experiment, a medical test, an investigation, etc.

• ADJ. **interim, preliminary** | **experimental, research** | **test, X-ray** | **referendum, survey**

• VERB + RESULT **wait for** *The doctor is still waiting for my results.* | **get, have, receive** *I haven't had the X-ray results yet.* | **analyse, evaluate** | **present, publish** *They hope to publish their results next month.* | **give, yield** *All three methods yielded identical results.*

• RESULT + VERB **demonstrate sth, indicate sth, reveal sth, show sth, suggest sth** *Preliminary results sug-*

gest that there is no cause for concern. | **confirm sth, support sth**

- PREP. **pending the ~(s) of** *Work on the scheme has been halted, pending the results of a judicial enquiry.* | **~ from** *evaluating the results from various recent surveys*

result *verb*

PHRASAL VERB

result in sth

- ADV. **inevitably** *This move will inevitably result in the loss of a lot of jobs.* | **not automatically, not necessarily** | **easily** *Complacency could easily result in tragedy.* | **quickly** | **eventually**
- VERB + RESULT IN STH **can/could, may/might, should, will/would** | **be expected to, be liable to, be likely/unlikely to** *Such measures are likely to result in decreased motivation of the workforce.*

resuscitation *noun*

- ADJ. **emergency, mouth-to-mouth**
- VERB + RESUSCITATION **give sb** *We gave him mouth-to-mouth resuscitation and heart massage.*
- RESUSCITATION + NOUN **equipment**

retailer *noun*

- ADJ. **big, large, leading, major** *the country's biggest food retailer* | **small** | **local** | **high street** *High street retailers reported a marked increase in sales before Christmas.* | **multiple** | **independent, niche, specialist** | **carpet, clothing, DIY, electrical, fashion, food, etc.**

retain *verb*

- ADV. **still** | **no longer** | **somehow** *Despite the decay the mosque somehow retained a profound grandeur.*
- VERB + RETAIN **be keen to, hope to, want to, wish to** | **attempt to, seek to, struggle to, try to** *He struggled to retain control of the situation.* | **manage to** | **help (to)** | **be allowed to, be entitled to, have the right to** *He was allowed to retain his parliamentary seat.*
- PREP. **as** *The president retained her as his chief adviser.*

retaliation *noun*

- ADJ. **massive** | **swift** | **trade** | **nuclear**
- VERB + RETALIATION **bring, prompt, provoke** *a casual remark that brought swift retaliation from her boyfriend* | **threaten** | **fear**
- PREP. **in ~** *He never said a single word in retaliation.* **in ~ for** *They killed two men in retaliation for a bomb attack the previous day.* | **~ against** *fearing retaliation against government troops* **~ by/from** *the possibility of retaliation by other governments* **~ for** *retaliation for the bombing of civilians*
- PHRASES **an act of retaliation**

retarded *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look**
- ADV. **severely** *Many of the children are severely retarded.* | **slightly** | **educationally, emotionally, mentally** *a mentally retarded child*

rethink *noun*

- ADJ. **complete** | **fundamental, major, radical**
- VERB + RETHINK **have**
- PREP. **~ of** *to have a fundamental rethink of policy*

rethink *verb*

- ADV. **radically**
- VERB + RETHINK **be forced to, have to, need to** *I think we may have to rethink our policies fairly radically.*

retire *verb*

- ADV. **early** *He is hoping to retire early on medical grounds.*
- VERB + RETIRE **be compelled to, be forced to, be obliged to, have to** *Anderson was forced to retire because of injury at the age of 26.* | **be due to, plan to** *Mr McNeil is due to retire later this month.* | **decide to**
- PREP. **as** *He recently retired as head teacher of their school.* **at** *Most women retire at 60.* **from** *She retired from the bank last year.*

retirement *noun*

- ADJ. **early, premature** *A knee injury forced him into premature retirement.* | **active** | **comfortable, happy** *He provided for a comfortable retirement by selling the business.* | **compulsory, enforced** *compulsory retirement at 60 ◇ her enforced retirement from the sport*
- VERB + RETIREMENT **consider, look forward to, think about** | **approach, be close to, near** | **plan (for), prepare for, provide for** *helping you to plan your retirement* | **reach** | **announce** | **go into** | **come out of** *He is going to come out of retirement for this one last concert.* | **force sb into** | **mark** *They presented him with an engraved watch to mark his retirement.* | **enjoy, spend** *I intend to spend my retirement travelling.*
- RETIREMENT + NOUN **age** | **benefits, package, pension** | **gift, party** | **home**
- PREP. **after/before (your) ~** *After her retirement from the stage she began to drink.* **at (your) ~** *Your pension plan provides a cash lump sum at retirement.* **for (your) ~** *saving for her retirement* **in (your) ~** *His father was now living in retirement in France. ◇ She has found a new hobby in her retirement.* **on (your) ~** *a gift from the firm on his retirement* **until (your) ~** *He remained in the post until his retirement last year.* | **~ as** *her retirement as sales director* **~ at** *retirement at fifty-five* **~ from** *his retirement from first-class cricket*
- PHRASES **the age of retirement** *The age of retirement for all employees is 60.* **take early retirement** *The company suggested that he should take early retirement.* **wish sb a long and happy retirement**

retort *noun*

- ADJ. **quick, sharp** | **angry, caustic, furious**
- VERB + RETORT **hurl, make** *He opened his mouth to make a caustic retort.* | **bite back, refrain from, suppress** *He bit back a sharp retort.* | **bring, draw, meet with** *Her remark drew bitter retorts from the unemployed workers.* | **sting sb into** *He was stung into an angry retort.*

retort *verb*

- ADV. **quickly** | **angrily, bitterly, coolly, crisply, curtly, drily, flatly, furiously, grimly, harshly, sarcastically, sharply, stiffly** *'How dare you!' he retorted angrily.*

retreat *noun*

1 retreating/leaving

- ADJ. **hasty, headlong, rapid** *I decided to beat a hasty retreat.* | **humiliating, ignominious, undignified** | **dignified, orderly, strategic, tactful, tactical** *I made a tactful retreat before they started arguing.*
- VERB + RETREAT **beat, make** | **lead** | **order, sound** | **force/send/throw sb into** *Eventually the police forced the crowd into retreat.* | **block, cut off** | **cover** *We covered his retreat with bursts of gunfire.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The enemy was now in retreat.* **on the ~** *fresh evidence that trade unionism is on the retreat* | **~ from** *He took part in the retreat from Paris.* **~ into** *her retreat into a fantasy world of her own* **~ to** *an ignominious retreat to the River Vistula*
- PHRASES **be in full retreat** *On the eastern front the*

army was in full retreat. **a line of retreat** *We succeeded in cutting off the enemy's line of retreat.*

2 quiet and private place

- ADJ. **favourite, perfect** *the perfect retreat for a romantic honeymoon* | **private, secret** | **peaceful** | **country, rural** *designed as a gentleman's country retreat* | **summer, winter** | **holiday, weekend**
- VERB + RETREAT **turn sth into, use sth as** *She plans to use it as a winter retreat.* | **go into** *He went into retreat at his country home to escape the attention of the media.*
- PREP. **~for** *a summer retreat for the rich* **~from** *staying here at his secret retreat from life in the busy city*

3 private time at a quiet place

- ADJ. **religious, spiritual**
- VERB + RETREAT **go on** *She goes on a spiritual retreat for two weeks every summer.*

retreat *verb*

- ADV. **hastily, quickly, rapidly, swiftly** | **further** | **back** *He retreated hastily back to his car.*
- VERB + RETREAT **try to** | **order sb to** *The army was ordered to retreat.*
- PREP. **before** *They retreated before the Americans.* **behind** *He retreated behind the table.* **from, in the face of** *He retreated in the face of strong opposition.* **into** *He retreated into his own world.* **to** *She retreated from the busy office to her own room.*

retribution *noun*

- ADJ. **fair, just** | **divine**
- VERB + RETRIBUTION **demand, seek** | **exact** | **fear**
- RETRIBUTION + VERB **come, follow** *Violent retribution soon followed.*
- PREP. **in ~** *His armies invaded their lands in retribution.* | **~against** *retribution against wrongdoers* **~for** *He saw his suffering as retribution for the sins of his past life.* **~from** *Members of Parliament clearly feared retribution from their constituents.* **~on** *She saw the sentence as just retribution on the man who had assaulted her.*
- PHRASES **an act of retribution, fear of retribution** *The victim did not report the incident for fear of retribution.*

return *noun*

1 coming/going back; giving sth back

- ADJ. **complete, full** *a full return to health* | **gradual** | **imminent** | **brief** | **emotional, happy** | **dramatic**
- VERB + RETURN **make** *Shevchenko made an emotional return to his former club.* | **mark** *The victory marked Williams' return to top form.* | **await, wait for** | **greet** *The smell of cooking greeted his return home.* | **celebrate** | **delay, put off** | **demand** *He demanded the return of his money.* | **call for, push for, vote for** *The UN continued to call for a return to civilian rule.*
- RETURN + NOUN **address, date**
- PREP. **in ~ (for)** *She gave them all the help she could, and asked for nothing in return.* **on sb's ~** *He promised to visit us on his return.* | **~from** *The date of their return from India is a fortnight from now.* **~to** *Jones is hoping for an early return to racing after her injury.*
- PHRASES **by return (of post)** *All orders will be dispatched by return of post* (= by the next post).

2 (also **returns**) profit

- ADJ. **attractive, big, excellent, generous, good, high, substantial** | **acceptable, adequate, decent, fair, healthy, reasonable** | **inadequate, low, marginal, meagre, poor, small** | **diminishing** *the law of diminishing returns* | **immediate** | **long-term** | **annual, monthly, quarterly, etc.** | **expected, likely, possible, potential, projected** | **gross, pre-tax** | **after-tax, net** | **tax-free**
- VERB + RETURN **achieve, get, make, receive** *You should get a good return on this investment.* | **boost, enhance, improve, increase, maximize** *to maximize returns to shareholders* | **estimate** | **give (sb), offer (sb), produce, provide, show, yield** *The venture yielded a net return of £15 million.* | **represent** *These figures represent a return of 8.5% per annum.*
- RETURN + VERB **increase** | **decline, decrease**
- PREP. **~on** *the return on capital/investment/savings*
- PHRASES **a rate of return**

3 ticket to travel to a place and back again

- ADJ. **day, period** | **business class, economy, first-class, standard, tourist class**
- RETURN + NOUN **ticket** | **flight, journey**

return *verb*

- ADV. **recently** | **shortly** | **eventually** | **safely** *Our aircraft all returned safely to their bases.* | **voluntarily** | **forcibly** *The asylum seekers are to be forcibly returned to their home countries.* | **home**
- VERB + RETURN **be due to** *She is due to return to school in a fortnight.* | **be expected to, be likely to, be/look set to** | **be allowed to** | **decide to, expect to, hope to, intend to, plan to, want to, wish to** | **agree to, promise to** | **fail to** *Suspicions were aroused when he failed to return to work on Monday morning.* | **force sb to** *Lack of cash forced her to return to work.*
- PREP. **from** *She had recently returned from Paris.* **to** *She never returned the book to me.*

reunion *noun*

- ADJ. **emotional, tearful** | **class, college, school, university** | **family** | **annual** | **grand**
- VERB + REUNION **have, hold, plan** *The reunion is held every two years.* | **arrange, organize** | **attend, go to** | **celebrate** *Let's have a party to celebrate our reunion.*
- REUNION + VERB **take place**
- REUNION + NOUN **dinner, lunch**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *At the reunion I met a friend I hadn't seen for twenty years.* | **~between** *an emotional reunion between mother and son* **~for** *organizing a reunion for former company employees* **~with** *a tearful reunion with his family*

rev *noun*

- ADJ. **high** | **low** *The engine is almost silent at low revs.* | **engine**
- VERB + REV **do** *On average the engine does 4 000 revs per minute.*
- REV + NOUN **counter**
- PHRASES **revs a/per minute**

⇨ See REVOLUTION

revealing *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **deeply, highly, particularly, very** *some deeply revealing insights into his life* | **quite, rather**
- PREP. **about** *The book is very revealing about young people's views of themselves.*

revelation *noun*

- ADJ. **amazing, astonishing, devastating, embarrassing, sensational, shattering, shock, startling, sudden** | **fresh, latest, recent** | **divine** *He claimed to know these things by divine revelation.*
- QUANT. **flash** *A sudden flash of revelation came to him.*
- VERB + REVELATION **come as, prove** *To many younger members of her audience, these performances must have come as a revelation.*
- REVELATION + VERB **come** *The embarrassing revelations came just hours before he was to make his speech.*
- PREP. **~about/concerning** *fresh revelations concerning their private lives* | **~for** *The demonstration proved*

something of a revelation for our teachers. **~ from** *He claimed to have had a revelation from God.* **~ to** *His acting ability was a revelation to us all.*

revenge *noun*

- ADJ. **sweet**
- VERB + REVENGE **seek, want | exact, get, have, take, wreak** *He vowed to take his revenge on the man who had killed his brother.*
- REVENGE + NOUN **attack, killing**
- PREP. **in ~** *The attack was in revenge for the deaths of two loyalist prisoners.* | **~ for** *revenge for the insult* **~ on** *taking revenge on her attacker*
- PHRASES **an act of revenge** *The bombing was an act of revenge for the shooting of two young boys.* **a desire for revenge** *The accusations were driven by a desire for revenge.*

revenue *noun*

- ADJ. **annual, yearly | expected, potential** *the firm's expected annual revenue* | **overall, total, worldwide | additional, extra | considerable, substantial | lost** *Tax fraud costs the country millions in lost revenue.* | **government, public, tax** *the main sources of public revenue* | **advertising, export, oil, sales, tourism, tourist, etc.**
- VERB + REVENUE **depend on, need, rely on** *These television companies rely on advertising revenue for their funds.* | **earn, get, raise | collect** *The central government collects the tax revenue on behalf of local authorities.* | **spend, use | bring in, generate, produce, yield** *The project will not generate any revenue until 2010.* | **increase | reduce | lose**
- REVENUE + VERB **be derived from sth, come from sth** *Their government's revenues come mainly from direct taxes.* | **go up, grow, rise | drop, fall, go down**
- PREP. **in ~** *a drop in revenue* | **~ from** *revenues from the sale of oil*
- PHRASES **loss of revenue, a source of revenue** *Tourism is the island's main source of revenue.*

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

reverence *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, great, profound | due, proper**
- VERB + REVERENCE **have | hold sb in** *He is still held in great reverence throughout the country.* | **inspire** *a painting that inspires deep reverence for nature*
- PREP. **in ~** *I closed my eyes in reverence.* **with ~** *She spoke of them with profound reverence.* | **~ for** *reverence for human life* **~ to/towards** *Children are taught to show respect and reverence towards their grandparents.*

reversal *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, total | dramatic, sudden | apparent | policy | role** *Some people looking after elderly parents have trouble with the role reversal involved.*
- VERB + REVERSAL **amount to, mark, represent** *This represents an apparent reversal of previous US policy.* | **bring about, lead to, result in**
- PREP. **~ in** *the dramatic reversal in population decline* **~ of** *a reversal of current trends*
- PHRASES **a reversal of fortunes** *Industrial unrest and cheaper imports played their part in the company's reversal of fortunes.*

reverse *noun*

1 opposite

- ADJ. **exact**
- VERB + REVERSE **do** *If you tell children to do something, they will often do the exact reverse.*
- PREP. **on the ~** (= on the opposite side) *The coin has a date on one side and the emperor's head on the reverse.*

2 gear

- VERB + REVERSE **put sth in/into, throw sth into** *I put the car in reverse.*
- REVERSE + NOUN **gear**

3 problem

- ADJ. **major, serious**
- VERB + REVERSE **experience, have, meet with, suffer** *Their forces have suffered serious reverses in recent months.*

reverse *verb*

1 move backwards

- ADV. **carefully** *She carefully reversed the lorry up the narrow driveway.* | **slowly | in, out**
- PREP. **into** *The car reversed into a hedge.* **out of** *He reversed slowly out of the garage.*

2 change sth to the opposite

- ADV. **dramatically, radically | completely, exactly, totally** *The decline in this industry has now been completely reversed.* | **almost | partially, partly | simply** *To solve the puzzle, simply reverse the order of the numbers.* | **quickly, rapidly | suddenly**
- VERB + REVERSE **seek to, try to | fail to**

reversible *adj.*

- VERBS **be** *The operation is easily reversible.*
- ADV. **easily, readily | completely, totally**

review *noun*

1 considering sth again

- ADJ. **complete, comprehensive, extensive, full, full-scale, fundamental, in-depth, major, overall, systematic, thorough, wide-ranging | brief, rapid, short | urgent | annual, periodic, regular** *the government's annual policy review* | **constant, continuous | critical** *The first chapter presents a critical review of the existing nursery education system.* | **government, independent, internal, judicial | financial, pay, performance, policy, rent**
- VERB + REVIEW **ask for, call for, campaign for, press for, seek** *Greenpeace will seek a judicial review if a full public enquiry is not held.* | **announce, order | carry out, conduct, do, hold, undertake | present**
- REVIEW + VERB **take place | cover sth, deal with sth | conclude sth, indicate sth, propose sth, recommend sth, suggest sth**
- REVIEW + NOUN **body, committee, group**
- PREP. **due for ~** *The rent is due for review.* **under ~** *The matter is still under review.* | **~ by** *a review by the court*

2 report on a film, restaurant, etc.

- ADJ. **enthusiastic, favourable, glowing, good, rave | bad, hostile, poor, scathing** *The show has good audience figures despite poor reviews in the press.* | **critical | mixed** *The book received mixed reviews.* | **book, film**
- VERB + REVIEW **do, write** *I'm doing a review for the local paper.* | **give sth | get, have, receive, win | open to** *Their new musical opened to glowing reviews.* | **read, see** *Did you see the review in 'The Times'?*
- REVIEW + VERB **appear** *His review appeared in yesterday's paper.*
- REVIEW + NOUN **copy**

review *verb*

1 examine sth again

- ADV. **comprehensively, fully, thoroughly | extensively, widely | carefully | briefly | urgently** *Safety procedures are being urgently reviewed after a chemical leak at the factory.* | **currently** *We are currently reviewing the situation.* | **constantly, regularly | annually, from time to time, periodically** *This figure will be reviewed from time to time in the light of inflation.* | **critically** *Pull out your budget and critically review each line on it.*

- VERB + REVIEW **agree to, promise to | ask sb to | decline to, refuse to**
- PHRASES **review sth in the light of sth** *This case should be reviewed in the light of new evidence.*

2 write a report of a book/film, etc.

- ADV. **favourably** *The film has been favourably reviewed in a number of papers.* | **critically**

revise *verb*

- ADV. **extensively, drastically, heavily, radically, substantially** *The text has been quite radically revised.* | **completely, fully, thoroughly | slightly | constantly, continually** *The procedures are continually revised—it is very difficult to keep up with the latest version.* | **periodically | downwards, upwards**
- VERB + REVISE **be forced to, have to** *The estimate for the building work had to be revised upwards.* | **be necessary to**
- PREP. **from, to** *The figure has now been revised from £1 million to £2 million.*

revision *noun*

1 making changes

- ADJ. **complete, considerable, drastic, extensive, fundamental, major, radical, substantial, thorough | minor | constant, frequent | downward, upward** *an upward revision of government expenditure plans* | **policy, treaty**
- VERB + REVISION **propose, recommend, suggest | call for, demand** *They called for revisions to the treaty.* | **be open to, be subject to** *Our conclusions are always open to revision in the light of fresh evidence.* | **undergo** *The scheme has recently undergone drastic revision.* | **agree (to), announce, approve** *In October Parliament approved a revision of the budget.* | **bring about, lead to, result in | carry out, complete, conduct, make, undertake**
- PREP. **~ in** *This has brought about a radical revision in the style of school management.* **~ to** *revisions to the plan*
- PHRASES **the process of revision** *The process of revision continued at rehearsals.*

2 studying

- VERB + REVISION **do** *I've got to do some maths revision tonight.*
- REVISION + NOUN **class, course, lesson | question**
- PREP. **~ for** *revision for tomorrow's history exam*

revival *noun*

- ADJ. **great, major, marked | modern, recent | cultural, economic, industrial, literary, religious, etc.** *The late 19th century was a time of religious revival.*
- VERB + REVIVAL **enjoy, experience, undergo** *His work is enjoying a revival in popularity.* | **stage** *The economy has staged something of a revival in the last year.* | **bring about, cause, lead to, spark, stimulate** *The exhibition has stimulated a revival of interest in the Impressionists.* | **see** *The period saw a great revival in the wine trade.*
- PREP. **~ in** *a revival in the fortunes of the Democratic Party* **~ of** *a revival of ancient skills*
- PHRASES **a revival of interest** *the revival of interest in local radio* **signs of (a) revival** *He claimed the housing market was showing signs of a revival.*

revive *verb*

1 bring sth back

- ADV. **quickly, rapidly** *Banks and businesses had been rapidly reviving business activities in China.* | **suddenly**
- VERB + REVIVE **try to** *trying to revive some of the old customs* | **help (to), help sb (to)** *the country's readiness to help revive the economic fortunes of its neighbours*
- PHRASES **an attempt/effort to revive sth** *attempts to revive falling sales* **be aimed at reviving sth** *an initiative aimed at reviving talks on the country's political future*

2 make sb conscious again

- VERB + REVIVE **try to**
- PREP. **with** *They revived him with cold water.*
- PHRASES **an attempt/effort to revive sb** *Attempts to revive her failed and she was dead on arrival at hospital.*

revolt *noun*

- ADJ. **great** *The Great Revolt of 1381 may have been caused by attempts to keep wages down.* | **full-scale, general, large-scale, mass, popular, serious, widespread** *There was a general revolt against the leadership at the party congress.* | **open** *Parliament came out in open revolt against the president.* | **armed | peasant/peasant's, shareholder's, student, etc.**
- VERB + REVOLT **cause, prompt, provoke, stir up | lead** *a student-led revolt* | **stage | control, crush, deal with, put down, quash, suppress** *The revolt was suppressed with total ruthlessness.*
- REVOLT + VERB **break out** *Revolt broke out when the government decided to raise the price of bread.* | **spread | overthrow sb/sth** *The regime was overthrown by a popular revolt.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The farmers rose in revolt.* | **~ against** *the revolt against the poll tax in Britain* **~ by** *a revolt by backbenchers* **~ over** *the farmers' revolt over imported meat* **~ within** *revolt within the party*

revolution *noun*

1 changing the political system

- ADJ. **successful | bloody, violent** *Thousands of people were killed in the bloody revolution that toppled the government.* | **bloodless, peaceful | popular | political | anti-communist, anti-democratic, etc. | communist, socialist, etc. | palace | bourgeois, proletarian | world** *Some Marxists still believe that socialism will one day triumph through world revolution.*
- VERB + REVOLUTION **carry out, conduct, fight, foment, stage** *The activists were charged with fomenting revolution.* | **crush, put down | call for**
- REVOLUTION + VERB **break out | spread | overthrow sth, topple sth** *the revolution which overthrew the old regime* | **fail** *the failed 1911 revolution*
- PREP. **~ against** *a revolution against communist rule*
- PHRASES **the outbreak of the revolution, revolution from above/below** (= fought by people already in power/by people without political power), **the threat of revolution**

2 complete change in methods, opinions, etc.

- ADJ. **quiet** *There has been a quiet revolution in the way writing is taught.* | **complete | virtual | minor | agrarian, agricultural, computer, cultural, economic, electronic, environmental, industrial, political, scientific, sexual, social, technological**
- VERB + REVOLUTION **achieve, bring (about)** *The coming of television brought about a revolution in people's leisure activities.* | **undergo** *Marketing has undergone a revolution in recent years.* | **embrace, welcome** *Doctors have welcomed the fitness revolution.*
- REVOLUTION + VERB **take place** *As the eighteenth century wore on, an agricultural revolution took place.* | **transform sth** *The computer revolution has transformed the workplace.*
- PREP. **~ in** *He achieved a virtual revolution in the way music is recorded.*

3 movement around sth; one complete turn

- ADJ. **complete, full** *One full revolution of the knob will open the hatch.*
- VERB + REVOLUTION **make**
- PREP. **through a ~** *The earth turns through one complete revolution approximately every twenty-four hours.* | **~ about/around/round** *How long does it take for the planet Jupiter to make a complete revolution around the sun?*

- PHRASES **revolutions a/per minute**

⇨ See REV

revolver *noun*

- ADJ. **army, service**
- VERB + REVOLVER **load | draw | aim | fire | shoot sb with | be armed with, carry**

revulsion *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, utter | widespread** *The killing caused widespread revulsion.* **| instinctive**
- VERB + REVULSION **be filled with, feel | cause | express | conceal**
- PREP. **in/with ~** *The children shrank back from him in revulsion.* **| ~ against** *public revulsion against violence in our society* **~ at** *He tried to conceal his instinctive revulsion at the idea.* **~ for** *He was filled with hatred and revulsion for everything about her.* **~ towards** *She seems to feel revulsion towards her own children.*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of revulsion**

reward *noun*

1 for effort, etc.

- ADJ. **considerable, great, high, huge, rich** *Top athletes enjoy rich rewards.* **| fitting, just, suitable, well-deserved | poor, scant** *It was a poor reward for years of devoted service.* **| tangible** *Victory brought glory as well as more tangible rewards.* **| economic, financial, material, monetary**
- VERB + REWARD **earn, enjoy, gain, get, obtain, reap, receive** *We are just starting to reap the rewards of careful long-term planning.* **| bring, have, provide** *Hard work usually brings its own rewards.* **| deserve** *You deserve a reward for all your efforts.*
- PREP. **as a ~** *Give yourself some time off as a reward.* **| ~ for** *a reward for hard work ◇ rewards for employees who do their jobs well*
- PHRASES **reward enough** *The look on her face when I told her was reward enough.*

2 for helping the police

- ADJ. **big, huge, large, substantial | $20 000, £10 000, etc. | cash**
- VERB + REWARD **offer, put up | give sb, pay sb | claim | get, receive**
- REWARD + NOUN **money**
- PREP. **~ for** *There is a reward for information leading to an arrest.*

reward *verb* (often **be rewarded**)

- ADV. **amply, generously, handsomely, highly, well** *You will be handsomely rewarded for your loyalty. ◇ highly rewarded occupations* (= those that pay well) **| poorly | adequately, duly, properly, suitably** *We must make sure that effort is properly rewarded.* **| justly | further | immediately, promptly, quickly | eventually, finally**
- PREP. **for** *He was duly rewarded for his outstanding contribution to the arts.* **with** *Her efforts were justly rewarded with a British Empire Medal.*

rewarding *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove | find sth** *I found it immensely rewarding working with the less able children.*
- ADV. **extremely, highly, immensely, particularly, richly, very | intrinsically** *I did not expect the job to be intrinsically rewarding.* **| potentially | mutually** *a mutually rewarding partnership* **| financially** *a satisfying as well as a financially rewarding career*

rewrite *verb*

- ADV. **drastically, extensively, substantially | completely | slightly**
- PHRASES **an attempt to rewrite sth** *attempts to rewrite history*

rhetoric *noun*

- ADJ. **empty, mere** *Her speech was just empty rhetoric.* **| militant, powerful, radical | government, official | nationalist, patriotic, political, revolutionary, sectarian**
- VERB + RHETORIC **adopt, engage in, resort to, use** *He was quite prepared to use militant rhetoric in attacking his opponents.*
- PREP. **behind/beneath the ~** *Behind all the rhetoric, his relations with the army are dangerously poised.* **despite the ~** *Little has changed, despite the rhetoric about reform.* **| ~ about/concerning/on** *official rhetoric on the virtues of large families*

rheumatism *noun*

- ADJ. **chronic**
- VERB + RHEUMATISM **get | have, suffer from | relieve** *The pills help to relieve my rheumatism.*

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

rhyme *noun*

1 using words that have the same sound as each other

- ADJ. **internal**
- VERB + RHYME **write (in)**
- RHYME + NOUN **scheme**
- PREP. **in ~** *a story in rhyme*

2 word that has the same sound as another

- ADJ. **half**
- PREP. **~ for** *Can you think of a rhyme for 'tragic'?*

3 short piece of writing with rhyming words

- ADJ. **nonsense | nursery**
- VERB + RHYME **recite | make up**
- PREP. **~ about** *The kids made up a rhyme about a frog.*

rhythm *noun*

- ADJ. **fast, slow | constant, good, regular, steady** *the steady rhythm of his heartbeat* **| irregular, staccato | intricate | strong | easy** *Tidying the house in the morning fell into an easy rhythm.* **| natural, normal** *part of the natural rhythm of life* **| fierce, frenzied, insistent, pounding, pulsating | dance | body, circadian** *My body rhythms had not yet adapted to the ten-hour time difference.* **| cardiac, heart | daily** *changes to our daily rhythms*
- VERB + RHYTHM **develop, fall into, get into, settle into, slip into** *She soon settled into a regular rhythm.* **| have, lack | make** *Her feet made a steady rhythm on the pavement.* **| find** *Williams is having trouble finding her rhythm on the serve.* **| beat (out), clap (to), tap out** *Her pencil tapped out a staccato rhythm on the desk top.*
- RHYTHM + NOUN **section** *the band's rhythm section*
- PREP. **in (a) ~** *snapping his fingers in rhythm* **to a/the ~** *I found myself swaying to the rhythm of the music.* **with a/the ~** *I like music with a good rhythm.* **| ~ in** *There's rhythm in her movements.*
- PHRASES **a sense of rhythm**

rib *noun*

- ADJ. **bony, skinny | broken, bruised, cracked, fractured** *He sustained a broken rib.*
- VERB + RIB **break, crack, crush | dig sb in, nudge sb in, poke sb in, prod sb in**
- RIB + NOUN **cage | injury**
- PREP. **against the/your ~s, in the/your ~s** *I woke him up with a poke in the ribs.*

ribbon *noun*

- ADJ. **long | wide | narrow, thin | satin, silk, velvet | hair, medal**
- QUANT. **length, piece** *He cut off a length of ribbon.*
- VERB + RIBBON **tie, tie sth (back/up) with** *He tied some gold ribbon round the present.* ◇ *Her hair was tied back with a black silk ribbon.* | **undo, untie | cut** *The Lord Mayor cut a ribbon to launch the celebrations.* | **have, wear** *She had a pink ribbon in her hair.* ◇ *She was wearing a pink hair ribbon.*

rice *noun*

- ADJ. **brown, white | boiled, fried | sticky | long/short-grain | wild | polished | creamed**
- QUANT. **grain | bag, packet, sack | bowl**
- VERB + RICE **cultivate, grow, produce | harvest | boil, cook | drain, strain**
- RICE + NOUN **crop, production | farmer, grower, producer | field, paddy | cake, pudding, salad, wine | dish** *a spicy rice dish*

rich *adj.*

1 with a lot of money

- VERBS **be, feel, look | become, get, grow** *people who want to get rich quickly* | **make sb** *This discovery never made her rich.*
- ADV. **enormously, extremely, fabulously, filthy** (*informal*), **immensely, incredibly, seriously, stinking** (*informal*), **very** *He's fabulously rich, one of the richest men in the world.* ◇ *It was mean of her only to give £1—she's filthy rich, you know.* | **quite, relatively | newly** *a newly rich businessman*

2 containing/providing sth

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **especially, exceptionally, extraordinarily, particularly, unusually, very** *the exceptionally rich fishing grounds of the North Sea* | **fairly, quite, relatively | potentially | culturally** *a culturally rich nation*
- PREP. **in** *Oranges are rich in vitamin C.*

3 of food

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very, wonderfully** *The sun-dried tomatoes give the dish a wonderfully rich flavour.*

ride *noun*

- ADJ. **long, short** *We have a long ride ahead of us tomorrow.* | **leisurely** *We went for a leisurely ride along the canal.* | **comfortable, easy, smooth** (*often figurative*) *The new legislation did not have a smooth ride through Parliament.* | **bumpy, rough, uncomfortable** *It was a bumpy ride along the farm track.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The new teacher was given a rough ride by the class.* | **wild** *He took her for a wild ride on the back of his motorbike.* | **free** *He used to get free rides by hiding in the toilet of the train.* | **bike, bus, cab, car, coach, cycle, gondola, sleigh, taxi, train, tram | camel, donkey, pony | funfair, helterskelter, rollercoaster, white-knuckle** (*all often figurative*) *The day had been a rollercoaster ride of emotion.*
- VERB + RIDE **have, take** *Visitors can take a ride on a steam locomotive.* | **go for** *She's gone for a ride on her bike.* | **enjoy | bum, cadge, get, hitch, thumb** *I managed to cadge a ride with a lorry driver.* | **give sb**
- PREP. **~ from** *The ride from our house to my parents' takes about an hour.* **~ to**

ride *verb*

- ADV. **fast, hard** *They rode hard all night.* | **slowly | steadily | bareback, side-saddle** *riding bareback on a circus horse* | **away, back, home, off, on, out, over, past** *At the end of the film they ride off into the sunset.*
- VERB + RIDE **learn to | teach sb (how) to**
- PREP. **along, down, from, on, through, to, up, etc.** *riding along a country lane*
- PHRASES **go riding**

ridicule *noun*

- ADJ. **general, public**
- VERB + RIDICULE **attract, draw, receive | expose sb/sth to, hold sb/sth up to, treat sb/sth with | be open to, face, invite, risk | fear** *A faintly comic figure, he fears ridicule above all else.*
- PHRASES **an object of ridicule, a target for/of ridicule** *The prime minister was becoming an object of ridicule.*

ridiculous *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *This is getting ridiculous!*
- ADV. **bloody** (*taboo*), **really | absolutely, completely, downright, quite, totally, utterly** *It's downright ridiculous that the library isn't open on Mondays!* | **almost | a bit, faintly, a little, mildly, pretty, rather, slightly, somewhat | patently** *The whole idea was patently ridiculous.*
- PHRASES **a sense of the ridiculous** *The whole situation appealed to her sense of the ridiculous.*

riding *noun*

- ADJ. **horse**
- VERB + RIDING **go**
- RIDING + NOUN **boots, breeches, crop, hat, jacket | centre, school, stables**

rifle *noun*

- ADJ. **automatic, high-powered, semi-automatic, .22 | air, army, assault, hunting, sporting | Kalashnikov, M-16, etc.**
- VERB + RIFLE **load, reload | raise | aim | fire | shoot sb/sth with | be armed with, carry**
- RIFLE + NOUN **barrel, butt | bullet | fire, shot | club, range**

rift *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, growing, serious | public | ideological | marital, marriage**
- VERB + RIFT **cause, create, lead to | deepen, widen** *His actions only deepened the rift between himself and the majority of Congress.* | **heal, mend, patch up, repair**
- RIFT + VERB **develop, occur, open up** *A rift had opened up within the party.* | **deepen, grow, widen**
- PREP. **~ among/between** *new evidence of a rift between the two countries* **~ in/within** *The debate has succeeded only in widening rifts within the Church.* **~ over** *a rift over public spending* **~ with** *trying to heal the rift with his brother*

right *noun*

1 what is morally good

- PREP. **in the ~** (= having justice and truth on your side) *There's no doubt that he's in the right on this.*
- PHRASES **have right on your side** *I appealed against the decision because I knew I had right on my side.* **know right from wrong** *Children of that age don't know right from wrong.* **right and wrong** *She doesn't understand the difference between right and wrong.* **the rights and wrongs of sth** *We sat discussing the rights and wrongs of the prison system.*

2 entitlement

- ADJ. **basic, fundamental, inalienable** *the basic rights of all citizens* | **absolute, perfect** *I've got a perfect right to park here if I want to.* | **equal | exclusive, sole | full | automatic** *Any employee who is sacked has an automatic right to appeal.* | **animal, human** *animal rights cam-*

paigners ◇ *human rights violations* | **legal, statutory** | **contractual** | **moral** *You have a moral right to that money.* | **civil** *the civil rights movement* | **gay, women's** | **parental** *The local authority exercises parental rights over the children until foster homes are found.* | **squatters'** *The teenagers claimed squatters' rights and were allowed to remain in the building.* | **pension** | **voting** | **divine, god-given** *the old idea of the divine right of kings* ◇ *I suppose you think you have some god-given right to tell me what to do?*

• VERB + RIGHT **enjoy, have, retain** *They have no right to come onto my land.* | **assert, claim, demand** | **know** *You can't do that to me—I know my rights.* | **establish** *The new president undertook to establish full rights for all minorities.* | **stand up for** *You should stand up for your rights and insist that he pays you.* | **reserve** *I reserve the right to leave at any time I choose.* | **gain, get** | **confer on sb, give sb, grant sb** *We were granted the exclusive rights to produce the software in the UK.* | **extend** *The government extended voting rights to everyone over the age of 18.* | **exercise** | **enforce** *The landlord enforced his right to enter the property.* | **abdicate, give up, relinquish, renounce** *He renounced his right to the throne.* | **waive** *They gave me my uncle's money, on condition that I waived all rights to his property.* | **forfeit, lose** | **defend, protect, safeguard** | **acknowledge, recognize, respect** | **affect, infringe** *These additional guarantees do not affect your statutory rights.* | **deny sb** | **abolish**

• PREP. **as of ~, by ~** *The property belongs to her by/as of right.* **by ~ of** *The Normans ruled England by right of conquest.* **within your ~s** *You're acting entirely within your rights.* | **~ of** *the right of assembly/asylum/citizenship/free speech/ownership* **~ over** *He claimed full rights over the discovery.* **~s for** *equal rights for all* **~ to** *Do I have any right to compensation?*

• PHRASES **have every right** *She has every right to feel bitter.* **right of way** *There is no public right of way across the fields.*

3 rights legal authority/claim to sth

• ADJ. **film, movie, television** | **translation** | **foreign** | **property** | **mineral** | **grazing**

• VERB + RIGHTS **acquire, buy, get, obtain** | **sell** *He sold the film rights for $2 million.* | **have, hold**

• PHRASES **all rights reserved** (= protected or kept for the owner of the book, film, etc.)

4 right side/direction

• VERB + RIGHT **take** *Take a right at the traffic lights.*

• PREP. **from the ~** *Look out for traffic coming from the right.* **on the ~** *Ours is the first house on the right.* **to the ~** *Keep over to the right.*

• PHRASES **the first/second, etc. right** *Take the first right, and then it's the second turning on your left.* **from left to right /from right to left** *The books are numbered from right to left.*

5 the right in politics

• ADJ. **extreme, far**

• PREP. **on the ~** *He's on the extreme right of the party.*

right *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound, taste** *The meat doesn't taste right to me.* | **come, turn out** *I'm sure it'll all turn out right in the end.* | **get sth** *He never gets anything right.* | **make sth** *It may be a very easy way to make money, but that doesn't make it right.*

• ADV. **absolutely, dead, exactly, just, quite** *You're dead right. There's nothing we can do.* ◇ *She needs to get everything exactly right for her guests.* ◇ *There's something not quite right about these figures.* | **almost, more or less, nearly** *Don't worry about it—that's more or less right.*

• PREP. **about** *You were quite right about the weather.*

rigid *adj.*

1 not able/willing to change

• VERBS **appear, be, seem** | **become, grow** *He grew even more rigid and uncompromising as he got older.*

• ADV. **extremely, very** | **entirely** *An entirely rigid system is impractical.* | **excessively** | **fairly, rather, relatively** *We operate within fairly rigid parameters.*

2 stiff

• VERBS **be, feel, lie, look, stand** *She feigned sleep, lying rigid in bed.* | **become, go** | **remain**

• ADV. **very** | **absolutely, completely, quite** | **almost**

• PREP. **with** *He went absolutely rigid with shock.*

rigour *noun*

1 strictness

• ADJ. **full** *The crime will be treated with the full rigour of the law.* | **academic, intellectual, logical, scientific**

• VERB + RIGOUR **lack** *Their analysis lacks rigour.*

• PREP. **with ~** | **~ in** *There is a need for academic rigour in approaching this problem.*

2 rigours severe conditions

• ADJ. **full**

• VERB + RIGOURS **be subjected to, face, suffer** *computers that are subjected to the rigours of the office environment* | **avoid, escape** *The town managed to escape the rigours of war.* | **stand up to, survive, withstand** | **prepare sb/sth for, protect (sb/sth) against** *The thick coat of the mountain goat protects it against the rigours of winter.*

ring *noun*

1 piece of jewellery

• ADJ. **engagement, eternity, signet, wedding** | **diamond, gold, etc.** *She wore a diamond engagement ring.*

• VERB + RING **have on, wear** *He had a signet ring on his little finger.* | **put on** | **take off**

• RING + NOUN **finger** (= the finger next to the little finger, especially on the left hand)

2 circle

• ADJ. **inner** | **outer** | **concentric** *The street plan of the city has evolved as a series of concentric rings.* | **black, dark** *He had dark rings around his eyes.* | **smoke, tree** *to blow smoke rings*

• VERB + RING **form, stand in** *The children formed a ring around their teacher.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *The children sat on the floor in a ring.*

3 where a performance, match, etc. takes place

• ADJ. **boxing, bull, circus, show, wrestling**

• PREP. **in/into the ~** *He was back in the ring* (= the boxing ring) *only a month after the injury.*

• PHRASES **retire from the ring** (= stop boxing)

4 people involved in sth secret/illegal

• ADJ. **drugs, smuggling, spy**

• VERB + RING **be involved in** | **break up** *Customs officials have broken up a major drugs ring.*

5 telephone call

• VERB + RING **give sb** *I'll give you a ring once I get home.*

rinse *noun*

• ADJ. **good** | **final** | **cold**

• VERB + RINSE **give sth** *Give your hair a good rinse after shampooing it.*

• PREP. **~ in/with** *a rinse with cold water*

rinse *verb*

• ADV. **well** | **thoroughly** *Always rinse your hair thoroughly.* | **quickly** | **away, off, out** *She rinsed out her coffee cup.* ◇ *Make sure you rinse all the soap out.*

• PREP. **from** *rinsing the flour from his hands* **in** *She* *rinsed her hands in cold water.* **with** *Rinse the dishes with warm water.*

riot *noun*

- ADJ. **major, serious | full-scale | violent | inner-city, urban | prison | race | student | bread, food** *Shortages eventually led to food riots.*
- VERB + RIOT **cause, provoke, spark (off), start** *The city's housing and unemployment problems sparked serious riots.* | **put down, quell**
- RIOT + VERB **begin, break out, erupt, occur, start** *Prison riots broke out over worsening conditions.*
- RIOT + NOUN **police, squad | gear, shield | control**
- PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *He was killed in the riots.* | **~ against/over** *a riot against bread prices*
- PHRASES **run riot** *Fans ran riot after the match, overturning cars and looting shops.*

ripe *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, smell, taste**
- ADV. **really, very** *a really ripe strawberry* | **fully, perfectly, quite** *Make sure the plums are fully ripe before you eat them.* ◇ *Some of the apples were not quite ripe.* | **almost, just about, nearly** *The crops were just about ripe.*

ripple *noun*

- ADJ. **little, small**
- VERB + RIPPLE **cause, set off** *The decision caused ripples of concern among the parents.* | **send** *I dropped the pebble in the water, sending ripples across the pond.* ◇ *His remarks sent a ripple of laughter through the audience.* | **feel** *He felt a small ripple of fear pass through him.*
- RIPPLE + VERB **pass/run through sb/sth | spread (across) sth** *He watched the ripples spread across the pool.*
- RIPPLE + NOUN **effect**
- PREP. **~ of** *A ripple of unease passed through her.*

ripple *verb*

- ADV. **gently, smoothly, softly**
- PREP. **across** *Small waves rippled gently across the pond.* **through** *Shock rippled through her.*

rise *noun*

1 increase

- ADJ. **big, dramatic, huge, large, massive, sharp, strong, substantial | modest, slight, small | threefold, 80 per cent, etc. | appreciable, significant | abrupt, rapid, steep, sudden | slow | steady | inexorable, remorseless** *Unemployment continued its remorseless rise.* | **general, overall | annual, monthly | interest rate, pay, price, sea-level, tax, temperature, wage, etc.** *The union is demanding an across-the-board pay rise of 5%.*
- PREP. **on the ~** (= rising) *Crime is on the rise.* | **~ in** *a twofold rise in prices* **~ on** *a rise on last year's levels*

2 becoming more powerful/important

- ADJ. **meteoric, spectacular, swift**
- PREP. **~ of** *the rise of capitalism* **~ to** *His swift rise to the national team surprised everyone.*
- PHRASES **the rise and fall of sth** *the rise and fall of the Roman Empire* **rise to fame/power/prominence** *a meteoric rise to fame*

rise *verb*

1 move upwards

- ADV. **majestically** *the cliffs which rise majestically from the ocean*
- PREP. **from** *Smoke rose from the chimney.*

2 stand up

- ADV. **slowly**
- VERB + RISE **make to, try to** *He made to rise but found his legs were not strong enough to support him.*
- PREP. **from** *She rose slowly from her chair to greet us.*

3 get out of bed

- ADV. **early, late** *He rose early and went for a walk.*

4 increase

- ADV. **dramatically, markedly, sharply, significantly, steeply, substantially** *House prices have risen sharply in recent months.* | **a little, slightly | further, higher | steadily | fast, quickly, rapidly** *The cost of health care is rising faster than ever.*
- VERB + RISE **be expected to, be likely to, be projected to, be set to** *Entry standards into the profession are set to rise further.* | **be unlikely to | begin to | continue to**
- PREP. **above** *Air pollution has risen above an acceptable level.* **by** *Unemployment has risen by 25 000 this month.* **from, in** *Gas rose in price.* **in line with** *State benefits will rise in line with inflation.* **to** *Inflation rose from 2% to 5% last year.*

rising *noun*

- ADJ. **military, peasant**
- VERB + RISING **participate in, take part in | lead | crush, put down, suppress** *The government succeeded in crushing the military rising.*

risk *noun*

- ADJ. **big, considerable, grave, great, high, major, serious, significant, substantial, terrible** *high-risk patients* ◇ *a major risk to livestock* | **good | bad, poor | low, slight, small | additional, extra, increased | reduced | genuine, real | attendant, inherent, possible, potential** *Standards of hygiene have fallen with all the attendant risks of disease.* ◇ *There are considerable risks inherent in the policy.* | **long-term | relative | foolish, unacceptable, unnecessary | calculated** *I take calculated risks but never gamble.* | **commercial, credit, environmental, financial, fire, health, insurance, safety, security** *Those old boxes in the corridor are a fire risk.* ◇ *He's a good insurance risk.*
- QUANT. **degree, level | element** *The operation carries an element of risk.*
- VERB + RISK **face, run, take** *If you don't revise, you run the risk of failing.* ◇ *I'm not prepared to take risks—I want the equipment thoroughly checked.* | **entail, incur, involve, pose** *Pollutants in the river pose a real risk to the fish.* | **increase | minimize, reduce | avoid | assess, measure** *The directors will have to assess our credit risk.* | **outweigh** *The benefits outweigh the risks.*
- RISK + VERB **outweigh sth**
- RISK + NOUN **group** *Miners are a high risk group for certain types of gastric cancer.* | **factor** *Cigarette smoking is a risk factor for this disease.* | **assessment | reduction | management**
- PREP. **at ~** *to put someone's life at risk* **at ~ from/of** *Journalists in the zone are at serious risk of being kidnapped.* **at the ~ of** *At the risk of sounding rude, don't you think you'd better change for the party?* **at ~ to** *He saved the child at considerable risk to himself.* | **~ by** *He knew he was taking a big risk by going skiing.* **~ from** *a risk from contaminated water* **~ in** *I was taking a big risk in lending her the money.* **~ to** *a risk to health*
- PHRASES **at your own risk** *The building is unsafe—enter at your own risk.* **an increase/a reduction in risk, risks and benefits/rewards** *the risks and benefits of a drug*

risk *verb*

- VERB + RISK **cannot/could not, dare not, not want to, would not** *I simply can't risk being seen there.* ◇ *I didn't want to risk being late.* | **be prepared to, be willing to** *He* *was prepared to risk everything in order to achieve his ambition.* | **decide to**

• PREP. **for** *I am not risking my neck for anyone!* **on** *I wouldn't risk my money on a scheme like this one.*

• PHRASES **risk it** *I knew I would be in trouble if I was found out, but I decided to risk it anyway.* **risk life and limb** *the brave tourist who risks life and limb for adventure* **risk losing sth** *families who risk losing their homes*

risky *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, prove, seem, sound** | **consider sth**

• ADV. **decidedly, extremely, highly, very** *It all sounds decidedly risky to me.* | **increasingly** | **a bit, a little, quite, rather, somewhat** | **inherently** *All business activities are inherently risky.* | **potentially** | **politically**

ritual *noun*

• ADJ. **ancient, primitive** | **daily, nightly, Sunday, etc.** | **little** *A cognac before bed is one of our little nightly rituals.* | **elaborate, solemn** | **empty** *Bargaining at the markets is now just an empty ritual.* | **religious, social** | **pagan** | **courtship, fertility, initiation, mating**

• VERB + RITUAL **go through, perform** *She had to go through the ritual of kissing the toys before her son would go to sleep.* ◇ *rituals performed by druids at Stonehenge on Midsummer's Day* | **make** *She makes an elaborate ritual of the washing-up.*

• RITUAL + VERB **take place**

• RITUAL + NOUN **practice** *the ritual practices of ancient religions* | **murder, sacrifice, slaughter** *the accusation that they practised ritual murder*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *Women's roles in the rituals of many religions have been limited.*

rival *noun*

• ADJ. **arch, bitter, close, deadly, fierce, great, serious** | **biggest, chief, main, nearest, principal** | **long-standing, old** *They're old political rivals.* | **jealous** | **foreign, international** *The company is well equipped to compete with its international rivals.* | **business, political**

• VERB + RIVAL **have** *She has no rivals for the job.* | **beat, defeat**

• RIVAL + NOUN **candidate** | **faction, gang, group** | **company, firm** | **bid, offer** | **claim**

• PREP. **~ for** *They were rivals for her love.* **~ in** *They were rivals in love.* **~ to** *Grand it may be, but this cathedral is no rival to the great cathedral of Amiens.*

rivalry *noun*

• ADJ. **bitter, fierce, great, intense** | **long-standing, old** | **friendly** | **international** | **ethnic, personal, political, professional, sexual, sibling** *Bitter ethnic rivalries within the region have grown in recent years.*

• RIVALRY + VERB **grow**

• PREP. **~ between** *rivalry between the army and the police* **~ for** *rivalry for the party leadership* **~ over** *rivalry over who is to head the delegation* **~ with** *rivalry with foreign firms*

river *noun*

• ADJ. **broad, great, large, long, mighty, wide** *the mighty River Nile* ◇ *The river was too wide to swim across comfortably.* | **little, narrow, short, small** | **deep** | **shallow** | **high** *The river is still high after the recent rain.* | **low** | **fast-flowing** | **slow-moving, sluggish** | **winding** | **swollen** *The river was swollen after the floods.* | **navigable** *The river is navigable by vessels of up to 90 tons.*

• VERB + RIVER **cross, ford, get across** *We crossed the river by ferry.* ◇ *How are we going to get across the river?* | **bridge** *They've bridged the river at four points.* | **dam** *Wildlife groups are protesting against the proposal to dam the river.* | **dredge** *They're dredging the river to make it safer for larger boats.* | **navigate** *The rocks and sandbanks make the river hard to navigate.*

• RIVER + VERB **flow, run, wind** *This river flows into the Mediterranean Sea.* ◇ *A river runs through the field.* ◇ *The river winds its way through the hills.* | **rise** *The river has risen with the rains.* ◇ *The river rises in Bulgaria and flows through Greece to the Aegean.* | **be in flood, burst its banks, flood (sth), overflow sth** *The river had overflowed its banks.* | **dry up** *This river dried up long ago.*

• RIVER + NOUN **bank** | **water** | **valley** | **system** | **crossing** | **traffic**

• PREP. **across a/the ~** *There's a bridge across the river.* **along a/the ~** *We walked along the river.* **down a/the ~, down by a/the ~, down to a/the ~** *Let's go down to the river at sunset.* **into a/the ~** *He dived into the river.* **in a/the ~** *Trout live in this river.* **on a/the ~** *There was a rowing boat on the river.* **up a/the ~** *sailing up the river* | **~ of** (*figurative*) *a river of lava*

• PHRASES **the banks/bottom/middle/side/surface of a river** *They were waiting for us on the other side of the river.* **a bend in the river, the course/direction of a river, the river's edge**

road *noun*

• ADJ. **broad, wide** | **narrow** | **busy, congested** | **clear, deserted, empty, lonely, quiet** *Let's leave when the roads are clear.* | **direct** *The airport's near here but there's no direct road.* | **straight** | **twisting, twisty, winding** | **steep** | **scenic** | **good, metalled, paved, smooth, surfaced, tarmac** | **bad, bumpy, dirt, poor, rough, unmade** *a bumpy road through the forest* | **dangerous, difficult, hard** (*often figurative*) *Bringing up a handicapped child can be a long and hard road.* | **safe** | **slippery** | **dusty, icy, muddy, snowbound, snowy, wet** | **fast** | **long, long-distance, main, major, national, trunk** | **B-, back, local, minor, secondary, small, unclassified** | **single-track** | **rural** | **urban** | **residential** | **tree-lined** | **private, public** | **dead-end** (*figurative*) *The government's policy on education is a dead-end road.* | **open** *We'll be able to go faster once we're out on the open road.* | **right, wrong** *We took the wrong road and had to turn back.* ◇ (*figurative*) *It does appear we are on the right road to success.* | **east-west, etc.** | **coast, coastal, country, mountain** | **access, arterial, ring, service, side, slip** *The new ring road should reduce city centre traffic.* | **toll**

• VERB + ROAD **follow, go down** *Follow the road round to the left.* ◇ (*figurative*) *We have discussed privatization, but we would prefer not to go down that road.* | **take, turn (left/right) into/off** *Take the next road on the right.* | **cross, get across** | **pull (out) into** *He was hit by a lorry as he pulled out into the main road.* | **pull off** *I pulled off the road for a rest.* | **join** *The track joins the main road just south of the village.* | **hog** (= drive near the middle of the road so that others cannot get past) | **block, cordon off** *Angry farmers blocked the road with their tractors.* ◇ *Police cordoned off the road and diverted commuter traffic.* | **build** | **pave, resurface, surface** | **widen**

• ROAD + VERB **go, lead, run** *Where does this road go?* ◇ *The road runs parallel to the river.* | **bend, curve, turn, twist, wind** *The road twists and turns up the hillside.* | **ascend, climb** *The road ascends steeply from the harbour.* | **cross sth** *The road crosses the river further up the valley.* | **branch (off), fork** *Our road branches off to the left just past the wood.*

• ROAD + NOUN **atlas, map** | **markings, sign** | **intersection, junction** | **bridge, crossing, tunnel** | **closure** | **humps** *Road humps have been laid down to limit the speed of cars along the road.* | **communications, infrastructure, network** | **layout** | **access, link** *There is still no road access to the island.* | **development, plan, programme, project, proposal, scheme** | **improvements** | **surface** | **journey** | **crash, smash, (traffic) accident** |

safety | deaths | conditions | traffic, vehicles | user | manners, sense *poor driving standards and lack of road manners* | **engineer | haulier | haulage | sweeper | tax, toll** *Road tax is set to rise in next month's budget.* ◇ *Road tolls can make travelling by motorway fairly expensive.* | **rage** *A man has been stabbed to death in a road rage attack.*

• PREP. **across the ~** *The house across the road is for sale.* **along the ~** *He was walking along the road when he was attacked.* **by ~** *It takes three hours by road* (= driving). **down/up the ~** *They live just down the road from us.* **in the ~** *There was a dog in the road so we stopped.* ◇ *We live in/on Kingston Road.* **(out) into the ~** *She stepped out into the road without looking.* **off the ~** *My car's off the road at the moment while I recondition the engine.* **on a/the ~** *There's something lying on the road.* ◇ *There was a lot of traffic on the road this morning.* ◇ *on the road to Damascus* ◇ *My car is back on the road* (= is working) *again.* ◇ *We'd been on the road* (= travelling) *since dawn and needed a rest.* | **~ along/over/through, etc.** *the main road through the centre of town* **~ from, ~ to** *the road to London* ◇ *(figurative) to be on the road to recovery/success*

• PHRASES **at/by/on the side of the road, the bottom/end/top of the road, the end of the road** *(figurative) This latest row could mean the end of the road for the band.* **the middle of the road** *A dog was sitting in the middle of the road, so we stopped.* **the next/second, etc. road on the left/right, a stretch of road** *a notoriously dangerous stretch of road*

roadblock *noun*

• ADJ. **army, police**

• VERB + ROADBLOCK **erect, set up** *Police have set up a roadblock on the road to London.* | **remove**

• PREP. **at a/the ~** *They were stopped at a roadblock leaving the city.* **through a/the ~** *The truck drove through the roadblock at 100 mph.*

roam *verb*

• ADV. **free, freely** *The animals were allowed to roam free.* | **about/around**

• VERB + ROAM **allow sb/sth to, let sb/sth**

• PREP. **over** *Her eyes roamed over him, assessing him.* **through** *roaming through the town*

• PHRASES **the freedom/right to roam** *Ramblers are calling for the right to roam to be made law.*

roar *noun*

• ADJ. **almighty, deafening, great, loud, mighty** *The lion let out a great roar.* | **deep | dull, muffled | hollow | throaty** *the throaty roar of the engine* | **background, distant** *the distant roar of the sea* | **sudden**

• VERB + ROAR **give, let out | hear**

• ROAR + VERB **go up** *A mighty roar went up from the crowd as the home team scored.*

• PREP. **above/over the ~** *She couldn't make herself heard over the roar of the engines.* **with a ~** *The car sped off with an almighty roar.* | **~ from** *There was a crash and a roar from the kitchen.* **~ of** *a roar of applause/laughter*

⇨ Note at SOUND

robber *noun*

• ADJ. **armed, masked | bank, train | grave, tomb**

• QUANT. **band, gang**

• VERB + ROBBER **hunt** *Police are hunting a masked robber who snatched £15 000 from a post office.* | **catch**

• ROBBER + VERB **hold sb/sth up** *Robbers held up a bank at gunpoint.* | **snatch sth, steal sth, take sth | escape with sth, get away with sth, make off with sth** *Robbers escaped with £30 000 of payroll money.*

robbery *noun*

• ADJ. **attempted, bungled, failed | armed | bank, highway, street**

• VERB + ROBBERY **commit, take part in**

• ROBBERY + NOUN **attempt**

• PHRASES **robbery with violence** *He was sentenced to four years in prison for robbery with violence.*

⇨ Note at CRIME (for more verbs)

robe *noun*

• ADJ. **long | loose, voluminous | flowing** *a ghostly figure in flowing robes of white* | **rich** *The emperor was clad in a rich robe encrusted with jewels.* | **embroidered | ceremonial, christening, coronation** (often with **robes**)

• VERB + ROBE **slip on**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *an old man swathed in robes*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

rock *noun*

1 hard, stony part of the earth

• ADJ. **hard, solid** *Solid rock is broken down by weathering.* | **soft | jagged, rough | smooth | weathered | bare** *Ahead the vegetation broke into bare rock.* | **sheer, steep** *The river runs between walls of sheer rock.* | **overhanging | liquid, molten | igneous, sedimentary, volcanic | permeable, porous | impermeable**

• QUANT. **chunk, lump, piece, slab**

• VERB + ROCK **form**

• ROCK + VERB **form** *rocks that formed beneath the sea* | **jut out** *A great rock jutted out into the sea.*

• ROCK + NOUN **type | formation, structure | strata | ledge, outcrop | face, surface, wall | crevice | debris, fragment, sample | fall** *The path had been blocked by a rock fall.* | **crystal, salt | climber, climbing | pool** *Children were looking for crabs in the rock pools.* | **art, carvings | garden**

• PHRASES **a layer of rock, an outcrop of rock** *The castle is perched on a massive outcrop of rock.*

2 music

• ADJ. **live | country, glam, hard, heavy, indie, progressive, punk**

• ROCK + NOUN **album, anthem, CD, music, number, record, song, video | band, group | concert, festival, gig | venue | circuit, scene** *one of the biggest bands on the rock circuit* | **drummer, guitarist, musician, singer, vocalist | guitar | hero, legend, star | culture, history**

• PHRASES **rock and roll** *the king of rock and roll*

rock *verb*

• ADV. **violently** *The boat rocked violently in the huge waves.* | **gently, slightly** *She gently rocked the baby in her arms.* ◇ *The boat rocked slightly.* | **back and forth, backwards and forwards, from side to side, to and fro** *He rocked back and forth in his chair.*

rocket *noun*

1 spacecraft

• ADJ. **space**

• VERB + ROCKET **launch | go/send into orbit**

• ROCKET + VERB **blast off, take off | land**

• ROCKET + NOUN **booster, engine | fuel | scientist** *(often humorous) You don't have to be a rocket scientist* (= very clever) *to do this job.*

2 weapon

• ADJ. **long-range | anti-aircraft, anti-tank**

• VERB + ROCKET **fire**

• ROCKET + VERB **explode**

• ROCKET + NOUN **attack | launcher**

role *noun*

1 in a play, film, etc.

- ADJ. **lead, leading, starring, title | supporting | comic, tragic | cameo | film, television | TV**
- VERB + ROLE **perform, play, take** *John's playing the leading role in this year's play.* **| cast sb in | interpret** *She interprets the role as more tragic than I expected.*
- PREP. **in the ~ (of)** *He was very good in the role.*

2 position and importance

- ADJ. **central, crucial, decisive, dominant, essential, fundamental, important, key, leading, major, pivotal, primary, prominent, significant, vital | minor, secondary, subordinate | constructive, full, positive, useful, valuable | active | passive | direct | clear** *Every member of staff must have a clear role.* **| traditional | changing | dual, twin** *She has a dual role as principal and French teacher.* **| conflicting** *her conflicting roles as mother and manager of a large company* **| advisory, consultative, managerial, supervisory | maternal, parental | economic, educational, military, political, social, strategic** *the economic role of small towns ◇ A cup of tea often serves an important social role.* **| symbolic**
- VERB + ROLE **have, occupy, perform, play, serve** *Regional managers occupy a crucial role in developing a strategic framework.* **| provide (sb/sth with) | adopt, assume, take (on)** *I've had to take on the role of mother in her absence.* **| fulfil** *He really wants to fulfil his role as godfather properly.* **| cast sb in** *He has been cast in the role of chief apologist for the government.* **| find** *We need to find a useful role for the volunteers in the campaign.* **| define, redefine** *a clearly defined role within the group* **| swap**
- ROLE + NOUN **model | reversal**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She has joined the team in a consultative role.* **| ~ as** *the teacher's role as instructor* **~ for** *The new prime minister promised a greater role for women in government.* **~ in** *Pressure groups played a major role in bringing about the reforms.*

roll *noun*

1 bread

- ADJ. **bread | crusty, soft | brown, white, wholemeal | buttered, filled | ham, cheese, etc.**

2 list of names

- ADJ. **falling** *Falling rolls could lead to smaller class sizes.*
- ADJ. **electoral, membership, school**
- VERB + ROLL **strike sb off, remove sb from** *He should be struck off the roll of solicitors.* **| call, take** *The chairman called the roll* (= to see if everyone was present).
- ROLL + NOUN **call** *Staff evacuated the building and a roll call was taken outside.*
- PREP. **on (the) ~** *The local authority has 50 000 pupils on roll. ◇ There are 340 children on the school roll.*
- PHRASES **a roll of honour** *Her name was engraved on sport's roll of honour.*

roll *verb*

1 move by turning over

- ADV. **slowly | around, away, back, forward, over** *rolling over and over in the mud*
- PREP. **down** *A tear rolled slowly down her cheek.* **off**

2 make sth into the shape of a ball/tube

- ADV. **tightly** *She carried the magazine tightly rolled up in her hand.* **| up**
- PREP. **into** *He rolled the paper into a tight ball.*

3 of a ship/plane

- ADV. **heavily | to and fro** *The ship was rolling heavily to and fro.*

romance *noun*

1 love affair

- ADJ. **brief | broken | whirlwind** *They married after a whirlwind romance.* **| holiday | teenage**
- VERB + ROMANCE **have** *They had a brief romance in the eighties.*
- ROMANCE + VERB **blossom**

2 romantic feeling

- ADJ. **true**
- VERB + ROMANCE **find** *People find romance in strange places.*
- ROMANCE + VERB **be in the air** *Could romance be in the air for the young prince?*
- PHRASES **love and romance** *Most of her songs are about love and romance.*

romantic *noun*

- ADJ. **great, true | old | incurable**
- PHRASES **be a romantic at heart**

romantic *adj.*

1 showing/causing feelings of love

- VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | become, get** *You're getting quite romantic in your old age!*
- ADV. **extremely, incredibly, intensely, terribly, very, wildly, wonderfully | not at all | quite, rather**

2 imaginative and emotional, not realistic

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *highly romantic notions of honour* **| hopelessly, ridiculously** *Their dreams of love and marriage are hopelessly romantic.* **| rather**

roof *noun*

- ADJ. **conical, flat, gabled, mansard, pitched, pointed, sloping, steep | corrugated iron, glass, slate, thatched, tiled, tin | car, church, etc.**
- VERB + ROOF **support** *The roof is supported by stone columns.*
- ROOF + VERB **slope** *The roof slopes down to the top of the windows.* **| cave in, fall in, collapse** *Five people were killed when the roof fell in.* **| leak**
- ROOF + NOUN **space** *The burglars removed tiles to climb into the roof space.* **| covering, slate, tile | beams, rafters, structure, timbers | insulation | garden, terrace** *The hotel has a charming roof garden.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *There are small windows in the roof.* **on a/the ~** *There's a cat on the roof.* **under your ~** (= in your house) *I won't have that man under my roof again!*
- PHRASES **under one/the same roof** (= in the same building) *We're good friends but we could never live under the same roof.*

room *noun*

1 in a house/building

- ADJ. **big, cavernous, enormous, high, high-ceilinged, huge, large, palatial, spacious, vast | cell-like, cramped, little, low, low-ceilinged, narrow, small, tiny | L-shaped, odd-shaped | north-facing, south-facing, etc. | airy, well-ventilated | airless, claustrophobic, stuffy, windowless | bright | dark, dim, dimly-lit, dingy, moonlit, pitch-dark, shadowed, shadowy, unlighted | depressing, dreary | chilly, cold, draughty | hot, warm | clean, tidy | dirty, dusty, scruffy, shabby, smelly, untidy | comfortable, cosy, homely | attractive, beautiful, elegant, graceful, gracious, handsome, impressive, luxurious, magnificent, pretty | bare, bleak, empty | book-lined | newly-painted, white-washed | tiled, wood-panelled | crowded, overcrowded | smoke-filled, smoky | quiet, silent | locked | adjacent, adjoining | attic, back, basement, downstairs, front, upstairs | first-floor, second-floor, etc. | guest,**

spare *Our guests are sleeping in the spare room.* | **hotel** | **double, family, single, three-bedded, twin-bedded** | **bed-sitting** | **rented** | **breakfast, dining, living, reception, sitting, utility** | **dressing, make-up, rehearsal** | **control** | **fitness, weight-training** | **news, press** *He emailed his report back to the news room.* | **committee, conference, meeting** | **storage, store** (also **storeroom**) | **incident, interview** *Police have set up an incident room at the scene of the murder.* | **changing, locker, shower** | **emergency, first-aid, medical, recovery, treatment** | **lecture, reading, seminar, staff** (also **staffroom**) | **boiler, engine**

- VERB + ROOM **burst into, come/go into, creep into, enter, hurry into, march into, run/rush into, slip/sneak into, step into, storm into, stride into, walk into, wander into** | **back out of, come/go out of, creep out of, flounce out of, hurry out of, leave, march out of, run/rush out of, slip out of, step out of, storm out of, stride out of, walk out of** *As soon as the teacher left the room there was uproar.* | **show sb into, usher sb into** | **cross, go around/round, pace (around/round), prowl (around/round), walk, wander around/round** *He was pacing the room nervously.* ◇ *She prowled around the room like a caged tiger.* ◇ *I wandered restlessly round my room.* | **echo around/round, run around/round** *A ripple of laughter ran round the room.* | **glance, look around/round, scan** | **fill** | **clean, tidy** | **decorate, paint** *a room decorated in pastel shades* | **air, ventilate** | **light** *a room lit by one dusty light bulb* | **share** *I used to share a room with my sister.* | **occupy** | **vacate** *Guests are requested to vacate their rooms by 11 a.m.* | **set aside** *a room set aside for quiet study* | **book, hire, rent** *We hired a room for the party.* ◇ *I rented a room while looking for a house to buy.*
- ROOM + VERB **adjoin sth, face sth, overlook sth** *The room adjoins the hotel kitchens.* | **contain sth** *The room contained little more than a table and chair.* | **be crammed with sth, be filled with sth, be full of sth** | **be equipped with sth, be furnished with sth, have sth** *The patient was in a private room equipped with bathroom and colour TV.* | **measure sth** *a room measuring 6 metres by 7* | **darken** | **fall silent, grow quiet** *The room fell silent as she rose to speak.* | **smell** *The room smelled of stale sweat and coffee.* | **spin, sway** *She felt sick and the room was spinning.*
- ROOM + NOUN **key** | **number** | **lighting, lights** | **mate** (also **room-mate**) (= person who you share a room or house with) | **service** | **temperature** *This wine should be served at room temperature.* | **rates** *Soaring room rates have put tourists off visiting the city.*
- PREP. **around/round a/the ~, from ~ to ~** *She flew from room to room looking for the fire extinguisher.* **in/into a/the ~, inside a/the ~**

2 space; enough space

- ADJ. **ample, considerable, enough, sufficient** | **insufficient** | **head** (also **headroom**), **leg** (also **legroom**)
- ADJ. **leave, make** *We had to move the furniture to make room for the piano.*
- PREP. **~ for** *Will there be enough room for that large sofa in your sitting room?* ◇ (*figurative*) *The sales figures are good, but there is still room for improvement.*
- PHRASES **room for manoeuvre**

root *noun*

1 of a plant

- ADJ. **deep, shallow** | **gnarled**
- ROOT + VERB **develop, grow** | **put down, take** *I hope those cuttings will take root.*
- ROOT + NOUN **system** | **crops, vegetables**
- PREP. **by its/the ~s** *She pulled the shrub out by its roots.*

2 roots place where you feel you belong

- ADJ. **humble** *Despite his wealth, he never forgot his humble roots.* | **cultural** *severed from our cultural roots by industrialization* | **middle-class, peasant, working-class** | **French, Scottish, etc.**
- VERB + ROOTS **get/go back to, return to** *My husband wants to go back to his Irish roots.* | **trace** *They can trace their roots back to the sixteenth century.* | **put down** *We haven't been here long enough to put down roots.* | **cut yourself off from**

3 cause/source

- ADJ. **deep** | **very** | **common** *The two languages share a common root.* | **historical**
- VERB + ROOT **have** | **get at/to, go to** *I've spent months trying to get to the root of the problem.* | **lie at**
- ROOT + NOUN **cause**
- PREP. **at (the ~ of)** *It is a moral question at root.* ◇ *His fears of loneliness lay at the very root of his inability to leave.* | **~ in** *The unrest has roots in religious differences.*
- PHRASES **the root of all evil** *They consider globalization to be the root of all evil.* **the root of the matter/problem** *I expect money is at the root of the matter.*

rooted *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **deeply** | **firmly**
- PREP. **in** *His problems are deeply rooted in his childhood experiences.*

rope *noun*

- ADJ. **strong** | **slack** | **guy, mooring, skipping, tow** *I tripped over the guy rope of the tent in the dark.*
- QUANT. **length, piece**
- VERB + ROPE **knot, tie (sth together with)** *He tied the planks together with a strong rope.* | **tighten** | **loosen** | **coil (up)** | **pull (at/on)**
- PHRASES **a coil of rope**

rose *noun*

- ADJ. **deep pink, red, yellow, etc.** | **early, late** | **climbing, rambler, rambling, shrub** | **long-stemmed** | **scented** | **fresh** *She put fresh roses in the vases.* | **wild**
- ROSE + NOUN **garden** | **bed** | **bush** | **petals** | **bowl**
- PHRASES **a bed of roses, the scent/smell of a rose**

⇨ Note at FLOWER (for verbs)

rota *noun*

- ADJ. **daily, weekly, etc.** | **duty** | **cleaning**
- VERB + ROTA **have** | **draw up, work out** *I've been asked to draw up the cleaning rota.*
- ROTA + NOUN **scheme, system**
- PREP. **on the ~** | **~ for** *Are you on the rota for cooking?*
- PHRASES **on a rota basis** *We share the babysitting duties on a rota basis.*

rotate *verb*

- ADV. **quickly, rapidly** | **gently, slowly** | **freely**
- VERB + ROTATE **allow sth to** *It is best to allow the rotor to rotate freely.*
- PREP. **around** *The blades rotate around a central point.* **on** *The earth rotates on its axis.* **through** *The handle rotates through 360 degrees.*

round *noun*

1 series of events

- ADJ. **ceaseless, endless, long** *Life to him was one long round of parties.* | **fresh, further, new**
- PREP. **~ of** *a fresh round of peace talks*

2 regular series of visits, etc.

- ADJ. **daily, weekly** | **milk, paper**
- VERB + ROUND **do, make** *The milkman does his round very early.*
- PREP. **on sb's ~** *a doctor on his round*

3 number of drinks

- VERB + ROUND **buy, order** *I bought the last round.*
- PHRASES **It's my round.** (= It's my turn to buy the drinks.), **a round of drinks** *We just had time for one more round of drinks.*

4 part of a competition

- ADJ. **first, second, etc.** *Italy qualified for the second round of the tournament by beating Germany.* | **opening, preliminary** | **final** | **qualifying**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Australia were knocked out in the second round.*

5 (in golf) one game

- VERB + ROUND **have, play, shoot**
- PHRASES **a round of golf** *We had a good round of golf today.*

6 bullet/bullets

- ADJ. **live** | **blank**
- VERB + ROUND **fire** *The soldiers fired several blank rounds into the crowd.*

round *verb*

PHRASAL VERB

round sth off

- ADV. **nicely** *A coffee would round the meal off nicely.*
- PREP. **with** *We rounded off the day with a picnic.*

roundabout *noun*

- VERB + ROUNDABOUT **enter** | **get off, leave** *Leave the roundabout at the second exit.* | **drive/go around/round**
- PREP. **at the ~** *At the roundabout, turn right.* **on the ~** *There was a lot of traffic on the roundabout.*

rounded *adj.*

1 having a round shape

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **gently, slightly, softly** | **beautifully, nicely** *beautifully rounded arches*

2 complete and balanced

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **well** | **fully** *a fully rounded education*

rout *noun*

- ADJ. **total**
- VERB + ROUT **become, end in, turn into** *The game ended in a total rout.* | **put sb to** *They put the rebel army to rout.* | **start** | **complete**

route *noun*

- ADJ. **quick, short** *The shortest route home is round the ring road.* | **convenient, easy** | **long** | **direct** | **circuitous, circular, devious, indirect, roundabout, tortuous** | **dangerous, safe** | **attractive, beautiful, scenic** *We had plenty of time so we took the scenic route.* | **accessible** | **alternative** *Travellers are advised to find an alternative route during road repairs.* | **main, trunk** | **air, overland, sea** | **bus, cycle, etc.** | **shipping, supply, trade** | **coastal** | **east-west, southerly, southern, etc.** | **trans-Pennine, trans-Sahara, etc.** | **tourist** | **well-travelled, well-worn** | **access** | **escape**
- VERB + ROUTE **follow, take** | **choose, map out, plan, work out** *You'll have to plan your route carefully.* | **retrace** *We retraced our route in an attempt to get back on the right path.*
- ROUTE + VERB **cross sth, follow sth, go, pass through sth, run, take sb** *The alternative route takes you along the river.* | **climb, turn** | **lead** | **lie** *Our route lay straight ahead and downhill.*
- ROUTE + NOUN **map**
- PREP. **along the ~** *There are plenty of bed and breakfasts along the route.* **on the ~** *We live on the school bus route.* | **~ between** *the most direct route between London and Brighton* **~ from** *the air route from Berlin to Beijing* **~ through** *a scenic route through the south of France* **~ to** *the shortest route to Bruges* ◇ *the best route to success*
- PHRASES **en route** (= on the way) *We'll stop for lunch en route.*

routine *noun*

- ADJ. **fixed, set** | **inflexible, rigid, strict** | **dull, humdrum, monotonous** | **familiar, normal, old, regular, usual** | **daily, day-to-day** | **domestic, exercise, school, work**
- VERB + ROUTINE **establish, get into, settle into** *It took me a week to settle into a routine.* | **follow, go through** *We go through the same old routine every morning.* | **break, change, vary**
- PHRASES **a change from the/in/of routine** *The children were confused by the change of routine.* **a matter of routine** *Bags of all visitors to the museum are searched as a matter of routine.*

row¹ /rəʊ/ *noun*

- ADJ. **bottom, middle, top** | **back, front** | **horizontal, vertical** | **double, single** | **neat** *She arranged the chairs in two neat rows.* | **serried** *serried rows of vines* | **endless** *endless rows of identical houses*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The children stood in a row.* ◇ *It rained for five days in a row* (= without a break). ◇ *We have seats in the front row.* | **~ of** *a long row of shops*
- PHRASES **the end/middle of the row, rows and rows, row upon row** *He looked down at row upon row of eager faces.*

row² /raʊ/ *noun*

1 argument

- ADJ. **almighty, awful, big, bitter, blazing, fearful, ferocious, fierce, flaming, furious, great, huge, major, serious, terrible, tremendous, unholy, violent** *We had a blazing row over who should do the cooking.* | **domestic, family** | **stand-up** *A couple was having a stand-up row in the street.* | **public** | **drunken** | **long-running** | **diplomatic, political**
- VERB + ROW **have** | **kick up** *I'm going to kick up a row if I don't get my money back.* | **cause** | **get into**
- ROW + VERB **blow up, break out, develop, erupt** *A row blew up over pay rises for ministers.* | **go on, rage (on)**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He came to prominence in the row over defence policy.* | **~ about/over** *Carol and I had a terrible row about how much money she spends.* **~ between** *a row between the left and right wings of the party* **~ with** *a row with my mother*

2 loud noise

- ADJ. **unholy**
- VERB + ROW **make** *Someone's making an unholy row outside.*
- ROW + VERB **go on, rage (on)** *The row went on and on.*

royalty *noun*

1 money paid to an author, etc.

- ADJ. **advance**
- VERB + ROYALTY **pay** | **earn, get, receive** | **charge**
- ROYALTY + NOUN **cheque, payment**
- PREP. **in ~s** *She earns a lot in royalties.* | **~ from/on** *He has received royalties on previous inventions.*
- PHRASES **an advance on royalties**

2 members of the royal family

- ADJ. **minor**

- PHRASES **in the presence of royalty** *She behaved as if she were in the presence of royalty.*

rub *verb*

- ADV. **briskly, hard, vigorously** *He rubbed his face briskly with the towel.* | **well** *Put a little cream onto each hand and rub it in well.* | **gently, lightly** *He gently rubbed his swollen nose.* | **thoughtfully** *She rubbed her chin thoughtfully.* | **wearily** *Corbett rubbed his eyes wearily.* | **in, together** *He began to rub his hands together in glee.*
- VERB + RUB **begin to**
- PREP. **against** *The cat rubbed against my legs.* **at** *She stood up, rubbing at her back.* **into** *Rub the cream well into your skin.* **on** *She rubbed her hands on her apron.* **with** *I rubbed my glasses with my handkerchief.*

rubbish *noun*

1 waste material

- ADJ. **domestic, household | garden**
- QUANT. **bag, pile | tons**
- VERB + RUBBISH **put out** *I forgot to put the rubbish out last night.* | **collect, remove, take away** *The rubbish is collected on Tuesdays.* | **clear (out), dispose of, dump, throw (away/out)** *He's clearing rubbish out of the attic.* ◇ *Someone had dumped their rubbish by the road.* ◇ *Throw the rubbish in the bin.* | **leave, strew (around)** *There was rubbish strewn around everywhere.* | **pick up**
- RUBBISH + VERB **decay, rot**
- RUBBISH + NOUN **bag, bin, skip | dump, heap, tip | collection, disposal | chute**

2 sth that you think is bad/silly/wrong

- ADJ. **absolute, complete, total, utter** *The film was absolute rubbish.* | **worthless** *Many critics see the paintings as worthless rubbish.* | **old** *The antique shop was just full of old rubbish.*
- VERB + RUBBISH **talk** *Don't talk such rubbish!*
- PREP. **~about** *the usual rubbish about his undiscovered talents*
- PHRASES **a load of (old) rubbish, What rubbish!**

rubble *noun*

- ADJ. **brick, rock, stone | building**
- QUANT. **heap, pile** *What was once a cottage was now a crumbling heap of rubble.*
- VERB + RUBBLE **be reduced to** *The school was reduced to rubble.* | **clear (away) | sift through** *Police sifted through the rubble looking for clues.*
- PREP. **amid/amidst/among/amongst the ~** *She stood among the rubble left by the earthquake.* **beneath/under the ~** *Our car was buried somewhere under the rubble.* **in the ~** *Several people were trapped in the rubble.*

rucksack (*also* **backpack**) *noun*

- VERB + RUCKSACK **pack | unpack | put on, shoulder | pull off, remove, take off | carry, have on, wear** *He had a large rucksack on.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He had very little in his rucksack.*

rude *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound | become | consider sth, think sb/sth** *I hope you won't think me rude if I leave early.*
- ADV. **downright, extremely, really, terribly, very** *He wasn't just impolite—he was downright rude.* | **a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather | deliberately**
- PREP. **about** *He's very rude about her cooking.* **to** *Don't be so rude to your mother!*

rug *noun*

- ADJ. **threadbare | bedside, fireside, hearth, picnic | oriental, Persian**
- VERB + RUG **make, weave | scatter, spread** *There were several brightly coloured rugs scattered around.*
- RUG + VERB **cover sth** *A Persian rug covered the polished floor.*

rugby *noun*

- ADJ. **amateur, professional | competitive, representative | junior, school, student, youth | senior | club, league | first-class, international, test, world | touch | mini** *Kids from six years old play mini rugby at the club.* | **running** *The crowd enjoyed the Fijians' running rugby.*
- QUANT. **game**
- VERB + RUGBY **play | watch**
- RUGBY + NOUN **scrum, tackle | club, side, team | ball, jersey, shirt | championship, game, international, match | tour | ball, posts | boots, jersey | field, pitch | forward, international, player** *the former rugby international, Serge Blanco* | **coach | official | career | season | buff, enthusiast, fan, follower, supporter | circles, community, folk, fraternity, people** *In rugby circles, there is nothing but criticism for the coverage of sport on terrestrial TV.* | **country, nation**
- PHRASES **Rugby League, Rugby Union**

⇨ Special page at SPORT

ruin *noun*

1 spoilt state

- ADJ. **complete, utter**
- VERB + RUIN **fall into, go to** *The cottage gradually fell into ruin.*
- PHRASES **be the ruin of sb/sth** *Drink has been the ruin of her.* **go to rack and ruin** *They've let the house go to rack and ruin.*

2 end of success, hopes, etc.

- ADJ. **economic, financial | political**
- VERB + RUIN **face** *The company faces ruin over the new road plans.* | **bring, lead to, mean, spell** *The cost would have meant financial ruin for us.* | **save from**
- PHRASES **on the brink/verge of ruin, the road to ruin** *He's on the road to political ruin.*

3 damaged building, town, etc.

- ADJ. **ancient | charred, smoking** *the charred ruins of their home* | **abbey, castle, etc.**
- VERB + RUIN **be/lie in ~s** *The church now lies in ruins.* | **leave sth in ~s** *The earthquake left the town in ruins.*
- PREP. **~s of** *the ancient ruins of Jericho*

ruin *verb*

- ADV. **completely, quite, totally** *The experience has completely ruined her life.* | **nearly | partly | effectively | financially** *The long legal battle ruined him financially.*
- VERB + RUIN **threaten to** *A knee injury threatened to ruin her Olympic hopes.* | **be going to** *All this mud is going to ruin my shoes.*

rule *noun*

1 what you can or cannot do, say, etc.

- ADJ. **basic, cardinal, first, fundamental, golden | ground ~s** *You and your flatmates should establish some ground rules.* | **general | formal, official, written | informal, unwritten | rigid, strict, stringent | absolute, hard and fast** *There are no hard and fast rules when it comes to choosing a typeface.* | **clear | simple** *Follow these few simple rules, and you won't go far wrong.* | **arbitrary | petty** *He made his children's lives a misery with all his petty rules.* | **club, company, competition, school, union, etc. | cultural, ethical, legal, moral, social | dis-**

ciplinary, immigration, safety, tax | grammar, grammatical

• QUANT. **set** *The aim is to get each member country to adhere to a single set of rules.*

• VERB + RULE **draw up, establish, formulate, impose, issue, lay down, make, set out | abide by, adhere to, follow, go by, obey, observe, play by, stick to** *If he wanted a loan he would have to play by the bank's rules.* | **be in line with, conform to** *The packaging does not conform to EU rules.* | **be in breach of, break, disregard, fall foul of, flout, violate** *Their action was in breach of Stock Exchange rules.* | **apply, enforce** *The referee applied the rules to the letter* (= very strictly). | **bend, relax** *Couldn't they just bend the rules and let us in without a ticket?* | **waive | tighten up** *The rules on claiming sickness benefit have been tightened up.* | **be bound by, be fettered by, be governed by** *Social workers are bound by rules of confidentiality.* | **interpret, understand** *The punishment depends on how the umpire interprets the rules.*

• RULE + VERB **apply, be applicable, operate | provide sth, say sth, state sth, stipulate sth** *The competition rules provide that a cash alternative may be given.* | **govern sth** *the rules governing the importing of livestock* | **allow (for) sth, permit sth** *The existing rules allow for some flexibility.* | **forbid sth, prohibit sth | limit sth, restrict sth** *rules limiting imports*

• RULE + NOUN **book** *The officials went strictly by the rule book.*

• PREP. **according to the ~s** *According to the rules, no alcohol can be consumed on the premises.* **against/contrary to the ~s** *Tackling a player without the ball is against the rules.* **in accordance with the ~s** *The music was turned off at midnight, in accordance with the rules.* **outside the ~s** *behaviour which is outside the rules* **under a/the ~** *Under this rule, only full members of the club are entitled to vote.* **within the ~s** *I believed I was acting within the rules.* | **~ about/concerning/on/regarding/relating to** *What are the school rules about dress?* **~ for** *There seems to be one rule for the rich and another for the poor.* ◇ *What is the rule for forming plurals?* **~ of** *the rules of the game*

• PHRASES **a breach/violation of the rules, a body/code/network/system of rules, respect for the rules, rules and regulations**

2 what is usual

• ADJ. **general** *There are few exceptions to the general rule that shops close at six o'clock.*

• PREP. **as a ~** *As a rule, hardly anybody uses this road.*

• PHRASES **be the rule** *Among her friends, casual dress and a relaxed manner are the rule.*

3 government

• ADJ. **authoritarian, harsh | direct, indirect | emergency** *The president imposed emergency rule following the riots.* | **majority | one-party | Labour, Tory, etc. | colonial | home | civilian, military | presidential | mob** *the lawless days of mob rule*

• VERB + RULE **impose**

• PREP. **under … ~** *The country remained under direct rule by the occupying powers.*

• PHRASES **the rule of law** *a society based on the rule of law*

rule *verb*

• ADV. **justly**

• PREP. **by** *the president's powers to rule by decree* **over** *He left his son to rule over Saragossa.*

• PHRASES **rule supreme, rule with an iron fist/hand; rule with a rod of iron** (= control a person or group of people very severely)

PHRASAL VERB

rule sth out

• ADV. **altogether, categorically, completely, definitely, entirely, firmly, totally** *This theory cannot be ruled out altogether.* | **virtually | effectively** *His age effectively ruled him out as a possible candidate.* | **apparently | automatically** *Infringement of this regulation would automatically rule you out of the championship.* | **immediately | formerly, hitherto, previously**

• VERB + RULE STH OUT **cannot/could not, fail to, refuse to**

• PREP. **as** *Police have now ruled her out as the killer.*

ruler *noun*

• ADJ. **great | effective, powerful, strong | weak | enlightened | democratic | absolute** *an absolute ruler who will tolerate no opposition* | **virtual** *At that time the East India Company was the virtual ruler of Bengal.* | **sovereign | supreme | hereditary | legitimate, rightful | independent | former | colonial, military | secular**

• RULER + VERB **come to power, seize power | govern (sb/sth), hold power** *a ruler who held power for over twenty years*

• PREP. **under a/the ~** *The country was finally united under one ruler.* | **~ over** *He eventually became ruler over the Burgundians.*

ruling *noun*

• ADJ. **authoritative, definitive | unanimous | adverse | preliminary | original | final | court, legal**

• VERB + RULING **give, hand down, issue, make | overturn, reverse** *The Court of Appeal overturned the original ruling.* | **uphold**

• PREP. **~ against** *the European Court's ruling against detention without trial* **~ by** *the ruling by the High Court* **~ in favour of** *The newspaper said that this was a ruling in favour of freedom of speech.* **~ on** *The House of Lords will make a final ruling on the case next week.*

rumble *noun*

• ADJ. **deep, low | dull | distant | ominous**

• VERB + RUMBLE **give, let out | hear**

• PREP. **with a ~** *The door slid shut with a rumble.* | **~ of**

• PHRASES **the rumble of thunder** *We could hear the distant rumble of thunder.*

⇨ Note at SOUND

rumour *noun*

• ADJ. **malicious, nasty, scurrilous, ugly, vicious | baseless, false, unconfirmed, unfounded, unsubstantiated, wild | strong, widespread | persistent**

• VERB + RUMOUR **start | fuel** *His lengthy absence from work fuelled rumours that he might have been sacked.* | **spread | hear | believe | deny | confirm** *The actor confirmed rumours that he will be leaving the series.* | **quash, scotch, silence** *The Chief Executive issued a statement to quash rumours of financial problems.*

• RUMOUR + VERB **circulate, get about/around, go around/round, spread | abound, be flying about/around, be rife** *Rumours about an impending royal divorce were rife.* | **sweep sth** *The rumour quickly swept the town.* | **persist**

• RUMOUR + NOUN **factory, mill** *The Washington rumour mill suggests the money changed hands illegally.*

• PREP. **amid/amidst ~s** *The manager resigned suddenly amidst rumours of misconduct.* | **~ about/concerning/surrounding** *rumours surrounding the closure of the hospital* **~ of** *There were persistent rumours of drug taking among staff.*

• PHRASES **rumour has it that …** *Rumour has it that he was sacked from his last job.* **there is no truth in the rumour** *There is no truth in the rumour that the head teacher is about to resign.*

run *noun*

1 on foot
- ADJ. **five-mile, etc.** | **fun, sponsored** *The local council has organized a two-mile fun run for charity.* | **training** | **record-breaking** *The Ethiopian is aiming to produce his second record-breaking run of the week.*
- VERB + RUN **go for, have** *Let's go for a run before dinner.* | **go on** *I'm going on a sponsored run tomorrow.* | **break into** *When he saw me he broke into a run.* | **take** *He took a run at the wall and just managed to clear it.*
- PREP. **at a ~** *She took the stairs at a run.* **on the ~** (= escaping by running) *The prisoners have now been on the run for three days.*
- PHRASES **make a run for it** (= escape by running)

2 of success/failure
- ADJ. **bad, disappointing, disastrous, dismal, poor** | **excellent, fine, good, remarkable, successful** | **unbeaten, winning** | **record-breaking**
- VERB + RUN **enjoy, have** *Spurs have had a winning run of ten games.* | **begin** | **end** *Manchester United have finally ended their run of victories.*
- RUN + VERB **begin** | **end**
- PREP. **~ of** *a run of good/bad luck*

3 of a play/film
- ADJ. **long** | **short** | **eight-week, six-month, etc.** | **successful** | **sell-out**
- VERB + RUN **have** *The play had a long run in the West End.* | **begin** *They play began its run last June.* | **end**
- RUN + VERB **begin** | **end**

4 way things are/happen
- ADJ. **common, general, ordinary, usual** *She was very different from the general run of American movie stars.* ◇ *In the normal run of things the only exercise he gets is climbing in and out of taxis.*
- PHRASES **against the run of play** *Villa scored in the 15th minute against the run of play* (= although the other team had seemed more likely to score).

5 in cricket/baseball
- ADJ. **home**
- VERB + RUN **get, make, score** *They've got another run!* ◇ *He's only made four home runs all season.* | **be on, have** *Our team is on 90 runs.*

6 attempt/practice
- ADJ. **dry, dummy, practice, trial**

run *verb*

1 move quickly on foot
- ADV. **fast, quickly** *John can run very fast.* ◇ *She ran quickly downstairs.* | **blindly** | **headlong** | **away, downstairs, home, off, out, upstairs**
- VERB + RUN **begin to, turn and/to** | **want to** *He just wanted to run away and hide.*
- PREP. **down** *She turned and ran blindly down the street.* **into** *He ran headlong into an enemy patrol.* **out of** *He ran out of the house.* **to, towards, up, etc.**

2 manage sth
- ADV. **efficiently, properly, well** | **badly** *a badly-run company* | **professionally** | **jointly** *The programme will be jointly run with NASA in the US.* | **personally** | **privately** | **independently** *The student union is run independently of college authorities.* | **in parallel, in tandem** *The two experiments are run in parallel.*
- VERB + RUN **try to** *Stop trying to run my life for me.* | **manage to** | **help (to), help sb (to)**

3 work
- ADV. **efficiently, smoothly** *The engine was running very smoothly.*
- PREP. **on** *Our car only runs on unleaded petrol.*

4 happen
- ADV. **smoothly** *Things ran very smoothly for a while.* | **concurrently, consecutively** *He was given two twelve-month sentences to run concurrently.*

5 buses/trains
- ADV. **regularly** *Local buses run regularly to and from the town.* | **late** *The train was running late, as usual.*
- PREP. **between, from, to**

runner *noun*

- ADJ. **fast, good** | **distance, long-distance, marathon, middle-distance** | **cross-country, fell, road** | **front** (*often figurative*) *He is currently the front runner for the Democratic Party presidential nomination.* | **fancied** *one of the fancied runners in today's race*

running *noun*

1 activity/sport
- ADJ. **cross-country, fell, road** | **distance, long-distance, marathon, middle-distance**
- RUNNING + NOUN **event, race** | **shoe, shorts, vest** | **track**

2 management of business, etc.
- ADJ. **efficient, smooth** *Careful planning is needed to ensure the smooth running of the event.* | **day-to-day**
- VERB + RUNNING **be involved in, be responsible for**
- RUNNING + NOUN **costs, expenses**

rural *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, overwhelmingly, truly, very** *At the end of the 17th century England was still overwhelmingly rural.* | **completely** | **largely, mainly, predominantly** | **semi-** *the ideal of suburban or semi-rural living* | **quite** | **essentially** | **pleasantly**

ruse *noun*

- ADJ. **simple** | **clever, subtle**
- RUSE + VERB **succeed** | **fail**
- PREP. **~ by sb** *The attack may merely be a ruse by the enemy to distract our forces.*

rush *noun*

1 sudden quick movement
- ADJ. **headlong, sudden**
- PREP. **~ for** *The film ended, and there was a rush for the exits.* **~ of** *A rush of water came from the burst pipe.*

2 busy period
- ADJ. **awful, great, mad, tearing** | **sudden** | **last-minute** | **Christmas**
- RUSH + NOUN **decision** | **job** *You can see that the painting was a rush job.* | **hour** *During the rush hour the journey may take up to twice as long.*
- PREP. **in a ~** *I've been in a mad rush all day.* | **~ for** *a last-minute rush for tickets* **~ of** *a sudden rush of tourist traffic*
- PHRASES **have a rush on** *We've had a rush on at the office, dealing with the backlog of orders.*

rush *verb*

- ADV. **headlong, madly** *a train rushing headlong down the track* | **immediately** | **suddenly** | **about, around, back, home, in, off, out, over, past** *She was rushing around madly looking for her bag.*
- PREP. **along, from, into, out of, through, to, etc.** *A surge of joy rushed through her body.* ◇ *He was rushed to hospital.*
- PHRASES **come/go rushing** *Two men came rushing into the room.* **rush to sb's/the rescue** *Whenever her little brother was upset, Jane rushed to the rescue.*

Russian *noun*

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

rust *noun*

- VERB + RUST **clean off, get off, remove, scrape off**
- RUST + NOUN **spot, stain | protection** *A zinc coating is applied to the steel for rust protection.*
- PHRASES **covered/flecked/red/spotted with rust** *The old padlock was red with rust.*

rust *verb*

- ADV. **badly | away, through** *The car had been rusting away in his garage for years.*

rustle *noun*

- ADJ. **faint, slight, soft**
- VERB + RUSTLE **hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *With a rustle of wings the bird landed on the window ledge.* | **~ of** *I heard a soft rustle of leaves.*

rustle *verb*

- ADV. **softly** *the sound of the leaves rustling softly*
- PREP. **in** *The wind rustled in the bushes.* **through** *the sound of their feet rustling through the grass*

rut *noun*

- ADJ. **muddy | deep | cart, tractor, wagon**
- PREP. **in a ~** *(figurative) My job bores me—I feel I'm in a rut.* **into a ~** *(figurative) I'd got into a rut, cooking the same things week after week.* **out of a ~** *(figurative) Moving abroad gave her the chance to get out of a rut.*

Ss

sabbath *noun*

- ADJ. **Jewish, Muslim, etc.**
- VERB + SABBATH **keep, observe | break**
- SABBATH + NOUN **day | rest**
- PREP. **on the ~** *It was considered a sin to work or play on the Sabbath.*
- PHRASES **observance of the Sabbath** *The speaker advocated a less austere observance of the Sabbath.*

sabotage *noun*

- ADJ. **deliberate, planned | economic, industrial** *They conducted a campaign of economic sabotage.*
- SABOTAGE + NOUN **attempt | raid**
- PHRASES **an act of sabotage**

sabotage *verb*

- ADV. **deliberately** *They accused him of deliberately sabotaging the peace talks.*
- VERB + SABOTAGE **attempt to, try to** *They had tried to sabotage our plans.*

sack *noun*

1 large bag

- ADJ. **bulging** *bulging sacks of toys* **| hessian, paper, plastic, stuff | flour, mail, potato, refuse**
- VERB + SACK **fill** *They filled the sacks with potatoes.* **| put sth in, tie sb/sth (up) in** *The kittens had been tied up in a sack and thrown in the river.* **| empty | carry (sth in)**
- SACK + VERB **be filled with sth, be full of sth**
- PREP. **in a/the ~ | ~ of** *a sack of coal*

2 **the sack** dismissal from your job

- VERB + SACK **get** *She got the sack after 20 years of service.* **| give sb | be threatened with, face** *Hundreds of postal workers are facing the sack.*

sacred *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | remain | consider sth, deem sth, hold sth, regard sth as** *Certain animals were regarded as sacred.* ◇ *the feeling that all life should be held sacred*
- ADV. **absolutely | almost**
- PREP. **to** *The place was sacred to the Celts.*

sacrifice *noun*

1 giving sth up

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, heavy, real | financial, personal | heroic | supreme, ultimate** *Soldiers who die for their country have made the supreme sacrifice.*
- VERB + SACRIFICE **make**

2 part of a ceremony

- ADJ. **animal, human | religious, ritual | blood | pagan**
- VERB + SACRIFICE **perform | offer (sth as)**
- PREP. **~ to** *Food and wine were offered as sacrifices to the gods.*

sacrifice *verb*

- VERB + SACRIFICE **be obliged to, have to | be prepared to, be willing to** *She was prepared to sacrifice having a family in order to pursue her career.*
- PREP. **for** *soldiers who sacrificed their lives for their country*
- PHRASES **sacrifice sth for the sake of sth** *Comfort has been sacrificed for the sake of improved performance.*

sad *adj.*

1 unhappy

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, grow | make sb** *This music always makes me sad.*
- ADV. **all, desperately, immensely, particularly, profoundly, really, unbearably, very** *I called Mum, sounding all sad and pathetic.* **| almost | a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | strangely**
- PREP. **about** *She was still feeling very sad about her father's death.*

2 causing unhappiness

- VERBS **be, seem | find sth**
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, intensely, particularly, profoundly, really, terribly, unutterably, very** *a deeply sad occasion* **| a bit, a little, quite, rather** *a rather sad story*

sadden *verb*

- ADV. **deeply, greatly** *I was deeply saddened by his death.*

sadness *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, great, real, unutterable**
- QUANT. **hint**
- VERB + SADNESS **be filled with, be full of, feel** *Claudia felt a deep sadness.* **| express, show | hide | bring (sb)** *I had brought nothing but sadness to my family.* **| be tinged with** *Our joy was tinged with sadness.*
- PREP. **with ~** *It was with great sadness that we learned of the death of William Hales.* **| ~ about/at/over** *He expressed his sadness about what had happened.* **~ for** *Kate felt a great sadness for him.*
- PHRASES **an air/aura of sadness** *a lonely place with an aura of sadness* **a feeling/sense of sadness**

safe *noun*

- ADJ. **bank, hotel, office | wall**
- VERB + SAFE **open | close, lock | break into, crack**

safe *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem | become | remain, stay | play (it)** *Does good marketing mean playing safe* (= avoiding risks) *and staying traditional?* **| make sth, render sth** *The army experts made the bomb safe.* **| keep sth** *Keep your money safe by carrying it in an inside pocket.* **| consider sth, declare sth, deem sth** *The water was not considered safe to drink.*
- ADV. **all, extremely, really, very** *Don't worry—he'll be all safe and snug in the barn.* **| absolutely, completely, perfectly, quite, totally** *a completely safe and secure environment for young children* **| not entirely** *The wood is never entirely safe for women on their own.* **| comparatively, fairly, pretty, reasonably, relatively | enough** *You should be safe enough, but don't go too far.* **| environmentally** *She claimed that nuclear power was the most environmentally safe form of energy.*
- PREP. **from** *They were safe from attack.* **with** *Your money will be safe with me.*
- PHRASES **better safe than sorry, safe and sound** *They returned from their adventure safe and sound.*

safeguard *noun*

- ADJ. **adequate, effective, proper, sufficient** *Does the procedure provide adequate safeguards against corrup-*

tion? | **added, additional, extra, further | appropriate, necessary | environmental, nuclear | constitutional, legal, procedural**

- VERB + SAFEGUARD **introduce | provide (sb with) | build in/into sth** *Appropriate safeguards would have to be built into the procedures to avoid abuses.*
- PREP. **~ against** *The credit agreement includes safeguards against overcharging.*

safeguard *verb*

- ADV. **fully, properly | adequately, satisfactorily** *This legislation does not adequately safeguard the rights of consumers.*
- VERB + SAFEGUARD **help (to) | be designed to | take steps to**
- PREP. **against** *We must take steps to safeguard our environment against these threats.* **from** *to safeguard the young plants from frost*

safety *noun*

- ADJ. **extra, greater** *The seat is bolted in place for extra safety.* | **comparative, reasonable, relative** *A blizzard forced the climbers back to the relative safety of their tents.* | **perfect** *Walkways allow visitors to enter the caves in perfect safety.* | **child, passenger, personal, public** *The house has to be rearranged with a view to child safety.* | **fire, food, nuclear, etc. | air, home, industrial, occupational, road, traffic, etc.**
- VERB + SAFETY **ensure, guarantee | improve | fear for** *Police fear for the safety of the missing children.*
- SAFETY + NOUN **controls, improvements, limits, measures, precautions, procedures, provisions | guidelines, laws, legislation, levels, policy, recommendations, regulations, requirements, rules, standards | violation | hazard, risk | check, inspection | inspector, officer, official, watchdog** *The plan was rejected by the government nuclear safety watchdog.* | **record | aspect, considerations, factor, implications, issues, matters | awareness** *The police are conducting a safety awareness programme in local schools.* | **campaign, initiative, training | belt, equipment, features, harness, helmet, rope** *The car has many safety features, including anti-skid braking.* | **catch, device, valve | barrier, net** (*often figurative*) *State benefits provide a safety net for the very poor.* | **glass, pin, razor, seat**
- PREP. **for ~** *The stairs are fitted with handrails on either side for safety.* **for your own ~** *The police gave him protection for his own safety.* **in ~** *The people want to be able to walk the streets at night in safety.* **to ~** *We managed to run to safety before the building collapsed.*
- PHRASES **for safety reasons** *For safety reasons, children should not operate the machine unsupervised.* **health and safety** *The company was fined by the health and safety inspectors.* **on safety grounds** *The playground was closed down on safety grounds.* **a place of safety** *The refugees finally reached a place of safety.* **safety first** *When cycling on the roads, remember: safety first.*

sag *verb*

- ADV. **slightly | wearily | back, forward** *He sagged wearily back in his chair.* ◇ *Helga's body sagged forward.*
- PREP. **against** *She sagged against the door.* **under** *The shelf sagged under the weight of hundreds of volumes.*
- PHRASES **sag in the middle** *a mattress that was beginning to sag in the middle*

saga *noun*

- ADJ. **continuing, long-running, ongoing | extraordinary | sorry, terrible | complicated | family**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *His suicide is the latest chapter in this terrible saga of greed and betrayal.*

sail *noun*

- ADJ. **main | canvas**
- VERB + SAIL **hoist, raise | drop, lower | adjust, trim | fill** *The dinghy gathered speed as the wind filled her sails.* | **reef, shorten | furl**
- SAIL + VERB **billow, flap** *The bay was full of yachts with billowing sails.* | **fill**
- SAIL + NOUN **area, shape, size | canvas**
- PREP. **under ~** *The yacht came in under sail and anchored near us.*
- PHRASES **the days of sail** *The boat is preserved as a monument to the days of sail.* **in/under full sail** *She advanced towards us like a galleon in full sail.* **set sail (for)** *We set sail for France at first light.*

sail *verb*

- ADV. **serenely | single-handed** *to sail single-handed around the world* | **away, back, on, out, past** *The boat sailed serenely on towards the horizon.*
- VERB + SAIL **learn to | teach sb to**
- PREP. **across** *sailing across the English Channel* **down, for** *The ferry sails for Southampton at 5.30.* **from, into** *We sailed the boat out into the middle of the lake.* **on** *We sailed on a large ocean liner.* ◇ *sailing on the sea* **out of** *sailing out of the harbour* **to** *sailing from Dover to Calais.* **up**

sailing *noun*

1 sport

- ADJ. **catamaran, dinghy, etc.**
- VERB + SAILING **go**
- SAILING + NOUN **club, school | holiday, trip | boat, craft, dinghy, ship, vessel**

2 journey made by boat

- ADJ. **daily, overnight, regular, weekday, weekend | return**
- VERB + SAILING **delay | suspend** *Sailings were suspended in the high winds.*
- PREP. **~ between** *The company operates regular sailings between Hull and Zeebrugge.* **~ from, ~ to** *the 4 p.m. sailing from Dover to Calais*

sailor *noun*

- ADJ. **experienced, good, keen | inexperienced, novice | drowned, shipwrecked**

saint *noun*

- ADJ. **blessed, holy | patron** *St Nicholas is the patron saint of children.*
- VERB + SAINT **canonize**

salad *noun*

- ADJ. **fresh | crisp, crunchy | limp | green, mixed, potato, rice, tomato, etc. | fruit | chicken, ham, etc. | side** *Is the steak served with a side salad?*
- VERB + SALAD **make, prepare | toss** *She tossed and dressed the salad.* | **dress | serve sth with | come with**
- SALAD + NOUN **greens, leaves | cream, dressing | garnish** *The sandwiches came with a rather limp salad garnish.* | **bowl | bar**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

salary *noun*

- ADJ. **competitive, generous, good, handsome, high, large, top** *Top salaries are liable for a higher rate of tax.* | **low, small | reasonable | average | basic | pensionable | gross | net | starting | current | final** *Your pension will be based on a proportion of your final salary.* | **annual, monthly | tax-free**

- VERB + SALARY **pay (sb) | earn, receive | increase | cut, decrease, reduce**
- SALARY + NOUN **package** *The position is rewarded with a generous salary package.* | **award, increase, rise** *The top salary awards are completely out of line with inflation.* | **cut | level | review | band, grade, range** *What salary band will I be on after two years in the company?* | **scale, structure | bill, costs**
- PREP. **on a ~** *It's impossible to bring up a family on such a low salary.*
- PHRASES **an increase/a rise in salary, a cut/drop in salary** *Workers are being asked to take a cut in salary.*

sale *noun*

1 act of selling

- ADJ. **quick** *The price is low to ensure a quick sale.* | **major, massive** *a major sale of paintings* ◇ *the massive sale of foreign currency reserves* | **illegal** *the illegal sale of alcohol* | **auction, bring-and-buy, car-boot, garage, jumble, tabletop | house, share, etc.**
- VERB + SALE **ban, block, halt, prevent, prohibit, stop | close, make** *Closing the sale means that you ask the buyer to say yes or no.* | **hold** *A sale of paintings will be held at the Town Hall on Saturday.*
- SALE + VERB **make sth, realize sth, total sth** *The jumble sale made £358 for cancer research.* ◇ *The sale of paintings totalled £250 000.* | **go ahead/through, proceed | fall through** *The sale of the house fell through when the buyer pulled out.*
- SALE + NOUN **agreement, contract | price | proceeds** *to maximize the sale proceeds*
- PREP. **for ~** *I see they've put their house up for sale.* **on ~** *The new stamps are now on sale at main post offices.*
- PHRASES **conditions of sale** *The conditions of sale were posted up around the auction room.* **a contract of sale, on open sale** *Drugs were on open sale in the club.* **the proceeds/profits from a sale** *All proceeds from the sale of the book will go to charity.* **(on) sale or return** *The novels are delivered to newspaper shops and other outlets on a sale or return basis.*

2 sales amount sold

- ADJ. **good, healthy, high, huge, massive, strong | increased | poor | annual, quarterly, etc. | direct, retail, telephone** *Direct sales, by mail order, were up by 15%.* | **domestic | export, foreign, international, overseas | global, overall, total, world, worldwide | gross, net | unit, volume | high-street** *High-street sales have fallen for the fifth consecutive month.* | **arms, car, house, land, ticket, etc.**
- QUANT. **level, value, volume** *The high volume of sales makes the low pricing policy profitable.*
- VERB + SALES **achieve, have | generate** *The advertising campaign generated massive sales.* | **boost**
- SALES + VERB **account for sth** *North American sales account for 40% of the worldwide market.* **amount to sth, reach sth** *sales amounting to over £4 million* ◇ *Sales failed to reach 10 000 units.* | | **exceed sth | be/go up, grow, improve, increase, rise, rocket, skyrocket, soar** *Sales of ice cream are up because of the hot weather.* | **be/go down, decline, drop, fall, slump**
- SALES + NOUN **force, people, personnel, staff, team | department, office | director, manager, rep/representative | campaign, drive, effort, promotion | estimates, figures, levels, performance, revenue, targets, volume | growth | slump** *The car manufacturer was forced to shed jobs following a dramatic sales slump.* | **conference | presentation | report | tax | contract | patter, pitch, talk** *an aggressive sales pitch from the company rep*
- PHRASES **a decline/drop/fall/slowdown/slump in sales, a growth/an increase/a jump/a rise/a surge/an upturn in sales, sales and marketing**

⇨ Note at PER CENT (for more verbs)
⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

3 period of reduced prices

- ADJ. **annual, summer, winter, etc. | clothing, furniture, etc. | clearance, closing-down**
- PREP. **at/in the ~s** *I bought it at the winter sales.*

salesman, salesperson *noun*

- ADJ. **experienced | door-to-door, telephone, travelling | car, computer, double-glazing, insurance, used car, vacuum cleaner**
- SALESMAN, SALESPERSON + VERB **sell sth** *a travelling salesman selling electrical goods*

⇨ Note at JOB

saliva *noun*

- QUANT. **dribble** *He wiped a dribble of saliva from his chin.*
- VERB + SALIVA **produce | swallow**
- SALIVA + VERB **dribble, drip, drool | flow** *The smell of food causes the saliva to flow.*

salmon *noun*

- ADJ. **fresh | wild | farmed | smoked | tinned | pink, red**
- VERB + SALMON **eat, have | bake, cook, grill, poach, roast | fish for | catch, land | farm**
- SALMON + NOUN **fillet, steak | mousse, paste | farm, farming, fishing | river | pink** *a salmon-pink shirt*
- PHRASES **a fillet of salmon**

salon *noun*

- ADJ. **beauty, grooming, hair, hairdressing | leading, professional, top | unisex**
- VERB + SALON **go to**

salt *noun*

- ADJ. **soluble | potassium, sodium, etc. | mineral, rock, sea | common, cooking, table | celery, garlic**
- QUANT. **grain | pinch**
- VERB + SALT **add, put in/on, season sth with, sprinkle (sth with)** *Don't put so much salt on your chips!*
- SALT + NOUN **crystal | solution | content** *foods with a high salt content* | **intake** *He wants to reduce his salt intake.* | **cellar, pot, shaker | air, spray, water | marsh | mine**
- PHRASES **high/low in salt, salt and pepper** *Add salt and pepper to taste* (= in the quantity preferred).

⇨ Special page at FOOD

salute *noun*

1 military gesture

- ADJ. **military, naval | smart | mock**
- VERB + SALUTE **give (sb)** *The sentry gave a smart salute and waved us on.* | **acknowledge, return | take** *The Queen took the salute as the guardsmen marched past.*

2 action of respect or welcome

- ADJ. **final, last | 21-gun, etc. | special | triumphant, victory**
- PREP. **in ~** *The guests raised their glasses in salute.* | **~ from** *The retiring editor received a special salute from the local newspaper.* **~ to** *His first words were a salute to the people of South Africa.*

salute *verb*

- ADV. **smartly** *The captain stood to attention and saluted smartly.*
- PREP. **with** *He saluted Pippa with a graceful bend of his head.*

salvation *noun*

- ADJ. **individual, personal | eternal**
- VERB + SALVATION **bring | seek | attain, find | work out** *I can't solve her problems for her—she'll have to work out her own salvation.*
- PREP. **~ from** *salvation from sin* **~ through** *The medieval Church believed in salvation through faith and works.*

same *adj., pron.* the same

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste** *They both taste just the same to me.* **| remain, stay**
- ADV. **exactly, just, precisely** *I had exactly the same experience.* **| not altogether, not quite** *That's not quite the same thing, is it?* **| almost, basically, broadly, essentially, more or less, nearly, practically, pretty much, roughly, substantially, virtually** *Your new job will be essentially the same as your old one.*
- PREP. **as** *Your dress is nearly the same as mine.*
- PHRASES **one and the same** *We can do the two things at one and the same time.*

sample *noun*

1 small quantity of sth

- ADJ. **blood, DNA, faecal, RNA, rock, serum, tissue, urine, etc. | biopsy, clinical**
- VERB + SAMPLE **collect, take | provide** *All the athletes had to provide a urine sample.* **| analyse, study, test**
- SAMPLE + NOUN **book** *We looked at sample books to choose the furniture fabric.* **| bottle**
- PREP. **~ of** *samples of tissue*

2 people in a survey

- ADJ. **small | large, wide | population | representative | random**
- VERB + SAMPLE **draw** *a sample drawn from men aged 35–40*
- SAMPLE + VERB **comprise sth, consist of sth** *Our sample comprised 250 catering workers.*
- SAMPLE + NOUN **size** *A larger sample size yields more reliable data.* **| survey | group**
- PREP. **~ of** *a wide sample of people*

sample *verb*

- ADV. **randomly**
- PREP. **from** *The survey was done using a group of 100 children randomly sampled from the school population.*

sanction *noun*

1 official permission

- ADJ. **official | divine, religious**
- VERB + SANCTION **give sb/sth** *The conference gave its official sanction to the change of policy.*
- PREP. **with/without sb/sth's ~** *No decision can be taken without the sanction of the complete committee.*

2 punishment

- ADJ. **heavy, severe, strict | final, ultimate | effective | limited | available** *The school will use all available sanctions to maintain discipline.* **| civil, criminal, disciplinary | legal, penal, social**
- VERB + SANCTION **impose | use**
- PREP. **~ against** *There were strict sanctions against absenteeism.* **~ for** *Employers imposed heavy sanctions for union activity.*

3 (usually **sanctions**) against a country

- ADJ. **punitive | international, UN | economic, financial, military, trade**
- VERB + SANCTION **impose | lift | break** *Some companies have broken sanctions by supplying arms to the warring states.* **| call for**
- SANCTIONS + NOUN **order | busting** *Several firms were under investigation for sanctions busting.*
- PREP. **~ against** *The UN called for sanctions against the invading country.*
- PHRASES **the imposition of sanctions, the lifting of sanctions, a threat of sanctions**

sanction *verb*

- ADV. **officially | legally, socially** *Slavery was once socially sanctioned.* **| tacitly** *He had tacitly sanctioned repression against the opposition parties.*
- VERB + SANCTION **refuse to**

sanctuary *noun*

- VERB + SANCTUARY **seek** *Thousands of refugees have sought sanctuary in neighbouring countries.* **| take** *In former times, criminals could take sanctuary inside a church.* **| give sb, offer (sb)**
- PREP. **~ from** *It had been built as a sanctuary from World War II bombs.*

sand *noun*

- ADJ. **fine** *a beach of fine golden sand* **| coarse | soft | hard | damp, wet | dry | burning, hot | golden, silver, white, yellow | desert** *the burning desert sands*
- QUANT. **grain | patch, strip**
- SAND + NOUN **beach, dune | pit** (also **sandpit**) **| castle** (also **sandcastle**)
- PREP. **in the ~** *The children played happily in the sand.* **on the ~** *We found her asleep on the sand.*

sandal *noun*

- ADJ. **high-heeled | flat, low-heeled | open, open-toed | strappy**
- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + SANDAL **kick off**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

sandwich *noun*

- ADJ. **cheese, ham, etc. | toasted | open | club**
- QUANT. **round**
- VERB + SANDWICH **make** *He made two rounds of tuna sandwiches.* **| bite into, eat, have, munch, take a bite of**
- SANDWICH + NOUN **filling | bag, box | bar**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *What would you like in your sandwich?*

sane *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | remain, stay | keep sb** *Having that little bit of time to myself is what keeps me sane.*
- ADV. **eminently, very | completely, perfectly, quite, utterly** *She seems perfectly sane to me.* **| not entirely**

sanitation *noun*

- ADJ. **inadequate, poor, primitive | better, improved, proper | public**
- SANITATION + NOUN **system | project**
- PHRASES **lack of sanitation** *the direct link between disease and lack of adequate sanitation*

sanity *noun*

- VERB + SANITY **doubt, question** *There were moments when he doubted his own sanity.* **| fear for** *I fear for her sanity if this continues much longer.* **| keep, maintain, preserve, retain** *Getting away at weekends is the only way I can retain my sanity.* **| lose | recover, regain | threaten** *The pace of city life threatens our sanity.*
- SANITY + VERB **return** *Stock market trading slowly settled down as sanity returned.*
- PREP. **for your ~** *Such a move is essential for the sanity of all concerned.*

sap *noun*

• VERB + SAP **extract** *Maple syrup is made from sap extracted from the sugar maple tree.*

• SAP + VERB **rise** *It was spring, and the sap was rising.*

sarcasm *noun*

• ADJ. **bitter, heavy, withering | gentle, mild | deliberate | thinly-veiled, veiled**

• QUANT. **edge, hint, note, touch, trace** *There was an edge of sarcasm in her voice.* ◇ *He made the remark without a hint of sarcasm.*

• VERB + SARCASM **be full of, be heavy with, drip** (used about sb's voice) *His voice dripped sarcasm.*

• PREP. **with ~** *'Your skills amaze me,' she said, with heavy sarcasm.* | **~ in** *I detected a touch of sarcasm in his remarks.*

sarcastic *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become, get**

• ADV. **extremely, very | faintly, lightly, mildly, slightly, somewhat** *His tone was lightly sarcastic.*

• PREP. **about** *He was very sarcastic about my attempts at telling jokes.*

satellite *noun*

• ADJ. **artificial | commercial, communications, meteorological, reconnaissance, research, spy, weather**

• VERB + SATELLITE **launch, put into orbit, put up, send up**

• SATELLITE + VERB **be in orbit, orbit sth** *About 100 Russian satellites are orbiting the earth.* | **pass over sth** *The satellite passes over Britain every afternoon.* | **monitor sth, track sth** *a new satellite that monitors changes in the environment* | **broadcast sth, relay sth, transmit sth** *The satellite will transmit the information back to earth.*

• SATELLITE + NOUN **photograph, picture | data | link** *The pictures are broadcast through a live satellite link with Tokyo.* | **communications, system, technology | dish, receiver, television/TV | broadcasters, channel, company, station**

• PREP. **from a/the ~** *images from satellites* **via ~** *The BBC broadcast the game via satellite.*

satire *noun*

• ADJ. **biting, brilliant | political, social** *the recent boom in political satire*

• PREP. **~ on** *The film is a brilliant satire on Hollywood.*

satisfaction *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, deep, great, immense, tremendous | evident, obvious | quiet | personal | job | sexual**

• QUANT. **level** *My current level of job satisfaction is pretty low.*

• VERB + SATISFACTION **derive, feel, find, gain, get, have, take** *He derived great satisfaction from knowing that his son was happy.* ◇ *Although we didn't win, we were able to take some satisfaction from our performance.* | **bring (sb), give sb, provide (sb with) | express**

• PREP. **in ~** *She watched in satisfaction as he opened the present.* **to your ~** *The matter was resolved to our general satisfaction.* **with ~** *He nodded with evident satisfaction.* | **~ at** *her deep satisfaction at seeing justice done* **~ in** *I find satisfaction in helping people.* **~ of** *I had the satisfaction of proving him wrong.* **~ with** *Both parties expressed their complete satisfaction with the decision.*

• PHRASES **cause/grounds for satisfaction** *Although the team lost, their performance gave cause for satisfaction.* **a feeling/sense of satisfaction, a source of satisfaction** *The children were a major source of satisfaction.*

satisfactory *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, look, prove, seem, sound | consider sth, find sth, regard sth as**

• ADV. **eminently, highly, most, very** *It was all most satisfactory.* | **completely, fully, perfectly, quite | far from, less than, not altogether, not at all, not entirely, not totally, not wholly** *The results were not entirely satisfactory.* | **broadly, fairly, generally, more or less, reasonably | apparently | mutually** *The arrangement has proved mutually satisfactory.*

• PREP. **to** *We hope this proposal is satisfactory to you.*

satisfied *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem | declare/profess/pronounce yourself** *He declared himself satisfied with the results.*

• ADV. **extremely, more than, very, well** *feeling well satisfied with her day's work* | **absolutely, completely, fully, perfectly, quite, totally | far from, not entirely, not wholly | fairly, generally, reasonably | enough, sufficiently** *Her parents seemed satisfied enough with her progress.* | **apparently**

• PREP. **with** *She seemed satisfied with the arrangements.*

satisfy *verb*

• VERB + SATISFY **must, should** *The education system must satisfy the needs of all children.* | **be able/unable to, can/could** *The owners were unable to satisfy all the demands of the workers.* ◇ *Nothing could satisfy his desire for power.* | **seem to** *His answer seemed to satisfy her.* | **be enough to, be sufficient to** *Her description of events was not enough to satisfy the court.* | **fail to** *The meal failed to satisfy his hunger.*

satisfying *adj.*

• VERBS **be | find sth**

• ADV. **deeply, eminently, extremely, highly, immensely, really, richly, very** *There's something deeply satisfying about eating vegetables that you have grown yourself.* | **completely, thoroughly, wholly | quite | personally** *the need for a personally satisfying set of beliefs* | **mutually** *a mutually satisfying relationship* | **aesthetically, logically, musically**

saturation *noun*

• ADJ. **market**

• VERB + SATURATION **approach, be close to** *The company's sales are now close to saturation in many western countries.* | **reach**

• SATURATION + NOUN **level, point** *Demand for the product has reached saturation point.* | **coverage** *television's saturation coverage of the World Cup* | **bombing**

Saturday *noun*

⇨ Note at DAY

sauce *noun*

• ADJ. **thick, thin | creamy | piquant, rich, spicy, tangy | delicate | smooth | lumpy | barbecue, chilli, soy, sweet and sour, Tabasco, tomato, white** (= made from butter, flour and milk), **etc.** *fish in white sauce* | **pasta**

• VERB + SAUCE **make | thicken | reduce | pour on/over sth, spoon on/over sth** *Pour the sauce over the pasta.*

• SAUCE + VERB **thicken**

• SAUCE + NOUN **bottle**

• PREP. **in ~** *chicken in white wine sauce* **with ~** *We had lamb with mint sauce.*

⇨ Special page at FOOD

saucepan (*also* pan) *noun*

- ADJ. **non-stick | heavy, heavy-based**
- VERB + SAUCEPAN **cover** *Cover the saucepan and remove from the heat.* | **remove from the heat | add sth to, put sth in/into, return sth to | remove sth from**
- SAUCEPAN + VERB **contain sth** *a pan containing lots of boiling salted water*
- PREP. **in/into a/the ~** *Heat one tablespoon of oil in a saucepan.* ◇ *Pour the pasta into a pan of boiling water.*

saunter *verb*

- ADV. **casually, slowly | along, back, in, out, over** *She sauntered in fifteen minutes late.*
- PREP. **along, into, out of, through, etc.** *He sauntered casually through the door.*
- PHRASES **come sauntering** *He came sauntering over to meet us.*

sausage *noun*

- ADJ. **beef, garlic, liver, pork, etc. | vegetarian | spicy**
- QUANT. **slice**
- VERB + SAUSAGE **eat, have | cook, fry, grill**
- SAUSAGE + VERB **sizzle**
- SAUSAGE + NOUN **meat, skin | roll**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

savage *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become**
- ADV. **downright, really, very | increasingly** *The war became increasingly savage.* | **rather** *a rather savage dog*

save *noun*

- ADJ. **brilliant, excellent, fine, good, great, outstanding, spectacular, superb | crucial, important, vital | diving | one-handed**
- VERB + SAVE **bring off, make, pull off** *Casillas made some spectacular saves.*
- PREP. **~ by/from** *some great saves from both keepers*

save *verb*

1 keep sb/sth safe
- VERB + SAVE **be able/unable to, can/could, may, might (just)** *It's a trick that might just save us from total disaster.* | **help (to)** *She helped save my career.* | **battle to, try to** *Doctors battled to save the little boy's life.* | **manage to** *We managed to save the animals from being put down.*
- PREP. **from** *They saved the paintings from destruction.*
- PHRASES **an attempt/effort to save sth** *a last, desperate attempt to save his marriage* **a battle/bid/campaign to save sth**

2 not spend money
- ADV. **up**
- VERB + SAVE **try to | manage to**
- PREP. **for** *I'm trying to save up for my holiday.*

3 in football/hockey
- ADV. **brilliantly**
- PREP. **from** *The goalie saved brilliantly from Johnson's long-range shot.*

saver *noun*

- ADJ. **existing** *Only children whose parents are existing savers may open an account.* | **small** *encouraging small savers to invest in UK companies*
- PREP. **~ with** *savers with the United Bank*

saving *noun*

1 amount not used or wasted
- ADJ. **big, considerable, great, major, significant, substantial | estimated, expected, possible, potential** *The potential savings are enormous.* | **overall, total | actual, net | cost, financial | energy, fuel** *the advantages of energy saving*
- VERB + SAVING **add up to, give (sb), mean, represent, result in** *For a family of four this can mean a saving of around £500.* | **offer (sb)** *This design offers considerable savings in fuel efficiency.* | **achieve, make** *We need to see where financial savings can be made.* | **pass on** *We will pass on this saving to our customers.*
- SAVING + VERB **come from sth, result from sth** *The major savings come from reduced labour costs.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *This was done, with a saving of 40% in staff costs.* | **~ for** *a saving for club members* **~ from** *savings from the use of the new technology* **~ in** *a significant saving in energy costs* **~ on** *You can have all the benefits of membership while making a big saving on price.* **~ to** *This represents a saving to British business of about £175 million a year.*

2 **savings** money saved in a bank, etc.
- ADJ. **small | long-term | life | personal, private**
- VERB + SAVINGS **have** *I haven't got any savings.* | **invest | deposit, put** *My grandfather refused to put his savings in the bank.* | **take out, withdraw | break into, dip into | tie up** *You get higher interest if you agree to tie up your savings for a long period.* | **build up** *I was determined to build up some savings.* | **spend, use (up) | live on** *She lost her job and had to live on her savings.* | **lose** *The couple lost their entire life savings on the venture.*
- SAVINGS + VERB **grow**
- SAVINGS + NOUN **account, bank | certificate | plan, scheme**
- PHRASES **access to your savings** *The card gives you instant access to your savings.*

saviour *noun*

- ADJ. **possible, potential**
- VERB + SAVIOUR **hail sb as, see sb/sth as, treat sb as** *The people clearly saw her as their saviour.* | **be acclaimed as, emerge as** *He emerged as the potential saviour of the club.*

say *verb*

- ADV. **aloud, out loud | loudly | gently, quietly, softly | gruffly, huskily, thickly | at once | at last, at length, finally | again, repeatedly | simply** *'I am home,' he said simply.* | **hastily, hurriedly, promptly, quickly | slowly | steadily | abruptly, suddenly | briskly, curtly, shortly, tersely | angrily, bitterly, crossly, fiercely, furiously, sharply** *'I don't know,' she said crossly.* | **bluntly, flatly | firmly | harshly, sternly | brightly, cheerfully, happily | miserably, sadly | gravely, grimly, seriously, solemnly | airily, casually, easily, lightly, smoothly** *'There's nothing wrong with him,' she said airily.* | **stiffly, tightly | proudly | carefully, thoughtfully | conversationally | calmly, evenly, mildly | patiently | impatiently | ungraciously | politely | soothingly | apologetically | awkwardly, lamely | drily, tartly | coldly, coolly, icily | breathlessly | absently, vaguely | honestly, truthfully** *Can you honestly say you're sorry?*
- VERB + SAY **be about to, be going to** *I've forgotten what I was going to say.* | **hasten to | long to, want to** *I want to say how much we have all enjoyed this evening.* | **hate to** *I hate to say it, but I think Stephen may be right.* | **dare (to)** *I dared not say a word about it to anyone.* | **suffice (it) to** *Suffice it to say, I refused to get involved.* | **be fair to** *It is fair to say a considerable amount of effort went into the project.* | **be untrue to | have nothing to, have something to** *Be quiet, I have something to say.* | **hear sb, overhear sb** *I heard him say they were leaving tomorrow.*
- PREP. **about** *Do you have anything to say about this?* **to** *That's not what he said to me.*
- PHRASES **be quoted as saying sth** *The minister was*

quoted as saying that the government would do whatever was necessary to restore order. **a thing to say** *That was a very cruel thing to say.*

saying *noun*

- ADJ. **well-known | old, traditional | favourite** *It was one of my mother's favourite sayings.*
- PREP. **~about** *traditional sayings about the weather*
- PHRASES **as the saying goes** *'Practice makes perfect,' as the old saying goes.*

scaffolding *noun*

- QUANT. **piece**
- VERB + SCAFFOLDING **erect, put up | remove, take down | climb (up)**
- SCAFFOLDING + NOUN **pole**
- PREP. **on the ~** *There are several builders working on the scaffolding.*

scale *noun*

1 size/extent

- ADJ. **full** *It was several days before the full scale of the accident became clear.* | **big, considerable, grand, greater, huge, large, massive, monumental, vast | modest, small | sheer** *It is difficult to comprehend the sheer scale of the suffering caused by the war.* | **unprecedented** *a misuse of presidential power on an unprecedented scale* | **ambitious, lavish** *Do they always entertain on such a lavish scale?* | **global, international, national, regional, world | commercial** *The dolls are now produced on a commercial scale.* | **human** *The city would operate on a more human scale if cars were banned from the centre.*
- VERB + SCALE **increase | reduce**
- PREP. **in ~** *The paintings are small in scale.* **on a ~** *pollution on a massive scale*
- PHRASES **an economy of scale** *Economies of scale enable the larger companies to lower their prices.* **the scale of the problem**

2 range of values

- ADJ. **fixed | sliding** *Benefits are paid on a sliding scale according to family income.* | **rating | time** *Can you give me any sort of time scale for the completion of the building work?* | **evolutionary | social | pay, salary, wage** *The company has a five-point pay scale.* | **Beaufort, Richter** *The earthquake measured 6.4 on the Richter scale.*
- VERB + SCALE **go/move down/up, rise up** *He has risen up the social scale from rather humble beginnings.*
- SCALE + VERB **go/range from ... to ...** *a scale ranging from 'utterly miserable' to 'deliriously happy'*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *Where do birds come on the evolutionary scale?* | **~of ... to ...** *On a scale of 1 to 10, he scores 7.*
- PHRASES **the bottom/end/top of the scale** *After 10 years, she had worked her way to the top of the pay scale.*

3 relation between actual size and size of a model, etc.

- VERB + SCALE **draw sth to | have**
- SCALE + NOUN **drawing, model** *He's made a scale model of the Eiffel Tower.*
- PREP. **to ~** *The plan of the building is not drawn to scale.* | **~of ... to ...** *The map has a scale of one centimetre to the kilometre.* ◇ *a scale of 1: 25 000*

4 in music

- ADJ. **major, minor | chromatic, diatonic, diminished, pentatonic, whole-tone**
- VERB + SCALE **play, sing | practise** *We could hear her practising her scales.*
- PREP. **~of** *the scale of C major*

5 on a fish, etc.

- ADJ. **overlapping | fine, thin | armoured | fish**
- VERB + SCALE **be covered in/with**

scales *noun*

- ADJ. **weighing | bathroom, kitchen**
- QUANT. **pair, set** *a pair of kitchen scales*
- VERB + SCALES **put sth on/onto, weigh sth on | get on/onto, stand on, step on/onto | tip** *At birth, she tipped the scales at a healthy 7lb 9oz.*
- PREP. **on the ~** *I had a shock when I stood on the scales.*

scalp *noun*

- ADJ. **itchy | flaky**
- VERB + SCALP **massage | scratch**
- SCALP + VERB **itch | crawl, prickle** *Her scalp crawled with tension.* | **gleam** *His pink scalp gleamed through his sparse hair.*
- SCALP + NOUN **condition, problem** *treatment for hair and scalp problems* | **massage, treatment**

scan *noun*

1 quick look

- ADJ. **quick, rapid** *A quick scan of the local paper revealed nothing.*
- PREP. **~of**

2 examination by a machine

- ADJ. **body, bone, brain | ultrasound | routine**
- VERB + SCAN **have | give sb | take**
- SCAN + VERB **reveal sth** *A routine scan revealed abnormalities in the foetus.*
- PREP. **~of** *The doctors took a scan of his thigh bone.*

scan *verb*

- ADV. **carefully | quickly, rapidly | anxiously, nervously** *She scanned the street nervously, looking for the two men.* | **eagerly**
- PREP. **for** *I scanned the paper for news.*

scandal *noun*

- ADJ. **big, great, major | fresh | national, public | bribery, corruption, drug/drugs, financial, political, sex/sexual**
- QUANT. **series** *The government was rocked by a series of scandals.*
- VERB + SCANDAL **cause, create | expose, reveal, uncover | be embroiled in, be implicated in, be involved in, be mixed up in** *There have been calls for the resignation of the minister involved in the sex scandal.* | **be rocked by | attract** *Their relationship attracted a lot of scandal.* | **spread, stir up** *She's always trying to stir up scandal.* | **cover up, hush up**
- SCANDAL + VERB **break, develop, erupt** *The scandal broke on the front pages of all the papers the next day.* | **involve sb/sth | surround sb/sth** *financial scandals surrounding the government*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He was imprisoned for his part in the bribery scandal.* | **~over** *the scandals over corruption in public life*
- PHRASES **the centre of a scandal** *The apartment was paid for by the bank at the centre of the scandal.* **a hint/suggestion of scandal** *Until the story was published there had been no hint of scandal.*

scapegoat *noun*

- ADJ. **convenient, easy**
- VERB + SCAPEGOAT **make sb, use sb as** *He has been made a scapegoat for the company's failures.*
- PREP. **~for** *They are being made the scapegoats for all the ills of society.*

scar *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, large, long | puckered | disfiguring,**

ugly, unsightly | permanent | emotional, mental, psychological *Her mental scars will take time to heal.*
- VERB + SCAR **leave | bear** (*often figurative*) *The countryside still bears the scars of the recent hurricane.*
- SCAR + VERB **form | heal**
- SCAR + NOUN **tissue**
- PREP. **~on** *The cut left a permanent scar on his arm.*

scar *verb* (often **be scarred**)

- ADV. **badly, deeply, hideously** *His face was badly scarred by the fire.* | **emotionally, mentally, physically, psychologically** *She was both physically and mentally scarred by the accident.* | **permanently**
- PREP. **with** (*figurative*) *Their minds were scarred with bitterness.*
- PHRASES **be scarred for life, leave sb scarred** *The accident left him permanently scarred.*

scarce *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become, grow** *Medical supplies were growing scarce.* | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, particularly, very | increasingly** *Skilled workers were becoming increasingly scarce.* | **pretty, rather, relatively, somewhat** *Money was somewhat scarce after the war.*

scarcity *noun*

- ADJ. **great | relative**
- SCARCITY + NOUN **value** *Old properties in the town have acquired a scarcity value.*
- PREP. **~ of** *There is a great scarcity of food in the drought-stricken areas.*
- PHRASES **in times/years of scarcity** *In times of scarcity, lions will travel great distances in search of food.*

scare *noun*

- ADJ. **major, terrible** *a major health scare* | **minor | bomb | food, health | Aids, BSE, etc.**
- VERB + SCARE **cause | give sb** *It wasn't a serious heart attack, but it gave him a terrible scare.* | **get, have**
- SCARE + NOUN **story, tactics** *The government used scare tactics to get parents to have their children vaccinated against the disease.*
- PREP. **~about/over** *the scare over British beef*
- PHRASES **a bit of a/quite a scare** *I got a bit of a scare when the police rang.*

scare *verb*

- ADV. **really | easily** *He doesn't scare easily.*
- VERB + SCARE **try to**
- PREP. **into** *They're just trying to scare us into letting out the secret.* **with** *You don't scare me with your threats!*
- PHRASES **scare sb silly/stiff/to death** (*informal*) *The very thought of flying scares me stiff.* **scare the hell/life/living daylights out of sb** (*informal*) *You scared the life out of me, hiding like that!* **scare the pants off sb** (*informal*)

scared *adj.*

- VERBS **be, be running** (*figurative*), **feel, look, seem, sound** *They had their opponent running scared.* | **get**
- ADV. **dead, downright, extremely, really, shit** (*taboo*), **very | a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather | just, plain** *He wasn't ill, Sophie decided. He was just plain scared.*
- PREP. **about** *It's only a little injection. It's nothing to be scared about.* **at** *feeling a little scared at the thought of the operation* **of** *I'm really scared of heights.*
- PHRASES **scared out of your wits, scared stiff** (*informal*), **scared to death** (*informal*)

scarf *noun*

- ADJ. **long | chiffon, silk, woollen | college, football**
- VERB + SCARF **wind around sth, wrap around sth** *He wrapped his scarf around his neck.* | **knot, tie** *She had a scarf tied over her head.* | **unwind**
- SCARF + VERB **cover sth** *Her hair was covered by a silk scarf.*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

scarlet *adj.*

1 bright red in colour
- ADJ. **bright, brilliant, flaming, vivid**

⇨ Special page at COLOUR

2 red in the face
- VERBS **be | become, blush, flush, go, turn**
- ADV. **absolutely** *He had gone absolutely scarlet with embarrassment.*
- ADJ. **bright** *She flushed bright scarlet.*
- PREP. **with**

scattered *adj.*

- VERBS **be, lie**
- ADV. **liberally** *Large vases of flowers were liberally scattered about the room.* | **randomly | thinly | widely** *living in widely scattered communities* | **geographically | everywhere**
- PREP. **about/around, across, among, on, over** *Broken glass lay scattered over the floor.* **throughout, with** *The whole area was scattered with debris.*

scenario *noun*

- ADJ. **future, likely, possible** *The more likely scenario is that the president will resign and an election will be held.* | **unlikely | optimistic | doomsday, nightmare, pessimistic, worst, worst-case | dramatic | alternative**
- VERB + SCENARIO **consider, construct, imagine | describe, paint** *the scenario painted by some sections of the Western press* | **enact, play out** *He enjoyed playing out the various scenarios in his own mind.*
- SCENARIO + VERB **unfold**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *In a worst-case scenario, the disease will reach epidemic proportions.* **under a/the ~** *Under any of these scenarios, the company will run into debt.*

scene *noun*

1 place where sth happened
- ADJ. **accident, crash, murder** *footprints found near the murder scene*
- VERB + SCENE **attend, be on** *PC Michael Potter attended the scene.* | **arrive at/on, reach** *An ambulance soon arrived at the scene of the accident.* | **leave | be called to** *The police were called to the scene.* | **survey** *He surveyed the scene with horror.*
- PREP. **at the ~** *Police say the man died at the scene.* **on the ~** *Photographers were on the scene in seconds.* | **~ of** *The criminal often revisits the scene of the crime.*

2 what you see around you
- ADJ. **beautiful, charming, idyllic, peaceful, picturesque | appalling, distressing, horrific | touching | bizarre, extraordinary, strange** *She opened the door on an extraordinary scene of disorder.* | **familiar | domestic** *a touching domestic scene* | **ever-changing** *I stared out of the window of the train on the ever-changing scene.* | **city, country, rural, street**
- VERB + SCENE **watch, witness**
- SCENE + VERB **occur, take place, unfold** *We sat in horror watching the scenes of violence unfold before us.* | **be reminiscent of sth** *Paramedics tended the wounded in scenes reminiscent of wartime.*
- PREP. **amid/amidst ~s of** *The star arrived amidst scenes of excitement.* **in a/the ~** | **~ from** *scenes from Greek*

mythology ~ **of** *He painted scenes of country life.* ◇ *The battlefield was a scene of utter carnage.*

• PHRASES **a change of scene** *You're exhausted. What you need is a complete change of scene.*

3 one part of book, play, etc.

• ADJ. **opening | climactic, final, last | dramatic, funny, steamy, touching, tragic** *The film has several steamy bedroom scenes.* | **action, battle, bedroom, crowd, death, fight, love, nude, sex**

• VERB + SCENE **act, play** *She plays the love scenes brilliantly.* | **rehearse, run through** *to run through the final scene again* | **film, shoot | set** *The scene is set in the first paragraph with an account of Sally's childhood.* | **change | steal** *The little girl stole the scene from all the big stars.*

• SCENE + VERB **take place | shift** *Then the scene shifts to the kitchen.*

• SCENE + NOUN **change**

• PREP. **in a/the** ~ *He appears in the opening scene.* | ~ **between** *There is a dramatic fight scene between the two brothers.*

• PHRASES **behind the scenes** (= behind the stage), **a change of scene**

4 public display of anger, etc.

• ADJ. **big | little | angry, ugly, unpleasant, terrible | emotional, violent**

• VERB + SCENE **cause, create, make** *Quiet, now! Don't make a scene!* | **have**

• PREP. ~ **between** *There have been a couple of ugly scenes between him and the manager.* ~ **with** *She had some terrible scenes with her father.*

5 area of activity

• ADJ. **burgeoning, flourishing, lively | contemporary | international, local, world | art, club, comedy, drug/drugs, economic, education/educational, fashion, gay, literary, music/musical, political, social, sporting, etc.** *He is heavily involved in the local art scene.*

• VERB + SCENE **be involved in, be part of | appear on, arrive on, come on/onto** *Owen arrived on the international scene in the 1998 World Cup.* | **vanish from** *Many of the stars of the nineties have completely vanished from the music scene.* | **dominate**

• PREP. **on/onto the** ~ *the eruption of Cuban music onto the world scene*

• PHRASES **a newcomer to the scene** *The film's director is a newcomer to the Hollywood scene.* **not your scene** (*informal*) *Hillwalking is not my scene, so I stayed at home.*

scenery *noun*

1 features of the countryside

• ADJ. **beautiful, breathtaking, delightful, dramatic, fantastic, glorious, impressive, magnificent, spectacular, stunning, superb, wonderful | changing, ever-changing, varied | surrounding** *The village is charming and the surrounding scenery superb.* | **passing | coastal, mountain, mountainous**

• VERB + SCENERY **admire, enjoy, look at, take in** *An observation deck lets you take in the passing scenery.*

• SCENERY + VERB **change**

• PREP. **amid/amidst/in (the)** ~ *The hotel lies amidst spectacular mountain scenery.* **through (the)** ~ *The train passes through some magnificent scenery.*

• PHRASES **the beauty of the scenery, a change of scenery** *For a complete change of scenery, take a ferry out to one of the nearby islands.* **a variety of scenery** *The river passes through a rich variety of scenery.*

2 in a theatre

• VERB + SCENERY **set up | change**

• PREP. ~ **for** *That table is part of the scenery for Act 2.*

scent *noun*

1 pleasant smell

• ADJ. **heady, heavy, pungent, rich, sharp, strong** *the heavy scent of Indian cooking* | **delicate, faint | sweet | beautiful, lovely | fresh** *the fresh scent of flowers* | **warm | musky | exotic**

• VERB + SCENT **have** *This flower has no scent.* | **be filled with** *The air was filled with the scent of lilac.* | **give off, release** *The flowers give off a heady scent at night.* | **smell**

• SCENT + VERB **come, drift** *From the vine outside came the scent of honey.* | **fill sth** *The scent of pine filled the room.* | **linger** *The scent of incense lingered in the air.*

2 smell that an animal/a person leaves behind

• ADJ. **body, human, masculine, personal, sexual**

• VERB + SCENT **be on, have** *The dog was on the scent of a rabbit.* ◇ *The hounds have the scent.* | **leave** *The cat had left its scent on the sofa.* | **catch, pick up** *One of the hounds had picked up the scent of a fox.* | **lose | follow**

• SCENT + NOUN **gland | trail**

3 liquid with a sweet smell that you put on your body

• ADJ. **expensive | cheap**

• QUANT. **bottle**

• VERB + SCENT **use, wear | dab on, put on, spray on** *She dabbed some scent on her wrists.* | **smell | reek of, smell of** *She reeked of cheap scent.*

• SCENT + NOUN **bottle**

scented *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **heavily, highly, powerfully, richly, strongly** *richly scented flowers* | **delicately, lightly** *the delicately scented writing paper* | **beautifully, sweetly**

• PREP. **with** *The air was scented with the smell of pines.*

sceptic *noun*

• VERB + SCEPTIC **convince, win over** *He has managed to convince even the sceptics.* | **confound**

• SCEPTIC + VERB **argue sth, point out sth, say sth** *Sceptics will argue that no such scheme has ever proved successful.*

• PREP. ~ **about** *She is a sceptic about the dangers of global warming.*

• PHRASES **prove the sceptics right/wrong** *Events since the elections have proved the sceptics right.*

sceptical *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, remain | become**

• ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, very | increasingly | fairly, mildly, rather, slightly, somewhat** *in a mildly sceptical tone of voice* | **openly** *They remained openly sceptical about her promises of improvement.*

• PREP. **about** *He is deeply sceptical about the value of teaching poetry.* **as to** *Many were sceptical as to whether the plan would succeed.* **of** *They are highly sceptical of political leaders.*

scepticism *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, total | considerable, deep, extreme, great | healthy | growing | widespread | initial** *My initial scepticism was replaced with respectful admiration.*

• QUANT. **certain amount, degree, great deal** *I regard their press releases with a degree of scepticism.*

• VERB + SCEPTICISM **have** *She has a healthy scepticism towards the claims in the company's report.* | **express, voice**

• PREP. **with** ~ *This theory was initially received with great scepticism by her fellow scientists.* | ~ **about/over/towards** *He expressed a great deal of scepticism about the value of psychoanalysis.*

schedule *noun*

- ADJ. **daily, weekly, etc. | ambitious, busy, demanding, gruelling, heavy, hectic, punishing, tight | rigid, strict | business, production, training, work, etc. | flight, television, etc.** *disruptions to flight schedules caused by the strike*
- VERB + SCHEDULE **have, work to** *She has an very demanding schedule.* | **arrange, design, draw up, plan, prepare | amend | be/go according to, keep to, meet, run to, stick to** *At this stage everything is going according to schedule.* ◇ *We had to work a lot of overtime to meet the strict production schedule.* | **be/run ahead of | be/fall/run/slip behind | interrupt, take time out of** *The president took time out of his busy schedule to visit our school.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *Allow time in the schedule for holidays and illness.* **on ~** *The project is right on schedule.*

schedule *verb*

- ADV. **currently | originally** *The meeting was originally scheduled for March 12th.* | **provisionally, tentatively**
- PREP. **for** *The film is scheduled for release next month.*
- PHRASES **be scheduled to begin/start/take place** *The Grand Prix is scheduled to take place on July 4th.*

scheme *noun*

- ADJ. **major | ambitious, grand, grandiose | imaginative, ingenious, innovative | crazy, hare-brained, ill-conceived | successful | voluntary | pilot** *The project is based on a successful pilot scheme in Glasgow.* | **incentive, insurance, pension, recycling, share, training, etc.**
- VERB + SCHEME **have** *He has an ingenious scheme to attract funding.* | **come up with, design, devise, draw up, dream up, plan, prepare, propose, think up** *She's come up with a hare-brained scheme for getting her novel published.* | **approve | announce, establish, initiate, introduce, launch, organize, set up, start** *The government set up a scheme of limited public health assistance in 1992.* | **adopt, carry out, operate, run | back** *a government-backed scheme* | **be in, join, participate in, take part in | use | leave** *I opted to leave the company pension scheme.* | **abolish, wind up**
- SCHEME + VERB **offer sth, provide sth | allow sth, enable sth** *The scheme allows customers to trade in their own computer against the cost of a new one.* | **aim to, be aimed at sth, be designed for/to, involve sth** *a scheme involving local libraries* | **apply to sth, cover sth** *The scheme applies to families with three or more children.* | **go ahead, proceed** *The scheme has been given approval to go ahead.* | **succeed, work | collapse, fail**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Schools in the scheme will receive an annual grant.* **under a/the ~** *Under the scheme, land would be sold to building companies.* | **~ for** *Is this another one of your crazy schemes for making money?* ◇ *a training scheme for unemployed teenagers* **~ whereby** *a scheme whereby the elderly will be provided with help in the home*

schizophrenia *noun*

- ADJ. **chronic**
- VERB + SCHIZOPHRENIA **have, suffer from | develop | diagnose | treat**
- SCHIZOPHRENIA + NOUN **sufferer**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

scholar *noun*

- ADJ. **brilliant, distinguished, eminent, famous, great, leading, outstanding | visiting | biblical, classical, French, history, literary, etc.**

scholarship *noun*

- VERB + SCHOLARSHIP **gain, get, win | award (sb), give (sb)** *The Fund awards four scholarships every year.*
- SCHOLARSHIP + NOUN **exam/examination | programme, scheme | student**
- PREP. **on a ~** *Two of the girls here are on scholarships.* | **~ to** *He won a scholarship to Queens' College, Cambridge.*

school *noun*

- ADJ. **elementary, high, middle, nursery, prep/preparatory, primary, secondary | comprehensive, grammar, secondary modern | direct-grant, grant-maintained, state | independent, private, public** (In Britain 'public schools' are private.) | **special** *She attends a special school for children with learning difficulties.* | **boys', co-educational, girls', mixed, mixed-sex, single-sex | boarding, residential | day | Sunday | summer | local, rural, village | art, business, dance, drama, film, language, medical, riding, secretarial, training, etc.**
- VERB + SCHOOL **attend, go to | start | finish, leave | skip, (play) truant from | be/stay off, keep sb off** *His mum kept him off school for two weeks when he was ill.*
- SCHOOL + NOUN **curriculum | student | teacher** (also **schoolteacher**) *She's a middle-school teacher.* | **leaver | building, hall, library | term, year | holidays | bus | meals | rules | uniform | assembly | age** *She's got four children of school age.*
- PREP. **after ~** *We're going to play football after school.* **at (a/the) ~** *She didn't do very well at school.* ◇ *Their son's at the school near the station.* **in (a/the) ~** *Are the children still in school?* ◇ *the cleverest child in the school*

schooling *noun*

- ADJ. **good** *She received the best schooling the town could offer.* | **bad, poor** *Many children are disadvantaged by poor schooling.* | **compulsory** *Compulsory schooling ends at sixteen.* | **formal | primary, secondary**
- VERB + SCHOOLING **get, have, receive** *He has had no formal schooling.* | **continue (with)** *She continued with her schooling after a long period of illness.* | **interrupt**
- SCHOOLING + VERB **suffer** *We will stay in this country, as we don't want her schooling to suffer.*
- SCHOOLING + NOUN **system**
- PHRASES **access to schooling** *A child's access to schooling varies greatly from area to area.* **years of schooling** *children's development in the early years of schooling*

science *noun*

- ADJ. **hard** *His essay is not based on hard science.* | **exact, inexact** *Politics is as much an art form as an exact science.* | **popular** *The magazine contains a lot of popular science.* | **basic, school** *I was trying to remember what I had learnt about gravity in school science.* | **applied, experimental | biological, human, life, natural, physical** *The life sciences include biology and botany.* | **agricultural, earth, environmental, food, marine, soil | forensic | medical, veterinary | behavioural, political, social | computer, information | cognitive, linguistic | space | sports | management**
- SCIENCE + NOUN **education, research, teaching | museum, park**
- PREP. **~ of** *Meteorology is the science of the weather.*
- PHRASES **the history of science, the laws of science, science and technology, the world of science** *His experiments have achieved notoriety in the world of science.*

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and more nouns)

scientific *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem**

- ADV. **highly** *It all looks highly scientific!* | **truly** | **purely** *Her curiosity was purely scientific.* | **not very** *His approach was not very scientific.*

scientist *noun*

- ADJ. **brilliant, good, great** | **distinguished, eminent, famous, leading, respected** | **trained** | **chief, senior** | **serious** | **mad** (*often humorous*) *She had an image of a mad scientist working in his laboratory.* | **professional** | **amateur** | **independent** | **government** | **fellow** *She gave a lecture to 2 000 fellow scientists in Kyoto.* | **experimental, laboratory, research** | **applied** | **natural, physical** | **agricultural, earth, environmental, food, marine, soil** | **atomic, nuclear** | **rocket** (*often humorous*) *You don't have to be a rocket scientist* (= very clever) *to do this job.* | **forensic, medical** | **behavioural, political, social** | **computer** | **young** *a contest for young scientists*
- QUANT. **group, team**
- SCIENTIST + VERB **be interested in sth, be involved in sth, specialize in sth, study sth, work (on sth)** *scientists interested in Antarctic research* | **know sth** | **estimate sth** *The scientists estimate that nearly two-thirds of the continent has become drier over the past 60 years.* | **argue sth, believe sth, claim sth, say sth, suggest sth, warn (of) sth** *Scientists warned of even greater eruptions to come.* | **examine sth** | **discover sth, find sth, identify sth, reveal sth** | **agree (on) sth, conclude sth** | **disagree (on) sth** | **report sth** | **develop sth** *Scientists have developed an injection that doesn't use a needle.*

⇨ Note at JOB

scissors *noun*

- ADJ. **blunt, sharp** | **kitchen** | **nail**
- QUANT. **pair** *a pair of nail scissors*
- VERB + SCISSORS **cut sth with, use** *Don't use these scissors to cut paper or card.*
- SCISSORS + VERB **cut** *These scissors don't cut very well.*

scold *verb*

- ADV. **gently** | **severely**
- PREP. **for** *Rose scolded the child gently for her bad behaviour.*

scope *noun*

1 opportunity

- ADJ. **full** *In her new house she had full scope for her passion for gardening.* | **ample, considerable, enormous, great, tremendous** | **limited**
- VERB + SCOPE **have** | **allow (sb), give sb, leave (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *These courses give students more scope for developing their own ideas.* | **increase** | **cut down, reduce**
- PREP. **~ for** *There is limited scope for creativity in my job.*

2 range/extent

- ADJ. **broad, wide** | **limited, narrow** *The scope of the exhibition is disappointingly narrow.* | **geographical, territorial** *The geographical scope of product markets has widened since the war.*
- VERB + SCOPE **broaden, expand, extend, increase, widen** | **limit, reduce, restrict** | **define, determine** *These criteria were used to determine the scope of the curriculum.*
- SCOPE + VERB **broaden, expand, extend, increase, widen** | **narrow**
- PREP. **beyond/outside the ~ of** *The subject lies outside the scope of this book.* **in (sth's) ~** *The survey is too limited in (its) scope.* **within the ~ of** *These disputes fall within the scope of the local courts.*

score *noun*

1 in a game, competition, etc.

- ADJ. **big, excellent, good, high, perfect, record, top** | **bad, low, poor** | **average, mean** | **close, level** *The score was close in the final match.* | **overall, total** | **final** | **cricket, football, etc.**
- VERB + SCORE **achieve, finish with, get, have** | **give (sb)** *He got round the course in 72, giving him an average score of 70.* | **make, take** *A goal in the last few minutes took the score to 4–2.* | **keep, record** *I'll keep (the) score.* | **level, tie** *Figo levelled the scores with a curling free kick.*
- SCORE + VERB **be, stand at** *At half-time the score stood at 3–0.*
- SCORE + NOUN **card** (also **scorecard**), **chart, sheet** *Inamoto had a good game but failed to get his name on the score sheet* (= failed to score).
- PREP. **~ against** *the best score for years against Italy*

2 in a test

- ADJ. **excellent, good, high, perfect, record, top** | **bad, low, poor** | **average, mean** | **aggregate, overall, total** | **IQ, test**
- VERB + SCORE **achieve, get, have, obtain** | **give sb** | **boost, increase** *Some scientists claim that vitamins will boost your child's IQ score.*
- SCORE + VERB **range** *Most ten-year-olds had scores ranging between 50 and 70.*
- PREP. **~ for** *She got an unusually low score for creativity.*

3 written music

- ADJ. **full** | **music/musical** | **orchestral, piano, vocal** *the vocal score of 'The Magic Flute'* | **film**
- VERB + SCORE **play, read, write**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *a mistake in the piano score*

score *verb*

1 win points/goals, etc.

- ADV. **nearly** | **easily** *Cunningham broke away and ran some 40 metres to score easily.*
- VERB + SCORE **try to** | **manage to** | **fail to, have yet to** *Peter Walker has yet to score this season.* | **look likely to** *Villa always looked the team most likely to score.*
- PREP. **against** *The England team failed to score against Italy on Saturday.* **for** *She has not yet scored for her new club.* **with** *He scored with a neat header.*
- PHRASES **come close to scoring** *It was Robertson who came closest to scoring.* **open the scoring** *Zidane opened the scoring in the seventh minute of the game.*

2 gain marks in a test

- ADV. **highly, well** *In the key area of negotiation, women scored highly.*

scorn *noun*

- ADJ. **withering** *She reserved her most withering scorn for journalists.*
- VERB + SCORN **feel** | **express** | **heap, pour, throw** *Abuse and scorn were heaped upon the new tax.*
- PREP. **with ~** *He stared with some scorn at his interviewers.* | **~ for** *She expressed her scorn for the rules.*
- PHRASES **an object of scorn** *His poetry was the object of scorn.*

scowl *noun*

- ADJ. **black, dark** | **permanent**
- VERB + SCOWL **wear** | **give sb** | **be set in** *His face was set in a permanent scowl.*
- SCOWL + VERB **deepen**
- PREP. **in a ~** *Her brows drew together in a scowl.* **with a ~** *He looked up at me with a scowl.*
- PHRASES **have a scowl on your face**

scowl *verb*

- ADV. **darkly, fiercely, heavily** *She scowled darkly and muttered something under her breath.* | **down**
- PREP. **at** *His eyes scowled down at her.*

scramble *noun*

- ADJ. **difficult, steep** | **desperate, mad, undignified, wild** *There was a mad scramble for the exits.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *I lost my sister in the scramble for a seat.* | **~ down, over, up, etc.** *an undignified scramble down the slope* **~ for** *a scramble for tickets for the game*

scramble *verb*

- ADV. **frantically** *They scrambled frantically over the piles of debris.* | **awkwardly** | **away, back**
- VERB + SCRAMBLE **manage to**
- PREP. **down, into, out of, over, through, up, etc.** *She managed to scramble over the wall.*
- PHRASES **scramble to your feet** *He scrambled awkwardly to his feet.* **scramble to safety**

scrap *noun*

1 small piece or amount
- ADJ. **little** *She scribbled the address on a little scrap of paper.* | **food** *The pigs are fed on food scraps.*
- PREP. **~ of** *Every scrap of land in the town has been built on.*

2 recyclable items or material
- QUANT. **piece**
- VERB + SCRAP **sell sth for** *The engine has been sold for scrap.* | **collect**
- SCRAP + NOUN **iron, material, metal, paper, etc.** | **heap, yard** (also **scrapyard**) *My first computer has been consigned to the scrap heap.* | **dealer, merchant** | **value** *Police estimate the scrap value of the lead at around £8 000.*

3 fight
- VERB + SCRAP **get into, have**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He looks like he's been in a scrap.* | **~ with** *He had a bit of a scrap with the boy next door.*

scrape *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, gently** *She carefully scraped away the top layer of paint.* | **away, back, off** *I scraped the dirt off.*
- PREP. **against** *He scraped the car against the garage wall.* **along** *Patrick lifted the gate to prevent it scraping along the ground.* **from** *Her hair was scraped back from her face.* **on** *I scraped my elbow on the wall as I cycled past.* **with** *I scraped the carrots with a knife.*
- PHRASES **scrape sth clean** *The wood had been scraped clean.*

PHRASAL VERB

scrape **through**
- ADV. **(only) just** *He only just scraped through his exams.*
- VERB + SCRAPE THROUGH **manage to** *The Conservatives managed to scrape through to an election victory.*

scratch *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, long, nasty, terrible** | **light, little, minor, slight, small, superficial** *His only injuries were some minor scratches above his eye.*
- VERB + SCRATCH **have**
- SCRATCH + NOUN **mark**
- PREP. **without a ~** *She emerged from the wrecked vehicle without a scratch.* | **~ on** *I've got some nasty scratches on my legs.*

scratch *verb*

- ADV. **badly** *The table had been badly scratched.*
- PREP. **at** *He kept scratching at his nose.* **on** *I scratched my arm on a rose bush.* **with** *She scratched his face with her nails.*

scream *noun*

- ADJ. **high-pitched, loud, piercing, shrill** | **muffled, stifled** | **blood-curdling, hysterical, terrible, terrified**
- VERB + SCREAM **give, let out** | **hear**
- SCREAM + VERB **echo, ring out** *His screams echoed through the empty house.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *She reacted to the news with hysterical screams.* | **~ for** *a scream for help* **~ of** *screams of laughter/terror*

scream *verb*

- ADV. **aloud** | **loudly** | **silently** *Despair shook him and he screamed silently in the darkness.* | **hysterically, shrilly, wildly** | **almost** | **out**
- VERB + SCREAM **want to** *I was so bored I wanted to scream.* | **begin to** | **hear sb**
- PREP. **after** *Marion screamed after them, 'Stop! Stop!'* **at** *She screamed at me to get out of the way.* **for** *The trapped passengers screamed for help.* **in** *People ran for the exits, screaming out in terror.* **with** *People were staggering about, screaming with pain.*
- PHRASES **begin/start screaming, scream your head off** *The baby was screaming its head off.* **stop screaming**

screen *noun*

1 on a TV, computer, etc.
- ADJ. **big** (*often figurative*), **giant, huge, large** *big screen entertainment* (= at the cinema) | **small** (*often figurative*) *She appears regularly on the small screen* (= on television). | **blank** *I sat gazing at the blank screen, trying to think of something to write.* | **computer, television/TV, video**
- VERB + SCREEN **appear on** | **fill** *The star's lovely face filled the screen.* | **gaze at, look at, stare at, watch**
- SCREEN + VERB **flicker** *The screen flickered, and then everything went dark.*
- PREP. **off ~** *They play deadly rivals in the show but they are good friends off screen.* **on (the) ~** *She is remembered mainly for her performances on screen.* ◇ *Information can be viewed on screen or printed out.* ◇ *The image came up on the screen for a few seconds.*
- PHRASES **stage and screen** *stars of stage and screen*

2 partition
- ADJ. **folding** *The room was divided by a folding screen.*
- VERB + SCREEN **put up**
- PREP. **behind a/the ~** *His desk was discreetly placed behind a screen.* | **~ between** *There is a screen between the two beds.*

screen *verb*

1 hide sth
- ADV. **well** | **completely** | **partly** | **effectively** | **neatly** *The shed is neatly screened by a hedge.* | **off** *One part of the room was screened off.*
- PREP. **from** *The building is completely screened from the road by high bushes.*

2 check sb/sth for faults/illnesses
- ADV. **carefully** *All foster parents are carefully screened.*
- PREP. **for** *All pregnant women are to be screened for the infection.*

3 show sth on television/in a cinema
- ADV. **live** *The programme will be screened live on BBC1.*

screw *noun*

- ADJ. **masonry, wood**
- VERB + SCREW **fix, loosen, tighten, turn**

screw *verb*

- ADV. **firmly, tightly | down, together** *Screw the drain cover down tightly.*
- PREP. **into** *She screwed the lock into the door.* **on/onto** *I screwed the lid back on the jar.* **to** *The bed was screwed to the floor.*
- PHRASES **screw sth in place/into position** *I screwed the curtain rail in place.*

scribble *verb*

- ADV. **furiously** *The students were all scribbling away furiously.* | **away, down**

script *noun*

1 text of a play, film, etc.
- ADJ. **draft | original | final | drama, film, movie, news, radio, television/TV**
- VERB + SCRIPT **prepare, write | read**
- SCRIPT + NOUN **editor**
- PREP. **~about** *a script about a farmer's life* **~for** *a script for children's TV*

2 system/style of writing
- ADJ. **neat | cursive | copperplate | bold, italic, roman | phonetic | Cyrillic, Hebrew, Japanese, etc.**
- VERB + SCRIPT **decipher, read** *Archaeologists have had trouble deciphering the script.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She writes in a neat copperplate script.*

scripture *noun* (often **scriptures**)

- ADJ. **holy, sacred** *the sacred scripture of the Buddhists* | **Christian, Hebrew, Hindu, Jewish, etc.**
- QUANT. **passage, verse**
- VERB + SCRIPTURE **interpret, read (from)** *She read from the scriptures.* | **teach** *He teaches the holy scriptures as he travels around.* | **follow | quote (from)**
- PREP. **in the ~s** *You won't find this moral precept in the scriptures.*

scrub *noun*

1 small trees growing in a dry area
- ADJ. **desert** *miles of desert scrub* | **low** *The vegetation consisted of low scrub.*
- QUANT. **patch** *The horses stood near a patch of scrub.*
- VERB + SCRUB **be covered in, be overgrown with** *The mountain was covered in scrub.*

2 cleaning
- ADJ. **good** *I gave the table a good scrub.*
- VERB + SCRUB **give sb/sth**

scrub *verb*

- ADV. **thoroughly | away, down, out**
- PREP. **at** *She scrubbed at the child's face with a tissue.* **from, off** *He scrubbed the blood from his shoes.*
- PHRASES **freshly scrubbed** *his freshly scrubbed face* **scrub sth clean** *The table had been scrubbed clean.*

scruples *noun*

- ADJ. **moral, religious** *a man of few moral scruples*
- VERB + SCRUPLES **have | overcome** *Some persuasion would be required to overcome her scruples.*
- PREP. **without ~** *A man who can treat his family so must be completely without scruples.* | **~about** *I don't have any scruples about taking her car—she's often borrowed mine.*

scrutinize *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, closely, minutely | fully, thoroughly**
- PREP. **for** *All parts of the aircraft are closely scrutinized for signs of wear or damage.*

scrutiny *noun*

- ADJ. **careful, close, detailed, intense, rigorous, serious, thorough** *The company has come under intense scrutiny because of its environmental record.* | **international, judicial, media, parliamentary, public, scientific** *The activities of the committee are subject to public scrutiny.*
- VERB + SCRUTINY **be subjected to, come under, submit to, undergo | be open to, be subject to | bear** *The testimony of the chief witness doesn't bear scrutiny.*
- PREP. **under ~** *The company is under scrutiny by the Inland Revenue.* | **~by** *I realized I was being subjected to intense scrutiny by a group of children.*

scuffle *noun*

- ADJ. **brief | minor**
- VERB + SCUFFLE **be involved in**
- SCUFFLE + VERB **break out** *A scuffle broke out among people in the crowd.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He was injured in a scuffle at the football match.* | **~between** *a scuffle between rival gangs* **~with** *He was involved in a scuffle with photographers.*

sculptor *noun*

- ADJ. **celebrated, famous, great, influential | talented | contemporary | court** *He was court sculptor to Alexander the Great.*
- SCULPTOR + VERB **create sth, work (on sth)** *a classical Greek figure created by the sculptor Polyclitus*

⇨ Note at JOB

sculpture *noun*

- ADJ. **abstract | monumental**
- QUANT. **piece | series | collection**
- VERB + SCULPTURE **create, make** *She creates sculptures out of scrap materials.* | **display, exhibit, show**
- PREP. **~by** *a sculpture by Henry Moore* **~of** *a sculpture of a horse*
- PHRASES **an exhibition of sculpture/sculptures**

⇨ Note at ART

sea *noun*

1 large area of salt water
- ADJ. **calm, smooth** *a calm sea after the storm* | **choppy, rough** *The sea was too rough for sailing in small boats.* | **deep | shallow | blue, grey | cold | warm | inland | open** *The fishing boats headed for the open sea.*
- VERB + SEA **cross** *We crossed the Mediterranean Sea on a cruise ship.* | **go to** (= become a sailor) | **put (out) to** *The ship put to sea* (= left port) *in deteriorating weather conditions.* | **be lost at** *They were lost at sea when their ship sank en route for Madeira.* | **stare out to** *She stood on the cliff, staring out to sea.*
- SEA + VERB **rise** *In recent years the sea has risen by a couple of inches.* | **recede, retreat** *The sea has retreated a little since the river was diverted.*
- SEA + NOUN **water | bottom, floor | breeze | creature | port** (also **seaport**)**, voyage | cliff, front, view**
- PREP. **at ~** *We spent three weeks at sea.* **across the ~** *We sailed across the Black Sea in a yacht.* **by (the) ~** *We sent our furniture by sea.* ◇ *They live by the sea.* **down to the ~** *We'll go down to the sea for a swim before dinner.* **in/into the ~** *I love swimming in the sea!* **on the ~** *three ships sailing on the sea* **out to ~** *She fell overboard and was swept out to sea.*
- PHRASES **the bottom/edge/middle/surface of the sea, the boom/booming/murmur/roar/sound of the sea**

2 (*also* **the seas**) movement of the waves of the sea
- ADJ. **choppy, dangerous, heavy, mountainous, raging, rough, stormy** *A week of heavy seas has created problems for fishermen.*
- VERB + SEA **roam, sail** *He has sailed the seven seas.*

- PHRASES **on the high seas, the seven seas**

3 large amount of sth
- ADJ. **vast**
- PREP. **~of** *She scanned the vast sea of faces below her.*

seafood *noun*

- ADJ. **fresh**
- VERB + SEAFOOD **eat, have | prepare**
- SEAFOOD + NOUN **dish** *a good wine to drink with fish or seafood dishes* | **cocktail, salad | restaurant**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

seagull (*also* **gull**) *noun*

- QUANT. **flock**
- SEAGULL + VERB **circle, fly, wheel | dive-bomb, swoop | cry, scream, screech, shriek**

seal *noun*

1 animal
- QUANT. **colony** *A colony of seals lay basking in the sun.*
- VERB + SEAL **cull** *Environmentalists claim there is no reason to cull seals.*
- SEAL + VERB **bark**
- SEAL + NOUN **pup | cull**

2 for a document
- ADJ. **wax** *an official-looking letter with a wax seal*
- VERB + SEAL **break** *He broke the seal, and opened the envelope.*
- PHRASES **a seal of approval** *Her report was given the seal of approval by senior management.*

seal *verb*

1 close sth
- ADV. **carefully, firmly, properly, tightly, well** *The containers must be carefully sealed so that no air can get in.* | **completely, totally** *The unit is completely sealed.* | **virtually | effectively | hermetically** *a hermetically sealed container* | **off, up**
- PREP. **from** *The nuclear plant would be effectively sealed off from the world.* **with** *He sealed the bag tightly with sticky tape.*

2 show formally that sth is agreed
- ADV. **formally**
- PHRASES **be signed and sealed** *The contracts are already signed and sealed.*

seam *noun*

1 in fabric
- VERB + SEAM **sew, stitch, tack** *She sewed the seam with small neat stitches.* | **unpick** *It took hours to unpick the seams.* | **iron, press**
- PHRASES **be bursting at the seams** (*often figurative*) *The film is bursting at the seams with good performances.* **come/fall apart at the seams** (*often figurative*) *Their marriage was coming apart at the seams.*

2 of coal, etc.
- ADJ. **coal | rich** *They're still mining a rich seam of high-grade coal.*
- VERB + SEAM **mine**

search *noun*

- ADJ. **careful, exhaustive, extensive, painstaking, systematic, thorough | major, massive, nationwide | desperate, frantic | constant | police | routine** *Police conducted a routine search of all the houses in the area.* | **house-to-house | fingertip** *A team of police officers did a fingertip search of the area.* | **body, strip** *I was subjected to a body search by customs officials.* | **computer, Internet**
- VERB + SEARCH **begin, launch, mount, start** *The police immediately launched a nationwide search for the killer.* | **carry out, conduct, do, make** *The search for the missing men was conducted in poor weather conditions.* | **abandon, call off** *The search was called off when it began to get dark.*
- SEARCH + NOUN **operation** *The police mounted an extensive search operation.* | **party, team | warrant | engine** *This is one of the fastest Internet search engines.*
- PREP. **in ~ of** *We're constantly in search of new talent.* | **~for** *the search for oil off the coast*

search *verb*

- ADV. **thoroughly** *The area has been thoroughly searched.* | **carefully, diligently, painstakingly | systematically | actively** *actively searching for something to keep the conversation going* | **eagerly | desperately, frantically | in vain | aimlessly** *For the rest of the morning he searched aimlessly through the town.* | **constantly | around/round** *I searched around for a thick stick.*
- PREP. **among** *We searched among the rocks for crabs.* **for** *Police are still searching for the missing child.* **in** *He searched in his pocket and found a few coins.* **through** *searching through a drawer*
- PHRASES **search far and wide, search sth from top to bottom** *We searched the house from top to bottom.* **search high and low** *I have searched high and low and cannot find them.*

seaside *noun*

- VERB + SEASIDE **go to** *Every summer we went to the seaside for two months.*
- SEASIDE + NOUN **resort, town, village**
- PREP. **at the ~** *a holiday at the seaside* **by the ~** *They have a cottage by the seaside.*

season *noun*

1 of the year
- ADJ. **dry, monsoon, rainy, wet** *In this climate there are no real changes of temperature, just a wet and a dry season.* | **summer, winter, etc.**
- VERB + SEASON **be in, come into** *Melons are just coming into season.* | **be out of, go out of**

2 period when an activity takes place
- ADJ. **holiday, tourist | high, peak** *The resort gets overcrowded in peak season.* | **low, off** *The hotel is almost empty in the off season.* | **breeding, mating | growing, planting | lambing | cricket, football, hunting, racing, etc. | championship, league | gruelling, hard** *It was the final race of a hard season.* | **successful | disappointing, disastrous | close** *The team trained hard during the close season and won its first five matches.* | **consecutive, successive** *Our team won the trophy for the second successive season.* | **Christmas, festive** *best wishes for the festive season*
- SEASON + NOUN **ticket** *Season ticket holders do not have to queue.*
- PHRASES **the height of the season**

⇨ Note on page 688

season *verb*

- ADV. **well**
- PREP. **with** *Season the meat well with salt and pepper.*
- PHRASES **highly seasoned** *highly seasoned food*

seat *noun*

1 for sitting on
- ADJ. **empty, spare, vacant** *There were no empty seats left in the hall.* ◇ *Do you have a spare seat in your car?* | **comfortable, comfy | cushioned | bicycle, car | back, front, rear** *I always feel sick if I sit in the back seat of the car.* | **driver's, driving, passenger | baby, child, safety | pillion** *I had a terrifying journey on the pillion seat of a*

NOTE

Seasons

have ~
Perhaps we will have a good summer this year.
spend summer/winter
I spent the winter indoors.
~ approach
The days become shorter and temperatures drop as autumn approaches.
~ arrive, begin, come
Autumn arrived early that year.
winter **sets in**
The aid must reach the refugees before winter sets in.
summer/winter **pass, wear on, (come to an) end**
As the summer wore on food became scarce.
~ months
summer/winter **period**
spring/summer/winter **time** (also **springtime, etc.**)
The museum is open daily during the summer months.
It was springtime and the slopes were ablaze with almond blossoms.
~ day/morning/night, etc.
It's hard to sleep on hot summer nights.
during/in (the) ~
The wood is carpeted with bluebells in spring.
over the summer/winter
The repairs will be carried out over the summer.
through/throughout (the) ~
The meat is salted so it keeps through the winter.
for (the) ~
She's gone to Ireland for the summer.
the ~ of 2001, etc.
The winter of 2001 was especially cold.
a summer's/winter's day/morning/night, etc.
a lazy summer's day
all summer/winter long
It rained all summer long.
the height of summer
the depths of winter
He always wore a short-sleeved shirt, even in the depths of winter.

Honda 750. | **aisle, window** *I always ask for an aisle seat when I fly.* | **lavatory, toilet** | **good, ringside** *I got to the theatre early to get a good seat.* ◇ *We had ringside seats for the boxing match.*

- VERB + SEAT **get, have, take** *Please take a seat.* ◇ *Is this seat taken?* | **book, reserve** *Is it possible to book seats for the play?* | **save** *Can you save me a seat if you get there first?* | **occupy, sit on** *The best seats were occupied by the friends and families of the performers.* ◇ *It is very uncomfortable to sit on these seats.* | **resume** *The audience resumed their seats for the second half of the play.* | **give up, vacate** *He gave up his seat on the bus to a pregnant woman.* | **lean back in, recline in, settle back in** | **settle into** *We had hardly settled into our seats when the first goal was scored.* | **get (up) out of** | **put back, recline**
- SEAT + NOUN **cover** | **reservation**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The man in the passenger seat seemed to be asleep.* **on a/the ~** *I found my gloves lying on the back seat.* **out of a/the ~** *He leapt out of his seat when he saw the rat.* | **~ for** *I managed to get some seats for the ballet.*

2 in Parliament, etc.

- ADJ. **congressional, parliamentary, Senate** | **marginal** | **safe** | **Labour, Tory, etc.**
- VERB + SEAT **gain, win** | **lose** *He lost his seat in the last election.* | **keep, retain** | **regain** | **contest** | **resign**
- PREP. **~ in** *a seat in Parliament* **~ on** *a seat on the local council*

seat *verb*

- ADV. **comfortably** *He seated himself comfortably at the foot of the bed.* ◇ *The car seats six comfortably.*
- PREP. **at** *Ramirez was seated at a table near the window.* **on** *She seated herself on the sofa.*
- PHRASES **be seated** *Please be seated.* **be seated cross-legged, remain/stay seated** *Please remain seated until your name is called.*

seat belt *noun*

- VERB + SEAT BELT **wear** *By law, you are obliged to wear seat belts.* | **fasten, put on** | **undo, unfasten**

seating *noun*

- ADJ. **comfortable** *The auditorium has comfortable seating and modern acoustics.*
- SEATING + NOUN **area** | **arrangements, plan** *We need to work out the seating plan for the wedding.*
- PREP. **~ for** *There is seating for 250 people.*

secluded *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look**
- ADV. **very, wonderfully** | **fairly, pretty** *We managed to find a fairly secluded spot for our picnic.*

seclusion *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, total, utter** | **relative** *For holidays, I prefer the relative seclusion of the countryside.*
- PREP. **in (the ~ of)** *I live very much in seclusion these days.* ◇ *She liked to sunbathe in the seclusion of her own garden.*

second *noun*

1 very short moment of time

- ADJ. **brief, fleeting, split** *I only saw the man for a split second as he ran past.* | **single** | **heart-stopping** *For a heart-stopping second he thought he had lost his keys.*
- VERB + SECOND **take** *This will only take a second.* | **have** *Do you have a second, Miss White?* | **wait** *Wait a second—this letter's been sent to me by mistake.*
- SECOND + VERB **pass, tick by** *The seconds ticked by.*
- SECOND + NOUN **hand**
- PREP. **for a ~** *For a second I thought you were my mother.* **in a ~** *I'll be with you in a second.* **in/within ~s** *Within seconds he had disappeared from view.*
- PHRASES **a fraction of a second** *If he'd reacted a fraction of a second later, he would surely have died.* **a matter of seconds** *The end of the match is only a matter of seconds away.*

⇨ Note at MEASURE

2 person/thing that comes next after the first

- ADJ. **close, good** | **bad, distant, poor** | **equal, joint** | **creditable, worthy** *The young German runner finished a creditable second.*
- VERB + SECOND **come, finish**
- PREP. **~ to** *Sunny Boy came a close second to the winner.*

3 university degree

- ADJ. **lower, upper** | **good**
- VERB + SECOND **be awarded, gain, get, obtain**
- PREP. **~ in** *He got a good second in history.*

second thought *noun*

- VERB + SECOND THOUGHT **have ~s** | **not give sth** *As for the money, don't give it a second thought.*
- PREP. **on ~s** *On second thoughts, maybe I won't apply for the job after all.* **without a ~** *He dismissed the rumour without a second thought.* | **~s about** *We're beginning to have second thoughts about buying a car.*

secrecy *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, total | great, strict | excessive, unnecessary | commercial, official**
- VERB + SECRECY **maintain | be shrouded in | swear sb to** *All the researchers on the project are sworn to secrecy.*
- SECRECY + VERB **surround sth**
- PREP. **in ~** *The drugs squad operates in the greatest secrecy.* | **~ about** *The organization has managed to maintain secrecy about its activities.*
- PHRASES **a blanket/cloak/veil of secrecy** *A blanket of secrecy surrounded the tribunals.*

secret *noun*

1 sth that must not be known by others

- ADJ. **big, great | little | closely guarded, well-kept** *a charming museum that is one of the city's best-kept secrets* (= that not many people know about) | **hidden, inner, innermost, intimate** *That evening she had revealed many of her innermost secrets.* | **open** *Their affair is an open secret.* | **dark, guilty, shameful, terrible | commercial, family, military, official, state, trade**
- VERB + SECRET **have | guard, keep** *Can you keep a secret?* | **betray, divulge, let sb in on/into, reveal, tell sb** *She let us into her secret—she'd got engaged.* | **find out, uncover**
- SECRET + VERB **be/get out** *How did the secret get out?*
- PREP. **in ~** *The film stars were married in secret to avoid publicity.* | **~ about** *There was some secret about the source of his wealth.* **~ from** *I have no secrets from you.*
- PHRASES **make no secret of the fact that …, make a secret of sth** *He refuses to make any secret of his political allegiances.*

2 only/best way of doing/achieving sth

- VERB + SECRET **reveal, tell sb**
- PREP. **~ behind** *She revealed the secret behind her extraordinary success.* **~ of** *the secrets of staying healthy*
- PHRASES **the secret of (sb's) success**

secret *adj.*

- VERBS **be | remain, stay | keep sth**
- ADV. **highly, top, very** *a top secret meeting* | **absolutely, entirely | more or less | formerly, hitherto, previously** *revealing the text of the hitherto secret treaty*
- PREP. **from** *They managed to keep the party more or less secret from Christine.*

secretary *noun*

1 person who works in an office

- ADJ. **executive, legal | press, publicity | personal, private | social | school**

⇨ Note at JOB

2 official of a club/government department, etc.

- ADJ. **chief, first** *the First Secretary of the Communist Party* | **deputy, under | assistant | acting | permanent | honorary | former, then** *the then Secretary of State for Energy, Cecil Parkinson* | **executive, general | branch, district, group, national, regional | club, company | cabinet, shadow** (= a senior British politician of the opposition party) | **parliamentary, state | Agriculture, Defence, Economic, Education, Employment, Energy, Environment, Financial, Foreign, Health, Home, Trade and Industry, Transport, Treasury, etc.**
- VERB + SECRETARY **act as | resign as | elect, elect sb (as) | replace (sb as)**
- SECRETARY + NOUN **General** *UN Secretary General, Kofi Annan*
- PREP. **~ for** *the Secretary for National Defence* **~ to** *secretary to the jockey club*
- PHRASES **the post of secretary, Secretary of State** *the United States Secretary of State*

secretive *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, unusually, very** *his highly secretive nature* | **almost | rather, slightly, somewhat**
- PREP. **about** *They were very secretive about their plans.*

sect *noun*

- ADJ. **religious | evangelical, fundamentalist | Buddhist, Christian, etc.**
- VERB + SECT **belong to | join**
- SECT + NOUN **member**
- PHRASES **a leader/member of a sect**

section *noun*

- ADJ. **large, long** *Large sections of the forest have been destroyed by acid rain.* ◇ *a long section of roadway* | **short, small | main | personnel, political** (in a company, an organization, etc.) *He works in the embassy's political section.* | **business, finance, travel, etc.** (of a newspaper) | **biology, history, reference, etc.** (in a library) | **brass, percussion, rhythm, string, wind, woodwind** (in an orchestra) | **cello, horn, etc.** (in an orchestra)
- VERB + SECTION **divide sth into** *The book is divided into chapters, sections and sub-sections.*
- SECTION + NOUN **manager** (in a company, an organization, etc.)
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *You'll find the book in the music section.* **in ~s** *The table comes in sections.* **under ~** (relating to a section of a law, etc.) *The case was the first prosecution under Section 3A of the Road Traffic Act 1988.*
- PHRASES **a section of society** *an area populated largely by the poorer sections of society*

sector *noun*

1 part of the business activity of a country

- ADJ. **important, key | growing, growth | independent, private | public, state | voluntary | formal | informal | agricultural, banking, business, commercial, corporate, economic, financial, further/higher education, health, industrial, industry, manufacturing, market, primary, retail, service** *The survey covers a wide range of industry sectors.* | **rural, urban**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *employment opportunities in the higher education sector*
- PHRASES **a sector of the economy/market**

2 part of an area or of a large group of people

- VERB + SECTOR **divide sth into** *Berlin was divided into four sectors after the war.*
- PHRASES **a sector of the population/society**

secular *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **completely, purely** *It began as a religious organization, but these days it is purely secular.* | **essentially, largely** *We live in a largely secular society.* | **aggressively**

secure *verb*

1 fix/lock sth firmly

- ADV. **firmly, properly, tightly**
- PREP. **to** *The crates had not been properly secured to the truck.* **with** *She secured the boat with a rope.*

2 get/achieve sth

- ADV. **easily** *Victory was not going to be easily secured.* | **automatically**
- VERB + SECURE **be able to, manage to | fail to** *They failed to secure the release of the prisoners.* | **help (to)**
- PHRASES **an attempt/effort to secure sth, be aimed at securing sth, a chance/hope of securing sth** *trying to improve their chances of securing employment* **succeed/be successful in securing sth**

secure *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel | become | make sth | keep sth** *It's important to keep your documents secure.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, completely, entirely, perfectly, quite, totally, utterly | fairly, pretty, reasonably, relatively | enough, sufficiently** *I finally felt secure enough in myself to have a child of my own.* | **apparently | economically, financially | socially**
- PREP. **against** *The house has been made secure against intruders.*

security *noun*

1 feeling safe/being free from worry
- ADJ. **greater | emotional, psychological | economic, financial | job**
- VERB + SECURITY **have** *They have the security of a good home.* | **give (sb), provide (sb with)** *He gave her the emotional security she needed.*
- PHRASES **be lulled into a false sense of security, a feeling/sense of security, the security of tenure**

2 to protect sb/sth from thieves, attack, war, etc.
- ADJ. **maximum, top** *Screw windows to the frame for maximum security.* ◇ *a maximum security prison* | **heightened | strict, tight | lax | collective | national, state | internal | personal | home**
- VERB + SECURITY **ensure, provide (sb with) | improve, strengthen, tighten (up)** *We need to tighten security around the hotel during the president's visit.* | **compromise, undermine** *The leaking of secrets from the Defence Ministry has compromised national security.*
- SECURITY + NOUN **apparatus, forces, services | adviser, guard, man, people, personnel, staff | arrangements, matters, measures, policy, system | check | risk | camera, device, van, video**
- PREP. **~against** *The bars are to provide security against break-ins.*
- PHRASES **for security reasons** *For security reasons, passengers are requested not to leave any luggage unattended.* **peace and security**

3 when you borrow money
- VERB + SECURITY **lend sth on | stand** *His father agreed to stand security for his son's house-purchase loan.* | **take (sth as)**
- PREP. **against the ~ of** *The bank will make a loan against the security of the lender's house.* **as ~** *She pledged her jewellery as security for a £50 000 loan.* | **~for**

4 securities share documents
- ADJ. **company, government | foreign, overseas | listed, unlisted | gilt-edged**
- VERB + SECURITIES **issue | buy | sell**

sedation *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy | light**
- PREP. **under ~** *The attack victim is currently in hospital, under heavy sedation.*

sedative *noun*

- ADJ. **powerful, strong | mild** *The doctor gave her a mild sedative to help her sleep.*
- VERB + SEDATIVE **give sb, prescribe (sb)**

seductive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**
- ADV. **extremely, very | infinitely** *These opportunities seemed infinitely seductive.* | **almost** *His words had a soothing, almost seductive quality.*

see *verb*

1 become aware of sth using your eyes
- ADV. **clearly | dimly | hardly** *I could hardly see because of the smoke.* | **just** *We could just see the hotel in the distance.* | **suddenly**
- VERB + SEE **be able to, can/could** *I could see the boat quite clearly now.* | **strain to | be amazed to, be surprised to** *He was surprised to see Lucy standing there.* | **be relieved to | be glad to, be overjoyed to, be pleased to** *I'm glad to see that you're keeping well.* | **let sb** *A dolphin? Oh, let me see!*
- PHRASES **turn and see** *He turned and saw her smile.*

2 meet/visit sb
- VERB + SEE **want to, wish to** *What is it you want to see me about?* | **live to** *He didn't live to see his grandchildren.* | **be glad to, be overjoyed to, be pleased to** *Aren't you pleased to see me?*
- PREP. **about** *She's gone to see the mechanic about getting her car repaired.*

3 go with/accompany sb
- PHRASES **see sb home** *Don't worry, I'll see you home.*

4 understand/realize sth
- VERB + SEE **can/can't, don't** *I can see why you were so angry about it.* ◇ *I don't see why she should get more money than the others.* | **be difficult to** *It is difficult to see how to get round this problem.*

5 find out
- VERB + SEE **want to** *I want to see how they'll react.* | **let sb** *Let's see what happens.*
- PHRASES **go and see** *'Has the post come yet?' 'I'll just go and see.'* **wait and see** *'Is he going to get better?' 'I don't know, we'll just have to wait and see.'*

seed *noun*

1 from which a plant grows
- ADJ. **grass, poppy, etc. | bird**
- QUANT. **packet**
- VERB + SEED **plant, sow | produce, set** *This tree produces very hard seeds.* ◇ *The plant will set seed in June.* | **grow/raise sth from** *She grew all the broccoli plants from seed.* | **spread** *Most seeds are spread by the wind.* | **go/run to** *Allow some of the plants to run to seed, and save the seed for next year.*
- SEED + VERB **germinate, grow, sprout**
- SEED + NOUN **head, pod | packet, tray | bank, catalogue, merchant | cake | corn, potato**
- PHRASES **a variety of seeds** *The catalogue has hundreds of different varieties of seeds.*

2 player in a sports competition
- ADJ. **first, second, etc. | number one, number two, etc. | top** *Venus Williams was the top seed at Wimbledon this year.*

seek *verb*

- ADV. **actively** *people who are unemployed and actively seeking work* | **avidly, eagerly, keenly | desperately, urgently** *He was desperately seeking a way to see her again.* | **successfully | in vain, unsuccessfully, vainly**
- PREP. **for** *They sought in vain for somewhere to shelter.*

seep *verb*

- ADV. **gradually, slowly | away, out, through** *The power had gradually seeped away.*
- VERB + SEEP **begin to**
- PREP. **from** *Blood was seeping slowly from the wound.* **into, out of** *Water was seeping out of the tank.* **through** *The damp seeped through her thin shoes.*

seethe *verb*

- ADV. **inwardly, privately** *Inwardly she was seething, and vowed to get her own back.* | **quietly, silently**
- PREP. **at** *She was seething at the insult.* **with** *He clenched his fists, seething with anger.*

segregate *verb*

• ADV. **strictly**
• PREP. **according to, by** *Jobs were strictly segregated by gender.* **from** *The women were segregated from the male workers in the factory.* **into** *The common room was segregated into smoking and non-smoking areas.*
• PHRASES **highly segregated** *Women's work has always been highly segregated.* **racially/socially segregated**

segregation *noun*

• ADJ. **complete | racial, religious, residential, sex, social** *to bring an end to sex segregation within the school*
• VERB + SEGREGATION **practise**
• PREP. **~between** *Partitions provided a segregation between the smoking and non-smoking areas of the canteen.* **~by** *segregation by race* **~within**

seize *verb*

1 take hold of sb/sth suddenly and firmly
• ADV. **immediately, suddenly** *He was immediately seized and thrown into prison.*
• PREP. **by** *She seized him by the arm.* **from** *He seized the book from her hand.*
• PHRASES **seize hold of sb/sth** *The wrestlers try to seize hold of each other.*

2 take sth
• ADV. **immediately, promptly** *She promptly seized the opportunity his absence gave her.* **| eagerly, gratefully**
• VERB + SEIZE **be quick to, be ready to** *He was quick to seize on this idea.* **| be determined to | attempt to, try to | fail to** *He had failed to seize his chance.*
• PREP. **on/upon** *The rumours were eagerly seized on by the local press.*
• PHRASES **an attempt to seize sth**

seizure *noun*

• ADJ. **biggest | drugs, land | cocaine, heroin, etc.**
• VERB + SEIZURE **make** *Customs have made their biggest ever seizure of heroin.*
• PHRASES **search and seizure** *The Act confers powers of entry, search and seizure on the police.*

select *verb*

• ADV. **carefully, rigorously | specially | deliberately | arbitrarily, at random, randomly** *The winning entry will be selected at random by computer.* **| automatically** *The program automatically selects and stores the most frequently used data.* **| manually | personally**
• VERB + SELECT **allow sb to, enable sb to**
• PREP. **according to** *The design of the course allows students to select modules according to their interests.* **for** *She has been selected for the England team.* **from** *You can select goods from our catalogue.*
• PHRASES **highly selected** *Although this was a very highly selected study group, the results were in agreement with our findings.* **well selected** *This anthology is well selected and presented.*

selection *noun*

1 process of choosing/being chosen
• ADJ. **careful | random | initial | final | jury, team | natural, sexual** *Natural selection is a key element of Darwin's theory of evolution.*
• VERB + SELECTION **make** *She took a long time to make her selection.* **| win** *She hopes to win selection for the Olympic 800 metres team.*
• SELECTION + NOUN **criteria, policy | procedure, process | board, committee, panel**
• PREP. **~as** *his selection as candidate for the Green Party* **~for**

2 number of people/things that have been chosen
• ADJ. **varied, wide | random** *We interviewed a random selection of teenagers.* **| representative | judicious, well-chosen | final** *The final selection of winners will be announced at the end of the event.*
• PREP. **~from, ~of** *a selection of hits from well-known musicals*

3 collection of goods in a shop, etc. that are for sale
• ADJ. **comprehensive, extensive, huge, large, vast, wide | limited, small | excellent, fine, good, great, interesting, superb**
• VERB + SELECTION **offer** *The shop offers a wide selection of wines.* **| choose from**
• PREP. **~of**

selective *adj.*

• VERBS **be**
• ADV. **extremely, highly, very | increasingly | fairly, quite, rather | necessarily** *The list provided here is necessarily selective.* **| notoriously** *The human memory is notoriously selective.* **| socially** *the socially selective nature of population changes*
• PREP. **about** *He is quite selective about what he studies.* **in** *Most of the girls are extremely selective in their choice of boyfriends.*

self *noun*

• ADJ. **whole** *He put his whole self into the performance.* **| real, true | deep, inner, innermost | private | public** *Her private and public selves were vastly different.* **| normal, usual | former, old** *She knew that with a holiday he would be back to his former self.* **| cheerful** *He's his usual cheerful self again.* **| better** *She knew his better self would struggle to serve her best interests.* **| conscious | physical | good** (*humorous*) *We look forward to seeing Mrs Brown and your good self this evening.*
• VERB + SELF **reveal** *He was afraid to reveal his innermost self.*
• PHRASES **a loss of self, a sense of self, a shadow of your former self**

self-assurance *noun*

• VERB + SELF-ASSURANCE **be lacking in, lack | exude** *In conversation she exudes wit and self-assurance.*

self-confidence *noun*

• ADJ. **great, unshakeable | growing | new, renewed**
• VERB + SELF-CONFIDENCE **have | exude, show | be lacking in, lack | gain | lose | give sb** *A few months living away from home have given him renewed self-confidence.* **| boost, build (up), develop, increase** *He thought a few kind words might boost her self-confidence.* **| dent, shake, undermine**
• PHRASES **an air of self-confidence** *She had an air of self-confidence that he admired.* **a lack of self-confidence**

self-conscious *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look | become, get | make sb** *He studied her in a way that made her very self-conscious.*
• ADV. **acutely, highly, horribly, painfully, very | a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat**
• PREP. **about** *He started to get self-conscious about his weight.*

self-contained *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem | become**
• ADV. **extremely, very | completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly** *The flat is completely self-contained.* **|**

largely *a largely self-contained community* | **fairly, relatively**

self-control *noun*

- VERB + SELF-CONTROL **have | lose | regain | keep** *She struggled to keep her self-control.* | **exercise, show** *You should try exercising a little self-control!* | **take** *It took all the self-control he had not to lose his temper.* | **learn**
- SELF-CONTROL + VERB **snap**
- PHRASES **a lack/loss of self-control**

self-defence *noun*

- SELF-DEFENCE + NOUN **class, group**
- PREP. **in ~** *He told police that he had acted in self-defence.* | **~ against** *self-defence against armed assailants*
- PHRASES **an act of self-defence, the art of self-defence**

self-evident *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem | become**
- ADV. **by no means** *These truths were by no means self-evident when Galileo first suggested them.* | **almost | largely | fairly**
- PREP. **to** *It was self-evident to her that anything so wonderful could not have evolved accidentally.*

self-interest *noun*

- ADJ. **enlightened | pure**
- VERB + SELF-INTEREST **be motivated by | pursue your own**
- PHRASES **in your own self-interest** *Directors may be tempted to act in their own self-interest.*

selfish *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | become**
- ADV. **extremely, incredibly, very | entirely, purely, totally, utterly | pretty, quite, rather** *a pretty selfish attitude* | **basically** *People are basically selfish.*

selfishness *noun*

- ADJ. **pure, utter**
- PHRASES **an act of selfishness** *an act of utter selfishness* **greed and selfishness**

self-pity *noun*

- QUANT. **wave** *He felt a sudden wave of self-pity.*
- VERB + SELF-PITY **wallow in**
- PHRASES **tears of self-pity**

self-respect *noun*

- VERB + SELF-RESPECT **have** *She has little self-respect.* | **lose | regain | keep, preserve** *He chose not to resign to keep his self-respect.*

self-sufficient *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **completely, wholly | almost, virtually | essentially, largely, more or less | fairly, pretty | economically, financially | socially**
- PREP. **in** *These people have now become almost self-sufficient in grain crops.*

sell *verb*

- ADV. **cheaply**
- VERB + SELL **be able to, can/could | want to | plan to | try to** *They are still trying to sell their house.* | **be expected to, expect to** *The novel was expected to sell between 1 000 and 1 500 copies.* | **be willing to | be forced to** *The company has been forced to sell land to recoup some of the losses.* | **be/prove difficult to, be/prove hard to** *The property proved hard to sell.*
- PREP. **at** *We sell these little notebooks at £1 each.* **for** *They sold their house for £147 000.* **to** *She sold her car to a friend.*
- PHRASES **buy and sell (sth)** *Many banks are willing to buy and sell shares on behalf of customers.*

PHRASAL VERB

sell sth off

- ADV. **cheaply** *Derelict inner-city sites could be sold off cheaply for housing.*

semblance *noun*

- VERB + SEMBLANCE **have | lack** *The film lacks any semblance of realism.* | **gain | drop, lose** *He dropped all semblance of dignity and rushed down the street after her.* | **keep, maintain, preserve, retain | bring, give sth** *She struggled to bring a semblance of order to the meeting.* | **restore (sth to), return (sth) to**
- PREP. **in/into a/the ~ of** *She bared her teeth in a semblance of a smile.* | **~ of** *He tried to restore some semblance of normality to their home life.*
- PHRASES **a/some semblance of order**

seminar *noun*

1 class at a university, etc.

- ADJ. **termly, weekly, etc. | graduate**
- QUANT. **series**
- VERB + SEMINAR **conduct, give | attend, go to**
- SEMINAR + NOUN **group | discussion, paper | room | programme, series**
- PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *There was some lively debate at this week's seminar.* | **~ on** *Professor Mackay will give a seminar on musical settings of Verlaine's poetry.*

2 conference for discussion/training

- ADJ. **all-day, half-day, weekend | one-day, two-day, etc. | business, economic | training**
- VERB + SEMINAR **organize, hold, run | attend, go to**
- SEMINAR + VERB **take place**
- SEMINAR + NOUN **participant**

senator *noun*

- ADJ. **American, US | Democratic, Republican | former** *the former US Senator, James Hurley*
- VERB + SENATOR **elect, elect sb (as)**

senior *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **very** *a meeting of all the very senior officers* | **fairly, quite, relatively | enough, sufficiently** *She wasn't senior enough to take such a decision.*
- PREP. **to** *Is Mark senior to you?*

seniority *noun*

- VERB + SENIORITY **attain, gain**
- PREP. **by ~** *Promotion in the job was by seniority.*
- PHRASES **in order of seniority, a level of seniority, next in seniority** *On the death of the captain, the officer next in seniority assumed command.*

sensation *noun*

1 physical feeling

- ADJ. **delicious, exquisite, pleasant, pleasurable, wonderful | unpleasant | curious, odd, strange | burning, choking, prickling, tingling | bodily, physical**
- VERB + SENSATION **experience, feel, have** *He felt a tingling sensation down his side.* | **produce | enjoy** *Most people enjoy the sensation of eating.*
- PREP. **~ of** *the sensation of sand between your toes*

2 ability to feel
- ADJ. **pure** *He gave way to pure sensation.*
- VERB + SENSATION **have** *She had no sensation in her hands.* | **lose**
- SENSATION + VERB **come back**

3 feeling/impression
- ADJ. **curious, eerie, odd, strange**
- VERB + SENSATION **have** *I had the eerie sensation that I was not alone.*
- PREP. **~of** *the sensation of being watched*

4 great excitement/surprise/interest
- ADJ. **great** | **overnight**
- VERB + SENSATION **cause, create** *The film caused a sensation among film critics.*

sense *noun*

1 one of the five natural physical powers of the body
- ADJ. **acute, good, keen** | **poor** | **sixth**
- VERB + SENSE **have** *He has an acute sense of smell.* | **lose** *She lost her sense of hearing early in life.* | **regain** | **heighten, sharpen** | **dull** | **appeal to** *He argued that art should appeal to the senses rather than the intellect.*
- SENSE + VERB **tell sb** *When she came to, her senses told her she was lying on a sandy beach.* | **reel, swim** *Her senses reeled as she fought for consciousness.*
- SENSE + NOUN **organ**
- PREP. **through the ~s** *Although he can't see, he learns a lot through his other senses.*
- PHRASES **an assault on the senses, the evidence of your senses, the five senses, the sense of hearing/sight/smell/taste/touch**

2 understanding/awareness of sth
- ADJ. **deep, great, keen, strong, tremendous** *He felt a deep sense of relief after the phone call.* | **growing, heightened** | **slight, vague** *a vague sense of unease* | **innate, intuitive, natural** *a natural sense of justice* | **moral**
- VERB + SENSE **feel, have** | **display, show** | **give sb** | **lose** | **heighten, sharpen** | **dull**
- PREP. **~of** *He seems to have lost his sense of reality.*

3 natural ability to do/produce sth well
- ADJ. **good** | **bad, poor** | **innate, intuitive, natural** | **business, dress** *He has no dress sense.*
- VERB + SENSE **have**
- PREP. **~of** *a good sense of direction/rhythm/timing*

4 ability to think/act in a sensible way
- ADJ. **good** | **common, horse** *Common sense tells me I should get more sleep.*
- VERB + SENSE **have** *He at least had the sense to call the police.* | **display, show** | **learn** *I wish my daughter would learn some sense.*
- SENSE + VERB **tell sb**
- PHRASES **have more money than sense, (not) an ounce of sense** *If you had an ounce of sense, you'd never have agreed to help him.*

5 reason
- ADJ. **perfect** *It all makes perfect sense* (= is easy to understand).
- VERB + SENSE **make** | **see** *I tried to make him see sense, but he just wouldn't listen.* | **talk** *If you can't talk sense, I'm leaving!*
- PREP. **~in** *There's a lot of sense in what he's saying.*
- PHRASES **talk sense into sb** *We'll try and talk a little sense into her.* **there's no sense in sth** *There's no sense in going home before the film.*

6 your senses ability to think clearly
- VERB + SENSES **come to, regain** | **take leave of** *Have you taken leave of your senses?* | **bring sb to**
- PHRASES **in your (right) senses** *No one in their right senses would give him the job!*

7 meaning
- ADJ. **broad, wide** *The novel is about education in its widest sense.* | **narrow, strict** | **accepted** | **figurative, metaphorical** | **literal** | **pejorative** | **legal, technical**
- VERB + SENSE **have** *That word has three senses.* | **make** *That sentence doesn't make sense* (= has no meaning).
- PREP. **in a ~** *In a sense, she's right.*
- PHRASES **in every sense of the word, in a very real sense** *In a very real sense, post-war repression was the continuation of the war.* **in the true sense of the word**

sense *verb*

- ADV. **clearly, strongly** *I sensed quite strongly that she was angry with me.* | **dimly, vaguely** | **just** *Maybe she could just sense what I needed.* | **intuitively**

senseless *adj.*

1 having no meaning
- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **absolutely, quite** *It was an absolutely senseless act of violence.*

2 unconscious
- VERBS **be, lie** *He lay senseless out in the rain.* | **beat sb, kick sb, knock sb** *The thugs beat him senseless with a baseball bat.* ◇ *The branch of a tree knocked one of the riders senseless.*

sensible *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound** *This approach seems very sensible to me.* | **consider sb/sth, deem sth**
- ADV. **eminently, extremely, really, very** | **perfectly** *In the state I was in, this seemed a perfectly sensible remark.* | **hardly** *Are you going out to search for it at this time of night? It seems hardly sensible.* | **fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably** *Ben's usually pretty sensible.* | **enough** *That advice sounds sensible enough.* | **apparently** | **clearly, obviously** | **politically, strategically**

sensitive *adj.*

1 able to understand other people's feelings
- VERBS **be** | **become** | **make sb** *Her experiences had made her sensitive to other people's troubles.*
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, unusually, very** *a highly sensitive, caring man* | **increasingly** | **quite**
- PREP. **to** *Horses are very sensitive to their riders' moods.*

2 easily upset/annoyed
- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **acutely, deeply, extremely, morbidly, painfully, particularly, terribly, very** | **a bit, pretty, rather**
- PREP. **about** *Teenagers are often very sensitive about their appearance.* **to** *He was acutely sensitive to criticism.*

3 needing to be dealt with carefully
- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, particularly, very** *this highly sensitive issue* | **fairly, rather, somewhat** *a somewhat sensitive question* | **commercially, environmentally, politically, socially** *commercially sensitive information*

4 reacting quickly/more than usual to sth
- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, morbidly, painfully, particularly, unusually, very** | **quite**
- PREP. **to** *Her eyes are very sensitive to light.*

5 able to measure very small changes
- VERBS **be** *The bat's hearing is remarkably sensitive.*
- ADV. **acutely, especially, exquisitely, extremely, highly, keenly, remarkably, very** *The equipment is highly sensitive.* | **fairly, quite** | **enough, sufficiently** *The probe is sensitive enough to detect the presence of a single microbe.*
- PREP. **to** *sensitive to the slightest movement*

sensitivity *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, extreme, great** | **heightened, increased**

- VERB + SENSITIVITY **have | develop, display, show** *Migrating birds show extreme sensitivity to air currents.* | **lack** *Many doctors lack sensitivity when dealing with their patients.*
- PREP. **with ~** *She broke the news to us with great sensitivity.* | **~ in** *She is not known for her sensitivity in dealing with complaints.* **~ over** *There is deep sensitivity over the treatment of minority groups.* **~ to** *The course teaches sensitivity to body language.* **~ towards** *the need for sensitivity towards the views of the children*
- PHRASES **a lack of sensitivity**

sentence *noun*

1 group of words
- ADJ. **long, short** *Try to keep your sentences short.* | **complete, whole | broken, incomplete | grammatical, grammatically correct | grammatically incorrect, ungrammatical | coherent | affirmative, negative | complex, simple | compound**
- VERB + SENTENCE **begin | finish** *Peter finished Jane's sentence for her.* | **construct, form, formulate, generate, write** *He can barely form a grammatical sentence.* | **parse**
- SENTENCE + VERB **contain sth, have sth** *Does the sentence contain an adverb?*
- SENTENCE + NOUN **structure**

2 punishment given by a judge
- ADJ. **maximum, minimum | long, short | harsh, heavy, severe, stiff | lenient, light | indefinite, indeterminate | appropriate | mandatory** *The judge imposed the mandatory sentence for murder.* | **suspended | custodial, jail, prison | non-custodial | death | life**
- VERB + SENTENCE **hand down, impose, pass, pronounce** *The judge will pass sentence on the accused this afternoon.* | **be given, get, receive | serve** *He will have to serve a life sentence.* | **carry out | await** *He spent a week in custody on remand awaiting sentence.* | **face** *She could face a long prison sentence.* | **commute, reduce** *The death sentence may be commuted to life imprisonment.* | **suspend | appeal against | review | quash | carry** *The offence carries a maximum sentence of two years in prison.*
- PREP. **under ~ (of)** *He has been in prison for two months under sentence of death.* | **~ for** *an eight-year sentence for burglary*

sentence *verb*

- PREP. **for** *They had been sentenced for murder.* **to** *He was sentenced to two years in prison.*
- PHRASES **sentence sb to death sentence sb to imprisonment** *The judge sentenced her to life imprisonment.*

sentiment *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, strong | growing, rising | fine, lofty, noble** *All these noble sentiments have little chance of being put into practice.* | **national, popular, public | nationalist/nationalistic, patriotic | anti-British, anti-Japanese, etc. | racist | anti-government, anti-war, etc. | moral, religious** *The people are renowned for their deep religious sentiment.*
- VERB + SENTIMENT **express | agree with, echo, endorse, share** *He agrees with the sentiments expressed in the editorial.* | **disagree with | arouse**
- SENTIMENT + VERB **grow**
- PREP. **~s about/on** *It would be a mistake to ignore their strong sentiments on the issue.* **~ against** *The killings at the weekend helped arouse popular sentiment against the organization.* **~ in favour of** *public sentiment in favour of state ownership*
- PHRASES **my sentiments exactly** (= I agree) *'I don't see why we should change our plans just because of him.' 'My sentiments exactly.'*

separable *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **easily, readily** *Church and State were not easily separable in this period.* | **completely**
- PREP. **from** *The two things were never identical, but never separable from each other.*

separate *verb*

1 move/keep people/things apart
- ADV. **completely, totally | carefully | clearly** *These two branches of the science have now become clearly separated.* | **effectively | easily, readily** *One cannot easily separate moral, social and political issues.* | **formally | legally | physically, spatially | out** *A magnet separates out scrap iron from the rubbish.*
- VERB + SEPARATE **attempt to, try to | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *It was impossible to separate the rival fans.*
- PREP. **from** *separating the boys from the girls* **into** *I separated the documents into two piles.*
- PHRASES **sharply separated** *The disciplines of science and engineering are not always sharply separated.* **widely separated** *The two groups became widely separated.*

2 stop living together
- ADV. **legally**
- VERB + SEPARATE **decide to**
- PREP. **from** *She is separated from her husband.*

separate *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | remain | keep sb/sth** *The women are kept separate from the men.* | **consider sth**
- ADV. **very, widely** *I kept my two lives very separate.* ◇ *species from widely separate parts of the world* | **absolutely, completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly** *The waste water is kept entirely separate from the rainwater.* | **largely | rather, relatively, somewhat | essentially** *The two groups are essentially separate and independent.* | **apparently | hitherto, previously** *to merge the two previously separate businesses* | **geographically, physically**
- PREP. **from** *a lifestyle which is quite separate from that of her parents*

separation *noun*

1 being apart
- ADJ. **complete, total | clear, rigid, strict | long** *She is visiting her family after a long separation.* | **physical**
- PREP. **~ between** *the clear separation of powers between the executive and the legislature* **~ from** *the separation of children from their parents during the war*

2 when a married couple lives apart
- ADJ. **formal, judicial, legal | trial**
- SEPARATION + NOUN **agreement, order**
- PREP. **~ between** *the separation between Mary and her husband* **~ from** *the separation from his wife*

September *noun*

⇨ Note at MONTH

sequel *noun*

1 to a book, film, etc.
- VERB + SEQUEL **do, make, write** *He's been asked to make a sequel to 'Peter Pan'.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Some important new characters appear in the sequel.* | **~ to**

2 sth that happens after sth else
- ADJ. **immediate | strange, unexpected**
- VERB + SEQUEL **have** *The affair had a strange sequel.*
- PREP. **~ to** *The immediate sequel to the price rises was uprisings across the country.*

sequence *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, whole | continuous | complex | correct | opening | closing | alphabetical, chronological, logical, natural, random** *The article describes the chronological sequence of events.* | **action, dance, dream, film | DNA, gene**
- VERB + SEQUENCE **complete** *Complete the following sequence: 1, 4, 8, 13 ...* | **follow** *We had to follow a complex sequence of movements.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The book is more satisfying if you read each chapter in sequence.* **in a/the ~** *The heroine dies in the closing sequence of the film.* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **a sequence of events**

serene *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, sound | remain**
- ADV. **very | perfectly, utterly | almost | quite | outwardly** *beneath the outwardly serene surface*

serenity *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute** *Her face had an expression of absolute serenity.* | **comparative** *She escaped to the comparative serenity of the kitchen.*
- VERB + SERENITY **achieve, find**
- PREP. **with ~** *She was able to face death with serenity.* | **~ of** *older people who have achieved a serenity of understanding*
- PHRASES **a feeling of serenity**

sergeant *noun*

1 officer of low rank in the army/air force
- ADJ. **flight, platoon**

⇨ Note at RANK

2 officer in the police
- ADJ. **police | detective** *Detective Sergeant Peter Wiles* | **desk, duty, station** *Visitors to the police station should report to the station sergeant.*
- PHRASES **the rank of sergeant**

series *noun*

1 number of things that come one after another
- ADJ. **whole** *He is in hospital for a whole series of tests.* | **endless, long | complex** *a complex series of events* | **continuous | concert, lecture, test** (in cricket) *Australia won the test series against England.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The quartet will be performing in a series of lunchtime concerts.* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **the first/last, etc. of a/the series, the first/latest, etc. in a series**

2 programmes on radio/television
- ADJ. **radio, television/TV | comedy, crime, documentary, drama**
- QUANT. **part**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She has a small part in a drama series for radio.* | **~ about/on** *We watched the final part of a series on famous gardens.*

serious *adj.*

1 bad/dangerous
- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become, get** *By this time the riots were getting serious.* | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, particularly, really, very | fairly, quite | potentially**

2 not joking
- VERBS **be, look, sound** *Come on, be serious!* | **become, turn** *He became serious all of a sudden.*
- ADV. **deadly, quite, very**
- PREP. **about** *Are you serious about resigning?*

seriousness *noun*

- ADJ. **deadly, deep, full, great, high** *He maintained an attitude of high seriousness.* | **mock | underlying** *The joke did not obscure the underlying seriousness of his point.* | **moral**
- VERB + SERIOUSNESS **appreciate, realize, recognize, understand** *Only later did he realize the full seriousness of his offence.* | **exaggerate | underestimate | play down | treat sth with** *The problem was not treated with the seriousness it deserved.*
- PREP. **with ~** *She spoke with great seriousness of the hardships she had endured.*
- PHRASES **in all seriousness** *You can't in all seriousness think they'll give you the job!* **take, treat, etc. sth with the utmost seriousness**

sermon *noun*

- ADJ. **lengthy, long | short**
- VERB + SERMON **deliver, give, preach**
- PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *He fell asleep during the sermon.* | **~ against** *He gave a long sermon against abortion.* **~ on** *She preached a sermon on forgiveness.*

servant *noun*

- ADJ. **devoted, faithful, good, loyal, trusted | female, male | maid | hired | indentured | personal | domestic, farm, household, royal**
- VERB + SERVANT **employ, have**
- SERVANT + VERB **serve sb, wait on sb** *An army of servants waited on the king's household.*
- SERVANT + NOUN **girl**
- PHRASES **an army/a retinue of servants** *The duchess arrived, surrounded by her retinue of servants.* **servants' quarters**

serve *verb*

1 give sb food or drink
- ADV. **immediately** *Pour the sauce over the pasta and serve immediately.*
- VERB + SERVE **be ready to** *Cover and chill the salad until ready to serve.*
- PREP. **to** *They served a wonderful meal to more than 50 delegates.* **with** *The delegates were served with a wonderful meal.* ◇ *Serve the lamb with new potatoes and green beans.*
- PHRASES **serve sth chilled/cold/hot** *The quiche can be served hot or cold.*

2 work
- ADV. **faithfully, loyally, well** *She served the family faithfully for many years* (= as a servant).
- VERB + SERVE **continue to**
- PREP. **as** *I shall continue to serve as a trustee.* **in** *She served in the medical corps.* **under** *He served under John Major in the early 1990s.*

service *noun*

1 system that provides sth the public needs
- ADJ. **efficient, excellent, good, valuable | adequate | bad, inadequate, poor, terrible | complete, comprehensive, full | standard | basic | reduced | back-up, support | emergency, essential** *A passer-by called the emergency services* (= the ambulance/fire /police services). ◇ *Essential services* (= the supply of water, gas, electricity) *will be maintained.* | **vital** *providing a vital service to the public* | **available** *Find out what services are available in your area.* | **public | advisory, banking, counselling, financial, information, medical, news, rescue, telephone, etc. | ambulance, diplomatic, fire, foreign, health, intelligence, library, police, postal, prison, probation, prosecution, secret, security, social** *She works for the social services*
- VERB + SERVICE **offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *We offer*

a comprehensive service to home buyers. | **operate, run** | **maintain** | **guarantee** | **improve** | **expand, extend** *We need to expand this valuable service to other cities.* | **cut back on, run down** *This government has systematically run down public services since it took office.* | **suspend** | **axe, cut** | **restore** | **make use of, use** *people who use the library service* | **complain about**

• SERVICE + VERB **improve** | **deteriorate**

• SERVICE + NOUN **industry, sector**

• PREP. **in/out of~** (used of buses, trains, etc.)

• PHRASES **goods and services**

2 work of serving a customer

• ADJ. **efficient, excellent, first-class, first-rate, good, professional, quality** | **bad, poor, terrible** | **prompt, quick** | **slow** | **friendly, personal** | **customer** | **after-sales** *We offer excellent after-sales service on all our goods.* | **room** *If you would like a meal in your room, please call room service.*

• VERB + SERVICE **give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *Our main concern is to provide quality customer service.* | **get** | **guarantee** *We guarantee first-class service.* | **complain about** *complaining about poor service*

3 working for a country, company, etc.

• ADJ. **meritorious, outstanding** | **faithful** | **long** | **active** *He died on active service.* | **military, national** | **domestic** *a job in domestic service* | **community, public** | **voluntary** | **jury**

• VERB + SERVICE **do** *All 18-year-old males are required to do a year's military service.* | **see** *He saw service during the First World War.*

• PREP. **~to** *service to the community*

• PHRASES **conditions of service**

4 work done for sb; help given to sb

• ADJ. **great, immense, invaluable, valuable** | **professional**

• VERB + SERVICE **be of, do sb, perform, render** *May I be of service to you?* ◇ *You have done us a great service.* ◇ *payment for services rendered* | **offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *She offered her services as a childminder.*

• PREP. **at your ~** *The cabin staff are at your service throughout the flight.* | **~s of** *We need the services of a good lawyer.* **~to** *He was given an award for his services to the disabled.*

5 the services the armed forces

• ADJ. **armed**

• VERB + SERVICES **go into, join** *Most of the boys went straight into the services.*

6 bus, train etc.

• ADJ. **efficient, good, reliable** | **fast** | **frequent, regular** | **direct** | **full** | **limited, reduced** *We will be operating a reduced service while engineering work takes place.* | **scheduled** *changes to scheduled services* | **bus, coach, ferry, rail, taxi, train, tram, tube, underground**

• VERB + SERVICE **lay on, offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *Bus companies are planning to lay on extra services.* | **operate, run** | **extend, improve** | **suspend** | **axe, cut** | **restore** | **use** | **complain about**

• PREP. **in ~** *This bus is not in service.* **out of ~** | **~ between** *The company offers direct, fast and frequent services between large towns and cities.* **~from, ~to**

7 religious ceremony

• ADJ. **church, religious** | **funeral, marriage, memorial, etc.** | **afternoon, evening, morning**

• VERB + SERVICE **attend, go to** | **hold**

service *verb*

• ADV. **fully, properly** *The car was fully serviced last month.* | **regularly**

• PHRASES **have/get sth serviced** *You should get all gas appliances regularly serviced.*

session *noun*

1 meeting of a court, parliament, etc.

• ADJ. **stormy** *a stormy session of the European Parliament* | **inaugural, opening** | **closing, final, last** | **current** | **joint** | **open, public** | **closed, private** | **annual, regular, weekly, etc.** | **extraordinary** | **emergency** | **full, plenary** *a full session of the peace talks* ◇ *a plenary session of the committee* | **follow-up** *A follow-up session was held a month after the initial meeting.* | **congressional, parliamentary**

• VERB + SESSION **hold** | **attend** | **boycott** | **address** *The president addressed a closed session of Congress.*

• SESSION + VERB **convene, take place** | **begin, open** | **close, end** | **adopt sth, approve sth** *The session adopted a resolution on disarmament.* | **agree sth** | **call for sth**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *in the opening session* **in ~** *The court is now in session.*

2 time spent doing an activity

• ADJ. **lengthy, long** | **short** | **bargaining, counselling, negotiating, question and answer** | **briefing, coaching, practice, training** | **photo, photographic** | **jam, jazz, recording** | **workout, yoga** | **drinking** *The man fell in the canal after a heavy drinking session.*

• VERB + SESSION **have, offer (sb), provide (sb with), run** *The college runs training sessions every afternoon.* | **attend**

• SESSION + NOUN **guitarist, musician, singer, etc.**

• SESSION + VERB **take place**

• PREP. **~on** *a session on remedial reading*

set *noun*

1 group of similar things

• ADJ. **complete, full, whole** | **common** *These two species share a common set of characteristics.* | **closed, open** *A grammatical choice is drawn from a closed set of options.* | **complex** | **data, instruction** *a computer's instruction set* | **chess, dinner, printing, tea, train**

• VERB + SET **break up** *She had a complete set of these dining-room chairs but it was broken up after she died.* | **complete, make up** *She won a silver medal in the long jump to complete her set* (= of all three types of medal).

• SET + VERB **comprise sth, consist of sth**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *There are ten pictures in the set.* | **~of** *a set of accounts/books/clothes/keys/valves* ◇ *a set of beliefs/circumstances/factors/guidelines*

• PHRASES **one/part of a set** *The plate is part of a set.*

2 scenery for play or film

• ADJ. **film, stage, studio**

• VERB + SET **design** | **build** | **dismantle, take down**

• PREP. **off~** *Off set, the two actors became close friends.* **on (the) ~** *All the cast are on the set throughout.*

3 in tennis

• VERB + SET **play** | **win** | **lose**

• PHRASES **in straight sets** *Rusedski won in straight sets* (= his opponent won none).

set *adj.*

1 ready

• VERBS **be, look, seem** | **get** (used when starting a race) *Get set ... Go!*

• ADV. **all** *Are you all set? Let's go!*

• PREP. **for** *The Italian team looks set for victory.*

2 determined

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **dead**

• PREP. **against** *Her father is dead set against the marriage.* **on** *The council is now set on expanding the sports centre.*

setback *noun*

- ADJ. **temporary | initial | big, major, serious, severe | unexpected | economic, financial | military**
- VERB + SETBACK **experience, receive, suffer** *His research has suffered a temporary setback.*
- PREP. **~for** *a further setback for the coal industry* **~to** *a serious setback to his chances of re-election*

settee *noun*

- ADJ. **comfortable, comfy | chintz, leather-covered, etc. | three-seater, two-seater | wide**
- VERB + SETTEE **sink down on/onto, sit (down) on, slump down on/onto** *He slumped down exhausted on the settee.* | **be sprawled on, lie on, sprawl on**
- PREP. **on the~** *She found her glasses lying on the settee.*
- PHRASES **the arm/back of a settee**

setting *noun*

1 place where sth happens

- ADJ. **unlikely** *The hospital is an unlikely setting for an art auction.* | **unfamiliar | natural** *wild animals in their natural setting* | **attractive, beautiful, charming, delightful, idyllic, lovely, magnificent, perfect, picturesque | dramatic | peaceful, secluded, tranquil | intimate | formal, informal | rural | contemporary** *biblical stories in a contemporary setting* | **social** *The French Club offers the chance to practise your language skills in a social setting.* | **work** *In a work setting, more formal language would be used.* | **hospital, laboratory, etc. | cultural, educational, historical | domestic, family** *elderly people living in a domestic setting*
- VERB + SETTING **create, provide** *The park provides the perfect setting for the play.*
- PREP. **in a/the ... ~** *a hotel in a beautiful setting of landscaped gardens* | **~for** *a lovely setting for a picnic* **~in** *a dramatic setting in Cornwall* **~of** *the rural setting of Petrarch's sonnets*

2 of controls

- ADJ. **high, low, moderate | default, standard**
- VERB + SETTING **adjust, change | increase, reduce**
- PREP. **at a/the~** *The oven should be at a high setting.*

settle *verb*

1 end an argument

- ADV. **amicably, peacefully** *Hopes of settling the conflict peacefully are fading.* | **satisfactorily** *The matter has not yet been satisfactorily settled.* | **eventually, finally | informally, out of court** *The company has agreed to settle out of court* (= come to an agreement without going to court).
- VERB + SETTLE **attempt to, try to | agree to**
- PREP. **with** *After six months, the company finally settled with the unions.*
- PHRASES **an attempt to settle sth**

2 choose a permanent home

- ADV. **permanently** *He has now settled permanently in London.* | **eventually, finally | happily | down**
- VERB + SETTLE **decide to, intend to**
- PHRASES **be densely settled** *a fertile area that was densely settled in early times* | **be ready to settle down** *She felt she wasn't yet ready to settle down.*

3 make sb/yourself comfortable

- ADV. **comfortably, happily, peacefully, snugly** *He settled himself more comfortably in his chair.* | **quickly, soon | back, down** *He settled back in his chair to watch television.* ◇ *She settled down for a quiet doze on the sofa.*
- VERB + SETTLE **be unable to, can't/couldn't** *Unable to settle, she trailed around the house all day.* | **allow sb to, let sb** *She kept fussing around, refusing to let him settle.* | **help (to), help sb (to)** *I took a pill to help settle my nerves.*

PHRASAL VERB

settle in/settle into sth

- ADV. **happily, nicely** *The kids settled happily into their new school.* | **quickly, soon**

settled *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem | get**
- ADV. **very | fairly, quite** *She seems fairly settled in her new job already.* | **comfortably, happily** *He is happily settled with third wife Gladys and their two children.*

settlement *noun*

1 agreement

- ADJ. **early, speedy | final | lasting, long-term | temporary | amicable, friendly, peaceful | just, reasonable, satisfactory | compromise | negotiated | constitutional, diplomatic, financial, political | compensation, divorce, marriage | out-of-court | peace | pay, wage** *Nurses refused to accept a pay settlement less than the rate of inflation.* | **dispute**
- VERB + SETTLEMENT **agree, reach** *Both parties hope to reach an amicable settlement.* | **negotiate, produce** *The union has negotiated a temporary settlement.* | **seek** *Lawyers are seeking an out-of-court settlement.* | **offer**
- PHRASES **the terms of the settlement**

2 payment of debt, etc.

- ADJ. **prompt, speedy | early | full** *full settlement of a debt* | **cash | debt**
- PREP. **in~of** *a cheque in settlement of the amount owing* **under a/the~** *a beneficiary under the settlement*

3 place where people have come to live

- ADJ. **ancient, early | land | agricultural, rural**
- VERB + SETTLEMENT **establish, found** *The Romans established a settlement on the south shore.*
- SETTLEMENT + VERB **grow up** *A settlement grew up around the castle.*
- SETTLEMENT + NOUN **site**

settler *noun*

- ADJ. **early, first, original**
- SETTLER + VERB **move in/into sth** *When the first settlers moved into the area they faced immense hardships.* | **establish, found** *French settlers founded New Orleans.*
- PREP. **~from** *settlers from France* **~in** *Dutch settlers in Cape Town*

severe *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound | become | remain**
- ADV. **especially, exceptionally, extremely, particularly, really, unusually, very** *an exceptionally severe frost* | **increasingly | fairly, moderately, quite, relatively** *women affected by mild to moderately severe symptoms* | **enough, sufficiently** *Cases of plant poisoning severe enough to warrant hospital admission are rare.*

severity *noun*

- ADJ. **great | extreme, utmost | increasing | mock** *She wagged her finger with mock severity.*
- VERB + SEVERITY **assess**

sew *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, neatly** *The squares of fabric were all sewn neatly together.* | **on, together, up** *I sewed on three buttons.* ◇ *He sewed up the tear with needle and thread.*
- PREP. **onto** *He sewed the patch onto the back of his trousers.*

sewage *noun*

- ADJ. **raw, untreated | treated**

- VERB + SEWAGE **dump, pump** *In some parts of the country raw sewage is pumped straight in the sea.* | **treat** *Sewage should be treated in a proper disposal system.*
- SEWAGE + NOUN **farm, plant, works** | **disposal, treatment** | **discharge, effluent, sludge** | **pollution**

sewing *noun*

- ADJ. **hand**
- VERB + SEWING **do** *I haven't done any sewing for ages.* | **take in** *She took in sewing to supplement her income.*
- SEWING + NOUN **basket, kit** | **needle, thread** | **machine** | **machinist**

sex *noun*

1 male or female

- ADJ. **female, male** | **opposite** *At that age they can started becoming shy with the opposite sex.* | **single** *a single-sex school* | **fair/fairer, gentle** (*humorous*) (= women; some women may find these terms annoying)
- SEX + NOUN **change** *She's had a sex change operation.* | **equality** | **discrimination, inequality** | **ratio**
- PREP. **between the ~es** *differences/inequalities/relations between the sexes*
- PHRASES **the battle of the sexes** *The quiz is a battle of the sexes between a team of male students and a team of female students.* **on grounds of sex** *discrimination on grounds of sex* **irrespective/regardless of sex** *The word 'man' can refer to all humans, irrespective of sex.*

2 sexual intercourse

- ADJ. **anal, oral, penetrative, vaginal** | **gay, homosexual, lesbian** | **heterosexual** | **good, great, passionate** | **safe** | **unprotected, unsafe** | **consensual, non-consensual** | **extra-marital, illicit, premarital** | **kinky** | **casual, promiscuous** | **unlawful** *He was convicted of having unlawful sex with an underage girl.* | **explicit, gratuitous** *Films containing explicit sex are banned.*
- VERB + SEX **engage in, have** *She had never had sex before.* | **consent to** | **refuse** | **obtain, procure**
- SEX + NOUN **life** *a healthy sex life* | **drive, urge** *a low sex drive* | **appeal** *Despite his age, he still has a lot of sex appeal.* | **act, practices** *photos showing sex acts ◇ safer sex practices* | **therapist, therapy** | **organ** | **hormone** | **education** | **abuse, assault, attack, crime, offence** *child sex abuse* | **maniac** *He had a reputation of being a sex maniac.* | **fiend** (*informal*), **offender, pest** (*informal*) | **film, scene, show** | **symbol** *She wants to be known as a singer rather than as a sex symbol.* | **shop** | **aid, toy** | **scandal**
- PREP. **~ between** *sex between consenting adults* **~ with** *sex with her husband*

sexism *noun*

- ADJ. **blatant, rampant** *She was shocked by his blatant sexism. ◇ Sexism is rampant in many institutions.*
- VERB + SEXISM **combat, fight (against)** *efforts to combat sexism in the workplace*

sexual intercourse *noun*

- ADJ. **full** | **consensual** | **non-consensual, unlawful** | **unprotected**
- VERB + SEXUAL INTERCOURSE **engage in, have** | **consent to** | **submit to** | **refuse** | **obtain, procure** *the crime of obtaining sexual intercourse by threat*
- SEXUAL INTERCOURSE + VERB **occur, take place** *Rape is committed where sexual intercourse takes place without consent.*
- PREP. **during ~** | **~ with** *She denied having had sexual intercourse with him.*
- PHRASES **an act of sexual intercourse**

sexuality *noun*

- ADJ. **female, male** | **human** | **deviant** | **gay, lesbian** | **overt** *Her overt sexuality shocked cinema audiences.*
- VERB + SEXUALITY **express** *Victorian women were rarely allowed to express their sexuality.* | **come to terms with** *He couldn't come to terms with his sexuality.*

sexy *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look** | **find sb**
- ADV. **extremely, incredibly, really, very** *I find him incredibly sexy.* | **pretty, quite, rather**

shack *noun*

- ADJ. **tin, wooden** | **derelict, dilapidated, run-down**
- PREP. **in a /the ~**

shade *noun*

1 area out of the sunlight

- ADJ. **cool** | **deep** | **welcome** | **dappled** | **leafy** *in the leafy shade of a fig tree*
- QUANT. **patch** *searching for a patch of shade to rest in*
- VERB + SHADE **give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)**
- PREP. **in (the) ~** *a plant that grows well in shade ◇ sitting in the shade* **into the ~** *Let's move into the shade.* **under the ~ of** *sitting under the shade of an umbrella* | **~ for** *giving shade for cattle* **~ from** *The huge trees offered shade from the sun.*
- PHRASES **light and shade**

2 type of colour

- ADJ. **delicate, light, muted, pale, pastel, soft, subtle, translucent** *The rooms were decorated in delicate pastel shades.* | **dark, deep, rich, strong** *His face turned an even deeper shade of red.* | **bright, vivid** | **attractive, beautiful** | **startling, stunning** *painted in startling shades of pink and orange* | **autumnal, natural, neutral, warm** *Towels in warm shades can soften the room.*
- VERB + SHADE **be available in, come in** *This wool is available in 18 stunning shades.*
- PREP. **in a ~** *The sea glistened in shades of blue and emerald.* | **~ for** *our new range of shades for lips and eyes* | **~ of** *He threw out his old suits, all in shades of grey and brown.*

3 small difference

- ADJ. **political** *reformers of all political shades*
- PREP. **~ of** *a word with various shades of meaning*
- PHRASES **shades of opinion**

shade *verb*

- ADV. **completely** | **lightly, partially** *This plant prefers a lightly shaded position.*
- PREP. **against** *She shaded her eyes against the fierce sun.* **from** *We were completely shaded from the sun by the poplar trees.* **with** *a small town square shaded with trees*

shading *noun*

- ADJ. **light, subtle** *an effect that is achieved with subtle shading* | **dark, heavy**

shadow *noun*

- ADJ. **dark, dense, deep, strong** *The house lay in dark shadow.* | **giant, long** | **grotesque, monstrous, sinister, strange, terrible** | **dancing, flickering**
- VERB + SHADOW **cast, make, produce, throw** *The boat's sail cast a shadow on the water. ◇ Use a desk light to produce a strong shadow. ◇ The candles on the table threw huge flickering shadows against the wall.* | **fill sth with ~s** *The streets were now filled with terrible shadows.* | **emerge from, loom up out of, step out from/of ~s** *Suddenly a huge figure loomed up out of the shadows.* | **move into, shrink into, slip (back) into ~s** *She shrank back into*

the shadows as the footsteps approached. | **lurk in, wait in, watch from** *criminals lurking in the shadows*

- SHADOW + VERB **fall, lie** *The evening shadows were beginning to fall.* ◇ *Deep shadows lay across the small clearing where they sat.* | **get longer, lengthen** *As the shadows lengthened, the men drifted home for their tea.* | **dance, leap, move, pass** *the leaping shadows of the flames* ◇ *The shadows of the clouds passed over us.*
- PREP. **among the ~s** *an odd shape among the shadows* **in the ~s** *I could just make out a figure in the shadows.* **into the ~s** *I backed into the shadows until the police car had passed.* **in ~** *His face was in shadow.* **into ~** *The storm clouds threw the mountain peaks into dense shadow.* **from/out of the ~s** *A huge figure stepped out of the shadows.* **through the ~s** *the fears that kept crowding in on her as she hurried through the shadows*
- PHRASES **live in the shadow of sb/sth** (*often figurative*) *She had always lived in the shadow of her older sister.*

shaft *noun*

- ADJ. **deep** | **vertical** | **lift, mine** (also **mineshaft**) *A fire broke out in the main lift shaft.* | **air, ventilation**
- VERB + SHAFT **bore, drill, sink**
- PREP. **down a/the ~** *The body had been thrown down a disused mineshaft.* **in/into a/the ~ through a/the ~** *The workers go down to the tunnels through a vertical shaft sunk from the top of the cliff.*
- PHRASES **the bottom/top of a shaft** *They lowered him down to the bottom of the deep shaft.*

shake *noun*

- ADJ. **brisk, good, vigorous** *Give the tablecloth a good shake before putting it away.* | **little, slight** | **mental** *He gave himself a mental shake and got down to work.* | **rueful** *a rueful shake of the head*
- VERB + SHAKE **give sb/sth**
- PREP. **with a ~** | **~ of**
- PHRASES **a shake of your/the head**

shake *verb*

1 of a person/building

- ADV. **badly, uncontrollably, violently** *Her hands were shaking so badly that she couldn't hold her glass.* | **almost** *He was almost shaking with the intensity of what he was saying.* | **fairly** (*informal*) *Natalie fairly shook with laughter.* | **literally, physically** *I was numb with dread. I was literally shaking.*
- PREP. **with** *She was shaking with rage.*
- PHRASES **be shaking all over** *He was crying and shaking all over.* **be shaking like a leaf, find yourself/start shaking** *I found myself shaking uncontrollably with cold.* **stop shaking** *I just couldn't stop shaking.*

2 object/person

- ADV. **roughly, vigorously, violently** *He shook the blankets vigorously to get rid of the dust.* ◇ *She must have shaken the baby quite violently to inflict such severe injuries.* | **gently, slightly** | **well** *Shake well before use.* (instructions on a bottle of medicine, etc.) | **suddenly** | **physically**
- PREP. **by** *He shook her gently by the shoulders.*

3 your head

- ADV. **decisively, emphatically, firmly** | **fiercely, vehemently, vigorously, violently, wildly** | **a little, gently, slightly** | **quickly** | **slowly** | **dismissively, impatiently** | **despairingly, desperately, dismally, gloomily, helplessly, miserably, mournfully, regretfully, ruefully, sadly, sorrowfully** | **wearily** | **disbelievingly, doubtfully, wonderingly** | **just, merely, only, simply** *He merely shook his head.* | **from side to side**
- PREP. **at** *He shook his head at her disbelievingly.* **in** *She shook her head in disbelief.*

4 sb's hand

- ADV. **firmly, vigorously** | **warmly**
- PHRASE **shake sb by the hand** *Our host shook each of us warmly by the hand*

PHRASAL VERB

shake sb/sth off

- ADV. **completely, fully** | **quickly** | **easily** *He had not easily shaken Claudine off.* | **off** *I can't seem to shake off this cold.*
- VERB + SHAKE SB/STH OFF **can't/couldn't (seem to)** *She never seemed to completely shake the dumb blonde image.* | **seem to** | **try to**

shaken *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look** | **leave sb** *The experience left her deeply shaken.*
- ADV. **badly, considerably, deeply, profoundly, quite, severely** | **a bit, a little, rather, somewhat** *Are you all right? You look a bit shaken up.* | **clearly, obviously, visibly** | **still** | **up**
- PREP. **by** *She was visibly shaken by the news.*

shake-up *noun*

- ADJ. **big, major, radical** | **urgent** | **boardroom, council, personnel**
- VERB + SHAKE-UP **need** | **call for** *The paper calls for an urgent shake-up in the system for looking after the elderly.* | **plan** *The headline read 'Local council plans shake-up'.* | **face, go through, have, undergo** *Police forces face the biggest shake-up in their 150-year history.* | **survive** *My job did not survive the shake-up.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the posts that were scrapped in the recent shake-up* | **~ at** *a major shake-up at the company* **~ in** *a radical shake-up in the chemical industry*

shaky *adj.*

1 shaking because you are frightened/ill

- VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound** | **get, go** | **leave sb/sth** *The experience had left him rather shaky.*
- ADV. **distinctly, extremely, very** | **all** *You've gone all shaky!* | **a bit, a little, rather, slightly**
- PREP. **with** *Her voice was low and shaky with emotion.*

2 not firm or strong

- VERBS **be, feel, look** | **remain**
- ADV. **dangerously, decidedly, distinctly, extremely, very** *Financially, the arrangement was distinctly shaky.* | **a bit, a little, pretty, rather, somewhat**

shallow *adj.*

1 not deep

- VERBS **be, look** | **become, get** *The water gets quite shallow towards the shore.* | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **comparatively, fairly, quite, relatively** *Don't worry, the water's quite shallow.* | **enough, sufficiently** *Follow the south shore, crossing the river where it is shallow enough.*

2 not showing serious thought

- VERBS **appear, be, seem** *Tony seemed very shallow and immature.*
- ADV. **exceedingly, extremely, very** | **quite, rather**

shame *noun*

1 feeling that you have lost the respect of others

- ADJ. **deep**
- VERB + SHAME **be filled with, feel** | **bring, cause** *His arrest for stealing brought shame on his family.* | **die of** (*figurative*) *I nearly died of shame!*
- PREP. **from ~** *She wept from the shame of having let everyone down.* **in ~** *She shut her eyes in shame.* **to your ~** *To my shame, I didn't tell Robert about the party.* **without ~**

He had cried noisily and without shame at the news of Esther's death. **with ~** *She blushed with shame.* | **~ about/over** *You feel absolutely no shame over what you did, do you?* **~ at** *She felt a flush of shame at what she'd done.*

- PHRASES **a cause for shame** *Her pregnancy was no cause for shame.* **a feeling/sense of shame, bow/hang your head in shame** *He was being held by two security guards, his head bowed in shame.*

2 a shame sth that makes you feel disappointed

- ADJ. **crying, great, real, terrible, wicked**
- PREP. **~ about** *It's a terrible shame about Stuart losing his job, isn't it?*
- PHRASES **a bit of a shame, rather a shame, such a shame, what a shame** *What a shame you can't come!*

shame *verb*

- ADV. **publicly** *The people who did this deserve to be publicly shamed.*
- PREP. **into** *An outcry from customers has shamed the company into lowering its prices.*

shampoo *noun*

1 liquid soap for washing hair

- ADJ. **anti-dandruff, baby, frequent-use, gentle, mild, moisturizing, revitalizing**
- VERB + SHAMPOO **use, wash your hair with**
- PREP. **~ for** *a shampoo for greasy hair*
- PHRASES **shampoo and conditioner**

2 act of washing hair

- VERB + SHAMPOO **give sb/sth** | **have**
- PHRASES **a shampoo and set** *I'll have a shampoo and set, please.*

shape *noun*

1 physical outline

- ADJ. **basic, simple** *The children cut the paper into various simple shapes.* | **characteristic, distinctive** *I recognized the distinctive shape of a Boeing-747.* | **curious, interesting, unusual, weird** | **awkward** *The desk was an awkward shape and wouldn't fit through the door.* | **original** | **geometric/geometrical, regular, symmetrical** | **complex** | **asymmetrical, irregular** | **odd, random** *tiles of random shape* | **solid, three-dimensional** | **aerodynamic** | **angular, arch, circular, cone/conical, cylindrical, diamond, dome, egg, elliptical, elongated, hemispherical, hexagonal, oblong, pentagonal, pointed, pyramid/pyramidal, rectangular, round, spherical, triangular, wedge** | **rounded, smooth** | **arrow, banana, cross, pear, star, T, etc.** *The road forms an L shape.* ◇ *The bruise was a sort of mushroom shape.* | **blurred, ghostly, shadowy, vague** | **huge, massive** | **black, dark, grey** | **human** | **body** *You can't change your natural body shape.*
- VERB + SHAPE **cut out, draw, make, trace** *First draw the rough shape of your chosen animal.* ◇ *Fold the paper to make the shape of a cone.* | **cut sth into, make sth in, produce sth in** *a cheese similar to Brie but produced in a different shape* | **come in, have** *Tables come in various shapes.* | **assume, make, take on** *Ordinary things assumed different shapes in the mist.* | **keep, retain** *These garments will retain their shape even with repeated washing.* | **regain** | **change** | **lose** | **distort** *The wide-angle lens distorts shapes.* | **distinguish, make out, see** *I could just make out the shapes of animals in the field.*
- SHAPE + VERB **appear, emerge, loom** *Ghostly shapes loomed out of the fog.*
- PREP. **in the ~ of** *a doormat in the shape of a cat*
- PHRASES **out of shape** *The bicycle had been battered out of shape.* **oblong/rectangular/hexagonal, etc. in shape** *The island is roughly circular in shape.*

2 structure/nature of sth

- ADJ. **general** | **changing** | **final** | **future**
- VERB + SHAPE **alter, change, determine, influence** *He did much to determine the shape of Europe's political map at that time.* | **take** *A wonderful idea began to take shape in her brain.* | **give** *the words we use to give a shape to our feelings*
- PHRASES **in any shape or form** *I can't stand insects in any shape or form.* **the shape of things to come** *This revolutionary transport system could be the shape of things to come.*

3 good or bad condition

- ADJ. **fine, good, great** | **bad, poor** | **physical** *He's 64, but he's in better physical shape than I am.*
- VERB + SHAPE **get sb/sth into, knock/lick/whip sb/sth into** *Get your body into shape for the summer!* ◇ *Leave the boy with me—I'll soon knock him into shape!* | **be in, keep in, stay in** *You are in pretty good shape for your age.* ◇ *She likes to stay in shape.* | **be out of**

shape *verb*

- ADV. **profoundly** *Memory can be profoundly shaped by subsequent experience.* | **largely** | **actively, deliberately** *actively shaping the history of their country*
- VERB + SHAPE **help (to)**
- PHRASES **a part/role in shaping sth**

shaped *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **beautifully, perfectly** *her beautifully shaped mouth* | **grotesquely** | **irregularly** | **awkwardly** *All the rooms in the house were awkwardly shaped.* | **curiously, oddly, strangely** *an oddly shaped parcel* | **specially** *You can buy specially shaped bricks for an arch.*
- PHRASES **be shaped like sth** *curious vases shaped like birds and animals*

share *noun*

1 part of sth that has been divided

- ADJ. **bigger, large, the lion's, major, significant, substantial** | **full** | **modest** *a modest share of total exports* | **5%, 10%, etc.** *The wife owns an 80% share of their second home.* | **equal** | **disproportionate** *The government devotes a disproportionate share of the budget to military expenditure.* | **proportionate** | **market** *The company's market share slipped to under 15% last month.*
- VERB + SHARE **get, have, receive, take** *You should receive a large share of the profits.* ◇ *Hospitals take the lion's share of the NHS budget.* | **increase, reduce** | **claim** *Everyone seems to want to get into television to claim their share of fame and fortune.* | **do** *We must all do our share of the work.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a reduced share of the vote*
- PHRASES **sb/sth has their/its (fair) share of sth** *The industry has had its fair share of problems.*

2 in a company

- ADJ. **ordinary** | **preference**
- VERB + SHARE **acquire, buy, get, invest in, purchase** | **have, hold** (*formal*), **own** | **sell** | **deal in, trade in** *a new firm dealing in US shares* | **float, issue** *The company has issued four classes of shares.*
- SHARE + NOUN **price, value** *Hong Kong share prices plunged.* | **valuation** | **certificate** | **portfolio** | **capital** | **option, scheme** *The Chief Executive's share option has earned him over £2 million.* | **ownership** | **transaction, transfer** | **purchase** | **issue, offer, sale** *A share issue has been launched to finance the restoration of the building.* | **dealing** *allegations of illegal share dealings*
- PREP. **~ in** *I've got a few shares in British Aerospace.*
- PHRASES **a class of shares, the value of your shares** *Will this affect the value of my shares?*

⇨ Note at PER CENT (for more verbs)

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

share *verb*

- ADV. **fully** *Personal experience of childbirth gives a dimension of knowledge that others cannot fully share.* | **equally** *We shared the money equally between the three of us.* | **out**
- VERB + SHARE **want to** | **be prepared to, be willing to** *experienced teachers willing to share their expertise with others* | **be reluctant to** | **be forced to, have to** | **agree to** | **refuse to** | **be entitled to** *Each partner is entitled to share in the profits of the business.* | **let sb** *She wished he would let her share his pain.*
- PREP. **among** *How do you share out three cakes among four people?* **between** *Responsibility is shared between parents and teachers.* **in** *He shared in our enthusiasm for rowing.* **with** *She had to share a bedroom with her sister.*
- PHRASES **widely shared** *These ideas are widely shared in the community.*

shareholder *noun*

- ADJ. **big, large, major, substantial** | **small** | **main, principal** | **controlling, majority** *The government is still a majority shareholder in the industry.* | **minority** | **corporate, institutional** | **ordinary, private** *voicing the concerns of ordinary shareholders*
- PREP. **~ in** *the major shareholders in the company*

shark *noun*

- ADJ. **killer, man-eating**
- SHARK + VERB **attack sb, maul sb**
- SHARK + NOUN **attack** | **fishing**
- PHRASES **shark-infested** *The boat went down in shark-infested waters off the coast of South Africa.*

sharp *adj.*

1 having a fine edge or point

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** | **stay** | **keep sth**
- ADV. **extremely, really, very, wickedly** *a display of wickedly sharp teeth* | **pretty, quite, rather**
- PHRASES **as sharp as a razor**

2 very great or sudden

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **particularly, very** | **fairly, quite, rather** *a fairly sharp rise in the cost of living*

3 able to think/act/understand/see/hear quickly

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, razor, very** *a razor sharp mind* | **pretty, quite**

4 angry/severe

- VERBS **be, sound** *Her voice sounded rather sharp.*
- ADV. **very** | **a bit, quite, rather** | **suddenly** *'Stick to the facts,' said Romanov, his voice suddenly sharp.*
- PREP. **with** *She was quite sharp with me when I talked during her lecture.*

5 flavour

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extremely, very** *Raw cranberries are extremely sharp and must always be cooked with a little sugar.* | **slightly** *This cheese has a slightly sharp flavour.*

shatter *verb*

1 break into very small pieces

- ADV. **completely**
- PHRASES **shatter (sth) into pieces** *The mirror shattered into a thousand pieces.*

2 destroy sth completely

- ADV. **completely** *an event that completely shattered her life* | **abruptly, brutally, rudely, suddenly** *The moment was abruptly shattered by the sound of Mia's loud voice.*

shattered *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound**
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, totally** *His run had left him feeling totally shattered.* | **pretty** | **emotionally** *feeling drained and emotionally shattered after her ordeal*

shave *noun*

- ADJ. **close, smooth** *You can get a really close, smooth shave with this new double-bladed razor.*
- VERB + SHAVE **need** *He badly needed a shave.* | **get, have** *He had a bath and a quick shave first.* | **give sb**

shawl *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy** | **light** | **crocheted, knitted** | **embroidered, fringed**
- VERB + SHAWL **be draped in, be wrapped in** | **drape, throw, wrap** *Ruth draped a shawl over her shoulders.* | **throw off** | **draw, pull** *She pulled her shawl about her protectively.* | **tie** *wearing a shawl tied around her waist*
- SHAWL + VERB **cover sth**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

shed *noun*

- ADJ. **lean-to** | **storage** | **engine, goods, loco, locomotive, railway, train** | **tool** | **bicycle, bike** | **cow** | **milking** | **garden, potting**
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

sheep *noun*

- ADJ. **hill** | **lost, stray** *the doleful cries of lost sheep*
- QUANT. **flock, herd**
- VERB + SHEEP **farm, keep, raise, rear** *My grandfather used to raise sheep in Wales.* | **tend** | **slaughter** | **shear** | **drive, herd, round up, shepherd** *The dogs herded the sheep into the pen.*
- SHEEP + VERB **graze** *There were a lot of sheep grazing high up on the mountain.* | **bleat, (go) baa** | **lamb** *It's nearly the sheep's lambing time.*
- SHEEP + NOUN **farm, station** *a 4 000-acre sheep station in New South Wales* | **farmer** | **farming, industry** | **dip** | **dog** (also **sheepdog**) | **flock** | **pasture** | **shearing**
- PHRASES **a breed of sheep**

sheet *noun*

1 large piece of fabric used on a bed

- ADJ. **clean, fresh** *a pile of clean sheets* | **crumpled** *She had slept in her bed—the sheets were crumpled.* | **white** | **cool** | **cotton, linen, plastic, rubber, satin, silk** | **bed, double, fitted, single** | **bottom, top**
- VERB + SHEET **change, fold, put on, tuck in** *She changed the sheets on all the beds.* ◇ *Could you put some fresh sheets on the bed?* | **climb between, slide between, slip between/under** *I slipped under the sheets and was asleep in an instant.* | **cover sb/sth with, pull back/over/up** *The police had covered the body with a sheet.* ◇ *I pulled the sheet up over my nose.*
- PREP. **beneath/under a/the ~** | **between the ~** *She lay between the cool sheets.*
- PHRASES **sheets and blankets**

2 piece of paper

- ADJ. **blank, clean** *He pulled a blank sheet of paper towards him and began to write.* | **A3, A4, etc.** | **large** | **printed, typed** *The advertisement was a single printed sheet.* | **loose, separate** | **answer, balance, data, diet, fact, information, news, record, score** *I sent for the programme's free fact sheet on the disease.*
- VERB + SHEET **take, use** *Take a clean sheet of paper and start again.*
- SHEET + NOUN **music**
- PREP. **~ of** *a sheet of blotting paper*
- PHRASES **a sheet of paper**

3 flat thin piece of any material
- ADJ. **flat, large, thin | baking | dust** *The furniture was covered in dust sheets.* | **canvas, plastic, polythene | ice** *the Antarctic ice sheet*
- SHEET + NOUN **metal, steel, vinyl** *sheet metal workers*
- PREP. **~ of** *a sheet of glass/plastic/metal* ◇ *(figurative) Sheets of flame shot into the air.*

shelf *noun*

- ADJ. **high, low | deep, shallow | bottom, middle, top** *He took a book down from the top shelf.* | **bare, empty | open | dusty | glass, metal, wooden | bathroom, kitchen, library, shop, supermarket**
- VERB + SHELF **have** *The fridge had three shelves.* | **build, put up** *She soon learned how to put up her own shelves.* | **arrange sth on, display sth on, put sth (back) on, replace sth on, return sth to, stack sth on, stock** *I put the packet back on the shelf.* ◇ *He's got a job stocking shelves in a supermarket.* | **clear** *I've cleared a shelf in the cupboard for you.* | **get sth down from/off, pick sth from/off, remove sth from, take sth down from/off** *The supermarket immediately removed the product from its shelves.* | **fill, fit on, go on, remain on, sit on** *Souvenirs filled the shelves.* ◇ *Her diaries just sat on the shelf for years* (= nobody looked at them for years). | **reach (for/to)** *She reached for the shelf next to the bed.*
- SHELF + VERB **be full of sth, contain sth, hold sth**
- SHELF + NOUN **space | life** *The medicine has a shelf life of six months.*
- PREP. **off a/the ~** *I knocked it off the shelf by accident.* **on a/the ~** *the books on the shelves* | **~ of** *a shelf of books on economics*
- PHRASES **be filled/lined with shelves** *The walls of her study were lined with shelves.* **a place on your shelves** *The book deserves a place on everyone's shelves.*

shell *noun*

1 on eggs/nuts/some animals
- ADJ. **broken, empty, hard, outer, protective, thick** *(figurative) She had built up a protective shell of indifference around herself.* | **egg** (also **eggshell**) | **cockle, conch, cowrie, fossil, mollusc, mussel, oyster, scallop, sea** (also **seashell**), **snail** *The garden was littered with empty snail shells.* | **coconut, walnut**
- VERB + SHELL **have** *creatures that have shells* | **come out of, emerge from** *(often figurative) He's really come out of his shell since he met Marie.* | **go (back) into, retreat into, withdraw into** *The snail went back into its shell.* | **remove sth from** *Remove the mussels from their shells.*

2 explosive weapon
- ADJ. **heavy | unexploded | anti-aircraft, artillery, cannon, howitzer, mortar**
- VERB + SHELL **load | fire**
- SHELL + VERB **fall, land | blow up, burst, crash, explode | hit sth, strike sth** *Two shells hit the roof.* | **blow sth apart/off, blow sb/sth up**
- SHELL + NOUN **fire** *They braved heavy shellfire to rescue the wounded.* | **case/casing, fragments, splinter | crater, hole**

3 outer walls of a building
- ADJ. **concrete | burnt-out, empty, hollow** *The fire reduced the school to a hollow shell.*

shelter *noun*

1 protection from danger/bad weather
- VERB + SHELTER **afford (sb), give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *The great elm trees gave shelter from the wind.* | **need | find, run for, seek, take | refuse sb** *The nuns won't refuse you shelter.* | **leave** *We had to leave the shelter of the trees.*
- PREP. **in/under the ~ of** *standing in the shelter of the shop doorway* | **~ from** *to seek shelter from the rain*
- PHRASES **shelter for the night**

2 small building that gives protection
- ADJ. **makeshift, temporary | stone, underground, wooden | air-raid, bomb, bus, emergency, fallout**
- VERB + SHELTER **build, erect, make, put up** *The villagers were building temporary shelters.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *You'll be safer in the shelter.* | **~ for** *a shelter for cattle*

sheltered *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look**
- ADV. **snugly, well** *The farmyard was snugly sheltered with buildings on three sides.* | **fairly, quite, relatively**

shelve *verb*

1 put sth to one side and leave it for a while
- ADV. **quietly** *Plans to expand the company have had to be quietly shelved.*
- VERB + SHELVE **be forced to, have to**

2 slope
- ADV. **gently, steeply** *The ground shelves quite steeply here.* | **down** *The beach shelves gently down to the sea.*
- PREP. **to, towards**

sherry *noun*

- ADJ. **small | cream, dry, sweet | cooking**
- QUANT. **bottle, glass**
- VERB + SHERRY **have** *I'll have a small sherry, please.* | **drink, sip**
- SHERRY + NOUN **glass**

shield *noun*

1 used to protect the body
- ADJ. **riot**
- VERB + SHIELD **be armed with, be equipped with, carry, have | act as** *Look for something that can act as a shield, like a dustbin lid.*
- PREP. **behind a/the ~** *a row of police officers behind their riot shields* **on a/the ~** *She did not recognize the coat of arms on his shield.*

2 sb/sth used for protecting yourself
- ADJ. **protective | human | nuclear | heat** *The nose of the space capsule is protected by a heat shield.* | **breast, face, gum, hand**
- VERB + SHIELD **use sb/sth as** *They used 400 hostages as human shields.* | **form**
- PREP. **~ against** *The ozone layer forms a shield against harmful solar rays.*

shield *verb*

- ADV. **partially, partly | carefully** *He carefully shielded the flame with his cupped hand.*
- VERB + SHIELD **try to** *trying to shield the children from the full horrors of the war*
- PREP. **against** *She raised her hand to shield her eyes against the sun.* **from** *new laws to shield companies from foreign competition* **with** *He shielded her with his body.*

shift *noun*

1 change
- ADJ. **distinct, dramatic, fundamental, major, marked, profound, pronounced, radical, significant, substantial | discernible | slight, subtle | gradual | abrupt, sudden | decisive, irreversible, long-term | climate, cultural, demographic, ideological, policy, population**
- VERB + SHIFT **be, represent** *These proposals represent a dramatic shift in policy.* | **bring about, cause, lead to, produce, result in | mark, see** *The moment marked a*

significant shift in attitudes to the war. | **detect** *I detected a subtle shift towards our point of view.* | **explain** *one factor which may explain the president's policy shift*

- SHIFT + VERB **occur, take place** *These climate shifts occurred over less than a decade.*
- PREP. **~ between** *the many shifts between verse and prose that occur in Shakespeare* **~ (away) from** *the shift away from direct taxation* **~ in** *a shift in public opinion* **~ to** *a sudden shift to the right in British politics* **~ towards** *a shift towards part-time farming*

2 division of the working day

- ADJ. **double, long, split** *I agreed to work double shifts for a few weeks.* | **day, early, late, night** | **eight-hour, ten-hour, etc.** | **afternoon, evening, morning, weekend**
- VERB + SHIFT **be/come/go on, do, work (in) ~s** *I'm doing the early shift this week.* ◇ *I didn't realize that I'd have to work shifts.* ◇ *The clinic is staffed by ten doctors who work in shifts.* | **change (your) ~s** *It was 8.00 a.m. and the nurses were changing shifts.* ◇ *My husband has changed his shifts, from the afternoon shift to the night one.* | **be/go/come off**
- SHIFT + NOUN **work** | **supervisor, manager, worker** | **pattern, system** *They'd altered his shift pattern twice in the past fortnight.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *a decision for the chief nurse on each shift*

shift *verb*

1 move

- ADV. **slightly** *Julie shifted her position slightly and smiled.* | **impatiently, restlessly, uncomfortably, uneasily** *She shifted uncomfortably in her chair.* | **away**
- PREP. **from** *She shifted her gaze away from the group of tourists.* **onto** *He shifted his weight onto his left foot.* **to** *Her eyes shifted to his face.*
- PHRASES **shift from foot to foot**

2 change

- ADV. **dramatically, markedly** *The emphasis has shifted markedly in recent years.* | **slightly** | **effectively** | **simply** *We cannot simply shift the responsibility onto someone else.* | **gradually, slowly** | **rapidly** | **suddenly** | **constantly, continually** *constantly shifting alliances*
- VERB + SHIFT **attempt to, try to** *trying to shift the blame onto the government* | **tend to** | **begin to**
- PREP. **(away) from** *I felt the advantage had suddenly shifted away from us.* **onto, to** *His sympathies rapidly shifted to the side of the workers.* **towards** *These changes will shift the balance in higher education more towards science subjects.*

shin *noun*

- VERB + SHIN **kick (sb in/on)** *I kicked him hard in the shins to shut him up.* | **bang, bark, bruise, gash, graze, knock** *I barked my shin on a tree stump.*
- SHIN + NOUN **bone** | **guard, pad**
- PREP. **on the/your ~** *a nasty cut on her shin*

shine *verb*

- ADV. **brightly, brilliantly** *The sun was shining brightly.* | **faintly** | **briefly** | **steadily** | **warmly** | **down, in, out** *Sunlight shone in through the window.*
- VERB + SHINE **seem to** *(figurative) She seemed to shine with an inner radiance.* | **make sth** *You've really made that floor shine!*
- PREP. **at** *The watchman shone his torch at us.* **from** *(figurative) Love and pride shone from her eyes.* **in** *The water was shining faintly in the moonlight.* **like** *The dark wood shone like glass.* **on/upon** *The light shone on his face.* **with** *(figurative) His dark eyes shone with excitement.*

ship *noun*

- ADJ. **wooden** | **enemy** | **cargo, container, cruise, merchant, pirate, sailing, supply**
- QUANT. **fleet**
- VERB + SHIP **board, come/go aboard, come/go on board** | **sail** | **steer** | **moor** *The ship is now permanently moored on the Thames in London.* | **build, launch** | **load (sth onto), unload (sth from)** *The dockers were loading the cargo onto the ship.* | **christen, name** | **abandon** *The captain gave the order to abandon ship.* | **go down with** *The captain went down with his ship.* | **scuttle, sink, torpedo** | **jump** *Some of the crew jumped ship* (= left it illegally) *at Gibraltar and disappeared.*
- SHIP + VERB **carry sb/sth** *a ship carrying more than a thousand people* | **arrive, dock** | **anchor, be/lie at anchor** *Their ship lay at anchor at the mouth of the harbour.* | **depart, go, leave, put to sea, sail, set sail** | **be wrecked, collide with sth, hit sth, run aground** | **capsize** | **go down, sink**
- PREP. **aboard/on/on board a/the ~** *They are now on a ship bound for New York.* **by ~** *There was no time to send the goods by ship.* | **~ to/(bound) for**
- PHRASES **the bow/stern of a ship, the captain/crew of a ship, the deck of a ship**

shipment *noun*

1 quantity of goods sent from one place to another

- ADJ. **arms, drug, oil, plutonium, weapons, etc.**
- VERB + SHIPMENT **receive, send** | **escort** *An armed patrol boat will escort the shipment.* | **seize** *Customs officers have seized a large shipment of cocaine.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a shipment of arms*

2 act of transporting goods

- ADJ. **illegal** | **bulk** | **onward** *taken to Aqaba in Jordan for onward shipment to Brazil* | **waste** *trying to ban toxic waste shipments*
- VERB + SHIPMENT **await** *large quantities of food awaiting shipment to the worst affected areas* | **arrange, begin, make** | **ban, stop** | **resume**
- PREP. **~ from** *to arrange a shipment from India* **~ to** *illegal shipment of arms to the Third World*

shirt *noun*

- ADJ. **clean, crisp, fresh** *He wears a crisp white shirt to the office every day.* | **baggy** | **unbuttoned** | **long-sleeved, short-sleeved** | **button-down, collarless, open-necked** | **unironed** | **football, polo, rugby, sports** | **Hawaiian**
- VERB + SHIRT **button up, unbutton** | **pull off** | **tuck in** *He tucked his shirt into his trousers.* | **wash** | **iron**
- SHIRT + NOUN **button, collar, cuff, front, pocket, sleeve, tail**
- PHRASES **in (your) shirtsleeves** (= not wearing a jacket)

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

shiver *noun*

- ADJ. **little, slight, small** | **involuntary** | **sudden, unexpected** | **cold** | **delicious** *a delicious shiver of pleasure*
- VERB + SHIVER **give** *She gave a little shiver and laughed.* | **feel** *He felt a shiver of excitement.* | **send** *His appearance sent a cold shiver down her spine.* | **suppress** *She tried to suppress a shiver of anticipation.*
- SHIVER + VERB **go, pass, ripple, run** *A shiver of unease ran through the audience.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *'I'm scared,' she admitted, with a shiver.* | **~ of** *a shiver of fear*
- PHRASES **give sb the shivers** *Just thinking about flying gives me the shivers.*

shiver *verb*

- ADV. **convulsively, uncontrollably, violently | a little, slightly | involuntarily** *She shivered involuntarily as he approached her.*
- VERB + SHIVER **begin to, start to | make sb** *His cruel and callous comments made me shiver.*
- PREP. **at** *He shivered at the thought of it.* **with** *I was shivering with cold.*

shock *noun*

1 extreme surprise

- ADJ. **awful, big, complete, considerable, dreadful, great, major, nasty, real, terrible, tremendous | mild, slight | first, initial** *Once the initial shock had worn off, I got to like my new hairstyle.* **| sudden | culture** *It was a bit of a culture shock when I first came to this country.*
- VERB + SHOCK **come as | feel, get, have** *She felt shock that he would be capable of such an act.* ◇ *I got a terrible shock when I saw him.* **| give sb | be in for** *If you think it's going to be easy you're in for a shock!* **| die of** (*informal*) *I nearly died of shock when your mother appeared.* **| get over, recover from**
- PREP. **in ~** *She looked round in shock.* **with a ~** *She realized with a sudden shock that she was being followed.* | **~ at/on** *her shock on seeing him with another woman* **~ to** *This news came as a great shock to me.*
- PHRASES **a bit/something of a shock, quite/rather a shock, a hell of a shock, in a state of shock** *I think I'm still in a state of shock.* **a feeling/sense of shock, the shock of your life** (*informal*), **a shock to the system** (*informal*) *The low wages came as something of a shock to her system.*

2 electric shock

- ADJ. **massive | mild** *He gave himself a mild electric shock while changing a light bulb.* **| electric**
- VERB + SHOCK **get, receive | give sb**

3 extreme weakness caused by injury or shock

- ADJ. **deep | mild | delayed**
- VERB + SHOCK **be in, be suffering from, suffer** *He was in deep shock after the accident.* **| go into** *He had gone into shock and was shaking violently.* **| be treated for**

shock *verb*

- ADV. **deeply, really** *The news had shocked her deeply.* **| easily** *He had old-fashioned ideas and was easily shocked.*
- PREP. **into** *The news shocked her into action.*

shocked *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, sound**
- ADV. **badly, deeply, genuinely, greatly, profoundly, quite, really, terribly, truly, very** *The passengers were badly shocked but unharmed.* **| almost | a bit, a little, mildly, rather, slightly | visibly**
- PREP. **at** *They were shocked at how the children had been treated.* **by** *She was visibly shocked by the conditions she witnessed in the refugee camp.*

shocking *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound | find sth**
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, very** *a deeply shocking and painful discovery* **| quite, rather, slightly**
- PREP. **to** *His attitude was shocking to her.*

shoe *noun*

- ADJ. **clumpy, heavy, stout, strong, sturdy | light | comfortable, sensible | fashion | built-up, court, flat, flat-heeled, high-heeled, low-heeled, platform | buckled, lace-up | ballet, dancing, gym, outdoor, running, sports, tennis, training, walking**
- QUANT. **pair** *a sturdy pair of walking shoes*
- VERB + SHOE **lace up, unlace | kick off, pull off | break in** *to break in a new pair of shoes* **| mend, reheel, repair, resole** *I've had my shoes resoled.* **| clean, polish, shine | scuff**
- SHOE + VERB **fit (sb) | pinch sth** *The shoes, though elegant, pinched her feet terribly.*
- SHOE + NOUN **polish | size | shop | repair | leather | company, factory, maker, manufacturer | box**
- PHRASES **the heel/sole/toe of a shoe**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

shoelace *noun*

- ADJ. **undone | loose**
- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + SHOELACE **do up, tie | undo, untie | retie**
- SHOELACE + VERB **come undone**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

shoot *noun*

1 new part of a plant

- ADJ. **fresh, green, new, tender, young | flowering | lateral, side | bamboo**
- VERB + SHOOT **have** *This plant hasn't got any shoots yet.* **| develop, produce, put out, send out** *These shrubs will need more light to produce flowering shoots.*
- SHOOT + VERB **appear, come up, develop, emerge, grow, sport** *Keep the bulbs in a cool dark place until shoots appear.*

2 occasion when you photograph sb/sth

- ADJ. **fashion, film, photo, photographic, video** *a five-day photo shoot in Cyprus* **| location**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *He goes out on shoots with very little equipment.*

shoot *verb*

- ADV. **straight** *She practised for days until she could shoot straight.* **| accidentally** *He accidentally shot himself in the foot.* **| fatally** *Four policemen were fatally shot in the incident.* **| summarily** *If caught, the men could be summarily shot as spies.* **| back** *If they shoot, we shoot back.*
- VERB + SHOOT **want to | threaten to | be going to** *I thought for a moment that he was going to shoot.* **| try to**
- PREP. **at** *soldiers shooting at a target* **with** *She was shot with a small automatic pistol.*
- PHRASES **shoot (sb) on sight** *Any intruders will be shot on sight.* **shoot sb dead** *The police shot him dead.* **shoot sb in the arm, leg, chest, etc., shoot to kill** *The soldiers were told to shoot to kill.*

shop *noun*

- ADJ. **high-street | corner, local, village | busy | elegant, fine, exclusive, expensive, grand, high-class, posh, smart, stylish, sumptuous, upmarket | delightful, excellent, good, wonderful | well-stocked | trendy | old-fashioned, quaint, traditional | dingy, shabby | colourful | boarded up, disused, empty, vacant | butcher's, greengrocer's, etc. | gift, pet, shoe, etc. | electrical, photographic, etc. | specialist | duty-free** *She bought 400 cigarettes at the airport duty-free shop.* **| charity** *I gave all my old books to a charity shop.* **| junk | betting | mobile** *Mobile shops are invaluable to people in rural areas.* **| retail | one-stop** *This is your one-stop shop for all your holiday needs.*
- QUANT. **parade, row** *The post office is at the end of the row of shops.* **| chain** *The brothers opened a chain of electrical shops in the eighties.*
- VERB + SHOP **have, keep, own, run | open, set up** *She opened a flower shop in the High Street.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Some buskers had set up shop outside the station.* **| close, shut (up)** *At 5.30 she shuts up shop and goes home.*

- SHOP + VERB **sell sth | offer sth** *The shop offers a large selection of leather goods at reasonable prices.* | **specialize in sth | advertise sth | display sth | open | close, shut**
- SHOP + NOUN **assistant, manager, manageress, owner, staff, worker | counter, display, doorway, front, premises, shelves, sign, window | chain** *a famous shoe shop chain*
- PREP. **around/round a/the ~** *I went around all the shops but I couldn't find a present for him.* **at a/the ~** *There was was a break-in at that new shop last night.* **in a/the ~** *She works part-time in a shop.*

shopkeeper *noun*

- ADJ. **small** *an organization set up to help small shopkeepers* | **prosperous | local, village**
- SHOPKEEPER + VERB **sell sth**

⇨ Note at JOB

shoplifting *noun*

- SHOPLIFTING + NOUN **spree** *They stole thousands of pounds' worth of goods in a two-day shoplifting spree.* ◇

⇨ Note at CRIME (for verbs)

shopper *noun*

- ADJ. **average** *what the average shopper's trolley contains* | **compulsive | Christmas | window | personal** (= sb you pay to do your shopping)
- VERB + SHOPPER **be crowded with, be packed with, be thronged with** *The street was thronged with shoppers.* | **attract, encourage, persuade, tempt** *encouraging shoppers to leave their cars at home*
- SHOPPER + VERB **rush** *a busy day in London stores as shoppers rushed to beat the rise in VAT*

shopping *noun*

1 food, etc. bought in shops

- VERB + SHOPPING **be laden with | carry | put away, unpack** *They unpacked the shopping and put it away.*

2 activity of shopping

- ADJ. **weekend, weekly, week's** *I do my weekly shopping on a Saturday.* | **Christmas | supermarket | home, Internet** *the move towards home shopping using your computer* | **late-night | duty-free | window | one-stop** *the consumers' demand for one-stop shopping* (= buying all they need in one place)
- VERB + SHOPPING **do, go (out)** *She's doing some last-minute Christmas shopping.* ◇ *I have to go shopping in town this afternoon.*
- SHOPPING + NOUN **bag, basket, trolley | list | arcade, area, centre, complex, facilities, mall, precinct, street** *the town's main shopping street* | **expedition, spree, trip** *She won £10 000 and immediately went on a shopping spree.* | **hours** *outside normal shopping hours*

shore *noun*

1 land along the edge of a sea/lake

- ADJ. **golden, sandy** *on the golden shores of beautiful Bali* | **rocky, wooded | barren, bleak, desert, deserted, exposed, lonely, wilder** (*figurative*) *a Belgian from the wilder shores of Flemish nationalism* | **lee, sheltered | distant, far, farther, opposite, other** *Meg was pointing towards the far shore.* | **north/northern, etc.** *The path ran along the southern shore of the lake.* | **lake**
- VERB + SHORE **approach, reach | leave | follow, hug** *We sailed until midnight, hugging the shore.* | **be found on, be washed up on** *A dying dolphin was found washed up on the shore.*
- SHORE + NOUN **bird | road | leave**
- PREP. **along the ~** *walking along the wooded shores of the lake* **around the ~ of** *The route goes around the shore of Derwent Water.* **by the ~** *strolling by the shore* **close to/near the ~** *The sea appears calm near the shore.* **from (a/the) ~** *just a few miles from shore* ◇ *watching from the shore* **on (a/the) ~** *The others were now safely on shore.* ◇ *There are a lot of rocks on that shore.* **on the ~s of** *The hotel is situated on the sheltered shores of the Moray Firth.* **(down/back) to/towards the ~** *The hotel's gardens stretch down to the lake shore.*

2 (*also* **shores**) particular country

- ADJ. **American, British, etc.** *the ship in which Columbus first sailed to American shores* | **foreign, native | our, these**
- VERB + SHORE **arrive on, come to, reach, return to** *He was glad to return to his native shores.* | **leave | defend** *We will fight to the death to defend our shores.*
- PREP. **beyond/outside the ~** *The decisions will be taken beyond these shores.*

short *adj.*

1 not measuring much from one end to the other

- VERBS **be, look, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, really, very | comparatively, fairly, quite, rather, relatively** *a relatively short distance of 50 to 100 miles*

2 not lasting a long time

- VERBS **be, feel, seem | become, get** *The working week is getting shorter and shorter.* | **make sth | keep sth** *Do you mind if we keep the meeting short?*
- ADV. **extremely, very | comparatively, fairly, quite, relatively** *It was all over in a relatively short space of time.*

3 not having enough of what is needed

- VERBS **be, look** *Our team was one player short.* | **become, get** *We're getting short of funds.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, terribly, very, woefully** *If space is really short, that door can be moved.* ◇ *United looked woefully short of menace in attack.* | **a bit, quite, rather**
- PREP. **of** *Mike was a bit short of cash just then.*

4 rude

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **a bit, rather**
- PREP. **with** *Sorry I was a bit short with you earlier.*

shortage *noun*

- ADJ. **acute, desperate, dire, serious, severe** *the current acute shortage of teachers* | **growing, increasing | chronic | general | national, world** *the world shortage of coffee* | **current | wartime | cash, energy, food, fuel, housing, labour, manpower, skill/skills, staff, water**
- VERB + SHORTAGE **cause, create, lead to, result in | be affected by, be hampered by, face, have, suffer (from)** *Industry is facing a serious labour shortage.* | **alleviate, deal with, ease, meet, overcome, solve, tackle** *The recent heavy rains have helped to ease the water shortage.* | **exacerbate** *The energy shortages were exacerbated by the severe winter.*
- SHORTAGE + VERB **occur | cause sth, lead to sth** *A shortage of resources has led to a cutback.*
- PREP. **because of/due to a/the ~** *Lives are being put at risk because of staff shortages.* | **~ in** *Their economy continued to suffer shortages in raw materials.* **~ of** *a desperate shortage of food*

shortcoming *noun*

- ADJ. **obvious, perceived | fundamental, serious | minor | sb's own, personal | technical**
- VERB + SHORTCOMING **have, suffer from | draw attention to, expose, highlight, identify, reveal | be aware of** *They are well aware of their own shortcomings.* | **ignore, overlook** *The committee is willing to overlook your past shortcomings.* | **compensate for, eliminate, make**

good, make up for, overcome, remedy *Their proposal seeks to remedy these shortcomings.*

- SHORTCOMING + VERB **stem from sth** *Not all these shortcomings stem from inadequate resources.*
- PREP. **despite/in spite of sb/sth's ~s** *Despite its obvious shortcomings, the plan was accepted by the government.* | **~ in** *the shortcomings in the law*
- PHRASES **shortcomings on sb's part** *They said the accident was due to shortcomings on the part of the pilots.*

short cut *noun*

- VERB + SHORT CUT **take, use**
- PREP. **~ across/through** *Take the short cut across the fields.* **~ to** *There are no short cuts to economic recovery.*

shorten *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, dramatically, significantly** *The course has now been shortened considerably.*
- PREP. **by** *His driving ban has been shortened by a year.* **from, to** *The waiting time has been shortened dramatically from eight weeks to just one week.*

shorthand *noun*

1 system of writing

- VERB + SHORTHAND **learn** | **do, take, take/write sth down in** *Her secretary was taking shorthand.* ◇ *He took the speech down in shorthand.* | **transcribe**
- SHORTHAND + NOUN **typist, writer** *A shorthand writer will make a transcript.* | **notes** | **notation**

2 quick way of talking about sth

- ADJ. **convenient, useful**
- VERB + SHORTHAND **use sth as**
- PREP. **~ for** *The term 'machine' is used as a convenient shorthand for the total hardware and software system.*

shortlist *noun*

- VERB + SHORTLIST **compile, draw up** *The interviewers have to draw up a shortlist of five or six people.* | **put sb on** *I think we should put her on our shortlist.* | **choose from** *They will choose from a shortlist of seven candidates.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** | **~ for** *The film is on the shortlist for Best Picture.* **~ of** *a shortlist of three* ◇ *a shortlist of candidates*

shorts *noun*

- ADJ. **long** | **knee-length** | **baggy** | **tight** | **cycling, football, running, tennis** | **Bermuda** | **boxer**
- QUANT. **pair**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

shot *noun*

1 act of firing a gun

- ADJ. **fine, good** | **lucky** | **random** | **fatal** | **warning** | **first, opening** (*often figurative*) *the opening shot in the party election campaign* | **cannon, gun, pistol, rifle** *I heard a pistol shot.*
- QUANT. **series, volley** *A volley of shots rang out.*
- VERB + SHOT **aim** | **fire, take** *I took a few more shots at the target, but missed every time.*
- SHOT + VERB **ring out** | **hit sb/sth, strike sb/sth** *The shot hit him in the upper chest.* | **kill sb/sth** | **miss (sb/sth)**
- PREP. **~ from** *a shot from his semi-automatic rifle* **~ to** *She was killed by a single shot to the head.*

2 person who shoots a gun, etc.

- ADJ. **crack, good, excellent** *She is a crack shot with a rifle.* | **bad, poor**

3 act of kicking/hitting a ball

- ADJ. **fine, good, great, superb** | **poor, wayward** | **long**
- VERB + SHOT **crack/get in, have, take, try** *Go on—take another shot.* | **miss** | **mishit** | **block, parry, save** *The goalkeeper parried his first shot but he scored from the rebound.*
- SHOT + VERB **be on target** | **go wide, miss** *My first shot went wide, but my second was right on target.*
- PREP. **~ at/on** *Their captain tried a long shot on goal.* **~ from** *his right-footed shot from outside the penalty area* ◇ *a superb shot from Rivaldo*

⇨ Special page at SPORT

4 photograph; picture in a film

- ADJ. **camera** | **aerial, close-up, long, still, tracking, wide-angle, zoom** | **location** | **opening** | **action, crowd** | **fashion, publicity** | **cover**
- VERB + SHOT **get, take** *I got some great shots of the runners as they crossed the line.*
- SHOT + VERB **show sth** *a wide-angle shot showing the Houses of Parliament*
- PREP. **~ from** *a shot from a low angle* **~ of** *a publicity shot of the band performing*

5 injection of a drug

- ADJ. **booster**
- VERB + SHOT **give sb** | **get, have** *Have you had all your shots for your holiday yet?*
- PREP. **~ of** *a shot of penicillin* ◇ *The applause acted on her like a shot of adrenalin.*

shotgun *noun*

- ADJ. **12-bore, double-barrelled, pump-action, sawn-off** *The men were armed with sawn-off shotguns.* | **loaded**
- VERB + SHOTGUN **fire** | **be armed with, carry** | **threaten sb with** | **load** | **aim**
- SHOTGUN + NOUN **licence** | **cartridge, pellet** | **blast** *The cause of death was a shotgun blast at close range.* | **wound**

shoulder *noun*

1 part of the body between the neck and the arm

- ADJ. **dislocated, frozen** *His frozen shoulder has stopped him playing tennis.*
- SHOULDER + NOUN **injury** | **blade, bones, joint, muscle, socket** *The bullet hit him squarely between the shoulder blades.* | **height, level** | **width** *Keep the feet shoulder width apart.* | **harness, sling, strap** | **injury**
- PREP. **over your ~** *He slung the sack over his shoulder and set off.*
- PHRASES **a pat on the shoulder** *He gave me a reassuring pat on the shoulder.* **shoulder to shoulder** *The route of the procession was lined with police officers standing shoulder to shoulder.* **tap sb on the shoulder** *I tapped the man on the shoulder and asked him to move.*

2 shoulders the part between the two shoulders

- ADJ. **big, broad, great, huge, manly, massive, muscled, muscular, powerful, strong, wide** | **delicate, shapely, slim** | **narrow, thin** | **square** | **round** | **bony** | **bowed** | **bare** | **tense, tight** | **tired**
- VERB + SHOULDERS **shrug** *When I asked him why he'd done it he just shrugged his shoulders.* | **hunch** *He hunched his shoulders against the cold wind.*
- SHOULDERS + VERB **be bent, be bowed, be stooped** *She was crouched with her head forward and her shoulders bent.* | **droop, drop, sag, slump** *My shoulders dropped with relief.* | **lift, shrug** *Her shoulders lifted in a vague shrug.* | **heave, shake, twitch** *His enormous shoulders heaved with sobs.* | **stiffen, tighten** | **relax**
- PREP. **on your ~s** *The child sat on her father's shoulders to watch the parade go by.*

shoulder *verb*

1 accept the responsibility for sth

- VERB + SHOULDER **have to, must** *She had to shoulder* *the burden of childcare.* | **be willing/unwilling to** *He was unwilling to shoulder this responsibility alone.*

2 push sb/sth with your shoulder

- ADV. **roughly** *We were shouldered roughly out of the way.* | **aside, out of the way**
- PHRASES **shoulder your way past/through sb/sth** *She shouldered her way through the crowd.*

shout *noun*

- ADJ. **great, loud** | **low** | **faint, muffled** | **distant** | **sudden** | **angry, indignant** | **triumphant** | **raucous, wild** | **warning**
- VERB + SHOUT **give, let out** | **hear** *I heard her warning shout too late.* | **be greeted with** | **give sb** (*figurative*) *Give me a shout if you'd like to come with us.*
- SHOUT + VERB **echo, go up** *A great shout of excitement went up as she crossed the finishing line.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *With a shout of pain, he pulled his hand away from the hot stove.* | **~ from** *There were shouts of laughter from the crowd.* **~ of**
- PHRASES **a shout of anger/alarm/pain, a shout of laughter, a shout of victory**

⇨ Note at SOUND

shout *verb*

- ADV. **aloud** *'I'm done for!' he shouted aloud.* | **loudly** | **hoarsely** | **hysterically, wildly** | **angrily, furiously** | **almost** *He found he was almost shouting.* | **suddenly** | **back** | **out** *If they shout at you, shout back!*
- VERB + SHOUT **want to** | **try to** | **open your mouth to** *He opened his mouth to shout, but no sound came out.* | **begin to, start to** | **hear sb** *I could hear him shouting down the telephone.*
- PREP. **about** *What were they shouting about?* **above** *We had to shout above the noise of the engines.* **after** *We shouted after him, but he couldn't hear us.* **at** *There's no need to shout at me!* **for** *We shouted for help.* **to** *He shouted to the lorry driver to stop.*
- PHRASES **keep (on) shouting, shout and scream** *They were surrounded by people shouting and screaming.* **shout at the top of your voice, shout yourself hoarse** *She shouted herself hoarse, cheering on the team.* **start/stop shouting**

shove *noun*

- ADJ. **little** | **good, hefty, violent**
- VERB + SHOVE **give sb/sth** *Harry gave him a hefty shove and he fell over.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *She sent him off with a little shove.*

shove *verb*

- ADV. **hard, roughly** *I shoved hard until the door opened.* | **aside, away, back** *He shoved me roughly aside.*
- PREP. **down, in** *She shoved the letter in a drawer.* **into, out of, through** *A leaflet was shoved through my letter box.*
- PHRASES **push and shove** *The crowd was pushing and shoving to get a better view.* **shove your way** *We shoved our way to the bar.*

show *noun*

1 type of entertainment

- ADJ. **live** | **family, popular** | **radio, television/TV** | **floor, stage** | **benefit, charity** | **chat, talk** | **game, quiz** | **cabaret, comedy, magic, musical, talent, variety** | **film, light, slide** | **Punch and Judy, puppet** | **freak** | **peep** | **one-man, one-woman, solo** | **sb's own** *She finally got her own TV show.* | **road, touring, travelling**
- VERB + SHOW **see, watch** *Did you see the Lenny Henry Show last night?* | **host**
- SHOW + VERB **feature sb/sth, star sb** *a live show featuring the best of Irish talent*
- SHOW + NOUN **business**
- PREP. **from a/the ~** *songs from the show* **in a/the ~** *one of the acts in the show* **on a/the ~** (only used about television and radio shows) *I saw her on a chat show yesterday.*
- PHRASES **the star of the show** *The dog was the real star of the show.*

⇨ Note at PERFORMANCE (for more verbs)

2 public display/exhibition

- ADJ. **big** | **annual, spring, summer** | **local** | **agricultural, air, art, boat, cat, dog, fashion, flower, horse, motor, trade**
- VERB + SHOW **have, hold, organize, put on** *They are holding a big fashion show at the Hilton tonight.* | **attend, go to**
- SHOW + VERB **feature** *The show features the work of local artists.*
- SHOW + NOUN **ring**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *There were more than 500 exhibitors at the trade show.* **on ~** (being shown for people to look at) *The paintings are on show until April.*

3 outward expression of an emotion/attitude

- ADJ. **great** | **brave** | **public**
- VERB + SHOW **make, put on** *Although she hated him, she put on a show of politeness.* | **be all** *He shouts a lot but it's all show.*
- PREP. **for ~** *She pretends to be interested in opera, but it's only for show.* | **~ of** *He made a great show of welcoming us.*
- PHRASES **a show of force/strength** *The Democrats organized a show of strength, a mass rally in Central Park.*

show *verb*

1 make sth clear; let sb see sth

- ADV. **clearly** *The figures clearly show that her claims are false.*
- VERB + SHOW **appear to, seem to** | **go to** *It just goes to show what you can do when you really try.* | **aim to, attempt to, seek to, try to** | **be able to, can/could** | **be unable to, fail to** | **be expected to, be likely to** *Third quarter figures are likely to show a further fall in figures.* | **help (to)** | **offer to** | **refuse to** *Lewis refused to show any emotion.* | **be anxious to, be eager to, be happy to, be keen to, intend to, want to, wish to** *Les was happy to show her how it should be done.* | **be designed to** | **let sb** *Let me show you on the map.*
- PREP. **to** *She showed her new toy to her friends.*
- PHRASES **a chance to show sth** *I'm giving him a chance to show what he can do.*

2 be visible

- ADV. **hardly** *It's such a tiny mark, it hardly shows.*
- VERB + SHOW **begin to** | **let sth** *She tried not to let her disappointment show.*

showdown *noun*

- ADJ. **final** *The scene was set for the final showdown.* | **title, World Cup, etc.**
- VERB + SHOWDOWN **have** | **avoid** | **face, head for** | **force, seek** *He was now strong enough to force a showdown with them.*
- PREP. **~ against** *the showdown against Holland in April* **~ between** *the title showdown between Arsenal and United* **~ over** *The council is heading for a showdown over the new proposals.* **~ with** *Britain's World Cup showdown with Australia last month*
- PHRASES **it comes to a showdown** (= a showdown happens) *Of course I'll support you if it comes to a showdown.*

shower *noun*

1 for washing your body
- ADJ. **cold, cool, hot | power | brief, quick** *I'll just take a quick shower.* **| electric | en suite, private**
- VERB + SHOWER **have, take**
- SHOWER + NOUN **cubicle, curtain, room | head, mixer, rose, tray | gel**

2 of rain or snow
- ADJ. **rain, sleet, snow | heavy, light | blustery, wintry | scattered | April**
- SHOWER + VERB **spread | die out** *Scattered showers during the afternoon will die out by late evening.*

3 of small objects
- ADJ. **dust, meteor, meteorite**
- PREP. **~ of** *The grinding wheel sent out a shower of sparks.*

showing *noun*

1 how sb/sth behaves or performs
- ADJ. **good, strong | disappointing, disastrous, dismal, poor** *the party's poor showing in the election*
- VERB + SHOWING **make, put up** *The opposing team put up a very strong showing.* **| improve on** *The team will have to improve on today's showing if it is to survive in the competition.*
- PREP. **on sb's ~** *On its present showing, the party should win the election.* **| ~ against** *the euro's strong showing against the dollar* **~ by/from** *It was a great showing by the Brazilian team.*

2 showing a film, etc.
- ADJ. **private**
- VERB + SHOWING **attend, go to** *The young princes attended a private showing of the new Disney film.* **| get, have, receive | give sth**

showroom *noun*

- ADJ. **car, furniture | electricity, gas** *We chose a new cooker from the gas showroom.*
- VERB + SHOWROOM **go to, visit | open, set up**
- SHOWROOM + NOUN **door, window | condition** *He managed to find a second-hand Ferrari in showroom condition.* **| price | model** *They took 10 per cent off the price of the computer as it was a showroom model.*

shrapnel *noun*

- ADJ. **flying** *He was hit in the arm by flying shrapnel.*
- QUANT. **piece**
- VERB + SHRAPNEL **be hit by, be shattered by, be wounded/killed by**
- SHRAPNEL + VERB **fly, whistle** *The bomb exploded, sending shrapnel whistling through the trees.*
- SHRAPNEL + NOUN **wound**
- PREP. **~ from** *the shrapnel from the grenade*

shred *noun*

1 small thin piece of sth
- ADJ. **fine, thin | tattered** *the tattered shreds of their flag*
- PREP. **in/into ~s** *Cut the orange peel into fine shreds.* ◇ *(figurative) Their economy is in shreds.* **| ~ of** *leaving just a few shreds of cloth*
- PHRASES **cut/rip/tear sth to shreds** *(figurative) Their case was torn to shreds by the defence lawyer.*

2 very small amount of sth
- ADJ. **every** *With her had gone every shred of hope he had for the future.* **| last, remaining** *She was hanging on to the last remaining shreds of her reputation.*
- PREP. **~ of** *There is not a shred of doubt in my mind that we will win.*
- PHRASES **not a/the slightest shred of sth, not/without a shred of evidence**

shred *verb*

- ADV. **finely** *Shred the lettuce leaves finely.*

shriek *noun*

- ADJ. **loud | little** *She gave a little shriek of delight.* **| high-pitched, piercing**
- VERB + SHRIEK **give, let out | hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *She fell to the floor with a shriek of pain.* **| ~ of** *Shrieks of laughter came from the bedroom.*
- PHRASES **a shriek of delight/pain, a shriek of laughter**

⇨ Note at SOUND

shriek *verb*

- ADV. **aloud | all but, almost** *He all but shrieked when he saw her.*
- VERB + SHRIEK **hear sb**
- PREP. **at** *Stop shrieking at me!* **in** *She shrieked in terror.* **with** *The audience shrieked with laughter.*

shrine *noun*

- ADJ. **hallowed, holy, religious, sacred** *This shrine is sacred to the Hindu god Vishnu.* **| Christian, Islamic, etc. | forest, rural, wayside | portable**
- VERB + SHRINE **build, erect, turn sth into | dedicate** *a shrine dedicated to the sea goddess* **| go on/make a pilgrimage to, visit** *On his recovery he made a pilgrimage to the shrine of St John.*
- PREP. **at a/the** *worshipping at wayside shrines* **| ~ of** *the shrine of St Cuthbert at Durham* **~ to** *She had turned the room into a shrine to her dead son.*

shrink *verb*

1 become smaller
- ADV. **dramatically | a little, slightly | further | fast, rapidly** *competing in a market that is shrinking fast* **| gradually, slowly | steadily**
- PREP. **by** *Their profits shrank by 4% last year.* **from, to** *Their share of the market has shrunk from 14% to 5%.*
- PHRASES **shrink in size** *Households have been shrinking in size but increasing in number.*

2 move away
- ADV. **a little** *He shrank a little at the sight of the blood.* **| away, back**
- VERB + SHRINK **try to**
- PREP. **against** *He shrank back against the wall.* **In** *She shrank back in terror.* **into** *I shrank back into the shadows.* **from** *She shrank from his touch.*

shroud *noun*

- VERB + SHROUD **wrap sb in** *A human form lay there, wrapped in a shroud.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~ | ~ of** *(figurative) The nuclear project was cloaked in a shroud of secrecy.*

shrub *noun*

- ADJ. **deciduous, evergreen | hardy, tender | dwarf, large, low, medium-sized, small, tall | autumn, autumn-flowering, spring, spring-flowering, etc. | flowering | scented | thorny | fast-growing | ornamental | overgrown**
- VERB + SHRUB **grow | plant, put in | dig up, take out | replant | cut back, prune** *Overgrown deciduous shrubs can be cut back at this time of year.*
- SHRUB + VERB **grow** *Tender shrubs don't grow well here.* **| come into flower, flower**
- SHRUB + NOUN **rose**

• PHRASES **be planted with shrubs** *The bed is planted with flowering shrubs.* **a variety of shrub**

shrug *noun*

• ADJ. **little, slight, small | careless, indifferent | nonchalant | dismissive | helpless, hopeless, resigned | tired, weary | apologetic | self-deprecating | expressive | mental** *With a mental shrug, he decided to tell the truth.* **| Gallic**
• VERB + SHRUG **give** *The boy gave a slight shrug and walked away.*
• PREP. **in a ~** *She lifted her shoulders in a little shrug* **with a ~** *'I don't know,' she said with a shrug.* | **~ of** *a shrug of resignation*
• PHRASES **a shrug of the shoulders**

shrug *verb*

• ADV. **lightly, slightly | carelessly, dismissively, indifferently, negligently, nonchalantly** *She shrugged nonchalantly and turned away.* **| impatiently, irritably | apologetically | helplessly, ruefully** *He shrugged helplessly and said nothing.* **| expressively | just, merely, only, simply** *He merely shrugged his shoulders in reply.*

PHRASAL VERB

shrug sth off
• VERB + SHRUG STH OFF **be able to, can/could, try to** *The team have been able to shrug off their recent failures and perform well.* | **try to**

shudder *noun*

• ADJ. **little, slight, small, tiny | deep, exaggerated, great, violent | involuntary**
• VERB + SHUDDER **give** *She gave a little shudder when she touched his clammy hand.* **| feel | repress, suppress** *He repressed a shudder of disgust.* | **send** *The sight of the coffin sent a shudder through him*
• SHUDDER + VERB **go/pass/run through sb/sth, rack sb/sth** *A shudder of pain racked his body.*
• PREP. **with a ~** *He remembered that awful moment with a shudder.* | **~ of** *a shudder of relief*

shudder *verb*

• ADV. **convulsively, uncontrollably, violently | slightly | involuntarily** *She shuddered involuntarily as he approached her.* **| inwardly**
• VERB + SHUDDER **make sb** *The sight of the dead body made them shudder.*
• PREP. **at** *She shuddered at the memory of school exams.* **through** *A deep sigh shuddered through her body.* **with** *His whole body shuddered with fury.*

shuffle *verb*

1 walk by sliding your feet along
• ADV. **awkwardly, slowly** *Simon shuffled awkwardly towards them.* **| along, away, forward, out, off, over** *The queue shuffled slowly forward.*
• PREP. **across, down, into, out of, towards, etc.**

2 move your body/feet around
• ADV. **nervously, uncomfortably, uneasily** *She shuffled nervously on the bench.* **| about, around** *The boys shuffled around uncomfortably.*
• PHRASES **shuffle in your chair/seat**

shut *adj.*

1 in a closed position
• VERBS **be, look | bang, blow, clang, click, clunk, slam, slide, swing** *The window blew shut.* ◇ *The elevator door slid shut.* **| remain, stay | be clenched, be jammed** *His jaw was clenched shut.* **| bang sth, kick sth, leave sth, pull sth, slam sth, slide sth, snap sth** *I'll leave the window shut for now.* ◇ *He slammed the case shut.* ◇ *She snapped shut a file on her desk.* | **keep sth** *The gates are always kept shut.* ◇ *(figurative) Afraid to ask seemingly stupid questions, I kept my mouth shut.*
• ADV. **firmly, properly, tightly** *The door was firmly shut.*

2 not open to the public
• VERBS **be, look** *The bars all look shut to me.* | **remain**
• PREP. **for** *The park is now shut for the winter.*

shutter *noun*

1 cover for a window
• ADJ. **closed, open** *He left the shutter open.* **| metal, steel, wooden | security, window**
• VERB + SHUTTER **have | fling open, fold back, open, throw back/open** *He threw open the shutters to cool the room.* **| close, pull down, put up** *The village shop had put up the shutters for the night.*
• SHUTTER + VERB **be/come down** *All the shutters in the street were down.* ◇ *(figurative) I could feel the shutters coming down in her mind.*
• PREP. **behind ~** *She could be seen waiting for him behind half-closed shutters.* **through ~** *Daylight was filtering through the shutters when he woke up.*

2 part of a camera
• ADJ. **camera**
• VERB + SHUTTER **press**
• SHUTTER + VERB **click** *As the princess approached you could hear hundreds of camera shutters clicking.*
• SHUTTER + NOUN **speed** *You will need a fast shutter speed for photographing sport.*

shuttle *noun*

1 plane/bus/train
• VERB + SHUTTLE **catch, fly on, get, take**
• SHUTTLE + NOUN **bus, flight, servicetrain** *The supermarket operates a complimentary shuttle service.* | **diplomacy** (= international talks carried out by sb who travels between two or more countries)
• PREP. **on a/the ~** *We'll fly up on the shuttle.* | **~ between** *the shuttle between Adrar and Oran* **~ from, ~ to** *I took the Eastern Airlines shuttle from Washington to New York.*

2 (*also* **space shuttle**) spacecraft
• SHUTTLE + NOUN **craft | crew | mission**
• PREP. **aboard/on board the ~**

shy *verb*

• ADV. **violently**
• PREP. **at** *Her horse shied violently at a gorse bush.*

shy *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** *Please don't be shy—I won't eat you!* **| become, get, go, grow**
• ADV. **desperately, excessively, extremely, painfully, terribly, very** *As a teenager I was painfully shy.* | **all** *She went all shy and hid behind her mother.* **| almost | a bit, fairly, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | naturally** *He is a naturally shy, retiring man.* **| chronically**
• PREP. **of** *I was a bit shy of them at first.* **with** *You don't have to be shy with me, you know.*

shyness *noun*

• ADJ. **natural | extreme, intense, paralysing**
• VERB + SHYNESS **be overcome with, have, suffer from** *He was suddenly overcome with shyness.* **| forget, get over, lose, overcome** *She had to work very hard to overcome her paralysing shyness.* ◇ *She completely forgot her shyness in her fascination with what he was saying.* **| cure**
• SHYNESS + VERB **disappear, vanish**

sibling *noun*

- ADJ. **elder/older, younger** *The younger children were badly treated by older siblings.*
- SIBLING + NOUN **rivalry**
- PREP. **among/between ~s** *poor relationships between siblings*

sick *noun* **the sick**

- ADJ. **chronic, long-term**
- VERB + SICK **visit | care for, look after** *workers who are caring for the sick and elderly* **| treat | cure, heal** *the Church's mission to preach the gospel and heal the sick*
- PHRASES **the sick and wounded** *The sick and wounded were evacuated from the war zone.*

sick *adj.*

1 ill

- VERBS **be, look | become, fall** *(formal)*, **get** *(informal) He fell sick with yellow fever.* ◇ *She was afraid she would get sick if she stayed in that place any longer.*
- ADV. **chronically, desperately, extremely, terribly, very** *The house has accommodation for up to 60 chronically sick or disabled residents.* ◇ *a very sick woman in the next bed* **| incurably, terminally | mentally**
- PHRASES **be off sick** *John's not in the office today, he's off sick.*

2 ill in your stomach

- VERBS **be, feel, look** *Mum, I feel sick!* **| get** *I get travel-sick if I sit in the back seat.* **| make sb** *If you eat all that chocolate it'll make you sick.*
- ADV. **horribly, really, very, violently** *He leaned sideways and was violently sick.* **| almost | a bit, faintly, a little, quite, rather, slightly | continually | physically** *Every time I think about it I feel physically sick.*
- PREP. **with** *Laura felt almost sick with embarrassment.*
- PHRASES **be as sick as a dog**

3 bored/disgusted/annoyed

- VERBS **be | become, get** *I'm getting sick of all these delays.* **| make sb** *Her attitude makes me sick.*
- ADV. **heartily, really** *He was getting heartily sick of all the false sympathy.* **| absolutely, thoroughly | a bit, pretty, rather** *She was getting a bit sick of his moaning.*
- PREP. **of** *I'm getting sick of you leaving things in a mess.*
- PHRASES **sick and tired of sth, sick to death of sth, sick to the back teeth of sth**

4 cruel/in bad taste

- VERBS **be, seem, sound**
- ADV. **extremely, really, very** *You're really sick, you know that?* **| pretty, rather** *It was pretty sick humour, I thought.*
- PHRASES **sick in the head** *Whoever started the fire must be sick in the head.*

sickness *noun*

1 state of being ill

- ADJ. **chronic, long, long-term**
- SICKNESS + NOUN **absence | allowance, benefit | insurance | rate**
- PREP. **due to/owing to/through ~** *The Personnel Department keeps a record of employees absent through sickness.*

2 nausea

- VERB + SICKNESS **suffer (from)**
- SICKNESS + VERB **rise** *The sickness rose inside him.*
- PHRASES **a feeling of sickness** *Several workers complained of feelings of sickness and headaches.*

3 particular type of illness

- ADJ. **acute, chronic | air, car, motion, travel | altitude/mountain, decompression, radiation, sleeping**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

side *noun*

1 flat surface of sth thin

- ADJ. **flip, reverse** *The reverse side of the coin has a picture of a flower.*

2 either of the two parts of a place/object

- ADJ. **far, opposite, other** *At the other side of the room, a group of people were clustered around the fire.* **| near | right, wrong** *A car came rushing towards them on the wrong side of the road.* **| left-hand, right-hand** *The left-hand side of the page.* **| east, west, etc.**
- PREP. **at one/the ~** *Some people were standing at one side of the room.* **down one/the ~** *A path leads down one side of the garden.* **from ~ to ~** *The cat sat with its tail twitching from side to side.* **on/to one ~** (= not in the middle) *She put her head to one side as she talked.*

3 right/left part of your body

- ADJ. **left-hand, left, right-hand, right** *the right-hand side of the brain* **down your ~** *He is paralysed down his left side as a result of polio.*
- PREP. **in the/your ~** *I've got an awful pain in my side.* **on your ~** *I always sleep on my side because I'm not comfortable on my back.*

4 aspect/quality of sb/sth

- ADJ. **positive | bad, dark, negative, ugly** *The scandal has shown us the ugly side of politics.* **| caring, creative, feminine** *She likes men who do not hide their feminine side.* **| business, commercial, financial, management, marketing, etc.** *I had nothing to do with the financial side of the firm.*
- VERB + SIDE **have** *He's usually very kind and gentle, but he has his less positive side too.* **| show | hide**
- PREP. **~ to** *There are several sides to most problems.*
- PHRASES **look on the bright side** *Even when things go badly, try to look on the bright side.* **on the credit/debit side** *On the credit side, we played well, although we lost the match.* **see the funny side (of sth)** *Fortunately, Julie saw the funny side when I spilled coffee on her.*

5 team

- ADJ. **good, strong | losing, winning | away, home** *As the home side, they were expected to play an attacking game.* **| League, Test**
- VERB + SIDE **captain | field** *Sussex are likely to field a strong side.*

side effect *noun*

- ADJ. **adverse, dangerous, harmful, nasty, negative, serious, severe, toxic, undesirable, unexpected, unfortunate, unpleasant, unwanted | beneficial | long-term | physical**
- VERB + SIDE EFFECT **cause, have, produce** *The treatment has some unfortunate side effects.* **| suffer**
- PREP. **~ from** *The patient suffered severe side effects from the drug.* **~ of** *The drug has the beneficial side effect of lowering the patient's blood pressure.* **~ on** *The medication can have adverse side effects on the patient.*

sideline *noun*

- ADJ. **lucrative, nice (little), profitable, useful** *He decided to turn his hobby into a lucrative sideline.*
- VERB + SIDELINE **have | develop**
- PREP. **~ for** *Cider making was a sideline for many farmers.* **~ in** *She is developing a nice little sideline in childminding for friends.* **~ to** *The restaurant started out as a sideline to his main business.*

siege *noun*

1 when an army surrounds a town

- ADJ. **long, prolonged**
- VERB + SIEGE **lay** *The English forces laid siege to the city of Tournai.* **| withstand** *This fortress could withstand a siege for years if necessary.* **| lift, raise, relieve** (= arrive

to help the people in a siege) *The royal forces marched south to lift the siege of Donnington Castle.*
- SIEGE + VERB **last** *The siege lasted two years.*
- SIEGE + NOUN **warfare | engine**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *wounded at the siege of Edinburgh Castle in 1573* **during a/the ~, under ~** *At the very end of the war, Prague again came under siege.* | **~ of**

2 when the police, etc. surround a building
- ADJ. **four-day, ten-hour, etc. | armed, gun, police**
- SIEGE + VERB **end** *The seven-hour armed siege at the school ended peacefully.*
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *The terrorists were shot dead during the siege of the embassy.*
- PHRASES **a state of siege** *The police placed the city centre under a virtual state of siege.*

siesta *noun*
- ADJ. **short | afternoon**
- VERB + SIESTA **have, take** *Lots of people were taking a short siesta in the shade.*
- SIESTA + NOUN **time**
- PREP. **for a ~** *I went upstairs for my afternoon siesta.*

sieve *noun*
- ADJ. **fine**
- VERB + SIEVE **pass/press/strain sth through**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Wash the rice in a sieve under cold running water.* **through a/the ~** *Strain the cream through a fine sieve into the egg mixture.*

sift *verb*

1 pass sth through a sieve
- ADV. **finely** *Sift the flour finely before adding it to the mixture.* | **in, together** *Beat the mixture until smooth, then sift in the remaining sugar.*

2 examine sth very carefully
- ADV. **carefully, methodically**
- PREP. **through** *They spent days carefully sifting through the evidence.*

sigh *noun*
- ADJ. **big, deep, great, heavy, huge | little, small, soft | long | heartfelt | resigned, weary | exaggerated | audible** *There was an audible sigh of relief when the news came through that nobody was hurt.* | **collective**
- VERB + SIGH **breathe, give, heave, let out** *I breathed a sigh of relief.* | **repress, stifle, suppress | hear**
- SIGH + VERB **escape sb** *A weary sigh escaped him.*
- PREP. **on a ~** *She let out her breath on a sigh.* **with a ~** *'I suppose we'd better get back to work,' he said with a heavy sigh.* | **~ of** *She gave a deep sigh of contentment.*
- PHRASES **a sigh of relief**

⇨ Note at SOUND

sigh *verb*
- ADV. **deeply, heavily** *She sighed heavily and sat down.* | **softly | audibly, gustily, loudly, noisily | inwardly | a little | contentedly, happily** *She looked at her son and sighed happily.* | **impatiently | resignedly | wearily** *He sighed wearily as he looked at the pile of work.*
- PREP. **in** *He sighed in exasperation.* **with** *We sighed with relief when the noise stopped.*

sight *noun*

1 ability to see
- ADJ. **excellent, good, normal, perfect | defective, failing, poor, weak | long, short**
- VERB + SIGHT **have** *She has very little sight in her left eye.* | **lose** *He's lost the sight of one eye.* | **save** *The surgeons battled to save her sight.*
- SIGHT + VERB **deteriorate, fail, go** *I think my sight is beginning to go.*
- SIGHT + NOUN **test | defects, problems**
- PHRASES **the/your sense of sight**

2 act/moment of seeing sth
- VERB + SIGHT **catch, get, have** *She suddenly caught sight of the look on her mother's face.* ◇ *We will soon get our first sight of the Statue of Liberty.* | **keep** *She kept sight of him in her mirror.* | **lose**
- PREP. **at the ~ (of)** *Her knees went weak at the sight of him.*
- PHRASES **at first sight** *He looked at first sight like an English tourist.* **cannot stand/bear the sight of sth** (= hate seeing sb/sth) *I never could stand the sight of blood.* **a clear sight of sth** *He didn't shoot until he had a clear sight of the goal.* **know sb by sight** (= to recognize sb without knowing them well), **the mere/very sight of sb/sth** *The mere sight of her sitting there made his heart beat faster.* **shoot (sb) on sight** (= to shoot sb immediately you see them) *Soldiers have been ordered to shoot looters on sight.* **sick of the sight of sb/sth** *We've shared an office for too long and we're sick of the sight of each other.*

3 position where sth can be seen
- VERB + SIGHT **come into** *Then the towers of the castle came into sight.* | **disappear from, vanish from** *She watched until the car disappeared from sight.* | **hide (sth) from, remove sth from** *I hid the papers from sight.* | **keep sth in** *Keep their car in sight for as long as you can.*
- PREP. **in ~** *(often figurative) The end is in sight* (= will happen soon). **out of ~** *He kept out of sight behind a pillar.* **within ~ of** *The cricket ground was situated within sight of both village pubs.*
- PHRASES **come in sight of sb/sth** *At last we came in sight of a few houses.* **in full sight of sb** *He tried to break into a car in full sight of a policeman.* **in plain sight** *They waited until the enemy was in plain sight.* **your line of sight** *She was now standing just out of his line of sight.* **not let sb/sth out of your sight** *Whatever you do, don't let them out of your sight!*

4 sth that you see
- ADJ. **common, regular | bizarre, rare, strange, unexpected, unfamiliar, unlikely, unusual | awe-inspiring, awesome, beautiful, breathtaking, fine, impressive, inspiring, magnificent, spectacular, splendid, unforgettable, wonderful | depressing, pathetic, pitiful, sad, sorry** *He really did look a sorry sight, his hair tangled and his clothing covered in feathers.* | **ghastly, gruesome, horrifying, terrible, terrifying**
- VERB + SIGHT **look**
- PHRASES **not a pretty sight** *I'm not a pretty sight when I get out of bed in the morning.* **sights and sounds** *The sights and sounds of the city distracted her from her work.*

5 sights places of interest
- ADJ. **famous, historic**
- VERB + SIGHTS **see, take in, visit** *Let's get out of the hotel and see the sights.*

6 sights your aim/expectation
- VERB + SIGHTS **have sb/sth in/within** *Rossi has the defending champion in her sights in tomorrow's race.* | **lower, raise** *After failing to get into university, he lowered his sights and got a job in a shop.*
- PHRASES **set your sights on sth/have your sights set on sth** *She has her sights set on becoming a writer.* **set your sights high/low** *He says he wants to win the trophy, but I think he's setting his sights too high.*

sighting *noun*
- ADJ. **confirmed, reliable | unconfirmed | reported | rare | UFO**
- VERB + SIGHTING **have** *We now have three confirmed sightings of an enemy plane.* | **report | follow up, inves-**

tigate *The police are now following up a number of reported sightings of the missing woman's car.*
- PREP. **~of**

sightseeing *noun*

- VERB + SIGHTSEEING **do, go** *We did some sightseeing in the morning. ◇ It's too hot to go sightseeing.*
- SIGHTSEEING + NOUN **excursion, tour, trip**

sign *noun*

1 sth that shows that sth exists/may happen
- ADJ. **clear, definite, distinct, obvious, real, sure, telltale, unmistakable | external, outward, visible** *All the outward signs of growth in the market are there.* **| tangible | early, first** *Strong likes or dislikes of various foods are another of the early signs of pregnancy.* **| increasing | encouraging, good, healthy, hopeful, positive, welcome** *He was silent. It was a good sign.* **| bad, disturbing | danger, ominous, warning** *Are appliances you buy safe? We point out the danger signs.*
- VERB + SIGN **bear, have** *The murder had all the signs of a crime of passion.* **| exhibit, display, give, show** *By now the fish was showing signs of distress.* **| detect, find, see, watch out for** *We detected signs that they were less than enthusiastic about the holiday.* **| interpret (sth as), read, recognize, see sth as | look for** *Look carefully for signs of damp.* **| point out**
- SIGN + VERB **appear, come** *The first signs of spring appeared.* **| indicate sth, point to sth** *All the signs pointed to it being more than just a coincidence.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *He disappeared at the first sign of trouble.* **| from ~** *The villages regarded the earthquake as a sign from God.* **~of**
- PHRASES **sign of life** *There was no sign of life in the house* (= there seemed to be nobody there). **a sign of the times** *It's a real sign of the times: 30 small businesses face financial ruin this month.* **little/no/not the least/not the slightest sign (of sb/sth)** *He spoke up without the slightest sign of nervousness.*

2 board, etc. giving information/a warning
- ADJ. **flashing, illuminated | neon | handwritten, painted | exit | inn, pub, shop, street | direction, road, traffic | 'Stop' | warning | 'For sale', 'No Smoking', 'To let'**
- VERB + SIGN **erect, hang out/up, hold up, put up** *Some of the marchers were holding up signs and placards. ◇ Someone had put up a 'For Sale' sign.* **| see | read | follow** *Just follow the signs for Bridgend.*
- SIGN + VERB **read sth, say sth** *The sign read 'No Fishing'.* **| indicate sth** *This sign indicates that cycling is allowed.* **| point** *The sign pointed down a small lane.* **| advertise sth | warn** *signs warning against trespass* **| flash** *A neon sign flashed above the door.*
- PREP. **~for/to** *Follow the road and you'll see signs for the turn-off.*

3 movement with a particular meaning
- ADJ. **frantic | rude | thumbs-up, V**
- VERB + SIGN **give (sb), make** *She gave me a thumbs-up sign.* **| communicate through** *They had to communicate through signs and grunts.*
- SIGN + NOUN **language, system**
- PREP. **~for** *the sign for 'woman' in sign language*
- PHRASES **make the sign of the cross** *The priest made the sign of the cross over the dead body.*

4 mark/symbol with a particular meaning
- ADJ. **euro, pound, etc. | equals, minus, plus, etc.**
- VERB + SIGN **draw, make** *The wizard drew some strange signs in the air with his wand.* **| use** *I used the Chinese sign for 'father' instead of 'uncle'.*
- SIGN + VERB **mean sth** *What does this sign mean?*
- PREP. **~for** *I can't remember the sign for 'square root'.*

5 star sign
- ADJ. **birth, star**
- VERB + SIGN **be born under**
- PREP. **~of** *people born under the sign of Gemini*
- PHRASES **the signs of the Zodiac**

sign *verb*

- ADV. **duly** *One copy of this letter should be duly signed and returned to us.* **| formally | personally** *a first edition of the book, personally signed by the author*
- VERB + SIGN **be required to, have to** *This is the contract you will be required to sign.* **| ask sb to, persuade sb to | agree to | refuse to**
- PREP. **for** *The postman asked me to sign for the parcel.*

signal *noun*

1 sign/action/sound that sends a message
- ADJ. **clear, unmistakable | agreed, pre-arranged | conflicting, confusing, contradictory, mixed | wrong** *Laughing when you should be crying sends out the wrong signals to people.* **| alarm, danger, distress, warning | hand, non-verbal, semaphore, smoke, verbal, visual**
- VERB + SIGNAL **arrange** *He had arranged a signal for the band to begin.* **| give (sb), make, send (out)** *When I give the signal, run!* **| interpret (sth as), read, see sth as** *The remark was seen as a signal that their government was ready to return to the peace talks.* **| pick up, respond to** *Interviewers quickly learn to pick up non-verbal signals.* **| act as** *The insect's bright colours act as warning signals to its predators.*
- SIGNAL + VERB **come from sth** *trying to read the signals coming from the patient* **| indicate sth** *the signals that can indicate danger*
- PREP. **at/on a ~** *At a pre-arranged signal, everyone started cheering.* **| ~for** *She made a signal for the car to stop.* **~from/to** *Wait for the signal from the leader of your group.*

2 set of lights for drivers
- ADJ. **railway, traffic**
- VERB + SIGNAL **operate**
- SIGNAL + VERB **be (on) red/green** *The traffic signals were on red.* **| fail**
- SIGNAL + NOUN **box | failure**

3 series of radio waves, chemical messages, etc.
- ADJ. **faint, weak | strong | high-frequency, low-frequency | acoustic, analogue, audio, chemical, digital, electrical, electronic, light, radar, radio, sonar, sound, television/TV, video, wireless**
- VERB + SIGNAL **carry, pass** *The nerves carry these signals to the brain.* **| convert (sth into), scramble, unscramble** *The signal is scrambled into code before it is sent.* **| emit, generate, send, transmit | detect, pick up, receive, respond to** *This equipment can detect very low frequency signals.*
- SIGNAL + VERB **travel** *A light signal can travel well over 16km before it halves in intensity.* **| fade**
- PREP. **~from** *a faint signal from the satellite* **~to**

signal *verb*

1 move your arms to give a signal
- ADV. **frantically, wildly** *She signalled frantically to us.*
- PREP. **for** *He raised his hand and signalled for the waiter.* **to** *She signalled to the bus driver to stop.*

2 show/mark sth
- ADV. **clearly** *These changes clearly signal the end of the welfare state as we know it.* **| effectively | not necessarily** *A change of mind in one instance does not necessarily signal a change in overall policy.*

signatory *noun*

- ADJ. **authorized** *The document must be signed by an authorized signatory of the company.* | **first, original**
- SIGNATORY + VERB **agree sth** *Signatories agreed to support the nuclear test ban.*
- PREP. **~of/to** *the signatories to the treaty*

signature *noun*

- ADJ. **illegible**
- VERB + SIGNATURE **add, append, put, scrawl, write** *We both refused to put our signatures to the agreement.* | **witness** *Your signature must be witnessed by two people.* | **collect, gather, get, obtain** *They collected over 1 000 signatures for the petition.* | **bear, carry** *The will bears her signature.* | **forge**

significance *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, criminal, deep, enormous, great, immense, major, profound, real** | **full, general, wider** *The scientists are cautious about the wider significance of their findings.* | **limited, minor** | **particular, special** | **real, true** *They failed to appreciate the true significance of these discoveries.* | **functional, practical, statistical, strategic, symbolic, theoretical** | **constitutional, cultural, economic, moral, historical, political, religious, social**
- VERB + SIGNIFICANCE **have** *The ceremony has great symbolic significance.* | **acquire, assume, gain, take on** *Suddenly his son's relationship with the girl took on a new significance.* | **attach** *Let us not attach too much significance to these meetings.* | **assess** | **appreciate, be aware of, grasp, understand** | **exaggerate** | **minimize, play down, underestimate**
- SIGNIFICANCE + VERB **lie in sth** *The significance of this lies in the fact that he had previously denied all knowledge of the fund.* | **attach to sth** *Does any significance attach to the use of the technical terms?*
- PREP. **~for/to** *a meal that has particular significance for a Jewish family* | **of~** *a policy of special significance to women*
- PHRASES **be of little, no, etc. significance**

significant *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove** | **become** | **remain** | **consider sth (as), deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as, think sth, view sth as** *The move was regarded as significant in Japan.*
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, particularly, very** | **fairly, quite** | **statistically** *These differences are not statistically significant.*
- PREP. **for** *This development proved highly significant for the whole town.* **to** *rituals which are deeply significant to Christians*

Sikhism *noun*

⇨ Note at RELIGION

silence *noun*

1 quietness

- ADJ. **lengthy, long, prolonged** | **brief, momentary, a moment's, short** *There was a moment's silence before she replied.* | **deep, hushed** | **absolute, complete, dead, deadly, deathly, total, utter** *We sat in complete silence, save for the ticking of the clock.* ◇ *A deathly silence hung over the town.* | **shocked, stunned** | **awkward, embarrassed, embarrassing, strained, uncomfortable** *An awkward silence followed.* | **fraught, heavy, ominous, tense** | **brooding** *She fell into long, brooding silences.* | **stony, sullen** | **eerie** | **companionable** *They walked in companionable silence.* | **expectant, pregnant** | **sudden**
- VERB + SILENCE **maintain** *She maintained a stony silence.* | **break, interrupt, punctuate, shatter** *Lewis finally broke the long silence between them.* ◇ *a silence punctuated only by the occasional sniff from the children* | **lapse into, relapse into, retreat into, subside into, trail into** (all only used about people) *He lapsed into a sullen silence.* | **stun sb into** *The boys were stunned into silence by this news.* | **be met with** *Her question was met with an uneasy silence.* | **observe** (= as a sign of respect for the dead, etc.) *A minute's silence for the victims will be observed.*
- SILENCE + VERB **descend, fall** *A sudden silence fell over the room.* | **hang, prevail, reign** *Silence reigned.* | **ensue, follow** | **deepen, grow, lengthen, spread, stretch** *He thought for a moment, the silence lengthening.*
- PREP. **in (the)~** *They ate their breakfast in silence.*

2 not saying anything about sth

- ADJ. **deafening** *The government's only response has been a deafening silence.* | **dignified** | **deliberate**
- VERB + SILENCE **keep, maintain** *He has so far kept a dignified silence on the subject.*
- PREP. **~from** *There seems to have been a deliberate silence from the newspapers.*
- PHRASES **a conspiracy/wall of silence** *There is a conspiracy of silence about what is happening* (= nobody is willing to talk about it). **the right to silence** (= the right not to say anything when accused of a crime), **a vow of silence** *She has broken her vow of silence on the issue.*

silence *verb*

- ADV. **completely** | **effectively** *Criticism has now been effectively silenced.* | **quickly** | **abruptly, instantly** *Her scream was abruptly silenced.*
- VERB + SILENCE **try to** | **manage to** | **fail to** *Even these improvements to the service failed to silence a grumbling chorus of complaints.*
- PREP. **with** *She silenced him with a glare.*

silent *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become, fall, go, grow** *The crowd fell silent as she began to speak.* ◇ *The room grew silent as the men entered.* | **keep, lie, remain, sit, stand, stay** *I could not keep silent any longer.* ◇ *The street lay silent and deserted.* ◇ *She sat silent throughout the meal.*
- ADV. **remarkably, unusually** | **absolutely, completely, perfectly, quite, totally, utterly** | **almost, virtually** *The new bus is virtually silent.* | **largely** *an issue about which the researchers are largely silent* | **fairly, rather** | **suddenly** | **eerily, strangely** *The street was strangely silent.* | **grimly, obstinately, resolutely, stubbornly** *Len remained obstinately silent.* | **uncomfortably** *For long periods they were uncomfortably silent because they could think of nothing to say.* | **uncharacteristically**
- PREP. **about** *They had kept remarkably silent about their intentions.* **on** *The report was silent on that subject.*

silhouette *noun*

- ADJ. **black, dark, stark**
- VERB + SILHOUETTE **see**
- PREP. **in~** *He drew the city in silhouette.* | **~against** *I could see its black silhouette against the evening sky.*

silhouetted *adj.*

- VERBS **be, stand** *A dark shape stood silhouetted against the bright morning sky.*
- ADV. **clearly, sharply, starkly** *He woke to see their two heads clearly silhouetted against his window.*
- PREP. **against**

silk *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy** | **delicate, fine, thin** | **soft** | **pure** | **artificial** | **bright** *the bright silks of saris* | **rich** *a drawing room decorated in rich blue and purple silks* | **faded** | **watered** | **raw** | **Chinese, Thai, etc.**

• VERB + SILK **produce** *fine silks produced in Italy* | **spin, weave** | **be lined with, be trimmed with**

• SILK + NOUN **industry, mill**

• PREP. **in ~** (= wearing clothes made of silk) *ladies in silks and satins* **of ~** *an evening dress of pure white silk*

silly *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** *Stop it now, you two—this is getting silly!*

• ADV. **bloody** (*taboo*), **damn/damned, downright, extremely, incredibly, really, remarkably, very** *a really silly question* | **a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather**

silt *noun*

• ADJ. **fine** *The water contains fine silt.*

• VERB + SILT **deposit** *During the annual floods the river deposits its silt on the fields.*

• SILT + NOUN **deposit**

silver *noun*

1 metal

• ADJ. **pure, solid** | **sterling**

• VERB + SILVER **extract, mine** *Silver is extracted from silver ore.* | **set sth in** *a gemstone set in silver*

• SILVER + NOUN **ore** | **bar, ingot, plate** | **mine**

2 (*also* **the silver**) objects made of silver

• ADJ. **family** *He was forced to sell the family silver to pay for the repairs to the house.*

• VERB + SILVER **polish**

3 (*also* **silver medal**) in sports

• ADJ. **Olympic**

• VERB + SILVER **get, take, win** *She got a silver in the long jump.* ◇ *He took the silver this year.*

similar *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, sound, taste** | **remain**

• ADV. **extremely, remarkably, strikingly, uncannily, very** *The three portraits are remarkably similar.* | **basically, broadly, quite, rather, roughly, somewhat** *countries with broadly similar characteristics* | **superficially** *Their experiences are superficially similar.* | **qualitatively**

• PREP. **in** *The two houses are similar in size.* **to** *Snake meat tastes similar to chicken.*

similarity *noun*

• ADJ. **close, considerable, great, strong** *the close similarity in our ages* | **clear, marked, obvious** | **striking, uncanny** | **significant** | **certain** | **basic, fundamental** | **apparent, superficial** | **broad, general**

• QUANT. **degree**

• VERB + SIMILARITY **bear, have** *The area bears a superficial similarity to south London.* | **reveal, show** | **share** *these theories share certain similarities* | **explain** *a route across the Pacific which may explain the similarity between the two cultures*

• SIMILARITY + VERB **exist** | **end** *Here the similarity with Western politics ends.*

• PREP. **~ between, ~ in** *the striking similarity in their behaviour* **~ to** *the chimpanzee's similarity to humans* **~ with** *The panel shows marked similarities with mosaics found elsewhere.*

• PHRASES **a point of similarity** *There are several points of similarity between the two cases.*

simmer *verb*

• ADV. **gently, slowly** *Allow the soup to simmer gently for ten minutes.* | **quietly** (*figurative*) *She was still quietly simmering from her row with Nathan.*

• VERB + SIMMER **allow sth to**

• PREP. **in** *a mixture of vegetables simmered in yogurt*

simple *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, look, prove, seem, sound** | **keep sth, make sth** *The golden rule when creating your design is: keep it simple.* ◇ *Is all this technology making our lives simpler?* | **find sth** *I found the work fairly simple.*

• ADV. **extremely, quite, very** *Don't worry—it's all quite simple.* | **fairly, pretty, rather, relatively** | **deceptively** *a deceptively simple technique*

simplicity *noun*

• ADJ. **extreme, great** | **relative** | **apparent** *Don't be fooled by the music's apparent simplicity.*

• VERB + SIMPLICITY **have**

• PREP. **for ~** *For simplicity, I shall continue to use the general word 'river'.*

• PHRASES **be simplicity itself** (= to be very simple) *His solution to the problem was simplicity itself.* **for the sake of simplicity**

simplification *noun*

• ADJ. **considerable, drastic, gross**

• VERB + SIMPLIFICATION **make**

• PREP. **~ in** *He made a number of simplifications in the taxation system.*

simplify *verb*

• ADV. **considerably, greatly** *The whole process has now been greatly simplified.* | **drastically, grossly** *He presents the theory in a grossly simplified form.* | **slightly**

• VERB + SIMPLIFY **try to**

• PHRASES **highly simplified** *This is a highly simplified view of the economy.*

simplistic *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound**

• ADV. **extremely, grossly, highly, overly, very** *a highly simplistic generalization* | **a bit, fairly, a little, rather, somewhat** *The graphics are somewhat simplistic.*

simulate *verb*

• ADV. **closely** *The device simulates conditions in space quite closely.*

• VERB + SIMULATE **be designed to, be used to** *Models are used to simulate the workings of a real-life system.* | **try to**

simulation *noun*

• ADJ. **computer, electronic, laboratory, real-time, virtual reality** | **accident, flight**

• VERB + SIMULATION **carry out, run** *To test the model under different conditions, it is necessary to run simulations on a computer.*

• SIMULATION + VERB **indicate sth, show sth**

• SIMULATION + NOUN **model** *using simulation models to predict earthquake patterns* | **program** | **techniques** | **exercise, experiment** | **game**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *the basic steps in the simulation* **through** *The pilot's skills are tested through simulation.* | **~ of** *a virtual reality simulation of a moon landing*

sin *noun*

• ADJ. **cardinal, deadly, mortal** | **unforgivable** | **venial** | **besetting** *The besetting sin of 18th-century urban Britain was drunkenness.* | **original** *the Christian doctrine of original sin*

• VERB + SIN **commit** | **confess** *They had confessed their sins and done their penance.* | **forgive (sb their)**

• PREP. **~ against** *Sin against others is seen as a sin against God.*

sincere *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**
- ADV. **deeply, really, very** *the warm, deeply sincere note in her voice* | **completely, entirely, perfectly, quite, utterly, wholly** | **enough** *Her protests seemed sincere enough.*
- PREP. **about** *his refusal to be sincere about his feelings* **in** *Have they been sincere in their efforts to resolve the crisis?*

sincerity *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, deep, great, total** | **genuine, passionate** | **apparent** *'It's wonderful,' he said with apparent sincerity.*
- VERB + SINCERITY **doubt, mistake, question** *There seems no reason to doubt the sincerity of his beliefs.* ◇ *There was no mistaking his sincerity.* | **be convinced of** *She wasn't yet convinced of his sincerity.* | **demonstrate, prove, show**
- PREP. **with~**

sing *verb*

- ADV. **loud, loudly, lustily** *The birds sang louder than ever.* | **gently, quietly, softly** *singing quietly to himself* | **beautifully, like an angel, sweetly, well** | **badly** | **cheerfully, happily** *Birds sang cheerfully in the trees.* | **a bit, a little** *She could sing a bit and agreed to take part in the show.* | **live** *Have you ever heard the band sing live?* | **together** *We played and sang together.*
- VERB + SING **can** *I can't sing very well.* | **start to** | **hear sb/sth**
- PREP. **about** *singing about love* **to** *Shall I sing to you?*
- PHRASES **start/stop singing**

singer *noun*

- ADJ. **accomplished, fine, good, great, talented** | **chart-topping, famous, popular, well-known** | **amateur, professional** | **backing, lead** *an interview with the band's lead singer* | **blues, carol, country (and western), folk, gospel, jazz, opera, pop, rock, soul** | **cabaret, nightclub, pub**
- SINGER + VERB **perform sth** *Singers took turns to perform songs they had written.*

singing *noun*

- ADJ. **beautiful, fine, good** | **lusty, spirited** | **carol, choral, folk, hymn** | **communal, community, congregational, massed** | **solo, unaccompanied**
- VERB + SINGING **lead** *The vicar led the hymn singing.* | **accompany** *Her brother accompanied her singing on the piano.*
- SINGING + NOUN **career** | **lesson** | **teacher** | **voice** *He has a lovely singing voice.*

single *noun*

1 ticket

- VERB + SINGLE **buy, get** *I got a single to Birmingham.*
- PREP. **~to** *A single to Stratford, please.*

2 CD, tape, etc.

- ADJ. **best-selling, hit** | **debut, first** | **forthcoming** | **latest, new**
- VERB + SINGLE **play** *She was in her room playing her singles.* | **release (sth as)** *The band later released this album track as a single.*
- SINGLE + VERB **come out**
- SINGLES + NOUN **chart** *number one in the singles chart*
- PHRASES **~by** *It was voted the best single by a solo artist.* **~from** *the new single from the band 'Therapy?'*

3 **singles** in tennis

- ADJ. **junior, men's, women's**
- VERB + SINGLES **play** *I prefer playing singles to doubles.* | **win** *She won the junior singles.*
- SINGLES + NOUN **championship, final, match** | **champion, player** | **title**
- PHRASES **in the~** *She decided not to play in the singles.*

sinister *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** | **find sth**
- ADV. **downright, extremely, really, very** | **almost** | **faintly, rather, slightly, somewhat, vaguely** *I found his silence rather sinister.* | **somehow**

sink *noun*

- ADJ. **kitchen** | **blocked** | **earthenware, enamel, porcelain, stainless steel, stone**
- VERB + SINK **fill** *She filled the sink with hot water.* | **block** | **clear, unblock**
- SINK + NOUN **unit** | **plunger** *I bought a sink plunger to clear the blocked kitchen sink.*
- PREP. **at the~** *She was at the sink, washing up the dinner things.* **down the~** *Don't pour tea leaves down the kitchen sink—it'll get blocked.* **in the~** *Put the dishes in the sink.*

sink *verb*

1 in water/mud, etc.

- ADV. **slowly** | **fast** *Fergus was in waist-deep and sinking fast.* | **deep** | **down** *She sank down into the soft soil.*
- VERB + SINK **begin to, start to**
- PREP. **below/beneath** *We watched the boat sink beneath the waves.* **into** *Our feet sank deep into the soft sand as we walked.* **(up) to** *She sank up to his knees in the mud.*
- PHRASES **sink like a stone** *The box sank like a stone.* **sink without trace** *It seemed as though the ship had sunk without trace.*

2 fall/sit down

- ADV. **gratefully, happily** *I sank gratefully into the warm, dry bed.* | **gracefully** | **low** | **back, down**
- PREP. **into** *He sank lower into his chair.* **onto** *She sank gracefully down onto a cushion at his feet.*
- PHRASES **sink to the floor/ground** *She sank to the ground, exhausted.* **sink to your knees** *The old man had sunk to his knees.*

sip *noun*

- ADJ. **careful, cautious, little, nervous, small** | **long** | **noisy**
- VERB + SIP **have, take** *I took a little sip of my drink.*
- PREP. **in~s** *He drank the whisky in sips.*

sip *verb*

- ADV. **slowly** | **thoughtfully** | **idly** *She sat in the warm sun, idly sipping champagne.* | **appreciatively, gratefully** *He sipped the warm milk appreciatively.*
- VERB + SIP **pause to** *She paused to sip her tea.*
- PREP. **at** *He sipped at his beer thoughtfully.* **from** *She sipped from her glass of water.*

siren *noun*

- ADJ. **approaching** *The cars had stopped at the sound of the approaching siren.* | **air-raid, ambulance, factory, police, warning**
- VERB + SIREN **put on, sound, switch on** *The ships all sounded their sirens.* | **hear**
- SIREN + VERB **go (off), sound, start** | **blare, howl, scream, wail** *The ambulance sped off with its siren wailing.* | **die away** *The police siren died away into the hot night.*

sister *noun*

• ADJ. **big, elder, older | baby, kid, little, small, wee, younger | twin | full** (= sharing both parents) | **half-** (= sharing one parent), **step-** (also **stepsister**) (= the daughter from an earlier marriage of your stepfather or stepmother) | **beloved, much-loved | dead, deceased, late | unmarried**

• PHRASES **brother and sister** *Have you got any brothers and sisters?* **like sisters** *The girls are so close, they're like sisters.*

sit *verb*

1 on a chair, etc.

• ADV. **still** *Just sit still!* | **quietly** *He would sit quietly and watch what was happening.* | **comfortably | in silence** *We sat in silence for a few moments.* | **cross-legged, with your legs crossed** *The children sat cross-legged on the floor.* ◇ *She was sitting in her favourite armchair with her legs crossed.* | **(bolt) upright** *He sat bolt upright, hands folded in front of him.* | **demurely, primly** *She sat demurely on the edge of her chair.* | **back, down | side by side, together**

• VERB + SIT **let sb** *Surely someone would stand up and let her sit down?* | **gesture for/to sb to, motion (for/to) sb to** *He motioned the young officer to sit down.*

• PREP. **astride** *sitting astride a horse* **at** *He was sitting at his desk.* **beside** *She went and sat beside him.* **in** *He sat back in his chair and started to read.* **on** *Can I sit on this chair?* **opposite** *They sat opposite each other.*

2 seem right/not seem right

• ADV. **comfortably, easily, well | uneasily**

• PREP. **with** *His views did not sit comfortably with the management line.*

site *noun*

1 piece of land where a building was/is/will be

• ADJ. **good, prime | designated, possible, potential, proposed, suitable | building, construction, development | demolition | manufacturing, industrial | factory, hospital, school, etc. | greenfield, protected | 5-acre, 20-acre, etc.**

• VERB + SITE **choose, find, identify, locate, look for | acquire, buy, purchase** *The local council has recently acquired the site.* | **clear, prepare** *The site is being cleared for development.* | **build (sth) on, develop | occupy** *The site is presently occupied by offices.* **stand near/on** *The school stands on the site of an ancient settlement.*

• SITE + VERB **belong to sb**

• PREP. **at a/the ~** *The factory will be built at a site to the north of the city.* **in a/the ~** *The hotel is in a prime site overlooking the sea.* **on (a/the) ~** *Hard hats must be worn on site.* ◇ *He was injured on a building site.*

2 place where sth happened or that is used for sth

• ADJ. **ancient, archaeological, historic/historical | important | sacred | accident, bomb, crash | dump, landfill, (waste) disposal | burial** *Many of these ancient burial sites were destroyed in the last century.* | **landing, launch | camp** (also **campsite**), **camping, caravan, picnic | breeding, nest/nesting**

• VERB + SITE **visit** *The president is to visit the crash site later today.* | **disturb, remove sth from, steal sth from** *penalties for disturbing archaeological sites*

3 on the Internet

• ADJ. **Internet, web** (also **website**), **WWW | free** *a free site devoted to tropical fish* | **official** *the official website of the New York Yankees* | **chat, home | browse/browsing, search, surf/surfing | destination**

• VERB + SITE **access, browse, search for, visit | build, create, design, set up | host, own**

• PREP. **at ~** *At this site you'll find all the latest news and gossip.* **in ~** *Check out the links in our home site.* **~ about** *sites about Japan* **~ for** *the most popular sites for children* **~ on** *I'm searching for sites on aromatherapy.*

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

site *verb*

• ADV. **carefully, strategically** *The fence is strategically sited to prevent anyone getting onto the beach.* | **conveniently | discreetly | attractively, beautifully** *The hotel is beautifully sited by a lake in a steep valley.* | **badly**

situated *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **beautifully, delightfully, ideally, picturesquely, pleasantly, superbly, well** *The hotel is delightfully situated close to the waterfront.* ◇ *Zakro was well situated for trade with Greece.* | **conveniently | inconveniently | centrally | remotely | quietly**

• PREP. **for** *ideally situated for touring the country*

situation *noun*

1 the things that are happening

• ADJ. **general, overall, total, whole | current, immediate, present | international, local, national, world | actual, concrete, real/real-life | hypothetical, unlikely | favourable, happy, healthy, ideal, privileged | satisfactory, stable | chaotic, explosive, fluid, unstable, volatile | awkward, delicate, difficult, embarrassing, sticky, stressful, tense, tricky, uncomfortable, unpleasant, vulnerable** *I always seem to get into sticky situations on holiday.* | **dangerous, hazardous, perilous, risky | crisis, emergency | alarming, bad, critical, deplorable, desperate, disgraceful, grave, intolerable, serious, terrible, tragic, unhappy | catch-22, hopeless, no-win | absurd, bizarre, extraordinary, ludicrous, novel, odd, paradoxical, ridiculous, strange, unique, unusual | complex, complicated | simple | one-to-one | social** *Do you feel awkward in social situations?* | **strategic | work | domestic | economic, financial, legal, military, political** *the international political situation*

• VERB + SITUATION **bring about, create, lead to, result in | be faced with, be placed in, encounter, face, find yourself in, get into** *I found myself in rather an awkward situation.* | **avoid | grasp, take in, understand** *She found it difficult to take in the situation.* | **analyse, appraise, assess, consider, discuss, examine, judge, look at, review, size up, take stock of, think about, weigh up | clarify, describe, explain, outline, sum up | accept, face up to | address, be in control of, cope with, deal with, handle, respond to, take control of** *learning strategies to cope with difficult situations* | **ameliorate, defuse, ease, help, improve, rectify, remedy** *The peacekeepers are trained to defuse potentially explosive situations.* | **exploit, take advantage of** *He saw she was confused and he took full advantage of the situation.* | **lose control of | affect, change, influence, transform | aggravate, complicate, exacerbate** *Interfering now would only exacerbate the situation.*

• SITUATION + VERB **arise, develop** *We will deal with that if the situation arises.* | **improve | change | deteriorate, worsen** *The situation is deteriorating rapidly.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *What would you do in this situation?*

• PHRASES **the gravity/seriousness of the situation** *Given the gravity of the situation, I'm not surprised she's panicking.* **a way out of the situation** *I was in trouble and I could see no way out of the situation.*

2 position of sth

• ADJ. **beautiful, idyllic, pleasant**

• PREP. **in a ~** *located in a beautiful situation*

size *noun*

1 how big or small sth is

• ADJ. **considerable, enormous, good, fair, great, impressive, large, massive, substantial, vast** *The kitchen is (of) a fair size.* ◇ *The vast size of the country made it difficult to govern.* | **diminutive, limited, modest, small** *Despite its diminutive size, the car is quite comfortable.* | **average, medium, middle, moderate, reasonable, sufficient** | **overall, total** | **sheer, very** *The sheer size of these dinosaurs was their main defence.* | **appropriate, convenient, correct, desirable, handy, manageable, optimum, right** *The ladder is a handy size for using in the house.* ◇ *classes of manageable size* | **wrong** | **comparable, equivalent, similar** | **standard, uniform** *The standard size for the tiles is 300mm square.* | **non-standard** | **maximum, minimum** *The fish grow to a maximum size of 50cm.* | **actual, full, life** *The ring is shown actual size in the illustration.* ◇ *a life-size model of a Roman soldier* | **class, family, group, household, market, population, sample**

• VERB + SIZE **increase** | **decrease, limit, reduce** *The company is reducing the size of its workforce.* | **double in, grow in, increase in** *Houses increase in size further away from the city centre.* | **be reduced in, decline in, decrease in, diminish in** | **differ in, range in, vary in** *These insects range in size from 2 to 5cm.* | **grow to, reach** | **estimate, guess (at)** *I had to guess at the size of the batteries.* | **overestimate, underestimate**

• SIZE + VERB **increase** | **decline, decrease, fall** | **range from, vary** *The size of her audience varied.*

• PREP. **from the ~ of** *From the size of the queues outside the cinema, it was a very good film.* **in ~** *How do the samples compare in size?* **in the ~ of** *the increase in the size of the population*

• PHRASES **half, two, three, etc. times the size of sth** *Their house is twice the size of ours.* **shapes and sizes** *There are people of all shapes and size in the judo class.*

2 one of a number of fixed measurements

• ADJ. **large, medium, small** *The company is now going to make these products in larger sizes.* | **2-litre, 4-pound, etc.** *The 5-litre size comes in a metal tin.* | **imperial, metric** *New radiators come in metric sizes.* | **children's, men's, women's** | **chest, collar, foot** *'Extra large' fits chest sizes 44 to 50.* | **bra, shoe**

• QUANT. **range, variety**

• VERB + SIZE **be, take** *What size are you* (= for shoes or clothes)? ◇ *What size do you take?* | **find sth in, get sth in** *I couldn't find the blouse in my size.* | **be available in, come in** *The bricks come in four sizes.*

• SIZE + VERB **fit sb** *I have to wear children's shoes because the women's sizes don't fit me.*

• PREP. **in a/your ~** *Have you got this dress in a Size 12?*

• PHRASES **be a size too big, small, etc.** *The jacket is several sizes too large for him.* **Size 2, 10, etc.**

skating *noun*

• ADJ. **ice, roller** | **figure, speed**

• VERB + SKATING **go** *We used to go skating on the lake in cold winters.*

• SKATING + NOUN **championships, event** | **rink** | **routine** | **world** *some of the skating world's leading choreographers*

⇨ Special page at SPORT

skeleton *noun*

• ADJ. **dinosaur, fish, human, mammal/mammalian, etc.** | **external, internal**

• VERB + SKELETON **form**

sketch *noun*

1 quick drawing

• ADJ. **lightning, quick** | **rough** | **preliminary, preparatory** | **charcoal, ink, pencil, watercolour**

• VERB + SKETCH **do, draw, make**

• SKETCH + NOUN **book, pad** | **map** | **plan**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *The family house appears in several of her sketches.* | **~ by** *a series of sketches by John Constable* **~ for** *to make a sketch for an oil painting* **~ of** *He did some rough sketches of the costumes.*

⇨ Note at ART

2 short description

• ADJ. **brief, thumbnail** *The talk began with a thumbnail sketch of the political situation at that time.* | **biographical, character**

• VERB + SKETCH **give sb**

• PREP. **~ of** *He gave us character sketches of all his eccentric relations.*

3 short comic scene

• ADJ. **short** | **comic, satirical**

• VERB + SKETCH **do, perform** | **write**

• PREP. **~ about** *a comic sketch about a talking cat*

ski *noun*

• QUANT. **pair**

• VERB + SKI **put on** | **remove, take off**

• SKI + NOUN **pole** | **boot, jacket, mask, pants, suit** | **instructor, lesson** | **area, run, slope** | **lift** | **jump** | **resort**

• PREP. **on ~s** *The children go to school on skis.*

skid *noun*

• VERB + SKID **get into, go into** *The lorry went into a skid and crashed into the barrier.*

• SKID + NOUN **mark** *The police examined the skid marks to see how fast the car had been travelling.*

skiing *noun*

• ADJ. **alpine, downhill** | **cross-country, langlauf, Nordic** | **dry-slope** | **off-piste** | **freestyle** | **good, quality**

• VERB + SKIING **go** | **have** *The United States has plenty of good skiing.*

• SKIING + NOUN **holiday, trip** | **resort** | **season** | **equipment** | **facilities** | **slope** | **conditions**

⇨ Special page at SPORT

skilful *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become**

• ADV. **extremely, highly, very** | **fairly, reasonably**

• PREP. **at** *I became skilful at drawing.* **in** *highly skilful in his tactics*

skill *noun*

• ADJ. **considerable, consummate, extraordinary, great, remarkable** *He is a negotiator of considerable skill.* ◇ *With consummate skill, she steered the conversation away from any embarrassing subjects.* | **good, poor** *She has good organizational skills.* | **basic, necessary** *the basic skills of reading, writing and arithmetic* | **essential, important, marketable, practical, transferable, useful** *training in problem-solving and other transferable skills* | **new, old** *to learn some new skills* | **special, specialist** *No special skills or knowledge are required for the job.* | **professional** | **analytical** | **entrepreneurial, management, managerial, organizational** | **diplomatic, negotiating** | **linguistic, reading, writing** | **business, communication, computer, interpersonal, language, research, social, study, survival** *It is important to develop good study skills.* | **manual** | **artistic, culinary, medical, military, musical, political, scientific, tactical, technical**

• QUANT. **range, set** *She had to develop a whole new set of skills when she changed job.* | **degree, level** *an operation that called for a high degree of skill*
• VERB + SKILL **have, possess** | **lack** | **need, require, take** *a feat requiring skill and patience* | **acquire, develop, learn, pick up** | **demonstrate, display, exercise, practise, show (off)** | **apply, harness, use, utilize** *The manager must harness the skills of the workers to firm objectives.* | **broaden, hone, improve, increase, master, sharpen, upgrade** *helping children to master the skills necessary to live in our society* ◇ *She attends regular training weekends to sharpen her skills.* | **refresh, update** | **pool, share** | **assess, test** *a course that will test the skills of any golfer*
• SKILLS + NOUN **level** | **acquisition, development, training** | **shortage** *The country is still facing a skills shortage.*
• PREP. **with ~** *She performed the task with great skill.* | **~ as** *her skills as a doctor* **~ at** *his skill at painting* **~ in** *their skill in selecting the best designs* **~ of** *the basic skills of managing an office* **~ with** *his skill with a sword*
• PHRASES **a lack of skill** *The country is facing a skills shortage.* **a mastery of skills** *a mastery of basic language skills*

skilled *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become**
• ADV. **especially, extremely, highly, particularly, remarkably, very** *a highly skilled workforce* ◇ *Interviewing is a very skilled job.* | **fully** *fully skilled craftsmen* | **increasingly** | **quite** | **enough, sufficiently**
• PREP. **at** *skilled at needlework* **in** *skilled in the basic techniques* **with** *She wasn't very skilled with the camera yet.*

skim *verb*

• ADV. **barely** (*figurative*) *This report has barely skimmed the surface of the subject.* | **low** *A bird skimmed low over the heather.*
• PREP. **across/over** *We skimmed across the water in a small sailing boat.*

skin *noun*

1 covering of a human/animal body
• ADJ. **beautiful, clear, fine, flawless, good, healthy, lovely, perfect** | **smooth, soft** | **translucent** | **supple, young, youthful** | **wrinkled** | **coarse, hard, leathery, rough, tough** | **delicate, sensitive** | **greasy, oily** | **moist** | **dry, flaky** | **congested** | **black, brown, dark, fair, golden, milky, olive, olive-tinged/-tinted, pale, swarthy, white** | **bronzed, tanned** | **sunburnt** | **weathered** | **pallid, sallow** | **freckled** | **raw, tender** *There was a patch of raw skin on my back where the sun had burnt it.* | **blotchy** | **puffy** *I examined the puffy skin under my eyes.* | **blistered** | **hairy** | **hairless** | **chilled, cold, cool** | **facial** | **bare, naked** *The sheets felt nice next to his bare skin.* | **loose** *I picked up the kitten by the loose skin on its neck.* | **armoured, scaly** *the armoured skin of the rhinoceros* | **dead** *A lot of dust is made up of particles of dead skin.*
• VERB + SKIN **break, burn, damage, irritate** | **protect** | **nourish, soothe** | **shed** *This snake sheds its skin eight times a year.*
• SKIN + VERB **glisten, glow** *Her skin was glistening with sweat after her run.* | **age** *They claim that this cream makes the skin age more slowly.* | **hang, sag** | **blister, burn, peel** | **crawl, prickle, tingle** *Just thinking about spiders makes my skin crawl.*
• SKIN + NOUN **allergy, burns, cancer, complaint, condition, damage, disease, disorder, infection, irritation, lesion, problems, rash** | **graft** | **clinic** | **specialist** | **care, cleanser, cream, moisturizer, tonic** | **colour, tone** | **texture** | **type** | **cells, tissue** | **contact** *Avoid skin contact with the glue.*
• PREP. **against the/your ~** *The sheets felt rough against her sunburnt skin.* **beneath the/your ~** *Beneath his skin, the muscles were tight with tension.* **in the/your ~** *The drugs reduce the inflammation in the skin.* **on the/your ~** *blisters on the skin* **through the/your ~** *A network of veins showed through his skin.* **under the/your ~** *He discovered a lump under his skin so he went to the doctor.*
• PHRASES **skin and bone** *The dog lost more and more weight, and was soon little more than skin and bone.*

2 skin of an animal that has been removed
• ADJ. **animal** | **crocodile, goat, leopard, sheep** (also **sheepskin**), **etc.**
• VERB + SKIN **cure, tan**

3 covering of some fruits/ vegetables
• ADJ. **banana, onion, potato, etc.**
• VERB + SKIN **peel off, remove**

skinny *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look** | **become**
• ADV. **really, terribly, very** | **a bit, fairly, rather** *At school I was fairly skinny and undersized.*

skip *verb*

• ADV. **lightly, nimbly** | **happily** | **along**
• PREP. **down, up** *He skipped lightly up the stairs.*

skirmish *noun*

• ADJ. **little, minor** | **border**
• SKIRMISH + VERB **break out, take place** *Minor skirmishes broke out all along the border.*
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *He was killed in a border skirmish.* | **~ between** *skirmishes between the police and guerillas* **~ over** *a skirmish over boundaries* **~ with** *They were involved in a skirmish with rival fans.*

skirt *noun*

• ADJ. **ankle-length, long** | **short** | **knee-length** | **tight** | **circular, flared, full, gathered, voluminous** *She tucked up her voluminous skirts to make room for Jane beside her.* | **pencil, straight** | **pleated, wrap-around**
• VERB + SKIRT **hitch up, lift, pull up** | **pull down** | **tuck up** | **smooth (down)** *She sat down, smoothing the skirt of her dress.* | **straighten** | **ruck up**
• SKIRT + VERB **billow, swirl** *Her full skirt billowed around her as she danced.* | **ride up** *Her skirt rode up her thighs when she sat down.*
• SKIRT + NOUN **length**
⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

skull *noun*

• ADJ. **thick** | **thin** | **fractured**
• VERB + SKULL **crack, fracture**
• SKULL + NOUN **fracture**
• PHRASES **the back/base/front/side/top of the skull, close to the skull** *The soldiers' hair was cropped close to the skull.* **a fracture of/to the skull**

sky *noun*

• ADJ. **big, huge** | **open** *We slept under the open sky.* | **empty** | **bright, clear, cloudless, sunny** *a week of cloudless skies* | **cloudy, dull, overcast, sullen** | **starry** | **azure, black, blue, dark/darkening, grey, pale, leaden** | **night, morning, etc.** | **autumn, January, etc.** | **northern, southern, etc.**
• QUANT. **patch** *a patch of blue sky*
• VERB + SKY **light up** *The fireworks lit up the sky.* | **patrol**
• SKY + VERB **clear (up), lighten** *The rain stopped and*

the skies cleared. | **cloud over, darken, turn grey, etc.** | **be streaked with sth** *The sky was streaked with gold.*
• PREP. **across the ~** *Black clouds spread across the sky.* **against the ~** *The eagle was black against the early morning sky.* **beneath/under a ~** *a ship tossing under a darkening sky* **from/out of the ~** *A strange object dropped out of the sky.* **in the ~** *There was a kite high up in the sky.* | **~ above** *A helicopter appeared in the sky above them.* **~ over** *patrolling the skies over the Channel*
• PHRASES **high/low in the sky** *when the sun is low in the sky* **the sky above/overhead** *Swallows darted about in the sky overhead.* **take to the skies** (= to go into the sky) *Some vintage aircraft will be taking to the skies at this weekend's fair.*

skyline *noun*

• ADJ. **dramatic** | **city** | **Hong Kong, London, etc.** | **northern, southern, etc.**
• VERB + SKYLINE **form** | **dominate** *The skyline is dominated by a nuclear power station.* | **be silhouetted against/on, stand (out) against/on** *A medieval castle stands against the skyline.* | **break** *The skyline is broken by a water tower.*
• PREP. **above/over ~** *Clouds of smoke floated over the skyline.* **against the ~** *the moving figures he could see against the skyline* **along the ~** *lights twinkling along the Beirut skyline* **below the ~** *The sun slipped below the skyline.* **on the ~** *There are several gothic spires on the city skyline.*

skyscraper *noun*

• ADJ. **towering**
• SKYSCRAPER + VERB **loom, rise** *On all sides, skyscrapers rose like jagged teeth.*
• SKYSCRAPER + NOUN **block**

slab *noun*

• ADJ. **great, huge, large** *They were unloading great slabs of rock.* | **thick** | **paving** | **mortuary**
• PREP. **on a/the ~** *corpses laid out on cold mortuary slabs* | **~ of** *a slab of butter/chocolate/concrete/meat*

slack *adj.*

1 loose
• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** | **become, go** *Let the reins go slack.* | **leave sth** *Leave the thread slightly slack to allow for movement.*
• ADV. **very** | **completely** *Some of the ropes were completely slack.* | **a bit, fairly, slightly**

2 not busy
• VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain** *The antiques business remained slack.*
• ADV. **extremely, very** | **a bit, fairly, pretty, rather** *This season has been pretty slack for local hotels so far.*

3 lazy
• VERBS **be** | **become**
• ADV. **very** | **a bit, rather**
• PREP. **in** *She knew she had been very slack in her church attendance recently.*

slacken *verb*

• ADV. **a little, slightly** *His grip slackened a little and she pulled away.* | **off** *Slacken off the ropes.* ◇ *Growth in the economy was beginning to slacken off.*

slam *verb*

• ADV. **hard** *She ran out of the room and slammed the door as hard as she could.* | **back, down** *He said goodbye and slammed the phone down.*
• VERB + SLAM **hear sth**
• PREP. **against** *Kath's heart slammed against her ribs.* **behind** *I heard the door slam behind him.* **into** *The car skidded and slammed into a tree.*
• PHRASES **slam (sth) shut** *He slammed the lid shut.*

slander *noun*

• ADJ. **gross, malicious, vicious, vile**
• VERB + SLANDER **be guilty of** | **sue sb for**
• PREP. **~ against** *He was found guilty of slander against his employers.* **~ on** *Many teachers saw the statement as a gross slander on their profession.*

slang *noun*

• ADJ. **colloquial** | **current** | **army** | **rhyming**
• VERB + SLANG **talk in, use**
• SLANG + NOUN **expression, term, word**
• PREP. **in ~** *in army slang* | **~ for** *'Ruby Murray' is rhyming slang for 'curry'.*

slant *noun*

1 leaning position
• VERB + SLANT **have** | **take on** *Her chin took on a stubborn slant.*
• PREP. **at a ~** *They held their spears at a slant.* **on the ~** *Cut the flower stems on the slant.*

2 way of thinking about sth
• ADJ. **different, new** | **feminist, left-wing, etc.**
• VERB + SLANT **give sth, put** *He puts his own particular slant on everything.*
• PREP. **with a … ~** *an article with a right-wing slant* | **~ on** *That's a different slant on the causes of the First World War.* **~ to** *The story gives a new slant to his character.*

slap *noun*

• ADJ. **gentle, little** | **hard, sharp, stinging** | **resounding** | **hearty** *He gave his brother a hearty slap on the back to congratulate him.*
• VERB + SLAP **deliver, give sb** *His mum delivered a hard slap and sent him to bed.* | **get, receive**
• PREP. **with a ~** *He hit the water with a resounding slap.*
• PHRASES **a slap in the face** (*figurative*) *The closure of the school is a slap in the face to the local community.*

slap *verb*

• ADV. **hard** | **gently, lightly** | **away** *She slapped his hand away.*
• VERB + SLAP **want to** *I wanted to slap his face.*
• PREP. **across** *The officer slapped him hard across the face.* **on** *She slapped the boy on the leg.*

slash *verb*

• ADV. **wildly**
• PREP. **at, through** *He slashed through the rope.* **with** *He slashed wildly at me with a knife.*

slaughter *noun*

• ADJ. **indiscriminate, mass, wholesale** *the indiscriminate slaughter of civilians* | **senseless, terrible** | **ritual**
• VERB + SLAUGHTER **prevent, stop** *We were helpless to stop the slaughter.*
• SLAUGHTER + NOUN **house** (also **slaughterhouse**)
• PREP. **for ~** *transporting live horses for slaughter*

slaughter *verb*

1 kill an animal
• ADV. **humanely** *The animals are all humanely slaughtered.* | **ritually** | **illegally** *elephants illegally slaughtered by poachers*
• PREP. **for** *Thousands of birds were slaughtered for their feathers.*

2 kill a large number of people

- ADJ. **brutally, cruelly** *Hundreds of innocent civilians were cruelly slaughtered.*

slave *noun*

- ADJ. **fugitive, runaway**
- VERB + SLAVE **have, own | buy, take sb as | sell (sb as) | use (sb as) | free, liberate** *landowners who freed their slaves voluntarily*
- SLAVE + NOUN **labour** *a railway built by slave labour* **| driver, master, owner, trader | market, trade, traffic** *the abolition of the slave trade* **| ship**
- PREP. **~ of** *a slave of habit* **~ to** *a slave to fashion*
- PHRASES **the emancipation of slaves, the trade in slaves**

slavery *noun*

- ADJ. **domestic** *Their stated aim was to free women from domestic slavery.*
- VERB + SLAVERY **establish, introduce** *Chios is said to have introduced slavery into Greece.* **| abolish | sell sb into | free sb from | be born into**
- PREP. **in ~** *They were living in slavery and poverty.* **under ~** *conditions for children under slavery*
- PHRASES **the abolition of slavery**

sledge *noun*

- ADJ. **dog, horse-drawn, motor**
- VERB + SLEDGE **pull | drive**
- PREP. **in/into/on/onto a/the ~**

sleep *noun*

1 condition of rest

- ADJ. **deep | light | REM**
- VERB + SLEEP **drift into/off to, drop off to, get to, go (back) to | cry/sob yourself to | get, sleep, snatch** *Close your eyes and get some sleep now.* ◇ *Tom was in the front room sleeping the sleep of the dead.* ◇ *I snatched a few hours' sleep in the afternoon.* **| need | survive on** *They seem to survive on only a few hours' sleep a night.* **| induce, lull/send sb to** *using drugs to induce sleep* ◇ *The quiet music soon sent her to sleep.* **| drift in and out of** *He drifted in and out of sleep all night.* **| lose** *Don't lose sleep over it—we'll sort everything out in the morning.* **| disrupt | catch up on** *I used Saturday to catch up on my sleep.* **| feign** *I feigned sleep when the ticket inspector came round.*
- SLEEP + VERB **come** *Sleep came to her in snatches.* **| overcome sb, overtake sb** *Sleep finally overtook me.*
- SLEEP + NOUN **pattern | deprivation, loss | apnoea**
- PREP. **during ~** *your heart rate during sleep* **in your ~** *He often walks and talks in his sleep.*
- PHRASES **a lack of sleep** *suffering from a lack of sleep* **a wink of sleep** *I won't get a wink of sleep with that noise downstairs.*

2 period of sleep

- ADJ. **long | little, short | dead, deep, heavy, sound | good, restful | light | disturbed, exhausted, fitful, restless, uneasy** *I woke up early after a disturbed sleep.* **| dreamless, peaceful | drunken | beauty** *Sorry but I need my beauty sleep.*
- VERB + SLEEP **need | have** *Did you have a good sleep?* **| be in** *I was in a deep sleep when the phone rang.* **| drift into, fall into, sink into** *I immediately fell into a dead sleep.* **| awake/awaken/wake (sb) from** *He woke from a fitful sleep with a headache.*
- PHRASES **a (good/poor) night's sleep** *You'll feel better after a good night's sleep.*

sleep *verb*

- ADV. **properly, soundly, well** *I haven't slept properly for weeks.* ◇ *The children were all sleeping soundly.* ◇ *Did you sleep well last night?* **| peacefully, quietly | easier, easily, quiet** *When the murderer is caught we can all sleep easier in our beds at night.* **| badly, fitfully, uneasily | deeply, heavily** *He was exhausted and slept deeply.* **| lightly** *She always slept very lightly so I had to be careful not to wake her.* **| barely, hardly, scarcely** *She felt as if she had hardly slept.* **| a little | alone | together**
- VERB + SLEEP **be unable to, can't/couldn't** *I couldn't sleep so I got up and went downstairs.* **| try to** *You must be very tired. Try to sleep a little.* **| let sb | put sb/sth to** *You should always put babies to sleep on their backs.* ◇ *We had to have our dog put to sleep* (= humanely killed because it was so ill).
- PREP. **for** *I only slept for four hours that night.* **through** *She slept right through the storm.* **with** *Everyone knows she sleeps with the boss.*
- PHRASES **not sleep a wink** (= not sleep at all) *I didn't sleep a wink last night.* **sleep late** *Let them sleep late on Saturday morning if they want to.* **sleep like a baby/log** (= sleep very well), **sleep rough** *the problem of young people who sleep rough in the streets*

sleepy *adj.*

1 ready to go to sleep

- VERBS **be, feel, look, sound | become, get, grow | make sb** *The alcohol was making him sleepy.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, very | a bit, a little, quite, rather** *She was beginning to get a bit sleepy.*

2 very quiet

- VERBS **be, seem | remain** *The town remains sleepy despite the activity all around it.*
- PHRASES **sleepy little** *a sleepy little fishing village*

sleeve *noun*

- ADJ. **long, short | full, puffed, voluminous, wide | rolled-up | coat, shirt, etc.**
- VERB + SLEEVE **push back/up, roll up** *She rolled up her sleeves and got down to work.* **| roll down | tug at** *I looked around to see who was tugging at my sleeve.*
- PREP. **in ... ~s** *It was sunny, and everyone was in short sleeves.* **on a/the ~** *There's tomato sauce on your sleeve.*
- PHRASES **in (your) shirtsleeves** (= not wearing a jacket)

slender *adj.*

1 thin in an attractive way

- VERBS **be, look**
- ADV. **very** *Those trousers make you look very slender.* **| quite | boyishly** *her boyishly slender figure*

2 small in amount/size

- VERBS **be, seem | remain**
- ADV. **decidedly, very** *His musical achievements have been decidedly slender.* **| fairly, pretty, rather**

slice *noun*

- ADJ. **big, generous, great, huge, large, thick | considerable, fair, significant, sizeable, substantial** *They spend a fair slice of the budget on research and development.* **| small, thin | cheese, lemon, pizza, etc.**
- VERB + SLICE **cut** *She cut a thin slice of lemon.*
- PREP. **in ~s** *The sausage is also sold pre-packed in slices.* **| ~ of** *a slice of toast* ◇ *The agency takes a large slice of the profits.*
- PHRASES **cut sth into slices** *He cut the meat into thick slices.*

slice *verb*

- ADV. **finely, thinly** *Slice the bread thinly.* **| thickly | neatly | off, up** *Slice up the mushrooms and fry them.*

- PREP. **into** *The axe sliced into her shoulder.* **off** *slicing pieces off the joint of meat* **through** *The knife sliced through his ear.*
- PHRASES **slice sth in half/two** *Slice the onion in two.*

slide *noun*

1 in photography
- ADJ. **colour** | **photographic**
- VERB + SLIDE **show** | **develop**
- SLIDE + NOUN **film** | **presentation, show** *He gave a fascinating slide show on climbing in the Himalayas.* | **projector**

2 for use with a microscope
- ADJ. **glass** | **microscope**
- VERB + SLIDE **mount sth on**

3 playground equipment
- VERB + SLIDE **go/play on, go down** *He wouldn't go down the slide by himself.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *There were lots on children on the slide.*

4 change to a lower/worse condition
- ADJ. **downward** | **inexorable**
- VERB + SLIDE **halt, prevent, stop**
- PREP. **~ in** *to stop the slide in the euro* **~ into** *trying to prevent the inexorable slide into war* **~ towards** *the market's recent slide towards panic*

slide *verb*

- ADV. **slowly** *Tears slid slowly down his pale cheek.* | **quickly** | **easily** | **smoothly** *a vehicle that will slide smoothly across snow* | **gently** | **gracefully** | **noiselessly, quietly, silently** *The moon slid silently behind a cloud.* | **imperceptibly** | **helplessly** *We slid helplessly down the slope.* | **away, back, backwards, down, forward, forwards, in, out, sideways** *The drawers slide in and out easily.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The eyes slid away from his own in embarrassment.*
- VERB + SLIDE **begin to** *The melting snow began to slide from the sloping roofs.*
- PREP. **across, along, down, from, into, off, onto, out of, over, to, up, etc.** *She took the note and slid it quickly into her pocket.* ◇ *He slid off the couch and walked over to me.*
- PHRASES **slide open** *The lift doors slid open.*

slight *adj.*

1 very small in degree
- VERBS **appear, be, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **comparatively, fairly, quite, rather, relatively**

2 thin and delicate
- VERBS **be, look** *She looked very slight, almost fragile.*
- ADV. **very** | **physically**

slim *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look** | **become, get** (*informal*) *dieters who have got slim using these methods* | **keep, remain, stay** *She works very hard to stay slim.* | **make sb** *Step exercises can help make you slim.* | **keep sb**
- ADV. **very** | **quite**
- PHRASES **tall and slim**

slime *noun*

- ADJ. **thick** | **primeval, primordial** *the primeval slime from which all life developed*
- VERB + SLIME **be covered in/with** | **produce** *Frogs produce slime to keep their skin moist.*
- SLIME + VERB **ooze**
- PHRASES **a trail of slime** *The snail left a trail of slime along the floor.*

slimy *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look** *The seaweed felt cold and slimy.*
- ADV. **very** | **all** *The walls were all slimy and green.*
- PREP. **with** *The steps were slimy with moss.*

sling *verb*

- ADV. **loosely** | **carelessly, casually** *His jacket was carelessly slung over one shoulder.*
- PREP. **across, around/round, from, in, on, over, etc.**

slip *noun*

1 mistake
- ADJ. **little, slight, tiny** | **unfortunate** | **Freudian**
- VERB + SLIP **make** *She made a couple of unfortunate slips during the talk.*
- PHRASES **a slip of the pen/tongue** *I didn't mean to say that—it was just a slip of the tongue.*

2 piece of paper
- ADJ. **betting, pay, rejection, voting** *He got over fifty rejection slips before his novel was published.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *He wrote the address on a slip of paper.*
- PHRASES **a slip of paper**

slipper *noun*

- ADJ. **warm** | **bedroom, carpet** | **satin, sheepskin, silk, suede**
- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + SLIPPER **kick off**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

slippery *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look** | **become, get** *The concrete gets slippery when it's wet.* | **make sth** *The oil made the ground slippery and treacherous to walk on.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **a bit** *Watch out—the floor's a bit slippery.*
- PREP. **with** *rocks that were slippery with seaweed*

slither *verb*

- ADV. **silently** *A snake was slithering silently towards us.* | **helplessly** *He slithered helplessly down the slope.* | **away** *The snake slithered away.*
- PREP. **across, along, down, on, over, to, etc.** *Her knees gave way and she slithered to the floor.*

slogan *noun*

- ADJ. **catchy, snappy** | **popular** | **empty** *The 'freedom to learn' has become just another one of the government's empty slogans.* | **anti-government, anti-war, etc.** | **advertising** | **campaign, election, political**
- VERB + SLOGAN **coin, come up with, invent** | **adopt (sth as), have (sth as), use (sth as)** | **chant, shout** | **bear** *a T-shirt bearing the slogan 'I Flirt, Therefore I Am'*
- PREP. **on the ~** *They fought the election on the slogan 'The time has come'.* **under a/the ~** *protesting under the slogan 'When women stop, everything stops'*

slope *noun*

- ADJ. **precipitous, severe, sheer, steep** | **gentle, gradual, slight** | **long, short** | **downhill, downward** | **uphill, upward** | **higher, upper** *There was snow on the higher slopes of the mountain.* | **lower** | **northern, north-facing, etc.** *The vineyards on the south-facing slopes get more sunshine.* | **open** | **forested, grassy, icy, rocky, scree, smooth, snow-covered/snowy, wooded** | **mountain** | **dry, nursery, ski** *dry-slope skiing* ◇ *Some tourists were having a skiing lesson on the nursery slope.* | **negative, positive** *The unemployment-income curve on the graph has a negative slope.* | **slippery** (*figurative*) *Once he'd*

tried that first cigarette, he was on the slippery slope to being a smoker.
- VERB + SLOPE **ascend, clamber up, climb (up)** *We clambered up the steep, rocky slope.* | **descend** | **have** *The football pitch has a slope of about one metre.*
- SLOPE + VERB **lead (up/down) to sth** *a slope leading down to the river* | **fall, rise** *The lower slopes rise quite gently.* | **steepen** | **flatten, level off**
- PREP. **down a/the ~** *I scrambled down the icy slope.* **on a/the ~** *We camped on an open mountain slope.* **up a/the ~** *There were more skiers further up the slope.*
- PHRASES **the angle of slope** *the angle of slope of the sides of the pyramid* **the bottom/foot/top of a slope**

slope *verb*

- ADV. **steeply** *The ground slopes away steeply at the back of the house.* | **gently, slightly** | **away, down, downwards, up, upwards**
- PREP. **to** *The field slopes down to a small river.* **towards**

slot *verb*

- ADV. **easily, neatly, simply** | **together** *The panels slot together to make a compost bin.*
- PREP. **between, in, into** *He slotted the magazines neatly into the rack.*
- PHRASES **slot (sth) into place** *All the pieces of the puzzle now slotted into place.*

slow *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, markedly, noticeably, sharply, significantly** *Sales have slowed down quite markedly.* | **barely, hardly** *The roadblocks hardly slowed them at all.* | **a bit, a little, slightly** | **gradually** | **deliberately** *She very deliberately slowed her steps.* | **down, up**
- VERB + SLOW **begin to** | **try to** *Rachel tried to slow her breathing.* | **be expected to** *Economic growth is expected to slow.*
- PHRASES **slow to a crawl/walk/snail's pace, slow to a halt/stop** *The two of them had slowed almost to a stop.*

slow *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem** | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, incredibly, remarkably, very** | **interminably** | **a bit, comparatively, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, rather, relatively** | **agonizingly, desperately, frustratingly, painfully, tediously, tortuously** *Filming was painfully slow.* | **notoriously** *Civil court proceedings are notoriously slow.* | **noticeably** *He was noticeably slow to respond.* | **necessarily** *Genetic evolution is necessarily slow.*
- PREP. **at** *They are extremely slow at reaching decisions.*

slum *noun*

- ADJ. **crowded, overcrowded, teeming** | **deprived, poor, poverty-stricken** | **filthy** | **notorious** | **city, inner-city, urban** | **tenement** | **rural**
- VERB + SLUM **clear (away), demolish, knock down, remove**
- SLUM + NOUN **conditions** | **area, district, ghetto, neighbourhood, street** | **dwelling, housing, property** | **clearance** | **children, kids, dwellers, youths** | **life** | **landlord**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *born in the slums of East London*
- PHRASES **the clearance/demolition/removal of slums**

slumber *verb*

- ADV. **deeply** | **peacefully** *The child slumbered peacefully in her arms.* | **fitfully**

slump *noun*

- ADJ. **world/worldwide** | **economic, housing, price, property, sales**
- PREP. **in a ~** *The economy is in a slump.* **into ~** *The industry is sinking into slump.* | **~ in** *Estate agents were badly hit by the slump in property prices.*

slump *verb*

1 decrease suddenly
- ADV. **badly, disastrously, dramatically, heavily** *Oil prices have slumped quite badly in recent months.*
- PREP. **by** *Profits slumped by 70 per cent.* **from, to** *Shares in the company slumped from £2.75 to £1.54.*

2 fall/sit down suddenly and heavily
- ADV. **a little** | **dejectedly** | **forward** *sitting with her head slumped forward* | **back, down**
- PREP. **against** *He slumped against the wall.* **in** *She slumped back in her seat.* **into** *He slumped down into a chair.* **over** *She slumped dejectedly over the wheel.*
- PHRASES **be found slumped…** *He was found slumped in a pool of blood by security guards.* **lie/sit slumped…**

slur *noun*

- ADJ. **racial, racist, sexist, sexual**
- VERB + SLUR **cast** *The comments cast a slur on her character.*
- PREP. **~ against/on** *The joke was seen as a slur against the mentally ill.* ◇ *a slur on his good name*

slush *noun*

- ADJ. **dirty** *There was dirty brown slush all over the roads and pavements.* | **brown, grey**
- VERB + SLUSH **turn to** *The snow had turned to slush.*
- PREP. **through the ~** *A pair of wide tracks led through the slush and mud.*

smack *noun*

- ADJ. **good, hard**
- VERB + SMACK **give sb, land (sb)** *He longed to land her a good smack in the face.* | **get**
- PREP. **with a ~** *She brought her hand down on the water with a smack.*

smack *verb*

- ADV. **hard** *I'll smack you very hard if you do that again!*
- PREP. **on** *She smacked the boy on his leg.*

PHRASAL VERB

smack of sth
- ADV. **strongly, too much** *Today's announcement smacks strongly of a government cover-up.* | **a little**

small *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** | **become, get, grow** *The gap seemed to be getting smaller.* ◇ *The kite grew smaller and smaller and finally disappeared altogether.* | **remain, stay** *Choose plants that will stay quite small.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, terribly, very** | **a bit, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively**
- PREP. **for** *My coat was rather small for Bob.*

smallpox *noun*

- QUANT. **attack** *In 1742 he suffered a fatal attack of smallpox.* | **case** | **outbreak**
- VERB + SMALLPOX **have, suffer from** | **catch, contract, get** | **die from/of** | **eradicate**
- SMALLPOX + NOUN **epidemic** | **vaccination**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

smash *noun*

1 breaking noisily into pieces
- VERB + SMASH **hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *The plate hit the floor with a smash.* | **~ of** *He heard the smash of breaking glass.*

2 car, etc. crash
- ADJ. **head-on** | **bus, car, train** | **motorway, road**
- VERB + SMASH **have**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Four people were seriously injured in a head-on smash on the A45.*

3 in tennis
- ADJ. **powerful** | **overhead**
- VERB + SMASH **hit** *He can hit a powerful overhead smash.*

smear *noun*

1 mark
- ADJ. **greasy**
- VERB + SMEAR **leave**
- PREP. **~ of** *His fingers left a smear of sweat on the wall.*

2 lies about an important person
- VERB + SMEAR **cast** *The article cast a smear on the Minister for Health.*
- SMEAR + NOUN **campaign, tactic**
- PREP. **~ against/on** *campaign smears against the socialist candidate*

smear *verb*

- ADV. **liberally** *She smeared the cream liberally on her face.*
- PREP. **across, on, (all) over, with** *The child had smeared jam all over her face.*
- PHRASES **heavily smeared with sth** *Their faces were heavily smeared with mud.*

smell *noun*

- ADJ. **overpowering, pervasive, pungent, rich, sharp, strong** *There was an overpowering smell of burning tyres.* | **faint** | **distinct** | **distinctive, particular, unmistakable** | **funny, peculiar, strange, unusual** *What's that funny smell?* | **familiar** | **lingering** | **aromatic, delectable, delicious, fragrant, fresh, lovely, nice, savoury, sweet, wonderful** *the aromatic smells of a spring garden full of herbs* | **warm** | **appalling, awful, bad, evil, horrible, nasty, offensive, terrible, unpleasant, vile** | **acrid, nauseating, putrid, rank, sickly** *An acrid smell filled the air.* | **damp, dank, musty, rancid, sour, stale** *the sour smell of unwashed linen* | **earthy, fishy, masculine, metallic, musky, oily, smoky, spicy** | **cooking** *Cooking smells drifted up from the kitchen.*
- VERB + SMELL **be filled with, have** *The air was filled with a pervasive smell of chemicals.* ◇ *The cottage had a musty smell after being shut up over the winter.* | **give off** *The skunk gives off an unpleasant smell when attacked.* | **catch, detect** *As she walked into the house she detected the smell of gas.*
- SMELL + VERB **come, emanate, drift, float, waft** *A delicious smell of freshly baked bread wafted across the garden.* | **fill sth, hang** | **hit sb** *Then the pungent smell hit us—rotting fish and seaweed.*
- PREP. **~ from** *the putrid smell from the slaughterhouse* **~ of** *The faint smell of her perfume hung in the air.*

smell *verb*

1 notice/identify sth by using your nose
- ADV. **properly, well** *I had a streaming cold, so I could not smell properly.* | **almost** *Snow fell so that you could almost smell the cold.*
- VERB + SMELL **can/could**

2 have a particular smell
- ADV. **strongly** *His clothes smelled strongly of fish.* | **faintly, slightly, vaguely** *He smelled faintly of sweat.* | **deliciously, pleasantly, sweetly**
- PREP. **like** *It smells like rotten meat!* **of** *The kitchen smelled sweetly of herbs and fruit.*

smile *noun*

- ADJ. **bright, broad, wide** | **faint, thin, wan, weak** | **beatific, cheerful, dazzling, happy, radiant, sunny, warm** *the warm smile in his eyes* | **charming, gentle, sweet, winning** | **arch, disarming, enigmatic, mocking, rueful, sardonic, wry** *She gave a wry smile.* | **sad** | **shy** | **apologetic, sheepish** | **encouraging, indulgent, reassuring** | **polite** | **beguiling** | **ready** | **fixed, forced** | **supercilious** | **conspiratorial, knowing** | **grim** *a grim smile of satisfaction* | **humourless, mirthless** *She suppressed a mirthless smile.* | **crooked, lopsided** | **toothless**
- QUANT. **glimmer, hint, trace** *A trace of a smile played across her lips.*
- VERB + SMILE **have, wear** *She had a happy smile on her face.* | **flash (sb), give sb, smile** *He flashed her a disarming smile.* ◇ *She smiled a smile of dry amusement.* | **manage** *She managed a weak smile.* | **return** *She returned his smile.* | **hide, repress, suppress** *They had to hide their smiles.* | **forced** *Her father forced a smile.* | **bring** *Her antics brought a smile to my face.* | **crease into** *His face creased into a smile.*
- SMILE + VERB **fade, freeze, vanish** *Her sunny smile vanished as she read the letter.* | **cross sth, flicker across sth, play across sth** *A faint smile flickered across her face.* | **tug at the corner of the mouth** *A wry smile tugged at the corner of his mouth.* | **grow, spread (across/over sth)** *Her smile grew radiant.* ◇ *A gentle smile spread over her face.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *'Oh, hello,' he said, with a smile.* | **~ of** *a smile of approval*
- PHRASES **be all smiles** *Twelve hours later she was all smiles again.* **be wreathed in smiles** *His face was wreathed in smiles.* **wipe the smile off sb's face** *I'm going to wipe that smile off your face* (= make you stop thinking this is funny).

smile *verb*

- ADV. **broadly, widely** *She put down her tools and smiled broadly.* | **faintly, slightly, thinly, wanly, weakly** *He looked at the mess and smiled weakly.* | **dazzlingly, happily, radiantly, warmly** *Lawrence nodded, smiling happily.* | **charmingly, gently, sweetly, winningly** | **benignly, kindly, politely** | **shyly** | **encouragingly, indulgently, reassuringly** *The doctor smiled reassuringly.* | **apologetically, sheepishly** | **ruefully, wryly** *Molly smiled rather wryly and said nothing.* | **archly, enigmatically** | **conspiratorially** | **sadly** | **grimly** | **humourlessly, mirthlessly** | **crookedly, lopsidedly** | **back** *He smiled at her, and she smiled back.*
- VERB + SMILE **try to** | **manage to** | **make sb** *The memory still made her smile.*
- PREP. **at** *He turned and smiled at me.* **with** *She smiled with pleasure.*
- PHRASES **smile from ear to ear, smile to yourself** *She smiled to herself, picturing how surprised her mother would be to see her.*

smirk *noun*

- ADJ. **arrogant, knowing, patronizing, self-satisfied**
- VERB + SMIRK **have** *She had a self-satisfied smirk on her face.* | **give** *She gave a knowing smirk.* | **conceal, hide** *He made no attempt to conceal his smirk.*
- SMIRK + VERB **flicker** *A smirk flickered at the corner of his mouth as he watched my struggle.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *'Comfortable?' he asked with a smirk.* | **~ of** *a smirk of triumph*

smog *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy | urban | photochemical**
- VERB + SMOG **reduce** *measures to reduce smog*
- SMOG + NOUN **alert | level**

smoke *noun*

- ADJ. **dense, thick | black, blue, grey, etc. | billowing | acrid, choking, stale | cigar, cigarette, pipe, tobacco**
- QUANT. **cloud, column, haze, pall, plume, puff, spiral, wisp** *We sat drinking in a haze of cigarette smoke.* ◊ *The witch disappeared in a puff of smoke.*
- VERB + SMOKE **belch (out), blow, emit** *The lorry ahead was belching out black smoke.* ◊ *Don't blow smoke in my face!* | **exhale | inhale | go up in** *The barn went up in smoke* (= was destroyed by a fire). | **be wreathed in** *She sat there wreathed in cigarette smoke.*
- SMOKE + VERB **belch, billow, curl, drift, fill, pour, rise from/into** *Blue smoke curled upwards from her cigarette.* | **hang** *A pall of yellow smoke hung over the quarry.* | **clear** *When the smoke cleared we saw the extent of the damage.*
- SMOKE + NOUN **plume, ring** *I taught myself to blow smoke rings.* | **signal | bomb | alarm, detector | emission | inhalation**
- PHRASES **full of smoke, thick with smoke** *The public bar was thick with stale tobacco smoke.*

smoke *verb*

1 cigarette/pipe, etc.

- ADV. **heavily** *He has always smoked heavily.*

2 meat/fish/cheese

- ADV. **heavily | lightly** *The ham is cured, then lightly smoked.*

smoker *noun*

- ADJ. **chain, heavy | regular | light | passive** *the risk of lung cancer in passive smokers* | **cigar, cigarette, pipe**
- SMOKER + NOUN **a smoker's cough**

smoking *noun*

- ADJ. **chain, heavy | passive** *the dangers of passive smoking* | **cigar, cigarette, pipe, tobacco**
- VERB + SMOKING **start, take up | give up, quit, stop** *I'm trying to give up smoking.* | **cut down on** *The doctor advised me to cut down on smoking and alcohol.* | **ban**
- SMOKING + NOUN **habit | ban** *A total smoking ban has been imposed throughout the building.* | **room**
- PHRASES **a ban on smoking, the dangers/effects of smoking** *a study of the harmful effects of smoking* **no smoking** *The company has a strict no smoking policy.* **smoking-related death/disease/illness**

smooth *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, gently** *She smoothed his hair gently.* | **back, down, out** *Her mother smoothed back Alice's hair.* ◊ *Use an iron to smooth out any creases.*

smooth *adj.*

1 without bumps

- VERBS **be, feel, look | become | wear sth** *The steps had been worn smooth by the thousands of passing feet.*
- ADV. **beautifully, exceptionally, extremely, really, very** *her beautifully smooth complexion* | **completely, perfectly | almost | fairly, quite | deceptively** *the deceptively smooth surface of the glacier*

2 without problems

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become**
- ADV. **extremely, incredibly, really, remarkably, very** *The project got off to a remarkably smooth start.* | **completely | not entirely** *The process of negotiation was not entirely smooth.* | **almost | fairly, quite, reasonably, relatively** *a fairly smooth transition to democracy*

smug *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *Now don't get smug just because you've won a couple of games.*
- ADV. **incredibly, very** *the incredibly smug expression on his face* | **almost | a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly**
- PREP. **about** *What are you looking so smug about?*

smuggle *verb*

- ADV. **secretly | aboard, abroad, in, out**
- VERB + SMUGGLE **try to | manage to**
- PREP. **into** *goods which have been smuggled into Britain* **out of** *Friends managed to smuggle him secretly out of the country.*

smuggling *noun*

- ADJ. **arms, cocaine, drug, heroin, gold, ivory, etc.**
- SMUGGLING + NOUN **attempt | gang, operation, racket, ring | route | vessel**

⇨ Note at CRIME (for verbs)

snack *noun*

- ADJ. **healthy, light | tasty | savoury, sweet | hot, cold | quick** *We stopped at a service station for a quick snack.* | **bedtime, lunchtime, mid-afternoon, mid-morning, midnight | party**
- VERB + SNACK **eat, have | stop for | cook (sb), fix (sb), make (sb), prepare** *I fixed myself a light snack.* | **provide (sb with), serve** *A bar service provides drinks and snacks throughout the day.*
- SNACK + NOUN **food | lunch, meal, time** *Most office staff prefer a snack lunch to a sit-down meal.* | **service | bar, counter, kiosk**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

snag *noun*

- ADJ. **big, major | minor, small** *A minor snag is that it's expensive.* | **possible, potential | technical**
- VERB + SNAG **hit** *We've hit a technical snag: the printer isn't compatible with my PC.* | **iron out** *There are a few snags to iron out before the prototype is ready.*
- PREP. **~ in** *one of the snags in the scheme* **~ to** *There is a snag to the job: you have to work at weekends.* **~ with** *I suddenly saw the major snag with the whole idea.*

snail *noun*

- ADJ. **edible | land, marine, pond, sea, water**
- SNAIL + NOUN **shell**
- PHRASES **(at) a snail's pace** *Traffic had slowed to a snail's pace.*

snake *noun*

- ADJ. **deadly** *one of the world's deadliest snakes* | **poisonous, venomous | grass, sea, tree, water**
- SNAKE + VERB **bite sb/sth, strike sth** *She was bitten by a snake while walking through long grass.* ◊ *The snake lifted up its head before striking its prey.* | **slide, slither, wind (its way)** *A small green snake slithered across the wet road.* ◊ *The snake wound its way through the undergrowth.* | **hiss, spit | moult, shed its skin | coil (itself) around, coil up, curl up | uncoil**
- SNAKE + NOUN **bite** (also **snakebite**) | **charmer | venom**

snap *verb*

1 break suddenly with a sharp noise
- ADV. **suddenly** *The branch suddenly snapped.*
- PHRASES **snap (sth) in half/two** *She picked up the pencil and snapped it in two.*

2 move (sth) quickly with a sharp noise
- PHRASES **snap (sth) open/shut** *She snapped the lid shut.* **snap (sth) together** *The plastic pieces snap together to make a replica of a dinosaur.*

3 speak in a quick angry way
- ADV. **angrily, impatiently, irritably, sarcastically, sharply | back** *'How should I know?' Zen snapped back.*
- PREP. **at** *He lost his temper and snapped irritably at the children.*

4 lose control
- ADV. **finally** *My patience finally snapped.*

snarl *verb*
- ADV. **savagely, viciously** *He snarled savagely at her.* | **almost**
- PREP. **at** *A guard dog snarled at us as we walked by.*

snatch *noun*
- ADJ. **brief**
- VERB + SNATCH **catch, hear, overhear** *We caught snatches of conversation from the room next door.* | **hum, sing** *He was humming a snatch of a song from 'Cabaret'.*
- PREP. **in ~es** *She learnt to sleep in brief snatches.*
- PHRASES **a snatch of conversation/music/song**

snatch *verb*
- ADV. **almost | quickly | away, up** *She leapt to her feet, snatching up her bag.*
- VERB + SNATCH **try to**
- PREP. **at** *He snatched at her arm as she walked past.* **from** *She almost snatched the letter from my hand.*

sneer *noun*
- ADJ. **arrogant | faint, slight**
- VERB + SNEER **give** *He gave an arrogant sneer.* | **hide**
- PREP. **with a ~ | ~ at** *The prime minister resisted a sneer at his opponent's misfortune.*
- PHRASES **curl/twist your lips into a sneer, a sneer in your voice**

sneeze *verb*
- ADV. **loudly** *Someone sneezed loudly at the back of the hall.*
- VERB + SNEEZE **make sb** *The smoke reached her and made her sneeze.*

sniff *noun*
- ADJ. **deep, good | loud**
- VERB + SNIFF **give, let out** *She gave a loud sniff of disapproval.* | **hear | get, have, take** *to get a sniff of fresh air*
- PREP. **between ~s** *'I'm sorry,' he said between sniffs.* **with a ~** *'I'm fine,' she said with a sniff.* | **~ at** *The dog had a good sniff at the bushes around the garden.*
- PHRASES **a sniff of disapproval**

⇨ Note at SOUND

sniff *verb*
- ADV. **loudly** *She wiped her eyes and sniffed loudly.* | **deeply | a little | carefully, delicately | appreciatively** *He sniffed appreciatively. 'Smells delicious. What is it?'* | **disapprovingly, disdainfully, disparagingly | suspiciously | back** *The woman sniffed back her tears.*
- PREP. **at** *The dog sniffed at his shoes.*

snippet *noun*
- ADJ. **little | interesting** *He passed on any interesting snippets of information he could glean from his colleagues.*
- VERB + SNIPPET **gather, glean | give, pass on**
- PREP. **~ from** *The article gave a few snippets from her forthcoming memoirs.* **~ of** *a snippet of conversation*

snobbery *noun*
- ADJ. **inverted** *His dismissive attitude towards the rich is just inverted snobbery.* | **cultural, intellectual, musical**
- PREP. **~ about** *his snobbery about mixing with people from other classes* **~ towards** *snobbery towards electronic music*

snooker *noun*
- ADJ. **professional**
- QUANT. **frame, game** *We played a couple of frames of snooker in the evening.*
- VERB + SNOOKER **play**
- SNOOKER + NOUN **ball, cue, table | ace, champion, player, star | club, hall, room | match, tournament | league**

⇨ Special page at SPORT

snore *verb*
- ADV. **loudly, noisily | gently, lightly, quietly, softly** *She was asleep in a chair and snoring gently.* | **contentedly** *He began to snore contentedly.*
- VERB + SNORE **begin to, start to**

snort *noun*
- ADJ. **little | loud | derisive**
- VERB + SNORT **give, let out** *He gave a snort of contempt.* | **hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *'What a mess they made of it,' said Sam with a snort of derision.* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **a snort of derision/disgust, a snort of laughter**

⇨ Note at SOUND

snort *verb*
- ADV. **loudly | softly | angrily, contemptuously, derisively, impatiently, indignantly** *He snorted indignantly and walked away.*
- PREP. **in** *He snorted in disgust.* **with** *Her friends snorted with laughter.*

snow *noun*
- ADJ. **heavy, thick | fine, light** *The plants were covered in fine snow.* | **deep | damp, wet | compacted, crisp, frozen, hard, packed** *The crisp snow crunched as we walked through it.* ◇ *The frozen snow was treacherous to walk on.* | **powder/powdery, soft | drifting, driving, falling, swirling** *They struggled on through the driving snow.* | **melted, melting | fresh, new, newly fallen | first** *the first snow of winter* | **spring, winter | artificial** *They had to use artificial snow at the Winter Olympics.* | **dirty**
- QUANT. **flake | fall, flurry | patch | blanket, carpet | inch** *Three inches of snow fell had fallen.*
- VERB + SNOW **be covered in** *The car was completely covered in snow.* | **clear, shovel, sweep** *She cleared the snow from the path.*
- SNOW + VERB **cover sth, lie, pile (up), settle** *Snow covered everything from horizon to horizon.* ◇ *Snow had piled up against the walls of the cottage.* ◇ *It was too warm for the snow to settle.* | **drift, drive, fall, swirl | melt, thaw**
- SNOW + NOUN **conditions, flurry, storm** (also **snowstorm**) | **plough** (also **snowplough**) | **blindness**
- PREP. **across ~** *They travelled across the snow in a sleigh.* **in/into ~** *The children are playing in the snow.*

through ~ *We struggled through the deep snow back to the chalet.* **under ~** *The steps were buried under the snow.*

snow *verb*

- ADV. **hard, heavily** *It had been snowing heavily all night.* | **lightly**
- PHRASES **start/stop snowing** *It started snowing just as we were setting out.*

snowfall *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy** | **light** | **annual** | **average** *What's the average snowfall for this region?*
- VERB + SNOWFALL **have** *We had a light snowfall last night.*

snowflake *noun*

- SNOWFLAKES + VERB **fall, flutter** | **melt**

snub *noun*

- ADJ. **deliberate**
- VERB + SNUB **deliver sb** *He took the opportunity to deliver us another snub.* | **receive**
- PREP. **as a ~** | **~ for/to** *His cancellation of the concert was seen as a deliberate snub to the organizers.*

snub *verb*

- ADV. **deliberately** | **publicly** | **rudely**
- PHRASES **feel snubbed** *He was not invited to the party, and felt snubbed.*

snuff *noun*

- QUANT. **pinch**
- VERB + SNUFF **inhale, take**
- SNUFF + NOUN **box**

snuggle *verb*

- ADV. **close** *She slipped her arm through his and snuggled close.* | **down, up** *I snuggled down in my sleeping bag.*
- PREP. **against** *Claudia snuggled against him.* **into** *She snuggled into him and closed her eyes.*

soak *verb*

- ADV. **completely, thoroughly** | **overnight** | **off, out** *Place the jar in warm water to soak the label off.*
- VERB + SOAK **leave sth to** *I've left the clothes to soak overnight.*
- PREP. **in** *Soak the clothes in cold water.* **into** *Water dripped off the table and soaked into the carpet.* **through** *The rain had soaked through every layer of his clothing.* **with** *He soaked the cloth with petrol.*

soaked *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look** | **get**
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, thoroughly**
- PHRASES **soaked to the skin** *There was a sudden shower and we got soaked to the skin.*

soap *noun*

- ADJ. **mild** | **perfumed, scented** | **liquid** | **carbolic** | **toilet** | **saddle**
- QUANT. **bar, cake**
- VERB + SOAP **use, wash (sth) with**
- SOAP + NOUN **flakes, powder** | **bubble, suds** | **dish, dispenser**
- PHRASES **soap and water**

soar *verb*

1 increase very fast

- ADV. **dramatically** *Profits have soared dramatically in recent months.*
- VERB + SOAR **be expected to, be set to** *Borrowing is set to soar to an astonishing £60 billion.*
- PREP. **by** *Retail sales soared by 10% in the twelve months to November.* **from, to** *Inflation has soared from 5% to 15%.*
- PHRASES **send sth soaring** *The fuel shortage sent prices soaring.*

2 fly high in the air

- ADV. **high** | **overhead** *A buzzard soared high overhead.*
- PREP. **above, over** *an eagle soaring high above them*

sob *noun*

- ADJ. **big, deep, great** | **little** | **loud** | **choked, hoarse, stifled, strangled** | **choking, gasping, gulping, racking, shuddering** | **occasional** | **dry**
- VERB + SOB **give, let out** | **be racked by/with, shake with** *He was too racked by sobs to reply.* | **choke back, stifle** *Choking back a sob, she ran to her father's chair.* | **hear**
- SOB + VERB **break from sb/sth, burst from sb/sth, escape sb/sth** *A sob escaped her lips.* | **rise** *A choked sob rose in his throat.* | **catch** *A dry sob caught in her throat.* | **rack sth, shake sth** *Deep racking sobs shook his whole body.* | **subside**
- SOB + NOUN **story** *You can't expect me to believe this sob story!*
- PREP. **between ~s** *'I don't want to go!' she got out between sobs.* **through ~s** *He continued his story through stifled sobs.* **with a ~** *'Why didn't you tell me?' she said with a sob.* | **~ from** *a sob from George* **~ of** *a great sob of despair*
- PHRASES **a sob of despair/pain/relief**

⇨ Note at SOUND

sob *verb*

- ADV. **aloud** | **loudly** | **quietly, silently** | **hysterically, uncontrollably, wildly** | **almost** *He was pleading, almost sobbing, first silently and then aloud.*
- VERB + SOB **begin to, start to** *He began to sob uncontrollably.* | **hear sb** *I heard a child sobbing loudly.*
- PREP. **with** *She was sobbing with pain and fear.*
- PHRASES **sob your heart out**

sober *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** | **remain, stay** *She wanted a drink, but she had to stay sober.* | **keep sb** *Only the thought of her kept him sober.*
- ADV. **completely, perfectly, quite, stone-cold** | **not entirely** | **almost, fairly, more or less, pretty well, reasonably, relatively** *By this time he felt more or less sober again.* | **enough** *At that point she was still sober enough to ask sensible questions.*

soccer *noun*

- ADJ. **amateur, professional** | **top-class** | **junior, senior, youth** | **ladies', women's** | **league, non-league** | **premiership** | **first-division, etc.** | **international, world** | **competitive** | **five-a-side** | **indoor**
- QUANT. **game**
- VERB + SOCCER **play** | **watch**
- SOCCER + NOUN **ball** | **field, ground, pitch, stadium** | **game, match, tournament** | **club, team** | **ace, hero, legend, player, star** | **boss, coach, manager, official** | **management** | **fan, spectator, supporter** | **season** | **career** | **skills** | **strip** | **hooligan, thug** | **violence** | **fanzine, magazine** | **memento, memorabilia**

socialism *noun*

• ADJ. **democratic, state**
• VERB + SOCIALISM **build, establish** *trying to build socialism in their own country*
• PREP. **under ~** *They believed that these problems would disappear under socialism.*

socialist *noun*

• ADJ. **dedicated, staunch, strong | radical, revolutionary | liberal | moderate | democratic**
• SOCIALIST + VERB **come to power** *The socialists came to power in 1981.*

social security *noun*

• VERB + SOCIAL SECURITY **be entitled to, claim, receive** *If you are unemployed you can claim social security.*
• SOCIAL SECURITY + NOUN **provision, system** *plans to improve social security provision for single parents* | **benefits, payments | contributions** *All people in work pay social security contributions.* | **department, minister, office | budget, funds, spending**
• PREP. **on ~** *He's out of work and on social security.*

social worker *noun*

• ADJ. **senior | trained | specialist | psychiatric | hospital, residential**
⇨ Note at JOB

society *noun*

1 people who have shared customs and laws
• ADJ. **wider** *the position of women within the family and the wider society* | **contemporary, modern | traditional | advanced** *the division of labour in an advanced capitalist society* | **primitive | egalitarian, free, just, open | closed | civilized, humane | affluent** *the consumerist values of the affluent society* | **consumer, consumerist | throwaway** *Our throwaway society must be encouraged to recycle.* | **permissive | multicultural, multiracial, pluralistic | divided, stratified** *Years of high unemployment have left society deeply divided.* | **civil** *the relationship between the state and civil society* | **secular | human** *a theory on the basis of human society* | **class | classless | tribal | matriarchal, patriarchal | bourgeois | capitalist, democratic, feudal, socialist, etc. | industrial, post-industrial, pre-industrial | agricultural, technological | Western | rural, urban, village | polite** *Such language would not be used in polite society.*
• VERB + SOCIETY **build, create, shape** *the struggle to build a just society* | **permeate, pervade** *the greed that pervades modern society* | **fit into** *Prisoners often have problems fitting into society on their release.* | **polarize**
• SOCIETY + VERB **be based on sth** *a society based on social justice*
• PREP. **in/within (a) ~** *the role of television in modern Western society*
• PHRASES **a cross-section of society** *The clinic deals with a wide cross-section of society* **the fabric of society** *The civil war tore apart the fabric of society.* **the higher/top echelons of society** *Officers were drawn largely from the top echelons of society.* **a level/rank/stratum of society** *Child cruelty exists at all levels of society.* **a member of society** *welfare reforms to protect the most vulnerable members of society* **an outcast from/of society** *She devoted herself to helping the outcasts of society.* **the backbone/a bulwark/a pillar of society** *One of the pillars of society must be that everyone has access to the legal system.* ◇ *He considered himself to be a pillar of society.* **your place/rank in society** *A person's job is one of the factors that determines their place in society.* **the rest of society** *He felt isolated from the rest of society.* **a section/sector/segment of society** *Every section of society must have access to education.* **society as a whole** *The research examines minorities and their relation to society as a whole.* **society at large** *Health standards have risen in society at large.* **the structure of a society** *the class structure of British society*

2 organization formed for a particular purpose
• ADJ. **secret | debating, dramatic, historical, horticultural, law, medical, musical, religious, etc.**
• VERB + SOCIETY **belong to** *She belongs to the historical society.* | **become a member of, join | create, establish, form, found, set up, start**
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *She was active in the Society for Women's Suffrage.* | **~ for** *a society for the prevention of cruelty to animals* **~ of** *the Society of Motor Manufacturers and Traders*
⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION

sociology *noun*

• ADJ. **classical, mainstream, radical | industrial, medical, political, urban, etc.**
• PHRASES **the sociology of culture/knowledge/religion/science, etc.**
⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

sock *noun*

• ADJ. **knee, long | ankle, short | thick | woolly | old, smelly | odd** *He wore odd socks, one red and one yellow.*
• QUANT. **pair**
• VERB + SOCK **pull on, pull up | pull off | knit | darn, mend**
⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

socket *noun*

1 for electricity
• ADJ. **13 amp, etc. | electric/electrical, mains, plug, power | aerial, headphone, etc. | input, output | floor, wall**
• VERB + SOCKET **plug (sth) into** *The battery charger plugs into any mains socket.*
• SOCKET + NOUN **outlet**

2 in the body
• ADJ. **sunken | eye, hip, shoulder**
• VERB + SOCKET **sink into** *Her eyes sank deep into their sockets.*
• PREP. **in its ~** *His eyes bulged madly in their sockets.*

sofa *noun*

• ADJ. **battered | comfortable, plush | deep, low-slung** *She sank into the deep sofa.* | **chintz, leather, etc. | wide | three-seater, two-seater, etc. | convertible** *The convertible sofa means that the apartment can sleep four.*
• VERB + SOFA **collapse on/onto, flop (back) on/onto, lower yourself onto, settle (yourself) (down) on, sink down on/onto, sink (back/down) onto, sit (down) on, slump (back) on/onto** *He slumped back on the sofa in tears.* | **be sprawled across/on, be stretched out on, lie on, lounge on, recline on, sprawl across/on, stretch out on** *I spent the evening sprawled on the sofa, watching TV.* | **get up from, jump up from, pull yourself up from, rise from** *He got up from the sofa to fetch some drinks.*
• SOFA + NOUN **bed**
• PREP. **on the ~** *She was curled up on the sofa.*
• PHRASES **the arm/back/edge of a sofa**

soft *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look | become, go, turn | stay** *Her skin had stayed soft and supple.*
• ADV. **beautifully, extremely, incredibly, really, very** *The fabric has a beautifully soft texture.* | **all** *These tomatoes have gone all soft.* | **fairly, quite, rather, relatively, slightly**

soften *verb*

1 become/make sth softer/gentler

- ADV. **considerably, a lot | a little, slightly** *His smile softened slightly.*

2 make sth seem less severe

- ADV. **slightly, somewhat**
- VERB + SOFTEN **try** *The chancellor may try to soften the blow somewhat with a cut in interest rates.* | **help (to)**

software *noun*

- ADJ. **computer | application | accounting, design, educational, management, music-sharing, etc. | anti-virus | proprietary | pirated** *He was arrested for selling pirated software.*
- QUANT. **piece** *an exciting piece of design software*
- VERB + SOFTWARE **use, run** *My PC isn't powerful enough to run that software.* | **design, develop, write | download, install**
- SOFTWARE + VERB **run** *The software will run on most IBM-compatible PCs.*
- SOFTWARE + NOUN **application, package, product, program, system, tool | development, engineering | developer, engineer | company, firm, house**

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

soil *noun*

1 earth

- ADJ. **deep | shallow, thin | fertile, good, rich | barren, infertile, poor | light | heavy | loose | dry | damp, moist, waterlogged, wet | acid/acidic, alkaline | contaminated | top** (also **topsoil**) **| chalky, clay/clayey, peaty, sandy, stony | alluvial, desert, forest, garden, polar, volcanic**
- VERB + SOIL **cultivate | dig, till, turn, work** *fields of newly turned soil* ◇ *The clayey soils of the region are difficult to work.* | **fertilize | drain | loosen**
- SOIL + NOUN **conservation | degradation, erosion | conditions, fertility, quality** *declining soil fertility* | **type | surface | science, scientist**
- PREP. **in (the)~** *The flowers do well in sandy soil.*

2 part of a country

- ADJ. **native | foreign**
- VERB + SOIL **set foot on** *She first set foot on French soil at a small Channel port.*
- PREP. **on ... ~** *protests over the siting of nuclear weapons on British soil*

solace *noun*

- ADJ. **great | spiritual**
- VERB + SOLACE **bring (sb), give sb, offer (sb)** *The news brought no solace to the grieving relations.* | **find, take** *Unable to travel, he found some solace in reading about other people's journeys abroad.* | **seek** *They sought solace in religion from the harshness of their everyday lives.*
- PHRASES **turn to sb/sth for solace** *His career took a nosedive and he turned to drink and drugs for solace.*

soldier *noun*

- ADJ. **brave, fine, good, great** *The minister paid tribute to the brave soldiers who had lost their lives.* | **trained | experienced, veteran | former, old, retired | professional, regular | volunteer | conscript | common, ordinary, private, rank-and-file** *What was life like for the common soldier?* | **fellow** *He was deeply affected by the death of one of his fellow soldiers.* | **loyal** *soldiers loyal to the president* | **dead, injured, wounded | armed | foot, mounted | mercenary | enemy | Allied, British, etc. | government, rebel | uniformed | undercover | toy**
- VERB + SOLDIER **be, serve as | enlist as** *He decided to enlist as a soldier.* | **play** *little boys playing soldiers*
- SOLDIER + VERB **enlist** *The number of soldiers enlisting has fallen dramatically.* | **be stationed, serve** *soldiers serving in Germany* | **march | fight (sb) | defend sth, guard sth | open fire (on sb)** *At least 19 people were killed when soldiers opened fire on a peaceful demonstration.* | **shoot sb dead | be killed in action, die | be wounded | be missing in action | be captured, be taken prisoner | return** *soldiers returning from the war* | **desert**

sole *noun*

- ADJ. **thick, thin | leather, rubber | inner**
- PHRASES **the sole of your boot/shoe** *I've got a hole in the sole of my shoe.* **the soles of your feet** *The sand was so hot I got blisters on the soles of my feet.*

solemn *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** *She usually had a smile on her face, but now she looked solemn.* | **become, grow** *His face grew solemn.* | **remain**
- ADV. **very** *He addressed them all in very solemn tones.* | **rather** *Her mood was rather solemn.*

solemnity *noun*

- ADJ. **great** *The monument was unveiled with great solemnity.* | **mock**
- PREP. **with~**

solicit *verb*

- ADV. **actively** *She had actively solicited funds for her election campaign.*
- PREP. **for** *Local companies were solicited for money.* **from** *She solicited support from other teachers.*

solicitor *noun*

- ADJ. **good | qualified | trainee | duty, practising** *There will be no court duty solicitor today.* ◇ *She is still a practising solicitor at the age of sixty-two.*
- PHRASES **a firm of solicitors**

⇨ Note at PROFESSIONAL (for verbs)

solid *adj.*

1 hard and firm/not hollow

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, go** *If you put it in the freezer, it will go solid.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, completely | almost, practically | quite | enough** *The ice felt solid enough.* | **apparently, seemingly**

2 reliable and strong

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become | remain**
- ADV. **extremely, really, very | absolutely, rock** *Support for the plan remained rock solid.* | **fairly, pretty** *There is pretty solid evidence to show that the disease is caused by poor hygiene.*

solidarity *noun*

- ADJ. **international, national | class, community, family, group, social, (trade) union, working-class**
- VERB + SOLIDARITY **feel | demonstrate, express, show | foster, promote**
- PREP. **in ~with** *Various other groups of workers went on strike in solidarity with the train drivers.* | **~ against** *promoting union solidarity against management* **~ among/amongst/between** *The conflict fostered solidarity among Arab oil states.* **~with** *Orwell expressed his solidarity with the miners in the book.*
- PHRASES **a gesture of solidarity** *Catering staff staged a sit-down protest as a gesture of solidarity with the striking nurses.* **a sense of solidarity** *The strike fostered a sense of solidarity among the workers.*

solitude *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute**
- VERB + SOLITUDE **seek**
- PREP. **in ~** *to pray in solitude* **in the ~ of** *She enjoyed a few moments of peace in the solitude of the garden.*

solo *noun*

- ADJ. **long** | **brief, short** | **brilliant** | **piano, violin, etc.** | **soprano, tenor, etc.**
- VERB + SOLO **do, perform, play, sing**

soluble *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **highly, very** *It is a highly soluble gas.* | **easily, freely** | **completely, totally** | **partially, partly, slightly**
- PREP. **in** *The disulphate was easily soluble in water.*

solution *noun*

1 to a problem, difficult situation, etc.

- ADJ. **complete, comprehensive** | **partial** | **effective, good, happy, ideal, neat, optimal, perfect, real** *His plan does not offer a real solution to the problem.* | **acceptable** | **satisfactory, workable** | **correct, right** | **easy, obvious, simple** | **possible** | **feasible, practical, realistic, viable** | **cost-effective** | **creative, imaginative, ingenious** | **drastic, radical** | **early, immediate, instant, quick, speedy** *The UN representative stressed the urgency of an early solution.* | **final, lasting, long-term, permanent, ultimate** | **interim, short-term, temporary** | **proposed** | **pragmatic** | **compromise, negotiated** | **diplomatic, peaceful, political** | **military** | **technical**
- VERB + SOLUTION **look for, seek, work towards** | **achieve, agree (on), arrive at, come up with, find, produce, reach, work out** *attempts to find a comprehensive political solution to the crisis* | **propose, put forward, suggest** | **adopt** | **offer, provide**
- PREP. **~ for** *a quick solution for dealing with the paper shortage* **~ to** *They were seeking an ultimate solution to the city's traffic problem.*

2 liquid in which a solid has been dissolved

- ADJ. **concentrated, neat, strong** | **dilute, weak** | **saturated** | **acid** | **alkaline** | **aqueous** | **saline, salt** | **bicarbonate, sodium chloride, etc.**
- SOLUTION + VERB **contain**
- PREP. **in ~** *aluminium ions in solution*

solve *verb*

- ADV. **completely** *The mystery has not yet been completely solved.* | **largely** | **half, partially, partly** | **hardly** | **not necessarily** *Being with peers and friends does not necessarily solve this feeling of loneliness.* | **adequately, satisfactorily** *This question has never been satisfactorily solved.* | **effectively** | **convincingly** | **easily, readily** | **quickly** | **elegantly, neatly** | **magically, somehow** | **eventually, finally** | **never**
- VERB + SOLVE **attempt to, try to** | **help (to), help sb (to)** *We were given clues to help us solve the puzzle.* | **be designed to** *a scheme designed to solve the housing problem* | **fail to** | **be difficult to**
- PREP. **by** *We hope the difficulty can be solved by getting the two sides together to discuss the issues.* **with** *The problem cannot be solved with spending cuts alone.*
- PHRASES **an attempt to solve sth**

solvent *noun*

- ADJ. **volatile** | **chlorinated** | **chemical, organic** | **cleaning, industrial**
- VERB + SOLVENT **abuse, sniff**
- SOLVENT + VERB **evaporate**
- SOLVENT + NOUN **abuse, sniffing**

sombre *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem** *Everyone looked very sombre.* | **become, grow** *His eyes grew sombre.* | **remain** *The mood in Parliament remained sombre.*
- ADV. **very** | **fairly, rather, somewhat** *She was in a somewhat sombre mood.* | **suitably** *The funeral cortège passed, to suitably sombre music.*

son *noun*

- ADJ. **baby, newborn** | **little, small, young** | **teenage** | **grown-up** | **only** | **eldest, first-born, middle, oldest, youngest** | **elder, younger** | **illegitimate, legitimate** | **dutiful, good** | **fine, strong** *The queen bore him four fine sons.* | **long-lost, prodigal** *They welcomed me like a long-lost son.* | **married, unmarried**
- VERB + SON **have** *They've got three young sons.* | **bear** (*formal*), **give birth to** | **bring up** *Living alone and trying to bring up a young son is no easy task.*
- SON + VERB **grow up**

song *noun*

1 piece of music with words

- ADJ. **beautiful, good, great, lovely** | **catchy** | **mournful, sad** | **country, folk, pop/popular, traditional** *a Hungarian folk song* | **bawdy, children's, drinking, love, patriotic, protest, religious** *After a few drinks, they were all singing bawdy songs at the top of their voices.* ◇ *a protest song written in the sixties* | **theme, title** *the theme song from 'The Godfather'* ◇ *the title song from the Beatles' album 'Help!'*
- VERB + SONG **compose, write** | **do, perform, play, sing** *They performed another two songs as encores.* ◇ *Sing us a song, Susanna!* | **record**
- SONG + NOUN **writer** (also **songwriter**) *a singer-songwriter* | **contest**
- PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *Important historical events were commemorated in song.* | **~ about** *a song about love*

2 act of singing

- VERB + SONG **break into, burst into** *He strummed a couple of chords on the guitar and they all burst into song.*
- PREP. **in ~** *He heard voices raised in song.*

soothing *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel** *Her touch felt wonderfully soothing.*
- ADV. **very, wonderfully**

sophisticated *adj.*

1 having a lot of experience of the world

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** | **become, get**
- ADV. **highly, very** *She was a highly sophisticated and elegant woman.* | **quite, rather** | **enough, sufficiently** | **intellectually, politically**

2 advanced and complicated

- VERBS **be, look, seem** | **become, get**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *incredibly sophisticated computers* | **increasingly** | **fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively** | **enough, sufficiently** | **technically, technologically**

sophistication *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great** | **growing, increased, increasing** | **cool** | **political, technical, technological**
- VERB + SOPHISTICATION **have** *The decor has a cool sophistication.* | **lack**
- PREP. **with ~** *He writes with increasing sophistication on the subject.*
- PHRASES **an air of sophistication** *Despite her scruffy clothes, there was an air of sophistication about her.* **a degree/level of sophistication** *Computers raised the level of sophistication of these maps.* **a lack of sophistication** *He*

felt people were contemptuous of his lack of sophistication. **a veneer of sophistication** *She adopted an upper-class accent to give herself a veneer of sophistication.*

soprano *noun*

- ADJ. **first, principal, second | boy, female, male | coloratura, lyric, operatic | clear, pure**
- VERB + SOPRANO **sing** *She has sung soprano in many major operas.*
- SOPRANO + NOUN **voice** *She has a natural, clear soprano voice.* | **part** *The soprano part in this opera is very demanding*
- PREP. **in a ~** *She sings in an exceptionally pure soprano.*

sore *noun*

- ADJ. **open, running** (*often figurative*) *The border dispute was a running sore in relations between the countries.*

sorrow *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, genuine, great, unbearable**
- VERB + SORROW **feel** *I felt no sorrow for her.* | **express** *He wrote to the dead man's mother expressing his deep sorrow.* | **share** *She wanted to share his sorrow.* | **hide** *I couldn't hide my sorrow and anger.* | **bring, cause** *The war brought sorrow to millions.*
- PREP. **to sb's ~** *To his great sorrow he could not remember his mother.* **with ~** *They accepted the decision with sorrow.* | **~ at** *his sorrow at having to quit his job*
- PHRASES **a feeling/pang of sorrow** *Claudia felt a deep pang of sorrow for her sister.* **full of sorrow** *He looked at Katherine, his eyes full of sorrow.* **tears of sorrow** *Tears of relief were mixed with tears of sorrow.* **a time of sorrow** *This is a time of great sorrow for all the family.*

sorry *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | make sb** *I'll make you sorry you were ever born!*
- ADV. **awfully, deeply, desperately, dreadfully, extremely, frightfully, genuinely, really, terribly, truly, very** *I'm really sorry Jane can't come with us.* ◇ *I'm terribly sorry, I didn't catch your name.* | **almost** *She was almost sorry to stop work.* | **a bit, a little, quite, rather**
- PREP. **about** *I'm sorry about the noise.* ◇ *I'm sorry about your mother. I do hope she'll soon be feeling better.* **for** *She is obviously deeply sorry for what she has done.* ◇ *I feel really sorry for John.*
- PHRASES **better safe than sorry**

sort *noun*

- ADJ. **best, worst | right, wrong | funny, odd, strange** *He was friendly in a funny sort of way.*
- PREP. **~ of** *The shop sells all sorts of books.*

sort *verb*

1 put things into different groups/places

- ADV. **busily | out** *I sorted the clothes out into two piles.*
- PREP. **according to** *Sort the books according to their subject matter.* **by** *The most common way of grouping was to sort the children by ability.* **into** *We sorted the washing into piles of different garments.* **through** *busily sorting through her clothes*

2 find an answer to a problem

- ADV. **out** *Someone will have to sort this problem out.*
- VERB + SORT **have to | try to | help (to), help sb (to) | leave sb to** *Leave them to sort it out among themselves.*
- PHRASES **get sth sorted (out)** *If he can't get his talk sorted, we'll have to ask someone else.*

soul *noun*

1 part of sb believed to exist after body is dead

- ADJ. **immortal | damned | human, individual**
- VERB + SOUL **save** *Missionaries saw it as their task to save souls.* | **sell** *to sell your soul to the Devil*
- PHRASES **the souls of the dead**

2 part of sb/sth that shows its true nature

- ADJ. **very** *The plea touched him to his very soul.* | **whole | inner**
- VERB + SOUL **lose** *In the process of being made into a film, the story seemed to have lost its soul.* | **bare** *He bared his soul to her.* | **search** *I searched my soul for any malice that could have provoked his words, but found none.*
- SOUL + NOUN **mate**
- PREP. **in your ~** *Deep in her soul she knew she had to return to her country.*
- PHRASES **body and soul** *She gave herself to him body and soul.* **heart and soul** *He gave himself heart and soul to the cause.*

3 deep feeling and thought

- VERB + SOUL **have | lack**
- PREP. **with ~** *She sang the song with passion and soul.*

4 person

- ADJ. **little** *poor little soul* | **old | good | bad | lost, poor, unfortunate | simple | dear, gentle, kind, kindly** *a kind old soul* | **sensitive | brave | romantic | tormented, tortured, troubled | living** *There was no other living soul to be seen.*
- PHRASES **a soul in torment** *The dog was howling like a soul in torment.* **not be a soul in sight** *By midnight, there wasn't a soul in sight.*

NOTE

Sounds

give a ~
The dog gave a low growl.
let out a ~
He let out a blood-curdling scream.
hear ~
We heard the peal of church bells.
with a ~
The vase fell to the ground with a great crash.
~ of
a roar of laughter
a snort of derision
the whine of an engine

sound *noun*

1 sth you hear

- ADJ. **big, deafening, loud, powerful** *We need a big powerful sound from the trumpets in the final passage.* | **audible | faint, little, soft | high | deep, low | clean, clear, sharp** *He produces a good clean sound on his flute.* | **piercing | muffled | amazing, beautiful, good, lovely, pleasing | awful, horrible, sickening** *There was a sickening sound as his head made contact with the concrete.* | **familiar, strange | distinctive | haunting | booming, buzzing, clanking, etc. | metallic | hollow | distorted | distant** *the distant sound of church bells* | **guitar, piano, etc.** *She tried to describe what made a good guitar sound.* | **speech, vowel**
- VERB + SOUND **hear | emit, make, produce, pronounce, transmit, utter** *What's making that awful creaking sound?* ◇ *Three bones transmit sounds to the inner ear.* ◇ *He didn't utter a single sound throughout the meeting.*
- SOUND + VERB **carry, travel** *Sound carries well over calm water.* | **come** *A strange sound came from the box.* | **echo | die away**
- SOUND + NOUN **wave | effect | bite** *As a politician he is a master of the 30-second sound bite.*

- PREP. **at the ~ of** *He turned around at the sound of footsteps behind him.* **without a ~** *The door opened without a sound.* | **~ of** *the sound of breaking glass* **~ from** *There was a strange sound from downstairs.*
- PHRASES **the speed of sound**

2 the **sound** from television/radio, etc.

- ADJ. **recorded** | **mono, stereo**
- VERB + SOUND **turn down/up** *Can you turn the sound up?*
- SOUND + NOUN **level, quality** | **system** *a stereo sound system* | **recording** | **recorder** | **engineer**

sound *adj.*

1 in good condition

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably** | **structurally** *Is the building structurally sound?*
- PHRASES **safe and sound** (= not hurt) *We arrived home safe and sound.*

2 sensible

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **absolutely, perfectly** *She had a perfectly sound reason for acting as she did.* | **fairly, pretty, reasonably** *That seems like fairly sound advice.* | **basically, fundamentally** | **commercially, ecologically, environmentally, financially, ideologically, theoretically** *It was a financially sound investment.*

soundtrack *noun*

- ADJ. **film**
- VERB + SOUNDTRACK **compose** | **listen to**
- PREP. **~ for/of/to** *She composed the soundtracks to several hit movies.*

soup *noun*

- ADJ. **chunky, creamy, hearty, thick** *hearty vegetable soup* | **clear, thin** | **hot** | **cold** | **home-made** | **condensed, dried, packet, tinned** | **chicken, tomato, etc.**
- QUANT. **bowl, cup, mug** | **packet, tin**
- VERB + SOUP **cook, make, prepare** | **bring to the boil, heat (up), simmer** | **have** *We had a cold cucumber soup as a starter.* | **drink, eat** (**Eat** is the normal verb when the soup is served in a bowl.) | **slurp** *Don't slurp your soup!* | **ladle (out), serve** *He ladled out three bowls of soup.*
- SOUP + NOUN **bowl, dish, plate, tureen** | **spoon** | **kitchen** (= a place where soup and other food is supplied free to people with no money)

⇨ Special page at FOOD

sour *adj.*

1 having a sharp taste

- VERBS **be, taste** *The sauce tasted very sour.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **a bit, quite, rather, slightly**

2 not fresh

- VERBS **be, smell, taste** *The milk smelled sour.* | **go, turn** *By the next day the wine had turned sour.*
- ADV. **very** | **a bit, rather, slightly**

3 bad-tempered

- VERBS **be** | **go, grow, turn** | **a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** *Their friendship has turned a little sour.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, very**

source *noun*

1 where you get sth from

- ADJ. **excellent, fertile, good, lucrative, reliable, rich, valuable** *a fertile source of ideas* ◇ *a lucrative source of income* ◇ *a rich source of vitamins* | **important, main, major, principal** | **cheap** *a cheap source of labour* | **external, foreign** *Do you have any foreign sources of income?* | **independent** *an independent source of funding* | **additional** | **alternative** *We need to look for alternative sources of energy.* | **natural** | **renewable** *The village obtains all its energy from renewable sources.* | **energy, food, heat, light, power, water**
- VERB + SOURCE **be, constitute, prove, provide** *The census constitutes the principal source of official statistics.* ◇ *These crustaceans provide a valuable food source for some fish.* | **exploit, tap, use (as)** *The government hopes to tap new sources of employment in the area of health.* | **locate** *We tried to locate the source of the sound.*
- PREP. **at ~** *Under the PAYE system, employees' income is taxed at source* (= by the employer). | **~ of** *a reliable source of advice*
- PHRASES **a variety of sources** *The research was funded from a wide variety of sources.*

2 person, book, etc. that gives information

- ADJ. **invaluable, useful, valuable** | **authoritative, informed, reliable, reputable** | **unreliable** | **original** | **independent** | **anonymous** | **primary, secondary** | **published** | **biographical, documentary, historical, literary, written** | **diplomatic, government, intelligence, military, official, police** *Intelligence sources report a build-up of troops just inside the border.* | **data, information**
- VERB + SOURCE **use (as)** | **cite, quote** *Researchers try to quote primary sources wherever possible.* | **disclose, name, reveal** *The police refused to reveal the source of their information.*
- SOURCE + VERB **claim sth, describe sth, disclose sth, indicate sth, report sth, reveal sth, say sth, suggest sth** *Government sources indicated that a compromise might be reached.* ◇ *One source said: 'Our blood is up. We are angry at the way we have been treated.'* | **deny sth**
- SOURCE + NOUN **material**
- PREP. **according to ~s** *According to informed sources, a takeover bid is planned for next month.* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **sources close to sb** *Sources close to the player claim he won't be entering this year's championship.*

south *noun, adj.*

⇨ Note at DIRECTION

sovereignty *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, full, unlimited** *Demonstrators demanded full sovereignty for the self-proclaimed republic.* | **limited** | **inalienable** | **joint, shared** | **national, popular** | **British, Japanese, etc.** | **consumer, economic, legal, parliamentary, political, territorial**
- VERB + SOVEREIGNTY **enjoy, exercise, have** *China exercises sovereignty over Hong Kong.* | **share** | **claim, declare, establish, proclaim** | **give sb/sth, grant sb/sth** | **give up, relinquish, renounce** | **violate** | **defend**
- SOVEREIGNTY + VERB **reside (in/with sb/sth)** *Sovereignty resides with the people.*
- PREP. **~ over** *The treaty gave Edward III sovereignty over Calais and the whole of Aquitaine.*
- PHRASES **a claim to sovereignty** *Two countries have a claim to sovereignty over the islands.* **a declaration of sovereignty** *Protesters called on the government to adopt a declaration of sovereignty.* **a loss of sovereignty** *the partial loss of sovereignty to supranational institutions* **the sovereignty of Parliament/the people** *This constitutes and attack on the sovereignty of Parliament.* **a transfer of sovereignty** *fears about the transfer of sovereignty to the European Union* **a violation of sovereignty**

sow *verb*

- ADV. **early** *Sow early for an early crop.* | **thickly, thinly** *Sow the seeds quite thinly.*
- PREP. **with** *We've sown that field with wheat.*

space *noun*

1 empty area

• ADJ. **large, vast, wide** *She left a large space empty at the bottom of the page.* ◇ *He liked the wide open spaces of the Australian countryside.* | **adequate, ample, enough, sufficient** *The new flat has ample living space.* | **limited, small, tiny** | **narrow** *the narrow space between the sofa and the wall* | **open** | **confined, enclosed** *Avoid using the cleaner in a confined space.* | **awkward** *This chisel is useful for getting into awkward spaces.* | **available, free, vacant** *The exhibition takes up most of the available space in the gallery.* ◇ *looking for a free parking space* | **blank, empty, white** *Fill in the blank spaces in the table.* ◇ *The page layout included plenty of white space.* | **living** | **storage** | **floor, roof, shelf, wall, etc.** | **office** | **parking** | **personal** *She moved out of the house because she wanted her own personal space.* | **private** | **public** | **green** *The inner residential areas don't have many green spaces.* | **air** *The plane strayed into French air space.* | **disk** | **advertising** *The magazine is struggling to fill all its advertising space.* | **exhibition, gallery**

• VERB + SPACE **make use of, take up, use** *The potted plants take up too much space.* | **create, make** *They moved the sofa to make space for the piano.* | **waste** | **save** | **clear** *We'd better clear a space for the new computer.* | **fill (in)** | **jostle for** *A motley collection of ornaments jostled for space on the crowded shelf.* | **stare into** *She sat there motionless, staring into space.*

• PREP. **~ between** *the space between the bookshelves*

• PHRASES **be/run short of space** *I'm running short of disk space.* **time and space** *The writer lacked the time and space to develop his idea fully.*

2 vast area containing planets, stars, etc.

• ADJ. **deep** | **outer**

• VERB + SPACE **go into**

• SPACE + NOUN **exploration, programme, research, science** | **flight, travel** | **capsule, probe, rocket, ship** (also **spaceship**), **shuttle, station**

• PREP. **in ~** *the first man in space*

3 period of time

• ADJ. **long** | **brief, short** | **2-second, 10-minute, etc.** *The recording includes a five-second space between tracks.* | **breathing** *The extension of the deadline gives us a breathing space.*

• PREP. **for the ~ of** *The job holder will be on probation for the space of six months.* **in/within the ~ of** *He fell asleep in the space of a few minutes.* | **~ of** *She returned to top-class tennis after a space of two years.*

• PHRASES **a space of time** *They have achieved a great deal in a short space of time.*

space *verb*

• ADV. **at intervals, equally, evenly, regularly** *Telephone boxes are spaced at regular intervals along the motorway.* ◇ *Make sure the posts are spaced evenly apart.* | **irregularly** | **closely** | **generously, well, widely** | **apart, out** *The fruits should be well spaced out so that they are not touching each other.*

• PREP. **along**

spacecraft *noun*

• VERB + SPACECRAFT **launch**

• SPACECRAFT + VERB **orbit sth** *a spacecraft orbiting the earth*

• PREP. **in/on a/the ~**

spacious *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem**

• ADV. **extremely, very** | **fairly, quite, reasonably** | **deceptively, surprisingly** *The house benefits from a deceptively spacious kitchen* (= that is larger than it seems).

spade *noun*

1 tool for digging

• ADJ. **garden** *There was a garden spade in the shed.*

• VERB + SPADE **dig sth with, use** *He dug a deep hole in the lawn with his spade.*

• PHRASES **bucket and spade** *children playing in the sand with their buckets and spades*

2 playing card

⇨ Note at CARD

spaghetti *noun*

• ADJ. **wholemeal**

• QUANT. **strand**

• VERB + SPAGHETTI **eat, have** | **cook** | **drain, strain** *Drain the spaghetti well.*

• SPAGHETTI + NOUN **sauce**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

span *noun*

1 length

• ADJ. **full** | **broad, wide** *a broad span of interests* | **clear** *The bridge has a clear span of 36 metres.* | **12-foot, 500-metre, etc.** | **wing** (also **wingspan**) *The bird has a 1-metre wingspan.*

2 length of time

• ADJ. **long** | **short** | **10-day, 2-week, etc.** | **entire** | **allotted** *The speech continued well beyond its allotted span.* | **time** | **life** (also **lifespan**) | **attention, concentration, memory** *He has a short attention span.*

• VERB + SPAN **cover** *The book covers the entire span of Arab history.*

• PREP. **over a/the ~** *Developments were monitored over a span of two years.*

• PHRASES **a span of time/years**

Spanish *noun*

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

spare *verb*

• ADV. **barely, hardly, scarcely** *She hardly spared him a second glance.*

• VERB + SPARE **can/could**

• PREP. **for** *Can you spare some money for the homeless?*

• PHRASES **to spare** *Have you any money to spare?* ◇ *We should get there with half an hour to spare.*

spark *noun*

1 small bright piece of burning material/electric flash

• ADJ. **tiny** | **flying** | **electric**

• VERB + SPARK **emit, produce, send (out), shower, strike** *The firework showered sparks all over the lawn.* ◇ *His iron-tipped stick struck sparks from the pavement.*

• SPARK + VERB **fly** | **ignite sth, set fire to sth** *Flying sparks set fire to the long grass.* | **die (out)**

• PHRASES **a shower of sparks** *The grinding wheel sent a shower of sparks across the workbench.* **a spark of light**

2 small amount of a quality/feeling

• ADJ. **little, tiny** *A tiny spark of rebellion flared within her.* | **creative, divine, vital**

• VERB + SPARK **have** | **lack** *His performances lack creative spark.* | **feel** *She felt a little spark of anger.* | **kindle**

• SPARK + VERB **flare, kindle**

• PREP. **~ of** *He had kindled a spark of interest within her.*

• PHRASES **a spark of hope/life, a spark of originality**

3 (usually **sparks**) feelings of anger/excitement

• VERB + SPARK **shoot** *Her eyes shot sparks of contempt.* | **draw** *His remarks drew sparks from her.*

• SPARK + VERB **fly** *Sparks flew at the meeting.*

sparkle *noun*

• ADJ. **extra** | **old** *She has lost none of her old sparkle as a jazz singer.*
• VERB + SPARKLE **have** | **lack** | **lose** | **add, put (back)** *A live band added extra sparkle to the occasion.*
• PHRASES **a sparkle in your eyes**

spasm *noun*

• ADJ. **sudden** | **muscle, muscular**
• VERB + SPASM **feel** *He felt a spasm of panic sweeping over him.* | **go into** *The muscle goes into spasm, producing the symptom of cramp.*
• SPASM + VERB **pass, subside**
• PREP. **in~** *She could not speak; her throat was in spasm.* | **~of** *He kicked the chair in a spasm of impatience.*
• PHRASES **a spasm of coughing/pain**

spatter *verb*

• ADV. **liberally**
• PREP. **against** *Rain spattered against the window.* **on** *Blood was spattered on the walls and doors.* **over** *The water had spattered all over her face.* **with** *His clothes were liberally spattered with mud.*

speak *verb*

1 have a conversation
• ADV. **briefly** *We spoke briefly on the phone.* | **at length** | **hardly** *Ben hardly spoke to me all evening.*
• VERB + SPEAK **want to** | **refuse to** *The president refused to speak to the waiting journalists.* | **dare (to)** *No one had ever dared speak to him like that before.*
• PREP. **about, to** *I need to speak to Joseph about this matter.* **with** *Can I speak with you for a minute?*
• PHRASES **be on speaking terms (with sb)** *We are still on speaking terms after the argument.* **not be speaking (to sb)** *Ed and Dave aren't speaking at the moment.*

2 use your voice to say sth
• ADV. **loudly** | **quietly, softly** | **clearly** *You must speak loudly and clearly on the stage.* | **slowly** | **calmly** | **brusquely, sharply** | **briefly** | **at length** | **suddenly** | **hardly** | **eloquently, movingly** *She spoke eloquently about the need for action.* | **lovingly, warmly** | **disparagingly, harshly** | **encouragingly, soothingly** | **authoritatively, forcefully** | **earnestly** | **coherently, intelligibly, meaningfully** | **absently** | **freely, openly** | **boldly** | **hesitantly** | **out**
• VERB + SPEAK **be able/unable to, can/could (hardly)** *She was so moved she could hardly speak.* | **begin to, open your mouth to** *She opened her mouth to speak and found she couldn't.* | **try to** | **dare not, not trust yourself to** *He nodded, not trusting himself to speak.* | **hear sb** *I heard him speak at the debating society.*
• PREP. **about, against** *He spoke out against mismanagement.* **for** *I speak for all my colleagues.* **in favour of** *She spoke in favour of the new tax.* **on** *She speaks on women's issues.* **on behalf of** *I speak on behalf of many thousands of women.* **of** *He speaks very warmly of you.* **to** *He will be speaking to history students about the causes of war.*

3 know a language
• ADV. **fluently, well** *He speaks German fluently.*
• VERB + SPEAK **be able/unable to, can/could** | **learn to** *learning to speak a foreign language* | **teach sb to**
• PREP. **in** *Would you prefer it if we spoke in French?*

speaker *noun*

1 person who makes a speech
• ADJ. **brilliant, good** | **keynote, main, principal** | **guest, invited, visiting** | **public** *She's a good public speaker.* | **after-dinner**

2 person who speaks a particular language
• ADJ. **fluent** *He's a fluent Arabic speaker.* | **mother-tongue, native** *a native speaker of English* | **non-native** | **Japanese, Russian, etc.**

spear *noun*

• ADJ. **hunting**
• VERB + SPEAR **be armed with, carry** *The tribesmen were armed with spears and shields.* | **lift, raise** | **brandish** | **hurl, throw** | **thrust**
• PHRASES **the point of a spear** *She had a fish impaled on the point of her spear.*

special *noun*

• ADJ. **daily** *The restaurant has an extensive menu and daily specials.* | **television, TV** *There are lots of TV Christmas specials for children this year.* | **Christmas, election** | **football**

specialist *noun*

• ADJ. **leading, top** *a leading cancer specialist* | **qualified, trained** | **experienced** | **independent** | **academic** | **professional** | **technical** | **clinical, medical** | **industry, subject** | **hospital** | **cancer, ear, eye, heart, skin** | **finance/financial, marketing, property** | **tax** | **recruitment** | **communications, computer, software, systems** | **education**
• VERB + SPECIALIST **bring in** *They brought in an outside specialist to install the computer system.*
• PREP. **~in** *She is a specialist in eighteenth-century English painting.* **~on** *a specialist on the history of this city*
• PHRASES **a group/team of specialists, a specialist in the field** *The book is written by P.H. Reaney, a noted specialist in the field.*
⇨ Note at DOCTOR
⇨ Note at JOB

speciality *noun*

• ADJ. **local, regional**
• PHRASES **a speciality of the house** *I ordered the speciality of the house—frogs' legs.*

specialization *noun*

• ADJ. **increased, increasing** | **narrow** *His specialization is too narrow to be of interest to more than a handful of students.* | **professional** | **academic** | **economic** *There has been increased economic specialization throughout the country.* | **regional**
• QUANT. **degree** *The production line involves a high degree of specialization of labour.*
• PREP. **~in** *Her degree is in French, with specialization in seventeenth-century literature.*
• PHRASES **an area of specialization** *The company has gradually focused on its current areas of specialization.*

specialized *adj.*

• VERBS **be** *These tools are very specialized.* | **become**
• ADV. **highly, very** *a job calling for highly specialized skills* | **increasingly** | **narrowly** *narrowly specialized subjects* | **fairly, quite, rather, relatively**

species *noun*

• ADJ. **living** | **extinct** | **common** | **rare** | **different, distinct** | **related** *closely related species of beetle* | **native** | **alien** | **wild** | **dominant** | **endangered, threatened** | **protected** | **animal, bird, fish, insect, mammal, mammalian, plant, tree, etc.** *The area is rich in different plant species.* | **human** *the development of the human species*
• SPECIES + VERB **be found, grow, live, occur** *Similar species of fish occur in Mongolia.* | **be threatened with extinction, become extinct, die out** | **survive**

- PREP. **~of** *a native species of fish*
- PHRASES **a member of a species**

specific *adj.*

- VERBS **be** *Can you be a little more specific in your instructions?*
- ADV. **highly, very** *issuing a highly specific set of instructions* | **quite** | **fairly, rather**
- PREP. **about** *She was quite specific about the type she wanted.*

specification *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, detailed, full** | **clear, exact** | **standard** | **high** *The yachts are built to the highest specifications.* | **strict** | **original** | **design, technical** | **customer** | **contract, job, product, service** *The manager has drafted job specifications for each of the positions.*
- VERB + SPECIFICATION **draft, draw up, lay down, write** | **meet** *The aircraft have to meet the strict specifications laid down by the FAA.*
- PREP. **(according) to the/your ~s** *Each vehicle can be equipped according to your specifications.*

specify *verb*

- ADV. **clearly** | **fully** | **carefully** | **exactly, precisely** *She did not specify precisely how many people were involved in the incident.* | **explicitly** | **correctly** *Are all the details correctly specified?* | **uniquely** *Each computer is uniquely specified by its serial number.* | **otherwise** *Unless otherwise specified, all fields have a maximum length of 20 characters.*
- VERB + SPECIFY **allow sb to** | **require sb to** | **be used to** | **be possible to** *It should be possible to specify the range of values of* x *which would satisfy this equation.* | **be difficult to**

specimen *noun*

1 example

- ADJ. **large, small** | **beautiful, fine, good, healthy, magnificent, perfect, prize** *This is a fine specimen of a walnut tree.* | **poor** | **living, preserved** | **rare** | **physical**
- SPECIMEN + NOUN **plant, tree** | **letter, paper** *specimen exam papers*

2 small amount of sth used for testing

- ADJ. **blood, urine, etc.** | **geological**
- VERB + SPECIMEN **collect, take** | **give** *The motorist may be required to give a urine specimen.* | **obtain**
- PREP. **~of** *a specimen of blood*

spectacle *noun*

- ADJ. **dramatic, great, magnificent** | **sad, unedifying** *the sad spectacle of him struggling to keep up with the younger players* | **public** *Hangings took place outside the prison as a public spectacle.* | **sporting**
- VERB + SPECTACLE **witness**
- PHRASES **make a spectacle of yourself** (= make yourself look ridiculous in public)

spectacles *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy** | **gold-rimmed, horn-rimmed, metal-framed, rimless, steel-rimmed, wide-framed** | **pebble, thick, thick-lensed** | **bifocal, half-moon, tinted** | **dark** | **safety**
- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + SPECTACLES **have on, wear** | **put on** | **take off** | **push up** *She pushed her spectacles up her nose and sighed.* | **adjust** | **polish** | **look through/over, peer through/over** *He peered at the waiter over his spectacles.*
- SPECTACLES + VERB **be perched on sth, perch on sth** *Her wire-framed spectacles were perched on the end of her nose.* | **glint** *Her spectacles glinted in the moonlight.* | **steam up** *His spectacles steamed up in the hot room.*
- PREP. **behind your ~, through your ~**

spectacular *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look**
- ADV. **really, very** | **absolutely, quite, truly** *The waterfall is quite spectacular.* | **pretty, rather**

spectator *noun*

- ADJ. **mere, passive** | **interested** | **paying** | **cricket, football, sports, etc.**
- QUANT **crowd**
- SPECTATOR + VERB **gather, turn up** | **line sth** *Spectators lined the route of the president's walkabout.* | **applaud sb/sth, boo sb/sth, cheer sb/sth**
- SPECTATOR + NOUN **event, sport**

spectre *noun*

- ADJ. **terrible** | **old** | **constant**
- VERB + SPECTRE **evoke, raise** *Wall Street's collapse raised spectres of the 1987 stock market crash.* | **banish**
- SPECTRE + VERB **hang over sb/sth, haunt sb/sth, hover over sb/sth, loom (over sb/sth)**
- PREP. **~of** *The terrible spectre of civil war hung over the country once again.*

spectrum *noun*

1 of colours

- ADJ. **visible** *Beyond the red end of the visible light spectrum is infrared.* | **continuous** *a continuous spectrum of light waves* | **colour, electromagnetic**
- SPECTRUM + NOUN **analysis**
- PHRASES **the colours of the spectrum** *Other species can perceive colours of the spectrum that are invisible to us.* **the … band/end/part of the spectrum** *the ultraviolet part of the spectrum*

2 full or wide range

- ADJ. **complete, full** *The courses cover the full spectrum of levels.* | **broad, wide** | **narrow** | **entire, whole** | **political, social**
- VERB + SPECTRUM **cover**
- PREP. **across the ~** *There was consensus across the political spectrum.* | **~of** *a wide spectrum of interests*
- PHRASES **at one/the other end of the spectrum, both/opposite ends of the spectrum** *The two speakers were chosen to represent opposite ends of the spectrum.* **a spectrum of opinion** *The newspaper covers a broad spectrum of opinion.*

speculate *verb*

- VERB + SPECULATE **can/could only** | **decline to, refuse to** | **be fascinating to, be interesting to, be tempting to** | **be idle to** *It is idle to speculate what the consequences would have been.* | **be difficult to**
- PREP. **about** *There was no point speculating about the possibility of them getting back together.* **as to** *We can only speculate as to this man's identity.* **on/upon** *He refused to speculate on her reasons for leaving.*

speculation *noun*

1 making guesses about sth

- ADJ. **considerable, intense, much, widespread** | **further, increasing, renewed** | **continuing, endless** | **pure** | **mere** *Whether or not he will get the job is mere speculation.* | **wild** | **idle, fruitless** | **rife** *Speculation was rife as to whom the prince might marry.* | **media, press** | **metaphysical, philosophical**
- VERB + SPECULATION **cause, encourage, fuel, give rise to, increase, intensify, invite, lead to, prompt, raise**

| dampen, discourage, end, put an end to | dismiss | indulge in

- PREP. **amid ~** *He was dropped from the team amid speculation that he was seriously ill.* | **~ among** *There was wild speculation among the students as to the reason for cancelling the lecture.* **~ about/as to/on/over** *There has been increasing speculation over the future of the monarchy.*
- PHRASES **a matter for speculation, a subject of speculation**

2 buying and selling for profit

- ADJ. **financial | market | currency, land, property, etc.**
- PREP. **~ against** *speculation against the euro* **~ in** *speculation in oil* **~ on** *speculation on the stock market*

speech *noun*

1 speaking

- ADJ. **careful, clear, clipped | casual | impaired | slurred** *She could tell by his slurred speech that he had been drinking.* | **connected, continuous, fluent | natural, normal, ordinary | spontaneous | direct | indirect, reported | free** *The demonstrators were demanding rights of assembly and free speech.* | **conversational, everyday | children's, female, human, etc. | middle-class, working-class, etc.**
- VERB + SPEECH **have** *Most people have speech, but significantly fewer have writing.*
- SPEECH + NOUN **act | style | defect, impairment, impediment | therapist, therapy | community** *phonological variation in a speech community*
- PREP. **in ~** *Certain grammatical rules must be followed when describing a conversation in reported speech.*
- PHRASES **a figure of speech** *When we talk about 'selfish' genes it is just a figure of speech.* **freedom of speech** *the right of/to freedom of speech* **the power of speech** *He temporarily lost the power of speech after the accident.*

2 formal talk

- ADJ. **brief, little, short | interminable, long, long-winded, rambling | keynote, major | eloquent, excellent, good | emotional, impassioned, rousing, stirring | boring | impromptu | public | televised | political | opening | closing | acceptance, after-dinner, Budget, campaign, conference, farewell, inaugural** *The prize-winner gave an emotional acceptance speech.* ◇ *the Chancellor's Budget speech* | **maiden** *her maiden speech in the House of Commons*
- VERB + SPEECH **deliver, give, make | broadcast** *His speech was broadcast on national radio.* | **write**
- PREP. **in a/the ~ | ~ about/on** *She made a stirring campaign speech on improving the lot of the unemployed.* **~ to** *In her speech to the House of Commons, she outlined her vision of Britain in the 21st century.*

speechless *adj.*

- VERBS **be, remain, sit, stand** *Rachel stood speechless.* | **leave sb, render sb** *The news left us all speechless.*
- ADV. **completely, totally | almost, practically | for a moment, momentarily, temporarily**
- PREP. **with** *He was almost speechless with anger.*

speed *noun*

- ADJ. **amazing, astonishing, breakneck, fast, great, high, incredible, lightning, phenomenal, remarkable, startling, surprising, terrific** *The new houses have been built with astonishing speed.* ◇ *He drove us to the hospital at breakneck speed.* | **low, slow | full, maximum, top | excess** *90% of car accidents involve excess speed.* | **constant, steady | average | cruising, flying, operating, reading, running** *The machinery is regulated to a safe running speed.* | **engine, traffic, etc. | air, wind**
- QUANT. **burst** *The Greek runner produced an electrifying burst of speed over the last 50 metres.*
- VERB + SPEED **attain, reach** *The car reaches a speed of 60 miles per hour within five seconds.* | **build up, gain, gather, increase, pick up** *The train pulled out of the station, slowly gathering speed.* | **lose | curb, kill, reduce** *measures to curb the speed of cars travelling through the village* | **maintain** *The boat maintained a steady speed while the sea was calm.* | **measure**
- SPEED + VERB **increase | decrease**
- SPEED + NOUN **control, reduction, restriction | record** *'Mallard' holds the speed record for a steam locomotive.* | **hump | camera, trap**
- PREP. **at ~** (= fast) *The train was travelling at speed when the accident happened.* ◇ *at lightning speed* **with ~** *Hedgehogs, though small, can move with surprising speed.*
- PHRASES **(at) full speed** *He was running at full speed when a tendon snapped in his leg.* **full speed ahead** *The boat can be brought to a stop from full speed ahead within her own length.* **the speed of light/sound** *Concorde crosses the Atlantic at twice the speed of sound.* **a turn of speed** *For a small car it has a good turn of speed.*

speeding *noun*

- VERB + SPEEDING **fine sb for, stop sb for** *The driver had been stopped twice for speeding on the same day.*
- SPEEDING + NOUN **conviction, offence | fine** *He was obliged to pay a £40 speeding fine.*

speed limit *noun*

- ADJ. **high, low | legal**
- VERB + SPEED LIMIT **keep to/within | break, exceed** *Motorists can be fined on the spot for exceeding speed limits.* | **set | raise | reduce**
- PREP. **over the ~** *He was driving over the 60 mph speed limit.* **below/under the ~, within the ~** *You have to come down that hill in a low gear to keep within the speed limit.*

spell *noun*

1 period of time

- ADJ. **lengthy, long, prolonged | brief, short | 5-minute, 10-day, etc. | good | bad** *He's going through a bit of a bad spell at the moment.* | **quiet | barren, lean** *Viera ended his barren spell with a goal against Parma.* | **cold, dry, hot, mild, sunny, warm, wet**
- VERB + SPELL **go through, have**
- PREP. **during a … ~** *She managed to write a letter during a quiet spell at work.* | **~ as** *He had a brief spell as ambassador to Turkey.*
- PHRASES **a spell of … weather** *a spell of sunny weather* **a spell of unemployment**

2 magical effect

- ADJ. **magic, magical | powerful | hypnotic** *the hypnotic spell of the crickets singing in the garden*
- VERB + SPELL **be/come/fall under | cast, put, weave** *The witch cast a spell on/over them.* | **break, remove** *She uttered the magic word, and the spell was broken.*
- PREP. **under a/the ~** *Sleeping Beauty was under a spell when the prince found her.* **under sb's ~** *The audience was completely under his spell.*

spell *verb*

- ADV. **correctly, wrongly**
- PREP. **as** *The article spelled 'survey' as 'servay'.* **with** *Is 'necessary' spelt with one 's', or two?*

PHRASAL VERB

spell sth out

- ADV. **clearly | fully, in detail | exactly, precisely** *She spelled out precisely what she wanted.*

- VERB + SPELL STH OUT **have to, need to**
- PREP. **for** *Do I really have to spell it out for you?* **to** *His speech spelled out a clear message to the car industry.*

spelling *noun*

- ADJ. **correct, incorrect | conventional, usual | alternative, different, variant | American, English, etc. | phonetic**
- VERB + SPELLING **use | check | correct | improve**
- SPELLING + NOUN **error, mistake | test | checker | dictionary, rule | variant | reform**
- PREP. **in ... ~** *In American spelling 'travelled' only has one 'l'.* | **~for/of** *The document uses the British spelling for caesium.*
- PHRASES **be good/poor, etc. at spelling**

spend *verb*

- ADV. **wisely** *Try to be objective if you want to spend your money wisely.* | **lavishly**
- PREP. **on** *The company spent a lot on advertising.*

spending *noun*

- ADJ. **total** *There has been an increase in total government spending.* | **high, low | annual, monthly, etc. | defence, education, military, R & D, welfare, etc. | capital | government, local (authority), public, state | private | consumer**
- VERB + SPENDING **boost, increase | cut, cut back (on), reduce**
- SPENDING + VERB **rise | fall**
- SPENDING + NOUN **level | programme, target | cut, limit | money** *How much spending money are you taking on holiday?* | **power | spree** *The boys went on a two-day spending spree with the stolen credit cards.*
- PREP. **~ on** *More spending on the National Health Service was promised.*
- PHRASES **a cut/reduction in spending, an increase/a rise in spending**

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

sperm *noun*

- VERB + SPERM **produce**
- SPERM + VERB **fertilize sth** *The sperm fertilizes the egg.*
- SPERM + NOUN **cell | count** *a high/low/normal sperm count* | **duct | bank, donor**

sphere *noun*

- ADJ. **wider** *He wanted to spread his ideas to a wider sphere than the school.* | **academic, cultural, domestic, economic, military, political, social** *His work is little known outside the academic sphere.* | **private, public**
- PREP. **in/within sb's/the ~** *The region is within the Russian sphere of influence.* **outside sb's/the ~** *The matter is outside my sphere of responsibility.* | **~of**
- PHRASES **a sphere of activity/influence/life**

spice *noun*

1 flavour for food

- ADJ. **ground | mixed | exotic**
- SPICE + NOUN **mix/mixture | cupboard, jar, rack**
- PHRASES **herbs and spices**

2 excitement and interest

- VERB + SPICE **add, give** *The romance added spice to the holiday.*

spice *verb*

- PREP. **with** *Their bread is spiced with cinnamon.*
- PHRASES **heavily/highly spiced** *I don't really like highly spiced food.* **lightly spiced** *a dish of lightly spiced rice*

spicy *adj.*

- VERBS **be, smell, taste** *The soup tasted mildly spicy.*
- ADV. **really, very | lightly, mildly, quite, slightly | deliciously** *a deliciously spicy flavour*

spider *noun*

- ADJ. **hairy | poisonous**
- SPIDER + VERB **make/spin/weave a web | crawl, run, scuttle | hunt sth | catch sth | bite sth | lurk**
- SPIDER + NOUN **silk | web**
- PHRASES **a spider's web**

spill *verb*

- ADV. **almost | accidentally | out, over** *He nodded, his tears spilling over.*
- VERB + SPILL **try not to | let sth** *He opened the curtains, letting the morning light spill into the room.*
- PREP. **down, from, into, onto, out of, over** *I accidentally spilled my drink all over him.*

spin *noun*

1 fast turning movement

- ADJ. **quick, rapid | slow | back** (also **backspin**), **top** (also **topspin**) *She puts heavy topspin on her serve.*
- VERB + SPIN **go into** *He had to stop the helicopter from going into a spin.* | **come out of | put sb/sth in(to), send sb/sth into** (*figurative*) *The president's death sent the stock market into a spin.* | **give sth** *Give the washing another spin.* | **impart, put on** *How do you put more spin on the ball?*
- SPIN + NOUN **bowler | bowling**

2 on information

- ADJ. **positive**
- VERB + SPIN **put on** *The chairman tried to put a positive spin on the closure of the factory.*
- SPIN + NOUN **doctor** *government spin doctors*
- PREP. **with a ~** *The film retells the famous legend with a Marxist spin.*

spin *verb*

- ADV. **fast, quickly, rapidly** *The blade spins very fast.* | **freely** *The wheel can now spin freely.* | **around/round, away, back** *He spun round to face her.*
- VERB + SPIN **begin to, start to | make sth** (*figurative*) *The wine made my head spin.*
- PHRASES **spin like a top** *The engine stopped. The dinghy spun like a top and a huge wave came at me.* **spin on your heel** *She spun on her heel and walked out of the room.* **spin out of control** *The car spun out of control.*

spine *noun*

1 backbone

- ADJ. **fractured | cervical, lumbar**
- VERB + SPINE **bend, curve | straighten | stiffen | slide along/down/up** (*figurative*) *An icy chill slid up my spine.*
- PREP. **in the/your ~** *the nerves in the spine*
- PHRASES **the base of the spine, curvature of the spine, send shivers along/down your spine**

2 sharp point on some plants/animals

- ADJ. **pointed, sharp | fine | poisonous, venomous | savage** *Once embedded in the skin, these savage spines are difficult to dislodge.*
- VERB + SPINE **bear, carry, have**

spin-off *noun*

- ADJ. **positive, valuable | unexpected | commercial**
- PREP. **~from**

spiral *noun*

- ADJ. **destructive, vicious | downward, upward | inflationary, wage-price**
- VERB + SPIRAL **halt, stop**
- PREP. **~of** *to halt the vicious downward spiral of drug abuse*

spirit *noun*

1 mind or feelings
- ADJ. **human**
- PREP. **in~** *I will be with you in spirit.*

2 spirits morale
- ADJ. **flagging**
- VERB + SPIRITS **keep up, lift, raise** *We sang songs to keep our spirits up.* | **revive | break, dampen** *A string of defeats has failed to dampen the team's spirits.*
- SPIRITS + VERB **lift, rise**
- PHRASES **in good/high/low/poor, etc. spirits** *She isn't in the best of spirits today.*

3 person
- ADJ. **guiding, leading, moving** *She was a guiding spirit in primary education.* | **generous | grudging, mean | brave, proud | free, independent | kindred** *He found kindred spirits in the peace movement.*

4 courage/liveliness
- ADJ. **great, tremendous | adventurous, competitive, fighting, indomitable, pioneer/pioneering**
- VERB + SPIRIT **be full of, have** *She has plenty of fighting spirit.* | **display, show | break**
- PREP. **with~** *He sang with great spirit.*
- PHRASES **broken in spirit** *They tortured him until he was broken in spirit.*

5 feelings of loyalty
- ADJ. **community, party, public, team**
- VERB + SPIRIT **have | develop, foster, promote**

6 attitude/mood
- ADJ. **right** *He's got the right spirit!* | **essential, genuine, true | carefree | democratic, revolutionary | entrepreneurial | festive, Christmas**
- VERB + SPIRIT **have | enter into**
- PREP. **in a~of** *Both sides have come together in a spirit of goodwill.* | **~of** *a spirit of adventure*
- PHRASES **in the right/wrong spirit, the spirit of the age/times**

7 real/intended meaning of a rule, an agreement, etc.
- VERB + SPIRIT **obey | be/go against, be contrary to**
- PHRASES **the spirit of the law** *The referee should try to obey the spirit as well as the letter of the law.*

8 soul/ghost
- ADJ. **ancestral | evil, malevolent | restless** *Owls were believed to be restless spirits who had returned to earth.*
- VERB + SPIRIT **conjure up, contact, invoke, summon (up) | exorcise, ward off** *She slept with a cross under the pillow to ward off evil spirits.* | **be possessed by**
- SPIRIT + VERB **live on** *Many people believe the spirit lives on after death.*
- PHRASES **the spirits of the dead**

9 (usually **spirits**) strong alcoholic drink
- QUANT. **measure** *a single measure of spirits*
- VERB + SPIRITS **drink**
- PHRASES **a bottle of spirits**

spiritual *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **deeply, truly, very** *This is an deeply spiritual piece of music.* ◇ *a truly spiritual experience* | **purely | almost** *The colours had an almost spiritual quality.*

spite *noun*

- ADJ. **pure | personal**
- VERB + SPITE **be full of, feel** *She was angry and full of spite.* | **vent** *He vented his spite on his grandfather.*
- PREP. **out of~** *She killed her neighbour's cow out of pure spite.* **with~** *'Your cooking is hard to forget,' he said with spite.* | **~towards** *I felt no spite towards her.*

splash *noun*

1 sound; amount of liquid
- ADJ. **big, huge | small | loud | soft**
- VERB + SPLASH **make** *(often figurative) She intended to make a big splash with her wedding.* | **hear**
- PREP. **with a~** *She jumped into the pool with a splash.*

2 area of colour/light
- ADJ. **bold, bright** *a bold splash of red*
- VERB + SPLASH **add, lend** *Window boxes of tulips added a splash of colour to the street.*
- PHRASES **a splash of colour/light**

splash *verb*

1 in/with water
- ADV. **happily** *The baby was splashing happily in the bath.* | **about, around** *splashing around in the sea*
- PREP. **against** *Rain splashed against the window.* **on/onto** *She splashed some petrol onto the wood and set fire to it.* **over** *She splashed some water over her boots to clean them.* **through** *They splashed through the puddles.* **with** *Her clean washing was all splashed with mud.*

2 be splashed with sth with a colour
- ADV. **generously, liberally** *He was in his mid-forties, his hair liberally splashed with grey.*

splendid *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **really** *a really splendid evening* | **absolutely, perfectly, quite, simply, truly** *The meal was quite splendid!* | **pretty, rather**

splendour *noun*

- ADJ. **full** *A butterfly emerged in its full splendour a week later.* | **glorious, great, regal | former, original | faded, fading | scenic**
- VERB + SPLENDOUR **have** *The hotel has the splendour of a nineteenth-century mansion.* | **lose | recapture, regain** *It will take a lot of repair work before the theatre regains its former splendour.* | **restore sth to** *The house has been restored to its original splendour.*
- PREP. **in~** *They dined in a special suite in glorious splendour.* **in sb's/sth's~** *There below lay Paris in all its splendour.* **of~** *a castle of great splendour* | **~s of** *I've only just discovered the splendours of the English countryside.*
- PHRASES **in solitary splendour** *The castle rises in solitary splendour on the fringe of the desert.*

splinter *noun*

- ADJ. **tiny | glass, metal, wooden**
- VERB + SPLINTER **get, have | pull out, remove**
- SPLINTER + VERB **lodge**
- PREP. **~of** *A small splinter of metal had lodged in his thumb.*

split *noun*

- ADJ. **clear, deep, major, serious** *A serious split in the ruling coalition appeared soon after the election.* | **growing | damaging**

- VERB + SPLIT **cause, lead to**
- SPLIT + VERB **appear, occur, open up**
- PREP. **~between** *a split between the right and left wings of the party* **~ in/within, ~ over** *a growing split in the Church over the ordination of women* **~with** *Mike's split with his wife*

split *verb*

1 break into two or more parts
- ADV. **easily** *Plastic splits quite easily.* | **apart**
- PREP. **into** *He split the log into several pieces.*
- PHRASES **split (sth) across/down the middle** *The lid had split down the middle.* **split (sth) open** *The ripe seed pod splits open and scatters the seeds.* **split (sth) in half/two** *Split the coconut in half.*

2 separate into different groups
- ADV. **formally** | **eventually, finally** | **apart, away, off, up** *The rock group split up last year.*
- PREP. **from** *Several factions split from the party.* **into** *On January 1 1993 Czechoslovakia formally split into two independent states.* **on/over** *The party finally split over the issue of gun control.*
- PHRASES **be deeply/irrevocably split** *The party is deeply split on this issue.*

3 divide/share sth
- ADV. **equally, evenly**
- PREP. **among, between** *The cost has been split equally between three countries.*
- PHRASES **split sth two/three/four ways** *The profit will be split three ways.*

spoil *verb*

1 make sth useless/unsuccessful/not very good
- ADV. **completely, quite** *Her selfish behaviour completely spoiled the evening.* | **rather, slightly, somewhat**
- VERB + SPOIL **mustn't, not be going to, not want to** *I don't want to spoil things for everyone else.* | **be a pity to** *It would be a pity to spoil the surprise.* | **try to** | **not let sth** *Don't let the bad weather spoil your holiday.*

2 a child
- PREP. **with** *spoiling the children with expensive toys*
- PHRASES **be completely/thoroughly/utterly spoilt** *Those children are thoroughly spoilt!* **spoil sb rotten** *My grandparents used to spoil me rotten.* **a spoilt brat/child**

spoils *noun*

- VERB + SPOILS **divide, share** *The soldiers began to divide the spoils.* | **take**
- PHRASES **a division/share of the spoils**

sponge *noun*

- ADJ. **damp/dampened, wet** | **bath**
- VERB + SPONGE **squeeze (out)**
- SPONGE + VERB **fill with sth, soak sth up** *This sponge doesn't soak up water very well.*
- PREP. **with a/the ~** *Wipe the surface with a damp sponge.*

sponsor *noun*

- ADJ. **big, major** | **main** | **potential** | **private** | **official** | **commercial, corporate, industrial**
- VERB + SPONSOR **look for, seek** | **attract, find, get** | **act as**
- SPONSOR + VERB **back sb/sth, support sb/sth**
- SPONSOR + NOUN **money**
- PREP. **~for/of** *I need to find some more sponsors for my bike ride to Brighton.*

sponsorship *noun*

- ADJ. **generous, major** | **direct** | **arts, sports** | **business, commercial, corporate, government, industrial, private** | **tobacco**
- VERB + SPONSORSHIP **attract, find, get, obtain, raise, receive, win** | **look for, seek** | **withdraw (from)** *The company has decided to withdraw from some of its sports sponsorship.*
- SPONSORSHIP + NOUN **deal, package, programme, scheme** | **money**
- PREP. **through ~** *Two million pounds were raised through sponsorship.* **under (the) ~** *under commercial sponsorship* **with/without ~** *Without generous corporate sponsorship, the ballet company would not have survived.* | **~for/of** *sponsorship for next year's World Cup* **~from** *We have won sponsorship from one of the big banks.*

spontaneous *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem**
- ADV. **genuinely** | **quite, totally** | **apparently, seemingly** | **wonderfully** *a wonderfully spontaneous performance of the symphony*

spooky *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, sound** | **become, get** *It got a bit spooky when James started telling ghost stories.*
- ADV. **dead, decidedly, really, very** | **a bit, pretty, quite, rather, slightly**

spoon *noun*

- ADJ. **dessert, serving, soup, sugar**
- VERB + SPOON **pick up** | **lay down, put down** | **beat sth with, eat sth with, fold/stir sth in with, stir sth with, use** *I stirred my coffee with the sugar spoon.*
- PREP. **~of** *two spoons of sugar*

sport *noun*

- ADJ. **mainstream, major, popular** *popular field sports such as football* | **minor, minority** | **amateur, professional, semi-professional** | **competitive** | **inter-club, inter-school, etc.** | **contact, non-contact** *In theory, basketball is a non-contact sport.* | **active** | **dangerous, hazardous, risky** | **gruelling** | **spectator** | **indoor, outdoor** | **summer, winter** | **individual, team** | **adventure** *the inherent dangers of adventure sports such as mountaineering* | **field** | **country** | **motor** | **water** | **combat** *Combat sports such as karate and judo carry with them the risk of injury.* | **racket** | **equestrian** | **blood, cruel**
- VERB + SPORT **do, play** *He does a lot of sport.* ◇ *We played sports together when we were kids.* | **take up** *I need to take up a sport to get fit.*
- SPORT + NOUN (The following nouns all follow sports.), **event** | **centre, club, facilities, field, ground, hall, pavilion, stadium, venue** | **day** *the school sports day* | **person, personality, star** | **team** | **enthusiast, fan, follower** | **commentator** | **channel, coverage, page, paper** *Sports coverage in the local newspaper is quite good.* | **correspondent, editor, journalist, photographer, reporter, writer** | **injury** | **bag** | **equipment** | **goods** | **clothes/clothing** | **shop**
- PREP. **in ~** *the use of drugs in sport*
- PHRASES **the world of sport**

sportsman, sportswoman *noun*

- ADJ. **famous** | **great, outstanding** *one of the greatest all-round sportswomen this country has produced* | **all-round** | **keen** *They are all keen sportsmen.* | **amateur, professional**

spot *noun*

1 small red mark on the skin
- VERB + SPOT **break out in** *The children all had measles, and had broken out in spots.* | **scratch, squeeze**

SPORT

You can **do sport** or **play sports**:

Do you do a lot of sport?
We played sports together when we were kids.

You can also:

do	go	play
aerobics	angling	badminton
athletics	bowling	baseball
gymnastics	cycling	billiards
judo	fishing	bowls
karate	mountaineering	cricket
the high jump	riding	football
the long jump	skateboarding	golf
the pole vault	skating	hockey
weightlifting	skiing	**against** sb
wrestling	**to** aerobics, judo, etc. (= to your aerobics, etc. class)	**for** a team
yoga		

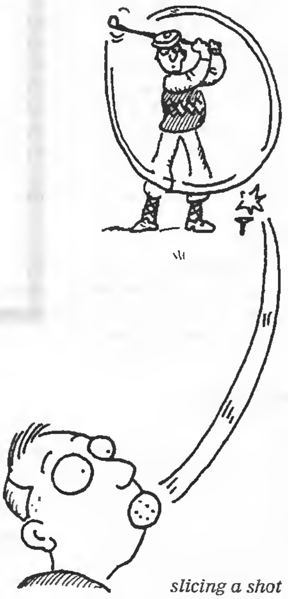

slicing a shot

- defeat, face, outfox, outmanoeuvre, outwit an **opponent**
- be called up to, be dropped from, be left out of, be selected for, join, sign for a **team**
- clinch, defend, retain, win **the title**
- break, set, shatter, smash **the world record**

football

- blast, chip, cross, give away, head, kick, lose, pass, win **the ball**
- score a **goal**
- beat, bring down, foul, get past, mark, tackle an **opponent**
- appeal for, take a **penalty**
- block, crack in, get in, have, parry, save a **shot**

golf

- hit, hook, mishit, overhit, slice, underhit a **drive/shot**
- hit, miss **the fairway/the green**
- hole, miss, sink a **putt**
- end up, finish up, land **in the rough**

rugby

- pass, retain, win **the ball**
- kick a **goal/penalty**
- win (the ball in) a **lineout/scrum**
- kick for, make **touch**
- convert, go over for, score a **try**

tennis

- hit, retrieve, return, run down **the ball**
- face, have, miss, save a **match point**
- lose, play, win a **point/rally**
- drop, hold, return (a) **serve**
- hit, mishit, overhit, slice a **shot**

2 place/area

- ADJ. **exact, particular, precise** | **convenient, good, ideal, perfect, right, suitable** *Take the time to find the right spot to pitch your tent.* | **beautiful, beauty, idyllic, lovely, pleasant** *The lake is one of the local beauty spots.* | **favourite, popular** *a favourite spot for picnickers* | **deserted, desolate, isolated, lonely, remote** | **quiet, secluded** | **shady, sheltered** | **sunny** | **holiday, tourist** | **picnic** | **sore, tender** | **sensitive** (*often figurative*) *From his angry reply it was obvious that I had touched a sensitive spot.* | **vulnerable, weak** *Check your house for weak spots where a thief could get in.* | **blind** (*often figurative*) *I have a blind spot where jazz is concerned* (= I don't understand it). | **danger, trouble** *one of the world's major trouble spots* | **high, number one/two, etc., top** *The record quickly reached the number one spot in the charts.* | **bald** *He usually wears a hat to hide his bald spot.*
- VERB + SPOT **mark** *On your map, X marks the spot where the race begins.* | **reach** | **be frozen/rooted to** *He stood rooted to the spot, unable to move.*
- PREP. **on the ~** *The fire brigade was on the spot within minutes.*
- PHRASES **an accident black spot**

spot *verb*

- ADV. **quickly** | **easily** *Most of these fossils are too small to be easily spotted.* | **suddenly** | **eventually, finally**
- VERB + SPOT **be difficult to, be easy to** | **fail to**
- PHRASES **well spotted** *'There's parking space over the far side.' 'Well spotted!'*

spotlight *noun*

1 lamp

- VERB + SPOTLIGHT **shine on** *They shone the spotlight on a woman waving at the back of the audience.* | **step into** *He stepped into the spotlight to the wild applause of the crowd.*
- SPOTLIGHT + VERB **be on sb/sth, fall on sb/sth, shine on sb/sth**
- PREP. **in/under the ~** *It was hot under the spotlights.*

2 public attention/interest

- ADJ. **national, public** | **media**
- VERB + SPOTLIGHT **come into/under** *This issue will come under the spotlight at tomorrow's meeting.* | **bring sth into, put, throw, turn** *These revelations threw a spotlight on the shakiness of the economy.* | **share** *The captain had to share the spotlight with the new young star.* | **steal**
- SPOTLIGHT + VERB **be on sb/sth, fall on sb/sth, turn on sb/sth**
- PREP. **in/under the ~** *The quality of food in the shops is back in the spotlight.* **out of the ~** *The affair is now out of the spotlight.*

sprawl *verb*

- ADV. **untidily.** | **out** *He was sprawled out on the sofa.*
- PREP. **across, in, on, over** *She sprawled untidily in an armchair*
- PHRASES **lie/sit sprawled** *She lay sprawled across the bed.* **send sb sprawling** *The blow sent him sprawling.*

spray *noun*

- ADJ. **fine, light** | **salt, sea**
- QUANT. **cloud, plume** *The boat sent a cloud of spray up behind it.*
- VERB + SPRAY **send (up), throw (up)**
- SPRAY + VERB **fly (up)** *Spray flew up onto the rocks.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a spray of salt water*

spread *noun*

- ADJ. **good, great, wide** | **rapid** | **gradual, slow** | **geographical, global** *The current survey will have a wider geographical spread.*
- VERB + SPREAD **encourage** *Such unhygienic conditions encourage the spread of disease.* | **halt, prevent, stop** | **control, limit, reduce**
- PREP. **~ of** *the spread of fire*

spread *verb*

1 open sth so that you can see all of it

- ADV. **carefully** | **out** *We spread the rug out on the floor.*
- PREP. **across, on, over**
- PHRASES **spread sth open** *He had a newspaper spread open on his knee.*

2 reach more people/wider area

- ADV. **fast, like wildfire, quickly, rapidly, soon** *The news spread like wildfire.* | **gradually, slowly** | **easily** *The disease spreads easily.* | **widely** *Allow plenty of space for this plant as its roots spread widely.* | **far and wide** *His fame had spread far and wide.* | **geographically** *Friends may be spread geographically. Neighbours, by definition, are nearby.* | **outwards**
- PREP. **across, among, around/round, beyond, from, into, over, through, throughout, to** *The effects of this policy spread far beyond children now at school.* ◇ *The fire rapidly spread to adjoining buildings.*
- PHRASES **thinly spread** *Expertise in this field is very thinly spread across the country.*

3 cover a surface with a soft substance

- ADV. **generously, liberally, thickly** | **lightly, thinly** | **evenly** *Don't make the paste too thick, or it will not spread evenly.*
- PREP. **on** *He spread jam on the toast.* **with** *Spread each slice generously with butter.*

4 divide/share sth

- ADV. **equally, evenly, uniformly** | **unevenly**
- VERB + SPREAD **try to**
- PREP. **among, between** *We tried to spread the workload evenly between the departments.* **over** *The course takes forty hours, spread over twenty weeks.*

spree *noun*

- ADJ. **massive** *a massive buying spree* | **mad** | **buying, shopping, spending** | **drinking, drunken** | **crime, killing** | **scoring** *Uruguay's scoring spree began in the fourth minute.*
- VERB + SPREE **go on** *He's gone on a drinking spree.*
- PREP. **on a ~** *She's out on a mad spending spree.*

spring *noun*

1 season

- ADJ. **last, next, this (coming)** | **early, late, mid-** | **wet**
- SPRING + NOUN **weather** | **sun, sunlight, sunshine** | **frost/frosts, rain/rains, wind** | **tide** *The highest spring tides of the the year occur after the equinoxes in March and September.* | **equinox** | **term** *The students spend the whole spring term on teaching practice.* | **flower** | **lamb, greens** *a delicious recipe for spring lamb* | **clean, cleaning** *They decided to give the attic a spring clean.* | **collection, exhibition**

⇨ Note at SEASON (for more collocates)

2 coiled metal or wire

- VERB + SPRING **break** *The children broke some springs jumping on the bed.*
- SPRING + VERB **break, go** *Most of the springs have gone in the old sofa.*

3 where water comes up

- ADJ. **hot, thermal** | **bubbling** | **mineral, mountain**
- SPRING + VERB **bubble** *A thermal spring bubbled up out of the rocks.*
- SPRING + NOUN **water**

spring *verb*

- ADV. **suddenly | apart, back, down, forward, out, up** *He sprang back in alarm.*
- VERB + SPRING **be ready to, be waiting to** *The lion crouched, ready to spring.*
- PREP. **at** *Thérèse sprang at him and kissed him on both cheeks.* **into, out of** *He sprang out of the car.*
- PHRASES **spring open** *He worked a knife blade into the drawer and it sprang open.* **spring to attention** *The sentry sprang to attention.* **spring to your feet** *She sprang to her feet and ran to answer the doorbell.*

sprinkle *verb*

- ADV. **lightly | evenly**
- PREP. **on, onto, over** *Sprinkle sugar evenly over the top of the cake.* **with** *Sprinkle the meat lightly with salt.*

sprint *noun*

- ADJ. **quick, short | 100-metre, etc.**
- VERB + SPRINT **break into, make** *The runners broke into a sprint a few hundred yards from the finish.* ◇ *It started raining, so we made a sprint for a cafe.*
- SPRINT + NOUN **relay** *Jamaica won the gold in the sprint relay.* | **finish** *Sato just pipped the Kenyan runner in a sprint finish.* | **champion** *Olympic sprint champion Marion Jones* | **hurdles | double** *the 100-metre and 200-metre sprint double*
- PREP. **in a ~** *This car could comfortably outpace its rivals in a sprint.* | **~ for** *The Moroccan came out best in a frantic sprint for the line.*

spur *noun*

1 on horse rider's boots

- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + SPUR **dig in/into, put/set to** *He dug his spurs into the horse's flank and cantered off.*

2 encouragement

- ADJ. **great, powerful, strong**
- VERB + SPUR **act as, be | give (sb), provide (sb with)**
- PREP. **~ for** *The research provided a spur for reform.* **~ to** *a spur to action*

spurt *noun*

- ADJ. **sudden | great** *A great spurt of blood came out of the wound.* | **brief, little | final | growth**
- VERB + SPURT **put on** *She put on a spurt to get to the station in time.* | **feel** *He felt a spurt of resentment against his brother.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *With one final spurt, he reached the top of the hill.* | **~ in** *a spurt in capital spending* **~ of**

spy *noun*

- ADJ. **enemy, government, police**
- VERB + SPY **act as, be, work as** *He denied acting as an enemy spy.* | **recruit (sb as)**
- SPY + NOUN **film, movie, novel, story, thriller | camera, plane, satellite | network, ring** *Counter-intelligence officers uncovered a spy ring involving twenty agents.*
- PREP. **~ for** *He was a spy for the government.*
- PHRASES **a network of spies**

squabble *noun*

- ADJ. **petty | bitter | domestic, family | internal**
- VERB + SQUABBLE **have | resolve, settle**
- PREP. **~ about/over** *squabbles about money* **~ among/between** *I always have to settle squabbles between the children.* **~ with** *a squabble with her publisher over royalties*

squad *noun*

- ADJ. **good, strong** *They've got together a good squad for the World Cup.* | **anti-terrorist, bomb (disposal), crime, drug/drugs, flying, fraud, police, riot, vice** *an early-morning raid by the police flying squad* | **assassination, death, hit | demolition | firing** *It was almost his turn to go before the firing squad.* | **football, rowing, etc.**
- SQUAD + NOUN **detective, member, officer** *a fraud squad detective* | **car**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He's working in the drugs squad.*

squalor *noun*

- ADJ. **public, urban**
- VERB + SQUALOR **live in**
- PREP. **amid/in the ~ of** *a beautiful garden amid the squalor of the slums* **in ~** *He was born in squalor next to London's docks.*

square *noun*

1 shape

- ADJ. **neat | perfect**
- VERB + SQUARE **cut sth into, divide sth into** *Cut the sandwiches into neat squares.*
- SQUARE + NOUN **shape**
- PREP. **~ of** *A square of light shone from the skylight.*

2 open space in a town, etc.

- ADJ. **central, main | public | city, town, village | market** *crowds thronging the market square*
- VERB + SQUARE **throng**
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

square *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look**
- ADV. **very** *The rooms are all very square.* | **absolutely, exactly | not quite** *The grid doesn't look quite square.* | **quite | nearly | roughly**

squeak *noun*

- ADJ. **little | high, high-pitched**
- VERB + SQUEAK **give, let out | hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *The door opened with a squeak.* | **~ of** *She gave a little squeak of surprise.*
- PHRASES **not a squeak** (*figurative*) *'Have you heard from them?' 'Not a squeak since yesterday.'* **the squeak of rubber** *the squeak of rubber soles on the wooden floor* **a squeak of surprise**

⇨ Note at SOUND

squeal *noun*

- ADJ. **little | high-pitched**
- VERB + SQUEAL **give, let out** *She gave a little squeal of delight.* | **hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *The car stopped with a squeal of brakes.* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **the squeal of brakes, a squeal of delight**

⇨ Note at SOUND

squeeze *noun*

1 pressing with fingers

- ADJ. **affectionate | comforting, reassuring**
- VERB + SQUEEZE **give sb** *He gave his mother a comforting squeeze as he left.*
- PHRASES **~ of** *A squeeze of her hand reassured him.*

2 in a small space

- ADJ. **tight** *There were seven of us in the car and it was a tight squeeze.*
- PREP. **at a ~** *We can get six in the car at a squeeze.*
- PHRASES **a bit of a squeeze**

3 reduction in money

- ADJ. **cash, credit, economic, financial, profits, tax**
- VERB + SQUEEZE **feel** *All manufacturers are feeling the squeeze.* | **put** *The government is trying to put the squeeze on high earners.*
- PREP. **~on** *a squeeze on spending*

squeeze *verb*

1 press sth hard
- ADV. **hard, tightly** | **gently** *'I know,' she said, squeezing his hand gently.*
- PREP. **from** *squeezing the juice from a lemon* **out of** *I squeezed the last bit of toothpaste out of the tube.*
- PHRASES **freshly squeezed** *freshly squeezed orange juice*

2 limit the money available
- ADV. **hard, severely** *High interest rates have squeezed the industry hard.*

squint *noun*

- ADJ. **bad** | **slight**
- VERB + SQUINT **have** | **correct** *A squint can sometimes be corrected by an eyepatch.*
- SQUINT + NOUN **surgery**

squirm *verb*

- ADV. **uncomfortably** | **silently** | **visibly**
- VERB + SQUIRM **make sb** *The very mention of her singing made her squirm uncomfortably.*
- PREP. **at** *He squirmed visibly at the thought of his secret being revealed.* **in/with** *He squirmed with embarrassment.*

squirrel *noun*

- ADJ. **grey, red**
- SQUIRREL + VERB **dart, scamper, scurry** *The squirrel scampered across the lawn*

stab *noun*

1 injury
- VERB + STAB **make** *the boy made a stab at the pig*
- STAB + NOUN **wound**
- PREP. **~at**

2 sudden pain
- ADJ. **sharp, sudden**
- VERB + STAB **feel**
- PHRASES **~of** *He felt a sharp stab of disappointment.*

3 attempt
- ADJ. **brave, good** | **unsuccessful**
- VERB + STAB **have, make, take**
- PREP. **~at** *I had a stab at answering the question.*

stab *verb*

- ADV. **repeatedly** *He is accused of repeatedly stabbing a sixteen-year-old boy.*
- VERB + STAB **threaten to** | **try to**
- PREP. **at, in** *He was stabbed in the chest.* **with** *I stabbed at my meat with my fork.*
- PHRASES **be found stabbed** *He was found stabbed in his car.* **stab sb to death**

stability *noun*

- ADJ. **greater** | **relative** | **long-term** | **internal** | **economic, financial, monetary, price** | **political, social** | **emotional**
- VERB + STABILITY **achieve, bring, ensure, give sb, provide (sb with)** *The policy should bring greater monetary stability to the country.* | **lack** | **threaten, undermine** | **maintain, preserve**
- PHRASES **a period of stability** *The country was enjoying a period of political stability.* **a threat to stability** *The conflict is becoming a threat to stability in the region.*

stable *adj.*

1 not likely to move
- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** | **make sth** | **keep sth** *Put a book under the table to keep it stable.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **perfectly, quite** *Don't worry—it's perfectly stable!* | **fairly, pretty** | **enough, sufficiently** *The unit is stable enough on level ground.*

2 not likely to change suddenly
- VERBS **be, look, seem** | **become** | **remain** | **keep sth** *attempts to keep prices stable*
- ADV. **extremely, highly, remarkably, very** | **completely, perfectly** *Animals rarely live in completely stable environments.* | **broadly, comparatively, fairly, more or less, quite, reasonably, relatively, roughly** | **enough, sufficiently** *He was not emotionally stable enough to think through his decision.* | **apparently** | **emotionally, financially, politically**

stack *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, neatly** | **away, up** *The wood was collected up and carefully stacked away.* ◇ *Stack the chairs up over there.*
- PREP. **against** *The cases were stacked against the wall.* **in** *The paintings were stacked in a corner of the room.* **on** *The plates were neatly stacked on the draining board.* **with** *shelves stacked with boxes*
- PHRASES **be stacked in piles** *Boxes were stacked in piles all round the room.*

stadium *noun*

- ADJ. **packed** | **all-seater** | **indoor** | **sports** | **Olympic** | **baseball, football, greyhound**
- VERB + STADIUM **fill, pack (into)** *Thousands packed into the stadium to watch the final.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~**

staff *noun*

- ADJ. **full-time, part-time** | **permanent, temporary** | **skeleton** *We'll be down to a skeleton staff over Christmas.* | **experienced, professional, qualified, skilled, trained** | **unskilled** | **junior, senior** | **ancillary, support** | **general** (= officers assisting a military leader in administration and planning) | **academic, administrative, editorial, etc.** | **nursing, teaching, etc.** | **hospital, hotel, etc.** | **bar, kitchen, etc.**
- QUANT. **member** *There are only four full-time members of staff in the company.*
- VERB + STAFF **employ, have** *The company has a staff of fifty.* | **appoint, engage, hire, recruit, take on** *staff appointed to the project* ◇ *I've heard they're recruiting staff at the moment.* | **dismiss, fire, lay off, make redundant, sack** *A spokesperson said that the bank expects to make 15 000 staff redundant over the next three years.* | **train** | **pay** *They pay their staff by cheque.* | **join** *He joined the editorial staff in 1999.* | **leave**
- STAFF + NOUN **member** | **levels, numbers, resources** | **shortage** | **turnover** | **cut** | **appointment** *The hospital is freezing staff appointments as part of its cutbacks.* | **development, training** | **morale** | **meeting** | **canteen, dining room, restaurant, room**
- PREP. **on the ~ (of)** *She has been on the staff of the hospital for most of her working life.*
- PHRASES **chief of staff** (= the most senior officer serving under and advising the person who commands each of the armed forces)

staff *verb* **be staffed**

- ADV. **well** | **fully, properly** *The ward is now fully*

staffed. | **adequately** | **inadequately, short** *I'm afraid we're desperately short staffed at the moment.*
• PHRASES **be staffed (entirely/largely/mainly) by/with sb** *The office will be staffed entirely with volunteers.*

stage *noun*

1 period/state in progress/development
• ADJ. **distinct** *The process has three distinct stages.* | **early, first, initial, opening, preliminary** | **advanced, closing, final, last, late, latter, terminal** *Her husband was in the advanced stages of cancer.* | **halfway, intermediate, secondary** | **transitional** | **successive** | **critical, crucial, important, key, main** | **easy** *The book guides you through making your own website in easy stages.* | **difficult** | **delicate, vulnerable** | **embryonic, larval, pupal** | **experimental, exploratory** | **committee, design, development/developmental, formative, planning** *The scheme is still at the planning stage.* | **knockout, semi-final, etc.** *Colombia's win sent them through to the knockout stage of the tournament.*
• VERB + STAGE **go/move/pass through** *The water goes through three stages of purification.* | **enter, reach** *We've entered a crucial stage in the project.*
• PREP. **at a/the ~** *You should read this article at some stage.* **by ~s** *The university was put together by stages.* **during/in a/the ~** *in the early stages of the job* **in ~s** *We renovated the house in two stages.* | **~ in** *an important stage in her life* **~ of** *the latter stages of the race*
• PHRASES **the beginning/end of a stage** *Pupils are tested at the end of each stage of the course.* **a/one stage further** *take the investigation one stage further* **a stage of development/life**

2 in a theatre, etc.
• ADJ. **centre** (*often figurative*) *A new actress will take centre stage in next month's production of 'The Doll's House'.* | **revolving**
• VERB + STAGE **go on, take (to)** *He was too nervous to go on stage.* ◇ *I was shaking as I took the stage.* ◇ *She took to the stage when she was at university.* | **leave** *She left the stage to tumultuous applause.* | **set** (*often figurative*) *The thrilling semi-finals set the stage for what should be a great game.* | **boo sb off**
• STAGE + NOUN **management, manager** | **direction** *Shakespeare's famous stage direction: 'Exit, pursued by a bear.'* | **play, production, show** | **appearance, performance, role** | **set** *The stage set is the most expensive ever built.* | **door** | **name** *David Harries adopted the stage name Dixon Hare when he became a full-time actor.* | **left, right** | **fright** *Even experienced actors can suffer from stage fright.*
• PREP. **off ~** *A trumpet sounded off stage.* **on ~** *The entire cast is on stage in the final scene.*

stage *verb*

• ADV. **carefully** *The event was very carefully staged.* | **elaborately** *an elaborately staged drama*

stagger *verb*

• ADV. **almost** | **a little, slightly** | **blindly** *She staggered blindly off into the darkness.* | **about, around, away, back, backwards, forward, off, out**
• PREP. **from, into, out of, through, towards, under, etc.** *He was staggering under the weight of the sack.*
• PHRASES **stagger to your feet** *She staggered to her feet and tottered unsteadily across the room.*

staggered *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look**
• ADV. **absolutely, quite**
• PREP. **at** *I was staggered at her rudeness.* **by** *He looked quite staggered by the news.*

staggering *adj.*

• VERBS **be**
• ADV. **absolutely, quite** *The public response was absolutely staggering.* | **fairly, pretty**

stagnation *noun*

• ADJ. **economic, political**
• VERB + STAGNATION **lead to**
• PHRASES **a period/years of stagnation** *Poor economic policies led to a long period of stagnation and decline.*

staid *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** | **become, get, grow** *He had grown staid and dull.*
• ADV. **positively, very** *The locals were a very staid lot.* | **rather** *a rather staid and old-fashioned hotel*

stain *noun*

• ADJ. **stubborn** | **dark** | **coffee, grass, etc.**
• VERB + STAIN **leave** | **get out, remove**
• STAIN + VERB **spread** *The glass fell off the table and a dark stain spread over the carpet.*
• PREP. **~ on** *The coffee left a stain on his shirt.*

stain *verb*

• PREP. **with** *The shirt was heavily stained with blood.*
• PHRASES **be badly/heavily/slightly stained, stain sth green, red, etc.** *The children's fingers were stained purple with blackberry juice.*

stair *noun*

1 stairs steps inside a building
• ADJ. **steep** | **wide** | **narrow** | **rickety** | **main** | **back**
• QUANT. **flight** *We went up three flights of stairs.*
• VERB + STAIRS **ascend, climb, go/run, etc. up, mount** | **descend, go/run, etc. down** | **take, use** *Take the back stairs.*
• STAIRS + VERB **lead to sth** | **creak**
• STAIR + NOUN **rod** *The carpet was held in place by brass stair rods.* | **gate**
• PREP. **under the ~** *a cupboard under the stairs* | **~ (down/up) to** *the stairs to the third floor*
• PHRASES **the bottom/foot/head/top of the stairs, take the stairs two, etc. at a time** *He rushed up to the bedroom, taking the stairs two at a time.*

2 one step
• ADJ. **top** | **bottom**
• STAIR + VERB **creak** *The third stair creaked as I stepped on it.*
• PREP. **on/the a ~** *He sat waiting on the bottom stair.*

staircase *noun*

• ADJ. **steep** | **broad, wide** | **narrow** | **elegant, grand, great** | **rickety** | **curving, spiral, sweeping, twisting, winding** | **moving** | **main** | **outside** | **back**
• VERB + STAIRCASE **ascend, climb, go/run, etc. up, mount** | **descend, go/run, etc. down** | **use**
• STAIRCASE + VERB **lead to sth** *The spiral staircase led to an upper gallery.*
• PREP. **on the ~** *They passed each other on the staircase.*
• PHRASES **the bottom/foot/head/top of the staircase**

stake *noun*

1 (*also* **stakes**) amount that could be won/lost
• ADJ. **big, high** | **low, small** | **political**
• VERB + STAKE **play for** *They always play for high stakes.* | **raise** | **lower**
• PREP. **at ~** *The minister will face the enquiry with his reputation at stake.*

2 share of a company, etc.

- ADJ. **controlling, large, majority, significant, substantial | minority, small | direct | financial, equity**
- VERB + STAKE **have | acquire, buy, take | sell | build up, increase, lift, raise | cut, reduce**
- PREP. **~in** *She acquired a four per cent direct stake in the business.*

stale *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, smell, taste** *The room smelled musty and stale.* | **become, go, turn** *This bread's going stale.*
- ADV. **extremely, very | a bit, a little, rather, slightly**
- PREP. **with** *The atmosphere was stale with cigarette smoke.*

stalemate *noun*

- ADJ. **political**
- VERB + STALEMATE **end in, reach, result in** *The talks reached (a) stalemate.* | **break** *Efforts to break the stalemate in the peace talks continue.* | **be locked in** *Discussions are locked in stalemate.*
- STALEMATE + VERB **continue**
- PREP. **~between** *a stalemate between management and unions* **~in** *The stalemate in the trade talks continues.* **~on/over** *a stalemate over economic union*

stall *noun*

- ADJ. **market | book, cake, fish, flower, etc.**
- VERB + STALL **have** *He has a flower stall in Portobello Road market.* | **put up, set out/up | pack up | man, run** *Who's going to man the stall at lunchtime?*
- STALL + VERB **sell sth** *a stall selling second-hand books*
- STALL + NOUN **holder (also stallholder), keeper**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *I bought this trout at the market fish stall.* **behind the ~** *the man behind the stall*

stall *verb*

- ADV. **effectively** *Discussions were effectively stalled by the union's refusal to participate.*
- PHRASES **stall for time** *He asked them all kinds of pointless questions, stalling for time.*

stamina *noun*

- ADJ. **great | mental, physical**
- VERB + STAMINA **have** *She didn't the stamina to complete the course.* | **lack | need, require | build (up), increase** *Aerobic exercise helps to build up stamina.*
- PHRASES **reserves of stamina** *Emma Walton had to call on all her reserves of stamina to win the 10 000 metres.* **a test of stamina** *Final exams at university can be as much a test of stamina as of knowledge.*

stammer *noun*

- ADJ. **bad, nervous, severe | slight**
- VERB + STAMMER **develop | have, speak with**

stamp *noun*

1 on a letter/package

- ADJ. **postage | first-class, second-class | Christmas, commemorative**
- QUANT. **book, set, sheet** *a book of ten first-class stamps*
- VERB + STAMP **put on, stick on** *She stuck a first-class stamp on the letter.* | **lick, moisten | issue, launch** *The Post Office has launched some new Christmas stamps.* | **collect**
- STAMP + NOUN **album, collecting, collector**

2 instrument for stamping a design, etc. on a surface

- ADJ. **official | date**

3 character/quality

- ADJ. **unmistakable**
- VERB + STAMP **bear, carry** *His work bears the unmistakable stamp of genius.* | **leave, put** *She left her stamp on the school.*
- PREP. **~of** *the stamp of authority*

stamp *verb*

- ADV. **hard | impatiently** *She stamped her foot impatiently.* | **about, around, down, off** *He stamped off in disgust.*
- PREP. **on** *She stamped on my toe!*

stance *noun*

1 position in which sb stands

- ADJ. **correct, good | natural | rigid | relaxed | upright | defensive, fighting**
- VERB + STANCE **adopt, take up** *The boxer took up a fighting stance.* | **change | keep, maintain**
- PREP. **in a ~** *He lounged in an armchair in a stance of deliberate contempt.*

2 attitude

- ADJ. **positive | critical, negative | impartial, neutral | aggressive, hardline, rigid, tough, uncompromising | cautious | conservative | radical | ideological, moral, political | public** *Her public stance was much tougher than her private feelings on the subject.*
- VERB + STANCE **adopt, take (up) | alter, change | maintain** *The wife of the accused has maintained an impartial stance throughout the trial.*
- PREP. **~against** *The president has adopted a hardline stance against abortion.* **~on/towards** *He has changed his stance on monetary union.*

stand *noun*

1 effort to resist opposition

- ADJ. **defiant, determined, firm, strong, tough | moral, principled | last, last-ditch | public**
- VERB + STAND **make, take**
- PREP. **~against** *to make a stand against industries that contribute to river pollution* **~on** *He has taken a public stand on the issue of misuse of hospital funds.*

2 table/small shop

- ADJ. **market, trade | hot-dog, newspaper, etc. | display, exhibition | information**
- VERB + STAND **have** *Our company has a display stand at this year's fair.* | **set up | man** *We took it in turns to man the exhibition stand.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *We can get a magazine at the newspaper stand.* **on the ~** *I'll be on the stand for two hours.* ◇ *You'll find brochures on our new products on the stand.*

3 furniture/equipment for putting sth on

- ADJ. **hat, umbrella | microphone, music**
- PREP. **in/on a/the ~** *There was some flute music open on the music stand.*

stand *verb*

1 be on your feet/be upright

- ADV. **upright | still** *Stand still while I take your photo.* | **barefoot | on tiptoe** *She stood on tiptoe to reach the shelf.* | **awkwardly, meekly, stiffly, uncertainly** *He stood awkwardly in the doorway, not sure what to say.* | **around, there** *Don't just stand there—do something.*
- VERB + STAND **can/can't, could/couldn't** *The roof was so low I could not stand upright.* | **can/could barely/hardly** *He felt so weak he could hardly stand.*
- PHRASES **be left standing** *After the earthquake only a few houses were left standing.*

2 tolerate sth

- VERB + STAND **can/can't, could/couldn't** *I can't stand that man!* | **can/could hardly**

3 be a candidate in an election

- ADV. **successfully, unsuccessfully**
- PREP. **against** *Two candidates will be standing against her.* **as** *She stood unsuccessfully as a candidate in the local elections.* **for** *He is standing for Oxford East in the parliamentary election.*

PHRASAL VERBS

stand by

- ADV. **idly, passively** *Surely the world cannot stand idly by and let this country go through the agony of war yet again?*
- VERB + STAND BY **can/can't, could/couldn't**

stand up

- ADV. **straight** *You'll look taller if you stand up straight.*

standard *noun*

1 level of quality

- ADJ. **high | low, poor | minimum | acceptable, adequate, decent, proper, reasonable** *We must ensure proper standards of care for the elderly.* | **improved, rising | clear | objective** *Judged by any objective standards, the campaign was a disaster.* | **official, required | conventional, usual | consistent, uniform, universal | exacting, rigorous, strict, stringent | professional** *The work has been done to a professional standard.* | **international, national | quality** *We have to try and achieve the quality standards set by the project.* | **qualifying** *The Olympic qualifying standard has been set at 64.50m.* | **living** *The region enjoys the highest living standards in Europe.* | **accounting, advertising, safety, trading, etc. | academic, educational, environmental, health, intellectual, technical, etc.**
- VERB + STANDARD **have** *The agency has very high standards.* | **boast, enjoy | define, establish, set | achieve, meet, reach** *The factory is struggling to meet national environmental standards.* ◇ *She has reached an acceptable standard of English.* | **fall short of** *The hotel service fell short of the usual standard.* | **apply, enforce, provide** *It's impossible to apply the same academic standards across the country.* | **judge sb/sth by | improve, raise | lower | maintain, sustain**
- PREP. **above/below (the) ~** *Your work is below standard.* **by ... standards** *By modern standards, he isn't a particularly fast runner.* **to a ... ~** *The building work had not been completed to a satisfactory standard.* **up to ~** *We need to bring our computer system up to standard.* | **~ in** *standards in safety*
- PHRASES **by any standard** *She's a great violinist by any standard.* **a drop/fall in the standard, an increase/a rise in the standard** *There has been an increase in the standard of sevice provided.* **a standard of living** *the fall in their standard of living caused by redundancy*

2 (usually **standards**) acceptable level of behaviour

- ADJ. **declining, falling** *My grandparents are always complaining about falling moral standards.* | **double** *the double standard frequently encountered in nineteenth-century attitudes to sex* | **ethical, moral**
- VERB + STANDARD **prescribe | keep up, maintain | improve, raise**
- STANDARD + VERB **drop, fall**
- PHRASES **standards of behaviour/conduct**

standard *adj.*

- VERBS **be, be fitted as, come as** *Anti-lock brakes are fitted as standard.* | **become**
- ADV. **almost** *The stations were built to a simple, almost standard design.* | **fairly, pretty** *a fairly standard method of assessing employees*

standing *noun*

1 reputation

- ADJ. **good, high | low | equal | public | international | academic, economic, financial, legal, moral, political, professional, social**
- VERB + STANDING **have** *Professor Greenan has a high standing in the academic world.* | **enhance, improve | damage, diminish**
- STANDING + VERB **decline, fall | rise**
- PREP. **of ... ~** *She married into a family of higher social standing.* | **~ among** *her low standing among her fellow scientists* **~ as** *His standing as a film director has risen in recent years.* **~ in/within** *his international standing in cancer research* **~ with** *She was appointed for her high moral standing with the general public.*
- PHRASES **in good standing with sb** *a knight in good standing with the king*

2 length of time that sth has existed

- ADJ. **long | many years', 25 years', etc.** *Their relationship is of many years' standing.*
- PREP. **of ... ~**

standpoint *noun*

- ADJ. **different** *We must approach the problem from a different standpoint.* | **positive | practical | ideological, theoretical | economic, historical, political, religious, technical, etc.**
- VERB + STANDPOINT **adopt** *We should try to adopt a more positive standpoint.* | **approach sth from, view sth from**
- PREP. **from a/the ~ (of)** *From the standpoint of women, this looks like a policy of discrimination.*

standstill *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, total | virtual**
- VERB + STANDSTILL **come to, grind to** *The train came to a complete standstill.* | **bring sth to** *The roadworks brought the traffic to a standstill.*
- PREP. **at a ~** *The factory has been at a standstill for days.*

star *noun*

1 small point of light in the night sky

- ADJ. **bright, brilliant | faint | distant | nearby, nearer/nearest | falling, shooting | evening, morning**
- QUANT. **cluster** *a dense cluster of stars at the galaxy's nucleus*
- STAR + VERB **be out | shine, twinkle** *A bright star shone in the East.* | **appear, come out**
- STAR + NOUN **cluster** *a dense cluster of stars at the galaxy's nucleus*
- PREP. **under the ~s** *We camped out under the stars.*
- PHRASES **a canopy of stars** *They lay down under a canopy of stars.* **the brightness/density/luminosity of a star**

2 famous person

- ADJ. **big** *There were several big Hollywood stars at the function.* | **true, undisputed | rising, young | football, pop, etc. | Hollywood, screen, film, movie, soap, TV**
- QUANT. **array, galaxy, host** *Channel 4 has lined up a galaxy of stars for the coming season.*
- STAR + NOUN **quality, status | role | actor, performer, player | attraction, turn** *He was the star turn at the celebrations.* | **vehicle** *The film was nothing more than a star vehicle for Tom Hanks.*

stardom *noun*

- ADJ. **Hollywood, international**
- VERB + STARDOM **achieve, rise to, rocket to, shoot (sb) to** *Her number one single shot her to stardom.* | **be tipped for** *This young tennis player is being tipped for stardom.* | **be coached for, be groomed for** *He was groomed for stardom by his rock-singer father.*

• PHRASES **sb's rise to stardom** *her meteoric rise to stardom* **the road to stardom** *He set out on the lonely road to stardom early in life.*

stare *verb*

• ADV. **fixedly, hard, intently, unblinkingly** *I could see a man staring at me intently.* | **steadily** | **impassively** | **absently, blankly, blearily, blindly, dully, sightlessly, uncomprehendingly, unseeingly, vacantly** *She stared blankly at the brick wall in front of her.* | **dazedly, disbelievingly, incredulously, open-mouthed, wide-eyed, wildly** *I stared at him open-mouthed, unable to speak.* | **bleakly, gloomily, glumly, grimly, helplessly, hopelessly, morosely** *He stared at me bleakly and said nothing.* | **coldly, coolly, defiantly, fiercely, moodily, stonily** *She stared at him stonily as he came in.* | **curiously, quizzically, suspiciously, thoughtfully** | **silently, wordlessly** | **just, merely, simply** | **(for) a moment** *For a long moment they just stared at each other.* | **still** *He was still staring at himself in the mirror.* | **across, around/round, back, down, out, (straight) ahead, up** *She stared back at him.* ◇ *He stared straight ahead and did not move.*

• VERB + STARE **can/could only** *She could only stare at him with pain in her eyes.* | **seem to** | **continue to** | **turn to** *Everyone in the room turned to stare at her.* | **pause to, stop to**

• PREP. **across, after** *She stalked off, leaving them all staring after her.* **around/round, at, in** *I stared in horror at his bloody mouth.* **into, out of, through, with** *He just stared at her with disbelief.*

• PHRASES **sit/stand staring, stand/stop and stare** *It was too cold to stand and stare.* **stare into space** *She was just sitting there, staring into space.*

start *noun*

• ADJ. **auspicious, bright, encouraging, flying, good, great, impressive, promising, sound, wonderful** *Despite a bright start, Liverpool lost the match.* | **disappointing, disastrous, poor, rocky, shaky, slow, uncertain** | **false** *After a couple of false starts, she found the job that suited her.* | **fresh, new** | **early, late** | **very** *right from the very start*

• VERB + START **make** *I think it's time we made a start.* | **get off to** *The company has got off to an impressive start this financial year.* | **herald, mark**

• START + NOUN **button, date, signal**

• PREP. **at the ~ (of)** *Everyone was in a conciliatory mood at the start of the meeting.* **from the ~** *She felt at home in her new job right from the start.* | **~ to** *The fine winter weather heralded a good start to the year.* **~ in** *Moving to a good school gave Sally a fresh start in life.*

• PHRASES **from start to finish** *This is a thoroughly good book from start to finish.*

start *verb*

• ADV. **suddenly** *Her heart suddenly started to race.* | **immediately** | **just** *He has just started at school.* ◇ *At that point I just started to hate the man.* | **off, out** *We'll start off by doing some warm-up exercises.* | **(all over) again** *We'll just have to start all over again.*

• VERB + START **decide to, expect to, hope to, intend to, plan to** | **be due to, be expected to, be scheduled to** *Work is due to start this weekend.* | **be ready to** *By early evening he was ready to start work.* | **be about to, be going to** *A new term was about to start.* | **had better** *You'd better start packing if you're to leave early tomorrow morning.*

• PREP. **by** *Let's start by reviewing what we did last week.* **from** *Start from the beginning and tell me exactly what happened.* **on** *I've finished decorating the bathroom, so now I can start on the bedroom.* **with** *Let's start with this first piece of music.*

• PHRASES **get started** *It's already quite late, so I think we should get started.* **let's start**

starter *noun*

• ADJ. **cold, hot**

• VERB + STARTER **eat, have** *Are you having a starter?* | **choose, order** *I've chosen a hot starter.* | **serve sth as** *This dish can be served as a starter or a main course.*

starting point *noun*

• ADJ. **convenient, good, suitable, useful**

• VERB + STARTING POINT **be, provide, serve as** | **take sth as, use sth as**

• PREP. **from a/the ~** *They reached the same conclusion from different starting points.* | **~ for** *Your paper provides a useful starting point for the discussion.*

startled *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**

• ADV. **very** | **a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat** | **for a moment, momentarily** *She was momentarily startled by the sight before her.* | **suddenly**

• PREP. **at** *She was obviously a little startled at this idea.* **by** *startled by his sudden appearance in the doorway*

starvation *noun*

• ADJ. **prolonged, slow** | **mass** | **oxygen** *The pilot had lost consciousness because of oxygen starvation.*

• VERB + STARVATION **be threatened by, face, suffer** | **rescue sb from, save sb from** | **die from/of**

• STARVATION + NOUN **diet, rations** | **wages** *The workers lived in poor conditions and were paid starvation wages.* | **level** *Millions of people around the world live at or below starvation level.*

• PHRASES **death by/from starvation**

starve *verb*

• ADV. **literally** *She refused food and literally starved herself to death.*

• VERB + STARVE **leave sb to** *He locked them in and left them to starve.*

• PHRASES **be half starved** *The poor cat was half starved.* **starve to death**

state *noun*

1 condition

• ADJ. **acceptable, fit, good, healthy** *She managed to get the company's finances into a healthy state.* | **appalling, awful, bad, desperate, dire, dreadful, pitiful, poor, sorry, terrible** | **run-down** *We were shocked at the run-down state of the hospital.* | **emotional, mental, psychological** *He's not in a fit enough mental state to drive.* | **physical** *The inspectors assess the physical state of schools and equipment.* | **financial** | **nervous, trance-like** *He goes into a trance-like state when he plays the guitar.* | **current, present** | **former, previous** | **natural** *You can either varnish the wood or leave it in its natural state.* | **constant, continual, continuous, permanent, perpetual** *The country is in a perpetual state of anarchy.* | **advanced** *an advanced state of dehydration*

• VERB + STATE **get into, go into** | **get sth into**

• PREP. **in a ~** *Jane was in a terrible state after losing her job.* **into a ~** *Babies can cry themselves into a state of frenzy.* | **~ of** *His life seems to be in a constant state of chaos.*

• PHRASES **be in a good/bad, etc. state of repair** *The house was in a poor state of repair when we bought it.* **a state of affairs** *The brothers' refusal to work together had brought about this sad state of affairs.* **a state of emergency** *The government has declared a state of emergency* *in the flooded regions.* **a state of flux** *The education system is still in a state of flux following the recent reform.* **a state of health** *He's concerned about his mother's state of health.* **a state of mind** *Public speaking can produce a state of mind akin to panic.* **a state of shock** *The driver was just sitting there in a state of shock.* **a state of war**

2 country/government

• ADJ. **independent, nation, sovereign** | **foreign** | **democratic, one-party, socialist, totalitarian, etc.** | **member** *member states of the European Union* | **powerful, strong** | **weak** | **neighbouring**

• STATE + NOUN **enterprise, monopoly** | **control, ownership** *The telephone network is still under state control.* | **property** *Every citizen could buy shares in privatized state property.* | **sector, system** *Teachers in the state sector are asking for a 7% pay rise.* ◇ *schools outside the state system* | **education, school** *Did you go to a state school or a private school?* | **aid, funding, funds, subsidy, support** | **benefit, pension** *unemployed people living on state benefit* ◇ *The state pension is barely enough to live on.* | **intervention** *large-scale state intervention in industry* | **spending** *Some prefer tax cuts to greater state spending on health and social services.* | **employee** | **secret** *He was shot for passing state secrets to foreign powers.*

• PHRASES **affairs/matters of state** *The president's wife is said to have a powerful hand in affairs of state.* **head of state** *Visiting heads of state usually stay in the palace.*

state *verb*

• ADV. **clearly, plainly** *Please state clearly how many tickets you require.* | **exactly, explicitly, expressly, precisely, specifically** *These facts were nowhere explicitly stated.* | **categorically, definitely, positively, unequivocally** *She stated categorically that she had no intention of leaving.* | **emphatically, firmly** | **bluntly, flatly** *'Alcohol doesn't solve problems,' she stated flatly.* | **confidently** | **correctly, rightly** | **falsely, incorrectly, wrongly** | **openly, publicly** *He stated his own views quite openly.* | **formally, officially** | **blandly** | **easily** *The demands are more easily stated than met.* | **briefly, succinctly** | **quietly** | **just, merely, simply** *I am merely stating the facts.* | **repeatedly** | **previously** *As previously stated, the phrase 'value for money' has an ambiguous meaning.*

• VERB + STATE **go on to** *The report goes on to state that: ...* | **fail to** *The committee failed to state their reasons for this decision.*

• PHRASES **stated above/below** *We cannot accept this proposal for the reasons stated above.* **state the obvious** *At the risk of stating the obvious, people who have not paid cannot be admitted.* **unless otherwise stated/unless stated otherwise** *All the photographs in this book, unless otherwise stated, date from the 1950s.*

statement *noun*

• ADJ. **brief, short** *Saunder's lawyer made a brief statement to the press outside the court.* | **bald, blunt, flat** *His bald statement that he'd resigned concealed his anxiety about the situation.* | **comprehensive, definitive, detailed, full** | **explicit** *An explicit statement of objectives is vital before the project begins.* | **clear, simple** | **bold, firm, positive, strong** | **explanatory** | **false, inaccurate, misleading** | **sweeping** *She made one of her sweeping statements about foreigners.* | **joint** *The two heads of state issued a joint statement.* | **formal, government, official, public** | **political** *They decided to make a political statement by refusing to vote.* | **oral, signed, sworn, written**

• VERB + STATEMENT **issue, put out, release** | **give, make** *He admitted giving a false statement to the police.* | **take** *The police will take a statement from each of you.* | **withdraw** | **deny**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *In a statement released today, the Department of Health said ...* | **~ about** *The clothes you wear are a statement about yourself.* **~ on** *a statement on human rights* **~ to** *He's trying to withdraw the statement he made to Parliament last week.*

statesman *noun*

• ADJ. **great, leading** | **elder, senior** *Political power resided with the nation's elder statesman and party leader.* | **international, world** *his reputation as a world statesman*

static *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain, stay**

• ADV. **very** | **completely, totally** | **far from** | **almost, largely, more or less, virtually** *The population remained more or less static.* | **essentially** | **fairly, rather, relatively, somewhat** *The economy is fairly static at the moment.*

station *noun*

1 where trains stop

• ADJ. **next** *We get off at the next station.* | **railway, train** | **metro, subway, tube, underground**

• VERB + STATION **get to, go to** *We got to the station just as the train was pulling out.* | **leave** | **arrive at** *The train arrived at Oxford Station twenty minutes late.*

• STATION + NOUN **platform**

• PREP. **at a/the ~** *He got off at the same station.* **in a/the ~** *There's a newspaper kiosk in the station.*

2 where buses/coaches begin and end journeys

• ADJ. **bus, coach**

• VERB + STATION **leave** *The coach leaves the station at 0900 hours.* | **arrive at**

• PREP. **at a/the ~** *We waited for him at the coach station.*

3 radio/television company

• ADJ. **radio, television/TV** | **foreign, local** | **cable, satellite** | **commercial**

• VERB + STATION **get, pick up, tune (in) to** *I can pick up a lot of foreign stations on this radio.* | **listen to**

stationery *noun*

• ADJ. **business, hotel, office, wedding** | **quality**

• STATIONERY + NOUN **shop, supplier** | **cupboard**

statistics *noun*

• ADJ. **annual, monthly** | **latest** | **reliable** | **vital** | **bald, raw** *The bald statistics tell us nothing about the underlying trends.* | **government, national, official, police** | **accident, crime, criminal, economic, health, population, transport, unemployment, etc.**

• VERB + STATISTICS **prepare, produce** | **keep** *We no longer keep statistics on former employees.* | **release**

• STATISTICS + VERB **indicate sth, prove sth, reveal sth, show sth, tell sb sth** | **suggest sth**

• STATISTICS + NOUN **office**

• PREP. **according to ~** *According to official statistics, the island had 37 inhabitants.* | **~ on** *The government has released new statistics on the cost of living.*

⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for more verbs and nouns)

statue *noun*

• ADJ. **colossal, enormous, huge, large** | **small** | **life-size** | **equestrian** | **bronze, marble, etc.**

• VERB + STATUE **erect, put up** | **unveil**

• STATUE + VERB **be, stand** *The statue stands in one of the main squares.*

• PREP. **~ of** *a statue of the Virgin* **~ to** *the unveiling of a statue to Lord Brown*

stature *noun*

1 height

• ADJ. **great, imposing** | **diminutive, short, slight,**

small | full *The statue shows King Richard in full stature beside his horse.* **| physical**

• VERB + STATURE **have | lack** *The president lacks physical stature.*

• PREP. **of …** ~ *He was a man of great stature who carried himself well.*

• PHRASES **a lack of stature** *Despite his lack of stature, he became a successful footballer.* **small in stature** *Both her parents are fairly small in stature.*

2 importance

• ADJ. **considerable, great, growing | full | public | international, world | political**

• VERB + STATURE **gain in, grow in, rise in** *She has grown in stature since winning the Tchaikovsky Piano Competition.* **| achieve** *Geomorphology has now achieved full stature as a branch of geology.* **| enhance** *The election result enhanced the party's stature.* **| diminish | rise to …** *Her reputation has risen to world stature.*

• STATURE + VERB **grow, increase, rise** *His political stature increased during the crisis.*

• PREP. **of** ~ *a writer of international stature*

status *noun*

• ADJ. **great, high, superior | inferior, low, lowly** *low-status jobs* **| relative** *The relative status of the speakers affects what language is used.* **| equal | current | full** *The college has now achieved full status as part of the university.* **| privileged, special | economic, educational, employment, financial, occupational, professional, social, socio-economic** *a payment made to every individual irrespective of employment status* **| marital | legal** *They argued that the email had no signature and therefore no legal status.* **| independent** *A referendum produced a massive majority in favour of fully independent status for the region.* **| amateur | charitable** *The organization has charitable status.* **| diplomatic | immigrant, refugee, resident | international | celebrity** *He achieved celebrity status through his role in a popular sitcom.* **| classic, cult, legendary** *a car from the 50s that has acquired cult status*

• VERB + STATUS **enjoy, have** *The teaching profession has a low status in England.* ◇ *This sort of bike has status among teenagers.* **| achieve, acquire** *Marrying a rich woman helped him achieve status.* **| bring sb, give sb** *Owning the yacht has given them status.* **| accord, attach, give** *High social status is attached to the legal profession.* **| recognize | befit** *At last James had an office that befitted his status.* **| rise in** *The neighbourhood has risen in status in recent years.* **| improve, raise** *They are campaigning to raise the status of nurses.* **| lower | change | maintain | lose** *Churches seem to have lost some of their status.* **| apply for** *She applied for resident status but was turned down.* **| acquire, get** *They have acquired refugee status.* **| grant sb | deny sb, refuse sb** *Women are still denied equal status in the company.*

• STATUS + NOUN **symbol** *Scars are status symbols among mountain bike riders.*

• PREP. ~ **as** *China's status as an economic superpower* ~ **among** *The company has managed to maintain its status among retailers.*

• PHRASES **change in status** *the change in status of teachers*

status quo *noun*

• VERB + STATUS QUO **defend, keep, maintain, preserve** *There are many people who wish to maintain the status quo.* **| threaten, upset | change | restore**

• PHRASES **a return to the status quo** *They wanted a return to the status quo before the war.*

statute *noun*

• ADJ. **legal | federal, parliamentary | criminal**

• VERB + STATUTE **pass | comply with**

• STATUTE + NOUN **law** *the obligations of the employer in common and statute law* **| book** *This archaic law remained on the statute books until last year.*

• PREP. **by** ~ *Local authorities are required by statute to provide care homes for the elderly.* **under (a/the)** ~ *a trading company formed under statute*

stay *noun*

• ADJ. **lengthy, long, prolonged | brief, overnight, short, temporary | indefinite | 3-week, 3-weeks', week-long, etc. | comfortable, enjoyable, pleasant | hospital** *In recent years the average hospital stay for elderly patients has decreased.*

• VERB + STAY **enjoy** *Did you enjoy your stay in Prague?* **| shorten | extend, prolong** *She has extended her stay by three days.*

• PREP. **during a/the** ~ *We did a lot of walking during our stay.* **throughout a/the** ~ *It poured with rain throughout their stay.*

• PHRASES **the duration/length of (your) stay**

stay *verb*

• ADV. **behind, on** *Alex stayed behind when the others had gone.* ◇ *She failed her exam, and had to stay on at school for another year.* **| on** *My hat won't stay on!* **| (at) home, indoors** *financial incentives for women to stay at home with their children* **| away | here, there | late** *I'm staying late at the office tonight.* **| overnight | indefinitely** *We can't stay here indefinitely.*

• VERB + STAY **can/can't, could/couldn't** *I just couldn't stay away.* **| want to | decide to | be going to, intend to | let sb** *Won't you let me stay?* **| ask sb to, beg sb to, plead with sb to | persuade sb to**

• PREP. **for** *We ended up staying for lunch.* **till/until** *I'm going to stay until tomorrow.* **with** *'Stay with me,' he pleaded.*

steady *adj.*

1 not moving or shaking

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become | remain | hold sb/sth, keep sb/sth** *Hold the ladder steady!*

• ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, perfectly, quite, rock** *His gaze was rock steady.* **| not quite** *She opened the letter with hands that were not quite steady.* **| almost**

2 developing/happening at a regular rate

• VERBS **be, seem | become | hold, remain** *Share prices have held steady over the last few days.*

• ADV. **remarkably, very | fairly, relatively**

steak *noun*

• ADJ. **juicy, tender | tough | medium, medium-rare, rare, well done** *I like my steak rare.* **| chuck, fillet, loin, rump, sirloin, T-bone** *a lightly-grilled fillet steak* **| braising, stewing | beef | gammon, salmon, etc.**

• VERB + STEAK **eat, have | cook, fry, grill, stew**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

steam *noun*

• ADJ. **hot, scalding | high-pressure**

• QUANT. **cloud, jet** *The saucepan on the cooker puffed little jets of steam.*

• VERB + STEAM **emit, generate, produce**

• STEAM + VERB **come, escape | rise** *Steam rose from her mug of cocoa.* **| condense | drive sth** *The engine is driven by steam.* **| hiss**

• STEAM + NOUN **power | engine, locomotive, ship, train, turbine | age**

• PHRASES **the age of steam** *Savour the sights and smells of the age of steam in the National Railway Museum.*

steamer *noun*

- ADJ. **paddle | lake, river | pleasure | tramp**
- PREP. **by ~, on (board) a/the ~**

steel *noun*

- ADJ. **solid | forged, galvanized, mild, reinforced, rolled, stainless**
- VERB + STEEL **make, manufacture, produce | harden, temper**
- STEEL + NOUN **ingot, sheet | industry, manufacture, mill, plant, works**
- PREP. **in ~** *building in steel and aluminium*

steep *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get**
- ADV. **extremely, impossibly, incredibly, really, terribly, very** *an incredibly steep hill* **| increasingly | fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively | deceptively** *The terrain is often deceptively steep* (= steeper than you expect).

steering *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy, light | power/power-assisted**
- VERB + STEERING **have** *Does the car have power steering?*
- STEERING + NOUN **column, wheel**

steering wheel *noun*

- VERB + STEERING WHEEL **grip, hold | turn** *Turn the steering wheel hard to the right.* **| grab** *He grabbed the steering wheel from her to prevent the car going off the road.* **| lose control of**

stem *noun*

- ADJ. **long, tall | short | thick | slender, thin | flexible, strong | brittle, weak | iris, rose, etc.**
- VERB + STEM **break, cut (back/out), prune (back), shorten, trim** *When the bush has finished flowering, cut back all the stems.*
- STEM + VERB **break**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *There are several leaves on each stem.*
- PHRASES **the base of the stem** *Cut half an inch off the base of each stem.*

stench *noun*

- ADJ. **overpowering, powerful | unmistakable | appalling, foul, nauseating, sickening, terrible, unpleasant | acrid, fetid, putrid**
- STENCH + VERB **fill sth** *The air was filled with the overpowering stench of decomposing vegetation.*

step *noun*

1 in walking, running, etc.

- ADJ. **large, small | heavy, light | quick, slow | hesitant | involuntary** *I gasped and took an involuntary step backwards.* **| careful | unsteady**
- VERB + STEP **go, take** *He'd only gone a few steps, when he realized he'd left his wallet behind.* **| retrace** *You might find your ticket if you retrace your steps back to the car.*
- PREP. **~ (away) from** *She was only a step away from the cliff edge.* **~ towards** *He took a hesitant step towards her.*
- PHRASES **a spring in your step** *I had a spring in my step when I walked into that office for the last time.* **a step ahead/behind** *He lagged a few steps behind.* **a step back/backwards/forward/sideways, a step closer/nearer, with each/every step** *He grew fainter with every step.*

2 in dancing

- ADJ. **dance | jive, tango, etc.**
- VERB + STEP **execute, perform** *He executed some jive steps on the pavement.* **| learn | keep in** *She had trouble keeping in step.*
- PREP. **in ~, out of ~ (with)** *He was out of step with the music.*

3 action taken in order to achieve sth

- ADJ. **big, considerable, giant, huge, massive | small | critical, crucial, decisive, essential, great, important, key, major, vital | first, initial, preliminary | final, last | additional, further, next** *What's the next step?* **| logical, necessary, reasonable** *We shall take all necessary steps to prevent public disorder.* **| active | forward, positive | backward, retrograde** *The new law is seen by many as a backward step.* **| bold, brave, reckless | dramatic, drastic, extraordinary, rare, unprecedented, unusual | irreversible, irrevocable** *It suddenly struck her that having a baby was an irrevocable step.* **| careful, precautionary | faltering, tentative** *They have taken their first tentative steps towards democracy.* **| practical | welcome | immediate, urgent** *I shall take immediate steps to have this matter put right.* **| false** *One false step could mean disaster.*
- VERB + STEP **go, make, take | follow** *If you follow all the steps, nothing will go wrong.*
- PREP. **~ in** *The move was a first step in establishing a union.* **~ to/towards** *The talks mark a step towards peace.*
- PHRASES **bring sth/be/come/move a step closer/nearer (to sth)** *Greece moved a step closer to the World Cup finals with last night's win.* **a short step from/to sth** *It's only a short step from this disorder to complete chaos.* **a step back/backwards/forward** *The offer constitutes a considerable step forward.* **step by step** *a step-by-step guide to setting up an aquarium* **a step further** *If he goes one step further with this crazy idea, I'll resign.* **a step in the right direction** *The new speed limit does not solve the problem, but it is a step in the right direction.* **a step on the road/way to sth**

4 on stairs, a ladder, etc.

- ADJ. **bottom, top**
- VERB + STEP **mind** *Mind the step!*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *She paused on the top step.*
- PHRASES **a step down/up** *There are three steps down to the garden.*

5 steps set of steps

- ADJ. **front | back | outside**
- QUANT. **flight** *You have to go up four flights of steps to get up to the roof.*
- VERB + STEPS **ascend, climb, go/run, etc. up, mount** *She went up a flight of steps to the side entrance.* **| descend, go/run, etc. down**
- STEPS + VERB **lead to sth** *The front steps lead to an enormous terrace.*
- PREP. **~ (down/up) to** *the steps down to the pool*
- PHRASES **the bottom/foot/top of the steps**

step *verb*

- ADV. **briskly, quickly | hastily, smartly** *He stepped back smartly from the edge.* **| slowly | silently | delicately, lightly | carefully, gingerly** *He stepped gingerly over the cat.* **| boldly | aside, away, back, close, down, forward, inside, out, outside** *Would you like to step inside for a few minutes?*
- PREP. **across, from, in, in front of, into, on, onto, out of, over, past, through, towards** *Don't step in the puddle.*

stereotype *noun*

- ADJ. **common, popular, traditional, usual | negative | cultural, national, racial | gender, sexual | social**
- VERB + STEREOTYPE **create, produce | perpetuate, reinforce** *Jokes perpetuate various national stereotypes.* **| conform to, fit** *Not all areas of the country fit the stereotypes of the poor north and the rich south.* **| challenge, reject** *a writer who challenges sexual stereotypes*

- PREP. **~ about** *common stereotypes about the French* **~ of** *the stereotype of women as passive victims*

sterile *adj.*

1 completely clean
- VERBS **be | become | remain | make sth | keep sth** *This top fits over the bottle and keeps the teat sterile.*
- ADV. **completely | virtually**

2 not able to produce young animals/babies
- VERBS **be | become | remain | leave sb, make sb**
- ADV. **permanently** *Male workers were made permanently sterile by this pesticide.*

3 with no interest or life
- VERBS **be | become, grow** *Their relationship had grown sterile over the years.*
- ADV. **very | increasingly** *the increasingly sterile debate on constitutional reform* **| largely | rather, somewhat**

sterling *noun*

- PHRASES **pounds sterling** *50 pounds sterling*

⇨ Note at CURRENCY

steward, stewardess *noun*

- ADJ. **chief, senior | air, cabin, ship's | wine | shop** *She was an active trade unionist and had been elected a shop steward.*
- VERB + STEWARD, STEWARDESS **act as | elect (sb)**
- PREP. **~ to** *Moore was acting as steward to Sir Michael le Fleming.*

⇨ Note at JOB

stick *noun*

- ADJ. **big, long | little, short | thick, thin**
- QUANT. **bundle | pile**
- VERB + STICK **brandish, wave** *A mob came over the hill yelling and brandishing sticks.*

stick *verb*

- ADV. **just, simply** *He simply stuck a pin in at random amongst the names of candidates.*
- PREP. **in, into, on, onto, through** *He stuck the note through her letter box.*

PHRASAL VERB

stick to sth
- ADV. **close, closely | rigidly, slavishly, strictly** *sticking slavishly to the rules* **| doggedly, firmly, resolutely, stubbornly** *She simply made a decision and resolutely stuck to it.*
- VERB + STICK TO STH **tend to** *I tended to stick to tried and tested techniques.* **| decide to | be determined to**

sticky *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel | become, go**
- ADV. **horribly, really, very** *covered in a horribly sticky mess* **| all** *The rubber's gone all sticky.* **| a bit, rather, slightly** *The paint was still slightly sticky.*
- PREP. **with** *His hair was sticky with blood.*

stiff *adj.*

1 difficult to bend/move
- VERBS **be, feel, lie, look, sit, stand** *She lay stiff and still beside him.* **| become, get, go** *My trousers were getting stiff with mud.* ◇ *My fingers had gone stiff with cold.*
- ADV. **very | a bit, fairly, quite, rather**
- PREP. **with** *The clothes were stiff with dust and grease.*

2 having sore muscles
- VERBS **be, feel** *He felt stiff all over.* **| become, get, go** *You'll get stiff if you don't have a hot bath.* **| leave sb, make sb** *All that digging made me really stiff.*
- ADV. **really, very | all** *My arm's gone all stiff.* **| a bit, a little, rather**
- PREP. **from** *stiff from kneeling*

3 strong/severe
- VERBS **be, seem** *Their punishment seemed rather stiff.*
- ADV. **very** *in the face of some very stiff competition* **| a bit, fairly, quite, rather**

4 not friendly or relaxed
- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** *She was aware that her words sounded stiff.* **| become**
- ADV. **very | a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** *His manner seemed rather stiff and impersonal.*

stigma *noun*

- ADJ. **social**
- VERB + STIGMA **carry** *Being an unmarried mother used to carry a social stigma.* **| remove** *Wider knowledge of the disease removed some of the stigma from it.* **| suffer (from)** *He still suffered the stigma of having been rejected for the army.*
- STIGMA + VERB **be attached to sth, be associated with sth** *There is still a lot of stigma attached to suicide.*
- PREP. **~ to** *There is no stigma to being made redundant.*

still *adj.*

1 not moving
- VERBS **be, hold, keep, lie, sit, stand, stay** *Hold still a minute while I pin your dress up.* ◇ *For goodness' sake, sit still!* **| hold sb/sth, keep sb/sth** *I held the cat still while the vet gave the injection.*
- ADV. **very | absolutely, quite, stock-** *He stood stock-still, hardly daring to breathe.*

2 calm and quiet
- VERBS **be, look, seem | become, go** *Suddenly everything went still.* **| remain**
- ADV. **very | completely** *It was a completely still, warm evening.* **| strangely** *The air was strangely still and silent.*

stillness *noun*

- ADJ. **absolute, great, utter | sudden** *There was a sudden stillness in the air.* **| eerie | inner**
- VERB + STILLNESS **break** *A voice behind the hedge broke the stillness.*
- PREP. **in (the) ~** *He lay in absolute stillness.* ◇ *in the stillness of the night*

stimulate *verb*

- ADV. **greatly, significantly, strongly | further | effectively | directly** *An interest rate increase directly stimulates saving and reduces real expenditure.* **| intellectually** *activities designed to stimulate the children intellectually*
- VERB + STIMULATE **help (to) | be designed to, be intended to**

stimulating *adj.*

- VERBS **be, sound | find sb/sth**
- ADV. **extremely, really, very | intellectually, visually** *The programme contains some creative and visually stimulating material.*

stimulation *noun*

- ADJ. **direct | electrical** *electrical stimulation of nervous tissue* **| auditory, sensory, visual | sexual | intellectual, mental**
- VERB + STIMULATION **get** *You don't get any intellectual stimulation in this job.* **| give sb, provide (sb with)** *The playgroup provides plenty of stimulation for the children.* **| respond to**
- PHRASES **a lack of stimulation**

stimulus *noun*

- ADJ. **great, major, powerful, strong | negative, positive | external | initial | auditory, intellectual, sensory, verbal, visual**
- VERB + STIMULUS **act as, give, provide | react to, respond to**
- STIMULUS + VERB **come from sth** *The initial stimulus came from a letter in the newspaper.*
- PREP. **~for** *The very act of lying down in bed should provide a strong stimulus for sleep.* **~to** *A reduction in corporate tax should act as a stimulus to economic activity.*
- PHRASES **(in) response to a stimulus**

sting *noun*

1 of an insect, etc.
- ADJ. **dangerous, nasty, painful | bee, wasp, etc. | nettle, etc. | deadly, fatal**
- VERB + STING **have** *The scorpion has a sting that can be deadly.* | **get** *You can get a nasty sting from a jellyfish.* | **give sb | feel**

2 sharp pain
- ADJ. **hot, sharp** *the hot sting of tears*
- VERB + STING **feel** *He felt the sharp sting of the soap in his eyes.*

stink *noun*

1 very unpleasant smell
- ADJ. **acrid, overpowering**
- STINK + NOUN **bomb**
- PREP. **~of** *the acrid stink of cordite*

2 very strong complaint about sth
- ADJ. **tremendous**
- VERB + STINK **cause, kick up, make, raise** *The parents of the pupils say they'll kick up a stink if the school roof isn't repaired before the winter.*

stint *noun*

- ADJ. **long | brief**
- VERB + STINT **do** *He's doing a brief stint at the World Bank in Washington.* | **start | finish**
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *She met her husband during her stint at the London office.*

stipulation *noun*

- VERB + STIPULATION **make** *The only stipulation the building society makes is that house must be insured.* | **drop**
- PREP. **with the ~** *He left all his money to the town with the stipulation that it should be used to build a new football stadium.* | **~about/as to** *There's no stipulation as to the amount you can invest.*

stir *noun*

1 action of stirring
- ADJ. **good**
- VERB + STIR **give sth** *Give the mixture a good stir.*

2 general excitement or shock
- ADJ. **considerable, great, real**
- VERB + STIR **cause, create**
- PREP. **~about/over** *There was quite a stir about the book.* | **~among/amongst** *The discovery caused something of a stir among physicists.*
- PHRASES **quite a/something of a stir**

stir *verb*

1 move a liquid round and round
- ADV. **thoroughly, well | carefully, gently | vigorously | gradually | all the time, constantly, continuously** *Bring to the boil, stirring all the time.* | **occasionally | in** *Gradually stir in the beaten egg.*
- PREP. **into** *Chop an onion and stir it into the sauce.*

2 move
- ADV. **barely, hardly** *The wind came in tiny puffs that hardly stirred the surface of the water.* | **slightly | suddenly | restlessly** *The students stirred restlessly in their seats.* | **sleepily | uneasily**
- PHRASES **stir in your sleep**

3 make sb feel an emotion
- ADV. **deeply, greatly** *It was not music to set hearts on fire or deeply stir the emotions.* | **up** *Going back there stirred up a lot of memories for her.*

stirrup *noun*

- VERB + STIRRUP **adjust | rise in, stand (up) in** *She stood up in her stirrups to see where the others had gone.*
- STIRRUP + NOUN **leather** *She had to lengthen her stirrup leathers.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He put his feet in the stirrups.*

stitch *noun*

1 in sewing
- ADJ. **blanket, chain, cross, running, seam, tacking, zigzag, etc.**
- VERB + STITCH **do, put, sew (sth) with** *Can you do chain stitch?* ◇ *Put a stitch in the corner of the pocket to keep it in place.* ◇ *The edge was sewn with blanket stitch.* | **remove, take out**

2 in knitting
- ADJ. **knitted | cable, garter, plain, purl, slip, stocking, tuck, etc.**
- VERB + STITCH **knit | cast on, cast off | drop, pick up**

3 in a wound
- ADJ. **dissolvable, dissolving, self-dissolving**
- VERB + STITCH **have** *I had to have five stitches when I cut my finger.* | **insert, put in | remove, take out | have out** *When are you having your stitches out?*
- STITCH + VERB **dissolve**
- PREP. **~in** *He had twenty stitches in a head wound.*

stock *noun*

1 available supply of sth
- ADJ. **good, high, huge, large | low | adequate | declining, dwindling, falling** *dwindling fish stocks in the North Sea* | **surplus | buffer, reserve** *A buffer stock of grain was held in case of emergency shortages.* | **fresh, new | old | existing | fish, food, etc. | housing** *The housing stock is no longer large enough for the population.* | **capital, money | library**
- VERB + STOCK **carry, have, hold, keep** *The big supermarkets carry huge stocks of most goods.* | **add to, increase | dispose of, get rid of, reduce, sell off** *They're selling off their old stock cheap.* | **maintain, protect** *laws to protect fish stocks* | **replace, replenish**
- STOCK + VERB **be/go up, increase | be/go down, decline, dwindle, fall, run low** *Stocks of coal are running dangerously low.* | **last** *The offer is only available while stocks last.*
- STOCK + NOUN **cupboard, room** (also **stockroom**) | **levels | control**
- PREP. **from ~** *We can supply the table from stock.* **in ~** *Have you got futon beds in stock or will I have to order one?* **out of ~** *Red tights are out of stock.*

2 share in the capital of a company
- ADJ. **blue-chip, gilt-edged, index-linked**
- VERB + STOCK **acquire, buy, invest in, purchase | cash in, dispose of, sell | deal in, trade | have, hold, own | issue | value** *The stocks were valued at £100 000.*

- STOCK + VERB **be down/up | fall, go down, plummet, sink | go up, rise, soar**
- STOCK + NOUN **exchange, market | index**
- PREP. **in ~s** *She's got about £30 000 in stocks.*
- PHRASES **investment in stocks, the value of the stocks** *The total value of the stocks was over £3 million.*

3 liquid for making soups, sauces, etc.

- ADJ. **chicken, fish, vegetable, etc.**
- VERB + STOCK **make | thicken | dilute, reduce | flavour** *Flavour the stock with bay leaves.*
- STOCK + NOUN **cube**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Poach the fish in the stock.*

stock *verb* be stocked

- ADV. **plentifully, well | fully, properly**
- PREP. **with** *shops stocked with cheap souvenirs*

stockbroker *noun*

- ADJ. **large | leading | private client | City**
- VERB + STOCKBROKER **consult**
- PREP. **through a ~** *The bonds were sold through a stockbroker.*
- PHRASES **a firm of stockbrokers**

⇨ Note at JOB

stock exchange *noun*

- VERB + STOCK EXCHANGE **open | close** *Bahrain's stock exchange closed up 10.09 points today at 2160.09.*
- STOCK EXCHANGE + VERB **rally, rise** *The stock exchange rallied in response to the announcement of massive American investment.* **| fall**
- STOCK EXCHANGE + NOUN **collapse, crash**
- PREP. **on the ~** *to lose money on the stock exchange*

stocking *noun*

- ADJ. **fishnet, sheer | 15-denier, etc. | laddered | Christmas** *trinkets you can use to fill a Christmas stocking*
- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + STOCKING **pull on | peel off** *She slowly peeled off one stocking.* **| ladder** *She laddered her stocking on a bramble bush.*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

stomach *noun*

1 part of the body where food is digested

- ADJ. **empty, full** *You shouldn't drink wine on an empty stomach* (= without eating food). **| queasy, upset** *She's been off work with an upset stomach.* **| strong** *You need a strong stomach to go on the giant roller coaster.* **| weak**
- VERB + STOMACH **turn** *The smell of the dead dog turned his stomach.* **| settle** *He had a hangover, so he ordered a sandwich to settle his stomach.* **| settle in** *A feeling of nausea settled in her stomach.* **| pump** *He had his stomach pumped after taking an overdose.*
- STOMACH + VERB **churn, heave, lurch** *My stomach lurched as another big wave hit the boat.* **| rumble | tighten, turn (over), twist**
- STOMACH + NOUN **ache, bug, cancer, complaint, cramp, disorder, illness, pain, problem, ulcer, upset | lining, wall | acids, juices | contents** *Human remains were found among the stomach contents of the shark.* **| pump, tube**
- PREP. **in the/your ~** *enzymes in the stomach*
- PHRASES **butterflies in your stomach** *I had butterflies in my stomach as I went to get my exam results.* **the pit of your stomach** *I felt a sickening feeling in the pit of my stomach when I saw the ambulance.*

2 front part of the body below the chest

- ADJ. **firm, flat | bulging, fat, flabby, large, stout | bloated, swollen | bare**
- VERB + STOMACH **hold in, pull in, suck in** *He sucked in his stomach as he walked past the girls.* **| lie on | clutch, hold** *'Call a doctor!' he said, clutching his stomach.* **| pat, rub** *'I'm eating for two now,' she said, patting her stomach.*
- STOMACH + VERB **protrude, stick out**
- STOMACH + NOUN **muscles | injury, strain, wound**
- PREP. **on the/your ~** *I lay on my stomach on the beach.*

stone *noun*

1 hard solid substance

- ADJ. **heavy | hard, soft | rough, smooth | weathered | carved** *a carved stone fireplace* **| building**
- QUANT. **block, slab**
- VERB + STONE **break, cut, hew (sth from/out of)** *Convicts were made to break stone for the roads.* ◇ *The stone is cut into blocks ready for building.* ◇ *The walls were hewn from local stone.* **| dress | be built/carved/made from/in/(out) of, carve sth in** *names carved in stone*
- STONE + NOUN **block, flag, slab** *The path's stone flags were worn and broken.* **| arch/archway, bridge, building, floor, pillar, stairs, structure, wall, etc. | monument, sculpture | age**
- PREP. **in ~** *He is a sculptor who works mainly in stone.*

2 small piece of rock

- ADJ. **sharp | smooth | round | loose** *Some loose stones tumbled down the slope behind her.* **| foundation, memorial, paving, stepping | grinding**
- QUANT. **heap, pile**
- VERB + STONE **hurl, throw** *The boys were caught throwing stones at passing trains.*

3 precious stone

- ADJ. **gem** (also **gemstone**)**, precious, semi-precious**
- VERB + STONE **mine | cut | set** *She had the stone set in a ring.*
- STONE + VERB **glitter, shine**

4 measure of weight

⇨ Note at MEASURE

stool *noun*

- ADJ. **high, tall | three-legged | folding, fold-up | bar, kitchen, music, piano**
- VERB + STOOL **perch on/be perched on, sit (down) on** *He was perched on a bar stool, ordering a beer.* **| get off | drag up, pull up** *She pulled up a stool next to me.*

stop *noun*

1 stopping or staying

- ADJ. **long | brief, short | overnight | abrupt, sharp, sudden | emergency | scheduled, unscheduled | coffee, fuel, lunch, refreshment, refuelling, toilet, etc. | pit** *The cars made two pit stops during the race.*
- VERB + STOP **bring/draw sth to, put** *She brought the car to an abrupt stop.* ◇ *to put a stop to all the arguments* **| come to, draw to, slow to** *The truck came to a sudden stop.* **| screech to | have, make** *We had a lunch stop at Timperley.*
- STOP + NOUN **sign**
- PREP. **~ at** *There will be a stop at Canterbury.* **~ for** *a stop for refreshments*
- PHRASES **come to a dead/full stop** *Between twelve and two everything comes to a dead stop.*

2 for a bus, etc.

- ADJ. **bus, tram | request**
- VERB + STOP **get off at | miss** *We were chatting and missed our stop.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *We dropped the kids off at the bus stop.* **between ~s** *You're not allowed to get off between stops.*

stop *verb*

- ADV. **abruptly, dead, (dead) in your tracks, immediately, short, suddenly** *Suddenly he stopped dead: what was he doing?* ◇ *The question stopped Alice in her tracks.* | **altogether** *The sobs came less frequently, then stopped altogether.* | **for a moment, momentarily** | **never** *That phone never stops ringing!*
- VERB + STOP **can/can't, could/couldn't** *He couldn't stop thinking about her.* | **try to** | **be going to** *When is the violence going to stop?* | **want (sb/sth) to** *I was enjoying myself so much I didn't want to stop.*
- PREP. **from** *They tried to stop me from leaving.*

stopover *noun*

- ADJ. **brief**
- VERB + STOPOVER **have**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *We had our tickets checked at each stopover.* **during a/the ~** *During our two-day stopover in Bangkok we saw most of the sights.*

stoppage *noun*

- ADJ. **complete** | **work**
- VERB + STOPPAGE **call** *The stoppage was called to protest against wage cuts.* | **threaten** | **be involved in** | **end**
- PREP. **during a/the ~**

storage *noun*

- ADJ. **safe** *the safe storage of nuclear weapons* | **cold** | **disk** *the available disk storage capacity* | **food, water, etc.** | **data, information, etc.**
- VERB + STORAGE **put sth in/into** *The strawberries are put into cold storage for several months.* | **take sth out of**
- STORAGE + NOUN **facilities** | **device, medium, system** *digital storage devices* | **area, capacity, space** | **building, cabinet, compartment, cupboard, depot, room, shed, unit** *a handy storage compartment below the oven* | **bin, container, jar, tank, vessel** | **cost** | **life** *The cheese has a storage life of two months.*
- PREP. **in ~** *All their furniture is in storage until they come back from Africa.*

store *noun*

1 shop
- ADJ. **big, large, major** | **small** | **retail** | **department** | **self-service** | **high-street, local, village** | **chain** | **discount** | **convenience, corner, general** | **electrical, grocery, hardware, etc.**
- QUANT. **chain**
- STORE + VERB **sell sth**
- STORE + NOUN **chain** | **account, card** | **assistant, manager, owner** | **detective**
- PREP. **at/in a/the ~**

2 supply for future use
- ADJ. **considerable, good, great, inexhaustible, large, vast** | **small** | **food** | **fat** *your body's fat stores*
- VERB + STORE **have, keep** | **build up**
- STORE + NOUN **cupboard, room** (also **storeroom**)
- PREP. **~ of** *a vast store of knowledge*

3 place for keeping sth
- ADJ. **cold, cool, dry** *Beef and lamb are hung in a cold store for at least a week.* | **temporary** | **ammunition, equipment, grain, etc.**
- STORE + VERB **hold sth** *The grain store holds several thousand tonnes.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *You'll find a ladder in the equipment store.* | **~ for** *We're using the shed as a temporary store for all our stuff.*

store *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, properly, safely** *The paintings were carefully stored in crates dependent on their size.* | **conveniently, easily** *Butane can be conveniently stored as a liquid in a can.* | **electronically** *electronically stored information* | **separately** | **together** | **away, up**

storey *noun*

- ADJ. **lower** | **top, upper**
- VERB + STOREY **have** *The house has three storeys.* | **occupy** *The kitchen occupies the lower storey.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *I live on the top storey.*
- PHRASES **5/10, etc. storeys high** *The building is four storeys high.*

storm *noun*

1 period of bad weather
- ADJ. **bad, big, devastating, disastrous, ferocious, fierce, great, heavy, raging, severe, terrible, tremendous, violent** | **approaching, gathering, impending** *the dark clouds of an approaching storm* | **freak** | **autumn, summer, winter** | **tropical** | **monsoon** | **dust, electric/electrical, lightning, magnetic, rain, sand, snow, thunder** (also **thunderstorm**)
- VERB + STORM **be in for** *I think we're in for a storm* (= going to have one).
- STORM + VERB **hit sth, strike sth** *It was the worst storm to hit London this century.* | **rage** *The storm raged all night.* | **be brewing, be coming** *A storm had been brewing all day.* | **blow up, break, burst** *The storm broke while we were on the mountain.* | **abate, blow itself out, blow over, pass, subside** *The storm blew over after a couple of hours.* | **batter sth, buffet sth, lash sth, ravage sth, sweep sth** *a boat battered by the storm* ◇ *Winter storms swept the coasts.* | **last** *The storm lasted for three days.*
- STORM + NOUN **cloud** (*often figurative*) *In 1939 the storm clouds gathered over Europe.* | **damage, losses** *Insurance companies face hefty payouts for storm damage.*
- PREP. **during/in a/the ~**
- PHRASES **at the height of the storm, the calm/lull before the storm, the eye of the storm**

2 violent display of strong feeling
- ADJ. **approaching, coming, gathering** *a gathering storm of discontent* | **political**
- VERB + STORM **arouse, cause, create, provoke, raise, spark** | **face** | **ride out, weather** *The government is determined to ride out the political storm sparked by its new immigration policy.*
- STORM + VERB **blow up, break, burst, erupt** | **blow over, pass**
- PREP. **amid a/the ~** *The band toured Ireland amid a storm of controversy.* | **~ between, ~ of** *His comments created a storm of protest in the media.* **~ over** *A storm blew up between Britain and America over Venezuela.*

story *noun*

1 account of events/people, true or invented
- ADJ. **true** | **plausible** | **false, made-up** *She told the police a false story about being attacked.* | **apocryphal** | **cock-and-bull, tall** *No one would believe such a tall story.* | **official** *The official story was that the singer had broken his arm falling in the shower.* | **wild** | **convincing** | **charming, compelling, delightful, dramatic, exciting, fantastic, fascinating, good, great, interesting, intriguing, nice, wonderful** | **amazing, bizarre, colourful, crazy, extraordinary, incredible, outrageous, remarkable, strange** | **inspiring** | **amusing, entertaining, funny** | **epic** *the epic story of a family's escape from war* | **complex, elaborate** | **straightforward** | **awful, horrific, horrifying, nasty, shocking, terrible, tragic** | **sorry** *His life*

was a sorry story of betrayal and rejection. | **depressing, heart-rending, moving, poignant, sad** | **improbable** *The film tells the improbable story of a monkey that becomes a politician.* | **well known** | **familiar** *the familiar story of a star who turns to drink and drugs* | **popular** *There is one popular story in the village of a man-eating cat that lives in the forest.* | **life, success** *She told them her life story.* | **hard-luck, rags-to-riches** *He was boring people with more of his hard-luck stories.* ◇ *The film is the rags-to-riches story of a country girl who becomes a famous singer.* | **after-dinner** | **coherent** *The film lacks a coherent story.* | **full, whole** *I suspected he hadn't told us the whole story.* | **short** *a collection of short stories* | **children's** | **classic** | **bedtime** | **mythical, mythological** | **adventure, Bible, biblical, crime, detective, fairy, ghost, horror, love, private-eye, spy, suspense**

- QUANT. **fragment** *We had difficulty in piecing together the fragments of her story.* | **collection** *a collection of stories by modern writers*
- VERB + STORY **read (sb)** *My dad sometimes read me a story at bedtime.* | **write** | **narrate, recount, relate, tell (sb)** | **embellish, embroider** | **believe** *The police didn't believe her story.* | **stick to** *We must stick to our story about the accident.* | **change** *At first he denied everything, but then he changed his story and said it was an accident.* | **swap** *We swapped stories about our worst teachers.* | **circulate, spread**
- STORY + VERB **abound, circulate, get about, go around/round, spread** *Stories abound of vandalism and looting.* ◇ *A story was going round that the factory was in line for closure.* | **emerge** | **begin, open, start** *The story opens with a man hiding from the police under a woman's skirt.* | **progress, unfold** *The motives of the hero become clearer as the story unfolds.* | **end** | **be called sth, be entitled sth** | **be set in …** *The story is set in Poland in the 1930s.* | **be based on sth** | **concern sth, involve sth, revolve around sth** | **contain sth** | **illustrate sth** *This story illustrates the dangers of living on credit.*
- STORY + NOUN **teller** (also **storyteller**) | **telling** (also **storytelling**) | **line** (also **storyline**) *His novels always have the same basic storyline.*
- PREP. **~ about** *a story about time travel* **~ of** *the story of the Beatles*
- PHRASES **but that's another story** *Many years later I returned to Africa but that's another story* (= I am not going to talk about it now). **it's a long story** *'How come you've only got one shoe on?' 'It's a long story.'* **sb's half/side of the story** *The teacher punished me without listening to my side of the story.* **so the story goes, the story goes that …** (= used to describe what people are saying although it may not be correct) *She never saw him again—or so the story goes.* **the story of my life** *Out of work with no money—that's the story of my life.* **to cut a long story short** *Anyway, to cut a long story short* (= not to give all the details), *we had this argument and I haven't seen him since.* **a version of a story** *According to Rachel's version of the story, they threw the key in the river.*

2 report in a newspaper, etc.

- ADJ. **big, top** *The biggest story of the day was the signing of the peace agreement.* ◇ *And now back to our top story tonight …* | **exclusive** | **main** | **full** *Full story on page 3.* | **scare** *scare stories about the harmful effects of the vaccination* | **inside** *The magazine gives the inside story of life in a rock band.* | **sensational** | **lurid, sordid, spicy** *lurid stories of politicians' sexual adventures* | **cover, front-page, lead** *The magazine chose the peace process as its cover story.* | **news**
- VERB + STORY **file, write** *More than one correspondent filed a story about the incident.* | **carry, print, publish, run** *Every newspaper carried the story.*
- PREP. **~ about, ~ of** *the story of his arrest*

stow *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, neatly, safely** | **away**
- PREP. **in** *The luggage was now safely stowed away in the back of the truck.*

straight *adj.*

1 not bent or curved

- VERBS **be, look** | **become** | **stay** | **keep sth** *Keep your back absolutely straight.*
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, dead, perfectly** *Keep going in a dead straight line.* ◇ *His teeth were white and perfectly straight.* | **almost, more or less, nearly, practically** | **fairly, relatively**

2 level/upright

- VERBS **be, look** | **hang sth, put sth** *Can you hang that sign straight for me?*
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, perfectly, quite** | **almost, more or less, nearly**

3 tidy/in order

- VERBS **be** | **get sth, put sth** *I'm trying to get the house straight before the weekend.* ◇ *She tidied up and put the ornaments straight.*

4 honest and truthful

- VERBS **be** *I think he was pretty straight with me.*
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, totally** | **fairly, pretty**
- PREP. **with** *Are you being completely straight with her?*

5 clear/understood

- VERBS **be** | **get sth**
- ADV. **absolutely** *Let's get this absolutely straight.*

straightforward *adj.*

1 clear and simple

- VERBS **appear, be, look, prove, seem, sound** | **find sth** *I think you'll find it all quite straightforward.*
- ADV. **extremely, remarkably, very** | **absolutely, entirely, perfectly, quite** *Look, it's perfectly straightforward—just multiply everything by five.* | **by no means, far from, hardly, less than** *Getting funding for the project was far from straightforward.* | **comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively** | **apparently** | **deceptively** *The answer to this question is deceptively straightforward* (= more straightforward than it looks).

2 honest

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **very** | **quite** | **refreshingly** *a refreshingly straightforward attitude*
- PREP. **about, with** *He was quite straightforward with us about the difficulties involved.*

strain *noun*

1 severe demand on strength, resources, etc.

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, heavy, real, severe, terrible, tremendous** *It's a real strain having to get up so early!* | **slight** | **increasing** | **constant** | **excessive, intolerable, unbearable, undue** | **emotional, financial, mental, nervous, physical, psychological** *The mental strain of sharing an office with Alison was starting to tell.* | **breaking** *a fishing line with a 15lb breaking strain*
- VERB + STRAIN **be/come under, feel, suffer (from)** *Television newsreaders come under enormous strain.* ◇ *After weeks of overtime, she was starting to feel the strain.* | **cause, create, impose, place, put** *Increasing demand is placing undue strain on services.* | **ease, reduce** | **cope with, stand, take** | **increase**
- STRAIN + VERB **show, take its toll (on sb), tell (on sb)** *After six weeks of uncertainty, the strain was beginning to take its toll.*
- PREP. **under the ~** *The ice gave way under the strain.* ◇ *He broke under the strain of having to work twelve hours a*

day. | **~ on** *There's too much strain on the corner of the table.*

- PHRASES **a bit of a strain** *I found it a bit of a strain making conversation with her.* **signs of strain** *After three years, their marriage was beginning to show signs of strain.* **stresses and strains** *the stresses and strains of a long day* **take the strain off sb/out of sth** *The new scheme is designed to take the strain out of shopping.*

2 injury

- ADJ. **bad** | **slight** | **back, eye, muscle, thigh, etc.** (**eye strain** is only uncountable)
- VERB + STRAIN **have, be suffering from** | **get** *You'll get eye strain if you don't put the light on.* | **recover from, shake off** *Gerrard will play if he can shake off a slight thigh strain.*

strain *verb*

1 make a great effort to do sth

- ADV. **hard** *straining hard to understand* | **forward** *I strained forward to get a better view.*
- VERB + STRAIN **have to**
- PREP. **against** *The dogs were straining against the sledge.* **at** *Several men were straining at a rope, trying to move the stalled vehicle.* **for** *Their ears strained for any slight sound.*
- PHRASES **strain to hear/see sth** *We had to strain to hear what was being said.*

2 put a lot of pressure on sth

- ADV. **seriously, severely** *The dispute severely strained relations between the two countries.*

strained *adj.*

1 worried and tense

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound**
- ADV. **very** | **a bit, a little, rather** *She looked rather strained and miserable.*

2 not natural or friendly

- VERBS **be** | **become, grow** | **remain** *The atmosphere remained somewhat strained all evening.*
- ADV. **extremely, severely, very** *Relations between the two countries had become severely strained.* | **increasingly** | **a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat**

strait *noun*

1 narrow piece of water connecting seas, etc.

- ADJ. **narrow**
- VERB + STRAIT **go through, pass through** | **enter**
- STRAIT + VERB **separate sth** *The oil terminal is in the narrow strait that separates the island from the mainland.*
- PREP. **across the ~** *He tried to swim across the Straits of Gibraltar.* **in the ~** *a ship anchored in the Straits of Hormuz* **on the ~** *The town is on the straits between the Black Sea and the Mediterranean.* **through the ~** *Many hundreds of vessels pass through the straits each year.* | **~ between**

2 straits trouble

- ADJ. **desperate, dire, serious** | **financial**
- PREP. **in ~** *The business is in dire financial straits.*

strand *noun*

1 single thread, hair, etc.

- ADJ. **long** | **thick, thin** | **loose** | **single**
- VERB + STRAND **twist (together), weave (together)** *She wove the four coloured strands together into a ribbon.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a loose strand of hair*

2 one part of a story, idea, etc.

- ADJ. **important, main** | **different, distinct, separate, various** *At the end, all the different strands of the story are brought together.*
- VERB + STRAND **bring together, draw together, pull together, weave together** | **disentangle, unravel**
- STRAND + VERB **come together**
- PREP. **~ to** *There are three main strands to the policy.* **~ in/within** *There are various strands in feminist thinking.*
- PHRASES **strands of opinion/thought**

stranded *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become, end up, find yourself, get** *We ended up stranded in Paris with no money.* ◇ *Some people found themselves stranded in the lifts as the power failed yet again.* ◇ *We got stranded in the city centre after we missed the last bus home.* | **leave sb** *Thousands of air travellers were left stranded by the strike.*

strange *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste** | **consider sth, find sth, regard sth as, think sth** *His behaviour was regarded as very strange.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, very** | **a bit, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, rather, somewhat** *He's quite nice, but a bit strange.*
- PREP. **to** *Their accent was strange to her ears.*

stranger *noun*

- ADJ. **complete, perfect, total** | **virtual** | **passing**
- PREP. **~ to** *He was a complete stranger to me.* ◇ *She was a stranger to the place*
- PHRASES **almost a stranger** *His years abroad had made him almost a stranger with his family.* **a stranger here** *You're a stranger here, aren't you?* **a stranger in/to these parts** *A stranger to these parts would be confused by some of the local customs.*

strangle *verb*

- ADV. **almost, half, nearly**
- VERB + STRANGLE **try to**
- PREP. **with** *He was strangled with a scarf.*
- PHRASES **be found strangled**

strap *noun*

- ADJ. **broad, wide** | **narrow** | **tight** | **loose** | **adjustable, detachable** *The bag comes with detachable straps.* | **elastic, elasticated, padded** | **carrying, safety** *a portable radio with a carrying strap* | **ankle, chest, shoulder, waist, wrist, etc.** | **bra, watch, etc.**
- VERB + STRAP **buckle (up), do up, fasten** | **unbuckle, undo, unfasten** | **tighten** | **loosen** | **adjust** | **attach, clip on, fit** *He clipped on his safety strap.* ◇ *The camera was fitted with a strap.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *His binoculars were on a strap round his neck.* | **~ across, ~ around/round, etc.** *She had a wide leather strap around her wrist.*

strap *verb*

- ADV. **safely** | **firmly, tightly** | **down, in, on** *He strapped his gun belt on.*
- PREP. **into** *Make sure that the child is strapped tightly into the buggy.* **to**

strategy *noun*

- ADJ. **effective, good, successful** | **bad, poor** | **clear, coherent** | **viable** | **future** | **long-term, medium-term, short-term** | **basic, broad, general, overall** *Their overall strategy is quite good, but one or two of the details could be improved.* | **comprehensive** | **global** *a global marketing strategy* | **grand** | **draft** | **dual, two-pronged** *The government has employed a dual strategy to achieve these two objectives.* | **radical** | **high-risk, risky** | **defensive** | **prevention** | **economics-based, market-oriented, etc.** *a* *customer-oriented business strategy* | **anti-inflationary, anti-racist, etc.** | **survival** | **defence, military** | **campaign, election, electoral, government, political** | **pedagogic, teaching** | **learning** | **business, commercial, company, corporate, financial, investment, management/managerial, marketing, product, promotional, recruitment, research, sales** | **economic, energy, environmental, industrial, legislative, etc.**

- VERB + STRATEGY **have** | **design, develop, devise, draw up, formulate, map out, plan, work out** *A coherent strategy for getting more people back to work needs to be developed.* ◇ *The council is drawing up a strategy to meet the needs of the homeless.* | **explore** *It is certainly a strategy worth exploring.* | **adopt, decide (on), employ, follow, implement, pursue, use** *They're pursuing a strategy of massive retaliation.* | **outline, propose, set out, unveil** *The document sets out the government's new strategy.* | **change, revise** | **focus** *The company will now focus its strategy on its core business areas.* | **abandon**
- STRATEGY + VERB **be based on sth** | **be aimed at sth, be designed to** *a strategy aimed at reducing the risk of accidents* | **consist of sth, involve sth** | **work** *The company's financial strategy is not working.* | **fail**
- STRATEGY + NOUN **development, formulation** | **review** | **document, paper**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *the key idea in their strategy* | **~ for** *to develop an effective strategy for change* **~ on** *the party's strategy on poverty* **~ towards** *a comprehensive strategy towards regional development*
- PHRASES **a change in strategy** *The coming year may herald a change in strategy for major publishers.* **the adoption/development/formulation of a strategy** *The money will go towards the development of new product and sales strategies.* **the implementation/pursuit of a strategy** *Their single-minded pursuit of this controversial strategy led to their fall from power.* **part of a strategy** *He pretended that resigning was part of his long-term career strategy.*

straw *noun*

- ADJ. **fresh**
- QUANT. **bale** *I sat on a bale of straw near the fire.*
- PREP. **in (the) ~** *The rat hid in the straw.* **on (the) ~** *The animals sleep on straw.*

strawberry *noun*

- QUANT. **punnet** *I bought a punnet of strawberries.*
- STRAWBERRY + NOUN **bed, plant**

⇨ Special page at FRUIT

stray *verb*

- ADV. **far** *The animals hadn't strayed too far.* | **accidentally, involuntarily** *Her eyes strayed involuntarily.*
- VERB + STRAY **allow sth to** *new penalties for owners who allow their dogs to stray*
- PREP. **from** *Be careful not to stray from the path.* **into, off, to** *His eyes strayed to the telephone.* ◇ *(figurative) Her thoughts strayed to the journey ahead of her.*

streak *noun*

1 thin line

- ADJ. **dark** *There were dark streaks down her cheeks where she had been crying.* | **faint, pale**
- PREP. **~ of** *The last streaks of light faded from the sky.*
- PHRASES **a streak of lightning** *A streak of lightning forked across the sky.* **a streak of red, white, etc.** *She had a few streaks of grey in her black hair.*

2 aspect of sb's character

- ADJ. **strong** | **hidden** | **adventurous, competitive, independent, mean, puritanical, rebellious, ruthless, selfish, stubborn, vicious**
- VERB + STREAK **have** *Most of the players have a strong competitive streak.* | **reveal, show** *She suddenly revealed a mean streak in her character.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *Holidays in the Australian outback are for those with an adventurous streak.* | **~ of** *There was a streak of insanity in the family.*

3 period of good/bad luck

- ADJ. **winning** | **losing**
- VERB + STREAK **be on** *The team has been on a winning streak since it won against Lazio.*

stream *noun*

1 small river

- ADJ. **little, small** | **shallow** | **clear** | **fast-flowing** | **bubbling** *We picnicked beside a bubbling stream.* | **mountain, underground**
- VERB + STREAM **cross**
- STREAM + VERB **flow, run** *The stream flows through a narrow valley.*
- STREAM + NOUN **bed**
- PREP. **across a/the ~, down a/the ~, in a/the ~** *There are small fish in the stream.* **on a/the ~** *a leaf floating on the stream* **up a/the ~**
- PHRASES **the side/edge of the stream**

2 continuous flow of a liquid/gas/light

- ADJ. **thin** | **air, gas**
- VERB + STREAM **let in**
- STREAM + VERB **flow** *A stream of blood flowed from the wound.*
- PREP. **~ of**

3 continuous flow of people/vehicles/things happening

- ADJ. **constant, continuous, endless, never-ending, steady** *a constant stream of letters* ◇ *Cars filed past in an endless stream.*
- VERB + STREAM **let loose/out**
- PREP. **~ of** *He let loose a stream of abuse.*

streamline *verb*

- ADV. **perfectly**
- PREP. **for** *Dolphins are perfectly streamlined for movement in the water.*

street *noun*

- ADJ. **broad, wide** | **narrow** | **bustling, busy, congested, crowded** | **pedestrianized, traffic-free** *Most local people support the idea of traffic-free streets.* | **deserted, desolate, empty, lonely, quiet** | **noisy** | **dark** | **bright, well-lit** | **dim, dimly-lit, gloomy** | **winding** | **steep** | **cobbled, paved** | **unpaved** | **clean** | **dusty, filthy, grubby** | **dangerous, mean, unsafe** *He grew up on the mean streets of one of the city's toughest areas.* | **leafy, tree-lined** | **one-way, two-way** | **dead-end** | **main, principal** | **back, side** *a rundown house in the back streets of London* ◇ *a bar in a side street off Oxford Street* | **city, village** | **right** | **wrong** *You've taken the wrong street.* | **shopping** *the town's main shopping street* | **residential, suburban, urban**
- VERB + STREET **go along/down/up, take, turn down/into/up** *Take the second street on the right after the bridge.* ◇ *We turned down a dead-end street by mistake.* | **cross** | **block, cordon off** | **patrol** *The police have been patrolling the streets in this area since the murder.* | **roam, throng, walk** *Gangs roamed the streets at night.* ◇ *Crowds thronged the streets.* | **clear** *Police were told to clear the streets of drug dealers before the Olympics.* | **widen**
- STREET + VERB **go, lead, run** | **bend, curve, turn** | **be lined with sth** *streets lined with cafes* | **be named sth, be named after sb/sth** *Mozart is remembered by a street named after him.*
- STREET + NOUN **corner** | **map, plan** | **layout, network, pattern** *the dense street pattern of the old town* |

name, number, sign *Most street names were changed under the new regime.* ◇ *The shops had no street numbers on.* | **lamp, light, lighting** | **parking** | **crime, gang** | **attack, battle, brawl, fight, fighting, robbery, violence** *He suffered extensive injuries in a street attack.* ◇ *street fighting between police and stone-throwing youths* | **demonstration, protest** | **party, procession** | **cleaner, sweeper** | **door** *There were photographers outside the street door so she used a back entrance.* | **market** | **entertainer, entertainment, musician, performer, theatre** | **pedlar, seller, trader, vendor** | **hustler** *Tourists need to be wary of street hustlers near the station.* | **cred/credibility, culture, fashion, life, wisdom** *His spell in prison gained him a lot of street cred.* ◇ *the street culture of working-class youth* | **collection** *The charity is having a street collection in aid of the local hospital.* | **children, kids, urchins** *a charity set up to house street children* | **girls** (= prostitutes) | **value** *drugs with a street value of £5 million*

• PREP. **across a/the ~** *He could see her across the street.* **along a/the ~** *They walked along the street.* **down a/the ~** *A band was playing a little way down the street.* **in a/the ~** *We live in Barker Street.* **(out) in a/the ~** *A couple were arguing out in the street.* **into a/the ~** *She stepped out into the street.* ◇ *He turned into a side street.* **off a/the ~** *a club just off William Street* ◇ *a scheme to keep teenagers off the streets* **(out) on the ~s** *Thousands of people were out on the streets for the protest.* **through the ~s** *He wandered through the streets of Calcutta.* **up a/the ~** *There's a chemist's just up the street.*

• PHRASES **at/above/below street level, the end/top of the street, the other side of the street, the street on the left/right**

strength *noun*

1 how strong sb/sth is

• ADJ. **enormous, great, immense** | **high** *The material has exceptionally high strength for its weight.* | **greater, superior** *His superior physical strength won him the title.* | **growing** | **continuing** *the continuing strength of the pound* | **relative** | **surprising, unexpected** | **superhuman, supernatural** | **brute** *He got the door open with brute strength.* | **extra** *They are reinforced with steel for extra strength.* | **collective** | **emotional, inner** | **muscle, muscular, physical** | **economic, electoral, financial, industrial, military** | **numerical** *the relative numerical strengths of men and women in the group* | **police, union, etc.** | **bargaining** | **wind** | **alcoholic**

• VERB + STRENGTH **have** *He had just enough strength to reach for the phone.* | **find, summon up** *I'm trying to summon up the strength to do some more work.* | **build up, gain, gather** *You need to try and build up your strength before the winter.* ◇ *The opinion that the president should stand down has gained considerable strength.* | **gain in, grow in, increase in** | **vary in** *These wines vary in strength between 11° and 15°.* | **lose** | **get back, recover, regain** | **give sb/sth, lend sb/sth** *Her love and support gave me strength.* ◇ *The metal reinforcement gives it the strength to resist the high winds.* | **sap** *The series of steep hills sapped the cyclists' strength.* | **conserve, save** | **draw (on), use** *She was able to draw on her immense inner strength.* | **put** *He put all his strength into reorganizing the department.* | **take** *It took all his strength to open the box.* | **test** *The Moroccan athlete ran a fast lap to test the strength of the other runners.* | **increase** | **reduce, undermine** *Her unwillingness to answer questions undermined the strength of her position.*

• STRENGTH + VERB **grow, increase** | **decline, ebb (away), fail, falter, wane** *The country's economic strength is declining.* ◇ *Her strength was ebbing fast, so her children were called to her bedside.*

• PREP. **below/under ~** *Injuries meant that the Dutch team was below strength for the final.* **with ~** *She pushed him away with unexpected strength.*

• PHRASES **at full strength** *The orchestra was at full strength for the Mahler symphony.* **be/get back to full strength** *I'm still not quite back to full strength after my illness.* **every ounce of strength** *She summoned up every ounce of strength she possessed.* **a feat of strength** *He used to entertain people with his feats of strength.* **a pillar/tower of strength** *He was a tower of strength to his sisters when their father died.* **a position of strength** *They are negotiating from a position of strength.* **reserves of strength** *When she had twins, she discovered reserves of strength that she didn't know she had.* **a show of strength** *50 000 troops massed on the border in the biggest show of strength to date.* **a source of strength** *Her childhood memories were a great source of strength when her mother was killed.* **strength born of desperation/fear/panic, etc.** *With strength born of pure panic, she threw her attacker to the ground.* **strength of character/purpose/will, strength of feeling, the strength of your position, a test/trial of strength** *Today's vote is being seen as a test of strength for the government.* ◇ *The dispute developed into a trial of strength between management and the union.* **with all your strength** *She threw the rope with all her strength.*

2 useful quality

• ADJ. **great** | **real**

• VERB + STRENGTH **exploit, play to** *The team may not have the best players, but it plays to its strengths.*

• STRENGTH + VERB **lie in sth** *Her great strength lies in her flexibility.*

• PHRASES **strengths and weaknesses**

strengthen *verb*

• ADV. **considerably, enormously, greatly, immeasurably, significantly, substantially** *The success in the election strengthened the party's position considerably.* | **further** *This merger will further strengthen the company and ensure its continued success.* | **merely** *This temporary setback merely strengthened her resolve.* | **gradually**

• VERB + STRENGTHEN **help (to), serve to** | **be designed to** *These exercises are designed to strengthen your stomach muscles.*

• PREP. **against** *The euro has strengthened against the dollar.*

• PHRASES **an attempt/effort to strengthen sth, be aimed at strengthening sth** *The new law is aimed at strengthening protective measures for workers.* **measures to strengthen sth**

stress *noun*

1 state of tension

• ADJ. **acute, considerable, extreme, great, high, severe** *Separation is a time of high emotional stress.* | **excessive** | **greater, increased** | **low** | **daily** *the daily stress of teaching* | **emotional, mental, psychological, social** | **economic, financial** *The high mortgage payments put them under severe financial stress.*

• QUANT. **level** *Many workers experience a high level of stress in their daily life.*

• VERB + STRESS **cause, create** *A divorce causes children great emotional stress.* | **avoid, remove** | **add to, increase** | **reduce, relieve** | **be under, experience, have, suffer (from)** *He's been under a lot of stress lately.* | **cope with, handle, manage, stand, take** *He's had to give up his job as leader of the project—he just couldn't take the stress.*

• STRESS + VERB **bring sth about/on** *an illness brought on by stress*

• STRESS + NOUN **level** *high stress levels* | **control, management** *Staff are encouraged to go on stress management courses.*

• PREP. **under ~** *He broke under stress and had to leave.*

• PHRASES **a source of stress** *An overcrowded workplace can be a major source of stress.* **a symptom of stress** *Tiredness is one of the most common symptoms of stress.*

2 emphasis that shows importance

- ADJ. **enormous, great | particular, special | equal | undue**
- VERB + STRESS **lay, place, put** *I must lay great stress on the need for secrecy.*
- PREP. **with the ~ on** *a study of child development, with the stress on acquisition of social skills* | **~ on** *There's been a lot of stress on getting drug sellers off the streets.*

3 emphasis on a word, syllable, etc.

- ADJ. **main, major, primary, strong | secondary, weak | sentence, word**
- VERB + STRESS **carry, have, take** *Italian words usually have the main stress on the penultimate syllable in the word.* ◇ *The first syllable takes the stress.* | **place, put | mark** *Mark the primary stress in each word.*
- STRESS + VERB **fall, go** *Where does the stress fall in 'psychological'?*
- STRESS + NOUN **mark | pattern**
- PREP. **~ on** *There's a stress on the second syllable.*

4 physical force

- ADJ. **enormous, high | low | constant | equal** *There is equal stress on all parts of the structure.*
- VERB + STRESS **exert, set up** *The tower exerts an enormous stress on the walls.* ◇ *The movements set up stresses in the earth's crust.* | **apply, put, subject sth to** *Stress is applied to the wood to make it bend.* ◇ *Standing all day puts stress on your feet.* ◇ *The buttresses are subjected to constant stress.* | **bear, take, withstand | increase, reduce | transfer, transmit | calculate** *Engineers calculated the stresses borne by each of the bridge supports.*
- PREP. **under ~** *Some woods warp under stress.*

stress *verb*

- ADV. **heavily, strongly** *He stressed the point very strongly that all these services cost money.* | **constantly, continually, repeatedly** *She has constantly stressed the government's poor record in this area.* | **rightly** *Doctors have rightly stressed the importance of exercise.*
- VERB + STRESS **can only, must** *I must stress that we still know very little about this disease.* | **tend to** *Private schools tend to stress the more academic subjects.* | **be anxious to, be at pains to, be careful to, be keen to** *She is at pains to stress the cultural differences between the two countries.* | **be important to**
- PHRASES **be worth stressing sth** *It is worth stressing that this was only a relatively small survey.*

stressful *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, sound | become, get** *My job's getting more and more stressful.* | **find sth** *I find these meetings rather stressful.*
- ADV. **extremely, highly, particularly, very | fairly, quite, rather | emotionally** *It was an emotionally stressful time for him.*

stretch *noun*

1 area of land or water

- ADJ. **great, huge, large, long, open, vast, wide** *A great stretch of ocean lay beneath them.* | **narrow, short, small | straight** *a straight stretch of road* | **continuous, unbroken | beautiful, lovely | deserted, empty, lonely** *an empty stretch of beach* | **fast | dangerous, hazardous | coastal** *a wild uninhabited coastal stretch*
- PREP. **along a/the ~** *There are tailbacks along a 10-mile stretch of the motorway.* **on a/the ~** *The festival is being held on a stretch of parkland near the river.* | **~ of**

2 stretching

- ADJ. **good | gentle**
- VERB + STRETCH **have** *Have a good stretch from time to time to prevent yourself getting stiff.*
- PHRASES **at full stretch** *Her arms were at full stretch.*

stretch *verb*

1 pull sth tight

- ADV. **taut/tautly, tight/tightly** *Make sure that the rope is stretched tight.* ◇ *Stretch the fabric tightly over the frame.*
- PREP. **across, between, over** *Striped awnings had been stretched across the courtyard.*

2 your body/part of the body

- ADV. **gently | lazily, luxuriously** *He stirred and stretched lazily.* | **full-length** *Andrea turned out the light and stretched full-length on the bed.* | **down, forwards, out, up, upwards** *She stretched up to reach the top shelf.*

3 cover a large area

- ADV. **far** *The wood does not stretch very far.* | **endlessly | ahead, away** *The road stretched ahead.*
- VERB + STRETCH **seem to** *The beach seemed to stretch endlessly.*
- PREP. **along, beyond, for** *The beach stretches for five miles.* **from, into, to** *an area which stretches from London to the north*

4 continue over a period of time

- ADV. **endlessly | back, out** *The town's history stretches back to before 1500.*
- PREP. **before** *Endless summer days stretched out before us.* **into** *The talks look set to stretch into a second week.*

5 your ability/intelligence

- ADV. **really | fully** *We can't take on any more work—we're fully stretched as it is.*
- PREP. **to** *This department is stretched to its limit.*

stride *noun*

1 step

- ADJ. **long, short** *In one short stride, he reached the window.* | **quick, rapid | slow | easy | purposeful**
- VERB + STRIDE **take | lengthen, shorten** *He lengthened his stride to keep up with her.* | **break** *Without breaking her stride she ducked the ball.* | **match** *He matched his stride to her slower pace.*
- PREP. **in a ~**

2 progress

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, giant, great**
- VERB + STRIDE **make** *She's made enormous strides in English this term.*
- PREP. **~s in**

stride *verb*

- ADV. **briskly, quickly | confidently | purposefully | angrily | ahead, away, back, forward, in, off, out, over, past** *He strode off in search of a taxi.*
- PREP. **across, along, away, down, into, out of, over, past, through, towards, up** *She strode purposefully towards the door.*
- PHRASES **come striding** *He came striding up the path.*

strife *noun*

- ADJ. **internal | ethnic, factional, internecine, sectarian | civil, industrial, political, religious, social | domestic, marital**
- VERB + STRIFE **cause, provoke | be torn (apart) by** *The country has been torn apart by years of civil strife.* | **end**
- PREP. **during/in the ~** *He lost his job during last year's industrial strife.* | **~ among/between** *internecine strife among the nationalities of the empire*
- PHRASES **an end to the strife, a time of strife**

strike *noun*

1 industrial protest

- ADJ. **long | short | indefinite | crippling, damaging, major | bitter | official | illegal, unofficial, unlawful | protest | token, warning | lightning, wildcat** *a series of* *lightning strikes in parts of the coal industry* | **all-out, general, mass, national, nationwide** *A general strike brought the country to a standstill.* | **hunger** | **sit-down** | **political** | **sympathy** *The suppression of the strike led to sympathy strikes in other industries.* | **pay, rent** | **dock, dockers', miners', postal, train, etc.**

- QUANT. **series, wave**
- VERB + STRIKE **be on** | **come out on, go on, join, take part in** | **call (sb out on), organize, stage** *The union leaders called a strike.* ◇ *He called all the workers out on strike.* | **avert, prevent** | **threaten** *More train strikes are threatened.* | **begin, start** | **call off, end** | **break (up), crush** *The army was used to help break the strike.* | **settle** | **ban** *The new government banned strikes.*
- STRIKE + VERB **occur, take place** | **start** | **end** | **last** | **spread** *The strike soon spread to other cities.* | **paralyse sth** *The strike paralysed the port.*
- STRIKE + NOUN **action** *Prison officers are threatening to take strike action.* | **ballot, call, threat** | **leader** | **breaker** | **committee, movement**
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *There was a continual police presence during the strike.* | **~ against** *a strike against the employment of non-union labour* **~ by** *a strike by tax collectors* **~ for** *a strike for a ten-hour day* **~ in protest at** *a strike in protest at the government's economic policies* **~ in support of** *Miners staged a one-day strike in support of the steel workers.* **~ over** *a strike over wages*
- PHRASES **days lost in/through strikes** *Unofficial action accounted for 40% of the days lost through strikes last year.*

2 sudden military attack

- ADJ. **air, military, nuclear** | **pre-emptive** | **retaliatory**
- VERB + STRIKE **carry out, launch, make**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The house was damaged in an air strike.* | **~ against/on** *The aircraft carried out a pre-emptive strike against bases in the north.*

strike *verb*

1 hit/attack sb/sth

- ADV. **firmly, hard** *He struck her hard across the face.* | **deep** *The German army struck deep into northern France.* | **directly** | **repeatedly** | **home** (*often figurative*) *The remark struck home.*
- VERB + STRIKE **be ready to, prepare to**
- PREP. **against** *The oar struck against something hard.* **at** *He struck at me repeatedly with a stick.* **into** *He struck the ball firmly into the back of the net.* **on** *The ball struck her on the head.*

2 come into your mind suddenly/give an impression

- ADV. **immediately** | **suddenly** *It suddenly struck me how we could improve the situation.* | **just** *An awful thought has just struck me.* | **forcibly** *Joan was struck quite forcibly by the silence.*
- PREP. **as** *He struck me as being rather stupid.*

3 go on strike

- VERB + STRIKE **threaten to** | **vote to**
- PREP. **against, for** *The union has voted to strike for a pay increase of six per cent.* **in protest at**
- PHRASES **the right to strike**

striking *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look** *That hat looks very striking.*
- ADV. **especially, extremely, particularly, very** | **quite** *She was tall and quite striking.* | **immediately** *What is immediately striking is how resourceful the children are.*
- PREP. **in** *The picture was striking in its simplicity.*

string *noun*

1 thin cord

- ADJ. **taut, tight** *He pulled the string tight.* | **loose** | **tangled** *He had hair like tangled yellow string.*
- QUANT. **bit, length, piece** *I cut a length of string to tie up the package.* | **ball**
- VERB + STRING **knot, tie, tie sth up with** *Tie the string round the parcel.* | **undo, untie** | **wind (up)** *He wound the string into a ball.* | **unwind** | **dangle (sth) on** *Next to the phone, there was a pencil dangling on a string.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *There's a knot in the string.*
- PHRASES **on the end of a string**

2 on a musical instrument

- ADJ. **tight** | **slack** | **open** | **stopped** | **guitar, violin, etc.** | **A, G, etc.**
- VERB + STRING **tighten, tune** | **loosen** | **pluck** | **change, replace** | **break**
- STRING + VERB **break** | **vibrate**
- STRING + NOUN **instrument**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *Play it on the G string.*

strip *noun*

- ADJ. **narrow, thin, tiny** | **thick, wide** *Cut the meat into thick strips.* | **coastal** | **landing** *This aircraft requires a good-sized landing strip.*
- PREP. **in ~s** *The wallpaper can then be torn off in strips.* | **~ of** *a narrow strip of leather*
- PHRASES **cut/tear sth into strips**

strip *verb*

1 take off your/sb's clothes

- PREP. **down to** *Office workers stripped down to their shirtsleeves in the heatwave.* **off** *He stripped off his shirt.* ◇ *We stripped off and went for a swim.*
- PHRASES **strip (sb) naked** *She was stripped naked and left in a cell.* **strip to the waist** *He stripped to the waist and began to dig.*

2 take sth away

- ADV. **completely** | **away, off, out** *Strip out any damaged wiring.*
- PREP. **from** *The bark is stripped from the trees by hand.* **of** *The president had been completely stripped of power.* **off** *We stripped the paint off the walls.*
- PHRASES **strip sth bare** *The room had been stripped bare by the thieves.*

stripe *noun*

- ADJ. **broad, wide** | **fine, narrow, thin** | **bold** | **subtle** | **distinctive** | **horizontal, vertical**
- STRIPE + VERB **run** *The butterfly is black and white with a blue stripe running down each wing.*
- PREP. **with ~s** *a white tablecloth with red stripes* | **~ across/down, etc.** *The toad has a distinctive yellow stripe down its back.*

strive *verb*

- ADV. **hard, mightily** *He strove very hard to remain calm.* | **desperately** *desperately striving for some sort of dignity* | **earnestly** | **always, constantly, continually**
- PREP. **after** *striving after artistic beauty* **against** *man striving against the elements* **for** *The school constantly strives for excellence in its teaching.* **towards** *companies that strive towards bigger profits*

stroke *noun*

1 of a brush, pen, etc.

- ADJ. **long, short** | **broad, thick** | **narrow, thin** | **bold, vigorous** *She caught his likeness with a few bold brush strokes.* | **even** | **quick, slow** | **downward, upward** | **brush, pen, pencil**
- PHRASES **with a stroke of the pen** *With a stroke of the pen our names were removed from the register.*

2 in sport

- ADJ. **fast, slow** | **powerful** *The Romanian rowers* *pulled ahead with fast, powerful strokes.* | **backhand, forehand** (in tennis, etc.)

- VERB + STROKE **play** *He played some powerful backhand strokes throughout the game.*
- PREP. **by a/two, etc. ~** (in golf) *Woods leads by two strokes.*
- PHRASES **a/two, etc. strokes ahead/behind** (in golf)

3 in swimming

- ADJ. **long, short** *He swam back with long slow strokes.* | **fast, slow** | **back** (also **backstroke**), **breast** (also **breaststroke**)
- VERB + STROKE **do, swim** *You can't swim more than four strokes before you reach the other side.*

4 sudden illness of the brain

- ADJ. **crippling, massive, serious** | **minor, slight** | **fatal**
- VERB + STROKE **have, suffer** *She had a massive stroke and lost her speech.*
- STROKE + VERB **leave sb …** *The stroke left him paralysed down his right side.*
- STROKE + NOUN **patient, victim**

⇨ Special page at ILLNESS

5 sth that happens unexpectedly

- ADJ. **sudden** *I had a sudden stroke of inspiration.*
- VERB + STROKE **have**
- PREP. **at a/one ~** *They lost half their fortune at a stroke.* | **~ of** *a stroke of genius*
- PHRASES **a stroke of (good/bad) luck, a stroke of (good) fortune**

> NOTE
>
> **Swimming strokes**
>
> a **fast, powerful, strong** crawl
> a **slow** breaststroke
> **do, swim (the) ~**
> *a swimmer doing the crawl*
> *I can't swim butterfly.*
> **strike out in/with** breaststroke/crawl
> *She struck out with a strong crawl towards the shore.*
> **a length of ~**
> *He did 15 lengths of backstroke every morning.*
> In competitions the categories are **backstroke, breaststroke, butterfly,** and **freestyle** (= in which competitors do crawl because it is fastest).
> **100 metres, 200 metres, etc. ~**
> **men's, women's ~**
> **compete in ~**
> *competing in the women's 100 metres freestyle*
> **in the ~**
> *He came first in the 200 metres backstroke.*

stroke *verb*

- ADV. **gently, lightly, softly, tenderly** | **thoughtfully** *He stroked his beard thoughtfully.* | **absently** *She stroked the cat absently.* | **away** *She gently stroked away his tears.*

stroll *noun*

- ADJ. **little, short** | **five-minute, etc.** *The shops are only a ten-minute stroll away.* | **casual, easy, gentle, leisurely** | **pleasant** | **moonlit, romantic** | **afternoon, evening, morning, etc.** | **after-lunch, post-prandial**
- VERB + STROLL **be/go out for, go for, take** *They took a leisurely stroll along the river bank.*
- PHRASES **a stroll around (sth)/away** *The beach is only a short stroll away.*

stroll *verb*

- ADV. **casually, leisurely, slowly** | **about, around, away, back, down** *They strolled down to the canal.*
- PREP. **across, along, around, down, into, out (of), past, through** *as he strolled leisurely through the streets*

strong *adj.*

1 physically powerful

- VERBS **be, feel, look** | **become, grow** | **make sb** *All that outdoor work has made him very strong.*
- ADV. **extremely, immensely, really, very** | **pretty, quite** | **enough** *Don't try to go back to work before you are physically strong enough.* | **physically**

2 not easily damaged

- VERBS **be, look**
- ADV. **extremely, really, very** | **fairly, pretty, quite** | **enough** *The box looks strong enough.*

3 powerful

- VERBS **be, look, prove, seem, smell, taste** | **become, get, grow** | **remain** | **make sth** | **keep sth** *This news helped keep the dollar relatively strong today.*
- ADV. **extremely, immensely, particularly, really, very** *He exerts an extremely strong influence on his classmates.* | **fairly, pretty, quite, rather** | **enough** *The party lacks a strong enough local base.*

structure *noun*

- ADJ. **basic, simple** | **complex, elaborate** | **coherent, logical** | **rigid, stable** | **flimsy** *The flimsy structure of the vehicle could not withstand even mild impacts.* | **formal** | **internal** | **solid, three-dimensional** | **anatomical, body, bone, skeletal/skeleton** | **atomic, cell/cellular, chemical, molecular** | **grammatical, language, linguistic, sentence, syntactic** | **administrative, bureaucratic, committee, control, corporate, hierarchical, institutional, management, organizational, power, etc.** | **economic, financial, political, social, etc.** *the social structure of the village* | **democratic, federal, etc.** | **class** | **family, household** | **pay, price, salary, tax, wage** | **career**
- VERB + STRUCTURE **have** | **lack** *The job lacked a basic career structure.* | **be based on** | **create, devise, establish** *to devise a new management structure* | **impose**
- STRUCTURE + VERB **be based on sth**
- PREP. **of a … ~** *The cell walls of plants are of a fairly rigid structure.* **… in ~** *The building is very simple in structure.* **in a/the ~** *There are weaknesses in the structure of the organization.* | **~ in/within** *the salary structure in the firm*
- PHRASES **a change in structure, a change in/to the structure** *significant changes in the power structure* **a lack of structure** *The novel suffers from a lack of structure.*

structure *verb*

- ADV. **beautifully, carefully, clearly, neatly, properly, well** *She had structured her arguments very carefully.* | **badly** | **loosely** *a very loosely structured organization* | **rigidly, tightly** | **hierarchically, logically**
- PREP. **according to** *the idea that living organisms had been structured according to a divine plan* **around** *The teaching is structured around three topics.* **into** *The company is structured into two divisions.*
- PHRASES **highly structured** *a complex but highly structured complaints procedure*

struggle *noun*

1 fight

- ADJ. **great, life-and-death, titanic** | **bitter, desperate, fierce, heroic, violent** *There were the sounds of a desperate struggle.* | **just** *The UN supported what it saw as the just struggle of an oppressed people.* | **unequal** | **armed** *The group supported the armed struggle against the dictator.* | **class, internecine** *Marx wrote about the class strug-*

gle. | **economic, ideological, leadership, political, power, revolutionary**

- VERB + STRUGGLE **begin, put up, take up** *If someone snatched your bag, would you put up a struggle?* ◇ *They took up the struggle against racism.* | **be engaged/locked in, carry on, wage** *species engaged in a life-or-death struggle with the ever-changing environment*
- STRUGGLE + VERB **ensue, take place** | **continue, go on** | **intensify**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *One of the security guards was hurt in the struggle.* **without a ~** *She won't give up without a struggle.* | **~ against** *the struggle against fascism* **~ between** *the struggle between good and evil* **~ for** *the long struggle for democracy* **~ over** *a struggle over the property* **~ with** *He was involved in a struggle with the police.*
- PHRASES **a sign of a struggle** *The police said that there was no sign of a struggle by the murder victim.* **years of struggle** *After 150 years of struggle against brutal colonial rule, the country won its independence.*

2 great effort

- ADJ. **desperate, great, hard, real, uphill** *It will be an uphill struggle to maintain exports at the current level.* | **long** | **ceaseless, constant, endless** | **unequal**
- VERB + STRUGGLE **face, have** *We had a real struggle to get everything into the suitcase.* | **give up** *I've given up the unequal struggle to keep my house tidy.*
- PHRASES **a bit of a struggle** *It was a bit of a struggle for me to get there so early.*

struggle *verb*

1 try very hard to do sth

- ADV. **desperately, hard, manfully, painfully, really, valiantly** *He struggled desperately to get to the shore.* ◇ *He struggled hard to keep the boat upright.* | **a little** | **constantly** | **on** *She struggled on despite the pain.*
- VERB + STRUGGLE **have to**
- PREP. **against** *The small boat struggled against the waves.* **along, down, for** *Shona struggled for breath.* **through** *The family struggled through the next few years.* **up** *They struggled up the hill.* **with** *I'm really struggling with this essay.*
- PHRASES **struggle to your feet** *She struggled to her feet and set off after him.*

2 have great difficulties

- ADV. **badly** *The team struggled badly last season.* | **financially** *I was unemployed and struggling financially.*

3 fight sb/try to get away from them

- ADV. **fiercely, furiously, violently** *She struggled furiously but could not get away.* | **together** *Ben and Jack struggled together on the grass.*
- PREP. **against** *struggling against her attacker* **with** *He was hit in the mouth as he struggled with the raiders.*
- PHRASES **struggle free** *The attacker's victim managed to struggle free.*

stuck *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become, get** | **remain** | **get sth** *She got the key stuck in the lock.*
- ADV. **firmly** | **completely, fast** *I couldn't budge the drawer—it was stuck fast.*
- PREP. **in, onto, to** *The tiles were stuck firmly to the wall.*

student *noun*

- ADJ. **brilliant, good** *one of the best students the college has ever had* | **college, school, university** | **full-time, part-time** | **first-year, second-year, etc.** | **graduate, postgraduate, research** | **doctoral, MA, etc.** | **mature** *He studied metallurgy as a mature student, having spent ten years working in a foundry.* | **overseas** | **engineering, history, law, medical, etc.**
- STUDENT + NOUN **nurse, teacher** | **numbers, population** *Student numbers at the college have increased by 25 per cent.* | **days** *She travelled a lot in her student days.* | **life** *thoroughly enjoying student life* | **grant, loan** *She had to take out a student loan to help her through college.* | **accommodation, dormitory** | **demonstration, protest, unrest** *taking part in a student demonstration*
- PREP. **as a ~** *She first went to London as a student.*

studio *noun*

- ADJ. **art, artist's, design, photographer's, photographic, photography, portrait** | **broadcasting, film, movie, radio, recording, sound, television/TV** | **rehearsal** | **dance**
- STUDIO + NOUN **recording** | **audience** *a studio audience for a new television sitcom* | **executive** *a studio executive for a major Hollywood studio*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The photograph was taken in a studio.*

study *noun*

1 learning

- ADJ. **full-time, part-time** | **graduate, postgraduate** | **independent, private** *This grammar book is suitable both for classroom use and for independent study.* | **academic** *The course integrates academic study and practical training.* | **language**
- QUANT. **course, programme**
- VERB + STUDY **take up** *Now that her children are all at school, she's going to take up full-time study again.*
- STUDY + NOUN **group** *A bible study group meets every Sunday at the church.* | **leave** *The company allows its staff to take paid study leave.* | **skills** *The first part of the course is designed to develop students' study skills.*
- PREP. **~ for** *full-time study for an MA*
- PHRASES **an area/a field of study** *Students do a foundation year before specializing in their chosen field of study.*

2 studies sb's learning activities

- ADJ. **further** *Many undertake further studies after passing their A levels.*
- VERB + STUDIES **undertake** | **continue, pursue** | **complete, finish** *When he has completed his studies, he'll travel round the world.* | **resume, return to** *She returned to her studies when her children reached school age.*

3 studies subjects

- ADJ. **business, management, religious, women's, etc.** *She's doing women's studies at Liverpool University.*
- VERB + STUDIES **do** | **lecture in, teach** *He lectures in management studies.*

4 piece of research

- ADJ. **new, present, recent** *The present study reveals an unacceptable level of air pollution in the city centre.* | **earlier, previous** | **careful, close, comprehensive, detailed, intensive, serious** *a close study of share prices* ◇ *She devoted herself to a serious study of the Koran.* | **major** | **definitive** | **initial, pilot, preliminary** *A preliminary study suggested that the product would be popular.* | **research** *Research studies carried out in Italy confirmed the theory.* | **empirical, experimental, systematic, theoretical** | **anthropological, historical, scientific, sociological** | **field** *This phenomenon has been observed in both laboratory and field studies.* | **feasibility** *The company undertook an extensive feasibility study before adopting the new system.* | **literary** | **case** *a detailed case study of nine companies* | **comparative** *a comparative study of the environmental costs of different energy sources*
- VERB + STUDY **commission, fund, support** *the recommendations of a study commissioned by the World Bank* | **carry out, conduct, do, make, undertake, work on** *He has made a special study of the way that birds communicate with one another.* | **publish**
- STUDY + VERB **take place** | **aim at/to, be aimed at sth, attempt to, be designed to, set out to** *The study set*

out to examine bias in television news coverage. | **be based on sth** *a study based on a sample of male white-collar workers* | **cover sth** *The ten-year study covered 13 000 people aged 15-25.* | **concern sth, deal with sth, examine sth, focus on sth, investigate sth, look at sth** | **compare sth** *The study compares the incidence of bone cancer in men and women.* | **conclude sth, demonstrate sth, find sth, indicate sth, report sth, reveal sth, say sth, show sth, suggest sth, warn sth** | **provide sth** *The study provided valuable insight into the development of the disease.* | **highlight sth, identify sth** *The study highlighted three problem areas.*

• STUDY + NOUN **group** *The study group was selected from a broad cross section of the population.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *In a recent study, 40% of schools were found to be understaffed.* **under ~** *the biochemical process under study* | **~ into** *a study into the viability of the mine* **~ on** *a definitive study on medieval weapons*

• PHRASES **an area/a field of study, the results/findings of a study, the subject of a study** *Shakespeare is the subject of a new study by Anthony Bryan.*

study *verb*

1 spend time learning about sth

• ADV. **hard**

• PREP. **for** *She is studying hard for her A levels.* **under/with** *He studied under Professor Sager.*

2 examine sth carefully

• ADV. **carefully, closely, in depth, in detail, intently, intensively** *She picked up the letter and studied it carefully.* ◇ *In the third year a number of areas are studied in detail.* | **extensively, widely** | **fully, thoroughly** | **systematically** | **thoughtfully** *He studied her thoughtfully, then smiled.*

• PHRASES **be easily/well studied** *The influence of heredity is best studied in genetically identical twins.*

stuff *verb*

• ADV. **frantically, hastily, quickly**

• PREP. **inside, into** *He hastily stuffed a few clothes into a bag.* **with** *She stuffed her case with presents for the kids.*

• PHRASES **be stuffed full of sth** *Her briefcase was stuffed full of papers.*

stumble *verb*

• ADV. **almost, nearly** | **a little, slightly** *She stumbled a little on the uneven path.* | **blindly** *He stumbled blindly on through the dark building.* | **about, along, around, away, back, backwards, forward, on, out**

• PREP. **against, along, down, from, into, out of, over, towards, etc.** *They stumbled over the ploughed field.*

• PHRASES **stumble to your feet** *The train stopped, and several passengers stumbled to their feet.*

PHRASAL VERB

stumble across/on/upon sth

• ADV. **accidentally, by chance, unwittingly** *I stumbled across the place quite by chance.*

stumbling block *noun*

• ADJ. **big, main, major, real**

• VERB + STUMBLING BLOCK **remove**

• PREP. **~ to** *The question of disarmament proved a major stumbling block to agreement.*

stun *verb*

• ADV. **absolutely** | **almost** | **briefly, momentarily**

• PREP. **into** *The assault was so unexpected that he was briefly stunned into submission.*

• PHRASES **stun sb into silence** *The guests were stunned into silence.*

stunned *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sit, sound, stand** *Morton stood stunned, unable to believe his ears.* | **leave sb** *Leaving them all stunned, she walked out of the bar.*

• ADV. **deeply** | **absolutely, completely, quite** | **almost** | **a bit, a little, slightly, somewhat** | **briefly, momentarily**

• PREP. **at** *They seemed stunned at his outburst.* **by** *She was a bit stunned by the news.* **with** *stunned with grief*

stunning *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look**

• ADV. **really** *You look really stunning in that dress!* | **absolutely, quite, simply** *The finished effect was absolutely stunning.* | **visually** *a visually stunning piece of cinema*

stunt *noun*

1 sth done for attention

• ADJ. **publicity**

• VERB + STUNT **arrange, organize** *She arranged a publicity stunt to make the public aware of the product.* | **pull** *What do you hope to gain by pulling a stunt like that?*

• PREP. **as a ~** *They jumped off London Bridge as a publicity stunt.*

2 dangerous act

• ADJ. **dangerous, daredevil** | **dramatic, spectacular** | **film**

• VERB + STUNT **carry out, do, perform** *The actor performed all the stunts himself.* | **attempt**

• STUNT + VERB **backfire, go wrong**

• STUNT + NOUN **artist, man** (also **stuntman**), **woman** (also **stuntwoman**) | **driver, pilot, rider**

stupid *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** *I felt really stupid when I realized what had happened.* ◇ *My sister made me look stupid in front of all my friends.* | **act** (*informal*) *I decided it was best to act stupid.*

• ADV. **bloody** (*taboo*), **damn/damned, exceptionally, extremely, fucking** (*taboo*), **incredibly, monumentally, particularly, really, very** | **absolutely, completely, (just) plain, utterly** *That was just plain stupid!* | **not entirely** *I'm not entirely stupid. I checked the train times before we came out.* | **a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather** | **enough, sufficiently** *He's stupid enough to believe anything.* | **crassly, grossly** *a crassly stupid thing to do*

stupidity *noun*

• ADJ. **complete, crass, incredible, sheer, utter**

• VERB + STUPIDITY **demonstrate, show** *Her answer showed the most incredible stupidity.*

• PREP. **through (your) ~** *Through his own stupidity, he missed an excellent opportunity.*

stupor *noun*

• ADJ. **drunken**

• VERB + STUPOR **drink yourself into, fall into, go into, sink into** *As the whisky took effect, he gradually fell into a drunken stupor.* | **come out of, emerge from** | **rouse sb from** *The noise of someone banging at the door roused her from her stupor.*

• PREP. **in a ~** *He fell to the ground in a stupor.*

stutter *noun*

• ADJ. **bad** | **slight** | **occasional**

• VERB + STUTTER **have, speak with** *He spoke with a stutter, which got worse when he was angry.*

style *noun*

1 way that sth is done/made

- ADJ. **latest, modern, new | classical, old, old-fashioned, period, traditional** *an old style of management* **| contemporary** *The 16th century house has been renovated and furnished in contemporary style.* **| characteristic, distinctive, individual, inimitable, original** *her inimitable style of humour* **| personal | musical | architectural | teaching | leadership, management, managerial | political | literary, narrative, prose, writing | elegant, lively | flamboyant** *a flamboyant style of dress* **| formal | casual** *a casual style of speech* **| conversational** *The article is written in a conversational style.* **| aggressive** *His aggressive style of play sometimes gets him in trouble.* **| autocratic** *an autocratic style of leadership* **| 18th-century, etc. | Gothic, Renaissance, etc.**
- VERB + STYLE **have** *The two artists have radically different styles.* **| develop, establish, evolve, find, form** *He evolved his style of painting while working as a magazine illustrator.* **| adapt, adjust, alter, change, modify, tailor** *The pianist had to tailor his style to suit the vocalist's distinctive voice.* **| adopt, use | copy, emulate, follow**
- PREP. **in ~** *very utilitarian in style* **in a/the ~** *The new houses have been built in a traditional style.*

2 good quality

- ADJ. **enormous, fine, great, real, terrific | certain**
- VERB + STYLE **have** *He has a certain style.* **| ooze** *The whole house just oozed style.* **| add, give sb/sth**
- PREP. **with ~** *Whatever she did, she did it with style.*
- PHRASES **a touch of style** *Long velvet curtains add a touch of style to the main room.*

subdued *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound**
- ADV. **very | almost | a bit, fairly, rather, somewhat | suitably** *She was dressed in grey and looked suitably subdued.* **| strangely, unusually** *I felt strangely subdued when it was all over.*

subject *noun*

1 topic or person under consideration

- ADJ. **big, complex, vast | simple | excellent, fascinating, good, interesting | cheerful** *Can we talk about a more cheerful subject?* **| gloomy, unpleasant | delicate, difficult, embarrassing | taboo** *Work is a taboo subject when we go out for dinner.* **| closed** *I don't wish to discuss it any further—the subject is closed.* **| chosen** *Each candidate has to speak for three minutes on their chosen subject.* **| pet** *Once he gets onto his pet subject there's no stopping him.*
- VERB + SUBJECT **cover, debate, discuss, talk about, touch on** *We touched briefly on the subject.* **| deal with** *I wasn't quite sure how to deal with the delicate subject of money.* **| examine, have a (fresh) look at, investigate, look into** *We want to have a fresh look at the difficult subject of social security benefits.* **| bring up, broach, get onto, raise | drop** *Let's drop the subject since we don't seem to be able to agree.* **| stick to** *I wish he'd stick to the subject rather than telling us his boring stories.* **| get off, wander off** *She was supposed to be speaking about sales figures, but she kept wandering off the subject.* **| get back to, return to** *Getting back to the subject of heating, has anyone got any suggestions for improvements?* **| avoid | change** *Don't change the subject.*
- SUBJECT + VERB **arise, come up** *The subject of gambling has come up several times recently.*
- SUBJECT + NOUN **matter** *I like the way she writes, although I'm not interested in her subject matter.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *While we're on the subject of the theatre, has anyone been to see the new show?*
- PHRASES **a range of subjects** *We discussed a wide range of subjects.*

2 area of study

- ADJ. **difficult, easy | compulsory, core, main | additional, optional, special, subsidiary | specialist | arts, science | academic**
- VERB + SUBJECT **take** *What subjects are you taking at A level?* **| offer** *The department offers seven different subjects in all.* **| fail (in), pass** *She was disappointed to fail in two of her four subjects.* **| drop**
- SUBJECT + NOUN **area** *The syllabus is divided into five subject areas.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He did well in every subject.*
- PHRASES **a choice of subject/subjects** *His unusual choice of subjects made it harder to find a job.* **a range of subjects**

NOTE

Subjects of study

do, read, study ~

do ~ is more commonly used with school subjects (but may also be used with university subjects):

She did maths, physics and chemistry at school.

study ~ is used with both school and university subjects:

He studied German at school.
She went on to study mathematics at university.

read ~ is only used with university subjects and is quite formal:

She was educated privately and at Pembroke College, where she read classics.

lecture in, teach ~

He taught music at a school in Edinburgh.

Other verbs used with SUBJECT can also be used with particular subjects of study:

Half the students take geography at A level.
We offer accounting as a subsidiary course.

~ degree, a degree/diploma in ~

a law degree
a higher diploma in fine art

~ class, course, lecture, lesson

The genetics lectures are on a different campus.

~ department, a/the department of ~

All enquiries should be made to the Department of Architecture.

~ graduate, student, undergraduate

Some architecture graduates gain further qualifications in specialist fields.

~ lecturer, teacher, tutor

He's an English teacher at Highland Road School.

~ professor, (a) professor of ~

She's professor of linguistics at the University of Wales.

the study of ~

The study of philosophy helps you to think critically.

in ~

He got As in history and art.

subject *adj.* subject to sth

1 likely to be affected by sth

- VERBS **be, seem | become | leave sb/sth, make sb/sth** *His illness left him subject to asthmatic attacks.*
- ADV. **very | increasingly | rather | still** *At this stage these are proposals and are still subject to change.*

2 under the authority of sb/sth

- VERBS **be** *Everyone was entirely subject to the whim of the Sultan.* **| become | remain | make sb/sth** *All the priories were made directly subject to the abbot of Cluny.*
- ADV. **entirely | directly | expressly**

subjective *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**

• ADV. **highly, very** *painted from a highly subjective point of view* | **entirely, purely, wholly** *The criticisms are purely subjective.* | **essentially, largely** *Taste in art is essentially subjective.* | **rather, somewhat** | **inevitably, necessarily** *making inevitably subjective judgements*

submarine *noun*

• ADJ. **conventional** | **diesel, diesel-powered** | **atomic, nuclear, nuclear-powered** | **midget, miniature** | **enemy**
• SUBMARINE + VERB **dive** | **surface** | **sink (sth)** | **operate, patrol (sth)** *the problem of submarines operating too close to fishing vessels*
• SUBMARINE + NOUN **captain, commander, crew** | **base, fleet** | **attack, warfare**

submerged *adj.*

• VERBS **be, lie, remain** | **become**
• ADV. **deeply** | **completely, fully, totally** | **almost** | **barely** *barely submerged antagonism* | **half, partially, partly**
• PREP. **in** *The machine can be totally submerged in water.* **below/beneath/under** *The car was submerged under 20 feet of water.*

submission *noun*

1 accepting sb else's control
• ADJ. **complete, total**
• VERB + SUBMISSION **demand, expect** *The emperor demanded total submission from his subjects.* | **gain, get** | **beat sb into, bomb sb into, force sb into, starve sb into, stun sb into** *They bombed the village into submission.*
• PREP. **~ to** *the patient's submission to the demands of the hospital*

2 of a plan/statement
• ADJ. **detailed** | **joint** | **oral, written**
• VERB + SUBMISSION **make** | **accept** | **reject** | **consider, hear** | **support, uphold** *The judge upheld the defendant's submission and quashed his conviction.*
• PREP. **in a/the ~** | **~ to** *The companies have made a joint submission to the minister.*

submit *verb*

1 give/propose sth so that it can be discussed
• ADV. **formally** *He formally submitted his resignation*
• VERB + SUBMIT **ask sb to, invite sb to, require sb to** *Six groups were invited to submit proposals for the research.* ◇ *Candidates for the degree are required to submit a 30 000-word thesis.*
• PREP. **for** *They have submitted plans for our approval.* **to** *She submitted her report to the committee.*

2 accept sb's power/control
• ADV. **voluntarily, willingly** *He submitted voluntarily to arrest.* | **meekly**
• VERB + SUBMIT **refuse to** | **be willing to** | **be compelled to, be forced to, be obliged to** *They were forced to submit to Bulgarian rule.*
• PREP. **to** *She refused to submit to threats.* ◇ *They abandoned their town rather than submit to the Persians.*

subnormal *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **classify sb as, treat sb as**
• ADV. **severely** | **educationally, mentally** *special provision for educationally subnormal children*

subordinate *verb*

• ADV. **firmly** | **completely, totally, wholly** | **largely**
• PREP. **to** *The needs of the individual are completely subordinated to those of the state.*

subordinate *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become**
• ADV. **completely, wholly** | **essentially** *He had an essentially subordinate role.* | **directly** *She was directly subordinate to the president* (= reported directly to the president). | **formally** *The monarch is formally subordinate to Parliament.*
• PREP. **to**

subscribe *verb*

PHRASAL VERB

subscribe to sth
• ADV. **fully, wholeheartedly** *I subscribe wholeheartedly to this theory.*

subscriber *noun*

• ADJ. **cable/digital/satellite TV, magazine, phone, telephone** | **regular** | **annual**
• PREP. **~ to** *Subscribers to the magazine can take advantage of this special offer.*

subscription *noun*

• ADJ. **annual, monthly, yearly, etc.** | **full**
• VERB + SUBSCRIPTION **pay** | **take out** | **cancel**
• SUBSCRIPTION + NOUN **fee, rate**
• PREP. **~ to** *Do you wish to take out a full twelve-month subscription to the journal?*
• PHRASES **a year's/month's/lifetime's, etc. subscription** *The prize was a lifetime's subscription to 'Newsweek'.*

subside *verb*

• ADV. **quickly, rapidly** | **gradually, slowly** *The storm gradually subsided.* | **eventually, finally**
• VERB + SUBSIDE **begin to**
• PREP. **into** *Her tears subsided into sniffs.*

subsidence *noun*

• ADJ. **rapid, slow, steady**
• VERB + SUBSIDENCE **be liable to, suffer from** *A number of houses had suffered from coal-mining subsidence.*
• SUBSIDENCE + VERB **occur**

subsidiary *noun*

• ADJ. **foreign, overseas** | **Spanish, Madrid-based, etc.** | **owned** *a 58%-owned subsidiary of Millennium Graphics* | **banking, manufacturing, software, etc.**
• VERB + SUBSIDIARY **operate as** *The company operates as a wholly-owned subsidiary of a large French company.* | **have, own** | **create, establish, form, set up** | **acquire** | **close**
• SUBSIDIARY + NOUN **company**
⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION

subsidize *verb*

• PHRASES **heavily/highly subsidized** *The airline is heavily subsidized by the government.*

subsidy *noun*

• ADJ. **big, heavy, huge, large, massive** | **small** | **direct** | **hidden, indirect** *The help that the government gives the industry amounts to an indirect subsidy.* | **annual** | **EU, government, public, state** | **agricultural, export, food, housing**
• QUANT. **level** *The level of subsidy given to farmers is to be reduced.*
• VERB + SUBSIDY **get, receive** | **lose** | **give sth, grant sth, pay, provide (sth with)** *The Arts Council granted*

them a small subsidy. | **cut, reduce** *Export subsidies have been reduced by 20%.* | **abolish, remove**
- SUBSIDY + NOUN **payments** | **scheme, system** | **cuts**
- PREP. **~for** *state subsidies for rice producers* **~on** *subsidies on basic goods and services* **~to** *subsidies to agriculture*
- PHRASES **a cut/reduction in subsidies** *The government cut spending through reductions in state subsidies to industry.* **the removal/abolition of subsidies** *protests against the removal of subsidies on basic commodities*

subsistence *noun*
- ADJ. **bare, basic**
- SUBSISTENCE + NOUN **agriculture, farmer, farming** | **economy** | **level** *Most of the population lives at subsistence level.*
- PHRASES **a level of subsistence** *They were living barely above the level of subsistence.* **means of subsistence** *She had no means of subsistence and was dependent on charity.*

substance *noun*

1 material
- ADJ. **addictive, carcinogenic, dangerous, harmful, hazardous, noxious, poisonous, radioactive, toxic** | **innocuous** *Even innocuous substances can sometimes register a positive result in a drug test.* | **banned, illegal** | **natural** *a natural substance found in the body of animals* | **chemical** | **inorganic, organic** | **pure** | **soluble, volatile** | **crystalline, fatty, oily, slimy, sticky, viscous** | **medicinal**
- VERB + SUBSTANCE **use** | **contain** | **produce** *Some frogs produce very toxic substances in their skin.* | **take** *The athletes had taken banned substances to increase their strength.*

2 important content
- ADJ. **real** *The real substance of the report was in the third part.* | **added** *His disappearance has given added substance to the argument that he stole the money.*
- VERB + SUBSTANCE **have** *The image of him that the media have presented has no substance.* | **give sth, lend sth** *The letters lent substance to the rumours.* | **lack**
- PREP. **in ~** *There's no difference in substance between the two points of view.* **of ~** *Nothing of substance was achieved at the meeting.* **without ~** *Their allegations were without substance.* | **~in** *There's no substance in the story.* **~to** *There was little substance to his claims.*

substitute *noun*
- ADJ. **good** | **acceptable, adequate, satisfactory** | **close** | **poor** *The television is a poor substitute for human companionship.*
- VERB + SUBSTITUTE **act as, serve as** *His teacher acted as a father substitute.* | **use sth as** | **produce, provide** *The company produces substitutes for lead in petrol.*
- PREP. **~for** *There's no substitute for hard work.*

subtitle *noun*
- ADJ. **English, French, etc.**
- VERB + SUBTITLE **have** | **read**
- PREP. **with ~s** *a Japanese film with English subtitles*

subtle *adj.*
- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, very** | **infinitely** *making infinitely subtle distinctions* | **not exactly, not too** *He was not exactly subtle about it!* | **fairly, quite, rather**

subtlety *noun*
- ADJ. **extreme, great, real**
- VERB + SUBTLETY **have** *Her dancing has great subtlety.* | **display, show** | **bring sth, lend sth** *His understanding of light brings great subtlety to his painting.* | **lack** | **appreciate, grasp, understand** *She was too young to grasp the subtleties of the film.*
- PREP. **with ~** *He uses language with great subtlety.*
- PHRASES **a lack of subtlety, of great/some subtlety** *a pianist of great subtlety*

suburb *noun*
- ADJ. **outer, outlying** | **inner** | **northern, southern, etc.** | **Berlin, Tokyo, etc.** | **affluent, comfortable, exclusive, prosperous, smart, wealthy** | **poor** | **middle-class, working-class** | **respectable** | **pleasant** | **leafy, quiet** | **grey** | **industrial, residential** | **sprawling** *out beyond the sprawling suburbs*
- VERB + SUBURB **move out to** *As soon as we can afford it, we'll move out to the suburbs.*
- SUBURB + VERB **grow** *The middle-class suburbs are growing fast.*
- PREP. **from the ~s** *For a child from the suburbs, a trip to the city was a great adventure.* **in a/the ~** *She's renting in some grey suburb of Birmingham.* **in the ~s** *Many people work in the centre but live in the suburbs.*

subversive *noun*
- ADJ. **dangerous**

subversive *adj.*
- VERBS **be** | **consider sth, deem sth, judge sth, regard sth as, see sth as**
- ADV. **very** | **inherently** | **overtly** *taking an overtly subversive approach* | **potentially** | **morally**

subway *noun*
- ADJ. **pedestrian**
- VERB + SUBWAY **take, use**
- PREP. **along a/the ~, in a/the ~, through a/the ~** *He ran through the pedestrian subway.*

succeed *verb*

1 manage to achieve what you want; do well
- ADV. **admirably, brilliantly, well** *The plan succeeded pretty well.* | **not quite** | **nearly** *They very nearly succeeded in blowing up the parliament building.* | **largely** *We feel that we have largely succeeded in our aims.* | **partially, partly** | **eventually, finally** | **apparently** | **academically** *the pressure on children to succeed academically*
- VERB + SUCCEED **be likely/unlikely to** *The appeal is unlikely to succeed.* | **be determined to, hope to, want to** *No company can hope to succeed at everything.*
- PREP. **against** *to succeed against serious opposition* **at** *She can teach you how to succeed at tennis.* **in** *She has succeeded in a difficult career.* ◇ *We succeeded in repairing the engine.* **with** *hints on how to succeed with interior design*

2 have a job/position after sb else
- VERB + SUCCEED **appoint sb to, elect sb to** *He was appointed to succeed Sir Georg Solti as head of the Chicago Symphony Orchestra.* | **be tipped to**
- PREP. **as** *He was widely tipped to succeed William Hague as leader of the party.* **to** *She succeeded to the throne in 1558.*

success *noun*

1 good results
- ADJ. **considerable, conspicuous, enormous, great, notable, overwhelming, phenomenal, remarkable, spectacular, tremendous, unprecedented** | **limited,**

moderate, modest *The campaign to stop drink-driving had only limited success.* | **popular, public** | **early, initial** | **immediate** | **long-term, short-term** | **business, commercial, economic, financial** | **academic, educational, electoral, literary, military, etc.** | **international** *The company's excellent marketing has resulted in enormous international success.*

- QUANT. **amount, degree** *Initially, the venture enjoyed a fair amount of success.*
- VERB + SUCCESS **achieve, enjoy, have, notch up** *She had little success in getting new customers.* ◇ *He is keen to notch up yet another success.* | **bring** *A change of management failed to bring success.* | **end in, lead to, result in** *The year-long fight for a pay rise ended in success.* | **ensure, guarantee** *We can't guarantee immediate success.* | **be vital to** *Your contribution was vital to the success of the concert.*
- SUCCESS + VERB **come** *Success didn't come overnight—she struggled for years before making any money.* | **lie (in sth)** *Much of his success lies in his skill in handling staff.* | **depend on sth** *The success or failure of the project depends on how committed the managers are.*
- SUCCESS + NOUN **rate** *The operation has a success rate of over 80%.* | **story** *The company has been one of the success stories of the past decade.*
- PREP. **without ~** *She tried to persuade them without success.* | **~ in** *I've had some success in getting rid of the weeds.* **~ with** *the secret of his success with women*
- PHRASES **a chance/hope of success** *What are our chances of success?* ◇ *We're trying to get him to sponsor us, but there's not much hope of success.* **confident of success** *She had worked hard and was confident of success.* **the key to success, a lack of success, the secret of (sb's) success, a symbol of (sb's) success**

2 sth that achieves its aim

- ADJ. **big, complete, considerable, conspicuous, enormous, great, huge, major, notable, outstanding, phenomenal, popular, real, remarkable, resounding, roaring, runaway, spectacular, total, tremendous, unprecedented, unqualified** *The band's new album has been a runaway success.* | **modest, qualified** | **business, commercial, economic, popular** *The book proved a major commercial success.* | **international** | **immediate**
- VERB + SUCCESS **be, prove** | **have** *We had one or two outstanding successes.* | **judge sth** *The event was judged a success by its organizers.* | **make** *She's made a real success of that job.*
- PHRASES **wish sb (every) success** *We are sad to see Hiroko go, and wish her every success in the future.*

successful *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **astonishingly, enormously, extremely, highly, hugely, outstandingly, particularly, phenomenally, remarkably, spectacularly, very** *his phenomenally successful period as manager* | **not entirely** *Their attempts had not been entirely successful.* | **fairly, moderately, partially, quite, rather, relatively** *The operation was only partially successful.* | **academically, commercially, politically** *a politically successful manoeuvre*
- PREP. **at** *Though a top-rated movie star he has been remarkably successful at keeping his private life private.* **in** *hoping their party would be successful in the elections*

succession *noun*

1 series of people, things, etc.

- ADJ. **endless, long, never-ending** | **constant, continuous, uninterrupted** | **quick, rapid** *We lost three secretaries in quick succession.* | **whole** *A whole succession of presidents had tried to resolve the issue without success.*
- PREP. **in ~** *There has been a rise in crime for the second year in succession.*

2 right to have an important position after sb else

- ADJ. **legitimate** | **disputed** | **dynastic, hereditary**
- VERB + SUCCESSION **ensure, secure** *He wanted to have a son to secure the succession.*
- PREP. **in ~ to** *Betty Munn is the manager in succession to Edna Greenan.*
- PHRASES **the line/order of succession** *He is next in (the) line of succession to the British throne.* **the right of succession, succession to the throne**

successor *noun*

- ADJ. **logical, natural, obvious** | **rightful, worthy** *Their latest disc is a worthy successor to their popular debut album.* | **chosen, designated, eventual** | **immediate** | **likely, possible, potential**
- VERB + SUCCESSOR **have** *He doesn't have an obvious successor as party leader.* | **appoint, choose, elect, find** | **groom** | **hand over to** *She will hand over to her successor in one year's time.*
- SUCCESSOR + VERB **take over**
- PREP. **as sb's ~** *She has been appointed as his successor.* | **~ as** *Andrew Kirkham will be her successor as Chief Executive.* **~ to** *The new Ministry of Food is the successor to the old Department of Agriculture.*
- PHRASES **the appointment/choice/election of a successor, be tipped as a possible successor** *The former newsreader is being tipped as a possible successor to the outgoing Head of Broadcasting.*

succumb *verb*

- ADV. **almost** | **rapidly** | **eventually, finally** | **easily, readily** *people who succumb easily to exploitation*
- VERB + SUCCUMB **be likely to**
- PREP. **to** *Malnourished children are more likely to succumb to infections.*

suck *verb*

- ADV. **noisily** *She was noisily sucking up milk through a straw.* | **away, in, out, up** *She sucked away on her thumb.* ◇ *He cut the orange in half and sucked out the juice.*
- PREP. **at** *He sucked at the wound on his hand.* **from** *The machine sucks up mud and stones from the bottom of the pond.* **into, on** *The baby sucked on her bottle.* **out of, through**

sue *verb*

- ADV. **successfully** | **unsuccessfully**
- VERB + SUE **be able to, be entitled to, have the right to** | **threaten to**
- PREP. **for** *He threatened to sue the company for negligence.* **over** *The water authority was successfully sued over his illness.*

suffer *verb*

- ADV. **a lot, badly, greatly, severely, terribly** *This area suffered very badly in the storms.* | **needlessly** *Thousands of children in the world today suffer needlessly.*
- VERB + SUFFER **be likely to** *Premature babies are more likely to suffer from breathing difficulties in childhood.*
- PREP. **for** *I played tennis yesterday and I know I shall suffer for it today.* **from** *She suffers from asthma.* **with** *He suffers terribly with migraines.*
- PHRASES **suffer in silence** *They were just expected to suffer in silence.*

sufferer *noun*

- ADJ. **main, worst** *The worst sufferers of the condition tend to live in highly polluted areas.* | **lifelong, long-term** | **fellow** *The sessions will enable you to discuss problems*

with fellow asthma sufferers. | **aids, arthritis, asthma, cancer, hay fever, etc.** | **back, back pain**
- PREP. **~from** *He's been a lifelong sufferer from hay fever.*

suffering *noun*

- ADJ. **great, intense, terrible, unbearable** | **needless, unnecessary** | **widespread** | **human** | **mental, physical** *The taunts of her schoolmates caused her intense mental suffering.*
- QUANT. **amount** *The western world has contributed to the immense amount of suffering in underdeveloped countries.*
- VERB + SUFFERING **cause (sb), inflict** | **increase** | **alleviate, ease, reduce, relieve** *These tablets should relieve his suffering for a couple of hours.* | **endure, experience**
- PHRASES **pain and suffering** *His life was one of pain and suffering.*

sufficient *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem, sound** | **consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as** *Do you really regard that explanation as sufficient?*
- ADV. **quite** | **far from** | **barely, hardly, scarcely** *Our budget is scarcely sufficient to pay people, let alone buy any new equipment.* | **just** | **almost**
- PREP. **for** *The salary proved sufficient for his needs.*

sugar *noun*

- ADJ. **raw, unrefined** | **refined** | **natural** *Fruit juices contain natural sugars.* | **simple** *simple sugars, such as glucose* | **brown, white** *Add one cup of soft brown sugar.* | **caster, demerara, granulated, lump, icing** | **beet, cane** | **fruit** *Fructose is a fruit sugar.* | **blood** *to raise blood sugar levels*
- QUANT. **lump, spoonful** | **bag, packet**
- VERB + SUGAR **put in/on, spoon, sprinkle, stir in/into, take** (= in tea or coffee) *He stirred another spoonful of sugar into his tea.* ◇ *Do you take sugar in your tea?* | **contain** | **produce**
- SUGAR + VERB **dissolve**
- SUGAR + NOUN **cube, lump** | **bowl** | **substitute** | **intake** *a high sugar intake* | **beet, cane** | **industry, plantation, production, refinery**
- PHRASES **high/low/reduced sugar content, high/low in sugar** *Most junk food is high in sugar.* **no added sugar** *apple juice with no added sugar*

suggest *verb*

1 propose sth/state sth indirectly
- ADV. **tentatively** *I tentatively suggested that she might be happier working somewhere else.* | **respectfully, tactfully** *I would respectfully suggest a different explanation for the company's decline.* | **helpfully** *'Shall I tell them you're ill?' Alice suggested helpfully.*
- VERB + SUGGEST **seem reasonable to** *It seems reasonable to suggest that all life forms on earth share a common origin.* | **be wrong to** | **be tempting to** | **dare (to)** *How dare you suggest such a thing?*
- PREP. **as** *She suggested John as chairman.* **for** *Who would you suggest for the job?* **to** *He suggested to the committee that they should delay making a decision.*
- PHRASES **can/may I suggest, I (would) suggest** *I would suggest that you see your doctor about this.*

2 show sth in an indirect way
- ADV. **strongly** *The evidence suggests quite strongly that the fire was caused by an explosion.*
- VERB + SUGGEST **seem to** *The evidence seems to suggest that he did steal the money.*

suggestion *noun*

1 proposal
- ADJ. **constructive, excellent, good, interesting, helpful, positive, practical, sensible, valuable** | **absurd, bizarre, impractical, ludicrous, outrageous, preposterous, ridiculous, stupid** | **tentative**
- VERB + SUGGESTION **have** *Has anyone got any suggestions for a title?* ◇ *I've had several helpful suggestions from colleagues.* | **come up with, give sb, make, offer, put forward** *Can you give us any suggestions for a slogan?* ◇ *May I make a suggestion?* | **accept, act on, adopt, take up** *I think we might take up the suggestion of printing the books in Hong Kong.* | **take sb up on** *May we take you up on your suggestion of sharing the costs for the party?* | **deny, dismiss, reject** *They dismissed the suggestion that they hadn't worked hard.* ◇ *He rejected my suggestion as impractical.* | **welcome** | **consider, look at, note** *We have noted your suggestion and will give it due consideration.*
- SUGGESTION + NOUN **book, box**
- PREP. **at the ~ of** *At the suggestion of his boss, he resigned.* | **~ about/as to/concerning/on** *Management welcomes practical suggestions on how to improve the facilities.* **~ for** *suggestions for further reading*
- PHRASES **amid suggestions that** *She left the country amid suggestions that she had stolen from the firm.* **be open to suggestions** *I'm not sure what to do with all this money, but I'm open to suggestions.*

⇨ Special page at MEETING

2 communicating without stating directly
- ADJ. **implicit** | **hypnotic** *analgesia through hypnotic suggestion*
- PREP. **by/through ~** *There's no scientific basis to the method—it works by suggestion.*
- PHRASES **the power of suggestion** *These healers claim to remove the pain by the power of suggestion.*

3 trace of sth
- ADJ. **faint, mere, slightest**
- VERB + SUGGESTION **carry, have**
- PREP. **at the ~ of** *At the slightest suggestion of criticism, he loses his temper.* | **~ of**

suggestive *adj.*

1 making you think of sth
- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **highly** (*medical*), **strongly, very** *The results were highly suggestive of malignancy.* | **vaguely**
- PREP. **of** *music that is suggestive of warm summer days*

2 making people think about sex
- VERBS **be, look, sound** | **become**
- ADV. **very** | **faintly, quite, rather** | **sexually**

suicidal *adj.*

1 wanting to kill yourself
- VERBS **be, feel, look, sound** | **become, get** *He became very depressed and even got suicidal at one point.*
- ADV. **almost**

2 likely to cause your failure
- VERBS **be, prove**
- ADV. **economically, politically** *a move which would be politically suicidal*
- PREP. **for** *These policies would prove suicidal for our economy.*

suicide *noun*

- ADJ. **attempted** | **mass** *Members of the sect committed mass suicide.* | **economic** | **electoral, political** *Raising taxes before an election would be political suicide.*
- VERB + SUICIDE **commit** | **attempt** | **contemplate**
- SUICIDE + NOUN **threat** | **attempt, bid** *He slashed his wrists in a failed suicide bid.* | **pact** *The couple died to-*

gether in a suicide pact. | **bomber, bombing** | **mission** | **letter, note** *He died without leaving a suicide note.* | **rate**

suit *noun*

1 set of clothes

- ADJ. **designer, elegant, immaculate, smart, well-cut** | **ill-fitting** | **off-the-peg** | **best, good** *He wore his one good suit to the interview.* | **tailored** | **double-breasted, single-breasted** | **one-piece, three-piece, two-piece** | **pinstripe/pinstriped** | **linen, tweed, etc.** | **summer** | **business, dinner, evening, dress, formal, lounge, morning, safari** | **trouser** | **bathing, diving, wet** | **ski**
- SUIT + NOUN **jacket, trousers**
- PREP. **in a~** *Two men in suits came out of the hotel.*
- PHRASES **a suit and tie** *They won't let you into the restaurant without a suit and tie.* **a suit of armour** *The cavalry wore a suit of light armour and carried a shield.* **a suit of clothes** *We bought the baby a couple of suits of clothes.*

2 of playing cards

- ADJ. **trump**
- VERB + SUIT **follow** (= play the same suit as the previous player)
- SUIT + VERB **be trumps** *Which suit is trumps?* | **change** *The suit changed to diamonds.*
- PREP. **from/in a/the~** *All the cards have to be from the same suit.*

suit *verb*

- ADV. **admirably, fine, well** *A camping holiday would suit me fine.* ◇ *You will have to try out the various tennis rackets to find out which one suits you best.* | **down to the ground** (*informal*), **perfectly** *Country life suits me down to the ground!* ◇ *This arrangement suited me perfectly.*
- VERB + SUIT **seem to** | **adapt sth to, adjust sth to, be designed to, be tailored to** *a shampoo designed to suit all hair types*

suitability *noun*

- ADJ. **greater**
- VERB + SUITABILITY **assess, demonstrate, determine** *to assess the suitability of the accommodation for a disabled person* | **ensure** | **doubt, have doubts about, question**
- PREP. **~for** *the greater suitability of women for the work*

suitable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, prove, seem, sound** | **make sth** *The exercise-with-answer-key format makes the book suitable for self-study.* | **consider sth, deem sth** *These properties are considered especially suitable for older people.*
- ADV. **eminently, especially, highly, particularly, very** | **perfectly** | **quite** | **not entirely, not quite, not really** *This holiday is not really suitable for wheelchair users.* | **not necessarily** | **hardly, scarcely** | **potentially** | **equally** *There are many other training courses that would be equally suitable.*
- PREP. **as** *not suitable as a word-processing program* **for** *The walk is suitable for all the family.* **to** *conditions suitable to their development*

suitcase (*also* case) *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy, light** | **open** | **battered** *His only possession was a battered old suitcase of clothes.* | **false-bottomed** *The money was smuggled out in a false-bottomed suitcase.*
- VERB + SUITCASE **cram/stuff/throw sth in/into, pack** *He stuffed a few clothes in a case, grabbed his wallet and left.* ◇ *Have you packed your case yet?* | **take sth out of, unpack** | **close, fasten, shut, snap shut** *She snapped her suitcase shut and stuck on a label.* | **open** | **lift, pick up** *The suitcase was too heavy to lift.* | **clutch, hold** | **carry, drag, heave, hump, lug** *She heaved her case down from the luggage rack.* ◇ *travellers humping suitcases about* | **drop, dump, put down** | **live out of** *He got fed up of living out of a suitcase and left his job as a sales rep.*
- SUITCASE + VERB **be crammed/stuffed with sth, be full of sth, contain sth** *The suitcase was full of drugs.*
- PREP. **in/inside a/the~**

suite *noun*

1 of furniture

- ADJ. **three-piece** *a three-piece lounge suite* | **bathroom, bedroom, dining/dining-room, lounge**
- VERB + SUITE **put in** *We're having a new bathroom suite put in.*
- PHRASES **a suite of furniture**

2 set of rooms in a hotel, office block, etc.

- ADJ. **private** | **executive, luxury** | **furnished** | **penthouse** | **bridal, conference, delivery** (= in the maternity ward of a hospital), **family, honeymoon, hospitality** *a family suite of two interconnecting rooms* | **hotel, office**
- PHRASES **a suite of rooms/offices**

suited *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem** | **make sth**
- ADV. **admirably, eminently, especially, particularly, peculiarly, very, well** *lands that are well suited to dairy farming* | **ideally, perfectly, uniquely** *She was ideally suited to the job.* | **hardly, not really** | **ill-, little, not really** *a song ill-suited to male voices* | **genuinely** *Is this a job for which you are genuinely suited?* | **naturally** | **temperamentally**
- PREP. **for** *He was not really suited for army life.* **to** *an approach especially suited to the adult learner*

sum *noun*

1 amount of money

- ADJ. **considerable, generous, good, handsome, hefty, high, large, not inconsiderable, princely** (*ironic*), **significant, substantial, tidy** (*informal*) *It seemed an absurdly high sum to pay for a coat.* ◇ *For his first book he received the princely sum of $400.* ◇ *The team has raised substantial sums for local charities.* | **astronomical, colossal, enormous, exorbitant, huge, magnificent, massive, record, staggering, vast** *£200 was an astronomical sum of money in 1547.* ◇ *He joined the club two years ago for a record sum.* | **five-figure, six-figure, etc.** | **small, modest, nominal, reasonable, token, trifling** *The charity pays a nominal sum to lease the premises.* | **derisory, paltry** | **average** | **net** | **round** *$10 000 is a good round sum.* | **full, overall, total** | **agreed, fixed** | **undisclosed, unspecified** | **annual, monthly, etc.** | **regular** | **guaranteed** | **capital, cash, lump** *My wife would receive a guaranteed lump sum in the event of my death.* | **tax-free**
- VERB + SUM **borrow, earn, fetch, raise, recover** *Some of the paintings should fetch a tidy sum at today's auction.* ◇ *You will have to go to court to recover these sums.* | **get, receive** | **award sb, contribute, give sb, grant sb, lend sb, offer sb, pay (sb), repay** *The judge awarded them an undisclosed six-figure sum in damages.* | **invest, spend** | **cost** *a project that cost vast sums of public money* | **charge (sb), fine sb** | **agree (on)** *We eventually agreed a sum and I gave him a cheque.*
- SUM + VERB **be due, be payable** *The landlord has the right to recover any sums payable under this lease* | **be equal/equivalent to sth** *The gangsters offered him a sum equivalent to a whole year's earnings.* | **exceed sth**
- PHRASES **a sum of money**

2 calculation

- ADJ. **difficult, easy**
- VERB + SUM **do, find the answer to** *I did a quick sum to work out how much it would cost.*

• PHRASES **get your sums right/wrong** *The company got its sums wrong when estimating how many customers it would attract.*

3 amount got by adding numbers

• VERB + SUM **calculate, find, work out** *Calculate the sum of the following figures.*

• PREP. **~of** *The sum of two and five is seven.*

sum *verb*

PHRASAL VERB

sum sth up

• ADV. **aptly, neatly, nicely, succinctly, well | perfectly | just about** *'So we're stuck in this place, with no food, no heat, no light and no prospect of anyone coming to rescue us?' 'That just about sums it up.'*

• VERB + SUM STH UP **seem to | attempt to, try to** *attempting to sum up recent economic trends* | **be difficult to, be hard to** *The appeal of this charming little town is hard to sum up.*

• PREP. **as** *She summed it up as 'the most brilliant lecture I've ever attended'.*

summarize *verb*

• ADV. **briefly, succinctly | aptly, best, conveniently, neatly, usefully, well** *The research has been usefully summarized in an article by Greenwood.* | **easily**

• VERB + SUMMARIZE **attempt to, try to | be possible to | be difficult to**

• PREP. **as** *The results of the survey can be summarized as follows:...*

summary *noun*

• ADJ. **accurate, apt, clear, excellent, fair, good, useful** *Is that a fair summary of the situation?* | **comprehensive, detailed, full | general, overall | brief, concise, quick, short | bald, crude | financial, statistical | news, plot** *Details of new titles, with plot summaries, are included in the catalogue.*

• VERB + SUMMARY **make, prepare, write** *Could you make a short summary of this article for me?* | **give (sb), provide (sb with), supply (sb with)** *He has provided a useful summary of the main categories.*

• SUMMARY + NOUN **sheet, table | report, statement**

• PREP. **in ~** *In summary, his views are out of date.* **in a/the ~** *She decided not to include this incident in her summary of the day's events.*

• PHRASES **in summary form** *The information is shown in summary form in the following tables.*

summer *noun*

• ADJ. **last, next, this (coming) | early, late, mid-** (also **midsummer**) | **high** *Seville is scorching in high summer.* | **good, hot, scorching | dry, wet | Indian** *We had an Indian summer that year, very warm until October.* ◇ (*figurative*) *She seems to be enjoying an Indian summer of popularity.*

• SUMMER + NOUN **temperature, weather | sun, sunlight, sunshine | rain/rains | breeze, gale, wind | sky | solstice | course, school | term** *There are two new courses being run in the summer term.* | **break, holiday, recess, vacation** *I went home for the summer holidays.* | **garden | flower | clothes, clothing, dress | collection, exhibition | Olympics, sports**

⇨ Note at SEASON (for more collocates)

summit *noun*

1 top of a mountain

• ADJ. **high** *The Pic Long is the highest summit in the region.* | **very | rocky, snow-capped, snow-covered, snowy | mountain**

• VERB + SUMMIT **arrive at, climb (to), gain, get to, reach**

• SUMMIT + NOUN **attempt, bid** *The blizzard forced them to delay their summit bid.*

• PREP. **at the ~** *We were standing at the very summit of the highest mountain in India.* **below the ~** *They reached base camp, 12 000 metres below the summit.* **on the ~** *The climbers planted a flag on the summit.*

2 important meeting between leaders

• ADJ. **annual, biennial, etc. | regular | emergency, extraordinary, special | two-day, etc. | first, inaugural | global, international, regional | bilateral, trilateral | European, Franco-German, etc. | G8, NATO, etc. | presidential | Paris, Rio, etc. | drugs, earth, economic, peace**

• VERB + SUMMIT **have, hold, host** *The 2004 summit will be hosted by Japan.* | **attend, go to**

• SUMMIT + NOUN **conference, meeting, talks | agenda | agreement, declaration**

• PREP. **at a/the ~** *These measures were decided at a summit in July.* | **~ between** *annual summits between the major OECD economies* **~on** *a two-day international summit on drugs*

summon *verb*

1 order a person to come to a place

• ADV. **duly | hastily, urgently | back**

• PREP. **for** *She was duly summoned for an interview.* **from** *He has been summoned from New York to give evidence at the trial.* **to** *She was summoned back to his office.*

2 find sth that you need

• ADV. **barely, hardly** *He could hardly summon the strength to stand up.* | **up**

• VERB + SUMMON **can/could | try to | manage to** *She managed to summon up a smile.*

summons *noun*

1 order to go somewhere

• ADJ. **peremptory, urgent | royal**

• VERB + SUMMONS **send (out) | await, expect** *I stayed in that night awaiting her summons.* | **get, hear, receive | answer, obey, respond to | ignore**

• SUMMONS + VERB **come** *She was ready when the summons duly came.*

• PREP. **~from** *She responded immediately to the summons from the head teacher.* **~to** *I received an urgent summons to her office.*

• PHRASES **in answer to a summons** *He arrived panting in answer to Blake's summons.*

2 order to go to a court of law

• ADJ. **court | private | witness**

• VERB + SUMMONS **issue, take out | deliver, present (sb with), serve (sb with)** *The summons can be served on either of the partners in the business.*

• PREP. **~ against** *Her neighbours took out a summons against her for noise nuisance.* | **~for**

sun *noun* (usually **the sun**)

• ADJ. **blood-red, bright, brilliant, golden, red, yellow | hazy, pale, thin, watery, weak, wintry | high, low** *The wintry sun was already low in the sky.* | **rising | dying, setting, sinking, westering, western** *The distant mountains glowed in the light of the setting sun.* | **baking, blazing, burning, fierce, harsh, hot, scorching, strong, warm | direct, full** *This plant likes a dryish soil in full sun.* | **afternoon, early, early-morning, evening, late, midday, morning, noon/noonday | autumn, spring, summer, winter | August, February, etc. | desert, tropical | Caribbean, Italian, etc.**

• VERB + SUN **blot out, obliterate** *The clouds darkened, obliterating the sun.* | **soak up** *We were lying by the pool,* *soaking up the afternoon sun.* | **catch** *You've caught the sun* (= become slightly burnt by the sun).

- SUN + VERB **come up, climb, rise** *The sun climbed higher in the sky.* ◇ *The sun rises in the east.* | **dip, drop, go down, set, sink** *The sun sets in the west.* ◇ *It was getting cooler as the sun sank below the horizon.* | **be out, be up** *The sun was up now, and strong.* | **move** *The sun moved slowly westward.* | **appear, break through (sth), come out, emerge** *Just then, a watery sun broke through the clouds.* | **beat down, blaze down, burn, glare, shine** *A brilliant sun shone through the trees.* | **disappear, go in** *The sun went in and it started to rain.* | **catch sth, flash on sth, glance on sth, glint off/on sth, play on sth, sparkle (on sth)** *The sun caught her dazzling copper hair.* ◇ *The sun glinted on the blades.* | **pour down/in, slant through sth, stream in/through sth** *The evening sun slanted through the window.* | **strike sth, touch sth** *The sun struck the steep blue slates of the roof.* | **warm sth** *The sun warmed his face.*
- SUN + NOUN **god** | **worshipper** | **lounge, terrace, trap** (also **suntrap**) | **bed** (also **sunbed**), **lounger** (also **sunlounger**) | **hat** (also **sunhat**), **umbrella, visor** | **tan** (also **suntan**) | **cream, lotion, oil, protection** *On children, use a cream with a high sun protection factor.* | **damage, exposure** *wrinkles caused by sun damage*
- PREP. **in the ~** *Don't sit in the sun too long.* ◇ *The helmets were glinting in the sun.* ◇ *We've booked a holiday in the sun* (= in a place that is warm and sunny). **into the ~** *We went out into the sun.* **out of the ~** *We did our best to keep out of the sun.* | **~in** *with the sun in her eyes* **~on** *enjoying the feel of the sun on his back*
- PHRASES **the rays of the sun/the sun's rays**

Sunday *noun*

⇨ Note at DAY

sunglasses *noun*

- ADJ. **clip-on** | **wrap-around** | **mirror, mirrored, reflecting** | **designer**
- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + SUNGLASSES **have on, wear** | **put on, take off** | **adjust**
- SUNGLASSES + VERB **be perched on sth, perch on sth** *Her sunglasses were perched on her head.*
- PREP. **behind your ~** *She observed the goings-on from behind her mirrored sunglasses.*

sunlight *noun*

- ADJ. **blinding, bright, brilliant, harsh, hot, intense, scorching, strong, warm** *He emerged from the tunnel into blinding sunlight.* | **direct, full** *plants that do not like direct sunlight* | **pale, weak, wintry** | **dappled, golden** *the dappled sunlight of the forest* | **reflected** | **afternoon, morning, evening** | **autumn, spring, etc.**
- QUANT. **beam, ray, shaft** | **patch, pool**
- VERB + SUNLIGHT **block out** *a dank backyard with a wall that blocked out the sunlight* | **gleam in, glint in, shimmer in, sparkle in** *The sea shimmered in the sunlight.* | **be exposed to** *Do not leave your skin exposed to sunlight for too long.* | **blink in, squint in** *They emerged from the cinema, blinking in the sunlight.*
- SUNLIGHT + VERB **come, fall, filter, flood, penetrate, pierce, pour, shine, slant, stream** *Sunlight filtered dustily through the slats of the door.* ◇ *in dark thickets where sunlight could not penetrate* ◇ *She threw back the shutters and the sunlight streamed in.* | **dapple sth, gleam on/through sth, glimmer on sth, glint on sth, glitter on sth, reflect from/on sth, shimmer on sth, sparkle on sth** *Sunlight dapples the grass around us.* ◇ *the sunlight sparkling on the water*
- PREP. **in the ~** *waves sparkling in the sunlight* **into the ~** *We came out into bright sunlight again.*

sunny *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look** | **become, get** | **remain, stay**
- ADV. **brilliantly, very** *a brilliantly sunny day* | **quite**

sunset *noun*

- ADJ. **beautiful, glorious, spectacular, stunning** | **orange, red**
- VERB + SUNSET **admire, watch, ride/sail off into** *At the end of the movie, the hero rides off into the sunset.*
- PREP. **against the ~** *The trees were black against the sunset.* **at ~** *walking along the beach at sunset* | **~ over** *a beautiful sunset over the bay*
- PHRASES **the glow of the sunset** *sitting in the last glow of the sunset*

sunshine *noun*

- ADJ. **blazing, bright, brilliant, dazzling** | **beautiful, glorious, pleasant** *two weeks of glorious sunshine* | **hot, sweltering, warm** | **hazy, mild, pale, watery, wintry** | **fitful** *It was a cool day with fitful sunshine.* | **afternoon, evening, morning** | **June, July, etc.** | **autumn, spring, etc.** *She sat on the wall, enjoying the spring sunshine.*
- VERB + SUNSHINE **bask in, enjoy, soak up** | **be bathed in** *The town was bathed in spring sunshine.* | **gleam in, glow in, sparkle in**
- SUNSHINE + VERB **beat down, flood, pour, slant, stream** *The sunshine came streaming in at the window.*
- PREP. **in (the) ~** *The race was run in bright sunshine.* **into the ~** *She followed us out into the sunshine.*

suntan *noun*

- ADJ. **golden, good**
- VERB + SUNTAN **have** | **show off, sport** *Everyone in the bar was sporting a suntan.* | **get, work on** *He spent the mornings on the beach getting a suntan.* ◇ *I'm going down to the pool to work on my suntan!*
- SUNTAN + NOUN **lotion, oil**

superb *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, sound** *She looked superb.*
- ADV. **really** | **absolutely, quite, simply** *The cuisine is absolutely superb.*

superficial *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **entirely, purely** *He began to feel he could cope, on a purely superficial level, at least.* | **increasingly** | **largely, more or less** | **fairly, quite, rather, relatively, somewhat**

superfluous *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem** | **become** | **make sth, render sth** | **consider sth**
- ADV. **quite, totally, wholly** *She gave him a look that made words quite superfluous.* | **almost** | **rather**

superior *noun*

- ADJ. **immediate** *The form has to be signed by your immediate superior.* | **social**
- VERB + SUPERIOR **report sb/sth to** *She threatened to report the assistant to his superiors.*

superior *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem** | **become** | **make sth** *What is it that makes this technique superior?* | **consider sth, see sth as** *I don't see either product as superior to the other.*
- ADV. **clearly, distinctly, far, greatly, markedly, vastly** *The new products are far superior to the old ones.* ◇ *They defeated a greatly superior Roman army.* | **altogether, in-**

finitely, wholly *The house was altogether superior to the kind of thing most men of Adam's age could aspire to.* | **rather, slightly, somewhat** | **inherently, intrinsically, naturally** | **supposedly** | **undoubtedly** | **numerically** *the numerically superior* (= larger in numbers) *British forces* | **economically, educationally, intellectually, morally, socially, technically**

• PREP. **in** *a microwave that is vastly superior in design to all other models* **to** *She felt socially superior to most of her neighbours.*

superiority *noun*

• ADJ. **absolute, complete, overwhelming, total** | **effortless** *Driving the Jaguar gave him a feeling of total control, effortless superiority.* | **inherent, innate, intrinsic, natural** | **academic, biological, cultural, intellectual, moral, numerical, physical, racial, social, technical, technological** *a discredited ideology of racial superiority* | **male, masculine** *his air of masculine superiority* | **air, military, naval**

• VERB + SUPERIORITY **achieve, establish** *the enemy's attempts to establish air superiority* | **enjoy, have** *For a long time France enjoyed overwhelming superiority in this field.* | **confirm, convince sb of, demonstrate, prove, show, underline** | **maintain** | **assert, assume, claim, imply** *The use of the words 'modern' and 'old' is not meant to imply the superiority of one over the other.* | **acknowledge, bow to** *Their team has had to bow to Australia's superiority in recent years.*

• PREP. **~ in** *making use of their superiority in numbers* **~ over** *the company's clear technological superiority over its rivals* **~ to** *The settlers remained convinced of their superiority to the native population.*

• PHRASES **a feeling/sense of superiority**

supermarket *noun*

• ADJ. **leading, major, top** | **high-street, local**

• SUPERMARKET + NOUN **chain, giant, group** | **development** | **car park, checkout, queue, shelf, trolley** *An increasing amount of organic produce is to be found on supermarket shelves.* | **brand** | **assistant, manager**

superstition *noun*

• ADJ. **popular** | **age-old, ancient, old** | **local** | **pagan** | **primitive**

• VERB + SUPERSTITION **have** *We have a lot of superstitions about animals.* | **be riddled with** *The topic of birth is riddled with superstition.* | **believe in** *unwilling to believe in local superstitions* | **dismiss sth as, reject sth as**

• SUPERSTITION + VERB **be attached to sth** *Red-headed people have many superstitions attached to them.*

• PREP. **~ about** *primitive superstitions about death*

supervise *verb*

• ADV. **carefully, closely, strictly, well** *The children will be closely supervised at all times.* | **fully, properly** *The pool is fully supervised by trained staff.* | **adequately** | **inadequately** | **personally** *I will supervise the work personally.* | **internationally** *a proposal for an internationally supervised ceasefire*

• VERB + SUPERVISE **appoint sb to** *An executive officer was appointed to supervise the arrangements.*

supervision *noun*

• ADJ. **careful, close, strict** | **adequate, effective, proper** | **inadequate** | **constant, daily, day-to-day, regular** | **minimal** | **direct** *New staff are trained to work without direct supervision.* | **general, overall** | **adult, clinical, expert, medical, parental, personal**

• VERB + SUPERVISION **need, require** | **get, have, receive** | **exercise, give sb, offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *The scheme offers only minimal supervision for young offenders.* | **be responsible for** *The head porter is responsible for the supervision and allocation of duties.* | **keep sb/sth under** *He needs to be kept under strict supervision.* | **improve, tighten** | **relax** | **escape (from), evade** *She managed to escape her boss's constant supervision.*

• SUPERVISION + NOUN **order** *The local authority can apply for a supervision order for the child.*

• PREP. **under (sb's) ~** *under the close supervision of her teachers* **with/without ~** *Children are not allowed to swim without adequate supervision.* | **~ by** *They still require supervision by skilled colleagues.* **~ from** *Trainees will receive personal supervision from experienced staff.*

• PHRASES **a lack of supervision**

supervisor *noun*

• ADJ. **chief, senior** | **area** | **office** | **shift** | **project** | **production** | **technical** | **research**

• VERB + SUPERVISOR **act as**

• PREP. **under a/the ~** *the people working under that supervisor*

⇨ Note at JOB

supper *noun*

• ADJ. **light** | **cold, hot** | **buffet** | **early, late** | **family** | **harvest** *There was always a harvest supper for the farm workers after the hay and wheat had been cut.* | **fish and chip, pie, etc.**

• SUPPER + NOUN **dish** *It can also be eaten as a supper dish with a salad.* | **table, things, tray** *Ellie cleared away their supper things.*

• PHRASES **a bit/bite of supper** *They invited me round for a bite of supper.*

⇨ Note at MEAL (for verbs)

supple *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look** *leaving your skin feeling soft and supple* | **become, get** *He was gradually getting more supple.* | **keep, remain, stay** *exercises that will help you to keep supple* | **make sth** *a cream that is used on dry skins to make them nice and supple* | **keep sth** *You must exercise your joints to keep them supple.*

• ADV. **extremely, very**

supplement *noun*

1 sth that is added

• ADJ. **useful, valuable** | **colour** (= a colour magazine that comes with most weekend papers in Britain), **magazine, special, Sunday** *Our special supplement is packed with inspirational ideas for healthy and glamorous hair.* | **dietary, food, mineral, nutritional, vitamin**

• VERB + SUPPLEMENT **provide (sb/sth with)** | **add** *The farmer adds a supplement to the horse's feed.* | **take, use (sth as)** *I take a vitamin supplement every day.* ◇ *You can use these books as supplements to the basic English course.*

• PREP. **~ to** *This document is a supplement to the main report.*

2 extra amount of money

• ADJ. **$100, £50, etc.** *A balcony is available for a £20 supplement.* | **flight, single room** *If you want to travel on a different day a flight supplement is payable.* | **earnings-related, means-tested** *means-tested supplements to the basic pension*

• VERB + SUPPLEMENT **add, charge** *We charge a small supplement for this service.* | **carry, have** *Weekend flights carry a supplement.* | **pay**

• SUPPLEMENT + VERB **be payable**

• PREP. **at a ~** *Single rooms are available at a supplement.* | **~ for** *a $20 supplement for each extra night* **~ on** *There is a supplement on rooms with a sea view.*

supplier *noun*

• ADJ. **big, largest, leading, main, major, principal | small | sole | reliable | external, foreign, outside, overseas | local | independent | mail-order | agricultural, arms, component, equipment, food, software, etc. | electricity, gas, oil**

• PREP. **~to** *the leading arms supplier to the rebel forces*

supply *noun*

1 sth that is supplied

• ADJ. **total** *It is impossible to measure the total supply of money in circulation.* | **endless, inexhaustible, infinite, limitless, never-ending, unending** *He has an endless supply of corny jokes.* | **abundant, bountiful, good, large, plentiful | adequate, ample, sufficient | inadequate, limited, small** *Hurry, as we only have a limited supply of these TVs in stock!* | **dwindling | constant, continuous, regular, steady | fresh** *The body needs a fresh supply of vitamin C every day.* | **ready, reliable** *the provision of a reliable supply of clean water to rural communities* | **domestic | air, blood, oxygen, etc.** *A clot in the brain cut off her blood supply.* | **food, milk, water, etc. | coal, electricity, energy, fuel, gas, oil, power, etc.** *Domestic coal supplies were more plentiful in the mid-1950s.* ◇ *Turn off the mains electricity supply.* | **mains | labour** *The farmers depend on a casual labour supply at harvest time.* | **money** *the country's problems with ballooning inflation and swelling money supply*

• VERB + SUPPLY **have** *Make sure you have an adequate supply of brochures.* | **get, lay in, obtain, receive** *We should lay in a good supply of beer for the party.* | **produce, provide** *The studio produced a steady supply of good films.* | **ensure, maintain | cut off, disconnect, disrupt, stop** *The electricity company disconnected our supply for non-payment of a bill.* ◇ *The storm disrupted the town's power supply.* | **deplete, exhaust, use (up)** *By the end of the winter the supply of grain was severely depleted.* | **replenish, restore | increase | restrict, limit, reduce | exceed, outstrip** *Demand for top-quality programmers exceeds supply, leading to extortionate salaries.*

• SUPPLY + VERB **increase | fall | exceed/meet demand** *Labour supply did not increase to meet demand.*

• SUPPLY + NOUN **line, system** *the water supply system* | **contract**

• PREP. **~of** *a supply of spare batteries* **~to** *to maintain an adequate water supply to the inner city areas*

• PHRASES **be in short supply** *Food is in short supply following the flooding.* **demand and supply/supply and demand** *laws of supply and demand* **a fall/a shortfall in supply** *There will soon be a shortfall in supply of qualified young people.* **an increase in supply**

2 **supplies** amount of sth needed

• ADJ. **abundant, plentiful | limited, meagre | vital | emergency, relief | arms, food, medical, military, office** *The Red Cross flew emergency food supplies into the war zone.*

• VERB + SUPPLIES **bring (in/up), lay in, provide (sb/sth with)** *The money raised will provide vital medical supplies to refugee camps.* | **be/run out of, be/run short of | threaten** *Rebel action threatened relief supplies.*

• SUPPLIES + VERB **hold out, last | be depleted, be exhausted, run low/out/short**

• PREP. **~of** *The injured climbers had only meagre supplies of water and peanuts to live off.*

supply *verb*

• ADV. **amply, liberally, well | adequately** *Any room where gas is used must be adequately supplied with air.* | **poorly | generously, kindly** *a buffet supper, generously supplied by club members* | **readily | free (of charge)**

• VERB + SUPPLY **agree to | refuse to | fail to | ask sb to** *Each applicant is asked to supply a portfolio of work at interview.*

• PREP. **for** *goods supplied for private use* **from** *The water was supplied from an eight-wheeled tanker.* **to** *They were accused of supplying arms to the rebels.* **with** *He refused to supply the police with information.*

• PHRASES **a contract to supply sth, intent to supply (sb/sth)** (*law*) *He was charged with possession of drugs with intent to supply others.* **keep sb/sth supplied with sth** *keeping the guests well supplied with champagne*

support *noun*

1 help and encouragement

• ADJ. **complete, full, total | active, considerable, enthusiastic, firm, generous, good, great, loyal, massive, overwhelming, solid, strong, tremendous, unqualified, wholehearted** *The socialist candidate enjoys the firm support of local industry.* ◇ *the company's generous financial support of the arts* ◇ *The poll revealed massive support for the proposal.* ◇ *The plan received strong support from farmers.* | **unflagging, unstinting, unswerving, unwavering** *We would like to thank Edna Hales for her unstinting support over the years.* | **growing, increased, increasing | continued, continuing | broad, community, general, majority, mass, popular, public, wide/widespread** *The government has lost majority support in the Assembly.* | **main | limited, lukewarm, qualified** *My idea only received lukewarm support from my colleagues.* | **adequate, sufficient | direct, indirect | long-term** *people who need long-term support at home* | **personal** *The proposal has the personal support of the president.* | **mutual** *The parents of the sufferers get together for mutual support.* | **international | Labour, Liberal, etc. | all-party, bipartisan, cross-party | administrative, economic, electoral, emotional, financial, moral, political, practical, technical, etc.** *She took her sister with her to the interview for moral support.* | **government, official, state | air, military, naval | price** *a price support mechanism*

• VERB + SUPPORT **enjoy, have** *The policy has the support of the community.* | **derive, draw, get, receive** *Which groups does the party draw most of its support from?* | **enlist, find, gain, mobilize, secure, win** *Campaigners have enlisted the support of their local MP.* | **attract, cultivate, drum up, muster, rally, recruit, seek, solicit, whip up | give sb/sth, lend (sb/sth), offer (sb/sth), provide (sb/sth with), throw** *organizations that provide support and advice to small businesses* ◇ *She threw her full support behind him.* | **lose | cut (off), withdraw | need, require** *She will need a lot of emotional support at this difficult time.* | **count on, rely on** *Can I count on your support?* | **announce, come out in, confirm, demonstrate, express, pledge, reaffirm, show** *one of the first scientists to come out in support of 'The Origin of Species'* ◇ *Many TV celebrities have already pledged their support to the appeal.* | **bolster, broaden, build (up), increase, strengthen** *The government is trying to build popular support for an unwinnable war.* | **weaken**

• SUPPORT + VERB **come** *Support came from all sections of the community.* | **grow, rise** *Support for the Liberals has risen to 30 per cent.* | **fall**

• SUPPORT + NOUN **base** *He had no support base within the party.* | **group** *a local support group for single parents* | **network | services**

• PREP. **in ~of** *an intense campaign in support of the proposal* **with/without …~** *The pipeline is to be built with international support.* | **~ against** *Farmers mobilized considerable support against government plans to remove import restrictions.* **~among** *The party wishes to broaden its support among professionals.* **~between** *mutual support between local cooperatives* **~for** *The president has expressed his support for the project.* **~from** *The policy has broad support from industry.*

• PHRASES **a base of support** *Fears that instability* *would return under the Democrats gave the government a broad base of support.* **a cut/decline in support, an expression of support** *The rebel leader claimed to have received expressions of support from all the neighbouring countries.* **a lack of support, a source of support**

2 money to buy food, clothes, etc.

- ADJ. **child, family, social | income**
- VERB + SUPPORT **claim** *Families earning below a certain amount can claim child support.*
- PHRASES **a means of support**

3 sth that carries the weight of sb/sth

- ADJ. **firm | additional, extra | back, knee, etc. | roof**
- VERB + SUPPORT **give sth** *The piece of wood under the mattress is to give my back extra support.*
- PHRASES **hold onto sb/sth for support** *He held onto his wife for support as he left the hospital.*

support *verb*

1 help/encourage/agree with sb/sth

- ADV. **fervently, overwhelmingly, strongly** *The people of this country overwhelmingly support their president.* ◇ *I strongly support the view that education should be available to everyone.* | **fully, wholeheartedly | unanimously | actively** *The group is actively supported by several Members of Parliament.* | **tacitly | enthusiastically | loyally** *He has supported the party loyally for over twenty years.* | **ably** *The soloists were ably supported by the University Singers.*
- VERB + SUPPORT **agree to, be pledged to, pledge to, promise to** *He promised to support me at the meeting.* | **be prepared to, be willing to | fail to, refuse to**
- PREP. **in** *Very few countries supported the United States in its action.*
- PHRASES **be widely supported** *These policies were widely supported in the country.*

2 show that sth is true/correct

- ADV. **strongly** *The evidence strongly supports his claims.*
- VERB + SUPPORT **appear to, seem to, tend to**

3 give sb money

- ADV. **financially | generously**
- VERB + SUPPORT **help (to)**
- PREP. **through** *Her parents supported her all through college.*

supporter *noun*

- ADJ. **active, ardent, close, committed, die-hard, enthusiastic, faithful, fanatical, fervent, great, keen, loyal, passionate, stalwart, staunch, strong** *an active supporter of democratic change* ◇ *The emperor was deserted by his closest supporters before the end of the war.* ◇ *die-hard supporters of the old system* ◇ *Only stalwart supporters of the team stayed to the end of the match.* | **leading, principal, prominent | lifelong, long-time | traditional** *an area of traditional Labour supporters* | **reluctant | government, opposition, party, political | Conservative, Labour, etc. | grass-roots, rank-and-file** *The party has not been listening to the concerns of its grass-roots supporters.* | **football, rugby, etc.**
- QUANT. **army, group, set, team** *Both sets of supporters applauded the fantastic goal.*
- VERB + SUPPORTER **have | attract, rally** *to attract supporters to the cause*
- SUPPORTER + VERB **rally** *Supporters rallied to his assistance when he was declared bankrupt.* | **cheer** *a coachload of cheering football supporters*
- PHRASES **a crowd/rally of supporters** *The opposition leader addressed a rally of 50 000 supporters.*

supportive *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become | remain | find sb**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, incredibly, strongly, very, wonderfully** *strongly supportive of the government's approach* ◇ *All the hospital staff were wonderfully supportive.* | **entirely, fully, totally, wholly** *We are totally supportive of this idea.* | **broadly, generally, largely | mutually** *establishing a mutually supportive and caring relationship*
- PREP. **of** *fully supportive of the changes* **to** *They were all extremely supportive to me.*

suppose *verb*

- ADV. **mistakenly, wrongly**
- VERB + SUPPOSE **be plausible to, be reasonable to** *It's reasonable to suppose that people go into this business in search of fame.* | **be absurd to, be implausible to, be naive to, be unreasonable to**
- PHRASES **be commonly/generally/popularly supposed** *This combination of qualities is generally supposed to be extremely rare.* **reason to suppose sth** *There is no reason to suppose she's lying.*

supposition *noun*

- ADJ. **mere, pure** *That is mere supposition!* | **reasonable** *It is a reasonable supposition that many mothers would welcome the offer of part-time work.*
- VERB + SUPPOSITION **make, work on** *Let's work on the supposition that she meant no offence.* | **be based on | confirm, support | be correct in** *You are correct in your suppositions about the source of his wealth.*
- SUPPOSITION + VERB **be based on sth**
- PREP. **on (a/the) ~** *She was charged on the supposition that she had colluded with her husband in the murders.* | **~ about** *They are making all sorts of suppositions about our possible reaction.* **~ of** *a supposition of innocence*

suppress *verb*

1 stop sth by using force

- ADV. **bloodily, brutally, ruthlessly, vigorously, violently** *A pro-democracy uprising was brutally suppressed.*
- VERB + SUPPRESS **attempt to, seek to, try to | use sth to** *using violence to suppress opposition*
- PHRASES **an attempt to suppress sth**

2 stop sth from being seen/known

- ADV. **completely | effectively** *The medication effectively suppressed the pain.* | **deliberately** *This information had been deliberately suppressed.* | **systematically**
- VERB + SUPPRESS **attempt to, seek to, try to**
- PHRASES **an attempt to suppress sth**

3 stop yourself doing/expressing sth

- ADV. **firmly | hardly** *He could hardly suppress his surprise.* | **instantly** *The disloyal thought was instantly suppressed.* | **quickly**
- VERB + SUPPRESS **be unable to, cannot/could not** *She was unable to suppress a giggle.* | **try to | manage to | be hard to**
- PHRASES **barely suppressed** *Her face was charged with barely suppressed anger.*

suppression *noun*

- ADJ. **total | bloody, brutal, violent**
- PREP. **during/in the ~ of** *He was injured in the bloody suppression of the uprising.*

supremacy *noun*

- ADJ. **total, unchallenged | world | air, military, naval | economic, political | male**
- VERB + SUPREMACY **enjoy, have** *a period when the British enjoyed supremacy in international trade* | **lose | battle for, fight for, struggle for | assert, establish | proclaim | acknowledge, uphold** *to uphold the supremacy of the country's own laws* | **give sb/sth** *Coal gave the region industrial supremacy.* | **maintain | challenge**

- PREP. **~in** *the battle for supremacy in the world economic markets* **~over** *By the end of the war, the prince had established total supremacy over all his rivals.* **~within** *factions fighting for supremacy within the Church*
- PHRASES **a battle/fight/struggle for supremacy, a challenge/threat to sb/sth's supremacy, a symbol of supremacy**

surcharge *noun*

- ADJ. **small** | **tax** *a corporate tax surcharge*
- VERB + SURCHARGE **add, impose, levy, put** *A surcharge of 40 francs was added to our bill.* ◇ *A surcharge is levied on late applications.* | **pay**
- PREP. **~for** *There is a surcharge for excess baggage.* **~on** *There is a 2% surcharge on credit card users.*

sure *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound** *You don't seem very sure to me.* | **make** *Make sure no one finds out about this.* | **make sb** *What makes you so sure she'll come back to you?*
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, damned, quite** | **doubly** *To make doubly sure they would not be disturbed she turned the key in the lock.* | **not altogether, not entirely, not quite, not really** *I'm not altogether sure he would appreciate your efforts.* | **fairly, pretty**
- PREP. **about** *Pottz was confident of taking the American title, but less sure about the world championship.* **of** *You'd better be completely sure of your facts.*

surf *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy** | **distant** *the roar of distant surf*
- VERB + SURF **ride** *dolphins riding the surf*
- SURF + VERB **break, roll (in)** *the sound of surf breaking on the beach* | **roar, thunder**
- PREP. **in the ~** *The children splashed about in the surf.*
- PHRASES **the roar/thunder of (the) surf**

surface *noun*

- ADJ. **even, flat, level, smooth** | **rough, uneven** | **curved** | **firm, hard, solid** | **soft** | **slippery** | **calm, glassy, polished, reflective, shiny** *the glassy surface of the lake* | **frozen** *The ball rolled onto the frozen surface of the pond.* | **inner, interior, internal** *the inner surface of a bone* | **exterior, external, outer** | **lower, upper** | **water** | **floor, ground, land, road, rock, wall** | **kitchen, work/working** *a cleaning product for all kitchen surfaces* | **earth's** *Visible light from the sun passes through the atmosphere to the earth's surface.*
- VERB + SURFACE **come (up) to, rise to** | **bring sth to** *The captain brought the submarine to the surface.* | **scratch, skim, touch** (*all figurative*) *The investigation barely scratched the surface of the city's drug problem.* | **ripple** *The wind rippled the surface of the lake.*
- SURFACE + NOUN **area** | **level** | **layer** *the surface layer of the skin* | **temperature, tension** | **water** *Surface water made driving conditions hazardous.*
- PREP. **above/over the ~, across the ~, along the ~, below/beneath/under the ~** *The ring slowly sank beneath the surface of the mud pool.* ◇ (*figurative*) *She gives the impression of being rather conventional, but under the surface she is wildly eccentric.* **in the ~** *Cracks began to appear in the surface of the earth.* **on a/the ~** *a trail of pink flowers floating on the surface of the water* ◇ (*figurative*) *On the surface his words were funny, but I detected quite a lot of anger behind them.*

surge *noun*

1 of feeling

- ADJ. **great, huge** | **wild** | **abrupt, sudden, swift** | **initial** *His initial surge of euphoria was quickly followed by dismay.* | **fresh, new, renewed** *She felt a fresh surge of anger when he denied lying.* | **familiar** | **adrenalin**
- VERB + SURGE **experience, feel** *He experienced that familiar surge of excitement.*
- SURGE + VERB **sweep (over/through) sb/sth** *A great surge of emotion swept through him.*
- PREP. **with a ~** *He thought of his old teacher with a surge of affection.* | **~of** *a sudden surge of adrenalin*

2 movement/increase

- ADJ. **dramatic, extraordinary, great, huge, massive** | **growing** | **sudden, unexpected** | **temporary** | **last-minute, overnight, recent** *A last-minute surge in ticket sales saved the show from closure.* | **storm, tidal** *The storm surge caused widespread flooding.*
- PREP. **~in** *a dramatic surge in the demand*
- PHRASES **a surge forward** *Police struggled to control the sudden surge forward by the demonstrators.*

surgeon *noun*

- ADJ. **distinguished, eminent, leading, top** | **brilliant** | **pioneering** | **chief, consultant, senior** | **qualified** | **general** | **brain, dental, eye, heart, orthopaedic, plastic, transplant, veterinary** *A plastic surgeon successfully rebuilt his nose.* | **police**
- VERB + SURGEON **be, work as** | **become, qualify as** *He is determined to qualify as a surgeon.* | **see**
- SURGEON + VERB **operate, perform an operation, remove sth** *the surgeon who will operate on you* ◇ *Surgeons removed her right leg above the knee.*
- PHRASES **surgeon's knife** *Many people are terrified at the thought of the surgeon's knife.*

surgery *noun*

1 medical treatment

- ADJ. **major, radical** | **minor** | **extensive** | **further** | **successful, unsuccessful** | **keyhole, laser** | **invasive** *One of his specialities is minimally invasive surgery.* | **elective, emergency, experimental, exploratory, remedial** *They discussed whether patients should have to pay for all elective surgery.* | **cosmetic, plastic** | **general** | **abdominal, brain, bypass, cardiac, gastric, heart, knee, open-heart, orthopaedic, paediatric**
- VERB + SURGERY **have, undergo** *She had minor surgery on her knee.* | **perform** *He has been performing heart surgery for ten years.* | **need, require**
- PREP. **after/before/during ~** *She felt weak for six months after undergoing major abdominal surgery.* | **~for** *emergency surgery for a twisted gut* **~to** *After the accident, she needed extensive plastic surgery to her face.*

2 place/time a doctor/dentist sees patients

- ADJ. **open** | **afternoon, evening, morning** | **dental, doctor's, GP's, veterinary**
- VERB + SURGERY **do, have, hold** *I'll do morning surgery, if you like.* ◇ *We only have a morning surgery.* ◇ *He holds surgery from 10 a.m. to 1 p.m.* | **attend, go to** *those attending the doctor's surgery with physical symptoms* ◇ *I'll have to go to the surgery to pick up the prescription.*
- SURGERY + NOUN **hours**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Dr Smith isn't in the surgery today.*

surname *noun*

- ADJ. **double-barrelled, hyphenated**
- VERB + SURNAME **bear, have** | **address/call sb by** *The teacher addresses the students by their surnames.* | **change** | **adopt, assume, take** *On marriage most women still take their husband's surname.*

surpass *verb*

- ADV. **far** | **comfortably, easily**
- PREP. **in** *The second half of the match comfortably surpassed the first in entertainment value.*

surplus *noun*

- ADJ. **large** *a large grain surplus* | **small**
- VERB + SURPLUS **produce**
- SURPLUS + NOUN **cash, stock**
- PREP. **in ~** *The pension fund is in surplus.*

surprise *noun*

1 feeling of surprise

- ADJ. **great, utter** | **mild, some** | **initial** *After the initial surprise I got to like the place.* | **mock** *His eyebrows rose in mock surprise.*
- QUANT. **element** *The Egyptian team relied on the element of surprise to defeat their stronger opponents.*
- VERB + SURPRISE **express, register, show** | **feign** *He feigned surprise when I went up and said hello.* | **hide** *She was quick to hide her surprise.* | **cause** *The president's remarks caused surprise and embarrassment.*
- PREP. **in ~** *'Walk twenty miles!' repeated the old man in surprise.* **to your ~** *Much to her surprise she enjoyed the party.* **with/without ~** *It was with some surprise that I read of his resignation.* | **~ at** *She showed no surprise at the news.*
- PHRASES **an expression/a look of surprise, a gasp/scream/shriek, etc. of surprise**

2 sth that you did not expect

- ADJ. **big, complete, great, major, total** | **lovely, nice, pleasant, wonderful**
- VERB + SURPRISE **come as** | **get, have** *I had a lovely surprise when I saw Mark there.* | **spring** *Johnson sprung a surprise by beating the favourite in the first round.* | **be in for** *Your mother's in for a bit of a surprise when she gets home.* | **catch sb by, take sb by** *The storm took us completely by surprise.*
- SURPRISE + NOUN **announcement, attack, party, victory, visit**
- PREP. **~ for** *It was a complete surprise for me.* **~ to** *His refusal came as no surprise to his boss.*
- PHRASES **a bit of a/quite a surprise**

surprise *verb*

- ADV. **greatly, really** | **not at all** *The outcome did not surprise me at all.* | **hardly** | **a little, slightly**
- VERB + SURPRISE **wouldn't** *It wouldn't surprise me if they announced they were going to get married.* | **seem to** | **want to** *They wanted to surprise their mother and get the breakfast ready.*

surprised *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound**
- ADV. **extremely, greatly, most, really, terribly, very** | **hardly, not altogether, not at all, not entirely, not in the least, not particularly, not totally, scarcely** *Her father didn't seem at all surprised.* | **almost** | **a bit, faintly, a little, mildly, pretty, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat, vaguely** *She looked faintly surprised at my remark.* | **genuinely** | **clearly, evidently, obviously** | **secretly** | **constantly, continually** *I am constantly surprised by what my fourteen-month-old son understands.* | **momentarily** | **agreeably, pleasantly** *He was pleasantly surprised to discover that he was no longer afraid.*
- PREP. **at** *He sounded surprised at this request.* **by** *She appeared genuinely surprised by this gesture of affection.*

surprising *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **make sth** | **find sth**
- ADV. **extremely, really, very** | **hardly, not altogether, not at all, not entirely, not really, not totally, not wholly, scarcely** *It is hardly surprising that rumours continue to circulate.* | **a bit, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat**

surrender *noun*

- ADJ. **total** | **unconditional** | **immediate**
- VERB + SURRENDER **demand** *The allied commander demanded their immediate and unconditional surrender.* | **force/starve into** *The villagers were starved into surrender.* | **accept, take** *The division took the surrender of a group of some 500 rebels.*
- PREP. **~ to** *the government's surrender to the nationalists' demands*
- PHRASES **a flag of surrender** *The rebels hoisted the white flag of surrender.* **in (mock) surrender** *He raised his hands in mock surrender.* **the terms of surrender** *offering them easy terms of surrender*

surrender *verb*

- ADV. **completely** *After three weeks under siege they surrendered completely.* | **immediately** | **eventually, finally** | **formally** *The British formally surrendered on 31 May.* | **voluntarily**
- VERB + SURRENDER **order sb to** *They were ordered to surrender their weapons to the police.* | **agree to** *They agreed to surrender their claim to the territory.* | **refuse to** | **be forced to**
- PREP. **to** *He surrendered voluntarily to his enemies.* ◇ *The dictator surrendered power to Parliament.*

surrogate *noun*

- VERB + SURROGATE **act as, be**
- SURROGATE + NOUN **father, mother, parent** | **child**
- PREP. **~ for** *He used the Internet as a surrogate for contact with real people.*

surround *verb*

- ADV. **completely, entirely, totally** | **almost, virtually** | **quickly** | **immediately** *Will found himself immediately surrounded by screaming fans.* ◇ *the immediately surrounding area*
- PREP. **with** *They surrounded the building with tanks and armoured vehicles.*

surroundings *noun*

- ADJ. **attractive, beautiful, congenial, elegant, idyllic, lovely, magnificent, picturesque, pleasant** | **comfortable, luxurious, opulent, sumptuous** | **peaceful, quiet, tranquil** | **familiar** | **new, strange, unfamiliar** | **natural** *animals living in their natural surroundings* | **physical** | **immediate** | **historic** | **rural**
- VERB + SURROUNDINGS **adapt to, be in harmony with, blend into, blend (in) with, fit into/in with** *The new hotel blends perfectly with the immediate surroundings.*
- PREP. **amid … ~** *classic French cuisine served amid elegant surroundings* **in … ~** *We spent the afternoon relaxing in the beautiful surroundings of my parents' home.*
- PHRASES **the beauty of the surroundings**

surveillance *noun*

- ADJ. **close, constant, regular, round-the-clock, routine** | **covert** | **aerial, CCTV/closed-circuit television, electronic, satellite, video** | **military, police**
- VERB + SURVEILLANCE **be under** *The suspects are under police surveillance.* | **keep/place/put sb/sth under** *The country's borders are kept under constant surveillance.* | **carry out, mount** *The army carried out covert surveillance of the building for several months.* | **increase, reduce**
- SURVEILLANCE + NOUN **camera, device, equipment** | **method, operation, system** | **aircraft** | **flight** | **team**

survey *noun*

1 study of sth

• ADJ. **comprehensive, detailed, extensive, full, in-depth, major, systematic | brief, quick | sample** *The council undertook a sample survey of primary schools in the county.* | **regular | annual, monthly, etc. | local, national, nationwide, regional | independent | historical** *a historical survey of children's clothing* | **doorstep, postal, questionnaire, telephone | comparative | field | pilot | attitude, customer, opinion** *A recent customer survey showed widespread ignorance about the availability of organic food.* | **market (research), marketing**

• VERB + SURVEY **carry out, conduct, do, make, undertake** *The charity did a survey of people's attitudes to the disabled.* | **commission | participate in, respond to, take part in** *94 per cent of people who took part in the survey said they agreed.*

• SURVEY + VERB **cover sth, deal with sth, examine sth** *The survey covered 74 species.* | **ask sth | claim sth, conclude sth, confirm sth, disclose sth, find sth, highlight sth, identify sth, indicate sth, report sth, reveal sth, say sth, show sth, suggest sth** *A customer satisfaction survey highlighted the need for clearer pricing.*

• SURVEY + NOUN **data, results | method, technique | respondent**

• PREP. **according to a/the ~** *According to the survey, many young adults have experimented with drugs of some kind.* **in a/the ~** *the questions used in the survey* | **~ into** *a survey into the state of English in universities* **~ on** *a survey on drivers' attitudes to the police*

• PHRASES **the findings/results of a survey**

2 of land or a building

• ADJ. **full | aerial | archaeological, geological, geophysical, land, seismic | structural, valuation** *A structural survey of the property revealed serious defects.*

• VERB + SURVEY **carry out, do, make**

survey *verb*

• ADV. **carefully | coldly, coolly, critically** *Her green eyes surveyed him coolly.*

• PREP. **from** *I surveyed the scene from my window.*

survival *noun*

• ADJ. **long-term, short-term | continued | day-to-day | sheer** *fighting for the sheer survival of the museum* | **improved** *The study showed improved survival of patients using the drug.* | **chance, miraculous** *the chance survival of the king's letters to his mistress* | **business, economic, human, national, physical, political**

• VERB + SURVIVAL **fight for | ensure** *The campaign will hopefully ensure the survival of the tiger.* | **improve, prolong** *Chemotherapy can prolong survival in cancer patients.* | **threaten** *The arrival of this South American predator threatened the survival of native species.* | **be crucial for/to, be essential to, be necessary for, be vital for/to** *Adaptability is essential to survival in a changing environment.*

• SURVIVAL + NOUN **chances, rate | skills, strategy | kit** *The expedition members carried flares in their survival kit.* | **instinct**

• PREP. **~ against** *the struggle for survival against such well-armed enemies* **~ as** *his survival as leader*

• PHRASES **a battle/fight/struggle for survival, be a matter/question of survival** *For the poorest people, life was merely a matter of survival.* **a chance of survival** *Doctors gave him only a 50% chance of survival.* **the instinct for survival** *He lacked the common instinct for survival.* **a threat to the survival of sth** *The main threat to the survival of these creatures comes from their loss of habitat.*

survive *verb*

• ADV. **well** (used with another adverb or in the forms **better** or **best**) *The frescoes have survived remarkably well.* ◇ *Seedlings survive better in stony soil.* | **barely, hardly** *The islanders could barely survive without an export crop.* | **just (about), narrowly** *I can just about survive on what I earn.* ◇ *The prime minister narrowly survived a leadership challenge.* | **(for) long** *Nobody can survive long without water.* | **still** *Only one copy of the book still survives.* | **miraculously** *A schoolboy miraculously survived a 25 000-volt electric shock.* | **somehow**

• VERB + SURVIVE **struggle to** *poor people struggling to survive* | **be able to, can/could, manage to | expect (sb/sth) to** *Doctors did not expect him to survive the night.* | **hope to** *She cannot hope to survive long in power.* | **be likely/unlikely to | be lucky to** *Once diagnosed with lung cancer, a patient is lucky to survive for five years.* | **enable sb to, help sb (to)**

• PREP. **as** *Will she survive as party leader?* **from** *Very little has survived from this period of history.* **into** *Very few of the children survived into adult life.* **on** *They survived on roots and berries.* **through** *She survived through two world wars.* **until** *The original apple tree survived until 1911.*

• PHRASES **the only/sole surviving sb/sth** *the only surviving member of her family* **survive intact/unscathed** *Few buildings survived the war intact.*

survivor *noun*

• ADJ. **great** *Like all great survivors, she has a ruthless streak.* | **the last, the only, a rare, the sole** *This grand park is a rare survivor from the eighteenth century.* | **bomb, crash**

• VERB + SURVIVOR **find, pick up, rescue** *The navy helped pick up the survivors.* | **look/search for** *The emergency services searched all night for crash survivors.*

• PREP. **~ from** *a survivor from the Titanic*

susceptible *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem | become | remain | leave sb/sth, make sb/sth** *The operation had left her susceptible to infection.*

• ADV. **easily, extremely, highly, particularly, readily, unusually, very** *certain highly susceptible individuals* | **quite, rather | genetically**

• PREP. **to** *Some dogs are thought to be genetically susceptible to the disease.*

suspect *noun*

• ADJ. **chief, main, number one, prime** *She has been identified as the prime suspect.* | **likely, obvious, possible, potential | usual | murder, terrorist**

• VERB + SUSPECT **have, identify (sb as)** *The police have several suspects.* | **arrest, detain, hold, round up** *The army rounded up all the usual terrorist suspects.* | **interrogate, interview, question | release | extradite, hand over**

• PREP. **~ for** *The letter makes him a possible suspect for her murder.* **~ in** *Two men were arrested as suspects in the bombing.*

suspect *verb*

1 believe that sth may happen/be true

• ADV. **strongly | rather** *I rather suspect they were trying to get rid of me.* | **rightly, wrongly | all along, always** *These revelations only prove what I suspected all along.*

• VERB + SUSPECT **begin to | have reason to** *She had no reason to suspect that Sylvia had not been telling the truth.*

• PHRASES **be widely suspected** *It was widely suspected that the cadets had been acting on orders.*

2 believe sb is guilty of sth
- ADV. **rightly, wrongly**
- PREP. **of** *He was wrongly suspected of the crime.*
- VERB + SUSPECT **have grounds to, have reason to**
- PHRASES **have grounds for suspecting sb/sth**

suspect *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | render sth** *The theory is rendered suspect by its reliance on now discredited sources.*
- ADV. **deeply, highly, very** *Some of the evidence was deeply suspect.* **| increasingly | a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat | politically** *the forced adoption of children of politically suspect citizens*

suspend *verb*

- ADV. **immediately | indefinitely | temporarily** *Funding for the new building has been temporarily suspended.* **| effectively**
- VERB + SUSPEND **agree to, decide to, vote to** *The government has decided to suspend production at the country's biggest lead plant.* **| threaten to | be forced to**
- PHRASES **the power to suspend sth** *The EU should have the power to suspend subsidy payments to farmers who pollute the environment.*

suspense *noun*

- ADJ. **heart-pounding, nail-biting, unbearable**
- VERB + SUSPENSE **keep sb in** *Don't keep us in suspense—did you get the job or not?* **| break** *Don't look at the end of the book yet—you'll break the suspense.* **| build (up), create | bear** *She couldn't bear the suspense a moment longer.*
- SUSPENSE + VERB **be killing sb** (*informal*) *I don't get the results till next week, and the suspense is killing me.*
- SUSPENSE + NOUN **story**
- PREP. **~ about** *They were kept in suspense about their possibility of joining the expedition for several weeks.*
- PHRASES **an agony of suspense** *I suffered agonies of suspense in silence.* **a state of suspense**

suspension *noun*

1 stopping of activity
- ADJ. **total | brief, temporary | lengthy, long | immediate | automatic** *Another caution will result in his automatic suspension from the final.*
- VERB + SUSPENSION **give sb, impose, order** *A four-day suspension was imposed on her.* **| get, incur** *He incurred a suspension on reduced pay.* **| appeal against**
- PREP. **under ~** *a detective under suspension from the Metropolitan Police* **| ~ from** *his suspension from the club*
- PHRASES **a period of suspension** *The athlete could face a lengthy period of suspension if found guilty.*

2 on a vehicle
- ADJ. **front, rear | active, computer-controlled, independent, self-levelling | car, etc.**
- VERB + SUSPENSION **be fitted with, have** *The new model is fitted with computer-controlled suspension.*
- SUSPENSION + NOUN **system**

suspicion *noun*

1 belief that sb has done sth wrong or that sth is true
- ADJ. **strong** *There is strong suspicion on both sides that information is being withheld.* **| the slightest, vague** *I don't think he had the slightest suspicion anything was wrong.* **| awful, dark, horrible, nagging, nasty, sneaking, terrible, worst** *I have a nasty suspicion he's organized a surprise party for me.* ◇ *My worst suspicions were realized when I received my redundancy notice.* **| lingering | growing | groundless, unfounded** *Our suspicions turned out to be groundless.* **| widespread | initial**
- VERB + SUSPICION **entertain, harbour, have** *We had our suspicions as to who did it, but nothing could be proved.* **| be/come/fall under** *He fell under suspicion of tax evasion.* **| arouse, cast, cause, create, fuel, give rise to, invite, raise, sow** *Parked vehicles that arouse suspicion should be reported to the police.* ◇ *information that casts suspicion on one of the most powerful figures in the party* ◇ *Their suspicions were further fuelled when both men failed to turn up to the appointment.* ◇ *odd behaviour that invites suspicion* **| avoid | confide, share** *She confided her suspicions to no one but her diary.* **| confirm, justify** *A telephone call confirmed my worst suspicions.* **| realize | allay, dispel** *She was anxious to allay any suspicion that she had married for money.*
- SUSPICION + VERB **exist** *The suspicion exists that Harries is stealing money from the company safe.* **| linger, remain | grow | attach to sb, fall on sb** *Strong suspicion attached to the victim's boyfriend.*
- PREP. **above/beyond ~** *They thought the head teacher was beyond suspicion.* **on ~ of** *arrested on suspicion of bribery* **| ~ about/as to/concerning** *his suspicions about the candidate's background* **~ against** *Suspicions against the former prime minister remain.*
- PHRASES **the finger of suspicion** *The finger of suspicion pointed to Gilbert Cash, a close friend of the victim.* **grounds for suspicion** *The police must have reasonable grounds for suspicion before they can get a search warrant.* **an object of suspicion** *Boys were an immediate object of suspicion to her.* **under a cloud of suspicion** *He ended his athletics career under a cloud of suspicion when he refused to take a drug test.*

2 absence of trust
- ADJ. **considerable, deep, grave, great | mutual** *an atmosphere of mutual suspicion*
- VERB + SUSPICION **regard/treat/view sb/sth with** *They viewed the new scheme with great suspicion.*

3 small amount of sth
- ADJ. **faint, slightest** *Her remarks lacked even the faintest suspicion of humour.*
- PREP. **~ of** *His mouth quivered in the suspicion of a smile.*

suspicious *adj.*

1 not trusting sb
- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow** *I think they're starting to get suspicious.* **| remain | make sb** *Something about her smile made him suspicious.*
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, profoundly, very** *She remained deeply suspicious of computers.* **| increasingly | a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** *His voice grew faintly suspicious.* **| immediately, instantly | naturally** *I have a naturally suspicious mind.* **| rightly** *British voters are rightly suspicious of attempts to save money in the area of education.*
- PREP. **about** *They were somewhat suspicious about her past.* **of** *She was highly suspicious of his motives.*

2 making you feel that sth is wrong
- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** *We have to carry on as usual or it would look suspicious.* **| consider sth, find sth, regard sth as, treat sth as** *I find it very suspicious that he left halfway through the morning.* ◇ *Police are treating both fires as suspicious.*
- ADV. **highly, very** *acting in a highly suspicious manner* **| not remotely** *Are you sure you haven't seen anything even remotely suspicious?* **| a bit, rather, somewhat**
- PHRASES **see/hear anything suspicious** *Inform the police immediately if you see anything suspicious.*

sustain *verb*

- ADV. **long** *The soil was so badly eroded it could no longer sustain crop production.* **| indefinitely | still**
- VERB + SUSTAIN **be able/unable to, can/could |**

help (to) | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to *This relationship would be very difficult to sustain.*

Swahili *noun*

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

swallow *verb*

1 food/drink, etc.

- ADV. **hastily, quickly | accidentally** *She accidentally swallowed a glass bead.* | **easily** *Liquid food may be more easily swallowed.* | **down** *She swallowed down her breakfast in a hurry.*
- PHRASES **swallow sth whole** *Most snakes swallow their prey whole.*

2 move your throat muscles

- ADV. **deeply, hard | convulsively, drily, nervously, painfully** *She swallowed convulsively, determined not to cry.* | **back** *He swallowed back the lump in his throat.*
- VERB + SWALLOW **have to** *She had to swallow hard before she could speak.*

swan *noun*

- ADJ. **black, white | graceful**
- SWAN + VERB **glide, swim | fly | land | hiss**

swap *noun*

- ADJ. **straight | job | spy**
- VERB + SWAP **do, make** *Let's do a straight swap—your guitar for my bike.* | **agree on/to**
- SWAP + NOUN **deal** *The football managers agreed on swap deals involving their star players.*
- PREP. **~ between** *a spy swap made between East and West Germany* **~ with** *I did a swap with my brother.*

sway *verb*

1 from side to side/backwards and forwards

- ADV. **gently, lightly, a little, slightly | alarmingly, dangerously, precariously** *The stage swayed alarmingly under their weight.* | **dizzily, drunkenly, unsteadily | back and forth, backwards and forwards, from side to side** *The cow's udder swayed from side to side as she walked along.*
- VERB + SWAY **begin to**
- PREP. **in** *The curtains swayed gently in the breeze.*

2 influence sb/sth

- ADV. **easily** *He will not easily be swayed by argument.*

swear *verb*

1 use bad language

- ADV. **loudly | quietly, silently, softly, under your breath | viciously, violently**
- VERB + SWEAR **hear sb** *He heard her swear under her breath.*
- PREP. **at** *He swore loudly at her and left.*

2 make a serious promise

- ADV. **solemnly** *He swore solemnly that he would never hit her again.* | **on oath**
- VERB + SWEAR **be prepared to** *I would be prepared to swear on oath that they didn't see me.* | **make sb** *He made her swear on the Bible that she wouldn't leave him.*
- PREP. **by** *I swear by Almighty God to tell the truth.* **to** *I swear to you, I don't know anything.*
- PHRASES **swear sb to secrecy/silence** *We were all sworn to secrecy about the plan.*

swear word *noun*

- ADJ. **bad, strong** *That's one of the strongest swear words in Spanish.* | **mild**
- QUANT. **string**
- VERB + SWEAR WORD **use | mouth, mutter** *He mouthed a swear word at me through the window.* | **leave out** *I left out the swear words when I told the boss what the staff had said about him.*

sweat *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy | fine, light | clammy** *My shirt stuck to the clammy sweat on my back.* | **cold | stale** *The room smelled of stale sweat.* | **good** *We worked up a good sweat carrying the boxes outside.*
- QUANT. **bead, drop, trickle**
- VERB + SWEAT **break into, break out in/into** *She broke out in a cold sweat when she saw the spider.* | **work up | wake (up) in | bring sb out in | be bathed/covered/drenched/soaked in, be beaded/streaming with, be dripping (with), be slippery/wet with, glisten with** *His forehead was dripping sweat.* ◇ *The workmen were streaming with sweat.* | **mop, wipe** *He mopped the sweat from his brow.*
- SWEAT + VERB **appear, break out** *His hands trembled and sweat broke out all over his body.* | **glisten, stand out** *sweat glistening on her forehead* ◇ *Sweat stood out on his shoulders.* | **bead sth, drip/pour/run from/into/off sth, run/trickle down sth** *Sweat beaded her face.* ◇ *Sweat was running down his back.* | **soak sth**
- SWEAT + NOUN **gland**
- PREP. **in a ~** *She woke up in a cold sweat.*

sweat *verb*

- ADV. **freely, heavily, a lot, profusely | slightly | off** *He's trying to sweat off a few pounds in the gym.*
- VERB + SWEAT **begin to | make sb** *The heat was making us sweat.*
- PREP. **from** *We were sweating profusely from the exertion of moving the furniture.* **with** *He awoke with a pounding heart, sweating with fear.*
- PHRASES **sweat buckets, sweat like a pig** (*both informal*) *After two hours of digging he was sweating like a pig.*

sweater *noun*

- ADJ. **chunky, heavy, thick | light, thin | baggy, sloppy | warm | high-necked, polo-neck, roll-neck, turtleneck, V-neck | hand-knitted, knitted | cashmere, wool, woollen | cricket | Aran, Fair Isle**
- VERB + SWEATER **pull on | peel off | knit**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

sweaty *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, smell | become, get**
- ADV. **really, very | all** *Ugh! You're all sweaty and horrible!* | **a bit, rather**
- PREP. **from** *Her forehead was sweaty from the pain she was in.* **with** *feeling sweaty with embarrassment*

sweep *noun*

- ADJ. **broad, great, long, wide** *The house overlooks the great sweep of the St Lawrence river.* | **grand, grandiose** *He dismissed his assistant with a grandiose sweep of his hand.* | **comprehensive** *Her eyes made a comprehensive sweep of the room.* | **upward** *The upward sweep of her hair was held in place by a comb.* | **elegant, fine, graceful**
- VERB + SWEEP **make, take** *We made a wide sweep south to the River Dee.*
- PREP. **in one ~** (*figurative*) *Thousands of jobs were lost in one broad sweep.* **with a ~** *with a sweep of his arm*

sweet *noun*

- ADJ. **chewy, sugary | boiled**
- QUANT. **bag, box, packet, tube**
- VERB + SWEET **eat, suck** *sucking a boiled sweet*
- SWEET + NOUN **shop**

sweet *adj.*

1 tasting like sugar/smelling pleasant

- VERBS **be, smell, taste** *The air smelled sweet and clean.* | **make sth** | **find sth** *I found the dessert a bit sweet for my taste.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **a bit, quite, rather, slightly** | **enough** *Is the tea sweet enough for you?* | **sickly** *an overpowering, sickly sweet smell*

2 nice

- VERBS **be, look** | **keep sb** (*informal*) *He'd promised her a new car, just to keep her sweet* (= keep her in a good mood).
- ADV. **awfully, really, terribly, very** | **quite, rather**
- PREP. **to** *She was really sweet to me.*
- PHRASES **sweet little** *a rather sweet little cottage*

sweetness *noun*

1 sweet smell/taste

- ADJ. **natural** | **cloying, sickly** | **lingering** *the lingering sweetness of incense*
- QUANT. **hint** *This is a full-bodied wine with just a hint of sweetness.*
- VERB + SWEETNESS **taste**

2 pleasantness

- ADJ. **exquisite, great** | **saccharine** (= false) *She smiled with saccharine sweetness.*
- VERB + SWEETNESS **taste** *to taste the sweetness of military success*
- PHRASES **all sweetness and light** *People think she's all sweetness and light, but she's actually got an awful temper.*

swell *noun*

1 movement of the surface of the sea

- ADJ. **heavy** | **gentle, slight** | **10-foot, 20-foot, etc.** | **Atlantic, ocean** *bobbing up and down like a small boat in a heavy ocean swell*
- SWELL + VERB **break, come/roll in, lift sb/sth, surge up** *The Atlantic swell surged up under them.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The trawler rolled wildly in the heavy swell.* **on/with the ~** *The boat rose and fell with the swell.*

2 curve in sth

- ADJ. **firm, gentle, soft, warm**
- PREP. **~ of** *the gentle swell of her breasts*

swell *verb*

- ADV. **badly** *His sprained ankle had swollen badly.* | **slightly** | **up** *Her feet swelled up after the long walk to the top of the hill.*
- PREP. **with** *His legs had swollen with the heat.*

swelling *noun*

- ADJ. **marked** *There is a marked swelling of the lymph nodes.* | **slight**
- VERB + SWELLING **reduce**
- SWELLING + VERB **occur** | **go down, subside**

swerve *noun*

- ADJ. **sudden** *The car made a sudden swerve to the left.*
- VERB + SWERVE **make**

swerve *verb*

- ADV. **sharply, violently** | **suddenly** | **away**
- PREP. **across** *The car veered out of control and swerved across the road.* **into** *A lorry suddenly swerved into her path.* **off** *The vehicle swerved off the road.*
- PHRASES **swerve to avoid sb/sth** *The car swerved sharply to avoid the bus.*

swift *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **incredibly, remarkably, very** *He made a remarkably swift recovery.* | **fairly**

swig *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, good, long** | **quick**
- VERB + SWIG **have, take**
- PREP. **~ from** *He took a deep swig from the bottle.* **~ of** *She had a quick swig of water and then set off again.*

swim *noun*

- ADJ. **evening, morning, regular** | **quick** *How about a quick swim before breakfast?*
- VERB + SWIM **go for, have, take** *She got up early and went for a swim.*
- PREP. **for a ~** *Are you joining us for a swim?*

swim *verb*

- ADV. **strongly, vigorously** *A water vole swam vigorously upstream.* | **quickly, rapidly** | **slowly** | **around, ashore, back, downstream, out, upstream** *Exhausted, they swam ashore.*
- VERB + SWIM **can/could** | **learn to** | **teach sb to**
- PREP. **across** *swimming across the river* **in** *swimming in the sea* **to** *We swam out to the boat.* **towards** *She swam back towards the shore.*
- PHRASES **go swimming**

swimmer *noun*

- ADJ. **good, keen, strong** *She's a strong swimmer.* | **poor** | **champion, competitive, Olympic**

swing *noun*

1 change in public opinion, sb's mood, etc.

- ADJ. **big, dramatic, huge, sharp, violent** *violent swings in policy* | **modest, small** | **10%, etc.** | **adverse, negative** *The Conservatives suffered an adverse swing of 6%.* | **sudden, wild** *his sudden swings of mood* | **late** *a late swing towards the Tories* | **national** | **electoral** | **mood** *She suffers from severe mood swings.*
- VERB + SWING **need, require** *The party needs a swing of only 2.5% to win the seat.* | **represent** *This represents a swing of 14% towards Labour.* | **suffer (from)**
- PREP. **~ against** *a dramatic swing against the socialists* **~ away from** *the swing away from science in the sixth form* **~ from, ~ in** *a sharp swing in the attitudes of many economists* **~ to/towards/in favour of** *signs of a late swing to the Democrats*

2 swinging movement

- ADJ. **wild** | **backward, forward** | **golf** | **practice**
- VERB + SWING **do, make, take** *the technique for making the perfect golf swing* | **change** | **practise** *golfers practising their swings*
- PREP. **~ at** *He took a wild swing at the ball.*

3 swinging seat

- VERB + SWING **go/play on** *Some kids were playing on the swings.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~**

swing *verb*

1 move backwards and forwards/from side to side

- ADV. **gently, slowly** | **violently, wildly** *She lashed out, her arm swinging wildly.* | **back and forth, backwards and forwards, from side to side, to and fro** *The pendulum swung slowly backwards and forwards.*
- PREP. **from** *I could see him swinging from the branch of a large tree.*

2 move smoothly

- VERB + SWING **slowly | suddenly | sharply** *The road swung sharply round.* | **across, around/round, away, back, down, off, up** *Hearing a sarcastic note in his voice, she swung around to face him.*
- VERB + SWING **let sth** *She let the door swing shut behind her.*
- PREP. **from** *She swung down from the tree in one easy movement.* **into** *He swung up into the saddle and rode off.* **towards** *Niccolò swung towards her.*
- PHRASES **swing open/shut/to**

3 change quickly

- ADV. **rapidly | suddenly | wildly** *The balance of power swung wildly from one party to the other.* | **heavily** *Opinion swung heavily to the left.*
- PREP. **from, to** *Her mood could swing rapidly from gloom to exhilaration.*

swipe *noun*

- ADJ. **good | playful | side**
- VERB + SWIPE **take** *She took a playful swipe at her brother.*
- PREP. **~ at** *The article takes a side swipe at the teachers.*

switch *noun*

1 small button/lever

- ADJ. **mains, master, power** *The mains switch is in the cupboard under the stairs.* | **electric, electrical | dimmer, off, on, on-off, time, timer** *We fitted dimmer switches in all the bedrooms.* ◇ *I couldn't find the off switch on the remote control.* | **ignition, intercom, light**
- VERB + SWITCH **flick, flip, press, pull, throw, turn off/on** *Someone threw a switch and the electricity went off.*
- SWITCH + VERB **activate sth, control sth, operate sth** *This switch controls the heating system.*
- PREP. **by (a) ~** *The light operates by time switch.* **on a ~** *The heater is on a timer switch.* | **~ for** *the switch for the air conditioning*
- PHRASES **at the flick of a switch** *in the days before electricity was available at the flick of a switch* **a bank of switches** *The pilot reached across to the huge bank of switches on his right and flicked a couple.*

2 change that sb makes

- ADJ. **abrupt, immediate, sudden | big | complete | tactical** *The team's manager made a shrewd tactical switch in defence.*
- VERB + SWITCH **make**
- PREP. **~ away from** *There will be no overnight switch away from old voting habits.* **~ back to, ~ between** *the recent switches between direct and indirect taxation* **~ from** *her switch from full-time to part-time work* **~ in** *their abrupt switch in allegiance* **~ (over) to** *theatre directors who make the switch over to films*

switch *verb*

- ADV. **easily, readily | suddenly** *My mind suddenly switched back to my conversation with Jeremy.* | **around/round, back, over**
- VERB + SWITCH **decide to** *He decided to switch tactics.*
- PREP. **between** *The remote control allows you to switch easily between TV channels.* **(away) from** *He switched his allegiance from the British to the French.* **to, with** *We asked them if they would switch places with us.*

switchboard *noun*

- ADJ. **busy | telephone**
- VERB + SWITCHBOARD **call, ring | jam, swamp** *The BBC switchboard was jammed with furious calls.* | **be/work on, operate**
- SWITCHBOARD + NOUN **operator**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *the girl on the switchboard* **through a/the ~** *All calls must pass through the switchboard.*

swollen *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get** *Her legs had got swollen from standing up all day.* | **remain**
- ADV. **badly, grossly, hideously, horribly, very** *His ankle is bruised and quite badly swollen.* ◇ *Her face was still horribly swollen.* | **all** *Her eyes were all red and swollen from crying.* | **a bit, quite, rather, slightly**

swoop *verb*

- ADV. **low** *An eagle swooped low over the trees.* | **suddenly | down, in**
- PREP. **on, over, towards** (*figurative*) *Customs officers swooped on several houses last night looking for drugs.*

sword *noun*

- ADJ. **long, short | double-edged, two-edged** (*both figurative*) *The potential financial boost is a double-edged sword* (= has advantages and disadvantages). | **ceremonial, dress | Samurai**
- VERB + SWORD **be armed with, carry, wear | draw, unsheathe | brandish, wield | thrust** *I thrust my sword into his chest.* | **sheathe**
- SWORD + NOUN **arm | belt | blade | stroke**

syllable *noun*

- ADJ. **final, first, last, middle, second, third, etc. | accented, stressed, strong, tonic | unstressed, weak**
- VERB + SYLLABLE **consist of, contain, have** *words that have three or more syllables* | **pronounce | put the accent/stress on, stress** *Put the stress on the second syllable.* | **split a word into** *She split the word up into syllables so that he could have a go at spelling it.*
- PHRASES **stress falls/is on a syllable** *Normally, the stress falls on the first syllable of a word.* **a word of one, two, etc. syllables** *You'll have to spell it out to him, using words of one syllable* (= explain it in simple language).

syllabus *noun*

- ADJ. **formal, official, prescribed | exam/examination, A level, GCSE, etc. | college, primary, school, secondary school, undergraduate, university | first-year, second-year, etc. | history, mathematics, writing, etc. | narrow, wide | overloaded**
- VERB + SYLLABUS **design, develop, devise, draw up, plan, work out, write | follow, offer, teach, use** *The courses do not follow the syllabus of any particular examination board.* ◇ *Several schools in Britain already teach the baccalaureate syllabus.* | **follow, do, study** *Students do different syllabuses according to their ability.* | **change, extend, reform, revise, widen** *the need to revise the history syllabus* | **cover, get through** *It was impossible to cover the overloaded syllabus in a year.* | **stick to | depart from** *There is little time to depart from the syllabus.* | **fit/plan sth into, integrate sth into/with** *How can computer skills be integrated into the syllabus?* | **be based on | fit in with**
- SYLLABUS + VERB **contain sth, cover sth, include sth** *Does the syllabus cover modern literature?*
- SYLLABUS + NOUN **content, design**
- PREP. **from ~** *questions from last year's syllabus* **in a/the ~** *Let's include that in this year's syllabus.* **on a/the ~** *Is geometry on the GCSE syllabus?* **under a/the ~** *This period of history was not examined under the old syllabus.* | **~ for** *some syllabuses for basic courses in geography* **~ in** *the exam syllabuses in arts subjects*

symbol *noun*

1 image/object/event that is a sign of sth

- ADJ. **clear, dramatic, perfect, potent, powerful, supreme, ultimate** *The Berlin wall was the supreme symbol of the Cold War.* | **universal** *The dove is a universal sym-*

bol of peace. | **outward, physical, visual** *The company car is an outward symbol of the employee's status.* | **ancient, traditional** | **national** | **cultural, military, political** | **divine, religious, sacred** | **Christian, Hindu, etc.** | **fertility, phallic, sexual, virility** *The villagers took fertility symbols into the fields to ensure a good harvest.* | **sex** (= a person famous for being attractive) *He is not most people's idea of a sex symbol.* | **status** *A stressful job can actually be a status symbol.*
- VERB + SYMBOL **adopt sth as, regard sth as, see sth as, use sth as** *Eggs are seen as the symbol of new life.*

2 letter/sign that has a particular meaning
- ADJ. **identifying** *All GM products carry an identifying symbol.* | **abstract, geometric, geometrical** | **graphic, written** | **chemical, Chinese, linguistic, mathematical, musical, phonemic, phonetic, punctuation** *A list of phonetic symbols is given in the front of the dictionary.*
- VERB + SYMBOL **bear, be marked with, have** *The coin bears a Jewish symbol.* ◇ *The bottle had a skull and crossbones symbol on it.* | **display, show, use** *Hotels that show this symbol offer activities for children.* | **look out for, see** *Always look out for the special ABTA symbol at your travel agent's.* ◇ *You can use your tokens wherever you see this symbol.* | **decipher, interpret, understand**
- SYMBOL + VERB **denote sth, indicate sth, mean sth, represent sth** *What does this little symbol mean?*
- PREP. **in ~s** *a message written in symbols* | **~ for** *O is the chemical symbol for oxygen.*

symbolic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** *The case became symbolic of US racial tension.* | **regard sth as, see sth as** *His refusal to accept the honour was seen as highly symbolic.*
- ADV. **deeply, heavily, highly, very** *This is a gruesome and heavily symbolic tale.* | **purely** *The role of monarch is a purely symbolic one.* | **largely, mainly** | **somehow**
- PREP. **of** *These two objects are symbolic of life and death.*

symbolism *noun*

- ADJ. **expressive, rich** | **sound** *Sound symbolism means that we can often guess the meaning of a word from its sound.* | **mythological, pagan, religious** | **political** | **phallic, sexual**
- VERB + SYMBOLISM **be full of, be rich in, contain** *Christian churches are still full of pagan symbolism.* | **interpret, understand**

symmetrical *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **highly** *highly symmetrical crystals* | **exactly, fully, perfectly, quite, wholly** | **almost** | **broadly, fairly** *The plan of the building is broadly symmetrical.*

symmetry *noun*

- ADJ. **perfect, pleasing**
- VERB + SYMMETRY **break, destroy** *The trees break the symmetry of the painting.*
- PREP. **~ between** *the symmetry between different forces*
- PHRASES **an axis/a line of symmetry**

sympathetic *adj.*

1 showing you understand sb's feelings
- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become** | **find sb** *I found the doctors quite sympathetic.*
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, genuinely, immensely, truly, very** *a patient and deeply sympathetic man* ◇ *He sounded genuinely sympathetic.* | **largely** | **fairly, pretty, quite** | **suitably** *She made suitably sympathetic noises down the phone.*
- PREP. **about** *My boss is being very sympathetic about my problems.* **to** *They were extremely sympathetic to my plight.* **towards** *I did not feel sympathetic towards them.*

2 in agreement with sb/sth
- VERBS **appear, be, seem**
- ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, very** | **entirely** | **less than** | **broadly, generally, quite** | **politically**
- PREP. **to** *The government is broadly sympathetic to our ideas.*

sympathize *verb*

1 understand sb's feelings/problems
- ADV. **deeply, really** *I sympathize deeply with his family.*
- VERB + SYMPATHIZE **can/could** *I can really sympathize with John.* | **be easy to, be hard not to** *It is hard not to sympathize with her dilemma.*
- PREP. **with** *We sympathized with the bereaved family.*

2 agree with sb
- ADV. **entirely, fully**
- PREP. **with** *I entirely sympathize with this view.*

sympathy *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, deep, genuine, great, heartfelt, real** | **scant** | **general, popular, public, widespread**
- VERB + SYMPATHY **be full of, feel, have** *She seemed to feel some sympathy for the patients.* | **express, extend, give sb, offer (sb), show (sb)** *She expressed her deepest sympathy for him.* ◇ *She says I haven't given her enough sympathy.* ◇ *We extend our sympathy to the families of the victims.* | **expend, waste** | **demand, want** *I don't want your sympathy!* | **deserve** | **arouse, attract, earn, elicit, engage, evoke, excite, gain, get, rouse, win** *Their plight aroused considerable public sympathy.* ◇ *He didn't get much sympathy from anyone.* | **lose**
- SYMPATHY + VERB **go out to sb, lie with sb** *Our deepest sympathy goes out to his wife and family.* ◇ *My sympathy lies with his wife.*
- PREP. **in ~ with** *Nurses came out on strike in sympathy with the doctors.* **out of ~** *She married him more out of sympathy than love.* **with ~** *Desmond eyed her anguished face with sympathy.* | **~ for** *He has a total lack of sympathy for young people.* **~ to** *The government showed sympathy to their cause.* **~ towards** *He acted with some sympathy towards his victim.* **~ with** *She had every sympathy with him.*
- PHRASES **a feeling of sympathy, full of sympathy, have every/little sympathy for sb, a lack of sympathy, a pang of sympathy** *I felt a pang of sympathy for her.*

symphony *noun*

- ADJ. **Beethoven's 5th, Dvorak's 7th, etc.** | **C major, D minor, etc.**
- VERB + SYMPHONY **compose, write** | **conduct, perform, play** *Bruckner's Symphony No. 5, conducted by Hugh Wolff*
- SYMPHONY + NOUN **orchestra** *the Chicago Symphony Orchestra* | **concert**
- PHRASES **symphony No. 2, etc.**

symptom *noun*

- ADJ. **characteristic, classic, common, typical** | **minor, secondary** | **chronic** | **acute** | **intermittent, recurrent** | **dangerous, distressing, potentially fatal, serious, severe, unpleasant** | **mild** | **visual, visible** *These virus infections display obvious visual symptoms.* | **behavioural, mental, neurotic, physical, physiological, psychiatric, psychological, psychosomatic, schizophrenic** *the physical symptoms that are the result of stress* | **abdominal, respiratory, urinary** | **allergic, asthmatic, flu, flu-like, menopausal, stress, withdrawal**
- VERB + SYMPTOM **display, exhibit, experience, have, present with** (*medical*), **report, show, suffer (from)** *She had all the classic symptoms of the disorder.* ◇ *The pa-*

tient was admitted presenting with flu-like symptoms. | **develop, get** *Not all carriers of the disease develop symptoms.* | **bring about, cause, produce** | **aggravate, exacerbate** *Cigarettes can aggravate the symptoms of a cold.* | **ignore** *He had been ignoring the symptoms for years.* | **detect, diagnose, identify, interpret, recognize** *teaching nursing staff how to identify and treat the symptoms of poisoning* | **control, reduce, relieve, suppress, treat**

- SYMPTOM + VERB **appear, arise, develop, occur** | **persist, recur** *If symptoms persist, consult your doctor.* | **worsen** | **disappear**
- PHRASES **the onset of symptoms** *40 per cent of patients were treated within three hours of the onset of symptoms.* **symptom free** *after two symptom free years*

synchronize *verb*

- ADV. **carefully** | **exactly, precisely**
- PREP. **with** *The timing of the gun was precisely synchronized with the turning of the plane's propeller.*

syndicate *noun*

- ADJ. **crime, criminal, drug/drugs, smuggling** | **banking, insurance** | **lottery, pools**
- VERB + SYNDICATE **form** | **run** | **join**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *I'm in a lottery syndicate at work.*
- PHRASES **a member of a syndicate**

syndrome *noun*

- ADJ. **acute** | **clinical**
- VERB + SYNDROME **have, suffer from** | **develop** | **cause, produce** | **diagnose, recognize** | **be known as** *This phenomenon has become known as the 'Californian syndrome'.*
- SYNDROME + VERB **affect sb, be present in sb, occur** *This syndrome mostly affects women in their forties.*

synonymous *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain** | **make sth** *His deeds had made his name synonymous with victory.* | **consider sth, regard sth as, see sth as, treat sth as**
- ADV. **completely, exactly** | **almost, largely, more or less, roughly, virtually**
- PREP. **with** *Until the late eighteenth century, 'opera' was almost synonymous with Italian opera.*

syringe *noun*

- ADJ. **clean, sterile** | **used** *a beach scattered with used syringes* | **disposable** | **hypodermic**
- VERB + SYRINGE **fill, prepare** | **draw sth into** *The doctor drew a dose of morphia into the syringe.* | **share**
- SYRINGE + NOUN **exchange** *a syringe exchange scheme*

system *noun*

1 set of ideas/rules for organizing sth

- ADJ. **current, existing** *looking to replace the existing system* | **modern** | **old-fashioned, outdated** | **traditional** | **standard** | **complex, complicated, elaborate, intricate, sophisticated** | **simple** | **comprehensive** | **coherent** | **effective, efficient** | **viable, workable** | **inefficient, wasteful** | **flexible** | **rigid** | **stable** | **foolproof** | **imperfect, perfect** | **unique** | **ad hoc** | **centralized, decentralized** | **closed, open** *a closed system with a rigidly defined set of choices* | **bureaucratic** | **hierarchical** | **authoritarian, oppressive, repressive** | **equitable, fair** | **corrupt, unjust** | **bankrupt** *The governor referred to a prison system that was bankrupt of compassion.* | **state** *The law applies to schools within the state system.* | **local government, parliamentary, political** | **electoral, voting** | **banking, economic, monetary** | **tax, taxation** | **educational, examination, school, university** | **court, judicial, justice, legal, penal, prison** | **benefit/benefits, national/social insurance, social security, welfare** | **care, health (care)** | **rail, railway, road, subway, transport** | **communication** | **warning** | **security** | **back-up, support** | **accounting, administrative** | **disciplinary** | **agricultural** | **commercial, market** | **cultural, social** | **grammatical, language** | **classification, classificatory, filing** | **belief, value** | **capitalist, caste, communist** | **multi-party, two-party** | **two-tier**
- VERB + SYSTEM **build, create, design, develop, devise, set up** | **adopt, apply, implement, introduce** *implementing a new system of stock control* | **advocate** | **join** | **be part of** *They are all part of the corrupt system we need to change.* | **manage, operate, run** | **manipulate, play, use** *playing the legal system to his own advantage* | **organize** *How is the sytem organized?* | **adapt, change, transform** | **tinker with** | **improve, modernize, overhaul, refine, reform, reorganize, simplify, streamline, strengthen** *modernizing their judicial system* | **perfect** | **perpetuate** *perpetuating an unjust system* | **clog up** *a backlog of cases clogging up the system* | **destabilize, disrupt, undermine, weaken** *attempts to disrupt the rail system* | **dismantle** | **abandon, do away with, scrap** | **destroy, overthrow** | **replace** | **restore** | **criticize, fight, rebel against** *She spent her years at school fighting the system.* | **defend, support** | **beat, buck** *You can never beat the system!* | **bypass** *trying to bypass the bureaucratic system* | **blame** *It s not your fault—blame the system.*
- SYSTEM + VERB **exist** | **be based on sth, rest on sth** *Every political system rests on certain fundamentals.* | **be aimed at sth, be geared to sth** | **allow sth, enable sth** *This system allows you to study at your own speed.* | **offer sth, provide sth** | **be in operation, be operational, function, work** *proving that the system works effectively* | **break down, collapse**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *at another point in the transport system* **under a/the ~** *Under the new system, all children will be monitored by a senior social worker.* | **~ for** *devising an appropriate system for presenting the required information*

2 group of things/parts that work together

- ADJ. **sophisticated** | **computer, computer-based, electronic, manual, mechanical** | **audio, sound, stereo** | **satellite** | **air-conditioning, alarm, electronic mail, exhaust, heating, life-support, phone, plumbing, public address, sprinkler, telephone, ventilation** | **river, road**
- VERB + SYSTEM **build, create, develop** | **improve, streamline** | **install** *For this month only, installing the system is free.*
- SYSTEM + VERB **function, operate, work** | **break down, fail** *The air-conditioning system failed.*
- PREP. **in/with a/the ~** *a fault in the sound system*

3 the body, or parts of it that work together

- ADJ. **auditory, circulatory, digestive, immune, (central) nervous, reproductive, respiratory, sensory, visual**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *a valve in the circulatory system*
- PHRASES **a shock to the system** *Returning to work after a long break can be a terrible shock to the system.*

4 workings of a computer

- ADJ. **advanced, powerful** | **interactive** | **online** | **compatible, incompatible** | **computer, PC** | **operating, operational** | **database, management, information** | **processing, recognition, retrieval** *an information retrieval system* | **server, software** | **parallel**
- VERB + SYSTEM **install** | **boot up, reboot** *Just reboot the system and try again.* | **build, design, develop** *designing a voice recognition system* | **launch**
- SYSTEM + VERB **run** *The system runs on this workstation.* | **crash, fail, go down** *The entire computer system went down.*
- SYSTEM + NOUN **software**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *faults in the data processing system*

Tt

table *noun*

1 piece of furniture

- ADJ. **big, high, huge, large, long | little, low, small | circular, rectangular, round, square | drop-leaf, fold-away, folding, trestle** *We arranged the party food on a trestle table in the garden.* | **baize-covered, glass-topped, white-clothed, white-napped | glass, plastic, wooden | polished, scrubbed | ramshackle, rickety, rough | empty** *We found an empty table at the back of the restaurant.* | **bare | corner, window** *We'll take the corner table near the bar, please.* | **dining (room), kitchen** *She often does her homework at the kitchen table.* | **breakfast, dinner, lunch** *We never discuss politics at the breakfast table.* | **conference, negotiating** *They spent hours around the negotiating table.* | **billiard, ping-pong, pool, snooker, table-tennis | makeshift** *We turned the box upside down and used it as a makeshift table.*
- VERB + TABLE **sit around/round, sit (down) at** *They were all five of them sitting round the kitchen table.* | **get up from, leave** *He left the table in a hurry.* | **lay, set** *Please lay the table for six.* | **clear** *You clear the table and I'll wash the dishes.* | **book, reserve** *We booked a table in our favourite restaurant for 8 p.m.*
- TABLE + NOUN **decorations | edge**
- PREP. **across the ~** *She leaned across the table towards him.* **around/round the ~** *We gathered round the table to hear his news.* **at the ~** *to sit down at the table* **on the ~** *She put the vase on the table.* **over the ~** *They flirted over the dinner table.* **under the ~** *The potato rolled under the table.*
- PHRASES **the centre/middle of the table, the edge/end/head of the table** *My father always sits at the head of the table.* **a round table discussion/meeting, round table talks** *All parties took part in the round table discussions on the peace process.*

2 list of facts/figures

- ADJ. **statistical | league** *The league table shows the Danish team in first place with eight points.*
- VERB + TABLE **compile, draw (up) | see** *See Table XII for population figures.*
- TABLE + VERB **show sth**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He showed the price fluctuations in a statistical table.* ◇ *United are second in the table.*
- PHRASES **the bottom/top of the table, mid-table** *The team will be lucky to finish the season mid-table.*

tablet *noun*

1 pill

- ADJ. **Ecstasy, paracetamol, saccharin, sleeping, vitamin, etc.** *Take two paracetamol tablets with water.*
- VERB + TABLET **take**
- PHRASES **in tablet form** *The drug is now available in tablet and capsule form.*

2 slab

- ADJ. **clay, stone, wax, etc. | commemorative, memorial** *We had a memorial tablet put up on the church wall.*

tabloid *noun*

- ADJ. **daily, Sunday | national | popular**
- VERB + TABLOID **read**
- TABLOID + NOUN **journalism, newspaper, press** *He believes that the tabloid press has behaved disgracefully.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *I despair when I read what passes for news in some of the tabloids.*

taboo *noun*

- ADJ. **rigid, strict | deep-seated | cultural, gender, religious, sexual, social | incest**
- VERB + TABOO **observe** *his failure to observe the tribe's rigid taboos* | **break, flout, violate | break down** *the problem of breaking down deep-seated cultural taboos* | **reinforce**
- TABOO + NOUN **subject**
- PREP. **~ about** *the taboo about religion in British society* **~ against** *the taboo against marrying a foreigner* **~ on** *reinforcing their taboos on sexuality* **~ surrounding** *the taboos surrounding menstruation*

taboo *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | remain | consider sth, regard sth as** *Sex is considered taboo as a topic for discussion.*
- ADV. **strictly** *The subject of death was strictly taboo in their society.*
- PREP. **to** *Such work was taboo to women.*

tack *noun*

1 way of achieving sth

- ADJ. **right, wrong**
- VERB + TACK **go off on, take, try** *New research is taking a different tack.* ◇ *The interviewer decided to try another tack.* | **change, switch** *She suddenly changed tack, taking him by surprise.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *I think you're on the wrong tack with that approach.*
- PHRASES **a change of tack**

2 direction of a sailing boat in relation to the wind

- ADJ. **port, starboard | opposite**
- VERB + TACK **sail on** *We were sailing on starboard tack.* | **change, swing onto/to** *The yacht swung to the opposite tack.*

tackle *noun*

- ADJ. **bad, crunching, ferocious, high, hard, late, scything, strong** *Their captain was sent off for a high tackle on Cooper.* | **brave, skilful | cover, last-ditch** *Only a last-ditch tackle by Song prevented Raul from scoring.* | **sliding | flying** *A security guard brought him down with a flying tackle.* | **rugby**
- VERB + TACKLE **execute, get in, go in for, make** *I managed to get in a sliding tackle, but he scored anyway.*
- PREP. **~ from** *a crunching tackle from her opponent* **~ on** *He was booked for a tackle from behind on Morris.* | **in a/the ~** *She lost the ball in a tackle.*

tackle *verb*

1 deal with sth difficult

- ADV. **properly, seriously | directly, head-on** *The drugs problem has to be tackled head-on.* | **effectively, successfully**
- VERB + TACKLE **attempt to, try to | help (to) | fail to** *failing to tackle the key issues*
- PREP. **with** *The problem is being tackled with a range of measures.*
- PHRASES **a way of tackling sth**

2 in sport

- ADV. **hard** *He can run fast and tackle hard.*

tact *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great, the utmost**
- VERB + TACT **have | call for, need, require** *The situation called for considerable tact.* | **display, exercise, show, use** *Employees are trained to show tact and patience with difficult customers.*
- PREP. **with ~** *The incident should have been handled with more tact by the police.*
- PHRASES **a lack of tact, the soul of tact** *Their host, who was the soul of tact, never mentioned the incident again.* **tact and diplomacy/sensitivity**

tactic *noun*

- ADJ. **subtle | legitimate** *Some players see injuring their opponent as a legitimate tactic.* | **devious, dubious, underhand | aggressive, bully-boy, bullying, extreme, guerrilla, heavy-handed, militant, revolutionary, scare, shock, strong-arm, terror, violent | non-violent, softly-softly | psychological | smear | avoidance, delaying, diversionary, spoiling, stalling** *Children are adept at delaying tactics.* | **negative, time-wasting** *The coach was criticized for his negative tactics.* | **short-term | campaigning, marketing, negotiating, promotional | military, naval, parliamentary, police, political**
- VERB + TACTIC **decide on, discuss, plan, talk (about), work out** *She decided on a stalling tactic.* | **adopt, apply, deploy, employ, try, use** *the temptation to use underhand tactics* ◇ *They were desperate enough to try shock tactics.* | **resort to, stoop to** *I refuse to stoop to such bullying tactics.* | **change, rethink, switch** *They would do well to switch tactics.* | **demand, require** *Longer races demand different tactics.*
- TACTIC + VERB **pay off, succeed, work** *His strong-arm tactics paid off.* | **fail**
- PREP. **~ for** *teaching parents tactics for dealing with aggressive children*

tag *noun*

1 label

- ADJ. **identity, name, price** *The baby had a plastic name tag on its ankle.* ◇ *Despite a price tag of £100 000, the car sold was sold in two days.* | **security | gift, luggage | ankle, ear, wrist**
- VERB + TAG **attach, put** *I still have to put gift tags on all the presents.*
- PHRASES **sth carries/has a price tag of £500/$10 000, etc.** *This designer suit carries a price tag of £2 000.*

2 reputation

- VERB + TAG **lose, shake off, shed** *The president made several jokes in an attempt to shake off his 'humourless' tag.*

tail *noun*

1 of an animal, a bird, etc.

- ADJ. **long | short | bushy, curly, curved, forked, pointed | muscular, prehensile**
- VERB + TAIL **flick, swish, thrash, wag, whisk** *The dog wagged its tail furiously.* | **dock** *It used to be fashionable to dock horses' tails.*
- TAIL + VERB **twitch, wag, wave** *The dog ran out with its tail wagging madly.*
- TAIL + NOUN **feathers, fin**

2 of a thing

- TAIL + NOUN **section** *The plane's tail section had broken off.* | **fin, light**
- PREP. **at the ~** *the truck at the tail of our convoy*
- PHRASES **nose to tail** *Traffic which used to be nose to tail now flows freely.*

tailor *verb*

- ADV. **carefully | exactly | accordingly, individually, specially, specifically** *We identify your needs, and tailor your training accordingly.*
- PREP. **for** *a system that is specially tailored for small firms* **to** *The account offered by the bank will be tailored exactly to your needs.*

tailored *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **beautifully, elegantly, exquisitely, finely, immaculately, superbly** *wearing a beautifully tailored suit* | **perfectly | expensively**

take *verb*

- ADV. **well | badly** *She took the news of her father's death very badly.* | **seriously** *I wanted to be taken seriously as an artist.* | **philosophically** *Harry took his rejection philosophically.*
- PREP. **as** *He took what I said as a criticism.*

PHRASAL VERB

take to sth

- ADV. **kindly** *They won't take kindly to being ordered about.*

takeover *noun*

- ADJ. **attempted, proposed | hostile | agreed | company | communist, military**
- TAKEOVER + NOUN **attempt, bid** *a hostile takeover bid* | **offer | battle** *The consortium won a fierce takeover battle for the engineering group.*

takings *noun*

- ADJ. **the day's, the month's, etc. | weekly | gross, net | cash | record** *Store managers are predicting record takings this Christmas.* | **bar, box office**
- VERB + TAKINGS **add up, check, count (up) | boost** *The shop's new look has boosted its takings considerably.* | **cut**
- TAKINGS + VERB **be up/down, drop, rise** *Box office takings are up by 40% on last year.*
- PREP. **in ~** *She was losing about £100 a week in takings.* | **~ from** *the takings from wines and beers*

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

tale *noun*

- ADJ. **long, rambling | amazing, bizarre, curious, extraordinary, fantastic, magical, marvellous, strange | awful, dire, sad, sorry, terrible** *the sorry tale of his marriage breakdown* | **dreary** *She was tired of hearing the same dreary tale of drunkenness and violence.* | **chilling, gruesome, hair-raising, horror, macabre | mysterious, spooky | funny, humorous, witty | foolish | lurid, spicy, tawdry | fanciful, far-fetched, incredible, tall, unlikely** *a tall tale that would fool no one* | **old wives' | rags-to-riches** *the rags-to-riches tale of an orphan who becomes a star* | **epic, heroic** *an epic tale of courage and heroism* | **cautionary, moral, morality | folk, traditional | childhood | fairy** (*often figurative*) *Winning the French Open was a fairy-tale end to her career.* | **romantic**
- VERB + TALE **narrate, regale sb with, relate, tell (sb)** *She regaled us with tales of her wild youth.* | **invent, make up, spin**
- TALE + VERB **begin | unfold | concern sb/sth, involve sb/sth | be set in …** *a tale set in 19th-century Moscow* | **be based on sth**
- PREP. **~ about** *a tale about a hungry snake* **~ of** *tales of adventure* ◇ *the curious tale of the man who sold his hair*
- PHRASES **a tale of woe** (= about failure, bad luck, etc.),**(have) a tale to tell** *Each of the survivors had a terrible tale to tell.* **tell tales** (= to say things about sb that are untrue or that they would prefer to be secret)

talent *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, exceptional, extraordinary, formidable, genuine, great, major, outstanding, prodigious, rare, real, remarkable, special, tremendous, undoubted, unique | God-given, inborn, innate, natural, raw** *Hard work is important, but it is no substitute for raw talent.* | **hidden, undiscovered | mediocre | fresh, new** *The company is always looking out for new talent.* | **young | precocious | home-grown, local** *one of the few teams that relies on home-grown talent* | **top** *We are losing our top talent to other countries who pay more.* | **acting, artistic, creative, literary, managerial, musical, scientific, vocal, writing**
- VERB + TALENT **have, possess** *The lad has undoubted talent.* | **demonstrate, display, reveal, show | flaunt, show off** *The banquet gave the chef a chance to flaunt his talents.* | **direct, redirect, turn** *After making her name as a singer, she turned her talents to acting.* | **discover, recognize, spot, unearth** *She has a keen eye for spotting talent.* ◇ *United have unearthed a real talent in this young defender.* | **build (on), cultivate, develop, harness, make the most of, nurture, realize, tap, use, utilize** *an effort to develop his creative talents to the full* ◇ *The theatre visits schools to tap young talent.* | **squander, waste** *His parents accused him of wasting his talents and abilities.*
- TALENT + VERB **lie** *Her talents lay in organization.*
- TALENT + NOUN **scout, spotter | competition, contest, show**
- PREP. **of ~** *He is a violinist of exceptional talent.* **with/without ~** *kids with musical talent* | **~ for** *You have a natural talent for storytelling.*
- PHRASES **a man/woman, etc. of many talents, a wealth of talent** *There is a wealth of talent out there in our schools.* **a pool of talent** *Hollywood directors have a marvellous pool of acting talent to draw from.*

talented *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound**
- ADV. **exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, highly, hugely, immensely, incredibly, outstandingly, really, supremely, truly, very** *an extraordinarily talented designer* ◇ *Some of these young musicians are hugely talented.* | **not particularly | quite | precociously** *a precociously talented youngster* | **artistically, musically**

talk *noun*

1 a conversation

- ADJ. **good, little** (*often ironic*), **long, quiet, serious** *I will have to have a little talk with that young lady* (= tell her that I disapprove of sth). | **heart-to-heart, intimate**
- VERB + TALK **have**
- TALK + NOUN **show**
- PREP. **~ about** *I enjoyed our talk about the old days.* **~ with** *I need to have a heart-to-heart talk with her.*
- PHRASES **(exchange/make) small talk** (= to talk politely about unimportant things) *He was never very good at making small talk with her parents.*

2 talking

- ADJ. **excited, heady** *There was excited talk of emigrating to America.* | **ridiculous, wild** *There is ridiculous talk of her breaking the world record soon.* | **careless, dangerous, idle, loose | fighting, tough | straight** *She likes straight talk and hates hypocrites.* | **double** *The president's true agenda was hidden in political double talk.* | **dirty, filthy | cheap, easy, empty, mere** *The chairman's boasts about future profits was just cheap talk.* | **fine, grand** (*ironic*) *What all the fine talk came down to was hard cash.* | **baby** *I never used baby talk to my little girl.* | **pillow** *the pillow talk of lovers*
- TALK + VERB **turn to sth** *Talk turned to money and tempers began to fray.*
- PREP. **~ about/of** *All this talk of the president resigning is nonsense!*
- PHRASES **be just talk** *'You think it's just talk?' 'No, I think it's true.'* **for all the talk of sth** *For all the talk of bringing their children up the same, the boys ended up never doing any of the cooking.*

3 (*also* **talks**) discussions between official groups

- ADJ. **lengthy | high-level, top-level | informal | formal, official | private, secret | open | direct, face-to-face | wide-ranging | all-party, bilateral, inter-party, joint, multilateral, round-table, trilateral, tripartite | fresh, further | fruitless, inconclusive | crisis, emergency, urgent | exploratory, preliminary | constitutional, political | arms, pay, peace, trade**
- QUANT. **round** *A further round of talks is expected in March.*
- VERB + TALK **conduct, have, hold** *The two governments held secret talks on the nuclear threat.* | **broker, host | attend, enter | initiate, open | break off, pull out of, walk out of** *The union has broken off talks with the management.* | **cancel, suspend | reopen, resume**
- TALK + VERB **be scheduled** *Talks were scheduled for Rome the following month.* | **take place** *The peace talks will take place in Cairo.* | **begin, open, start | end | resume | be aimed at sth, be designed to** *the latest round of talks aimed at ending the civil war* | **centre on sth, concentrate on sth, cover sth, deal with sth, focus on sth** *The talks centred on bilateral trade.* | **produce sth** *Talks produced agreement on an end to the occupation.* | **be deadlocked, break down, collapse, fail, founder, stall** *The talks remain deadlocked over spending plans.* ◇ *The talks foundered on the issue of compensation.*
- PREP. **during ~** *The agreement was concluded during talks in Beijing.* **in ~** *He is currently in talks with two football clubs.* | **~ about/on/over** *holding talks over the political future of the province* **~ between** *the failure of talks between the two communities* **~ with** *The delegation arrived for talks with their government.*

4 lecture

- ADJ. **entertaining, informative, interesting | introductory | pep, sales, team | radio**
- VERB + TALK **give | attend, go to**
- TALK + VERB **be entitled sth** *She gave a very entertaining talk entitled 'My life and hard times'.*
- PREP. **~ about/on** *Did you go to the talk on Peru?*

talk *verb*

- ADV. **loudly | quietly | at length | continuously, endlessly, incessantly, non-stop | freely | openly** *She talked quite freely about her work.* | **enthusiastically, excitedly | politely | glibly | vaguely** *He had talked vaguely of going to work abroad.* | **casually | earnestly** *a group of students talking earnestly* | **sensibly** *Let's talk sensibly about this.* | **wildly**
- VERB + TALK **be able to, can/could** *I can't talk about it just now.* | **need to, want to** *I need to talk to you.* | **begin to | be easy to** *He was so easy to talk to.* | **be difficult to, be hard to | hear sb, listen to sb, overhear sb** *I loved to hear him talk about the old days.* | **make sb** *The police questioned him for four hours, trying to make him talk.* | **let sb** *Just shut up and let me talk for a minute.*
- PREP. **about** *talking about their new clothes* **of** (*formal*) *We often talked of the war.* **to** *I'll talk to John this afternoon.* **with** *I've talked with him on the telephone.*
- PHRASES **start/stop talking**

tall *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get, grow**
- ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, unusually, very | fairly, quite, rather** *She is quite tall for her age.*

tame *adj.*

1 not afraid of people
- VERBS **be, look, seem | become**
- ADV. **extremely, very | almost | quite**

2 boring
- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become | find sth** *I found office work very tame after army life.*
- ADV. **positively, very** *living a life that makes Wild West movies look positively tame* | **a bit, a little, pretty, rather, somewhat** *To us it was all pretty tame stuff.*

tan *noun*
- ADJ. **deep, golden | healthy | all-over | fake**
- VERB + TAN **have | show off, sport** *Show off your tan in this little white top.* | **get, top up, work on** *I want to top up my tan on the sunbed at the gym.*
- PREP. **against your ~** *His teeth were a gleaming flash of white against his tan.*

tangle *noun*
- ADJ. **bewildering, confused** *a confused tangle of voices* | **dense, matted** *a dense tangle of undergrowth*
- VERB + TANGLE **get into** *He got into a tangle with his budget figures.* | **sort out, unravel** *The legal tangle was never really unravelled.*
- PREP. **in a ~** *This string's in a tangle.*

tangled *adj.*
- VERBS **be, look | become, get**
- ADV. **hopelessly | all** *My hair had got all tangled.* | **a bit** *Your hair looks a bit tangled.* | **up**
- PREP. **in** *My legs got hopelessly tangled in the rape.*

tank *noun*

1 container
- ADJ. **empty, full | glass, steel | 4-foot, 50-gallon, 80-litre, etc. | fuel, gas, oil, oxygen, petrol, water** *the hot and cold water tanks* | **storage | septic, slurry | fish**
- VERB + TANK **fill**
- TANK + VERB **contain sth**
- PREP. **in/into a/the ~** *Put a little fish food into the tank.* | **~ of** *a full tank of petrol*

2 military vehicle
- ADJ. **armoured, army, battle**
- VERB + TANK **climb into, get into | drive**
- TANK + VERB **roll** *Tanks rolled in to end the siege.*
- TANK + NOUN **regiment**

tanker *noun*

1 ship carrying oil or petrol
- ADJ. **giant, huge, large | gas, oil | coastal**
- TANKER + VERB **carry sth, transport sth** *a tanker carrying thousands of tons of crude oil* | **run aground** *The tanker ran aground in heavy seas and is breaking up on the rocks.* | **break up | spill sth** *A damaged tanker has spilled millions of gallons of oil into the sea.*
- TANKER + NOUN **disaster, spill** *the worst year for tanker spills for ten years* | **fleet | route | traffic | operator, owner**

2 heavy vehicle for carrying liquids
- ADJ. **fuel, milk, petrol | road**
- VERB + TANKER **drive**
- TANKER + VERB **carry sth**
- TANKER + NOUN **driver**

tanned *adj.*
- VERBS **be, look | become, get**
- ADV. **deeply, very** *His blue eyes glittered in his deeply tanned face.* | **lightly, slightly | healthily**

tantrum *noun*
- ADJ. **temper**
- VERB + TANTRUM **have, throw** *He threw a tantrum on the school bus.* | **deal with | ignore**

tap *noun*

1 for water, gas, etc.
- ADJ. **hot, hot-water | cold, cold-water | mixer | dripping, running** *the sound of a dripping tap* | **leaky | bath, bathroom, kitchen**
- VERB + TAP **turn (off/on)** *Turn the tap clockwise.* | **run** *You have to run the tap a long time before the hot water comes.*
- TAP + VERB **drip, run** *Someone has left the tap running.* | **leak**
- TAP + NOUN **water | washer**
- PREP. **on ~** *The pub has two sorts of beer on tap* (= in a barrel with a tap on it). ◇ (*figurative*) *We have this sort of information on tap* (= available to be used at any time).

2 quick gentle blow; the sound it makes
- ADJ. **gentle, light, little | sharp**
- VERB + TAP **give sb/sth**
- PREP. **~ at** *There was a little tap at the door.* **~ on** *He gave her a tap on the shoulder.*

tap *verb*
- ADV. **gently, lightly** *She tapped her fingers gently on the table.* | **away** *She tapped away at her keyboard.*
- PREP. **against, at, on, with** *She tapped the ice with a stick.*

tape *noun*

1 magnetic material used for recording
- ADJ. **magnetic** *The data is stored on the magnetic tape.* | **audio, computer, video** (also **videotape**) | **recording**
- VERB + TAPE **hold sth on, store sth on | capture sth on, get sth on** *Police are examining the incident, which was captured on tape.* | **splice**
- TAPE + NOUN **drive** (= in a computer) | **recording**
- PREP. **on ~** *I've got the whole concert on tape.*

2 cassette with magnetic tape on it
- ADJ. **cassette | audio, music, sound | video** (also **videotape**) | **demo, master | compilation** *a compilation tape featuring new Irish bands* | **blank | pre-recorded | bootleg, pirated** *The court heard that Ellis sold pirated tapes of Hollywood blockbusters.*
- VERB + TAPE **make** *I made another tape to play in the car.* | **play (back), put on** *The police will be able to play back the videotape for clues.* | **listen to, watch | mime to** *The singer was miming to a pre-recorded tape.* | **fast-forward, pause, replay, rewind, start, stop, wind back, wind forward/on | erase, wipe** *Someone had deliberately erased the tapes.*
- TAPE + VERB **contain sth, have sth** *The tape contained damning evidence.* ◇ *What does this tape have on it?*
- TAPE + NOUN **deck, recorder | recording**

3 long narrow strip of fabric/paper
- ADJ. **adhesive, Scotch™, sticky | insulating, masking | measuring | paper, plastic, steel | ticker | double-sided** *Fit the carpet using double-sided tape.*
- QUANT. **piece, strip | roll**
- VERB + TAPE **seal sth (up) with** *I sealed up the package with strong adhesive tape.*
- TAPE + NOUN **measure** *Use a steel tape measure to measure the dimensions of the room.*

4 piece of material stretched across a racetrack
- ADJ. **finishing**
- VERB + TAPE **break** *her look of triumph as she broke the finishing tape*

tape *verb*

- ADV. **firmly** *The wires are taped firmly together.* | **together, up** *The box was all taped up.*
- PREP. **onto, to** *She had taped a note to the fridge door.*

target *noun*

1 sb/sth that you try to destroy, hurt, steal, etc.

- ADJ. **favourite, likely, natural, obvious, perfect, possible, potential, prime, suitable** *The prime minister is a favourite target of comedians.* | **easy, sitting, soft, tempting, vulnerable** *The stationary trucks were sitting targets for the enemy planes.* | **legitimate** | **intended** | **stationary** | **moving** | **ground** | **military** | **civilian, non-military** | **terrorist**
- VERB + TARGET **aim at, attack, go for, shoot at** | **hit, reach** (used of a missile) *The bomb reached its intended target ten seconds later.* | **miss, overshoot** *The flare overshot its target and set light to a hotel.* | **destroy** *The missile is aimed specifically to destroy military targets.* | **track** *The radar beam can track a number of targets almost simultaneously.*
- PREP. **off ~** *The missile veered way off target and landed in the sea.* **on ~** *Politically speaking, his jibes were right on target.* | **~ for** *an easy target for shoplifters*

2 object that you shoot at

- VERB + TARGET **put up, set up** *The archers were setting up their targets.* | **aim at, shoot at** | **hit** | **miss** | **use sth as** *The boys used an old tree stump as a target.*
- TARGET + NOUN **area** | **practice**
- PREP. **off ~** *Patton was just off target with a header.* **on ~** *His first shot was bang on target.* **wide of the ~** *The shot went wide of the target.*

3 result, person, etc. that you aim to reach

- ADJ. **achievable, attainable, low, modest, realistic** | **ambitious, demanding, difficult, high, tough, unrealistic** *She has always set herself very high targets.* | **impossible** | **clear** | **chief, key, main, major, primary, prime, principal** | **annual** | **immediate, initial** | **future, long-term, ultimate** | **attainment, economic, financial, growth, inflation, performance, production, profit, recruitment, sales, spending**
- VERB + TARGET **set** *Managers must set targets that are realistic.* | **aim for** *Pupils should be given a target to aim for.* | **achieve, meet, reach** | **stay within** *in a desperate attempt to stay within budget targets* | **exceed** *The company pays bonuses to workers who exceed production targets.* | **fall short of**
- TARGET + NOUN **audience, group, market** | **date** *to meet a target date of May 2002* | **figure, price, weight**
- PREP. **above (a/the) ~** *Sales so far this year are 20% above target.* **off ~** *These figures are way off target.* **on ~** *We are still right on target.* **over (a/the) ~** *Many wage settlements reached were over the original target of 4%.* **towards (a/the) ~** *We are working towards a target of twenty cars a week.* | **~ for** *setting new targets for growth*

target *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, deliberately** *a carefully targeted marketing campaign* ◇ *Children are deliberately targeted.* | **particularly, specifically**
- PREP. **at** *The products are targeted at young people.* **for** *This hospital is targeted for additional funding.* **on** *Tax cuts should be targeted on the poor.* **towards** *We target our services towards specific groups of people.*

tariff *noun*

- ADJ. **high, low** | **preferential, protective, punitive** *British industry was sheltered from foreign competition by protective tariffs.* | **external** | **domestic, internal** | **import** | **customs**
- QUANT. **level** *a 40% level of tariffs on imports*
- VERB + TARIFF **fix, set** *The agreement fixed tariffs for foreign goods coming into Japan at 5%.* | **impose, introduce, levy** *The US could impose punitive tariffs of up to 100% on some countries' exports.* | **pay** | **increase, raise** | **cut, lower, reduce** | **abolish, eliminate**
- TARIFF + NOUN **reduction, reform** | **structure, system** | **level, rate** | **barrier** *the aim of removing all tariff barriers by the year 2003*
- PREP. **~ on** *They set a tariff of 36% on British wool cloth.*
- PHRASES **a reduction in tariff/tariffs**

tarnish *verb*

1 become/make sth less bright

- ADV. **badly** *The mirror had tarnished quite badly.*

2 spoil sth

- ADV. **severely** *their severely tarnished reputation*

tart *noun*

1 open pie

- ADJ. **fruit, jam, treacle** | **apple, strawberry, etc.**
- VERB + TART **make**

2 woman

- ADJ. **cheap, little**
- VERB + TART **look like** *That dress makes her look like a tart.* | **call sb** *He had called her a cheap little tart.*

task *noun*

- ADJ. **awesome, challenging, daunting, enormous, formidable, great, Herculean, huge, mammoth, massive, monumental** | **arduous, demanding, difficult, exacting, exhausting, hard, laborious, onerous, stiff, time-consuming, tough, uphill** | **dangerous, hazardous** | **basic, easy, simple, small** *Translating the letter was no easy task.* | **menial, mundane, repetitive, tedious** | **complex, mind-boggling** | **delicate, tricky** | **fruitless, hopeless, impossible** | **daily, day-to-day, routine** | **central, fundamental, important, main, major, primary, principal** *The primary task of the chair is to ensure the meeting runs smoothly.* | **essential, vital** | **immediate, urgent** | **enviable, pleasant** | **thankless, unenviable, unpleasant** | **administrative, domestic, household, manual** | **self-appointed, self-imposed**
- VERB + TASK **take on, take upon yourself, undertake** *Nobody was keen to take on such a thankless task.* | **approach, get to grips with, tackle** *How do you tackle a task like that?* | **carry out, do, fulfil, get on with, perform** *I left her to get on with the task of correcting the errors.* | **accomplish, complete, succeed in** | **cope with** | **fail in** | **allocate, assign (sb), delegate, entrust sb with, give sb, set sb** *She failed to complete the task that she had been set.* | **be charged with, be faced with, have** *She was charged with the important task of telling the children.* | **be engaged in** *I was engaged in the delicate task of clipping the dog's claws.* | **help sb with** | **be suited/unsuited to** *His thick fingers were not well suited to the task.*
- TASK + VERB **require sth** *The task requires a variety of skills and experience.* | **fall to sb** *The unenviable task of telling my parents fell to the head teacher.* | **confront sb, face sb** *The team have no illusions about the size of the task confronting them.*
- PREP. **~ for** *a hard task for the committee* **~ in** *one of the first tasks in language learning*
- PHRASES **the task ahead** *We need to think realistically about the task ahead.* **the task in hand** *We should stop chatting and get back to the task in hand.*

task force *noun*

- ADJ. **special** | **government, presidential, etc.** | **naval, police, etc.** | **health, housing, etc.**
- VERB + TASK FORCE **create, establish, form, set up** | **lead**

- TASK FORCE + NOUN **team**
- PREP. **~ on** *The government has set up a special task force on health care reform.*

taste *noun*

1 flavour

- ADJ. **delicious, fresh, pleasant, refreshing | distinctive | pungent, rich, strong | bland, mild | foul, nasty, unpleasant | bitter, creamy, metallic, salty, sharp, smooth, sour, spicy, sweet | authentic** *You need to use fresh herbs to get the authentic Italian taste.*
- VERB + TASTE **have** *The soup had a very salty taste.* | **leave** *The drink left a bitter taste in his mouth.* ◇ *(figurative) The whole business left a nasty taste in my mouth.* | **spoil** *Don't have a cigarette now—you'll spoil the taste of your food!* | **enhance, improve | enjoy, savour** *She savoured the taste of the champagne.* | **disguise, take away** *I had a strong coffee to take away the nasty taste of the food.*
- TASTE + NOUN **buds**

2 a taste small amount

- ADJ. **little | real** *That job gave me my first real taste of teaching.* | **first**
- VERB + TASTE **get, have** *Have a taste of this cake.* | **give sb, provide (sb with)**
- PREP. **~ of** *This was her first taste of success.*
- PHRASES **a taste of things to come** *The new appraisal scheme is only a taste of things to come.*

3 liking

- ADJ. **catholic, eclectic, varied, wide | modest, simple | advanced, cultured, educated, sophisticated | expensive, extravagant | eccentric, esoteric, strange | acquired, natural** *Art is an acquired taste—no one is born knowing that Michelangelo is wonderful.* | **natural | local, national | modern | personal, private | aesthetic, artistic, literary, musical, reading, sexual | audience, consumer, contemporary, popular, public, Western** *Her music appeals to popular taste.*
- VERB + TASTE **have** *They have a taste for adventure.* | **like, share** *You obviously share her taste in reading.* | **acquire, cultivate, develop, get | lose** *I've lost my taste for travelling.* | **indulge** *Now he is retired he has time to indulge his tastes for writing and politics.* | **demonstrate, display** *Her choice of outfit demonstrated her taste for the outrageous.* | **appeal to, cater for, match, meet, satisfy, suit** *a range of hotels to suit all tastes and budgets*
- TASTE + VERB **lie** *It all depends on where your tastes lie.* | **change, differ, vary** *Lifestyles differ and tastes vary.*
- PREP. **for your ~** *The theatre was too modern for my taste.* **to ~** (= according to how much of sth you want) *Add salt and pepper to taste.* **to your ~** *If fishing is not to your taste, there are many other leisure activities on offer.* | **~ for** *People with a taste for complex plots will enjoy this book.* **~ in** *young people's tastes in music*
- PHRASES **a man/woman of … tastes** *a man of advanced tastes* **a matter of (personal) taste** *What type of bicycle you should buy is very much a matter of personal taste.*

4 ability to make good choices

- ADJ. **excellent, exquisite, good, great, impeccable** *Her work is executed with impeccable taste.* | **appalling, bad, deplorable, doubtful, dubious, poor, terrible**
- VERB + TASTE **reflect, show** *The house reflected his taste.* | **exercise** *The designer has exercised good taste in her use of different fonts.*
- PREP. **in … ~** *That joke was in very poor taste.* **with ~** *The room had been decorated with great taste.* | **~ in** *She has terrible taste in clothing.*
- PHRASES **an arbiter of taste** *Contemporary arbiters of taste dismissed his paintings as rubbish.* **in the best/worst possible taste** *The love scenes are all done in the best possible taste.* **a lack of taste** *The remark showed a deplorable lack of taste.* **a man/woman of taste, taste and decency** *The film was judged to offend against standards of public taste and decency.*

taste *verb*

- ADV. **strongly** *The water tasted strongly of chemicals.* | **faintly, slightly** *The fish tasted faintly of garlic.*
- PREP. **like** *The fruit tasted rather like mango.* **of** *a cake which tasted of almonds*
- PHRASES **taste awful/bitter/foul/horrible, taste delicious/good/sweet/wonderful, taste funny**

tasteful *adj.*

- VERBS **be** *Most of the furniture was quite tasteful.*
- ADV. **very | impeccably | quite**

tatters *noun*

- VERB + TATTERS **lie in** *(figurative) Her marriage now lay in tatters.* | **hang in** *Everywhere wallpaper hung in tatters.* | **leave sth in** *(figurative) an injury that left his dreams in tatters*
- PREP. **in ~** *Her clothes were in tatters.* ◇ *(figurative) With their plans now in tatters, they gave up.*
- PHRASES **rags and tatters**

tattoo *noun*

- VERB + TATTOO **do** *She's having a tattoo done on her leg.* | **have | be covered in** *His arms were covered in tattoos.* | **remove** *I've decided to get my tattoo removed.*
- TATTOO + NOUN **parlour**

taunt *noun*

- ADJ. **playground, racial/racist**
- VERB + TAUNT **hurl, shout | endure, face, suffer** *He had to endure the racist taunts of the crowd.* | **ignore**
- TAUNT + VERB **sting (sb into)** *Their taunts stung him into his best performance for the team yet.*

taunt *verb*

- ADV. **softly** *'Running away?' he taunted softly.*
- PREP. **about** *Some of the girls taunted her about her weight.* **with** *The other children taunted him with nicknames.*

taut *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look | become, go** *Her body went as taut as a bowstring.* | **remain, stay** *Exercise helps your muscles to stay taut.* | **pull sth, stretch sth** *His skin was stretched taut over his cheekbones.* | **hold sth, keep sth** *Try to keep the lead taut, as it will help your puppy to learn.*
- PREP. **with** *(figurative) a voice taut with anger*

tax *noun*

- ADJ. **high, low | direct, indirect | basic, basic-rate, higher-rate | progressive, redistributive | regressive** *A regressive tax, like the poll tax, takes proportionately more of a poor person's income.* | **windfall** *The privatized utility companies may be faced with a windfall tax on the profits of the last few years.* | **back** *(informal) The tax office demanded £80 000 in back taxes.* | **council, poll | capital, capital gains, income, inheritance, land, profits, property, savings, wealth | consumption, purchase, sales, value added** (= VAT) | **capital transfer, investment | company, corporation | car, road, vehicle** *It's time to renew your car tax.* | **carbon, energy, fuel, petrol | excise, import**
- VERB + TAX **pay | impose, introduce, levy, put** *Direct taxes could only be levied with the consent of Parliament.* ◇ *The government may put an indirect tax on books.* | **collect** *the government department responsible for col-*

lecting taxes | **deduct** *Your employer will deduct the tax for you.* | **increase, put up, raise** | **cut, lower, reduce** | **abolish** | **overpay** | **reclaim** | **offset sth against, set/write sth off against** *Claims for expenses can be set off against tax.* | **avoid, escape** | **evade** *She was charged with conspiracy to evade taxes.*
- TAX + VERB **go up, increase, rise** *Taxes look set to rise again.* | **come/go down, fall** | **be chargeable, be payable** *the amount on which capital gains tax is payable*
- TAX + NOUN **payer** (also **taxpayer**) *a higher-rate tax payer* | **authority/authorities, office, man** (also **taxman**) (*informal*) *She owes the taxman £10 000.* | **law, legislation, measures, policy, reform, structure, system** | **period, year** *The tax year begins in April.* | **cut, increase** | **band, bracket, rate, threshold** *Her salary puts her in the highest tax band.* | **revenue, yield** | **assessment, form, return** *You have to fill in your tax return by tomorrow.* | **advantage, allowance, benefit, break, concession, credit, exemption, incentive, perks, rebate, refund, relief** *There are tax advantages to working freelance.* ◇ *You will only receive tax relief on the first £30 000.* | **affairs, arrangements** *His tax affairs are under investigation by the police.* | **avoidance** | **loophole** *Her accountant was good at exploiting tax loopholes.* | **dodge, evasion, fraud** *He gave the Porsche to his mother as a tax dodge.* | **dodger** | **exile** *She is living as a tax exile in Monaco.* | **haven** *The island is a popular tax haven for the very rich.* | **collector, consultant, inspector** | **bill, charge, invoice, payment** | **arrears** *He was ordered to pay $2 million in tax arrears.* | **liability** *an increase in tax liability on company cars* | **burden** *putting a new tax burden on the middle classes* | **base** *By broadening the tax base* (= making more people pay tax) *the chancellor could raise more revenues.*
- PREP. **after/before ~** *Profits after tax were £262 000.* **in ~** *Collectively, smokers pay over £15 000 a day in tax.* | **~ on** *introducing a 60% tax on alcohol*
- PHRASES **for tax purposes** *the rules for deciding on someone's residence status for UK tax purposes* **(the basic/higher) rate of tax** *an increase in the basic rate of tax*

tax *verb*
- ADV. **heavily** *Many self-employed people are heavily taxed.* ◇ *goods which are most heavily taxed* | **lightly**
- PREP. **according to** *Drinks would be taxed according to their alcoholic strength.* **at** *Many goods were taxed at 17.5%.* **on** *You will be taxed on all your income.*

taxable *adj.*
- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain** | **make sth**
- ADV. **fully** *Where payments exceed these limits they become fully taxable.*

taxation *noun*
- ADJ. **excessive, heavy, high** *the heavy taxation on smokers and drinkers* | **low** | **direct, indirect** | **progressive, redistributive** | **company, corporate, general, local, personal** *changes in corporate taxation*
- QUANT. **level, rate** *a promise to lower the overall level of taxation*
- VERB + TAXATION **increase, put up, raise** *If the government raises direct taxation, it will lose votes.* | **cut, lower, reduce** | **avoid** | **be exempt from** *Any profits made are totally exempt from taxation.*
- TAXATION + NOUN **policy, system** | **rate**
- PREP. **after/before ~** *The loss before taxation was $2.7 million.* **from/out of ~** *The hospital was funded from taxation.* **through ~** *the power to raise funds through taxation* | **~ on** *increased taxation on oil companies*
- PHRASES **the burden of taxation** *reducing the heavy burden of taxation on the wealthy* **a form of taxation** *The poll tax was a very unpopular form of taxation.* **for taxation purposes** *They were treated as a married couple for taxation purposes.*

taxi *noun*
- VERB + TAXI **go by, take** *I took a taxi back home.* | **call (sb), get (sb), order (sb), phone for** *I'll get my secretary to call you a taxi.* | **find** *We had some difficulty finding a taxi.* | **catch, hail** *We caught a taxi to the airport.* | **get into/out of** | **drive** | **pay for/off** | **share**
- TAXI + NOUN **cab** | **firm** | **ride** | **service** | **fare** | **driver** | **rank**
- PHRASES **by ~** *a five-minute trip by taxi*

taxing *adj.*
- VERBS **be, prove** | **become**
- ADV. **very** | **fairly** | **intellectually, physically** *There was nothing intellectually taxing about the course.*

tea *noun*

1 drink
- ADJ. **fresh** *There's some fresh* (= just made) *tea in the pot.* | **stewed** (= very strong), **strong** | **weak** | **cold, hot, lukewarm, scalding** | **milky** | **white** (usually after **tea**) *I'll have tea—white, no sugar, please.* | **black** | **sugary, sweet** | **(early) morning** | **decaffeinated** | **fragrant** | **China/Chinese, Indian, etc.** | **Earl Grey, green** | **fruit, herb/herbal** | **camomile, jasmine, lemon, mint, etc.** | **iced**
- QUANT. **cup, flask, mug, pot**
- VERB + TEA **drink** *I don't drink tea.* | **have** | **sip, swallow** *She sipped her hot tea slowly.* | **take a mouthful/sip of** | **brew, get (sb), make (sb), mash** *I'll make you some tea.* | **bring sb, dispense** (*often humorous*), **ply sb with** (*humorous*), **serve (sb), take sb** *I'll bring you a cup of tea in a few minutes.* ◇ *John rushed around dispensing tea and cakes to everyone.* | **pour (sb) (out)** *Pour me out a cup of tea please.* | **stir**
- TEA + VERB **brew, mash** *You haven't let the tea brew long enough.* | **cool**
- TEA + NOUN **pot** (also **teapot**), **urn** | **cosy** | **service, set** *a bone china tea service* | **tray, trolley** *A lady comes round the office with a tea trolley in the afternoon.* | **bar, garden, room, shop** *The hospital tea bar is run by volunteers.* | **boy** (*offensive when used of an older man*), **lady** | **drinker, drinking** | **break** | **party** | **ceremony**
- PREP. **in your ~** *Do you take sugar in your tea?*
- PHRASES **tea and coffee, tea and biscuits/cake/cakes/sandwiches/scones, tea and sympathy** *He tried to alleviate their disappointment by inviting them in for tea and sympathy.* **tea for two** *'Tea for two', said Mary, 'and a slice of your delicious chocolate cake.'* **tea or coffee** *Would you like tea or coffee?* **tea-making facilities** *All rooms have tea-making facilities.*

2 leaves for making tea
- ADJ. **loose** (= tea that is not in bags)
- QUANT. **packet**
- VERB + TEA **grow**
- TEA + VERB **grow**
- TEA + NOUN **leaf** | **bag** | **caddy** | **strainer** | **estate, plantation** | **chest** *He stores his books in a tea chest.*

3 meal
- ADJ. **afternoon, cream, high** | **birthday, funeral**
- TEA + NOUN **things** *I cleared away the tea things.*

⇨ Note at MEAL (for verbs)

teach *verb*
- ADV. **effectively** *information which helps the teacher teach more effectively*
- VERB + TEACH **try to** *trying to teach my daughter to behave* | **be qualified to** *I am not qualified to teach this*

subject. | **be designed to** *training courses designed to teach managerial techniques* | **help (to), help sb (to)**

- PREP. **about** *teaching children about the world around them* **to** *She teaches English to Polish students.*

teacher *noun*

- ADJ. **competent, good, inspired, skilled | bad, incompetent | qualified | experienced | inexperienced | sympathetic | senior | head | fellow | former | female, woman | male | full-time, part-time | supply, support | peripatetic | college, primary (school), school, secondary (school), Sunday school, university | class/classroom | remedial | non-specialist, specialist | language | subject | art, EFL, English, history, maths, music, PE, woodwork, etc. | spiritual**
- VERB + TEACHER **train | find (sb)**
- TEACHER + VERB **teach sth | work with sb** *teachers working with pupils with special educational needs*
- TEACHER + NOUN **education, training** *She's been accepted at Bath Teacher Training College.* | **trainer | association, union** *He is chairman of the Parent Teacher Association.* | **shortage**

⇨ Note at JOB

teaching *noun*

1 work/profession of a teacher

- ADJ. **effective, good | poor | classroom** *a system that rewards good classroom teaching* | **whole-class | individual, one-to-one | collaborative, team | mixed-ability | formal, traditional** *the formal teaching of grammar* | **creative, experimental | remedial, support | academic, college, graduate, postgraduate, primary, school, secondary, undergraduate, university | English, language, music, etc.**
- VERB + TEACHING **get/go into** *He's going to go into teaching.*
- TEACHING + NOUN **method, strategy, style, technique | aid, material, resource** *She used puppets as teaching aids.* | **aim, objective, point** *Write each teaching point on the whiteboard.* | **ability, skills | experience, qualification** *Applicants must hold a recognized teaching qualification.* | **job, post | career** *Mr Murphy retired at the end of a 30-year teaching career.* | **practice** *You have to do six weeks teaching practice as part of the course.* | **staff, profession** *They have left the teaching profession, demoralized and undervalued.* | **commitments, duties, load, responsibilities, role** *Lecturers who have heavy teaching loads.* | **centre, establishment, institution | environment, situation** *a teaching environment where English is not the first language* | **programme, session, term, year** *Work experience is integrated into the teaching programme.* ◇ *The teaching year runs from October to May.* | **time** *Critics say that these tests waste teaching time.* | **hospital**
- PREP. **in ~** *I've been in teaching for ten years.*
- PHRASES **an approach to teaching** *the modern approach to language teaching* **a method/style of teaching**

2 ideas and beliefs that are taught by sb

- ADJ. **ancient, traditional | biblical, moral, religious | Buddhist, Christian, etc.**
- VERB + TEACHING **follow** *He followed the teachings of the Koran on this subject.* | **reject | explain, interpret | pass on, spread** *the disciples who passed on Jesus's teaching* | **base sth on** *the great moral teachings on which our culture is based*
- PREP. **in the ~** *regarded as the source of goodness in the teachings of Confucius* | **~ about/on** *the Church's teaching on forgiveness*

team *noun*

1 group of people who play a sport together

- ADJ. **home | away, opposing, rival, visiting | decent, strong | successful, winning | weak | dream** *The England manager has chosen his dream team for the World Cup.* | **junior, senior, youth | under-16, etc. | A, B, first, second, etc. | international, local, national | England, Ireland, Scotland | French, Irish, etc. | basketball, football, relay, etc. | display** *the Army Parachute Display Team* | **five-man, five-person, five-strong, five-woman** *Spain are fielding a three-man team in this race.* | **men's, mixed, women's**
- VERB + TEAM **field, have | choose, get together, organize, pick, put together** *Can you get a team together by Saturday?* | **coach, manage | be in/on, play in/for** *I'm playing for the first team this week.* | **be called up to, be selected for, get into/onto, make** *Cole has been selected for the team to meet Italy next week.* ◇ *You didn't make the team, I'm afraid.* | **be dropped from, be left out of | join, sign for | play (against) | lead | support**
- TEAM + VERB **compete (in sth), take part (in sth)** *The team competes in a local league.* ◇ *There are six teams taking part.* | **win (sth) | lose (sth)** *Our team lost the final.*
- TEAM + NOUN **game, sport | captain, coach, manager, mate** (also **teammate**) *He apologized to his teammates for his mistake.* | **championship, event, prize | effort, performance | selection | talk** *The manager gives his team talks in English.* | **sheet** (= the list of players chosen for the team)
- PREP. **in/on a/the ~** *I'll have you on the first team.* | **~ for** *She's in the team for the World Championships.*

⇨ Special page at SPORT

2 group of people who work together

- ADJ. **joint** *a joint team of French and German economists* | **five-strong | husband and wife | campaign, creative, design, development, editorial, investigation, management, marketing, production, project, research, sales** *a member of the senior management team* | **legal, medical | multidisciplinary | rescue**
- VERB + TEAM **build, form, train** *Willing volunteers formed teams of helpers to carry everything in.* ◇ *a specially trained team of counsellors* | **lead, head, manage, run | join** *She has recently joined our sales team.* | **work (together) as** *learning to work together as a team*
- TEAM + VERB **comprise sb, consist of sb** *The team consisted of six investigators and two secretaries.* | **develop sth, operate, work on/with sth** *the team that developed this microchip* ◇ *The team will work closely with other government departments.*
- TEAM + NOUN **leader, member | player** (*informal*) (= sb who works well as part of a team) | **meeting | approach | building, development** *The survival course was intended as a team building exercise.* | **spirit | effort** *It took a tremendous team effort to finish the project on time.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *There are 20 people in the team.* | **~ of** *a team of scientists*
- PHRASES **a member of a team, part of a team**

teamwork *noun*

- ADJ. **effective, good**
- VERB + TEAMWORK **emphasize, encourage** *The company says the aim is to encourage teamwork.*
- PREP. **through ~** *achieving our success through effective teamwork*

tear¹ /tɪə(r)/ *noun*

- ADJ. **angry, bitter, emotional** *There were angry tears in Lily's eyes.* | **burning, fresh, hot, salty, scalding** *Her eyes were blinded by scalding tears.* | **genuine, real | crocodile** (*figurative*) (= insincere) *They weep crocodile tears for the poor and disadvantaged but are basically happy with things as they are.* | **great, huge, large | single, solitary | silent | helpless, sudden, uncontrollable | unshed** *His eyes were bright with unshed tears.*
- VERB + TEAR **cry, shed, weep** *She wept silent tears*

when she heard his name. ◇ *(figurative) I won't shed any tears when Frank retires.* | **dry, wipe (away)** *I picked the little girl up and helped dry her tears.* ◇ *She wiped a tear from her eye.* | **blink/choke/fight/hold back** *He had to fight back tears of frustration.* | **break down in, burst into** *She broke down in tears in court.* | **move/reduce sb to** *His father's angry shouting reduced the little boy to tears.* | **brim/fill with** *His eyes filled with sudden tears.* | **end in** *(figurative)* (= to have an unhappy result)

• TEAR + VERB **appear, brim in your eyes, brim over, come, fill your eyes, form, gather, spring into/to your eyes, start, well (up)** *Her tears brimmed over and fell on her cheek.* ◇ *He could never read the letter without tears coming to his eyes.* | **course/pour/roll/run/slide/trickle down sth, drip into/onto sth, fall, flow, overflow, stream** *A single tear rolled slowly down her cheek.* | **stand** *Tears stood in Oliver's eyes.* | **blur sth, cloud sth** *Tears blurred his vision.* | **burn (sth), prick (at/in) sth, sting your eyes** *She felt tears pricking her eyelids.* | **dry (up)**

• PREP. **in ~s** *He came to me in tears.* **through your ~s** *She tried to smile through her tears.* | **~ for** *He shed no tears for his lost youth.* **~ of** *tears of happiness* **~ over** *It turned out to be a lot of tears over nothing.*

• PHRASES **bring tears to your eyes** *It brings tears to your eyes to see the children having such fun.* **close/near to tears** *More than once I came near to tears.* **a flood/floods of tears** *We were in floods of tears at the end of the film.* **a mist of tears** *I saw it all through a mist of tears.* **on the verge of tears, tears in your eyes, too deep for tears** *There are times when suffering may be too deep for tears.*

tear^2 /teə(r)/ *noun*

• VERB + TEAR **have | make | mend**

• PREP. **~ in** *This sheet has a tear in it.*

• PHRASES **wear and tear** (= the damage to objects, furniture, etc. that is the result of normal use)

tear^3 /teə(r)/ *verb*

• ADV. **badly** *His clothes were badly torn.* | **easily** *Careful—the fabric tears very easily.* | **almost, nearly** *The storm nearly tore the roof off.* | **apart, off, out, up** *The dogs tore the fox apart.* ◇ *(figurative) We tore the other team apart in the second half.*

• VERB + TEAR **threaten to**

• PREP. **from** *I tore another sheet from the pad.* **off** *She tore the label off the suitcase.* **on** *She tore her skirt on a nail.* **out of** *Several pages had been torn out of the book.*

• PHRASES **tear free/loose** *She tore herself free.* ◇ *One error and he would have been torn loose and hurled overboard by the squalling wind.* **tear sth in half/two** *She tore the piece of paper in half.* **tear sb limb from limb** *He threatened to tear me limb from limb.* **tear sth open** *She tore the letter open.* **tear sth to pieces/shreds** *(often figurative) The critics tore his last film to shreds.*

tearful *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** *She sounded angry and tearful.* | **become, get** *He suddenly became very tearful.* | **leave sb** *Defeat left her tearful, pale and drained.*

• ADV. **very** | **almost** *I felt quite emotional—almost tearful.* | **a bit, a little, rather**

tease *verb*

• ADV. **mercilessly** | **a little, gently, lightly**

• VERB + TEASE **used to**

• PREP. **about** *His friends used to tease him about his tatty clothes.* **with** *They teased her mercilessly with remarks about her weight.*

• PHRASES **be just/only teasing** *Don't get upset, I was only teasing.*

technical *adj.*

• VERBS **be, sound | become, get** *The conversation was getting a bit technical for me, so I left them to it.*

• ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *A lot of the discussions were highly technical.* | **purely** *This is a purely technical problem.* | **a bit, quite, rather, somewhat**

technicality *noun*

• ADJ. **complex | legal**

• VERB + TECHNICALITY **understand | discuss, go into** *I don't want to go into all the technicalities just now.*

• PREP. **on a ~** (= because of a technicality) *The court was forced to release him on a technicality.*

technician *noun*

• ADJ. **chief, senior | skilled | inexperienced | qualified | trainee | lab/laboratory | architectural | dental | computer | lighting, sound** *He works as a sound technician in a recording studio.*

• VERB + TECHNICIAN **train** *a need to train technicians in computer aided engineering*

⇨ Note at JOB

technique *noun*

• ADJ. **effective, powerful, useful | basic, simple | conventional, established, standard, traditional | advanced, modern, sophisticated | ingenious | alternative, experimental | assessment, communication, dating, evaluation, exam/examination, farming, interview, management, manufacturing, marketing, problem-solving, recording, relaxation, research, sales, teaching, training** *She needs to work on her interview technique if she's going to get a job.* | **analytical, mathematical, medical, photographic, scientific, statistical, surgical**

• VERB + TECHNIQUE **have** *He has an ingenious technique for dealing with problems of that sort.* | **adopt, apply, deploy, employ, implement, try, use** *On the walls I applied the same technique as I had used for the ceiling.* | **develop, devise, pioneer** *The technique was pioneered in California.* | **acquire, learn, master, practise** *struggling to master the new technique* | **adapt, improve, perfect, work at/on | demonstrate, describe**

• TECHNIQUE + VERB **allow sth, enable sth** *Modern freezing techniques enable the chickens to be stored for weeks.* | **work** *The new technique works better than the one it has replaced.* | **be based on sth, be derived from sth** *singing techniques derived from Tibetan music*

• PREP. **~ for** *techniques for the storage of data* **~ in** *They learn basic techniques in self-defence.*

technology *noun*

• ADJ. **current, existing, present-day | emerging, the latest, modern, new** *small businesses that are involved with emerging technologies* | **basic, low | advanced, complex, high, leading-edge, sophisticated, state-of-the-art, up-to-date, white-hot | alternative, innovative** *a car based on alternative technology* | **efficient | communication/communications, computer, digital, energy, information, management, manufacturing, nuclear, production, software, telecommunications | educational, environmental, medical, military**

• VERB + TECHNOLOGY **have** *We now have the technologies to transplant limbs.* | **adopt, apply, employ, exploit, introduce, take advantage of, use** *exploiting existing technologies more fully* | **create, develop, improve | be based on** *a car engine based on technology developed for aeroplanes* | **invest in** *The company is investing heavily in new technologies.*

• TECHNOLOGY + VERB **develop** *Telecommunications technology is developing fast.* | **allow sth, enable sth** *This technology enables computers to read handwriting.*

- PREP. **~for** *the technology for the extraction of iron ore*
- PHRASES **advances in technology** *recent advances in medical technology* **the impact of (a) technology, science and technology**

tedious *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become, get** *Her visits were starting to get a bit tedious.* **| make sth | find sth** *He found committee meetings extremely tedious.*
- ADV. **extremely, incredibly, very | almost | a bit, a little, pretty, rather, somewhat**

teenager *noun*

- ADJ. **older, young** *a young teenager of fourteen* **| difficult, rebellious | spirited | gauche, gawky**

teens *noun*

- ADJ. **early** *a girl in her early teens* **| late | mid**
- VERB + TEENS **reach** *He didn't want to share a room with his brother once he reached his teens.*
- PREP. **during your ~** *His parents divorced during his teens.* **in your ~** *All my children are in their teens.* **since your ~** *She's had skin problems since her teens.*

teetotal *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | remain**
- ADV. **strictly** *I'm strictly teetotal.*

telecommunications *noun*

- ADJ. **global, international, national, world | public** *a public telecommunications system* **| digital**
- TELECOMMUNICATIONS + NOUN **infrastructure, link, network, services, system** *modernizing their postal and telecommunications networks* **| equipment, products, satellite, technology | company, firm, giant** (*informal*), **group, operator** *Japan's telecommunications giant, NTT* **| business, industry, market, sector**

telegram *noun*

- ADJ. **congratulatory**
- VERB + TELEGRAM **send (sb) | get, receive**
- TELEGRAM + VERB **arrive, come**
- PREP. **~from, ~to**

telephone *noun*

- ADJ. **pay, public | office, private** *The office telephones were all out of order.* **| cellular, cordless, mobile, portable | radio, satellite**
- VERB + TELEPHONE **use** *Can I use your telephone?* **| be on** *Don't pester me now—I'm on the telephone.* ◇ *We're not on the telephone, so you'll have to come round to the house.* **| answer, get** (*informal*), **pick up** *Hang on—I'll just get the telephone.* **| hang up, put down** *She put down the telephone and burst into tears.* **| leave/take off the hook** *I've been trying to phone him all day—he must have left his telephone off the hook.* **| be wanted on** *The waiter came to tell me I was wanted on the telephone.* **| call sb to** *He was called to the telephone just as he was leaving.* **| bug, tap | connect, install | disconnect**
- TELEPHONE + VERB **ring, shrill** *The telephone was ringing furiously.* ◇ *The telephone shrilled into the silence.* **| be off the hook**
- TELEPHONE + NOUN **number | book, directory | bill | call, message | conversation, enquiry, interview, query, survey | contact** *She is in telephone contact with headquarters.* **| helpline, hotline, support** *The charity has set up a 24-hour telephone helpline.* **| company | banking, marketing, service | charges | cord, headset, receiver | cable, exchange, line, network, switchboard, system, wire | box, kiosk | voice** *A good telephone voice can do much to improve the temper of irate callers.*
- PREP. **by ~** *Can I get in touch by telephone?* **on the ~** *She sounded very distant on the telephone.* **over the ~** *I don't want to talk about this over the telephone.*

telescope *noun*

- ADJ. **powerful | 26-metre, 60-millimetre, etc. | astronomical, optical, radio, space** *images from the Hubble space telescope*
- VERB + TELESCOPE **use | look at sth with/without, see sth with/without** *stars that cannot be seen without a telescope* **| look (at sth) through, view sth through | set up** *She set up her telescope on the balcony.* **| build** *building the largest telescope in the world*
- PREP. **through a/the ~**
- PHRASES **the wrong end of a telescope** *He felt as if he were seeing things through the wrong end of a telescope.*

televise *verb*

- ADV. **nationally** *a nationally televised debate* **| live**

television *noun*

- ADJ. **cable, closed-circuit, digital, high-definition, satellite, terrestrial | commercial, state | local, national | live** *Millions watched the events on live television.* **| black-and-white, colour | portable**
- VERB + TELEVISION **watch** *The children watched television for most of the evening.*
- TELEVISION + VERB **broadcast sth, screen sth** *The state television screened pictures of the trial.*
- TELEVISION + NOUN **chat show, comedy, documentary, drama, film, news, programme, series, show | debate, interview | advert/advertisement, commercial | audience, viewer | personality, presenter | actor, director | character | cameraman, crew | journalist | appearance** *She recalled her first television appearance forty years ago.* **| career | coverage, exposure** *The Olympics receive extensive television coverage.* **| adaptation** *a television adaptation of the popular novel* **| camera | aerial | channel, network, station | licence | business, company, industry, service | monitor, receiver, set | screen | aerial**
- PREP. **in ~** *She works in television.* **in front of the ~** *He spends hours in front of the television every night.* **on ~** *We were watching the news on television.*

tell *verb*

1 give sb information

- ADV. **bluntly, curtly, flatly** *She told me bluntly it was my own fault.* **| gravely | smugly | truthfully | falsely**
- VERB + TELL **want to | be going to** *I was going to tell you—I just didn't get round to it.* **| try to | hate to** *I hate to tell you, but the car's a write-off.* **| let sb** *I tried to tell them but they wouldn't let me.*
- PREP. **about** *I never told him about the money.* **of** *No one had told her of the dangers.* **to** *He told the story to all his friends.*

2 order sb

- ADV. **firmly, sternly** *'Calm down,' he told her firmly.*

temper *noun*

1 tendency to become angry easily

- ADJ. **bad, fierce, fiery, nasty, terrible, vicious, violent | uncontrollable**
- QUANT. **display, fit, flash, outburst** *He broke the chair in a fit of violent temper.*
- VERB + TEMPER **have** *He has a nasty temper.* **| control, keep** *I only just managed to keep my temper with him.* **| fly into, lose** *She loses her temper at the drop of a hat* (= without good reason).

- TEMPER + VERB **flare, rise** *Tempers flared as the traffic jam became worse.* | **cool (down)**
- TEMPER + NOUN **tantrum**
- PREP. **in a ~** *She stormed out of the room in a temper.*
- PHRASES **keep you temper in check/under control** *He had to learn to keep his temper under control before he could become a teacher.*

2 way you are feeling
- ADJ. **bad, filthy, foul, ill, terrible** *Peter's comments were responsible for her ill temper.* | **good** | **frayed** *Frayed tempers at the end of the match led to three players being sent off.* | **uncertain**
- VERB + TEMPER **improve** | **recover, regain** *She regained her good temper after a chat.*
- TEMPER + VERB **improve** | **fray, worsen**
- PREP. **in a ~** *He stormed out of the room in a temper.*
- PHRASES **not be in the best of tempers** *I wasn't in the best of tempers when I arrived at the meeting.*

temperament *noun*

- ADJ. **fiery, violent, volatile** | **brittle, fragile, highly-strung** | **cool, equable, even, good, sanguine, unflappable** | **docile** | **sunny** | **questionable, suspect, uncertain** | **right, wrong** *He doesn't have the right temperament for the job.* | **nervous** | **romantic** | **artistic, scientific, etc.**
- VERB + TEMPERAMENT **have**
- PREP. **by/in ~** *She was fiery by temperament.* **of … ~** *a man of an equable temperament*
- PHRASES **a display of temperament** *He's given to displays of temperament* (= he often behaved in an emotional way).

temperamental *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become, get**
- ADV. **highly, very** *Actors have the reputation of being highly temperamental.* | **a bit, quite**

temperature *noun*

1 how hot or cold sth is
- ADJ. **high, warm** *Yesterday the town reached its highest ever February temperature.* | **cold, cool, low, sub-zero** | **moderate** | **normal** | **extreme** *Avoid exposing the instrument to extreme temperatures.* | **boiling, freezing, melting** *the boiling temperature of the solvent* | **maximum, minimum** | **average, mean** | **constant, stable, steady** | **daytime** | **daily** | **summer, winter, etc.** | **April, July, etc.** | **global** *The increase in the mean global temperature will be about 0.3°C per decade.* | **air, sea, water, etc.** | **ambient, room** | **oven** | **body** | **surface** *the surface temperature of our planet*
- VERB + TEMPERATURE **have** *Some places had temperatures in the forties during the heat wave.* | **heat sth to, raise** *Heat the oven to a temperature of 200°C.* | **reduce** | **reach** | **control** | **expose sth to**
- TEMPERATURE + VERB **go up, increase, rise** | **drop, fall, go down, plummet** *Overnight the temperature fell as low as -30°C.*
- TEMPERATURE + NOUN **conditions** | **change, difference, increase, rise** | **gradient, range, variation** *a temperature range of 60–74°F* | **control, regulation** | **measurement** | **gauge, sensor**
- PREP. **at ~** *Serve the wine at room temperature.* **in a ~** *This plant grows well in temperatures above 55°F.* | **~ above/below/between, ~ of** *The fish prefer a temperature of 24–27°C.*
- PHRASES **a change/variation in temperature, a drop in temperature, an increase/a rise in temperature, a range of temperature**

2 fever
- ADJ. **high** | **slight**
- VERB + TEMPERATURE **have, run** *She's running a temperature.* | **take** *The nurse produced a thermometer and took my temperature.* | **bring down** *They used ice packs to bring down her temperature.*
- TEMPERATURE + VERB **go up, rise** | **come down**
- PREP. **~ of** *He's in bed with a temperature of 102.*

temple *noun*

1 building used for worship
- ADJ. **great** *the great temples of Egypt* | **ancient, classical** | **sacred** | **ruined** | **Buddhist, Hindu, etc.** | **heathen, pagan**
- TEMPLE + NOUN **priest**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *They went to pray in the temple.*

2 part of the head
- ADJ. **left, right** | **throbbing**
- PREP. **at sb's/the ~ s** *He's greying at the temples.* **in sb's ~s** *There was a throbbing in her temples.*

tempo *noun*

1 speed of an activity/event
- ADJ. **increasing**
- VERB + TEMPO **increase, raise, step up** *United stepped up the tempo in the second half.* | **slow (down)**
- TEMPO + VERB **quicken** | **slacken** | **change**
- PHRASES **the tempo of life** *They soon adapted to the tempo of life on the island.*

2 speed of a piece of music
- ADJ. **fast, quick** | **slow** | **moderate** | **waltz, etc.**
- VERB + TEMPO **change**
- TEMPO + NOUN **indications, markings**
- PREP. **at a … ~** *They took the last movement at an unusually slow tempo.*

temporary *adj.*

- VERBS **be** *The arrangement's only temporary.*
- ADV. **very** | **strictly** | **relatively** | **only**

tempt *verb*

- VERB + TEMPT **could, may/might** | **try to**
- PREP. **into** *Charlotte was tempted into parting with £20 for the painting.* **with** *restaurants tempting us with delicious cakes*
- PHRASES **be almost/half tempted** *I was almost tempted to strip off and plunge straight into the pool.* **be/feel tempted** *Did you ever feel tempted to cheat?* **be seriously/severely/sorely/very tempted** *She was sorely tempted to throw the wine in his face.*

temptation *noun*

- ADJ. **big, great, overwhelming, strong** | **constant**
- VERB + TEMPTATION **feel, have** *I had the constant temptation to look out of the window.* | **avoid, overcome, resist** | **give in/way to, succumb to, yield to**
- PHRASES **in/out of temptation's way, place/put temptation in sb's way** *Keep your valuables locked away so as not to put temptation in the way of thieves.*

tenancy *noun*

- ADJ. **weekly, yearly, etc.** | **life** | **shorthold** | **joint** | **assured, protected, secure** | **business, council, local authority**
- VERB + TENANCY **hold (sth on)** *The tenancy is held in joint names.* ◇ *The land was held on a yearly tenancy.* | **take over** | **grant (sb)** | **terminate** | **renew** | **create** *shorthold tenancy created by the Housing Act of 1980*
- TENANCY + VERB **end, expire**
- TENANCY + NOUN **agreement**
- PREP. **under a/the ~** *The club occupies the land under a protected tenancy.*

tenant *noun*

- ADJ. **current, existing, sitting** *the sale of council houses to sitting tenants* | **life** | **protected, secure** | **joint** | **potential, prospective** | **business, council, council-house, housing association, local authority, private**
- VERB + TENANT **find** | **evict**
- TENANT + VERB **occupy sth** *The property is currently occupied by a life tenant.*
- TENANT + NOUN **farmer**
- PHRASES **landlord and tenant** *conflicts that might arise between landlord and tenant*

tend *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, lovingly** *She lovingly tended her little garden.*
- PREP. **to** *He tended to her every need.*
- PHRASES **well-tended** *well-tended lawns*

tendency *noun*

- ADJ. **clear, great, marked, strong** | **slight** | **greater, growing, increasing** *There's a growing tendency for women to marry later.* | **broad, common, general** | **inbuilt, inherent, innate, natural, underlying** | **alarming, dangerous, unfortunate, worrying** *The later model has an unfortunate tendency to collapse after a few weeks' use.* | **contradictory** | **centrifugal** *The civil war reinforced the centrifugal tendencies at work within the economy.* | **aggressive, homicidal, suicidal, violent** | **artistic, criminal, etc.** *He displayed artistic tendencies at an early age.* | **homosexual, lesbian**
- VERB + TENDENCY **have** | **display, reveal, show** | **reinforce** | **curb, reduce**
- PREP. **~among** *a worrying tendency among the abused to become abusers* **~for** *There is a tendency for farm sizes to increase.* **~on the part of** *The tendency on the part of the children is to blame their parents for everything.* **~ towards** *Industry showed a tendency towards increasingly centralized administration.*

tender *noun*

- ADJ. **highest, lowest** | **successful** | **competitive** | **open, private, public**
- VERB + TENDER **lodge, make, put in, submit** | **invite, put sth out to, seek** *The government invited tenders for a project to computerize the social security system.* ◇ *The laundry service was put out to competitive tender.* | **go out to** *The building of the new school will go out to tender.* | **win** | **lose** | **accept**
- TENDER + NOUN **offer** | **document, list** | **price**
- PREP. **by~** *The property is to be sold by tender.*

tender *adj.*

1 kind and loving
- VERBS **be, feel, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **very** | **almost** *Her expression became soft, almost tender.* | **quite**
- PREP. **towards** *He felt tender and loving towards her.*

2 soft and easy to cut/bite
- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **beautifully, very** *This meat is beautifully tender.* | **just** *Boil the potatoes in salted water until just tender.* | **almost** | **quite**

3 painful when touched
- VERBS **be, feel, look** *The back of my neck feels very tender.* | **become**
- ADV. **very** | **rather, slightly**

tenderness *noun*

- ADJ. **extreme, great, infinite** | **unexpected** | **loving**
- QUANT. **wave** *He felt a brief wave of tenderness towards his old teacher.*
- VERB + TENDERNESS **feel** | **show**
- PREP. **with (a)~** *She spoke with loving tenderness.* | **~for/towards** *She felt great tenderness for him.*
- PHRASES **tenderness in sb's eyes/voice, etc.** *There was tenderness in his face as he looked at her.*

tendon *noun*

- ADJ. **damaged, severed** | **Achilles**
- VERB + TENDON **pull, sever, tear**
- TENDON + NOUN **injury, trouble** | **operation, repair**

tenement *noun*

- ADJ. **crowded** | **crumbling, dilapidated, ruined, run-down** | **four-storey, two-storeyed, etc.**
- TENEMENT + NOUN **block, building, house, housing, slum**
- PREP. **in a/the~** *living in a crowded tenement*

tennis *noun*

- ADJ. **men's, women's** | **junior** | **professional** | **international, world** | **competitive** *Williams' return to competitive tennis after injury* | **lawn, real**
- QUANT. **game**
- VERB + TENNIS **play** | **watch**
- TENNIS + NOUN **ball, racket** | **dress, shoe, shorts** | **court, facilities** | **camp, centre, club** | **circuit, scene** *She is a popular figure on the international tennis circuit.* | **championship, competition, event, match, tournament** | **ace, champion, coach, legend, player, star** | **fan** | **commentator, journalist** | **career**

⇨ Special page at SPORT

tenor *noun*

1 male singing voice/singer
- ADJ. **celebrated, famous, great** | **high** | **operatic**
- VERB + TENOR **sing** *We persuaded Jake to sing tenor* (= sing the tenor part).
- TENOR + VERB **sing** *Three celebrated tenors sang at the president's inauguration.*
- TENOR + NOUN **voice** | **part, solo** | **register**

2 atmosphere/feeling
- ADJ. **even** *Nothing ever changes the even tenor of life in our village.* | **general, whole** *The whole tenor of the meeting was very positive.*

tense *noun*

- ADJ. **future, past, present** | **continuous, perfect, progressive, simple** *the present simple tense* | **verb**
- VERB + TENSE **use** | **form** *'Have' is the auxiliary verb used to form perfect tenses.*
- TENSE + NOUN **marker** | **system**
- PREP. **in the ... ~** *In the sentence 'I stroked the cat', 'stroked' is in the past tense.*

tense *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get, grow** *The situation grew increasingly tense.* | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, incredibly, very** | **increasingly** | **a bit, a little, rather** *I was feeling a bit tense and restless.*
- PREP. **about** *There's no point in getting tense about the situation.*

tension *noun*

1 inability to relax
- ADJ. **inner** | **emotional, muscle/muscular, nervous, pre-menstrual, sexual** *He suffers from nervous tension.*
- VERB + TENSION **feel, suffer from** *I feel some tension*

in my shoulders. | **sense** *As soon as he entered, he sensed a tension in the air.* | **cause, create** | **relieve** | **release**

- TENSION + NOUN **headache**
- PREP. **~ in** *The hot bath eased the tension in his body.*
- PHRASES **a release of tension** *Laughter can be a great release of tension.* **a sign of tension** *Horses are very sensitive to signs of tension in humans.*

2 bad feeling between people, countries, etc.

- ADJ. **considerable, great, high** *More police have been sent to areas of high political tension.* | **slight** | **growing, heightened, increased, increasing, mounting** | **constant** | **unresolved** | **renewed** | **ethnic, political, racial, religious, social** | **communal, family, internal, international, national, regional**
- VERB + TENSION **cause, create, generate** | **defuse, ease, reduce** *She often used humour to defuse tension in meetings.* | **heighten**
- TENSION + VERB **build up, grow, increase, mount, rise** | **ease** | **be palpable**
- PREP. **~ among** *The tension among the audience was palpable.* **~ between** *tension between local youths and the police* **~ in/within** *The redundancies caused greater tensions within the company.* **~ over** *There has been increased tension over the border incident.* **~ with** *renewed tension with France*
- PHRASES **a source of tension** *Money was always a source of tension between her parents.*

3 of rope, wire, etc.

- ADJ. **string**
- VERB + TENSION **adjust** *This old racket needs its string tension adjusted.* | **release**
- PREP. **in ~** *The metal is weak in tension.* **under ~** *Stay clear of cables which are under tension.* | **~ on** *The sudden tension on the line told me I had hooked a fish.*

tent *noun*

- ADJ. **dome, ridge** | **lightweight** | **three-person, two-person, etc.** | **makeshift** *The refugees had been living in makeshift tents for a year.* | **leaking, leaky** | **circus** | **beer, dining, luncheon, hospitality, mess, refreshment, tea** | **cook, cookhouse, cooking** *There was a long queue of troops outside the cookhouse tent.* | **hospital** | **press** | **oxygen**
- QUANT. **row**
- VERB + TENT **erect, pitch, put up, set up** *They pitched their tent in a little clearing in the wood.* | **unzip, zip shut/up** | **dismantle, take down** | **pack away/up** | **share**
- TENT + VERB **blow down, collapse**
- TENT + NOUN **camp, city** *a tent city housing refugees from the war* | **door, flap, frame, opening, peg, pole, rope, wall**
- PREP. **in a/the ~**
- PHRASES **the door/flap/roof of a tent**

tenure *noun*

1 holding an important position

- ADJ. **life, long** | **brief, short**
- VERB + TENURE **have** *She had a long tenure of office.*
- PREP. **during sb's ~** *He achieved a lot during his short tenure.*
- PHRASES **a tenure of office**

2 legal right to occupy property/land

- ADJ. **life, secure** | **fixed-period** | **housing, land** | **feudal, freehold**
- PHRASES **security of tenure** *The tenants have security of tenure.*

3 right to remain permanently in your job

- ADJ. **academic**
- VERB + TENURE **have** | **get** | **grant sb** *She has been granted tenure at Leeds University.*

term *noun*

1 word or group of words

- ADJ. **specific** | **blanket, broad, general, generic** | **clear, precise** | **vague** | **ambiguous** | **strong** *His objection was couched in the strongest terms.* | **mild** | **colloquial, slang** | **pejorative** *'Swot' is a pejorative term for someone who studies a lot.* | **technical** | **clinical, legal, medical, musical, etc.**
- VERB + TERM **use** | **be couched in** | **define, explain** | **coin** *The term 'acid rain' was coined in the nineteenth century.*
- TERM + VERB **connote sth, denote sth, describe sth, mean sth** | **apply to sth, be applied to sth, cover sth, refer to sth** *The term 'renewable energy' is applied, for example, to energy deriving from solar radiation.*
- PREP. **~ for** *'Old man' is a slang term for 'father'.* **~ of** *a term of abuse/endearment*
- PHRASES **in glowing terms** *The chairman spoke of the achievements of the company in glowing terms.* **in no uncertain terms** *We let them know in no uncertain terms just how disappointed we were.* **in simple terms**

2 in … terms showing what aspect of something you are considering

- ADJ. **absolute, material, practical, real** *Income has increased in real terms by 5%.* | **relative** *Iceland has had a mild winter, in relative terms.* | **broad, general** | **concrete** | **abstract** | **international** | **cultural, economic, financial, money, political, social, etc.** *In money terms, the event was a disaster.*

3 (usually **terms**) of an agreement/a relationship

- ADJ. **favourable, unfavourable** | **express** *the breach of an express term in the contract* | **implied** | **contract, credit, peace**
- VERB + TERM **dictate, negotiate, set** *Our opponents set the terms of the debate.* | **agree on**
- PREP. **under the ~s of** *Under the terms of the alliance, Japan was not obliged to enter the war.*
- PHRASES **on amicable/friendly/good terms** *The dispute was resolved on amicable terms.* **on equal terms** *It is a sport in which the top men and women can compete on equal terms.* **on familiar/first-name terms** *I'm on first-name terms with my boss.* **on speaking terms** *They haven't been on speaking terms since they had that big row.* **terms and conditions** *A wide range of accounts are available, with varying terms and conditions.*

4 period of a school/university year

- ADJ. **college, school, university** | **autumn, spring, etc.** | **teaching**
- PREP. **during (the) ~** *It's hard to get away during term.* **in the ~** *We have exams in the summer term.*
- PHRASES **the beginning/end of term** *We have exams at the end of term.*

5 period of time

- ADJ. **long, short** *a long term of imprisonment* | **full** (*medical*) *The pregnancy went to full term* (= lasted the normal length of time). | **fixed** *The contract was for a fixed term of five years.* | **jail, prison** | **presidential**
- VERB + TERM **serve** *He served a five-year prison term.*
- TERM + VERB **expire, run out**
- PREP. **at ~** (*medical*) *Her baby was born at term.*
- PHRASES **in the long/medium/short term** *In the long term, our efforts will pay off.* **a term of imprisonment, a term of office** *The president was sworn in for his second term of office.* **a term of years** *The lease is granted for a set term of years.*

term *verb* be termed

- ADV. **aptly** | **accurately** | **broadly, loosely** | **commonly, generally** | **variously** *This material is variously termed ash, clinker, cinders or slag.* | **euphemistically**
- PREP. **as** *His condition would be more accurately termed as 'chronic fatigue'.*

terminal *noun*

1 place/building that handles goods/passengers
- ADJ. **international | air/airport, bus, ferry, rail/railway | passenger | container, freight | coal, gas, etc.**
- TERMINAL + NOUN **building**
- PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *We met up at the bus terminal.*

2 computer equipment
- ADJ. **colour | computer | network | display**
- VERB + TERMINAL **connect, disconnect**
- TERMINAL + NOUN **keyboard, screen, server**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *There were two students at each terminal.* **on a/the ~** *pressing keys on a terminal*

terminate *verb*

- ADV. **abruptly, prematurely** *His contract was abruptly terminated.* **| swiftly | automatically**
- VERB + TERMINATE **be entitled to, be free to**
- PHRASES **the right to terminate sth** *Either party has the right to terminate the agreement.*

termination *noun*

1 ending of sth
- ADJ. **early, premature | sudden**
- TERMINATION + NOUN **date**
- PHRASES **notice of termination** *The landlord gave notice of the termination of tenancy.* **a termination of a contract, termination of employment** *You are required to give the company six weeks' notice of termination of employment.*

2 abortion
- ADJ. **early**
- VERB + TERMINATION **have, undergo** *She chose to have an early termination.*
- PHRASES **a termination of (a) pregnancy**

terminology *noun*

- ADJ. **modern | specialist, specialized, technical | computer, legal, medical, scientific, etc.**
- VERB + TERMINOLOGY **use** *The article uses rather specialized musical terminology.* **| borrow | standardize**
- PREP. **in … ~** *The outer walls, in building terminology, are 'double skin'.*

terrace *noun*

1 flat area of stone next to a restaurant, etc.
- ADJ. **paved | covered | shaded | sunny | cafe, garden, pool/poolside, roof/rooftop | sun, sunbathing**
- VERB + TERRACE **open onto** *The dining room opens onto a paved terrace.*
- TERRACE + VERB **overlook sth** *The hotel has a roof terrace overlooking the sea.*
- TERRACE + NOUN **bar, garden, restaurant**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *There's a table free on the terrace.*

2 line of joined houses
- ADJ. **long | two-storey, three-storey, etc.**
- TERRACE + NOUN **house** (also **terraced house**)
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Our house is in a long Victorian terrace in north London.*
- PHRASES **a terrace of houses**

3 (usually **terraces**) for growing crops on a hill
- ADJ. **steep | cultivated**
- VERB + TERRACE **dig** *The villagers had dug terraces in the hillside.*

terrain *noun*

- ADJ. **flat | hilly, mountainous, rocky, rough, rugged, uneven | difficult, harsh, inhospitable** *difficult terrain for cycling* **| familiar | unknown | boggy, marshy**
- VERB + TERRAIN **cross, traverse**
- PREP. **across/over ~** *It took us the whole day to trek across the rocky terrain.*

terrible *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**
- ADV. **really, truly** *I thought something really terrible had happened.* **| absolutely, just, quite, simply** *He suddenly collapsed—it was simply terrible.* **| pretty, rather | not very** *Nothing very terrible happened.*
- PREP. **for** *It must have been terrible for the survivors.*

terrified *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem**
- ADV. **really, truly | absolutely, completely, quite, utterly | pretty | clearly, obviously, plainly | secretly**
- PREP. **at** *She was absolutely terrified at the thought of jumping off the bridge.* **of** *He's terrified of spiders.*

territory *noun*

1 area of land that belongs to one country, etc.
- ADJ. **vast | new** *The explorers set off to conquer new territories.* **| former** *former French territories* **| neighbouring, surrounding | home, national | alien, foreign, overseas | enemy, hostile | neutral | colonial, dependent | sovereign** *Troops were stationed on sovereign German territory.* **| conquered, lost, occupied** *a town in British-occupied territory* **| unoccupied | disputed | familiar | uncharted, unexplored, unknown, virgin | dangerous**
- VERB + TERRITORY **hold | annex, capture, conquer, invade, occupy, recapture, take | control, govern, rule** *The territory had been controlled by Azerbaijan for many years.* **| cede, surrender | explore** (*often figurative*) *Tired of writing detective novels, she began to explore new territory.* **| settle** *The territory was never densely settled.* **| enter | leave | overfly** *The plane was shot down while overflying enemy territory.* **| stray into** *The soldiers strayed into hostile territory.*

2 of an animal
- ADJ. **breeding**
- VERB + TERRITORY **defend, patrol | mark (out), scent-mark**

terror *noun*

1 great fear
- ADJ. **absolute, naked, pure, real, sheer | constant**
- VERB + TERROR **be filled with, feel, have, shake/tremble with** *He was filled with absolute terror at the sight.* ◇ *the sheer terror she felt when she saw him* ◇ *He had a real terror of darkness.* **| bring, inspire, spread** *The explosion brought terror to hundreds of local residents.* ◇ *He inspired terror in everyone he met.* **| live in** *She lived in terror of her father.* **| flee in** *The shots sent the crowd fleeing in terror.*
- PREP. **from ~** *trembling from terror and excitement* **in ~** *He was found hiding in terror.* **out of ~** *He cried out, out of pure terror.* **with ~** *His face was white with terror.*
- PHRASES **strike terror into (the heart of) sb** *Its fearsome appearance struck terror into their hearts.*

2 violent action for political purposes
- ADJ. **political**
- VERB + TERROR **resort to, use** *The group has resorted to terror to try to get what it wants.* **| give in to**
- TERROR + NOUN **campaign | tactics | gang, group**
- PHRASES **an act of terror** *people who carry out acts of terror* **a campaign of terror** *The bombing formed part of a nationwide campaign of terror.* **a reign of terror** *The dictator's ten-year reign of terror left over 100 000 dead.*

terrorism *noun*

- ADJ. **urban | international, organized, state**
- VERB + TERRORISM **combat, fight | defeat | give in to** *This government will not give in to terrorism.*
- TERRORISM + NOUN **campaign**
- PREP. **~against** *Public cooperation is vital in the fight against terrorism.*
- PHRASES **an act of terrorism**

⇨ Note at CRIME (for more verbs)

terrorist *noun*

- ADJ. **suspected | armed | international** *The bomb attacks have been attributed to a group of international terrorists.* **| republican, right-wing, separatist, etc.**
- TERRORIST + NOUN **band, faction, gang, group, organization, unit | act, action, activity, atrocity, attack, bomb, bombing, campaign, explosion, incident, murder, violence** *an increase in terrorist activity* **| threat | target** *Aircraft remain likely terrorist targets.* **| victim | charge, crime, offence | suspect**

test *noun*

1 examination of sb's knowledge/ability

- ADJ. **demanding, difficult, gruelling | easy, simple | fair, good, objective** *This type of exam does not provide a fair test of the student's knowledge.* **| listening, oral, practical, written | cloze, multiple-choice | placement** *He scored well in the placement test and was put in the most advanced class.* **| achievement, aptitude, endurance, intelligence, IQ, language, memory, mental, proficiency, spelling** *The recruits were put through a week of gruelling endurance tests.* **| driving | screen** *Three actors out of a hundred were chosen from the screen test.*
- VERB + TEST **do, sit (for), take** *I took my driving test last week.* **| pass | fail | give, set | administer | mark**
- TEST + NOUN **result | conditions** *As a final practice for the exam, they had to write two essays under test conditions.* **| paper, questions**
- PREP. **in a/the~** *Some of the questions in the history test were rather difficult.* **| ~in** *a test in mathematics* **~on** *a test on the French Revolution*

2 experiment/medical examination

- ADJ. **exhaustive, extensive, rigorous, stringent, thorough | statistical | empirical, experimental | field, laboratory | successful | negative, positive | medical | screening** *screening tests for cancer* **| diagnostic | forensic** *Forensic tests showed that the man had been poisoned.* **| eye, sight | hearing | blood, DNA, skin, urine | dope, drug/drugs | fitness | breath, breathalyser | smear** *The government has launched a campaign advising women of the need for regular smear tests.* **| HIV | pregnancy | personality, psychological, psychometric | lie-detector, polygraph | means | flight, road, safety | atomic, nuclear | alpha, beta** *The revolutionary new system goes into beta test this month.*
- QUANT. **number, series** *She underwent a series of blood tests.*
- VERB + TEST **have, undergo | do, carry out, conduct, perform, run** *Rigorous safety tests are being carried out on the new jet.* **| use** *The test used in detecting the disease carries its own risks.* **| fail** *Three athletes were sent home after failing drugs tests.*
- TEST + VERB **take place | confirm sth, indicate sth, reveal sth, show sth** *The urine test showed some sort of infection.* **| prove negative/positive | come into force** *The new safety test came into force last month.* **| be designed to** *a test designed to detect bowel cancer*
- TEST + NOUN **result** *a negative/positive test result* **| data | conditions** *The machine refused to perform properly under test conditions.* **| bed** *The company is using the university data library as a test bed for its new software.* **| site** *protesters at nuclear test sites* **| facility | drive, flight, run** *He's taken the car out on a test run.* **| driver, pilot | aircraft, car | trial** *The new drink went down well in the test trials.* **| methods, procedures | system | performance | subject | equipment, instruments, kit, machine | samples, substances | programme, schedule | phase, stage** *The software is still at the test stage.* **| session** *Subjects had to attend ten test sessions on different days.* **| certificate** *The vehicle did not have a current test certificate at the time of the accident.* **| case** *This was the first action taken by a cancer sufferer against a tobacco company, and was seen as a test case.*
- PREP. **~for** *a test for diabetes* **~on** *a test on the engine*

3 shows how good, strong, effective, etc. sb/sth is

- ADJ. **good | critical, crucial, key, real, supreme, true, ultimate, vital** *a real test of character* **| serious, severe, stiff, tough | simple | objective | subjective | political**
- VERB + TEST **pose** *The calls for tax reform pose a severe test for the government.* **| put sb/sth to** *The latest pay dispute has really put her management skills to the test.* **| face** *The new prime minister is facing his toughest political test so far.*
- TEST + NOUN **case**
- PHRASES **the acid test** (= a way of deciding whether sth is successful or true) *Whether he would accept a pay cut would be the acid test of his loyalty to the company.* **stand the test of time** *Whether this new technology will stand the test of time remains to be seen.*

test *verb*

1 examine sth to find out if it is working/what it is like

- ADV. **adequately, properly** *The product had not been adequately tested before being put on the market.* **| rigorously | extensively | exhaustively, fully, thoroughly | regularly, routinely** *You should test your brakes regularly.* **| directly | empirically, experimentally** *the importance of empirically tested research* **| formally | successfully** *The exercise successfully tested the procedures for dealing with a serious oil spillage.* **| clinically, dermatologically | out** *a good way to test out his hypothesis*
- VERB + TEST **decide to** *We decided to test the theory experimentally.* **| attempt to, seek to, try to | be designed to, be intended to | be used to | be difficult to** *It is difficult to test a potential cure when a disease is ill-defined.*
- PREP. **for** *Squeeze the fruit to test for ripeness.* **on** *We only sell products that have not been tested on animals.*
- PHRASES **have sth tested** *I'm having my eyes tested this week.* **test negative/positive** *Two of the athletes tested positive for illegal drugs.* **test sth to the limit** *The training tested his body to the very limit.* **tried and tested** *tried and tested techniques*

2 require all sb's strength/ability/resources, etc.

- ADV. **seriously, severely, sorely** *Neither goalkeeper was seriously tested in a rather poor match.* ◇ *There were times when my temper was sorely tested.*

testament *noun*

- ADJ. **fine, fitting, worthy**
- VERB + TESTAMENT **bear** *The immaculate state of the garden bears testament to a lifetime's effort.*
- PREP. **~to** *The monument is a worthy testament to the courage of the men who fought in the war.*

testify *verb*

- VERB + TESTIFY **be prepared to, be willing to | be unwilling to, refuse to | call sb to, force sb to** *The president's former aides were called to testify at his trial.*
- PREP. **against** *She refused to testify against her brother.* **before** *She was unwilling to testify before Congress.* **for** *a Mafia member who was prepared to testify for the authorities* **to** *A senior officer testified to the existence of police*

hit squads. ◇ *A large number of witnesses testified to the tribunal.*

• PHRASES **testify in court**

testimony *noun*

1 formal statement that sth is true

• ADJ. **reliable | false | oral, sworn, verbal, written | eyewitness, personal | expert | court, trial** *a transcript of the trial testimony*

• VERB + TESTIMONY **give | hear**

• PREP. **by your ~** *He had by his own testimony taken part in the burglary.* **in ~** *In testimony before the Crown Court, she described her movements on the day of the murder.* **| ~ about** *The witness was called to give oral testimony about the incident outside the theatre.* **~ against** *The court heard her testimony against the accused.* **~ before**

2 proof

• ADJ. **ample, clear, eloquent, powerful, remarkable, striking**

• VERB + TESTIMONY **bear, stand as**

• PREP. **~ to** *His thick, swollen fingers bore testimony to a lifetime of toil.*

text *noun*

1 writing in a book/newspaper, on a computer, etc.

• ADJ. **complete, full** *The newspaper printed the full text of the interview.* **| draft | final | original | main** *The illustrations are printed separately from the main text.* **| accompanying** *The catalogue consists of colour reproductions of the paintings with accompanying text.* **| electronic, handwritten, printed, typewritten, written**

• QUANT. **block, body, chunk, line, page, piece, portion** *Hand symbols in the main body of the text cross-refer the reader to the appendices.* ◇ *Use the mouse to move chunks of text from place to place.*

• VERB + TEXT **create, draft, write | edit, modify | highlight | cut, delete | insert, move, paste | scan (in) | handle, manipulate, process** *computer programs that process text* **| set, typeset | print | publish | read | transcribe | annotate | stray from** *She strayed from the text in a few places to illustrate some of her more interesting points.*

• TEXT + NOUN **file** *The program allows you to import text files from other word processors.* **| editor** *one of the best HTML text editors available* **| message, messaging** *The text message just said 'Hope 2CU@the party'.*

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

2 book or piece of writing to be studied

• ADJ. **basic, key, standard | recommended, set** *'Antony and Cleopatra' was one of our set texts for A level.* **| prepared** *He stood up and began reading from a prepared text.* **| authoritative, influential | introductory | academic, dramatic, legal, literary, poetic, sacred, scientific, etc.** *We're studying dramatic texts by sixteenth-century playwrights.* **| biology, mathematics, etc.**

• VERB + TEXT **read (from) | analyse, deconstruct, interpret, study | annotate**

• TEXT + NOUN **analysis**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *We discussed the use of metaphor in the text.* **| ~ about/on** *a poetic text about growing up in rural England*

textbook *noun*

• ADJ. **basic, general, introductory, standard** *Do you have the standard textbook on the subject?* **| recommended | economics, geography, medical, etc. | school**

textile *noun*

• ADJ. **embroidered, handwoven, printed, woven | cotton, woollen, etc.**

• TEXTILE + NOUN **business, company, factory, firm, industry, manufacture, manufacturer, manufacturing, mill, trade, worker | design, designer**

• PREP. **in ~s** *She has a job in textiles.*

• PHRASES **the manufacture/production of textiles**

texture *noun*

• ADJ. **dense, firm, thick | delicate, fine, light, soft** *Sponge cakes have a light texture.* **| coarse, crumbly, crunchy, rough | creamy, silky, smooth, velvety | spongy | sticky | different, varied | interesting, rich** *She enjoyed the rich texture of the beer.* **| skin, soil, surface | choral, instrumental, musical, string**

• VERB + TEXTURE **have | add, give sth** *I use a styling gel to give texture to my hair.*

• PREP. **in ~** *The cloth was rough in texture.* **with a … ~** *a piece with a dense choral texture*

thank *verb*

• ADV. **gratefully, profusely, properly, sincerely, warmly** *I would like to thank you all most sincerely.* ◇ *He thanked her warmly for the meal.* **| politely | personally | publicly**

• VERB + THANK **must, want to, would like to** *I wanted to thank him personally.*

• PREP. **for** *I haven't thanked Bill properly yet for his present.*

thankful *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, seem**

• ADV. **deeply, extremely, very | just** *I'm just thankful that my mother never lived to see this.*

• PREP. **for** *We were thankful for the chance to rest.*

thanks *noun*

• ADJ. **big, special** *A big thanks to all of you who supported our fund-raising campaign.* **| heartfelt, sincere, warm | grateful**

• VERB + THANKS **express, give, say** *We would like to express our warmest thanks for all you've done.* ◇ *I said thanks and put the phone down.* **| nod, smile** *She smiled her thanks as the car drove off.* **| get, receive** *You'll get little thanks from him for all your trouble.* **| accept | deserve** *Their generosity deserves our grateful thanks.*

• THANKS + VERB **go to sb** *Thanks go to Claire Potter for making the hall available to us.*

• PREP. **as/in ~ for** *He got a bottle of whisky in thanks for his cooperation.* **~ to** *He gave thanks to God for the safe return of his son.*

• PHRASES **a letter/vote/word of thanks** *The chairperson proposed a vote of thanks to the volunteers.* **many thanks** *Many thanks for the flowers.* **thanks be to God** *We were all pulled out alive, thanks be to God.*

thank you *noun*

• ADJ. **big, special | polite**

• VERB + THANK YOU **give, say** *He didn't even say thank you.* ◇ *We said our thank you's and goodbyes to the hosts and went to catch a cab.* **| get**

• THANK YOU + NOUN **letter, present**

• PREP. **~ for** *She got a special thank you for all her hard work.* **~ to** *a big thank you to the hospital staff*

thaw *noun*

• ADJ. **rapid, sudden | spring, summer** *The arctic shore remains frozen until the summer thaw.*

• THAW + VERB **begin, come, set in**

• PREP. **during a/the ~** *The river often floods during the thaw.*

thaw *verb*

• ADV. **completely** *Make sure the meat has thawed completely before cooking.* | **a little** (*figurative*) *Relations between the two countries thawed a little after the talks.* | **visibly** (*figurative*) *The old nun was as imperious as ever, but visibly thawed when she saw the children.* | **out** *Has the meat thawed out yet?*

theatre *noun*

1 where you go to see plays, etc.

• ADJ. **large** | **little, small** | **crowded, packed** *The theatre was packed for the opening night.* | **open-air** | **puppet** *The pier has a unique little puppet theatre.*
• VERB + THEATRE **go to, visit** *I haven't been to the theatre for ages.*
• THEATRE + NOUN **ticket** | **production** | **audience** | **manager, staff**
• PREP. **at a/the ~** *We were at the theatre last night.* **in a/the ~** *There's a bar in the theatre.*

2 drama

• ADJ. **good, great** *He writes the sort of dialogue that makes great theatre.* | **live** | **amateur** | **commercial, professional** | **fringe, provincial, repertory** *There was some good fringe theatre at the festival.* | **classical, contemporary, experimental, modern, music/musical, popular** | **street** *We saw some good street theatre while we were in Paris.* | **community, youth** | **political** (*often figurative*) *The Chancellor's speech was an absorbing piece of political theatre.*
• QUANT. **piece**
• VERB + THEATRE **study** *He is studying Greek theatre.*
• THEATRE + NOUN **studies** | **critic**

3 work of acting in/ producing plays

• VERB + THEATRE **be in, work in** | **go into** *He wants to go into the theatre when he finishes university.*
• THEATRE + NOUN **director, producer** | **company, group**

4 in a hospital

• ADJ. **operating**
• VERB + THEATRE **take to** *He's already been taken to theatre for the operation.*
• THEATRE + NOUN **nurse, sister**
• PREP. **in (the) ~** *She was in the operating theatre for two hours.*

theft *noun*

• ADJ. **petty** | **attempted** | **car, cattle, etc.**
• PREP. **~ from** *They are accused of theft from a newsagent's shop.* **~ of** *She admitted the theft of three pairs of trousers.*
⇨ Note at CRIME (for verbs)

theme *noun*

• ADJ. **basic, central, dominant, important, key, main, major, underlying** | **broad, general** | **common, popular, universal** *universal themes of love and loneliness* | **constant, familiar, favourite, recurrent, recurring** | **related** | **unifying** | **contemporary, topical** | **historical, religious, etc.** | **campaign, conference, research** | **musical** *The film's haunting musical theme stayed in my head for days.*
• VERB + THEME **develop, discuss, examine, explore** *His later novels develop the theme of alienation.* | **warm to** *'Our work', he continued, warming to his theme, 'will be a milestone in scientific history.'*
• THEME + VERB **emerge** *Several familiar themes emerged from the discussion.* | **run through sth** *The same themes run through all her novels.*
• THEME + NOUN **music, song, tune** | **park, pub**
• PREP. **on the ~ of** *He gave a talk on the theme of teenage unemployment.*
• PHRASES **variations on a theme** *Most of the essays appear to be variations on a few central themes.*

theology *noun*

• ADJ. **dogmatic, liberal, natural, practical, systematic** | **ecumenical** | **traditional** | **eastern, western** | **Christian, Hindu, etc.** | **Catholic, Protestant, etc.**
⇨ Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

theoretical *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **remain**
• ADV. **highly** | **purely** *This research is purely theoretical.* | **largely** | **rather**

theory *noun*

• ADJ. **complete** | **partial** | **general** *Einstein's general theory of relativity* | **coherent** | **unified** *the existence of a grand unified theory that determines everything in the universe* | **current, new** | **classical** *the classical theory of gravity* | **pet** *One of her pet theories is that people who restrict their calorie intake live longer.* | **conflicting** | **critical** | **abstract** *His comments are just abstract theory and show little understanding of the realities of the situation.* | **economic, legal, linguistic, literary, political, scientific, social, etc.** | **post-modernist, structuralist, etc.** *Current feminist theory consists of several different trends.* | **conspiracy** *a conspiracy theory about the princess's death* | **chaos, game, quantum, number, particle, probability, relativity, etc.**
• QUANT. **set** *Each school has its own set of theories.*
• VERB + THEORY **have, hold** | **advance, develop, formulate, produce, propose** | **work on** *Police are working on the theory that the murderer was known to the family.* | **refute** | **confirm, prove** | **disprove** | **challenge, test**
• THEORY + VERB **evolve** | **hold sth, suggest sth**
• PREP. **in ~** *In theory, these machines should last for ten years.* | **~ about** *He has a theory about why dogs walk round in circles before going to sleep.*
• PHRASES **theory and practice** *the distinction/relationship between theory and practice*

therapist *noun*

• ADJ. **trained** | **experienced** | **beauty, occupational, sex, speech**
⇨ Note at DOCTOR
⇨ Note at JOB

therapy *noun*

• ADJ. **alternative, complementary** | **behaviour, speech** | **aversion, occupational, regression, relaxation, shock, etc.** | **family, group** *They discuss their problems in group therapy sessions.*
• QUANT. **course**
• VERB + THERAPY **need, require** | **be given, have, receive, undergo** *He will have to have shock therapy.* | **be in, go into** *I went into therapy because my doctor suggested it.*
• THERAPY + NOUN **group, session**
• PHRASES **a form of therapy** *the use of hypnosis as a form of therapy*

thermometer *noun*

• ADJ. **accurate** | **clinical** | **digital, mercury** | **rectal** | **meat, sugar** *Check that the roast is cooked right through, using a meat thermometer.*
• VERB + THERMOMETER **read**
• THERMOMETER + VERB **measure sth**
• THERMOMETER + NOUN **reading**
• PREP. **on a/the ~** *the reading on the thermometer*

thesis *noun*

1 part of a university degree

- ADJ. **doctoral, MA, Master's, MSc, PhD, etc. | chemistry, geology, etc. | research**
- VERB + THESIS **work on | complete, do, write (up) | submit | publish**
- THESIS + NOUN **research, title, topic**
- PREP. **by ~** *She completed an MSc by thesis.* **in a/the ~** *research presented in a thesis* | **~ about/on** *He's doing a doctoral thesis on the early works of Shostakovich.*

2 statement of an idea/a theory

- ADJ. **basic, central, main**
- VERB + THESIS **prove, support** *The results of the experiment support his central thesis.* | **disprove | advance** *He advanced the thesis that too much choice was burdensome to people.* | **challenge, refute**
- PREP. **~ about** *a thesis about the effects of new technology on skills*

thick *adj.*

1 of solid things/growing things

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, really, very | fairly, quite, rather, relatively** *Use fairly thick wads of newspaper.* | **enough, sufficiently** *a screen of trees thick enough to conceal the building entirely*

2 of liquid

- VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get** *The paint's got too thick. I'll have to thin it down.*
- ADV. **very | fairly, quite, rather | enough, sufficiently**

3 of fog/smoke/air

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, grow** *The air had grown thick and smoky.*
- ADV. **very | fairly, quite, rather**
- PREP. **with** *The air was thick with dust.* ◇ *(figurative) The atmosphere was thick with tension.*

thief *noun*

- ADJ. **would-be** *The alarm is usually sufficient to deter a would-be thief.* | **common, petty | professional | casual, opportunist | sneak | car, jewel, etc.**
- QUANT. **gang**
- VERB + THIEF **catch**
- THIEF + VERB **take sth, snatch sth, steal sth** *A thief snatched her handbag containing her wages.* | **escape with sth, get away with sth, make off with sth | break in | strike** *The thief struck while the family were out.*

thigh *noun*

- ADJ. **fat, flabby, plump | beefy, hard, huge, muscular, powerful, strong, sturdy | lean, slender, slim | bare, naked | silken | inner**
- THIGH + NOUN **bone, muscle | injury, strain**

thin *adj.*

1 of solid things: not thick

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, wear** *The fabric was wearing thin.* ◇ *(figurative) That joke is wearing a little thin.*
- ADV. **extremely, incredibly, very, wafer-** *a plate of wafer-thin bread and butter* | **a bit, fairly, a little, quite, rather, relatively | enough** *a sliver of rock thin enough to be translucent*

2 not fat

- VERBS **be, look | become, get, grow**
- ADV. **extremely, painfully, pathetically, pitifully, terribly, very** *The old horse was painfully thin.* | **fairly, quite, rather** *She's tall and quite thin.*

3 of liquids

- VERBS **be, look, seem** *The paint looks a bit thin.* | **become, get** *Be careful that the mixture doesn't get too thin.*
- ADV. **terribly, very | a bit, rather**

thing *noun*

1 used instead of the name of an object

- ADJ. **basic, essential** *I need to buy a few basic things like bread and milk.*
- VERB + THING **make** *He makes things out of wood.*

2 **things** objects/clothing/tools

- ADJ. **swimming, tennis, etc. | breakfast, lunch, etc.** *He hadn't washed up the dinner things yet.*
- VERB + THINGS **get together, pack** *Come on kids, get your things together—we're going.* | **put on, take off** *Hang on a second—I'll just take off my painting things* (= clothes). | **clear away/up, put away, tidy away/up** *Clear your painting things* (= materials) *away.*

3 (used with negatives) anything

- VERB + THING **hear, know, notice, see** *I can't see a thing without my glasses.* | **miss** *I'm going to arrive early, because I don't want to miss a thing.* | **do** *She's tricked you, and you can't do a thing about it.* | **eat** *I haven't eaten a thing all day.* | **say** *Nobody said a thing when he appeared with a wig on.* | **mean** *Fame and fortune don't mean a thing if you don't have happiness.*

4 fact/event/situation/action

- ADJ. **good, great, positive** *It's a good thing you remembered to turn off the gas!* ◇ *The best thing would be to apologize straight away.* ◇ *If she works hard she's capable of great things.* ◇ *Try to look on your rejection as a positive thing.* | **lovely, nice, wonderful | bad, negative** *Too much studying can be a bad thing.* ◇ *It's no bad thing to express your anger.* | **appalling, awful, dreadful, horrible, terrible** *That was a horrible thing to say to her.* | **amazing, curious, exciting, extraordinary, funny, interesting, remarkable, startling, strange, striking, surprising, weird** *The amazing thing is, he wouldn't accept any money!* | **ridiculous | frightening, worrying | annoying | foolish, silly, stupid** *I admit it was a foolish thing to do.* | **bloody** (*taboo*), **damn/damned | crucial, key, main, important, vital** *The key thing is to remain calm.* | **little, the slightest, small, trivial** *I give thanks for every little thing.* ◇ *He loses his temper at the slightest thing.* ◇ *It's such a small thing to ask.* | **easy** *Apologizing is never the easiest thing to do.* | **hard | brave, dangerous, risky | natural** *Entertaining people is the most natural thing in the world for her.* | **close, close-run** *I managed to get on the train, but it was a close-run thing* (= I almost missed it). | **rare | everyday** *She helped with the everyday things like shopping and cooking.* | **usual** *I did my usual thing of losing my keys.* | **nearest, next best** *He's the nearest thing to a film star I've ever met.* ◇ *I wanted to be a musician, but teaching music is the next best thing.* | **real** *It's just a practice, not the real thing.* | **the whole** *Let's forget the whole thing.* | **last** *The last thing she wanted was to upset her parents.*
- QUANT. **loads, lots, plenty** *I've got loads of things to do today.*
- VERB + THING **do** *He has a funny way of doing things.* ◇ *It's impossible to get things done when you're looking after a baby.* | **make up, say** *Who's been saying things about me?* | **be hearing/imagining/seeing** *There's nobody at the door—you must have been imagining things!*
- THING + VERB **go on, happen, occur** *There are some weird things going on in that house.* ◇ *A funny thing happened to me this morning …*
- PREP. **~ about** *The best thing about Alan is he's always honest.*
- PHRASES **among/amongst other things** *Amongst other things, I have to deal with mail and keep the accounts.* **have better things to do** *I've got better things to do than stand here chatting all day!* **know/learn/teach sb a**

thing or two *Jack knows a thing or two about kids—he's got five.* **no such thing** *There's no such thing as ghosts* (= they don't exist). **kind/sort of thing** *They go canoeing, climbing, that sort of thing.* **such a thing/a thing like that** *People defraud their companies every day, but Mike would never do such a thing!* **a thing of the past** *Books may one day become a thing of the past.*

5 things general situation, as it affects sb

• VERB + THINGS **think over/through** *She's taken a few days off to think things over.* | **look at, see** *Try to look at things from my point of view.* | **discuss, talk over, talk through** *We arranged to meet and talk things over.* | **explain** | **accept** *You should suggest changes, rather than accept things as they are.* | **change** | **arrange, deal with, handle, look after, run, sort out** *Who's going to look after things while you're away?* ◇ *I want to get things sorted out before I go away.* | **straighten out** | **mess up, spoil** | **patch up** *They patched things up a week after their quarrel.* | **speed along/up** *It might speed things up if you phone them.* | **delay, hold up, slow down**

• THINGS + VERB **stand** *As things stand at present, he seems certain to win.* | **be going** *He asked me how things were going.* | **change** | **go (according) to plan, go well, work (out)** *I just don't know if things are going to work out.* | **get better, improve, look up** *We were in trouble but now things are looking up.* | **look bright/good/promising/rosy** *There was a week to go to the deadline and things were looking good.* | **look bleak/grim** *Things looked bleak for the future of the factory.* | **be in/get into a mess, get out of hand, get/run out of control, go wrong** | **get worse, go downhill** | **turn out** *I'm sure things will turn out OK.* | **come to a head** *Things came to a head when money was found to be missing from the account.* | **get to sb** *Try not to let things get to you.*

• PHRASES **all/other things being equal** *All other things being equal, the bigger fighter should win.* **all things considered** *All things considered, I think we've done a good job.* **get/keep things going/moving** *They hired temporary staff to keep things going over the summer.* **get/put things straight** *I marched into his office to get a few things straight.* **have/keep things in hand/under control** *He offered to help, but she assured him she had things in hand.* **have things on your mind** *We chatted about school, but I could tell she had other things on her mind.* **let things slide/slip** *She'd started the term studying hard, but now was beginning to let things slip.* **let things take their course/happen** *Don't worry about it—just let things take their course.* **make things better, easier, difficult, worse, etc.** *Her apology only served to make things worse.* **put things right** *He apologized, and asked for a chance to put things right.* **things to come** *The pay cut was just a taste of things to come.*

6 what is needed/socially acceptable

• ADJ. **proper, right** *He did the right thing and went back to his wife.* ◇ *I did all the right things but I couldn't get the engine to start.* | **wrong** *She always manages to say the wrong thing.* | **logical, obvious, prudent, sensible** *Calling a doctor seemed the logical thing to do.* | **decent, done, honourable** *He did the decent thing and resigned.* ◇ *It's not the done thing to ask someone how much they earn.* | **very** *Iced tea—the very thing!*

• VERB + THING **do** | **say**

• PHRASES **just the thing, not quite the thing** *It wouldn't be quite the thing to turn up in running gear.*

7 a person/an animal

• ADJ. **little, old** *The baby's a pretty little thing.* | **silly** | **poor** *You must be starving, you poor thing!*

think *noun*

• ADJ. **long** | **hard**

• VERB + THINK **give sth, have**

• PREP. **~about** *I've had a long, hard think about it.*

think *verb*

1 have an opinion

• ADV. **really** | **personally** *I personally think it's all been a lot of fuss over nothing.* | **honestly** *Did you honestly think I would agree to that?* | **never** *I never thought you would carry out your threat.*

• VERB + THINK **be inclined to** *I'm inclined to think we've been a little harsh on her.*

• PREP. **about** *I still don't know what he really thinks about it.* **of** *What did you think of the film?*

2 have an idea

• ADV. **suddenly**

• PREP. **of** *I suddenly thought of a way I could help.*

3 consider/reflect

• ADV. **carefully, deeply, (long and) hard** *She thought long and hard before accepting his offer.* | **fleetingly** | **rationally** *He seemed to have lost the ability to think rationally.* | **frantically** *What can I do now? he thought frantically.* | **contemptuously, despairingly, dully, glumly, grimly, guiltily, indignantly, irritably, miserably, resentfully** | **ruefully, wistfully, wryly**

• VERB + THINK **dread to, hate to, shudder to, tremble to** *I hate to think what would have happened if we hadn't arrived.*

• PREP. **about** *Think about what you are going to do next.* **of** *I often think of Jane.*

thinker *noun*

• ADJ. **great, leading** *Einstein was one of the world's greatest thinkers.* | **deep, profound, serious** | **clear, logical** | **lateral** | **quick** | **creative, original** | **strategic** | **political, religious, scientific, etc.** | **conservative, liberal, radical, etc.** | **Christian, Marxist, western, etc.**

• PREP. **~on** *a leading thinker on constitutional law*

thinking *noun*

1 using your mind to think

• ADJ. **deep, hard, serious** *This topic requires a lot of deep thinking.* | **good** *Yes, we'll phone them instead—that's good thinking* (= a good idea). | **clear, logical** | **muddled** | **quick** | **forward** *The school would have made better use of the money with a little forward thinking.* | **positive** | **abstract, analytical, critical** | **creative, independent, innovative, original** | **lateral** | **wishful** *His claims to be a millionaire are just wishful thinking.*

• QUANT. **piece** *a brilliant piece of lateral thinking*

• VERB + THINKING **do** *We have some hard thinking to do before we agree to the plan.* | **apply** *The book shows you how to apply critical thinking to your studies.*

• PREP. **~behind** *It was difficult to see what the thinking was behind their eventual decision.*

2 opinion

• ADJ. **contemporary, current, modern** | **fresh, new** | **conventional, old, traditional** | **divergent** | **government** | **Labour, Republican, etc.** | **economic, educational, historical, political, scientific, etc.** *Traditional educational thinking placed importance on learning by rote.* | **feminist, socialist, etc.** | **military, strategic**

• VERB + THINKING **develop, shape** | **clarify, explain** | **change** *They are unlikely to have changed their thinking so soon.* | **dominate** *His writings on motorized warfare dominated strategic thinking in the 1930s.*

• PREP. **in … ~** *contemporary trends in feminist thinking* | **~about/on** *What is the current Conservative thinking on social security?*

• PHRASES **a shift in sb's thinking** *There's been a shift in government thinking on genetically-modified food.* **to sb's way of thinking** (= in sb's opinion) *To my way of thinking, it would just be a massive waste of money.*

third *noun*

• ADJ. **first, middle, last** *the last third of the novel* | **bottom, lower** | **top, upper** *Most of the pupils' marks were in the upper third of the range.*

• VERB + THIRD **divide sth into** *He divided the money into thirds.*

• PREP. **~ of** *Over a third of sales were made over the Internet.*

• PHRASES **about/almost/at least/over a third, between a third and a half, a third to (a) half** *The discount is a third to a half of the full price.*

thirst *noun*

1 desire to drink

• ADJ. **great, intense, raging, terrible, unquenchable**

• VERB + THIRST **suffer from** *Many of the refugees were suffering badly from thirst.* | **quench, slake** | **die of** | **work up** *After walking five miles, they had worked up a great thirst.*

2 strong desire

• ADJ. **great, unquenchable** *He has an unquenchable thirst for knowledge.*

• VERB + THIRST **have** | **satisfy**

• PREP. **~for**

thought *noun*

1 sth that you think

• ADJ. **comforting, good, happy, pleasant, positive** *It was a comforting thought that at least her father hadn't suffered.* ◇ *Before going on stage, I breathe deeply and think positive thoughts.* | **anxious, appalling, awful, bad, black, dark, depressing, disquieting, disturbing, gloomy, negative, sad, sobering, terrible** *A disturbing thought suddenly struck me.* | **interesting, intriguing** | **first, immediate, initial** *My immediate thought was that he must be joking.* | **sudden** | **little** | **fleeting, passing** | **conscious** | **unspoken** | **waking** *She occupied all his waking thoughts.*

• VERB + THOUGHT **have, think** *I've just had a thought* (= an idea). ◇ *He remained aloof, thinking his own thoughts.* | **have** *Let me have your thoughts on the report.* | **express, write down** | **read** *She often seems to know what I'm thinking, as though she can read my thoughts.* | **dread, not be able to bear, not like, not relish** *She said she couldn't bear the thought of living alone in the house.* ◇ *I don't like the thought of you walking home alone.*

• THOUGHT + VERB **come/pop into your mind, come to sb, cross your mind, go/flash/pass/race through your mind, hit sb, occur to sb, strike sb** *The thought crossed my mind that Jim might know the answer.* ◇ *All kinds of thoughts raced through my mind.* | **~s turn to sth** *My thoughts turned to home.*

• PREP. **~ about** *He lay there thinking gloomy thoughts about life and death.* **~ of** *The children were overjoyed at the thought of going to the seaside on holiday.* **~ on** *They asked him what his thoughts were on the government's announcement.*

• PHRASES **just a thought** *Would Mark be able to help? It's just a thought.* **keep your thoughts to yourself** *He's not the kind of man to keep his thoughts to himself.* **the mere/very thought of sth** *The mere thought of lice makes my head itch.* **push/put the thought aside/away, push the thought from/out of your mind**

2 process/act of thinking

• ADJ. **careful, proper** | **deep, profound** *She is known for her deep thought and intellectual ways.* | **coherent** *He was so upset, he was incapable of coherent thought.* | **logical, rational** | **analytical, critical** | **abstract** | **creative** | **free, independent** | **conscious** *My job is so repetitive, it does not require much conscious thought.* | **fresh** *We have to give the matter fresh thought.* | **second** *I accepted the offer without a second thought.*

• VERB + THOUGHT **give sb/sth, spare (sb)** *I've given the matter careful thought.* ◇ *Don't give it another thought* (= to tell sb not to worry after they have said they are sorry). ◇ *Spare a thought for us—we'll be working through the night to finish the report.* | **direct, turn** *I tried to turn my thoughts to pleasanter things.* | **provoke** *The article was intended to provoke thought.* | **be deep in, be lost in** *She was deep in thought and didn't hear me call her.*

• THOUGHT + VERB **go into sth** *Not enough thought has gone into this essay.*

• THOUGHT + NOUN **pattern, process** *I couldn't see what thought processes led him to that conclusion.*

• PREP. **without ~** *They had acted rashly, without thought.*

• PHRASES **after a moment's thought** *After a moment's thought, I accepted his offer.* **freedom of thought** *The constitution guarantees freedom of thought and belief.* **a line/mode/train of thought** *That line of thought can only lead to one conclusion.* ◇ *He hesitated, as though he had lost his train of thought.* **thought-provoking** *There was a thought-provoking article about poverty in the paper.* **with no thought for sth** *He ran into the burning house with no thought for his own life.*

3 ideas

• ADJ. **modern** | **19th-century, etc.** | **Eastern, Western** | **intellectual, philosophical, scientific** | **economic, political** | **feminist, liberal, socialist, etc.**

• PHRASES **a school of thought** *They belong to different schools of thought.* **a strand of thought** *three different strands of scientific thought*

4 kindness

• ADJ. **kind, kindly, nice** *Thank you for the flowers—it was a very kind thought.*

thrash *verb*

1 hit sb many times

• ADV. **soundly** *That boy deserves to be soundly thrashed!*

• PREP. **with** *He thrashed the poor servant with his stick.*

2 move your arms and legs in an uncontrolled way

• ADV. **helplessly, violently, wildly** | **about, around** *The cow fell on its side and thrashed about wildly.*

3 defeat sb easily in a game

• ADV. **soundly** *The visiting side were soundly thrashed.*

thrashing *noun*

1 hitting

• ADJ. **good, sound**

• VERB + THRASHING **give** | **get** *He got a sound thrashing once his father found out.* | **deserve**

2 defeat

• VERB + THRASHING **give** | **have, suffer, take** *The team suffered a 4-0 thrashing on Sunday.*

• PREP. **~ of** *Richmond clinched promotion with a 50-3 thrashing of Roundhay.*

thread *noun*

1 piece of cotton, etc.

• ADJ. **strong** | **delicate, fine, fragile, thin** | **loose** | **matching** | **cotton, silk, etc.** | **embroidery, sewing** | **warp, weft**

• QUANT. **length, piece**

• VERB + THREAD **spin** | **catch, pull** *You've pulled a thread in your jumper.*

• PHRASES **hanging by a thread** (*often figurative*) *The player's career is hanging by a thread after this latest injury to his knee.*

2 connection between ideas, parts of a story, etc.

• ADJ. **central, main** | **common, connecting** | **consistent, continuous** | **narrative** | **loose** *Apart from one or* *two loose threads, the police now had the complete picture of what happened.*

- VERB + THREAD **follow, trace** *I found it hard to follow the main thread of his argument.* | **lose** *The speaker lost his thread halfway through the talk.* | **keep** *She struggled against all the interruptions to keep the thread of her argument.* | **draw together, pick up, pull together, weave** *The author eventually picks up the various threads of the plot and weaves them into a masterly conclusion.*
- THREAD + VERB **run through sth** *A continuous thread runs through all the versions of the legend.* | **emerge** *On studying the different historians' accounts, common threads emerge.* | **unravel** *As the film progresses, the threads of the plot slowly begin to unravel.*

threadbare *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **wear sth** *The carpets had worn rather threadbare.*
- ADV. **a little, rather**

threat *noun*

1 expression of intention to do harm/punish

- ADJ. **dire, terrible** *Despite dire threats of violence from extremist groups, the protest passed off peacefully.* | **empty, idle** *The kids took no notice of the teacher's idle threats.* | **implied, veiled** *The company's pay offer was accompanied by thinly-veiled threats of redundancies if it was rejected.* | **explicit** | **physical, violent** | **verbal** | **bomb, death, suicide**
- VERB + THREAT **issue, make, utter** | **receive** | **carry out** *It's unwise to make threats that you cannot carry out.* | **lift, withdraw** *Teachers have lifted their threat of strike action.* | **reduce** | **give in to** *The government refused to give in to the hijackers' threats.*
- PREP. **~ against** *The accused made death threats against a notable politician.*

2 possible danger

- ADJ. **big, considerable, dangerous, deadly, grave, great, major, real, serious, significant** | **main** | **growing, increasing** | **constant, continual, continuous, ever-present, permanent** | **renewed** *The national park is under renewed threat from road-building schemes.* | **direct, immediate, imminent** *The opposition presents no immediate threat to the government.* | **insidious** | **long-term, short-term** | **potential** | **apparent, perceived** | **external** *The government was faced with internal rebellion as well as external threats.* | **physical** | **political** | **environmental** | **military, nuclear, terrorist**
- VERB + THREAT **be, pose, present, represent** *the environmental threat posed by oil spillages* | **consider sth (as), perceive sth as, regard sth as, see sth as, view sth as** *Translators do not yet perceive computers as a threat to their livelihood.* | **face, meet**
- PREP. **under ~** *Many wild plants are under threat of extinction.* | **~ from** *the threat from overfishing* **~ of** *a threat of violence* **~ to** *The junta reacted violently to the perceived threat to its authority.*

threaten *verb*

1 warn sb that you may hurt, kill or punish them

- ADV. **publicly** | **personally, physically** *He says he was physically threatened in an attempt to get him to sign over his rights.* | **repeatedly** *She had repeatedly threatened to commit suicide.* | **allegedly, reportedly**
- PREP. **with** *She threatened him with a gun.*
- PHRASES **feel threatened** *I never felt threatened by him.*

2 be likely to harm/destroy sth

- ADV. **gravely, seriously, severely** *social unrest which seriously threatens the stability of the whole area* | **increasingly** | **directly** | **constantly, continually** *Our marriage was constantly threatened by his other women.*
- VERB + THREATEN **could** | **appear to, seem to**
- PHRASES **be threatened with sth** *Many species are now threatened with extinction.*

threatening *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound** | **become** | **regard sth as, see sth as**
- ADV. **extremely, seriously, very** *seriously threatening behaviour* | **increasingly** | **almost** | **rather, slightly, somewhat** | **potentially**

threshold *noun*

1 doorway

- VERB + THRESHOLD **cross**
- PREP. **across/over the ~** *He hesitated before stepping across the threshold.* **on the ~** *She stood on the threshold, unsure whether to enter.*

2 level

- ADJ. **high, low** | **maximum, minimum** | **critical** | **earnings, tax** | **boredom, pain** *She has an extremely low boredom threshold.*
- VERB + THRESHOLD **have** | **reach** *The number of people with the disease is reaching a critical threshold.* | **cross, exceed** | **set** *They earn wages below the decency threshold set by the EU.* | **raise** | **lower**
- THRESHOLD + NOUN **level, value** *Below a certain threshold level a person will not be able to detect sound.*
- PREP. **above/below a/the ~** *Her wages are below the income tax threshold.*

thrill *noun*

- ADJ. **big, great, real** | **cheap** | **vicarious** *He gets vicarious thrills from watching people bungee jumping.*
- VERB + THRILL **enjoy, experience, feel, get, have** | **give sb**
- THRILL + NOUN **seeker**
- PREP. **for a/the ~** *He used to steal from shops just for the thrill of it.* | **~ from/out of** *He used to get cheap thrills out of frightening the girl next door.* **~ of** *She felt a thrill of excitement as the mountains came into view.*

thrilled *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem**
- ADV. **really** | **absolutely, quite, utterly** | **not exactly** *He's not exactly thrilled at the prospect of working for his old rival.* | **secretly**
- PREP. **at** *I was secretly thrilled at the prospect of going there again.* **with** *I'm really thrilled with the results.*
- PHRASES **thrilled to bits** *I was thrilled to bits when my son won the cup.*

thriller *noun*

- ADJ. **gripping** | **best-selling** | **comedy, erotic, mystery, political, psychological, sci-fi/science fiction, spy** *a gripping political thriller*
- VERB + THRILLER **publish, write** *She had always wanted to write a spy thriller.* | **read**
- THRILLER + NOUN **writer**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *one of the characters in the thriller* | **~ by** *a new thriller by this American writer*

thrive *verb*

- ADV. **positively** | **still** *The glass industry still thrives there.*
- VERB + THRIVE **seem to** | **continue to** *These traditions continued to thrive.* | **fail to** (*medical*)
- PREP. **on** *Some people seem to thrive on stress.*
- PHRASES **failure to thrive** (*medical*) *concerned about their baby daughter's failure to thrive*

throat *noun*

1 front part of the neck
- VERB + THROAT **cut, slash, slit**
- PREP. **by the ~** *She seized her attacker by the throat.*

2 passage down which air and food pass
- ADJ. **bad, infected, sore | dry**
- VERB + THROAT **clear** *She cleared her throat, then began to speak.*
- THROAT + VERB **ache, hurt | close (up), constrict, seize up, tighten** *His throat constricted with fear when he saw the knife.* **| dry, go dry**
- THROAT + NOUN **infection | lozenge, pastille**
- PREP. **down the/your ~** *She felt the cold water trickle down her throat.*
- PHRASES **the back of your throat** *The medicine left a sour taste in the back of my throat.* **a lump in your throat** *He felt a lump in his throat, and tears forming in his eyes.*

throb *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, heavy | dull | steady** *the steady throb of the engine*
- VERB + THROB **feel, hear**
- PREP. **~ of** *a throb of pain*

throb *verb*

- ADV. **painfully | angrily** *The vein at his temple throbbed angrily.* **| rhythmically**
- VERB + THROB **begin to, start to**
- PREP. **with** *Her head throbbed with pain.*

throne *noun*

- ADJ. **empty, unoccupied, vacant | imperial, papal, royal**
- VERB + THRONE **ascend, assume, come to, gain, inherit, succeed to, take** *Elizabeth I came to the throne in 1558.* **| seize, usurp | occupy | give up, renounce | lose | regain | put sb on | topple sb from** *Left-wing revolutionaries toppled the king from his throne.* **| restore sb to | be in line to** *The prince is second in line to the throne behind his brother.*
- PREP. **on the ~** *Queen Victoria remained on the throne for over sixty years.*
- PHRASES **sb's accession to the throne, a claimant/pretender to the throne** *a claimant to the vacant Spanish throne* **sb's claim/right to the throne, an heir to the throne** *The marriage failed to produce an heir to the throne.* **the power behind the throne** (*figurative*) *According to the papers, the prime minister's private secretary is the real power behind the throne.* **the succession to the throne**

throng *noun*

- VERB + THRONG **join** *people coming from all directions to join the throng*
- PREP. **among/through the ~** *He made his way slowly through the throng.* **in the ~** *She was lost in the throng.* **into the ~** *He disappeared into the throng.*

throw *verb*

- ADV. **angrily | casually** *He threw the keys casually down on the table.* **| aside, away, back, down, out** *She threw her head back and laughed.*
- VERB + THROW **be ready to, be tempted to, want to | threaten to** *He threatened to throw her in the river if she screamed.* **| be going to**
- PREP. **at** *He threw a stone at the window.* **in/into** *I just wanted to throw myself into his arms and cry.* **to** *She threw the ball to him.* **towards**
- PHRASES **throw sth open** *He threw the double doors open in a dramatic gesture.*

thrust *noun*

1 strong push
- ADJ. **backward, downward, forward, upward | aggressive, fierce, powerful | knife** *The realization that she was gone was like a knife thrust.* **| pelvic**
- VERB + THRUST **make** *The Third Army made an aggressive thrust towards the front line.*
- PHRASES **~ into** *a thrust into the unknown*

2 the thrust main part/ideas
- ADJ. **broad, central, general, main, major** *She explained the broad thrust of the party's policies.* **| dramatic, intellectual, narrative, political** *The dramatic thrust of the film centres around the conflict between the brothers.*
- VERB + THRUST **direct** *He's going to direct the main thrust of his work towards reforming welfare policy.*

thrust *verb*

- ADV. **deep/deeply | hard | suddenly** *She suddenly thrust out her arm.* **| aside, away, back, forward, out**
- PREP. **at** *He thrust a piece of paper at me.* **into** *She thrust her hands deep into her pockets.*
- PHRASES **thrust your way** *She thrust her way through the dense undergrowth.*

thud *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy, loud, resounding | dull, muffled, soft | sickening**
- VERB + THUD **give** *She felt her heart give an extra thud.* **| hear | feel**
- PREP. **with a ~** *He hit the floor with a sickening thud.*
- PHRASES **the thud of a heart, the thud of hooves**

thud *verb*

- ADV. **hard, painfully, violently, wildly** (all only used with **heart**) *Her heart was thudding violently as she went into the room.*
- PREP. **against** *The waves thudded against the side of the ship.* **into** *The sniper's bullets thudded into the wall.* **on** *Steps thudded on the stairs.* **with** *His heart thudded with excitement.*

thug *noun*

- ADJ. **teenage, young | vicious | armed, knife-wielding | racist | football, soccer**
- QUANT. **gang** *He was beaten up by a gang of thugs.*

thumb *noun*

- VERB + THUMB **suck | flick, jab, jerk** *'What'll we do with them?' he asked, jerking his thumb at the suitcases.* **| raise, stick out** *He smiled and raised a thumb in greeting.* ◇ *I stuck out a thumb and a car stopped immediately.* **| twiddle** (*often figurative*) *I sat there twiddling my thumbs until the manager finally appeared.*
- THUMB + NOUN **nail** (also **thumbnail**)
- PHRASES **between finger and thumb/between thumb and forefinger** *I picked up the beetle carefully between finger and thumb.* **thumbs up** *He made a thumbs-up sign through the window to tell us everything was fine.*

thump *noun*

- ADJ. **good, heavy, loud | muffled**
- VERB + THUMP **give sb/sth** *She gave the television a good thump, and the picture came back.* **| hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *The sack of wheat hit the ground with a loud thump.*

thump *verb*

1 hit sb/sth with your fist

- ADV. **hard** *He thumped Jack hard in the face.* | **down** *He thumped his fist down onto the table.*
- PREP. **with** *She thumped the desk with her fist.*

2 of the heart

- ADV. **hard, heavily, loudly, painfully, wildly**
- VERB + THUMP **begin to** *Her heart began to thump wildly in her chest.*
- PREP. **against** *He spun round, his heart thumping against his ribs.*

thunder *noun*

- ADJ. **loud** *The thunder was getting louder and louder.* | **dull** *The gunfire rumbled like dull thunder.* | **distant** *the rumble of distant thunder* | **approaching**
- QUANT. **clap, crash, peal, roll, rumble**
- THUNDER + VERB **boom, break, burst, crash, explode, roar** *Thunder boomed in the sky overhead.* | **growl, grumble, roll, rumble** | **rattle sth, shake sth** *The windows were shaken by a tremendous crash of thunder.*
- THUNDER + NOUN **clap** (also **thunderclap**) | **cloud** (also **thundercloud**)
- PHRASES **the sound of thunder, there's thunder in the air** (= thunder is likely), **thunder and lightning**

thunderstorm *noun*

⇨ See STORM

Thursday *noun*

⇨ Note at DAY

thwart *verb*

- ADV. **easily** | **constantly** *Plans to expand the company have been constantly thwarted.*
- VERB + THWART **attempt to, try to**
- PREP. **in** *They were thwarted in their attempt to gain overall control of the company.*

tick *verb*

1 of a clock, etc.

- ADV. **loudly** | **relentlessly** | **away** *The clock ticked relentlessly away on the mantelpiece.*

2 mark sth with a tick

- ADV. **simply** *To take advantage of this extra bonus offer, simply tick the box on your order form.* | **mentally** | **off** *She mentally ticked off the names of the people she had already spoken to.*

PHRASAL VERB

tick along/over

- ADV. **nicely** *The business is ticking over nicely at the moment.* | **still**
- PHRASES **keep things ticking over** *Morrison had kept things ticking over in my absence.*

ticket *noun*

1 for travel, an event, the theatre, etc.

- ADJ. **one-way, single** | **return, round-trip** | **day, season, weekly** *an annual season ticket* | **first-class, second-class, etc.** *a first-class rail ticket* | **invalid, valid** | **complimentary, free** *I've got complimentary tickets for the theatre.* | **concessionary, family** *Concessionary tickets are available at half the standard price.* | **advance** *Use the coupon below to reserve advance tickets for the exhibition.* | **admission, entrance, entry** | **air/airline, bus, plane, rail, train, etc.** | **cinema, concert** | **library**
- VERB + TICKET **buy, get, obtain, purchase** | **have, hold** *You must hold a valid ticket for your entire journey before boarding the train.* | **book, reserve** | **show (sb)** *He showed the guard his ticket.*
- TICKET + NOUN **agency, counter, machine, office** | **price** | **sales** | **holder** | **collector, inspector** | **tout** | **barrier** | **stub**
- PREP. **by ~** *admission by ticket only* | **~ for** *I bought a ticket for the concert.* ◇ *a ticket for Saturday* **~ to** *I've got a free ticket to the match.* ◇ *a plane ticket to New York*

2 for a lottery, etc.

- ADJ. **winning** | **lottery, raffle**
- QUANT. **book** *I bought a whole book of raffle tickets and I still didn't win anything.*

3 giving a penalty

- ADJ. **fixed-penalty** | **parking**
- VERB + TICKET **give sb, issue** | **get**
- PREP. **~ for** *The police officer gave us a ticket for going through a red light.*

tickle *noun*

- ADJ. **little**
- VERB + TICKLE **give sb/sth** | **feel, get, have** *He felt a tickle on the back of his neck.*

tide *noun*

1 change in the level of the sea

- ADJ. **big, strong** | **flood, incoming, rising** | **ebb, outgoing** | **full, high** | **low** | **neap, spring**
- VERB + TIDE **catch** (= to take advantage of a favourable tide) *We have to get up early to catch the tide.*
- TIDE + VERB **be in** | **be out** | **come/flow in, rise** | **ebb, fall, flow/go out, retreat** | **be on the turn, turn** | **occur** *the time of day when the highest tides occur* | **wash sb/sth up** *The body was washed up by the tide the next day.*
- PREP. **at … ~** *Seals lie on the rocks at low tide.* **on a/the ~** *We went out to sea on the ebb tide.*
- PHRASES **the ebb and flow of the tide**

2 strong movement in favour of/against sth

- ADJ. **growing, rising** *the rising tide of crime* | **shifting** | **political** *He hasn't the courage to swim against the political tide.*
- VERB + TIDE **go with** | **go/swim against** | **stem, turn (back)** *attempts to stem the tide of revolution*
- TIDE + VERB **run** *Seeing the tide was now running in his direction, he renewed his campaign for reform.* | **carry sb/sth along** | **turn** *The tide of public opinion seems to be turning at last.*
- PREP. **against a/the ~** *It takes courage to speak out against the tide of public opinion.* **on a ~** *They were carried along on a tide of euphoria.* | **~ against, ~ in favour of** *Civil liberties groups helped to turn the tide against industrial violence.*
- PHRASES **a tide of history** *the shifting tides of history* **the turn of the tide** *In the early 1990s there was a marked turn of the tide.*

tidy *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem** | **stay** *Why does nothing ever stay tidy around here?* | **get sth, make sth** | **keep sth** *I hope you're going to keep your room tidy.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **immaculately, scrupulously** *It was a neatly furnished and immaculately tidy room.* | **fairly, quite** *The sitting room is fairly tidy.*
- PHRASES **clean/neat and tidy**

tie *noun*

1 worn round the neck with a shirt

- ADJ. **undone** *His tie was undone.* | **loose** | **askew** *His tie was askew and his hair dishevelled.* | **loud** | **bootlace, bow, kipper** | **black, white** (= a black/white bow tie as part of formal dress) *a black-tie dinner* | **club, college, regimental, school**

- VERB + TIE **knot, tie | loosen | adjust, straighten**
- TIE + NOUN **pin**
- PHRASES **collar/jacket/shirt/suit and tie**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

2 (usually **ties**) sth that connects you with sb/sth

- ADJ. **close, strong | weak | blood, family | emotional | personal | business, commercial, economic | cultural, diplomatic, political, social, traditional**
- VERB + TIE **have** *We have close economic ties with our neighbours.* | **establish | cement, strengthen | cut, sever** *He cut all ties with the Church.* | **loosen, weaken**
- PREP. **~ between** *There is a strong tie between her and her daughters.* **~ of** *ties of kinship* **~ to/with** *to establish diplomatic ties with China*

3 in a game/competition

- VERB + TIE **end in, result in** *The match ended in a tie.*
- TIE + NOUN **break/breaker**
- PREP. **~ between** *a tie between Egypt and France* **~ for** *There was a tie for first place.*

tie *verb*

1 attach/fasten sb/sth with string/rope

- ADV. **firmly, securely, tightly** *Did you tie the balloons on tightly?* | **loosely** *He wore plimsolls, loosely tied with bits of string.* | **carefully | neatly** *Tie the cords neatly.* | **back, on, together, up**
- PREP. **around/round** *He tied his dressing gown firmly around him.* **onto** *I tied the bundle onto the end of the string.* **to** *She tied the rope securely to a tree.* **with** *Katie tied her hair back with a ribbon.*
- PHRASES **tie sb hand and foot** *The prisoners were tied hand and foot.*

2 connect sb/sth with sb/sth else

- ADV. **closely, intimately** *Their company's future is closely tied to our own.* | **directly | firmly | inextricably | in, together, up** *Production and consumption are inextricably tied together.*
- PREP. **in with** *The concert will tie in with the festival of dance taking place the same weekend.* **to** *You can't stay tied to her forever.* **up with** *Her behaviour is tied up with her feelings of guilt.*

tiger *noun*

- ADJ. **man-eating | marauding | sabre-toothed**
- TIGER + VERB **growl, purr, roar | spring | maul sb** *The zookeeper was mauled to death by a tiger.* | **prowl** *A marauding tiger was often seen prowling around the village.*
- TIGER + NOUN **cub | skin | hunt**

tight *adj., adv.*

1 not loose

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get, go** *Those jeans have got too tight and I can't wear them any more.* ◇ *The rope suddenly went tight.* | **hold (on)** *'Hold tight!' She increased her grip.* | **clamp sth, clench sth, close sth, draw sth, pull sth, shut sth, stretch sth, tie sth** *His jaw was clenched tight.* ◇ *Every muscle in her face was drawn tight.* ◇ *Shut your eyes tight.* ◇ *The cloth was stretched tight over the frame.* | **clutch sth, grip sth, hold sth, keep sth** *He held his children tight.* ◇ *Keep the rope tight.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, very | a bit, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, reasonably | enough** *You didn't tie it tight enough.*

2 with not much time/money to spare

- VERBS **be, look, seem | get** *I think we'd better leave—time's getting very tight.*
- ADV. **extremely, particularly, really, very | a bit, fairly, pretty, rather**

3 controlled very strictly

- VERBS **be, seem | become | remain** *Security at the airport remains tight.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, very | increasingly | fairly, pretty, quite | enough** *Are the controls tight enough?*

tighten *verb*

1 become/make sth firmer/tighter

- ADV. **fractionally, a little, slightly | convulsively, involuntarily** *Her fingers tightened convulsively with every jolt she received.* | **painfully | up** *Can you tighten up the bolts for me?*
- VERB + TIGHTEN **seem to | feel sth, sense sth** *He felt his stomach tighten.* | **make sth** *His words made her throat tighten.*
- PREP. **about/around/round** *His hand tightened painfully around her wrist.* **on** *Her grip seemed to tighten on the door handle.* **in** *He saw his father's jaw tighten in irritation.* **into** *His mouth tightened into a thin hard line.* **with** *Her face tightened with pain.*

2 make sth more strict

- ADV. **considerably**
- VERB + TIGHTEN **take steps to** *Steps were taken to tighten discipline in the school.*
- PREP. **up** *The law in this area has been tightened up considerably.*

tights *noun*

- ADJ. **opaque, thick | sheer | fishnet | 15-denier, etc. | support | laddered**
- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + TIGHTS **pull on | peel off | ladder**
- TIGHTS + VERB **ladder**
- PHRASES **a ladder in your tights**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

tile *noun*

- ADJ. **broken, damaged, loose, missing | decorative, glazed, hand-painted, plain | ceramic, clay, cork, mosaic, quarry, stone, terracotta, vinyl | carpet, ceiling, floor, roof/roofing, wall | bathroom, kitchen**
- VERB + TILE **cover sth with, fit, lay, put down** *I'm laying ceramic floor tiles in the kitchen.*

till *noun*

- ADJ. **computerized, electronic**
- TILL + VERB **ring** *a sales idea that has set tills ringing all over the country*
- TILL + NOUN **receipt, roll**
- PREP. **at/behind/on the ~** *The supermarket didn't have enough people working on the tills.* **in/into a/the ~** *Put the money straight into the till.* | **from/out of a/the ~** *He gave her £10 from the till.*

tilt *noun*

- ADJ. **sharp | slight | downward, upward | backward, forward**
- PREP. **at a ~** *I positioned the photo at a slight tilt.* | **~ to/towards** *a tilt to the left*

tilt *verb*

- ADV. **sharply** *The ground tilted sharply downwards.* | **a little, slightly | back/backwards, down/downwards, forward, up/upwards**
- PREP. **away from** *Tilt the mirror away from you.* **towards** *Her face was tilted towards the sky.*
- PHRASES **tilted to one side** *She thought for a minute, her head tilted to one side.*

timber *noun*

1 trees/wood for use in building/carpentry

- ADJ. **heavy** | **solid** *a solid timber door* | **rough** | **dead, decayed, rotten, rotting** | **seasoned, treated** | **unseasoned, untreated**
- QUANT. **baulk, length, piece**
- VERB + TIMBER **cut, fell, harvest, saw** | **dress, season, treat**
- TIMBER + VERB **decay, rot**
- TIMBER + NOUN **product** | **company, industry, merchant, production, yard** | **construction, frame, structure, support** | **beam, building, floor, etc.**

2 (usually **timbers**) piece of wood used in a building

- ADJ. **sound** | **exposed** *The house has exposed oak timbers.* | **ceiling, floor, roof** | **ship's**

time *noun*

1 what is measured in minutes, hours, days, etc.

- TIME + VERB **elapse, go by, pass** *As time went by we saw less and less of each other.* ◇ *The changing seasons mark the passing of time.* | **fly** *How time flies!* | **drag** *Time drags in this job.* | **heal sth** *Time heals all wounds.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The world exists in time and space.* **over ~** *Perceptions change over time.* **through ~** *travel through time*
- PHRASES **the mists of time** *The origins of this custom are lost in the mists of time.*

2 time shown on a clock

- ADJ. **good, perfect** *My watch keeps good time.* | **local** *The attacks were launched at 9 p.m. local time.* | **British Summer, Greenwich Mean, etc.**
- VERB + TIME **tell** *Can your son tell the time yet?* | **have** *Have you got the time?* | **make** *What time do you make it?* | **look at** *Look at the time! We'll be late.* | **keep**
- PREP. **ahead of/behind … ~** *two hours behind Central European Time*
- PHRASES **this time tomorrow, etc.** *This time tomorrow I'll be in Canada.* **time in/of the morning/afternoon/evening, time of (the) night/year, time of day**

3 time when sth happens/should happen

- ADJ. **peak** *There are extra buses at peak times.* | **closing, opening** | **arrival, departure**
- VERB + TIME **fix, set** *We need to fix a time for the next meeting.*
- TIME + VERB **come** *You'll feel differently about it when the time comes.*
- PREP. **ahead of ~** *Check the programme ahead of time.* **behind ~** *The plane took off an hour behind time.* **by the ~** *By the time you get there the meeting will be over.* **in ~** *We got home in time to see the end of the match.* **on ~** *The trains are rarely on time.*

4 amount of time

- ADJ. **considerable, long** | **little, short** | **reasonable** | **precious** *We're wasting precious time.* | **idle** | **free, leisure, spare** | **journey, travel, travelling** | **lead, waiting** *There is a long lead time between order and delivery of the product.*
- VERB + TIME **have** *Have you got time for a chat?* ◇ *I had no time to think.* | **give sb/sth** *I can certainly do the job if you give me time.* | **take (sb)** *It takes time to make changes in the law.* ◇ *It took her a long time to read the report.* ◇ *Take your time* (= take as much time as you like). | **spend** *She spends much of her time reading.* | **kill, pass, while away** *It helps to pass the time.* | **fritter away, idle away** | **devote, put** *She devotes all her spare time to gardening.* ◇ *He put all his time into the show.* | **allow** *They didn't allow much time for discussion.* | **find, make** *I can never find time to write letters.* ◇ *I can probably make the time to see them.* | **wait** *We had to wait some time before the bus arrived.* | **gain, save** *You would save time with a dishwasher.* | **waste** | **lose, run out of** *We have no time to lose* (= we must hurry). ◇ *I didn't finish the test—I ran out of time.* | **be pressed for/short of** | **be out of** | **play for** *Not knowing what to do, she played for time by going to the bathroom.*
- TIME + VERB **be up, run out** *Sorry, your time is up.*
- TIME + NOUN **period, scale, span** | **limit** | **lag**
- PREP. **at a ~** *He surfs the Internet for hours at a time.* **for a ~** *I lived there for a time.* **in ~** *You'll get used to the work in time.* **over/with ~** *Her skills improved with time.*
- PHRASES **all in good time** (= sth will happen when the time is right) *Be patient, Emily! All in good time.* **all the time/the whole time** *The letter was in my pocket all the time* (= while I was looking for it). ◇ *She leaves the lights on all the time* (= always/repeatedly). **a battle/race against time** *Finishing the book was a race against time.* **if time permits** *We will discuss this matter later, if time permits.* **in the fullness of time** (= when the time is right, usually after a long period), **in good/plenty of time** *Get to the airport in good time* (= plenty of time before the plane leaves). **in next to no time/in no time at all, in ten minutes', three hours', etc. time** *I'll be back in ten minutes' time.* **in your own (good) time** (= taking as long as you want/need), **a length of time** *Have you lived abroad for any length of time?* **most of the time, a period of time, some/a long time ago** *Her parents died a long time ago.* **a waste of time** *What a waste of time!*

5 (often **times**) period in the past/present

- ADJ. **good, great, happy** | **bad, difficult, hard, rough, sad, troubled, unhappy** *Times are hard for the unemployed.* | **ancient, early, former, old** *in ancient times* | **modern, recent** | **medieval, prehistoric, etc.**
- VERB + TIME **have** *We had a great time at the party.*
- TIME + VERB **change** *Times have changed since Grandma was young.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *He lived at the time of the French Revolution.* ◇ *At one time Mary was my best friend.* **before your ~** *The Beatles were before my time.* **in your ~** *Mr Curtis was the manager in my time* (= when I was working there). **in ~s** *in times of trouble*
- PHRASES **from/since time immemorial** (= for a very long time), **of all time** *the greatest footballer of all time* **a sign of the times, time was when** *Time was when* (= there was a time when) *we never needed to lock our house at night.*

6 occasion

- ADJ. **that, this** *I'm determined to pass this time.* | **last** *When was the last time you saw her?* | **another, next** *Next time you're here let's have lunch together.* | **one** | **each, every** *Every time I hear that song I feel happy.* | **appropriate, good, suitable** *Is this an appropriate time to discuss my salary?* | **appointed, right** | **bad, wrong** *This would be a bad time to tell her.* | **first, second, etc.** | **umpteenth** | **countless** *I've told you countless times.*
- VERB + TIME **bide** *We'll have to bide our time until the rain stops.*
- TIME + VERB **come** *Your time will come.* | **be ripe** *The time is ripe for revolution.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *The lift can take four people at a time.* ◇ *At the time of writing, a ceasefire is under discussion.* ◇ *Hot water is available at all times.* ◇ *He can be rather moody at times.* **by the ~** *She'll have gone by the time we get there.* **for the … ~** *I told her not to do it for the umpteenth time.* | **~ for** *It's time for a break.*
- PHRASES **at the present time, for the time being** (= temporarily), **a number of times, X times out of X** *three times out of ten*

7 when you experience sth in a particular way

- ADJ. **enjoyable, fun, good, grand, great, marvellous, pleasant, splendid, wonderful** *It was a fun time for us girls.* | **awful, dreadful, horrible, miserable, sad, terrible**
- VERB + TIME **have** *Did you have a good time in Spain?*

8 time taken in a race, etc.

- ADJ. **fast** | **record** *He completed the course in record time.*

• VERB + TIME **clock up, record** *She clocked up one of the fastest times of the year.*

9 musical rhythm

• ADJ. **march, waltz | double, quick | four-four, three-four, etc.**

• VERB + TIME **beat, keep** *The conductor beat time with a baton.*

• TIME + NOUN **signature**

• PREP. **in/out of ~ (to/with)** *clapping in time to the music*

time *verb*

• ADV. **beautifully, conveniently, well** *This campaign is well timed.* | **perfectly, to perfection** *We had timed our arrival to perfection.* | **badly | carefully** *The schedule must be carefully timed.*

• PREP. **for** *The meeting is timed for 3 o'clock.*

• PHRASES **be timed to coincide with sth** *The show is timed to coincide with the launch of her new book.*

timetable *noun*

• ADJ. **overall | detailed | strict | realistic | busy, full** *a full timetable of teaching* | **college, school, etc. | exam/examination | bus, train, etc.**

• VERB + TIMETABLE **agree on, draw up, establish, outline, set (out) | adhere to, follow, keep to** *Implementation of the reforms was kept to a very strict timetable.* | **consult, look at**

• PREP. **according to the ~** *According to the timetable, the bus should have come in at 9.00.* **in a/the ~** *It said in the timetable that a train was due at 5.30.* | **~ for** *The delegates outlined what they considered a realistic timetable for troop withdrawal.*

timing *noun*

• ADJ. **exact, precise** *There is disagreement within the government over the exact timing of the referendum.* | **convenient** *The timing of the meeting is not convenient.* | **inconvenient, unfortunate** *the unfortunate timing of the announcement* | **accurate, careful, good, impeccable, perfect | bad, poor | split-second | comic**

• VERB + TIMING **have** *He has the split-second timing all good players need.*

• PREP. **with … ~** *The punchline was delivered with perfect comic timing.*

• PHRASES **get the timing right/wrong | a matter of timing** *Using press releases to good effect is a matter of timing.* **a sense of timing** *She has a wonderful sense of timing.*

tin *noun*

• ADJ. **biscuit | airtight, sealed**

• TIN + NOUN **opener** (also **tin-opener**)

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *Store the seeds in an airtight tin.* | **~ of** *a tin of tomatoes*

tinge *noun*

• ADJ. **faint, slight** *blue with a slight tinge of purple* | **blue, bluish, etc.** *a slight reddish tinge*

• VERB + TINGE **have**

• PREP. **~ of** *a tinge of regret* **~ to** *The sky had a slight pink tinge to it.*

tinkle *noun*

• ADJ. **faint, little, soft**

• VERB + TINKLE **hear**

• PREP. **with a ~** *The wine glass dropped to the floor with a tinkle.*

tint *noun*

• ADJ. **rich | blue, bluish, etc. | autumn** *The fabrics were mainly in rich autumn tints, reds and oranges.*

• PREP. **~ of** *The branches of the trees were barely showing their first tint of green.*

tiny *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become**

• ADV. **extremely, really, very | quite | comparatively, relatively** *The minister appealed to the Cabinet not to target her comparatively tiny budget of £4 billion.*

• PHRASES **little tiny/tiny little** *Look at his little tiny fingers. Aren't they sweet?*

tip *noun*

1 pointed end

• ADJ. **northern, etc.** *We took a bus to the northern tip of the island.* | **very** *The cat was black except for a patch of white on the very tip of its tail.*

• PREP. **~ of** *the tips of your fingers/toes*

2 money

• ADJ. **big, generous, good, large | poor, small**

• VERB + TIP **give sb, leave sb** *He left the waitress a large tip.* | **get** *We get rather poor tips on weeknights.*

3 advice

• ADJ. **good, handy, helpful, useful | hot** *He said he'd been given a hot tip for that afternoon's race.* | **beauty, gardening, money-saving, safety, etc. | racing**

• VERB + TIP **have | give sb, pass on | take, use** *Take a safety tip from me—get that light mended!* | **pick up**

• PREP. **~ for** *some handy tips for gardeners* **~ on** *Do you have any tips on buying a second-hand car?*

tip *verb* (often **be tipped**)

• ADV. **hotly, strongly | widely**

• PREP. **as** *The senator has been widely tipped as a future president.* **for** *The band is being hotly tipped for the top.*

tip-off *noun*

• ADJ. **anonymous | phone**

• VERB + TIP-OFF **give sb | get, receive | act on** *Acting on a tip-off, police raided the house.*

• PREP. **~ about** *Customs officers had received a tip-off about a shipment of cocaine.*

tire *verb*

• ADV. **easily, quickly** *She found herself tiring more quickly these days.* | **out** *The long walk had really tired me out.*

• VERB + TIRE **begin to** *After an hour Rick began to tire.*

tired *adj.*

1 needing rest

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get | leave sb, make sb** *The walk left me quite tired out.*

• ADV. **awfully, bone** (*informal*), **dead, desperately, extremely, really, terribly, very** *Polly suddenly felt bone tired.* | **a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather | just** *Of course I'm not ill. I'm just tired.* | **enough** *He felt tired enough to go to sleep standing up.* | **mentally, physically | visibly | out**

• PREP. **from** *I'm still a bit tired from the journey.*

• PHRASES **tired and drawn** *He looked tired and drawn.*

2 tired of sb/sth feeling you have had enough

• VERBS **be | become, get, grow** (*formal*) *She had grown heartily tired of his company.*

• ADV. **heartily, really, very | a bit, a little, rather**

• PHRASES **sick and tired** (*informal*) *I'm sick and tired of listening to you whine.*

tiredness *noun*

• ADJ. **desperate, extreme, overwhelming | mental, physical | chronic, constant**
• QUANT. **wave** *Once the last boxes were packed away, he was overtaken by a wave of tiredness.*
• VERB + TIREDNESS **be overtaken by, feel, suffer from | relieve**
• TIREDNESS + VERB **overcome sb** *Finally tiredness overcame him, and he fell asleep on the sofa.* | **set in** *A desperate tiredness set in after hours of anxious waiting.*
• PHRASES **a sign of tiredness** *The team was in good spirits and showed no signs of tiredness.*

tissue *noun*

1 organic material
• ADJ. **living | healthy, normal** *Vitamin C helps maintain healthy connective tissue.* | **damaged, diseased | animal, human, plant** *Dyes were extracted by boiling the plant tissue.* | **body, brain, intestinal, muscle, etc. | connective, scar | fat, fatty, fibrous, soft** *She treats skin and soft tissue injuries in casualty.*

2 paper handkerchief
• ADJ. **paper | toilet**
• QUANT. **box, pack, packet, wad** *She grabbed a wad of tissues from the box and soaked up the spilt wine.*
• VERB + TISSUE **use**
• PREP. **on a/the ~** *He wiped his nose on a tissue.* **with a/the ~** *She gently dabbed her eyes with a tissue.*

title *noun*

1 name of a book, film, etc.
• ADJ. **book, essay, film, song**
• VERB + TITLE **give sth**
• TITLE + NOUN **page | role** *He played the title role in 'Hamlet'.* | **track** *'Birth', the title track of his latest album*
• PREP. **under a/the ~** *She published her poetry under the title 'The Land and the Garden'.*

2 book, magazine, etc.
• ADJ. **new** *Forty per cent of new titles were actually new editions of existing books.* | **best-selling**
• VERB + TITLE **publish** *The company is publishing fewer titles than last year.*

3 name of a rank/profession
• ADJ. **grand, long** *She bears the grand title 'Divisional President of the Finances Committee'.* | **courtesy, diplomatic, honorary, honorific, official** *'Mrs' was a courtesy title for any unmarried woman in business at that time.* ◇ *'Minister' is one of several diplomatic titles.* | **job** *His job title is Special Projects Officer.* | **full** *Victor Oldenburg, or Count Victor Oldenburg and Hess, to give him his full title*
• VERB + TITLE **bear, have, inherit** *She has a title* (= is of noble birth). | **award, bestow, confer** *The king bestowed lands and titles upon his followers.*

4 championship win
• ADJ. **European, national, world, etc. | championship, French Open, Premier League, etc. | heavyweight, middleweight, etc.**
• VERB + TITLE **clinch, win** *Deportivo clinched the title with a goal in the final seconds of the last game of the season.* | **hold** *He held the world heavyweight title until last year.* | **defend | retain | lose**
• TITLE + NOUN **challenge, fight, match** *He has been building up fitness for his world title challenge.* | **holder**
⇨ Special page at SPORT

toast *noun*

1 bread
• ADJ. **brown, white, wholemeal | dry | soggy**
• QUANT. **piece, round, slice** *We'll have another round of toast, please.*
• VERB + TOAST **make** *making toast for breakfast* | **butter, spread** *buttered toast* ◇ *She ate two slices of toast spread with jam.* | **burn** *I can smell burnt toast.*
• PREP. **on ~** *For lunch we had cheese on toast.*

2 drink
• VERB + TOAST **make, propose** *He raised his glass as if to make a toast.* | **drink | respond to**
• PREP. **~ to** *The bridegroom ended his speech by proposing a toast to the hosts.*

toast *verb*

1 make sth brown and crisp by heating it
• ADV. **lightly** *Toast the bread lightly on both sides.*

2 drink to sb/sth
• ADV. **silently** *He raised his glass, silently toasting his absent son.*
• PREP. **in/with** *We toasted his victory in champagne.*

tobacco *noun*

• ADJ. **mild, strong | stale | pipe**
• VERB + TOBACCO **chew, smoke | be addicted to | grow**
• TOBACCO + NOUN **addiction, consumption, use | smoke** *The air was thick with tobacco smoke.* | **business, company, firm, industry, manufacturer, producer | lobby** *The ban on cigarette advertising will upset the tobacco lobby.* | **products | market | sales | advertising, sponsorship | pouch, tin | grower, plantation**

toe *noun*

• ADJ. **big, little** *The shoe pressed painfully against her big toe.* | **bare** *Under his bare toes the floor felt gritty.* | **broken, bruised**
• VERB + TOE **stand on, tread on** *She stood on her toes to kiss him.* ◇ *Ouch! That was my toe you just trod on.* ◇ (*figurative*) *She trod on a lot of toes when she joined the company.* | **stub | break, bruise, crack | dip** *I dipped my toe in the river to test the temperature.* ◇ (*figurative*) *So far they have only dipped their toe in the potentially vast computer market.* | **point | curl | touch** *Can you touch your toes* (= while keeping your legs straight)*?*
• TOE + VERB **curl** (*often figurative*) *The man's broad smile made her toes curl* (= made her feel embarrassed or uncomfortable).
• TOE + NOUN **injury**
• PREP. **between the/your ~s** *He had some kind of fungus between his toes.* **on your ~s** *He moved lightly on his toes like a boxer.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The threat of inspections kept us all on our toes* (= made sure we kept everything up to standard and were ready).
• PHRASES **from head/top to toe** *He gave himself a good scrub from head to toe.* **the tips of your toes** *I stood on the tips of my toes to look through the window.* **the toe of your boot/shoe**

toenail *noun*

• ADJ. **ingrowing**
• VERB + TOENAIL **clip, cut, trim**
• TOENAIL + NOUN **clippings**

toil *noun*

• ADJ. **hard | relentless, unceasing, unending, unremitting | daily | manual, physical | honest**
• PHRASES **hours, years, etc. of toil** *a lifetime of unremitting toil* **sweat and toil** *a day of sweat and toil*

toilet *noun*

- ADJ. **public | communal, shared** *There was a communal toilet on the landing for the four flats.* **| indoor, inside | outside | flush/flushing** *The caravan is equipped with a sink and a flush toilet.* **| gents', ladies', men's, women's | disabled**
- VERB + TOILET **go to, use** *I need to go to the toilet.* **| be desperate for, need** *Do you need the toilet?* **| flush (sth down)** *Someone's forgotten to flush the toilet.* ◇ *He flushed the letter down the toilet.* **| block, clog | unblock**
- TOILET + NOUN **bowl, seat | paper, roll, tissue | brush, cleaner | facilities | training**
- PREP. **in the ~, on the ~**

token *noun*

- ADJ. **good luck, love**
- PREP. **in ~ of** *She presented them with a small gift in token of her thanks.*
- PHRASES **(as) a token of appreciation/friendship/respect** *We hope you will accept this book as a small token of our appreciation.*

tolerable *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | make sth | find sth** *She inspected the rooms and found them perfectly tolerable.*
- ADV. **very | perfectly | barely, scarcely** *In August the heat is barely tolerable.* **| fairly, quite**

tolerance *noun*

- ADJ. **great, high, remarkable | low | amused, patronising** *He watched the kids throw water around with amused tolerance.* **| political, racial, religious | zero** (of crime) *Howard County has a zero tolerance policy on alcohol use by teenagers.*
- QUANT. **degree, level**
- VERB + TOLERANCE **have | show | lack | learn**
- TOLERANCE + NOUN **level**
- PREP. **~ for** *Some children have a low tolerance for boredom.* **~ of** *people with a high tolerance of discomfort* **~ to** *Tolerance to alcohol decreases with age.* **~ towards** *She was showing greater tolerance towards her younger sister than before.*

tolerant *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem | become, get, grow**
- ADV. **extremely, remarkably, surprisingly, very, wonderfully** *Mares are surprisingly tolerant of the roughness and rudeness of their own offspring.* **| pretty, quite, reasonably** *He's pretty tolerant of my faults.*
- PREP. **of** *They learn to be tolerant of other people.* **towards** *They are more tolerant towards gypsies now.*

tolerate *verb*

1 allow sth you do not like

- ADV. **barely | merely** *She actually seemed pleased to see him: most of her visitors she merely tolerated.* **| grudgingly | officially** *Union activity was officially tolerated but strongly discouraged.* **| no longer** *The government is not prepared to tolerate this situation any longer.*
- VERB + TOLERATE **be unable to, (not) be prepared to, (not) be willing to, cannot/could not, find sth difficult to, will/would not** *I will not tolerate this behaviour!*

2 not be affected by difficult conditions

- ADV. **readily, well** *This plant prefers alkaline soil, though it will readily tolerate some acidity.* ◇ *She tolerated the chemotherapy well.*
- VERB + TOLERATE **be unable to, cannot/could not, find/make sth difficult to, will/would not** *people whose eye condition makes it difficult to tolerate bright light*

toleration *noun*

- ADJ. **religious**
- QUANT. **degree, measure** *Religious minorities were allowed a wide measure of toleration.*
- PREP. **~ for** *He preached toleration for all religions.*

toll *noun*

1 money that you pay to use a road, bridge, etc.

- ADJ. **motorway, road**
- VERB + TOLL **charge, collect, exact, impose, levy** *the possibility of imposing tolls on some motorways* **| pay**
- TOLL + NOUN **bridge, motorway, road | booth | charge**

2 amount of damage done/number of people killed

- ADJ. **great, heavy, terrible, tragic | casualty, death, injury | human**
- VERB + TOLL **take** *The pressure of fame can take a terrible toll.* ◇ *The recession is taking its toll.*
- TOLL + VERB **mount, rise** *The death toll from yesterday's crash is still rising.* **| reach sth** *The casualty toll could reach 200.*
- PREP. **~ on** *Illness has taken a heavy toll on her.*

tomato *noun*

- ADJ. **ripe | green | rotten, squashed | cherry, plum | sundried, tinned**
- VERB + TOMATO **eat, have | chop, peel, slice | grow**
- TOMATO + NOUN **juice, ketchup, paste, purée, salad, sauce, soup | plant**

ton *noun*

⇨ Note at MEASURE

tone *noun*

1 quality of a sound, especially of the human voice

- ADJ. **deep, low | falling, rising** *The rising tone of her voice emphasized her panic.* **| hushed, quiet, subdued** *speaking in hushed tones* **| clear, ringing | sharp, shrill, stentorian, strident | gravelly | dry, even, expressionless, flat, level, measured, neutral** *The question was posed in a flat tone.* **| normal, reasonable | brisk, businesslike, matter-of-fact** *She answered him in a brisk, matter-of-fact tone.* **| commanding, firm, forthright | formal | sepulchral, solemn | dramatic, urgent | casual, offhand | bright, conversational | gentle, mild, pleasant, soft, sympathetic, warm** *Her tone was mild, almost conversational.* **| dulcet, honeyed** (*both often ironic*) *We heard the dulcet tones of the sergeant, bawling at us to get on parade.* **| clipped, cool, curt, frigid, hard, harsh, icy** *In cool, clipped tones, he told her what had happened.* **| aggressive, biting, contemptuous, disapproving, dismissive, ironic, mocking, patronizing, sarcastic, sardonic, scathing, threatening** *His tone was faintly mocking.* **| aggrieved, reproachful, shocked | bantering, conciliatory, conspiratorial, reverential, wheedling**
- VERB + TONE **adopt, speak in, take** *When she heard my accent, she adopted a warmer tone.* ◇ *Don't you take that tone with me.* **| soften | change | interpret** *Her tone was hard to interpret.*
- TONE + VERB **change** *His tone changed dramatically when he saw the money.* **| convey sth, imply sth, indicate sth, suggest sth | betray sb/sth, give away sb/sth** *Her tone betrayed her impatience.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *'You ought to have thought of them,' she said in a reproachful tone.* **in ~s of** *'I don't believe it!' cried Henry in tones of utter amazement.*
- PHRASES **a tone of voice** *I didn't like his tone of voice; I felt he was being condescending.*

2 general quality/style of sb/sth

- ADJ. **dominant, general, overall, prevailing** *The general tone of the report was favourable.* **| moral, political,**

social *The newspaper sets a high moral tone in its editorial about politicians' private lives.* | **favourable** | **negative** | **comic, humorous**

- VERB + TONE **set** *Her enthusiastic speech set the tone for the day's conference.*
- PREP. **in ~** *His letter was very negative in tone.*

3 shade of a colour

- ADJ. **light, muted, neutral, pale, pastel, soft** *muted tones of grey and brown* | **dark, deep** | **rich, warm** | **earthy, flesh, grey, natural, silvery** | **colour** | **skin** *What is your natural skin tone?*

4 on the telephone

- ADJ. **dial/dialling, engaged**
- VERB + TONE **get** *I keep getting the engaged tone.*

tongue *noun*

1 soft part inside the mouth

- ADJ. **forked** | **loose, sharp** (*both figurative*) *Everyone knows now, thanks to Ken's loose tongue* (= he could not keep the secret). ◇ *She could tear a character to pieces in three minutes with her sharp tongue.*
- VERB + TONGUE **poke/put/stick out** *It's very rude to stick your tongue out at people.* | **run** *He ran his tongue nervously over his lips.* | **click/cluck** | **bite, hold** (*both figurative*) *She was dying to say something sarcastic to him, but bit her tongue and stayed silent.* | **free, loosen** (*both figurative*) *The wine had loosened his tongue.* | **roll/slip/trip off** *It's not a name that exactly trips off the tongue* (= is easy to say).
- TONGUE + VERB **hang out** *The dog lay in a patch of shade with its tongue hanging out.* | **flick, flicker** *The snake's tongue flicked out of its mouth.* | **lick sth** *His tongue licked dry lips.* | **wag** (*figurative*) *This is a small island and tongues are beginning to wag* (= people are beginning to gossip). | **find** (*figurative*) *Before she could find her tongue* (= speak) *the door had closed behind him.* | **watch** (*figurative*) *You just watch your tongue* (= be careful what you say)*!*
- PHRASES **be on the tip of your tongue** (*figurative*) *It was on the tip of her tongue to refuse.* **get your tongue around/round sth** (*figurative*) *He was having trouble getting his tongue around my name.* **a tongue of fire/flame** (*figurative*) *Tongues of flame licked up the walls.*

2 a language

- ADJ. **mother, native** *She speaks English and Danish, though her native tongue is German.* | **foreign** | **strange**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She could hear men whispering in a foreign tongue.*
- PHRASES **speak in tongues** (= to speak in unknown languages, especially at a religious ceremony)

tonne *noun*

⇨ Note at MEASURE

tonsils *noun*

- ADJ. **swollen**
- VERB + TONSILS **have out** *I had my tonsils out when I was ten.*

tool *noun*

1 instrument for making/repairing things

- ADJ. **general-purpose, multi-purpose** | **basic, primitive, standard, traditional** *craftsmen using traditional tools* | **sophisticated, special** | **sharp** | **rusting/rusty** | **cutting, drawing, measuring** | **cordless, hand, machine, power** | **agricultural, engineering, farm, garden/gardening, industrial, woodworking**
- QUANT. **set**
- VERB + TOOL **use** | **sharpen** | **blunt** *Cutting concrete would blunt a metal-cutting tool.* | **down ~s** *Workers downed tools* (= stopped work) *in protest at poor safety standards in the works.*
- TOOL + NOUN **kit**
- PHRASES **the tool/tools of the trade** *The guitarist opened the case and took out the tool of his trade.*

2 sth that helps you do/achieve sth

- ADJ. **effective, essential, important, indispensable, invaluable, major, necessary, powerful, useful, valuable, vital** | **educational, learning, reference, research** *This dictionary is an invaluable reference tool for advanced learners.* | **ideological, negotiating, political, propaganda** *We must ensure that education is not used as a political tool.* | **communication, management, marketing** | **analysis/analytical, design, desktop, development, drawing, multimedia, presentation, programming, software**

toot *noun*

- VERB + TOOT **give (sb), let out** | **hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *The car overtook with a toot.* | **~ of**
- PHRASES **the toot of a horn, a toot on the horn** *The taxi driver gave a toot on the horn.*

⇨ Note at SOUND

tooth *noun*

- ADJ. **big, enormous, huge** | **gappy** *She wore a brace to correct her gappy teeth.* | **prominent, sticking-out** *I used to be self-conscious of my sticking-out teeth.* | **even, straight** | **crooked, jagged** (*often figurative*), **misshapen** *Her smile showed crooked teeth.* ◇ *Skyscrapers rose like jagged teeth.* | **broken, missing** | **good, healthy, pearl-like, pearl-white, perfect, splendid, strong, white** | **yellow** | **decayed, rotten** | **loose, wobbly** | **aching** | **capped, false, gold** | **needle-sharp, razor-sharp, sharp** *Mink have razor-sharp teeth.* | **savage** | **back, front** | **bottom, top** | **canine** | **baby, milk** *I've still got one of my baby teeth.* | **wisdom**
- VERB + TOOTH **have** | **brush, clean** | **extract, pull out, remove** | **have out** *I've just had a tooth out at the dentist's.* | **knock out** | **lose** *I lost three teeth in the fight.* | **fill** | **bare, reveal, show** *The dog bared its teeth at us and growled.* ◇ *The man smiled, revealing perfect white teeth.* | **clamp, clench, grit** *He broke off what he was saying, clamping his teeth together.* ◇ *She answered through clenched teeth* (= opening her mouth only a little because of anger). | **clamp sth between/in** *His pipe was firmly clamped between his teeth.* | **gnash, grind** | **sink** *The cat sank its teeth into his finger.* | **cut** *The baby's crying because he's cutting a new tooth* (= a new one is coming through).
- TOOTH + VERB **be/come through** *Billy's first tooth is now through.* | **fall out** | **bite sb/sth, nip sb/sth, sink into sb/sth, snap together** | **ache** | **chatter** *Their teeth were chattering with cold.* | **flash, gleam, glint, shine** *Her teeth flashed as she smiled.* | **grin**
- TOOTH + NOUN **decay, loss** | **abscess** | **enamel** | **mark** *The cat left teeth marks in my arm.*
- PREP. **against the/your ~** *He clashed the spoon against his teeth as he ate.* **between the/your ~** *She answered the phone with a cigarette between her teeth.* **in the/your ~** *The cat came in with a mouse in its teeth.* **through the/your ~** *'Come here now!' she growled through her teeth.*

top *noun*

1 highest part/surface of sth

- ADJ. **extreme, very** *We didn't climb to the very top of the mountain, but close enough.* | **cliff** (also **clifftop**), **hill** (also **hilltop**), **mountain** (also **mountaintop**), **roof** (also **rooftop**), **table, tree** (also **treetop**)
- PREP. **at the ~, on ~** *Each cake had a cherry on top.* ◇ *There was a vase on top of the bookcase.* **to the ~**

• PHRASES **from top to bottom** *I'm going to clean the house from top to bottom this weekend.*

2 highest/most important rank/position

• VERB + TOP **get to, make it to, reach, rise to** *Few of the trainee footballers make it to the top.* ◇ *She rose to the top of her profession within ten years.*

• PREP. **at the ~** *The company has an unusually high proportion of young people at the top.* **on ~, to the ~**

• PHRASES **top of the agenda** *Pay was now (at the) top of the employees' agenda.* **top of the class** *She was top of the class in maths.*

3 cover that you put on sth in order to close it

• ADJ. **bottle**

• VERB + TOP **lever off, prise off, remove, take off, unscrew | put on, screw on**

4 piece of clothing

• ADJ. **hooded, long-sleeved, sleeveless | baggy, loose | bikini, pyjama, tracksuit**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

top *adj.*

• VERBS **be | come** *She came top in the exams.*

• PREP. **in** *She was top in maths.* **of** *He was top of his class.*

topic *noun*

• ADJ. **chosen, selected | broad, general, large, wide** *Before dealing with specific cases, she spoke on the broad topic of 'discipline'.* **| diverse, wide-ranging** *The book covers such diverse topics as snorkelling and first aid.* **| narrow | central, dominant, important, key, main, major, principal | complex, difficult | conversational, essay, lecture, research | controversial, sensitive** *It might be better to avoid such a controversial topic.* **| historical, philosophical, scientific, social, etc.**

• VERB + TOPIC **consider, cover, discuss, explore, deal with, focus on, look at, speak on, write on** *In the next chapter the writer focuses on the topic of adoption.*

• TOPIC + NOUN **area, heading | work** *Our teaching is based largely on topic work.*

• PREP. **on a/the ~** *Mr Graham will speak on the topic of dog breeding.*

• PHRASES **a choice of topic** *She was an excellent speaker, but I found her choice of topic strange.* **a range/variety of topics, a topic of conversation/discussion** *His main topic of conversation is football.*

topless *adj.*

• VERBS **be, go, perform, pose, sunbathe** *Do you dare to go topless on the beach?* ◇ *There were rumours that she had posed topless for a magazine.* **| show sb**

torch *noun*

1 electric light carried in the hand

• ADJ. **powerful | electric**

• VERB + TORCH **carry, have | switch off/on, turn off/on | flash, play, point, shine** *The policeman played his torch over the men's faces.* ◇ *I shone my torch through the crack.*

• TORCH + VERB **flash, play, shine** *A powerful torch shone in their direction.*

• TORCH + NOUN **beam**

• PHRASES **the beam of a torch, light from/of a torch** *We struggled to read the map by the light of the torch.*

2 piece of burning wood carried to give light

• ADJ. **blazing, burning, flaming, flaring, flickering**

• VERB + TORCH **light** *They lit their torches from the fire.* **| carry, hold** *Servants were carrying lighted torches.*

• TORCH + VERB **light** *The path to the castle was lit by blazing torches.* **| burn** *The torches were burning fiercely.* **| flare | flicker, splutter | go out** *The torch flickered and went out.*

torment *noun*

• ADJ. **great | inner, mental, private**

• VERB + TORMENT **endure, suffer** *She has suffered great mental torment.* **| be released from**

• PREP. **in ~** *He was a man in torment.*

• PHRASES **a soul in torment** *The sea wailed like a soul in torment.*

tornado *noun*

• TORNADO + VERB **hit sth, strike sth** *The town was hit by a tornado last night.* **| damage sth, destroy sth, devastate sth**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *The building was badly damaged in a tornado.*

torpedo *noun*

• VERB + TORPEDO **carry** *enemy planes carrying torpedoes* **| fire, launch, release | drop**

• TORPEDO + VERB **hit sth, strike sth**

• TORPEDO + NOUN **tube | boat, bomber**

torrent *noun*

1 large amount of water moving very quickly

• ADJ. **raging, roaring, rushing** *After heavy rain, the little stream becomes a raging torrent.* **| foaming, muddy**

• PREP. **in ~s** *The rain poured down in torrents.*

• PHRASES **a torrent of rain/water**

2 large amount of sth that comes suddenly

• VERB + TORRENT **unleash** *The sight of her father unleashed a torrent of emotions.*

• PREP. **in a ~** *Her pent-up anger was released in a torrent of words.* **| ~ of** *a torrent of abuse/criticism/tears*

torso *noun*

• ADJ. **bare, naked | tanned | lower, upper | human | headless, mutilated** *The headless torso of a man was found in some bushes.*

• VERB + TORSO **reveal** *He took off his shirt to reveal his tanned torso.*

torture *noun*

• ADJ. **brutal | systematic | mental, physical**

• VERB + TORTURE **inflict | suffer**

• TORTURE + NOUN **camp, chamber, room | victim**

torture *verb*

• ADV. **badly, brutally, severely | routinely** *The prisoners were routinely tortured.*

• PHRASES **torture sb to death**

toss *noun*

• VERB + TOSS **lose, win** *England won the toss and chose to kick off.*

• PREP. **with a ~**

• PHRASES **(by/on) the toss of a coin** *The order of play was decided by the toss of a coin.* **a toss of sb's/the head** *'Of course not,' she said with a toss of her head.*

toss *verb*

1 throw sth carelessly

• ADV. **carelessly, casually** *She picked up the package and casually tossed it into her bag.* **| aside, away, back, over** *She tossed back her blonde hair.*

• PREP. **into, out of, to** *He tossed the letter over to me.*

2 keep moving up and down/from side to side

• ADV. **restlessly** *She tossed about restlessly all night with a high fever.* **| about** *He was tossed about in his boat.*

• PHRASES **toss and turn** *He tossed and turned all night, unable to sleep.*

3 cover food in a sauce
- ADV. **gently, lightly | well | together**
- PREP. **in** *Toss the vegetables lightly in olive oil.*

total *noun*

- ADJ. **annual, monthly | combined, cumulative, grand, overall, sum** *His two goals give him a grand total of 32 for the season.* ◇ *The sum total of my knowledge of biology is not impressive.* | **final | high, huge, large, record** *a record total of victories* | **low, small | global, national, world/worldwide | jobless, unemployment** *Britain's jobless total rose by 20 000 last month.*
- VERB + TOTAL **add up to, give, make (up)** *Their earnings were £250, £300 and £420, giving a total of £970.* | **bring, take** *A donation of £250 has been received, bringing the total to £3 750.* | **achieve** *The Greens achieved a total of 18 seats.*
- TOTAL + VERB **rise | fall**
- PREP. **in ~** *In total, they spent 420 hours on the project.* **out of a ~ of** *180 vehicles out of a total of 900 examined were not roadworthy.* | **~ of**

touch *noun*

1 act of touching sb/sth
- ADJ. **delicate, gentle, light, slight** *The slightest touch will set off the alarm.*
- PREP. **at sb/sth's ~** *The door swung open at his touch.* ◇ *You can now do your shopping at the touch of a button.*

2 small detail
- ADJ. **final, finishing | decorative, festive, homely, romantic** *The family photos give the room a homely touch.* | **humorous | classy, lovely, nice, professional** *Giving her flowers was a nice touch.* | **feminine, human, idiosyncratic, individual, personal | little** *The decor includes many idiosyncratic little touches.*
- VERB + TOUCH **add, give sth, put** *She's just putting the finishing touches to her painting.*

3 particular ability
- ADJ. **golden, magic | deft, sure** *With students she had a sure touch and showed great personal sensitivity.* | **light** *He handles this controversial subject with a light touch.* | **political** *He found his old political touch when the crisis emerged.*
- VERB + TOUCH **find | lose** *Maybe the champion is losing her magic touch.*

4 small amount of sth
- ADJ. **little, subtle | welcome**
- VERB + TOUCH **add, bring** *Her speech brought a welcome touch of humour to the evening.*
- PREP. **with a ~ of** *'Thanks,' she said, with a touch of sarcasm.* | **~ of sth**

5 contact
- ADJ. **close** *The security staff were in close touch with the local police.*
- VERB + TOUCH **get in** *I'm trying to get in touch with Jane. Do you have her number?* | **keep in, stay in** *It is important to keep in touch with the latest research.* ◇ *Let's keep in touch.* | **put sb in** *I'll put you in touch with someone in your area.* | **lose** *I've lost touch with all my old friends.*
- PREP. **in ~** *Are you still in touch with your friends from college?* **out of ~** *This government is increasingly out of touch with ordinary voters.* | **~ with**

touch *verb*

1 put your hand on sb/sth; be in contact with sb/sth
- ADV. **(not) actually, not even, not quite** *He did not actually touch the substance, but may have inhaled microparticles.* | **barely, hardly, scarcely** *You've hardly touched your food* (= not eaten it). | **almost, nearly, practically** *Their faces were almost touching.* | **just | briefly** *His fingers briefly touched hers.* | **gently, lightly | gingerly | accidentally, inadvertently** *He accidentally touched a live wire attached to overhead power cables.* | **never** *He said I kicked him, but I never touched him!*
- VERB + TOUCH **want to | (not) dare (to)** *Don't you dare touch me!* | **reach out to** *Her hand reached out to touch his cheek.* | **let sb** *He wouldn't let me touch the wound.*
- PREP. **on** *He touched her gently on the arm.* **with** *She touched him with her hand.*

2 make sb feel a strong emotion
- ADV. **deeply** *The story touched me very deeply.*

PHRASAL VERB

touch on/upon sth
- ADV. **briefly | just, merely** *Photojournalism and the birth of photography are merely touched on in the book.*
- VERB + TOUCH ON/UPON STH **want to** *I want to touch briefly on another aspect of the problem.*

touched *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem**
- ADV. **deeply, greatly, really, very | quite, rather**
- PREP. **by** *We were deeply touched by your concern.*

tough *adj.*

1 difficult/unpleasant
- VERBS **be, seem | get**
- ADV. **extremely, particularly, really, very | a bit, fairly, a little, pretty, quite** *Things were pretty tough at first.*
- PREP. **on** *It's very tough on the wives when the husbands go off like that.*

2 strict/firm
- VERBS **be | become, get**
- ADV. **extremely, particularly, very | fairly, pretty, quite | enough** *Has the government been tough enough on polluters?*
- PREP. **on** *The government has promised to get tough on crime.* **with** *You have to be tough with these young thugs.*

3 strong
- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get, grow | act, talk** (*both informal*) *Then this guy started acting tough.*
- ADV. **incredibly, really, remarkably, very | pretty, quite, reasonably | enough** *Are you sure you're physically tough enough for this job?* | **mentally, physically**

tour *noun*

1 journey
- ADJ. **foreign, international, national, nationwide, overseas, provincial, world | American, UK, etc. | two-city, three-country, etc.** *The group will shortly go on a ten-city European tour.* | **whirlwind, whistle-stop** *The president embarked on a whirlwind tour of the provinces.* | **comprehensive, gruelling, lengthy, long, marathon | two-week, three-week, etc. | official** *the prime minister's first official overseas tour* | **grand** *He took his degree in 1665 before embarking on the grand tour* (= a tour of Europe lasting several months). | **inclusive, package** *an all-inclusive package tour of Austria* | **mystery** (*often humorous*) *We reboarded the coach and set off on a magical mystery tour in search of tea.* | **coach, cycle, rail, walking | camping | cricket, rugby, etc. | concert, lecture, speaking, study, theatre | sell-out, successful** *The band is just back from a sell-out European tour.*
- VERB + TOUR **do, go on, make, undertake | embark on, set off on**
- TOUR + NOUN **company, operator | date, schedule** *Phone for details of the band's tour dates.* | **leader, manager** *Our tour leaders are all fluent in English.* ◇ *The team's tour manager called a press conference.* | **party,**

squad *He wasn't selected for England's tour party to Australia.* | **bus, van**

• PREP. **on (a)~** *We met a group of cyclists on a tour in the Lake District.* ◇ *The band is currently on tour in the States.* | **~of** *I'd like to do a tour of Belgium on foot.*

• PHRASES **tour of duty** *The soldiers were returning from a six-month tour of duty in Northern Ireland.*

2 short visit

• ADJ. **brief, quick, lightning** *Our host gave us a quick tour of the house.* | **extensive** | **grand** (*humorous*) *Come on, I'll give you the grand tour of the backyard.* | **conducted, guided, self-guided** | **city, factory** | **sightseeing** | **circular**

• VERB + TOUR **give sb, take sb on** | **do, make** *I made a lightning tour of the office to say goodbye.*

• TOUR + NOUN **guide**

• PHRASES **tour of inspection** *The headmaster started his tour of inspection with the staff room.*

tour *verb*

• ADV. **extensively**

• VERB + TOUR **plan to**

• PREP. **all over** *We plan to tour all over the country.* **in** *She has toured extensively in the US.*

tourism *noun*

• ADJ. **international, overseas** | **mass, package** | **expanding, increased** | **eco-friendly, ecological, environmental, green, sustainable** | **farm**

• VERB + TOURISM **boost, increase, promote** | **be dependent upon, depend on, rely on** *The islands' economy is largely dependent upon tourism.*

• TOURISM + VERB **boom, increase** *With the advent of the railways, tourism boomed.* | **decline, fall, slump**

• TOURISM + NOUN **business, enterprise, industry, market, sector** | **development, promotion** | **strategy** | **officer** | **potential** *The city is finally realizing its tourism potential.*

• PREP. **through ~** *The town survives mainly through tourism.*

• PHRASES **a downturn/decline/drop in tourism, the development/promotion of tourism, earnings/income/revenue from tourism, the growth in/of tourism, the impact of tourism, an increase/a rise in tourism**

tourist *noun*

• ADJ. **foreign, Western** | **American, Japanese, etc.** | **modern, nineteenth-century**

• QUANT. **coachload, party**

• VERB + TOURIST **attract, draw** *The Story of the Loch Ness Monster has attracted many tourists to the area.* | **drive/frighten away** *The high level of crime is frightening away tourists.*

• TOURIST + VERB **flock to sth, frequent sth, visit sth** *the part of town most frequented by tourists*

• TOURIST + NOUN **area, centre, destination, haunt, resort, spot, town, trap** *Recently Edinburgh has become a popular tourist centre.* | **attraction, facility, sight** *Pompeii is one of Italy's prime tourist attractions.* ◇ *The theme park is the region's most popular tourist facility.* | **route, trail** *The town is off the usual tourist trail.* | **hotel, shop** | **business, industry, trade** | **board, office** | **information** *the local tourist information office* | **guide** *I bought a tourist guide to Paris.* ◇ *She works as a tourist guide.* | **map** | **traffic, visitors** *the reduction in tourist traffic due to the violence* | **season** | **potential** *The city has unrealized tourist potential.* | **visa** | **bus, coach**

• PHRASES **influx of tourists** *The festival is accompanied by a huge influx of tourists.*

tournament *noun*

• ADJ. **chess, golf, tennis, etc.** | **qualifying, ranking, World Cup** | **European, international, national, world** | **major** | **one-day** | **knockout, round-robin** | **doubles, five-a-side, seven-a-side, etc., sevens, singles** | **indoor** | **club, open, professional** | **pre-season**

• VERB + TOURNAMENT **enter, play (in), take part in** *The tournament was played under floodlights.* ◇ *Several top teams have agreed to play in the tournament.* | **win** | **hold, organize**

• TOURNAMENT + VERB **take place**

• TOURNAMENT + NOUN **victory, win** *her first tournament win of the season* | **leader, winner** | **director, organizer, sponsor** | **referee** | **player, professional** *the tournament professional at the local golf club* | **golf** *She retired from tournament golf last year.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *the strongest player in the tournament* **out of a/the ~** *The loser will be out of the tournament.*

tow *noun*

• VERB + TOW **give sb** *A truck driver gave me a tow to the nearest garage.*

• TOW + NOUN **bar, line, rope** | **plane, truck, vehicle** | **pilot**

• PREP. **in ~** (*usually figurative*) *a harassed mother with three small children in tow* **under ~** *The ship, whose engine had failed, is now safely under tow.*

towel *noun*

• ADJ. **clean, fresh** | **damp, wet** | **dry** | **rolled-up** | **fluffy, soft, thick** | **paper** | **bath, bathroom, beach, hand, kitchen, tea** | **roller** | **sanitary**

• VERB + TOWEL **drape, wrap** *He had a towel draped across his shoulders.*

• TOWEL + VERB **hang** *Several towels hung over the side of the bath.*

• TOWEL + NOUN **rail** *a heated towel rail*

tower *noun*

• ADJ. **high, high-rise, lofty, massive, tall** | **squat** | **two-storey, three-storey, etc.** *They lived in a ten-storey tower in the town centre.* | **octagonal, round, square** | **ancient, Gothic, medieval** | **fortified** | **twin** *Twin towers flanked the castle gateway.* | **ruined** | **control, lookout, observation, watch** (also **watchtower**) *Armed border guards manned the lookout towers.* | **bell, clock** | **cooling, water** | **television** | **computer** | **conning** | **castle, cathedral, church** | **ivory** (*figurative*) *academics sitting in their ivory towers*

• TOWER + VERB **collapse**

town *noun*

1 place with many streets and buildings

• ADJ. **big, large, major** | **little, small** | **nearby, neighbouring, surrounding** | **ancient, historic, medieval, old** | **new** *It was built as a new town in the 1960s.* | **industrial** | **busy** *a busy market town* | **boom, thriving** *London was a boom town and the stock market was soaring.* ◇ *a thriving holiday town* | **sleepy** *a sleepy provincial town in southern France* | **country, provincial** | **county** *Beverley was then the county town of the East Riding of Yorkshire* (= the main town where the county offices were). | **home, native** *She has gone back to live in her home town.* | **border** | **coastal, seaside** | **holiday, resort** | **cathedral, market, university** | **dormitory, satellite** | **fortified** *Kitzbühel is an ancient fortified town with fine medieval buildings.* | **shanty** | **ghost** *It's been a ghost town since the gold rush ended.* | **twin** *Darlington's twin town of Amiens*

• VERB + TOWN **build, found** | **live in** *How many people live in the town?* | **get out of, leave, move out of** *He left*

town yesterday for a conference in York. ◇ *They wanted to move out of town and start a new life in the country.*
- TOWN + VERB **grow | flourish**
- TOWN + NOUN **hall, square, walls | council | life | planning**
- PREP. **in ~** *They'll be back in town tomorrow.* **out of ~** *I was out of town last week.* ◇ *an out-of-town superstore* **outside (the) ~** *a lake just outside the town*
- PHRASES **the centre/middle of (the) town, the edge/outskirts of (the) town**

2 main part of a town, with the shops, etc.
- VERB + TOWN **go into** *I'm going into town—can I get you anything?*
- PREP. **in ~** *Mum's in town doing some shopping.*

toxic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, stay | become | remain**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very | quite | potentially** *potentially toxic chemicals*
- PREP. **to** *This chemical is toxic to many forms of life.*

toy *noun*

- ADJ. **cuddly, fluffy, soft | battery-operated, clockwork, electronic, mechanical, remote-control, wind-up | construction/constructional, educational, learning, scientific | squeaky | child's, children's | executive** *Desktop publishing is probably the best executive toy ever invented.* **| sex**
- VERB + TOY **play with | snatch** *Freddie kept snatching toys from the other children.* **| pick up, put away, tidy up/away**
- TOY + NOUN **department, library, shop, store** *All kinds of toys can be borrowed from the toy library.* **| company, maker, manufacturer | box, cupboard**

trace *noun*

1 mark/sign that shows sb/sth happened/existed
- ADJ. **archaeological, historical | indelible, permanent | memory** *(technical)*
- VERB + TRACE **leave** *The burglar had left several traces of his presence.* ◇ *Little trace is left of how Stone Age people lived.* **| bear, reveal, show | discover, find** *The search party had found no trace of the missing climbers.* **| obliterate, remove** *Remove all traces of rust with a small wire brush.* **| disappear/sink/vanish without** *The ship seems to have sunk without trace.*
- TRACE + VERB **remain** *Traces still remain of the long-defunct Surrey Iron Railway.*
- PREP. **with/without a ~ of sth** *'No thanks,' she said, with a trace of irritation in her voice.* **without ~** *The plane was lost without a trace over the Atlantic.*

2 very small amount of sth
- ADJ. **discernible, faint, minute, slight, small, tiny** *There was not the faintest trace of irony in her voice.* **| unmistakable**
- VERB + TRACE **contain** *The water was found to contain traces of sulphuric acid.* **| detect, find**
- TRACE + NOUN **amount | element, gas, metal, mineral** *Kelp is rich in vitamins and trace elements.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a trace of amusement/anxiety/a smile*

trace *verb*

1 find out where sth is/where it comes from
- ADV. **successfully**
- VERB + TRACE **be able/unable to, can** *Police have been unable to trace her movements during her final days.* **| attempt to, try to | help (to) | fail to | be difficult to | be possible to**
- PREP. **to** *The stolen paintings have been successfully traced to a London warehouse.*

2 find/describe the cause/origin of sth
- ADV. **carefully | easily** *Words have over the centuries acquired meanings not easily traced in dictionaries.* **| directly | historically | back**
- VERB + TRACE **can | attempt to, try to | be difficult to** *The origins of the custom are difficult to trace.* **| be possible to**
- PREP. **to** *The book traces the history of the game back to an incident in 1863.*

3 mark where the line of sth is with a thin object
- ADV. **lightly**
- PREP. **with** *She lightly traced the outline of his face with her finger.*

track *noun*

1 marks left behind by a car/a person/an animal
- ADJ. **deep | fresh | animal, boot, car, tyre** *The beach is criss-crossed with animal tracks.*
- VERB + TRACK **leave, make** *Rabbits had left tracks in the snow.* **| cover** *(often figurative) He had been careless, and had done little to cover his tracks.* **| follow**
- PREP. **on the ~ of** *(often figurative) She felt the excitement of a journalist on the track of a good story.*
- PHRASES **freeze/halt/stop in your tracks** *(figurative)*, **halt/stop sb/sth in their/its tracks** *(figurative) The disease was stopped in its tracks by immunization programmes.* **make tracks** *(figurative) It's getting late—I'd better make tracks* (= leave).

2 path/rough road
- ADJ. **narrow | wide | steep | bumpy, dusty, grassy, muddy, rough, rutted, sandy, slippery, stony | ancient, medieval | cinder, dirt, mud, unpaved | cart, cycle, sheep, ski | single** *a single track road with passing places* **| farm, forest/forestry, hillside, mountain, woodland | perimeter** *A few planes were parked on the perimeter track of the airfield.*
- VERB + TRACK **follow**
- TRACK + VERB **lead** *The track leads across a meadow.* **| fork** *When the track forks, take the left fork.*
- PREP. **along/down/up a/the ~** *Continue along the farm track for another hundred metres.*
- PHRASES **off the beaten track** *(figurative)* (= not in a place that most people go to), **on the right/wrong track** *(figurative) The new manager successfully got the team back onto the right track.* **on the wrong track** *(figurative) The police were on the wrong track when they treated the case as a revenge killing.*

3 special path, often in a circle, for racing
- ADJ. **race** (also **racetrack**), **running | indoor, outdoor | all-weather | training, warm-up | fast | dog**
- PHRASES **track and field** *The competition features many top track and field athletes.*

4 metal rails on which a train runs
- ADJ. **rail, railway, tram | double, single | elevated | eastbound, westbound, etc. | narrow gauge, standard gauge**
- VERB + TRACK **lay | lift** *Many branch lines were closed, and the tracks lifted.*
- TRACK + NOUN **layout**

5 direction/course that sb/sth takes
- ADJ. **fast, inside** *an inside track to the ear of government* **| parallel, twin** *a twin track approach to crime* **| career** *She decided to change her career track.*
- VERB + TRACK **switch** *He switched tracks and went back to college.*
- PREP. **along a/the ~** *Film comedy developed along a similar track to film drama.* **on (a/the) ~** *A UN spokesman insisted that the implementation of the peace plan is back on track.* ◇ *The ship was on a southerly track.* **| ~ for** *She seems to be on the fast track for promotion.* **~ to** *The country is on the fast track to democracy.*
- PHRASES **keep track of sth** (= to know what is happening, where sth is, etc.) *Keep track of all your payments by*

writing them down in a book. **lose track of sth** (= to not know what is happening, where sth is, etc.) *I was so absorbed in my work that I lost track of time.*

6 one song/piece of music on a cassette/CD

• ADJ. **album | live | title | unreleased | dance, disco | backing | drum, guitar, rhythm, solo, vocal** (see also **soundtrack**)

• VERB + TRACK **cut, lay down, record** *She had already cut a couple of tracks as lead singer with her own group.* | **play | listen to**

track record *noun*

• ADJ. **good, impressive, proven | poor**

• VERB + TRACK RECORD **have, possess**

• PREP. **~ for** *If possible, select pairs of fish that already have a track record for breeding.* **~ in** *Applicants should have a proven track record in telesales.*

tractor *noun*

• ADJ. **caterpillar | agricultural, farm**

• VERB + TRACTOR **drive**

• TRACTOR + VERB **plough, work** *the sound of a tractor ploughing in the field nearby*

• TRACTOR + NOUN **driver | cab | shed**

• PREP. **on a/the ~** *a farmer on his tractor*

• PHRASES **a tractor and trailer**

trade *noun*

1 buying/selling of goods/services

• ADJ. **brisk, flourishing, lively, roaring, thriving** *All around the pyramids, salespeople were doing a roaring trade in souvenirs.* | **lucrative, profitable | external, foreign, global, international, overseas, world | domestic, internal, inter-provincial, inter-regional, regional | export, import, import-export | direct, indirect | free | fair** *The organization promotes fair trade with developing countries.* | **legal, legitimate | illegal, illicit** *attempts to curb the illicit trade in exotic species* | **private | bilateral, mutual | unilateral | coastal, maritime | agricultural, commercial | retail, wholesale** *It has been a bad year for the retail trade.* | **book, fur, slave, timber, tourist, wine, wool | evil** *the evil trade in drugs*

• VERB + TRADE **carry on, conduct, do, engage in, ply** *the tools needed to carry on a trade* ◇ *All manner of hawkers and street sellers were plying their trade.* | **boost, build up, develop, expand, increase, promote** *a bid to boost foreign trade* ◇ *He built up a trade in seeds, corn and manure.* | **damage, harm** *A bitterly cold winter damaged industrial output and trade.* | **lose** *Shops have lost a day's trade.* | **ban, restrict**

• TRADE + VERB **boom, expand, grow, increase, pick up | decline, fall**

• TRADE + NOUN **balance, figures, performance, statistics | surplus | deficit, gap, imbalance | barrier, blockade, boycott, embargo, restrictions, sanctions | tariff | dispute, war** *The countries were locked in a trade war, refusing to allow imports of each other's goods.* | **liberalization | benefits, concessions | accord, agreement, deal, pact, protocol, treaty | negotiations, talks | cooperation, links, network, relations | policy, practice** *The US was accused of employing unfair trade practices.* | **law, rules | bloc** *The five countries formed a regional trade bloc.* | **delegation, mission** *Several local firms took part in a trade mission to Spain.* | **official, representative** *talks between trade officials from the two countries* | **mark** (also **trademark**), **name | exhibition, fair, show | centre | route** *The road has been an important trade route since prehistoric times.* | **cycle** *the boom and slump periods of a trade cycle* | **association, body, group, organization** *the trade body representing water companies* (see also **trade union**) | **buyer, customer** *The vase was bought by a trade buyer* (= for example, somebody who works in the antiques trade). | **directory | journal, magazine, paper, press | information, secret** *The employees were fired for divulging trade secrets to a competitor.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *She's in the wholesale fruit trade.* ◇ *These special flour sacks are known in the trade as 'pockets'.* | **~ between** *Trade between the Adriatic ports and their hinterland had grown.* **~ in** *Steps were taken to ban the trade in ivory.* **~ with** *The US has restricted trade with India.*

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

2 job

• VERB + TRADE **learn | exercise, follow, practise**

• PREP. **by ~** *She is a carpenter by trade.*

• PHRASES **a jack of all trades** (= a person who can do many different types of work), **the tricks of the trade** *The experienced artisan would pass on the tricks of the trade to the apprentice.*

trade *verb*

• ADV. **profitably, successfully | actively | openly** *The firm openly traded in arms.* | **publicly** *publicly traded securities* | **freely** *He claimed that all shops should be able to trade freely on Sundays.* | **directly | illegally**

• VERB + TRADE **continue to | cease to**

• PREP. **as** *They now trade as a partnership.* **in** *countries trading illegally in rhinoceros horn* **with** *Early explorers traded directly with the Indians.*

• PHRASES **cease/continue trading** *The company has now ceased trading.* **trade under the name (of) sth** *The company trades under the name 'English Estates'.*

trader *noun*

• ADJ. **large** *China is now one of the largest traders in the world.* | **small, small-scale** *small market traders* | **local | foreign, international | prosperous, wealthy | market, street | itinerant | sole** *You can set up in business as a sole trader, in partnership or as a limited company.* | **independent, private | retail | cattle, motor, slave, etc. | commodity, currency, options**

tradesman *noun*

• ADJ. **skilled** *This is a job for a skilled tradesman.* | **local | self-employed | respectable** *He got into trouble for seducing the daughter of a respectable tradesman.* | **wealthy**

• PHRASES **tradesmen's entrance** *All deliveries should be made to the tradesmen's entrance.*

trade union (*also* **trades union, union**) *noun*

• ADJ. **free, independent, official, public sector, recognized, registered | militant, strong | local, national | electricians', teachers', etc.**

• VERB + TRADE UNION **form, set up | dissolve | join | belong to | ban**

• TRADE UNION + VERB **be affiliated to sth | represent sb/sth** *The union represents 40% of all hospital workers.* | **negotiate (sth)** *The nurses' union negotiated a 3% pay rise.* | **accept sth, agree (to sth) | refuse sth, reject sth, threaten sth** *The union threatened strike action if its demands were not met.* | **claim sth, express sth** *Several unions expressed support for the strike.* | **support sb/sth**

• TRADE UNION + NOUN **confederation, federation, movement, organization | affiliation | action, activism, activity, militancy, power | rights | activist, leader, member/membership, official, representative | law**

⇨ Note at ORGANIZATION

trading *noun*

• ADJ. **busy, heavy, hectic, intensive** *In heavy trading, the 100-share index closed down 38 points.* | **quiet | free | fair, unfair** *a code of practice for fair trading* | **fraudulent,**

illegal, insider *a Wall Street dealer jailed for insider trading* | **sole** *Sole trading is where an individual carries on his or her own business.* | **global, international, world** | **stock market** | **commodity, currency, equity, foreign exchange, share, stock** | **ivory**
- TRADING + VERB **begin, open** | **close**

tradition *noun*

- ADJ. **age-old, ancient, archaic, centuries-old, deep-rooted, enduring, living, long/long-established, old, time-honoured, unbroken, well-established** | **distinguished, fine, great, honourable** | **cherished, hallowed** | **dominant, powerful, strong** | **ancestral, family** | **local, national, native** | **folk, popular** | **oral** | **Catholic, Christian, pagan, etc.** | **Eastern, English, European, etc.** | **19th-century, classical, medieval, modernist, etc.** | **academic, artistic, cultural, ideological, literary, military, musical, philosophical, political, religious, sociological, sporting, teaching, theatrical** *This region has a great sporting tradition.* | **democratic, liberal, radical, revolutionary**
- VERB + TRADITION **have** | **cherish, continue, follow (in), keep alive, maintain, preserve, uphold** *Following in the Hitchcock tradition, he always appears in the films he directs.* ◇ *Villagers get together every year to keep this age-old tradition alive.* | **hand down** *an oral tradition handed down from generation to generation* | **break (with), go against** *He broke with the family tradition and did not go down the mines.* | **establish, start** | **revive**
- TRADITION + VERB **continue, die hard, survive** *Old habits and traditions die hard.*
- PREP. **according to (a/the) ~** *According to tradition, a tree grew on the spot where the king was killed.* **by ~** *By tradition, nobody interrupts an MP's maiden speech.* **in (a/the) ~** *In time-honoured tradition, a bottle of champagne was smashed on the ship.* ◇ *He's a politician in the tradition of* (= similar in style to) *Kennedy.*
- PHRASES **a departure from tradition** *In a departure from tradition, the bride wore a red dress.* **in the best traditions of sth** *The building was constructed in the best traditions of medieval church architecture.* **respect for tradition** *I acquired lasting respect for tradition and veneration for the past.*

traditional *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **very** | **almost** | **fairly, pretty, quite, rather** | **essentially** *a bold but essentially traditional design*

traffic *noun*

1 vehicles travelling somewhere
- ADJ. **bad, busy, congested, heavy, thick** | **light** | **constant** | **fast, fast-flowing** | **slow-moving, sluggish** | **cycle, heavy goods vehicle, lorry, motor, road, vehicular, wheeled** | **foot, pedestrian** | **air, airline** *an air traffic controller* | **boat, maritime, river, sea** | **rail, railway** | **motorway** | **commercial, freight, goods, industrial, passenger** | **city, city-centre, local, town-centre, urban** | **international** | **commuter, tourist** | **rush-hour** | **holiday, summer** | **oncoming** *I stood waiting for a gap in the oncoming traffic.* | **through** *Through traffic is directed around the bypass.* | **northbound, southbound, etc.** | **one-way, two-way**
- QUANT. **stream**
- VERB + TRAFFIC **generate, increase** *Building larger roads could generate more traffic.* | **cut, reduce** | **slow down** | **block, hold up, obstruct, stop, tie up** *Traffic was held up for six hours by the motorway blockade.* | **direct** | **divert**
- TRAFFIC + VERB **build up, thicken** *In the town centre, traffic was already building up as early as 3 p.m.* | **grow, increase** *Traffic has increased by 50% in ten years.* | **clog sth** *Traffic clogs the streets of the city centre.* | **thin** *Traffic thins noticeably after 9 a.m.* | **flow, move, speed, travel** *The road is being widened to keep traffic moving.* | **go by, pass** | **head** *We joined the traffic heading northwards on the motorway.* | **roar, rumble**
- TRAFFIC + NOUN **accident** | **hazard** *Sheep are a traffic hazard in the hills.* | **chaos, congestion, disruption, delays, hold-ups, problems, queues** | **fumes, pollution** | **noise** | **flow, speed** *Widening the road would improve traffic flow.* | **levels, volume** | **calming, management, restraint, safety** | **sign, signal** | **laws, legislation, regulations** | **system** | **offence, violation** | **bollard, cone, island** *A traffic island at the junction separates left- and right-turning vehicles.* | **artery** (*formal*), **route** | **report, survey, update** | **cop, officer, police, policeman, warden** | **engineer, planner** | **duty** *a policeman on traffic duty*
- PHRASES **the volume of traffic**

2 messages, signals, etc.
- ADJ. **radio, telephone** | **data, voice** | **network** | **Internet, Net, site, Web, website** *Our company will help you generate site traffic.*
- VERB + TRAFFIC **boost, build, generate**

3 illegal buying and selling of sth
- ADJ. **illegal** | **arms, drug**
- PREP. **~ in sth** *the traffic in arms*

traffic jam *noun*

- ADJ. **long, severe**
- VERB + TRAFFIC JAM **be/get caught/stuck in, sit in** *Our coach was caught in a traffic jam and got to Heathrow forty minutes late.*
- PREP. **~ on the …** *Police report severe traffic jams on the M25, with five-mile tailbacks in places.*

traffic light (*also* light) *noun*

- ADJ. **amber, green, red** | **temporary** *There are temporary traffic lights because of the roadworks.*
- QUANT. **set** *Turn left at the third set of traffic lights.*
- VERB + TRAFFIC LIGHT **go though, jump** *He was stopped by the police for going through a red light.*
- TRAFFIC LIGHT + VERB **change (to sth), go green, etc.** *A line of vehicles waited for the traffic lights to change.* ◇ *Stop when the lights change to red.* | **be (on) green, etc.** *The lights were on red but she didn't stop.* | **work** *The traffic lights weren't working.*
- PREP. **at the ~s** *There was a hold-up at the lights.*

tragedy *noun*

1 event/situation that causes great sadness
- ADJ. **absolute, appalling, awful, great, major, real, terrible** | **family, human, personal, private**
- VERB + TRAGEDY **end in** *A family's outing ended in tragedy when their boat capsized.* | **be dogged by, suffer** | **avert, avoid, prevent**
- TRAGEDY + VERB **happen, occur, strike (sb)** *Tragedy struck when their 8-year-old daughter was knocked down by a car.*
- PREP. **~ for sb** *The closure of the factory is a tragedy for the whole community.*

2 serious play with a sad ending
- ADJ. **classical, Greek, Jacobean, Shakespearean**

tragic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **genuinely, particularly, really, terribly, very** *a genuinely tragic figure in the play* | **almost** | **quite, rather** *a rather tragic story*

trail *noun*

1 line/smell that sb/sth leaves behind

- ADJ. **scent** *Ants follow a scent trail laid down previously.* | **blood, smoke, vapour** | **thin** | **muddy** | **false**
- VERB + TRAIL **lay, leave, make** *The couple laid a false trail to escape the paparazzi.* ◇ *The tourists left a trail of litter behind them.* | **pick up** *The dog had picked up the trail of a rabbit.* | **follow** | **lose** *The fox had crossed a stream, and the hounds lost the trail.*
- TRAIL + VERB **go cold** *They had to find the kidnappers before the trail went cold.*
- PREP. **on sb's ~** *Detectives had found several new clues and were back on the murderer's trail.*
- PHRASES **a trail of blood, a trail of devastation** *The hurricane passed, leaving a trail of devastation in its wake.* **a trail of smoke**

2 path/route

- ADJ. **forest, nature, woodland** | **10-kilometre, 5-mile, etc.** | **cycle, mountain bike, tourist, walking** | **hippy, tourist** *This restaurant is off the tourist trail.* | **campaign, comeback, winning** (*all figurative*) *After a disastrous few seasons, the team are on the comeback trail.*
- VERB + TRAIL **follow, hit** *In 1967 she hit the hippy trail to India.* | **be on** (*often figurative*)
- TRAIL + VERB **go, lead, wend its way** *The trail wends its way through leafy woodland and sunny meadows.*
- PREP. **along a/the ~**

trail *verb*

1 move/walk slowly

- ADV. **slowly** | **wearily**
- PREP. **after** *I trailed wearily after the others.* **around/round** *They spent their lives trailing around the country.* **(along) behind**

2 have a lower score than the other player/team

- ADV. **badly** *Liverpool are now trailing badly in the league.*
- PREP. **by** *They were trailing by 12 points until the last few minutes of the game.*

trailer *noun*

- ADJ. **lorry** | **horse**
- VERB + TRAILER **load** | **pull, tow**
- TRAILER + VERB **carry sth** *a trailer carrying a motor boat*
- PREP. **on/onto a/the ~** *a broken-down car on a trailer*
- PHRASES **a tractor and trailer**

train *noun*

1 railway engine pulling carriages/trucks

- ADJ. **railway** | **metro, subway, tube, underground** | **intercity, international, long-distance** | **local, suburban** | **express, fast** | **direct, through** *I got the through train to Manchester.* | **slow, stopping** | **special** | **early, evening, midnight, morning, night, overnight** | **two o'clock, 10.45, etc.** | **return** *What are the times of the return trains?* | **first, last, next** *The last train leaves at 00.30.* | **London to Glasgow, etc.** *the Paris to Brussels train* | **Stuttgart-bound, etc.** | **northbound, southbound, etc.** | **Piccadilly line, etc.** | **crowded, full, loaded** | **empty** | **moving** | **stationary** | **speeding** | **runaway** | **approaching, oncoming** *the sound of an approaching train* ◇ *He was pushed into the path of an oncoming train.* | **passing** *the roar of a passing train* | **departing** *She ran alongside the departing train, waving goodbye.* | **delayed, late-running** | **luxury, Pullman** | **four-coach, three-coach, etc.** | **bullet, high-speed** | **diesel, electric, steam** | **coal, commuter, freight, goods, mail, passenger** | **military, troop** | **model** | **ghost** *a carnival with ghost trains and dodgem cars*
- VERB + TRAIN **take, travel by** *From Germany they travelled by train to Poland.* | **travel on** *She's travelling on the same train as you.* | **use** | **catch, get, make** *We had to get up early to make the 6 o'clock train for Florence.* | **miss** | **wait for** | **run for** *I was late and had to run for my train.* | **board, get on, hop on, jump aboard/on** *We jumped on the train just as it was about to leave.* | **jump from/off, jump out of** *She tried to kill herself by jumping off a moving train.* | **alight from, get off** | **meet (sb off)** *I'm going to the station to meet her off the train.* | **change** *You'll have to change trains at Cambridge.* | **operate, run** *The company plans to run trains on key intercity routes.* | **cancel** *The 10.19 train has been cancelled.* | **drive** | **haul** *a train hauled by a steam locomotive* | **stop** | **derail** | **fall under, throw sb under** *Driven to despair, he threw himself under a train.*
- TRAIN + VERB **run** *In summer the trains run as often as every ten minutes.* | **start** | **terminate** *The train terminated in Carlisle.* | **be bound for …** *an express train bound for Edinburgh* | **be due** *The next train is due at 9.45.* | **be delayed, be held up, be late, run late** *Most trains are running late because of the accident.* | **arrive, come in, come into sth, draw in, draw into sth, pull in, pull into sth, steam in, steam into sth** *The next train to arrive at Platform 2 is the 12.30 from Leeds.* ◇ *The train came in and I got on.* ◇ *The train drew into the station.* | **come, go** *We didn't want to leave the platform in case the train came.* | **reach** *The train reached Prague at half past six.* | **return** | **depart, draw out (of sth), leave, pull away, pull out (of sth), start (off), steam out** *The train pulled out of the station.* | **head …** *The train headed out of Athens.* | **stand, wait** *The train now standing at Platform 3 is the 16.50 to Brighton.* ◇ *a train waiting at a signal* | **move** *Slowly the train began to move.* | **travel** *The high-speed train travels at 120 mph.* | **chug, trundle** *The train chugged slowly forward.* | **gather speed** | **hurtle, rush, speed, steam** *a picture of the bullet train speeding past Mount Fuji* | **slow (down)** | **brake** | **be brought to a halt, come to a halt, halt, stop** | **rattle, rumble, thunder, whistle** *The train rattled into the station.* | **jerk, jolt, lurch, shudder** *The train jolted into motion.* | **approach, come** *The train came towards them.* | **pass** | **enter sth** *The train entered the tunnel.* | **collide (with sth)** | **be loaded with sth, carry sth**
- TRAIN + NOUN **journey, ride** | **service** | **station** | **times, timetable** | **fare** | **ticket** | **crew, driver, guard, staff** | **travellers, travelling** | **spotter, spotting** | **accident, collision, crash, disaster** | **window** | **carriage** | **shed** | **robber** | **set** *I saved up my pocket money to buy an electric train set.*
- PREP. **aboard/on/on board a/the ~** *the people on the train* **by ~** *It's quicker by train.* | **~ between** *trains between Brindisi and Rome* **~ for/to** *He was leaving on the early train for Zaragoza.* **~ from** *the train from Birmingham to Worcester*
- PHRASES **a train load of sth** *train loads of iron ore* **a train to catch** *I can't stop now, I have a train to catch.*

2 number of people/animals moving in a line

- ADJ. **camel, mule, wagon** | **supply**

3 series of events/actions/thoughts

- VERB + TRAIN **set sth in** *That telephone call set in train a whole series of events.* | **bring sth in** (*figurative*) *Unemployment brings greater difficulties in its train* (= causes great difficulties).
- PHRASES **a train of events, a train of thought** *The telephone rang and she lost her train of thought.*
- PREP. **in sb's ~** (*figurative*) *In the train of* (= following behind) *the rich and famous came the journalists.*

train *verb*

- ADV. **hard**
- PREP. **for** *The team is training hard for the big match.*

trained *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly** *a highly trained army* | **well** *The animals have all been well trained.* | **fully, properly, thoroughly** *It is important that staff should be properly trained.* | **adequately** | **badly, inadequately, poorly** | **appropriately, suitably** | **explicitly, specially, specifically** | **formally** | **professionally** | **classically** *classically trained dancers*

trainee *noun*

- ADJ. **management, teacher** | **graduate** *Many companies recruit graduate trainees to train as managers.*
- VERB + TRAINEE **employ, recruit, take on**
- TRAINEE + VERB **work**
- TRAINEE + NOUN **accountant, dealer, manager, nurse, solicitor, teacher**
- PREP. **as a ~** *She joined as a management trainee.*

trainer *noun*

1 person who trains sb/sth

- ADJ. **orchestral, teacher** | **boxing, etc.** | **animal, dog, horse, racehorse** | **champion, winning** | **personal, private** *He works out every morning with his personal trainer.*

⇨ Note at JOB

2 (usually **trainers**) sports shoe

- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + TRAINERS **lace up, unlace**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

training *noun*

1 learning skills

- ADJ. **basic, initial, preliminary** *New recruits undergo six weeks' basic training at this naval base.* | **advanced, high/higher, high-level** | **comprehensive, systematic, thorough** | **extensive, lengthy** | **intensive** | **essential, necessary** | **minimum** | **adequate, proper** *No one must operate the machinery without proper training.* | **inadequate** | **minimal** *Using spreadsheets requires minimal training.* | **excellent, first-class, high-quality** | **specialist** | **hands-on, practical** | **theoretical** | **continuous, long-term, ongoing** | **individual, one-to-one** | **formal, informal** *He is good at selling, although he has had no formal training.* | **job, job-related, occupational, professional, vocational, work-related** | **in-service, on-the-job** | **off-the-job** | **external** | **internal, on-site** | **computer-based** | **mental, moral, physical, social** | **academic, educational, industrial, intellectual, journalistic, legal, management, medical, military, musical, scientific, technical** | **first-aid** | **assertiveness** | **potty** (= when a child learns to use a potty) | **staff, teacher**
- VERB + TRAINING **do, get, have, receive, undergo** *You have to do a year's intensive training to become a paramedic.* | **give sb, provide (sb with)** | **require**
- TRAINING + NOUN **base, camp, centre, college, establishment, facility, school** *an army training base ◇ a teacher training college* | **activity, course, exercise, initiative, package, plan, programme, project, scheme, strategy, system** *The soldiers were building a bridge as a training exercise.* | **methods, policy, procedures, process, techniques, skills** | **needs, objectives, requirements** | **opportunities, provision** | **aid, device, equipment, material** | **manual** | **instructor, manager, officer, staff** | **body, committee, company, department, organization, provider, service** | **place, placement** | **event, workshop** | **day, period, etc.** | **budget, costs, fees**
- PREP. **by ~** *She's an accountant by training.* **in ~** *I am delighted with the work he has done in training.* | **~ for** *Training for nursing was on strictly formal lines.* **~ in** *Employees should be given training in safety procedures.*

2 physical exercises

- ADJ. **hard, rigorous, serious, strict, tough** *She did six months' hard training before the marathon.* | **pre-season**
- VERB + TRAINING **do**
- TRAINING + NOUN **run, session, stint** | **regime, regimen, routine, schedule** | **ground, pitch, track** (*figurative*) *This local newspaper has been a training ground for several top journalists.*
- PREP. **in ~** *Lewis is in serious training for the Olympics.* | **~ for**

trait *noun*

- ADJ. **admirable, appealing** | **negative, undesirable, unfortunate** | **human** *Her boss did not display any human traits.* | **distinctive, enduring, individual** | **family, genetic, hereditary, inherited** | **behavioural, character, personal, personality** | **mental, psychological** | **obsessional** | **physical** | **female, male** | **cultural, national**
- VERB + TRAIT **have, possess** | **lack** | **share** *She shares several character traits with her father.* | **display, exhibit, show** | **acquire, develop, inherit** *We do not know which behavioural traits are inherited and which acquired.* | **identify, recognize**

traitor *noun*

- VERB + TRAITOR **turn** *He turned traitor and joined the opposition.* | **denounce sb as**
- PREP. **~ to** *He is seen as a traitor to the cause.*

tram *noun*

- ADJ. **modern** | **electric, horse/horse-drawn, steam**
- VERB + TRAM **catch, go on, take** | **miss** | **board, get on** | **get off**
- TRAM + VERB **run** *The last tram ran through Glasgow in September 1962.* | **rattle** | **stop**
- TRAM + NOUN **service, system** | **route** | **stop** | **ride** | **driver** | **car** *a conducted tour in an old tram car* | **shed** | **line, rail, track** | **ticket**
- PREP. **by ~** *There is easy access to the centre of the city by tram.* **on a/the ~** *They sat together on the rattling tram.* | **~ from, ~ to**

trample *verb*

- ADV. **down** *crops that have been trampled down by walkers' feet* | **underfoot** *He saved a little girl from being trampled underfoot in the rush for the fire exit.*
- PREP. **on** (*often figurative*) *The government is trampling on the views of ordinary people.* **over** *Police officers had been trampling all over the ground.*
- PHRASES **be trampled to death**

trance *noun*

- ADJ. **catatonic, deep** | **light** | **hypnotic, mesmeric**
- VERB + TRANCE **fall into, go into** | **put sb into** | **come out of, awake/wake from**
- TRANCE + NOUN **state**
- PREP. **in a ~** *In a deep trance, the subject is taken back to an earlier stage of their life.*

tranquil *adj.*

- VERBS **be, lie, look, seem** *The village lay tranquil in the evening sunlight.* | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, very, wonderfully** | **perfectly, quite** | **fairly, rather**

transaction *noun*

- ADJ. **cross-border, international** | **domestic** | **profitable** | **fraudulent, illegal** *The president had entered into fraudulent property transactions.* | **credit, credit/debit card** | **cash, cheque** | **online** | **over-the-counter** *Electronic banking may make over-the-counter transactions*

obsolete. | **banking, business, commercial, consumer, economic, financial, market, monetary, trade | foreign currency, foreign exchange | property, share | human, intellectual, interpersonal**
- VERB + TRANSACTION **carry out, conduct, enter into, make | effect, handle** *to effect a transaction for a client* | **close, complete**
- TRANSACTION + VERB **proceed, take place** *to ensure the transaction proceeds smoothly*
- TRANSACTION + NOUN **charges, costs**
- PREP. **~ between** *The system records all transactions between the firm and its suppliers.* **~ in** *Transactions in land are frequently handled by an estate agent.*

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

transcript *noun*

- ADJ. **faithful, full, verbatim | edited | official | radio, video | interview, trial**
- VERB + TRANSCRIPT **read (through), go through | make | print, publish**

transfer *noun*

- ADJ. **massive** *The war caused a massive transfer of population.* | **efficient, smooth, successful** *the smooth transfer of power to the new government* | **net** *There has been a net transfer of lower-paid people away from the inner cities.* | **permanent** *Her boss recommended a permanent transfer overseas.* | **direct** *Employees are paid by direct transfer to a bank account.* | **data, information, knowledge | land, property | population | resource | technology | file, multimedia, software | inter-company, inter-hospital, etc. | bank, capital, cash, credit, financial, money, share, stock | electronic, telegraphic | embryo, gene | charge, electron, energy, heat, nuclear, thermal | close-season, free, 15-million-pound, etc.** (all in football)
- VERB + TRANSFER **make** *Only the owner can make a transfer of goods.* | **give sb** *His club have given him a free transfer.*
- TRANSFER + VERB **take place**
- TRANSFER + NOUN **deal, fee, list, payment, price, system** (all in football)
- PREP. **~ between** *the transfer of property between private buyers* **~ from, ~ to**

transfer *verb*

- ADV. **carefully | directly** *Skills cannot be transferred directly from a trainer to a trainee.* | **easily** *Data is easily transferred electronically.* | **successfully | merely, simply | immediately | quickly, rapidly | gradually | eventually | temporarily | formally** *Sovereignty was formally transferred on December 27.* | **automatically | electronically | abroad, back** *transferring assets abroad*
- VERB + TRANSFER **agree to | refuse to**
- PREP. **across/between** *Can the disease be transferred across species?* **from, into** *She transferred the sauce into a china jug.* **onto, to**

transferable *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **easily, freely, highly, readily** *The shares are freely transferable.* | **fully, wholly | not necessarily**
- PREP. **between** *Tickets are transferable between members of the same family.* **from, to** *Skills which are not necessarily transferable from one environment to another.*

transform *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, fundamentally, profoundly, radically** *The riots radically transformed the situation.* | **completely, entirely, totally, utterly | quickly, rapidly | gradually, slowly | suddenly | apparently | miraculously** *He seems to have been miraculously transformed into a first-class player.* | **overnight** *Things cannot be transformed overnight.*
- VERB + TRANSFORM **help (to) | manage to**
- PREP. **from, into** *The place was transformed from a quiet farming village into a busy port.*
- PHRASES **the power to transform sb/sth** *the power of religion to transform our hearts and minds*

transformation *noun*

- ADJ. **amazing, complete, dramatic, fundamental, major, miraculous, profound, radical, remarkable, revolutionary, startling, total | subtle | gradual | immediate, instant, rapid, sudden | cultural, economic, historical, intellectual, physical, political, social, structural**
- VERB + TRANSFORMATION **undergo** *The way we work has undergone a radical transformation in the past decade.* | **make** *He was struggling to make the transformation from single man to responsible husband.* | **achieve, bring about, carry out, cause, effect, lead to** *Going to college brought about a dramatic transformation in her outlook.* | **accelerate | complete**
- TRANSFORMATION + VERB **begin | come about, occur, take place** *A startling cultural transformation occurred in post-war Britain.*
- TRANSFORMATION + NOUN **process**
- PREP. **~ from** *The transformation from disused docks into city-centre cultural venue took three years.* **~ in** *This decision marked a fundamental transformation in policy.* **~ into** *Japan's transformation into an economic superpower* **~ to** *Russia's transformation to a market economy*

transit *noun*

- ADJ. **air, rail, road, sea | mass** *An improved mass transit system would cut traffic on the roads.* | **rapid**
- TRANSIT + NOUN **point** *The port has become a transit point in the drug trade.* | **camp** *a transit camp for refugees* | **lounge** *The passengers had been transferred into the transit lounge.* | **shed** *The goods were still in a transit shed on the quay.* | **system** *The city has acquired a light rail transit system.*
- PREP. **in ~** *Many of the goods were damaged in transit.* | **~ between** *goods in transit between factory and store* **~ from, ~ to** *in transit from factory to store*

transition *noun*

- ADJ. **abrupt, immediate, rapid, sudden | direct | gradual, phased, slow | awkward, difficult, painful | easy, smooth | non-violent, orderly, peaceful**
- VERB + TRANSITION **bring about, cause, effect** *The negotiators hoped to effect a smooth transition to an interim administration.* | **complete, make** *The company was slow to make the transition from paper to computer.* | **undergo | mark** *The ceremony marks the transition of the student to graduate status.* | **ease, smooth**
- TRANSITION + VERB **occur, take place | be complete** *Her transition from girl to woman was complete.*
- TRANSITION + NOUN **period, process | phase**
- PREP. **during (the) ~** *He will remain head of state during the transition to democracy.* **in ~** *The country is in transition from an agricultural to an industrial society.* | **~ between** *This training course aims to smooth the transition between education and employment.* **~ from, ~ to**
- PHRASES **a period of transition, a process of transition, a state of transition**

translate *verb*

1 change sth from one language to another
- ADV. **literally** *'Tiramisu' literally translates as 'pull-me-up'.* | **accurately, correctly | freely, loosely, roughly | generally, normally, usually | variously** *a Greek word*

variously translated as 'summit', 'top' and 'finishing stroke'

- VERB + TRANSLATE **attempt to, try to | be difficult to** *This word is difficult to translate.*
- PREP. **as** *The word 'sensus' can be translated as 'feeling'.* **for** *I don't speak Italian—can you translate for me?* **from** *The book has been translated from the Japanese by Livia Yamaguchi.* **into** *an expression that is difficult to translate into English*
- PHRASES **widely translated** *The novel has been widely translated.*

2 change into a different form

- ADV. **directly | effectively | easily | automatically** *Teacher expectations do not automatically translate themselves into student results.*
- VERB + TRANSLATE **attempt to, try to** *trying to translate the theory into simple concepts* | **be difficult to**
- PREP. **into** *A small increase in local spending will translate into a big rise in council tax.*
- PHRASES **translate sth into action/practice** *attempting to translate these ideas into action*

translation *noun*

- ADJ. **accurate, correct, exact | approximate, free, rough | direct, literal, straight, word-for-word | English, Japanese, etc. | simultaneous** *There will be a simultaneous translation in English and Chinese.* | **automatic, machine** *advances in machine translation*
- VERB + TRANSLATION **do, make** *I've got this translation to do for Friday. ◇ She tried making her own translation of the sign without consulting a dictionary.* | **work on | read | survive** *The poems do not survive the translation into English.* | **lose sth in** *The irony is lost in translation.*
- TRANSLATION + VERB **read** *The translation of the Latin motto reads 'Not for oneself, but for others'.*
- TRANSLATION + NOUN **process | service, work | facilities | exercise | equivalent**
- PREP. **for ~** *Each unit of the course ends with sentences for translation.* **in ~** *I read the book in translation, not in the original Norwegian.* | **~ into** *Simultaneous translation into English is available to delegates.*

translator *noun*

- ADJ. **Dutch, Japanese, etc. | professional | freelance** *working as a freelance translator*
- TRANSLATOR + VERB **translate from/into sth, work from/into sth** *translators working from Portuguese into English*

⇨ Note at JOB

transmission *noun*

1 sending out/passing on

- ADJ. **direct, indirect | one-way** *Classes are based on discussion rather than on the one-way transmission of knowledge.* | **onward, outward** *An extra copy of each document was supplied for onward transmission to head office.* | **data, information, voice | facsimile/fax | light, power | money | gas | cable, radio, satellite, television | analogue, digital | live, simultaneous** *There will be simultaneous transmission of the concert on TV and radio.* | **genetic, oral, person-to-person, sexual | herpes, HIV, malaria | cultural**
- VERB + TRANSMISSION **prevent**
- TRANSMISSION + NOUN **equipment, line, technology | mechanism, network, system | route** *The virus's usual transmission route is by sneezing.*
- PREP. **~ among** *HIV transmission among homosexual men* **~ between** *transmission between patients* **~ by** *transmission by satellite* **~ from, ~ to** *transmission from one aircraft to another* **~ through** *HIV transmission through blood transfusion*
- PHRASES **a mode of transmission, a risk of transmission** *There is a risk of transmission of the virus between hypodermic users.*

2 TV/radio programme

- ADJ. **radio, television/TV | FM, long-wave, medium-wave, short-wave, UHF, VHF | live, satellite, stereo | test**
- VERB + TRANSMISSION **receive**
- PREP. **~ from** *a live transmission from Sydney*

3 in a car, etc.

- ADJ. **automatic, manual | 4-speed, 5-speed**
- TRANSMISSION + NOUN **system**

transmit *verb*

1 pass sth from one person to another

- ADV. **actively | easily, readily | genetically, sexually** *the study of genetically transmitted diseases*
- PREP. **from, through** *The disease cannot be transmitted through coughing or sneezing.* **to** *The infection can be transmitted from a mother to her baby.* **via** *The virus is easily transmitted via needles.*

2 send out TV programmes/electronic signals, etc.

- ADV. **automatically | electronically**
- PREP. **from, to** *automatically transmitting data from one part of the system to another*

transmitter *noun*

- ADJ. **radar, radio, television/TV | voice** *They discovered voice transmitters hidden in the wall.* | **FM, long-wave, medium-wave, short-wave, VHF | low-power, powerful | ground, hand-held, satellite**
- VERB + TRANSMITTER **be equipped/fitted with**
- TRANSMITTER + VERB **emit sth, send out sth** *The receiver picks up pulses emitted by the transmitter.*

transparent *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look | become**
- ADV. **extremely, very | completely, entirely, fully, perfectly, quite, totally** *They are so thin that they are quite transparent.* | **almost** *Her eyelids were blue and almost transparent.* | **fairly, rather, slightly**

transplant *noun*

- ADJ. **bone-marrow, heart, heart-lung, kidney, liver, etc. | double, multi-organ, multiple**
- VERB + TRANSPLANT **have, undergo** *She will have to have a heart-lung transplant within 48 hours.* | **carry out, do, perform | reject** *It is likely that such a transplant will be rejected in older people.*
- TRANSPLANT + NOUN **operation, surgery | surgeon | team | centre, unit | donor** *A suitable transplant donor has been found.* | **candidate, patient, recipient**
- PREP. **for ~** *a shortage of kidneys for transplant*

transplant *verb*

- ADV. **successfully**
- PREP. **from, into** *Organs are transplanted from donors into patients who need them.* **to** *The Dutch successfully transplanted trees to the East Indies.*

transport *noun*

- ADJ. **cheap, efficient | mass, public** *to travel by/on public transport* | **private | local | city, urban | rural | horse-drawn, motor | air, canal, ground, land, marine, rail, railway, river, road, sea, water | passenger | freight**
- VERB + TRANSPORT **use | arrange | provide | have access to** *people who have no access to private transport*
- TRANSPORT + NOUN **facilities, provision, services | infrastructure, network, system | business, company, group, industry, operator, organization | chairman,**

chief, executive, manager, officer, official | consultant, planner | project, scheme, strategy | legislation, policy | budget | minister, spokesman | authority/authorities, committee, department, ministry | needs, requirements | market, sector | costs, fares | allowance *Staff who transfer to a different office will receive a transport allowance.* | **user | worker | links, routes | congestion | police | safety | strike | union**

• PREP. **without ~** *The car broke down, leaving us without transport.*

• PHRASES **a form/means/method/mode of transport, your own transport** *Applicants for the job must have their own telephone and transport.*

trap *noun*

1 hidden equipment used for catching sb/sth

• ADJ. **animal, bear, man, mouse** (also **mousetrap**), **etc.** | **gin, leghold, pit/pitfall | radar, speed** *Slow down—there are speed traps along this stretch of road.*

• VERB + TRAP **be/get caught in | catch sth in | free sth from** *The fox had managed to free itself from the trap.* | **lay, set | bait** *Mousetraps are traditionally baited with cheese.*

2 sth that tricks you; unpleasant situation

• ADJ. **hidden, obvious | potential | booby | deadly | death, debt, poverty, unemployment** *The overhead cable is a potential death trap for birds.* | **offside** (in football)

• VERB + TRAP **lay, set | spring | lure sb into | catch sb in | be/get caught in, fall into, stumble into, walk into** *It is easy to fall into the trap of taking out a loan you cannot afford.* | **avoid | fear, suspect**

trappings *noun*

• ADJ. **external, outward, visible** *She scorns the visible trappings of success, preferring to live unnoticed.*

• PHRASES **all the trappings** *They enjoyed all the trappings of wealth.* **the trappings of power/success**

trauma *noun*

• ADJ. **major, severe | emotional, physical, psychological | childhood** *The phobia may have its root in a childhood trauma.*

• VERB + TRAUMA **go through, suffer | get over, recover from**

traumatic *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become, get**

• ADV. **deeply, extremely, particularly, really, very** *this deeply traumatic incident in his past* | **fairly, quite, rather**

travel *noun*

• ADJ. **air, bus, car, coach, rail, sea, train | foreign, international, overseas, world | long-distance | business | leisure | cheap, concessionary, free | first-class | high-speed | return | frequent** *The job involves frequent travel.* | **space, time**

• TRAVEL + NOUN **agency, business, company, firm, industry | arrangements, plans | allowance, costs, expenses | insurance | document, documentation | itinerary | time** *The new bypass will reduce travel time to the airport.* | **sickness | book, brochure, guide, writer**

• PREP. **~ from, ~ to** *The price includes return rail travel from London Victoria to Dover.*

travel *verb*

• ADV. **fast** *News travels fast these days.* | **slowly | regularly** *business people who travel regularly to the US* | **widely** *She travels widely in her job.* | **freely** *The dissidents were unable to hold meetings or travel freely.* | **independently** *I prefer travelling independently to going on a package holiday.* | **together | separately** *We had to travel separately as we couldn't get seats on the same flight.* | **economy class, first class, etc.** *I always travel first class.* | **far, further (afield)** *for the holidaymaker who wants to travel further afield* | **abroad** *The job gives her the opportunity to travel abroad.* | **home | back, back and forth, down, downstream** *travelling back and forth across the Channel* | **north, northwards, etc.**

• VERB + TRAVEL **be able/unable to | be free to | want to, wish to | be forced to, have to** *Hundreds of hospital patients may have to travel long distances for treatment.* | **refuse to**

• PREP. **across, along, around/round, between, by, from, into, through, to** *We decided to travel by car.* ◇ *We travelled through France and into Germany.*

• PHRASES **freedom to travel, go travelling** *When I finished college I went travelling for six months* (= spent time visiting different places). **travel light** *She travels light, choosing to use as little equipment as possible.*

traveller *noun*

• ADJ. **business | commercial** *Her father was a commercial traveller who sold kitchenware.* | **frequent** *Attractive discounts are available to frequent travellers.* | **foreign, international | great, inveterate, keen, seasoned | adventurous, intrepid | independent** *Independent travellers often steer clear of the most touristy spots.* | **discerning | fellow** *I got to know my fellow travellers quite well in the course of the three-day journey.* | **tired, weary | unwary** *Stations can be dangerous places for the unwary traveller.* | **air, rail/railway, train | space | armchair** (= sb who doesn't travel but likes to read about distant places) *His travel books have given pleasure to generations of armchair travellers.*

• VERB + TRAVELLER **guide** *Local tribesmen earn their living guiding travellers across the mountains.*

tray *noun*

• ADJ. **laden, loaded** *a heavily laden tray* | **breakfast, coffee, drinks, hospitality, supper, tea** *Every hotel room has a colour TV, telephone and hospitality tray.*

• VERB + TRAY **bear, carry | pick up | balance** *He balanced the tray on his knees.* | **place, put down**

• PREP. **on a/the ~** *A waitress came in, carrying tea on a tray.* | **~ of** *waiters bearing trays of champagne*

treacherous *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, prove | become | remain**

• ADV. **extremely, very | rather | notoriously** *the mountain's notoriously treacherous rocky crest*

tread *noun*

1 sound you make when you are walking

• ADJ. **firm, heavy** *I heard his heavy tread moving about upstairs.* | **light, soft | measured, slow, steady**

• VERB + TREAD **hear**

• TREAD + VERB **move**

• PREP. **with a… ~** *A policeman walked by with a slow, measured tread.*

• PHRASES **the tread of feet** *The streets have echoed to the tread of feet for more than ten centuries.*

2 on a tyre

• ADJ. **tyre, wheel | deep, shallow | worn**

• TREAD + VERB **be worn** *The tyre tread has been worn below the legal limit.*

• TREAD + NOUN **depth, pattern, width**

• PHRASES **a breadth/depth/width of tread**

tread *verb*

• ADV. **heavily** *He came down the stairs, treading as heavily as he could.* | **gently, lightly, softly | carefully, gin-**

gerly, warily *She trod gingerly. It would be risky to hurry.* ◇ *(figurative) The government will have to tread carefully in handling this issue.* | **down** *She planted the seeds and trod the earth down.*
- PREP. **in** *Billy trod in a big puddle.* **into** *Some cake crumbs had been trodden into the carpet.* **on** *Be careful not to tread on the flowers.*

treason *noun*

- ADJ. **high**
- PREP. **~against** *an act of high treason against the English crown*
- PHRASES **an act of treason**

⇨ Note at CRIME (for verbs)

treasure *noun*

1 collection of very valuable objects
- ADJ. **buried, hidden, lost, sunken** | **pirate, Roman, royal** | **vast** *a vast treasure of medieval manuscripts*
- VERB + TREASURE **hunt for, look for, search for** | **dig up, discover, find, uncover, unearth** | **hide**
- TREASURE + NOUN **chest, house, trove** *(figurative) This book is a treasure house of information on Arctic birds.* | **hunter, hunting**
- PHRASES **a hoard of treasure**

2 sth that is very valuable
- ADJ. **great, priceless** | **rare** | **ancient** | **forgotten, hidden, secret, unexpected** *Many forgotten treasures have been discovered in the attics of old houses.* | **archaeological, historic, historical** | **art, artistic, cultural** | **church** | **family** | **national**
- VERB + TREASURE **discover, find, uncover, unearth**

treasurer *noun*

- ADJ. **deputy** | **honorary** *the honorary treasurer of the rugby club* | **corporate**
- VERB + TREASURER **act as, be, serve as** *He agreed to act as treasurer.* | **appoint, appoint sb (as), elect, elect sb (as)** | **resign as, retire as**
- PHRASES **treasurer's report** *The treasurer's report gives a breakdown of the club's income and expenditure.*

treat *noun*

- ADJ. **great, real, special** | **little** *I like to give the girls a little treat every now and then.* | **occasional, rare** | **anniversary, birthday, Christmas, holiday** | **family** | **tasty** *Snails are a tasty treat for hedgehogs.*
- VERB + TREAT **give sb** | **deserve**
- PREP. **as/for a ~** *We took the kids to the zoo for a special treat.*
- PHRASES **be in for a treat/have a treat in store** *If their latest album is half as good as their last one, we've a real treat in store.*

treat *verb*

1 handle sb/sth in a particular way
- ADV. **equitably, fairly, humanely, kindly, leniently, sympathetically, well** | **abominably, badly, harshly, roughly, shabbily, unfairly, unjustly** *They treat their animals quite badly.* | **seriously** *These allegations are being treated very seriously indeed.* | **differently** | **separately**
- VERB + TREAT **tend to** *Parents still tend to treat boys differently from girls.*
- PREP. **as** *the tendency to treat older people as helpless and dependent* **like** *Don't treat me like a child!* **with** *He treated the idea with suspicion.*
- PHRASES **a tendency to treat sb/sth**

2 give sb medical treatment
- ADV. **easily** | **successfully** | **surgically**
- VERB + TREAT **be difficult to** | **use sth to**
- PREP. **for** *She was treated for cuts and bruises.* **with** *We can treat this condition quite successfully with antibiotics.*

3 use a substance to protect sth
- ADV. **chemically** *Chemically treated hair can become dry and brittle.*
- PREP. **for** *You need to treat this wood for woodworm.* **with** *The timber has been treated with chemicals to preserve it.*

treatment *noun*

1 way you behave towards sb/deal with sth
- ADJ. **favourable, preferential, special, VIP** *She was given the VIP treatment after winning gold for her country at the Sydney Olympics.* | **generous, lenient** | **equal, fair** | **good, humane** | **sensitive, sympathetic** | **discriminatory, unequal, unfair, unjust, unkind** | **brutal, cruel, degrading, harsh, ill-, inhuman, inhumane, rough, violent** *He claims he suffered ill-treatment at the hands of prison officers.* | **shabby** *You shouldn't put up with such shabby treatment.*
- VERB + TREATMENT **get, have, receive, suffer** | **deserve** *He had done nothing to deserve such cruel treatment.* | **give sb, mete out (to sb)** *The treatment meted out to captured soldiers was harsh.* | **put up with**

2 medical care
- ADJ. **emergency, immediate, on-the-spot, prompt, urgent** | **follow-up, further** | **long-term** | **effective, successful** | **conventional, orthodox** | **alternative, holistic, homoeopathic** | **hospital** | **inpatient, outpatient** | **free, NHS** | **private** | **specialist** | **dental, medical, psychiatric, veterinary** | **drug, hormone** | **operative, surgical** | **non-operative, non-surgical** | **laser** | **dietary, nutritional** | **beauty, hair**
- QUANT. **course**
- VERB + TREATMENT **get, have, receive, undergo** *She is still undergoing medical treatment.* | **administer, give sb, provide (sb with)** *Paramedics are to have extra training in administering on-the-spot treatment.* | **need, require** | **seek** *When his depression worsened, he decided to seek treatment.* | **advise, prescribe, recommend, suggest** | **refuse** | **benefit from, respond to** *He responded well to treatment and is now walking again.*
- TREATMENT + NOUN **decision, option** | **centre, room** | **method, procedure, technique** | **course, plan, programme, regime, regimen, schedule**
- PREP. **in ~** *He's in treatment for cocaine addiction.* | **~for** *She is receiving treatment for a heart condition.*

3 process for cleaning/protecting sth
- ADJ. **sewage, surface, water** *Galvanizing is a common surface treatment for steel.*
- TREATMENT + NOUN **facility, plant, works**

4 discussion of a subject, work of art, etc.
- ADJ. **definitive, exhaustive, systematic** | **lengthy** | **cursory, superficial** | **philosophical, theoretical**

treaty *noun*

- ADJ. **global, international, state, union** | **bilateral, multilateral** | **formal** | **draft** | **commercial, economic, military, political** | **unequal** | **cooperation, friendship** | **non-aggression, peace** | **arms, disarmament, non-proliferation, test ban** *A multilateral nuclear test ban treaty was to be signed.* | **defence** | **extradition**
- VERB + TREATY **agree on/to** | **draw up, prepare** | **negotiate** | **be/become a party to, conclude, enter into, finalize, make, sign** *In September 1871 Japan entered into a commercial treaty with China.* | **accept, approve, ratify, vote for** *All the members have voted to ratify the treaty.* | **reject, vote against** | **condemn, criticize, oppose** | **amend, review, revise** | **adhere to** | **be in breach of, breach, break, violate** *The new law may be in breach of the Treaty of Rome.* | **abrogate, repudiate** | **enforce** | **impose** *The people felt the treaty had been imposed on*

them by their government. | **be bound by** | **be laid down by/in** *the criteria laid down in the treaty*

- TREATY + VERB **come into force** *The treaty comes into force at midnight on December 31.* | **provide for** *The treaty provides for UN inspection of all countries' weapons systems.* | **guarantee sth** | **govern sth, regulate sth** | **create sth, establish sth** | **recognize sth** | **declare sth** | **require sth** | **ban sth, prohibit sth** | **draw criticism** *The treaty has drawn criticism from opposition groups.*
- TREATY + NOUN **party** | **amendment, changes, revision** | **provision** | **terms** | **document, text** | **law** | **commitment, obligation** | **rights** | **relations, relationship**
- PREP. **by ~** *Certain areas had been ceded by treaty.* **under a/the ~** *These arrangements under the treaty apply to the whole of Europe.* | **~ between** *a bilateral treaty between the US and Mexico* **~ with** *The government concluded a peace treaty with the rebels.*
- PHRASES **an article/a clause of a treaty, the provisions/terms of a treaty, the ratification of a treaty**

treble *verb* (*also* **triple**)

- ADV. **more than** | **almost, nearly**
- PREP. **in** *Some goods have almost trebled in price.* **to** *The figure has more than trebled to 67 per cent.*

tree *noun*

- ADJ. **deciduous, evergreen** | **coniferous** | **native** | **exotic, tropical** | **ornamental** | **forest, woodland** | **big, great, high, huge, large, massive, mighty, tall** | **low, small, stunted** | **mature** | **bare, leafless** | **shady** *We sat beneath a shady tree.* | **shade** *It was a small town of dust lanes and wide shade trees.* | **hollow** | **gnarled** *a gnarled old apple tree* | **fruit** | **apple, peach, pear, etc.** | **beech, elm, oak, willow, etc.** | **Christmas**
- QUANT. **clump, copse, grove** | **avenue, belt, line**
- VERB + TREE **plant** | **climb** | **chop down, cut down, fell** *Protesters formed a human blockade to stop loggers felling trees.* | **uproot** *The floods left a tide of mud and uprooted trees.* | **prune**
- TREE + VERB **grow** | **stand** *An enormous oak tree stands at the entrance to the school.* | **line sth** *Palm trees line the broad avenue.* | **sway** *Trees swayed gently in the breeze.* | **be blown down, blow down** | **produce sth** *The tree produces tiny white blossoms.*
- TREE + NOUN **bark, branch, leaves, root, stump, trunk** | **tops** (*also* **treetops**) | **canopy** *dappled shafts of light which struggled through the tree canopy* | **cover** *Tree cover would prevent further soil erosion.* | **felling, planting** | **species** | **line** (*also* **treeline**) *Above the treeline take a grassy path leading steeply towards the summit.* | **belt** *The tree belt around the fields acts as a windbreak.* | **growth** | **rings** *The forest can be dated by studying tree rings.* | **damage** *tree damage caused by acid rain* | **nursery** *He bought tools and seeds with the aim of setting up a tree nursery.* | **surgeon**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *a bird in a tree* **on a/the ~** *fruit on a tree* **under a ~** *We sat under a tree, in the shade.* **up a/the ~** *The cat got stuck up a tree.*

trek *noun*

- ADJ. **long, marathon** | **100-kilometre, 20-mile, etc.** | **3-day, 10-hour, etc.** | **arduous, hard**
- VERB + TREK **go on, make, take** *The family made the long trek west in 1890.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~**

tremble *verb*

- ADV. **badly, violently** | **helplessly, involuntarily, uncontrollably** | **a little, slightly** | **inside**
- VERB + TREMBLE **begin to, start to** *I began to tremble uncontrollably.* | **make sb** *The thought made him tremble inside.*
- PREP. **at** *She trembled at the thought of going back through those prison doors.* **with** *trembling with anger*
- PHRASES **tremble all over, tremble from head to foot/toe, tremble like a leaf**

tremor *noun*

1 small earthquake

- ADJ. **minor, slight** | **severe** | **earth**

2 shaking movement

- ADJ. **faint, slight, small, tiny** *He felt a tiny tremor of excitement as he glimpsed the city lights.* | **violent** | **uncontrollable** | **nervous** | **icy**
- VERB + TREMOR **send** *Her expression sent an icy tremor through him.* | **feel** *She felt a tremor run down her back when she saw him.* | **control** *He couldn't control the tremor in his voice.*
- TREMOR + VERB **run** *A tremor ran through the audience.* | **shake sb/sth** *An uncontrollable tremor shook his mouth.*
- PREP. **with/without a ~** *He managed to make his short speech without a tremor.* | **~ of** *a tremor of fear*

trench *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, narrow, shallow** | **muddy** | **defensive** | **enemy** | **communication, front-line**
- VERB + TRENCH **dig**
- TRENCH + NOUN **warfare**
- PREP. **in the ~** *life in the trenches in the First World War*

trend *noun*

- ADJ. **strong** | **consistent, constant, steady** | **accelerating, growing, increasing** | **underlying** *Despite this month's disappointing figures, the underlying trend is healthy.* | **dominant, main, major, prevailing** | **gradual** | **clear, marked** | **general** | **apparent, discernible** | **global, national, international, universal, worldwide** | **wider** *The increase in crime in London was just part of a wider trend.* | **positive, upward** | **downward, negative** | **contrary, opposite** | **healthy, welcome** | **adverse, dangerous, disturbing, unfortunate, worrying** | **fashion** | **demographic, population** | **cultural, social** | **evolutionary, historical** | **economic, market** | **growth, inflationary** *The latest figures show a clear growth trend in the service sector.*
- VERB + TREND **begin, create, set, start** *In the 1960s, Britain set the fashion trends.* | **continue** | **follow** *We are following the American trend towards more flexible working conditions.* | **reinforce** | **buck, counteract, go against** *efforts to buck the current downward trend in sales* | **reverse** | **halt** | **detect, notice** | **indicate, reflect, show, suggest** *The data indicates a trend towards earlier retirement.*
- TREND + VERB **develop, emerge** | **continue** | **indicate sth, reflect sth, suggest sth** *Current trends suggest that car traffic will continue to grow.* | **grow**
- PREP. **~ away from** *a trend away from narrow specialization* **~ for** *A trend for romance and nostalgia has emerged.* **~ in** *future trends in the volume of employment* **~ towards** *the trend towards privatization*

trial *noun*

1 in a court of law

- ADJ. **fair** *The men claim they did not receive a fair trial.* | **unfair** | **full** | **criminal** | **fraud, murder, rape** | **jury** | **crown court, high court, supreme court** | **civil** | **public** | **show** *A series of show trials of former senior officials of the ousted regime took place.* | **summary** *The rebels were brutally executed after summary trials.* | **controversial, notorious, sensational**
- VERB + TRIAL **come to, face, go on, go to, stand** *He never came to trial for the robbery.* ◇ *She died before the*

case came to trial. ◇ *A man has gone on trial accused of murdering his girlfriend.* | **bring sb to, commit sb for, put sb on** *Four people had been arrested and committed for trial.* | **await** *He is in prison awaiting trial on drugs charges.* | **attend** *As a journalist he attended every murder trial of note.* | **order** *The judge ordered a new trial on the grounds that evidence had been withheld.* | **adjourn** | **halt, stop** *The judge halted the trial when it emerged witnesses had been threatened.* | **tell** (in a news report) *Murder trial told of horrific attack.*

- TRIAL + VERB **proceed, take place** | **begin, open** | **continue, resume** | **collapse** *The trial collapsed after a key prosecution witness admitted lying.*
- TRIAL + NOUN **court, judge, jury, lawyer** | **verdict** | **procedure, proceedings, process**
- PREP. **at the ~** *More than a hundred witnesses gave evidence at the trial.* **during the ~** *The letters that were shown during his trial turned out to be forgeries.* **on ~** *She is presently on trial at the Old Bailey.* **without ~** *Opposition leaders had been jailed without trial.* | **~ by** *The president faces trial by television tonight when he takes part in a live debate.* **~ for** *She faces trial for murder.* **~ over** *Three people are to stand trial over the deaths of a young couple.*

2 act of testing sb/sth

- ADJ. **clinical, experimental, field** *If clinical trials are successful the drug could be on the market early next year.* | **full-scale, large-scale** | **controlled, double-blind, randomized** | **free, home** *We've got this vacuum cleaner on ten days' free trial.* | **speed** | **Olympic, rowing, soccer, etc.**
- VERB + TRIAL **carry out, conduct** | **take part in** | **have** *He had a trial with Chelsea when he was young.*
- TRIAL + VERB **show sth** *The trial showed a dramatic reduction in side effects.*
- TRIAL + NOUN **period** *She agreed to employ me for a trial period.* | **run** *They are treating the trip as a trial run for their 500-mile sponsored ride later this month.* | **data, results** | **project, scheme** | **game** | **separation** *The couple agreed on a trial separation.*
- PREP. **under ~** *A new stocktaking system is currently under trial at the supermarket.*
- PHRASES **on a trial basis** *The new system will be introduced on a trial basis.* **trial and error** *We discovered the ideal mix of paint by trial and error.* **a trial of strength** *The dispute was regarded as a trial of strength by the unions.*

3 experience/person that causes difficulties

- ADJ. **sore** *She was a sore trial to her family at times.*
- PREP. **~to**
- PHRASES **trials and tribulations** *the trials and tribulations of married life*

triangle *noun*

1 shape

- ADJ. **equilateral, isosceles, right-angled, scalene**
- VERB + TRIANGLE **construct** (*technical*), **draw** *Use your protractor to construct an equilateral triangle.* | **form** | **cut sth into** *I cut the sandwiches into triangles.*
- PHRASES **the apex of a triangle**

2 musical instrument

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

tribe *noun*

- ADJ. **aboriginal, indigenous, native** | **desert, forest, hill** | **nomadic** | **backward, primitive** | **barbaric, hostile, warring**
- VERB + TRIBE **belong to**
- PHRASES **a member of a tribe**

tribunal *noun*

- ADJ. **independent** | **international, local, village** | **higher, inferior** | **industrial, military, transport, war crimes** | **appeal/appeals, appellate, arbitral, arbitration, complaints, disciplinary, judicial**
- VERB + TRIBUNAL **set up** *A war crimes tribunal was set up to prosecute those charged with atrocities.* | **go to** *The dismissed workers decided to go to a tribunal.* | **apply to** | **refer sth to** *The case was referred to an industrial tribunal.* | **appear before/at** | **tell** *She told the tribunal that she was a victim of sex discrimination.*
- TRIBUNAL + VERB **be in session, hold a session** *The tribunal held its first session later that month.* | **hear sth** | **conclude sth, decide sth, find sth** *The tribunal found for her employers* (= judged that they were right). | **settle sth** *The dispute was settled by a tribunal.* | **order sth, rule sth** | **dismiss sth**
- TRIBUNAL + NOUN **decision** | **hearing** | **procedure, proceedings** | **representation** | **chairman, member**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *The police gave evidence at the tribunal.* **before a/the ~** *No legal aid was available to cover representation before tribunals.* **by ~** *The fee for the player will be decided by tribunal.*

tributary *noun*

- TRIBUTARY + VERB **feed sth** *The Thames is fed by several small tributaries.*

tribute *noun*

1 sth you say/do to show you respect/admire sb/sth

- ADJ. **anniversary, birthday, centenary** | **final, last** | **fitting** | **lasting** | **affectionate, emotional, moving, warm** | **generous, glowing, handsome, special** | **silent** *Thousands of people stood in silent tribute to the dead president.* | **floral** *Floral tributes were piled up outside the church.*
- VERB + TRIBUTE **pay** *The couple paid tribute to the helicopter crew who rescued them.* | **lead** *The prime minister led the tributes to 'a great statesman and a decent man'.*
- TRIBUTE + VERB **flood in** *Tributes flooded in when her death was announced.*
- TRIBUTE + NOUN **album, concert**

2 sign of how good sb/sth is

- ADJ. **great, remarkable**
- PREP. **~to** *The bridge is a remarkable tribute to the skill of the Victorian railway engineers.*

trick *noun*

1 deception

- ADJ. **cheap, dirty, knavish, mean, nasty, rotten** *The party chairman accused the opposition of dirty tricks in their election campaign.* | **stupid** | **funny** | **little** | **con/confidence**
- VERB + TRICK **play, pull, try, use, work** *We decided to play a little trick on the teacher.* | **fall for** *She won't fall for such a stupid trick.* | **learn** *He's learnt a trick or two in his time working in the tax office.*
- TRICK + VERB **work**
- TRICK + NOUN **question**
- PHRASES **a trick of the light** *A trick of the light made it look like she had a moustache.*

2 best way of doing sth

- ADJ. **special** | **useful**
- PREP. **~ of** *the trick of getting out red wine stains* **~ to** *There's no trick to it—you just need lots of practice.*
- PHRASES **the trick is to …** *The trick is to keep your body still and your arms relaxed.* **the tricks of the trade**

3 skilled act

- ADJ. **clever, difficult** | **card, conjuring, disappearing, magic** | **party**
- VERB + TRICK **do, perform** | **learn** | **teach**
- TRICK + VERB **work**
- TRICK + NOUN **photography** | **ending**

trickle *noun*

- ADJ. **small, thin | constant, steady** *a constant trickle of water* | **slow | mere** *The flood of offers of help had dwindled to a mere trickle.*
- VERB + TRICKLE **dwindle to, slow to**
- PREP. **~of** *a trickle of blood*

trigger *noun*

- VERB + TRIGGER **pull, squeeze | tighten on** *Her finger tightened on the trigger as she heard footsteps approaching.*
- TRIGGER + NOUN **finger**
- PHRASES **have your finger on the trigger** (= to be ready to shoot)

trim *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, neatly** *his neatly trimmed moustache* | **away, off** *Trim away the lower leaves.* | **into** *trimming the bush into a heart shape*
- PHRASES **get/have your hair trimmed**

trip *noun*

- ADJ. **extended, long | brief, little, quick, short | day, overnight, weekend** *We went on a day trip to the seaside.* | **frequent, occasional, rare, regular** *He makes frequent trips to Poland.* | **annual, weekly, etc. | forthcoming | fantastic, good, great, nice, pleasant, successful | memorable | abortive, fruitless | successful | return, round** *From London to Oxford and back is a round trip of over a hundred miles.* | **foreign, overseas | round-the-world, world | European, Japan, etc. | boat, coach, cycle, etc. | business, fishing, pleasure, shopping, sightseeing | school** *a school trip to the Science Museum* | **field** *a geography field trip to study a limestone landscape* | **study**
- VERB + TRIP **be (away) on, go on, make, take** *She's away on a business trip.* ◇ *From here visitors can take a boat trip along the coast to Lundy Island.* | **have** *Did you have a good trip?* | **come back from, return from | be back from** *He's just back from a trip to New York.* | **arrange, organize, plan | book | cancel | extend | cut short** *I had to cut short my trip when my wallet was stolen.* | **enjoy** *Enjoy your trip!*
- PREP. **~by** *a five-minute trip by taxi* **~to** *a trip to Tokyo*
- PHRASES **a trip abroad** *My last trip abroad was two years ago.* **the trip home** *The trip home took us five hours!* **the trip of a lifetime** *They saved for years for their trip of a lifetime to Hawaii.*

trip *verb*

1 knock your foot on sth and fall

- ADV. **almost, nearly | over, up** *One of the boys tripped over and crashed into a tree.* ◇ *Be careful or you'll trip up.*
- PREP. **on** *She tripped on the loose stones.* **over** *I nearly tripped over the cat.*
- PHRASES **trip and fall** *Don't leave toys on stairs where someone could trip and fall.*

2 walk lightly

- ADV. **lightly | out**
- PREP. **along** *tripping along the path* **down** *She came tripping lightly down the stairs.* **up**
- PHRASES **come tripping**

triple *verb*

⇨ See TREBLE

triumph *noun*

- ADJ. **great, major, remarkable, resounding | little, minor | final, ultimate | latest, new** *Hollywood's favourite actor was modest about his latest triumph.* | **diplomatic, election, electoral, military, political | personal**
- VERB + TRIUMPH **score** *The union scored a triumph in negotiating a minimum wage within the industry.* | **hail sth as, see sth as** *They hailed the signing of the agreement as a major diplomatic triumph.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The leading runner raised his arms in triumph.* | **~against** *their recent triumph against Brazil* ◇ *triumph against seemingly insuperable odds* **~for** *The match was a personal triumph for Rivaldo.* **~in** *their triumph in the general election* **~over** *Her Wimbledon victory was hailed as a triumph over adversity.*
- PHRASES **a moment of triumph, a sense of triumph**

triumph *verb*

- ADV. **eventually, finally, ultimately** *She was confident that she would ultimately triumph over adversity.*
- PREP. **over**

triumphant *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | emerge, return** *The Democrats have emerged triumphant from the political crisis.*
- ADV. **positively** *There was a positively triumphant note in her voice.* | **almost | ultimately** *Hers is a moving and ultimately triumphant story.*

trivial *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as**
- ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, completely | almost | a bit, comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively | essentially** *making a few essentially trivial changes* | **apparently, seemingly** *Apparently trivial clues may turn out to be quite important.*

trolley *noun*

- ADJ. **laden, loaded** *The waiter was pushing a laden sweet trolley towards our table.* | **baggage, luggage, shopping | drinks, tea | dessert, sweet | hospital, supermarket**
- VERB + TROLLEY **load, pile** *Passengers with trolleys piled high with luggage waited at the check-in desk.* | **push, wheel**
- TROLLEY + NOUN **service** *On many trains, refreshments are provided by a trolley service.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *They brought breakfast to the room on a trolley.*

trombone *noun*

- ADJ. **muted | bass, tenor | slide**

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

troops *noun*

- ADJ. **crack, elite | additional, extra | armed** *a division of up to 6 000 heavily armed troops* | **allied, government, loyal** *troops loyal to the government* | **enemy, foreign, rebel | auxiliary, paramilitary, regular | combat, fighting | peacekeeping, security | airborne, ground | border, front-line, garrison**
- VERB + TROOPS **deploy, mass, send (in)** *They are massing troops on the border.* ◇ *The UN is sending peacekeeping troops into the trouble spot.* | **provide (sb with), supply (sb with)** *The British Army has provided troops for the UN all over the world.* | **withdraw | command, lead, order** *He ordered troops to shoot to kill if attacked.* | **call in | quarter, station** *Five hundred troops were quartered in a village just behind the front line.* | **transport | rally | train**
- TROOPS + VERB **fight (sb), kill sb | be based, be positioned, be posted, be stationed** *troops based in West*

Germany | **advance, march, move in, move into sth** *Allied troops were advancing on the capital.* | **arrive, cross (into) sth, enter sth, land, reach sth** *Russian troops crossed into Austrian territory.* | **mass** *Government troops have massed on the northern border.* | **guard sth, patrol sth** *troops patrolling the border* | **occupy sth** | **attack (sb), invade (sth), overrun sth, storm sth, surround sth** *Rebel troops stormed the presidential palace.* | **fire on sb/sth, open fire, shoot sb** | **pull out, withdraw**

- TROOP + NOUN **deployment, levels, numbers, presence** *Various figures for US troop presence in Europe were quoted.* | **reductions** | **movements** | **withdrawal** | **reinforcements** | **carrier, ship, train, transport** | **commander**
- PHRASES **the deployment of troops, the withdrawal of troops**

trophy *noun*

- ADJ. **major** | **coveted, prestigious, prized** | **quiz, racing, sporting, swimming, etc.** | **championship**
- VERB + TROPHY **lift, pick up, receive, take, win** *Britain has not lifted the trophy since it last hosted the event.* | **award, present** | **defend** *Portugal will be defending the trophy they won last year.*
- TROPHY + NOUN **cabinet** | **winner**
- PREP. **~for** *He picked up a trophy for best news editor.*

trot *noun* a trot

- ADJ. **brisk, fast, spanking** | **gentle**
- VERB + TROT **break into** *When the horses reached the field they broke into a brisk trot.* | **slow to**
- PREP. **at a~** *We set off at a fast trot.* **into a~** *He kicked his horse into a trot.*

trot *verb*

- ADV. **briskly, quickly** | **happily** | **obediently** *Anne trotted obediently beside her mother.* | **across, along, off, over** *He trotted off to greet the other guests.*
- PREP. **down, up** *She trotted quickly down the stairs.*

trouble *noun*

1 problems

- ADJ. **bad, big, deep, desperate, real, serious** *The company is in desperate trouble financially.* | **endless** | **domestic, family, marital** | **financial, money** | **political** | **back, heart, tummy, etc.** | **boyfriend, girl, man, etc.** *He was obviously upset, and muttered something about girlfriend trouble.* | **engine**
- VERB + TROUBLE **mean, spell** *She knew that a hygiene inspection could spell trouble for her restaurant.* | **have, suffer from** *He has had back trouble since changing jobs.* | **get (yourself) into, run into** *The firm soon ran into financial trouble.* | **keep out of, stay out of** | **pour out** *She poured out all her troubles to her mother.* | **cause, lead to** *The printer's causing trouble again.* | **avoid** | **forget, put behind you** *He put his past troubles behind him and built up a successful new career.*
- TROUBLE + VERB **come** *Trouble often comes when you're least expecting it.*
- PREP. **in ~** *When she saw the teacher coming towards her she knew she was in big trouble.* | **~ for** *He got into trouble for not doing his homework.* **~with** *I've had endless trouble with my car.* ◇ *He is in trouble with the law again.*
- PHRASES **a cause/source of trouble, a history of … trouble** *She has a history of back trouble.* **in times of trouble** *In times of trouble she always turns to her mum.* **trouble ahead** *I can see trouble ahead.*

2 arguing/violence

- ADJ. **crowd**
- VERB + TROUBLE **cause, make** *He had a reputation for making trouble in the classroom.* | **be asking for, be looking for, court, stir up** *He was asking for trouble when he insulted their country.* ◇ *Fans wandered the town after the match looking for trouble.*
- TROUBLE + VERB **be brewing** *There was trouble brewing among the workforce.* | **blow up, flare (up)** *Trouble blew up when the gang was refused entry to a nightclub.*
- TROUBLE + NOUN **spot** *Extra journalists have been sent to the main trouble spots.*
- PREP. **~between** *trouble between the teachers*

3 extra work

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great** *They went to enormous trouble to make her stay a pleasant one.*
- VERB + TROUBLE **bring (sb), cause (sb), give sb, make, put sb to** *I don't want to make trouble for her.* ◇ *I don't want to put you to any trouble.* | **go to, take** *We took the trouble to plan our route in advance.* | **be worth** *Do you think it's worth the trouble of booking seats in advance?* | **save sb** *Why don't we bring a pizza to save you the trouble of cooking?* | **thank sb for** *Thank you very much for all your trouble.*
- PHRASES **be more trouble than it's worth** *Growing your own vegetables is more trouble than it's worth.*

trouble *verb*

- ADV. **deeply, greatly** *This latest news troubled him deeply.* | **hardly, scarcely**
- PHRASES **be troubled with sth** *He has been troubled with a knee injury.*

troubled *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look**
- ADV. **deeply, greatly, particularly, very** | **vaguely** *She still felt vaguely troubled by it all.* | **financially** *financially troubled firms*
- PREP. **at/by** *He was deeply troubled by the news.*

trough *noun*

1 container for animal feed/water

- ADJ. **drinking, feeding** | **water** | **cattle, horse, pig**

2 low point

- ADJ. **deep**
- VERB + TROUGH **fall to, reach** *Inflation fell to a trough of 3.3%.*
- PHRASES **from peak to trough** *The stock market fell by 48% from peak to trough.* **the peaks and troughs** *the peaks and troughs of economic cycles*

trousers *noun*

- ADJ. **long** | **short** *I was still in short trousers* (= still only a boy) *at the time.* | **baggy** | **tight** | **bell-bottom, bootleg, drainpipe, flared** | **pyjama**
- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + TROUSERS **pull on, pull up** | **drop, pull down** *He dropped his trousers in a rude gesture.*
- TROUSER + NOUN **bottoms, leg, pocket** *He tucked his trouser bottoms into his socks.*
- PREP. **in ~** *He disapproves of women in trousers.*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

trout *noun*

- ADJ. **fresh** | **wild** | **farmed** | **river, sea** | **smoked** | **brown, rainbow, salmon**
- VERB + TROUT **eat, have** | **bake, cook, fry, grill** | **catch, fish for, land, tickle** | **farm**
- TROUT + NOUN **fishing** | **farm, fishery** | **stream**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

truancy *noun*

- ADJ. **persistent**

- VERB + TRUANCY **combat, tackle** *measures to combat persistent truancy in our schools* | **reduce** | **condone** *parents who condone their children's truancy*
- TRUANCY + NOUN **level, rate**

truant *noun*

- ADJ. **persistent** | **school**
- VERB + TRUANT **play** *She often played truant and wrote her own sick notes.*
- TRUANT + NOUN **officer**

truce *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, temporary** *A temporary truce had been reached earlier that year.* | **permanent** | **three-day, week-long, etc.** | **fragile, uneasy** | **electoral, party, political**
- VERB + TRUCE **call, declare, offer, propose** *The guerrillas have called a one-month truce.* | **agree (to/on), conclude, make, negotiate, reach** *The priest helped to negotiate a truce between the warring sides.* | **maintain** | **break, violate**
- TRUCE + VERB **hold, last, prevail** | **collapse** *The two-day truce collapsed in intense shellfire.* | **expire, lapse** *They renewed the war as soon as the truce expired.*
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *during a wartime electoral truce* | **~ among/between** *An uneasy truce prevailed between them at dinner.* **~ with** *the fragile truce with France*
- PHRASES **a flag of truce**

truck *noun*

1 large heavy vehicle
- ADJ. **big, heavy** | **articulated, open** | **refrigerated** | **ten-ton, etc.** | **delivery, pick-up** | **farm** | **army, military** | **garbage, refuse** | **breakdown, dumper, fork-lift**
- QUANT. **convoy**
- VERB + TRUCK **drive** | **park** | **load, unload**
- TRUCK + VERB **rumble** *A convoy of heavy trucks rumbled past..* | **carry sth** *a truck carrying sacks of vegetables*
- TRUCK + NOUN **driver** | **load** *a truck load of grain*

2 open railway wagon
- ADJ. **railway** | **cattle, coal, goods**
- VERB + TRUCK **pull**

trudge *verb*

- ADV. **slowly** *trudging slowly back to the office* | **wearily** *He trudged wearily on down the road.* | **along, back, home, off, on** *trudging along in silence*
- PREP. **across, along, around, down, through, up** *We trudged slowly through the fields.*

true *adj.*

1 right or correct
- VERBS **be, ring, seem, sound** *Her explanation doesn't ring quite true.* | **come** *All her wishes came true.* ◇ *It was like a dream come true.* | **remain**
- ADV. **particularly, very** *This is particularly true of older women.* | **absolutely, perfectly, quite** *It's perfectly true that I didn't help much, but I was busy.* | **certainly** *While this is certainly true for some, it's not true for others.* | **by no means, far from, not at all** *This degree of inequality was by no means true of all Victorian marriages.* ◇ *'That's not true at all,' he said firmly.* | **hardly, not completely, not entirely, not quite, not strictly, scarcely** *It's hardly true to call cleaning windows a 'profession'.* ◇ *That's not strictly true, I'm afraid.* | **almost, more or less, pretty well** *The story is more or less true.* | **objectively**

2 faithful
- VERBS **be** | **remain, stay**
- ADV. **absolutely**
- PREP. **to** *She stayed true to her principles.*

trump *noun*

- TRUMP + NOUN **card** (*often figurative*) *Vienna's trump cards include concerts in the palaces where Mozart made music.* | **suit**

⇨ Note at CARD

trumpet *noun*

- ADJ. **muted** | **B♭, C, E♭, etc.**
- VERB + TRUMPET **blow**
- TRUMPET + VERB **blare, sound**
- TRUMPET + NOUN **blast, call, fanfare**
- PHRASES **a blast of the trumpet** *the shrill blast of a trumpet* **a fanfare/flourish of trumpets** *A wreath was laid on the monument to a fanfare of trumpets.*

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

truncheon *noun*

- ADJ. **rubber**
- VERB + TRUNCHEON **be armed with, carry** | **draw** | **beat sb with** *Some of the prisoners were beaten about the head with rubber truncheons.*

trunk *noun*

1 part of a tree
- ADJ. **thick** | **gnarled** | **fallen** | **rotting** | **tree**

2 trunks for swimming
- ADJ. **bathing, swimming**
- QUANT. **pair** *I need a new pair of swimming trunks.*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

3 strong box with a lid
- ADJ. **old** | **tin** | **steamer**
- VERB + TRUNK **pack, unpack**
- PREP. **in a/the ~**

trust *noun*

1 relying on sb/sth
- ADJ. **great** *They have placed great trust in him as a negotiator.* | **absolute, complete** | **blind, implicit** *They followed the instructions in blind trust that all would turn out well.* | **basic** | **mutual** | **sacred** *They accepted the responsibility as a sacred trust* (= sth that had been trusted to them). | **fragile** *the fragile trust that existed between them* | **misplaced** | **public** *the need to restore public trust*
- VERB + TRUST **have** *We have absolute trust in the teachers.* ◇ *Does the scheme have the trust and cooperation of the workers?* | **place, put** | **build (up), develop** | **earn, gain, win** | **abuse, betray** *He claimed the government had betrayed the trust of the British people.* | **lose** | **restore** | **be based on** *a relationship based on trust*
- TRUST + VERB **exist**
- PREP. **~ between** *efforts to promote mutual trust between nations* **~ in** *His trust in them was misplaced.*
- PHRASES **a breach of trust, a lack of trust, a position of trust** *As a teacher, you are in a position of trust.*

2 financial arrangement
- ADJ. **independent, self-governing** | **offshore, overseas** | **investment** | **unit** *Investing in a unit trust reduces risks for small investors.* | **charitable, family, hospital**
- VERB + TRUST **hold sth in/on, keep sth in** *The proceeds will be held in trust for the children until they are eighteen.* | **create, establish, set up** *Wealthy people can set up overseas trusts for their children.* | **invest in** | **administer, run**
- TRUST + NOUN **account, assets, fund** | **deed** | **status** | **manager** | **beneficiary, holder**
- PREP. **in ~** *His father put the money in trust for him until he was 21.* | **~ for** *the Cecil Houses Trust for old people*

trust *verb*

- ADV. **implicitly** *I trust you implicitly.* | **completely,**

fully | **not entirely, not quite, not really** *You can never entirely trust even a 'tame' leopard.*

• VERB + TRUST **can/could** *I knew I could trust John.* | **be prepared to, be willing to** | **be reluctant to** *I was reluctant to trust the evidence of my senses.*

• PREP. **to** *I stumbled along in the dark, trusting to luck to find the right door.* **with** *I'd trust her with my life.*

• PHRASES **not to be trusted** *He is not to be trusted with other people's money.* **tried and trusted** *tried and trusted techniques*

trustee *noun*

• ADJ. **joint** *They act as joint trustees of the fund.* | **sole** | **independent** | **public** | **professional**

• VERB + TRUSTEE **act as, be, serve as** | **appoint, appoint sb (as)** | **remove (sb as)** | **resign as**

• PREP. **~ for** *They hold the land as trustees for the infant.*

• PHRASES **a board of trustees**

truth *noun*

1 what is true

• ADJ. **absolute, gospel** (*informal*), **honest** (*informal*), **real** *She takes everything she reads in the paper as gospel truth.* | **full, whole** *It still doesn't make sense to me—I don't think he's told us the whole truth.* | **exact, literal** | **naked, plain, simple** *The simple truth is he's lost his job.* | **underlying** | **awful, bitter, cruel, dreadful, hard, harsh, horrible, horrid, painful, sad, shocking, terrible, unpalatable, unpleasant, unwelcome** *the shocking truth about heroin addiction among the young* ◇ *The sad truth is he never loved her.* | **objective** | **empirical, historical, moral, poetic, psychological, religious, scientific, spiritual** *It's a good film but contains little historical truth.* | **divine**

• QUANT. **element, grain** *There may have been a grain of truth in what he said.*

• VERB + TRUTH **know** *So now you know the truth.* ◇ *If the truth be known, I was afraid to tell anyone.* | **admit, speak, tell (sb)** *He was reminded of his duty to speak the truth when questioned in court.* ◇ *I'm sure she's telling the truth.* ◇ *To tell you the truth, I'm rather dreading his return.* | **establish, discover, find out, get at, learn, reveal, uncover** *She was determined to discover the truth about her neighbours.* ◇ *The journalist protested that he was only trying to get at the truth.* | **guess** | **accept, acknowledge, face (up to)** | **doubt** *The police doubt the truth of his statement.* | **conceal, cover up, hide, suppress** *You've been hiding the truth from me!*

• TRUTH + VERB **be, lie** *We are examining the matter to see where the truth lies.* | **come out, emerge** *Towards the end of the letter the cruel truth emerged.* | **dawn on sb** *The awful truth suddenly dawned on her.*

• PREP. **in ~** *She laughed and chatted but was, in truth* (= in fact), *not having much fun.* | **~ about** *finding out the truth about her husband* **~ behind** *What's the truth behind all the gossip?* **~ in** *There is no truth in the rumour.*

• PHRASES **be economical with the truth** (= not to tell the whole truth), **nothing could be further from the truth** *I know you think she's mean, but nothing could be further from the truth.* **the quest/search for (the) truth, a ring of truth** *His explanation has a ring of truth to it.* **a seeker after truth** (*literary*) *seekers after divine truth* **the truth of the matter** *The truth of the matter is we can't afford to keep all the staff on.* **the truth will out** (*saying*) (= People will find out the true facts of a situation even if you try to keep them secret.)

2 fact that is true

• ADJ. **basic, central, common, essential, eternal, fundamental, general, great, important, profound, simple, ultimate, universal** *in search of the eternal truths of life* | **ancient** | **obvious, self-evident, undeniable** *We hold these truths to be self-evident …* | **underlying** | **half, partial** *His evidence was a blend of smears, half truths and downright lies.* | **harsh, home, painful, unpalatable, unpleasant, unwelcome** *It's time we told him a few home truths about sharing a house.* | **necessary** | **moral, philosophical, scientific, spiritual** | **divine**

• VERB + TRUTH **establish, reveal, uncover** | **tell sb** | **accept, acknowledge, face up to**

• PREP. **~ about** *She was forced to face up to a few unwelcome truths about her family.*

truthful *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **very** | **absolutely, completely** | **not entirely, not quite** *I don't think you are being entirely truthful.*

• PREP. **about** *She was completely truthful about her involvement in the affair.*

try *noun*

1 attempt

• ADJ. **good, nice** *Never mind—it was a good try. Better luck next time.* | **another**

• VERB + TRY **have** *Can I have a try?* | **give sth** *It looks difficult, but let's give it a try.* | **be worth** *It may not work, but it's certainly worth a try.*

• PREP. **~ at** *She's having another try at the marathon.*

2 scoring move in rugby

• ADJ. **dazzling, excellent, good, great, splendid, superb, well-taken** | **opening** | **last-minute, late** | **decisive, winning** | **penalty** | **pushover**

• VERB + TRY **get, go over for, score** | **convert**

• PREP. **~ against** *He scored three tries against New Zealand.* **~ by/from** *an excellent try by winger Neil Lang*

⇨ Special page at SPORT

try *verb*

• ADV. **desperately, frantically, hard** *She was trying desperately to stay afloat.* ◇ *Sam was trying hard not to laugh.* | **gamely, manfully, valiantly** *trying valiantly to smile through her tears* | **clumsily** *clumsily trying to make amends* | **feebly** | **in vain, unsuccessfully, vainly**

• VERB + TRY **decide to** *I decided to try again.* | **be going to** *I hope you're not going to try and deny it.* | **be tempted to** | **be tempting to** | **let sb** *Can't you do it? Let me try.*

• PHRASES **be just/only trying to do sth** *I was just trying to help!* **give up trying** *I've given up trying to persuade her.* **try your best/hardest/utmost** *I tried my best not to laugh.*

T-shirt *noun*

• ADJ. **baggy, loose** | **long-sleeved, short-sleeved**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

tub *noun*

• ADJ. **bath** (also **bathtub**) | **hot**

• VERB + TUB **lie in, soak in** *I love soaking in a hot tub.* | **climb/get in** | **climb/get out of**

tuba *noun*

• ADJ. **muted** | **bass, tenor**

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

tube *noun*

1 long hollow pipe

• ADJ. **fine, narrow, thin** | **broad** | **hollow** | **flexible** | **closed, sealed** | **inner** (= in a bicycle tyre) | **fluorescent** (= a kind of light) | **aluminium, cardboard, copper, glass, metal, plastic, steel** | **discharge, drainage, suction** | **test** | **breathing, feeding, ventilation** | **capillary, bronchial, Fallopian, neural**

- PREP. **down a/the ~** *pouring the liquid down the tube* **in/into a/the ~** *I put the poster back into its tube.* **through a/the ~** *He gave the lamb its food through a tube.* **up a ~**

2 the tube the Underground
- ADJ. **London**
- VERB + TUBE **go on, take, travel by/on**
- TUBE + NOUN **line, station, ticket, train**
- PREP. **by ~** *I go to work by tube.* **on the ~** *I bumped into him on the tube.*

tuck *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, discreetly, neatly | gently | firmly | cosily, safely** *The children were safely tucked up in bed.* | **away, in, up** *The boys tucked their shirts in.*
- PREP. **behind** *The loos were discreetly tucked away behind a screen of trees.* **inside** *He tucked the map inside his shirt.* **into** *He tucked his trousers neatly into his boots.* **under** *She tucked the newspaper under her arm.*

Tuesday *noun*

⇨ Note at DAY

tug *noun*

- ADJ. **good, sharp** *All it needed was a good tug.* | **gentle, little, slight | quick, sudden**
- VERB + TUG **give (sth) | feel**
- PREP. **with a ~** *She started the engine with one tug of the starter rope.* | **~ at** *She felt a sharp tug at her sleeve.* **~ on** *She gave a little tug on the rope.*

tug *verb*

- ADV. **gently | hard** *He tugged harder, but it was caught fast.*
- PREP. **at** *She tugged at his arm to get his attention.* **by** *He tugged me by the sleeve.*

tuition *noun*

- ADJ. **private | individual, one-to-one, personal | daily | extra | advanced | expert** *The students get expert tuition in small groups.* | **language, music, etc.**
- VERB + TUITION **give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with) | get, have, receive**
- TUITION + NOUN **fee**
- PREP. **under sb's ~** *She had become expert in Chinese cooking under the tuition of her aunt.* | **~ for** *tuition for beginners* ◇ *extra tuition for the exams* **~ from** *He is receiving tuition from a well-known artist.* **~ in** *tuition in Italian*

tulip *noun*

- ADJ. **dwarf | early, late, mid-season**
- TULIP + NOUN **bulb | fields**

⇨ Note at FLOWER (for verbs)

tummy *noun*

1 part of the body where food is digested
- ADJ. **empty, full**
- TUMMY + VERB **rumble**
- TUMMY + NOUN **ache, bug, trouble, upset**
- PREP. **in the/your ~** *I get a fluttery feeling in my tummy before meeting new people.*

2 front part of the body below the chest
- ADJ. **bulging, fat, flat**
- VERB + TUMMY **pull in**
- TUMMY + NOUN **muscles**
- PREP. **on the/your ~**

tumour *noun*

- ADJ. **cancerous | malignant | benign | primary | brain, breast, kidney, etc.**
- VERB + TUMOUR **diagnose | remove**
- TUMOUR + NOUN **cell, tissue | formation, growth | virus**
- PREP. **~ in** *a primary tumour in the breast* **~ on** *a malignant tumour on the eyelid*

tune *noun*

- ADJ. **little** *He hummed a little tune as he washed the dishes.* | **good, nice | familiar, popular, traditional, well-known, well-loved | catchy, memorable | lively, uplifting | dance, hymn | signature, theme**
- VERB + TUNE **give sb, hum, play (sb), sing, whistle** *She gave us a tune on the piano.* | **hum/sing along with | compose, write | pick out** *The kids were picking out a popular tune on the old piano.* | **carry, hold** *He wasn't allowed in the choir because he couldn't hold a tune.*
- PHRASES **to the tune of sth** *The crowd were singing 'Give us jobs, not more cuts!' to the tune of 'Happy Birthday To You'.*

tune *verb*

1 adjust an engine/a machine
- ADV. **permanently**
- PREP. **to** *a laser that is permanently tuned to the correct frequency*
- PHRASES **finely/highly tuned** *a finely tuned engine*

2 adjust a television/radio
- ADV. **in** *Don't forget to tune in to our special election programme this evening.*
- PREP. **for, to** *I tuned to the BBC for the late news.*
- PHRASES **badly tuned** *He heard everything through a screen of interference, like on a badly tuned radio.* **stay tuned** *Stay tuned for the news.*

tunnel *noun*

- ADJ. **long, short | narrow, wide | dark | subterranean, underground | connecting, entrance, escape, service | rail, railway, road | wind** *a wind tunnel for aerodynamic experiments*
- VERB + TUNNEL **go through, use | disappear into, enter, go into** *The train disappeared into a tunnel.* | **come out of | bore, build, construct, dig, excavate** *They've built a new tunnel through the mountain.* ◇ *The initial section of tunnel had to be dug by hand.*
- TUNNEL + VERB **run** *A service tunnel runs between the two buildings.*
- TUNNEL + NOUN **mouth, roof, wall**
- PREP. **through a/the ~**
- PHRASES **a labyrinth/maze/network/system of tunnels** *The badger sett had twelve entrances to what must have been a labyrinth of tunnels.*

turf *noun*

- ADJ. **green | soft, springy | artificial | hallowed, home** (of a sports pitch) *the hallowed turf of Wembley* ◇ *the team's first success of the season on home turf*
- QUANT. **piece, sod** *primitive cottages made of sods of turf and sticks*
- VERB + TURF **cut** *They still cut turf here for fuel.* | **lay** *laying turf to create a lawn*
- TURF + NOUN **fire**

turkey *noun*

- ADJ. **lean, tender | Christmas | traditional** *the traditional turkey with all the trimmings* | **frozen | oven-ready | stuffed | roast, smoked | boned, minced**
- VERB + TURKEY **breed | raise** *We raise turkeys mainly for the Christmas market.* | **eat, have | stuff | cook, roast | baste | carve**
- TURKEY + VERB **gobble** *Turkeys make a funny gobbling sound.*

- TURKEY + NOUN **farm | breast | dinner, lunch**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

turmoil *noun*

- ADJ. **constant** *Her mind was in a state of constant turmoil.* | **emotional, inner, mental | economic, political**
- VERB + TURMOIL **cause, plunge/send/throw sb/sth into** *Her emotional life was thrown into turmoil.*
- PREP. **in ~** *He came to a stop, his chest heaving, his thoughts in turmoil.* | **~ of** *a turmoil of emotions*
- PHRASES **a state of turmoil**

turn *noun*

1 act of turning sb/sth round
- ADJ. **full, half, quarter** *a full turn of the handle to the right* | **90-degree, 180-degree, etc.** | **quick** *a quick turn of his head*
- VERB + TURN **give sth** *Give the knob a turn.*

2 change of direction
- ADJ. **left/left-hand, right/right-hand | sharp | wide | sudden | three-point** (see also **U-turn**)
- VERB + TURN **do, make, negotiate** *She stopped talking as she negotiated a particularly sharp turn.*
- PHRASES **at every turn** (*figurative*) *At every turn I met with disappointment.* **a turn to the left/right** *He made a sudden turn to the right.* **twists and turns** (*figurative*) *trying to follow all the twists and turns of the plot*

3 (*also* **turning**) bend/corner in a road
- ADJ. **next | wrong**
- VERB + TURN **take** *He took a wrong turn and ended up on the coast road.* | **miss**
- PHRASES **a turn on the left/right** *Take the next turn on the right.* **twists and turns** *a lane full of twists and turns*

4 time when you must or may do sth
- VERB + TURN **have, take** *Can I have a turn?* ◇ *I'll take a turn making the dinner—you have a rest.* ◇ *The children took turns on the swing.* | **miss** *If you can't put any cards down you have to miss a turn.* | **give sb** *Give Sarah a turn on the swing.* | **wait** *Be patient and wait your turn!* | **come to** *By the time it came to my turn to sing, I was a bag of nerves.*
- TURN + VERB **come** *When my turn finally came, I was shaking with nerves.*
- PREP. **in ~** (= one after the other) *They gave their names in turn.* **in sb's ~** *She had not been friendly to Pete and he, in his turn, was cold to her when she came to stay.* **out of ~** (= before or after your turn) *I'm writing to you out of turn because I have some very important news.*

5 change
- ADJ. **dramatic, sudden, unexpected | different, new | downward**
- VERB + TURN **take** *Her career took an unexpected turn when she moved to New York.*
- PREP. **by ~(s)** *This movie is by turn* (= alternately) *terrifying and very funny.* **on the ~** (= changing) *Our luck is on the turn.*
- PHRASES **take a turn for the better/worse** *I'm afraid Grandma has taken a turn for the worse.* **a turn of events** *In a dramatic turn of events she took control of the company into her own hands.*

turning *noun*

⇨ See TURN

turning point *noun*

- ADJ. **crucial, major, real, significant | historic** *This win could prove to be a historic turning point* (= one that will be remembered) *in the fortunes of the team.* | **historical, political** *The industrial revolution was a major historical turning point* (= a turning point in history).
- VERB + TURNING POINT **be, mark, prove (to be) | see sth as | reach** *In 1914 the world reached a turning point in its history.*
- TURNING POINT + VERB **come** *The turning point came when reinforcements arrived from the south.*
- PREP. **at a ~** *The process of disarmament is at a crucial turning point.* | **~ in**

turn-off *noun*

- ADJ. **next**
- VERB + TURN-OFF **take** *Take the next turn-off.* | **miss, overshoot** *We were chatting and overshot our turn-off.*
- PREP. **~ for** *the turn-off for Leeds*

turnout *noun*

1 number of people who vote in an election
- ADJ. **high | low, poor | electoral, voter** *Voter turnout was high at the last election.*
- PHRASES **a decline/fall in turnout, an increase in turnout**

2 number of people who go to a meeting, match, etc.
- ADJ. **big, good, large | disappointing, poor**
- VERB + TURNOUT **attract** *The concert attracted a large turnout.*

turnover *noun*

1 amount of business a company does
- ADJ. **large | low, small | company, group | aggregate, combined, total** *The combined turnover of both businesses has doubled in the last two years.* | **gross, net | annual, daily, etc. | global, worldwide | market | capital | stock**
- VERB + TURNOVER **have | record** *The company recorded a turnover of £50 million last year.* | **boost, increase | reduce**
- TURNOVER + VERB **be up | be down** *Turnover was down compared with last year's figures.* | **double, grow, increase, rise** *The firm's UK turnover increased (by) 30% to £10 million.* | **drop, fall, slip** *Turnover fell from £12 million to £11 million.* | **reach sth** *Turnover reached $2 billion in the 12 months to September.* | **exceed sth, top sth** *The company's worldwide turnover exceeds $5 billion.*
- TURNOVER + NOUN **figure, growth, rate, tax**
- PHRASES **a decline/fall in turnover, an increase/a rise in turnover**

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

2 rate at which people come and go from a job/place
- ADJ. **fast, high, rapid | low | labour, staff | population** *The inner city has a rapid population turnover.*
- VERB + TURNOVER **have**

tussle *noun*

- ADJ. **little | legal**
- VERB + TUSSLE **have** *Anna and her conscience had a little tussle.* | **be engaged in, be involved in**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He broke his leg in a tussle for the ball.* | **~ between** *a tussle between the country's parliament and government* **~ for** *Five teams are involved in the tussle for promotion.* **~ over** *a tussle over the closure of the local hospital* **~ with** *We are engaged in a legal tussle with a large pharmaceutical company.*

tutor *noun*

- ADJ. **good | experienced | professional | personal, private | senior | assistant | full-time, part-time | college, school, university | course | art, English, etc.**
- VERB + TUTOR **act as**
- PREP. **~ to** *Roger Ascham, tutor to Queen Elizabeth*

⇨ Note at JOB

tutorial *noun*

- ADJ. **group, individual**
- VERB + TUTORIAL **have** *I've got two tutorials today.* | **prepare for** | **go to** | **miss** | **give (sb)** *He gives one lecture and two tutorials a week.*
- TUTORIAL + NOUN **class, group**
- PREP. **at/during/in a/the ~** | **~ on** *a tutorial on the rise of the novel*

twang *noun*

- ADJ. **slight** | **nasal** | **American, Cockney, etc.**
- VERB + TWANG **have, speak with** *She had a slight Australian twang.* | **hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *The words came out with an Irish twang to them.*

twig *noun*

- ADJ. **dry** | **bare** | **dead** | **birch, willow, etc.**
- VERB + TWIG **break (off), snap (off)** *He broke off a twig from a willow tree and used it to shoo the flies away.*
- TWIG + VERB **break, snap** *The sharp sound of a twig snapping scared the badger away.*

twilight *noun*

- ADJ. **gathering, thickening**
- TWILIGHT + NOUN **world** *(figurative) the twilight world of the occult* | **zone** *(figurative) the twilight zone between living and merely existing* | **years** *(figurative) a forgotten man who spent his twilight years alone*
- PREP. **at ~, in/into the ~** *She walked away into the thickening twilight.*
- PHRASES **in the twilight of your career/life**

twin *noun*

- ADJ. **identical** | **fraternal, non-identical** | **conjoined, Siamese**
- QUANT. **pair** *a pair of identical twins*
- VERB + TWIN **expect** | **give birth to, have**
- TWIN + NOUN **boys, girls** *She had twin girls.* | **daughters, sons** | **brother, sister**

twinge *noun*

- ADJ. **sharp** | **little, slight** | **sudden**
- VERB + TWINGE **experience, feel, get, suffer** | **give sb** *The letter still gives him a twinge when he thinks of it.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a twinge of guilt*

twinkle *noun*

- ADJ. **mischievous, wicked**
- PHRASES **a twinkle in sb's eye**

twist *noun*

1 act of twisting sth

- ADJ. **little, slight** | **quick, sharp** | **wry**
- VERB + TWIST **give sth** *Give the cap another twist—it's not on properly.*
- PREP. **~ of** *He finished him off with a quick twist of the knife.* **~ to** *a wry twist to her mouth*

2 change/development

- ADJ. **further, new** | **final, latest** *the latest twist in the saga of high-level corruption* | **bizarre, curious, dramatic, interesting, ironic, strange, unexpected** | **distinctive** | **cruel, vicious** *a cruel twist of fate* | **plot**
- VERB + TWIST **give sth** *The writer takes well-known fairy tales and gives them an ironic twist.* | **take** *The scandal has taken a new twist this week.*
- PREP. **in a ~, with a ~** *classic French dishes with a twist* (= with a difference) | **~ in** *a twist in the plot* **~ to** *In a bizarre twist to the evening the police came at eleven and arrested our host.*
- PHRASES **a twist in the tail** *The story has a twist in the tail—six months later she married the husband of her victim.* **a twist of fate, twists and turns** *the twists and turns in the economy*

3 in a road, river, etc.

- ADJ. **sharp**
- PREP. **~ in** *a sharp twist in the road*
- PHRASES **twists and turns** *the twists and turns of the river*

twist *verb*

- ADV. **slightly** *She twisted slightly in her chair to look up at him.* | **gently** *Gently twist off the green stalks.* | **violently** *She fired again and saw the creature twist violently.* | **bitterly, scornfully, wryly** *His mouth twisted bitterly.* | **away, off, together, up** *Her black hair was twisted up into a knot on top of her head.*
- PREP. **around/round** *I twisted the bandage round his leg.* **with** *His face was twisted with rage.*
- PHRASES **twist and turn** *The road twists and turns along the coast.* **twist (yourself) free** *He managed to twist himself free.* **twist sth out of shape** *Her mouth was twisted out of shape by grief.*

twitch *noun*

- ADJ. **nervous** | **slight** *His mouth gave a slight twitch.* | **involuntary** | **muscle, muscular**
- VERB + TWITCH **have** *He has a twitch in his right eye.* | **develop** | **give**

twitch *verb*

- ADV. **convulsively, violently** *The body twitched violently and then lay still.* | **uncontrollably** | **a little, slightly** | **nervously** *Her fingers twitched nervously.*
- PREP. **with** *His shoulders twitched with suppressed laughter.*

tycoon *noun*

- ADJ. **business, media, newspaper, property, publishing, shipping**

type *noun*

1 kind/sort

- ADJ. **distinct, well-defined** | **broad** *Two broad types of approach can be identified.* | **basic, common, conventional, standard, traditional** | **alternative** | **main, major, principal** | **diverse** | **extreme** | **personality, physical** | **hair, skin** | **blood, cell, tissue** | **product** | **habitat, rock, soil, vegetation**
- VERB + TYPE **identify** | **revert to** *The boss came back from holiday all relaxed and smiling, but now he's reverting to type.*
- PREP. **in ~** *The recession is similar in type to that of ten years ago.* **of a ~** *a country inn of a type that has all but vanished* | **~ of** *There are various types of daffodil(s).*
- PHRASES **of its type** *This exercise is the hardest of its type.* **a range/variety of types**

2 person

- ADJ. **artistic, careful, City** (= a person who works in finance in the City of London), **creative, entrepreneurial, literary, old-fashioned** *The bar was crowded with City types in suits.* ◇ *He was the old-fashioned type, well-mannered and always in a suit and tie.*
- PHRASES **true to type** *True to type, Adam turned up an hour late.* **(not) your type** *She's not really my type—she's a bit too serious.*

3 printed letters

- ADJ. **bold, heavy** | **italic** | **roman**

- VERB + TYPE **print sth in, set sth in** *Key paragraphs of the report are set in italic type.*
- PREP. **in … ~** *The important words are in bold type.*

type *verb*

- ADV. **correctly | neatly | badly | quickly | furiously** *He was sitting at his desk typing furiously.* | **out, up** *I've written the report and will type it up next week.*
- PREP. **into** *She typed the details into the computer.* **on** *This letter was typed on an electronic typewriter.*
- PHRASES **closely typed** *300 proposals and amendments covering 78 closely typed pages*

typhoon *noun*

- TYPHOON + VERB **hit sth, strike sth** *The village was hit by a typhoon.* | **damage sth, destroy sth, devastate sth** *The plantation was devastated by a typhoon.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *His home was destroyed in a typhoon.*

typical *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem | become | consider sth, regard sth as, take sth as** *You must not take this attitude as typical of English people.*
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very | absolutely, altogether, entirely, just** *That's altogether typical of Tom!* ◇ *They're going to be late? Now, isn't that just typical?* | **by no means, not necessarily** *East Anglia is by no means typical of rural Britain.* | **fairly, pretty, quite, rather**
- PREP. **of** *Julia is fairly typical of her age group.*

typing *noun*

- ADJ. **audio, touch**
- VERB + TYPING **do** *Could you do some typing for me?*
- TYPING + NOUN **error | course | skills | speed | pool** (= a group of people who share a company's typing work)

typist *noun*

- ADJ. **good | audio, copy, shorthand**

⇨ Note at JOB

tyranny *noun*

- ADJ. **petty**
- VERB + TYRANNY **be freed from, overthrow | impose** (*often figurative*) *An artist's need for money imposes the tyranny of popular taste.*
- PREP. **~ over** *her tyranny over her staff*

tyrant *noun*

- ADJ. **cruel, great | petty** *Some of the prison officers were petty tyrants.*
- VERB + TYRANT **overthrow**
- TYRANT + VERB **rule sth** *The country had long been ruled by tyrants.*
- PREP. **under a/the ~** *The kings of Sparta would not serve under the tyrants of Syracuse.*

tyre *noun*

- ADJ. **flat, punctured** *I got a flat tyre soon after setting off.* | **blown-out, burst | bald, worn | defective, illegal | spare | front | back, rear | nearside | offside | fat** *tough-looking trucks with fat tyres and reinforced springs* | **pneumatic | crossply, radial | whitewall | bicycle, car, etc.**
- QUANT. **set**
- VERB + TYRE **change, replace | inflate, pump up | deflate, let down** *Someone let the tyres down overnight as a mean joke.* | **fit, fit sth with** *This car is fitted with radial tyres.* | **blow, burst** *He was going so fast he blew a tyre.* | **patch, repair, retread** *He's patching the bike tyre that got a puncture yesterday.* | **check** *She checked the tyres and oil before setting off.* | **slash** *Vandals had slashed the tyres and broken the side mirror.*
- TYRE + VERB **deflate, go flat, get/have a puncture, puncture | blow (out), burst** *A back tyre blew after half an hour tearing along a rocky road.* | **crunch, screech, squeal** *The tyres crunched to a standstill on the gravel.* ◇ *She braked suddenly, her tyres squealing in protest.*
- TYRE + NOUN **mark, tracks | pressure | tread**
- PHRASES **a crunch/screech/squeal of tyres** *He roared up the drive with a screech of tyres.*

U u

ugly *adj.*

1 unattractive

- VERBS **be, look**
- ADV. **extremely, hideously, incredibly, really, very** *The witch was hideously ugly.* | **almost** | **pretty, quite, rather**

2 dangerous/threatening

- VERBS **be, look, sound** | **get, turn**
- ADV. **really, very** | **pretty, quite** *A fight started and things got pretty ugly.* | **potentially**

ultimatum *noun*

- VERB + ULTIMATUM **deliver, give sb, issue, present (sb with), send** *The government denied that it had presented the union with an ultimatum.* | **get, receive** | **comply with** | **ignore** | **withdraw**
- ULTIMATUM + VERB **demand sth**

umbilical cord *noun*

- VERB + UMBILICAL CORD **clamp, cut, tie**
- UMBILICAL CORD + VERB **be (twisted/wound) around sb's neck**

umbrella *noun*

- ADJ. **furled, rolled** | **beach, sun** | **golf** | **nuclear, protective** (*both figurative*) *the American nuclear umbrella over Western Europe*
- VERB + UMBRELLA **open, put up, unfurl** | **let down** *She let down her umbrella and furled it.* | **fold, furl**
- UMBRELLA + NOUN **stand** | **body, group, organization** (*all figurative*) *an umbrella group including members of opposition parties* | **heading, name, term, title, word** (*all figurative*) *'Herb' is an umbrella term covering many types of plant.*
- PREP. **under an/the ~** *She was fast asleep under a big beach umbrella.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The two sectors combined under the umbrella of the Scottish Council.*

unable *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, prove, seem** | **become** | **remain** | **find yourself, leave sb, make sb** *She found herself unable to meet his gaze.* ◇ *The accident left him unable to walk.* | **deem sth** *The road was deemed unable to cope with increased traffic.*
- ADV. **completely, quite, totally, utterly, wholly** | **increasingly** | **almost, nearly, virtually** | **apparently, seemingly** *He went on, apparently unable to stop.* | **genuinely** | **generally** | **temporarily** *Clare nodded, temporarily unable to speak.* | **still** | **constitutionally, physically** *He seemed constitutionally unable not to give his opinion on anything and everything.*
- PHRASES **unwilling or unable** *He remained silent, unwilling or unable to say what was in his mind.*

unacceptable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem** | **become** | **remain** | **make sth** *The cost of these proposed changes makes them unacceptable.* | **consider sth, deem sth, find sth, regard sth as, see sth as** *Most people would consider such risks wholly unacceptable.*
- ADV. **completely, quite, simply, totally, utterly, wholly** | **inherently** *There is nothing inherently unacceptable in these proposals.* | **morally, politically, socially** *socially unacceptable behaviour*
- PREP. **to** *Such a solution would be quite unacceptable to the majority of people.*

unaffected *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem** | **remain**
- ADV. **altogether, completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly** | **almost, virtually** | **largely** | **comparatively, relatively** | **apparently, seemingly** *She was seemingly unaffected by his presence.*
- PREP. **by** *He appeared totally unaffected by this experience.*

unanimous *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **almost, nearly, virtually**
- PREP. **about** *Doctors are unanimous about the dangers of this drug.* **in** *They were unanimous in this decision.* **on** *The experts are not unanimous on this point.*

unavoidable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem** | **become** | **make sth** *This latest incident makes his dismissal unavoidable.*
- ADV. **absolutely, quite, totally, utterly** | **almost**

unaware *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem** | **remain**
- ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly, wholly** | **almost, virtually** | **generally, largely** | **comparatively** | **apparently, seemingly** | **evidently, obviously** | **blissfully, blithely** *They remained blissfully unaware of his true intentions.*
- PREP. **of**

unbalanced *adj.*

1 rather mad

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **a little, slightly** | **mentally** *She became mentally unbalanced after the accident.*

2 not fair to all ideas or sides of sth

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **extremely, seriously, very** | **completely, wholly** *The report is completely unbalanced.* | **slightly, somewhat** *a somewhat unbalanced account of the events*

unbearable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem** | **become, get** | **make sb/sth** *His arrogance made him absolutely unbearable!* | **find sb/sth** *They found the heat unbearable.*
- ADV. **absolutely, quite** | **almost**

unbeatable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem** *The French team looks unbeatable.* | **become** | **remain** *United remain unbeatable at the top of the League.*
- ADV. **almost, virtually** *He now has an almost unbeatable lead over his rivals.*

unbelievable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound** | **become** | **find sth** *I find this quite unbelievable.*

- ADV. **really | completely, quite, totally | just, simply | almost | pretty**
- PREP. **to** *It's simply unbelievable to me.*

unbroken *adj.*

- VERBS **be | remain**
- ADV. **almost, largely, virtually** *a tradition of government involvement which remained virtually unbroken until the 1990s*

uncertain *adj.*

1 not confident
- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become**
- ADV. **deeply, very** *I feel deeply uncertain about the future.* **| a little, rather, slightly | strangely**
- PREP. **about, as to** *He seemed strangely uncertain as to how to continue.* **of** *We were rather uncertain of the direction it came from.*

2 not known exactly
- VERBS **be, look | become | remain, seem**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very | increasingly | quite, rather, somewhat | still** *Whether diet is an important factor in this illness is still uncertain.* **| inevitably, inherently** *The world is inherently uncertain.* **| notoriously** *Cost estimates are notoriously uncertain in this business.*

uncertainty *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, great | growing | continuing, lingering | economic, financial, legal, political**
- QUANT. **degree, element**
- VERB + UNCERTAINTY **cause, create, give rise to, lead to | add (to), fuel, increase** *Her comments will add to the uncertainty of the situation.* ◇ *Her comments will add uncertainty to an already complicated situation.* **| reduce | bring/put an end to, eliminate, remove, resolve | face** *They are facing some uncertainty about their jobs.*
- UNCERTAINTY + VERB **surround sth** *the uncertainty surrounding the proposed changes in the law*
- PREP. **~ about** *a feeling of uncertainty about his future* **~ as to** *There's considerable uncertainty as to whether the government's job creation strategies will work.* **~ over** *uncertainty over the safety of the drug*
- PHRASES **an area of uncertainty** *One area of uncertainty remains: who will lead the team?* **a feeling of uncertainty, a period of uncertainty**

unchanged *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look | remain, stay | leave sth**
- ADV. **completely, quite, totally | almost, practically, virtually | largely, substantially | basically, essentially, fundamentally** *The school appeared essentially unchanged since my day.* **| relatively**
- PREP. **by** *She was the only one of us unchanged by events.*

uncharacteristic *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **very | quite, totally | rather**
- PREP. **of** *The houses were totally uncharacteristic of the area.*

uncle *noun*

- ADJ. **benevolent, kindly** *The boss smiled at us all like a benevolent uncle.* **| bachelor | maternal, paternal | great** (= the brother of one of your grandparents)

uncomfortable *adj.*

1 not comfortable
- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get | make sth** *Sharp stones on the path made walking barefoot rather uncomfortable.* **| find sth** *I find these chairs incredibly uncomfortable.*
- ADV. **downright, extremely, incredibly, most, really, terribly, very | increasingly | a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather | physically**

2 feeling/causing worry/embarrassment
- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem | become, get** *He started to get a bit uncomfortable as the conversation continued.* **| make sb** *The way he looked at her made her distinctly uncomfortable.* **| find sth**
- ADV. **acutely, decidedly, deeply, distinctly, downright, extremely, really, terribly, very | increasingly | a bit, a little, rather, slightly | clearly, obviously, visibly**
- PREP. **with** *Planners seem a little uncomfortable with the current government guidelines.*

uncommon *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **very | by no means, far from, not at all** *Such attitudes were not at all uncommon thirty years ago.* **| fairly, quite, rather, relatively**

unconcerned *adj.*

- VERBS **act, appear, be, look, seem, sound** *I tried to act unconcerned.*
- ADV. **very | completely, quite, totally | relatively | apparently, seemingly**
- PREP. **about** *They appeared completely unconcerned about what they had done.* **by** *He was apparently unconcerned by his failure to gain a university place.*

unconscious *adj.*

1 in a state that is like sleep
- VERBS **appear, be, lie, look** *They found her lying unconscious on the floor.* **| become | remain | batter sb, beat sb, kick sb, knock sb, leave sb, render sb** *He was knocked unconscious by the impact.* ◇ *The attack left her unconscious.*
- ADV. **deeply | completely | almost | still**

2 **unconscious of sb/sth** not aware of sb/sth
- VERBS **appear, be, seem**
- ADV. **quite, totally** *Parents are often quite unconscious of the ways in which they influence their children.*

3 done without you being aware of it
- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **deeply | quite, totally, wholly** *These impulses are often totally unconscious.* **| largely**

unconsciousness *noun*

- ADJ. **deep**
- VERB + UNCONSCIOUSNESS **fall/lapse/sink/slip into**

uncontrollable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **completely, totally | almost, virtually** *an almost uncontrollable urge to laugh* **| apparently**

undecided *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | remain | leave sth** *The question cannot be left undecided.*
- ADV. **very | quite | still | as yet** *She is as yet undecided in which direction she wants to make her future career.*
- PREP. **about** *He is still undecided about what to do.* **as to** *They are undecided as to whether to buy a new car.* **on** *The government remains undecided on this issue.*

underestimate *noun*

- ADJ. **gross, serious** *The official figures are a gross underestimate of the true number.*
- PREP. **~of**

underestimate *verb*

- ADV. **badly, considerably, greatly, grossly, massively, seriously, substantially** *He realized that he had seriously underestimated their strength.* | **totally** | **fatally**
- VERB + UNDERESTIMATE **tend to**
- PHRASES **sth should not be underestimated** *The importance of these feelings should not be underestimated.*

undergraduate *noun*

- ADJ. **first-year, second-year, etc.** | **college, university** | **Harvard, Oxford, etc.** | **Chemistry, History, etc.**
- UNDERGRADUATE + NOUN **course, curriculum, degree, studies** | **student** | **teaching** | **level** | **grant**

underground *noun*

- ADJ. **London**
- VERB + UNDERGROUND **go on/by, take, travel on/by**
- UNDERGROUND + NOUN **station, train, tunnel** | **system** *bringing the whole underground system to a halt*
- PREP. **in the ~** *I always seem to get lost in the underground.* **on the ~** *passengers on the underground*

undergrowth *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, dense, tangled, thick**
- QUANT. **patch**
- VERB + UNDERGROWTH **clear**
- PREP. **into the ~** *The snake slithered off into the undergrowth.* **in the ~** *I noticed someone hiding in the undergrowth.* **through the ~** *I could hear him crashing through the undergrowth.*

underline *verb*

1 draw a line under a word
- ADV. **heavily** *The word 'not' was heavily underlined.*

2 emphasize sth
- ADV. **clearly** | **just, merely, only, simply** *This disaster merely underlines the need for a consistent foreign policy.* | **further**
- VERB + UNDERLINE **serve to** | **seem to** | **be intended to** *a move intended to underline US concern over the issue*
- PHRASES **underline the fact that ...**

undermine *verb*

- ADV. **greatly, radically, seriously, severely** *His position within the government has been seriously undermined.* | **completely, totally** | **somewhat** | **further** | **effectively** | **fatally** | **subtly** | **gradually, increasingly, progressively** | **eventually** | **constantly**
- VERB + UNDERMINE **threaten to** | **attempt to, seek to, try to** | **help (to), serve to, tend to** | **be likely to** | **be designed to, be intended to** *a terror attack intended to undermine the morale of citizens*

underpants *noun*

- ADJ. **men's**
- QUANT. **pair**
- PREP. **in your ~** *He sat on the examination table in his underpants.*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

understand *verb*

- ADV. **clearly, well** | **fully, perfectly, quite** *I fully understand the reason for your decision.* | **not really** *Her behaviour wounded him in a way he did not really understand.* | **adequately** | **correctly, properly** *She realized that she had never properly understood him.* | **easily, readily** *The reasons for this decision are not easily understood.* | **instinctively, intuitively** *She intuitively understood his need to be alone.*
- VERB + UNDERSTAND **be able/unable to, can/could** *I can't understand what all the fuss is about.* | **try to** | **begin to** | **be easy to** | **be difficult to, be hard to** *It is difficult to understand why he reacted in that way.* | **help (to), help sb (to)**
- PREP. **about** *We understand little about this disease.*
- PHRASES **be commonly/generally/popularly understood** *What is generally understood by 'democracy'?* **be imperfectly/incompletely/poorly understood** *The effects of these chemicals on the body are still poorly understood.* **be universally/widely understood**

understandable *adj.*

1 seeming normal and reasonable
- VERBS **be, seem** | **become**
- ADV. **very** | **completely, entirely, perfectly, quite, wholly** | **fairly**

2 easy to understand
- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **easily, readily** *Warning notices must be readily understandable.*
- PREP. **to** *The instructions must be understandable to the average user.*

understanding *noun*

1 knowledge of a subject, of how sth works, etc.
- ADJ. **complete, full** *He showed a full understanding of the sequence of events.* | **growing** | **clear, deep, good, profound, proper, sophisticated, thorough, true** *You need to read more widely to gain a proper understanding of the issue.* | **adequate, basic, broad, general, sufficient** | **limited** *She has only a limited understanding of what the job involves.* | **conceptual, critical, rational, theoretical** | **historical, musical, scientific, etc.** | **instinctive** | **common** *Some religions have a common understanding of the nature of a divine being.*
- QUANT. **level** *The students seem to have a reasonable level of understanding of how genes work.*
- VERB + UNDERSTANDING **have** | **show** | **reflect** *This change of policy reflects a growing understanding of the extent of the problem.* | **lack** | **acquire, arrive at, gain** | **give sb** | **advance, broaden, deepen, develop, enhance, enrich, improve, increase** *a book that will deepen your understanding of global warming*
- PREP. **~ about** *The book aims to give children a balanced understanding of food, farming and the environment.* **~ of**
- PHRASES **a lack of understanding**

2 intelligence
- ADJ. **human**
- VERB + UNDERSTANDING **pass** *a level of cruelty that passes human understanding*
- PREP. **beyond (your) ~** *The idea of eternity is beyond our full understanding.*

3 ability to feel sympathy and trust
- ADJ. **deeper, great** | **mutual** | **international**
- VERB + UNDERSTANDING **show** *He didn't show much understanding towards her when she lost her job.* | **bring (about), develop, lead to** *Greater contact between the two groups should lead to a better mutual understanding.* | **gain in, grow in** *After spending a month living together, they have gained in understanding of each other.* | **foster, promote, work for**
- PREP. **~ between** *The association fosters a deeper understanding between prisons and the public.*

4 informal agreement

- ADJ. **written | verbal | tacit, unspoken** *There is an unspoken understanding that Hugh will be in charge while Jane is away.*
- VERB + UNDERSTANDING **have | come to, reach** *They came to an understanding on when final payment was to be made.*
- PREP. **~ between** *an understanding between the companies to fight against the proposed tax reform* **~ on** *a tacit understanding on the need for a pay rise* | **on the ~** *I thought you gave me the book on the understanding that I could keep it.*

understatement *noun*

- ADJ. **gross** *'A little strange' is a gross understatement.*
- PHRASES **a bit of/something of an understatement, the understatement of the year** (*informal*) *To say he wasn't amused must be the understatement of the year.*

undertaking *noun*

1 piece of work/business

- ADJ. **considerable, large, major, serious | worthwhile | hazardous, risky | joint** *the first joint undertaking of the two societies* | **commercial, financial** *We have to decide if this is a worthwhile commercial undertaking.*

2 formal promise

- ADJ. **solemn | express | irrevocable | voluntary | verbal, written | contractual | government | public**
- VERB + UNDERTAKING **give (sb)** *He gave an undertaking not to leave the country before the trial.* | **seek | obtain | carry out, honour, renege on** *The factory failed to honour its undertaking to stop dumping waste into the local river.* | **sign**

undertone *noun*

- ADJ. **sinister | racist, sexual** *The article was full of racist undertones.*
- VERB + UNDERTONE **have**
- PREP. **in an ~** *'I don't think she's been told yet,' he said in an undertone.* ◇ *The couple at the next table were speaking in undertones.*

underwear *noun*

- ADJ. **long | skimpy | thermal, warm | lace, lacy | kinky, sexy | ladies', women's | men's | clean, dirty**
- QUANT. **change, set** *She packed a fresh set of underwear and her toothbrush.*
- PREP. **in your ~** *He was getting cold standing around in his underwear.*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

underworld *noun*

- ADJ. **dark, sinister** *the dark underworld of smuggling* | **criminal**
- UNDERWORLD + NOUN **figure**
- PREP. **in the ... ~** *She was a shady figure in the Dublin underworld.*

undesirable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | make sth | consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a situation which is highly undesirable* | **totally | clearly, obviously** *It is clearly undesirable for the issue to be ignored.* | **economically, politically, socially** *It was felt that the ageing of society was socially and economically undesirable.*

undignified *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become**
- ADV. **most, very | thoroughly | rather, somewhat**

undone *adj.*

1 not fastened or tied

- VERBS **be | come** *My button's come undone again.* | **get sth** *I can't get this knot undone.*

2 not done

- VERBS **be | remain | leave sth** *We left the washing-up undone and went out for the day.*

undressed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel** *She felt undressed without her hat.* | **get** *He got undressed and ready for bed.*
- ADV. **half** *He was half undressed when the doorbell rang.*

unease *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, great, growing | certain, some, vague** *She felt a vague unease.* | **general, public**
- VERB + UNEASE **feel | express, show** *They expressed their deep unease about the lack of security arrangements.* | **hide** *I smiled to hide my unease.* | **sense** *He sensed a certain unease in her.* | **cause, create**
- UNEASE + VERB **grow, rise**
- PREP. **~ about/at/over** *Many felt unease about the methods used.*
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of unease, a source of unease** *He looked in vain for the source of his unease.*

uneasy *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow** *We were starting to grow slightly uneasy.* | **remain | make sb**
- ADV. **decidedly, deeply, distinctly, extremely, profoundly, very | increasingly | a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat, vaguely | strangely**
- PREP. **about** *I felt distinctly uneasy about lending her so much money.*

unemployed *noun* **the unemployed**

- ADJ. **long-term | rural, urban**
- PREP. **among the ~** *The party's policies were popular among the unemployed.*
- PHRASES **the plight of the unemployed, the ranks of the unemployed** *He graduated with a good degree, only to join the ranks of the unemployed.*

unemployed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, be registered (as) | become | remain | leave sb, make sb** *The closure of the factory left hundreds of men unemployed.*
- ADV. **currently | newly | still | temporarily | permanently | involuntarily, voluntarily** *As I was voluntarily unemployed, I wasn't entitled to benefit.*

unemployment *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, high, huge, large-scale, mass, massive, serious, severe, widespread | low | rising | falling | long-term, permanent | short-term, temporary | recurrent, seasonal | structural | graduate, school-leaver, youth | rural, urban**
- QUANT. **level, rate**
- VERB + UNEMPLOYMENT **be faced with, face | cause, create | alleviate, bring down, cut, keep down, reduce | increase | combat, tackle**
- UNEMPLOYMENT + VERB **hit sb** *Unemployment has hit unskilled workers in particular.* | **climb, double, increase, rise, soar** *Unemployment climbed above two million.* | **decline, fall | average sth, stand at sth** *Unemployment averaged 15% across the country.* | **reach sth, touch sth** *Unemployment touched 30%.*
- UNEMPLOYMENT + NOUN **benefit, money, pay, pay-**

ments, relief | compensation, cover, insurance | data, figures, levels, numbers, percentage, rate, statistics, total | crisis, problem | blackspot *This former mining town is now an unemployment blackspot.* | **trap** *The unemployment trap exists when an unemployed person on benefit would be worse off in a low-paid job.*

• PREP. **~ among** *Unemployment among graduates is falling steadily.*

• PHRASES **a period of unemployment, a rise/an increase/a fall in unemployment**

unexpected *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **most, very** *Help came from a most unexpected quarter.* | **completely, quite, totally, wholly | not entirely** *His death was not entirely unexpected.* | **rather, somewhat** *It happened in rather unexpected circumstances.*

unfair *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem | consider sth, regard sth as, think sth** *She thought it most unfair that girls were not allowed to take part.*

• ADV. **extremely, grossly, terribly, very** *I thought the decision was grossly unfair.* | **quite, totally, utterly, wholly | a bit, a little, pretty, rather, slightly | blatantly, demonstrably, patently**

• PREP. **to** *He was terribly unfair to the younger children.*

unfamiliar *adj.*

1 not well-known to you

• VERBS **be, feel, look, sound**

• ADV. **very | completely, quite, totally | not entirely | slightly**

• PREP. **to** *The language was completely unfamiliar to me.*

2 not having knowledge or experience of sth

• VERBS **appear, be, seem**

• ADV. **very | completely, quite | relatively**

• PREP. **with** *We were quite unfamiliar with the town.*

unfashionable *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become | remain**

• ADV. **extremely, terribly, very | completely | rather, relatively** *She lived in a rather unfashionable part of London.*

unfit *adj.*

1 unsuitable for sth/not capable of sth

• VERBS **be, look | become | make sb/sth, render sb/sth** *His conduct made him unfit to act as director of a company.* | **consider sb/sth, declare sb/sth, deem sb/sth, find sb/sth** *The house was declared quite unfit for human habitation.*

• ADV. **completely, quite, totally, wholly | medically, mentally, physically**

• PREP. **for** *completely unfit for our purposes* ◇ *She was found unfit for work.*

2 not in good physical health

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become**

• ADV. **very | completely, quite | slightly**

unforgettable *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **quite, totally, truly** *It was a truly unforgettable experience.* | **pretty**

unfortunate *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem | consider sb/sth**

• ADV. **extremely, most, particularly, singularly, very** *It was a most unfortunate choice of expression.* | **a bit, a little, rather, slightly**

unfounded *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove**

• ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | not altogether** *These claims were not altogether unfounded.* | **largely | manifestly**

unfriendly *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become**

• ADV. **distinctly, extremely, really, very** *a distinctly unfriendly tone of voice* | **rather | environmentally** *the use of environmentally unfriendly products* (= that harm the environment)

• PREP. **to** *She was really unfriendly to me.*

unhappiness *noun*

• ADJ. **considerable, deep, great | general, widespread | personal**

• VERB + UNHAPPINESS **feel | express | cause, lead to** *Bottling up your anger can only lead to unhappiness.*

• PREP. **~ about** *He expressed his unhappiness about the arrangements.* **~ at** *the great unhappiness she felt at having to leave the town* **~ with** *his deep unhappiness with the situation*

unhappy *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, grow** *She grew more unhappy as the years went by.* | **make sb** *It makes me very unhappy to see you so miserable.*

• ADV. **deeply, desperately, distinctly, dreadfully, extremely, most, really, terribly, very, wretchedly** *She is deeply unhappy.* ◇ *He described it as 'a most unhappy and distressing case'.* | **entirely** *We felt entirely unhappy with the whole situation.* | **increasingly | a bit, a little, rather | clearly, obviously | equally** *He was equally unhappy with the alternative.* | **personally**

• PREP. **about** *He sounded a bit unhappy about the extra work he had to do.* **at** *She was very unhappy at the idea of staying in London.* **with** *They were terribly unhappy with the arrangements.*

unheard *adj.*

• VERBS **go** *Their protests went unheard.*

• ADV. **previously** *a previously unheard tape of their conversations*

unheard-of *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, totally** *At that time, it was completely unheard-of for girls to go to university.* | **by no means | almost, practically, virtually | hitherto, previously** *He was sentenced to a hitherto unheard-of seven life terms in prison.*

unification *noun*

• ADJ. **European, German, etc. | economic, monetary, political**

• VERB + UNIFICATION **achieve, bring about**

uniform *noun*

• ADJ. **full | smart | regulation** *She was wearing the regulation uniform of tunic, hat and tie.* | **standard** (*figurative*) *They wore the standard uniform of the well-to-do American out of office hours.* | **traditional | dress** *a man in the full dress uniform of the US Marines* | **army, fireman's, military, naval, nurse's, prison, school, etc.**

• PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *The limousine was driven by a chauf-*

feur in uniform. ◇ *A man in a uniform stopped us entering.* **out of~** *a soldier out of uniform*
⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

uniformity *noun*

- ADJ. **broad | great | bland, drab, dull**
- VERB + UNIFORMITY **achieve, ensure, impose**
- PREP. **~in** *Government inspections ensure a high degree of uniformity in the standard of service.*

uninhabitable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, remain, seem | become | make sth, render sth** *houses made uninhabitable by radioactive contamination* | **declare sth** *Fifty homes were declared uninhabitable.*
- ADV. **totally | almost, virtually | permanently**

uninhibited *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem** *The loud music made him feel totally uninhibited.* | **become**
- ADV. **very | completely, quite, totally, utterly | pretty** *I'm a pretty uninhibited sort of person.*

unintelligible *adj.*

- VERBS **be, sound | become**
- ADV. **quite, totally | almost, practically, virtually | largely | mutually** *mutually unintelligible languages*
- PREP. **to** *Dolphin sounds are unintelligible to humans.*

uninterested *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound**
- ADV. **completely, totally | apparently**
- PREP. **in** *She was completely uninterested in her sister's career.*

union *noun*

- ADJ. **close, tight** *Some of the member states wanted a tighter union rather than the loose confederation that developed.* | **loose | full** *a move towards full European union* | **economic, monetary, political**
- VERB + UNION **create, form | dissolve**
- UNION + VERB **break up** *The Soviet Union broke up after only a few years of liberalization.*
- PREP. **~between** *currency union between the two countries* **~with** *the union with East Germany*

⇨ See TRADE UNION

unique *adj.*

- VERBS **be | make sb/sth** *Its magnificent proportions make this palace unique among the buildings of the world.*
- ADV. **quite, totally, truly** *The city has an atmosphere which is quite unique.* | **by no means, far from, hardly** *Although such a case is rare, it is by no means unique.* | **almost, virtually | apparently**
- PREP. **to** *This monkey is unique to the island.*

unit *noun*

1 single thing
- ADJ. **large, small | basic, fundamental** *The family is the basic unit of society.* | **discrete, individual, single**
- VERB + UNIT **break sth down into, divide sth into** *Large departments were broken down into smaller units.*

2 fixed amount
- ADJ. **basic, standard | monetary | lexical, linguistic**
- UNIT + NOUN **cost, length, weight**
- PREP. **~of** *a unit of currency* ◇ *a unit of length* ◇ *fifty units of electricity*
- PHRASES **per unit** *Electricity is ten pence per unit.*

3 group of people
- ADJ. **cohesive** *The new manager changed a talented collection of individuals into a cohesive unit.* | **baby, casualty, emergency, intensive care, maternity, psychiatric, surgical, etc.** *She works in the maternity unit at the local hospital.* | **army, enemy, military | intelligence | policy | research | family, social** *the role of the family unit in the community*
- VERB + UNIT **be attached to** *The cancer research unit is attached to the local university.*

4 piece of furniture/equipment
- ADJ. **cooking, kitchen, sink, storage | air-conditioning, control, power, processing, shower** *the central processing unit in a computer*
- VERB + UNIT **install** *We're having new kitchen units installed.*

united *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**
- ADV. **closely, firmly | absolutely, entirely, fully, totally** *The members of the team were absolutely united in their common goal.* ◇ *obstacles to a fully united Europe* | **largely | legally, politically** *a politically united federation*
- PREP. **in** *united in their aims*

unity *noun*

- ADJ. **complete** *Complete political unity is impossible to achieve.* | **greater | European, German, Irish, etc. | cultural, economic, national, party, political, religious, social** *a government of national unity*
- VERB + UNITY **achieve, bring about | preserve | destroy, shatter, weaken | restore** *He restored peace and unity in the country after years of civil war.* | **call for, promote** *The party is calling for greater political and economic unity in Europe.*
- PREP. **in~** *live together in unity* | **~among** *The dispute has destroyed unity among the workers.* **~between** *a degree of unity between staff and students*
- PHRASES **a sense of unity** *a leader who gave her people a strong sense of unity* **unity in diversity** *The organization promotes racial tolerance and unity in diversity.*

universal *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**
- ADV. **truly | by no means, far from** *Some of the teachers are technical specialists, but this is far from universal.* | **almost, near, nearly, virtually | pretty | apparently | supposedly** *supposedly universal standards*
- PREP. **among** *These practices remain universal among the islanders.* **in** *a scheme that is universal in scope*

universe *noun*

- ADJ. **entire, whole | physical**
- VERB + UNIVERSE **create** *Do you believe God created the universe?*
- PREP. **in the~** *Could there be intelligent life elsewhere in the universe?*
- PHRASES **the beginning/origin(s) of the universe**

university *noun*

- ADJ. **new | ancient | red-brick | local, provincial | research, teaching**
- VERB + UNIVERSITY **attend, go to, study at | apply for | enter | finish (at), graduate from, leave**
- UNIVERSITY + NOUN **lecturer, professor, staff, teacher | graduate, student, undergraduate | course, degree, education | term, year | vacation | entrance, entry, place** *a university entrance exam* ◇ *There is stiff competition for university places.* | **chair** *His aim was to finish his doctorate and obtain a university chair.* | **department, faculty | buildings, campus, library | admin-**

istration, authorities | level *All the staff are educated to university level.* | **days, life, years | town**
- PREP. **at (the) ~** *She's at university, studying engineering.* ◇ *She teaches English at the University of Wales.*

unknown *noun*

1 place/thing that you know nothing about
- ADJ. **great** *What the weather will be like on the day is, as always, the great unknown.*
- PREP. **into the ~** *Motherhood was for her a journey into the unknown.*
- PHRASES **fear of the unknown**

2 sb who is not well known
- ADJ. **complete** *The championship was won by a complete unknown.* | **virtual** *a cast of virtual unknowns*

unknown *adj.*

- VERBS **be | remain** *These sites remain largely unknown to the British public.*
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly** *His whereabouts were quite unknown during this period.* | **almost, practically, virtually** *This drug was practically unknown in Britain.* | **largely | comparatively, relatively** *She was then still comparatively unknown.* | **as yet, currently, still | hitherto, previously** *a period of democratic development previously unknown in their country* | **apparently | otherwise** *He cites the works of two otherwise unknown authors, the originals of these works having been lost.*
- PREP. **to** *Gold was totally unknown to their civilization.*

unlikely *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, sound** *The takeover bid now looks unlikely to succeed.* | **become | remain, seem | make sth | consider sth, think sth** *He thought it unlikely that she would refuse.*
- ADV. **extremely, highly, most, very | increasingly | not at all | a bit, pretty, quite, rather, somewhat | apparently | inherently** *A collapse into new forms of fascism is inherently unlikely in any Western democracy.*

unlimited *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem | become**
- ADV. **almost, virtually** *This new technology opens up almost unlimited possibilities.* | **apparently | potentially**

unlucky *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem, sound | become | consider sb/sth, regard sb/sth as, think sb/sth** *The number thirteen is traditionally considered unlucky.*
- ADV. **dead, desperately, extremely, very** *She was desperately unlucky to fall as badly as she did.* | **a bit, a little**
- PREP. **for** *a date that is unlucky for that family* **with** *She has been very unlucky with injuries this year.*

unmistakable *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **quite** *The main symptom is a scarlet rash that's quite unmistakable.*

unmoved *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound | remain | leave sb** *Her daughter's accident had left her curiously unmoved.*
- ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally | largely, relatively | apparently | curiously**
- PREP. **by** *He was quite unmoved by my anger.*

unnatural *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | consider sth, regard sth as**
- ADV. **highly, terribly, very** *food produced under highly unnatural conditions* | **quite | almost | a bit, rather**

unnecessary *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, prove, seem | become | make sth, render sth | consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as**
- ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly** *No, no, that's quite unnecessary.* | **largely | a little, rather, somewhat | strictly**
- PREP. **to** *the possession of items strictly unnecessary to survival*

unnoticed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, go, lie, pass** *The ticket lay unnoticed in my desk drawer for a week.* ◇ *His remark passed unnoticed.* | **remain**
- ADV. **completely, entirely** *There's a good chance my absence will go completely unnoticed.* | **almost, practically, virtually | largely | hitherto, previously** *a hitherto unnoticed detail*

unorthodox *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem, sound | become**
- ADV. **highly, very** *a highly unorthodox teaching style* | **a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat**

unpaid *adj.*

- VERBS **be | remain | leave sth** *customers who leave their bills unpaid till the last minute*
- ADV. **virtually** *the virtually unpaid labour of large peasant families*

unpleasant *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste | become, get, turn** *Things started to get unpleasant when their neighbours called in the police.* | **make sth** *He may make life unpleasant for the rest of us.* | **find sb/sth** *I found the atmosphere in there extremely unpleasant.*
- ADV. **decidedly, deeply, exceedingly, extremely, highly, most, particularly, very | thoroughly** *a thoroughly unpleasant man* | **not altogether, not entirely** *The overall feeling was a strange mixture of sensations, not altogether unpleasant.* | **fairly, pretty, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat** *His clothes smelled pretty unpleasant.*
- PREP. **for** *tests which are unpleasant for patients* **to** *He was very unpleasant to my friends.*

unpopular *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | remain | make sb/sth** *His advanced views made him unpopular with many of the clergy.*
- ADV. **deeply, desperately, extremely, highly, particularly, terribly, very | increasingly | rather, somewhat | generally, widely | politically** *Cuts in government expenditure are politically unpopular.*
- PREP. **among** *Highly priced shares are unpopular among investors.* **with** *He's unpopular with the students.*

unpopularity *noun*

- ADJ. **great, growing**
- VERB + UNPOPULARITY **increase**
- PREP. **~ among** *Her close relationship with the teacher increased her unpopularity among her schoolmates.* **~ with** *the great unpopularity of the policy with teachers*

unprecedented *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **entirely, quite, totally | by no means | almost, virtually | supposedly | historically** *a historically unprecedented growth in retirement at a fixed age*

unprovoked *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **completely, totally** *a totally unprovoked attack*

unqualified *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **totally**
- PREP. **for** *He is totally unqualified for the job.*

unreal *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become**
- ADV. **very | quite, totally, wholly | almost | a little, rather, slightly | somehow** *He seemed somehow unreal, a creature from another world.* **| curiously, oddly, strangely** *She felt curiously unreal, as if she were in the midst of a dream.*

unreasonable *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound** *She did not want to appear unreasonable.* **| become, get** *His demands were getting more and more unreasonable.* **| consider sth, find sb/sth, hold sth** (*law*), **judge sth** (*law*), **regard sth as, think sth** *I find her a bit unreasonable at times.* ◇ *This clause in the contract was held unreasonable.*
- ADV. **extremely, grossly, very | completely, quite, totally, utterly, wholly | a bit | apparently**
- PREP. **about** *He was totally unreasonable about it.*

unrest *noun*

- ADJ. **great, serious | violent | widespread** *There was widespread industrial unrest in the north.* **| popular | growing, mounting | fresh, further, renewed** *The murder of a boy by police sparked renewed unrest in the occupied zone.* **| agrarian, civil, ethnic, industrial, labour, political, rural, social | peasant, student**
- QUANT. **period, wave** *The increase in fees sparked a new wave of student unrest.*
- VERB + UNREST **cause, spark (off), stir up | crush, deal with, put down, quell** *The government's attempts to crush serious popular unrest led to civil war.*
- PREP. **during (the) ~** *Many shops were looted during the unrest.* **| ~ over** *growing unrest over pay levels*

unscathed *adj.*

- VERBS **be, be left, emerge, escape, get away, remain, survive, walk away** *The children escaped unscathed.*
- ADV. **remarkably | completely, entirely, totally** *Amazingly, the driver walked away from the accident completely unscathed.* **| almost, virtually | largely | relatively | apparently, seemingly** *The company came through the crisis apparently unscathed.* **| miraculously**
- PREP. **by** *The town centre was left unscathed by the riots.*

unscrupulous *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **completely, quite, thoroughly** *In his desire for power, he has become thoroughly unscrupulous.* **| pretty**

unstable *adj.*

1 likely to change suddenly

- VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | remain | make sth, render sth** *Prison order is rendered unstable by young inmates serving short sentences.*
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very | increasingly | rather, relatively, somewhat | basically, inherently | notoriously** *The building trade is notoriously unstable.* **| economically, politically** *a politically unstable region*

2 not mentally normal

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **highly, very | rather | emotionally, mentally** *vulnerable, emotionally unstable individuals*

3 likely to move or fall

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get** *The building was beginning to get unstable.* **| make sth**
- ADV. **dangerously, extremely, very** *The wall was dangerously unstable.* **| rather, slightly**

unsuitable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove | make sth** *The huge proportions of the main rooms made the house unsuitable for conversion into flats.* **| consider sth, deem sth, find sth** *Many tasks were considered unsuitable for women.*
- ADV. **highly, most, very | completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | manifestly, obviously**

unsure *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** *I felt a bit unsure about him.* **| remain | leave sb, make sb** *His sudden change of heart left Brenda unsure once more.*
- ADV. **terribly, very | completely | a bit, a little, rather | obviously, plainly | still**
- PREP. **about** *If you're still unsure about what you are supposed to do, speak up!* **as to** *We were unsure as to what to do next.* **of** *She was rather unsure of her reception.*

unthinkable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | make sth | consider sth** *This would have been considered unthinkable only a decade ago.*
- ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite | almost, practically, virtually | hitherto, previously** *A hitherto unthinkable question was asked.* **| politically**
- PREP. **to** *This course of action would have been unthinkable to the Russian generals.*

untidy *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get** *I've got more untidy since I stopped going out to work.* **| remain, stay** *I'm afraid the house will have to stay untidy for now.* **| leave sth, make sth** *My son had left the studio very untidy.* ◇ *Books and magazines lying around make the place very untidy.*
- ADV. **dreadfully, extremely, very** *Everything was dreadfully untidy.* **| a bit, a little, rather**

unused *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, lie, look, remain, sit, stand, stay** *The church has lain empty and unused since 1994.* **| leave sth** *The meeting rooms are left unused for long periods.*
- ADV. **virtually**

unused to *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, seem | become, grow** *He had grown unused to this sort of attention.*
- ADV. **quite, totally** *She was quite unused to this way of life.*

unusual *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become | consider sth** *It was considered unusual for a gentleman's son to study medicine.*

- ADV. **decidedly, distinctly, extremely, highly, particularly, really, very** *This is a highly unusual case.* | **by no means, hardly, not at all** *It's not at all unusual to feel very tired in the early months of pregnancy.* | **a bit, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, rather, relatively, slightly, somewhat** | **enough, sufficiently** *The arrival of a taxi was unusual enough; an unknown woman getting out of it was sensational.*
- PREP. **for** *It's unusual for a woman to do this job.*

unveil *verb*

- ADV. **formally, officially** *The government has officially unveiled its plans for tax reform.*

unwarranted *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem** *The delay did seem unwarranted.*
- ADV. **quite, totally, wholly** *a wholly unwarranted smear campaign*

unwell *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** *He complained of feeling unwell.* | **become** | **remain** | **make sb**
- ADV. **extremely, really, very** | **a little, vaguely** *patients who just feel vaguely unwell*
- PREP. **with** *You should delay vaccination if you are unwell with a fever.*

upbringing *noun*

- ADJ. **conventional** *Mine was a conventional family upbringing.* | **sheltered, strict** | **Catholic, Jewish, etc., religious** | **cultural** | **middle-class, etc.**
- VERB + UPBRINGING **have** *He had a normal middle-class upbringing.* | **give sb** *They gave their children a strict Catholic upbringing.*
- UPBRINGING + VERB **give sb sth, prepare sb (for sth)** *Her upbringing had given her the social skills to cope with such situations.* ◇ *My upbringing prepared me for anything.*
- PHRASES **part of your upbringing** *Part of his upbringing had been not to question his elders.*

update *noun*

- ADJ. **monthly, regular, weekly, etc.**
- VERB + UPDATE **give (sb), provide (sb with)** *The report gives an update on the currency crisis.* | **get, receive**
- PREP. **~ on** *an update on the political crisis* **~ to** *We need an update to the mailing list.*

update *verb*

- ADV. **constantly, continually, continuously** | **regularly** | **annually, monthly, etc.** | **fully, properly** *The road map has been fully updated.* | **automatically** | **manually** *updating all the files manually*
- VERB + UPDATE **seek to, try to** | **wish to**
- PREP. **on** *Could you update me on how the work is progressing?* **with** *The files are continuously updated with new information.*

upgrade *verb*

- ADV. **significantly, substantially** | **constantly** *We are constantly upgrading our software to meet customers' needs.*
- PREP. **from, to** *customers who want to upgrade from version 4.2 to version 4.5* **with** *All the machines can be upgraded with the new processors.*

upheaval *noun*

- ADJ. **big, enormous, great, major, massive, violent** | **domestic, economic, emotional, political, social** *The loss of his high-paying job caused enormous domestic upheaval.* | **revolutionary**
- VERB + UPHEAVAL **cause, provoke** | **go through, undergo** *The company underwent a massive upheaval after the takeover.*
- PREP. **during/in the ~** *He rose to power during the political upheavals of the 1990s.*
- PHRASES **a period of upheaval**

uphold *verb*

- ADV. **firmly, resolutely, vigorously** | **unanimously** *Three judges unanimously upheld the sentence.*
- VERB + UPHOLD **have a duty to** | **be determined to** *We are determined to uphold the law.* | **seek to** | **promise to** | **vote to** *The IWC voted to uphold the ban on commercial whaling.* | **fail to**

upkeep *noun*

- VERB + UPKEEP **contribute to, pay for** *Our taxes help pay for the upkeep of the city's parks.* | **afford**
- PHRASES **responsible/responsibility for the upkeep of** *The local council is responsible for the upkeep of roads.*

uplifting *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel** | **find sth**
- ADV. **really, very** | **suitably** *a suitably uplifting ending for the film* | **morally, spiritually**

upright *adj.*

- VERBS **be, sit, stand** *rows of children sitting upright at their desks* | **come, jerk, scramble, shoot, spring, struggle** *Slowly the boat came upright.* ◇ *Polly jerked upright, wild-eyed and blinking.* | **remain, stay** *The flag pole wouldn't stay upright.* | **drag sb/sth, haul sb/sth, heave sb/sth, jerk sb/sth, place sth, prop sth, pull sb/sth** *Pulling himself upright, he squared his shoulders.* | **hold sb/sth, keep sth**
- ADV. **fully** *a fully upright posture* | **almost** | **relatively** | **rigidly, stiffly** *She held herself rigidly upright.*
- PHRASES **sit/stand bolt upright** (= to sit/stand with your back straight) *He was sitting bolt upright on his chair, looking very tense.*

uprising *noun*

- ADJ. **successful** | **failed** *the failed uprising of 1830* | **armed** | **revolutionary** | **mass, national, popular** | **military** | **peasant** | **spontaneous**
- VERB + UPRISING **provoke, spark (off)** | **stage** | **crush, put down, quell, suppress**
- PREP. **during/in the ~** *He was killed in the Warsaw uprising.* | **~ against** *the 1951 uprising against colonial rule*

uproar *noun*

- ADJ. **great** | **mild** | **emotional**
- VERB + UPROAR **cause, provoke**
- PREP. **amid (an/the) ~** *The trial proceeded amid uproar.* **in (an/the) ~** *Financial markets were in uproar after the crash of the rouble.* ◇ *The classroom was in an uproar.* | **~ over** *There was a great uproar over plans to pull down the old library.*

upset *noun*

- ADJ. **big, major** | **minor** | **emotional**
- VERB + UPSET **have** *We had our first major upset when Rogers was taken off with a leg injury.* | **cause**

upset *verb*

- ADV. **badly, deeply, really, terribly** | **easily** *She was sensitive and easily upset.*

• VERB + UPSET **not mean to, not want to, not wish to** *I'm sorry—I didn't mean to upset you.* ◇ *Keep the volume down—we don't want to upset the neighbours!* | **be likely to** *This decision is likely to upset a lot of people.*

upset *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** *Don't get so upset about it!* | **remain** | **leave sb, make sb** *The incident had left him visibly angry and upset.*
• ADV. **badly, bitterly, deeply, desperately, dreadfully, extremely, genuinely, greatly, particularly, profoundly, really, seriously, terribly, very** *She's obviously deeply upset by his behaviour.* | **thoroughly** | **a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather** | **clearly, obviously, visibly**
• PREP. **about** *upset about her divorce* **at** *He was upset at missing all the excitement.* **by** *upset by the death of their pet* **with** *I think she may be a bit upset with you.*

upsurge *noun*

• ADJ. **great, massive** | **sudden**
• PREP. **~ in** *an upsurge in violent crime*

uptight *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **get** *Try to laugh at it instead of getting uptight.* | **make sb**
• ADV. **really, very** | **all** (*informal*) *He gets all uptight if anyone criticizes him!* | **a bit, quite**
• PREP. **about** *He's feeling a bit uptight about his exam tomorrow.*

up-to-date *adj.*

1 modern/most recent
• VERBS **be** | **bring sth** *We'll have to bring our equipment up-to-date.* | **keep sth**
• ADV. **really, very** | **bang, completely** *Today's holiday parks are bang up-to-date.*

2 having the most recent information about sth
• VERBS **be, seem** | **keep** *It is difficult to keep up-to-date with all the developments.* | **bring sb** | **keep sb**
• ADV. **completely, fully**
• PREP. **on** *Bring me up-to-date on their progress.* **with** *We can keep you fully up-to-date with your financial position.*

upturn *noun*

• ADJ. **dramatic, sharp** | **slight** | **economic**
• VERB + UPTURN **be on, take** *Sales are on the upturn.* ◇ *Their fortunes have taken an upturn in recent months.*
• UPTURN + VERB **come** *We expect an increase in demand when the economic upturn eventually comes.*
• PREP. **~ in** *a sharp upturn in oil prices*

uranium *noun*

• ADJ. **natural** | **enriched** *a tonne of highly enriched uranium* | **depleted** | **weapons-grade**
• VERB + URANIUM **mine** | **recover**
• URANIUM + NOUN **ore, reserves** | **fuel** | **mine, miner, mining** | **enrichment**

Urdu *noun*

⇨ Note at LANGUAGE

urge *noun*

• ADJ. **great, irresistible, overwhelming, powerful, strong, terrible, uncontrollable, violent, wild** | **sudden** *I felt a sudden urge to smash the teapot against the wall.* | **instinctive, natural** *an instinctive urge to tap your feet to the beat of the music* | **primal, primeval, primitive** *the primal urge to reproduce* | **biological, creative, sexual**
• VERB + URGE **feel, get, have** | **control, fight (back), resist, suppress** *She resisted the urge to kiss him.* ◇ *I suppressed a strong urge to yawn.* | **overcome** *He overcame his urge to run from the room.* | **satisfy**
• PREP. **~ for** *Leaving him off the guest list satisfied her urge for revenge.*

urge *verb*

• ADV. **strongly** | **constantly, repeatedly** *He has repeatedly urged the government to do something about this.* | **publicly** | **quietly** | **unsuccessfully**

urgency *noun*

• ADJ. **desperate, extreme, great, utmost** *a matter of the utmost urgency* | **added, new** *The murders have given added urgency to the debate about inner-city crime.*
• QUANT. **note** *There was a note of urgency in her voice.*
• VERB + URGENCY **give sth, lend sth** *The bomb attack lent a new urgency to the peace talks.* | **increase** | **stress**
• PREP. **with ~** *We need to act with urgency to ensure his safety.* | **~ about** *Is there any urgency about this?* **~ in** *There was an urgency in her movements.*
• PHRASES **a lack of urgency** *We waited in the car while he checked his tyres with an irritating lack of urgency.* **a matter of urgency** *The refugee situation must now be addressed as a matter of urgency.* **a sense of urgency**

urgent *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem, sound** *Can you come to the phone—it sounds urgent.* | **become, get**
• ADV. **extremely, really, very** | **increasingly** *the increasingly urgent political situation at home* | **quite, rather** *Don't forget that one, it's rather urgent.*

urine *noun*

• ADJ. **stale** *I gagged on the stench of stale urine.*
• QUANT. **drop, stream**
• VERB + URINE **pass** | **leak** *He said he leaked urine when he coughed.*
• URINE + NOUN **sample, specimen** | **analysis, test, testing** | **output, production, volume** | **retention** | **flow** | **infection**
• PREP. **in (the/your) ~** *sugars in urine*
• PHRASES **a smell/stench of urine**

usage *noun*

1 way/amount that sth is used
• ADJ. **heavy, high** *high energy usage* | **low** | **normal** *With normal usage, the equipment should last at least five years.* | **drug** *Drug usage by teenagers has increased in recent years.* | **energy** | **water**
• VERB + USAGE **increase** | **reduce**
• USAGE + VERB **increase** | **fall**
• PREP. **~ of** *Usage of computers in schools is increasing.*

2 way that words are used
• ADJ. **common, everyday, general, normal, ordinary, popular** *That word is no longer in common usage.* | **current, modern** *a book on current English usage* | **actual** *Actual usage of the word is different from the meaning given in the dictionary.* | **correct** | **American, English, etc.** | **language, linguistic, word** | **colloquial**
• VERB + USAGE **come into, enter** *The term 'eco-tourism' entered common usage in the 1990s.*
• PREP. **in ~** *The word has a slightly different meaning in popular usage.*
• PHRASES **patterns of usage** *Dictionary definitions tend to show stereotypical patterns of usage.*

use *noun*

1 using/being used
• ADJ. **considerable, extensive, great, heavy, liberal** |

full, maximum *He made full use of the opportunity to travel.* | **excessive** *a style of writing with an excessive use of metaphor* | **increased, increasing** | **constant, continued, daily, everyday, frequent, regular, repeated, routine** *the daily use of a deodorant* | **wide, widespread** *a campaign to encourage wider use of public transport* | **common, current, general, normal, ordinary** *This software is no longer in common use.* | **limited** | **occasional** | **appropriate, careful, clever, correct, effective, efficient, good, judicious, legitimate, optimum, proper, safe, selective** *Holding a lavish party was not the best use of scarce funds.* ◇ *an efficient use of resources* ◇ *an article with a judicious use of examples* ◇ *The layout of the furniture makes optimum use of the space available.* | **indiscriminate, poor** | **illegal, unauthorized** | **personal, private** | **external, internal** *This antiseptic is for external use only.* | **home** *fire extinguishers for home use* | **clinical, commercial, industrial** | **official** | **exclusive** *for the exclusive use of club members* | **free** *Guests have free use of the hotel swimming pool.* | **immediate** *Only half the land was fit for immediate use.* | **drug, heroin, etc.** *Drug use in this age group is on the increase.* | **land** | **language** | **energy** | **library**

• VERB + USE **make** *We made use of the car while you were away.* | **bring sth (back) into, come into** *a technology which came into use at the end of the last century* | **go out of** *The expression went out of use some time ago.*

• PREP. **for ~** *This phone number is only for use in an emergency.* **in ~** *The phone is in constant use.*

• PHRASES **ease of use** *This model has been designed for greater ease of use.* **for use as** *The record is intended for use as background music.* **ready for use** *This room is now ready for use.*

2 purpose for which sth is used

• ADJ. **different** | **new**

• VERB + USE **have** *This herb has a variety of uses.* | **find, put sth to** *Can you find a use for this old table?* ◇ *Don't throw that box away—I'm sure I could put it to some use.*

• PHRASES **a variety of uses**

3 ability/permission to use sth

• ADJ. **full** *the full use of your mental faculties*

• VERB + USE **have** *Since his stroke he hasn't had the use of his left hand.* | **give sb, offer (sb)** *We gave them the use of our house while we were on holiday.* | **deny sb** *They denied us use of the college library.* | **lose** | **recover, regain** *After a while she regained the use of her fingers.*

• PREP. **~ of** *She lost the use of her legs in a car accident.*

4 how useful sth is

• ADJ. **practical**

• VERB + USE **be of** *Could this old coat be of use to you?* | **have** *I have no use for my golf clubs any more.*

• PREP. **of ... ~** *It's of no practical use to me.* | **~ to** *Is it any use to you?*

• PHRASES **be no use** *It's no use running—the train has already gone.*

use *verb*

• ADV. **carefully, efficiently** | **sparingly** *This paint is very expensive, so please use it sparingly.* | **indiscriminately** | **frequently, generally, habitually, normally, regularly, usually** *Do you habitually use display screen equipment as a significant part of your job?* | **occasionally, rarely** | **up** *The oil had all been used up.*

• VERB + USE **be easy to, be simple to** *These garden shears are lightweight and easy to use.* | **be difficult to, be hard to** | **be ready to** | **be likely to, tend to** *the factors that make people likely to use heroin* ◇ *Manufacturers tend to use disks made in the US.* | **decide to** | **intend to, plan to** | **attempt to, try to** | **allow sb to, be entitled to, let sb, permit sb to** *Candidates are not allowed to use dictionaries in the exam.* | **forbid sb to** | **teach sb to**

• PREP. **as** *The tennis court is sometimes used as a car park.* **for** *chemicals that are used for cleaning*

• PHRASES **permission to use sth**

used *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look** *The board game looked used.*

• ADV. **commonly, extensively, frequently, regularly, well, widely** *a widely used technique for assessing the strength of metals* | **little, rarely** *a little-used path through the wood*

used to *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound** | **become, get, grow** *Don't worry, you'll soon get used to your new school.* ◇ *She had gradually grown used to him.*

• ADV. **very, well** | **quite** | **pretty**

useful *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, prove, seem** | **become** | **make yourself** *She told Fred to make himself useful.* | **consider sth, find sth** *some leaflets which you might find useful*

• ADV. **enormously, especially, exceptionally, extremely, genuinely, highly, more than** (*informal*), **particularly, really, tremendously, very** *making an exceptionally useful contribution to the debate* ◇ *In all departments, Leeds looked a more than useful side* (= they played very well). | **fairly, pretty, quite** | **equally** *The same information is equally useful when negotiating.* | **generally, universally** *This method has proved the most generally useful.* | **potentially** | **practically** *The subject is practically useful and will stand you in good stead when looking for a job.* | **undoubtedly** *an undoubtedly useful skill* | **socially** *to provide rewarding and socially useful employment*

• PREP. **as** *useful as a short-term measure* **for** *useful for a variety of purposes* ◇ *useful for people who need a short break* **in** *She was very useful in dealing with foreign visitors.* **to** *information which will be useful to new mothers*

usefulness *noun*

• ADJ. **limited, some** | **general** | **practical** | **potential**

• VERB + USEFULNESS **have** | **increase** | **diminish, limit, reduce** *Badly written questions limit the usefulness of questionnaires.* | **assess, evaluate, question** | **demonstrate, prove** | **exhaust, outlive** *The advisory group has outlived its usefulness.*

• PREP. **of ... ~** *The theory is of limited usefulness.* | **~ for** *the exam's usefulness for ranking students* **~ in** *the drug's usefulness in the treatment of cancer* **~ to** *The report is of potential usefulness to the government.*

useless *adj.*

1 of no use

• VERBS **be, feel, prove** *Her efforts to avoid him proved useless.* | **become** | **leave sth, make sth, render sth** *The condition rendered her legs virtually useless.* | **reject sth as** *They rejected the designs as useless.*

• ADV. **bloody** (*taboo*) | **absolutely, completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly, wholly** | **worse than** *A computer program with too many icons is worse than useless.* | **all but, almost, practically, virtually** | **largely** | **fairly, pretty** | **equally** *There are two manuals, both of them equally useless.*

• PREP. **as** *A candle is practically useless as a light source.* **for** *The land is useless for cattle.* **in** *This drug is useless in the treatment of patients with Aids.* **to** *The information was useless to him.*

2 weak/not successful

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **bloody** (*taboo*) | **completely** | **pretty**

• PREP. **at** *I'm pretty useless at this job.*

user *noun*

• ADJ. **heavy, large** *heavy users of credit* ◇ *The larger users of the service have to pay more.* | **small** | **daily, regular** | **current, existing** *Existing users will be able to upgrade their software at a reduced price.* | **first-time, novice** *They offer a short course to first-time users of the software.* | **end** *The company supplies its computers direct to the end user.* | **computer, PC** | **business, home** *a computer intended for business and home users* | **bus, car, rail, road, transport** | **wheelchair** *A special entrance is being built for wheelchair users.* | **library** | **service** *a survey of health service users* | **telephone** | **electricity, energy** | **drug, heroin, etc.**

usual *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become**
• ADV. **very** | **quite** *Don't worry—it's quite usual to have a few problems at first.* | **fairly** | **far from** *This kind of behaviour is far from usual in children of this age.*
• PREP. **for** *It's usual for the man to propose marriage.*
• PHRASES **as per usual** (*informal*) *Everyone blamed me as per usual.* **as usual** (= in the same way as what happens most of the time or in most cases) *Steve, as usual, was the last to arrive.* **business as usual** (= things will continue as normal in spite of a difficult situation) *It's business as usual at the factory, even while investigators sift through the bomb wreckage.* **in the usual way** *The metal can then be painted in the usual way.*

utility *noun*

1 usefulness
• ADJ. **great, high** | **low** | **social** *He argued that the arts have great social utility.*
• VERB + UTILITY **have**
• PREP. **of …** ~ *This computer is of low utility for the home user.*

2 service provided for the public
• ADJ. **public, state-owned** | **privatized** | **electricity, water** *a privatized electricity utility*

utilize *verb*

• ADV. **heavily** | **extensively** | **fully, to the full** *The new computer system is not being fully utilized yet.* | **effectively, successfully**
• PREP. **as** *Concrete had long been utilized as a bonding and covering material.*

U-turn *noun*

1 movement in a car
• VERB + U-TURN **do, execute, make**

2 sudden change of plan
• ADJ. **complete** | **dramatic, spectacular** | **embarrassing, humiliating** | **government, policy**
• VERB + U-TURN **do, execute, make, perform** *The government has made a spectacular U-turn on taxes.*
• PREP. **~on** *a U-turn on education policy* **~over** *a government U-turn over plans to cut social security payments*

Vv

vacancy *noun*

- ADJ. **unfilled** | **suitable** *The agency will let you know if they have any suitable vacancies.* | **casual, temporary** | **job, presidential, senate, staff**
- VERB + VACANCY **have** | **create, leave** *Her going on maternity leave will create a temporary vacancy.* | **fill**
- VACANCY + VERB **arise, exist, occur** *A vacancy has arisen in our sales department.*
- PREP. **~ for** *a vacancy for head chef* **~ in** *a vacancy in the catering department*

vacant *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become, fall** (only used of jobs) *A seat became vacant and he sat down in it.* ◇ *A job fell vacant in the accounting department.* | **remain** | **leave sth** *The office of president had been left vacant since her retirement.* | **keep sth** *The job will be kept vacant for a few more weeks.*

vaccination *noun*

- ADJ. **flu, measles, rubella, smallpox, etc.**
- VERB + VACCINATION **have** | **give sb**
- VACCINATION + NOUN **campaign, programme**
- PREP. **~ against** *a vaccination against tetanus*

vaccine *noun*

- ADJ. **effective, safe** | **measles, rubella, etc.** *The polio vaccine has saved millions of lives.* | **live** *a live vaccine containing the polio virus*
- QUANT. **dose** *one dose of BCG vaccine*
- VERB + VACCINE **give sb** | **have, receive** | **develop**
- VACCINE + VERB **protect sb** *The vaccine protects children against tuberculosis.* | **prevent sth** *a vaccine to prevent rubella*
- PREP. **~ against** *Researchers are trying to develop a vaccine against the disease.* **~ for** *a vaccine for meningitis*

vacuum *noun*

- ADJ. **perfect** | **moral, political, spiritual** *The writer criticized the moral vacuum in society.* | **power** *Her resignation left a power vacuum in the government.*
- VERB + VACUUM **create, leave, produce** *The machine then creates a vacuum.* | **fill** *Other gases rush in to fill the vacuum.*

vagina *noun*

- VERB + VAGINA **enter, penetrate**
- PREP. **in/into/inside the/your ~**

vague *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look, sound** *'Where did you leave it?' Isobel looked vague.* | **become, get** *She seems to be getting rather vague as she grows older.* | **remain** | **leave sth** *The identity of the city in the novel is deliberately left vague.*
- ADV. **extremely, hopelessly, very** *Her directions were hopelessly vague.* | **a bit, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, rather, somewhat** | **enough, sufficiently** *It was a vague enough concept for the liberals to unite around.* | **suitably** | **deliberately, intentionally** *You're being deliberately vague.* | **necessarily** *Since the officers knew little themselves their reassurances were necessarily vague.* | **inherently** *an inherently vague and subjective concept* | **notoriously** *The law is notoriously vague on this point.*
- PREP. **about** *I am vague about what happened during the rest of the night.* **as to** *I was suitably vague as to exactly how I had acquired the money.* **in** *The statement was vague in its wording.*

valid *adj.*

1 legally acceptable

- VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain, stay** | **deem sth, hold sth** *The original written contract was held valid.*
- ADV. **still** *Is your passport still valid?* | **no longer** | **legally** *Is the contract legally valid?*
- PREP. **for** *Vouchers are only valid for races taking place before 31 December.*

2 strong and convincing

- VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **remain** | **accept sth as, consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as** *We accepted several different approaches as valid.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** | **absolutely, completely, perfectly** *This is a perfectly valid question to raise.* | **not entirely** | **reasonably** | **equally** *using a different, but equally valid technique* | **universally** *a universally valid set of moral principles* | **not necessarily** | **not strictly** *That argument is not strictly valid in this case.* | **still** | **no longer** *The old assumptions are no longer valid.* | **logically, scientifically, statistically** *a logically valid deduction*

validity *noun*

- ADJ. **great** | **equal** *Don't you think that both views have equal validity?* | **doubtful, dubious, questionable** | **face** *The theory has the face validity of being consistent with recent findings.* | **legal, scientific** *The legal validity of the claims has been challenged.*
- VERB + VALIDITY **have** | **give sth, lend sth** *His reputation lends a certain validity to the approach that it might not deserve.* | **cast doubt on, challenge, deny, question** | **accept, confirm, uphold** *The judges upheld the validity of the previous judgement.* | **assess, test** *to assess the scientific validity of new treatments*
- PREP. **of ... ~** *The results are of doubtful validity.* | **~ for** *the theory's validity for parent-child relationships*

valley *noun*

- ADJ. **broad, deep, high, long, steep, wide** | **little, narrow, shallow, small** | **steep** | **lower, upper** | **fertile, forested, green, wooded** | **mountain, river** | **Rhine, Thames, etc.**
- VALLEY + NOUN **bottom, floor, side**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The cottage was in a wooded valley.*

valour *noun*

- ADJ. **great** *a soldier famed for his great valour*
- VERB + VALOUR **demonstrate, display, show** *He showed valour and skill on the battlefield.*
- PREP. **an act/a deed of valour**

valuable *adj.*

1 worth a lot of money

- VERBS **be, look** | **become** | **remain**
- ADV. **extremely, really, very** | **quite, rather** | **commercially** *commercially valuable expertise*

2 very useful

- VERBS **be, prove, seem** | **become** | **remain** | **make sb/sth** *They have skills and qualities which make them highly valuable.* | **consider sth**
- ADV. **eminently, enormously, especially, exceeding-**

ly, exceptionally, extremely, highly, immensely, most, particularly, really, truly, very | increasingly | quite | equally *The subject could be equally valuable for scientists.* | **inherently, intrinsically** *The Romantics believed that the life of the imagination was intrinsically valuable.* | **potentially | ecologically, educationally, scientifically, socially** *ecologically valuable species*
- PREP. **as** *The survey was valuable as an indicator of local opinion.* **for** *Good eyesight is a quality which is extremely valuable for a hunting animal.* **to** *documents that are enormously valuable to historians*

valuation *noun*

- ADJ. **high, low | detailed | independent | actuarial | market | land, mortgage, property | share, stock**
- VERB + VALUATION **carry out, do, make, prepare**
- VALUATION + NOUN **fee, report**

value *noun*

1 amount of money that sth is worth
- ADJ. **high, low** *the high value of the dollar* | **full, total | real, true | nominal** *a share with a nominal value of £20* | **face** *At yesterday's auction an old coin sold for many times more than its face value of 20 pence.* | **residual** *a residual value of 10% of its original cost* | **resale** *Regular servicing will add to the resale value of your PC.*
- VERB + VALUE **place, put, set** *It's hard to put a value on a company with large assets and turnover but low profits.* | **add | increase, raise | double, triple, etc.** *Dramatic developments on the stock market tripled the value of his shares.* | **lower, reduce | hold, keep** *The piano has held its value.* | **calculate, work out**
- VALUE + VERB **double, triple, etc. | appreciate, go up, increase | decrease, depreciate, fall, go down**
- PREP. **in ~** *The land has dropped in value.* **to the ~ of** *Jewellery to the value of a million pounds was stolen last night.*
- PHRASES **an increase/a rise in value, a drop/fall/reduction in value**

2 how much sth is worth compared with its price
- ADJ. **excellent, good, great, outstanding | poor**
- PHRASES **value for money** *Though a little more expensive, the larger model gives better value for money.*

3 importance
- ADJ. **enormous, great, high, immense, incalculable, tremendous | doubtful, dubious, limited, low** *His published account of his travels is of dubious value to other explorers.* | **lasting | main, real, true | practical, sentimental, symbolic**
- VERB + VALUE **have** *The stolen necklace only had sentimental value for her.* | **attach, place, put, set** *He places a high value on marriage.*
- VALUE + VERB **be, lie** *The real value of the book lies in its wonderful characterization.*
- PREP. **of ~** *He didn't say anything of value.* | **~ to** *Pottery fragments are of great value to archaeologists.*

4 values set of beliefs
- ADJ. **dominant** *the dominant values of a society* | **conservative, conventional, traditional | common, shared, universal** *What shared values do you have with your friends?* | **human | aesthetic, cultural, educational, ethical, moral, political, social, spiritual** *We need to be guided by our moral values.* | **family** *The party's election campaign emphasized its belief in family values.* | **middle-class, Victorian, Western | parental** *the rejection of parental values by a child* | **democratic, liberal**
- QUANT. **set** *a prevailing set of cultural values*
- VERB + VALUES **have, hold** *They hold very middle-class values.* | **cherish, encourage, foster** *Is it the role of schools to foster spiritual values?* | **hold onto, preserve** *a society that has failed to preserve its traditional values*
- VALUE + NOUN **system** *a common value system*

value *verb*

1 decide how much sth is worth
- ADV. **officially**
- PREP. **at** *The company has recently been valued at $6 billion.*

2 think sb/sth is very important
- ADV. **greatly, highly, particularly | increasingly | positively | negatively** *Housework is negatively valued as a retreat from a disliked alternative—employment work.* | **rightly** *the fear of losing the independence that they rightly value* | **socially** *one of the most socially valued roles in contemporary society—being a parent*
- VERB + VALUE **learn to** *learning to value the ordinary things in life*
- PREP. **as** *I value her very highly as a friend.* **for** *He hated to be valued for his looks alone.*

valueless *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **completely, quite** *Our shares became completely valueless overnight.*
- PREP. **as** *Some of the royal forests had become valueless as hunting grounds.*

valve *noun*

- ADJ. **safety | non-return, one-way | drain, pressure-relief | fuel, water, etc. | heart, radiator, etc.**
- VERB + VALVE **fit** *The plumber will fit some new safety valves.* | **open** *You need special tools to open the valve.* | **close**

van *noun*

1 vehicle for transporting goods, etc.
- ADJ. **light | transit | camper | delivery, furniture, ice-cream, mail, removal | armoured, police**
- VERB + VAN **drive | park | load, unload**
- VAN + NOUN **driver**

2 type of railway carriage
- ADJ. **goods, guard's, luggage**

vandal *noun*

- ADJ. **car** *Car vandals caused more than £10 000 worth of damage to vehicles last Saturday.*
- VERB + VANDAL **deter, discourage** *The windows are covered with grilles to deter vandals.*
- VANDAL + VERB **damage sth, wreck sth**

vandalism *noun*

- ADJ. **mindless, wanton | criminal | environmental**
- VERB + VANDALISM **discourage, prevent**
- PHRASES **an act of vandalism**

vanish *verb*

1 disappear suddenly and completely
- ADV. **just, simply** *I turned round and she had simply vanished.* | **abruptly, instantly, promptly, suddenly | quickly, rapidly** *Her feelings of shyness rapidly vanished.* | **mysteriously** *a man who mysteriously vanished from his home last month*
- VERB + VANISH **seem to | make sb/sth**
- PREP. **from** *All thoughts of romance vanished from his mind.* **into** *She vanished into the mist.*
- PHRASES **vanish from the face of the earth, vanish from sight, vanish into thin air** *At a stroke she could make things vanish into thin air.* **vanish without trace**

2 disappear over a period of time
- ADV. **altogether, completely, entirely, totally** *Many of these old cinemas have now vanished altogether.* | **all but, almost, virtually** *country inns of a type that has now all*

but vanished | **long since** *The people who built this temple have long since vanished.* | **forever** *Much of the land we loved has vanished forever.*
- PREP. **from** *This plant is vanishing from the British countryside.*

vanity *noun*

- ADJ. **great | female, human, male, personal**
- VERB + VANITY **appeal to, flatter** *My suggestion appealed to her vanity.*

vapour *noun*

- ADJ. **water**
- QUANT. **cloud** *There was a hissing sound, and clouds of vapour were emitted.*
- VERB + VAPOUR **form, turn to** *The particles then form a vapour.* | **emit, give off/out**
- VAPOUR + VERB **condense**

variability *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, extreme, great, high, wide** *There is considerable variability in all the test scores.* | **low, slight**
- QUANT. **degree**
- PREP. **~ among/between** *variability among different health authorities* **~ in** *variability in crop yields*

variable *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very, widely** *Polar habitats are harsh and highly variable.* | **infinitely** *These systems are infinitely variable.* | **increasingly | quite, slightly, somewhat**
- PREP. **in** *variable in shape*

variation *noun*

- ADJ. **considerable, dramatic, enormous, extreme, great, major, marked, significant, striking, substantial, tremendous, wide | minor, slight, small, subtle** *subtle variations of colour and design* | **numerous | endless, infinite | complex | random | systematic | local, regional | climatic, cultural, environmental, ethnic, genetic, geographical, hereditary, language, linguistic | annual, daily, day-to-day, seasonal, year-to-year**
- VERB + VARIATION **show** *The businesses showed a dramatic variation in how they treated their staff.* | **find, observe** *Considerable variation was found in the terms offered by different banks.* | **analyse**
- VARIATION + VERB **occur**
- PREP. **~ according to** *variation according to the time of year* **~ across** *She is studying language variation across the social range.* **~ among** *variation among the students in terms of ability* **~ between** *variations between different accents* **~ by** *There is little variation by sex or social class in these attitudes.* **~ in** *slight variations in pressure* **~ with** *temperature variation with altitude* **~ within** *There may be striking variations within a species.*
- PHRASES **a range of variation, a variation on a theme** *His numerous complaints are all variations on a theme.*

varied *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | remain**
- ADV. **enormously, extremely, highly, immensely, richly, tremendously, very, widely, wonderfully** *a richly varied cultural life* | **endlessly, infinitely** *an endlessly varied repertoire of songs* | **increasingly | quite | enough, sufficiently**
- PHRASES **many and varied** *The opportunities the job offers are many and varied.*

variety *noun*

1 not being the same; different kinds of sth
- ADJ. **amazing, astonishing, bewildering, considerable, endless, enormous, exciting, extraordinary, fascinating, good, great, huge, impressive, incredible, infinite, large, remarkable, rich, surprising, tremendous, vast, wide, wonderful** *The market sold a bewildering variety of cheeses.* ◇ *the rich variety of the local bird life*
- VERB + VARIETY **add, give, offer** *Dealing with customers adds variety to the job.*
- PREP. **of …** ~ *a country of great variety* | **~ in** *There is wide variety in shape and colour.* **~ of** *Menus offer a good variety of seafood.*

2 particular type of sth
- ADJ. **distinctive | common-or-garden, standard | rare, unusual | different** *There are hundreds of different varieties of apple.* | **new, old** *Old varieties of rose can be less resistant to diseases.*

varnish *noun*

- ADJ. **clear, colourless, transparent | gloss, glossy | matt** (see also **nail varnish**)
- QUANT. **coat** *The table needed two coats of varnish.*
- VERB + VARNISH **apply** *Apply the varnish evenly over the whole surface.* | **remove, scrape off, strip off**
- VARNISH + VERB **dry | protect sth** *You need a good quality varnish to protect the timber.*
- VARNISH + NOUN **remover**

vary *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, dramatically, enormously, a great deal, greatly, a lot, markedly, sharply, significantly, substantially, tremendously, widely, wildly | hardly** *The sword hardly varied in form from the 12th to the 15th century.* | **(a) little, slightly, somewhat | constantly, continuously** *the continuously varying intensities of natural light* | **never | inevitably, necessarily** *What can be found will inevitably vary according to the area under study.* | **naturally, obviously** *Personal preference naturally varies.* | **systematically | accordingly** *Dictionaries are produced with specific markets in mind, and their contents vary accordingly.* | **inversely** *The availability of good medical care tends to vary inversely with the need for it.* | **geographically, historically** *Voting behaviour varies geographically.*
- VERB + VARY **can, may** *Prices can vary enormously.* | **be likely to, tend to**
- PREP. **according to** *The leaf's size varies widely according to the area where it grows.* **among** *Services offered vary among the main high street banks.* **between** *The rate of growth varies considerably between different industries.* ◇ *The doses used for surgical anaesthesia vary between 2 and 10mg/kg.* **by** *Access to this information varies by social class.* **depending on** *Costs are likely to vary depending on where you live.* **from … to …** *The situation varies slightly from country to country.* ◇ *Its speed varies from 20 mph to 35 mph.* **in** *The rooms vary in size.* **with** *The danger of a heart attack varies with body weight.*
- PHRASES **vary over/with time** *studying moral values and how they vary over time*

vase *noun*

- ADJ. **flower | china, crystal, cut-glass, glass, porcelain, silver, stone**
- VASE + VERB **be filled with sth, contain sth, hold sth | stand** *A silver vase stood on the mantelpiece.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *flowers arranged in a vase* | **~ of** *a vase of fresh flowers*

vault *noun*

1 strong, underground room

- ADJ. **secure** | **bank, museum** | **treasure**
- VERB + VAULT **keep/store sth in**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The jewels were kept in a bank vault.*

2 room under a church where dead people are buried

- ADJ. **burial, family, royal**
- VERB + VAULT **bury sb in** *She is to be buried in the family vault.*

veer *verb*

- ADV. **sharply, violently, wildly** *The ship veered round wildly in the rough sea.* | **(to the) left, (to the) right** | **away, round** *The plane veered away to the left.*
- PREP. **between** (*figurative*) *He veered between calm acceptance and hysterical accusations.* **from** (*figurative*) *The play veers from loopy comedy to serious moralizing.* **off** *The car veered off the road.* **to** *The path veers sharply to the right.* **towards** *He veered left towards them.*

vegetable *noun*

- ADJ. **green, leafy, root, salad** *The children don't eat enough green vegetables.* | **crisp** *a salad of crisp, raw vegetables* | **cooked, raw** | **fresh, frozen, tinned** | **organic** | **early, seasonal, spring, summer, winter** | **rotten**
- VERB + VEGETABLE **grow** *They grow all their own vegetables.* | **eat, have** | **boil, cook, overcook, parboil, steam, stir-fry** | **chop, peel, purée**
- VEGETABLE + NOUN **garden, patch, plot** | **market, stall** | **rack** | **crop** | **produce** | **dish, soup, stew, stock, terrine** | **fat, oil** | **protein** | **dye** | **fibre, matter**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

vegetarian *noun*

- ADJ. **strict** *They are strict vegetarians.*
- VEGETARIAN + NOUN **cookery, dish, food, meal** | **diet** | **restaurant**
- PHRASES **suitable for vegetarians** *All our cheeses are suitable for vegetarians.*

vegetation *noun*

- ADJ. **green** | **dense, lush, luxuriant, thick** | **scrub, scrubby, sparse** *As we drove towards the desert, the vegetation became sparse.* | **decaying, decomposing, rotten, rotting** *piles of rotting vegetation* | **natural** *Removal of the natural vegetation has resulted in a loss of nutrients in the soil.* | **aquatic, woodland, sub-tropical, tropical**
- VERB + VEGETATION **be covered in/with** *The hills are covered in lush green vegetation.*
- VEGETATION + VERB **grow**
- VEGETATION + NOUN **cover**

vehicle *noun*

1 used for transporting people or things

- ADJ. **moving, oncoming, passing** *She was blinded by the lights from an oncoming vehicle.* | **parked, stationary** *The bus crashed into a stationary vehicle.* | **unattended** | **stolen** *The thieves escaped in a stolen vehicle.* | **horse-drawn, motor** | **electric, diesel, petrol/petrol-driven** | **wheeled** *The city centre is off-limits to wheeled vehicles.* | **road** | **four-wheel-drive** | **all-terrain, off-road** | **vintage** | **private** | **commercial, delivery, (heavy) goods** | **emergency** | **police** | **armoured, military**
- QUANT. **convoy** *The president's car was being followed by a convoy of vehicles.*
- VERB + VEHICLE **own** | **hire** *Hire a four-wheel-drive vehicle—there are lots of spots to discover off the beaten track.* | **drive** | **park** | **impound, tow away** *The vehicle was impounded as part of the police investigation.* | **abandon** *Sniffer dogs were brought in to follow the men after they abandoned the vehicle in a ditch.*
- VEHICLE + VERB **arrive** *An eyewitness said, 'We saw loads of smoke, and then the emergency vehicles arrived.'* | **break down** | **collide, crash (into sth)** *Two drivers escaped injury when their vehicles collided near Thirsk.* | **run on sth** *vehicles running on lead-free petrol*
- VEHICLE + NOUN **emission** *tighter controls on vehicle emissions* | **manufacture**

2 sth used for communicating ideas/achieving sth

- ADJ. **excellent, ideal, perfect** | **important, main, major**
- PREP. **~ for** *The play is a perfect vehicle for her talents.* **~ of** *The Students' Union is the main vehicle of communication for students in the college.*

veil *noun*

1 piece of material for covering a woman's head

- ADJ. **bridal** *The bridal veil was fringed with lace.*
- VERB + VEIL **wear** | **lift (back), remove, take off**
- VEIL + VERB **cover sth** *A veil covered her face.*
- PREP. **behind a/the ~** *I couldn't see her face behind the veil.*

2 sth that stops you knowing the full truth about sth

- VERB + VEIL **lift** *The government has decided to lift the veil on its plans.* | **draw** *It would be better to draw a veil over what happened next* (= not talk about it).
- PREP. **behind/under ~ of** *The work is carried out behind a veil of secrecy.*

vein *noun*

1 tube carrying blood in the body

- ADJ. **blue** *A blue vein throbbed in his forehead.* | **broken, thread, varicose** *She uses make-up to hide the thread veins in her cheeks.* | **jugular**
- VERB + VEIN **course/run along/through, flow through, pump through, race through, rush through** *He felt the adrenalin coursing through his veins.*
- VEIN + VERB **bulge, pulse, stand out, throb** *The veins stood out on her throat and temples.*

2 particular style/quality

- ADJ. **rich**
- VERB + VEIN **hit, strike** *The team have hit a rich vein of form recently.* | **tap (into)**
- PREP. **~ of** *The writer tapped into a rich vein of humour in the play.*
- PHRASES **in a different vein, in a lighter/more serious vein** *Fortunately, the rest of the evening continued in a lighter vein.* **in the same vein/in a similar vein**

velocity *noun*

- ADJ. **enormous, high** | **low** | **constant, uniform** | **average, mean** | **maximum**
- VERB + VELOCITY **achieve, attain, reach** *Eventually, the star attained the velocity of light.* | **move with** *to move with a uniform velocity* | **increase, raise**
- VELOCITY + VERB **increase, rise** | **decrease, fall**
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *Light travels at a constant velocity.*

velvet *noun*

- ADJ. **heavy** | **rich** | **faded, worn** | **crushed**
- PREP. **of ~** *curtains of heavy crimson velvet*

vendetta *noun*

- ADJ. **personal, political**
- VERB + VENDETTA **conduct, pursue, run**
- PREP. **~ against** *For years he pursued a vendetta against the Morris family.*

veneer *noun*

- ADJ. **thin | false | civilized**
- VERB + VENEER **acquire | strip (off), strip sb/sth of** *They have stripped the veneer of jingoism from the play, by showing war in its true horror.*
- VENEER + VERB **disguise sth, hide sth, mask sth** *He managed to acquire a thin veneer of knowledge to mask his real ignorance.* | **crack** *For the first time her veneer of politeness began to crack.*
- PREP. **behind/below/beneath/under a/the ~** *They're brutal people behind their civilized veneer.* | **~ of**

vengeance *noun*

- ADJ. **terrible**
- VERB + VENGEANCE **exact, take, wreak** *She is determined to wreak vengeance on those who killed her cousin.* | **be bent on, demand, seek, swear, vow, want** *He stormed out, eyes blazing, bent on vengeance.*
- PREP. **~ against** *They sought vengeance against the countries that had humiliated France in 1814.* **~ for** *vengeance for the murder of the princess* **~ on** *He silently vowed vengeance on them all.*

venom *noun*

1 poisonous fluid from a snake, etc.

- ADJ. **deadly | snake, spider, etc.**
- VERB + VENOM **inject, spit** *The snake injects the venom immediately after biting its prey.*
- VENOM + NOUN **gland**

2 extreme anger or hatred

- ADJ. **pure, real, undisguised** *a look of pure venom*
- VERB + VENOM **spit** *She surveyed him coldly with eyes that spat venom.*
- PREP. **with ~** *She said it quickly and with venom.*

venomous *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **highly** *a highly venomous snake* | **actively** *There are two types of mollusc that are actively venomous.*

vent *noun*

- ADJ. **air, heating | roof, side**
- VERB + VENT **open, close | fit, install**
- PREP. **through a/the ~** *Air passes through a vent.*

ventilate *verb*

- ADV. **adequately, properly, well** *Make sure that the room is well ventilated.* | **badly, poorly**

ventilation *noun*

- ADJ. **adequate, good** *Inspectors checked that there was adequate ventilation.* | **inadequate, poor | artificial, mechanical | natural | through** *The windows at the back are blocked up, so there is no through ventilation.*
- VERB + VENTILATION **give, provide** *Zips up the sides of the jacket give good ventilation.*
- VENTILATION + NOUN **system | brick, duct, grille, hole, opening, pipe, shaft, slit, tube**

venture *noun*

- ADJ. **exciting | new | profitable, successful | costly, expensive, unprofitable | ill-fated, unsuccessful | ambitious, bold, brave, high-risk, risky, speculative | collaborative, cooperative, joint | private | non-commercial | business, commercial, financial, publishing, tourism/tourist, trading**
- VERB + VENTURE **embark on, undertake** *The directors of the company refused to undertake such a risky venture.* | **establish, set up** *The company has set up a joint venture with a firm in Austria.* | **join (in), join sb in** *His son Mark will be joining him in the new venture.*
- VENTURE + NOUN **capital, funds, money**
- PREP. **~ by** *a cooperative venture by firms at the science park*

⇨ Special page at BUSINESS

venture *verb*

- ADV. **cautiously** *She ventured cautiously into the room.* | **rarely, seldom | far, further (afield)** *Some of the men ventured further out to sea.* | **abroad, forth, out, outside** *A few people ventured out into the street.*
- VERB + VENTURE **dare (to)** *She would not have dared venture here alone.*
- PREP. **away from, beyond, into, out of** *They rarely ventured beyond their local market town.*

venue *noun*

- ADJ. **ideal, perfect, popular, prestigious, top** *Europe's top venue for indoor athletics* | **intimate** *With room for only 200 people, this is the most intimate venue the band has played for years.* | **all-seater, 500-seater, etc. | outdoor | home, neutral** *The match will be played at a neutral venue.* | **tourist | cabaret, concert, conference, entertainment, exhibition, performance, rock, sporting/sports**
- VERB + VENUE **be, provide** *The Holiday Inn provided the venue for this year's conference.* | **hire | play | pack (out)** *The musical has been packing out venues around the world.*
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *The meeting will be held at a venue in the south of the city.* **in a/the ~** *She has performed in venues around Europe.* | **~ for** *The hall is a popular venue for weddings.*
- PHRASES **a change of venue**

verb *noun*

- ADJ. **plural, singular | intransitive, transitive | active, passive | irregular, regular | main** *What's the main verb of the sentence?* | **finite | auxiliary, linking, modal | phrasal**
- VERB + VERB **use** *In this essay he has used the same verbs over and over again.* | **take** *'Government' can take a singular or plural verb.* | **agree with** *The subject doesn't agree with the verb.* | **conjugate, inflect** *Do you know how to conjugate the verb 'seek'?* | **modify, qualify** *Adverbs modify verbs.*
- VERB + VERB **take sth** *Transitive verbs take a direct object.* | **agree with sth, inflect** *Add an ending to make the verb agree with the subject.* | **end in sth**
- VERB + NOUN **ending, form, phrase**
- PHRASES **a verb of motion/perception**

verdict *noun*

1 decision in a court of law about whether sb is guilty

- ADJ. **adverse, favourable** *In the case of an adverse verdict, the company could stand to lose millions.* | **guilty, not guilty, not proven | majority, unanimous** *a unanimous verdict of not guilty* | **formal** *The jury returned a formal verdict after direction by the judge.* | **jury, trial | appeal, inquest | accident, accidental death, manslaughter, murder, misadventure, open, suicide** *An open verdict was the only appropriate one, given the very unclear evidence at the inquest.*
- VERB + VERDICT **consider** *The judge sent the jury away to consider its verdict.* | **agree (on), arrive at, reach** *They reached a verdict after hours of deliberation.* | **announce, bring in, deliver, enter, read out, give, pass, pronounce, record, return** *The verdict was delivered in front of a packed courtroom.* ◇ *The jury returned a verdict of guilty at the end of the trial.* ◇ *The coroner recorded a verdict of accidental death.* | **accept | appeal against,**

protest against | overturn, quash, reverse, set aside *His family always insisted that the original 'guilty' verdict should be overturned.* | **uphold** *The verdict was upheld at appeal.*

- VERDICT + VERB **be in sb's favour**
- PREP. **~against** *We believe that the verdict against him was unfair.* **~of** *a verdict of accidental death*

2 decision/opinion

- ADJ. **final** *The panel will give its final verdict tomorrow.* | **general, overall, unanimous** *The unanimous verdict was that the picnic had been a great success.*
- VERB + VERDICT **give**
- PREP. **~on** *What's your verdict on her new book?*

verge *noun*

- ADJ. **grass | motorway, roadside**
- VERB + VERGE **bring sb/sth to** (*figurative*) *This action brought the country to the verge of economic collapse.*
- PREP. **on the ~** (*figurative*) *She was on the verge of a nervous breakdown when she finally sought help.*

verification *noun*

- ADJ. **empirical, scientific**
- VERIFICATION + NOUN **procedures**
- PREP. **subject to ~** *The credit card is then accepted, subject to verification of the signature.*

vermin *noun*

- VERB + VERMIN **regard sth as** *Farmers regard foxes as vermin.* | **catch, control, deal with, shoot**

versatile *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem**
- ADV. **amazingly, extremely, highly, very, wonderfully** *This machine is amazingly versatile.* | **fairly, quite**

verse *noun*

- ADJ. **humorous, light, satirical | blank, free, rhyming**
- VERB + VERSE **compose, write**
- VERSE + NOUN **form | drama**
- PREP. **in ~** *a play in verse*

version *noun*

1 sth based on sth else

- ADJ. **current, latest, new, updated, up-to-date | early, initial, original, preliminary, prototype** *an earlier version of this computer software* | **later, subsequent | definitive, final** *the final version of the architectural plans* | **future** *A future version of the camera is currently being developed.* | **basic, standard | primitive, simplified | amended, enhanced, improved, modified, refined, revamped | advanced, complex, elaborate, sophisticated** *a more advanced version of the initial concept* | **high-performance | customized | de luxe, expensive, luxury | cheap, low-cost | miniature | enlarged | compact, cut-down, portable, scaled-down, small-scale | full-blown, full-length, full-size | French, French-language, etc.** *the Japanese-language version of the software*
- VERB + VERSION **develop | bring out, create, come out/up with, introduce, launch, offer, present, produce, release, roll out, unveil** *The company will roll out an enhanced version of its operating system in the new year.*
- VERSION + VERB **be out, come out** *The new version comes out in June.* | **be based on sth**

2 play, film, book, piece of writing, etc.

- ADJ. **draft, rough** *Keep a copy of the rough version of your essay.* | **abridged, condensed, short, simplified | unabridged, unsimplified | expanded | authorized, official** *This is the official version of the painter's biography.* | **unauthorized, unofficial | hardback, paperback | CD-ROM, electronic, interactive | French, French-language, etc. | film, movie, musical, screen, stage, television** *The film version does not live up to the original novel.* | **cover** (= of a song) *The band does a lively cover version of 'Johnny B. Goode'.*
- VERB + VERSION **do**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The children read the novel in its abridged version.*

3 way sth is seen/done by sb

- ADJ. **accurate, faithful | full** *Only one newspaper printed the full version of the speech.* | **popular | extreme, radical | watered-down, weak** *Theirs is a watered-down version of socialism.*
- VERB + VERSION **give sb** *She agreed to give her version of events to journalists.*

vessel *noun*

1 ship/boat

- ADJ. **crippled, stranded, stricken, wrecked | seaworthy | sailing, steam | ocean-going, sea-going | fishing | cargo, commercial, container, freight, merchant | naval | escort, patrol, supply, support, survey, transport | passenger | research | foreign**
- VERB + VESSEL **operate** *He was accused of operating the vessel while drunk.* | **register** *The vessel was registered in Bermuda.* | **charter | steer | anchor, moor | sink | ram** *The captain of the boat was accused of ramming a patrol vessel.* | **refloat** *A salvage team failed to refloat the vessel.* | **board** *Police boarded and searched the vessel.* | **swamp** *Huge waves swamped the vessel.*
- VESSEL + VERB **be afloat** *It was one of the largest vessels afloat.* | **sail** *The damaged vessel sailed on for another 50 miles.* | **be bound for sth** *a French vessel bound for Nigeria* | **enter a port, make port** *The vessel finally made port after thirty days at sea.* | **leave a port | carry sb/sth** *The vessel carried a crew of 130.* | **flood | go/lie/run aground, sink** *The vessel flooded and began to sink.*
- PREP. **aboard a/the ~** *They managed to haul the survivors aboard the vessel.* **alongside a/the ~** *A rescue boat managed to come alongside the crippled vessel.* **on/on board a/the ~** *A fire broke out on board the vessel.*

2 container for liquids

- ADJ. **drinking | empty** *It is a scientific fact that empty vessels make the most noise.* | **ritual, sacred** *ancient bronze ritual vessels* | **bronze, glass, pottery, silver, wooden**
- VERB + VESSEL **fill**
- VESSEL + VERB **contain sth**

⇨ See BLOOD VESSEL

vest *noun*

- ADJ. **sleeveless | string | thermal | running | bullet-proof**
- PREP. **in (your) ~** *standing there in vest and shorts*

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

vestige *noun*

- ADJ. **last, remaining** *The government has to remove any last vestiges of corruption.*
- VERB + VESTIGE **lose, shed | dispel, remove, strip sb/sth of | preserve, retain** *I'm struggling to retain any vestige of belief in his innocence.* | **show** *He showed no vestige of remorse for his crime.*
- PREP. **without a ~** *He looked at her without a vestige of sympathy.* | **~of**

vet *noun*

- ADJ. **good | qualified | practising | country, local**
- VERB + VET **call (out)** *I think we'll have to call the vet*

out. | **consult, go to, see, speak to/with, take sth to, talk to/with** *We had to take the dog to the local vet.*
• VET + VERB **recommend sth**
⇨ Note at JOB

vet *verb*

• ADV. **carefully** | **fully, thoroughly**
• PREP. **for** *All goods are carefully vetted for quality before they leave the factory.*
• PHRASES **vetting procedure** *We are introducing new security vetting procedures.*

veteran *noun*

1 sb who has served in the army, navy, etc.
• ADJ. **war** | **army, navy** | **retired** | **disabled, wounded** | **Vietnam, World War Two, etc.**
• PREP. **~of** *a veteran of World War Two*
2 sb with long experience of an activity, etc.
• ADJ. **seasoned** *He's the seasoned veteran, who has taken the children to the museum many times.* | **industry**
• VETERAN + NOUN **campaigner, leader, politician**
• PREP. **~of** *a veteran of numerous political campaigns*

veto *noun*

• ADJ. **effective, virtual** | **absolute** | **government, presidential**
• VERB + VETO **have** | **cast, exercise, impose, use** *The board can exercise its veto to prevent the decision.* | **lift** *The agreement became possible when Spain lifted its veto.* | **override, overturn** *The Senate voted to override the president's veto.*
• VETO + NOUN **power, rights**
• PREP. **~against** *The nobles had a virtual veto against peasant candidates.* **~on** *The Opposition effectively have a veto on constitutional reform.* **~over** *a veto over all political appointments*
• PHRASES **a power/right of veto**

veto *verb*

• ADV. **effectively** *The president effectively vetoed this measure.*
• VERB + VETO **threaten to**
• PHRASES **the power/right to veto sth**

viability *noun*

• ADJ. **continued, continuing, future, long-term** *She is very negative about the long-term viability of the project.* | **commercial, economic, financial, political**
• VERB + VIABILITY **assess, explore, investigate, test** | **prove** *Once the railways had proved their viability expansion was rapid.* | **ensure** | **maintain, preserve, safeguard** *measures to preserve the viability of small businesses* | **improve** | **doubt, question** *The company has questioned the commercial viability of the mine.* | **threaten, undermine**

viable *adj.*

• VERBS **be, prove, seem, sound** *None of the projects proved financially viable.* | **become** | **remain** | **make sth** *It is only their investment that makes the programme economically viable.* | **consider sth, regard sth as**
• ADV. **extremely, truly** | **perfectly** *a perfectly viable form of political organization* | **potentially** | **still** | **no longer** | **commercially, economically, financially**

vibrate *verb*

• ADV. **gently**
• VERB + VIBRATE **seem to**
• PREP. **through** *The thuds vibrated through the car.* **with** *The atmosphere seemed to vibrate with tension.*

vibration *noun*

• ADJ. **high-frequency, low-frequency**
• VERB + VIBRATION **cause, make, produce** | **dampen, reduce** | **detect, feel** *Certain animals can feel vibrations in the sand.* ◇ *Their instruments can detect the slightest vibration.*
• VIBRATION + NOUN **frequency** | **level**
• PREP. **~from** *vibrations from heavy traffic*

vice *noun*

• ADJ. **secret**
• VERB + VICE **indulge (in)** *He used his inheritance to indulge his vices of drinking and gambling.*

vicinity *noun*

• ADJ. **close, immediate, near**
• PREP. **in the~(of)** *There is no hospital in the immediate vicinity.*

vicious *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, sound** | **become, get, turn** *The computer wars are going to get vicious over the next few years.*
• ADV. **particularly, truly, very** *a particularly vicious and brutal crime* | **increasingly** | **rather**

victim *noun*

• ADJ. **hapless, helpless, innocent, poor, unfortunate, unsuspecting, unwilling** *He defrauded his innocent victims of millions of pounds.* | **easy** *Tourists are easy victims for pickpockets.* | **passive** | **willing** *In his fantasies, women became passive and sometimes even willing victims.* | **intended, potential** *The intended victims were selected because they seemed vulnerable.* | **child, elderly** *the child victims of the war* | **Aids, cancer, heart attack, plague, stroke** | **accident, bomb, crash, disaster, earthquake, famine, flood** *The government is sending aid to flood victims.* | **kidnap, murder, rape** | **sacrificial** | **fashion** *She's a fashion victim* (= wears the newest fashions even if they do not suit her).
• VERB + VICTIM **portray sb as** *In his trial, he tried to portray himself as the victim of an uncaring society.* | **claim** *The train crash claimed its tenth victim yesterday when the driver died in hospital.* | **compensate** *a bill aimed at compensating victims of air pollution* | **blame** *The cut in benefits for the unemployed is a classic case of blaming the victim.*
• PREP. **~of** *They were the victims of a cruel hoax.*
• PHRASES **fall victim to sb/sth** *Unfortunately, she fell victim to an unscrupulous landlord.* **a victim of your/its own success** *The small firm became a victim of its own success when it could not supply all its orders on time.*

victor *noun*

• ADJ. **clear, runaway** | **worthy**
• VERB + VICTOR **be, emerge (as)** *The team emerged as worthy victors.*
• PREP. **~over** *The French pair fought back to finish two sets to one victors over the Williams sisters.*

victorious *adj.*

• VERBS **be, emerge, prove** *Osborne emerged victorious after the second round of voting.*
• ADV. **eventually, ultimately** *Against all the odds, Frederick II was ultimately victorious.*
• PREP. **in** *victorious in the election* **over** *The Reds were victorious over the Whites.*

victory *noun*

• ADJ. **famous, glorious, great, historic, impressive, notable, outstanding, remarkable, significant, superb** |

clear, clear-cut, comfortable, convincing, crushing, easy, emphatic, handsome, landslide, massive, overwhelming, resounding, sweeping *His party won a landslide victory in the elections.* | **complete, comprehensive, outright, total** | **narrow** | **conclusive, decisive** *The army won the decisive victory that changed the course of the war.* | **dramatic, thrilling** | **shock, stunning, surprise, unexpected** | **crucial, vital** | **deserved, well-deserved** | **hollow, Pyrrhic** | **election, electoral, military, moral, political**

• VERB + VICTORY **clinch, ensure, notch up, pull off, record, score, secure, snatch, win** *They would do whatever lay in their power to ensure victory for themselves.* ◇ *The Hungarians pulled off a surprise victory against the Italian champions.* | **taste** *The England cricket team has tasted victory for the first time this season.* | **end in** | **roar/romp/storm/sweep to** *Labour swept to victory in the 2001 election.* | **hail sth as** | **hail** *Union leaders hailed the socialists' victory as a huge step forward.* | **celebrate** | **claim** *The outcome left both sides claiming victory.* | **gain sb, give sb** | **deny sb** *The Dutch champions were denied victory in a tough 2–2 draw at Porto.*

• VICTORY + NOUN **celebration, parade** | **speech** | **dance, salute**

• PREP. **~against** *a victory against Fascism* **~for** *The case was hailed as a victory for the common man.* **~over** *their resounding victory over England*

• PHRASES **snatch victory from the jaws of defeat**

video *noun*

1 system of recording moving pictures and sound

• ADJ. **interactive**

• VIDEO + NOUN **camera, equipment, machine, player, recorder, screen** | **clip, film, footage, image, picture, recording, replay, sequence** *The jury watched video footage of the riots.* | **shoot** *The band are in Iceland doing a video shoot.* | **channel** *I can't find the video channel on this television.* | **game** | **conferencing** | **conference, presentation** | **link** *The speech was broadcast via a video link to thousands standing outside.* | **surveillance**

• PREP. **on~** *The film is already out on video.*

2 tape/cassette

• ADJ. **hour-long, ten-minute, etc.** | **blank** | **pre-recorded** *They sell both blank and pre-recorded videos.* | **amateur, home** *An amateur video of the crash failed to reveal the cause.* | **educational, instructional** *They produce educational videos for learning languages.* | **music, pop, rock** | **corporate** | **promo, promotional** | **training** | **exercise, fitness** | **porn/porno/pornographic, sex** | **police, security**

• VERB + VIDEO **make** | **manufacture, produce** | **release** *The group's new video will be released next month.* | **capture sb/sth on, catch sb/sth on** *The thief was caught on video as he pocketed watches and rings.* | **rent (out)** *We rent videos out nearly every weekend.* | **watch** *The children can sit for hours watching videos.* | **show (sb)** *Their teacher showed them a video about the Romans.* | **fast-forward, rewind**

• VIDEO + NOUN **cassette** | **library, rental shop, shop** | **release** *a review of the latest video releases*

• PREP. **~of** *a security video of the attack*

3 (*also* **video recorder**)

• VERB + VIDEO **programme, set** *Did you remember to set the video for 'Inspector Morse'?*

videotape *noun*

• VERB + VIDEOTAPE **make** | **copy (sth) onto, record (sth) onto** *Film can also be copied onto videotape.* | **screen** *The videotape of the attack caused outrage when it was screened on the news.*

• PREP. **~of** *a videotape of the demonstration*

view *noun*

1 opinion/idea about sth

• ADJ. **general, popular, prevailing, widely held** *The prevailing view is that he has done a good job in difficult circumstances.* | **conflicting, differing, divergent, opposing, polarized** *The debate brings together experts with conflicting views.* | **clear, forthright, strong** *He's a doctor with clear views on how to prevent illness.* | **idealized, optimistic, positive, romantic, rosy** *Her rosy view of life abroad seems rather naive.* | **jaundiced, negative, pessimistic** *After his experience in jail, he has a pretty jaundiced view of the penal system.* | **conventional** *The conventional view is that work is pleasant and rewarding.* | **unorthodox** | **minority** | **political** | **liberal, modern, progressive, radical** | **moderate** | **conservative, reactionary** | **extremist, hard-line** | **stereotyped, stereotypical** | **informed** | **ill-informed, uninformed** | **world** *His world view revolves around a battle between rich and poor.*

• VERB + VIEW **have, hold** | **take** *I took the view that an exception should be made in this case.* | **air, convey, expound, express, make known, present, put forward** *The meeting gave everyone the chance to air their views.* ◇ *She picked up the phone and made her views known to her boss.* | **discuss, exchange, share** *At the meeting, we hope people will exchange views freely.* | **canvass, solicit** *He called a meeting to solicit the views of his staff.* | **reflect, represent** *His letter to the management did not reflect the views of his colleagues.* | **adhere to, agree with, endorse** | **confirm, support** | **challenge** *His music challenges the view that modern jazz is inaccessible.*

• PREP. **in your~** *In my view it was a waste of time.* | **~about** *Teachers generally keep their views about politics hidden.* **~on** *Experts hold widely differing views on this subject.*

• PHRASES **an exchange of views** *It's good to have a full and frank exchange of views.* **a point of view** *From a teacher's point of view, activities that can be done with minimal preparation are invaluable.* **take a dim view of sth** (= have a poor opinion of sth) *My mother takes a pretty dim view of my cooking skills.*

2 ability to see/be seen from a particular place

• ADJ. **good, grandstand, wonderful** | **poor, terrible** *We had a poor view of the stage from where we were sitting.* | **clear, unimpeded, uninterrupted, unobstructed** | **back, front, rear, side** *The picture shows a front view of the car.* | **close, close-up** | **public** *Tensions within the band remained hidden from public view.* | **overall** (*figurative*) *The staff handbook gives an overall view of the company.*

• VERB + VIEW **get, have** *The pillar prevented me getting a clear view of the action.* | **give sb** *The patio gave an unimpeded view across the headland to the sea.* | **block** *A woman in a very large hat was blocking my view of the procession.* | **come into** *A large truck suddenly came into view.* | **disappear from** *They stood waving on the platform, until the train disappeared from view.* | **be hidden from**

• PREP. **in~** *There was nobody in view.* **on~** *The carriage was put on view for the public to see.*

• PHRASES **in full view (of sth)** *He was shot in full view of a large crowd.*

3 scenery

• ADJ. **breathtaking, fine, lovely, magnificent, spectacular, splendid, stunning, superb, wonderful** *a room with a breathtaking view across the bay* | **commanding, panoramic** | **mountain, sea, etc.**

• VERB + VIEW **afford, boast, enjoy, give, have** *Most rooms enjoy panoramic views of the sea.* ◇ *The large windows give fine views of the surrounding countryside.* | **admire, enjoy** *a place to unwind and enjoy the view*

• PREP. **~across/over** *a view over the valley* **~from** *the view from his apartment* **~of**

• PHRASES **a room with a view**

view *verb*

• ADV. **favourably, positively** | **unfavourably** | **cautiously, suspiciously** *These results should be viewed cautiously.* | **differently** | **objectively** *Try to view the situation objectively.* | **privately**

• VERB + VIEW **tend to** | **try to**

• PREP. **as** *This behaviour is not viewed as acceptable.* **from** *trying to view the situation from an American perspective* **with** *They tend to view foreigners with suspicion.*

• PHRASES **generally/widely viewed as sth** *He is widely viewed as a possible prime minister.* **increasingly viewed as sth, traditionally viewed as sth, a way of viewing sth**

viewer *noun*

• ADJ. **television/TV** | **armchair** *While fewer people are attending football matches, armchair viewers are growing in number.*

• VERB + VIEWER **attract, pull (in)** *The evening news is to change its serious image in a bid to attract more viewers.* | **be a hit with** *The new sitcom has been a smash hit with viewers.* | **inform, tell** *The announcer informed viewers that programmes would be running late.* | **entertain** | **outrage, shock** *a major new drama series that looks set to shock television viewers*

• VIEWER + VERB **see sth, watch sth** *BBC viewers saw the prime minister lose his cool on last night's 'Question Time'.* ◇ *It is estimated that four million viewers watched the programme.* | **switch (between) channels, switch off** | **phone in, write in** *Hundreds of viewers phoned in to complain after the show.*

viewpoint *noun*

• ADJ. **alternative, contrasting, different, differing, opposite** *The magazine likes to publish articles with alternative viewpoints.* | **narrow** *I find his viewpoint on this matter very narrow.* | **extreme** | **personal** | **ideological, political** | **commercial** | **scientific**

• VERB + VIEWPOINT **express, present, put forward** | **adopt, take** *He always takes the opposite viewpoint to the rest of the group.* | **share** *I understand her viewpoint, but do not share it.* | **support** *He quoted recent test results to support his viewpoint.* | **look at/see/view sth from** *Seen from the student's viewpoint, the oral exam can be frightening.* | **see, understand**

• PREP. **from the ~ of** *From the viewpoint of teachers, there has been a great increase in work.*

• PHRASES **from a purely … viewpoint** *From a purely commercial viewpoint, the film was a failure.*

vigil *noun*

1 when you stay awake to look after sb, etc.

• ADJ. **all-night, constant, round-the-clock, 24-hour** *Since the accident, the boy's parents have kept a constant vigil at his bedside.* | **bedside** | **lonely** *For three nights, the shepherd maintained his lonely vigil.*

• VERB + VIGIL **keep, maintain** *He told the gatekeeper to keep vigil.*

• PREP. **~ over** *the husband's vigil over his dying wife*

2 silent political protest; time of prayer

• ADJ. **candlelight/candlelit, night-time, nocturnal** *Protesters held a candlelit vigil against the war.* | **silent** *a silent vigil outside the presidential palace* | **prayer**

• VERB + VIGIL **hold, stage** | **attend**

• PREP. **~ for** *a vigil for the murdered politician*

vigilance *noun*

• ADJ. **constant, continued, eternal** | **extra, increased, special** *You should exercise extra vigilance about locking your car properly.*

• VERB + VIGILANCE **exercise, maintain** | **relax** *The birds cannot afford to relax their vigilance against predators.* | **require**

• PREP. **~ against** *vigilance against shoplifters* **~ on the part of sb** *Guaranteeing the safety of students requires continued vigilance on the part of teachers.*

• PHRASES **a need for vigilance**

vigilant *adj.*

• VERBS **be, keep, remain, stay** | **become**

• ADV. **especially, extra, extremely, particularly, very** | **constantly, ever** *The organization is ever vigilant for threats to the habitats of birds.*

• PREP. **about** *Be extra vigilant about what you eat or drink.* **against** *You need to be vigilant against garden pests.*

vigorous *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become**

• ADV. **extremely, very** *leading a very vigorous campaign to get the chairman removed* | **quite** *taking some quite vigorous exercise* | **enough, sufficiently**

• PREP. **in** *The group is not vigorous enough in its opposition to the proposals.*

vigour *noun*

• ADJ. **added, increased, increasing** | **fresh, new, renewed** *He returned to work with a sense of renewed vigour after his holiday.* | **extraordinary, great, tremendous** | **youthful** | **creative, intellectual, physical**

• VERB + VIGOUR **pursue/tackle sth with** *The government gave assurances that the enquiry would be pursued with vigour.*

• PREP. **with ~**

• PHRASES **full of vigour** *She was a wonderful, bubbly girl, full of vigour.* **vim and vigour** *He set to his task with renewed vim and vigour.* **with equal vigour** *She attacked both political parties with equal vigour.*

villa *noun*

• ADJ. **grand, grandiose, handsome, imposing, luxurious, luxury, magnificent, sumptuous** | **modest** | **country, suburban** | **hilltop** | **private, rented** | **holiday, self-catering** | **four-bedroom, two-storey, etc.** | **Roman, Spanish, etc.**

• VERB + VILLA **have, own** | **rent** | **live in, stay in**

• VILLA + NOUN **holiday**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *staying in his Spanish holiday villa*

village *noun*

• ADJ. **big, large** | **global** *Technology has turned the world into a global village.* | **little, small, tiny** | **ancient, old** | **attractive, beautiful, picturesque, pretty** | **quiet** | **nearby, neighbouring, surrounding** *The flood affected the town and surrounding villages.* | **outlying, remote, scattered** | **country, rural** | **coastal, seaside** | **deserted** | **home, native** *She married a man from her home village.* | **agricultural, farming, fishing, holiday, mining**

• VILLAGE + NOUN **community, life** | **church, green, hall, pub, school, shop, street** | **centre**

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *They live in a farming village.* **outside a/the ~** *Our cottage is just outside the village.*

• PHRASES **the centre/middle of the village, the edge/outskirts of the village**

villain *noun*

• ADJ. **pantomime** *He wore a black cloak, like a pantomime villain.*

• VERB + VILLAIN **cast sb as** *She seems to have cast me as the villain in her latest emotional upheaval.* | **play** *He has played villains in most of his films.* | **catch, nail** *The police still haven't nailed the villain.*

- PHRASES **the villain of the piece/story** *He changed his story to make his wife appear the villain of the piece.*

vintage *noun*

- ADJ. **classic, fine, superb | rare**
- VINTAGE + NOUN **champagne, claret, port, etc.**

viola *noun*

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

violate *verb*

- ADV. **flagrantly, shamelessly** *They have flagrantly violated the treaty.* | **systematically | brutally** *The peace of the island community had been brutally violated.*

violation *noun*

- ADJ. **blatant, clear, flagrant** *The attack on civilians is a flagrant violation of the peace agreement.* | **grave, gross, major, massive, serious | wholesale, widespread | continued, repeated | human rights | traffic**
- VERB + VIOLATION **commit** *The army was accused of committing violations against the accord.* | **be, constitute** *This action constitutes a violation of international law.*
- PREP. **in ~ of** *There is plenty of evidence that her actions were in violation of an earlier contract.* | **~ against** *violations against minimum wage agreements*

violence *noun*

1 behaviour that hurts other people physically

- ADJ. **considerable, great, excessive, extreme, large-scale, serious | fresh** *There are fears of fresh violence if the strike continues.* | **continuing, escalating, growing | gratuitous, unnecessary** *Letters poured in complaining about the gratuitous violence on the show.* | **mindless, random, uncontrolled | brutal | criminal, unlawful | endemic, institutionalized, widespread** *attempts to rescue the country from endemic violence* | **sporadic** *In spite of sporadic violence, polling was largely orderly.* | **domestic, physical, sexual | drug-related, election-related, etc. | communal, ethnic, inter-communal, inter-ethnic, racial, sectarian | political, revolutionary, terrorist | left-wing, right-wing**
- QUANT. **level**
- VERB + VIOLENCE **commit, engage in, inflict, perpetrate, resort to, turn to, use** *people who inflict violence on animals* ◇ *violence perpetrated by the army* ◇ *The peasants believed their only choice was to resort to violence.* ◇ *Under no circumstances should police use violence against protesters.* | **suffer** *She had suffered years of violence and abuse.* | **encourage, incite, provoke | denounce, deplore, hate, reject | breed** *Hatred breeds violence.* | **spill over into** *The enthusiasm of the protest spilled over into violence.* | **contain** *UN peacekeepers are struggling to contain the escalating violence.* | **end, quell** *Troops were called in to quell the violence.* | **be capable of** *We are all capable of violence in certain circumstances.*
- VIOLENCE + VERB **break out, erupt, flare, occur** *Violence erupted outside the prison last night.* | **mar sth** *The demonstration was marred by violence.* | **escalate, intensify, worsen** *Observers have warned that the violence could escalate into full-scale armed conflict.* | **spread**
- PREP. **~ against** *violence against police officers* **~ among** *violence among football supporters* **~ between** *violence between rival ethnic groups* **~ towards** *violence towards ethnic minorities* **~ within** *violence within the family*
- PHRASES **an act of violence** *Any act of violence against another player must be punished.* **an end to violence** *The former leader of the terrorist group has called for an end to the violence.* **an eruption/outbreak of violence** *The police are bracing themselves for an outbreak of violence.* **fear of violence, a life of violence** *It was a predictable death for a man who had lived a life of violence.* **men of violence** *the men of violence who start wars* **an outburst of violence** *He had a short temper and was prone to outbursts of violence.* **a threat of violence, an upsurge in violence, a victim of violence** *a refuge for victims of domestic violence* **violence begets/breeds violence** *We have to make people realize that violence only begets more violence.* **a wave of violence**

2 physical/emotional force

- ADJ. **suppressed**
- PREP. **with (a) ~** *He kissed her with suppressed violence.*

violent *adj.*

1 using physical strength intended to hurt/kill

- VERBS **be | become, get, grow, turn**
- ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, particularly, really, terribly, very | increasingly | almost | a bit, fairly, pretty, quite, rather** *She started to get a bit violent.* | **gratuitously** *The film is contrived, sentimental and gratuitously violent.* | **potentially** *dealing with potentially violent incidents* | **physically, sexually**
- PREP. **to, towards** *He was violent towards his wife on several occasions.*

2 very strong

- VERBS **be | become**
- ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, very** *an exceptionally violent storm* | **almost** *He felt a strong, almost violent, dislike for the stranger.* | **fairly, quite**

violin *noun*

- ADJ. **muted**
- VERB + VIOLIN **tune (up)**
- VIOLIN + NOUN **bow, string | family** *The cello is a member of the violin family.*

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

virginity *noun*

- VERB + VIRGINITY **lose**

virtue *noun*

- ADJ. **cardinal, great, special | chief | inherent** *There is no inherent virtue in having read all the latest books.* | **negative, positive** *She has just one, negative virtue—she never tells lies.* ◇ *The brochure makes a positive virtue of the island's isolated position.* | **old-fashioned, traditional** *He understands the traditional virtue of hard work.* | **Christian, ethical, moral | domestic | civic, public | political | easy** *women of easy virtue* (= with low standards of sexual morality)
- VERB + VIRTUE **have** *Her book has the cardinal virtue of simplicity.* | **emphasize, extol, preach** *He never stops extolling the virtues of the free market.*
- PHRASES **make a virtue of necessity** (= to manage to gain an advantage from sth you have to do and cannot avoid), **a paragon of virtue** *It would have taken a paragon of virtue not to feel jealous.*

virus *noun*

- ADJ. **deadly | virulent | Aids, flu, hepatitis, herpes, HIV, measles, etc. | computer**
- VERB + VIRUS **be infected with, contract, develop | carry | pass (on), spread, transmit** *An infected person can pass the virus to others.* | **isolate | inactivate**
- VIRUS + VERB **attack sb/sth** *The virus attacks a variety of cells in the body.* | **replicate**
- VIRUS + NOUN **infection | vaccine**

visa *noun*

- ADJ. **entry, exit, transit | student, tourist, travel**
- VERB + VISA **get, obtain** *I obtained a visa after hours*

of waiting at the embassy. | **extend, renew** | **give sb, grant (sb), issue, issue sb (with)** | **deny sb, refuse sb** *She was refused a visa because of her criminal record.* | **need, require** *Do South Africans need a visa to go to France?* | **stamp** | **check** | **overstay** *He was arrested for overstaying his visa.*

• VISA + VERB **expire** *Her visa expired six months ago.*

• VISA + NOUN **regulations, requirements, restrictions** | **application**

• PREP. **on a ~** *She entered the country on a student visa.* | **~ for** *Do you need a visa for Egypt?*

viscount, viscountess *noun*

⇨ Note at PEER

visibility *noun*

1 how far you can see

• ADJ. **clear, good, excellent, high** | **bad, limited, low, poor, zero**

• VERB + VISIBILITY **reduce** *The sand in the air reduced visibility to a hundred yards.*

• VISIBILITY + VERB **be down to sth** *Visibility was down to 25 yards.*

• PREP. **in … ~** *We set a course in good visibility and calm seas.*

2 obviousness in public life

• ADJ. **high** | **greater, increased, increasing**

• VERB + VISIBILITY **increase, raise** *We aim to raise the visibility of ethnic minorities in our organization.*

visible *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become** | **remain, stay** *The scars remained visible all her life.* | **leave sth, make sth** *We cut the trees down to make the lake visible from the house.*

• ADV. **all too, clearly, easily, highly, obviously, particularly, plainly, readily, very** *His relief was all too visible.* ◇ *The election poster was clearly visible from the street.* ◇ *Italy has a highly visible environmental movement.* | **fully, quite** *The sea was now out, leaving the wreck fully visible.* ◇ *Ellie's quite visible embarrassment* | **just** *The mountains were just visible, dusky and black.* | **barely, hardly, scarcely** *The low, flat boats were barely visible.* | **almost** | **half, partially** *She stood, half visible in the dim light.* | **dimly, faintly** *A figure was dimly visible in the evening gloom.* | **externally** | **immediately** *Women are advised to wait where they are not immediately visible to approaching traffic.* | **still** | **no longer**

• PREP. **to** *Its contents were visible to all of them.*

• PHRASES **visible to the naked eye** *tiny spiders that are hardly visible to the naked eye*

vision *noun*

1 ability to see

• ADJ. **20/20, excellent, perfect** *The eye test shows she has perfect vision.* | **normal** | **clear** *The rain prevented her having clear vision of the road ahead.* | **blurred, defective, distorted, impaired, poor** | **double, tunnel** (*often figurative*) | **all-round** *The high driving position gives excellent all-round vision.* | **binocular, stereoscopic** | **X-ray** | **distance** *I can read without glasses, but my distance vision is poor.* | **night** | **peripheral** *Use your peripheral vision widely when moving from place to place.*

• VERB + VISION **have** | **give (sb)** | **obscure, restrict** | **blur** *The tears blurred her vision.* | **improve**

• VISION + VERB **clear** *Her vision cleared and she realized Niall was standing beside her.*

• PREP. **across your ~** *A bird shot across her vision.*

• PHRASES **your field of vision** *She was aware of shapes moving across her field of vision.* **your line of vision** *Someone was standing in my line of vision so I couldn't see the screen.*

2 picture in your imagination

• ADJ. **disturbing, dreadful, ghastly, horrible** | **bleak** | **inner, intuitive, mental, spiritual** | **mystic/mystical, prophetic, religious** *A young girl in the village experienced a prophetic vision.* | **poetic** | **apocalyptic** *an apocalyptic vision of the end of civilization* | **momentary, sudden**

• VERB + VISION **experience, have, receive** *I had visions of us getting hopelessly lost.* | **conjure up** *The word 'island' conjures up a vision of a relaxing summer holiday.*

• VISION + VERB **fade** *As he approached, the vision faded and there was no one there.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *The idea came to her in a vision.* | **~ of**

3 ability to see/plan for the future

• ADJ. **great** | **imaginative** | **alternative** | **broad, comprehensive, global, wide** *The company needs to develop a global vision.* | **narrow** | **overall** | **personal** | **clear** *The engineers had a clear vision of what they wanted to achieve.* | **common** *They share a common vision for the development of health services.* | **strategic** | **political** | **revolutionary** | **romantic, Utopian**

• VERB + VISION **have** | **develop** | **convey, expand on/upon, outline, promote** *He outlined his vision for the new economic order.* | **impose** *The new leader set about imposing his vision on the party.* | **share** | **cloud** *He was determined not to let emotions cloud his vision.*

• PREP. **of ~** *a statesman of great vision* | **~ for** *a vision for the future* **~ of** *an alternative vision of society*

• PHRASES **breadth of vision** *His plans for the country's future show a remarkable breadth of vision.*

visit *noun*

• ADJ. **brief, fleeting, flying, quick, short** | **lengthy, long** | **eight-day, hour-long, etc.** | **long-awaited** | **regular** | **constant, frequent** *She enjoyed the frequent visits of her grandchildren.* | **infrequent, occasional, periodic, rare** | **annual, daily, twice-weekly, etc.** | **forthcoming, impending** *The prime minister has been briefed in preparation for his forthcoming visit to China.* | **exchange, reciprocal, return** *Exchange visits between company and school have kept the project going.* ◇ *They came to visit last week, and we'll pay them a return visit in the autumn.* | **surprise, unannounced, unexpected** | **unwelcome** | **casual** | **formal, ministerial, official, presidential, royal, state** | **high-profile** | **trade** | **private, unofficial** | **foreign, overseas** | **personal** *Following her letter of complaint, she received a personal visit from the store manager.* | **domiciliary, home** *You should receive a home visit from your midwife within a month.* | **hospital, prison** | **initial, preliminary** | **follow-up** | **social** | **neighbourly** | **educational, study** | **fact-finding, research** | **courtesy, goodwill** *While on holiday in Italy, the prime minister paid a courtesy visit to his opposite number in Rome.* | **morale-boosting** | **inspection, monitoring** | **on-site, site** | **school** | **customer** | **memorable**

• VERB + VISIT **go on, make, pay sb, undertake** *We used to go on school visits to museums and historical buildings.* ◇ *How many doctors are still able to make home visits?* ◇ *Pay us a visit next time you're in town.* | **get, have, receive** | **look forward to** *I'd been looking forward to my cousin's visit for ages.* | **arrange, organize** | **postpone** | **cancel** | **cut short** *He was forced to cut short a visit to North America.* | **prolong** *He offered her a drink to try to prolong her visit.* | **announce** *We received a letter announcing a visit from government inspectors.* | **be (well) worth** *If you're staying in Rome, Ostia is well worth a visit.*

• VISIT + VERB **mark sth, signal sth** *The visit signalled the normalization of relations between the two countries.*

• PREP. **during/on a/the ~** *On one of her regular visits home, she told her parents she was engaged.* | **~ from** *We had a visit from somebody collecting for charity.* **~ to** *a visit to the theatre*

visit *verb*

- ADV. **regularly**
- VERB + VISIT **come to, go to** *My parents are coming to visit me next week.* ◇ *We've just been to visit my grandparents.* | **decide to, hope to, intend to, plan to, promise to, want to, wish to** | **be expected to, be likely to** *A million people are expected to visit the museum over the next 12 months.* | **invite sb to, urge sb to**

visitor *noun*

- ADJ. **constant, frequent, regular** | **occasional** | **seasonal** | **rare** | **casual** | **first-time** *First-time visitors to Spain are often surprised by how late people eat.* | **welcome** | **surprise, unexpected** | **uninvited, unwanted, unwelcome** | **potential, prospective, would-be** *The latest crime figures are likely to put off prospective visitors to the city.* | **foreign, international, overseas** | **annual, yearly** | **business, holiday, tourist** | **museum** | **home, hospital, prison** | **health** *The baby's weight is monitored by the health visitor.*
- VERB + VISITOR **get, have, receive** *Do you get many visitors?* | **expect** *The house was tidy and I could see he was expecting visitors.* | **entertain** *The front room was used mainly for entertaining visitors.* | **attract, bring (in)** *The festival brings 5 000 visitors to the town every year.* | **interest** *The town has much to interest the visitor.* | **deter** *The lack of facilities in the town may deter the casual visitor.* | **admit** *The college only admits visitors in organized groups.*
- VISITOR + VERB **come, flock, turn up** *Visitors flocked to see the show.*
- VISITOR + NOUN **attraction** | **centre** *Pick up a free map of the town from the visitor centre.*
- PREP. **~ from** *Visitors from Ireland will find much that reminds them of home.* **~ to** *visitors to the museum*

visualize *verb*

- ADV. **easily**
- VERB + VISUALIZE **be able/unable to, can/could** *I could visualize the scene in the office.* | **try to** | **be easy to** | **be difficult to, be hard to** *It is difficult to visualize how the town must have looked years ago.*
- PREP. **as** *I visualized him as a typical businessman.*

vital *adj.*

- VERBS **be, prove, seem** | **become** | **remain** | **consider sth, regard sth as, see sth as**
- ADV. **particularly, really** | **absolutely** | **strategically** *the strategically vital industrial zone*
- PREP. **for** *fostering team spirit, which is vital for success* **to** *These nutrients are absolutely vital to good health.*

vitality *noun*

- ADJ. **enormous, exceptional, great, remarkable, sheer, tremendous** *You have to admire the sheer vitality of his performance.* | **renewed** | **continuing** | **creative, cultural, economic** | **inner, mental**
- VERB + VITALITY **burst with** *He came back from his holiday bursting with vitality and good health.* | **restore**
- PHRASES **full of vitality, a lack of vitality**

vitamin *noun*

- ADJ. **take** *The doctor told me to take vitamins regularly.*
- VERB + VITAMIN **contain** *Most foods contain vitamin E.* | **be rich in** *Fish is rich in vitamins and minerals.* | **enrich sth with, fortify sth with** *breakfast cereals enriched with vitamins*
- VITAMIN + NOUN **drops, injections, pills, supplements, tablets** | **requirements** | **deficiency** *Vitamin C deficiency can ultimately lead to scurvy.*

vivid *adj.*

1 very bright

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, really, very** | **quite, rather** *She uses quite vivid colours.*

2 very clear

- VERBS **be** | **remain**
- ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, very, wonderfully** *a wonderfully vivid imagination* | **quite** | **still**

vocabulary *noun*

- ADJ. **extensive, large, rich, wide** *English has a rich vocabulary and literature.* ◇ *Try to develop a wide vocabulary.* | **limited, narrow, poor, restricted, small** | **active, passive** | **basic, essential, key** | **formal** | **business, scientific, specialized, technical**
- VERB + VOCABULARY **have** | **acquire, learn** *Learners of languages acquire vocabulary through practice.* | **build, develop, enlarge, enrich, expand, extend, increase, widen** *This book has been designed to help you expand your vocabulary.* | **enter** *The word 'think tank' entered the vocabulary* (= became part of the language) *in the 1960s.* | **use** *Specialized vocabulary is used in all the major disciplines.*
- VOCABULARY + NOUN **item**
- PREP. **~ for/of** *the essential vocabulary for tourism*
- PHRASES **not in sb's vocabulary** *The word 'failure' is not in his vocabulary* (= for him, failure does not exist).

vocal *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a highly vocal opposition group* | **increasingly** *criticized by a small but increasingly vocal minority* | **quite**
- PREP. **about** *women who are very vocal about men's failings*

vocation *noun*

- ADJ. **real, true** | **religious**
- VERB + VOCATION **find** *She struggled for years to find her true vocation.* | **have** | **follow, pursue** *He is desperate to pursue his vocation as an artist.* | **miss** *She feels that she missed her vocation by not working with children.*
- PREP. **~ for** *She seems to have a vocation for healing.* **~ to** *a vocation to the priesthood*
- PHRASES **a sense of vocation** *This is a job that demands a sense of vocation.*

vogue *noun*

- ADJ. **current** | **temporary**
- VERB + VOGUE **enjoy** *Cycling enjoyed a vogue at the end of the nineteenth century.* | **come (back) into** *Scooters have recently come back into vogue.*
- VOGUE + NOUN **word**
- PREP. **in ~** *the type of pop song in vogue at that time* **out of ~** *Disaster movies are currently out of vogue.* | **~ for** *the current vogue for Japanese food*

voice *noun*

1 sounds you make when speaking or singing

- ADJ. **beautiful, fine, good, lovely, pleasant, sweet** *She has a beautiful singing voice.* | **big, booming, loud, ringing, sonorous, stentorian** | **light, small, thin, tiny, weak** | **low, soft** | **deep, gravelly, gruff, hoarse, husky** | **falsetto, high, high-pitched, shrill, squeaky** | **clear** | **muffled, muted, strangulated** | **harsh, penetrating, sharp** | **nasal** | **cracked, rasping, slurred** *I could tell from his slurred voice that he'd been drinking.* | **fruity, mellifluous, rich, silky, smooth, velvet, velvety** | **sing-song** | **gentle, kindly, soothing** | **cheerful, hearty** | **friendly,**

warm | flat, matter-of-fact, unemotional | calm, cool | firm, steady | urgent | authoritative | distinctive | raised | hushed | angry | strained, tired | plaintive | funny, silly | disembodied | inner *An inner voice told him that what he had done was wrong.* | **singing | alto, baritone, bass, contralto, soprano, tenor, treble**

• VERB + VOICE **hear** *I could hear voices in the next room.* | **raise** *She's a teacher who never has to raise her voice to discipline the children.* | **drop, lower** *She dropped her voice to a whisper.* ◇ *You're shouting—please lower your voice.* | **project** *Try to project your voice so that the people at the back of the room can hear you.* | **lose** *She's lost her voice and won't be able to sing tonight.* | **find** *He swallowed nervously as he tried to find his voice.* | **put on** *She put on a silly voice as she imitated her boss.*

• VOICE + VERB **go up, rise** *His voice rose in angry protest.* | **die away, drop, fade, tail away/off, trail away/off** *'So he won't come ... ' her voice trailed off in disappointment.* | **be filled/tinged with sth** *Her voice was filled with emotion.* | **deepen, harden, soften, thicken** *His voice suddenly thickened with emotion.* | **echo** *Her voice echoed through the silent house.* | **whisper** *'Be quiet!' a voice whispered in his ear.* | **hiss, purr | call (out), cry (out)** *'Who is it?' a female voice called out.* | **scream, shout** *She was dimly aware of voices shouting.* | **boom (out) | cut through sth, pierce sth** *His deep voice cut through the silence.* | **break, crack** *His voice broke with emotion.* ◇ *His voice broke* (= became a deep, man's voice) *when he was 14.* | **falter, quaver, shake, tremble, waver** *Her voice shook with fear.* | **drone (on)** *The flat, unemotional voice droned on.*

• VOICE + NOUN **recognition** *the computer's voice recognition capability* | **mail** (also **voicemail**), **mailbox, message, traffic | synthesizer**

• PREP. **in a/your ~** *'Get out!' she shouted in a shrill voice.* ◇ *There was fury in his voice as he answered her.*

• PHRASES **at the top of your voice** *I was shouting at the top of my voice but she couldn't hear me.* **a babble/hum/murmur of voices** *They could hear a loud babble of voices coming from the crowded bar.* **in good voice** *The home fans were in good voice* (= making a loud noise) *before the match.* ◇ *She was in good voice* (= singing well) *at the concert tonight.* **keep your voice down** *Please keep your voice down so as not to wake the children.* **keep your voice level/steady** *He managed to keep his voice steady despite his feelings of panic.* **tone of voice** *'Do you have to speak to me in that tone of voice?' she said sadly.*

2 expression of ideas/opinions

• ADJ. **critical, dissenting** *Dissenting voices at the newspaper are very rare.* | **lone** *a lone voice of dissent* | **powerful** *Powerful voices in the Senate are determined to bring down the president.* | **distinctive** *a writer with a highly distinctive voice*

• VERB + VOICE **find** *Refugees have been unable to find a voice in politics.* | **add, lend** *Many senior politicians have lent their voices to the campaign.* | **give** *The magazine gave voice to hundreds of oppressed factory workers.* | **listen to**

• PREP. **~ of** *to listen to the voice of conscience*

• PHRASES **make your voice heard** *a society in which individuals are able to make their voices heard* **speak with one voice** *The teachers speak with one voice when they demand an end to the cuts.*

void *noun*

• ADJ. **great, massive | aching | black**

• VERB + VOID **leave | fill** *It seemed that nothing could fill the aching black void left by Rachel's death.*

void *adj.*

• VERBS **be | become | make sth, render sth** *an impediment which rendered the marriage void* | **declare sth**

• PHRASES **null and void** *The election was declared null and void.*

volatile *adj.*

1 that can easily change

• VERBS **be | become | remain**

• ADV. **dangerously, extremely, highly, very** *Edwards was a dangerously volatile character.* | **increasingly | fairly, quite, rather, somewhat | potentially** *a potentially volatile situation* | **notoriously | politically**

2 that can easily change into a gas

• VERBS **be | become | remain**

• ADV. **highly, very** *a highly volatile liquid*

volcano *noun*

• ADJ. **active, dormant, extinct**

• QUANT. **chain**

• VOLCANO + VERB **erupt** *An active volcano may erupt at any time.*

volley *noun*

1 of stones, bullets, etc.

• VERB + VOLLEY **fire, unleash** *The police fired a volley of bullets over the heads of the crowd.*

• PREP. **~ of**

2 in sport

• ADJ. **backhand, cross-court, forehand** (in tennis) | **left-foot, right-foot** (in football) | **stunning, superb** *Williams took the set with a stunning backhand volley down the line.* | **30-yard, etc.**

• VERB + VOLLEY **hit** *She hit a forehand volley into the net.* | **crack/crash/lash home, strike, unleash** (all in football) *Cole lashed home a 20-yard volley.*

• PREP. **on the ~** *Figo met the ball on the volley and scored.*

voltage *noun*

• ADJ. **high, low | constant | changing, varying | mains, supply** *Most house lighting runs at the full mains voltage of 240 volts.* | **input, output**

• VERB + VOLTAGE **increase, step up, turn up | decrease, step down, turn down | produce | apply** *A voltage is then applied across the cell electrodes.*

• PREP. **at a ~** *The motor operates at low voltages.*

volume *noun*

1 amount of space

• ADJ. **total** *the total volume of the containers*

• PREP. **by ~** *They sell screws and nails by volume.* **in ~** *2 litres in volume*

2 quantity of sth

• ADJ. **sheer** *The sheer volume of fiction produced is staggering.* | **considerable, enormous, great, heavy, high, huge, large, substantial, vast | small**

• VERB + VOLUME **increase | decrease, reduce | double/grow/increase/rise in** *Sales have doubled in volume.* | **decrease/fall in**

• VOLUME + VERB **double, increase, rise** *Sales volume has doubled since 1999.* | **decrease, fall**

3 strength of sound that sth makes

• ADJ. **high | full, maximum | low**

• VERB + VOLUME **increase, turn up | decrease, turn down | grow/increase/rise in | decrease/fall in**

• VOLUME + NOUN **control** *the volume control on the television*

• PREP. **at ... ~** *The car stereo was on at full volume.*

4 book

• ADJ. **bound, leather-bound** *a library full of bound volumes* | **companion** *a companion volume to the one on African wildlife* | **rare** *Only a specialist shop would have* *this rare volume.* | **bulky, massive, substantial, thick, weighty** | **compact, slim** | **glossy** *a forty-page, glossy volume about the company's products* | **dusty** | **old** | **single** | **separate**

- QUANT. **series**
- VERB + VOLUME **publish**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Her poems are now available in a single volume.* | **~ of** *a volume of short stories* **~ on** *a volume on ancient history*
- PHRASES **run to five, several, etc. volumes** *The encyclopedia is a huge work, running to 20 volumes.*

voluntary *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **remain**
- ADV. **completely, entirely, purely** *The organization is run on a purely voluntary basis.* | **largely**

volunteer *noun*

1 sb who offers to do sth

- ADJ. **unpaid** *The office is staffed by unpaid volunteers.* | **full-time, part-time** | **committed, dedicated, enthusiastic, willing** | **qualified, trained** | **potential, prospective, would-be** | **conservation, Red Cross**
- QUANT. **army, band, group, network, team** *An army of volunteers cooked meals for the children.*
- VERB + VOLUNTEER **appeal for, ask for, call for, look for** *The charity is appealing for volunteers to take elderly patients to and from hospital.* | **find, get, recruit** *We can't get any volunteers to help in the gardens.* | **provide** *The local community provided volunteers to repair the road.* | **encourage** | **need, want** | **work as**
- VOLUNTEER + VERB **come forward** *Hundreds of volunteers have come forward to offer their help.* | **man sth, staff sth** | **carry sth out** | **provide support, support sb** *The support our volunteers provide cannot be measured in purely practical terms.*
- VOLUNTEER + NOUN **staff, worker** | **carer, driver, helper**
- PREP. **~ for** *He worked as a volunteer for Oxfam.*

2 in the armed forces

- ADJ. **army, civilian**
- VERB + VOLUNTEER **recruit** | **serve as**
- VOLUNTEER + NOUN **army, militia, unit**

volunteer *verb*

- ADV. **kindly** *Barbara Forrest has kindly volunteered to lead a guided walk to Bolton Abbey.*
- PREP. **as** *We volunteered as witnesses.* **for** *I volunteered for service in the Air Force.*

vomit *verb*

- ADV. **violently** | **promptly** *Corbett leaned against the wall and promptly vomited.* | **up** *He vomited up all that he had eaten for lunch.*
- VERB + VOMIT **want to** *The smell made me want to vomit.* | **make sb** *They gave her salty water to make her vomit.*
- PHRASES **nausea and vomiting** *The symptoms include headaches, nausea and vomiting.* **vomiting and diarrhoea**

vote *noun*

1 choice/decision made by voting

- ADJ. **majority** | **huge, massive, overwhelming, resounding** *an overwhelming vote in favour of autonomy* | **unanimous** | **close, knife-edge, narrow** | **two-thirds, two-to-one, etc.** | **democratic, direct, free** *Members of Parliament will have a free vote on this bill.* | **transferable** *The single transferable vote system operates.* | **fair** | **secret** | **popular** *The law was ratified by popular vote.* | **casting, decisive** | **crucial** | **affirmative, favourable, yes** | **adverse, negative, no** | **dissenting** | **protest** *He lost the election because of the protest vote.* | **tactical** | **floating, swing** | **absent, expatriate, postal, proxy** | **invalid, valid** | **congressional, parliamentary** | **individual** | **block** *The union wants the system of block votes to continue.* | **historic**
- VERB + VOTE **have, put sth to the, take** *We should put the resolution to the vote.* ◇ *Let's take a vote on the issue.* | **have** *The chairperson always has the casting vote.* | **cast, record** (*formal*) *You can cast your vote at the local polling station.* ◇ *50% of the eligible voters recorded their vote.* | **gain, get, obtain, poll, receive, secure, win** *Our candidate polled only 10% of the vote.* | **swing** *factors that could swing the vote against the president* | **count** *Votes are still being counted.*
- VOTE + VERB **go to sb/sth** *My vote will go to the party that addresses crime.* | **fall** *The party's vote fell by 6%.* | **increase, rise** | **double, treble, etc.**
- PREP. **by ~** *The bill was passed by a single vote.* ◇ *Members are elected by direct vote.* | **~ against, ~ for** *a vote for the government* **~ in favour** (**of sth**), **~ on** *a vote on the new law*
- PHRASES **a vote of confidence/no confidence** *The government received a massive vote of confidence from the electorate.* **a vote of thanks** *A special vote of thanks went to the organizer, Tim Woodhouse.*

⇨ Special page at MEETING

3 **the vote** legal right to vote in elections

- VERB + VOTE **have** *How many years is it since women have had the vote?* | **give sb**

vote *verb*

- ADV. **overwhelmingly** | **unanimously** *The committee voted unanimously to accept the plans.* | **narrowly** *The Senate voted narrowly to continue funding the scheme.* | **formally** *The proposals were formally voted upon.* | **tactically** | **down, in, out** *The proposal was voted down.*
- VERB + VOTE **be eligible to, be entitled to** *young people who are eligible to vote for the first time* | **intend to**
- PREP. **against** *They voted overwhelmingly against the proposal.* **for** *They all voted for the new tax.* **in** *She returned home in order to vote in the elections.* **in favour of** *The committee voted in favour of the plan.* **into** *the government that has just been voted into power* **off** *She was voted off the committee.* **on/upon** *Parliament is to vote on tobacco advertising tomorrow.* **onto, out of** *He was voted out of office.* (**by**) … **to** … *They voted 15 to 2 to accept the offer.* **with** *Her party voted with the government.*
- PHRASES **the right to vote** *Everyone over 18 has the right to vote.* **a round of voting** *She was elected on the second round of voting.* **vote Conservative, Labour, Republican, etc., vote no/yes** *They voted yes to the agreement.*

voter *noun*

- ADJ. **eligible, registered** *Only a quarter of registered voters actually voted in the election.* | **proxy** | **overseas** | **floating, uncommitted, undecided, wavering** | **first-time, new** | **potential** | **ordinary** *the feelings of ordinary voters* | **Conservative, Labour, etc.**
- VERB + VOTER **woo** *attempts to woo undecided voters* | **persuade** | **convince** | **urge, warn** | **influence**
- VOTER + VERB **choose sb, favour sb, pick sb, prefer sb** *In this election, voters chose candidates who promised economic security.* | **participate in sth, turn out** *More than two million voters participated in the election.* | **cast their vote** | **support sth, vote yes (to sth)** | **reject sth, vote no (to sth)** | **change/switch allegiance**
- VOTER + NOUN **turnout** *Voter turnout was very low.* | **registration** | **disillusionment** | **intimidation** *The Opposition alleged voter intimidation by the army.*

voucher *noun*

- ADJ. **credit** | **discount, money-off** | **gift, sales, shop-**

ping | **luncheon** | **travel** | **accommodation, hotel** | **fuel, petrol**

- VERB + VOUCHER **give sb, issue (sb with)** *The company issues travel vouchers to all managers.* | **get, receive** *I got a credit voucher for £30.* | **redeem, spend, use**
- VOUCHER + VERB **entitle sb to sth** *a voucher entitling you to a half-price meal* | **be worth sth** *a voucher worth £100* | **be redeemable** *a 50p money-off voucher redeemable against any future purchase of the product*
- PREP. **~for** *a voucher for children's glasses*

vow *noun*

- ADJ. **formal, solemn** | **marriage, wedding** | **monastic, religious** | **final** *She left the convent before taking her final vows.*
- VERB + VOW **make, take** *He made a vow to avenge his father's death.* | **keep** *She kept her vow of silence until she died.* | **break** *Nothing will persuade me to break this vow.* | **exchange** *The couple exchanged vows at the altar.* | **renew**
- PREP. **~of** *a vow of poverty*

vow *verb*

- ADV. **quietly, silently** *He silently vowed vengeance on them all.*
- PREP. **to** *She vowed to herself that she would not show any emotion.*
- PHRASES **vow never to do sth** *I vowed never to drink so much again.*

vowel *noun*

- ADJ. **long, short** | **open** | **neutral** *This neutral vowel is known as 'schwa'.* | **weak** | **broad, flat** | **final** | **accented, stressed** | **unaccented, unstressed**
- VERB + VOWEL **begin with, contain, end in/with**
- VOWEL + NOUN **sound** | **system**

voyage *noun*

- ADJ. **epic, great, long** | **arduous, hazardous, nightmare** | **outward** | **homeward, return** | **maiden** | **ocean, sea** | **transatlantic, round-the-world**
- VERB + VOYAGE **embark on, go on, make, set out on, undertake**
- PREP. **during a/the ~** *Lady Franklin kept a journal during the voyage.* **on a/the ~** *There were mainly scientists on the voyage.* | **~ from, ~ to** *The Titanic sank in April 1912 on its maiden voyage from Southampton to New York.*
- PHRASES **a voyage of discovery** (*often figurative*) *Going to college can be a voyage of discovery.*

vulnerability *noun*

- ADJ. **extreme, great** | **economic, financial** *the economic vulnerability of unskilled workers* | **genetic** *evidence of a genetic vulnerability to cancer* | **naked, raw** *the naked vulnerability in his eyes*
- VERB + VULNERABILITY **demonstrate, expose, highlight, show (up)** *The earthquake highlighted the vulnerability of elevated highways.* | **decrease, reduce** | **increase** | **exploit, take advantage of** *The gang had taken advantage of the immigrants' vulnerability.*
- PREP. **~ to** *the extreme vulnerability of old people to crime*

vulnerable *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem** *You must try not to appear vulnerable.* | **become** | **remain** | **leave sb/sth, make sb/sth** *The virus attacks the immune system, leaving your body vulnerable to infections.*
- ADV. **acutely, especially, extremely, highly, intensely, particularly, very** | **completely, totally, utterly** | **increasingly** | **quite, rather** *She is very sensitive and rather vulnerable.* | **potentially** | **peculiarly, uniquely** *Hippos are uniquely vulnerable to drought.* | **oddly, strangely** *He smiled, making her suddenly feel oddly vulnerable.* | **somehow** | **economically, militarily, politically** *The company is in an economically vulnerable position.*
- PREP. **to** *These offices are highly vulnerable to terrorist attack.*

vulture *noun*

- VULTURE + VERB **circle, hover, soar, wheel** *Vultures circled overhead as the lions fed.* | **gather, wait** | **swoop** | **scavenge (sth)**

Ww

wade *verb*

- ADV. **ashore** *The men waded ashore.* | **out**
- PREP. **across, in, into, through** *We waded across the stream.*
- PHRASES **wade knee-deep/waist-deep** *Rescuers had to wade waist-deep in flood water.*

waft *verb*

- ADV. **gently** *The night air wafted gently over them.* | **around, in, up** *A scent of honey wafted up from the hives.*
- PREP. **across, down, from, into, over, through, up** *Spicy smells wafted through the air.*

wag *verb*

- ADV. **furiously** *The dog raced ahead, its tail wagging furiously.*

wage *noun* (also **wages**)

- ADJ. **decent, fair, good, high | inadequate, low, meagre, small** *He busked to supplement his meagre wages.* | **annual, hourly, regular, etc.** | **gross, pre-tax | after-tax, net | money | real** *If money wages remain constant and price levels rise, real wages fall.* | **basic, standard** *a basic wage of £100 a week plus tips* | **living** *workers fighting for a living wage* | **minimum | average**
- VERB + WAGE **pay | earn** *She earns a good wage at the factory.* | **live on** *How can you live on such a low wage?* | **increase, keep up, push up, raise** *Full employment pushed up wages.* | **cut, force down, hold down, keep down | supplement**
- WAGE + VERB **increase, rise | decrease, fall**
- WAGE + NOUN **earner | labour, workers | claim** *The union submitted a wage claim for a 9% rise.* | **bargaining, negotiations | agreement, settlement | cut, reduction | controls, freeze, restraint** *The government promised greater tax cuts in return for continued wage restraints.* | **explosion, increase, inflation, rise | bill, costs | structure, system | differentials** *wage differentials between large and small firms* | **packet** *He got his first wage packet at fourteen years old.*
- PHRASES **a cut/fall in wages, growth in wages, an increase/a rise in wages**

wagon *noun*

1 vehicle pulled by animals
- ADJ. **covered, open | horse-drawn | hay, supply**
- QUANT. **train** *a long train of supply wagons*
- VERB + WAGON **drive | pull, draw**
- WAGON + VERB **roll** *covered wagons rolling across the prairies*
- WAGON + NOUN **train | wheel**

2 open railway truck
- ADJ. **rail/railway | empty | full | coal, freight, goods**
- VERB + WAGON **pull**

wail *noun*

- ADJ. **loud | high, high-pitched | banshee | distant** *We could just hear the distant wail of a siren.*
- VERB + WAIL **give, let out | hear**
- PREP. **with a ~** *With a wail he threw himself on the bed and buried his face in the pillow.* | **~ of** *She gave a wail of anguish.*

⇨ Note at SOUND

wail *verb*

- ADV. **almost | helplessly**
- VERB + WAIL **begin to | hear sb**
- PREP. **for** *wailing for her dead husband* **with** *She wailed with despair.*
- PHRASES **weeping and wailing** *A crowd of women followed the coffin, weeping and wailing.*

waist *noun*

1 part around the middle of the body
- ADJ. **narrow, neat, slender, slim, small, tiny | 34-inch, etc.**
- WAIST + NOUN **height**
- PREP. **about/around/round the/your ~** *She wore a broad belt about her waist.*
- PHRASES **from the waist down/up** *A large towel covered him from the waist down.* **stripped to the waist, waist-deep/-high** *Where we were standing, the lake was waist-deep.*

2 part of a piece of clothing that goes round the waist
- ADJ. **high, low | belted, drawstring, elasticated | tight | 34-inch, etc.** *These jeans have a 32-inch waist.*
- WAIST + NOUN **measurement, size | pocket**

waistline *noun*

1 measurement of the body around the waist
- ADJ. **expanding**
- VERB + WAISTLINE **watch** *Low-fat foods are ideal for people who are watching their waistline.*

2 part of a piece of clothing
- ADJ. **high, low**

wait *noun*

- ADJ. **endless, long** *We had a long wait to see the doctor.* | **short | agonizing, anxious, nerve-racking, nervous, worrying | frustrating | boring, tedious**
- VERB + WAIT **face, have** *The accused faces an agonizing wait while the jury considers its verdict.*
- PREP. **~ for** *a short wait for an ambulance*
- PHRASES **be worth the wait** *The dress was so beautiful when it arrived that it was well worth the wait.*

wait *verb*

- ADV. **long** *Have you been waiting long?* | **in vain** *They waited in vain for a response.* | **quietly, silently | patiently, politely** *He waited patiently while she got ready.* | **anxiously, impatiently, nervously, tensely, uneasily** *Their parents waited anxiously for news.* | **breathlessly, expectantly, with bated breath** *I waited with bated breath for what would happen next.* | **about, around**
- VERB + WAIT **have to, must** *You'll have to wait until you're older.* | **can/could hardly, can't/couldn't** *I can hardly wait for my holiday!* ◇ *I can't wait to see their new baby.*
- PREP. **for** *I'm waiting for a bus.* **till/until** *We'll have to wait until it stops raining.*
- PHRASES **keep sb waiting** *I'm sorry to have kept you waiting.* **wait a long time** *She had to wait a long time for the right man to come along.* **wait a minute/moment** *Hey! Wait a minute! I'll come with you!* **wait and see** *We'll wait and see what the weather's like before we make a decision.*

waiter, waitress *noun*

- ADJ. **head** *the head waiter in a large restaurant* |

hotel, restaurant | **wine** | **passing** *She ordered a large vodka and tonic from a passing waiter.* | **hovering** (*literary, disapproving*), **obsequious** *He didn't fancy spending hours in the restaurant, surrounded by hovering waiters.*

- VERB + WAITER, WAITRESS **beckon (to), call (over), signal (to), summon (over), wave over** *He casually waved over the waitress and settled the bill.*
- WAITER, WAITRESS + VERB **arrive with sth, bring (sb) sth, serve (sb) sth** *A waitress arrived with the wine they had ordered.*
- WAITER, WAITRESS + NOUN **service** *Lunch is a buffet meal, while dinner is waiter service.*
- PHRASES **catch the waiter/waitress's eye** *I tried to catch the waiter's eye to ask for our bill.*

⇨ Note at JOB

wake, waken *verb*

1 stop being asleep

- ADV. **early, late** *She had woken even earlier than usual.* | **suddenly** | **up** *I woke up quite late this morning.*
- PREP. **from** *She had just woken up from a deep sleep.*
- PHRASES **wake (up) to find sth** *Any minute now she'd wake up to find herself at home safe in bed.* **wake (up) with a start** *She woke with a start from a terrible nightmare.*

2 make sb stop sleeping

- ADV. **gently** *I woke him gently.* | **up**
- VERB + WAKE, WAKEN **be careful not to** *Be careful not to wake the children!*

walk *noun*

1 trip on foot

- ADJ. **brief, little, short** *We took a brief walk around the old quarter.* | **good, long, long-distance, marathon** *It's a good (= fairly long) walk to the town centre, so I usually cycle.* ◇ *We went for a long walk after breakfast.* ◇ *He's done several long-distance walks for charity.* | **three-minute, five minutes', etc.** *It's a five-minute walk from the lecture theatre to the restaurant.* ◇ *We live just a few minutes' walk from the station.* | **brisk, vigorous** *The doctor advised a brisk walk every day.* | **easy, gentle, leisurely** | **hard, strenuous** | **exhilarating, lovely, pleasant, pretty** | **twenty-minute, two-mile, etc.** | **after-dinner, afternoon, daily, evening, etc.** | **solitary** *She used to enjoy solitary walks along the cliffs.* | **romantic** | **guided** *We went on a guided walk of the city in the afternoon.* | **charity, sponsored** *She's doing a 200-mile sponsored walk in aid of cancer research.* | **circular** | **coastal, country, forest, hill, lakeside, nature, riverside, woodland** | **space, tightrope** *the anniversary of the first space walk*
- VERB + WALK **do, go for, go on, have, take** *The book contains circular walks you can do in half a day.* ◇ *We'll go for a walk before lunch.* ◇ *We went on a ten-mile walk along the coast.* | **take sb/sth for** *She takes her dog for a walk every evening.* | **break** *They broke their walk at a pub by the river.* | **continue, resume**
- WALK + VERB **take sb/sth** *The walk takes two hours.* ◇ *The walk takes you past a lot of interesting buildings.*
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *He met her on one of his Sunday afternoon walks.* **within (a) ~** *All amenities are within an easy walk of the hotel.* | **~ from, ~ to**
- PHRASES **a walk around** *I had a little walk around to calm my nerves.*

2 style of walking

- ADJ. **funny, silly** | **jaunty** | **mincing** | **loose-limbed** | **ungainly** | **fast** | **sedate, slow, stately**
- VERB + WALK **do, have** *She did a silly walk to amuse her friends.* ◇ *He has a mincing walk, fast with short steps.*

3 a walk speed of walking

- VERB + WALK **slow to** | **move off at, set off at** *The horses set off at a walk.*

walk *verb*

- ADV. **briskly, fast, quickly, swiftly** | **slowly** | **calmly, quietly** *I got up and walked calmly out into the early evening.* | **cautiously** | **barefoot** *She had no sandals and walked barefoot.* | **ahead, away, back, backwards, forward, in, on, out, together** *Jake was walking some way ahead.*
- PREP. **along, down, into, out of, to, towards, up, etc.** *She walked cautiously up the drive towards the door.*
- PHRASES **go walking** *For our holiday we went walking in the Lake District.*

wall *noun*

- ADJ. **high, low** | **long, short** | **thick, thin** | **massive** | **back, front, side** | **bare, blank** *to stare at a blank wall* | **exterior, external, outer, outside** | **inner, inside, interior, internal** | **adjoining** | **dividing, partition, party** | **boundary, perimeter** | **retaining** *They built a retaining wall around the pond.* | **load-bearing** *If a load-bearing wall is weakened, the building could fall down.* | **pannelled** | **bathroom, kitchen, etc.** | **brick, masonry, stone, etc.** | **city, garden, harbour, sea**
- VERB + WALL **build, erect, put up** | **demolish, destroy, pull down** | **climb (over), scale** *The burglars must have scaled the side wall.* | **jump down from, jump over** | **cover, line, paint, paper, plaster** *She covered her walls with pictures of film stars.*
- WALL + VERB **stand** | **enclose sth, surround sth** | **face sth** *the wall facing the door*
- WALL + NOUN **clock, light** | **cupboard, unit** | **covering, decoration, hanging, tile**
- PREP. **against a/the ~** *She leant against the wall.* **behind a/the ~** *Nobody can see behind the wall.* **on a/the ~** *She hung the photos on the wall.* | **~ along** *the wall along the seafront* **~ around/round** *high walls around the prison* **~ of** (*figurative*) *a solid wall of fog*

wallet *noun*

- ADJ. **bulging, fat, stuffed** *He pulled a £10 note out of his fat wallet.* ◇ *a wallet stuffed with fifty-pound notes*
- VERB + WALLET **get out, pull out, take out** | **put away**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *He carried a photo of his children in his wallet.*

wallpaper *noun*

- ADJ. **faded, peeling** | **floral, flowery, patterned, striped** | **flock, textured**
- QUANT. **roll** *six rolls of wallpaper*
- VERB + WALLPAPER **hang** | **be covered/hung with** | **strip (off), take off**
- WALLPAPER + NOUN **paste**

waltz *noun*

- ADJ. **slow** | **Viennese**
- VERB + WALTZ **dance, do** | **play**
- WALTZ + NOUN **rhythm, time**

wander *verb*

1 move slowly around a place /go from place to place

- ADV. **slowly** | **aimlessly** | **disconsolately, restlessly** | **happily** | **at will, freely** *The cattle are allowed to wander freely.* | **just, simply** *Simply wandering is a pleasure in itself.* | **far, further (afield)** *One day she wandered further afield.* | **about, across, along, around/round, away, back, in, off, out, over** *He just wandered in one day and asked for a job.*
- VERB + WANDER **be free to** *Visitors are free to wander through the gardens and woods.* | **allow sb/sth to, let sb/sth** *How could you let him wander off like that?*
- PREP. **across, all over, along, among, around, into,**

out of, round, through, towards *Don't go wandering all over the house!* ◇ *He wandered into a bar and ordered a drink.*

- PHRASES **find sb wandering** *They found him wandering around aimlessly.*

2 stop concentrating

- ADV. **a little**
- VERB + WANDER **begin to** *His attention was beginning to wander.* | **allow sth to, let sth** *Lissa let her mind wander a little.*
- PREP. **from, to** *My thoughts wandered from the exam questions to my interview the next day.*

wane *verb*

- ADV. **a little, somewhat** *Her popularity was waning somewhat.* | **gradually, rapidly**
- VERB + WANE **begin to** *Her initial enthusiasm was clearly beginning to wane.*
- PHRASES **wax and wane** (= grow and then decrease) *Public interest in the issue has waxed and waned over the years.*

want *noun*

- ADJ. **human**
- VERB + WANT **meet, satisfy, see to** *a society that satisfied all human wants*
- PREP. **for ~ of** *Refugees are dying for want of proper health care.* **in ~** *Thousands of children are living in want.*

want *verb*

- ADV. **badly, desperately, really** | **just, only, simply** *I just want you to be happy.* | **genuinely, truly** *If you truly want to help, just do as I say.* | **always** *Thanks for the present—it's just what I've always wanted.*
- PHRASES **all you want** *All I want is the truth.* **exactly/just what you want**

war *noun*

- ADJ. **long, short** | **bloody** | **all-out, full-scale, total** *Six years of total war had left no citizen untouched.* | **limited** | **holy, just** | **civil, global, world** | **air, guerrilla** | **atomic, nuclear** | **cold** | **economic, trade** | **price** | **class**
- VERB + WAR **be in, fight in** *My grandfather fought in two world wars.* | **fight, make, wage** *The two countries fought a short but bloody war.* ◇ *The Spartans were persuaded to make war on Athens.* ◇ *The terrorists were charged with waging war against the state.* | **win** | **lose** | **declare** | **go to** *The country went to war in 1914.* | **avert, prevent** | **be ravaged by**
- WAR + VERB **approach, loom, threaten** | **begin, break out, come, erupt, start** | **escalate, spread** *talks to prevent the war from escalating* | **continue, drag on, go on, last, progress, rage (on)** *The war raged for nearly two years.* | **come to an end, end**
- WAR + NOUN **years** *the shortage of food during the war years* | **hero, veteran** | **chief, leader** | **casualty, victim** | **damage** | **correspondent** *the war correspondent of a daily newspaper* | **artist, poet** | **zone** | **effort** *Every available resource went towards the war effort.* | **record** *Both candidates have distinguished war records.* | **wound** | **crime, criminal** | **graves, memorial** | **alms** | **damages, reparations** | **baby, bride, widow** | **booty** | **cry, dance** | **machine** *the Soviet war machine*
- PREP. **at ~** *a country at war* **between the ~s** (= between the First and Second World Wars), **in (a/the) ~** *killed in war* ◇ *He took part in the Vietnam War.* | **~ against/with** *the war against the French* ◇ *a war against drug abuse* **~ between** *war between Iran and Iraq* **~ on** *The US declared war on Japan.* **~ with** *a trade war with the United States*
- PHRASES **the horrors of war** *The country had just emerged from the horrors of civil war.* **in a state of war, in time/times of war** *In times of war, troops were billeted in the mill.* **on a war footing** *The army had been placed on a war footing.* **the brink of war** *The crisis took Europe to the brink of war.* **the outbreak of war** *At the outbreak of war, most children were evacuated to the countryside.* **a theatre of war** *These aircraft are designed to take troops and weapons to any theatre of war in the shortest time possible.* **a war of attrition**

ward *noun*

- ADJ. **open, public** | **private** | **hospital** | **maternity, surgical, etc.**
- VERB + WARD **be admitted to** *He was admitted to the casualty ward.* | **be discharged from**
- WARD + NOUN **nurse, sister, staff** | **round** *The doctor was doing her morning ward round.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She spent five days in the maternity ward.* **on the ~** *How many midwives are on the ward?*

warden *noun*

- ADJ. **chief, head** | **deputy** | **church, college, prison** | **park** | **game** *He is chief game warden of the Masai Mara game reserve in Kenya.* | **traffic** | **dog**

⇨ Note at JOB

wardrobe *noun*

1 large cupboard for clothes

- ADJ. **built-in, fitted** | **double** | **walk-in**
- VERB + WARDROBE **open** | **close**
- WARDROBE + NOUN **door**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *She hung the dress up in the wardrobe.*

2 sb's collection of clothes

- ADJ. **new** | **extensive** | **autumn, spring, etc.**
- VERB + WARDROBE **have** | **buy** *I want to buy a whole new summer wardrobe.*

warehouse *noun*

- ADJ. **30 000 sq ft, etc.** | **bonded** *The whisky was taken to bonded warehouses at Port Dundee.* | **distribution, retail, wholesale** | **furniture, goods, grain, whisky, etc.** | **abandoned, derelict, disused** | **dockside, riverside**
- VERB + WAREHOUSE **burn down**
- WAREHOUSE + VERB **burn down**
- WAREHOUSE + NOUN **foreman, manager, staff, worker** *He's a warehouse foreman for a removals firm.*

wares *noun*

- ADJ. **ceramic, metal, etc.** | **domestic, household**
- VERB + WARES **sell** | **hawk, peddle, shout, show (off)** *street traders hawking their wares*

warfare *noun*

- ADJ. **open** *Rivalry between football fans developed into open warfare.* | **conventional, modern** | **biological, chemical, germ, nuclear** | **class, gang, internecine, tribal** | **guerrilla, siege, trench** | **aerial, air, naval, submarine** | **jungle, mountain** | **economic, ideological, psychological** *a subtle form of psychological warfare*
- VERB + WARFARE **engage in**
- PREP. **~ against** *warfare against other tribes* **~ between** *warfare between gangs*

warm *verb*

- ADV. **thoroughly** | **gently** | **gradually, slowly** | **rapidly, soon** *We soon warmed up in front of the fire.* | **suddenly** *His voice suddenly warmed.* | **through, up** *Return the bowl to the heat to warm through.*

warm *adj.*

1 at a fairly high temperature

• VERBS **be, feel, look | get, grow** *How can we get warm? ◇ She felt her face grow warm at his remarks.* | **keep, stay** *She tries to keep warm by sitting right next to the fire. ◇ The bread should stay warm for at least half an hour.* | **keep sb/sth** *These will keep your feet warm.* | **serve sth** *Bake for 15 minutes and serve warm with Greek yogurt.*

• ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, particularly, really, very | almost** *It was a mild day, almost warm.* | **just** *Add the soured cream and cook, stirring, until just warm.* | **faintly, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively, slightly | enough, sufficiently** *Are you sure you'll be warm enough dressed like that?* | **beautifully, blissfully, comfortably, deliciously, pleasantly, wonderfully** *sliding further down into the blissfully warm bed* | **uncomfortably** *The room seemed uncomfortably warm.* | **surprisingly | unseasonably, unusually** *The night air was soft and unseasonably warm.*

• PHRASES **nice (and) warm** *Come and have a nice warm drink by the fire. ◇ That jacket looks nice and warm.*

2 friendly

• VERBS **be, sound | become**

• ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, immensely, marvellously, really, very** *an immensely warm and friendly person* | **genuinely | surprisingly**

warmth *noun*

1 a fairly high temperature

• ADJ. **comfortable, delicious, enveloping, glowing, pleasant, seductive, welcome** *He moved towards the seductive warmth of the fire.* | **gentle** *the gentle warmth of the autumn sun* | **bodily, body** *This clothing maintains your body warmth.*

• VERB + WARMTH **feel** *She could feel the warmth of the child's hand in her own.* | **bask in, enjoy, revel in** *We lay on the beach, basking in the warmth of the hot sun.* | **add** *(figurative) Autumn colours add warmth to a room.*

• WARMTH + VERB **spread** *She sat by the fire and felt the warmth spread through her body.*

• PREP. **for ~** *They found the children huddled together for warmth.* | **~ from** *warmth from the radiator*

2 friendliness or kindness

• ADJ. **genuine, real | friendly | human, personal** *She seems to be a person without human warmth.*

• VERB + WARMTH **exude, radiate, show** *a person who radiates warmth and kindness* | **be lacking in, lack**

warn *verb*

• ADV. **firmly | clearly | bluntly** *The chancellor bluntly warned the Cabinet to axe public spending or face higher taxes.* | **sternly | softly** *'Don't,' he warned softly.* | **specifically** *We were specifically warned against buying the house.* | **duly** *Having been duly warned that I would get nowhere with my application, I went right ahead and applied anyway.* | **constantly, repeatedly** *My mother constantly warned me not to go into teaching.* | **publicly**

• VERB + WARN **had better, have to, must, should** *I must warn you that some of these animals are extremely dangerous. ◇ I thought I should warn her about it.* | **try to** *I did try to warn you.* | **fail to** *She claimed doctors had failed to warn her of the risks involved.*

• PREP. **about** *No one had warned us about the unbearable heat.* **against** *We were warned against drinking the local water.* **of** *The report warns of the dangers of smoking. ◇ They warned us of the risks involved.*

• PHRASES **be warned** *You will get better—but be warned, it may be a long process.*

warning *noun*

• ADJ. **awful, dire, grim, ominous, stark, stern, strong** *There were dire warnings about the dangers of watching too much TV.* | **urgent | adequate, advance, ample, due, early, fair, prior** *I need advance warning of how many people to cater for.* | **clear, direct | coded** *The explosion came 20 minutes after a coded warning to police.* | **initial | final** *The referee fave him a final warning.* | **formal, government, official | salutary, timely, useful** *The team's defeat is a salutary warning before the World Cup.* | **friendly | veiled** *Her words sounded like a veiled warning.* | **audible, visual** *There is an audible warning when a certain speed is exceeded.* | **verbal, written** *His employers have placed him on final written warning.* | **air-raid, bomb, fire, flood, gale, hazard, storm** *There are 39 severe flood warnings on 22 rivers across the country.* | **health, safety** *Every cigarette packet carries a health warning.*

• VERB + WARNING **give (sb), issue** *The police have issued a warning about pickpockets.* | **shout (out), sound** *The sirens sound a warning when fighter planes are sighted. ◇ The strike sounded a warning to all employers in the industry.* | **reiterate, repeat | be, serve as** *Let this be a warning to you not to trespass on my land again! ◇ What happened to him should serve as a warning to all dishonest politicians.* | **get, receive | ignore | heed** *They failed to heed a warning about the dangerous currents in the river.*

• WARNING + VERB **come** *The warning came just minutes before the bomb exploded.* | **sound** *On 2 April 1916 air-raid warnings sounded throughout Edinburgh.*

• WARNING + NOUN **notice, sign** *Red marks on the skin may be a warning sign for this disease.* | **bell, device, light, signal, system**

• PREP. **in ~** *The dog growled in warning as we approached.* **without ~** *He left his wife without warning.* | **~ about** *a warning about teaching children to swim* **~ against** *a warning against complacency* **~ of** *They sent us fair warning of their arrival.* **~ to** *The police issued a warning to all drug users in the city.*

• PHRASES **a word of warning** *He gave us a word of warning about going out alone at night.*

warrant *noun*

• ADJ. **arrest, death, search** *The king refused to sign the death warrant for his old friend.* | **royal**

• VERB + WARRANT **authorize, grant, issue, serve, sign** *The commissioner has issued a warrant for her arrest. ◇ The police served a warrant on him.* | **get, obtain | execute** *Police who executed a search warrant found a substantial amount of stolen property on the premises.*

• WARRANT + NOUN **card**

• PHRASES **without a ~** *In certain circumstances, police may enter premises without a warrant.* | **~ for**

warrant *verb*

• ADV. **hardly** *The TV appearance was so brief that it hardly warranted comment.*

• VERB + WARRANT **be important/serious/severe enough to** *They do not consider the case serious enough to warrant a government enquiry.*

warranty *noun*

• ADJ. **general | specific** *We can not give a specific warranty for the work done on your property.* | **six-month, two-year, year's, etc.**

• VERB + WARRANTY **give, provide | come with** *The computer comes with a year's warranty on all parts.*

• WARRANTY + VERB **cover sth** *Corrosion is not covered by the warranty.* | **expire, run out**

• WARRANTY + NOUN **period | claim**

• PREP. **under ~** *Is your car still under warranty?* |

~ against *a warranty against storm damage* **~ on** *The warranty on my watch ran out just before it broke.*
- PHRASES **breach of warranty** *He took legal action against the company for breach of warranty.*

warrior *noun*

- ADJ. **formidable, great, mighty, noble | brave, valiant | famous, renowned**
- QUANT. **band**
- WARRIOR + VERB **fight**

warship *noun*

- ADJ. **modern | surface | naval | nuclear**
- QUANT. **fleet**
- VERB + WARSHIP **build | command | lose** *Germany lost two warships during this attack.*
- PREP. **aboard/on/on board a ~** *He is serving on a warship in the Pacific.*

wary *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get, grow | remain | make sb** *The strange look in his eyes made me wary of accepting his offer.*
- ADV. **decidedly, deeply, extremely, very | increasingly | a bit, a little, rather, slightly | instinctively | suddenly** *Paula frowned, suddenly wary.*
- PREP. **about** *Be wary about these so-called special offers.* **of** *You should be very wary of people offering cheap tickets.*
- PHRASES **keep a wary eye on sb/sth** (*often figurative*) *The Venetians knew to keep a wary eye on Spanish imperial ambitions.*

wash *noun*

- ADJ. **good | quick | car**
- VERB + WASH **have** *He had a quick wash and shave.* | **do** *I'm doing a dark wash* (= washing all the dark clothes together). | **could do with, need** *That car could do with a good wash.*
- PREP. **in the ~** (= being washed or waiting to be washed) *Your shirt's in the wash.*

wash *verb*

- ADV. **carefully, properly, thoroughly | gently** *She gently washed and dressed the wound.* | **quickly**
- PHRASES **freshly/newly washed** *the smell of freshly washed hair*

washing *noun*

1 cleaning sth with water
- ADJ. **frequent** *shampoo for frequent washing* | **hand** *I have quite a bit of hand washing to do.*
- VERB + WASHING **do**
- WASHING + NOUN **powder**

2 clothes
- ADJ. **dirty**
- QUANT. **line** *A line of washing fluttered in the breeze.* **pile** *piles of dirty washing*
- VERB + WASHING **hang out, put out** *Have you got any pegs so I can hang the washing out?*
- WASHING + NOUN **line**

washing machine *noun*

- ADJ. **automatic**
- VERB + WASHING MACHINE **load | empty, unload | run** *How often do you run your washing machine?*
- PREP. **in/into a/the ~**

washing-up *noun*

- VERB + WASHING-UP **do | leave** *Leave the washing-up—we can do it in the morning.*
- WASHING-UP + NOUN **bowl | liquid**

wasp *noun*

- WASP + VERB **fly, crawl | sting sb | buzz**
- WASP + NOUN **sting**
- PHRASES **a wasp's nest**

wastage *noun*

- ADJ. **excessive, high | natural** *Voluntary redundancies and natural wastage will cut staff numbers to the required level.* | **muscle** *Patients need exercise to prevent muscle wastage.*
- VERB + WASTAGE **avoid, prevent | minimize | cut down on, reduce | increase | allow for** *Buy more paper than you need to allow for wastage.*

waste *noun*

1 missing an opportunity to do/use sth
- ADJ. **absolute, complete, total, utter** *The whole thing has been a complete waste of time.* | **colossal, great, tremendous | awful, criminal, senseless, shocking, terrible** *a criminal waste of public money* | **needless, unnecessary, useless | tragic** *a tragic waste of human life* | **expensive | conspicuous**
- VERB + WASTE **go to** *If nobody comes all this food will go to waste.* | **cause | avoid** *Try to avoid unnecessary waste.* | **cut down on, reduce | minimize**
- PREP. **~ of** *a waste of energy/resources*

2 unwanted substances/things
- ADJ. **dangerous, harmful, hazardous, poisonous, toxic** *a dump containing hazardous waste* | **non-toxic | high-level, intermediate-level, low-level | recyclable | agricultural, commercial, industrial | domestic, household, kitchen** *All household waste should be disposed of in strong garbage bags.* | **clinical, hospital, medical | nuclear, radioactive | chemical | plastic | organic | animal, human | garden, plant | municipal | liquid, solid | food, energy**
- VERB + WASTE **produce** *Tonnes of waste are produced every year.* | **dispose of, dump, get rid of** *More people are dumping waste illegally.* | **clean up** *the highly expensive task of cleaning up toxic waste* | **burn, incinerate** *an incinerator for burning hospital waste* | **bury, store | process, treat** *facilities for processing radioactive waste* | **recycle, reprocess | deal with, handle, manage** *the best solutions for managing waste* | **cut down on, reduce | eliminate | export, import** *Industrialized countries continue to export their waste.*
- WASTE + VERB **contaminate sth, pollute sth** *areas contaminated by industrial waste*
- WASTE + NOUN **collection | burial, disposal, incineration | storage | processing, recycling, reprocessing, treatment** *a waste reprocessing plant* | **management | minimization, reduction | bin | dump, site, tip** *The river was used for years as an industrial waste dump.* | **outlet, pipe | imports** *a ban on waste imports*

3 **wastes** areas of ground not lived in or cultivated
- ADJ. **frozen, icy** *the frozen wastes of Antarctica*

waste *verb*

- ADV. **(not) entirely, (not) totally** *In the end her efforts were not entirely wasted.* | **just, simply** *You're just wasting your breath. She never listens.* | **largely**
- VERB + WASTE **can't afford to, not want to** *He didn't want to waste valuable time in idle gossip.* | **be/seem a shame to** *It seems a shame to waste this good food.* | **not be going to** *I'm not going to waste any more time on the problem.*

• PREP. **on** *Don't waste your money on a hotel room.*

• PHRASES **no time to waste** *Hurry up—there's no time to waste!*

watch *noun*

1 instrument for telling the time

• ADJ. **digital | fob, pocket, wrist** (also **wristwatch**) **| sports**

• VERB + WATCH **check, consult, glance at, look at | put back/forward** *We put our watches forward eight hours before landing in Tokyo.* **| set** *Don't forget to set your watch to local time.* **| wind** *Quartz watches don't need winding.* **| have on, wear | put on | take off**

• WATCH + VERB **go** *My watch is ten years old and it's still going.* **| stop** *Sorry I'm late—my watch has stopped.* **| be slow, lose sth** *My watch loses a minute each day.* **| be fast, gain sth | say sth** *My watch says three o'clock.*

• WATCH + NOUN **face | band** (also **watchband**)**, strap**

2 guard

• ADJ. **careful, close** *I kept a close watch on my bag as I sat on the train.* **| constant, round-the-clock | night**

• VERB + WATCH **keep, stand** *Two soldiers were ordered to keep watch for enemy aircraft.* **| put** *The garrison commander had put an extra watch on the prisoners.*

• WATCH + NOUN **committee | tower**

• PREP. **on ~** *Some of the crew were sleeping, while others were on watch.* **on the ~ for** *Cats are constantly on the watch for mice or other small mammals.*

watch *verb*

• ADV. **carefully, closely, intently** *She watched the man closely to see where he would go.* **| idly | impassively, numbly | anxiously, helplessly, warily** *She watched helplessly as her husband was dragged away.* **| open-mouthed | covertly | in silence, silently | just** *I love just watching the world go by.*

• VERB + WATCH **could only** *They could only watch in silence as their possessions were taken away.* **| continue to | pause to, stop to** *They stopped to watch the procession go by.* **| love to | let sb** *He let me watch while he assembled the model.* **| make sb** *The women were made to watch while their children were slaughtered.*

• PREP. **for** *We watched for any sign of change in the weather.* **from** *They watched from an upstairs window.* **in** *She watched in astonishment as he smashed the machine to pieces.* **with** *He watched with great interest how she coaxed the animals towards her.*

• PHRASES **sit/stand and watch** *She stood and watched them walk off down the road.*

watchdog *noun*

• ADJ. **consumer | financial, health, industry, pollution, safety | government, independent, official**

• VERB + WATCHDOG **act as, be**

• WATCHDOG + NOUN **body, group, organization | role**

• PREP. **~ for** *a consumer watchdog for transport* **~ on** *the government's official watchdog on nature conservation* **~ over** *The committee acts as an independent watchdog over government spending.*

water *noun*

1 liquid

• ADJ. **boiling, cold, hot, ice-cold, lukewarm, tepid, warm | clean, clear, crystal-clear, pure | dirty | fresh | brackish, salt** *These fish will quickly die in salt water.* **| salty** *Abscesses should be bathed in warm salty water.* **| salted** *Cook the pasta in plenty of boiling salted water.* **| hard, soft | flowing, running** *the fast-flowing water of the river ◇ All the rooms have hot and cold running water.* **| river, sea | surface** *The surface water made the road treacherous for drivers.* **| drinking | tap** *Avoid drinking the tap water when you first arrive in the country.* **| bottled, mineral, spring | waste | scarce**

• QUANT. **drop**

• VERB + WATER **drink | pour | slosh, spill, splash, spray, sprinkle, spurt, squirt** *Don't slosh too much water on the floor when you're having a bath. ◇ The burst pipe was spurting water everywhere.* **| filter, purify | contaminate, pollute | turn off/on** *They turned the water off for a few hours to do some work on the pipes.*

• WATER + VERB **flow, pour, run | gush, spurt** *Brown water gushed out of the rusty old tap.* **| drip, trickle** *There was water dripping from a hole in the ceiling.* **| lap, slosh, spill, splash, spray, squirt** *Water had got into the boat and was sloshing about under our feet.* **| boil, freeze**

• WATER + NOUN **vapour | temperature | pressure | supply | resources | quality | purification, treatment | filter | pollution | shortage | level | table** *Building can be difficult where the water table lies close to the surface.* **| power | company, industry**

• PHRASES **water-repellent** *water-repellent leather* **water-resistant** *a water-resistant watch*

2 mass of water

• ADJ. **deep, shallow | clear | muddy, murky, stagnant | calm, placid, still** *the calm waters of Lake Como* **| choppy, rough, stormy | dangerous, safe** *At last the boat reached safer waters.* **| flood** *The flood water had caused tremendous damage.* **| rising** *They climbed a tree to escape the rising water.* **| bathing**

• WATER + NOUN **sports**

• PREP. **by ~** *Many goods were transported by water in the last century.* **in the ~** *I saw something large floating in the water.* **on the ~** *The swan landed gracefully on the water.* **through the ~** *The boat cut effortlessly through the water.* **under the ~** *An abandoned village lies under the water of the reservoir.*

• PHRASES **the water's edge** *She crouched at the water's edge to wash her hands.*

3 waters sea

• ADJ. **territorial | coastal | tropical | northern, southern | Antarctic, Arctic | Atlantic, Pacific, etc. | home, foreign, international | Japanese, etc. | uncharted** *The ship had drifted into uncharted waters.*

• PREP. **in/into … ~** *The submarine had strayed into Russian waters.*

waterfall *noun*

• ADJ. **great, high | impressive, magnificent, spectacular | small**

• WATERFALL + VERB **cascade, pour down, tumble** *She watched the magnificent waterfall cascade down the mountainside.*

watershed *noun*

• ADJ. **important, major, significant | cultural, historical, political**

• VERB + WATERSHED **be, mark, represent | reach**

• WATERSHED + VERB **divide sth** *Darwin's theory of evolution was a watershed dividing the old way of thinking from the new.*

• PREP. **~ between** *The 19th century marked a watershed between the country's agricultural past and its industrial future.* **~ for** *The granting of the vote represented a watershed for the rights of women.* **~ in** *With the strike, a historical watershed in the development of the trade union movement was reached.*

wave *noun*

1 on water

• ADJ. **big, enormous, giant, great, huge, mountainous**

| small, tiny | white-capped, white-crested, white-topped | breaking | tidal *Several villages have been destroyed by a huge tidal wave.*

- VERB + WAVE **ride** *Surfers flocked to the beach to ride the waves.*
- WAVE + VERB **rise | break, fall** *We watched the waves breaking on the shore.* **| lap** *the gentle sound of waves lapping the sand* **| crash, roar, smash** *I could hear the waves crash against the rocks.*
- WAVE + NOUN **energy, power**
- PREP. **in the ~s** *children playing in the waves* **on the ~s** *There were seagulls bobbing on the waves.*
- PHRASES **the crash/crashing/lap/lapping of the waves, the crest of a wave** (*often figurative*) *She is on the crest of a wave at the moment following her Olympic success.*

2 movement of energy

- ADJ. **electromagnetic, light, radio, seismic, shock, sound**
- VERB + WAVE **emit, generate | deflect**
- WAVE + VERB **bounce off sth, travel** *Sound waves bounce off objects in their path.*

3 increase/spread

- ADJ. **big, enormous, huge, massive | fresh, new, next, recent | first, second, etc.** *the first wave of immigration in the 1950s* **| crime**
- VERB + WAVE **send** *Hearing the tune again sent waves of longing through her.*
- WAVE + VERB **sweep (over) sth, wash over/through sb/sth** *With the fall of the Bastille in 1789, a wave of euphoria swept over Europe.* ◇ *A wave of relief washed over him as he saw that the children were safe.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a big wave of refugees*

4 hand movement

- ADJ. **quick | cheery, friendly | farewell, parting**
- VERB + WAVE **give (sb), return** *I returned his wave and started to walk towards him.*
- PREP. **with a ~ | ~ of** *He dismissed her thanks with a quick wave of the hand.*

wave *verb*

- ADV. **gently** *reeds waving gently in the breeze* **| vigorously | cheerfully, cheerily, happily | frantically, wildly** *They stood by the side of the road and waved frantically.* **| vaguely** *He waved a hand vaguely in the air.* **| dismissively | about/around, aside, back, on, through** *She waved cheerfully and he waved back.* ◇ *The guards waved us on.*
- VERB + WAVE **turn and/to** *He turned to wave to his mother.*
- PREP. **at** *We waved at the people on the shore.* **to** *They waved to us as we passed.* ◇ *She waved him to a seat.*
- PHRASES **wave (sb) goodbye** *people waving goodbye to their friends and relatives*

wavelength *noun*

- ADJ. **long, medium, short | infrared, ultraviolet | visible | acoustic, radio**
- VERB + WAVELENGTH **tune in to**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *Radio One has broadcast on this wavelength for years.*

way *noun*

1 method/style

- ADJ. **convenient, easy, effective, efficient, good, ideal, practical, quick, useful** *The best way to open it is with pliers.* **| appropriate, proper, right | wrong | normal | traditional | obvious | important** *The most important way to stop accidental drownings is by education.* **| subtle** *There is no subtle way to tell someone that you no longer want them.* **| possible** *They've explored every possible way of dealing with the problem.* **| alternative, different | similar | new | old | funny, mysterious, odd, strange** *God works in mysterious ways.* **| hard** *He learned about the dangers of drugs the hard way.* **| friendly | winning** *The team got back to their winning ways with a 2–1 victory.*
- QUANT. **number** *There are a number of ways to overcome this problem.*
- VERB + WAY **have** *Fate has a way of changing the best of plans.* **| get into, get out of** *The women had got into the way of going up on the deck every evening.* **| explore, look at** *to look at ways of improving language teaching* **| develop, devise, find | change, mend** *Your father is unlikely to change his ways now.* **| be set in** *Grandma is so set in her ways.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Can I help you in any way?*
- PHRASES **in a big way** *He then started spending money in a big way.* **in every way** *They're different in every way.* **in more ways than one** *They're alike in more ways than one.* **in its/your own way** *He was attractive in his own way.* **a kind/sort of way** *He was a handsome man in a sinister sort of way.* **(in) one way or another** *Most people are creative in one way or another.* **a way of life** *the beliefs and practices of the Hindu way of life* **ways and means** *Newspapers have ways and means of getting hold of secret information.*

2 route/road

- ADJ. **best, quickest, right, shortest | wrong | own, separate** (*figurative*) *He's always gone his own way when it comes to design.* **| covered** *We walked along the covered way to the science building.*
- VERB + WAY **go** *I'm going your way, so we can walk together.* ◇ (*figurative*) *When we finished school, we all went our separate ways.* **| go out of** (*figurative*) *She went out of her way to help them.* **| keep/stay out of** (*figurative*) *Let's keep out of her way while she's in such a bad mood.* **| bar, block, get in, stand in** *A fallen tree blocked the way.* ◇ (*figurative*) *He wanted to go to university and would let nothing stand in his way.* **| clear, pave, prepare, smooth** (*all figurative*) *The withdrawal of troops should clear the way for a peace settlement.* **| give, make** (= allow sb/sth to go first or take your place) *Give way to traffic already on the roundabout.* ◇ *Make way for the Lord Mayor!* ◇ *Tropical forest is felled to make way for grassland.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The storm gave way to bright sunshine.* **| edge, feel, inch, make, push, thread, weave, wend, wind, work** *He edged his way along the wall.* ◇ *The river wound its way through the valley.* **| cut, elbow, fight, force, hack, pick, shoulder** *We picked our way carefully over the jagged rocks.* ◇ (*figurative*) *She fought her way up to the top of the company.* **| bluff, talk, trick** (*figurative*) *She bluffed her way through the exam.* **| lose** *She lost her way in the fog.* ◇ (*figurative*) *This project seems to have lost its way.* **| find** *He couldn't find a way through the bracken.* ◇ (*figurative*) *We will eventually find a way out of the crisis.* **| ask (sb)** *She asked him the way to the station.* **| tell sb | know** *Do you know the way?* **| come** (*figurative*) *Have any interesting articles come your way recently?*
- PREP. **along the ~** *We saw a dreadful accident along the way.* **in the/your ~** *There were several rocks in the way.* **out of the/your ~** *Could you please get those boxes out of my way?* **on the/your ~** *We stopped for a snack on the way here.* **out of the/your ~** *The supermarket is a bit out of my way.* **| ~ across** *The way across the fields is longer but pleasanter.* **~ from, ~ out of** *Can you tell me the way out of here?* **~ through** *The way through the woods is quicker.* **~ to** *the easiest way from my house to yours*
- PHRASES **take the easy way out** *He took the easy way out and paid someone to write the article for him.* **the way back/down/forward/here/home/in/out/over/there/up** *We stopped for a drink on the way home.*

3 direction/position

- ADJ. **both** *Look both ways before crossing the road.* | **right** | **wrong** *They've gone the wrong way.*
- VERB + WAY **go** *Which way did she go?* | **lead, point, show** *He showed us the way.* | **walk** *Walk this way, please.* | **look** *He looked my way, but didn't seem to recognize me.*
- PHRASES **the ... way round/up** *Try it the other way round.* ◇ *Which way up does this box go?*

4 distance in space/time

- ADJ. **long** | **little, short**
- VERB + WAY **come, go** *We had to go a long way before we found a telephone box.* ◇ *(figurative) The study of genes has come a long way in recent years.*
- PREP. **~from, ~to** *It's quite a way from my house to the shops.*
- PHRASES **all the way** *This bus doesn't go all the way so you'll have to change.* **quite a/some way, a ... way ahead/away/off** *Your birthday is still some way off.*

weak *adj.*

- VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, go** | **remain** | **leave sb, make sb** *When the spasm passed, it left him weak and sweating.*
- ADV. **decidedly, extremely, fundamentally, particularly, very** | **a bit, comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively** | **curiously** *He complained of feeling curiously weak and faint.* | **surprisingly** | **dangerously** | **lamentably** | **suddenly** *Her legs felt suddenly weak.* | **inherently** *The judge decided the evidence was inherently weak and inconsistent.* | **economically, mentally, militarily, physically, politically**
- PREP. **at** *She's rather weak at maths.* **from** *She was weak from shock.* **in** *He's weak in English.* **on** *The essay was a bit weak on detail.* **with** *He was weak with hunger.*
- PHRASES **weak at the knees** *His sudden smile made her go weak at the knees.*

weaken *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, greatly, seriously, severely, significantly, substantially** | **fatally** *The regime was fatally weakened by the unrest and violence.* | **further** | **slightly, somewhat** | **gradually, progressively** *Central authority has been progressively weakened since the outbreak of the civil war.* | **permanently**
- VERB + WEAKEN **begin to** | **serve to** *The division of Germany had served to weaken the party.* | **tend to** | **be designed to** *an unusual move designed to weaken the rebels*

weakness *noun*

1 lack of strength

- ADJ. **big, fundamental, great, major, serious, significant** | **small** | **physical** | **structural** | **personal** | **muscular** | **political** | **apparent, perceived** *exploiting apparent weaknesses in the system* | **inherent** | **human**
- VERB + WEAKNESS **have, suffer from** | **cause, create** | **exploit** | **assess, identify** | **highlight, point out, reveal** | **minimize, overcome**
- WEAKNESS + VERB **be, lie** *The greatest weakness of the scheme lies in its lack of government support.*
- PREP. **~in** *Service conditions soon revealed the inherent weaknesses in the vehicle's design.*
- PHRASES **a moment of weakness** *In a moment of weakness I let him drive my car.* **a sign of weakness** *He saw compromise as a sign of weakness.* **strengths and weaknesses** *The appraisal system seeks to assess employees' strengths and weaknesses.*

2 liking for sth/sb

- ADJ. **real**
- VERB + WEAKNESS **have** *I've got a real weakness for chocolate.* | **develop** | **overcome**
- PREP. **~for** *He worries a lot about his weight, but can't overcome his weakness for fatty foods.*

wealth *noun*

1 money, property, etc.

- ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, untold, vast** | **growing, increasing** | **economic, financial, material, mineral, natural** *The country's strong economy was built on its mineral wealth.* ◇ *The region possesses a vast natural wealth, particularly of timber.* | **national, personal, private**
- VERB + WEALTH **have, possess** | **accumulate, acquire, inherit** | **lose** *He lost his wealth through poor investment.* | **create**
- PHRASES **a distribution/redistribution of wealth** *a redistribution of wealth through taxation*

2 **a wealth of** a lot of

- ADJ. **enormous, whole**
- VERB + WEALTH **have** *Switzerland has an enormous wealth of beautiful old buildings.*
- PREP. **of ... ~** *She is a woman of untold wealth.*

wealthy *adj.*

- VERBS **be, look** | **become, grow**
- ADV. **enormously, exceedingly, exceptionally, extremely, fabulously, immensely, incredibly, seriously** *(informal)*, **very** *He is now fabulously wealthy.* | **comparatively, fairly, quite, reasonably, relatively**

wean *verb*

- ADV. **gradually**
- VERB + WEAN **attempt to, try to**
- PREP. **(away) from** *trying to wean her away from gambling* **off** *They have gradually weaned him off the drugs.* **onto** *weaning a baby onto solid food*

weapon *noun*

- ADJ. **deadly, lethal, potent, powerful** *He was charged with assault with a deadly weapon.* | **effective, useful** | **heavy, light** *The assault forces used heavy weapons, including anti-tank rockets and mortars.* | **automatic** | **atomic, biological, chemical, nuclear** | **offensive, strategic, tactical** *She pleaded guilty to carrying an offensive weapon.* ◇ *a ban on the use of tactical nuclear weapons* | **murder** | **ultimate** *(often figurative) The workers' ultimate weapon was the strike.* | **secret** *(often figurative) The team's secret weapon was their new young defender.*
- VERB + WEAPON **be armed with, carry, have** | **deploy, fire, use** | **use sth as** *(often figurative) She used humour and wit as weapons against her enemies.* | **aim, point**
- WEAPON + NOUN **system** | **technology** *the illegal transfer of weapons technology to hostile countries*
- PREP. **~against** *(often figurative) This relaxation technique can serve as an effective weapon against stress.*

wear *noun*

1 use as clothing

- ADJ. **everyday, weekend** | **summer, winter**
- PREP. **in~** *Silk shirts always feel soft and light in wear.* **with~** *New shoes usually get more comfortable with wear.*
- PHRASES **years of wear** *This is a quality garment which should give years of wear.*

2 clothes

- ADJ. **day, evening** | **designer, fashion** | **casual, leisure, outdoor** | **bridal, maternity** | **children's, men's, women's**

3 long use

- ADJ. **hard, heavy**

- VERB + WEAR **withstand** *This flooring can withstand years of hard wear.*
- PREP. **… with ~** *The stairs had become slippery with wear.*
- PHRASES **centuries, years, etc. of wear** *The cathedral steps were polished smooth by centuries of wear.*

4 damage caused by long use

- ADJ. **excessive** | **engine, tyre, etc.**
- VERB + WEAR **show** *The tyres were beginning to show wear.* | **cause** | **minimize, reduce**
- WEAR + NOUN **pattern** *the analysis of wear patterns on prehistoric stone tools* | **guarantee** *The flooring comes with a 20-year wear guarantee.*
- PREP. **~ on** *This new oil reduces wear on the engine.*
- PHRASES **signs of wear, wear and tear**

wear *verb*

1 have a piece of clothing on

- ADV. **proudly** *proudly wearing their uniforms*
- VERB + WEAR **tend to** *I tend to wear a jacket to work.* | **refuse to** *She refused to wear prison clothes.* | **forbid sb to** | **be entitled to** *He is entitled to wear the regimental tie.*

2 last for a long time

- ADV. **badly, well** *Those curtains have worn very well.*

weariness *noun*

- ADJ. **great** | **sheer, utter** | **war**
- VERB + WEARINESS **succumb to** *She succumbed to weariness and went to bed.*
- WEARINESS + VERB **overtake sb, overwhelm sb**
- PREP. **… with ~** *I had slept badly and felt numb with weariness.* **in ~** *His eyes were half closing in weariness.* | **~ in** *He detected a note of weariness in her voice.*

weary *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, grow** *I've grown rather weary of all your excuses.*
- ADV. **very** | **almost** *His voice sounded almost weary.* | **a bit, a little, rather** *She looks a little weary.*
- PREP. **of** *The people are weary of war.*

weather *noun*

- ADJ. **beautiful, excellent, fair, fine, glorious, good, ideal, lovely, perfect, superb** | **adverse, appalling, atrocious, awful, bad, dismal, dreadful, foul, gloomy, grim, inclement, inhospitable, lousy, miserable, nasty, rotten, rough, terrible, vile, wretched** | **hot, humid, muggy, sultry, warm** | **mild** | **bright, clear, sunny** | **calm** | **dry** | **reliable, settled** | **changeable, fickle, uncertain, unpredictable, unsettled** | **extreme, fierce, harsh, severe, violent, wild** | **bitter, cold, freezing, frosty, icy, wintry** | **cool** | **cloudy, grey** | **damp, rainy, wet** | **foggy** | **blustery, stormy, windy** | **unseasonable/unseasonal, unseasonably/unseasonally …** *a spell of unseasonally wet weather.*
- QUANT. **spell**
- VERB + WEATHER **brave** *Deciding to brave the weather, he grabbed his umbrella and went out.*
- WEATHER + VERB **clear (up), improve, let up, warm up** *We'll go just as soon as this weather lets up.* | **hold out, keep up** *If the weather holds out we could go swimming later.* | **threaten** *Bad weather threatened.* | **break, deteriorate, worsen** *It was warm and sunny until the weekend, but then the weather broke.* | **become sth, get sth, turn sth** *Next day the weather turned cold.* | **remain sth, stay sth** | **close in, set in** *The weather closed in and the climbers had to take shelter.* ◇ *I wanted to mend the roof before the cold weather set in.* | **allow, permit** *I sat outside as often as the weather allowed.* ◇ *We're having a barbecue next Saturday, weather permitting.* (You cannot say 'weather allowing'.) | **prevent sth** *Stormy weather prevented any play in today's tennis.* | **change**
- WEATHER + NOUN **conditions** *The plane crashed into the sea in adverse weather conditions.* | **patterns, system** *the effects of global warming on the world's weather patterns* ◇ *The Atlantic weather systems had been kind.* | **forecast, report** | **data, records** | **satellite, station** | **chart, map**
- PHRASES **a change in the weather** *We hadn't bargained for such a dramatic change in the weather.* **in all weathers** *The lifeboat crews go out in all weathers.* **the vagaries of the weather** *She packed all kinds of clothes to cope with the vagaries of the English weather.* **whatever the weather** *He swims in the sea every day, whatever the weather.*

weather *verb*

1 pass safely through sth

- ADV. **successfully, well** *Their company had weathered the recession well.*
- VERB + WEATHER **manage to** (*figurative*) *The company has managed to weather the storm.*

2 change in appearance because of the sun/air/wind

- ADV. **badly** *Some of the stone has weathered quite badly.*

weave *verb*

- ADV. **specially** *The carpet was specially woven to commemorate the 1 000th anniversary of the cathedral's foundation.* | **skilfully** (*often figurative*) *Hall skilfully weaves the historical research into a gripping narrative.* | **inextricably, intricately** (*both figurative*) *The whisky is inextricably woven into Scotland's history, customs and culture.* | **together** *weaving the threads together*
- PREP. **from** *a basket woven from strips of willow* **into** *A pattern is woven into the fabric.*

web *noun*

1 that a spider makes

- ADJ. **spider/spider's**
- VERB + WEB **build, make, spin, weave**

2 complicated series/network of sth

- ADJ. **complex, complicated, intricate, tangled**
- VERB + WEB **create, form, weave** *The mass media forms a web of communications.* | **be drawn into** *More and more people were drawn into his web of deceit.*
- PHRASES **a web of deceit/deception, a web of intrigue, a web of relationships**

3 the Web on the Internet

- VERB + WEB **access** | **browse, surf**
- WEB + NOUN **page** | **browser, server** | **resource, service** | **network, ring** | **design, development** | **publishing** | **designer, developer, editor, host, master** (also **webmaster**), **user** | **directory, guide, index** | **access** | **tool**
- PREP. **on the ~** *I found this survey on the Web.*

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

website *noun*

- ADJ. **Internet** | **official, unofficial** *the official website of Liverpool FC* | **comedy, commercial, company, education/educational, golf, news, personal, travel, etc.**
- VERB + WEBSITE **look for, search for** | **access, browse, check out, log into/onto, look at, visit** | **search** *I was searching this history website for something about Alexander the Great.* | **bookmark** | **have** | **build, create, design, develop, make, set up** *We show you how to make your own website in ten simple steps.* | **launch** | **upload** | **host, maintain, run, update**
- WEBSITE + VERB **be/go down** *There were so many visitors to the website that it went down.*
- WEBSITE + NOUN **address, URL** | **designer**

• PREP. **on a/the ~** *You can find details of all our products on our website.*
• PHRASES **a link to a website** *This page includes lots of links to other websites you may find interesting.*
⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

wedding *noun*

• ADJ. **church, registry office | royal | white**
• VERB + WEDDING **attend, come to, go to | arrange | invite sb to | conduct** *The wedding will be conducted by the local vicar.*
• WEDDING + VERB **take place** *The royal wedding will take place in June.*
• WEDDING + NOUN **day, night | invitation | plans, preparations | date** *We haven't set a wedding date yet.* **| dress, gown | clothes, outfit, suit | band, ring** *She had a plain wedding band on her third finger.* **| finger** *a ring on her wedding finger* **| breakfast, feast | ceremony, service | vows | procession | party, reception | celebrations | speech | cake | gift, present | list** *We were choosing what present to buy from the wedding list they'd sent.* **| group, guests, party | album, photographs, video | anniversary | bells** (*figurative*) *After going out with her boyfriend for a year, she started talking about wedding bells.*
• PREP. **at a/the ~** *I met her at my brother's wedding.*

wedge *verb*

• ADV. **firmly, tightly**
• PREP. **against, behind, between, into, under** *She wedged a chair firmly under the door handle.*
• PHRASES **wedge sth in place/position, wedge sth open/shut** *Someone had wedged the door open with a brick.*

Wednesday *noun*

⇨ Note at DAY

wee *noun*

• VERB + WEE **do, have, take | be bursting for, need, want** *Mummy, I need a wee.* **| go for** *I'm going for a wee.*

weed *noun*

• ADJ. **annual, perennial | aquatic, pond, water**
• VERB + WEED **kill | clear, pull up, remove | control, keep down, keep under control** *Routine maintenance of the garden consists of keeping weeds under control.*
• VERB + WEED **grow, spread | push up, spring up** *There were weeds pushing up through the gravel.*
• WEED + NOUN **control | killer** (also **weedkiller**) **| growth | seed, seedling**

week *noun*

• ADJ. **last, past | previous | coming, following, next | consecutive, successive** *They won 1–0 for the fourth consecutive week.* **| entire, full, whole** *It's the first time for ages I've done a full week's work.* **| working | busy, hard | quiet** *It's been a very quiet week for me.* **| 3-day, 40-hour, etc.** *He earns enough money to work a four-day week.*
• VERB + WEEK **spend** *We spent two weeks in France last summer.* **| take**
• WEEK + VERB **elapse, go by, pass** *The week passed very slowly.*
• PREP. **by the ~** *They're paid by the week.* **during/in the ~** *I go out most weekends, but rarely during the week.* **for a ~** *I haven't seen him for weeks.* **in a ~** *We'll be back in a week.* **in ~s** *It hasn't rained in weeks.* **over/under a ~** *It's over a week since she rang me.* **per ~** *How much do you earn per week?* **within a/the ~** *I'll have the report finished within the next couple of weeks.*
• PHRASES **a day of the week** *Which day of the week was it?*

weekend *noun*

• ADJ. **long** *I took Friday off, and spent a long weekend visiting friends.* **| wet** *It will be a wet weekend for much of England and Wales.*
• VERB + WEEKEND **spend**
• WEEKEND + NOUN **break, trip, visit | home, retreat**
• PREP. **at the ~** *What are you doing at the weekend?* **at ~s** *What do you usually do at weekends?* **over the ~** *The office is closed over the weekend.*
• PHRASES **a weekend away/off**

weep *verb*

• ADV. **copiously | loudly | quietly, silently | openly, unashamedly** *The people wept openly when his death was announced.* **| bitterly | inconsolably, uncontrollably** *His grandmother was weeping uncontrollably.* **| almost | a little**
• VERB + WEEP **begin to, start to | want to | make sb**
• PREP. **at** *He wanted to weep at the unfairness of it all.* **for** *I felt I could have wept for joy.* ◇ *weeping for someone who has died* **over** *We had wept over the death of our parents.* **with** *She almost wept with happiness.*
• PHRASES **break down and weep** *Several of the soldiers broke down and wept.* **weep and wail** *The mourners followed the funeral procession, weeping and wailing.* **weep buckets** (*informal*) (= weep a lot)

weigh *verb*

1 consider sth carefully
• ADV. **carefully | up** *The jury weighed up the evidence carefully.*
• PREP. **against** *We weighed the cost of advertising against the likely gains from increased business.*

2 be considered important
• ADV. **heavily, strongly**
• PREP. **against** *His untidy appearance weighed against him.* **in favour of** *This fact weighed heavily in her favour.* **with** *His evidence weighed strongly with the judge.*

weight *noun*

1 amount sth weighs
• ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, heavy, immense | light | gross, net | average, mean | sheer** (*figurative*) *The sheer weight of visitors is destroying this tourist attraction.*
• VERB + WEIGHT **bear, carry, support** *The arch bears the weight of the bridge above.* **| bend/buckle/collapse/crack/sag/shift/sink beneath/under, give way beneath/under** *Many buildings collapsed under the weight of rain-soaked ash and mud.* ◇ (*figurative*) *He was buckling under the weight of his responsibilities.* **| crush sb beneath/under | creak/groan beneath/under** *She tried to be quiet, but the stairs creaked under her weight.* **| stagger/strain beneath/under** *The boy was staggering beneath the weight of a pile of boxes.*
• PREP. **in ~** *It is about 76 kilos in weight.*

2 weight of sb's body
• ADJ. **low | ideal, right | excess, surplus | target** *I should soon be down to my target weight of 70 kilos.* **| body | birth** *babies with a low birth weight*
• VERB + WEIGHT **watch** *I won't have any cake—I have to watch my weight.* **| gain, put on | lose, reduce, shed** *He's lost a lot of weight.* **| keep down | bear, carry, hold, support, stand, take** *I was worried that the branch wouldn't take my weight.* **| put, rest** *The doctor told me not to put my weight on this ankle for a month.* **| shift, transfer** *He nervously shifted his weight from foot to foot.* **| distribute** *Stand with your legs apart and your weight*

evenly distributed. | **hurl, throw** *He threw his weight at the door and it burst open.*

- WEIGHT + VERB **go up, increase | go down, decrease, drop, fall, plummet, plunge | fluctuate** *People's body weight can fluctuate during the day.*
- WEIGHT + NOUN **gain, loss | control | problem**

3 piece of metal

- ADJ. **heavy, large | light**
- VERB + WEIGHT **lift** *She did circuit training and lifted weights to build her fitness.*
- WEIGHT + NOUN **lifting, training**
- PHRASES **weights and measures**

4 heavy object

- ADJ. **heavy | dead** *With difficulty she managed to pull his dead weight onto the bed.* | **leaden** (*figurative*) *A leaden weight lay on her heart as she waved him goodbye.*
- VERB + WEIGHT **lift** *Heavy weights should be lifted with a straight back.*

5 importance/influence of sth

- ADJ. **due, sufficient** *Environmental considerations were given due weight in making the decision.* | **insufficient | considerable | sheer** *How can you ignore the sheer weight of medical opinion?* | **economic, financial, intellectual, political** *America's economic weight*
- VERB + WEIGHT **attach, give, place** *They attach too much weight to academic achievement.* | **carry** *Her opinion seemed to carry little weight in the company.* | **add, lend** *The new evidence added considerable weight to the prosecution's case.* ◇ *Sir Leon lent his weight to the Tory campaign yesterday.*
- PHRASES **put/throw your weight behind sth, weight of numbers** *The rebels were defeated by sheer weight of numbers.*

weighted *adj.*

- VERBS **be, seem**
- ADV. **equally** *The exam consists of six equally weighted questions.* | **heavily | unfairly**
- PREP. **against** *This new legislation is unfairly weighted against the small farmer.* **in favour of** *The course is heavily weighted in favour of engineering.* **towards** *measures that are weighted towards small investors*

weird *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound** *I started to feel quite weird.*
- ADV. **really, very | a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather** *It all sounds a bit weird to me.*
- PHRASES **weird and wonderful** *Some of their clothes were really weird and wonderful.*

welcome *noun*

- ADJ. **big, enthusiastic, friendly, great, rapturous, rousing, special, tumultuous, warm** *The audience gave the band a rousing welcome.* | **broad, general** *The proposals have been given a broad welcome by green campaigners.* | **cautious, guarded, qualified | cool, cold, chilly | official | hero's** *She got a hero's welcome on her return from the Olympics.*
- VERB + WELCOME **get, receive | extend, give sb | await** *A warm welcome awaits you at this family-run hotel.* | **outstay/overstay your** *Sensing that he had outstayed his welcome, he quickly said his goodbyes and left.*
- PREP. **in ~** *She held out her arms in welcome.* | **~ from** *The proposal received a cautious welcome from the Opposition.* **~ to** *A big welcome to our special guest, Sir James Greenan.* ◇ *They received a cold welcome to their new home.*
- PHRASES **a smile of welcome, a speech of welcome, words of welcome**

welcome *verb*

1 greet sb/be pleased sb has come

- ADV. **heartily, warmly** *If you visit our town you will be warmly welcomed.* | **formally, officially | back** *The whole family turned out to welcome him back.*
- VERB + WELCOME **be delighted to, be pleased to | prepare to, wait to** *The school is preparing to welcome the new intake of students.*
- PREP. **into** *He welcomed us into the club.* **to** *We are delighted to welcome you to our firm.*
- PHRASES **look forward to welcoming sb, welcome sb with open arms** *They welcomed the new volunteers with open arms* (= with enthusiasm).

2 be pleased about sth and support it

- ADV. **enthusiastically, particularly, greatly, warmly** *Many companies have warmly welcomed these changes in legislation.* | **positively** *We positively welcome applications from all sections of the community.* | **broadly | cautiously** *Foreign bankers and economists cautiously welcomed the minister's initiative.* | **initially**
- PHRASES **be generally/universally/widely welcomed** *The proposals have been widely welcomed.*

welcome *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel | make sb** *They made us very welcome in their home.*
- ADV. **doubly, especially, extremely, highly, more than, most, particularly, very** *The 1% rate cut is highly welcome.* ◇ *You would be a most welcome guest.* | **perfectly, quite** *You are perfectly welcome to stay here: I can't offer five-star accommodation, that's all.* | **not at all, not entirely** *He made it plain that Holman's interest in his business affairs was not at all welcome.* | **always** *Visitors are always welcome.*
- PREP. **to** *New members are welcome to the club.*

welfare *noun*

1 good health and happiness

- ADJ. **animal, child, community, employee, family, personal, student** *people concerned about child welfare*
- VERB + WELFARE **improve, promote** *The government's policies will promote the welfare of all citizens.*

2 money, etc. from the government

- ADJ. **state**
- WELFARE + NOUN **state** *the provision of services such as health through the welfare state* | **agency, authorities, department, programme, provision, services, system | officer, worker | clinic, facilities | benefits, payments** *lone parents living on welfare benefits* | **budget, costs, spending | cuts | fraud, scrounger** *The new government promised to clamp down on welfare scroungers.*
- PREP. **on ~** *the number of families on welfare*

well *noun*

1 for water

- ADJ. **deep, shallow | artesian | holy | wishing**
- VERB + WELL **dig, sink**
- WELL + VERB **run dry**

2 for oil

- ADJ. **oil**
- VERB + WELL **drill**

well-being *noun*

- ADJ. **general | emotional, mental, physical, psychological, social, spiritual | human, personal | economic, financial, material**
- VERB + WELL-BEING **contribute to, ensure, foster, promote** *A better water supply would contribute dramatically to the villagers' well-being.* | **threaten**

- PHRASES **health and well-being, a sense of well-being** *She was filled with a sense of well-being.*

west *noun, adj.*

⇨ Note at DIRECTION

wet *verb*

- ADV. **thoroughly** *Wet your hair thoroughly before applying the shampoo.* | **slightly**
- PREP. **with** *Wet the towel slightly with warm water.*

wet *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look** | **become, get, turn** *We got soaking wet just going from the car to the house.* ◇ *The weather may turn wet later on in the week.* | **get sth** *Mind you don't get your feet wet.*
- ADV. **dripping, extremely, really, soaking, sopping, very** *His clothes were dripping wet.* | **a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly** *It's still quite wet outside.* | **permanently** *permanently wet conditions*
- PREP. **with** *The grass was wet with dew.*
- PHRASES **wet through** *We were wet through and cold.*

whale *noun*

- ADJ. **beached, stranded**
- QUANT. **school**
- VERB + WHALE **hunt** | **harpoon**
- WHALE + VERB **swim** | **dive** | **sing** | **blow (sth)** *We saw a whale blowing a jet of spray high in the air.* | **breach sth** *Ahead, the whale breached the surface of the water.* | **beach itself, be washed up**
- WHALE + NOUN **hunting** | **meat, oil** | **stocks** *management and conservation of whale stocks*

wheat *noun*

- ADJ. **ripe** | **cracked, whole** | **durum** | **spring, winter**
- QUANT. **ear, grain** | **bag, sack, sheaf** | **field**
- VERB + WHEAT **grow** | **sow** | **cut, harvest** | **thresh** | **grind** | **eat**
- WHEAT + VERB **grow**
- WHEAT + NOUN **harvest** | **field** | **flour, germ**

wheel *noun*

1 on a bicicyle, car, etc.

- ADJ. **bicycle, car, etc.** | **spare** | **front** | **back, rear** | **nearside** | **offside** | **loose, wobbly** | **alloy**
- WHEEL + VERB **change, replace** *A tyre blew and we had to change the wheel.*
- WHEEL + VERB **go round, spin, turn** *The wheels were still going round.* ◇ *(figurative) The political wheel had turned full circle, and he was back in power.* | **skid, slide, slip** *He braked suddenly, causing the front wheels to skid.* | **crunch, scream, shriek** *the sound of wheels crunching over snow* | **come off, fall off** | **lock** *She braked too hard and the wheels locked.*
- WHEEL + NOUN **arch, base, bearings, hub, nut, rim, trim** | **clamp**
- PREP. **on ~s** *A child was pulling along a little dog on wheels.* **under the ~s** *She fell under the wheels of a bus.*

2 (*also* **steering wheel**)

- VERB + WHEEL **grip** | **turn** | **take** *I drove the first 200 miles and then Steve took the wheel.*
- WHEEL + NOUN **lock**
- PREP. **at the ~** *The bus set off again with a fresh driver at the wheel.* **behind the ~** *I saw the car drive past, but didn't recognize the woman behind the wheel.*

wheelchair *noun*

- ADJ. **electric, motorized, powered**
- VERB + WHEELCHAIR **use** | **manoeuvre** *Anthony manoeuvred his wheelchair out from behind his desk.* | **push** | **be confined to** *He's been confined to a wheelchair since the accident.*
- WHEELCHAIR + NOUN **access** | **user** *better access for wheelchair users* | **athlete**
- PREP. **by ~** *In town, she gets about by wheelchair.* **in a/the ~** *It's hard to get around if you're in a wheelchair.*
- PHRASES **accessible by wheelchair, wheelchair accessible facilities/vehicles, etc.**

whereabouts *noun*

- ADJ. **current, present** | **unknown** *The present whereabouts of the manuscript is unknown.* | **exact, precise**
- VERB + WHEREABOUTS **know** *She did not say where she was going, and nobody knows her whereabouts.*

whiff *noun*

- ADJ. **faint** | **strong** | **unmistakable** (*often figurative*) *detecting the unmistakable whiff of electoral blackmail*
- VERB + WHIFF **catch, get, detect** *I caught the whiff of whisky on his breath.* ◇ *(figurative) Journalists caught a whiff of scandal and pursued the actress relentlessly.*
- PREP. **~ of** *a whiff of perfume*
- PHRASES **at the faintest/first/merest whiff of sth** (*figurative*) *He always retreated emotionally at the first whiff of conflict.*

while *noun*

- ADJ. **brief, little, short** | **fair, good, long, some** *Things continued quiet for some while.*
- VERB + WHILE **take** *I'll mend it for you, but it could take a while.*
- PREP. **after a ~** *After a while, I began to get bored with my job.* **for a/the ~** *They chatted for a while.* ◇ *There's no need to do anything for the while.* **in a ~** *I'll be back in a while.*
- PHRASES **all the while** *The bird hopped across the lawn, keeping a sharp lookout all the while.* **once in a while** *Everybody makes a mistake once in a while* (= occasionally). **(for) quite a while** *He kept me waiting for quite a while.* **a while back** *The problems started a while back.*

whim *noun*

- ADJ. **sudden** | **slightest** *The bird's nest is vulnerable to the slightest whim of the weather.* | **individual, personal** | **political** *Funding is subject to political whim.*
- VERB + WHIM **indulge, pander to, satisfy** | **be subject to, be vulnerable to, depend on** | **suffer** *For years she had suffered her husband's whims.*
- PREP. **at (sb's) ~** *They seem to be able to change the rules of the game at whim.* ◇ *Slaves could be bought and sold at the whim of their masters.* **on a ~** *He bought the jacket on a whim, having seen it by chance in a shop window.*
- PHRASES **your every whim** *The child's parents pandered to his every whim.*

whimper *noun*

- ADJ. **little, small** | **frightened, pathetic**
- VERB + WHIMPER **give** *The animal gave a pathetic little whimper.*

whimper *verb*

- ADV. **softly** *The dog whimpered softly.* | **pathetically**
- VERB + WHIMPER **begin to, start to** | **hear sb**
- PREP. **with** *The boy was whimpering with pain.*
- PHRASES **whimper like a child** *He stirred in her arms, whimpering like a child.*

whine *noun*

- ADJ. **high, high-pitched** | **piercing** | **nasal**

• VERB + WHINE **give, let out | hear**

• PREP. **with a~** *She spoke with a whine.* | **~of**

• PHRASES **the whine of a bullet/an engine/a motor**

⇨ Note at SOUND

whine *verb*

• ADV. **faintly, softly** *The engines whined softly in the background.* | **away**

whip *noun*

• ADJ. **driving, riding | bull, horse**

• VERB + WHIP **crack, flick** *He cracked the whip and the horse leapt forward.*

• VERB + WHIP **crack** *A hound yelped briefly as a whip cracked.*

• PHRASES **the crack of a whip**

whip *verb*

1 hit sb/sth with a whip

• ADV. **soundly** *He was taken back to the jail and soundly whipped.*

2 mix sth until it is light and stiff

• ADV. **gently, lightly** *Lightly whip the egg whites and add them to the mixture.* | **up**

whirl *noun*

• ADJ. **mad** *The next few days were a mad whirl of parties.* | **social** *It's easy to get caught up in the social whirl.*

• PREP. **in a~** *His mind was in a whirl as he searched frantically for a solution.*

whisky *noun*

• ADJ. **double, large | single, small | stiff | neat, straight** *I'll have my whisky straight, please.* | **excellent, fine, good** *a fine malt whisky* | **cheap | bootleg** (= illegally made) | **blended, Irish** (spelt whiskey), **malt, Scotch, single-malt**

• QUANT. **dash, drop, nip** *He added a dash of whisky to his coffee.* | **measure, shot, tot** *She poured herself a large tot of whisky.* | **bottle, flask, glass, hip-flask, tumbler**

• VERB + WHISKY **drink** *Do you drink whisky?* | **have** *He had a whisky on the rocks.* | **pour (sb) | sip | gulp, swig | down, finish | distil, produce** *the art of distilling whisky*

• WHISKY + NOUN **drinker | bottle, decanter | glass, tumbler | chaser** *He ordered a beer with a whisky chaser* (= a small glass of whisky drunk after a beer). | **business, company, distiller, distillery, industry, production, sales**

• PHRASES **whisky on the rocks** (= with ice)

whisper *noun*

• ADJ. **barely audible, the barest, faint, gentle, hushed, low, mere/the merest, soft | fierce, harsh | audible, loud, stage** *'I knew this would happen,' he said in a stage whisper* (= one that he wanted everyone to hear). | **hoarse, husky, strangled | awed, excited, urgent | confidential, conspiratorial**

• PREP. **above a~** *Their voices were very quiet, hardly above a whisper.* **in a~** *They spoke in whispers.*

whisper *verb*

• ADV. **softly | hoarsely, huskily, thickly | fiercely, urgently** *'Come on,' he whispered urgently.* | **brokenly, shakily, unsteadily | angrily, bitterly, furiously | confidentially, conspiratorially | excitedly | almost, half | back** *'Yes,' I whispered back.*

• VERB + WHISPER **can/could only** *He could only whisper in reply.* | **hear sb** *She heard him whisper her name.*

• PREP. **about** *I felt that everyone was whispering about me.* **against** *'Hush,' he whispered against her hair.* **through** *'No,' he whispered through gritted teeth.* **to** *'Let's go,' she whispered to Anne.*

• PHRASES **whisper sth in/into sb's ear, whisper sweet nothings** *He held her and whispered sweet nothings in her ear.*

whistle *noun*

1 small metal/plastic tube that you blow

• ADJ. **dog, factory, police, train | guard's, referee's, etc. | steam | penny, tin**

• VERB + WHISTLE **blow (on), sound** *A train sounded its whistle in the distance.*

• WHISTLE + VERB **blow, go, sound** *The referee's whistle went just before he shot the goal.*

• PHRASES **a blast on a whistle** *He gave a short blast on his whistle.*

2 clear high-pitched sound

• ADJ. **loud | high, high-pitched, piercing, shrill | low | long | short | silent** *He pursed his lips in a silent whistle.* | **tuneless | wolf | final** (*sport*) *They scored their only goal just before the final whistle.*

• VERB + WHISTLE **give, let out | hear**

• PREP. **with a~** *The train entered the tunnel with a shrill whistle.* | **~of** *She gave a low whistle of admiration.*

⇨ Note at SOUND

whistle *verb*

• ADV. **loudly | softly, under your breath | through your teeth** *Norma looked at the parcel and whistled softly through her teeth.* | **cheerfully | tunelessly**

• VERB + WHISTLE **begin to | hear sb**

• PREP. **at** *Men whistled at her in the street.* **in** *James whistled in amazement.* **to** *William whistled to me from a distance.*

white *noun*

• ADJ. **egg** *Whisk the egg whites until stiff.*

• VERB + WHITE **beat, whip, whisk**

• PHRASES **the white of an egg** *Use the whites of two eggs.*

white *adj.*

1 of the colour of snow or milk

• ADJ. **dead, pure | bright, brilliant | bone, creamy, icy, milky | dirty, off- | plain**

⇨ Special page at COLOUR

• PHRASES **as white as snow**

2 very pale because of illness or fear

• VERBS **be, look | go, turn**

• ADV. **extremely, very | rather**

• PREP. **with** *He turned white with anger.*

• PHRASES **as white as a sheet**

whole *noun*

1 all of sth

• VERB + WHOLE **cover, embrace, encompass, involve, span** *The project involved the whole of the university.* | **fill, occupy, take up** *The library takes up the whole of the first floor.* | **permeate, pervade** *Technology permeates the whole of our lives.*

2 complete thing

• ADJ. **coherent, cohesive, harmonious, homogeneous, integrated, organized, seamless** *She was struggling to organize her ideas into a coherent whole.* | **single | complex** *The author examines each aspect of Roman society, then attempts to summarize the complex whole.* | **meaningful** *At this age, babies do not yet combine sounds into a meaningful whole.* | **organic**

- VERB + WHOLE **form, make (up)** *He tried to fit the pieces of evidence together to make a coherent whole.*
- PHRASES **as a whole** *Unemployment is higher in the north than in the country as a whole.*

wide *adj.*

1 covering a large area or range

- VERBS **be, seem | become**
- ADV. **enormously, exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, remarkably, unusually, very** *a very wide range of clothing* **| increasingly | fairly, quite, reasonably, relatively | sufficiently | surprisingly**

2 fully open

- VERBS **be | fling sth, open sth, spread sth** *He stood up and flung wide the door to the study.* ◇ *Open your mouth really wide.* ◇ *He spread his hands wide in appeal.*
- ADV. **extremely, really, very**
- PREP. **with** *Their eyes were wide with fear.*

3 not close

- VERBS **be | shoot | fall, land**
- ADV. **very | just**
- PREP. **of** *Her shot fell just wide of the target.*
- PHRASES **wide of the mark** (*figurative*) (= not accurate) *Their predictions turned out to be very wide of the mark.*

widen *verb*

- ADV. **considerably, greatly** *The gap between rich and poor has widened considerably.* **| slightly | gradually, slowly | quickly, rapidly | suddenly | out** *The road widens out and becomes a dual carriageway.*
- PREP. **from, into** *At this point, the river widens into an estuary.* **to** *The trade deficit had widened from £26 billion to £30 billion.*

widespread *adj.*

- VERBS **be | become | remain**
- ADV. **extremely, remarkably, very | increasingly | fairly, pretty, quite | sufficiently | geographically** *a geographically widespread species*
- PREP. **among** *Illiteracy is widespread among the poor.*

widow *noun*

- ADJ. **distraught, grieving | elderly, middle-aged, young | rich, wealthy | poor | war**
- VERB + WIDOW **become | leave** *He died in March leaving a widow and three children.*
- PHRASES **a widow's allowance/pension**

width *noun*

- ADJ. **great** *the great width of his shoulders* **| full, overall, total, whole | narrow** *The fabric is only available in a narrow width.* **| maximum, minimum**
- VERB + WIDTH **have** *The windows have a width of six feet.* **| measure** *Measure the width of each side.* **| increase | decrease, narrow (to), reduce** *The snow had narrowed the width of the road to a single track.* ◇ *The road narrows to a width of just four metres.* **| vary in**
- WIDTH + VERB **grow, increase | decrease | vary**
- WIDTH + NOUN **measurement | fitting** *The boots are available in a choice of width fittings.*
- PREP. **across the ~** *The pattern goes across the full width of the material.* **in ~** *The car is 1.775m in width.*

wife *noun*

- ADJ. **new | future** (also **wife-to-be** *informal*) **| ex-, former | deserted | divorced, estranged | dead, late | dependent** *With a dependent wife and children, he can't afford to lose his job.* **| pregnant | dutiful, excellent, faithful, good, loving, loyal, supportive, wonderful | long-suffering** *His long-suffering wife had to put up with his numerous affairs.* **| attractive, beautiful, charming, lovely | unfaithful | jealous | domineering, nagging | battered** *a hostel for battered wives*
- VERB + WIFE **meet** *I first met my wife at university.* **| marry | desert, leave, walk out on | batter, beat**
- WIFE + VERB **give birth** *His wife has just given birth to a son.*

wig *noun*

- ADJ. **blond, curly | powdered**
- VERB + WIG **have on, sport, wear** *Do you think she was wearing a wig?* **| put on | remove, take off**
- WIG + VERB **perch** *The wig seemed to perch on his head.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Who's that man in the wig?*

wild *adj.*

1 animals/plants

- VERBS **be, grow, live** *The flowers grow wild in the mountains.* ◇ *The dogs live wild on the streets.*
- ADV. **truly** *This is truly wild and unspoilt countryside.*

2 out of control

- VERBS **be, look** *He looked wild and dangerous.* **| go, run** *When the princess appeared, the crowd went wild.* ◇ *They annoy the neighbours because they let their children run wild.* **| drive sb, make sb** *It makes me wild* (= very angry) *to see such waste.*
- ADV. **really, very | absolutely | a bit, a little, pretty, rather** *Her hair was rather wild.*
- PREP. **with** *The crowd was wild with excitement.*

wilderness *noun*

- ADJ. **last | great | barren, desert, desolate | frozen | uncharted | unspoilt | political** (*figurative*) *the man who brought the party back from the political wilderness*
- VERB + WILDERNESS **transform** *They transformed the wilderness into a garden.* **| explore** *They set out to explore the earth's last great wilderness, Antarctica.*
- WILDERNESS + NOUN **years** (*figurative*) *His wilderness years* (= when he was out of politics and the public eye) *in the 1990s were spent in North America.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *We were hopelessly lost in the wilderness.*

wildlife *noun*

- ADJ. **abundant | endangered, rare | indigenous, local, native | marine, urban, wetland**
- VERB + WILDLIFE **preserve, protect, save** *They called on the government to help protect native wildlife.* **| attract, encourage** *The large variety of native plants attracts wildlife to the area.* **| benefit | endanger, threaten** *The increasing use of pesticides threatens the wildlife of the area.* **| damage, harm | disturb** *Do not allow your dog to disturb wildlife.* **| be (a) home for/to, be rich in** *The forest is home to a wealth of wildlife.*
- WILDLIFE + NOUN **habitat | area, garden, haven, park, refuge, reserve, sanctuary, site** *The school has its own small wildlife garden.* **| conservation, management, protection | trade** *the illegal wildlife trade* **| artist, cameraman, film-maker, photographer**
- PHRASES **a wealth of wildlife**

will *noun*

1 power to choose; desire

- ADJ. **indomitable, iron, strong** *her indomitable will to win* ◇ *His unassuming matter concealed an iron will.* **| weak | free | conscious | collective, general, majority, national, popular, public** *Is that the general will, that we keep the present voting arrangements?* **| individual | human | divine, God's | royal | political** *The govern-*

ment lacked the political will to reform the tax system. (see also **goodwill**)

• VERB + WILL **have** *She's got a very strong will.* | **lack** | **exercise, exert** | **lose** *She's lost the will to try and change things.* | **break, drain, sap** *Constant rejection has sapped her will.* | **regain** | **impose** *She usually manages to impose her will on the rest of the group.* | **bend to, obey** *They were taught to obey their father's will without question.* | **go against** *My father didn't want me to leave home, and I didn't like to go against his will.*

• PREP. **against your ~** *Much against my will, I let him go.* **at ~** *She believes employers should have the right to hire and fire at will.*

• PHRASES **an act of will** *It requires an act of will to make myself go running in the morning.* **a battle/clash of wills** *The meeting turned out to be a clash of wills.* **an effort of will** *With a great effort of will he resisted her pleas.* **of your own free will** *She left of her own free will.* **the will of God, the will to live** *She gradually regained the will to live.*

2 legal document

• ADJ. **valid** *Two people must witness your signature or your will will not be valid.* | **living** (= a record of your wishes regarding medical treatment at the end of your life)

• VERB + WILL **draw up, make** *His solicitor drew up the will.* ◇ *Have you made your will?* | **sign** | **leave** *She left no will and was unmarried.* | **read** | **alter, change** | **revoke** *Remarriage would revoke all previous wills.* | **forge** | **remember sb in** *She was moved when her neighbour remembered her in his will.* | **administer, execute** | **challenge, contest** *The family decided to contest the will in court.* | **break, overturn, set aside** *They succeeded in getting the will overturned.*

• PREP. **by ~** *Some things cannot be given away by will.* **in a/the ~** *She left me some money in her will.* **under a/the ~** *Under her father's will, she gets £5 000 a year.*

• PHRASES **sb's last will and testament**

willing *adj.*

• VERBS **appear, be, prove, seem** *They appear willing to talk to us.*

• ADV. **more than, only too, really, very** *I'm more than willing to get involved.* | **increasingly** | **perfectly, quite** *He's quite willing to do the same for you.* | **enough** *He seemed willing enough to listen.* | **apparently** | **always** *She is always willing to help.* | **no longer**

willingness *noun*

• ADJ. **general** | **genuine** | **greater, increased** | **growing, increasing**

• VERB + WILLINGNESS **demonstrate, display, indicate, show, signal** *The new government has shown a willingness to listen and learn.* | **announce, confirm, declare, express** *Workers' leaders have expressed their willingness to cooperate.* | **demand, depend on, require** *Marriage counselling depends on both parties' willingness to try to solve problems.*

• PREP. **in your ~** *In her willingness to help them, she quite forgot that she wasn't as strong as she had been.*

will power *noun*

• ADJ. **sheer** | **strong**

• VERB + WILL POWER **have** *I'm no good at slimming. The trouble is, I've got no will power.* | **take** *It took all his will power to stay in and study.* | **summon** *He tried to summon the will power to get out of bed.* | **need**

• PREP. **by ~** *She managed to finish the race by sheer will power.*

wilt *verb*

• ADV. **visibly**

• VERB + WILT **begin to** *Some of the leaves were beginning to wilt.*

• PREP. **in** *The plants will wilt in direct sunlight.* **under** *By half-time, the team was wilting under the pressure.* **with** *The passengers were visibly wilting with the heat and movement of the bus.*

win *noun*

• ADJ. **big, comfortable, convincing, decisive, easy, emphatic, handsome, resounding, runaway** | **last-gasp, narrow** *An extra-time penalty gave Barcelona a last-gasp win over Chelsea.* | **five-point, nine-wicket, single-shot, two-goal, etc.** | **hard-earned, hard-fought** | **deserved, well-earned** | **excellent, fine, great, impressive** | **thrilling** | **improbable, remarkable, shock, unexpected** | **famous** *People still talk about the famous win against Brazil.* | **away, home** | **cup final, league, semi-final, etc.** | **Democrat, Labour, etc.**

• VERB + WIN **claim, chalk up, gain, have, notch (up), record, score** *We've had three successive wins in the National League.* ◇ *Torino notched up a 2–1 win at Lazio.* | **cruise to, romp to, sweep to** *Woods romped to a 12-shot win in the Open.* | **deserve, earn** | **give sb** | **celebrate**

• WIN + VERB **come** *His only big win came in the French Open ten years ago.* | **keep sb, lift sb, put sb, take sb** *Williams's straight-sets win puts her through to the semi-final.*

• PREP. **without a ~** *They've gone four games without a win.* | **~ against/over** *Liverpool gained a thrilling 5–4 win over Glenavon.*

• PHRASES **a no-win situation** *She was in a no-win situation, taking the blame for things she did not have the power to change.*

win *verb*

• ADV. **comfortably, convincingly, easily, hands down, handsomely, outright** *The French team won hands down.* | **narrowly** *She narrowly won the first race.* | **duly** *He duly won, but was then sidelined by a leg injury.* | **unexpectedly** | **eventually, finally**

• VERB + WIN **deserve to** *We didn't deserve to win—we played very badly.* | **hope to** | **be expected to, be tipped to, expect to** *The actress is tipped to win an Oscar for her performance.* | **be likely to** | **be going to** *Who do you think is going to win?* | **manage to** | **fail to** *The far right party failed to win a single seat.* | **help (to), help sb (to)** *qualities which help win business and motivate staff*

• PREP. **against** *They stand a good chance of winning against their league rivals.* **at** *I never win at tennis.* **by** *She won the race by 40 metres.* **on** *The match was eventually won on penalties.*

• PHRASES **a chance of winning (sth), a chance to win sth** *the chance to win the holiday of a lifetime* **be confident of winning (sth), be capable of winning (sth)** *There are a lot of teams capable of winning the title.* **succeed in winning sth** *He succeeded in winning their confidence.*

wince *verb*

• ADV. **a little, slightly** | **inwardly** *He winced inwardly at her harsh tone.* | **visibly**

• VERB + WINCE **try not to** | **make sb** | **see sb**

• PREP. **at** *She switched on the light, wincing at the sudden brightness.* **in/with** *He winced in pain.*

wind *noun*

• ADJ. **fierce, gale-force, high, stiff, strong, terrible** *Rain and high winds are forecast.* ◇ *There was a stiff wind blowing.* | **light, moderate, slight** | **blustery, gusty** | **warm** | **biting, bitter, brisk, chill, cold, icy** *The icy wind cut right through us.* | **howling** | **fair, favourable, good** *They set sail the next morning with a fair wind.* | **adverse**

Adverse winds swept the boat off course. | **head, tail** *A tail wind made the ride home very relaxing.* | **east, north, etc.**

- QUANT. **blast, gust** | **breath** *There wasn't a breath of wind in the still air.*
- WIND + VERB **blow, blow up, come, cut through sb/sth, sweep (through) sth** *The wind came from the west.* ◇ *A fierce wind swept through the countryside.* | **howl, moan, roar, whistle** *The wind roared through the tunnel.* | **buffet sth, rattle sth, whip sth (up)** *The wind whipped up the surface of the lake.* | **increase, pick up, rise** | **abate, die down, drop** *Let's wait until the wind drops before setting sail.* | **change** *The wind suddenly changed and began blowing from the north.*
- WIND + NOUN **conditions, direction, power, pressure, speed**
- PREP. **against the ~** *We were rowing against the wind.* **in the ~** *a flag flapping in the wind* **into the ~** *We were sailing into the wind.* **out of ~** *Let's shelter out of the wind.*
- PHRASES **the roar/sound of the wind**

wind *verb*

- ADV. **tight/tightly** | **carefully, neatly**
- PREP. **around/round** *He wound the bandage tightly round his ankle.* **into** *She wound the wool into a ball.*

windfall *noun*

- ADJ. **unexpected**
- VERB + WINDFALL **get, have** *She had an unexpected windfall of a thousand pounds when a cousin died.*
- WINDFALL + NOUN **gains, profits** | **tax**

window *noun*

1 in a building, car, etc.

- ADJ. **big, huge, long, tall, wide** | **narrow, small** | **panoramic** | **floor-length, floor-to-ceiling** | **deep-set** | **arched, bay, bow, casement, dormer, French, lattice, leaded, picture, rose, sash, skylight, small-paned, stained-glass** *You get to the garden through French windows at the back of the house.* ◇ *The cathedral has a beautiful rose window.* | **plate-glass** | **double-glazed** | **barred, curtained, shuttered** *All the windows in the prison are barred.* | **curtainless** | **open** | **boarded-up** | **blank** *No light showed in any of the blank windows of the house.* | **dark** | **bright, sunny** | **rain-lashed, rain-streaked** | **draughty, ill-fitting** | **dirty, dusty, filthy** | **clean** | **steamed-up** | **balcony, basement, bedroom, kitchen, etc.** | **back, front, rear, side, top, topmost, upstairs** | **first-floor, ground-floor, etc.** | **south-facing, etc.** | **display, shop** | **car, carriage, train, etc.** | **back, driver's, passenger, rear** | **electric** | **smoked, tinted** *a limousine with smoked windows*
- VERB + WINDOW **gaze out (of), gaze through, look in (through), look out (of), look through, peer out (of), peer (in) through, see out (of), see through, stare out of, stare (in) through** *I found her looking in the window of a department store.* ◇ *It was raining so hard I could scarcely see out the window.* | **lean out of, stick your head out of** | **knock on, rap on, tap on** *We tapped on the window to get their attention.* | **fling open, force (open), open, throw open** *There was evidence that the window had been forced.* | **roll down, wind down** *I rolled down the window to ask for directions.* | **close, roll up, shut** | **clean, wash** | **break, shatter, smash** | **replace**
- WINDOW + VERB **open, wind down** *How does the window open?* | **close, go up** | **break, shatter, smash** | **blow out** *All the windows blew out with the force of the blast.* | **flash, gleam, glint, glow, shine** *The windows glinted in the sunlight.* | **steam up** *The windows all steam up when you have a shower.* | **rattle** *The windows rattle when a train goes past.* | **face sth, give a view of sth, look, overlook sth, stare** *a studio with windows looking south towards the park* ◇ *The windows of the house stared bleakly down at her.*
- WINDOW + NOUN **frame, ledge, pane, sill** | **seat** *I always ask for a window seat when I fly.* | **cleaner** *He works as a window cleaner.* | **display** | **shopping** *I love going window shopping* (= looking at things in the shops without buying anything).
- PREP. **at the ~** *He was standing at the window waiting for us.* **by the ~** *I sat by the window to get some air.* **in the ~** *an advertisement in the shop window* ◇ *We caught sight of him in the window as we passed.* ◇ *There was a vase of flowers in the window.* ◇ *A bird flew in the open window.* **out (of) ~** *She gazed out of the window at the falling snow.* **through ~** *They threw a brick through the window.*

2 area on a computer screen

- ADJ. **active** *Click on the window to make it active.*
- VERB + WINDOW **open** | **close** *If you close a couple of windows, the screen will be less cluttered.* | **enlarge, minimize, resize, shrink** | **drag, move** | **click on**

⇨ Special page at COMPUTER

windscreen *noun*

- ADJ. **front, rear** | **car**
- VERB + WINDSCREEN **clean, scrape, wipe** *She scraped the windscreen free of ice.* | **break, chip, crack, shatter, smash** | **fit, put in, replace, take out** | **clear, de-mist** *She switched the wipers on to clear the windscreen.*
- WINDSCREEN + VERB **mist up** | **crack, shatter**
- WINDSCREEN + NOUN **wiper**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *I came back to find a parking ticket on the windscreen.* **through a/the ~** *Bright evening sunlight glared through the windscreen.*

wine *noun*

- ADJ. **red, rosé, white** | **fizzy, sparkling** | **dry** | **sweet** | **light** *He served a light white wine with the lunch.* | **full-bodied, heady, strong** | **fruity** | **sour, vinegary** *a cheap vinegary wine* | **mature, young** *The younger wines will be mature after about three years.* | **new, old** *some new wines from South Africa* | **excellent, expensive, fine, good, great, quality, vintage** | **cheap, table** | **house** *The restaurant's house wines are an Australian Chardonnay and a French red.* | **dessert** | **fortified** *fortified wines such as port and sherry* | **mulled, spiced** | **chilled** *chilled white wine* | **home-made** | **dandelion, elderberry, rice, etc.**
- QUANT. **drop** *Would you like another drop of wine?* | **glass, bottle**
- VERB + WINE **drink** *Do you drink wine?* | **have** *I'll have some wine, please.* | **sip, take a sip of** *She took a sip of her wine.* | **gulp, swig, take a gulp/swig of** | **pour (sb), top up** *The waiter went round topping up people's wine.* | **make, produce** *The winery has been making wine for a couple of centuries.* | **age, mature** *wine aged in the bottle* | **chill** | **serve** | **ply sb with** *They always ply their clients with wine before getting down to business.*
- WINE + VERB **flow** (*figurative*) *The wine flowed freely at the party.* | **go to your head** *The wine had gone to his head and he was starting to talk rubbish.* | **breathe** *Open the wine an hour before the meal to let it breathe.* | **be corked** | **age, mature**
- WINE + NOUN **bottle, glass** | **list** *The restaurant has an extensive wine list.* | **rack** *I took another bottle from the wine rack.* | **grower, growing** | **merchant** | **tasting** *The supermarket holds occasional wine-tasting sessions.*

wing *noun*

1 of a bird/insect

- ADJ. **left, right** | **fore, front** *The beetle's fore wings are small and are not used in flight.* | **back, hind** | **broad, long, narrow, pointed, short, stubby** | **delicate** | **leathery, membranous** | **broken, damaged** *a bird with a*

broken wing | **outspread, outstretched** | **butterfly, chicken, etc.** *the patterns on butterfly wings ◇ First, fry the chicken wings in the oil until they begin to brown.*
- QUANT. **pair**
- VERB + WING **extend, open, spread, stretch, unfold** | **close, fold** | **flap, flutter** *It flapped its wings and flew off.* | **clean** | **clip** (*often figurative*) *Pete felt he had had his wings clipped when his driving licence was confiscated.* | **grow, sprout** *I wish I could sprout wings and fly away.*
- WING + VERB **beat, flap, flutter**
- WING + NOUN **tip** | **feathers**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *It had white markings on its wings.* **under a/the ~** *The young birds were under the mother bird's wing.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Simon's uncle had taken him under his wing.*

2 of a plane
- ADJ. **aircraft** | **left, port** | **right, starboard** | **fixed** | **folding**
- WING + VERB **stick out**
- WING + NOUN **tip**

3 of a building
- ADJ. **north, south, etc.** | **private** | **hospital** | **maternity** | **maximum security** (= of a prison)
- VERB + WING **add, build** | **demolish, destroy, pull down** *A bomb destroyed the east wing.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *Our rooms were in the west wing.*

4 of a car
- ADJ. **nearside, offside** | **front, rear**
- VERB + WING **damage, dent** *The nearside wing was damaged in the accident.* | **mend, repair, replace**
- WING + NOUN **mirror**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *There was a dent in one wing.*

5 of an organization
- ADJ. **left, right** | **conservative** | **liberal, progressive, reformist** | **extreme, radical** | **revolutionary** | **moderate** | **dissident** | **political** | **military, paramilitary**
- PREP. **on a/the ~** *They're on the left wing of the Labour Party.*

wink *noun*
- ADJ. **broad** | **little** | **conspiratorial, knowing**
- VERB + WINK **direct, give sb, throw sb**
- PREP. **with a ~** *'Know what I mean?' he said with a wink.* | **~ at** *He directed a conspiratorial wink at his son.*

wink *verb*
- ADV. **broadly** *He winked broadly at Lucinda.* | **conspiratorially, saucily, wickedly** *She winked saucily at Jack.* | **back**
- VERB + WINK **see sb** *I saw him wink at her.*
- PREP. **at** *She winked at me, and I winked back.*

winner *noun*
- ADJ. **overall** *She didn't win every race, but she was the overall winner.* | **outright** *With three teams finishing on 40 points, there was no outright winner.* | **eventual** | **joint** *They were joint winners of the cup.* | **lucky** *She was the lucky winner of that week's biggest lottery prize.* | **deserved, worthy** | **clear, comfortable, convincing, easy, runaway** *She emerged as the clear winner.* | **impressive** | **big** *There were no big winners in this week's lottery.* | **shock, surprise, unexpected, unlikely** | **likely, possible, potential** *Barcelona look likely winners of the Spanish League.* | **first-time, three-times, etc.** *Italy, three times winners of the World Cup* | **consistent, frequent, prolific, regular** *She is a regular winner in local road races.* | **award, championship, competition, contest, cup, election, jackpot, league, match, (gold/silver/bronze) medal, prize** (also **prizewinner**), **race, title, tournament, trophy**
- VERB + WINNER **emerge as** | **announce** *The winner of the competition will be announced this afternoon.* | **choose, pick** *The winner will be chosen from the five architects who get through the first round.* ◇ *He's very good at picking winners* (= at guessing who is going to win). | **back** *He backed the winner and won £70.*
- WINNER + VERB **receive sth** *The winner will receive a prize of £500.*
- PREP. **~ against/over** *France were impressive 3–0 winners over Portugal.*

winter *noun*
- ADJ. **last, next, this (coming)** | **early, late, mid-** (also **midwinter**) *It was impossible to walk the route in midwinter.* | **bad, bitter, cold, hard, harsh, severe, terrible** *one of the worst winters we have ever had* | **bleak, dreary, grey** | **mild** | **wet** | **nuclear**
- WINTER + NOUN **conditions, temperature, weather** | **sun, sunlight, sunshine** | **cold** | **frost/frosts, rain/rains, snow** | **gale, wind** | **landscape, scene, sky** *the artist's bleak winter scene* | **solstice** | **term** | **break, holiday** | **garden** | **flower** | **crop** | **clothes, clothing, coat** | **collection, exhibition** | **Olympics, sports**

⇨ Note at SEASON (for more collocates)

wipe *verb*
- ADV. **carefully, gently** | **hastily, quickly** | **easily** *The plastic surface can be easily wiped.* | **just, simply** | **away, down, up** *I wiped up the spilt wine.*
- VERB + WIPE **pause to, stop to** *He paused to wipe the sweat from his forehead.* | **try to**
- PREP. **from** *She gently wiped the tears from her eyes.* **off** *He wiped the marks off the wall.* **on** *She wiped her hands on the towel.* **with** *When you've finished with it, simply wipe it clean with a damp cloth.*
- PHRASES **wipe sth clean**

PHRASAL VERB

wipe sth out
- ADV. **completely, totally** | **almost, practically, virtually** *The regiment was virtually wiped out in the first battle.* | **effectively** *The disease has been effectively wiped out.*
- VERB + WIPE STH OUT **threaten to** *pollution that threatens to wipe out 100 000 fish*

wiper *noun*
- ADJ. **windscreen** | **rear**
- VERB + WIPER **put on, switch on, turn on** | **switch off, turn off** | **be fitted with**
- WIPER + VERB **be going, be on** *Cars were coming past with their wipers going.*

wire *noun*

1 metal as thin thread
- ADJ. **taut, tight** | **loose, slack** | **fine, thin** | **thick** | **flexible, soft** | **stiff** | **rusty** | **barbed, chicken** (= wire mesh used to make fences), **razor** | **piano** | **perimeter** | **trip** (also **tripwire**) *The bomb was attached to a tripwire laid across the road.* | **high** (= in a circus) *One man rode a bicycle along the high wire as the climax to the act.*
- QUANT. **length, piece, strand**
- VERB + WIRE **cut** *They cut the perimeter wire and escaped.* | **stretch** *The wire was stretched between two poles.*
- WIRE + NOUN **grill, mesh, netting** | **basket, brush, cage, coat hanger, fence, fencing, frame, rack** *Cool the cakes on a wire rack.* | **cutters** (also **wire-cutters**)
- PREP. **behind a/the ~** *Behind the wire, the prisoners were exercising.* **under a/the ~** *We got in under the wire.*

2 for electricity
- ADJ. **electric, electrical, electricity** *Don't place carpets over electrical wires.* ◇ *overhead electricity wires* | **earth, live, neutral** *Don't touch that wire. It's live.* | **overhead** | **telegraph, telephone** | **fuse** | **bare, exposed** *Watch out*

for bare wires. | **insulated, plastic-coated, plastic-covered** | **frayed**

• VERB + WIRE **attach, connect** *The wire was attached to a pin in the plug.* | **disconnect** *He disconnected the wire from the clock.* | **run** *The electrician ran a wire from the kitchen to the bedroom.*

• WIRE + VERB **go, lead, run, trail** *Where does this wire go?* ◇ *There were wires trailing everywhere.* | **show** *Surely the wires shouldn't show like that?*

• PREP. **along a/the ~** *the flow of electrical currents along a wire* **down a/the ~** *A dry laugh echoed down the telephone wire.*

wire *verb*

• ADV. **correctly, properly** *You should check that the socket is correctly wired.* | **in, up** *She was wired up to a heart monitor.*

• PREP. **for** *Many homes were wired for lighting only.* **into, to** *The Christmas tree lights are all wired to one plug.*

wiring *noun*

• ADJ. **electric/electrical** | **dangerous, faulty, loose** | **mains** | **house**

• VERB + WIRING **renew, replace** *The existing wiring will have to be replaced.* | **take out** *They took out the old wiring.* | **disconnect** | **check (over), have a look at** *We'd better get an electrician to check the wiring before we start decorating.* | **conceal** *The wiring was concealed behind a false panel.*

• WIRING + NOUN **diagram** | **system**

wisdom *noun*

• ADJ. **deep, great, profound** | **accepted, conventional, established, folk, popular, prevailing, received, traditional** *Conventional wisdom has it that riots only ever happen in cities.* | **street, worldly** *He is too lacking in worldly wisdom to be a politician.* | **accumulated, collective** *the accumulated wisdom of generations* | **ancient** *A bridge between ancient wisdom and modern insight is now being built.* | **innate, inner, instinctive, intuitive** | **political** | **divine**

• VERB + WISDOM **doubt, have doubts about, question** *Many commentators doubted the political wisdom of introducing a new tax.* | **seek** *Those who seek wisdom at the shrine will find it.* | **impart** *Do you have any wisdom to impart on this subject?* | **prove** *The latest unemployment figures prove the wisdom of the government's policy.*

• PHRASES **a fount/source of wisdom** *Consultants are too often seen as the source of all wisdom.* **in sb's (infinite) wisdom** (*ironic*) *In their infinite wisdom, the council closed the swimming pool for the school holidays.* **pearls of wisdom** *students eager to catch pearls of wisdom from the professor's lips* **the pursuit of wisdom** *She devoted her life to the pursuit of wisdom.* **wit and wisdom** *He entertained the audience for two hours with his wit and wisdom.* **with the wisdom of hindsight** *It's easy enough to see what we should have done, with the wisdom of hindsight.* **words of wisdom** *The former world champion imparted a few words of wisdom to the young runners.*

wise *adj.*

• VERBS **be, look, seem** | **consider sth, judge sth, think sth** *It was not considered wise to move her to another hospital.*

• ADV. **extremely, very** | **always** *It is always wise to write down important points.*

wish *noun*

1 feeling that you want sth

• ADJ. **dearest, deepest, fervent, greatest, strong** | **conscious, unconscious** | **secret** | **dying, last** *He was denied his dying wish to be reconciled with his son.* | **death** *Freud's theory of the death wish* | **personal** | **parental** *the child's detention against parental wishes*

• VERB + WISH **have** | **express, make known** *She has expressed a wish to visit the Houses of Parliament.* | **fulfill** *She fulfilled her deepest wish when she flew solo for the first time.* | **get** *She's always wanted to be an actress, and I'm sure she'll get her wish.* | **grant sb** | **be responsive to, consider, honour, respect, take into account** *It is vital for schools to respect the wishes of parents.* | **carry out, comply with, implement, meet** *We need to update our equipment if we are to meet customers' wishes.* | **obey** *She flew into a rage if the staff didn't obey her wishes.* | **deny sb** | **disregard, flout, go against, ignore, override, ride roughshod over** *The committee rode roughshod over the wishes of union members.* | **reflect** *The change to the constitution reflects the wishes of the people who voted in the referendum.*

• WISH + NOUN **fulfilment** | **list** *Draw up a wish list, defining the requirements for your ideal home.*

• PREP. **against sb's ~s** *Her father will not speak to her, because she married against his wishes.* **in sb's ~** *In his wish to be as helpful as possible, he was forever asking her what she wanted.* **in accordance with sb's ~s** *In accordance with his wishes, his ashes were scattered at sea.* | **~ for** *a wish for peace*

2 saying secretly to yourself what you want to happen

• VERB + WISH **have, make** *When you see a black cat, you have to make a wish.* | **be allowed, get** *If you're the one who finds the hidden box, you get a wish.* | **grant** *The good fairy granted her three wishes.*

• WISH + VERB **come true** *Lo and behold, on Christmas Day their wishes came true.*

3 (usually **wishes**) hope that sb will be happy

• ADJ. **best, good** *Give my best wishes to Alison.*

• VERB + WISHES **give sb, send (sb)**

• PREP. **with ~** (at the end of a letter) *With best wishes for a happy birthday.* | **~ for** *Every good wish for your future happiness together.*

wish *verb*

• ADV. **dearly, desperately, devoutly, fervently, heartily, really, sincerely** *I heartily wished that I had stayed at home.* ◇ *I really wish I could go to America.* | **hard** *If you wish really hard, maybe you'll get what you want.* | **secretly** | **merely, only, simply** *'Where is he now?' 'I only wish I knew.'*

• PREP. **for** *It's no use wishing for the impossible.*

wit *noun*

1 clever use of words

• ADJ. **great** | **quick, ready** | **acerbic, barbed, biting, caustic, dry, sarcastic, sardonic, scathing, sharp, wicked** | **gentle** | **dazzling, sparkling**

• VERB + WIT **have** *He had a dry wit.*

• PHRASES **wit and wisdom** *a book full of the wit and wisdom of his 30 years in politics*

2 intelligence

• ADJ. **native** *She had to use all her native wit to convince the police.*

• VERB + WIT **have** *I hope he's got the wit to take the key with him.*

• PHRASES **beyond the wit of man** (= impossible) *It should not be beyond the wit of man to resolve this dispute*

3 **wits** ability to think quickly

• VERB + WITS **gather, recover** *She couldn't seem to gather her wits and tell us what had happened.* | **blunt, dull** *Living alone in the country had dulled his wits.* | **sharpen**

• PHRASES **a battle of wits** *The strike developed into a battle of wits between management and workers.* **have/keep your wits about you** *They do tough interviews* *so you'll need to have your wits about you.* **pit your wits against sb** *Celebrity teams pit their wits against each other in this lively quiz show.*

withdraw *verb*

1 move/move sth away from a place

- ADV. **altogether, completely | immediately, instantly | abruptly, hastily, promptly, quickly, soon** *She hastily withdrew her hand from his.* | **gently | gradually, progressively** *Forces will be progressively withdrawn.* | **eventually | temporarily | unconditionally**
- VERB + WITHDRAW **decide to | intend to, wish to | threaten to | be compelled to, be forced to, be obliged to** *He was forced to withdraw from the competition due to injury.* | **persuade sb to**
- PREP. **from** *Two thousand troops were withdrawn from the battle zone.* **in favour of** *He eventually withdrew in favour of Blair, thought to be the more popular candidate.* **into** *She withdrew into her own world.*

2 take sth away

- ADV. **immediately | subsequently | eventually | formally** *She formally withdrew her resignation.* | **voluntarily | unconditionally** *Last night he unconditionally withdrew his comments.*
- VERB + WITHDRAW **threaten to | agree to | refuse to | advise sb to, persuade sb to, urge sb to**
- PREP. **from** *They threatened to withdraw their support from the government.*

withdrawal *noun*

1 removing/leaving

- ADJ. **imminent | immediate, rapid, sudden | gradual, phased | complete, full, total, unconditional, wholesale | partial | strategic, tactical | voluntary | ignominious** *The UN were faced with an ignominious withdrawal or a long-term military presence.* | **military, troop**
- VERB + WITHDRAWAL **call for, demand** *The party is calling for the phased withdrawal of troops from the island.* | **agree to | announce | make** *The police were forced to make a tactical withdrawal.*
- PREP. **~ by** *a withdrawal by government troops* **~ from** *the army's withdrawal from the occupied territories*

2 from a bank account

- ADJ. **cash**
- VERB + WITHDRAWAL **make**
- PREP. **~ from** *She made a withdrawal of £250 from her bank account.*

3 stopping

- ADJ. **alcohol, drug**
- VERB + WITHDRAWAL **suffer**
- WITHDRAWAL + NOUN **symptoms**
- PREP. **~ from** *She was still suffering withdrawal from nicotine.*

wither *verb*

- ADV. **simply** *Their support had simply withered away.* | **away**
- PREP. **under** *The grass withered under a scorching sun.*
- PHRASES **wither and die** *The business withered and eventually died.*

withhold *verb*

- ADV. **deliberately | reasonably, unreasonably** *Consent will not be unreasonably withheld.*
- VERB + WITHHOLD **threaten to** *threatening to withhold future financial aid* | **decide to**
- PREP. **from** *He was accused of deliberately withholding information from the police.*

withstand *verb*

- VERB + WITHSTAND **be able/unable to, can/could | manage to | be built to, be designed to** *The wooden boat was built to withstand just about every weather condition at sea.* | **be robust/strong/tough enough to** *The flooring needs to be tough enough to withstand wear.* | **enable sth to, help sth (to)**
- PHRASES **be capable of withstanding sth**

witness *noun*

1 person who sees sth

- ADJ. **eye** (also **eyewitness**) *An eyewitness account described the plane as a 'fireball'.* | **crucial, key, material, vital** *As the last person to see her alive, he was a material witness in the case.* | **independent | credible, reliable, unimpeachable | unreliable**
- VERB + WITNESS **appeal for** *The police are appealing for witnesses.* | **trace** *Police have so far failed to trace any witnesses to the attack.*
- WITNESS + VERB **come forward** *Two witnesses came forward with evidence.*
- WITNESS + NOUN **account, statement**
- PREP. **~ to** *a witness to murder*

2 in a court of law

- ADJ. **chief, main, principal** *the defence's chief witness* | **hostile | reluctant, unwilling | defence | prosecution, state | expert | character | civilian, police**
- VERB + WITNESS **call** *The defence called their first witness.* | **appear as** *She appeared as a character witness.* | **swear in | cross-examine, examine, interrogate, interview, question | hear | discredit | intimidate, threaten** *A judicial enquiry was ordered, but witnesses were threatened and none would testify.* | **suborn** *He was charged with conspiracy to suborn witnesses.*
- WITNESS + VERB **take the stand** *The next witness took the stand.* | **give evidence, testify | make a statement, state sth | identify sb** *She was the only witness to identify Peters as the attacker.*
- WITNESS + NOUN **box, stand | summons**
- PHRASES **a witness for the defence/prosecution**

3 of a signature

- VERB + WITNESS **act as**
- WITNESS + VERB **sign**
- PREP. **~ to** *Would you be willing to act as a witness to my signature when I sign my will?*

wobbly *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look | become, go** *When I stood up my legs went all wobbly.*
- ADV. **all** (*informal*), **very | a bit, a little, rather, slightly** *The chair looked a bit wobbly.*

wolf *noun*

- ADJ. **lone** *A lone wolf howled under the full moon.* | **marauding, ravening, slavering** (*figurative*) *She called the media 'ravening wolves'.*
- QUANT. **pack**
- WOLF + VERB **bark, growl, howl | hunt**
- WOLF + NOUN **cub | pack**

woman *noun*

- ADJ. **young | middle-aged | elderly, old, older** *The thief tricked his way into an elderly woman's home.* ◇ *Older women often have difficulty conceiving.* | **adult, grown** *The little girl she remembered was now a grown woman.* | **married | single, unattached, unmarried | widowed | divorced | pregnant | childless | business** (also **businesswoman**), **career, professional, working | non-working | attractive, beautiful, good-looking, handsome, pretty | desirable | well-dressed | plain, ugly | motherly | hysterical | decent, good, kind | evil,**

wicked | **battered** *a hostel for battered women* | **the other** *Jean Menckes plays the president's wife and Fiona Handley plays the other woman* (= the one the President is having an affair with).

- VERB + WOMAN **depict, portray, present, show** *We want to change the way women are depicted in the media.* | **limit, reduce** *Women are limited to the more poorly paid jobs.* ◇ *Women are reduced to merely playing a passive role.*
- PHRASES **the position/role of women** *There were important changes in the position of women in society.* **a woman of the world** *He saw her as a woman of the world who could offer him advice.* **women's lib/liberation** (*becoming old-fashioned*) *The freedom to wear trousers became a symbol of women's liberation.* **the women's movement, women's rights**

womb *noun*

- ADJ. **fertile** | **barren**
- VERB + WOMB **carry sth in** *the nine months for which we are carried in our mothers' wombs* | **emerge from** *The baby's head was starting to emerge from the womb.*
- WOMB + NOUN **lining**
- PREP. **in the/your ~** *A scan determines the position of the baby in the womb.*
- PHRASES **the lining/neck/wall of the womb**

wonder *noun*

1 feeling of surprise/admiration

- ADJ. **great** | **childlike, wide-eyed**
- VERB + WONDER **feel** | **express** *There aren't any words to express properly all the wonder that I feel.* | **gaze in, stare in** *She gazed down in wonder at the city spread below her.* | **be filled with, be full of** *The children's faces were full of wonder as they gazed up at the Christmas tree.*
- WONDER + NOUN **cure, drug**
- PREP. **in ~** *Neville shook his head in wonder at it all* **with ~** *She held her breath with wonder and delight.* | **~ at**
- PHRASES **a feeling/sense of wonder**

2 amazing thing/person

- ADJ. **natural** *Iceland is full hot springs, beautifully coloured rocks, and other natural wonders.* | **scientific** | **constant, perpetual** *It was a constant wonder to me that my father didn't die of exhaustion.* | **nine days, seven-day** *She was determined to prove she was no seven-day wonder whose promise would remain unfulfilled.* | **boy** (*humorous*) (also **wonder boy**) *the new boy wonder of French football* | **one-hit** (*humorous*) *The band aren't the one-hit wonders some had feared: their second album contains some great rap music.*
- PHRASES **do/work wonders (for sb/sth)** *The change of diet has done wonders for my skin.* ◇ *A good night's sleep and a hearty breakfast worked wonders.* **the wonders of modern science/technology** *Thanks to the wonders of modern science, many common diseases will soon be things of the past.* **the wonders of the world** *The palace has been described as the eighth wonder of the world.*

wonder *verb*

- ADV. **hazily, idly, vaguely** *I wondered vaguely whether Robert could be the murderer.* | **briefly, fleetingly** | **apprehensively, uneasily** *I wondered uneasily if anything had happened to the children.* | **bleakly, despairingly** | **irritably** | **aloud** *'Where's Natasha?' she wondered aloud.* | **just** *'Why do you ask?' 'I just wondered.'* | **often, sometimes** *I sometimes wonder who's crazier, him or me.*
- VERB + WONDER **begin to** *I was just beginning to wonder where you were.* | **cannot/could not help but, can only** *I couldn't help but wonder what he was thinking.* | **make sb** *His obvious hunger made her wonder how long he had been up and about.*
- PREP. **about** *We'd wondered about you as a possible team member.*

wonderful *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, smell, sound, taste**
- ADV. **most, really** | **absolutely, perfectly, quite, truly** *The weather was absolutely wonderful.* | **pretty, rather**
- PHRASES **weird and wonderful** *coming up with weird and wonderful marketing ideas*

wood *noun*

1 what trees are made of

- ADJ. **hard** | **soft** *Pine is a soft wood.* | **dark** *The pub had dark wood panelling.* | **light, pale** | **green** *The wood was too green to burn.* | **dead, rotten, rotting** *She pruned the dead wood from the tree.* | **kindling** *There were neat piles of kindling wood against the wall.* | **natural** *varnish that retains the natural wood look* | **seasoned** | **rough** | **painted, polished, stained, varnished** | **carved** | **solid** | **laminated** | **charred** | **balsa, beech, pine, etc.**
- QUANT. **block, piece, plank, strip**
- VERB + WOOD **chop, cut, saw** | **be made from/in/(out) of, carve/make sth from/in/out of** *The cabinet is made of cherry wood.* ◇ *We carve the moulds in wood.* | **paint, polish, stain, varnish** *She stained the wood green.* | **season** *Traditionally wood was seasoned in the open air.* | **burn** | **gather** *We gathered wood for the fire.*
- WOOD + VERB **splinter** *the sound of splintering wood* | **rot** *Over the years, much of the wood in the house had rotted.* | **burn** *Dry wood burns easily.*
- WOOD + NOUN **chip** | **carving** | **floor, panel, panelling** | **laminate, veneer** | **finish** *a wardrobe in a mahogany wood finish* | **fire**
- PREP. **in ~** *The chapel has some interesting works in wood and marble.*

2 area covered with trees

- ADJ. **deep, dense, thick** | **dark, shady** | **broad-leaved, deciduous** | **beech, birch, oak, etc.**
- PREP. **in the ~** *a walk in the woods* **through the ~** *He wandered through the beech wood.*

wooded *adj.*

- VERBS **be**
- ADV. **densely, heavily, richly, thickly, well** *a thickly wooded area*

woodwork *noun*

- ADJ. **exterior, interior** | **polished**
- VERB + WOODWORK **paint, treat, varnish** | **polish** | **strip** | **clean, wash** | **hit** *He hit the woodwork* (= the wooden frame of the goal) *twice before scoring.*
- PREP. **in the ~** *There were cracks in the woodwork.*

wool *noun*

- ADJ. **chunky, thick** | **fine** | **soft** | **rough** | **pure** | **raw** | **lamb's, sheep's** | **knitting** | **cotton, mineral, steel, wire**
- QUANT. **ball, skein**
- VERB + WOOL **produce** | **knit sth in, spin, weave (sth in)** *She's knitting a jumper in pure wool.* | **card, comb**
- WOOL + NOUN **merchant, shop, trade**

word *noun*

1 unit of language

- ADJ. **two-letter, three-letter, etc.** | **monosyllabic, disyllabic** | **two-syllable, three-syllable, etc.** | **big, long** *He uses big words to impress people.* | **compound** | **native** | **borrowed, loan** *When a new fruit is first imported, its name is usually also imported as a loan word.* | **foreign** | **content, function** | **exact, precise, very** *His exact words were, 'There's nothing we can do about it.'* ◇ *Those were her very words.* | **clear, plain** | **ambiguous** | **ab-**

stract, concrete | **everyday** *I find even everyday words difficult to spell.* | **archaic, obsolete** | **key** *He wrote down a few key words to help him remember what to say.* | **right, wrong** *You can't always find the right word when you're translating.* | **dirty, four-letter, naughty, obscene, rude, taboo** *The play is full of four-letter words.* ◇ *Work is a dirty word to Frank.* (see also **swear word**) | **famous, household, immortal** *His name has become a household word since he first appeared in the series.* ◇ *the immortal words of Neil Armstrong as he stepped onto the moon* | **code** *The police use code words for their major operations.* | **buzz** (also **buzzword**), **vogue** *E-marketing is the current buzzword.* | **spoken, written** *She combines visual images and the spoken word to great effect in her presentations.*

• VERB + WORD **have** *Spanish has no word for 'understatement'.* | **say, speak, use, utter** *He uses lots of long words.* ◇ *Every word he utters is treated as sacred text.* | **pronounce** *How is this word pronounced?* | **mispronounce** | **spell** | **misspell** *'Necessary' is one of the most commonly misspelt words in English.* | **write** | **hear, read** | **mishear, misread** *I misheard the word 'sick' as 'thick'.* | **know, understand** | **look up** *She looked the word up in the dictionary.* | **find** | **coin** *The word 'e-commerce' was coined to refer to business done over the Internet.* | **cross out, erase, rub out**

• WORD + VERB **mean sth** | **refer to sth, relate to sth** | **convey sth, describe sth, express sth** *words describing body parts* ◇ *Words can't express how happy I am.* | **imply sth** | **denote sth** *Bold words denote chapter headings.* | **carry sth, have sth** *The same word can carry numerous meanings.* ◇ *The word has two meanings.* | **be derived from sth, come/derive from sth** *The word derives from a Norse word meaning 'eye of the wind'.* | **begin (with sth), end (in/with sth)** *What's a word beginning with 'c' that means 'a small wood'?* | **fail sb** *Words fail me* (= I cannot express how I feel).

• WORD + NOUN **game**

• PREP. **in sb's ~s** *The students had to retell the story in their own words.* | **~ for** *What's the French word for 'snail'?*

• PHRASES **in all senses of the word** *She was a true friend in all senses of the word.* **in other words** *They're letting me go—in other words, I've been sacked.* **in so many words** *They told me in so many words* (= directly) *that I was no longer needed.* **in the true sense of the word** *People who overeat are not addicts in the true sense of the word.* **in words of one syllable** (= using very simple language) *Could you say that again in words of one syllable?* **word for word** (= exactly) *He repeated word for word what the boy had said to him.*

2 sth you say

• ADJ. **quick** (no plural) | **quiet** (no plural) *The manager had a quiet word with Alison, and she gave him no more problems.* | **good, friendly, kind** *He hasn't a good word to say for anybody.* | **unkind** | **angry, bitter ~s, blunt ~s, choice ~s** (*ironic*), **cross, hard ~s, strong ~s** | **polite** *No polite words of gratitude came.* | **flattering, honeyed ~s** | **empty, fine** (*ironic*), **meaningless ~s** *Despite all their fine words, the council have never done anything to improve road safety.* | **weasel ~s** *The government's promises on nurses' pay turned out to be weasel words* (= deliberately unclear). | **bold, brave ~s** *Despite his brave words, I don't believe he can save the factory from closure.* | **wise ~s** | **well-chosen ~s** *He ruined her self-confidence with a few well-chosen words.* | **cautionary** | **soft, whispered** *They exchanged whispered words of love.* | **unspoken ~s** *The look in her eyes filled in the unspoken words in her sentence.* | **dying, last ~s** *Her last words were for her children.* | **final, last** (no plural) *The Chairman always has the last word* (= the final decision) *on financial decisions.* | **fateful ~s** *Seconds after uttering the fateful words 'this is easy', he crashed.* | **prophetic** | **magic**

• VERB + WORD **have** *I've had a few words with John, and he's quite happy for you to stay.* ◇ *She had some harsh words to say about her colleagues.* | **put in, say, speak, utter** *If you run into the boss, put in a good word for me!* ◇ *Before we begin, I'd like to say a few words about who I am.* ◇ *Nobody's uttered a word to me about it.* | **give, say** *Just say the word and I'll go.* | **mumble, mutter** | **slur** *I knew he'd been drinking because he was slurring his words.* | **spit (out)** *She was so furious, she almost spat the words out: 'You idiot!'* | **bandy, exchange, have** *I usually exchange a few words with my neighbour when I see him.* ◇ *Words were exchanged* (= there was an argument). | **find** *He couldn't find the words to thank her enough.* | **choose, pick** *He chose his words carefully when commenting on her work.* | **quote** | **distort, twist** *She felt angry at how the journalist had twisted her words.* | **hang on** *The journalists hung on his every word as he spoke of his ordeal.* | **eat, take back** *When he told her she would fail, she swore she would make him eat his words.* | **not mince** *He doesn't mince his words when he talks about his ex-boss.* | **not breathe** *Don't breathe a word to anyone about what I've told you!*

• WORD + VERB **conjure sth up, evoke sth** *Her words conjured up a strange picture in her mind.* | **burst from sb, come (out), emerge, fall, pour (out), slip (out), spill (out), tumble out** *He was nervous, and his words came out in a rush.* ◇ *His words fell into the silence like stones.* | **stick in your throat** *He wanted to tell her how he felt about her, but the words stuck in his throat.* | **float, hang in the air** *I let my words hang in the air. Maggie was no fool: she must realize I meant it.* | **echo, ring** *Her teacher's words echoed in her ears.* | **fade (away), tail away/off, trail away/off** *His words faded to silence as he saw she didn't believe him.* | **hit/strike home, strike/touch a chord** | **sink in** *She could feel her temper boiling as his words sank in.*

• PREP. **in a ~** *'Would you like to help us?' 'In a word* (= briefly), *no.'* **without a ~** *She left without a word.* | **~ about** *We never heard anyone say an unkind word about her.* **~ from** *And now a word from our sponsors ...* **~ of** *a word of advice/warning* **~ with** *Can I have a quick word with you?*

• PHRASES **get a word in (edgeways)** *I wanted to tell you that she'd phoned, but you were talking so much I couldn't get a word in edgeways.* **a man/woman of few words** (= a person who speaks very little), **sb never spoke a truer word/never was a truer word spoken** *You said we were about to make a big mistake, and never was a truer word spoken!* (= you were right), **not a (single) word** *Remember—not a word to* (= don't tell) *Peter about any of this.* ◇ *We didn't say a single word to each other all day.* **put words into sb's mouth** *He felt after the interview that the police officers had been trying to put words into his mouth* (= to make him say what they wanted him to say). **take the words out of sb's mouth** *I was about to say we should cancel the trip, but she took the words right out of my mouth* (= she said it before me). **a word in sb's ear** *Can I have a word in your ear about tomorrow's presentation?* **(by) word of mouth** *The restaurant does not advertise, but relies on word of mouth for custom.*

3 promise

• ADJ. **solemn** *She gave him her solemn word that she would give up drugs.*

• VERB + WORD **give sb** | **be as good as, be true to, keep** *He promised to help and was as good as his word.* ◇ *True to her word, she returned next day.* | **break, go back on** *Once he has made a promise, he never goes back on his word.*

• PHRASES **have sb's word for sth** *We only have her word for it that the cheque is in the post.* **a man/woman of his/her word** *You needn't worry about him not paying you back—he's a man of his word.* **take sb at their word** *He said I could stay at his house any time, so I took him at his word.* **take sb's word for sth** *I haven't seen his work, but*

I'll take his word for it that it's finished. **your word against sb's** *If it's your word against the police officer's, the jury are going to believe him.* **sb's word is their bond, sb's word of honour** *He gave me his word of honour that he wouldn't tell anyone.*

4 information/news

• VERB + WORD **bring, get, send** *He sent word to his family that his captors were treating him well.* | **get** *We didn't get word of her arrest until the next day.* | **spread**

• WORD + VERB **get out** *If word gets out about the affair, he will have to resign.* | **be, have it** *The word is they've split up.* ◇ *Word has it that she's leaving.*

• PREP. **~ about** *Health workers spread the word about the benefits of immunization.*

word *verb*

• ADV. **carefully, cautiously** *We need to word our question quite carefully.* | **ambiguously, vaguely** | **broadly** | **strongly** *He issued a very strongly worded statement denying any involvement in the plot.*

wording *noun*

• ADJ. **actual, exact, precise, specific** | **clear** | **appropriate** | **vague** | **ambiguous** *The wording was deliberately ambiguous.*

• VERB + WORDING **alter, change** | **think about** *We need to think carefully about the wording of the request.*

• PREP. **~ of** *What's the exact wording of the clause?*

word processing *noun*

• ADJ. **basic, simple**

• PHRASES **application, package, product, program, software, system** | **business, service**

work *noun*

1 effort/product of effort

• ADJ. **hard** *It's hard work trying to get him to do a few things for himself.* ◇ *It doesn't require skill—it's a matter of sheer hard work.* | **arduous, back-breaking, challenging, complicated, demanding, difficult, gruelling, intensive, labour-intensive, tiring, tough** *The show is the product of two years' intensive work.* | **rewarding** | **heavy** *They employ a couple of young men to do the heavy work.* | **donkey** *I did the donkey work* (= hard work requiring little skill) *but I hired a professional builder for the tricky bits.* | **light** *She's only allowed to do a little light work because of her bad arm.* | **easy** | **close** *I need to wear glasses for close work.* | **physical** | **delicate** | **dangerous** | **dirty** *Engine maintenance is dirty work.* ◇ (*figurative*) *The drugs gang used children to do their dirty work for them.* | **humdrum, monotonous, repetitive, tedious** | **fascinating, interesting** | **purposeful** *Many unemployed people welcome the chance to do purposeful work, even if unpaid.* | **valuable** *The research institute needs funds in order to carry on its valuable work.* | **paid, unpaid** | **professional** | **men's, women's** *They think that looking after children is women's work.* | **intellectual, mental** | **creative, imaginative** | **practical** (see also **fieldwork, paperwork**) | **investigative** | **undercover** *The scandal was revealed after months of undercover work by journalists.* | **leg** (also **legwork**) *Her job as a market researcher involves a lot of legwork* (= walking around to collect information). | **course** (also **coursework**) | **written** *His written work is the best in the class.* | **individual** | **group** | **project** | **collaborative, joint** *classroom activities involving collaborative work between children* ◇ *The report is the joint work of an economist and a sociologist.* | **remedial** *The poorly designed bridge needs remedial work to make it safe.* | **background, preliminary, preparatory** | **follow-up** | **honest** *He preferred to make his money from honest work rather than from gambling.* | **good, nice** (*informal*), **outstanding, sterling** *Nice work, James! I'm impressed.* ◇ *In accepting the award, she mentioned the sterling work of her assistants.* | **careful, meticulous, painstaking** | **poor, shoddy, sloppy** | **charitable, humanitarian** | **community, youth** | **ground-breaking, innovative, pioneering** *He did pioneering work on microbes.* | **experimental** | **academic, commercial, educational, environmental, scientific** | **building, construction** | **your own** *Is this all your own work* (= did you do it without help from others)?

• QUANT. **bit, piece** *It was an interesting piece of work.*

• VERB + WORK **carry out, do, put in** *All the construction work was carried out in 2001.* ◇ *I've got lots of work to do today.* ◇ *She's put in a lot of work on the design.* | **get done, have done** *I think I'd better try and get some work done.* ◇ *We're going to have some building work done on the house.* | **produce** *Work produced on a word processor tends to look more professional.* | **get, have** *We get far too much work at this time of year.* | **take on, undertake** *I've taken on more work than I've got time to do.* | **create, make** *Big football matches make a lot of work for the police.* | **begin, commence, get down to, set about/to, start** *They began work on the project towards the end of the year.* ◇ *Stop talking and get down to work.* ◇ *We set to work on the outside of the house* (= for example, painting it). | **go about** *She went cheerfully about her work.* | **carry on, continue** | **complete, finish** | **halt, hold up, stop** *Work on the project was halted.* | **lose** *They lost the work to a competitor.* | **undo** *The new president spent the first year undoing the work of his predecessor.* | **oversee, supervise** *The assistant manager supervises work on the factory floor.* | **set sb to** *She set them to work painting the fence.* | **require** *To carry out accurate market research requires a huge amount of work.* | **hand in** *We're supposed to hand in this work tomorrow.*

• WORK + VERB **come** *The work comes in bursts according to the time of year.* | **wait** *That work can wait until tomorrow.* | **go** *How's the work going this morning?* | **involve sth** *What does the work involve?* | **begin, start** | **continue, go on** | **come to a standstill** *Work came to a complete standstill when rumours of redundancies started to circulate.* | **cost** *How much will the work cost?*

• WORK + NOUN **ethic** | **rate** *Her boss told her she had to increase her work rate.* | **programme, schedule** | **surface** *Work surfaces should be left clear and clean.*

• PREP. **at ~** *He's been hard at work all morning.* | **~ on** *I have to do some work on the engine before it'll be ready to drive.* **~ with** *She's done a lot of work with disadvantaged children.*

• PHRASES **a backlog of work** *It will take a month to clear the backlog of work.* **keep up the good work** *The hotel manager thanked the staff for their efforts so far and told them to keep up the good work.* **your life's work** *The art collection was his life's work.* **make light/short work of sth** (= to do sth quickly and easily) *Mike made short work of fixing the engine.* **never/not a stroke of work** *She never does a stroke of work.* **pressure of work** *Pressure of work forced him to cancel his holiday.* **work in progress** *The showroom has been designed so that people can see work in progress.*

2 job

• ADJ. **lucrative, well paid** | **badly paid** | **full-time, part-time** | **permanent** | **temporary** | **regular, steady** *He hasn't been in regular work since he left school.* | **casual** *In the college vacations he does casual work in the local hospital.* | **freelance** | **voluntary** | **skilled** | **semi-skilled** | **unskilled** | **manual** | **indoor, outdoor** | **daily, day-to-day, everyday, routine** *People went about their daily work despite the war.* ◇ *Ambulance crews alternate between emergency and routine work.* | **piece** *It's piece work, so how much you earn depends on how fast you can work.* | **administrative, clerical, office, secretarial** | **managerial** | **domestic** | **social** | **research** | **agricul-**

tural, farm | **building** | **nice** (*humorous*) *A hundred grand for two days a week? Nice work if you can get it!*

• VERB + WORK **have** *He's got a bit of freelance work at the moment.* | **look for** *He got made redundant, so now he's looking for work again.* | **find, get** *Full-time work is hard to find.* | **go to** *I go to work on the bus.* | **go out to** *Some mothers of young children choose not to go out to work.* | **start** | **finish, knock off** *What time do you finish work?* | **stop** *She stops work at the end of this month.* | **give up** *Just before he was sixty, he decided to give up work.* | **go back to, return to** *She has just returned to work after the birth of her child.* | **coordinate** *Sales reps meet up monthly to coordinate their work.*

• WORK + VERB **go** *Work's going well at the moment.* | **start** *What time does work start in the morning?* | **finish**

• WORK + NOUN **hours** *Employees must not make personal calls in work hours.* | **place** (also **workplace**) | **area, environment, room** (also **workroom**) | **station** (also **workstation**) | **roster, schedule** | **experience** *He's doing a month's unpaid work experience with an engineering firm.* | **permit** | **incentive** *High income tax can undermine work incentives.* | **practice** *An independent report has described some work practices in the industry as old-fashioned.*

• PREP. **at ~** *'Where's Diane?' 'She's at work.'* ◇ *We had a party at work.* **in (your) ~** *With so much unemployment, I'm lucky to be in work.* ◇ *It's important to be happy in your work.* **off ~** *She's been off work with a bad back since July.* **out of ~** *He's been out of work since the factory closed.* **through ~** *I met him through work.*

• PHRASES **a line of work** *'What line of work are you in?' 'Computing.'* **a place of work**

3 book/music/art

• ADJ. **classic, fine, great** | **definitive, seminal** *Her book is still considered the definitive work on beetles.* | **influential** | **erudite, scholarly** | **ambitious** | **literary** | **dramatic** | **critical** | **autobiographical, biographical** | **artistic** | **art** (also **artwork**) *The artwork in the book is superb.* | **abstract, figurative, graphic** | **choral, orchestral, piano** | **collected, complete** *the collected works of Stephen King* | **early** | **late, mature** *Picasso's mature works*

• QUANT. **series** | **collection, exhibition**

• VERB + WORK **compose, produce, write** *Beethoven composed his greatest works towards the end of his life.* | **commission** | **perform, play** | **hear, read, see** *Her work can be seen in most of the major European galleries.* | **conduct, direct, edit, produce, publish, put on** *Over the next two years, the theatre is putting on the complete works of Brecht.* | **display, exhibit, show** *The town hall is exhibiting works by local artists.*

• WORK + VERB **be called sth, be entitled sth** *a work entitled 'Forward Pass'*

• PREP. **in a/the ~** *She's studying the theme of death in the works of Beckett.* | **~ by** *a work by an unknown eighteenth century writer*

• PHRASES **an exhibition of sb's work** *The gallery is staging a special exhibition of Monet's early works.* **a work of art/fiction/literature** *The building is hated by some and considered a work of art by others.* ◇ (*humorous*) *They discovered that his CV was a complete work of fiction.* **a work of genius** *Her latest novel is a work of genius.*

⇨ Note at ART

4 (*also* **works**) building/repairing

• ADJ. **extensive, major** | **road** (also **roadworks**) | **maintenance, repair, restoration** | **demolition**

• VERB + WORK **carry out** *We are planning to carry out major works on the site.* | **plan** | **announce**

• WORK + VERB **continue, go on** *The works will continue until the end of July.*

• PREP. **at the ~** *A contraflow is in operation at the works near Junction 5.*

5 works factory

• VERB + WORKS **open** | **close (down), shut down**

• WORKS + VERB **turn sth out** *The works at Bury turned out thousands of television sets a week.* | **open** | **close (down)**

• WORKS + NOUN **foreman, manager, supervisor** | **canteen**

• PREP. **at the ~** *the night shift at the works*

work *verb*

1 do a job/task

• ADV. **hard** *He had been working hard all morning.* | **steadily** | **round the clock** *Emergency teams were working round the clock to make the homes secure.* | **full-time, part-time** *A lot of mothers choose to work part-time.* | **efficiently** *I work more efficiently on my own.* | **closely, collaboratively, together** *people who have worked closely together over a period of time* | **alone, independently** | **away** *We worked steadily away all morning.*

• VERB + WORK **continue to** | **choose to, prefer to** *I prefer to work as part of a team.* | **motivate sb to** *Employees are motivated to work harder for a whole host of different reasons.* | **enable sb to** *I needed a job which would enable me to work at home.* | **refuse to**

• PREP. **as** *He's working as a teacher at the moment.* **at** *I've spent three hours working at this problem.* **for** *She works for an oil company.* **on** *We are working on plans for a new swimming pool.* **with** *the people you work with*

2 function; have a result/effect

• ADV. **effectively, efficiently, perfectly, properly, satisfactorily, smoothly, well** *Everything worked very smoothly.* | **independently** *My limbs seemed to be working independently of each other.*

• VERB + WORK **seem to**

PHRASAL VERB

work out

• ADV. **perfectly, well** | **badly**

• PREP. **for** *Things worked out well for Janet in the end.*

worker *noun*

• ADJ. **good, hard** | **productive** | **fast, quick** | **methodical, steady** | **slow** | **core, key** | **full-time, part-time** | **permanent** | **casual** *Casual workers are usually paid by the hour.* | **shift** | **migrant, seasonal** | **freelance** | **self-employed** | **paid** | **voluntary, volunteer** | **low-paid** | **redundant, unemployed** | **retired** | **female, male, woman** | **black, white** | **immigrant** | **fellow** | **average** *One night in these expensive hotels costs around the average worker's monthly wage.* | **skilled** | **unskilled** | **semi-skilled** | **blue-collar, manual** | **clerical, office, white-collar** | **professional** | **shop-floor** | **private-sector, public-sector** | **council, municipal** | **assembly-line, factory, manufacturing, production** | **construction** | **metal** | **maintenance** | **railway, transport** | **agricultural, farm, rural** | **care, community, health, healthcare, hospital, social, welfare, youth** | **rescue** | **aid, relief** | **charity** | **field, research** | **domestic** | **postal**

• VERB + WORKER **employ, have** | **engage, hire, recruit, take on** | **dismiss, fire, lay off, make redundant, sack** | **exploit** *The union accused the firm of exploiting its workers.*

• WORKER + VERB **work** | **run sth, staff sth** *The shop is staffed by one paid worker and three volunteers.* | **lose a job** *400 workers have lost their jobs.* | **demand sth** *Workers demanded fair wages and better working conditions.* | **vote** *The workers voted for industrial action.* | **(be on) strike, walk out** *The workers walked out last month after a failure to agree all the terms for the 110 lay-offs.*

• WORKER + NOUN **participation** *worker participation in decision making*

• PHRASES **the exploitation of workers, workers' demands, worker's rights**

⇨ Note at JOB

workforce *noun*

• ADJ. **educated, qualified, skilled, trained** *a highly-skilled workforce* | **flexible, versatile** | **committed, dedicated, motivated** | **local** *A quarter of the local workforce is unemployed.* | **ageing, declining, diminishing** *A declining workforce has to provide for an increasing number of retired people.* | **available, total** *The shipyard has a total workforce of 9 000.* | **entire, whole** *The new management decided to retrain the entire workforce.* | **worldwide** | **large, small** | **reduced** | **2 000-strong, 3 500, etc.** | **temporary** | **British, Japanese, etc.** | **female, male** | **industrial, manufacturing**

• VERB + WORKFORCE **employ, have** *The company employs a workforce of nearly 5 000.* | **cut, halve, reduce, slash, slim (down), trim** | **double, expand, increase** | **retrain, train** | **consult (with)** *The management always consults with the workforce before introducing major changes.* | **enter, leave** *The increase in the number of people entering the workforce has increased unemployment figures.*

• WORKFORCE + VERB **fall** | **double, increase, rise** | **number sth, stand at sth** *The workforce numbers 500.*

• PREP. **among a/the ~** *There is a change in the distribution of skills among the workforce.* **in a/the ~** *One person in the workforce is always responsible for the same job.*

• PHRASES **a member of the workforce**

workings *noun*

• ADJ. **inner, internal** *the inner workings of a watch* ◇ *the internal workings of Parliament* | **basic** | **complex, detailed** | **financial**

• VERB + WORKINGS **analyse, explore, investigate** | **lay bare, reveal, shed light on** *Their research aims to shed light on the workings of the human mind.* | **know** | **understand** *It is hard to understand the complex workings of the social security system.* | **explain**

workload *noun*

• ADJ. **enormous, heavy, huge** | **excessive** | **additional, extra, increased** | **lighter, reduced** | **administrative**

• VERB + WORKLOAD **have** *She's got an increased workload this year.* | **expand, increase** | **ease, lighten, reduce** *An assistant one day a week would ease my workload.* | **distribute, share, spread** *We want to try and distribute the workload more evenly.* | **cope with**

• WORKLOAD + VERB **expand, increase** *Doctors are having to cope with an ever-expanding workload.*

workman *noun*

• ADJ. **good, skilled** | **council**

• QUANT. **gang** *A gang of council workmen has been digging a hole in the road.*

workmanship *noun*

• ADJ. **exquisite, fine, good, quality** | **bad, crude, defective, faulty, poor, shoddy**

• VERB + WORKMANSHIP **admire** *I was admiring the exquisite workmanship in the mosaic.* | **criticise**

• PREP. **~ on** *He accused the garage of shoddy workmanship on the bodywork.*

• PHRASES **the quality/standard of workmanship**

workout *noun*

• ADJ. **good** | **hard, vigorous** | **light** | **forty-minute, two-hour, etc.** | **aerobic**

• VERB + WORKOUT **do, have** *When I do a good workout, I feel fine.* ◇ *The team had a hard workout this morning.* | **give sb/sth** *I went for a ride to give my new bike a workout.*

workshop *noun*

1 room/building

• ADJ. **craft, design, pottery** | **engineering, locomotive, railway** | **farm** | **carpenter's, stonemason's, etc.**

• VERB + WORKSHOP **set up** *He set up a workshop for his carving.*

• WORKSHOP + VERB **employ sb** *The workshop employs 25 full-time workers.*

• PREP. **in a/the ~**

2 period of discussion/work

• ADJ. **day-long, two-day, weekend, etc.** | **group** | **introductory** | **practical** | **development, training** *The company holds regular skills development workshops.* | **skills** *Everyone in Personnel has attended a media skills workshop.* | **research** | **dance, drama, music, poetry, theatre, writing**

• QUANT. **series** *The Careers Advisory Service will be running a series of workshops for students.*

• VERB + WORKSHOP **do, hold, host, organize, put on, run** *The Institute will host a special two-day workshop on new building materials.* | **attend, go to, participate in, take part in**

• WORKSHOP + VERB **cover sth, examine sth, focus on sth, look at sth** *The workshop covered a wide range of issues.* | **aim to, be aimed at sth** *a workshop aimed at brainstorming new marketing ideas*

• WORKSHOP + NOUN **discussion, session** | **member, participant**

• PREP. **at a/the ~, during a/the ~** *During the workshop, they each practised their part in the performance.* **in a/the ~** *In the one-day workshop, she taught us the importance of breathing exercises.* | **~ on** *I learned these new skills at a workshop on databases.*

• PHRASES **a member of a workshop, a participant in a workshop**

world *noun*

1 the earth/its people

• ADJ. **known** *a medieval map of the known world* | **whole**

• VERB + WORLD **create, make** *They believe that God created the world.* | **destroy** *One of these days, humankind will destroy the world.* | **take over** *Fast food outlets seem to be taking over the world.* | **tour, travel** | **see** *As a young man, he wanted to see the world before he settled down.* | **lead** *Sweden leads the world in safety legislation.*

• WORLD + NOUN **leader** | **economy** | **recession, slump** | **market** | **trade** | **price** *World oil prices continue to rise.* | **domination** *A handful of Internet companies are battling for world domination.* | **affairs, events** | **attention, opinion** *The bombing alienated world opinion.* | **war** | **champion** *He was easily beaten by the reigning world champion.* | **championships, cup, title** | **class** *The team is world class.* | **beaters** *The Portuguese team looked like world beaters in last night's game.* | **record** *She shattered the world record for the 200 metres.* | **rankings** *He has never before featured in the top ten world rankings.* | **religion** *the major world religions* | **music** (= music that includes influences from different parts of the world) | **tour** *The band are about to embark on a six-month world tour.*

• PREP. **across the ~** *Astronomers across the world will be watching the night sky.* **all around/over/round the ~** *The ceremony was watched live by millions around the world.* **in the ~** *He felt he was the luckiest man in the whole world.* **throughout the ~** *People throughout the world will be watching the big match on television.*

• PHRASES **the end of the world** (*figurative*) *It won't be the end of the world if you don't get the job.* **on a world scale** *Communist parties were formed on a world scale after the Russian Revolution.* **on the world stage** *The country became an important player on the world stage.* **a**

part of the world *It's an interesting part of the world.* **the world over** *Scientists the world over have been waiting for this breakthrough.*

2 part of the earth

• ADJ. **Arab, English-speaking, Western, etc.** *Heads of state from all over the Arab world gathered for the conference.* | **developed, First, industrialized, rich** *First World consumers will have to eat less meat.* | **developing, Third, underdeveloped** | **New, Old** *Machismo is a New World phenomenon with roots in Old World cultures.*

• PREP. **in the ... ~** *In the Western world, there is a different attitude to marriage.*

3 life/society

• ADJ. **ever-changing** | **cruel, dog-eat-dog, hard, tough** | **crazy, mad, topsy-turvy** | **ancient, medieval, Roman, etc.** | **contemporary, modern, today's** | **brave new** *the architects' vision of a brave new world of pristine concrete* | **vanishing** *These tribesmen are proud survivors of a vanishing world.* | **outside, real** *Throughout his time in prison he had no contact with the outside world.* ◇ *In the real world things don't always happen like they do in books.* | **dream, fantasy, imaginary, inner, private** *She enjoys creating imaginary worlds for children.* ◇ *She lives in her own inner world.* | **material, physical** | **simulated, virtual** | **spiritual** | **spirit** *Mediums claim to receive messages from the spirit world.* | **social** | **animal, insect, natural, plant** *I like living in the country because I'm interested in the natural world.* | **academic, art, business, fashion, industrial, literary, medical, sports** | **different** *We come from different worlds.* | **sb's own (little)** *She lives in her own little world.* | **whole (wide), wider** *She told him he was her only friend in the whole wide world.* ◇ *The wider world learned of his illness months after he told his family.* | **small** *I'm sure we'll meet again. It's a very small world in this profession.*

• VERB + WORLD **change** *Young people always think they are going to change the world.* | **have, inhabit, live in** *Children often have their own private world.* | **look at, perceive, see, view** *different ways of looking at the world* | **come into, enter, escape into** *We come into the world with nothing.* ◇ *He entered the world of politics in 1997.* ◇ *Showbusiness gave him the chance to escape into another world.* | **bring sb into** *She had brought six children into the world.* | **escape from, shut yourself away from, shut out** *He closed his eyes and tried to shut out the world.* | **face** *For the first time since the death of her parents, she felt able to face the world.* | **take on** *He was so happy to leave school, he felt ready to take on the world.* | **tell** *He wanted to tell the world how happy he was.* | **prove to, show** *She was determined to show the world that she was no loser.* | **shake, shock, stun** *The news of the assassination shook the world.*

• WORLD + VERB **fall apart** *His world fell apart when his wife died.* | **revolve around sb/sth** *She thinks the world revolves around her and her schedule.* | **owe sb sth** *He seems to think that the world owes him a living.*

• WORLD + NOUN **knowledge** | **view** *Teachers influence the world view of their young students.*

• PREP. **in the ... ~** *He's well known in the fashion world.* | **~ about/around** *At this age, babies are starting to take an interest in the world around them.* **~ of** *In the world of high finance, there is little room for sentiment.*

• PHRASES **experience/knowledge/perception of the world, the eyes of the world** *The eyes of the world are on the president.* **in an ideal/a perfect world** *In an ideal world, I'd like to work just three days a week.* **in a world of your own** *I tapped on the window to get her attention but she was in a world of her own.* **the rest of the world** *He just wanted to shut himself away from the rest of the world.* **watch the world go by** *He likes to sit outside his front door and watch the world go by.* **the ways of the world** *He's too young to understand the ways of the world.* **worlds apart** *Although they are twins, they are worlds apart in their attitude to life.*

worm *noun*

• WORM + VERB **burrow, crawl** *Worms burrow down through the soil.* | **wriggle, writhe** *The worm was wriggling on the hook.*

• WORM + NOUN **cast**

worried *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** | **get** *I started to get worried when they didn't arrive home.*

• ADV. **deeply, desperately, dreadfully, extremely, frantically, genuinely, particularly, really, seriously, terribly, very** | **increasingly** | **a bit, quite, rather, slightly** | **rightly** *Citizens in inner-city areas are desperately worried and rightly so.*

• PREP. **about** *We were really worried about you!*

• PHRASES **worried sick** *She was worried sick about her son.*

worry *noun*

• ADJ. **big, considerable great, main, major, real, serious** *Paying the mortgage is a big worry for many people.* ◇ *Her mother's poor health caused her considerable worry.* ◇ *My greatest worry is that he'll do something stupid.* | **growing, increasing** | **slight** | **day-to-day** | **constant** *The money side of things has been a constant worry.* | **unnecessary** *She gave her parents unnecessary worry when she forgot to phone them.* | **immediate** *My immediate worry is money.* | **nagging, niggling** *I had a nagging worry that we weren't going to get there.* | **secret** | **business, economic, financial, money** | **health** *It was a relief to share my secret worries with him.*

• VERB + WORRY **have** *That year he had major health worries.* | **be beset by** *She wanted to enjoy her retirement without being beset by financial worries.* | **be frantic/ill/out of your mind/sick with** *I didn't know where he was and I was frantic with worry.* | **express** | **share** | **cause (sb), give sb** | **arouse, prompt** *The earth tremors prompted worries of a second major earthquake.* | **add to, increase** *The fact that she heard nothing from him only increased her worry.* | **forget** *Try and forget your worries for a little while.* | **ease** | **remove, take out** *Take the worry out of travelling with our holiday insurance offer.*

• WORRY + VERB **disappear** | **prove groundless/unfounded** *Most of Nigel's worries proved groundless.*

• PREP. **amid ~** *The pound has fallen to a new low amid worries that the British economy is heading for trouble.* **with ~** *He was sick with worry about everything.* | **~ about, ~ over** *They will not have worries over money.* **~ to** *His mother's health is an enormous worry to him.*

• PHRASES **cause for worry** *There is no immediate cause for worry.* **free from worry, freedom from worry, have no worries on that account/score** *The staff all work very hard—we've got no worries on that account.* **the least of your worries** *When he lost his job, the size of his flat was the least of his worries.* **a source of worry** *Money is a constant source of worry.*

worry *verb*

• ADV. **a lot, particularly, really, terribly** *She worries a lot about crime.* ◇ *What really worries me is what we do if there's nobody there.* | **slightly** | **needlessly, unduly, unnecessarily** *You do worry unnecessarily, you know.* | **not too much** *Don't worry too much about it.* | **constantly**

• VERB + WORRY **not let sth, not need to** *Don't let it worry you unduly.* | **begin to** | **tell sb not to**

• PREP. **about** *Don't worry about me, I'll be fine.* **with** *Don't worry the driver with unnecessary requests.*

• PHRASES **enough/nothing to worry about** *Don't bother Harry—he has enough to worry about as it is.* **stop**

worrying *Stop worrying, Dad, we'll be fine.* **worry yourself sick/to death** (*informal*)

worrying *adj.*

• VERBS **be**

• ADV. **deeply, extremely, particularly, seriously, terribly, very** | **a bit, rather, slightly**

worse *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *I feel even worse today!* | **become, get, grow** *The problem is getting worse all the time.* ◇ *The pain grew worse.* | **make sth** *Ignoring the problem will make it worse.*

• ADV. **considerably, dramatically, far, a good/great deal, infinitely, a lot, (very) much, a sight, significantly** *It's much worse for the parents than it is for the child.* ◇ *Things could be a sight worse than they are.* | **almost** *The area seemed almost worse than the city he had left.* | **a little, rather, slightly, substantially** | **progressively, steadily** *The problem became progressively worse.* | **even, still** *We've run out of petrol. Worse still, we can't get any more until tomorrow.*

worsen *verb*

• ADV. **considerably, dramatically, markedly, significantly** *The problem has worsened considerably in recent months.* | **steadily** | **rapidly** | **suddenly**

• VERB + WORSEN **continue to** *The economic recession has continued to worsen.*

worship *noun*

• ADJ. **daily, regular** | **evening, morning** | **Sunday** | **public** | **collective** | **religious** | **divine** | **Christian, Hindu, etc.** | **pagan** | **ancestor, nature, sun** | **idol, image** | **hero** *his hero worship of the national team* | **devil**

• VERB + WORSHIP **conduct, lead** *Our worship today is led by the Reverend John Parker.* | **attend**

• PREP. **in ~** *the use of music in worship*

• PHRASES **an act of worship, forms of worship, freedom of worship** *Under the new regime, all religions enjoy freedom of worship.* **a place of worship** *Fifteen per cent of the population attend a place of worship.*

worst *noun* **the worst**

• VERB + WORST **expect** *It doesn't matter what I say. My mother always expects the worst.* | **fear, suspect** | **be prepared for, prepare for** *Although all the votes have not yet been counted, the Democrats are preparing for the worst.* | **confirm** *I had not expected to do well in my exams, and the letter confirmed the worst.* | **be spared, escape** *Scotland seemed to have escaped the worst of the recession.* | **do your** *Let them do their worst* (= be as difficult as they can)—*we'll fight them every inch of the way.*

• WORST + VERB **be over** *He was still very ill, but the worst seemed to be over.*

• PREP. **at (sb/sth's) ~** *At worst, the drug can be fatal.* ◇ *At its worst, bullying is a kind of torture.* **through the ~** *Her sister helped her through the worst of her illness.*

• VERB + WORST **bring out the worst in sb** *Pressure can bring out the worst in people.* **get the worst of it** *He'd been in a fight and had obviously got the worst of it.* **the worst that can happen** *Don't worry—the worst that can happen is that you'll get a fine.*

worth *noun*

• ADJ. **real, true** | **intrinsic, objective** *Study has an intrinsic worth, as well as helping you achieve your goals.* | **individual, own, personal, self** | **moral** | **economic, financial, market** *Some experts doubt the economic worth of the project.* ◇ *The insurance company agreed to pay the car's current market worth.* | **net** | **literary, musical**

• VERB + WORTH **have** | **prove** *The emergency lighting has proved its worth this year.* | **affirm** *Asking for advice from people affirms their personal worth.* | **find out, learn, realize** *I only found out its real worth when I tried to buy another one.* | **appreciate, know** *They don't appreciate her true worth.* ◇ *She knows her own worth.* | **doubt, express doubts about, question** | **assess, estimate, give sb an estimate of** *Can you give me some estimate of its worth?*

• PREP. **of ~** *He never contributed anything of worth to the conversation.* | **~ to** *This necklace isn't worth anything in money terms, but its worth to me is incalculable.*

• PHRASES **at sb/sth's real/true worth** *They don't appreciate her at her real worth.* **of proven worth** *They are looking for a new sales manager of proven worth.* **a sense of (your own) worth** *She has no sense of her own worth.*

worth *adj.*

• VERBS **be** | **become** | **make sth** | **consider sth, think sth** *Most of the candidates were not considered worth interviewing.*

• ADV. **really, well** *This book is well worth reading.* | **certainly, definitely** | **barely, hardly, scarcely** *It's so unimportant it's hardly worth mentioning.* | **almost** | **potentially** | **reportedly, reputedly** | **always** *It's always worth seeing if you can get a cheap, last-minute deal.*

• PREP. **to** *This order is potentially worth millions of pounds to the company.*

worthless *adj.*

• VERBS **be, feel, prove, seem** | **become** | **make sth** *These contradictions made his evidence worthless.* | **consider sth, discard sth as, dismiss sth as, regard sth as, reject sth as, see sth as** *The opinion polls were dismissed as worthless.*

• ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, totally, utterly** | **almost, virtually** | **largely**

• PREP. **to** *The diseased plants are quite worthless to the farmer.*

worthwhile *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **become** | **make sth** *Their gratitude made it all worthwhile.* | **consider sth, find sth, think sth** *You might find it worthwhile to consult a financial adviser.*

• ADV. **extremely, really, very, well** | **hardly** *The gamble seemed hardly worthwhile.* | **financially, socially** *pursuing socially worthwhile goals*

worthy *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **consider sth, deem sth, judge sth, think sth**

• ADV. **most, very, well** | **entirely, wholly** | **hardly, scarcely** *The matter is scarcely worthy of the managing director's time.* | **enough** *We thought it was a worthy enough objective.*

• PREP. **of** *It's a matter worthy of our attention.*

wound *noun*

• ADJ. **bad, deep, serious** | **flesh** *Despite the large amount of blood, it was only a flesh wound.* | **gaping, open** | **clean** | **face, head, leg, etc.** | **bullet, gunshot, knife, stab** | **entry, exit** *The exit wound made by the bullet was much larger than the entry wound.* | **old** | **war** *His old war wounds still ached in certain weathers.*

• VERB + WOUND **inflict** | **receive, suffer** | **examine, probe** | **clean, dress**

• WOUND + VERB **close** | **heal** *It was a clean wound, and it healed quickly.*

• WOUND + NOUN **care, healing**
• PREP. **~in** *He had deep wounds in his chest.* **~to** *He died of gunshot wounds to the head.*

wound *verb*

1 injure sb's body
• ADV. **badly, critically, gravely, grievously, seriously, severely | fatally, mortally** *She was fatally wounded in a car crash.* | **slightly**
• PREP. **in** *One reporter was wounded in the leg.*
• PHRASES **the walking wounded** (= people who have been wounded, but not so badly that they cannot walk)

2 hurt sb's feelings
• ADV. **deeply** *She was deeply wounded by his remarks.*

woven *adj.*

• VERBS **be**
• ADV. **closely, densely, finely, tightly** *very fine and closely woven silk* | **coarsely, loosely**

wrangle *noun*

• ADJ. **bitter | complex | legal**
• VERB + WRANGLE **be involved in, get into, have**
• WRANGLE + VERB **ensue | continue, go on** *The legal wrangle continues.*
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *The two countries fell out in a bitter wrangle over imports.* | **~between** *The wrangle between the school and the local council has gone on for two years.* **~over, ~with** *I don't want to get into a wrangle with the committee.*

wrap *verb*

• ADV. **firmly, securely, tightly | loosely | carefully | individually** *Each apple was individually wrapped in paper.* | **up**
• PREP. **around/round** *He wrapped his arms tightly around her waist.* **in** *She wrapped the child carefully in a blanket.*

PHRASAL VERB

wrap (sb) up
• ADV. **warm, warmly, well** *Make sure you wrap up warmly if you're going out.*
• PREP. **against** *We went outside, well wrapped up against the cold.* **in** *Christine was wrapped up in one of the blankets.*

wrapper *noun*

• ADJ. **chocolate, sweet | Cellophane™, foil, paper, plastic | sealed | plain | empty**
• VERB + WRAPPER **remove, take off, tear off | drop, throw away, throw down** *He dropped a sweet wrapper.*
• WRAPPER + VERB **litter sth** *Sweet wrappers littered the floor.*
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *The book arrived in a plain brown wrapper.* **on a/the ~** *There was a list of ingredients on the wrapper.* **out of a/the** *She took the chocolate bar out of the foil wrapper.*

wrath *noun*

• ADJ. **full, great | divine** *They saw the floods as a sign of divine wrath.*
• VERB + WRATH **arouse, bring (down), feel, incur, provoke** *This remark brought the judge's full wrath down on Sergeant Golding.* ◇ *This is the second hotel to feel the wrath of the bombers.* ◇ *He incurred Helen's wrath by arriving late.* ◇ *What had she done to provoke his wrath?* | **fear** *She feared her father's wrath.* | **brave, face, risk** *If the prime minister fails, he will face the wrath of the voters.* | **appease, avoid, escape** *They left gifts for the gods to appease their wrath.* ◇ *He fled the country to escape the king's wrath.* | **turn, vent** *He vented his wrath on his colleagues.*
• PREP. **~at** *his wrath at the insult* **~of** *the wrath of God* **~over** *the government's wrath over the incident*

wreath *noun*

• ADJ. **Christmas, festive | holly, laurel, poppy**
• VERB + WREATH **lay** *The Queen laid a poppy wreath at the war memorial.* | **send** *He didn't come to the funeral but he sent a wreath.* | **be crowned with, wear**
• PREP. **~of** *She wore a wreath of roses round her head.*

wreck *noun*

1 of a ship
• VERB + WRECK **discover, find, locate** *Divers were sent down to try and locate the wreck.* | **raise, salvage** *They're going to try and raise the wreck from the sea bed.* | **salvage sth from | escape (from)**
• PREP. **in a/the ~** *They are worried about the oil still in the wreck.* **on a/the ~** *Heavy seas prevented salvage teams from landing on the wreck.* | **~of** *the wreck of the Titanic*

2 of a car/plane
• ADJ. **total | crumpled | blazing, burning** *Explosions ripped through the blazing wreck.*
• VERB + WRECK **be trapped in** *Two passengers are still trapped in the wreck.*

3 of a person/thing
• ADJ. **absolute, complete, total | emotional, nervous** *The interview reduced him to a nervous wreck.* | **gibbering, quivering, shaking, whimpering** *I always turn into a gibbering wreck at interviews.* | **physical**
• VERB + WRECK **feel, look** *I hadn't slept for two days, and I felt a complete physical wreck.* | **reduce sb to | escape (from) | salvage sth from**
• PREP. **~of** *They still hoped to salvage something from the wreck of their marriage.*

wreck *verb*

• ADV. **completely, totally** *A bomb completely wrecked the building.* | **almost, nearly | effectively**
• VERB + WRECK **threaten to** *a crisis that threatens to wreck the peace talks*

wreckage *noun*

• ADJ. **mangled, tangled, twisted | blazing, burning, smoking | aircraft**
• QUANT. **bit, piece** *Pieces of wreckage have been found up to three miles away.*
• VERB + WRECKAGE **scatter, spread** *The crash left wreckage spread over a wide area.* | **be strewn with** *The runway is still strewn with wreckage.* | **sight** *Wreckage has been sighted fifteen miles north of the island.* | **survey** *He surveyed the wreckage of his expensive equipment.* | **search, sift through** *Police are searching the wreckage for clues to the cause of the accident.* | **examine | clear** *The wreckage has now been cleared from the motorway.* | **be buried in, be trapped in** *Several people are still trapped in the wreckage.* | **crawl from | cut sb (free) from, free sb from, pull sb from** *He had to be cut from the wreckage by firemen.* | **find sth among** *The remains of an explosive device were found among the wreckage.* | **recover sth from, rescue/save sb/sth from, salvage sth from** *Another body has been recovered from the wreckage.* ◇ (*figurative*) *Could nothing be rescued from the wreckage of her dreams?*
• WRECKAGE + VERB **be strewn** *Wreckage was strewn over a wide area.*
• PREP. **amidst/among/amongst the ~** *Bodies lay among the tangled wreckage.* **in the ~** *Her body was discovered in the wreckage.* | **~from** *A search is going on for wreckage from the blazing aircraft.*

wriggle *verb*

- ADV. **uncomfortably** *The children wriggled uncomfortably in their seats.* | **free** *The dog wriggled free of his grasp and ran off.* | **about, away**
- PHRASES **wriggle your way** *She wriggled her way under the heavy eiderdown.*

wrinkle *noun*

- ADJ. **fine**
- VERB + WRINKLE **have** | **get** | **prevent** *Is there anything you can do to prevent wrinkles?*
- WRINKLE + VERB **appear, form** *Fine wrinkles started to appear round her eyes.*
- PREP. **without a ~** *Her skin was still without a wrinkle.*

wrinkled *adj.*

- VERBS **be** | **become**
- ADV. **all, deeply, extremely, very** *His face was all wrinkled and old.* | **prematurely**

wrist *noun*

- ADJ. **bony, slender, small, thin, tiny** | **sinewy** | **limp, weak** | **broken, injured, sprained**
- VERB + WRIST **catch (sb by), clasp (sb by), grab (sb by), grasp (sb by), grip (sb by), seize (sb by), take (sb by)** *'Is it serious?' she asked, clasping the doctor's wrist.* ◇ *I turned to leave but he clasped me by the wrist.* | **bend, twist** *He grabbed her wrist but she twisted it free.* | **encircle, enclose** *Strong fingers encircled her tiny wrists.* | **rub** | **break, dislocate, fracture, sprain** | **bandage** | **bind** *The burglars bound the family's wrists behind their backs.* | **slash, slit** *He slashed his wrists in a suicide attempt.*
- WRIST + NOUN **watch** (also **wristwatch**) | **band, strap** | **action** *The secret of making the ball spin is in the wrist action.* | **joint** | **injury**
- PREP. **around/round the/your ~** *A policeman snapped handcuffs around his wrists.* **by the ~, on the/your ~** *He wears weights on his wrists when he goes running.*
- PHRASES **a flick of the wrist** *She sent the shuttlecock flying over the net with a practised flick of the wrist.*

writ *noun*

- ADJ. **High Court, Supreme Court, etc.** | **legal** | **libel, personal injury, etc.**
- VERB + WRIT **apply for, obtain** *Creditors could obtain a writ for the arrest of their debtors.* | **file, issue, serve** *A writ was filed in the High Court.* ◇ *The solicitor came to serve a writ on him.* | **be served with, receive** *He has been served with a High Court writ.*
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *22 defendants are named in the writ.* | **~ against** *The businessmen have issued a writ against the authority for damages.* **~ for** *a writ for damages/libel* **~ of** *(technical) a writ of execution/summons*

write *verb*

1 form letters and words on paper

- ADV. **clearly, neatly** *Children must learn to write neatly.* | **busily** *She was busily writing in an exercise book.* | **down, out** *I'd better write this down, otherwise I'll forget it.*
- VERB + WRITE **learn to** | **teach sb to**
- PREP. **on** *He wrote a list on the back of an old envelope.*

2 produce a piece of writing

- ADV. **beautifully, well** | **badly** | **clearly** *the ability to write clearly in plain English* | **extensively** *He has written extensively on the subject.* | **anonymously**
- VERB + WRITE **commission sb to** *He has been commissioned to write a history of the town.* | **inspire sb to, prompt sb to** *She was inspired to write the poem by a visit to the cathedral.*
- PREP. **about** *a journalist who writes about problems in the developing world* **for** *She writes for 'The Times'.* **of** *She wrote of her life in Africa.* **on** *He writes on political issues.*

writer *noun*

- ADJ. **celebrated, distinguished, eminent, famous, great, influential, leading, major, prominent, well-known** *one of the greatest writers of all time* | **award-winning** | **best-selling, popular** | **favourite** | **prolific** *a very prolific crime writer* | **creative, fine, good, talented** *one of the best writers in journalism today* | **experienced** | **young** | **aspiring** *a chance for aspiring writers to get their work published* | **academic, freelance, ghost** (also **ghostwriter**), **professional, staff** | **anonymous** | **contemporary, living, modern, recent** | **ancient, classical, Greek, Roman** | **Renaissance, Victorian, etc.** | **sixteenth-century, etc.** | **early, later** *early writers in sociology* | **female, gay, male, woman** *She gives talks about being a black woman writer.* | **Christian, communist, feminist, political, socialist** | **religious, spiritual** | **comedy, fiction, prose, science-fiction** | **film, letter, magazine, music, paperback, screenplay, script, short-story, software, textbook** | **copy, feature, gossip, headline, leader, report** | **cookery, crime, fashion, food, football, golf, science, sports, thriller, travel** | **short-hand** | **the present** *(written) The present writer* (= the person writing) *has no experience in microbiology.*
- WRITER + VERB **write sth** *a popular writer who has written over forty books* | **argue sth, describe sth, point sth out, put it** *(written)*, **say sth, suggest sth** *As one twelfth-century writer put it, English wine could be drunk only with closed eyes and through clenched teeth.* ◇ *Is political culture, as some writers have suggested, in a state of collapse?* | **be interested in sth**
- PREP. **~ for** *a freelance feature writer for the Guardian* **~ of** *a writer of children's books* **~ on** *He is a prominent writer on civil liberties.* **~ to** *a writer to the letters column*
- PHRASES **an association/a group/a guild of writers, a writer's association/group/guild/union, a writer in residence** *We have decided not to employ a writer in residence after June.* **a writer of the day/period/time** *Unlike many writers of the period, she is not preoccupied with morality.* **writer's block** *He's just released a new album after two years of writer's block.*

⇨ Note at JOB

writing *noun*

1 putting words on paper

- VERB + WRITING **do, practise** *Every morning the children do writing.* | **improve**
- WRITING + NOUN **paper** | **desk**
- PHRASES **reading and writing**

2 activity/job of writing

- ADJ. **effective** *The book aims to teach effective essay writing.* | **creative, descriptive, imaginative** | **academic, critical, scientific, technical** | **fiction, essay, letter, novel, prose, report, script** | **travel**
- QUANT. **piece**
- VERB + WRITING **teach**
- WRITING + NOUN **skills**
- PHRASES **a style of writing**

3 written/printed words

- VERB + WRITING **put sth into** *The arrangement was never put into writing.*
- PREP. **in ~** *This agreement has to be be confirmed in writing.*

4 (often **writings**) books, etc.

- ADJ. **fine, good, great** | **bad** | **influential** | **early, later** *His experiences in India influenced his later writings.* | **ancient, contemporary** *Ancient writings reinforce their claims to the land.* | **published, unpublished** | **prose** | **academic, critical, historical, mystical, philosophical,**

political, religious, sacred, scholarly, scientific *Christians share some of their sacred writings with the Jews.* | **popular** | **feminist** | **modernist** | **collected, selected** *Ruskin's Collected Writings*

• QUANT. **piece** | **anthology, collection** *an anthology of writing about jazz*

• VERB + WRITING **read** | **publish** *His writings on the history of art were published by Greenway and Settle.* | **influence, inspire**

• WRITING + VERB **be about sth, be concerned with sth, deal with sth** *Her early writing was concerned with the French Revolution.* | **include sth, range** *His writings range from ancient to contemporary art, and include a study of Giorgione's paintings.* | **indicate sth, provide sth, reflect sth, show sth, suggest sth** *His writings provide us with a first-hand account of the civil war.* ◇ *Her writings reflect the breadth of her interests.* | **influence sb/sth, inspire sb/sth**

• PREP. **in ... ~** *You find a greater use of the passive in scientific writing.* **through sb's ~** *Her influence has been greatest through her writings.* | **~ about** *Her name crops up frequently in writings about the Renaissance.* **~ by** *a collection of writings by artists* **~ on** *The book is a collection of writings on death by various authors.*

5 handwriting

• ADJ. **small, tiny** | **legible, neat** | **illegible** | **cursive, joined-up** | **childish** | **spidery**

• VERB + WRITING **have** *He's got very neat writing.* | **read** *I can't read your writing.* | **recognize** *I didn't recognize the writing.*

• PREP. **in sb's ~** *The list was in Elizabeth's writing.*

⇨ See HANDWRITING

wrong *noun*

• ADJ. **great, terrible** | **past** | **legal, moral** | **civil, criminal** *There are various kinds of civil wrongs, or torts.*

• VERB + WRONG **commit, do (sb), inflict** *If they do wrong, they have to be punished.* ◇ *You are answerable in court for wrongs done to individuals.* ◇ *According to her, her son could do no wrong.* ◇ *He admitted he had done her wrong and asked for forgiveness.* | **compensate (sb) for, make up for, put right, redress, right, undo** *How can we right these wrongs?* | **suffer** *It's the job of the newspapers to expose the wrongs suffered by such people.* | **forgive** *The two communities must learn to forgive past wrongs.* | **acknowledge, apologize for, recognize** | **see no** *I see no wrong in asking him to share the expenses.* | **expose** | **avenge, take revenge for**

• PREP. **in the ~** *Although he knew he was in the wrong, he wouldn't apologize.*

• PHRASES **the difference between right and wrong** *Children have to learn the difference between right and wrong.* **the rights and wrongs (of sth)** *Whatever the rights and wrongs of the situation, there's not a lot we can do.*

wrong *adj.*

• VERBS **be, seem** | **go** *Things seemed to be going horribly wrong.* | **get sth** *He got all his sums wrong.* | **find sth** *The doctor could find nothing physically wrong with him.* | **get sb** *Don't get me wrong* (= don't misunderstand me)*—I'm not asking for any favours.* | **prove sb** *She was able to prove him wrong.*

• ADV. **all, badly, disastrously, drastically, grossly, hopelessly, horribly, seriously, terribly, tragically** *You've got it all wrong. I never meant to imply that you were responsible.* | **absolutely, completely, entirely, fundamentally, quite, totally, wholly** | **just, simply** *She's simply wrong for this job.* | **not far** *They weren't far wrong with their estimate of 100 000.* | **not necessarily** | **clearly, obviously, plainly** | **morally, physically**

• PREP. **about** *You were completely wrong about Maurice. He's not leaving.* **with** *She was worried that there was something seriously wrong with her.*

Xx

X-ray *noun*

- ADJ. **chest, foot, etc. | routine**
- VERB + X-RAY **have | do, take | examine**
- X-RAY + VERB **reveal sth, show sth** *The X-ray showed a crack in one rib.*
- X-RAY + NOUN **equipment, machine, plate | crystallography, diffraction | fluorescence, photography, picture | department, unit | eyes, vision**
- PREP. **~ of** *The dentist took an X-ray of my jaw.* **~ on** *I had to have an X-ray on my knee.*
- PHRASES **the result/results of the X-ray** *The result of the X-ray gave no cause for concern.*

xylophone *noun*

⇨ Special page at MUSIC

Yy

yacht *noun*

- ADJ. **luxury | private, royal | charter | cruising, racing | motor, sailing, steam**
- VERB + YACHT **cruise on, sail** *They are cruising on a large motor yacht.* **| moor, tie up**
- YACHT + VERB **sail, set sail**
- YACHT + NOUN **race | club | marina**
- PREP. **aboard/on/on board a/the ~**

yard *noun*

⇨ Note at MEASURE

yardstick *noun*

- ADJ. **good, useful | common**
- VERB + YARDSTICK **have** *We don't have a common yardstick by which to compare the two cases.* **| apply, use | give sb, provide (sb with), serve as | measure sth against/by**
- PREP. **against a ~** *The new test provides a yardstick against which to measure children's learning.* **by a ~** *By any yardstick, that's a large amount of money.*

yarn *noun*

1 thread

- ADJ. **fine, thick**
- QUANT. **length, piece**
- VERB + YARN **knit, spin, weave** *The yarn is woven into a coarse fabric.* **| thread** *The yarn has to be threaded through the needle.* **| dye | use**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *There's a knot in the yarn.*

2 story

- ADJ. **amusing, good | adventure**
- VERB + YARN **spin (sb), tell (sb)** *He tried to spin us some yarn about how he was collecting for the church. It was all lies.*
- PREP. **~ about**

yawn *noun*

- ADJ. **big, deep, huge | noisy | stifled**
- VERB + YAWN **stifle, suppress** *He struggled to stifle a yawn.* **| give** *The little boy gave a huge yawn.* **| conceal** *He tried to conceal his yawn behind his hand.*
- PREP. **with a ~**

yawn *verb*

- ADV. **hugely, widely** *He sat up and yawned hugely.*
- VERB + YAWN **make sb | hear sb**
- PREP. **at** *He got fed up of people yawning at him when he talked about his job.*

year *noun*

- ADJ. **last, past** *The chart shows our performance over the past year.* **| past, preceding, previous, recent** *The event has not proved popular in past years.* ◇ *They had met once the previous year.* **| current | coming, following, future, next** *We have high hopes for the coming year.* ◇ *She died the following year.* ◇ *We aim to do even better in future years.* **| consecutive, successive** *She won the race for the third successive year.* **| alternate | intervening** *He soon realized that a lot had changed in the intervening years.* **| early, later** *the early years of the twenty-first century* ◇ *In his later years, he drifted away from politics.* **| new** *We're going skiing early in the new year.* **| final** *final-year university students* **| golden, good, happy, memorable, momentous** *the golden years of motoring* **| profitable | bad, hard, lean, poor | peak, record** *a peak year for exports* **| calendar | leap | academic, school | financial, fiscal, tax | light** (*often figurative*) *The new range puts us light years ahead of the competition.* **| election | sabbatical** *He spent his sabbatical year doing research in Moscow.* **| inter-war, post-war, pre-war, war ~s** *The children spent the war years abroad.* **| formative, tender ~s** *She was born in Spain but spent her formative years in Italy.* ◇ *children of tender years*
- VERB + YEAR **spend** *He spent last year trying to get a new job.* **| take** *It took him ten years to qualify as a vet.* **| celebrate** *Next year they celebrate fifty years of marriage.* **| put on** *His wife's death has put years on him* (= made him look/feel much older). **| take off** *Careful make-up and styling can take years off you* (= make you look much younger).
- YEAR + VERB **begin, start | end, finish | elapse, go by, pass** *A year elapsed before I heard from him again.* ◇ *The last year went by in flash.* **| run from/to sth** *The academic year runs from October to June.* **| see sth** *That year saw the explosion of the Internet.*
- PREP. **by the ~ …** *The reforms will be fully implemented by the year 2007.* **during the ~** *during the next academic year* **for a/the ~** *profit for the current year to 31 December* ◇

We lived there for ten years. **in a ~** *I hope to retire in a year/in a year's time.* **in a/the ~** *in the next tax year ◇ Britain was invaded in the year 1066.* **in ~s** *It's the first time we've met in years* (= for many years). **over/under a ~** *We've been friends for over twenty years.* **per ~** *Over 10 000 people per year are injured in this type of accident.* **throughout the ~** *The global economy means that all types of fruit and vegetables are available throughout the year.* | **~s between … and … /from … to …** *the boom years from 1993 to 2000* **~ of** *The book represents three years of hard work. ◇ That was in the year of the great flood.*

- PHRASES **all year long** *I've been waiting for this moment all year long.* **all (the) year round** *The city tour runs all the year round.* **the beginning/end/middle/start of the year, be six, etc. years old** *She's only ten years old.* **early/late in the year, a time of year** *It's usually much colder at this time of year.* **the turn of the year** *The team has suffered a loss of form since the turn of the year.*

yearn *verb*

- ADV. **secretly | still**
- PREP. **after** *He still yearned after her, even after all these years.* **for** *She yearned for children of her own.*

yearning *noun*

- ADJ. **deep, desperate, enormous, great, passionate | romantic**
- VERB + YEARNING **feel, have | express**
- PREP. **with (a) ~** *He looked at her with yearning.* | **~ after** *He felt a great yearning after his old job.* **~ for** *They had a deep yearning for their homeland.*

yell *verb*

- ADV. **loudly | furiously, hysterically | almost | back, out** *She yelled back at me to mind my own business.*
- VERB + YELL **hear sb**
- PREP. **at** *He yelled at me furiously.* **for** *yelling for help* **in** *She yelled in pain as she touched the hot iron.* **with** *The children were yelling with laughter.*

yellow *adj.*

- ADV. **very | rather, slightly** *Her teeth were rather yellow.*
- ADJ. **dark, deep, rich, strong | creamy, light, pale, soft** *She wore a pale yellow dress.* | **bright, brilliant, vivid | dirty, dull, sickly | canary, chrome, golden, lemon, primrose, saffron, sunshine**

⇨ Special page at COLOUR

yelp *noun*

- ADJ. **little, small | sharp | muffled**
- VERB + YELP **give, let out | hear**
- PREP. **with a ~ | ~ of** *She jumped back with a little yelp of surprise.*
- PHRASES **a yelp of pain**

⇨ Note at SOUND

yen *noun*

⇨ Note at CURRENCY

yes *noun, exclamation*

- ADJ. **resounding, unequivocal, unqualified** *When the villagers were asked if they wanted the factory to be built, the answer was a resounding yes.* | **simple**
- VERB + YES **answer, say** *In reply to his question, most of them answered yes. ◇ Please say yes!* | **vote**
- YES + NOUN **vote**
- PREP. **with a ~** *He answered with a yes.* | **~ to** *They voted yes to strike action.*
- PHRASES **yes or no** *I need a simple yes or no.*

yield *noun*

- ADJ. **good, high** *This method of cultivation produces higher yield.* | **low, poor** *Yields are quite poor this year.*
- VERB + YIELD **produce**

yoga *noun*

- ADJ. **gentle | meditative**
- VERB + YOGA **do, practise** *She does yoga for an hour a day.* | **take up | go to** *I go to yoga on Thursdays.*
- YOGA + NOUN **exercises, movements, positions, technique | class, session** *He attends regular yoga classes.* | **teacher | practice | centre**

yoghurt *noun*

- ADJ. **natural, plain | apricot, strawberry, etc. | fat-free, low-fat | live | set, thick**
- QUANT. **carton, pot**
- YOGHURT + NOUN **carton, pot**

⇨ Special page at FOOD

yogurt *noun*

- ADJ. **natural, plain | apricot, strawberry, etc. | fat-free, low-fat | live | set, thick**
- QUANT. **carton, pot**
- YOGURT + NOUN **carton, pot**

young *adj.*

- VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *I felt young again.*
- ADV. **extremely, very** *She still looks very young.* | **comparatively, fairly, quite, relatively** *He seemed quite young to have so much responsibility.* | **enough** *She looked young enough to be his daughter.*

youth *noun*

1 period of your life when you are young
- ADJ. **early | unhappy | lost** *nostalgia for her lost youth* | **misspent** *His lack of qualifications was taken as a sign of a misspent youth.*
- VERB + YOUTH **spend** *She spent much of her youth in Hong Kong.* | **idle away, waste** *He wasted his youth in front of a computer screen.*
- PREP. **during your ~** *She contracted the disease during her youth.* **from ~** *from youth to maturity* **in your ~** *He started going to discos in his early youth.* **since your ~** *I haven't danced since my youth!* **throughout your ~** *He played football throughout his youth.*
- PHRASES **not in the first flush of youth** *Though no longer in the first flush of youth she's still remarkably energetic.* **scenes from/of sb's youth**

2 being young
- ADJ. **extreme** *Her extreme youth was against her.* | **comparative | eternal** *in search of eternal youth*
- VERB + YOUTH **have** *You still have your youth—that's the main thing.*

3 young person
- ADJ. **male | black, white | callow** *He was a callow youth when he joined the newspaper.* | **pimply, spotty** *She's going out with some spotty youth.* | **fresh-faced | gangling**
- QUANT. **gang, group**

4 young people
- ADJ. **modern** *the aspirations of modern youth* | **local | urban | working-class | delinquent, disaffected | unemployed | educated | gilded** (*figurative*) *a club for the gilded youth* (= rich and spoilt young people) *of London*
- YOUTH + NOUN **culture | club, group, movement, organization, subculture, work | leader, worker | employment, unemployment, training | court, crime, custody** *a crackdown on youth crime*
- PHRASES **the youth of today**

Zz

zeal *noun*

- ADJ. **great, true | excessive, fanatical | crusading, missionary, radical, reforming, religious, revolutionary** *a crusading zeal to eradicate drug abuse*
- VERB + ZEAL **burn with, have** *He burned with a reforming zeal.* | **demonstrate, show**
- PREP. **with ~** *She went about the task with the zeal of an enthusiast.* | **~ for** *She had a true zeal for journalism.* **~ in** *their zeal in the promotion of education*
- PHRASES **a lack of zeal**

zest *noun*

- ADJ. **great | added, renewed, youthful** *Last month's victory has given him a renewed zest for the game.*
- VERB + ZEST **be full of, have** *He is 74 years old but still full of zest.* | **add, give sb/sth** *The love affair added a little zest to her life.* | **lose**
- PREP. **with ~** *He campaigned with zest.* | **~ for** *a zest for battle*
- PHRASES **a zest for life**

zip *noun*

- VERB + ZIP **close, do up, fasten, pull (up), slide (up) | open, pull (down), slide (down), undo | get caught in** *The fabric got caught in the zip and tore.*
- ZIP + VERB **be/get stuck, stick** *The zip on my bag has stuck.* | **break | be open, be undone**
- ZIP + NOUN **fastener**
- PREP. **by a ~** *The jacket was fastened by a zip at the front.* **with a ~** *a bag with a zip* | **~ on**

⇨ Special page at CLOTHES

zone *noun*

- ADJ. **broad, narrow | marginal, peripheral, transition/transitional, twilight** *a transition zone between tropical and arid vegetations* ◇ *the twilight zone between living and merely existing* | **border, frontier | neutral | battle, combat, military, war | buffer, demilitarized, exclusion, no-fly, no-go** *This area behind the station is a no-go zone for tourists.* | **occupation, occupied, security | autonomous | danger | emergency | disaster** *The region has been declared an ecological disaster zone.* | **safe | safety** *She stood some distance away from him to maintain a safety zone.* | **nuclear-free, smoke-free, traffic-free, weapons-free** *Most of the town centre is a traffic-free zone.* | **earthquake, fault, seismic | climatic, geographical | alpine, arid, coastal, temperate** *the alpine and arid zones of Australia* | **economic, enterprise, fishing, free-trade, industrial** *an industrial zone of factories, warehouses and shipyards* | **euro-** (also **eurozone**) | **northern, southern, etc. | pedestrian | time | erogenous | relegation** *The team finds itself in the relegation zone after a run of poor results.*
- VERB + ZONE **control** *The rebels control the southern border zone.* | **create, declare sth, establish, impose, set up** *The area has been declared a closed military zone.* | **enforce** *Fighter planes are being sent to enforce the UN no-fly zone.* | **violate** *An enemy plane was shot down after it violated the exclusion zone.* | **cross into, enter** *We were crossing into a new time zone.* | **leave** *Aid workers were advised to leave the danger zone.* | **divide sth into** *Europe is divided into economic zones.*
- ZONE + NOUN **boundary**
- PREP. **in a/the ~** *The plant grows only in the temperate zone.* **into a/the** *We had accidentally strayed into the war zone.* **out of a/the ~, within a/the ~** *Companies within enterprise zones are given special help.* | **~ between** *the neutral zone between the two countries*

zoo *noun*

- VERB + ZOO **go to, visit | escape from | run** *a badly-run zoo*
- ZOO + NOUN **animals | keeper** (also **zookeeper**)
- PREP. **at a/the ~** *We saw a baby polar bear at the zoo.* **in a/the ~** *These lions were born in the zoo.*

zoology *noun*

⇨ Note at SUBJECT

KEY TO THE STUDY PAGES

S2 ideas into words

1 **a** constructive, positive **b** wacky **c** absurd, crackpot, crazy, mad, outlandish, ridiculous, wild **d** half-baked **e** grandiose

2 **a** come up with, dream up, hit on/upon, produce, think up **b** contribute, input, moot, put forward **c** promote, push (forward), sell **d** consider, entertain, flirt with, mull over, toy with, turn over **e** bounce around, bounce off sb, discuss, explore, talk about

3 **a** come into sb's head/mind, come to sb, flash across/into sb's brain/mind, hit sb, occur to sb, pop into sb's head, strike sb **b** blossom, work (out) **c** come to nothing

4 the germ/glimmering of an idea

S3–5 using a noun entry

adjectives

1 a bewildering array of goods, a biting wind, a burning ambition, a convincing win, driving rain, a fighting chance, a gaping chasm, a staggering sum of money, a blazing row over money, a crushing defeat, a haunting melody, a nagging pain, a piercing scream, raging inflation, a sprawling suburb, a sweeping statement

quantifiers

2 **a** *wisps* of cloud **b** *spate* of attacks **c** *bouts* of depression **d** *snatch* of their conversation **e** *stream* of traffic **f** *pack* of stray dogs **g** *dose* of flu **h** *cloves* of garlic **i** *outbursts* of temper **j** *pieces* of jewellery

verb + ...

3 **a** *got into/had* an argument **b** *clear/pay off* his debts **c** *came up with/put forward* the suggestion **d** *arrive at/draw* any firm conclusions **e** *agreed/struck* a deal **f** a meeting has been *arranged/scheduled* **g** *accept/shoulder* the blame **h** *drummed/tapped* his fingers **i** *took/went on* a trip **j** *shade/shield* my eyes

... + verb

4 the wine had *flowed freely* ... my head was *throbbing* ... my stomach was *churning* ... the wind *howled* ... the rain *lashed* against the window ... my nerves were *on edge* ...
I heard the *key turn/turning* ... my heart began to *hammer* in my chest ... footsteps *echoed* on the stairs ... my mind was *racing* ... the bedroom door *creaked* open ....my eyes *accustomed* to the darkness ... the man's mouth *dropped* open

... + noun

5 **a** taxi rank **b** leg room **c** protest rally **d** traffic accident **e** famine relief **f** newspaper kiosk **g** shelf space **h** job prospects

prepositions

6 **a** *in* agony **b** *at* a disadvantage **c** confusion *over* ... **d** *over* the noise **e** *in* writing **f** *at* speed **g** *in* self-defence **h** *in* this rain **i** *at/over* Christmas **j** skill *at/in* ...

phrases

7 **a** Could I *have* a word in your ear? **b** I remember clearly the first time I *set* eyes on her. **c** If this report *falls* into the wrong hands, we're in trouble. **d** I vowed never to *set* foot in the place again. **e** The force of the impact *broke/jarred* every bone in his body.

S6-7 using a verb entry

adverbs

1 **a** argued *fiercely/heatedly* **b** *fiercely/hotly* defend **c** grinned *sheepishly/wolfishly* **d** *ruefully/sheepishly* confessed **e** contrasted *markedly/starkly* **f** *brutally/starkly* illustrates

verb + ...

2 **a** *was happy to* accept **b** *failed to* comply **c** *serve to* highlight **d** *hasten to* add **e** *take steps to* ensure **f** *offered to* resign **g** *was determined to* fight **h** *can afford to* pay

prepositions

3 **a** backfired *on* me **b** protest *against* the decision **c** comment *on* their decision **d** mistaking me *for* someone else **e** treated *for* sunstroke **f** prejudice the jury *against* him **g** plotting *against* him **h** collaborated *on* many projects **i** appealing *against* the ruling **j** appealed *for* calm

phrases

4 **a** drink and drive **b** moaning and groaning **c** tossing and turning **d** mix and match **e** puffing and panting **f** braked to a halt **g** crack under the strain **h** dawned bright and cold **i** grinning from ear to ear **j** pausing for breath

collocations of phrasal verbs

5 I *had been left to* fend for myself in the desert. The sun beat down *mercilessly*. The water holes had dried up *completely*. I *had to* rely *entirely* on cacti *for* water. I *tried to* hang on *to* my sanity, clinging *desperately* to the hope that I would find my way out alive.

S8–9 using an adjective entry

verbs

1 I nearly fell asleep. His mistake proved costly. The house smells damp. The house stood empty. The crowd grew impatient. The roads run parallel. His mistake passed unnoticed. The driver emerged unscathed.

2 **a** *drove* me crazy **b** *held* captive **c** *set* ablaze **d** *rendered* powerless **e** *deemed* unsuitable **f** *beat* the shopkeeper senseless **g** *regarded* him as eccentric **h** *jerked* me awake

adverbs

3 **a** painfully **b** dead **c** fiercely **d** distinctly **e** wildly **f** grossly

4 **a** unduly concerned **b** justly proud **c** blissfully unaware **d** conspicuously absent **e** oddly familiar **f** outwardly composed **g** eerily silent **h** notoriously fickle

prepositions

5 **a** damaging *to* the government **b** late *for* school **c** acquainted *with* the new software **d** insistent *on/upon* secrecy **e** irresistible *to* women **f** limited *to* two per person **g** mean *with* his money **h** alarmed *at/by* the latest crime statistics

phrases

6 **a** alive and *well* **b** safe and *sound* **c** quick and *easy* **d** ready and *willing* **e** neat and *tidy* **f** worried *sick* **g** wet *through* **h** thrilled *to bits* **i** scared *out of my wits/ stiff/ to death* **j** bored *out of our minds/ rigid/ silly/ stiff/ to death/ to distraction/ to tears*

S10–11 collocations with common verbs

The answers to the first three of these exercises are to some extent subjective. The aim is to get you/your students thinking about how these verbs work. If, after working through the exercises, you/they feel more confident about this area of collocation and more familiar with some of these particular collocations, then the exercise has been successful.

1 **do** is the most usual verb for talking about tasks and duties, for example *do the dishes, do the food for a party, do the garden, do your homework, do a photocopy, do research, do a translation, do the washing*; exceptions could include *make the bed, make a photocopy*; *have a meeting*; *take an exam*; *give sth a polish*

2 *damage, garden, photocopy, research, sketch, translate, wash, write;*
attempt, change, decide, fuss, guess, impress, progress, promise, sketch, speak, suggest;
argue, bath/ bathe, break, breakfast, chat, drink, feel, guess, holiday, look, meet, party, nap, snack;
act, bath/ bathe, bite, break, decide, breathe, holiday, look, nap, walk;
answer, cry, help, kiss, perform, polish, prioritize, push, shock, sigh, speak, think, welcome

3 **speaking** *make a guess, make a speech, make a promise, make a suggestion, have an argument, have a chat, have a guess, give your opinion, give a sigh, give a speech*

experiencing something *have an accident, have cancer, have difficulty, have a cold, have fun, have a heart attack, have an operation, have problems, have a shock*

producing something using your hands, your mind or your skill *do the food for a party, do a sketch, do a translation, do some writing, make dinner, make a cake, make a film, make a sketch, take a photo*

physical actions *make notes, have a bath, have breakfast, have a drink, have a nap, have a snack, take a bath, take a bite, take the bus, take a deep breath, take a look, take a nap, take notes, take a tablet, take sb's temperature, take a walk, give sb a kiss, give sb a lift, give sth a polish, give sb a push*

4 *do/ take an exam, do/ make a photocopy, do/ make a sketch, make/ take a decision, make/ have/ take a guess, make/ take notes, make/ give a speech, have/ take a bath, have/ take a break, have/ take a holiday, have/ take a look, have/ give a party, have/ take a nap*

5/6 **a** *have/ take* a ***close*** look **b** *do/ take* a test **c** *give* us a ***warm*** welcome **d** *have/ take* a siesta **e** *doing* ***odd*** jobs **f** *giving* ***top*** priority **g** *have/ take* one more swim **h** *gave* a short laugh **i** *took* an ***instant*** dislike **j** *make* any ***rash*** promises **k** *had/ taken* a ***keen*** interest **l** *made* her fortune **m** *take* (= a photo)/*do* (= a drawing, etc.) a picture **n** *making* a terrible racket **o** *made* a ***lasting*** impression **p** *give* the handle a ***sharp*** twist **q** *have/ make/ take* a ***wild*** guess **r** *take* the medicine **s** *making/ taking* ***copious*** notes **t** *do/ make* a programme

natural disasters

a The famine has already *claimed* thousands of victims.
b The president visited the affected region in the *immediate* aftermath of the hurricane.
c Rescue *workers* are still looking for survivors.
d A massive relief *effort* is underway.
e Several villages have been *inundated* by the *severest* floods in decades.
f The city was *struck* by a *massive* earthquake shortly after midnight.
g The forest fires, *fanned* by warm winds, *raged* out of control for weeks.
h The volcano, which had been *dormant* for 50 years, began *erupting* late last night.

criminal justice

a ~~sent to~~ *remanded in*, *taken into* custody **b** ~~did~~ *made* two arrests **c** ~~judged~~ *found* guilty **d** accused ~~with~~ of **e** ~~holds~~ *carries* a sentence **f** the judge ~~summarized~~ *summed up* **g** the jury ~~reported~~ *returned* a verdict **h** the original verdict was ~~squashed~~ *overturned, quashed, reversed, set aside*

education

a He got *full/~~maximum~~/top* marks in the listening test.
b We have to *do/~~make/write~~* a vocabulary test every Friday.
c She's busy *~~reviewing~~/revising/studying* for her exam.
d How many students have *enrolled on/signed up for/~~undertaken~~* the course?
e She was always *~~losing/missing out~~/skipping* lessons – no wonder she *~~crashed~~/failed/flunked* the exam.
f He suffers badly from exam *nerves/~~stress/worries~~*, which affects his concentration *~~length~~/span/~~time~~*.
g The teacher *~~made up~~/set/~~wrote~~* a difficult exam but *~~checked/corrected~~/marked* it leniently.
h We were supposed to *do/~~compose~~/write* the essay by Friday but I *~~delivered it~~/gave it in/handed it in* late.

driving

a The taxi *~~brought~~/screamed/screeched* to a halt at the *~~foot~~/pedestrian/zebra* crossing.
b I *~~finished the~~/ran out of/~~used up the~~* petrol and had to *hitch/~~hitch-hike~~/thumb* a lift to the nearest garage.
c There's always *busy/heavy/~~strong~~* traffic on the motorway, so I usually take the *back/minor/~~small~~* roads.
d I realized it was a *~~one-direction~~/one-way/~~single-way~~* street, so I had to *~~carry out~~/do/make* a U-turn.
e The demonstration *brought/~~reduced/slowed~~* traffic to a standstill, and some drivers began to *~~hit~~/sound/toot* their horns in frustration.
f A car suddenly *pulled out/~~started out~~/turned out* in front of me and I had to *hit/slam on/~~tread on~~* the brakes.
g She was *banned/~~disallowed~~/disqualified* from driving for a year after failing *~~an alcohol~~/a breath/a breathalyser* test.
h The stolen car hit *~~an approaching/a contraflow~~/an oncoming* vehicle and *~~blew up in~~/burst into/~~caught~~* flames.

politics

elections

a rigging, election **b** led, opinion polls **c** fought, campaign **d** stood, office

government

e fulfil, pledge **f** impose, ban **g** unveiled, plans **h** ruled out, possibility **i** hold, referendum **j** commission, report

opposition

k launched, attack **l** renewed, call **m** facing, backlash

international issues

n honour, promise, **o** deploy, forces **p** issued, ultimatum **q** call, ceasefire

jobs

1 **a** a high-powered job **b** repetitive work **c** a competitive salary **d** flexible hours **e** her heavy workload **f** a short-term contract **g** a team meeting **h** a proven track record **i** in-service training **j** a skeleton staff

2 **a** *apply for* the job **b** *take* early retirement **c** *came out on*, *went on* strike **d** *boost*, *enhance*, *improve* your job prospects **e** *fulfilling*, *reaching*, *realizing* her full potential, *handed in* her notice **f** *cancel*, *end*, *rescind*, *terminate* her contract, *missed* several important deadlines **g** *earn*, *make* her living, *achieved*, *fulfilled*, *realized* her ambition **h** *did* a brief stint, *do* it *for* a living

3 **a** brief stint **b** full potential **c** job prospects **d** wealth of experience

money

1 **a** an *awful* lot of money **b** doubled *in* value **c** *go up in*, *increase in*, *rise in* price **d** *facing* financial ruin **e** *bring*, *lead to*, *mean*, *spell* economic ruin

f on *a fixed*, *limited*, *low*, *shoestring*, *small*, *tight* budget **g** *incurred*, *made*, *suffered*, *sustained* a loss *on* the deal **h** *arranged*, *got*, *raised*, *took out* a large bank loan, had great difficulty *paying* it *off* **i** exchange *rate*, *excellent*, *good*, *great*, *outstanding* value **j** *lost*, *made* a *small* fortune *on* the stock market

2 **a** small change **b** small fortune **c** healthy bank balance **d** take-home pay **e** false economy

STUDY PAGES

ideas into words S2

using a noun entry S3-5

using a verb entry S6-7

using an adjective entry S8-9

common verbs S10-11

natural disasters S12

criminal justice S12

education S13

driving S13

politics S14

jobs S15

money S16

IDEAS INTO WORDS

Look at the entry for **idea**, sense 1 (plan/suggestion).

1 Look at the adjectives section (labelled ADJ). Find adjectives you might use to express the following ideas. Sometimes more than one adjective is possible. You may want to use another dictionary to check the meaning of any words you don't know.

a an idea that is helpful, rather than being negative or impractical
b an idea that is slightly crazy, in a good way
c an idea that is completely crazy, in a bad way
d an idea that has not been carefully thought out
e an idea that seems very impressive but is not really very practical

2 Now look at the section marked VERB + IDEA. Find verbs that you might use to express the following ideas. Usually more than one verb is possible.

a to find an idea
b to suggest an idea
c to suggest an idea in a very forceful way because you really want people to accept it
d to think about an idea for a while before you decide whether or not it is a good idea
e to talk about a number of different ideas before you decide which ideas are the best

3 Look at the section marked IDEA + VERB. Find verbs that you might use to express the following:

a when you think of an idea
b when an idea develops into something important
c when an idea does not develop into anything

4 Finally, look at the PHRASES section and find the expression that means the beginning of an idea

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

USING A NOUN ENTRY

adjectives

1 Match each of the adjectives on the left with a suitable noun from the facing column. Look at the entries for the **bold** nouns for help.

a bewildering	**ambition**	a blazing	**defeat**
a biting	**array** of goods	a crushing	**inflation**
a burning	**chance**	a haunting	**pain**
a convincing	**chasm**	a nagging	**row** over money
driving	**rain**	a piercing	**scream**
a fighting	**sum** of money	raging	**statement**
a gaping	**win**	a sprawling	**suburb**
a staggering	**wind**	a sweeping	**melody**

quantifiers

Quantifiers are words used to talk about the amount of something, such as *a **drop** of water* or *a **piece** of information*.

2 Complete each sentence with a suitable quantifier. Look at the **bold** noun entries for help.

a There were just a few w*isps*___ of **cloud** in the sky.

b The recent s______ of **attacks** has made residents afraid to leave their homes.

c He is on medication to ease his frequent b______ of **depression**.

d I just caught a brief s______ of their **conversation** as I walked by their table.

e The constant s______ of **traffic** past our house makes it difficult to cross the road.

f A p______ of stray **dogs** was wandering around the abandoned plant.

g He's been off school all week with a bad d______ of **flu**.

h A couple of c______ of **garlic** will improve the flavour of the soup.

i The manager terrified the younger staff with his o______ of **temper**.

j The burglars stole several p______ of **jewellery**.

verb + ...

3 Cross out any verbs which do not normally collocate with the **bold** noun.

a He *got into/had/~~made~~* an **argument** with the barman and was thrown out of the hotel.

b He had to do two jobs to *clear/pay off/pay up* his **debts**.

c Someone *came up with/presented/put forward* the **suggestion** that we should have an auction.

d The scientists failed to *arrive at/decide/draw* any firm **conclusions** from the study.

e The company *agreed/came to/struck* a **deal** with the union after lengthy negotiations.

f A **meeting** has been *arranged/programmed/scheduled* for next week.

g The supervisor refused to *accept/receive/shoulder* the **blame** for the accident.

h He *drummed/rattled/tapped* his **fingers** nervously on the desk as he spoke.

i We *did/took/went on* a **trip** to a nearby island on a fishing boat.

j I put up my hand to *shade/shelter/shield* my **eyes** from the sun.

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

… + verb

4 Complete the story with a suitable verb in each gap. Look at the **bold** noun entries for help.

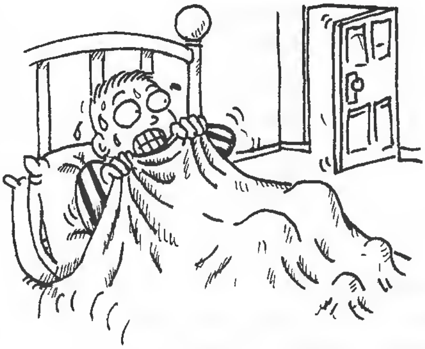

I lay in bed, unable to sleep. The **wine** had f__________ freely at the party, and now my **head** was t__________ and my **stomach** was c__________. Outside the **wind** h__________ and the **rain** l__________ against the window. My **nerve**s were o_______ e_______ as I remembered all the horror films I'd ever seen. Suddenly I heard the **key** t__________ in the front door. My **heart** began to h__________ in my chest as heavy **footstep**s e__________ on the stairs. My **mind** was ra__________, trying to think how I could save myself. The bedroom **door** c__________ open slowly, and as my **eye**s a__________ to the darkness I could make out a figure at the end of the bed. The man's **mouth** d__________ open when he saw me. It was my neighbour. I was in the wrong house.

… + noun

5 Choose a suitable word from the box on the right to complete each sentence. Look at the **bold** noun entry for help.

a We had to queue for ages at the **taxi** ___rank___.
b In economy class you don't get enough **leg** ________.
c The traffic was held up by a massive **protest** ________.
d He was seriously injured in a horrific **traffic** ________.
e They're collecting money for **famine** ________.
f I stopped to buy a magazine at the **newspaper** ________.
g It's a small office with very little **shelf** ________.
h School leavers with no qualifications have limited **job** ________.

chances
accident
kiosk
prospects
stall
aid
rally
room
space
gathering
relief
~~*rank*~~
crash

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

prepositions

6 The sentences below can be completed using just three different prepositions. Look at the **bold** noun entries to help you.

a He was lying on the floor ___ in ___ **agony**.
b Students who do not have a computer are ________ a **disadvantage**.
c There is still **confusion** ________ the result of the vote.
d I couldn't hear what she was saying ________ the **noise** of the crowd.
e Please submit your requests ________ **writing** before Friday.
f He died instantly when his bike hit a wall ________ **speed**.
g She claims she killed him ________ **self-defence**.
h I'm not going out ________ this **rain**!
i I saw him a couple of times ________ **Christmas**.
j Her **skill** ________ negotiating makes her a valuable asset.

phrases

7 Look at the phrases section in the entries for the **bold** nouns below to help you complete and match the heads and tails of the sentences.

a Could I ___ have ___ a word in your
b I remember clearly the first time I ________
c If this report ________ into the wrong
d I vowed never to ________
e The force of the impact ________ every

bone in his body.
ear?
eyes on her.
foot in the place again.
hands, we're in trouble.

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

USING A VERB ENTRY

adverbs

1 In each of the following sentences one of the adverbs in *italics* is not a common collocate of the verb in **bold**. Decide which it is and cross it out. Use the entry for the **bold** verb to help you.

a She **argued** *fiercely/heatedly/~~hotly~~* about her right to compensation.
b They will *fiercely/heatedly/hotly* **defend** their rights.
c He **grinned** *owlishly/sheepishly/wolfishly* at her.
d I *ruefully/sheepishly/woefully* **confessed** to having forgotten the map.
e His frugal lifestyle **contrasted** *brutally/markedly/starkly* with his wife's extravagance.
f Her tragic story *brutally/markedly/starkly* **illustrates** how vulnerable children can be.

verb + ...

2 Complete each of these sentences with a verb phrase from the box. You may need to change the form of the verb. Use the entries for the **bold** verbs to help you.

be determined to ~~*be happy to*~~ *can afford to* *fail to* *hasten to* *offer to* *serve to* *take steps to*

a I was happy to **accept** the invitation to become patron of the charity.
b The company was fined when it ___________ **comply** with the regulations.
c These unanswered questions ___________ **highlight** the potential problems.
d I ___________ **add** that my knowledge of computers is pretty basic.
e We must ___________ **ensure** that such a disaster can never happen again.
f The minister ___________ **resign** when the affair became public.
g She ___________ **fight** for her rights.
h Few patients ___________ **pay** the full cost of treatment.

prepositions

3 The following sentences can be completed using just three different prepositions. Use the entries for the **bold** verbs to help you.

a Unfortunately, the plan **backfired** ___on___ me.
b Students took to the streets to **protest** ___________ the decision.
c I don't feel I can **comment** ___________ their decision.
d I think you must be **mistaking** me ___________ someone else.
e She was **treated** ___________ sunstroke.
f The prosecution lawyers have been trying to **prejudice** the jury ___________ him.
g He accused them of **plotting** ___________ him.
h We have **collaborated** ___________ many projects over the years.
i The company is **appealing** ___________ the ruling.
j Nationalist leaders **appealed** ___________ calm.

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

phrases

4 Match the two halves of these verb phrases. Then use the phrases to complete the sentences below. You may need to change the forms of the verbs. Use the entries for the **bold** verbs to help you.

~~**drink**~~	*and pant*
mix	~~*and drive*~~
moan	*and turn*
toss	*and match*
puff	*and groan*

a The message to drivers is simple: don't drink and drive .

b There's no point in ________; we can't change the situation.

c I spent all night ________, unable to sleep.

d You can ________ colours to create your own design.

e ________, we heaved the wardrobe upstairs.

crack	*for breath*
grin	*to a halt*
dawn	*from ear to ear*
pause	*bright and cold*
brake	*under the strain*

f The car ________ outside the station.

g You need a holiday before you ________.

h The next morning ________.

i Katy was clearly pleased about something: she was ________.

j Jack went on arguing, scarcely ________.

collocations of phrasal verbs

5 Complete the following story with words and phrases from the boxes. For each gap you will need to decide whether the missing word/phrase is an adverb, a verb or a preposition. You may need to change the forms of the verbs. Use the phrasal verbs sections of the **bold** verb entries to help you.

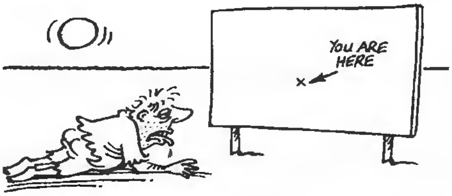

I had had been left to **fend for myself** in the desert. The sun **beat down** ________. The water holes had **dried up** ________. I ________ **rely** ________ **on** cacti ________ water. I ________ **hang on** ________ my sanity, **clinging** ________ **to** the hope that I would find my way out alive.

adverbs	verbs	prepositions
completely	~~be left to~~	for
desperately	have to	to
entirely	try to	
mercilessly		

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

USING AN ADJECTIVE ENTRY

verbs

1 Match each of the **bold** adjectives with a verb that can go before it; then match the combination with a suitable subject. Use the adjective entries to help you.

His mistake	emerged	**~~asleep~~.**	*I nearly fell asleep.*
His mistake	~~fell~~	**costly.**	
~~I nearly~~	grew	**damp.**	
The crowd	passed	**empty.**	
The driver	proved	**impatient.**	
The house	run	**parallel.**	
The house	smells	**unnoticed.**	
The roads	stood	**unscathed.**	

2 Complete each sentence with a suitable verb. Look at the entry for the **bold** adjective for help.

a He d*rove* me **crazy** with his constant talking.

b She was h________ **captive** by rebels for six months.

c Several cars were s________ **ablaze** by the rioters.

d The unions were r________ **powerless** by the new laws.

e These programmes are d________ **unsuitable** for screening before 10 p.m.

f The robbers b________ the shopkeeper **senseless**.

g His classmates mostly r________ him as **eccentric**.

h The sound of a door banging j________ me **awake**.

adverbs

3 For each group, find an adverb in the box that collocates with all the adjectives in the group.

dead *distinctly* *fiercely* *grossly* *~~painfully~~* *wildly*

a *painfully*	b ________	c ________	d ________	e ________	f ________
aware	boring	competitive	different	enthusiastic	inaccurate
honest	funny	independent	odd	inaccurate	inadequate
shy	good	loyal	uncomfortable	optimistic	offensive
slow	right	protective	uneasy	popular	unfair

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

4 Match each **bold** adjective with a suitable adverb. Then use each combination to complete one of the sentences on the right.

blissfully	**absent**	**a** I'm not	unduly concerned	by the latest figures.
conspicuously	**composed**	**b** She is	________	of her achievements.
eerily	**~~concerned~~**	**c** He seems	________	of the trouble he's caused.
justly	**familiar**	**d** The former chairman was	________	from the guest list.
notoriously	**fickle**	**e** Her voice sounded	________	to me.
oddly	**proud**	**f** She seemed	________	, despite the pressure.
outwardly	**silent**	**g** The street was	________	after the explosion.
~~unduly~~	**unaware**	**h** The world of fashion is	________	.

prepositions

5 Complete and match the heads and tails of these sentences, using the entries for the **bold** adjectives to help you.

a The scandal was **damaging** _to_	the new software.
b I always used to be **late** ____	his money.
c I need some time to get **acquainted** ____	the latest crime statistics.
d She was **insistent** ____	women.
e His good looks made him **irresistible** ____	secrecy.
f Tickets are **limited** ____	school.
g He's **mean** ____	two per person.
h I was **alarmed** ____	the government.

phrases

6 Complete each of the following sentences with a suitable word or phrase. Look in the 'phrases' section of the **bold** adjective entries for help.

a The missing climbers have been found **alive** and _well_ .

b I was so relieved when they got home **safe** and ________ .

c I'll show you a dish that's really **quick** and ________ .

d If you need any help, I'm **ready** and ________ .

e His hair is always so **neat** and ________ .

f By midnight I was **worried** ________ .

g I forgot my umbrella and I got **wet** ________ .

h When he told me the news I was **thrilled** ________ .

i If a dog comes anywhere near me I'm **scared** ________ .

j The speaker went on and on until we were **bored** ________ .

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

COLLOCATIONS with COMMON VERBS

do	**make**	**have**	**take**	**give**
a crossword	an appointment	an accident	action	sb an answer
damage	an attempt	an argument	a bath	sb a chance
a degree	the bed	a bath	a bite	a cry of pain
the dishes	a cake	a break	a break	sb a headache
an exam	changes	breakfast	the bus	sb help
the food for a party	a decision	cancer	a decision	sb an idea
French at school	dinner	a chat	a deep breath	the impression that…
the garden	an effort	a cold	sb's details	sb a kiss
your hair	a film	difficulty	a dislike to sb	sb lessons
'Hamlet'	a fuss	a drink	an exam	sb a lift
your homework	a guess	a feeling	a guess	your opinion
judo	an impression	fun	a holiday	a party
miles per hour	a mark	a guess	an interest in sth	a performance
nothing	a mess	a heart attack	a look	sth a polish
Paris	a mistake	a holiday	a nap	sb a present
a photocopy	money	an idea	notes	priority to sth
research	a noise	an interest	a photo	sb a push
a sketch	peace	a look	size 10	sb a shock
a translation	a photocopy	a meeting	a tablet	a sigh
the washing	progress	a party	sb's temperature	a speech
some writing	a promise	a nap	a walk	some thought to sth
	a sketch	an operation		a welcome to sb
	a speech	patience		
	a suggestion	problems		
	your will	a shock		
		a snack		
		time		

1 Find the nouns in the lists for tasks and duties (for example *do the dishes*). Which verb is the most often used? Which tasks are exceptions?

2 Find expressions in each column that can be substituted by a single verb. (For example you can *do damage* to something or just *damage* something.) Which column has the most?

3 Find expressions connected with the following:

speaking	**experiencing something**	**producing something using your hands, your mind or your skill**	**physical actions**
make/give a speech	*have an accident*	*make dinner*	*have/take a bath*

Can you see any patterns emerging? Are there any exceptions?

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

4 How many items can you find that collocate with more than one of the verbs (for example you can *have* or *take* a bath)?

5 Complete each of the following sentences using *do*, *make*, *have*, *take* or *give* (more than one answer may be possible). If the noun in the example is not in the table above, look for a similar noun. For example, *fortune* is not in the list but *money* is. You can check your answers by looking up the entries for the nouns, but try to predict what the verbs will be before you do this.

a Make sure you have/take a look at the engine before you buy the car.

b After the interview I had to __________ a test.

c They always __________ us a welcome when we go there.

d I sometimes __________ a siesta in the afternoon

e Saturday's my day for __________ jobs around the house.

f The housing committee are __________ priority to the elderly.

g Let's __________ one more swim before we go back to the hotel.

h He __________ a short laugh when he realized his mistake.

i The moment we met we __________ a dislike to each other.

j I told her I'd run in the marathon—I'm not going to __________ any promises like that again.

k She's always __________ an interest in current affairs.

l She __________ her fortune on the stock market.

m __________ a picture of me and your dad together.

n The kids are __________ a terrible racket.

o Her singing __________ an impression on me.

p __________ the handle a twist and the door should open.

q I don't know the answer, so I'll ________ a guess.

r How often do you have to ________ the medicine?

s Everyone else was __________ notes in the lecture, but I had forgotten my pen.

t The BBC are visiting our school to ________ a programme about teaching!

6 Put each of the following adjectives into one of the sentences in exercise 5, before a noun that it collocates with. If you want to check in the dictionary you will need to look up the entries for the nouns.

~~close~~ copious instant keen lasting odd rash sharp top warm wild

For example: *Make sure you have a close look at the engine before you buy the car.*

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

NATURAL DISASTERS

In each case, only one of the pair of words in *italics* forms a common collocation with the word in **bold**. Use the dictionary (looking up the **bold** word) to decide which is the correct collocation.

a The famine has already *claimed/starved* thousands of **victims**.

b The president visited the affected region in the *direct/immediate* **aftermath** of the hurricane.

c **Rescue** *personnel/workers* are still looking for survivors.

d A massive **relief** *attempt/effort* is underway.

Sentences **e-h** each contain two pairs of italic words. You need to choose one from each pair. Again, look up the **bold** words.

e Several villages have been *inundated/soaked* by the *deepest/severest* **floods** in decades.

f The city was *affected/struck* by *an enormous/a massive* **earthquake** shortly after midnight.

g The forest **fires**, *blown/fanned* by warm winds, *flared/raged* out of control for weeks.

h The **volcano**, which has been *dormant/inactive* for 50 years, began *erupting/exploding* late last night.

CRIMINAL JUSTICE

In each of the sentences, there is an example of incorrect collocation in one of the two underlined sections. Look at the entries for the **bold** words to help you, then write a word that could be used in place of the incorrect one in the space on the right.

a The accused men have been ~~sent to~~ **custody** to await **trial**. *remanded in*

b Police carried out a **raid** on the premises early this morning and did two **arrests**. ____________

c The man was judged **guilty** of assault and sent to **prison** for ten years. ____________

d The woman will stand **trial**, **accused** with murdering her husband. ____________

e The woman was **charged** with threatening behaviour, an offence which holds a **sentence** of up to two years in jail. ____________

f The **judge** summarized and the **jury** retired to consider its verdict. ____________

g The jury reported a **verdict** of guilty and then the judge passed **sentence**. ____________

h New **evidence** came to light and the original **verdict** was squashed on appeal. ____________

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

EDUCATION

Using the entry for the word in bold to help you, cross out any of the words in *italics* that do not form common collocations.

a He got *full/~~maximum~~/top* **marks** in the listening test.

b We have to *do/make/write* a vocabulary **test** every Friday.

c She's busy *reviewing/revising/studying* for her **exam**.

d How many students have *enrolled on/signed up for/undertaken* the **course**?

e She was always *losing/missing out/skipping* **lessons** – no wonder she *crashed/failed/flunked* the **exam**.

f He suffers badly from **exam** *nerves/stress/worries*, which affects his **concentration** *length/span/time*.

g The teacher *made up/set/wrote* a difficult **exam** but *checked/corrected/marked* it leniently.

h We were supposed to *do/compose/write* the **essay** by Friday but I *delivered it/gave it in/handed it in* late.

DRIVING

In each case, only one or two of the words in *italics* form(s) a common collocation with the word in bold. Use the dictionary (looking up the bold word) to decide which combinations are possible.

a The taxi *~~brought~~/~~screamed~~/screeched* to a **halt** at the *~~foot~~/pedestrian/zebra* **crossing**.

b I *finished the/ran out of/used up the* **petrol** and had to *hitch/hitch-hike/thumb* a **lift** to the nearest garage.

c There's always *busy/heavy/strong* **traffic** on the motorway, so I usually take the *back/minor/small* **roads**.

d I realized it was a *one-direction/one-way/single-way* **street**, so I had to *carry out/do/make* a **U-turn**.

e The demonstration *brought/reduced/slowed* traffic to a **standstill**, and some drivers began to *hit/sound/toot* their **horns** in frustration.

f A **car** suddenly *pulled out/started out/turned out* in front of me and I had to *hit/slam on/tread on* the **brakes**.

g She was *banned/disallowed/disqualified* from **driving** for a year after failing *an alcohol/a breath/a breathalyser* **test**.

h The stolen car hit *an approaching/a contraflow/an oncoming* **vehicle** and *blew up in/burst into/caught* **flames**.

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

POLITICS

Complete each sentence with a verb from the left and a noun from the right. You may need to change the form of the verb. You can check your answers in the dictionary by looking up the entries for the nouns.

elections

fight
lead
[✓ *rig*]
stand

a The opposition has accused the government of __rigging__ the __election__ .
b A week before the election, the Christian Democrats ______ the ______ by 12 per cent.
c Which party ______ the most effective election ______?
d Castorri ______ for ______ five times, but was never elected.

campaign
[✓ *election*]
office
opinion polls

government

fulfil
impose
unveil
commission
hold
rule out

e The Minister of Education insists that she will ______ her ______ to cut class sizes.
f The government is under pressure to ______ a ______ on tobacco advertising.
g The Home Secretary yesterday ______ ______ to reform the prison system.
h The Prime Minister has ______ any ______ of an early election.
i The President confirmed that he intends to ______ a ______ on the main clauses of the new constitution.
j The Higher Education Minister is to ______ a ______ on the state of our universities.

ban
plans
pledge
possibility
referendum
report

opposition

face
launch
renew

k The opposition leader ______ a scathing ______ on government policy.
l Animal rights campaigners have ______ their ______ for a referendum on hunting.
m The government is ______ a ______ over its decision to raise the basic rate of tax.

attack
backlash
call

international issues

call
deploy
honour
issue

n An international delegation urged the government to ______ its ______ on human rights.
o The UN will decide today whether to ______ peacekeeping ______ in the area.
p The government ______ an ______ to the rebels for all arms to be handed over by the 15th.
q The warring factions have agreed to ______ a ______ while negotiations take place.

ceasefire
forces
promise
ultimatum

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

JOBS

1 Complete each of these sentences with an adjective from the box. Use the entries for the words in **bold** to help you.

team *flexible* *proven* *short-term* *skeleton* *in-service*
repetitive *heavy* ~~*high-powered*~~ *competitive*

a He didn't want the stress of a *high-powered* **job**.

b He couldn't stand the __________ **work** of the production line.

c The company offers a __________ **salary**.

d Does your job allow you to work __________ **hours**?

e She's hired an assistant to help with her __________ **workload**.

f She joined the company on a __________ **contract**.

g We gathered in my boss's office for a __________ **meeting**.

h Applicants should have a __________ **track record** in project management.

i All staff receive __________ **training** in IT skills.

j They only have a __________ **staff** on duty during the holidays.

2 Fill in each gap with an appropriate verb or phrasal verb. Use the entries for the words in **bold** to help you.

a I saw an interesting ad in the newspaper and decided to *apply for* the **job**.

b The company missed his wealth of experience when he chose to __________ early **retirement**.

c The whole union __________ **strike** in sympathy with the sacked workers.

d Extra skills training could __________ your job **prospects**.

e She felt she wasn't __________ her full **potential** in her current job so she __________ her notice.

f The company had no choice but to __________ her **contract** when she __________ several important **deadlines**.

g She had always wanted to __________ her **living** as a musician, and she finally __________ her **ambition** when she was 42.

h I __________ a brief **stint** as a waitress when I was a student, but I wouldn't like to __________ it __________ a **living**.

3 Now find collocations in the sentences from Exercise 2 that match up with the definitions below:

a a short time spent doing sth *brief stint*

b all that you might possibly achieve __________

c your chances of getting a good job __________

d the valuable knowledge and skills that you have gained in your life and work __________

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

MONEY

1 Fill in the gaps in these sentences with an appropriate word or phrase. Use the entries for the words in **bold** to help you. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

a Private health insurance might cost an ___*awful*___ **lot** of money, but it's worth every penny.

b The shares have almost doubled ______ **value** since I bought them.

c Cigarettes are set to ______ **price** for the fifth successive year.

d The failure of the business left him ______ financial **ruin**.

e An oil spill would ______ economic **ruin** for the local fishing industry.

Sentences f-j have no words in **bold**. Read the sentences carefully to decide for yourself which word(s) you need to look up.

f We've been living ______ a ______ budget since the baby was born.

g It cost me more to make the chairs than I could sell them for, so I actually ______ a loss ______ the deal.

h She ______ a large bank loan and then had great difficulty ______ it ______.

i The favourable exchange ______ means that holidays in the US are ______ value.

j She ______ a ______ fortune ______ the stock market in the 80s.

2 Choose an adjective from the left-hand box and a noun from the right-hand box and match them up with the definitions below. You can look up the entries for the nouns to help you.

~~small~~ healthy false
small take-home

pay fortune ~~change~~
bank balance economy*

a coins of low value ___*small change*___

b a lot of money ______

c a fair amount of money in the bank ______

d the amount of money that you have left after you have paid tax on your salary ______

e an attempt to save money by buying something cheap that does not really save money at all because the goods are of poor quality and do not last very long ______

* look up *balance*

© Oxford University Press photocopiable

Abbreviations used in the dictionary

ADJ.	adjectives (or nouns that function like adjectives)
ADV.	adverbs
PREP.	prepositions
QUANT.	quantifiers (= words for an amount/number of something)
etc.	et cetera (= and so on)
sb	somebody
sth	something

Symbols used in the dictionary

~ replaces the headword of an entry

| separates groups of collocates

TM shows registered trademarks that belong to manufacturing companies, even though the expressions may be commonly used in speech and writing, for example *Hammond organ*™.

Labels used in the dictionary

Labels used in the dictionary generally apply to the *collocation* – that is to the two words in combination – and not to the individual words.

The following labels are used with collocations that express a particular attitude or are appropriate in a particular situation.

disapproving collocations show that you feel disapproval or contempt, for example *rabbit food* or *descend into the realms of sth*.

figurative collocations use language in a non-literal or metaphorical way, as in *morally bankrupt* or *die of embarrassment*.

formal collocations are usually only used in serious or official language and would not be appropriate in normal everyday conversation. Examples are *take up employment* and *fall sick*.

historical collocations are expressions for things or concepts that existed in the past. They either no longer exist (*debtor's prison*) or the modern equivalent has a different name. (The modern term is *lending library* rather than *circulating library*.) However, the historical term is still used when talking about the past.

humorous collocations are intended to be funny, for example *veritable banquet* or *ply sb with tea*.

informal collocations are used between friends or in a relaxed or unofficial situation. They are not appropriate for formal situations. Examples are *class act* and *a company goes to the wall*.

ironic collocations use words to mean the opposite or something very different from the meaning they seem to have, as in *princely sum* (= a very small amount of money) or *conveniently ignore* (which may be very convenient for the person doing the ignoring, but not for anyone else).

literary collocations are used mainly in literature and imaginative writing, for example *far distant* and *greet the dawn*.

offensive collocations are used by some people to address or refer to people, countries, etc. in a way that is very insulting, for example *banana republic*.

old-fashioned collocations are passing out of current use, although writers may still wish to use them for a particular effect, especially in fiction. An example would be *give sb in marriage*.

saying descibes a fixed collocation that is a well-known traditional phrase, for example *the truth will out*.

taboo words are likely to be thought by many people to be obscene or shocking and you should avoid using them. They are included here where the collocations are very strong. However, these words are always taboo, whatever the collocation.

technical collocations are used by people who specialize in a particular subject area.

The following labels also show collocations from particular subject areas:

business
computing
law
mathematics
medical
military
science
sport

- **A level** *noun*
- **abandon** *verb*
- **abashed** *adj*
- **abbreviation** *noun*
- **abhorrent** *adj*
- **ability** *noun*
- **ablaze** *adj*
- **able** *adj*
- **abode** *noun*
- **abolish** *verb*
- **abortion** *noun*
- **abscess** *noun*
- **absence** *noun*
- **absent** *adj*
- **absorb** *verb*
- **absorbed** *adj*
- **abstract** *adj*
- **absurd** *adj*
- **abundance** *noun*
- **abuse** *noun*
- **abuse** *verb*
- **abusive** *adj*
- **academic** *adj*
- **academy** *noun*
- **accelerate** *verb*
- **acceleration** *noun*
- **accelerator** *noun*
- **accent** *noun*
- **accept** *verb*
- **acceptable** *adj*
- **acceptance** *noun*
- **access** *noun*
- **accessible** *adj*
- **accessory** *noun*
- **accident** *noun*
- **accidental** *adj*

- **acclaim** *noun*
- **acclaim** *verb*
- **accolade** *noun*
- **accommodate** *verb*
- **accommodation** *noun*
- **accompaniment** *noun*
- **accomplice** *noun*
- **accomplish** *verb*
- **accomplished** *adj*
- **accomplishment** *noun*
- **accord** *noun*
- **accord** *verb*
- **account** *noun*
- **account** *verb*
- **accountability** *noun*
- **accountable** *adj*
- **accountancy** *noun*
- **accountant** *noun*
- **accumulate** *verb*
- **accumulation** *noun*
- **accuracy** *noun*
- **accurate** *adj*
- **accusation** *noun*
- **accuse** *verb*
- **accustomed** *adj*
- **ace** *noun*
- **ache** *noun*
- **ache** *verb*
- **achieve** *verb*
- **achievement** *noun*
- **acid** *noun*
- **acknowledge** *verb*
- **acknowledgement** *noun*
- **acne** *noun*
- **acquaintance** *noun*
- **acquainted** *adj*
- **acquisition** *noun*
- **acquittal** *noun*

- **acre** *noun*
- **act** *noun*
- **act** *verb*
- **acting** *noun*
- **action** *noun*
- **active** *adj*
- **activity** *noun*
- **actor** *noun*
- **actress** *noun*
- **acumen** *noun*
- **acupuncture** *noun*
- **ad** *noun*
- **adapt** *verb*
- **adaptable** *adj*
- **adaptation** *noun*
- **add** *verb*
- **addict** *noun*
- **addicted** *adj*
- **addiction** *noun*
- **addictive** *adj*
- **addition** *noun*
- **address** *noun*
- **address** *verb*
- **adept** *adj*
- **adequate** *adj*
- **adhere** *verb*
- **adherence** *noun*
- **adjacent** *adj*
- **adjective** *noun*
- **adjourn** *verb*
- **adjust** *verb*
- **adjustable** *adj*
- **adjustment** *noun*
- **administer** *verb*
- **administration** *noun*
- **admirable** *adj*
- **admiral** *noun*
- **admiration** *noun*

- **admire** *verb*
- **admirer** *noun*
- **admission** *noun*
- **admit** *verb*
- **admittance** *noun*
- **adolescence** *noun*
- **adolescent** *noun*
- **adopt** *verb*
- **adoption** *noun*
- **adore** *verb*
- **adrenalin** *noun*
- **adrift** *adj*
- **adult** *noun*
- **adultery** *noun*
- **adulthood** *noun*
- **advance** *noun*
- **advance** *verb*
- **advanced** *adj*
- **advancement** *noun*
- **advantage** *noun*
- **advantageous** *adj*
- **adventure** *noun*
- **adverb** *noun*
- **adversary** *noun*
- **adversity** *noun*
- **advert** *noun*
- **advertise** *verb*
- **advertisement** *noun*
- **advice** *noun*
- **advisable** *adj*
- **advise** *verb*
- **adviser** *noun*
- **advocate** *noun*
- **advocate** *verb*
- **aerial** *noun*
- **aeroplane** *noun*
- **affair** *noun*
- **affect** *verb*

- **affection** *noun*
- **affinity** *noun*
- **afflict** *verb*
- **afford** *verb*
- **affront** *noun*
- **afloat** *adj*
- **afraid** *adj*
- **aftermath** *noun*
- **afternoon** *noun*
- **age** *noun*
- **age** *verb*
- **agency** *noun*
- **agenda** *noun*
- **agent** *noun*
- **aggravate** *verb*
- **aggression** *noun*
- **aggressive** *adj*
- **aggrieved** *adj*
- **agility** *noun*
- **agitated** *adj*
- **agitation** *noun*
- **agony** *noun*
- **agree** *verb*
- **agreeable** *adj*
- **agreement** *noun*
- **agriculture** *noun*
- **aid** *noun*
- **aide** *noun*
- **Aids** *noun*
- **ailment** *noun*
- **aim** *noun*
- **aim** *verb*
- **air** *noun*
- **air** *verb*
- **aircraft** *noun*
- **airline** *noun*
- **airport** *noun*
- **airspace** *noun*

- **ajar** *adj*
- **akin** *adj*
- **alarm** *noun*
- **alarmed** *adj*
- **alarming** *adj*
- **album** *noun*
- **alcohol** *noun*
- **alcoholic** *noun*
- **alcoholism** *noun*
- **ale** *noun*
- **alert** *adj*
- **alert** *noun*
- **alias** *noun*
- **alibi** *noun*
- **alien** *adj*
- **alien** *noun*
- **alienation** *noun*
- **alight** *adj*
- **align** *verb*
- **alignment** *noun*
- **alike** *adj*
- **alive** *adj*
- **allegation** *noun*
- **allegiance** *noun*
- **allergy** *noun*
- **alleviate** *verb*
- **alley** *noun*
- **alliance** *noun*
- **allied** *adj*
- **allocate** *verb*
- **allocation** *noun*
- **allowance** *noun*
- **allusion** *noun*
- **ally** *noun*
- **almond** *noun*
- **alone** *adj*
- **aloof** *adj*
- **alphabet** *noun*

- **altar** *noun*
- **alter** *verb*
- **alteration** *noun*
- **alternative** *noun*
- **altitude** *noun*
- **amateur** *noun*
- **amaze** *verb*
- **amazed** *adj*
- **amazement** *noun*
- **amazing** *adj*
- **ambassador** *noun*
- **ambiguity** *noun*
- **ambiguous** *adj*
- **ambition** *noun*
- **ambitious** *adj*
- **ambivalence** *noun*
- **ambivalent** *adj*
- **ambulance** *noun*
- **ambush** *noun*
- **amenable** *adj*
- **amendment** *noun*
- **amenity** *noun*
- **amiable** *adj*
- **ammunition** *noun*
- **amnesty** *noun*
- **amount** *noun*
- **amuse** *verb*
- **amused** *adj*
- **amusement** *noun*
- **amusing** *adj*
- **anaesthetic** *noun*
- **analogous** *adj*
- **analogy** *noun*
- **analyse** *verb*
- **analysis** *noun*
- **analyst** *noun*
- **anatomy** *noun*
- **ancestor** *noun*

- **ancestry** *noun*
- **anchor** *noun*
- **anchor** *verb*
- **ancient** *adj*
- **anecdote** *noun*
- **angel** *noun*
- **anger** *noun*
- **anger** *verb*
- **angle** *noun*
- **angry** *adj*
- **anguish** *noun*
- **animal** *noun*
- **animosity** *noun*
- **ankle** *noun*
- **annex** *verb*
- **annihilation** *noun*
- **anniversary** *noun*
- **announce** *verb*
- **announcement** *noun*
- **announcer** *noun*
- **annoy** *verb*
- **annoyance** *noun*
- **annoyed** *adj*
- **annoying** *adj*
- **anonymity** *noun*
- **anonymous** *adj*
- **answer** *noun*
- **answer** *verb*
- **antagonism** *noun*
- **anthology** *noun*
- **anthropology** *noun*
- **antibiotic** *noun*
- **anticipate** *verb*
- **anticipation** *noun*
- **antics** *noun*
- **antidote** *noun*
- **antipathy** *noun*
- **antique** *noun*

- **antiquity** *noun*
- **antiseptic** *noun*
- **antithesis** *noun*
- **anxiety** *noun*
- **anxious** *adj*
- **apartment** *noun*
- **apathy** *noun*
- **apologetic** *adj*
- **apologize** *verb*
- **apology** *noun*
- **appalling** *adj*
- **apparatus** *noun*
- **apparent** *adj*
- **appeal** *noun*
- **appeal** *verb*
- **appealing** *adj*
- **appear** *verb*
- **appearance** *noun*
- **appendicitis** *noun*
- **appendix** *noun*
- **appetite** *noun*
- **applaud** *verb*
- **applause** *noun*
- **apple** *noun*
- **appliance** *noun*
- **applicable** *adj*
- **applicant** *noun*
- **application** *noun*
- **apply** *verb*
- **appointment** *noun*
- **appraisal** *noun*
- **appreciate** *verb*
- **appreciation** *noun*
- **apprehension** *noun*
- **apprehensive** *adj*
- **approach** *noun*
- **approach** *verb*
- **appropriate** *adj*

- **approval** *noun*
- **approve** *verb*
- **approximation** *noun*
- **April** *noun*
- **aptitude** *noun*
- **Arabic** *noun*
- **arbitrary** *adj*
- **arbitration** *noun*
- **arc** *noun*
- **arch** *noun*
- **archaeologist** *noun*
- **archaeology** *noun*
- **archbishop** *noun*
- **architect** *noun*
- **architecture** *noun*
- **archive** *noun*
- **area** *noun*
- **arena** *noun*
- **argue** *verb*
- **argument** *noun*
- **arise** *verb*
- **aristocracy** *noun*
- **arithmetic** *noun*
- **arm** *noun*
- **armaments** *noun*
- **armchair** *noun*
- **armed** *adj*
- **armistice** *noun*
- **armour** *noun*
- **armoured** *adj*
- **arms** *noun*
- **army** *noun*
- **aroma** *noun*
- **arrange** *verb*
- **arrangement** *noun*
- **array** *noun*
- **arrears** *noun*
- **arrest** *noun*

- **arrival** *noun*
- **arrive** *verb*
- **arrogance** *noun*
- **arrow** *noun*
- **arson** *noun*
- **art** *noun*
- **artery** *noun*
- **arthritis** *noun*
- **article** *noun*
- **articulate** *adj*
- **articulate** *verb*
- **artificial** *adj*
- **artillery** *noun*
- **artist** *noun*
- **ascend** *verb*
- **ascent** *noun*
- **ash** *noun*
- **ashamed** *adj*
- **ask** *verb*
- **asleep** *adj*
- **aspect** *noun*
- **aspiration** *noun*
- **aspirin** *noun*
- **assassin** *noun*
- **assassinate** *verb*
- **assassination** *noun*
- **assault** *noun*
- **assault** *verb*
- **assemble** *verb*
- **assembly** *noun*
- **assent** *noun*
- **assert** *verb*
- **assertion** *noun*
- **assess** *verb*
- **assessment** *noun*
- **asset** *noun*
- **assignment** *noun*
- **assimilate** *verb*

- **assist** *verb*
- **assistance** *noun*
- **assistant** *noun*
- **associate** *noun*
- **association** *noun*
- **assortment** *noun*
- **assume** *verb*
- **assumption** *noun*
- **assurance** *noun*
- **assure** *verb*
- **assured** *adj*
- **asthma** *noun*
- **astonished** *adj*
- **astonishing** *adj*
- **astonishment** *noun*
- **astute** *adj*
- **asylum** *noun*
- **atheist** *noun*
- **athlete** *noun*
- **athletics** *noun*
- **atmosphere** *noun*
- **atom** *noun*
- **atrocity** *noun*
- **attach** *verb*
- **attached** *adj*
- **attachment** *noun*
- **attack** *noun*
- **attack** *verb*
- **attainable** *adj*
- **attempt** *noun*
- **attend** *verb*
- **attendance** *noun*
- **attendant** *noun*
- **attention** *noun*
- **attic** *noun*
- **attitude** *noun*
- **attraction** *noun*
- **attractive** *adj*

- **attribute** *noun*
- **attribute** *verb*
- **auction** *noun*
- **audible** *adj*
- **audience** *noun*
- **audition** *noun*
- **auditor** *noun*
- **auditorium** *noun*
- **August** *noun*
- **aunt** *noun*
- **aura** *noun*
- **austerity** *noun*
- **authenticity** *noun*
- **author** *noun*
- **authoritarian** *adj*
- **authority** *noun*
- **authorization** *noun*
- **autistic** *adj*
- **autograph** *noun*
- **automatic** *adj*
- **autonomous** *adj*
- **autonomy** *noun*
- **autopsy** *noun*
- **autumn** *noun*
- **availability** *noun*
- **available** *adj*
- **avalanche** *noun*
- **avenue** *noun*
- **average** *adj*
- **average** *noun*
- **aversion** *noun*
- **avert** *verb*
- **avocado** *noun*
- **avoid** *verb*
- **avoidable** *adj*
- **await** *verb*
- **awake** *adj*
- **awake** *verb*

- **awaken** *verb*
- **awakening** *noun*
- **award** *noun*
- **award** *verb*
- **aware** *adj*
- **awareness** *noun*
- **awe** *noun*
- **awesome** *adj*
- **awful** *adj*
- **awkward** *adj*
- **axe** *noun*
- **axis** *noun*
- **baby** *noun*
- **bachelor** *noun*
- **back** *noun*
- **back** *verb*
- **backdrop** *noun*
- **backfire** *verb*
- **background** *noun*
- **backing** *noun*
- **backlash** *noun*
- **backlog** *noun*
- **backpack** *noun*
- **backstroke** *noun*
- **backward** *adj*
- **bacon** *noun*
- **bacteria** *noun*
- **bad** *adj*
- **badge** *noun*
- **bad-tempered** *adj*
- **baffled** *adj*
- **bag** *noun*
- **baggage** *noun*
- **bail** *noun*
- **bailiff** *noun*
- **bait** *noun*
- **bake** *verb*
- **balance** *noun*

- **balance** *verb*
- **balanced** *adj*
- **bald** *adj*
- **balding** *adj*
- **ball** *noun*
- **ballet** *noun*
- **balloon** *noun*
- **ballot** *noun*
- **ban** *noun*
- **ban** *verb*
- **banana** *noun*
- **band** *noun*
- **bandage** *noun*
- **bandwagon** *noun*
- **bang** *noun*
- **bang** *verb*
- **bank** *noun*
- **banking** *noun*
- **bankrupt** *adj*
- **bankruptcy** *noun*
- **banner** *noun*
- **banquet** *noun*
- **banter** *noun*
- **bar** *noun*
- **bar** *verb*
- **bare** *adj*
- **barefoot** *adj*
- **barefoot** *adv*
- **bargain** *noun*
- **bargain** *verb*
- **bargaining** *noun*
- **barge** *noun*
- **baritone** *noun*
- **bark** *noun*
- **bark** *verb*
- **barley** *noun*
- **barometer** *noun*
- **baron** *noun*

- **baroness** *noun*
- **baronet** *noun*
- **barracks** *noun*
- **barrage** *noun*
- **barrel** *noun*
- **barren** *adj*
- **barricade** *noun*
- **barrier** *noun*
- **barrister** *noun*
- **base** *noun*
- **base** *verb*
- **basement** *noun*
- **bash** *noun*
- **bash** *verb*
- **basics** *noun*
- **basis** *noun*
- **basket** *noun*
- **basketball** *noun*
- **bass** *noun*
- **bassoon** *noun*
- **bat** *noun*
- **bat** *verb*
- **batch** *noun*
- **bath** *noun*
- **bathroom** *noun*
- **baton** *noun*
- **battered** *adj*
- **battery** *noun*
- **battle** *noun*
- **battle** *verb*
- **bay** *noun*
- **bayonet** *noun*
- **beach** *noun*
- **bead** *noun*
- **beak** *noun*
- **beaker** *noun*
- **beam** *noun*
- **beam** *verb*

- **bean** *noun*
- **bear** *verb*
- **bearable** *adj*
- **beard** *noun*
- **bearing** *noun*
- **beast** *noun*
- **beat** *noun*
- **beat** *verb*
- **beating** *noun*
- **beautiful** *adj*
- **beauty** *noun*
- **bed** *noun*
- **bedroom** *noun*
- **bedside** *noun*
- **bedtime** *noun*
- **bee** *noun*
- **beef** *noun*
- **beer** *noun*
- **beg** *verb*
- **begin** *verb*
- **beginner** *noun*
- **beginning** *noun*
- **behave** *verb*
- **behaviour** *noun*
- **belief** *noun*
- **believable** *adj*
- **believe** *verb*
- **believer** *noun*
- **bell** *noun*
- **bellow** *noun*
- **belly** *noun*
- **belongings** *noun*
- **beloved** *adj*
- **belt** *noun*
- **bemused** *adj*
- **bench** *noun*
- **bend** *noun*
- **bend** *verb*

- **benefactor** *noun*
- **beneficial** *adj*
- **benefit** *noun*
- **benefit** *verb*
- **benign** *adj*
- **bent** *adj*
- **bent** *noun*
- **bequest** *noun*
- **bereaved** *adj*
- **bereavement** *noun*
- **berry** *noun*
- **berth** *noun*
- **best** *adj*
- **bet** *noun*
- **betrayal** *noun*
- **better** *adj*
- **bewildered** *adj*
- **bewildering** *adj*
- **bias** *noun*
- **biased** *adj*
- **Bible** *noun*
- **bibliography** *noun*
- **bicycle** *noun*
- **bid** *noun*
- **bid** *verb*
- **big** *adj*
- **bike** *noun*
- **bikini** *noun*
- **bilingual** *adj*
- **bill** *noun*
- **bin** *noun*
- **bind** *noun*
- **bind** *verb*
- **binding** *adj*
- **binge** *noun*
- **binoculars** *noun*
- **biography** *noun*
- **biologist** *noun*

- **biology** *noun*
- **bird** *noun*
- **birth control** *noun*
- **birth** *noun*
- **birthday** *noun*
- **birthmark** *noun*
- **biscuit** *noun*
- **bishop** *noun*
- **bit** *noun*
- **bite** *noun*
- **bite** *verb*
- **bitter** *adj*
- **bitterness** *noun*
- **bizarre** *adj*
- **black market** *noun*
- **black** *adj*
- **blackboard** *noun*
- **blacklist** *noun*
- **blackmail** *noun*
- **blackmail** *verb*
- **bladder** *noun*
- **blade** *noun*
- **blame** *noun*
- **blame** *verb*
- **blameless** *adj*
- **blank** *adj*
- **blank** *noun*
- **blanket** *noun*
- **blasphemous** *adj*
- **blasphemy** *noun*
- **blast** *noun*
- **blaze** *noun*
- **bleak** *adj*
- **bleed** *verb*
- **bleeding** *noun*
- **blemish** *noun*
- **blend** *noun*
- **blend** *verb*

- **blessing** *noun*
- **blind** *adj*
- **blind** *noun*
- **blind** *verb*
- **blink** *verb*
- **bliss** *noun*
- **blister** *verb*
- **blitz** *noun*
- **blizzard** *noun*
- **bloc** *noun*
- **block** *noun*
- **block** *verb*
- **blockade** *noun*
- **blockage** *noun*
- **bloke** *noun*
- **blonde** *noun*
- **blood pressure** *noun*
- **blood transfusion** *noun*
- **blood vessel** *noun*
- **blood** *noun*
- **bloodshed** *noun*
- **bloodstream** *noun*
- **bloom** *noun*
- **blossom** *noun*
- **blouse** *noun*
- **blow** *noun*
- **blow** *verb*
- **blue** *adj*
- **blueprint** *noun*
- **blues** *noun*
- **blunder** *noun*
- **blur** *noun*
- **blush** *noun*
- **blush** *verb*
- **board** *noun*
- **boardroom** *noun*
- **boast** *noun*
- **boast** *verb*

- **boat** *noun*
- **bob** *verb*
- **body** *noun*
- **bodyguard** *noun*
- **bog** *noun*
- **bogus** *adj*
- **boil** *noun*
- **boil** *verb*
- **boiler** *noun*
- **boiling point** *noun*
- **bold** *adj*
- **bolt** *noun*
- **bolt** *verb*
- **bomb** *noun*
- **bomb** *verb*
- **bombard** *verb*
- **bombardment** *noun*
- **bombing** *noun*
- **bombshell** *noun*
- **bond** *noun*
- **bone** *noun*
- **bonfire** *noun*
- **bonkers** *adj*
- **bonus** *noun*
- **boo** *noun*
- **book** *noun*
- **book** *verb*
- **bookcase** *noun*
- **booking** *noun*
- **bookkeeping** *noun*
- **boom** *noun*
- **boon** *noun*
- **boost** *noun*
- **boost** *verb*
- **boot** *noun*
- **booth** *noun*
- **booty** *noun*
- **booze** *noun*

- **border** *noun*
- **borderline** *noun*
- **bore** *noun*
- **bore** *verb*
- **bored** *adj*
- **boredom** *noun*
- **boring** *adj*
- **born** *verb*
- **borough** *noun*
- **borrow** *verb*
- **bosom** *noun*
- **boss** *noun*
- **bother** *noun*
- **bothered** *adj*
- **bottle** *noun*
- **bottom** *noun*
- **boulevard** *noun*
- **bounce** *verb*
- **bound** *adj*
- **boundary** *noun*
- **bouquet** *noun*
- **bout** *noun*
- **boutique** *noun*
- **bow** *noun*
- **bow** *verb*
- **bowel** *noun*
- **bowl** *noun*
- **bowling** *noun*
- **box office** *noun*
- **box** *noun*
- **boxing** *noun*
- **boy** *noun*
- **boycott** *noun*
- **boycott** *verb*
- **boyfriend** *noun*
- **bra** *noun*
- **brace** *noun*
- **bracket** *noun*

- **brain** *noun*
- **brake** *noun*
- **brake** *verb*
- **branch** *noun*
- **brand** *noun*
- **brandy** *noun*
- **brass** *noun*
- **bravado** *noun*
- **brave** *adj*
- **bravery** *noun*
- **brawl** *noun*
- **breach** *noun*
- **bread** *noun*
- **breadth** *noun*
- **break** *noun*
- **break** *verb*
- **breakdown** *noun*
- **breakfast** *noun*
- **break-in** *noun*
- **breakthrough** *noun*
- **breakup** *noun*
- **breast** *noun*
- **breaststroke** *noun*
- **breath** *noun*
- **breathe** *verb*
- **breather** *noun*
- **breathing** *noun*
- **breathless** *adj*
- **breathtaking** *adj*
- **breed** *noun*
- **breed** *verb*
- **breeding** *noun*
- **breeze** *noun*
- **breezy** *adj*
- **bribe** *noun*
- **bribery** *noun*
- **brick** *noun*
- **bride** *noun*

- **bridegroom** *noun*
- **bridesmaid** *noun*
- **bridge** *noun*
- **brief** *adj*
- **brief** *noun*
- **brief** *verb*
- **briefcase** *noun*
- **briefing** *noun*
- **brigade** *noun*
- **brigadier** *noun*
- **bright** *adj*
- **brighten** *verb*
- **brilliance** *noun*
- **brilliant** *adj*
- **brim** *noun*
- **bring** *verb*
- **brink** *noun*
- **broad** *adj*
- **broadcast** *noun*
- **broadcast** *verb*
- **broadcaster** *noun*
- **brochure** *noun*
- **broke** *adj*
- **broken** *adj*
- **broker** *noun*
- **bronchitis** *noun*
- **bronze** *noun*
- **brooch** *noun*
- **broom** *noun*
- **brothel** *noun*
- **brother** *noun*
- **brow** *noun*
- **brown** *adj*
- **browser** *noun*
- **bruise** *noun*
- **brunt** *noun*
- **brush** *noun*
- **brush** *verb*

- **brutality** *noun*
- **bubble** *noun*
- **bubble** *verb*
- **bucket** *noun*
- **buckle** *noun*
- **bud** *noun*
- **Buddhism** *noun*
- **Buddhist** *noun*
- **budge** *verb*
- **budget** *noun*
- **budget** *verb*
- **buffer** *noun*
- **buffet** *noun*
- **bug** *noun*
- **buggy** *noun*
- **build** *noun*
- **builder** *noun*
- **building** *noun*
- **build-up** *noun*
- **bulb** *noun*
- **bulk** *noun*
- **bullet** *noun*
- **bulletin** *noun*
- **bully** *noun*
- **bum** *noun*
- **bump** *noun*
- **bump** *verb*
- **bumper** *noun*
- **bun** *noun*
- **bunch** *noun*
- **bundle** *noun*
- **bungalow** *noun*
- **burden** *noun*
- **bureau** *noun*
- **bureaucracy** *noun*
- **bureaucrat** *noun*
- **bureaucratic** *adj*
- **burglar** *noun*

- **burglary** *noun*
- **burial** *noun*
- **burn** *noun*
- **burn** *verb*
- **burrow** *verb*
- **bursary** *noun*
- **burst** *noun*
- **burst** *verb*
- **bury** *verb*
- **bus** *noun*
- **bush** *noun*
- **business** *noun*
- **businesslike** *adj*
- **businessman** *noun*
- **businesswoman** *noun*
- **businesswomen** *noun*
- **busy** *adj*
- **butcher** *noun*
- **butter** *noun*
- **butter** *verb*
- **butterfly** *noun*
- **buttock** *noun*
- **button** *noun*
- **buy** *verb*
- **buyer** *noun*
- **buzz** *noun*
- **buzzer** *noun*
- **bypass** *noun*
- **cab** *noun*
- **cabbage** *noun*
- **cabinet** *noun*
- **cable** *noun*
- **cackle** *noun*
- **cackle** *verb*
- **cadet** *noun*
- **cafe** *noun*
- **cake** *noun*
- **calculate** *verb*

- **calculating** *adj*
- **calculation** *noun*
- **calculator** *noun*
- **calendar** *noun*
- **calf** *noun*
- **call** *noun*
- **call** *verb*
- **calm** *adj*
- **calm** *noun*
- **calorie** *noun*
- **camera** *noun*
- **camouflage** *noun*
- **camouflage** *verb*
- **camp** *noun*
- **campaign** *noun*
- **campaign** *verb*
- **campaigner** *noun*
- **campus** *noun*
- **can** *noun*
- **canal** *noun*
- **cancellation** *noun*
- **cancer** *noun*
- **candid** *adj*
- **candidate** *noun*
- **candle** *noun*
- **cannabis** *noun*
- **cannon** *noun*
- **canoe** *noun*
- **canopy** *noun*
- **cap** *noun*
- **capability** *noun*
- **capable** *adj*
- **capacity** *noun*
- **capital** *noun*
- **capitalism** *noun*
- **capsule** *noun*
- **captain** *noun*
- **captive** *adj*

- **captive** *noun*
- **captivity** *noun*
- **capture** *noun*
- **capture** *verb*
- **car** *noun*
- **caravan** *noun*
- **carbohydrate** *noun*
- **carbon dioxide** *noun*
- **carbon** *noun*
- **card** *noun*
- **cardboard** *noun*
- **cardigan** *noun*
- **care** *noun*
- **care** *verb*
- **career** *noun*
- **career** *verb*
- **careful** *adj*
- **careless** *adj*
- **caress** *noun*
- **caress** *verb*
- **cargo** *noun*
- **caricature** *noun*
- **carpet** *noun*
- **carpeted** *adj*
- **carriage** *noun*
- **carriageway** *noun*
- **carrot** *noun*
- **cart** *noun*
- **carton** *noun*
- **cartoon** *noun*
- **carved** *adj*
- **case** *noun*
- **cash** *noun*
- **casserole** *noun*
- **cassette** *noun*
- **cast** *noun*
- **caste** *noun*
- **castle** *noun*

- **casual** *adj*
- **casualty** *noun*
- **cat** *noun*
- **catalogue** *noun*
- **cataract** *noun*
- **catastrophe** *noun*
- **catastrophic** *adj*
- **catch** *noun*
- **categorize** *verb*
- **category** *noun*
- **catering** *noun*
- **cathedral** *noun*
- **Catholic** *noun*
- **Catholicism** *noun*
- **cattle** *noun*
- **cause** *noun*
- **caution** *noun*
- **cautious** *adj*
- **cave** *noun*
- **CD** *noun*
- **CD-ROM** *noun*
- **cease** *verb*
- **ceasefire** *noun*
- **ceiling** *noun*
- **celebrated** *adj*
- **celebration** *noun*
- **celebrity** *noun*
- **celery** *noun*
- **cell** *noun*
- **cellar** *noun*
- **cello** *noun*
- **cement** *noun*
- **cemetery** *noun*
- **censor** *verb*
- **censorship** *noun*
- **censure** *noun*
- **censure** *verb*
- **census** *noun*

- **centenary** *noun*
- **centimeter** *noun*
- **centimetre** *noun*
- **central** *adj*
- **centralized** *adj*
- **centre** *noun*
- **century** *noun*
- **cereal** *noun*
- **ceremonial** *adj*
- **ceremony** *noun*
- **certain** *adj*
- **certainty** *noun*
- **certificate** *noun*
- **chain** *noun*
- **chair** *noun*
- **chairman** *noun*
- **chairwoman** *noun*
- **chalk** *noun*
- **challenge** *noun*
- **challenge** *verb*
- **challenger** *noun*
- **challenging** *adj*
- **chamber** *noun*
- **champagne** *noun*
- **champion** *noun*
- **championship** *noun*
- **chance** *noun*
- **change** *noun*
- **change** *verb*
- **channel** *noun*
- **chant** *noun*
- **chaos** *noun*
- **chaotic** *adj*
- **chap** *noun*
- **chapel** *noun*
- **chapter** *noun*
- **character** *noun*
- **characteristic** *adj*

- **characteristic** *noun*
- **charade** *noun*
- **charcoal** *noun*
- **charge** *noun*
- **charge** *verb*
- **charged** *adj*
- **charity** *noun*
- **charm** *noun*
- **charming** *adj*
- **charred** *adj*
- **chart** *noun*
- **charter** *noun*
- **chase** *noun*
- **chasm** *noun*
- **chat** *noun*
- **chat** *verb*
- **chatter** *noun*
- **chatter** *verb*
- **chauffeur** *noun*
- **chauvinism** *noun*
- **chauvinist** *noun*
- **cheap** *adj*
- **cheap** *adv*
- **check** *noun*
- **check** *verb*
- **checklist** *noun*
- **checkout** *noun*
- **checkpoint** *noun*
- **check-up** *noun*
- **cheek** *noun*
- **cheekbone** *noun*
- **cheer** *noun*
- **cheer** *verb*
- **cheerful** *adj*
- **cheese** *noun*
- **chef** *noun*
- **chemical** *noun*
- **chemist** *noun*

- **chemistry** *noun*
- **cheque** *noun*
- **cherry** *noun*
- **chess** *noun*
- **chest** *noun*
- **chestnut** *noun*
- **chew** *verb*
- **chicken** *noun*
- **chickenpox** *noun*
- **chief** *noun*
- **child** *noun*
- **childbirth** *noun*
- **childhood** *noun*
- **chill** *noun*
- **chilled** *adj*
- **chilli** *noun*
- **chilly** *adj*
- **chimney** *noun*
- **chin** *noun*
- **china** *noun*
- **Chinese** *noun*
- **chip** *noun*
- **chip** *verb*
- **chocolate** *noun*
- **choice** *noun*
- **choir** *noun*
- **choke** *verb*
- **cholera** *noun*
- **cholesterol** *noun*
- **choose** *verb*
- **chop** *noun*
- **chop** *verb*
- **chord** *noun*
- **chore** *noun*
- **chorus** *noun*
- **christening** *noun*
- **Christian** *noun*
- **Christianity** *noun*

- **Christmas** *noun*
- **chronological** *adj*
- **chuckle** *noun*
- **chuckle** *verb*
- **chug** *verb*
- **chunk** *noun*
- **church** *noun*
- **chute** *noun*
- **cider** *noun*
- **cigar** *noun*
- **cigarette** *noun*
- **cinder** *noun*
- **cinema** *noun*
- **circle** *noun*
- **circle** *verb*
- **circuit** *noun*
- **circular** *adj*
- **circulate** *verb*
- **circulation** *noun*
- **circumference** *noun*
- **circumstance** *noun*
- **cite** *verb*
- **citizen** *noun*
- **citizenship** *noun*
- **city** *noun*
- **civil** *adj*
- **civilian** *noun*
- **civilization** *noun*
- **clad** *adj*
- **claim** *noun*
- **claim** *verb*
- **clamour** *noun*
- **clamp** *verb*
- **clang** *noun*
- **clank** *noun*
- **clap** *noun*
- **clap** *verb*
- **clarification** *noun*

- **clarify** *verb*
- **clarinet** *noun*
- **clarity** *noun*
- **clash** *noun*
- **clash** *verb*
- **clasp** *verb*
- **class** *noun*
- **classic** *noun*
- **classification** *noun*
- **clatter** *noun*
- **clatter** *verb*
- **clause** *noun*
- **claustrophobia** *noun*
- **claustrophobic** *adj*
- **claw** *noun*
- **clay** *noun*
- **clean** *adj*
- **clean** *verb*
- **cleaner** *noun*
- **cleanliness** *noun*
- **cleanse** *verb*
- **clear** *adj*
- **clear** *verb*
- **clearance** *noun*
- **clench** *verb*
- **clerk** *noun*
- **clever** *adj*
- **click** *noun*
- **client** *noun*
- **clientele** *noun*
- **cliff** *noun*
- **climate** *noun*
- **climax** *noun*
- **climb** *noun*
- **climb** *verb*
- **cling** *verb*
- **clinic** *noun*
- **clinical** *adj*

- **clip** *noun*
- **cloak** *noun*
- **clock** *noun*
- **close** *adj*
- **close** *noun*
- **close** *verb*
- **closed** *adj*
- **close-up** *noun*
- **closure** *noun*
- **clot** *noun*
- **cloth** *noun*
- **clothed** *adj*
- **clothes** *noun*
- **clothing** *noun*
- **cloud** *noun*
- **cloudy** *adj*
- **clout** *noun*
- **club** *noun*
- **clue** *noun*
- **clump** *noun*
- **cluster** *noun*
- **cluster** *verb*
- **clutch** *noun*
- **clutch** *verb*
- **clutter** *noun*
- **coach** *noun*
- **coal** *noun*
- **coalition** *noun*
- **coast** *noun*
- **coastline** *noun*
- **coat** *noun*
- **coat** *verb*
- **coating** *noun*
- **coax** *verb*
- **cocaine** *noun*
- **cock** *noun*
- **cocktail** *noun*
- **cock-up** *noun*

- **coconut** *noun*
- **code** *noun*
- **coexist** *verb*
- **coffee** *noun*
- **coffin** *noun*
- **coherence** *noun*
- **coil** *noun*
- **coil** *verb*
- **coin** *noun*
- **coincide** *verb*
- **coincidence** *noun*
- **coincidental** *adj*
- **coke** *noun*
- **cold** *adj*
- **cold** *noun*
- **coldness** *noun*
- **colic** *noun*
- **collaborate** *verb*
- **collaboration** *noun*
- **collapse** *noun*
- **collapse** *verb*
- **collar** *noun*
- **colleague** *noun*
- **collection** *noun*
- **collector** *noun*
- **college** *noun*
- **collide** *verb*
- **collision** *noun*
- **colonel** *noun*
- **colony** *noun*
- **colour** *noun*
- **colour** *verb*
- **coloured** *adj*
- **colouring** *noun*
- **column** *noun*
- **coma** *noun*
- **comb** *noun*
- **combat** *noun*

- **combination** *noun*
- **combine** *verb*
- **comeback** *noun*
- **comedian** *noun*
- **comedy** *noun*
- **comfort** *noun*
- **comfort** *verb*
- **comfortable** *adj*
- **comforting** *adj*
- **comic** *adj*
- **comical** *adj*
- **command** *noun*
- **commander** *noun*
- **commend** *verb*
- **commendable** *adj*
- **comment** *noun*
- **comment** *verb*
- **commentary** *noun*
- **commentator** *noun*
- **commerce** *noun*
- **commercial** *noun*
- **commission** *noun*
- **commission** *verb*
- **commissioner** *noun*
- **commitment** *noun*
- **committed** *adj*
- **committee** *noun*
- **commodity** *noun*
- **common ground** *noun*
- **common sense** *noun*
- **common** *adj*
- **commonplace** *adj*
- **commotion** *noun*
- **commune** *noun*
- **communicate** *verb*
- **communication** *noun*
- **communion** *noun*
- **communism** *noun*

- **communist** *noun*
- **community** *noun*
- **commute** *verb*
- **companion** *noun*
- **companionship** *noun*
- **company** *noun*
- **comparable** *adj*
- **compare** *verb*
- **comparison** *noun*
- **compartment** *noun*
- **compass** *noun*
- **compassion** *noun*
- **compassionate** *adj*
- **compatible** *adj*
- **compelling** *adj*
- **compensate** *verb*
- **compensation** *noun*
- **compete** *verb*
- **competence** *noun*
- **competent** *adj*
- **competition** *noun*
- **competitive** *adj*
- **competitor** *noun*
- **complacent** *adj*
- **complain** *verb*
- **complaint** *noun*
- **complement** *noun*
- **complement** *verb*
- **complementary** *adj*
- **complete** *adj*
- **complete** *verb*
- **completion** *noun*
- **complex** *adj*
- **complex** *noun*
- **complexion** *noun*
- **complexity** *noun*
- **complicate** *verb*
- **complicated** *adj*

- **complication** *noun*
- **complicity** *noun*
- **compliment** *noun*
- **complimentary** *adj*
- **comply** *verb*
- **component** *noun*
- **compose** *verb*
- **composed** *adj*
- **composer** *noun*
- **composition** *noun*
- **composure** *noun*
- **compound** *noun*
- **comprehend** *verb*
- **comprehensible** *adj*
- **comprehension** *noun*
- **comprehensive** *adj*
- **compromise** *noun*
- **compromise** *verb*
- **compulsion** *noun*
- **computer** *noun*
- **computing** *noun*
- **con** *noun*
- **conceal** *verb*
- **concede** *verb*
- **conceivable** *adj*
- **conceive** *verb*
- **concentrate** *verb*
- **concentrated** *adj*
- **concentration** *noun*
- **concept** *noun*
- **conception** *noun*
- **concern** *noun*
- **concern** *verb*
- **concerned** *adj*
- **concert** *noun*
- **concerto** *noun*
- **concession** *noun*
- **conclusion** *noun*

- **conclusive** *adj*
- **concrete** *noun*
- **concur** *verb*
- **concussion** *noun*
- **condemn** *verb*
- **condemnation** *noun*
- **condition** *noun*
- **condolences** *noun*
- **condom** *noun*
- **condone** *verb*
- **conducive** *adj*
- **conduct** *noun*
- **conduct** *verb*
- **conductor** *noun*
- **confederation** *noun*
- **conference** *noun*
- **confess** *verb*
- **confession** *noun*
- **confetti** *noun*
- **confidence** *noun*
- **confident** *adj*
- **confidential** *adj*
- **confidentiality** *noun*
- **confine** *verb*
- **confinement** *noun*
- **confines** *noun*
- **confirm** *verb*
- **confirmation** *noun*
- **conflict** *noun*
- **conflict** *verb*
- **conform** *verb*
- **conformity** *noun*
- **confront** *verb*
- **confrontation** *noun*
- **confuse** *verb*
- **confused** *adj*
- **confusing** *adj*
- **confusion** *noun*

- **congested** *adj*
- **congestion** *noun*
- **conglomerate** *noun*
- **congratulate** *verb*
- **congratulations** *noun*
- **congregation** *noun*
- **congress** *noun*
- **conjecture** *noun*
- **conjunctivitis** *noun*
- **connect** *verb*
- **connection** *noun*
- **connoisseur** *noun*
- **connotation** *noun*
- **conquest** *noun*
- **conscience** *noun*
- **conscious** *adj*
- **consciousness** *noun*
- **conscription** *noun*
- **consensus** *noun*
- **consent** *noun*
- **consent** *verb*
- **consequence** *noun*
- **conservation** *noun*
- **conservatism** *noun*
- **conservative** *adj*
- **conservative** *noun*
- **consider** *verb*
- **consideration** *noun*
- **consist** *verb*
- **consistency** *noun*
- **consistent** *adj*
- **consolation** *noun*
- **conspicuous** *adj*
- **conspiracy** *noun*
- **constable** *noun*
- **constant** *adj*
- **consternation** *noun*
- **constipated** *adj*

- **constipation** *noun*
- **constituency** *noun*
- **constitution** *noun*
- **constrained** *adj*
- **constraint** *noun*
- **construction** *noun*
- **consult** *verb*
- **consultant** *noun*
- **consultation** *noun*
- **consumer** *noun*
- **consumption** *noun*
- **contact lens** *noun*
- **contact** *noun*
- **contact** *verb*
- **contagious** *adj*
- **container** *noun*
- **contaminated** *adj*
- **contamination** *noun*
- **contemplate** *verb*
- **contemplation** *noun*
- **contemporary** *adj*
- **contempt** *noun*
- **contemptuous** *adj*
- **contender** *noun*
- **content** *adj*
- **content** *noun*
- **contented** *adj*
- **contention** *noun*
- **contentious** *adj*
- **contentment** *noun*
- **contest** *noun*
- **contest** *verb*
- **context** *noun*
- **continent** *noun*
- **contingent** *noun*
- **continuation** *noun*
- **continuity** *noun*
- **contraception** *noun*

- **contraceptive** *noun*
- **contract** *noun*
- **contractor** *noun*
- **contradict** *verb*
- **contradiction** *noun*
- **contradictory** *adj*
- **contrary** *adj*
- **contrast** *noun*
- **contrast** *verb*
- **contravene** *verb*
- **contravention** *noun*
- **contribute** *verb*
- **contribution** *noun*
- **contributor** *noun*
- **contrived** *adj*
- **control** *noun*
- **control** *verb*
- **controller** *noun*
- **controversial** *adj*
- **controversy** *noun*
- **convenience** *noun*
- **convenient** *adj*
- **convent** *noun*
- **convention** *noun*
- **conventional** *adj*
- **conversation** *noun*
- **conversion** *noun*
- **convert** *noun*
- **convey** *verb*
- **convict** *noun*
- **conviction** *noun*
- **convinced** *adj*
- **convincing** *adj*
- **convoy** *noun*
- **convulsion** *noun*
- **cook** *noun*
- **cook** *verb*
- **cooker** *noun*

- **cookery** *noun*
- **cooking** *noun*
- **cool** *adj*
- **cool** *verb*
- **cooperate** *verb*
- **cooperation** *noun*
- **cooperative** *noun*
- **coordinate** *verb*
- **coordination** *noun*
- **cope** *verb*
- **copper** *noun*
- **copy** *noun*
- **copy** *verb*
- **copyright** *noun*
- **cord** *noun*
- **cordial** *adj*
- **cordon** *noun*
- **core** *noun*
- **corn** *noun*
- **corner** *noun*
- **coroner** *noun*
- **corporal** *noun*
- **corporation** *noun*
- **corps** *noun*
- **corpse** *noun*
- **correct** *adj*
- **correction** *noun*
- **correctness** *noun*
- **correlate** *verb*
- **correlation** *noun*
- **correspond** *verb*
- **correspondence** *noun*
- **correspondent** *noun*
- **corridor** *noun*
- **corrode** *verb*
- **corrosion** *noun*
- **corrosive** *adj*
- **corrupt** *adj*

- **corruption** *noun*
- **cosmetic** *adj*
- **cosmetic** *noun*
- **cosmopolitan** *adj*
- **cost** *noun*
- **cost** *verb*
- **costly** *adj*
- **costume** *noun*
- **cottage** *noun*
- **cotton** *noun*
- **couch** *noun*
- **cough** *noun*
- **cough** *verb*
- **council** *noun*
- **councillor** *noun*
- **counsel** *noun*
- **counselling** *noun*
- **counsellor** *noun*
- **count** *noun*
- **counter** *noun*
- **counter-attack** *noun*
- **counterpart** *noun*
- **country** *noun*
- **countryside** *noun*
- **county** *noun*
- **coup** *noun*
- **couple** *noun*
- **coupon** *noun*
- **courage** *noun*
- **courageous** *adj*
- **courier** *noun*
- **course** *noun*
- **court martial** *noun*
- **court** *noun*
- **court** *verb*
- **courteous** *adj*
- **courtesy** *noun*
- **courtship** *noun*

- **courtyard** *noun*
- **cousin** *noun*
- **cover** *noun*
- **cover** *verb*
- **coverage** *noun*
- **covered** *adj*
- **cover-up** *noun*
- **cow** *noun*
- **coward** *noun*
- **cowardice** *noun*
- **coy** *adj*
- **crack** *noun*
- **crack** *verb*
- **crackdown** *noun*
- **cradle** *verb*
- **craft** *noun*
- **craftsman** *noun*
- **craftsmanship** *noun*
- **cramp** *noun*
- **crash** *noun*
- **crate** *noun*
- **crater** *noun*
- **craving** *noun*
- **crawl** *noun*
- **crawl** *verb*
- **crayon** *noun*
- **craze** *noun*
- **crazy** *adj*
- **creak** *noun*
- **creak** *verb*
- **cream** *noun*
- **creamy** *adj*
- **crease** *noun*
- **crease** *verb*
- **creation** *noun*
- **creative** *adj*
- **creativity** *noun*
- **creature** *noun*

- **credentials** *noun*
- **credibility** *noun*
- **credible** *adj*
- **credit card** *noun*
- **credit** *noun*
- **credit** *verb*
- **creditable** *adj*
- **creditor** *noun*
- **credulity** *noun*
- **creed** *noun*
- **creep** *verb*
- **creepy** *adj*
- **crescendo** *noun*
- **crest** *noun*
- **crew** *noun*
- **cricket** *noun*
- **crime** *noun*
- **criminal** *noun*
- **crimson** *adj*
- **cripple** *verb*
- **crisis** *noun*
- **crisp** *noun*
- **criterion** *noun*
- **critic** *noun*
- **critical** *adj*
- **criticism** *noun*
- **criticize** *verb*
- **critique** *noun*
- **crook** *noun*
- **crop** *noun*
- **crop** *verb*
- **cross section** *noun*
- **cross** *adj*
- **cross** *noun*
- **cross** *verb*
- **cross-examination** *noun*
- **cross-eyed** *adj*
- **crossing** *noun*

- **crossroads** *noun*
- **crossword** *noun*
- **crouch** *verb*
- **crow** *noun*
- **crow** *verb*
- **crowd** *noun*
- **crowded** *adj*
- **crown** *noun*
- **crucial** *adj*
- **cruel** *adj*
- **cruelty** *noun*
- **cruise** *noun*
- **cruiser** *noun*
- **crumb** *noun*
- **crunch** *verb*
- **crusade** *noun*
- **crush** *noun*
- **crush** *verb*
- **crust** *noun*
- **crutch** *noun*
- **crux** *noun*
- **cry** *noun*
- **cry** *verb*
- **crystal ball** *noun*
- **crystal** *noun*
- **cubicle** *noun*
- **cuddle** *noun*
- **cue** *noun*
- **cuisine** *noun*
- **culmination** *noun*
- **culpable** *adj*
- **culprit** *noun*
- **cult** *noun*
- **cultivate** *verb*
- **culture** *noun*
- **cultured** *adj*
- **cunning** *noun*
- **cup** *noun*

- **cupboard** *noun*
- **curb** *noun*
- **curb** *verb*
- **cure** *noun*
- **cure** *verb*
- **curfew** *noun*
- **curiosity** *noun*
- **curious** *adj*
- **curl** *noun*
- **curl** *verb*
- **curly** *adj*
- **currency** *noun*
- **current** *noun*
- **curriculum** *noun*
- **curry** *noun*
- **curse** *noun*
- **curse** *verb*
- **cursor** *noun*
- **curtail** *verb*
- **curtain** *noun*
- **curve** *noun*
- **curve** *verb*
- **cushion** *noun*
- **custard** *noun*
- **custody** *noun*
- **custom** *noun*
- **customer** *noun*
- **customs** *noun*
- **cut** *noun*
- **cut** *verb*
- **cutback** *noun*
- **cutting** *noun*
- **cycle** *noun*
- **cyclone** *noun*
- **cymbal** *noun*
- **cynical** *adj*
- **cynicism** *noun*
- **daft** *adj*

- **daft** *adv*
- **dagger** *noun*
- **dam** *noun*
- **damage** *noun*
- **damage** *verb*
- **damaging** *adj*
- **damp** *adj*
- **damp** *noun*
- **dance** *noun*
- **dance** *verb*
- **dancer** *noun*
- **dancing** *noun*
- **danger** *noun*
- **dangerous** *adj*
- **dare** *verb*
- **daring** *adj*
- **dark** *adj*
- **dark** *noun*
- **darkness** *noun*
- **dash** *noun*
- **dash** *verb*
- **data** *noun*
- **database** *noun*
- **date** *noun*
- **date** *verb*
- **dated** *adj*
- **daughter** *noun*
- **dawn** *noun*
- **dawn** *verb*
- **day** *noun*
- **daylight** *noun*
- **daytime** *noun*
- **dazed** *adj*
- **dead** *adj*
- **deadline** *noun*
- **deadlock** *noun*
- **deaf** *adj*
- **deal** *noun*

- **deal** *verb*
- **dealer** *noun*
- **dealings** *noun*
- **death** *noun*
- **debatable** *adj*
- **debate** *noun*
- **debate** *verb*
- **debit** *verb*
- **debris** *noun*
- **debt** *noun*
- **decade** *noun*
- **decay** *noun*
- **decayed** *adj*
- **deceased** *adj*
- **deceive** *verb*
- **December** *noun*
- **decency** *noun*
- **decent** *adj*
- **deception** *noun*
- **deceptive** *adj*
- **decide** *verb*
- **decision** *noun*
- **decisive** *adj*
- **deck** *noun*
- **declaration** *noun*
- **declare** *verb*
- **decline** *noun*
- **decline** *verb*
- **decompose** *verb*
- **decorate** *verb*
- **decorative** *adj*
- **decrease** *noun*
- **decrease** *verb*
- **decree** *noun*
- **dedicated** *adj*
- **dedication** *noun*
- **deduce** *verb*
- **deduct** *verb*

- **deduction** *noun*
- **deed** *noun*
- **deep** *adj*
- **defeat** *noun*
- **defeat** *verb*
- **defect** *noun*
- **defective** *adj*
- **defence** *noun*
- **defenceless** *adj*
- **defend** *verb*
- **defendant** *noun*
- **defensive** *adj*
- **defer** *verb*
- **deference** *noun*
- **defiance** *noun*
- **defiant** *adj*
- **deficiency** *noun*
- **deficient** *adj*
- **deficit** *noun*
- **define** *verb*
- **definition** *noun*
- **deformed** *adj*
- **deformity** *noun*
- **defunct** *adj*
- **defy** *verb*
- **degenerate** *verb*
- **degrading** *adj*
- **degree** *noun*
- **dehydration** *noun*
- **deity** *noun*
- **dejected** *adj*
- **delay** *noun*
- **delay** *verb*
- **delegate** *noun*
- **delegation** *noun*
- **delete** *verb*
- **deliberation** *noun*
- **delicacy** *noun*

- **delicate** *adj*
- **delicious** *adj*
- **delight** *noun*
- **delighted** *adj*
- **delightful** *adj*
- **deliver** *verb*
- **delivery** *noun*
- **delusion** *noun*
- **demand** *noun*
- **demand** *verb*
- **demanding** *adj*
- **demise** *noun*
- **democracy** *noun*
- **democratic** *adj*
- **demolition** *noun*
- **demon** *noun*
- **demonstrate** *verb*
- **demonstration** *noun*
- **demonstrator** *noun*
- **denial** *noun*
- **denounce** *verb*
- **density** *noun*
- **dent** *noun*
- **dent** *verb*
- **dentist** *noun*
- **dentures** *noun*
- **denunciation** *noun*
- **deny** *verb*
- **depart** *verb*
- **department** *noun*
- **departure** *noun*
- **depend** *verb*
- **dependable** *adj*
- **dependence** *noun*
- **dependent** *adj*
- **depict** *verb*
- **deplete** *verb*
- **depletion** *noun*

- **deploy** *verb*
- **deployment** *noun*
- **deport** *verb*
- **deportation** *noun*
- **deposit** *noun*
- **depot** *noun*
- **depreciate** *verb*
- **depressed** *adj*
- **depressing** *adj*
- **depression** *noun*
- **deprivation** *noun*
- **deprived** *adj*
- **depth** *noun*
- **deputation** *noun*
- **deputy** *noun*
- **deranged** *adj*
- **derelict** *adj*
- **derive** *verb*
- **descend** *verb*
- **descendant** *noun*
- **descent** *noun*
- **describe** *verb*
- **description** *noun*
- **descriptive** *adj*
- **desert** *noun*
- **deserted** *adj*
- **deserve** *verb*
- **deserving** *adj*
- **design** *noun*
- **design** *verb*
- **designate** *verb*
- **designer** *noun*
- **desirable** *adj*
- **desire** *noun*
- **desire** *verb*
- **desk** *noun*
- **desolate** *adj*
- **despair** *noun*

- **desperate** *adj*
- **desperation** *noun*
- **despicable** *adj*
- **despise** *verb*
- **despondent** *adj*
- **dessert** *noun*
- **destination** *noun*
- **destiny** *noun*
- **destroy** *verb*
- **destruction** *noun*
- **destructive** *adj*
- **detachable** *adj*
- **detached** *adj*
- **detachment** *noun*
- **detail** *noun*
- **detailed** *adj*
- **detain** *verb*
- **detect** *verb*
- **detection** *noun*
- **detective** *noun*
- **detention** *noun*
- **deter** *verb*
- **deteriorate** *verb*
- **deterioration** *noun*
- **determination** *noun*
- **determine** *verb*
- **determined** *adj*
- **deterrent** *noun*
- **detour** *noun*
- **detrimental** *adj*
- **devalue** *verb*
- **devastation** *noun*
- **developed** *adj*
- **developer** *noun*
- **development** *noun*
- **deviate** *verb*
- **device** *noun*
- **devil** *noun*

- **devoid** *adj*
- **devote** *verb*
- **devoted** *adj*
- **devotee** *noun*
- **devotion** *noun*
- **devour** *verb*
- **dew** *noun*
- **dexterity** *noun*
- **diagnose** *verb*
- **diagnosis** *noun*
- **diagram** *noun*
- **dial** *noun*
- **dial** *verb*
- **dialect** *noun*
- **dialogue** *noun*
- **diameter** *noun*
- **diamond** *noun*
- **diarrhoea** *noun*
- **diary** *noun*
- **dice** *noun*
- **dictation** *noun*
- **dictatorship** *noun*
- **dictionary** *noun*
- **die** *verb*
- **diesel** *noun*
- **diet** *noun*
- **differ** *verb*
- **difference** *noun*
- **different** *adj*
- **differentiate** *verb*
- **difficult** *adj*
- **difficulty** *noun*
- **dig** *noun*
- **dig** *verb*
- **digest** *verb*
- **digestion** *noun*
- **digit** *noun*
- **dignified** *adj*

- **dignity** *noun*
- **dilemma** *noun*
- **dilute** *verb*
- **dimension** *noun*
- **din** *noun*
- **dine** *verb*
- **dinghy** *noun*
- **dining room** *noun*
- **dinner** *noun*
- **dip** *noun*
- **dip** *verb*
- **diphtheria** *noun*
- **diploma** *noun*
- **diplomacy** *noun*
- **diplomat** *noun*
- **direct** *adj*
- **direct** *verb*
- **direction** *noun*
- **directive** *noun*
- **director** *noun*
- **directory** *noun*
- **dirt** *noun*
- **dirty** *adj*
- **disability** *noun*
- **disabled** *adj*
- **disadvantage** *noun*
- **disadvantaged** *adj*
- **disagree** *verb*
- **disagreement** *noun*
- **disappear** *verb*
- **disappearance** *noun*
- **disappointed** *adj*
- **disappointing** *adj*
- **disappointment** *noun*
- **disapproval** *noun*
- **disapprove** *verb*
- **disapproving** *adj*
- **disarmament** *noun*

- **disarray** *noun*
- **disaster** *noun*
- **disastrous** *adj*
- **disbelief** *noun*
- **disc** *noun*
- **discard** *verb*
- **discern** *verb*
- **discernible** *adj*
- **discharge** *noun*
- **discharge** *verb*
- **disciple** *noun*
- **discipline** *noun*
- **disclose** *verb*
- **discomfort** *noun*
- **disconcerting** *adj*
- **discontent** *noun*
- **discord** *noun*
- **discount** *noun*
- **discourage** *verb*
- **discover** *verb*
- **discovery** *noun*
- **discredit** *noun*
- **discrepancy** *noun*
- **discretion** *noun*
- **discriminate** *verb*
- **discrimination** *noun*
- **discuss** *verb*
- **discussion** *noun*
- **disdain** *noun*
- **disease** *noun*
- **disfigure** *verb*
- **disgrace** *noun*
- **disgraceful** *adj*
- **disguise** *noun*
- **disguise** *verb*
- **disgust** *noun*
- **disgusted** *adj*
- **disgusting** *adj*

- **dish** *noun*
- **dishonest** *adj*
- **dishwasher** *noun*
- **disillusioned** *adj*
- **disillusionment** *noun*
- **disintegrate** *verb*
- **disintegration** *noun*
- **disk** *noun*
- **dislike** *noun*
- **dislike** *verb*
- **disloyalty** *noun*
- **dismal** *adj*
- **dismay** *noun*
- **dismiss** *verb*
- **dismissal** *noun*
- **dismissive** *adj*
- **disobedience** *noun*
- **disorder** *noun*
- **disorganized** *adj*
- **disparity** *noun*
- **disperse** *verb*
- **display** *noun*
- **display** *verb*
- **displeasure** *noun*
- **disposal** *noun*
- **disposed** *adj*
- **disposition** *noun*
- **disproportionate** *adj*
- **dispute** *noun*
- **dispute** *verb*
- **disregard** *noun*
- **disrepair** *noun*
- **disreputable** *adj*
- **disrepute** *noun*
- **disrespect** *noun*
- **disrupt** *verb*
- **disruption** *noun*
- **disruptive** *adj*

- **dissatisfaction** *noun*
- **dissatisfied** *adj*
- **dissent** *noun*
- **dissertation** *noun*
- **disservice** *noun*
- **dissident** *noun*
- **dissimilar** *adj*
- **dissolve** *verb*
- **distance** *noun*
- **distant** *adj*
- **distaste** *noun*
- **distasteful** *adj*
- **distinct** *adj*
- **distinction** *noun*
- **distinctive** *adj*
- **distinguish** *verb*
- **distinguishable** *adj*
- **distort** *verb*
- **distortion** *noun*
- **distract** *verb*
- **distracted** *adj*
- **distraction** *noun*
- **distraught** *adj*
- **distress** *noun*
- **distressing** *adj*
- **distribute** *verb*
- **distribution** *noun*
- **distributor** *noun*
- **district** *noun*
- **distrust** *noun*
- **disturbance** *noun*
- **disturbed** *adj*
- **disturbing** *adj*
- **disuse** *noun*
- **ditch** *noun*
- **dive** *noun*
- **dive** *verb*
- **diverge** *verb*

- **diverse** *adj*
- **diversion** *noun*
- **diversity** *noun*
- **divide** *noun*
- **divide** *verb*
- **dividend** *noun*
- **diving** *noun*
- **divisible** *adj*
- **division** *noun*
- **divisive** *adj*
- **divorce** *noun*
- **dock** *noun*
- **doctor** *noun*
- **doctorate** *noun*
- **doctrine** *noun*
- **document** *noun*
- **documentary** *noun*
- **dog** *noun*
- **dogma** *noun*
- **dole** *noun*
- **doll** *noun*
- **dollar** *noun*
- **domain** *noun*
- **domesticated** *adj*
- **dominance** *noun*
- **dominant** *adj*
- **dominate** *verb*
- **domination** *noun*
- **donation** *noun*
- **donkey** *noun*
- **donor** *noun*
- **doom** *noun*
- **doomed** *adj*
- **door** *noun*
- **doorbell** *noun*
- **doorway** *noun*
- **dope** *noun*
- **dosage** *noun*

- **dose** *noun*
- **double bass** *noun*
- **double** *verb*
- **doubt** *noun*
- **doubt** *verb*
- **doubtful** *adj*
- **dough** *noun*
- **downfall** *noun*
- **downpour** *noun*
- **downturn** *noun*
- **dowry** *noun*
- **doze** *noun*
- **doze** *verb*
- **draft** *noun*
- **draft** *verb*
- **drain** *noun*
- **drain** *verb*
- **drama** *noun*
- **dramatic** *adj*
- **drape** *verb*
- **draught** *noun*
- **draw** *noun*
- **draw** *verb*
- **drawback** *noun*
- **drawer** *noun*
- **drawing** *noun*
- **drawl** *noun*
- **drawl** *verb*
- **dread** *noun*
- **dread** *verb*
- **dreadful** *adj*
- **dream** *noun*
- **dream** *verb*
- **dress** *noun*
- **dress** *verb*
- **dressing** *noun*
- **drift** *noun*
- **drift** *verb*

- **drink** *noun*
- **drink** *verb*
- **drinker** *noun*
- **drinking** *noun*
- **drip** *noun*
- **drive** *noun*
- **drive** *verb*
- **driver** *noun*
- **driving licence** *noun*
- **driving** *noun*
- **drizzle** *noun*
- **drone** *noun*
- **drop** *noun*
- **drop** *verb*
- **drought** *noun*
- **drug** *noun*
- **drum** *noun*
- **drunk** *adj*
- **dry** *adj*
- **dry** *verb*
- **dubious** *adj*
- **duck** *noun*
- **duke** *noun*
- **dull** *adj*
- **dumb** *adj*
- **dump** *noun*
- **dump** *verb*
- **duplicate** *noun*
- **duplicate** *verb*
- **duplication** *noun*
- **duration** *noun*
- **dusk** *noun*
- **dust** *noun*
- **dustbin** *noun*
- **duty** *noun*
- **duvet** *noun*
- **dweller** *noun*
- **dwelling** *noun*

- **dwindle** *verb*
- **dye** *noun*
- **dynamic** *adj*
- **dynamite** *noun*
- **dynasty** *noun*
- **dysentery** *noun*
- **eager** *adj*
- **eagle** *noun*
- **ear** *noun*
- **earl** *noun*
- **early** *adj*
- **earn** *verb*
- **earnings** *noun*
- **earphones** *noun*
- **earring** *noun*
- **earth** *noun*
- **earthquake** *noun*
- **ease** *noun*
- **ease** *verb*
- **Easter** *noun*
- **easy** *adj*
- **eat** *verb*
- **eater** *noun*
- **ebb** *noun*
- **ebb** *verb*
- **eccentric** *adj*
- **echo** *noun*
- **echo** *verb*
- **eclipse** *noun*
- **ecology** *noun*
- **economical** *adj*
- **economics** *noun*
- **economist** *noun*
- **economy** *noun*
- **ecstasy** *noun*
- **ecstatic** *adj*
- **edge** *noun*
- **edge** *verb*

- **edition** *noun*
- **editor** *noun*
- **editorial** *noun*
- **educated** *adj*
- **education** *noun*
- **eerie** *adj*
- **effect** *noun*
- **effective** *adj*
- **effectiveness** *noun*
- **efficiency** *noun*
- **efficient** *adj*
- **effort** *noun*
- **effortless** *adj*
- **egg** *noun*
- **ego** *noun*
- **eject** *verb*
- **elaborate** *adj*
- **elaborate** *verb*
- **elastic** *noun*
- **elated** *adj*
- **elation** *noun*
- **elbow** *noun*
- **elect** *verb*
- **election** *noun*
- **elector** *noun*
- **electorate** *noun*
- **electric shock** *noun*
- **electrician** *noun*
- **electricity** *noun*
- **electronics** *noun*
- **elegance** *noun*
- **elegant** *adj*
- **element** *noun*
- **elephant** *noun*
- **eliminate** *verb*
- **elite** *noun*
- **eloquent** *adj*
- **elusive** *adj*

- **emaciated** *adj*
- **email** *noun*
- **embargo** *noun*
- **embark** *verb*
- **embarrassed** *adj*
- **embarrassing** *adj*
- **embarrassment** *noun*
- **embassy** *noun*
- **embedded** *adj*
- **embrace** *noun*
- **embrace** *verb*
- **embroider** *verb*
- **embryo** *noun*
- **emerge** *verb*
- **emergence** *noun*
- **emergency** *noun*
- **emigration** *noun*
- **emission** *noun*
- **emotion** *noun*
- **emotional** *adj*
- **emotive** *adj*
- **empathy** *noun*
- **emperor** *noun*
- **emphasis** *noun*
- **emphasize** *verb*
- **emphatic** *adj*
- **empire** *noun*
- **employ** *verb*
- **employee** *noun*
- **employer** *noun*
- **employment** *noun*
- **empty** *adj*
- **empty** *verb*
- **enclose** *verb*
- **encore** *noun*
- **encounter** *noun*
- **encounter** *verb*
- **encourage** *verb*

- **encouragement** *noun*
- **encouraging** *adj*
- **encyclopedia** *noun*
- **end** *noun*
- **end** *verb*
- **endanger** *verb*
- **endear** *verb*
- **endeavour** *noun*
- **ending** *noun*
- **endless** *adj*
- **endorse** *verb*
- **endorsement** *noun*
- **endurance** *noun*
- **enemy** *noun*
- **energetic** *adj*
- **energy** *noun*
- **enforce** *verb*
- **enforcement** *noun*
- **engage** *verb*
- **engaged** *adj*
- **engagement** *noun*
- **engine** *noun*
- **engineer** *noun*
- **engineer** *verb*
- **engineering** *noun*
- **English** *noun*
- **engrossed** *adj*
- **enhance** *verb*
- **enigmatic** *adj*
- **enjoy** *verb*
- **enjoyable** *adj*
- **enjoyment** *noun*
- **enlarge** *verb*
- **enmity** *noun*
- **enormity** *noun*
- **enquire** *verb*
- **enquiry** *noun*
- **enrolment** *noun*

- **ensure** *verb*
- **entail** *verb*
- **entangled** *adj*
- **enter** *verb*
- **enterprise** *noun*
- **entertain** *verb*
- **entertaining** *adj*
- **entertainment** *noun*
- **enthral** *verb*
- **enthusiasm** *noun*
- **enthusiastic** *adj*
- **entity** *noun*
- **entrance** *noun*
- **entrant** *noun*
- **entrepreneur** *noun*
- **entry** *noun*
- **envelope** *noun*
- **envious** *adj*
- **environment** *noun*
- **envisage** *verb*
- **envoy** *noun*
- **envy** *noun*
- **envy** *verb*
- **epidemic** *noun*
- **episode** *noun*
- **epitaph** *noun*
- **epoch** *noun*
- **equal** *adj*
- **equal** *noun*
- **equality** *noun*
- **equate** *verb*
- **equation** *noun*
- **equator** *noun*
- **equip** *verb*
- **equipment** *noun*
- **equivalent** *adj*
- **equivalent** *noun*
- **era** *noun*

- **eradicate** *verb*
- **erase** *verb*
- **erect** *adj*
- **erect** *verb*
- **erection** *noun*
- **erode** *verb*
- **erosion** *noun*
- **erotic** *adj*
- **errand** *noun*
- **erratic** *adj*
- **error** *noun*
- **erupt** *verb*
- **eruption** *noun*
- **escalate** *verb*
- **escalation** *noun*
- **escalator** *noun*
- **escape** *noun*
- **escape** *verb*
- **escort** *noun*
- **espionage** *noun*
- **essay** *noun*
- **essence** *noun*
- **essential** *adj*
- **essentials** *noun*
- **establish** *verb*
- **establishment** *noun*
- **estate** *noun*
- **esteem** *noun*
- **estimate** *noun*
- **estimate** *verb*
- **estimation** *noun*
- **estranged** *adj*
- **ethics** *noun*
- **etiquette** *noun*
- **euphoria** *noun*
- **euro** *noun*
- **euthanasia** *noun*
- **evacuate** *verb*

- **evacuation** *noun*
- **evade** *verb*
- **evaluate** *verb*
- **evaluation** *noun*
- **eve** *noun*
- **even** *adj*
- **evening** *noun*
- **event** *noun*
- **evict** *verb*
- **eviction** *noun*
- **evidence** *noun*
- **evident** *adj*
- **evil** *adj*
- **evil** *noun*
- **evoke** *verb*
- **evolution** *noun*
- **evolve** *verb*
- **exaggerate** *verb*
- **exam** *noun*
- **examination** *noun*
- **examine** *verb*
- **example** *noun*
- **exasperation** *noun*
- **excavate** *verb*
- **excavation** *noun*
- **exceed** *verb*
- **excellence** *noun*
- **excellent** *adj*
- **exception** *noun*
- **exceptional** *adj*
- **excerpt** *noun*
- **excess** *noun*
- **excessive** *adj*
- **exchange** *noun*
- **excise** *noun*
- **excitable** *adj*
- **excited** *adj*
- **excitement** *noun*

- **exciting** *adj*
- **exclaim** *verb*
- **exclamation** *noun*
- **exclude** *verb*
- **exclusion** *noun*
- **exclusive** *adj*
- **excursion** *noun*
- **excuse** *noun*
- **execute** *verb*
- **execution** *noun*
- **executive** *noun*
- **exemplify** *verb*
- **exempt** *adj*
- **exempt** *verb*
- **exemption** *noun*
- **exercise** *noun*
- **exercise** *verb*
- **exertion** *noun*
- **exhaust** *noun*
- **exhaust** *verb*
- **exhausted** *adj*
- **exhausting** *adj*
- **exhaustion** *noun*
- **exhaustive** *adj*
- **exhibition** *noun*
- **exile** *noun*
- **exile** *verb*
- **exist** *verb*
- **existence** *noun*
- **exit** *noun*
- **exorbitant** *adj*
- **expand** *verb*
- **expanse** *noun*
- **expansion** *noun*
- **expect** *verb*
- **expectation** *noun*
- **expedient** *adj*
- **expedition** *noun*

- **expel** *verb*
- **expenditure** *noun*
- **expense** *noun*
- **expensive** *adj*
- **experience** *noun*
- **experience** *verb*
- **experienced** *adj*
- **experiment** *noun*
- **experiment** *verb*
- **expert** *noun*
- **expertise** *noun*
- **expire** *verb*
- **explain** *verb*
- **explanation** *noun*
- **explicable** *adj*
- **explicit** *adj*
- **explode** *verb*
- **exploit** *noun*
- **exploit** *verb*
- **exploitation** *noun*
- **exploration** *noun*
- **explore** *verb*
- **explorer** *noun*
- **explosion** *noun*
- **explosive** *adj*
- **explosive** *noun*
- **exponent** *noun*
- **export** *noun*
- **export** *verb*
- **exporter** *noun*
- **expose** *verb*
- **exposed** *adj*
- **exposure** *noun*
- **express** *verb*
- **expression** *noun*
- **expressive** *adj*
- **expulsion** *noun*
- **extend** *verb*

- **extension** *noun*
- **extent** *noun*
- **exterior** *noun*
- **extinct** *adj*
- **extinction** *noun*
- **extortion** *noun*
- **extra** *noun*
- **extract** *noun*
- **extradition** *noun*
- **extraordinary** *adj*
- **extravagant** *adj*
- **extreme** *adj*
- **extreme** *noun*
- **extremist** *noun*
- **exuberance** *noun*
- **eye** *noun*
- **eye** *verb*
- **eyebrow** *noun*
- **eyelash** *noun*
- **eyelid** *noun*
- **eyesight** *noun*
- **fabric** *noun*
- **face** *noun*
- **facet** *noun*
- **facilitate** *verb*
- **facility** *noun*
- **fact** *noun*
- **faction** *noun*
- **factor** *noun*
- **factory** *noun*
- **factual** *adj*
- **faculty** *noun*
- **fad** *noun*
- **fade** *verb*
- **faeces** *noun*
- **fail** *verb*
- **failing** *noun*
- **failure** *noun*

- **faint** *adj*
- **faint** *verb*
- **fair** *adj*
- **fair** *noun*
- **fairness** *noun*
- **fairy** *noun*
- **faith** *noun*
- **faithful** *adj*
- **fall** *noun*
- **fall** *verb*
- **false** *adj*
- **falter** *verb*
- **fame** *noun*
- **familiar** *adj*
- **familiarity** *noun*
- **family** *noun*
- **famine** *noun*
- **famous** *adj*
- **fan** *noun*
- **fanatic** *noun*
- **fancy dress** *noun*
- **fanfare** *noun*
- **fang** *noun*
- **fantastic** *adj*
- **fantasy** *noun*
- **farce** *noun*
- **fare** *noun*
- **fare** *verb*
- **farewell** *noun*
- **far-fetched** *adj*
- **farm** *noun*
- **farm** *verb*
- **farmer** *noun*
- **farming** *noun*
- **fascinating** *adj*
- **fascination** *noun*
- **fashion** *noun*
- **fashionable** *adj*

- **fast** *adj*
- **fast** *adv*
- **fast** *noun*
- **fasten** *verb*
- **fat** *adj*
- **fat** *noun*
- **fatal** *adj*
- **fate** *noun*
- **father** *noun*
- **fatigue** *noun*
- **fault** *noun*
- **favour** *noun*
- **favour** *verb*
- **favourable** *adj*
- **favourite** *noun*
- **favouritism** *noun*
- **fax** *noun*
- **fear** *noun*
- **fear** *verb*
- **fearful** *adj*
- **fearless** *adj*
- **feasibility** *noun*
- **feasible** *adj*
- **feast** *noun*
- **feat** *noun*
- **feather** *noun*
- **feature** *noun*
- **feature** *verb*
- **February** *noun*
- **federation** *noun*
- **fee** *noun*
- **feed** *verb*
- **feedback** *noun*
- **feel** *verb*
- **feeling** *noun*
- **fellow** *noun*
- **feminine** *adj*
- **feminism** *noun*

- **feminist** *noun*
- **fence** *noun*
- **fend** *verb*
- **ferment** *noun*
- **ferocity** *noun*
- **ferry** *noun*
- **fertile** *adj*
- **fertilizer** *noun*
- **fervour** *noun*
- **festival** *noun*
- **festivities** *noun*
- **feud** *noun*
- **fever** *noun*
- **fib** *noun*
- **fibre** *noun*
- **fickle** *adj*
- **fiction** *noun*
- **fictional** *adj*
- **fictitious** *adj*
- **fidelity** *noun*
- **fidget** *verb*
- **field** *noun*
- **fieldwork** *noun*
- **fifty-fifty** *adj*
- **fifty-fifty** *adv*
- **fight** *noun*
- **fight** *verb*
- **fighting** *noun*
- **figure** *noun*
- **figure** *verb*
- **file** *verb*
- **fill** *verb*
- **fillet** *noun*
- **filling** *noun*
- **film** *noun*
- **film** *verb*
- **filthy** *adj*
- **final** *noun*

- **finale** *noun*
- **finance** *noun*
- **finance** *verb*
- **find** *noun*
- **finding** *noun*
- **fine** *adj*
- **fine** *noun*
- **fine** *verb*
- **finger** *noun*
- **fingernail** *noun*
- **fingerprint** *noun*
- **finish** *noun*
- **finish** *verb*
- **fire alarm** *noun*
- **fire brigade** *noun*
- **fire** *noun*
- **fire** *verb*
- **firearm** *noun*
- **firefighter** *noun*
- **fireman** *noun*
- **fireplace** *noun*
- **firework** *noun*
- **firing squad** *noun*
- **firm** *adj*
- **firm** *noun*
- **first aid** *noun*
- **first** *noun*
- **fish** *noun*
- **fisherman** *noun*
- **fishing** *noun*
- **fishy** *adj*
- **fist** *noun*
- **fit** *adj*
- **fit** *noun*
- **fit** *verb*
- **fitness** *noun*
- **fitting** *adj*
- **fitting** *noun*

- **fix** *noun*
- **fix** *verb*
- **fixed** *adj*
- **fixture** *noun*
- **flag** *noun*
- **flail** *verb*
- **flair** *noun*
- **flame** *noun*
- **flammable** *adj*
- **flank** *noun*
- **flannel** *noun*
- **flap** *noun*
- **flap** *verb*
- **flare** *noun*
- **flare** *verb*
- **flash** *noun*
- **flash** *verb*
- **flashback** *noun*
- **flask** *noun*
- **flat** *adj*
- **flat** *noun*
- **flattered** *adj*
- **flattering** *adj*
- **flattery** *noun*
- **flaunt** *verb*
- **flavour** *noun*
- **flavoured** *adj*
- **flavouring** *noun*
- **flaw** *noun*
- **flawed** *adj*
- **flea** *noun*
- **flee** *verb*
- **fleet** *noun*
- **flesh** *noun*
- **flex** *noun*
- **flexibility** *noun*
- **flexible** *adj*
- **flick** *noun*

- **flick** *verb*
- **flicker** *noun*
- **flicker** *verb*
- **flight** *noun*
- **flinch** *verb*
- **fling** *noun*
- **float** *verb*
- **flog** *verb*
- **flood** *noun*
- **flood** *verb*
- **floor** *noun*
- **floorboard** *noun*
- **flop** *noun*
- **flour** *noun*
- **flourish** *noun*
- **flout** *verb*
- **flow** *noun*
- **flow** *verb*
- **flower** *noun*
- **flu** *noun*
- **fluctuate** *verb*
- **fluctuation** *noun*
- **fluency** *noun*
- **fluid** *adj*
- **fluid** *noun*
- **flurry** *noun*
- **flush** *noun*
- **flush** *verb*
- **flushed** *adj*
- **flute** *noun*
- **flutter** *noun*
- **fly** *noun*
- **fly** *verb*
- **focal point** *noun*
- **focus** *noun*
- **focus** *verb*
- **foe** *noun*
- **fog** *noun*

- **foil** *noun*
- **fold** *noun*
- **fold** *verb*
- **foliage** *noun*
- **folk** *noun*
- **folklore** *noun*
- **follow** *verb*
- **follower** *noun*
- **following** *noun*
- **follow-up** *noun*
- **folly** *noun*
- **fond** *adj*
- **fondness** *noun*
- **food** *noun*
- **fool** *noun*
- **fool** *verb*
- **foolish** *adj*
- **foolproof** *adj*
- **foot** *noun*
- **football** *noun*
- **footballer** *noun*
- **foothold** *noun*
- **footing** *noun*
- **footpath** *noun*
- **footprint** *noun*
- **footstep** *noun*
- **footwork** *noun*
- **forbid** *verb*
- **force** *noun*
- **foreboding** *noun*
- **forecast** *noun*
- **forecast** *verb*
- **forefront** *noun*
- **foreground** *noun*
- **forehead** *noun*
- **foreign** *adj*
- **forerunner** *noun*
- **foresee** *verb*

- **foresight** *noun*
- **forest** *noun*
- **forestry** *noun*
- **forethought** *noun*
- **forgery** *noun*
- **forget** *verb*
- **forgive** *verb*
- **forgiveness** *noun*
- **forgo** *verb*
- **fork** *noun*
- **forlorn** *adj*
- **form** *noun*
- **form** *verb*
- **formal** *adj*
- **formality** *noun*
- **format** *noun*
- **formation** *noun*
- **formidable** *adj*
- **formula** *noun*
- **formulate** *verb*
- **fort** *noun*
- **forthcoming** *adj*
- **forthright** *adj*
- **fortified** *adj*
- **fortnight** *noun*
- **fortress** *noun*
- **fortunate** *adj*
- **fortune** *noun*
- **forum** *noun*
- **foster** *verb*
- **foul play** *noun*
- **foul** *noun*
- **foundation** *noun*
- **founder** *noun*
- **fountain** *noun*
- **fox** *noun*
- **foyer** *noun*
- **fraction** *noun*

- **fracture** *noun*
- **fragile** *adj*
- **fragrance** *noun*
- **fragrant** *adj*
- **frail** *adj*
- **frailty** *noun*
- **frame** *noun*
- **framework** *noun*
- **franchise** *noun*
- **frank** *adj*
- **frantic** *adj*
- **fraud** *noun*
- **freak** *noun*
- **freckle** *noun*
- **free** *adj*
- **free** *adv*
- **free** *verb*
- **freedom** *noun*
- **freelance** *adv*
- **freeze** *noun*
- **freeze** *verb*
- **freezer** *noun*
- **freezing point** *noun*
- **freezing** *adj*
- **freight** *noun*
- **French** *noun*
- **frenzy** *noun*
- **frequency** *noun*
- **frequent** *adj*
- **fresh** *adj*
- **friction** *noun*
- **Friday** *noun*
- **fridge** *noun*
- **friend** *noun*
- **friendless** *adj*
- **friendly** *adj*
- **friendship** *noun*
- **fright** *noun*

- **frighten** *verb*
- **frightened** *adj*
- **frightening** *adj*
- **fringe** *noun*
- **frog** *noun*
- **front** *noun*
- **frontier** *noun*
- **frost** *noun*
- **frosty** *adj*
- **frown** *noun*
- **frown** *verb*
- **fruit** *noun*
- **fruitful** *adj*
- **fruition** *noun*
- **fruitless** *adj*
- **frustrated** *adj*
- **frustrating** *adj*
- **frustration** *noun*
- **fry** *verb*
- **fuel** *noun*
- **fugitive** *noun*
- **fulfil** *verb*
- **fulfilment** *noun*
- **full** *adj*
- **fume** *verb*
- **fumes** *noun*
- **fun** *noun*
- **function** *noun*
- **function** *verb*
- **fund** *noun*
- **fund** *verb*
- **fundamental** *adj*
- **fundamentals** *noun*
- **funding** *noun*
- **funeral** *noun*
- **funny** *adj*
- **fur** *noun*
- **furious** *adj*

- **furnace** *noun*
- **furnished** *adj*
- **furniture** *noun*
- **furore** *noun*
- **furtive** *adj*
- **fury** *noun*
- **fuse** *noun*
- **fuss** *noun*
- **futile** *adj*
- **futility** *noun*
- **future** *noun*
- **fuzzy** *adj*
- **gadget** *noun*
- **gag** *noun*
- **gag** *verb*
- **gain** *noun*
- **gain** *verb*
- **gait** *noun*
- **gala** *noun*
- **galaxy** *noun*
- **gale** *noun*
- **gallantry** *noun*
- **gallery** *noun*
- **gallon** *noun*
- **gallop** *noun*
- **gamble** *noun*
- **gambler** *noun*
- **gambling** *noun*
- **game** *noun*
- **gamut** *noun*
- **gang** *noun*
- **gangrene** *noun*
- **gaol** *noun*
- **gap** *noun*
- **gape** *verb*
- **garage** *noun*
- **garden** *noun*
- **gardener** *noun*

- **gardening** *noun*
- **garlic** *noun*
- **garment** *noun*
- **gas** *noun*
- **gash** *noun*
- **gasp** *noun*
- **gasp** *verb*
- **gate** *noun*
- **gather** *verb*
- **gathering** *noun*
- **gauge** *noun*
- **gauge** *verb*
- **gay** *adj*
- **gaze** *noun*
- **gaze** *verb*
- **gear** *noun*
- **gear** *verb*
- **gem** *noun*
- **gender** *noun*
- **gene** *noun*
- **general** *noun*
- **generalization** *noun*
- **generalize** *verb*
- **generate** *verb*
- **generation** *noun*
- **generator** *noun*
- **generosity** *noun*
- **generous** *adj*
- **genetics** *noun*
- **genitals** *noun*
- **genius** *noun*
- **genocide** *noun*
- **gentle** *adj*
- **gentleman** *noun*
- **genuine** *adj*
- **geography** *noun*
- **geology** *noun*
- **geometry** *noun*

- **germ** *noun*
- **German measles** *noun*
- **German** *noun*
- **gesticulate** *verb*
- **gesture** *noun*
- **gesture** *verb*
- **ghost** *noun*
- **giant** *noun*
- **giddy** *adj*
- **gift** *noun*
- **gifted** *adj*
- **gig** *noun*
- **giggle** *noun*
- **giggle** *verb*
- **gimmick** *noun*
- **gin** *noun*
- **girl** *noun*
- **girlfriend** *noun*
- **gist** *noun*
- **glad** *adj*
- **glamorous** *adj*
- **glamour** *noun*
- **glance** *noun*
- **glance** *verb*
- **gland** *noun*
- **glandular fever** *noun*
- **glare** *noun*
- **glare** *verb*
- **glass** *noun*
- **glasses** *noun*
- **gleam** *noun*
- **gleam** *verb*
- **glimmer** *noun*
- **glimpse** *noun*
- **glint** *noun*
- **glint** *verb*
- **glitter** *verb*
- **globe** *noun*

- **gloom** *noun*
- **gloomy** *adj*
- **glory** *noun*
- **gloss** *noun*
- **glove** *noun*
- **glow** *noun*
- **glow** *verb*
- **glue** *noun*
- **glue** *verb*
- **go** *verb*
- **goal** *noun*
- **goalkeeper** *noun*
- **goat** *noun*
- **god** *noun*
- **goddess** *noun*
- **goggles** *noun*
- **gold** *noun*
- **golden** *adj*
- **golf** *noun*
- **golfer** *noun*
- **good** *adj*
- **good** *noun*
- **good-looking** *adj*
- **goods** *noun*
- **goodwill** *noun*
- **goose** *noun*
- **gorgeous** *adj*
- **gospel** *noun*
- **gossip** *noun*
- **govern** *verb*
- **government** *noun*
- **governor** *noun*
- **gown** *noun*
- **GP** *noun*
- **grab** *verb*
- **grace** *noun*
- **grade** *noun*
- **grade** *verb*

- **gradient** *noun*
- **graduate** *noun*
- **graduation** *noun*
- **graffiti** *noun*
- **graft** *noun*
- **grain** *noun*
- **gram** *noun*
- **grammar** *noun*
- **grammatical** *adj*
- **grandeur** *noun*
- **grandfather** *noun*
- **grandmother** *noun*
- **grandparent** *noun*
- **grant** *noun*
- **grant** *verb*
- **grape** *noun*
- **graph** *noun*
- **graphics** *noun*
- **grasp** *noun*
- **grasp** *verb*
- **grass** *noun*
- **grate** *verb*
- **grateful** *adj*
- **gratifying** *adj*
- **gratitude** *noun*
- **grave** *noun*
- **gravity** *noun*
- **graze** *noun*
- **graze** *verb*
- **grease** *noun*
- **grease** *verb*
- **great** *adj*
- **greatness** *noun*
- **greed** *noun*
- **Greek** *noun*
- **greet** *verb*
- **greeting** *noun*
- **gregarious** *adj*

- **grenade** *noun*
- **grey** *adj*
- **grid** *noun*
- **grief** *noun*
- **grievance** *noun*
- **grieve** *verb*
- **grill** *noun*
- **grimace** *noun*
- **grimace** *verb*
- **grime** *noun*
- **grin** *noun*
- **grin** *verb*
- **grind** *verb*
- **grip** *noun*
- **grip** *verb*
- **grit** *noun*
- **groan** *noun*
- **groan** *verb*
- **groomed** *adj*
- **groove** *noun*
- **grope** *verb*
- **ground** *noun*
- **ground** *verb*
- **grounding** *noun*
- **groundless** *adj*
- **groundwork** *noun*
- **group** *noun*
- **group** *verb*
- **grow** *verb*
- **growl** *noun*
- **growl** *verb*
- **growth** *noun*
- **grudge** *noun*
- **gruesome** *adj*
- **grunt** *noun*
- **grunt** *verb*
- **guarantee** *noun*
- **guarantee** *verb*

- **guard** *noun*
- **guard** *verb*
- **guardian** *noun*
- **guerrilla** *noun*
- **guess** *noun*
- **guess** *verb*
- **guesswork** *noun*
- **guest** *noun*
- **guidance** *noun*
- **guide** *noun*
- **guide** *verb*
- **guideline** *noun*
- **guilt** *noun*
- **guilty** *adj*
- **guinea pig** *noun*
- **guitar** *noun*
- **Gujarati** *noun*
- **gulf** *noun*
- **gull** *noun*
- **gulp** *noun*
- **gulp** *verb*
- **gum** *noun*
- **gun** *noun*
- **gunfire** *noun*
- **gunshot** *noun*
- **gurgle** *noun*
- **gust** *noun*
- **gut** *noun*
- **gut** *verb*
- **guy** *noun*
- **gym** *noun*
- **gymnast** *noun*
- **gymnastics** *noun*
- **habit** *noun*
- **habitable** *adj*
- **habitat** *noun*
- **hack** *verb*
- **haemorrhage** *noun*

- **hail** *noun*
- **hair** *noun*
- **haircut** *noun*
- **half** *noun*
- **hall** *noun*
- **hallucination** *noun*
- **halt** *noun*
- **halt** *verb*
- **halve** *verb*
- **ham** *noun*
- **hammer** *noun*
- **hammering** *noun*
- **hamper** *verb*
- **hand** *noun*
- **hand** *verb*
- **handbag** *noun*
- **handcuffs** *noun*
- **handful** *noun*
- **handicap** *noun*
- **handicapped** *adj*
- **handkerchief** *noun*
- **handle** *noun*
- **handle** *verb*
- **handling** *noun*
- **handout** *noun*
- **handshake** *noun*
- **handsome** *adj*
- **handwriting** *noun*
- **handy** *adj*
- **hang** *verb*
- **hanker** *verb*
- **haphazard** *adj*
- **happen** *verb*
- **happiness** *noun*
- **happy** *adj*
- **harass** *verb*
- **harassment** *noun*
- **harbour** *noun*

- **hard** *adj*
- **hardback** *noun*
- **hardship** *noun*
- **hardware** *noun*
- **harm** *noun*
- **harm** *verb*
- **harmful** *adj*
- **harmless** *adj*
- **harmony** *noun*
- **harness** *noun*
- **harness** *verb*
- **harp** *noun*
- **harp** *verb*
- **harsh** *adj*
- **harvest** *noun*
- **hassle** *noun*
- **haste** *noun*
- **hat** *noun*
- **hatch** *noun*
- **hate** *noun*
- **hate** *verb*
- **hatred** *noun*
- **haul** *noun*
- **haunt** *noun*
- **haunt** *verb*
- **haven** *noun*
- **havoc** *noun*
- **hawk** *noun*
- **hay** *noun*
- **hazard** *noun*
- **hazardous** *adj*
- **haze** *noun*
- **hazy** *adj*
- **head** *noun*
- **head** *verb*
- **headache** *noun*
- **heading** *noun*
- **headlights** *noun*

- **headline** *noun*
- **headquarters** *noun*
- **heal** *verb*
- **health service** *noun*
- **health** *noun*
- **healthy** *adj*
- **heap** *noun*
- **hear** *verb*
- **hearing** *noun*
- **hearsay** *noun*
- **heart attack** *noun*
- **heart** *noun*
- **heartbeat** *noun*
- **heartland** *noun*
- **heat** *noun*
- **heat** *verb*
- **heated** *adj*
- **heater** *noun*
- **heating** *noun*
- **heave** *noun*
- **heaven** *noun*
- **heavy** *adj*
- **Hebrew** *noun*
- **hedge** *noun*
- **heel** *noun*
- **height** *noun*
- **heighten** *verb*
- **heir** *noun*
- **heirloom** *noun*
- **helicopter** *noun*
- **hell** *noun*
- **helmet** *noun*
- **help** *noun*
- **help** *verb*
- **helper** *noun*
- **helpful** *adj*
- **helping** *noun*
- **helpless** *adj*

- **helplessness** *noun*
- **hen** *noun*
- **hepatitis** *noun*
- **herb** *noun*
- **herd** *noun*
- **heritage** *noun*
- **hernia** *noun*
- **hero** *noun*
- **heroic** *adj*
- **heroin** *noun*
- **heroine** *noun*
- **heroism** *noun*
- **herring** *noun*
- **hesitate** *verb*
- **hesitation** *noun*
- **hibernation** *noun*
- **hiccup** *noun*
- **hide** *noun*
- **hide** *verb*
- **hiding** *noun*
- **hierarchical** *adj*
- **hierarchy** *noun*
- **high** *noun*
- **highlight** *noun*
- **highlight** *verb*
- **highway** *noun*
- **hike** *noun*
- **hill** *noun*
- **hillside** *noun*
- **hinder** *verb*
- **hindrance** *noun*
- **hindsight** *noun*
- **Hinduism** *noun*
- **hint** *noun*
- **hint** *verb*
- **hip** *noun*
- **hire** *noun*
- **hire** *verb*

- **hiss** *noun*
- **hiss** *verb*
- **historian** *noun*
- **history** *noun*
- **hit** *noun*
- **hit** *verb*
- **hitch** *noun*
- **HIV** *noun*
- **hoard** *noun*
- **hoarse** *adj*
- **hoax** *noun*
- **hobby** *noun*
- **hockey** *noun*
- **hold** *noun*
- **holder** *noun*
- **hold-up** *noun*
- **hole** *noun*
- **holiday** *noun*
- **hollow** *noun*
- **home** *noun*
- **homeland** *noun*
- **homeless** *adj*
- **homesick** *adj*
- **homework** *noun*
- **homicide** *noun*
- **homogeneous** *adj*
- **homosexual** *noun*
- **honest** *adj*
- **honesty** *noun*
- **honey** *noun*
- **honeymoon** *noun*
- **honour** *noun*
- **honourable** *adj*
- **honoured** *adj*
- **hood** *noun*
- **hooked** *adj*
- **hope** *noun*
- **hope** *verb*

- **hopeful** *adj*
- **hopeless** *adj*
- **horizon** *noun*
- **hormone** *noun*
- **horn** *noun*
- **horoscope** *noun*
- **horrible** *adj*
- **horrific** *adj*
- **horror** *noun*
- **horse** *noun*
- **hospital** *noun*
- **hospitality** *noun*
- **host** *noun*
- **host** *verb*
- **hostage** *noun*
- **hostel** *noun*
- **hostile** *adj*
- **hostility** *noun*
- **hot** *adj*
- **hotel** *noun*
- **hotline** *noun*
- **hound** *noun*
- **hour** *noun*
- **house** *noun*
- **house** *verb*
- **household** *noun*
- **housekeeping** *noun*
- **housework** *noun*
- **housing** *noun*
- **hover** *verb*
- **howl** *noun*
- **huddle** *noun*
- **huddled** *adj*
- **huff** *noun*
- **hug** *noun*
- **hug** *verb*
- **huge** *adj*
- **hum** *noun*

- **hum** *verb*
- **humanitarian** *adj*
- **humanity** *noun*
- **humidity** *noun*
- **humiliate** *verb*
- **humiliating** *adj*
- **humiliation** *noun*
- **humorous** *adj*
- **humour** *noun*
- **hunch** *noun*
- **hunger** *noun*
- **hungry** *adj*
- **hunt** *noun*
- **hunting** *noun*
- **hurdle** *noun*
- **hurricane** *noun*
- **hurry** *noun*
- **hurt** *adj*
- **hurt** *noun*
- **hurt** *verb*
- **hurtful** *adj*
- **husband** *noun*
- **hush** *noun*
- **hut** *noun*
- **hygiene** *noun*
- **hymn** *noun*
- **hype** *noun*
- **hypnosis** *noun*
- **hypothesis** *noun*
- **hypothetical** *adj*
- **hysteria** *noun*
- **hysterical** *adj*
- **ice cream** *noun*
- **ice** *noun*
- **icing** *noun*
- **icon** *noun*
- **idea** *noun*
- **ideal** *adj*

- **ideal** *noun*
- **identical** *adj*
- **identification** *noun*
- **identify** *verb*
- **identity** *noun*
- **ideology** *noun*
- **idiot** *noun*
- **idle** *adj*
- **idol** *noun*
- **ignite** *verb*
- **ignition** *noun*
- **ignorance** *noun*
- **ignorant** *adj*
- **ignore** *verb*
- **ill** *adj*
- **illegal** *adj*
- **illegitimate** *adj*
- **illiteracy** *noun*
- **illiterate** *adj*
- **illness** *noun*
- **illogical** *adj*
- **ill-treatment** *noun*
- **illuminate** *verb*
- **illuminating** *adj*
- **illumination** *noun*
- **illusion** *noun*
- **illustrate** *verb*
- **illustration** *noun*
- **image** *noun*
- **imagery** *noun*
- **imaginable** *adj*
- **imaginary** *adj*
- **imagination** *noun*
- **imaginative** *adj*
- **imagine** *verb*
- **imbalance** *noun*
- **imitation** *noun*
- **immaculate** *adj*

- **immaterial** *adj*
- **immature** *adj*
- **immediacy** *noun*
- **immediate** *adj*
- **immerse** *verb*
- **immigrant** *noun*
- **immigration** *noun*
- **immobile** *adj*
- **immoral** *adj*
- **immortal** *adj*
- **immortality** *noun*
- **immune** *adj*
- **immunity** *noun*
- **immunize** *verb*
- **impact** *noun*
- **impair** *verb*
- **impartial** *adj*
- **impartiality** *noun*
- **impassable** *adj*
- **impasse** *noun*
- **impassive** *adj*
- **impatience** *noun*
- **impatient** *adj*
- **impede** *verb*
- **impediment** *noun*
- **impenetrable** *adj*
- **imperative** *adj*
- **imperceptible** *adj*
- **imperfect** *adj*
- **imperfection** *noun*
- **imperialism** *noun*
- **impersonal** *adj*
- **impertinence** *noun*
- **impertinent** *adj*
- **impervious** *adj*
- **impetus** *noun*
- **impinge** *verb*
- **implausible** *adj*

- **implement** *noun*
- **implement** *verb*
- **implementation** *noun*
- **implicate** *verb*
- **implication** *noun*
- **imply** *verb*
- **import** *noun*
- **import** *verb*
- **importance** *noun*
- **important** *adj*
- **impose** *verb*
- **imposition** *noun*
- **impossible** *adj*
- **impotence** *noun*
- **impotent** *adj*
- **impracticable** *adj*
- **impractical** *adj*
- **imprecise** *adj*
- **impress** *verb*
- **impressed** *adj*
- **impression** *noun*
- **impressionable** *adj*
- **impressive** *adj*
- **imprint** *noun*
- **imprison** *verb*
- **imprisonment** *noun*
- **improbable** *adj*
- **improper** *adj*
- **impropriety** *noun*
- **improve** *verb*
- **improvement** *noun*
- **improvisation** *noun*
- **improvise** *verb*
- **impulse** *noun*
- **inability** *noun*
- **inaccessible** *adj*
- **inaccuracy** *noun*
- **inaccurate** *adj*

- **inactive** *adj*
- **inactivity** *noun*
- **inadequacy** *noun*
- **inadequate** *adj*
- **inadvisable** *adj*
- **inappropriate** *adj*
- **inattention** *noun*
- **inaudible** *adj*
- **inaugurate** *verb*
- **inauguration** *noun*
- **incapable** *adj*
- **incapacitate** *verb*
- **incarnation** *noun*
- **incense** *noun*
- **incentive** *noun*
- **incest** *noun*
- **inch** *noun*
- **incidence** *noun*
- **incident** *noun*
- **incidental** *adj*
- **incision** *noun*
- **incite** *verb*
- **inclination** *noun*
- **incline** *verb*
- **inclined** *adj*
- **inclusion** *noun*
- **inclusive** *adj*
- **income** *noun*
- **incompatibility** *noun*
- **incompatible** *adj*
- **incompetence** *noun*
- **incompetent** *adj*
- **incomplete** *adj*
- **incomprehensible** *adj*
- **inconceivable** *adj*
- **inconclusive** *adj*
- **incongruous** *adj*
- **inconsistency** *noun*

- **inconsistent** *adj*
- **incontinence** *noun*
- **inconvenience** *noun*
- **inconvenience** *verb*
- **inconvenient** *adj*
- **incorporate** *verb*
- **incorrect** *adj*
- **increase** *noun*
- **increase** *verb*
- **incredible** *adj*
- **indebted** *adj*
- **indecency** *noun*
- **indecent** *adj*
- **indefensible** *adj*
- **independence** *noun*
- **independent** *adj*
- **indestructible** *adj*
- **index** *noun*
- **indicate** *verb*
- **indication** *noun*
- **indicative** *adj*
- **indicator** *noun*
- **indictment** *noun*
- **indifference** *noun*
- **indifferent** *adj*
- **indigenous** *adj*
- **indigestion** *noun*
- **indignant** *adj*
- **indignation** *noun*
- **indiscretion** *noun*
- **indispensable** *adj*
- **individual** *noun*
- **individuality** *noun*
- **inducement** *noun*
- **indulge** *verb*
- **indulgence** *noun*
- **industrial action** *noun*
- **industrialist** *noun*

- **industry** *noun*
- **inedible** *adj*
- **ineffective** *adj*
- **inefficiency** *noun*
- **inefficient** *adj*
- **ineligible** *adj*
- **inept** *adj*
- **inequality** *noun*
- **inert** *adj*
- **inertia** *noun*
- **inevitability** *noun*
- **inevitable** *adj*
- **inexhaustible** *adj*
- **inexpensive** *adj*
- **inexperience** *noun*
- **inexperienced** *adj*
- **inexplicable** *adj*
- **infancy** *noun*
- **infant** *noun*
- **infected** *adj*
- **infection** *noun*
- **infectious** *adj*
- **infer** *verb*
- **inference** *noun*
- **inferior** *adj*
- **inferior** *noun*
- **inferiority** *noun*
- **infertility** *noun*
- **infested** *adj*
- **infiltration** *noun*
- **infinite** *adj*
- **infinitive** *noun*
- **infinity** *noun*
- **infirm** *adj*
- **infirmity** *noun*
- **inflamed** *adj*
- **inflammable** *adj*
- **inflammation** *noun*

- **inflate** *verb*
- **inflated** *adj*
- **inflation** *noun*
- **inflexible** *adj*
- **inflict** *verb*
- **influence** *noun*
- **influence** *verb*
- **influential** *adj*
- **influenza** *noun*
- **influx** *noun*
- **inform** *verb*
- **informal** *adj*
- **information** *noun*
- **informative** *adj*
- **informed** *adj*
- **informer** *noun*
- **infrequent** *adj*
- **infringement** *noun*
- **ingenious** *adj*
- **ingenuity** *noun*
- **ingrained** *adj*
- **ingredient** *noun*
- **inhabitant** *noun*
- **inhale** *verb*
- **inherit** *verb*
- **inheritance** *noun*
- **inhibit** *verb*
- **inhibited** *adj*
- **inhibition** *noun*
- **inhuman** *adj*
- **initial** *noun*
- **initiate** *verb*
- **initiation** *noun*
- **initiative** *noun*
- **injection** *noun*
- **injunction** *noun*
- **injure** *verb*
- **injured** *adj*

- **injury** *noun*
- **injustice** *noun*
- **ink** *noun*
- **inkling** *noun*
- **inmate** *noun*
- **innocence** *noun*
- **innocent** *adj*
- **innocuous** *adj*
- **innovation** *noun*
- **input** *noun*
- **inquest** *noun*
- **inquire** *verb*
- **inquiry** *noun*
- **inquisitive** *adj*
- **insane** *adj*
- **insanity** *noun*
- **inscribe** *verb*
- **inscription** *noun*
- **insect** *noun*
- **insecure** *adj*
- **insecurity** *noun*
- **insensitive** *adj*
- **insensitivity** *noun*
- **inseparable** *adj*
- **insert** *verb*
- **insight** *noun*
- **insignificance** *noun*
- **insignificant** *adj*
- **insinuation** *noun*
- **insist** *verb*
- **insistence** *noun*
- **insistent** *adj*
- **insoluble** *adj*
- **inspect** *verb*
- **inspection** *noun*
- **inspector** *noun*
- **inspiration** *noun*
- **inspired** *adj*

- **inspiring** *adj*
- **instability** *noun*
- **install** *verb*
- **instalment** *noun*
- **instance** *noun*
- **instant** *adj*
- **instant** *noun*
- **instantaneous** *adj*
- **instinct** *noun*
- **instinctive** *adj*
- **institute** *noun*
- **institution** *noun*
- **instruct** *verb*
- **instruction** *noun*
- **instructive** *adj*
- **instructor** *noun*
- **instrument** *noun*
- **instrumental** *adj*
- **insufficient** *adj*
- **insulated** *adj*
- **insult** *noun*
- **insult** *verb*
- **insulting** *adj*
- **insurance** *noun*
- **insured** *adj*
- **insurmountable** *adj*
- **insurrection** *noun*
- **intact** *adj*
- **intake** *noun*
- **integrate** *verb*
- **integration** *noun*
- **integrity** *noun*
- **intellect** *noun*
- **intelligence** *noun*
- **intelligent** *adj*
- **intelligible** *adj*
- **intend** *verb*
- **intensify** *verb*

- **intensity** *noun*
- **intensive** *adj*
- **intent** *adj*
- **intention** *noun*
- **interact** *verb*
- **interaction** *noun*
- **interactive** *adj*
- **interchangeable** *adj*
- **intercom** *noun*
- **intercourse** *noun*
- **interest** *noun*
- **interest** *verb*
- **interested** *adj*
- **interesting** *adj*
- **interfere** *verb*
- **interference** *noun*
- **interim** *noun*
- **interior** *noun*
- **interlude** *noun*
- **intermediary** *noun*
- **interminable** *adj*
- **Internet** *noun*
- **interpret** *verb*
- **interpretation** *noun*
- **interpreter** *noun*
- **interrelated** *adj*
- **interrogation** *noun*
- **interrupt** *verb*
- **interruption** *noun*
- **interval** *noun*
- **intervene** *verb*
- **intervention** *noun*
- **interview** *noun*
- **interviewer** *noun*
- **intestine** *noun*
- **intimacy** *noun*
- **intimidate** *verb*
- **intimidation** *noun*

- **intolerable** *adj*
- **intolerance** *noun*
- **intolerant** *adj*
- **intonation** *noun*
- **intricacy** *noun*
- **intricate** *adj*
- **intrigue** *noun*
- **intriguing** *adj*
- **introduce** *verb*
- **introduction** *noun*
- **intruder** *noun*
- **intrusion** *noun*
- **intrusive** *adj*
- **intuition** *noun*
- **intuitive** *adj*
- **invalid** *adj*
- **invaluable** *adj*
- **invasion** *noun*
- **invent** *verb*
- **invention** *noun*
- **inventive** *adj*
- **inventory** *noun*
- **invest** *verb*
- **investigate** *verb*
- **investigation** *noun*
- **investment** *noun*
- **investor** *noun*
- **invincible** *adj*
- **invisible** *adj*
- **invitation** *noun*
- **invite** *verb*
- **inviting** *adj*
- **invoice** *noun*
- **involve** *verb*
- **involved** *adj*
- **involvement** *noun*
- **iron** *noun*
- **iron** *verb*

- **ironic** *adj*
- **ironing** *noun*
- **irony** *noun*
- **irrational** *adj*
- **irreconcilable** *adj*
- **irregular** *adj*
- **irregularity** *noun*
- **irrelevant** *adj*
- **irresistible** *adj*
- **irresponsible** *adj*
- **irrigation** *noun*
- **irritate** *verb*
- **irritated** *adj*
- **irritation** *noun*
- **Islam** *noun*
- **island** *noun*
- **isolated** *adj*
- **isolation** *noun*
- **issue** *noun*
- **issue** *verb*
- **Italian** *noun*
- **itch** *noun*
- **itch** *verb*
- **item** *noun*
- **itinerary** *noun*
- **ivory** *noun*
- **ivy** *noun*
- **jab** *noun*
- **jack** *noun*
- **jacket** *noun*
- **jackpot** *noun*
- **jail** *noun*
- **jam** *noun*
- **jam** *verb*
- **January** *noun*
- **Japanese** *noun*
- **jar** *noun*
- **jargon** *noun*

- **jaw** *noun*
- **jazz** *noun*
- **jealous** *adj*
- **jealousy** *noun*
- **jeans** *noun*
- **jelly** *noun*
- **jeopardize** *verb*
- **jerk** *noun*
- **jerk** *verb*
- **jersey** *noun*
- **jet** *noun*
- **Jew** *noun*
- **jewel** *noun*
- **jewellery** *noun*
- **jigsaw** *noun*
- **jinx** *noun*
- **job** *noun*
- **jockey** *noun*
- **jog** *noun*
- **jog** *verb*
- **join** *verb*
- **joint** *noun*
- **joke** *noun*
- **joke** *verb*
- **joker** *noun*
- **jolt** *noun*
- **journal** *noun*
- **journalism** *noun*
- **journalist** *noun*
- **journey** *noun*
- **joy** *noun*
- **judge** *noun*
- **judge** *verb*
- **judgement** *noun*
- **judo** *noun*
- **jug** *noun*
- **juice** *noun*
- **July** *noun*

- **jump** *noun*
- **jump** *verb*
- **jumper** *noun*
- **junction** *noun*
- **June** *noun*
- **jungle** *noun*
- **junior** *adj*
- **junk** *noun*
- **junta** *noun*
- **jurisdiction** *noun*
- **juror** *noun*
- **jury** *noun*
- **justice** *noun*
- **justifiable** *adj*
- **justification** *noun*
- **justified** *adj*
- **justify** *verb*
- **karate** *noun*
- **keen** *adj*
- **keep** *noun*
- **keep** *verb*
- **kerb** *noun*
- **kettle** *noun*
- **key** *noun*
- **keyboard** *noun*
- **kick** *noun*
- **kick** *verb*
- **kid** *noun*
- **kill** *noun*
- **kill** *verb*
- **killer** *noun*
- **killing** *noun*
- **kilo** *noun*
- **kilogram** *noun*
- **kilometer** *noun*
- **kin** *noun*
- **kind** *adj*
- **kind** *noun*

- **kindness** *noun*
- **king** *noun*
- **kingdom** *noun*
- **kip** *noun*
- **kiss** *noun*
- **kiss** *verb*
- **kit** *noun*
- **kitchen** *noun*
- **kite** *noun*
- **knack** *noun*
- **knead** *verb*
- **knee** *noun*
- **knickers** *noun*
- **knife** *noun*
- **knight** *noun*
- **knighthood** *noun*
- **knitting** *noun*
- **knob** *noun*
- **knock** *noun*
- **knock** *verb*
- **knot** *noun*
- **knot** *verb*
- **know** *verb*
- **know-how** *noun*
- **knowledge** *noun*
- **knowledgeable** *adj*
- **knuckle** *noun*
- **Korean** *noun*
- **kosher** *adj*
- **kudos** *noun*
- **lab** *noun*
- **label** *noun*
- **label** *verb*
- **laboratory** *noun*
- **labour** *noun*
- **lack** *noun*
- **lack** *verb*
- **lacking** *adj*

- **lacquer** *noun*
- **ladder** *noun*
- **laden** *ajd*
- **lady** *noun*
- **lag** *verb*
- **lake** *noun*
- **lamb** *noun*
- **lame** *adj*
- **lamp** *noun*
- **land** *noun*
- **land** *verb*
- **landing** *noun*
- **landlady** *noun*
- **landlord** *noun*
- **landmark** *noun*
- **landscape** *noun*
- **landslide** *noun*
- **lane** *noun*
- **language** *noun*
- **lantern** *noun*
- **lap** *noun*
- **lap** *verb*
- **lapel** *noun*
- **lapse** *noun*
- **larder** *noun*
- **large** *adj*
- **laser** *noun*
- **lash** *noun*
- **last** *verb*
- **late** *adj*
- **Latin** *noun*
- **latitude** *noun*
- **laugh** *noun*
- **laugh** *verb*
- **laughter** *noun*
- **launch** *noun*
- **laundry** *noun*
- **lavatory** *noun*

- **law** *noun*
- **lawful** *adj*
- **lawn** *noun*
- **lawsuit** *noun*
- **lawyer** *noun*
- **lay** *verb*
- **lay-by** *noun*
- **layer** *noun*
- **layout** *noun*
- **lazy** *adj*
- **lead** *1_noun*
- **lead** *2_verb*
- **lead** *3_noun*
- **leader** *noun*
- **leadership** *noun*
- **leaf** *noun*
- **leaflet** *noun*
- **league** *noun*
- **leak** *noun*
- **leak** *verb*
- **lean** *verb*
- **leap** *noun*
- **leap** *verb*
- **learn** *verb*
- **learner** *noun*
- **learning** *noun*
- **lease** *noun*
- **leather** *noun*
- **leave** *noun*
- **leave** *verb*
- **lecture** *noun*
- **lecturer** *noun*
- **ledge** *noun*
- **left** *noun*
- **leg** *noun*
- **legacy** *noun*
- **legal** *adj*
- **legality** *noun*

- **legend** *noun*
- **legible** *adj*
- **legislation** *noun*
- **legislature** *noun*
- **legitimate** *adj*
- **leisure** *noun*
- **lemon** *noun*
- **lend** *verb*
- **lender** *noun*
- **length** *noun*
- **lengthy** *adj*
- **leniency** *noun*
- **lenient** *adj*
- **lens** *noun*
- **leprosy** *noun*
- **lesbian** *noun*
- **lessen** *verb*
- **lesson** *noun*
- **lethal** *adj*
- **lethargy** *noun*
- **letter** *noun*
- **lettuce** *noun*
- **leukaemia** *noun*
- **level** *adj*
- **level** *noun*
- **lever** *noun*
- **leverage** *noun*
- **liability** *noun*
- **liable** *adj*
- **liaise** *verb*
- **liaison** *noun*
- **liar** *noun*
- **libel** *noun*
- **liberal** *adj*
- **liberal** *noun*
- **liberalism** *noun*
- **liberation** *noun*
- **liberty** *noun*

- **librarian** *noun*
- **library** *noun*
- **licence** *noun*
- **lid** *noun*
- **lie** *noun*
- **lie** *verb*
- **lieutenant** *noun*
- **life** *noun*
- **lifeboat** *noun*
- **lifeless** *adj*
- **lifeline** *noun*
- **lifestyle** *noun*
- **lifetime** *noun*
- **lift** *noun*
- **lift** *verb*
- **ligament** *noun*
- **light bulb** *noun*
- **light** *adj*
- **light** *noun*
- **light** *verb*
- **lighter** *noun*
- **light-headed** *adj*
- **lighting** *noun*
- **lightning** *noun*
- **like** *verb*
- **likeable** *adj*
- **likelihood** *noun*
- **likely** *adj*
- **likeness** *noun*
- **liking** *noun*
- **limb** *noun*
- **lime** *noun*
- **limelight** *noun*
- **limit** *noun*
- **limit** *verb*
- **limitation** *noun*
- **limited** *adj*
- **limousine** *noun*

- **limp** *adj*
- **limp** *noun*
- **limp** *verb*
- **line** *noun*
- **lined** *adj*
- **linen** *noun*
- **liner** *noun*
- **linger** *verb*
- **linguistics** *noun*
- **link** *noun*
- **link** *verb*
- **lion** *noun*
- **lip** *noun*
- **lipstick** *noun*
- **liquid** *noun*
- **liquidation** *noun*
- **liquor** *noun*
- **list** *noun*
- **listen** *verb*
- **listener** *noun*
- **literacy** *noun*
- **literate** *adj*
- **literature** *noun*
- **litigation** *noun*
- **litre** *noun*
- **litter** *noun*
- **live** *adj*
- **live** *adj_adv*
- **live** *adv*
- **live** *verb*
- **livelihood** *noun*
- **liver** *noun*
- **living** *noun*
- **load** *noun*
- **loaded** *adj*
- **loaf** *noun*
- **loan** *noun*
- **loathing** *noun*

- **lobby** *noun*
- **lobby** *verb*
- **locate** *verb*
- **location** *noun*
- **lock** *noun*
- **lock** *verb*
- **locust** *noun*
- **log** *noun*
- **logic** *noun*
- **logical** *adj*
- **logo** *noun*
- **loneliness** *noun*
- **lonely** *adj*
- **long** *adj*
- **long** *verb*
- **longing** *noun*
- **longitude** *noun*
- **long-lived** *adj*
- **loo** *noun*
- **look** *noun*
- **look** *verb*
- **loop** *noun*
- **loophole** *noun*
- **loose** *adj*
- **lord** *noun*
- **lorry** *noun*
- **lose** *verb*
- **loser** *noun*
- **loss** *noun*
- **lost** *adj*
- **lot** *noun*
- **lotion** *noun*
- **lottery** *noun*
- **loud** *adj*
- **loudspeaker** *noun*
- **lounge** *noun*
- **love** *noun*
- **love** *verb*

- **lovely** *adj*
- **lover** *noun*
- **low** *adj*
- **low** *noun*
- **lower** *verb*
- **low-key** *adj*
- **loyal** *adj*
- **loyalty** *noun*
- **luck** *noun*
- **lucky** *adj*
- **lucrative** *adj*
- **ludicrous** *adj*
- **luggage** *noun*
- **lukewarm** *adj*
- **lull** *noun*
- **luminous** *adj*
- **lump** *noun*
- **lunatic** *noun*
- **lunch** *noun*
- **luncheon** *noun*
- **lung** *noun*
- **lunge** *noun*
- **lurch** *noun*
- **lurch** *verb*
- **lure** *noun*
- **lust** *noun*
- **luxurious** *adj*
- **luxury** *noun*
- **lyrical** *adj*
- **lyrics** *noun*
- **machine** *noun*
- **machinery** *noun*
- **mad** *adj*
- **madness** *noun*
- **magazine** *noun*
- **magic** *noun*
- **magical** *adj*
- **magistrate** *noun*

- **magnet** *noun*
- **magnetism** *noun*
- **magnificent** *adj*
- **magnify** *verb*
- **magnitude** *noun*
- **maid** *noun*
- **mail** *noun*
- **mail** *verb*
- **mailing list** *noun*
- **main** *noun*
- **mainstream** *noun*
- **maintain** *verb*
- **maintenance** *noun*
- **major** *noun*
- **majority** *noun*
- **make-up** *noun*
- **malaria** *noun*
- **male** *adj*
- **male** *noun*
- **malice** *noun*
- **malicious** *adj*
- **malnutrition** *noun*
- **mammal** *noun*
- **man** *noun*
- **manage** *verb*
- **manageable** *adj*
- **management** *noun*
- **manager** *noun*
- **mandate** *noun*
- **mane** *noun*
- **manhood** *noun*
- **mania** *noun*
- **maniac** *noun*
- **manifestation** *noun*
- **manifesto** *noun*
- **manipulate** *verb*
- **manipulation** *noun*
- **mankind** *noun*

- **manner** *noun*
- **mannerism** *noun*
- **manoeuvre** *noun*
- **manoeuvre** *verb*
- **manor** *noun*
- **manpower** *noun*
- **mansion** *noun*
- **manslaughter** *noun*
- **manual** *noun*
- **manufacture** *noun*
- **manufacturer** *noun*
- **manufacturing** *noun*
- **manure** *noun*
- **manuscript** *noun*
- **map** *noun*
- **marathon** *noun*
- **marble** *noun*
- **march** *noun*
- **march** *verb*
- **margarine** *noun*
- **margin** *noun*
- **marijuana** *noun*
- **mark** *noun*
- **mark** *verb*
- **marked** *adj*
- **market** *noun*
- **market** *verb*
- **marketable** *adj*
- **marketing** *noun*
- **marketplace** *noun*
- **marquee** *noun*
- **marquess** *noun*
- **marriage** *noun*
- **married** *adj*
- **marry** *verb*
- **marsh** *noun*
- **marshal** *noun*
- **martial law** *noun*

- **martyr** *noun*
- **marvel** *verb*
- **marvellous** *adj*
- **mascara** *noun*
- **masculine** *adj*
- **mask** *noun*
- **mask** *verb*
- **masochism** *noun*
- **mass** *noun*
- **massacre** *noun*
- **massage** *noun*
- **massage** *verb*
- **master** *noun*
- **master** *verb*
- **masterpiece** *noun*
- **mastery** *noun*
- **mat** *noun*
- **match** *noun*
- **match** *verb*
- **mate** *noun*
- **material** *noun*
- **materialize** *verb*
- **mathematician** *noun*
- **mathematics** *noun*
- **maths** *noun*
- **matter** *noun*
- **matter** *verb*
- **mattress** *noun*
- **mature** *adj*
- **mature** *verb*
- **maturity** *noun*
- **maul** *verb*
- **maxim** *noun*
- **maximum** *noun*
- **May** *noun*
- **mayor** *noun*
- **maze** *noun*
- **meal** *noun*

- **mean** *adj*
- **meaning** *noun*
- **meaningless** *adj*
- **means** *noun*
- **measles** *noun*
- **measure** *noun*
- **measure** *verb*
- **measurement** *noun*
- **meat** *noun*
- **mechanic** *noun*
- **mechanics** *noun*
- **mechanism** *noun*
- **medal** *noun*
- **media** *noun*
- **mediation** *noun*
- **medical** *noun*
- **medication** *noun*
- **medicine** *noun*
- **meditation** *noun*
- **medium** *noun*
- **meet** *verb*
- **meeting** *noun*
- **mellow** *adj*
- **melody** *noun*
- **member** *noun*
- **membership** *noun*
- **membrane** *noun*
- **memento** *noun*
- **memo** *noun*
- **memoirs** *noun*
- **memorable** *adj*
- **memorandum** *noun*
- **memorial** *noun*
- **memory** *noun*
- **menace** *noun*
- **menacing** *adj*
- **meningitis** *noun*
- **menopause** *noun*

- **mention** *noun*
- **mention** *verb*
- **menu** *noun*
- **mercenary** *noun*
- **merchandise** *noun*
- **merchant** *noun*
- **mercy** *noun*
- **merger** *noun*
- **merit** *noun*
- **merit** *verb*
- **mess** *noun*
- **message** *noun*
- **metal** *noun*
- **metaphor** *noun*
- **meter** *noun*
- **method** *noun*
- **metre** *noun*
- **microphone** *noun*
- **microscope** *noun*
- **middle age** *noun*
- **middle-aged** *adj*
- **middleman** *noun*
- **midnight** *noun*
- **midwife** *noun*
- **migraine** *noun*
- **migrant** *noun*
- **migrate** *verb*
- **migration** *noun*
- **mild** *adj*
- **mile** *noun*
- **mileage** *noun*
- **milestone** *noun*
- **militant** *adj*
- **military** *noun*
- **militia** *noun*
- **milk** *noun*
- **mill** *noun*
- **mimic** *verb*

- **mind** *noun*
- **mind** *verb*
- **mine** *noun*
- **minefield** *noun*
- **miner** *noun*
- **mineral** *noun*
- **mingle** *verb*
- **minimum** *noun*
- **minister** *noun*
- **ministry** *noun*
- **minor** *adj*
- **minority** *noun*
- **minute** *noun*
- **miracle** *noun*
- **miraculous** *adj*
- **mirage** *noun*
- **mirror** *noun*
- **miscalculate** *verb*
- **miscalculation** *noun*
- **miscarriage** *noun*
- **mischief** *noun*
- **misconception** *noun*
- **misconduct** *noun*
- **miserable** *adj*
- **misery** *noun*
- **misfire** *verb*
- **misfortune** *noun*
- **misgivings** *noun*
- **misguided** *adj*
- **mishap** *noun*
- **misinform** *verb*
- **misinformation** *noun*
- **misinterpret** *verb*
- **misjudge** *verb*
- **mislead** *verb*
- **misleading** *adj*
- **mismanage** *verb*
- **mismanagement** *noun*

- **misplaced** *adj*
- **misread** *verb*
- **misrepresent** *verb*
- **miss** *verb*
- **missile** *noun*
- **missing** *adj*
- **mission** *noun*
- **missionary** *noun*
- **mist** *noun*
- **mistake** *noun*
- **mistake** *verb*
- **mistaken** *adj*
- **mistress** *noun*
- **mistrust** *noun*
- **misunderstand** *verb*
- **misunderstanding** *noun*
- **misuse** *noun*
- **misuse** *verb*
- **mix** *noun*
- **mix** *verb*
- **mixed** *adj*
- **mixture** *noun*
- **moan** *noun*
- **moan** *verb*
- **mob** *noun*
- **mobile** *adj*
- **mobility** *noun*
- **mobilize** *verb*
- **mock** *verb*
- **mode** *noun*
- **model** *noun*
- **model** *verb*
- **modem** *noun*
- **moderate** *adj*
- **moderation** *noun*
- **modest** *adj*
- **modesty** *noun*
- **modification** *noun*

- **modify** *verb*
- **module** *noun*
- **moist** *adj*
- **moisture** *noun*
- **mole** *noun*
- **molecule** *noun*
- **moment** *noun*
- **momentum** *noun*
- **monarch** *noun*
- **monarchy** *noun*
- **monastery** *noun*
- **Monday** *noun*
- **money** *noun*
- **monitor** *noun*
- **monitor** *verb*
- **monitoring** *noun*
- **monk** *noun*
- **monkey** *noun*
- **monologue** *noun*
- **monopoly** *noun*
- **monsoon** *noun*
- **monster** *noun*
- **month** *noun*
- **monument** *noun*
- **mood** *noun*
- **moon** *noun*
- **moonlight** *noun*
- **moor** *noun*
- **mooring** *noun*
- **moral** *noun*
- **morale** *noun*
- **morality** *noun*
- **moratorium** *noun*
- **morning** *noun*
- **morsel** *noun*
- **mortal** *noun*
- **mortality** *noun*
- **mortar** *noun*

- **mortgage** *noun*
- **mosquito** *noun*
- **motel** *noun*
- **mother** *noun*
- **motif** *noun*
- **motion** *noun*
- **motionless** *adj*
- **motivated** *adj*
- **motivation** *noun*
- **motive** *noun*
- **motor** *noun*
- **motorbike** *noun*
- **motorcycle** *noun*
- **motorway** *noun*
- **motto** *noun*
- **mould** *noun*
- **mound** *noun*
- **mount** *verb*
- **mountain** *noun*
- **mourning** *noun*
- **mouse** *noun*
- **moustache** *noun*
- **mouth** *noun*
- **mouthful** *noun*
- **mouthpiece** *noun*
- **move** *noun*
- **movement** *noun*
- **movie** *noun*
- **moving** *adj*
- **mucus** *noun*
- **mud** *noun*
- **muddle** *noun*
- **muddled** *adj*
- **muddy** *adj*
- **mug** *noun*
- **mule** *noun*
- **multinational** *noun*
- **multiply** *verb*

- **mum** *noun*
- **mumble** *verb*
- **mumps** *noun*
- **mundane** *adj*
- **mural** *noun*
- **murder** *noun*
- **murder** *verb*
- **murderer** *noun*
- **murmur** *noun*
- **murmur** *verb*
- **muscle** *noun*
- **museum** *noun*
- **mushroom** *noun*
- **music** *noun*
- **musical** *noun*
- **musician** *noun*
- **Muslim** *noun*
- **mustard** *noun*
- **mutation** *noun*
- **muted** *adj*
- **mutilate** *verb*
- **mutiny** *noun*
- **mutter** *verb*
- **mystery** *noun*
- **mystified** *adj*
- **myth** *noun*
- **mythology** *noun*
- **nail varnish** *noun*
- **nail** *noun*
- **nail** *varnish*
- **naive** *adj*
- **naked** *adj*
- **name** *noun*
- **name** *verb*
- **nanny** *noun*
- **nap** *noun*
- **napkin** *noun*
- **nappy** *noun*

- **narcotic** *noun*
- **narrative** *noun*
- **narrow** *adj*
- **narrow** *verb*
- **nasty** *adj*
- **nation** *noun*
- **nationalism** *noun*
- **nationalist** *noun*
- **nationalistic** *adj*
- **nationality** *noun*
- **natural** *adj*
- **nature** *noun*
- **nausea** *noun*
- **navigate** *verb*
- **navigation** *noun*
- **navy** *noun*
- **neat** *adj*
- **necessary** *adj*
- **necessity** *noun*
- **need** *noun*
- **need** *verb*
- **needle** *noun*
- **needy** *adj*
- **negative** *adj*
- **negative** *noun*
- **neglect** *noun*
- **neglect** *verb*
- **neglected** *adj*
- **negligence** *noun*
- **negligent** *adj*
- **negligible** *adj*
- **negotiate** *verb*
- **negotiation** *noun*
- **negotiator** *noun*
- **neighbour** *noun*
- **neighbourhood** *noun*
- **nerve** *noun*
- **nervous breakdown** *noun*

- **nervous** *adj*
- **nervousness** *noun*
- **nest** *noun*
- **nestle** *verb*
- **net** *noun*
- **nettle** *noun*
- **network** *noun*
- **neurosis** *noun*
- **neutral** *adj*
- **neutrality** *noun*
- **neutralize** *verb*
- **new** *adj*
- **news** *noun*
- **newspaper** *noun*
- **nice** *adj*
- **niche** *noun*
- **nickname** *noun*
- **nicotine** *noun*
- **night** *noun*
- **nightclub** *noun*
- **nightmare** *noun*
- **nipple** *noun*
- **nod** *noun*
- **nod** *verb*
- **noise** *noun*
- **noisy** *adj*
- **nominate** *verb*
- **nomination** *noun*
- **nominee** *noun*
- **nonchalance** *noun*
- **non-existent** *adj*
- **nonsense** *noun*
- **noon** *noun*
- **noose** *noun*
- **norm** *noun*
- **normal** *adj*
- **normal** *noun*
- **normality** *noun*

- **north** *noun*
- **nose** *noun*
- **nostalgia** *noun*
- **nostril** *noun*
- **notable** *adj*
- **note** *noun*
- **note** *verb*
- **notebook** *noun*
- **noted** *adj*
- **noteworthy** *adj*
- **notice** *noun*
- **notice** *verb*
- **noticeable** *adj*
- **notification** *noun*
- **notify** *verb*
- **notion** *noun*
- **notoriety** *noun*
- **noun** *noun*
- **nourish** *verb*
- **nourishment** *noun*
- **novel** *adj*
- **novel** *noun*
- **novelist** *noun*
- **novelty** *noun*
- **November** *noun*
- **novice** *noun*
- **nuance** *noun*
- **nude** *adj*
- **nudge** *noun*
- **nudge** *verb*
- **nuisance** *noun*
- **null** *adj*
- **numb** *adj*
- **number** *noun*
- **number** *verb*
- **numerous** *adj*
- **nurse** *noun*
- **nursery** *noun*

- **nursing** *noun*
- **nut** *noun*
- **nutrition** *noun*
- **nutritious** *adj*
- **oar** *noun*
- **oath** *noun*
- **oats** *noun*
- **obedience** *noun*
- **obey** *verb*
- **obituary** *noun*
- **object** *noun*
- **object** *verb*
- **objection** *noun*
- **objective** *adj*
- **objective** *noun*
- **obligation** *noun*
- **obligatory** *adj*
- **oblige** *verb*
- **obliged** *adj*
- **obliterate** *verb*
- **oblivion** *noun*
- **oblivious** *adj*
- **oboe** *noun*
- **obscene** *adj*
- **obscure** *adj*
- **obscure** *verb*
- **obscurity** *noun*
- **observant** *adj*
- **observation** *noun*
- **observe** *verb*
- **observer** *noun*
- **obsession** *noun*
- **obsolete** *adj*
- **obstacle** *noun*
- **obstruct** *verb*
- **obstruction** *noun*
- **obstructive** *adj*
- **obtain** *verb*

- **obtainable** *adj*
- **obvious** *adj*
- **occasion** *noun*
- **occupant** *noun*
- **occupation** *noun*
- **occupied** *adj*
- **occur** *verb*
- **occurrence** *noun*
- **ocean** *noun*
- **October** *noun*
- **odd** *adj*
- **odds** *noun*
- **odour** *noun*
- **offence** *noun*
- **offend** *verb*
- **offender** *noun*
- **offensive** *adj*
- **offensive** *noun*
- **offer** *noun*
- **offer** *verb*
- **offering** *noun*
- **office** *noun*
- **officer** *noun*
- **official** *noun*
- **off-putting** *adj*
- **offset** *verb*
- **offside** *adj*
- **oil** *noun*
- **oily** *adj*
- **ointment** *noun*
- **OK** *adj*
- **OK** *adj_adv*
- **OK** *adv*
- **old age** *noun*
- **old** *adj*
- **old-fashioned** *adj*
- **ombudsman** *noun*
- **omen** *noun*

- **omission** *noun*
- **omit** *verb*
- **one-sided** *adj*
- **onion** *noun*
- **onset** *noun*
- **onslaught** *noun*
- **ooze** *verb*
- **opaque** *adj*
- **open** *adj*
- **open** *verb*
- **opening** *noun*
- **openness** *noun*
- **opera** *noun*
- **operate** *verb*
- **operation** *noun*
- **operational** *adj*
- **operative** *adj*
- **operator** *noun*
- **opinion** *noun*
- **opium** *noun*
- **opponent** *noun*
- **opportunity** *noun*
- **oppose** *verb*
- **opposed** *adj*
- **opposite** *noun*
- **opposition** *noun*
- **oppression** *noun*
- **optician** *noun*
- **optimist** *noun*
- **optimistic** *adj*
- **option** *noun*
- **optional** *adj*
- **orange** *adj*
- **orange** *noun*
- **orbit** *noun*
- **orchestra** *noun*
- **ordeal** *noun*
- **order** *noun*

- **order** *verb*
- **orderly** *adj*
- **ordinary** *adj*
- **ore** *noun*
- **organ** *noun*
- **organic** *adj*
- **organization** *noun*
- **organize** *verb*
- **organized** *adj*
- **orgasm** *noun*
- **orgy** *noun*
- **orientated** *adj*
- **origin** *noun*
- **original** *adj*
- **original** *noun*
- **originality** *noun*
- **ornamental** *adj*
- **ornate** *adj*
- **orphan** *noun*
- **orthodox** *adj*
- **orthodoxy** *noun*
- **ounce** *noun*
- **outbreak** *noun*
- **outburst** *noun*
- **outcast** *noun*
- **outcome** *noun*
- **outcry** *noun*
- **outfit** *noun*
- **outing** *noun*
- **outlay** *noun*
- **outlet** *noun*
- **outline** *noun*
- **outline** *verb*
- **outlook** *noun*
- **outnumber** *verb*
- **output** *noun*
- **outrage** *noun*
- **outrageous** *adj*

- **outsider** *noun*
- **outskirts** *noun*
- **outstanding** *adj*
- **outweigh** *verb*
- **oval** *adj*
- **ovation** *noun*
- **oven** *noun*
- **overcast** *adj*
- **overcoat** *noun*
- **overcome** *verb*
- **overcrowded** *adj*
- **overdose** *noun*
- **overdraft** *noun*
- **overdrawn** *adj*
- **overdue** *adj*
- **overestimate** *verb*
- **overgrown** *adj*
- **overhaul** *noun*
- **overhaul** *verb*
- **overhead** *adj*
- **overhead** *adv*
- **overhear** *verb*
- **overjoyed** *adj*
- **overlap** *verb*
- **overload** *verb*
- **overlook** *verb*
- **oversee** *verb*
- **oversight** *noun*
- **overthrow** *noun*
- **overtime** *noun*
- **overtone** *noun*
- **overture** *noun*
- **overturn** *verb*
- **overview** *noun*
- **overweight** *adj*
- **overwhelm** *verb*
- **overwhelming** *adj*
- **owl** *noun*

- **own** *verb*
- **owner** *noun*
- **ownership** *noun*
- **oxygen** *noun*
- **ozone layer** *noun*
- **ozone** *noun*
- **pace** *noun*
- **pace** *verb*
- **pack** *noun*
- **pack** *verb*
- **package** *noun*
- **packaging** *noun*
- **packet** *noun*
- **packing** *noun*
- **pact** *noun*
- **pad** *noun*
- **pad** *verb*
- **paddle** *verb*
- **page** *noun*
- **paid** *adj*
- **pain** *noun*
- **pained** *adj*
- **painful** *adj*
- **painless** *adj*
- **paint** *noun*
- **paint** *verb*
- **painter** *noun*
- **painting** *noun*
- **pair** *noun*
- **palace** *noun*
- **palate** *noun*
- **pale** *adj*
- **pallor** *noun*
- **palm** *noun*
- **pamphlet** *noun*
- **pan** *noun*
- **pancake** *noun*
- **pane** *noun*

- **panel** *noun*
- **pang** *noun*
- **panic** *noun*
- **pant** *verb*
- **pantomime** *noun*
- **pants** *noun*
- **paper** *noun*
- **paperback** *noun*
- **paperwork** *noun*
- **parachute** *noun*
- **parade** *noun*
- **paradise** *noun*
- **paradox** *noun*
- **paradoxical** *adj*
- **paragraph** *noun*
- **parallel** *adj*
- **parallel** *noun*
- **paralyse** *verb*
- **paralysis** *noun*
- **paranoia** *noun*
- **parasite** *noun*
- **parcel** *noun*
- **pardon** *noun*
- **parent** *noun*
- **parenthood** *noun*
- **park** *noun*
- **park** *verb*
- **parking** *noun*
- **parody** *noun*
- **parole** *noun*
- **parsley** *noun*
- **part** *noun*
- **partial** *adj*
- **participant** *noun*
- **participate** *verb*
- **participation** *noun*
- **parting** *noun*
- **partition** *noun*

- **partner** *noun*
- **partnership** *noun*
- **party** *noun*
- **pass** *noun*
- **pass** *verb*
- **passage** *noun*
- **passenger** *noun*
- **passing** *noun*
- **passion** *noun*
- **passive** *adj*
- **passport** *noun*
- **password** *noun*
- **past** *noun*
- **pasta** *noun*
- **paste** *noun*
- **pastime** *noun*
- **pastry** *noun*
- **pat** *noun*
- **pat** *verb*
- **patch** *noun*
- **patchy** *adj*
- **patent** *noun*
- **path** *noun*
- **pathologist** *noun*
- **patience** *noun*
- **patient** *adj*
- **patient** *noun*
- **patriotic** *adj*
- **patrol** *noun*
- **patron** *noun*
- **patronizing** *adj*
- **patter** *verb*
- **pattern** *noun*
- **patterned** *adj*
- **pause** *noun*
- **pause** *verb*
- **pavement** *noun*
- **pay** *noun*

- **pay** *verb*
- **payable** *adj*
- **payment** *noun*
- **pea** *noun*
- **peace** *noun*
- **peaceful** *adj*
- **peak** *noun*
- **peal** *noun*
- **peculiar** *adj*
- **peculiarity** *noun*
- **pedal** *noun*
- **pedal** *verb*
- **pedigree** *noun*
- **pee** *noun*
- **peep** *noun*
- **peep** *verb*
- **peer** *noun*
- **peer** *verb*
- **peg** *noun*
- **pelvis** *noun*
- **pen** *noun*
- **penalize** *verb*
- **penalty** *noun*
- **penance** *noun*
- **pencil** *noun*
- **penetrate** *verb*
- **penetration** *noun*
- **penis** *noun*
- **penniless** *adj*
- **pension** *noun*
- **people** *noun*
- **pepper** *noun*
- **perceive** *verb*
- **percent** *noun*
- **percentage** *noun*
- **perceptible** *adj*
- **perception** *noun*
- **perceptive** *adj*

- **perch** *verb*
- **percussion** *noun*
- **perfect** *adj*
- **perfection** *noun*
- **perform** *verb*
- **performance** *noun*
- **performer** *noun*
- **perfume** *noun*
- **peril** *noun*
- **perimeter** *noun*
- **period** *noun*
- **perishable** *adj*
- **perjury** *noun*
- **permanent** *adj*
- **permissible** *adj*
- **permission** *noun*
- **permissive** *adj*
- **permit** *noun*
- **permit** *verb*
- **perpendicular** *adj*
- **perpetuate** *verb*
- **perplexed** *adj*
- **persecution** *noun*
- **perseverance** *noun*
- **persist** *verb*
- **persistence** *noun*
- **persistent** *adj*
- **person** *noun*
- **personal** *adj*
- **personality** *noun*
- **personnel** *noun*
- **perspective** *noun*
- **perspiration** *noun*
- **perspire** *verb*
- **persuade** *verb*
- **persuasion** *noun*
- **persuasive** *adj*
- **pertinent** *adj*

- **pervasive** *adj*
- **perverse** *adj*
- **perversity** *noun*
- **pessimism** *noun*
- **pessimistic** *adj*
- **pest** *noun*
- **pesticide** *noun*
- **pet** *noun*
- **petition** *noun*
- **petrol** *noun*
- **pharmacy** *noun*
- **phase** *noun*
- **phenomenal** *adj*
- **phenomenon** *noun*
- **philosopher** *noun*
- **philosophical** *adj*
- **philosophy** *noun*
- **phobia** *noun*
- **phone** *noun*
- **photo** *noun*
- **photocopy** *noun*
- **photograph** *noun*
- **photographer** *noun*
- **photography** *noun*
- **phrase** *noun*
- **phrase** *verb*
- **physical** *adj*
- **physician** *noun*
- **physicist** *noun*
- **physics** *noun*
- **physiotherapist** *noun*
- **physiotherapy** *noun*
- **physique** *noun*
- **piano** *noun*
- **pick** *noun*
- **pick** *verb*
- **picket** *noun*
- **pickle** *noun*

- **picnic** *noun*
- **picture** *noun*
- **pie** *noun*
- **piece** *noun*
- **pig** *noun*
- **pigeon** *noun*
- **pile** *noun*
- **pile** *verb*
- **pile-up** *noun*
- **pilgrimage** *noun*
- **pill** *noun*
- **pillar** *noun*
- **pillion** *noun*
- **pillow** *noun*
- **pilot** *noun*
- **pin** *noun*
- **pin** *verb*
- **pinch** *verb*
- **pineapple** *noun*
- **pink** *adj*
- **pinnacle** *noun*
- **pinpoint** *verb*
- **pint** *noun*
- **pioneer** *noun*
- **pipe** *noun*
- **pipeline** *noun*
- **pistol** *noun*
- **pit** *noun*
- **pitch** *noun*
- **pitch** *verb*
- **pitfall** *noun*
- **pity** *noun*
- **pizza** *noun*
- **place** *noun*
- **place** *verb*
- **plague** *noun*
- **plain** *adj*
- **plain** *noun*

- **plaintiff** *noun*
- **plan** *noun*
- **plan** *verb*
- **plane** *noun*
- **planet** *noun*
- **plank** *noun*
- **planning** *noun*
- **plant** *noun*
- **plant** *verb*
- **plantation** *noun*
- **plaque** *noun*
- **plaster** *noun*
- **plastic** *noun*
- **plate** *noun*
- **plateau** *noun*
- **platform** *noun*
- **platonic** *adj*
- **plausible** *adj*
- **play** *noun*
- **play** *verb*
- **player** *noun*
- **playground** *noun*
- **playgroup** *noun*
- **plea** *noun*
- **plead** *verb*
- **pleasant** *adj*
- **please** *verb*
- **pleased** *adj*
- **pleasing** *adj*
- **pleasurable** *adj*
- **pleasure** *noun*
- **pledge** *noun*
- **plight** *noun*
- **plot** *noun*
- **plot** *verb*
- **plough** *noun*
- **ploy** *noun*
- **plug** *noun*

- **plumbing** *noun*
- **plunge** *noun*
- **plunge** *verb*
- **plutonium** *noun*
- **pneumonia** *noun*
- **pocket** *noun*
- **poem** *noun*
- **poet** *noun*
- **poetic** *adj*
- **poetry** *noun*
- **poignant** *adj*
- **point of view** *noun*
- **point** *noun*
- **point** *verb*
- **pointer** *noun*
- **pointless** *adj*
- **poise** *noun*
- **poised** *adj*
- **poison** *noun*
- **poisoning** *noun*
- **poisonous** *adj*
- **polarized** *adj*
- **pole** *noun*
- **police** *noun*
- **policeman** *noun*
- **policy** *noun*
- **polio** *noun*
- **polish** *noun*
- **polished** *adj*
- **polite** *adj*
- **politeness** *noun*
- **political asylum** *noun*
- **political** *adj*
- **politician** *noun*
- **politics** *noun*
- **poll** *noun*
- **pollen** *noun*
- **pollutant** *noun*

- **polluted** *adj*
- **pollution** *noun*
- **polythene** *noun*
- **pond** *noun*
- **ponder** *verb*
- **pony** *noun*
- **pool** *noun*
- **pop** *noun*
- **pope** *noun*
- **popular** *adj*
- **popularity** *noun*
- **populated** *adj*
- **population** *noun*
- **porcelain** *noun*
- **porch** *noun*
- **pore** *noun*
- **pork** *noun*
- **pornography** *noun*
- **port** *noun*
- **portable** *adj*
- **porter** *noun*
- **portion** *noun*
- **portrait** *noun*
- **portray** *verb*
- **portrayal** *noun*
- **Portuguese** *noun*
- **position** *noun*
- **position** *verb*
- **positive** *adj*
- **possession** *noun*
- **possessive** *adj*
- **possibility** *noun*
- **possible** *adj*
- **post office** *noun*
- **post** *noun*
- **postage** *noun*
- **postcard** *noun*
- **poster** *noun*

- **posting** *noun*
- **postman** *noun*
- **post-mortem** *noun*
- **postpone** *verb*
- **postponement** *noun*
- **posture** *noun*
- **pot** *noun*
- **potato** *noun*
- **potency** *noun*
- **potent** *adj*
- **potential** *noun*
- **pottery** *noun*
- **potty** *noun*
- **poultry** *noun*
- **pound** *noun*
- **pour** *verb*
- **pout** *verb*
- **poverty** *noun*
- **powder** *noun*
- **power** *noun*
- **powerful** *adj*
- **powerless** *adj*
- **practicable** *adj*
- **practical** *adj*
- **practical** *noun*
- **practice** *noun*
- **practise** *verb*
- **pragmatic** *adj*
- **prairie** *noun*
- **pram** *noun*
- **pray** *verb*
- **prayer** *noun*
- **preacher** *noun*
- **precaution** *noun*
- **precede** *verb*
- **precedence** *noun*
- **precedent** *noun*
- **precious** *adj*

- **precise** *adj*
- **precision** *noun*
- **preconception** *noun*
- **predicament** *noun*
- **predict** *verb*
- **predictable** *adj*
- **prediction** *noun*
- **prefer** *verb*
- **preferable** *adj*
- **preference** *noun*
- **pregnancy** *noun*
- **pregnant** *adj*
- **prejudice** *noun*
- **prejudice** *verb*
- **prejudiced** *adj*
- **preliminary** *noun*
- **prelude** *noun*
- **premier** *noun*
- **premises** *noun*
- **premium** *noun*
- **premonition** *noun*
- **preoccupation** *noun*
- **preoccupied** *adj*
- **preparation** *noun*
- **prepare** *verb*
- **prerequisite** *noun*
- **prerogative** *noun*
- **prescribe** *verb*
- **prescription** *noun*
- **presence** *noun*
- **present** *adj*
- **present** *noun*
- **present** *verb*
- **presentable** *adj*
- **presentation** *noun*
- **presenter** *noun*
- **preservation** *noun*
- **preservative** *noun*

- **preserve** *verb*
- **presidency** *noun*
- **president** *noun*
- **press conference** *noun*
- **press** *noun*
- **press** *verb*
- **pressure** *noun*
- **prestige** *noun*
- **prestigious** *adj*
- **presume** *verb*
- **presumption** *noun*
- **pretence** *noun*
- **pretend** *verb*
- **pretext** *noun*
- **pretty** *adj*
- **prevail** *verb*
- **prevent** *verb*
- **preventable** *adj*
- **prevention** *noun*
- **preview** *noun*
- **prey** *noun*
- **price** *noun*
- **price** *verb*
- **pride** *noun*
- **priest** *noun*
- **prime minister** *noun*
- **principal** *noun*
- **principle** *noun*
- **print** *noun*
- **print** *verb*
- **printer** *noun*
- **priority** *noun*
- **prison** *noun*
- **prisoner** *noun*
- **privacy** *noun*
- **privatization** *noun*
- **privilege** *noun*
- **privileged** *adj*

- **prize** *noun*
- **prize** *verb*
- **probability** *noun*
- **probable** *adj*
- **probation** *noun*
- **probe** *verb*
- **problem** *noun*
- **procedure** *noun*
- **proceed** *verb*
- **proceedings** *noun*
- **proceeds** *noun*
- **process** *noun*
- **process** *verb*
- **procession** *noun*
- **proclaim** *verb*
- **proclamation** *noun*
- **produce** *noun*
- **produce** *verb*
- **producer** *noun*
- **product** *noun*
- **production** *noun*
- **productive** *adj*
- **productivity** *noun*
- **profession** *noun*
- **professional** *adj*
- **professional** *noun*
- **professor** *noun*
- **proficiency** *noun*
- **proficient** *adj*
- **profile** *noun*
- **profit** *noun*
- **profitability** *noun*
- **profitable** *adj*
- **program** *noun*
- **programme** *noun*
- **programmer** *noun*
- **progress** *noun*
- **progress** *verb*

- **progression** *noun*
- **progressive** *adj*
- **prohibit** *verb*
- **prohibition** *noun*
- **project** *noun*
- **projection** *noun*
- **projector** *noun*
- **prolific** *adj*
- **prolong** *verb*
- **prolonged** *adj*
- **prominence** *noun*
- **prominent** *adj*
- **promise** *noun*
- **promise** *verb*
- **promising** *adj*
- **promote** *verb*
- **promotion** *noun*
- **prone** *adj*
- **pronoun** *noun*
- **pronounce** *verb*
- **pronounced** *adj*
- **pronunciation** *noun*
- **proof** *noun*
- **propaganda** *noun*
- **proper** *adj*
- **property** *noun*
- **prophecy** *noun*
- **prophet** *noun*
- **prophetic** *adj*
- **proportion** *noun*
- **proportional** *adj*
- **proposal** *noun*
- **propose** *verb*
- **proposition** *noun*
- **proprietor** *noun*
- **prose** *noun*
- **prosecution** *noun*
- **prospect** *noun*

- **prospectus** *noun*
- **prosperity** *noun*
- **prosperous** *adj*
- **prostitute** *noun*
- **prostitution** *noun*
- **prostrate** *adj*
- **protect** *verb*
- **protection** *noun*
- **protective** *adj*
- **protein** *noun*
- **protest** *noun*
- **protest** *verb*
- **protester** *noun*
- **prototype** *noun*
- **proud** *adj*
- **prove** *verb*
- **proven** *adj*
- **provide** *verb*
- **province** *noun*
- **provision** *noun*
- **provocation** *noun*
- **provocative** *adj*
- **provoke** *verb*
- **prowess** *noun*
- **proximity** *noun*
- **proxy** *noun*
- **prudent** *adj*
- **prune** *verb*
- **pseudonym** *noun*
- **psychiatrist** *noun*
- **psychiatry** *noun*
- **psychological** *adj*
- **psychologist** *noun*
- **psychology** *noun*
- **pub** *noun*
- **puberty** *noun*
- **public** *noun*
- **publication** *noun*

- **publicity** *noun*
- **publicize** *verb*
- **publish** *verb*
- **publisher** *noun*
- **publishing** *noun*
- **puff** *noun*
- **puff** *verb*
- **pull** *noun*
- **pull** *verb*
- **pullover** *noun*
- **pulse** *noun*
- **punch** *noun*
- **punch** *verb*
- **puncture** *noun*
- **punish** *verb*
- **punishment** *noun*
- **pupil** *noun*
- **puppet** *noun*
- **purchase** *noun*
- **purchase** *verb*
- **purity** *noun*
- **purple** *adj*
- **purpose** *noun*
- **pursue** *verb*
- **pursuit** *noun*
- **pus** *noun*
- **push** *noun*
- **push** *verb*
- **pushchair** *noun*
- **put** *verb*
- **puzzle** *noun*
- **puzzled** *adj*
- **pyjamas** *noun*
- **qualification** *noun*
- **qualified** *adj*
- **qualify** *verb*
- **quality** *noun*
- **quantity** *noun*

- **quarantine** *noun*
- **quarrel** *noun*
- **quarrel** *verb*
- **quarter** *noun*
- **queen** *noun*
- **query** *noun*
- **quest** *noun*
- **question mark** *noun*
- **question** *noun*
- **question** *verb*
- **questionable** *adj*
- **questionnaire** *noun*
- **queue** *noun*
- **queue** *verb*
- **quick** *adj*
- **quiet** *adj*
- **quiet** *noun*
- **quirk** *noun*
- **quit** *verb*
- **quiz** *noun*
- **quota** *noun*
- **quotation** *noun*
- **quote** *noun*
- **quote** *verb*
- **rabbit** *noun*
- **race** *noun*
- **race** *verb*
- **racing** *noun*
- **racism** *noun*
- **rack** *noun*
- **racket** *noun*
- **radar** *noun*
- **radiation** *noun*
- **radiator** *noun*
- **radical** *adj*
- **radio** *noun*
- **radioactive** *adj*
- **radioactivity** *noun*

- **raffle** *noun*
- **raft** *noun*
- **rag** *noun*
- **rage** *noun*
- **rage** *verb*
- **raid** *noun*
- **rail** *noun*
- **railway** *noun*
- **rain** *noun*
- **rain** *verb*
- **rainfall** *noun*
- **rally** *noun*
- **rally** *verb*
- **ram** *verb*
- **ramble** *noun*
- **random** *adj*
- **range** *noun*
- **range** *verb*
- **rank** *noun*
- **rank** *verb*
- **ransom** *noun*
- **rap** *verb*
- **rape** *noun*
- **rape** *verb*
- **rapid** *adj*
- **rapidity** *noun*
- **rapist** *noun*
- **rapport** *noun*
- **rare** *adj*
- **rash** *noun*
- **raspberry** *noun*
- **rat** *noun*
- **rate** *noun*
- **rate** *verb*
- **rating** *noun*
- **ratio** *noun*
- **ration** *noun*
- **ration** *verb*

- **rational** *adj*
- **rationing** *noun*
- **ray** *noun*
- **razor** *noun*
- **reach** *noun*
- **reach** *verb*
- **react** *verb*
- **reaction** *noun*
- **reactionary** *adj*
- **reactor** *noun*
- **read** *noun*
- **read** *verb*
- **readable** *adj*
- **reader** *noun*
- **readiness** *noun*
- **reading** *noun*
- **ready** *adj*
- **real** *adj*
- **realism** *noun*
- **realistic** *adj*
- **reality** *noun*
- **realization** *noun*
- **realize** *verb*
- **realm** *noun*
- **reappraisal** *noun*
- **rear** *noun*
- **rear** *verb*
- **reason** *noun*
- **reasonable** *adj*
- **reasoning** *noun*
- **reassurance** *noun*
- **reassure** *verb*
- **reassuring** *adj*
- **rebate** *noun*
- **rebel** *noun*
- **rebellion** *noun*
- **rebuff** *noun*
- **rebuild** *verb*

- **rebuke** *noun*
- **rebuke** *verb*
- **recall** *verb*
- **recede** *verb*
- **receipt** *noun*
- **receive** *verb*
- **receiver** *noun*
- **recent** *adj*
- **reception** *noun*
- **recess** *noun*
- **recession** *noun*
- **recipe** *noun*
- **recipient** *noun*
- **recital** *noun*
- **recognition** *noun*
- **recognizable** *adj*
- **recognize** *verb*
- **recoil** *verb*
- **recollection** *noun*
- **recommend** *verb*
- **recommendation** *noun*
- **recompense** *noun*
- **reconciliation** *noun*
- **reconnaissance** *noun*
- **reconstruct** *verb*
- **reconstruction** *noun*
- **record** *noun*
- **record** *verb*
- **recorder** *noun*
- **recording** *noun*
- **recount** *verb*
- **recourse** *noun*
- **recover** *verb*
- **recovery** *noun*
- **recreation** *noun*
- **recruit** *noun*
- **recruit** *verb*
- **recruitment** *noun*

- **recur** *verb*
- **recurrence** *noun*
- **recyclable** *adj*
- **recycle** *verb*
- **red tape** *noun*
- **red** *adj*
- **redemption** *noun*
- **redistribution** *noun*
- **reduce** *verb*
- **reduction** *noun*
- **redundancy** *noun*
- **redundant** *adj*
- **refer** *verb*
- **referee** *noun*
- **reference** *noun*
- **referendum** *noun*
- **refine** *verb*
- **refinement** *noun*
- **reflect** *verb*
- **reflection** *noun*
- **reflective** *adj*
- **reflex** *noun*
- **reform** *noun*
- **reform** *verb*
- **refrain** *noun*
- **refrain** *verb*
- **refreshing** *adj*
- **refreshment** *noun*
- **refuge** *noun*
- **refugee** *noun*
- **refund** *verb*
- **refusal** *noun*
- **refuse** *noun*
- **refuse** *verb*
- **regain** *verb*
- **regard** *noun*
- **regard** *verb*
- **regime** *noun*

- **regimen** *noun*
- **region** *noun*
- **register** *noun*
- **register** *verb*
- **registration** *noun*
- **registry** *noun*
- **regret** *noun*
- **regret** *verb*
- **regrettable** *adj*
- **regular** *adj*
- **regularity** *noun*
- **regulate** *verb*
- **regulation** *noun*
- **rehabilitation** *noun*
- **rehearsal** *noun*
- **rehearse** *verb*
- **rein** *noun*
- **reinforce** *verb*
- **reinforcement** *noun*
- **reject** *verb*
- **rejection** *noun*
- **rejoicing** *noun*
- **relapse** *noun*
- **relate** *verb*
- **related** *adj*
- **relation** *noun*
- **relationship** *noun*
- **relative** *noun*
- **relax** *verb*
- **relaxation** *noun*
- **relaxed** *adj*
- **relay** *noun*
- **release** *noun*
- **release** *verb*
- **relevance** *noun*
- **relevant** *adj*
- **reliability** *noun*
- **reliable** *adj*

- **reliance** *noun*
- **reliant** *adj*
- **relic** *noun*
- **relief** *noun*
- **relieve** *verb*
- **relieved** *adj*
- **religion** *noun*
- **religious** *adj*
- **relinquish** *verb*
- **relish** *verb*
- **reluctance** *noun*
- **reluctant** *adj*
- **rely** *verb*
- **remains** *noun*
- **remand** *noun*
- **remark** *noun*
- **remark** *verb*
- **remarkable** *adj*
- **remedy** *noun*
- **remedy** *verb*
- **remember** *verb*
- **remind** *verb*
- **reminder** *noun*
- **reminiscent** *adj*
- **remnant** *noun*
- **remorse** *noun*
- **remote** *adj*
- **removal** *noun*
- **remove** *verb*
- **rendezvous** *noun*
- **renew** *verb*
- **renewal** *noun*
- **renovate** *verb*
- **renovation** *noun*
- **rent** *noun*
- **rental** *noun*
- **reorganization** *noun*
- **reorganize** *verb*

- **repair** *noun*
- **repair** *verb*
- **repatriate** *verb*
- **repatriation** *noun*
- **repay** *verb*
- **repayment** *noun*
- **repeat** *verb*
- **repellent** *adj*
- **repent** *verb*
- **repentance** *noun*
- **repercussion** *noun*
- **repertoire** *noun*
- **repetition** *noun*
- **repetitive** *adj*
- **replace** *verb*
- **replacement** *noun*
- **replay** *noun*
- **replica** *noun*
- **reply** *noun*
- **reply** *verb*
- **report** *noun*
- **report** *verb*
- **reporter** *noun*
- **represent** *verb*
- **representation** *noun*
- **representative** *adj*
- **representative** *noun*
- **repress** *verb*
- **repressed** *adj*
- **repression** *noun*
- **reprieve** *noun*
- **reprimand** *noun*
- **reprimand** *verb*
- **reprisal** *noun*
- **reproach** *noun*
- **reproduce** *verb*
- **reproduction** *noun*
- **republic** *noun*

- **repulsive** *adj*
- **reputable** *adj*
- **reputation** *noun*
- **request** *noun*
- **request** *verb*
- **require** *verb*
- **requirement** *noun*
- **rescue** *noun*
- **research** *noun*
- **research** *verb*
- **researcher** *noun*
- **resemblance** *noun*
- **resemble** *verb*
- **resent** *verb*
- **resentful** *adj*
- **resentment** *noun*
- **reservation** *noun*
- **reserve** *noun*
- **reserve** *verb*
- **reserved** *adj*
- **reservoir** *noun*
- **residence** *noun*
- **resign** *verb*
- **resignation** *noun*
- **resilience** *noun*
- **resilient** *adj*
- **resist** *verb*
- **resistance** *noun*
- **resistant** *adj*
- **resolution** *noun*
- **resolve** *verb*
- **resort** *noun*
- **resource** *noun*
- **resourceful** *adj*
- **respect** *noun*
- **respect** *verb*
- **respectability** *noun*
- **respectable** *adj*

- **respite** *noun*
- **respond** *verb*
- **response** *noun*
- **responsibility** *noun*
- **responsible** *adj*
- **responsive** *adj*
- **rest** *noun*
- **rest** *verb*
- **restaurant** *noun*
- **restoration** *noun*
- **restore** *verb*
- **restrain** *verb*
- **restrained** *adj*
- **restraint** *noun*
- **restrict** *verb*
- **restricted** *adj*
- **restriction** *noun*
- **restrictive** *adj*
- **result** *noun*
- **result** *verb*
- **resuscitation** *noun*
- **retailer** *noun*
- **retain** *verb*
- **retaliation** *noun*
- **retarded** *adj*
- **rethink** *noun*
- **rethink** *verb*
- **retire** *verb*
- **retirement** *noun*
- **retort** *noun*
- **retort** *verb*
- **retreat** *noun*
- **retreat** *verb*
- **retribution** *noun*
- **return** *noun*
- **return** *verb*
- **reunion** *noun*
- **rev** *noun*

- **revealing** *adj*
- **revelation** *noun*
- **revenge** *noun*
- **revenue** *noun*
- **reverence** *noun*
- **reversal** *noun*
- **reverse** *noun*
- **reverse** *verb*
- **reversible** *adj*
- **review** *noun*
- **review** *verb*
- **revise** *verb*
- **revision** *noun*
- **revival** *noun*
- **revive** *verb*
- **revolt** *noun*
- **revolution** *noun*
- **revolver** *noun*
- **revulsion** *noun*
- **reward** *noun*
- **reward** *verb*
- **rewarding** *adj*
- **rewrite** *verb*
- **rhetoric** *noun*
- **rheumatism** *noun*
- **rhyme** *noun*
- **rhythm** *noun*
- **rib** *noun*
- **ribbon** *noun*
- **rice** *noun*
- **rich** *adj*
- **ride** *noun*
- **ride** *verb*
- **ridicule** *noun*
- **ridiculous** *adj*
- **riding** *noun*
- **rifle** *noun*
- **rift** *noun*

- **right** *adj*
- **right** *noun*
- **rigid** *adj*
- **rigour** *noun*
- **ring** *noun*
- **rinse** *noun*
- **rinse** *verb*
- **riot** *noun*
- **ripe** *adj*
- **ripple** *noun*
- **ripple** *verb*
- **rise** *noun*
- **rise** *verb*
- **rising** *noun*
- **risk** *noun*
- **risk** *verb*
- **risky** *adj*
- **ritual** *noun*
- **rival** *noun*
- **rivalry** *noun*
- **river** *noun*
- **road** *noun*
- **roadblock** *noun*
- **roam** *verb*
- **roar** *noun*
- **robber** *noun*
- **robbery** *noun*
- **robe** *noun*
- **rock** *noun*
- **rock** *verb*
- **rocket** *noun*
- **role** *noun*
- **roll** *noun*
- **roll** *verb*
- **romance** *noun*
- **romantic** *adj*
- **romantic** *noun*
- **roof** *noun*

- **room** *noun*
- **root** *noun*
- **rooted** *adj*
- **rope** *noun*
- **rose** *noun*
- **rota** *noun*
- **rotate** *verb*
- **round** *noun*
- **round** *verb*
- **roundabout** *noun*
- **rounded** *adj*
- **rout** *noun*
- **route** *noun*
- **routine** *noun*
- **row** *1_noun*
- **row** *2_noun*
- **row** *noun*
- **royalty** *noun*
- **rub** *verb*
- **rubbish** *noun*
- **rubble** *noun*
- **rucksack** *noun*
- **rude** *adj*
- **rug** *noun*
- **rugby** *noun*
- **ruin** *noun*
- **ruin** *verb*
- **rule** *noun*
- **rule** *verb*
- **ruler** *noun*
- **ruling** *noun*
- **rumble** *noun*
- **rumour** *noun*
- **run** *noun*
- **run** *verb*
- **runner** *noun*
- **running** *noun*
- **rural** *adj*

- **ruse** *noun*
- **rush** *noun*
- **rush** *verb*
- **Russian** *noun*
- **rust** *noun*
- **rust** *verb*
- **rustle** *verb*
- **rut** *noun*
- **sabbath** *noun*
- **sabotage** *noun*
- **sabotage** *verb*
- **sack** *noun*
- **sacred** *adj*
- **sacrifice** *noun*
- **sacrifice** *verb*
- **sad** *adj*
- **sadden** *verb*
- **sadness** *noun*
- **safe** *adj*
- **safe** *noun*
- **safeguard** *noun*
- **safeguard** *verb*
- **safety** *noun*
- **sag** *verb*
- **saga** *noun*
- **sail** *noun*
- **sail** *verb*
- **sailing** *noun*
- **sailor** *noun*
- **saint** *noun*
- **salad** *noun*
- **salary** *noun*
- **sale** *noun*
- **salesman** *noun*
- **saleswoman** *noun*
- **saliva** *noun*
- **salmon** *noun*
- **salon** *noun*

- **salt** *noun*
- **salute** *noun*
- **salute** *verb*
- **salvation** *noun*
- **same** *adj*
- **same** *pron*
- **sample** *noun*
- **sample** *verb*
- **sanction** *noun*
- **sanction** *verb*
- **sanctuary** *noun*
- **sand** *noun*
- **sandal** *noun*
- **sandwich** *noun*
- **sane** *adj*
- **sanitation** *noun*
- **sanity** *noun*
- **sap** *noun*
- **sarcasm** *noun*
- **sarcastic** *adj*
- **satellite** *noun*
- **satire** *noun*
- **satisfaction** *noun*
- **satisfactory** *adj*
- **satisfied** *adj*
- **satisfy** *verb*
- **satisfying** *adj*
- **saturation** *noun*
- **Saturday** *noun*
- **sauce** *noun*
- **saucepan** *noun*
- **saunter** *verb*
- **sausage** *noun*
- **savage** *adj*
- **save** *noun*
- **save** *verb*
- **saver** *noun*
- **saving** *noun*

- **saviour** *noun*
- **say** *verb*
- **saying** *noun*
- **scaffolding** *noun*
- **scale** *noun*
- **scales** *noun*
- **scalp** *noun*
- **scan** *noun*
- **scan** *verb*
- **scandal** *noun*
- **scapegoat** *noun*
- **scar** *noun*
- **scar** *verb*
- **scarce** *adj*
- **scarcity** *noun*
- **scare** *noun*
- **scare** *verb*
- **scared** *adj*
- **scarf** *noun*
- **scarlet** *adj*
- **scattered** *adj*
- **scenario** *noun*
- **scene** *noun*
- **scenery** *noun*
- **scent** *noun*
- **scented** *adj*
- **sceptic** *noun*
- **sceptical** *adj*
- **scepticism** *noun*
- **schedule** *noun*
- **schedule** *verb*
- **scheme** *noun*
- **schizophrenia** *noun*
- **scholar** *noun*
- **scholarship** *noun*
- **school** *noun*
- **schooling** *noun*
- **science** *noun*

- **scientific** *adj*
- **scientist** *noun*
- **scissors** *noun*
- **scold** *verb*
- **scope** *noun*
- **score** *noun*
- **score** *verb*
- **scorn** *noun*
- **scowl** *noun*
- **scowl** *verb*
- **scramble** *noun*
- **scramble** *verb*
- **scrap** *noun*
- **scrape** *verb*
- **scratch** *noun*
- **scratch** *verb*
- **scream** *noun*
- **scream** *verb*
- **screen** *noun*
- **screen** *verb*
- **screw** *noun*
- **screw** *verb*
- **scribble** *verb*
- **script** *noun*
- **scripture** *noun*
- **scrub** *noun*
- **scrub** *verb*
- **scruples** *noun*
- **scrutinize** *verb*
- **scrutiny** *noun*
- **scuffle** *noun*
- **sculptor** *noun*
- **sculpture** *noun*
- **sea** *noun*
- **seafood** *noun*
- **seagull** *noun*
- **seal** *noun*
- **seal** *verb*

- **seam** *noun*
- **search** *noun*
- **search** *verb*
- **seaside** *noun*
- **season** *noun*
- **season** *verb*
- **seat belt** *noun*
- **seat** *noun*
- **seat** *verb*
- **seating** *noun*
- **secluded** *adj*
- **seclusion** *noun*
- **second thought** *noun*
- **second** *noun*
- **secrecy** *noun*
- **secret** *adj*
- **secret** *noun*
- **secretary** *noun*
- **secretive** *adj*
- **sect** *noun*
- **section** *noun*
- **sector** *noun*
- **secular** *adj*
- **secure** *adj*
- **secure** *verb*
- **security** *noun*
- **sedation** *noun*
- **sedative** *noun*
- **seductive** *adj*
- **see** *verb*
- **seed** *noun*
- **seek** *verb*
- **seep** *verb*
- **seethe** *verb*
- **segregate** *verb*
- **segregation** *noun*
- **seize** *verb*
- **seizure** *noun*

- **select** *verb*
- **selection** *noun*
- **selective** *adj*
- **self** *noun*
- **self-assurance** *noun*
- **self-confidence** *noun*
- **self-conscious** *adj*
- **self-contained** *adj*
- **self-control** *noun*
- **self-defence** *noun*
- **self-evident** *adj*
- **self-interest** *noun*
- **selfish** *adj*
- **selfishness** *noun*
- **self-pity** *noun*
- **self-respect** *noun*
- **self-sufficient** *adj*
- **sell** *verb*
- **semblance** *noun*
- **seminar** *noun*
- **senator** *noun*
- **senior** *adj*
- **seniority** *noun*
- **sensation** *noun*
- **sense** *noun*
- **sense** *verb*
- **senseless** *adj*
- **sensible** *adj*
- **sensitive** *adj*
- **sensitivity** *noun*
- **sentence** *noun*
- **sentence** *verb*
- **sentiment** *noun*
- **separable** *adj*
- **separate** *adj*
- **separate** *verb*
- **separation** *noun*
- **September** *noun*

- **sequel** *noun*
- **sequence** *noun*
- **serene** *adj*
- **serenity** *noun*
- **sergeant** *noun*
- **series** *noun*
- **serious** *adj*
- **seriousness** *noun*
- **sermon** *noun*
- **servant** *noun*
- **serve** *verb*
- **service** *noun*
- **service** *verb*
- **session** *noun*
- **set** *adj*
- **set** *noun*
- **setback** *noun*
- **settee** *noun*
- **setting** *noun*
- **settle** *verb*
- **settled** *adj*
- **settlement** *noun*
- **settler** *noun*
- **severe** *adj*
- **severity** *noun*
- **sew** *verb*
- **sewage** *noun*
- **sewing** *noun*
- **sex** *noun*
- **sexism** *noun*
- **sexual intercourse** *noun*
- **sexuality** *noun*
- **sexy** *adj*
- **shack** *noun*
- **shade** *noun*
- **shade** *verb*
- **shading** *noun*
- **shadow** *noun*

- **shaft** *noun*
- **shake** *noun*
- **shake** *verb*
- **shaken** *adj*
- **shake-up** *noun*
- **shaky** *adj*
- **shallow** *adj*
- **shame** *noun*
- **shame** *verb*
- **shampoo** *noun*
- **shape** *noun*
- **shape** *verb*
- **shaped** *adj*
- **share** *noun*
- **share** *verb*
- **shareholder** *noun*
- **shark** *noun*
- **sharp** *adj*
- **shatter** *verb*
- **shattered** *adj*
- **shave** *noun*
- **shawl** *noun*
- **shed** *noun*
- **sheep** *noun*
- **sheet** *noun*
- **shelf** *noun*
- **shell** *noun*
- **shelter** *noun*
- **sheltered** *adj*
- **shelve** *verb*
- **sherry** *noun*
- **shield** *noun*
- **shield** *verb*
- **shift** *noun*
- **shift** *verb*
- **shin** *noun*
- **shine** *verb*
- **ship** *noun*

- **shipment** *noun*
- **shirt** *noun*
- **shiver** *noun*
- **shiver** *verb*
- **shock** *noun*
- **shock** *verb*
- **shocked** *adj*
- **shocking** *adj*
- **shoe** *noun*
- **shoelace** *noun*
- **shoot** *noun*
- **shoot** *verb*
- **shop** *noun*
- **shopkeeper** *noun*
- **shoplifting** *noun*
- **shopper** *noun*
- **shopping** *noun*
- **shore** *noun*
- **short cut** *noun*
- **short** *adj*
- **shortage** *noun*
- **shortcoming** *noun*
- **shorten** *verb*
- **shorthand** *noun*
- **shortlist** *noun*
- **shorts** *noun*
- **shot** *noun*
- **shotgun** *noun*
- **shoulder** *noun*
- **shoulder** *verb*
- **shout** *noun*
- **shout** *verb*
- **shove** *noun*
- **shove** *verb*
- **show** *noun*
- **show** *verb*
- **showdown** *noun*
- **shower** *noun*

- **showing** *noun*
- **showroom** *noun*
- **shrapnel** *noun*
- **shred** *noun*
- **shred** *verb*
- **shriek** *noun*
- **shriek** *verb*
- **shrine** *noun*
- **shrink** *verb*
- **shroud** *noun*
- **shrub** *noun*
- **shrug** *noun*
- **shrug** *verb*
- **shudder** *noun*
- **shudder** *verb*
- **shuffle** *verb*
- **shut** *adj*
- **shutter** *noun*
- **shuttle** *noun*
- **shy** *adj*
- **shy** *verb*
- **shyness** *noun*
- **sibling** *noun*
- **sick** *adj*
- **sick** *noun*
- **sickness** *noun*
- **side effect** *noun*
- **side** *noun*
- **sideline** *noun*
- **siege** *noun*
- **siesta** *noun*
- **sieve** *noun*
- **sift** *verb*
- **sigh** *noun*
- **sigh** *verb*
- **sight** *noun*
- **sighting** *noun*
- **sightseeing** *noun*

- **sign** *noun*
- **sign** *verb*
- **signal** *noun*
- **signal** *verb*
- **signatory** *noun*
- **signature** *noun*
- **significance** *noun*
- **significant** *adj*
- **Sikhism** *noun*
- **silence** *noun*
- **silence** *verb*
- **silent** *adj*
- **silhouette** *noun*
- **silhouetted** *adj*
- **silk** *noun*
- **silly** *adj*
- **silt** *noun*
- **silver** *noun*
- **similar** *adj*
- **similarity** *noun*
- **simmer** *verb*
- **simple** *adj*
- **simplicity** *noun*
- **simplification** *noun*
- **simplify** *verb*
- **simplistic** *adj*
- **simulate** *verb*
- **simulation** *noun*
- **sin** *noun*
- **sincere** *adj*
- **sincerity** *noun*
- **sing** *verb*
- **singer** *noun*
- **singing** *noun*
- **single** *noun*
- **sinister** *adj*
- **sink** *noun*
- **sink** *verb*

- **sip** *noun*
- **sip** *verb*
- **siren** *noun*
- **sister** *noun*
- **sit** *verb*
- **site** *noun*
- **site** *verb*
- **situated** *adj*
- **situation** *noun*
- **size** *noun*
- **skating** *noun*
- **skeleton** *noun*
- **sketch** *noun*
- **ski** *noun*
- **skid** *noun*
- **skiing** *noun*
- **skilful** *adj*
- **skill** *noun*
- **skilled** *adj*
- **skim** *verb*
- **skin** *noun*
- **skinny** *adj*
- **skip** *verb*
- **skirmish** *noun*
- **skirt** *noun*
- **skull** *noun*
- **sky** *noun*
- **skyline** *noun*
- **skyscraper** *noun*
- **slab** *noun*
- **slack** *adj*
- **slacken** *verb*
- **slam** *verb*
- **slander** *noun*
- **slang** *noun*
- **slant** *noun*
- **slap** *noun*
- **slap** *verb*

- **slash** *verb*
- **slaughter** *noun*
- **slaughter** *verb*
- **slave** *noun*
- **slavery** *noun*
- **sledge** *noun*
- **sleep** *noun*
- **sleep** *verb*
- **sleepy** *adj*
- **sleeve** *noun*
- **slender** *adj*
- **slice** *noun*
- **slice** *verb*
- **slide** *noun*
- **slide** *verb*
- **slight** *adj*
- **slim** *adj*
- **slime** *noun*
- **slimy** *adj*
- **sling** *verb*
- **slip** *noun*
- **slipper** *noun*
- **slippery** *adj*
- **slither** *verb*
- **slogan** *noun*
- **slope** *noun*
- **slope** *verb*
- **slot** *verb*
- **slow** *adj*
- **slow** *verb*
- **slum** *noun*
- **slumber** *verb*
- **slump** *noun*
- **slump** *verb*
- **slur** *noun*
- **slush** *noun*
- **smack** *noun*
- **smack** *verb*

- **small** *adj*
- **smallpox** *noun*
- **smash** *noun*
- **smear** *noun*
- **smear** *verb*
- **smell** *noun*
- **smell** *verb*
- **smile** *noun*
- **smile** *verb*
- **smirk** *noun*
- **smog** *noun*
- **smoke** *noun*
- **smoke** *verb*
- **smoker** *noun*
- **smoking** *noun*
- **smooth** *adj*
- **smooth** *verb*
- **smug** *adj*
- **smuggle** *verb*
- **smuggling** *noun*
- **snack** *noun*
- **snag** *noun*
- **snail** *noun*
- **snake** *noun*
- **snap** *verb*
- **snarl** *verb*
- **snatch** *noun*
- **snatch** *verb*
- **sneer** *noun*
- **sneeze** *verb*
- **sniff** *noun*
- **sniff** *verb*
- **snippet** *noun*
- **snobbery** *noun*
- **snooker** *noun*
- **snore** *verb*
- **snort** *noun*
- **snort** *verb*

- **snow** *noun*
- **snow** *verb*
- **snowfall** *noun*
- **snowflake** *noun*
- **snub** *noun*
- **snub** *verb*
- **snuff** *noun*
- **snuggle** *verb*
- **soak** *verb*
- **soaked** *adj*
- **soap** *noun*
- **soar** *verb*
- **sob** *noun*
- **sob** *verb*
- **sober** *adj*
- **soccer** *noun*
- **social security** *noun*
- **social worker** *noun*
- **socialism** *noun*
- **socialist** *noun*
- **society** *noun*
- **sociology** *noun*
- **sock** *noun*
- **socket** *noun*
- **sofa** *noun*
- **soft** *adj*
- **soften** *verb*
- **software** *noun*
- **soil** *noun*
- **solace** *noun*
- **soldier** *noun*
- **sole** *noun*
- **solemn** *adj*
- **solemnity** *noun*
- **solicit** *verb*
- **solicitor** *noun*
- **solid** *adj*
- **solidarity** *noun*

- **solitude** *noun*
- **solo** *noun*
- **soluble** *adj*
- **solution** *noun*
- **solve** *verb*
- **solvent** *noun*
- **sombre** *adj*
- **son** *noun*
- **song** *noun*
- **soothing** *adj*
- **sophisticated** *adj*
- **sophistication** *noun*
- **soprano** *noun*
- **sore** *noun*
- **sorrow** *noun*
- **sorry** *adj*
- **sort** *noun*
- **sort** *verb*
- **soul** *noun*
- **sound** *adj*
- **sound** *noun*
- **soundtrack** *noun*
- **soup** *noun*
- **sour** *adj*
- **source** *noun*
- **sovereignty** *noun*
- **sow** *verb*
- **space** *noun*
- **space** *verb*
- **spacecraft** *noun*
- **spacious** *adj*
- **spade** *noun*
- **spaghetti** *noun*
- **span** *noun*
- **Spanish** *noun*
- **spare** *verb*
- **spark** *noun*
- **sparkle** *noun*

- **spasm** *noun*
- **spatter** *verb*
- **speak** *verb*
- **speaker** *noun*
- **spear** *noun*
- **special** *noun*
- **specialist** *noun*
- **speciality** *noun*
- **specialization** *noun*
- **specialized** *adj*
- **species** *noun*
- **specific** *adj*
- **specification** *noun*
- **specify** *verb*
- **specimen** *noun*
- **spectacle** *noun*
- **spectacles** *noun*
- **spectacular** *adj*
- **spectator** *noun*
- **spectre** *noun*
- **spectrum** *noun*
- **speculate** *verb*
- **speculation** *noun*
- **speech** *noun*
- **speechless** *adj*
- **speed limit** *noun*
- **speed** *noun*
- **speeding** *noun*
- **spell** *noun*
- **spell** *verb*
- **spelling** *noun*
- **spend** *verb*
- **spending** *noun*
- **sperm** *noun*
- **sphere** *noun*
- **spice** *noun*
- **spice** *verb*
- **spicy** *adj*

- **spider** *noun*
- **spill** *verb*
- **spin** *noun*
- **spin** *verb*
- **spine** *noun*
- **spin-off** *noun*
- **spiral** *noun*
- **spirit** *noun*
- **spiritual** *adj*
- **spite** *noun*
- **splash** *noun*
- **splash** *verb*
- **splendid** *adj*
- **splendour** *noun*
- **splinter** *noun*
- **split** *noun*
- **split** *verb*
- **spoil** *verb*
- **spoils** *noun*
- **sponge** *noun*
- **sponsor** *noun*
- **sponsorship** *noun*
- **spontaneous** *adj*
- **spooky** *adj*
- **spoon** *noun*
- **sport** *noun*
- **sportsman** *noun*
- **sportswoman** *noun*
- **spot** *noun*
- **spot** *verb*
- **spotlight** *noun*
- **sprawl** *verb*
- **spray** *noun*
- **spread** *noun*
- **spread** *verb*
- **spree** *noun*
- **spring** *noun*
- **spring** *verb*

- **sprinkle** *verb*
- **sprint** *noun*
- **spur** *noun*
- **spurt** *noun*
- **spy** *noun*
- **squabble** *noun*
- **squad** *noun*
- **squalor** *noun*
- **square** *adj*
- **square** *noun*
- **squeak** *noun*
- **squeal** *noun*
- **squeeze** *noun*
- **squeeze** *verb*
- **squint** *noun*
- **squirm** *verb*
- **squirrel** *noun*
- **stab** *noun*
- **stab** *verb*
- **stability** *noun*
- **stable** *adj*
- **stack** *verb*
- **stadium** *noun*
- **staff** *noun*
- **staff** *verb*
- **stage** *noun*
- **stage** *verb*
- **stagger** *verb*
- **staggered** *adj*
- **staggering** *adj*
- **stagnation** *noun*
- **staid** *adj*
- **stain** *noun*
- **stain** *verb*
- **stair** *noun*
- **staircase** *noun*
- **stake** *noun*
- **stale** *adj*

- **stalemate** *noun*
- **stall** *noun*
- **stall** *verb*
- **stamina** *noun*
- **stammer** *noun*
- **stamp** *noun*
- **stamp** *verb*
- **stance** *noun*
- **stand** *noun*
- **stand** *verb*
- **standard** *adj*
- **standard** *noun*
- **standing** *noun*
- **standpoint** *noun*
- **standstill** *noun*
- **star** *noun*
- **stardom** *noun*
- **stare** *verb*
- **start** *noun*
- **start** *verb*
- **starter** *noun*
- **starting point** *noun*
- **startled** *adj*
- **starvation** *noun*
- **starve** *verb*
- **state** *noun*
- **state** *verb*
- **statement** *noun*
- **statesman** *noun*
- **static** *adj*
- **station** *noun*
- **stationery** *noun*
- **statistics** *noun*
- **statue** *noun*
- **stature** *noun*
- **status quo** *noun*
- **status** *noun*
- **statute** *noun*

- **stay** *noun*
- **stay** *verb*
- **steady** *adj*
- **steak** *noun*
- **steam** *noun*
- **steamer** *noun*
- **steel** *noun*
- **steep** *adj*
- **steering wheel** *noun*
- **steering** *noun*
- **stem** *noun*
- **stench** *noun*
- **step** *noun*
- **step** *verb*
- **stereotype** *noun*
- **sterile** *adj*
- **sterling** *noun*
- **steward** *noun*
- **stewardess** *noun*
- **stick** *noun*
- **stick** *verb*
- **sticky** *adj*
- **stiff** *adj*
- **stigma** *noun*
- **still** *adj*
- **stillness** *noun*
- **stimulate** *verb*
- **stimulating** *adj*
- **stimulation** *noun*
- **stimulus** *noun*
- **sting** *noun*
- **stink** *noun*
- **stint** *noun*
- **stipulation** *noun*
- **stir** *noun*
- **stir** *verb*
- **stirrup** *noun*
- **stitch** *noun*

- **stock exchange** *noun*
- **stock** *noun*
- **stock** *verb*
- **stockbroker** *noun*
- **stocking** *noun*
- **stomach** *noun*
- **stone** *noun*
- **stool** *noun*
- **stop** *noun*
- **stop** *verb*
- **stopover** *noun*
- **stoppage** *noun*
- **storage** *noun*
- **store** *noun*
- **store** *verb*
- **storey** *noun*
- **storm** *noun*
- **story** *noun*
- **stow** *verb*
- **straight** *adj*
- **straightforward** *adj*
- **strain** *noun*
- **strain** *verb*
- **strained** *adj*
- **strait** *noun*
- **strand** *noun*
- **stranded** *adj*
- **strange** *adj*
- **stranger** *noun*
- **strangle** *verb*
- **strap** *noun*
- **strap** *verb*
- **strategy** *noun*
- **straw** *noun*
- **strawberry** *noun*
- **stray** *verb*
- **streak** *noun*
- **stream** *noun*

- **streamline** *verb*
- **street** *noun*
- **strength** *noun*
- **strengthen** *verb*
- **stress** *noun*
- **stress** *verb*
- **stressful** *adj*
- **stretch** *noun*
- **stretch** *verb*
- **stride** *noun*
- **stride** *verb*
- **strife** *noun*
- **strike** *noun*
- **strike** *verb*
- **striking** *adj*
- **string** *noun*
- **strip** *noun*
- **strip** *verb*
- **stripe** *noun*
- **strive** *verb*
- **stroke** *noun*
- **stroke** *verb*
- **stroll** *noun*
- **stroll** *verb*
- **strong** *adj*
- **structure** *noun*
- **structure** *verb*
- **struggle** *noun*
- **struggle** *verb*
- **stuck** *adj*
- **student** *noun*
- **studio** *noun*
- **study** *noun*
- **study** *verb*
- **stuff** *verb*
- **stumble** *verb*
- **stumbling block** *noun*
- **stun** *verb*

- **stunned** *adj*
- **stunning** *adj*
- **stunt** *noun*
- **stupid** *adj*
- **stupidity** *noun*
- **stupor** *noun*
- **stutter** *noun*
- **style** *noun*
- **subdued** *adj*
- **subject** *adj*
- **subject** *noun*
- **subjective** *adj*

Subjects of study (Note).htm

- **submarine** *noun*
- **submerged** *adj*
- **submission** *noun*
- **submit** *verb*
- **subnormal** *adj*
- **subordinate** *adj*
- **subordinate** *verb*
- **subscribe** *verb*
- **subscriber** *noun*
- **subscription** *noun*
- **subside** *verb*
- **subsidence** *noun*
- **subsidiary** *noun*
- **subsidize** *verb*
- **subsidy** *noun*
- **subsistence** *noun*
- **substance** *noun*
- **substitute** *noun*
- **subtitle** *noun*
- **subtle** *adj*
- **subtlety** *noun*
- **suburb** *noun*
- **subversive** *adj*
- **subversive** *noun*
- **subway** *noun*
- **succeed** *verb*

- **success** *noun*
- **successful** *adj*
- **succession** *noun*
- **successor** *noun*
- **succumb** *verb*
- **suck** *verb*
- **sue** *verb*
- **suffer** *verb*
- **sufferer** *noun*
- **suffering** *noun*
- **sufficient** *adj*
- **sugar** *noun*
- **suggest** *verb*
- **suggestion** *noun*
- **suggestive** *adj*
- **suicidal** *adj*
- **suicide** *noun*
- **suit** *noun*
- **suit** *verb*
- **suitability** *noun*
- **suitable** *adj*
- **suitcase** *noun*
- **suite** *noun*
- **suited** *adj*
- **sum** *noun*
- **sum** *verb*
- **summarize** *verb*
- **summary** *noun*
- **summer** *noun*
- **summit** *noun*
- **summon** *verb*
- **summons** *noun*
- **sun** *noun*
- **Sunday** *noun*
- **sunglasses** *noun*
- **sunlight** *noun*
- **sunny** *adj*
- **sunset** *noun*

- **sunshine** *noun*
- **suntan** *noun*
- **superb** *adj*
- **superficial** *adj*
- **superfluous** *adj*
- **superior** *adj*
- **superior** *noun*
- **superiority** *noun*
- **supermarket** *noun*
- **superstition** *noun*
- **supervise** *verb*
- **supervision** *noun*
- **supervisor** *noun*
- **supper** *noun*
- **supple** *adj*
- **supplement** *noun*
- **supplier** *noun*
- **supply** *noun*
- **supply** *verb*
- **support** *noun*
- **support** *verb*
- **supporter** *noun*
- **supportive** *adj*
- **suppose** *verb*
- **supposition** *noun*
- **suppress** *verb*
- **suppression** *noun*
- **supremacy** *noun*
- **surcharge** *noun*
- **sure** *adj*
- **surf** *noun*
- **surface** *noun*
- **surge** *noun*
- **surgeon** *noun*
- **surgery** *noun*
- **surname** *noun*
- **surpass** *verb*
- **surplus** *noun*

- **surprise** *noun*
- **surprise** *verb*
- **surprised** *adj*
- **surprising** *adj*
- **surrender** *noun*
- **surrender** *verb*
- **surrogate** *noun*
- **surround** *verb*
- **surroundings** *noun*
- **surveillance** *noun*
- **survey** *noun*
- **survey** *verb*
- **survival** *noun*
- **survive** *verb*
- **survivor** *noun*
- **susceptible** *adj*
- **suspect** *adj*
- **suspect** *noun*
- **suspect** *verb*
- **suspend** *verb*
- **suspense** *noun*
- **suspension** *noun*
- **suspicion** *noun*
- **suspicious** *adj*
- **sustain** *verb*
- **Swahili** *noun*
- **swallow** *verb*
- **swan** *noun*
- **swap** *noun*
- **sway** *verb*
- **swear word** *noun*
- **swear** *verb*
- **sweat** *noun*
- **sweat** *verb*
- **sweater** *noun*
- **sweaty** *adj*
- **sweep** *noun*
- **sweet** *adj*

- **sweet** *noun*
- **sweetness** *noun*
- **swell** *noun*
- **swell** *verb*
- **swelling** *noun*
- **swerve** *noun*
- **swerve** *verb*
- **swift** *adj*
- **swig** *noun*
- **swim** *noun*
- **swim** *verb*
- **swimmer** *noun*
- **swing** *noun*
- **swing** *verb*
- **swipe** *noun*
- **switch** *noun*
- **switch** *verb*
- **switchboard** *noun*
- **swollen** *adj*
- **swoop** *verb*
- **sword** *noun*
- **syllable** *noun*
- **syllabus** *noun*
- **symbol** *noun*
- **symbolic** *adj*
- **symbolism** *noun*
- **symmetrical** *adj*
- **symmetry** *noun*
- **sympathetic** *adj*
- **sympathize** *verb*
- **sympathy** *noun*
- **symphony** *noun*
- **symptom** *noun*
- **synchronize** *verb*
- **syndicate** *noun*
- **syndrome** *noun*
- **synonymous** *adj*
- **syringe** *noun*

- **system** *noun*
- **table** *noun*
- **tablet** *noun*
- **tabloid** *noun*
- **taboo** *adj*
- **taboo** *noun*
- **tack** *noun*
- **tackle** *noun*
- **tackle** *verb*
- **tact** *noun*
- **tactic** *noun*
- **tag** *noun*
- **tail** *noun*
- **tailor** *verb*
- **tailored** *adj*
- **take** *verb*
- **takeover** *noun*
- **takings** *noun*
- **tale** *noun*
- **talent** *noun*
- **talented** *adj*
- **talk** *noun*
- **talk** *verb*
- **tall** *adj*
- **tame** *adj*
- **tan** *noun*
- **tangle** *noun*
- **tangled** *adj*
- **tank** *noun*
- **tanker** *noun*
- **tanned** *adj*
- **tantrum** *noun*
- **tap** *noun*
- **tap** *verb*
- **tape** *noun*
- **tape** *verb*
- **target** *noun*
- **target** *verb*

- **tariff** *noun*
- **tarnish** *verb*
- **tart** *noun*
- **task force** *noun*
- **task** *noun*
- **taste** *noun*
- **taste** *verb*
- **tasteful** *adj*
- **tatters** *noun*
- **tattoo** *noun*
- **taunt** *noun*
- **taunt** *verb*
- **taut** *adj*
- **tax** *noun*
- **tax** *verb*
- **taxable** *adj*
- **taxation** *noun*
- **taxi** *noun*
- **taxing** *adj*
- **tea** *noun*
- **teach** *verb*
- **teacher** *noun*
- **teaching** *noun*
- **team** *noun*
- **teamwork** *noun*
- **tear** *1_noun*
- **tear** *2_noun*
- **tear** *3_verb*
- **tearful** *adj*
- **tease** *verb*
- **technical** *adj*
- **technicality** *noun*
- **technician** *noun*
- **technique** *noun*
- **technology** *noun*
- **tedious** *adj*
- **teenager** *noun*
- **teens** *noun*

- **teetotal** *adj*
- **telecommunications** *noun*
- **telegram** *noun*
- **telephone** *noun*
- **telescope** *noun*
- **televise** *verb*
- **television** *noun*
- **tell** *verb*
- **temper** *noun*
- **temperament** *noun*
- **temperamental** *adj*
- **temperature** *noun*
- **temple** *noun*
- **tempo** *noun*
- **temporary** *adj*
- **tempt** *verb*
- **temptation** *noun*
- **tenancy** *noun*
- **tenant** *noun*
- **tend** *verb*
- **tendency** *noun*
- **tender** *adj*
- **tender** *noun*
- **tenderness** *noun*
- **tendon** *noun*
- **tenement** *noun*
- **tennis** *noun*
- **tenor** *noun*
- **tense** *adj*
- **tense** *noun*
- **tension** *noun*
- **tent** *noun*
- **tenure** *noun*
- **term** *noun*
- **term** *verb*
- **terminal** *noun*
- **terminate** *verb*
- **termination** *noun*

- **terminology** *noun*
- **terrace** *noun*
- **terrain** *noun*
- **terrible** *adj*
- **terrified** *adj*
- **territory** *noun*
- **terror** *noun*
- **terrorism** *noun*
- **terrorist** *noun*
- **test** *noun*
- **test** *verb*
- **testament** *noun*
- **testify** *verb*
- **testimony** *noun*
- **text** *noun*
- **textbook** *noun*
- **textile** *noun*
- **texture** *noun*
- **thank you** *noun*
- **thank** *verb*
- **thankful** *adj*
- **thanks** *noun*
- **thaw** *noun*
- **thaw** *verb*
- **theatre** *noun*
- **theft** *noun*
- **theme** *noun*
- **theology** *noun*
- **theoretical** *adj*
- **theory** *noun*
- **therapist** *noun*
- **therapy** *noun*
- **thermometer** *noun*
- **thesis** *noun*
- **thick** *adj*
- **thief** *noun*
- **thigh** *noun*
- **thin** *adj*

- **thing** *noun*
- **think** *noun*
- **think** *verb*
- **thinker** *noun*
- **thinking** *noun*
- **third** *noun*
- **thirst** *noun*
- **thought** *noun*
- **thrash** *verb*
- **thrashing** *noun*
- **thread** *noun*
- **threadbare** *adj*
- **threat** *noun*
- **threaten** *verb*
- **threatening** *adj*
- **threshold** *noun*
- **thrill** *noun*
- **thrilled** *adj*
- **thriller** *noun*
- **thrive** *verb*
- **throat** *noun*
- **throb** *noun*
- **throb** *verb*
- **throne** *noun*
- **throng** *noun*
- **throw** *verb*
- **thrust** *noun*
- **thrust** *verb*
- **thud** *noun*
- **thud** *verb*
- **thug** *noun*
- **thumb** *noun*
- **thump** *noun*
- **thump** *verb*
- **thunder** *noun*
- **thunderstorm** *noun*
- **Thursday** *noun*
- **thwart** *verb*

- **tick** *verb*
- **ticket** *noun*
- **tickle** *noun*
- **tide** *noun*
- **tidy** *adj*
- **tie** *noun*
- **tie** *verb*
- **tiger** *noun*
- **tight** *adj*
- **tight** *adv*
- **tighten** *verb*
- **tights** *noun*
- **tile** *noun*
- **till** *noun*
- **tilt** *noun*
- **tilt** *verb*
- **timber** *noun*
- **time** *noun*
- **time** *verb*
- **timetable** *noun*
- **timing** *noun*
- **tin** *noun*
- **tinge** *noun*
- **tinkle** *noun*
- **tint** *noun*
- **tiny** *adj*
- **tip** *noun*
- **tip** *verb*
- **tip-off** *noun*
- **tire** *verb*
- **tired** *adj*
- **tiredness** *noun*
- **tissue** *noun*
- **title** *noun*
- **toast** *noun*
- **toast** *verb*
- **tobacco** *noun*
- **toe** *noun*

- **toenail** *noun*
- **toil** *noun*
- **toilet** *noun*
- **token** *noun*
- **tolerable** *adj*
- **tolerance** *noun*
- **tolerant** *adj*
- **tolerate** *verb*
- **toleration** *noun*
- **toll** *noun*
- **tomato** *noun*
- **ton** *noun*
- **tone** *noun*
- **tongue** *noun*
- **tonne** *noun*
- **tonsils** *noun*
- **tool** *noun*
- **toot** *noun*
- **tooth** *noun*
- **top** *adj*
- **top** *noun*
- **topic** *noun*
- **topless** *adj*
- **torch** *noun*
- **torment** *noun*
- **tornado** *noun*
- **torpedo** *noun*
- **torrent** *noun*
- **torso** *noun*
- **torture** *noun*
- **torture** *verb*
- **toss** *noun*
- **toss** *verb*
- **total** *noun*
- **touch** *noun*
- **touch** *verb*
- **touched** *adj*
- **tough** *adj*

- **tour** *noun*
- **tour** *verb*
- **tourism** *noun*
- **tourist** *noun*
- **tournament** *noun*
- **tow** *noun*
- **towel** *noun*
- **tower** *noun*
- **town** *noun*
- **toxic** *adj*
- **toy** *noun*
- **trace** *noun*
- **trace** *verb*
- **track record** *noun*
- **track** *noun*
- **tractor** *noun*
- **trade union** *noun*
- **trade** *noun*
- **trade** *verb*
- **trader** *noun*
- **tradesman** *noun*
- **trading** *noun*
- **tradition** *noun*
- **traditional** *adj*
- **traffic jam** *noun*
- **traffic light** *noun*
- **traffic** *noun*
- **tragedy** *noun*
- **tragic** *adj*
- **trail** *noun*
- **trail** *verb*
- **trailer** *noun*
- **train** *noun*
- **train** *verb*
- **trained** *adj*
- **trainee** *noun*
- **trainer** *noun*
- **training** *noun*

- **trait** *noun*
- **traitor** *noun*
- **tram** *noun*
- **trample** *verb*
- **trance** *noun*
- **tranquil** *adj*
- **transaction** *noun*
- **transcript** *noun*
- **transfer** *noun*
- **transfer** *verb*
- **transferable** *adj*
- **transform** *verb*
- **transformation** *noun*
- **transit** *noun*
- **transition** *noun*
- **translate** *verb*
- **translation** *noun*
- **translator** *noun*
- **transmission** *noun*
- **transmit** *verb*
- **transmitter** *noun*
- **transparent** *adj*
- **transplant** *noun*
- **transplant** *verb*
- **transport** *noun*
- **trap** *noun*
- **trappings** *noun*
- **trauma** *noun*
- **traumatic** *adj*
- **travel** *noun*
- **travel** *verb*
- **traveller** *noun*
- **tray** *noun*
- **treacherous** *adj*
- **tread** *noun*
- **tread** *verb*
- **treason** *noun*
- **treasure** *noun*

- **treasurer** *noun*
- **treat** *noun*
- **treat** *verb*
- **treatment** *noun*
- **treaty** *noun*
- **treble** *verb*
- **tree** *noun*
- **trek** *noun*
- **tremble** *verb*
- **tremor** *noun*
- **trench** *noun*
- **trend** *noun*
- **trial** *noun*
- **triangle** *noun*
- **tribe** *noun*
- **tribunal** *noun*
- **tributary** *noun*
- **tribute** *noun*
- **trick** *noun*
- **trickle** *noun*
- **trigger** *noun*
- **trim** *verb*
- **trip** *noun*
- **trip** *verb*
- **triple** *verb*
- **triumph** *noun*
- **triumph** *verb*
- **triumphant** *adj*
- **trivial** *adj*
- **trolley** *noun*
- **trombone** *noun*
- **troops** *noun*
- **trophy** *noun*
- **trot** *noun*
- **trot** *verb*
- **trouble** *noun*
- **trouble** *verb*
- **troubled** *adj*

- **trough** *noun*
- **trousers** *noun*
- **trout** *noun*
- **truancy** *noun*
- **truant** *noun*
- **truce** *noun*
- **truck** *noun*
- **trudge** *verb*
- **true** *adj*
- **trump** *noun*
- **trumpet** *noun*
- **truncheon** *noun*
- **trunk** *noun*
- **trust** *noun*
- **trust** *verb*
- **trustee** *noun*
- **truth** *noun*
- **truthful** *adj*
- **try** *noun*
- **try** *verb*
- **T-shirt** *noun*
- **tub** *noun*
- **tuba** *noun*
- **tube** *noun*
- **tuck** *verb*
- **Tuesday** *noun*
- **tug** *noun*
- **tug** *verb*
- **tuition** *noun*
- **tulip** *noun*
- **tummy** *noun*
- **tumour** *noun*
- **tune** *noun*
- **tune** *verb*
- **tunnel** *noun*
- **turf** *noun*
- **turkey** *noun*
- **turmoil** *noun*

- **turn** *noun*
- **turning point** *noun*
- **turning** *noun*
- **turn-off** *noun*
- **turnout** *noun*
- **turnover** *noun*
- **tussle** *noun*
- **tutor** *noun*
- **tutorial** *noun*
- **twang** *noun*
- **twig** *noun*
- **twilight** *noun*
- **twin** *noun*
- **twinge** *noun*
- **twinkle** *noun*
- **twist** *noun*
- **twist** *verb*
- **twitch** *noun*
- **twitch** *verb*
- **tycoon** *noun*
- **type** *noun*
- **type** *verb*
- **typhoon** *noun*
- **typical** *adj*
- **typing** *noun*
- **typist** *noun*
- **tyranny** *noun*
- **tyrant** *noun*
- **tyre** *noun*
- **ugly** *adj*
- **ultimatum** *noun*
- **umbilical cord** *noun*
- **umbrella** *noun*
- **unable** *adj*
- **unacceptable** *adj*
- **unaffected** *adj*
- **unanimous** *adj*
- **unavoidable** *adj*

- **unaware** *adj*
- **unbalanced** *adj*
- **unbearable** *adj*
- **unbeatable** *adj*
- **unbelievable** *adj*
- **unbroken** *adj*
- **uncertain** *adj*
- **uncertainty** *noun*
- **unchanged** *adj*
- **uncharacteristic** *adj*
- **uncle** *noun*
- **uncomfortable** *adj*
- **uncommon** *adj*
- **unconcerned** *adj*
- **unconscious** *adj*
- **unconsciousness** *noun*
- **uncontrollable** *adj*
- **undecided** *adj*
- **underestimate** *noun*
- **underestimate** *verb*
- **undergraduate** *noun*
- **underground** *noun*
- **undergrowth** *noun*
- **underline** *verb*
- **undermine** *verb*
- **underpants** *noun*
- **understand** *verb*
- **understandable** *adj*
- **understanding** *noun*
- **understatement** *noun*
- **undertaking** *noun*
- **undertone** *noun*
- **underwear** *noun*
- **underworld** *noun*
- **undesirable** *adj*
- **undignified** *adj*
- **undone** *adj*
- **undressed** *adj*

- **unease** *noun*
- **uneasy** *adj*
- **unemployed** *adj*
- **unemployed** *noun*
- **unemployment** *noun*
- **unexpected** *adj*
- **unfair** *adj*
- **unfamiliar** *adj*
- **unfashionable** *adj*
- **unfit** *adj*
- **unforgettable** *adj*
- **unfortunate** *adj*
- **unfounded** *adj*
- **unfriendly** *adj*
- **unhappiness** *noun*
- **unhappy** *adj*
- **unheard** *adj*
- **unheard-of** *adj*
- **unification** *noun*
- **uniform** *noun*
- **uniformity** *noun*
- **uninhabitable** *adj*
- **uninhibited** *adj*
- **unintelligible** *adj*
- **uninterested** *adj*
- **union** *noun*
- **unique** *adj*
- **unit** *noun*
- **united** *adj*
- **unity** *noun*
- **universal** *adj*
- **universe** *noun*
- **university** *noun*
- **unknown** *adj*
- **unknown** *noun*
- **unlikely** *adj*
- **unlimited** *adj*
- **unlucky** *adj*

- **unmistakable** *adj*
- **unmoved** *adj*
- **unnatural** *adj*
- **unnecessary** *adj*
- **unnoticed** *adj*
- **unorthodox** *adj*
- **unpaid** *adj*
- **unpleasant** *adj*
- **unpopular** *adj*
- **unpopularity** *noun*
- **unprecedented** *adj*
- **unprovoked** *adj*
- **unqualified** *adj*
- **unreal** *adj*
- **unreasonable** *adj*
- **unrest** *noun*
- **unscathed** *adj*
- **unscrupulous** *adj*
- **unstable** *adj*
- **unsuitable** *adj*
- **unsure** *adj*
- **unthinkable** *adj*
- **untidy** *adj*
- **unused to** *adj*
- **unused** *adj*
- **unusual** *adj*
- **unveil** *verb*
- **unwarranted** *adj*
- **unwell** *adj*
- **upbringing** *noun*
- **update** *noun*
- **update** *verb*
- **upgrade** *verb*
- **upheaval** *noun*
- **uphold** *verb*
- **upkeep** *noun*
- **uplifting** *adj*
- **upright** *adj*

- **uprising** *noun*
- **uproar** *noun*
- **upset** *adj*
- **upset** *noun*
- **upset** *verb*
- **upsurge** *noun*
- **uptight** *adj*
- **up-to-date** *adj*
- **upturn** *noun*
- **uranium** *noun*
- **Urdu** *noun*
- **urge** *noun*
- **urge** *verb*
- **urgency** *noun*
- **urgent** *adj*
- **urine** *noun*
- **usage** *noun*
- **use** *noun*
- **use** *verb*
- **used** *adj*
- **useful** *adj*
- **usefulness** *noun*
- **useless** *adj*
- **user** *noun*
- **usual** *adj*
- **utility** *noun*
- **utilize** *verb*
- **U-turn** *noun*
- **vacancy** *noun*
- **vacant** *adj*
- **vaccination** *noun*
- **vaccine** *noun*
- **vacuum** *noun*
- **vagina** *noun*
- **vague** *adj*
- **valid** *adj*
- **validity** *noun*
- **valley** *noun*

- **valour** *noun*
- **valuable** *adj*
- **valuation** *noun*
- **value** *noun*
- **value** *verb*
- **valueless** *adj*
- **valve** *noun*
- **van** *noun*
- **vandal** *noun*
- **vandalism** *noun*
- **vanish** *verb*
- **vanity** *noun*
- **vapour** *noun*
- **variability** *noun*
- **variable** *adj*
- **variation** *noun*
- **varied** *adj*
- **variety** *noun*
- **varnish** *noun*
- **vary** *verb*
- **vase** *noun*
- **vault** *noun*
- **veer** *verb*
- **vegetable** *noun*
- **vegetarian** *noun*
- **vegetation** *noun*
- **vehicle** *noun*
- **veil** *noun*
- **vein** *noun*
- **velocity** *noun*
- **velvet** *noun*
- **vendetta** *noun*
- **veneer** *noun*
- **vengeance** *noun*
- **venom** *noun*
- **venomous** *adj*
- **vent** *noun*
- **ventilate** *verb*

- **ventilation** *noun*
- **venture** *noun*
- **venture** *verb*
- **venue** *noun*
- **verb** *noun*
- **verdict** *noun*
- **verge** *noun*
- **verification** *noun*
- **vermin** *noun*
- **versatile** *adj*
- **verse** *noun*
- **version** *noun*
- **vessel** *noun*
- **vest** *noun*
- **vestige** *noun*
- **vet** *noun*
- **vet** *verb*
- **veteran** *noun*
- **veto** *noun*
- **veto** *verb*
- **viability** *noun*
- **viable** *adj*
- **vibrate** *verb*
- **vibration** *noun*
- **vice** *noun*
- **vicinity** *noun*
- **vicious** *adj*
- **victim** *noun*
- **victor** *noun*
- **victorious** *adj*
- **victory** *noun*
- **video** *noun*
- **videotape** *noun*
- **view** *noun*
- **view** *verb*
- **viewer** *noun*
- **viewpoint** *noun*
- **vigil** *noun*

- **vigilance** *noun*
- **vigilant** *adj*
- **vigorous** *adj*
- **vigour** *noun*
- **villa** *noun*
- **village** *noun*
- **villain** *noun*
- **vintage** *noun*
- **viola** *noun*
- **violate** *verb*
- **violation** *noun*
- **violence** *noun*
- **violent** *adj*
- **violin** *noun*
- **virginity** *noun*
- **virtue** *noun*
- **virus** *noun*
- **visa** *noun*
- **viscount** *noun*
- **viscountess** *noun*
- **visibility** *noun*
- **visible** *adj*
- **vision** *noun*
- **visit** *noun*
- **visit** *verb*
- **visitor** *noun*
- **visualize** *verb*
- **vital** *adj*
- **vitality** *noun*
- **vitamin** *noun*
- **vivid** *adj*
- **vocabulary** *noun*
- **vocal** *adj*
- **vocation** *noun*
- **vogue** *noun*
- **voice** *noun*
- **void** *adj*
- **void** *noun*

- **volatile** *adj*
- **volcano** *noun*
- **volley** *noun*
- **voltage** *noun*
- **volume** *noun*
- **voluntary** *adj*
- **volunteer** *noun*
- **volunteer** *verb*
- **vomit** *verb*
- **vote** *noun*
- **vote** *verb*
- **voter** *noun*
- **voucher** *noun*
- **vow** *noun*
- **vow** *verb*
- **vowel** *noun*
- **voyage** *noun*
- **vulnerability** *noun*
- **vulnerable** *adj*
- **vulture** *noun*
- **wade** *verb*
- **waft** *verb*
- **wag** *verb*
- **wage** *noun*
- **wagon** *noun*
- **wail** *noun*
- **wail** *verb*
- **waist** *noun*
- **waistline** *noun*
- **wait** *noun*
- **wait** *verb*
- **waiter** *noun*
- **waitress** *noun*
- **wake** *verb*
- **waken** *verb*
- **walk** *noun*
- **walk** *verb*
- **wall** *noun*

- **wallet** *noun*
- **wallpaper** *noun*
- **waltz** *noun*
- **wander** *verb*
- **wane** *verb*
- **want** *noun*
- **want** *verb*
- **war** *noun*
- **ward** *noun*
- **warden** *noun*
- **wardrobe** *noun*
- **ware** *noun*
- **warehouse** *noun*
- **warfare** *noun*
- **warm** *adj*
- **warm** *verb*
- **warmth** *noun*
- **warn** *verb*
- **warning** *noun*
- **warrant** *noun*
- **warrant** *verb*
- **warranty** *noun*
- **warrior** *noun*
- **warship** *noun*
- **wary** *adj*
- **wash** *noun*
- **wash** *verb*
- **washing machine** *noun*
- **washing** *noun*
- **washing-up** *noun*
- **wasp** *noun*
- **wastage** *noun*
- **waste** *noun*
- **waste** *verb*
- **watch** *noun*
- **watch** *verb*
- **watchdog** *noun*
- **water** *noun*

- **waterfall** *noun*
- **watershed** *noun*
- **wave** *noun*
- **wave** *verb*
- **wavelength** *noun*
- **way** *noun*
- **weak** *adj*
- **weaken** *verb*
- **weakness** *noun*
- **wealth** *noun*
- **wealthy** *adj*
- **wean** *verb*
- **weapon** *noun*
- **wear** *noun*
- **wear** *verb*
- **weariness** *noun*
- **weary** *adj*
- **weather** *noun*
- **weather** *verb*
- **weave** *verb*
- **web** *noun*
- **website** *noun*
- **wedding** *noun*
- **wedge** *verb*
- **Wednesday** *noun*
- **wee** *noun*
- **weed** *noun*
- **week** *noun*
- **weekend** *noun*
- **weep** *verb*
- **weigh** *verb*
- **weight** *noun*
- **weighted** *adj*
- **weird** *adj*
- **welcome** *adj*
- **welcome** *noun*
- **welcome** *verb*
- **welfare** *noun*

- **well** *noun*
- **well-being** *noun*
- **wet** *adj*
- **wet** *verb*
- **whale** *noun*
- **wheat** *noun*
- **wheel** *noun*
- **wheelchair** *noun*
- **whereabouts** *noun*
- **whiff** *noun*
- **while** *noun*
- **whim** *noun*
- **whimper** *noun*
- **whimper** *verb*
- **whine** *noun*
- **whine** *verb*
- **whip** *noun*
- **whip** *verb*
- **whirl** *noun*
- **whisky** *noun*
- **whisper** *noun*
- **whisper** *verb*
- **whistle** *noun*
- **whistle** *verb*
- **white** *adj*
- **white** *noun*
- **whole** *noun*
- **wide** *adj*
- **widen** *verb*
- **widespread** *adj*
- **widow** *noun*
- **width** *noun*
- **wife** *noun*
- **wig** *noun*
- **wild** *adj*
- **wilderness** *noun*
- **wildlife** *noun*
- **will power** *noun*

- **will** *noun*
- **willing** *adj*
- **willingness** *noun*
- **wilt** *verb*
- **win** *noun*
- **win** *verb*
- **wince** *verb*
- **wind** *noun*
- **wind** *verb*
- **windfall** *noun*
- **window** *noun*
- **windscreen** *noun*
- **wine** *noun*
- **wing** *noun*
- **wink** *noun*
- **wink** *verb*
- **winner** *noun*
- **winter** *noun*
- **wipe** *verb*
- **wiper** *noun*
- **wire** *noun*
- **wire** *verb*
- **wiring** *noun*
- **wisdom** *noun*
- **wise** *adj*
- **wish** *noun*
- **wish** *verb*
- **wit** *noun*
- **withdraw** *verb*
- **withdrawal** *noun*
- **wither** *verb*
- **withhold** *verb*
- **withstand** *verb*
- **witness** *noun*
- **wobbly** *adj*
- **wolf** *noun*
- **woman** *noun*
- **womb** *noun*

- **wonder** *noun*
- **wonder** *verb*
- **wonderful** *adj*
- **wood** *noun*
- **wooded** *adj*
- **woodwork** *noun*
- **wool** *noun*
- **word processing** *noun*
- **word** *noun*
- **word** *verb*
- **wording** *noun*
- **work** *noun*
- **work** *verb*
- **worker** *noun*
- **workforce** *noun*
- **workings** *noun*
- **workload** *noun*
- **workman** *noun*
- **workmanship** *noun*
- **workout** *noun*
- **workshop** *noun*
- **world** *noun*
- **worm** *noun*
- **worried** *adj*
- **worry** *noun*
- **worry** *verb*
- **worrying** *adj*
- **worse** *adj*
- **worsen** *verb*
- **worship** *noun*
- **worst** *noun*
- **worth** *adj*
- **worth** *noun*
- **worthless** *adj*
- **worthwhile** *adj*
- **worthy** *adj*
- **wound** *noun*
- **wound** *verb*

- **woven** *adj*
- **wrangle** *noun*
- **wrap** *verb*
- **wrapper** *noun*
- **wrath** *noun*
- **wreath** *noun*
- **wreck** *noun*
- **wreck** *verb*
- **wreckage** *noun*
- **wriggle** *verb*
- **wrinkle** *noun*
- **wrinkled** *adj*
- **wrist** *noun*
- **writ** *noun*
- **write** *verb*
- **writer** *noun*
- **writing** *noun*
- **wrong** *adj*
- **wrong** *noun*
- **X-ray** *noun*
- **xylophone** *noun*
- **yacht** *noun*
- **yard** *noun*
- **yardstick** *noun*
- **yarn** *noun*
- **yawn** *noun*
- **yawn** *verb*
- **year** *noun*
- **yearn** *verb*
- **yearning** *noun*
- **yell** *verb*
- **yellow** *adj*
- **yelp** *noun*
- **yen** *noun*
- **yes** *exclamation*
- **yes** *noun*
- **yield** *noun*
- **yoga** *noun*

- **yoghurt** *noun*
- **yogurt** *noun*
- **young** *adj*
- **youth** *noun*
- **zeal** *noun*
- **zest** *noun*
- **zip** *noun*
- **zone** *noun*
- **zoo** *noun*
- **zoology** *noun*

A level *noun*

ADJ. **mock** *I did all right in my mock A levels and then failed the real exams.*

VERB + A LEVEL **do, sit, take** *She's doing her A levels this year.* **| retake | do well in, pass | do badly in, fail, flunk | have** *She has four A levels.* **| prepare for, revise for** *He can't come out?he's revising for his A levels.*

A LEVEL + NOUN **course | exam | preparation, revision | paper, questions | grades, results**

PREP. **in your ~s** *What grades did you get in your A levels?* **| ~ in** *He's got A levels in maths and history.*

abandon *verb*

1 **leave sb/sth**

ADV. **hastily** *The village had been hastily abandoned.*

PHRASES **be found/left abandoned** *The car was found abandoned in a nearby town.*

2 **stop doing/supporting sth**

ADV. **altogether, completely, entirely, totally** *The government does not propose to abandon the project altogether.* **| effectively, largely, virtually** *This principle has now been effectively abandoned.* **| simply** *Traditional policies were simply abandoned.* **| formally | quickly | quietly** *The plans for reform were quietly abandoned.* **| temporarily | voluntarily**

VERB + ABANDON **be forced to | decide to**

PREP. **for** *He abandoned the army for politics.* **| in favour of** *She abandoned teaching career in favour of sport.*

abashed *adj.*

VERBS be, look

ADV. a little, slightly | suitably *He glanced at Juliet accusingly and she looked suitably abashed.*

abbreviation *noun*

ADJ. **common, standard**

ABBREVIATION + VERB **stand for** *The abbreviation PC stands for 'personal computer'.*

PREP. **~ for** *A/C is the standard abbreviation for 'account'.* **| ~ of** *Ad lib is an abbreviation of the Latin phrase 'ad libitum'.*

abhorrent *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | find sth**

ADV. **totally, utterly** *I find the idea totally abhorrent.*

PREP. **to** *Such a savage punishment is abhorrent to a civilized society.*

ability *noun*

1 **skill/power to do sth**

ADJ. **exceptional, extraordinary, great, outstanding, remarkable, uncanny | inherent, innate, natural** *discovering the natural abilities of each child* **| proven | academic, acting, artistic, athletic, creative, intellectual, linguistic, mathematical, musical, reading, technical | mental, physical**

VERB + ABILITY **have | demonstrate, show** *Both players demonstrated their ability to hit the ball hard.* **| acquire, develop | lack | lose** *I seem to have lost my ability to attract clients.* **| appreciate, recognize** *Fox's abilities were soon recognized.*

PHRASES **to the best of your ability** *We will keep you informed to the best of our ability.*

2 **speed with which sb learns**

ADJ. **high** *The school does nothing for children of high ability.* **| limited, low | average, mixed** *It is much more difficult to teach a mixed-ability class.*

VERB + ABILITY **assess, test**

PHRASES **a level of ability** *There was a high level of ability among the school leavers.* **| a range of ability/abilities** *I taught a wide range of abilities.*

ablaze *adj.*

VERBS **be | set sth** *Truck after truck was set ablaze as the fire spread.*

ADV. **well** *By the time firefighters were called the house was well ablaze.*

able *adj.*

1 **able to do sth having the ability to do sth**

VERBS **be, feel, prove, seem**

ADV. **perfectly, quite, well** *He is well able to take care of himself.* **| better, more** *Once you've had some sleep you'll feel better able to cope.* **| just** *I was just able to make out a dark figure in the distance.* **| barely, hardly, only just, scarcely | less**

2 **clever; doing your job well**

VERBS **be, seem** *She seems very able.*

ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, reasonably**

abode *noun*

ADJ. **humble** *(humorous) Welcome to my humble abode.*

VERB + ABODE **take up your** *(formal or humorous) I had been invited to take up my abode at Government House.*

PHRASES **of no fixed abode** *(law)* (= without a permanent address) *An 18-year-old man of no fixed abode appeared at Teesside magistrates court yesterday.* **| the right of abode** *(law)* (= the right to live in a place)

abolish *verb*

ADV. **altogether, completely, totally** *Some MPs want to abolish the tax altogether.* **| virtually | largely** *Foreign exchange controls were largely abolished.*

VERB + ABOLISH **seek to | decide to, vote to**

abortion *noun*

ADJ. **back-street, illegal | legal | induced, spontaneous, therapeutic**

VERB + ABORTION **have** *When she got pregnant at 16 she decided to have an abortion.* **| carry out, do** (*informal*), **perform** *Some nurses wanted the right to refuse to perform abortions.*

ABORTION + NOUN **law, legislation** *the country's strict abortion laws* **| clinic, counselling**

PREP. **~ on** *He carried out an abortion on a fifteen-year-old girl.*

PHRASES **abortion on demand** (= the right to have an abortion if you want one) *Women's groups are calling for free contraception and abortion on demand.*

abscess *noun*

VERB + ABSCESS **develop, get** *I developed an abscess on my neck.* **| burst, drain, lance | treat**

ABSCESS + VERB **burst** *Once an abscess has burst it should be bathed with antiseptic liquid.*

absence *noun*

1 **fact of not being present**

ADJ. **lengthy, long, prolonged | brief, temporary | unauthorized**

QUANT. **period, spell** *You will not be paid for the full period of absence.*

PREP. **during/in sb's ~** (= while sb is not there) *My father did all the cooking in my mother's absence.* **| ~ from** *absence from work*

PHRASES **conspicuous/notable by your absence** (= very obviously absent when you ought to be present) *When it came to clearing up afterwards, Anne was conspicuous by her absence.* **| leave of absence** (= permission to be absent) *He asked for leave of absence from the army.*

2 **lack**

ADJ. **complete, total | virtual | conspicuous, notable** *a conspicuous absence of evidence*

PREP. **in the ~ of** *In the absence of stone, most houses in the area are built of wood.*

absent *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | virtually | largely | temporarily | conspicuously, markedly, notably, noticeably, strikingly** *Local people were conspicuously absent from the meeting.* **| strangely** *He played with an abandon that was strangely absent from his performance last week.*

PREP. **from** *He was absent from work for two weeks.*

absorb *verb*

1 **liquid/gas/energy, etc.**

ADV. **quickly, rapidly | directly, easily, readily**

PREP. **into** *Nutrients are absorbed into the bloodstream.*

2 **make part of sth larger**

ADV. **gradually | increasingly**

PHRASES **be absorbed into sth** *These committees were gradually absorbed into the local government machine.*

3 **information/atmosphere**

ADV. **easily, readily** *The information is presented so that it can be readily absorbed.* **| passively**

4 **interest**

ADV. **completely, totally, utterly** *His work absorbed him completely.* **| deeply**

absorbed *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become, get | keep sb** *A jigsaw puzzle can keep me absorbed for hours.*

ADV. **extremely, very | completely, fully, totally, utterly** *He was totally absorbed in his book.*

PREP. **in**

abstract *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly, very | entirely, purely** *purely abstract drawing* **| increasingly | fairly, rather, somewhat**

absurd *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become | find sth** *She found the whole concept faintly absurd.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, utterly | clearly, manifestly, patently | faintly, rather, slightly, somewhat | wonderfully**

PHRASES **a sense of the absurd** *His sense of the absurd kept him from becoming too solemn.*

abundance *noun*

ADJ. **great, sheer** *We were amazed by the sheer abundance of food.* **| relative**

VERB + ABUNDANCE **have** *The country has an abundance of natural resources* **| produce, provide**

PREP. **in ~** *Exotic plants grew there in great abundance.*

abuse *noun*

1 **wrong/bad use of sth**

ADJ. **alcohol, drug, solvent, substance** (= drugs or solvents)

VERB + ABUSE **be open to** *The legal system is open to abuse.*

PHRASES **the abuse of power**

2 **bad, usually violent treatment of sb**

ADJ. **emotional, physical, sex/sexual | child, elder** *victims of child abuse* **| human rights ~s** *allegations of human rights abuses* **| alleged, suspected**

QUANT. **case** *six cases of suspected child abuse*

VERB + ABUSE **carry out, subject sb to** *She was subjected to regular sexual abuse.* **| suffer, take** *The child had taken a lot of emotional abuse.* **| suspect sb of**

ABUSE + VERB **happen, occur, take place**

PHRASES **an allegation of abuse, a perpetrator of abuse, a victim of abuse**

3 **insulting words**

ADJ. **verbal | personal, racial**

QUANT. **stream, torrent** *He was subjected to a torrent of abuse.*

VERB + ABUSE **hurl, scream, shout, shower sb with, subject sb to, yell | endure** *They had to endure continual racial abuse.*

PHRASES **heap abuse on sb/sth** *Abuse and scorn were heaped on the proposals.* **| a target for/of abuse** *The team who lost became a target of abuse for angry fans.* **| a term of abuse** *Calling someone stupid is definitely a term of abuse.*

abuse *verb*

ADV. **emotionally, mentally, physically, sexually, verbally** *All the children had been physically and emotionally abused.*

abusive *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, get**

ADV. **very | quite | openly** *He became openly abusive.*

academic *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **merely, purely, strictly** *The distinction being made is purely academic.* **| largely, rather, somewhat**

academy *noun*

ADJ. **military, naval, police, riding**

VERB + ACADEMY **attend, go to**

PREP. **at an/the ~** *He later studied at the Royal Academy.*

accelerate *verb*

1 **go faster**

ADV. **hard, quickly | smoothly** *The runners accelerated smoothly round the bend.* **| suddenly | away** *The car purred into life and accelerated away.*

2 **develop quickly**

ADV. **dramatically, greatly, rapidly, sharply** *The Aids epidemic is accelerating dramatically.*

acceleration *noun*

1 **increase in speed**

ADJ. **rapid**

PREP. **~ in** *There has been a rapid acceleration in the growth of industry.*

2 **ability of a car to accelerate**

ADJ. **fast, good** *This model has the best acceleration of any available sports car.* **| poor, slow**

accelerator *noun*

VERB + ACCELERATOR **depress, hit, press, put your foot (down) on, step on** *She put her foot on the accelerator and we sped through the traffic lights.* **| take your foot off**

ACCELERATOR + NOUN **pedal**

accent *noun*

ADJ. **broad, marked, pronounced, strong, thick** *She had a pronounced Scottish accent.* **| slight | country, foreign, local, regional | plummy, posh, public school | cockney | American, middle-class, northern, etc.**

QUANT. **hint, trace** *Her French was excellent, without a trace of an accent.*

VERB + ACCENT **have, speak in/with | acquire | affect, assume, imitate, put on** *She put on a posh accent when she answered the phone.* **| cultivate | lose** *He lost his northern accent after moving south.*

PREP. **in an ~** *She spoke in a broad Midlands accent.* **| with/without an ~** *a tall man with an American accent*

accept *verb*

1 **take/receive**

ADV. **gladly, graciously, gratefully, willingly** *She graciously accepted my apology.* **| reluctantly**

VERB + ACCEPT **be glad to, be happy to | be reluctant to, be unwilling to | be unable to** *I am unfortunately unable to accept your kind invitation.*

PREP. **from** *I accepted the gift from my sister.*

2 **agree/admit**

ADV. **readily** *Some people readily accept that they may have to pay for medical treatment.* **| fully**

VERB + ACCEPT **be happy to, be prepared to, be ready to, be willing to | be reluctant to, be unwilling to | be unable to, refuse to | can/cannot, could (not), will/won't, would (not)** *The university cannot accept responsibility for items lost or stolen on its premises.* **| be forced to**

PHRASES **be commonly/generally/universally/widely accepted** *It is generally accepted that people are motivated by success.*

acceptable *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | make sth** *an attempt to make the reforms acceptable to both sides* **| consider sth, deem sth, find sth** *We must come up with a solution that our shareholders will find acceptable.*

ADV. **eminently, highly, very** *Her breeding and background made her eminently acceptable in royal circles.* **| completely, entirely, fully, perfectly, quite, totally** *Yogurt is a perfectly acceptable substitute for cream in cooking.* **| fairly, reasonably | (not) remotely** *the only national newspaper even remotely acceptable to the left wing* **| generally, mutually, universally, widely | easily, readily | equally** *Are all political and religious groups equally acceptable?* **| publicly | commercially, culturally, environmentally, ethically, grammatically, morally, politically, socially** *a grammatically acceptable sentence socially acceptable behaviour*

PREP. **to** *a compromise that is acceptable to both sides*

acceptance *noun*

ADJ. **complete, full, total, unconditional, wholehearted | conditional, grudging, reluctant | gradual | greater, growing, increasing** *Alternative medicines are now winning greater acceptance among doctors.* **| general, popular, public, universal, wide, widespread | blind, easy, immediate, ready, uncritical, unquestioning, voluntary** *Their attitude was condemned as blind acceptance of authority.* **| implicit, passive, tacit | formal, official | social**

VERB + ACCEPTANCE **find, gain, win** *The idea was slow to gain general acceptance.* **| seek** *The group is now seeking formal acceptance.*

ACCEPTANCE + NOUN **speech**

access *noun*

ADJ. **direct, easy, free, good, ready, unlimited, unrestricted** *I lived deep in the country, without easy access to shops.* **| limited, poor, restricted** *Access to this information is severely restricted.* **| improved | immediate, instant, quick, rapid | equal** *Men and women should have equal access to education and employment.* **| public | vehicular, wheelchair | random** *(computing) random access memory*

VERB + ACCESS **have | gain, get | give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *The new computer provides access to all the files.* **| demand | seek | allow (sb), grant (sb) | deny sb, prevent, refuse (sb), restrict** *Some people are being denied access to proper medical care.*

ACCESS + NOUN **road, route**

PREP. **~ for** *improved access for disabled visitors* **| ~ to** *He was finally granted access to the medical records.*

accessible *adj.*

1 able to be reached

VERBS **be | become | remain | make sth**

ADV. **directly, easily, freely, readily | fully | reasonably, relatively | publicly**

PREP. **by** *The museum is easily accessible by public transport.* **| for** *All the buildings are accessible for people in wheelchairs.* **| from** *The garden is accessible from the lane.* **| to** *The beach should be accessible to everyone.*

2 easy to understand

VERBS **be | become | make sth**

ADV. **easily, highly, immediately, readily, very** *It is written in simple language, immediately accessible to the reader.* **| widely**

PREP. **to** *The cartoon strips are designed to make Shakespeare accessible to children.*

accessory *noun*

1 extra item

ADJ. **essential, perfect, useful** *This silk scarf is the perfect accessory for stylish summer evenings.* **| bathroom, car, fashion**

2 person who helps in crime

PREP. **~ to** *an accessory to murder*

PHRASES **an accessory before/after the fact** (= a person who knows about a crime before/after it was committed and protects the criminal) *(law) If you were lying to the police, then you have been an accessory after the fact for all these years.*

accident *noun*

1 **unexpected event that causes damage/injury**

ADJ. **dreadful, horrific, major, nasty, serious, terrible, tragic, unfortunate | fatal** *a fatal road accident* **| minor, slight | freak** *Their boat sank in a freak accident.* **| near** (= that nearly happens, but does not) **| hit-and-run | aircraft, canoeing, car, climbing, flying, industrial, motor, nuclear, road, traffic, etc.**

VERB + ACCIDENT **be involved in, have, meet with** *She met with an accident while on holiday in Spain.* **| cause | prevent | survive**

ACCIDENT + VERB **happen, occur, take place**

ACCIDENT + NOUN **prevention | rates, statistics**

PREP. **in an/the ~**

PHRASES **an accident involving** *He was badly hurt in an accident involving two cars and a lorry.* **| the scene of the accident** *The ambulance took only six minutes to reach the scene of the accident.*

2 **sth not planned in advance**

ADJ. **pure, sheer** *By pure accident he had come across the very man who could solve the mystery.*

PREP. **by ~** *We met by accident at the airport.*

PHRASES **be no accident that …** *It is no accident that men fill most of the top jobs.* **| by accident or design** *It happened, whether by accident or design, that Steve and I were the last two people to leave.*

accidental *adj*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **completely, purely, quite | almost**

acclaim *noun*

ADJ. **great | general, public, universal, wide, widespread | popular | critical** *Her latest novel has won great critical acclaim.* **| international, national, worldwide**

VERB + ACCLAIM **earn (sb), gain (sb), meet with, receive, win** *His discoveries earned him wide acclaim.*

PREP. **to … ~** *The play opened last week to universal acclaim.* **| ~ for** *She received international acclaim for her interpretation of Chopin.* **| ~ from** *acclaim from the critics*

acclaim *verb*

PHRASES **be critically acclaimed, be highly/internationally/widely acclaimed** *This book has been widely acclaimed as a modern classic.*

accolade *noun*

ADJ. **greatest, highest, supreme, ultimate** *Four restaurants have been awarded the highest accolade of a three-star rating.*

VERB + ACCOLADE **earn, receive, win | award (sb), bestow, grant (sb) | deserve**

accommodate *verb*

ADV. **comfortably, easily** *It was a large hall, where a lot of people could be comfortably accommodated.*

VERB + ACCOMMODATE **can/could** *The car park can accommodate about 200 cars.*

accommodation *noun*

1 **place for sb to live/stay**

ADJ. **comfortable, decent, good, suitable | inadequate, poor, substandard | excellent, luxurious | overnight, temporary | permanent | free | private, rented | holiday, hotel | living, residential | sleeping | bed-and-breakfast | furnished | sheltered** *Many old people choose to live in sheltered accommodation.* **| secure** *We need more secure accommodation for young prisoners.* **| student**

VERB + ACCOMMODATION **have** *The council should be able to help families who have no accommodation.* **| look for, seek | find, get, secure | offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *It is the duty of the local community to provide accommodation for the homeless.*

ACCOMMODATION + NOUN **costs**

PREP. **in ~**

2 **satisfactory arrangement**

VERB + ACCOMMODATION **come to, make, reach, work out | seek**

PREP. **~ between** *Some accommodation between conservation and tourism is essential.* **| ~ to** *accommodation to the harsh circumstances of rural life* **| ~ with** *They were forced to reach an accommodation with the rebels.*

accompaniment *noun*

1 **sth eaten/drunk with food**

ADJ. **delicious, good, ideal**

VERB + ACCOMPANIMENT **be, make**

PREP. **~ for/to** *These wines also make a good accompaniment for vegetarian dishes.*

2 **music played to go with singing, etc.**

ADJ. **instrumental, musical, orchestral | piano, string, etc.**

VERB + ACCOMPANIMENT **provide | compose, write**

PREP. **to the ~ of** *She sang to the accompaniment of guitars.* **| with an ~** *I prefer to sing with an accompaniment.*

3 **sth that happens at the same time**

ADJ. **essential, inevitable, necessary**

PREP. **to the ~ of** *The women's medical school opened in 1874, to the accompaniment of much ridicule of 'lady doctors'.* **| with the ~ of** *the market, with its inevitable accompaniment of bustle and noise*

accomplice *noun*

ADJ. **willing | unwilling | unwitting | alleged**

PREP. **~ in** *She became his unwitting accomplice in the robbery.* **| ~ to** *an accomplice to murder*

accomplish *verb*

ADV. **safely, successfully** *A rather difficult task had been successfully accomplished.* **| easily**

accomplished *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | technically** *a technically accomplished musician*

PREP. **at** *Sarah had become accomplished at running the house.* **| in** *He came to London in 1976, already accomplished in the English language.*

accomplishment *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, real, significant | technical** *Her technical accomplishment on the piano is startling.*

PREP. **of … ~** *a work of real accomplishment* **| ~ in** *It is a great accomplishment in singing to take the melodic line up to a position of energy and hold it there.*

accord *noun*

ADJ. **draft | peace, trade**

VERB + ACCORD **draw up, negotiate, reach** *A peace accord was reached on 26 March.* **| endorse, ratify, sign**

PREP. **~ between** *a trade accord between Europe and the United States* **| ~ on** *an accord on environmental protection* **| ~ with** *They signed a trade accord with the Americans.*

accord *verb*

ADV. **fully**

PREP. **with** *His version of events does not accord fully with the facts.*

account *noun*

1 description

ADJ. **brief, short | blow-by-blow, comprehensive, detailed, full, graphic, vivid** *He gave us a blow-by-blow account of the incident.* **| accurate, clear, eyewitness, factual, first-hand, true, verbatim | glowing, good** *She received a glowing account of her son's progress.* **| newspaper** *the newspaper account of the trial*

VERB + ACCOUNT **give (sb), provide (sb with), write (sb)** *Can you give us an account of what happened?*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *Dr Richards describes this very well in his account of the events.*

PHRASES **by all accounts** (= according to what people say) *I've never been there, but it's a lovely place by all accounts.* **| by sb's own account** *By his own account he had an unhappy childhood.*

2 arrangement with a bank

ADJ. **bank, building society | current | deposit, investment, savings | personal | business | joint, separate** *My husband and I have separate accounts.* **| numbered** *They have a numbered account in Switzerland.*

VERB + ACCOUNT **have, hold** *Go and see the manager of the bank where your account is held.* **| open** *She opened a savings account at the building society.* **| close | credit sth to, pay/put sth into** *The money will be credited to your account tomorrow.* **| debit (sth from), draw sth out (of), pay sth from, take sth out (of), withdraw sth (from)** *She had taken all her money out of her account.* **| overdraw** *Your account is overdrawn.*

PREP. **~ at** *He opened an account at a bank in Germany.* **| ~ with** *an account with Barclays Bank*

3 accounts: record of money a business earns/spends

VERB + ACCOUNT **do, keep** *Try to keep accurate accounts.* **| audit, check, look at |**

submit *Your accounts will need to be submitted to the tax office.*

ACCOUNT + VERB **be in order** *The accounts are all in order.* > Special page at BUSINESS

4 **arrangement with a shop/business**

ADJ. **expense** (= an arrangement to charge expenses to your own employers) *taking clients for expense account lunches*

VERB + ACCOUNT **have | open** *I'd like to open an account, please.* **| close | pay off, settle** *It is best to settle the account each month.* | charge sth to, debit (sth from), put sth on *Charge this to my account, please.* **| credit sth to**

PREP. **on ~** *Ring for a cab on account.* **| ~ at/with** *an account with a large store*

account *verb* **PHRASAL VERBS account for sth**

ADV. **fully** *The increase can be fully accounted for.* **| partly** *The differences in achievement between the pupils are partly accounted for by differences in age.*

accountability *noun*

ADJ. **greater, increased | local, public** *demands for greater public accountability in the police service* **| democratic, financial, managerial, moral, parliamentary, police, political, professional | government, police**

VERB + ACCOUNTABILITY **enhance, improve, increase, strengthen | reduce, weaken** *This process of centralization further weakens accountability.* **| ensure**

PREP. **~ for** *to ensure accountability for decisions made* **| ~ to** *police accountability to the public*

PHRASES **a demand for accountability, a lack of accountability** *the apparent lack of accountability of the security forces* **| a need for accountability** *There is a need for increased professional accountability.*

accountable *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | make sb | hold sb** *The directors are held accountable by the shareholders.*

ADV. **fully, properly | directly** *Senior managers are directly accountable to the Board of Directors.* **| publicly** *Local authorities should be publicly accountable to the communities they serve.* **| democratically** *a democratically accountable parliament* **| financially, politically**

PREP. **for** *In the end, we are all accountable for our actions.* **| to** *Politicians are accountable to Parliament.*

accountancy *noun*

ADJ. **chartered | creative** *It had taken considerable 'creative accountancy' on my part to produce a set of figures that showed us making any profit at all.*

ACCOUNTANCY + NOUN **firm, practice | body** *the members of the different professional accountancy bodies* **| profession** > Note at SUBJECT(for more verbs and nouns)

accountant *noun*

ADJ. **certified, chartered | professional, qualified | trainee | retired | independent, self-employed | company | chief** *We talked to the company's chief accountant.* **| management | investigating, reporting** *the investigating accountant's report* > Note at PROFESSIONAL(for verbs)

accumulate *verb*

ADV. **gradually, slowly | steadily | rapidly**

VERB + ACCUMULATE **begin to | be allowed to** *Dirt must not be allowed to accumulate.* **| tend to** *Toxic chemicals tend to accumulate in the body.*

accumulation *noun*

ADJ. **rapid | steady** *the steady accumulation of evidence by the police* **| slow | great, impressive, large, massive** *a massive accumulation of facts about the motor industry* **| capital** *(finance)*

VERB + ACCUMULATION **lead to | prevent**

accuracy *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, complete, deadly, perfect, pinpoint, total, unerring** *The needle has to be positioned with pinpoint accuracy.* **| amazing, considerable, great, high** *(technical),* **remarkable, uncanny | reasonable, sufficient | factual, historical, technical**

QUANT. **degree, level** *The missiles are capable of a very high degree of accuracy.*

VERB + ACCURACY **improve, increase** *We are hoping to improve the accuracy of our forecasts.* **| check, confirm, test | ensure** *Great care is taken to ensure the accuracy of research data.* **| doubt, question** *Many people began to question the accuracy of his statement.*

PREP. **with ~** *It is possible to predict the outcome with reasonable accuracy.*

accurate *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove** *His predictions proved accurate.*

ADV. **deadly, extremely, highly, very | amazingly, remarkably, surprisingly, uncannily | completely, perfectly, totally | not completely, not entirely, not quite, not strictly, not wholly** *The figures he gave were not strictly accurate.* **| partially | broadly, fairly, generally, largely, pretty, quite, reasonably, sufficiently | historically, statistically**

PHRASES **full and accurate** *He gave a full and accurate account of his movements.*

accusation *noun*

ADJ. **serious | false, groundless, unfounded, unjust, wild | bitter | mutual** *They sank into mutual accusation and incrimination.* **| public | veiled** *She made a lot of thinly veiled accusations.* **| renewed, repeated**

VERB + ACCUSATION **level at, make** *an accusation frequently levelled at junior doctors* **| face** *Their father now faces an accusation of murder.* **| deny, dismiss, refute, reject | prove, support** *New evidence has emerged which supports the accusation against her.*

ACCUSATION + VERB **fly about/around** *There seem to be a lot of wild accusations flying around.*

PREP. **amid ~s** *He fled the country amid accusations of fraud.* **| ~ against** *You made a public accusation of misconduct against Nigel.*

PHRASES **bring an accusation against sb** *She rejected all the accusations brought against her.*

accuse *verb*

ADV. **practically, virtually** *She practically accused me of starting the fire!* **| falsely, unjustly, wrongly | angrily | openly, publicly** *They openly accused her of dishonesty.*

VERB + ACCUSE **cannot/could not** *You can't accuse me of being selfish.*

PREP. **of** *No one could ever accuse this government of not caring about the poor.*

PHRASES **stand accused of** *He stands accused of murdering his wife and children.*

accustomed *adj.* **accustomed to sth**

VERBS be | become, get, grow *She had grown accustomed to his long absences.*

ADV. quite, well *He was well accustomed to hard work.*

ace *noun*

1 **playing card > Note at CARD**

2 **winning first hit in tennis**

VERB + ACE **serve** *Rafter has served fifteen aces in the match so far.*

3 **person who is very good at sth**

ADJ. **fighter, flying, goal, motorcycle, soccer, tennis**

ache *noun*

1 **physical pain**

ADJ. **dull, nagging, throbbing | familiar | muscular, stomach, tummy**

VERB + ACHE **be aware of, feel** *I felt the familiar ache in my lower back.* **| ease** *He changed his position once again to ease the ache in his back.*

ACHE + VERB **throb** *A dull ache throbbed at the back of David's head.*

PREP. **~ in** *a nagging ache in her knee*

PHRASES **aches and pains** *He was always complaining about his various aches and pains.*

2 **great sorrow**

ADJ. **deep, dull, nagging**

VERB + ACHE **feel, have** *She kept feeling the nagging ache in her heart.*

PREP. **~ in** *She could hardly speak for the ache in her heart.* **| ~ inside, ~ of** *the ache of loneliness inside him*

ache *verb*

ADV. **badly, really** *My feet ached badly.* **| a bit** *My left foot ached a bit.*

PREP. **from** *I still really ache from all that cycling yesterday.*

PHRASES **ache all over** *Her head felt hot and she was aching all over.*

achieve *verb*

VERB + ACHIEVE **fail to** *The present law has failed to achieve its objectives.* **| be designed to | be difficult to, be easy to, be impossible to, be possible to**

achievement *noun*

1 **thing done successfully**

ADJ. **considerable, extraordinary, fine, great, important, impressive, major, no mean, notable, outstanding, real, remarkable, significant, tremendous** *This was no mean achievement for the government.* **| rare | unique | concrete, solid | crowning, main, proudest, supreme | lasting | modest | personal | architectural, artistic, cultural, economic, educational, engineering, literary, scientific, sporting, technical, technological**

VERB + ACHIEVEMENT **be, constitute, represent** *This conference in itself constitutes a solid achievement.*

PREP. **~ in** *She was given a prize for her achievements in textile design.*

PHRASES **quite an achievement** *To be offered a place at such a good university is quite an achievement.*

2 **act of achieving sth**

ADJ. **high** *two years of consistently high achievement* **| positive | individual, personal | human** *He believes European civilization was the high point of human achievement.* **| academic, educational, intellectual** *Success should not be measured solely by educational achievement.*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of achievement** *Climbing the mountain gave him a tremendous sense of achievement.* **| a lack of achievement, a level/standard of achievement, a record of achievement** *an impressive record of achievement*

acid *noun*

1 chemical compound

ADJ. **concentrated, strong | dilute, weak | acetic, amino, carbolic, citric, folic, hydrochloric, lactic, nitric, nucleic, prussic, sulphuric, etc.**

VERB + ACID **produce | neutralize** *You will need a special chemical to neutralize the acid.*

ACID + VERB **burn sth** *The acid burned a hole in her overalls.*

2 illegal drug

VERB + ACID **drop** *smoking joints and dropping acid* > Note at DRUG

acknowledge *verb*

1 admit/recognize

ADV. **fully | freely, readily | clearly, explicitly | effectively, implicitly, tacitly** *The peace settlement effectively acknowledged the country's independence.* **| formally, officially | openly, publicly** *He acknowledged publicly that he might have made a mistake.* **| privately | reluctantly, ruefully**

VERB + ACKNOWLEDGE **fail to, refuse to | be forced to** *Mental illness can exist for years before families are forced to acknowledge the truth.*

PHRASES **be generally/universally/widely acknowledged** *a truth that is universally acknowledged*

3 reply to letter

ADV. **duly** *The company duly acknowledged receipt of the letter.* **| hereby** *I hereby acknowledge receipt of your letter of 25 July.*

acknowledgement *noun*

ADJ. **brief | explicit | tacit | open, public | formal, official | belated | welcome**

VERB + ACKNOWLEDGEMENT **amount to, be** *This amounted to an acknowledgement that she had been wrong.* **| get, receive** *I wrote to them but never got any acknowledgement.* **| grunt, nod, wave** *She merely nodded acknowledgement of his statement.*

PREP. **in ~ (of)** *He raised his hand to her in acknowledgement.* **| ~ from** *She is still waiting for some acknowledgement from her fellow academics.*

PHRASES **with due acknowledgement** *He borrowed from a number of sources, with due acknowledgement.*

acne *noun*

ADJ. **bad, terrible**

VERB + ACNE **have, suffer from** *He had terrible acne when he was younger.* **| develop, get** *A lot of teenagers develop acne.* **| treat** *Doctors can treat acne with pills or creams.*

ACNE + VERB **clear (up)** *Acne often clears up with a change in diet.*

acquaintance *noun*

1 person you know

ADJ. **casual** *I bumped into a casual acquaintance in town.* **| casual, new | close, old | business, mutual, personal, social**

VERB + ACQUAINTANCE **bump into, meet | greet (sb as)** *He was greeted as an old acquaintance.*

PHRASES **friends and acquaintances**

2 knowledge of sb/sth

ADJ. **nodding, passing, slight** *a man with whom I had a passing acquaintance* **| brief, short | close, intimate**

VERB + ACQUAINTANCE **make sb/sth's** (= become acquainted with sb/sth) *I first made his acquaintance in 1992.* **| strike up** *I first met Simon in 1998 and struck up an acquaintance with him.* **| renew**

PREP. **of sb's ~** *He introduced me to a lady of his acquaintance.* **| ~ with** *her acquaintance with modern French philosophy*

PHRASES **have an acquaintance with** *They have little acquaintance with colloquial English.* **| on close/closer acquaintance, on first acquaintance** *On first acquaintance she seemed a little odd*

acquainted *adj.*

1 **familiar with sth**

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **well | fully**

PREP. **with** *Are you fully acquainted with the facts?*

2 **knowing sb personally**

VERBS **be | become, get** *I would like to get acquainted with her.* **| get sb** *Playing a game with the children is a good way of getting them acquainted.*

ADV. **closely, intimately, well | personally**

PREP. **with** *I am not personally acquainted with her.*

acquisition *noun*

1 **thing you have obtained**

ADJ. **latest, new, recent**

2 **act of obtaining sth**

ADJ. **data, language, property** *Language acquisition begins in the first months of a baby's life.*

VERB + ACQUISITION **complete, make** *The company has just made another acquisition.*

acquittal *noun*

VERB + ACQUITTAL **return** *The jury returned an acquittal after only seventeen minutes.* **| direct, order** *The trial judge had directed an acquittal.* **| gain (sb), obtain, secure | lead to, result in** *The trial resulted in an acquittal.* **| uphold** *The judge upheld their acquittal.*

acre *noun* > Note at MEASURE

act *noun*

1 **thing that sb does**

ADJ. **charitable, kind | heroic** *a heroic act of bravery* **| aggressive, barbaric, hostile, provocative, terrorist, violent | appalling, despicable, outrageous, terrible | criminal, illegal, unlawful, wrongful | careless, foolish, impulsive | conscious, deliberate, positive, voluntary, wilful | private** *a private act of revenge* **| public | creative, dramatic, physical, political, symbolic | homosexual, sex/sexual | balancing, disappearing, juggling, vanishing** *The UN must perform a difficult balancing act between the two sides in the conflict.*

VERB + ACT **commit** *(law)*, **perform** *charged with committing an act of gross indecency*

PREP. **in the ~ of** (= doing something) **| ~ of** *For Jane, the act of writing was always difficult.*

PHRASES **an act of faith, love, violence, will, worship, etc., catch sb in the act (of doing sth)** *He was caught in the act of stealing.* **| the simple/very act of doing sth** *The very act of writing out your plan clarifies what you need to do.*

2 **(also Act) law made by a government**

VERB + ACT **bring in, introduce, pass** *The Act was passed by a majority of 175 votes to 143.* **| amend | repeal** *The old Act has now been repealed.* **| breach, contravene** *The company had breached the 1994 Companies Act.*

ACT + VERB **become law, come into force** *The new Children's Act will come into force next year.* **| contain sth, say sth, state sth** *The Act contains regulations for banks and building societies.*

PREP. **under an/the ~** *He was charged under the Firearms Act of 1977.*

3 **entertainment; entertainers**

ADJ. **class** *(informal)* (used for sb who does sth well) *Their new striker looks a class act.* **| double** *comedy double act French and Saunders* **| live** *their reputation as one* *of rock's most impressive live acts* | **main, support** *The main act will come on at about ten o'clock.* | **cabaret, circus, comedy, song-and-dance, stage, variety**

VERB + ACT **do, perform** *He does a little song-and-dance act.* | **rehearse, work on**

4 **division of a play**

ADJ. **opening | final, last | first, second, etc.**

PREP. **in (the) ~** *The king is killed in the opening act.*

5 **insincere behaviour**

VERB + ACT **put on** *Don't take any notice?she's just putting on an act!*

act *verb*

1 **do sth/behave**

ADV. **at once, immediately, promptly, quickly, swiftly** *The government must act promptly to change this law.* | **correctly, legally, properly** | **illegally, improperly, unconstitutionally, unlawfully, wrongly** | **reasonably, responsibly, sensibly, wisely** | **dishonestly, dishonourably, unreasonably** | **oddly, strangely, suspiciously** *Jenny has been acting rather strangely recently.* | **bravely** | **decisively** | **effectively** | **in good faith** *His defence was that he had acted in good faith.* | **in self defence** *The jury accepted that he had acted in self defence.* | **accordingly** *George knew about the letter and acted accordingly.*

PREP. **against** *The government needs to act against the sale of these dangerous toys.* | **for/on behalf of sb** *His solicitors are continuing to act for him.* | **like** *Stop acting like a spoilt child. hormones in the brain that act like natural painkillers* | **on** *Alcohol acts quickly on the brain.* | **out of** *I suspected that he was acting out of malice.*

PHRASES **act in sb's best interests** *We are all acting in the best interests of the children.*

2 **perform in play/film**

ADV. **brilliantly, well** | **badly**

acting *noun*

ADJ. **brilliant, excellent, good | bad, poor, wooden** *The film is spoiled by some very wooden acting.*

VERB + ACTING **do** *I did quite a lot of acting when I was at college.*

ACTING + NOUN **career, profession**

action *noun*

1 **process of doing sth**

ADJ. **decisive, effective, firm, strong, vigorous | immediate, prompt, swift, urgent | drastic, emergency** *The situation calls for drastic action.* **| collective, concerted, joint, united | direct, positive | evasive | corrective, remedial | disciplinary, legal, military, political, strike** *Disciplinary action will be taken against students who cheat.* (see also **industrial action)**

VERB + ACTION **take | call for | agree on** *The leaders have agreed on joint action to combat terrorism.* **| leap/spring/swing into** *The emergency services swung into action as soon as the disaster was reported.* **| carry out, perform, take** *Only the priest can perform these actions. We shall take whatever actions are necessary.* **| galvanize/prod/spur sb into** *We have to galvanize people into action.* **| bring/put sth into** *We need to put these ideas into action.* **| keep/put sb/sth out of** *A fire has put the factory out of action.*

PREP. **in ~** *I have not yet seen the machines in action.* **| out of ~** *He is out of action following an ankle injury.* **| ~ against** *against drug dealers* **| ~ on** *The government is taking strong action on refugees.*

PHRASES **a course of action** *Is this the best course of action to follow?*

2 **legal case**

ADJ. **court | civil, criminal, libel**

VERB + ACTION **bring, take out** *Her husband brought a civil action against her after their divorce.*

PREP. **~ against**

3 **fighting**

ADJ. **enemy** *He was killed during enemy action.*

VERB + ACTION **see** *I never saw action during the war.*

PHRASES **killed/missing/wounded in action** *He was reported missing in action.*

active *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | keep** *(informal)*, **remain** *Try to keep active in the cold weather.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a highly active volcano* **| increasingly | fairly, quite, reasonably | equally** *a businessman who is equally active in politics* **| mentally, physically** *It's important to remain mentally active after retirement.* **| sexually** *A minority of children are sexually active before they are in their teens.* **| economically, politically** *When did you first become politically active?*

PREP. **against** *drugs that are active against cancers* **| in** *She has been active in local politics for some years.*

activity *noun*

ADJ. **frantic, frenetic, heightened, increased, intense | criminal, illegal, subversive, terrorist | classroom, group | extra-curricular, leisure, leisure-time, outdoor, recreational, social | mental, physical, sexual | business, commercial, cultural, economic, industrial, intellectual, political, scientific | government, military, police, union | human | electrical, geological, volcanic**

QUANT. **burst, flurry** *There was a flurry of activity as the film star appeared on the balcony.* **| level** *Newspapers report a higher level of activity in the foreign exchange markets.*

VERB + ACTIVITY **do** *Here's an activity you can do with mixed ability classes.* **| be involved in, engage in, participate in, take part in, undertake** *We suspect he may be involved in illegal activities. Teachers here are not allowed to engage in any political activity.* **| stop, suspend, terminate** *The party's activities have been suspended.* **| stimulate** *It will only be possible to stimulate business activity with an injection of public funds.* **| curb | resume | buzz with** *The room was buzzing with activity.*

PHRASES **a hive of activity** (= a very busy place) *The classroom was a hive of activity as the children prepared for the concert.* **| a sign of activity** *Police watched the house all day, but there was no sign of activity.*

actor, actress *noun*

ADJ. **accomplished, born, brilliant, consummate, experienced, fine, good, great, talented, wonderful** *You're a born actor!* **| celebrated, famous, leading, principal, sought-after, star, veteran, well-known | successful | bit-part, struggling, unknown | out-of-work, unemployed | aspiring, would-be | frustrated** *Lecturers are often frustrated actors who enjoy performing before a live audience.* **| amateur | professional | character, classical, comedy/comic, Shakespearean, straight | film, Hollywood, screen, stage, television | child | supporting** *the award for best supporting actor*

VERB + ACTOR, ACTRESS **audition, cast**

ACTOR, ACTRESS + VERB **act (sth), perform (sth), play (sth)** *The same actor plays three different parts in the film.* **| rehearse (sth) | audition** *He was one of many actors who auditioned for the part of Hamlet.* > Note at JOB

acumen *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great | business, commercial, critical, financial, political**

VERB + ACUMEN **demonstrate, show** *He had demonstrated considerable business acumen.*

acupuncture *noun*

QUANT. **course** *My doctor recommended a course of acupuncture.*

VERB + ACUPUNCTURE **have** *I'm having acupuncture for a bad back.* **| give sb, practise, use** *Acupuncture has been practised in China for thousands of years.*

ACUPUNCTURE + NOUN **point** *Needles are inserted into specific acupuncture points in the body.* **| needle**

ad *noun*

ADJ. **classified, full-page, small** *You can put your own small ads in local papers.* **| magazine, newspaper, radio, television/TV | detergent, job, tobacco, etc.**

VERB + AD **place, put, take out** *She took out a full-page ad in a women's magazine.* **| publish, run, show | answer, reply to, respond to**

AD + VERB **appear** *The ad appeared on all major channels.* **| say sth, show sth, state sth | feature sb/sth**

AD + NOUN **campaign | agency**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *A lot of claims are made in the ad.* **| ~ for** *TV ads for cars*

adapt *verb*

1 change your behaviour

ADV. **successfully, well** *The children have adapted well to the heat.* **| quickly | easily, readily** *The company can easily adapt to changing demand.* **| accordingly** *We need to assess the new situation and adapt accordingly.*

VERB + ADAPT **be able/unable to, can/cannot | have to, must | need to**

PREP. **to**

PHRASES **the ability to adapt** *Some animals have a remarkable ability to adapt to changing environments.* **| find it difficult/hard to adapt** *A lot of companies have found it hard to adapt to the new system.*

2 change a thing

PREP. **for** *to adapt a book for television.* **| from** *The radio play had been adapted from a novel.*

PHRASES **specially adapted** *The classroom has been specially adapted to take wheelchairs.*

adaptable *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become | make sb/sth**

ADV. **highly, very** *Many old market buildings have proved highly adaptable.* **| fairly, quite | easily, readily**

PREP. **to** *The vehicles are large and not easily adaptable to new uses.*

adaptation *noun*

1 **a change/the process of changing**

ADJ. **successful | special**

VERB + ADAPTATION **make** *making adaptations to your home*

ADAPTATION + VERB **occur** *Adaptations in plants occur over thousands of years.*

PREP. **~ for** *The Antarctic species have few special adaptations for polar life.* **| ~ to** *adaptation to the workplace*

PHRASES **a process of adaptation** *The process of adaptation to a new school is difficult for some children.*

2 **film, TV programme**

ADJ. **film, screen, television/TV** *He specializes in screen adaptations of classic novels.*

VERB + ADAPTATION **film, make, produce**

add *verb*

ADV. quickly, softly *He added softly, 'I missed you.'*

VERB + ADD hasten to *I hasten to add that I knew nothing of the fraud at the time.*

addict *noun*

ADJ. **cocaine, drug, heroin, etc. | computer, television, etc.** *Many young boys become computer addicts.*

addicted *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, get**

ADV. **totally | hopelessly**

PREP. **to** *She had become addicted to tranquillizers.*

addiction *noun*

ADJ. **alcohol, cocaine, drug, etc.**

VERB + ADDICTION **become, turn into** *A habit can easily become an addiction.* **| have | cause, lead to | feed** *He stole money from his parents to feed his addiction.* **| treat | beat, cure, overcome** *struggling to beat his heroin addiction*

PREP. **~ to** *She had an addiction to heroin.*

addictive *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *Cocaine is a highly addictive drug.*

addition *noun*

1 **sth that is added**

ADJ. **useful, valuable, welcome, worthy | important, major, notable, significant | latest, new, recent**

VERB + ADDITION **make** *We have made several additions to the collection recently.*

PREP. **~ to** *the latest addition to the family* (= a new baby)

2 **process of adding numbers/amounts**

ADJ. **simple** *He worked it out through simple addition.*

VERB + ADDITION **do** *She can do addition, but she hasn't learned subtraction yet.*

address *noun*

1 **where you live/work**

ADJ. **home, private | business | contact** *Please leave a contact address.* **| forwarding, return** *There was no return address on the back of the envelope.* **| postal | full** *Please write your full postal address.* **| false, wrong** *He gave a false address to the police.* **| correct, right | useful | secret | fashionable** *Cheyne Walk was a very fashionable address.*

VERB + ADDRESS **give, leave, write**

ADDRESS + NOUN **book**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *I'm afraid there's nobody called Williams at this address.*

PHRASES **a change of address** *Please inform us of any change of address.* **| name and address, no fixed address** *a man of no fixed address*

2 **speech**

ADJ. **short | inaugural, keynote, opening | public** *a public address system* **| radio, televised/television | election | presidential**

VERB + ADDRESS **deliver, give** *The prime minister delivered the keynote address at the conference.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He gave details of the policy in an address to party members.* **| ~ by** *an address by the Chancellor of the University* **| ~ to** *a radio address to the nation*

address *verb*

1 **write name and address**

ADV. **correctly, properly | personally** *The minister did not reply to my letter although I addressed it to him personally.*

PREP. **to**

PHRASES **a stamped addressed envelope** *Please send a stamped addressed envelope and we will send you a copy of our brochure.*

2 **say sth to sb**

ADV. **by name, directly** *She did not address him by name. He never addressed her directly.*

PREP. **to** *He addressed his comments to the chairman.*

3 **deal with problem**

ADV. **directly, explicitly, specifically | fully | adequately** *These concerns were not adequately addressed in the report.* **| successfully**

VERB + ADDRESS **seek to** *the problems we are seeking to address* **| fail to**

PHRASES **address yourself to sth** *The authors of the book address themselves to the question of unemployment.*

adept *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | quite**

PREP. **at** *He was highly adept at avoiding trouble.*

adequate *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | remain | consider sth, think sth** *The trains were not considered adequate for use on the modern railways.*

ADV. **really, very | perfectly, quite, totally | more than** *The system is more than adequate to deal with any problems.* **| barely, hardly, less than, not entirely, not wholly** *The grants given to students are less than adequate.* **| more or less** *The amount of money we have been given is more or less adequate.* **| still | no longer**

PREP. **for** *The old computer is still perfectly adequate for most tasks.*

adhere *verb*

ADV. **properly** *The tiles may not adhere properly if you do not use the correct glue.*

PREP. **to** *The glue would not adhere to the metal surface.* **PHRASAL VERBS adhere to**

ADV. **closely, firmly, rigidly, rigorously, scrupulously, strictly** *This principle must be strictly adhered to.* **| fully, properly** *The guidelines were not always fully adhered to.*

adherence *noun*

ADJ. **blind, close, faithful, firm, rigid, slavish, strict**

PREP. **~ to** *strict adherence to a diet*

adjacent *adj.*

VERBS **be, be situated, lie, stand** *The vineyards of Verzy lie adjacent to those of Verzenay.*

ADJ. **directly, immediately** *There is a row of houses immediately adjacent to the factory.*

PREP. **to** *The miller's house stands adjacent to the mill.*

adjective *noun*

ADJ. **attributive, predicative** *Attributive adjectives precede the noun.* **| possessive** *‘My’ is a possessive adjective.*

VERB + ADJECTIVE **apply** *‘Enterprising’ is not an adjective you would apply to him!*

ADJECTIVE + VERB **describe** *adjectives describing texture* **| modify, qualify** *Adjectives qualify nouns.* **| follow** *Predicative adjectives follow the noun.* **| precede**

adjourn *verb*

ADV. **indefinitely** *The trial was adjourned indefinitely.*

PREP. **for** *At midday the meeting was adjourned for lunch.* **| pending** *The inquest was adjourned pending further investigations.* **| to** *Shall we adjourn to your office?*

adjust *verb*

1 **change sth slightly**

ADV. **slightly | finely** *It is important to have equipment that can be finely adjusted.* **| automatically | carefully | accordingly** *Children are sensitive to disapproval and adjust their behaviour accordingly.* **| downwards, upwards** *This estimate may have to be adjusted downwards.*

PREP. **for** *Salaries are adjusted for inflation.*

2 **get used to new situation**

ADV. **quickly, rapidly | gradually, slowly**

VERB + ADJUST **be difficult/hard to**

VERB + ADJUST **need/take time to** *It may take a little time to adjust to the climate here.*

VERB + ADJUST **try to**

PREP. **to** *She will gradually adjust to her new role.*

adjustable *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **fully** *The straps are fully adjustable to fit any size.*

adjustment *noun*

1 **small change made**

ADJ. **delicate, fine, minor, slight, small | important, major, significant | appropriate, necessary | automatic | financial**

VERB + ADJUSTMENT **make** *The mechanic made the necessary adjustments to the engine.* **| need, require**

PREP. **~ for** *a cut of 1.5% in real terms (after adjustment for inflation)* **| ~ in** *adjustments in the exchange rates* **| ~ to** *a few minor adjustments to the timetable*

2 **process of changing**

ADJ. **successful | emotional, personal, social**

PREP. **~ to** *The company's adjustment to the new markets has been successful.*

PHRASES **a period of adjustment** *There was a long period of adjustment under the new boss.* **| the process of adjustment** *The process of adjustment to life in another country can be very difficult.*

administer *verb*

ADV. **effectively, efficiently | centrally, locally** *The legislation was to be centrally administered by the Board of Education.* **| jointly**

VERB + ADMINISTER **be difficult/easy/simple to, be cheap/expensive to**

administration *noun*

1 **organizing how sth is done**

ADJ. **effective, efficient, good | poor** *The college loses a lot of money through poor administration.* **| day-to-day, routine | general | office | bureaucratic | central | arts, business, educational, financial, justice, social | government, public**

VERB + ADMINISTRATION **be in charge of, be responsible for**

ADMINISTRATION + NOUN **costs**

2 **people who manage an organization**

ADJ. **college, hospital, prison, etc.**

3 **government**

ADJ. **colonial, federal, local, municipal, provincial, regional, state | civil, imperial, royal | Conservative, Labour, etc. | caretaker, interim, temporary | coalition, joint | minority | civilian, military**

VERB + ADMINISTRATION **form** *On September 27 a new coalition administration was formed.*

4 **giving a drug**

ADJ. **intravenous, oral | drug**

admirable *adj.*

VERBS **be | find sb/sth**

ADV. **very | wholly** *She had acted in ways that he found wholly admirable.* **| truly**

admiral *noun*

ADJ. **rear, vice** > Note at RANK

admiration *noun*

ADJ. **deep, genuine, great, sincere, tremendous | frank, open | sneaking** *Inwardly, I had a sneaking admiration for them.* **| grudging, reluctant | mutual**

VERB + ADMIRATION **be filled with, be full of, feel, have** *I'm full of admiration for him. I have the greatest admiration for the nurses.* **| express, show** *She wrote to him expressing her admiration.* **| compel, draw, fill sb with, gain, win** *a dignity that compels admiration The way he dealt with the crisis filled me with admiration. He gained the admiration of thousands of people.* **| be worthy of** *As a writer she is certainly worthy of admiration.* **| lose** *He never lost the admiration of his students.*

PREP. **in ~** *She stared at him in open admiration.* **| with ~** *gazing at her with admiration* **| ~ for** *admiration for his work*

PHRASES **a gasp of admiration** *The picture was greeted with gasps of admiration.* **| have nothing but admiration for sb/sth** *I have nothing but admiration for the way she tackled those bullies.*

admire *verb*

1 have high opinion of sb/sth

ADV. **deeply, enormously, greatly, hugely, particularly, really** *He admires you enormously.* **| rather | clearly, openly | secretly** *She secretly admired and envied him.*

VERB + ADMIRE **have to** *You have to admire their dedication and commitment.*

PREP. **about** *What do you most admire about her?* **| for** *I rather admire him for his determination.*

PHRASES **be generally/widely admired** *He is widely admired as a journalist.* **| can't/couldn't help admiring/but admire** *I couldn't help but admire his determination.* **| you can only admire sb/sth** *You can only admire her courage and determination.*

2 look at sth attractive

VERB + ADMIRE **pause to, stop to | stand/step back to** *He stood back to admire his handiwork.*

admirer *noun*

ADJ. **ardent, devoted, fervent, great, keen | secret** *Perhaps the flowers were sent by a secret admirer!*

QUANT. **band, circle, host** *She was always surrounded by a circle of admirers.*

VERB + ADMIRER **have | gain, win** *She soon gained admirers in England and France.*

PHRASES **friends and admirers** *The funeral was attended by the singer's friends and admirers.*

admission *noun*

1 **entrance**

ADJ. **free, half-price | emergency** *emergency admissions to hospital* **| cinema, hospital, school, university**

VERB + ADMISSION **apply for, seek** *He's applied for admission to the local college.* **| gain** *to gain admission to university* **| grant sb | refuse sb**

ADMISSION + NOUN **charge, fee, price | criteria, policy | procedure | rate** *hospital admission rates*

PREP. **on ~** *On admission to hospital, you will be examined by a doctor.* **| ~ to**

2 **statement admitting sth**

ADJ. **clear, frank, full** *This is a clear admission that you were wrong.* **| tacit | grudging**

VERB + ADMISSION **make**

PREP. **~ of** *She has made no admission of any involvement in the plot.*

PHRASES **an admission of defeat/failure/guilt/liability** *She saw his leaving the company as an admission of failure.* **| by sb's own admission** *By his own admission he should never have driven so fast.*

admit *verb*

ADV. **freely, readily** *He freely admitted that he had taken bribes.* **| frankly, honestly | openly | privately** *Some ministers admit privately that unemployment could continue to rise.* **| grudgingly, reluctantly** *In the end he'd done a good job, Caroline admitted grudgingly.*

VERB + ADMIT **be forced to, have to, must** *I must admit that the results were disappointing.* **| refuse to | be honest enough to, be prepared to, be the first to, be willing to, dare (to), have the courage to** *He was honest enough to admit his mistake. She would be the first to admit that she is very difficult to work with. She dared not admit her fear.* **| be ashamed to, be embarrassed to, be loath to, be reluctant to, be unwilling to, hate to, not care to** *I hate to admit it, but I think he is right. He had caused her more pain than she cared to admit.*

PREP. **to** *He admitted to feeling a bit tired.*

PHRASES **I don't mind admitting** *I was scared and I don't mind admitting it.*

admittance *noun*

VERB + ADMITTANCE **gain** *They were unable to gain admittance to the hall.* **| allow sb | deny sb, refuse sb**

PREP. **~ to** *The ticket will allow you admittance to the theatre.*

adolescence *noun*

ADJ. **early, late**

VERB + ADOLESCENCE **reach**

PREP. **during/in ~** *She developed the problem in early adolescence.*

adolescent *noun*

ADJ. **young | spotty | awkward, disturbed**

adopt *verb*

1 **child**

ADV. **legally** *The child has now been legally adopted.*

PHRASES **have sb adopted** *She was forced to have her baby adopted.*

2 **take and use sth**

ADV. **formally, officially** *The policy has not yet been formally adopted.*

VERB + ADOPT **tend to | decide to | be forced to**

PREP. **towards** *the policies employers adopt towards the labour force*

adoption *noun*

1 **of child**

VERB + ADOPTION **offer sb for, place sb for, put sb up for** *She has decided to put the child up for adoption.* **| be available for** *When will the child be available for adoption?*

ADOPTION + VERB **go through** *They were so happy when the adoption went through successfully.*

ADOPTION + NOUN **agency**

2 **taking/using sth**

ADJ. **general, widespread | formal** *The party announced the formal adoption of George Smith as their*

VERB + ADOPTION **recommend, urge** *The committee recommended the adoption of new safety procedure*

adore *verb*

ADV. **absolutely, simply** *She absolutely adores her grandchildren.* **| clearly, obviously**

adrenalin *noun*

ADJ. **pure**

QUANT. **burst, flow, rush, surge** *He felt a surge of pure adrenalin as he won the race.*

VERB + ADRENALIN **feel**

ADRENALIN + VERB **course, flow, pump, surge** *The adrenalin was coursing through his system.*

ADRENALIN + NOUN **rush**

PHRASES **get the adrenalin flowing/going** *We'll start with a bit of dancing to get the adrenalin going.*

adrift *adj.*

VERBS be | come *I nearly suffocated when the pipe of my breathing apparatus came adrift.* **| cast sb/sth, cut sb/sth, set sb/sth** *Their boat had been set adrift.*

PREP. from *(figurative) She had been cut adrift from everything she had known.* **| in** *(figurative) cast adrift in a vulgar, materialistic society*

adult *noun*

ADJ. **young** *This book will definitely appeal to teenagers and young adults.* **| single** *The number of single adult households has doubled in the past 30 years.* **| consenting** *What consenting adults do in private is their own business.* **| responsible** *I simply can't believe that responsible adults allowed a child to wander the streets.*

ADULT + NOUN **life** *She spent her entire adult life caring for others.* **| education, literacy | population**

adulttery *noun*

VERB + ADULTERY **be guilty of, commit | accuse sb of | admit**

PREP. **~ with** *He admitted adultery with several women.*

adulthood *noun*

ADJ. early, young

VERB + ADULTHOOD attain, reach *children who lose their parents before reaching adulthood* **| make it to, survive into/to**

PREP. during/in ~ *His problems began in early adulthood.* **| into ~** *Her childhood problems persisted into adulthood.* **| towards ~** *a step towards adulthood*

advance *noun*

1 **forward movement**

ADJ. **rapid | Allied, British, German, etc.**

VERB + ADVANCE **make** *The regiment made an advance on the enemy lines.* **| order** *The general ordered an advance to the front line.* **| halt, resist, stop**

PREP. **on ~** *the advance on Leningrad* **| to ~, towards ~** *the Russian advance towards Berlin*

2 **development**

ADJ. **big, considerable, dramatic, enormous, great, spectacular, substantial, tremendous | important, major, notable, remarkable, significant | rapid, steady** *rapid advances in science and technology* **| recent | economic, educational, medical, political, scientific, social, technical, technological | theoretical**

VERB + ADVANCE **make** *We need more money if we are to make any further advances in this area of science.*

PREP. **in ~** *two major advances in orthopaedic medicine* **| on ~** *an advance on the existing techniques* **| towards ~** *an advance towards a better understanding of God*

3 **money**

ADJ. **large | cash**

VERB + ADVANCE **give, pay** *The publishers have paid me an advance.* **| get, receive**

PREP. **~ of** *an advance of £10,000* **| ~ on** *He was paid £5,000 as an advance on royalties.*

4 **advances: sexual**

ADJ. **amorous, sexual**

VERB + ADVANCE **make** *He made amorous advances to one of his students.*

PREP. **~ to**

advance *verb*

1 **move forward**

ADV. **quickly, rapidly | cautiously, slowly**

PREP. **from** *advancing from the south* **| into** *The troops advanced into central Europe.* **| on/upon** *The army advanced on the capital.* **| towards** *He advanced towards me in aggressive style.*

2 **develop**

ADV. **considerably, greatly, significantly | rapidly**

PREP. **beyond** *Society needs to advance beyond prejudice and superstition.*

advanced *adj.*

1 **modern and highly developed**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a highly advanced economy* **| fairly, quite, relatively | industrially, technically, technologically**

2 **at a late stage of development**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **far, greatly, well** *The disease was too far advanced for doctors to operate.* **| fairly, quite | further**

advancement *noun*

ADJ. **individual, personal | collective | career | social | material** *society's need for material advancement* **| economic, scientific, technical, technological**

PREP. **~ in** *advancements in science advancement in the profession* **| ~ to** *her advancement to the position of Supervisor*

PHRASES **an opportunity for advancement** *There are good opportunities for advancement within the company.*

advantage *noun*

1 **thing that helps**

ADJ. **big, considerable, enormous, great, huge, overwhelming | clear, decided/decisive, definite, distinct, material, obvious, positive, real** *Breastfeeding offers a clear advantage to your baby.* **| key, main, major, important, significant | dubious | unfair** *The company has an unfair advantage over its competitors.* **| added, additional** *These computers have the added advantage of being cheap.* **| special | potential | comparative, relative | mutual** *The plan would be to our mutual advantage.* **| natural** *the natural advantages of countries with low labour costs* **| commercial, competitive, economic, educational, electoral, financial, military, personal, political, practical, psychological, social, strategic, tactical, technical, technological | cost, price, speed, tax**

VERB + ADVANTAGE **have | gain, get** *He would gain considerable advantage from staying in that job.* **| bring (sb), give sb, offer (sb)** *Another qualification would give me a big advantage at job interviews.* **| press home** *The commanders were keen to press home their advantage with a further offensive in the north.* **| outweigh** *They argue that the possible risks attached to such vaccines vastly outweigh any advantages.*

PREP. **to sb's ~** *It is to your advantage to delay things for as long as possible.* **| ~ in** *There may be some advantage in laying down a clearer procedure.* **| ~ over** *East coast resorts have the advantage over west coast ones.* **| ~ to** *the advantage to both countries of closer economic ties*

PHRASES **to good advantage, to sb/sth's best advantage** *The bright lighting showed the jewels to their best advantage.*

2 **take advantage of: make use of**

ADJ. **full, maximum** *We took full advantage of the hotel facilities.*

advantageous *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove** *Membership of the union could prove advantageous.* **| become | make sth** *Lower fares make it advantageous to travel in winter.* **| find sth** *You may find it advantageous to wait a few weeks before replying.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | fairly, quite | mutually** *This trade arrangement could be mutually advantageous* **| economically, financially | politically**

PREP. **for** *This scheme could be advantageous for people on low incomes.* **| to** *The new tax system is advantageous to higher-rate taxpayers.*

adventure *noun*

ADJ. **big, exciting, great, wonderful | little** *We had a little adventure yesterday.* **| dangerous, perilous | hair-raising** *hair-raising adventure films* **| romantic | fantasy, foreign, historical, military, sexual**

VERB + ADVENTURE **embark on, have | be looking for, want** *Those of you looking for adventure can shoot the rapids.* **| offer** *Perhaps the war offered adventure, travel, a use for his gifts.*

ADVENTURE + NOUN **film, novel, story | holiday | playground**

PHRASES **quite an adventure** (= very exciting) *Our trip to London was quite an adventure for the children.* **| a sense/spirit of adventure** *The journey began cheerfully with a sense of adventure.*

adverb *noun*

ADJ. **interrogative, sentence**

ADVERB + VERB **modify sth, qualify sth** *Adverbs qualify verbs.*

PHRASES **an adverb of degree/manner/place/time**

adversary *noun*

ADJ. fearsome, formidable | worthy *The British considered him a worthy adversary.* **| old** *The two of them were old adversaries.*

adversity *noun*

VERB + ADVERSITY **be faced with, meet with** *When faced with adversity she was never tempted to give up.* **| overcome, triumph over**

PREP. **in ~** *patience in adversity*

PHRASES **in the face of adversity** *courage in the face of adversity*

advert *noun*

ADJ. **classified, front-page, full-page | magazine, newspaper, television/TV | chocolate, job, etc.**

VERB + ADVERT **place, put, take out** *I put an advert in the local newspaper. She took out a full-page advert in a magazine.* **| carry, publish, run, show** *The paper ran our advert last week.* **| find, see, spot** *I saw the advert in 'The Times'.* **| answer, reply to, respond to**

ADVERT + VERB **appear** *The advert appeared in 'The Guardian'.* **| say sth, show sth, state sth | feature sb/sth** *The advert featured a dolphin swimming around a goldfish bowl.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *A lot of claims are made in the advert.* **| ~ for** *an advert for jeans*

advertise *verb*

ADV. **heavily** *These products have been advertised very heavily.* **| widely** *There are plans to advertise the job more widely.* **| locally, nationally**

PREP. **for** *We are advertising for a babysitter.*

advertisement *noun*

ADJ. **good | discreet | misleading | classified, front-page, full-page** *The classified advertisements are on page 25.* **| magazine, newspaper, press, television/TV | cigarette, job, etc.**

VERB + ADVERTISEMENT **place, put, take out** *We placed advertisements in a number of national newspapers.* **| carry, display, publish, run, show** *Television and radio refused to carry advertisements for the record.* **| find, see, spot | answer, reply to, respond to**

ADVERTISEMENT + VERB **appear | say sth, show sth, state sth | feature sb/sth**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *A lot of claims are made in the advertisement.* **| ~ for**

advice *noun*

ADJ. **constructive, excellent, good, helpful, practical, sensible, sound, useful, valuable** *That's very sound advice.* | **bad, wrong** *I think my solicitor gave me the wrong advice.* | **clear** | **general** | **detailed** | **conflicting** | **confidential** | **impartial, independent** | **free** | **expert, professional, specialist** | **financial, legal, medical**

QUANT. **bit, piece, word** *Can I give you a friendly word of advice?*

VERB + ADVICE **give (sb), offer (sb), pass on, provide (sb with)** *I hope I can pass on some useful advice.* | **get, obtain, receive, take** *I think you need to take legal advice.* | **ask (for), go to sb for, seek, turn to sb for** *Go to your doctor and ask for advice. She asked her mother's advice.* | **accept, act on, follow, heed, listen to, take** *I wished that I had followed her advice.* | **ignore, reject**

ADVICE + NOUN **centre** *The Local Authority runs an advice centre in the town.*

PREP. **against sb's ~** *Permission was given against the advice of the planning officers.* | **on sb's ~** *On the advice of his experts he bought another company.* | **~ about** *advice about bringing up children* | **~ for** *Here is some advice for pregnant women.* | **~ on** *Can you give me some advice on where to buy good maps?* | **~ to** *My advice to you would be to wait a few months.*

advisable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | consider sth, deem sth, think sth** *We thought it advisable to seek police assistance.*

ADV. **always** *It is always advisable to make a will.*

advise *verb*

1 **tell sb what you think they should do**

ADV. **strenuously, strongly** *I strongly advise you not to do this.* | **badly, wrongly** *We were badly advised by our solicitor.* | **properly** | **legally**

PREP. **about** *We can advise parents about education.* | **against** *They advised me against sending cash by post.* | **on** *We will be happy to advise on any financial matters.*

PHRASES **be ill/well advised to do sth** *John would be ill advised to rely on their support. You would be better advised to consult an accountant.*

2 **inform sb of sth**

VERB + ADVISE **be pleased to** *I am pleased to advise you that your application has been accepted.* | **regret to**

PREP. **of**

PHRASES **keep sb advised** *Please keep me advised of new developments in this case.*

adviser *noun*

ADJ. **chief, lead, principal, senior, special** *the government's chief medical adviser* **| close, trusted** *The duke was the king's most trusted adviser.* **| personal | expert, professional | independent | government, presidential | business, careers, economic, environmental, financial, legal, medical, military, policy/ political, public relations, scientific, security, technical**

VERB + ADVISER **act as | appoint, appoint sb (as) | have** *Do you have a financial adviser?* **| consult (with), go to, see, speak to, talk to** *You ought to consult an independent legal adviser.*

ADVISER + VERB **advise sb/sth**

PREP. **~ on** *an adviser on environmental issues* **| ~ to** *She acts as an adviser to the president.*

advocate *noun*

1 **sb who supports sth**

ADJ. **ardent, enthusiastic, firm, great, outspoken, powerful, staunch, strong** *She's a staunch advocate of free trade.* **| chief, leading, main, principal**

PREP. **~ for** *He is one of the leading advocates for a more modern style of worship.* **| ~ of** *an advocate of pacifism*

2 **lawyer**

ADJ. **defence** > Note at PROFESSIONAL(for verbs)

advocate *verb*

ADV. **seriously, strongly** *Heart specialists strongly advocate low-cholesterol diets.*

PHRASES **be widely advocated** *These policies have been widely advocated.*

aerial *noun*

ADJ. **radio, television/TV**

AERIAL + VERB **transmit sth | pick sth up, receive sth** *The aerial receives signals from the ground.*

aeroplane *noun*

ADJ. **private | vintage | model, paper**

VERB + AEROPLANE **fly in, go in, travel in** *I've never flown in an aeroplane.* **| fly, pilot**

AEROPLANE + VERB **fly** *aeroplanes flying overhead* **| take off | come down, land | crash | carry sb/sth** *The aeroplane was carrying 350 people.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *flying in an aeroplane* **| on a/the ~** *The president was never on the aeroplane at all.* > See PLANE

affair *noun*

1 event/situation

ADJ. **whole** *She saw the whole affair as a great joke.* | **glittering, grand** *I knew that the wedding would be a grand affair.* | **sordid, sorry, squalid**

VERB + AFFAIR **deal with, handle** *Many people have criticized the way the government handled the affair.* | **be involved in** | **investigate**

PHRASES **sb's involvement in the affair** *He has tried to play down his involvement in the affair.* | **a state of affairs** *How did this state of affairs come about?* | **wash your hands of the affair** (= to refuse to be responsible for sth or involved in sth)

2 sexual relationship

ADJ. **brief, casual** | **clandestine, secret** | **adulterous, extramarital** | **passionate, torrid** | **unhappy** | **love** *a torrid love affair*

VERB + AFFAIR **carry on, conduct, have** *He's having an affair with a colleague.*

AFFAIR + VERB **go on** *How long has the affair been going on?*

PREP. **~ between** *It's the story of a secret affair between a married teacher and her teenage student.* | **~ with** *an affair with a married man*

3 sth that concerns one person/small group

ADJ. **family, personal, sb's own** *It's a family affair.*

PHRASES **sb's affair** *What I do at the weekend is my affair.* | **no affair of sb's** *That's no affair of yours.*

4 affairs: important matters

ADJ. **current** *a current affairs programme on television* | **private, public** | **domestic, home, internal, national** | **community, local** | **European, foreign, external, international, world** *the minister for foreign affairs* | **business,**

financial, legal | commercial, consumer, cultural, economic, environmental, military, political, religious, social

VERB + AFFAIR **administer, arrange, attend to, conduct, manage, run** *I am trying to arrange my father's financial affairs.* **| settle, wind up | interfere in, meddle in**

PHRASES **affairs of state** *The Cabinet will be discussing certain affairs of state.* **| put/ set your affairs in order** *I want to put my affairs in order before I die.* **| a state of affairs** *the current state of affairs in schools*

affect *verb*

1 influence

ADV. **greatly, materially, radically, significantly, very much | barely, hardly, not unduly** *Sales did not seem unduly affected.* **| slightly | clearly | directly | indirectly | adversely, badly, seriously, severely**

VERB + AFFECT **be likely to** *developments that are likely to affect the environment*

2 make sb sad/angry

ADV. **deeply, profoundly** *Her death affected him deeply.*

affection *noun*

ADJ. **deep, genuine, great, real, special, strong, warm | mutual**

VERB + AFFECTION **feel, have, hold sb in, retain** *He was held in great affection by hundreds of students.* **| display, express, give sb, show (sb) | get, receive | crave, need, want** *He just wants a bit of affection.* **| gain, win** *She had tried hard to win his affection.* **| alienate**

PREP. **with ~** *He'll be remembered with genuine affection.* **| ~ for** *I have a deep affection for his mother.* **| ~ to/towards** *The teacher showed affection towards all her pupils.*

PHRASES **a display of affection** *I don't go in for public displays of affection.* **| a feeling of affection** *a strong feeling of affection* **| love and affection** *I yearn for the love and affection I once had.* **| the object of sb's affections** *The object of his affections was a young opera singer.* **| a sign of affection, a show of affection**

affinity *noun*

1 strong feeling that you like/understand sb/sth

ADJ. **close, great, natural, real, special, strong** *I felt a great affinity with the people of the Highlands.* **| natural** *He has a natural affinity with numbers.*

VERB + AFFINITY **feel, have, share** *It's important that you share an affinity with your husband.* **| display, show**

PREP. **~ between** *an affinity between the two women* **| ~ for** *Many girls do show an affinity for craft skills.* **| ~ towards** *Jo feels a great affinity towards Pamela.* **| ~ with** *an affinity with animals*

2 similar quality in two or more people/things

ADJ. **close, great**

QUANT. **degree, level**

VERB + AFFINITY **have** *A house design should have some affinity with the surrounding architecture.* **| show** *In his poems he showed some affinity with Coleridge.*

PREP. **~ between** *There is a close affinity between these two species.* **| ~ with** *an affinity with earlier poets*

afflict *verb*

ADV. **badly, severely**

PHRASES **be afflicted with** *He's badly afflicted with a skin disorder.*

afford *verb*

ADV. **easily, well** *She can well afford to pay for herself.* **| barely, hardly, ill, (only) just, not really** *an amount which we could ill afford to pay*

VERB + AFFORD **be able/unable to, can/can't, could (not)** *I can't afford to eat in restaurants.*

affront *noun*

ADJ. **personal**

VERB + AFFRONT **cause | regard/see/take sth as** *He took his son's desertion as a personal affront.*

PREP. **~ to** *This remark caused affront to many people.*

afloat *adj.*

1 **floating on water**

VERBS **be | remain, stay | set sth** *The children set their new boat afloat on the lake.* **| keep sth** *struggling to keep the vessel afloat*

2 **able to survive financially**

VERBS **keep, stay** *He is struggling to keep afloat after a series of emotional and health problems.* **| keep sth** *They had to sell their assets to keep the business afloat.*

afraid *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, grow | make sb** *What has made you so deeply afraid of your boss?*

ADV. **deeply, desperately, extremely, horribly, mortally, really, terribly, very | almost** *She was tense, almost afraid to open the letter.* **| a bit, half, a little, rather, slightly** *He was half afraid to look at her.* **| just, simply** *You do know, don't you? You are just afraid to tell me.* **| genuinely | suddenly** *He stopped abruptly, suddenly afraid to say the words out loud.* **| physically**

PREP. **for** *Roger was very afraid for her.* **| of** *Charlie is afraid of marriage.*

PHRASES **nothing to be afraid of** *Don't worry. There's nothing to be afraid of.*

aftermath *noun*

ADJ. **immediate** *The president visited the region in the immediate aftermath of the disaster.*

VERB + AFTERMATH **cope with, deal with** *How does a country cope with the aftermath of war?*

PREP. **in the ~ of** *He first took office in the aftermath of the civil war.*

afternoon *noun*

ADJ. **this, tomorrow, yesterday | Friday, Saturday, etc. | early, late | April, May, etc. | spring, summer, etc. | long** *the long sunny afternoons* **| golden, hot, sunny, warm | grey, rainy, wet**

VERB + AFTERNOON **spend** *We spent the afternoon sitting by the pool.*

AFTERNOON + VERB **progress, wear on** *As the afternoon wore on he began to look unhappy.*

AFTERNOON + NOUN **tea** *Afternoon tea is served on the terrace.* **| light, sun** *The afternoon sun shone full on her.*

PREP. **by ~, during the ~, in the ~, on Monday, etc. ~**

PHRASES **an/the afternoon off** *You deserve an afternoon off.*

age *noun*

1 **how old sb/sth is**

ADJ. **early, young** *He was sent away to school at an early age.* | **advanced, great, old** *He was still active even at the advanced age of 87. White hair is a sign of great age. She dreaded old age.* | **middle** *a pleasant woman in early middle age* | **childbearing, pensionable, retirement, school, school-leaving, voting, working** *children of school age*

VERB + AGE **attain, get to, live to, reach** *When you get to my age you get a different perspective on life. She lived to the age of 75.* | **feel, look** *She was beginning to feel her age* (= feel that she was getting old). | **lower, raise** *The voting age was lowered from 21 to 18 years.*

AGE + NOUN **group, range** | **limit**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *At your age, I had already started work.* | **between the ~s** *children between the ages of five and eleven* | **by the ~** *He could read by the age of four.* | **for sb's ~** *He's quite a big boy for his age.* | **over the ~** *Twelve million people in Great Britain are over retirement age.* | **under ~** *It is illegal to sell alcohol to children who are under age* (= not legally old enough). | **under the ~** *It is illegal to sell alcohol to children under the age of 18.* | **with ~** *A lot of wines improve with age.* | **~ of** *He left school at the age of 18.*

PHRASES **the age of consent** *The general age of consent for sexual activity is 16.* | **sb's own age** *She needs a friend of her own age to play with.* | **years of age** *He's 20 years of age.* > See OLD AGE

2 **period of history**

ADJ. **another, different** *This exquisite little hotel seemed to belong to a different age.* | **Elizabethan, Victorian, etc.** | **Bronze, Ice, Stone** | **computer, modern, nuclear, etc.** | **golden** *the golden age of cinema*

PREP. **during the ~** *He lived during the Elizabethan age.* | **in a/the ~** *In an age when few women became politicians, her career was unusual.* | **through the ~s** *an exhibition of spinning through the ages* | **~ of** *the age of the wireless communication*

PHRASES **in this day and age** (= in the period we now live in) *Why dress so formally in this day and age?*

3 **ages/an age: a very long time**

VERB + AGE **spend, take** *It took an age for us all to get on the boat.*

PHRASES **absolutely ages** *I've been sitting here for absolutely ages.* | **ages ago** *Carlos left ages ago.* | **for ages** *We had to wait for ages!*

age *verb*

ADV. **considerably, greatly, a lot, really** *The shock has aged her considerably. My mother has really aged since she became ill.* **| a little** *He had put on weight and aged a little.* **| rapidly, suddenly** *a rapidly ageing population* **| prematurely | well** *This wine has not aged well.*

agency *noun*

ADJ. **official | federal, government, public, state | UN | external, independent, outside | commercial, private | voluntary | international, local | multilateral | adoption, advertising, aid, dating, employment, estate, intelligence, marketing, news, press, recruitment, relief, research, travel, etc. | appropriate** *Details of the problem will be logged by the Help Desk staff who will then contact the appropriate agency.*

PREP. **through an/the ~** *He managed to find a job through an agency.* > Note at ORGANIZATION(for verbs)

agenda *noun*

ADJ. **agreed | clear** *A clear agenda will win votes in the next election.* **| five-point, etc.** *An 18-point agenda was drawn up for the meeting.* **| hidden, secret** *He accused the government of having a hidden agenda.* **| real | full | narrow** *The party has a rather narrow political agenda.* **| radical | public | domestic, international | economic, legislative, policy/political, research**

VERB + AGENDA **have | agree on, draw up, establish, set** *The college needs to draw up an agenda for change.* **| follow** *We were following an agenda set by the students themselves.* **| add sth to, put sth on** *I will put this on the agenda for the next meeting.* **| leave sth off, remove sth from, take sth off** *The question of pay had been left off the agenda.* **| circulate** *A copy of the agenda is circulated to delegates a month before the conference.*

AGENDA + NOUN **item**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *Safety at work is on the agenda for next month's meeting.* **| off the ~** *(figurative) An expensive holiday is definitely off the agenda this year* (= not sth we can consider). **| ~ for** *We have an agreed agenda for action.*

PHRASES **firmly/high on the agenda** *In our company, quality is high on the agenda.* **| an item/a point on the agenda, next on the agenda** *Next on the agenda is deciding where we're going to live.* **| top of the agenda** *Improving trade between the two countries will be top of the agenda at the talks.* > Special page at MEETING

agent *noun*

1 **works in an agency**

ADJ. **advertising, election, estate, insurance, land, letting, literary, managing, parliamentary, patent, press, publicity, travel | local** *The company has developed sales through local agents in key markets.*

VERB + AGENT **employ, have, use** *I have an agent who deals with all my contracts.* **| appoint, engage, get (sb), hire** *If you want to get published, get yourself an agent!* **| act as | sack**

PREP. **through an ~** *She got the work through an agent.* **| ~ for** *an agent for a shipping company* > Note at JOB

2 **spy**

ADJ. **intelligence | enemy, foreign | federal, government | secret, undercover | double** *As a double agent, he worked for the Americans and the Russians.*

VERB + AGENT **work as**

3 **person/thing that has an effect**

ADJ. **chief, main, primary, prime, principal | effective | human | moral, rational | free** *I told him I couldn't stop him, he was a free agent.*

PREP. **~ for** *The charity is an agent for social change.*

PHRASES **an agent for/of change**

aggravate *verb*

ADV. **greatly, seriously, severely** *Their negative reactions have greatly aggravated the situation.* **| further**

aggression *noun*

ADJ. **extreme, intense | controlled, mild | naked, open** *a display of naked aggression* **| pent-up** *ways of releasing pent-up aggression* **| unprovoked | physical, verbal | human | external, foreign** *The president announced that the country would not tolerate foreign aggression.* **| American, British, etc. | military, police**

QUANT. **act** *Acts of aggression against local shop owners should be reported to the police.*

VERB + AGGRESSION **display, express, show** *the brutality and aggression displayed by the soldiers* **| channel, direct** *He managed to channel his aggression into sport.* **| control | release | encourage** *Do toy guns encourage aggression?*

PREP. **~ against, ~ by** *Aggression by one nationality against another often leads to war.* **| towards** *It showed no aggression towards other dogs.*

aggressive *adj.*

1 **likely to fight/argue with other people**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get | make sb** *Watching violence on TV makes some children more aggressive.*

ADV. **extremely, particularly, really, very | increasingly | quite, rather | openly** *Her mood became openly aggressive when his name was mentioned.*

PREP. **towards** *He warned that his dog was aggressive towards strangers.*

2 **behaving in a determined way**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *the company's highly aggressive marketing techniques* **| fairly, somewhat**

aggrieved *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound**

ADV. **deeply, much, very | rather, slightly, somewhat**

PREP. **at** *James was rather aggrieved at Cameron.* **| by** *The villagers felt deeply aggrieved by the closing of the railway station.*

agility *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, surprising | mental, physical** *I admired his considerable mental agility.*

VERB + AGILITY **have | show** *She shows great agility on the tennis court.*

PREP. **with ~** *He jumped over the wall with surprising agility.*

agitated *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** *He sounded very agitated on the phone.* **| become, get, grow | make sb**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, very | increasingly | a little, quite, rather, slightly | visibly**

PREP. **about** *She's agitated about getting there on time.* **| at** *She started to grow agitated at the sight of the spider.*

PHRASES **in an agitated state** *By now he was in a very agitated state.*

agitation *noun*

1 **worry/excitement**

ADJ. **acute, considerable, extreme, great**

VERB + AGITATION **show** *trying not to show her agitation* **| conceal, hide** *He could not hide his agitation.*

PREP. **in sb's ~** *He knocked his glass over in his agitation.* **| with ~** *She was wriggling on the seat with agitation.*

PHRASES **a feeling/state of agitation**

2 **public protest**

ADJ. **growing | mass, popular, public | political**

VERB + AGITATION **engage in, turn to** *The organization is turning to political agitation in order to achieve its aims.* **| stir up**

PREP. **~ against** *There has been mass agitation against the president.* **| ~ for** *There is growing agitation for reform of local government.*

agony *noun*

ADJ. extreme, intense | absolute, pure, sheer | exquisite | mental, physical | death *The little creature squirmed in its death agonies.*

VERB + AGONY endure, go through, suffer *He endured agonies of loneliness and misery. They went through agony in the search for their missing relatives.* **| cause, inflict** *She was causing David a great deal of agony.* **| prolong** *Don't prolong the agony?just tell me the result!* **| groan in, scream in | be contorted in, writhe in** *His face was contorted in agony as he tried to lift himself out of the chair.*

PREP. in ~ *The soldier died in agony.* **| in an ~ of** *She mumbled an apology in an agony of embarrassment.*

PHRASES a groan/scream of agony

agree *verb*

1 **share opinion**

ADV. **heartily, strongly, very much** *I very much agree with the prime minister.* | **absolutely, completely, entirely, fully, wholeheartedly** *I agree entirely with what you have said.* | **broadly, generally** *It is generally agreed that more funding is needed for education.* | **unanimously** | **gravely, lamely, meekly, soberly, tartly** *'That's true,' she agreed gravely.*

VERB + AGREE **cannot** | **be inclined to** *I'm inclined to agree there's nothing we can do.*

PREP. **about** *We don't always agree about everything.* | **on/upon** *Are we all agreed on this?* | **with** *Do you agree with me that the scheme won't work?*

PHRASES **I couldn't agree more** *I couldn't agree more with what has just been said.* | **I quite agree, I'm sure you will agree** *I'm sure you'll agree that this issue is vitally important to the success of the company.*

2 **say yes**

ADV. **voluntarily** | **readily** *She suggested a walk in the open air and he readily agreed.* | **grudgingly, reluctantly** | **kindly** *Edith Harlow has kindly agreed to help.* | **tacitly** | **provisionally**

PREP. **to** *He agreed to our proposals.*

3 **decide**

ADV. **expressly** | **tacitly** | **verbally** | **provisionally** *It was provisionally agreed that 12 August was to be the date.*

VERB + AGREE **be unable to, fail to** *The two countries were unable to agree on a common strategy.*

PHRASES **agree to differ/disagree** *We must just agree to disagree on this point.* | **(be) mutually agreed** *working towards mutually agreed goals* | **internationally/**

nationally agreed *nationally agreed guideline*s

agreeable *adj.*

1 pleasant

VERBS **be, look, sound** *It all sounds very agreeable.* **| find sb/sth** *He finds her very agreeable.* **| make yourself** *She did her best to make herself agreeable.* **| highly, most, particularly, very** *It was a most agreeable evening.* **| quite**

ADV. **mutually** *We tried to negotiate a mutually agreeable solution.*

2 willing to accept/do sth

VERBS **be**

ADV. **perfectly, quite**

PREP. **to** *He was perfectly agreeable to the idea.*

agreement *noun*

1 contract/decision

ADJ. **draft** *The draft agreement will be available two weeks before the meeting.* | **formal, written** | **legal, (legally) binding** *The agreement will be legally binding.* | **informal, tacit, verbal** | **voluntary** | **definitive** | **bilateral, international, multilateral, national** | **ceasefire, credit, hire-purchase, peace, trade**

VERB + AGREEMENT **negotiate, work towards** *We are working towards a formal ceasefire agreement.* | **conclude, enter into, reach, sign** *After hours of talks the government and the union have reached an agreement.* | **have** *We have an agreement to always tell each other the truth about everything.* | **be bound by** *We signed the agreement so we are now bound by it.* | **adhere to, honour, keep to, stick to** *You have not kept to our agreement.* | **break, go back on, renege on, violate** *Some employers reneged on agreements once the recession set in.*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *a clause in the agreement* | **under an/the ~** *Under the agreement, the farmer is not allowed to use this field.* | **~ between** *an agreement between the company and the unions* | **~ on** *They signed two agreements on improving economic co-operation.* | **~ with** *a trade agreement with China*

PHRASES **breach of agreement** *He sued the company for breach of agreement.* | **the terms of the agreement** *The terms of the agreement do not allow such exports.*

2 state of agreeing

ADJ. **absolute, complete, full, total** | **broad, general, widespread** | **mutual**

VERB + AGREEMENT **arrive at, come to, reach** *I am hopeful that we can come to an agreement. The two sides failed to reach agreement.* | **nod** *He nodded his agreement.* | **get** *We will need to get the agreement of the local council.*

PREP. **by ~** *The separation is by mutual agreement.* | **in ~** *I think we are all in agreement that prices should be kept low.* | **in ~ with** *I am in agreement with you that she should be given more responsibilities.* | **with ~** *With the agreement of all members of the club, we decided to organize a trip.* | **~ among** *There is agreement among teachers that changes need to be made.* | **~ between** *As yet there is no agreement between the two sides.* | **~ on** *As yet there is no agreement on policies.* >

Special page at MEETING

agriculture *noun*

ADJ. **modern | efficient | intensive | organic | sustainable | traditional | peasant | subsistence**

VERB + AGRICULTURE **be employed in, be engaged in, work in | depend on** *50 % of the country's population depend on agriculture.*

aid *noun*

1 money, food, etc.

ADJ. **emergency | humanitarian | cash, development, economic, financial, food, legal, medical, military, relief** *Legal aid* (= government money for legal advice) *is a fundamental part of our system of justice.* **| federal, government, state | bilateral, external, foreign, international, overseas** *The country relies on foreign aid*

VERB + AID **appeal for, call for** *The country's president has appealed for international aid in the wake of the disaster.* **| extend, give (sb), grant (sb), provide (sb with), send (sb) | get, receive | depend on, rely on | promise | cut (off), suspend, withdraw, withhold** *The British government has now suspended humanitarian aid to the area.*

AID + NOUN **agency, worker | budget, package, programme** *a $14 million aid package*

2 help

VERB + AID **ask for, enlist** *We enlisted the aid of John and his family.* **| come/go to sb's** (= to help someone) *She screamed loudly and two people came to her aid.*

PREP. **in ~ of** *collecting money in aid of charity* **| with/without the ~ of** *She is now able to walk with the aid of a stick.*

3 person/thing that helps

ADJ. **effective, essential, excellent, important, useful, valuable | classroom, teaching, training | audio-visual, computer, visual | hearing, walking | memory | buoyancy**

PREP. **~ to** *essential aids to learning* > See FIRST AID

aide *noun*

ADJ. **close, trusted** *one of the prime minister's closest aides* **| senior, top | junior | personal, presidential, royal**

VERB + AIDE **act as, serve as, work as**

PREP. **~ to** *He served as an aide to the former president.*

Aids *noun*

ADJ. **full-blown** *Once you are infected you will?sooner or later?develop full-blown Aids.*

QUANT. **case** *Six cases of Aids have been reported.*

VERB + AIDS **have, suffer from | be/become infected with, contract, develop, get | die of | diagnose**

AIDS + NOUN **patient, sufferer, victim | virus**

PHRASES **the spread of Aids** *a worldwide campaign to prevent the spread of Aids* > Special page at ILLNESS

ailment *noun*

ADJ. **common, minor, trivial | chronic, serious | childhood | physical | chest, heart, stomach**

VERB + AILMENT **be afflicted with, get, have, suffer from** *I got all the usual childhood ailments.* **| cure, treat | cause**

aim *noun*

1 **purpose/goal**

ADJ. **broad, general, overall | basic, central, essential, fundamental | chief, first, key, main, major, primary, prime, principal, overriding | sole** *His sole aim in life is to enjoy himself.* **| clear, explicit** *It is important to have a clear aim in view.* **| ambitious | high, worthy** *Simple truth must be the highest aim of any real enquiry.* **| limited, modest | legitimate | common** *I want to see a strong and united country in which people work together with common aims.* **| underlying** *Although the report covers many areas, its underlying aim is to ensure that another accident never happens.* **| immediate, initial | original | eventual, ultimate** *His ultimate aim was to force the prime minister to resign.* **| long-term, short-term | avowed, declared, express/expressed, stated** *The express aim of the treaty is to keep the whole region free from nuclear weapons.* **| war | policy/political, strategic**

VERB + AIM **have | set youself | achieve, fulfil** *You will have to work hard to achieve your aim.* **| further, pursue** *They were intent on furthering their aims. The country is still pursuing its aim of joining the EU.*

PREP. **with the ~ of** *She started the organization with the aim of helping local people.*

PHRASES **aims and objectives** *What are the aims and objectives of this visit?*

2 **pointing weapon, etc.**

ADJ. **careful** *I'll take more careful aim next time.* **| poor** *His aim was poor and he missed the target.*

VERB + AIM **take**

PREP. **~ at** *He took aim at the target and fired.*

aim *verb*

1 **try/plan to achieve sth**

ADV. **directly**

PREP. **at** *She's aiming at a scholarship this year. The initiative is aimed at helping young people.* | **for** *He is aiming for a win in this race.*

PHRASES **aim high** (= to attempt to achieve a lot) *a young man who is prepared to aim high*

2 **intend sth for sb**

ADV. **clearly, directly, squarely | largely, mainly, mostly, primarily, principally | particularly, specifically**

PHRASES **be aimed at** *educational courses aimed particularly at older people*

3 **point/direct sth at sb**

ADV. **directly, straight | deliberately**

PREP. **at** *She aimed the gun straight at the intruder.* | **for** *Aim for his legs, not his body.*

air *noun*

1 gas/space

ADJ. **hot, warm | chill, cold, cool, crisp | clean, clear, fresh, pure** *We need some fresh air in this stuffy room!* **| sweet** *The air was sweet with incense.* **| foul/ foul-smelling, polluted, stale** *the polluted air of our cities*

the musty smell of stale air **| damp, humid | dry | still** *Nothing moved in the still air.* **| thin** *It's difficult carrying such heavy loads in the thin air of the mountains.* **| thick** *The air was thick with cigarette smoke.* **| country, mountain, sea | evening, morning, night** *Music filled the night air.*

QUANT. **blast, gust** *We felt a blast of cold air as she opened the door.* **| current** *warm currents of air* **| breath** *He drew in another breath of air.*

VERB + AIR **breathe (in), gulp in, suck in** *Land crabs breathe air and cannot swim. She gulped in the fresh mountain air.* **| fight for, gasp for** *She was gasping for air as she ran out of the burning house.* **| smell, sniff** *The dog stretched and sniffed the air.* **| fill, hang in** *The tang of some wild herb hung in the air.*

AIR + VERB **blow, rise, waft** *The cool night air wafted in the open windows.*

AIR + NOUN **pollution | quality** *equipment to monitor air quality* **| pressure | current**

PREP. **in/into the ~** *I kicked the ball high into the air.* **| through the ~** *Spicy smells wafted through the air.*

PHRASES **in the open air** (= outside) *The market is held in the open air.*

2 for planes

AIR + NOUN **travel | fare | traffic** *We are cleared by Air Traffic Control to taxi and take off.* **| crash, disaster | attack, strike** *Three buildings were bombed last night in an air strike on the city.*

PREP. **by ~** (= by plane) *It only takes three hours by air.* **| from the ~** *The hideout is* *clearly visible from the air.*

PHRASES **in mid-air** *The two planes collided in mid air.*

3 **impression**

VERB + AIR **have, retain** *You have an air of authority.* **| add, bring, give (sth)** *A stone balcony gives the building an air of elegance.*

PREP. **with an/the ~** *He leaned towards Melissa with an air of great confidentiality.* **| ~ of**

air *verb*

ADV. **in public, openly, publicly** *The issues were openly aired and discussed by the group.*

aircraft *noun*

ADJ. **fixed-wing, jet, light, low-flying, microlight, supersonic** *attacks by helicopters and fixed-wing aircraft* | **cargo, civil/civilian, commercial, passenger, private** | **combat, fighter, military, reconnaissance, surveillance, transport** | **enemy** | **burning, crashed, damaged, stricken** | **model** *His passion is making model aircraft.*

VERB + AIRCRAFT **fly, pilot** *The aircraft was flown by a young American pilot.* | **land** | **crash** *The pilot overshot the runway and crashed his aircraft.* | **shoot down** *To be an ace you had to shoot down five enemy aircraft.*

AIRCRAFT + VERB **fly** | **take off** *The aircraft is due to take off at midnight.* | **land** | **taxi** *The aircraft taxied along the runway.* | **crash** | **carry sth** | **attack sth, bomb sth**

AIRCRAFT + NOUN **industry** | **production** | **manufacturer** | **engine, parts** | **engineer** | **hangar** | **noise** *He claimed that aircraft noise was the worst form of air pollution in London.* | **wreckage**

airline *noun*

ADJ. **big, large, major | domestic, international, national | commercial, private, state/state-owned** *He operates a private airline.* **| charter, scheduled** *Prices on charter airlines are usually lower.*

VERB + AIRLINE **operate, run**

AIRLINE + VERB **fly, operate** *The airline operates mainly between Florida and Puerto Rico.*

AIRLINE + NOUN **business, company, industry | flight, service** *All scheduled airline services will be affected by the strike.* **| employee, operator, pilot | passenger | reservation, ticket**

airport *noun*

ADJ. **big, large, major | small | busy | domestic, international, local, regional | civilian, military**

VERB + AIRPORT **depart from, fly from, take off from** *We will fly from Chicago's O'Hare airport.* **| arrive at, land at, touch down at** *The plane touched down at Glasgow airport just before midday.* **| pass through, use**

AIRPORT + NOUN **building, terminal | lounge | security | hotel**

PREP. **at an/the ~** *waiting at the airport*

airspace *noun*

ADJ. **controlled, restricted | British, French, etc.**

VERB + AIRSPACE **cross (into), drift into, enter, fly into, stray into, violate** *The jet had crossed into Russian airspace.* **| fly out of, pass out of | open** *They have decided to open their airspace to commercial aircraft.* **| close**

PREP. **in ~** *The glider was in Dutch airspace.* **| out of ~** *They were now out of controlled airspace.*

PHRASES **a violation of airspace** *The president said that all future violations of our airspace would result in serious consequences.*

ajar *adj.*

VERBS **be, stand** *The office door stood ajar.* **| leave sth** *She had left the kitchen door slightly ajar.*

ADV. **slightly**

akin *adj.* **akin to sth**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **closely** *This game is closely akin to rugby.* **| somewhat** *A balalaika is an instrument somewhat akin to a guitar.*

PHRASES **something akin to sth** *She was wearing something akin to a pineapple on her head.*

alarm *noun*

1 **fear/worry**

ADJ. **considerable, great | growing | sudden | public** *There is growing public alarm at this increase in crime.* **| unnecessary**

VERB + ALARM **cause, create, provoke** *The head teacher's policies have provoked alarm among parents.* **| express, register** *Many people have expressed alarm at the plans. His face registered no alarm at all when I told him the news.*

PREP. **in ~** *He shouted out in alarm.* **| to sb's ~** *To her parents' alarm, she announced that she intended to travel the world.* **| with ~** *The news has been greeted with alarm.* **| ~ about/at/over** *There has been considerable alarm about the new proposals.*

PHRASES **alarm and despondency** *(often humorous) He loves spreading alarm and despondency.* **| cause for alarm** *I see no cause for alarm, as she often arrives late.*

2 **warning of danger**

ADJ. **false** *The fire service was called out, but it was a false alarm.*

VERB + ALARM **give, raise, sound** *The guard raised the alarm when he discovered that six prisoners had escaped.*

ALARM + NOUN **call** *Many birds give alarm calls to warn of danger.*

3 **device**

ADJ. **fire, smoke | burglar, intruder, security | car | personal, rape** *Lizzie was carrying a rape alarm but it was out of reach in her handbag.* **| radio**

VERB + ALARM **set** *I set my alarm for 6.30.* **| activate, set off, trigger** *Unfortunately any little noise can set off the alarm.* **| switch off, turn off | be fitted with** *The fire brigade recommends that every house is fitted with a smoke alarm.* **| fit, install | test**

ALARM + VERB **go off, ring, sound** *The alarm went off at 7 o'clock. Suddenly the* *alarm sounded and they all had to leave the building.*

ALARM + NOUN **bell, clock, signal, system | call** *Book an alarm call if you need to make an early start.*

alarmed *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow** *She began to grow alarmed when she realized how late it was.*

ADV. **extremely, greatly, seriously, thoroughly, very | increasingly | faintly, a little, quite, rather, slightly | (not) unduly** *The government is not unduly alarmed by these figures.*

PREP. **at** *She was alarmed at the prospect of travelling alone.* **| by** *I was slightly alarmed by what Susan told me.*

PHRASES **nothing to be alarmed about** *The doctors have decided to keep him in hospital overnight but there is nothing to be alarmed about.*

alarming *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | find sth** *I find the prospect of being without work extremely alarming.*

ADV. **extremely, particularly, very | faintly, a little, quite, rather, slightly**

album *noun*

1 **book**

ADJ. **family, wedding | photo/photograph, stamp**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *I keep the photographs in an album.*

2 **CD/cassette/record**

ADJ. **best-selling, good, great** *Their best-selling album has won three awards.* **| debut, first | double | live | solo** *It's the singer's first solo album.* **| compilation**

VERB + ALBUM **make, produce, record** *The singer recorded her second album in Los Angeles.* **| put out, release** *She has not put out a new album this year.*

ALBUM + VERB **come out** *His latest album comes out in the spring.*

ALBUM + NOUN **chart**

alcohol *noun*

ADJ. **excess/excessive** *the dangers of excessive alcohol* **| pure** *Is it possible for cars to run on pure alcohol?*

QUANT. **drop, unit** *You need to be careful how many units of alcohol you drink in a week.* **| level** *The driver had more than the permitted level of alcohol in his blood.*

VERB + ALCOHOL **consume, drink | avoid, keep off, not touch, stay off** *I haven't touched a drop of alcohol for three weeks.* **| abuse** *(formal) Most drinkers do not abuse alcohol at all.*

ALCOHOL + NOUN **content, level** *It can take a long time for blood alcohol levels to fall.* **| consumption, intake, use | abuse, addiction, misuse | problem** *People can find it hard to admit they have an alcohol problem.*

PHRASES **low alcohol** (= containing very little alcohol) *a low alcohol beer*

alcoholic *noun*

ADJ. **chronic | reformed**

VERB + ALCOHOLIC **become, turn into** *Howe was turning into an alcoholic because of the stress of his job.*

ALCOHOLIC + VERB **dry out, recover** *I don't think an alcoholic can dry out without proper medical help.*

alcoholism *noun*

ADJ. **chronic**

VERB + ALCOHOLISM **suffer from** *Three people in the family suffer from alcoholism.* **|** **combat, treat** > Special page at ILLNESS

ale *noun*

ADJ. **fine, good** *This pub specializes in fine ales.* **| real** (= made and stored in the traditional way), **traditional** *the growth in demand for real ale* **| brown, light, pale | strong**

QUANT. **pint | barrel, bottle, can, glass, tankard** *Fresh barrels of ale were brought up from the cellar.*

VERB + ALE **down** (*informal*), **drink, sip** *He drank several pints of ale.* **| brew, make**

ALE + NOUN **house**

alert *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become | remain, stay | keep sb** *The machine should help to keep the pilot alert.*

ADV. **very | fully | immediately, instantly, suddenly** *There was a noise outside and he was suddenly alert.* **| always, constantly | mentally** *He was as mentally alert as a man half his age.*

PREP. **to** *Climbers need to be alert to possible dangers.*

alert *noun*

ADJ. **red** *His sudden disappearance triggered a red alert among his friends.* **| nationwide | bomb, fire, flood, pollution, security** *A security alert was issued after four men escaped from the prison.*

VERB + ALERT **issue, put out, raise, sound** *They rang the church bells to sound the alert and the villagers then fled.* **| spark, trigger | call off** *The alert was called off when it was found that the bomb was not live.*

ALERT + VERB **go out** *A nationwide alert went out for three escaped prisoners.*

PREP. **on the ~ | ~ for** *You should always be on the alert for anyone who looks suspicious.*

PHRASES **be on full alert** *The security forces are now on full alert.* **| keep/put/place sb on full alert** *Thousands of police were put on full alert at all main roads leading to the city.* **| a state of alert** *The army was yesterday placed on a state of alert in case of more riots.*

alias *noun*

VERB + ALIAS **adopt, use** *After her escape from prison, Claire Potter adopted the alias Margaret Smith.*

PREP. **under an/the ~** (= using another name) *Five years ago he had lived in France under an alias.*

alibi *noun*

ADJ. **cast-iron, good, perfect, solid** *She was in the office all of Wednesday and so has a cast-iron alibi.* **| false**

VERB + ALIBI **have | establish, provide, supply** *The videotape would have been useful to establish alibis for the defendants.*

PREP. **~ for** *The accused was not able to provide an alibi for the evening.*

alien *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become | find sth** *It was an act of violence that she found alien and shocking.*

ADV. **very | completely, entirely, totally, utterly | quite, somewhat | essentially** *living in an essentially alien culture*

PREP. **to** *They spoke a language totally alien to him.*

alien *noun*

ADJ. enemy *During the war, he was imprisoned as an enemy alien.* **| illegal** *Illegal aliens are usually deported to their country of origin.* **| undesirable | resident**

alienation *noun*

ADJ. **growing**

PREP. **~ from** *his growing alienation from his family*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of alienation** *There is a growing feeling of alienation among young unemployed people.*

alight *adj.*

1 **burning**

VERBS **be | catch** *His clothing caught alight.* **| remain, stay** *hoping that the fire would remain alight overnight* **| set sth** *The building had been set alight by the killer.* **| keep sth** *The fires had to be kept alight each night.*

ADV. **well** *The fire should be well alight by now.*

2 **excited**

VERBS **be**

PHRASES **alight with excitement/laughter/pleasure** *The children's eyes were alight with excitement.*

align *verb*

ADV. **accurately, correctly, properly | fully | roughly | horizontally, vertically**

PREP. **along** *He argued that important historical sites were aligned along straight lines of mystic energy.* **| with** *This pillar is roughly aligned with the others.*
PHRASAL VERBS align yourself with sb/sth

ADV. **closely, firmly** *The group does not want to align itself too closely with the government.*

alignment *noun*

1 **arrangement in correct position**

ADJ. **correct**

VERB + ALIGNMENT **bring sth into**

PREP. **in ~ (with sth)** *The door needs to be in alignment with the frame before you start work on it.* **| out of ~** *A few of the tiles were clearly out of alignment.*

2 **political support**

ADJ. **close | military, political**

VERB + ALIGNMENT **establish, form | maintain**

PREP. **~ between** *It is very difficult to maintain the alignment between the two countries since the trade dispute.* **| ~ with** *Britain formed a close alignment with Egypt in the last century.*

alike *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem**

ADV. **remarkably, very (much) | exactly** *Though John and Andrew look exactly alike, they act quite differently.*

PREP. **in** *The two towns are very much alike in size and population.*

alive *adj.*

1 **living**

VERBS **be, seem | remain, stay** *Lost and so far from other human life, he faced a desperate struggle to stay alive.* **| keep sb** *Doctors fought to keep her alive.* **| be buried, be burnt**

ADV. **very much** *The old rascal is still very much alive.* **| barely, only half** *For four days he seemed barely alive.* **| still** *I wasn't sure if he was still alive.*

PHRASES **alive and kicking** *My mother is still alive and kicking.* **| alive and well** *At any moment he may turn up alive and well.* **| dead or alive** *The police are desperate to catch this man dead or alive.* **| lucky to be alive** *It was a very narrow escape and we are lucky to be alive.* **| more dead than alive** *Poor child, she looks more dead than alive.*

2 **full of life**

VERBS **be, feel, seem** *I feel really alive in the country!* **| come** *The city comes alive at night.* **| bring sb/sth** *The wealth of detail in his book really brings it alive.*

ADV. **really, truly, very | fully | intensely | only half** *She realized that she had only been half alive for the last four years.* **| suddenly** *His eyes were suddenly alive with excitement.*

PREP. **with** *The hall was alive with the sound of voices.*

3 **continuing to exist**

VERBS **be | remain | keep sth** *The people try to keep the old traditions alive.*

ADV. **very much** *The old customs are still very much alive in this region.*

PHRASES **alive and well** *The art of debate is alive and well in our schools.*

4 **aware of sth**

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **very much | keenly**

PREP. **to** *He remained keenly alive to the dangers.*

allegation *noun*

ADJ. **damaging, serious | false, unfounded, unproven, unsubstantiated, untrue, wild | true** *The defendants in the libel case maintain that their allegations are true.* **| fresh, further, new** *There have been fresh allegations of atrocities.* **| widespread | corruption**

VERB + ALLEGATION **make, publish | retract, withdraw** *I advise you to withdraw your allegation before I contact my lawyer.* **| be at the centre of, be confronted with, face** *the school at the centre of these allegations* **| deny, dismiss, dispute, reject | answer, counter, refute** *The minister has the right to answer specific allegations. He will need to counter allegations that he accepted money from criminals.* **| prove, support** *The committee found no evidence to support allegations of smuggling.* **| disprove** *It took over two months to disprove the allegation.* **| give rise to, lead to, prompt, provoke** *The sudden collapse of the business led to allegations of corrupt dea* **| examine, investigate, look into, probe (used in journalism)** *The governor of the prison is investigating allegations that a prisoner was attacked and beaten by a prison warder.*

PREP. **amid/amidst ~** *He has resigned amid corruption allegations.* **| ~ about/ concerning** *allegations about the president's private life* | **~ against** *He has made certain allegations against the company.*

allegiance *noun*

ADJ. **full, strong** *We will give our full allegiance to the party and everything it believes in.* **| traditional | changing, shifting** *It is hard to keep up with the changing allegiances between the various political parties.* **| political, religious | class, party**

VERB + ALLEGIANCE **give, owe** *He owed his allegiance to the organization that had given him all his opportunities.* **| pledge, swear** *The rebels now have to swear allegiance to the queen they hate.* **| abandon** *Many people have abandoned their traditional party allegiances.* **| change, shift, switch, transfer | claim** *The various splinter groups all claim allegiance to the true spirit of the movement.* **| claim, command** *Catholicism claims allegiance from more than 80% of the population.* **| retain** *The union needs to retain the allegiance of all its members for the strike to succeed.*

PREP. **to** ~ *He is now very rich but his allegiance to his working-class origins is still strong.*

PHRASES **an oath of allegiance** *Every day the schoolchildren pledge an oath of allegiance to their country.*

allergy *noun*

ADJ. **food**

VERB + ALLERGY **have, suffer from | develop | cause** *Hair and feathers can cause allergies.*

ALLERGY + NOUN **sufferer**

PREP. **~ to** *He developed an allergy to pollen.* > Special page at ILLNESS

alleviate *verb*

ADV. **considerably, greatly** *These problems have been greatly alleviated by the passing of the new Act.* **| partly, somewhat**

VERB + ALLEVIATE **be designed to, help (to)** *These measures are designed to alleviate the situation.* **| do little/nothing to** *Her words did little to alleviate his fears.*

alley *noun*

ADJ. **dark | little, narrow** *a maze of narrow alleys* **| stinking** *I don't want to be left for dead in some stinking alley.* **| cobbled | back, side**

ALLEY + VERB **lead onto sth, lead to sth** *The alley leads to the village square.*

ALLEY + NOUN **cat**

PREP. **along an/the ~** *I walked back along a side alley.* **| down an/the ~** *a bookshop down a little alley* **| in an/the ~** *They had cornered him in an alley.* **| through an/the ~** *She wandered through the back alleys.* **| up an/the ~**

alliance *noun*

ADJ. **broad** *The organization is a broad alliance of many different groups.* **| grand | close | powerful, strong | fragile, loose, uneasy** *a loose alliance of opposition groups The uneasy alliance between such different people just cannot last.* **| shifting** *the shifting alliances among the various political groups* **| formal, informal | strategic, working | unholy** *an unholy alliance between the Fascists and the Communists* **| unlikely | temporary | global | defensive, military | electoral, political | class | marriage**

VERB + ALLIANCE **have** *They have alliances with other companies.* **| build (up), create, enter into, forge, form, make, strike up** *The government has tried to forge alliances with environmentalists.* **| cement** *To cement the alliance with England, Charles married Margaret, sister of the English king.* **| break off** *They broke off the alliance with Sparta.* **| seek**

PREP. **in ~ with** *The government, in alliance with the army, has decided to ban all public meetings for a month.* **| ~ against** *old alliances against enemies that no longer exist* **| ~ between** *an alliance between Britain and France* **| ~ with** *an alliance with Germany*

allied *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **closely | loosely** *an offensive by seven loosely allied guerrilla groups*

PREP. **to** *His decision to move to London is closely allied to his ambition to become manager of the company.* **| with** *The party is allied with the Communists.*

allocate *verb*

ADV. **efficiently** *Local authorities have to learn to allocate resources efficiently.* **| randomly**

PREP. **for** *More money should be allocated for famine relief.* **| to** *More funds will now be allocated to charitable organizations.*

allocation *noun*

1 **process of giving sth out**

ADJ. **efficient, inefficient | random | budget, grant, housing, land, resource, time**

VERB + ALLOCATION **make** *The allocation must be made according to a strict set of criteria.*

2 **amount given to sb**

ADJ. **big, generous, large | modest | total**

VERB + ALLOCATION **give** *The school gave them a generous allocation of money with which to purchase books.* **| get, receive | increase, up** *The charity is trying to get its allocation upped for next year.* **| cut, reduce**

allowance *noun*

1 **amount of sth that you are allowed**

ADJ. **baggage, holiday**

VERB + ALLOWANCE **be entitled to, get, have** *I get four weeks' holiday allowance a year.*

2 **amount of money sb receives regularly**

ADJ. **generous, large | meagre, small | annual, daily, monthly, weekly | child, disability, family, housing, living, travel**

VERB + ALLOWANCE **be entitled to** *You may be entitled to a housing allowance if you are in a low-paid job.* **| get, receive | give sb, grant** *The company gives me a travel allowance.*

PREP. **~ for** *The weekly allowance for each child is £15.*

allusion *noun*

ADJ. **clear, direct | indirect, veiled** *She was made uncomfortable by his veiled allusion to the previous night.* **| classical, cultural, literary**

VERB + ALLUSION **make** *He makes several allusions to these events in his latest book.*

PREP. **~ to**

ally *noun*

ADJ. **great, important, powerful, strong | close** *Charles remained a close ally of the French king.* **| loyal, reliable, staunch, trusted | natural, useful, valuable | old, traditional** *Portugal is a traditional ally of England.* **| erstwhile, former | wartime | potential | European, NATO, Western, etc. | political**

VERB + ALLY **have** *Jane felt that she had an ally.* **| find, gain, get | lose**

PREP. **~ against** *He now had an ally against his boss.*

PHRASES **find/have an ally in sb** *She had found an ally in her old teacher.* **| a friend and ally** *a friend and ally of the president*

almond *noun*

ADJ. **whole | blanched, flaked, ground** *biscuits made with ground almonds* **| sugared, toasted | bitter**

ALMOND + NOUN **essence, oil, paste | blossom, tree**

alone *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, sit, stand** *These islands are too small to stand alone as independent states.* **| leave sb, let sb** *Don't touch me! Leave me alone!*

ADV. **very much** *I felt vulnerable and very much alone.* **| all, completely, entirely, quite** *Carol felt all alone in the world. He felt lost and completely alone.* **| together** *Finally the two of us were alone together.*

PREP. **with** *She did not want to be alone with him.*

aloof *adj.*

1 **not friendly**

VERBS **be, look, seem | find sb** *Some people find her aloof and unfriendly.*

ADV. **a bit, a little, somewhat**

2 **not involved in sth**

VERBS **hold (yourself), keep (yourself), remain, stand** *Some thought that Britain was standing aloof from Europe.* **| keep sb** *There were many things that had kept her aloof and apart from the crowd.*

ADV. **largely**

PREP. **from** *He has remained largely aloof from the hurly-burly of parliamentary politics.*

alphabet *noun*

ADJ. **Arabic, Cyrillic, Greek, Hebrew, Latin, Roman | phonetic, runic**

VERB + ALPHABET **know, learn**

PREP. **in the ~** *How many letters are there in the Greek alphabet?*

PHRASES **the letters of the alphabet**

altar *noun*

ADJ. **high, main | makeshift, portable | sacrificial**

VERB + ALTAR **approach, go up to** *The bride approached the altar.*

ALTAR + NOUN **boy | cloth, frontal | rail | table**

PREP. **at an/the ~** *Helen and Tony knelt at the altar.* **| before an/the ~** *He lay prostrate before the high altar.* **| on an/the ~** *He placed the candles on the altar.*

alter *verb*

ADV. **considerably, dramatically, drastically, fundamentally, greatly, radically, significantly, substantially** *He had not altered greatly in the last ten years.* **| slightly**

PHRASES **not alter the fact that** *Unemployment has come down slightly but this does not alter the fact that it is still a major problem.*

alteration *noun*

ADJ. **dramatic, extensive, fundamental, major, material, radical, significant, substantial | minor, slight, small, subtle**

VERB + ALTERATION **make | need, require** *The leaflets require no alteration from year to year.*

PREP. **~ in** *There will be no alteration in corporation tax.* **| ~ to** *We will have to make a slight alteration to the plans.*

alternative *noun*

ADJ. **attractive, constructive, effective, good, radical, useful | acceptable, available, credible, possible, practical, real, realistic, reasonable, satisfactory, serious, suitable, viable** *Is there a viable alternative to prison?* **| clear, obvious | cheap, healthy, interesting, safe** *a healthier alternative to fizzy drinks*

VERB + ALTERNATIVE **have** *We have two alternatives.* **| offer, provide** *His idea seemed to offer a possible alternative.* **| seek** *seeking alternatives to nuclear power* **| find** *We'll have to find an alternative.*

PREP. **~ for** *There is no alternative for those with no car of their own.* **| ~ to** *Is there an alternative to surgery for this complaint?*

PHRASES **have little/no alternative (but to)** *She had no alternative but to do as he said.* **| leave sb with no alternative (but to)** *He was left with no alternative but to hobble to the nearest telephone box.*

altitude *noun*

ADJ. **great, high | low | cruising** *The plane took off and climbed to cruising altitude.*

VERB + ALTITUDE **cruise at, fly at, maintain** *The aircraft maintained an altitude of 28,000 feet.* **| reach, rise to** *The aviators reported the columns of smoke rising to an altitude of 2,000 feet.* **| gain | lose** *The plane suddenly started to lose altitude.*

ALTITUDE + NOUN **sickness**

PREP. **at an/the ~** *No trees will grow at that altitude.*

amateur *noun*

1 **sb who does sport, etc. for pleasure, not money**

ADJ. **competent, gifted, talented, top | enthusiastic, keen | gentleman** *International affairs today are no longer for gentleman amateurs.*

2 **sb who is not very good at sth**

ADJ. **rank, real** *The others had been skiing since they could walk and made her look a rank amateur.*

amaze *verb*

ADV. **really** *His skill as a dancer really amazed me.*

VERB + AMAZE **never cease to** *It never ceases to amaze me what some people will do for money.*

amazed *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound, stand**

ADV. **absolutely, quite, totally, utterly | mildly | genuinely | always, constantly, continually | still** *I am still amazed that she won first prize.*

PREP. **at** *Frances was amazed at her sudden strength.* **| by** *I was totally amazed by the brilliance of her paintings.*

PHRASES **never cease to be amazed** *I never cease to be amazed at the way people hurt one another.*

amazement *noun*

ADJ. complete, sheer, utter | mock *She raised her eyebrows in mock amazement.*

VERB + AMAZEMENT express

PREP. in ~ *He stared at the animal in amazement.* **| to sb's ~** *To her amazement she got the job.* **| with ~** *Laura looked around her with amazement.* **| ~ at** *He expressed amazement at being left out of the match.*

amazing *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, sound, taste | find sb/sth**

ADV. **just, pretty, really, truly** *He remembered our names from ten years ago? isn't that just amazing? a truly amazing achievement* **| absolutely, most, quite** *I saw the most amazing film yesterday!*

ambassador *noun*

ADJ. **former | British, French, etc.**

VERB + AMBASSADOR **serve as | appoint, appoint sb (as), make sb** *She's been appointed British ambassador to the UN.* **| send** *The King sent an ambassador to Paris.* **| recall, withdraw** *The US ambassador was recalled to Washington in protest.* **| expel**

PREP. **~ in** *the Israeli ambassador in London* **| ~ to** *He served as ambassador to Syria.*

ambiguity *noun*

ADJ. **possible, potential | moral, sexual**

QUANT. **degree, element** *There is a degree of ambiguity in this statement.*

VERB + AMBIGUITY **lead to** *Incorrect choice of words leads to ambiguity for the reader.* **| avoid** *The document has been carefully written to avoid ambiguity.* **| reduce | remove, resolve** *They had to change some of the wording in the document to resolve the ambiguity.*

AMBIGUITY + VERB **arise, occur** *Ambiguity arises when students' spoken English is very limited.*

PREP. **~ about** *There will always be some ambiguity about what actually happened.* **| ~ in** *There was some ambiguity in what he said.*

PHRASES **a source of ambiguity**

ambiguous *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain | make sth, render sth** *The paragraph is rendered ambiguous by the writer's careless use of pronouns.*

ADV. **highly, very | rather, slightly, somewhat | deliberately, intentionally** *I suspected that he was being deliberately ambiguous.*

ambition *noun*

1 **strong desire to be successful**

ADJ. **driving, great, naked** *She's a woman of driving ambition.* | **personal**

VERB + AMBITION **have** *He's got little ambition.* | **lack**

AMBITION + VERB **burn** *Ambition burned within her.*

2 **sth you very much want to have/do**

ADJ. **big, burning, driving, great, high, main, overriding, ultimate** *Her biggest ambition was to climb Everest.* | **lifelong, life's, longstanding** *At last he had realized his life's ambition.* | **modest** | **personal** | **secret** | **youthful** | **frustrated, thwarted, unfulfilled** *This is a tale of jealousy and thwarted ambitions.* | **career, imperial/imperialist, literary, political, presidential, social, sporting, territorial**

VERB + AMBITION **cherish, harbour, have, nurture** *He had only one ambition in life.* | **abandon, give up** | **achieve, fulfil, realize** | **limit, restrain** | **frustrate, thwart** *He felt great resentment at having his ambition frustrated.*

ambitious *adj.*

1 **determined to be successful**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *He is a highly ambitious politician.* **| socially**

PREP. **for** *She is very ambitious for her four children.*

2 **difficult to achieve**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, hugely, very | rather | overly** *Phases 2 and 3 seem overly ambitious.*

ambivalence *noun*

VERB + AMBIVALENCE **feel | express, show** *The document expressed some ambivalence over the doctrine of predestination.*

PREP. **with ~** *She viewed her daughter's education with ambivalence.* **| ~ about** *their ambivalence about supporting the government* **| ~ over** *his ambivalence over money* **| ~ towards** *She felt a certain ambivalence towards him.*

ambivalent *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, sound | remain**

ADV. **deeply, highly, very** *The party's position on nuclear weapons is deeply ambivalent.* **| fairly, rather, somewhat**

PREP. **about** *He feels rather ambivalent about his role as teacher.*

ambulance *noun*

ADJ. **air**

VERB + AMBULANCE **call (for), get, phone/ring/telephone for, send for** *Quick, call an ambulance!* **| drive**

AMBULANCE + VERB **be on its way** *Don't worry?the ambulance is on its way.* **| arrive, come** *When the ambulance came, I carried her out.*

AMBULANCE + NOUN **service | crew, staff | driver, man, worker | station**

PREP. **by ~** *She was rushed to hospital by air ambulance.* **| in an/the~** *He went in the ambulance with Lizzy.*

ambush *noun*

VERB + AMBUSH **lay, prepare, set up** *The soldiers set up an ambush on the road.* **| lie in, wait in** *The soldiers lay in ambush for the enemy troops.* **| carry out, stage** *They staged an ambush on an army patrol.* **| be caught in, run into, walk into** *We ran into an ambush in the valley.*

AMBUSH + VERB **take place**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *Twelve men were killed in the ambush.* **| ~ on** *an ambush on an army patrol*

amenable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | find sb/sth**

ADV. **highly, most, very** *The manager was most amenable: nothing was too much trouble.*

PREP. **to** *You should find him amenable to reasonable arguments.*

amendment *noun*

ADJ. **important, major, significant** *A major amendment was introduced into the legislation.* **| minor, slight, small | draft, proposed | detailed | constitutional**

VERB + AMENDMENT **introduce, make | draft** *The committee does not adequately consult others when drafting amendments.* **| move, propose, put forward, suggest, table** *He moved an amendment limiting capital punishment to certain very serious crimes.* **| withdraw** *She withdrew her amendment and left the meeting.* **| accept, adopt, approve, carry, pass, ratify, support, vote for** *Parliament accepted the amendment and the bill was passed. On a free vote, the amendment was carried by 292 votes to 246.* **| oppose, reject | be subject to** *The programme is subject to amendment.*

PREP. **without ~** *The new clause was accepted without amendment.* **| ~ to** *an amendment to the Clean Water Act*

amenity *noun*

ADJ. **excellent | basic | local** *The campsite is close to all local amenities.* **| modern** *a hotel with all modern amenities* **| public** *The building will be developed as a public amenity.* **| recreational, social**

VERB + AMENITY **have** *The hotel has excellent amenities.* **| offer, provide** *They will provide an amenity for local residents.* **| lack** *The flats lacked basic amenities.*

amiable *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **very | perfectly** *a perfectly amiable young man* **| enough, quite** *I've only met Jane once but she seems amiable enough.*

ammunition *noun*

ADJ. **live | blank**

QUANT. **round**

VERB + AMMUNITION **carry, have | issue** *They issued live ammunition to the troops.* **| fire, use | run out of** *A few of the jeeps had run out of ammunition.*

AMMUNITION + NOUN **dump, store**

amnesty *noun*

ADJ. **general, political**

VERB + AMNESTY **give sb, grant, offer** *The government granted an amnesty to all political prisoners.* **| announce, declare**

PREP. **under an/the ~** *He was released from prison under an amnesty.* **| ~ for** *They announced a general amnesty for crimes committed during the war.*

amount *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, copious ~s, enormous, huge, large, massive, significant, substantial, tremendous, vast** *a considerable amount of money He drank copious amounts of beer.* **| disproportionate, excessive, inordinate | increasing | fair** *There was a fair amount of traffic on the roads.* **| limited, minute, moderate, negligible, small, tiny | full, total** *You must pay back the full amount of money that you owe.* **| maximum, minimum** *He aimed to cause the maximum amount of embarrassment.* **| exact | equal, equivalent** *Mix the colours in equal amounts. an amount equivalent to 0.3% per annum* **| varying** *Tap water also contains varying amounts of rust and grit.*

VERB + AMOUNT **double, increase | decrease, limit, reduce** *They want to limit the amount of cash available.*

AMOUNT + VERB **double, increase** *The amount of reclaimed glass used in industry has doubled in the last five years.* **| decrease, fall** *The average amount of pocket money received by teenagers fell to £4 a week this year.*

PREP. **~ of**

amuse *verb*

ADV. **greatly** *Her discomfort amused him greatly.*

VERB + AMUSE **seem to** *The thought of me on the stage seemed to amuse him.* **| try to**

PREP. **with** *He amused us with his stories.*

amused *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** *She looked faintly amused.* **| keep sb** *He kept the children amused for hours.*

ADV. **greatly, highly, much, vastly, very** *He was much amused by all this talk.* **| not at all** *I was not at all amused to find they had eaten all the cake.* **| faintly, a little, mildly, quite, rather, slightly | clearly** *Mr Stopes was clearly amused by the confusion.* **| genuinely | wryly | quietly**

PREP. **at** *Tony was very amused at the story.* **| by** *She seemed greatly amused by his jokes.*

amusement *noun*

1 **feeling of wanting to laugh**

ADJ. **great, much | faint, mild | quiet | ironic, sardonic, wry | genuine, real**

QUANT. **gleam, glimmer | hint, note, trace** *There was a note of amusement in her voice.*

VERB + AMUSEMENT **afford sb, cause, provide** *I am happy to have afforded you amusement.* **| derive, find, get** *He seemed to be deriving amusement from her discomfort.* **| show | conceal, hide**

AMUSEMENT + VERB **show** *A glimmer of amusement showed in her eyes.*

PREP. **for (sb's) ~** *What do you do for amusement round here? The play was written for the amusement of the other students.* **| in ~** *Her wide mouth twitched in amusement.* **| to sb's ~** *Much to their amusement, I couldn't get the door open.* **| with ~** *She chuckled with amusement.*

PHRASES **a source of amusement** *His son was a constant source of amusement to him.*

2 **sth that makes time pass pleasantly**

ADJ. **popular** *She disapproved of popular amusements such as fairs.*

AMUSEMENT + NOUN **arcade, park | machine**

amusing *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound | find sth**

ADV. **extremely, highly, most, really, very | mildly, quite, rather, vaguely | not remotely** *There is nothing even remotely amusing about the situation.*

anaesthetic *noun*

ADJ. **general, local**

VERB + ANAESTHETIC **administer, give sb** *He was given a general anaesthetic.* **| use** *The operation was completed in ten minutes using only local anaesthetic.* **| have** *She had a local anaesthetic to stop the pain.* **| come round from, recover from**

ANAESTHETIC + VERB **take effect, work** *The anaesthetic began to take effect.* **| wear off**

PREP. **under (an/the) ~** *It would have to be done under anaesthetic.* **| without (an/the) ~** *They had to operate without anaesthetic.*

analogous *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **closely | directly, exactly | broadly, roughly** *The two situations are roughly analogous.*

PREP. **to** *The company is in a position closely analogous to that of its main rival.* **|** **with** *The national debt is analogous with private debt.*

analogy *noun*

ADJ. **appropriate, apt, useful | close, obvious** *A close analogy with the art of singing can be made.*

VERB + ANALOGY **draw, make, suggest, use** *She drew an analogy between running the economy and a housewife's weekly budget.*

ANALOGY + VERB **fit, hold** *The Wild West analogy does not fit here.*

PREP. **by ~ (to/with)** *We can understand this theory by analogy with human beings.* **| ~ between** *She suggested an analogy between the human heart and a pump.* **| ~ for** *The computer is a useful analogy for the brain.* **| ~ with** *There is an analogy here with the way an engine works.*

PHRASES **argument by/from analogy** *Argument from analogy is not always valid.*

analyse *verb*

ADV. **carefully, critically, fully, in depth/detail, painstakingly, scientifically, systematically** *The results must be analysed in detail.*

VERB + ANALYSE **attempt to, try to | be difficult to, be impossible to** *The precise reasons for the disaster are difficult to analyse.* **| be possible to**

analysis *noun*

ADJ. **careful, close, comprehensive, detailed, in-depth, systematic, thorough | brief | objective, subjective | comparative, critical, qualitative, quantitative, statistical, theoretical | cost-benefit, discourse, economic, financial, historical, linguistic, strategic, structural, stylistic**

VERB + ANALYSIS **carry out, do, make, perform** *They carried out an in-depth analysis of the results.* **| give** *He gave a brief analysis of the present economic situation.*

ANALYSIS + VERB **indicate sth, show sth** *Analysis of the wine showed that it contained dangerous additives.*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *In his analysis of the novel he discusses various aspects of the author's own life.*

PHRASES **in the final/last analysis** *In the final analysis, the king's power was greater than the bishop's.*

analyst *noun*

ADJ. **leading** *a leading business analyst* **| business, computer, data, financial, industry, investment, market, military, policy, political, retail, systems**

PREP. **~ of** *He was a shrewd analyst of players' strengths and weaknesses.* > Note at JOB

anatomy *noun*

ADJ. **animal, human | female, male | comparative**

VERB + ANATOMY **study** *studying human anatomy*

PHRASES **part of your anatomy** *(often humorous) He was hit in a rather sensitive part of his anatomy.*

ancestor *noun*

ADJ. **direct** *The builder of the manor house is a direct ancestor of the present owner.* **| immediate | distant, early, remote** *a distant ancestor of mine Our earliest ancestors lived in a world fraught with danger.* **| common** *The two species share a common ancestor.* **| illustrious** *The Romans built these monuments to glorify their illustrious ancestors.*

VERB + ANCESTOR **be descended from, have, share** *A lot of the people there are descended from a common ancestor.* **| trace** *He can trace his ancestors back to the reign of James the First.*

ancestry *noun*

ADJ. **common** *The two species have developed from a common ancestry.* **| Celtic, French, etc.**

VERB + ANCESTRY **claim, have, share** *She shares a common ancestry with the Queen.* **| trace** *We can trace our ancestry back to the 16th century.*

ANCESTRY + VERB **date/go/reach/stretch back to** *The firm claims an ancestry dating back to 1727.*

PHRASES **be of French, German, etc. ancestry** *He is of Chinese ancestry.*

anchor *noun*

VERB + ANCHOR **cast, drop** *The ship cast anchor in the bay. We dropped anchor off a small island.* **| raise, weigh** *We raised the anchor and set sail. We weighed anchor next morning and sailed south.* **| lie at, ride at** *The ship lay at anchor in the bay.*

PREP. **at ~** *the ships at anchor in the harbour*

anchor *verb*

ADV. **firmly, securely** *The crane is securely anchored at two points.*

PREP. **to** *The ropes were anchored to the rocks.*

ancient *adj.*

VERBS **be, look**

ADV. **extremely, incredibly, very | quite | positively** *The man looked positively ancient.*

anecdote *noun*

ADJ. **amusing, entertaining, humorous | personal**

VERB + ANECDOTE **relate, tell** *She is good at telling anecdotes.* **| exchange, swap**

PREP. **~ about** *We swapped anecdotes about old friends.*

angel *noun*

1 **heavenly being**

ADJ. **guardian | avenging** *He liked to think of himself as an avenging angel fighting for justice.* **| fallen** *a book about anti-heroes and fallen angels*

QUANT. **choir, host** *a whole host of angels*

2 **good/kind person**

ADJ. **absolute, little** *Deborah's children are little angels.* **| ministering** *I could hardly see Lisa in the role of ministering angel.*

PHRASES **be an angel** *Be an angel and make the tea, will you?* **| be no angel** *I'm no angel, but I wouldn't dream of doing a thing like that.*

anger *noun*

ADJ. **bitter, black, cold, deep, fierce, great, savage, terrible | genuine, real | growing, mounting, rising** *mounting anger among teachers and parents* **| sudden | righteous** *Catherine appeared in the doorway, shaking with righteous anger.* **| controlled, pent-up, suppressed | popular, public | widespread**

QUANT. **burst, fit, outburst** *He slammed the door in a fit of anger.*

VERB + ANGER **be filled with, feel, shake with, tremble with** *His eyes were filled with anger. She was trembling with anger.* **| express, give vent to, show, vent, voice** *Children give vent to their anger in various ways.* **| control, hide, suppress** *It is not healthy to suppress your anger.* **| arouse, cause, fill sb with, fuel, provoke, stir up** *His words fuelled her anger.* **| change to, give way to, turn to** *His joy soon turned to anger when he heard the full story.*

ANGER + VERB **boil over/up, bubble up, build up, flare (up), grow, mount, rise, well up** *Henry stood up, his anger rising.* **| abate, drain, evaporate, fade, subside** *The anger drained from his face. Her anger subsided as quickly as it had flared up.*

PREP. **in ~** *He raised his voice in anger.* **| with ~** *His face was flushed with anger.* **| ~ against** *her feelings of anger against the murderer* **| ~ at** *I felt a sudden anger at his suggestion.* **| ~ over** *There is much anger over plans to close the hospital.* **| ~ towards** *her anger towards her parents*

PHRASES **a feeling of anger, in a moment of anger** *He had walked out in a moment of anger.*

anger *verb*

ADV. **deeply, greatly** *I was deeply angered by their lack of concern.*

angle *noun*

1 space between lines/surfaces that meet

ADJ. **acute, oblique, obtuse, right | external, internal | narrow, sharp, steep** *The plane started descending at a steep angle.* **| shallow, slight, wide** *The instrument has a wide angle of view.* **| awkward, crazy, odd** *The calf's legs were splayed out at awkward angles.*

VERB + ANGLE **form, make** *The vertical line makes an angle with the horizontal line.* **| draw** *Draw a 130° angle in your exercise books.* **| adjust, alter, change** *She adjusted the angle of the legs to make the table stand more firmly.* **| increase, reduce | measure | move through, rotate through** *Each joint can move through an angle of 90°.*

PREP. **at an ~** *The tower of Pisa leans at an angle.* **| ~ between** *the angle between these two lines*

2 position

ADJ. **unusual** *The subject is considered from an unusual angle.* **| camera** *The variety of camera angles gives her photographs interest.* **| viewing**

VERB + ANGLE **consider/look at/see/view sth from** *We've looked at the problem from every possible angle but still haven't found a solution. Seeing herself from this angle, she realized how like her mother she looked.*

PHRASES **angle of vision** *How you see the building depends on your angle of vision.* **| from all angles** *You need to consider the question from all angles.*

angry *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow | remain, stay** *She couldn't stay angry with him for long.* **| make sb** *That man makes me angry every time I see him.*

ADV. **bitterly, extremely, furiously, really, terribly, very, wildly | a bit, pretty, quite, rather | increasingly | coldly | suddenly**

PREP. **about** *Local people are very angry about the plans to close another hospital.* **| at** *The members of the group are frustrated and angry at their lack of power.* **| with** *I got terribly angry with him.*

anguish *noun*

ADJ. **bitter, deep, great, real | inner, personal, private | mental, physical, spiritual**

VERB + ANGUISH **cause** *The loss of a pet can cause some people real anguish.* **| experience, feel, suffer** *He suffered the anguish of watching his son go to prison.*

PREP. **in (sb's) ~** *to cry out/groan/scream in anguish In her anguish, she turned to her father for help.* **| with ~** *His mouth felt dry with anguish.* **| ~ at/over** *his anguish at the death of his son*

PHRASES **a cry/groan/scream of anguish, pain and anguish** *All the pain and anguish inside her rose like a tidal wave.*

animal *noun*

ADJ. **dead, live, living** *the export of live animals for slaughter* | **cold-blooded, warm-blooded** | **higher, lower** | **dumb** | **stuffed** *glass cases of stuffed animals* | **dangerous** | **endangered, rare** | **extinct** | **social, solitary** | **tame** | **feral, stray, wild** | **exotic** | **caged, trapped, wounded** *(often figurative) He was pacing the room like a caged animal.* | **domestic, farm, laboratory, zoo** | **forest, land, marine** | **draught, pack** *pack animals such as mules*

VERB + ANIMAL **have, keep** *In court he was banned from keeping animals.* | **breed, raise, rear** *animals bred in captivity* | **tame, train** *This animal can be trained to follow simple orders.* | **hunt, trap** | **butcher, slaughter**

ANIMAL + NOUN **life, species** | **behaviour, instinct** | **lover** | **husbandry** | **experiments, testing/tests** *protesting against animal experiments* | **rights, welfare** | **fat, products**

PHRASES **the animal kingdom/world** *the wonders of the animal kingdom*

animosity *noun*

ADJ. **personal**

VERB + ANIMOSITY **bear** *Despite everything, she bore her former boss no animosity.* **| arouse, stir up**

PREP. **without ~** *They managed to discuss their past disagreements without animosity.* **| ~ between** *The two rivals for party leadership insist that there is no animosity between them.* **| ~ towards** *the animosity of some locals towards asylum seekers*

ankle *noun*

ADJ. **bad, broken, injured, sprained, swollen, twisted | slender, slim, well-turned** *She has long legs and slender ankles.*

VERB + ANKLE **break, hurt, injure, sprain, turn, twist**

ANKLE + NOUN **boots, socks | injury | bone, joint, ligament**

PHRASES **ankle deep in sth** *We waded through the river, ankle deep in mud.*

annex *verb*

ADV. **formally** *The region was formally annexed in 1892.* **| illegally**

PREP. **to** *The territory had been annexed to Poland.*

annihilation *noun*

ADJ. **total | nuclear**

VERB + ANNIHILATION **face** *They were to surrender immediately or face total annihilation.* **| threaten**

anniversary *noun*

1 **of an important event**

ADJ. **first, second, etc.**

VERB + ANNIVERSARY **celebrate, commemorate, mark** *They held celebrations to mark the anniversary of Mozart's death.*

ANNIVERSARY + VERB **be, fall** *The anniversary of the founding of the charity falls on 12th November.*

PREP. **on an/the ~** *on the 20th anniversary of his death*

2 **of a wedding**

ADJ. **first, second, etc. | wedding**

VERB + ANNIVERSARY **celebrate**

PREP. **on sb's ~** *He bought her a diamond ring on their tenth wedding anniversary.*

PHRASES **a diamond, golden, silver, etc. wedding anniversary**

announce *verb*

ADV. **formally, officially, publicly | proudly** *The company proudly announced the launch of its new range of cars.*

VERB + ANNOUNCE **be expected to, expect to** *We expect to announce details of the scheme later this week.* **| be delighted to, be pleased to, be proud to** *Mr and Mrs James are pleased to announce the engagement of their daughter, Henrietta.* **| regret to** *We regret to announce the death of our chairman, Alfred Sidebottom.*

announcement *noun*

ADJ. **formal, official | public | government | dramatic, surprise** *Baker issued his surprise announcement in Paris after two hours of talks.*

VERB + ANNOUNCEMENT **issue, make** *We will make a formal announcement tomorrow.* **| greet, welcome** *The announcement of the ceasefire was greeted with relief.*

ANNOUNCEMENT + VERB **come** *The announcement of further job losses comes at a bad time.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *In an announcement to Parliament, the minister said that the peace negotiations would continue.* **| ~ about** *an official announcement about the disaster* **| ~ by/from** *an announcement from the prime minister*

announcer *noun*

ADJ. **continuity, radio, sports, station, television/TV** *The station announcer warned us that the train was running late.* > Note at JOB

annoy *verb*

ADV. **intensely, really** *His air of calm superiority annoyed her intensely. It really annoys me when people forget to say thank you.* **| slightly**

VERB + ANNOY **be beginning to** *The wasps were beginning to annoy me.*

PHRASES **do sth just/only to annoy sb** *I only stay out late to annoy my parents.*

annoyance *noun*

1 **feeling of being annoyed**

ADJ. **deep, great, intense** *A look of deep annoyance crossed his face.* **| obvious** *She tapped the table with her pen in obvious annoyance.*

QUANT. **flicker** *A flicker of annoyance crossed his face.* **| surge** *He felt a violent surge of annoyance.*

VERB + ANNOYANCE **cause** *He had been causing annoyance to the other guests.* **| feel** *I felt some annoyance when he told me his plans.* **| express, show** *She tried not to show her annoyance.* **| conceal, hide**

PREP. **in ~** *He shook his head in annoyance.* **| with ~** *Her cheeks flushed with annoyance.* **| ~ at/over, ~ with** *her annoyance with him over his failure to cooperate*

PHRASES **a look of annoyance** *There was a look of annoyance on his face.* **| a source of annoyance** *A dog that barks constantly can be a source of annoyance to the neighbors.***|** **(much) to sb's annoyance** *I dropped out of university, much to the annoyance of my parents.*

2 **thing that annoys**

ADJ. **minor, petty** *A leaking roof is just one of life's petty annoyances!*

annoyed *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get | make sb** *His attitude made me extremely annoyed.*

ADV. **extremely, really, very | thoroughly | increasingly | faintly, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | clearly, obviously**

PREP. **about** *I was a little annoyed about the whole thing.* **| at** *We enjoyed the game but were rather annoyed at being beaten.* **| by** *I was quite annoyed by her remarks.* **| with** *Susan felt slightly annoyed with herself.*

annoying *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become, get** *Please stop making that noise?it's getting annoying.* **| make sth | find sth** *I found it really annoying not to be able to communicate.*

ADV. **extremely, really, very | a bit, mildly, rather**

PREP. **to** *The proposal will probably prove annoying to opposition MPs.*

anonymity *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total | relative** *This British author has chosen to live in relative anonymity on a Pacific island.*

VERB + ANONYMITY **ensure, guarantee, preserve, protect** *Our company promises to preserve the anonymity of all its clients.* **| demand, insist on, prefer, request, seek** *Some people prefer the anonymity of life in a big city.*

anonymous *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **completely, entirely**

PHRASES **prefer/wish to remain anonymous** *My client wishes to remain anonymous.*

answer *noun*

1 **sth that you say/write/do as a reply**

ADJ. **brief, quick, short** *The short answer to your query is that he has acted completely illegally.* | **blunt, direct, straight** *I expect a straight answer to a straight question.* | **detailed, full, precise** | **immediate** | **final** | **affirmative, positive** | **negative** | **honest, reasonable, sensible** | **dusty** (= unsatisfactory) *I complained to the water company and received a very dusty answer.*

VERB + ANSWER **get, have, receive** *Did you ever get an answer to your letter?* | **demand** | **wait for** | **give sb, offer** *Please give her your answer, so she can make the necessary arrangements. She repeated her question, but he offered no answer.* | **guess, know** *I think you can guess the answer?they won't lend us the money.*

ANSWER + VERB **come** *The answer came in a postcard she sent from Devon.*

PREP. **in ~ to** *In answer to your enquiries, I can only say that we did not find her work of a satisfactory standard.* | **~ to** *her answer to his question*

2 **solution to a problem**

ADJ. **easy, instant, ready, simple** | **clear, clear-cut, obvious** *The obvious answer would be to cancel the party.* | **logical, reasonable, sensible** | **adequate, real, satisfactory** | **complete, convincing, definitive, effective, good, long-term, perfect** | **partial**

VERB + ANSWER **have, know** *We are aware of this problem, but we do not have the answer.* | **look for, seek** | **arrive at, come up with, find** *We have arrived at an answer which we hope will satisfy everyone.* | **give sb, offer, provide** *If you want to save time, this machine will provide the answer.*

PREP. **~ to** *There is no easy answer to the problem.*

PHRASES **have/know all the answers** *He's so arrogant, he thinks he knows all the answers.*

3 **to questions in a test**

ADJ. **acceptable, appropriate, correct, right | incorrect, wrong | written** *This part of the exam requires a written answer.*

VERB + ANSWER **give | guess** *It's not worth guessing the answer, as you may lose marks.* **| know | print, write** *Please print the answers to questions 1 to 9.*

PREP. **~ to** *Do you know the answer to the question?*

answer *verb*

ADV. **affirmatively, in the affirmative** *She answered in the affirmative.* **| in the negative, negatively | honestly, truthfully** *He tried to answer as honestly as he could.* **| correctly | fully** *What he told me does not fully answer the question of what his motives were.* **| satisfactorily | evasively | coldly, curtly | calmly | quietly, softly**

antagonism *noun*

ADJ. **great, strong | mutual | class, personal, racial**

VERB + ANTAGONISM **feel, have** *She felt nothing but antagonism towards her boss. He seems to have an antagonism to the local people.* **| express, show | arouse, cause, create, lead to, provoke** *The new rules will create a lot of antagonism.*

PREP. **~ between** *the antagonism between the two brothers* **| ~ to/towards** *her antagonism towards her mother*

anthology *noun*

VERB + ANTHOLOGY **compile, edit, publish, put together** *We have put together an anthology of children's poetry.*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *The essay first appeared in an anthology of feminist criticism.* **| ~ of**

anthropology *noun*

ADJ. cultural, social *Social anthropology examines family relationships in detail.* > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

antibiotic *noun*

ADJ. **effective**

QUANT. **course, dose** *The doctor put her on a course of antibiotics.*

VERB + ANTIBIOTIC **be on, take** *Did you remember to take your antibiotics?* **| give sb, prescribe, put sb on, treat sth with** *The doctor prescribed antibiotics.*

anticipate *verb*

PHRASES **be eagerly/keenly anticipated** *one of the most eagerly anticipated arts events of the year* **| be widely anticipated** *It is widely anticipated that she will resign.*

anticipation *noun*

ADJ. **great, keen | eager, excited, happy, pleasurable** *We look forward to your lecture with eager anticipation. a feeling of pleasurable anticipation* **| growing** *There is growing anticipation that the prime minister will have to resign.*

VERB + ANTICIPATION **be full of** *We are full of anticipation, and can't wait to visit you.*

PREP. **in ~ of** *People are buying extra groceries in anticipation of heavy snowstorms.*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of anticipation, a shiver/thrill of anticipation** *The unexpected news sent a thrill of anticipation through the group.*

antics *noun*

ADJ. **amusing, crazy, playful**

VERB + ANTICS **get up to, perform** *The youngsters got up to all sorts of amusing antics.* **| enjoy, laugh at, smile at** *She was laughing at his antics.*

antidote *noun*

1 **against poison/disease**

ADJ. **effective | natural**

VERB + ANTIDOTE **administer, give** *The doctor administered an antidote.*

PREP. **~ for** *Quinine is a natural antidote for this fever.* **| ~ to** *We do not have an effective antidote to this poison.*

2 **thing that takes away the effects of sth unpleasant**

ADJ. **effective, good, perfect, powerful**

VERB + ANTIDOTE **act as, serve as | offer, provide** *The resort offers the perfect antidote to the pressures of modern life.*

PREP. **~ for** *I think that stricter punishment is the best antidote for crime.* **| ~ to** *Creative activity serves as an effective antidote to depression.*

antipathy *noun*

ADJ. **deep, profound, strong, violent | growing, increasing | mutual** *They have a mutual antipathy to each other.* **| personal** *Despite his personal antipathy to me he was still able to be polite.* **| natural** *a natural antipathy towards people in authority*

VERB + ANTIPATHY **feel, have | express, show**

PREP. **~ between** *There was a lot of antipathy between the two doctors.* **| ~ for** *his antipathy for his boss* **| ~ to/towards** *I feel a profound antipathy to using any weapon.*

antique *noun*

ADJ. **fine | genuine | priceless, valuable**

VERB + ANTIQUE **collect**

ANTIQUE + NOUN **dealer | antiques fair/shop**

antiquity *noun*

1 **ancient times**

ADJ. **classical, Greek, Roman, etc.** *legends from Greek antiquity* **| late | immemorial, remote**

VERB + ANTIQUITY **date from, survive from | be lost in** *The origins of this ancient structure are lost in antiquity.*

PREP. **from ~** *a study of urban life from antiquity to the present day* **| in ~** *vases that were manufactured in late classical antiquity*

2 **a work of art, etc. from ancient times**

ADJ. **classical, Egyptian, Greek, Roman, etc.**

VERB + ANTIQUITY **collect** *He collects Egyptian and Roman antiquities.*

3 **great age**

ADJ. **considerable, great** *the considerable antiquity of the rocks in this region*

antiseptic *noun*

ADJ. **powerful | mild** *Mint is a mild antiseptic.*

VERB + ANTISEPTIC **apply, put on** *You should put some antiseptic on that cut.*

antithesis *noun*

ADJ. **complete, exact, very | sharp**

VERB + ANTITHESIS **be, represent**

PREP. **~ between** *the sharp antithesis between their views* **| ~ of** *The company represented the antithesis of everything he admired.*

anxiety *noun*

ADJ. **acute, considerable, deep, great | chronic, constant, nagging | growing, increasing, mounting | natural, understandable | needless, unnecessary | public**

QUANT. **level** *the high level of anxiety created by entering a new environment*

VERB + ANXIETY **arouse, bring, cause, create, provoke | lead to | experience, feel, suffer from** *She felt a nagging anxiety that could not be relieved.* **| express, share** *The mothers were able to share their anxieties with each other.* **| cope with, deal with** *skills to cope with anxiety* **| allay, alleviate, dispel, reduce, relieve** *The aim is to reduce anxiety and help the patients relax.* **| aggravate, increase**

ANXIETY + VERB **grow** *The more reports I study the more my anxiety grows.* **| arise (from/out of sth), surface** *A few anxieties surfaced during the meeting.*

ANXIETY + NOUN **attack | level**

PREP. **~ about** *her growing anxiety about her health* **| ~ at** *anxiety at the deterioration of relations between the powers* **| ~ for** *deep anxiety for the whole family* **| ~ over** *There are anxieties over the effects of unemployment.*

PHRASES **fear and anxiety** *They were encouraged to express their fears and anxieties.*

anxious *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow** *The bus was late and Sue began to get anxious.* **| make sb** *The delays only made him more anxious.*

ADV. **desperately, extremely, very | increasingly** *She was watching the clock and becoming increasingly anxious.* **| a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | genuinely | naturally, understandably** *Final-year students are naturally anxious about getting work after graduation.* **| unduly** *There's no need to get unduly anxious on my account.* **| suddenly**

PREP. **about** *I'm becoming very anxious about my son.* **| for** *We are extremely anxious for her safety.*

apartment *noun*

1 **a flat**

ADJ. **large, spacious | small | comfortable, luxury | modern | one-bedroomed, two-bedroomed, etc. | studio | first-floor, second-floor, etc. | basement, penthouse | holiday, self-catering**

VERB + APARTMENT **buy | lease, rent** *We will be renting the apartment for a year.* **| live in, share, stay in** *I share an apartment with two friends.* **| look for** *I'm looking for an apartment on the east side of the city.* **| find | move into/out of**

APARTMENT + NOUN **block, building, complex, house** *high-rise apartment blocks*

2 **apartments: set of rooms**

ADJ. **private, royal, state** *the private apartments of the imperial family*

apathy *noun*

ADJ. **general, widespread | political, public**

VERB + APATHY **suffer from | fall into, sink into** *Once defeated, he sank into apathy.* **| lead to** *Such attitudes can only lead to apathy.*

PREP. **~ among** *widespread apathy among students* **| ~ towards** *a general apathy towards politics*

apologetic *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound**

ADV. **profusely, very | almost** *Barney sounded almost apologetic.* **| faintly, slightly, vaguely | suitably** *I hope she was suitably apologetic afterwards.*

PREP. **about** *He was profusely apologetic about the mistake.* **| for** *She was apologetic for taking so long.*

apologize *verb*

ADV. **sincerely | profusely** *He apologized profusely for the damage he had caused.* **| humbly** *I do apologize most humbly.* **| publicly**

VERB + APOLOGIZE **ought to, should | want to, wish to, would like to** *I would like to apologize most sincerely for any embarrassment caused.*

PREP. **for** *She apologized for being late.* **| to** *He apologized to his colleagues.*

PHRASES **I do/must apologize** *I must apologize for cancelling our meeting at such short notice.*

apology *noun*

ADJ. **abject, humble, profuse** *It was a mistake. My profuse apologies.* **| heartfelt, profound, sincere | full | formal | public | written**

VERB + APOLOGY **convey, give sb, issue, make, offer (sb), publish, send (sb)** *The newpaper has issued an apology to the minister.* **| get, receive | demand, deserve, expect** *We expect a full written apology.* **| owe sb** *She certainly owes you an apology.* **| mumble, murmur, mutter** *John muttered an apology then went back to his book.* **| accept** *Please accept my sincere apologies.* **| reject** *She rejected my apology, saying it was not enough.*

PREP. **without ~** *He backed out arrogantly and without apology.* **| ~ for** *an apology for arriving late* **| ~ from** *Apologies have been received from the Browns.* **| ~ to** *my apologies to your wife*

PHRASES **a letter of apology, make no apology/apologies for** *I make no apologies for bringing this issue to your attention once again.*

appalling *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, sound**

ADV. **really, truly | absolutely, the most, quite, utterly** *They had to wait for hours in the most appalling weather.*

apparatus *noun*

ADJ. **breathing, chemical, electrical, experimental, laboratory, scientific | administrative, bureaucratic, legal, party, security, state** *the state's powerful security apparatus*

QUANT. **piece** *a very sophisticated piece of laboratory apparatus*

PHRASES **the apparatus of government/(the) state**

apparent *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become** *It soon became apparent that the company was losing money.* **| make sth** *He made it apparent that he was very annoyed.*

ADV. **glaringly, strongly, very | fully, quite | increasingly | all too** *His unhappiness was all too apparent.* **| quickly, soon | immediately, instantly** *The extent of their injuries was not immediately apparent.* **| easily, readily | clearly | painfully** *Local suspicion of the incomers was painfully apparent.*

PREP. **to** *His lack of experience was quite apparent to everyone.*

appeal *noun*

1 **serious request for sth you need/want very much**

ADJ. **desperate, emergency, emotional, urgent | direct | fresh, further** *a fresh appeal for witnesses to come forward* **| mute** *She gazed at him in mute appeal.*

VERB + APPEAL **issue, make** *They made a direct appeal to the government for funding.*

PREP. **~ for** *an appeal for help* **| ~ to** *an appeal to reason*

2 **formal request to sb in authority**

ADJ. **formal, personal**

VERB + APPEAL **bring, file, lodge, make** *He's lodged an appeal against the size of the fine.* **| win | lose | allow** (*formal*), **consider, hear** *The judge has agreed to allow his appeal. The court will hear the appeal on 10 June.* **| uphold** *His appeal was upheld and he was released immediately.* **| deny, dismiss, reject, throw out, turn down**

APPEAL + VERB **fail | succeed**

APPEAL + NOUN **court, tribunal | hearing | judge | procedure, process, system**

PREP. **on ~** *On appeal, it was held that the judge was correct.* **| under ~** *a case currently under appeal* **| ~ against** *an appeal against his conviction of fraud* **| ~ for** *an appeal for leniency* **| ~ to** *an appeal to the High Court*

PHRASES **a court of appeal, give/grant sb leave to appeal, grounds of appeal, pending appeal** *The players have been suspended pending appeal.* **| a right of appeal** *You have the right of appeal to the Consitutional Court.*

3 **event for raising money**

ADJ. **charity, fund-raising | radio, television**

VERB + APPEAL **hold, launch** *An appeal is to be launched on behalf of the refugees.* **|**

back, support

APPEAL + VERB **raise sth** *The radio appeal raised over three million pounds.*

APPEAL + NOUN **fund**

4 **attraction/interest**

ADJ. **considerable, great, growing, obvious, powerful, special, strong | immediate, instant** *the book's immediate apeal to young children* **| limited, little | broad, mass, popular, universal, wide** *a publication designed for mass appeal* **| aesthetic, commercial, electoral, intellectual, sex, visual** *Unfortunately, the film lacks commercial appeal.*

VERB + APPEAL **have, hold** *His views hold no appeal for me.* **| broaden, extend, widen** *We are trying to broaden the appeal of classical music.* **| lose**

APPEAL + VERB **lie in sth** *His considerable appeal lies in his quiet, gentle manner.*

PREP. **~ for** *School lost its appeal for her in the second year.*

appeal *verb*

1 **make serious request for sth**

ADV. **directly** *He went over the heads of union officials, appealing directly to the workforce.*

PREP. **for, to** *Police have appealed to the public for information about the crime.*

2 **to sb in authority**

ADV. **succesfully, unsuccessfully | directly**

PREP. **against** *She appealed unsuccessfully against her conviction for murder.* **| to** *He has decided to appeal to the European Court.*

3 **be attractive/interesting to sb**

ADV. **enormously, really, strongly** *The prospect of teaching such bright children appealed enormously. The idea of retiring early really appeals to me.* **| directly**

PREP. **to** *These characters will appeal directly to children's imaginations.*

appealing *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | make sth** *The large salary made their offer even more appealing to him.* **| find sth** *I find his manner very appealing.*

ADV. **enormously, extremely, very | quite, rather | immediately**

PREP. **to** *These toys are not immediately appealing to children.*

appear *verb*

1 **come into sight**

ADV. **suddenly** *A man suddenly appeared in the doorway.* **| from nowhere** *A police officer appeared as if from nowhere and ordered us to halt.*

2 **perform in public**

ADV. **currently**

PREP. **at** *She is currently appearing at the Liverpool Playhouse.*

PHRASES **appear on television** *She regularly appears on television.*

3 **in court**

PREP. **at** *He will appear at Manchester Crown Court next week.*

PHRASES **appear before a court/judge/magistrate** *The man will appear before magistrates in Birmingham later today.* **| appear in court** *A man has appeared in court charged with the murder of seven women.*

appearance *noun*

1 way that sb/sth looks

ADJ. **attractive, handsome, youthful | distinctive, odd, strange, striking | dishevelled, scruffy, unkempt, unprepossessing | external, general, outward, overall, personal, physical, visual** *attempts to improve the general appearance of the town centre attention to personal appearance and hygiene*

VERB + APPEARANCE **have** *Inside, the house had the appearance of a temple.* **| take on** *Towns merged to take on the appearance of a city.* **| give** *The report gives an appearance of scientific credibility.* **| alter, change** *Shaving off his beard changed his appearance dramatically.* **| enhance, improve | keep up** *When she lost all her money, she was determined to keep up appearances* (= hide the true situation and pretend that everything was going well). **| judge (sb/sth) by** *To judge by appearances, Roger was rather embarrassed.*

PREP. **contrary to ~s, despite ~s** *The American president, despite appearances, has only limited power.* **| in ~** *rather bird-like in appearance*

2 arrival of sb/sth

ADJ. **dramatic, sudden, surprise, unexpected | brief**

VERB + APPEARANCE **make, put in** *She made a sudden appearance just as we were about to leave. I feel I must put in at least a brief appearance at the party.*

3 act of appearing in public

ADJ. **first, second, etc.** *her first appearance on the stage* **| final, last | frequent, occasional, rare, regular | live, personal | public | cameo, guest | court, radio, stage, television/TV** *one of the actor's rare television appearances*

VERB + APPEARANCE **make** *She made a cameo appearance in the film.*

APPEARANCE + NOUN **money** *(sport)*

appendicitis *noun*

ADJ. **acute | suspected**

QUANT. **case**

VERB + APPENDICITIS **have | get | diagnose** > Special page at ILLNESS

appendix *noun*

ADJ. **burst, grumbling** (= painful from time to time), **inflamed, perforated, ruptured** *He was taken to hospital with a burst appendix.*

VERB + APPENDIX **remove, take out** *Doctors had to take out his appendix.* **| have out** *She might have to have her appendix out.*

APPENDIX + VERB **burst, rupture** *If the condition is not treated, the appendix can rupture.*

appetite *noun*

1 **desire for food**

ADJ. **big, enormous, gargantuan, good, healthy, hearty, huge, insatiable, large, ravenous** *special double-decker sandwiches for big appetites* | **poor, small** *The symptoms of depression can include poor appetite and weight loss. I have always had a small appetite.* | **jaded** *magnificent meals to tempt the most jaded appetites*

VERB + APPETITE **have** *She had no appetite and began to lose weight.* | **lose** | **build up, develop, work up** *I went for a walk to work up an appetite for breakfast.* | **get back, regain** *After a week she had regained her appetite.* | **give sb** *All that digging has given me an appetite.* | **give an edge to, increase** *The cold air had given an edge to my appetite.* | **control, curb, suppress** *(technical)*, **take away, take the edge off** *Some drugs can suppress the appetite.* | **ruin, spoil** *This is something you can eat between meals without ruining your appetite.* | **satisfy** *This meal will satisfy even the healthiest appetite.*

APPETITE + VERB **grow, increase** | **come back, return** *His appetite has returned to normal.*

PHRASES **a lack of appetite, a loss of appetite** *The symptoms include aching limbs and a loss of appetite.*

2 **strong desire for sth**

ADJ. **enormous, great, huge, insatiable, voracious** *an insatiable appetite for books* | **public** *The BBC recognizes the public appetite for serious information.* | **sexual**

VERB + APPETITE **have** | **lose** | **give sb** | **increase, revive, whet** *Reading the first story whetted my appetite for more.* | **dull** | **satisfy**

APPETITE + VERB **grow, increase**

PREP. **~ for** *His appetite for power had grown.*

applaud *verb*

1 **clap your hands**

ADV. **loudly** *The audience applauded loudly.*

2 **praise sb/sth**

ADV. **strongly, warmly** *The decision to save the company has been warmly applauded.*

PHRASES **is to be applauded, should be applauded** *His efforts to help people should be applauded.*

applause *noun*

ADJ. **deafening, loud, thunderous, tumultuous | enthusiastic, rapturous, warm, wild | prolonged, sustained | spontaneous** *a little burst of spontaneous applause* **| gentle, muted, polite** *To muted applause a small flag was raised over the building.*

QUANT. **burst, ripple, roar, round** *The crowd gave them a round of applause.*

VERB + APPLAUSE **be greeted with, draw, earn, get, receive, win** *The speech drew loud applause.* **| break into, burst into** *The audience broke into applause.* **| acknowledge** *She stood back and acknowledged the applause of the crowd.* **| deserve** *He deserves the respect and applause of his colleagues.*

APPLAUSE + VERB **break out, greet sb/sth** *A great roar of applause broke out. Wild applause greeted this remark.* **| grow | die away/down, subside** *The applause died down as the curtain closed.*

PREP. **to ~** *He left the stage to thunderous applause.* **| ~ for** *There was a ripple of applause for the speaker.*

apple *noun*

ADJ. **sweet | sharp, sour, tart** *Add some sugar to the stewed apple?it's still a bit tart.* **| juicy | cider, cooking, dessert, eating | windfall | baked | bruised** *The apples were all bruised after being dropped on the floor.*

VERB + APPLE **bite into, eat, munch (on)** *He just sat there munching on an apple.* **| core, grate, peel**

APPLE + NOUN **crumble, pie | core, pip | tree** > Special page at FRUIT

appliance *noun*

ADJ. **modern | faulty | electrical, gas | cooking, heating | domestic, household, kitchen | surgical**

VERB + APPLIANCE **switch on, turn on | switch off, turn off** *Always switch off appliances that are not in use.* **| run, use** *Many household appliances are expensive to run.* **| maintain, service**

applicable *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem** *new developments in research that could prove directly applicable to the treatment of some cancers* **| become | make sth**

ADJ. **broadly, generally, widely | universally | directly | immediately | equally** *The rules have now been made equally applicable to all members.* **| easily, readily** *The theory does not seem easily applicable in this case.*

PREP. **for** *The offer is only applicable for journeys made during the week.* **| to** *The law is applicable to everyone.*

applicant *noun*

ADJ. **potential, prospective | suitable, suitably qualified** *Grant payments will be made to suitable applicants.* **| unsuitable | lucky, successful | disappointed, unsuccessful** *Unsuccessful applicants may appeal against the decision.* **| job | asylum, refugee**

VERB + APPLICANT **attract** *The advertisement attracted a number of applicants.* **| shortlist** *Eighteen applicants were shortlisted.* **| interview | appoint, select | reject, turn away/down**

APPLICANT + VERB **apply** *All applicants should apply in writing.*

PREP. **~ for** *There were over fifty applicants for the job.*

application *noun*

1 written request

ADJ. **formal, written | successful** *I am pleased to tell you that your application for the post of Assistant Editor has been successful.* **| unsuccessful | job, membership, patent, planning, etc.** *All planning applications should be submitted to the local council.*

VERB + APPLICATION **file, lodge, make, send in, submit** *The applicant must file a written application to the court.* **| withdraw | consider, examine, process, screen** *It takes time to process each application.* **| invite** *Applications are invited for the post of Lecturer in French.* **| grant** *(law) His application for bail was granted.* **| refuse** *(law)*, **reject, turn down**

APPLICATION + NOUN **form**

PREP. **by ~** *(formal) Admission is obtained by written application.* **| on ~** *A permit is available on application to the company.* **| ~ for** *an application for a new licence* **| ~ to** *an application to the local authority*

2 practical use

ADJ. **practical** *What are the practical applications of this work?* **| general** *The program is designed for general application.* **| wide | agricultural, industrial**

3 computing

ADJ. **client-server, database, multimedia, software**

VERB + APPLICATION **run** *You can run several applications at the same time.* **| develop**

APPLICATION + VERB **run** > Special page at COMPUTER

apply *verb*

1 **be relevant**

ADV. **equally** *These principles apply equally in all cases.*

PREP. **to** *These restrictions do not apply to us.*

PHRASES **the same applies** *British companies are subject to international laws and the same applies to companies in Europe.*

2 **put/spread on a surface**

ADV. **directly | evenly | freely | sparingly** *Apply the insecticide sparingly.*

PREP. **over** *Apply the glue evenly over both surfaces.* **| to** *Never apply the cleaning liquid directly to the surface.*

appointment *noun*

1 agreement to meet sb

ADJ. **important, pressing, urgent | first, initial | follow-up | business | dental, hair | hospital, outpatient** *The hospital needs to allow more time for outpatient appointments.*

VERB + APPOINTMENT **have | arrange, book, fix, make** *I'd like to make an appointment to see the doctor, please.* **| get** *I didn't know if I would get an appointment at such short notice.* **| give sb** *Tom has been given an appointment at the local hospital.* **| keep** *He failed to keep his appointment.* **| break, miss** *She has already broken three appointments.* **| cancel**

PREP. **by ~** *Viewing is only allowed by appointment.* **| with/without an ~** *He called without an appointment.* **| ~ with** *an appointment with a doctor*

2 job/position

ADJ. **permanent, temporary | senior | academic, cabinet, court, diplomatic, ecclesiastical, executive, government, judicial, military, ministerial, political, public, university**

VERB + APPOINTMENT **hold** *Employees may not hold any other appointments.* **| give sb, offer sb** *He was offered an appointment in the Education Department.* **| accept | obtain | take up** *He takes up his appointment in January.* **| resign** *Miss Green resigned her appointment as our regional representative.* **| secure** *By reorganizing the Church hierarchy, the king was able to secure the appointment of men whom he personally favoured.*

3 choosing sb for job

ADJ. **key** *The company has announced five key appointments at its Teesside plant.* **| formal, official | staff**

VERB + APPOINTMENT **make | announce | confirm** *The board has confirmed the appointment of Howard Kendall as Sales Manager.*

PREP. **to** *the first appointments to the new government*

appraisal *noun*

ADJ. **detailed, full, thorough** *A detailed appraisal of the scheme will now be carried out.* **| frank, honest, realistic | independent | critical | economic, financial | project | performance, staff, teacher** *a formal system of performance appraisal*

VERB + APPRAISAL **carry out, give, make** *He was asked to give an independent appraisal. She made a quick appraisal of the other guests.*

APPRAISAL + NOUN **interview** *We are holding staff appraisal interviews.*

appreciate *verb*

1 **recognize good qualities**

ADV. **really | fully, properly** *The sound quality was poor so we couldn't fully appreciate the music.*

2 **be grateful**

ADV. **deeply, greatly, really, very much** *We do really appreciate your help.*

3 **understand**

ADV. **fully, properly** *I fully appreciate your concern. We will do all in our power to help.* **| easily, readily** *The problems should be easily appreciated.*

VERB + APPRECIATE **fail to** *The government failed to appreciate the fact that voters were angry.*

PHRASES **be generally/widely appreciated** *It is generally appreciated that the rail network needs a complete overhaul.*

appreciation *noun*

1 **understanding and enjoyment of sth**

ADJ. **deep, fine, great, real | aesthetic**

VERB + APPRECIATION **have** *They have little appreciation of the arts.* **| show | cultivate, develop, gain** *I have now developed an appreciation of poetry.*

PREP. **in ~** *She gazed in appreciation at the scene.*

2 **feeling of being grateful for sth**

ADJ. **deep, genuine, heartfelt**

VERB + APPRECIATION **express, show** *I would like to express my appreciation and thanks to you all.*

PREP. **in ~ (of)** *I'll be sending them a donation in appreciation of their help.* **| with ~** *'Thank you,' she murmured, with heartfelt appreciation.* **| ~ for** *his appreciation for all the work she had done*

PHRASES **a lack of appreciation, (as) a token of your appreciation** *As a token of our appreciation we would like to offer you this small gift.*

3 **understanding of what sth involves**

ADJ. **better, clear, deep, full, great, keen, real, wider | growing** *There is a growing appreciation of the need for change.*

VERB + APPRECIATION **have | gain** *The course helped me to gain a deeper appreciation of what scientific research involves.*

PREP. **~ of** *She had no appreciation of the difficulties we were facing.*

apprehension *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, growing | sudden**

VERB + APPREHENSION **be filled with, be full of, feel** *They were filled with apprehension as they approached the building.* **| express, show | overcome | cause** *The change in the law has caused apprehension among many people.* **| allay** *How can I allay your apprehensions?*

APPREHENSION + VERB **grow** *There were still areas of doubt and her apprehension grew.*

PREP. **with ~** *School reports are always received with some apprehension.* **| ~ about/over** *her apprehension about being in hospital* **| ~ at** *She felt some apprehension at the thought of seeing him again.* **| ~ for** *There is great apprehension for the future.*

PHRASES **a feeling/look of apprehension**

apprehensive *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow | remain | make sb** *The long delay had made me quite apprehensive.*

ADV. **deeply, extremely, very | a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly**

PREP. **about** *She was deeply apprehensive about her future.* **| of** *He was rather apprehensive of failure.*

approach *noun*

1 **way of dealing with sb/sth**

ADJ. **conventional, orthodox, traditional | alternative, different, fresh, new, novel** *We need to try alternative approaches to the problem.* **| cautious, conservative | creative, innovative | flexible | direct, no-nonsense, positive, practical, pragmatic, problem-solving, rational, useful | indirect | formal | informal | right | wrong | analytical, scientific, structured, systematic, theoretical | holistic, integrated | basic, general | objective | simplistic**

VERB + APPROACH **have** *Some teachers have a more formal approach to teaching.* **| adopt, develop, take, try, use** *We need to adopt a more pragmatic approach.* **| favour, prefer** *She favoured the direct approach.*

PREP. **~ to** *I liked her approach to the problem*

2 **act of coming nearer**

VERB + APPROACH **make** *The aircraft had to make a steep approach to the landing strip.*

PREP. **at the ~ of** *The children fell silent at the approach of their teacher.* **| with the ~ of** *The weather turned colder with the approach of autumn.* **| ~ to** *The plane crashed during its approach to the runway.*

3 **discussion with sb in order to ask them for sth**

VERB + APPROACH **make | have, receive**

PREP. **~ from** *We've received an approach from the director of a rival firm.* **| ~ to** *We'll have to make an approach to the managing director.*

approach *verb*

1 **come nearer**

ADV. **slowly | cautiously, warily, with caution**

PREP. **from** *The army approached from the south.*

2 **come nearer in time**

ADV. **fast, rapidly** *The time is fast approaching when we will have to replace these old machines.*

3 **speak to sb, usually to ask for sth**

ADV. **directly** *It's best to approach her directly.*

VERB + APPROACH **be easy to | be difficult to** *She found her father difficult to approach.*

PREP. **about** *Have you approached John about doing a concert?* **| for** *I approached the bank for a loan.*

4 **come close in amount/quality/style**

ADV. **closely** *Here Wordsworth's verse movement closely approaches that of Gray.* **| not nearly, not remotely** *There is no other player even remotely approaching her calibre.*

appropriate *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | consider sth, deem sth, think sth** *It was thought appropriate to award her the prize.*

ADV. **extremely, very | entirely, quite**

PREP. **for** *It might be appropriate for him to attend the course.* **| to** *Tutors can construct tests appropriate to individual students' needs.*

approval *noun*

ADJ. **full, total, unqualified, warm, wholehearted** *The scheme did not meet unqualified approval.* **| grudging, qualified | general, overwhelming, popular, public, unanimous, universal, widespread | final, initial, preliminary, prior** *All development requires the prior approval of the planning authority.* **| tacit | written | formal, official | government, parliamentary, royal**

VERB + APPROVAL **need, require | seek, submit sth for** *We have submitted a design for approval.* **| gain, get, meet with, obtain, receive, win** *You are not allowed to build anything without first obtaining the approval of the local authority.* **| give, grant** *The government has now given its approval for the new examinations.* **| refuse, withhold | express, nod, show** *The people listening nodded approval.*

PREP. **on ~** *The goods were supplied on approval* (= they could be sent back if they were not satisfactory). **| with ~** *Jane's father regards her fiance with approval.* **| with/without sb's ~** *You may not decorate the flat without the landlord's approval.* **| ~ for** *He won approval for his project.* **| ~ from** *We're waiting for approval from the authorities.*

PHRASES **a nod of approval** *She gave him a nod of approval.* **| a roar of approval** *There was a roar of approval from the crowd.* **| a seal/stamp of approval** *The government has given its seal of approval to the project.* **| subject to approval** *The offer is subject to approval at the Annual General Meeting.*

approve *verb*

1 **like sb/sth**

ADV. **heartily, thoroughly, very much, wholeheartedly** *I wholeheartedly approve of his actions.*

PREP. **of** *I very much approve of these new tests.*

2 **agree to sth**

ADV. **formally, officially** *His appointment has not been formally approved yet.* **| overwhelmingly, unanimously**

approximation *noun*

ADJ. **close, good, nearest, reasonable** *This is the nearest approximation of cost that they can give us.* **| crude, rough** *This is only a crude approximation of the actual conditions in the area.*

VERB + APPROXIMATION **make** *We do not have the true figures so we will have to make some approximations.* **| give (sb), provide (sb with)**

April *nou*n > Note at MONTH

aptitude *noun*

ADJ. **great, natural, special** *He has a natural aptitude for this work.*

VERB + APTITUDE **have | display, show** *children who show an aptitude for sport*

APTITUDE + NOUN **test**

PREP. **~ for** *an aptitude for mathematics*

Arabic *noun*

ADJ. **classical, modern**

ARABIC + NOUN **script** > Note at LANGUAGE

arbitrary *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **completely, entirely, purely, quite, wholly | fairly, rather, somewhat, to some extent** *The decision is to some extent arbitrary.* **| essentially | apparently**

arbitration *noun*

ADJ. **binding** *Both sides have agreed that the arbitration will be binding.* **| independent, international**

VERB + ARBITRATION **agree to, go to, refer sth to, submit (sth) to, take sth to** *Both parties agreed to independent arbitration. The matter will go to arbitration.* **| determine sth by, settle sth by** *The matter will be settled by arbitration.*

ARBITRATION + NOUN **procedure, scheme, service, system**

arc *noun*

ADJ. **great, high, long, sweeping, wide** *firing shells in a high arc over our heads* **| perfect**

VERB + ARC **describe** *(technical)*, **form, make** *forming a perfect arc in the sky*

PREP. **in an ~** *The islands lie in a wide arc just off the mainland.*

arch *noun*

ADJ. **pointed, round, semi-circular | brick, iron, masonry, stone | monumental, triumphal | Gothic, Romanesque, etc. | proscenium, railway** *an old theatre with a proscenium arch Mean little houses clustered under the railway arches.*

VERB + ARCH **build, erect** *This huge triumphal arch was erected at the beginning of this century.* **| form, make** *The branches of the trees formed an arch over the bench.*

PREP. **beneath an/the ~, through an/the ~, under an/the ~** *We rode under the arch.*

archaeologist *noun*

ADJ. **amateur, professional**

ARCHAEOLOGIST + VERB **excavate sth | dig sth up, discover sth, find sth, uncover sth, unearth sth** *examples of life thousands of years ago, unearthed by archaeologists* > Note at JOB

archaeology *noun*

ADJ. **Anglo-Saxon, classical, medieval, etc. | environmental, industrial, marine, underwater** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

archbishop *noun*

ADJ. **Anglican, Roman Catholic**

VERB + ARCHBISHOP **be appointed (as), become, be consecrated, be enthroned (as), be made, succeed sb as** *He was enthroned as archbishop in Canterbury Cathedral in 1980.*

PREP. **~ of** *He was made Archbishop of Milan.*

architect *noun*

ADJ. **famous, great, leading, talented | church, city, landscape, naval, railway**

ARCHITECT + VERB **design sth, draw up plans (for sth)** *The house was designed by architecy Louis Kahn.* > Note at PROFESSIONAL(for more verbs)

architecture *noun*

1 **style/design of a building**

ADJ. **classical, medieval, modern | vernacular | Gothic, Romanesque, etc. | church, domestic, ecclesiastical, landscape, naval, railway**

PHRASES **a school/style of architecture** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

2 **design and structure of a computer system**

ADJ. **client-server, hardware, network, processing, processor, software, system**

archive *noun*

ADJ. **extensive | electronic, film, photo/photographic, sound** *The programme is preserved in the BBC sound archives.* **| company, corporate, county, family, local, national, official, personal, private, state**

VERB + ARCHIVE **build up, create, set up** *collecting documents to build up an archive* **| house, keep, maintain** *the person responsible for keeping the archives the building which houses the state archives* **| hold sth in, keep sth in, preserve sth in** *The data is now held in the company archives.* **| consult, examine, look through**

ARCHIVE + VERB **contain sth, hold sth**

ARCHIVE + NOUN **collection | film, footage** *archive foortage of the victory celebrations* **| material**

PREP. **among/amongst the ~s** *There are many clues hidden amongst the archives of the local museum.* **| from an/the ~** *some photographs from the library's archives* **| in an/the ~** *No record of this letter exists in the archives.*

area *noun*

1 part of place

ADJ. **huge, large, vast, wide | small | local** *She knows the local area very well.* **| surrounding** *The storms hit Edinburgh and the surrounding area.* **| central | geographical | isolated, outlying, remote | rural | built up, inner-city, metropolitan, urban | industrial | residential | coastal, mountain | conservation | deprived** *people living in socially deprived areas*

VERB + AREA **live in | move into/to** *A lot of new people have moved into the area recently.* **| leave, move away from | cover | be scattered over, be spread over** *Wreckage from the plane was scattered over a large area.*

AREA + NOUN **manager, office**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *Few homes in the area had electricity.* **| outside an/the ~** *I live outside the London area.* **| within an/the ~ | ~ around/round** *the area around London*

2 space

ADJ. **dining, lounge, reception | picnic, play | no smoking, smoking | penalty**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *I'll meet you in the reception area.*

3 subject/activity

ADJ. **important, key, main | complex, difficult, problem, sensitive** *Taxation is a very complex area.* **| growth** *The big growth area of recent years has been in health clubs.* **| subject | grey** *The proposals contain too many grey areas* (= aspects that are not clear).

VERB + AREA **cover** *The course covers two main subject areas.* **| identify** *The primary need is to identify problem areas.*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *There have been some exciting new developments in this area.*

PHRASES **an area of activity/life** *People with this disability can cope well in most areas of life.* **| an area of concern/difficulty** *We are generally pleased with how the scheme is operating but there are one or two areas of concern.* **| an area of interest/research/study**

4 **measurement**

ADJ. **large | small | total | floor, surface** *A large building with a floor area of 100m2.*

VERB + AREA **cover, have** *The estate covers an area of 106 acres.*

arena *noun*

1 for sports/entertainment

ADJ. **Olympic | showjumping, sports | indoor**

VERB + ARENA **enter | leave** *He left the arena to loud applause.*

PREP. **in/into an/the ~** *The rider has to halt the horse in the arena.*

2 area of activity

ADJ. **international, world | wider** *Trades unions are active both in individual workplaces and in the wider arena of the state.* **| public | commercial, political | competitive**

VERB + ARENA **provide** *The conference should provide an arena for marketing our new products.* **| emerge into, enter, move into** *Some documents have now emerged into the public arena. He had no desire to enter the political arena.*

PREP. **in/within an/the ~** *The company has been very successful in the commercial arena.* **| outside an/the ~** *I want to work outside the arena of competition.*

argue *verb*

1 **disagree**

ADV. **fiercely, furiously, heatedly | endlessly**

PREP. **about** *arguing endlessly about money* **| over** *They were arguing over who should have the car that day.* **| with** *She's always arguing with her mother.*

2 **give reasons to support opinion**

ADV. **forcefully, passionately, strongly | convincingly, persuasively, plausibly, successfully** *The report argues convincingly that economic help should be given to these countries.* **| sensibly**

VERB + ARGUE **be disposed to, wish to** *I would wish to argue that appreciation of the arts should be encouraged for its own sake.* **| be prepared to** *Are you prepared to argue that killing is sometimes justified?* **| attempt to, try to | go on to** *In her paper she goes on to argue that scientists do not yet know enough about the nature of the disease.* **| be possible to** *It is possible to argue that the rules are too strict.* **| be difficult to**

PREP. **against** *She argued against a rise in interest rates.* **| for** *The general argued for extending the ceasefire.* **| in favour of** *They argued in favour of stricter punishments.*

argument *noun*

1 angry discussion

ADJ. **angry, bitter, heated, violent | big** *I had a big argument with my mother this morning.* **| little, silly, stupid**

VERB + ARGUMENT **become/get involved in, get into, have** *I don't want to get into an argument with her.* **| cause, provoke, start | lose, win** *I was determined to win the argument.*

ARGUMENT + VERB **arise, break out, develop, erupt** *Minutes later a violent argument erupted.*

PREP. **~ about** *We had an argument about what we should buy.* **| ~ between** *an argument between her parents* **| ~ over** *The argument over decentralization will probably continue for ever.* **| ~ with** *an argument with his wife*

2 reason supporting opinion

ADJ. **basic, general | main | good, major, powerful, sound, strong, valid | compelling, conclusive, convincing, persuasive | plausible** *Their argument sounds plausible but is it really valid?* **| spurious, tenuous, weak | balanced | logical, rational, reasoned | economic, moral, political, theoretical**

VERB + ARGUMENT **advance, deploy, offer, present, put forward** *He put forward some very convincing arguments.* **| develop** *This argument is developed further in the next chapter.* **| illustrate, support, underline** *Do you have any evidence to support your argument?* **| consider, hear, listen to | accept, agree with | dismiss, reject** *The company dismissed his arguments as alarmist.* **| counter, refute** *She tried to think how to refute the argument on moral grounds.*

ARGUMENT + VERB **be based on sth** *The government's argument is always based on how much such a scheme would cost.* **| go, run** *Centralized government, so the argument goes, is too far removed from the problems of ordinary citizens.* **| apply (for sth)** *The same argument applies to fox-hunting.* **| justify sth | suggest sth** *These arguments suggest that the medical establishment had an interest in suppressing the research.*

PREP. **~ against** *the arguments against increasing taxes* **| ~ concerning** *arguments concerning the nature of morality* **| ~ for** *There is a very good argument for increasing spending on education.* | ~ in favour of *What are the arguments in favour of change?*

PHRASES **all/both sides of an argument** *He was able to see both sides of the argument.* **| a flaw in the argument** *I can see no flaw in the argument as she has just explained it.* **| a line of argument** *I can see a few problems with this line of argument.*

arise *verb*

ADV. **naturally, spontaneously | directly**

VERB + ARISE **may, might | be likely/unlikely to**

PREP. **from** *Some learning difficulties arise from the way children are taught at school.* **| out of** *The current debate arose out of the concerns of parents.*

aristocracy *noun*

ADJ. **British, French, etc. | landed, landowning | local**

PHRASES **a member of the aristocracy**

arithmetic *noun*

ADJ. **basic, simple | mental** *a test of mental arithmetic*

VERB + ARITHMETIC **do** *By the age of ten, the children can do simple arithmetic.* **| check** *I've worked out the price, but I need to check the arithmetic.*

arm *noun*

ADJ. **left, right | upper** *the muscles of the upper arm* **| strong | good** *He used his good arm to support his weight.* **| bad, broken, weak, withered** *I've got a bad arm so I'm afraid I can't help you.* **| open** *(often figurative),* **outstretched** *They're sure to welcome you with open arms.* **| bare**

VERB + ARM **bend, move | lower, raise** *The figure in the boat raised an arm.* **| break, dislocate, hurt, twist | hold out, open, stretch out** *He held out his arms with a broad smile.* **| cross, fold** *She folded her arms and stared at him.* **| link** *The couple linked arms and set off along the beach.* **| wave** *He was running towards them, waving his arms.* **| catch (at), catch hold of, grab, take** *A hand reached out and caught hold of her arm. She moved towards her father and took his arm.* **| grip, hold, squeeze, touch | fall into** *They fell into each other's arms.* **| draw/gather/pull sb into, take sb in** *He pulled her into his arms and kissed her.* **| hold sb in**

ARM + VERB **drop | hang** *His arm hung awkwardly against his side.* **| tighten** *Her arms tightened convulsively round the child.*

PREP. **by the ~** *The officer grabbed him by the arm* (= grabbed his arm). **| in sb's ~** *The child lay in its mother's arms.* **| on the ~** *She touched him gently on the arm.* **| on your ~** *Lucy felt the warm sun on her bare arms. He walked in with a tall blonde on his arm* (= next to him and holding his arm). **| under an/your ~** *She carried the dog under one arm.*

PHRASES **arm in arm** *They walked along arm in arm* (= with the arm of one person linked with the arm of the other), **at arm's length** *He held the dirty rag at arm's length* (= as far away from his body as possible). **| the crook of an/sb's arm** *She lay curled up in the crook of his arm.* **| fling/put/throw, etc. your arms around/round sb/sth** *He ran towards her and flung his arms around her. He put an arm around her shoulders.* **| in each other's arms** *They fell asleep in each other's arms* (= holding each other). **| with arms akimbo** (= with your arms bent and your hands on your hips) *She stood looking at him with arms akimbo.*

armaments *noun*

ADJ. **conventional, nuclear**

VERB + ARMAMENTS **manufacture, produce**

ARMAMENTS + NOUN **factory, industry, production**

armchair *noun*

ADJ. **big, deep, large | comfortable, comfy | battered, old, worn | leather, upholstered, wicker, wooden**

VERB + ARMCHAIR **be seated in, be slumped in, be sprawled in, sit in | collapse into, flop into, throw yourself into | curl up in, ease yourself into, settle into** *He eased himself into the big armchair.*

armed *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **heavily, well | lightly | fully**

PREP. **with** *The soldiers were all armed with automatic rifles.*

armistice *noun*

VERB + ARMISTICE **ask for, call for, seek | negotiate, work out | agree to, sign**

PREP. **~ with** *to sign an armistice with the Americans*

armour *noun*

ADJ. **full, heavy | light | body** *the police should be protected by body armour.* **| protective**

VERB + ARMOUR **have on, wear | put on, take off | penetrate, pierce** *An arrow had pierced his armour.*

PREP. **in ~** *warriors in full armour*

PHRASES **a suit of armour** *He wore a suit of heavy armour and carried a sword.*

armoured *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **heavily** *a convoy of heavily armoured vehicles* **| lightly | fully** *a horse capable of carrying a fully armoured knight*

arms *noun*

ADJ. **nuclear | small** *fighters using small arms and home-made grenades*

VERB + ARMS **bear, carry** *The right to bear arms is enshrined in the constitution.* **| call sb to** *(formal) He called his comrades to arms* (= urged them to fight). **| take up** *(formal) The people took up arms to defend their country.* **| lay down** *(formal) The government called on them to lay down their arms and surrender.* **| supply** *He was accused of supplying arms to terrorists*

ARMS + NOUN **race | control, embargo | deal, industry, sales, trade**

PREP. **under ~** *(formal) There were more than a million men under arms during the American Civil War.*

army *noun*

1 **group of soldiers**

ADJ. **great, huge, large, mighty, powerful | small | professional, regular, standing | reserve | conscript | volunteer | disciplined | modern | allied | enemy | opposing | foreign | national | private | guerrilla | rebel | advancing, invading, occupying, victorious | defeated, retreating**

VERB + ARMY **have | go into, join** *After leaving school Mike went into the army.* **| leave | be in command of, command, lead** *He was in command of the British Army in Egypt. He led the army into battle.* **| drill, train | amass, build up, raise, recruit** *The king was unable to raise an army.* **| equip, supply | mobilize | deploy, field** *The French army was deployed in the Western Desert.* **| concentrate | crush, decimate, defeat, put to flight, rout** *The army was finally defeated in the autumn.* **| demobilize, disband** *The emperor was deposed and his army disbanded.*

ARMY + VERB **gather | advance, march** *A huge army marched on London.* **| camp | go into action, invade | attack, clash, fight** *The two opposing armies clashed in battle.* **| occupy | flee, pull back, retreat, withdraw**

ARMY + NOUN **captain, chief, commander, general, officer | corps, personnel, unit | barracks, base, camp, headquarters | career | patrol | greatcoat, uniform | wife**

PREP. **in the ~** *Her husband is in the army.*

2 **large group**

ADJ. **vast** *a vast army of personnel* **| small** *a small army of volunteers* **| growing, increasing | reserve**

PREP. **of** *He argued that unemployment created a useful reserve army of labour.*

aroma *noun*

ADJ. **pungent, rich, strong | distinctive | lingering | faint, subtle | pleasant, sweet, wonderful | appetizing, mouth-watering**

VERB + AROMA **savour, smell** *As soon as I opened the front door I smelled the distinctive aroma of fresh coffee.* **| be filled with, have** *The room was filled with a strong aroma of woodsmoke.*

AROMA + VERB **linger, waft** *The aroma of fresh baking wafted towards her.*

arrange *verb*

1 plan/organize sth

ADV. **easily | with difficulty** *These things can be arranged with difficulty.* **| hastily, hurriedly, quickly | secretly | specially**

VERB + ARRANGE **try to | be able to, can/could** *Todd will be able to arrange matters.* **| be difficult/easy/possible to** *These matters are easy to arrange.*

PREP. **for** *I'd be very grateful if you could arrange for this work to be carried out.*

2 put in order; make neat/attractive

ADV. **carefully, neatly** *Her red hair was carefully arranged and her face made up.* **| alphabetically, chronologically, symmetrically, systematically** *The books are arranged alphabetically by author.*

PREP. **in** *She arranged the chairs in neat rows.* **| into** *She took the list of visitors' names and arranged them into groups of four.*

PHRASES **arrange sth in alphabetical/chronological order** *The names are arranged in alphabetical order.*

arrangement *noun*

1 plans/organization

ADJ. **alternative, better, different, new, other** *It may be necessary to make alternative arrangements.* | **final** | **practical** | **satisfactory, sensible, suitable** | **careful, detailed** | **flexible** | **conventional** | **unconventional, unusual** | **special** *There are special arrangements for people working overseas.* | **formal** | **necessary, proper** | **administrative, organizational** | **domestic, funeral, holiday, living, pension, seating, security, sleeping, travel, working** *Their domestic arrangements were considered unconventional at the time.*

VERB + ARRANGEMENT **make** | **complete, confirm, finalize** *Arrangements for the trip have now been completed.* | **discuss** *We are just discussing the final arrangements for the concert.* | **upset** *All her careful arrangements had been upset!*

ARRANGEMENT + VERB **stand** *As far as I know the arrangement still stands.* | **fall through** *The catering arrangements for the conference have fallen through.*

PREP. **~ for** *Arrangements for the funeral are complete.* | **~ with** *I have made arrangements with the shop for the goods to be delivered here.*

2 agreement

ADJ. **business, financial** *It's purely a business arrangement?there's no need to get emotionally involved.* | **convenient** | **special** | **formal** | **informal** | **voluntary** | **private** | **reciprocal** | **long-standing, long-term, permanent** | **interim, temporary**

VERB + ARRANGEMENT **have** *The company has a special arrangement with the bank.* | **agree, come to, make** *She made an arrangement with her employer whereby she worked a reduced number of hours.*

PREP. **by (an/the) ~** *Viewing of the property is only possible by arrangement with the owner. The couple have an arrangement by which they each contribute equally to the cost of the house.* | **under an/the ~** *Under this arrangement you can pay for the goods over a longer period.* | **~ between** *an arrangement between the two men* | **~ with** *He finally came to an arrangement with his landlord.*

PHRASES **by prior arrangement** *A tour of the theatre is available by prior arrangement.*

3 **group of things placed together**

ADJ. **complex, complicated** *a complex arrangment of rods and cogs* **| physical** *Even the physical arrangement of the classroon can influence the way children learn.* **| floral, flower**

VERB + ARRANGEMENT **design, do** *Who did this beautiful flower arrangement?*

array *noun*

ADJ. **broad, diverse, extensive, huge, vast, wide | bewildering, colourful, confusing, dazzling, fascinating, fine, formidable, glittering, impressive, remarkable, rich, splendid, staggering, stunning, wonderful** *a dazzling array of talent*

VERB + ARRAY **have, offer, provide** *The store offers a bewildering array of garden tools.* **| be faced with** *The customer is faced with a formidable array of products.* **| choose from, select from** *It is difficult to choose from the vast array of wines on offer.*

arrears *noun*

ADJ. **debt, mortgage, rent, tax**

VERB + ARREARS **fall into, get into, owe** *They fell into arrears with their rent. The government has agreed to pay all arrears owed to members of the armed forces.* **| accumulate** *The country had accumulated arrears of $80 million on loans of $400 million.* **| pay (off)** *struggling to pay off her mortgage arrears* **| recover** *The local authority must try to recover arrears of rent.*

ARREARS + VERB **amount to sth, total sth** *By this time the arrears amounted to £12,000.*

PREP. **in ~** *She was six months in arrears with the mortgage. You will be paid monthly in arrears.* **| ~ on** *There have been sharp increases in arrears on interest payments.*

arrest *noun*

ADJ. **illegal, unlawful, wrongful | arbitrary | mass, widespread | citizen's** *He grabbed the intruder by the arm and said, 'I am making a citizen's arrest.'* **| house** *Following the coup, parliamentary leaders were put under house arrest.*

VERB + ARREST **make | place sb under, put sb under | lead to** *A reward has been offered for information that leads to the arrest of the murderer.* **| avoid, escape, evade | resist** *He was charged with violent behaviour and resisting arrest.*

ARREST + NOUN **warrant**

PREP. **under ~** *The man is now under arrest in London.* **| ~ for** *They made 11 arrests for possession of drugs.*

PHRASES **the power of arrest** *The government may remove the power of arrest from military police.* **| under close arrest** *Woolley was placed under close arrest for mutiny.* **| a warrant for sb's arrest**

arrival *noun*

1 **act of arriving**

ADJ. **early | late | timely** *The timely arrival of the cheque took away the need to borrow money.* **| eventual | dramatic, sudden, surprise, unexpected | expected, imminent, impending** *I told her of my brother's expected arrival.*

VERB + ARRIVAL **announce, herald, signal** *A fanfare of trumpets heralded the arrival of the King.* **| expect | await** *a crowd awaiting the arrival of the film star* **| greet** *The staff greeted the arrival of the new head teacher with excitement.* **| celebrate, welcome | delay | hasten**

ARRIVAL + NOUN **time**

PREP. **on/upon (sb's) ~** *Guests receive dinner upon arrival at the hotel.* **| with the ~** *With the arrival of John's friends, the party became really enjoyable.* **| ~ at** *his arrival at the theatre* **| ~ in** *their arrival in Paris*

PHRASES **arrival on the scene** *They were saved by the arrival on the scene of another boat.* **| arrivals and departures** *There are 120 arrivals and departures every day.* **| time of arrival** *your expected time of arrival is 7.15.*

2 **sb/sth that arrives**

ADJ. **early, first | late** *Someone should stay here to meet the late arrivals.* **| latest, new, recent** *The club has a dinner to welcome new arrivals to the town. We're expecting a new arrival* (= a baby) *in the family soon.*

VERB + ARRIVAL **expect | meet | welcome**

arrive *verb*

ADV. **early, late | shortly, soon** *We should arrive shortly.* **| finally** *We finally arrived at our destination late that evening.* **| on time, punctually | safe and sound, safely | unannounced** *My uncle arrived unannounced yesterday evening.*

VERB + ARRIVE **be due to** *We are due to arrive in Rome at ten o'clock.* **| fail to** *The package failed to arrive.*

PREP. **at** *We arrived at the hotel late.* **| in** *I should arrive in London tomorrow morning.*

PHRASES **the first/last to arrive**

arrogance *noun*

ADJ. **breathtaking, supreme | unconscious**

VERB + ARROGANCE **have** *She had the arrogance to believe the law did not apply to her.* **| display, show**

arrow *noun*

1 **weapon**

ADJ. **poison/poisoned**

QUANT. **hail, volley** *A hail of arrows descended from the tower.*

VERB + ARROW **fire, shoot**

ARROW + VERB **hit sb/sth** *The arrow hit its target.* **| miss (sb/sth)** *She aimed carefully at the tree but the arrow missed.*

ARROW + NOUN **head** (also **arrowhead**) **| slit** *the arrow slits in the castle's battlements*

PHRASES **a bow and arrow** *The people used bows and arrows for hunting.*

2 **symbol**

ADJ. **left, right | down, up** *The down arrow indicates rain.* **| broken, curved** *The old road is shown on the map by broken arrows.*

VERB + ARROW **follow** *Follow the red arrows to get to the camp reception.*

ARROW + VERB **denote sth, indicate sth, mark sth, point, show sth** *You will see an arrow pointing to the left.*

ARROW + NOUN **key** *You can scroll through the text using the up and down arrow keys.*

arson *nou*n

ADJ. **attempted**

ARSON + NOUN **attack** > Note at CRIME(for verbs)

art *noun*

1 **paintings, drawings, etc.**

ADJ. **great, high | abstract, avant-garde, commercial, conceptual, figurative, fine, graphic, performance, pop/popular, sacred, visual | contemporary, modern**

VERB + ART **create, produce** *one of the greatest works of art ever produced*

ART + NOUN **gallery | collector, critic, dealer, historian, lover | treasure, work** (also **artwork**) **| college, school | form** *Cinema became accepted as an art form.* **| history | market | world** *Many people from the art world attended the painter's funeral.*

2 **the arts: art, music, theatre, literature, etc.**

ADJ. **creative, decorative, dramatic, performing, plastic, visual**

PHRASES **arts and crafts** *an exhibition of Peruvian arts and crafts* **| funding for the arts, a patron of the arts, sponsorship of the arts 3 arts** not sciences

ART + NOUN **subject | degree**

PHRASES **arts and sciences**

4 **ability/skill**

VERB + ART **master, perfect** *I've never mastered the art of making bread.*

PREP. **~ of** *Television has ruined the art of conversation.*

PHRASES **get sth down to a fine art** (= learn to do it very well) *She's got the business of buying Christmas presents down to a fine art.* > Note at ART

artery *noun*

ADJ. **main, major | blocked, clogged | severed | carotid, coronary, pulmonary, etc.**

VERB + ARTERY **block | widen** *The surgeon will widen her arteries.* **| rupture, sever**

ARTERY + VERB **clog up** *Too much fatty food will make your arteries more likely to clog up.*

PHRASES **hardening of the arteries** (= a disease of the arteries) *She suffers from hardening of the arteries.* **| veins and arteries** *blood flowing through veins and arteries*

arthritis *noun*

ADJ. **severe | chronic | rheumatoid**

VERB + ARTHRITIS **have, suffer (from) | develop, get** *It is unclear why some people develop arthritis.* **| treat**

ARTHRITIS + NOUN **sufferer**

PHRASES **crippled with arthritis** > Special page at ILLNESS

article *noun*

1 piece of writing

ADJ. **brilliant, excellent, good, informative, interesting | influential, major, seminal | controversial, critical, provocative | in-depth | feature, lead/ leading, review** *A leading article in 'The Times' accused the minister of lying.* **| occasional** (= not part of a series) *It was her job to commission occasional articles.* **| offending** *An advertisement will now replace the offending article.* **| academic, learned, scholarly | journal, magazine, newspaper, periodical, press**

QUANT. **series**

VERB + ARTICLE **commission | do** *I'm doing an article about ways of preventing pollution.* **| contribute, submit | read, see** *Did you see the article on Europe in today's paper?* **| carry, feature, print, publish, run** *The magazine refused to print his article.*

ARTICLE + VERB **appear** *The article appears in this week's edition of 'The Spectator'.* **| describe sth, detail sth, explain sth, point sth out, say sth, state sth | discuss sth, examine sth, explore sth, focus on sth, look at sth** *The article looks at two questions.* **| allege sth, argue sth, claim sth, imply sth, suggest sth | attack sb/sth, criticize sb/sth | cite sb/sth, quote sb/sth | continue, go on** *The article goes on to quote from Darwin's 'Origin of Species'.* **| conclude sth**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *She admitted she was wrong in an article in the newspaper.* **| ~ about, ~ by** *an article about atomic clocks by Professor Keith Runcorn* **| ~ on** *an article on the dangers of sunbathing*

PHRASES **an article called/entitled/headed sth** *an article entitled 'Think Yourself Thin'*

2 part of law

ADJ. **key** *The key articles of the constitution can only be changed by referendum.*

VERB + ARTICLE **be in breach of, breach, contravene, flout, infringe, violate** *The actions of the organization are in breach of Article 12 of the treaty.*

ARTICLE + VERB **provide sth, specify sth, state sth** *Article 10 provides that all businesses must be registered correctly.*

PREP. **under an/the ~** *The judge ordered the child's return home under Article 12 of the Convention.*

PHRASES **the terms of an article** *The terms of Article 3 will be changed by the new government.*

3 thing

ADJ. **finished** *The finished article takes two months to manufacture.* **| the genuine** *Fake designer watches are sold at a fraction of the price of the genuine article.* **| offending | household, toilet**

VERB + ARTICLE **make, manufacture, produce**

PHRASES **an article of clothing**

4 grammar

ADJ. **definite, indefinite**

VERB + ARTICLE **take** *Names of countries in English do not usually take an article.*

articulate *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **highly, very** *a highly articulate woman*

PREP. **about** *The teachers help the children to be more articulate about their strengths and weaknesses.*

articulate *verb*

1 **pronounce sth carefully**

ADV. **carefully, clearly, well** *She spoke slowly, articulating each word clearly.* **| poorly**

2 **express sth**

ADV. **clearly, well** *She cannot articulate her feelings very well.* **| fully | poorly**

artificial *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem**

ADV. **highly, very | completely, entirely, totally | increasingly | a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | patently** *a patently artificial contrivance*

artillery *noun*

ADJ. **field | heavy** *The enemy has enough heavy artillery to win the war.*

ARTILLERY + NOUN **attack, barrage, bombardment, fire | piece, shell | train, unit** *The soldiers of the artillery train had panicked and cut the traces of their horses. nuclear artillery units*

artist *noun*

1 **person who creates works of art**

ADJ. **gifted, great, talented | distinguished, established, famous, leading, major, successful, well-known | aspiring, budding, up-and-coming | struggling, unknown | amateur, professional | self-taught | serious** *He is a serious artist, and totally committed to his work.* **| local | female, woman | male | creative | real, true** *(figurative) My husband is a real artist in the kitchen.* **| abstract, avant-garde, commercial, conceptual, figurative, fine, graffiti, graphic, landscape, make-up, pavement, performance, pop/popular, scenic, visual, war, watercolour, wildlife | contemporary, living, modern, nineteenth-century, etc.**

VERB + ARTIST **commission** *In 1942 the city commissioned war artist John Piper to paint its bombed cathedral.* **| feature** *an exhibition featuring wildlife artist Emma Gray*

ARTIST + VERB **create sth, draw (sth), paint (sth), produce sth** *an artist who paints in oils* **| work** *artists who work in different media* **| exhibit sth, show sth** *Local watercolour artists are currently exhibiting their work in the town hall.*

PHRASES **an artist in residence** *the new artist in residence at the Tate Gallery*

2 (*also* **artiste**) **a professional entertainer**

ADJ. **guest** *The Blue Note Quartet will be the guest artists tomorrow night.* **| solo | recording | cabaret, escape, mime, music hall, rap, reggae, trapeze, variety**

VERB + ARTIST **feature** *The festival featured artists such John Mclaughlin and Russell Malone.*

ARTIST + VERB **perform (sth) | work** > Note at JOB

ascend *verb*

ADV. **gently | steeply**

PREP. **from** *The road ascends steeply from the harbour.*

ascent *noun*

1 **act of climbing/moving up**

ADJ. **gradual, slow**

VERB + ASCENT **make** *The climbers made their ascent of the mountain without oxygen.*

PREP. **~ from** *the ascent from the valley* **| ~ to** *their ascent to the summit*

2 **upward path/slope**

ADJ. **steep | long**

VERB + ASCENT **climb** *climbing the steep ascent on to the plateau* **| to** *a steep ascent to the village*

3 **becoming more important or powerful**

ADJ. **rapid | gradual | ~ to** *her rapid ascent to power*

ash *noun*

1 **powder that is left after sth has burnt**

ADJ. **glowing, hot, red-hot, smouldering** *the glowing ashes of the dying fire* | **cold, dead** *The fire had died to cold ashes.* | **fine** *Fine ash covered the hill near the volcano.* | **bonfire, cigarette, coal, volcanic, wood**

QUANT. **cloud** *A cloud of ash rose from the volcano.*

VERB + ASH **flick, tap (used about cigarette ash)** *He flicked ash into the ashtray.* | **reduce sth to, turn to ~es** *a village reduced to ashes by war (figurative) All her dreams had turned to ashes.*

ASH + VERB **fall** *Ash from the volcano fell over a wide area.*

PHRASES **rise from the ashes** *(figurative) The party had risen, like a phoenix, from the ashes of electoral disaster.*

2 **ashes: remains of a dead body**

VERB + ASH **scatter** *His ashes were scattered on his beloved farm.*

ashamed *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | make sb** *His foul-mouthed way of speaking made me ashamed of him.*

ADV. **deeply, really, terribly, very | thoroughly | a little, rather, slightly, somewhat | bitterly | instantly, suddenly** *Then she smiled and Rose was instantly ashamed of her jealous feelings.*

PREP. **about** *I've done nothing to be ashamed about.* **| at** *He was slightly ashamed at having run away.* **| of** *She was ashamed of what she had done.*

ask *verb*

1 **put a question to sb**

ADV. **gently, quietly, softly** *'How do you feel?' she asked softly.* **| amiably, conversationally, politely** *'Did you sleep well?', he asked politely.* **| belligerently, crossly, icily, nastily, querulously, sarcastically, slyly, testily | casually, dryly, innocently** *'Oh, Sue went too, did she?' I asked innocently* (= pretending I did not know that this was important). **| curiously, incredulously, pointedly, suspiciously | anxiously, apprehensively, fearfully, solicitously** *'Will he be all right?', Sabrina asked anxiously.* **| legitimately** *We can legitimately ask what competence an official based in Whitehall has to solve the problems of rural Scotland.* **| rhetorically**

VERB + ASK **long to, want to** *She longed to ask Mary if she knew what was wrong. I wanted to ask him a question.* **| dare (to)** *I wondered how old she was but I didn't dare ask.* **| forget to** *I completely forgot to ask his name.*

PREP. **about** *He asked about her family.*

PHRASES **get asked sth** *I often get asked that.* **| if you don't mind me/my asking** *How old are you?if you don't mind my asking?*

2 **request sth**

ADV. **nicely** *If you ask her nicely, she'll give you a sweet.*

PREP. **for** *asking for money*

asleep *adj.*

VERBS **be, lie, seem** *The baby lay peacefully asleep in its pram. All the houses seemed asleep.* **| drop, fall** *I fell asleep almost immediately.* **| remain, stay**

ADV. **deeply, fast, heavily, sound** *The children were all sound asleep in bed.* **| almost, half, nearly** *At the end of the afternoon they were exhausted and half asleep.* **| peacefully | still**

aspect *noun*

ADJ. **central, crucial, essential, fundamental, important, key, main, major, principal, significant | basic, broad, general** *Questions also cover much broader aspects of general health and fitness.* **| appealing, attractive, beneficial, encouraging, exciting, fascinating, interesting, pleasing, positive | alarming, controversial, difficult, disappointing, disturbing, negative, sinister, terrible, worst** *the worst aspects of tourism* **| bizarre, curious, intriguing, puzzling | remarkable, striking | subtle | mundane | neglected | formal, functional, practical, theoretical** *the formal aspects of the language system* **| business, commercial, cultural, economic, environmental, ethical, financial, historical, human, legal, military, moral, physical, political, psychological, religious, scientific, social, technical**

VERB + ASPECT **have** *The project has two main aspects.* **| take on** *Events began to take on a more sinister aspect.* **| consider, cover, deal with, discuss, emphasize, examine, explore, focus on, look at, study** *We will be looking at many different aspects of pollution.* **| demonstrate, illuminate, illustrate** *a unique collection illustrating aspects of Irish transport history* **| ignore, neglect**

PREP. **from the … ~** *This scheme is very good from the social aspect.* | **~ to** *the positive aspects to retirement*

PHRASES **all aspects of sth, (in) every aspect (of sth)** *The service was excellent in every aspect.*

aspiration *noun*

ADJ. **high, lofty** *He has high aspirations and wants to improve his qualifications.* **| failed | career, national, personal, political, social**

ADJ. **have | achieve, fulfil, meet, realize, satisfy** *a political party that fulfils the aspirations of the British people*

PREP. **~ for** *an aspiration for personal power* **| ~ to** *the country's aspirations to independence* **| ~ towards** *aspirations towards starting his own business*

PHRASES **dreams/hopes/needs/values and aspirations** *She talked about her hopes and aspirations.*

aspirin *noun*

ADJ. **soluble**

QUANT. **dose**

VERB + ASPIRIN **take** *She took an aspirin and went to bed.* **| dissolve** *Dissolve two aspirin in water.*

ASPIRIN + VERB **dissolve** *Aspirin dissolves quickly.*

assassin *noun*

ADJ. **attempted, would-be | hired, professional** *He was killed by a hired assassin.* **| trained**

assassinate *verb*

VERB + ASSASSINATE **attempt to, try to | plan to, plot to** *He was executed in 1887 for plotting to assassinate the tsar.*

PHRASES **an attempt/a plot to assassinate sb**

assassination *noun*

ADJ. **attempted | failed | political** *Three local leaders have been killed in political assassinations.* **| character** *a vicious campaign of character assassination*

VERB + ASSASSINATION **carry out | plan, plot** *It is believed that they plotted the assassination of the king.* **| escape, survive** *The judge escaped assassination by drug dealers.*

ASSASSINATION + NOUN **attempt, plot** *He has survived several assassination attempts.* **| squad**

assault *noun*

1 **crime of attacking sb**

ADJ. **brutal, savage, vicious, violent | common** *(law)* **| aggravated** *(law)*, **serious | alleged | attempted | indecent, physical, racial, sexual | police**

QUANT. **series, wave**

VERB + ASSAULT **carry out, commit** *assaults committed by teenagers* **| be the victim of, suffer**

ASSAULT + VERB **happen, take place**

PREP. **~ against** *Better street lighting has helped reduce the number of assaults against women.* **| ~ on/upon**

PHRASES **allegations of assault** *allegations of police assault on the boy* **| assault and battery** *(law)* > Note at CRIME(for more verbs)

2 **military/verbal attack**

ADJ. **all-out, direct, frontal, full-scale, major, massive** *After an all-out assault the village was captured by the enemy.* **| fresh, further | sustained** *She used the article to make a sustained assault on her former political allies.* **| successful | air, amphibious, ground** *air assaults by fighter planes* **| military | verbal**

QUANT. **series**

VERB + ASSAULT **carry out, launch (into), lead, make, mount** *Enemy troops launched an assault on the town. He launched into a verbal assault on tabloid journalism.* **| come under** *The factory came under assault from soldiers in the mountains* **| withstand** *The garrison was built to withstand assaults.*

ASSAULT + NOUN **course** *They took part in a vigorous army assault course.* **| rifle | force**

PREP. **under ~** *Today these values are under assault.* **| ~ on** *a series of assaults on* *enemy targets*

assault *verb*

ADV. **badly, brutally, savagely, seriously, violently | indecently, physically, sexually, verbally**

assemble *verb*

ADV. **carefully | badly | hastily, quickly** *a hastily assembled force of warriors* **| easily | together**

VERB + ASSEMBLE **begin to** *The French began to assemble an army* **| manage to | be easy to, be possible to | be difficult to**

PREP. **for** *We had assembled for the first rehearsal.* **| into** *the force that permits atoms to assemble into molecules*

PHRASES **fully/partially assembled** *The shelves are available in kit form or fully assembled.*

assembly *noun*

1 **elected group**

ADJ. **elected, representative | consultative, general, legislative | local, national, provincial, regional, state**

VERB + ASSEMBLY **create, form, set up | elect, vote for | dissolve**

ASSEMBLY + VERB **meet** *Provincial assemblies meet once a year.* **| vote** *The assembly voted to delay the legislation to allow further consultation to take place.*

ASSEMBLY + NOUN **member | seat**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *These issues have been discussed in the regional assemblies.*

PHRASES **a meeting/session of the assembly** > Note at ORGANIZATION

2 **group gathered together**

ADJ. **public | peaceful | unlawful**

VERB + ASSEMBLY **hold** *They demanded the right to hold peaceful assemblies.*

ASSEMBLY + NOUN **point** *When the fire alarm sounds, leave the building and proceed to your assembly point.*

PHRASES **freedom of assembly, the right of assembly** (= the right to gather freely)

3 **at school**

ADJ. **school | morning**

VERB + ASSEMBLY **conduct, have, hold** *We hold an assembly every morning.* **| attend, go to**

ASSEMBLY + NOUN **hall**

PREP. **at/during/in ~** *The announcement was made during morning assembly.*

4 **putting parts together**

ADJ. **easy | home** *furniture designed for home assembly* **| correct | final** *This factory deals with final assembly and testing.*

ASSEMBLY + NOUN **line** *workers on the assembly line* **| plant** *The company has twenty assembly plants in Europe.* **| work**

assent *noun*

ADJ. **common, general, universal** *Medicine is, by common assent, a good profession. There was general assent about his achievements.* **| royal** *The Education Act received the royal assent in 1944.*

VERB + ASSENT **give sth, grant** *The government gave their assent to the project.* **| withhold | meet with, obtain, receive | express, grunt, indicate, nod** *He nodded his assent when I asked if I could leave.*

PREP. **in ~** *She smiled in assent.* **| with/without sb's ~** *The raising of taxes without the assent of Parliament was declared illegal.*

PHRASES **a murmur/nod of assent** *The suggestion was greeted with a murmur of assent.*

assert *verb*

1 say sth clearly and firmly

ADV. **boldly, confidently, emphatically, forcefully, strongly** *The report asserts confidently that the industry will grow.* **| directly, explicitly | simply** *He had no real evidence?he simply asserted that what he said was true.* **| repeatedly | rightly**

2 make other people recognize your rights/authority

ADV. **successfully** *They successfully asserted their right to protect their homes.*

VERB + ASSERT **need to | be determined to, wish to** *She wished to assert her independence from her parents.* **| seek to, try to | be able to, manage to** *He managed to assert his power over the media.* **| be unable to, fail to**

assertion *noun*

ADJ. **bold, confident, proud | categorical, dogmatic, general, sweeping** *sweeping assertions about the role of women in society* **| simple** *The argument needs to progress beyond the simple assertion that criminals are made not born.* **| unfounded, unsubstantiated, unsupported**

VERB + ASSERTION **make** *How can you make such an assertion?* **| justify, prove, support** *Your assertion is not supported by the facts.* **| accept, agree with | challenge, question** *Researchers have recently challenged these assertions.* **| reject | refute**

PREP. **~ about** *assertions about human nature*

assess *verb*

1 **form an opinion**

ADV. **fully | accurately, correctly, properly**

VERB + ASSESS **attempt to, try to | help to | be difficult to** *It is difficult to fully assess the damage.*

2 **amount/value**

ADV. **accurately, correctly, properly**

VERB + ASSESS **attempt to, try to | be difficult to** *It is difficult to assess the building's value properly without seeing it.*

PREP. **at** *The legal costs have been assessed at £75,000.*

assessment *noun*

ADJ. **broad, general, overall | individual | continuous, regular** *Examination is by continuous assessment.* **| quick, rapid | external, internal | initial | final | accurate, balanced, fair, good, proper, realistic | careful, comprehensive, detailed, formal, systematic, thorough | independent, objective | personal, subjective** *He was shrewd in his personal assessments.* **| adequate | critical | optimistic, pessimistic | course | tax | needs, performance, quality, risk** *Needs assessment is crucial if the hospital is to deliver effective health care.* **| environmental, financial, medical, psychiatric, scientific**

VERB + ASSESSMENT **carry out, do, give, make, undertake** *The new manager carried out an assessment of the sales department.*

ASSESSMENT + NOUN **methods, procedures, technique | criteria | process, system**

PHRASES **a form/method of assessment**

asset *noun*

1 useful person/thing

ADJ. **big, considerable, great, important, invaluable, precious, priceless, real, tremendous, useful, valuable** *The teachers are the school's biggest asset.* | **best, main, major, principal, prize** | **cultural** *The tourist industry requires that the country's cultural assets be made more accessible.* | **natural** *Bow windows are a natural asset to any room and should be highlighted.*

PREP. **~ to** *She will be an asset to any school she attends.*

2 what a company owns

ADJ. **combined, total** | **gross** | **net** *The company's net assets are worth millions.* | **business, company, corporate** | **commercial, financial** | **current, disposable, liquid** *Liquid assets can be sold more quickly.* | **capital, fixed, non-cash, non-monetary, physical, property** | **tangible** | **intangible** | **depreciable, wasting** | **hidden** *They have hidden assets in banks around the world.* | **foreign, overseas** | **personal** | **national, public, state**

VERB + ASSET **have, hold, own, possess** *assets held by the company in Asia* | **transfer** *He transferred all his assets into his wife's name.* | **accumulate, acquire, buy** | **dispose of, realize, sell** *The business disposed of all its capital assets.* | **increase, reduce** *The company has increased its UK assets.* | **freeze** *The courts can order a company's assets to be frozen.* | **release, unfreeze**

ASSET + VERB **appreciate, grow** *Net assets have grown to $169 million.* | **decline, depreciate, dwindle**

ASSET + NOUN **value** | **management** | **sale** | **stripping** *measures to prevent asset stripping*

PHRASES **assets and liabilities**

assignment *noun*

1 **task**

ADJ. **special | important | dangerous, difficult, tough | business, work | modelling, photographic**

VERB + ASSIGNMENT **accept, take on** *Why did you take on this assignment if you're so busy?* **| carry out | refuse** *If you refuse this assignment you risk losing your job.* **| complete, finish | give sb**

PREP. **on ~** *The photographer is on assignment in China at the moment.*

2 **piece of school/college work**

ADJ. **practical, reading, written**

VERB + ASSIGNMENT **give, hand out, set** *The teacher set an assignment on pollution.* **| do | complete, finish | hand in** *The students handed in their assignments.*

PREP. **~ on** *an assignment on Roman history*

assimilate *verb*

1 **learn/understand**

ADV. **easily, quickly, readily** *Children assimilate new information very quickly.*

2 **become/make sb part of sth**

ADV. **fully** *Many new immigrants have not yet assimilated fully into the new culture.*

PREP. **into**

assist *verb*

ADV. **greatly, materially** *We have been greatly assisted by individuals and organizations.* **| actively**

VERB + ASSIST **be designed to** *measures designed to assist people with disabilities*

PREP. **in** *He had to assist her in opening the gates.* **| with** *She offered to assist with the marketing of the product.*

assistance *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, real, substantial | limited | invaluable, valuable | practical | special | direct, emergency, immediate** *People in the flooded areas are in need of direct assistance.* **| mutual** *The treaty pledged mutual assistance in the event of an attack on either country.* **| expert, professional | external, outside | foreign, international | government, national** *They argued the case for extra government assistance for the poorest regions.* **| public, social, welfare** *the stigma attached to receiving social assistance* **| personal** *disabled people who need personal assistance to enable them to live in their own homes* **| humanitarian | economic, financial, legal, material, medical, military, technical**

VERB + ASSISTANCE **give sb, offer (sb), provide, render** *We provide assistance if your car breaks down.* **| get, receive** *Did you receive any assistance from the authorities?* **| pledge, promise (sb)** *The World Bank promised assistance to the value of $5 million.* **| be in need of, need, require | expect | ask for, call for, seek** *I advise you to seek assistance from the police.* **| turn to sb for** *She had no one to turn to for assistance.* **| be of, come to sb's** *Do let us know if we can be of any assistance to you. A sympathetic neighbour came to his assistance.* **| welcome**

PREP. **with/without ~** *The work was completed with the assistance of local carpenters.* **| ~ for** *humanitarian assistance for refugees* **| ~ from** *assistance from friends and family* **| ~ in** *assistance in finding suitable accommodation* **| ~ with** *assistance with rent for people on a low income*

assistant *noun*

ADJ. **chief, senior | personal** *I'll ask my personal assistant to deal with this.* **| administrative, care, catering, checkout, clerical, laboratory, library, production, research, sales, shop, technical** *She took up a post as research assistant in the Department of Pharmacology.*

VERB + ASSISTANT **employ (sb as), have** *She had a clerical assistant to do her paperwork.* **| get, hire (sb as), recruit (sb as)** *I'm getting a new assistant next month.* **| sack**

PREP. **~ to** *assistant to the Production Manager* > Note at JOB

associate *noun*

ADJ. **close** *a close associate with whom he started a business* **| former, old** *Her former associates refused to see her.* **| business, political**

association *noun*

1 an organization

ADJ. **international, local, national, regional | private, public, voluntary | arts, business, community, constituency, consumer, football, housing, industry, library, neighbourhood, parent-teacher, professional, student, trade, etc.**

ASSOCIATION + VERB **meet** *The association meets four times a year.* > Note at ORGANIZATION(for more verbs)

2 relationship between people/organizations

ADJ. **close | free** *It was to be a free association of equal partners.* **| loose** *a loose association of sovereign states* **| long, long-standing | personal**

VERB + ASSOCIATION **form | maintain** *They have maintained a close association with a college in the US.*

PREP. **in ~ with** (= together with) *The book was published in association with British Heritage.* **| ~ between** *the association between the two countries* **| ~ with** *His association with such criminals can only destroy him.*

PHRASES **freedom of association** *One of the most important political freedoms is freedom of association.*

3 connection between things

ADJ. **clear, close, direct, intimate, strong** *a close association between the two nations* **| loose | early, long, traditional | formal | free** *the technique of free association in which the patient is encouraged to say the first thing that comes to mind*

VERB + ASSOCIATION **have** *The city has had a long association with the mining industry.* **| form** *You want the child to form an association between good behaviour and rewards.* **| demonstrate, find, prove, show** *The research showed an association between diet and various diseases.*

PREP. **by ~** *Dogs learn mainly by association.* **| in ~ with** (= together with) *We are working in association with several charities.* **| ~ between** *a clear association between good health and regular exercise* **| ~ with** *the traditional association of the Democrats with minority interests*

PHRASES **guilty/tainted by association** *He was considered tainted by association with the corrupt regime.*

4 associations: feelings/memories

ADJ. **strong | happy, positive, pleasant | negative, unhappy, unpleasant | cultural, historical, literary** *Tourists visit the city for its historical associations.*

VERB + ASSOCIATION **have, hold** *Does the name 'Baxter' have any associations for you?* **| call up, evoke, spark off, trigger** *The smell of fresh bread triggers all kinds of associations for me.*

PREP. **~ for**

assortment *noun*

ADJ. **large, rich, wide | mixed, varied | odd, strange** *She was wearing an odd assortment of clothes.*

PREP. **~ of** *a mixed assortment of sweets*

assume *verb*

ADV. **automatically, naturally** *I automatically assumed that you knew about this.* **| reasonably, safely** *I think we can safely assume that this situation will continue.*

VERB + ASSUME **can, might | tend to | be fair to, be reasonable to, be safe to** *It is reasonable to assume that the economy will continue to improve.* **| be a mistake to, be wrong to | be easy to** *It's all too easy to assume that people know what they are doing.*

PHRASES **let us assume** *Let us assume for a moment that the plan succeeds.*

assumption *noun*

ADJ. **basic, fundamental, hidden, implicit, tacit, underlying, unspoken | common, conventional, general, shared, widespread** *shared assumptions between teachers and parents* **| correct, reasonable, valid | erroneous, false, flawed, incorrect, mistaken, questionable, wrong**

QUANT. **number, series, set** *Your argument is based on a set of questionable assumptions.*

VERB + ASSUMPTION **make** *She's always making assumptions about how much money people have.* **| base sth on, start from, work on** *We are working on the assumption that the techniques are safe.* **| accept | challenge, disprove, question, test**

ASSUMPTION + VERB **underly sth, underpin sth** *the assumptions underlying their beliefs*

PREP. **on the ~ that** *I set the table for eight people, on the assumption that Jo would come.* **| ~ about** *assumptions about how women should behave*

assurance *noun*

1 **promise**

ADJ. **absolute, categorical, clear, firm, full | further, repeated | formal, official, personal, verbal, written** *He gave me his personal assurance that the vehicle was safe.*

VERB + ASSURANCE **have** *We now have a firm assurance of support from the government.* **| give sb, offer sb, provide | gain, get, obtain, receive | ask for, demand, seek, want | accept, be satisfied with** *They accepted his assurance that patients would be treated as soon as possible.* **| go back on, renege on** *He accused the minister of reneging on assurances given earlier.*

PREP. **~ about** *an assurance about the safety of this equipment* **| ~ by/from** *assurances from the head teacher*

PHRASES **despite/in spite of assurances** *Despite assurances from the government, the chemicals are known to be dangerous.*

2 **feeling of calm and confidence**

ADJ. **calm, quiet** *She spoke with calm assurance.*

VERB + ASSURANCE **have | show** *Even at a very young age she showed a great deal of assurance.*

assure *verb*

VERB + ASSURE **can | hasten to** *He hastened to assure us that the press would not be informed.*

PREP. **of** *We can assure you of our full support.*

PHRASES **let me assure you**

assured *adj.*

1 confident

VERBS **be, feel, look, rest, seem** *You can rest assured that your children are in good hands.*

ADV. **very** *Although the situation was tense, her voice was calm and very assured.* **| totally**

2 certain to happen

VERBS **be, look, seem**

ADV. **absolutely | virtually**

asthma *noun*

ADJ. **severe | acute, chronic | bronchial**

VERB + ASTHMA **have, suffer from | treat**

ASTHMA + NOUN **attack | sufferer** > Special page at ILLNESS

astonished *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **absolutely, quite**

PREP. **at** *She was quite astonished at his rudeness.* **| by** *He was astonished by the amount of junk in the house.*

astonishing *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | find sth** *I find his attitude absolutely astonishing.*

ADV. **really, truly | absolutely, quite**

astonishment *noun*

ADJ. **great | absolute, utter | mild** *an air of mild astonishment* **| blank** *a look of blank astonishment*

VERB + ASTONISHMENT **express | hide** *She could not hide her astonishment.*

PREP. **in ~** *She gazed at him in astonishment.* **| to sb's ~** *Then, to my great astonishment, he started to cry.* **| with ~** *Everyone gasped with astonishment.* **| ~ at** *He expressed astonishment at the results.*

PHRASES **a cry/gasp/look of astonishment**

astute *adj*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very | financially, politically**

asylum *noun*

1 **protection given by a government**

ADJ. **temporary | political**

VERB + ASYLUM **apply for, claim, request, seek** *She fled the country, and is now seeking asylum in Sweden.* **| give sb, grant sb, offer sb, provide (sb with) | get, receive | deny sb, refuse sb** *Over 400 people have been refused asylum.*

ASYLUM + NOUN **seeker** *bogus/genuine asylum seekers* **| application, claim**

PHRASES **an application for asylum, the right to asylum** *Those fleeing from the war have the right to asylum.*

2 **mental hospital**

ADJ. **lunatic, mental**

PREP. **in ~** *He spent three years in an asylum.*

atheist *noun*

ADJ. **committed, confirmed, dedicated**

athlete *noun*

ADJ. **fine, good, great, Olympic, outstanding, talented, top, world-class** *one of the greatest athletes of all time* | **natural** *She has the build and strength of a natural athlete.* | **all-round, field, track** | **amateur, professional**

ATHLETE + VERB **train** *The athletes are training hard for the Olympics.* | **compete, perform** *Our field athletes have performed well.*

athletics *noun*

ADJ. **indoor, outdoor | junior, senior | amateur, schools | international, world**

VERB + ATHLETICS **compete in, do, take part in** *My daughter wants to compete in athletics.* **| take up** *She didn't take up athletics until she was 20.* **| quit**

ATHLETICS + NOUN **championships, competition, event, meet, meeting | club, federation | stadium, track | star | coach | club, team | official | career** *the hardest event of her athletics career* **| circuit, scene, world** *competing on the international athletics circuit* > Special page at SPORT

atmosphere *noun*

1 **general feeling in a place**

ADJ. **calm, congenial, convivial, cosy, family, friendly, happy, homely, informal, pleasant, relaxed, warm, welcoming | (highly) charged, emotional, heavy, hostile, oppressive, stifling, strained, tense | carnival, electric, heady, lively** *Before the parade, the atmosphere was electric.* **| intimate, romantic | gloomy | rarefied, unique** *the rarefied atmosphere of academic life*

VERB + ATMOSPHERE **create** *She tries to create an atmosphere of calm and security for her children.* **| poison, ruin, sour, spoil** *His blunt comments really soured the atmosphere.* **| clear, improve, lighten** *His funny remarks lightened the atmosphere.* **| be aware of, be sensitive to, sense** *She could sense the hostile atmosphere in the room.*

ATMOSPHERE + VERB **be charged (with sth)** *The atmosphere was charged with excitement.* **| pervade sth, prevail** *A relaxed atmosphere prevails in the club.*

PREP. **~ between** *Since their argument there had been a strained atmosphere between them.*

2 **the air**

ADJ. **heavy, humid, oppressive, polluted, smoky, stale, stifling, stuffy**

VERB + ATMOSPHERE **poison, pollute** *Pesticides can kill wildlife and pollute the atmosphere.* **| clear** *Last night's storm had cleared the atmosphere.*

3 **gases around the earth**

ADJ. **lower, upper**

VERB + ATMOSPHERE **enter, leave, re-enter** *The spaceship should re-enter the earth's atmosphere later today.* **| be emitted/released into, escape into** *Dangerous gases have escaped into the upper atmosphere.*

PREP. **in the ~** *levels of radiation in the atmosphere*

atom *noun*

ADJ. **charged, unstable** *positively charged atoms* **| carbon, nitrogen, etc.**

VERB + ATOM **split** *The scientist Ernest Rutherford was the first person to split the atom.*

ATOM + NOUN **bomb**

atrocity *noun*

ADJ. **appalling, dreadful, terrible, worst** *one of the worst atrocities of the war* **| alleged | terrorist**

VERB + ATROCITY **be responsible for, carry out, commit, perpetrate** *In the war, both sides committed atrocities.* **| suffer**

ATROCITY + VERB **occur, take place**

ATROCITY + NOUN **stories**

PREP. **~ against** *atrocities against the civilian population* **| ~ by** *reports of atrocities by gunmen*

PHRASES **accounts/allegations/reports of atrocities**

attach *verb*

ADV. **firmly, securely | loosely**

PREP. **to** *He attached the rope securely to a tree.*

attached *adj.*

1 **full of affection**

VERBS **be | become, grow** *We've grown very attached to this village and wouldn't want to move.* **| remain**

ADV. **deeply, strongly, very | increasingly | quite | emotionally, personally**

PREP. **to** *Mr Wells is obviously quite attached to you.*

2 **joined to sth**

VERBS **be | remain, stay**

ADV. **firmly, securely** *Make sure all the wires remain firmly attached.* **| loosely | directly | permanently | physically**

PREP. **to** *The ball was attached to a length of thin chain.*

attachment *noun*

ADJ. **close, deep, passionate, special, strong | enduring, lasting | emotional, romantic, sentimental**

VERB + ATTACHMENT **feel, have** *I feel no attachment to the countryside.* **| develop, form** *Prisoners can develop attachments to their warders.*

PREP. **to** *her strong attachment to her mother*

attack *noun*

1 **violence against sb**

ADJ. **brutal, frenzied, horrific, savage, serious, vicious, violent | unprovoked | racist, sexual | arson, gun, knife** *an increase in knife attacks on police officers*

QUANT. **series, spate, wave**

VERB + ATTACK **carry out** *Two teenagers carried out a frenzied attack on a local shopkeeper.* | **be subjected to** *He was subjected to a violent attack.*

ATTACK + VERB **happen, occur, take place** *Where did the attack happen?*

PREP. **~ against** *vicious attacks against pensioners* | **~ by** *an attack by an armed gang* | **~ on** *an attack on a bus driver*

PHRASES **a victim of an attack**

2 **act of violence in war**

ADJ. **all-out, full-scale, major | sustained | surprise | retaliatory | mock | flank, frontal | enemy, guerrilla, terrorist | air, bomb, missile, mortar, nuclear**

QUANT. **series** *The southern border towns have suffered a series of attacks.*

VERB + ATTACK **carry out, launch, lead, make, mount, spearhead** *The soldiers mounted an all-out attack on the village.* | **come under, suffer** *They came under sustained attack from the air.* | **repel, repulse, resist | survive, withstand** *Most of the population would stand little chance of surviving a nuclear attack.* | **press home, renew** *Bombers pressed home their attack, causing severe damage to harbour installations.*

ATTACK + VERB **happen, occur, take place** *The attack took place under cover of darkness.* | **fail, succeed**

PREP. **under ~** *The province has been under attack from the rebels.* | **~ against** *attacks against civilians* **| ~ by** *an attack by rebel forces* **| ~ on** *an attack on enemy positions*

3 criticism

ADJ. **bitter, blistering, fierce, outspoken, savage, scathing, scurrilous, stinging, vigorous | personal** *Is this a personal attack on the president, or a criticism of the government?* **| concerted | verbal**

VERB + ATTACK **deliver, go on the, launch, make, mount, unleash** *Doctors have gone on the attack, accusing the government of incompetence.* **| come under, provoke** *All politicians come under attack for their views. The government's decision has provoked an attack from leaders of the health service.*

PREP. **~ on/upon** *an attack on my integrity*

PHRASES **a/the line of attack** *The first line of attack is often name-calling.* **| open to attack** *He has laid himself wide open to attack.*

4 sudden illness

ADJ. **acute, sudden | bad, nasty, severe | fatal | mild, slight | recurrent | asthma, heart, panic** *a fatal heart attack*

VERB + ATTACK **experience, have, suffer (from)** *He suffers from attacks of anxiety.* **| bring on, cause, trigger** *a heart attack brought on by stress*

ATTACK + VERB **happen, occur, take place**

PREP. **~ of** *a sudden attack of nerves*

attack *verb*

1 **use violence**

ADV. **brutally, savagely, viciously, violently** *She was brutally attacked by two men.* **| physically**

PREP. **with** *He attacked her with a knife.*

2 **criticize**

ADV. **fiercely, savagely, sharply, strongly, vigorously**

PREP. **for** *The police have been strongly attacked for not taking immediate action.*

attainable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **fully, perfectly** *We believe that this level of performance is fully attainable.* **| easily, readily**

PREP. **by** *This standard of English should be easily attainable by every child in the class.*

attempt *noun*

ADJ. **successful | abortive, botched, failed, fruitless, futile, ill-fated, unsuccessful, vain** *her vain attempt to save her son's life* **| conscious, deliberate | brave, bold, concerted, determined, serious, valiant | blatant | feeble, half-hearted, weak | clumsy, crude | desperate, frantic, last-ditch** *a desperate attempt to find survivors of the accident* **| repeated** *repeated attempts to break through enemy lines* **| assassination, coup, rescue, suicide** *Rescue attempts were stopped because of bad weather.*

VERB + ATTEMPT **make** *She has made no attempt to contact her mother.* **| succeed in** *He succeeded in his attempt to break the world record.* **| abandon, fail in, give up** *He abandoned his attempt to reach the summit.* **| foil, thwart** *Their attempt to break out of prison was foiled.*

ATTEMPT + VERB **succeed | fail**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *In an attempt to ward off criticism, the government has made education a priority.* **| ~ at** *He made a feeble attempt at a smile.* **| ~ by** *an attempt by workers to prevent redundancies*

PHRASES **an attempt on sb's life** (= to kill sb)

attend *verb*

ADV. **regularly** *to attend church regularly.*

VERB + ATTEND **be able/unable to | be asked to, be invited to** *He was invited to attend a seminar in Paris.*

PHRASES **well attended** *The event was well attended.*

attendance *noun*

ADJ. **good, large, record** *It was a record attendance for a midweek game.* **| low, poor | falling** *Despite falling attendances, the zoo will stay open.* **| average, daily** *The average attendance at matches increased last year.* **| total | constant, regular** *Regular attendance at lectures is important.* **| compulsory | church, cinema, school, etc.**

VERB + ATTENDANCE **boost, improve, increase** *Building a new stadium has boosted attendances by 40%.*

ATTENDANCE + VERB **drop, fall, go down** *Attendances at the pool always fall in winter.* **| go up, increase**

ATTENDANCE + NOUN **figures, rate, record**

PREP. **in ~** *The emergency services were in attendance within 22 minutes.* **| ~ at** *attendance at the meetings*

attendant *noun*

ADJ. **car park, cloakroom, garage, lavatory, museum, petrol pump, pool** *Pool attendants kept a constant watch on the swimmers.* > Note at JOB

attention *noun*

1 **act of watching/listening/showing interest**

ADJ. **full, rapt, undivided** *They listened with rapt attention.* | **assiduous, careful, close, meticulous, scrupulous** | **scant** *Policy-makers paid scant attention to the wider issues.* | **urgent** | **special** | **unwanted, unwelcome** | **international, media, public**

VERB + ATTENTION **devote, direct, give (sb/sth), pay, turn** *How many times do I have to ask you to pay attention? He had a cup of tea and then turned his attention to the report.* | **get, have, receive** *Can I have your attention, please? These poems have received a lot of critical attention.* | **attract, call, capture, catch, command, compel, draw, excite, grab** *I tried to attract the waiter's attention. Wherever he goes, he commands attention. She doesn't like to draw attention to her illness.* | **deflect, distract, divert, draw** *The government is trying to divert attention away from the economy.* | **hold, keep, rivet** *There was something in the way he spoke that riveted her attention.* | **concentrate, confine, focus** *In this chapter we shall confine our attention to non-renewable energy sources.* | **refocus, transfer** *The firm decided to refocus its attention back onto its traditional strengths and expertise.* | **deserve, need, require** *a matter requiring urgent attention* | **jostle for, vie for** *dozens of concerns jostling for your attention She was surrounded by men all vying for her attention.* | **repay** *an interesting essay that repays close attention* | **bring sth to** *My boss was grateful that I had brought the matter to his attention.* | **come to** | **avoid, escape** *Her primary aim was to avoid the attentions of the newspapers.*

ATTENTION + VERB **focus** *Media attention focused today on the prince's business affairs.* | **wander** *I felt my attention wandering during the lecture.*

ATTENTION + NOUN **span**

PREP. **for sb's ~, for the ~ of** *a letter for the attention of your doctor*

PHRASES **attention to detail** *He is a designer known for his meticulous attention to detail.* | **care and attention** *He was convicted of driving without due care and attention.* | **the centre of attention** *Some children love being the centre of attention.* | **the focus of attention** *The focus of attention must now be how to improve the economy.* | **force your attentions on sb** *A man like Luke had no need to force his attentions on unwilling women.* | **not pay much attention to sth, pay**

little/no attention to sth (= not take something very seriously) *Pay no attention to what Bill said?he's a complete liar!*

2 care

ADJ. **constant | individual, personal, special** *The child needs special attention.* **| medical**

VERB + ATTENTION **devote, give, lavish** *He devoted all his attention to his mother. She lavishes attention on those silly little dogs.* **| be in need of, need, require, want** *a patient requiring attention*

attic *noun*

ADJ. **cramped, little, small, tiny | converted** *Her photography studio was a converted attic.* **| dark, dusty**

ATTIC + NOUN **bedroom, flat, room | stairs, steps | skylight, window**

attitude *noun*

ADJ. **conciliatory, favourable, friendly, positive, responsible, right, sympathetic** *She seems to have the right attitude for the job.* | **aggressive, bad, belligerent, cavalier, critical, hostile, irreverent, negative, patronizing, wrong** | **carefree, casual, flexible, laid-back, liberal, relaxed** *The teachers seem to have a very relaxed attitude towards discipline.* | **conservative, inflexible, rigid, uncompromising** | **ambivalent** | **general, prevailing, public** *The general attitude of the public is sympathetic.* | **changing** | **mental, moral, sexual**

VERB + ATTITUDE **adopt, have, take** *The government has taken a positive attitude to this problem.* | **change** *The experience changed his attitude to religion.*

ATTITUDE + VERB **exist, persist, prevail** *This sort of attitude exists among certain groups of people.* | **change**

ATTITUDE + NOUN **problem** *At school he was thought to have an attitude problem.*

PREP. **~ about** *changing attitudes about death* | **~ of** *an attitude of confidence and trust Youth is simply an attitude of mind.* | **~ to/towards** *There has been a marked change in attitude towards the European single currency.*

PHRASES **a change in/of attitude, with attitude** *(informal)* (= having a confident, aggressive attitude that challenges what people think) *a rock band with attitude*

attraction *noun*

1 **fact of attracting/being attracted**

ADJ. **fatal, irresistible, obvious, powerful, strong | mutual** *They shared a powerful mutual attraction.* **| gravitational, magnetic, physical, sexual**

VERB + ATTRACTION **feel** *the strong attraction that she felt for him* **| see** *I could now see the attraction of a steady job and regular income.* **| have, hold** *Long holidays hold no attraction for him.* **| exert** *All matter exerts a gravitational attraction.*

PREP. **~ between** *the attraction between two people* **| ~ to/towards** *His attraction to you is obvious.*

PHRASES **the centre of attraction** *Sophie was plainly the centre of attraction in the room.*

2 **sth that attracts people**

ADJ. **added, big, chief, great, main, major, obvious, special, star** *The main attraction of the place is the nightlife.* **| popular, tourist**

VERB + ATTRACTION **have** *A freelance career has the attraction of flexibility.* **| be, prove** *Feeding the animals proved a popular attraction for visitors to the farm.*

PREP. **for** *The lack of heat was an attraction for cyclists.*

attractive *adj.*

VERBS **be, look** *She looked attractive and beautifully dressed.* **| become, grow** *She had grown more attractive with age.* **| make sb/sth | find sb/sth** *This is an idea that I find very attractive.*

ADV. **extremely, very | stunningly** *a stunningly attractive woman* **| quite | physically, sexually, visually** *He no longer found her physically attractive. a visually attractive display*

PREP. **to** *Schools must try to make science more attractive to youngsters.*

attribute *noun*

ADJ. **chief, great, key, main | desirable, essential, important, necessary, positive, useful** *Patience is an essential attribute for a teacher.* **| common | divine, human | cultural, personal, physical, social** *Her physical attributes were much admired.*

VERB + ATTRIBUTE **have, possess**

attribute *verb*

ADV. directly | solely | in large measure, largely, mainly | in part, partly

PREP. to *They claim that one* in *twenty deaths can be directly attributed to air pollution.*

PHRASES be commonly/generally/usually/widely attributed to *The goals commonly attributed to management are status, power, salary and security.*

auction *noun*

ADJ. **public | charity | art, cattle, furniture, etc.**

VERB + AUCTION **hold** *The estate is holding an auction to raise money.* **| conduct** *My father will be conducting the auction tomorrow.* **| attend, go to** *He regularly attended auctions.* **| put sth up for** *The horse will be put up for public auction.* **| be/come/go up for** *The paintings will come up for auction next month.* **| pick sth up at** *a bargain that she had picked up at auction*

AUCTION + VERB **take place**

AUCTION + NOUN **house, room | price | market, mart, sale**

PREP. **at ~** *I try to buy furniture at auctions because it is cheaper that way. The house was sold at auction for half a million pounds.* **| by ~** *a jumble sale by auction*

audible *adj.*

VERBS be | become, grow

ADV. clearly, perfectly *The shot was clearly audible in the silence.* **| barely, hardly, scarcely | faintly, just** *The singer's voice was just audible.* **| almost**

PREP. above *The noise was audible even above the roar of the engines.* **| to** *The sounds made by bats are not audible to the human ear.*

audience *noun*

1 **group of people watching/listening to sth**

ADJ. **big, capacity, large, mass, packed, vast, wide** *The museum is trying to attract a wider audience.* | **select, small** | **appreciative, enthusiastic, receptive, sympathetic** | **hostile** | **captive** | **potential, target** | **cinema, live, radio, studio, television**

VERB + AUDIENCE **address, perform to, play to** *He prefers playing to live audiences.* | **attract, draw, pull in** *Such a well-known politician should draw a big audience.* | **reach** *We want to reach a target audience that's younger in age.* | **captivate, grip, thrill** *The film has thrilled audiences throughout the country.* | **move** *The audience was visibly moved.*

AUDIENCE + VERB **applaud, cheer** *The audience cheered loudly.* | **boo, jeer** | **laugh**

AUDIENCE + NOUN **participation**

PREP. **before/in front of an/the ~** *He felt nervous standing up in front of the large audience.*

2 **formal meeting with a very important person**

ADJ. **private**

VERB + AUDIENCE **have** | **ask for, request, seek** | **give sb, grant sb** *The Pope granted him an audience.*

PREP. **~ with** *He sought a private audience with the Queen.*

audition *noun*

VERB + AUDITION **do, go for/to, have** *I did an audition for the part of the queen.* **| give sb, hold** *holding auditions for new actors* **| pass | fail**

PREP. **~ for** *an audition for a place at drama school* **| ~ with** *an audition with the Royal Ballet*

auditor *noun*

ADJ. **company/company's | appointed | internal | independent | statutory | district** *The council and district auditors have agreed that the deals were unlawful.*

PREP. **~ to** *His firm has been appointed the auditors to the company.*

PHRASES **the Auditor General, an auditors' report** > Note at PROFESSIONAL(for verbs)

auditorium *noun*

ADJ. **huge, vast | 200-seat, 250-seater, etc. | empty, packed | darkened**

VERB + AUDITORIUM **fill**

AUDITORIUM + VERB **hold sb, seat sb** *The auditorium seats over a thousand people.* **| be filled with sth** *The darkened auditorium was filled with muttering.*

August *nou*n > Note at MONTH

aunt *noun*

ADJ. **aged, elderly | maiden, unmarried | maternal, paternal | great** (= the sister of one of your grandparents) *Great Aunt Emily*

aura *noun*

ADJ. **magical | faint**

VERB + AURA **be surrounded by, exude, have, retain** *He exuded an aura of wealth and power.* **| take on** *The picture seemed to take on the aura of an ancient work of art.* **| create, give sb/sth** *The sunlight created an aura of beauty around her.* **| lose**

PREP. **~ about, ~ of** *There was always a faint aura of mystery about him.*

austerity *noun*

ADJ. **post-war, wartime**

AUSTERITY + NOUN **measures, package, plan, policies, programme**

authenticity *noun*

VERB + AUTHENTICITY **cast doubt on, doubt** *Some journalists have cast doubt on the authenticity of the official version of events.* **| check, test | confirm, establish, prove, verify**

PHRASES **a certificate of authenticity** *Despite its certificate of authenticity, the painting was found to be a fake.* **| a debate over the authenticity of sth** *There has been some debate over the authenticity of his will.* **| of doubtful authenticity** *a document of doubtful authenticity*

author *noun*

ADJ. **best-selling | prolific | famous, well-known | anonymous** *the anonymous author of this pamphlet* **| children's** *Primarily a children's author, she has also written books for adults.*

VERB + AUTHOR **read** *Stephen King is an author I've never read.*

AUTHOR + VERB **write (sth)** *The author was writing in the seventeenth century.*

authoritarian *adj*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **highly, very | increasingly | rather**

authority *noun*

1 **sth with the power to give orders**

ADJ. **district, local, regional | government, public | education, health, military, planning, tax** *The government is urging education authorities to spend less money.* | **competent, lawful, relevant, statutory**

AUTHORITY + VERB **agree sth, claim sth, decide sth, deny sth, promise sth** *The local health authority denied negligence.* | **allow (sb) sth, give (sb) sth, grant (sb) sth** *The local authority has not granted planning permission.*

2 **power/right to give orders**

ADJ. **absolute, complete, full, supreme | governmental, judicial, legal, ministerial, parental, presidential**

VERB + AUTHORITY **have** *Parents have the authority to discipline their children.* | **assume** *He assumed full authority as tsar in 1689.* | **give sb | assert, demonstrate, establish, exercise, exert, show, use, wield** *The new manager obviously felt the need to demonstrate her authority.* | **delegate | give up, relinquish | abuse | challenge, defy, deny, rebel against, reject, undermine** *She had challenged my authority once too often.* | **usurp**

AUTHORITY + NOUN **figure** *adult authority figures such as parents and teachers*

PREP. **in ~** *I need to talk to someone in authority.* | **under the ~ of** *This can only be done under the authority of the government minister.* | **without ~** *He took the car without authority.* | **~ over** *Central government has extensive authority over teachers.*

PHRASES **an air of authority** *He bore an air of authority.* | **position of authority** *She holds a position of authority in the local church.*

3 **person with special knowledge**

ADJ. **leading, respected, world | unimpeachable, unquestioned**

VERB + AUTHORITY **cite, invoke** *Copernicus justified his innovation by citing respected authorities.*

PREP. **~ on** *She's a leading authority on genetics.*

authorization *noun*

ADJ. **formal, official, written | prior** *You will need prior authorization from your bank.*

VERB + AUTHORIZATION **need, require | ask for, seek** *He asked for authorization to proceed with the plan.* **| get, have, obtain | give sb, grant (sb) | refuse (sb)** *The government will probably refuse authorization under these conditions.* **| revoke**

PREP. **with/without ~** *You cannot take a day off without authorization.* **| ~ for** *Formal authorization for the trip was given last week.* **| ~ from** *The change of plan would require authorization from the minister.*

autistic *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **severely** *a school for severely autistic children* **| mildly**

autograph *noun*

VERB + AUTOGRAPH **give sb, sign** *He signed his autograph for the little girl.* **| ask for | get, have** *Can I have your autograph, please?*

AUTOGRAPH + NOUN **album, book | hunter**

automatic *adj.*

1 working by itself

VERBS **be** *The machine is fully automatic.*

ADV. **completely, fully, totally**

2 certain to happen

VERBS **be**

ADV. **almost, virtually** *Promotion was almost automatic after two or three years.*

autonomous *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **completely, fully, totally | largely | relatively | effectively** *Although officially a dependent territory the island is effectively autonomous.* **| politically**

PREP. **from** *Higher education is relatively autonomous from the state.*

autonomy *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, greater, more | complete, full | relative | individual, personal | local, national, regional | administrative, cultural, economic, financial, managerial, political, professional, etc. | pupil, teacher, worker, etc.**

QUANT. **degree, measure** *a high degree of autonomy*

VERB + AUTONOMY **enjoy, have** *The subsidiary companies will now have more autonomy.* **| gain | seek, struggle for, want | give sb, grant (sb)** *Head office is giving the regional offices more autonomy.* **| increase** *the need to increase worker autonomy* **| reduce**

PREP. **~ from** *Schools have gained greater autonomy from government control.*

PHRASES **a demand for autonomy** *demands for cultural autonomy*

autopsy *noun*

VERB + AUTOPSY **carry out, conduct, do, perform**

AUTOPSY + VERB **find sth, reveal sth, show sth** *The autopsy revealed that he had been poisoned.*

AUTOPSY + NOUN **report, result**

PREP. **~ on** *They carried out an autopsy on the victim.*

autumn *noun*

ADJ. **last, next, this (coming) | early, late, mid- | wet**

AUTUMN + NOUN **weather | sun, sunlight, sunshine | frost/frosts, rain/rains | gale, wind | landscape, sky | colours** *The trees were beginning to turn orange and yellow with autumn colours.* **| leaf** *the sound of autumn leaves rustling* **| equinox | term** *classes to be held for schoolchildren during the autumn term* **| collection, exhibition** *their autumn collection of dresses* > Note at SEASON(for more collocates)

availability *noun*

ADJ. **easy, ready** *the easy availability of many illegal drugs* **| general, wide, widespread | greater, increased | limited | land, staff, ticket, etc.**

VERB + AVAILABILITY **check, ensure** *Before travelling we must ensure the availability of petrol and oil.* **| increase | reduce, restrict** *They want to restrict the availability of abortion.*

PHRASES **subject to availability** *All holiday bookings are subject to availability.*

available *adj.*

1 **that you can get, buy, use, etc.**

VERBS **be | become | make sth** *The product will now be made available throughout the market.*

ADV. **easily, freely, readily | widely**

PREP. **for** *Grants should be available for all students.* **| from** *Details are available from the above address.* **| to** *This information is freely available to anyone wishing to see it.*

PHRASES **available for hire/sale**

2 **free to be seen, talked to, etc.**

VERBS **be | become** *She is in a meeting at present, but I will let you know as soon as she becomes available.*

PHRASES **not available for comment** *The chairman was not available for comment.*

avalanche *noun*

1 **large amount of snow falling**

AVALANCHE + VERB **happen, strike sth** *The avalanche struck the ski resort in the late afternoon.* **| engulf sb/sth | kill sb** *They were killed by an avalanche in the Swiss Alps.*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *They died in an avalanche.*

2 **large number/amount of sth**

VERB + AVALANCHE **be buried under**

AVALANCHE + VERB **engulf sth** *the avalanche of lawlessness threatening to engulf our civilization*

PREP. **~ of** *We've been almost buried under the avalanche of mail.*

avenue *noun*

1 **wide street**

ADJ. **broad, wide | leafy, tree-lined**

AVENUE + VERB **be lined with sth** *an avenue lined with elms*

PREP. **along, down, in, through, up an/the ~** *strolling down a tree-lined avenue*

2 **way of doing/getting sth**

ADJ. **possible, promising | fruitful**

VERB + AVENUE **explore, pursue, try** *We need to explore every possible avenue.* **| exhaust** *After two months of negotiations we had exhausted all avenues.* **| open (up), provide**

AVENUE + VERB **be open to sb** *There was only one avenue open to him.*

PREP. **~ for** *to provide a new avenue for research* **| ~ of** *the two main avenues of enquiry* **| ~ to** *an avenue to success*

average *adj.*

ADV. **very** *Peter was a very average golfer.* **| fairly | above, below** *an above average climb in prices*

average *noun*

ADJ. **annual | national** *The national average is just over two children per family.* **| overall | weighted | batting, bowling (both in cricket)**

VERB + AVERAGE **arrive at, calculate, find, work out** *You'll have to calculate the average.*

PREP. **above ~** *His test results are well above average.* **| below ~, on ~** *On average, prices have risen 6%.*

aversion *noun*

ADJ. **strong** *He has a strong aversion to dogs.* **| natural**

VERB + AVERSION **have | develop | overcome**

AVERSION + NOUN **therapy** *I underwent aversion therapy for my addiction to smoking.*

PREP. **~ to** *Have you developed an aversion to babies?*

avert *verb*

1 **prevent sth**

ADV. **narrowly** *A tragedy was narrowly averted when a lorry crashed into a crowded restaurant.*

VERB + AVERT **attempt to, try to | manage to** *He managed to avert the closure of the factory.* **| fail to**

PHRASES **an attempt/effort to avert sth**

2 **turn sth away**

ADV. **hastily, quickly** *They hastily averted their faces to hide their giggles.*

VERB + AVERT **try to**

PREP. **from** *averting his eyes from the dead child*

avocado (*also* **avocado pear)** *noun*

ADJ. ripe

VERB + AVOCADO eat, have | halve, peel, stone

AVOCADO + NOUN dip, mousse > Special page at FRUIT

avoid *verb*

1 **prevent sth**

ADV. **altogether** *It is sometimes impossible to avoid conflict altogether.* **| narrowly** *They narrowly avoided defeat in the semi-final.* **| at all costs** *Getting involved in a court case is something to be avoided at all costs.*

VERB + AVOID **be anxious to, want to, wish to** *They are anxious to avoid any further misunderstandings.* **| attempt to, try to | be careful to, take care to** *He was careful to avoid any sentimentality in his speech.* **| help (to) | be able to, manage to | be possible to | be difficult to, be impossible to**

PHRASES **an attempt/effort to avoid sth** *He failed in his attempt to avoid having to pay.*

2 **keep away from sb**

ADV. **carefully, deliberately, studiously** *The two men carefully avoided one another.*

VERB + AVOID **try to**

3 **not hit sb/sth when driving**

ADV. **narrowly** *He braked hard and narrowly avoided a parked van.*

VERB + AVOID **brake to | swerve to** *She swerved to avoid a cyclist.*

avoidable *adj.*

VERBS **be** *Most accidents are easily avoidable.*

ADV. **entirely, wholly | easily**

await *verb*

ADV. **anxiously** *She is anxiously awaiting a decision on her future.* **| eagerly, keenly, with interest** *The outcome of the appeal is awaited with interest.* **| patiently**

PHRASES **long awaited** *her long awaited return to professional tennis*

awake *adj.*

VERBS **be, lie** *At night, he lay awake beside her.* **| come, jerk** *Claudia came awake slowly. Stephen jerked awake from a nightmare.* **| keep, remain, stay** *He was struggling to stay awake.* **| jerk sb, jolt sb, nudge sb, shake sb** *A few hours later Benjamin shook me awake.* **| keep sb** *The noise had kept her awake.*

ADV. **fully, wide** *By now, the baby was wide awake.* **| hardly, only half** *It was very early and I was only half awake.* **| still** *The children were still awake when we went out.*

awake *verb*

ADV. **early, late** *She awoke early the next morning.*

PREP. **from** *I awoke from a deep sleep at six o'clock.*

awaken *verb*

ADV. **early, late**

PREP. **from** *She was just awakening from sleep.*

PHRASES **be rudely awakened** *He was rudely awakened by the sound of drilling.*

awakening *noun*

ADJ. **rude, sudden** *If they expected a warm welcome, they were in for a rude awakening.* **| slow | political, sexual, spiritual** *the political awakening that followed the Second World War*

PREP. **~ from, ~ to** *an awakening from a terrible vision to cheerful realities*

award *noun*

1 **prize that sb gets for doing sth well**

ADJ. **annual | national | coveted, highest, major, prestigious, special, top | bravery, design, literary, man of the match, etc.** *His goalkeeping won him the man of the match award.*

VERB + AWARD **give sb, hand out, make (sb), present (sb with)** *The award was made for his work in cancer research.* **| carry off, earn (sb), get, receive, win** *Stephen's quick thinking has earned him a bravery award.* **| accept**

AWARD + VERB **go to sb** *The best director award went to Sam Mendes for 'American Beauty'.*

AWARD + NOUN **ceremony, scheme**

PREP. **~ for** *the award for best actor* **| ~ from** *to receive an award from the Queen*

2 **money given to sb**

ADJ. **compensatory, discretionary, mandatory | pay** *The union is unhappy with this year's pay award.* **| damages, libel**

VERB + AWARD **get, receive | make** *The judge has the power to make discretionary awards.*

award *verb*

ADV. **automatically | jointly** *He was jointly awarded the Nobel Prize with Alex Mueller.* **| mentally** *She mentally awarded herself top marks for staying cool under pressure.* **| posthumously**

PREP. **to** *Honours were automatically awarded to senior officials just because they were senior.*

aware *adj.*

1 **conscious**

VERBS **be, seem | become | make sb** *We need to make people more aware of these problems.*

ADV. **acutely, keenly, very, well | fully, perfectly** *Mr Bush did not appear fully aware of the importance of this act.* **| dimly, vaguely | hardly, not really** *He was not really aware of what he was doing.* **| horribly, painfully** *Moran was painfully aware of Luke's absence.*

PREP. **of** *The police are well aware of the dangers.*

2 **informed**

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **very | environmentally, politically, socially**

awareness *noun*

ADJ. **full | greater, heightened, increased | dawning, growing, increasing** *a growing awareness of healthy living* **| acute, deep, intense, keen, strong | conscious, direct | intuitive | sudden | general, public | cultural, environmental, moral, political, religious, sexual, social, spatial, spiritual**

VERB + AWARENESS **have** *Politicians now have much greater awareness of these problems.* **| build, develop, encourage, foster, heighten, increase, raise** *The group is trying to raise public awareness about homelessness.*

AWARENESS + VERB **increase, spread** *Environmental awareness has increased over the years.*

PREP. **~ among/amongst** *building awareness among the target audience* **| ~ of** *an increased awareness of the risks*

PHRASES **a lack of awareness**

awe *noun*

ADJ. **great**

VERB + AWE **be/stand in, hold sb in** *Most people hold him in some awe.* **| feel | inspire** *Everest has always inspired awe and respect among climbers.*

PREP. **in/with ~** *We gazed in awe at the massive building.* **| ~ at** *What I mostly felt was awe at her achievement.*

PHRASES **a sense of awe** *They experienced a tremendous sense of awe in the cathedral.*

awesome *adj.*

VERBS be, seem

ADV. really, simply, truly *The Niagara Falls are a truly awesome sight.* **| fairly, pretty, quite, somewhat**

awful *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, smell, sound, taste** *I felt awful when I realized what I'd done. The fish tasted awful.*

ADV. **bloody** *(taboo)*, **fucking** *(taboo)*, **just, quite, really, simply, truly** *a truly awful book* **| absolutely, the most** *She's the most awful snob.* **| pretty, rather**

awkward *adj.*

1 **difficult**

VERBS **be, look, seem | make sth**

ADV. **extremely, very | a bit, rather, slightly, somewhat** *She asked some rather awkward questions.*

PHRASES **make things awkward** *He could make things very awkward for me if he wanted to.*

2 **not relaxed**

VERBS **be, feel, look | become | make sb** *He was embarrassed, which made him awkward.*

ADV. **extremely, very | a bit, rather | painfully** *As a teenager he was painfully awkward in company.*

PREP. **about** *They felt awkward about having to leave so soon.* **| with** *She is awkward with people she doesn't know.*

axe *noun*

1 **tool**

VERB + AXE **brandish, carry, hold, wield** *A man used to wielding an axe fought best on foot.* **| chop sth down/up with, use | swing | sharpen**

AXE + VERB **fall** *The executioner's axe fell.*

PREP. **with an/the ~** *to chop a tree down with an axe*

PHRASES **a blow from/of an axe** *With a few swift blows of the axe, she severed the cable.*

2 **the axe: complete loss of sth/big reduction in sth**

VERB + AXE **swing, wield** *Wielding the axe on the prison plan would be one way of saving money.* **| face** *Up to 300 workers are facing the axe at a struggling Merseyside firm.* **| save sb/sth from** *Patients are delighted their local hospital has been saved from the axe.*

AXE + VERB **fall** *We were expecting bad news but had no idea where the axe would fall* (= where the loss/reduction would be).

axis *noun*

ADJ. **horizontal, vertical | x, y, z**

PREP. **along an/the ~** *the wage is measured along the horizontal axis* **| on an/the ~** *The earth spins on its axis.*

PHRASES **an axis of rotation** *the earth's axis of rotation* **| an axis of symmetry**

baby *noun*

ADJ. **new, newborn, tiny | low birthweight, small, tiny** *Smoking in pregnancy increases the risk of producing a low birthweight baby.* | big | full-term | pre-term, premature | stillborn | unborn | little, young | three-day-old, six-week-old, ten-month-old, **etc. | beautiful, bonny, lovely | bouncing** (*informal*), **healthy, normal** *A bonny, bouncing baby, Freddie was her heart's desire and joy.* **| contented, good, perfect | colicky, crying, screaming | sleeping | growing** *He took an interest in the growing baby even before it was born.* **| bottle-fed, breast-fed | illegitimate | test-tube | abandoned, unwanted | war** (= born during the war)

VERB + BABY **have** *I want to have a baby.* **| conceive, make babies** (*informal*) *Darling, I just want to stay with you and make babies!* **| carry, expect** *She's not sure yet how many babies she's carrying. She's expecting a baby in July.* **| give birth to, produce | deliver** *The baby was delivered by a midwife.* **| lose** *She lost her baby* (= had a miscarriage) *three months into her pregnancy.* **| care for, look after | feed | bottle-feed | breastfeed, nurse | burp** *The baby needed burping after every bottle.* **| wean** *You can start weaning your baby when it's four months old.* **| change** *You should change your baby about six times a day.* **| bath | comfort, cradle, cuddle, hold, pick up, rock, take** *She rocked the baby to sleep in her arms. Could you take the baby? I need to bring in the washing.* **| swaddle | play with | adopt** *They would like to adopt a newborn baby.* **| have adopted, put up for adoption** *She decided to put her baby up for adoption.* **| abandon | sleep like** *He was so tired after all his exertions, he slept like a baby.*

BABY + VERB **be due** *The baby is due in October.* **| arrive, be born** *Their first baby arrived exactly nine months after the wedding.* **| bawl, cry, scream | babble, coo** *The baby cooed happily on the rug.* **| be sick, dribble, drool** *Babies drool a lot when they are teething.* **| be teething | crawl, sit up,** take his/her first steps, toddle, **walk | kick, move** *I could feel the baby moving inside me.* **| sleep**

BABY + NOUN **boy, girl | brother, daughter, sister, son | bird, rabbit, etc. | clothes | food | buggy, carrier | alarm, monitor | bath | talk** *I didn't use baby talk with my children, but used proper words right from the start.* **| unit** *the hospital's special care baby unit* **| boom** (= a period when many more babies are born than usual)

bachelor *noun*

ADJ. **confirmed** *He was 38, and a confirmed bachelor.* **| eligible** *one of the country's most eligible bachelors*

BACHELOR + NOUN **days, life | flat, pad | status**

back *noun*

1 part of the body

ADJ. **broad | lean, slender | muscled, muscular, powerful, strong | bent | erect, straight | lower, upper | bad, stiff** *He's off work with a bad back.*

VERB + BACK **bend, stiffen, straighten | stretch** *He yawned and stretched his back as he got out of bed.* **| break, hurt, injure | arch** *The cat arched its back and hissed at the dog.* **| support | knead, massage | scratch**

BACK + VERB **arch | stiffen** *His back stiffened as he saw the photographers waiting.* **| ache**

BACK + NOUN **injury, pain, trouble | muscles | support** *a seat with good back support*

PREP. **behind your ~** *They blindfolded him and tied his hands behind his back.*

(figurative) People say bad things about him behind his back, but never to his face. **| flat on your ~** *I was flat on my back for six weeks when I broke my leg.* **| on your ~** *He was carrying a small child on his back. She was lying on her back on the sofa.* **| in the/your ~** *I've got a nagging pain in my lower back.* **| ~ to** *He was standing with his back to the fire.*

PHRASES **sb's back is turned** *(figurative) The boss was certain that the staff would stop working as soon as his back was turned.* **| back to back** *The children sat back to back so they couldn't see each others' drawings.* **| a pat/slap on the back** *He smiled and gave me a hearty slap on the back.*

(figurative) She deserves a pat on the back for her efforts. **| the small of your back** *She felt a sharp pain in the small* (= the lowest part of) *her back.* **| turn your back (on sb/sth)** *Actors should never turn their backs on the audience.*

(figurative) She decided to turn her back on Paris and return to her home town.

2 part furthest from the front

PREP. **around/round the ~** *If you'd like to come round the back* (= to the area behind the house), *I'll show you the garden.* **| at the ~** *We could only get seats at the back.* **| down the ~** *My money's all fallen down the back of the cushion.* **| in the ~** *Two passengers sat in the back of the car.* **| to the ~** *The man was refusing to go to the back of the queue.* **| towards the ~** *The arts page is usually towards the back of the newspaper.*

PHRASES **back to front** *I had my pullover on back to front* (= with the back where the front should be).

back *verb*

1 move backwards

ADV. **hastily, hurriedly** *She backed away hurriedly.* **| away, in, off, up** *If you can't drive in forwards, try backing it in. Back off! There's no need to yell at me. Can you back your car up so that I can get through?*

VERB + BACK **try to** *He tried to back away.*

PREP. **across** *She backed across the room.* **| away from** *The children backed away from him in fear.* **| into** *She backed into the garage.* **| out of** *He backed out of the drive.*

2 support sb/sth

ADV. **firmly, strongly** *Teachers are strongly backing the new educational policies.* **| fully | overwhelmingly | unanimously | openly, publicly | financially** *his election bid was financially backed by a soft drinks company.* **| up** *I'll back you up if they don't believe you.* **PHRASAL VERBS back down**

VERB + BACK **refuse to | be forced to, be obliged to**

PREP. **from** *The government was forced to back down from implementing these proposals.* **| on** *She refused to back down on a point of principle.* **| over** *The committee finally backed down over the issue of spending cuts.*

backdrop *noun*

ADJ. **dramatic, magnificent, perfect, picturesque, romantic | economic, historical, political**

VERB + BACKDROP **have | provide**

PREP. **against a/the ~ of** *The conference begins this week against a backdrop of unmitigated gloom.* **| ~ for** *The Alps provided the perfect backdrop for a romantic holiday.* **| ~ of** *The large bay has a superb backdrop of mountains.* **| ~ to** *War is more than just a dramatic backdrop to the novel.*

backfire *verb*

ADV. **badly, disastrously**

PREP. **on** *The surprise I had planned backfired on me.*

background *noun*

1 type of family/social class sb comes from

ADJ. **broad, narrow** *It is important to have a broad educational background.* | **mixed** | **privileged, wealthy** | **deprived, disadvantaged, poor** | **middle class, upper class, working class** | **academic, class, cultural, educational, ethnic, family, military, professional, religious, social, socio-economic**

VERB + BACKGROUND **come from, have** *He came from a very privileged background.* | **be drawn from** *The students are drawn from very mixed social backgrounds.*

BACKGROUND + VERB **be in sth** *Her background was in biology and medicine.*

PREP. **from a ~** *children from deprived backgrounds* | **with a ~** *an economist with a background in business* | **~ in**

PHRASES **a range/variety of backgrounds**

2 facts connected with a situation/event

ADJ. **general** | **factual** | **cultural, economic, historical, political, technical**

VERB + BACKGROUND **describe, give (sb), outline, provide (sb with)** *The book provides the background to the revolution.* | **form** *Those discussions formed the background to the decision.*

BACKGROUND + NOUN **information, knowledge, reading** *background information on the country*

PREP. **against the ~** *Against that general background I shall give you a more detailed view of current medical practice.* | **~ to** *the technical background to the report*

3 part of a view/picture behind the main parts

PREP. **against a/the ~** *The areas of water stood out against the dark background.* | **in the ~** *The mountains in the background were capped with snow.* | **on a/the ~** *bright blue on a red background*

4 **position in which sb/sth is not important/noticed**

VERB + BACKGROUND **blend into, fade into, melt/merge into, recede/retreat into, slip into** *The dispute over the new contract allowed her other problems to fade into the background. He had learnt how to melt invisibly into the background.* | **keep/remain/stay in** *He prefers to remain in the background and let his assistant deal with the press.* | **hover in** *I could see my secretary hovering in the background.*

BACKGROUND + NOUN **music, noise, radiation**

PREP. **in the ~** *There was a radio on in the background.*

backing *noun*

ADJ. **strong | full, unanimous, whole-hearted** *The teachers have the full backing of the school governors.* **| financial, legal | government, official, popular**

VERB + BACKING **have | gain, get, receive, secure, win** *They have won financial backing from the EU.* **| need, seek | give sb, provide (sb with)** *Who's going to provide the backing?*

BACKING + VERB **come from sb/sth** *The backing will come from the government.*

PREP. **with/without the ~** *They brought the legal action with the backing of their MP.* **| ~ for** *They want backing for more research.* **| ~ from** *backing from management*

backlash *noun*

ADJ. **conservative** *a conservative backlash against the feminism of the 80s* **| political | public**

VERB + BACKLASH **cause, produce, provoke** *Such a decision may provoke a backlash from their supporters.* **| expect, fear | face**

PREP. **~ against** *a backlash against any future reforms* **| ~ from** *They face a backlash from shareholders.*

backlog *noun*

ADJ. **big, considerable, enormous, huge, large**

VERB + BACKLOG **be faced with, have** *We are faced with a backlog of orders we can't deal with.* **| catch up on, clear, deal with, reduce**

BACKLOG + VERB **accumulate, build up** *A huge backlog of work had built up.*

backpack *nou*n > See RUCKSACK

backstroke *noun* > Note at STROKE

backward *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **very | rather, somewhat** *a rather backward child* **| economically, educationally**

bacon *noun*

ADJ. **lean | streaky | back | crisp/crispy** *Fry the bacon until crisp.* **| smoked, unsmoked**

QUANT. **bit, piece, rasher, slice** *I'll have two rashers of bacon and a fried egg.* **| side** *A whole side of bacon was hanging from a hook on the ceiling.*

VERB + BACON **eat, have | cook, fry, grill | cure**

BACON + NOUN **fat, rind | butty, sandwich** > Special page at FOOD

bacteria *noun*

ADJ. **harmful | beneficial**

VERB + BACTERIA **attack, destroy, fight, kill** *Neither chilling nor freezing kills all bacteria.*

PHRASES **a strain of bacteria**

bad *adj.*

1 not good; serious

VERBS **be, look, sound | become, get** *The weather got very bad later in the day.*

ADV. **extremely, really, very | enough** *Things are bad enough without our own guns shelling us.* **| fairly, pretty, quite, rather** *John's in a pretty bad mood this morning.*

PREP. **at** *He's really bad at maths.* **| for** *Smoking is very bad for you.*

2 not safe to eat

VERBS **be, look, smell, taste** *The sausages tasted bad.* **| go, turn** *This meat has gone bad.*

3 guilty/sorry

VERBS **feel**

ADV. **really, very | enough** *I feel bad enough without you constantly telling me how it was all my fault!* **| fairly, pretty, quite, rather**

PREP. **about** *She felt pretty bad about leaving him.*

badge *noun*

ADJ. **blazer, cap, lapel | club | name | button**

VERB + BADGE **wear**

BADGE + NOUN **holder**

PHRASES **a badge of office** *His badge of office, a large gold key, hung round his neck.*

bad-tempered *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become, grow | make sb** *It is his illness that makes him bad-tempered.*

ADV. **extremely, very | increasingly, more and more** *He grew more and more bad-tempered as the afternoon wore on.* **| rather**

baffled *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound | remain**

ADV. **completely, totally, utterly | rather | clearly | frankly**

PREP. **about** *Officials say they're baffled about the cause of the gas explosion.* **| as to** *The referee remains baffled as to why his decision caused so much anger.* **| by** *The doctors are completely baffled by her illness.*

bag *noun*

ADJ. **strong | heavy | canvas, leather, paper, plastic, polythene, string | carrier, shopping | bin, dustbin, rubbish | clutch, shoulder** *Her crocodile skin clutch bag matched her shoes.* **| drawstring, duffel | evening | overnight, weekend, travel/travelling | sponge, toilet, wash | changing** *a baby changing bag* **| school | beach, camera, golf, sports | kit** (also **kitbag**) **| medical | crisp | sandwich | body** *The dead soldiers were put on the plane in body bags.* **| sick** (= a paper bag for a person to be sick into on a plane, boat, etc.) **| doggie** (= for taking uneaten food home from a restaurant) **| goody** (= a bag given as a gift with a variety of things in) *We're giving away a free goody bag with every children's meal.* **| sleeping | pannier, saddle** (also **saddlebag**) **| money** *(figurative) He could not convince those who held the money bags that his idea was viable.* **| diplomatic** (= an official government container that may not be opened by customs officials) **| mail** (also **mailbag**), **post** (also **postbag)**

VERB + BAG **open, unfasten, unzip | close, zip up | pack | empty, unpack | seal sth in** ***The mushrooms are sealed in a bag for freshness.*** **| cram/push sth in/into, put sth in/into, shove sth in/into, slip sth in/into, stuff/thrust sth in/into** ***The camera caught him slipping a CD into his bag.*** **| draw sth out of, produce sth from, pull/take sth from/out of | delve in/into, dive into, ferret (around) in, fumble in, reach into, rummage in, scrabble in** ***I rummaged in my bag for a pen.*** **| clutch, hold | carry, drag, haul, lug** ***There was no lift so I had to lug my bags up the stairs.*** **| heave, lift | shoulder** ***He shouldered his bag and left.*** **| drop, dump, put down | deposit, drop off, leave** ***We dropped our bags off at the hotel and went straight out.*** **| grab, snatch** ***She grabbed her bag and ran out of the door. Two youths snatched her bag as she was walking home.*** **| swing** ***He was walking along swinging his school bag.*** **| look in, search | gather** ***They were gathering their bags, preparing to leave.***

BAG + VERB **bulge (with sth)** ***The bag bulged with papers and letters.*** **| contain sth, hold sth | be crammed with sth, be (stuffed) full of sth**

PREP. **in a/the ~, inside a/the ~ | ~ of** ***a bag of groceries***

PHRASES **the contents of a bag** ***The customs officer asked him to empty out the contents of his bag.*** **| sling your bag over your shoulder** ***She stepped down off the bus with her bag slung over her shoulder.***

baggage *noun*

ADJ. **carry-on, hand | excess** *At the airport I found that I had 100kg of excess baggage.* **| emotional, spiritual** (*figurative*) *She's still carrying all that emotional baggage from her first marriage.*

QUANT. **item, piece**

VERB + BAGGAGE **carry | go through, search | check in** *Where do we check in our baggage?* **| claim, reclaim** *Let's claim our baggage first.*

BAGGAGE + NOUN **allowance | trolley | handler | claim, reclaim** *the baggage reclaim hall* **| train** *Extensive baggage trains followed the troops.*

bail *noun*

ADJ. **conditional, unconditional | police**

VERB + BAIL **apply for | allow sb, give sb, grant (sb)** *She has been granted conditional bail.* **| set** *The judge set bail at £50,000.* **| get** *She couldn't get bail and now she's lost those 20 months she spent on remand.* **| oppose** *The police were successful in opposing bail.* **| refuse (sb) | post, put up, stand** *A wealthy businessman has stood bail for him.* **| free sb on, release sb on, remand sb on** *They were released on police bail pending further enquiries.* **| jump, skip** (= not return for your trial after bail has been granted)

BAIL + NOUN **application | conditions | hostel** *He was sent to a bail hostel until the case came to court.*

PREP. **(out) on ~** *He committed another robbery while out on bail.* **| without ~** *The accused were held without bail.*

PHRASES **an application for bail**

bailiff *noun*

ADJ. **court | private**

VERB + BAILIFF **send in** *Their landlord has threatened to send in the bailiffs if they don't pay their rent.*

BAILIFF + VERB **seize sth** *The bailiffs seized the car and house.*

bait *noun*

ADJ. **fresh, live** *He used maggots as live bait.*

VERB + BAIT **put out, set out** *We'll put out the bait and see what happens.* **| use sth as | nibble (at), rise to, take** *(all often figurative) We hope that potential investors will take the bait.*

bake *verb*

PHRASES **freshly/newly baked** *The house was filled with the scent of freshly baked bread.*

balance *noun*

1 even combination/distribution

ADJ. **correct, equal, even, exact, ideal, necessary, optimum, perfect, proper, right** *With children, it is important to achieve the right balance between love and discipline.* **| comfortable, equitable, excellent, good, happy, harmonious, healthy** *a healthy balance of foods* **| acceptable, adequate, appropriate, fair, reasonable, sensible** *How do you find an acceptable balance between closeness and distance in a relationship?* **| careful, delicate, fine, subtle** *Being a good boss requires a fine balance between kindness and authority.* **| fragile, precarious, uneasy | overall** *It is the overall balance of the diet that is important.* **| ecological, natural** *Pulling up all the plants will disturb the natural balance of the pond.* **| hormonal, nutritional | ethnic, gender, social** *There is an even gender balance amongst staff and students* (= equal numbers of men and women).

VERB + BALANCE **require | seek | achieve, create, find, strike** *We need to strike a balance between these conflicting interests.* **| keep, maintain, sustain** *You have to maintain a balance in your life or else you'll go crazy.* **| disturb, upset** *Tourists often disturb the delicate balance of nature on the island.* **| redress, restore | affect | alter, change, shift**

BALANCE + VERB **change, shift**

PREP. **on ~** (= after considering all the information) *On balance, the company has had a successful year.* **| in ~** *It is important to keep the different aspects of your life in balance.* **| ~ between** *the balance between academic and practical work* **| ~ of** *the balance of animals and plants in the environment*

PHRASES **the balance of nature**

2 division of power/influence

ADJ. **changing, shifting | military, political**

VERB + BALANCE **hold** *to hold the balance of power* (= to be in a position where your support would be just enough to give overall power to one group or another) **| affect | change, shift | swing, tilt, tip** (= to influence a result/decision) *In an interview, smart presentation can tip the balance in your favour.*

BALANCE + VERB **change, shift**

PHRASES **the balance of advantage** *The balance of advantage has shifted from the unions to employers.* **| the balance of forces/power** *the changing balance of power between the working and middle class* **| checks and balances** *Democracy depends on a system of checks and balances.*

3 of the body

ADJ. **excellent, good | poor**

VERB + BALANCE **have** *Gymnasts have excellent balance.* **| affect** *Tightness in one set of muscles will affect your whole balance.* **| keep** *I struggled to keep my balance on my new skates.* **| lose** *She lost her balance and fell.* **| recover, regain | knock sb off, throw sb off** *The sudden movement threw him off balance.*

PREP. **off ~**

PHRASES **a sense of balance** *Cats have a very good sense of balance.*

4 money

ADJ. **account, bank | cash, money | credit, favourable, healthy, positive | debit, negative | cleared, net** *Interest is calculated on the daily cleared balance and paid direct to your account.* **| opening | final, outstanding | trade**

VERB + BALANCE **have** *Everyone likes to have a healthy bank balance.* **| ask for, request** *He asked the cashier for the balance of his current account.* **| check** *I'll need to check my bank balance before I spend so much money.* **| show | achieve | be due** *The final balance is due six weeks before departure.* **| pay** *I'll pay the balance later.* **| use** *The balance of the proceeds will be used for new equipment.* **| bring forward, carry forward** *the balance brought forward from the previous year*

BALANCE + NOUN **sheet** *the company's balance sheet*

PHRASES **the balance of payments** (= the difference between the amount of money coming into and going out of a country), **the balance of trade** (= the difference in value between imports and exports)

balance *verb*

1 **keep steady**

ADV. **carefully, precariously**

PREP. **on** *He balanced the glasses carefully on the tray.*

2 **compare two things; give them equal value**

VERB + BALANCE **have to, need to | seek to, try to** *The plan seeks to balance two important objectives.* **| manage to**

PREP. **against** *We have to balance the risks of the new strategy against the possible benefits.* **| with** *She tries to balance the needs of her children with those of her employer.*

balanced *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **properly, well** *The report was accurate and well balanced. a properly balanced diet* **| completely, perfectly** *a perfectly balanced design* **| equally, evenly | fairly, reasonably, sufficiently | carefully, closely, delicately, finely, nicely** *The issues are finely balanced and there is no simple answer to the question.* **| beautifully** *a beautifully balanced orchestra* **| precariously**

PREP. **between** *The parliament was evenly balanced between the two parties.*

bald *adj.*

VERBS **be | go** *He started to go bald in his twenties.*

ADV. **completely, quite, totally | almost, nearly | prematurely** *young men who go prematurely bald*

balding *adj.*

VERBS **be** *He's in his twenties but already balding.*

ADV. **already, prematurely**

ball *noun* **costume, fancy dress, masked**

1 **round object in games** *We're going to a masked ball.*

ADJ. **billiard, cricket, golf, rugby,**

VERB + BALL **have, hold, organize tennis, etc. | beach | match,** *We're organizing a charity ball.* **| practice attend, go to**

VERB + BALL **play with | bat, blast,**

BALL + NOUN **gown bounce, bowl, chip, dribble,**

ADJ. **at a/the ~** *She met him at* **head, hit, kick, roll, strike, throw** *The kids love to kick a ball against my wall.the college ball.* **| clear, cross, pass | catch, stop** *He caught the ball.* **| control, trap | chase** *She chased the ball all over the pitch.* **| retrieve, run down | return** *The fielders try to retrieve the ball quickly and return it to the bowler.* **| miss** *The goalkeeper missed the ball.* **| drop, let go of** *Oh no! He's dropped the ball.* **| handle | give away, lose | win | retain**

BALL + VERB **fly, go, roll, sail** *The ball flew over the bar into the sea of Middlesbrough fans. The ball's gone over the fence.* **| hit, land** *The ball hit the wall and rolled along the road.* **| bounce, rebound**

BALL + NOUN **game | control, skills** *His ball control was excellent.* > Special page at SPORT

2 **kick/hit of a ball**

ADJ. **good, great, superb | bad, loose | high, low** *He sent over a high ball.* **| long, short | quick, slow | cross, through** *a superb through ball from John Scott* **| hand** *He was penalized for hand ball.*

VERB + BALL **play, send | pick up, pounce on, punish** *He pounced on a loose ball and scored.*

PREP. **~ from** *a great ball from Beckham*

3 **round object like a ball**

ADJ. **tight | fiery** *The sun was a fiery ball, low on the hills.* **| crystal** (= used for telling fortunes) *Without a crystal ball it's impossible to say where we'll be next year.* **| cannon, musket**

VERB + BALL **curl/roll (up) into** *The little girl curled up into a ball in her mother's arms.* **| form/make sth into, roll/screw sth (up) into, shape sth into** *He screwed the letter up into a tight ball.*

PHRASES **a ball of fire/flame, a ball of string/wool**

PHRASES **a ball and chain** *(figurative) The responsibility was a ball and chain around my ankle.*

3 **party**

ADJ. **college, charity, hunt |**

ballet *noun*

1 **style of dance**

ADJ. **classical, modern**

VERB + BALLET **study** *He's studying classical ballet.*

BALLET + NOUN **music | dancer | company | shoe | class, lesson, school | teacher**

2 **performance of a ballet**

ADJ. **classical, modern, romantic**

VERB + BALLET **compose, write | choreograph** > Note at PERFORMANCE(for more verbs)

balloon *noun*

1 **toy**

ADJ. **helium** *helium balloons for the children's party*

VERB + BALLOON **blow up, inflate | burst, pop**

BALLOON + VERB **burst, pop**

2 **in the sky**

ADJ. **barrage, hot-air**

VERB + BALLOON **go up in** *We went up in a balloon.*

BALLOON + NOUN **flight | race**

PREP. **by ~** *She crossed the Atlantic by hot-air balloon.*

ballot *noun*

ADJ. **secret | open | postal | national | first, second | leadership | strike**

VERB + BALLOT **carry out, hold | organize | cast** *Only 40% of eligible voters cast their ballots.*

BALLOT + NOUN **box | paper | rigging**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *They voted against him at the second ballot.* **| by ~** *The jury cast their vote by secret ballot.* **| in a/the ~** *The club members decided in a ballot to suspend the captain.* **| on a/the ~** *I voted for her on the first ballot.* **| ~ for** *a ballot for the Conservative leadership* **| ~ on** *a ballot on the new contracts* **| ~ over** *a ballot over strike action*

ban *noun*

ADJ. **blanket, complete, total | partial | temporary | overtime | advertising** *a blanket advertising ban on tobacco* **| driving | test** *a nuclear test ban treaty*

VERB + BAN **impose, introduce, place, put** *The EU has imposed a ban on the import of seal skins.* **| lift, overturn, remove | tighten | ease** *The ban on exports has now been eased.* **| call for, demand | oppose, reject | comply with | defy** *The students took to the streets, defying a ban on political gatherings.*

BAN + VERB **come into force, start | apply to sth, cover sth** *The ban only covers tropical hardwood.*

PREP. **~ on** *a ban on traffic in the town centre*

ban *verb*

ADV. **effectively | formally, officially**

VERB + BAN **attempt to, seek to, try to | vote to** *MPs voted to ban hunting with dogs.*

PREP. **from** *He has been banned from driving for a year.*

PHRASES **an attempt/a move to ban sth** *a move to ban cigarette adverts* **| a decision to ban sth**

banana *noun*

ADJ. **ripe | green | mashed**

QUANT. **bunch** *I bought a small bunch of bananas.*

VERB + BANANA **eat, have | pick | peel**

BANANA + NOUN **skin** *(figurative) The company has acquired an unhappy knack of slipping on banana skins* (= being led into making mistakes that make it look stupid). **| plant, tree | leaf | grove, plantation** > Special page at FRUIT

band *noun*

1 **group of musicians**

ADJ. **big | brass, string, wind | blues, dance, jazz, rock | marching, military, regimental | school | live** *the excitement of seeing a live band* **| one-man** *(often figurative) He runs the business as a one-man band* (= does everything himself).

VERB + BAND **form | join, play in, sing in** *She plays in a rock band.* **| conduct, lead**

BAND + VERB **perform, play | strike up** *We heard a band strike up in the park.*

BAND + NOUN **leader, member**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *a singer in a rock band* **| with a/the ~** *a drummer with a jazz band*

PHRASES **a member of the band**

2 **group of people**

ADJ. **select, small** *He is one of a select band of top class players.* **| dwindling | growing**

VERB + BAND **join**

PREP. **~ of** *a band of rebels*

3 **range**

ADJ. **age, price, tax** *the 25?35 age band*

VERB + BAND **be in, fall into** *Which tax band do you fall into?*

bandage *noun*

ADJ. **tight | loose | crepe**

VERB + BANDAGE **put on, wind around/round, wrap around/round** *Wrap the bandage firmly around the injured limb.* **| have on, wear | change, remove, take off**

PREP. **~ around/round, ~ on** *She had a bandage on her arm.*

PHRASES **be in bandages, be swathed/wrapped in bandages** *He'll be in bandages for a few weeks.*

bandwagon *noun*

VERB + BANDWAGON **climb on, join, jump on** *Competitors have jumped on the bandwagon and started building similar machines.*

BANDWAGON + VERB **be rolling, gather momentum/pace, sweep along** *The Scottish Nationalist bandwagon is gathering pace.* **| slow down**

BANDWAGON + NOUN **effect** *There is now a bandwagon effect with more and more firms joining the scheme.*

PHRASES **get/start a bandwagon rolling** *They seem to have got an anti-government bandwagon rolling.*

bang *noun*

1 **sudden loud noise**

ADJ. **almighty, big, enormous, huge, loud, massive, terrific, tremendous**

VERB + BANG **let out, make** *The engine let out a bang. Will the firework make a loud enough bang?* | **hear** *We suddenly heard an almighty bang from the kitchen.*

BANG + VERB **echo**

PREP. **with a ~** *She slammed the door with a loud bang.*

2 **sudden hard hit**

ADJ. **nasty** *He got a nasty bang on the head.*

VERB + BANG **get, have**

bang *verb*

1 hit noisily

ADV. **hard, loudly**

PREP. **against** *He kept banging his chair against the wall.* **| on** *She banged loudly on the table.*

PHRASES **bang sth about, bang (sth) down, bang (sth) open/shut** *The bedroom door banged shut. She banged the door shut.*

2 part of the body/person

ADV. **badly, hard** *I had banged my head badly.*

PREP. **into** *He banged into me in the corridor.* **| on** *I banged my leg on the table.*

bank *noun*

1 **for money**

ADJ. **big, large, major | small | central, clearing, commercial, investment, issuing, reserve, savings** *The central bank has put up interest rates. The bond will be priced by the issuing bank. She has her money in one of the largest savings banks.* **| private | foreign, international, overseas**

VERB + BANK **go to | borrow (sth) from**

BANK + VERB **lend sb sth** *The bank lent her money to buy a car.* **| underwrite sth** *A group of ten international banks is to underwrite and sell the bonds.* **| collapse, crash** *Investors lost millions when the bank crashed.*

BANK + NOUN **account, balance, charges, deposit, loan, statement | manager | robber**

PREP. **from a/the ~** *He got a large loan from the bank.* **| in a/the ~** *I'll put half the money in the bank and spend the rest.* **| out of a/the ~** *I need to get some money out of the bank.*

2 **by a river/canal**

ADJ. **far, opposite, other** *We could see them waving on the opposite bank.* **| canal, river**

VERB + BANK **burst, overflow** *The River Frome had burst its banks after torrential rain.*

PREP. **along a/the ~** *We strolled along the river bank.* **| on a/the ~** *a picnic on the banks of the Thames*

3 **area of sloping ground**

ADJ. **steep | grassy**

PREP. **down a/the ~** *The children rolled down the grassy bank.* **| up a/the ~**

4 **mass of cloud, etc./row of machines, etc.**

ADJ. **huge, vast** *a huge bank of switches and buttons*

PREP. **~ of** *a vast bank of cloud*

banking *noun*

ADJ. **business, commercial, corporate | investment, merchant | retail, wholesale | domestic, national | global, international | e-, electronic, Internet, online** *At first consumers were wary of e-banking.*

BANKING + NOUN **system | market | group | business, industry, sector | community** *the international banking community*

PREP. **in ~** *This software is used in banking.*

bankrupt *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, go** *Hundreds of firms went bankrupt during the recession.* **| adjudge sb, adjudicate sb, declare sb, make sb** *She had to pay the mortgage after her husband was declared bankrupt.*

ADV. **almost, nearly, virtually | economically, ideologically, morally** *(figurative)*

PREP. **of** *(figurative) a government bankrupt of new ideas*

bankruptcy *noun*

ADJ. **personal**

VERB + BANKRUPTCY **face** *Small travel operators are facing bankruptcy.* **| be close to, be on the brink/verge of | be driven/forced/thrown into, go into | file for, petition for** *The company has been forced to file for bankruptcy.* **| declare** *It is the only country to have declared bankruptcy.* **| be saved from, escape (from)**

BANKRUPTCY + NOUN **order, proceedings** *The defendant has a bankruptcy order against him.*

PHRASES **the threat of bankruptcy**

banner *noun*

VERB + BANNER **drape, hang (out) | carry | wave | unfurl**

BANNER + VERB **hang | flutter, fly, wave** *banners waving in the wind* **| bear sth** *The demonstrators carried banners bearing various slogans.* **| demand sth, proclaim sth, read sth, say sth** *Banners demanded the president's resignation.* **| be strung across sth** *A banner strung across the road read, 'Welcome home, boys!'*

banquet *noun*

ADJ. **grand, great, lavish, sumptuous | veritable** *(humorous) The meal that followed was a veritable banquet.* **| five-course, six-course, etc. | formal, official | royal, state | celebration/celebratory, farewell, wedding | medieval** *Visitors to the castle can enjoy a medieval banquet with entertainment, in an authentic setting.*

VERB + BANQUET **give, hold | arrange, prepare (for)** *The kitchens are preparing for a lavish banquet.* **| attend** *The Lord Mayor attended a state banquet last night.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *He was suddenly taken ill at a banquet given in his honour.* **| ~ for** *a banquet for the president*

banter *noun*

ADJ. **easy, friendly, good-natured, lively, pleasant | idle | bawdy, ribald**

VERB + BANTER **swap | be engaged in, engage in** *She engages in friendly banter with her customers.*

bar *noun*

1 **for drinks/food**

ADJ. **licensed | crowded | lounge, public, saloon | gay, singles | cocktail, wine | breakfast, coffee, salad, sandwich, snack**

VERB + BAR **drop into, go to, stop at** *He often drops into a bar on the way home from work.* **| manage, run**

BAR + NOUN **food, menu, snacks | stool**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There were not many people in the bar.*

2 **counter**

VERB + BAR **be propping up** *(humorous)*, **drink at, lean on, sit at, stand at** *You can usually find him propping up the bar of the Red Lion.* **| serve behind** *I didn't recognize the man who was serving behind the bar.*

PREP. **at the ~** *They were chatting at the bar.* **| behind the ~** *The barmaid stood behind the bar.*

3 **in music**

VERB + BAR **hum, play, sing** *She played a few bars on the piano.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the notes in the first bar*

PHRASES **two, four, etc. beats to the bar**

bar *verb*

ADV. **effectively**

PREP. **from** *The curfew has effectively barred migrant workers from their jobs.*

bare *adj.*

1 **not covered by clothing**

VERBS **be** *He was standing there, completely bare!*

ADV. **completely**

2 **not containing/covered by anything**

VERBS **be, look | remain | leave sth** *You shouldn't have left the wires bare.* **| lay sth, strip sth** *The earth had been laid bare. The walls have been stripped bare.*

ADV. **very | completely, quite** *The room was completely bare.* **| almost, rather | strangely** *The room looked strangely bare without the furniture.*

PREP. **of** *The house was almost bare of furniture.*

barefoot *adj., adv.*

VERBS **be, go, pad, stand, walk** *The children had to go barefoot because there was no money for shoes. He padded barefoot across the carpet.*

bargain *noun*

1 **sth sold at a lower price**

ADJ. **absolute, amazing, good, real**

VERB + BARGAIN **find, get, pick up** *I picked up a really good bargain in the market.*

BARGAIN + NOUN **buy, price | hunter, hunting | holiday | basement**

2 **agreement**

ADJ. **excellent, good**

VERB + BARGAIN **make, strike**

PREP. **into the ~** (= as well) *He's very strong and completely fearless into the bargain.* **| ~ between** *A bargain was struck between the employers and the unions.* **| ~ with** *I'll make a bargain with you.*

PHRASES **drive a hard bargain** (= force sb to agree to the arrangement that is best for you), **keep (to) your half/part/side of the bargain** *You haven't kept your side of the bargain.* **| sb's side/part/half of the bargain** *Her part of the bargain was to look after the car.*

bargain *verb*

ADV. **hard** *He bargained hard and was stubborn.* **| collectively** *the right of workers to bargain collectively*

PREP. **about** *He was prepared to bargain about money.* **| for** *to bargain for a decent wage* **| over** *crowds of men bargaining over horses* **| with** *He tried to bargain with her.*

bargaining *noun*

ADJ. **hard** *There will be some hard bargaining before an agreement is reached.* **|** **collective** *Unions were insistent on the right to collective bargaining.* **|** **plea** (= where a defendant pleads guilty to a lesser charge in return for having a more serious charge dropped)

BARGAINING + NOUN **position, power** *We are now in a strong bargaining position.*

barge *noun*

ADJ. **brightly painted | canal, river | sailing | cargo, coal, etc.**

VERB + BARGE **tow | load (sth into), unload (sth from) | moor, tie up**

BARGE + VERB **be laden/loaded with sth, carry sth**

PREP. **by ~** *I travelled by barge.* **| in/on a/the ~** *cruising the canals of France in a barge*

baritone *noun*

ADJ. **lusty, melodious, pleasant, rich**

BARITONE + NOUN **voice | solo**

PREP. **in a … ~** *He sang in his rich baritone*

bark *noun*

1 **on a tree**

ADJ. **rough | tree | birch, cinnamon, willow, etc.**

VERB + BARK **peel off, strip** *The people strip the bark and use it in medicines.*

BARK + VERB **peel off** *The bark peels off in summer.*

BARK + NOUN **chippings**

2 **of a dog**

ADJ. **loud, noisy**

VERB + BARK **give** *The dog gave a loud bark.*

3 **loud sound/voice**

ADJ. **short | harsh**

VERB + BARK **give** *He gave a harsh bark of laughter.*

PHRASES **a bark of laughter**

bark *verb*

ADV. excitedly, frantically, furiously, loudly

PREP. at *The dog was barking furiously at a cat.*

barley *noun*

ADJ. **malted/malting** *Malt whisky is made from malted barley.* **| roast/roasted | pearl | spring, winter**

QUANT. **ear | field**

VERB + BARLEY **grow | sow | cut, harvest | thresh | grind**

BARLEY + VERB **grow | ripen**

BARLEY + NOUN **harvest | field**

barometer *noun*

1 **instrument that measures air pressure**

ADJ. **aneroid, digital | high, low | steady** *The barometer has been steady for three days now.*

VERB + BAROMETER **check, read | tap** *He tapped the barometer and noted where the needle was pointing.*

BAROMETER + VERB **rise | drop, fall**

2 **sth that shows the state of sth**

ADJ. **accurate, good, reliable, sensitive, useful** *Infant mortality is a highly sensitive barometer of socio-economic conditions.* **| political**

PREP. **~ of**

baron *noun*

1 **noble > Note at PEER**

2 **powerful businessman**

ADJ. **media, newspaper, press | cocaine, drug, oil** *the oil barons of Texas* **| robber**

baroness, baronet *nou*n > Note at PEER

barracks *noun*

ADJ. **army, military, police | fortified**

VERB + BARRACKS **live in | be confined to** *He was confined to barracks for three weeks as a punishment.* **| besiege | go back to, return to, withdraw to**

barrage *noun*

1 **firing of guns**

ADJ. **heavy, intense | artillery**

VERB + BARRAGE **launch, unleash**

BARRAGE + NOUN **balloon**

PREP. **~ of** *Troops unleashed a barrage of grenades.*

2 **large number of questions, etc.**

ADJ. **constant, continuous, endless**

VERB + BARRAGE **be faced with, endure, face | keep up** *The reporters kept up a constant barrage of questions.*

PHRASES **a barrage of abuse/complaints/criticism/questions** *The president is facing a barrage of criticism over his handling of the crisis.*

3 **wall of earth**

ADJ. **tidal**

VERB + BARRAGE **build, construct**

PREP. **~ across** *They built a barrage across the bay.*

barrel *noun*

1 **container**

ADJ. **beer, wine**

VERB + BARREL **fill** *They filled the barrels with cider*

BARREL + VERB **contain sth**

PREP. **a/per ~** *The price of oil had fallen to $16 per barrel.* **| by the ~** *Beer is sold by the barrel.* **| ~ of** *a barrel of beer/oil*

2 **of a gun**

ADJ. **gun, rifle** *I felt the gun barrel at my head*

VERB + BARREL **look down, peer/squint along** *She found herself looking down the barrel of a gun. Pulling his rifle to his shoulder he squinted along the barrel.*

BARREL + VERB **point**

PHRASES **the barrel of a gun**

barren *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be | become | make sth** *The years of growing cotton had made the land completely barren.*

ADV. **completely, entirely, utterly | almost | largely**

barricade *noun*

ADJ. **human**

VERB + BARRICADE **build, construct, erect, put up, set up | form** *The protesters formed a human barricade.* **| dismantle, remove, take down | smash, storm** *The army used tanks to storm the barricades.* **| man** *There were six miners manning the barricades.*

PREP. **behind a/the ~** *fighting from behind their barricades* **| over a/the ~** *The two sides watched each other over the barricades.* **| ~ across** *a barricade across the main road* **| ~ against** *Students built a barricade against the police.* **| ~ of** *a barricade of wooden benches*

barrier *noun*

1 **fence/gate**

ADJ. **physical | crash, crush, flood, police, protective, security, ticket | sound** *(figurative) the first plane to break the sound barrier*

VERB + BARRIER **build, erect, install | break through** *The crowd managed to break through the barriers and get onto the pitch.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *Please show your ticket at the barrier.* **| behind a/the ~** *The police waited behind the barriers.* **| through a/the ~** *There was a slow trickle of people through the barriers.*

2 **thing that causes problems**

ADJ. **effective, formidable, major | class, cultural, language, racial, trade**

VERB + BARRIER **build, create, erect, put up, set up** *The old laws created barriers to free trade.* **| break down, lift, lower, reduce, remove | cross** *They believe that sport can cross any barriers.* **| be faced with, encounter, face | overcome, transcend**

PREP. **~ against** *The country has set up barriers against imports.* **| ~ between** *a class barrier between the two families* **| ~ to** *a formidable barrier to communication*

3 **physical object that prevents sb/sth passing**

ADJ. **impassable, impenetrable | natural**

VERB + BARRIER **form**

PREP. **~ between** *The mountains form a natural barrier between the two countries.*

barrister *noun*

ADJ. **brilliant, good, leading, successful, top | practising, qualified | junior, trainee | defence/defending, prosecuting/prosecution**

PREP. **~ for** *the barrister for the ferry company* > Note at PROFESSIONAL(for verbs)

base *noun*

1 **lowest part**

ADJ. **firm, solid, strong**

VERB + BASE **have** *The statue has a solid concrete base.*

2 **original idea/situation**

ADJ. **firm, secure, solid, sound, strong | economic, ideological** *His arguments have a sound economic base.*

VERB + BASE **have | establish, give sb, provide (sb with)** *These policies give us a solid base for winning the next election.* **| use sth as**

PREP. **~ for** *He used the notes as a base for his lecture.*

3 **of support/income/power**

ADJ. **solid, sound | broad, narrow** *These policies have a broad base of support.* **| power** *a politician with a rural power base* **| commercial, economic, financial, industrial, manufacturing, tax** *The country has a sound commercial base.* **| client, customer**

VERB + BASE **have | develop, expand, improve, increase** *The company is trying to expand its customer base.*

BASE + VERB **grow | shrink**

4 **main place**

ADJ. **excellent, ideal, perfect**

VERB + BASE **have** *The company has its base in New York.* **| establish, set up** *The company has set up its new base in the north.*

BASE + NOUN **camp**

PREP. **~ for** *an ideal base for mountain expeditions*

5 military centre

ADJ. **foreign** *Demonstrators demanded the removal of foreign bases.* **| air, air force, military, missile, NATO, naval, RAF**

VERB + BASE **have | build, establish** *The Americans established a naval base on the island in the 1960s.*

PREP. **at a/the~** *equipment kept at the base* **| on a/the ~** *people living on the air force base* **| to (the) ~** *The planes have all returned to base.*

base *verb* **PHRASAL VERBS base sth on/upon sth**

ADV. **closely, firmly | broadly, loosely** *The novels are all loosely based on the author's life.* **| largely** *Their research was based largely on anecdotal evidence.*

basement *noun*

ADJ. **dark, unlit, wndowless | bargain** *(often figurative) bargain basement prices*

BASEMENT + NOUN **apartment, bar, flat, kitchen, room, studio | door, stairs, steps, window | car park**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The canteen is down in the basement.*

bash *noun*

1 strong hit

VERB + BASH **give sb/sth | get**

PREP. **on** *She got a bash on the head.*

2 party

ADJ. **big | birthday, charity, farewell**

VERB + BASH **give, throw** *They're throwing a big bash to celebrate their anniversary.*

bash *verb*

ADV. **hard** *She bashed him so hard she broke his nose.*

PREP. **on** *Someone bashed him on the nose.* **| with** *She bashed him with her book.*

PHRASES **bash sb about/up** *He had been attacked and bashed about a bit.*

basics *noun*

VERB + BASICS **grasp, know, learn, master, pick up, understand | cover** *The book covers the basics of massage.* **| concentrate on, stick to** *It's best to stick to basics when planning such a large party.* **| get/go back to, get down to** *It's time our education system got back to basics*

PHRASES **get the basics right** *The important thing is to get the basics right.*

basis *noun*

1 **starting point**

ADJ. **firm, solid, sound**

VERB + BASIS **form, provide**

PREP. **~ for** *The proposal provides a sound basis for a book.*

PHRASES **have no basis in sth** *These allegations have no basis in fact.*

2 **principle/reason**

ADJ. **whole**

PREP. **on the ~ of** *We made our decision on the basis of the information we had.* **| ~ for** *The whole basis for your argument is false.*

3 **way sth is done/organized**

ADJ. **regular | daily, monthly, weekly, etc.** *Staff are employed on a monthly basis.* **| permanent, temporary | casual, part-time, voluntary | commercial**

PREP. **on a … ~**

basket *noun*

1 container

ADJ. **cane, straw, wicker/wickerwork, wire, woven | laundry, sewing | bread, food, fruit, shopping | waste/waste-paper | cat, dog | bicycle** *She was cycling along with her bicycle basket full of shopping.* **| picnic | flower, hanging** *hanging baskets full of summer flowers*

VERB + BASKET **make, weave | fill, load (sth into), pack (sth into), put sth in | take sth from/out of, unpack | carry, heave, pick up** *She heaved the huge basket onto the table.* **| swing | put down, set down**

BASKET + VERB **be filled with sth, be full of sth, contain sth** *a basket filled with delicious fruit*

PHRASES **in/into a/the ~** *The cat lay curled in its basket.* **| ~ of** *a basket of flowers/ fruit*

2 in basketball

VERB + BASKET **shoot | make, score, sink**

basketball *nou*n

ADJ. **college, professional**

QUANT. **game**

VERB + BASKETBALL **play | watch**

BASKETBALL + NOUN **championship, match | court | coach, player, star, team | referee, umpire** > Special page at SPORT

bass *noun*

1 **lowest part in music**

ADJ. **boomy, loud, pounding | solid** *The bass clarinet forms a solid bass for the woodwind group.* **| ground** *The church organist may improvise on a ground bass.* **| figured** (= a bass line in which the chords are represented by figures, not written out in full) *the abandonment in the late 18th century of figured bass in favour of completely written out orchestral scores*

VERB + BASS **sing** *He sings bass in our local choir.* **| turn down/up** *He always plays his stereo with the bass turned right up.*

BASS + NOUN **note, sound | line** *a pounding bass line* **| clef**

2 **lowest male singing voice**

ADJ. **deep, low**

VERB + BASS **sing** *Don has agreed to sing bass* (= sing the bass part).

BASS + NOUN **voice | part**

PREP. **in a … ~** *He answered my question in a surprisingly deep bass.*

3 **bass guitar**

ADJ. **electric | fretless**

VERB + BASS **tune (up)**

BASS + NOUN **guitar** > Special page at MUSIC

bassoon *nou*n > Special page at MUSIC

bat *noun*

1 in games

ADJ. **baseball, cricket, table tennis**

VERB + BAT **grip, hold | carry | swing**

2 small flying animal

ADJ. **fruit, pipistrelle, vampire**

BAT + VERB **flutter, fly | roost | squeak**

PHRASES **a species of bat**

bat *verb*

VERB + BAT **go in to** *Hick went in to bat after Hussain.* **| put sb in to** *India won the toss and put England in to bat.*

PREP. **for** *Smith was first to bat for Warwickshire.*

batch *noun*

1 number of people/things

ADJ. **large, small | whole** *A whole batch of original drawings will be on sale.* **| fresh, new** *He baked a fresh batch of rolls. Each summer a new batch of students tries to find work.* **| latest** *the latest batch of opinion polls*

PREP. **in the ~** *How many books are there in each batch? We deliver the goods in batches.* **| ~ of** *a batch of letters*

2 in computing

BATCH + NOUN **job** *to process a batch job* **| file, program | processing | mode** *to run in batch mode* **| queue**

bath *noun*

ADJ. **hot, warm | cold | long | quick | bubble** *lying in a hot bubble bath* **| baby, bird**

VERB + BATH **fill, run** *Could you run the bath for me?* **| have, take | lie in, soak in | need**

BATH + NOUN **tap, water** (also **bathwater**) **| mat, towel | time** *It's the children's bath time.*

PREP. **in the ~** *Please answer the phone. I'm in the bath!*

bathroom *noun*

ADJ. **steamy | large, spacious | tiny | luxurious, luxury | fitted | tiled | adjoining, en suite | communal, shared | private | downstairs, upstairs**

VERB + BATHROOM **go to, use** (= go to the toilet)

BATHROOM + NOUN **cabinet, cupboard | accessories, equipment, fittings, suite | mirror | scales** *I weigh myself on the bathroom scales every day.* **| facilities**

baton *noun*

1 **used by police/soldiers**

ADJ. **electric | wooden | police**

VERB + BATON **carry, hold | draw, use** *The police were ordered to draw their batons and disperse the crowd.*

BATON + NOUN **charge** *Five people were injured in the baton charge.*

2 **used by a conductor**

VERB + BATON **raise, wave**

PREP. **under the ~ of** *The orchestra made the recording under the baton of a young German conductor.*

3 **used in a relay race**

ADJ. **hand, pass** *Each runner passes the baton to the next.* **| take (up) | drop**

4 **used by a drum majorette**

VERB + BATON **swing, twirl**

battered *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look | become, get**

ADV. **badly, very | a bit, a little, rather, slightly | emotionally** *She felt emotionally battered.*

PHRASES **battered old** *She wore a battered old robe.*

battery *noun*

1 for electricity

ADJ. **dead, flat** *The car won't start?the battery's flat.* | **rechargeable** | **car, torch** | **alkaline, lithium**

VERB + BATTERY **charge, recharge** | **change, replace** | **connect** *Is the battery connected correctly?* | **be powered by, run on, use, work on** *The machine can also run on batteries.*

BATTERY + VERB **give out, go dead, run down, run out** *After about six hours, the battery will run down.*

BATTERY + NOUN **power** | **life** *With our product you get longer battery life.* | **failure** | **charger**

PHRASES **battery-operated, battery-powered** *a small battery-powered car*

2 large group of similar things

ADJ. **full, whole**

PREP. **~ of** *I had to answer a whole battery of questions.*

PHRASES **a battery of tests**

battle *noun*

1 **between armies**

ADJ. **bloody, fierce | pitched** *The two armies fought a pitched battle on the plain.* **| decisive | great, important, major | famous, historic | land, naval, sea**

VERB + BATTLE **fight (in) | win | lose | do, give, go into, join** *Charles V refused to give battle. The two armies joined battle.* **| send sb into** *Many young men were sent into battle without proper training.*

BATTLE + VERB **begin, take place | rage | continue | be over, end**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *Napoleon was defeated at the Battle of Waterloo.* **| in (a/the) ~** *He died in battle.*

2 **violent fight between two groups**

ADJ. **fierce | pitched | running | gun**

VERB + BATTLE **fight**

PREP. **~ against** *Police fought a pitched battle against demonstrators.* **| ~ between** *a gun battle between police and drug smugglers* **| ~ with** *Scores of people have been hurt in running battles with police.*

3 **struggle**

ADJ. **bitter, fierce | real** *There's now a real battle at the top of the First Division.* **| constant, continuing, long, long-running, ongoing, prolonged | losing, uphill** *We seem to be fighting a losing battle.* **| successful | court, legal**

VERB + BATTLE **be engaged in, do, fight** *Are you prepared to do battle with your insurance company over the claim?* **| face | win | lose**

BATTLE + VERB **begin | be over, end**

PREP. **~ against** *his long battle against cancer* **| ~ between** *a fierce battle between* *developers and the local community* **| ~ for** *the battle for human rights* **| ~ over** *The government now faces a new battle over tax increases.* **| ~ with** *They are engaged in a long-running legal battle with their neighbours.*

PHRASES **a battle of ideas/words, a battle of wills/wits, a battle royal** (= a major battle in which all available forces take part), **fight your own battles** *My parents believed in leaving me to fight my own battles.*

battle *verb*

ADV. **hard | bravely** *The child battled bravely for her life.* **| in vain** *Doctors battled in vain to save his life.* **| constantly | away** *We'll keep battling away and hope that the goals start to come.*

PREP. **against** *Rescuers battled against torrential rain and high winds.* **| for** *battling for control of the party* **| over** *Residents are battling over plans for a new supermarket.* **| through** *We battled through the snowstorm.* **| with** *Riot police battled with 4,000 students. battling with leukaemia*

PHRASES **battle it out** *Competitors battled it out against the clock.* **| battle your way** *He battled his way to the bar.*

bay *noun*

1 **part of a coast**

ADJ. **sheltered | wide | sandy**

VERB + BAY **overlook** *holiday flats overlooking the bay*

PREP. **across the ~** *Lights twinkled across the bay.*

2 **area used for a particular purpose**

ADJ. **docking, landing, loading**

bayonet *noun*

ADJ. **fixed** *troops with fixed bayonets*

VERB + BAYONET **fix | thrust** *A bayonet had been thrust through his belly.*

beach *noun*

ADJ. **beautiful, fine, lovely, magnificent, palm-fringed, sun-drenched | golden, sandy, white | pebble, shingle | bathing, pleasure | deserted, empty, private, secluded**

BEACH + VERB **stretch** *a beautiful golden beach stretching for miles*

PREP. **along a/the ~** *He walked along the beach.* **| at a/the ~** *They met at the beach.* **| on a/the ~** *She lay on the beach and read her book.*

bead *noun*

1 **small piece of glass, wood, etc.**

ADJ. **amber, glass, wooden, etc. | prayer, rosary**

QUANT. **strand, string** *a string of wooden beads*

VERB + BEAD **wear | fasten, put on | take off, undo, unfasten | thread** *She threaded the beads carefully.*

BEAD + VERB **hang** *A strand of coral beads hung round her neck.*

BEAD + NOUN **curtain**

2 **small drop of liquid**

PHRASES **a bead of moisture/perspiration/sweat**

beak *noun*

ADJ. **short, small | large, long | curved, hooked, pointed, sharp | powerful | black, yellow**

VERB + BEAK **open | close**

beaker *noun*

ADJ. **glass, plastic** *a glass beaker containing copper sulphate solution She drank from a plastic beaker.*

VERB + BEAKER **fill, refill | drain, empty | lift, pick up, raise | place, put down, replace, set down | drink from/out of**

BEAKER + VERB **contain sth**

beam *noun*

1 **ray of light**

ADJ. **bright, intense, piercing, powerful | narrow, thin | electron, laser, searchlight, torch**

VERB + BEAM **direct, point, send, shine | play** *He played the beam of his torch over the wall of the cave.* **| catch sb/sth in** *He was suddenly caught in the full beam of a searchlight.*

BEAM + VERB **shine | illuminate sth, light sth up**

PREP. **~ from** *the beam from the lighthouse* **| ~ of** *A beam of sunlight shone in through the window.*

PHRASES **on full beam** *car headlights on full beam*

2 **long piece of wood/metal**

ADJ. **timber, wooden | oak | iron, metal, steel | old, original** *a cottage with original beams and a thatched roof* **| exposed** *a cosy pub with exposed oak beams* **| horizontal, vertical**

BEAM + VERB **support sth**

beam *verb*

ADV. **broadly** *He beamed broadly at them, clearly very pleased to see them.* **| positively** *She positively beamed with satisfaction.* **| cheerfully, happily, proudly**

PREP. **at** *She beamed happily at Maxim.* **| with** *His face beamed with pleasure.*

bean *noun*

1 **vegetable**

ADJ. **black-eyed, broad, butter, chilli, French, green, haricot, kidney, runner, soya, string | canned, dried, refried | baked** *baked beans on toast*

VERB + BEAN **eat, have | plant | grow** *She grows her own broad beans.* **| cook | drain, strain | soak** *If using dried beans, soak them overnight first.*

BEAN + NOUN **curd | sprout** > Special page at FOOD

2 **seed of other plants**

ADJ. **cocoa, coffee**

VERB + BEAN **roast | grind**

bear *verb*

1 **accept/deal with sth**

VERB + BEAR **be able/unable to, can/could (hardly/scarcely)** *Don't leave me alone. I wouldn't be able to bear it. How can you bear this awful noise? We could hardly bear to be outdoors in the blinding sunlight.*

2 **be responsible for sth**

VERB + BEAR **have to, must** *Do parents have to bear the whole cost of tuition fees? You must bear at least some responsibility for what has happened.* **PHRASAL VERBS bear on/upon sb/sth**

ADV. **heavily** *The burden of the tax bore most heavily on the poor.*

bearable *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | make sth** *The camaraderie among fellow employees made the tedious work just bearable.* **| find sth** *He found the dullness of his work scarcely bearable.*

ADV. **almost | hardly, scarcely | just**

PREP. **for** *The money made life more bearable for her.*

beard *noun*

ADJ. **bristling, bushy, full, shaggy | neat, neatly-clipped | patchy, straggly, wispy | goatee | pointed | ginger/gingery, greying, reddish, white, etc. | fake, false**

VERB + BEARD **grow | have, sport, wear** *He sported a neat goatee beard.* **| clip, cut, trim | shave (off) | pull (at), stroke, tug (at)** *Jim stroked his beard reflectively.*

BEARD + VERB **grow** *My beard's grown a lot.* **| be streaked with sth** *His beard is streaked with grey.*

BEARD + NOUN **growth, stubble** *He had two days' beard growth across his jowls and chin.*

PREP. **with a/the ~** *She's scared of men with beards.*

PHRASES **a three-day/seven-day, etc. growth of beard, a three-day-old, etc. beard**

bearing *noun*

1 **way in which sth is related**

ADJ. **direct, important, significant** *The rise in interest rates had a direct bearing on the company's profits.*

VERB + BEARING **have**

PREP. **~ on**

2 **direction/position**

ADJ. **compass**

VERB + BEARING **check** *He checked his bearings on the map in the car.* **| find, get** *Everything was in darkness and it was difficult to get my bearings.* **| keep** *To keep your bearings in a desert sandstorm is impossible.* **| lose** *She lost her bearings in the thick forest.*

PHRASES **take a (compass) bearing on sth** *Take a compass bearing on that mountain.*

beast *noun*

1 **animal**

ADJ. **ferocious, savage, snarling, wild** *Savage beasts once roamed these forests.* **| exotic, fabled, fantastic, legendary, mythical, rare, strange** *paintings of mythical beasts* **| great, huge, magnificent, mighty**

PHRASES **a beast of burden, a beast of prey**

2 **unpleasant/cruel person**

ADJ. **filthy** *You filthy beast!* **| sex** *Local people live in fear of this unknown sex beast.*

PHRASES **the beast in sb** (= the violent or sexual part of sb's character) *The beast in her wanted to destroy his house.* **| bring out the beast in sb** *Somehow she brought out the beast in him.*

beat *noun*

1 **rhythm**

ADJ. **regular, rhythmic, steady | pounding**

VERB + BEAT **clap to, dance to, sway to** *They danced to the rhythmic beat of the music.*

PHRASES **two, three, four, etc. beats to the bar** *The piece has four beats to the bar.* **| sb's heart misses/skips a beat** (= sb feels very nervous) *As I opened the letter, my heart missed a beat.*

2 **of a police officer**

VERB + BEAT **pound, walk** *We have two officers walking the beat after midnight.*

PREP. **on the ~** *officers on the beat*

beat *verb*

1 in a game

ADV. **comfortably, comprehensively, convincingly, easily, hands down, soundly** *He beat her hands down.* | **narrowly** *He was narrowly beaten by his opponent.*

PREP. **at** *She beat him at chess.* | **by** *beating her by just three points*

PHRASES **beat sb into second, third, etc. place** *He was beaten into second place by the American.*

2 hit sb

ADV. **badly, brutally, savagely, severely, violently**

PREP. **with** *She was beaten with a metal bar.*

PHRASES **beat sb about/over the head** *He had been beaten about the head with a rock.* | **beat sb to death, beat sb unconscious**

4 of heart/wings

ADV. **fast, frantically, painfully, rapidly, wildly** *I could feel my heart beating wildly.*

5 mix

ADV. **thoroughly, well** *Beat the mixture well, until it is light and creamy.* | **lightly** *Add three eggs, lightly beaten.* **PHRASAL VERBS beat down**

ADV. **mercilessly, relentlessly**

PREP. **on/upon** *The African sun beat relentlessly down on his aching head.*

beating *noun*

ADJ. **brutal, savage, severe, terrible, violent**

VERB + BEATING **get, receive, suffer, take** *The team took a terrible beating.* **| give sb/sth** *They caught him and gave him a violent beating.*

beautiful *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, grow | make sb/sth** *We did all we could to make the room beautiful.* **| find sb/sth** *He found her exquisitely beautiful.*

ADV. **exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, outstandingly, really, remarkably, supremely, truly, very | absolutely, perfectly, quite, utterly | just, simply** *(informal) 'They're just beautiful,' breathed Jo, when she saw the earrings.* **| almost** *I remember her as pretty, almost beautiful.* **| rather | astonishingly, breathtakingly, dazzlingly, incredibly, staggeringly, startlingly, strikingly, stunningly, unbelievably, wonderfully | uniquely | exquisitely | serenely | classically** *Her features were classically beautiful, with perfectly structured high cheekbones.* **| coldly** *The designs were pure, austere and coldly beautiful.* **| achingly, eerily, hauntingly, painfully** *a hauntingly beautiful melody*

beauty *noun*

1 quality of being beautiful

ADJ. **breathtaking, extraordinary, great, outstanding, sheer** *an area of breathtaking beauty* **| classical** *the classical beauty of her face* **| natural | physical | scenic**

BEAUTY + VERB **last | fade** *Her beauty faded as she got older.*

BEAUTY + NOUN **competition, contest | queen | parlour, salon | treatment | spot**

PHRASES **beauty is in the eye of the beholder, beauty is only skin-deep**

2 beautiful person or thing

ADJ. **great** *She was known as a great beauty in her time.* **| absolute, real** *My new car's a real beauty!* **| little** *Isn't she a little beauty?*

bed *noun*

1 **piece of furniture for sleeping on**

ADJ. **double, king-size, single, twin | bunk, camp, feather, folding, four-poster, hospital, sofa | warm | unmade** *a messy room, with an unmade bed and clothes on the floor* | **marriage**

VERB + BED **do** *(informal)*, **make, make up | strip** *Please strip the beds and put the sheets in the washing machine.* | **climb into, crawl into, get into, go to, tumble into** *She crawled into bed exhausted.* | **climb out of, get out of, leap out of | lie (down) on, lie in, sit on** *He lay in bed, reading his book. Elizabeth was sitting on her bed writing a letter.* | **put sb to, tuck sb up in** *It's your turn to put the children to bed.* | **wet** *Don't punish a child who wets the bed.*

BED + NOUN **clothes, linen**

PREP. **in ~** *I like to be in bed before 11 o'clock.* | **out of ~** *Are you out of bed yet?*

PHRASES **bed and breakfast, the edge/side of the bed, the foot/head of the bed, get sb into bed** (= have sex with sb), **go to bed with sb** (= have sex with sb), **take to your bed** (= go to bed because you are ill), **time for bed** *Come on, children, it's time for bed.*

2 **piece of ground for growing flowers, vegetables, etc.**

ADJ. **flower, rose, strawberry | ornamental | raised**

PREP. **~ of** *ornamental beds of roses*

bedroom *noun*

ADJ. **attractive, elegant, pleasant, pretty | comfortable, cosy | big, enormous, large, spacious | cell-like, little, modest, small, tiny | double, single, twin | en suite | main, master, principal | nursery | study | attic, back, downstairs, first-floor, front, upstairs | guest, spare | hotel**

VERB + BEDROOM **share** *I used to share a bedroom with my brother.* **| convert** *They converted the spare bedroom into an office.* **| decorate, redecorate**

BEDROOM + NOUN **furniture, suite | window | slippers | scene** *The actress refused to appear naked in the bedroom scenes.*

PREP. **around a/the ~** *There were dirty clothes strewn around the bedroom.* **| in a/the ~**

PHRASES **a 3-bedroom, etc. house** *The larger houses are four-bedroom houses.*

bedside *noun*

VERB + BEDSIDE **be called to, be summoned to** *The doctor was summoned to his bedside.* **| stay at/by | leave** *His wife never left his bedside.*

BEDSIDE + NOUN **cabinet, lamp, light, table**

PREP. **at sb's/the ~, by sb's/the ~** *I like to keep a glass of water by my bedside.*

bedtime *noun*

ADJ. **normal, usual**

BEDTIME + NOUN **reading, story | drink**

PREP. **at ~, before sb's ~, past sb's ~** *It's well past my normal bedtime.*

bee *noun*

ADJ. **bumble** (also **bumblebee**), **honey, killer | queen, worker | angry** *He was stung by thousands of angry bees.*

QUANT. **swarm**

BEE + VERB **buzz, hum** *A bee buzzed in my ear.* **| sting (sb) | fly, swarm** *The bees swarmed round the hive.*

BEE + NOUN **hive** (also **beehive**) **| sting | keeper** (also **bee-keeper**)

beef *noun*

ADJ. **fresh | lean | fatty | tender | tough | prime | organic | medium, rare, well done** *'How would you like your beef?' 'Rare, please.'* **| roast | corned, minced, salted** *a kilo of very lean minced beef*

QUANT. **bit, piece, slice | fillet, joint, rib, side**

VERB + BEEF **eat | boil, braise, cook, fry, roast, stew | carve, cut** *carving a joint of beef*

BEEF + NOUN **stew, stock | cattle | farmer | industry, production**

beer *noun*

ADJ. **excellent, good, great, quality | strong | alcohol-free, light, low-alcohol, no-alcohol | cold, ice-cold | warm | foaming** *a glass of foaming ice-cold beer* **| black, blonde, dark | bottled, cask, draught, keg | flat** (= that the gas has gone out of) **| stale** *The pub smelled of stale beer.* **| home-brewed | designer** *The shop specializes in designer beers.*

QUANT. **litre, pint** *I ordered half a pint of beer with my sandwich.* **| barrel, bottle, can, glass, keg, tankard | crate**

VERB + BEER **drink** *Do you drink beer?* **| have** *Will you have a beer?* **| down** *He downed his beer in one go.* **| gulp (at), sip (at), swig, take a gulp/sip/swig of | draw, pour (sb)** *This beer should be drawn slowly. He poured us all a beer.* **| order** *I saw him at the bar ordering a beer.* **| go for** *I'm going for a beer with Carl tonight.* **| brew | chill**

BEER + VERB **chill** *Put the beer in the fridge to chill.* **| foam | go flat | flow** *(figurative) The beer flowed freely after the match.* **| slop** *He slammed his glass down and the beer slopped over the sides.*

BEER + NOUN **drinker, lover | maker | barrel, bottle, can, crate, glass, keg, mug, tankard | mat | festival | consumption, production, sales | cellar, garden** *The pub has a beer garden round the back.* **| belly** *He's only twenty but he's already got a beer belly* (= a fat stomach from drinking too much beer). **| money** *Playing non-league football keeps him in beer money* (= earns him enough money to buy beer, but he has to do another job to earn a living).

beg *verb*

1 ask sb for food, money, etc.

VERB + BEG **be forced to, have to**

PREP. **for** *begging for food* **|** **from** *He had to beg food from passers-by.*

2 ask for sth with great emotion

ADV. **almost, practically** *In the end they almost begged him to take the job.* **|** **humbly** *We humbly beg Your Majesty to show mercy.* **|** **silently** *Don't leave me, he begged her silently.*

VERB + BEG **be forced to, have to**

PREP. **for** *We went to him to beg for forgiveness.* **|** **of** *(formal) Do not do that, I beg of you.*

begin *verb*

ADV. **(all over) again** *Once it has finished, the video automatically begins again. We had to begin all over again.*

VERB + BEGIN **be due to, be expected to, be scheduled to** *The entertainment was due to begin at 8.30.* **| be ready to | be about to, be going to** *A new life was about to begin for him.*

PREP. **by** *Let's begin by writing down a few ideas.* **| with** *We will begin with a brief discussion of the problems. Can you think of a word beginning with V?*

PHRASES **begin at the beginning** *Begin your story at the beginning, and carry on to the end.*

beginner *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, complete, real**

beginning *noun*

ADJ. **new** *She spoke of a new beginning for the nation.*

VERB + BEGINNING **herald, mark** *This invention marked the beginning of the modern age.* **| see** *2001 saw the beginning of a period of rapid growth.*

PREP. **at the ~ (of sth)** *I'm paid at the beginning of each month.* **| from the ~** *Tell me the whole story, right from the beginning.* **| in the ~** *In the beginning I found the course very difficult.*

PHRASES **the beginning of the end** *That holiday together was the beginning of the end of our friendship.* **| early/first beginnings** *The society had its early beginnings in discussion groups.* **| from beginning to end** *The play was rubbish from beginning to end.* **| from humble/modest/small beginnings** *From these small beginnings it grew into the vast company we know today.* **| the very beginning** *I disliked her from the very beginning.*

behave *verb*

ADV. **impeccably, perfectly, well | aggressively, badly, disgracefully, outrageously** *Children who behave badly are rejecting adult values.* **| appropriately, correctly, properly, responsibly** *The enquiry investigated whether officers had behaved correctly.* **| improperly, irresponsibly | rationally, reasonably | stupidly, unreasonably | normally | oddly, out of character, strangely, suspiciously | accordingly** *Children, if they are used to being treated with respect, will behave accordingly.* **| naturally** *the freedom to behave naturally*

PREP. **as if/though** *He behaved as if nothing out of the ordinary was happening.* **| like** *Stop behaving like a three-year-old!* **| towards** *He had always behaved in a friendly manner towards us.*

behaviour *noun*

ADJ. **exemplary, good** *He had his jail term cut for good behaviour.* **| acceptable | antisocial, bad, unacceptable, undesirable | deviant, problem** *Teachers can't always respond effectively to problem behaviour.* **| normal | strange | aggressive, criminal, disruptive, violent | animal, human, sexual, social**

VERB + BEHAVIOUR **control, influence** *Parents can influence the behaviour of their children.* **| alter, change, modify | display, exhibit, show** *Animals in zoos often display disturbed behaviour.*

BEHAVIOUR + NOUN **pattern**

PREP. **~ towards** *his behaviour towards his parents*

PHRASES **behaviour and attitudes, be on your best behaviour** (= to behave very well in order to impress sb), **a code of behaviour, a pattern of behaviour, standards of behaviour** *a new study looking at the behaviour and attitudes of young men*

belief *noun*

ADJ. absolute, deep-seated, deeply held, fervent, firm, passionate, profound, strong, strongly held, unshakeable | genuine, honest, sincere *She was strict with her children in the genuine belief that it was the right thing to do.* **| entrenched, fanatical | common, commonly held, general, popular, widely held, widespread | growing | long-held, long-standing |** *belief how things could have got this bad.*

BELIEF + VERB persist *Belief in the magical properties of this herb persisted down the centuries.*

BELIEF + NOUN system

PREP. beyond ~ (= too great, difficult, etc. to be believed) *Dissatisfaction with the government has grown beyond belief. icy air that was cold beyond belief* **| in the ~ that** *She did it in the belief that it would* **basic, central, core, fundamental** *the basic beliefs of Christianityhelp her career.* **| ~ about** *beliefs* **| personal, private** *I think the rights and wrongs of eating meat are a matter of personal belief.* **| rational, reasonable | irrational, superstitious | instinctive | naive | strange | conflicting, contradictory | erroneous, false, misguided, mistaken** *I took the job in the mistaken belief that I would be able to stay in London.* **| ancient, traditional** *The people still follow their traditional beliefs.* **| orthodox | cultural, moral, political, religious, spiritual** *They were persecuted for their religious beliefs.* **| Catholic, Christian, pagan, etc.**

QUANT. set, system *Each religion has its set of beliefs.*

VERB + BELIEF have, hold *I have very firm beliefs about moral issues.* **| share** *He shared his father's belief that people should work hard for their living.* **| adhere to, cling to, follow, hold on to, stick to** *She clung to the belief that he would come back to her. The Labour Party must stick to its beliefs.* **| abandon, give up, renounce | lose** *She has lost her belief in God.* **| affirm, assert, declare, express, state** *Here the apostle Peter affirms his belief that the scriptures are 'inspired'.* **| emphasize, stress | encourage, foster, fuel** *The exam results encouraged the belief that he was a good teacher.* **| confirm, reinforce, strengthen, support** *This latest evidence strengthens our belief that the government is doing the right thing.* **| question, shake, shatter, undermine, weaken** *The child's death shook her belief in God.* **| respect** *You must respect other people's beliefs.* **| beggar, defy** (= to be impossible to believe) *It beggars about the origin of the universe* **| ~ among** *There is a belief among young people that education is a waste of time.* **| ~ in** *a belief in God*

PHRASES **contrary to popular belief** (= in spite of what people think) *Contrary to popular belief, rainforests are not jungles through which you have to slash a path.*

believable *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound | find sth**

ADV. **very** *All the characters were very believable.* **| hardly** *I find her story hardly believable.*

believe *verb*

ADV. **firmly, really, seriously** (only used with negatives), **sincerely** *He firmly believed that he was right. No one seriously believes that this war will happen.* **| mistakenly**

VERB + BELIEVE **can't/cannot, could not** *I couldn't believe what I was hearing.* **| be hard to** *It's hard to believe that this campaign has been going on for ten years.* **| give sb to** *The boss gave me to believe that we would all get a pay rise.* **| have reason to** *We have reason to believe that the escaped prisoner may be hiding in this house.* **| be inclined to** *I'm inclined to believe you.* **| lead sb to** *The advertisement led us to believe that all prices had been cut.*

PHRASES **can/could hardly/scarcely believe sth, not believe a word of sth** *I didn't believe a word of what he said.*

believer *noun*

1 **sb who has religious faith**

ADJ. **devout, genuine, true | religious**

2 **sb who believes that sth is good**

ADJ. **fervent, firm, great, passionate, staunch, strong**

PREP. **~ in** *I'm a firm believer in the benefits of exercise.*

bell *noun*

1 **hollow metal object that rings**

ADJ. **church, temple | wedding** *(often figurative) The two of them went everywhere together and their friends could already hear wedding bells* (= were sure they would get married). **| cow | distant**

VERB + BELL **ring | hear**

BELL + VERB **chime, clang, jangle, peal, ring (out), sound, tinkle, toll** *The bells on the harness tinkled softly. The church bells tolled for Evensong.*

BELL + NOUN **tower | pull, rope**

PHRASES **a chime of bells** *the faint chime of bells* **| a peal of bells** *She heard a peal of church bells.* **| a sound of bells** *The sound of bells echoed across the valley.*

2 **other object that rings**

ADJ. **bicycle, door** (also **doorbell**) **| dinner, school | electric | alarm, warning** *(often figurative) Alarm bells were ringing inside Stuart's head.*

VERB + BELL **press, ring, sound | answer** *She hurried to answer the doorbell.*

BELL + VERB **go, ring, sound** *The school bell goes at three every afternoon.*

BELL + NOUN **push**

bellow *noun*

ADJ. **great, loud | angry**

VERB + BELLOW **give, let out** *She gave a great bellow of laughter.* **| hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *He woke with a bellow of rage.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **a bellow of laughter, a bellow of rage** > Note at SOUND

belly *noun*

ADJ. **empty, full | flat | fat, pot** *Since he turned 30 he's started to develop a pot belly.* **| distended, swollen | beer** (= a fat stomach from drinking too much beer)

BELLY + VERB **bulge | hang** *He's so fat, his belly hangs over his trousers.* **| swell**

PREP. **in your ~** *She felt the child in her belly kick.*

belongings *noun*

ADJ. **personal**

VERB + BELONGINGS **collect/gather (together/up), pack (up)** *She collected up her personal belongings and left.* **| go through, look through, rifle through, search** *In her absence, someone had gone through her belongings.* **| sort through** *He was trying to sort through his belongings and bring them to some sort of order.*

beloved *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **dearly, much** *the death of his much beloved wife*

PREP. **by** *an area beloved by artists* **|** **of** *She ran one of the little tea rooms so beloved of Londoners at the turn of the century.*

belt *noun*

1 **narrow piece of leather, etc. worn round the waist**

ADJ. **broad, wide | narrow | thick | studded | cartridge, money, sword | trouser**

VERB + BELT **buckle, do up, fasten | unbuckle, undo, unfasten | tighten | loosen**

BELT + NOUN **buckle, loop** > Special page at CLOTHES

2 **in a machine**

ADJ. **conveyor, drive, fan**

3 **area of land**

ADJ. **wide | narrow, thin | coastal, mountain | corn, cotton, wheat | green, industrial** *New roads are cutting into the green belt* (= open land round a city where building is strictly controlled). **| commuter, stockbroker**

PREP. **~ of** *a narrow belt of trees*

bemused *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become**

ADV. **totally** *Sarah looked totally bemused.* **| a bit, faintly, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat** *I was beginning to feel slightly bemused.*

PREP. **by** *Connie was rather bemused by all the attention she was getting.*

bench *noun*

1 **long seat**

ADJ. **long | narrow | hard | padded | wooden | garden, park | replacements', subs', substitutes'** *(sport) They have several top players on the subs' bench.*

VERB + BENCH **sit (down) on**

BENCH + NOUN **seat**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *He often sleeps on park benches.*

2 **in Parliament**

ADJ. **government, Opposition | Conservative, Labour, etc. | back, front** (Government ministers and the most important members of the Opposition sit on the **front benches**. **Back-bench** MPs have no official position besides that of MP.)

VERB + BENCH **be on, sit on**

PREP. **from the … ~s** *There were cheers from the Labour benches.* **| on the … ~s** *Some MPs on the government back benches are starting to question the government's handling of the war.*

3 **long narrow table that people work at**

ADJ. **work** (also **workbench**) **| carpenter's, laboratory**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *He was working at his bench.*

bend *noun*

ADJ. **gentle, slight, wide | hairpin, sharp, tight** *Some of the hairpin bends had Ruth clinging to her seat.* **| dangerous | blind** *mountain roads with steep gradients and blind bends* **| left-hand, right-hand | final** (= in a race) *He had a winning lead off the final bend.*

QUANT. **series** *a series of dangerous bends*

VERB + BEND **come round, negotiate, round, take, turn** *He slowed down to negotiate the bend.*

PREP. **around/round a/the ~** *The car vanished round a bend.* **| into a/the ~** *I inched the car into the bend.* **| off a/the ~** *He came off the bend in the lead.* **| on a/the ~** *Slow down on the tight bends.* **| ~ in** *a wide bend in the river*

bend *verb*

ADV. **slightly | quickly, swiftly | backwards, forwards | down, over** *I bent down and tied my shoelace.* **| close, nearer** *Sarah bent close to him.* **| double** *I had to bend double to get under the table.*

PREP. **at** *Avoid bending at the waist when lifting heavy objects.* **| towards** *He came closer and bent towards her.*

benefactor *noun*

ADJ. **generous, kind | wealthy | great | anonymous, mysterious, unknown | private | public** *He was a great public benefactor and gave land for building the sea wall.*

BENEFACTOR + VERB **donate sth, give sth** *A private benefactor donated £20,000.*

PREP. **~ to** *She was a generous benefactor to the library.*

beneficial *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove** *Some alternative treatments may prove highly beneficial.* **| consider sth**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | entirely, wholly | clearly | mutually** *The arrangement was mutually beneficial.* **| medically, socially**

PREP. **for** *I think it would be beneficial for each committee member to have a copy of the report.* **| to** *Exercise is extremely beneficial to health.*

benefit *noun*

1 **advantage**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, major, real, substantial** *This could bring real benefits for teachers.* **| maximum | additional** *The scheme has many additional benefits.* **| fringe** (= extra things that an employer gives as well as wages) *The fringe benefits include free health insurance.* **| mutual** *The different environmental groups could work together to their mutual benefit.* **| potential | long-term, short-term | economic, environmental, financial, health, social | tax**

VERB + BENEFIT **enjoy, have** *The motor industry will be one of the first to enjoy the benefits of the recovery. children who have the benefit of a stable home background* **| derive, gain, get, obtain, reap, receive** *The company derived substantial benefit from the deal. I reaped the benefits of all my early training.* **| bring, offer, provide** *The new factory will bring considerable benefits to the area. This deal will offer major benefits to industrialists and investors.*

BENEFIT + VERB **accrue** *the benefits that accrue from a good education*

PREP. **for sb's ~** *We shall do this for the benefit of the patients.* **| of ~ to** *This arrangement will be of great benefit to you both.* **| to sb's ~** *It will be to everyone's benefit.* **| with/without the ~ of** *managing to work without the benefit of modern technology* **| ~ for** *the benefits for companies* **| ~ from** *the benefits from tourism* **| ~ of** *the benefit of a steady income* **| ~ to** *What are the benefits to investors?*

2 **money**

ADJ. **welfare | state | means-tested, universal** *One way to cut spending is to move from universal benefits?those paid to everyone regardless of need?to means-tested ones.* **| cash | child, housing, sickness, social security, unemployment**

QUANT. **amount, level**

VERB + BENEFIT **be eligible for, be entitled to, qualify for | claim** *You may be able to claim housing benefit.* **| draw, get, receive** *He receives unemployment benefit.* **| be dependent on | lose** *She is worried that if she takes on a job she will lose her benefits.* **| cut** *The government has cut unemployment benefit.* **| increase**

BENEFIT + VERB **be paid** *Benefit is paid monthly.*

BENEFIT + NOUN **benefits agency | office | payment | system**

PREP. **on ~** *He's on social security benefit.*

benefit *verb*

ADV. **considerably, enormously, greatly, substantially | fully | clearly, obviously, undoubtedly** *The new law clearly benefits those earning the most money.* **| equally | disproportionately | directly** *We benefited directly from the reorganization.* **| indirectly | financially** *We both benefited financially from the arrangement.*

PREP. **from**

benign *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem**

ADV. **fairly, rather, relatively** *The effects of this chemical are fairly benign.* **|** **environmentally** *We are looking for an environmentally benign alternative to bleach.*

bent *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become, get** *The lamp post got bent in the crash.*

ADV. **slightly** *He stood with knees slightly bent.*

PHRASES **bent double** *The man shuffled back a few paces, bent almost double.*

bent *noun*

ADJ. **natural | artistic, intellectual, literary, philosophical, scientific**

VERB + BENT **have** *She has an artistic bent.* **| show** *He showed a literary bent from a young age.*

PREP. **with ~** *a child with a scientific bent* **| ~ for** *a natural bent for languages*

bequest *noun*

ADJ. **generous, large, substantial** *The library has received a generous bequest from a local businessman.* **| small | charitable**

VERB + BEQUEST **leave (sb), make (sb)** *In his will he made a substantial bequest to his wife.* **| receive**

PREP. **by ~** *The picture was acquired by bequest in 1921.* **| ~ from** *a bequest from the late Jack Dawkins* **| ~ to**

bereaved *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADJ. **newly, recently** *a recently bereaved family*

bereavement *noun*

ADJ. **recent | family, personal**

VERB + BEREAVEMENT **suffer** *He has suffered a bereavement.* **| come to terms with, cope with, get over**

BEREAVEMENT + NOUN **counselling, counsellor**

PHRASES **the pain/shock of bereavement**

berry *noun*

ADJ. **ripe | wild | poisonous | holly, juniper, etc.**

VERB + BERRY **have, produce** *Does this bush have berries?* **| pick** *We picked a few of the berries.* **| eat**

BERRY + VERB **ripen | drop off** > Special page at FRUIT

berth *noun*

ADJ. **empty | upper | lower**

VERB + BERTH **have | book, get, take** *I've managed to get berths on the overnight ferry.*

PHRASES **a two-berth, three berth, etc. cabin**

best *adj.*

VERBS **be | consider sth, deem sth, judge sth, think sth** *Owen judged it best to make no reply.*

ADV. **very** *We aim to give our guests the very best attention.* **| by far, easily** *This is by far the best restaurant in the town.*

PREP. **at** *Who in the class is best at maths?* **| for** *I'm only trying to do what's best for you.*

bet *noun*

ADJ. **good, safe, sure | fair | outside** (= with a very small chance of winning)

VERB + BET **have, make, place, put** *I'm going to place a bet on that white horse.* **| accept, take** *We are now taking bets on the election result.* **| win | lose**

PREP. **~ on** *I had a bet on the three o'clock race.* **| ~ with** *I made a bet with a friend.*

PHRASES **do sth for a bet, my bet is/it is my bet (that) …** *My bet is that Liverpool will win.*

betrayal *noun*

ADJ. **personal | final, ultimate** *His defection to the other side was the ultimate betrayal.*

VERB + BETRAYAL **regard sth as, see sth as, view sth as** *The business community regarded the measures as a betrayal of election promises.*

PREP. **~ of** *a betrayal of his friends The decisions were a betrayal of everything my father stood for.*

PHRASES **an act of betrayal, a betrayal of (sb's) trust, a feeling/sense of betrayal**

better *adj.*

1 **comparative of ‘good’**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | get** *Cars are getting better all the time.* **| make sth** *We must make our inner cities better to live and work in.* **| consider sth, deem sth, judge sth, think sth** *I thought it better to tackle him outside of business hours.*

ADV. **a damned/darned sight, even, far, a lot, markedly, (very) much, still, substantially, ten/a hundred/a thousand times** *His latest book is a darned sight better than the one before.* **| a bit, a good/great deal, a little, marginally, slightly**

PHRASES **no better** *Charles VII was a bad king, and Charles VIII was no better.* **| nothing better than** *There's nothing better than a nice juicy peach!*

2 **recovered from an illness**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | get** *I hope you get better soon.* **| get sb, make sb** *Don't worry. The doctor will soon make you better.* **| kiss sth** *Did you hurt yourself? Poor thing?come here and let me kiss it better.*

ADV. **a lot, (very) much | a bit, a good/great deal, a little, slightly**

bewildered *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become | leave sb** *She packed her bags and left?leaving Matthew bewildered and confused.*

ADV. **very | completely, quite, thoroughly, totally, utterly | a little, rather, slightly, somewhat**

PREP. **at** *He was rather bewildered at seeing her there.* **| by** *She was totally bewildered by his message.*

bewildering *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | find sth** *I found the experience quite bewildering.*

ADV. **very** *It was all very bewildering.* **| completely, quite, totally** *a totally bewildering array of different wines* **| a bit, rather**

bias *noun*

ADJ. **clear, definite, marked, obvious, strong | left-wing, right-wing | cultural, political**

VERB + BIAS **have** *The newspaper has a clear bias towards the Conservative Party.* **| display, show | avoid, eliminate, reduce | correct** *We have now tried to correct the bias in our original report.* **| be free from** *The newspaper was free from political bias.*

BIAS + VERB **creep in, exist** *Bias often creeps in through the wording of questions.*

PREP. **with/without ~** *All material must be selected and presented without bias.* **| with a ~** *a newspaper with a strong left-wing bias* **| ~ against** *a bias against women* **| ~ in favour of/towards** *a bias in favour of small firms*

biased *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, heavily, hopelessly, strongly, very | a little, slightly | naturally | inherently | ideologically, politically | racially**

PREP. **against** *Fate was strongly biased against him.* **| in favour of** *The methods they employed were heavily biased in the gentry's favour.* **| towards** *Managers are naturally biased towards projects showing a quick return.*

Bible *noun*

ADJ. **Holy**

VERB + BIBLE **read, study**

BIBLE + VERB **say sth, tell sb sth, teach sth** *The Bible teaches that all people are equal before God.*

BIBLE + NOUN **reading, story | study**

PREP. **in the ~** *You can read the story of Noah in the Bible.*

bibliography *noun*

ADJ. **brief, select, selective | comprehensive, extensive** *an extensive bibliography of books and articles*

VERB + BIBLIOGRAPHY **compile, put together | contain, include | publish | consult** *Consult the bibliography for further reading on the subject.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *You'll find the professor's book in the bibliography.* **| ~ of** *The book includes a selective bibliography of works on French art.*

bicycle *noun*

VERB + BICYCLE **ride | get on, mount** *He mounted his bicycle and rode off.* **| get off | come off, fall off** *She came off her bicycle when it skidded on some wet leaves.* **| knock sb off | pedal** *She pedalled her bicycle up the track.* **| push, wheel** *I dismounted and began to push my bicycle up the hill.* **| park | hire**

BICYCLE + VERB **get/have a puncture**

BICYCLE + NOUN **ride | chain, frame, wheel | rack, shed | hire**

PREP. **by ~** *Did you come by bicycle?* **| on a/the ~** *watching the boys on their bicycles*

PHRASES **lean/prop a bicycle against sth**

bid *noun*

1 **attempt**

ADJ. **successful | failed, unsuccessful | desperate | takeover**

VERB + BID **launch, make, mount** *A German firm launched a takeover bid for the company.* **| succeed in | fail in** *They failed in their bid to buy the holiday company.*

BID + VERB **succeed | fail**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He attacked his guards in a desperate bid for freedom.* **| ~ by** *a bid by the president to boost his popularity* **| ~ for** *This play was her last bid for recognition.*

PHRASES **a bid for freedom/power, a bid to escape**

2 **offer of a sum of money to buy sth**

ADJ. **high | low | opening | cash**

VERB + BID **make, put in, submit** *He made a cash bid for the company.* **| retract | call for, invite** *They have invited bids for the property.* **| increase, raise | accept**

PREP. **~ by/from** *a £24-million bid by a rival football club* **| ~ for** *a bid for the chair* **| ~ of** *a bid of £100*

bid *verb*

1 **offer money for sth**

PREP. **against** *Two dealers bid against each other for the antique table.* **| for** *She bid £10,000 for the painting.*

2 **offer to do work**

ADV. **successfully**

PREP. **for** *We have successfully bid for the contract.*

big *adj.*

1 **large**

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get, grow**

ADV. **extremely, incredibly, really, very | fairly, pretty, quite, rather** *This house is rather big for us. We need something smaller.*

PHRASES **big fat** *He was a big fat chap with a beard.*

2 **important**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, really, very** *hoping the show would be a really big success* **| fairly, pretty** *This is a fairly big decision to make.*

bike *noun*

ADJ. **mountain, racing, touring, trail | exercise**

VERB + BIKE **ride | get on** *He got on his bike and rode off.* **| get off | come off, fall off** *She came off her bike when it skidded on some wet leaves.* **| knock sb off | pedal** *She pedalled her bike up the track.* **| push, wheel** *We had to push our bikes up the hill.* **| park | hire**

BIKE + VERB **get/have a puncture**

BIKE + NOUN **ride | shed**

PREP. **by ~** *Did you come by bike?* **| on a/the ~** *watching the boys on their bikes*

PHRASES **lean/prop a bike against sth**

bikini *noun*

ADJ. **brief, minuscule, skimpy**

BIKINI + NOUN **bottoms, top | line** > Special page at CLOTHES

bilingual *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **fully | virtually**

PREP. **in** *He is virtually bilingual in Spanish and Portuguese.*

bill *noun*

1 **showing money owed for goods/services**

ADJ. **big, high, huge, large | outstanding, unpaid | itemized | electricity, fuel, gas, hospital, hotel, phone/telephone, etc. | tax**

VERB + BILL **get, have** *Could I have the bill please? I've just got a huge tax bill.* **| be landed with, face** *The company could now face higher fuel bills.* **| run up** *We ran up a very large hotel bill.* **| foot, pay, pick up, settle** *Don't worry?the company will pick up the bill.* **| present sb with, send sb, submit** *They presented us with a very large bill.* **| cut, reduce** *We need to cut our electricity bills.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *Are the coffees on the bill?* **| ~ for** *the bill for the meal*

2 **proposal for a new law**

ADJ. **controversial | emergency | private member's**

VERB + BILL **bring before Parliament, bring forward/in, introduce, propose, put forward, submit** *The bill will be brought before Parliament next year. The government has put forward an emergency bill to limit the powers of the police.* **| force through, push through, railroad through, rush through** *The opposition will try to force the bill through Parliament.* **| draft, prepare | amend | debate | adopt, approve, pass | support, vote for | defeat, reject, throw out, veto | oppose, vote against | shelve, withdraw**

3 **programme of entertainment**

ADJ. **double**

VERB + BILL **head, top** *Tom Jones is topping the bill.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *Mozart is on the bill this evening.*

bin *noun*

ADJ. **litter, rubbish, waste, wastepaper** *She threw the letter in the wastepaper bin.* **| storage | pedal, wheelie**

VERB + BIN **chuck sth in/into, put sth in, throw sth in/into**

BIN + NOUN **bag, liner | man**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Put the wrapper in the bin.*

bind *noun*

ADJ. **awful, dreadful, real, terrible | double**

PREP. **in a ~** *He's in a double bind: he needs experience to get a job but he can't get experience without working.*

bind *verb*

1 **tie with rope/fabric**

ADV. **tightly** *They bound his hands together tightly.*

ADV. **together**

PREP. **to, with** *The sails are bound to the mast with cord.*

PHRASES **bind and gag sb, bind sb hand and foot** *She found herself bound hand and foot.*

2 **make sb do sth**

ADV. **contractually, legally, morally**

3 **book**

PHRASES **be beautifully/handsomely/richly bound, be bound in sth** *two volumes bound in leather*

binding *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **absolutely | legally, morally**

PREP. **on/upon** *The decisions of the European Court are binding on the United Kingdom.*

binge *noun*

ADJ. **drinking, drunken | eating**

VERB + BINGE **go on, have** *He went on a drunken binge when he heard the bad news.*

binoculars *noun*

ADJ. **high-powered, powerful**

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + BINOCULARS **look through | focus, train** *He focused his binoculars on the building in the distance.* **| adjust | lift, raise** *She raised her binoculars to the distant road across the valley.* **| lower**

PREP. **through ~** *watching the race through binoculars*

biography *noun*

ADJ. **authorized, official | unauthorized, unofficial | brief, potted** *The book gives potted biographies of all the major painters.*

VERB + BIOGRAPHY **work on, write | publish | read**

PREP. **~ by** *a biography by Antonia Fraser* **| ~ of** *a biography of the prime minister*

biologist *noun*

ADJ. **distinguished, senior | field, research** *She's a research biologist for a pharmaceutical company.* **| evolutionary, forensic, marine, molecular | plant, wildlife** > Note at JOB

biology *noun*

ADJ. **cell, developmental, environmental, evolutionary, human, marine, molecular, population, reproductive | applied | modern** > Note at SUBJECT (for verbs and nouns)

bird *noun*

ADJ. **wild | exotic, rare | game | predatory | migratory | land, sea** (also **seabird**), **tropical, wading, woodland** *Seabirds flocked above our heads.*

QUANT. **flock**

BIRD + VERB **flit, fly, glide, soar, swoop (down)** *We watched a bird of prey swoop down on a mouse.* **| flap its wings | flock | migrate** *The birds migrate in September.* **| chirp, sing, twitter, warble | peck** *birds pecking at the corn* **| build a nest, nest** *birds nesting on the roof of the church* **| breed, lay eggs | moult**

BIRD + NOUN **call | sanctuary | life** *an area with a very varied bird life* **| watcher, watching**

PHRASES **a bird of passage** (= a migratory bird), **a bird of prey** (= a predatory bird), **a breed/species/type of bird**

birth control *noun*

ADJ. **effective**

VERB + BIRTH CONTROL **practise, use**

PHRASES **a form/method of birth control**

birth *noun*

ADJ. **live** *Better living conditions mean more live births and fewer stillbirths.* **| normal | breech, Caesarean, premature | multiple | legitimate | illegitimate | home**

VERB + BIRTH **give** *She gave birth to a baby boy.* **| register**

BIRTH + NOUN **certificate | rate | weight**

PREP. **at ~** *The baby weighed 7 pounds at birth.* **| at/during a/the ~** *The child's father was present at the birth.* **| by ~** *He was American by birth, but lived in France.*

PHRASES **births, marriages and deaths** *a registry of births, marriages and deaths* **| your date/place of birth, of low/noble birth** (= born to a poor/aristocratic family), **the moment of birth**

birthday *noun*

ADJ. **last, next** *I'll be 28 next birthday.*

VERB + BIRTHDAY **have** *I hope you have a nice birthday.* **| spend** *She spent her 50th birthday in Paris.* **| celebrate | mark** *an exhibition to mark the artist's 70th birthday* **| forget, remember | approach** *He is approaching his 40th birthday, and thinking of retiring from sport.*

BIRTHDAY + NOUN **gift, present | card | cake | party | surprise** *He had a portrait painted as a birthday surprise for his daughter.* **| treat** *We're taking him to see the new film for his birthday treat.*

PREP. **for your ~** *What do you want for your birthday?* **| on your ~** *She'll be 34 on her next birthday.*

PHRASES **Happy birthday!, wish sb a happy birthday** *Wish John a happy birthday from me.*

birthmark *noun*

ADJ. **large, small | disfiguring, unsightly | faint | purple, red**

VERB + BIRTHMARK **have**

BIRTHMARK + VERB **fade**

biscuit *noun*

ADJ. **dry | soggy, stale | chocolate, ginger, etc. | digestive, shortbread, wafer | cat, dog**

QUANT. **box, packet, tin** *a packet of coconut biscuits*

VERB + BISCUIT **eat, have | nibble | bake, make | cut out** *He was cutting biscuits out and putting them on a baking tray.*

BISCUIT + NOUN **barrel, tin | crumbs** *He brushed the biscuit crumbs from his jacket.*

PHRASES **cheese and biscuits** > Special page at FOOD

bishop *noun*

ADJ. **Anglican, Episcopal/Episcopalian, (Greek/Russian) Orthodox, Roman Catholic | diocesan** *He's the diocesan bishop and he has three suffragan bishops to help him.* **| assistant, suffragan**

VERB + BISHOP **appoint, appoint sb (as), make sb | succeed sb as**

PREP. **~ of** *He was appointed Bishop of Ely.*

bit *noun*

1 a bit small amount

ADJ. **little, teensy** *(informal),* **wee** *He helped me a little bit in the afternoon.*

PHRASES **just a bit** *I'm still just a bit confused.*

2 a bit: large amount

ADJ. **fair, good** *It rained a fair bit during the night. We made a good bit of progress.*

VERB + BIT **take** *The new system will take quite a bit of getting used to* (= it will take a long time to get used to).

PHRASES **quite a bit** *It rained quite a bit during the night.* **| just a bit** *(ironic) 'Has it been difficult for you at work?' 'Just a bit* (= it has been very difficult).*'*

2 part/piece of sth

ADJ. **little, small, tiny | big, large** *A big bit of stone had fallen off the wall.* **| good, nice** *The best bit of the holiday was seeing the Grand Canyon. I've got us a nice bit of fish for dinner.* **| boring** *I read it, but I missed out the boring bits.* **| odd** *He managed to get odd bits of work, but no regular job.*

VERB + BIT **pick out, pick up** *Listen to the interview again and pick out the bits you want to use in the article. She tore the letter up and threw it on the floor. Marion stooped to pick up the bits. I picked up a bit of information that might interest you.*

BIT + VERB **fall off** *I'm worried because bits keep falling off my car.*

PREP. **~ of**

PHRASES **bits and bobs/pieces** (= small items of various kinds) *My mother has some bits and pieces to give you.* **| blow/pull/smash sth to bits** *All the crockery had been smashed to bits.* **| do your bit** (= do your share of a task) *We can finish this job on time if everyone does their bit.* **| fall to bits** *My briefcase eventually fell to bits.*

bite *noun*

1 act of biting/amount of food

VERB + BITE **have, take**

PREP. **between ~s** *She tried to talk between bites.* **| ~ from** *I took a bite from the apple.* **| ~ of** *Can I have a bite of your sandwich?* **| ~ out of** *She took a bite out of the slab of cake.*

2 of an insect/animal

ADJ. **insect, mosquito, snake, etc.**

VERB + BITE **get** *I got a lot of mosquito bites last night.*

BITE + NOUN **mark**

PREP. **~ from** *a bite from a poisonous snake*

3 small amount to eat

ADJ. **quick**

VERB + BITE **grab, have** *We managed to grab a bite at the theatre before the show started.*

PREP. **~ of** *a quick bite of lunch*

PHRASES **a bite to eat** *We'll have a bite to eat in town.*

bite *verb*

1 **use your teeth**

ADV. **badly** *Their cat was badly bitten by a dog.* **| off** *He bit off a chunk of bread.*

PREP. **at** *He bit at his lower lip.* **| into** *She bit into the apple.* **| through** *The dog had bitten right through its rope.*

PHRASES **bite sth in half/two**

2 **have an effect**

ADV. **deep, hard** *As the recession bites harder, many small companies are going bankrupt.*

VERB + BITE **begin to, start to** *After two cold months, the coal shortage was beginning to bite.*

bitter *adj.*

1 angry/unhappy

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become, grow, turn** *He had grown bitter as the years passed. Loving relationships can turn bitter.* **| remain | leave sb, make sb** *The divorce had left her bitter.*

ADV. **extremely, very | quite, rather, slightly**

PREP. **about** *She still seems quite bitter about it.* **| towards** *I felt very bitter towards them.*

2 very cold

VERBS **be | become, turn** *The weather turned bitter.* **| remain**

ADV. **extremely, really, very | quite, rather**

3 having a sharp taste

VERBS **be, taste** *The drink tasted bitter.*

ADV. **extremely, very | rather, slightly, somewhat**

bitterness *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, real**

QUANT. **edge, hint, touch, trace**

VERB + BITTERNESS **feel** *She feels no bitterness towards him.* **| show** *He's never shown any bitterness.*

PREP. **with/without ~** *She spoke slowly and with some bitterness.* **| ~ about/over** *their bitterness over the strike* **| ~ against/towards** *his bitterness towards his own father* **| ~ among** *the bitterness among nurses about this pay deal* **| ~ between** *There is no bitterness between them.*

bizarre *adj.*

VERBS be, seem, sound | become | find sth *I found the whole situation very bizarre.*

ADV. most, truly, very *He walked off in a most bizarre fashion.* **| quite, totally** *He made some totally bizarre comments.* **| increasingly | a little, pretty, rather, slightly, somewhat** *It's a pretty bizarre film.*

black market *noun*

ADJ. **thriving**

PREP. **on the ~** *You could buy anything you needed on the black market.* **| ~ in** *During the war, there was a thriving black market in food.*

black *adj.*

ADV. **very** *The sky looks very black.* **| all** *His hands were all black from messing about with the car.*

ADJ. **jet, pitch (used about the night)** *She had beautiful jet-black hair. It was pitch black outside.* > Special page at COLOUR

blackboard *noun*

VERB + BLACKBOARD **write on | copy from** *Please copy the homework from the blackboard.* **| clean**

BLACKBOARD + NOUN **work**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *You can't just stand at the blackboard and talk.* **| on a/the ~** *The homework is on the blackboard.*

blacklist *noun*

VERB + BLACKLIST **place sb on, put sb on | draw up**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *She was on the company's blacklist.*

blackmail *nou*n

ADJ. **emotional, moral**

BLACKMAIL + NOUN **threat** > Note at CRIME(for verbs)

blackmail *verb*

ADV. **virtually**

VERB + BLACKMAIL **attempt to, try to**

PREP. **into** *She says she was virtually blackmailed into giving up her claim to the property.*

bladder *noun*

ADJ. **full | irritable, weak**

VERB + BLADDER **empty**

BLADDER + NOUN **control | cancer, infection, problem** *He died of bladder cancer.*

blade *nou*n

ADJ. **sharp | blunt | pointed, serrated | knife, razor, saw, sword | rotary**

VERB + BLADE **sharpen**

blame *noun*

VERB + BLAME **get** *My brother broke the window, but I got the blame.* **| accept, bear, shoulder, take** *The company refused to accept any blame for the damage.* **| apportion, attach, attribute, lay, pin, place, put** *They placed the blame squarely on the doctor.* **| share** *The government must share the blame for this confusion.* **| escape, shift** *trying to shift the blame onto someone else* **| absolve sb from/of** *He was absolved of all blame.*

BLAME + VERB **fall on sb, lie with sb, rest with sb** *The blame lies with the police, who failed to act quickly enough.*

PREP. **~ for** *He tried to escape blame for what he did.*

PHRASES **lay the blame at sb's door, part of the blame, a share of the blame** *The government tried to lay the blame at the door of the unions.*

blame *verb*

ADV. **unfairly, unjustly**

VERB + BLAME **can't/cannot, couldn't, don't** *'I just slammed the phone down when he said that.' 'I don't blame you!'* | **can/could hardly** *You can hardly blame Peter for being angry with her.*

PREP. **for** *I don't blame Jack for the mistake.* | **on** *Whenever something goes wrong, everyone blames it on me.*

PHRASES **be (partly) to blame (for sth)** *A spokesman said that bad weather was to blame for the delay.* | **be widely blamed for sth** *The government has been widely blamed for the crisis.*

blameless *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **quite** (= totally) *She herself was quite blameless.* **| far from, not entirely** *Johnson himself was far from blameless.*

blank *adj.*

1 **with nothing written, recorded, etc. on**

VERBS **be | go** *The screen's gone blank.* **| remain | leave sth** *I left the third column blank.*

ADV. **completely, entirely**

2 **without emotion/interest/understanding**

VERBS **be, look** *Gina looked blank; then understanding dawned.* **| go** *What if my mind goes completely blank with panic?* **| remain**

ADV. **completely | studiously** *His expression remained studiously blank.*

blank *noun*

1 empty space on paper

VERB + BLANK **fill in** *In the test, we had to fill in the blanks.* **| leave** *If you don't know the answer, just leave a blank.*

2 cartridge for a gun

VERB + BLANK **fire** *Soldiers fired blanks into the sky.*

blanket *noun*

ADJ. **heavy, thick | thin | warm | electric**

VERB + BLANKET **cover sb with, wrap sb in | draw up, pull up** *She pulled the blanket up and went to sleep.* **| kick off, push off, throw off**

PREP. **beneath/under a/the ~** *They shivered under their thin blankets.*

blasphemous *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | consider sth | declare sth, deem sth** *The book was declared blasphemous and all copies ordered to be burnt.*

ADV. **almost**

blasphemy *noun*

VERB + BLASPHEMY **commit**

BLASPHEMY + NOUN **law**

PREP. **~ against** *His writings were branded as obscene and a blasphemy against God.*

PHRASES **a charge of blasphemy**

blast *noun*

1 **explosion**

ADJ. **huge, powerful | bomb, nuclear, shotgun**

BLAST + VERB **hit sth, rip through sth, rock sth** *A huge bomb blast rocked central London last night.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Twenty people were killed in the blast.*

2 **sudden rush of air/wind**

ADJ. **hot, icy** *She felt an icy blast of air.*

PREP. **~ of** *a blast of cold air*

3 **sudden loud sound**

ADJ. **long | short | shrill**

VERB + BLAST **give**

PREP. **~ on** *He gave a short blast on his trumpet.*

blaze *noun*

ADJ. **fierce, intense, massive**

VERB + BLAZE **attend, fight, tackle** *The fire brigade attended the blaze.* **| control, bring/get under control | extinguish, put out | fan** *Strong winds fanned the blaze.*

BLAZE + VERB **spread, sweep through sth** *The blaze swept through the whole building.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The antiques were destroyed in a blaze last year.*

bleak *adj.*

1 **without hope**

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very** *Prospects for the industry are extremely bleak.* **| increasingly | unnecessarily** *The report paints an unnecessarily bleak picture of the town.*

2 **bare/empty/without pleasant features**

VERBS **be, look, seem** *The moors looked bleak and desolate in the rain.* **| become**

ADV. **very | a bit, rather** *It was a rather bleak and dismal place.*

bleed *verb*

ADV. **badly, heavily, profusely | easily** *The small blood vessels in the nose bleed easily.*

PREP. **from** *She was bleeding heavily from a head wound.*

PHRASES **bleed to death**

bleeding *noun*

ADJ. **heavy, massive | uncontrollable | internal**

VERB + BLEEDING **have, suffer from | cause | control, staunch, stem, stop**

PREP. **~ from** *Some drugs can cause bleeding from the small intestine.*

blemish *noun*

ADJ. **minor, slight**

VERB + BLEMISH **have** *The police say the suspect has a slight blemish on his left cheek.*

PREP. **without (a) ~** *(figurative) He was pilloried, but she escaped without blemish.*

blend *noun*

ADJ. **delightful, good, perfect, right** *just the right blend of work and relaxation* **|** **curious, special, strange, subtle, unique** *a scarf with a subtle blend of colours*

blend *verb*

1 **mix**

ADV. **together** *Blend all the ingredients together.*

PREP. **into** *Blend the cocoa into the eggs.* | **with** *Blend a little milk with two tablespoons of treacle.*

2 **combine well**

ADV. **happily, harmoniously, perfectly, well** | **in** *The colour of the carpet doesn't blend in.*

PREP. **with** *The ornamental pool blends perfectly with its surroundings.*

blessing *noun*

1 **thing that brings happiness/improves your life**

ADJ. **great, real | mixed** (= a thing that has advantages and disadvantages)

PREP. **~ for** *A TV can be a real blessing for old people.*

PHRASES **a blessing in disguise** (= a thing that seems unfortunate, but is later seen to be fortunate), **count your blessings** (= to be grateful for the good things you have)

2 **approval/support**

ADJ. **full | official**

VERB + BLESSING **have | give sb/sth** *The government has given its official blessing to the project.* **| get, receive** *She received the full blessing of her employers.*

PREP. **with/without sb's ~** *He went off to Latin America with his mother's blessing.*

3 **prayer**

ADJ. **traditional**

VERB + BLESSING **give, make, pronounce, say** *The blessing was said in Hebrew.* **| ask (for)**

PREP. **~ on** *ask God's blessing on their pastoral work*

blind *adj.*

1 **unable to see**

VERBS **be, be born | be registered (as) | go** *She went blind at the age of ten.* **| make sb**

ADV. **totally | almost, virtually | partially**

PHRASES **as blind as a bat, be blind in one eye/in both eyes** *He is almost blind in one eye.*

2 **blind to sth: not willing to notice/admit sth**

VERBS **be, seem | become | make sb**

ADV. **completely, totally** *His own problems have made him completely blind to the sufferings of others.*

blind *noun*

ADJ. **roller, venetian**

VERB + BLIND **open, pull up, raise | close, draw, lower, pull down**

PREP. **through a/the ~** *She saw a shadowy figure through the blind.*

blind *verb*

ADV. **almost, nearly** *The strong light almost blinded him.* **| momentarily, temporarily**

blink *verb*

ADV. **hard** *He blinked hard and forced a smile.* **| rapidly**

PREP. **at** *She blinked at him, astonished.* **| in/with** *He blinked in surprise.*

PHRASES **blink away a tear, blink back tears** *She had to blink back her tears before she continued her story.* **| blink your eyes/your eyes blink**

bliss *noun*

ADJ. **sheer** *The first six months of marriage were sheer bliss.* **| domestic | marital, married, wedded** *They're celebrating 25 years of wedded bliss.*

PHRASES **sb's idea of bliss** *My idea of bliss is a hot day and an ice-cold beer.*

blister *verb*

ADV. **badly** *Her feet were badly blistered.*

blitz *noun*

1 **sudden military attack, often by air**

ADJ. **bombing | wartime**

VERB + BLITZ **carry out**

PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *Many people died in the London blitz.* **| ~ on** *Enemy bombers carried out a blitz on the city.*

2 **campaign; sudden, great effort**

ADJ. **marketing, media, sales**

VERB + BLITZ **have, launch, mount** *We decided to have a blitz on the kitchen* (= to clean the kitchen thoroughly).

PREP. **~ on** *a blitz on illegal parking*

blizzard *noun*

ADJ. **fierce, howling**

VERB + BLIZZARD **blow** *After a short while it began to blow a blizzard.*

BLIZZARD + VERB **hit (sth), strike (sth)** *The blizzard struck while we were still on the mountain.* **| blow, rage**

BLIZZARD + NOUN **conditions**

PREP. **in/into ~** *We got stuck in a howling blizzard.* **| through ~** *He fought his way through the blizzard.*

bloc *noun*

ADJ. **large, solid, substantial** *A solid bloc of union members support the decision.* **| economic, military, trading | Communist, Eastern, Soviet** *Eastern bloc countries*

PREP. **in/within a/the ~** *There have been growing tensions within the trading bloc.*

PHRASES **en bloc** (= all together; all at the same time)

block *noun*

1 **solid piece of sth**

ADJ. **big, huge, large, massive | small | solid | concrete, stone, wooden | building | starting (for a runner)** *aiming to be first out of the starting blocks* **| breeze**

2 **large building divided into offices/flats**

ADJ. **high-rise, tower | administration, apartment, cell, office** *The prisoners had been transferred to a different cell block.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She lives in a modern apartment block.* **| ~ of** *a block of flats*

3 **temporary loss of abilities**

ADJ. **mental, writer's** *The author denies that she is experiencing writer's block.*

VERB + BLOCK **experience, have, suffer from** *I suddenly had a mental block and couldn't remember his name.*

block *verb*

1 **make it difficult to pass**

ADV. **completely | almost | partially, partly | off, up** *The old route is completely blocked off. Don't block up the corridor with all these boxes.*

VERB + BLOCK **try to | move to** *One of the men moved to block their path.*

PREP. **with** *The exit was blocked with beer crates.*

2 **prevent sth being done**

ADV. **successfully | effectively** *The new rules would effectively block protesters' attempts to assert their rights.*

VERB + BLOCK **attempt to, seek to, try to | move to** *The group has moved to block the government's proposals.* **PHRASAL VERBS block sth out**

ADV. **completely** *Black clouds had completely blocked out the sun.* **| almost**

blockade *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total | tight | partial | virtual | economic, military, naval**

VERB + BLOCKADE **impose | end, lift, remove | enforce, maintain | tighten | ease, relax | break, get through, run** *They attempted to break the blockade by using submarines.*

PREP. **~ against** *the need to enforce a naval blockade against the country* **| ~ around/round** *a blockade around the city* **| ~ by** *the blockade by Western nations* **| ~ of, ~ on** *The president imposed a complete blockade on the island's harbours.*

blockage *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total | partial**

VERB + BLOCKAGE **cause, create | prevent | clear, remove** *They used chemicals to clear the blockage.*

bloke *noun*

ADJ. **decent, good, great, lovely, nice | average, ordinary** *He's an ordinary bloke, despite being famous.* **| funny** *He's a funny bloke?you never really know what he's thinking.* **| poor** *He's got so many problems, poor bloke!*

PHRASES **the kind/sort/type of bloke** *He's the sort of bloke who will never let you down.*

blonde *noun*

ADJ. **attractive, beautiful, gorgeous, pretty, sexy, stunning | blue-eyed | dumb** *She's not just a dumb blonde.* **| natural** *She was slender and a natural blonde.* **| bottle | ash, platinum, strawberry** *a tall, strawberry blonde with stunning legs*

blood pressure *noun*

ADJ. **high, low, normal**

VERB + BLOOD PRESSURE **check, measure**

blood transfusion *noun*

ADJ. **emergency**

VERB + BLOOD TRANSFUSION **have, receive | give sb | need, require**

blood vessel *noun*

ADJ. **major | broken, burst**

VERB + BLOOD VESSEL **block, constrict | dilate, enlarge | burst** *He burst a blood vessel in a fit of coughing.*

BLOOD VESSEL + VERB **carry sth, supply sth** *blood vessels supplying nutrition to the skin* **| burst | dilate, enlarge | contract**

blood *noun*

ADJ. **cold, warm** *animals with warm blood* | **clotted, congealed, dried** | **arterial, venous** | **menstrual** | **contaminated** | **aristocratic, noble, royal** *I doubt if I have a single drop of aristocratic blood in my veins.* | **Mediterranean, Spanish, etc.**

QUANT. **drop, pool, trickle** *The body lay in a pool of blood. A thin trickle of blood ran down from a cut above her eye.* | **spots, traces** *He worked to remove all traces of blood.*

VERB + BLOOD **lose** *She'd lost a lot of blood and doctors decided to do a transfusion.* | **shed, spill** *(literary) He was a hot-headed warrior, always too quick to shed blood.* | **donate, give** *The hospital appealed for more people to give blood* (= for blood transfusions). | **pump** *The heart pumps blood around the body.* | **choke on** *He choked on his own blood after being shot in the throat.* | **smear** *There was blood smeared down his shirt.*

BLOOD + VERB **dribble, drip, flow, gush, ooze, run, seep, splash, spurt, stream, trickle, well (up)** *Blood oozed slowly from the corner of his mouth.* | **spread** *The blood spread rapidly from where he lay.* | **spatter, splatter** *Blood spattered the seats of the vehicle.* | **soak (into) sth** | **cake sth, stain sth** *Dried blood caked his hands.* | **clot, coagulate** | **circulate** *He rubbed his limbs vigorously to get the blood circulating.* | **course, rush, surge** *I felt the blood coursing in my veins as I ran. The blood rushed to her face as she realized her error.* | **drum, hammer, pound, pulse, thud, thunder** *The blood drummed in her ears.* | **drain** *The blood drained from his face when I told him the news.* | **freeze, run/turn cold, turn to ice** *(figurative) Our blood ran cold at the thought of how easily we could have been killed.*

BLOOD + NOUN **cell** | **group, type** *What blood group are you?* | **sample, test** | **loss** | **donation, donor** | **bank** | **circulation, flow, supply** | **pressure** | **clot, coagulation** | **cancer, disease, disorder, poisoning** | **cholesterol, fats, glucose, sugar**

PREP. **in ~** *His shirt was soaked in blood.* | **in sb's/the ~** *Traces of an illegal substance were found in his blood.* | **~ from** *My handkerchief was soaked in blood from my nose.*

PHRASES **caked in/with blood** *The dog's fur was caked in blood when we found him.*

| covered in/with blood *He was lying on the floor, covered in blood.* **| in cold blood** *He shot them in cold blood* (= in a way that was planned and deliberately cruel).

bloodshed *noun*

ADJ. **further | massive, widespread**

VERB + BLOODSHED **cause, end in, lead to** *This election result could well lead to further bloodshed.* **| end, halt, stop | avoid, prevent**

bloodstream *noun*

VERB + BLOODSTREAM **enter | absorb sth into** *The drug is quickly absorbed into the bloodstream.*

PREP. **in sb's/the ~** *Traces of banned substances were detected in his bloodstream.* **| into sb's/the ~** *Bacteria was introduced into his bloodstream through an unsterile needle.* **| through sb's/the ~** *Red blood cells transport oxygen through the bloodstream.*

bloom *noun*

ADJ. **beautiful, exquisite, perfect** *a tree with exquisite blooms* | **fragrant** | **exotic**

VERB + BLOOM **bear, have, produce** | **burst into, come into** *The spring flowers have come into bloom.*

BLOOM + VERB **appear** *The small white blooms appear in May.* | **fade** *The blooms have started to fade now.*

PREP. **in ~** *banks of rhododendrons in bloom*

PHRASES **in full bloom** *The roses are now in full bloom.*

blossom *noun*

ADJ. **beautiful, lovely | pale, pink, white** *a tree with pale pink blossoms* **| apple, peach, etc.**

VERB + BLOSSOM **bear, have, produce** *Hopefully the tree will produce some blossom next year.*

BLOSSOM + VERB **be out** *It's lovely in the spring when the cherry blossom is out.* **| come out**

PREP. **in ~** *I love it when the apple trees are in blossom.*

PHRASES **in full blossom** *The plum tree is in full blossom.*

blouse *nou*n

ADJ. **long-sleeved, short-sleeved, sleeveless | high-necked | cotton, silk, etc. | embroidered, frilled, frilly | see-through | school**

VERB + BLOUSE **have on, wear | put on | button up, unbutton | take off**

blow *noun*

1 act of blowing

VERB + BLOW **give sth** *Give your nose a blow.*

2 hard knock that hits sb/sth

ADJ. **hard, heavy, nasty, painful, powerful, severe, sharp, stinging, violent | fatal, final, mortal | glancing, light** *Jack caught him a glancing blow on the jaw.* **| single** *He killed the man with a single blow of his cricket bat.*

QUANT. **flurry, hail** *The man went down in a hail of blows.*

VERB + BLOW **get, receive, suffer, take** *He suffered a severe blow to the head.* **| catch sb, deal sb, deliver, give sb, land, rain (down), strike sb** *It was the gardener who delivered the fatal blow. She landed a nasty blow on his nose. He rained heavy blows on the old woman.* **| exchange** *The boys exchanged blows with the police.* **| come to** *The children came to blows over the new toy.* **| aim** *She aimed a blow at Lucy.* **| avoid, deflect, dodge, parry, ward off**

BLOW + VERB **fall, land** *The blow landed on my right shoulder.*

PREP. **~ of** *two blows of the axe* **| ~ on** *a nasty blow on the head* **| ~ to** *a blow to the victim's chest*

3 sudden shock/disappointment

ADJ. **big, great, major, serious, severe, terrible | bitter, crippling, cruel, crushing, devastating, knock-out | double | decisive, mortal** *a mortal blow to British industry* **| body**

VERB + BLOW **deal (sb/sth), deliver, strike** *His defeat dealt a crushing blow to the party.* **| receive, suffer | cushion, soften** *to soften the blow of tax increases* **| come as** *The news came as a bitter blow to the staff.*

BLOW + VERB **come, fall** *The blow came at a meeting on Saturday.*

PREP. **~ for** *A tax on books would be a body blow for education.* **| ~ to** *Her decision to live abroad was a terrible blow to her parents.*

PHRASES **a bit of a blow**

blow *verb*

1 **of wind/air, etc.**

ADV. **hard, strongly | gently**

PREP. **from** *a gale blowing from the west* **| off** *The wind blew the papers off the table.*

PHRASES **be blowing a gale** *It's blowing a gale out there!* **| blow sth off course** *The ship was blown off course in the storm.*

2 **send air out of your mouth**

ADV. **hard**

PREP. **on** *He blew on his soup to cool it.*

blue *adj.*

ADV. **very | quite, slightly**

ADJ. **dark, deep, rich | light, pale | bright, brilliant, vivid** *a brilliant blue sky her vivid blue eyes* **| cobalt, navy, royal, slate** *a navy blue jumper* > Special page at COLOUR

blueprint *noun*

ADJ. **new | final | economic, personal**

VERB + BLUEPRINT **have** *The government does not have a blueprint for reform.* **| create, develop, draw up | act as, form, provide, serve as** *The charter should serve as a blueprint for cooperation.*

PREP. **for** *a blueprint for change*

blues *noun*

1 **type of slow sad music**

VERB + BLUES **play, sing** *He plays blues on the accordion. She was in the back of a smoky bar singing the blues.*

BLUES + NOUN **band, musician, singer | song 2 the blues** state of feeling sad/ depressed

QUANT. **attack, fit** *a bad attack of the blues*

VERB + BLUES **have | get, suffer from | banish, beat** *I plan a holiday as a way to beat the blues.*

blunder *noun*

ADJ. **big, major | stupid | fatal, terrible, tragic | tactical | administrative, bureaucratic, economic, political**

QUANT. **series**

VERB + BLUNDER **commit, make** *The minister has made a series of political blunders.*

blur *noun*

ADJ. **dim, faint, pale** *The object was a dim blur in the moonlight.*

PREP. **~ of** *a blur of colours and patterns*

PHRASES **be all a (bit of a) blur/just a blur** *I can't remember that day very well. It's all a bit of a blur.*

blush *noun*

ADJ. **deep, fiery, hot, warm | faint**

VERB + BLUSH **produce** *His jokes produced blushes from the ladies.* **| hide** *She tried to hide her fiery blush.*

BLUSH + VERB **deepen | creep, rise, spread** *A deep blush spread from her head to her neck.*

PREP. **with/without a ~** *She lowered her eyes with a deep blush.* **| ~ of** *a hot blush of embarrassment*

PHRASES **a blush comes to sb's cheeks/face, bring a blush to sb's cheeks/face, save/spare sb's blushes** (= to save sb from an embarrassing situation)

blush *verb*

ADV. **deeply, furiously, hotly | faintly, a little, slightly | readily** *She blushed more readily when she was a teenager.* **| angrily, guiltily**

VERB + BLUSH **make sb** *Stop teasing him?you're making him blush.*

PREP. **at** *He blushed at the mention of her name.* **| with** *She blushed crimson with embarrassment.*

PHRASES **blush crimson/scarlet**

board *noun*

1 **flat piece of wood, plastic, etc.**

ADJ. **chess, dart, drawing, emery, ironing, notice, running, skirting, sounding**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *There's a notice on the board.*

2 **group of people who control an organization**

ADJ. **advisory, editorial, executive, management | health, school, etc.**

VERB + BOARD **be on, serve on, sit on** *He sits on the company's management board.* **| join | appoint sb to | resign from | go to** *The project will go to the board for consideration.* **| put sth to, submit sth to, take sth to** *She put her ideas to the board.*

BOARD + NOUN **member | meeting**

PREP. **~ of** *the company's board of directors*

PHRASES **at board level** *The issue has been discussed at board level.* **| chairman of the board, a member of the board, a seat on the board** *She was promoted and offered a seat on the board.*

3 **meals that are provided when you stay in a hotel**

ADJ. **full | half**

PHRASES **board and lodging**

boardroom *noun*

ADJ. **company, corporate**

BOARDROOM + NOUN **battle, coup, row, shake-up | table | pay, salary** *The massive boardroom pay awards were criticized by the workers.*

PHRASES **in a/the ~** *The directors were working overtime in the boardroom.*

boast *noun*

ADJ. **proud | empty, idle, vain**

VERB + BOAST **make**

PREP. **~ about** *a boast he made about his achievements* **| ~ of** *her boast of having seen all the countries of Africa*

boast *verb*

1 talk with too much pride

ADV. **openly**

PREP. **about/of** *He openly boasted of his talents.*

2 have sth good/impressive

ADV. **proudly** *This is a region which proudly boasts its own distinct culture.*

boat *noun* BOAT + VERB **chug, go, sail** *The boat chugged out to sea.* **| head, pass** *The boat headed upriver.* **| arrive, come in, dock | return | bob** *boats bobbing up and down in the estuary* **| float, glide | drift | heave, lunge, lurch, pitch, rock, roll** *The boat pitched violently from side to side.* **| list | leak | fill** *The boat slowly filled with icy water.* **| capsize, overturn | founder, sink | operate, ply** *Ferry boats ply regularly between all the resorts on the lake.* **| carry sth, ferry sth, hold sth, take sth**

BOAT + NOUN **cruise, excursion, ride, trip | race | club | house** (also **boathouse**) **| train** (= the train scheduled to connect with a particular sailing) *the 7.30 p.m. boat train to Harwich* **| building | builder, crew, owner | people (= refugees who arrive by boat)**

PREP. **by ~** *The cave can only be reached by boat.* **| in a/the ~** *I took them in my boat.* **| on a/the ~** *They ate on the boat.* **| ~ from, ~ to** *a boat from Jamaica to Trinidad*

ADJ. **little, small | open** *He was adrift in an open boat for three days.* **| flat-bottomed | glass-bottomed | inflatable, plastic, rubber | wooden | motor, paddle, pedal, power, rowing, sailing, speed, steam | canal, narrow, river** ***We spent*** *our holiday going up a canal on a narrow boat. a Mississippi river boat* **| banana, cargo, charter, ferry, fishing, flying, passenger, patrol, pilot, pleasure, racing,** rescue, torpedo, touring | model, paper, toy | stricken *The lifeboat was preparing to go to the aid of the stricken boat.* **| upturned**

QUANT. **fleet, flotilla** *a flotilla of small boats*

VERB + BOAT **take out** *You couldn't take a boat out in that wild sea.* **| take sb out in** *My brother took us all out in his new boat.* **| get into/on/onto | get off/out of |** launch, lower *A new type of patrol boat was launched from the Essex coast yesterday.* **| push out** *I pushed the boat out into the middle of the river.* **| propel, row, sail** *The boat is propelled by a powerful outboard motor.* **| handle** *Where did you learn to handle a boat?* **| guide, steer, turn | pilot, skipper | crew** *Normally the boat is crewed by five people.* **| beach** *He beached the boat and the children leapt out to explore.* **| moor, tie up | untie | anchor, berth** *The harbour was crowded, with boats berthed two and three abreast.* **| load, unload | rock** *Sit down, you're rocking the boat.*

(figurative) She was told to keep her mouth shut and not rock the boat (= take unnecessary action that would cause problems). **| capsize, overturn, upset |**

swamp *The boat was swamped by a huge wave.* **| build, design | catch, take** *They crossed the island to catch a boat for islands south of Skye.* **| miss** *(often figurative) If you don't buy now, you may find that you've missed the boat* (= cannot take advantage of this offer because it is too late). **| meet** *Beth had gone down to Bombay to meet the boat on which her sister was arriving.*

bob *verb*

ADV. **gently | about, along** *an old cigarette packet bobbing along in the current*

PHRASES **bob up and down** *the small boats bobbing gently up and down in the harbour*

body *noun*

1 whole physical form of a person/an animal

ADJ. **whole** *Her whole body trembled.* | **upper** | **lower** | **healthy** | **human**

BODY + NOUN **heat, temperature** | **shape, size, weight** *to maintain your ideal body weight* | **fat** | **odour** | **language**

PREP. **in the/your ~** *Extreme heat may cause changes in the body.* | **on the/your ~** *She still had the marks from the ropes on her body.*

PHRASES **part of the body, sell your body** (= to work as a prostitute)

2 dead human body

ADJ. **dead** | **decomposed, decomposing** | **bloated**

VERB + BODY **examine** | **bury, cremate, embalm** | **exhume**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *A diary was found on the body.*

3 amount of sth

ADJ. **large, substantial, vast** *a large body of evidence*

PHRASES **a body of water** *The two islands are separated by a large body of water.*

4 main part of sth

ADJ. **main** *The bar is in the main body of the hotel.*

5 group of people who work/act together

ADJ. **advisory, corporate, executive, governing, legislative, professional, statutory** | **national, public** | **government, student** | **independent** | **voluntary** | **elected** | **politic** (always after **body)** *Freedom of speech is necessary* *for the health of the body politic.*

VERB + BODY **create, establish, form, set up | elect**

PREP. **in a ~** *The students marched in a body to the government offices.* > Note at ORGANIZATION

6 object

ADJ. **foreign** *They removed a foreign body from her eye.* **| celestial, heavenly** *Stars are celestial bodies.*

bodyguard *noun*

ADJ. **armed | personal** *He never goes anywhere without his personal bodyguards.*

VERB + BODYGUARD **have, keep** *She has to have an armed bodyguard wherever she goes.*

BODYGUARD + VERB **protect sb**

PREP. **~ of** *He keeps a bodyguard of ten men.* **| ~ to** *a former bodyguard to the prince*
> Note at JOB

bog *noun*

ADJ. **vast | stagnant, swampy | peat**

VERB + BOG **sink into** *The more she struggled the deeper she sank into the bog.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He found himself in a vast stagnant bog.* **| through a/the ~** *walking through a bog*

bogus *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | dismiss sth as** *75 paintings which art experts dismiss as bogus*

ADV. **completely, entirely | largely**

boil *noun*

1 **the boil state of boiling**

VERB + BOIL **come to** *Just before the milk comes to the boil, turn down the heat.* **| bring sth to** *Bring the soup to the boil, then simmer for five minutes.* **| go off** *(usually figurative) He played brilliantly for the first set but then went rather off the boil.*

2 **infected spot**

VERB + BOIL **burst, lance** *The doctor lanced the boil.*

BOIL + VERB **erupt** *A boil had erupted on his neck.* **| burst**

boil *verb*

ADV. **rapidly** *Boil the beans rapidly for ten minutes.*

VERB + BOIL **put sth on to** *I'll put the kettle on to boil.*

boiler *noun*

ADJ. **coal-fired, coke, electric, gas, gas-fired, oil-fired, solid-fuel, steam, water | central-heating**

VERB + BOILER **install, put in | service**

BOILER + VERB **come on** *I've just heard the hot water boiler come on.* **| go off | burst, explode**

BOILER + NOUN **system | suit**

boiling point *noun*

VERB + BOILING POINT **reach | bring sth to, heat sth to** *Bring the sauce to boiling point.*

PREP. **at ~** *Add the powder when the water is at boiling point.*

bold *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become, grow | make sb** *The exciting news had made him bold.* **| consider sth**

ADV. **extremely, really, very | quite, rather**

bolt *noun*

1 **for fastening things together**

VERB + BOLT **tighten (up) | loosen | undo, unscrew**

PHRASES **nuts and bolts**

2 **for fastening a door**

VERB + BOLT **draw back, pull back, slide back | push home, slide home** *She closed the door quickly and pushed the bolts home.*

bolt *verb*

ADV. **firmly, securely** *Make sure that the rails are securely bolted in place.* **|** **together** *The two parts are bolted together.*

PREP. **to** *The yacht's keel is bolted to the hull.*

bomb *noun*

ADJ. **big, huge, large, massive | small | cluster, fire, high explosive, incendiary, mortar, nail, petrol, smoke | atom/atomic, hydrogen, neutron, nuclear | bouncing, flying | terrorist | home-made | unexploded | stray** *Their truck was hit by a stray bomb.* **| dummy, fake** *a practice flight with dummy bombs* **| car | letter, parcel | time** *(figurative) He described global warming as 'an environmental time bomb ticking away'.*

VERB + BOMB **place, plant, put** *Police suspect terrorists planted the bomb.* **| carry** *The plane had been adapted to carry bombs.* **| drop, release** *Enemy planes dropped bombs along the railway line.* **| defuse | detonate, explode, set off | build, construct, develop (These verbs are only used about countries.)** *India started to build a nuclear bomb.* **| make** *He used a clock to make a home-made bomb.*

BOMB + VERB **fall, rain (down)** *Eighty people died when bombs rained down on the city's crowded streets.* **| hit sth | detonate, explode, go off | blow sb/sth to pieces, blow sth up, destroy sth, kill sb, rip through sth** *Fifteen people were blown to pieces by the car bomb. A terrorist bomb ripped through the town's packed shopping centre.* **| be ticking away**

BOMB + NOUN **attack, blast, explosion | alert, scare, threat, warning | hoax | disposal, squad | shelter | crater** *The land was scarred with bomb craters.* **| damage | site | victim | suspect | test** *the fallout from atomic bomb tests*

bomb *verb*

ADV. **heavily** *The city had been very heavily bombed.*

bombard *verb*

1 **attack with bombs**

ADV. **heavily** *The city has been heavily bombarded for the last three days.*

2 **direct a lot of things at sb**

ADV. **constantly, continually**

PREP. **with** *We're all constantly bombarded with television advertisements.*

bombardment *noun*

ADJ. **constant, continuous | heavy, intense | aerial, artillery, naval**

VERB + BOMBARDMENT **conduct, launch, mount | stop | be subjected to, be under, come under, suffer | survive, withstand** *They have withstood heavy bombardment for many months.*

BOMBARDMENT + VERB **begin, start | continue, resume | (come to an) end, cease, stop**

PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *Many people were killed in the bombardment.* **| under ~** *The city has been under constant bombardment for three days.* **| ~ against** *The army launched artillery bombardments against enemy positions.* **| ~ from** *bombardments from the sea* **| ~ with** *a three-hour bombardment with rockets and mortars*

bombing *noun*

ADJ. **aerial** *the aerial bombing of ports* **| precision | wartime | area, carpet, indiscriminate, saturation | strategic | enemy** *The neighbourhood was badly damaged by enemy bombing.* **| terrorist | suicide**

BOMBING + NOUN **attack | blitz, campaign | mission, raid, sortie** *He was shot down during a bombing raid over London.* **| target | victim**

bombshell *noun*

VERB + BOMBSHELL **be, come as** *The news came as a bombshell.* **| drop** *Then she dropped the bombshell?she was pregnant.*

BOMBSHELL + VERB **come, drop**

bond *noun*

1 **feeling of friendship**

ADJ. **close, strong | common | natural | emotional, spiritual** *A strong spiritual bond exists between them.*

VERB + BOND **be linked by, feel, have** *She felt a bond of affection for the other girls.* **| create, develop, forge, form | strengthen | break, destroy**

BOND + VERB **exist | link sb** *the bond that links us*

PREP. **~ between** *trying to forge bonds between the different communities* **| ~ of** *bonds of friendship*

2 **certificate for money you have lent**

ADJ. **long-term | government, savings, treasury | junk** *the high yield on junk bonds*

VERB + BOND **buy, invest in, purchase, put money into** *I decided to invest in some government bonds.* **| cash in, redeem** *The bonds were redeemed in 2002.* **| issue, sell**

BOND + NOUN **market**

bone *noun*

ADJ. **delicate, fine** *the delicate bones of her face* **| healthy | brittle, fragile** *She was diagnosed as having brittle bones.* **| broken, cracked, splintered | weary | bleached, dry** *Her eyes were black in a face the colour of bleached bones.* **| ankle, breast, cheek, collar, hip, leg, shin, thigh | animal, chicken, dinosaur, human**

VERB + BONE **break, chip, crack, fracture | rest** *He longed to get home to bed and rest his weary bones.*

BONE + NOUN **structure** *The black and white photographs emphasized her fine bone structure.* **| marrow** *a bone marrow transplant* **| cancer, disease, disorders | graft, surgery**

PHRASES **(break/jar) every bone in sb's body** *The shock jarred every bone in his body.* **| skin and bone** *He's all skin and bone after his illness.*

bonfire *noun*

ADJ. **blazing, roaring**

VERB + BONFIRE **build, have, make | light | put out | put sth on, throw sth on | gather/sit around/round**

BONFIRE + VERB **blaze, burn**

BONFIRE + NOUN **Night** *It was 5 November?Bonfire Night?and the children were excited.*

bonkers *adj.*

VERBS **be | go** *I went a bit bonkers when he told me the news.* **| drive sb** *The noise nearly drove me bonkers.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely, plain, stark raving, totally** *I think he's absolutely stark raving bonkers! The whole idea is just plain bonkers.* **| a bit**

bonus *noun*

1 **money added to wages, etc.**

ADJ. **big, huge, large | extra, special | cash | annual, Christmas** *All employees get an annual bonus before the summer holidays.* **| loyalty, performance, productivity | no claim(s)** (= a bonus for not claiming on your car insurance)

VERB + BONUS **award (sb), give sb, pay sb | earn, get, receive** *You will receive a bonus for high levels of productivity.* **| lose** *If you don't meet our targets, you'll lose your bonus.*

BONUS + NOUN **payment, scheme** *All workers participate in the bonus scheme.*

PREP. **~ of** *He was awarded a cash bonus of £200.*

2 **sth extra that is good**

ADJ. **great, huge, major, real | added, extra** *The house is very comfortable, and as an added bonus, it's near to buses and trains.* **| unexpected | welcome**

PREP. **~ for** *The sunshine on the final day was a welcome bonus for the spectators.*

boo *noun*

ADJ. **loud**

VERB + BOO **be greeted/met with** *His speech was met with boos.*

PREP. **~ from** *There were loud boos from the audience.*

book *noun*

1 **for reading**

ADJ. **latest, new, recent | forthcoming | hardback, paperback | printed** *one of the earliest printed books* **| rare | second-hand | delightful, excellent, fascinating, fine, good, great, interesting, remarkable, useful** *There's nothing like curling up with a mug of tea and a good book.* **| famous, important, influential | controversial** *a controversial book about the royal family* **| favourite** *a survey to find the nation's favourite children's book* **| library | set** *'Emma' was one of our set books for A level.* **| children's, comic, cookery, guide, hymn, phrase, picture, prayer, reference, school, story, text** (also **textbook**), **travel | address, autograph, cheque, exercise, log, order, phone/telephone, sketch**

QUANT. **copy** *How many copies of the book did you order?*

VERB + BOOK **be deep/engrossed/immersed in, flick/skim through, look at, read | look up from** *She looked up from her book and smiled at him.* **| co-author, write | bring out, publish, put out | reprint | edit, proofread, revise | translate | illustrate | bind | ban, censor | dedicate, inscribe** *The book is dedicated to his mother. Her name was inscribed in the book. The collector had many books inscribed to him by famous authors.* **| review | borrow, have out, take out** (= from a library) *How many books have you got out?* **| return, take back** (= to a library) **| renew** *Do you want to renew any of your library books?* **| stock | plagiarize**

BOOK + VERB **appear, come out** *His latest book will appear in December.* **| be/go out of print**

BOOK + NOUN **title | shop** (also **bookshop**) **| review, reviewer | club**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *These issues are discussed in his latest book.* **| ~ about/on** *She's busy writing a book on astrology.* **| ~ by** *a book by Robert Grout* **| ~ for** *a book for new parents* **| ~ from** *a new book from the publishing company, Bookworm* **| ~ of** *a book of walks in London* 2 books company records

ADJ. **account**

VERB + BOOK **audit, do, keep** *She does the books for us.*

book *verb*

ADV. **early, in advance** *There are few places on the course, so it is essential to book in advance.*

PREP. **with** *Book with Suntours and kids go free!*

PHRASES **be booked solid** (= be fully booked), **be booked up, be fully booked**

bookcase *noun*

ADJ. **glass-fronted**

PREP. **from a/the ~** *I chose a book from the bookcase.* **| in a/the ~** *I found this book in your bookcase.*

booking *noun*

ADJ. **advance, early | late | priority | double** (= two bookings for the same time) **| block** (= a large number of seats booked together) **| postal, telephone**

VERB + BOOKING **make** *I made the booking through a travel agent.* **| cancel | confirm | change | accept, take** *We accept both telephone and postal bookings.*

BOOKING + NOUN **fee, form, system | office | clerk**

PREP. **~ for** *a booking for the Saturday performance*

bookkeeping *noun*

ADJ. **double-entry | routine, simple**

VERB + BOOKKEEPING **do** *I run the shop and my wife does the bookkeeping.*

BOOKKEEPING + NOUN **entry | system**

boom *noun*

1 period of sudden increase

ADJ. **great | post-war | consumer, credit, economic, investment, spending | building, housing, property | oil | baby**

VERB + BOOM **cause, create, fuel, lead to** *The boom was fuelled by accelerated demand for consumer products.*

BOOM + NOUN **period, time, year | town**

PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *He was born during the post-war baby boom.* **| ~ in** *a boom in house prices*

PHRASES **boom and bust/slump** *the ordinary business cycle of boom and bust*

2 deep hollow sound

ADJ. **big | deep | distant | sonic** (= the explosive sound made when an aircraft flies faster than the speed of sound) *We heard the sonic boom of a jet overhead.*

VERB + BOOM **hear**

BOOM + VERB **echo** *The deep boom of a foghorn echoed across the bay.*

PREP. **with a ~**

boon *noun*

ADJ. **enormous, great, real, tremendous**

VERB + BOON **be, come as, prove**

PREP. **~ for** *The building scheme comes as an enormous boon for the building industry.* **| ~ to** *These machines have proved a real boon to disabled people.*

boost *noun*

ADJ. **big, great, major, tremendous | much-needed, welcome | unexpected | confidence, financial, morale, psychological**

VERB + BOOST **give sb, provide (sb with) | need | get, receive**

PREP. **~ for** *a boost for British products* **| ~ in** *a big boost in exports* **| ~ to** *a boost to the economy*

boost *verb*

ADV. **considerably, greatly, substantially**

VERB + BOOST **help (to)** *The new service helped boost pre-tax profits by 10%.*

PREP. **to** *The total was boosted to nearly £200 by donations from parents.*

boot *noun*

ADJ. **heavy | lightweight | high | ankle, calf-length, knee-length, thigh-length | muddy | polished | fabric, kid, leather, plastic, suede | gum, rubber, Wellington | high-heeled, hob-nailed, lace-up, nailed, steel-capped, studded, thick-soled | army, baseball, climbing, cowboy, desert, football, hiking, riding, rugby, ski, walking**

QUANT. **pair** *a pair of heavy walking boots*

VERB + BOOT **have on, wear | put on, take off | lace up, unlace | polish**

BOOT + NOUN **polish**

PHRASES **as tough as old boots** *The meat was as tough as old boots.* **| the toe of sb's boot** *She kicked at the snow with the toe of her boot.* > Special page at CLOTHES

booth *noun*

ADJ. **phone, photo, polling, ticket, voting**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She waited in the phone booth.*

booty *noun*

ADJ. **war**

VERB + BOOTY **capture, carry off, seize, take | divide, share, split** *They divided the booty among the troops.*

booze *noun*

ADJ. **cheap | free** *There was free booze at the party.*

VERB + BOOZE **smell** *I could smell booze on his breath.* **| bring, take** *We need to take some booze to the party.* **| turn to** *He turned to booze* (= started drinking a lot of alcohol) *when his wife died.* **| kick** *She's still trying to kick the booze* (= stop drinking so much alcohol).

BOOZE + NOUN **problem**

PREP. **off the ~** (= not drinking alcohol) *She's been off the booze for a month now.* **| on the ~** (= drinking alcohol) *He was dry for years but now he's back on the booze.*

border *noun*

1 **line that divides two countries**

ADJ. **open | closed | common** *Poland has a common border with Germany.* **| disputed**

VERB + BORDER **arrive at, reach, stop at | cross, drive across/over, slip across/over** *They slipped across the border at nightfall.* **| escape across/over, flee across/over | form, mark** *A river forms the border.* **| draw (up), establish, fix | guard, patrol | open | close, seal**

BORDER + NOUN **crossing, post | region, town | control, guard, troops | clash, dispute, war | raid | clash, incident, skirmish**

PREP. **across/over a/the ~** *to smuggle goods across the border* **| along a/the ~** *There has been fighting along the border.* **| at/on a/the ~** *We were stopped on the border.* **| on the ~ of** *a farm on the border of Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire* **| up to the ~** *He drove us right up to the Russian border.* **| ~ between/of** *the border between Austria and Switzerland* **| ~ with** *the border with Mexico*

PHRASES **north/south of the border, one side/both sides of the border** *There has been fighting on both sides of the border.*

2 **decorative band/strip round the edge of sth**

ADJ. **wide | narrow | decorative**

VERB + BORDER **have** *The tablecloth has a narrow lace border.* **| draw**

PREP. **with a/the ~** *a white handkerchief with a blue border* **| ~ around/round** *She drew a decorative border around the picture.*

borderline *noun*

BORDERLINE + NOUN **case | applicant, candidate**

PREP. **on the ~** *She's on the borderline between a first- and second-class honours degree.* **| ~ between** *the borderline between myth and philosophy*

bore *noun*

1 **person**

ADJ. **awful, crashing, dreadful, real, terrible, utter** *Her husband is a crashing bore.*

PHRASES **a bit of a bore 2 a bore** sth that you have to do

ADJ. **awful, great, real, terrible** *It's an awful bore having to meet my aunt for lunch.*

bore *verb*

ADV. **easily** *I'm very easily bored.*

PREP. **with** *I won't bore you with too many details.*

PHRASES **bore sb out of their (tiny) mind, bore sb rigid/silly/stiff, bore sb to death/distraction/tears** *That lecture bored me to tears!*

bored *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow** *Some children get bored very quickly.* **| remain**

ADV. **really, terribly, very | thoroughly | a bit, faintly, a little, pretty, rather, slightly**

PREP. **at** *bored at the prospect of going shopping* **| by** *He seemed faintly bored by the whole process.* **| with** *He was bored with their conversation.*

PHRASES **bored out of your (tiny) mind** *He walked along, bored out of his mind.* **| bored rigid/silly/stiff** *I remember being bored stiff during my entire time at school.* **| bored to death/distraction/tears** *She was alone all day and bored to death.*

boredom *noun*

ADJ. **sheer, utter | terminal**

VERB + BOREDOM **prevent | alleviate, combat, relieve** *A walkman can relieve the boredom of running.* **| die from/of, go mad with** *I'd die of boredom if I lived in the country.* **| drive sb mad with** *Unemployment can drive you mad with boredom.*

PHRASES **a high/low boredom threshold** *Sorting mail is not a job for people with a low boredom threshold.*

boring *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become, get | make sth** *Try not to make the diet boring.* **| consider sb/sth, find sb/sth, think sb/sth** *She found her job boring.*

ADV. **awfully, dead, extremely, incredibly, really, terribly, very** *That film was dead boring.* **| completely, downright, utterly | a bit, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, slightly**

PREP. **for** *The game was boring for the spectators.*

PHRASES **boring old** *Green is much better than boring old white.*

born *verb* **be born**

ADV. **prematurely**

PREP. **into** *She was born into a wealthy family.* **| of** *(formal) to be born of noble parents* **| to** *babies who are born to very young mothers* **| with** *Their child was born with a serious medical problem.*

PHRASES **American, British, etc. born** *The part is played by an American-born actress.* **| be born alive/dead, be born and bred/brought up/raised** *I was born and bred in Liverpool.* **| be born blind, deaf, etc., be born out of wedlock/ outside marriage**

borough *noun*

ADJ. **county, metropolitan, municipal**

BOROUGH + NOUN **council, councillor**

PREP. **in/within a/the ~** *to establish unemployment committees in all metropolitan boroughs* **| throughout a/the ~** *There are factories scattered throughout the borough.* **| ~ of** *the London borough of Lambeth*

borrow *verb*

1 **money/things**

ADV. **heavily** *He borrowed heavily to set the company up.*

PREP. **from** *She borrowed £50 from her mother.* **| off** *(informal) I'll borrow some coffee off the neighbours.*

2 **ideas, etc.**

ADV. **freely**

PREP. **from** *His designs borrow freely from the architecture of ancient Egypt.*

bosom *noun*

ADJ. **ample, enormous, large, full**

BOSOM + VERB **heave, rise and fall** *Her bosom rose and fell; she was out of breath from keeping up with him.*

PHRASES **clutch sb/sth to your bosom** (*literary*) *She clutched her son tightly to her bosom.*

boss *noun*

ADJ. **big | company, party, union**

bother *noun*

VERB + BOTHER **have** *I had a little bother finding your house.* **| cause, give sb** *Your little boy didn't give me any bother.* **| go to** *I wouldn't go to the bother of making the cakes myself.* **| put sb to** *I'd love to come and stay with you, but I don't want to put you to any bother.* **| save sb** *Getting a taxi will save you the bother of picking me up from the station.*

PHRASES **a bit/a little/a lot/a spot of bother** *He's in a spot of bother with the police.* **| no bother** *The children were no bother.*

PREP. **without any ~** *We found the hotel without any bother.* **| ~ to** *I don't mind looking after your dog?it's no bother to me.* **| ~ with** *He's got a spot of bother with his eyes.*

bothered *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | get** *He never got too bothered about the mess.*

ADV. **not at all, not in the least** *I'm not in the least bothered about the price.* **| not particularly, not really, not (all) that, not too** *He is not that bothered about his appearance. They're not really bothered about what you do.*

PREP. **about** *He wasn't too bothered about the slight leak.* **| by** *He was still bothered by a persistent leg injury.* **| with** *They did not want to be bothered with her problems.*

PHRASES **can't/couldn't be bothered** *He couldn't even be bothered to turn round.* **| (get all) hot and bothered** *She had got herself all hot and bothered about the test.*

bottle *noun*

ADJ. **full | empty | recyclable, returnable | beer, medicine, milk, etc. | hot-water | feeding**

VERB + BOTTLE **fill** *She filled the bottle with water.* **| empty | break/crack open** (only used about alcoholic drinks), **open, uncork** *Let's crack open a bottle of champagne to celebrate.* **| drink, have, wash sth down with** *We washed the stew down with a bottle of cheap red wine.* **| share | bring** (= to bring a bottle of alcoholic drink to a party)

BOTTLE + NOUN **top | opener | bank | feeding**

PREP. **over a/the ~** *We discussed the problem over a bottle of wine.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **be on the bottle** (= to be an alcoholic), **hit the bottle/take to the bottle** (= to start drinking alcohol heavily)

bottom *noun*

1 **lowest part of sth**

ADJ. **false** *a case with a false bottom*

VERB + BOTTOM **arrive at, fall to, get to, reach, sink to** *He reached the bottom of the steps in no time. The boat sank to the bottom of the sea.* **| touch** *She could only just touch the bottom* (= of a swimming pool, etc.).

BOTTOM + NOUN **end, half**

PREP. **along the ~** *We rode along the bottom of the valley.* **| at the ~** *at the bottom of the hill* **| from the ~** *strange sounds from the bottom of the well* **| in the ~** *in the bottom of my bag* **| on the ~** *on the bottom of the box* **| near/towards the ~** *near the bottom of the page*

2 **least important position**

VERB + BOTTOM **start at, work up from** *He started at the bottom and worked his way up through the company.*

PREP. **at the ~, near/towards the ~** *He's near the bottom of the class.*

3 **part of the body**

ADJ. **bare**

VERB + BOTTOM **smack**

4 **basic cause of sth/truth about sth**

VERB + BOTTOM **be at, lie at** *I'd love to know what lies at the bottom of all this.* **| get to** *The only way to get to the bottom of it is to confront the chairman.*

boulevard *noun*

ADJ. **broad, wide | tree-lined**

BOULEVARD + VERB **be lined with sth** *a boulevard lined with pavement cafes*

PREP. **along, down, up, etc. a/the ~** *They sauntered along the tree-lined boulevard.*

bounce *verb*

ADV. **high** *The ball bounced high and she missed it.* **| back, off** *The stone hit the window but bounced off.*

PREP. **against, down, into, off, on, towards** *Short sound waves bounce off even small objects.*

bound *adj.*

1 **bound to do sth certain to do sth**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **almost** *These problems were almost bound to arise.*

2 **bound (to do sth): obliged to do sth**

VERBS **be, feel | become | remain | hold sb** *The president said the country could not be held bound by a treaty signed by the previous regime.*

ADJ. **absolutely | irrevocably | by law, contractually, legally** *Officials are bound by law to investigate any possible fraud. He was legally bound to report them to the authorities.* **| (in) honour, in duty** (also **duty-bound**), **morally** *I felt in duty bound to report the incident.*

PREP. **by** *We are legally bound by this decision.*

3 **travelling in a particular direction**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **homeward, outward**

PREP. **for** *tourists who are bound for Europe*

4 **bound up: closely connected**

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **closely, intimately | inevitably, inextricably | intrinsically | together** *A person's name and their sense of their own identity are often closely bound up together.*

PREP. **with** *From that moment my life became inextricably bound up with hers.*

boundary *noun*

1 **line that marks the limits of a place**

ADJ. **common | northern, southern, etc. | national, state | district, parish**

VERB + BOUNDARY **have | form, mark** *The river forms the boundary.* **| share | draw, establish, fix, set** *The boundary was fixed just south of the farm.* **| redraw | cross** *We've just crossed the boundary into Sussex.* **| extend**

BOUNDARY + NOUN **fence, hedge, line, wall | dispute** *a boundary dispute with their neighbours*

PREP. **across/over the ~** *They drove across the boundary.* **| along the ~** *We continued along the southern boundary of the county.* **| at/on the ~** *We had to stop at the boundary. on the boundary of the two countries* **| beyond the ~** *She had never strayed beyond the city boundaries.* **| within the ~s** *within the boundaries of the old city walls* **| ~ between** *the boundary between Sussex and Surrey* **| ~ with** *The state has a boundary with Ontario.*

2 **limit**

ADJ. **traditional**

VERB + BOUNDARY **cross** *This job crosses the traditional boundary between social work and health care.* **| extend, push back** *research which extends the boundaries of human knowledge* **| overstep**

PREP. **across ~s** *His policies appeal across party political boundaries.* **| beyond the ~s** *going beyond the boundaries of accepted behaviour* **| on the ~** *on the boundary of physics and chemistry* **| within the ~s** *keeping within the boundaries of the law* **| ~ between** *the boundary between sanity and insanity*

PHRASES **the boundaries of taste** *In her performance she had clearly overstepped the boundaries of good taste.*

bouquet *noun*

ADJ. **huge, large | small | bridal, wedding**

VERB + BOUQUET **carry | send (sb)**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Are there any roses in your bouquet?* **| ~ of** *He sent her a large bouquet of wild flowers.*

bout *noun*

ADJ. **bad, nasty, prolonged, serious, severe** *I got a bad bout of flu last winter.* **| mild | drinking**

VERB + BOUT **get, have, suffer from**

PREP. **during a/the ~ | ~ of** *a bout of depression*

boutique *noun*

ADJ. **chic, elegant, exclusive, smart | fashion**

VERB + BOUTIQUE **open | run**

bow1 /baq/ *noun*

1 **act of bowing**

ADJ. **deep, low | little, slight | formal, stiff**

VERB + BOW **give, make** *He gave a formal bow and left the room.* **| take** (= used about a performer) *The song ended and Albert took a bow. (figurative) The team's chairman takes his final bow at this match* (= is retiring after this match).

PREP. **~ to** *He made a deep bow to the king.*

2 **front part of a ship**

ADJ. **port, starboard** *There's a small boat on the port bow.*

VERB + BOW **cross** *A huge whale crossed our bows.*

PREP. **across the ~** *They fired a shot across our bows.* **| in the ~** *We left two men in the bows to receive the cargo.* **| off the ~** *100 yards off our bows* **| on the ~** *The ship's name was printed on her bow.* **| over the ~** *There were huge waves breaking over the bows.*

bow2 /baq/ *verb*

ADV. **deeply, low** *He swept off his hat and bowed deeply to the Queen.* **| slightly | politely, respectfully | down**

PREP. **before** *The Emperor's subjects bowed down before him.* **| to** *The pianist stood up and bowed to the audience.*

bowel *noun*

ADJ. **large, small**

VERB + BOWEL **empty, evacuate, move, open**

BOWEL + NOUN **action, function, habit, movement** *Patients are asked to report any change in bowel habit. He's been having painful bowel movements.* **| frequency | wall | cancer, disease, disorder, obstruction, problems, tumour | biopsy, surgery**

PREP. **in the ~**

PHRASES **irritable bowel syndrome**

bowl *noun*

ADJ. **deep, shallow | empty, full | ceramic, china, crystal, cut-glass, earthenware, enamel, glass | food, fruit, porridge, pudding, punch** (also **punchbowl**), **salad, soup, sugar, water** *I refilled the dog's water bowl.* **| mixing, serving | washing-up | finger** *I put down the chicken bone and rinsed my fingers in the finger bowl.* **| begging** *(figurative) The school is always having to get out the begging bowl for books and basic equipment.* **| goldfish | lavatory, toilet**

VERB + BOWL **fill, pour (sb), pour sth into** *He poured himself a bowl of soup.* **| empty | drink from/out of, eat from/out of**

BOWL + VERB **contain sth, hold sth** *a bowl containing flour This bowl holds about four pints.* **| overflow** *The washing-up bowl was overflowing.*

PREP. **from a/the ~** *I helped myself to an apple from the bowl.* **| out of a/the ~** *The boy was drinking milk out of a bowl.* **| in/into a/the ~** *Mix the ingredients in a deep bowl. Sieve the flour into a bowl.* **| ~ of** *a bowl of cherries*

bowling *noun*

1 **indoor game**

ADJ. **tenpin**

VERB + BOWLING **go** *Let's go bowling on Saturday.*

BOWLING + NOUN **ball | alley | green** > Special page at SPORT

2 **in the game of cricket**

ADJ. **fast, pace, quick | slow | seam, spin, swing | short-pitched | intimidatory**

VERB + BOWLING **open** *McArthur opened the bowling on the first day of the match.*

BOWLING + NOUN **attack** *England were no match for the Indian bowling attack.* **| average | crease**

box office *noun*

BOX OFFICE + NOUN **hit, success | receipts, takings** *Box office receipts for the film have hit $50 million.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *Tickets are available at the box office.*

PHRASES **do well/badly at the box office** *The musical has done very well at the box office* (= a lot of tickets have been sold).

box *noun*

1 **container**

ADJ. **oblong, rectangular, square | upturned** *They were sitting round the fire on upturned boxes.* | cardboard | storage | chocolate, cigar, egg | jewel/jewellery, shoe, tool (also **toolbox**) **| cassette, CD, video | gift | lunch, sandwich | first-aid | (safe/safety) deposit, security** *There is a safety deposit box in every room of the hotel.* **| cash, money** *The cash box was kept in the safe at the back of the shop. She opened her money box to see if she had saved enough for a tennis racket.* **| collection, donation** *The exhibition is free, but there is a collection box for donations.*

QUANT. **pile, stack**

VERB + BOX **fill, pack** *She filled the box with old clothes.* **| pack sth in/into, put sth in/into, put sth away in, store sth in** *We packed all the books into boxes.* **| remove sth from, take sth out of | empty, unpack | open | close, shut | lock**

BOX + VERB **contain sth, be filled with/full of sth, hold sth** *This box holds ten candles and costs £21.* **| be labelled sth, be marked sth** *a box marked 'fragile'* **| be covered in/with sth, be lined with sth** *The dog sleeps in a box lined with an old blanket.*

PREP. **in/into a/the ~, inside a/the ~, out of a/the ~ | ~ of** *a box of chocolates*

PHRASES **the lid of a box**

2 **enclosed area**

ADJ. **soundproof | call, phone, telephone | jury, witness | commentary, press** *There was a babble of languages in the commentary box when the race began.* **| director's, executive, hospitality** *They drank champagne as they watched the match from the executive box.* **| private, Royal** *a private box at the theatre* **| signal | horse** (also **horsebox)** *The car in front was pulling a horsebox.*

PREP. **in/into a/the ~**

3 **square on a form/screen**

ADJ. **appropriate, relevant** *Tick the relevant box below.* **| dialog/dialogue** *Click on 'open file' in the dialogue box.* **| question**

VERB + BOX **fill in, put sth in, tick, write (sth) in** *Put a cross in the box if you agree with the comments.*

PREP. **in/into a/the ~**

boxing *noun*

ADJ. **heavyweight, lightweight, middleweight, etc. | amateur, professional, unlicensed** *Unlicensed boxing can be very dangerous.* **| world** *the most respected coach in world boxing* **| kick, Thai | shadow** (also **shadow-boxing**) (= boxing with an imaginary opponent) *(figurative) The two candidates engaged in shadow-boxing before the election.*

VERB + BOXING **do** *He does boxing in his spare time.*

BOXING + NOUN **boot, glove | competition, match, tournament | title | champion | ring | skill, technique | coach, promoter | career | enthusiast, fan | writer | circles** *He is highly respected in boxing circles.* > Special page at SPORT

boy *noun*

ADJ. **big** *Your boy is quite big for his age. Don't cry?you're a big boy now.* **| little, small** *A little boy rode by on a tricycle. Their boy is small for his age.* **| young** *Our youngest boy is just starting school.* **| elder, eldest, older** *How old is your eldest boy?* **| baby | adolescent, teenage | good** *Eat up your greens?there's a good boy.* **| naughty | bright, clever**

VERB + BOY **have** *They've had a baby boy. I've got three boys.*

boycott *noun*

ADJ. **mass, total, worldwide | consumer, economic, trade** *a consumer boycott of GM foods*

VERB + BOYCOTT **declare, impose, introduce** *Opposition groups declared a boycott of the elections.* **| call for, threaten** *Lawyers threatened a boycott of the courts.* **| end, lift** *Politicians want to end their boycott of the talks.* **| join** *There is pressure on the biggest union to join the boycott.*

BOYCOTT + NOUN **campaign**

PREP. **~ by** *a boycott by international singers* **| ~ of** *The group is calling for a mass consumer boycott of these products.* **| ~ on** *The US has imposed a boycott on some European goods.*

boycott *verb*

ADV. **officially**

VERB + BOYCOTT **threaten to | call on sb to, urge sb to** *They have urged people to boycott foreign products.*

boyfriend *noun*

ADJ. **current, latest, new | ex-, former, old | long-standing, long-term, serious, steady | live-in | jealous | jilted** *She was stalked by a jilted ex-boyfriend.*

QUANT. **string, succession** *She had a string of wealthy boyfriends before she finally married.*

VERB + BOYFRIEND **have** *Have you got a boyfriend?* **| meet | live with | sleep with | marry**

BOYFRIEND + NOUN **trouble** *She's unhappy because she's been having boyfriend trouble.*

bra *noun*

ADJ. **padded, strapless, underwired, uplift | maternity, nursing | sports**

VERB + BRA **put on | take off | do up | undo, unhook**

BRA + NOUN **strap** > Special page at CLOTHES

brace *noun*

1 **for supporting a part of the body**

ADJ. **leg, neck, shoulder**

VERB + BRACE **have, wear** *I used to wear a brace.*

PREP. **~ on** *a brace on his teeth*

2 **braces: for holding trousers up**

BRACE + VERB **hold sth up, support sth** *The braces held up his trousers.* > Special page at CLOTHES

bracket *noun*

1 **brackets marks round extra information in writing**

ADJ. **angle, curly, round, square**

VERB + BRACKET **enclose sth in, give sth in, put sth in** *The prices are given in square brackets.*

PREP. **in** *The words in brackets should be deleted.* | **inside, outside, within** *The numbers outside the curly brackets are the sales figures.*

2 **range**

ADJ. **age, income, price, tax | higher, top, upper | middle | lower**

PREP. **in/within** *These machines are in the higher price bracket.* | **outside** *people outside this age bracket*

brain *noun*

1 **part of the body**

ADJ. **human | left, right** *The left brain controls the right-hand side of the body.*

BRAIN + NOUN **cell, tissue | region | function, process | activity | damage, disease, disorder, failure, haemorrhage, illness, injury, tumour | scan | surgeon, surgery**

PREP. **in the/your ~** *Doctors tried to reduce the swelling in his brain.* **| on the/your ~** *He was found to have a blood clot on his brain. (figurative) He's got football on the brain* (= thinks about nothing but football).

PHRASES **blow your brains out** *While cleaning his shotgun he had accidentally blown his own brains out.*

2 **ability to think/intelligence**

ADJ. **fertile, fine, good, great, quick | muddled, tired** *My tired brain couldn't cope with such a complex problem.* **| analytical**

VERB + BRAIN **rack** *We racked our brains but we couldn't come up with a solution.* **| pick sb's** (= ask sb for information because they know more about a subject than you) *I need to pick your brains: what can you tell me about credit unions?* **| take** *It doesn't take much brain to work out that both stories can't be true.*

BRAIN + VERB **function, tick over, work** *It's important to keep your brain ticking over.* **| reel** *His brain reeled as he realized the implication of his dismissal.* **| register sth** *The stopping distance includes the time taken for the brain to register the need to stop.*

BRAIN + NOUN **power** (also **brainpower)**

PREP. **~ behind** *the brains behind the robberies*

PHRASES **brains and brawn/brains and not brawn, etc.** *They relied on brains rather than brawn* (= intelligence, not strength). **| have a brain for sth** *She has a* *good brain for mathematics.*

brake *noun*

ADJ. **defective, faulty | front, rear | foot, hand | air, anti-lock, disc, drum, vacuum**

VERB + BRAKE **apply, hit, jam on, put/slam your foot on, put on, slam on** *She slammed on the brakes to try to avoid the dog.* **| keep your foot on | let off, release, take your foot off** *He released the brake and sped off.*

BRAKE + VERB **work** *My brakes are not working properly.* **| fail** *The car crashed after its brakes failed.* **| screech, squeal | be on/off** *Is the brake on?*

BRAKE + NOUN **failure | cable, fluid, lights, pads, pedal, pipes**

PHRASES **act/serve as a brake on sth** *(figurative)*, **put a brake/the brakes on sth** *(figurative) The need to earn some money put the brakes on my wilder ambitions.* **| a screech/squeal of brakes** *We heard the screech of brakes, followed by a loud crash.*

brake *verb*

ADV. **hard, heavily, sharply, suddenly, violently**

PHRASES **brake to a halt** *The train braked to a shuddering halt.* **| brake to avoid sth** *She braked suddenly to avoid a cat.*

branch *noun*

1 **part of a tree**

ADJ. **top/topmost | low, overhanging** *Be careful of overhanging branches.* **| bare, dead** *the bare branches of a tree in winter*

2 **part of a larger organization**

ADJ. **central, high street, local, overseas, regional**

VERB + BRANCH **establish, open, set up** *The store is opening more local branches.* **| close (down)**

BRANCH + NOUN **chairman, manager, member, office, representative, secretary** > Special page at BUSINESS

brand *noun*

1 **type of product made by a particular manufacturer**

ADJ. **leading, major, principal, top** *the world's leading brand of whisky* **| famous, favourite, popular, well-known | own** (= goods marked with the name of a particular shop instead of that of the manufacturer) *Supermarkets make a lot of profit on their own brand products.*

BRAND + NOUN **identity, image, name** *The company owes its success to brand image.* **| leader | loyalty**

PREP. **~ of** *a well-known brand of toothpaste*

2 **particular type of sth**

ADJ. **particular, special, unique** *His designs have a unique brand of stylishness.* **| ~ of** *his particular brand of humour*

brandy *noun*

ADJ. **double, large | single, small | stiff** *a stiff brandy and soda* (= containing a lot of brandy and not much soda) **| straight | cherry, plum, etc.**

QUANT. **dash, drop, nip** *He added a dash of brandy to his coffee.* **| measure, shot, tot** *She poured herself a large measure of brandy.* **| bottle, flask, glass, hip-flask**

VERB + BRANDY **drink** *Do you drink brandy?* **| have** *I'll have some brandy, please.* **| pour (sb) | sip | gulp, swig | down, finish | distil, produce**

BRANDY + NOUN **bottle | balloon** (= a kind of glass), **glass** *He sat cradling his brandy glass.*

brass *noun*

1 metal

ADJ. **gleaming, glittering, polished, shiny | solid**

VERB + BRASS **be made from/in/(out) of** *candlesticks made of solid brass*

PREP. **in ~** *The door knocker was a female figure in brass.*

2 musical instruments made of brass

BRASS + NOUN **band | instrument | section** *the brass section of the orchestra* > Special page at MUSIC

bravado *noun*

ADJ. **sheer | mere | false, forced**

PREP. **out of ~** *He behaved aggressively out of bravado.* **| with ~** *'I'll be fine on my own,' she said with bravado.*

PHRASES **a display/show of bravado**

brave *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | make sb** *The whisky had made me brave.*

ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, really, terribly, very | quite | amazingly, incredibly**

bravery *noun*

ADJ. **great, outstanding**

VERB + BRAVERY **demonstrate, display, show**

BRAVERY + NOUN **award, medal**

PREP. **with ~** *The men fought with great bravery.*

PHRASES **an act of bravery**

brawl *noun*

ADJ. **drunken | bar-room, pub, street | mass**

VERB + BRAWL **provoke, spark, start | be/become/get involved in, be/get caught up in, get into**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *They got caught up in a street brawl.* **| ~ between** *a brawl between different gangs of football supporters.* **| ~ over** *a brawl over a woman*

breach *noun*

1 **breaking of a law/an agreement/a rule**

ADJ. **clear, fundamental, grave, serious | deliberate, flagrant** *He refused to bow to the Queen, in deliberate breach of etiquette.* **| minor | security**

VERB + BREACH **constitute** *Such behaviour constitutes a breach of confidentiality.* **| commit**

PREP. **in ~ of** *The court's decision is in breach of the European Convention on human rights.* **| ~ of** *a minor breach of discipline*

PHRASES **a breach of confidence/trust, a breach of confidentiality/contract** *He was sued for breach of contract.* **| a breach of security, a breach of the peace**

2 **break in friendly relations**

VERB + BREACH **cause, lead to | heal, repair**

PREP. **~ between** *What caused the breach between the two brothers?* **| ~ with** *She left home following the breach with her family.*

bread *noun*

ADJ. **fresh | hard, mouldy, soggy, stale** *This bread is going stale.* **| crusty** *some nice crusty white bread* **| sliced | unleavened | home-baked, home-made | fried | garlic | black, brown, granary, naan, pitta, rye, soda, white, wholemeal | French, Italian, etc.**

QUANT. **loaf | chunk, crumb, crust, hunk, morsel, piece, slice** *She tore off a large hunk of bread.*

VERB + BREAD **bake, make** *the smell of freshly-baked bread* **| cut, slice | butter, put sth on, spread** *bread thickly spread with plum jam* **| toast**

BREAD + NOUN **dough | pudding, roll, sauce | bin, knife**

PREP. **on the ~** *What would you like on your bread?*

PHRASES **bread and butter/margarine** *a plate of bread and butter* **| bread and cheese/jam, bread and water** *He had to live on bread and water for two weeks.* **| bread and wine** (= the food given to Christians during the Communion service) *People started going up to receive the bread and wine.* > Special page at FOOD

breadth *noun*

1 **distance between two sides of sth**

PREP. **in ~** *The pool is 5 metres in breadth.*

PHRASES **the length and breadth of sth** *He travels the length and breadth of* (= all over) *the country.*

2 **great extent or variety**

ADJ. **full, great, sheer**

PHRASES **breadth of experience** *I need a greater breadth of experience.* **| breadth of interest/knowledge/understanding, breadth of mind, breadth of vision**

break *noun*

1 **short rest/holiday**

ADJ. **short | coffee, lunch, tea | Christmas, Easter** *Are you going away for the Easter break?*

VERB + BREAK **have, take** *We'll take a break now and resume in half an hour.* **| need**

BREAK + NOUN **time**

PREP. **at ~** *I'll see you at break.* **| during (a/the) ~** *I had a word with John during the break.* **| without a ~** *We worked all day without a break.* **| ~ for** *a break for lunch* **| ~ from** *a break from looking after the children*

2 **change/interruption in sth**

ADJ. **clean, complete | career | commercial**

VERB + BREAK **make** *His new work makes a break with the past. I wanted to leave but was nervous about making the break.*

PREP. **~ from** *a break from tradition* **| ~ in** *a break in the weather* **| ~ with**

3 **opportunity**

ADJ. **big, lucky**

VERB + BREAK **get** *I always knew I would get my lucky break one day.* **| give sb** *He's the director who gave her her first big break.*

break *verb*

ADV. **easily | in half, in two** *She broke the chocolate bar in two and gave a piece to me.* **| up** *She broke the chocolate up into small pieces.*

PREP. **into** *The glass broke into hundreds of pieces.* **PHRASAL VERBS break down**

1 fail

ADV. **completely, irretrievably** *They were divorced on the grounds that their marriage had broken down irretrievably.*

2 start crying

PHRASES **break down and cry/weep, break down in tears** *She broke down in tears as she spoke to reporters.* **break off**

ADV. **abruptly** *He broke off abruptly when Jo walked in.*

PREP. **from** *She broke off from the conversation to answer the telephone.*

breakdown *noun*

1 **mechanical failure**

ADJ. **electrical, mechanical**

BREAKDOWN + VERB **occur**

BREAKDOWN + NOUN **organization, service** *The national breakdown organizations are on hand to help motorists 24 hours a day.* | **crane, lorry, vehicle**

2 **failure/end of sth**

ADJ. **serious | complete, irretrievable** *The only ground for divorce is the irretrievable breakdown of the marriage.* | **communication, family, marital, marriage, relationship**

VERB + BREAKDOWN **cause, lead to**

PREP. **~ in/of** *a breakdown in negotiations*

3 **collapse of mental health**

ADJ. **emotional, mental, nervous, psychological**

VERB + BREAKDOWN **have, suffer**

4 **list of the details of sth**

ADJ. **detailed, full | cost**

VERB + BREAKDOWN **prepare** *I have prepared a detailed cost breakdown for the project.* | **give sb, provide (sb with)**

PREP. **~ by, ~ of** *Please provide us with a breakdown of expenditure by department.*

breakfast *noun*

ADJ. **big, full, good, hearty, large, proper, solid, substantial | light, modest | cooked, fried | continental, English, American-style** *a full English breakfast of cereal, bacon and eggs and toast* **| buffet/buffet-style | hasty, hurried, quick | leisurely, long | early, late | working | champagne**

BREAKFAST + NOUN **cereal | dishes, things** *Would you clear away the breakfast things?* **| room | meeting | show, television**

PHRASES **bed and breakfast** *Bed and breakfast accommodation is available near the museum.* **| breakfast in bed** *He treated his wife to breakfast in bed on her birthday.*
> Note at MEAL(for verbs)

break-in *noun*

ADJ. **attempted | factory, house, etc.** BREAK-IN + NOUN **happen, take place**

PREP. **~ at** *a break-in at the factory*

breakthrough *noun*

ADJ. **big, crucial, great, historic, important, major, real, significant | diplomatic, medical, political, scientific, technological**

VERB + BREAKTHROUGH **be, represent | achieve, make** *We have achieved a real breakthrough in the search for peace.*

BREAKTHROUGH + VERB **come, happen** *The crucial breakthrough came almost by accident.*

PREP. **~ for** *The new deal represents a major breakthrough for the company.* **| ~ in** *a significant breakthrough in computer design*

breakup *noun*

ADJ. **family, marital, marriage**

VERB + BREAKUP **lead to**

breast *noun*

1 **part of a woman's body**

ADJ. **ample, big, full, heavy, large | little, small | bare, naked | firm, pert, pointed | round, shapely | sagging**

BREAST + NOUN **cancer | screening | milk**

PHRASES **put a baby to the breast** (= to feed a baby from the breast), **take the breast** (= to feed from the breast)

2 **your chest**

PHRASES **beat your breast, hold/clutch sb/sth to your breast** *He held the letter to his breast.*

breaststroke *nou*n > Note at STROKE

breath *noun*

ADJ. **big, deep, long, slow | quick, shallow, short | bad** *Smoking gives you bad breath.*

VERB + BREATH **draw (in), suck in, take** *He spoke solidly for twenty minutes, barely pausing to draw breath. Take a deep breath and try to relax.* **| let out** *He let out a long breath.* **| hold** *How long can you hold your breath for?* **| get back** *I needed a few minutes to get my breath back after the run.* **| catch** *When he said he had resigned, I caught my breath in surprise.* **| gasp for** *He came up out of the water gasping for breath.* **| pause for** *She poured out her story, hardly pausing for breath.* **| save** *(figurative) It's useless talking to him?you may as well save your breath.* **| waste** *(figurative) Don't waste your breath. He never listens to advice.*

BREATH + VERB **come in gasps/pants/puffs** *His breath came in short gasps.*

PREP. **on sb's ~** *I could smell gin on her breath.* **| out of ~** *I'm a bit out of breath after my run.* **| under your ~** *He was whispering rude remarks about her under his breath.* **| ~ of** *It was a still day, without a breath of wind.*

PHRASES **a breath of fresh air** *I'm going outside for a breath of fresh air.* **| an intake of breath** *When the news was announced, there was a sharp intake of breath.* **| in the same breath** *How can we trust a government that mentions community care and cutbacks in the same breath?* **| short of breath** *I felt a bit short of breath and had to sit down.* **| take sb's breath away** *(figurative) The sheer audacity of the man took my breath away.*

breathe *verb*

1 **air/breath**

ADV. **fast, quickly, rapidly | slowly | deeply | shallowly | hard, heavily** *They were both breathing hard from the steep climb.* **| gently | easily, steadily** *She was beginning to breathe more easily.* **| normally, properly** *I can't breathe properly? I'm gasping for air!* **| raggedly** *He was breathing raggedly, mouth open.* **| in, out** *She breathed slowly in and out.*

VERB + BREATHE **can/can't, could/couldn't, could barely/hardly/scarcely | not dare** *He hardly dared breathe in case they heard him.*

PREP. **through** *Always breathe through your nose.*

2 **say quietly**

ADV. **huskily, softly** *'I love you,' she breathed softly.*

breather *noun*

ADJ. **quick, short, slight**

VERB + BREATHER **have, stop for, take | enjoy | give sb** *The weekend will give me a slight breather to finish this work in.*

breathing *noun*

ADJ. **deep | shallow | controlled, even, regular, steady | hoarse, laboured, uneven** *His breathing was laboured, and he could hardly speak.* **| heavy** *She picked up the phone and heard sounds of heavy breathing.*

BREATHING + NOUN **apparatus | difficulties | exercise** *Try breathing exercises to calm your nerves.*

breathless *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | become | leave sb, make sb** *The unaccustomed exercise left him breathless.*

ADV. **very | a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat** *He felt quite breathless.* **| suddenly**

PREP. **with** *By the end of the walk, she was breathless with exertion. The children peered through the open door, breathless with excitement.*

breathtaking *adj*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **absolutely, quite, truly**

breed *noun*

1 **type of animal**

ADJ. **new | rare | hardy**

VERB + BREED **keep** *a farm that keeps rare breeds*

PREP. **~ of** *a new breed of dairy cattle*

2 **particular type of person**

ADJ. **new | dying, rare** *Entertainers of this sort are now a dying breed.*

PREP. **~ of** *a new breed of international criminals*

PHRASES **a breed apart** *Health workers are a breed apart in their commitment and dedication to duty.*

breed *verb*

ADV. **in captivity | successfully | commercially | selectively** *fish that have been selectively bred for their appearance*

PREP. **for** *dogs that are bred for their fighting ability* **| from** *She's a lovely cat. Will you breed from her?*

breeding *noun*

1 **activity of producing plants/animals**

ADJ. **animal, fish, plant | selective** *Certain characteristics can be developed through selective breeding.* **| captive** *a campaign to save the condor by captive breeding*

BREEDING + NOUN **season | stock | programme**

2 **good manners/behaviour**

ADJ. **good** *Her good breeding shows in her exquisite manners.*

VERB + BREEDING **have** *The young man clearly has breeding.*

breeze *noun*

ADJ. **faint, gentle, light, little, slight, soft | stiff, strong | sudden | cold, cool, fresh | warm | pleasant** *pleasant sea breezes* **| evening, morning, night | sea, summer | northerly, westerly, etc.**

BREEZE + VERB **blow, come, drift** *A light breeze came off the sea.* **| ruffle sth, rustle sth, stir sth** *A sudden breeze rustled the long dry grass.* **| come up** *A breeze came up in the late afternoon.* **| drop**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The curtains fluttered in the night breeze.*

breezy *adj.*

1 **windy**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very | a little, slightly** *It's a little breezy up here.*

PHRASES **bright and breezy** *The weather at the seaside was ideal?bright and breezy.*

2 **cheerful and relaxed**

VERBS **be, seem, sound** *She tried to sound breezy on the phone.*

PHRASES **bright and breezy** *His bright and breezy manner sometimes irritated people.*

bribe *noun*

VERB + BRIBE **give sb, offer (sb), pay sb** *He admitted paying bribes to police officers.* **| accept, take**

PREP. **in ~s** *He paid out millions of dollars in bribes.* **| ~ of** *a bribe of £200*

bribery *noun*

ADJ. **political**

VERB + BRIBERY **resort to**

BRIBERY + NOUN **scandal**

PHRASES **bribery and corruption** *The charge in the present case is one of bribery and corruption.* > Note at CRIME(for more verbs)

brick *noun*

ADJ. **red** *a house of red brick*

VERB + BRICK **lay** *learning to lay bricks properly*

BRICK + NOUN **wall | building | works** *He got a job at the local brick works.*

PREP. **in/of ~** *houses of brick*

PHRASES **brick by brick** *They moved the whole house, brick by brick.* **| bricks and mortar** *investing in bricks and mortar* **| a course of bricks** *They put an extra course of bricks round the pool.*

bride *noun*

ADJ. **beautiful, lovely, radiant | blushing | child, teenage, young | new | future, intended, prospective** (also **bride-to-be**) **| jilted**

VERB + BRIDE **give away** *The bride's father traditionally walks with her to the altar to give her away.* **| toast** *Everyone raised their glasses to toast the bride.*

BRIDE + VERB **wear sth | receive the guests**

PHRASES **the bride and groom**

bridegroom *noun*

ADJ. **future, prospective**

BRIDEGROOM + VERB **receive the guests** *The bride and bridegroom received their guests in the great hall.*

PHRASES **the bride and bridegroom**

bridesmaid *noun*

ADJ. **chief**

VERB + BRIDESMAID **toast** *The bridegroom asked the guests to stand and then toasted the bridesmaids.*

bridge *noun*

1 **structure across a river, road, etc.**

ADJ. **high, humpback, narrow | railway, road | Bailey, cantilever, pontoon, suspension | toll**

VERB + BRIDGE **build, erect | destroy | wash away** *Floods washed away several bridges.* **| cross** *Cross the bridge and turn right into the town.*

BRIDGE + VERB **cross sth, span sth** *The new bridge will cross the Thames at this point.* **| link sth**

PREP. **across over a/the ~** *driving over a humpback bridge* **| under a/the ~** *The road goes under the old railway bridge.* **| ~ across, over** *a bridge over the river*

2 **card game**

QUANT. **game, rubber** *I enjoy a game of bridge occasionally.*

VERB + BRIDGE **play**

BRIDGE + NOUN **tournament | partner, player**

brief *adj.*

VERBS **be** *I promised to be brief.* **| keep sth, make sth** *Could you make it brief? I've got a meeting in ten minutes.*

ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, quite, rather | comparatively, relatively | necessarily** *This necessarily brief account concentrates on two main areas.* **| mercifully** *The wait was mercifully brief, little more than an hour.* **| tantalizingly** *The diary entries were tantalizingly brief.*

brief *noun*

ADJ. **clear, detailed, written | legal, technical**

VERB + BRIEF **prepare, produce, write**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She makes all these points in her brief.* **| outside sb's ~** *How the new policy is to be implemented is outside his brief.* **| ~ on** *a technical brief on food hygiene*

PHRASES **be part of sb's brief** *It's not part of my brief to advise on financial matters.*

brief *verb*

ADV. **fully, properly, well**

PREP. **about** *The men have been fully briefed about the intended mission.* **| on** *Each member of my crew took it in turn to brief me on his particular duties.*

briefcase *noun*

ADJ. **battered** *He wore a torn suit and carried a battered briefcase.* **| bulging | executive | leather, plastic**

VERB + BRIEFCASE **open, snap open, unlock | close, lock, shut, snap shut | carry, hold, pick up | drop, put down**

BRIEFCASE + VERB **be bulging with sth, be full of sth, be stuffed with sth, contain sth**

briefing *noun*

ADJ. **detailed, full, thorough | formal, informal | final** *She returned to Washington for a final briefing.* **| press**

VERB + BRIEFING **give sb** *All staff will be given a full briefing tomorrow.* **| get, receive | arrange, hold** *I asked him to arrange a formal briefing.* **| attend**

BRIEFING + NOUN **session | document, paper**

PREP. **at a/the~** *Details of the scheme will be announced at a press briefing later today.* **| ~ by/from** *a briefing by the commanding officer* **| ~ on** *a briefing on security issues*

brigade *noun*

ADJ. **armoured, fire, infantry**

VERB + BRIGADE **command, lead | form** *A special army brigade is to be formed.* **| join**

BRIGADE + NOUN **commander | headquarters**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *units in 1st Commando Brigade* **| ~ of** *a brigade of infantry*

brigadier *nou*n > Note at RANK

bright *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem** *The factory's future now looks quite bright.* **| become**

ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, incredibly, intensely, really, surprisingly, unusually, very** *a really bright child* **| fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably** *The morning was quite bright, but it clouded over in the afternoon.* **| unnaturally** *Her eyes were unnaturally bright.*

brighten *verb*

ADV. **considerably | a bit, a little | visibly** *Their rather heavy faces brightened visibly.* **| suddenly | up** *She brightened up a bit at the thought of the holiday.*

brilliance *noun*

ADJ. **great, sheer | academic, intellectual, technical**

QUANT. **flash** *There were flashes of brilliance from several of the players.*

PREP. **with ~** *He played with great brilliance.*

brilliant *adj.*

VERBS **be, look**

ADV. **bloody** *(taboo)*, **just, really** *Winning that race was just brilliant.* **| absolutely, quite, totally, utterly** *an absolutely brilliant idea* **| technically** *Her performance was technically brilliant but lacked feeling.*

PREP. **at** *He's brilliant at football.*

brim *noun*

1 top edge of a cup, bowl, etc.

PHRASES **be filled/full to the brim, fill sth to the brim** *She filled the bowl to the brim.*

2 flat edge around the bottom of a hat

ADJ. **broad, deep, wide** *a straw hat with a wide brim*

PREP. **beneath/under a/the ~** *She watched the crowd from beneath the brim of her hat.*

bring *verb* **PHRASAL VERBS bring sb up**

ADV. **badly, well** *children who have been well brought up*

brink *noun*

ADJ. **very**

VERB + BRINK **be (poised) on, hover on, stand on, teeter on** *Scientists are on the brink of making a major new discovery. animals hovering on the very brink of extinction* **| bring sb to | fight/pull back from | bring/pull sb/sth back from** *He pulled the company back from the brink* (= saved it from disaster).

PREP. **~ of** *the brink of bankruptcy/death/war*

broad *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, pretty, quite, rather, reasonably, relatively | enough, sufficiently** *He questioned whether the school curriculum was broad enough in scope.* **| unusually** *His job gave him an acquaintance with an unusually broad spectrum of society.*

broadcast *noun*

ADJ. **radio, satellite, television | live | outside | election, news, party political, religious**

VERB + BROADCAST **give, make** *The president gave a radio broadcast to mark the end of the war.* **| hear, see**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *More details will be given in our news broadcast.* **| ~ by** *a broadcast by the prime minister* **| ~ on** *a radio broadcast on the problems of unemployment*

broadcast *verb*

ADV. **live**

PREP. **from** *We will broadcast live from the ship.* **| to** *a Christmas message broadcast to the nation*

broadcaster *noun*

ADJ. **commercial** *Existing commercial broadcasters claim the new stations are illegal.* **| independent | public service** *The country needs a national public service broadcaster like the BBC.* **| local, national | satellite**

brochure *noun*

ADJ. **(full) colour, glossy | illustrated** *Send for our illustrated brochure.* **| holiday, hotel, travel**

QUANT. **copy**

VERB + BROCHURE **browse/leaf/look through** *I leafed through the travel brochure.* **| produce, publish**

broke *adj.*

VERBS **be | go** (= go bankrupt) *The company went broke last year.*

ADV. **completely, flat** *(informal)*, **stony** *(informal) I'm stony broke at the moment.* **| nearly**

broken *adj.*

VERBS **be | get** *How did the jug get broken?*

ADV. **badly** *One of his legs was badly broken.*

broker *noun*

ADJ. credit, insurance, mortgage *Ask advice from an insurance broker.* **| honest** (= an independent person or country that acts between two sides in a dispute)

VERB + BROKER be, act as

PREP. ~ between *acting as broker between the two opposing sides* **| ~ for** *a broker for the company* > Note at JOB

bronchitis *nou*n > Special page at ILLNESS

bronze *noun*

1 **metal**

VERB + BRONZE **be cast in, be made from/in/(out) of** *The figure was cast in bronze.*

BRONZE + NOUN **ingot**

PREP. **in ~** *She works mainly in bronze.*

2 (*also* **bronze medal**) **in sports**

ADJ. **Olympic**

VERB + BRONZE **get, take, win** *She got a bronze in the long jump.*

brooch *noun*

ADJ. **cameo | diamond, pearl, etc.**

VERB + BROOCH **have on, wear | pin** *She pinned a large amethyst brooch to her lapel.*

broom *noun*

ADJ. **witch's | stiff**

VERB + BROOM **sweep sth with, use**

BROOM + NOUN **cupboard | handle**

brothel *noun*

VERB + BROTHEL **go to, visit** *He used to visit a brothel in Paris.* **| run** *She ran a brothel in Soho.*

BROTHEL + NOUN **keeper**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She works in a brothel in Brighton.*

brother *noun*

ADJ. **big, elder, older** *Bill idolizes his big brother, who is a professional footballer.* **| baby, kid, little, small, wee, younger | twin | full** (= sharing both parents) **| half-** (= sharing one parent), **step-**(also **stepbrother**) (= the son from an earlier marriage of your stepfather or stepmother) **| beloved, much-loved** *She wrote daily to her beloved brother, Leo.* **| long-lost** *His old teacher greeted him like a long-lost brother.* **| dead, deceased, late** *He married the wife of his late brother.* **| bachelor, unmarried**

PHRASES **blood brothers** (= close friends who have sworn to remain friends for life), **brother and sister** *Have you got any brothers and sisters?* **| like brothers** *The boys are so close, they're like brothers.*

brow *noun*

1 **eyebrow**

ADJ. **dark, heavy | bushy, shaggy | winged | delicate | sardonic** *She raised a sardonic brow.*

VERB + BROW **arch, raise** *She arched a brow when she saw the bill.* **| draw together, knit** *He knitted his brows in concentration.*

BROW + VERB **lift, rise | twitch | draw together, snap together** *His brows snapped together ferociously when he heard the remark.*

2 **forehead**

ADJ. **broad, wide | furrowed** *He stared at the visitors beneath a furrowed brow.* **| stern | weary | damp, perspiring, sweating | fevered**

VERB + BROW **mop, wipe | furrow, pucker, wrinkle** *She wrinkled her brow thoughtfully.*

BROW + VERB **crease, furrow, pucker, wrinkle** *His brow furrowed as he racked his brains over the question.* **| clear** *For a while she looked puzzled; then her brow cleared.* **| darken** *His brow darkened in anger.*

PREP. **across your ~** *His shaggy grey hair fell loosely across his brow.* **| from your ~** *She brushed back a stray lock of hair from her brow.* **| over your ~** *His hair fell over his brow as he turned his head.*

brown *adj.*

ADV. **very** *He looked very brown after his holiday.* **| quite, rather, slightly | uniformly** *The once-green fields were now uniformly brown.*

ADJ. **dark, deep** *her dark brown eyes* **| light, pale, soft | rich, warm** *a lovely warm brown colour* **| bright** *monkeys with bright brown fur* **| drab, dull, muddy | chestnut, chocolate, golden, reddish, rusty** > Special page at COLOUR

browser *noun*

ADJ. **web | default** *What do you use as your default browser?* **| frames-capable, frames-enabled**

VERB + BROWSER **update, upgrade**

BROWSER + VERB **support frames**

BROWSER + NOUN **toolbar, window**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *Click the 'back' button on your browser.* > Special page at COMPUTER

bruise *noun*

ADJ. **black, dark, livid, purple | swollen**

VERB + BRUISE **suffer** *She suffered only minor cuts and bruises.*

BRUISE + VERB **form** *A bruise had formed below his left eye.* **| fade**

brunt *noun*

ADJ. **full, main**

VERB + BRUNT **bear, take** *The prime minister has taken the brunt of the criticism.*

PREP. **the ~ of**

brush *noun*

ADJ. **fine, soft, stiff** *Scrub the wood thoroughly with water and a stiff brush.* **| nylon, wire | clothes, lavatory, nail, pastry, scrubbing, shaving, toilet**

VERB + BRUSH **apply sth with** *Apply the paint with a clean brush.* **| use, wield**

BRUSH + NOUN **stroke** *The artist has used tiny brush strokes.*

PREP. **with a/the ~** *Remove all the rust with a wire brush.*

PHRASES **a brush and comb, a dustpan and brush**

brush *verb*

1 clean with a brush

ADV. **down** *She hummed happily as she brushed down her coat.*

PREP. **at** *Lucille brushed at the blood on his jacket.*

PHRASES **brush sth clean**

2 touch lightly

ADV. **gently, lightly | accidentally**

PREP. **against** *She carefully avoided brushing against the man sitting beside her at the table.* **| by** *She brushed by him and dashed up the stairs.* **| past** *I hardly noticed the man who brushed past me in the corridor.* **| with** *He brushed her lips with his.*

brutality *noun*

ADJ. **extreme, great | police** *There have been many complaints of police brutality.*

QUANT. **act** *This was an act of extreme brutality.*

PREP. **~ against** *brutality against prisoners* **| ~ by** *brutality by the security forces* **| ~ to/towards** *brutality to others*

bubble *noun*

ADJ. **air, soap**

VERB + BUBBLE **blow** *children blowing bubbles* **| burst** *They jumped about, bursting the bubbles.*

BUBBLE + VERB **form** *Soap bubbles formed on the surface.* **| burst**

bubble *verb*

1 **form bubbles**

ADV. **furiously** *The water in the saucepan was bubbling furiously.* **| away, up** *The soup was bubbling away on the stove.*

2 **feeling**

ADV. **to the surface** *Emotions quickly bubble to the surface.* **| over, up** *He was bubbling over with excitement.*

PREP. **inside** *She could feel the anger bubbling up inside her.* **| with** *The business was still small but I was bubbling with ideas.*

bucket *noun*

ADJ. **empty, full | galvanized, metal, plastic | leaky | champagne, ice | water | slop, waste** *a slop bucket full of scraps of food* **| mop | coal | fire** *The sand had spilt from the fire bucket.*

VERB + BUCKET **fill** *She filled the bucket with fresh water.* **| carry | empty, pour, throw** *She poured the bucket of dirty water down the drain.*

BUCKET + VERB **be filled with/full of sth, contain sth, hold sth | overflow**

PREP. **in a/the ~ | ~ of** *a bucket of oats for the horses*

PHRASES **a bucket and spade** *The children ran down to the beach with their buckets and spades.* **| mop and bucket** *The cleaner put down his mop and bucket and sat down.*

buckle *nou*n

ADJ. **belt, shoe**

VERB + BUCKLE **do up, fasten | undo, unfasten** > Special page at CLOTHES

bud *noun*

ADJ. **flower, leaf**

VERB + BUD **be in, come into** *The roses are in bud.*

BUD + VERB **burst, open**

Buddhism *noun*

ADJ. **Zen** *She became interested in Zen Buddhism*. > Note at RELIGION(for verbs and phrases)

Buddhist *noun*

ADJ. **devout**

BUDDHIST + NOUN **beliefs, philosophy, teaching | monk**

budge *verb*

VERB + BUDGE **refuse to, will/would not**

PREP. **from** *He refuses to budge from his principles.* **| on** *The union won't budge on its demand.*

PHRASES **not budge an inch** *He threw all his weight against the door, but it wouldn't budge an inch.*

budget *noun*

ADJ. **fixed, limited, low, shoestring, small, tight | generous, large | annual, monthly, weekly, yearly | family, personal | federal, government, municipal, national, state | defence, education, health, housing, military, social security, (social) welfare | advertising, marketing, training | draft**

VERB + BUDGET **get, have** *The organization has a large annual budget.* **| allocate, draw up, plan, set** *The council has to draw up its budget for next year.* **| present, propose, submit | approve | balance** *The school has a struggle to balance its budget.* **| adhere to, keep to, stick to** *Work out a weekly budget and stick to it.* **| exceed, go over, overspend | cut, reduce, slash | increase**

BUDGET + NOUN **expenditure | deficit, surplus | constraint, limit | cuts | plans, proposals | allocation | Budget Day** (= when the government announces its budget)

PREP. **in the ~** *Is there any money left in the budget?* **| below/under ~** *Costs have been held below budget.* **| on (a) ~** *All his projects are on time and on budget. This hotel caters for people travelling on a tight budget.* **| over ~** *The project is now well over budget.* **| within ~** *to keep within budget* **| ~ for** *The budget for next year has not yet been set.* **| ~ of** *a budget of $5,000*

budget *verb*

ADV. **carefully, sensibly** *If we budget carefully we should be able to afford a holiday this year.*

PREP. **for** *We have budgeted £10,000 for advertising.*

buffer *noun*

VERB + BUFFER **act as | provide | use sth as**

BUFFER + NOUN **state, zone**

PREP. **~ against** *A family can provide a buffer against stress at work.* **| ~ between** *The organization acts as a buffer between the management and the union.*

buffet *noun*

1 on a train/in a station

ADJ. **station**

BUFFET + NOUN **bar, car, service**

2 meal

ADJ. **delicious, excellent | extensive, generous | cold, salad | running** *The running buffet is available from 6 p.m. to 2 a.m.* **| finger, fork | lunchtime**

VERB + BUFFET **serve** *A finger buffet will be served.* **| lay out** *A buffet was laid out for the conference delegates.*

BUFFET + NOUN **breakfast, dinner, lunch, meal, supper | table | reception | style** *Breakfast is served buffet style.*

bug *noun*

1 **infectious illness**

ADJ. **nasty | flu, stomach, tummy**

VERB + BUG **have | catch, come/go down with, get, pick up**

BUG + VERB **go around/round** *A stomach bug has been going round at school.* **| strike sb down**

PREP. **with a/the ~** *off work with a flu bug* > Special page at ILLNESS

2 **sudden interest in sth**

VERB + BUG **be bitten by, catch, get** *She's been bitten by the travel bug.*

BUG + VERB **bite (sb)**

3 **sth wrong in a system/machine**

ADJ. **minor, slight | computer, software**

buggy *noun*

ADJ. **baby | beach, golf**

VERB + BUGGY **push** *parents pushing baby buggies*

build *noun*

ADJ. **average, medium | slight, slim, thin | heavy, muscular, powerful, stocky, strong, thickset | athletic**

PREP. **in ~** *He's heavier in build than his brother.* **| of ~** *She is slight of build and very agile.* **| with a ~** *a small woman with a slim build*

builder *noun*

ADJ. **good, reputable | jobbing, self-employed | local** *We got a local builder to do the work for us.*

VERB + BUILDER **be apprenticed to**

BUILDER + VERB **build sth**

PHRASES **builder's merchant, builder's yard** *The house looked like a builder's yard, with stacks of bricks and piles of sand in the garden.* > Note at JOB

building *noun*

1 **house, church, school, etc.**

ADJ. **big, high-rise, large, tall | low, single-storey, small | attractive, beautiful, fine, imposing, impressive, magnificent | crumbling, derelict, dilapidated, ramshackle, tumbledown | ancient, historic, old | seventeenth-century, etc. | listed** *They were refused planning permission for a modern extension because it was a Grade II listed building.* **| brick, concrete, stone, timber, wooden | industrial, public, residential | airport, apartment, church, factory, farm, headquarters, hospital, office, prison, school**

VERB + BUILDING **build, erect, put up** *Several new buildings are now being put up.* **| demolish, destroy, flatten, gut, knock down, pull down, raze, tear down** *The building was gutted by fire.* **| damage | renovate, restore** *They're renovating the old farm buildings.*

BUILDING + VERB **collapse**

2 **process/business of building sth**

ADJ. **nest, road | empire, team**

BUILDING + NOUN **business, company, contractor, firm, industry, sector, trade | programme, project, scheme | activity, development, work** *We're having some building work done.* **| controls, regulations | land, site | materials | boom | costs | worker**

build-up *noun*

1 **gradual increase**

ADJ. **gradual, slow | steady | rapid | massive** VERB + BUILD-UP **cause, lead to** *The leak led to a slow build-up of carbon dioxide.* **| avoid, prevent**

PREP. **during/in the ~ | ~ of**

2 **period of time before an event**

ADJ. **pre-match, pre-trial, etc.**

PREP. **~ to** *Tension is mounting in the build-up to the elections.*

bulb *noun*

1 (*also* **light bulb**) **part of an electric lamp**

ADJ. **electric | bare, naked, unshaded | 100-watt, 60-watt, etc. | bright, dim | bayonet-cap, ES | energy-efficient, energy-saving, long-life, low-energy | fluorescent | halogen | clear, coloured, pearl | flash** *My camera needs a new flash bulb.*

VERB + BULB **change, replace** *Switch the light off before you change the bulb.* **| put in | remove, take out** *Can you take out the clear bulb and put a pearl one in?* **| switch on | take** *The fitting in the kitchen takes a fluorescent bulb.*

BULB + VERB **light sth** *The room was lit only by a single 40-watt light bulb.* **| fail, go** *I think the bulb over the sink is going to go. It's been flickering all evening.* **| flicker | flash, go off** *Coloured bulbs flashed on and off around the sign. There was a startled look on his face when the flash bulb went off.* **| dangle, hang** *A single electric light bulb dangled from the ceiling.* **| last** *These low-energy bulbs last much longer than the ordinary ones.*

PHRASES **by the light of a … bulb** *They sat reading by the light of a 40-watt bulb.* **| the glow of a light bulb**

2 **round plant root**

ADJ. **autumn, spring, spring-flowering, summer, summer-flowering | daffodil, hyacinth, tulip, etc. | garden, indoor | dwarf**

VERB + BULB **place, plant, put in** *I'm putting in some bulbs for next year. Place the bulbs close together.* **| dig up, take up, uproot | grow | water** *She usually waters the indoor bulbs once a week.* **| force, treat** *These daffodils flower so early because the bulbs have been forced.*

BULB + VERB **grow | flower | be over, go over** *The bulbs were over. All that remained of them were clumps of brown leaves.* **| increase** *Over the years the bulbs gradually increase.* **| sprout | shrivel** *Get the bulbs into the ground, or they will begin to shrivel.*

bulk *noun*

1 **large size**

ADJ. **considerable, formidable, huge, massive, sheer** *I was amazed by the sheer bulk of the creature.* **| dark, looming, solid**

VERB + BULK **ease, heave, shift (used about people)** *He heaved his considerable bulk into the chair.*

2 **large amount**

ADJ. **great, large, overwhelming, vast**

BULK + NOUN **buying, order, purchasing**

PREP. **in ~** *Sugar is imported in bulk from the mainland.*

PHRASES **the bulk of** (= most of) *The great bulk of the work has now been done.* **| buy in bulk** *It's usually cheaper to buy in bulk.*

bullet *noun*

ADJ. **live | stray | explosive | plastic, rubber | .45 calibre, etc. | machine-gun, rifle, tracer**

VERB + BULLET **fire, spray sth with** *The embassy was sprayed with bullets.* **| shoot (used of a gun)** *faster than a machine-gun can shoot bullets* **| be riddled with** *The body was riddled with bullets.* **| put** *They had put a bullet through his brain.*

BULLET + VERB **hit sb/sth, shoot sb, strike sb/sth** *The second bullet hit her in the back.* **| miss sb/sth** *The bullet missed his heart by less than an inch.* **| enter sb/sth | kill sb | be lodged, lodge** *Surgeons are trying to remove a bullet lodged near his spine.* **| go, pass | fly across, around, etc. sb/sth, rip through sb/sth, smash/thud into sb/sth, whistle past sb/sth** *A stray bullet whistled past his ear.* **| bounce, ricochet** *The bullets ricocheted off the stones.*

BULLET + NOUN **hole | wound | scar**

PREP. **~ from** *It is a bullet from the same gun that killed the Italian.* **| ~ in/through** *The second bullet hit her in the back.*

PHRASES **a hail/volley of bullets** *They died in a hail of bullets.* **| a sniper's bullet** *She was shot through the head by a sniper's bullet.*

bulletin *noun*

1 **short news report/official statement**

ADJ. **official | news, weather**

VERB + BULLETIN **issue, put out, release** *The government will issue an official bulletin later this week.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *More details will be given in our next news bulletin.* **| ~ on** *a bulletin on the president's health*

2 **short newspaper**

ADJ. **annual, monthly, quarterly, weekly**

VERB + BULLETIN **produce, publish | read**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The details are in the June bulletin.*

bully *noun*

ADJ. **big, real** *Leave him alone, you big bully! He's a real bully!* **| class, playground, school**

bum *noun*

1 **person's bottom**

VERB + BUM **feel, pinch** *A man pinched her bum on the train so she hit him.* **| sit on** *They've been sitting on their bums all day, doing nothing.*

2 **lazy/useless person**

ADJ. **low-down, no-good | lazy | beach** *He dropped out of college and became a beach bum.*

bump *noun*

1 sudden strong blow

ADJ. **loud | slight**

PREP. **with a ~** *We landed with a loud bump.*

2 lump on the body

ADJ. **big | little, small**

VERB + BUMP **have | get**

PREP. **~ on** *He got a nasty bump on his head.*

3 lump in a flat surface

VERB + BUMP **hit** *We hit a bump and the car swerved.*

PREP. **~ in** *a bump in the road*

bump *verb*

ADV. **accidentally**

PREP. **against** *I ran after her, bumping against people in my rush.* **| into** *I bumped into the corner of a table as I left.* **| on** *I bumped my head on the door frame.*

bumper *noun*

ADJ. **front | back, rear**

PHRASES **bumper to bumper** *The cars crawled along bumper to bumper* (= very close to each other).

bun *noun*

1 **small round cake**

ADJ. **fresh | stale | cinnamon, cream, currant, hot cross, iced, sticky | hamburger**

VERB + BUN **eat, have | bake, make** > Special page at FOOD

2 **hair fastened in a round shape**

ADJ. **neat, severe, tight | loose**

PREP. **in a ~** *a woman with her hair in a loose bun*

PHRASES **pull/draw your hair back in(to) a bun** *Her black hair was drawn back into a neat bun.* **| tie your hair (back) in a bun, wear your hair in a bun**

bunch *noun*

1 **things fastened/growing together**

ADJ. **big, huge, large | small**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She put all the flowers together in one big bunch.* **| ~ of** *He gave me a huge bunch of red roses.*

2 **group of people**

ADJ. **mixed, motley**

PREP. **~ of** *They are a bunch of amateurs.*

bundle *noun*

ADJ. **big, large, thick** *carrying a thick bundle of clothes*

VERB + BUNDLE **tie sth (up) in, wrap sth (up) in** *He tied his belongings up in a bundle and left.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The papers are in a bundle on my desk.* **| ~ of** *a bundle of newspapers*

bungalow *nou*n

ADJ. **two-bedroom/two-bedroomed, etc. | detached, semi-detached | suburban | ranch-type | modern | holiday, retirement**

burden *noun*

1 **responsibility/worry**

ADJ. **great, heavy, onerous | crippling, intolerable | administrative, economic, financial, tax**

VERB + BURDEN **bear, carry** *The manager carries the greatest burden of responsibility.* **| assume, shoulder, take on** *She had to shoulder the burden of childcare.* **| impose, place** *His illness placed an intolerable burden on his family.* **| increase | ease, lighten, reduce, relieve | lift, remove** *The administrative burden must be lifted from local government.* **| shift** *plans to shift the burden of taxation onto larger companies* **| share** *I need to share my burden with someone.*

BURDEN + VERB **fall on sb/sth** *The economic burden falls mainly on businesses.*

PREP. **~ for** *a burden for the whole family* **| ~ of** *the burden of high taxation* **| ~ on/upon** *easing the financial burden on families* **| ~ to** *She felt she was a burden to her parents.*

PHRASES **the burden of proof** *(law)* (= the responsibility of proving that sth is true) *The burden of proof falls on the prosecution: the accused is presumed innocent until proved guilty.* **| have a burden on your shoulders** *He has the burden of a large family on his shoulders.* **| lift a burden from sb's shoulders**

2 **heavy load**

VERB + BURDEN **carry** *The women carried their burdens on their backs.* **| pick up | lay down, put down**

PHRASES **a beast of burden** (= an animal used to do heavy work such as pulling or carrying things)

bureau *noun*

ADJ. **citizen's advice, employment, information, missing persons | government, press**

VERB + BUREAU **contact, go to**

BUREAU + VERB **deal with sth, handle sth** *The information bureau handles millions of enquiries each year.*

BUREAU + NOUN **staff**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *You can get more information at your local citizen's advice bureau.* **| in a/the ~** *She had a friend in the press bureau.*

bureaucracy *noun*

1 **administrative system**

ADJ. **vast | government, state**

2 **official rules and procedures**

ADJ. **cumbersome, excessive, unnecessary**

VERB + BUREAUCRACY **cut out, eliminate, reduce** *The organization has promised to eliminate cumbersome and unnecessary bureaucracy.* **| increase**

bureaucrat *noun*

ADJ. **faceless** *He was just another faceless bureaucrat.* **| unelected | high-ranking, senior | career** *battles between political appointees and career bureaucrats* **| state | party**

bureaucratic *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *The organization is highly bureaucratic.* **| rather, somewhat | unnecessarily**

burglar *noun*

ADJ. **professional | cat** (= a burglar who climbs up the outside of buildings) **| suspected**

VERB + BURGLAR **hunt** *(informal) Police are hunting burglars who stole property worth £3,500.* **| catch**

BURGLAR + VERB **break in** *The burglar had broken in through a window.* **| steal sth | strike** *Burglars had already struck twice that week in their road.*

BURGLAR + NOUN **alarm**

burglary *noun*

ADJ. **attempted | aggravated** *(law)* (= burglary involving further violence or unpleasant behaviour) **| house**

BURGLARY + VERB **happen, take place**

PREP. **~ at** *Audio equipment was stolen in a burglary at a house in Main Road.* > Note at CRIME(for more verbs)

burial *noun*

ADJ. **decent, proper | Christian, etc.**

VERB + BURIAL **give sb** *We want to give him a decent Christian burial.* **| attend, be present at, go to**

BURIAL + VERB **take place**

BURIAL + NOUN **chamber, ground/grounds, mound, place, plot, site, vault** *disturbing an ancient burial site* **| ceremony, rites, service**

PREP. **for ~** *His body was returned home for burial.* **| ~ in** *preventing the body's burial in consecrated ground*

burn *noun*

ADJ. **horrific, nasty, serious, severe, terrible | minor, slight | first-/second-/third-degree | cigarette**

VERB + BURN **suffer | die from/of | treat, treat sb for**

BURN + NOUN **mark**

PHRASES **20, 50, etc. per cent burns** *He was treated in hospital for 60 per cent burns.*

burn *verb*

1 **damage/injure by fire/heat**

ADV. **badly, seriously, severely | completely** *The car was found abandoned in a wood, completely burnt out.* **| partially, partly | easily** *fair skin that burns easily* **| ceremonially** *Bishop Tunstall preached a sermon against the book, after which copies were ceremonially burnt.* **| down, out** *The factory burned down last year.*

PHRASES **be burnt alive, be burnt to ashes/a cinder/a crisp** *I like my steak burnt to a cinder on the outside and blood red and juicy inside.* **| burn/be burnt to death** *Several people were burnt to death.* **| be burnt to the ground** *The building was burnt to the ground.*

2 **be on fire**

ADV. **fiercely** *The fire was still burning fiercely.* **| steadily | slowly** *Fresh leaves will burn slowly with billows of smoke.*

3 **produce light**

ADV. **brightly** *Their torches burnt brightly in the dark.*

4 **be filled with strong feeling**

ADV. **fiercely** *Her eyes burned fiercely.* **| slowly** *She could sense the anger burning slowly inside him.*

PREP. **with** *He was burning with indignation.*

burrow *verb*

ADV. **deep | away, down** *He switched off the bedside lamp and burrowed down beneath the bedclothes.*

PREP. **beneath/under** *Rabbits had burrowed under the fence.* **| into** *Earthworms burrow deep into the subsoil.* **| through** *worms that burrow through dead wood*

PHRASES **burrow your way** *Ivy had burrowed its way through the walls.*

bursary *noun*

ADJ. **sports, travel**

VERB + BURSARY **award sb, offer sb, provide sb with**

burst *noun*

ADJ. **short** *a short burst of energy* **| sudden** *a sudden burst of enthusiasm* **| rapid** *a rapid burst of gunfire* **| intense** *an intense burst of anger*

PREP. **in ~s** *He works in short bursts.* **| ~ of**

burst *verb*

ADV. **suddenly | apart** *The ship was burst apart and its crew blasted to pieces.*

VERB + BURST **be about to, be going to, be ready to** *My whole head felt like a ripe tomato, ready to burst.*

PREP. **with** *(figurative) He felt he would burst with anger.* **PHRASAL VERBS burst into sth**

ADV. **suddenly | immediately, instantly, promptly** *She took one look at the mess and promptly burst into tears.*

VERB + BURST **be about to, be going to, be ready to** *He was just about to burst into song.*

bury *verb*

1 **dead person**

PHRASES **be dead and buried** *Those people are now all dead and buried. (figurative) Their ambitions were finally dead and buried.* **| bury sb alive**

2 **hide in the ground**

ADV. **deep | underground** *The waste is buried deep underground.*

3 **cover**

ADV. **completely** *a fallen tree trunk almost completely buried in the long grass*

PHRASES **be buried alive** *The miners were buried alive when the tunnel collapsed.* **| be/get buried beneath/under sth** *The building was now buried under three metres of soil. Your letter got buried under a pile of papers.*

4 **put sth deeply into sth**

ADV. **deep/deeply** *He slumped forward, the knife buried deep in his chest. (figurative) her deeply buried pain*

PHRASES **lie/remain buried** *(often figurative) The king is dead and lies buried at Jedburgh Abbey. What secrets lie buried in the past?*

bus *noun*

ADJ. **regular** *There are regular buses to the city centre.* | **double-decker, open-topped** | **last** *I missed the last bus and had to walk.* | **airport, local, school, sightseeing, tourist**

VERB + BUS **go by, go on, take, travel by, use** | **wait for** *I waited 40 minutes for a bus.* | **run for** *I left work a bit late and had to run for my bus.* | **catch, get** | **miss** | **board, get on/onto** | **get off** | **drive**

BUS + VERB **go, run** *Local buses run regularly to and from the nearest town.* | **arrive, come** | **pull up, stop** *The bus pulled up and we got on. The buses stop outside the post office.* | **pick sb up** *The double-decker bus stopped to pick up some more passengers.* | **go from, leave (from)** *Buses leave from here every hour or so.* | **carry sb** *a bus carrying 56 passengers*

BUS + NOUN **times, timetable** *Look up the bus times in the local timetable.* | **route** | **lane** | **depot, shelter, station, stop** | **queue** | **journey** *a short bus journey to work* | **conductor, driver, passenger** | **fare** | **pass, ticket** | **company, service**

PREP. **by ~** *It's about 15 minutes away by bus.* | **on a/the ~** *people travelling on buses* | **~ for** *Is this the bus for Oxford?* | **~ from, ~ to** *We took the bus from Reading to Bristol.*

bush *noun*

1 **plant**

ADJ. **gorse, rose, thorn, etc. | prickly, scrubby**

QUANT. **clump** *a large clump of rose bushes*

VERB + BUSH **plant | prune** *to prune the rose bushes*

BUSH + VERB **grow**

PREP. **among/in the ~es** *She was hiding in the bushes at the side of the lane.*

2 **wild land in Africa/Australia**

ADJ. **dense, thick | native** *hills that have become a wasteland after the removal of native bush*

BUSH + NOUN **fire**

PREP. **in/into the ~** *going out into the bush*

business *noun*

1 **buying and selling of goods**

ADJ. **big | profitable | private | core** *It's time to focus on the company's core business.* **| retail, wholesale | catering, computer, investment, etc.**

VERB + BUSINESS **carry on** *(often law)*, **conduct, do, transact** *a company that has ceased to carry on business He's someone I can do business with* (= that I find it easy/ pleasant to do business with). **| work in** *She works in the computer business.* **| go into, set up in | go out of** *The firm went out of business during the recession.* **| put sb/sth out of** *The new regulations will put many small firms out of business.*

BUSINESS + NOUN **deal, transaction | meeting | lunch | trip | community | executive, manager, partner | contact | affairs, interests, matters | investment | secret** *protecting business secrets* **| plan | acumen | card | hours** *You can call the helpline during normal business hours.* **| school | studies | park** *The company's offices are located in the new business park out of town.*

PREP. **in ~** *He's in business. What business are you in? (figurative) All we need is a car and we'll be in business* (= we'll have everything we need to start what we want to do). **| on ~** *going to Paris on business*

PHRASES **business as usual** (= things will continue as normal in spite of a difficult situation) *It's business as usual at the factory, even while investigators sift through the bomb wreckage.* **| business or pleasure** *Is the trip to Rome business or pleasure?* **| mix business with pleasure** *When I travel abroad I like to mix business with pleasure.* **| a place of business**

2 **amount of trade done**

ADJ. **brisk, good** *Business was brisk and they had sold out by midday.* **| bad, slack, slow**

VERB + BUSINESS **drum up, generate** *She's in Europe drumming up business for her new company.* **| tout for** *insurance salesmen touting for business* **| lose** *We're losing business to our main rivals.*

BUSINESS + VERB **boom** *Business is booming for estate agents in the south as the* *property market hots up.* | **pick up** *After a slack period business is now picking up.*

3 firm/shop

ADJ. large, medium-sized, small | family | international, local | private | state-owned | profitable, successful | mail order, retail, wholesale

VERB + BUSINESS have, own | manage, run *It was always my dream to run my own business.* | **set up, start** *They decided to start their own business.* | **build up** *We built up the business from nothing.* | **work in** *He works in the family business.* | **take over | expand, grow** *We are looking to grow the business over the next couple of years.* | **join, leave**

BUSINESS + VERB do/go well, take off *After six months the business really took off.* | **expand, grow** *The business is expanding fast.* | **collapse, fail**

BUSINESS + NOUN assets, premises | failure > Note at ORGANIZATION

4 work/responsibility

ADJ. daily

VERB + BUSINESS go about *market traders going about their daily business* | **make sth** *I shall make it my business to find out who is responsible.*

PHRASES have no business doing sth/to do sth *You have no business* (= no right) *being here.* | **mind your own business** (= think about your own affairs and not try to get involved in other people's) *'What are you reading?' 'Mind your own business!' I was just sitting there, minding my own business, when a man started shouting at me.* | **none of your business/no business of yours** *My private life is none of your business* (= does not concern you).

5 important matters

ADJ. private | important, pressing, urgent | unfinished *We've got some unfinished business to discuss.*

VERB + BUSINESS get down to *OK, let's get down to business.* | **deal with, discuss, talk** *I'm not going to talk business tonight.*

PHRASES any other business (= items discussed at the end of a meeting) *I think* *we've finished item four. Now, is there any other business?*

6 situation/event

ADJ. **whole** *I'll be glad when the whole business is over and done with.* **| awful, bad, dreadful, terrible** *It was an awful business?he couldn't work for months.* **| funny, strange**

businesslike *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound | become | remain | keep sth** *I'd rather keep the relationship strictly businesslike.*

ADV. **very** *a very businesslike manner* **| strictly | quite**

businessman, businesswoman *noun*

ADJ. **leading, prominent, successful | astute, clever, good, shrewd | millionaire, wealthy | small** *an association of small businessmen* (= who run small businesses) **| local** *charities supported by local businessmen* **| retired**

busy *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get | keep, remain** *She needed to keep busy.* **| keep sb** *I've got enough work to keep you busy.*

ADV. **awfully, extremely, really, terribly, very | exceptionally, particularly | desperately, frantically | a bit, fairly, pretty, quite, rather | constantly**

PREP. **with** *She was busy with her make-up.*

butcher *noun*

ADJ. **local | halal, kosher | master** > Note at JOB

butter *noun*

ADJ. **fresh | rancid | melted** *Brush the pastry with a little melted butter.* **| clarified | salted, unsalted | brandy, cocoa, garlic, herb, peanut**

QUANT. **knob, pat, slab** *He put a large knob of butter on the potatoes.*

VERB + BUTTER **put on, spread (sth with)** *Put some butter on the crackers, please. He spread butter on the roll.* **| heat, melt, soften | beat (in), cream, mix, rub in** *Cream the butter and icing sugar together until light and fluffy. Rub the butter into the flour.* **| make**

BUTTER + VERB **spread** *This butter doesn't spread very well.* **| melt** *The butter melted in the heat.*

BUTTER + NOUN **sauce | dish, knife**

PREP. **in ~** *courgettes sauteed in butter*

PHRASES **bread and butter** > Special page at FOOD

butter *verb*

ADV. **generously, thickly | lightly** *lightly buttered toast*

butterfly *noun*

1 **insect**

VERB + BUTTERFLY **collect**

BUTTERFLY + VERB **flit, flutter, fly | emerge** *The butterfly emerged from the pupa.*

BUTTERFLY + NOUN **wing**

2 **swimming stroke > Note at STROKE**

buttock *noun*

ADJ. **firm | plump, rounded | scrawny**

button *noun*

1 **for fastening clothes**

ADJ. **bottom, top** *The top button of his shirt was undone.* **| coat, shirt, etc.**

VERB + BUTTON **do up, fasten | undo, unfasten | fumble with | lose** *My coat has lost a button.* **| rip off | sew on**

BUTTON + VERB **be missing, come off, pop (off)** *There was a button missing from his shirt.* > Special page at CLOTHES

2 **small switch**

ADJ. **on, start/starter | off, stop | control | fast forward, pause, play, rewind | alarm, panic** *She hit the alarm button as fast as she could.* **| mouse | self-destruct** *(often figurative)*

VERB + BUTTON **click (on)** *(computing)*, **depress, hit, hold down, press, push** *Click the left mouse button twice.* **| keep your finger on | release, take your finger off**

PHRASES **at the touch of a button** *The remote control allows you to change channel at the touch of a button.* > Special page at COMPUTER

buy *verb*

ADV. **cheaply** *Old bikes can be bought quite cheaply.*

VERB + BUY **can/can't afford to**

PREP. **for** *He bought a car for his daughter. I bought it for £25.* **| from** *I bought some books from a friend.*

PHRASES **buy and sell** *She makes her living buying and selling antiques.* **| money can/can't buy** *It's the best that money can buy. There are some things money can't buy.*

buyer *noun*

ADJ. **potential, prospective | first-time** *The houses are small and inexpensive, ideal for first-time buyers.*

VERB + BUYER **have | find, get** *They quickly found a buyer for their house.* **| sell sth to**

PREP. **~ for** *Have you got a buyer for your house yet?*

PHRASES **buyer beware** *In matters of second-hand cars, your motto should be 'buyer beware'* (= the buyer is responsible for checking the quality of the goods). **| a buyer's market** *In a buyer's market, the commodity is plentiful and so its price is not high.*

buzz *noun*

ADJ. **a high/high-pitched | low | loud | angry** *the angry buzz of a wasp* **| background** *the background buzz of conversation*

VERB + BUZZ **hear**

PREP. **~ of** *(figurative) I love the buzz* (= excitement) *of a big city.*

PHRASES **a buzz of conversation, a buzz of excitement** *There was a buzz of excitement all round the room.*

buzzer *noun*

VERB + BUZZER **press, sound** *Press the buzzer when you want to talk.*

BUZZER + VERB **go (off), sound** *The buzzer went off at eight o'clock.*

bypass *noun*

QUANT. **stretch** *That stretch of bypass will be finished by January.*

VERB + BYPASS **build**

PREP. **along a/the ~** *speeding along the bypass* **| on a/the ~** *the traffic on the bypass* **| round a/the ~** *We drove round the bypass to the airport.* **| ~ around/round** *building a new bypass around the town*

cab *noun*

ADJ. **black, yellow** *London black cab drivers* **| taxi | hackney, hansom | horse-drawn**

VERB + CAB **go by, take** *Let's take a cab.* **| call (sb), get (sb), order (sb), phone for** *I'll call you a cab.* **| find** *We couldn't find a cab anywhere near.* **| catch, hail** *I tried to hail a cab but none of them would stop.* **| get into/out of | drive | pay for/off | share** *We decided to share a cab.*

CAB + VERB **draw up, pull up** *The cab pulled up and they got out.* **| pick sb up, take sb** *I ordered a cab to take him home.*

CAB + NOUN **driver | rank | fare | ride**

PREP. **by ~** *I came by cab.* **| in a/the ~** *The driver was sitting in his cab.*

PHRASES **the back of a cab** *I left my umbrella in the back of the cab.*

cabbage *nou*n

ADJ. **green, red, white | savoy, spring | boiled, pickled, raw**

VERB + CABBAGE **eat, have | boil, cook, prepare | chop, shred**

CABBAGE + NOUN **leaf | patch** > Special page at FOOD

cabinet *noun*

1 (usually Cabinet) in government

ADJ. **full** *There was a meeting of the full Cabinet this afternoon.* | **inner** *The inner Cabinet is to meet again today.* | **shadow** (= the most important members of the opposition party) | **war**

VERB + CABINET **appoint, choose, form** | **enlarge, expand** | **reshuffle** *The prime minister reshuffled* (= changed) *his Cabinet yesterday.* | **enter, join** | **leave, quit** | **consult** | **force** *The defeat in the vote forced the Cabinet to change its policy on immigration.* | **persuade, urge**

CABINET + VERB **meet** | **discuss sth**

CABINET + NOUN **member, minister** | **meeting** | **reshuffle** *The affair led to a mid-term Cabinet reshuffle* (= when the prime minister/president changes some of the people in the Cabinet).

2 cupboard

ADJ. **glass/glass-fronted** | **bathroom, bedside, kitchen** | **medicine** | **china, display, trophy** *a glass-fronted china cabinet* | **cocktail, drinks** | **filing** | **storage**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Past reports are kept in the filing cabinet in my office.*

cable *noun*

ADJ. **electric, telephone | overhead, underground | fibre-optic**

QUANT. **length** *a length of electric cable*

VERB + CABLE **lay, run** *Roads have to be dug up to lay underground cables. Engineers plan to run the telephone cables under the river.* **| connect** *Connect the cable to the correct terminal.*

CABLE + VERB **go, run** *a cable running under the road* **| connect sth** *new cables connecting major cities in Europe* **| carry sth** *These fibre-optic cables can carry telephone calls and computer data.*

cackle *noun*

VERB + CACKLE **give, let out** *The old woman gave a cackle of laughter.* | **hear**

PHRASES **a cackle of laughter**

cackle *verb*

ADV. **loudly, wildly** *He cackled wildly at the thought.*

PREP. **with** *to cackle with delight/glee/laughter/mirth/pleasure*

cadet *noun*

ADJ. **army, military, naval, police | officer** *The military academy trains up to 2,000 officer cadets each year.*

VERB + CADET **train**

CADET + NOUN **corps**

cafe *noun*

ADJ. **pavement, transport**

VERB + CAFE **go to | manage, run | own**

CAFE + VERB **serve sth** *a pavement cafe serving drinks and light meals*

PREP. **in a/the ~**

cake *noun*

ADJ. **home-made | moist, rich, sticky** *a rich, moist fruit cake* **| apple, carrot, chocolate, cream, fruit, seed, sponge | layer, sandwich | birthday, Christmas, wedding** *I blew out the candles on my birthday cake.*

QUANT. **bit, piece, slice** *He cut her a slice of cake.*

VERB + CAKE **eat, have | bake, make | decorate, ice, spread with sth** *Spread the cake with the butter cream.* **| cut** *Everyone cheered as the bride and groom cut the wedding cake.*

CAKE + NOUN **crumbs** *She brushed some cake crumbs off her lap.* **| recipe | mix, mixture** *a packet of cake mix Pour the cake mixture into a greased and lined tin.* **| board, tin | shop, stall, stand** > Special page at FOOD

calculate *verb*

1 work out a number, etc.

ADV. **accurately, exactly**

PREP. **according to** *The amount is calculated according to the number of years you have paid into the scheme.* **| at** *The sum involved was calculated at $82 million.*

2 guess

ADV. **carefully, shrewdly | correctly** *He correctly calculated that the others would not dare fight back.*

calculating *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **coldly, coolly** *She caught a coolly calculating glint in the other woman's eye.*

PHRASES **cold and calculating** *He has a cold and calculating mind.*

calculation *noun*

1 **act of calculating/sum calculated**

ADJ. **accurate, correct, exact, precise** *an exact calculation of the amount spent so far If your calculations are correct, then we will make a large profit.* **| incorrect, wrong** *It turned out that our calculations were incorrect.* **| approximate, rough** *Even a rough calculation shows that you have spent too much.* **| complex, detailed | simple | quick, rapid | arithmetical, mathematical | economic, financial**

VERB + CALCULATION **do, make** *She did a rapid calculation in her head. We cannot make a precise calculation of the price until we have all the costs.*

PHRASES **a method of calculation**

2 **careful planning to get what you want**

ADJ. **cold, cool**

QUANT. **act** *an act of cold calculation*

calculator *noun*

ADJ. **desk, hand-held, pocket | electronic, programmable | advanced** *Exam candidates are not allowed to use advanced calculators with database capability.*

CALCULATOR + NOUN **display**

calendar *noun*

ADJ. **busy, full** *The group has a busy sporting calendar.* **| golfing, racing, social, sporting, etc.**

PREP. **in/on a/the ~** *the most important event in the year's golfing calendar*

calf *noun*

ADJ. **bull, heifer | beef, dairy, veal | weaned**

VERB + CALF **produce** *A dairy cow needs to produce a calf each year.* **| rear** *These calves are reared for beef.* **| graze** *The calves are grazed intensively during their first season.*

CALF + VERB **graze, suckle**

PREP. **in/with ~** *Their prize cow is in calf* (= pregnant).

call *noun*

1 on the telephone

ADJ. **phone/telephone | long | quick, short** *I'll just make a quick phone call.* **| local | international, long-distance, trunk | direct-dialled | incoming | outgoing | emergency | anonymous, hoax, nuisance, obscene, unsolicited | wake-up** *I ordered a wake-up call for 6.30 the next morning.*

(figurative) Last night's defeat should be a wake-up call for the team.

VERB + CALL **give sb, make, place** *Give us a call to say when you have arrived. She asked her secretary to place a call through to England.* **| get, have, receive | answer, take** *I'll take the call upstairs.* **| return** *I left a message but he didn't return my call.* **| put through, transfer** *Ask the receptionist to put your call through to my room.*

CALL + NOUN **box**

PREP. **~ for** *Were there any calls for me while I was out?* **| ~ from** *You had a call from Fred.* **| ~ to** *I made a call to a friend in London.*

2 sound to attract attention

ADJ. **loud | distinctive** *the distinctive call of the cuckoo* **| plaintive** *the bird's plaintive call* **| distress | bird | clarion, rallying** *(both figurative) This election is a clarion call for our country to face the challenges of the new era.*

VERB + CALL **let out | hear**

PREP. **~ for** *a call for help*

3 short visit

ADJ. **business, courtesy, social**

VERB + CALL **make, pay (sb)** *The doctor has several calls to make this morning.*

PREP. **on a ~** *She's out on a call.* | **~ on** *Her first call was on the local library.*

PHRASES **first/last/next port of call** *Our first port of call* (= the first place we went to) *was the chemist's.*

4 **request/demand**

ADJ. **renewed, repeated** | **last** *This is the last call for passengers travelling on British Airways flight 199 to Rome.* | **strike**

VERB + CALL **issue** | **renew** *Drink-drive campaigners have renewed their call for the introduction of random breath tests.* | **answer, heed, respond to** *Around 10,000 workers heeded the union's strike call.* | **reject**

PREP. **~ for** *The charity issued a call for donations to assist victims of the earthquake.*

PHRASES **a call to arms** (= a strong request for people to fight in the army) *(figurative) The president's speech was a call to arms to restore the vitality of the American dream.*

call *verb*

ADV. **commonly | originally | collectively** *a range of very small organisms, collectively called nanoplankton* **| variously** *a plant variously called 'cow parsley' and 'Queen Anne's lace'* **| aptly | quaintly | euphemistically** *The prison is euphemistically called a 'rehabilitation centre'.*

PREP. **by** *We usually call him by his nickname.*

calm *adj.*

1 **not worried or angry**

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** *I may have appeared calm but I certainly didn't feel it.* | **become** | **keep, remain, stay** *Sit down and keep calm! The pilot urged the passengers to remain calm.* | **keep sb** *Keep the patient calm.*

ADV. **extremely, remarkably, very** *You seem remarkably calm.* | **completely, perfectly, utterly** *Her voice was firm and perfectly calm.* | **fairly, pretty, quite** | **apparently, outwardly** | **curiously, strangely** *The pain had receded and he felt curiously calm.* | **reassuringly** *The voice sounded reassuringly calm.*

PREP. **about** *She seemed pretty calm about it.*

PHRASES **cool, calm and collected** *He remained at all times cool, calm and collected.*

2 **not rough or stormy**

VERBS **be, look** | **become**

ADV. **absolutely, dead, flat, perfectly** *The sea was dead calm. flat calm conditions* | **fairly, quite, relatively**

calm *noun*

1 **peaceful situation/manner/feeling**

ADJ. **apparent** *Under his apparent calm lay real anxiety.* **| inner** *the pursuit of inner calm* **| uneasy | forced, studied** *With a forced calm she said, 'How do you know?'* **| dead** *She felt not fear, but a kind of dead calm.* **| deadly, icy** *'I'm calling the police,' he stated with deadly calm.*

VERB + CALM **appeal for, call for** *The government appealed for calm after the riots broke out.*

CALM + VERB **descend, settle** *After the bomb, an uneasy calm settled on the city.*

PHRASES **a period of calm**

2 **at sea**

ADJ. **dead, flat** *Seals basked on boulders in a flat calm.*

calorie *noun*

ADJ. **empty** *Sweets and biscuits have a lot of empty calories in them.*

VERB + CALORIE **contain, have | consume, eat | burn (off)** *You need to exercise more to burn off the calories.* **| count, watch** *Some people count calories all their lives. I'm trying to watch my calories at the moment.*

CALORIE + NOUN **content, intake** *foods with a high calorie content*

PHRASES **high/low calorie** *a low calorie drink* **| high/low in calories** *Fruit is relatively low in calories.*

camera *noun*

ADJ. **3D, automatic, box, cine, closed-circuit, digital, electronic, infra-red, microfilm, movie, pinhole, polaroid, SLR, television/TV, underwater, video | compact | security, surveillance | hand-held, mobile | candid**

VERB + CAMERA **focus, point** *Simply point your camera at the subject and press the button.* **| pose for** *The royal couple posed for the cameras.* **| brave, face** *He couldn't bring himself to face the cameras and left by a back exit.* **| mount** *The film was taken by a camera mounted on a hang-glider.* **| install** *Closed-circuit cameras have been installed throughout the building.* **| set up** *The crews have been setting up their cameras.* **| load**

CAMERA + VERB **film sth | catch sth** *The camera has caught the expression on the Queen's face beautifully.* **| focus on | roll** *The director gave the signal and the cameras rolled.* **| click** *She stepped onto the balcony and a thousand cameras clicked.*

CAMERA + NOUN **crew, team | assistant | bag, equipment, lens, tripod | angle, position | work**

PREP. **in front of the ~s** *He played his first match at Everton in front of the TV cameras.* **| off ~** *The incident occurred off camera* (= was not filmed). **| on ~** *The moment was caught on camera.*

camouflage *noun*

ADJ. **effective, excellent, good, perfect | protective | army** *He was wearing army camouflage.*

VERB + CAMOUFLAGE **act as, provide** *The animal's markings provide effective camouflage.* **| wear**

camouflage *verb*

PREP. **with** *They camouflaged their truck with fallen pine branches.*

PHRASES **be carefully/heavily/well camouflaged** *The vehicles were all well camouflaged.*

camp *noun*

1 **in tents/huts**

ADJ. **makeshift, temporary | holiday, summer | base** *The mountaineers set up their base camp at the foot of the mountain.* **| transit | gypsy, travellers' | army, military | training**

VERB + CAMP **make, pitch, set up** *We pitched camp just outside the woods.* **| break, strike** *We broke camp early the next morning.* **| leave**

CAMP + NOUN **fire** (also **campfire)** *sitting round the campfire* **| site** (also **campsite)**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *The children are spending a week at a summer camp.*

2 **prison, etc.**

ADJ. **concentration, detention, internment, labour, prison, prisoner-of-war | death, extermination | refugee** *the appalling conditions in the refugee camps*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She spent five years in a labour camp.*

3 **group with shared beliefs**

ADJ. **hostile, opposing, rebel, rival | ideological, political | armed** *The region split into two armed camps.*

VERB + CAMP **switch** *a politician who switches camp when it suits him* **| divide into, split into**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *people in both main political camps*

PHRASES **have a foot in both camps** (= show loyalty to two different groups) *He can unite the party because he has a foot in both camps.*

campaign *noun*

ADJ. **big, huge, major, massive** | lengthy, long, long-running, **sustained** | **brief** | **effective, successful** | **unsuccessful** | **determined, intensive, strong, vigorous** | **bitter, fierce, vicious** | **concerted, orchestrated** *a carefully orchestrated campaign against striking workers* | **joint** | **official, public** | **local, international, national,** nationwide, worldwide | **one-man/one-woman, personal** *She has fought a one-woman campaign for ten years about the lack of childcare provision in the town.* | **election, electoral, leadership, political, presidential, re-election, referendum** | **advertising, marketing, promotional, sales** | **propaganda, publicity, public relations** | **media, poster, press, television/TV** | **anti-corruption, anti-drug, anti-smoking, etc.** | **protest** | **awareness** *a health awareness campaign to promote a healthy lifestyle* | **lobbying** | **fund-raising** | **literacy** | **recruitment** | **air, bombing, guerrilla, military** *the terrorists' bombing campaign* | **hate, terror/terrorist** | **dirty tricks, smear, whispering** *Her political opponenta ran a whispering campaign against her.*

VERB + CAMPAIGN **launch, mount, start** *The company launched a huge advertising campaign.* | **conduct, fight, organize, run, wage** *People have criticized the way in which she conducted her election campaign.* | **lead, manage, spearhead** *She led a successful campaign against the closure of the library.* | **take part in** | **intensify, step up** *The government has intensified the military campaign against the rebels.*

CAMPAIGN + VERB **begin, get underway, start** *The general election campaign gets underway today.* | **be aimed at sb/sth** *a concerted campaign aimed at educating young people about the dangers of drugs* | **aim to** *The campaign aims to inform the public of the dangers of this disease.* | **call for sth, demand sth** | **fail to** *The campaign failed to achieve its objectives.*

CAMPAIGN + NOUN **manager, team** | **strategy** | **issue** *Education has become an important campaign issue.* | **trail** *election candidates on the campaign trail* (= travelling around the country campaigning)

PREP. **during a/the ~** *They met regularly during the campaign.* | **~ against** *a fierce campaign against hunting* | **~ by** *the political campaign by the Labour Party* | **~ for** *the campaign for racial equality*

PHRASES **a plan of campaign** *After sliding in the opinion polls, the party had to* *rethink its plan of campaign.*

campaign *verb*

ADV. **actively, hard, strongly, tirelessly, vigorously** *We will campaign hard for an end to the ivory trade.* | **effectively, successfully** *Local people have successfully campaigned against the building.* | **openly, publicly**

PREP. **against** *Local communities are campaigning against the dumping of toxic waste.* | **for** *We have campaigned for better rural transport.* | **on** *The group campaigns on a range of environmental issues.* | **on behalf of** *campaigning on behalf of the British consumer*

campaigner *noun*

ADJ. **effective, good, great, successful | active, tireless, vigorous | experienced, seasoned, veteran | leading, prominent**

PREP. **~ against** *a prominent campaigner against drugs* **| ~ for** *an active campaigner for animal rights* **| ~ on behalf of** *a veteran campaigner on behalf of the disabled*

campus *noun*

ADJ. **large | small | college, university**

VERB + CAMPUS **have** *De Montfort University has campuses in Milton Keynes and Leicester.*

CAMPUS + NOUN **novel**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *Students at the Belfast campus have access to excellent sports facilities.* **| off ~** *They moved off campus to share a flat in the town.* **| on ~** *She lives on campus.*

can *noun*

ADJ. **metal, tin | rusty | food** *The floor was littered with rusty food cans.* **| 300g, 250ml, 11oz, etc.** *a 200g can of tuna* **| beer, coke | jerry, petrol | oil | paint | watering | aerosol, spray**

VERB + CAN **come in** *This special type of milk comes in a can.* **| open** *We opened a can of sardines for lunch.* **| drain, empty** *She drained her can of beer and threw it away. He emptied a can of beans into the pan.* **| drink, sip at | fill** *He was filling a jerry can with petrol from the pump.* **| recycle**

CAN + NOUN **opener** (also **can-opener**)

PREP. **in a/the ~ | ~ of** *cans of oil*

canal *noun*

ADJ. **irrigation | ship**

VERB + CANAL **build, dig**

CANAL + NOUN **barge, boat | bank | towpath**

PREP. **along a/the ~** *The barge moved slowly along the canal.* **| on a/the ~** *sailing on the canal*

cancellation *noun*

ADJ. **last-minute | sudden | outright** *They opted for rescheduling rather than outright cancellation.*

VERB + CANCELLATION **have** *We may be able to offer you some tickets if we have any cancellations.* **| make** *Cancellations must be made in writing.* **| cause** *Heavy seas can cause cancellation of ferry services.*

CANCELLATION + NOUN **charge, fee**

cancer *noun*

ADJ. **breast, cervical, lung, prostate, skin, etc.**

VERB + CANCER **have, suffer from | contract, get, develop | cause | screen sb for** *Most of the women employees have now been screened for breast cancer.* **| diagnose | die from/of**

CANCER + VERB **spread** *The cancer has spread to his stomach.*

CANCER + NOUN **cell | patient, sufferer, victim | risk** *The cancer risk among smokers was found to be higher.* **| research | drug, treatment**

PHRASES **a battle/struggle against cancer** *He died after an 18-month battle against cancer.* > Special page at ILLNESS

candid *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very | extraordinarily, remarkably | perfectly, quite | less than**

PREP. **about** *He was quite candid about the way the case had been handled.* **| with** *I felt she was being less than candid with me.*

candidate *noun*

ADJ. **potential, prospective** *Prospective parliamentary candidates met party leaders last week.* **| likely, possible** *She's a likely candidate for promotion.* **| good, ideal, suitable** *There were no suitable candidates for the position.* **| unsuitable | successful** *The successful candidate will be fluent in French and German.* **| congressional, ministerial, parliamentary, presidential | Conservative, Democratic, etc.**

VERB + CANDIDATE **put yourself forward as, stand as** *She decided to stand as a candidate in the union elections.* **| field, nominate, put up, run** *Our organization is putting up five candidates in the elections.* **| back, support, vote for | choose, select** *The committee will select the best candidate for the job.* **| reject** *We rejected most of the candidates as unsuitable.*

PREP. **~ for** *She was the only candidate for the post.*

candle *nou*n

ADJ. **lighted | flickering**

VERB + CANDLE **light | blow out, snuff (out)**

CANDLE + VERB **burn | flicker | go out**

CANDLE + NOUN **flame**

cannabis *noun*

QUANT. **trace** *Traces of cannabis were found in the pilot's blood.*

VERB + CANNABIS **smoke | grow**

CANNABIS + NOUN **leaf, plant, resin** > Note at DRUG(for more verbs and nouns)

cannon *noun*

ADJ. **water** *Riot police used water cannon and tear gas to disperse the crowd.*

VERB + CANNON **load | aim | fire, shoot**

CANNON + VERB **boom, roar, thunder** *Cannons thundered to their right.* **| fire (sth)** *As the king stepped ashore the cannons fired a salute.*

CANNON + NOUN **ball, shell | fire, shot | crew | fodder** *(figurative) The foot soldiers were just used as cannon fodder* (= considered not as people but as material to be used up in war).

canoe *noun*

ADJ. **dugout, open**

VERB + CANOE **paddle**

PREP. **by ~** *We crossed the lake by canoe.*

canopy *noun*

ADJ. **dense, thick** *a thick canopy of branches* **| forest, leafy, tree**

VERB + CANOPY **form** *The trees formed a leafy canopy above their heads.*

PREP. **beneath/under a/the ~ | ~ of** *sitting beneath a canopy of branches*

cap *noun*

1 **soft flat hat**

ADJ. **flat, peaked | cloth | baseball, bathing, cricket, forage, school, shower, skull, swimming**

CAP + NOUN **badge** > Special page at CLOTHES

2 **covering for the end/top of sth**

ADJ. **filler, hub, lens | screw** *The bottle has a screw cap.*

VERB + CAP **put on, screw on** *Put the cap back on the pen.* **| remove, take off, unscrew**

capability *noun*

ADJ. **enormous | limited** *The company's manufacturing capability is quite limited.* **| potential | proven** *the proven capability of this technology* **| human** *beyond the scope of human capability* **| intellectual, mental | technical, technological | manufacturing, production | research | computing, design, graphics, multimedia, networking, printing, processing, sound, video | defence, fighting, military, missile, nuclear, offensive, weapons**

VERB + CAPABILITY **have** *She has the capability to become a very fine actress.* **| increase** *The government wants to increase its military capability.* **| lose**

PREP. **beyond your ~** *Organizing a whole department is beyond his capability.* **| within your ~** *I'm sure that your new job is well within your capabilities.* **| ~ for** *her capability for making sensible decisions*

capable *adj.*

1 **having a lot of skill**

VERBS **be, seem** *She seems very capable.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, quite, very** *He has proved himself an extremely capable manager.*

2 **capable of: able to do sth**

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, prove, seem | become | believe sb, consider sb** *She could hardly believe him capable of such kindness.*

ADV. **fully, more than, perfectly, quite, well** *She is more than capable of looking after herself.* **| barely, hardly, scarcely** *He was barely capable of writing his own name.* **| reasonably | clearly, obviously | potentially, theoretically | physically** *He was not physically capable of climbing out of the window.*

capacity *noun*

1 amount held/produced

ADJ. **high, large** *a high capacity electric pump large capacity disk drives* | **limited, small** | **maximum, total** *a total capacity of 50 litres* | **excess, spare** *spare capacity in the health service* | **economic, productive** | **earning** *The qualification should increase my earning capacity.* | **carrying, nuclear, seating, storage** | **engine, lung**

VERB + CAPACITY **have** | **be filled/packed to** *The theatre was filled to capacity* (= was full) *for every performance.* | **expand, increase** | **reduce**

CAPACITY + NOUN **audience, crowd**

PHRASES **operate/work at full capacity** (= to produce the maximum amount possible)

2 ability

ADJ. **amazing, enormous, great, remarkable** | **limited** | **innate, natural** *Children have an innate capacity to understand language.* | **intellectual, mental** | **human** *the human capacity for compassion*

VERB + CAPACITY **have** | **lose** *She seems to have lost the capacity to enjoy herself.* | **increase** | **reduce, restrict**

PREP. **beyond your ~** *This maths is beyond the capacity of most school children.* | **within your ~** *The mountain walk is well within the capacity of most fit people.* | **~ for** *her amazing capacity for organization*

3 official position

ADJ. **official** | **personal, private, unofficial, voluntary** | **professional** | **acting, caretaker** | **advisory** | **judicial**

VERB + CAPACITY **act in, work in** *I have worked in an advisory capacity with many hospitals.*

PREP. **in your ~** *In my capacity as president, I would like to thank Jack for his hard work.*

capital *noun*

1 **money used to start a business, etc.**

ADJ. **fixed, starting | working | foreign, private | equity, investment, share | risk, venture**

VERB + CAPITAL **have** *We don't have enough capital to buy new premises.* **| accumulate, attract, borrow, generate, raise** *He had various ideas on how to raise capital for the project.* **| invest, provide, put (up), sink** *The company has put a lot of capital into the project. We can't expect the government to put up the capital. He sank vast amounts of capital in the venture.* **| free up, release, unlock | tie up** *Our capital is all tied up in property.*

CAPITAL + NOUN **assets, goods, resources, stock | costs, expenditure, investment, outlay, repayment, spending | accumulation, growth | account | grant | project** *investment in major capital projects* **| gain, loss | flows, inflow, movement, outflow, receipt | value** *the capital value of the property* **| market**

PHRASES **capital intensive** *capital intensive industries* **| an injection of capital** *Inner city areas require a large injection of capital.* **| a return on your capital** *Investors want an immediate return on their capital.* > Special page at BUSINESS

2 **city**

ADJ. **great, major** *The department store has branches in all major capitals.* **| British, Japanese, etc. | foreign | provincial, regional, state | cultural, financial, etc.**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the fast pace of life in the capital* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **… capital of the world** *Las Vegas is the gambling capital of the world.*

capitalism *noun*

ADJ. **advanced, contemporary, late, modern | global, world | competitive, consumer, entrepreneurial, free market, industrial, laissez-faire, liberal, monopoly, popular, state, welfare**

VERB + CAPITALISM **fight (against), protest against, struggle against | abolish, overthrow, replace**

PREP. **under ~** *a study of the development of agriculture under capitalism*

PHRASES **the advance/rise of capitalism, the fall of capitalism** *predicting the fall of world capitalism*

capsule *noun*

VERB + CAPSULE **swallow, take** *To avoid capture by the enemy, he swallowed a cyanide capsule.*

CAPSULE + VERB **contain sth** *capsules containing a poisonous drug*

captain *noun* > Note at RANK

captive *adj.*

VERBS **be | take sb** *He was taken captive on the border.* **| hold sb, keep sb** *She was held captive in a castle.*

captive *noun*

VERB + CAPTIVE **free, release** *The terrorists will only release their captives if they get what they want.*

captivity *noun*

VERB + CAPTIVITY **hold/keep sb in** *The children were held in captivity until British soldiers entered the village.* **| bring/take sb into | free/release sb from** *The prisoners were released from captivity after three months.* **| escape from**

PREP. **during (sb's) ~** *She was tortured many times during her captivity.* **| in ~** *trout bred in captivity*

capture *noun*

VERB + CAPTURE **avoid, escape, evade** *The refugees evaded capture by hiding in the forest.* **| lead to** *This information led to the capture of the murderer.*

capture *verb*

ADV. **perfectly** *That description captures perfectly the feeling of being invisible.* **| brilliantly, neatly**

VERB + CAPTURE **attempt to, try to | manage to | fail to** *The exhibition on India fails to capture the great diversity of this fascinating country.*

car *noun*

ADJ. **fast | new | second-hand, used** *a used car salesman* **| veteran, vintage | private** *The government wants more people to use public transport instead of private cars.* **| diesel, electric, motor, petrol | estate, hatchback, saloon, sports | armoured, Panda, patrol, police, squad, unmarked** *Police in an unmarked car had been following the stolen vehicle for several minutes.* **| racing, rally, stock | company, hire | getaway** *The robbers abandoned their getaway car in Sealand Road.* **| parked** *There was a line of parked cars in front of the building.*

VERB + CAR **go/travel by | drive | have, own, run** *It's very expensive to run a car these days.* **| take** *It's too far to walk. I'll take the car.* **| get in/into, pile into** *He got in the car and they drove off. The kids all piled into the car.* **| get out of | get out** *You lock up the house and I'll get the car out.* **| stop | back, reverse | overtake, pass | lose control of** *I lost control of the car and it spun off the road.* **| leave, park | abandon, dump | build, make, manufacture, produce | repair, service, work on | take in** *I've got to take the car in for service.* **| wash | hire | break into, steal**

CAR + VERB **start** *Despite the cold, the car started first time.* **| run on sth** *cars that run on diesel* **| do sth** *The car does 55 miles per gallon. The car was doing over 100 miles an hour.* **| pull out, turn out** *What cheek! That car pulled out right in front of me!* **| drive off, pull away | overtake sb/sth, pass sb/sth | accelerate | slow down | come to a halt, draw up, pull up, stop | skid, spin** *Her car skidded on a patch of ice.* **| break down, stall | collide with sth, crash, hit sth, leave the road** *His car hit a van coming in the opposite direction.*

CAR + NOUN **boot, door, engine, horn, key, phone, tyre, window** *a car boot sale* (= an outdoor sale where people sell things from the backs of their cars) **| park, parking** *There's not enough car parking in the town centre.* **| driver | dealer, salesman, showroom | accident, crash | wash | tax | ferry**

PREP. **by ~** *They take the children to school by car.* **| in a/the ~** *I'll wait for you in the car.*

PHRASES **cars on the roads** *The number of cars on the roads is increasing all the time.* **| a make/model of car**

caravan *noun*

ADJ. **horse-drawn, motor | gypsy | holiday, touring**

VERB + CARAVAN **pull, tow | live in, stay in**

CARAVAN + VERB **park** *The local farmer lets holiday caravans park on his land.*

CARAVAN + NOUN **holiday | park, site | rally**

carbohydrate *noun*

1 **substance in food**

VERB + CARBOHYDRATE **be rich/high in, contain** *Cashew nuts are rich in carbohydrate.*

CARBOHYDRATE + NOUN **content | diet** *a high carbohydrate diet*

PHRASES **a source of carbohydrate**

2 **food**

ADJ. **simple | complex** *complex carbohydrates such as pasta* **| refined | unrefined**

carbon dioxide *noun*

VERB + CARBON DIOXIDE **absorb, take in** *Trees absorb carbon dioxide and produce oxygen.* **| emit, give out, produce, release | form, give** *How is carbon dioxide formed? Coke burns with oxygen to give carbon dioxide.*

CARBON DIOXIDE + NOUN **emissions**

PHRASES **a build-up of carbon dioxide, emissions of carbon dioxide**

carbon *noun*

ADJ. **pure** *Diamonds are crystals of pure carbon.* **| organic | radioactive | activated**

CARBON + NOUN **content** *iron with a high carbon content* **| atom, isotope | fibre**

PHRASES **a form of carbon**

card *noun*

1 giving information

ADJ. **business, calling, visiting | appointment, invitation | identity, membership | index, record, report | flash** (also **flashcard**) **| swipe | smart**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *She wrote the main points of her speech on index cards.*

2 used to pay/get money

ADJ. **plastic** *He had a wallet full of plastic cards.* **| cash, charge, cheque (guarantee), credit, debit | phone | ration**

VERB + CARD **pay by, put sth on, use** *She paid for her holiday by credit card. I'll put the meal on my card.* **| accept, take** *The restaurant accepts all major credit cards.* **| issue (sb with)** *The bank hasn't issued me with a cheque card yet.*

CARD + NOUN **number | holder | fraud**

3 greetings card

ADJ. **greeting/greetings | birthday, Christmas, get-well, sympathy**

VERB + CARD **give sb, send sb | sign, write** *Everyone at work signed a card for her.* **| get, receive**

4 used for a game

ADJ. **playing | winning | court, picture | trump** *(figurative) This defender's ability to score vital goals has often proved a trump card.* **| wild**

QUANT. **deck, pack**

VERB + CARD **cut, deal, shuffle | pick** *'Pick a card,' said the conjurer.* **| hold** *(often figurative) The kidnappers hold all the cards* (= are in control of the situation).

CARD + NOUN **game, player, table 5 cards** game

QUANT. **game**

VERB + CARD **play** *We play cards every Friday night.* **| lose/win at** *He always wins at cards.*

CARD + NOUN **game** > Note at CARD

cardboard *noun*

ADJ. **thick | thin | stiff | corrugated**

QUANT. **piece, sheet** *a sheet of stiff black cardboard*

VERB + CARDBOARD **be made from/(out) of, make sth from/out of | cut**

CARDBOARD + NOUN **box, carton, tube | cut-out** *There was a life-size cardboard cut-out of Elvis Presley in the shop window.*

cardigan *noun*

ADJ. **wool/woollen/woolly | hand-knitted**

VERB + CARDIGAN **knit** > Special page at CLOTHES

care *noun*

1 **looking after sb/sth**

ADJ. **good, great** *He loved his books and took great care of them.* | **loving, tender** *She's still very frail and will need lots of tender loving care.* | **private** | **voluntary** | **constant, full-time, round-the-clock** | **continuing, long-term** | **short-term, temporary** | **daily, day-to-day, routine** | **intensive** *Last night she was critically ill in intensive care. an intensive care unit* | **clinical, emergency, health, medical, nursing, patient** | **hospital, inpatient, institutional, residential** | **day, non-hospital, outpatient** | **community** | **domestic, domiciliary, home, home-based** | **primary, secondary, tertiary** | **antenatal, dental, psychiatric** | **palliative** | **formal, informal** *The couple relied on informal care from relatives.* | **foster** | **public** *children in public care* | **pastoral, spiritual** | **client, customer** | **hair, skin**

VERB + CARE **take** *He left his job to take care of his sick wife. I'll take care of hiring the car.* | **provide (sb with)** | **need, require** | **receive** | **take sb into** *The boys were taken into care when their parents died.*

CARE + NOUN **services** | **centre, home, unit** | **manager, worker** | **management** | **plan, policy, programme** | **allowance** | **needs, order**

PREP. **in ~** *He had been in foster care since he was five.* | **in sb's ~** *You won't come to any harm while you're in their care. Many historic sites are in the care of the National Trust.* | **under the ~ of** *He's under the care of Dr Parks.* | **~ of**

PHRASES **the quality/standard of care**

2 **attention/thought given to sth**

ADJ. **extreme, good, great** *Great care should be taken to ensure that the equipment is clean.* | **extra, special** | **infinite, the utmost** | **exquisite, meticulous, painstaking, scrupulous** *The little girl was writing her name with painstaking care.* | **exaggerated, excessive** *He takes excessive care of his appearance.* | **due** (formal), **proper, reasonable** *The householder has a duty to take reasonable care for the visitor's safety.*

VERB + CARE **exercise, take**

PREP. **with ~** *A label on the box read: 'Glass?handle with care'.* | **without ~** *He was found guilty of driving without due care and attention.*

care *verb*

ADV. **deeply, genuinely, a lot, passionately, really, truly | hardly, not greatly, not much, not particularly** *He hardly cares what he does any more. I don't know which she chose, nor do I greatly care.*

PREP. **about** *He really cares about the environment.* **| for** *You genuinely care for him, don't you?*

PHRASES **be past caring** *I'm past caring what he does* (= I don't care any more).

career *noun*

1 **series of jobs that a person has**

ADJ. **long | brief, short | brilliant, distinguished, glittering, good, great, successful** *He had a distinguished career as a diplomat.* | **promising | flagging** *He did a film for Hollywood to boost his flagging career.* | **chosen** *She achieved a lot in her chosen career.* | **academic, acting, diplomatic, literary, medical, military, musical, political, sporting, teaching | playing, professional, recording, stage** *the album that launched his recording career*

VERB + CAREER **build, carve out, have, make, pursue** *He made a good career for himself in football. She pursued a successful career in medicine.* | **begin, embark on, launch, start (out on)** *young actors just starting out on their careers* | **boost | abandon, give up | cut short, end, ruin, wreck** *a car crash which wrecked his career* | **resume | change**

CAREER + VERB **last sth, span sth** *Her stage career spans sixty years.* | **start, take off | be over, end**

CAREER + NOUN **careers advice/guidance/information, careers adviser/officer, careers service | break** *a career break to have children* | **advancement, development, ladder, path, progression** *a move higher up the career ladder* | **choice, move** *a smart career move* | **opportunities, prospects, structure** *The profession has no clear career structure.* | **civil servant, diplomat, soldier | girl, woman**

PREP. **during/throughout your ~** *She won many awards during her acting career.* | **~ in** *a career in computers* | **~ with** *a brilliant career with the Royal Ballet*

PHRASES **the peak/height of your career** *She was at the peak of her playing career when she injured herself.* | **a change of career**

2 **period of your life spent working/doing sth**

ADJ. **chequered, colourful, turbulent, varied** *He has had a somewhat chequered career.* | **school, working** *She started her working career as a waitress.*

VERB + CAREER **have**

career *verb*

ADV. **wildly** *A sudden gust caught her hat and sent it careering wildly down the road.* **| around** *children careering around the playground*

PREP. **down, into, off, through** *The lorry careered off the road and hit a tree.*

careful *adj.*

VERBS **be | make sb** *Bitter past experience had made her careful of what she confided to Nadia.*

ADV. **awfully, doubly, especially, extra, extremely, particularly, really, specially, very** *Be extra careful when walking along country roads.* **| a bit, a little, fairly, quite | scrupulously**

PREP. **about** *She was quite careful about how she spoke to him.* **| of** *He's very careful of his reputation.* **| with** *She's extremely careful with money.*

careless *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, get, grow** *She had begun to grow careless.* **| make sb** *Boredom made him careless.*

ADV. **extremely, very | a bit, a little, rather** *a rather careless mistake* **| notoriously**

PREP. **about** *She's careless about her spelling.* **| of** *When performing his stunts he was notoriously careless of his own safety.* **| with** *He's very careless with money.*

caress *noun*

ADJ. **gentle, light** *the gentle caress of his fingers* **| warm**

caress *verb*

ADV. **gently, lightly** *His fingers gently caressed her cheek.*

cargo *noun*

ADJ. **big, bulk, heavy, large | small | precious, valuable** *a precious cargo of antiques* **| deadly** *The terrorists parked the van with its deadly cargo in a dark alleyway.* **| dry** *dry cargo, such as fruit* **| human** *The boats discharged their human cargo a little way from the shore.*

VERB + CARGO **carry | load, take on** *The ship stopped to take on a cargo of fruit.* **| discharge, unload | handle** *The port handles cargo from all over Europe.*

CARGO + NOUN **aircraft, boat, carrier, plane, ship, vessel | bay, hold | handler, handling**

caricature *noun*

1 **funny drawing of sb**

VERB + CARICATURE **draw** *She draws caricatures of well-known politicians.*

PREP. **~ of** *a caricature of Sherlock Holmes*

2 **exaggerated description of sb/sth**

ADJ. **crude, grotesque**

VERB + CARICATURE **give** *The film gives a crude caricature of African history.*

PREP. **~ of**

carpet *noun*

1 **material for covering floors**

ADJ. **deep-pile, soft, thick | threadbare, worn | patterned, plain | woven | oriental, Persian | fitted, wall-to-wall | flying, magic | red** *(figurative) I didn't expect to get the red carpet treatment* (= be treated like an important person).

QUANT. **roll**

VERB + CARPET **make, weave | fit, lay** *I'm having the carpets fitted today.* **| roll back/up, take up | beat**

CARPET + NOUN **design | tile** *The grey vinyl floor gave way to carpet tiles.* **| fitter | cleaner, sweeper**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *The cat curled up on the carpet.*

2 **thick layer of sth that covers the ground**

ADJ. **deep, thick**

VERB + CARPET **form** *The leaves formed a carpet under the trees.*

PREP. **~ of** *a deep carpet of snow*

carpeted *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **richly, softly, thickly** *the quiet, thickly carpeted corridors* **| fully, throughout** *a comfortable, fully carpeted bedroom The house is carpeted throughout.*

PREP. **with** *(figurative) The churchyard was thickly carpeted with snowdrops and primroses.*

carriage *noun*

1 **vehicle pulled by horses**

ADJ. **horse-drawn, open**

VERB + CARRIAGE **ride in | drive | climb into, get into | alight from, get out of, step out of**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

2 **part of a train**

ADJ. **railway | full | empty | first-class, second-class | no-smoking/non-smoking, smoking**

VERB + CARRIAGE **get in/into | get out of | pull**

CARRIAGE + NOUN **door, window**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There's a seat in the next carriage.*

carriageway *noun*

ADJ. **dual, single | northbound, etc.**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *The accident happened on the southbound carriageway of the M1.*

carrot *noun*

1 **vegetable**

ADJ. **raw | baby | diced, grated**

VERB + CARROT **eat, have | cook, prepare | peel, scrape | chop, dice, grate**

CARROT + NOUN **top | cake | juice** > Special page at FOOD

2 **sth attractive offered to sb**

VERB + CARROT **dangle, hold out, offer (sb)** *They dangled the carrot of a large salary in front of me.*

PHRASES **a carrot and stick** *to adopt the carrot-and-stick approach* (= to persuade sb to try harder by offering them a reward if they do, or a punishment if they do not)

cart *noun*

1 **vehicle pulled by animals**

ADJ. **heavy | bullock, donkey, horse-drawn, ox | farm**

VERB + CART **drive | draw, pull | ride in | climb off/on/onto, get off/on/onto | load, unload**

CART + VERB **roll | creak, lumber** *The cart creaked on up the street.* **| carry sth**

CART + NOUN **track**

PREP. **by ~** *In the old days coal supplies came by cart.* **| in a/the ~** *She brought the vegetables in an ox cart.* **| on/onto a/the ~** *piling their furniture onto a cart*

PHRASES **the back of a cart** *Jump in the back of my cart.* **| a horse/pony and cart**

2 **small vehicle**

ADJ. **golf, hand, ice-cream**

VERB + CART **push, trundle, wheel** *a man wheeling an ice-cream cart along* **| drive** *driving a golf cart*

carton *noun*

ADJ. **cardboard, plastic | ice-cream, juice, milk, yogurt** *Why are these milk cartons so difficult to open?*

VERB + CARTON **open**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The soup is sold in cartons.* **| ~ of** *a carton of cream*

cartoon *noun*

ADJ. **animated, strip**

VERB + CARTOON **draw** *He draws strip cartoons for ‘The Guardian’.*

CARTOON + NOUN **character | strip | series**

carved *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **beautifully, delicately, elaborately, finely, intricately, ornately, richly** *a richly carved doorway* **| crudely, roughly** *a crudely carved wooden figure*

case *noun*

1 **example**

ADJ. **classic, textbook, typical | clear, obvious, simple** *It was a simple case of mistaken identity.* **| borderline** *After the exams, the teacher gave all borderline cases a spoken test.* **| extreme | isolated, rare** *Except in a few rare cases, bee stings are not dangerous.* **| exceptional, special | striking**

VERB + CASE **highlight, illustrate, show** *He highlighted the case of Harry Farr, 25, who was executed for cowardice in 1916.*

CASE + VERB **arise, occur** *The committee has full powers to deal with any cases of malpractice that arise.*

CASE + NOUN **study** *a case study of an Amazonian tribe* **| example**

PREP. **in sb's/this ~** *In her case, she failed the exam because she wasn't well.* **| ~ of** *a case of animal cruelty*

PHRASES **case by case/on a case by case basis** *Complaints are dealt with on a case by case basis.* **| a case in point** *Many professions feel they deserve higher pay, and nurses are a case in point.*

2 **true situation**

VERB + CASE **be, remain** *It remains the case that not enough graduates are going into teaching.* **| overstate, understate** *I agree with him, but don't you think he slightly overstates the case?*

3 **of a disease**

ADJ. **acute, chronic | advanced, serious, severe | mild**

CASE + NOUN **history** *Medical students study the case histories of many patients.* **| file, notes, records, report**

PREP. **~ of** *a severe case of food poisoning*

4 police investigation

ADJ. **notorious** *the notorious case of the Botley strangler* | **tragic** | **murder, robbery**

VERB + CASE **investigate, work on** *Four police officers are investigating the case.* | **crack, solve** *They never solved the Jones murder case.*

CASE + NOUN **officer** *Carter was the senior case officer on the investigation.*

PREP. **on the ~** *A detective is on the case at the moment.* | **~ of** *a case of theft*

5 in a court of law

ADJ. **court** | **criminal** | **civil** | **test** *This is a test case which will influence what other judges decide.* | **divorce**

VERB + CASE **bring** *The victim decided to bring a case of rape against him.* | **handle** *This was the hardest case she had handled since becoming a lawyer.* | **consider, hear, try** *The court will consider the case soon. The case will be heard in the Court of Appeal.* | **adjourn** | **dismiss, throw out** *The case was thrown out for lack of evidence.* | **drop** *The prosecution decided to drop the case.* | **decide, settle** *The case was settled out of court.* | **win** | **lose** | **review**

CASE + VERB **come before sb, come to court, go to court, go to trial** *The case came before Judge Hales in the Crown Court. He was so clearly innocent, the case should never have gone to court.* | **collapse** *The case against her collapsed when a key witness was proved to have lied.* | **centre on sth, hinge on sth, rest on sth, turn on sth** *The case hinged on the evidence of the only witness to the killing.* | **raise sth** *The case raises a number of issues.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the evidence in the case* | **~ against** *The case against her was very weak.* | **~ of**

PHRASES **a/no case to answer** *The judge ruled that the defendant had no case to answer, as the evidence had been discredited.* | **the circumstances/facts of a case**

6 arguments

ADJ. **convincing, good, powerful, strong** | **open-and-shut, unanswerable**

With his current superb form, he presents an unanswerable case for selection in the team. | **weak** | **defence, prosecution/prosecution's**

VERB + CASE **have** *Our lawyer didn't think we had a case* (= had enough good arguments to win in a court of law). | **prepare** *The defendant requested more time to prepare his case.* | **outline, set out** | **deliver, make (out), present, put, state** *You can make out a case for changing our teaching methods.* | **argue, plead** *I thought she argued her case very well.* | **take up** *The local MP has taken up the case of the family of six who have been left homeless.* | **judge** *The teacher must judge each case according to its merits.* | **bolster, help, support** *What evidence do you have to support your case?* | **weaken**

CASE + VERB **exist** *A strong case exists for adopting a similar system in this country.*

PREP. **~ against** *Is there a case against wearing school uniforms?* | **~ for**

PHRASES **the case for the defence/prosecution, the merits of a case** *The disciplinary committee considered the merits of his case before fining him.*

7 **container**

ADJ. **display** *She kept all her trophies in a display case.* | **presentation** *a gold wristwatch in a presentation case* | **carrying** *He put the binoculars back in their carrying case.* | **packing** | **glass** *The room was full of stuffed animals in glass cases.* | **cigarette, glasses, jewellery, pencil, pillow** | **guitar, violin, etc.**

PREP. **in/inside a/the ~, out of a/the ~**

8 **suitcase**

ADJ. **attache** | **overnight** > See SUITCASE (for other collocates with case)

9 **grammar**

ADJ. **ablative, accusative, dative, genitive, instrumental, locative, nominative, vocative**

VERB + CASE **take** *In Polish the verb 'to be' takes the instrumental case.*

CASE + NOUN **ending**

cash *noun*

1 **money in the form of coins or notes**

ADJ. **hard, ready** *The drugs are sold for hard cash.* | **petty**

VERB + CASH **pay (in)** *We'll have to pay cash for the tickets.* | **hold** *The bank should hold enough cash to satisfy customer demand.* | **convert/turn sth into**

CASH + NOUN **desk, register | dispenser, machine | balance | book**

PREP. **in ~** *The thieves stole £200 in cash. You can pay by cheque or in cash.*

PHRASES **cash in hand** (= if you pay for goods and services **cash in hand**, you pay in cash, especially so that the person being paid can avoid paying tax on the amount), **cash on delivery** (= a system of paying for goods when they are delivered)

2 **money in any form**

ADJ. **ready, spare | hard-earned** *Imagine having to pay some of my hard-earned cash on a parking fine!*

VERB + CASH **generate, raise** *They had a football match to raise cash for the hospital.* **| be short of, be strapped for, run out of**

CASH + NOUN **holdings, reserves, resources | flow** *The company is having cash flow problems.* **| inflow, injection | outflow | deposit, payment, settlement | benefits, offer, prize | management | limit | market | crisis | crop** *farmers who grow cash crops for export* **| economy | cow** (= the part of a business that always makes a profit) > Special page at BUSINESS

casserole *noun*

1 dish of meat/vegetables

ADJ. **beef, chicken, vegetable, etc.**

VERB + CASSEROLE **eat, have | cook, make, prepare**

CASSEROLE + NOUN **dish**

2 dish for cooking casseroles

ADJ. **deep, large | shallow | flameproof, ovenproof**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Put the chicken pieces in a casserole.*

cassette *noun*

ADJ. **audio, video | tape | blank | bootleg, pirated | music | accompanying** *a set of four course books, each with an accompanying cassette*

VERB + CASSETTE **insert** *He inserted a cassette into the machine.* **| play, put on** *She put on a U2 cassette.* **| pause, stop | eject | fast forward, rewind**

CASSETTE + NOUN **deck, player, recorder | tape | box | format, version**

PREP. **on ~** *I've got it on cassette.*

cast *noun*

ADJ. **huge, large | small | strong | all-star, star-studded | supporting | all-female, all-male**

VERB + CAST **have** *The play has a large cast of characters.* **| join | head** *Jane Simms heads the cast of this brilliant production.*

CAST + VERB **perform sth**

CAST + NOUN **list, member**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Who is in the cast?*

PHRASES **a cast of characters, a member of the cast**

caste *noun*

ADJ. **high, low** *He belongs to one of the highest castes.*

VERB + CASTE **belong to**

CASTE + NOUN **system** *the Hindu caste system*

PHRASES **a member of a caste, of high/low caste**

castle *noun*

ADJ. **grand, great, magnificent, splendid | strong | turreted | historic | ancient, medieval | royal | ruined | fairy/fairy-tale, fantasy**

VERB + CASTLE **approach** *They had to approach the castle through thick swamps.* **| build, fortify | attack, besiege, lay siege to | capture, seize, take | defend, hold** *Edinburgh castle was loyally held in the queen's name.*

CASTLE + VERB **perch, stand** *The castle perches on a high rocky outcrop.* **| overlook sth** *The castle overlooks the town.*

CASTLE + NOUN **gate, grounds, keep, tower, wall | ruins**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

casual *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, sound | become**

ADV. **extremely, very | almost** *She sounded almost casual.* **| fairly, quite, rather | apparently, seemingly | carefully, elaborately, studiedly** *There was something a little too carefully casual in his tone.* **| deceptively**

PREP. **about** *He was very casual about it all.*

casualty *noun*

1 **person killed/injured in a war/an accident**

ADJ. **heavy, high, serious | light | pedestrian | road | civilian, military | human**

VERB + CASUALTY **cause, inflict** *The guerrillas inflicted heavy casualties on the local population.* **| incur, suffer** *Our division suffered only light casualties.*

CASUALTY + NOUN **figures, list, rate**

2 **part of a hospital**

VERB + CASUALTY **be admitted to** *He was admitted to casualty with head injuries.* **| rush sb to, take sb to**

CASUALTY + NOUN **department, unit, ward**

PREP. **in ~** *He works as a doctor in casualty.*

cat *noun*

ADJ. **domestic, family, household, pet | big** *She went to Africa to photograph big cats.* **| feral, wild | alley, stray | pedigree | long-haired, short-haired | black, tabby, tortoiseshell, etc. | tom** (also **tomcat**) **| playful | sleek | Cheshire** *He was grinning like a Cheshire cat.* **| fat** *(figurative) the fat cats of big business*

VERB + CAT **have, keep, own** *We have a pet cat called Archie.* **| feed | stroke | neuter, spay** *They didn't want kittens, so they had their cat spayed.* **| worm** *The stray cats are wormed and treated with flea powder.* **| put down** *The cat was in constant pain so they had it put down.*

CAT + VERB **hiss, mew, miaow, purr, spit, yowl** *The cat miaowed pitifully. There was a cat yowling outside my window last night.* **| bite (sb), scratch (sb) | creep, pad, (be on the) prowl, slink** *A cat padded silently past. The cat slunk away into the darkness.* **| arch its back | cower, crouch | curl up | catch sth, hunt (sth), stalk sth | leap, pounce (on sth), spring | spray (sth)** *Cats mark their territory by spraying.*

CAT + NOUN **door, flap | food | litter | lover, owner | phobia | nap** (also **catnap)** *A catnap at lunchtime can make you feel refreshed.*

PHRASES **fight like cat and dog** *In our childhood Irina and I fought like cat and dog.* **| play (a game of) cat and mouse** *Young car thieves enjoy playing cat and mouse with the police.*

catalogue *noun*

1 **list of books/objects**

ADJ. **exhibition, library**

VERB + CATALOGUE **produce, publish | look through** *Look through the catalogue and find this picture.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *More details are given in our catalogue.*

2 **book of goods for sale**

ADJ. **colour, illustrated | mail-order**

VERB + CATALOGUE **produce, publish** *The gallery produced a catalogue of young artists.* **| browse through, look at/through | send (off) for** *Send off for our illustrated catalogue of garden plants.*

PREP. **in a/the ~**

cataract *noun*

VERB + CATARACT **have | develop | remove** *A cataract can be removed under local anaesthetic.*

CATARACT + NOUN **operation, surgery**

catastrophe *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, big, complete, great, major, terrible, total | minor | national | global, international, world | ecological, economic, environmental, natural, nuclear**

VERB + CATASTROPHE **cause, lead (sth) to** *These policies could lead the country to environmental catastrophe.* **| have** *We had a few catastrophes with the food for the party.* **| be faced with, be heading for, face** *The area is now facing economic catastrophe.* **| avert, avoid, head off, prevent** *moves to avert a national catastrophe*

CATASTROPHE + VERB **happen, occur, take place**

catastrophic *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove**

ADV. **absolutely, quite | potentially**

PREP. **for** *potentially catastrophic for the environment*

catch *noun*

1 **act of catching sth**

ADJ. **brilliant, clean, easy, fine, good, nice**

VERB + CATCH **take** *Roger took some brilliant catches at today's match.* | **drop, miss**

2 **number of fish that sb has caught**

ADJ. **big, bumper, good, huge, large, record** *Fishermen have been landing record catches this season.* | **poor**

VERB + CATCH **land, make**

CATCH + VERB **decline, fall** *Catches fell because of the new dam.* | **go up, increase**

PREP. **~ of** *a bumper catch of tuna*

PHRASES **the day's catch** *a restaurant where you can sample the day's catch*

3 **device for fastening sth**

ADJ. **door, window** | **safety** *the safety catch on a gun*

VERB + CATCH **slip (off), undo, unfasten, unlock** *Fran slipped the catch on the door, then turned to say goodbye.* | **close**

categorize *verb*

ADV. **conveniently, easily** *These factors can be conveniently categorized under three headings.*

VERB + CATEGORIZE **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *Her work is difficult to categorize.*

PREP. **according to** *categorizing people according to their jobs* **| by** *We categorize voters by their choice of newspaper.* **| into** *Categorize the plants into four groups.*

category *noun*

ADJ. **broad, general | narrow | distinct, separate | special** *We have created a special category for part-time workers.* **| high** *(law) the highest category of sexual assault* **| high-risk** *Intravenous drug users are in a high-risk category for hepatitis C.* **| age, social**

VERB + CATEGORY **be included in, belong to, come into, fall into, fit (into)** *The towns investigated fell into two broad categories.* **| assign sb/sth to, divide sb/sth into, group sb/sth under, put sb/sth in/into | create, define, establish**

CATEGORY + VERB **comprise sth, include sth**

PREP. **in/within a/the ~** *He competed in the youngest age category.* **| ~ of** *a higher category of prison*

PHRASES **be in a category (all) of its/your own** (= to be unique)

catering *noun*

ADJ. **commercial, contract, industrial | hotel, in-flight, school**

VERB + CATERING **do** *Who's doing the catering for the party?*

CATERING + NOUN **business, industry, service | establishment, firm | equipment, facility | assistant, manager, staff, team | college, student | course | management**

cathedral *noun*

ADJ. **great, magnificent | medieval, modern | baroque, Gothic, Romanesque | Anglican, Catholic**

VERB + CATHEDRAL **build | see, visit**

CATHEDRAL + VERB **dominate sth** *The great Gothic cathedral dominates the city.*

CATHEDRAL + NOUN **city, town | church**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *We went to mass in the cathedral.*

Catholic *noun*

ADJ. **Roman | devout | practising | lapsed**

VERB + CATHOLIC **be brought up (as)**

Catholicism *noun*

ADJ. **ardent, fervent | Roman**

VERB + CATHOLICISM **convert to**

cattle *noun*

ADJ. **beef, dairy | horned | highland, hill, upland | lowland | indigenous, native | wild**

QUANT. **head** *5,000 head of cattle died of the disease in one month.* **| herd**

VERB + CATTLE **keep, rear | breed | tend | graze** *Villagers traditionally have the right to graze their cattle on the common land.* **| drive, herd, round up** *Farmers drove cattle along major roads as a protest against high taxes.* **| slaughter | raid, rustle, steal | domesticate** *Cattle were first domesticated in Neolithic times.*

CATTLE + VERB **browse, graze** *cattle grazing in the fields* **| low | stray, wander** *Cattle that stray onto the electric railway line are killed instantly.*

CATTLE + NOUN **auction, market | breeding, ranching, rearing | breeder, dealer, farmer | farm, ranch | feed, food | grid** *There was a cattle grid across the road to stop the cows escaping.* **| prod** *Electric cattle prods were used against the demonstrators.* **| truck**

PHRASES **a breed of cattle**

cause *noun*

1 **sb/sth that makes sth happen**

ADJ. **real, root, true, underlying** *the root cause of the problem* | **deeper, greater** *A greater cause for resentment is the discrepancy in pay.* | **biggest, chief, clear, fundamental, important, main, major, primary, prime, principal, significant** | **common** *Smoking is a common cause of premature death.* | **likely, possible** | **known, unknown** | **direct, indirect** | **immediate, initial** | **long-term, short-term** | **reasonable** *There is no reasonable cause to suspect an unnatural death.* | **contributory** | **hidden** | **social** *the social causes of ill health*

VERB + CAUSE **discover, find, identify** *attempts to identify the immediate cause of the breakdown*

CAUSE + VERB **be, lie in sth** *The real cause of the problem lies in the poor construction of the bridge.*

PHRASES **cause and effect, the cause of death, due to/from/of natural causes** *He died of natural causes.*

2 **reason**

ADJ. **good, great, real, reasonable**

VERB + CAUSE **have** *We have good cause to believe that he was involved in the crime.* | **find** *The experts may find cause to disagree with the school's decision.* | **give (sb)** *Her health is giving us great cause for concern.* | **show** *The onus is on government departments to show cause why information cannot be disclosed.*

PREP. **~ for** *There is no cause for alarm.*

PHRASES **cause for concern, with/without good cause, without just cause**

3 **aim that people believe in**

ADJ. **deserving, good, just, noble, worthwhile, worthy** *The money she left went to various worthy causes.* | **bad, unjust** | **common** *The different groups support a* *common cause.* **| hopeless, lost** (= one that has failed or that cannot succeed) **| humanitarian, social | communist, socialist, etc.**

VERB + CAUSE **be committed/sympathetic to, champion, fight for, further, help, promote, serve, support** *young men willing to fight for the cause She was keen to do anything that would further the cause.* **| take up** *She has taken up the cause of animal rights.* **| plead** *He pleaded the cause of the local fishermen.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *prominent figures in the socialist cause* **| in the ~ of** *to disregard the strict letter of the law in the cause of true justice*

PHRASES **a cause celebre** (= a controversial issue that attracts a great deal of public attention), **(all) for/in a good cause** *The function took a lot of organizing, but was all in a good cause.*

caution *noun*

1 **great care**

ADJ. **considerable, extreme, great, utmost** *The utmost caution must be exercised when handling explosives.* **| excessive | due** *We proceeded with due caution.*

VERB + CAUTION **exercise | advise, counsel, urge** *We urge caution in the use of this medication.*

PREP. **with ~** *The information should be treated with some caution.*

PHRASES **err on the side of caution** (= to be too cautious), **the need for caution** *I must stress the need for caution.* **| sound a note of caution** *The minister sounded a note of caution about the economy.* **| cast/throw caution to the wind/winds** (= to start taking risks), **a word of caution** *I would just like to add a word of caution.*

2 **spoken warning given by a judge/policeman**

ADJ. **formal** *He received a formal caution.*

VERB + CAUTION **get off with, receive | give sb, issue, let sb off with** *They let her off with a caution.*

cautious *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, get, grow | remain | make sb** *Her experiences have made her cautious.*

ADV. **distinctly, extremely, highly, very | fairly, a little, quite, rather | sensibly, suitably, understandably** *Doctors are understandably cautious about this new treatment.* **| excessively, unduly** *He accused the government of being unduly cautious.* **| deliberately | suddenly** *What's made you so suddenly cautious?*

PREP. **about** *cautious about spending money* **| of** *He warned us to be cautious of accepting their statements as fact.*

cave *noun*

ADJ. **deep, large | shallow, small | dark | damp, dank | rocky, mountain, underground** *We explored the rocky caves along the beach.* **| crystal, limestone**

VERB + CAVE **explore**

CAVE + VERB **collapse** *a collapsed limestone cave*

CAVE + NOUN **ceiling, entrance, floor, mouth, roof, wall | system | art, drawing, painting | dweller**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *We took shelter in a dark, dank cave.*

PHRASES **the ceiling/floor/roof/wall of a cave, the entrance to/mouth of a cave**

CD *noun*

ADJ. **budget, full-price, mid-price | double | audio, music, multimedia, photo**

VERB + CD **insert** *She inserted a CD into the machine.* **| play, put on | record** *You can record your own CD if you have the right equipment.* **| burn, burn sth onto, copy, duplicate, record | listen to | release** *The band's new CD is released next week.*

CD + NOUN **drive | player, sound system | burner, maker, recorder, rewriter, ripper, writer | burning, duplication, recording | cover, sleeve | format**

PREP. **on ~** *That was the first album to come out on CD.* **| on a/the ~** *How many tracks are on the CD?* **| ~ of**

CD-ROM *noun*

ADJ. **multimedia | interactive | educational** VERB + CD-ROM **burn (sth onto), duplicate** *Now you can burn your photos onto a CD-ROM.* **| install** CD-ROM + VERB **contain sth** CD-ROM + NOUN **drive | driver | player | burner, burning | title | edition** *This is the CD-ROM edition of the encyclopedia.*

PREP. **on ~** *This dictionary is also available on CD-ROM.* > Special page at COMPUTER

cease *verb*

ADV. **altogether, completely, entirely** *The flow slowed, then ceased altogether.* **| all but, almost, virtually | largely | effectively** *My job had effectively ceased to exist.* **| forthwith, immediately** *These violations of the code must cease forthwith.* **| soon | abruptly, suddenly** *The bird's song ceased abruptly.* **| rapidly | gradually | momentarily | eventually, finally | long (since)** *The conversation had long ceased to interest me.* **| automatically**

PREP. **with** *The matches ceased with the outbreak of war.*

PHRASES **without ceasing** *Prayer was made without ceasing.*

ceasefire *noun*

ADJ. **complete | immediate | unilateral**

VERB + CEASEFIRE **call for, demand, order** *The UN has passed a resolution calling for an immediate ceasefire.* **| achieve, secure | agree (to), declare, sign | broker, negotiate | call** *A 24-hour ceasefire was called to allow the distribution of aid.* **| observe | break, violate**

CEASEFIRE + VERB **come/go into effect | hold, last** *There are concerns that the ceasefire might not hold.*

CEASEFIRE + NOUN **agreement, terms**

PREP. **~ between** *a ceasefire between the government and the rebels*

PHRASES **a violation of a ceasefire**

ceiling *noun*

1 **top surface inside a room**

ADJ. **high, low | domed, sloping, suspended, vaulted | painted** *The palace is famous for its 17th-century painted ceilings.*

CEILING + VERB **collapse**

PREP. **on the ~** *a fly on the ceiling*

PHRASES **from ceiling to floor/from floor to ceiling** *The bathroom has mirrors from ceiling to floor.*

2 **top limit on wages/prices, etc.**

ADJ. **expenditure, price**

VERB + CEILING **impose, place, put, set** *They have put a ceiling on the price of petrol.* **| abolish | lift, raise** *The government has decided to lift price ceilings on bread, milk and other staples.* **| lower**

PREP. **~ on** *a ceiling on imports*

celebrated *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **very | justly, rightly** *his justly celebrated portrait of Queen Juliana* **| internationally**

PREP. **as** *He has become celebrated as an artist.* **| for** *The area is celebrated for its food and wine.*

celebration *noun*

ADJ. **big, great, noisy | little, quiet, small | family | joyous** *a joyous celebration of life* **| double** *a double birthday celebration* **| special | national, official, public, street** *There were wild street celebrations when England won the Cup.* **| anniversary, birthday, centenary, Christmas, New Year, victory, wedding** (usually with **celebrations)** *50th anniversary celebrations* **| religious**

VERB + CELEBRATION **have, hold** *They held a special celebration in his honour.* **| join (in)** *I hope you'll join in the Christmas celebrations.*

CELEBRATION + NOUN **dinner**

PREP. **in ~ of** *They organized a dinner in celebration of the year's successes.*

PHRASES **a cause for celebration** *The victory was a cause for great celebration.* **| a celebration of (sb's) life, a celebration to mark sth** *They held a celebration to mark forty years of the lifeboat service.*

celebrity *noun*

ADJ. **minor | local, international, national | overnight | guest, visiting | showbiz, sporting, television**

QUANT. **host** *Tonight's show features a host of celebrities.*

VERB + CELEBRITY **make sb** *The show's success made her an overnight celebrity.*

CELEBRITY + NOUN **status | chef**

PHRASES **something of a celebrity** *He became something of a celebrity in his home town.*

celery *noun*

QUANT. **stick**

VERB + CELERY **eat, have | cook, prepare | chop, dice, slice** *Chop the celery and add it to the salad.*

CELERY + NOUN **leaf, salt, stalk, stick** > Special page at FOOD

cell *noun*

1 **smallest living part of an animal/a plant body**

ADJ. **dead, living | abnormal, normal | blood, brain, muscle, nerve, skin** *red and white blood cells* **| egg, sperm | cancer | animal, human, plant, etc.**

VERB + CELL **form**

CELL + VERB **divide** *Cells divide and form new cells.*

CELL + NOUN **proliferation**

PHRASES **the nucleus of a cell, the proliferation of cells** *the proliferation of cells in leukaemia*

2 **small room**

ADJ. **monk's, nun's | police, prison | padded**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

cellar *noun*

ADJ. **damp, dark | deep, underground | vaulted | coal, wine | pub | beer, jazz | disused**

CELLAR + NOUN **steps | bar, bistro**

PREP. **in/into the ~** *I went down into the cellar for more wine.*

cello *noun* > Special page at MUSIC

cement *noun*

ADJ. **wet | dental**

VERB + CEMENT **mix**

CEMENT + VERB **harden, set**

CEMENT + NOUN **mixer | factory, works**

cemetery *noun*

ADJ. **local | private, public** *He was buried in a private cemetery.* **| military | Catholic, Jewish, etc.**

VERB + CEMETERY **be buried in | visit**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

censor *verb*

ADV. **heavily** *The film has been heavily censored.*

censorship *noun*

ADJ. **strict | government, military, state, wartime | film, media, political, press**

VERB + CENSORSHIP **impose** *The government has imposed strict censorship on the press.* **| abolish, lift | tighten** *Political censorship has been tightened under the new regime.* **| relax | practise** *to take action against institutions practising censorship*

censure *noun*

ADJ. **severe | public**

VERB + CENSURE **come under, face** *He could face censure from his colleagues.* **| avoid, escape** *Costs will have to be kept down if severe public censure is to be avoided.*

CENSURE + NOUN **motion**

PHRASES **a motion/vote of censure** *Right-wing parties tabled a motion of censure against the government.*

censure *verb*

ADV. **severely** *The manager was severely censured for negligence.*

PREP. **for**

census *noun*

ADJ. **complete, full | general, national, official | decennial | population**

VERB + CENSUS **carry out, conduct, take** *A national census is taken every ten years.*

CENSUS + NOUN **data, figures, records, results, return, statistics**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the questions asked in the census*

centenary *noun*

VERB + CENTENARY **celebrate, commemorate, mark** *The club will hold a party to celebrate its centenary.*

CENTENARY + NOUN **celebrations, year**

centimetre *noun* > Note at MEASURE

central *adj.*

1 **in the centre**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very** *Our house is very central, so we can easily get to theatres and cinemas.* **| quite**

2 **most important**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **absolutely** *This distinction is of absolutely central importance.*

PREP. **to** *These facts are central to the case.*

centralized *adj.*

VERBS be

ADV. highly *a highly centralized bureaucracy* **| fully | increasingly**

centre *noun*

1 **middle point/part of sth**

ADJ. **dead, very** *We've bought a flat in the very centre of Cambridge.* **| city, town | soft** *chocolates with soft centres*

PREP. **at the ~ (of)** *at the centre of the universe* **| in the ~ (of)** *a museum in the centre of Birmingham*

PHRASES **the centre of the city, the centre of (the) town**

2 **important place for sth**

ADJ. **important, leading, main, major, nerve** *(figurative) the economic nerve centre of Germany* **| international, local, national, regional, world | commercial, cultural, economic, financial, industrial, trading, urban** *London is one of the main financial centres of the world.*

PREP. **~ for** *The university is a major centre for scientific research.*

PHRASES **a centre of excellence** (= a place where a particular kind of work is done well), **a centre of government/population/power 3 the centre** moderate political position

CENTRE + NOUN **party | ground** *a party that occupies the centre ground of British politics*

PHRASES **left/right of centre** *Politically, she is slightly left of centre.*

century *noun*

ADJ. **19th, 20th, etc.** *a 17th-century building* **| earlier, last, later, past, previous** *Later centuries saw the development of a complex transport system.* **| new, next** *a celebration to welcome the new century* **| present**

PREP. **during the ~** *The town's population doubled during the 19th century.* **| for ~s** *There have been orchards in this region for centuries..* **| in the … ~** *He lived in the 16th century.* **| over the ~s** *a marble floor worn smooth over the centuries* **| through the ~s** *a tradition passed down through the centuries* **| throughout the ~** *America's influence on culture grew throughout the 20th century.*

PHRASES **centuries old** *a centuries old custom* **| the turn of the century**

cereal *noun*

1 plant

VERB + CEREAL **grow, produce | harvest**

CEREAL + NOUN **crop, foods, products | farmer, grower, producer | production**

2 food

ADJ. **fortified** *fortfied breakfast cereals* **| breakfast | bran, wholegrain, wholewheat**

QUANT. **bowl** *a big bowl of cereal* **| packet**

VERB + CEREAL **eat, have** *having cereal for breakfast*

CEREAL + VERB **be fortified** *a wholewheat cereal fortified with B group vitamins*

CEREAL + NOUN **bowl, packet**

ceremonial *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **purely** *The monarch's role is purely ceremonial.* **| essentially, largely, primarily**

ceremony *noun*

1 **formal public/religious event**

ADJ. **brief, short | quiet, simple | elaborate, glittering | moving, solemn | private, public | formal, important, official, special** *an official ceremony to welcome the new director* | **opening** *the opening ceremony of the Olympic games* | **closing | award/awards | civil | cake-cutting, dedication, degree, funeral, graduation, inauguration, initiation, marriage, naming, presentation, prize-giving, signing, swearing-in, tea, unveiling, wedding, wreath-laying** *the Japanese tea ceremony*

VERB + CEREMONY **conduct, hold, perform** *The marriage ceremony was performed by the bishop.* | **attend, be present at, take part in**

CEREMONY + VERB **take place | mark sth** *a special ceremony to mark the end of the war*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *the guest of honour at the ceremony* | **during a/the ~** *A lot of people wept during the funeral ceremony.* | **in a/the ~** *They were married in a simple ceremony.*

2 **formal behaviour/traditional actions and words**

VERB + CEREMONY **stand on** *I won't stand on ceremony* (= be formal).

PREP. **without ~** *Without ceremony, the woman slammed the door shut in my face.*

PHRASES **pomp and ceremony** *the pomp and ceremony of a royal wedding* | **with due/great ceremony** *With due ceremony, he took the oath to become president.*

certain *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *Digby looked certain to be the next president.* **| become, grow** *I grew more and more certain that she was lying to me.* **| make** *Make certain that you lock the door if you go out.*

ADV. **very | absolutely, quite | by no means** *It's by no means certain that she'll get the job.* **| almost | fairly, pretty**

PREP. **about/of** *Are you quite certain about this?*

PHRASES **can't/couldn't say for certain** *I think she's a teacher, but I couldn't say for certain.* **| not know for certain** *I don't know for certain how many people are coming.*

certainty *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, complete | reasonable, virtual** *It's a virtual certainty that petrol will go up in price.*

QUANT. **degree** *It's difficult to predict with any degree of certainty how much it will cost.*

PREP. **with ~** *I couldn't say with absolute certainty that he's here.*

PHRASES **a lack of certainty** *There seems to be a lack of certainty over what we should do.* **| the one/only certainty** *The one certainty left in a changing world is death.*

certificate *noun*

ADJ. **birth, death, marriage | medical | school, school-leaving**

VERB + CERTIFICATE **award (sb), issue** *The police are waiting for the doctor to issue a death certificate.*

PREP. **~ of** *a certificate of motor insurance*

chain *noun*

1 **line of rings joined together**

ADJ. **long** *She wore a long gold chain round her neck.* **| rusty | bicycle | daisy, paper**

QUANT. **length**

CHAIN + VERB **clank**

CHAIN + NOUN **mail** (= armour made of chains)

PREP. **in ~s** *The prisoner was led away in chains.* **| off sb's/the ~** *Let the dog off its chain.* **| on a/the ~** *They kept the dog on a chain all day long.*

PHRASES **a chain of office** *The mayor was wearing his chain of office.* **| a chain on the door** *Put the chain on the door before you go to bed.* **| a link in the chain**

2 **number of things in a line**

ADJ. **island, mountain | human**

VERB + CHAIN **form** *The people formed a human chain to pass the supplies up the beach.*

PREP. **~ of** *a chain of volcanic islands*

PHRASES **a chain of command** (= a system by which instructions are passed from one person to another)

3 **group of shops, etc. owned by the same company**

ADJ. **big, large | small | hotel, supermarket, etc.**

CHAIN + NOUN **store**

PREP. **~ of** *a chain of clothes shops*

PHRASES **part of a chain** *This hotel is part of a large chain.*

4 **number of connected events/situations**

ADJ. **complex** *the complex chain of events that led to the war* | **unbroken** *There has been an unbroken chain of great violinists in the family.* | **causal** | **food** *efforts to ensure that dioxins do not enter the food chain*

CHAIN + NOUN **reaction**

PHRASES **a chain of events**

chair *noun*

1 **piece of furniture**

ADJ. **comfortable, comfy, cushioned, padded, plush, soft, upholstered | hard, uncomfortable | deep, low | high-backed, straight-backed, wing-backed, winged | rush-seated, tubular | rickety | reclining, swivel** *He lay back in the reclining chair and went to sleep. She returned to the swivel chair behind her desk.* **| folding | matching** *a dining table and four matching chairs* **| empty** *'Please, be my guest.' He gestured towards an empty chair.* **| antique | mahogany, plastic, steel, wooden | dining, fireside, kitchen**

QUANT. **row | set** *a set of antique mahogany dining chairs*

VERB + CHAIR **draw up, pull up** *'Can I join you?''Yes, pull up a chair.'* **| pull out** *He pulled out a chair for her.* **| have, take** *Come in and take a chair.* **| give sb** *He gave her his chair.* **| push back** *He pushed back his chair and got to his feet.* **| collapse into/onto, flop (back/down) in/into/on/onto, lower yourself into, settle (back) in/into/on, sink (back/down) into, slump (back/down) in/into, sit (down) in/on** *She dropped her bags and flopped down into the nearest chair.* **| lean back in, lie back in, lounge (back) in, recline (back) in, relax (back) in, sprawl/be sprawled in** *He put his feet up on the desk and lay back in his chair.* **| lean forward in | straighten (up) in** *They straightened in their chairs when the manager burst in.* **| get out of, get up from/off, jump (up) from/out of, leap out of/from, rise from** *He got up from his chair to address the meeting.* **| rock backwards and forwards in/on, shift (about) in, tip back** *He was shifting about uneasily in his chair. She tipped her chair back and fixed her gaze full upon him.* **| swivel (on), swivel (round) in** *She swivelled round in her chair and picked up the phone.*

CHAIR + VERB **be placed, stand** *A chair stood facing the window.* **| swivel | fall over, tip up, topple over | creak** *The chair creaked every time I moved.*

CHAIR + NOUN **arm, back, leg, seat | cover, frame | lift** *A chair lift carried us to the top of the ski run.*

PREP. **into a/the ~** *He sank into his chair and opened the letter.* **| in a/the ~** *She leaned back in her chair and lit a cigarette.* **| on a/the ~** *A cat was asleep on the chair.*

PHRASES **the arm/back/edge/leg of a chair** *She gripped the arm of her chair as she spoke. He sat nervously on the edge of his chair.* > See ARMCHAIR

2 person controlling a meeting

ADJ. **acting, deputy**

VERB + CHAIR **occupy, take** *Anne took the chair* (= was chairperson) *in Carol's absence.* **| address (sth to)** *Please address your questions to the chair.* **| appoint sb (as), elect sb (as)**

PREP. **in the ~** *Paul Ryan was in the chair* (= was chairman) *at today's meeting.*

3 position of university professor

ADJ. **professorial**

VERB + CHAIR **hold, occupy** *He held the Chair of Botany at Cambridge University for thirty years.* **| appoint sb to | relinquish, resign | endow, establish** *A private benefactor endowed the new Chair of Japanese Literature.*

chairman, chairwoman *noun*

ADJ. **club, committee, company, party** *She is married to a company chairman.* **| acting, former, incoming, new, outgoing** *a report by the outgoing chairman*

VERB + CHAIRMAN, CHAIRWOMAN **hold the post of | elect (sb)**

CHAIRMAN, CHAIRWOMAN + VERB **resign, stand down** *The chairman resigned following the allegations.* > Note at JOB

chalk *noun*

1 **white rock**

VERB + CHALK **quarry**

CHALK + NOUN **cliff, downs, hill | pit, quarry**

2 **small stick of chalk**

ADJ. **coloured** *a box of coloured chalks*

QUANT. **piece, stick**

CHALK + NOUN **drawing | dust**

PREP. **in ~** *She had scrawled a note in chalk across the blackboard.* **| with ~** *to write with chalk*

challenge *noun*

1 **sth new and difficult**

ADJ. **big, considerable, enormous, great, huge, radical, real, serious, significant, strong | difficult, tough | major, main | fresh, new | exciting, interesting | economic, environmental, intellectual, political, technical, technological** *Liszt's piano music presents an enormous technical challenge.*

VERB + CHALLENGE **be, pose, present | face, meet, respond to, rise to, take on/up** *The gallery has risen to the challenge of exhibiting the works of young artists. He has taken on some exciting new challenges with this job.*

CHALLENGE + VERB **face sb** *the challenges facing nurses in casualty*

2 **that shows that sb refuses to accept sth**

ADJ. **serious | direct | effective | legal**

VERB + CHALLENGE **be, present, represent** *The demonstration represents a direct challenge to the new law.*

PREP. **~ to** *a legal challenge to the president's power*

3 **invitation to compete**

ADJ. **leadership, title** *his title challenge to the heavyweight champion*

VERB + CHALLENGE **issue, mount** *plans to mount a leadership challenge within the party* **| accept, take up** *I accepted his challenge to a game of chess.* **| beat off, fight off** *Our team will have to fight off the challenge from better trained teams.*

PREP. **~ from** *a challenge from the other political party*

challenge *verb*

1 question whether sth is right/true

ADV. **directly** *The newspaper was directly challenging the government's legitimacy.* | **seriously** | **effectively** *She was effectively challenging the whole basis on which society was run.* | **successfully** *The story was completely untrue and was successfully challenged in court.*

PREP. **on** *She challenged him on his old-fashioned views.*

2 invite sb to compete, argue, etc.

ADV. **seriously** *No one has seriously challenged the champion.* | **successfully, unsuccessfully**

PREP. **for** *She was poised to challenge for the party leadership.* | **to** *The count challenged him to a duel.*

challenger *noun*

ADJ. **closest, main, nearest, serious, strong** *Her nearest challenger is the vice-president.*

VERB + CHALLENGER **take on** *He took on various challengers, but refused to fight Jackson.*

PREP. **~ for** *the main challengers for the European title* **| ~ to** *a challenger to the prime minister*

challenging *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | make sth** *We have changed the course to make it more challenging.* **| find sth** *He found the course academically challenging.*

ADV. **extremely, very | quite | enough, sufficiently** *The tasks were not challenging enough for me and I got bored.* **| academically, intellectually, politically**

chamber *noun*

1 **room/enclosed space**

ADJ. **dark, dim | secret | inner, main, outer | underground, subterranean | burial, tomb** *a Bronze Age burial chamber* **| torture | gas** *Millions died in the gas chambers in the war.* **| decompression**

CHAMBER + NOUN **door**

2 **large room, especially used for formal meetings**

ADJ. **grand, great, large, vast | high-ceilinged, vaulted | conference, council, debating**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

3 **part of a government**

ADJ. **first, lower, second, upper | elected** *She believes there should be an elected second chamber to replace the House of Lords.* **| legislative, parliamentary**

PHRASES **the Chamber of Deputies**

champagne *noun*

ADJ. **excellent, fine, good | French | expensive | cheap | vintage | non-vintage | fake | pink | chilled, iced**

QUANT. **bottle, magnum | glass**

VERB + CHAMPAGNE **have** *I'll have some champagne, please.* **| drink, quaff, sip** *Do you drink champagne? They sat there sipping their champagne.* **| pour (sb) | celebrate (sth) with | chill**

CHAMPAGNE + VERB **flow** *(figurative) The champagne flowed like water at the wedding reception.* **| be/go flat** *The champagne had been left open and had gone flat.*

CHAMPAGNE + NOUN **bottle, flute** (= a kind of glass), **glass | cork** *We heard the sound of popping champagne corks next door.* **| breakfast, reception** *There was a champagne reception before the concert.* **| house** (= company)

champion *noun*

ADJ. **great, supreme, undisputed | defending, reigning** *The reigning champion will defend her title tonight.* **| former | national, world | Olympic** *the Olympic skating champion* **| boxing, snooker, etc.**

VERB + CHAMPION **become, be crowned** *He was crowned champion after his fight in Atlanta.*

CHAMPION + VERB **defend her/his title**

CHAMPION + NOUN **fighter, jockey, etc.**

championship *noun*

1 **competition**

ADJ. **major | international, national, world | British, European, etc. | swimming, tennis, etc.**

VERB + CHAMPIONSHIP **hold** *The championships are to be held in Rome.* **| compete in, take part in** *Over thirty children will compete in the swimming championships.* **| win** *She has won four major championships in the last five years.* **| lose**

CHAMPIONSHIP + VERB **take place**

CHAMPIONSHIP + NOUN **final, game, match, race | title, winner**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *I saw him play at last year's tennis championship.* **| in a/the ~** *the teams in the championship*

2 **position/title of champion**

VERB + CHAMPIONSHIP **hold** *Who holds the championship at the moment?* **| take, win** *He's won the championship for the third time in a row.* **| lose | regain | retain** *She managed to retain the championship.*

chance *noun*

1 possibility

ADJ. **excellent, good, high, strong | fair, fighting, sporting, realistic, reasonable** *There's a fair chance that nobody will come to the talk.* **| little, the merest, million-to-one, minimal, outside, slender, slim, slight** *There was only a million-to-one chance of it happening. As long as there is an outside chance, we will go for it.* **| fifty-fifty, one-in-three, -four, etc., 10, 20, etc. per cent** *They have a 90 per cent chance of success.* **| survival** *What are his survival chances?* **| election, electoral**

VERB + CHANCE **give sb** *The doctors gave him* (= said that he had) *little chance of surviving the night.* **| be in with, have, stand** *After a poor start, they are now in with a chance of winning the league. He doesn't stand a chance of winning against such an experienced player.* **| assess, rate** *How do you rate our chances of finding her?* **| fancy** *I don't fancy our chances of getting there on time.* **| boost, enhance, improve, increase, maximize | compromise, jeopardize, lessen, minimize, prejudice, reduce, ruin, scupper, spoil**

PREP. **by any ~** *Are you by any chance Mr Ludd?* **| ~ of** *The missing climber's chances of survival are slim.*

PHRASES **fat chance** *(informal) Fat chance* (= there is no chance) *of him helping you!* **| have every chance** *She has every chance of passing the exam if she works hard.* **| no chance!** *'Will he lend us his car?' 'No chance!'* **| on the off chance** (= just in case) *I rang the firm just on the off chance that they might have a vacancy.*

2 opportunity

ADJ. **fair, good, great, ideal, wonderful** *She played left-handed to give her opponent a fair chance. This is the ideal chance for him to show his ability.* **| big** *This is your big chance?grab it with both hands.* **| once-in-a-lifetime | last, second** *The teacher gave her one last chance to prove she could behave. There are no second chances in this business.* **| educational, life** *The new college is intended to improve the life chances of children in the inner city.* **| clear, clear-cut, scoring** *(sport)*

QUANT. **element** *There is always an element of chance in buying a used car.*

VERB + CHANCE **get, have** *I finally had the chance to meet my hero.* | **deserve** *He deserves the chance to give his side of the story.* | **welcome** *I would welcome the chance to give my opinion.* | **give sb, offer (sb), provide (sb with)** | **deny sb** *No child should be denied the chance of growing up in a family.* | **wait for** | **create, make** (sport) *The team created several clear chances but failed to score.* | **spot** *She spotted her chance of making a quick profit.* | **grab, grasp, jump at, seize, take** *Travis had left the door open?she seized her chance and was through it like a shot. Take every chance that comes your way.* | **blow, miss, pass up, squander, throw away, turn down, waste** *They blew their chance to go second in the league. I wouldn't pass up the chance of working for them.*

CHANCE + VERB **arise, come up, come your way** *When the chance came up to go to Paris, she jumped at it.*

PHRASES **given the chance** *Given the chance, I'd stop work tomorrow.* | **half a chance** *The dog always runs off when it gets half a chance.* | **let a chance slip (by)** *If she let this chance slip, she would regret it for the rest of her life.*

3 **risk**

VERB + CHANCE **take** *The guide book didn't mention the hotel, but we decided to take a chance.*

PREP. **~ on** *The manager took a chance on the young goalkeeper.* | **~ with** *The police were taking no chances with the protesters.*

4 **luck/fortune**

ADJ. **pure, sheer** | **happy, lucky** *By a happy chance he bumped into an old friend on the plane.* | **unlucky**

VERB + CHANCE **leave sth to** *Leaving nothing to chance, he delivered the letter himself.*

PREP. **by ~** *The police came upon the hideout purely by chance.* | **due to ~** *The results could simply be due to chance.* | **through ~** *I got most answers right through sheer chance.*

PHRASES **a game of chance** *Chess is not a game of chance.* | **take your chances** (= take a risk in the hope that things will turn out well) *He took his chances and jumped into the water.*

change *noun*

1 **becoming/making sb/sth different**

ADJ. **big, considerable, dramatic, drastic, enormous, extensive, far-reaching, fundamental, important, major, marked, massive, momentous, profound, radical, revolutionary, sea, significant, substantial, sweeping, wholesale** *Television has undergone a sea change in the last two years.* | **complete** | **irreversible** | **systematic** | **cosmetic, marginal, minimal, minor, slight, small, subtle** | **long-term, short-term** | **abrupt, rapid, sudden** | **gradual** | **seasonal** | **net, overall** *net change in incomes* | **global** | **qualitative, quantitative** | **beneficial, desirable, effective, exciting, nice, pleasant, refreshing, welcome** | **unwelcome** | **unanticipated, unexpected, unforeseen** | **climate, constitutional, cultural, demographic, economic, environmental, legislative, organizational, political, population, social, structural, technological** | **culture, gear, name, policy, rule, sex** *the need for a culture change within the industry He made a rapid gear change as he approached the bend.*

VERB + CHANGE **make** *I made a couple of minor changes to my opening paragraph. It made a pleasant change not having to work.* | **bring about, cause, effect, force, produce** *How far does war bring about social change?* | **introduce** *We are going to introduce a few changes to the system.* | **undergo** | **show** *He needs to show a change in attitude if he is to succeed.* | **reflect** *Courses offered in schools reflect changes in the job market.* | **adapt to** *Businesses have to adapt to change.* | **call for, demand** *He called for a change of mood in Scottish politics.* | **oppose, resist** *We resist change because of fear of the unknown.* | **prevent** | **be subject to** *Train times are subject to change without notice.*

CHANGE + VERB **occur, take place** *Major economic changes have occurred recently.*

PREP. **for a ~** *I usually take the bus to town, but today I cycled for a change.* | **~ from, ~ in** *The last few years have seen a change in attitudes to single parents.* | **~ of** *a change of government* | **~ to** *the change from the old to the new system*

PHRASES **a change for the better/worse** *I reckon we've all made a big change for the better.* | **a change of clothes** (= an extra set of clothes to change into) *Take a change of clothes in case you get dirty.* | **a change of heart/mind** *He said he's not coming, but he might have a change of heart.* | **a change of scene** *I needed a change of scene after being in the job for so long.* | **a climate of change** *In the current* *climate of change, adaptability is vital.* **| the pace/rate of change** *A successful company must keep up with the pace of technological change.* **| a period of change** *The eighties were a period of great change in publishing.* **| the tide of change** *The president realized he could not hold back the tide of change, and resigned.*

2 **coins/notes of low value**

ADJ. **loose, small** *He emptied his pockets of loose change.*

PREP. **in ~** *I've got about 25 dollars in change.* **| ~ for** *Ask the cashier if she has change for a £20 note.*

3 **money you get back if you pay too much**

VERB + CHANGE **check, count | give** *This machine does not give change.* **| get | take | keep** *I told the taxi driver to keep the change.*

PREP. **~ from/out of** *The meal left me with not much change from £100.*

change *verb*

ADV. **considerably, dramatically, fundamentally, a lot, radically, significantly** *Our way of life has changed dramatically over the last ten years. Jane has changed a lot since she went to university.* **| completely | (very) little** *The village has actually changed very little in the last hundred years.* **| all the time, constantly, continually** *The language is changing all the time.* **| fast, rapidly, suddenly** *Attitudes to marriage are changing fast.* **| gradually, slowly**

PREP. **from** *Leeds changed from a small market town into a busy city.* **| into, to** *His anger changed to sadness.*

PHRASES **change out of all recognition** *The town had changed out of all recognition.*

channel *noun*

1 television/radio station

ADJ. **radio, television/TV, video | cable, satellite, terrestrial | commercial, independent | movie, sports, etc.**

VERB + CHANNEL **change (to), switch (to/over to), tune (in) to** *I changed channels when the news came on.*

CHANNEL + VERB **broadcast** *This channel broadcasts 24 hours a day.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *There's an interesting documentary on Channel 4 tonight.*

2 route for sending information

ADJ. **direct, indirect** *Journalists always have indirect channels for getting information.* **| formal, official** *She first tried to get a doctor's certificate through official channels.* **| informal | appropriate, conventional, normal, proper, right, usual | effective** *an effective channel for communication* **| diplomatic | communication, distribution** *worldwide distribution channels*

VERB + CHANNEL **go through, use** *If you want a visa, you will have to go through the proper channels.* **| establish, open (up)** *attempts to open up new channels of communication*

PREP. **through a/the ~** *The government hopes to settle the dispute through diplomatic channels.*

PHRASES **a channel of communication, channels of distribution**

3 narrow area of water

ADJ. **deep | narrow | drainage, irrigation** *Irrigation channels supply the crops with water.* **| river, water** *The estate has fountains and water channels.* **| shipping**

chant *noun*

ADJ. **incessant | melodious | ritual, traditional | Gregorian** *a group of monks singing Gregorian chant* **| football** *You could hear the football chants a long way from the stadium.*

VERB + CHANT **sing | keep up** *The crowd kept up an incessant chant of 'Out! Out! Out!'* **| hear**

PREP. **amid ~s, to ~s** *The band left the stage to chants of 'We want more! We want more!'* **| ~ of**

chaos *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, complete, total, utter | general | administrative, domestic, economic, financial, political, social, traffic**

VERB + CHAOS **bring, cause, create, lead to** *A serious road accident caused traffic chaos yesterday.* **| end in, result in** *The game ended in chaos.* **| be plunged/ thrown into, descend/slide into** *The country is sliding into economic chaos.* **| face | avert, avoid**

CHAOS + VERB **break out, ensue** *Chaos broke out when the fire started. I lost my bag in the ensuing chaos.* **| reign, rule** *The government collapsed and chaos reigned.*

PREP. **in ~** *The airport was in chaos during the strike.*

PHRASES **on/to the brink of chaos** *The country was brought to the brink of chaos.* **| order out of chaos** *His brave leadership has created order out of chaos.* **| a route to chaos, a scene of chaos** *Doctors worked day and night amid scenes of utter chaos.* **| a state of chaos**

chaotic *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem** *Things often appear chaotic to the outsider.* **| become, get** *Things have been getting chaotic in the office recently.*

ADV. **really, very** *It was really chaotic just before the show started.* **| absolutely** *Heathrow airport is absolutely chaotic.* **| increasingly | a bit, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, somewhat** *Things can be fairly chaotic in our house.*

chap *noun*

ADJ. **clever, decent, good, jolly, lucky, nice, pleasant** *He was a pleasant chap but didn't talk much.* **| good-looking, handsome | young | old | poor** *The poor old chap was very shaken by the experience.* **| ordinary**

PHRASES **not (such) a bad chap** *He's not such a bad chap really.* **| sort of chap** *He's a decent sort of chap.*

chapel *noun*

1 **part of a church; room/building used as a church**

ADJ. **little, small | side** *The funeral was conducted in one of the smaller side chapels.* **| family, hospital, memorial, prison, private, royal, school, wedding** *They were married in a wedding chapel in Las Vegas.*

CHAPEL + VERB **be dedicated to sb** *The chapel is dedicated to St Michael.*

PREP. **in a/the ~**

2 **church for some Protestant groups**

ADJ. **Baptist, Methodist, Nonconformist, etc.**

VERB + CHAPEL **attend, go to** *He goes to chapel every Sunday.*

PREP. **at ~** *They are still at chapel* (= at a service). **| at a/the ~** *They agreed to meet at the chapel after the service.*

chapter *noun*

1 **part of a book**

ADJ. **introductory, opening**

VERB + CHAPTER **read** *I read the first few chapters and then got bored.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *His influence on other writers will be discussed in the next chapter.* **| ~ about/on** *a chapter on the city's architecture*

2 **particular period**

ADJ. **difficult, sad, unhappy** *Her return to France ended a particularly unhappy chapter in her life.*

character *noun*

1 **person's nature/person with a particular nature**

ADJ. **good, excellent, exemplary, impeccable | generous, gentle, likeable, lovable, popular | colourful, larger-than-life, lively, real** *You must have come across some real characters, working in the circus.* | **reformed** *He used to go out every night, but now he's a reformed character.* | **complex, elusive, enigmatic, odd | forceful, formidable, strong | weak | volatile | prickly, unpleasant | bad, evil, ruthless, violent | dubious, shady, suspicious** *Who's that suspicious character hanging around outside?* | **true | local** *The pub was full of colourful local characters.* | **human | moral** *a woman of impeccable moral character*

VERB + CHARACTER **be, have | form, make up | reveal** *She revealed her true character when anyone disagreed with her.* | **conceal, hide | reflect** *His scruffy appearance does not reflect his character.*

CHARACTER + NOUN **trait | defect | change** *She's undergone a complete character change since her promotion.* | **reference** *Applicants were required to obtain character references before being considered for the work.* | **assassination** *The defence lawyer attempted a character assassination of the witness* (= tried to show the witness had a bad character). | **actor, actress**

PREP. **in sb's ~** *It's not in his character to tell lies.* | **out of ~** *The lawyer argued that his client's violent behaviour was out of character.*

2 **nature of sth**

ADJ. **distinctive, individual, unique | essential, fundamental, intrinsic | original | traditional** *The renovated buildings retain their traditional character.* | **international, national, regional** *Food in Italy has a distinct regional character. the features that make up the national character* | **intimate | public** *the public character of material published on the Internet* | **serious** *offences of a serious character* | **military, political | rural, urban** *The development detracts from the rural character of the area.*

VERB + CHARACTER **have** *Each house in the street has its own distinctive character.* | **assume, take on** *As you move north, the landscape takes on a different character.* | **form, make up** *factors that form the character of a nation* | **lose** *The town centre* *has lost much of its original character.* **| retain | preserve | give sth** *It's the basil that gives the sauce its essential character.*

PREP. **in ~** *The houses are Mediterranean in character.*

3 **interesting quality that sth has**

ADJ. **considerable, great**

VERB + CHARACTER **have** *His face has character?I'll say that for it.* **| add, give sth** *the individual touches that give character to a house*

PREP. **of ~** *buildings of considerable character*

PHRASES **full of character** *The restaurant is cheap and full of character.* **| have a character of its own/all (of) its own** *Your handwriting has a character of its own.*

4 **person's inner strength**

ADJ. **great**

VERB + CHARACTER **show** *The team showed great character in coming back to win.* **| build** *Adventure camps are considered to be character-building.*

PHRASES **strength of character**

5 **person in a story/film, etc.**

ADJ. **central, chief, leading, main, principal | minor, supporting | fictional, fictitious | believable | sympathetic, unsympathetic | comic, heroic, tragic | cartoon**

VERB + CHARACTER **play, portray** *The main character is played by Nicole Kidman.* **| develop** *the artist who developed the Superman character* **| kill off** *The writers killed off her character when she wanted to leave the soap.*

CHARACTER + NOUN **development**

PREP. **in ~** *The actors remained in character to answer questions from the audience.*

6 **letter/sign in writing/printing**

ADJ. **Chinese | ASCII, numeric**

QUANT. **set, string**

VERB + CHARACTER **insert | delete**

CHARACTER + NOUN **set, string**

characteristic *adj.*

VERBS be | become

ADV. deeply, extremely, highly, very *his highly characteristic features* **| entirely, utterly | fairly, quite**

PREP. of *a problem that was fairly characteristic of late eighteenth century society*

characteristic *noun*

ADJ. **defining, distinctive, distinguishing, identifying, individual, marked, special, striking, unique | personal | common, family, inherited, national, shared | basic, general | chief, dominant, main, major, outstanding, principal | essential, fundamental, important, key, salient | desirable | behavioural, biological, cultural, demographic, economic, genetic, physical, psychological, racial, sexual, social | human**

VERB + CHARACTERISTIC **have** *The two species have several characteristics in common.*

charade *noun*

ADJ. **clever, elaborate | pathetic, ridiculous**

VERB + CHARADE **continue, go along with, keep up, maintain, take part in** *I refused to go along with their pathetic charade.*

PREP. **~ of** *She struggled to maintain the charade of not being afraid.*

charcoal *noun*

ADJ. **activated**

QUANT. **lump, piece**

VERB + CHARCOAL **make, produce | burn**

CHARCOAL + NOUN **stick | drawing, sketch**

charge *noun*

1 **price asked for sth**

ADJ. **heavy, high | reasonable, small | minimum | fixed, standard | total | annual, daily, etc. | standing** *There is a quarterly standing charge.* **| additional, extra, further | admission, bank, call, call-out, cancellation, commission, cover, handling, hire, interest, maintenance, prescription, service**

VERB + CHARGE **impose, introduce, levy, make** *We make a small charge for wrapping your gift.* **| waive** *They agreed to waive the cancellation charges.* **| incur** *All cancellations incur a charge.* **| pay | increase | reduce | reverse the ~s** (= when telephoning)

PREP. **at a ~** *This service is available at a nominal charge.* **| for a ~** *The hotel operates a bus service to the village for a small charge.* **| ~ for** *There is no charge for cashing traveller's cheques.* **| ~ on** *a charge on company profits*

PHRASES **free of charge** (= without any charge) *The company will deliver free of charge.*

2 **official statement accusing sb of a crime**

ADJ. **grave, serious | lesser, reduced** *He was found guilty on a reduced charge of assault.* **| baseless, false, trumped-up | civil, criminal, disciplinary | assault, corruption, drug/drugs, fraud, murder, etc.**

VERB + CHARGE **bring, file, lay, level, make** *Police have brought a charge of dangerous driving against the man.* **| bring, prefer, press** (only used with **charges**) **| drop, withdraw | answer, face** *She is almost certain to face criminal charges.* **| admit** *He has admitted the murder charge.* **| deny, dismiss, refute, reject** *The prime minister dismissed the charge that he had misled Parliament.* **| fabricate, trump up** *He accused the government of fabricating the charges for political reasons.* **| investigate | prove, substantiate** *The charges will be difficult to prove.* **| dismiss, throw out** *The court dismissed the charge against him.*

CHARGE + VERB **allege sth** *new charges alleging the misuse of funds*

CHARGE + NOUN **sheet** *At the police station a charge sheet was made out.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *She appeared in court on charges of kidnapping and assault.* **| without ~** *to be detained/held/released without charge* **| ~ against** *The charges against you have been dropped.* **| ~ of** *a charge of armed robbery* **| ~ relating to** *charges relating to the embezzlement of public funds*

PHRASES **bring/prefer/press charges (against sb)** *Many victims of crime are reluctant to press charges against their attackers.*

3 control

ADJ. **overall** *The conductor has overall charge of the train.* **| personal** *She took personal charge of the files.* **| sole** *Stephen will resume sole charge for the time being.* **| temporary**

VERB + CHARGE **have | take** *We need somebody to take charge of the financial side.* **| resume | place/put sb in** *John has been put in charge of marketing.*

PREP. **in ~ (of sb/sth)** *I need to feel more in charge of my life.* **| in/under sb's ~** *The child is under my charge until the mother returns from abroad.*

4 sudden attack

ADJ. **baton, cavalry** *They were driven back by a police baton charge.*

VERB + CHARGE **lead** *Allen led the charge, but could they get a goal back?* **| sound** *The bugle sounded the charge.*

CHARGE + VERB **drive sb back**

charge *verb*

1 **ask sb to pay money**

ADV. **directly**

VERB + CHARGE **be entitled to, be free to, have a right to** *Firms are free to charge whatever they like for their services.*

PREP. **against** *Research and development expenditure is charged against profits in the year it is incurred.* | **at** *Stamp Duty will be charged at one per cent.* | **for** *We don't charge for delivery.* | **on** *The bank charges a commission on all foreign currency transactions.* | **to** *The cost is charged directly to the profit and loss account.*

PHRASES **charge sth to sb's account** *£50 will be charged to your account.*

2 **make an official accusation**

ADV. **formally | jointly** *The teenagers were jointly charged with attempted murder.*

PREP. **in connection with** *A man has been charged in connection with the attack.* | **with** *She has not yet been formally charged with the offence.*

3 **rush/attack**

ADV. **headlong | around/round, in, out** *The children were all charging around outside.*

PREP. **at** *I was worried that the animal might charge at us.* | **down** *I heard the sound of feet charging down the stairs.* | **into** *She charged into the room.* | **out of, through, towards** *The rhino charged headlong towards us.* | **up**

charged *adj.*

1 **full of electricity**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **fully** *It's wise to take a fully charged spare battery with you.* **| negatively, positively | oppositely | electrically** *electrically charged particles*

PREP. **with**

2 **full of strong feeling**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly** *She had a highly charged emotional life.* **| emotionally, erotically, politically** *an emotionally charged atmosphere*

PREP. **with** *The room was charged with hatred.*

charity *noun*

ADJ. **local, national | registered | private | animal, cancer, conservation, educational, housing, medical**

VERB + CHARITY **donate (money) to, give (money) to, support | go to** *All the proceeds from the sale will go to charity.* **| ask for | accept** *They are proud people who don't accept charity.* **| depend on, live on** *They have no money and are forced to live on charity.*

CHARITY + NOUN **appeal, auction, ball, concert, event, match, show | school | shop | work | worker**

PREP. **for ~** *The school raised over a hundred pounds for charity.* **| ~ for** *a charity for sick children*

PHRASES **an act of charity**

charm *noun*

ADJ. considerable, great, immense *a woman of considerable charm* **| easy, natural, quiet, real, special** *His natural charm and wit made him very popular.* **| personal | boyish, feminine | old-fashioned, old-world, period, traditional | rural, rustic** *The farmhouse had a certain rustic charm about it.*

VERB + CHARM have, possess | keep, retain *The village still retains a lot of its old-world charm.* **| turn on, use** *He can certainly turn on the charm when he wants to! I nagged him for a week and used all my feminine charm.* **| exude, ooze** *He oozes charm, but I wouldn't trust him.* **| be immune to, resist** *He was unable to resist her charms.* **| succumb to** *Many women had succumbed to his charms.* **| be lacking in, lack** *The dining room was dark and gloomy, and the food was similarly lacking in charm.* **| lose** *The idea of being a farmer had lost its charm for me by this time.*

charming *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | find sb/sth**

ADV. **extremely, really, very | absolutely, altogether, perfectly, quite, thoroughly, utterly** *She looked small and gentle and altogether charming.* **| rather | exquisitely** *an exquisitely charming portrait*

charred *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **badly | slightly** *The meat was slightly charred.* **| hideously** *her hideously charred and blackened features*

chart *noun*

1 **diagram showing information**

ADJ. **bar, flow, pie | flip, wall** *Each classroom has a flip chart to write on.* **| organization, progress, weather**

CHART + VERB **give sth, show sth** *a bar chart showing how sales have increased*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the information given in the chart* **| on a/the ~** *The percentage of school-leavers is shown on the chart.*

2 **detailed map of the sea/sky**

ADJ. **aviation, nautical, navigation**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *The islands were not marked on their chart.*

3 **the charts: list of pop music records**

ADJ. **album, pop, singles**

VERB + CHART **enter, go into, hit** *Their single went straight into the charts at number one. His latest single hit the charts last week.* **| be top of, top** *The song topped the charts for three weeks.*

CHART + NOUN **hit**

PREP. **in the ~** *Is that song still in the charts?*

charter *noun*

1 **official written statement of principles, rights, etc.**

ADJ. **draft | founding | environmental, social | national, UN/United Nations | citizens', patients', etc.**

VERB + CHARTER **draw up | sign**

CHARTER + VERB **set sth out** *The charter clearly sets out children's rights.*

PREP. **~ for** *a national charter for the protection of animals* **| ~ of** *a charter of workers' rights*

2 **document giving rights to a town/an organization**

ADJ. **royal**

VERB + CHARTER **give sb/sth, grant sb/sth, issue | sign | apply for | receive | revoke**

PREP. **by ~** *They were given this right by royal charter.*

chase *noun*

ADJ. **long, short | high-speed | car** *The film ends with a long car chase.* **| police | wild goose** *He sent us on a wild goose chase* (= a search for sth that cannot be found).

VERB + CHASE **give, take up** *The old lady shouted for help and then gave chase. A police officer arrived on the scene and took up the chase.* **| abandon, give up** *Exhausted and hungry, the hunters finally gave up the chase.* **| join (in)** *Several children joined in the chase.*

PREP. **in ~ (of)** *She ran in chase of the pram.*

PHRASES **the thrill of the chase** *What did he really want? Was it just the thrill of the chase?*

chasm *noun*

1 **hole in the ground**

ADJ. **deep, gaping, great, huge, yawning**

CHASM + VERB **open (up)** *Suddenly a huge chasm opened in the earth.*

2 **great difference of feelings/interests**

ADJ. **great, huge, unbridgeable, wide, yawning**

VERB + CHASM **bridge**

CHASM + VERB **separate sth** *A chasm separates my generation from my parents'.*

PREP. **~ between** *an attempt to bridge the unbridgeable chasm between the two cultures* **| ~ of** *a huge chasm of hate and prejudice*

chat *noun*

ADJ. **brief, little, quick, short | long | cosy, fireside, friendly, good, nice | casual, informal | quiet | interesting | idle | confidential, private**

VERB + CHAT **have** *We had a nice chat over a cup of tea.*

CHAT + NOUN **show**

PREP. **~ about** *a chat about his new job* **| ~ between** *a chat between Mr Blair and a journalist* **| ~ to/with** *I'll have a chat to John about it. a friendly chat with a neighbour*

chat *verb*

ADV. **briefly | amicably, casually, easily, informally** *You will have a chance to circulate and chat informally.* **| politely | away** *They chatted away to each other.*

PREP. **about** *We chatted briefly about the weather.* **| to** *George was in the kitchen chatting to some friends.* **| with** *I spent a happy half-hour chatting with a friend.*

chatter *noun*

ADJ. **constant, endless, incessant** *Her constant chatter was starting to annoy me.* **| excited, nervous, noisy | idle** *I wish you'd stop wasting time in idle chatter.*

PREP. **~ about** *She was full of chatter about her new friends.*

chatter *verb*

ADV. **excitedly, happily | away, on** *He chattered on happily for about half an hour.*

PREP. **about** *We chattered about work.* **| to** *chattering excitedly to her friends*

chauffeur *noun*

ADJ. **uniformed**

CHAUFFEUR + VERB **drive (sb/sth)** *The chauffeur drove them straight to the theatre.*

PHRASES **chauffeur-driven** *The newly-weds set off in a chauffeur-driven limousine.*
> Note at JOB

chauvinism *noun*

ADJ. **male | national | British, Russian, etc.**

chauvinist *noun*

ADJ. **male**

PHRASES **a male chauvinist pig**

cheap *adj., adv.*

1 **low price**

VERBS **be, be going** *a brand new radio going cheap* **| buy sth, sell sth** *They're selling fabrics cheap this week.* **| not come** *Shoes like that don't come cheap.*

ADV. **amazingly, extremely, incredibly, remarkably, ridiculously, very** *It's a good restaurant, and incredibly cheap.* **| comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively | hardly, not exactly** *At £60,000 the car is not exactly cheap* (= it is very expensive). **| suspiciously** *The watch was suspiciously cheap; it was probably a fake.* **| buy/get sth on the cheap** *The school managed to get a couple of computers on the cheap.*

2 **poor quality**

VERBS **be, look** *The glasses are plain without looking cheap.*

PHRASES **cheap and nasty** *cheap and nasty products with brand names you've never heard of*

check *noun*

1 **close look to make sure sth is safe/correct**

ADJ. **complete, full, thorough | careful, close, rigorous, tight | cursory, quick | periodic, regular, routine | annual, daily, etc. | constant, continuous | random, spot** *In a series of spot checks, police searched buses crossing the border.* **| cross** (also **cross-check**), **double** (also **double-check**) **| independent | visual** *I did a quick visual check of the engine.* **| dental, fitness, health, medical | police, safety, security | identity | customs, immigration, passport | stock | quality | spell/spelling** *I do a spell check on all my emails.* **| sound** *The band wants to do a sound check before the concert.*

VERB + CHECK **carry out, conduct, do, give sth, have, make, run** *I'll just have a quick check to see if the letter's arrived. A thorough check is made before the luggage is put on the plane. We're running a police check on all applicants for the job.* **| keep, maintain** *Police are keeping a close check on the house.* **| go for** *I have to go for a dental check.*

PREP. **~ on** *a routine check on the factory*

2 **control/restraint**

ADJ. **natural** *Leaving some fields fallow provided a natural check on insect populations.*

VERB + CHECK **act as, provide | hold sth in, keep sth in** *You need to keep your temper in check!*

PREP. **~ on** *The law acts as a check on people's behaviour.*

check *verb*

ADV. **always, daily, regularly** *Always check that the electricity is switched off before you start. Check the engine oil level regularly.* **| carefully, thoroughly**

VERB + CHECK **had better, must, need to, should** *We had better check that all the doors are locked.*

PREP. **against** *I'll need to check these figures against last year's.* **| for** *Check the roof for loose slates.* **| with** *I checked with her to see if she needed any help.*

PHRASES **be worth checking** *It's worth checking that there is no rust on the car.* **| check to see if/whether** *He was just checking to see if I was in my room.*

checklist *noun*

ADJ. **useful | mental**

VERB + CHECKLIST **have | use | draw up, produce** *My boss is drawing up a checklist of my duties.* **| go through, run through** *We ran through the checklist of points to consider when buying a computer.*

PREP. **~ for** *a useful checklist for assessing different schools* **| ~ of** *a checklist of questions*

checkout *noun*

ADJ. **supermarket**

VERB + CHECKOUT **go through, walk through** *You can't just go through the checkout without paying!*

CHECKOUT + NOUN **assistant, girl, operator**

PREP. **at the ~** *He hates waiting at the checkout.*

checkpoint *noun*

ADJ. **border | army, military | vehicle**

VERB + CHECKPOINT **set up** *The army has set up checkpoints on all the major roads in the area.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *We were stopped at the checkpoint.* **| through a/the ~** *The police waved our car through the border checkpoint.*

check-up *noun*

ADJ. **thorough | regular | annual, monthly, etc. | routine | dental, health, medical** VERB + CHECK-UP **go for, have** *At your age, you should have regular check-ups.* **| do, give (sb)** *The company doctor does check-ups on Wednesdays.*

cheek *noun*

1 **part of the face**

ADJ. **flushed, hot | cool | smooth, soft | ashen, pale, pallid, pasty | blushing, pink, rosy, scarlet | sunken** *His red-rimmed eyes and sunken cheeks betrayed his lack of sleep.* **| hamster/hamster-like, plump | unshaven | tear-stained, wet** *Her cheeks were wet with tears.*

VERB + CHEEK **brush, dab (at), stroke, touch** *She dabbed at her cheeks with a handkerchief.* **| kiss, peck | give (sb), proffer** *She proffered her cheek to kiss.*

CHEEK + VERB **blaze, burn, flame, grow hot, redden** *He felt his cheeks burning with shame.*

PREP. **across sb's/the ~** *She gave him a sharp slap across his cheek.* **| against sb's ~** *She laid her cheek against his.* **| down sb's ~** *A tear slid down her cheek.* **| in sb's ~s** *She had a healthy bloom in her cheeks.* **| on sb's/the ~** *He kissed his mother on both cheeks and got on the train.*

PHRASES **bring the colour (back) to your cheeks, the colour floods/rises/rushes to your cheeks** *The colour flooded to his cheeks when he realized he was being watched.* **| a kiss/peck on the cheek** *She gave him a peck on the cheek and said goodbye.*

2 **lack of respect**

ADJ. **awful, bare-faced, colossal** *It's an awful cheek, the way he keeps asking you to lend him money.* **| bleeding** *(taboo)*, **bloody** *(taboo)*, **damned**

VERB + CHEEK **have** *He's got a cheek, making you wait outside his office.*

PHRASES **Of all the cheek!/What (a) cheek!** *He asked you for money? Of all the cheek!*

cheekbone *noun*

ADJ. **high, prominent | perfect, sculptured | broken, cracked, fractured**

PREP. **beneath sb's ~s** *The hollows beneath his cheekbones showed his stress.* **| on sb's ~s** *A flush of anger appeared on her cheekbones.* **| over sb's ~s** *The skin stretched taut over his cheekbones.*

cheer *noun*

ADJ. **big, deafening, great, hearty, huge, loud, rousing** *The players were greeted by rousing cheers.*

VERB + CHEER **give (sb)** *They gave a big cheer when I finally arrived.* **| be greeted by/with, get, raise** *She got a loud cheer when she finished speaking.*

CHEER + VERB **go up** *A deafening cheer went up from the crowd.*

CHEER + NOUN **leader**

PREP. **amid/amidst ~** *He accepted the prize amid cheers.* **| to ~s** *She went off the stage to loud cheers.* **| ~ for** *a cheer for democracy* **| ~ from** *There were loud cheers from the crowd.* **| ~ of** *cheers of welcome*

PHRASES **three cheers for sb/sth** *Three cheers for Mr Jones, who has been such a wonderful teacher!*

cheer *verb*

1 **shout to encourage sb**

ADV. **loudly, wildly** *The crowd cheered loudly as the goalkeeper made a brilliant save.*

PREP. **for** *The fans cheered for their team.*

2 **make sb happy/more hopeful**

ADV. **greatly, a lot** *I was greatly cheered by this news. Talking to Jane cheered me up a lot.* **| a bit | up**

PREP. **(up) with** *I cheered her up with memories of our holidays together.*

cheerful *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become | keep, remain, stay** *I'm amazed that she keeps so cheerful.* **| keep sb** *We tried to keep him cheerful.*

ADV. **amazingly, extremely, incredibly, remarkably, very | almost | fairly, quite | falsely** *'The doctor is on her way,' said Mrs Morris, sounding falsely cheerful.*

cheese *noun*

ADJ. **hard | soft | sharp, strong | mild | full-fat, low-fat | grated, melted, toasted | processed | blue, cottage, cream, curd, goat's, smoked | Cheddar, Parmesan, etc. | Dutch, Swiss, etc.**

QUANT. **chunk, crumb, hunk, lump, piece, slice**

VERB + CHEESE **eat, have | make | cut, grate, slice** *Cut the cheese into cubes.* **| melt | sprinkle (sth with), top (sth with)** *Sprinkle the cheese over the beans. Sprinkle the potatoes with grated cheese and grill for a few minutes.*

CHEESE + NOUN **fondue, omelette, roll, sandwich, sauce, souffle | board** (= a board on which cheese is cut and served; a selection of cheeses served during a meal) **| factory**

PHRASES **bread and cheese, cheese and biscuits, cheese on toast, a selection of cheeses** > Special page at FOOD

chef *noun*

ADJ. **excellent, good | cordon bleu | head, maitre, master | apprentice, second, sous, trainee** *He took a job as a sous chef in a London hotel.* > Note at JOB

chemical *noun*

ADJ. **pure | organic | inorganic, synthetic | dangerous, harmful, hazardous, poisonous, toxic | agricultural, household, industrial**

VERB + CHEMICAL **manufacture, produce | discharge, dump** *chemicals discharged by industry into our lakes and rivers* **| be exposed to** *Many workers are regularly exposed to dangerous chemicals.*

CHEMICAL + NOUN **factory, plant, works** *pollution from a big chemicals plant* **| business, company | industry, manufacturing**

chemist *noun*

1 **person who prepares and sells medicines**

ADJ. **local | dispensing**

PHRASES **chemist's (shop), the chemist's** *I've just got to go to the chemist's.*

2 **specialist in chemistry**

ADJ. **distinguished, leading | government, industrial | analytical, research | inorganic, organic** > Note at JOB

chemistry *noun*

1 **subject of study**

ADJ. **analytical, applied, theoretical | environmental, physical | industrial | inorganic, organic**

CHEMISTRY + NOUN **set** *For her twelfth birthday, she asked for a chemistry set.* > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

2 **chemical structure of substance**

ADJ. **blood, soil, water, etc. | body** *natural changes in body chemistry*

3 **personal feelings/attraction**

ADJ. **personal | sexual**

PREP. **~ between** *The personal chemistry between the two stars of the film is obvious.*

cheque *noun*

ADJ. **large | blank | bad, dud, forged | crossed, post-dated, signed | personal | giro, pay, traveller's**

VERB + CHEQUE **issue, make out, sign, write (out), write sb** *Shall I make the cheque out to you? Can I write you a cheque?* **| draw** *He drew a large cheque on his company's account.* **| make payable** *Cheques should be made payable to Toyland plc.* **| give sb, hand sb, hand over | deposit, pay in** *She deposited the cheque in her husband's account. I've got to go to the bank to pay this cheque in.* **| pay by | cash** *I'll cash a traveller's cheque at the bank.* **| accept** *Does the restaurant accept cheques?* **| clear, honour, pass** *He was sacked for passing bad cheques.* **| bounce | cancel, stop | endorse**

CHEQUE + VERB **bounce** *The cheque will bounce if your salary doesn't reach your account today.*

CHEQUE + NOUN **account | (guarantee) card** *Cheques must be supported by a cheue guarantee card.* **| book, stub**

PREP. **~ for** *a cheque for ten pounds*

cherry *nou*n

ADJ. **black, red | glace, morello | juicy, sour, sweet**

QUANT. **bunch**

CHERRY + NOUN **stone** > Special page at FRUIT

chess *noun*

ADJ. **computer, machine**

QUANT. **game**

VERB + CHESS **play**

CHESS + NOUN **board, piece, set, table | move | position | grandmaster, master, player | buff | championship, match, tournament | club | computer | world**
a star of the chess world

chest *noun*

ADJ. **broad, manly, massive, muscular, muscled, powerful, strong | narrow, puny | flat** *She wears loose clothes to hide her flat chest.* **| bare, naked | hairy, hairless | bad, weak, wheezy | lower, upper**

VERB + CHEST **clutch (at)** *Clutching his chest in agony, he fell to the ground.* **| thump** *'You've got to have courage,' he said, thumping his chest.*

CHEST + VERB **expand, heave, rise and fall | puff (out/up), swell** *His chest puffed out with indignation at the suggestion. His chest swelled with pride as he accepted the award.* **| tighten** *Her chest tightened with fear.* **| ache** *She ran until her chest ached.*

CHEST + NOUN **pain, tightness | injury | ailment, complaint, condition, disease, infection, problems, trouble | radiograph, X-ray | muscles | hair | cavity**

PREP. **in the/your ~** *She was hit in the chest by two of the bullets.* **| on the/your ~** *the hairs on his chest* **| to the/your ~** *He suffered burns to the chest and neck. She clutched her baby tightly to her chest.*

chestnut *noun*

ADJ. **bright, glossy, rich | dark, deep** > Special page at COLOUR

chew *verb*

ADV. **well, thoroughly | vigorously | thoughtfully | up** *Chew your food up thoroughly before you swallow it.*

PREP. **at** *She was chewing at her lower lip.* **| on** *The baby chewed on a rusk.*

chicken *noun*

1 **bird**

ADJ. **battery, corn-fed, free-range** *Battery chickens have miserable lives.* | **plump** | **scrawny** | **live** *a crate of live chickens*

VERB + CHICKEN **keep** | **kill** | **pluck** | **truss (up)** *Are we just going to sit here like trussed up chickens?*

CHICKEN + VERB **peck** | **scratch** *A few scrawny chickens were scratching around the yard.* | **cluck** | **roost** | **wander**

CHICKEN + NOUN **farmer** | **coop, run** | **wire** | **feed**

2 **meat**

ADJ. **fresh, frozen** | **juicy, succulent, tender** | **cold**

QUANT. **piece**

VERB + CHICKEN **eat, have** | **cook** | **barbecue, fry, grill, roast, etc.** | **stuff**

CHICKEN + NOUN **breast, drumsticks, giblets, joint, leg, liver, piece, thigh, wing** | **casserole, curry, pie, salad, sandwich, soup, stock**

PHRASES **(a) breast/leg of chicken, chicken and chips** > Special page at FOOD

chickenpox *noun* > Special page at ILLNESS

chief *nou*n

ADJ. **tribal | army, council, industry, intelligence, military, party, police, security, union | education, health, etc.**

PHRASES **chief of police, chief of staff**

child *noun*

ADJ. **little, small, young** *My father died while I was still a small child.* **| teenage** *We've got three teenage children.* **| good, obedient, well-behaved | delinquent, difficult, disobedient, fractious, mischievous, naughty, problem, sulky, unruly, wayward, wilful** *She works in a centre for delinquent children. He's always been a problem child. The children were quite unruly and ran around the house as if they owned it.* **| bright, gifted, intelligent, precocious** *a school for gifted children What a precocious child?reading Jane Austen at the age of ten!* **| dull, slow** *Teaching is particularly difficult when a class contains both slow and bright children.* **| well-cared for | abandoned, abused, neglected** *therapy for sexually abused children* **| sickly | loving | only** *It was a bit lonely being an only child.* **| fatherless, motherless | illegitimate | unborn** *an organization that campaigns for the rights of the unborn child* **| dependent** *tax concessions for families with dependent children* **| street** *There are a lot of street children in the poorer parts of the city.*

VERB + CHILD **have** *How many children have you got?* **| give birth to, have** *She didn't have her first child until she was nearly forty.* **| conceive** *We had trouble conceiving our first child.* **| expect** *They are expecting a child in June.* **| adopt | bring up, raise, rear** *He had old-fashioned ideas on how to bring up children.* **| indulge, pamper, spoil** *You can't spoil a child by giving it all the affection it wants.* **| abduct | abandon**

CHILD + VERB **be born** *Their first child was born with a rare heart condition.* **| develop, grow (up)** *Children grow up so quickly! good food for growing children* **| cry, scream, whimper, whine | misbehave**

CHILD + NOUN **actor, bride | welfare**

PREP. **with ~** *(literary) big with child* (= pregnant)

childbirth *noun*

ADJ. **natural**

VERB + CHILDBIRTH **die in** *His wife died in childbirth in 1928.*

PHRASES **the pain of childbirth** *She dreaded the pain of childbirth.*

childhood *noun*

ADJ. **happy | deprived, difficult, lonely, traumatic, unhappy | normal | early** *From earliest childhood she'd had a love of dancing.* **| late** *His health remained poor into later childhood.*

VERB + CHILDHOOD **have** *She had a very happy childhood.* **| spend** *He spent most of his childhood in Egypt.* **| survive** *Her second son didn't survive childhood.*

CHILDHOOD + NOUN **days, years | dream, experience, fantasy, memories | friend, sweetheart | home | disease, illness, mortality**

PREP. **during ~** *He became diabetic during childhood.* **| from ~** *She still retained many friends from childhood.* **| in ~** *She died in childhood.* **| throughout ~** *He travelled a lot throughout his childhood.*

PHRASES **scenes from/of sb's childhood**

chill *noun*

1 **coldness**

ADJ. **bitter, deep | cold, damp | slight | evening, morning, night | autumn/ autumnal, winter**

VERB + CHILL **feel** *I could feel the chill as soon as I went outside.* **| take off** *I'll add some hot water to the milk to take the chill off it* (= to make it slightly warmer).

CHILL + NOUN **factor** *With the chill factor, it's nearly minus forty here.*

PHRASES **a chill in the air** *There's a slight chill in the air.*

2 **feeling of fear**

ADJ. **sudden | icy**

VERB + CHILL **feel** *She felt a sudden chill at the thought of the dangers he faced.* **| strike** *Her words struck a chill in his heart.*

CHILL + VERB **run down/up sb's spine, run through sb** *A chill ran through me at the thought.*

PREP. **~ of** *a chill of fear*

PHRASES **send a chill through sb/down sb's spine** *The news sent a chill down her spine.*

3 **mild illness**

ADJ. **bad, nasty, severe | slight**

VERB + CHILL **catch, get** *I caught a nasty chill after my swim last week.* > Special page at ILLNESS

chilled *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel** *I suddenly felt chilled and had to go indoors.* **| serve sth** *The wine is best served chilled.*

PHRASES **chilled to the bone/marrow** *You must be chilled to the bone sitting out here!*

chilli *noun*

ADJ. **fresh | dried | hot | green, red**

CHILLI + NOUN **pepper | oil, powder, sauce | beans** > Special page at FOOD

chilly *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel** *She was beginning to feel chilly.* **| get** *We were starting to get a bit chilly.* **| turn (only used about the weather)** *It turned chilly in the afternoon.*

ADV. **decidedly, distinctly, very | a bit, pretty, quite, rather, somewhat**

chimney *noun*

ADJ. **high, tall | short | narrow, wide | tapering | smoking** *The air was black from smoking chimneys.* **| sooty | factory, industrial**

VERB + CHIMNEY **clean, sweep**

CHIMNEY + VERB **belch sth** *factory chimneys belching smoke over the town* **| draw** *This chimney doesn't draw very well.*

CHIMNEY + NOUN **breast, flue, piece, pot, stack | sweep**

chin *noun*

ADJ. **square | pointed/pointy | firm, jutting | non-existent, receding, weak | dimpled | determined, resolute | smooth | stubbled/stubbly, unshaven | double**

VERB + CHIN **lift, raise, stick out, tilt** *She tilted her chin at him defiantly.* **| finger, rub, scratch, stroke** *He stroked his chin thoughtfully.* **| rest** *She sat with her elbows on the table, resting her chin on her cupped hands.*

CHIN + VERB **rise** *His chin rose in a proud gesture.*

CHIN + NOUN **strap** *Fasten the chin strap or the helmet will fall off.*

PREP. **beneath/under sb's ~** *He put his hand under her chin and lifted her face to his.* **| down sb's ~** *The juice dribbled down his chin.* **| on sb's/the ~** *He had bits of food on his chin. She caught him with a hard blow on the chin.*

china *noun*

1 **hard white substance**

ADJ. **fine | bone** *fine bone china tableware*

VERB + CHINA **be made of**

CHINA + NOUN **cup, dish, etc. | clay**

2 **cups/plates, made of china**

ADJ. **best** *She got out the best china for the visitors.* **| broken, cracked**

QUANT. **set**

Chinese *nou*n

ADJ. **Mandarin**

CHINESE + NOUN **character** > Note at LANGUAGE

chip *noun*

1 **(usually chips) long thin piece of fried potato**

ADJ. **greasy | frozen, oven-ready**

QUANT. **bag, plate**

VERB + CHIP **eat, have** *All he'll eat is chips.* **| live on** *I never cook anything grand?we live on chips and baked beans.* **| cook, fry**

CHIP + NOUN **pan | shop**

PHRASES **and/with chips** *fish and chips* > Special page at FOOD

2 **microchip**

ADJ. **computer, silicon | graphics, memory, microprocessor**

VERB + CHIP **make, manufacture, produce | design, develop | use** *This computer uses the DX chip.*

CHIP + VERB **contain sth** *a chip containing the coding devices*

CHIP + NOUN **design, technology | set** *a Pentium-compatible chip set*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *Advances in chip technology have made it possible to pack even more circuits on a chip.* > Special page at COMPUTER

chip *verb*

ADV. **badly** *She fell and chipped her tooth quite badly.* | **away** *He was chipping away at the stone. (figurative) They chipped away at the power of the government* (= gradually made it weaker).

PREP. **off** *We chipped the paint off the wood.*

chocolate *noun*

1 **sweet brown food**

ADJ. **dark, plain | milk | white | bitter | cooking**

QUANT. **bar, slab | bit, piece, square** *He broke off a few squares of chocolate.* **| box** *I gave her a box of hand-made Belgian chocolates.*

VERB + CHOCOLATE **eat, have | break (up) into pieces/squares** *She broke a bar of dark chocolate into four pieces.* **| grate | melt** *Melt 100g of cooking chocolate in a basin over hot water.* **| coat/cover sth in/with, dip sth in, spread/sprinkle (sth with)** *a box of brazil nuts coated in chocolate*

CHOCOLATE + VERB **melt** *Stir until the chocolate has melted.*

CHOCOLATE + NOUN **bar, chip | biscuit, cake, eclair, egg, gateau, ice cream, mousse, sauce | factory** > Special page at FOOD

2 **small sweet made from chocolate**

ADJ. **soft-centred | hand-made**

QUANT. **box**

CHOCOLATE + NOUN **box**

3 **drink made from powdered chocolate**

ADJ. **hot | drinking**

QUANT. **cup, mug**

choice *noun*

1 act of choosing

ADJ. **careful, good, informed, right, wise** *a careful choice of words* | **bad, wrong** | **difficult, hard, stark** *She faced the stark choice of backing the new scheme or losing her job.* | **natural** | **moral** *Doctors have to make moral choices every day of their lives.* | **career**

VERB + CHOICE **make** | **be faced with, face**

PREP. **by/from/out of ~** (= because you have chosen) *I wouldn't have come to this bar by choice!* | **of ~** (= that is/should be chosen by a particular group of people for a particular purpose) *It's the software of choice for business use.* | **of your ~** (= that you choose yourself) *First prize will be a meal for two at a restaurant of your choice.* | **~ about** *to make choices about their future*

2 chance/ability to choose

ADJ. **clear** | **free** *Students have a free choice from a range of subjects.* | **first** *You can have first choice of all the rooms.* | **multiple** *a test with multiple choice questions* | **consumer, parental**

VERB + CHOICE **have** *I now had a clear choice: either I accept their terms or I leave.* | **exercise** *Everyone in a democracy has the right to exercise choice.* | **give sb, present sb with** *We gave her the choice, and she decided she'd like a bike for her birthday.* | **extend**

PREP. **~ about** *He had no choice about that.* | **~ as to** *to extend parental choice as to which schools children should attend* | **~ between** *She has a choice between three different universities.* | **~ of** *a choice of wines*

PHRASES **freedom of choice, have little/no choice but to do sth** *I had no choice but to cancel my holiday.* | **have no choice in the matter** *The way he behaved meant that we had no choice in the matter.* | **leave sb with little/no choice** *Your decision leaves me with no choice but to resign.*

3 things from which you can/must choose

ADJ. **good, wide | limited | available** *a range of available choices*

VERB + CHOICE **have, offer** *We offer a choice of ten different holiday destinations.*

CHOICE + VERB **be available (to sb), be open to sb** *a range of choices available to buyers*

PREP. **~ of** *The shop has a very limited choice of ties.*

PHRASES **be spoilt for choice** (= to have a large number of things from which to choose)

4 **sb/sth that is chosen**

ADJ. **excellent, good, happy** *It was a happy choice of venue* **| obvious** *Bill is the obvious choice for captain of the team.* **| popular | first, second** *Our first choice for a holiday is the north of Scotland.*

PREP. **~ as** *Mary is a popular choice as chair of the committee.* **| ~ for** *I think she's a very good choice for captain.*

choir *noun*

ADJ. **massed** *a massed choir of local schoolchildren* **| 50-strong, etc. | ladies', male-voice, mixed, etc. | school | cathedral, church, etc.**

VERB + CHOIR **be in, sing in** *She sings in the church choir.* **| conduct | accompany**

CHOIR + NOUN **practice** *Choir practice is on Wednesday evenings.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *two of the girls in the choir*

choke *verb*

ADV. **almost, nearly**

VERB + CHOKE **threaten to** *The panic rising in his throat threatened to choke him.* **|** **make sb** *The fumes from the burning tyres made her choke.*

PREP. **on** *My son nearly choked on one of those sweets.*

PHRASES **choke (sb) to death** *He choked to death when a fish bone got stuck in his throat.*

cholera *noun*

VERB + CHOLERA **have, suffer from | catch, contract | die from/of**

QUANT. **outbreak**

CHOLERA + NOUN **epidemic, outbreak** *A cholera epidemic swept the country.* **| toxin | case, victim** > Special page at ILLNESS

cholesterol *noun*

ADJ. **high, raised | low | blood** *raised blood cholesterol levels*

QUANT. **level** *a high/low level of cholesterol*

VERB + CHOLESTEROL **have (only used with** *high* or *low*) *He has high cholesterol.* **| contain** *chips containing no cholesterol* **| reduce** *Eating garlic can significantly reduce cholesterol in the blood.*

CHOLESTEROL + NOUN **level**

PHRASES **be high/low in cholesterol** *foods that are low in cholesterol*

choose *verb*

ADV. **carefully** *He chose his words carefully.* **| freely** *They can choose freely from a wide range of courses.*

VERB + CHOOSE **be able to, be free to, can** *You are free to choose whichever courses you want to take.*

PREP. **between** *She had to choose between giving up her job or hiring a nanny.* **| from** *There are several different models to choose from.*

PHRASES **pick and choose** *You have to take any job you can get?you can't pick and choose.*

chop *noun*

ADJ. **lamb, mutton, pork | loin** *pork loin chops*

VERB + CHOP **eat, have | braise, cook, fry, grill** > Special page at FOOD

chop *verb*

ADV. **finely** *Add finely chopped parsley.* **| roughly** *Roughly chop the cabbage.* **| up** *I spent the day chopping up wood.* **| down** *There are concerns over how quickly the forests are being chopped down.* **| off** *He chopped off the small branches before cutting down the tree.*

PREP. **into** *Chop the meat into small cubes.*

PHRASES **chop sth to pieces** *The furniture had been chopped to pieces.*

chord *noun*

ADJ. **major, minor | C, D, etc. | augmented, diminished** *a diminished 7th chord* **| dominant, tonic, etc. | 7th, 9th, etc. | full | broken | jazz | guitar, piano**

VERB + CHORD **play, strum**

CHORD + NOUN **change, progression, sequence**

chore *noun*

ADJ. **little, small | daily, day-to-day, routine | administrative, domestic, household**

VERB + CHORE **carry out, do** *It'll take me an hour to do the household chores.*

chorus *noun*

1 **part of a song that is repeated**

ADJ. **rousing | final**

VERB + CHORUS **join in, sing**

2 **sth that a lot of people say together**

ADJ. **general | growing** *There is a growing chorus of protest against the policy.*

VERB + CHORUS **join** *Many teachers have joined the chorus of voices that disapprove of the new tests.* **| be met with, bring** *His suggestions were met with a chorus of jeers.*

CHORUS + VERB **greet sb/sth**

PREP. **in ~** (= all together) *'Hello,' they shouted in chorus.* **| ~ of** *a chorus of boos*

PHRASES **a chorus of voices**

3 **large group of singers/dancers**

ADJ. **double | female, male | dawn** (= of birds before dawn)

CHORUS + NOUN **girl, line**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She is singing in the chorus.*

PHRASES **a member of the chorus**

christening *noun*

VERB + CHRISTENING **attend, go to**

CHRISTENING + VERB **take place**

CHRISTENING + NOUN **gift, present | mug, spoon | robe/robes | party**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *We all got together at the christening.*

Christian *noun*

ADJ. **believing, committed, devout, good, practising | born-again, evangelical, fundamentalist**

VERB + CHRISTIAN **be brought up (as)**

Christianity *noun*

ADJ. **evangelical, fundamentalist, orthodox | muscular** *Victorian 'muscular Christianity' was all about achieving self-control through strict mental and physical discipline.* **| Catholic, Orthodox, Protestant** > Note at RELIGION(for verbs and phrases)

Christmas *noun*

ADJ. **good, nice | traditional | white** *hoping for a white Christmas* (= with snow on the ground)

VERB + CHRISTMAS **have, spend** *Did you have a good Christmas? We're going to spend Christmas at home this year.* **| celebrate** *to celebrate Christmas in the traditional way* **| get sth for** *What did you get for Christmas?*

CHRISTMAS + VERB **come** *Christmas is coming and the food shops are full.*

CHRISTMAS + NOUN **dinner | party | present | cake, pudding | lights, tree** *We're going up to town to see the Christmas lights.* **| carol | Day | holiday/holidays | celebrations**

PREP. **at ~** *There are lots of parties at Christmas.* **| for ~** *For Christmas he gave her a silk blouse.* **| over ~** *The library is closed over Christmas.*

PHRASES **Happy/Merry Christmas!, wish sb a happy/merry Christmas**

chronological *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **strictly** *a strictly chronological account of the events* **| broadly** *The anthology is broadly chronological.*

chuckle *noun*

ADJ. **little, soft | deep/deep-throated, low**

VERB + CHUCKLE **give, have, let out** *She gave a little chuckle.* **| suppress | hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *'I was only kidding,' he said with a low chuckle.* **| ~ about/over** *We had a chuckle about it afterwards.*

chuckle *verb*

ADV. **softly**

PREP. **about/over** *She was still chuckling about the story the next day.* **| at** *He chuckled at the thought of the two of them stuck in the snow.*

PHRASES **chuckle to yourself** *She chuckled softly to herself as she remembered his astonished look.*

chug *verb*

ADV. **slowly, steadily** *The train chugged steadily along the West Highland Line.*

PREP. **along, down, in, out, past, etc.** *The boat chugged slowly down the river.*

chunk *noun*

ADJ. **big, great, huge, large, sizeable, substantial** *He bit a great chunk out of the apple. This one project has taken a substantial chunk of our budget.* **| bite-size/bite-sized, manageable** *He cut the food up into bite-size chunks. (figurative) The listening texts consist of short, bite-sized chunks which are accessible to beginners.* **| pineapple** *a tin of pineapple chunks*

VERB + CHUNK **cut sth (up) into**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I bought the cheese in one big chunk.* **| ~ of a** *huge chunk of meat/rock/text*

church *noun*

1 building where Christians go to worship

ADJ. **local, parish, village**

VERB + CHURCH **build | consecrate, found** *The church was consecrated in 1250.* **| dedicate** *The church is dedicated to St Paul.*

CHURCH + NOUN **bells, clock, steeple, tower | hall | fete**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *a chamber concert at our local church* **| in a/the ~** *There's an interesting organ in the village church.*

2 meeting for public worship in a church

VERB + CHURCH **attend, go to** *Do you go to church?*

CHURCH + NOUN **service | music**

PREP. **after/before ~** *Come to our place for lunch after church.* **| at/in ~** *Mrs Parsons wasn't at church this Sunday.*

3 the Church: all Christians regarded as a group

ADJ. **early** *The early Church believed miracles were proof of who Jesus was.*

VERB + CHURCH **enter, go into** *He went into the Church* (= became a priest) *when he was 23.* **| leave** *He left the Church after a loss of faith.*

CHURCH + NOUN **authorities, leaders, member4** particular group of Christians

ADJ. **high, low** *He loves all the high church traditions?incense and processions and vestments.* **| evangelical, fundamentalist | established** (= official), **free** (= nonconformist) **| Christian, etc.**

CHURCH + NOUN **authorities, elder, leader, member**

PHRASES **a member of a church**

chute *noun*

ADJ. **garbage, laundry, rubbish, water** *a swimming pool with a long water chute*

PREP. **down a/the ~** *The rubbish goes down the chute into a large bin.*

cider *noun*

ADJ. **dry | sweet | rough, strong** *The cider was very strong and went straight to our heads.* **| farmhouse**

QUANT. **litre, pint | bottle, glass, jug**

VERB + CIDER **have** *I'll have a glass of dry cider, please.* **| drink | sip, swig, take a sip/swig of**

CIDER + NOUN **apples | vinegar**

cigar *noun*

ADJ. **fat | expensive | cheap**

QUANT. **box**

VERB + CIGAR **smoke | draw on, pull on** *He paused and drew on his cigar.* **| light | extinguish, put out, stub out**

CIGAR + VERB **burn** *Her thin cigar burned quite quickly.* **| glow** *His cigar glowed in the darkened room.*

CIGAR + NOUN **ash, smoke | butt, end | case, holder | smoker**

PHRASES **brandy/port and cigars** *They left the men to their port and cigars.*

cigarette *noun*

ADJ. **lighted, lit** *carelessly throwing a lighted cigarette in the litter bin* **| half-smoked | illicit** *She slipped outside for an illicit cigarette.* **| filter tip, hand-rolled, king size, low-tar, menthol**

QUANT. **pack, packet** *She smokes a packet of cigarettes a day.*

VERB + CIGARETTE **smoke | draw on, pull on, suck on** *He pulled on his cigarette and waited for the train.* **| light | extinguish, put out, stub out** *Please extinguish all cigarettes now.* **| roll** *She rolls her own cigarettes.* **| flick (away)** *The old man flicked his cigarette onto the roadside.* **| advertise** *Posters advertising cigarettes have to carry government health warnings.*

CIGARETTE + VERB **burn** *The cigarette burned slowly in the ashtray.* **| glow** *The cigarettes glowed in the dark.*

CIGARETTE + NOUN **ash, smoke** *the smell of stale cigarette smoke* **| butt, end | case, packet | holder, lighter | smoker | burn | advertising**

cinder *noun*

ADJ. **glowing, hot, red** *a fireplace full of glowing red cinders*

CINDER + NOUN **path, track**

PHRASES **burnt to a cinder** (= completely burnt) *By the time I got home, the cake was burnt to a cinder.*

cinema *noun*

1 **place where you go to see a film**

ADJ. **packed** *The cinema was packed every night for 'Shrek'.* **| multiplex** *a new multiplex cinema on the edge of town*

VERB + CINEMA **go to** *How often do you go to the cinema?* **| be on at** *What's on at the cinema tonight?*

CINEMA + NOUN **screen | audience | advertising, commercial | chain**

2 **films in general**

ADJ. **commercial, Hollywood, mainstream, popular | art, arthouse, independent | avant-garde, modernist, realist, social | silent** *She started making films in the last years of silent cinema.*

circle *noun*

1 shape

ADJ. **complete, full** *The stones form a complete circle. How long does it take for the dial to rotate through a full circle?* | **concentric** | **widening** *The water rippled in widening circles round the fountain.* | **overlapping** *a design of overlapping circles* | **tight** *He turned the car in a tight circle.* | **half** | **Antarctic, Arctic, polar**

VERB + CIRCLE **draw** | **describe** *(technical)*, **go around/round in** *If you follow the road signs you will simply find yourself going round in a circle.* | **form, make** | **cut out**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The children stood in a circle. The planets move in circles round the sun.* | **~ of**

PHRASES **the area/circumference/diameter/radius of a circle, the centre/ middle of a circle**

2 group of people

ADJ. **wide** *She has a wide circle of acquaintances.* | **narrow, small** | **charmed, close/closed, intimate, magic, select** *He invited only a select circle of friends to the wedding.* | **exalted, high** | **immediate** *They treat anyone outside their immediate circle with suspicion.* | **inner** *He's joined the inner circles of the court early in his career.* | **academic, aristocratic, artistic, business, court, diplomatic, government, intellectual, literary, official, political, royal, social, sporting, theatrical ~s** *She moves in the highest social circles.* | **family**

VERB + CIRCLE **have** | **move in** *My brother and I move in completely different circles* (= we have very different friends). | **join** | **widen** *You need to widen your circle of friends.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Talk of religion was forbidden in the family circle. friends in government circles*

PHRASES **a circle of acquaintances/admirers/friends**

3 **in a theatre**

ADJ. **dress, upper** *Our seats are in the front row of the dress circle.*

circle *verb*

1 **move in a circle**

ADV. **slowly** *The helicopter was circling slowly, very low.* | **overhead** *A buzzard was circling overhead.*

PREP. **above** *Several airliners were circling above the airport.* | **around/round** *The vultures were already circling around the dead animal.*

2 **draw a circle round sth**

PHRASES **circle sth in black, red, etc.** *She circled her birthday in red on the calendar.*

circuit *noun*

1 **path for an electric current**

ADJ. **short** *The lights were not working because of a short circuit.* **| closed | integrated, printed | electrical, electronic**

VERB + CIRCUIT **break**

CIRCUIT + NOUN **diagram**

2 **places visited by sb in a particular job/sport**

ADJ. **amateur, professional** *Talent scouts spotted him playing on the amateur circuit.* **| international, world | cabaret, festival, lecture, tennis, etc.**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *She's a well-known figure on the international lecture circuit.*

3 **circular journey around sth**

ADJ. **complete**

VERB + CIRCUIT **do, make** *We did a complete circuit of the park in twenty minutes.*

PREP. **~ of**

circular *adj.*

VERBS **be, look** *From a front view the small birds can look almost circular.*

ADV. **perfectly** *He had round unblinking eyes and a perfectly circular head.* **| almost, nearly, roughly, virtually** *The crater was two miles across and roughly circular.*

circulate *verb*

1 **liquid/gas/air**

ADV. **freely** *Air can circulate freely through the tunnels.*

PREP. **around/round** *The heart circulates blood around the body.* | **through** *Blood circulates through the arteries and veins.*

2 **story/idea/information**

ADV. **widely** *The book was circulated widely in Russia.* | **freely**

PREP. **among/amongst** *newspapers circulating among minority communities* | **around/round** *There's a story circulating around the office that you are about to leave the company.* | **to** *The document will be circulated to all members.*

circulation *noun*

1 **movement of blood round the body**

ADJ. **good | bad, poor | blood**

VERB + CIRCULATION **have** *I've got poor circulation.* **| improve, stimulate** *to have a massage to stimulate your circulation*

PHRASES **the circulation of the blood**

2 **passing of sth between different people**

ADJ. **general | restricted** *Restricted circulation of the report will reduce the risk of leaks outside the ministry.*

VERB + CIRCULATION **go into** *The new banknotes will go into general circulation next year.* **| put sth into | take sth out of, withdraw sth from** *Copies of the magazine were withdrawn from circulation.*

PREP. **in/out of ~** *the amount of money in circulation (figurative) I was out of circulation for months after the baby was born.*

2 **of a newspaper/magazine**

ADJ. **large, mass, wide | limited, small | daily, monthly | national, nationwide**

VERB + CIRCULATION **enjoy, have** *The newspaper has a daily circulation of 20,000.* **| boost, increase**

CIRCULATION + VERB **increase, rise | fall**

CIRCULATION + NOUN **figures**

PREP. **~ of**

circumference *noun*

VERB + CIRCUMFERENCE **have | calculate, measure** *to measure the circumference of a circle*

PREP. **in ~** *an area three miles in circumference*

circumstance *noun*

1 **(usually circumstances) facts/events that affect sth**

ADJ. **favourable** *The scheme might work better with more favourable circumstances.* **| adverse, difficult, tragic, trying, unfavourable** *people facing adverse circumstances He died in tragic circumstances.* **| normal** *In normal circumstances I would let you use my car, but today I need it.* **| exceptional, special, unusual** *Only if the circumstances are exceptional will we accept late applications.* **| mysterious, suspicious** *She died in rather suspicious circumstances.* **| extenuating, mitigating** *His sentence was reduced because of the extenuating circumstances.* **| changed, changing, different | unavoidable, unforeseen | economic, financial, political, social** *life in the changing economic circumstances of China*

QUANT. **set** *an unfortunate set of circumstances that made her life difficult*

CIRCUMSTANCE + VERB **change | conspire, dictate sth** *I felt that circumstances were conspiring against me. Circumstances dictate that I should leave this town forever.*

PREP. **according to ~** *The amount paid will vary according to circumstances.* **| due to … ~s** *Due to unforeseen circumstances, we have had to reschedule the concert.* **| in … ~s** *She died in suspicious circumstances.* **| in/under the ~s** *In the circumstances, you'd better ring the police.* **| ~ surrounding** *The bank will investigate the circumstances surrounding the robbery.*

PHRASES **by/through force of circumstance** *The survivors ate plants and insects through force of circumstance.* **| circumstances beyond our control** *The delays were due to circumstances beyond our control.* **| a combination of circumstances** *We lost our position in the market due to a combination of circumstances.* **| in/under no circumstances** *Under no circumstances should you leave the door unlocked.* **| a victim of circumstance** *He was simply a victim of circumstance.*

2 **circumstances: amount of money you have**

ADJ. **desperate, reduced, straitened | domestic, family, personal**

CIRCUMSTANCE + VERB **improve | worsen**

PREP. **in … ~** *He was a writer living in straitened circumstances.*

cite *verb*

ADV. **above, already, earlier, previously** *This is similar to the example cited above.* **| commonly, frequently, often** *The most commonly cited reasons for stopping the treatment were lack of efficacy and side effects.* **| widely**

PREP. **as** *He cited the fall in unemployment as one of the government's successes.*

citizen *noun*

ADJ. **full** *a group of indigenous people fighting for acceptance as full citizens of the country* **| naturalized | Italian, Thai, etc. | decent, good, honest, law-abiding, respectable, responsible, upright** *This terrible crime has shocked all law-abiding citizens.* **| leading, prominent** *She is a prominent citizen of the town.* **| average, ordinary** *It's not clear how the new law will affect the ordinary citizen.* **| second-class** *minorities who felt they had been treated as second-class citizens* **| private** *The king was visiting France as a private citizen.* **| senior** *travel concessions for senior citizens*

citizenship *noun*

ADJ. **full | dual | British, Chinese, etc.**

VERB + CITIZENSHIP **have, hold** *He has German citizenship.* **| give sb, grant sb** *They were granted full French citizenship.* **| acquire, take** *Ten years later, she chose to take Australian citizenship.* **| refuse sb | be stripped of, lose** *He was stripped of his citizenship when he criticized the government.* **| give up, renounce** *You will have to renounce citizenship of this country if you apply for citizenship of another.* **| apply for**

city *noun*

ADJ. **big, large, major | small | great** *Rome is one of the great cities of the world.* **| ancient, historic, old | beautiful | industrial | cosmopolitan | coastal | home, native** *Her native city is Tokyo.* **| capital | provincial | cathedral, university | walled** *the old walled city of York* **| twin** *Bonn is Oxford's twin city.*

VERB + CITY **build, found**

CITY + VERB **grow** *The city grew rapidly in the nineteenth century.* **| flourish**

CITY + NOUN **dweller | centre, street** *Parking is difficult in the city centre.* **| council | life**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *We live in a big city.* **| outside a/the ~** *There's a park just outside the city.*

PHRASES **the centre/middle/heart of a city, the edge/outskirts of a city**

civil *adj.*

VERBS be | become

ADV. extremely, remarkably, very | perfectly, quite

PREP. to *The teachers were all quite civil to me.*

civilian *noun*

ADJ. **innocent, unarmed** *We demand an end to the killing of innocent civilians.*

civilization *noun*

ADJ. **ancient, early** *the early civilizations of the Middle East and China* **| modern** *the benefits of modern civilization* **| advanced | primitive | Greek, Roman, etc. | European, Western** *diseases that are common in Western civilization* **| great** *the great civilizations of the past* **| industrial | human** *Art and music are among the great products of human civilization.*

VERB + CIVILIZATION **bring** *to bring civilization to the outer reaches of the country* **| create** *a movement that aims to create a new civilization* **| destroy | save**

PHRASES **the beginnings/dawn of civilization, civilization as we know it** *Could this be the end of civilization as we know it?* **| the collapse/decline/end of a civilization, a level of civilization** *to reach a higher level of civilization*

clad *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **fully** *He returned fully clad.* **| lightly, partially, scantily** *a scantily clad young woman* **| appropriately, suitably** *She went home and returned more suitably clad.* **| decently**

PREP. **in** *Ed, clad in his best suit, was waiting for her.*

claim *noun*

1 **statement saying that sth is true**

ADJ. **false, unfounded, unsubstantiated | conflicting** *There are conflicting claims about the cause of the fire.* **| absurd, astonishing, extravagant, grandiose**

VERB + CLAIM **make** *The company had made false claims about its products. I make no claim to understand modern art.* **| accept** *They accepted her claim that she had been ill-treated.* **| challenge | deny, dismiss, dispute, reject** *Claims of a cover-up were dismissed.* **| back up, substantiate, support** *They were able to produce witnesses to support their claim.* **| investigate**

PREP. **~ about** *to investigate claims about appalling prison conditions* **| ~ of** *Claims of corruption within the police force were denied.*

2 **demand for sth**

ADJ. **large, small | excessive** *excessive wage claims* **| legal, legitimate | bogus, fraudulent** *Police are investigating fraudulent claims for fire damage.* **| accident, compensation, damage/damages, insurance, pay, wage | civil** *to file a civil claim for damages*

VERB + CLAIM **bring, file, lodge, make, put forward/in, submit** *She brought a claim for damages against the company.* **| drop, waive, withdraw | investigage | allow, uphold** *His claim for compensation was upheld in court.* **| dismiss | win | meet, pay, settle** *We will need extra funds to meet all the insurance claims.*

CLAIM + VERB **arise** *claims arising out of accidents at work* **| fail** *The claim failed because the company had not been misled.*

CLAIM + NOUN **form**

PREP. **~ against** *claims against the company for breach of contract* **| ~ for** *a claim for compensation* **| ~ on** *to make a claim on your insurance policy I have many claims on my time.*

3 **right to have sth**

ADJ. **good, strong | competing, rival** *competing claims for public money* **| prior** *She had a prior claim on his affections.* **| moral | territorial**

VERB + CLAIM **have** *He has a good claim to the land.* **| assert, lay, press, stake** *Four men laid claim to leadership of the country. to stake a claim to some of the prize money* **| establish, prove** *You will have to prove your claim to the property in a court of law.* **| relinquish, renounce, withdraw**

PREP. **~ on** *His children have a claim on his estate.* **| ~ to** *She renounced her claim to the property.*

claim *verb*

1 **say that sth is true**

ADV. **justifiably, rightfully, rightly | falsely, wrongly** *The company had falsely claimed that its products were biodegradable.*

VERB + CLAIM **attempt to, try to** *He tried to claim that he had acted in self-defence.*

2 **ask for sth you think you have a right to have**

ADV. **back** *You can claim back some of the cost of your treatment.*

VERB + CLAIM **be able to, be entitled to, can/could** *You might be entitled to claim compensation if you are injured at work.* **| attempt to, try to**

PREP. **on** *Can't you claim on your insurance?*

clamour *noun*

ADJ. **noisy, raucous | growing | public | sudden**

VERB + CLAMOUR **still** *He raised a hand to still the clamour.*

CLAMOUR + VERB **break out | grow | subside**

PREP. **above/amid the ~** *She could barely make herself heard above the clamour of the rain.* **| ~ for** *The clamour for her resignation grew louder.*

clamp *verb*

ADV. **firmly, tight/tightly | together** *Clamp the pieces of wood together while the glue sets.*

PREP. **around/round** *She clamped her arms around him.* **| on/onto** *He clamped his hand firmly onto Jack's shoulder.* **| over** *A large hand clamped over her mouth.* **| to** *The dog's jaws werwe clamped to his leg.*

PHRASES **clamped between your teeth** *He had a large cigar clamped between his teeth.* **| clamp shut** *His mouth clamped shut.* **PHRASAL VERBS clamp down**

ADV. **hard**

PREP. **on** *to clamp down hard on bullying*

clang *noun*

ADJ. **loud | metallic**

VERB + CLANG **give, let out | hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *The door shut with a loud clang.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **the clang of metal** > Note at SOUND

clank *noun*

ADJ. **loud**

PREP. **with a ~** *The door opened with a clank.* **| ~ of** *the clank and rattle of the trams*

PHRASES **the clank of machinery**

clap *noun*

ADJ. **big**

VERB + CLAP **give sb**

PREP. **~ for** *A big clap for our last contestant!*

clap *verb*

ADV. **enthusiastically, loudly** *The audience clapped enthusiastically.*

clarification *noun*

ADJ. **further**

VERB + CLARIFICATION **ask for, call for, seek** *Employers are seeking further clarification of the proposals.* **| need, require | give sb, provide sb with**

clarify *verb*

ADV. **fully | further** *Headings and sub-headings further clarify the structure of the article.*

VERB + CLARIFY **attempt to, seek to, try to | need to | help (to), serve to | should | be delighted to, be happy to, be pleased to** *I am happy to clarify any points that are still unclear.*

clarinet *noun* > Special page at MUSIC

clarity *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, complete | admirable, crystal, exceptional, great | increasing | sufficient | chilling, painful, startling, terrible** *With painful clarity she remembered the day he had died.* **| conceptual**

VERB + CLARITY **have | lack**

PREP. **with (…) ~** *She expressed herself with great clarity.* **| ~ of** *clarity of thought*

PHRASES **for the sake of clarity** *For the sake of clarity she went back over the key points.*

clash *noun*

ADJ. **angry, bitter, fierce, serious | armed, bloody, violent | head-on** *The leaders are preparing for a head-on clash at the summit.* **| culture, personality**

VERB + CLASH **lead to**

CLASH + VERB **break out**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Several people were injured in violent clashes with the police.* **| ~ between** *Clashes between the rebels and government forces have broken out in the north.* **| ~ of** *a clash of opinions* **| ~ over** *Differences in the aims of the two unions have led to serious clashes over policy.* **| ~ with**

PHRASES **a clash of cultures/interests/wills**

clash *verb*

ADV. **violently | repeatedly**

PREP. **on/over** *He has clashed repeatedly with the team coach over training schedules.* **| with** *They often clash violently with rival gangs.*

clasp *verb*

ADV. **tightly** *She clasped her bag tightly as she walked through the crowd.* **| lightly, loosely | warmly** *He clasped my hand warmly in welcome.* **| together** *She faced Will, her hands clasped together.*

class *noun*

1 lesson/group of students

ADJ. **big, large | small | advanced, beginners', elementary, intermediate | biology, history, etc. | evening**

VERB + CLASS **attend, go to, take** *He's taking classes in pottery.* **| miss | hold** *The institute holds evening classes throughout the year.* **| conduct, give, take, teach** *Who's taking the class today?* **| dismiss** *Class dismissed!* **| observe, sit in on**

CLASS + NOUN **member, teacher | size**

PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *We'll start the exercise in class and you can finish it for homework. Which history class are you in?* **| ~ in** *She's going to evening classes in Italian.*

PHRASES **the back/front of the class** *He sat at the back of the class.* **| be/come top of the class** *She came top of the class in maths.*

2 social/economic group

ADJ. **lower, lower-middle, middle, upper, upper-middle, working** *sections of the working class* **| chattering** *(informal)*, **educated, landed, landowning, privileged, professional, ruling** *topics being discussed at the breakfast tables of the chattering classes* **| dominant | social** *Membership of gardening clubs is drawn from all social classes.*

CLASS + NOUN **structure, system | consciousness | interests | conflict, differences, divisions, struggle, war**

3 group of things

ADJ. **large, small | distinct | rare**

VERB + CLASS **form** *These writers form a distinct class in Russian literature.*

PREP. **~ of** *a rare class of butterflies*

PHRASES **be in a class of your own/in a different class** (= to be much better than sb/sth)

4 **high quality/style**

ADJ. **great, real** *a player of great class*

VERB + CLASS **have** *She's got real class.*

PHRASES **a touch of class** *The musical entertainment added* a *touch of class to the occasion*.

classic *noun*

1 **famous book/play, etc.**

ADJ. **great | minor | contemporary, modern | all-time | pop/popular**

PREP. **~ of** *one of the great classics of English literature*

2 **Classics: study of Greek/Roman culture > Note at SUBJECT**

classification *noun*

ADJ. **broad | detailed | simple | higher, lower** *The rooms are of the standard expected from a hotel in a higher classification.* **| arbitrary | social | security** *a document with the security classification ‘confidential’*

VERB + CLASSIFICATION **defy** *a style of dancing that defies classification*

CLASSIFICATION + NOUN **system**

PREP. **~ into** *the broad classification of music into classical and pop*

PHRASES **a system of classification**

clatter *noun*

ADJ. **loud, noisy, terrible | metallic | sudden**

VERB + CLATTER **make** *The wheels of the cart made a terrible clatter on the cobblestones.* **| hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *She dropped her fork with a clatter.* **| ~ of** *There was a clatter of hooves and a party of riders drew up.*

clatter *verb*

ADV. **noisily**

PREP. **against** *The mug clattered against her teeth.* | **down** *Something heavy came clattering down the stairs.* | **on** *His boots clattered on the stairs.* | **to** *The knife clattered noisily to the floor.*

PHRASES **come clattering**

clause *noun*

1 **in a legal document**

ADJ. **clawback** (= for retrieving money already paid out), **confidentiality, escalator** (= that allows for a rise in wages or prices under certain conditions), **force majeure, indemnity, liability, limitation, penalty** *The penalty clause specifies that late delivery will be fined.* | **escape, exclusion, exemption, get-out, let-out, opt-out**

VERB + CLAUSE **contain, have** *The contract contains a confidentiality clause.* | **add, include, insert, put in** *We added an opt-out clause to the agreement.* | **delete, take out** | **amend**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There is some ambiguity in this clause.* | **under a/the ~** *Under Clause 5.8, the company is responsible for the health of its employees.* | **~ on** *a clause on pollution*

2 **in grammar**

ADJ. **main, subordinate** | **conditional, coordinate, dependent, finite, independent, infinitive, non-finite, relative** | **non-restrictive, restrictive** *a restrictive relative clause* | **adverbial, nominal, noun**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The completed action is in the main clause.*

claustrophobia *noun*

VERB + CLAUSTROPHOBIA **get, suffer from | give sb** *I hate lifts?they give me claustrophobia.*

PHRASES **a feeling of claustrophobia**

claustrophobic *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem** *I felt a bit claustrophobic in the tiny room.* **| become, get | make sb** *Crowds make me claustrophobic.* **| find sth** *I find that building intensely claustrophobic.*

ADV. **intensely, very | a bit, rather, somewhat** *The atmosphere was somewhat claustrophobic.*

claw *noun*

ADJ. **sharp** *a cat with sharp claws* | **powerful, strong**

VERB + CLAW **sharpen** | **dig, sink** *The tiger dug its claws into his leg.* | **show** *The lion growled and showed its claws.* | **retract**

CLAW + NOUN **mark**

PREP. **in sb's ~s** *The cat held a bird in its claws.*

clay *noun*

ADJ. **heavy | fine | soft | damp, sticky, wet | china, modelling**

QUANT. **lump**

VERB + CLAY **mould, shape** *She moulded the clay into the shape of a head.* **| bake, fire | be made from/in/(out) of, make/mould sth from/in/out of** *a figure made of clay*

CLAY + NOUN **modelling | mould**

PREP. **in ~** *plants that grow in damp clay*

clean *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, smell** *The room smelled clean and fresh.* **| stay** *The bathroom doesn't stay clean for long.* **| brush sth, get sth, scrape sth, scrub sth, wipe sth** *scrubbing the floor to get it clean She wiped all the surfaces clean.* **| leave sth** *Please leave the kitchen clean.* **| keep sth** *You're supposed to keep your room clean.*

ADV. **extremely, very | spotlessly** *The whole house was spotlessly clean.* **| almost, nearly** *It's almost clean. I've just got to wipe the table.* **| fairly, pretty, quite**

PHRASES **clean and tidy** *Is your room clean and tidy now?* **| lovely and clean** *The water was lovely and clean.*

clean *verb*

ADV. **effectively, well** *This product cleans baths very effectively.* **| properly, thoroughly** *I clean the house thoroughly once a week.* **| carefully, gently** *He gently cleaned the wound and dressed it.* **| out, up** *I cleaned out all the cupboards.*

PREP. **off** *I cleaned the mud off the kitchen floor.* **| with** *Clean the glass with a soft cloth.*

PHRASES **need cleaning** *Your shoes need cleaning!*

cleaner *noun*

1 **person who cleans**

ADJ. **hospital, office, school, street** > Note at JOB

2 **substance/instrument used for cleaning**

ADJ. **bathroom, carpet, household, oven, toilet** *chemicals that are found in all household cleaners*

cleanliness *noun*

ADJ. **excessive | personal** *His mother gave him a lecture about personal cleanliness.*

PHRASES **a standard of cleanliness, a state of cleanliness** *The bathroom was in a good state of cleanliness.*

cleanse *verb*

ADV. **thoroughly | gently**

PREP. **of** *a treatment to cleanse the body of toxins*

clear *adj.*

1 **easy to understand**

VERBS **be, seem | become | make sth | find sth**

ADV. **abundantly, extremely, very | crystal, perfectly, quite** *You've got to make your intentions crystal clear to them.* **| by no means, not entirely, not quite** *It wasn't entirely clear whether she wanted us to help.* **| fairly, pretty, reasonably**

PREP. **to** *It was clear to us that there was a problem.*

2 **sure/certain**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, quite**

PREP. **about** *She was quite clear about her reasons for leaving.* **| on** *Are you clear on that point?*

3 **easy to see/hear**

VERBS **be, look | become**

ADV. **extremely, very** *The photograph wasn't very clear.* **| fairly, pretty, reasonably**

4 **easy to see through**

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, completely | fairly, reasonably** *The water was fairly clear.*

5 **free from things that are blocking the way**

VERBS **be, look, seem | remain, stay | keep sth** *Make sure you keep all gutters and drainpipes clear of leaves.*

ADV. **completely | fairly, pretty, reasonably**

PREP. **of** *The roads are reasonably clear of snow.*

clear *verb*

1 remove sth that is not wanted/needed

ADV. **completely, totally** *The site must be completely cleared and made safe for children.* **| partially | hastily, quickly** *She hastily cleared a space for him to sit down.* **| away** *Can you clear away all your toys now?*

PREP. **from** *They cleared the mud from the steps.* **| of** *We cleared the path of leaves.* **| off** *Clear those papers off the desk.*

2 your head/mind

ADV. **suddenly** *His face suddenly cleared as understanding dawned.*

VERB + CLEAR **try to** *I went for a walk to try to clear my head.* **| help (to)** *Correct breathing helps to clear the mind and reduce tension.*

3 prove sb innocent

ADV. **formally** *The three defendants were formally cleared by the judge.*

PREP. **of** *Four men accused of assault have been cleared of all charges.*

clearance *noun*

1 **removal of sth old/unwanted**

ADJ. **forest, land, site, slum**

CLEARANCE + NOUN **work | sale** (= in a shop when goods are sold cheaply to get rid of them quickly)

2 **official permission**

ADJ. **official | customs, diplomatic, entry, security**

VERB + CLEARANCE **get, obtain, receive** *You'll need to get security clearance for this job.* **| apply for, seek | give sb, grant sb** *The pilot was granted clearance to land.* **| refuse sb**

3 **distance between sth and sth passing under/beside it**

ADJ. **ground** *We need to increase the vehicle's ground clearance.*

VERB + CLEARANCE **allow (sb/sth), give sb/sth, leave** *Make sure you allow enough clearance on each side. Always give cyclists plenty of clearance.*

PREP. **~ above** *clearance above the light to prevent overheating* **| ~ between** *There wasn't enough clearance between the bus and the top of the bridge.*

clench *verb*

ADV. **tight/tightly** *His jaw was tightly clenched.* **| involuntarily** *Her hands clenched involuntarily.* **| together** *She sat with hands clenched together in her lap.*

PHRASES **clenched between sb's teeth** *He had a pipe clenched between his teeth.*

clerk *noun*

ADJ. **chief, senior | assistant, junior | articled** *an articled clerk working for a large law firm* **| bank, council, office, parish, railway, solicitor's | accounts, booking, filing**

PREP. **~ to** *He held the post of Clerk to the Council.*

PHRASES **the office/post of clerk** > Note at JOB

clever *adj.*

1 **intelligent/skilful**

VERBS **be, seem, sound**

ADV. **awfully, extraordinarily, extremely, incredibly, really, very | pretty, quite, rather**

PREP. **at** *I'm not very clever at maths.* **| with** *clever with his hands*

PHRASES **too clever by half** *Bob irritates me?he's too clever by half!* **| too clever for your own good**

2 **(of a thing) ingenious**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, fiendishly, really, very** *a simple yet fiendishly clever idea* **| quite, rather**

click *noun*

ADJ. **loud, sharp | audible | faint, little, quiet, soft | metallic | double, single (used about clicks on a computer mouse)** *a double click on the filename* **| mouse**

VERB + CLICK **give (out)** *The answerphone gave a sharp click.* **| hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *He closed his briefcase with a click.* **| ~ of** *She heard the click of shoes on the marble floor.*

client *noun*

ADJ. **big** *The company needs to focus on its biggest clients.* **| new | potential, prospective | established, existing, regular | business, corporate | private**

VERB + CLIENT **serve** *A new branch has been opened to serve clients in East London.* **| act for, represent | take on** *She's so busy that she's not taking on any new clients.* **| attract** *a campaign to attract new clients*

PREP. **on behalf of ~** *On behalf of my client, I would like to remind you of your obligations in this matter.*

clientele *noun*

ADJ. **large, small | broad, narrow | regular, usual | exclusive, fashionable, select | international**

VERB + CLIENTELE **attract, have** *The restaurant has a large regular clientele.* **| cater for/to, serve** *The boutique caters for a rather select clientele.* **| build (up), establish** *It takes time to build up a clientele.*

cliff *noun*

ADJ. **high, towering | low | dramatic, precipitous, sheer, steep | craggy, jagged, rocky, rugged | chalk, limestone, etc. | coastal, mountain, river, sea**

QUANT. **line** *a long line of cliffs surrounding the bay*

VERB + CLIFF **climb, scale**

CLIFF + VERB **fall (away), rise (up)** *The cliffs fall away to the north. Rugged sandstone cliffs rose up from the beach.* **| overlook sth, tower** *Steep cliffs towered above the river.* **| crumble** *crumbling cliffs*

CLIFF + NOUN **edge, face, ledge, top | path, walk**

PHRASES **be perched (high) on a cliff** *The hotel was perched high on a cliff overlooking the sea.* **| the base/bottom/edge/foot/top of the cliff**

climate *noun*

1 **weather conditions of a particular region**

ADJ. **hot, warm | cold, cool | mild | extreme, harsh, inhospitable, severe** *the severe northern climate* **| damp, humid, wet | arid, dry | equatorial, Mediterranean, subtropical, temperate, tropical | northern, southern, etc. | global** *global climate change*

VERB + CLIMATE **have** *The city has a warm climate.*

CLIMATE + NOUN **change**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Little grows in such a dry climate.*

2 **opinions, etc. people have at a particular time**

ADJ. **favourable | hostile, unfavourable | current, present, prevailing | changed, changing | business, economic, emotional, financial, ideological, intellectual, moral, political, social**

VERB + CLIMATE **create**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *His ideas on equality are viewed as utopian in the current political climate.* **| ~ for** *a climate for economic recovery* **| ~ of** *The new policies have created a climate of fear.*

PHRASES **a climate of opinion**

climax *noun*

1 **exciting/important event, point in time, etc.**

ADJ. **big, dramatic, exciting, grand, great, powerful, thrilling | fitting**

VERB + CLIMAX **come to, reach** *The crisis reached its climax in the 1970s.* **| approach, near, rise to, build up to, work up to** *The story gradually builds up to a powerful climax.* **| bring sth to** *The affair was brought to a climax when the chairman resigned.* **| mark** *Yesterday marked the climax of the celebrations.*

CLIMAX + VERB **come** *The climax came at the end of the second act of the play.*

PREP. **at the ~** *The hero dies at the climax of the opera.* **| in a/the ~** *In a dramatic climax, our team lost the match by one goal.* **| ~ to** *His promotion was a fitting climax to a worthy career.*

2 **highest point of sexual pleasure**

ADJ. **sexual**

VERB + CLIMAX **achieve, reach** *She found it hard to achieve a/reach climax.*

climb *noun*

1 **act of climbing**

ADJ. **long, slow | short | arduous, difficult, exhausting, hard, sharp, steep | easy | steady**

VERB + CLIMB **do, make** *I was fitter the first time I did the climb.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *I broke my ankle on a climb last week.* **| ~ from/to** *the short climb from the road to the summit* **| ~ up** *They began the long climb up the hill.*

2 **increase in value/amount/status**

ADJ. **long, slow | rapid | gradual, steady**

PREP. **~ against** *the dollar's climb against the euro* **| ~ in** *a steady climb in the cost of travel* **| ~ out of** *a long slow climb out of recession* **| ~ to** *her rapid climb to stardom*

climb *verb*

1 **move up towards the top of sth**

ADV. **high** *Don't climb too high.* **| slowly**

PREP. **up** *He climbed slowly up the ladder.*

PHRASES **climb to the top** *We climbed right to the top of the mountain.* **| go climbing** (= climb up mountains for sport) *He goes climbing in Scotland every summer.*

2 **move/lead upwards**

ADV. **gradually, slowly | steadily | steeply | up**

VERB + CLIMB **begin to** *The path began to climb quite steeply.*

PREP. **from** *The road gradually climbs up from the village.* **| to** *The plane took off and climbed to 20,000 feet.*

3 **increase**

ADV. **sharply, steeply** *Prices have climbed sharply in recent months.* **| steadily**

PREP. **above** *The temperature had climbed above 90 degrees.* **| from, to** *Unemployment has climbed from two million to three million.*

cling *verb*

1 hold tightly

ADV. **firmly, tightly | desperately, precariously** *houses clinging precariously to sheer cliffs* **| together** *The children clung together in fear.*

PREP. **onto** *She clung onto my arm.* **| to** *He clung tightly to the raft to keep himself afloat.*

2 stay close

ADV. **close/closely** *The ground mist clung closely to the hedgerows.*

PREP. **to PHRASAL VERBS cling (on) to sth**

ADV. **still | rigidly, stubbornly, tenaciously** *He still clings stubbornly to his socialist ideas.* **| desperately, fiercely** *She was desperately clinging on to life.*

clinic *noun*

ADJ. **hospital | health | special | private | outpatient | abortion, antenatal, birth control, family planning, fertility/infertility, maternity | breast, eye, etc. | diabetic, psychiatric, etc.**

VERB + CLINIC **attend, go to | hold** *The surgery holds a baby clinic every Wednesday afternoon.* **| be treated at** *She is being treated at a special diabetic clinic.*

PREP. **at a/the~** *He was treated at the hospital's eye clinic.* **| in a/the~** *She works in a birth control clinic.* **| ~ for** *a clinic for asthma sufferers*

clinical *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **purely** *She regarded her patients from a purely clinical standpoint.* **| almost** *He looked at the body with an almost clinical detachment.*

PREP. **about** *How can you be so cold and clinical about your son's accident?*

clip *noun*

1 **used for holding things together**

ADJ. **bulldog, crocodile, spring | bicycle, hair, nose, paper, suspender, tie**

VERB + CLIP **fasten, put (in/on)** *She put a clip in her hair. He put his bicycle clips on and set off.* **| take off, undo, unfasten**

CLIP + VERB **hold sth** *Paper clips held the picture in place.*

2 **small section from a film**

ADJ. **brief, short | film, movie, video**

VERB + CLIP **see | show**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *You will see in this clip how well she acts.* **| ~ from** *a clip from a Sherlock Holmes movie*

cloak *noun*

ADJ. **heavy | hooded**

VERB + CLOAK **be wrapped in | drape, throw** *She threw a heavy woollen cloak over her shoulders.* **| draw, pull, wrap** *He pulled his cloak tightly around himself.* **| throw off**

CLOAK + VERB **flow, fly, sweep, swirl** *a flowing black cloak She stormed off, her cloak flying behind her.* > Special page at CLOTHES

clock *noun*

ADJ. **12/24-hour | atomic, digital, electric | bedside, kitchen | alarm, carriage, cuckoo, grandfather, long-case, time, travelling, wall**

VERB + CLOCK **set, wind** *I've set my alarm clock for six tomorrow.* **| put back/ forward** *He forgot to put his clock forward and turned up an hour late.* **| stop (for example in a game)** *Pressing the 'Yes' or 'No' response button stops the clock.* **| glance at, look at | watch** *employees who are always watching the clock* (= wanting their day's work to end)

CLOCK + VERB **chime (sth), strike sth, tick** *The clock struck the hour. I could hear a clock ticking somewhere in the house.* **| stop | be fast/slow, gain/keep/lose time** *This clock doesn't keep time.* **| go back/forward** *The clocks go back* (= for a return to standard time)*/forward* (= for summer time) *tonight.* **| say sth** *The clock on the mantelpiece said twelve o'clock.* **| go off** *My alarm clock didn't go off this morning.*

CLOCK + NOUN **face, tower | radio**

PREP. **against the ~** *to work against the clock* (= to work fast in order to finish before a particular time) **| around/round the ~** (= all day and all night) *to work around the clock* **| by the ~** *It's ten o'clock by the kitchen clock.*

PHRASES **the dial/face/hands of a clock**

close *adj.*

1 **near**

VERBS **be | draw, get** *She grew increasingly nervous as the date of the audition drew closer.* **| keep, stay** *Keep close to me.*

ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, quite | together** *Their birthdays are very close together.*

PREP. **to** *Get close to the microphone.*

2 **friendly and loving**

VERBS **be, feel, seem** *The two sisters seemed very close.* **| become, grow** *After the death of their parents the two children grew very close.* **| remain**

ADV. **very | quite**

PREP. **to** *He was quite close to his older brother.*

close *noun*

VERB + CLOSE **bring sth to** *The chairperson brought the meeting to a close.* **| come to, draw to** *The decade drew to a close with the threat of war hanging over Europe.*

PREP. **at/by/towards the ~ of** *At the close of trading, he had lost thousands of pounds on the stock market.*

close *verb*

1 door, book, eyes, etc.

ADV. **firmly, tightly** *He closed the door firmly.*

2 shop, business, road, etc.

ADV. **permanently, temporarily | down, off, up** *That factory's been closed down now.*

PREP. **to** *The museum has been temporarily closed to the public.*

closed *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain** *The library will remain closed until next week.* **| keep sth** *Keep that door closed, will you?*

ADV. **firmly, properly, tightly** *Are the windows firmly closed? Her mouth was tightly closed.* **| completely, fully** *Make sure the lid is completely closed. The valve can be adjusted from fully open to fully closed.* **| almost, nearly** *squinting through almost closed eyes* **| half, partially, partly** *Her eyes were half closed.* **| officially | permanently, temporarily**

PREP. **for** *The building is closed for repairs.* **| to** *Twenty-five miles of beaches were officially closed to the public.*

close-up *noun*

ADJ. extreme CLOSE-UP + NOUN **detail** *The slide gave close-up detail of petal formation.* **| photograph, picture, shot, view**

PREP. in ~ *The wound was photographed in extreme close-up.*

closure *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total** *The accident caused the complete closure of the road.* | **partial** | **immediate** | **eventual** | **permanent, temporary** | **indefinite** | **planned, possible, proposed, threatened** | **enforced** | **factory, hospital, pit, road, school, etc.**

VERB + CLOSURE **be earmarked for, be threatened with, face** *Several schools face eventual closure.* | **cause, force** *Imposing higher taxes would force the closure of many bookshops.* | **prevent, save sth from, stop** *The mine has been saved from closure.*

CLOSURE + NOUN **plan, programme** | **order**

PHRASES **(be) under threat of closure**

clot *noun*

ADJ. **blood** *a blood clot on her brain*

VERB + CLOT **dissolve, remove**

CLOT + VERB **form**

cloth *noun*

1 **material used for making clothes, curtains, etc.**

ADJ. **coarse, fine | homespun | woven | cotton, damask, linen, woollen** *a jacket made from woollen cloth*

QUANT. **bale, bolt, length | piece, scrap, strip**

VERB + CLOTH **make, produce, weave | dye**

CLOTH + NOUN **industry, manufacture, merchant, mill, trade**

2 **piece of cloth used for a particular purpose**

ADJ. **damp, dry, soft** *Wipe the table with a damp cloth.* **| cleaning, floor, polishing | table** (also **tablecloth**) **| tea | loin** (also **loincloth)**

clothed *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **fully** *Jenny was fully clothed.* **| lightly, partially** *It was warm and she was lightly clothed. Her partially clothed body was found in woods nearby.*

PREP. **in** *clothed in white*

PHRASES **fed and clothed** *the problems of keeping the family fed and clothed*

clothes *noun*

ADJ. **beautiful, elegant, fancy, fine, lovely, nice, pretty | cheap, expensive | clean, fresh | dirty, dishevelled, ragged, shabby, soiled | tight | baggy, ill-fitting, loose, sloppy | designer, fashionable, trendy | dowdy, nerdy, old-fashioned | second-hand | comfortable, sensible | best, evening, formal, smart** *He wore his best clothes to the interview.* **| casual, everyday, ordinary | outrageous, strange, wacky | warm | summer, winter | outdoor, outer | baby, maternity, mourning, night, riding, school, sports, work, working | civilian, plain** *an officer in plain clothes* (= not in uniform)

QUANT. **set, suit** *I'm going to take a set of clean clothes with me. a new suit of clothes for the baby*

VERB + CLOTHES **put (back) on | remove | change** *Aren't you going to change your clothes for the party?* **| make | dry, iron, mend, wash**

CLOTHES + NOUN **shop | designer | basket | sense**

PREP. **in ~** *She didn't recognize him in his sloppy everyday clothes.*

PHRASES **a change of clothes**

clothing *noun*

ADJ. **light | heavy, warm | loose | tight | comfortable, sensible, suitable | casual | designer | cast-off, second-hand, used | summer, winter | outdoor | outer | protective, waterproof** *Workers at the factory wear protective clothing.* **| sports**

QUANT. **article, item, piece | layer**

CLOTHING + NOUN **business, company, factory, firm, industry, manufacturer, shop, store, trade**

PHRASES **a change of clothing**

cloud *noun*

1 **mass of very small drops of water in the sky**

ADJ. **dense, heavy, thick | light | fluffy | cirrus, cumulus | high, low | broken, scattered** *skies of broken cloud* **| fast-moving, scudding | black, dark, grey, white | rain, storm, threatening, thunder** *Rain clouds were looming on the horizon.*

QUANT. **band, bank, layer, mass, wisp** *a layer of high cloud*

VERB + CLOUD **seed** (= to place a substance in a cloud to make it produce rain)

CLOUD + VERB **form, gather, mass** *Dark clouds were gathering in the west.* **| cover sth, envelop sth, obscure sth | break, clear, disperse, lift, part** *The clouds broke a little, and the sun came out.* **| drift, float, hang, hover, loom, move, pass, race, roll, scud, swirl** *Thick cloud hung over the moor. A cloud passed over the sun. White clouds scudded across the sky.*

CLOUD + NOUN **bank, cover, formation** *The cloud cover is quite dense today.*

PREP. **above/below the ~s** *flying above the clouds* **| through the ~s** *She could see the sun through the clouds.*

PHRASES **a break in the cloud(s), a layer of cloud**

2 **mass of smoke, dust, etc.**

ADJ. **great, huge** *a great cloud of grey smoke* **| dense, thick | billowing, swirling | mushroom** *the mushroom cloud from a nuclear bomb* **| dust, radioactive, smoke**

PREP. **~ of** *a thick cloud of steam*

cloudy *adj.*

1 **full of clouds**

VERBS **be | start** *England and Wales will start cloudy.* **| become** *Later it will become cloudy with rain in places.* **| remain, stay** *It stayed cloudy for most of the day.*

ADV. **very | rather, slightly** *a rather cloudy sky*

2 **not clear**

VERBS **be, look** *The beer looked cloudy.* **| become | make sth** *The warm water is made cloudy by adding some milk.*

ADV. **very | rather, slightly** *Sometimes the drinking water becomes rather cloudy.*

clout *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, enormous** *a politician with enormous clout* **| economic, financial, political** *the growing political clout of the army*

VERB + CLOUT **carry, have, wield** *He has a lot of clout within the party.* **| exercise, use** *The companies used their clout to influence the policy.*

club *noun*

1 **group of people who meet to share an interest**

ADJ. **exclusive, private, top** *one of the top football clubs in the country* **| local | social | youth | fan, sports | football, golf, etc.** *She plays at the local tennis club.* **| book, record**

VERB + CLUB **belong to** *She belongs to a book club.* **| become a member of, join | form, start | run** *Who runs the tennis club?*

CLUB + NOUN **chairman, manager, member, official, player, secretary | cricket, football | bar**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *How many people are there in the club?* > Note at ORGANIZATION

2 **where people go and listen to music, dance, etc.**

ADJ. **jazz, night** (also **nightclub)**

CLUB + NOUN **scene** *a new style of music on the London club scene*

3 **playing card > Note at CARD**

clue *noun*

ADJ. **good, important, useful, valuable | vital | tell-tale | obvious**

VERB + CLUE **have, hold** *So far, the police haven't got any clues as to the motive for the crime. Diet may hold the clue to the causes of migraine.* **| give (sb), furnish/ provide/supply (sb with), yield** *The hat gives a clue to the identity of the killer. The letter yielded no clues.* **| hunt for, look for, search for | discover, find, uncover | leave** *The burglar left no clues.* **| follow (up)**

PREP. **~ about** *This research might provide an important clue about how cancer develops.* **| ~ (as) to** *a clue as to her whereabouts*

clump *noun*

ADJ. **great, large | little, small | dense** *These plants quickly form dense clumps.* **| straggling, tangled**

VERB + CLUMP **form**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *situated in a clump of trees* **| ~ of** *great clumps of rhododendrons*

cluster *noun*

ADJ. **little, small | compact, dense**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The church stood in a small cluster of farmers' cottages.* **| ~ of** *a dense cluster of buildings*

cluster *verb*

ADV. **closely, tightly | together** *The group clustered together closely.*

PREP. **about/around/round** *The children clustered around their teacher.*

clutch *noun*

1 **sb/sth's clutches sb/sth's power/control**

VERB + CLUTCH **fall into** *She fell into the clutches of the rebel forces.* **| escape (from)**

PREP. **in sb's ~** *They had him in their clutches.* **| out of sb's ~** *Once she was out of their clutches, she fled across the border.*

2 **in a car**

VERB + CLUTCH **drop, engage, put your foot on | disengage, let in/out, release, take your foot off** *Put it into first gear and let the clutch out slowly.* **| ride** (= to keep in a state between full engagement and disengagement) *The driver at the traffic lights was riding his clutch.*

CLUTCH + VERB **engage | disengage | slip**

CLUTCH + NOUN **pedal**

clutch *verb*

ADV. **firmly, tightly | desperately**

PREP. **at** *He felt himself slipping and clutched at a branch.*

PHRASES **clutch sth in your hand** *She clutched her handbag tightly in one hand.* **|** **clutch sth to your chest** *She clutched the letter to her chest.*

clutter *noun*

ADJ. **personal | screen** *to get rid of screen clutter* (= on a computer)

VERB + CLUTTER **clear (up), get rid of**

PREP. **amid/amidst/among/amongst the ~** *The cat managed to find a spot to sleep amidst all the clutter of my study.* **| in a/the ~** *The garage is in such a clutter that we can't find anything.*

coach *noun*

1 **bus for longer journeys**

ADJ. **express | private | luxury | air-conditioned**

VERB + COACH **go by, travel by | board, get on | get off | drive | hire**

COACH + NOUN **station | driver | holiday, journey, tour, trip | travel | party | company | service**

PREP. **by ~** *They are planning to tour the United States by coach.* **| in/on a/the ~**

2 **large carriage pulled by horses**

ADJ. **royal**

VERB + COACH **drive | ride in**

COACH + VERB **drive**

COACH + NOUN **road** *This is the old coach road.* **| house**

PHRASES **a coach and four/six** (= a coach and four/six horses) *a gateway wide enough for a coach and four to drive through* **| a coach and horses**

3 **person who trains people in sport, etc.**

ADJ. **good, successful, top** *a top football coach* **| professional | chief, head | assistant | national | club | athletics, basketball, football, tennis, etc. | sports | acting, drama, voice** > Note at JOB

coal *noun*

1 **black mineral**

ADJ. **hard | soft | brown | bituminous, coking | opencast** *opencast coal mining*

QUANT. **lump, piece**

VERB + COAL **mine, produce | burn, use | shovel**

COAL + VERB **burn**

COAL + NOUN **fire | mine, pit | mining, production | merchant, miner | company | industry | field, seam | bucket, bunker, cellar, scuttle | dust, gas**

2 **(usually coals) burning pieces of coal**

ADJ. **burning, glowing, hot, live, red-hot**

VERB + COAL **glow** *Red-hot coals glowed in the fireplace.*

coalition *noun*

ADJ. **strong | loose | broad, broad-based, rainbow, umbrella** *an umbrella coalition of human rights organizations* **| grand** *a grand coalition of various environmental groups* **| centre-left, centre-right, conservative, left-wing, liberal, radical, right-wing | two-party, three-party, etc. | cross-party | governing, government, ruling | opposition | wartime | political**

VERB + COALITION **create, form** *The centre-right opposition parties have formed a coalition.* **| join | lead** *a coalition led by the Socialist Party*

COALITION + VERB **break up, collapse, fall (apart)**

COALITION + NOUN **government | forces, member, partner, party**

PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *The two parties governed in coalition for four years. the biggest party in the government coalition* **| ~ between** *a coalition between the Socialists and Communists* **| ~ of** *a broad coalition of democratic and republican groups* **| ~ with** *They formed a coalition with the Greens.*

coast *noun*

ADJ. **forbidding, rocky, rugged, wild | north, northern, etc. | indented | mainland | sea**

QUANT. **stretch** *the long stretch of coast between Lowestoft and Felixstowe*

VERB + COAST **follow, hug** *The path hugs the coast all the way to Tenby.*

COAST + VERB **stretch** *The coast stretched far into the distance.*

COAST + NOUN **road**

PREP. **along the ~** *We travelled south along the coast.* **| around/round the ~** *They sailed round the coast to Falmouth.* **| at the ~** *We spent a day at the coast.* **| off the ~** *an island two miles off the west coast of Scotland* **| on the ~** *a village on the Mediterranean coast*

coastline *noun*

ADJ. **long | beautiful, spectacular | rocky, rugged | wild | unspoilt | indented**

QUANT. **stretch** *long stretches of unspoilt coastline*

VERB + COASTLINE **follow** *The road follows the Pacific coastline.* **| erode**

COASTLINE + VERB **stretch** *The coastline stretches for miles.*

PREP. **along a/the ~** *They sailed along the rugged coastline.* **| around/round a/the ~** *sailing around the Atlantic coastline of France* **| off a/the ~** *the search for oil off the Welsh coastline*

coat *noun*

1 **piece of clothing**

ADJ. **long | short | three-quarter-length | heavy | light | winter | waterproof | fur-trimmed | double-breasted, single-breasted | belted | duffle, frock, morning, tail, trench**

VERB + COAT **pull on, shrug (yourself) into, shrug on, throw on | pull off, shrug off | button (up)** *The coat was buttoned up wrong.* **| unbutton | hang (up)**

COAT + NOUN **collar, pocket, sleeve, tail | hook** > Special page at CLOTHES

2 **fur/hair covering an animal's body**

ADJ. **long | short | thick | rough | smooth | curly, fluffy, furry, shaggy, silky, woolly** *a dog with a long shaggy coat* **| glossy | spotted, striped | winter**

VERB + COAT **shed** *The dog sheds its winter coat once the weather becomes warmer.*

3 **layer of sth covering a surface**

ADJ. **thick | thin | fresh, new** *The room needs a fresh coat of paint.* **| base | final, top**

VERB + COAT **apply, put on** *Make sure the base coat has thoroughly dried before applying the top coat.*

COAT + VERB **dry**

PREP. **~ of** *a coat of paint/varnish*

coat *verb*

ADV. **completely | heavily, thickly | lightly | specially** *The fabric has been specially coated to improve its water resistance.*

PREP. **in** *Coat the fish in the sauce.* **| with** *The furniture was thickly coated with dust.*

coating *noun*

ADJ. **thick | fine, thin | outer, surface | protective | magnetic | chocolate, metal, plastic**

VERB + COATING **be covered in/with, have** *The fruit is covered in a thick coating of milk chocolate.* **| apply** *Apply a thin coating of glue to the surface.*

coax *verb*

ADV. **gently**

VERB + COAX **try to | manage to | fail to**

PREP. **from** *He could coax tears and laughter from his audience.* **| into** *He gently coaxed life back into my frozen toes.* **| out of** *She never failed to coax good results out of her pupils.*

cocaine *nou*n

ADJ. **crack, freebase**

QUANT. **line, packet**

VERB + COCAINE **freebase, inject, shoot, smoke, sniff, snort**

COCAINE + NOUN **possession | injection | export | baron | cartel** > Note at DRUG (for more verbs and nouns)

cock *noun*

ADJ. **fighting | barnyard** *The market traders cried out like barnyard cocks.*

COCK + VERB **crow** *The cock crowed at dawn.*

COCK + NOUN **fight, fighting**

cocktail *noun*

1 **mixed alcoholic drink**

ADJ. **pre-dinner | champagne**

VERB + COCKTAIL **mix | have, drink | sip**

COCKTAIL + NOUN **bar, cabinet | circuit** *a familiar face on the cocktail circuit* **| dress | hour | lounge | party | shaker | waiter, waitress**

2 **dish of small pieces of food**

ADJ. **prawn, seafood | fruit**

3 **mixture of different things**

ADJ. **deadly, lethal | heady, powerful** *The show was a heady cocktail of jazz, dance and political satire.*

PREP. **~ of** *a lethal cocktail of drink and drugs*

cock-up *noun*

ADJ. **complete, real, total** VERB + COCK-UP **make** *He made a real cock-up of it.*

PREP. **~ over** *There's been a bit of a cock-up over the travel arrangements.*

coconut *noun*

ADJ. **dessicated, fresh**

QUANT. **bunch** *huge bunches of fresh coconuts*

VERB + COCONUT **eat, have | grow | harvest, pick | break open, open** *She broke open the coconut and drank its sweet milk.*

COCONUT + NOUN **milk, oil | palm, tree** *a bay fringed with swaying coconut palms* **| fibre, husk, matting, shell**

code *noun*

1 **system of letters, numbers, etc. for secret information**

ADJ. **secret | Morse**

VERB + CODE **break, crack, decipher** *The code was difficult to crack.* **| use, write in | invent, make up**

CODE + NOUN **word**

PREP. **in ~** *All the messages were in code.*

2 **numbers/letters for identifying sth**

ADJ. **area, dialling** *What's the area code for Bath?* **| post/postal | bar, charge | DNA, genetic | binary** (= a system of computer programming instructions) **| error** (= on a computer)

CODE + NOUN **number**

3 **set of rules for behaviour**

ADJ. **strict | ethical, moral | civil, criminal, disciplinary, penal | Highway** *the Highway Code* (= the official rules for users of public roads in Britain) **| dress**

VERB + CODE **have | devise, draw up, establish, formulate, lay down** *The company has drawn up a new disciplinary code.* **| comply with, follow | break, infringe, violate** *He was thrown out for infringing the club's strict dress code.*

PHRASES **a code of behaviour/conduct/ethics/honour/practice** *The profession has a strict code of practice.*

coexist *verb*

ADV. **peacefully** *What makes it difficult for the communities to coexist peacefully?*

PREP. **alongside/with** *Modern farming methods coexist with more traditional practices.*

coffee *noun*

ADJ. **strong | weak | black, dark** *a mug of strong black coffee* **| milky, white** *She drinks very milky coffee with lots of sugar.* **| frothy | sugary, sweet | bitter | hot, steaming** *a pot of piping hot coffee He brought in two mugs of steaming coffee.* **| lukewarm, tepid | cold | iced | fresh** *The others will be back soon?I'll go and make some fresh coffee.* **| excellent, expensive, good | decaffeinated | ersatz | filter, percolated, real | instant** *Would you like real or instant coffee?* **| Irish** (= with whiskey added), **Turkish** (= very strong, black and sweet)

QUANT. **cup, mug, pot**

VERB + COFFEE **drink** *Do you drink coffee?* **| have** *I had two coffees while I waited.* **| take** *'How do you take your coffee?' 'Milk, no sugar, thanks.'* **| sip, take a mouthful/sip of** *He took a sip of his coffee.* **| drain, drink up, finish | stir | pour (sb) | go for** *Let's go for a coffee when you've finished your essay.* **| brew, make** *freshly-brewed coffee I'll make some coffee for breakfast.* **| grind** *a packet of freshly-ground coffee*

COFFEE + VERB **get/go cold | be laced with sth** *coffee laced with cognac*

COFFEE + NOUN **cup, mug | machine, percolator, pot | dregs | break**

PREP. **in your ~** *I have milk but no sugar in my coffee.*

PHRASES **an aroma/a smell of coffee** *An inviting smell of coffee wafted into the room.* **| coffee-making facilities** *Tea and coffee-making facilities are available in the kitchen.*

coffin *noun*

VERB + COFFIN **carry, take | lower** *The coffin was lowered into the grave.*

PREP. **in a/the ~**

coherence *noun*

ADJ. **internal** *Your essay lacks internal coherence.* **| ideological, intellectual, logical, theoretical** *theories which lack ideological coherence*

VERB + COHERENCE **have, possess | achieve, create, give sth, maintain** *They have struggled to create coherence within the group.* **| lack**

PREP. **~ between** *a lack of coherence between the policy and the speech* **| ~ in/within** *There's a strong sense of coherence in the school curriculum.*

PHRASES **a degree/sense of coherence**

coil *noun*

ADJ. **neat, tight | thick** *thick coils of blonde hair*

COIL + VERB **unwind**

PREP. **in a ~** *She wore her hair in a neat coil.* **| ~ of** *a coil of rope*

coil *verb*

ADV. **tightly | loosely | neatly | up** *He coiled the rope up tightly and put it away.*

PREP. **around/round** *The snake coiled itself around a branch.* **| into** *Her hair was neatly coiled into a bun.*

coin *noun*

ADJ. **copper, gold, silver | antique, rare | commemorative | counterfeit, fake | penny, pound, etc.**

VERB + COIN **issue | mint, strike** *The first English gold coin was struck in 1255.* **| flip, spin, toss** *They tossed a coin to see who should go first.* **| collect**

COIN + VERB **be in circulation, circulate** *Very few old 5p coins are still in circulation.* **| clink, jingle** *coins jingling in his pockets*

COIN + NOUN **collector**

coincide *verb*

1 **happen at the same time**

ADV. **exactly** *Her visit coincided exactly with a visit by the American president.* **| roughly**

VERB + COINCIDE **be planned to, be timed to**

PREP. **with** *The singer's arrival was timed to coincide with the opening of the festival.*

2 **be the same**

ADV. **closely | exactly**

PREP. **with** *Our views on this issue coincide closely with yours.*

coincidence *noun*

ADJ. **complete, pure, sheer** *It was pure coincidence that they were both in Paris on the same day.* **| mere | happy** *What a happy coincidence to meet you at the airport just when I wanted to see you.* **| unfortunate, unhappy | amazing, curious, extraordinary, funny, incredible, odd, remarkable, strange, wonderful**

QUANT. **series, set, string** *They met through a series of strange coincidences.*

COINCIDENCE + VERB **happen** *Remarkable coincidences do happen in real life.*

PREP. **by (a) ~** *By coincidence, we both went to the same school. By an unfortunate coincidence, their house was burgled on the day he lost his job.*

coincidental *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **entirely, merely, purely, quite** *These parallels cannot be merely coincidental.* **| largely**

coke *noun*

1 **Coke drink**

ADJ. **diet**

QUANT. **bottle, can, glass**

VERB + COKE **have** *I'll have a Coke, please.* | **drink, sip**

COKE + NOUN **bottle, can | machine**

PHRASES **rum and Coke**

2 **cocaine**

QUANT. **line**

VERB + COKE **sniff, snort**

COKE + NOUN **fiend, sniffer** > Note at DRUG

3 **fuel**

QUANT. **lump, piece**

VERB + COKE **manufacture, produce | burn, use**

COKE + NOUN **works | boiler, fire**

cold *adj.*

1 **not hot or warm**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get, grow, turn** *As evening fell it got very cold. The room grew cold. In January it turned very cold.* **| make sb/sth** *The rain overnight had made the water cold.* **| keep sth** *Use ice to keep the drinks cold.*

ADV. **bitterly, extremely, freezing, ice-, icy, terribly, very** *It's bitterly cold outside. There was a freezing cold wind. an ice-cold beer* **| fairly, quite, rather**

2 **not cooked/having become cold after cooking**

VERBS **be | get, go** *Your dinner's getting cold. I'm afraid the coffee's gone cold.* **| eat sth, serve sth** *Bake in the oven for twenty minutes. Serve hot or cold.*

ADV. **stone** *This soup is stone cold!*

cold *noun*

1 **lack of heat; low temperature**

ADJ. **biting, bitter, extreme, freezing**

VERB + COLD **feel** *I don't feel the cold as badly as many people.* | **keep out** *The house has double glazing to keep out the cold.* | **be blue with, be numb with** *My hands were blue with cold.*

PREP. **against the ~** *We were well wrapped up against the cold.* | **out in the ~** *He stood out in the cold and waited. (figurative) When the coalition was formed the Liberals were left out in the cold* (= were not invited to join it).

2 **common illness**

ADJ. **bad, heavy, nasty** *She won her match despite suffering from a heavy cold.* | **slight** | **common** *When will they find a cure for the common cold?* | **chest, head**

VERB + COLD **have, nurse, suffer from** *Jim stayed at home because he was nursing a cold.* | **catch, go down with, take** *I must have caught a cold on the bus. If you stay out in the rain you'll catch cold! He took cold, developed pneumonia, and that was the end of him.* > Special page at ILLNESS

coldness *noun*

1 state of being cold

ADJ. **icy** *The icy coldness of the water revived her.*

2 unfriendliness

ADJ. **marked** *There was a marked coldness in her voice.*

VERB + COLDNESS **treat sb with**

PREP. **~ between** *the coldness between Jack and Martha* **| ~ towards** *his coldness towards his parents*

colic *noun*

ADJ. **violent | biliary | infantile**

QUANT. **attack, bout**

VERB + COLIC **have, suffer from | develop | treat** > Special page at ILLNESS

collaborate *verb*

ADV. **actively, closely**

PREP. **on, with** *We have collaborated closely with the university on this project.*

collaboration *noun*

ADJ. **active, close | effective, fruitful, happy, successful | international**

PREP. **in ~ with** *Rock musicians are working in collaboration with an orchestra to create a new opera.* **| ~ between** *a collaboration between two writers* **| ~ with** *the results of a fruitful collaboration with the industry*

PHRASES **a degree of collaboration**

collapse *noun*

1 building, etc. suddenly falling

ADJ. **sudden** *the sudden collapse of the bridge*

PHRASES **be in danger of collapse**

2 medical condition

ADJ. **sudden | mental, nervous, physical**

VERB + COLLAPSE **be close to, be on the point/verge of** *She was on the verge of nervous collapse.*

PREP. **~ from** *his collapse from exhaustion*

PHRASES **a state of collapse** *He was in a state of mental and physical collapse.*

3 sudden/complete failure of sth

ADJ. **complete, total | general | virtual | sudden | economic, financial** *the sudden economic collapse of 2001*

VERB + COLLAPSE **bring about, contribute to, lead to, result in** *The war has led to the collapse of agriculture in the area.* **| face, be faced with | be on the brink/ point/verge of | prevent**

PREP. **~ into** *a collapse into anarchy*

collapse *verb*

1 **of a building**

ADV. **completely**

PREP. **into** *Several buildings have collapsed into the sea.* | **under** *The roof collapsed under the weight of snow.*

2 **of a sick person**

ADV. **suddenly**

PREP. **against** *The man collapsed against the wall and slid down it.* | **from** *She collapsed suddenly from a heart attack.* | **with** *He collapsed with shock.*

3 **fail**

ADV. **eventually, finally** *In November the strike finally collapsed.* | **quickly, rapidly** | **suddenly** | **virtually**

PHRASES **to collapse in the face of sth** *The scheme collapsed in the face of determined opposition.*

collar *noun*

1 **on a shirt, coat, dress, etc.**

ADJ. **open, undone** *His tie was knotted below his open collar. His collar was undone.* **| button-down, turned-down | tight | starched, stiff | detachable | coat, shirt, etc. | high, stand-up, wing | clerical, dog** *The vicar had his dog collar on.*

VERB + COLLAR **have** *The shirt had a button-down collar.* **| have on, wear | button, do up, fasten | unbutton, undo, unfasten | raise, turn up** *She turned up her coat collar for extra warmth.* **| turn down | loosen**

COLLAR + NOUN **stud | size**

PHRASES **collar and tie** *He wore a collar and tie for the occasion.*

2 **round an animal's neck**

ADJ. **dog | flea**

VERB + COLLAR **have on, wear | slip** *The dog slipped its collar and ran off.*

colleague *nou*n

ADJ. **close, trusted | junior, senior | female, male | professional, work | academic, business, medical | cabinet, parliamentary**

collection *noun*

1 **group of objects**

ADJ. **big, extensive, huge, large, major, substantial, vast | small | growing | complete, comprehensive | core, permanent** *The permanent collection is displayed on the first floor, whilst the ground floor houses temporary exhibitions.* | **reserve** *The museum has a large reserve collection in storage, which members of the public rarely get to see.* | **amazing, extraordinary, fascinating, fine, good, great, important, impressive, interesting, magnificent, outstanding, remarkable, rich, stunning, superb, unique, useful, valuable | bizarre, disparate, diverse, heterogeneous, jumbled, miscellaneous, motley, odd, random, strange, varied | representative** *to assemble and analyse a representative collection of data* | **celebrated, distinguished, famous, prestigious, renowned | family, personal, private** *the largest private art collection in the world* | **public | international, local, national | historical | reference, research** *a research collection available for study by archaeologists* | **archive, library, museum** *a historical archive collection of 20,000 documents* | **antiques, art, book, CD, coin, manuscript, photographic, picture, plant, record, stamp**

VERB + COLLECTION **boast, have** *The museum boasts a superb collection of medieval weapons.* | **acquire, amass, assemble, build up, compile, make** *He built up his collection over a period of ten years. She made a collection of Roman coins and medals.* | **start | add to** *a new painting to add to their collection* | **complete** *She needed only one more stamp to complete her collection.* | **hold, house** *a new building to house the national collection of arms and armour* | **display, exhibit, show** *A glass-fronted cabinet displayed a collection of china figurines.* | **view, visit, see** *I was allowed to view his family collection of portrait miniatures.* | **consult, study** *Historians frequently ask to consult the collection.* | **organize** *She had the task of cataloguing the library and organizing the collection of rare manuscripts.*

COLLECTION + VERB **consist of sth, contain sth, include sth** *The collection contains some 500 items.* | **cover sth** *The collection covers all phases of Picasso's career.* | **come from … | date from …** *major collections dating from the 11th to the 19th century* | **grow** *The museum's collection is growing all the time.* | **be available, be/go on display/show/view** *The collection is to go on public display for the first time next month. The collection is rarely on view to the public.*

PREP. **~ of** *a valuable collection of antique porcelain* > Note at ART

2 taking sth away/bringing sth together

ADJ. **routine, systematic** *the systematic collection of data* | **efficient** | **free** *The council offers free collection of waste.* | **weekly** | **data** | **debt, rent, revenue, tax** *the need for more efficient tax collection* | **refuse, rubbish, waste**

VERB + COLLECTION **await, be ready for** *Your car is awaiting collection at our garage.* | **arrange, organize** *They will arrange collection of the chairs.*

COLLECTION + NOUN **point** *a lack of collection points for waste paper* | **service** *a refuse collection service*

PREP. **~ of** *There are some difficulties with the collection of reliable data.*

PHRASES **a method of collection** *different methods of data collection*

3 poems/stories/music

VERB + COLLECTION **compile, edit, publish** *to publish a collection of scholarly essays*

PREP. **~ of**

4 money

ADJ. **house-to-house, street** | **charity, church**

VERB + COLLECTION **have, make, organize, take** *We will have a collection for charity at the end of the concert. A collection will be taken at the end of the service.*

COLLECTION + NOUN **box, plate** *the church collection plate*

PREP. **~ for** *a street collection for famine relief*

5 new clothes

ADJ. **new** | **autumn, spring, etc.** | **ready-to-wear**

VERB + COLLECTION **show, unveil** *the first designer to unveil his collection for the* *spring season*

collector *noun*

ADJ. **great, major** *a major collector of Japanese art* **| ardent, assiduous, avid, enthusiastic, keen, serious | private | art, coin, plant, record, stamp**

PHRASES **a collector's item** *This vase is quite rare and is almost a collector's item.*

college *noun*

ADJ. **community, local | sixth form, tertiary | tutorial | university | agricultural, art, FE/further education, military, music, police, secretarial, teacher training, technical, theological, veterinary, etc.**

VERB + COLLEGE **attend, go to | finish, graduate from**

COLLEGE + NOUN **lecturer, principal, teacher | staff | student | course | chapel, library, room**

PREP. **at ~** *She's at college in Swindon.* **| in ~** *Not all the lecturers are in college at any one time.*

PHRASES **a college of (further/higher) education**

collide *verb*

ADV. **nearly | head-on** *Two trains collided head-on.*

PREP. **with** *His car nearly collided with a bus.*

collision *noun*

ADJ. **serious | near | multiple | head-on, mid-air**

VERB + COLLISION **be involved in, have** *I had a near collision with a lorry.* **| avoid | cause**

COLLISION + VERB **happen, occur** *The collision occurred near the hospital.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She was injured in a collision.* **| in ~ with** *The car was in collision with a lorry.* **| ~ between** *a head-on collision between two cars* **| ~ with** *a collision with a train*

PHRASES **be on a collision course with sth** *An iceberg was on a collision course with the ship.*

colonel *nou*n > Note at RANK

colony *noun*

1 **country ruled by another country**

ADJ. **overseas** *Britain's overseas colonies* | **self-governing** | **penal, plantation**

VERB + COLONY **establish** *Settlers established a new colony in the early 18th century.*

PREP. **in a/the ~**

2 **group of animals/plants**

ADJ. **huge, large, thriving** | **small** | **breeding** | **ant, bird, seal, etc.** | **coral**

VERB + COLONY **form** *Some of the insects will leave to form a new colony.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The birds nest in huge colonies.* | **~ of** *a colony of ants*

colour *noun*

PREP. **off ~** (= looking or feeling ill)

1 **quality that makes sth red, etc.**

3 **interesting or exciting details**

ADJ. **bold, bright, brilliant, vivid,**

ADJ. **local** *a journalist in search of a* **vibrant | dark, deep** *Dark colours bit of local colour suit you best.* **| intense, rich,**

VERB + COLOUR **add, give sth, lend strong** *the intense colour of new His asides lent colour to the story. leaves* **| light, muted, pale,**

PHRASES **full of colour pastel, soft, subdued, subtle | dull | garish, gaudy, loud, lurid | autumn/autumnal, earthy, warm | sombre | attractive, beautiful, lovely | complementary, contrasting | matching | basic | primary, secondary | indeterminate, neutral | natural | blue, red, etc.** *The curtains went a strange orange colour when we washed them.* **| eye, hair, skin** *What is her natural hair colour?*

QUANT. **dash, flash, splash | mass, riot** *The garden is a riot of colour in spring.* **| spot, touch**

VERB + COLOUR **change** *The chameleon changes colour to match its surroundings.* **| add** *The silk cushions add colour to an otherwise dull room.*

COLOUR + VERB **match (sth) | clash | fade | run** *This colour runs, so wash the shirt separately.*

COLOUR + NOUN **combination, range, scheme** *We have to choose a colour scheme for the dining room.* **| illustration, photograph, photography, printing, reproduction | monitor, television**

PREP. **in ~** *The flowers are pale blue in colour. Is the film in colour or black and white? The book is lavishly illustrated in full colour.* | **in a ~** *The scarf is available in six* *different colours.*

PHRASES **a combination/range of colours2** redness in the face

ADJ. **heightened, high** *You could tell she was excited by the heightened colour in her cheeks.* | **faint**

VERB + COLOUR **have** *You have a bit more colour in your cheeks now.* | **bring** *The walk brought colour to her face.* **| be drained of, drain of, lose** *His face drained of all colour.*

COLOUR + VERB **flood sth, rise** *Colour flooded her cheeks. The colour rose in his face.* **| drain** *The colour drained from her face when she saw him.* **| come back, return** *Gradually the colour returned to his cheeks.*

colour *verb*

ADV. **heavily, strongly** *His opinions are heavily coloured by his own experiences.* | **naturally**

coloured *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **boldly, brilliantly, brightly, gaily, highly, richly, strikingly, strongly, vividly** *She wore a richly coloured silk dress.* **| beautifully | delicately | uniformly | variously** *variously coloured birds*

ADJ. **dark, light | cream, gold, etc.**

colouring *noun*

ADJ. **natural | dark, fair**

VERB + COLOURING **have** *He daughter has very fair colouring.*

column *noun*

1 **tall stone post**

ADJ. **huge, tall | fluted** *colonnades of fluted Doric columns* **| classical | Corinthian, Doric, Ionic**

COLUMN + VERB **support sth** *The roof is supported by four huge columns.*

2 **piece of writing in a newspaper**

ADJ. **regular** *He has a regular column in a weekly newspaper.* **| daily, weekly, etc. | newspaper | agony, correspondence, death, editorial, financial, gossip, leader, letters, lonely hearts** (= with advertisements for a new lover or friend), **obituary, personal, travel**

VERB + COLUMN **have, write | syndicate**

COLUMN + NOUN **inches** *So many column inches are devoted to film stars.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She saw his name in an obituary column.* **| ~ about/on** *a weekly column on films showing in London*

3 **long line of people, vehicles, etc.**

ADJ. **huge, long | armoured, tank | marching**

PREP. **in ~s** *to march in columns* **| ~ of** *a column of troops*

PHRASES **the head of the column**

coma *noun*

ADJ. **deep | irreversible**

VERB + COMA **fall into, go into, sink into, slip into** *He sank into a coma after suffering a brain haemorrhage.* **| come out of**

COMA + NOUN **victim**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He has been in a coma since his car accident three months ago.*

comb *noun*

1 **used for making your hair tidy**

VERB + COMB **use**

PHRASES **a brush and comb, drag/run a comb through sth** *She ran a comb through her tangled hair.*

2 **act of combing**

VERB + COMB **could do with, need** *Your hair could do with a comb!* **| give sth** *She gave her hair a comb.*

combat *noun*

ADJ. **fierce, mortal | armed, unarmed | close, hand-to-hand | open | single | aerial**

VERB + COMBAT **be engaged in, be locked in, engage in** *The troops were locked in hand-to-hand combat.* **| send sb into**

COMBAT + NOUN **mission | zone | force, troops, unit | aircraft, vehicle | boots, fatigues, gear, jacket, kit, suit, uniform**

PREP. **in ~** *He was killed in combat.* **| in ~ with** *The soldiers are in combat with rebel forces.* **| ~ against** *in mortal combat against dragons* **| ~ between** *a fierce combat between two champions*

combination *noun*

ADJ. **perfect, right, unbeatable, winning** *The orchestra played with a winning combination of gusto and precision.* **| attractive, delicious, good, happy, powerful | curious, rare, strange, unique, unusual | colour** *an unusual colour combination*

PREP. **in ~ (with)** *The materials can be used singly or in combination. Hepatitis D exists only in combination with the hepatitis B virus.* **| ~ of** *a delicious combination of flavours*

combine *verb*

ADV. **successfully** *She successfully combines her career with family life.*

PREP. **against** *to combine against a common enemy* **| with** *Combine the flour with the water to make a stiff paste.*

comeback *noun*

ADJ. **big, dramatic, fighting, great, remarkable, successful | long-awaited | political**

VERB + COMEBACK **make, stage** *He made one of the most remarkable comebacks in modern politics.* **| attempt**

COMEBACK + NOUN **trail** *The player is on the comeback trail after a serious knee injury.*

comedian *noun*

ADJ. **celebrated, great, popular | film, radio, stand-up, television/TV** *He started out as a stand-up comedian in Liverpool.* **| alternative** > Note at JOB

comedy *noun*

ADJ. **high, low | alternative, black, light, musical, romantic, situation, slapstick, stand-up** *a popular romantic comedy The show contains some wonderful slapstick comedy.*

VERB + COMEDY **do, play** *Does he play comedy?*

COMEDY + NOUN **actor, actress, writer | film, series, show**

PHRASES **a comedy of manners** > Note at PERFORMANCE(for more verbs)

comfort *noun*

1 **having all your body needs/a pleasant life**

ADJ. **great, maximum, modest, reasonable** *They live in modest comfort.* | **comparative, relative** | **added** *a quilted cover for added comfort* | **domestic, personal, physical**

PREP. **for ~** *I dress for comfort rather than glamour.* | **in ~** *I like to travel in reasonable comfort.*

PHRASES **a degree/standard of comfort, in the comfort of your own home, too close/hot for comfort** *The hotel offers a high standard of comfort. The sound of gunfire was too close for comfort.*

2 **help/kindness to sb who is suffering**

ADJ. **great** | **cold** *A drop in the unemployment rate was cold comfort for those without a job* (= not much comfort at all).

QUANT. **crumb, word**

VERB + COMFORT **bring sb, give sb, offer sb, provide sb with** *His kind words brought some comfort to the grieving parents.* | **derive, draw, find, get, seek, take** *They sought comfort in each other. We took great comfort from the fact that at least some of our savings were safe.*

COMFORT + NOUN **food** *Chocolate is a great comfort food.*

PREP. **~ in** *She found comfort in music.*

PHRASES **a source of comfort**

3 **sb/sth that helps when you are suffering, etc.**

ADJ. **great**

PREP. **~ to** *The children have been a great comfort to me through all of this.*

4 **sth that makes life easier**

ADJ. **modern | creature, home, material** *I hate camping?I miss all my creature comforts.* **| spiritual**

comfort *verb*

ADV. **greatly** *The idea that he was not alone comforted him greatly.*

PHRASES **be comforted to know** *He was comforted to know that most people in the class knew even less than he.* **| being comforted by family/friends/relatives** *The victim's widow was today being comforted by family and friends.* **| feel comforted**

comfortable *adj.*

1 allowing you to feel relaxed

VERBS be, feel, look *The bed felt comfortable.* **| make sth** *We must think how we can make the room more comfortable for you.*

ADV. extremely, incredibly, superbly, very, wonderfully *an extremely comfortable chair* **| perfectly | enough, fairly, moderately, quite, reasonably** *The hotel was comfortable enough.* **| surprisingly**

2 not having any pain/worry

VERBS be, feel, look *Did you feel comfortable and relaxed at the party?* **| become, get** *This bed is lumpy?I just can't seem to get comfortable.* **| make sb/yourself** *Make yourself comfortable!*

ADV. very | completely, entirely, quite, totally *I was not entirely comfortable about the plans they had made.*

PREP. about *They didn't feel comfortable about her travelling alone.* **| with** *I don't feel comfortable with him.*

3 having/providing enough money for all your needs

VERBS be

ADV. very | quite, relatively *I had a relatively comfortable life in Brazil.*

comforting *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | find sth**

ADV. **extremely, most, very, wonderfully | hardly, not particularly | strangely** *She found his voice strangely comforting.*

comic *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **richly, truly, wonderfully** *Many of the scenes in the book are richly comic.* **| almost | faintly, mildly, slightly | blackly, grotesquely** *a blackly comic futuristic fantasy*

comical *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, sound | become | make sth** *What made it so comical was that their hats kept falling off.*

ADV. **extremely, very | almost | faintly, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat** *He is a faintly comical figure who fears being made fun of.*

command *noun*

1 **order**

ADJ. **peremptory**

VERB + COMMAND **carry out, obey | bark, give, issue** *an army officer barking commands at his men He issued the command to retreat.*

PREP. **at sb's ~** *I am at your command* (= ready to obey you). *At her command all work stopped.*

2 **control over sb/sth**

ADJ. **complete, full, total** *He was in complete command of the situation.* **| direct** *under the direct command of Lieutenant Sykes* **| sole** *She was in sole command of one million pounds.* **| personal | integrated, joint, unified** *NATO's integrated military command* **| overall | high, supreme** *the military high command* **| army, military**

VERB + COMMAND **have** *He had command of 3,000 soldiers.* **| assume, take (over) | give sb, put sb in | relinquish | lose, be relieved of** *She has lost command of her senses.*

PREP. **in ~** *Who is in command? She is second in command.* **| in ~ of** *He was put in command of the navy.* **| under sb's ~** *The division was under the command of General George.* **| ~ over** *his command over resources*

PHRASES **the chain/line of command**

3 **ability to do/use sth**

ADJ. **excellent, fluent, good, perfect | poor**

VERB + COMMAND **have**

PREP. **at your ~** *The vast knowledge of the country he has at his command will be invaluable in the job.* **| ~ of** *She has an excellent command of French.*

commander *noun*

ADJ. **supreme | deputy | air force, army, military, naval, navy, police | company, flight, group, platoon, squadron, station | Allied** *General Eisenhower was Supreme Allied Commander in Western Europe.*

PHRASES **Commander-in-Chief** > Note at RANK

commend *verb*

PREP. **for** *He was commended for his brave actions.* **| to** *She said she would commend the proposal to the Board.*

PHRASES **be highly/widely commended** *His book was highly commended.* **| sth has little/much to commend it** *The proposed site has much to commend it.*

commendable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **highly, very** *The government's action here is highly commendable.* **| entirely, wholly**

comment *noun*

ADJ. **brief | fair, favourable** *What she said was (a) fair comment.* **| adverse, derogatory, disparaging, hostile, negative, sad, unfair, unfavourable** *The attack is a sad comment on the public's understanding of mental illness.* **| critical** *Highly critical comments have been made about the conduct of some ministers. a book with critical comment on the various strands of feminism* **| caustic, ironic, sarcastic, sardonic, scathing, wry | constructive, helpful | cryptic | incisive, interesting, perceptive, shrewd | uninformed | general | detailed | casual, off-the-cuff, passing, throwaway** *He made a few casual comments to her about her hair and now she's gone and chopped it all off! This idea deserves more than passing comment.* **| editorial, official, personal, press, public** *Editorial comment in 'The Guardian' tended to support the government in this matter.* **| written | political, social** *Her novels were a vehicle for shrewd social comment.*

VERB + COMMENT **have, make, pass** *If you have any comments, please send them to the above address. She made a cryptic comment about how the film mirrored her life. I would prefer not to pass comment before I have more information on the case.* **| attract, cause, draw, elicit, excite** *The programme attracted much adverse comment.* **| invite, welcome** *The school has invited comments from parents about the new curriculum.* **| receive** *We have received many helpful comments from fellow-sufferers.*

PREP. **without ~** *She accepted his diagnosis without comment.* **| ~ about/on** *a general comment on the weather*

PHRASES **be available/not available/unavailable for comment** *The minister was unavailable for comment last night.* **| no comment** *When asked about the rumours, the chairman replied, 'no comment'.* **| a source of comment** *His visits were the source of much comment.*

comment *verb*

ADV. **favourably | adversely, critically, unfavourably | bitterly | drily, wryly | publicly**

VERB + COMMENT **decline to, refuse to** *The minister refused to comment on the affair.*

PREP. **about** *People were commenting about her gifts and abilities.* **| on** *He commented favourably on the proposals.* **| to** *She commented to me that she liked it.*

commentary *noun*

1 **on the radio/television**

ADJ. **brief | live | running** (= continuous) *She kept up a running commentary on the festivities.* **| radio, television** *listening to the radio commentary on the match*

VERB + COMMENTARY **give, keep up, provide | listen to**

COMMENTARY + NOUN **box** *the reporters in the commentary box*

PREP. **~ on** *BBC1 will give a live commentary on the election results.*

2 **criticism/discussion of sth**

ADJ. **detailed | critical | political, social**

VERB + COMMENTARY **provide** *The novel provides a powerful social commentary on post-war Germany.*

PREP. **~ on**

PHRASES **be a sad commentary (on sth)** (= to reflect badly on sth) *The petty quarrels were a sad commentary on the state of the government.*

commentator *noun*

1 **person who commentates on sth**

ADJ. **cricket, football, rugby, sports, etc. | match, race | radio, television/TV**
> Note at JOB

2 **person who gives opinions on sth in the media**

ADJ. **influential | independent | foreign | media | cultural, economic, political, social** *Political commentators are predicting that the minister will have to resign.*

PREP. **~ on** *a commentator on current affairs*

commerce *noun*

ADJ. **domestic, international**

VERB + COMMERCE **carry on, engage in** *The marketplace was where commerce was traditionally carried on.*

PREP. **~ between** *commerce between Germany and Italy* **| ~ with** *the development of commerce with Asia*

PHRASES **a chamber of commerce, the world of commerce** *She has little experience of the world of commerce.*

commercial *noun*

ADJ. **cinema, radio, television/TV | 30-second, etc.**

VERB + COMMERCIAL **do, make** *She ended up doing commercials, which ironically revived her acting career. The company has made commercials for leading sportswear manufacturers.*

COMMERCIAL + VERB **appear | feature sb/sth** *The commercial features a teenage girl with spots.*

COMMERCIAL + NOUN **break** *The film was so full of commercial breaks it was impossible to enjoy.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She's in a commercial for cars.* **| ~ for**

commission *noun*

1 **asking sb to do a piece of work for you**

ADJ. **private, public**

VERB + COMMISSION **accept, get, receive** *I have received a private commission to paint the prince's family.* | **give sb**

2 **official group asked to report on sth**

ADJ. **international, national | joint | independent | government, judicial, official, parliamentary, royal | permanent, standing | special | roving | working | economic, election, electoral, fact-finding, investigating, investigative, planning**

VERB + COMMISSION **appoint, establish, set up** *The government has set up a joint commission to consider the problem.* | **chair, head, preside over**

PREP. **~ for** *the commission for racial equality* | **~ on** *a commission on domestic violence*

PHRASES **a commission of enquiry**

3 **money for selling sth/providing a service**

ADJ. **big, high | small | fixed**

VERB + COMMISSION **earn, get, receive | pay | charge** *That bank charges a high commission for cashing traveller's cheques.* | **deduct**

PREP. **in ~** *She earned £2,000 in commission last month.* | **on ~** *Most of the salespeople are on commission.* | **~ for/on** *They get a 10% commission on every encyclopedia they sell.*

PHRASES **on a commission basis** *to work on a commission basis*

commission *verb*

ADV. **specially** *specially commissioned works*

PREP. **from** *The report was commissioned from scientists in five countries.*

commissioner *noun*

ADJ. **high | assistant, deputy | special | European Union/EU, police, United Nations/UN**

VERB + COMMISSIONER **appoint, appoint sb (as)**

PREP. **~ for** *He was appointed United Nations High Commissioner for refugees.*

commitment *noun*

1 **willingness to give time/energy to sth**

ADJ. **absolute, complete, full, total | clear, deep, firm, genuine, great, passionate, real, serious, strong | continued, continuing, increased, increasing, lifelong, long-term, ongoing | general, open-ended | government, personal, professional, public | emotional, ideological, moral, political, religious**

QUANT. **degree, level**

VERB + COMMITMENT **give, make** *The prime minister made a firm commitment to increasing spending on health.* **| demonstrate, display, show** *to demonstrate a commitment to human rights* **| lack | affirm, reaffirm | require** *Learning to play the violin requires strong commitment.* **| gain** *The government has managed to gain the commitment of employers to the scheme.*

PREP. **~ on** *The government avoided giving any commitments on pensions.* **| ~ to** *his lifelong commitment to the socialist cause*

PHRASES **a lack of commitment**

2 **a responsibility**

ADJ. **big, considerable, major | binding | prior | international, overseas | business, domestic, family, financial, military, social, teaching, work**

VERB + COMMITMENT **have, take on** *I don't want to take on any more commitments.* **| fulfil, honour, meet** *She can't meet her financial commitments.* **| get out of, wriggle out of** *He is trying to wriggle out of his various domestic commitments.*

PREP. **~ on** *to honour commitments on reduction of air pollution*

3 **agreeing to use money/time/people for sth**

ADJ. **heavy** *a heavy commitment of capital*

committed *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become | remain**

ADV. **deeply, fiercely, firmly, heavily, highly, seriously, strongly, very | absolutely, completely, fully, totally, wholly | genuinely | irrevocably** *The country was now irrevocably committed to war.* **| actively | personally** *The prime minister is personally committed to this legislation.* **| emotionally, financially, ideologically, politically** *She cared for Jem in her way but did not want to become emotionally committed.*

PREP. **to** *We are committed to improving services.*

committee *noun*

ADJ. **central | joint | standing | ad hoc, special | select | executive, management, steering | advisory, consultative | disciplinary | appeal | audit, finance, planning, selection, strike**

VERB + COMMITTEE **create, establish, form, set up | chair** *Lord Stansfield will chair the committee.* **| appoint (sb to), elect (sb to)** *He was appointed to the advisory committee last month.* **| be on, serve on, sit on** *She serves on several committees.* **| leave, stand down from | disband**

COMMITTEE + VERB **meet** *The committee meets every Thursday.*

COMMITTEE + NOUN **member | meeting**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *I talked to some of the people on the committee.* **| ~ on** *a committee on the safety of medicines* > Note at ORGANIZATION

commodity *noun*

1 **product/raw material**

ADJ. **basic, important, primary | cheap | expensive | rare, scarce** *Coal is becoming a rare commodity.* **| export, marketable, saleable | perishable | agricultural, industrial** *basic agricultural commodities*

VERB + COMMODITY **produce**

COMMODITY + NOUN **market | futures, prices | export, trade, trading | broker, trader**

PHRASES **trade in commodities**

2 **sth that is useful**

ADJ. **precious, valuable** *Time is a very valuable commodity.* **| rare, scarce**

common ground *noun*

VERB + COMMON GROUND **have, share** *The people on the course all share a lot of common ground.* **| establish, find | find yourself on**

PREP. **on ~** *We found ourselves on common ground on the question of education.* **| ~ between** *to find common ground between the two sides*

PHRASES **an area of common ground**

common sense *noun*

ADJ. **good, sound | plain, pure, simple | practical**

VERB + COMMON SENSE **have** *That child has got no common sense! At least he had the common sense to turn the water off before he left.* **| exercise, rely on/upon, show, use** *Use a bit of common sense!*

COMMON SENSE + VERB **prevail** *I hope that common sense will prevail.* **| dictate sth, suggest sth, tell sb sth** *Common sense should tell you that people will find out sooner or later.*

PHRASES **(not) an ounce of common sense** *He hasn't an ounce of common sense.*

common *adj.*

1 **happening/found often**

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very | increasingly | fairly, quite** *These problems now seem fairly common.*

2 **shared**

VERBS **be**

PREP. **to** *This attitude is common to most young men in the armed services.*

PHRASES **have sth in common** *Jane and I have nothing in common* (= share no interests, ideas, etc.). *I have nothing in common with Jane. The two cultures have a lot in common* (= have the same features, characteristics, etc.). **| hold sth in common** *They hold the property as tenants in common* (= they share it). **| in common with** *Britain, in common with* (= like) *many other industrialized countries, has experienced major changes over the last 100 years.*

3 **showing a lack of education**

VERBS **be, seem, sound** *I wish you wouldn't use that word?it sounds so common.*

ADV. **very | a bit, rather, slightly** *I don't like Sandra. She seems a bit common to me.*

commonplace *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | regard sth as** *Such actions were regarded as commonplace during the war.*

ADV. **very | almost | enough, fairly, quite, rather** *Her situation sounded commonplace enough.*

PREP. **among/amongst** *These ideas are commonplace among teenagers.*

commotion *noun*

ADJ. **dreadful, great, terrible | sudden**

VERB + COMMOTION **cause, make, set up** *The people upstairs were making a great commotion. The dogs set up a terrible commotion as we came near the house.* **| hear**

COMMOTION + VERB **break out | die down**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Lots of furniture had been knocked over in the commotion.* **| ~ about/over** *What's all the commotion about?*

commune *noun*

ADJ. **hippy**

VERB + COMMUNE **join** *He gave up his job in the city and joined a commune.* **| belong to | form, set up**

PREP. **in/on a/the ~** *She lives in a commune.*

communicate *verb*

ADV. **clearly, effectively, successfully, well | directly | easily | verbally** *By the age of two most children have begun to communicate verbally.* **| electronically**

PREP. **by** *We usually communicate by letter.* **| through** *We communicated through an interpreter.* **| to** *She is unable to communicate her ideas to other people.* **| with** *couples who communicate well with one another*

communication *noun*

1 **act of communicating**

ADJ. **effective, good** *Good communication is important for business.* | **poor** | **direct** | **open** | **two-way** | **interpersonal** | **regular** | **electronic, non-verbal, verbal, written** | **business**

VERB + COMMUNICATION **have** *I haven't had any communication with him for several years.* | **establish** | **facilitate, improve** | **prevent** *measures which prevented the prisoners' communication with the outside world*

COMMUNICATION + VERB **break down** *Communication between the two sides has broken down.*

COMMUNICATION + NOUN **skills** | **breakdown**

PREP. **in ~ with** *We are in regular communication with the kidnappers.* | **~ between** *to establish direct communication between the lookout towers* | **~ by** *communication by letter* | **~ with** *We need better communication with clients.*

PHRASES **a breakdown in communication(s), channels/lines of communication** *to keep open the channels of communication* | **a lack of communication, a means/method/system of communication** *Letters are their only means of communication.*

2 **communications: systems for sending information**

ADJ. **good** | **online** | **global, international** | **mass** | **radio, rail, road, telephone**

VERB + COMMUNICATION **have** | **cut off, disrupt**

COMMUNICATION + NOUN **centre, links, network, satellite, system, technology**

PREP. **~ between** *They tried to disrupt communications between the two headquarters.* | **~ with** *Paris has good rail communications with other major cities.*

3 **message**

ADJ. **formal, official**

VERB + COMMUNICATION **receive | send**

PREP. **~ about** *He received an official communication about the reorganization of the Ministry.* **| ~ from, ~ to** *a communication from the officer to the general*

communion *noun*

1 **Communion in church**

ADJ. **Holy | First**

VERB + COMMUNION **go to** *We went to Holy Communion in the cathedral.* **| administer, celebrate, give** *Communion was celebrated by the Reverend John Harris.* **| receive, take** *Most of the people present took Communion.*

COMMUNION + NOUN **service**

PREP. **at ~** *There were only half a dozen people at Communion.*

2 **sharing thoughts/feelings**

ADJ. **close | personal**

PREP. **in ~ with** *He lived in close communion with nature.* **| ~ with** *her personal communion with God*

communism *noun*

ADJ. **revolutionary | international**

VERB + COMMUNISM **embrace | overthrow, reject**

PREP. **under ~** *a book describing life under communism*

PHRASES **the collapse/fall of communism, the fight/struggle against communism, the rise/spread of communism**

communist *noun* **(**also **Communist)**

ADJ. **militant, revolutionary | hardline, old-style, orthodox | reform/ reformed | former** *The president of the new democracy is actually a former Communist.*

community *noun*

ADJ. **large, small | close, close-knit, tight-knit** *a close-knit fishing community* **| lively, thriving, vibrant | international, local | wider** *the concerns of the local and wider community* **| ethnic, immigrant, minority, religious | Asian, black, etc.** *the Asian community in Britain* **| Christian, Muslim, etc. | farming, mining, etc. | rural, village | academic, business, gay, scientific**

COMMUNITY + NOUN **care, centre, college, service, work | action, relations | group, leader | spirit**

PREP. **in/within a/the ~** *divisions within the scientific community*

PHRASES **the community as a whole/at large** *a cultural programme that should benefit the community at large* **| a member of the community, part of a community, a pillar of the community** (= a strong supporter of the community), **a sense of community** *There is a strong sense of community in this town.*

commute *verb*

ADV. **daily, every day**

PREP. **between** *He commuted daily between London and Surrey.* **| from, to** *She commutes from Peterborough to London every day.*

companion *noun*

ADJ. **agreeable, amusing, boon, charming, delightful, good, entertaining, pleasant, wonderful | close, constant, faithful, inseparable | life | female, male | canine, human | dinner, drinking, travelling, walking** *He was an entertaining travelling companion.*

PREP. **~ for/to** *She lived in the house as a companion to our grandmother.*

companionship *noun*

ADJ. **close | constant | female, male | human | intellectual**

VERB + COMPANIONSHIP **need | provide (sb with)** *A dog provides some companionship.* **| seek | enjoy**

PREP. **for ~** *She had only her cat for companionship.* **| ~ with** *She had never had any close companionship with another woman.*

company *noun*

1 **business organization**

ADJ. **big, large, major, medium-sized, small | start-up** *a major European company* | **associated, commercial, joint-stock, limited, private, public** *a public limited company* | **international, multi-national, national | trading** *an international trading company* | **bus, record, etc.** *a small insurance company*

QUANT. **group**

VERB + COMPANY **create, establish, form, found, set up, start (up) | manage, operate, run | acquire, buy, take over | dissolve | work for** *She's been working for the same company for 15 years.* | **join | leave, resign from**

COMPANY + VERB **make sth, produce sth** *The company produces cotton goods.* | **expand, grow | shrink | fail, go bankrupt, go bust, go into liquidation, go out of business, go to the wall** *(informal)*, **go under** *During the recession many small companies went out of business.*

COMPANY + NOUN **director, policy, profits | car**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He has shares in several companies.* | **within a/the ~** *the division of power within a company*

PHRASES **a director of a company** > Special page at BUSINESS

2 **group of actors/dancers, etc.**

ADJ. **large, small | touring | ballet, theatre, etc.** *a small touring theatre company*
> Note at ORGANIZATION(for verbs)

3 **being with sb else**

ADJ. **good, pleasant** *He's very good company.* | **poor**

VERB + COMPANY **have** *It's nice to have a bit of company for a change.* | **keep sb** *I'll stay and keep you company.* | **need, want | provide (sb with)** *A cat would provide* *her with some company.* **| seek | enjoy** *I always enjoy her company.*

PREP. **for ~** *I took my mother with me for company.* **| in sb's ~** *He's nervous in the company of his colleagues.*

PHRASES **have/request the pleasure of sb's company** *(formal)*, **like/prefer your own company** (= to like being alone)

4 group of people together

ADJ. **mixed** (= men and women) **| assembled** *He glanced round the assembled company.*

VERB + COMPANY **keep** (= to spend time with) *John's mother was worried about the company he kept.*

PREP. **in ~** *Those children don't know how to behave in company. That's not something to say in mixed company.*

PHRASES **get into/keep bad company** (= to be friends with people that others disapprove of), **present company excepted** (= used after being rude or critical about sb to say that the people you are talking to are not included in the criticism)

5 visitor or visitors

VERB + COMPANY **expect, have** *We're expecting company this afternoon.*

comparable *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **closely** *Its brain is closely comparable to the brain of a chimpanzee.* **| directly, exactly | almost | broadly, roughly | not strictly | not remotely** *No other country at that time had an organized public opinion remotely comparable to Britain's.* **| easily, readily**

PREP. **in** *The two machines are comparable in size.* **| to** *a job comparable to mine* **| with** *The earthquake was comparable with others in recent years.*

compare *verb*

ADV. **favourably, well** *The city compares favourably with other parts of Brazil.* **| unfavourably**

VERB + COMPARE **cannot, do not** *These mountains do not compare with* (= are not nearly as high, impressive, etc. as) *the Himalayas.*

PREP. **with** *Few things compare with* (= are as good as) *the joy of cycling on a bright, sunny spring morning.*

PHRASES **be nothing compared to sb/sth** *I've had some difficulties but they were nothing compared to yours* (= they were not nearly as bad as yours).

comparison *noun*

ADJ. **favourable, unfavourable | broad, crude, simple | close, detailed, direct | fair, good, meaningful, useful, valid | unfair**

VERB + COMPARISON **draw, make** *It's difficult to make a direct comparison?the two things are so different.* **| allow, enable, facilitate, invite** *The similarity between the two invites comparison.* **| bear, stand** *Our problems don't bear comparison with those elsewhere.*

PREP. **by ~ (with)** *Jane is still quite young, and Fiona seems old by comparison.* **| for ~** *Let's put them side by side for comparison.* **| in ~ to/with** *The glasses are small in comparison with the old ones.* **| ~ between** *a comparison between figures for last year and this year* **| ~ with** *a comparison with other schools*

PHRASES **a basis for comparison** *to provide a basis for comparison* **| a point of comparison**

compartment *noun*

1 **section of a railway carriage**

ADJ. **first-class, second-class | non-smoking, smoking | passenger, sleeping, luggage**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

2 **section of a container, etc.**

ADJ. **separate | secret | battery, freezer, glove, storage** *Your sunglasses are in the glove compartment.*

VERB + COMPARTMENT **be divided into** *The case is divided into four separate compartments.*

PREP. **in a/the ~**

compass *noun*

ADJ. **magnetic**

VERB + COMPASS **use | check**

COMPASS + VERB **show sth** *A compass shows you which direction is north.*

COMPASS + NOUN **needle | bearing, reading | direction, point | error**

PHRASES **a map and compass, the points of the compass** *The railway fanned out from Moscow to all points of the compass.*

compassion *noun*

ADJ. **deep, great | genuine**

VERB + COMPASSION **be filled with, feel, have** *I survived. Someone or something had had compassion on me.* **| show (sb) | lack**

PREP. **~ for** *He was filled with overwhelming love and compassion for his wife.* **| ~ towards** *I felt no compassion towards her.* **| with ~** *The old people are treated with great compassion.*

PHRASES **love and compassion**

compassionate *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, sound**

ADV. **deeply, very** *a deeply compassionate man*

compatible *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **highly, very | entirely, fully, perfectly, quite, totally, wholly** *three different, yet entirely compatible programs* **| directly | hardly | logically, sexually, technologically**

PREP. **with** *The theory does not seem compatible with his other ideas.*

compelling *adj.*

1 **holding your attention**

VERBS **be | become | find sth**

ADV. **very | utterly | oddly, strangely** *His eyes were strangely compelling.*

2 **strong/convincing**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, very | logically** *There is no logically compelling argument to support their claims.*

compensate *verb*

1 **remove/reduce the bad effect of sth**

ADV. **amply, fully | more than** *The advantages of the scheme more than compensate for the risks associated with it.* **| partially, partly**

PREP. **for**

2 **pay money for a loss/injury**

ADV. **adequately, properly | fully, in full** *People whose health has suffered will be compensated in full.* **| financially** *I expect to be compensated financially.*

PREP. **for** *The company will compensate you for the losses you have suffered.*

compensation *noun*

ADJ. **full | partial, small | adequate, appropriate, sufficient | financial, monetary**

QUANT. **amount**

VERB + COMPENSATION **award (sb), give (sb), grant (sb), offer (sb), pay (sb), provide (sb with) | accept, gain, get, obtain, receive** *She got some compensation for damages.* **| deny sb, refuse sb | claim, demand, fight for, seek | be eligible for, be entitled to**

COMPENSATION + VERB **be payable** *If the government is proved negligent, compensation will be payable.*

COMPENSATION + NOUN **claim | fund | order | payment | scheme**

PREP. **as ~ (for)** *She received £7,000 as compensation for her injuries.* **| in ~ (for)** *They will have to pay £5,000 in compensation.* **| ~ for** *The money was small compensation for unfair dismissal.* **| ~ from** *compensation from the government* **| ~ to** *compensation to Mrs Parker*

PHRASES **compensation in money**

compete *verb*

ADV. **effectively, successfully | directly** *Their products compete directly with ours.* **| internationally, nationally** *The price must be right in order to compete internationally.* **| fiercely** *The big firms are competing fiercely on price.*

VERB + COMPETE **can't/cannot** *Small independent bookshops can't compete with the large stores.*

PREP. **against** *He welcomed the chance to compete against professional athletes.* **| for** *Animals in the wild have to compete for food.* **| in** *He regularly competes in road races.* **| with** *We have to compete with several larger companies.*

competence *noun*

1 **ability to do sth well**

ADJ. **great | basic | administrative, managerial, professional, social, technical | communicative, language, linguistic, reading**

VERB + COMPETENCE **have | demonstrate, display, prove, show** *She shows a high level of technical competence.* **| lack | achieve, acquire, develop, gain** *He gradually developed the competence to deal with the more difficult cases.* **| challenge, question**

PREP. **beyond sb's ~** *I'm afraid the work is beyond his competence.* **| within sb's ~** *This should be well within your competence.* **| ~ as** *Students had questioned her competence as a teacher.* **| ~ for** *He displayed great competence for the job.* **| ~ in** *competence in English*

PHRASES **a level/standard of competence**

2 **power to deal with sth**

ADJ. **formal | exclusive**

VERB + COMPETENCE **have** *The commission has no formal competence in cultural matters.*

PREP. **outside sb/sth's ~** *matters that fall outside the court's competence* **| within sb/sth's ~** *The decisions come within the competence of the council.*

PHRASES **an area of competence**

competent *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become | make sb** *A year of college had made her more socially competent.* **| consider sb, regard sb as** *He was not considered competent to teach seven-year-olds.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a small number of highly competent officials* **| fully, perfectly | fairly, moderately, quite, reasonably | mentally** *She was mentally competent and she had the capacity to decide for herself.* **| socially, technically**

PREP. **in** *She is competent in five languages.*

competition *noun*

1 **event in which people try to win sth**

ADJ. **international, national | knock-out | dancing, piano, sporting, etc.**

VERB + COMPETITION **win** *She won an international dancing competition.* **| lose | have, hold, stage** *We're going to have a competition to see who can swim the furthest.* **| enter, take part in | withdraw from**

COMPETITION + VERB **take place | be open to sb** *The competition is open to all readers of the magazine*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I won the car in a competition.* **| ~ between** *a competition between the best teams in the country* **| ~ for** *a competition for the best chef*

2 **trying to achieve the same thing/gain an advantage**

ADJ. **cut-throat, fierce, intense, keen, serious, severe, stiff, strong, tough** *intense competition for the contract* **| direct** *Public transport is run in direct competition with the private sector.* **| fair, free, healthy, open | domestic | foreign, global, international, overseas | economic**

VERB + COMPETITION **be up against, face | go into** *to go into competition with British Telecom* **| beat off, fight off** *to fight off competition from foreign firms*

PREP. **against ~** *They won the order against fierce international competition.* **| in ~ with** *We are in competition with some very large companies.* **| in the face of ~** *The gas companies are having to lay off staff in the face of stiff competition from oil.* **| ~ among/between** *There is a lot of competition between rival airlines.* **| ~ for, ~ from** *We face strong competition from other countries.*

competitive *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain, stay | make sth** *skills training to make our industries more competitive in world markets* **| keep sth**

ADV. **extremely, fiercely, highly, intensely, very** *a fiercely competitive sport highly competitive prices a very competitive person* **| fairly, quite, rather**

PREP. **with** *Investment in research is needed to keep Britain competitive with countries like Japan.*

competitor *noun*

1 **in business**

ADJ. **biggest, chief, leading, main, major | fierce, serious, strong** *The company has no serious competitors in this area.* **| closest, direct, nearest | domestic, local | foreign, international, overseas**

PREP. **~ for** *fierce competitors for the dominant position in the Asian market*

2 **person who takes part in a competition**

ADJ. **strong, top** *She is one of the sport's top competitors.* **| successful**

COMPETITOR + VERB **enter sth** *Ten competitors entered the race.*

complacent *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound | become, get, grow**

ADV. **extremely, remarkably, very | far from** *Teachers are far from complacent about this problem.* **| rather, somewhat | alarmingly, dangerously** *This view seems alarmingly complacent.*

PREP. **about** *It is vital that we do not get complacent about this disease.*

complain *verb*

ADV. **bitterly** *She complained bitterly about the lack of help she received.* **| loudly | constantly, repeatedly**

VERB + COMPLAIN **can't/couldn't, can/could hardly** *It was entirely my own idea, so I can hardly complain.* **| have cause to, have reason to, have a right to** *He really has no right to complain.* **| begin to, start to**

PREP. **about** *All the guests complained about the noise.* **| at** *She complained at the unfairness of it all.* **| to** *I'm going to complain to the council about this!*

complaint *noun*

1 **act of complaining**

ADJ. **bitter, serious | common, familiar, frequent | formal, official | consumer, customer**

VERB + COMPLAINT **have** *I have a complaint about the food.* | **bring, file, lodge, make, register, voice** *He brought a complaint against his former manager. They filed a complaint with the European Commission.* | **get, have, receive** *We have had some serious complaints from parents.* | **deal with, handle, hear, investigate, respond to** *The tribunal heard complaints against the director.* | **resolve | reject**

COMPLAINT + VERB **arise** *complaints arising from late payment* | **concern sth, relate to sth**

COMPLAINT + NOUN **complaints procedure**

PREP. **~ about** *a complaint about working conditions* | **~ against** *a complaint against the police* | **~ from** *a complaint from the neighbours* | **~ of** *a complaint of unfair dismissal* | **~ to** *to make a complaint to the authorities*

PHRASES **cause/grounds for complaint** *The way I was treated gave me no cause for complaint.* | **a chorus of complaint, a letter of complaint, a matter of complaint**

2 **illness**

ADJ. **mild, minor | chronic | common** *Not being able to sleep at night is a very common complaint.* | **back, chest, etc. | medical**

VERB + COMPLAINT **have, suffer from** *He has a minor skin complaint.*

complement *noun*

1 **sth that goes well with sth else**

ADJ. **ideal, natural, necessary, perfect**

PREP. **~ to** *This wine is the perfect complement to fish.*

2 **total number that makes a group complete**

ADJ. **full | large | normal**

VERB + COMPLEMENT **take** *We've taken our full complement of trainees this year.*

PREP. **~ of**

complement *verb*

ADV. **well | perfectly** *The flavours in the dish complement each other perfectly.*

complementary *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **essentially | mutually** *These two aims are not always mutually complementary: at times they conflict.*

PREP. **to** *We provide a service that is essentially complementary to that of the banks.*

complete *adj.*

1 **having/including all the parts**

VERBS **be, seem | survive** *The book survives complete only in the second edition of 1533.* **| make sth** *You've made my life complete.*

ADV. **remarkably, unusually** *a remarkably complete account of the negotiations* **| far from, less than, not quite | almost, nearly, virtually | fairly, reasonably**

2 **finished**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **almost, nearly, substantially, virtually** *The job is almost complete.* **| far from | not yet**

complete *verb*

1 **finish sth**

ADV. **on schedule, on time | successfully** *The project has now been successfully completed.*

2 **write information**

ADV. **accurately, correctly** *Has the form been correctly completed?*

completion *noun*

ADJ. **rapid, speedy | early | satisfactory, successful**

VERB + COMPLETION **near, reach** *The renovation of the theatre is now nearing completion.* **| bring sth to** *to bring the project to completion* **| delay | be due for** *The bridge is due for completion in May.*

COMPLETION + NOUN **date**

PREP. **after/following ~** *Payment will be made following successful completion of the job.* **| before/prior to ~** *The floorboards were replaced prior to completion of the sale.* **| near ~** *The book is near completion.* **| pending ~** *Development of the site has been delayed pending completion of the sewerage scheme.* **| on/upon ~ of** *The committee will report back to us on completion of the study.*

PHRASES **the date of completion**

complex *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become**

ADV. **enormously, especially, exceedingly, exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, highly, hugely, immensely, incredibly, infinitely, particularly, very** *This is a highly complex matter.* **| increasingly | fairly, quite, rather, relatively, somewhat | surprisingly | unnecessarily | technically** *technically complex surgery*

complex *noun*

1 **set of buildings**

ADJ. **huge, large, vast | conference, entertainment, factory, holiday, hospital, housing, industrial, leisure, museum, office, shopping, sports**

VERB + COMPLEX **build**

2 **mental/emotional problem**

ADJ. **real, terrible | inferiority, superiority | castration, guilt, Oedipus, persecution**

VERB + COMPLEX **have, suffer from | develop, get** *Don't keep on at him about his handwriting or he'll get a complex.* **| give sb**

PREP. **~ about** *She has a complex about her big ears.*

complexion *noun*

1 **colour/quality of the skin/face**

ADJ. **clear, flawless, fresh, glowing, healthy, lovely, nice, perfect | bad, blotchy, dull, pallid, pasty, sallow | ageing | creamy, fair, milky, pale | dark, olive, swarthy, tanned | florid, pink, rosy, ruddy** *a young girl with a rosy complexion* **| yellow | pitted | smooth**

VERB + COMPLEXION **have | give sb** *Years of heavy drinking had given Alison a florid complexion.*

2 **general nature/character of sth**

ADJ. **serious | different, new | political, social** *a change in the political complexion of the council*

VERB + COMPLEXION **put, take on** *What you have told us puts quite a different complexion on the situation. The joke took on a rather serious complexion when the police became involved.*

complexity *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, extraordinary, extreme, great, immense | full, sheer** *Only now did he understand the full complexity of the problem.* **| growing, increasing | bewildering | unnecessary | added | economic, linguistic, structural, technical** *the linguistic complexity of Siberia*

QUANT. **degree, level**

VERB + COMPLEXITY **convey, highlight, illustrate, reveal** *It is difficult to convey the sheer complexity of the situation.* **| grasp, understand**

COMPLEXITY + VERB **arise (from sth)**

PREP. **of … ~** *a pay system of unnecessary complexity*

complicate *verb*

ADV. **enormously, greatly** *These events will greatly complicate the situation.* **| further**

PHRASES **be complicated by the fact that** *The issue is complicated by the fact that a vital document is missing.*

complicated *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** *It all sounds very complicated.* **| become, get** *This is where the story gets complicated.*

ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, fiendishly, highly, immensely, incredibly, particularly, terribly, very | increasingly | a bit, fairly, a little, quite, rather, somewhat | unnecessarily**

complication *noun*

1 **problem**

ADJ. **major | added, additional, further | undue, unnecessary | political**

VERB + COMPLICATION **add, cause** *The presence of an armed gang added a major complication.* **| avoid** *We always try to avoid any unnecessary complications.*

COMPLICATION + VERB **arise, occur** *Further complications arose when the newspapers published an interview with the prisoner's family.*

2 **medical**

ADJ. **acute, dangerous, serious, severe | chronic, long-term | minor | common | rare | local | potential | birth, diabetic, medical, post-operative**

VERB + COMPLICATION **develop, have, suffer** *She developed complications two weeks after the treatment.* **| die from/of | avoid, prevent**

COMPLICATION + VERB **develop, occur, arise** *Complications develop if the drug is not used properly.* **| result from sth**

PHRASES **a risk of complications** *The treatment carries a high risk of complications.*

PREP. **~ with** *complications with her pregnancy.*

complicity *noun*

ADJ. **alleged, apparent** *her alleged complicity in the bombing* **| active | government, police**

PREP. **~ between** *the complicity between the army and drug smugglers* **| ~ in** *her complicity in a plot to kill the president* **| ~ with** *She did not suspect him of complicity with the authorities.*

PHRASES **an act of complicity** > Note at CRIME(for verbs)

compliment *noun*

1 expression of praise

ADJ. **great, higher/highest, tremendous** *To listen to someone is the greatest compliment you can pay.* **| pretty | unexpected | backhanded, double-edged, dubious** *In a backhanded compliment she said he looked very good for his age.*

VERB + COMPLIMENT **pay sb | mean sth as** *Please don't misunderstand me?I meant it as a compliment.* **| get, receive | accept, acknowledge** *She acknowledged their compliments with a big smile.* **| regard sth as, take sth as** *I'll take that as a compliment.* **| fish for** *She's always fishing for compliments about her looks.* **| repay, return** *He returned her compliment by saying how well she looked.*

PREP. **~ on** *She received several compliments on her speech.* **| ~ to** *If Mark's wearing a suit, that'll be a compliment to you!*

2 your compliments: good wishes

VERB + COMPLIMENT **give sb, present (sb with), send sb** *Please give my compliments to your wife.*

COMPLIMENT + NOUN **slip** *The only enclosure was a formal compliments slip from the accounts department.*

PREP. **with sb's ~** (= free) *All guests will receive a bottle of champagne with our compliments.* **| ~ to** *my compliments to the chef* (= to show that you like a particular dish)

complimentary *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *She made some highly complimentary remarks about their school.* **| quite**

PREP. **about**

comply *verb*

ADV. **fully, strictly**

VERB + COMPLY **fail to, refuse to** *When requested to leave, they refused to comply.*

PREP. **with** *Candidates must comply strictly with these instructions.*

component *noun*

ADJ. **basic, central, core, critical, crucial, essential, fundamental, important, integral, key, main, major, necessary, principal, significant, vital | minor | common** *The researchers discovered a common component in all types of the organism.* **| standard** *Our software is becoming a standard component of many computer systems.* **| individual, separate, simple** *Individual components for the car can be very expensive.* **| chemical, genetic | electrical, electronic | aircraft, engine, etc. | course**

COMPONENT + NOUN **failure** *Component failure was the cause of the accident.* **| manufacturer, supplier**

PREP. **~ in** *a crucial component in our success.*

compose *verb*

ADV. **specially** *music specially composed for the occasion*

composed *adj.*

1 **composed of made up of sth**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **entirely, exclusively, solely, wholly** *The committee was composed entirely of specialists.* | **chiefly, largely, mainly, mostly, overwhelmingly, predominantly, primarily** *Bones are largely composed of calcium.*

2 **in control of your feelings**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem**

ADV. **extremely, remarkably, very** | **perfectly** *He was pale but perfectly composed.* | **fairly, quite** | **outwardly**

composer *noun*

ADJ. **famous, great | minor | established, leading, successful | prolific** *Verdi was a prolific composer of operas.* **| classical | avant-garde, modern | contemporary, living | opera/operatic**

COMPOSER + VERB **compose sth, write sth** > Note at JOB

composition *noun*

1 parts that form sth

ADJ. **overall** *The overall composition of the Senate was Democrats 57 and Republicans 43.* | **internal** *the character of the state and its internal composition* | **exact, precise** | **changing** *the changing composition of the labour force* | **age, class, demographic, ethnic, family, gender, household, population, racial, social** *the ethnic composition of the region* | **species** | **chemical, mineralogical**

VERB + COMPOSITION **determine** *elections to determine the composition of the assembly*

COMPOSITION + VERB **change, differ** *Has household composition changed in the last decade?*

PHRASES **a change in the composition of sth**

2 piece of music

ADJ. **classical, instrumental, musical** | **original** *an original composition by a popular young composer*

VERB + COMPOSITION **write** | **perform, play**

PREP. **~ by** *a composition by John Cage* | **~ for** *a composition for violin and piano*

3 art of writing music

ADJ. **classical, free, instrumental, musical**

PHRASES **a method of composition**

VERB + COMPOSITION **study**

4 piece of writing

ADJ. **literary, original, prose**

VERB + COMPOSITION **do, write** *In the exam, you have to do a composition.*

PREP. **~ on** *a composition on the effects of crime*

5 **art of writing**

ADJ. **literary, metrical, poetic, prose, written**

PHRASES **a method of composition**

6 **work of art**

ADJ. **abstract, figure, formal, pictorial | original | perfect**

PREP. **~ by** *a composition by the sculptor, Bernt Notke*

composure *noun*

ADJ. **cool, perfect**

VERB + COMPOSURE **keep, maintain | lose** *She totally lost her composure and began shouting.* **| recover, regain | ruffle** *Nothing could ruffle his composure.*

PREP. **with ~** *She answered with perfect composure.*

compound *noun*

1 **chemical**

ADJ. **chemical** *Scientists have produced a new chemical compound.* | **inorganic, organic** | **synthetic** | **molecular, simple** *Dalton believed that the simplest compound of two elements must have one atom of each.* | **active, dangerous, potent, toxic, volatile** | **carbon, iron, etc.**

VERB + COMPOUND **form, produce** *At the right temperature, the chemicals will form a compound.*

COMPOUND + VERB **contain sth** | **be derived from sth, derive from sth, be found in sth, occur** *compounds derived from rainforest plants*

PREP. **~ of** *a compound of oxygen and hydrogen*

2 **area of land and buildings**

ADJ. **palace, prison, military** | **walled, secure** *Police are investigating a raid on a secure compound.*

PREP. **in/inside a/the ~** *life inside the prison compound*

comprehend *verb*

ADV. **fully**

VERB + COMPREHEND **be able/unable to | cannot, fail to** *She failed to comprehend the seriousness of the situation.* **| be difficult to, be impossible to** *It is difficult to comprehend how far away the stars are.*

comprehensible *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | make sth** *We changed the wording of the text to make it more comprehensible.* **| easily, readily** *The instructions should be easily comprehensible to parents.* **| entirely, fully, perfectly | barely** *His French was barely comprehensible.*

PREP. **to** *The system is perfectly comprehensible to most people.*

comprehension *noun*

1 **understanding**

VERB + COMPREHENSION **have** *She has no comprehension of the seriousness of the situation.* | **check** *There are exercises for checking comprehension.*

PREP. **beyond (your) ~** *Why he can't do it himself is beyond my comprehension.* | **without ~**

PHRASES **a lack of comprehension** *He showed a total lack of comprehension.*

2 **language exercise**

ADJ. **listening, reading**

VERB + COMPREHENSION **do** *We did a listening comprehension.*

comprehensive *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, very | fully, totally** *fully comprehensive insurance* **| increasingly | fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably** *The list is fairly comprehensive.* **| truly**

compromise *noun*

ADJ. **acceptable, fair, good, happy, honourable, possible, pragmatic, reasonable, sensible, suitable | ideal | muddled, uneasy, unsatisfactory** *After months of negotiations, they have reached an uneasy compromise.* **| inevitable, necessary**

VERB + COMPROMISE **agree on, arrive at, come to, find, make, reach, work out** *I'm not making any more compromises. They're still trying to work out an acceptable compromise.* **| look for, seek** *It is best to try to seek a compromise rather than a perfect solution.* **| offer, suggest** *After much discussion, she offered a compromise.* **| accept | reject**

COMPROMISE + NOUN **agreement, deal, formula, proposal, resolution, solution | candidate** *He might be an attractive compromise candidate if both sides' first choices are rejected.*

PREP. **~ between** *It was a fair compromise between the two sides.* **| ~ on/over** *They came to a compromise over the exact amount to be paid.* **| ~ with** *There could be no compromise with the nationalists.* > Special page at MEETING

compromise *verb*

1 in order to reach agreement

VERB + COMPROMISE **be prepared to, be ready to | refuse to** *He wanted his own way and refused to compromise.*

PREP. **on** *Unions and management seem ready to compromise on the level of the pay increase.* **| with** *They debated whether to compromise with the opposition parties.*

2 damage/put in danger

ADV. **seriously** *The affair seriously compromised the party's prospects of electoral success.*

VERB + COMPROMISE **be prepared to, be ready to | refuse to**

PREP. **on** *We are not prepared to compromise on safety standards.*

compulsion *noun*

ADJ. **strange | inner**

QUANT. **element** *There is an element of compulsion in the new scheme for the unemployed.*

VERB + COMPULSION **feel, have** *He felt an inner compulsion to write.*

PREP. **under ~** *You're under no compulsion to take part.*

computer *noun*

ADJ. **powerful | desktop, home, laptop, mainframe, notebook, personal, portable** *the market for home computers* **| analogue, digital, parallel**

VERB + COMPUTER **run, use | switch on | switch off | log onto | log off | boot up, start up | shut down | reboot, restart | program | link, network** *Computers can be networked using modems and telephone lines.* **| interface** *The software allows you to interface your computer and an OCR reader.* **| hold sth on, store sth on** *The data is all held on computer.*

COMPUTER + VERB **run | hold sth, store sth** *The computer stores data in a buffer until the printer can accept it.* **| crash | be down/up** *The computers are all down* (= not functioning) *at the moment.*

COMPUTER + NOUN **network, program, system | equipment, hardware, software | language | science, technology | keyboard, screen, terminal, etc. | game, graphics, model** *A computer model is used to predict forces affecting the aircraft in flight.* **| expert, hacker, programmer, user | company, industry, manufacturer | time** *Such a large sorting operation can take up a lot of computer time.*

PREP. **on (a/the) ~** *It's all stored on the computer.*

computing *noun*

COMPUTING + NOUN **skills**

PREP. **in ~** *He works in computing* > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

con *noun*

1 **(***also* **con trick) trick**

ADJ. **big** *The scheme was all a big con.*

CON + NOUN **artist, man**

2 **(usually the cons) disadvantage**

VERB + CON **consider, discuss, weigh up** *Before making a decision, you need to weigh up the pros and cons of the situation.*

PHRASES **the pros and cons**

conceal *verb*

ADV. **completely | partially, partly | barely, scarcely** *He waited with barely concealed impatience.* **| carefully, cleverly, cunningly | dishonestly | effectively, successfully**

VERB + CONCEAL **be able/unable to** *She was unable to conceal her surprise.* **| try to | manage to**

PREP. **from** *He concealed the truth from her.*

concede *verb*

ADV. **eventually, finally | readily** *She readily concedes that there is much work still to be done.* **| grudgingly, reluctantly** *He reluctantly conceded that he was not fit enough to play in the match.*

VERB + CONCEDE **be forced to | be prepared to, be willing to** *He was not prepared to concede that he had acted illegally.* **| be reluctant to, be unwilling to | refuse to**

PREP. **to** *The firm should concede a significant salary increase to its employees.*

conceivable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **entirely, perfectly, quite** *It's quite conceivable that she hasn't heard the news yet.* **| just** *I suppose it's just conceivable that we've made a mistake.* **| barely, scarcely**

PHRASES **every conceivable sth** *We had to draw up plans for every conceivable emergency.*

conceive *verb*

1 think of/imagine

ADV. **brilliantly, carefully** *The plan was brilliantly conceived.* | **poorly** | **broadly** *The course is very broadly conceived* (= it covers a wide range of topics). | **narrowly** | **originally** *The dam project was originally conceived in 1977.*

VERB + CONCEIVE **can't/cannot** *I cannot conceive why you paid out so much money.* | **be difficult to, be impossible to** *It is difficult to conceive of a society without money.* | **be easy to, be possible to**

PREP. **of** *We conceive of ourselves as individuals.*

2 become pregnant

ADV. **naturally** *She was unable to conceive a child naturally and was offered fertility treatment.*

VERB + CONCEIVE **be able/unable to**

concentrate *verb*

ADV. **fiercely, hard, intently** *She was sitting at her desk concentrating hard.* **| fully, properly | mainly, predominantly, primarily | particularly | entirely, exclusively, purely, solely**

VERB + CONCENTRATE **be unable to, can't, couldn't** *I tried to work but I found I couldn't concentrate.* **| be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to | tend to** *UK banks tend to concentrate on short-term lending.* **| try to**

PREP. **on/upon** *He concentrated mainly on the flying and spoke very little.*

concentrated *adj.*

1 **of your attention**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **totally** *Kate sat up fully, her attention now totally concentrated.*

2 **of a substance**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly, very** *The liquid is found in a highly concentrated form.*

3 **found in one place**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **heavily, highly, particularly, strongly, very | increasingly | largely, mainly, mostly, overwhelmingly, primarily | disproportionately** *These jobs are disproportionately concentrated in the service sector.* **| geographically** *The immigrant community is strongly concentrated geographically.*

PREP. **at, in** *Most of the country's industry is concentrated in the north.* **| within** *Childbearing is concentrated within the first decade of married life.*

concentration *noun*

1 **giving all your attention/effort to sth**

ADJ. **deep, great, intense | total** *a look of total concentration on her face* **| poor | exclusive**

VERB + CONCENTRATION **demand, require** *The game requires great concentration.* **| lose | break, disturb** *Don's voice from outside broke my concentration.*

CONCENTRATION + NOUN **span**

PREP. **~ on** *his concentration on his writing*

PHRASES **a lack of concentration, a lapse in/of concentration** *One momentary lapse in concentration could prove fatal.* **| powers of concentration** *She has great powers of concentration for a child her age.*

2 **large number/amount of sth in one place**

ADJ. **great, heavy, high, large** *The greatest concentration of traffic is in the city centre.* **| low | geographical**

CONCENTRATION + VERB **increase, rise** *The concentration of nitrates in the drinking water has risen in recent years.* **| decrease, fall**

concept *noun*

ADJ. **basic, simple | broad, general, overall, wider** *'Mental handicap' should be replaced with the broader concept of 'learning difficulties'.* **| entire, whole** *The whole concept of responsibility was alien to him.* **| central, core, essential, fundamental, important, key | clear, precise | ambiguous, elusive, nebulous, vague** *The concept of 'adequate medical care' is too vague.* **| complex, difficult, sophisticated | abstract, intellectual, theoretical | alien, bizarre | underlying | useful | modern, new, novel | old-fashioned, traditional | business, design, economic, historical, legal, mathematical, political, psychological, religious, scientific**

VERB + CONCEPT **have** *Teachers should have a clear concept of what a multiracial society is.* **| grasp, understand** *She finds it difficult to grasp abstract concepts.* **| define, formulate, frame** *the need to create new words to frame new concepts* **| introduce | develop**

PREP. **~ of** *He formulated the concept of imaginary time.*

conception *noun*

1 **idea/understanding**

ADJ. **clear, distinct** *We now have a clearer conception of the problem.* **| broad, general | narrow | bold, grand | modern | traditional | popular | initial, original**

VERB + CONCEPTION **have**

PREP. **in ~** *His work is strikingly fresh in conception.*

PHRASES **have no conception of sth** *You have no conception of what her life is like.*

2 **becoming/making sb pregnant**

VERB + CONCEPTION **prevent**

PREP. **at ~** *Sex identity is fixed at conception.*

PHRASES **the moment of conception**

concern *noun*

1 **feeling of worry**

ADJ. **considerable, deep, grave, great, major, serious | growing, mounting | common, widespread | national, public** *public concern about increased taxes*

VERB + CONCERN **feel** *He felt some concern for her safety.* **| express, show, voice | cause** *The lack of firefighting equipment has caused concern.*

PREP. **in sb's ~** *She forgot her own worries in her concern for him.* **| out of ~ | ~ about/over** *She expressed her deep concern about conditions at the factory.* **| ~ for** *Out of concern for her health, we suggested she take a week off work.*

PHRASES **be of (no) concern to sb** *Increased use of drugs is of great concern to parents.* **| (a) cause for concern** *The president's health is giving serious cause for concern.* **| a lack of concern** *I was surprised by her lack of concern.* **| a matter of concern** *Stress at work is a matter of concern to staff and management.*

2 **sth that worries/affects you**

ADJ. **chief, main, major, overriding, paramount, primary** *What are your main concerns as a writer?* **| common** *a common concern for new parents*

PHRASES **be none of sb's concern** *How much we paid is none of your concern.*

concern *verb*

1 **affect/involve**

ADV. **directly**

PREP. **in** *Everyone who was directly concerned in* (= had some responsibility for) *the incident has now resigned.*

2 **worry sb**

ADV. **a lot, really** *It really concerns me that he doesn't eat properly.* **| slightly**

concerned *adj.*

1 **worried about sth**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow | remain**

ADV. **deeply, especially, extremely, genuinely, greatly, particularly, really, seriously, very | increasingly | a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | (not) unduly** *She was not unduly concerned by the prospect of managing on her own.* **| naturally | rightly | simply**

PREP. **about/at/by/over** *Doctors are concerned at the prospect of heart patients having to wait up to a year for surgery.* **| for** *We are now deeply concerned for his safety.*

2 **interested in sth**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **especially, particularly, specifically | entirely, exclusively, solely | centrally, chiefly, essentially, largely, mainly, mostly, predominantly, primarily, principally** *Mathematics is concerned essentially with understanding abstract concepts.* **| closely, directly, intimately**

PREP. **with** *Social anthropology is centrally concerned with the diversity of culture.*

concert *noun*

ADJ. **big | sell-out | evening, lunchtime | opening | closing, farewell, final** *He will be giving his farewell concert as Music Director of the Ulster Orchestra. The orchestra performs its final concert of the season tomorrow.* **| live, public | open-air, promenade | carol, classical, pop, rock | brass band, choral, orchestral, symphony | gala, subscription** *The Queen attended a gala concert at the Royal Festival Hall.* **| benefit, charity | tribute**

QUANT. **series**

VERB + CONCERT **attend, go to | give, perform (in), play (in) | have, hold, present, put on, stage** *The band is putting on its biggest concert of the year.* **| organize**

CONCERT + NOUN **hall, platform, room, venue | performance, programme | artist, pianist | series, tour**

PREP. **at a/the ~ | ~ of** *a concert of military music* **| ~ for/in aid of** *organizing a concert for charity*

concerto *noun*

ADJ. **piano, violin, etc. | D major, B minor, etc.**

VERB + CONCERTO **compose, write | perform, play | conduct | record**

PREP. **~ for** *a concerto for clarinet and orchestra* > Special page at MUSIC

concession *noun*

1 **sth you agree to in order to end an argument**

ADJ. **important, key, major, significant, substantial | limited, minor, small | special**

VERB + CONCESSION **grant (sb/sth), make, offer (sb/sth) | get, obtain, win**

PREP. **~ on** *The pressure group has won a number of concessions on environmental policy.* **| ~ to** *The firm will be forced to make concessions to the union.*

PHRASES **make no concessions to sb/sth** *They made no concessions to his disability.*

2 **special right to do sth**

ADJ. **trade**

VERB + CONCESSION **grant (sb/sth) | obtain, secure, win** *The company has just won a mining concession in the north of the country.*

3 **lower charge for certain groups of people**

ADJ. **tax, travel**

CONCESSION + VERB **be available to** *travel concessions available to older people*

conclusion *noun*

1 **opinion reached after considering the facts**

ADJ. **correct | logical, reasonable, valid | inescapable, inevitable, obvious | erroneous, false, wrong | main | hasty**

VERB + CONCLUSION **arrive at, come to, draw, reach** *I can't draw any conclusions from what she said.* **| jump to, leap to** *We don't want to jump to the wrong conclusion. Don't go jumping to conclusions before you know the facts.* **| lead to, point to** *It all points to the conclusion that nobody knew what was going on.*

2 **ending of sth**

ADJ. **satisfactory, successful | foregone** *The result of the match was a foregone conclusion.* **| hasty**

VERB + CONCLUSION **bring about, bring sth to** *The meeting was brought to a hasty conclusion.* **| come to**

PREP. **in ~** *In conclusion, I would like to thank you all for your hard work.* > Special page at MEETING

conclusive *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem**

ADV. **absolutely | fairly, pretty** *They produced some fairly conclusive evidence.* **| by no means, far from, hardly, not very** *The argument was far from conclusive.*

concrete *noun*

ADJ. **solid | bare** *a floor made of bare concrete* **| wet | pre-cast, ready-mix/ready-mixed, reinforced**

QUANT. **layer, slab**

VERB + CONCRETE **mix | lay, pour | be made from/(out) of | set sth in** *The pathway is formed from large pebbles set in concrete. (figurative) I do not regard the constitution of the United Kingdom as set in concrete.*

CONCRETE + VERB **set** *Before the concrete sets the surface can be given a final smoothing over.*

concur *verb*

ADV. **strongly** *I strongly concur with that idea.* **| entirely, fully**

PREP. **in, with** *Historians have concurred with each other in this view.*

concussion *noun*

ADJ. **bad | mild, minor, slight**

VERB + CONCUSSION **have, suffer**

PREP. **with ~** *He was carried off the field with slight concussion.*

condemn *verb*

ADV. **fiercely, roundly, strongly, vehemently, vigorously, vociferously | unequivocally, utterly | unanimously, universally | openly, publicly** *She publicly condemned the opposition leader.*

PREP. **for** *He was roundly condemned for his mistake.*

PHRASES **be widely condemned** *The action has been widely condemned by human rights groups.*

condemnation *noun*

ADJ. **utter, wholesale | firm, severe, strong | universal, widespread | official, public** *There's been no official condemnation of the bombing.*

VERB + CONDEMNATION **express, issue** *I can only express my strong condemnation of this dreadful behaviour. The United Nations issued a condemnation of the regime.* **| draw** *The violence has drawn firm condemnation from all the main political leaders.*

CONDEMNATION + VERB **come from sb/sth** *Condemnation of this policy has come from all political parties.*

condition *noun*

1 **state of sth**

ADJ. **excellent, good, immaculate, mint, peak, perfect, pristine | fair, reasonable | bad, poor | original** *The clock was restored to its original condition.* **| physical**

PREP. **in … ~** *The car is still in excellent condition.*

2 **sb's state of health**

ADJ. **critical, serious | stable** *Doctors say his condition is now stable.* **| mental, physical** *There has been a serious deterioration in her mental condition.*

CONDITION + VERB **get better, improve** *Without this treatment, her condition won't improve.* **| deteriorate, get worse**

PREP. **in a … ~** *He is still in a critical condition in the local hospital.* **| out of ~** *I haven't been excercising much recently, so I'm a bit out of condition.*

PHRASES **be in no condition to do sth** *You're in no condition to tackle the stairs.*

3 **illness**

ADJ. **medical | serious | chronic | incurable | rare | heart, skin, etc. | mental** *She was unable to give informed consent because of a mental condition.*

VERB + CONDITION **have, suffer from** *He has a rare skin condition.* **| be born with** *All three babies were born with an incurable heart condition.*

4 **conditions: situation/circumstances**

ADJ. **favourable, good, ideal, optimum** *Conditions are very favourable for starting a business.* **| adverse, appalling, awful, difficult, dreadful, freak** (only used about the weather), **harsh, poor, severe, terrible, treacherous** *adverse conditions for driving freak weather conditions* **| normal, prevailing | controlled** *The experiment is conducted under strictly controlled conditions.* **| experimental,**

laboratory | driving, housing, living, operating, working *The working conditions in the factory are dreadful.* **| economic, market, political, social | climatic, environmental, physical, soil, weather**

VERB + CONDITION **live in, work in/under** *An enormous number of people live in conditions of severe poverty.*

CONDITION + VERB **exist, prevail** *As long as these weather conditions prevail, we are unable to rescue the climbers.* **| change | improve | deteriorate**

PREP. **in ~** *in normal flight operating conditions* **| under ~** *The samples are heated under experimental conditions.*

5 **rule**

ADJ. **strict | special**

VERB + CONDITION **attach, impose, lay down, set out** *the conditions attached to the grant of a residential licence The United Nations has imposed strict conditions on the ceasefire.* **| accept, agree to** *They would not agree to our conditions.* **| abide by, comply with, fulfil, meet, observe, satisfy** *To get a basic pension you must satisfy two conditions: …* **| be subject to** *The bar was licensed subject to the condition that no children under 15 be admitted.* **| be in breach of** *He denied being in breach of bail conditions.*

CONDITION + VERB **apply** *Special conditions apply to the use of the library's rare books.*

PREP. **on ~ that** *They agreed to lend us the car on condition that* (= only if) *we returned it before the weekend.* **| on … ~** *I'll agree to the scheme on one condition: my name doesn't get mentioned to the press.* **| under the ~s of** *Under the conditions of the agreement, all foreign troops will leave by May.*

PHRASES **a breach of a condition, conditions of employment/sale, terms and conditions** *the terms and conditions of the contract*

6 **necessary situation**

ADJ. **necessary, sufficient** *a necessary and sufficient condition for the eradication of unemployment*

PREP. **~ for**

7 state of group

ADJ. human *Work is basic to the human condition* (= the fact of being alive).

VERB + CONDITION improve *aiming to improve the condition of the urban poor*

condolences *noun*

ADJ. **heartfelt, sincere**

VERB + CONDOLENCES **convey, express, extend, offer (sb), send (sb)** *We would like to take this opportunity to convey our heartfelt condolences to the families of the victims.* **| accept** *Please accept our sincere condolences.*

condom *noun*

QUANT. **packet**

VERB + CONDOM **unroll | put on, use, wear**

condone *verb*

ADV. **tacitly**

VERB + CONDONE **cannot/could not** *We cannot condone violence of any sort.*

conducive *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly, very** *Daylight is highly conducive to good plant growth.* **| hardly** *The noise was hardly conducive to a good night's sleep.*

PREP. **to** *an environment conducive to learning*

conduct *noun*

1 **behaviour**

ADJ. **good** *The prisoner was released early for good conduct.* | **discreditable, disgraceful, immoral, improper, ungentlemanly, unprofessional, unseemly | aggressive, violent | criminal, fraudulent, illegal, negligent, unlawful, wrongful | homosexual, sexual | personal | business, professional** *The business conduct of this bank will be subject to UK rules. Our organization sets high standards of professional conduct.* | **police | human** *It is tempting to think of morality as a guide to human conduct.*

VERB + CONDUCT **engage in** *The committee concluded that the senators had engaged in improper conduct.* | **regulate** *Efforts were made to regulate the conduct of crowds at football games.* | **explain** *The minister was called to court to explain his conduct.*

CONDUCT + VERB **constitute sth** *conduct constituting a crime*

PREP. **~ by** *The violent conduct by the strikers was condemned.* | **~ towards** *her conduct towards her husband*

PHRASES **a code of conduct, rules of conduct, standards of conduct**

2 **management of sth**

ADJ. **proper** *The elders were responsible for the proper conduct of community life.* | **day-to-day** *the day-to-day conduct of the business of the company*

conduct *verb*

1 **organize sth/carry sth out**

ADV. **independently** *The enquiry must be independently conducted.* **| personally | properly | successfully**

2 **lead/guide sb**

ADV. **personally** *How about a personally conducted tour of the house?*

PREP. **along, around/round, down, through, to, etc.** *A guide conducted us around the museum.*

3 **conduct yourself: behave**

ADV. **honourably, well, with dignity** *She conducts herself with great dignity.*

4 **heat/electricity**

ADV. **well** *a substance which conducts electricity well*

conductor *noun*

1 **person who directs an orchestra**

ADJ. **great | famous | chief, principal | guest | opera/operatic, orchestra/ orchestral**

PREP. **~ of/with** *the principal conductor of the Berlin Symphony Orchestra*

PHRASES **the conductor's baton** > Note at JOB

2 **substance that allows heat/electricity to pass through**

ADJ. **good | bad, poor | electrical | lightning**

confederation *noun*

ADJ. **loose** *The Franks were originally a loose confederation of Germanic tribes.*

VERB + CONFEDERATION **establish, form, found | join**

PREP. **~ between** *a confederation between two states* **| ~ of** *a confederation of employers*

conference *noun*

ADJ. **national, international, regional, world | one-day, etc. | annual, quarterly, etc. | inaugural, preliminary, preparatory | consultative | joint | private | video | formal | full | successful | well-attended | high-level, summit | news, press | diplomatic, industry, inter-governmental, management, ministerial, multi-party, party, staff | constitutional, disarmament, education, environment, peace, trade, etc.**

QUANT. **series**

VERB + CONFERENCE **attend, go to | hold | organize | call, convene**

CONFERENCE + VERB **meet, take place | begin, open | close, end | bring sb together** *The conference brought together historians working in a variety of fields.* **| be entitled sth** *a conference entitled 'Strategies for Epidemic Control'* **| be devoted to sth, examine sth, focus on sth, look at sth** *a conference devoted to the topic of peace an inter-governmental conference examining cross-border cooperation* **| hear sth** *The conference heard an appeal from a representative from one of the more deprived areas.* **| agree sth, decide sth, vote sth** *The conference agreed to adopt a set of compromise proposals.* **| adopt sth, approve sth, back sth, support sth** *The conference adopted a resolution on minority rights.* **| recommend sth | condemn sth, reject sth**

CONFERENCE + NOUN **building, centre, complex, facilities, suite, venue | chamber, hall, room | table | platform** *The party leader made a morale-boosting speech from the conference platform.* **| chairman, speaker | guests, delegates, participants | organizer | agenda, programme | theme | debate, discussion, talks | speech | resolution | paper | report | session | season**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *We met at an international conference.* **| in ~ with** *He was in conference with* (= in a meeting with) *his lawyers all day.* **| ~ about** *Few reporters turned up to his press conference about low pay.* **| ~ between** *a conference between the warring parties* **| ~ for** *a conference for catering managers* **| ~ on** *a conference on economic monetary union* **| ~ with** *Management had a joint conference with the union.*

confess *verb*

ADV. **freely, openly | allegedly | ruefully, sheepishly**

VERB + CONFESS **have to, must** *I must confess that I didn't have much faith in her ideas.*

PREP. **to** *He was arrested and confessed to the murder. She confessed to me that she had known his true identity for some time.*

confession *noun*

1 admitting guilt

ADJ. **detailed, full | honest, true** *It's difficult to believe it's an honest confession after all her lies.* **| false | alleged | uncorroborated | signed, taped/tape-recorded, written | deathbed**

VERB + CONFESSION **make | sign | extract, get, obtain, secure** *He claims his confession was extracted under torture.* **| retract** *She made a false confession during the trial which she later retracted.* **| exclude** *The court excluded the confession wrongly obtained by the police.*

PREP. **~ by** *an alleged confession by the defendant* **| ~ from** *a confession from the prisoner* **| ~ of** *a true confession of a terrible crime* **| ~ to** *a confession to murder*

PHRASES **force/get a confession out of sb** *The police forced a confession out of him.*

2 embarrassing statement

ADJ. **candid, open | shy**

VERB + CONFESSION **made** *The government made open confession of its inability to cope with the crisis.*

PREP. **~ of** *her shy confession of love*

PHRASES **have a confession to make** *I have a confession to make. I read your private emails.*

3 to a priest

VERB + CONFESSION **go to** *I used to go to confession every Saturday as a child.* **| hear** *The priest heard her confession and granted absolution.*

CONFESSION + NOUN **box**

PHRASES **an act of confession**

confetti *noun*

QUANT. **shower**

VERB + CONFETTI **shower (sb with), throw** *The winning team was showered with confetti.*

CONFETTI + VERB **shower down** *Confetti showered down on the newly-weds.*

confidence *noun*

1 belief in others

ADJ. **absolute, complete, full, total** *The company needs the full confidence of its investors.* | **great, high, real** *Confidence is high among the team's supporters.* | **reasonable** | **growing, increased, increasing** | **new, renewed** | **misplaced** *The general's confidence in his army proved misplaced.* | **international** | **popular, public** *public confidence in the government* | **business, consumer, customer, investor, market**

VERB + CONFIDENCE **enjoy, feel, have** *This government no longer enjoys the confidence of the public. We all have complete confidence in this product.* | **express** *He expressed confidence in the new plans.* | **be lacking in, lack** | **share** *She wished that she shared his confidence.* | **maintain, preserve** *to maintain public confidence in the system of justice* | **bolster, boost, build (up), enhance, improve, increase, lift, raise** *Higher profits should raise business confidence.* | **gain** | **command, create, develop, encourage, engender, generate, give (sb), inspire, instil** *The training is designed to give staff confidence in managing problems. The company's record does not really inspire confidence.* | **rebuild, restore, revive** *Only if the chairperson resigns will we be able to restore the confidence of our members.* | **lose** *This government has lost the confidence of the public.* | **damage, dent, sap, shake, undermine, weaken** *Only one bank scandal is needed to shake the confidence in the financial markets.* | **destroy, shatter**

CONFIDENCE + VERB **decrease** | **grow, increase, rise** | **return** *Confidence has returned to the market.*

PREP. **~ about** *The captain was not lacking in confidence about his team's prospects.* | **~ among** *a loss of confidence among investors* | **~ between** *efforts to build confidence between employers and unions* | **~ in** *They have no confidence in the legal system.*

PHRASES **a crisis of confidence** *There is a crisis of confidence in the university about its future role.* | **have every/little/no/some confidence** *The captain of the football team said he had every confidence in his men.* | **a lack of confidence, a loss of confidence, a vote of (no) confidence** *This is a tremendous vote of confidence for the government.* | **a (no) confidence motion/vote** *The government lost a parliamentary confidence vote.*

2 belief in yourself

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great | sublime, supreme, tremendous, utter | added, extra | fresh, new-found | increased, increasing, growing | calm, quiet** *giving an outward appearance of quiet confidence* | **easy** *She spoke in a tone of easy confidence.* | **false** *All his false confidence had drained away.* | **inner, personal | social**

VERB + CONFIDENCE **have** *She has very little confidence in her own abilities.* | **show | feel** *'I can explain,' he said, with a confidence he did not feel.* | **brim with, exude, be full of, ooze, radiate** *Since she got the new job, she's been brimming with confidence. a man who exudes confidence* | **be lacking in, lack** *A lot of children are lacking in confidence.* | **acquire, develop, gain, gather** *She's gained a lot of confidence over the last year.* | **grow in** *As the weeks went by he grew in confidence.* | **lose** *During his illness he really lost his confidence.* | **get back, rebuild, recover, regain, restore** *He's really striking the ball well and has got his confidence back.* | **bolster, boost, build (up), enhance** *Winning the competition really boosted her confidence.* | **give sb, instil** *to instil confidence in staff who feel nervous about taking on new roles* | **dent, sap, shake, undermine, weaken** *Failing his exams really dented his confidence.* | **destroy, shatter**

CONFIDENCE + VERB **drain (away), evaporate, go** *My confidence went completely after my first major defeat.* | **grow, increase, rise** *Their confidence grew with each success.* | **return**

CONFIDENCE + NOUN **boost, booster** *The home side badly need a confidence booster.* | **building** *Getting the certificate does a lot in terms of confidence building.*

PREP. **with ~** *She answered the question with confidence.* | **~ about** *I lacked confidence about how I looked* | **~ in** *his confidence in himself*

PHRASES **a lack of confidence, a loss of confidence**

3 trust

ADJ. **absolute, complete, full, total | mutual**

VERB + CONFIDENCE **enjoy, have** *The Cabinet must enjoy the confidence of Parliament.* | **keep, retain | gain, get, win | build** *an environment which builds mutual confidence* | **betray, break | place, put** *Are we to place confidence in a minister who cannot remember a phone call he made last week?* | **withhold | take sb into**

She thought she might take Leo into her confidence.

CONFIDENCE + NOUN **trick, trickster**

PREP. **in ~** *She told me in confidence?I couldn't break that confidence, could I?*

PHRASES **a breach of confidence** *Telling other people what I'd said was a total breach of confidence.* **| in strict confidence** *Enquiries will be dealt with in the strictest confidence.*

4 **secret**

ADJ. **whispered**

VERB + CONFIDENCE **exchange, share** *The girls exchanged whispered confidences.* **| keep | betray** *I could never forgive Mike for betraying a confidence.* **| encourage, invite** *She didn't encourage confidences.*

PHRASES **an exchange of confidences**

confident *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow** *He's got more confident as he's got older. She gradually grew more confident.* **| remain | make sb** *Going to university has made her more confident.*

ADV. **extremely, really, remarkably, very | absolutely, completely, entirely, fully, perfectly, supremely, totally | increasingly | fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably | calmly, quietly, serenely** *He came out of the interview feeling quietly confident. She sauntered onto the set, looking serenely confident.* **| cautiously | socially** *You get young people who appear to be socially confident, but inside they are a bundle of neuroses.*

PREP. **about** *We are confident about the future.* **| of** *I'm fully confident of winning the title.*

confidential *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain | keep sth, treat sth as** *The affair must be kept confidential. Information about prices is to be treated as confidential.*

ADV. **extremely, highly | absolutely, completely, strictly, totally** *The findings are strictly confidential.* **| commercially** *commercially confidential data*

confidentiality *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, complete, strict, total** *It is important to maintain strict confidentiality at all times.* **| commercial, professional**

VERB + CONFIDENTIALITY **ensure, maintain, preserve, protect** *efforts to protect the confidentiality of the client* **| breach, break** *He breached confidentiality by releasing information on weapons tests.*

CONFIDENTIALITY + NOUN **agreement**

confine *verb*

ADV. **entirely, exclusively, solely, strictly, totally** *Reliance on state funding is not confined solely to industry.* **| increasingly | largely, mainly, principally** *The discussion will be confined largel to general principles.* **| generally, normally | effectively | by no means, not necessarily** *Poverty and deprivation are by no means confined to the north of the country.*

PREP. **to** *Let's confine our attention to the problem of illegal drugs.*

confinement *noun*

ADJ. **close** *The animals are kept in close confinement.* **| solitary**

VERB + CONFINEMENT **be held in, be kept in | be placed in, be put in**

PREP. **in ~** *He spent eleven years in solitary confinement.* **| ~ to** *their confinement to army barracks*

confines *noun*

ADJ. **close, cramped, limited, narrow, strict** *issues that go beyond the limited confines of the book within the strict confines of the law* **| immediate | comfortable, comfy, safe**

VERB + CONFINES **leave** *It took him some effort to leave the comfy confines of his armchair.*

PREP. **beyond/outside the ~ of** *She wanted to experience things outside the close confines of family life.* **| in/within the ~ of** *He spent three years within the narrow confines of the prison.*

confirm *verb*

ADV. **merely, only, simply** *This latest tragedy merely confirms my view that the law must be tightened.* **| officially** *The plans were officially confirmed yesterday.*

VERB + CONFIRM **be able/unable to, can/could | appear to, seem to, tend to** *These new symptoms tend to confirm my original diagnosis.*

confirmation *noun*

ADJ. **further | independent | direct | final | official, written**

VERB + CONFIRMATION **ask for | need, require | seek** *The police are seeking independent confirmation of certain details of the story.* **| await, wait for | get, have, obtain, receive | give sb, provide (sb with)**

CONFIRMATION + VERB **come** *Written confirmation came three days later.*

PREP. **in ~** *She nodded in confirmation.*

PHRASES **confirmation in writing** *We need confirmation in writing before we can send your order out.*

conflict *noun*

1 **fight/argument**

ADJ. **big, great, major | bitter, serious, violent | growing, increasing | constant, continued, continuing, unresolved** *He is in constant conflict with the authorities.* | **open, overt | global, internal, regional | armed, military | civil, class, cultural, ethnic, family, industrial, political, social, religious**

VERB + CONFLICT **bring sb/sth into, cause, come into, create, lead to, provoke** *His work brought him into conflict with more conventional scientists. The decision led to a bitter conflict between the management and unions.* | **avert, avoid, prevent** *They hid their feelings to avoid conflict.* | **handle | end, resolve, settle, solve** *The United Nations are hoping to resolve the conflict quickly.*

CONFLICT + VERB **arise (from sth), occur** *The conflict arose from different ambitions within the team.*

PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *Thousands have been arrested in violent ethnic conflicts in the region.* | **in ~** *They found themselves in conflict over the future of the firm.* | **in ~ with** *in conflict with management* | **~ about/over** *a conflict over ownership of the land* | **~ between** *conflicts between different ethnic groups* | **~ with** *to end the conflict with France* | **~ within** *serious conflicts within the ruling party*

PHRASES **an area/a source of conflict, in direct conflict with sb**

2 **difference between ideas/wishes, etc.**

ADJ. **fundamental, serious, sharp | direct | inherent** *the inherent conflict between the demands of farmers and wishes of environmentalists* | **inner | ideological**

CONFLICT + NOUN **situation | management, resolution** *the key to successful conflict management*

PREP. **in ~ with** *in direct conflict with his wishes* | **~ between** *the conflict between science and religion* | **~ of** *a serious conflict of opinion*

PHRASES **a conflict of interests/loyalties**

conflict *verb*

ADV. **apparently** *how to reconcile apparently conflicting goals* **| potentially** *potentially conflicting values*

PREP. **with** *His opinions conflicted with mine.*

conform *verb*

ADV. **fully**

VERB + CONFORM **be required to, must, should | fail to** *The toys fail to conform to current safety standards.*

PREP. **to** *All companies are required to conform to these rules.* **| with** *This equipment conforms fully with the latest safety regulations.*

conformity *noun*

ADJ. **complete | strict | outward** *a society of outward religious conformity* **| political, religious, sexual, social**

QUANT. **degree**

VERB + CONFORMITY **achieve, bring sth into, ensure** *to bring national laws into conformity with European laws*

PREP. **in ~ with** *The procedure is in strict conformity with standard international practices.* **| ~ between** *to achieve conformity between all the schemes* **| ~ to** *conformity to the accepted standards* **| ~ with** *We work to ensure conformity with the customer's wishes.*

confront *verb*

ADV. **directly** *He is willing to confront problems directly.* **| immediately, suddenly**

PHRASES **be confronted with sth** *I was suddenly confronted by the task of rewriting the entire book.* **| find yourself confronted by sth** *The demonstrators found themselves confronted by a line of police, blocking the road.*

confrontation *noun*

ADJ. **full-scale, major, serious** *Their demands could lead to a serious confrontation with management.* **| direct, eyeball-to-eyeball, face-to-face, head-on, outright | open | bitter, bloody, heated, ugly, violent | armed, military | political**

QUANT. **series**

VERB + CONFRONTATION **have | cause, end in, lead to, provoke | bring sb into** *His actions brought him into direct confrontation with the authorities.* **| avoid**

CONFRONTATION + VERB **arise, take place**

PREP. **~ between** *a head-on confrontation between the two governments* **| ~ over** *She had a series of heated confrontations with her parents over homework.* **| ~ with** *a confrontation with the police*

confuse *verb*

1 **make sb unable to think clearly; make sth unclear**

ADV. **completely, totally** *Seeing the two of them together totally confused me.* **| slightly, somewhat | further** *I will try to be brief and avoid further confusing the issue.*

2 **mistake sb/sth for another person/thing**

ADV. **easily** *You can easily confuse the two paintings.*

PREP. **with** *I sometimes confuse Jane with her sister.*

confused *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *He was beginning to get rather confused.* **| remain | leave sb** *He left his audience thoroughly confused.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, hopelessly, very** *a highly confused picture of a complex situation* **| completely, thoroughly, totally, utterly | increasingly | a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat | momentarily** *George paused, momentarily confused.*

PREP. **about** *He was very confused about his feelings.* **| by** *I'm confused by the whole thing.*

confusing *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become, get | make sth** *Both teams were wearing the same colours, which made things confusing.* **| find sth** *I find the government policy extremely confusing.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, hopelessly, very | a bit, a little, pretty, rather, slightly, somewhat | potentially**

PREP. **for** *The new signs will be very confusing for tourists.* **| to** *All this information can be confusing to the user.*

confusion *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total, utter | considerable, great | slight | general, widespread | administrative | mental**

VERB + CONFUSION **cause, create, lead to, result in | add to** *This latest decision has only added to the general confusion.* **| clear up | plunge sb/sth into, throw sb/sth into** *The local council has been thrown into total confusion by her resignation.*

CONFUSION + VERB **arise, reign** *Confusion reigned when the two managers gave conflicting instructions.* **| surround sth** *The government needs to clear up the confusion surrounding its policy on water.*

PREP. **in (the) ~** *She stared at them both in utter confusion. In the confusion that followed, she managed to slip away unnoticed.* **| ~ about/over** *There is widespread confusion about the government's transport policy.* **| ~ among** *The announcement caused a lot of confusion among the students.* **| ~ as to** *confusion as to the whereabouts of the man* **| ~ between** *confusion between letters of the alphabet* **| ~ with** *the confusion of this book with her last one*

PHRASES **a scene/state of confusion, to avoid confusion** *To avoid confusion, label each box clearly.*

congested *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, get**

ADV. **heavily, highly, severely, very** *The roads to Bordeaux were heavily congested.*

PREP. **with** *The city streets were congested with vehicles.*

congestion *noun*

ADJ. **serious, severe | increased, increasing | road, traffic** *Parking near the school causes severe traffic congestion.* **| nasal**

VERB + CONGESTION **cause, lead to | avoid, ease, reduce, relieve** *measures to ease the increasing congestion in the centre of London* **| increase**

conglomerate *noun*

ADJ. **big, huge, large, vast | international, multinational | business, financial, industrial | food, media, mining, publishing, etc.**

congratulate *verb*

ADV. **warmly**

VERB + CONGRATULATE **must, wish to, would like to** *I must congratulate you on your excellent exam results.*

PREP. **for** *The employees should be congratulated for the part they have played in the success.* **| on** *She congratulated me warmly on my performance.*

PHRASES **sb is to be congratulated** *The company is to be congratulated on its success.*

congratulations *noun*

ADJ. **deepest | heartfelt, hearty, sincere, warm** *May I offer my heartiest congratulations on your promotion?*

VERB + CONGRATULATIONS **express, extend, give (sb), offer (sb), send (sb)** *Please give your parents my congratulations.* **| accept**

PREP. **~ on/upon** *Please accept my warmest congratulations on your engagement.* **| ~ to** *Congratulations to Tony on his new job!*

congregation *noun*

ADJ. **full | large | small**

VERB + CONGREGATION **address** *The vicar stood up to address the congregation.*

PREP. **in a/the ~**

PHRASES **a member of a congregation**

congress *noun*

1 **large formal meeting/series of meetings**

ADJ. **international, national, world | annual | party | all-party | founding, inaugural | emergency | extraordinary | full**

VERB + CONGRESS **attend, go to** *Three hundred delegates attended the Liberal party congress.* **| address | convene, hold | organize, schedule | open** *The general secretary opened the congress on global warming.* **| close**

CONGRESS + VERB **take place | agree to sth, approve sth, adopt sth** *The congress agreed to the tax-cutting package.* **| call for sth | elect sb | vote**

CONGRESS + NOUN **delegate, leader | debate**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *We met again at the annual congress.* **| in ~** *It was a year before the association met again in congress.* **| ~ on** *a congress on language in education*

2 **Congress: group of people elected to make laws**

CONGRESS + VERB **approve sth** *Congress approved most of the new powers.* **| pass sth** *Congress passed a series of important measures.* **| vote** *Congress voted to delay a decision.*

PREP. **in ~** *The Liberals in Congress felt the reforms did not go far enough.*

PHRASES **a member of Congress, a session of Congress** *legislation for the next session of Congress*

conjecture *noun*

ADJ. **pure** *Whether the business will survive another ten years is pure conjecture.*

PREP. **~ about/as to** *There was a lot of conjecture as to the extent of her wealth.*

PHRASES **a matter for conjecture, open to conjecture** *Whether she will run for a second term in office is open to conjecture.*

conjunctivitis *noun* > Special page at ILLNESS

connect *verb*

1 join

ADV. **directly** *Downstairs toilets were connected directly to the drains.* **| up** *We need to connect all the pipes up to the water tank.*

PREP. **to** *Connect the machine to the power supply.* **| with** *A corridor connects his office with the main building.*

2 link

ADV. **closely, intimately** *Bad diet is closely connected with many common illnesses.* **| directly**

PREP. **with** *The police were looking for evidence to connect him with the crime.*

connection *noun*

1 **relationship between two things**

ADJ. **clear, close, direct, intimate, strong** *There is a close connection between family background and academic achievement.* | **tenuous** | **obvious** | **causal**

VERB + CONNECTION **have** *His death had no connection with drugs.* | **discover, establish, find, make, see** *Researchers have now established a connection between air pollution and asthma. She did not make the connection between her diet and her poor health.* | **break, sever** *She wanted to sever all her connections with the firm.*

PREP. **in ~ with** *I am writing in connection with your recent job application.* | **~ between** *the connection between crime and alcohol* | **~ to/with** *What is your connection with the school?*

PHRASES **in that/this connection** (= for reasons connected with sth recently mentioned)

2 **place where wires/pipes join together**

ADJ. **loose** | **electrical, pipe**

VERB + CONNECTION **break** *If you break the connection, the light won't come on.*

CONNECTION + NOUN **charge**

PREP. **~ to** *waiting for connection to the water mains*

3 **bus/train/plane**

ADJ. **good** | **bus, rail/railway, train**

VERB + CONNECTION **make** | **miss**

PREP. **~ between** *There are good connections between the resort and major cities.* | **~ to** *We'll be lucky if we make our connection to Paris.* | **~ with** *good connections with New York*

4 **person you know**

ADJ. **good | aristocratic | business, family, personal, political, professional, social**

VERB + CONNECTION **have** *I have some good business connections in New York. He has connections* (= he knows important people who would be able to help him). **| use** *She used her connections to get the job.*

connoisseur *noun*

ADJ. **great, real** *Only the real connoisseur could tell the difference between these two wines.* **| art, music, wine**

PREP. **~ of** *a great connoisseur of Japanese art*

connotation *noun*

ADJ. **strong | wider** *The notion of abuse has wider connotations than the physical.* **| negative, pejorative | positive | humorous | moral, racial, sexual**

VERB + CONNOTATION **carry, have** *That word has strong sexual connotations.* **| attach, give sth** *the negative connotations attached to the word ‘academic’*

PREP. **~ of** *The word carries connotations of romance.*

conquest *noun*

ADJ. **rapid** *the rapid conquest of Madrid* **| military | Norman, Roman, Spanish, etc.** *the Roman conquest of Britain* **| sexual**

VERB + CONQUEST **make** *The army made many conquests in the east.* **| complete**

PREP. **by/through ~** *He continued to expand his kingdom by conquest.*

conscience *noun*

ADJ. **clear, easy, good** *I have a clear conscience.* **| bad, guilty, terrible, troubled, uneasy | civic, moral, political, social** *a government with no social conscience*

VERB + CONSCIENCE **have** *He had no conscience about taking his brother's money.* **| appease, ease, salve, soothe** *After the feast she spent a week dieting to salve her conscience.* **| prick, trouble | appeal to, arouse, rouse, stir | wrestle with** *He wrestled with his conscience all night long.*

CONSCIENCE + VERB **trouble sb** *Her conscience was troubling her a little.* **| dictate sth** *My conscience dictates that I resign.*

PREP. **on your ~** *I'm sure she has something on her conscience. It was on his conscience that he hadn't called her.*

PHRASES **a crisis of conscience, freedom of conscience, in (all/good) conscience** (= honestly) *We cannot in all conscience refuse to help.* **| a matter of conscience** *This question is a matter of individual conscience.* **| a pang/prick/ twinge of conscience** *I had a sudden pang of conscience that I really ought to tell the truth.* **| the voice of conscience** *She refused to listen to the voice of conscience.*

conscious *adj.*

1 **aware of sth**

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **acutely, deeply** *(formal)*, **extremely, highly, intensely, terribly, very** *She became acutely conscious that someone was watching her. We are now deeply conscious of these issues.* **| fully, perfectly | increasingly | hardly** *I was hardly conscious of my surroundings.* **| clearly | dimly, vaguely** *He fell, and was dimly conscious of Tara standing over him.* **| painfully** *All the time he was painfully conscious of how hard it was going to be to explain.* **| environmentally, politically, socially** *The company is extremely environmentally conscious* (= aware of environmental problems and how to deal with them).

PREP. **of** *I am very conscious of the need for secrecy.*

PHRASES **fashion/health/safety/security conscious** *fashion conscious teenagers*

2 **able to see/hear/feel**

VERBS **be | become | remain** *She remained conscious throughout the operation.*

ADV. **fully** *The patient is not yet fully conscious.* **| barely, hardly** *One man was so drunk as to be barely conscious.* **| half** *I was only half conscious.*

consciousness *noun*

1 **being able to see/hear/feel things**

ADJ. **full | higher** *to aspire to a higher consciousness* **| individual | human**

VERB + CONSCIOUSNESS **lose** *She hit her head on a rock and lost consciousness.* **| recover, regain | bring sb back to** *The cold water brought me back to full consciousness.* **| enter** *The words slowly entered her consciousness.*

PHRASES **a level/state of consciousness** *an altered state of consciousness*

2 **being aware of sth**

ADJ. **full** *I left the room with full consciousness of the impression I would make.* **| growing | altered | collective, public | national | modern | black | working-class | class, environmental, feminist, green, political, religious, social** *a new political consciousness among young people* **| false** *(technical) She sees racism as a form of false consciousness, where a society collectively believes untrue things about other races.*

VERB + CONSCIOUSNESS **develop, raise** *They have succeeded in raising consciousness on many issues.* **| enter** *imagery that has entered the national consciousness through the media* **| be lodged in, lodge itself in** *The idea firmly lodged itself in the public consciousness.*

PREP. **in (the) ~** *a key position in feminist consciousness* **| ~ among, ~ of** *a growing consciousness of environmental issues among children*

conscription *noun*

ADJ. **universal | military**

VERB + CONSCRIPTION **introduce | abolish, end | avoid** *He injured himself to avoid conscription.*

consensus *noun*

ADJ. **broad, clear, common, general, overwhelming, strong | emerging, growing | tacit, unspoken | international, national | political, social**

QUANT. **degree, level**

VERB + CONSENSUS **achieve, arrive at, reach | break** *He was the first to break the consensus and criticize the proposal.*

CONSENSUS + VERB **exist** *No clear consensus exists over the next stage of the scheme.* **| emerge** *A general consensus on the problem is beginning to emerge.*

CONSENSUS + NOUN **view**

PREP. **by ~** *They have always governed by consensus.* **| ~ about/on/over** *It is difficult to reach a consensus about electoral reform.* **| ~ among/between** *no consensus among the members*

PHRASES **a consensus of opinion** *The general consensus of opinion is that a high-fat diet is bad for you.* **| a lack of consensus**

consent *noun*

ADJ. **full | common, general, mutual | express | tacit** *Your silence implies tacit consent to these proposals.* **| informed** *Doctors must obtain the informed consent of all patients before giving any treatment.* **| prior** *No action can be taken without the prior consent of the owner.* **| formal, written | parental**

VERB + CONSENT **give (sb), grant (sb)** *You must give written consent before the documents can be released.* **| refuse (sb), withhold | gain, get, have, obtain** *Do you have the consent of your employer?* **| require, seek**

PREP. **by (common/general/mutual) ~** *The contract can only be broken by mutual consent.* **| with/without sb's ~** *Your property cannot be sold without your consent.* **| ~ for** *He gave his consent for treatment.* **| ~ from** *consent from the parents* **| ~ to** *He withheld his consent to the marriage.*

PHRASES **the age of consent** (= the age at which sb is legally old enough to agree to have a sexual relationship)

consent *verb*

ADV. **freely | kindly** *He has kindly consented to give us some of his valuable time.*

PREP. **to** *Her father would not consent to the marriage.*

consequence *noun*

ADJ. **full | far-reaching, important, profound | adverse, bad, catastrophic, damaging, dangerous, devastating, dire, disastrous, fatal, harmful, negative, serious, severe, terrible, tragic, unfortunate, unpleasant | beneficial, good, positive | major, main | direct, immediate | indirect | inevitable, necessary | likely, possible, potential | logical, natural | long-term, short-term | unintended | ecological, economic, electoral, environmental, financial, legal, physical, political, social** *to face up to the physical consequences of ageing*

VERB + CONSEQUENCE **have, lead to** *The practice had far-reaching environmental consequences.* **| accept, bear, face (up to), suffer, take** *You must accept the full consequences of your behaviour.*

CONSEQUENCE + VERB **arise, ensue, follow** *the important electoral consequences that will follow from this decision*

PREP. **as a ~** *Hundreds of people lost their jobs as a direct consequence of the merger.* **| in ~ (of)** *(formal) The child was born deformed in consequence of an injury to its mother.* **| ~ for** *This could have serious consequences for the economy.*

conservation *noun*

ADJ. **energy, environmental, forest, nature, soil, water, wildlife | bird, elephant, etc. | architectural, building | art, painting/paintings**

CONSERVATION + NOUN **body, group, organization | efforts, measure, policy, programme, project, scheme, work | area** *No new building is permitted in conservation areas.*

conservatism *noun*

ADJ. **diehard, entrenched | moderate, relative | inherent, innate, natural** *the innate conservatism of British businessmen* **| economic, fiscal, ideological, political, religious, social**

PREP. **~ in** *people's conservatism in musical taste*

conservative *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, profoundly, very | increasingly | largely, predominantly | fairly, rather, relatively | basically, essentially** *She takes a basically conservative view of society.* **| generally | innately, instinctively, naturally** *the army's innately conservative values* **| notoriously** *Banks are notoriously conservative about their dealings with clients.* **| traditionally** *a traditionally conservative profession* **| culturally, morally, politically, socially** *the culturally conservative world of commerce and industry*

conservative *noun*

ADJ. **diehard, dyed-in-the-wool, hardline, staunch | right-wing | back-bench** *disagreement among back-bench Conservatives* **| senior** *Senior Conservatives are opposed to the change.* **| political**

consider *verb*

ADV. **carefully, seriously** *I'm seriously considering the possibility of emigrating.* **|** **briefly** *I did briefly consider going on my own.*

PREP. **for** *We are considering her for the job of designer.*

consideration *noun*

1 **careful thought about sth**

ADJ. **careful, detailed, full, serious | adequate, due, proper, sufficient | special, urgent | active**

VERB + CONSIDERATION **give sth, take sth into** *We will give your proposals serious consideration. You must take the size of the room into consideration.* **| deserve, need, require | receive**

PREP. **after ~** *After due consideration, it was decided not to offer her the job.* **| for sb's ~** *I enclose the report for your consideration.* **| in ~ of** *(formal)* (= as payment for sth), **on ~** *On consideration, we have decided not to come.* **| under ~** *proposals under active consideration*

2 **thinking about other people's wishes and feelings**

VERB + CONSIDERATION **have** *Have some consideration for those without a job.* **| show sb, treat sb with** *She showed little consideration for the beginners.*

PREP. **out of ~** *He did it out of consideration for his daughter.* **| ~ for**

3 **sth you think about when deciding sth**

ADJ. **main, major, important, prime | overriding, paramount | minor | aesthetic, commercial, economic, environmental, ethical, financial, health, legal, moral, personal, political, practical, safety, security**

VERB + CONSIDERATION **take account of, take into account** *There are several important safety considerations that must be taken into account.*

consist *verb* **PHRASAL VERBS consist of sth**

ADV. **entirely, exclusively, merely, only, simply, solely** *Their conversation consisted almost entirely of gossip.* **| chiefly, essentially, largely, mainly, mostly, predominantly, primarily, principally**

consistency *noun*

1 **always having the same standard/opinions, etc.**

ADJ. **absolute, complete, total | great, remarkable | internal**

QUANT. **degree, level**

VERB + CONSISTENCY **show** *He has shown remarkable consistency in his exam results.* **| achieve, ensure, maintain | lack**

PREP. **~ in/of** *a consistency in/of approach* **| ~ with** *to maintain consistency with past practice*

2 **thickness/firmness of a liquid substance**

ADJ. **thick, thin | soft, stiff | creamy, smooth | sticky | dropping** *Add milk to produce a soft dropping consistency.* **| correct, right** *Knead the dough to the right consistency.*

VERB + CONSISTENCY **have** *The mixture should have the consistency of thick cream.* **| give, produce**

consistent *adj.*

1 **always behaving in the same way**

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **highly, remarkably, very | absolutely, completely, entirely, quite, wholly** *His attitude isn't absolutely consistent.* **| largely | fairly, reasonably**

2 **in agreement with sth**

VERBS **be, seem | remain**

ADV. **completely, entirely, fully, perfectly | broadly, largely | fairly, quite, reasonably | internally** *His argument is not even internally consistent* (= different parts of the argument contradict each other). **| mutually** *It is desirable that domestic and EU law should be mutually consistent.* **| logically**

PREP. **across** *These findings are consistent across all the studies.* **| with** *The figures are fully consistent with last year's results.*

consolation *noun*

ADJ. **great | small**

VERB + CONSOLATION **have** *She had the consolation of coming second in her last race of the day.* **| seek** *He went to seek consolation in the local pub.* **| draw, find, gain, take** *He drew little consolation from this fact. When her mother died, she found consolation in her religious beliefs. Although we lost the game, we took some consolation from the fact that we played well.* **| afford (sb), bring (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *The next match will probably offer them the consolation of winning.*

PREP. **~ for** *providing consolation for her loss There is some consolation for fans because the team still stands a chance of winning the local championship.* **| ~ to** *The children were a great consolation to me at that time.*

PHRASES **be (of) little/small/some consolation to sb** *This news was of little consolation to us.* **| if it is any consolation (to sb)** *If it's any consolation to you, the weather here is also awful.* **| sb's one/only consolation** *When she lost her job, her only consolation was that she had some savings in the bank.*

conspicuous *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become | make sb** *Its colouring makes it highly conspicuous.*

ADV. **highly, very | rather, somewhat** *The new building was rather conspicuous.* **| horribly, uncomfortably** *The stain on her dress was horribly conspicuous.*

conspiracy *noun*

ADJ. **criminal, political** *charges of criminal conspiracy and corruption* **| alleged | international, worldwide**

VERB + CONSPIRACY **be involved in, be part of** *I suspected that he was involved in the conspiracy. This action was part of a conspiracy to deceive the public.* **| organize** *Who organized the conspiracy against the president?* **| uncover** *Party officials have uncovered a conspiracy to discredit the prime minister.*

PREP. **~ against** *a conspiracy against the king* **| ~ between** *a conspiracy between the police and the right-wing parties*

PHRASES **a conspiracy of silence** *There is a conspiracy of silence about the killer* (= nobody will say what they know). > Note at CRIME(for more verbs)

constable *noun*

ADJ. **police | Chief, Detective | beat, special, uniformed** *The force hopes to increase the number of its beat constables. Special constables provide part-time assistance for the regular police force.*

PHRASES **the rank of constable**

constant *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain, stay** *The level of unemployment remains fairly constant at around 10%.* **| hold sth** *(technical),* **keep sth** *All variables except one must be held constant. The temperature must be kept constant.*

ADV. **remarkably | absolutely | almost, nearly, virtually | fairly, reasonably, relatively | more or less, roughly**

PREP. **across** *These figures were virtually constant across the 1991 and 2001 censuses.*

consternation *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great | widespread**

VERB + CONSTERNATION **cause, create, fill sb with** *The announcement created surprise and consternation. The thought of meeting him filled me with consternation.* **| express, feel, greet sth with** *Many greeted his resignation with consternation.*

PREP. **in ~** *She stared at me in consternation.* **| ~ among** *There is some consternation among business leaders.*

constipated *adj*

VERBS **be | become, get | make sb**

ADV. **severely, very | a bit, slightly**

constipation *nou*n

ADJ. **severe | acute, chronic**

QUANT. **bout**

VERB + CONSTIPATION **have, suffer from | cause | prevent** > Special page at ILLNESS

constituency *noun*

1 **district that elects an MP**

ADJ. **important, key | local | marginal** (= won or lost by only a small number of votes) *The Tories are concentrating their campaign in the key marginal constituencies.* **| target | electoral, parliamentary | inner-city, urban | suburban | county, rural | multi-member, single-member** *Japan's electoral system of multi-member constituencies*

VERB + CONSTITUENCY **be elected for/to, represent** *She was elected to a rural constituency. He represents a constituency in the north of England.*

CONSTITUENCY + NOUN **boundaries | MP**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the people in this constituency*

2 **group in society likely to support a particular party**

ADJ. **broad, wider | natural, traditional** *These people are Labour's natural constituency.* **| political, social**

VERB + CONSTITUENCY **appeal to** *The party needs to appeal to a broader constituency.*

PREP. **in a/the ~**

constitution *noun*

1 **laws/rules of a country**

ADJ. **federal, state | codified, written** *Britain does not have a written constitution.* **| unwritten | draft, proposed | interim**

VERB + CONSTITUTION **draft, draw up, prepare** *plans to draft a new constitution* **| have | adopt, approve, enact, promulgate, ratify** *The new constitution will be adopted next year.* **| amend** *Parliament will vote to amend the constitution.* **| contravene, violate** *The president's actions violate the constitution.* **| suspend** *The constitution was suspended and the army was placed in full control.* **| be enshrined in** *These principles are enshrined in the country's constitution.*

CONSTITUTION + VERB **forbid sth, guarantee sth, stipulate sth** *The constitution stipulated that a general election must be held within 120 days.*

PREP. **according to/under a/the ~** *Under the constitution, an election must be called every five years.* **| in a/the ~** *These rights are established in the federal constitution.*

PHRASES **an amendment to a constitution, a clause in a constitution, the principles of a constitution, the provisions/terms of a constitution**

2 **ability of the body to stay healthy**

ADJ. **good, strong | weak**

VERB + CONSTITUTION **have** *The child had a weak constitution and was always ill.*

constrained *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel**

ADV. **severely, tightly** *She felt tightly constrained by her family commitments.*

constraint *noun*

ADJ. **important, major | severe, tight** *The government has placed tight constraints on spending this year.* **| budget, financial**

VERB + CONSTRAINT **impose, place, put | remove**

PREP. **within a/the ~** *We have to work within severe constraints.* **| without ~** *I felt free to speak to her without constraint.* **| ~ on/upon** *There are major financial constraints on all schools.*

construction *noun*

1 roads/buildings

ADJ. **gigantic, huge, large, massive** *massive constructions of bamboo and paper* | **basic, simple** *It has a basic construction of brick under a tiled roof.* | **complex** | **heavy** *the heavy construction industry* | **solid** *walls of solid construction* | **careful** *The drainage system needs careful construction.* | **brick, fibreglass, steel, timber, timber-frame, wooden** *a two-storey brick construction a schoolhouse of brick construction* | **bridge, building, canal, house/housing, railway, road** *Road and bridge construction is underway.*

VERB + CONSTRUCTION **begin, start** | **complete** *Construction of the new road has now been completed.*

CONSTRUCTION + VERB **be underway**

CONSTRUCTION + NOUN **industry, sector** | **company, firm, group** | **project, programme** | **contract** | **job** | **work** | **worker** | **site, yard** | **costs** | **materials** | **method, process, technique**

PREP. **during (the) ~** *Major engineering challenges will be faced during construction.* | **under ~** *A new factory is under construction.*

2 grammar

ADJ. **grammatical, linguistic, sentence, syntactic** | **active, passive** | **adjectival, infinitive, predicative**

3 interpretation

ADJ. **literal** | **logical, sensible** | **proper, true** *ruling on the proper construction to be given to section 78 of the Act* | **strict** *a strict construction of the clause* | **ideological, social, theoretical** *changes in the social construction of marriage* (= the meaning of marriage in society)

VERB + CONSTRUCTION **give sth, put on sth** *What construction do you put on this letter* (= what do you think it means)*?*

consult *verb*

ADV. **widely** *We consulted quite widely before deciding what to do.* **| closely | adequately, properly** *They felt they had not been properly consulted.*

VERB + CONSULT **need to, should** *If the pain persists you should consult your doctor.*

PREP. **about** *I need to consult my teacher about changing my course.* **| with** *We are consulting closely with our partners and allies.*

consultant *noun*

1 **sb who gives advice**

ADJ. **business, design, financial, management, public relations | independent, outside**

VERB + CONSULTANT **act as** *He was happy to act as a consultant to the company.* **| bring in, employ (sb as), engage (sb as), hire (sb as), use** *We brought in a management consultant to sort out the mess.*

PREP. **~ in** *a consultant in design, printing and advertising* **| ~ on** *a consultant on business ethics* **| ~ to/with** *They work as consultants to a software company.* > Note at JOB

2 **hospital doctor of high rank**

ADJ. **hospital, NHS** *She is now a hospital consultant.*

CONSULTANT + NOUN **cardiologist, gynaecologist, obstetrician, paediatrician, pathologist, physician, psychiatrist, etc.**

PREP. **~ in** *a consultant in psychiatry* > Note at DOCTOR

consultation *noun*

ADJ. **close | extensive, full, wide | proper | joint** *a joint consultation with doctors and patients* **| public** *There will be a period of public consultation before a decision is reached.*

VERB + CONSULTATION **have, hold** *The prime minister will hold a consultation with all the relevant groups.*

CONSULTATION + NOUN **document, paper | period**

PREP. **in ~ with** *The scheme was developed in close consultation with the local community.* **| without ~** *They have taken this decision without any consultation.* **| ~ about/on** *The company has promised wide consultation on its expansion plans.* **| ~ between** *a consultation between teachers and parents* **| ~ with** *We need more consultation with trade unions.*

consumer *noun*

ADJ. **big, great, large** *The UK is the biggest consumer of tropical hardwoods after Japan.* | **average, ordinary** | **potential** | **passive** *Mass culture turns audiences into passive consumers, their participation limited to the choice between buying and not buying.* | **sophisticated** | **domestic, foreign** | **commercial, industrial** | **green** *Green consumers should be wary of manufacturers' claims that their products are environmentally friendly.* | **electricity, energy**

VERB + CONSUMER **supply** *supplying domestic consumers* | **persuade** | **exploit** *to exploit consumers by charging a high price* | **protect** *What can be done to protect the ordinary consumer from unscrupulous service operators?* | **satisfy**

CONSUMER + VERB **buy sth, spend sth**

CONSUMER + NOUN **durables, electronics, goods, products, services** *the market for consumer durables* | **attitudes, awareness, behaviour, choice, confidence, demand, expenditure, needs, preferences, spending, tastes** | **protection, rights** | **group, organization, watchdog** *Consumer watchdogs have accused banks of ‘appalling arrogance’ in the way they treat customers.* | **society** *We are living in a consumer society.* | **market** | **prices** | **boom** *Government policy encouraged a consumer boom followed by a deep recession.* | **boycott** *The country could face a consumer boycott of its beef exports.*

PREP. **among ~** *two years of research among consumers*

consumption *noun*

ADJ. **heavy, high** *the country with the highest fuel consumption in the world* **| low | average | overall, total | excessive | conspicuous** (= buying expensive goods in order to impress people and show how rich you are) **| annual, daily** *Annual consumption of wine has risen from five to eleven litres per head.* **| per capita | domestic, local, home** *It is important that the recovery be export-led rather than led by domestic consumption. Half the small crop was kept for home consumption.* **| foreign, world | household | individual, personal | mass | public | private | future** *households that save for future consumption* **| alcohol, beer, cigarette, food, meat, tobacco, water | electricity, energy, fuel, gas, oil, petrol, power**

QUANT. **level**

VERB + CONSUMPTION **boost, encourage, increase, stimulate** *Doctors say that children need to increase their consumption of fruit and vegetables. The industry faced a serious challenge in trying to stimulate consumption.* **| cut down, reduce** *You need to reduce your alcohol consumption.*

CONSUMPTION + VERB **go up, increase, rise | decline, decrease, fall, go down**

CONSUMPTION + NOUN **expenditure, spending | figures, levels | habits, patterns**

PREP. **for sb's ~** (= intended to be read or heard by sb) *The documents were for the committee rather than for public consumption.*

PHRASES **fit/unfit for human consumption** (= safe/not safe to be eaten) *meat that is unfit for human consumption*

contact lens *noun*

ADJ. **gas-permeable, hard, soft | daily-wear | tinted**

VERB + CONTACT LENS **have in, wear | put in | remove, take out | clean, disinfect | rinse, soak**

contact *noun*

1 meeting/talking/writing to sb

ADJ. **close** *She is still in close contact with Sarah.* | **regular** | **direct** *Have you had any direct contact with the director of the company?* | **face-to-face**

VERB + CONTACT **be in, have** | **come into, establish, get in, make** *In his job, he comes into contact with many different people. We first established contact with the organization in 1999. When I arrive in New York, I'll get in contact with him.* | **put sb in** *I put my cousin in contact with a friend who works at the company.* | **keep, maintain, stay in** *Maintaining contact after many years can be difficult.* | **break off** | **lose**

PREP. **~ between** *There has been no contact between them for several years.* | **~ with** *I have very little contact with Simon now.*

2 person you know who can help you

ADJ. **good, useful, valuable** | **business, personal**

VERB + CONTACT **have** *He has a lot of good contacts in the music industry.* | **build up, make** *It takes time to build up contacts. I made a lot of useful business contacts at the conference.*

3 when people/things touch each other

ADJ. **physical, sexual** *The disease is transmitted through physical contact.*

VERB + CONTACT **come into** *Do not let the glue come into contact with water.*

PREP. **in ~** *For a brief moment their lips were in contact.* | **on ~** *The light will go out on contact with water.* | **~ between** *There should be no contact between the separate samples.* | **~ with**

contact *verb*

ADV. **immediately | directly | personally | by email, by phone/telephone** *He can be contacted by phone on the telephone number given below.*

PHRASES **do not hesitate to contact sb** *Please do not hesitate to contact me if you have any questions.*

contagious *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove** *The new disease proved contagious.*

ADV. **highly, very** *Enthusiasm is highly contagious.*

container *noun*

1 **box/bottle/packet, etc.**

ADJ. **shallow | airtight, closed, sealed, watertight | insulated | empty | full | durable** *Store food in durable containers with lids.* **| recyclable, refillable | child-proof, child resistant | ideal, suitable, useful** *Tubes are the ideal container for paint as air is excluded.* **| special | storage | aluminium, cardboard, glass, metal, plastic, steel, wooden | food, milk, water**

VERB + CONTAINER **fill** *Fill the container with water.* **| store sth in**

CONTAINER + VERB **contain sth, hold sth** *a container holding five litres*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Keep the seeds in an airtight container.* **| ~ for** *childproof containers for dangerous substances* **| ~ of** *a container of milk*

2 **large metal box for transporting goods**

ADJ. **empty | full | bulk, cargo**

CONTAINER + VERB **contain sth, hold sth** *containers holding shipments of bananas*

CONTAINER + NOUN **lorry, ship, truck | port**

contaminated *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **badly, heavily, highly** *A lot of our drinking water is now heavily contaminated.* **| potentially**

PREP. **with** *The meat was believed to be contaminated with salmonella.*

contamination *noun*

ADJ. **massive, serious, widespread | cross-** *Chopping boards can be a source of cross-contamination.* **| environmental, food | bacterial, radioactive**

QUANT. **level** *There is already a high level of environmental contamination.*

VERB + CONTAMINATION **avoid, prevent | reduce**

PREP. **~ by** *Always keep food covered to prevent contamination by flies.* **| ~ from** *There is a danger of serious contamination from radioactive waste.* **| ~ with** *Wash everything thoroughly to avoid contamination with bacteria.*

PHRASES **a source of contamination**

contemplate *verb*

ADV. **seriously** *She was seriously contemplating working abroad.*

VERB + CONTEMPLATE **be prepared to, be willing to** *Are you prepared to contemplate retraining?* **| cannot, could not | refuse to**

PHRASES **too awful/horrible/horrific to contemplate** *The thought of war was too awful to contemplate.*

contemplation *noun*

ADJ. **quiet, silent | deep**

VERB + CONTEMPLATION **be deep in, be lost in** *She was lost in contemplation of the scene in front of her.*

PREP. **in ~ (of)** *He spent many hours in deep contemplation.* **| ~ of** *the contemplation of beauty*

contemporary *adj.*

1 **belonging to the same time as sb/sth else**

VERBS be

ADV. strictly *She used only strictly contemporary documents to research the book.* **| almost, nearly | broadly, roughly** *a period broadly contemporary with the Shang dynasty*

PREP. with *a composer contemporary with Beethoven*

2 **modern**

VERBS be

ADV. very *His work is very contemporary.*

contempt *noun*

1 **lack of respect**

ADJ. **deep, utter, withering | cold, icy | healthy** *She'd developed what she considered a healthy contempt for authority.* **| barely/thinly disguised**

VERB + CONTEMPT **feel, have, hold sb/sth in** *He felt nothing but contempt for them. Politicians seem to be generally held in contempt by the police.* **| betray, demonstrate, display, show** *His remarks betray an utter contempt for the truth* (= are completely false). **| develop | regard sb/sth with, treat sb/sth with | deserve** *I shall treat that suggestion with the contempt it deserves.*

PREP. **~ for** *He has a deep contempt for racists.* **| beneath ~** *His treatment of his children is beneath contempt* (= so bad it is not even worth feeling contempt for). **| with ~** *She looked at him with barely disguised contempt.*

2 (*also* **contempt of court**) **refusal to obey a court**

ADJ. **civil, criminal**

VERB + CONTEMPT **be held in** *She was held in contempt for refusing to testify.*

PREP. **in ~**

contemptuous *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, sound** *Her voice sounded almost contemptuous.*

ADV. **savagely | utterly | almost | rather | openly**

PREP. **of** *He was utterly contemptuous of her efforts.*

contender *noun*

ADJ. **serious, strong | leading, main, major, number one, obvious, top | genuine, likely, possible**

PREP. **~ for** *a strong contender for the gold medal*

content *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem**

ADV. **perfectly, quite, utterly** *I'm perfectly content just to lie in the sun.* **| fairly, reasonably, relatively | apparently | curiously, strangely** *She felt curiously content.*

PREP. **with** *She seemed quite content with the idea.*

content *noun*

1 **contents things inside sth**

VERB + CONTENT **empty** *She emptied the contents of her bag on the floor*

2 **amount of a substance that sth contains**

ADJ. **high** *foods with a high fibre content* **| low | alcohol, calorie, carbon, fat, fibre, moisture, protein, sugar, sulphur, vitamin, etc.**

contented *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, very** *He gave a deeply contented sigh.* | **perfectly, quite**

contention *noun*

1 **opinion that sb expresses**

ADJ. **main** *Her main contention is that staff should get better training.*

VERB + CONTENTION **support** *There is no evidence to support her contention.* | **reject**

2 **disagreement between people**

PREP. **~ between** *There is no contention between the two groups.*

PHRASES **an area of contention, a bone/point/source of contention** *Where to go on holiday is always a bone of contention in our family.*

contentious *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become | remain**

ADV. **highly, very** *Abortion is a highly contentious issue.* **| rather, somewhat | politically**

contentment *noun*

ADJ. **deep, quiet, real, true** *He gazed out to sea, with a feeling of deep contentment.*

VERB + CONTENTMENT **find** *They finally found contentment in living a simple life.*

PREP. **with ~** *She sighed with contentment.*

PHRASES **a feeling of contentment**

contest *noun*

ADJ. **close, closely fought, equal, even | one-sided, unequal** *The contest was too one-sided to be exciting.* **| open** *This contest is wide open: any of half a dozen teams could win it.* **| fair** *The other bidders for the contract complained that it had not been a fair contest.* **| exciting, good, great, thrilling | bitter | head-to-head** *The contestants are eliminated one by one until the last two compete in a head-to-head contest.* **| global, international, local, national, regional | election/electoral, gubernatorial, leadership, political, presidential | beauty, song, sporting, talent**

VERB + CONTEST **have, hold, run** *We have three major beauty contests a year. Sporting contests are held in the arena.* **| compete in, enter, take part in** *A third candidate has entered the contest for the Republican nomination.* **| win, lose**

CONTEST + VERB **take place**

PREP. **during a/the ~** *During the election contest newspapers are not allowed to publish public opinion polls.* **| in a/the ~** *Both sides are predicting victory in this close contest.* **| out of a/the ~** *Jackson has injured his knee and is now out of the contest.* **| ~ against** *They won the doubles contest against the Williams sisters.* **| ~ between** *the contest between these two great boxers* **| ~ for** *the contest for the leadership of the party* **| ~ over** *In the animal kingdom intruders usually lose contests over territories.* **| ~ with** *The New Zealanders are looking forward to future contests with South Africa.*

PHRASES **be no contest** (= used when one side in a contest is much stronger than the other and is sure to win), **the winner of a contest**

contest *verb*

1 in a competition

ADV. **bitterly, fiercely, hotly, keenly** *The election was bitterly contested.* **| successfully, unsuccessfully**

2 oppose

ADV. **fiercely, hotly, strongly, vigorously** *His views on evolution are strongly contested by other scientists.* **| successfully, unsuccessfully** *Defence lawyers successfully contested the case.*

context *noun*

ADJ. **broad, general, larger, overall, wider** *You can't just look at it in terms of the immediate problem. You've got to see it in a wider context.* | **narrow** | **immediate** *A work which transcends its immediate historical context and speaks to later generations.* | **correct, proper, real, right** | **appropriate, realistic, relevant** *to present examples of language in use in an appropriate context* | **certain, given, particular, specific** *These actions only have meaning within certain specific contexts.* | **original** | **changed, changing, different, new, novel** | **meaningful** *Children need meaningful contexts for their work in science.* | **neutral** | **contemporary, modern** | **everyday, normal** | **global, international, local, national, regional** | **human** *It is natural to find conflict in the work environment, in the family, or any other human context.* | **communicative, conversational** | **experimental, practical, theoretical** | **classroom, school** | **business, commercial, cultural, economic, educational, fictional, geographical, historical, legal, literary, political, religious, social** | **Christian, Islamic, etc.** | **African, Asian, etc.**

VERB + CONTEXT **offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *Institutions provide a context in which individuals can take on different roles.* | **place sth in, put sth into, set sth in** *This speech needs to be set in the context of Britain in the 1960s.* | **consider/examine/look at/see/understand/view sth in** *His decision can only be understood in context.* | **quote sth out of, take sth out of** *Her reply was quoted out of context and seemed to mean something quite different from what she had intended.*

PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *Similar problems have arisen in other contexts.* | **within a/the ~** *You've got to look at these remarks within the context of the recent scandals.* | **~ for** *a neutral context for sharing and debating ideas*

PHRASES **a range/variety of contexts**

continent *noun*

ADJ. **Antarctic, Australian, African, etc.**

VERB + CONTINENT **cross** *the first railway to cross the North American continent*

CONTINENT + VERB **drift** *The evidence that the continents have drifted is overwhelming.*

PREP. **across a/the ~** *He travelled across continents in his quest for adventure.* **| on the ~** *Wolves are still found on the continent of Europe.*

contingent *noun*

ADJ. **large, strong, substantial | military, naval, police | British, UN, etc.**

PREP. **~ from** *a strong contingent from Camberwell Art School* **| ~ of** *a large contingent of American troops*

continuation *noun*

ADJ. **direct | natural**

VERB + CONTINUATION **see** *The years 2000?01 saw the continuation of the university's planned expansion.* **| ensure | be seen as** *His research could be seen as a natural continuation of the work done by Professor Lang.*

continuity *noun*

ADJ. **greater | remarkable | unbroken** *After twelve or thirteen centuries of unbroken continuity the landscape was being changed out of all recognition.* **| underlying | historical, narrative**

VERB + CONTINUITY **need | ensure, give sb/sth, maintain, provide (sb/sth with), secure** *More liaison between the old manager and the new one should ensure greater continuity.* **| break** *The author deliberately breaks the narrative continuity in order to confound the reader's expectations.*

PREP. **~ between** *There is often a lack of continuity between one government and the next.* **| ~ in** *historical continuity in the feminist movement*

PHRASES **a lack of continuity, a need for continuity** *the need for continuity of employment* **| a sense of continuity** *giving children a sense of continuity*

contraception *noun*

ADJ. **effective, safe | artificial | emergency | oral**

VERB + CONTRACEPTION **practise, use** *A lot of couples now practise contraception. They never used any contraception.*

PHRASES **the availability of contraception, a form/method of contraception** *a very reliable method of contraception*

contraceptive *noun*

ADJ. **effective | oral**

VERB + CONTRACEPTIVE **use**

contract *noun*

1 **written agreement**

ADJ. **long-term, permanent | casual, fixed-term, short-term | three-year, two-year, etc. | formal, written | verbal | legal, valid | void** *The contract was declared void.* | **enforceable, unenforceable** *(law)* | **big, important, major | lucrative | business, commercial | employment, maintenance, research, service | catering, construction, haulage | marriage**

VERB + CONTRACT **have** *Many workers do not have written contracts.* | **bid for, tender for** *Eighteen companies are bidding for the contract.* | **award (sb), give sb | get, win | lose** *The firm lost the contract to a large London company.* | **negotiate** *She managed to negotiate a permanent contract with the firm.* | **draw up, write | conclude, enter into, make, sign** *He entered into a contract with his former employer.* | **carry out, execute** *the firm carrying out the construction contract* | **cancel, end, repudiate** *(law)*, **rescind** *(law)*, **terminate** *Either party can terminate the contract at any time.* | **be subject to** *The offer has been accepted, subject to contract* (= the agreement is not legally binding before contracts are signed). | **be in breach of, break, violate** *If you go on strike you will be in breach of contract.* | **enforce** *(law)* | **exchange** *(law) When a house is auctioned the successful bidder must exchange contracts immediately and pay a deposit.*

CONTRACT + VERB **expire** *The contract expires at the end of next year.* | **be worth sth** *a series of major contracts worth millions of pounds*

CONTRACT + NOUN **worker** (= one on a fixed-term contract) | **law**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *They put a clause in the contract stipulating that the work should be finished by next month.* | **on a ~** *He's on a three-year fixed-term contract.* | **under ~ (to)** *At that stage of her career she was still under contract to one of the big Hollywood studios.* | **under a/the ~** *Under her contract of employment, Mrs Lee could not be required to work at a different site.* | **~ between** *the contract between the employer and the employee* | **~ for** *They won a contract for the delivery of five fighter planes.* | **~ with** *Do you have a contract with your employer?*

PHRASES **(a) breach of contract** *The company is being sued for breach of contract.* | **a contract of employment/sale** *You should make sure that you have a formal contract of employment.* | **the terms of a contract** *By using cheaper materials, the* *company has broken the terms of its contract.* **| under the terms of a contract** *Under the terms of the contract the job should have been finished yesterday.*

2 agreement to kill sb

VERB + CONTRACT **take out | have out** *He has a contract out on you.*

CONTRACT + NOUN **killer, killing**

PREP. **~ on** *She took out a contract on her ex-husband.*

contractor *noun*

ADJ. **external, independent, outside, private | government | approved** *a list of approved contractors* **| building, defence, electrical, engineering, haulage**

VERB + CONTRACTOR **employ, hire, use** *We'll need to employ a building contractor to do the work.*

contradict *verb*

ADV. **clearly, completely, directly, flatly** *John's account of the event directly contradicts Stephen's.*

VERB + CONTRADICT **appear to, seem to**

contradiction *noun*

ADJ. **complete, direct, flat | flagrant, glaring, manifest, obvious | basic, fundamental** *There's a basic contradiction in the whole idea of paying for justice.* **| inherent | apparent | internal**

PREP. **in ~ to/with** *That's in direct contradiction to what he said yesterday.* **| ~ between** *There is an apparent contradiction between the needs of workers and those of employers.* **| ~ of** *That's a contradiction of what you just said.*

PHRASES **a contradiction in terms** *The idea is almost a contradiction in terms.*

contradictory *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound**

ADV. **completely, directly, totally** *The evidence is completely contradictory.* **| quite, rather, somewhat | apparently, seemingly** *two apparently contradictory opinions* **| internally** *The argument is internally contradictory* (= contradicts itself). **| mutually** *The evidence demonstrates how easily people can hold mutually contradictory beliefs.*

PREP. **to** *He did something contradictory to his orders.*

contrary *adj.*

VERBS **be, run, seem** *These results run contrary to our expectations. It seems contrary to common sense.*

ADV. **completely, directly, entirely, quite, totally** *My own experience is completely contrary. The new claim is directly contrary to what was originally stated.* **| clearly**

PREP. **to** *Contrary to what the public was told, weapons were still being exported.*

PHRASES **contrary to expectations** *Contrary to expectations, we didn't have any hold-ups on the journey.* **| contrary to popular belief** *Contrary to popular belief, the economy is doing well.*

contrast *noun*

ADJ. **clear, marked, sharp, stark, startling, striking, strong** *There is a stark contrast between the lives of the rich and those of the poor.* **| complete, direct**

VERB + CONTRAST **make, offer, provide** *The fresh fruit provides a contrast to the rich chocolate pudding.*

PREP. **by ~** *When you look at their new system, ours seems very old-fashioned by contrast.* **| in ~ (to/with)** *The company lost $13 million this year, in contrast with a profit of $15 million last year.* **| ~ between, ~ in** *The contrast in appearance between the sisters was striking.* **| ~ to** *This busy social life was a complete contrast to his old quiet life.*

PHRASES **stand in … contrast to sb/sth** *Their attitudes towards love and marriage stand in stark contrast to those of their parents.*

contrast *verb*

1 compare things in order to show differences

ADV. **favourably, unfavourably** *He contrasted her brashness unfavourably with his mother's gentleness.*

PREP. **with**

PHRASES **compare and contrast** *Compare and contrast the two main characters in the play.*

2 be clearly different

ADV. **markedly, sharply, starkly, strikingly, strongly, vividly | nicely | oddly | favourably, unfavourably** *The open approach contrasts favourably with the exclusivity of some universities.*

PREP. **with** *This statement contrasts starkly with his previous statements.*

contravene *verb*

ADV. **blatantly, clearly** *blatantly contravening the rules of civilized warfare*

contravention *noun*

ADJ. **clear, direct**

PREP. **in ~ of** *He was in direct contravention of the law.* **| ~ of** *This was a clear contravention of the rules.*

contribute *verb*

1 **give**

ADV. **enormously, generously, greatly, handsomely, heavily, substantially** *His research has contributed enormously to our understanding of this disease. Many people contributed generously to the appeal.* **| equally** *a situation where husband and wife contribute equally to the family budget* **| fully | financially**

VERB + CONTRIBUTE **be asked to, be encouraged to**

PREP. **to** *I would like to contribute to the church restoration fund.* **| towards** *The company contributed £50,000 towards training costs.*

PHRASES **have little/a lot/much to contribute (to sth)** *He had very little to contribute to the conversation.*

2 **help cause sth**

ADV. **greatly, largely, significantly, substantially** *Parental involvement contributes significantly to children's learning.* **| effectively | further | actively, directly** *Unemployment contributes directly to homelessness.* **| indirectly | undoubtedly | unwittingly**

PREP. **to** *Several factors might contribute to the development of the disease.*

3 **write for a newspaper, etc.**

ADV. **regularly** *a talented photographer who contributed regularly to 'The Face'*

PREP. **to** *Students are encouraged to contribute articles to the university magazine.*

contribution *noun*

1 **sth that helps cause/increase sth**

ADJ. **important, significant | big, enormous, great, huge, major, strong, substantial | minor, modest, small | invaluable, positive, useful, valuable** *We like to think that we are making a positive contribution to society.* **| notable, outstanding**

VERB + CONTRIBUTION **make** *He made a major contribution to peace in the region.*

PREP. **~ to** *a valuable contribution to science*

2 **money given to help pay for sth**

ADJ. **generous, large | small | voluntary** *We rely entirely on voluntary contributions.*

VERB + CONTRIBUTION **make, offer, pay**

PREP. **~ to/towards** *I'd like to make a small contribution to the cost of the holiday.*

contributor *noun*

ADJ. **important, significant | big, large | main, principal | net** *net contributors to the economy* **| regular** *The core of regular contributors is essential to the magazine.*

PREP. **~ to** *Carbon dioxide is the largest contributor to the greenhouse effect.*

contrived *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound**

ADV. **highly, very** *highly contrived laboratory conditions* **| a little, rather, somewhat | carefully** *the carefully contrived image of party unity* **| cleverly, cunningly | artificially, deliberately**

control *noun*

1 **power over sb/sth**

ADJ. **absolute, complete, full, total | effective, proper | close, strict** *Weeds should be kept under strict control.* **| direct | government, parental, political, state**

VERB + CONTROL **have | assume, establish, gain, get, take, win** *A military junta took control of the country.* **| keep, maintain, retain** *She struggled to keep control of her voice.* **| lose, relinquish** *He lost control of the car when he swerved to avoid a cyclist.* **| wrest** *attempts to wrest control of the town from government forces* **| get out of, go out of** *The car went out of control on the icy road.* **| re-establish, regain** *Enemy forces have now regained control of the area.* **| give sb/sth** *The idea is to give councils full control of their own budgets.* **| exercise, exert** *Editors do not exercise control over large sections of their newspapers.* **| bring/get sth under** *They soon got the situation under control.*

PREP. **beyond/outside your ~** *Parking is outside my control.* **| in ~ (of)** *The elected government is back in control.* **| out of ~** *I had this feeling that things were out of control.* **| under (sb's) ~** *Everything is under control The department was under the control of Bryce Thompson.* **| ~ over** *They have little control over that side of the business.*

PHRASES **circumstances beyond sb's control** *The event has been cancelled due to circumstances beyond our control.*

2 **limiting/managing sth**

ADJ. **air-traffic, arms, birth, budgetary, cost, crowd, gun, pest, pollution, quality, rent, social, stock, traffic** *The police are experts in crowd control.*

3 **(usuallycontrols) method of limiting/managing sth**

ADJ. **strict, stringent, tight, tough | lax | border, export, price** *calls for tougher export controls*

VERB + CONTROL **impose, introduce** *The government has imposed strict controls on new building.* **| tighten** *The country has tightened its border controls.* **| ease, relax** *plans to relax price controls* **| lift, remove**

PREP. **~ on** *They have introduced controls on public spending.*

4 **for operating a machine**

ADJ. **remote | volume**

VERB + CONTROL **take** *Once we were in the air, I was allowed to take the controls.*

CONTROL + NOUN **panel**

PREP. **at the ~s** *Chief Air Officer Sedley was at the controls of the Boeing 707.*

control *verb*

ADV. **carefully, strictly, tightly** *Conditions in the greenhouse are carefully controlled. Expenditure within the company is tightly controlled.* **| effectively, properly | centrally, directly**

controller *noun*

ADJ. **air traffic | programme** *He is the new programme controller for BBC2.* **| credit, financial, marketing, production | district, divisional, group, regional**

PREP. **~ for** *the company's marketing controller for the north-west* > Note at JOB

controversial *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a highly controversial subject* **| rather, somewhat | politically**

controversy *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, major | bitter, fierce, raging, violent | lively** *His views have excited a lively controversy among fellow scientists.* **| fresh, further, new, renewed | continued, continuing, long-standing, prolonged | public | political | religious, theological | academic, critical, scholarly**

VERB + CONTROVERSY **arouse, cause, create, excite, fuel, give rise to, provoke, spark (off), stir up** *What they are doing is bound to stir up controversy.* **| be dogged by, be marked by, be riven by, be surrounded by** *This year's championships have been dogged by controversy.* **| avoid** *The prime minister seemed anxious to avoid controversy about these appointments.* **| run into** *The network ran into controversy over claims of faked documentary footage.* **| be no stranger to** *The MP, who is no stranger to controversy herself, said the scandal could have serious repercussions.* **| court** *The singer deliberately courts controversy with his racist and sexist lyrics.*

CONTROVERSY + VERB **arise, break out** *A fierce controversy has broken out over the issue.* **| rage** *Controversy is raging over the route of the new motorway.* **| exist** *Controversy exists as to how safe these drugs are.* **| centre on sth** *The controversy centred on the issue of compensation for the victims.* **| surround sth** *Much controversy surrounds the new exam.*

PREP. **amid ~** *The minister has resigned amid continuing controversy over his education proposals.* **| ~ about/concerning/over** *There has been a lot of controversy over the use of these drugs.* **| ~ among** *controversy among historians* **| ~ between** *controversy between the two leaders* **| ~ surrounding** *the bitter controversy surrounding the introduction of the new regulations* **| ~ with** *her long-running controversy with fellow academics*

PHRASES **a matter/source/subject of controversy, a storm of controversy** *The book raised a storm of controversy.*

convenience *noun*

1 being useful/easy/suitable

ADJ. **great | extra** *All our holiday chalets include a microwave and food processor for extra convenience.* **| administrative** *The system is based on administrative convenience rather than public benefit.*

CONVENIENCE + NOUN **food** *The children like convenience food such as sausages or fish fingers and chips.* **| store**

PREP. **at your ~** *Can you telephone me at your convenience* (= when it is convenient for you) *to arrange a further meeting?* **| for (your) ~** *I keep my cookery books in the kitchen for convenience. An order form is enclosed for your convenience.*

PHRASES **a marriage of convenience** (= a marriage for financial, political or practical reasons, not love), **at your earliest convenience** *(business)* (= as soon as possible), **comfort and convenience** *In this resort you can enjoy all the comfort and convenience of modern tourism.* **| for the sake of convenience** *We leave the keys near the front door for the sake of convenience.*

2 sth useful

ADJ. **great** *It's a great convenience living next door to a post office.* **| modern** *They wouldn't like to live without modern conveniences such as microwaves.*

convenient *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem, sound | make sth | find sth** *I find the new system much more convenient.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | quite | mutually** *We arranged a mutually convenient time to meet.* **| politically**

PREP. **for** *Would this be convenient for you? The house is quite convenient for the shops.*

convent *noun*

ADJ. **Carmelite, Catholic, Franciscan, Ursuline, etc.**

VERB + CONVENT **enter** *She entered a convent* (= became a nun) *at the age of sixteen.* **| leave | establish, found, set up** *The nuns established a convent here in 1692.*

CONVENT + NOUN **building, wall** *within the convent walls* (= inside the convent) **| education, school**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She spent her whole life in a convent.* **| ~ of** *the Convent of St Saviour*

convention *noun*

1 **way sth is done**

ADJ. **accepted, established, long-standing, old, traditional, well-established** *It's an established convention that the part of the prince is played by a woman.* | **normal, standard, usual** | **polite** *Her work refuses any concession to polite conventions of 'good taste'.* | **arbitrary** | **rigid, strict** | **cultural, legal, social** *the rigid social conventions of Victorian Britain* | **dramatic, fictional, literary, narrative, operatic, poetic** *The novel refuses to conform to the narrative conventions of 19th century realism.* | **orthographic, punctuation, rhetorical**

QUANT. **set**

VERB + CONVENTION **adhere to, conform to, follow, keep to, observe** *They followed the Greek convention of pinning gifts of money to the bride's dress.* | **be bound by, be hidebound by** *Life with the Leighs was not hidebound by rules or convention.* | **break (with), cut through, defy, flout** *She knew that she had broken an important social convention. He had the freedom of spirit to cut through convention. No young politician can afford to flout convention in this way.*

CONVENTION + VERB **demand sth, dictate sth** *Convention dictated that dangerous physical action is the part of heroes, not heroines.*

PREP. **according to/by ~** *By convention, the Queen gives the Royal Assent to all measures passed by Parliament.*

PHRASES **a break with convention** *In a surprising break with convention, she wore a red wedding dress.* | **a matter of convention**

2 **conference**

ADJ. **annual** | **international, national** | **Democratic, Republican, etc.** | **careers, constitutional, party, political** *A constitutional convention was elected to try to agree on a new form of government.*

VERB + CONVENTION **arrange, have, hold, organize** | **attend, go to** | **address** *He addressed the annual Republican convention.*

CONVENTION + VERB **take place**

CONVENTION + NOUN **centre | delegate**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *She was at the Democratic convention.*

PHRASES **delegates to a convention**

3 **international agreement**

ADJ. **global, international | European, UN/United Nations, etc. | climate, human rights, etc. | draft**

VERB + CONVENTION **adopt, ratify, sign** *Over 60 countries have yet to ratify the climate convention.* **| adhere to, comply with** *Most countries have adhered to the convention.* **| breach** *This practice breaches the arms convention.*

CONVENTION + VERB **apply, govern sth** *a convention governing the conditions under which mining is permitted* **| establish sth** *The convention established procedures for the transport of toxic waste.* **| ban sth**

PREP. **under a/the ~** *This is forbidden under the European Convention on Human Rights.* **| ~ between** *the 1869 convention between Turkey and Persia* **| ~ for** *the Berne Convention for the Conservation of European Wildlife* **| ~ on** *the 1951 United Nations Convention on refugees*

PHRASES **a breach of a convention**

conventional *adj*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **highly, very | entirely, quite, strictly | largely | fairly, pretty, rather, relatively, somewhat**

conversation *noun*

ADJ. **brief, short | lengthy, long** *We engaged in a long conversation.* **| endless** *listening to endless conversations about high prices and food shortages* **|** casual, everyday, general, **informal, normal, ordinary** *It's not a subject that often crops up in casual conversation.* **| intimate, personal, private | face-to-face | overheard, recorded, taped | phone/telephone | civilized, polite** *We sat making polite conversation and feeling rather uncomfortable.* **| friendly, pleasant | animated | fascinating, good, intelligent, interesting, stimulating** *He said that television had been the death of good conversation.* **| proper, real, serious** *There was no time away from the topic of money. She turned the conversation to her work.* **| enter, join (in) | break off | conclude, end, finish | avoid** *She avoided conversation with the other passengers.* **| encourage** *I was courteous but didn't encourage conversation.* **| hear, listen to, overhear | interrupt | resume | have no** *a plain girl who had no conversation* (= could not make conversation) *and no social graces*

CONVERSATION + VERB **take place** *When did this conversation take place?* **| continue, proceed** *The conversation proceeded in French.* | flow *They all relaxed and conversation flowed freely.* **| come back/round to, drift, move on (to), switch, turn to, veer back/off** *The conversation drifted for a proper conversation.* **| simple** *When you are struggling with an unfamiliar language, the simplest cinto family chat. The* **| strange | chance** *A chance conversation led to a brilliant new career for the young catering student.* **| desultory, halting, stilted** *We carried on a rather halting conversation.* **| hushed, low-voiced, murmured, muted, muttered, quiet, whispered | shouted | one-sided, two-way** *Think of prayer as a two-way conversation.* **| imaginary | after-dinner | adult** *Young children become quickly bored by adult conversation.*

QUANT. **snatch** *I overheard snatches of a conversation between two doctors.*

VERB + CONVERSATION **carry on, have, hold, make** *You can't hold a private conversation there. I tried to make conversation with the three silent people round the table.* **| begin, draw sb into, engage sb in, fall into, get into, open, start, strike up** *I got into conversation with one of the directors. He was waiting for her to open the conversation. I was keen to strike up a conversation with him.* **| be deep in, be engaged in** *They were deep in conversation and didn't notice the time.* **| continue, keep up** *Cara kept up a one-sided conversation.* **| control, dominate | bring around/round, steer, turn** *I managed to bring the conversation round to why they were leaving. He tried to steer the conversation conversation moved on to* *other things. The conversation turned to holidays in France.* **| cease, end, stop** *All conversation ceased and everyone turned round. The conversation ended when the vacuum cleaner started up.* **| run out** *All too soon the stilted conversation ran out.*

PREP. **during ~** *In the Western world it is polite to maintain eye contact during conversation.* **| in ~ with** *In the programme tonight we hear Dr Chris Toole in conversation with the artist Mary Witherspoon.* **| ~ about** *We had a long conversation about old cars.* **| ~ between** *a conversation between Jane and her parents* **| ~ on** *a conversation on the topic of activities for children* **| ~ with** *I had an interesting conversation with Dick Whortly.*

PHRASES **an attempt at conversation** *She ignored all my attempts at conversation.* **| be in close/deep/earnest conversation (with sb)** *Don was in close conversation with the girl on his right.* **| a babble/buzz/hum of conversation** *She could hear him over the buzz of conversation and laughter.* **| during the course of (the) conversation** *During the course of conversation, it emerged that Sheila had lived in Nigeria.* **| keep the conversation going** *Our hostess did her best to keep the conversation going.* **| a lull in the conversation, a topic of conversation** *The main topic of conversation was the big football match.*

conversion *noun*

1 **change to a new form/system/use**

ADJ. **careful** *Today, after a careful conversion, it is a very comfortable and elegant country home.* **| barn, loft | office | currency** *There are no charges for currency conversion.* **| data, file | energy** *Cheap solar energy conversion has been the dream of some scientists since the 1970s.*

VERB + CONVERSION **carry out, undertake**

PREP. **~ from, ~ into** *A local building firm will carry out the conversion of the farm buildings into business units.* **| ~ to** *conversion from analogue to digital data*

2 **religious**

ADJ. **religious | deathbed | overnight, sudden** *(figurative) her overnight conversion to market economics*

VERB + CONVERSION **experience, undergo** *In the late eighties he underwent a religious conversion.*

CONVERSION + NOUN **experience**

PREP. **~ from, ~ to** *her conversion from Buddhism to Christianity*

3 **in rugby**

VERB + CONVERSION **kick | add** *The try came in the third minute and Jon Bland added the conversion.*

convert *noun*

ADJ. **recent | enthusiastic | reluctant | Catholic, Jewish, etc.**

VERB + CONVERT **become | gain, make, win** *an attempt to gain converts to Communism*

PREP. **~ from** *One of the early popes, Clement was a convert from paganism.* **| ~ to** *a recent convert to Catholicism*

convey *verb*

ADV. **clearly, vividly** *The novel vividly conveys the experience of growing up during the war.* **| accurately, adequately | effectively, successfully**

VERB + CONVEY **can/could** *Gestures can convey meaning as well as words.* **| try to | manage to | fail to**

PREP. **to** *He managed to convey his enthusiasm to her.*

convict *noun*

ADJ. escaped

conviction *noun*

1 **for a crime**

ADJ. **earlier, previous | spent** *You are not obliged to acknowledge spent convictions.* **| successful | unsafe, wrongful** *The men's convictions were declared unsafe.* **| criminal | manslaughter, murder, etc.**

VERB + CONVICTION **have** *He has three previous criminal convictions.* **| lead to** *A reward is offered for information leading to the conviction of the attacker.* **| obtain, secure** *They need strong evidence to secure a conviction.* **| escape** *He believes that too many defendants are escaping conviction by claiming that they are insane.* **| appeal against** *He appealed against his conviction for murder.* **| overturn, quash | uphold**

CONVICTION + NOUN **rate** *The conviction rate for rape is extremely low.*

PREP. **on ~** *an offence which carries, on conviction, a sentence of not more than five years' imprisonment* **| ~ against** *The appeal court overturned the conviction against her.* **| ~ for** *a conviction for murder*

PHRASES **the rate of conviction**

2 **belief/appearance of belief**

ADJ. **absolute, complete, total, unshakeable, utter | deep, deeply held, fervent, firm, fundamental, great, intense, passionate, real, strong** *It is the firm conviction of the governors that this child should not be admitted to the school. There was no great conviction in his voice.* **| growing | personal | inner | ideological, moral, political, religious | Catholic, Christian, etc.**

VERB + CONVICTION **have** *She had this absolute conviction that what she liked others would like.* **| share** *The ex-leaders share a deep conviction that their views on world matters are still vitally important.* **| express | shake** *Nothing could shake her conviction that 'abroad' was a dangerous place.* **| strengthen | carry** *Her explanation failed to carry conviction in the face of the facts.* **| lack** *Her arguments lacked conviction.*

CONVICTION + NOUN **politics** *The demise of consensus and the rise of conviction politics.*

PREP. **with/without ~** *'Not true!' she said with conviction.* **| ~ about** *He had a strong personal conviction about the power of the printed word.*

PHRASES **have the courage of your convictions** (= to be brave enough to do what you feel to be right)

convinced *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem, sound | become** *She became convinced that something was wrong.* **| remain**

ADV. **deeply, firmly | absolutely, completely, fully, quite, totally, utterly | increasingly | almost | by no means, not altogether, not entirely, not fully, not wholly | fairly | half** *She was still only half convinced.* **| apparently | clearly**

PREP. **of** *He was convinced of her innocence.*

convincing *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | find sth** *I found his argument pretty convincing.*

ADV. **extremely, very | completely, thoroughly, totally, utterly | hardly, not altogether, not entirely, not wholly | far from, not remotely** *He was far from convincing as a leader.* **| fairly, pretty, quite | enough, sufficiently** *She produced a convincing enough performance as the wronged wife.*

convoy *noun*

ADJ. **armed, army, military, naval, troop | road, vehicle | aid, food, humanitarian, relief** *the proposal to send 500 armed soldiers to escort food convoys* **| UN/United Nations**

VERB + CONVOY **lead | escort, protect | attack**

CONVOY + VERB **carry sth | arrive**

PREP. **in ~** *The ships travelled in convoy.* **| ~ of** *a large convoy of lorries carrying medical supplies* **| ~ to** *the next aid convoy to the war-torn region*

convulsion *noun*

ADJ. **violent | slight | sudden**

VERB + CONVULSION **go into, have, suffer** *The patient lost consciousness and went into convulsions.* **| cause**

CONVULSION + VERB **shake sb** *A sudden convulsion shook him, and he fell to the ground.*

cook *noun*

ADJ. **excellent, good** *He's a very good cook* **| amateur, professional** *She wants to become a professional cook.* > Note at JOB

cook *verb*

ADV. **thoroughly, well** *Make sure you cook the meat well.* **| evenly, gently, slowly** *Turn the fish over so that it cooks evenly.* **| quickly**

PHRASES **be cooked through** *Ensure that the meat is cooked through.*

cooker *noun*

ADJ. **electric, gas | pressure | free-standing**

COOKER + NOUN **hood, point**

cookery *noun*

ADJ. **basic** *Before he leaves home, he needs to learn some basic cookery.* **| step-by-step** *a step-by-step cookery series for beginners* **| vegetarian | cordon bleu | microwave | Chinese, Eastern, French, etc.**

VERB + COOKERY **learn**

COOKERY + NOUN **demonstration | class, course, lesson, school | book, column, magazine, programme | expert, writer**

cooking *noun*

ADJ. **good, superb, wonderful** *Her cooking is wonderful.* **| home** *I miss my mother's good home cooking.* **| traditional** *traditional English cooking* **| regional | Chinese, Italian, etc.** *French regional cooking* **| vegetarian | slow**

VERB + COOKING **do** *Who does most of the cooking in your house?*

PREP. **during ~** *Stir the mixture to prevent the beans sticking to the bottom during cooking.* **| in ~** *I use yogurt quite a lot in cooking.*

cool *adj.*

1 fairly cold

VERBS **be, feel, look** *The forest looked cool and shady.* | **become, get** *It will probably get cool later, so bring a coat.* | **keep sth** *Try to keep the drinks cool.*

ADV. **very** | **fairly, quite, rather** | **beautifully, blissfully, deliciously, pleasantly, refreshingly, wonderfully** *The temple was light, spacious and blissfully cool.*

2 calm

VERBS **appear, be, look** | **keep, remain, stay** *She managed to stay cool during the meeting.* | **act, play it** (informal) *He forced himself to count to ten and act cool. For once I felt uncertain about my real feelings. I decided to play it cool.*

ADV. **very** | **completely** | **pretty** | **professionally** *Professionally cool, she went back to her patient.*

PHRASES **cool, calm and collected** *He did his best to appear cool, calm and collected.*

3 not friendly/enthusiastic

VERBS **appear, be, sound** | **remain**

ADV. **distinctly, very** | **rather, somewhat**

PREP. **about** *She was distinctly cool about their plans.* | **towards** *He was cool towards me.*

cool *verb*

1 **become colder**

ADV. **completely, thoroughly | a little, slightly | down, off** *He went for a swim to cool off.*

VERB + COOL **allow sth to, let sth** *Allow the cake to cool thoroughly before removing it from the tin.*

2 **become calmer**

ADV. **considerably | slightly, somewhat**

cooperate *verb*

ADV. **fully** *He has said he will cooperate fully with the police enquiries.* **| closely**

VERB + COOPERATE **will/would | agree to, be prepared to, be willing to | refuse to**

PREP. **in** *The two companies are cooperating in the development of a new engine.* **| on** *cooperating on a research project* **| with** *The firm has agreed to cooperate with the employment survey.*

cooperation *noun*

ADJ. **close | full | greater, increased | active | effective | international, local | mutual** *a society founded on mutual cooperation and shared prosperity* **| cultural, economic, military, political, social, technical**

VERB + COOPERATION **need, require | ask for, call for, demand, seek** *She called for closer cooperation on drugs control. They are seeking the cooperation of senior medical staff.* **| enlist, get** *We are hoping to enlist the cooperation of women's groups.* **| give (sb), offer (sb) | encourage, promote** *promoting cooperation between universities and industry* **| ensure**

PREP. **in ~ with** *The film was made in cooperation with the Sports Council.* **| with/without sb's ~** *With the cooperation of the public, the police may be able to catch this man.* **| ~ among** *increased technical cooperation among large companies* **| ~ between** *political cooperation between the two groups* **| ~ from** *You will need a bit of cooperation from your family.* **| ~ in** *We asked for their cooperation in the collection of data.* **| ~ on** *They offered their cooperation on the project.* **| ~ with** *We should like to thank you for your cooperation with us.*

PHRASES **a lack of cooperation, a need for cooperation** *There is a need for greater economic cooperation.*

cooperative *noun*

ADJ. **community, worker | agricultural, farmer/farming | production**

VERB + COOPERATIVE **form | run sth as** *The family business is now run as a cooperative.*

coordinate *verb*

ADV. **carefully** *a carefully coordinated policy*

PREP. **with** *We try to coordinate our activities with those of other groups.*

PHRASES **a coordinated approach/policy/programme**

coordination *noun*

1 **working together**

ADJ. **better, greater | poor | international | economic, market, policy | colour** *advice on colour coordination* (= colours that look good together)

VERB + COORDINATION **need, require | ensure, facilitate** *We must make a real effort to ensure greater coordination between the different groups.*

PREP. **in ~ with** *a pamphlet produced by the government in coordination with the Sports Council* **| ~ between** *to facilitate better coordination between departments* **| ~ in** *a lack of coordination in government policy* **| ~ with**

PHRASES **a lack of coordination, a need for coordination** *a need for coordination with the training department*

2 **ability to control your movements**

ADJ. **good | poor | physical | hand-eye** *You need good hand-eye coordination to play racket sports.*

VERB + COORDINATION **have | lack**

PHRASES **a lack of coordination**

cope *verb*

ADV. **admirably, well** *She copes very well under pressure.* **| adequately** *Will the prison system cope adequately with the increasing numbers of prisoners?* **| easily**

VERB + COPE **be able/unable to, can/can't** *She is unable to cope with her increasing workload. He felt that he couldn't cope any longer.* **| have to** *She had to cope without any help.* **| learn to | struggle to, try to** *struggling to cope with the demands of a new baby* **| be difficult to**

PREP. **with** *Some people find unemployment very difficult to cope with.*

PHRASES **sb's ability to cope, a way of coping** *a way of coping with bereavement*

copper *noun*

ADJ. **molten | beaten | unalloyed | burnished** *Her hair shone like burnished copper.*

VERB + COPPER **mine | produce | be alloyed with** *silver alloyed with copper*

COPPER + VERB **be alloyed with sth** *copper alloyed with arsenic*

COPPER + NOUN **mine | miner | mining, smelting | deposit, ore | alloy, sulphate | coin, ingot, pipe, plate, wire | engraving**

PREP. **in ~** (= using copper) *She works mainly in copper.*

PHRASES **an alloy of copper and/with sth** *Brass is an alloy of copper and zinc.*

copy *noun*

1 document/work of art

ADJ. **accurate, faithful, good | cheap, crude, poor** *It was not the original painting, but a crude copy.* **| carbon, duplicate, exact, facsimile, identical, perfect, true** *The twins were carbon copies of each other. It must be certified as a true copy of the original document.* **| draft, working | clean, fair | master, original, top** *Take a photocopy of the master copy.* **| additional, extra, further, spare | multiple** *The photocopier had been set for multiple copies.* **| modern | certified | photographic, photostat | back-up** *Remember to make back-up copies of all your disks.* **| hard, paper, printed** (computing) *You will need to supply a hard copy version of all files.*

VERB + COPY **make, print, run off, take** *I ran off a couple of copies of the letter.* **| attach, enclose, send** *I attach a copy of the report. Please find enclosed a copy of the draft document.* **| circulate, distribute, supply** *Copies of the article were circulated to members of the committee.* **| obtain, receive | keep** *Remember to keep copies of all your correspondence.*

2 book/newspaper/tape, etc.

ADJ. **additional, extra, further, spare | back, old** *I have a few back copies of the newspaper.* **| advance** *Advance copies of the book were sent out to reviewers.* **| review | complimentary, free** *Free copies of the leaflet are available from the Department of the Environment.* **| illegal, illicit, pirate/pirated, unauthorized | manuscript, printed, proof | bound, hardback, leather-bound, paperback, presentation** *The candidate must submit two bound copies of his or her thesis.* **| battered, tattered, well-thumbed** *my battered copy of Shakespeare's plays* **| perfect, pristine | personal** *Charles I's personal copy of the psalter* **| signed**

VERB + COPY **circulate, distribute | sign** *Author Bob Woodhouse will be signing copies of his new book.*

COPY + VERB **circulate** *Even with the new legislation pirate copies will circulate.* **| be available**

3 written material

ADJ. **good, great | advertising | editorial | knocking** *(informal) Knocking copy* (= writing that just says how bad sb/sth is) *is simply lazy journalism.*

VERB + COPY **edit, prepare, produce, write** *The subeditors prepare the reporters' copy for the paper.* **| make** *This will make great copy for the advertisement.*

COPY + NOUN **editor | date, deadline** *Copy date* (= the date for handing in copy) *for the next issue is 1 May.*

copy *verb*

1 make a copy

ADV. **illegally** *illegally copied software*

PREP. **from, onto** *Data can be copied from the computer onto floppy disks.*

2 write sth down exactly

ADV. **carefully, laboriously, painstakingly | down, out** *I copied down several phone numbers from the list. laboriously copying out an old manuscript*

PREP. **from, into** *She copied all the addresses into her address book.* **| off** *copying a recipe off the packet* **| onto** *He copied all the details from the brochure onto a piece of paper.*

3 do the same as sb else

ADV. **slavishly** *She slavishly copies the older girl's style.*

PREP. **from** *He's copied that mannerism from his brother.* **| off** *She was caught copying off another student.*

copyright *noun*

VERB + COPYRIGHT **have, hold, own** *The publisher has the copyright on all his books.* **| breach, infringe** *By publishing the book, they were guilty of infringing copyright.* **| be protected by** *Databases are generally protected by copyright.*

COPYRIGHT + VERB **protect sth** *Copyright protects your work from being commercially exploited by someone else without your consent.*

PREP. **in ~** *The songs remain in copyright.* **| out of ~** *His work is now out of copyright.* **| ~ on** *The family still holds the copyright on his works.*

PHRASES **breach/infringement of copyright** *They sued her for breach of copyright.* **| ownership of copyright** *Ownership of copyright can be transferred.*

cord *noun*

ADJ. **thick, thin | strong | elastic, nylon, silk | gold** *a silk bag tied with a gold cord* **| dressing-gown, picture | nerve, spinal, vocal** (see also **umbilical cord)**

QUANT. **length, piece** *You need a piece of thick cord about two metres long.*

VERB + CORD **pull | knot, tie (sth with)** *He knotted the cord of his dressing-gown.* **| undo, untie**

cordial *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **extremely, remarkably, very | not entirely | quite** *Relations between the two governments remained quite cordial.*

cordon *noun*

ADJ. **tight | police, security**

VERB + CORDON **form, throw** *Police officers threw a cordon around his car to protect him.* **| break through** *The crowd managed to break through the police cordon.*

CORDON + VERB **prevent sth** *A police cordon prevented the marchers from entering the main square.*

PREP. **~ around/round** *There is a tight security cordon around the area.*

core *noun*

ADJ. **hollow** *Each fibre has a hollow core trapping still air and aiding warmth. (figurative) There was a hollow core of sadness inside me.* **| solid | copper, iron, etc. | reactor** *nuclear reactor cores* **| central, essential, inner, innermost, very** *This is seen as the central core of the government's policy. A new spirit welled up from the very core of the nation.* **| common** *a common core of shared understanding about law and government* **| hard** *A hard core of supporters, mostly teenage girls, gathered at the airport to see the star arrive.* **| emotional** *the emotional core of her music*

VERB + CORE **form, make up** *These ideas formed the core of his philosophy.* **| get to** *We want to get to the core of the problem.*

CORE + NOUN **activity, area, course, curriculum, discipline, module, programme, skill, subject** *the core area of management studies Students study five core subjects.* **| component, element, group | business, service** *We need to stop this expansion and concentrate on the core business.* **| belief, value | vocabulary**

PREP. **at sth's ~** *At the core of our convictions is belief in individual liberty.* **| to the ~** *She was shaken to the core by the news. He's a politician to the core* (= in all his attitudes, beliefs and actions).

corn *noun*

1 **grain crops**

ADJ. **ripe | green** *The corn is still green.* **| young | standing** *a field of standing corn*

QUANT. **ear, sheaf | bag, sack | field**

VERB + CORN **grow | sow | cut, harvest | thresh | grind | eat**

CORN + VERB **grow**

CORN + NOUN **field | harvest | cob | mill**

PHRASES **corn on the cob** (= maize cooked with all the grains still attached to the cob)

2 **area of hard skin on the toe**

VERB + CORN **have, suffer from | treat**

corner *noun*

1 **where two lines/edges meet**

ADJ. **bottom, top | left/left-hand, right/right-hand | back, front | lower, upper | southern, south-western, etc. | external, outer, outside | inner, inside, internal | opposite | overhanging, projecting | sharp | rounded** *Smooth rounded corners make cleaning easier.* **| awkward** *Make sure the staircase is well lit, with no awkward corners.* **| extreme, far, very** *He parked in the far corner of the car park.*

CORNER + NOUN **cupboard, seat, table** *The waiter led us to a corner table.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Put your address in the top right-hand corner of the page.*

2 **of roads**

ADJ. **street** *There were a lot of young men hanging about on street corners.* **| sharp, tight** *It's a rather sharp corner and she took it a little too fast.* **| blind** *I hate coming out of that lane because it's a blind corner.*

VERB + CORNER **round, take, turn** *As they turned the corner all the parcels slid to one side.*

CORNER + NOUN **shop** *the local corner shop*

PREP. **around/round a/the ~** *A white van came round the corner.* **| at a/the ~** *at the corner of West Street and Park Street Turn right at the first corner.* **| on a/the ~** *the shop on the corner of Mount Street*

3 **place/region**

ADJ. **quiet** *He found a quiet corner and got on with his work.* **| little, small, tiny** *Welcome to our little corner of Surrey.* **| distant, far, far-flung, remote** *a remote corner of Afghanistan* **| picturesque | dark, gloomy, shadowed, shadowy** *She sat in a dark corner of the room.* **| shady, sheltered** *a cool shady corner of the garden* **| forgotten, hidden, obscure, odd, secret** *The box had been tucked away in an odd corner of the attic.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She tucked herself away in a corner and read all day.*

PHRASES **the corner of your mind** *(figurative) He pushed the thought back into the darkest corner of his mind.*

4 **difficult situation**

ADJ. **tight** *He was used to having to talk his way out of tight corners.*

VERB + CORNER **back/drive/force sb into | get sb/yourself into** *They had got her in a corner and there was nothing she could do about it.*

PHRASES **be in a bit of a corner** *I'm in a bit of a corner over finding staff for Friday evening.*

5 **in sport**

ADJ. **penalty | short**

VERB + CORNER **award (sb)** *The referee awarded a corner.* **| take** *Beckham took the corner and Scholes headed it into the net.* **| force, win** *He put the goalkeeper under pressure and managed to force a corner.* **| concede** *James blocked the shot but conceded a corner.* **| miss | clear**

CORNER + NOUN **kick**

coroner *noun*

ADJ. **deputy**

CORONER + VERB **issue sth** *The coroner issued a burial certificate.* **| order sth** *The coroner ordered an investigation into the man's death.* **| record a verdict of sth** *The coroner recorded a verdict of accidental death.*

PHRASES **a coroner's court/inquest, a coroner's report/verdict**

corporal *noun* > Note at RANK

corporation *noun*

ADJ. **big, giant, large, major | powerful | foreign | global, international, multinational, transnational | private, public | broadcasting, business, finance, industrial, oil**

CORPORATION + NOUN **tax** > Note at ORGANIZATION(for verbs)

corps *noun*

ADJ. **elite** *the elite corps of the Sultan's army* **| multinational** *a multinational corps under UK command* **| cadet, officer, volunteer | army, diplomatic, medical | media, press** *the UN press corps*

CORPS + NOUN **commander**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He's in the Royal Army Medical Corps.*

corpse *noun*

ADJ. **human | naked | bloody, headless, mutilated | decaying, desiccated, rotting** *We passed the desiccated corpse of a brigand hanging on a gibbet.* **| shrouded | embalmed, mummified | living** *For over a year he lay in his hospital bed, a living corpse.*

VERB + CORPSE **lay out** *The corpse had been laid out on a marble slab.* **| embalm | butcher, dismember, eviscerate, mutilate**

CORPSE + VERB **be sprawled, lie, sprawl** *They saw the corpse sprawled on the steps.*

PHRASES **be littered/strewn with corpses** *The ground was littered with the corpses of enemy soldiers.*

correct *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem** *His first idea proved correct.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely, entirely, perfectly, quite** *What you say is perfectly correct, but it gives the wrong impression.* **| not entirely, not strictly** *He is not entirely correct in his assumptions.* **| basically, broadly, essentially, fundamentally, largely, more or less, substantially** *His estimate has turned out to be more or less correct.* **| clearly, undoubtedly | demonstrably** *None of the explanations offered is demonstrably correct?or demonstrably incorrect.* **| ideologically, politically** *(sometimes disapproving)* (= avoiding language or behaviour that may offend some groups of people) *He was an interesting speaker, if not always politically correct in his views.* **| legally, technically | morally | anatomically, botanically, factually, grammatically** *The flower drawings are all to scale and botanically correct.*

PREP. **in** *The diagram is correct in every detail. I think I am correct in saying that this project is the first of its kind in this country.*

correction *noun*

ADJ. **minor, small | necessary** *Make any necessary corrections before the text is printed.* **| error, spelling**

VERB + CORRECTION **make | need, require** *There are some programming errors that need correction.*

PREP. **~ to** *I've got to make one or two small corrections to the text before it's finished.*

correctness *noun*

ADJ. **grammatical, ideological, political** *(sometimes disapproving) Political correctness is the principle of avoiding language or behaviour that may offend certain groups of people.*

VERB + CORRECTNESS **doubt, question** *She doubted the correctness of the information.* **| be convinced of** *She was convinced of the correctness of the decision.* **| confirm**

correlate *verb*

ADV. **closely, highly, significantly, strongly, well | positively | inversely, negatively**

VERB + CORRELATE **be found to, be shown to** *High morale among staff was found to correlate positively with productivity.*

PREP. **to** *Property values are negatively correlated to the tax rate.* **| with** *The average speed of the vehicles correlates closely with the severity of the accident caused.*

correlation *noun*

ADJ. **close, good, high, remarkable, significant, strong | clear, obvious | direct, simple** *There is a direct correlation between exposure to sun and skin cancer.* **| broad, general, overall | low, poor, weak | positive | inverse, negative | statistical**

VERB + CORRELATION **have** *The second group of measurements had a high correlation with the first.* **| discover, establish, find, observe, show** *The study showed a significant correlation between the baby's sleeping position and the risk of cot death.*

CORRELATION + VERB **exist** *A strong correlation exists between the fatness of parents and their children.*

PREP. **~ between** *the correlation between speed and risk of accident* **| ~ with** *the correlation of height with weight*

PHRASES **lack of correlation**

correspond *verb*

1 **be the same/match**

ADV. **closely | directly, exactly, precisely | approximately, broadly, roughly**

PREP. **to** *Their nursery schools correspond roughly to our infant schools.* **| with** *The movement of the dot on the screen corresponds exactly with the movement of the control lever.*

2 **write letters**

ADV. **regularly**

PREP. **with** *She corresponded regularly with her former music teacher.*

correspondence *noun*

1 **letters exchanged**

ADJ. **confidential, personal, private | business, commercial, diplomatic, official | regular | voluminous | lively** *a lively correspondence in 'The Times' about ways of preparing tripe*

QUANT. **item** *Numerous items of correspondence have been received on this subject.* **| pile** *He was leafing through piles of correspondence.*

VERB + CORRESPONDENCE **enter into, have** *It would be foolish for a doctor to enter into correspondence with a patient. I have had correspondence with the company director on this matter.* **| carry on, keep up** *We kept up a correspondence for many months.* **| send** *Please send correspondence to 'Letters to the Editor, Model Railway Journal'.* **| receive | read | answer, deal with, handle** *The secretary deals with all the correspondence.* **| catch up on** *I would spend the time reading or catching up on my correspondence.* **| intercept** *The department intercepted the correspondence of foreign diplomats.*

CORRESPONDENCE + NOUN **column** *the correspondence columns of the 'London Review of Books'* **| course** *I did a correspondence course in economics.*

PREP. **by/through ~** *All our business is conducted by correspondence.* **| in ~ with** *I have been in correspondence with the manager of the store.* **| ~ about/on/concerning/regarding/relating to** *files full of confidential correspondence relating to the company's expansion plans* **| ~ between** *I have seen the correspondence between the company and the local authority.* **| ~ from** *The editor welcomes correspondence from readers on any subject.* **| ~ with** *copies of his correspondence with the Queen*

2 **connection**

ADJ. **direct, exact, one-to-one** *The child can see the one-to-one correspondence of the buttons and buttonholes.* **| close**

PREP. **~ between** *a close correspondence between theory and practice*

correspondent *noun*

1 **reporter**

ADJ. **newspaper, television | business, education, foreign, health, industrial, legal affairs, media, parliamentary, political, royal, science, sports, war | special** *A report from our special correspondent at the UN.* **| American, Moscow, New York Times, etc.**

CORRESPONDENT + VERB **write (sth)**

corridor *noun*

ADJ. **endless, long | short | broad, wide | narrow | labyrinthine** *the labyrinthine corridors of the ministry building* **| brightly-lit | badly-lit, dark, darkened, dim, gloomy, ill-lit | chilly, dank, draughty | bare, blank, featureless | deserted, empty | carpeted, lino-covered, marble-floored, stone, stone-flagged, tiled | picture-lined | white-walled, etc. | hospital, hotel, school | access | land, peace** *(both figurative) UN troops will secure the land corridor so that food supplies can reach the trapped civilians.*

VERB + CORRIDOR **line** *Portraits line the corridors of the palace.*

CORRIDOR + VERB **lead** *Narrow corridors lead off from the main hallway.* **| run along/down sth** *The corridor runs down the middle of the building.* **| link sth** *The corridor links the old part of the hospital with the new.*

CORRIDOR + NOUN **wall**

PREP. **along a/the ~, at/to the end of a/the ~, down a/the ~** *The office is just down the corridor on the left.* **| in a/the ~** *I put my head down as I passed him in the corridor.*

PHRASES **the corridors of power** *(figurative) She was a minister with considerable influence in the corridors of power.* **| a labyrinth/maze of corridors** *She led us through a maze of hotel corridors to our room.*

corrode *verb*

PHRASES **be badly corroded** *If the pipe is badly corroded, it should be replaced.*

corrosion *noun*

VERB + CORROSION **cause | prevent | suffer from** *a building whose structure is suffering from corrosion*

PHRASES **signs of corrosion**

corrosive *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly, strongly, very** *Many highly corrosive substances are used in the nuclear industry.*

corrupt *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **thoroughly, totally** *The whole regime is thoroughly corrupt.* **| notoriously** *one of the most notoriously corrupt city councils* **| morally, politically**

corruption *noun*

ADJ. **gross, massive, serious | petty | endemic, rampant, rife, widespread** *Corruption was rife before the election.* **| high-level | alleged | financial, moral, political | official | government, police**

QUANT. **case**

VERB + CORRUPTION **attack, combat, curb, eliminate, fight, root out, stem, tackle** *He strongly attacked corruption and favouritism in the government. This police unit was established to fight corruption.* **| be involved in**

CORRUPTION + NOUN **scandal** *She was brought down by a corruption scandal.* **| allegation** *The corruption allegations proved false.* **| investigation**

PREP. **~ among** *corruption among high-ranking government officials*

PHRASES **accusations/allegations of corruption, bribery and corruption** > Note at CRIME

cosmetic *adj.*

VERBS be

ADV. merely, purely *Opponents described the reforms as a purely cosmetic exercise.* **| largely**

cosmetic *noun* **(**usually **cosmetics)**

ADJ. **expensive | cheap**

VERB + COSMETIC **use, wear | apply, put on**

COSMETIC + NOUN **business, company, industry**

cosmopolitan *adj*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **distinctly, truly, very**

cost *noun*

1 **money needed to buy sth**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, high, huge, prohibitive** *The high cost of energy was a problem for consumers. The cost of repairs would be prohibitive.* | **low** | **escalating, rising** | **basic** | **full, overall, total** *You will have to bear the full cost of the building work.* | **additional, extra** *She was unwilling to pay the extra cost to get a room to herself.* | **average** *A total of 3.6 million tickets at an average cost of $58 are available for the Games.* | **gross, net** | **estimated** | **budgeted** | **likely, potential** | **real** | **annual, monthly, etc.** | **replacement** *What is the current replacement cost of these assets?* | **capital, start-up** *(business) The capital cost of these projects* (= what it costs to set them up) *is some $100 million?then there'll be the operating costs.* | **marginal** *(business) Competition will drive the price down near to the marginal cost* (= the cost of the labour and materials to produce the product). | **unit** *(business)* (= the cost of producing one item) | **fixed, variable** *(business) Fixed costs include rent.* | **direct, indirect**

VERB + COST **bear, cover, meet, pay** *Allow £15 per day to cover the cost of meals. MPs receive allowances to meet the cost of travel.* | **increase, push up** *Inflation is pushing up the cost of living beyond our reach.* | **bring down, cut, lower, reduce** | **keep down** | **estimate, put** *I would put the cost of a new employee at £30,000 a year.* | **calculate, work out** | **reimburse**

COST + VERB **escalate, go up, increase, rise** *The cost of dental treatment is increasing.* | **fall, go down**

COST + NOUN **reduction, savings** *the pursuit of cost reduction* | **overrun** *There were cost overruns on each project.* | **base** *It is essential that we operate with the lowest possible cost base and most efficient facilities.*

PREP. **at a ~ of** *A new computer system has been installed at a cost of £80,000.* | **~ to** *The cost to the government will be quite high.*

PHRASES **an increase/a reduction in cost, at no extra cost** *The hotel offers tea and coffee at no extra cost.* | **cost of living** *The cost of living has risen sharply in the last year.*

2 **costs: money needed to run a business/home, etc.**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, high, huge | low | escalating, rising** *We have had to raise our prices because of rising costs.* **| administration/ administrative, fuel, labour, operating, production, (research and) development, running, transport, travel**

VERB + COST **incur** *The corporation will pay all costs and expenses incurred with its written consent.* **| pay | increase | bring down, cut, lower, reduce** *The company has to find ways of cutting costs.* **| keep down** *The use of cheap labour helped to keep costs down.* **| cover** *We're hoping that we'll at least cover costs at the conference.*

COST + VERB **be associated, be involved** *the costs associated with buying and selling property* **| escalate, rise**

3 **effort/loss/damage to achieve sth**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, heavy, huge** *They advanced a few hundred metres, but at a heavy cost in life.* **| dreadful, terrible** *the terrible cost of the war in death and suffering* **| real | environmental, financial, human, personal, political, social** *the environmental cost of nuclear power*

VERB + COST **outweigh** *Do the benefits outweigh the costs?* **| count** *The town is now counting the cost of its failure to provide adequate flood protection.*

PREP. **at (a) ~ (to)** *The raid was foiled, but at a cost: an injured officer who was lucky to escape with his life. He worked non-stop for three months, at considerable cost to his health.* **| at the ~ of** *She saved him from the fire but at the cost of her own life.* **| ~ in** *I felt a need to please people, whatever the cost in time and energy.*

PHRASES **at all costs/at any cost** *You must stop the press finding out at all costs* (= whatever it takes to achieve this). **| to your cost** *He's a ruthless businessman, as I know to my cost* (= I know from my own bad experience).

4 **costs: in a court case**

ADJ. **legal**

VERB + COST **incur** *Both sides incurred costs of over £50,000.* **| pay** *He was fined £200 and ordered to pay costs.* **| be awarded** *If you win your case you will normally be awarded costs.*

cost *verb*

ADV. **fully, properly** *The project has not been properly costed yet.*

PREP. **at** *The programme was costed at £6 million.*

costly *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove**

ADV. **enormously, exceptionally, excessively, extremely, very | increasingly | fairly, pretty, quite, rather | potentially | relatively**

PREP. **for** *The six-month delay will be costly for the company.* **| in** *This process is costly in computer time.* **| in terms of** *These teaching methods are too costly in terms of staff resources.* **| to** *These measures could be costly to employers.*

costume *noun*

ADJ. **full** *For the dress rehearsal, the cast will be in full costume.* **| colourful, elaborate, lavish | national, traditional | period | eighteenth-century, Victorian, etc. | clown, fairy, etc.**

VERB + COSTUME **be dressed in, dress in, have on, wear** *He had a cowboy costume on.*

COSTUME + NOUN **design | designer | drama** *The film is a costume drama based on a 19th-century novel.* **| change** *The main character had five costume changes.*

PREP. **in ~** *The battle was re-enacted by actors in period costume.*

cottage *noun*

ADJ. **humble, little, small, tiny | charming, lovely, picturesque, pretty | country, rural | lonely | empty, unoccupied | derelict, run-down | half-timbered, thatched, thatch-roofed | detached, terraced | three-bed, three-bedroom, three-bedroomed, three-room, etc. | rented | farm, estate, tied** (= owned by a farmer and rented to one of his/her workers) *They lived in a tied cottage on the estate.* **| holiday, summer, weekend | retirement | guest** *They put us up in a guest cottage next to their house.*

VERB + COTTAGE **have, own** *It was her dream to have a little cottage in the country* **| live in, stay in** *We stayed in a cottage on a farm.* **| rent, take** *We rented a holiday cottage for a week.* **| let | buy | sell**

COTTAGE + NOUN **home | garden**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

cotton *noun*

ADJ. **pure** *a pure cotton T-shirt* **| light, thin** *shivering in her thin cotton nightdress* **| fine | rough | raw | printed | mercerized | sewing**

QUANT. **reel** (= pf cotton thread) **| bale, bolt** (= both of fabric)

VERB + COTTON **grow | pick**

COTTON + NOUN **thread | bud, wool | field, plantation | industry, manufacturing | mill | manufacturer | reel**

couch *noun*

ADJ. **comfortable | wide | psychiatrist's** *She spends several hours a week on the psychiatrist's couch.*

VERB + COUCH **lie (down) on, recline on, sink back on, sink into, sit (down) on, sprawl on, stretch (out) on** *They sat down on the wide couch.* **| get up from, rise from, slide off, swing your legs/yourself off**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *He slept on the couch.*

COUCH + NOUN **potato** *(figurative)* (= sb who spends all their time sitting on a couch) *He's turned into a real couch potato since he subscribed to the sports channel.*

cough *noun*

ADJ. **little, polite, slight** *The butler gave a little cough to announce his presence.* **| violent | bad, nasty | chesty, croupy | barking, dry, hacking, racking, rasping | persistent | smoker's** *He had a smoker's cough and nicotine-yellowed fingers.*

VERB + COUGH **give** *He gave a slight, apologetic cough and said, 'Excuse me.'* **| have, suffer from | catch, develop, get**

COUGH + NOUN **medicine, mixture, sweet** > Special page at ILLNESS

cough *verb*

ADV. **a bit, a little, slightly | apologetically, discreetly, nervously, politely | loudly, violently | up** *He vomited and began coughing up blood.*

PHRASES **cough and splutter** *The whisky made her cough and splutter.* **| a coughing fit** *He had a coughing fit and couldn't speak for a few moments.* **| cough into life** *(figurative) The old engine coughed into life.*

council *noun*

1 **local government**

ADJ. **local | metropolitan, rural, urban | borough, city, community, county, district, municipal, parish, provincial, regional, town | elected**

VERB + COUNCIL **elect | control** *Many county councils are now controlled by the Conservatives.* **| apply to** *Students should apply to their local council for a grant.*

COUNCIL + NOUN **elections | member | meeting | chamber | tax**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *She's on the borough council.*

PHRASES **a seat on a council** *Our party won the majority of seats on the city councils.*

2 **group chosen to give advice, money, etc.**

ADJ. **advisory, funding, research | arts, sports**

VERB + COUNCIL **create, establish, form, found, set up, start | apply to** *As a struggling young composer she applied to the Scottish Arts Council for a grant.*

COUNCIL + VERB **award sb sth, give sb sth** *In Britain, the Arts Council gives grants to theatres.*

COUNCIL + NOUN **member**

PREP. **~ for** *setting up a new council for the arts* > Note at ORGANIZATION

councillor *nou*n

ADJ. **borough, city, county, district, local, parish, town | Conservative, Labour, Liberal Democrat, Tory, etc. | former | newly-elected**

VERB + COUNCILLOR **elect sb (as)**

PHRASES **the office of councillor**

counsel *noun*

1 **advice**

ADJ. **good, wise**

VERB + COUNSEL **give (sb), offer (sb) | accept, follow, get, listen to, take** *Listen to the counsel of your elders.*

COUNSEL + VERB **prevail** *In the end, wiser counsels prevailed.*

PREP. **~ on** *He is there to give you counsel on all matters.*

PHRASES **a counsel of despair** (= advice not to try to do sth because it is too difficult), **a counsel of perfection** (= advice that is good but difficult or impossible to follow)

2 **lawyer**

ADJ. **legal** *They were denied legal counsel or the right to call witnesses in their defence.* **| chief, senior | junior | leading** *The accused was represented by a leading counsel.* **| Crown, prosecuting/prosecution** *The witness was cross-examined by the prosecuting counsel.* **| defence/defending | King's/Queen's**

VERB + COUNSEL **appoint | brief, instruct** *My solicitor will brief the senior counsel.*

COUNSEL + VERB **represent sb | cross-examine sb, question sb | argue sth, claim sth, say sth, state sth, submit sth** *His counsel argued that he had not intended to harm the women.*

PHRASES **counsel for the appellant/defendant/plaintiff/respondent, counsel for the defence/prosecution** *to be questioned by the counsel for the prosecution*

counselling *noun*

ADJ. **group, individual | professional | proper | abortion, bereavement, business, career, debt, family, marriage guidance, retirement, stress**

VERB + COUNSELLING **give sb, offer (sb), provide (sb with) | have, receive | be in need of, need** *Many of the victims of the tragedy still need counselling.* **| seek**

COUNSELLING + NOUN **service** *the new student counselling and guidance service* **| session | skills**

PREP. **~ for** *counselling for parents and children counselling for depression*

counsellor *noun*

ADJ. **accredited, professional, trained | career, debt, marriage guidance, student**

VERB + COUNSELLOR **see, talk to** *He talked to a counsellor about his marriage difficulties.* > Note at JOB

count *noun*

1 **act of counting**

VERB + COUNT **do, have** *We did a quick count of the children and there were none missing.*

PREP. **for a ~** *Raise your leg and hold it there for a count of ten.*

PHRASES **at the last/latest count** *At the last count she had 43 cats!*

2 **measurement/total**

ADJ. **high | low | blood, calorie, cell, pollen, sperm** *The pollen count is very high in the spring.* **| body, head** *The movie depends on good dialogue rather than violence and a high body count. The firm now has a head count of around 70 staff.*

VERB + COUNT **keep** *Keep a count of your calorie intake for one week.* **| lose** *I've lost count of the times I've heard that joke.*

COUNT + VERB **go up, increase, rise | drop, go down** *Her white cell count has gone down again.*

counter *noun*

1 **long flat surface**

ADJ. **bar, delicatessen/deli, display, post office, reception, shop | kitchen | glass, mahogany, wooden, zinc**

VERB + COUNTER **serve at/behind, work at/behind** *Mary served behind the counter at Bacon's for a few hours a week.* **| wipe (down)** *The barman wiped down the counter in silence.*

COUNTER + NOUN **staff** *post office counter staff*

PREP. **across a/the~** *He pushed the money across the counter to her.* **| at/behind a/the ~** *The assistant behind the counter gave a curt nod.* **| on a/the ~** *all the goods on the counter*

2 **action used to prevent sth**

ADJ. **effective**

PREP. **~ to** *The government's programme should be an effective counter to unemployment.*

counter-attack *noun*

ADJ. **strong** VERB + COUNTER-ATTACK **launch, mount**

PREP. **~ against** *The soldiers mounted a strong counter-attack against the rebels.*

counterpart *noun*

ADJ. **direct** *the difficulty of translating terms with no direct counterpart in the other language* | **modern** *the modern counterparts of those medieval writers* | **female, male** *Women soldiers will join their male counterparts at the army base.* | **older, younger** | **domestic, foreign** | **rural, urban** | **northern, southern, etc.** | **British, French, etc.**

VERB + COUNTERPART **have** *British environmentalists have their counterparts in Europe.*

country *noun*

1 **area of land with its own government**

ADJ. **beautiful, fascinating, great** *this great country of ours* | **hot, tropical** | **temperate** | **cold** | **foreign, overseas, strange** *It's difficult to live in a foreign country when you don't speak the language. students from overseas countries What must it be like, to grow old in a strange country?* | **home, native** | **adopted** *Many refugee servicemen gave their lives for their adopted country.* | **host** *The refugees do jobs that workers in the host country refuse to do.* | **neighbouring** | **distant, far, faraway** | **independent** | **occupied** | **free** *'It's a free country!' he shouted. 'I can do what I like.'* | **enemy, friendly** | **neutral, non-aligned** | **Arab, African, etc.** | **Eastern, Western, etc.** | **Anglophone, English-speaking, etc.** | **EU, NATO, etc.** | **member, non-member** *OECD member countries* | **developed, industrial/ industrialized** | **developing, Thirld World, underdeveloped** *industrially backward countries* | **advanced** *economically advanced countries* | **backward** | **low-income, poor** | **affluent, rich** | **capitalist, communist, democratic, socialist** | **Catholic, Muslim, etc.** | **oil-exporting, oil-producing**

VERB + COUNTRY **govern, rule, run** *The country was ruled by a brutal dictatorship. the politicians who run the country* | **lead** *He accused the government of leading the country to disaster.* | **divide, split** *The issue of the single currency has divided the country.* | **flee, leave** *The former president has been forced to flee the country.* | **serve** | **love** *He loved his country deeply.* | **betray** | **play for, represent** *She represented her country at the Sydney Olympics.* | **tour, travel, visit** *He travelled the country on his motorbike.*

COUNTRY + VERB **border sth** *countries bordering the Black Sea* | **export sth, import sth** *The country exports around 80% of its output.* | **agree sth, sign sth** *The two countries signed a basic treaty of cooperation.*

PREP. **across a/the ~** *travelling across the country* | **all over a/the ~** *They are holding special events all over the country.* | **around/round a/the ~** *This is just one of 30 sites around the country.* | **in a/the ~** *people who live in this country* | **throughout a/the ~** *New schools are being built throughout the country.*

PHRASES **country of origin** *All goods must be clearly labelled with their country of origin.* | **a part of a country** *There will be rain in many parts of the country tomorrow.* | **the country as a whole** *The rich benefited from the reforms, not the* *country as a whole.*

2 **area of land with particular features**

ADJ. **desert, hill/hilly, mountain/mountainous, open, wooded** *The village is surrounded by miles and miles of open country.* **| rough, wild | farming** *This part of Africa is rich farming country.* **| hunting, walking** *superb walking country*

QUANT. **stretch, tract** *a beautiful stretch of country Whole tracts of country, once fertile, have become arid.*

3 **land away from towns/cities**

COUNTRY + NOUN **life | air | lane, road | area, district | town, village | cottage, estate, home, house, mansion, residence, retreat, seat | park | walk | boy, girl | gentleman, squire | dweller, folk, people**

PREP. **across ~** *riding across country* **| in the ~** *She lives in the country.*

countryside *noun*

ADJ. **attractive, beautiful, delightful, glorious, lovely, lush, magnificent, picturesque, pleasant, spectacular, stunning, unspoilt, wonderful** *miles of unspoilt countryside* | **open** | **green, wooded** *a walk through the lush green countryside* | **flat** | **hilly, mountainous, rolling, rugged, undulating** | **wild** | **peaceful, quiet, tranquil** | **local, nearby, surrounding** | **native** *The feel for his native countryside comes through strongly in his photographs.* | **English, Kent, etc.**

QUANT. **area, stretch, tract** *a delightful stretch of countryside vast tracts of countryside*

VERB + COUNTRYSIDE **conserve, preserve, protect** | **destroy, ravage, ruin, spoil** *The countryside has been ravaged by pollution.* | **roam, wander (around/ through)** *In the afternoons they roamed the countryside roundabout.*

PREP. **in the ~** *living in the countryside* | **surrounded by ~** *a small village surrounded by glorious countryside* | **through (the) ~** *travelling through pleasant open countryside* | **~ around** *the countryside around Oxford*

county *noun*

ADJ. **border, coastal, rural** *the Welsh border counties* **| eastern, western, etc. | historic/historical** *the historic county of Westmorland* (= that no longer exists) **| home** *London and the home counties* (= the counties around London) **| native** *He was elected MP for his native county of Merioneth.* **| neighbouring | dry** (= where it is illegal to sell alcohol)

VERB + COUNTY **represent** *She represents the county in Parliament.*

COUNTY + NOUN **boundary** *The river forms the county boundary.* **| town** *Trowbridge is the county town of Wiltshire* (= the town where the local government offices are). **| council, councillor | court | library | cricket | championship, match** (= in cricket)

PREP. **in a/the ~** *people who live in this county*

coup *noun*

1 (*also* **coup d'etat**) **violent change of government**

ADJ. **abortive, attempted, failed, unsuccessful | successful | bloody | bloodless | army, military | palace, presidential** *He deposed his father in a palace coup in 1970.* **| communist | boardroom** *She lost her position in a boardroom coup* (= a sudden change of power among senior managers in a company).

VERB + COUP **launch, mount, stage | foil, put down** *The coup was immediately put down and the plotters were shot.* **| plan, plot | lead | come to power in, seize power in** *He seized power in a military coup*

COUP + NOUN **attempt, plot | leader, plotter**

PREP. **~ against** *an army coup against the president*

2 **achievement**

ADJ. **big, brilliant, great, major, real, spectacular** *Winning that contract was her greatest coup.* **| diplomatic, financial, intelligence, propaganda, publicity**

VERB + COUP **pull off** *He managed to pull off a major diplomatic coup.*

couple *noun*

ADJ. **beautiful, handsome, lovely | elderly, middle-aged, retired, teenage, young | bridal, honeymoon, married, newly-married, newly-wed** *The bridal couple stood up for the first dance. The hotel was full of honeymoon couples.* **| cohabiting, unmarried | heterosexual | gay, homosexual, lesbian, same-sex | childless, infertile** *childless couples seeking to adopt*

VERB + COUPLE **make** *They make a beautiful couple.*

PHRASES **the happy couple** (= the bride and groom) *We stood and drank a toast to the happy couple.*

coupon *noun*

ADJ. **valid** *This coupon is valid until 31 January.* **| money-off | entry** *To enter the competition, fill in the entry coupon on page 6.* **| clothing, petrol, etc.**

VERB + COUPON **collect, save** *She had saved enough coupons to get a free flight.* **| complete, fill in | post, return, send (off)** *Cut out and return this coupon to claim your free holiday.*

courage *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, outstanding, tremendous | moral, physical** *Caring for elderly relatives requires considerable moral courage.*

VERB + COURAGE **require, take** *It takes courage to sing in public.* **| have** *I didn't have the courage to tell him.* **| show | find, pluck up** *I finally plucked up enough courage to speak to Rachel.*

courageous *adj*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, highly, incredibly, tremendously, very | quite, rather**

courier *noun*

ADJ. diplomatic | drug | cycle, motorcycle

VERB + COURIER act as *He has admitted to acting as a drug courier.* **| send sth by** *Urgent deliveries of medicine may be sent by motorcycle courier.* > Note at JOB

course *noun*

1 **complete series of lessons/studies**

ADJ. **full-time, part-time | one-year, two-year, etc. | day, evening | crash, intensive | advanced, intermediate, etc. | foundation, introductory | refresher | academic | graduate, postgraduate, undergraduate | degree, diploma, honours** *a joint honours course in French and Russian* **| correspondence, external, sandwich | induction | training, vocational**

VERB + COURSE **do, take** *He took a crash course in Italian.* **| enrol on, join, sign up for | withdraw from** *She withdrew from the course because of illness.* **| teach | offer, run** *The school runs courses all year round.* **| complete** *It took him five years to complete the course.* **| pass | fail**

COURSE + VERB **run** *The course runs from 10?15 May.*

PREP. **~ in** *a course in applied linguistics* **| ~ on** *a course on the development of capitalism*

2 **route/direction**

VERB + COURSE **alter, change** *The boat altered course during the storm.* **| chart, plot, set** *We set course for Malta.* **| be blown off | follow** *The path follows the course of the river.*

PREP. **off ~** *We're a long way off course* **| on ~** *We're on course for our destination.*

PHRASES **on a collision course** *The two planes were on a collision course.*

3 **(***also* **course of action)**

ADJ. **best, better**

VERB + COURSE **adopt, follow, pursue, take** *It was the best course of action to take in the circumstances.*

COURSE + VERB **be open to sb** *It was the only course open to him.*

4 **development of sth over a period of time**

VERB + COURSE **change** *an event that changed the course of his life* **| follow, run, take** *Her career followed a similar course to her sister's. We could do nothing but let the disease run its course.*

PREP. **during the ~ of** *during the course of the war* **| in the ~ of** *In the course of time, I began to understand.*

PHRASES **the course of history** *This was an event that changed the course of history.* **| in due course** (= at the appropriate time; eventually), **in the normal/ordinary course of events** *In the normal course of events, you should get a reply by Monday.* **| let nature take its course** *When the dog responded so badly to the treatment, we decided to let nature take its course* (= stop treating it and let it die naturally).

5 **part of a meal**

ADJ. **main | first, second, etc.**

PREP. **for a/the ~** *We had chicken for our main course.*

PHRASES **a two-/three-course, etc. meal**

6 **in sport/a race**

ADJ. **golf, obstacle, race**

VERB + COURSE **complete** *Only ten yachts completed the course.*

7 **series of medical treatments**

VERB + COURSE **give sb, put sb on** *She's been put on a course of injections.* **| prescribe (sb) | take**

PREP. **~ of** *a course of antibiotics*

court martial *noun*

VERB + COURT MARTIAL **order** *The general ordered an immediate court martial.* **| hold | face**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *The officer was convicted of desertion at a court martial.* **| by ~** *He was tried by court martial.*

court *noun*

1 **law**

ADJ. **high** *This is the highest court in the land.* | **appeal, civil, crown, high, juvenile, magistrates, military** *They took their case to the appeal court.* | **supreme** | **county, federal, etc.** | **European, French, etc.**

VERB + COURT **go to, take sb/sth to** *We are prepared to go to court to get our compensation. Their neighbours took them to court.* | **come to, get to, go to** *The case should not be allowed to go to court.* | **bring sth to** *There wasn't enough evidence to bring the case to court.* | **settle sth out of** *The dispute was settled out of court.* | **a court of appeal** *The case will be heard by the court of appeal next month.* | **a court of law** *I don't think that argument would stand up in a court of law.* | **a ward of court** *The child was made a ward of court when her parents were jailed.*

2 **for sport**

ADJ. **basketball, squash, tennis, etc.** | **clay, grass, hard** *Do you prefer playing tennis on grass courts or hard courts?*

PREP. **off (the) ~** *Off court she is just as aggressive as she is on the court.* | **on (the) ~** *The players have been on court for an hour.*

3 **kings/queens**

ADJ. **royal appear before, appear in, attend** *She is too young to appear before the court.*

COURT + NOUN **circles** *Mozart quickly became a favourite in court circles.* **preside over** *The court was presided over by Judge Owen. life at court He will appear in court tomorrow charged with the murder.* |

PREP. **at (a/the) ~** *life at the court of Charles I*

COURT + VERB **hear sth** *The court heard how the mother had beaten the 11-year-old boy.* | **acquit sb, clear sb** *The court acquitted Reece of the murder of his wife.* | **dismiss sth, quash sth** *The court dismissed the appeal. The guilty verdict was* *quashed by the appeal court.* | **uphold sth** *The court upheld the plaintiff's claim of unfair dismissal.* | **hold sth, order sth, rule sth** *The court held that she was entitled to receive compensation.*

COURT + NOUN **action, case, proceedings | hearing, trial | injunction, order, summons** *She tried to get a court order to prevent him from coming near her. He received a court summons for non-payment of tax.* | **decision, ruling | appearance** *Divorce no longer requires a court appearance.* | **battle** *They could now face a court battle for compensation.* | **bailiff, clerk, judge, official, registrar, staff, usher** *She was appointed a high court judge in 1998.* | **procedure, process | system | building**

PREP. **at ~** *He was found guilty at Swindon Crown Court.* | **before a/the ~** *The case is now before the court.* | **in ~** *Relatives of the dead girl were in court.*

PHRASES **contempt of court** *He was charged with contempt of court after shouting at a witness.* |

court *verb*

ADV. **assiduously** *He spent three months assiduously courting a newspaper editor.*

courteous *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, very | entirely, perfectly | always, invariably, unfailingly** *She was unfailingly courteous and helpful.* **| naturally**

PREP. **to** *He was perfectly courteous to me.*

courtesy *noun*

ADJ. **great, unfailing, utmost | common** *It's common courtesy to warn your neighbours if your children are going to have a party.* **| exaggerated** *He apologized with exaggerated courtesy.*

VERB + COURTESY **do sb, have, show, treat sb with** *She might have done me the courtesy of replying to my letter. You could at least have had the courtesy to let me know.*

PREP. **with ~** *He listened to all the complaints with great courtesy.* **| ~ to** *her unfailing courtesy to everyone*

PHRASES **a matter of courtesy** *It's a matter of courtesy to write and thank people after a party.*

courtship *noun*

ADJ. **long | brief, whirlwind** *After a whirlwind courtship, they married and went to live in Bath.*

VERB + COURTSHIP **conduct** *Because of the war they were obliged to conduct their courtship by post.*

COURTSHIP + NOUN **display, ritual** *the elaborate courtship display of the pigeon*

PREP. **during a/the ~** *They went there together during their courtship.*

courtyard *noun*

ADJ. **central, inner, interior, internal | outer | enclosed, walled | open | cobbled, paved**

VERB + COURTYARD **surround** *The courtyard is surrounded on three sides by stables.*

PREP. **around a/the ~** *The hotel is built around a paved central courtyard.* **| in a/the ~** *sitting in the inner courtyard of the college*

cousin *noun*

ADJ. **first** (= the child of the brother or sister of one of your parents), **second** (= the child of a cousin of one of your parents) **| distant, remote | close** *(figurative) These pigs are close cousins of the wild hog.* **| female, male | long-lost** *Completely out of the blue, she got a letter from her long-lost cousin in New York.*

PHRASES **cousin once, twice, etc. removed** *She's my first cousin once removed* (= the daughter of my cousin).

cover *noun*

1 sth put on/over sth

ADJ. **loose** *a sofa with a loose cover* | **protective** | **removable** | **dust** *We spread dust covers over the furniture while the builders were in.* | **cushion, duvet, mattress, seat** | **manhole**

VERB + COVER **put on** | **take off**

PREP. **~ for** *a cover for the swimming pool*

2 sth that is over sth

ADJ. **thick** *a thick cover of snow* | **cloud, snow** *We descended into Heathrow through thick cloud cover.* | **forest, ground** *plants that provide good ground cover*

3 outside of a book/magazine

ADJ. **back, front** | **hard, soft** | **book, magazine**

COVER + NOUN **design** | **story** | **girl**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *There's a picture of the author on the back cover.*

4 the covers: blankets, sheets, etc.

ADJ. **bed**

VERB + COVER **get under** | **pull up** | **pull back, throw back** *She threw back the covers and got out of bed.*

PREP. **under the ~**

5 insurance against sth

ADJ. **comprehensive, full** | **wide** *This company provides wider cover.* | **standard** |

additional | insurance | fire, health, indemnity, life, medical

VERB + COVER **have | give sb, provide (sb with)**

PREP. **~ against** *cover against accidental damage* **| ~ for** *cover for contents*

6 **shelter/protection from the weather/damage, etc.**

ADJ. **air** *The RAF provided air cover for the attack.*

VERB + COVER **dive for, run for, take** *We ran for cover as it started to rain.* **| seek | find | give sb, provide (sb with) | break** (= leave) *The deer broke cover as the hunters approached.*

PREP. **under ~** *All the seats are under cover.* **| under ~ of** *We attacked at night, under cover of darkness.* **| ~ from** *They sought cover from the wind.*

7 **sth that hides the real nature of sth**

ADJ. **perfect | diplomatic** *spies operating under diplomatic cover*

VERB + COVER **blow** (= reveal) *He realized his cover had been blown*

PREP. **~ for** *The club is a cover for various criminal activities.*

cover *verb*

1 put sth over sth to hide/protect it

ADV. **completely | loosely | up** *She used dried leaves and twigs to cover up the hole.*

VERB + COVER **try to** *She tried to cover her face with her hands. (figurative) He tried to cover his embarrassment by starting to rub his hands together.* **| use sth to**

PREP. **with** *He covered the body with a cloth.*

2 form a layer on sth

ADV. **completely**

PREP. **in** *The cars were all covered in snow.* **| with** *The children were completely covered with mud.*

3 money/tax/insurance

ADV. **barely, hardly** *The payments he gets barely cover his expenses.*

VERB + COVER **help (to) | be intended to | be extended to** *VAT may be extended to cover books.*

PREP. **against** *This policy should cover you against accidental injury.* **| for** *a policy that covers you for fire and theft*

coverage *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, extensive, massive** *There's been massive television coverage of the World Cup.* **| comprehensive, full | detailed, in-depth | wide, widespread | national, international, worldwide | limited | media, news, newspaper, press, radio, television/TV** *The television company was given a special award for its news coverage.* **| live** *There's live coverage of the match on BBC1.* **| exclusive**

VERB + COVERAGE **give sth, provide (sth with)** *The minister's resignation was given widespread coverage.* **| attract, get, have, receive** *The wedding had wide press coverage.*

COVERAGE + VERB **focus on sth** *Media coverage of the march focused on the few fights that broke out.*

covered *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain | leave sb/sth** *The car sped past, leaving us covered in mud.*

ADV. **well** *Make sure all cooked meat is well covered.* **| absolutely, completely, entirely, totally | closely, densely, thickly** *four sheets of paper closely covered in unfamiliar handwriting* **| evenly | sparsely, thinly** *the ground was sparsely covered with grass.* **| permanently, temporarily** *60% of the land is permanently covered in ice.* **| usually**

PREP. **by** *Each body was covered by a blanket.* **| in** *I was covered in blood.* **| with** *The path was now completely covered with thick snow.*

PHRASES **covered from head to foot/toe** *He crawled out, covered from head to foot in soot.*

cover-up *noun*

ADJ. **big, major | government** VERB + COVER-UP **be engaged in, be implicated in, be involved in** *Military leaders were involved in a major cover-up.* **| accuse sb of**

PREP. **~ by** *cover-ups by the police* **| ~ over** *evidence of a cover-up over arms sales*

PHRASES **allegations/claims of a cover-up**

cow *noun*

ADJ. **beef | dairy, milch** *(often figurative)* **| sacred** *(often figurative) the sacred cow of free market economics*

QUANT. **herd**

VERB + COW **breed | milk**

COW + VERB **low, moo | chew the cud, graze | calve** *The cow had difficulties calving.*

COW + NOUN **byre, shed** (also **cowshed**) **| dung, manure, muck, pat** (also **cowpat**) **| bell**

PHRASES **a breed of cow**

coward *noun*

VERB + COWARD **brand sb, call sb, label sb** *He was branded a coward in some newspapers.*

cowardice *noun*

ADJ. **moral** *It is an act of moral cowardice for a society to neglect its poor.*

VERB + COWARDICE **display, show | accuse sb of**

PHRASES **an act of cowardice, cowardice in the face of the enemy** *Any soldier displaying cowardice in the face of the enemy was shot.*

coy *adj.*

1 **pretending to be shy**

VERBS **be | go**

ADV. **all, extremely, very** *He went all coy when I mentioned her name.* **| a bit, a little, rather** *She gave him a rather coy look.*

2 **unwilling to say sth directly**

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very | a little, rather** *Alicia was a little coy about how much the new dress had cost.* **| uncharacteristically**

PREP. **about**

crack *noun*

1 **line on the surface of sth where it has broken**

ADJ. **big, deep, huge, large, long, serious | short, small | fine, hairline, thin**

CRACK + VERB **appear | develop, spread | run** *A fine crack ran up the wall.*

2 **narrow opening**

ADJ. **narrow, small, tiny | wide**

VERB + CRACK **fill** *We filled the cracks in the plaster before hanging the wallpaper.*

CRACK + VERB **appear** *Wide cracks appeared in the ground during the drought.* **| open up, widen**

PREP. **~ in** *There's a crack in the fence big enough to look through.*

PHRASES **a crack of light** *a tiny crack of light under the door* **| open a door/window a crack** *Could you open the window just a crack?*

3 **sudden loud sound**

ADJ. **loud, sharp**

VERB + CRACK **give, let out** *He gave a crack of laughter.* **| hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *The chandelier hit the floor with a crack.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **the crack of a whip, a crack of thunder** > Note at SOUND

crack *verb*

1 **break**

ADV. **badly** *The dish had cracked quite badly.* **| slightly**

2 **become mentally ill**

ADV. **completely | finally** *The stresses of her job became too great and she finally cracked.* **| up** *He thought he'd never get through the ordeal without cracking up.*

PHRASES **crack under the pressure/strain, show signs of cracking** *He is under a lot of pressure but is showing no signs of cracking.* **PHRASAL VERBS crack down**

ADV. **hard**

PREP. **on** *to crack down hard on crime*

crackdown *noun*

ADJ. **bloody, violent | army, government, military, police**

VERB + CRACKDOWN **promise, threaten | call for, demand, order** *The government has ordered a crackdown on truancy.* **| have, launch, mount**

PREP. **~ on** *They're having a crackdown on private phone calls from the office.*

cradle *verb*

ADV. gently *He picked the child up and gently cradled him in his arms.*

PREP. against *She sat with the child cradled against her.*

craft *noun*

1 **activity needing skill with your hands**

ADJ. **skilled** *Sheep shearing is a highly skilled craft.* | **ancient, traditional** | **country, local, rural**

VERB + CRAFT **practise** *The men practised various traditional crafts, such as carving toys out of bone.*

CRAFT + NOUN **activity, work** | **industry** | **worker** | **centre, exhibition, fair, shop, workshop** | **skill**

PHRASES **art and craft** *Subjects taught include art and craft, drama, languages and maths.* | **arts and crafts** *The gallery has major exhibitions of arts and crafts.*

2 **all the skills needed for an activity**

VERB + CRAFT **learn, master, perfect** *It took her years to perfect her craft.*

PHRASES **a master of your craft** *a carpenter who is a real master of his craft*

3 **boat**

ADJ. **small** | **assault, fishing, landing, patrol, pleasure, river, sailing**

craftsman *noun*

ADJ. **fine, good | master, skilled, trained | local | itinerant, travelling | independent**

craftsmanship *noun*

ADJ. **exquisite, fine, skilled, superb** *We admired the superb craftsmanship of the furniture.*

PREP. **with ~** *bowls made with exquisite craftsmanship*

PHRASES **standard of craftsmanship** *a very high standard of craftsmanship*

cramp *noun*

ADJ. **agonizing, painful | sudden** *She had a sudden painful cramp in her left leg.* **| abdominal, stomach**

QUANT. **attack** *I was suddenly seized by an attack of cramp.*

VERB + CRAMP **have**

crash *noun*

1 **sudden loud noise**

ADJ. **almighty, deafening, great, loud, thunderous | distant | sickening, terrible** *There was a sickening crash as her head hit the ground.*

VERB + CRASH **hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *The plates fell to the floor with an almighty crash.* **| ~ of** *a distant crash of thunder*

PHRASES **a crash of thunder, the crash of the waves**

2 **car/plane, etc. accident**

ADJ. **horrific, major, serious** *a major air crash* **| fatal | head-on | high-speed | car, coach, helicopter, plane, train | air, motorway, rail, road**

VERB + CRASH **cause**

CRASH + VERB **happen, occur | involve sth** *a crash involving two cars and a lorry* **| kill sb | claim sth** *The crash claimed three lives.*

CRASH + NOUN **victim | site | landing | barrier**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He was killed in a train crash.*

3 **business failure**

ADJ. **financial | bank, property, stock market** *the stock market crash of 1987*

PREP. **~ in** *a crash in share prices*

crate *noun*

ADJ. **sealed | upturned** *The cat was sitting on an upturned crate.* **| beer, milk, orange | shipping** *Their possessions had all been packed into shipping crates.*

QUANT. **pile, stack**

VERB + CRATE **pile, stack** *They stacked the crates in the corner of the yard.* **| pack (sth in/into), unpack** *They packed the crates with books.* **| load, unload | ship** *a company specializing in shipping crates*

CRATE + VERB **contain sth**

PREP. **~ of** *a crate of oranges*

crater *noun*

ADJ. **deep, gaping, huge, large** *The blast blew a gaping crater in the road.* **| shallow, small | bomb, shell | meteor | volcanic | lunar**

VERB + CRATER **blow, form, leave, make**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

PHRASES **the edge/lip/side of a crater** *We peered over the lip of the crater into the volcano.*

craving *noun*

ADJ. **desperate**

VERB + CRAVING **feel, have** *He had a craving to see the world.* **| satisfy** *She skipped normal meals to satisfy her craving for chocolate and crisps.* **| curb, reduce**

PREP. **~ for** *a desperate craving for affection*

crawl *noun*

1 **very slow speed**

ADJ. **slow**

PREP. **at a ~** *The traffic was moving at a slow crawl.*

VERB + CRAWL **be down to** *The traffic on the motorway was down to a crawl.* **| slow (down) to**

2 **swimming stroke > Note at STROKE**

crawl *verb*

ADV. **slowly | about, along, around/round, away, back, fowards, through** *We spent an hour crawling around on our hands and knees looking for the key.*

VERB + CRAWL **manage to** *As night fell, we managed to crawl back to our lines.* **| start to** *Has the baby started to crawl yet?*

PREP. **across, along, into, over, out of, under, up** *There's an insect crawling up your leg!*

PHRASES **crawl on (your) hands and knees**

crayon *noun*

ADJ. **coloured | wax**

QUANT. **box**

VERB + CRAYON **colour sth in with, draw (sth) with, use** *She coloured the picture in with crayons.*

CRAYON + NOUN **drawing**

PREP. **in ~** *The notice was written in crayon.*

craze *noun*

ADJ. **latest, new | passing** *Is this interest in health foods just a passing craze?* **| dance, fashion, fitness, etc.**

VERB + CRAZE **start** *The princess started a craze for huge earrings.*

CRAZE + VERB **sweep (across/through) sth** *Doctors warned of the latest drug craze to sweep America.* **| hit sth** *It's the latest craze to hit San Francisco.*

PREP. **~ among** *the latest craze among children* **| ~ for** *the craze for fashionable sports clothing*

crazy *adj.*

1 **mad/wild**

VERBS **be, seem, sound | go** *I'd go crazy if I lived here.* **| drive sb** *The group's performance always drives the audience crazy.*

ADV. **really | absolutely, completely, totally | a bit, half, a little, pretty, quite, slightly**

PREP. **with** *We were crazy with excitement.*

2 **very angry**

VERBS **be | go | drive sb** *The kids would answer back, and that drove her crazy.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely**

PREP. **at** *He was crazy at me for letting the goal in.*

creak *noun*

ADJ. **loud | little**

VERB + CREAK **give, let out** *The gate gave a loud creak as he pushed it open.* **| hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *The gate swung open with a creak.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **the creak of a floorboard/door** > Note at SOUND

creak *verb*

ADV. **slightly**

PREP. **under** *The chair creaked under his weight.*

PHRASES **creak and groan** *The ice creaked and groaned underfoot.* **| creak open** *The door creaked open an inch.*

cream *noun*

1 **fatty part of milk**

ADJ. **clotted, thick, whipped | double, single | fresh | sour/soured | pouring, whipping**

QUANT. **dollop** *She piled great dollops of cream onto her apple pie.*

VERB + CREAM **beat, whip, whisk** *Whisk the cream and icing sugar together.* **| fill sth with, serve sth with, top sth with** *Fill the meringues with whipped cream.*

CREAM + VERB **go off** *This cream's gone off!*

CREAM + NOUN **bun, cake, cheese, sauce | tea** (= a meal of tea with scones with jam and cream)

PHRASES **and/with cream** *We had strawberries and cream for pudding.* > Special page at FOOD

2 **substance that you rub into your skin**

ADJ. **face, hand | day, night** *She was massaging night cream into her face and neck.* **| antiseptic, barrier, cleansing, shaving, sun**

VERB + CREAM **apply, massage, put on** *Put a little antiseptic cream on the grazed skin.*

creamy *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, taste** *Stir the mixture until it looks creamy. It tastes deliciously creamy.*

ADV. **deliciously, very, wonderfully**

PHRASES **creamy white** *creamy white flowers*

crease *noun*

1 **untidy line/fold**

ADJ. **deep**

VERB + CREASE **have** *She had lots of deep creases at the corners of her eyes.* **| iron out, remove, smooth (out)** *She smoothed the creases from the tablecloth.*

PREP. **~ in** *There were a lot of creases in her skirt.*

2 **neat line that is put onto fabric/paper**

ADJ. **knife-edge, sharp**

PREP. **~ in** *a sharp crease in his trousers*

crease *verb*

ADV. **badly, easily** *This material creases very easily.* **| a bit, slightly** *His shirt had creased a bit in the suitcase.*

PHRASES **be/get creased** *Her clothes were badly creased.*

creation *noun*

ADJ. **employment, job | wealth**

VERB + CREATION **advocate, call for, propose, recommend, urge** *They recommended the creation of a new government agency to be responsible for the environment.* **| encourage, foster, support | allow for** *The new Act allows for the creation of vocational schools.* **| allow, enable | avoid, prevent | lead to**

creative *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel** *I don't always feel creative.* **| become**

ADV. **highly, really, very** *a highly creative artist* **| genuinely, truly** *genuinely creative thinking*

creativity *noun*

ADJ. **great | artistic, musical**

VERB + CREATIVITY **develop, encourage, stimulate** *A good teacher can encourage artistic creativity.* **| inhibit, stifle** *This rigid approach stifles creativity.*

PREP. **~ in** *This exercise encourages creativity in the use of language.*

PHRASES **scope for creativity** *My job does not give me much scope for creativity.*

creature *noun*

ADJ. **living** *All living creatures need food.* **| primitive, simple | complex | intelligent | cold-blooded, warm-blooded | wild** *the wild creatures of the forest* **| social** *Dogs are more social creatures than cats.* **| solitary | night, nocturnal | aquatic, marine, sea, underwater, water | land-based | woodland** *Woodland creatures such as foxes and owls are increasingly common in towns.* **| ape-like, bat-like, etc. | little, small, tiny** *These timid little creatures exude a pungent smell when threatened.* **| helpless** *The newborn young are helpless creatures and easy prey for birds.* **| dangerous | furry | magnificent** *It is awesome to see these magnificent creatures in flight.* **| exotic, strange** *a strange creature from another planet* **| mythical | evil** *I dreamt of evil creatures who were trying to catch me.*

credentials *noun*

1 **qualities/training/experience**

ADJ. **excellent, impeccable, impressive, perfect | academic, educational | diplomatic, political, scientific, etc. | democratic, green, socialist, etc.**

VERB + CREDENTIALS **have** *He has perfect credentials to make an officer.* **| establish, prove** *City established their championship credentials with a 6?0 win.* **| emphasize, strengthen, underline**

PREP. **~ as** *First, he had to establish his credentials as a researcher.* **| ~ for** *She had excellent credentials for the job.*

2 **documents**

VERB + CREDENTIALS **present | check, examine**

credibility *noun*

VERB + CREDIBILITY **carry, have** *The certificate has great credibility in France and Germany.* **| be lacking in, lack | gain, regain** *The government is desperate to regain credibility with the public.* **| lose | establish, give, lend** *Recommendations from two previous clients helped to establish her credibility. Funding from the World Bank lends credibility to the project.* **| restore | add, enhance** *The use of computers adds credibility to the forecasts. BBC backing for the scheme will enhance its credibility.* **| damage, destroy, undermine**

CREDIBILITY + VERB **suffer** *The prime minister's credibility suffered in his handling of the crisis.*

CREDIBILITY + NOUN **gap** *Newspapers were talking of a credibility gap between her policies and her achievements.* **| problem** *Athletics' anti-dope campaigners are faced with a credibility problem.*

PREP. **~ among, ~ as** *her credibility as a witness* **| ~ for** *There is little credibility among scientists for the book's claims.*

credible *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | make sth | find sth** *I'm not sure that I find her story credible.*

ADV. **highly, very | completely, fully, quite** *You need imagination to make what you write fully credible.* **| barely, hardly, scarcely** *It seems barely credible that anyone could have walked so far in a day.*

credit card *noun*

ADJ. **valid** *Your credit card is no longer valid.*

VERB + CREDIT CARD **pay by, use** *We paid by credit card.* **| accept, take** *Do you accept credit cards?* **| issue | put sth on** *I put the bill on my credit card.*

CREDIT CARD + VERB **expire** *My credit card expires at the end of June.*

CREDIT CARD + NOUN **details, number** *Can you give me your credit card number?*

PREP. **on your ~** *He ran up a huge bill on his credit card.*

credit *noun*

1 **buy now?pay later; money borrowed/lent**

ADJ. **long-term, short-term | interest-free | foreign | bank | consumer, export, trade**

VERB + CREDIT **have, use** *When poorer people use credit, mail order is the key source.* **| get, obtain** *If you don't have a regular income you may be unable to get credit.* **| extend, give sb, grant (sb), offer (sb)** *Most shops selling furniture or electrical goods will offer credit.* **| deny sb, refuse sb** *The bank refused further credit to the company.* **| arrange | expand** *We propose to expand credit in order to create demand.*

CREDIT + NOUN **account, agreement, arrangement, facilities, system, terms | limit** *Your credit limit is now £2,000.* **| period | sale, transaction, transfer | rating, scoring, standing** *He has a bad credit rating* (= seems unlikely to pay the money back). **| risk** *He's a bad credit risk.* **| control | crunch, squeeze | institution, market, union | note** *If damaged items have to be returned, the manufacturer may issue a credit note.*

PREP. **on ~** *I bought it on credit.*

PHRASES **a letter of credit** (= a letter from one bank to another that enables you to obtain money) *I have arranged for my branch to send a letter of credit to the branch nearest the hotel.*

2 **money in a bank account**

ADJ. **direct** *I'm paid by direct credit into my bank account.*

VERB + CREDIT **have** *I have three credits on my bank statement.*

CREDIT + NOUN **balance** *a credit balance of £265*

PREP. **in ~** *My account is in credit.* **| ~ of** *a credit of £35*

3 **praise/approval**

ADJ. **great | full | eternal, everlasting | due** *We should give due credit to all who helped make the event a success.*

VERB + CREDIT **give sb | claim, get, receive, take** *Why should she get all the credit?* **| do sb, reflect** *Your concern does you credit. The success of the venture reflects great credit on the organizers.* **| deserve**

PREP. **to sb's ~** *To her eternal credit, she gave them a home.* **| ~ for** *At least give him credit for trying.*

PHRASES **give credit where credit is due 4 the credits** list of people who worked on a film, etc.

ADJ. **opening | final | film**

CREDIT + VERB **roll** *We left the cinema before the final credits began to roll.*

5 **sb/sth that brings honour to sb/sth else**

ADJ. **great**

PREP. **~ to** *He's a great credit to the school.*

credit *verb*

1 put money in the bank

PREP. **with** *The bank credited the oil company with £500,000.*

PHRASES **credit sth to sb's account**

2 with an achievement/quality

PREP. **with** *I credited you with a little more sense.*

PHRASES **be credited as/with sth** *She is generally credited as having written over 50 novels.* **| be credited to sb** *The work has been credited to a sixteenth century bishop.* **| be generally/widely credited with sth** *He is widely credited with having started the Middle East peace process.*

3 believe

VERB + CREDIT **can/could hardly/scarcely** *I could hardly credit it when she told me she was leaving.* **| be hard to** *I find what he says rather hard to credit.*

creditable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | make sth**

ADV. **highly, very** *She gave a highly creditable performance as the wicked queen.*

creditor *noun*

VERB + CREDITOR **pay (off), repay** *They agreed to repay their creditors over a period of three years.*

credulity *noun*

VERB + CREDULITY **strain, stretch** *The plot of the novel stretches credulity to the limit.*

creed *noun*

ADJ. **political, religious**

VERB + CREED **adopt, embrace** *Other countries have adopted this political creed enthusiastically.* **| reject**

creep *verb*

ADV. **quietly | slowly | stealthily | about, around, back, in, out, up** *I could hear someone creeping around downstairs. He crept up behind me.*

PREP. **along** *He crept stealthily along the corridor.* **| down, into** *(figurative) Suspicion crept into her voice.* **| over** *(figurative) A feeling of dread crept over him.* **| out of, up on** *The cat quietly crept up on the pigeon. (figurative) Fatigue was creeping up on her.*

creepy *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *It feels a bit creepy in here.* **| get** *It can get pretty creepy in the cellar at night.*

ADV. **a bit, pretty, slightly**

crescendo *noun*

ADJ. **deafening**

VERB + CRESCENDO **reach, rise to** *The music reached a deafening crescendo.*

crest *noun*

VERB + CREST **gain, reach** *We finally reached the crest of the ridge.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *We stood on the crest of the hill.*

crew *noun*

ADJ. **experienced | inexperienced, novice | emergency, skeleton | aircraft, bomber, lifeboat, ship's, submarine, tank, train | cabin, flight, ground, maintenance, support | ambulance, camera, demolition, film, fire, gun, production, road, stage, television, TV** *Fire crews were called to the scene.*

CREW + NOUN **member**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *all the men and women in the crew*

PHRASES **a member of the crew**

cricket *noun*

1 **sport**

ADJ. **county, international, school, village | club, first-class | professional | championship, league, test, World Cup | one-day, four-day, etc. | limited-over(s) | Sunday | attacking** *The crowd loves to watch attacking cricket.*

QUANT. **game**

VERB + CRICKET **play | watch | follow**

CRICKET + NOUN **game, match | championship, competition | field, ground, pitch | ball, bat | pavilion | captain, manager, team | club | enthusiast, fan, lover | season | tour | scene** *This game marks his comeback to the international cricket scene.* **| commentator | memorabilia** *an auction of cricket memorabilia* > Special page at SPORT

2 **insect**

CRICKET + VERB **chirp** *The only sound was a cricket chirping.*

crime *noun*

1 illegal act

ADJ. **appalling, awful, barbaric, barbarous, bloody, brutal, despicable, dreadful, grave, great, heinous, horrible, horrific, serious, terrible, vicious** *one of the most horrific crimes of recent times (figurative) Not returning phone calls is a grave crime in today's culture.* | **big, major** *the biggest crime since the Great Train Robbery* | **lesser, minor, petty** *He was charged with the lesser crime of possessing a forged bond, rather than actually forging it.* | **real** *She claimed that the real crime is that burglars and muggers usually get a light sentence.* | **violent** | **non-violent** | **perfect** *He boasted of having carried out the perfect crime.* | **notorious** *one of the most notorious crimes in British history* | **capital** (= for which the penalty is death) *After the reforms the only capital crimes were treason and murder.* | **indictable** | **alleged** *She never faced trial for her many alleged crimes.* | **unsolved** | **copycat** *the danger of copycat crimes in the wake of the shootings* | **motiveless** *an apparently motiveless crime* | **victimless** *Insider dealing has been called a victimless crime.* | **white-collar** | **drug-related** | **sex/sexual** | **war** | **political** | **terrorist**

VERB + CRIME **carry out, commit** | **report** *Many crimes are never reported to the police.*

CRIME + VERB **involve sth** *crimes involving firearms* | **be punishable by sth** *crimes punishable by death*

PREP. **~ against** *crimes against humanity*

PHRASES **a crime of passion/violence, the scene of the crime** *No weapon was found at the scene of the crime.*

2 illegal activity in general

ADJ. **serious** | **petty** | **violent** | **non-violent** | **recorded** | **unrecorded** | **growing, mounting, rising** | **drug-related** | **middle-class, working-class, etc.** | **white-collar** *Corporate crime?committed by businesses?should not be confused with white-collar crime, which refers to the occupation of the perpetrator and may be directed against a business.* | **business, corporate** | **organized** | **juvenile, youth** | **international, local, regional** | **rural, urban** | **car, computer, property, street** *attempts to prevent hacking and computer crime* | **sex/sexual**

VERB + CRIME **carry out, commit | combat, fight, tackle | beat, crack** *(informal) Police forces will exchange ideas on cracking crime.* **| deter, prevent, stop | control, cut, reduce | detect, investigate** *The public have a crucial role to play in detecting crime.* **| solve | punish | cause | be driven to, turn to** *He says that bored youngsters turn to crime.*

CRIME + VERB **double, increase, rise**

CRIME + NOUN **figures, level, rate, statistics | control, prevention | problem, wave** *the country's crime problem* **| squad** *a senior detective with the serious crime squad* **| syndicate** *leading members of an organized crime syndicate* **| fiction, novel, series, story** *the latest TV crime series* **| reporter, writer** *the newspaper's crime reporter a new short story by the popular crime writer*

PHRASES **a crackdown on crime** *a crackdown on drug-related crime* **| crime and disorder, crime and punishment, fear of crime** *Fear of crime imprisons many elderly people in their homes.* **| an increase in crime, a life of crime** *Unemployed young people were likely to be tempted into a life of crime.* **| sb's partner in crime, a victim of crime** *Victims of crime may be able to obtain compensation.* > Note at CRIME

criminal *noun*

ADJ. **dangerous, violent | serious | habitual, hardened | professional | master | petty | convicted | known** *He has been associating with known criminals.* **| notorious | common** *She was treated like a common criminal.* **| white-collar | war** *He was tried as a war criminal.*

VERB + CRIMINAL **catch** *I told him to pass the information to the police so they could catch the criminals.*

crimson *adj.*

1 **red**

ADJ. **dark, deep, rich** *a beautiful deep crimson colour* > Special page at COLOUR

2 **red in the face**

VERBS **be | blush, flush, go, turn** *He flushed crimson and began to shout angrily at Frank.*

ADJ. **bright, deep** *He turned bright crimson.*

PREP. **with** *She was crimson with rage.*

cripple *verb*

1 **injure**

ADV. **for life, permanently** *As a child she contracted polio and was crippled for life.*

PHRASES **be crippled with** *He's eighty and crippled with arthritis.* **| leave sb crippled** *The disease left him crippled.*

2 **damage**

ADV. **financially** *The industry has been financially crippled by these policies.*

crisis *noun*

ADJ. **acute, grave, major, serious, severe, terrible, worst** *the worst economic crisis for fifty years* | **growing, mounting** | **impending, looming** | **international, national** | **constitutional, economic, financial, fiscal, political** | **cash, debt, energy, hostage, housing, oil, refugee** *the Third World debt crisis* | **family, personal** | **identity** | **mid-life**

VERB + CRISIS **be faced with, be hit by, face, go through, have** *(informal)*, **suffer** *With competition from cheap imports, the British coal industry is facing a serious crisis. He's having a mid-life crisis.* | **cause, create, lead to, precipitate, provoke, spark off** | **deal with, defuse, ease, handle, overcome, resolve, respond to, solve, tackle** *Union leaders are taking immediate steps to defuse the crisis. attempts to ease the town's housing crisis* | **survive, weather** | **avert, prevent** | **aggravate**

CRISIS + VERB **arise** *waiting for the next crisis to arise* | **deepen, worsen** | **be over** *As soon as the crisis was over, she relaxed.*

PREP. **during a/the ~** *Three people died during the hostage crisis.* | **in (a/the) ~** *The government is in crisis. She's no good in a crisis.* | **~ in** *the growing crisis in education* | **~ over** *a crisis over pensions*

CRISIS + NOUN **point** *The team's dismal season has reached crisis point.* | **management** *an expert in crisis management*

PHRASES **a crisis of confidence** *The company is suffering a severe crisis of confidence.* | **at/in moments/times of crisis** *In times of crisis it's good to have someone you can rely on for advice.*

crisp *noun* **(**usually **crisps)**

ADJ. potato | plain | cheese and onion, ready salted, salt and vinegar, etc.

QUANT. bag, packet *a packet of smoky bacon crisps*

VERB + CRISP eat

CRISP + NOUN bag, packet > Special page at FOOD

criterion *noun*

ADJ. **sole | main | strict, stringent | objective | eligibility, selection**

QUANT. **range, set**

VERB + CRITERION **fulfil, meet, satisfy** *She failed to meet the stringent selection criteria.* **| establish, lay down | adopt, apply, use** *The other groups agreed to adopt our criteria.*

PREP. **according to a/the ~** *Team members will be selected according to strict criteria.* **| by a/the ~** *By this criterion, very few people are suitable.* **| ~ for** *The report lays down criteria for disciplining staff.* **| ~ of** *What are the criteria of success for a training scheme?*

critic *noun*

1 **says what is bad/wrong with sth**

ADJ. **bitter, fierce, harsh, hostile, severe, trenchant** *She is one of her husband's severest critics.* **| outspoken, vocal, vociferous | persistent | chief, great, leading, major** *He is now a major critic of the nuclear industry.*

VERB + CRITIC **prove wrong** *She is looking for a chance to prove her critics wrong.*

CRITIC + VERB **accuse sb** *Critics accused the government of giving in to pressure from the tobacco companies.* **| argue sth, believe sth, claim sth, charge sth, fear sth, point sth out, say sth, suggest sth** *Critics point out that poverty still exists.* **| be right/wrong**

PREP. **~ of** *an outspoken critic of government policy*

2 **gives opinions about plays/books/films, etc.**

ADJ. **good, great, incisive | distinguished, influential | art, drama, film, literary, music, restaurant, social, television, theatre**

CRITIC + VERB **hail sth, praise sth** *The film was hailed by critics as a triumphant piece of realism.* **| attack sth, pan sth, slate sth** *The play was panned by critics.* **| describe sth** *Critics described the paintings as worthless rubbish.* > Note at JOB

critical *adj.*

1 **disapproving**

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **bitterly, deeply, extremely, fiercely, harshly, highly, severely, sharply, strongly, very | increasingly | a little, mildly, quite | openly** *She became openly critical of party policy.*

PREP. **of** *The report was highly critical of the railway's poor safety record.*

2 **important**

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **really | absolutely | increasingly**

PREP. **for** *Maintaining control of the the budget is absolutely critical for success.* **| to** *This reorganization is critical to the long-term future of the company.*

criticism *noun*

1 **expressing disapproval of sb/sth**

ADJ. **bitter, fierce, harsh, heavy, serious, severe, sharp, strident, strong, trenchant | telling** *A more telling criticism is that he reduces ethics to interpersonal relationships.* **| adverse, damaging, damning, hostile, negative, scathing | constructive, fair, just, justifiable, legitimate, valid** *She made a number of valid criticisms.* **| considerable, extensive, widespread | constant | basic, fundamental | main, major, substantial | minor, moderate | general | direct, explicit, outspoken | implicit, implied, indirect | fresh** *Two successive defeats have brought fresh criticism.* **| growing, increasing, mounting | media, press | public**

QUANT. **barrage** *The film star faced a barrage of criticism for his behaviour.*

VERB + CRITICISM **direct, express, level, make, voice** *Criticism was levelled at senior managers.* **| attract, be open to, be singled out for, come in for, come under, draw, face, get, meet with, prompt, provoke, receive** *The government came under fierce criticism for its policies. The proposal is open to several important criticisms.* **| avoid, deflect, escape, forestall, ward off** *She sought to deflect criticism by blaming her family.* **| accept, meet, reply to, respond to, take** *He finds it hard to take criticism.* **| counter, dismiss, reject** *She countered my criticisms by saying we had no choice in the matter.* **| imply** *None of what has been said should be taken to imply criticism.* **| offer** *to offer criticism and receive it*

CRITICISM + VERB **come from sb** *The harshest criticism came from right-wing ideologists.* **| centre on sth** *Criticism centred on the lack of information provided.*

PREP. **~ about** *The main criticism about the information provided is that it arrives too late.* **| ~ against** *criticisms against the European single currency* **| ~ for** *They received criticism for continuing to supply the faulty goods.* **| ~ from** *We are bound to face criticism from both sides.* **| ~ of** *There has been serious criticism of the teaching methods used in the school.* **| ~ over** *We came in for some sharp criticism over this decision.*

2 **of a play, book, film, etc.**

ADJ. **practical, textual | academic, art, biblical, cultural, film, historical,**

literary, music, scientific, social | feminist, Marxist, structuralist

criticize *verb*

ADV. **bitterly, fiercely, heavily, roundly, severely, sharply, strongly | openly, publicly** *She has openly criticized the government.* **| implicitly | justifiably, rightly** *Their record on human rights has been justifiably criticized.* **| constantly, frequently, repeatedly | reportedly**

PREP. **for** *She criticized the system for being secretive.*

PHRASES **be widely criticized (as sth)** *The law was widely criticized as racist.* **| criticize sb/sth on the grounds that** *The film was criticized on the grounds that it glorifies violence.*

critique *noun*

ADJ. **detailed, devastating, effective, far-reaching, penetrating, radical, searching, telling, thorough, trenchant, wide-ranging | feminist, social, structuralist**

VERB + CRITIQUE **give, present, provide**

PREP. **~ of** *The book provides a thorough critique of current theories.*

crook *noun*

ADJ. **small-time**

VERB + CROOK **catch**

crop *noun*

1 **plants grown for food**

ADJ. **agricultural | cash, commercial, export | fodder, food, forage** *Fodder crops are used to feed livestock.* **| subsistence | staple | traditional** *the replacement of traditional crops with cash crops for export* **| spring, winter | standing** *Rivers burst their banks and flooded standing crops.* **| arable, cereal, fruit, root, vegetable**

VERB + CROP **grow, produce** *Most of the farmers grow arable crops.* **| plant, sow | bring in, gather, harvest, reap | damage, destroy** *Summer flash floods destroyed the crops.* **| rotate | spray** *Crops are sprayed with highly toxic chemicals to prevent insect damage.*

CROP + VERB **fail** *Isolated communities were extremely vulnerable if crops failed.*

CROP + NOUN **rotation** *Crop rotation helps prevent soil erosion.* **| damage, failure | production, yield** *to boost crop yields* **| spraying**

PREP. **~ of** *a crop of carrots*

2 **total amount of grain, fruit, etc. grown**

ADJ. **abundant, bumper, excellent, good, heavy, record | poor | early** *Bring strawberry plants indoors for an early crop.* **| potato, rice, etc.**

VERB + CROP **gather, get, harvest, have, reap** *a record crop was harvested We had a very good crop of apples last year.* **| bear, produce, yield** *It takes three to five years for a new plantation to bear a crop.*

PREP. **~ of**

crop *verb*

ADV. **closely** *His hair was closely cropped.*

PHRASES **crop sth short** *His hair had been cropped short and he looked different.*

cross section *noun*

ADJ. **broad, fair, good, large, representative, wide**

VERB + CROSS SECTION **be drawn from** *The contestants are drawn from a cross section of society.* **| represent**

PREP. **~ of** *We interviewed a wide cross section of people.*

cross *adj.*

VERBS be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get *I'm going to get very cross before long.* **| make sb** *It really makes me cross to see people dropping litter in the street.*

ADV. extremely, really, very | a bit, quite, rather, slightly

PREP. about *Are you still cross about me forgetting the flowers?* **| at** *She was very cross at the way she'd been treated.* **| for, with** *She was quite cross with him for being late.*

cross *noun*

1 **mark made by drawing one line across another**

VERB + CROSS **draw, put** *I've put a cross on the map to show where the hotel is.*

2 **Christian symbol**

ADJ. **gold, silver, stone, wooden** *She wore a gold cross on a chain around her neck. The grave was marked with a stone cross.* **| market, village, wayside**

PREP. **on the ~** *a painting of Jesus Christ on the cross*

PHRASES **(make) the sign of the cross** *The priest blessed her, and made the sign of the cross over her.*

3 **in football or hockey**

ADJ. **deep, low, perfect**

PREP. **~ by/from** *a deep cross from Beckham*

cross *verb*

ADV. **quickly, slowly | safely, successfully** *teaching children to cross the road safely* **| back, over** *Let's cross over now while the road is clear.*

VERB + CROSS **try to** *They were arrested trying to cross the border.*

PREP. **from, into** *They crossed from the States into Canada.* **| over** *We crossed over the river into Sweden.* **| to** *She crossed to the door.*

cross-examination *noun* VERB + CROSS-EXAMINATION **be subject to, face** *Evidence is given on oath and witnesses are subject to cross-examination.* **| bear, stand up to, withstand** *His alibi would not have withstood cross-examination.*

PREP. **during/in ~** *He was found to have lied twice in cross-examination.* **| under ~** *The defendant broke down under cross-examination.*

cross-eyed *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | go** *You'll go cross-eyed if you try to look at things so close to you.*

ADV. **slightly**

crossing *noun*

1 **journey across a stretch of water**

ADJ. **rough | smooth | ferry** *The price includes accommodation and ferry crossing.* **| river, sea | Atlantic, Channel, etc.**

VERB + CROSSING **make** *You can only make the crossing in good weather.*

PREP. **during a/the ~** *We discussed our plans during the crossing.* **| ~ from, ~ to** *a very rough crossing from England to Ireland*

2 **place where you can cross sth**

ADJ. **border | level** (= over a railway) **| pedestrian, pelican, zebra (These are all places where people walking can cross a road.)**

PREP. **at a/the ~** ***They were stopped and searched at the border crossing.*** **| on a/the ~** ***A passenger train smashed into a truck on a level crossing.***

crossroads *noun*

1 **place where two roads cross**

VERB + CROSSROADS **come to**

PREP. **at the ~** *Turn right at the next crossroads.*

2 **important point in your life/career, etc.**

ADJ. **important | historic**

VERB + CROSSROADS **stand at | reach**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *We are standing at an important crossroads in the history of Europe.* **| ~ in** *He had reached a crossroads in his career.*

crossword *nou*n

ADJ. **cryptic, quick**

VERB + CROSSWORD **do, fill in, solve**

CROSSWORD + NOUN **clue, puzzle**

crouch *verb*

ADV. **low** *The hare crouches low on the ground.* **| down** *We crouched down to avoid being seen.*

PREP. **behind** *crouching behind the sofa* **| over** *They crouched over the dead animal.*

crow *noun*

ADJ. **black | carrion**

QUANT. **flock**

CROW + VERB **fly | perch** *The black crow perched on the telephone pole.* **| caw, shriek**

crow *verb*

ADV. **triumphantly, with delight** *She gave the purse to Ruby, who crowed with delight.*

PREP. **about/over** *The company hasn't much to crow about, with sales down compared with last year.*

crowd *noun*

1 **large number of people in one place**

ADJ. **big, bumper, capacity, good, great, huge, large, massive, record, sell-out, vast** *The show played to capacity crowds.* | **small** | **gathering, growing** | **assembled** *The president read a declaration to a vast assembled crowd.* | **jostling, madding, milling, surging** *We pushed our way through the milling crowds of guests.* | **admiring, appreciative, cheering, enthusiastic, excited, expectant** | **angry, hostile, partisan** | **rush-hour** | **motley** *the usual motley crowd of tourists, hawkers and pigeons* | **football, theatre** | **home (at a football match)**

VERB + CROWD **attract, draw, pull (in)** *Boxing is a sport that always attracts large crowds.* | **break up, disperse** *Police were called to disperse the crowd.* | **control** | **address, play to** | **join, mingle with**

CROWD + VERB **assemble, collect, gather** *An expectant crowd gathered outside his house.* | **grow, swell** *The crowd grew to over 15,000.* | **flock, mill, throng** *Crowds have been flocking to the beaches in this hot weather. A crowd thronged around the wounded man.* | **disperse, melt away, thin out** *After the ambulance drove off, the crowd dispersed.* | **cheer, roar** | **boo, hiss, jeer** | **line the street** *Crowds lined the streets of the city as the president's car approached.*

PREP. **among a/the ~** *A bewildered child was wandering among the crowd.* | **in a/the ~** *I saw some familiar faces in the crowd.* | **through a/the ~** *She fought her way through the crowd.* | **~ of** *a big crowd of football supporters*

CROWD + NOUN **control**

PHRASES **the back/front/middle of a crowd** **2 the crowd** ordinary people

VERB + CROWD **be one of, follow** *She's happy to follow the crowd.* | **stand out from** *We all like to think we stand out from the crowd* (= are different from other people).

crowded *adj.*

VERBS be | become, get

ADV. densely, extremely, very *living in densely crowded conditions The shops were all very crowded.* **| increasingly | a bit, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, rather**

PREP. with *The store was crowded with shoppers.*

crown *noun*

1 **that a king/queen wears**

VERB + CROWN **wear | place, put on** *The crown was placed upon the new monarch's head.*

2 **the crown: position/power of a king/queen**

ADJ. **imperial, royal**

VERB + CROWN **offer sb** *In 1688 the crown was offered to William and Mary.* **| refuse | succeed to** *He succeeded to the crown of Spain*

CROWN + VERB **pass** *In 1553 the crown passed from Edward VI to Mary.*

PHRASES **the heir to the crown 2 the Crown** the state as represented by a king/ queen

VERB + CROWN **serve**

CROWN + NOUN **court | jewels | land** *a piece of Crown land*

3 **honour of being the best in a sports competition**

ADJ. **Olympic, world, etc.**

VERB + CROWN **take, win | lose** *He lost his Olympic crown to George Rice.* **| fight for | defend, retain**

4 **top of the head**

ADJ. **bald**

PREP. **at the ~** *She swept her hair into a bun at the crown of her head.* **| on your ~** *There were raindrops on his bald crown.*

crucial *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become | remain | consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as**

ADV. **really | absolutely** *It's absolutely crucial that we get this right.* **| fairly, quite | hardly | clearly, obviously**

PREP. **for** *The talks are crucial for the success of the plan.* **| to** *Secrecy is crucial to this police operation.*

cruel *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | become**

ADV. **extremely, unspeakably, very** *an extremely cruel regime* **| a little, rather | deliberately | unnecessarily**

PREP. **to** *I can't stand people who are cruel to animals.*

cruelty *noun*

ADJ. **extreme, great** *an act of extreme cruelty* **| deliberate | mental | animal, child** *Cases of child cruelty occur more often than they are observed.*

VERB + CRUELTY **inflict, show (sb)** *How can you inflict such cruelty on a child? Her stepmother showed her nothing but cruelty.* **| suffer** *The children suffered mental cruelty and neglect.*

PREP. **~ to/towards** *cruelty to animals*

cruise *noun*

ADJ. **leisurely, luxury, pleasure** *a pleasure cruise around the bay* **| Caribbean, Mediterranean, world, etc.**

VERB + CRUISE **go on, take** *She used all her savings to go on a world cruise.*

CRUISE + NOUN **liner, operator, ship**

PREP. **on a/the~** *They met on a cruise.* **| ~ along** *a cruise along the coast* **| ~ around/round**

cruiser *noun*

ADJ. **battle, heavy, light, merchant | cabin, motor, pleasure, sailing**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *He served on a merchant cruiser.*

crumb *noun*

ADJ. **biscuit, bread** (also **breadcrumb**), **cake**

VERB + CRUMB **brush (away), sweep (away)** *She brushed the cake crumbs off the table.* **| drop, scatter** *He bit into the roll, scattering crumbs.*

PREP. **~ of** *a few crumbs of bread*

crunch *verb*

ADV. loudly | underfoot *Snow crunched underfoot.* **| up**

PREP. on *He was crunching loudly on an apple*

crusade *noun*

ADJ. **great | moral, personal**

VERB + CRUSADE **embark on, launch, mount** *The charity tonight launched its great crusade against homelessness.* **| be engaged in, carry out, conduct, join** *She seems to be carrying out a personal crusade to stop this building work.* **| lead**

PREP. **on a ~** *He is on a crusade to take the church to the people.* **| ~ against** *urging parents to join a crusade against crime* **| ~ for** *For 23 years he led a crusade for peace.*

crush *noun*

ADJ. **huge | schoolgirl, teenage**

VERB + CRUSH **have | develop, get**

PREP. **~ on** *She had a huge crush on one of her teachers.*

crush *verb*

ADV. **badly** *His hand was badly crushed in the accident.* **| slightly | finely** *Crush the biscuits finely before adding them to the mixture.* **| underfoot** *insects that had been crushed underfoot*

PREP. **against** *She was crushed against the wall.* **| beneath/under** *crushed beneath a bus* **| between** *crushed between two cars*

PHRASES **be/get crushed, crush sb to death**

crust *noun*

1 **on a loaf of bread/pie**

ADJ. **thick, thin | pastry, pie**

PHRASES **a crust of bread** *We saved a few crusts of bread for the birds.*

2 **hard layer on the outside of sth**

ADJ. **thick, thin**

VERB + CRUST **form** *The mud had formed a thick crust on the surface of the road.*

CRUST + VERB **form** *Put the lid on properly, or a crust will form on the paints.*

PREP. **~ of** *a thin crust of ice*

PHRASES **the earth's crust**

crutch *noun*

ADJ. **emotional, psychological** *(both figurative) He saw religion as a psychological crutch.*

VERB + CRUTCH **need, use** *He needs crutches to walk.*

PREP. **on/with ~** *She can only walk with crutches.*

crux *noun*

CRUX + VERB **lie** *The crux of the matter lies in our lack of expert knowledge.*

PHRASES **the crux of the matter/problem**

cry *noun*

1 **shout/loud noise**

ADJ. **great, loud | little, low, small | choked/choking, muffled, stifled, strangled | piercing, shrill | hoarse** *the hoarse cry of a crow* **| agonized, anguished, bitter, despairing, desperate, plaintive, terrible | startled | involuntary | battle, rallying, war, warning | animal, bird**

VERB + CRY **give, let out, raise, utter** *She gave an agonized cry as they lifted the fallen branch from her leg. He was too weak to raise even the smallest of cries.* **| hear**

CRY + VERB **go up** *A cry went up when it was discovered their man had escaped.* **| escape** *An involuntary cry escaped her as he entered the room.*

PREP. **with a ~** *He fell to the ground with a cry.* **| ~ for** *(figurative) Her suicide attempt was really a desperate cry for help.* **| ~ of** *a cry of despair/delight* > Note at SOUND

2 **act of crying**

ADJ. **good | little**

VERB + CRY **have** *You'll feel better when you've had a good cry.*

cry *verb*

1 **produce tears**

ADV. **a lot | a little | almost, nearly | never, rarely | bitterly** *He put his head on his arms and cried bitterly.* **| loudly | quietly, silently, softly | uncontrollably | alone**

VERB + CRY **begin to, start to | make sb | leave sb to** *children who are left to cry alone*

PREP. **about** *What are you crying about?* **| for** *a child crying for his mother* **| over** *I wasn't going to waste time crying over him!* **| with** *Anna was almost crying with frustration.*

PHRASES **cry like a baby** *Finally he broke down and cried like a baby.* **| cry your eyes out, cry yourself to sleep, feel like crying** *I felt like crying when I found out what had happened.* **| a shoulder to cry on** *(figurative) He was a fatherly shoulder to cry on when things went wrong.*

2 **shout**

ADV. **aloud, out | suddenly | angrily, indignantly** *'Never!' he cried angrily.* **| despairingly, desperately | excitedly | passionately, wildly**

VERB + CRY **want to** *She wanted to cry out to him not to be so stupid.* **| hear sb** *I heard her cry out in her sleep.*

PREP. **in** *'What do you mean?' she cried in agitation. 'Who's there?' she cried in a shrill voice.*

PHRASES **cry for help** *She cried for help as the fire spread.* **| cry out in anguish/fear/pain**

crystal ball *noun*

VERB + CRYSTAL BALL **gaze into, look into** *I can't gaze into my crystal ball and tell you what will happen!*

crystal *noun*

ADJ. **single | quartz, rock, etc. | ice, snow**

CRYSTAL + VERB **form, grow** *Ice crystals had formed on the window.*

cubicle *noun*

ADJ. **small, tiny | screened-off, separate | changing, shower, toilet**

CUBICLE + NOUN **curtain, door**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

cuddle *noun*

ADJ. **big** *He gave her a big cuddle and told her not to worry.*

VERB + CUDDLE **have** *They were having a cuddle on the sofa.* **| give** *Give Mummy a big cuddle.*

PHRASES **a kiss and a cuddle** *He just wants a comforting kiss and a cuddle and he'll be all right.*

cue *noun*

VERB + CUE **wait for | take** *Her husband took his cue, and said that it was time for them to leave.* **| miss | give sb** *She had not yet been given the cue to go on to the stage.*

PREP. **on ~** *I can't just cry on cue!* **| ~ for** *This was the cue for him to come into the room.*

PHRASES **right on cue** *Ella came in right on cue, just as they were being rude about her.* **| take your cue from sb/sth** *They all took their cue from their leader.*

cuisine *noun*

ADJ. **excellent, fine, superb | local, regional** *We sampled the local cuisine.* **| traditional | haute, nouvelle | French, Italian, etc.**

VERB + CUISINE **offer, serve** *The hotel has a large dining room serving superb local cuisine.* **| sample, try**

PHRASES **a standard of cuisine**

culmination *noun*

ADJ. **logical** *This massive autobiographical work was the logical culmination of her long career.*

VERB + CULMINATION **mark, represent** *The show marked the culmination of months of hard work.* | **reach** *The space race reached its culmination in the first moon walk.* | **see** *2001 saw the culmination of the project.*

PREP. **at the ~ of** *A decision will be taken at the culmination of the initial research.*

culpable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | believe sb**

ADV. **highly, very**

PREP. **in** *The prime minister is highly culpable in this affair.* **| of** *She believed him culpable of murder.*

culprit *noun*

ADJ. **big, chief, main, major, prime, real, worst** *Keep the kitchen clear of all sources of bacteria, not forgetting the biggest culprit of all?the dishcloth.* **| likely, obvious**

VERB + CULPRIT **hunt** *Police hunting the culprits have condemned the attack.* **| apprehend, catch, identify, find, track down**

cult *noun*

1 **worship of a person/thing**

ADJ. **personality** *the personality cult of the president*

CULT + NOUN **figure, hero** *He became a cult figure during the 1960s.* | **status** *The book achieved cult status as soon as it was published.* | **following** *The show has built up a cult following.* | **band, book, film**

PREP. **~ of** *the cult of youth*

2 **religious group**

ADJ. **religious** *the members of a religious cult*

CULT + NOUN **leader, member | image, object, statue | practice**

cultivate *verb*

1 land

ADV. **intensively** *The land here has been intensively cultivated for generations.*

2 crops

ADV. **successfully** *Olives have been cultivated successfully in southern Australia.*

3 try to develop sth

ADV. **actively, assiduously, carefully, deliberately** *This modern image is actively cultivated by the company.* **| successfully**

culture *noun*

1 **customs/ideas/beliefs**

ADJ. **ancient | primitive | dominant | alien, foreign | indigenous, native | local, national | traditional | African, black, Greek, Western, world, etc.** *These ideas have always been central to Western culture.* **| rural, urban | mainstream | underground | wider** *Prisoners are isolated from the wider culture of society at large.* **| bourgeois, working-class, etc. | street, youth** *As young people started to have more money, a significant youth culture developed.* **| dance, drug, football, etc. | academic, business, company, corporate, intellectual, legal, political, professional, religious, scientific, etc.** *the political culture of the United States* **| capitalist, computer, consumer, enterprise, materialistic, etc.** *the development of the enterprise culture in Britain*

VERB + CULTURE **assimilate (sb into)** *The Romans gradually assimilated the culture of the people they had conquered. Newcomers to the company are soon assimilated into the culture.* **| create, develop, foster, produce** *The new director is trying to foster a culture of open communication within the company.*

CULTURE + VERB **develop**

CULTURE + NOUN **group** *a country containing many language and culture groups* **| shock** *She experienced great culture shock when she first came to Europe.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *In some cultures children have an important place.* **| ~ of** *The social security system has been accused of producing a culture of dependency.*

2 **art/literature/music, etc**

ADJ. **contemporary, modern | mass, pop, popular | folk | high | wide | literary, oral** *Jokes are an important part of our popular, oral culture.*

PREP. **a man/woman of culture** *She is a woman of wide culture.*

cultured *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **deeply, highly** *a highly cultured man*

cunning *noun*

ADJ. **great | devious, low | animal | native** *She relied on her native cunning to survive.*

VERB + CUNNING **have** *She had great cunning and ruthlessness.* **| show | use** *He had used cunning to get what he wanted.*

PREP. **with ~** *She managed him with great cunning.*

cup *noun*

1 **container**

ADJ. **empty | full | half-empty, half-full | broken, chipped, cracked | china, paper, plastic | coffee, tea**

QUANT. **set**

VERB + CUP **fill, refill | drain, empty** *She was so thirsty that she drained her cup.* **| lift, pick up, raise** *She raised her cup to her lips.* **| place, put down, replace, set down | drink from/out of** *Customers didn't like drinking out of plastic cups.*

CUP + VERB **contain sth**

PHRASES **a cup and saucer**

2 **drink**

ADJ. **strong** *I like a good strong cup of tea first thing in the morning.* **| fresh** *My coffee was cold, so I ordered a fresh cup.*

VERB + CUP **offer sb | make (sb) | pour (sb)** *I'm making tea. Can I pour you a cup?* **| help yourself to | stir** *Enrique stirred his fourth cup of coffee of the day.* **| drink, sip** *I drink about ten cups of coffee a day.*

PREP. **~ of**

PHRASES **a nice cup of tea** *You sit down and I'll make you a nice cup of tea.*

3 **in sport**

ADJ. **challenge | knockout | European, World, etc.**

VERB + CUP **win** *Who won the cup?* **| lose | present (sb with)** *The cup will be presented to the winning team by the president himself.* **| lift** *He lifted the cup for the sixth time this year* (= it was the sixth time he had won).

CUP + NOUN **competition** *They were the first Turkish team to win a major cup competition.* **| clash, match** *The team are ready for next week's World Cup clash with Italy.* **| final, quarter-final, semi-finals | win, winner**

PHRASES **the first, etc. round of the cup**

cupboard *noun*

ADJ. **big, deep, large | little, small, tiny | high, low | walk-in | built-in, fitted | private | bare, empty | wall | bathroom, bedside, kitchen, hall | airing, broom, coat, clothes, drinks, food, linen, medicine, stationery, storage, store** *There's a broom cupboard under the stairs.*

VERB + CUPBOARD **open | close | look in | put sth in** *Put the clothes in the airing cupboard.* **| keep sth in**

CUPBOARD + VERB **be full of sth** *The cupboard was full of old toys.*

CUPBOARD + NOUN **door | unit** *We had some new cupboard units fitted in the kitchen.* **| space** *Do you have much cupboard space in your new house?*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Put the plates in the cupboard.*

curb *noun*

VERB + CURB **impose, introduce, put | act as** *Counselling acted as a curb on his violent behaviour.*

PREP. **~ on** *Many companies have imposed curbs on smoking in the workplace.*

curb *verb*

ADV. **drastically, greatly** *This legislation will greatly curb the power of local authorities.*

VERB + CURB **attempt to, try to | be designed to, be intended to** *a new law designed to curb harmful emissions from factories*

PHRASES **aimed at curbing sth** *a range of policies aimed at curbing inflation* **| an attempt/effort to curb sth, measures to curb sth**

cure *noun*

1 **medicine/treatment that can cure an illness**

ADJ. **effective, instant, miracle, wonder** *There is no instant cure for this condition.* **| rest** *His new job was almost a rest cure after the stresses of the army.* **| cancer**

VERB + CURE **look for, seek | develop, discover, find**

CURE + VERB **work** *The cure works by boosting the body's immune system.*

PREP. **~ for** *scientists seeking a cure for Aids* **| ~ from** *He was hoping for a cure from his debilitating illness.*

PHRASES **no (known) cure** *There is no known cure for the disease.* **| prevention is better than cure** *Prevention is better than cure, so start looking after your heart now.* **| the search for a cure** *the search for a cure for the common cold*

2 **return to good health**

ADJ. **miraculous | complete, permanent**

VERB + CURE **bring about, effect, provide** *These drugs can sometimes effect miraculous cures. (figurative) Science cannot provide a cure for all the world's problems.*

cure *verb*

ADV. **completely | miraculously** *She still believed that somehow she could be miraculously cured.*

PREP. **of** *He was now completely cured of his illness.*

curfew *noun*

ADJ. **strict | dusk-to-dawn, night, night-time, 24-hour, 7 p.m., etc.**

VERB + CURFEW **declare, impose, order, place sth under** *A five-day curfew was declared by the government. The whole area has been placed under curfew.* **| lift** *The strict curfew has now been lifted.* **| break, defy** *Protesters defied the curfew and took to the streets.*

CURFEW + VERB **be in force** *A dusk-to-dawn curfew was in force.*

PREP. **under ~** *The city is still under curfew.* **| ~ on** *Many people are in favour of a curfew on young people.*

curiosity *noun*

ADJ. **great, intense | insatiable** *She has an insatiable curiosity about life.* **| mild | idle, mere, simple** *'Why do you ask?' 'Mere curiosity.'* **| natural** *School should awaken a child's natural curiosity.* **| open** *staring with open curiosity* **| morbid**

VERB + CURIOSITY **have | arouse, awaken** *Their curiosity was aroused by his strange behaviour.* **| satisfy**

CURIOSITY + VERB **get the better of sb, overcome sb** *Harry's curiosity got the better of him and he unlocked the cupboard*

PREP. **out of ~** *We went to the show out of curiosity more than anything else.* **| with ~** *The children watched us with mild curiosity.* **| ~ about** *I needed to satisfy my curiosity about what it was like to make records.*

PHRASES **a sense of curiosity**

curious *adj.*

1 **eager to find out about sb/sth**

VERBS **be, feel, seem | became, get, grow | remain | make sb** *Her secretive manner had made me curious.*

ADV. **deeply, extremely, intensely, very** *I was intensely curious to know more about him.* **| a little, mildly, rather, slightly | frankly** *She coped with the frankly curious looks of the men.* **| genuinely | idly** *He saw a book on the table and picked it up, idly curious.* **| naturally** *Puppies are naturally curious.*

PREP. **about** *I was curious about how she would react.* **| as to** *She was curious as to why he was there.*

PHRASES **curious to find out/know/see sb/sth**

2 **strange/unusual**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, taste | find sb/sth**

ADV. **extremely, very** *I find it very curious that you did not tell anyone.* **| a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** *The wine tasted rather curious.*

curl *noun*

1 **piece of hair**

ADJ. **natural | soft | tight | corkscrew, spiral | auburn, blonde, dark, etc. | natural | stray** *She pushed a stray curl away from her eyes.* **| tangled, tumbling, unruly, untamed, wayward** *She smoothed down her tangled curls.* **| damp**

VERB + CURL **press/push/stroke back, smooth back/down | ruffle, run your fingers through | tease** *He carefully teased his curls into place.* **| shake** *She shook her dark curls sadly.*

CURL + VERB **fall, tumble** *Her auburn curls tumbled about her face.* **| bounce | frame sth** *Her face was framed by a mop of black curls.*

PREP. **in ~s** *His hair spilled in curls over his forehead.* **| through the/your ~s** *She raked a comb through her wayward curls.*

PHRASES **a cascade/mass/mop of curls** *Her hair was styled into a cascade of spiral curls.* **| lose its curl** *Her hair lost its curl as she got older.*

2 **sth with a curved round shape**

ADJ. **faint, little, slight** *He acknowledged her remark with a faint curl of his lips.*

PREP. **~ of** *a curl of smoke*

curl *verb*

ADV. **tightly | slightly | up** *She curled her legs up under her.*

PREP. **around/round** *His fingers curled tightly round the steering wheel.* **| from** *Smoke was curling up from the chimney.* **| into** *The cat curled into a ball and fell asleep.*

PHRASES **be/lie/sit curled up** *She was lying curled up on her bed.* **| curl (up) at the edges** *The photograph was brown and curling at the edges.*

curly *adj.*

VERBS **be | go**

ADV. **all** *(informal),* **very** *Your hair's gone all curly!* **| naturally** *She wished she had naturally curly hair.*

currency *noun*

1 **money used in a particular country**

ADJ. **domestic | foreign** *They prefer to be paid in foreign currencies.* **| common, international** *US dollars are considered common currency in international transactions.* **| local** *You can convert sterling into the local currency.* **| national | European, Japanese, etc. | single** *the single European currency* **| major | stable, strong** *A stable currency means that your savings do not diminish in value* **| weak | hard | convertible**

VERB + CURRENCY **change, convert sth into/to, exchange | buy, sell | devalue | support** *The fund supports weak currencies.* **| raise** *The country needs to raise enough hard currency to pay for its oil imports.*

CURRENCY + VERB **rise | fall | float, fluctuate** *For four months all major currencies floated. The system allows currencies to fluctuate within certain limits.*

CURRENCY + NOUN **conversion, exchange, translation** *The disappointing profits are due to unfavourable currency translations.* **| markets** *They make money by speculating on the currency markets.* **| deal, dealing, speculation, trade, trading | dealer, speculator, trader | crisis | fluctuation, movements | devaluation | system | reform | reserves**

PREP. **in … ~** *She had £50 in foreign currency.*

2 **being believed/accepted/used by many people**

ADJ. **general, wide, widespread**

VERB + CURRENCY **enjoy, have** *This belief has general currency.* **| gain** *How did the idea gain currency?* > Note at CURRENCY

current *noun*

1 **continuous flowing movement of water**

ADJ. **fast, fast-flowing, powerful, strong | dangerous, treacherous | ocean | prevailing** *The prevailing current flows from east to west.* **| off-shore | tidal**

CURRENT + VERB **flow | carry sb/sth, sweep sb/sth** *The strong current carried the boat downstream. She was swept away by the treacherous currents.*

PREP. **against a/the ~** *He was swimming against the current.* **| in a/the ~** *The boat was carried along in the current.* **| with a/the ~** *It's easier to go with the current.*

2 **flow of air**

ADJ. **warm | air** *Birds of prey use warm air currents to lift them high in the sky.*

PHRASES **a current of air**

3 **flow of electricity through a wire**

ADJ. **strong, weak | electric, electrical | alternating | direct | input, output**

VERB + CURRENT **generate, produce | carry, pass, transmit | switch off/on** *Check all your wiring before switching on the current.*

CURRENT + VERB **flow, pass through sth** *Measure the current flowing in the wire.*

curriculum *noun*

ADJ. **broad, broadly-based, wide | narrow** *Teachers feel that the present curriculum is too narrow.* **| core** *Student choose from optional subjects in addition to the core curriculum.* **| national, official, statutory | mainstream** *His disability does not prevent him from following the mainstream curriculum.* **| academic, educational | higher education, primary, school, secondary, undergraduate | subject-based | English, geography, mathematics, etc. | hidden** *Children learn many of their attitudes to life from the hidden curriculum at school.*

VERB + CURRICULUM **design, develop, plan | broaden | introduce sth into** *Film Studies has been introduced into the curriculum as an option.* **| follow**

CURRICULUM + NOUN **content, subjects | materials | design, development, planning | aims, objectives | change, reform, review**

PREP. **across the ~** *Pupils use computers across the curriculum* (= in all or most subjects). **| on a/the ~** *They all have to study French because it's on the curriculum.* **| in a/the ~** *More room should be given to foreign languages in the curriculum.* **| within a/the ~** *the balance of subjects within the curriculum*

PHRASES **areas of the curriculum** *We cover all areas of the curriculum.*

curry *noun*

ADJ. **hot | mild | beef, chicken, vegetable, etc. | Indian | madras, vindaloo, etc.**

VERB + CURRY **eat, have | cook, make, prepare | go for** *Let's go for a curry after the film.*

CURRY + NOUN **paste, powder | sauce | house** (= a restaurant that serves curry) > Special page at FOOD

curse *noun*

1 word used for expressing anger

ADJ. **impatient**

VERB + CURSE **mutter, utter**

2 wish that sth terrible will happen to sb

VERB + CURSE **utter | put**

PREP. **under a ~** *She thought that she must be under a curse.* **| ~ on/upon** *The witch is supposed to have put a curse on the house.*

curse *verb*

ADV. **roundly | loudly | quietly, softly, under your breath** *He cursed under his breath as the spanner slipped.* **| inwardly, silently**

PREP. **for** *I cursed her roundly for being late.*

PHRASES **curse the day** *He was now cursing the day he had ever got involved in the project.* **| curse your luck** *She cursed her luck that she had had to queue for so long.*

cursor *noun*

VERB + CURSOR **insert, move, place, position, put** > Special page at COMPUTER

curtail *verb*

ADV. **drastically, seriously, severely** *His power has been severely curtailed.* **| further | abruptly**

curtain *noun*

1 **fabric that covers a window**

VERB + CURTAIN **close, draw, open, pull (across/aside/back/closed)** *They sat in the dark with the curtains drawn. She pulled back the curtains, and sunlight streamed in.*

CURTAIN + VERB **hang** *Heavy red velvet curtains hung either side of the huge window.* **| billow** *The curtains billowed madly as the wind caught them.*

PREP. **behind a/the ~** *He took a bag from a shelf behind some curtains.*

2 **in a theatre**

ADJ. **final**

CURTAIN + VERB **go up, open, part, rise | close, come down, fall** *At the end of the play the curtain came down to tremendous applause.*

curve *noun*

ADJ. **gentle, graceful, slight, smooth | sharp, tight** *The road went round in a tight curve.* **| wide | sensual, voluptuous** *the voluptuous curve of her hips* **| downward, upward**

VERB + CURVE **form, make** *The seats were arranged to form a curve.*

PREP. **in a ~** *The road follows the coast in a wide curve.*

curve *verb*

ADV. **gently, slightly** *a gently curving stream* **| away, down, up** *The path curved down towards the village.*

PREP. **around/round, towards, etc.** *The road curved away round the back of the hill.*

cushion *noun*

ADJ. **plump, soft** *He sank back into the soft cushions of the sofa.* **| sofa**

VERB + CUSHION **plump (up)** *She plumped up the sofa cushions before the guests arrived.*

CUSHION + NOUN **cover**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *I rested my elbow on a cushion.*

custard *noun*

ADJ. **creamy, thick | thin | smooth | lumpy | banana, egg, vanilla**

VERB + CUSTARD **make | pour | strain** *Strain the custard to remove lumps.*

CUSTARD + VERB **thicken | set**

CUSTARD + NOUN **powder | pie**

PHRASES **and/with custard** *some apple pie and custard* > Special page at FOOD

custody *noun*

1 **legal right/duty to take care of sb/sth**

ADJ. **child** *a bitter child custody dispute* **| joint, sole | safe** *If valuables are placed in the safe, the hotel is responsible for their safe custody.*

VERB + CUSTODY **ask for, claim, demand, fight for, seek | award sb, give sb, grant sb** *The parents were given joint custody of the two children.* **| gain, get | have**

CUSTODY + NOUN **battle, dispute | hearing**

PREP. **~ of**

2 **being guarded/kept in prison**

ADJ. **military, police** *The man died while in police custody.* **| protective** *The opposition leader has been taken into protective custody.*

VERB + CUSTODY **be remanded in, be taken into** *A man has been remanded in custody charged with the murder of an eight-year-old girl.* **| be held in, be kept in, be/remain in | escape from | be released from**

PREP. **in ~** *She will remain in custody while reports are prepared about her mental condition.* **| out of ~** *trying to keep young people out of custody*

custom *noun*

ADJ. **accepted, age-old, ancient, established, old, traditional | quaint | local | social**

VERB + CUSTOM **follow, observe, respect** *They still follow the custom of pinning money to the bride's dress.* **| maintain, preserve, revive**

CUSTOM + VERB **die out, disappear** *The custom died out in the nineteenth century.* **| prevail, survive** *These customs still prevail in remote areas.*

PREP. **according to a/the ~, in accordance with (a/the) ~** *They poured wine round the trees in accordance with local custom.* **| through ~** *The rules have grown up through custom and are not laid down by law.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **as is/was the custom** *People threw coins onto the stage, as was the custom.*

customer *noun*

ADJ. **big, favoured, good, important, key, large, major** *They are one of our biggest customers. They organized an evening's entertainment for favoured customers.* | **long-standing, long-time, loyal** | **regular** | **current, existing** | **potential, prospective, would-be** *There are a large number of potential customers for the new product.* | **dissatisfied, unhappy** | **satisfied** *We like to think that we have satisfied customers.* | **domestic** | **external, outside** | **international, overseas** | **personal, private** | **business, commercial, corporate, industrial**

VERB + CUSTOMER **have** | **deal with, serve** | **attract, entice, get** *It's a special offer to attract new customers.* | **lose** *We can't afford to lose any more customers.*

CUSTOMER + NOUN **care, relations, service, support** *If you have a complaint, contact the customer care unit. Part of good customer relations is knowing how to deal with complaints.* | **account, order** | **agreement** *The terms of the guarantee will be set out in the customer agreement.* | **demand/demands, needs, requirements, specifications** *This cheaper model was produced in response to customer demand.* | **reaction** *The questionnaire is to test customer reaction to the new store design.* | **dissatisfaction, satisfaction** *They carried out a customer satisfaction survey.* | **loyalty** | **complaints, enquiries** | **survey** | **profile, records** | **base** *They are hoping that TV advertising will increase their customer base.*

customs *noun*

ADJ. **French, UK, etc.**

VERB + CUSTOMS **clear, go through** *We cleared customs by five o'clock. You will have to declare these goods when you go through customs.* | **wave sb through** *We were waved through customs without a pause.*

CUSTOMS + NOUN **control/controls, regulations** *the removal of European customs controls* | **duty/duties** *We had to pay customs duties on the beer.* | **building, hall, post** *the customs post on the border* | **agent, man, officer, official, staff** | **authorities** | **formalities, procedures** | **declaration, document, documentation, form** *We had to fill out customs forms on the plane.* | **clearance** *We were waiting for the goods to receive customs clearance.*

PREP. **at ~** *We got stopped and searched at the Italian customs.* | **through ~**

cut *noun*

1 **hole/opening made by cutting**

ADJ. **clean, neat**

VERB + CUT **make | give** *a high-quality blade that gives a clean cut*

PREP. **~ in** *Using sharp scissors, make a small cut in the material.*

2 **wound**

ADJ. **bad, deep, nasty | minor, small, superficial** *He's got a small cut on his finger.* **| clean**

VERB + CUT **have | get, suffer** *She got a bad cut over her right eye.* **| clean** *Clean the cut and cover it to prevent infection.* **| bandage, cover, dress**

CUT + VERB **heal** *A clean cut heals quickly.*

PREP. **~ on** *a cut on her hand* **| ~ to** *One man was attacked and suffered cuts to his face.*

PHRASES **cuts and bruises**

3 **act of cutting sth**

ADJ. **hair**

VERB + CUT **have** *I've made an appointment to have a hair cut.*

4 **reduction**

ADJ. **big, deep, drastic, large, major, massive, real, savage, severe, sharp, significant, substantial, swingeing | government | financial | budget, defence, education, expenditure, interest-rate, job, pay, price, service, spending, staff, tax, wage** *They get a lot of power cuts because they have overhead wires.* **| power**

QUANT. **round** *The company has announced a new round of job cuts.*

VERB + CUT **make** *They are planning to make substantial cuts in the service.* **| announce, propose** *proposed tax cuts* **| suffer, take** *The staff have all had to take a cut in salary.*

CUT + VERB **come into effect** *The cuts will come into effect next May.*

PREP. **~ in** *cuts in public spending*

5 piece of meat

ADJ. **choice, expensive, good, lean | cheap | cold ~s**

PREP. **~ of** *The recipe calls for a good lean cut of beef.*

6 share in the profits

VERB + CUT **get, have, take** *By the time the organizers have had their cut, there won't be much left.*

PREP. **~ of** *He takes a cut of the profits.*

cut *verb*

1 **with a knife/scissors, etc.**

ADV. **thick** *Make sure you cut the bread nice and thick.* | **thinly** | **cleanly** *Cut the stem cleanly, just beneath a leaf joint.* | **easily** *Sandstone cuts easily.* | **crossways, lengthways** *Cut the courgette in half lengthways.* | **away, down** *cutting down trees*

PREP. **from** *They cut away all the dead branches from the tree.* | **into** *She picked up the knife and cut into the meat. He cut the bread into thin slices.* | **through** *I can't cut through this wood.*

PHRASES **cut and paste** *(computing) You can cut and paste between different programs.* | **cut sb/sth free** *Two survivors were cut free after being trapped for twenty minutes.* | **cut sth into pieces** *Cut the cake into six pieces.* | **cut sth in half/two** *She cut the loaf in two and gave me one of the halves.* | **cut sth open** *She fell and cut her head open.*

2 **reduce sth**

ADV. **considerably, drastically, significantly** | **short** *His career was cut short by injury.*

VERB + CUT **try to** | **manage to** *We have managed to cut our costs quite drastically.* | **be forced to, have to**

PREP. **by** *The department has to cut its spending by 30%.* | **from, to** *The price has been cut from £250 to £175.* **PHRASAL VERBS cut back**

ADV. **drastically, savagely, severely, significantly** *Social work services have been cut back drastically.*

VERB + CUT **be forced to, have to**

PREP. **on** *Local authorities have been forced to cut back on expenditure.* **cut down**

ADV. **considerably, drastically** | **gradually**

VERB + CUT **try to | manage to | advise sb to**

PREP. **on** *I'm trying to cut down on fatty foods.* **cut sb/sth off**

1 **interrupt sb/sth**

ADV. **abruptly, suddenly** *His thoughts were abruptly cut off by a blinding flash of pain.*

2 **prevent sb/sth leaving/reaching a place**

ADV. **completely, totally, utterly, wholly | effectively, largely, virtually**

PREP. **from** *They were completely cut off from the outside world.*

cutback *noun*

ADJ. **major, severe, sharp | budget, budgetary, economic, financial | government**

VERB + CUTBACK **impose, make** *Many theatres are having to make major cutbacks.* **| announce**

PREP. **~ in** *a sharp cutback in military spending*

cutting *noun*

1 **piece cut out from a newspaper**

ADJ. **newspaper, press** *She had kept all the press cuttings about the murder.*

PREP. **~ from** *a cutting from 'The Guardian'*

2 **piece cut off from a plant**

ADJ. **leaf, root, stem**

VERB + CUTTING **take**

CUTTING + VERB **root, take** *After about four weeks you will be able to see whether the cuttings have taken.*

PREP. **from a/the ~** *These plants are easy to propagate from leaf cuttings.* **| ~ from** *Take cuttings from mature plants in the spring.*

cycle *noun*

1 **series of events that happen repeatedly**

ADJ. **annual, daily, monthly, regular, seasonal, weekly** *the annual cycle of church festivals* | **complete, entire, whole** | **endless** *the endless cycle of birth, death and rebirth* | **natural** *Life is a natural cycle, just like the changing seasons.* | **vicious** *caught up in a vicious cycle of bingeing and dieting* | **lunar, solar** *the 76-year solar cycle* | **breeding, menstrual, reproductive** | **business, economic** | **water** *a diagram of the water cycle* | **life** *the life cycle of the butterfly*

VERB + CYCLE **go through** *The European market is simply going through an economic cycle.* | **complete** *To complete the cycle, oxygen is necessary.* | **repeat**

CYCLE + VERB **begin again** *Male and female adults mate, the female lays eggs, and the cycle begins all over again.* | **repeat (itself)** *This cycle of events continually repeats itself.*

CYCLE + NOUN **length, time**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *at this point in the cycle* | **per ~** *The number of young produced per breeding cycle varies from species to species.*

PHRASES **part of the cycle (of sth)** *part of the cycle of birth and death*

2 **bicycle**

ADJ. **motor** (also **motorcycle**), **pedal**

VERB + CYCLE **ride**

CYCLE + NOUN **ride, tour** *We're going for a cycle ride this afternoon.* | **helmet** | **lane, path, route, track** *Cars are not allowed in the cycle lanes.* | **race**

PREP. **by ~** *They completed their journey by cycle.* | **on a/the ~** *lots of people in cars or on cycles*

cyclone *noun*

ADJ. violent | tropical

CYCLONE + VERB hit sth, strike sth *An exceptionally violent cyclone hit the town last night.* **| damage sth, destroy sth, devastate sth** *In 1974 Darwin was devastated by Cyclone Tracy.*

PREP. in a/the ~ *trees damaged in the cyclone*

PHRASES the eye of the cyclone (= the central point)

cymbal *noun*

ADJ. **clashing, crashing**

VERB + CYMBAL **clash, hit**

CYMBAL + NOUN **crash** *The piece ends with a cymbal crash.*

PHRASES **a clash/crash of cymbals** > Special page at MUSIC

cynical *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem, sound** *I hope I don't sound unduly cynical.* **| become, get, grow | remain**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, very** *his deeply cynical attitude* **| completely, totally, utterly | overly, unduly | a bit, fairly, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat**

PREP. **about** *I'm a little cynical about her motives.*

cynicism *noun*

ADJ. **bitter, weary** *He spoke in a tone of weary cynicism.* **| widespread**

QUANT. **hint, note, touch, trace** *There was not a trace of cynicism in his voice.*

PREP. **with ~** *She viewed his new interest in her with cynicism.* **| ~ about** *There is now widespread cynicism about the political system.*

daft *adj., adv.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | act, talk** *(both informal) Don't talk daft!*

ADV. **bloody** *(taboo),* **really | completely, plain** *The decision is just plain daft.* **| a bit, pretty, rather**

dagger *noun*

ADJ. **curved | ceremonial, jewelled, ornamental**

VERB + DAGGER **draw | sheathe**

dam *noun*

ADJ. **hydroelectric**

VERB + DAM **build, construct | breach** *The dam has been breached and there is a danger of flooding.*

DAM + VERB **burst** *The dam burst and the valley was flooded.* **| hold sth back** *The dam holds back the water.*

PREP. **~ across/on** *a large hydroelectric dam on the River Danube*

damage *noun*

1 **harm/injury**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, serious, severe, substantial, untold | minor, slight | extensive, widespread | irreparable, irreversible, lasting, long-term, permanent** *The incident did permanent damage to relations between the two countries.* **| criminal, malicious, wilful** *He was prosecuted for criminal damage to a vehicle.* **| accidental** *The insurance policy covers the building for accidental damage.* **| emotional, environmental, mechanical, psychological, structural | brain** *She suffered serious brain damage at birth.*

VERB + DAMAGE **cause, do, inflict** *The earthquake caused widespread damage to property. They inflicted severe psychological damage on their opponents.* **| suffer | repair | prevent**

PREP. **~ by** *The palace suffered extensive damage by fire in 1825.* **| ~ from** *Crops are sprayed with chemicals to prevent damage from insects.* **| ~ to** *lasting damage to the environment*

PHRASES **the cost/value of the damage** *The cost of the damage is estimated at around $2 billion.* **| the extent of the damage** *At the moment it is difficult to assess the extent of the damage.*

2 **damages: money you can claim from sb**

ADJ. **heavy, substantial**

VERB + DAMAGE **incur, suffer** *damages incurred by the unfairly sacked workers* **| claim, seek, sue (sb) for** *He decided to sue the company for damages.* **| assess** *The court will assess the damages.* **| apportion, award (sb) | pay (sb) | obtain, receive, recover, win | be liable for, be liable in** *(law) If goods are lost in transit, the carrier will be liable for damages.*

DAMAGE + NOUN **action, claim** *A woman is to bring a civil damages action against the men she alleges murdered her son.* **| award**

PREP. **in ~** *They are claiming £45 million in damages.* **| ~ for** *He received damages for personal injury.* **| ~ of** *She was awarded damages of £90,000.*

PHRASES **an action/a claim for damages** *The judge upheld her claim for damages against her former employer.*

damage *verb*

ADV. badly, seriously, severely *The building was badly damaged by fire.* **| slightly | irreparably, permanently** *She may have damaged her health irreparably.*

damaging *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, gravely, highly, immensely, profoundly, seriously, severely, very** *This scandal could prove seriously damaging to the government.* **| quite, rather | possibly, potentially | positively** *These new measures will do nothing to raise school standards: they may be positively damaging.* **| economically, environmentally, politically, psychologically** *Building the proposed new road would be environmentally damaging.*

PREP. **to** *Smoking is damaging to health.*

damp *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, smell** *The room smelled damp.* **| become, get | remain | make sth** *The rain had made the walls damp.*

ADV. **very | a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly** *Our clothes had got a bit damp.*

damp *noun*

ADJ. **penetrating, rising**

VERB + DAMP **have, suffer from** *The house had got woodworm and rising damp.* **| check for, look for | find** *The surveyor found damp in the kitchen.*

dance *noun*

1 series of steps/movements to music

ADJ. **little | fast, lively | slow, stately | traditional | ritual | ballroom, folk, square | rain | mating** *pigeons performing their mating dance*

VERB + DANCE **dance, do, perform** *In her delight she got up and did a little dance.* **| have** *May I have the next dance? I felt like having a dance.* **| like** *Would you like a dance?* **| sit out** *She had to sit out the last dance because of a twisted ankle.*

DANCE + NOUN **music, rhythm | routine, sequence, step | class, teacher | floor, hall, studio**

2 social meeting with dancing

ADJ. **barn | school | dinner, supper, tea**

VERB + DANCE **go to | hold**

DANCE + NOUN **band**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *They met at a dance.*

3 dancing as a form of art/entertainment

ADJ. **contemporary, modern | classical**

DANCE + NOUN **company, troupe**

PHRASES **a school of dance, a style of dance**

dance *verb*

ADV. **almost | wildly** *They danced wildly down the street.* **| about, around, away | together**

VERB + DANCE **ask sb to | want to**

PREP. **for** *He was almost dancing for joy.* **| to** *We danced to the music.* **| with** *Will you dance with me?*

dancer *noun*

ADJ. **brilliant, excellent, good, great, wonderful** *He's a brilliant dancer!* **| professional | trained | leading, principal** *a principal dancer with the Royal Ballet* **| male | ballet, ballroom, classical, clog, disco, flamenco, go-go, tap** *She's a very good flamenco dancer.*

DANCER + VERB **perform (sth)** *dancers performing in the street classical dancers performing modern work* > Note at JOB

dancing *noun*

ADJ. **wild | ballet, ballroom, belly, country, disco, flamenco, folk, line, maypole, morris, sequence, traditional** *She does line dancing and yoga in the evenings.*

VERB + DANCING **do, go** *They liked to go dancing every Saturday night.*

DANCING + NOUN **display | lesson** *She's taking dancing lessons.* **| school | career | partner**

PHRASES **dancing in the streets** *There was dancing in the streets when we heard that the war was over.*

danger *noun*

ADJ. **big, considerable, enormous, extreme, grave, great, mortal, obvious, real, serious, terrible** *They are in grave danger of losing everything. She knew that she was now in mortal danger. There is a real danger that the bridge will collapse from the weight of traffic.* | **acute, immediate, imminent, impending** *They are in imminent danger of attack.* | **constant, ever-present** *the ever-present danger of crime* | **long-term** | **inherent** *There are inherent dangers in the system.* | **slight** | **possible, potential** | **personal** | **physical** | **public** *The pollution from the factory is a public danger.*

PREP. **in ~** *We weren't in any danger.* | **in ~ of** *The plant is now in danger of extinction.* | **out of ~** *They ran until they were out of danger.* | **~ from, ~ of** *We're in serious danger of becoming a nation of worriers.* | **~ to** *There is no danger to the public from these chemicals.*

PHRASES **be off/on the danger list** *He was admitted to hospital in critical condition, but is now off the danger list.*

VERB + DANGER **be exposed to, face** *On their journey across the desert they faced danger of all sorts.* | **be fraught with, involve** *The task was fraught with danger.* | **cause** *He was convicted of causing danger to other road users.* | **pose** *the dangers posed by the possession of nuclear weapons* | **be aware of, foresee, identify, realize, recognize, see, sense, smell, spot** *No one foresaw the danger. The animal seemed to sense danger.* | **run** *A company must keep developing or it runs the danger of stagnating.* | **court** *Some people take crazy risks because they get a thrill from courting danger.* | **avert** *Vigorous action is needed to avert the danger of runaway inflation.* | **lessen, minimize, reduce** | **avoid, escape** | **ignore**

DANGER + VERB **exist, face sb, lie in sth, lurk, threaten sb** *One of the biggest dangers facing us may be climate change. The danger lies in becoming too complacent. Where would they hide if danger threatened?* | **arise, come (from sb/sth)** *The biggest danger to gorillas comes from humans.* | **pass** *We waited until all danger had passed.*

DANGER + NOUN **area, spot, zone** *Despite the high levels of radiation, people are now moving back into the danger zone.* | **signals, signs** *He recognized the danger signs and gave up smoking.* | **money** *The divers were paid danger money for working in such hazardous conditions.* | **man** *The United manager believes Figo is the* *opposition's danger man.*

dangerous *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, prove, seem, sound | become, get** *The situation could get quite dangerous.* **| remain | make sth** *The ice is making the roads very dangerous tonight.* **| consider sth, regard sth as**

ADV. **bloody** *(taboo)*, **exceedingly, extremely, highly, incredibly, really, terribly, very** *a highly dangerous situation* **| increasingly | a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly | possibly, potentially | downright, positively** *It's a risky idea, if not downright dangerous!* **| inherently | notoriously** *This route through the mountains is notoriously dangerous.* **| politically** *Raising income tax is considered politically dangerous.*

PREP. **for** *This treatment is extremely dangerous for the mother.* **| to** *not dangerous to humans*

dare *verb*

ADV. **hardly, scarcely** *I hardly dared breathe.*

VERB + DARE **wouldn't** *I wouldn't dare go by myself.*

daring *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become, get, grow** *He had grown more daring.* **| consider sth, think sth** *Her behaviour was considered very daring at the time.*

ADV. **greatly, very** *Greatly daring, he covered her hand with his own.* **| a little, quite**

dark *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | get, go, grow** *It gets dark at about six o'clock. Suddenly the whole sky went dark. As it grew dark, they gathered round the fire.* **| remain, stay**

ADV. **very | completely | almost, nearly** *It's only three o'clock and it's nearly dark already.* **| quite, rather**

dark *noun*

ADJ. **pitch** *I fumbled for the light switch in the pitch dark.* **| gathering** *We could just make out some figures in the gathering dark.*

PREP. **after ~** *The girls weren't allowed out after dark.* **| before ~** *We'd better try and finish this job before dark.* **| in the ~** *I hate getting up in the dark.*

PHRASES **afraid of the dark** *Many small children are afraid of the dark.*

darkness *noun*

ADJ. **complete, pitch, total** *The building was in pitch darkness.* **| deep, inky** *the inky darkness of the tunnel* **| gathering** *It was becoming impossible to see the map in the gathering darkness.*

VERB + DARKNESS **be plunged into** *The electricity failed and the house was plunged into darkness.* **| lie in, stand in** *The valley lay in darkness.*

DARKNESS + VERB **come, close in, descend, fall** *We arrived at the village just as darkness fell.* **| lift** *waiting for the darkness to lift*

PREP. **in (the) ~** *The building was in darkness. Her eyes seemed to glow in the darkness.* **| into the ~** *The car disappeared into the darkness.* **| out of the ~** *A figure appeared out of the darkness.*

PHRASES **the hours of darkness** *The bombing took place during the hours of darkness.* **| under cover of darkness** *They moved about under cover of darkness.*

dash *noun*

1 **sudden quick movement**

ADJ. **quick, sudden | frantic, headlong, mad | final, last-minute**

VERB + DASH **make**

PREP. **~ across** *We had to make a frantic dash across town to get our plane* **| ~ for** *He made a sudden dash for the door.* **| ~ from, ~ through** *The book starts with a quick dash through the country's history.* **| ~ to** *He made a 200-mile dash to the hospital when a kidney donor became available.*

2 **small amount of sth**

VERB + DASH **add** *Add a dash of lemon juice.*

PREP. **~ of** *The food is European with a dash of Morocco.*

dash *verb*

1 go/run quickly

ADV. **frantically | about, around, back, forward, off, out** *I've got to dash off now.*

VERB + DASH **have to, must** *I must dash?I'm late.*

PREP. **across, along, down, in, into, out of, through, to, up** *He dashed frantically across the road.*

2 destroy sth

ADV. **quickly | cruelly** *Her hopes were cruelly dashed when her parents refused to let her go.*

data *noun*

ADJ. **accurate, reliable | comprehensive, detailed, extensive | raw** *We have amassed the raw data and are about to begin analysing it.* **| factual, hard** *There is no hard data to support these theories.* **| empirical, experimental, numerical, observational, scientific, statistical | demographic, environmental, financial, geological, historical, technical**

QUANT. **item, piece** *One vital item of data was missing from the table.* **| mass, set** *Special software is needed to manipulate the mass of data. Although we were using the same set of data, we obtained different results.*

VERB + DATA **acquire, amass, capture, collect, gather, get, obtain** *We need to collect more data before we can do any more work.* **| enter, feed in | have, hold, record, store** *They are not allowed to hold data on people's private finances.* **| access, retrieve | analyse, examine, interpret, look at, study | handle, manage, manipulate, process** *The computer can manipulate massive amounts of data.* **| exchange, share, transfer | present (sb with) | provide (sb with)** *The government departments refused to provide the data that we required.*

DATA + VERB **be derived from sth** *The data derived from this project has vastly increased our knowledge of how genes work.* **| indicate sth, reflect sth, show sth, suggest sth** *Data indicates that most crime is committed by young males. This data reflects the magnitude of the problem.* **| support sth**

DATA + NOUN **acquisition, capture, collection | entry, input | storage | access, retrieval | analysis, handling, management, manipulation, processing | exchange, interchange, transfer, transmission | protection, security | source | archive, bank** (also **databank**), **base** (also **database**), **file | system**

PREP. **in the ~** *We have found some very interesting things in the data.* **| ~ about** *Data about patients is only released with their permission.* **| ~ for** *We have no data for southern Spain.* **| ~ from** *My aim is to synthesize data from all the surveys.* **| ~ on** *data on the effects of pollution*

PHRASES **the acquisition/handling/storage, etc. of data, a source of data**

database *noun*

ADJ. **large | comprehensive | national | computer, computerized, electronic | online**

VERB + DATABASE **create, establish, set up** *We're trying to create our own computerized database.* **| add to, update** *The database is updated monthly.* **| access**

DATABASE + VERB **contain sth** *The new database contains 200,000 images.*

DATABASE + NOUN **application, engine, package, server, software, system | technology | creation, design, development | management | access | administrator, user**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *The information is stored on a large database.* **| ~ of** *a very large database of information*

date *noun*

1 particular day

ADJ. **earlier, earliest** *She suggested an earlier date for the meeting.* **|** later, latest | exact, firm, **specific** *I can't give you specific dates.* **| provisional, tentative | unspecified | significant** *7th May, 1999 was a very significant date in my life.* **| closing** *The closing date with Camilla on Friday night.* **| make** *We must make a date to have lunch.* **| keep** *She wanted to arrive in time to keep her date.* **| break, cancel** *He was late, and ended up breaking their dinner date.*

PREP. **on a ~** *She's out on a date with her new boyfriend.* **| ~ with** *for applications is May 22.* **| expiry** *What's the expiry date on your credit card?* **| delivery | due** *The baby was born exactly on its due date.* **| birth | anniversary | sell-by** *This yogurt is past its sell-by date.* **| cut-off** *Historians disagree on the cut-off date for the medieval period.* **| commencement, completion** *The building was not finished by the completion date.*

VERB + DATE **agree (on), arrange, decide (on), fix, set** *Can we fix dates for the holiday? Has a date been fixed for the meeting?*

PREP. **after a/the ~** *We cannot accept applications received after this date.* **| at a ... ~** *The election is scheduled to take place at an unspecified date in the autumn.* **| before a/the ~, by a/the ~** *The building must be finished by the date agreed.* **| from a/the ~** *The agreement runs from that date.* **| on a/the ~** *I've got two meetings on that date.* **| ~ for** *We need to set a date for the wedding.* **| ~ of** *the date of the election*

PHRASES **the/your big date** *Joe's getting ready for his big date on 3rd March, when he gets married.* **| at a/some future date** *More money will be made available at some future date.* **| at a later date** *We can do that at a later date.* **| date of birth** *Please give your name, address and date of birth.* **| of recent date** *The foundations are Roman, but the rest of the building is of more recent date.* **| put a date on/to sth** *It's difficult to put a date on when this neighbourhood became fashionable.* **| today's date** *What's today's date?*

2 appointment to meet sb socially

ADJ. **dinner, lunch | blind** (= a date with sb you have not met before) *She met her husband on a blind date.* **| hot** (= exciting) *She had a hot date and wanted to look her* *best.*

VERB + DATE **have** *I've got a date*

date *verb*

ADV. **accurately, precisely** *It has not yet been possible to date the paintings accurately.*

dated *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become**

ADV. **hopelessly, very | a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** *These ideas seem a bit dated now.* **| curiously** *This drama series is supposedly modern yet its characters live in a curiously dated world.*

daughter *noun*

ADJ. **baby, newborn | little, small, young | teenage | grown-up | only | eldest, first-born, middle, oldest, youngest | elder, younger | illegitimate, legitimate | dutiful, good | long-lost | married, unmarried**

VERB + DAUGHTER **have** *They've got three young daughters.* **| bear** *(formal)*, **give birth to** *His wife recently gave birth to a daughter.* **| bring up** *Living alone and trying to bring up a small daughter is no easy task.*

DAUGHTER + VERB **grow up**

dawn *noun*

1 **early morning**

ADJ. **grey**

VERB + DAWN **greet** *(literary) He always got up to greet the dawn.*

DAWN + VERB **break, come (up)** *Dawn was breaking over the valley.*

DAWN + NOUN **light, sky | chorus** *The dawn chorus* (= birds singing) *woke Robyn at five.* **| patrol, raid** *Ammunition was seized during a dawn raid on the flat.*

PREP. **at ~** *That morning, she rose at dawn.* **| before ~, by ~, till/until ~, towards ~**

PHRASES **(at) the crack of dawn** (= as soon as it begins to be light), **from dawn to dusk** *He works from dawn to dusk, and often well into the night.*

2 **beginning**

ADJ. **false** *This sudden success may prove to be a false dawn* (= not the beginning of continued success). **| new**

PREP. **~ of** *the dawn of civilization/history/a new era Let's think back to the dawn of time.*

dawn *verb*

1 **begin**

PHRASES **dawn bright, sunny, clear, cold, etc.** *The day dawned bright and sunny.*

2 **become clear**

ADV. **suddenly | gradually, slowly** *It slowly dawned on me that he might have been mistaken.* **| eventually, finally**

VERB + DAWN **begin to** *It was beginning to dawn on her that she had been fooled.*

PREP. **on** *The dreadful truth finally dawned on me.*

day *noun*

1 period of 24 hours

ADJ. **the following, (the) next | the previous | the other** *I was in your area the other day* (= recently). **| one, some** *I hope we meet again some day.* **| the very** *It happened on the very day* (= the same day) *that Kemp was murdered. The parcel arrived the very next day.* **| auspicious, big, eventful, field, historic, memorable, red-letter, special** *The tabloid press had a field day with the latest government scandal.* **| fateful, sad** *those killed in the hail of bullets fired on that fateful day* **| Christmas, Mother's, etc. | feast, holy | election, opening, market, pay, polling, sports, visiting, wedding | rest, school, study, training** *the pattern of the school day*

DAY + VERB **pass** *He thought of her less as the days passed.*

PREP. **by the ~** *He's getting stronger by the day.* **| for a/the ~** *They stayed for ten days.* **| in a/the ~** *We hope to finish the job in a few days.* **| on the ~ (of)** *On the day of his wedding he was very nervous.* **| ~ of** *It was the day of the big match.*

2 time between sunrise and sunset

ADJ. **beautiful, bright, fine, glorious, hot, nice, sunny, warm | cold, grey, rainy, windy | autumn, spring, summer/summer's, winter/winter's** *a fine summer's day* **| fun, good, great, happy, lovely, wonderful** *Memories of happy days on the hills never fade.* **| bad** *On a bad day chaos reigns and nobody can predict when a plane will leave.* **| full** *I knew I had a full day's driving ahead of me.*

VERB + DAY **spend** *We spent the day gardening.*

DAY + VERB **break, dawn** *As day dawned I found her already hard at work.*

PREP. **by ~** *We travelled at night and rested by day.* **| during the ~, for a/the ~** *We went to the seaside for the day.*

PHRASES **all day (long), at the end of the day, day and night, one of those days** *It's been one of those days when everything's gone wrong.*

3 **hours of the day when you work**

ADJ. **working | bad, busy, hard, long, tiring** *a hard day at the office* **| good, quiet | 7-hour, 8-hour, etc.** *a 9-hour working day*

PHRASES **a good day's work**

4 **(often days) particular period of time**

ADJ. **early, former, old, olden** *in the early days of the cinema* **| school, student, young** *in his younger days* **| golden, happy, heady** *the heady days of the 'swinging sixties'* **| dark** *the dark days of recession*

PREP. **in sb's ~** *Things were very different in my grandfather's day.* **| of the ~** *the government of the day* **| since the ~s of** *Much has changed since the days of my youth.*

PHRASES **gone are the days when …** *Gone are the days when you could do a week's shopping and still have change from £20.* **| the bad/good old days** *That was in the bad old days of rampant inflation.* **| in this day and age, in those days, the present day** (= the situation that exists in the world now) *a study of European drama, from Ibsen to the present day* **| these days** *Kids grow up so quickly these days.* **| those were the days** (= used to suggest that a time in the past was better than now) > Note at DAY

daylight *noun*

ADJ. **broad, full** *He was robbed in broad daylight.* | **natural** *I prefer to work in natural daylight.*

VERB + DAYLIGHT **let in** *The thin curtains let in the daylight.* | **shut out** *The shutters were closed to keep out the daylight.* | **emerge into** *The prisoners emerged, blinking, into daylight.*

DAYLIGHT + VERB **filter through sth, flood in, penetrate sth** *A little daylight was filtering through the curtains. He drew back the curtains and the daylight flooded in. The daylight penetrated to the far corners of the room.* | **break** *Towards 6 a.m. daylight broke.* | **fade** *The evening turned cool as daylight faded.*

DAYLIGHT + NOUN **hours** *The public has access during daylight hours.*

PREP. **before ~** *She was up before daylight.* | **by ~** *By daylight the fire was almost under control.* | **in ~** *I can see better in daylight.* | **into the ~** *She went back out into the daylight.*

PHRASES **the hours of daylight** *The machines roar incessantly during the hours of daylight.*

daytime *noun*

DAYTIME + NOUN **phone number, telephone number | television | temperature | hours**

PREP. **during the ~, in the ~** *Resist the temptation to nap in the daytime.*

dazed *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** *She looked dazed and frightened.* **| leave sb** *The punch left him dazed and bleeding.*

ADV. **almost | half | a bit, a little, slightly** *I still felt a little dazed.*

PREP. **by** *half dazed by shock*

dead *adj.*

VERBS **be, lie** *His wife lay dead beside him.* **| look | sham** *The animal will sometimes escape danger by shamming dead.* **| drop** *He just dropped dead one day in his garden.* **| shoot sb, strike sb** *Gunmen shot dead a policeman. She had been struck dead by lightning.* **| find sb** *The woman was found dead with a rope round her neck.* **| declare sb, pronounce sb** *She was declared dead on arrival at the hospital.*

ADV. **quite** *I'm afraid he's quite dead.*

PHRASES **dead and buried** *(figurative) In ten years he'll be dead and buried as a politician.* **| dead and gone** *That won't happen until long after I'm dead and gone.* **| dead or alive** *We didn't know whether the fish was dead or alive.* **| more dead than alive** *Poor child, she looks more dead than alive.*

deadline *noun*

ADJ. **strict, tight**

VERB + DEADLINE **have, work to** *We're working to a very tight deadline.* **| impose, set** *The deadline set by the High Court is Monday 3rd March.* **| extend** *We're asking them to extend the deadline.* **| meet** *It will be a struggle to meet the deadline.* **| miss**

DEADLINE + VERB **approach** *She began to panic as the deadline approached.* **| expire, pass** *The Wednesday deadline passed without any communication from the rebel leader.*

PREP. **before a/the ~, by a/the ~** *I must get this report finished by tomorrow's deadline.* **| ~ for** *The deadline for entries is noon Thursday.*

deadlock *noun*

ADJ. **complete | political**

VERB + DEADLOCK **end in, reach** *The negotiations ended in deadlock. The strike appeared to have reached a deadlock.* **| break, resolve**

PREP. **in ~** *The negotiations were adjourned in deadlock last week.* **| ~ between** *the deadlock between striking workers and their employer* **| ~ in** *The summit called for an end to the deadlock in the peace talks.* **| ~ over** *The government has called new talks in an attempt to break the deadlock over the issue of redundancy money.*

PHRASES **a state of deadlock** *Talks between the two sides remain in a state of complete deadlock.*

deaf *adj.*

VERBS **be | be born** *Their child was born deaf.* **| become, end up, go** *He eventually went deaf.* **| remain** *She remained deaf until she died.* **| leave sb, make sb** *Standing next to the machine all day left her deaf in one ear.*

ADV. **very | profoundly** *(technical),* **stone, totally** *Many of these children are profoundly deaf. It's no good shouting?he's stone deaf.* **| a little, partially, rather, slightly** *She spoke loudly because her mother was a little deaf.* **| chronically** *helping chronically deaf patients*

PREP. **~ to** *(figurative) The committee remained deaf to our suggestions.*

PHRASES **deaf in one ear**

deal *noun*

ADJ. **fair, good | major** *They are hoping to clinch a major deal to supply computers to the army.* **| exclusive** *The TV station has signed an exclusive deal to show all United's home games.* **| lucrative | five-year, etc. | long-term | compromise | cut-price** *The company are offering cut-price deals on many flights.* **| shady** *He has been mixed up in several shady deals with arms dealers.* **| package** *The union accepted a package deal including higher pension and longer holiday allowance.* **| business, financial, political, trade | pay, sponsorship | arms, weapons | two-book, three-film, etc.** *The band signed a two-album deal with a record company.*

VERB + DEAL **agree, arrange, close, complete, conclude, cut, do, make, negotiate, reach, seal, sign, strike** *Management and unions have agreed a new deal on pay and productivity. I'll make a deal with you?I'll work evenings if you'll work weekends.* **| clinch, get, secure, win** *Nurses have taken to the streets to get a fair deal from the government.* **| have** *She has a lucrative deal with a cosmetics company.* **| pull out of** *Britain pulled out of the deal because of rising costs.* **| scupper** *Any sponsorship deal would be scuppered if Jones misses the Olympics.* **| offer (sb), propose | accept** *Staff have accepted a deal offering them a 2% share of profits.* **| reject**

DEAL + VERB **go ahead** *The pay deal will not now go ahead.* **| fall apart, fall through** *The deal fell through when the author received a more attractive offer.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *They took over the company in a £750,000 deal.* **| under a/the ~** *Under the deal, you save money if you repay the loan early.* **| ~ between** *a deal between France and Spain* **| ~ from** *You may get a better deal from another bank.* **| ~ on** *I got a very good deal on my new car.* **| ~ over** *The unions are ready to do a deal over pay.* **| ~ with** *The company has done a deal with the catering staff.*

PHRASES **get/have a bad/raw/rotten/rough deal** *Immigrants often get a bad deal when it comes to pay.* **| get/have a fair/square deal** *The union tries to get a square deal for all its members.* **| part of the deal** *Increased holiday allowance is part of the deal.* **| the terms of the deal** *Under the terms of the deal, the band has to make two albums a year.* > Special page at BUSINESS

deal *verb*

ADV. **directly**

PREP. **in** *The shop deals in second-hand books.* **| with** *Our factory deals directly with its customers.* **PHRASAL VERBS deal with sth**

ADV. **quickly, speedily | at length, fully** *This topic is dealt with at greater length in the following chapter.* **| effectively | fairly, properly** *You have not dealt fairly with me.* **| easily** *Not all complaints are so easily dealt with.* **| separately** *The two issues should be dealt with separately.* **| together**

PHRASES **a way of dealing with sth** *We discussed different ways of dealing with the problem.*

dealer *noun*

ADJ. **licensed** *It is always a good idea to sell through a licensed dealer.* **| reputable** *Always buy from a reputable dealer.* **| shady, unscrupulous | antique/antiques, arms, art, car, drug**

PREP. **through a/the ~** *She sold the painting through a London art dealer.* **| ~ in** *a dealer in antiques* > Note at JOB

dealings *noun*

ADJ. **extensive | personal | day-to-day** *The new arrangements will help the banks in their ordinary day-to-day dealings.* **| future | corrupt, fraudulent, illegal, underhand | business, commercial, financial**

VERB + DEALINGS **have** *They had extensive dealings with officials in Rome.*

PREP. **in your ~ with** *We need to be very careful in our dealings with these distressed young people.*

death *noun*

ADJ. **early, premature, untimely** *The president's untimely death has thrown the country into chaos.* | **sudden, unexpected** | **immediate, instant** | **quick** | **slow** | **approaching, imminent, impending** | **certain** *He had been miraculously saved from almost certain death.* | **terrible** | **tragic** *the tragic death of their son* | **mysterious, suspicious** *Police are not treating the death as suspicious.* | **natural, unnatural** | **accidental** *a verdict of accidental death* | **violent** *Police report a decrease in violent deaths.* | **painful** | **cot, road** | **living** *(figurative) the living death of captivity*

VERB + DEATH **bring, cause, lead to, mean, result in** *the drivers who bring death to our roads Poor living conditions can lead to early death. Touching the wires means instant death. The brutal attack resulted in the man's death.* | die, face, meet *She died a slow and painful death. He met his death two years later.* | **contemplate** | **risk** | **fear** | **approach, be near, near** | **cheat, escape** *He escaped death by inches when a tree fell on his tent.* | **save sb from** | **mourn** *mourning the death of their daughter* | **bleed to, burn to, choke to, freeze to, starve to** | **condemn sb to, sentence sb to** | **batter sb to, beat sb to, burn sb to, choke sb to, club sb to,** crush sb to, flog sb to, hack sb **to, kick sb to, put sb to, stab sb to, stone sb to, torture sb to,** trample sb to | be **punishable/punished by** *Incest was punishable by death. Your next of kin will receive death benefit if you die in an accident.* | **duties** *After the death duties had been paid, there was little money left for the family.* | **threat** *The actor has received death threats since appearing in the controversial film.* | **wish** *He took drugs as if he had some kind of death wish.* | **agonies, throes** *The snake was writhing in its death agonies.*

(figurative) By 1740 European feudalism was in its death throes. | **bed** (also **deathbed)** *On his deathbed, my father made me promise not to sell the house.* | **squad** *Paramilitary death squads are rumoured to be operating in the area.* | **warrant** *(often figurative) By publicly condemning the terrorists he was signing his own death warrant.* | **camp** *He died as a prisoner of war in an enemy death camp.*

PREP. **after (sb's) ~** *Do you believe in life after death?* | **at ~** *(formal) The average age at death of plague victims was 14.* | **before (sb's) ~, in ~** *His face looked more peaceful in death than it had during his last days.* | **near (to) ~** *It was clear that the dog was near death.* | **on sb's ~** *On Samuel's death, the farm passed to his sons.* | **~ by** *death by starvation* | **~ from** *Two deaths from cholera have been reported.*

PHRASES **cause of death** *The coroner said the cause of death was a stroke.* | **a**

matter of life and/or death *Fulfilling orders on time is a matter of life and death for a small company.* **| sentence of death** *Four prisoners were under sentence of death.*

DEATH + VERB **come, happen, occur** *Her death came at the age of 82. More deaths occur in winter.* **| result from** *deaths resulting from disease*

DEATH + NOUN **rate** *The government's campaign aims to cut the death rate from heart attacks.* **| toll** *The death toll in the earthquake has been put at over one thousand.* **| penalty, sentence** *If found guilty of drug trafficking, the pair could face the death penalty.* **| row** *There are currently over 3,000 prisoners on death row.* **| certificate | benefit**

debatable *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **highly, very** *This is a highly debatable point.* **| somewhat**

debate *noun*

1 discussion

ADJ. **considerable | fierce, heated, intense, lively, vigorous** *There has been heated debate about whether the film should be allowed.* **| wider** *You cannot separate unemployment from the wider debate about the economy.* **| public** *Television actually encourages public debate about such issues.* **| political**

VERB + DEBATE **have | contribute to** *Many leading charities have contributed to the debate on world poverty.* **| encourage, promote** *A healthy society promotes vigorous debate.* **| spark off** *This accident has sparked off an intense debate on road safety.* **| stifle** *He accused the government of trying to stifle debate.* **| lose, win** *The environmentalists seem to have lost the debate over the building of this road.* **| be a matter for, be open to** *The benefits of the new law are open to debate.*

DEBATE + VERB **rage, take place** *A debate about safety is taking place in schools everywhere.*

PREP. **under ~** *The issue is still under debate.* **| ~ about/on/over** *the debate on the environment* **| ~ among** *the debate among academics* **| ~ surrounding** *the debate surrounding contemporary art*

PHRASES **the subject of debate** *The proposed changes to the law have been the subject of much debate.*

2 a formal discussion

ADJ. **brief | lengthy, long | acrimonious, fierce, heated, lively, stormy** *a stormy debate in the House of Commons* **| congressional, parliamentary** *a parliamentary debate on the fishing industry*

VERB + DEBATE **have, hold** *We had a brief debate about whether or not to accept the offer. The union holds debates for students.* **| participate in, speak in, take part in** *Do you ever speak in debates?* **| open** *The prime minister will open the debate.* **| close | lose, win** *The government lost the debate in the House of Commons.*

PREP. **during/in a/the~ | ~ about/on** *Many of these points were raised during the debate on prison reform.*

debate *verb*

ADV. **fully, properly, seriously, thoroughly | fiercely, hotly** *The issue is still being hotly debated.* **| openly, publicly** *The question of security needs to be debated publicly.* **| at length, endlessly, extensively**

PREP. **with** *a presidential candidate debating with his opponent He sat there debating with himself what to do.*

PHRASES **be widely debated** *The report has been widely debated in the industry.*

debit *verb*

ADV. **automatically**

PREP. **from** *The money will be debited from your account.* **| with** *Your current account is automatically debited with the amount of your purchase.*

debris *noun*

ADJ. **flying** *She was hit on the head by flying debris.* **| food, plant, rock** *These worms feed on plant debris.* **| garden, industrial, volcanic**

QUANT. **piece | heap, pile**

VERB + DEBRIS **scatter, shower** *The tank exploded, scattering debris all over the field.* **| clear (away/up), clear sth of, remove** *Teams of people are working to clear the debris. Remember to clear the drain of debris regularly.* **| search through, sift through** *Police have spent the day sifting throught the debris for clues.*

DEBRIS + VERB **accumulate** *Debris accumulates at the bottom of the bottle.*

PREP. **among the ~, in the ~** *She found a pair of children's shoes among the debris.* **| through the ~**

debt *noun*

1 sum of money owed

ADJ. **big, crippling, enormous, high, huge, large, massive, substantial** *He was burdened with crippling debts.* | **mounting** *a company faced with mounting debts* | **outstanding, unpaid** *She used her lottery winnings to pay off her outstanding debts.* | **overdue** | **bad** (= that cannot be repaid) *Bad debt has hit the bank's profits this year.* | **long-term, short-term** | **overall, total** | **gross, net** | **commercial, corporate** | **external, foreign, international** | **national, public** *The country has a national debt of 80% of GNP.* | **gambling**

VERB + DEBT **be burdened with, have, owe (sb)** *the substantial debts that the company owed to the bank* | **incur, run up** *She ran up huge debts on her credit card.* | **clear, meet, pay (back/off), repay, settle** *Without a job, he'll never clear his debts. It'll take months to pay off all your debts.* | **reduce** | **tackle** *The new governments main aim is to tackle the country's massive debt.* | **default on** *The firm defaulted on its debt and its assets were seized.* | **cancel, wipe off/out, write off** *After a series of meetings, the banks were forced to write off the company's debts.* | **service** (= pay interest on) *The fall in exports has left the country unable to service its debts.* | **reschedule, restructure** *The company has reached a deal with its major creditors allowing it to restructure its debts.* | **secure** *a debt secured on property*

DEBT + VERB **fall due** | **stand at sth, total sth** *The national debt stands at $7,000 million.* | **arise from sth** *debts arising from bad investments*

DEBT + NOUN **collection, collector** | **burden**

PREP. **of ~** *$80 million of debt*

PHRASES **a burden of debt** *Faced with a mounting burden of debt, he sold off the company.* | **payment/repayment/settlement of a debt**

2 state of owing money

ADJ. **serious**

VERB + DEBT **go into, get into, slip into** *It is easy to get into serious debt with a credit card.* | **get out of** *You can get out of debt by strict economizing.*

PREP. **in ~** *He was heavily in debt by the time he sought advice.* **| out of ~** *struggling to stay out of debt*

PHRASES **deeply/heavily in debt**

3 **sth that you owe sb**

ADJ. **great**

VERB + DEBT **owe | acknowledge, recognize**

PREP. **in sb's ~** *I am in Ruth's debt for the excellent advice she gave me.* **| ~ to** *In the introduction, the author acknowledges her debt to other writers on the subject.*

PHRASES **owe a debt of gratitude to sb** *We owe a great debt of gratitude to our families for their support.*

decade *noun*

ADJ. **present | coming, following, next | last, past, preceding, previous, recent**

DECADE + VERB **elapse, go by, pass** *This decade has passed uneventfully.* **| begin, open, start** *This decade began badly for us.* **| close, end | see sth** *The past decade has seen a huge rise in the number of computer owners.*

PREP. **during a/the ~, for a/the ~, in a/the ~, over a/the ~, throughout a/the ~, within a/the ~**

decay *noun*

VERB + DECAY **rapid | slow | dental, tooth | economic, industrial, urban | moral, physical, social**

VERB + DECAY **cause** *Bacteria sticks to food debris in the teeth, causing decay.* **| stop** *Without a lot of money, the mayor won't be able to stop urban decay.* **| reverse** *This government promises to reverse industrial decay.* **| prevent** *The wood is treated with preservative to prevent decay.* **| fall into** *old buildings that had fallen into decay*

PREP. **in ~** *The derelict buildings are the signs of a town in decay.* **| ~ in** *Smoking accelerates age-related decay in the heart and arteries.* **| ~ of** *the slow decay of the castle and the surrounding buildings*

PHRASES **the process of decay, signs of decay** *My dentist could not find any signs of decay.* **| an odour/a smell/a stench of decay** *A smell of decay pervaded the air.* **| a state of decay**

decayed *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, smell | become**

ADV. **badly** *Some of her teeth were very badly decayed.* **| completely** *The wood was completely decayed.* **| sadly** *New Shoreham, now sadly decayed, has barely 100 inhabitants.*

deceased *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **recently** *her recently deceased husband* **| sadly** *His mother is now sadly deceased.*

deceive *verb*

ADV. **easily** *Human nature is such that we easily deceive ourselves.*

VERB + DECEIVE **attempt to, try to**

PREP. **into** *The public should not be deceived into buying inferior goods.*

December *nou*n > Note at MONTH

decency *noun*

ADJ. **common, human** *a lack of common decency* **| public** *Your behaviour is an affront to public decency.*

VERB + DECENCY **have** *He might have had the decency to let us know.*

PHRASES **a sense of decency, standards of decency**

decent *adj.*

1 **good/acceptable**

VERBS **be, look** *The pub looked decent enough.*

ADV. **really, very | perfectly | half/halfway, pretty, quite** *We had trouble finding a hotel that was halfway decent.* **| enough**

PREP. **to** *My uncle has been pretty decent to me.*

2 **honest/respectable**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very | perfectly, thoroughly**

PHRASES **do the decent thing** *I think the minister should do the decent thing and resign.*

deception *noun*

ADJ. **cruel | elaborate** *This elaborate deception fooled his family for ages.* **| deliberate**

VERB + DECEPTION **practise, use** *He'll use deception to get what he wants.* **| see through** *She failed to see through his deception.* **| obtain sth by** *(especially law) She was charged with obtaining property by deception.*

deceptive *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly, very | dangerously**

PHRASES **can be deceptive** *Appearances can be deceptive?dangerously deceptive.*

decide *verb*

ADV. **finally** *We finally decided to stay where we were.* **| sensibly, wisely** *He decided very wisely to keep his money rather than spend it.*

VERB + DECIDE **be able/unable to, can/can't, could (not)** *I can't decide what to do.* **| have to, must** *You will have to decide soon.* **| try to | be difficult to**

PREP. **against** *They decided against taking legal action* **| between** *It was difficult to decide between the various options.* **| in favour of** *They decided in favour of reducing the fees.* **| on/upon** *We're still trying to decide on a venue.*

PHRASES **decide for yourself** *She should be allowed to decide for herself.* **| the task of deciding sth** *The committee will have the task of deciding whether more cash should be made available.* **| to be decided** *The exact time of the meeting is still to be decided.*

decision *noun*

ADJ. **big, crucial, fateful, important, key, landmark** *(law)*, **major, momentous** *It was a big decision to have to make. In a landmark decision, the court agreed to hear evidence from twenty years earlier.* | **difficult, hard, tough** *the difficult decision of whether to go to university or nurse her sick mother* | **firm** *We need a firm decision by Friday.* | **prompt, snap** *I had to make a snap decision about what to do with the money.* | **hasty, knee-jerk, rash** | **final, irreversible, irrevocable** *On Monday, the board of directors will meet to make their final decision. The decision is irreversible.* | **informed** *I need more facts before I can make an informed decision.* | **arbitrary** | **good, rational, right, sensible, wise** | **bad, poor, unwise, wrong** | **collective, joint, unanimous** *In the end, the decision to scrap the project was unanimous.* | **majority, split** | **court, government, etc.** | **investment, policy, etc.**

VERB + DECISION **arrive at, come to, make, reach, take** *Key decisions are always taken by the editor.* | **announce, give (sb)** *The committee will give us their decision tomorrow.* | **abide by** *The decision has been made, and we must all abide by it.* | **affirm, uphold** *The management committee upheld her decision to fire two of her staff.* | **reconsider** | **appeal against, challenge** *plans to challenge this decision in the High Court* | **overrule, overturn, quash, reverse** *Nobody has the authority to overrule his decision.* | **defer**

DECISION + NOUN **maker**

PREP. **~ about/on** *a decision on her future* > Special page at MEETING

decisive *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove**

ADV. **absolutely | potentially** *He had one potentially decisive factor in his favour: the element of surprise.* **| ultimately** *It is the chief executive's opinion which is ultimately decisive.*

deck *noun*

1 **top outside floor of a ship/boat**

ADJ. **open**

VERB + DECK **go up on** *When we heard the alarm, we went up on deck.*

PREP. **below ~** *The passengers were trapped below deck.* | **on ~** *I joined the others on deck.*

2 **one of the floors of a bus/ship**

ADJ. **lower, top, upper | aft/after, main, poop, promenade, saloon, sun (on a ship)**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *sitting on the top deck of the bus*

declaration *noun*

ADJ. **formal, solemn | ringing** *The Russian leader received a ringing declaration of support yesterday.* **| joint | unilateral | public**

VERB + DECLARATION **issue, make** *The government will issue a formal declaration tomorrow.* **| adopt, sign** *All four countries have adopted the declaration against hunting rare animals.*

PREP. **~ about/on** *the UN declaration on Human Rights* **| ~ of** *a declaration of war*

declare *verb*

ADV. **virtually** *He has virtually declared war on the right-wingers in his party.* **| immediately, promptly** *Martial law was immediately declared.* **| formally, officially | openly, publicly | grandly, proudly** *She proudly declared that she had once been introduced to the Queen.* **| loudly | boldly, confidently, firmly, roundly, stoutly | brightly** *'I'm as fresh as a daisy,' he declared brightly.* **| solemnly | unanimously | unilaterally** *The communists had unilaterally declared a ceasefire.* **| hereby** *(law or formal) We, the people of Indonesia, hereby declare Indonesia's independence.*

PREP. **to** *He declared his true feelings to her.*

decline *noun*

ADJ. **catastrophic, considerable, dramatic, drastic, massive, marked, precipitate, precipitous, rapid, serious, sharp, significant, steep, substantial | gentle, gradual, modest, slight, slow | continuing, progressive, steady** *a steady decline in manufacturing* **| general, long-term, overall | absolute, inevitable, inexorable, irreversible, terminal** *an industry in terminal decline* **| economic, industrial, moral, political, urban** *the moral decline of the nation* **| national**

VERB + DECLINE **fall into, go into, suffer** *The cloth trade went into gradual decline.* **| cause, lead to** *The increased gold price lead to the decline of his jewellery business.* **| arrest, halt, stop** *We must halt this decline in health services.* **| prevent | accelerate | see** *We have seen a sharp decline in educational standards over recent years.*

PREP. **in ~** *The motor industry is still in decline.* **| on the ~** *This area has been on the decline for some years now.* **| ~ in** *a steep decline in sales* **| ~ of** *the decline of British farming*

PHRASES **the decline and fall of sth** *the decline and fall of a great civilization*

decline *verb*

1 **refuse**

ADV. **politely | absolutely** *I absolutely decline to discuss my dealings with him or anyone.*

2 **become smaller/weaker**

ADV. **considerably, dramatically, drastically, markedly, sharply, significantly, steeply** *The economy has declined sharply in recent years.* **| a little, slightly | fast, rapidly** *The market for these products is declining fast.* **| steadily | gradually, slowly | further**

PREP. **by** *Profits declined by 6% this year.* **| from, to** *The number of full-time staff has declined from 300 to just 50.*

PHRASES **decline in importance/numbers/size** *This section of the market has slowly declined in importance.*

decompose *verb*

PHRASES **badly/partially/partly decomposed** *His badly decomposed body was found many weeks later.*

decorate *verb*

1 **make sth attractive**

ADV. **beautifully, elaborately, elegantly, gaily, intricately, lavishly, ornately, richly** *The room was lavishly decorated with tinsel and holly.*

PREP. **with** *Decorate the cake with raspberries and whipped cream.*

2 **with paint/wallpaper**

ADV. **nicely, pleasantly, tastefully** *The bedrooms are tastefully decorated.*

PREP. **in** *The room is decorated in pale blues and greens.*

3 **give sb a medal**

PREP. **for** *He was decorated for bravery.*

PHRASES **highly decorated** *the most highly decorated unit in the British Army*

decorative *adj.*

VERBS be, look

ADV. extremely, highly, richly, very, wonderfully *The style is ornate and highly decorative.* **| purely** *The items he makes are purely decorative.* **| quite**

decrease *noun*

ADJ. **dramatic, large, sharp, significant** *There has been a sharp decrease in pollution since the law was introduced.* **| slight, small | gradual, progressive, steady | corresponding** *Fewer houses are available, but there is no corresponding decrease in demand.*

VERB + DECREASE **show** *This year's figures show a decrease of 30% on last year.* **| report** *Half the companies in the survey reported a decrease in sales.* **| cause, lead to, result in**

PREP. **on the ~** *Marriage is still on the decrease.* **| ~ from … to …** *a decrease from 62% to just under half* **| ~ in** *The new treatment led to a huge decrease in the number of deaths.* **| ~ of** *a decrease of 20%* **| ~ to**

decrease *verb*

ADV. **considerably, dramatically, drastically, markedly, significantly | slightly** *Spending has decreased slightly this year.* **| rapidly | steadily | gradually**

PREP. **by** *Crime has decreased by 20 per cent.* **| from, to** *Average family size has decreased from five to three children.* **| with** *The number of quarrels among children decreases with age.*

PHRASES **decrease in number/size/value** *The heart gradually decreases in size.*

decree *noun*

ADJ. **emergency** *The government had the power to legislate by emergency decree independently of Parliament.* **| papal, presidential, royal | court**

VERB + DECREE **adopt, issue, pass, publish** *The president issued a decree prohibiting trade unions.* **| sign | enforce** *Local inspectors helped enforce presidential decrees.* **| revoke | defy** *10,000 demonstrators defied the decree and gathered in the square.* **| govern by, legislate by, rule by** *The general will rule by decree until a general election.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *In an emergency decree, the government banned all rallies.* **| ~ on** *a decree on property rights*

dedicated *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **highly, really, truly, very** *The workforce is small but highly dedicated.* **| absolutely, totally, utterly**

PREP. **to** *She is totally dedicated to her job.*

dedication *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total | great**

VERB + DEDICATION **have** *Not everyone has the dedication and the talent to achieve this.* **| show | need, require** *You will need dedication and determination to complete the course. The job requires total dedication.*

PREP. **~ to** *I really admire Gina for her dedication to her family.*

deduce *verb*

ADV. **easily | logically** *The total amount can be deduced logically from the figures available.*

VERB + DEDUCE **be able to, can | be possible to** *Using the evidence available it is possible to deduce quite a lot about how these people lived.*

PREP. **from** *We deduce from his behaviour that he is trying to gain attention.*

deduct *verb*

ADV. **at source** *Tax is deducted at source.* **| automatically** *This amount will be deducted automatically from your salary.*

PREP. **from**

deduction *noun*

1 **working things out from the facts**

ADJ. **brilliant | logical | reasonable**

VERB + DEDUCTION **make**

PREP. **by ~** *She arrived at this conclusion by logical deduction.* **| ~ about** *We can make some deductions about the history of the ruins.*

PHRASES **powers of deduction** *a detective with excellent powers of deduction* **| a process of deduction** *She arrived at the solution by a simple process of deduction.*

2 **taking an amount from a total/the amount taken**

ADJ. **monthly, weekly** *monthly deductions for health insurance* **| tax**

VERB + DEDUCTION **make** *The company automatically makes tax deductions from your salary.*

PREP. **~ for** *deductions for travel costs* **| ~ from** *deductions from his wages*

deed *noun*

ADJ. **brave, daring, glorious, good, great, heroic, mighty, noble** *She felt that she had done her good deed for the day.* **| dark, dastardly, dirty, evil, terrible** *The prince swore she would be punished for her dastardly deeds.*

VERB + DEED **do, perform, perpetrate** *She would not be able to relax until the deed was done. warriors who performed glorious deeds evil deeds perpetrated by wicked people*

PREP. **in ~(s)** *He frequently expressed his love for her in words if not in deeds.*

deep *adj.*

1 **a long way from top to bottom/front to back**

VERBS **be, look** *The water looks quite deep there.*

ADV. **really, very | fairly, pretty, quite**

PHRASES **ankle/knee/waist deep** *She stood knee deep in the water.*

2 **low in tone**

VERBS **be, sound** *Her voice sounded very deep on the telephone.* **| become**

ADV. **very | fairly, quite**

3 **strongly felt**

VERBS **be, go, run** *This suspicion runs very deep among some government members.* **| become**

ADV. **very** *a very deep feeling of love* **| fairly, quite**

defeat *noun*

ADJ. **bitter, catastrophic, complete, comprehensive, crushing, decisive, devastating, disastrous, heavy, humiliating, ignominious, overwhelming, resounding, serious, stunning** *Their party suffered a heavy defeat in the election. The battle ended in a humiliating defeat.* **| narrow** *They lost 4?3 in their second narrow defeat of the week.* **| consecutive, successive | election, electoral, political | military**

VERB + DEFEAT **accept, admit, concede** *She is very determined, and will never admit defeat. The prime minister conceded defeat and resigned.* **| face | go down to, slump to, to suffer** *The team went down to their fifth consecutive defeat.* **| reverse** *A skilful politician can always reverse any defeats.* **| avoid** *We just need to avoid defeat in our last two matches.* **| inflict** *The army inflicted a heavy defeat on rebel forces.* **| end in | lead to**

PREP. **~ against** *last week's crushing defeat against Manchester United* **| ~ by** *their defeat by the French*

PHRASES **defeat at the hands of sb** *The team suffered defeat at the hands of their oldest rivals.*

defeat *verb*

ADV. **comprehensively, convincingly, decisively, easily, heavily, soundly, totally** *The English were heavily defeated by the Scots in the battle that followed. The proposed bill was decisively defeated in Parliament.* **| narrowly** *Our team was narrowly defeated in the final.* **| eventually, finally, ultimately**

PREP. **by** *The motion was defeated by 20 votes to 18.*

defect *noun*

ADJ. **fundamental, important, major, serious** *a fundamental defect in the product* **| minor, slight, small** *Goods with slight defects are sold at half price.* **| building, mechanical, structural | birth, congenital, genetic** *All lambs are checked for birth defects when they are born.* **| eye, heart, physical, sight, speech, visual | character**

VERB + DEFECT **contain, have, suffer from** *The book contains serious defects. He has a congenital heart defect.* **| find** *The inspector found defects in the aircraft's construction.* **| correct, cure, remedy, repair** *This is a physical defect that cannot be cured. The builders agreed to remedy the structural defects.*

PREP. **~ in** *major defects in the education system* **| ~ of** *a defect of her character*

defective *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove** *If the goods prove defective, the customer has the right to compensation.*

ADV. **highly, seriously, severely** *Her vision is seriously defective.*

defence *noun*

1 **action to protect sb/sth from attack**

ADJ. **adequate, effective | natural** *the body's natural defence against viruses* **| national | air | civil | nuclear**

VERB + DEFENCE **organize, plan** *to plan the defence of harbour* **| come to, leap to, rush to, spring to** *He always sprang to Rose's defence when Ed tried to criticize her.*

PREP. **in ~ of** *to fight in defence of your country* **| ~ against** *defence against attacks from the north*

PHRASES **weapons of defence**

2 **sth that protects sb/sth from sth**

ADJ. **effective | coastal, sea**

VERB + DEFENCE **put up** *They put up an effective defence against the guerrilla forces.* **| overcome, overwhelm** *With her tears and angry accusations she completely overwhelmed his defences.* **| build (up)** *They are building up defences along the river.* **| breach** *The sea breached the coastal defences in a number of spots.*

DEFENCE + NOUN **mechanism**

PREP. **~ against**

3 **forces, etc. for protecting a country**

DEFENCE + NOUN **force/forces, system | minister, ministry | policy, strategy | industry | budget, cuts, expenditure, spending**

4 **legal argument**

ADJ. **good | robust, spirited, strong | adequate | legal**

VERB + DEFENCE **conduct, make, mount, put up, raise | destroy**

DEFENCE + NOUN **counsel, lawyer**

PREP. **in sb's ~** *She spoke in his defence.* **| ~ of, ~ to** *a defence to murder*

PHRASES **counsel for the defence**

5 in sport

ADJ. **good, strong, stubborn**

VERB + DEFENCE **put up | destroy | strengthen**

PREP. **in ~** *to play in defence*

defenceless *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, lie** *The city lay defenceless before the most powerful fighting force on the continent.* **| leave sb** *They were left virtually defenceless against enemy attack.*

ADV. **entirely, quite, totally, utterly** *She felt utterly defenceless.* **| almost, virtually**

PREP. **against** *They were completely defenceless against enemy attack.*

PHRASES **poor defenceless** *stealing money from a poor defenceless old lady*

defend *verb*

1 **protect against attack**

PREP. **against**

PHRASES **heavily defended** *The city was heavily defended against attack.*

2 **support**

ADV. **fiercely, hotly, robustly, staunchly, stoutly, strenuously, strongly, vigorously** *The company has strenuously defended its decision to reduce the workforce.* **| publicly**

PREP. **against** *She defended her department against accusations of incompetence.*

3 **in sport/competitions**

ADV. **successfully**

PREP. **against** *The champion successfully defended his title against the American challenger.*

defendant *noun*

VERB + DEFENDANT **charge** *The defendant was charged with disturbing the peace.* **| sue** *a defendant being sued by an insurance company* **| convict, find guilty** *The defendant was convicted of murder. The jury found the defendant guilty on all counts.* **| sentence** *The defendant was sentenced to three years in prison.* **| acquit, find not guilty | release**

DEFENDANT + VERB **plead guilty/not guilty**

PREP. **against the ~** *the plaintiff's claim against the defendant* **| for the ~** *Several witnesses gave evidence for the defendant.* **| ~ in** *a defendant in bankruptcy proceedings*

defensive *adj.*

1 **protecting against attack**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **purely** *These are purely defensive measures.* | **essentially, largely** *a largely defensive campaign*

2 **showing you feel sb is criticizing you**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** | **become, get** *Whenever anyone mention women's rights, he gets rather defensive.*

ADV. **extremely, fiercely, very** *He did not once glance at his listeners and seemed fiercely defensive.* | **a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** | **oddly** *Her manner was oddly defensive, as he hadn't intended any criticism at all.*

PREP. **about** *He is extremely defensive about his work.*

defer *verb*

ADV. **further | indefinitely** *The decision has been deferred indefinitely.*

VERB + DEFER **agree to, decide to**

PREP. **for** *Sentence was deferred for six months.* **| pending** *Diagnosis was deferred pending further assessment.* **| till/until** *We agreed to defer discussion of these issues until the next meeting.*

deference *noun*

ADJ. **great**

VERB + DEFERENCE **accord, show, treat sb with** *The actress was accorded all the deference of a visiting celebrity. Why do you treat your boss with such deference?*

PREP. **in/out of ~ to** *The traditional menu was changed in deference to Western tastes.* **| with ~** *She spoke with great deference.* **| ~ to, ~ towards** *deference towards your elders*

defiance *noun*

ADJ. **blatant, flagrant, open** *flagrant defiance of the rules* **| childish**

PREP. **in ~ (of)** *She held up a clenched fist in defiance. They organized a street demonstration in defiance of the government ban.* **| out of ~** *I left the room untidy out of sheer defiance.*

PHRASES **an act of defiance, a gesture of defiance**

defiant *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem | become | remain** *Despite the criticisms, she remained defiant.*

ADV. **very | slightly** *He had a slightly defiant air.* **| openly** *Sylvia tossed back her dark hair in a gesture that was openly defiant.* **| persistently**

deficiency *noun*

ADJ. **major, serious, severe | slight, small | dietary, nutritional | enzyme, hormone, mineral, nutrient, vitamin | calcium, iron, etc.**

VERB + DEFICIENCY **have, suffer from** *suffering from a severe vitamin deficiency* **| correct, make good, make up, overcome, remedy** *I've been prescribed iron tablets to make up the deficiency. An engineer could remedy the deficiencies in the design.*

PREP. **~ in** *serious deficiencies in the health service*

deficient *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become**

ADV. **sadly, seriously, severely, very, woefully** *An educational system which fails to teach basic arithmetic is seriously deficient.* **| totally | rather, slightly**

PREP. **in** *Their food is deficient in iron.*

deficit *noun*

ADJ. **huge, large, massive, serious, substantial | small | net, overall | balance-of-payments, budget, budgetary, financial, fiscal, trade**

VERB + DEFICIT **face, have, run, show** *If the government didn't run such huge deficits, the country would not have financial problems. The trade balance shows a deficit of two million pounds.* **| go into, move into, run up, slip into** *to prevent the country moving into deficit The company has run up a deficit of £30,000.* **| cut, eliminate, make up, reduce, tackle, wipe out** *You cannot cut a budget deficit simply by raising taxes. We will find it hard to make up this deficit.* **| overcome, overturn** *United are hoping to overturn a two-goal deficit from the first leg.* **| finance, fund** *The government was forced to sell state-owned companies to fund the budget deficit.*

DEFICIT + VERB **run at sth** *a budget deficit running at 7% of GDP* **| grow, increase, rise, widen | decrease, fall, narrow, shrink**

PREP. **in ~** *The UK remained in deficit with all countries outside the EU.* **| ~ with** *the US trade deficit with Japan*

define *verb*

ADV. **accurately, carefully, correctly, exactly, explicitly, precisely, specifically** *It is important to define these terms accurately.* **| clearly, fully, strongly, well | adequately** *There may be problems if responsibilities are not adequately defined.* **| ill, poorly | broadly** *We have chosen to define the scope of our study quite broadly.* **| loosely, vaguely | closely, narrowly, rigidly, strictly, tightly | simply, solely | easily | formally, officially | traditionally | culturally, geographically, socially** *the culturally defined role of women* **| legally**

VERB + DEFINE **be difficult to, be impossible to | be easy to** *Social values are not easy to define.*

PREP. **in terms of** *The difficulty of a problem was defined in terms of how long it took to complete.*

definition *noun*

ADJ. **careful, clear, concise, exact, precise, unambiguous** *The term 'partner' requires careful definition. The author provides a clear definition of cultural awareness.* **| comprehensive, exhaustive | adequate, satisfactory | broad, loose, wide | narrow, rigid, strict** *According to a strict definition, the expenses of a self-employed person can be deducted from tax.* **| official, statutory** *The firm falls within the statutory definition of a 'small company'.* **| conventional, standard | alternative | working** *We need a good working definition of 'pollution'.* **| dictionary**

VERB + DEFINITION **give (sb), provide (sb with), offer (sb) | need, require | fit** *This unusual building barely fits the definition of a house.*

DEFINITION + VERB **encompass sth, include sth**

PREP. **according to a/the ~** *According to a strict definition of 'assault', she was not assaulted.* **| by ~** *A clinic for women would, by definition, deal with pregnancy and childbirth.* **| under a/the ~** *Under the broader definition of 'poverty', thousands more people would be included.*

deformed *adj.*

VERBS **be | be born | become**

ADV. **badly, severely** *She had a badly deformed hand.* **| slightly | hideously, horribly**

deformity *noun*

ADJ. **appalling, severe | slight | congenital, genetic | birth | physical | facial, hip, limb, etc.**

VERB + DEFORMITY **have, suffer from**

defunct *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | make sth** *The long-playing record was made defunct by the arrival of the CD.* **| consider sth** *These machines are now considered defunct.*

ADV. **almost, virtually | largely | sadly** *He wrote many articles for the now sadly defunct newspaper, the Daily Correspondent.* **| long, now** *the ruined buildings of a long defunct mine*

defy *verb*

ADV. **openly** *openly defying the authorities*

VERB + DEFY **be prepared to, be ready to** *Campaigners have said that they are prepared to defy the law in order to achieve their aims.* **| continue to**

degenerate *verb*

ADV. **rapidly | easily**

PREP. **into** *The solemn event rapidly degenerated into farce.*

degrading *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | find sth** *He found the work extremely degrading.*

ADV. **extremely, really, very | rather, slightly** *the rather degrading conditions in the prison* **| socially**

PREP. **to** *pictures that are degrading to women*

degree *noun*

1 **measurement of angles**

VERB + DEGREE **rotate (through), spin (through), turn (through)** *The car had spun through 180 degrees on impact.*

DEGREE + NOUN **angle** *Place the shelf at a 90 degree angle to the wall.*

DEGREE + NOUN **through … ~s** *If you study the sky through 360 degrees you will see a whole range of colours.*

2 **measurement of temperature**

VERB + DEGREE **reach** *Temperatures inside the burning building are estimated to have reached 600 degrees centigrade.*

PREP. **at … ~s** *Water boils at 100 degrees centigrade.*

PHRASES **degrees above/below zero, degrees Celsius/centigrade/Fahrenheit, minus 10, 20, etc. degrees**

3 **amount/level**

ADJ. **considerable, exceptional, extraordinary, great, high, large, remarkable, substantial, surprising, unusual, the utmost** *the utmost degree of freedom* **| fair, moderate, modest** *It was possible to date these remains with a fair degree of accuracy.* **| low, minimal, slight, small** *He would try anything to make her even the smallest degree happier.* **| lesser** *The tax changes will especially hit those on high incomes and, to a lesser degree, small businesses.* **| varying** *keen amateurs who work hard, with varying degrees of success* **| alarming, dangerous, extreme** *His arguments are simplistic to an extreme degree.* **| acceptable, adequate, meaningful, real, significant** *The book fails to answer the question with any acceptable degree of certainty.* **| appropriate, necessary, proper, requisite, right | unacceptable**

PREP. **in … ~s** *The party leaders were all found to be corrupt in varying degrees.* **| of … ~** *employees of various degrees of ability* **| to a … ~** *The boss sometimes follows* *her instincts to a dangerous degree.* **| with a … ~ of** *We all tried to find out about the bus service, with varying degrees of success.* **| ~ of** *There is a degree of risk in any sport.*

PHRASES **by (slow) degrees** *By slow degrees, the company's turnover dwindled to nothing.* **| in (an) equal degree** *I felt excitement and sadness in equal degree as I waved goodbye to my colleagues.* **| a greater or lesser degree** *We were all disappointed to a greater or lesser degree.* **| to the nth degree** (= to an extreme degree) *The children tested her patience to the nth degree.*

4 **qualification**

ADJ. **college, university | first, ordinary, undergraduate | higher, master's, postgraduate, research | BA, BEd, BSc, MA, MSc, PhD, etc. | honours | pass | good, poor | first-class, (lower/upper) second-class, third-class** *Candidates must have at least an upper second class honours degree.* **| honorary | business, medical, history, law, philosophy, etc. | professional** *Candidates must hold a professional degree in architecture.* **| external | combined, joint, joint/combined subject, joint honours** *a joint honours degree in Business Studies and Modern Languages* **| modular | part-time**

VERB + DEGREE **have, hold | do, take** *He took a degree in law then joined a law firm.* **| be awarded, gain, get, obtain, receive | award sb, confer on sb** *The university conferred on him the honorary degree of Doctor of Laws.*

DEGREE + NOUN **course, level**

PREP. **~ in** *a degree in economics*

dehydration *noun*

ADJ. **severe** *He died from severe dehydration.*

VERB + DEHYDRATION **suffer from | die from/of | cause | avoid**

deity *noun*

ADJ. **major, supreme | lesser, minor** *one of the minor Greek deities* **| benevolent | patron** *a shrine to the patron deity of the city* **| female, male | heathen, local, pagan, Roman, etc.**

VERB + DEITY **worship** *a tribe that worshipped two main deities*

PHRASES **the incarnation/manifestation/representation of a deity** *Many animals were seen as the manifestation of a deity.*

dejected *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look** *She looked sorrowful and dejected.* **| become, grow**

ADV. **completely, thoroughly, totally, utterly** *They were thoroughly dejected and miserable.* **| rather**

PREP. **about** *feeling rather dejected about the future*

delay *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, lengthy, long, major, serious, significant, substantial** *After a considerable delay, the government has agreed to accept the recommendations.* **| excessive, inordinate, undue, unnecessary** *Undue delays have been caused by people not doing their jobs properly.* **| inevitable, unavoidable | short, slight | unforeseen | frustrating | further | airport, flight, traffic, travel | time** *There is a five-minute time delay on the bank's safe.*

QUANT. **series** *After a series of lengthy delays, the case finally came to court.*

VERB + DELAY **be subject to** *Flights to New York may be subject to delay.* **| be plagued by, experience, face, suffer** *Passengers have experienced long delays. The project has been plagued by delays.* **| cause, lead to** *The strike has led to some delays in train services.* **| avoid, prevent, reduce** *Please address your letters properly so as to reduce delays.* **| apologize for** *I apologize for the delay in replying to you.*

DELAY + VERB **occur** *Travellers complained about lack of information when travel delays occurred.*

PREP. **without ~** *Please send him the information without delay.* **| ~ in** *delays in getting to the airport* **| ~ of** *a delay of several weeks* **| ~ to** *further delays to the scheme*

delay *verb*

ADV. **seriously, significantly** *Mellanby's arrival was seriously delayed by a late train. These drugs can significantly delay the onset of the disease.* **| further | unduly | slightly, somewhat | inevitably, unavoidably | unaccountably | deliberately**

delegate *noun*

ADJ. **conference, congress, convention | government, party, trade union**

VERB + DELEGATE **elect | send** *They decided not to send a delegate to the conference.*

DELEGATE + VERB **attend (sth)** *No fewer than 2,000 delegates attended the conference.*

PREP. **~ from** *a delegate from the local Labour party* **| ~ to** *the British delegate to the United Nations*

delegation *noun*

1 **people who represent a company, country, etc.**

ADJ. **large, small | high-level, high-powered, high-ranking, important | international | all-party, joint** *The prime minister met with an all-party delegation from the city council.* **| government, military, official, parliamentary, trade union | business, peace, trade**

VERB + DELEGATION **send | head, lead** *A well-known academic will head the delegation.* **| form | invite** *The government invited an international delegation to inspect the plant.* **| meet**

DELEGATION + VERB **represent sth** *a delegation representing the new regime* **| include sth** *The delegation included representatives from nine nations.* **| visit sb/sth** *The delegation will visit several Middle Eastern countries for talks* **| meet sb | walk out** *The British delegation walked out of the discussions in protest.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *all the ministers in the delegation* **| ~ from** *an official delegation from Austria* **| ~ of** *a high-powered delegation of Asian businessmen*

PHRASES **the chairman/head/leader of a delegation, a member of a delegation**

2 **giving a job to sb with a lower rank**

ADJ. **effective, successful** *All managers should learn effective delegation.*

PREP. **by ~** *Many of these tasks can be dealt with by delegation.* **| ~ of** *delegation of responsibility*

delete *verb*

ADV. **accidentally, by mistake, inadvertently | automatically**

PREP. **from** *His name will be deleted from the list.*

PHRASES **delete as appropriate** *Mr/Mrs/Ms (delete as appropriate)*

deliberation *noun*

1 **careful consideration/discussion of sth**

ADJ. **careful** *After careful deliberation, it was agreed to abandon the project.* **| considerable | lengthy, long**

PREP. **~ about/on** *your deliberations on his future*

2 **speaking/moving slowly and carefully**

ADJ. **calm, cool, quiet, slow | great**

PREP. **with ~** *With slow deliberation, he tore the letter into pieces.*

delicacy *noun*

1 **rare and expensive type of food**

ADJ. **great | exotic, rare | local** *Have you tried any of the local delicacies?*

VERB + DELICACY **be considered** *The eggs of this bird are considered a great delicacy.* **| sample, try**

2 **care and sensitivity/requiring care and sensitivity**

ADJ. **extreme, great, utmost** *He handled the situation with extreme delicacy.*

PREP. **with ~** *These objects are very old and should be treated with great delicacy.*

PHRASES **a matter of (some) delicacy**

3 **lightness and gentleness**

ADJ. **exquisite** *the exquisite delicacy of the embroidery*

delicate *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look** *The glasses looked very delicate. Her bones felt as delicate as a bird's.* **| become**

ADV. **extremely, very | quite, rather, somewhat** *a rather delicate child This is a somewhat delicate subject.* **| surprisingly** *He had a surprisingly delicate touch.* **| politically** *a politically delicate situation*

delicious *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, smell, sound, taste** *The recipe sounds delicious. The beef tasted delicious.*

ADV. **most, really, truly** *The meal was really delicious.* **| absolutely, quite | rather**

delight *noun*

1 **feeling of great pleasure**

ADJ. **deep, great, intense | absolute, utter | pure, sheer | mischievous, perverse | childish/childlike | endless | evident, obvious | mutual | aesthetic, sensual, spiritual** *His mind was reeling with an almost aesthetic delight at the beauty of the thing.*

VERB + DELIGHT **express | find, take** *She took evident delight in frightening the children with horror stories.* **| give sb | scream with, squeal with, whoop with** *Alice squealed with sheer delight when she saw the monkeys.* **| be greeted with** *The news was greeted with great delight.*

PREP. **in/with ~** *We danced around with childish delight.* **| of ~** *She gave a whoop of delight and dived into the water.* **| to your ~** *To my great delight, they phoned and offered me the job.* **| ~ at** *He expressed his delight at seeing us all again.* **| ~ in** *I find a perverse delight in listening to traffic.*

PHRASES **a cry/gasp/squeal of delight, much to sb's delight** *Much to the delight of the crowd, the band came back and did three encores.*

2 **sth that gives great pleasure**

ADJ. **real | constant, continual** *The baby was a constant delight and source of amazement.* **| unexpected | culinary, gastronomic**

VERB + DELIGHT **explore, sample | enjoy, savour** *Savour the culinary delights of Morocco.*

PREP. **to** *The old lady's reminiscences were a continual delight to Constance.*

delighted *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem**

ADV. **greatly, highly, only too, really** *Mrs Cartwright said she would be only too delighted to present the prizes.* **| absolutely, quite | clearly, obviously, plainly | secretly** *'Poor Gloria,' she said, although she was secretly delighted.* **| genuinely**

PREP. **at** *They were highly delighted at the court's decision.* **| by** *I'm delighted by your news.* **| with** *He's really delighted with his new CD player.*

delightful *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **most, really** *It has been a most delightful evening.* **| absolutely, entirely, quite, truly**

PHRASES **delightful little** *It was a delightful little fishing village.*

deliver *verb*

1 **goods/letters**

ADV. **free of charge** *The company will deliver free of charge.* **| by hand** *The package had been delivered by hand.*

PREP. **to** *The letter was delivered to his office.*

PHRASES **have sth delivered** *You can either collect the goods or have them delivered.*

2 **baby**

ADV. **safely** *The baby was delivered safely on Tuesday night.* **| by Caesarean (section)**

delivery *noun*

1 **act of delivering sth**

ADJ. **express, fast, immediate, prompt, quick | late | morning, next-day | recorded, scheduled, special** *Ensure all photographic material is properly packed and sent by recorded delivery.* **| guaranteed** *guaranteed express delivery to over 170 countries* **| safe | mail, milk, newspaper** *All mail deliveries were suspended during the strike.* **| service** *The cuts will inevitably impact on service delivery.*

VERB + DELIVERY **do, make** *We do all our deliveries in the mornings.* **| accept, take** *The government has now taken delivery of the new fighter planes.*

DELIVERY + NOUN **van | date, schedule, time | boy, man** *He was employed at the local grocery store as a delivery boy.* **| charge | service**

PREP. **for ~** *completed orders for delivery* **| on ~** *Please pay the driver on delivery.* **| ~ to** *The company offers free delivery to your home.*

2 **goods delivered**

ADJ. **large, small**

VERB + DELIVERY **get, receive** *The shop receives only one delivery of books per week.*

3 **giving birth to a baby**

ADJ. **difficult, easy | preterm | breech | vaginal | Caesarean | forceps, ventouse |** *The figures show an increase in forceps deliveries.*

VERB + DELIVERY **have** *She had a very easy delivery with her second child.*

DELIVERY + NOUN **room**

delusion *noun*

ADJ. **dangerous | foolish** *I thought the whole idea was just a foolish and dangerous delusion.* **| paranoid**

VERB + DELUSION **get, have, suffer (from)** *The psychiatrist said she was suffering from paranoid delusions.*

PREP. **under a/the ~** *He seemed to be under the delusion that he would make his fortune within a few years.* **| ~ about** *He had no delusions about his feelings for Kate.* **| ~ of** *She had delusions of persecution.*

PHRASES **delusions of grandeur** (= a belief that you are more important than you actually are) *Don't go getting delusions of grandeur.*

demand *noun*

1 **firm request**

ADJ. **legitimate, realistic, reasonable** *I think your demand for higher wages is perfectly reasonable.* | **unrealistic, unreasonable** | **radical** | **urgent** | **central, key, main, major** | **fresh, new, renewed** *There have been renewed demands for the government to take action to reduce crime.* | **growing, increasing** | **final** *A final demand for payment had been issued.* | **written** | **financial, political** | **government, opposition, popular, public, royal, union** *The management had no intention of meeting union demands.* | **pay, ransom, tax, wage** *A ransom demand has been made for the kidnapped racehorse.*

VERB + DEMAND **issue, make, present, press, put forward** *Demands have been made for the immediate distribution of food to the refugees.* | **renew, repeat, step up** *Campaigners have stepped up their demands for immediate government action.* | **face** | **respond to** | **agree to, give in to, meet, satisfy, yield to** *My government cannot give in to the demands of an illegal organization.* | **reject, resist**

PREP. **on ~** *Campaigners insist that abortion should be available on demand.* | **~ for, ~ from** *demands from the opposition for a recount of the votes*

2 **need/desire for goods/services**

ADJ. **big, buoyant, considerable, enormous, great, heavy, high, huge, insatiable, peak, strong, unprecedented** *Demand for the product is buoyant. There's always a great demand for our soups in winter.* | **burgeoning, growing, increased/increasing, rising** | **excess, extra** | **constant, steady** *She is in constant demand to make public appearances and give interviews.* | **changing, fluctuating, seasonal** | **current, future** | **latent, likely, pent-up, potential, projected, prospective** | **overall, total** *We can estimate that total market demand for electrical goods will rise by 8%.* | **declining, falling, limited, low, reduced, sluggish** | **consumer, customer, market, popular, public** *By popular demand, the play will run for another week.* | **domestic, export, foreign, local, world, worldwide** *The slowdown in domestic demand was offset by an increase in exports.* | **electricity, energy, housing, labour, etc.**

QUANT. **level** *a high level of demand*

VERB + DEMAND **cope with, meet, satisfy** *The factories are staying open all weekend to try to meet the consumer demand for this product.* | **create, generate** *It is the job of the marketing manager to create demand for the new product.* | **boost, increase, stimulate** | **reduce** | **exceed, outstrip** *Supply normally exceeds demand for the bulk of consumer goods.* | **forecast** *It can be difficult to forecast demand in the construction industry.* | **manage** *policies aimed at managing demand*

DEMAND + VERB **grow, increase, rise** *Demand for personal computers has risen sharply.* | **decline, fall, slow (down)** *As demand slows, the need to export will return.*

PREP. **in ~** *These old machines are still in demand.* | **~ among** *the potential demand among children* | **~ for** *increased demand for health products* | **~ from** *the demand from consumers* | **~ on** *This section of the population makes a high demand on health care resources.*

PHRASES **supply and demand** *the law of supply and demand* > Special page at BUSINESS

3 **demands: difficult/tiring things you have to do**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, excessive, extra, great, heavy, high, impossible** *I think the demands of this job are excessive.* | **exacting, pressing** | **growing, increasing** | **competing, conflicting, contradictory** | **day-to-day, everyday** *the day-to-day demands of the job* | **immediate** *the need for scientific research freed from the immediate demands of industry* | **external** *The person who cannot say 'no' to others' requests is likely to be overwhelmed by external demands.* | **economic, emotional, financial, physical, practical, sexual, social, technical** *Life is hard for nurses on children's wards, where the emotional demands can be overwhelming.*

VERB + DEMAND **impose, make, place** *My elderly parents make a lot of demands on me.* | **respond to** | **cope with** *coping with the conflicting demands of work and family life*

PREP. **~ on/upon** *My work seems to make more and more demands on my time.*

demand *verb*

ADV. **aggressively, angrily, coldly, fiercely, furiously, harshly, indignantly, irritably, roughly, sharply** *'Where are the keys?' she demanded angrily.*

PREP. **from** *He had demanded money from her.* **| of** *They failed to provide the information demanded of them.*

demanding *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become, get**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | fairly, pretty, quite | physically, technically** *a technically demanding piece of music to play*

demise *noun*

ADJ. **sad | rapid, sudden** *The war brought about the industry's sudden demise.* **| early, premature** *He praised the union's aims but predicted its early demise.* **| imminent | eventual, final, ultimate | apparent | virtual | political** *the events which contributed to his political demise*

VERB + DEMISE **bring about, contribute to, lead to**

democracy *noun*

ADJ. **genuine, true | political | constitutional, parliamentary | multi-party | Western**

VERB + DEMOCRACY **believe in, support** *people who believe in true democracy* **| fight for | establish | restore** *The military regime has promised to restore democracy soon.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *We live in a multi-party democracy.*

PHRASES **pro-democracy** *a pro-democracy demonstration in the capital* **| the road to democracy** *the need to overcome political apathy and advance on the road to democracy* **| the spread of democracy**

democratic *adj.*

1 **favouring/practising democracy**

VERBS **be | become | remain** *There have been major changes in the constitution, but the system remains democratic.*

ADV. **genuinely, truly | fully, thoroughly** *a fully democratic society* **| fairly, quite, reasonably** *They have a fairly democratic form of government.* **| dangerously** *In 1776 these were considered dangerously democratic principles.*

2 **being fair to different sides**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, quite, reasonably** *I think it was a reasonably democratic decision.*

demolition *noun*

VERB + DEMOLITION **be due for, be threatened with** *The church has been threatened with demolition for years.* **| prevent, save sth from** *They started a campaign to save the houses from demolition.*

demon *noun*

ADJ. **evil** *tales of travellers attacked by evil demons*

VERB + DEMON **be plagued by, be possessed by** *He is plagued by demons which go back to his traumatic childhood. The villagers believed the girl was possessed by demons.* **| be pursued by** *He fled as if pursued by demons.* **| cast out, exorcise** *an ancient ritual to exorcise demons*

demonstrate *verb*

1 **show**

ADV. **amply, beyond doubt, clearly, conclusively, convincingly, successfully, well** *Our study demonstrates beyond doubt that the play was written by Shakespeare.* **| adequately | further | easily | elegantly, neatly | empirically, experimentally | graphically, vividly** *This tragedy graphically demonstrates the dangers of walking on the fells after dark.*

PREP. **to** *The prime minister must demonstrate to the country that he is really in control of his government.*

2 **protest**

ADV. **peacefully**

PREP. **against** *Campaigners were demonstrating against the slaughter of dolphins.* **| for** *Their objective was to demonstrate peacefully for civil rights.*

demonstration *noun*

1 **public protest/march**

ADJ. **big, huge, large, large-scale, major, massive | mass, popular, public** *mass demonstrations against cuts in the health service The president's decision provoked public demonstrations.* **| street | spontaneous | peaceful** *Thousands gathered for a peaceful demonstration.* **| violent | hostile | protest** *a protest demonstration against the war* **| student | opposition | anti-war, pro-democracy, etc.**

VERB + DEMONSTRATION **hold, organize, stage** *Taxi drivers staged a demonstration against the new law.* **| go on, join, participate in, take part in | call off** *The demonstration was called off at the last minute.* **| break up, disperse** *Police in riot gear dispersed the demonstration.* **| ban, suppress | provoke, spark (off)** *The minister does not wish to provoke further demonstrations.*

DEMONSTRATION + VERB **take place | call for sth** *demonstrations calling for an end to sanctions* **| greet** *The visiting president was greeted by hostile demonstrations.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *police intervention at demonstrations* **| during a/the ~** *Hundreds were arrested during demonstrations in the capital.* **| ~ against, ~ in protest at** *demonstrations in protest at the arrests* **| ~ in favour of, ~ in support of** *student demonstrations in favour of a multi-party system*

2 **showing/explaining sth**

ADJ. **physical, practical** *physical demonstrations of affection* **| cookery, product, etc.**

VERB + DEMONSTRATION **do, give sb** *I'll give a quick demonstration of some knitting techniques.* **| watch**

3 **sth that shows clearly that sth is true**

ADJ. **clear, convincing, dramatic, impressive, perfect, vivid** *The strike was a dramatic demonstration of the power of the workforce.*

demonstrator *noun*

ADJ. **angry** *Angry demonstrators threw stones.* **| peaceful | anti-government, pro-democracy, etc.**

QUANT. **crowd, group** *Police opened fire on a crowd of peaceful demonstrators.*

VERB + DEMONSTRATOR **disperse** *Troops were brought in to disperse the demonstrators.* **| clash with, fire on, open fire on, use sth against** *Water cannon and tear gas were used against the demonstrators.*

DEMONSTRATOR + VERB **gather** *The demonstrators had gathered in the cathedral square.* **| march** *Demonstrators marched on the parliament building.* **| protest** *demonstrators protesting against the lack of housing* **| call for sth, demand sth** *demonstrators calling for the removal of the government* **| disperse** *The demonstrators dispersed when the soldiers arrived.* **| attack sb, clash with sb** *Demonstrators clashed with government soldiers in the country's ca* **| storm sth** *Demonstrators then tried to storm the police headquarters.*

PHRASES **clashes between police and demonstrators**

denial *noun*

ADJ. **firm, strong, vehement, vigorous** *When I asked if she had cheated in the exam, she answered with a vehement denial.* **| explicit** *The document contains an explicit denial that the company ever sold arms.* **| government, official** *Despite official denials, it appears the government did make a deal with the terrorists.*

VERB + DENIAL **issue, make** *The chairman of the company issued a denial of the allegations. Jefferson made no denial of his actions on that night.*

PREP. **~ from** *a denial from senior officials*

PHRASES **a chorus of denials** *His question was greeted with a chorus of denials.*

denounce *verb*

ADV. **angrily, bitterly, fiercely, strongly | publicly** *He was publicly denounced as a traitor.* **| formally**

PREP. **for** *The government was bitterly denounced for the emergency measures.* **| to** *Someone in the village must have denounced them to the authorities.*

PHRASES **be widely denounced** *These new regulations have been widely denounced.*

density *noun*

ADJ. **high, low | average** *an average density of 2.4 people per hectare* **| population, traffic** *The population density in this city is very high.*

VERB + DENSITY **calculate, measure**

DENSITY + VERB **change, vary | increase, rise | decrease, fall**

dent *noun*

ADJ. **big, great, large | considerable, serious, severe, significant** *(all figurative) The latest health scare has made a very considerable dent in the sales of beef.* **| little, slight, small**

VERB + DENT **leave, make** *The impact of the stones made little dents in the metal.* **| have**

PREP. **~ in** *My side of the car had a large dent in it.*

dent *verb*

1 **make a dent in sth**

ADV. **badly** *The car was quite badly dented on one side.* **| slightly**

2 **damage sth**

ADV. **badly, seriously, severely** *Being turned down for the job dented his pride quite badly. The appearance of these cheap goods from abroad has severely dented the company's sales.* **| slightly**

VERB + DENT **fail to** *The experience failed to dent her confidence.*

dentist *noun*

ADJ. **good | qualified, registered | NHS, private**

VERB + DENTIST **register with** *She couldn't get treatment because she wasn't registered with the dentist.* > Note at DOCTOR(for more verbs)

dentures *noun*

ADJ. **ill-fitting**

QUANT. **set** *a new set of dentures*

VERB + DENTURES **have in, wear** *She doesn't wear her dentures at night.* **| put in | remove, take out** *Remember to clean your dentures after you take them out.*

denunciation *noun*

ADJ. **angry, bitter, fierce, violent | public**

VERB + DENUNCIATION **issue, make** *In his speech, he made a fierce denunciation of government policy.*

PREP. **~ of** *a public denunciation of the corrupt system*

deny *verb*

1 **say sth is not true**

ADV. **emphatically, fiercely, firmly, hotly, strenuously, strongly, vehemently, vigorously** *Both women vehemently deny the charges against them.* | **angrily, indignantly** | **categorically, flatly** *He has categorically denied being involved in the fraud.* | **explicitly, expressly** | **implicitly** | **formally** | **publicly** | **immediately, promptly** | **simply** *If anyone accuses me I shall simply deny it.* | **consistently, repeatedly** *He has consistently denied murdering his estranged wife.*

VERB + DENY **cannot** *You can't deny that it seems a very attractive idea.* | **try to** *I know it was you I saw, so there's no use trying to deny it.*

PHRASES **no one could/would deny that** *No one would deny that there is a very great need for change.* | **there is no denying sth** *There is no denying the fact that she is an excellent scholar.*

2 **refuse sb sth**

ADV. **cruelly** *They were cruelly denied victory by an injury-time strike from Owen.* | **effectively** *Children could be compelled to work on the farm, effectively denying them schooling.*

PREP. **to** *You cannot deny this opportunity to me.*

depart *verb*

VERB + DEPART **be due to, be scheduled to** *The plane was scheduled to depart at 8.30.* **| be waiting to | prepare to** *They shook hands all round and prepared to depart.*

PREP. **for** *He departs for New York tomorrow morning.* **| from** *We depart from Heathrow at ten o'clock tonight.*

department *noun*

1 **of a government**

ADJ. **government | education, health, social services, etc. | fire, police** *The Tokyo police department is clamping down on organized crime.*

DEPARTMENT + NOUN **official, spokesman, spokesperson, spokeswoman, staff**

PREP. **~ of** *the Department of the Environment*

2 **of an organization**

ADJ. **accident and emergency, casualty, outpatient, physiotherapy | design, finance, marketing, personnel, planning, publicity, sales, etc. | biology, English, maths, etc.**

VERB + DEPARTMENT **manage, run** *Staff criticized the way the history department was run.*

DEPARTMENT + NOUN **head, manager, staff**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Complaints are dealt with in a different department.* **| within a/the ~** *to gain promotion within the department* **| ~ of** *the Department of Town Planning*

PHRASES **the head of (a) department, a member of a department**

departure *noun*

1 **leaving/going away from a place**

ADJ. **abrupt, sudden** *Everyone was a bit puzzled by her sudden departure.* | **hasty, speedy** | **early** | **imminent, impending** *The guard blew his whistle to warn of the train's imminent departure.* | **flight** *The last check-in time is 45 minutes before flight departure.*

VERB + DEPARTURE **make** *He made a hasty departure.* | **hasten** *Her row with the MD probably hastened her departure.* | **delay**

DEPARTURE + NOUN **point** *Atocha station was the departure point for our tour.* | **date** | **gate, lounge** *We sat in the departure lounge waiting for our flight to be called.*

PREP. **before ~, prior to ~** *You should receive your flight tickets at least a week prior to departure.* | **on ~** *All visitors must sign the book on arrival and again on departure.* | **~ for** his departure for Naples | **~ from** *her departure from London*

PHRASES **the day/time of departure, the point of departure** *(figurative) The author takes Freud's dream theories as the point of departure for his essay.*

2 **sth different from what is usual/expected**

ADJ. **fresh, new** | **dramatic, fundamental, major, radical, revolutionary, significant**

VERB + DEPARTURE **be, mark, represent**

PREP. **~ from** *This document marks a radical departure from earlier recommendations.*

depend *verb* **PHRASAL VERBS depend on/upon sb/sth**

1 **be affected by sth**

ADV. **crucially, greatly, very much** *The future of the company will depend crucially on how consumers respond.* **| entirely, solely | largely, mainly | partly, rather, to some extent | ultimately** *Whether or not we can go ultimately depends on the weather.*

VERB + DEPEND **seem to** *The outcome seems to depend on the type of soil used.*

2 **need**

ADV. **heavily | entirely, solely**

PREP. **for** *She depends entirely on her parents for money.*

dependable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | find sb** *I find him very dependable.*

ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, totally, utterly** *She is loyal and totally dependable.* **| not entirely**

dependence *noun*

1 **needing sb's help/support**

ADJ. **great, heavy** *a heavy dependence on imported materials* **| absolute, complete, total** *his total dependence on his family* **| continuing, growing, increased, increasing** *The country has a growing dependence on foreign aid.* **| excessive | mutual** *Their relationship is based on a strong mutual dependence.* **| economic, financial | emotional, physical, psychological**

VERB + DEPENDENCE **have | reduce** *The government wants to reduce industry's dependence on coal.*

PREP. **~ on/upon** *her economic dependence on her husband*

2 **being addicted to sth**

ADJ. **alcohol, drug, nicotine, etc.**

PREP. **~ on** *dependence on alcohol*

dependent *adj.*

1 **needing sb/sth**

VERBS **be, feel | become | remain**

ADV. **closely, deeply, greatly, heavily, highly, very** *Many of the patients are closely dependent on staff for day-to-day emotional support. The country is heavily dependent on oil and gas imports.* **| critically, crucially** *Modern science is critically dependent on high-performance computing.* **| absolutely, completely, entirely, solely, totally, utterly, wholly** *Jane had never met anyone so utterly dependent. The land is dry and wholly dependent on irrigation.* **| increasingly | essentially, largely, mainly | partially, partly** *34% of people in the survey were at least partially dependent on public transport.* **| directly | mutually** *The various organs of the body do not function in isolation but are mutually dependent.* **| economically, financially | emotionally**

PREP. **on/upon** *Small firms are dependent upon the local economy.*

2 **dependent on/upon: influenced/decided by sth**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **strongly | entirely, solely, totally** *The amount of benefit you receive is entirely dependent on the amount you have paid in.* **| essentially, largely, mainly** *Your access to a good education is largely dependent on where you live.* **| partially, partly**

depict *verb*

ADV. **vividly** *The book vividly depicts French society of the 1930s.*

deplete *verb*

ADV. **heavily, seriously, severely** *Both teams were severely depleted by injuries.*

depletion *noun*

ADJ. **rapid | serious, severe, significant | resource | oxygen, ozone, etc.**

VERB + DEPLETION **cause, lead to** *Increased consumption of water has led to rapid depletion of groundwater reserves.*

deploy *verb*

ADV. **effectively** *Tanks were deployed effectively during the long campaign.*

PREP. **against** *She rejected the arguments that had been deployed against her.*

deployment *noun*

ADJ. **effective, efficient | rapid | full** *Without the full deployment of resources, we cannot achieve our aims.* **| staff | military, troop**

VERB + DEPLOYMENT **be available for**

deport *verb*

ADV. **forcibly**

PREP. **(back) to** *Many refugees were forcibly deported back to the countries they had come from.* **| from** *He was deported from Britain last week.*

deportation *noun*

ADJ. **mass** *the mass deportation of refugees* **| forced**

VERB + DEPORTATION **be threatened with, face | recommend sb for** *The Home Secretary has recommended the two drug dealers for deportation.*

DEPORTATION + NOUN **order** *The government issued a deportation order against the four men.*

PHRASES **the threat of deportation**

deposit *noun*

1 **money paid into a bank account**

ADJ. **bank, building society** *Building society deposits have increased by 2.3%.* **| cash | dollar, sterling, etc.**

VERB + DEPOSIT **make** *She made a deposit of £60 into her account.*

DEPOSIT + NOUN **account**

2 **money which is the first payment for sth**

VERB + DEPOSIT **pay, put down**

PREP. **~ on** *We've put down the deposit on our new car.*

3 **money paid when you rent sth**

ADJ. **refundable, returnable** *All deposits for holiday cottages are refundable.*

VERB + DEPOSIT **give (sb), leave (sb), pay (sb)** *You have to pay a deposit of £100 as well as two months' rent.* **| get back** *You'll get back your deposit once we've checked the bikes are all right.* **| forfeit, lose** *If furniture is damaged, you will forfeit your deposit.*

PREP. **~ on** *I had to leave a £50 deposit on the bike.*

4 **layer of sth**

ADJ. **large | rich | thick, thin** *The floods left a thick deposit of mud over the fields.* **| gas, mineral, ore, etc.** *an area with large mineral deposits* **| geological, glacial, sedimentary**

VERB + DEPOSIT **have** *The region has many deposits of valuable oil.* **| leave**

depot *noun*

ADJ. **distribution, storage, supply | freight, goods | arms, fuel, gas, etc.** *an explosion at an arms depot* **| bus, tram** *on its way back to the bus depot*

depreciate *verb*

ADV. **quickly, rapidly**

VERB + DEPRECIATE **be expected to, be likely to**

PREP. **against** *Sterling is expected to depreciate against the dollar.* **| by** *The rupee depreciated by 9 per cent.*

PHRASES **depreciate in value** *Cars depreciate in value fairly rapidly.*

depressed *adj.*

1 unhappy/mentally ill

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *You mustn't let yourself get depressed* **| remain, stay**

ADV. **acutely, deeply, extremely, really, severely, terribly, very** *She became severely depressed after her mother's death.* **| thoroughly | increasingly | a bit, a little, mildly, quite, rather, slightly | clinically, suicidally** *There is medical evidence to show that he is suicidal and clinically depressed.*

PREP. **about** *She's terribly depressed about losing her job.* **| by** *I was depressed by our lack of progress.*

2 not economically successful

VERBS **be | become | remain, stay**

ADV. **badly, severely, very** *The shipping trade was badly depressed.* **| relatively | economically**

depressing *adj.*

VERBS be | become, get | find sth

ADV. deeply, extremely, profoundly, really, very *We found it a deeply depressing experience.* **| infinitely** *I find politics infinitely depressing: none of the parties appeal to me.* **| a bit, faintly, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat**

depression *noun*

1 **unhappiness/mental illness**

ADJ. **black, deep, serious, severe | acute, chronic | mild | clinical | manic | post-natal**

QUANT. **bout, fit, period** *The actor says he suffers frequent bouts of depression. In a fit of depression, she threw away all her favourite books. A period of acute depression can sometimes follow childbirth.*

VERB + DEPRESSION **develop, fall into, go into, succumb to** *She fell into a black depression and refused to leave her room.* **| experience, have, suffer (from)** *She was diagnosed as having clinical depression.* **| be treated for** *His wife had left him and he was being treated for depression.* **| come out of, get over** *She was gradually coming out of her depression.* **| cause, lead to** *Bereavement can often lead to depression.* **| relieve, treat** *a new drug used to treat depression*

DEPRESSION + VERB **deepen | lift** *Her depression has lifted now.*

PREP. **in ~** *He may have killed himself in depression.* **| with ~** *He's been off work for months with depression.*

PHRASES **(a) cause for depression** *These results should not be a cause for depression.* **| the depths of depression** *I was in the depths of depression after receiving my exam results.* **| feelings of depression, the onset of depression** *The onset of depression often follows a traumatic event.* **| a state of depression** *He was in a state of acute depression.* **| symptoms of depression, treatment for depression** *She had been receiving medical treatment for depression.* > Special page at ILLNESS

2 **period of reduced economic activity**

ADJ. **great, major, serious, severe | economic** *The country is experiencing a severe economic depression.*

VERB + DEPRESSION **be in the grip of, experience | go into** *The housing market has gone into depression.* **| face**

DEPRESSION + VERB **deepen** *The depression seems to be deepening.* **| end**

PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *Many people lost their jobs in the great depression of the 1930s.*

PHRASES **the depths of a depression, a period of depression** *periods of severe economic depression*

3 hollow part in the surface of sth

ADJ. **shallow, slight | deep**

PREP. **~ in, ~ on** *From the air, the photos show a shallow depression on the planet's surface.*

deprivation *noun*

ADJ. **acute, severe, terrible | sensory | emotional | economic, material, social** *an area of acute social and economic deprivation* **| inner-city, urban | rural | sleep** *a study of the effects of sleep deprivation*

VERB + DEPRIVATION **experience, suffer** *Many of the people suffered terrible deprivation.*

deprived *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel**

ADV. **extremely, severely, terribly, very | totally | relatively | economically, emotionally, materially, socially** *emotionally deprived children*

PREP. **of** *children who are deprived of love*

depth *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great** *going down to great depths below the surface Younger students cannot be expected to have great depth of understanding.* | **shallow** *Water normally moves more slowly at shallower depths.* | **abyssal** *the abyssal depths of the ocean* | **black, dark, murky** | **surprising, unexpected** *the unexpected depth of his feelings for her* | **emotional** *music of great emotional depth*

PREP. **at ~** *The camera must be strong enough to resist the immense water pressure at depth.* | **at/from/to a ~ of** *These fish are found at a depth of over 100 metres.* | **at/from/to a … ~** *The clam burrows in the sand to a considerable depth.* | **in ~** *I studied phonology in depth at university.* | **out of your ~** *I don't like going out of my depth in the sea.* | **~s of** *The rejection plunged her into the dark depths of despair.*

PHRASES **the depths (of the ocean/sea)** *sharks lurking in the murky grey depths of the sea* | **depth of emotion/feeling** *The demonstration showed the depth of feeling against the war.* | **the ocean depths**

deputation *noun*

VERB + DEPUTATION **organize | send** *They sent a deputation to the ministry to complain.* **| meet, receive**

PREP. **~ from** *The managing director agreed to receive a deputation from the factory.* **| ~ of** *A deputation of 40 strikers was organized.*

deputy *noun*

1 **second most important person**

ADJ. **acting | former** *a former deputy chairman of the Democratic Party*

VERB + DEPUTY **appoint (sb as)** *A new deputy has not yet been appointed.* **| act as**

DEPUTY + NOUN **chair, chairman, director, governor, head, leader, manager, minister, president, etc.** *He was appointed deputy head of the school.*

PREP. **~ to** *She is acting as deputy to the chairman of the board.*

2 **member of a parliament**

ADJ. **congressional, parliamentary** *133 of the parliamentary deputies voted against the treaty.* **| opposition | right-wing, socialist, etc.**

VERB + DEPUTY **elect** *Three women were among the 77 deputies elected.*

deranged *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **a bit, slightly | mentally** *They took her into hospital because she was mentally deranged.*

derelict *adj.*

VERBS **be, lie, look, seem, stand** *The land lay derelict for ten years.* **| become | make sth** *The houses were made derelict by the fire.*

ADV. **totally | almost, virtually | partially, partly** *a partially derelict mill*

derive *verb*

ADV. **clearly** *Females and cubs clearly derive some benefit from living in groups.* **| largely, mainly, primarily | partly | solely | directly** *This income was derived directly from his writing.* **| originally, ultimately**

PREP. **from** *We can derive some comfort from this fact.*

descend *verb*

1 move downwards

ADV. **quickly, rapidly | slowly**

2 lead downwards

ADV. **sharply, steeply | gently, gradually**

PREP. **into, to** *The path descends steeply to the village.*

3 be descended from sb/sth: be related to sb/sth

ADV. **directly** *The breed is almost directly descended from the Eurasian wild boar.*

VERB + DESCEND **claim to** *He claims to be descended from a Spanish prince.*

descendant *noun*

ADJ. **direct, lineal** *Quechua, the lineal descendant of the Inca language* **| collateral | immediate | distant, remote** *He was an O'Conor and a distant descendant of the last High King of Ireland.*

descent *noun*

1 **movement down**

ADJ. **rapid, swift | slow | steep | gentle, gradual | difficult, easy** *They began the difficult descent of the mountain's south west face.* **| final** *The plane was making its final descent so we had to fasten our seat belts.*

VERB + DESCENT **make**

PREP. **on/during a/the ~** *The engines failed on the plane's descent to Orly.* **| ~ down** *I made a slow and painful descent down the stairs.* **| ~ from** *the descent from the top of the mountain* **| ~ into** *(figurative) his descent into alcoholism* **| ~ to** *The plane began its gentle descent to Heathrow.*

PHRASES **a rate of descent** *We slowed the balloon's rate of descent.*

2 **surface that goes downwards**

ADJ. **gentle | steep**

3 **family origins**

ADJ. **direct, lineal** *She claims direct descent from Queen Victoria.* **| common** *Most European languages have a common descent.* **| mixed | Chinese, Irish, etc.**

VERB + DESCENT **claim, have | trace | share** *groups sharing common descent*

PREP. **by ~** *She is Hungarian by descent.* **| ~ from** *He claims to have traced descent from Christopher Columbus.*

PHRASES **a line of descent** *Humans and other apes followed separate lines of descent from a common ancestor.* **| of Mexican, Scottish, etc. descent** *She is of mixed European and African descent.*

describe *verb*

ADV. **accurately, exactly, in detail** *Their daily lives are described in detail.* **| fully** *This process is fully described in section three of the book.* **| adequately | briefly** *He described briefly what happened.* **| vividly**

VERB + DESCRIBE **cannot** *Words cannot describe our feelings at that moment.* **| be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to | go on to** *He goes on to describe very vividly how Caesar was stabbed to death.*

description *noun*

ADJ. **complete, comprehensive, detailed, full** *The catalogue gives a full description of each product.* **| accurate, apt, exact, excellent, fair, fitting, good, perfect** *'Like a fish out of water' was an apt description of how I felt in my new job.* **| vivid** *a vivid description of life in Ancient Rome* **| graphic, lurid** *She gave us a lurid description of the birth.* **| lengthy, long | brief, short | basic, simple | vague | objective** *A report is generally an objective description rather than a statement of opinion.* **| physical | job** *There was no mention of any cleaning in my job description.*

VERB + DESCRIPTION **give (sb), issue, provide (sb with)** *Police have issued a description of the gunman. She was able to provide a description of the intruder.* **| fit** *A man fitting your description was seen entering the building.* **| beggar, defy** *His face was so odd that it defies description.*

DESCRIPTION + VERB **apply to sb, fit sb** *I realized to my horror that the description of the killer fitted me.*

descriptive *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly, very** *a highly descriptive account of her journey through Africa* **| entirely, purely** *The passage is purely descriptive.* **| merely, simply | essentially, largely, mainly**

PREP. **of** *The terms are descriptive of strong emotion.*

desert *noun*

ADJ. **arid, barren, dry** *green fields surrounded by arid desert* **| vast | inhospitable | Arctic, polar | cultural** *(figurative) The theatre and cinema closed and the town became a cultural desert.*

VERB + DESERT **become, turn into/to** *The land loses its protective cover of vegetation and soon turns into desert.* **| cross** *He became the first person to cross the desert on foot.*

DESERT + VERB **stretch** *The desert stretched for endless miles on all sides of us.*

DESERT + NOUN **area, country, land, landscape, region** *vast tracts of desert land* **| conditions | heat | sand, soil | floor, surface | plain | animal, plant**

PREP. **across/through the ~** *their journey across the desert* **| in the ~** *cold nights in the desert* **| into the ~** *He drove off into the desert.*

deserted *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become**

ADV. **completely, quite, totally, utterly** *The streets were completely deserted.* **| almost, virtually | largely | apparently | temporarily**

deserve *verb*

ADV. **certainly, really, surely** *You really deserve a medal!* **| justly, richly, rightly, truly** *He finally received the recognition that he so richly deserved.* **| fully, thoroughly** *This hotel fully deserves its four-star grading.* **| hardly, scarcely** *It's true she made a mistake but she hardly deserves to lose her job.*

PREP. **for** *She deserves some reward for all her hard work.*

PHRASES **deserve better** *His work received only a tiny mention in the journal; he deserves better.* **| well deserved** *At last she managed to have a well-deserved rest.*

deserving *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **eminently, very | fairly | equally** *All the causes seem equally deserving.*

PREP. **of** *the areas most deserving of study*

design *noun*

1 **making drawings of how sth should be made**

ADJ. **graphic | computer-aided** *a specialist in computer-aided design* | **architectural, industrial, interior**

DESIGN + NOUN **business, company, consultancy, firm | consultant, engineer, staff, team | centre, department, studio | work** *She's done some design work for us in the past.* | **process** *The new CAD program really speeds up the design process.* | **program, software | project | ability, expertise, skills**

PHRASES **art and design** *I'm doing a course in art and design.*

2 **the way sth is made/a drawing of this**

ADJ. **basic, simple | complex, sophisticated | excellent, good | poor | adventurous, bold, innovative, original, revolutionary | attractive, beautiful, stylish | classical, conventional, traditional | ergonomic**

VERB + DESIGN **come up with, create, produce** *He's come up with a really good design for a solar-powered car.* | **follow, use** *We followed the traditional design.*

DESIGN + NOUN **feature** *The latest model incorporates some novel design features.* | **concept, idea, solution** *The architect put forward two alternative design concepts for the new library.* | **brief, requirements, specifications** *The chair she had sketched was far bigger than stipulated in the design brief.* | **fault | award** *The car wouldn't win any design awards, but it's very reliable.*

PREP. **in ~** *The machine is quite simple in design.* | **of … ~** *a vehicle of revolutionary design* | **to a … ~** *The other houses are built to a more conventional design.* | **~ for** *the architect's designs for the cathedral*

PHRASES **at the design stage** *Their new car is still at the design stage.*

3 **pattern that decorates sth**

ADJ. **elaborate, intricate | simple | abstract, circular, floral, geometric,**

symmetrical

VERB + DESIGN **have** *The building has intricate geometric designs on several of the walls.*

4 **intention**

ADJ. **evil, sinister | grand** *His grand design was to connect up every academic institution in the world.*

VERB + DESIGN **harbour, have** *I suspected that he had some sinister designs.*

PREP. **by ~** *Had it happened by accident or by design?*

design *verb*

ADV. **carefully, cleverly** *These shelves have been designed very cleverly to fit into corners.* **| specially, specifically** *They run specially designed courses for managers.*

PREP. **for** *The instruments are designed for use in very cold conditions.*

designate *verb*

ADV. **formally, officially** *The area has now been formally designated as a Site of Special Scientific Interest.* **| specially | clearly**

PREP. **for** *These areas have been specially designated for children.*

designer *noun*

ADJ. **good, talented | professional | chief, senior** *the company's chief fashion designer* **| dress, fashion, furniture, garden, graphic, industrial, interior, landscape, program, set, software, system/systems, textile, theatre** *They brought in an interior designer to suggest colour schemes for the house. She works as a set designer for the Royal Opera House.*

VERB + DESIGNER **bring in**

DESIGNER + NOUN **clothes, fashion | label, name** > Note at JOB

desirable *adj.*

1 **to be wished for**

VERBS **be, seem | become | consider sth, deem sth, feel sth, regard/see/view sth as, think sth** *A new direction was felt desirable for both parties. This kind of work is seen as desirable.*

ADV. **eminently, extremely, highly, very** *Experience of computers is highly desirable.* **| wholly | clearly, obviously** *It is clearly desirable that domestic and European law should be compatible.* **| inherently | theoretically | economically, morally, politically, socially**

2 **causing sexual desire**

VERBS **be | become | find sb**

ADV. **extremely, intensely, very** *He found her intensely desirable.* **| infinitely | sexually**

desire *noun*

ADJ. **burning, deep, great, strong, urgent | insatiable, overwhelming** *Most children have an insatiable desire for knowledge.* **| genuine, real | natural | sexual**

VERB + DESIRE **feel, have** *I suddenly felt an overwhelming desire to laugh* **| express** *The chairman expressed his desire to expand the company.* **| satisfy | be motivated by** *They were motivated by a deep desire for money and fame.*

PREP. **~ for** *Horses need to satisfy their desire for space and freedom.*

PHRASES **an object of desire** *He felt he was nothing more to her than an object of desire.*

desire *verb*

ADV. **greatly, really, sincerely, very much** *A home of her own was something she had always very much desired.*

desk *noun*

1 type of table

ADJ. **big, enormous, high, huge, large, vast | leather-topped | antique | empty** *The empty desk suggested she had already gone home.* **| cluttered, untidy | writing | office, school**

VERB + DESK **sit at | get up from** *He got up from his desk and went to the window.* **| clear** *My desk gets very cluttered if I don't clear it at the end of each day.* **| arrive on, land on** *A very strange request landed on my desk this morning.*

DESK + NOUN **drawer | diary, lamp | job**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *He was sitting at his desk working when we got home.* **| behind a/the ~** *The manager sat frowning behind his desk throughout the whole interview.* **| on a/the ~** *I left the file on your desk.*

2 place in a building where a service is provided

ADJ. **front, reception** *Leave your valuables at the reception desk.* **| cash, check-in, enquiry/enquiries, help, information, support** *She paid for the book at the cash desk. Staff experiencing problems with their computers should ring the help desk.*

DESK + NOUN **clerk**

PREP. **at the … ~** *There was a long queue at the check-in desk.* **| on the … ~** *We asked the man on the information desk for a map of the city.*

desolate *adj.*

1 **empty and depressing**

VERBS **be, seem, stand** *The house stands desolate and empty.* **| become | leave sth** *The land was left desolate.*

ADV. **completely, quite** *The landscape was quite desolate.* **| rather** *a rather desolate place*

2 **very unhappy**

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound** *He looked as desolate as Ruth felt.* **| become**

ADV. **quite, utterly** *She was utterly desolate after losing her baby.* **| a little** *Her voice sounded a little desolate.*

despair *noun*

ADJ. **black, bleak, deep | complete, total, utter**

VERB + DESPAIR **feel | drive sb to** *The novel tells the story of a teenager driven to despair by the hypocrisy of the adult world.*

PREP. **in ~** *Robert shook his head in despair.* **| of ~** *She let out a cry of despair.* **| with ~** *He cried out with despair.* **| ~ at** *I felt despair at being deceived.*

PHRASES **the depths of despair** *When he became ill he sank to the depths of despair.* **| in a moment of despair, a feeling/sense of despair** *I was overcome with a feeling of utter despair.*

desperate *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *I was starting to get desperate.* **| make sb** *The sudden loss of his money had made him desperate.*

ADV. **really | absolutely, utterly** *She felt utterly desperate.* **| increasingly | almost | a little, pretty, rather**

PREP. **about** *I felt desperate about my future.*

desperation *noun*

ADJ. **sheer | quiet | growing** *We realized with a sense of growing desperation that nobody knew we were in there.*

QUANT. **hint, note** *There was a note of desperation in her voice.*

VERB + DESPERATION **feel | drive sb to** *Driven to desperation by our noisy neighbours, we called the police.*

PREP. **in (your) ~** *In desperation, I decided to try acupuncture. In his desperation to escape, Tom had slipped and broken a leg.* **| out of ~** *At the end of the film, the man becomes a thief out of sheer desperation.* **| ~ about/at** *Many of us feel a quiet desperation at the future.*

PHRASES **an act of desperation** *The robbery was an act of desperation.* **| courage, strength, etc. born of desperation** *With strength born of desperation, she managed to break down the door.*

despicable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | condemn sth as, consider sth, find sth** *Police have condemned the theft from an elderly widow as despicable. To fail was considered despicable.*

ADV. **absolutely, quite** *It was an absolutely despicable thing to do.* **| pretty**

despise *verb*

ADV. **thoroughly | clearly | secretly** *He secretly despised his father.* **| openly**

PREP. **for** *She thoroughly despised him for his weakness.*

despondent *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel** *Patients often feel despondent.* **| become, get, grow** *His work was rejected again and again, and he grew more and more despondent.*

ADV. **very | utterly** *She was feeling utterly despondent.* **| a bit, pretty, rather, somewhat**

PREP. **about** *He had become rather despondent about his lack of progress.*

dessert *noun*

ADJ. delicious | rich *This chestnut pudding is a rich dessert with a festive flavour.*

VERB + DESSERT eat, have

DESSERT + NOUN apple, wine | menu, trolley

PREP. for ~ *We had mousse for dessert.* **| ~ of** *We finished off with a dessert of honey and nuts.* > Special page at FOOD

destination *noun*

ADJ. **eventual, final, ultimate | favourite, popular** *The town is a popular destination for art lovers.* **| ideal, perfect | intended** *We got lost and ended up miles away from our intended destination.* **| exotic | holiday, tourist** *The island is an ideal holiday destination.* **| unknown**

VERB + DESTINATION **arrive at, reach** *At around 1.00 p.m. we reached our final destination.*

PREP. **to a/the ~** *The deposed leader is reported to have fled the capital to an unknown destination.* **| ~ for** *a popular holiday destination for golf enthusiasts*

PHRASES **the country/port/state of destination** *The goods are examined by customs at the port of destination.*

destiny *noun*

VERB + DESTINY **fulfil, meet** *She was convinced that sooner or later she would fulfil her destiny. The time was right for him to meet his destiny.* **| avoid, escape** *No man can escape his destiny.* **| shape** *Something was about to happen that would shape her destiny.*

DESTINY + VERB **await sb, lie** *the destiny that awaited him Her destiny lay in that city.*

PHRASES **be in control of your own destiny/be master of your own destiny** *She set up her own business because she wanted to be in control of her own destiny.* **| a sense of destiny** *He was driven on by a strong sense of destiny.*

destroy *verb*

1 **damage sth so badly that it no longer exists**

ADV. **completely, entirely, totally, utterly | all but, almost, effectively, practically, virtually** *Their lives have been virtually destroyed by this tragedy.* **| largely | partly | systematically** *The rainforest is being systematically destroyed.* **| by fire** *The building was destroyed by fire last year.*

VERB + DESTROY **can/could** *Drugs can destroy the health and lives of young people.* **| threaten to** *This disease threatens to destroy many of our native trees.*

PHRASES **an attempt to destroy sth** *a new attempt to destroy enemy positions* **| be capable of destroying sth** *These weapons are capable of destroying the entire planet.* **| be intent on destroying sth** *She seemed intent on destroying everything they had built up together.*

2 **kill an animal**

ADV. **humanely**

PHRASES **have to be destroyed** *The horse broke a leg and had to be destroyed.*

destruction *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total, wholesale | large-scale, mass, massive, widespread** *modern weapons of mass destruction* **| rapid | systematic | wanton** *the wanton destruction of public property* **| environmental, forest, habitat** *the environmental destruction caused by road building*

VERB + DESTRUCTION **bring (about), cause, lead to, result in, wreak** *(formal) the destruction brought about by war He gasped as he saw how much destruction she had wrought with the hammer.* **| prevent** *Some shopkeepers closed early to prevent the wholesale destruction of their property by the hooligans.*

PHRASES **leave a trail of destruction** *The tornado left a trail of destruction behind it.* **| the seeds of destruction** *By doubling its prices, the industry sowed the seeds of its own destruction.* **| test sth to destruction** *Children will quickly test their toys to destruction.*

destructive *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | downright, wholly** *downright destructive behaviour* **| quite | potentially** *potentially destructive emotions* **| environmentally** *environmentally destructive policies*

PREP. **of** *Clearing trees by burning is highly destructive of the forest environment.* **| to** *These substances can be destructive to health.*

detachable *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **fully** *The lid is fully detachable.* **| easily, readily**

PREP. **from** *The handle is detachable from the bag.*

detached *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | become | remain**

ADV. **largely, very | completely, totally, wholly | rather, slightly | curiously, oddly, strangely** *He felt curiously detached from what was going on.* **| emotionally**

PREP. **from** *She tries to remain emotionally detached from her patients.*

detachment *noun*

ADJ. **complete | clinical, professional** *She gazed at the body with almost clinical detachment.* **| cool | critical | emotional**

VERB + DETACHMENT **have, show** *He shows impartiality and detachment.*

PREP. **with ~** *She watched with complete detachment as the others made all the preparations.* **| ~ from** *his increasing detachment from reality*

PHRASES **an air of detachment, a feeling/sense of detachment**

detail *noun*

ADJ. **little, minor, minute, small, tiny** *It is important to get even the small details right.* | **considerable, fine, great, meticulous** *Now let us examine this idea in greater detail. Every new animal or plant found was recorded in meticulous detail.* | **exact, precise** *I don't need to know the precise details of your quarrel.* | **colourful, vivid** | **graphic, sordid** *I can still remember the accident in graphic detail.* | **intimate** *The diary contains intimate details of their life together.* | **complete, full** *We'll give you full details of how to enter our competition later.* | **bare, brief, sketchy ~s** *He only managed to give the police a few sketchy details of the robbery.* | **essential** *I only know the barest details of his plans.* | **practical** *I haven't sorted out the practical details of getting there yet.* | **complex, intricate** | **final** *Everyone must approve the basic plan before the final details are drawn up.* | **concrete** *Can you give me some concrete details of how you've been saving money?* | **factual, historical, technical**

QUANT. **point** *I must correct some points of detail in your article on Barcelona.* | **wealth** *The book provides a wealth of detail on daily life in Ancient Rome.* | **level** *Ensure that your diagrams contain the appropriate level of detail.*

VERB + DETAIL **give, go into, provide, send, supply** *Briefly describe the product, but do not give any technical details at this stage. I don't want to go into any more detail than absolutely necessary.* | **lay out, lay sth out in, set out, set sth out in, spell out, spell sth out in** *Details of the pension plan are set out below. The rules are set out in detail in chapter seven.* | **establish, finalize, work out, work sth out in** *We haven't yet worked out the the case.* | **show** *The receipt shows details of the item purchased.* | **disclose, pass on, release ~s** *The city council refused to disclose details of the proposed traffic ban.* | **find out ~s** *You can find o* | **enter ~s** *Enter your details in the form below then click on 'submit'.* | **take ~s** *The secretary took my details and said they would get back to me.* | **check** *Make sure you check the details of the policy before you sign it.* | **record** *The computer records the details of everyone entering the country.* | **be lacking in, lack** *The speech was well delivered but lacking in detail.*

PREP. **for ~s** *For details contact Joanna Morland.* | **in ~** *I haven't looked at the proposal in detail yet.* | **over a/the ~** *They're still arguing over the details of the contract.* | **~ about** *I won't go into detail about the threats she made.* | **~ on** *For more detail on how to obtain a visa, see page 8.*

PHRASES **attention to detail** *The secret of their success lies in their attention to* *detail.* **| down to the last detail** *an expedition planned down to the last detail* **| every last detail** *She remembered every last detail of what I'd told her the month before.* **| an eye for detail** *He has an excellent eye for detail.* **| full of detail** *Her short stories are full of detail and humour.* **| a lack of detail** *The report was criticized for its lack of detail. travel details.* **| discuss, negotiate** *We still need to negotiate the details of the contract.* **| fill sb in on** *I'll give you a call later and fill you in on the details.* **| spare sb** *(informal) 'We had a terrible time?' 'Oh, spare me the details* (= don't tell me any more)*.'* **| contain, have** *Tomorrow's papers will contain full details of*

detailed *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, highly, immensely, very** *a very detailed account of the events* **| fully | increasingly | fairly, quite | meticulously, minutely | exquisitely, finely, richly** *the exquisitely detailed carvings on the cathedral door* **| unusually | unnecessarily**

detain *verb*

ADV. **briefly** *He was kidnapped and briefly detained by a terrorist group.*

VERB + DETAIN **need not** *This issue need not detail us long.*

PREP. **for** *She was arrested and detained for distributing pro-democracy leaflets.* **| in connection with** *Over 60 people have been detained in connection with the coup attempt.*

PHRASES **be detained in custody/hospital** *Two people were detained in hospital following the crash.* **| detain sb without charge/trial** *He has been detained without trial for nearly two years now.*

detect *verb*

ADV. **early, late** *A lot of cancers can now be cured if they are detected early.* **| quickly | easily, readily** *Some substances can be detected fairly easily.* **| accurately**

VERB + DETECT **be able to, be sensitive enough to, can** *a machine that is sensitive enough to detect tiny amounts of explosives* **| be unable to | be designed to | fail to** *The test failed to detect any illegal substances.* **| be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to | be easy to, be possible to | be used to**

PHRASES **be capable of detecting sth, a means/method/way of detecting sth**

detection *noun*

ADJ. early *Our aim is the early detection and treatment of all cancers.*

VERB + DETECTION avoid, escape, evade *Their prey can sometimes escape detection by remaining still.*

DETECTION + NOUN rate *The latest figures show falling crime detection rates.*

detective *noun*

ADJ. **private** *She hired a private detective to follow her husband.* **| undercover | store** *The store detective was keeping a close eye on a suspected shoplifter.*

VERB + DETECTIVE **hire**

DETECTIVE + VERB **investigate sth** *detectives investigating the case*

DETECTIVE + NOUN **agency | work** *We are going to have to do some detective work on this.* **| fiction, novel, series, story**

detention *noun*

ADJ. **arbitrary** *Opponents of the regime had been subject to arbitrary detention, torture and execution.* **| pre-trial | indefinite** *If found guilty of smuggling drugs, she could face indefinite detention.*

VERB + DETENTION **be in, remain in** *147 of the illegal immigrants remain in detention.* **| hold sb in, place sb in, sentence sb to** *He was held in detention from 1991 to 2001. They were sentenced to 12 months' detention in a young offender institution.* **| be subject to, face | release sb from**

DETENTION + NOUN **camp, centre**

PREP. **in ~** *She spent 18 years in detention.* **| under ~** *He made the confession while under detention.*

PHRASES **a period/term of detention** *The judge will fix the period of detention.*

deter *verb*

ADV. **hardly** *Her words of warning would hardly deter him.* **| effectively, sufficiently** *Will this harsher punishment effectively deter criminals?* **| easily**

VERB + DETER **be likely/unlikely to | be enough to, be sufficient to | attempt to | be designed to | do little to, do nothing to** *The present system does little to deter corporate crime.*

PREP. **from** *These new rules are likely to deter people from coming forward for help.*

deteriorate *verb*

ADV. **badly, seriously | dramatically, sharply, quickly, rapidly | gradually | further**

VERB + DETERIORATE **begin to** *His health began to deteriorate quite seriously.* **| continue to | be likely to**

PREP. **into** *The unrest rapidly deteriorated into civil war.*

deterioration *noun*

ADJ. **marked, serious, significant** *a serious deterioration in relations between the two governments* **| rapid, sharp | gradual, progressive | mental, physical** *Mental and physical deterioration both occur naturally with age.* **| environmental**

VERB + DETERIORATION **cause, lead to, result in** *The stress led to a gradual deterioration in her health.* **| prevent** *Limits on the dumping of waste will at least prevent further environmental deterioration in the region.* **| arrest** *Steps need to be taken quickly to arrest the deterioration in the countries' relationship.*

DETERIORATION + VERB **occur**

PREP. **~ in** *a rapid deterioration in his condition*

PHRASES **signs of deterioration** *The car's bodywork was already showing signs of deterioration.*

determination *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, dogged, fierce, great, grim, gritty, ruthless, single-minded, steely, strong | clear** *The prime minister's speech revealed a clear determination to break the power of the unions.*

VERB + DETERMINATION **be full of, have** *She was full of determination to achieve her goals. He has the determination to succeed.* **| reveal, show** *She has shown great determination and skill.* **| express, signal** *The government last night signalled its determination to resist tax cuts.* **| require | lack**

PREP. **with ~** *He hung on with grim determination.*

PHRASES **determination to succeed/win**

determine *verb*

ADV. **exactly, precisely** *We need a detailed investigation to determine exactly why these cancers are occurring.*

VERB + DETERMINE **try to | be used to, help to** *Computer models help to determine whether a particular area is likely to flood.* **| be easy to, be possible to | be difficult to, be impossible to** *It is difficult to determine the exact cause of the illness.* **| be necessary to | be able to**

determined *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become | remain | make sb** *The opposition to her scheme made her more determined than ever.*

ADV. **really, very | absolutely, quite, utterly** *They were quite determined that he wasn't going to do it.* **| fairly | clearly, obviously | fiercely, grimly** *His voice was grimly determined.* **| quietly | resolutely**

deterrent *noun*

ADJ. **effective, good, great, powerful, real | the ultimate** *Defenders of the death penalty clearly regard it as the ultimate deterrent.* **| nuclear** *They stressed the need for an independent nuclear deterrent.*

VERB + DETERRENT **act as, be** *a punishment that will act as a deterrent to other offenders*

DETERRENT + NOUN **effect** *They were arguing about the deterrent effect of nuclear weapons.*

PREP. **as a ~** *The bodies of executed criminals were hung on the city gates as a deterrent.* **| ~ against** *a deterrent against cheating* **| ~ for** *There is no effective deterrent for these young criminals.* **| ~ to** *a deterrent to crime a deterrent to all but the most determined attacker*

detour *noun*

ADJ. **lengthy, long | brief, short, small**

VERB + DETOUR **make, take** *We had to make a lengthy detour through the backstreets.* **| be worth** *The monument is well worth a detour.*

PREP. **~ around** *Trucks now face a five-mile detour around the bridge.* **| ~ through, ~ to** *The ship made a detour to the south.*

detrimental *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, seriously, very | positively** *Sugar is positively detrimental to bodybuilding.* **| rather**

PREP. **to** *This move could be seriously detrimental to the economy.*

devalue *verb*

ADV. **effectively**

PREP. **against** *The pound was devalued against the US dollar.* **| by** *The Cambodian currency was effectively devalued by 25 per cent.*

devastation *noun*

ADJ. **complete, utter | widespread | ecological, environmental | economic**

VERB + DEVASTATION **cause** *The hurricane caused widespread devastation.*

DEVASTATION + VERB **be wrought** *We surveyed the devastation wrought by the fire.*

PHRASES **a scene of devastation** *He surveyed the scene of utter devastation beneath him.* **| a trail of devastation** *The tornado left a trail of devastation in its wake.*

developed *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **highly, strongly, well** *He's got a highly developed sense of humour.* **| fully | partially | finely | poorly** *She was born prematurely with poorly developed lungs.* **| newly | economically** *economically developed countries*

developer *noun*

ADJ. **big, major | local** *A local developer is planning to build a supermarket on the site.* **| private** *The flats are being built by a private developer.* **| speculative | housing, property** *plans by a big property developer to build fifty new houses*

DEVELOPER + VERB **build sth, develop sth**

development *noun*

1 developing sth

ADJ. **full** *School should encourage the full development of a student's talents.* **| gradual | rapid | sustainable | healthy | commercial, economic, industrial | evolutionary, historical | regional | rural, suburban, urban | human | educational, emotional, intellectual, linguistic, personal, physical, psychological, sexual, social, spiritual | software | child | property**

VERB + DEVELOPMENT **aid, allow, assist, encourage, enhance, facilitate, favour, foster, permit, promote, stimulate, support** *Education stimulates the stage in the development of Anglo-Irish relations* **| a stage of development** *This is a perfectly normal stage of development.*

2 new event/idea

ADJ. **exciting, important, major, radical, remarkable, significant, striking | the latest, new, recent | logical** *The move from TV to film was a logical development in her career.* **| unexpected | welcome | political, scientific, technical, technological**

DEVELOPMENT + VERB **occur, take place** *the significant developments taking place in the health service*

PREP. **~ in** *new developments in film-making*

3 new buildings

ADJ. **housing, property |** *development of rational thinking. A group of experts has been brought together to support the develop* **business, commercial | ribbon | accelerate, speed up** *Ribbon developments* (= lines of *Environmental factors can* buildings) *extended along the main accelerate the development of road.certain cancers.* **| arrest, discourage, halt, hinder, inhibit, prevent, restrict, retard, slow** *Too much emphasis* on *memorizing facts can inhibit the development of creative thinking.* **| finance** *The company went deep into debt to finance the development of the engine.* | **monitor, oversee** *A UN team is monitoring the development of the peace process.* **| trace** *In the opening chapter, the author traces the development of judo from its ancient roots.*

DEVELOPMENT + VERB **occur, take place**

DEVELOPMENT + NOUN **initiative, plan, programme, project, scheme | aid, assistance | work** *The invention requires more development work to make it viable.* **| process** *the lengthy development process of a new model of car* **| budget, capital, fund, grant | costs, expenditure**

PREP. **during ~** *Cell divisions during development occur in a fixed sequence.* **| in ~** *A more powerful version of this electric bus in currently in development.* **| under ~** *The new vaccine is still under development.*

PHRASES **research and development** *I do quite a lot of research and development work in my job.* **| a stage in the development of sth** *an important*

deviate *verb*

ADV. **considerably, significantly**

PREP. **by** *Output may deviate from the average by as much as 30%.* **| from** *We had to deviate significantly from our usual route.*

device *noun*

ADJ. **clever, ingenious | labour-saving, useful | complex, sophisticated | simple | hi-tech | hand-held | automatic, electrical, electronic, mechanical | bugging, contraceptive, measuring, safety, timing, warning** *Police found several bugging devices in the room.* **| explosive, incendiary** *An incendiary device exploded in the store, setting fire to furniture.*

VERB + DEVICE **be fitted with, have** *All new cars are now fitted with these safety devices.* **| design, develop, make | use** *He measured the room using an ingenious new electronic device.*

DEVICE + VERB **consist of sth** *The device consists of a large wheel mounted on a metal post.* **| be designed to** *a tiny device designed to trace telephone calls* **| work** *The device worked exactly as I'd hoped.*

PREP. **~ for** *a useful device for checking electrical circuits*

devil *noun*

VERB + DEVIL **believe in** *Do you believe in the Devil?* **| worship | be possessed by** *He behaved like someone possessed by devils.* **| exorcize**

DEVIL + NOUN **worship | worshipper**

PHRASES **the devil incarnate** *(figurative) His strong left-wing views make him the devil incarnate to more extreme Conservatives.*

devoid *adj.* **devoid of**

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly** *Are you totally devoid of common sense?* **| almost, largely, practically, virtually** *The land is almost devoid of vegetation.*

devote *verb* **PHRASAL VERBS devote sth/yourself to sth**

ADV. **entirely, exclusively, solely, specifically** *She devoted herself entirely to writing.* **| mainly**

devoted *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, completely, totally, utterly | passionately**

PREP. **to** *They were totally devoted to each other.*

devotee *noun*

ADJ. **ardent, committed, fervent, great, serious** *I'm a great devotee of jazz.*

devotion *noun*

ADJ. **deep, enormous | great | fanatical, intense, passionate, single-minded** *Their single-minded devotion to the care of the dying was admirable.* **| total** *her total devotion to her husband* **| selfless | blind, dog-like** *He was mocked for his dog-like devotion to his boss.* **| lifelong, undying** *his lifelong devotion to his work* **| mutual** *a marriage rooted in mutual devotion and trust* **| religious** *a man of deep religious devotion*

VERB + DEVOTION **show**

PREP. **with ~** *He cared for his mother with great devotion.* **| ~ to** *They showed great devotion to each other.*

PHRASES **devotion to duty** *The judge praised the firefighters for their bravery and devotion to duty.* **| devotion to the cause** *She will be remembered for her selfless devotion to the cause of the poor.* **| an object of devotion** *The statue of the emperor became an object of devotion.*

devour *verb*

ADV. **eagerly, greedily, hungrily** *He devoured the food greedily.* **| quickly** *The animal quickly devoured its prey.*

dew *noun*

ADJ. **heavy** *There was a heavy dew this morning.* **| morning** *The sun had dried the early morning dew.*

QUANT. **drop** *Drops of dew shone on the grass.*

DEW + VERB **fall, form**

DEW + NOUN **drop** (also **dewdrop)**

PHRASES **damp/heavy/wet with dew** *The grass was still wet with dew.*

dexterity *noun*

ADJ. **great | manual**

VERB + DEXTERITY **demand, require** *Video games demand great manual dexterity.* **| have** *I don't have the dexterity for juggling.*

PREP. **with ~** *She handled the discussion with dexterity.*

diagnose *verb*

ADV. **correctly | incorrectly, wrongly** *Her condition was wrongly diagnosed by the doctor.*

PREP. **with** *He was diagnosed with leukaemia.*

diagnosis *noun*

ADJ. **accurate, correct, right | incorrect, wrong | definite, definitive, firm, positive | provisional, tentative** *Without the results of the blood test, the doctor could only make a tentative diagnosis.* **| early** *Early diagnosis is critical for successful treatment.* **| initial | final | clinical, medical, psychiatric** *clinical diagnosis of schizophrenia* **| AIDS, cancer, etc. | fault**

VERB + DIAGNOSIS **establish, give, make, reach** *The doctor cannot give a diagnosis without knowing the full medical history.* **| confirm** *Further tests have confirmed the diagnosis.*

PREP. **after ~, before ~** *Patients may suffer from some of the symptoms years before diagnosis.* **| ~ of** *the diagnosis of the disease a diagnosis of cancer*

PHRASES **a method of diagnosis** *They are using new methods of diagnosis.*

diagram *noun*

ADJ. **clear | detailed | rough | simple | flow, schematic | circuit, wiring**

VERB + DIAGRAM **draw** *Draw a simple diagram of the leaf structure.*

DIAGRAM + VERB **depict sth, illustrate sth, indicate sth, represent sth, show sth** *a flow diagram showing the stages in the printing process*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Compare this system to the one shown in diagram B.* **| on a/the ~** *The trees will be planted at the points marked on the diagram.* **| ~ of** *a diagram of the human nervous system*

dial *noun*

VERB + DIAL **adjust, set, turn, twiddle, twist** *Set the dial for the number of copies required.*

dial *verb*

ADV. **direct** *It is possible to dial direct to many countries.*

dialect *nou*n

ADJ. **local, native, regional | non-standard | northern, southern, etc. | Scottish, Ulster, etc.**

VERB + DIALECT **speak (in)**

DIALECT + NOUN **expression, form, word | speaker**

dialogue *noun*

ADJ. **close** *There needs to be a closer dialogue between management and staff.* **| direct** *The government refused to engage in direct dialogue with the terrorists.* **| constructive, serious | political** *a serious political dialogue*

VERB + DIALOGUE **engage in, have, hold** *Managers are willing to hold a dialogue with union leaders.* **| begin, enter into, open | resume**

PREP. **~ about** *dialogue about concrete issues* **| ~ among** *The head encourages a climate of open dialogue among the teachers.* **| ~ between** *the need for dialogue between the two sides in the dispute* **| ~ on** *a constructive dialogue on pay and working conditions* **| ~ with** *They have agreed to resume their dialogue with the teachers.*

diameter *noun*

ADJ. **inside, internal** *The tubes have an internal diameter of 2mm.* **| external, outside | large, small**

VERB + DIAMETER **calculate, find, measure** *He used similar triangles to calculate the diameter of the earth.* **| have**

PREP. **in ~** *The mirror is 25cm in diameter.*

diamond *noun*

1 **precious stone**

ADJ. **flawless, perfect | real | paste | cut | uncut | industrial**

VERB + DIAMOND **cut | polish | set | be encrusted with, be studded with** *a brooch encrusted with diamonds* **| drip with** *an old woman dripping with diamonds*

DIAMOND + VERB **glitter, sparkle**

DIAMOND + NOUN **mine | industry, trade | broker, dealer, merchant**

2 **playing card > Note at CARD**

diarrhoea *nou*n

ADJ. **severe | mild | acute, chronic | intermittent, persistent**

VERB + DIARRHOEA **have, suffer from | develop, get** > Special page at ILLNESS

diary *noun*

1 **for appointments**

ADJ. **appointments, bookings, engagement, social | desk, pocket | electronic**

VERB + DIARY **have sth in** *I haven't got the meeting in my diary.* **| put sth in, write sth in** *Put it in your diary before you forget.*

PREP. **in a/your ~**

2 **for writing down what happens each day**

ADJ. **detailed | daily | personal, private, secret | field, gardening, travel** *He jotted down observations on the animals' habits in his field diary.*

VERB + DIARY **keep** *I starting keeping a diary when I was thirteen.* **| write sth in, note sth in, record sth in** *'It's all over,' he wrote in his diary for April 21.*

DIARY + NOUN **entry**

PREP. **in a/your ~** *I've made a note in my diary.*

PHRASES **an entry in a diary**

dice *noun*

ADJ. **loaded**

VERB + DICE **roll, throw** *You decide who's going to start by throwing the dice.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *You move forward according to the number on the dice.*

PHRASES **a roll/throw of the dice** *The roll of the dice went against them.*

dictation *noun*

VERB + DICTATION **do, have** *We did a French dictation in class.* **| give sb** *The teacher gave them a dictation.* **| take** *Her secretary is very good at taking dictation.*

PREP. **at sb's ~** *I wrote some letters at his dictation.* **| from ~** *I find it difficult to write letters from dictation.* **| in a/the ~** *We had some very difficult words in our dictation.*

dictatorship *noun*

ADJ. **communist, fascist | left-wing, right-wing | military | totalitarian | benevolent**

VERB + DICTATORSHIP **establish, set up** *The generals established a military dictatorship.* **| overthrow** *They succeeded in overthrowing the fascist dictatorship.*

PREP. **during a/the ~** *the atrocities that took place during his dictatorship* **| under (a/the) ~** *These men had all lived under dictatorship.*

dictionary *noun*

ADJ. **comprehensive, good | electronic, online | picture | pocket | English, French, etc. | English/French, French/English, etc. | bilingual, monolingual | learner's, native-speaker | standard | specialist, technical | collocation, etymological, historical, pronunciation | biographical, encyclopedic, medical** *I decided to consult a medical dictionary.*

VERB + DICTIONARY **consult, look sth up in, use** *If you don't know the meaning of a word, look it up in the dictionary. teaching children how to use dictionaries* **| compile, write | edit | publish**

DICTIONARY + NOUN **definition, entry**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I couldn't find the word in the dictionary.*

die *verb*

ADV. **in childbirth | in infancy, prematurely, young** *One of their children died in infancy.* **| peacefully | suddenly | tragically** *Her father died tragically in a car crash.*

VERB + DIE **be going to** *I thought I was going to die.* **| be allowed to** *She should be allowed to die peacefully.*

PREP. **for** *to die for your country* **| from** *The accident victim died from her injuries.* **| of** *He died of a heart attack.*

PHRASES **die a natural sudden, violent, etc. death**

diesel *noun*

VERB + DIESEL **run on, use** *These buses run on diesel.*

DIESEL + NOUN **power | fuel, fumes, oil | car, engine, locomotive, model, train** *The diesel model is noisier than the petrol model.*

diet *noun*

1 **food sb/sth usually eats**

ADJ. **balanced, good, healthy, sensible | adequate** *People can fight infection more easily if they have an adequate diet.* **| bad, poor, unhealthy | staple** *a staple diet of cornmeal and vegetables* **| vegan, vegetarian**

VERB + DIET **eat, have** *It is important to eat a balanced diet.* **| live on, survive on** *They had to survive on a diet of insects and berries.* **| feed sb on**

DIET + VERB **consist of sth** *The animal's diet consists mainly of grasses.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the amount of fat in your diet* **| on a ~** *These animals live on a mainly vegetarian diet.* **| ~ of** *They were fed on a diet of rice and vegetables.*

PHRASES **a diet high/rich in sth** *a diet rich in vitamins and minerals*

2 **when you want to lose weight/are ill**

ADJ. **strict | slimming, weight-loss, weight-reducing | crash, starvation** *Crash diets are not the best way to lose weight.* **| calorie-controlled, low-calorie | restricted, special | fibre-rich, gluten-free, high/low-fibre, high/low-protein, low-fat, salt-free, etc.**

VERB + DIET **follow, have** *If you follow this diet, you're bound to lose weight.* **| go on, start | stick to** *I have to stick to a low-fat diet.* **| be on** *I'd love some chips, but I'm on a diet.*

DIET + NOUN **drink, food | plan** *Lose pounds with our new diet plan!*

PREP. **on a ~** *They're on a special high-protein diet.*

differ *verb*

1 be different

ADV. **considerably, enormously, fundamentally, greatly, markedly, radically, sharply, significantly, substantially, widely** *The two approaches differ markedly Opinions differ widely on this issue.* | **little** | **slightly, somewhat** | **clearly**

PREP. **according to** *Conditions of employment differ according to the type of company you are working for.* | **between** *Social organization differs significantly between the different groups.* | **from** *His ideas differ little from those of his father.* | **in** *The models differ in size and shape.*

2 have a different opinion

VERB + DIFFER **agree to** *In the end we agreed to differ.* | **beg to** *I beg to differ* (= I disagree with you).

PREP. **about/over** *The two sides still differ over details of the plan.* | **on** *The two parties differ on all the major issues.* | **with** *It didn't seem right that I should differ with him.*

difference *noun*

1 **way in which people/things are not the same**

ADJ. **big, broad, considerable, dramatic, enormous, great, huge, large, major, profound, radical, real, sharp, substantial, vast, wide** *A little extra care makes a big difference. I noticed a real difference in his attitude.* | **basic, essential, fundamental** | **crucial, important, key, significant** | **clear, distinct, marked, notable, noticeable, obvious, striking** | **minor, slight, subtle** | **national, regional** | **age, class, cultural, ethnic, gender, genetic, physical, psychological, racial, sex, social** | **historical, ideological, political** | **temperature, time** *What's the time difference between London and Tokyo?*

VERB + DIFFERENCE **make** *The new central heating has made an enormous difference to the house. What difference does it make if he doesn't have a car?* | **mean** *One tiny mistake when you're climbing could mean the difference between life and death.* | **exaggerate, emphasize, focus on, highlight, stress, underline** *We should be focusing on what we have in common rather than emphasizing our differences.* | **appreciate, be aware of, feel, know, notice, perceive, see, spot, tell** *Only an expert would know the difference between the male and the female. Can you spot the difference between these two photos? It's difficult to tell the difference between butterflies and moths.* | **explain, illustrate** | **examine, explore, look at** *The study explores the differences between the way girls and boys talk.* | **show** *The questionnaire showed vast differences in what kind of product people want.* | **reflect** *Our different attitudes to life reflect the differences in our backgrounds.*

DIFFERENCE + VERB **be, lie** *The difference lies in the way the fruit is prepared.* | **arise (from sth), exist** *The differences in size arise from the amount of sunshine each plant gets.*

PREP. **~ between** *There's a big difference between reading about skiing and doing it yourself.* | **~ from** *He was very aware of his difference from the other children.* | **~ in** *The difference in price is not very significant.* | **~ of** *a crucial difference of emphasis* | **~ with** *There is one key difference with the earlier version of the software. The difference with this information service is that it's free.*

PHRASES **a … with a difference** *If you want a holiday with a difference, come to Iceland.* | **all the difference in the world** *There's all the difference in the world between choosing to do something and being forced to do it.* | **a great deal of/a lot**

difference *The extra money will make a lot of difference to us.* **| make all the difference** *Just five minutes' exercise a day could make all the difference.* **| no difference/not much difference** *There's not much difference between baseball and softball.*

2 **sum of money in addition to the sum expected**

VERB + DIFFERENCE **pay** *If you decide you would prefer the more expensive model, you can bring this one back and pay the difference.* **| make up** *He hadn't got quite enough money, but his aunt agreed to make up the difference.* **| pocket** *He sold the car for more than he'd paid and pocketed the difference.* **| split** *(figurative) I wanted to leave early and Ian wanted to leave late, so we split the difference and left at noon.*

3 **disagreement**

ADJ. **irreconcilable, major, serious, sharp | minor, slight | outstanding** *This round of talks aims to resolve the outstanding differences between the two sides.*

VERB + DIFFERENCE **have** *They have had some minor differences, but in general they get on well together.* **| make up, patch up, put aside, reconcile, resolve, settle** *We're going to get the two sides together to see if they can't settle their differences.*

DIFFERENCE + VERB **arise, emerge, occur** *Differences may arise when the young people do not have the same expectations as their parents.* **| remain** *Although the talks were generally successful, differences remain between the groups.*

PREP. **~ as to/over** *There were some differences as to how to deal with the crisis.*

PHRASES **a difference of opinion** *She and Luke had a difference of opinion over how much money they should spend.* **| have your differences** *Like any married couple, we have our differences.*

different *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound, taste**

ADV. **very | distinctly, markedly, radically, significantly, strikingly** *This school is radically different from most others.* **| completely, entirely, quite, totally | rather, slightly | subtly** *The same colour can appear subtly different on different types of paper.* **| materially, qualitatively | refreshingly** *a refreshingly different approach to language learning*

PREP. **from** *Human beings are different from other animals.* **| to** *Their customs are very different to ours.*

differentiate *verb*

ADV. **clearly**

VERB + DIFFERENTIATE **be important to | be easy to, be possible to | be difficult to**

PREP. **between** *It is not always possible to differentiate between the two diseases.* **| from** *features which clearly differentiate this product from other similar ones*

difficult *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, prove, seem, sound | become, get** *It is getting more and more difficult to find a job.* **| make sth** *The fog made driving very difficult.* **| find sth**

ADV. **exceedingly, extraordinarily, extremely, incredibly, particularly, really, very | doubly** *Her disability made taking care of the home and raising a family doubly difficult.* **| increasingly | a bit, quite, rather | notoriously** *Birth rates are notoriously difficult to predict.*

difficulty *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, grave, great, major, real, serious, severe** *We had enormous difficulty in getting hold of the right equipment.* | **insurmountable** | **increasing** *questions of increasing difficulty* | **inherent** *the difficulties inherent in treating overdose patients* | **particular, special** *English spelling presents special difficulties for foreign learners.* | **economic, financial** | **practical, technical** *I think we've managed to overcome most of the practical difficulties.* | **behavioural, emotional, learning** *children with learning difficulties*

QUANT. **level** *The games have various different levels of difficulty.*

VERB + DIFFICULTY **encounter, experience, face, get into, have, run into** *Among the difficulties encountered was a lack of cooperation on the part of the authorities. Anyone experiencing difficulty with radio reception should call us on the new helpline. Let me know if you have any difficulties. I had little difficulty in persuading the others to come. The scheme has run into serious difficulties.* | **cause, create, make, present** *Will it cause any difficulties if I go early? She is always making difficulties for herself.* | **cope with, deal with, overcome, resolve, solve, surmount** | **avoid** *how to avoid technical difficulties* | **be fraught with** *The situation was fraught with difficulty.*

DIFFICULTY + VERB **arise, crop up** *Difficulties arise when people fail to consult their colleagues.* | **lie (in sth)** *The difficulty lies in identifying the precise nature of the problem.*

PREP. **despite a/the ~** *Despite all the difficulties, he still remains optimistic.* | **in ~** *We could see that the swimmer was in difficulties.* | **with/without ~** *We crossed the border without any difficulty. Life in the city was not without its difficulties.* | **~ in** *She had difficulty in starting her car.* | **~ of** *the difficulty of finding affordable accommodation* | **~ with** *having difficulty with the engine*

dig *noun*

1 **hard push**

ADJ. **sharp**

VERB + DIG **give** *She gave him a sharp dig in the ribs.* **| feel, get**

PHRASES **a dig in the ribs**

2 **critical remark**

ADJ. **little | sly** *I resisted the temptation to get in a sly dig at Fred.*

VERB + DIG **get in, have, make**

PREP. **~ about, ~ at** *They were having a little dig at her about the way she tells everybody else what to do.*

3 **in the ground**

ADJ. **archaeological**

VERB + DIG **go on** *I went on an archaeological dig over the summer.*

DIG + VERB **reveal sth** *The dig revealed the site of a Roman villa.*

dig *verb*

ADV. **deep** *We'll have to dig quite deep to get at the roots.*

PREP. **for** *digging for buried treasure* **| through** *digging through solid clay*

digest *verb*

ADV. **easily** *Some foods are digested more easily than others.* **| fully | partially** *The parent bird partially digests food in its crop.*

VERB + DIGEST **can/can't** *He has to avoid fat because his body can't digest it.* **| be difficult to, be easy to** *Cheese is very difficult to digest.*

digestion *noun*

ADJ. **good | poor**

VERB + DIGESTION **have** *She's got very poor digestion.* **| aid, help** *Peppermint aids digestion.*

digit *noun*

ADJ. **binary, decimal** *the decimal digits 0 to 9*

QUANT. **sequence, series, set, string** *a sequence of binary digits*

PHRASES **three, four, etc. digits long** *The number can be up to eight digits long.*

dignified *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | remain**

ADV. **very | quite | quietly** *He remained quietly dignified in defeat.*

dignity *noun*

ADJ. **enormous, great | calm, quiet** *She spoke to him with quiet dignity.* **| human, personal** *the importance of human dignity*

VERB + DIGNITY **have, possess** *These people have enormous dignity.* **| keep, maintain, preserve, retain** *We all want to maintain our dignity in old age.* **| give sb** *Being treated in the privacy of your own room gives you more dignity.* **| lose** *The awful thing about old age is losing your dignity.* **| destroy, rob/strip sb of, threaten** *Slavery destroys human dignity. Keeping prisoners in such dreadful conditions strips them of all dignity.* **| muster** *With as much dignity as he could muster, he left the room.* **| stand on** (= insist on the respect you think you deserve) *She was never one to stand on her dignity.*

PREP. **beneath your ~** *He clearly regarded manual work as beneath his dignity.* **| with ~** *the right to die with dignity*

PHRASES **an air of dignity** *His aristocratic voice gives him an air of dignity and power.* **| lacking in dignity** *We felt that the way she was treated was lacking in dignity.* **| a lack of dignity, a loss of dignity** *He hoped that he could change his mind without loss of dignity.* **| a sense of dignity** *She had a strong sense of dignity.* **| with your dignity intact** *He needed a way to retreat with his dignity intact.*

dilemma *noun*

ADJ. **acute, appalling, big, difficult, genuine, great, impossible, real, serious, terrible, thorny | central, essential, fundamental** *The fundamental dilemma remains: in a tolerant society, should we tolerate intolerance?* **| familiar, perennial | human | personal | ethical, moral | policy, political**

VERB + DILEMMA **create, pose** *This poses a difficult dilemma for teachers.* **| be caught in, be faced with, confront, face, have** *They were caught in a real dilemma.* **| resolve, solve** *I could see no way of resolving this moral dilemma.*

DILEMMA + VERB **arise, occur, present itself** *the dilemma that arises when a doctor has to decide whether or not to prescribe an expensive treatment* **| lie** *The dilemma over human cloning lies at the heart of the ethical choices facing society.* **| confront sb, face sb** *The dilemma facing the country's allies was even more serious.* **| remain**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The minister is now in an impossible dilemma.* **| ~ about/over** *She faced a dilemma about whether to accept the offer or not.* **| ~ between** *the perennial dilemma between getting on at work and fulfilling family commitments*

PHRASES **a solution to a dilemma, a way out of a dilemma** *I couldn't see any way out of the dilemma.*

dilute *verb*

1 **liquid**

ADV. **highly** *The fragrances are highly diluted.* | **slightly** *Dilute the juice slightly with water.*

PREP. **in** *The perfumes are diluted in vegetable oils.* | **with**

2 **effect/quality**

ADV. **considerably, substantially** *The effect of this policy has now been considerably diluted.*

dimension *noun*

1 **(often dimensions) measurements**

ADJ. **approximate | exact, precise** *It is important to measure the exact dimensions of the room.* **| overall | compact** *Despite the unit's compact dimensions, there's still plenty of room for expansion.* **| considerable** *a structure of considerable dimensions* **| fourth, second, third** *The fourth dimension, time, is also finite in extent.* **| physical, space/spatial, temporal/time | horizontal, vertical**

VERB + DIMENSION **check, measure** *Can we just check the dimensions of the bedroom again?*

PHRASES **in two/three dimensions** *a model in three dimensions*

2 **aspect**

ADJ. **added, additional, different, extra, further, new | distinct** *In looking at population ageing we will consider two distinct dimensions.* **| wider** *There is a wider dimension to the question.* **| crucial, essential, important, main, major, significant | global, international, local, national, regional** *Communication via the Internet gives an important international dimension to the project.* **| aesthetic, class, cultural, economic, ethical, historical, human, ideological, moral, personal, political, religious, social, spiritual**

VERB + DIMENSION **add, give (sth)** *Her illness adds an extra dimension to the problem.* **| have** *The affair had a different dimension now.* **| acquire, take on** *The crisis acquired a new dimension.*

PREP. **~ to** *the spiritual dimension to our lives*

din *noun*

ADJ. **awful, raucous, terrible | constant**

VERB + DIN **make** *Who's making that awful din?* **| hear | hear sb above/over** *She could not be heard above the din of the crowd.*

PREP. **above/over the ~** *Charles shouted above the din.*

PHRASES **the din of battle**

dine *verb*

ADV. **al fresco** *the joys of dining al fresco* **| in style** *We dined in style in the hotel restaurant.* **| out** *Dining out in attractive surroundings is one of life's great pleasures.*

PREP. **on** *We dined on fresh local fish.*

dinghy *noun*

ADJ. **inflatable, rubber | sailing**

VERB + DINGHY **row, sail** *She sailed the dinghy across the bay.*

DINGHY + NOUN **sailing, sailor**

PREP. **in/into a/the ~** *She rowed ashore in the dinghy.*

dining room *noun*

ADJ. **large, spacious | cosy, small | elegant | formal | panelled | communal | guest, residents', staff**

DINING ROOM + VERB **seat sb** *The dining room seats up to 60 guests.* **| serve sth** *a cosy dining room serving excellent home-prepared cooking*

DINING ROOM + NOUN **chair, table**

dinner *noun*

1 **main meal of the day**

ADJ. **delicious, excellent, good, slap-up, sumptuous** *We were treated to a slap-up meal with every kind of seafood imaginable.* **| four-course, three-course, etc. | leisurely | candlelit, romantic | intimate, quiet | Christmas, Sunday | school | convenience, TV** (= eaten while sitting watching the TV) **| chicken, seafood, turkey, etc.**

DINNER + NOUN **table** *There was never much conversation at the dinner table in my family.* **| things** *We didn't wash up the dinner things until the morning after.* **| plates, service** *a bone-china dinner service* **| menu** *The school dinner menu always includes a balance of food types.* **| bell | money** *I always forgot to take my dinner money to school.* **| dance** *the society's annual dinner dance* > Note at MEAL(for verbs)

2 **formal evening occasion, with dinner**

ADJ. **elegant, lavish | formal, official | informal | annual** *The rugby club's annual dinner is this week.* **| anniversary, celebratory | farewell | awards, prize-giving | charity, fund-raising | gala** *A gala dinner was held to celebrate the world premiere of the film.* **| literary | state** *A state dinner was held in honour of the visiting Japanese premier.*

VERB + DINNER **give, hold, throw** *My old school is giving a fund-raising dinner* **| attend** *We're going to attend a formal dinner in aid of cancer research.* **| be invited to | change for, dress for** *Are we expected to dress for dinner?* **| speak at** *The former Olympic champion was invited to speak at a charity dinner.*

DINNER + NOUN **party** *They invited three couples to a dinner party at their house.* **| engagement | dance | guests | jacket, suit**

PHRASES **an after-dinner speaker/speech**

dip *noun*

ADJ. **sharp | slight | sudden**

VERB + DIP **suffer, take** *Share prices have taken a slight dip.*

PREP. **~ in** *a sharp dip in temperature*

dip *verb*

1 in liquid

ADV. **lightly** *She dipped the brush lightly in the varnish.*

PREP. **in, into** *He dipped his finger in the water*

2 go/move downwards

ADV. **gently** *hills which dip gently to the east* **| steeply | down** *The road dipped steeply down into the town.*

PREP. **below** *The sun dipped below the horizon.*

3 prices/support, etc.

ADV. **slightly | sharply** *Support dipped sharply to 51%.*

diphtheria *noun*

VERB + DIPHTHERIA **have, suffer from | catch, contract, get | immunize sb against** *Parents are advised to have their children immunized against diphtheria.*

DIPHTHERIA + NOUN **epidemic | vaccine** > Special page at ILLNESS

diploma *noun*

ADJ. **college, university | graduate, postgraduate, professional | higher | national** *The college offers the Higher National Diploma in computer studies.* **| full-time, part-time | one-year, two-year, etc.**

VERB + DIPLOMA **study for, take | have, hold | be awarded, gain, get, obtain, receive | award (sb), confer (on sb)** *The university awards diplomas in higher education.* **| lead to** *The course leads to a diploma in psychiatric nursing.*

DIPLOMA + NOUN **course, programme, studies | holder** *Diploma holders have a far better chance of employment than those with no qualification.*

PREP. **~ in** *a diploma in hotel management* **| ~ of** *diploma of higher education*

PHRASES **at diploma level** *Most students here are studying for a qualification at diploma level.*

diplomacy *noun*

1 managing international relations

ADJ. **careful, shrewd | 'gunboat ... '** *What they could not take by political intrigue they took by 'gunboat diplomacy'* (= threatening military action). **| international | secret | personal** *Churchill's highly personal diplomacy in seeking a meeting with the Russians* **| traditional** *a crisis lying outside the scope of traditional diplomacy* **| preventive | shuttle** *a round of shuttle diplomacy between Washington and Brussels* **| Anglo-French, European, Russian, etc.**

VERB + DIPLOMACY **use** *prefering to use diplomacy rather than force*

DIPLOMACY + VERB **go on** *Behind the scenes a lot of secret diplomacy was going on.*

PREP. **by/through ~** *We must try and resolve this situation through diplomacy rather than conflict.*

2 skill in dealing with people

ADJ. **great | quiet**

VERB + DIPLOMACY **have** *We need someone who has tact and diplomacy.* **| exercise, show, use** *I thought you showed great diplomacy in dealing with him.* **| call for, need, require** *Trying to get the divorced couple to agree calls for a great deal of diplomacy.*

PREP. **by/through ~** *The way forward in this situation is by diplomacy and negotiation.* **| with ~** *She handled the awkward situation with her usual quiet diplomacy.*

diplomat *noun*

ADJ. **senior | experienced, good, skilful, veteran | former, retired | foreign | career, professional | American, British, etc.**

VERB + DIPLOMAT **be, serve as, work as** *He served as a diplomat in Russia before the war.*

direct *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, very** *He asked me some very direct questions.* **| fairly, quite, rather** *Her manner can be rather direct.* **| disconcertingly** *his disconcertingly direct gaze*

direct *verb*

ADV. **mainly, primarily, principally** *Tax cuts have been directed primarily at the better-off.* **| clearly | straight** *He directed the torch straight in her face.* **| specifically**

PREP. **against** *anger directed specifically against ethnic minorities* **| at** *criticism clearly directed at the Labour Party* **| away from** *directing attention away from the real issues* **| onto** *The machine directs light onto a special film.* **| to** *I directed my question to the chairman.* **| towards** *We are directing our efforts towards helping young people.*

direction *noun*

1 where to/from

ADJ. **same** *They were both going in the same direction.* | **different, opposite** | **right, wrong** *Unfortunately, we were going in the wrong direction.* | **general** *I fired in the general direction of the officer's head, and missed.* | **unexpected** *Support came from an unexpected direction.* | **anti-clockwise, clockwise** *Turn the dial in a clockwise direction.* | **downward, upward** *These figures may have to be revised in an upward direction.* | **northerly, southerly, etc.** *The current flows in a south-easterly direction.* | **wind** *When sailing, keep a constant check on changes in wind direction.*

VERB + DIRECTION **take** *Which direction do we have to take?* | **change, reverse** *The wind had changed direction. What happens if you reverse the direction of the current?* | **flow in, go (off) in** | **head in, move in, travel in** *The convoy is moving in the direction of the capital.* | **veer off in** *While he was studying in Paris, his thinking suddenly veered off in a new direction.* | **come from/in** *He was hit by a lorry coming in the opposite direction.* | **face (in)** *I didn't see the accident because I was facing in the opposite direction.* | **glance in, look in, nod in, point in** *She glanced in his direction. 'Look!' she said, pointing in the direction of the coast.* | **nudge sb in, point sb in** (*figurative*) *We have to nudge politicians in the right direction. I can't come with you, but I can point you in the general direction.* | **pull (sb/sth) in** (*often figurative*) *There are different considerations, often pulling in different directions.*

PREP. **from a/the ~** *There was shriek of laughter from the direction of Sarah's room. Let's approach the subject from a different direction.* | **in a/the ~** *The aircraft was flying in a northerly direction.*

PHRASES **the direction of flow/movement/travel** *I prefer to be facing the direction of travel.* | **the direction of sb's gaze** *She followed the direction of his gaze.* | **from/in all/both directions** *The blast sent debris flying in all directions. The road was blocked in both directions.* | **a glance/nod in sb/sth's direction** *People passed by without a glance in her direction.* (*figurative*) *The report gives a brief nod in the direction of green issues before coming down firmly on the side of the market.* | **a sense of direction** *I haven't got much sense of direction.*

2 development

ADJ. **new** *The party must take a new direction if it is to survive.* | **right, wrong** | **clear** *No clear direction in policy can be identified.* | **future** *the debate about the future direction of socialism* | **policy**

VERB + DIRECTION **take** *It is hard to know which direction the Church will take.* | **change** *It's time to change direction and find a new job.* | **go in, move in** *At least things are moving in the right direction now.*

PHRASES **a change of direction** *This was a major change of direction for Britain's foreign policy.* | **a step in the (right/wrong) direction** *The new law is undoubtedly a step in the right direction, but it doesn't go far enough. The first step in this direction will be by way of discussion with the unions.*

3 **purpose**

ADJ. **clear** *Do not let the discussion fragment into a desultory conversation with no clear direction.*

VERB + DIRECTION **be lacking in, lack** *Once again her life felt lacking in direction.*

PHRASES **a sense of direction** *We are looking for somebody with a clear sense of direction.*

4 **instructions**

ADJ. **clear, good, precise** *Isabel's directions are always very precise.* | **stage** *Shakespeare's famous stage direction, 'Exit, pursued by a bear.'*

VERB + DIRECTION **ask for** *Let's stop and ask for directions.* | **give sb** *Can you give me directions for getting to John's?* | **get** *We got directions to the hall from a man in the village.* | **follow** *It's ever so easy to cook. You just follow the directions on the packet.*

PREP. **~ for** *Are there any directions for putting up the tent?* | **~ to** *Can you give me directions to the town centre?*

5 **control/guidance**

ADJ. **clear** *In effective classrooms the teacher provided clear direction.* | **strategic** *the strategic direction of the company* | **spiritual** *The monarch looks to the archbishop for spiritual direction.* | **government** *All transport is under government direction.*

VERB + DIRECTION **give sb, provide (sb with)**

PREP. **under sb's ~** *working under the direction of a senior manager* **| ~ from** *The new workers need direction from a supervisor.* > Note at DIRECTION

directive *noun*

ADJ. **clear** *Don't start anything without a clear directive from management.* **| general | important | draft, proposed | EU, European (Commission/ Union), government, ministerial | policy, political | banking, environmental, etc.**

VERB + DIRECTIVE **issue** *The EU issued a new drinking water directive.* **| adopt, agree (on/upon), approve, sign | comply with, implement** *All companies must comply with the new directive.* **| block, oppose**

DIRECTIVE + VERB **come into force** *A new EU directive on maternity leave will come into force next month.* **| require sth** *The directive requires member states to designate sites of special scientific interest.*

PREP. **in accordance with a/the ~** *They acted in accordance with the latest directive from Brussels.* **| in a/the ~** *The proposals are contained in a European directive on wild birds.* **| under a/the ~** *Private health services will be allowed under the directive.* **| ~ from** *a directive from the European Commission* **| ~ on** *a directive on data protection*

PHRASES **the provisions/terms of a directive**

director *noun*

1 **controls a company/an organization**

ADJ. **company, managing | executive, non-executive | assistant, deputy | commercial, finance, marketing, production, sales**

PHRASES **the board of directors, the post of director** > Note at JOB

2 **of a film/play, etc.**

ADJ. **film, theatre | artistic, musical**

PHRASES **the role of director** *He now felt ready to take on the role of director.* > Note at JOB

directory *noun*

ADJ. **business, shopping, telephone, trade** *I found the company's name in a trade directory.*

VERB + DIRECTORY **consult, look sb/sth up in | compile, create | edit | produce, publish**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Names are listed alphabetically in the directory.* **| ~ of** *a directory of names and numbers*

dirt *noun*

1 **dust/soil/mud**

ADJ. **loose** *She brushed the loose dirt off her coat.* **| ingrained | dog**

QUANT. **speck | streak** *He had streaks of dirt all over his face.* **| layer**

VERB + DIRT **be covered in/with** *His shoes were covered in dirt.* **| brush off, clean off, remove, wash off | show** *The white rug really shows the dirt.*

DIRT + VERB **accumulate** *Dirt had accumulated in the corners of the windows.*

DIRT + NOUN **road, track | floor**

PREP. **in the ~** *children playing in the dirt*

2 **harmful/unpleasant information about sb**

VERB + DIRT **have**

PREP. **~ on** *Do you have any dirt on the new guy?*

PHRASES **dish the dirt** (= tell people unkind/unpleasant things about sb) *She just loves to dish the dirt.*

dirty *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look | get** *Go and play football if you like, but don't get dirty!* **| get sth, make sb/sth** *The soot had made everything dirty. (figurative) He's not frightened of getting his hands dirty* (= doing physical work).

ADV. **extremely, filthy** *(informal)*, **really, very** *Everything in the room was filthy dirty.* **| a bit, rather, slightly**

disability *noun*

ADJ. **severe | permanent | learning, mental, physical** *children who have severe learning disabilities*

VERB + DISABILITY **have | cope with, live with** *learning to live with disability*

DISABILITY + NOUN **movement, organization | discrimination | allowance, pension**

disabled *adj.*

VERBS **be | be born | become | leave sb** *The accident left him badly disabled.*

ADV. **badly, profoundly, seriously, severely, very** *a new home for severely disabled people* **| partially, slightly | chronically, permanently | mentally, physically**

disadvantage *noun*

ADJ. **big, considerable, distinct, grave, great, main, major, manifest, obvious, real, serious, severe** *Lack of qualifications is an obvious disadvantage.* | **minor, slight** | **added, additional, further** | **long-term** | **competitive** *These requirements will have to be standardized if some banks are not to suffer a competitive disadvantage.* | **economic, educational, financial, racial, social** *the problems of racism, racial disadvantage and poverty*

VERB + DISADVANTAGE **experience, have, suffer (from)** *the disadvantage experienced by older people in the workplace The present system has the disadvantage that nobody really understands how it works. Competition has its disadvantages.* | **offset, outweigh** *The scheme's advantages outweigh the disadvantages.* | **overcome, remove** | **avoid** | **feel at a** *There was no reason for her to feel at a disadvantage.* | **place/put sb at a** *The fact that he didn't speak a foreign language put him at a disadvantage.*

PREP. **at a ~** *We were at a distinct disadvantage compared with children from richer families.* | **despite a/the ~** *Despite these disadvantages, many older people maintain an active social life.* | **to sb's ~** *This change in the law will be to the disadvantage of small firms.* | **~ for** *another disadvantage for the night-worker* | **~ in** *There are disadvantages in using this treatment.* | **~ to** *There are disadvantages to all those schemes.*

PHRASES **advantages and disadvantages** *Each plan has its own advantages and disadvantages.*

disadvantaged *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain** *These social groups remain disadvantaged.*

ADV. **badly, extremely, greatly, seriously, severely, very | doubly** *Part-time workers, the majority of whom are women, are doubly disadvantaged.* **| further | slightly | economically, educationally, financially, materially, socially**

PREP. **by** *Many people will be greatly disadvantaged by the new tax system.*

disagree *verb*

ADV. **profoundly, sharply, strongly, vehemently** *The only time we sharply disagreed was over the children's education.* | **completely, entirely, totally** *I disagree totally with this policy.* | **fundamentally**

VERB + DISAGREE **be difficult to, be hard to, can/could hardly** *When I pointed out that it had been her idea in the first place, she could hardly disagree.*

PREP. **about** *Jack and Robert disagree about everything.* | **on** *We disagree on this matter.* | **over** *Ministers disagree over the scale of the changes.* | **with** *I disagree strongly with this idea. It is difficult to disagree with the chairman on this point.*

disagreement *noun*

ADJ. **bitter, considerable, deep, major, serious, sharp, substantial, total, wide** *There is wide disagreement on this issue.* | **minor, slight** | **basic, fundamental** | **continuing** | **internal** *internal disagreements within the party* | **family** | **policy, political**

VERB + DISAGREEMENT **be in, have** *They were in disagreement about the move to Cambridge. The things she said were always in disagreement, with the teacher or another member of the class. They had a disagreement about the best way to get to Manchester.* | **express** *She expressed disagreement with the government's policy.* | **resolve, settle, solve** *How is a basic disagreement of this nature to be resolved?* | **cause, lead to** | **be open to** *This view is subjective and therefore open to disagreement.*

DISAGREEMENT + VERB **arise, occur** *A disagreement arose over who should pay for the trip.* | **exist** *Disagreement exists over the pattern of demand for coal.* | **remain** | **centre around/on sb/sth** *a disagreement centring on the link between crime and unemployment*

PREP. **in ~** *He shook his head in disagreement.* | **~ about/over** *They had a major disagreement over who should clean the car.* | **~ among/amongst, ~ as to** *There is considerable disagreement among archaeologists as to the age of the sculpture.* | **~ between** *a serious disagreement between the two experts* | **~ on** *There is fundamental disagreement on these matters.* | **~ with** *He had a disagreement with his girlfriend.*

PHRASES **an area of disagreement** *There are several areas of disagreement between the two governments.* | **a source of disagreement** *Money was a constant source of disagreement.* | **room/scope for disagreement** *There is plenty of room for disagreement in this controversial area.*

disappear *verb*

ADV. **altogether, completely, entirely | all but, effectively, largely, practically, virtually** *The traditional way of life has all but disappeared.* **| gradually, slowly | overnight, quickly, soon** *He started the treatment and his symptoms disappeared overnight.* **| suddenly | eventually, finally | forever** *A number of species could soon disappear forever.* **| mysteriously, without trace** *Her father disappeared without trace when she was ten.* **| apparently | just, simply** *The plane suddenly just disappeared from the radar screen.*

PREP. **behind** *The sun disappeared behind a cloud.* **| from** *Wildlife is fast disappearing from our countryside.* **| into, through, under, etc.**

PHRASES **disappear from sight/view** *She watched until he had disappeared from view.* **| fast/rapidly disappearing**

disappearance *noun*

ADJ. **abrupt, sudden** *How could he explain his abrupt disappearance from the party?* **| rapid** *the rapid disappearance of our countryside* **| gradual | complete, total | virtual | apparent | mysterious**

VERB + DISAPPEARANCE **lead to** *Modern farming practice has led to the virtual disappearance of this bird.* **| investigate** *Essex police are investigating the mysterious disappearance of two young men.* **| explain**

PREP. **~ from** *the disappearance of money from my desk*

disappointed *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | leave sb** *The decision left them very disappointed.*

ADV. **bitterly, deeply, desperately, extremely, greatly, hugely, really, sadly, sorely, terribly, very** *I was bitterly disappointed when I didn't get into university. If you think I'll agree to that, then you're going to be sadly disappointed.* **| almost** *He seemed almost disappointed when I agreed to go.* **| a bit, a little, mildly, pretty, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | clearly, obviously | naturally | oddly** *After convincing myself that the result didn't matter, I felt oddly disappointed when we lost.* **| visibly**

PREP. **about** *I'm disappointed about John not coming.* **| at** *They're disappointed at the result.* **| by** *I was slightly disappointed by her attitude.* **| in** *He's disappointed in his daughter.* **| with** *We're disappointed with the new car.*

disappointing *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | find sth**

ADV. **bitterly, deeply, desperately, extremely, hugely, really, terribly, very** *The film was terribly disappointing.* **| a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat**

disappointment *noun*

1 **sadness because sth has not happened, etc.**

ADJ. **bitter, considerable, deep, great, intense, sharp | slight | obvious**

VERB + DISAPPOINTMENT **be aware of, feel** *He was aware of sharp disappointment and betrayal. She couldn't quite conceal the deep disappointment she felt.* **| express, voice | betray** *His voice betrayed his disappointment.* **| bite back, conceal, cover, hide, mask** *He bit back his disappointment. Her laugh covered her disappointment.* **| feign** *He feigned disappointment. Secretly, he was mightily relieved.* **| avoid** *To avoid disappointment, we recommend you book your holiday early.* **| be doomed to** *The scheme was doomed to disappointment.* **| share** *I know you will share our disappointment at the lack of progress on this issue.*

DISAPPOINTMENT + VERB **show** *He let his disappointment show.* **| grip sb, surge through sb** *Disappointment gripped her.*

PREP. **to your ~** *To her disappointment, they didn't go through Oxford but skirted round it.* **| ~ at** *Paul couldn't hide his disappointment at not being asked to the party.* **| ~ over** *Campaigners have voiced disappointment over the government's decision.*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of disappointment, tears of disappointment**

2 **sb/sth that is disappointing**

ADJ. **big, bitter, considerable, crushing, grave, great, huge, major, sad, serious, severe, terrible** *I'm afraid I was a sad disappointment to my mother.* **| slight | inevitable | personal**

VERB + DISAPPOINTMENT **have** *She's had a lot of disappointments in the past.* **| come as** *This news has come as a disappointment to local business leaders.*

DISAPPOINTMENT + VERB **come, follow sth** *His second disappointment came last year when he failed to get selected for the first team.* **| await sb** *A terrible disappointment awaited them.*

PREP. **~ for** *The cancellation of the tour was a great disappointment for the many fans of the band.* **| ~ to** *It was a big disappointment to us when she left.*

disapproval *noun*

ADJ. **strong** *Several countries have expressed their strong disapproval of the law.* **| faint, mild | widespread | official | public** *The decision met with widespread public disapproval.* **| moral, social**

QUANT. **note** *There was more than a note of disapproval in her voice.*

VERB + DISAPPROVAL **express, mark, register, show** *To mark his disapproval he refused to go to the wedding. Her face registered her disapproval. The students are showing their disapproval by refusing to attend lectures.* **| feel, sense** *Even at this distance she could sense his disapproval.*

PREP. **in ~** *Her lip curled in disapproval.* **| with ~** *Harold noted the boy's earring with disapproval.* **| ~ at** *She was stiff with disapproval at the notion.* **| ~ of** *his disapproval of Wallace's conduct*

PHRASES **a chorus/roar of disapproval** *There was a chorus of disapproval from the crowd.* **| an expression/a frown/a look of disapproval** *Seeing the look of disapproval on the doctor's face, I put out my cigarette.* **| a murmur/sniff of disapproval** *Dr Ali gave a great sniff of disapproval.*

disapprove *verb*

ADV. **strongly | thoroughly**

PREP. **of** *He strongly disapproved of the way his daughter was behaving.*

disapproving *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become**

ADV. **deeply, very | mildly, quite, rather, slightly | coldly** *her coldly disapproving smile*

disarmament *noun*

ADJ. **nuclear** *They campaigned for nuclear disarmament.* **| international, multilateral** *The party supports multilateral disarmament.* **| unilateral**

VERB + DISARMAMENT **campaign for | support**

DISARMAMENT + NOUN **negotiations, talks, treaty**

disarray *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total | some | financial**

VERB + DISARRAY **fall into** *His personal life fell into disarray when his wife left him.* **| throw sth into** *Our plans were thrown into disarray by the rail strike.*

PREP. **in ~** *The meeting broke up in disarray.* **| ~ within** *a period of disarray within the National Party*

PHRASES **a state of disarray**

disaster *noun*

1 bad event/situation

ADJ. **awful, big, dreadful, great, major, terrible, worst** *the biggest disaster in British mining history* | **near** *a near disaster in the city centre* | **imminent, impending** *It seemed that nothing could prevent the impending disaster. Everyone had the feeling that disaster was imminent.* | **potential** | **global, national** | **natural** *earthquakes, floods and other natural disasters* | **man-made** | **air, ecological, environmental, flood, military, mining, nuclear, rail** *fears of a nuclear disaster* | **business, economic, financial** | **personal**

VERB + DISASTER **bring, cause, lead to, spell** *One person's mistakes can bring disaster to someone else. attempts to find out what caused the disaster The drought spelt economic disaster for the country.* | **avert, avoid, prevent, save sb/sth from, stave off, ward off** *A major disaster was averted only just in time. What can be done to ward off environmental disaster?* | **predict, prophesy** *Independent analysts in the market predicted disaster.* | **court, invite** *It's courting disaster to go into the mountains without proper weatherproof clothing.* | **be heading for** *his firm belief that the whole world was heading for disaster* | **face** *In the last match of the series England were facing disaster.* | **suffer** *There are many who have suffered personal disasters but managed to rebuild their lives.* | **survive** *It was a miracle any of the passengers or crew survived the worst air disaster in Portugal for 20 years.* | **end in** *The show ended in disaster when the tent collapsed.*

DISASTER + VERB **happen, occur, strike** *finding out why the disaster occurred Everything was going fine. Then, without warning, disaster struck.* | **befall sb/sth, hit sb/sth, strike sb/sth** *the economic disaster that befell the country* | **loom, threaten** *We could all see that disaster loomed for the company.*

DISASTER + NOUN **area, zone** *Only rescue workers are allowed into the disaster area.* | **relief** | **victim**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *In a disaster everyone needs to keep calm.*

PHRASES **a disaster waiting to happen** *Any one of these nuclear plants may be a disaster waiting to happen.* | **in the aftermath of a disaster** *In the aftermath of the disaster people were too shocked to give a clear picture of what had happened.* | **a recipe for disaster** *Letting her organize the party is a recipe for disaster* (= sth that is likely to go badly wrong). **| a victim of a disaster** *providing help for the victims of the disaster*

2 a failure

ADJ. absolute, complete, real, total, unmitigated *The play was a complete disaster from beginning to end.* **| economic, financial, social** *Buying that house turned out to be a financial disaster.*

VERB + DISASTER prove, turn out to be *High-rise buildings proved a social disaster.*

disastrous *adj.*

VERBS be, prove | become

ADV. absolutely, quite, utterly *The policy was absolutely disastrous for the economy.* **| fairly, pretty | potentially | ecologically, electorally, financially**

disbelief *noun*

ADJ. **complete, outright, total, utter | widespread | open | mock** *He raised his eyebrows in mock disbelief.* **| amused, astonished, furious, horrified, shocked, stunned**

VERB + DISBELIEF **feel** *I felt disbelief first of all, then outrage.* **| express** *The president publicly expressed his disbelief at what had happened.* **| hide | greet sth with** *My stories were greeted with disbelief.* **| shake your head in, stare/watch in | suspend** *If you don't mind suspending your disbelief, you should enjoy this movie.*

PREP. **in ~** *We could only watch in disbelief as the car rolled into the water.* **| to your ~** *To my horrified disbelief, the animal was running towards me.* **| ~ at** *Hilary shook her head in disbelief at the news.*

PHRASES **an expression/a look of disbelief** *with looks of utter disbelief on their faces* | **suspension of disbelief** *The film version requires greater suspension of disbelief than the book.*

disc *noun*

1 **computer disk > See DISK**

2 **CD/record**

ADJ. **vinyl** *I've got an old vinyl disc of her singing.*

VERB + DISC **play | hear, listen to | produce, record**

PREP. **on (a/the) ~** *He is one of the greatest opera singers on disc. The Prokofiev sonata comes first on the disc.* **| ~ of** *a disc of the two Mozart piano quartets* > See CD

3 **part of the body**

ADJ. **prolapsed, slipped** *He's in bed with a slipped disc.*

VERB + DISC **slip** *She's slipped a disc.*

discard *verb*

ADV. **completely, entirely** *These ideas have now been completely discarded.*

PREP. **in favour of** *Older managers have been discarded in favour of younger people.*

discern *verb*

ADV. **clearly, easily** *She could clearly discern a figure walking up towards the house.* **| dimly, just**

VERB + DISCERN **be able to, can/could | be difficult to, be hard to | be possible to**

discernible *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **clearly, easily, readily** *The difference between the two is readily discernible.* **| just | barely, scarcely** *Her face was barely discernible in the gloom.*

discharge *noun*

1 **substance**

ADJ. **thick | nasal, vaginal, etc. | effluent, industrial, sewage, waste | electrical, radioactive** *thunder and lightning caused by an electrical discharge*

PREP. **~ from** *a thick discharge from the nose*

2 **from court**

ADJ. **absolute | conditional**

VERB + DISCHARGE **give** *He was given an absolute discharge but banned from driving for 12 months.*

discharge *verb*

1 **from army/navy, etc.**

ADV. **dishonourably, honourably**

PREP. **from** *He was found guilty and dishonourably discharged from the army.*

2 **from prison/court**

ADV. **conditionally** *He was conditionally discharged after admitting the theft.*

3 **gas/liquid**

ADV. **directly**

PREP. **from, into** *Raw sewage was discharged from the treatment plant directly into the river.*

disciple *noun*

ADJ. **ardent** *She was an ardent disciple of Freud.*

VERB + DISCIPLE **become | make** *He commanded them to go out and make disciples of all nations.*

discipline *noun*

1 **controlling behaviour**

ADJ. **effective, firm, good, strong** *We need better discipline in our schools.* | **harsh, iron, rigid, strict** *strict military discipline* | **lax, poor** *Discipline was too lax.* | **staff, team** | **military, naval, party, prison, school, work**

VERB + DISCIPLINE **enforce, exercise, exert, impose** *the discipline that the party exercises over its members* | **keep, maintain** *The teacher was unable to maintain discipline.* | **accept, submit to** *They submitted to the discipline imposed by their leaders.* | **have** *The school was criticized for having very poor discipline.* | **lack** *Modern schools lack discipline.* | **tighten** *The new headmaster tightened discipline in the school.* | **relax** | **restore**

PHRASES **a breach of discipline** *It's unfair to dismiss somebody for a single breach of discipline.* | **a breakdown of discipline** *a breakdown of discipline in the classroom* | **a lack of discipline**

2 **controlling yourself**

ADJ. **good, great, useful, valuable** *It is good discipline to learn to delegate.* | **strict** | **personal** | **mental, spiritual** | **business, commercial, financial, fiscal, industrial, market, monetary** *The chancellor has stabilized the economy through strict fiscal discipline.*

VERB + DISCIPLINE **have** *He'll never get anywhere working for himself?he's got no discipline.* | **show** | **lack** | **demand, require, take** *It takes great discipline to learn a musical instrument.*

PHRASES **a lack of discipline**

3 **subject of study**

ADJ. **core, main, major** *Students are to be tested on the three core disciplines: maths, English and science.* | **distinct, independent** *When did sociology emerge as a distinct discipline?* | **established, traditional** | **subject** | **academic, intellectual** *They established psychology as an academic discipline.* | **professional** | **humanities, science/scientific**

PREP. **across ~s** *There is a lack of communication across disciplines* (= between teachers and students of different subjects). **| within a/the ~** *Within a discipline there may be more than one school of thought.*

PHRASES **a range of disciplines** *The university offers a wide range of disciplines.*

disclose *verb*

ADV. **fully** *He had not fully disclosed all his business dealings.* **| publicly**

VERB + DISCLOSE **be obliged to, be required to, must** *Members of Parliament are required to disclose all their financial interests.* **| be reluctant to | fail to, refuse to** *He failed to disclose all the information.*

PREP. **to** *She was accused of disclosing confidential material to a competitor.*

discomfort *noun*

1 **slight pain**

ADJ. **acute, considerable, great, severe, growing** *He became conscious of a growing discomfort.* **| mild, minor, slight** *You may experience some slight discomfort after the operation.* **| bodily, physical**

QUANT. **amount, degree**

VERB + DISCOMFORT **complain of, experience, feel, get, have, suffer** *Some of the patients complained of discomfort. I didn't have much discomfort after the operation.* **| cause | ease, lessen, reduce, relieve** *Not eating late at night should help to relieve the discomfort.*

PREP. **in ~** *He appeared to be in great discomfort.* **| with/without ~** *You should be able to drive without discomfort after about two weeks.*

2 **embarrassment**

VERB + DISCOMFORT **cause** *The revelations caused some discomfort to the president.* **| enjoy** *Paula smiled, enjoying her sister's discomfort.*

DISCOMFORT + VERB **grow, increase**

disconcerting *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | find sth**

ADV. **highly, very | a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** *I found all that noise rather disconcerting.*

discontent *noun*

ADJ. **general, widespread | growing, increasing | popular, public** *Public discontent with the economy remained at a high level.* **| political, social**

VERB + DISCONTENT **breed, cause, give rise to, lead to, provoke** *The higher tax provoked widespread discontent among the poor.* **| fuel** *Overcrowded conditions fuelled discontent and facilitated the spread of radical ideas.* **| feel** *the discontent that many people felt* **| seethe with** *The country was seething with discontent and the threat of revolution was real.* **| express, voice** *The peasants expressed their discontent.* **| stem** *The reforms failed to stem social discontent.*

DISCONTENT + VERB **grow, spread | simmer** *Discontent simmered and then came to a head with the nationalist protests.* **| come to a head**

PREP. **~ among, ~ about/at/over** *discontent among students about the lack of funding for education* **| ~ with** *growing discontent with the government* **| ~ within** *There were reports of growing discontent within the army.*

PHRASES **a cause/source of discontent, murmurs/rumbles/rumblings of discontent**

discord *noun*

ADJ. **internal | family, marital**

QUANT. **hint, note** *A note of discord surfaced during the leaders' meeting.*

VERB + DISCORD **avoid**

PHRASES **a source of discord** *The contrasts between rich and poor nations are a source of discord.*

discount *noun*

ADJ. **big, generous, good, high, huge, large, massive, substantial | low | special** *There is a special discount for staff.* **| staff, trade** *They offer a trade discount to builders.* **| cash, volume** *We offer a 5% cash discount for prompt payment.*

VERB + DISCOUNT **allow sb, give (sb), offer (sb)** *They only give you a discount if you buy more than a certain amount.* **| get, obtain, receive | be entitled to, qualify for** *If you collect ten bonus points, you will be entitled to a discount.* **| negotiate** *It is important to negotiate a good discount and obtain books on approval.*

DISCOUNT + NOUN **card, voucher** *Members are given a discount card which entitles them to 20% off.* **| scheme, system | price, rate | house, shop, store** (= that regularly sells good at a discount)

PREP. **at a ~** *Tickets are available to members at a discount.* **| ~ of** *a discount of 30%* **| ~ on** *Customers are allowed a discount on orders over £500.*

PHRASES **a rate of discount**

discourage *verb*

ADV. **actively, firmly, positively, strongly** *Smoking is actively discouraged in the university.*

VERB + DISCOURAGE **try to**

PREP. **from** *We tried to discourage him from resigning.*

PHRASES **be easily discouraged** *Children are easily discouraged from reading.*

discover *verb*

ADV. **quickly, soon** *We soon discovered we'd been mistaken.* **| suddenly | subsequently | eventually**

VERB + DISCOVER **be amazed to, be astonished to, be astounded to, be a surprise to, be surprised to** *She was surprised to discover he was perfectly capable around the house.* **| be alarmed to, be appalled to, be dismayed to, be horrified to, be a shock to, be shocked to** *It was a terrible shock to discover the full extent of the problem.* **| be delighted to, be fascinated to, be intrigued to | be fascinating to** *It would be fascinating to discover more about the town's history.* **| be difficult to | be possible to | aim to | attempt to, try to** *trying to discover the truth* **| be able/unable to**

PHRASES **an attempt to discover sth, newly/recently discovered** *recently discovered evidence* **| only to discover sth** *I arrived at the campsite, only to discover that it was closed for the winter.* **| an opportunity to discover sth, waiting to be discovered** *There's great talent out there just waiting to be discovered.*

discovery *noun*

ADJ. **amazing, big, exciting, great, important, major, remarkable, significant, startling, surprising, unexpected** *potentially the biggest archaeological discovery in Norway for fifty years* **| awful, chilling, grim, terrible** *the awful discovery that he had been deceiving her* **| latest, new, recent | accidental, chance** *All these were chance discoveries made by scientists engaged in other investigations.* **| archaeological, medical, scientific | personal** *The story tells of a man's journey of personal discovery up an African river.*

VERB + DISCOVERY **make** *New scientific discoveries are being made all the time.* **| lead to** *Their work led to some important medical discoveries.* **| await** *There may be many unexpected treasures awaiting discovery.*

PREP. **~ by** *a discovery by a French scientist* **| ~ of** *the discovery of oil in the North Sea*

PHRASES **a process of discovery, a journey/voyage of discovery** *(figurative) To tour Sri Lanka is to take a voyage of discovery through a land of endless variety.*

discredit *noun*

ADJ. **great**

VERB + DISCREDIT **bring, reflect** *By telling lies he brought discredit upon Parliament. Your failure reflects no discredit upon you?you did your best.* **| bring sth into, do sb** *She brought the whole system into discredit. It does us great discredit to treat foreigners so badly.*

PREP. **to sb's ~** *His selfish decision is greatly to his discredit.* **| ~ to** *They were a discredit to their country.*

discrepancy *noun*

ADJ. **glaring, great, huge, large, major, marked, material, serious, substantial, wide | minor, slight, small | apparent**

VERB + DISCREPANCY **account for, explain** *How do you explain the apparent discrepancies between the money and the receipts?* **| find, note, notice, observe, perceive** *She failed to notice the discrepancy between the name on the cheque and the name on the driving licence.* **| ignore**

DISCREPANCY + VERB **exist | arise, occur**

PREP. **~ between** *Discrepancies occurred between the written and electronic records.* **| ~ in** *There were wide discrepancies in the evidence.*

discretion *noun*

1 **freedom to make decisions**

ADJ. **considerable, full, greater, more, wide | absolute, complete, unfettered** *The school governors have absolute discretion over which pupils they admit.* **| executive, judicial, management/managerial, personal, professional** *The president used his executive discretion to pardon the two men.*

VERB + DISCRETION **exercise, have, use** *The police exercise discretion in the area of minor traffic offences.* **| give sb** *They would like local authorities to be given greater discretion as to how the money is spent.* **| leave sth to** *'Do you want me to do the job myself or hire a photographer?' 'I leave it to your discretion.'*

PREP. **at sb's ~** *Bail is granted at the discretion of the court. There is no service charge and tipping is at your discretion.* **| ~ about** *We have discretion about how much to charge.* **| ~ as to** *She has considerable discretion as to how the money is spent.* **| ~ over** *giving judges more discretion over sentencing*

PHRASES **the exercise/operation of discretion**

2 **being discreet**

ADJ. **great, the utmost**

VERB + DISCRETION **call for, need, require** *This case calls for the utmost discretion.* **| rely on** *This is confidential, but I know that I can rely on your discretion.*

PREP. **with ~** *to conduct enquiries with discretion.*

PHRASES **a lack of discretion, a need for discretion**

discriminate *verb*

ADV. **positively | unfairly**

PREP. **against** *The present law discriminates unfairly against women.* **| in favour of** *discriminating positively in favour of people from ethnic minorities* **| on (the) grounds of** *Workers must avoid discriminating on the grounds of race or sex.*

discrimination *noun*

1 **treating a person/group unfairly**

ADJ. **age, class, gender, race/racial, religious, sex/sexual | widespread** *There is widespread discrimination against doctors of Asian origin.* **| active, blatant, direct, explicit, overt** *evidence of active discrimination against black workers* **| covert, indirect | positive, reverse** *positive discrimination in favour of disadvantaged racial groups* **| illegal, unlawful** *Overt sex or race discrimination is illegal.* **| employment, job | government, institutional/institutionalized** *institutionalized discrimination against women within the police force*

QUANT. **level** *Levels of discrimination against recent immigrants are high.*

VERB + DISCRIMINATION **amount to, constitute** *Racist remarks by an employer to an employee can amount to unlawful discrimination.* **| experience, face, suffer (from)** *Many disabled people suffer discrimination at work.* **| practise | allege** *law suits alleging discrimination* **| be opposed to, combat, fight | ban, end, forbid, outlaw, prohibit, stop**

DISCRIMINATION + VERB **occur** *The discrimination occurred at the shortlisting stage, not the interviews.*

PREP. **~ against** *discrimination against women* **| ~ by** *Discrimination by age is as vicious as discrimination by race.* **| ~ in favour of** *Some firms practise discrimination in favour of older people.* **| ~ on the grounds of** *It's time we banned discrimination on the grounds of age.*

PHRASES **a victim of discrimination**

2 **judgement**

ADJ. **great | careful, fine**

VERB + DISCRIMINATION **make** *Young children find it difficult to make fine discriminations.* **| show** *She showed great discrimination in rejecting the poor quality teas.*

PREP. **~ between** *discrimination between right and wrong*

discuss *verb*

ADV. **exhaustively, fully, in detail, thoroughly** *The plan was discussed in great detail.* **| at length, endlessly, extensively** *These ideas will be discussed at greater length in the next chapter.* **| briefly | further | openly** *This problem has never been discussed openly before.* **| informally | critically, intelligently** *Pupils should be encouraged to discuss critically the information they are given.*

VERB + DISCUSS **convene (sth) to, meet to** *to convene a conference to discuss the country's political future The committee meets regularly to discuss these issues.* **| want to, wish to, would like to | refuse to** *He refused to discuss it with me.* **| be able to | be prepared to, be willing to** *I'm not prepared to discuss this on the phone.*

PREP. **with** *I'd like to discuss this matter with you later.*

PHRASES **an opportunity to discuss sth, widely discussed** *The proposals have been widely discussed in the media.*

discussion *noun*

ADJ. **detailed, full, in-depth, lengthy, long** *They had a detailed discussion of the issues.* | **brief** | **considerable** *After considerable discussion, they decided to accept our offer.* | **initial, preliminary** | **further** *The plan was agreed without further discussion.* | **general, wide-ranging** *a wide-ranging discussion on women's rights* | **public** | **formal, informal** *After the lecture there will be an opportunity for informal discussion.* | **bilateral, group, one-to-one, round-table** *a series of bilateral discussions between Israel and neighbouring states Women were asked to take part in small group discussions.* | **candid, frank, open** | **animated, heated, intense, lively** *a heated discussion about politics* | **serious** | **reasoned** | **useful** | **inconclusive**

VERB + DISCUSSION **have, hold** *We had a long discussion about the plans for next year. The two governments are to hold discussions on the border issue.* | **enter into** *We are hoping to enter into discussions with leaders of the prison service.* | **be involved in, join in, participate in, take part in** *They refused to take part in the discussions.* | **generate, initiate, provoke, stimulate** *These latest findings have generated a lot of discussion of the moral issues involved.* | **set up** *ways of setting up discussions between children to explore each other's viewpoints* | **lead, open, start** *The discussion was led by the director of marketing. Who is going to start the discussion?* | **bring sth up for, come up for, open sth up for** *The issue should come up for discussion at the climate change conference. The topic must be opened up for general discussion.* | **open up** *We need to open up a discussion on the basic aspects of the theory.* | **confine** *I wish to confine the discussion to income taxation.* | **sum up** *Let us sum up the discussion so far.* | **break off, conclude, end** *The government has broken off discussions with the unions. We decided to end the discussion before it got out of hand.* | **defer, postpone** | **follow up** *Discussion should be followed up by a written report.*

DISCUSSION + VERB **take place** *Discussions have taken place between the two leaders.* | **centre on** *Discussion centred on the contribution different groups would make to the project.* | **break out, ensue** *An intense discussion broke out about the importance of intuition. Adam raised the issue of multimedia applications and much useful discussion ensued.* | **continue**

DISCUSSION + NOUN **group** | **document**

PREP. **for ~** *the subject for discussion* | **during/in a/the ~** *During our discussions we raised many issues that need deeper consideration.* | **in ~ with** *The company had* *been in discussion with companies in Austria, Italy and Greece.* **| under ~** *Plans for a new bypass are still under discussion.* **| ~ about/on** *a discussion about reform of the health service* **| ~ as to** *Discussion continues as to the relative merits of the different schemes.* **| ~ between** *discussions between management and union officials* **| ~ of** *a discussion of the issues involved* **| ~ with** *discussions with the government*

PHRASES **a basis for discussion** *We can use the draft document as a basis for discussion.* **| a forum for discussion** *The group provides a forum for the discussion of ideas.* **| the outcome of a discussion** *The outcome of the discussions is a decision to proceed with Phase 2 of the programme.* **| a subject/topic for/of discussion > Special page at MEETING**

disdain *noun*

ADJ. **great | utter | obvious | amused | cool, glacial | aristocratic, haughty**

VERB + DISDAIN **feel, have** *She did not hesitate to express the disdain that she felt.* **| express, show** *Judges sometimes show great disdain for the law.* **| look on/upon sb/sth with, treat sb/sth with** *Traditionalists look upon the changes with disdain.*

PREP. **in ~** *She turned her head away in disdain.* **| with ~** *Why does he treat his father with such disdain?* **| ~ for** *He has an aristocratic disdain for money.*

PHRASES **an expression/a look of disdain**

disease *noun*

ADJ. **common | obscure, rare |** dangerous, serious | mild | **chronic | acute | degenerative |** deadly, fatal, incurable, killer, **terminal** *fears of a new killer disease* **| curable | preventable | communicable, contagious, infectious | non-communicable | congenital, hereditary, inherited | childhood** *childhood diseases such as mumps and chicken pox* **| tropical | insect-borne, water-borne | occupational | bowel, (coronary) heart, liver, etc. | mental | sexually transmitted, social, venereal** *patients suffering from venereal disease* **| circulatory, respiratory | Alzheimer's, Crohn's, etc.**

QUANT. **outbreak** *fears of an outbreak of Legionnaire's disease*

VERB + DISEASE **have, suffer from** *He has a serious lung disease.* **| catch, contract, get** *You can't catch the disease just from physical contact. She got a rare liver disease when she was only twenty.* **| die from/of** *Children are still dying in their millions Tobacco lowers the body's resistance to disease.* **| the risk of disease** *the risk of coronary heart disease* **| the spread of (a) disease** *measures to prevent the spread of the disease* **| the symptoms of a disease, the treatment for/of a disease > Special page at ILLNESS** *from preventable diseases.* **| cause** *a disease caused by a vitamin deficiency* **| carry, pass on, spread, transmit** *the ticks that carry the disease Such unhygienic practices spread disease. The disease is transmitted by mosquitoes.* **| diagnose | treat | combat, fight** *The government must take action to fight this deadly disease.* **| control, manage** *new drugs which help to control the disease* **| cure | prevent** *It's better to prevent disease by ensuring a clean water supply.* **| eradicate, stamp out, wipe out** *The disease has been eradicated from the world.*

DISEASE + VERB **spread** *They want to stop the disease spreading.* **| afflict sb, strike sb | kill sb** *The disease has killed 500 people so far this year.*

PREP. **with a/the ~** *the number of people with this disease* **| ~ of** *a disease of the digestive system*

PHRASES **a cure for a disease, the incidence of (a) disease** *the overall incidence of disease in the world* **| a patient with/sufferer from a disease** *Sufferers from Alzheimer's disease can't cope at home.* **| resistance to disease**

disfigure *verb* **be disfigured**

ADV. **badly, grossly** *He was badly disfigured by the accident.* **| permanently**

disgrace *noun*

1 **loss of respect**

VERB + DISGRACE **fall into** *Their father fell into disgrace and lost his business.* **| bring** *His crime had brought disgrace upon his whole family.* **| be sent away/home/off in** *She was sent home from the Olympics in disgrace.*

PREP. **in ~** *He's in disgrace for having left his room in a mess.*

PHRASES **there's no disgrace in sth** *There's no disgrace in being poor.*

2 **disgraceful person/thing**

ADJ. **absolute, utter** *This room is an absolute disgrace* (= because it is very dirty/ untidy)*!* **| national, public** *The state of our hospitals is a national disgrace.*

PREP. **~ to** *The filthy streets are a disgrace to the town.*

disgraceful *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **absolutely, quite, utterly** *There's litter everywhere. It's absolutely disgraceful.*

disguise *noun*

VERB + DISGUISE **adopt, put on, wear** *She adopted an elaborate disguise to help her pass through the town unrecognized.* **| see through** *We all saw through his disguise immediately.*

PREP. **in ~** *The star travelled in disguise.*

disguise *verb*

ADV. **cleverly, cunningly** *She was cleverly disguised as a policewoman.*

VERB + DISGUISE **cannot/could not | try to**

PREP. **from** *You cannot disguise what you are doing from your family.*

PHRASES **an attempt to disguise sth** *He made no attempt to disguise his liking for her.* **| heavily disguised** *speaking in a heavily disguised voice* **| barely/thinly disguised** *In her speech she made several thinly disguised attacks on the president.*

disgust *noun*

ADJ. **great | utter | obvious** *Mr Haynes shook his head in obvious disgust and walked off.* **| public**

VERB + DISGUST **feel | express, show | hide** *trying to hide the disgust that she felt* **| fill sb with** *Decent people were filled with disgust for whoever committed the crimes.* **| turn/walk away in** *He threw her one look, then turned away in disgust.* **| shake your head in, wrinkle (up) your nose in**

PREP. **in ~** *Marion threw down the book in disgust.* **| with ~** *They both looked with disgust at the men.* **| ~ at** *I couldn't find the words to express my disgust at his actions.* **| ~ over** *expressions of public disgust over the affair* **| ~ with** *People are showing their disgust with the existing regime.*

PHRASES **an exclamation/a snort of disgust** *He gave a snort of disgust.* **| an expression/a gesture/a grimace/a look of disgust, a feeling/sense of disgust, much to your disgust** *Much to his disgust, he found himself sharing a carriage with a noisy young family.*

disgusted *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look | become**

ADV. **really | absolutely, quite, thoroughly, totally | rather, slightly | visibly** *She looked visibly disgusted.*

PREP. **at** *I'm quite disgusted at the way he's treated you.* **| by** *I was absolutely disgusted by the whole business.* **| with** *I was thoroughly disgusted with her behaviour.*

disgusting *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, smell, sound, taste** *That soup tastes disgusting!* **| find sth** *I find his behaviour disgusting.*

ADV. **really | absolutely, quite** *I think the way she's treated him is absolutely disgusting.* **| pretty, rather** *He's got some rather disgusting habits.*

dish *noun*

1 **container**

ADJ. **deep | flat, shallow | empty | baking, cooking, roasting, serving | fireproof, heatproof, ovenproof | china, glass, metal, silver | casserole, gratin, pie, souffle, soup | butter, food, soap, vegetable** *your pet's food dish*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Arrange the chicken and salad in a serving dish.*

2 **the dishes: plates, bowls, etc.**

ADJ. **clean | dirty, unwashed** *The dirty breakfast dishes were still in the sink when we got home.* **| breakfast**

VERB + DISH **do, wash** *It's your turn to do the dishes.* **| dry** *He dried the dishes and put them away.* **| put away**

3 **type of food**

ADJ. **main, side** *Serve one or two main dishes with a choice of salads and nibbles.* **| favourite** *Do you have a favourite dish?* **| delicious, tasty, wonderful | elaborate | simple** *a simple dish, beautifully prepared* **| classic, traditional | savoury, sweet | spiced/spicy | cold, hot | local, international, national, regional** *The national dish is ‘bigos’?hunter's stew.* **| Chinese, French, etc. | vegetarian | cheese, egg, fish, meat, pasta, rice, seafood, vegetable** *Goulash is a meat dish.* **| breakfast, lunch, supper** *Kedgeree makes a wonderful supper dish.*

VERB + DISH **cook, make, prepare** *She cooked us a delicious French dish with pork and tomatoes.* **| serve** *a restaurant that serves traditional Indian dishes* **| recommend | sample, try** *They sampled all the local dishes.*

PHRASES **the dish of the day** *I can recommend the chef's dish of the day.* > Special page at FOOD

dishonest *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | consider sth, regard sth as** *What they are doing is not considered dishonest.*

ADV. **very | downright** *I think he's downright dishonest!* **| rather, slightly | basically, fundamentally**

dishwasher *noun*

VERB + DISHWASHER **load, stack | empty | run** *It wastes energy to run the dishwasher half empty.*

DISHWASHER + NOUN **detergent, powder, salt**

PHRASES **dishwasher proof/safe** *Are these glasses dishwasher safe?*

disillusioned *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become, get, grow**

ADV. **extremely, very | completely, thoroughly, totally, utterly | increasingly | rather | sadly** *If the king had hoped for peace, he was to be sadly disillusioned.*

PREP. **by** *They felt bitter and disillusioned by the decision.* **| with** *Later in life he grew rather disillusioned with communism.*

disillusionment *noun*

ADJ. **general, public, widespread | growing**

VERB + DISILLUSIONMENT **cause**

PREP. **~ among** *causing widespread disillusionment among young people* **| ~ with** *There is growing public disillusionment with the present system of government.*

disintegrate *verb*

ADV. **completely** *The plane completely disintegrated on impact.* **| slowly** *The social fabric of this country is slowly disintegrating.*

VERB + DISINTEGRATE **begin to** *The bag had already begun to disintegrate.*

PREP. **into** *The country has disintegrated into separate states.* **| under** *He was a lawyer who had disintegrated under the strain.*

disintegration *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total | gradual** *the gradual disintegration of traditional values* **| rapid | political, social** *indicators of social disintegration such as divorce, suicide and petty theft*

VERB + DISINTEGRATION **lead to, result in** *This defeat led to the disintegration of the empire.*

disk *noun*

ADJ. **computer | hard | floppy | master** *The master disk can be duplicated as many times as required.* **| back-up | program | server, system | blank | laser, magnetic, optical | high density**

VERB + DISK **insert, put in** *Insert the disk into the drive slot.* **| remove, take out | format | read** *The computer reads the disk.* **| copy, duplicate** *I'll copy the disk into a file.* **| copy/save (sth) to, save sth on** *The program is set up so that you automatically save to disk every 15 minutes. Save the document to disk before closing it. The information can be saved on a disk.* **| wipe** *If you wipe that old disk, we can use it again.* **| hold sth on, store sth on** *The records will be stored on the computer's hard disk.*

DISK + VERB **contain sth** *The disk contains the program you'll need.* **| hold sth** *Each disk holds 700 MB.*

DISK + NOUN **capacity, space** *I'm running out of disk space on my computer.* **| drive | storage**

PREP. **from ~** *The information required can then be retrieved from disk.* **| on (a/the) ~** *Have you got the file on disk? the data on the disk* **| onto ~** *It is safest to save your design onto disk.* **| to ~** *You simply download the pages to disk.* > Special page at COMPUTER

dislike *noun*

1 **feeling of not liking sb/sth**

ADJ. **acute, deep, great, hearty, intense, real, strong, violent** *Several committee members expressed their intense dislike of the chairman.* **| growing | particular | obvious, marked | instant | instinctive | open | active** *She threw him a look of active dislike.* **| cold** *He glanced at her with cold dislike.* **| pathological | personal | mutual** *In spite of their mutual dislike and hostility, they quite often worked together.*

VERB + DISLIKE **feel, have** *She felt dislike rather than sympathy as he told his story. My grandfather has a great dislike of long hair on boys.* **| express, show | take** *I took an instant dislike to my new colleague.*

PREP. **with ~** *Sonia stared at me with dislike and distrust.* **| ~ for** *She had a deep dislike for Robert's wife.*

PHRASES **a feeling/look of dislike**

2 **sth you do not like**

PHRASES **your likes and dislikes** *I've told you all my likes and dislikes.*

dislike *verb*

ADV. **cordially, greatly, heartily, intensely, positively, really, strongly** *She disliked her boss intensely.* **| particularly | simply** *He simply disliked working with committees and avoided it whenever possible.* **| instinctively | actively** *There are very few foods that I actively dislike.* **| clearly, obviously**

PHRASES **be universally/widely disliked** *The new teacher was universally disliked.*

disloyalty *noun*

VERB + DISLOYALTY **show | accuse sb of** *Her friends accused her of disloyalty.*

PREP. **~ to** *He has shown disloyalty to the party and is not to be trusted.*

dismal *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become**

ADV. **really** *It was a really dismal day.* **| a bit, fairly, pretty, rather** *Last year's results were fairly dismal.*

dismay *noun*

ADJ. **deep, great** *The government has expressed 'deep dismay' at police violence against protesters.* **| growing, mounting | widespread**

VERB + DISMAY **feel** *I felt a mounting dismay at the prospect.* **| express | hide** *It was impossible to hide my dismay at what I had seen.* **| cause** *The laws on hunting cause dismay to many animal lovers.* **| be regarded with, be greeted with, be viewed with** *The news was greeted with widespread dismay.*

PREP. **in ~** *Louise stared at the torn letter in dismay.* **| with ~** *I read of her resignation with some dismay.* **| ~ at** *his dismay at her reaction* **| ~ over** *Brady made no secret of his dismay over his treatment.*

PHRASES **(much) to your dismay** *Much to my dismay, she was out when I called.*

dismiss *verb*

1 decide sth is not important

ADV. **quickly | out of hand, summarily** *He dismissed her suggestion out of hand.* **| easily, lightly, readily** *Children's fears should never be dismissed lightly.* **| contemptuously** *She contemptuously dismissed their complaints.*

VERB + DISMISS **cannot/could not, unable to | be difficult to, be easy to, be possible to** *It was not easy to dismiss the matter from his thoughts.* **| try to**

PREP. **as, from** *She dismissed their arguments as irrelevant. She tried to dismiss the idea from her mind.*

2 remove sb from a job

ADV. **fairly | unfairly, wrongfully** *The court ruled that Ms Hill had been unfairly dismissed.* **| constructively | summarily**

PREP. **from** *He was summarily dismissed from his job.*

dismissal *noun*

1 **from a job**

ADJ. **automatic, immediate, instant, summary** *His attack on the manager led to his instant dismissal.* **| constructive, unfair, wrongful** *She won her claim for constructive dismissal because she had been pressured into resigning.*

VERB + DISMISSAL **lead to | call for** *Crash victims are calling for the dismissal of the coach driver.* **| be faced with, be threatened with, face, risk** *They were warned that they risked dismissal if the strike continued.* **| appeal against, claim** *Cooke, who was with the firm 30 years, claims unfair dismissal.*

PREP. **~ for** *his dismissal for poor performance* **| ~ on the grounds of** *She is now faced with dismissal on the grounds of misconduct.*

PHRASES **grounds/reason for dismissal**

2 **refusing to consider sth**

ADJ. **arrogant, callous, casual, disdainful, easy**

PREP. **~ of** *his callous dismissal of her father's illness*

dismissive *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound**

ADV. **very | completely, entirely | mildly, rather, slightly, somewhat | coldly** *Her manner was coldly dismissive.*

PREP. **of** *She was very dismissive of his achievements.*

disobedience *noun*

ADJ. civil *He called for a campaign of civil disobedience if the president did not honour the election results.*

VERB + DISOBEDIENCE punish (sb for)

PREP. ~ to *their disobedience to the king*

PHRASES an act of disobedience *His behaviour was seen as another act of disobedience.*

disorder *noun*

1 **untidy state**

ADJ. **complete**

VERB + DISORDER **throw sth into** *The country was thrown into disorder by the strikes.*

PREP. **in ~** *He died suddenly, leaving his financial affairs in complete disorder.*

PHRASES **a state of disorder**

2 **violent behaviour**

ADJ. **major, serious | widespread | violent | civil, crowd, public, social | political**

QUANT. **outbreak** *There have been outbreaks of serious public disorder.*

VERB + DISORDER **create, lead to | quell** *Troops were sent in to quell the disorder.* **| prevent** *new restrictions aimed at preventing social disorder*

3 **illness**

ADJ. **serious, severe | chronic | common, rare | genetic, inherited | blood, brain, etc. | circulatory, eating, etc.** *Anorexia is a common eating disorder.* **| behavioural, emotional, mental, nervous, personality, physical, psychiatric, psychological**

VERB + DISORDER **have, suffer from** *She suffers from a rare blood disorder.* **| treat**

DISORDER + VERB **affect sth** *disorders affecting the very old, such as senile dementia* > Special page at ILLNESS

disorganized *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **highly, hopelessly, very** *She never gets anywhere on time. She's hopelessly disorganized.* **| completely, totally | rather, somewhat**

disparity *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, gross, wide | growing | clear, glaring, obvious**

PREP. **~ between** *The great disparity between the teams did not make for an entertaining game.* **| ~ in** *the disparity in their salaries* **| ~ of** *a disparity of resources*

disperse *verb*

ADV. **quickly, rapidly | quietly | widely** *The population in this area is quite widely dispersed.* **| geographically** *to decentralize and geographically disperse political and economic power*

VERB + DISPERSE **begin to** *The crowd slowly began to disperse.*

display *noun*

1 **arrangement of things**

ADJ. **attractive, beautiful, colourful, dazzling, excellent, eye-catching, fascinating, fine, good, interesting, stunning | special | public | permanent, temporary | static** *The locomotive is normally kept on static display in the National Railway Museum.* **| audio-visual, visual** *An audio-visual display gives visitors an idea of what life was like aboard a sailing ship.* **| floral, photographic** *a beautiful floral display outside the Town Hall* **| in-store, wall, window | museum, shop**

VERB + DISPLAY **have** *The museum has a fine display of old medical instruments.* **| mount** *We plan to mount a display of the children's work in the lobby area.* **| go on** *Examples of her work will go on permanent display in the new museum.* **| put sth on** *The birds were put on display at the zoological society.*

DISPLAY + VERB **illustrate sth, show sth** *The display illustrates the traditional industries of the town.*

DISPLAY + NOUN **board, cabinet, case, stand** *a glass-fronted display cabinet*

PREP. **on ~** *Designs for the new sports hall are on public display in the library. On display are earrings, necklaces and bracelets made from jade, amber and amethyst.* **| ~ of** *a display of Roman coins* > Note at ART

2 **performing a skill**

ADJ. **astonishing, awesome, breathtaking, brilliant, devastating, flamboyant, great, impressive, magnificent, outstanding, spectacular, spirited, superb, virtuoso** *a flamboyant display of footballing skills* **| disappointing, lacklustre, poor | firework | pyrotechnic** *The sun set in a pyrotechnic display that burnt up the whole western sky.* **| aerial, aerobatic, air, flying, parachute | courtship, mating, sexual**

VERB + DISPLAY **give, perform, put on** *The male performs a magnificent courtship display. They put on a spectacular firework display.* **| treat sb to** *The crowd was treated to an impressive display of power tennis.* **| watch**

DISPLAY + NOUN **team** *an aerobatic display team*

PREP. **~ of** *They gave a virtuoso display of disco dancing.*

3 showing a particular feeling/quality

ADJ. **brief | rare | impressive, incredible, striking** *Members of the community closed ranks in an impressive display of unity.* **| open, public** *an open display of affection for her husband* **| outward** *Despite his outward display of friendliness, I sensed he was concealing something.* **| ostentatious, overt** *an ostentatious display of wealth* **| aggressive** *There may be specific events which trigger aggressive displays in your dog.*

PREP. **~ of** *She slammed the door behind her in a display of ill-temper.*

4 on a computer screen, etc.

ADJ. **computer, screen | data, graphics, video, visual | colour, mono/ monochrome | high resolution, low resolution** *a high resolution colour display* **| LCD/liquid crystal | analogue, digital | Windows**

DISPLAY + NOUN **screen, terminal, unit** *display screen equipment a visual display unit*

display *verb*

ADV. **clearly, prominently** *His football trophies were prominently displayed in the kitchen.* **| proudly**

PREP. **to** *She proudly displayed her degree certificate to her parents.*

displeasure *noun*

ADJ. **deep | divine, official, royal** *He saw the English victory as a sign of divine displeasure.*

VERB + DISPLEASURE **cause, incur** *His tactless words had incurred his father's deep displeasure.* **| express, show, voice | conceal, hide** *He made no attempt to hide his displeasure.*

PREP. **~ at** *his displeasure at being ignored* **| ~ with** *her displeasure with her colleagues*

disposal *noun*

ADJ. **safe | routine | illegal | ultimate** *the problems of the ultimate disposal of nuclear waste* **| bomb, refuse, rubbish, sewage, waste | land, landfill, sea**

DISPOSAL + NOUN **site | method | system, unit** *a kitchen waste disposal unit* **| company, expert, squad** *The device was defused by army bomb disposal experts.*

PREP. **at your ~** (= available for your use) *He will have a car at his disposal for the whole month. Well, I'm at your disposal* (= I am ready to help you in any way I can).

disposed *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem**

ADV. **agreeably, favourably, kindly, well | naturally**

PREP. **to** *She seems favourably disposed to the move.* **| towards** *being naturally disposed towards speculation*

disposition *noun*

ADJ. **cheerful, happy, pleasant, sunny | friendly, sociable | placid | nervous | jealous | aggressive, touchy | criminal**

VERB + DISPOSITION **have, show** *These dogs show a very sociable disposition.*

PREP. **of a … ~** *This film is not recommended for those of a nervous disposition.*

disproportionate *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **grossly, vastly | quite, totally, wholly**

PREP. **to** *The punishment was grossly disproportionate to the crime.*

dispute *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, major, serious** *There is considerable dispute over the precise definition of 'social class' as a term. The incident sparked off a major dispute between the two countries.* **| minor | acrimonious, bitter,** fierce, heated | damaging | **simmering** *The simmering dispute erupted in public when the two men came to blows at the party conference.* **| continuing, lengthy, long-running, long-standing, prolonged, protracted | outstanding** *He proposed a negotiated settlement of the outstanding disputes between the two countries.* **| public | local, international | internal** *There were lengthy internal disputes between the two wings of the party.* **| domestic, family | labour, industrial, pay | border, boundary, land, territorial | legal | ideological, political | commercial, financial, trade | religious**

VERB + DISPUTE **cause, lead to, provoke, spark (off)** *one of the many factors that led to the dispute* **| enter | be drawn into** *Governments are often drawn into disputes about matters of public taste and decency.* **| be embroiled in, be engaged in, be involved in** *They became embroiled in a dispute with their neighbours.* **| deal with, handle** *Police have difficulties in dealing with domestic disputes.* **| adjudicate, decide** *The purpose of industrial tribunals is to adjudicate disputes between employers and employees.* **| resolve, settle, solve | lose, win | avoid, prevent | be open to** *His theories are open to dispute* (= can be disagreed with).

DISPUTE + VERB **arise, begin, erupt** *No one could remember exactly how the dispute had arisen.* **| escalate | concern sth** *disputes concerning environmental protection* **| involve sb/sth**

PREP. **beyond ~** *The matter was settled beyond dispute by the court judgment* (= it could no longer be argued about). **| in ~ (with)** *The actual sum of compensation due is still in dispute* (= being argued about). *The employees have been in dispute with management for three weeks.* **| under ~** *the matters under dispute* **| ~ about/over, ~ among/amongst** *The exact relationship between the two languages is a matter of dispute amongst scholars.* **| ~ as to** *There is no dispute as to the facts.* **| ~ between** *a long-standing dispute between the families over ownership of the land.* **| ~ with**

PHRASES **an area/a matter of dispute, potential/room/scope for dispute** *to minimize the scope for dispute over the meaning of the terms employed* **| the resolution/settlement of a dispute**

dispute *verb*

ADV. **fiercely, hotly** *The effectiveness of this treatment is still hotly disputed.*

VERB + DISPUTE **can/cannot** *No one can dispute the fact that men still hold the majority of public offices.*

disregard *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total, utter | blatant, flagrant | callous, cavalier, cynical | reckless, wanton** *their reckless disregard for human life* **| blithe, fine** *(ironic) With a fine disregard for geography, she decided to start her journey to Paris by sailing to the Hook of Holland.*

VERB + DISREGARD **demonstrate, show**

PREP. **~ for** *He showed complete disregard for the feelings of his family.* **| ~ of** *their flagrant disregard of the rules*

disrepair *noun*

VERB + DISREPAIR **fall into** *The building had fallen into disrepair.*

PREP. **in ~** *Much of the old building was still in disrepair.*

PHRASES **a state of disrepair**

disreputable *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem**

ADV. **highly, very | rather, slightly, vaguely** *He had a vaguely disreputable appearance.*

disrepute *noun*

VERB + DISREPUTE **fall into** *The old system had fallen into disrepute.* **| bring sth into** *The players' behaviour on the field is likely to bring the game into disrepute.*

PREP. **in ~** *This theory is now in disrepute.*

disrespect *noun*

ADJ. **total | healthy**

VERB + DISRESPECT **have, show, treat sb/sth with** *She felt he had total disrespect for women.* **| mean no** *I mean no disrespect to the team, but their performance was poor.*

PREP. **~ for** *The new manager showed a healthy disrespect for formality.*

PHRASES **no disrespect intended/to …** *No disrespect intended sir; it was just a joke.*

disrupt *verb*

ADV. **badly, seriously, severely** *The bad weather has seriously disrupted supplies of food.* **| completely, totally**

VERB + DISRUPT **threaten to | attempt to | be designed to** *The attacks are designed to disrupt plans for the elections.*

PHRASES **an attempt to disrupt sth**

disruption *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, major, massive, serious, severe | minimum** *how to organize the building work so as to cause minimum disruption* **| widespread | undue** *to allow the school to function without undue disruption* **| inevitable | economic, family, political, social** *the effects of family disruption during childhood* **| traffic**

VERB + DISRUPTION **cause, create, lead to | suffer** *The city centre suffered some disruption due to a bomb scare.* **| avoid, prevent | minimize**

DISRUPTION + VERB **occur**

PREP. **~ to** *The bombing campaign caused massive disruption to industry.*

disruptive *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *children with highly disruptive behaviour* **| slightly | potentially** *potentially disruptive elements in society* **| socially**

PREP. **to** *Long working hours are very disruptive to home life.*

dissatisfaction *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, deep | growing, increasing | general, widespread | popular, public | customer | political, sexual | job**

VERB + DISSATISFACTION **cause, give rise to, lead to** *Pay cuts have led to widespread dissatisfaction.* **| express**

PREP. **~ about/over** *dissatisfaction over the slow progress of the peace process* **| ~ among** *There was widespread dissatisfaction among the public.* **| ~ at** *She expressed deep dissatisfaction at the way the interview had been conducted.* **| ~ with** *There is growing dissatisfaction with the current style of management.*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of dissatisfaction, a cause/source of dissatisfaction**

dissatisfied *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become | remain**

ADV. **deeply, very** *The decision left us feeling deeply dissatisfied.* **| increasingly**

PREP. **with** *She's very dissatisfied with her current job.*

dissent *noun*

ADJ. **serious, strong** *He would brook no serious dissent.* **| growing | internal** *internal party dissent* **| political, religious** *Political dissent is not tolerated.*

VERB + DISSENT **arouse, cause, provoke | express, show** *There are many ways of expressing dissent.* **| brook, tolerate | stifle, suppress** *The regime ruthlessly suppresses all dissent.*

PREP. **~ against** *popular dissent against the Church* **| ~ from** *His dissent from his family's religious beliefs caused a lot of ill-feeling.*

PHRASES **a voice of dissent** *In the early 1960s, the voices of dissent began to rise.*

dissertation *noun*

ADJ. **research | doctoral, Master's, undergraduate | MSc, PhD, etc. | 15,000-word, etc.**

VERB + DISSERTATION **do, prepare, write** *Students can either do a dissertation or take part in a practical project.* **| complete, finish | hand in, present, submit** *Candidates are required to present a dissertation of between 8,000 and 12,000 words.*

PREP. **~ on** *He wrote his Master's dissertation on rats.*

disservice *noun*

ADJ. **grave, great**

VERB + DISSERVICE **do sb**

PREP. **~ to** *This violence will do a grave disservice to their cause.*

dissident *noun*

ADJ. **leading, prominent | political, religious | exiled, imprisoned**

dissimilar *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look**

ADV. **very | quite, totally | not altogether, not entirely, not wholly**

PREP. **from** *His views are not dissimilar from those of the Health Minister.* **| to** *The way of life here is not altogether dissimilar to that in other parts of Europe.*

dissolve *verb*

1 **become/make sth liquid**

ADV. **completely** *The tablet hasn't dissolved completely yet.* **| gradually, slowly | away** *The limestone has simply dissolved away.*

PREP. **in** *Dissolve the sugar in water.*

2 **end sth officially**

ADV. **formally, officially** *Their marriage was formally dissolved last year.*

distance *noun*

1 **amount of space between two points**

ADJ. **appreciable, considerable, enormous, fair, good, great, huge, large, long, vast** *The town is a considerable distance from the coast. It's quite a good distance to the nearest village. The people travel vast distances to find food.* | **short, small** | **reasonable** | **certain, given** | **average, mean** *the average distance covered during pursuits by cheetahs* | **equal** | **maximum, minimum** | **optimum** | **correct, right** | **exact** | **full** | **extra** | **fixed** | **finite, infinite** | **careful, comfortable, convenient, discreet, respectful, safe** *The cat sat and watched us from a safe distance.* | **braking, stopping** *Allow for greater braking distances when pulling a loaded trailer.* | **geographical, physical** *These immigrants face problems of geographical distance and cultural isolation.*

VERB + DISTANCE **cover, fly, go, travel, walk** *The young birds were soon flying distances of 200 feet or more.*

(figurative) Nobody thought he would last 15 rounds but he went the full distance. | **keep** *I kept a comfortable distance behind the van.* | **determine, measure** | **gauge, judge** *It is very difficult to judge distances in the desert.*

DISTANCE + NOUN **runner, running** *a long-distance runner*

PREP. **at a ~ (from/of)** *When launching a kick it is essential to be at the correct distance from your opponent. The town is situated at a distance of twenty miles from Oxford. She followed them at a discreet distance.* | **from a ~ (of)** *Visitors can only view the painting from a distance of three metres.* | **over a ~ (of)** *The sound can be heard over a distance of more than five miles.* | **within a ~** *children living within a certain distance of the school* | **~ away from** *The house is a short distance away from the bus station.* | **~ between** *What's the distance between London and Edinburgh?* | **~ from, ~ to** *the distance from our house to the school*

PHRASES **a … distance ahead, away, apart, etc.** *A bomb exploded some distance away.* | **within commuting/driving/strolling/travelling/wal distance** *The shops are within walking distance.* | **within hailing/shouting/sniffing/spitting/striking/ distance** *The cat was now within striking distance of the duck.*

(figurative) We came within spitting distance of winning the cup.

2 **point a long way away/being far away**

ADJ. **far, middle** *I could just see the hills in the far distance.* **| blue** *(literary) The moors stretched away into the blue distance* (= the sky).

DISTANCE + NOUN **learning** *The Open University offers a wide range of distance learning programmes.* **| vision** *to have good distance vision*

PREP. **at a ~** *At a distance it is difficult to make out the detail on the building.* **| from a ~** *We admired the palace from a distance.* **| in the ~** *In the distance was a small village.*

3 **not being too closely involved**

ADJ. **critical, professional | emotional, psychological, social**

VERB + DISTANCE **keep, maintain** *She was warned to keep her distance from Charles if she didn't want to get hurt. Sociologists must maintain critical distance from the ideas of society at any particular time.*

PREP. **~ from** *He felt a sense of distance from the others.*

PHRASES **a sense of distance**

distant *adj.*

1 **far away in space**

VERBS **be, sound | become, grow** *The sound of the engine was growing more and more distant.*

ADV. **far** (*literary*), **very** *in far distant lands* **| increasingly | unimaginably** *It was only a few miles away but it seemed unimaginably distant.* **| geographically** *geographically distant areas of the world*

PREP. **from** *The stars are more distant from the earth than the sun.*

2 **far away in time**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very | increasingly | fairly, not too** *in the not too distant future*

PHRASES **the dim and distant past** *stories from the dim and distant past*

3 **not friendly/not paying attention**

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain | find sb**

ADV. **very | rather, slightly | strangely** *Even his children found him strangely distant and impersonal.*

distaste *noun*

ADJ. **deep, extreme, great, intense, profound, strong | growing | evident, obvious** *She regarded the child with evident distaste.* **| irrational | mock**

VERB + DISTASTE **feel, have | express, show** *trying not to show her distaste* **| conceal, hide** *He couldn't conceal the deep distaste that he felt for many of their customs.* **| look at sb/sth with, regard sb/sth with, view sb/sth with**

PREP. **in ~** *She wrinkled her nose in mock distaste.* **| with ~** *Jim looked with distaste at the cockroach in his soup.* **| ~ at** *He couldn't hide his distaste at having to sleep in such a filthy room.* **| ~ for** *Joe had a profound distaste for violence.*

PHRASES **an expression/a look of distaste, a feeling of distaste**

distasteful *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | find sth**

ADV. **extremely, highly** *I find his attitude highly distasteful.* **| thoroughly | fairly, rather**

PREP. **to** *The work was thoroughly distasteful to her.*

distinct *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain | keep sth** *It is necessary to keep these two issues distinct.* **| regard/see sth as**

ADV. **very | completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | fairly | essentially, fundamentally | clearly | analytically, conceptually, formally** (= distinct in form), **qualitatively** *Political power should be regarded as analytically distinct from economic power.* **| anatomically, geographically, historically** *geographically distinct regions*

PREP. **from** *The various dialects are quite distinct from one another.*

PHRASES **as distinct from** *She was studying lung cancer, as distinct from other types of cancer.*

distinction *noun*

1 **clear difference**

ADJ. **critical, crucial, important, key, main, major, vital | basic, essential, fundamental, underlying | clear, clear-cut, definite, marked, obvious, real, rigid, sharp, strong | fine, subtle | broad, general | crude, simple | logical, valid | useful | arbitrary, artificial | invidious** *making invidious distinctions between the 'deserving' and the 'undeserving' poor* | **absolute** *Is there always an absolute distinction between right and wrong?* | **conventional, old, traditional** *the conventional distinction between pure and applied science* | **formal | conceptual | theoretical | class, cultural, gender, moral**

VERB + DISTINCTION **draw, make** *She draws an important distinction between the different kinds of illness.* | **recognize, see** *We can see a sharp distinction between ambition and greed.* | **blur** *blurring the distinction between amateur and professional players*

DISTINCTION + VERB **lie** *Cultural distinctions lie at the heart of these issues.*

PREP. **without ~** *All groups are entitled to this money without distinction* (= without a difference being made between them). | **~ between**

2 **excellence/fame**

ADJ. **considerable, great | modest | dubious | rare | unique | added | academic, intellectual, professional, social** *Wearing the county tie was a mark of modest social distinction.*

VERB + DISTINCTION **have** *He has the dubious distinction of being the first railway baron to go bankrupt.* | **achieve** *She achieved distinction in several fields of scholarship.* | **add** *Fennel leaves add distinction to any dish.*

PREP. **of ~** *She is a historian of great distinction.* | **with ~** *He served with distinction in the First World War.*

distinctive *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *The shell has a highly distinctive pattern.* **| quite | fairly**

distinguish *verb*

ADV. **clearly, sharply | carefully | easily, readily** *The adult can be readily distinguished by its orange bill.*

VERB + DISTINGUISH **be able to, can/could | be unable to | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to, be possible to | be important to, be necessary to** *It is important to distinguish between cause and effect.*

PREP. **between** *It is often difficult to distinguish clearly between fact and fiction in this book.* **| from** *She could not distinguish one child from another.*

distinguishable *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **clearly, easily, readily | barely, hardly, scarcely**

PREP. **by** *The animal is easily distinguishable by the black stripes above its eye.* **| from** *The male bird is barely distinguishable from the female.*

distort *verb*

ADV. **grossly, seriously, severely** *He was accused of grossly distorting the facts.* **| completely | slightly | deliberately**

distortion *noun*

1 **change in shape/sound**

ADJ. **severe | slight | inevitable**

VERB + DISTORTION **cause, create, lead to** *The wrong chemical balance can cause severe distortion of the photographic image.* **| avoid**

2 **changing sth so that it is shown falsely**

ADJ. **gross, serious** *His report was attacked as a gross distortion of the truth.* **| deliberate**

distract *verb*

ADV. **easily** *He's easily distracted from his work* **| momentarily** *A noise outside momentarily distracted her.*

PREP. **(away) from** *an attempt to distract attention away from the real problems in the country*

distracted *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become, get** *It's easy to get distracted when you're studying.*

ADV. **very | a little, slightly, somewhat** *She seemed slightly distracted, as if something was worrying her.* **| momentarily** *Luke looked momentarily distracted.*

distraction *noun*

1 **sth that takes your attention away**

ADJ. **unwanted | welcome**

PREP. **without ~** *She worked hard all morning, without distraction.* **| ~ from** *Work was a welcome distraction from her problems at home.*

2 **being unable to think clearly**

VERB + DISTRACTION **drive sb to** *My kids drive me to distraction at times.* **| be bored to | love sb to**

distraught *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound** *She sounded absolutely distraught.* **| become | remain** *Weeks after the accident she remained distraught.* **| leave sb** *His mother's death left him utterly distraught.*

ADV. **extremely, really, terribly, very | absolutely, completely, quite, utterly**

PREP. **at** *They were terribly distraught at the news of his accident.*

distress *noun*

ADJ. **acute, considerable, deep, extreme, great, immense, severe | genuine, real | obvious | unnecessary | emotional, mental, personal, physical, psychological** *the physical distress of thirst and hunger the personal distress associated with unemployment* **| economic, financial, social** *The causes of social distress include inadequate housing.*

VERB + DISTRESS **cause (sb) | feel, suffer** *the distress that she felt when her parents argued The animals suffer great pain and distress when hunted.* **| show (signs of)** *She seemed calm and showed no signs of distress.* **| conceal** *He tried to conceal his distress, but the tremor in his voice was unmistakable.* **| avoid | alleviate, ease, relieve**

DISTRESS + NOUN **call, signal** *The sinking ship sent out a distress call.*

PREP. **in ~** *The child was clearly in distress. a ship in distress* **| to sb's ~** *He dropped out of college, to his family's distress.* **| ~ at** *her obvious distress at hearing such bad news* **| ~ over** *The president issued a statement expressing her distress over the affair.*

PHRASES **a damsel in distress** *medieval ballads about a knight saving a damsel in distress* **| a source of distress** *Grief over ageing is a source of distress to men and women.*

distressing *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | find sth** *I found the story deeply distressing.*

ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, very | quite, rather | emotionally**

PREP. **for** *The divorce was extremely distressing for the children.*

distribute *verb*

1 **give sth out**

ADV. **equally, fairly | unequally | widely** *The leaflets have been widely distributed.* **| free** *Copies of the book were distributed free to each school in the district.*

PREP. **among** *We distributed the money equally among the team members.* **| between, to** *distributing aid to people in need*

2 **spread sth**

ADV. **evenly, uniformly** *Wealth is not evenly distributed between age groups.* **| unevenly | randomly** *Smokers were randomly distributed in the sample interviewed.* **| patchily, sparsely**

PREP. **among, between, throughout** *There are over 35,000 species of orchid distributed throughout the world.*

distribution *noun*

1 **way sth is shared or exists over an area**

ADJ. **egalitarian, equitable, fair** *to ensure a fair distribution of wealth* | **inequitable, unfair** | **equal** *an equal distribution of wealth between people of different age groups* | **unequal** | **even, uniform** *After applying the cream, comb through to ensure even distribution.* | **uneven** *The country was noted for its uneven distribution of land resources.* | **optimal, optimum** | **relative** *the relative distribution of continents and oceans* | **general, overall** *the general distribution of earthquakes around the world* | **broad, wide, widespread** *the broad distribution of Bronze Age artefacts across Europe the wider distribution of wealth throughout society* | **local, localized** *Fish populations assume highly localized distributions within each river.* | **global, regional,** worldwide | spatial | income, wealth | weight | age, class, **geographical, population, sex, social** *the social class distribution of the male population* | **normal, random, skewed, smooth** *(all mathematics) a normal distribution with a bell-shaped frequency curve* | **binomial, frequency, probability** *(all mathematics)*

VERB + DISTRIBUTION **achieve, ensure** *The engine is mounted in the middle to achieve a more even weight distribution.* | **determine** *Radiology was used to determine the distribution of the disease.* | **have, show** *(mathematics) These birds have a wide geographical distribution. IQs within the population show a normal distribution.*

DISTRIBUTION + NOUN **pattern** *Animal herds may form in response to the distribution patterns of food.* | **map** *an atlas containing distribution maps of the most important tropical diseases*

PREP. **~ across** *the distribution of resources across society* | **~ among** *data on wealth distribution among age groups* | **~ between** *a disparity in age distribution between groups* | **~ over** *the distribution of trees over the estate* | **~ throughout** *uniform distribution of the chemical throughout the timber*

PHRASES **a change in distribution** *changes in the distribution of wealth and income*

2 **giving/delivering sth to people**

ADJ. **free** *The document contains sensitive information and is not suitable for free* (= unrestricted) *distribution. The previously free* (= not paid for) *distribution of* *textbooks will now be confined to students who are needy.* | **general** *Our catalogue lists all our books that are available for general distribution.* | **selective** | **exclusive** *The publisher has signed an agreement for the exclusive distribution of the books in the US.* | **proper** | **electronic** *the electronic distribution of software to customers* | **global, international, local, national, worldwide** *Roads are used for local distribution of goods.* | **electricity, food, fuel, gas, land, milk, water** *the creation of 1,500 smallholdings as part of a land distribution programme* | **retail, wholesale** *the wholesale and retail distribution of a huge variety of goods*

VERB + DISTRIBUTION **control, handle, organize** *The company is to handle the distribution of the product in Europe.* | **available for** *2,000 copies of the booklet have been printed and are available for distribution.* | **ensure** *to ensure the proper distribution of medical aid* | **allow (for)** *to allow for the distribution of aid*

DISTRIBUTION + NOUN **agreement, arrangement, deal** *Her company has signed a non-exclusive distribution agreement.* | **list** *I attach a copy of the distribution list so you can see who got the last edition.* | **rights** | **costs** | **channel** *We have man* | **network** | **method** | **system** | **facilities** *The company wants to invest in new distribution facilities.* | **base, centre, depot, outlet, point** *The company has decided to use Belfast as its distribution base.* | operation *The company has manufacturing or distribution operations in 33 countries worldwide.* | **business, company** | **industry**

PREP. **for ~** *free colour leaflets for distribution overseas* | **~ among** *food for distribution among the villagers* | **~ between** *the distribution of the health budget between various hospitals* | **~ by** *the distribution by the government of a leaflet explaining the new tax* | **~ through** *distribution through department stores* | **~ to** *The food was parcelled up for distribution to outlying communities.*

PHRASES **a/the chain of distribution** *There are savings to be made where retailers are bypassed in the chain of distribution.* | **a channel of distribution**

3 **payment**

ADJ. **capital, dividend, share** | **cash**

VERB + DISTRIBUTION **make** *When are distributions likely to be made to creditors?* | **be available for** *These are company reserves available for distribution as the directors may determine.*

PREP. **~ to** *The promissory notes were purchased for distribution to investors.*

distributor *noun*

ADJ. **global, international, overseas, worldwide | local, national | exclusive, sole | authorized, licensed | independent, third party** *Third party distributors are used to distribute the product in areas where the group does not have offices.* **| large, leading, main, major, primary** *We are the primary distributor of the system in France.* **| car, computer, film, food, software | electricity** *the national electricity distributor*

VERB + DISTRIBUTOR **appoint (sb) as** *We have been appointed sole UK distributor of a number of Hungarian wines.* **| act as** *We will act as the exclusive distributor for these Russian goods to the world market.*

PREP. **through a/the ~** *You can get the book through your local distributor.* **| ~ for** *the exclusive distributor for these goods a distributor for the German market a distributor for Hewlett-Packard Co*

district *noun*

ADJ. **neighbouring, surrounding** *Fire crews from all the surrounding districts helped to fight the fires in the city.* | **central** *Every city has its central business district.* | **outlying, remote** *a new railway station to help people commuting from outlying districts* | **northern, southern, etc.** | **affluent, exclusive, rich, wealthy** | **poor, working-class** *the shacks in the poorest districts of the city* | **slum** | **coastal, country, local, metropolitan, rural, suburban, urban** | **agricultural, business, commercial, financial, industrial, mining, residential, shopping** | **administrative, electoral, federal, health, military, polling, postal** *a federal district court in New York He has been transferred to a hospital in a different health district.*

DISTRICT + VERB **stretch** *Their district stretches nearly 150 miles, from the mountains to the sea.*

DISTRICT + NOUN **authority, council** *the district health authority* | **councillor, judge, nurse, etc.** | **court, hospital, etc.** | **boundary** *Redrawing district boundaries would change the election results.*

PREP. **in/within a/the ~** *The hospital is only responsible for patients within its own district.*

distrust *noun*

ADJ. **deep, deep-seated, profound | growing | widespread | popular, public** *the popular distrust of foreigners after the war* **| mutual | healthy** *She has a healthy distrust of door-to-door salesmen.*

VERB + DISTRUST **feel, have | express, show | create** *The many policy changes have created growing distrust among employees.* **| overcome** *Great efforts were made to overcome public distrust.* **| retain** *Nonconformists retained a deep distrust of their Anglican neighbours.*

PREP. **~ between** *distrust between the two police forces* **| ~ in** *his distrust in politics* **| ~ of** *a distrust of the media*

PHRASES **a climate of distrust**

disturbance *noun*

1 **actions that upset the normal state of sb/sth**

ADJ. **considerable, major, serious | minimal, minimum, minor, slight**

QUANT. **level** *an unacceptable level of disturbance to occupiers of adjacent properties*

VERB + DISTURBANCE **cause, create, make** *The traffic causes serious disturbance to residents.* **| suffer | prevent** *She moved the nest very carefully to prevent disturbance to the birds.*

PREP. **without ~** *a place where you can work without disturbance* **| ~ from** *disturbance from noisy lorries* **| ~ of** *the major disturbance of marine life caused by oil spillages* **| ~ to** *Buildings should create minimum disturbance to the environment.*

2 **violent public event**

ADJ. **serious** *The decision led to serious disturbances in all the country's main cities.* **| violent | public | crowd, mass | serious | civil, ethnic, political, racial, social | inner city, rural, urban**

VERB + DISTURBANCE **cause, give rise to, lead to, provoke, trigger (off)** *He was arrested and charged with causing a disturbance in a public place. An influx of refugees has triggered off disturbances.* **| be involved in** *Large numbers of workers involved in the disturbances have been arrested.* **| deal with, put down, quell** *Troops were brought in to put down the disturbance.*

DISTURBANCE + VERB **occur | involve sb** *disturbances involving members of a crowd of 550 demonstrators*

PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *Several people were injured during a disturbance in the capital city.* **| ~ among** *There had been violent disturbances among the prisoners.* **| ~ between** *disturbances between members of two rival factions*

PHRASES **a disturbance of the peace** *The government advocated strong action against Mussolini's disturbance of the peace.*

3 **emotional/physical upset**

ADJ. **serious, severe | behavioural, emotional, mental, psychiatric, psychological** *teenagers suffering from a kind of psychological disturbance* **| bowel, menstrual | sleep**

VERB + DISTURBANCE **suffer from**

PREP. **~ in** *a disturbance in liver function behavioural disturbances in children*

disturbed *adj.*

1 **mentally ill**

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **acutely, deeply, highly, seriously, severely, very** *Many of our patients are severely disturbed.* **| behaviourally, emotionally, mentally, psychiatrically, psychologically** *emotionally disturbed children*

2 **very anxious**

VERBS **be, feel | become**

ADV. **deeply, greatly, profoundly, very | a little, slightly, vaguely | oddly**

PREP. **by** *I felt oddly disturbed by the incident.*

disturbing *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain | find sth**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, profoundly, very** *a profoundly disturbing experience* **| rather, slightly, somewhat, vaguely | oddly, strangely | unexpectedly**

disuse *noun*

VERB + DISUSE **be in** *The workforce has shrunk to less than a thousand and much of the plant is in disuse.* **| fall into** *A new bridge was built ten years ago and the old one has fallen into disuse.*

PREP. **from/through/with ~** *Her muscles had become weak through disuse.*

PHRASES **a period of disuse**

ditch *noun*

ADJ. **deep, wide | shallow, small | open** *The drainage system consisted of a few open ditches to facilitate run-off.* **| muddy | drainage, irrigation | roadside**

VERB + DITCH **dig**

DITCH + VERB **run** *The ditch ran parallel to the road.* **| surround sth** *His lettuce garden was surrounded by a deep ditch.*

PREP. **in/into a ~** *I tripped and fell into a muddy ditch.*

dive *noun*

1 **of an aircraft**

ADJ. **steep, vertical | gentle, shallow | spiral**

VERB + DIVE **go into** *The plane went into a steep dive.* **| pull out of** *The pilot seemed to be having difficulty in pulling out of the dive.*

2 **move/jump/fall**

ADJ. **headlong, nose** (also **nosedive)** *(both often figurative) The economy is on a headlong dive to disaster. His acting career took a nosedive and he turned to drink for solace.* **| sudden | running** *She made a running dive to get across the crevasse.*

VERB + DIVE **make, take** *She made a dive for the door. He took a dive in the penalty area and won his team a controversial penalty. (figurative) The market is volatile and profits could take a dive.*

PREP. **~ for** *There would be a dive for the bar as soon as the show finished.*

dive *verb*

1 **jump into water**

ADV. **deep, head first | down**

PREP. **for** *diving for pearls* **| from** *She dived from the top diving board.* **| into** *He dived head first into the water.* **| off**

PHRASES **go diving** *The main purpose of his holiday to Greece was to go diving.*

2 **of birds/aircraft**

ADV. **suddenly | vertically** *Unlike some birds, it does not dive vertically.*

PREP. **from, to** *The plane suddenly dived from 10,000 feet to 5,000.*

3 **move/jump/fall**

ADV. **head first, headlong**

PREP. **beneath, into** *He dived headlong into the ditch.* **| through, under**

PHRASES **dive for cover** *We heard an explosion and dived for cover.*

diverge *verb*

ADV. **considerably, markedly, widely**

PREP. **from** *This country's interests diverge considerably from those of other European countries.*

diverse *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **enormously, exceptionally, extremely, highly, remarkably, very, widely | increasingly | quite, relatively | apparently | culturally, ethnically, socially** *an ethnically diverse population*

diversion *noun*

1 change of direction

ADJ. **brief, short | major**

VERB + DIVERSION **make, take** *From Poiso we make a short diversion to drive to the top of the mountain.*

PREP. **~ from** *the diversion of water from the river into the reservoir* **| ~ to** *The pilot set the aircraft up for a diversion to the nearest suitable airfield.*

2 temporary route

ADJ. **temporary** *A temporary diversion has been set up to take traffic away from the accident site.* **| traffic**

VERB + DIVERSION **set up | signpost** *The road will be closed for two days; diversions have been signposted.*

DIVERSION + VERB **be in operation** *The main road is now closed and diversions are in operation.*

3 distraction

ADJ. **welcome**

VERB + DIVERSION **create, provide** *The fire was started to create a diversion, allowing some prisoners to escape.*

PREP. **~ from** *The cinema provided a welcome diversion from camp routine.*

4 pleasant activity

ADJ. **pleasant, pleasurable | minor**

VERB + DIVERSION **make, provide** *The party would make a pleasant diversion in his rather dull social life.*

diversity *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, extraordinary, great, immense, rich, wide** *There is need for greater diversity and choice in education. the rich diversity of the city's cultural life* **| growing, increased, increasing | biological, genetic** *the need to preserve biological diversity* **| cultural, ethnic, linguistic, political, regional**

VERB + DIVERSITY **create | encourage, promote** *Our party believes in encouraging cultural diversity, not division.* **| maintain, preserve, protect** *The producer was under pressure to maintain a diversity in his output.* **| decrease, increase | allow (for)** *Tyrannies do not allow diversity and disagreement.*

PREP. **~ in** *diversity in the style of the reports* **| ~ of** *There is a wide diversity of views on this subject.*

divide *noun*

ADJ. **great, sharp | growing | north-south, etc. | class, cultural, ideological, religious, sectarian | party**

VERB + DIVIDE **close**

DIVIDE + VERB **widen | narrow | open (up)**

PREP. **~ between** *the sharp divide between rich and poor regions* **| ~ in** *The leader's speech aimed to close the embarrassing divide in party ranks.*

divide *verb*

1 separate into parts

ADV. **broadly, roughly** *This report is divided broadly into two parts.* **| exactly | clearly | conveniently, neatly** *Railway enthusiasts divide neatly into two groups.* **| evenly | up** *The country is divided up into nine regions.*

PREP. **into** *The children divided into three teams.*

PHRASES **divide in two** *the point where the river divides in two*

2 share

ADV. **equally | up**

PREP. **among/amongst** *The money was divided equally among his sons.* **| between** *They divided their time between London and their country cottage.*

3 cause disagreement

ADV. **bitterly, deeply, hopelessly, seriously, sharply** *This issue has bitterly divided the community.* **| evenly**

PHRASES **be divided about/on/over sth** *Cabinet ministers were deeply divided on the issue.*

dividend *noun*

1 **payment on a company share**

ADJ. **high | 10%, etc. | fixed | increased | gross, total | net | expected** *a method of valuing shares based on expected dividends* **| annual, quarterly | interim | final | company | share** *Investors will still pay tax on their foreign share dividends.* **| cash**

VERB + DIVIDEND **pay | receive | announce, declare** *The company has not yet declared its dividends for this year.* **| recommend** *The board has recommended a final dividend of 6 pence per share.* **| boost, increase, lift, raise | hold, maintain** *The interim dividend is maintained at 2.5 cents per share.* **| cut, reduce, slash | pass** *During that time, dividends were cut or passed* (= not paid) *and there were plenty of closures.*

DIVIDEND + VERB **be up** *The dividend is up 10.6% to 11.3p.* **| go up, grow, jump, rise** *The dividend should jump to 5p.* **| stay** *The dividend stays at 0.5p.* **| be payable** *The final dividend, payable on July 1, is reduced to 1p.*

DIVIDEND + NOUN **payment, payout | growth, increase | cut | income, total, yield | policy**

PREP. **~ on** *They have announced the quarterly dividend on the shares.*

PHRASES **an increase in a dividend**

2 **benefit/reward**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, handsome, rich | economic**

VERB + DIVIDEND **bring, pay, produce, reap, yield** *Her hard work paid dividends when she won the school dancing competition. The company reaped rich dividends with its new strategy for packaging holidays.*

PREP. **~ in** *The chain's investment in new stores is bringing dividends in new customers.*

diving *noun*

ADJ. **deep-sea, scuba, sub-aqua | commercial**

VERB + DIVING **go**

DIVING + NOUN **board | display** *The crowd enjoyed a diving display before the swimming races.* **| equipment, gear, suit | bell** *A diving bell is usually used for operations below 50 metres.*

divisible *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **infinitely** *He argued that all matter was infinitely divisible.*

PREP. **by** *Twelve is divisible by four.* **| into** *Plants are divisible into three main groups.*

division *noun*

1 **dividing sth into separate parts**

ADJ. **clear, distinct, simple** *Sometimes there is no simple division between good and evil.* | **complex, elaborate** | **rigid** | **broad, rough** | **equal, fair** | **unequal, unfair** *an unequal division of the cake an unfair division of labour* | **conventional, time-honoured** *the conventional division of language into grammar and vocabulary* | **theoretical** | **hierarchical** *hierarchical division between 'workers' and 'management'* | **threefold, three-way, tripartite** | **cell**

VERB + DIVISION **make** *You can make a rough division of his music into 'light' and 'serious'.*

PREP. **~ among** *His will detailed his assets and gave instructions for their division among his children.* | **~ between** *the division of the money between the members* | **~ into** *In selling there is a broad division into direct and indirect methods.*

PHRASES **the division of labour, the division of wealth**

2 **differences between two groups/things, etc.**

ADJ. **bitter, deep, great, sharp** *There are sharp divisions within the party over the privatization of the railways.* | **fundamental** | **factional, internal** *factional divisions within the party* | **traditional** | **north-south** | **class, cultural, ethnic, gender, ideological, linguistic, political, sexual, social, societal**

VERB + DIVISION **create, provoke** | **exploit** | **heal** *The prime minister's speech will attempt to heal divisions within his party.*

PREP. **~ among** *There are reports of serious divisions among senior party members.* | **~ between, ~ within** *division within the government*

3 **section of an organization**

ADJ. **regional** | **industrial, manufacturing, marketing, retail, sales, training, wholesale** | **administrative** *the administrative divisions of the Roman Empire* | **airborne, armoured, infantry, etc.** | **first, high, low, premier, second,**

senior, top, etc. *(sport) He's now playing football in the higher divisions.* **|** **heavyweight, lightweight, middleweight, etc.** (= in boxing, etc.)

PREP. **in the … ~** *They compete in the senior division of the chess league.*

4 **dividing one number by another**

ADJ. **long**

VERB + DIVISION **do** *Can you do long division?*

PREP. **~ by** *division by three*

divisive *adj.*

VERBS be | become | remain

ADV. deeply | potentially | economically, politically, socially *He believes that unemployment is socially divisive and is leading to the creation of an underclass.*

divorce *noun*

ADJ. **amicable, uncontested | acrimonious, bitter | messy, painful | quick**

VERB + DIVORCE **want | apply for, ask for, file for, petition for, seek, sue for, want** *She filed for divorce in 1996.* **| get, obtain** *He told her that he was married but getting a divorce.* **| experience, go through** *She watched her parents go through an acrimonious divorce.* **| agree to, consent to | contest** *These days divorce is rarely contested.* **| grant (sb)** *Over 50,000 divorces were granted last year.* **| refuse sb | end in** *An increasing number of marriages end in divorce.*

DIVORCE + VERB **come through** *He is waiting for the divorce to come through before he remarries.*

DIVORCE + NOUN **court | case, proceedings | decree, settlement | figures, rate, statistics** *The divorce rate has been growing steadily since 1971.* **| law**

PREP. **~ from** *her divorce from the pop star* **| ~ on the grounds of** *seeking a divorce on the grounds of cruelty*

PHRASES **grounds for divorce** *He cited adultery as grounds for divorce.*

dock *noun*

1 **place for loading/unloading ships**

ADJ. **commercial | coal, fish, etc.**

VERB + DOCK **build, construct | arrive at/in | enter**

DOCK + NOUN **company | strike | worker**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *A car pulled up at the dock.* **| in ~** *The ship is in dock for repairs.* **| on a/the ~** *the cargo stacked on the dock*

2 **the dock: in a court of law**

VERB + DOCK **enter, go into, step into | appear in, be in** *She was in the dock on charges of attempted fraud.* **| be put in, end up in, land in** *After a night of drunken revelry they ended up in the dock.*

PREP. **from the ~** *an outburst from the dock* **| in the ~** *The defendant stood in the dock.*

doctor *noun*

ADJ. **excellent, good | qualified | experienced | family, local** *Who is your family doctor?* **| hospital, school | NHS | private**

VERB + DOCTOR **register with** *You should register with a doctor as soon as possible.* **| call, fetch, get, send for** *We called the doctor immediately*. (For more verbs see note.) > Note at DOCTOR

doctorate *noun*

ADJ. **honorary | engineering, music, etc.**

VERB + DOCTORATE **do, study for, take, write** *She's doing a doctorate in ancient history.* **| complete** *He's completed his doctorate on Victorian sexuality.* **| have** *The applicants all have doctorates from good universities.* **| be awarded, be granted, gain, get, obtain, receive**

DOCTORATE + NOUN **degree | thesis, work**

PREP. **~ from** *a doctorate from Edinburgh University* **| ~ in** *a doctorate in Business Administration* **| ~ of** *a doctorate of divinity* **| ~ on** *a doctorate on post-colonial development*

doctrine *noun*

ADJ. **Catholic, Islamic, etc. | economic, legal, political, religious | revolutionary | classical, conventional, established, orthodox, traditional | high** *He expounded traditional Calvinism with its high doctrine of church order* (= its doctrine that church order is very important). **| old | prevailing | central, essential | general | false, untenable | influential**

QUANT. **point** *communities divided on points of doctrine* **| body** *an influential body of doctrine*

VERB + DOCTRINE **advocate, expound, preach, proclaim, teach | defend | develop, establish, formulate, produce | accept, adhere to, adopt, be committed to, believe (in), embrace, subscribe to, support, uphold** *They were all committed to the doctrine of social equality.* **| abandon, condemn, oppose, reject, undermine** *She rejected the traditional Christian doctrines.* **| apply, invoke | reconcile** *Thompson reconciled the doctrine of heat with that of mechanics in 1851.*

DOCTRINE + VERB **advocate sth | allow sth** *Their doctrine allows the use of violence.*

PREP. **in ~** *The Church welcomed all who were considered sound in doctrine.*

document *noun*

1 **official paper/book**

ADJ. **important, key, seminal** *one of the key documents in this case* | relevant | large, lengthy, long, **weighty | brief, short |** 10-page, etc. | complete, entire, **whole** *This statement must be understood in the context of the entire document.* **| summary | detailed | draft | revised | final | original** *The original document has been lost or destroyed.* **| electronic, paper, printed, written | published, unpublished | enclosed** *Please sign the enclosed document and return it to me.* **| single** *A constitution need not be a single document.* **| classified, confidential, privileged** *(law)*, **(top) secret | private | public | available** *Documents will be available at the news conference.* **| internal** *details of internal UN documents* **| approved, signed | unsigned | authentic, genuine | forged | disclosed, leaked | government, legal, official | policy, strategy | travel** *Keep your travel documents in a secure place.* **| registration** *a car's registration document* **| contract, offer, tender** *(all business) He has promised to post a formal offer document to shareholders by Monday.* **| briefing | consultation, consultative, discussion, proposal, working** *a working document in the discussions for a final treaty* **| basic, framework | guidance | supporting | (legally) binding** *A document signed abroad is as legally binding as one signed at home.* **| constitutional, contractual | historical**

QUANT. **copy**

VERB + DOCUMENT **draft, draw up, prepare, produce, publish, type, write** *The government has produced an important new policy document.* **| revise | disclose** *(law)*, **issue** *a consultative document issued by the Department of Trade and Industry* **| receive | obtain | file** *Copies of the relevant documents must be filed at court.* **| hand over/sb, present, submit** *Supporting documents must be submitted to the supervisory authority.* **| produce** *He was unable to produce the document that he claimed would prove his case.* **| keep | circulate, send (out) | leak** *documents leaked from the government to the press* **| read | go through, read through** *Go through the document checking for errors.* **| search through, sort through** *I had to search through 4,000 documents to find the information I needed.* **| consider, examine, study | accept, adopt, approve, endorse, execute** *(law)*, sign *The conference adopted a document on minority rights.* **| authenticate | forge | refer to | address | attach, enclose** *The relevant documents are enclosed for your information.* **| scan** *Existing paper documents could be scanned into a computer.*

DOCUMENT + VERB **be concerned with sth, concern sth, deal with sth, focus on sth, relate to sth | contain sth, cover sth, include sth** *documents covering various points of concern* **| refer to sth | acknowledge sth, describe sth, detail sth, explain sth, indicate sth, list sth, note sth, outline sth, record sth, say sth, set out sth, state sth, tell sb sth** *The document says they are against tax rebates.* **| call for sth, propose sth, suggest sth** *a document calling for a ceasefire* **| aim at sth, envisage sth, seek sth** *documents aimed at stimulating discussion* **| reveal sth, show sth | purport sth** *Documents leaked to this newspaper purport to reveal that radioactive waste is being illegally dumped on the site.* **| summarize sth | confirm sth | be agreed (on/upon)** *a document agreed with the District Council* **| be called sth, be entitled sth, be headed sth, be known as sth** *a document entitled 'Guidelines for Good Practice'* **| be written** *The document is written in Chinese.* **| exist** *No other genuine document exists.* **| date back from/to … , be dated …** ***documents dating back to the 1920s The document is dated 775.***

PREP. **according to a/the ~** ***According to leaked cabinet documents, no compensation would be paid.*** **| in a/the ~** ***He particularly criticized the terminology in the document.*** **| throughout a/the ~** ***There is a disclaimer throughout the official documents.*** **| ~ about/concerning** ***a document concerning arbitration procedures in Cairo*** **| ~ of** ***a document of 2,000 words a document of 1999 Her journal is an important document of Victorian rural life*** **| ~ on** ***a government document on transport policy***

PHRASES **a draft/version of a document**

2 **computer file**

ADJ. **active, current** ***Highlight*** **a** *passage in the active document and click on the print icon.* | **printed**

VERB + DOCUMENT **open | close | display** *to display documents on screen* **| retrieve | scroll through** *Scroll through the document using the slider bar on the right of the window.* **| search** *a software tool for searching documents and retrieving information* **| create** *To create a new document, select New from the File menu.* **| edit | save** *Save the document before closing.* **| format | spell check | send** *Send and receive documents at the click of a button.* **| receive | print (out)**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Cut and paste is used to move text to a new place in the document.* > Special page at COMPUTER

documentary *noun*

ADJ. **dramatized | fly-on-the-wall | film, radio, television/TV | controversial | science, wildlife, etc. | half-hour, hour-long, forty-minute, etc.**

VERB + DOCUMENTARY **make** *She has made a television documentary on poverty in our cities.* **| film | show | see, watch**

DOCUMENTARY + NOUN **feature, film, programme, series**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There were some interesting interviews in the documentary.* **| ~ about/on** *a documentary about identical twins*

dog *noun*

ADJ. **domestic, family, household, pet | feral, wild | stray | mongrel | pedigree | lap, toy** *The lady was kissing a little lap dog.* **| faithful, friendly | good,** well-behaved, well-trained | **bad** *Bad dog! What are you doing there?* **| dangerous, fierce, killer, savage | mad, rabid | mangy | show | fighting, hunting, working | farm, guard, guide, gun, police, sheep, sledge, sniffer, tracker** *Sniffer dogs were used to find the drugs.* **| top** *(often figurative) The team wanted to prove that they were top dogs in the region.*

QUANT. **pack**

VERB + DOG **have, keep, own** *The dog's owner was fined £500 and banned from keeping dogs for five years.* **| breed** *These dogs have been bred to work as guide dogs for the blind.* **| train** *He's trained his dog to sit on the back of his bike.* **| feed | take for a walk, walk** *I'm just going to walk the dog.* **| neuter** *We didn't want puppies so we had the dog neutered.* **| worm** *The stray dogs are wormed and treated with flea powder.* **| muzzle | destroy, put down** *A dog that savaged a five-year-old child was later destroyed, police have confirmed.*

DOG + VERB **bark, bay, growl, howl, pant, snarl, whine, yap, yelp** *The dog barked loudly at the stranger. The little dogs were yapping at my ankles.* **| bound, roam (sth), run, scamper, trot, walk, wander** *The dog bounded up to me and started licking my hand. Stray dogs roamed the streets at night.* **| come/walk to heel | attack sb/sth, bite sb/sth, go for sb/sth, maul sb/sth, savage sb/sth, set upon sb/sth, snap | lie, stretch (out) | lick | chew sth (up), gnaw (at) sth** *The dog chewed up one of my shoes. A dog was gnawing at an old bone.* **| sniff, snuffle** *A dog was sniffing round my heels.* **| prick up its ears, wag its tail | scratch** *The dog was scratching at the door to be let in.* **| foul sth** *Owners who allow their dogs to foul the footpath will be fined.*

DOG + NOUN **basket | biscuit, food | collar | dirt, excrement, faeces, mess, poo, shit, turd | breeder, handler, lover, owner, trainer, warden** *The dog warden rounds up stray dogs and takes them to the dog pound until claimed.* **| fight | pound | show | racing | track** *Races have been held at this dog track for seventy years.*

dogma *noun*

ADJ. **old | rigid | party, political, religious** *The newspaper seeks to be independent of political dogma.*

VERB + DOGMA **accept | question, reject** *People are beginning to question the old dogmas.*

dole *noun*

VERB + DOLE **claim, go on, sign on** *She lost her job and had to claim dole. As soon as he was made redundant, he signed on the dole.* **| draw, get** *The factory closure will mean another few hundred people drawing the dole.*

DOLE + NOUN **money | queue** *School leavers were joining the dole queue every day.* **| office**

PREP. **off the ~** *Many had come off the dole and set up their own small businesses.* **| on the ~** *She was on the dole for three years before she got a job.*

doll *noun*

ADJ. **little, tiny | china, paper, plastic, porcelain, rag, rubber, wooden** *a child playing with a rag doll* **| baby | Barbie | mechanical | Russian**

VERB + DOLL **play with**

PHRASES **a dolls' house, dolls' clothes**

dollar *nou*n > Note at CURRENCY

domain *noun*

ADJ. **private, public | Internet**

DOMAIN + NOUN **name** *Register a domain name if you want people to find your website.* **| registration**

PREP. **in a/the ~, within a/the ~** *This information is all in the public domain.* **| outside a/the ~** *things that happen outside the domain of the home*

domesticated *adj.*

1 **used to living with people**

VERBS **be** *These animals are only partly domesticated.*

ADV. **fully | partly**

2 **able to cook/clean, etc.**

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **very | thoroughly** *He is thoroughly domesticated and cooks a delicious chicken casserole.* **| quite**

dominance *noun*

ADJ. **clear, complete, overwhelming, total | growing, increasing | cultural, economic, military, political, territorial | market | male**

VERB + DOMINANCE **achieve, assert, assume, establish, exert, gain** *The firm soon achieved complete dominance in the marketplace.* **| have, maintain, retain** *The firm is determined to maintain dominance in the market.* **| challenge, undermine** *Ex-colonial countries began to challenge the cultural dominance of Europe.*

PREP. **~ in** *black American dominance in heavyweight boxing* **| ~ over** *He asserted his dominance over the other party members.*

dominant *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very | completely, overwhelmingly, totally | increasingly | fairly, relatively | economically, politically, socially** *the economically dominant class*

dominate *verb*

ADV. **completely, entirely, totally** *She completely dominated the conversation.* **| increasingly** *His work increasingly dominates his life.* **| largely | overwhelmingly**

domination *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total | cultural, economic, ideological, political | class, male | colonial, foreign, imperial | world | market**

VERB + DOMINATION **seek** *countries that seek world domination* **| achieve, establish** *They achieved political domination of the area.* **| maintain, retain** *The company has struggled to maintain its domination in the marketplace.* **| come under, fall under** *The country came under foreign domination.* **| be free from/of** *The country longs to be free of colonial domination.*

PREP. **under sb's ~** *The country is still under foreign domination.* **| ~ over** *their economic domination over the Far East*

donation *noun*

ADJ. **generous, handsome, large, substantial | small | company, corporate | personal, private | public** *The project is funded by public donation.* **| voluntary | charitable, political | cash, financial | blood, organ**

VERB + DONATION **give, make, send** *He made a generous donation to the charity.* **| get, receive | appeal for, ask for | depend on, need, rely on**

PREP. **in ~s** *The charity has received over $10 million in donations.* **| ~ to** *a donation to a charity* **| ~ towards** *a donation towards the building of a new hospital*

donkey *noun*

VERB + DONKEY **ride**

DONKEY + VERB **bray | graze**

DONKEY + NOUN **cart | ride**

donor *noun*

1 **gives a part of their body**

ADJ. **blood (transfusion), bone marrow, kidney, organ, etc. | potential | suitable** *The operation will go ahead as soon as a suitable donor can be found.*

DONOR + VERB **donate sth, give sth** *Donors give blood twice a year.*

DONOR + NOUN **blood, organ** *Donor organs are constantly required for transplant operations.* **| card**

2 **gives money/goods**

ADJ. **anonymous** *The charity received £50,000 from an anonymous donor.* **| aid** *Japan has been one of the country's biggest aid donors.*

DONOR + VERB **give sth, make a donation, pledge sth** *Donors pledged a total of $1,000 million in relief aid.*

DONOR + NOUN **country, government** *loans from rich donor countries to developing nations*

doom *noun*

ADJ. **approaching, impending**

VERB + DOOM **spell** *Fuel shortages spelt doom for such huge gas-guzzling cars.*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of doom** *As I approached the exam room, I had a feeling of impending doom.*

doomed *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **inevitably | ultimately**

PREP. **to** *The species was doomed to extinction.*

PHRASES **doomed to disappointment/extinction/failure** *The project was doomed to failure from the start.*

door *noun*

ADJ. **open | closed, shut | locked, unlocked | ajar, half-open** *He had left the door ajar. The door was half-open when we got there.* **| back, front, rear, side** *the back door of a house the rear door of a car* **| inner, internal** *The inner door leads to the safe and is always locked after 5 p.m.* **| external, outer** *All external doors should be bolted top and bottom.* **| big, great, heavy, huge, massive, solid, stout, thick** *She had trouble pushing the heavy door open.* **| narrow, wide | glass-panelled, glazed | double** *Go along the corridor and through the double doors.* **| unmarked | automatic, folding, revolving, sliding, swing** *He got stuck in a revolving door. She pushed her way through the swing doors.* **|** bathroom, flat, kitchen, etc. | **car, fridge, garage, lift, stage | trap** (also **trapdoor**) **| magic, mysterious, secret**

VERB + DOOR **fling/throw open, open, pull/push open** *He flung the door open and caught them stuffing a document back into a briefcase.* **| bang, close, pull closed/shut, pull/push to, push closed/shut, shut, slam (shut)** *He pulled the door to.* **| bar, bolt, lock** *He arrived home to find the door barred. Remember to bolt the door before you go to bed.* **| unbar, unbolt, unlock | keep/leave closed/open/shut, keep/leave on the latch** (= closed but not locked), **prop ajar/open** *I left the door on the latch so that I could sneak back in later. Someone had propped the fire door open with a pile of books.* **| come/go in (through), come/go out (of/through), come/go through, slip out of/through** *He came in the side door.* **| bang on, knock at/on** *I banged on the door for ages but still couldn't wake them.* **| answer** *Go and answer the door* (= open the door to sb who has knocked on it). **| see sb to** (= accompany sb who is leaving to the door) **| break down/in** *They had to break the door down to get into the flat.*

DOOR + VERB **creak | burst open, clatter open, creak open, fly open, open, slide open, swing open/shut/to** *The door burst open and a little boy ran in.* **| flap open, hang open** *The car drove off with its rear door flapping open.* **| be/stand ajar, be/stand open** *The door stood ajar so I could see a narrow section of the room.* **| be closed/shut, be jammed (open/shut), be stuck | bang (open/shut), clang open/shut, crash open/shut, rattle, shake** *I was woken by a door banging in the wind.* **| click (shut/to), close, shut, slam (shut) | connect sth, face sth, lead to sth, open onto sth** *The door connecting the two offices is kept locked. This door leads to my bedroom. The door opens onto a sunny terrace.* **| be set in/into the wall** *I stopped at a low oak door set into the stone wall.* **| bear a notice/plate/sign, be marked sth** *I went through the door marked 'Enquiries'.*

DOOR + NOUN **handle, knob | frame, jamb | knocker | bolt,** catch, chain, latch, lock

| key | **mat** (also **doormat**) **| stop** (also **doorstop)** *This big fat dictionary would make a good doorstop.* **| mirror, panel, pillar (on a car)**

PREP. **at the ~** *There's someone at the door.* **| in the ~** *He stood in the door for several minutes before deciding whether he'd stay.* **| through the ~** *He looked through the door to make sure the children were all right.* **| ~ into/to** *the door into the back garden*

PHRASES **close/shut, etc. the door behind you** *He banged the front door behind him as he left.* **| hold/open the door for sb, pop/stick you head round/ through the door** *She popped her head through the door to say goodbye.* **| shut/ slam the door in sb's face**

doorbell *noun*

VERB + DOORBELL **press, ring (on) | answer** *He refused to answer the doorbell.*

DOORBELL + VERB **ring, sound** *I heard the doorbell ring, and went to see who was there.*

PHRASES **a ring at/on the doorbell**

doorway *noun*

ADJ. **open | shop** *We sheltered in a shop doorway.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *A tall figure was standing in the doorway.* **| through a/the ~** *We passed through the doorway and found ourselves in a walled garden.*

dope *noun*

VERB + DOPE **smoke | peddle**

DOPE + NOUN **fiend | scandal | peddler | test** *She was disqualified from competing for a year after failing a dope test.* > Note at DRUG

dosage *noun*

ADJ. **high, low | correct, recommended**

VERB + DOSAGE **give (sb), take** *Always take the correct dosage.* **| increase | reduce**

dose *noun*

ADJ. **hefty, high, large, massive, strong** *a strong dose of painkillers (figurative) The film also contains a hefty dose of comedy.* **| low, small | correct | double, full, single, standard | daily, frequent | fatal, lethal** *a lethal dose of radiation*

VERB + DOSE **receive, take** *patients who receive high doses of this drug I had forgotten to take my dose of antibiotic.* **| administer, give sb** *The nurse will administer the correct dose. She needs to be given a daily dose of the medicine.* **| increase | reduce**

double bass *nou*n > Special page at MUSIC

double *verb*

ADV. **more than** *Our profits have more than doubled this year.* **| almost, nearly, practically, virtually** *The price of houses has nearly doubled in the last ten years.* **| effectively | approximately, roughly**

PREP. **in** *The village has approximately doubled in size since 1960.* **| to** *The party almost doubled its share of the vote to 21.5%.*

doubt *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, grave, real, serious, severe | slight** *Without the slightest doubt this is a remarkable exhibition.* **| gnawing, lingering, nagging, niggling | growing, increasing | personal, private** *He made clear his own private doubts about it.* **| reasonable** *We have established beyond all reasonable doubt that the painting was indeed by Rembrandt.* **| religious**

VERB + DOUBT **arouse, raise** *His failure to appear raises serious doubts as to his reliability.* **| entertain, feel, harbour, have** *She still felt the same niggling doubt: was he really telling the truth?* **| express, voice | clear up, dispel, remove, resolve** *The announcement dispelled any doubts as to the prince's intentions.* **| cast, throw** *Her record of dismissals casts doubt on her ability to hold down a job.* **| call sth into, throw sth into** *The proposed development has been thrown into doubt by the decision.* **| be open to** *Their honesty is open to doubt.*

DOUBT + VERB **appear, arise** *Doubts have arisen over the viability of the schedule.* **| exist** *Considerable doubt exists as to the precise origin of this custom.* **| persist, remain | surround sth** *From the start, doubts surrounded her claim to be the missing heiress.*

PREP. **beyond (a/all/any) ~** *The evidence proves beyond doubt that he is innocent.* **| in ~** *The arrangements for the event still seemed to be in doubt. If in doubt, consult your doctor.* **| without (a) ~** *She is without a doubt the best tennis player I know.* **| ~ about/over** *Some committee members still harboured doubts about the plans.*

PHRASES **beyond/without a shadow of (a) doubt** *This proves without a shadow of doubt that we were right.* **| have your doubts about sth** *They say they'll be here on time, but I have my doubts about that.*

doubt *verb*

ADV. **seriously, very much** *I never seriously doubted his story.* **| privately** *Lee privately doubted the truth of this statement.*

doubtful *adj.*

1 **feeling doubt**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** *Eric was far from sure and Marion looked doubtful.* **| become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very | a bit, a little, rather**

PREP. **about** *She was rather doubtful about the wisdom of eating the two-day-old food.*

2 **unlikely**

VERBS **be, look, seem | remain**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *Even if we could go, which is highly doubtful, John wouldn't be able to come with us.* **| increasingly | a bit, a little, rather, somewhat**

dough *noun*

ADJ. **firm | soft | smooth | sticky | bread, pizza**

QUANT. **ball, lump, piece**

VERB + DOUGH **make | knead, shape** *Knead the dough lightly, then shape it into a round loaf.* **| roll out, turn out** *Turn the dough out onto a lightly floured surface.*

DOUGH + VERB **rise** *Leave the dough to rise.*

downfall *noun*

ADJ. **eventual, ultimate**

VERB + DOWNFALL **bring about, cause, lead to** *a scandal that brought about his downfall* **| contribute to, hasten** *The failure of this scheme contributed to her eventual downfall.* **| plot** *They were found guilty of plotting the downfall of the government.*

DOWNFALL + VERB **come** *The movement's downfall came with the failed coup d'etat.*

PHRASES **be sb's downfall** *His greed was eventually his downfall.*

downpour *noun*

ADJ. **heavy, torrential | continuous, incessant, relentless, steady | sudden**

PREP. **in ~** *We got caught in a torrential downpour.*

downturn *noun*

ADJ. **serious, severe, sharp, significant | mild, slight | economic**

VERB + DOWNTURN **experience, suffer** *The building industry is experiencing a severe downturn in its workload.* **| see, witness**

PREP. **~ in** *The 1990s witnessed a sharp downturn in the party's fortunes.*

dowry *noun*

ADJ. **large, substantial | small**

VERB + DOWRY **give sb, pay (sb) | bring** *His family hoped that his bride would bring a large dowry.*

DOWRY + NOUN **system**

doze *noun*

VERB + DOZE **have** *She had a little doze after lunch.* **| drift into, fall into** *Sitting in an armchair in front of the fire, I soon fell into a doze.*

doze *verb*

ADV. **fitfully** *I dozed fitfully for a few hours.*

draft *noun*

ADJ. **early, first, initial, original, preliminary | rough | final**

VERB + DRAFT **draw up, prepare, produce, write** *She produced an initial draft of her plans.* **| approve** *The preliminary draft of the agreement has been approved.*

DRAFT + NOUN **agreement, bill, budget, constitution, contract, document, law, legislation, letter, plan, proposal, report, treaty**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *These details were not included in the preliminary draft.*

PHRASES **in draft form** *The document is still in draft form.*

draft *verb*

ADV. **carefully, properly | badly, poorly** *Some of the clauses in the contract had been very poorly drafted.*

drain *noun*

1 **pipe/hole that dirty water goes down**

ADJ. **blocked**

VERB + DRAIN **block | clear, unblock | lay** *They were busy laying the drains for the new houses.*

2 **sth that uses up time/money/resources**

ADJ. **heavy, major, serious | brain** *scientists joining the brain drain* (= moving to a country where they can work in better conditions and earn more)

PREP. **~ on** *These losses have been a major drain on the company's resources.*

drain *verb*

1 **make sth empty/dry**

ADV. **thoroughly, well** *Remove the artichokes, drain thoroughly and allow to cool. well-drained soil*

2 **make sb/sth weaker/poorer, etc.**

ADV. **totally, utterly | emotionally, physically | away** *draining away the country's coal reserves*

PREP. **of** *His voice was utterly drained of emotion.*

PHRASES **be/feel drained** *Sue felt exhausted and emotionally drained.*

drama *noun*

1 **play/theatre**

ADJ. **powerful | classical, contemporary, modern | musical | radio, television/TV | costume, historical | courtroom, hospital, police** *Millions follow this hospital drama twice a week.*

VERB + DRAMA **write** *It is very difficult to write good drama.* **| produce** *the first episode of a new police drama produced for television*

DRAMA + NOUN **production | serial, series | festival | critic** *the drama critic for the 'Sunday Times'* **| school, training**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the actors in a drama* **| ~ about** *a powerful television drama about inner-city life* > Note at SUBJECT

2 **exciting event**

ADJ. **human | real-life** *The actor was involved in a real-life drama when he was held up at gunpoint last night.*

DRAMA + VERB **unfold** *a collection of people watching the drama unfold outside the nightclub*

3 **excitement**

ADJ. **high**

QUANT. **touch** *The argument added a touch of drama to an otherwise dull day.*

VERB + DRAMA **be full of** *The afternoon was full of drama and excitement.* **| heighten** *The arrival of the police heightened the drama further.*

PHRASES **a moment of drama**

dramatic *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound**

ADV. **extremely, highly, intensely, very | fairly, quite, rather | suitably** *Her entrance was accompanied by suitably dramatic music.*

drape *verb*

ADV. **casually, loosely | elegantly | beautifully** *Some silk fabrics will drape beautifully.*

PREP. **across, around/round, over** *He sat with his arm draped casually around her shoulders.*

PHRASES **be draped in/with sth** *The body was draped in a blanket.*

draught *noun*

ADJ. **cold, icy** *A cold draught of air blew in from the open window.*

VERB + DRAUGHT **create | prevent**

DRAUGHT + VERB **blow, come, whistle** *a draught coming under the door*

DRAUGHT + NOUN **excluder, proofing** *Fit draught excluders to the bottoms of doors.*

PREP. **~ from** *the draught from the window*

PHRASES **a draught of air**

draw *noun*

ADJ. **goalless, one-all, three-three, etc.**

VERB + DRAW **end in** *The game ended in a two-all draw.* **| earn, get, hold sb to** *San Marino held them to a goalless draw.*

PREP. **~ against, ~ with** *their 1?1 draw with United*

draw *verb*

1 make pictures

ADV. **accurately, beautifully, carefully, clearly, well** *a beautifully drawn picture He draws very well.* | **badly, crudely, roughly** *a crudely drawn child's face*

2 pull

ADV. **half, partly** *The blinds were partly drawn.* | **back** *She drew back the curtains and let the sunlight in.* | **up** | **aside, to one side** *I tried to draw him aside so I could talk to him in private.* | **together** *(figurative) The project enables students to draw together their knowledge, skills and experience.*

PREP. **onto** *She drew me onto the balcony* | **out of** *He drew the cork out of the bottle.* | **to** *I drew my chair up to the fire.* | **towards**

3 attract

ADV. **immediately** | **inevitably, inexorably, irresistibly** *Her gaze was drawn irresistibly to the scene outside.*

PREP. **from** *The scheme has drawn interest from local businessmen.* | **to** *We asked the surfing champion what first drew him to the sport.* **PHRASAL VERBS draw on/upon sth**

ADV. **heavily** *The novelist draws heavily on her personal experiences.* **draw sth up**

ADV. **professionally, properly** *Make sure the contract is properly drawn up.*

drawback *noun*

ADJ. **big, main, major, real, serious | minor, slight | obvious | possible, potential**

VERB + DRAWBACK **have (its/their), suffer from** *This strategy has its drawbacks. The system suffers from two major drawbacks.* **| overcome** *We have to find ways of overcoming these drawbacks.*

PREP. **~ to** *Bad weather was the main drawback to camping in the far north.* **| ~ with** *The one big drawback with the planned scheme was its high cost.*

drawer *noun*

ADJ. **deep, shallow** *a desk with two deep drawers either side* **| open | locked | bottom, middle, top | kitchen | desk, dresser, dressing table | cash, cutlery, filing | secret**

VERB + DRAWER **open, pull open/out, slide open** *She pulled open the second drawer down to find the money had gone.* **| close, push in/shut, shut** *He pushed the drawer shut with a bang.* **| reach into** *She reached into the drawer and found the key to the safe.* **| go through, look through, ransack, rummage in/through** *What do you think you are doing, rummaging through my drawers?*

PREP. **from/out of a/the ~** *She took the gun from the drawer.* **| in a/the ~** *He put the letters in the drawer.*

drawing *noun*

ADJ. **charcoal, ink, line, pencil** *a set of charcoal drawings by a local artist* **| scale** *a scale drawing of a jumbo jet* **| engineering, technical, working** *a working drawing of the proposed power station* **| life** *He earned money modelling for life drawing classes.*

VERB + DRAWING **do, make** *He made a drawing of how the Roman villa must have looked.*

DRAWING + VERB **show sth** *The drawing shows the Market Square.*

DRAWING + NOUN **board** *These days, designers spend more time at the computer than at the drawing board.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The door opened onto a courtyard, as shown in the drawing.* **| ~ by** *a pencil drawing by Picasso* > Note at ART

drawl *noun*

ADJ. **flat, nasal, slow, soft | Brooklyn, Southern, etc.**

PHRASES **in a ~** *'Howdy, pardner,' he said in his slow Texan drawl.* **| with a ~** *She spoke with soft Southern drawl.*

drawl *verb*

ADV. **lazily, sardonically, slowly, softly** *'Come in,' he drawled softly.*

dread *noun*

ADJ. **great, mortal** *Her greatest dread was that she would lose her job.* **| constant**

VERB + DREAD **feel, have** *He had a dread of hospitals. the dread she felt at the thought of meeting him again* **| live in** *He lived in constant dread that one day he might be found out.* **| fill sb with** *Does the thought of flying fill you with dread?*

PREP. **in ~ of** *After her shoplifting spree she lived in mortal dread of being found out.* **| ~ of** *her dread of discovery*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of dread**

dread *verb*

ADV. **absolutely** *I've got to go and tell the headmaster tomorrow and I'm absolutely dreading it!* **| rather | always** *He had always dreaded being singled out.*

dreadful *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, smell, sound, taste** *Poor thing! You look absolutely dreadful!* (= very ill)

ADV. **really** *I feel really dreadful about letting you down.* **| absolutely, quite, truly** *To be honest, her singing was quite dreadful. a truly dreadful hat* **| pretty, rather**

PREP. **for** *It must have been dreadful for you!*

dream *noun*

1 **while you are asleep**

ADJ. **awful, bad, disturbing, strange** *a child frightened by a bad dream* **| pleasant | vivid | recurrent | erotic, wet | prophetic** *He had a prophetic dream about a train crash the night before the rail disaster.*

VERB + DREAM **dream, have** *She fell asleep and dreamed strange dreams. I had a very disturbing dream last night.* **| awake/wake from, be awoken/woken from** *I was awoken from my dream by a knock at the door.* **| interpret | haunt** *Images of the crash still haunted his dreams years later.*

DREAM + VERB **come true** *I hope my dream about prison won't come true!* **| haunt sb** *vivid dreams that regularly haunted him*

DREAM + NOUN **interpretation**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *In her dream, she was on board a ship heading for America.* **| ~ about** *a recurrent dream about being late for an exam*

PHRASES **as (if) in a dream** *She found herself standing in front of the crowded hall and making her speech, as if in a dream.* **| sweet dreams** *'Sweet dreams,' she said, turning off the light.*

2 **sth that you want very much to happen**

ADJ. **big, great** *Her biggest dream was to become a singer.* **| lifelong | distant** *His plans to travel the world now seemed like a distant dream.* **| impossible** *Peace no longer seemed an impossible dream.* **| utopian | romantic** *She had this romantic dream of living in a windmill.*

VERB + DREAM **cherish, have** *the great utopian dream that they have cherished for so long* **| achieve, fulfil, realize** *At last his dreams were fulfilled.* **| shatter** *The injury shattered her dream of running in the Olympics.* **| keep alive** *The victory keeps San Marino's dream of a World Cup place alive.*

DREAM + VERB **come true** *He put all his efforts into making his dream of a united country come true.* **| turn into a nightmare, turn sour** *Their dream turned into a* *nightmare as the cruise ship began to sink.*

DREAM + NOUN **holiday, home, house** *After Betty retired, she and her husband designed and built their dream house.* **| world** *The government is living in a dream world if they think voters will agree to higher taxes.*

PREP. **~ of** *their dream of a fairer world*

PHRASES **the … of sb's dreams** *the house of her dreams* **| beyond sb's wildest dreams** *They achieved a success beyond their wildest dreams.* **| a dream come true** *Their holiday in the Bahamas was a dream come true.*

dream *verb*

ADV. **always** *As a child she always dreamt of working with animals.* **| never** *I never dreamt I'd actually get the job.* **| still | long** *People have long dreamt of an egalitarian society.* **| just, only** *It was the kind of trip most of us can only dream about.*

VERB + DREAM **wouldn't** *I wouldn't dream of going without you* (= I would never go without you).

PREP. **about, of**

dress *noun*

1 piece of clothing

ADJ. **ankle-length, full-length, long | short | skimpy | clinging, figure-hugging, tight, tight-fitting | loose-fitting, shapeless | full-skirted | backless, high-necked, low-cut, off-the-shoulder, revealing, sleeveless, strapless | slinky | cotton, silk, etc. | day, evening, Sunday | ball, cocktail, dinner, maternity, party, wedding**

VERB + DRESS **zip (up) | unzip | hitch up, lift, pull up** *She hitched up her long dress so it wouldn't drag in the mud.* **| pull down | smooth** *She sat down and smoothed her dress over her legs.*

DRESS + NOUN **material | shop | designer | size**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She appeared in a slinky satin dress.* > Special page at CLOTHES

2 clothes for either men or women

ADJ. **ceremonial, formal | casual, informal | correct | evening | modern | period | national, traditional** *He was wearing traditional Scottish dress.* **| fancy | battle, military | civilian**

DRESS + NOUN **code** *The club has a strict dress code.* **| sense** *He's got poor dress sense.* **| shirt | uniform** *in full dress uniform*

PREP. **in ... ~** *a performance of 'Hamlet' in modern dress*

dress *verb*

1 **put on clothes**

ADV. **hurriedly, quickly | slowly | carefully**

PREP. **in** *He dressed carefully in the brown suit he had been married in.*

PHRASES **be fully dressed** *She lay down on her bed, fully dressed.* **| get dressed** *She got dressed quickly.*

2 **wear clothes**

ADV. **beautifully, elegantly, fashionably, immaculately, impeccably, neatly, nicely, smartly, well** *Susan always dresses very elegantly. She was determined to be the best dressed woman at the wedding.* **| badly, poorly, shabbily | appropriately, suitably | unsuitably | decently, properly, respectably | improperly | plainly, simply, soberly | ostentatiously, nattily, richly | casually | formally | expensively | warmly | scantily | identically** *The twins were dressed identically.*

PREP. **for** *I have to dress smartly for work.* **| in** *The women were all dressed in blue skirts and white blouses.*

dressing *noun*

1 **covering put on a wound**

ADJ. **clean, fresh, sterile | surgical, wound**

VERB + DRESSING **apply, put on** *Clean the wound and put on a fresh dressing.* **| change | remove**

2 **sauce for food, especially salads**

ADJ. **salad | French | herb | vinaigrette**

PREP. **in a ~, with a ~** *salad with a vinaigrette dressing* **| ~ for** *a herb dressing for fish*

drift *noun*

1 **slow movement towards sth**

ADJ. **gradual, slow**

PREP. **~ (away) from** *the drift of people away from rural areas into urban slums* **| ~ (back) to** *As the strike went on, there was a gradual drift back to work.* **| ~ into** *his drift into crime* **| ~ towards**

2 **general meaning of sth**

ADJ. **general, main**

VERB + DRIFT **catch, follow, get** *I didn't follow the speech exactly, but I caught the main drift of what was being said.* **| lose** *I lost the drift of what she was saying.*

3 **pile of snow/sand made by the wind**

ADJ. **deep, great | sand, snow** (also **snowdrift)**

drift *verb*

1 **be carried along by the wind/water**

ADV. **slowly | helplessly** *Cold and hungry, they drifted helplessly towards the Arctic.* **| downriver, downstream, downwind** *The boat drifted slowly downstream.* **| along, back, down, out**

PREP. **from, to, towards, etc.** *drifting out to sea*

2 **move slowly/without purpose**

ADV. **aimlessly | slowly | quietly, silently | about, around/round, apart, away, back, down, off, up** *Voices drifted up through the floorboards.*

VERB + DRIFT **begin to | seem to | allow sth to** *He allowed his thoughts to drift back to his conversation with Carrie.*

PREP. **about/around/round** *He spent the day drifting aimlessly about the house.* **| across** *She drifted across the room to where we were standing.* **| between** *She began to drift between sleep and wakefulness.* **| from** *We seem to be drifting away from the point.* **| in, into** *He drifted into teaching, but never really enjoyed it.* **| out of** *He drifted in and out of consciousness.*

drink *noun*

ADJ. **cold, cool, iced, refreshing** *I could do with a nice cool drink.* | **hot, warm** | **milky** | **fizzy** | **low-alcohol, non-alcoholic, reduced-alcohol, soft** | **alcoholic** | **stiff, strong** | **diet, low-calorie** | **long** *She took a long drink of cold water.* | **celebratory** | **welcome** *You will be offered a welcome drink on arrival at the hotel.* | **farewell** | **early-evening, lunchtime** | **leisurely** *We were enjoying a leisurely drink before dinner.* | **quick** | **quiet**

QUANT. **round** *We ordered a round of drinks while waiting for a table.*

VERB + DRINK **drink, have** *I'll just drink my drink then we can go. She had a hot drink and went to bed.* | **sip** | **down, finish, knock back** *He knocked back his drink in one go and ordered another one.* | **take** *He took a drink of his beer and sat down.* | **go for** *Would you like to go for a drink after work?* | **buy (sb), get (sb), offer (sb), order (sb)** *Can I buy you a drink?* | **pour (sb), serve (sb)** *He poured himself a stiff drink to calm his nerves.* | **spike** *The robbers spiked his drink before taking his wallet and passport.* | **drive sb to** *Her money problems drove her to drink* (= made her start drinking a lot of alcohol). | **turn to** *After his wife died, he turned to drink.*

DRINK + NOUN **drinks party** *We've been invited to a drinks party.* | **drinks cabinet/ cupboard** *She took a bottle from the drinks cabinet.* | **problem** *She suspected her boss had a drink problem.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Do you want ice in your drink?* | **~ of** *I'll have a drink of milk, please.*

drink *verb*

1 **take liquid into the body**

ADV. **greedily** *I pulled the ring-top from the can and drank greedily.* **| down, up** *He filled a cup with water and drank it down in one gulp. Drink up, and let's go home.*

VERB + DRINK **get yourself sth to, find sth to, have sth to** *Go and get yourself something to eat and drink.*

PREP. **from** *He drank from a tumbler.* **| through** *drinking lemonade through a straw*

PHRASES **eat and drink**

2 **drink alcohol**

ADV. **excessively, heavily, to excess, too much** *He's been drinking heavily since he lost his job.* **| in moderation, moderately, sensibly** *One way of persuading people to drink sensibly is to provide good-tasting alternatives with less alcohol.* **| steadily** *She had been drinking steadily since the early morning.*

PHRASES **drink and drive** *The campaign aims to persuade people not to drink and drive.* **| drink like a fish** (= drink a lot) *Simon was drinking like a fish that evening.* **| drink yourself to death** *He knew that he was probably drinking himself to death.*

drinker *noun*

ADJ. **habitual, hard, heavy** *This liver condition is common in heavy drinkers.* **| moderate | problem** *help for the families and friends of problem drinkers* **| social** *She is a social drinker only?she never drinks at home.* **| beer, coffee, tea, etc.** *I'm not a big tea drinker.*

drinking *noun*

ADJ. **excessive, heavy** *the health problems associated with heavy drinking* **| moderate | underage** *new measures aimed at preventing underage drinking*

VERB + DRINKING **cut down on, limit** *His doctor had advised him to limit his drinking.*

DRINKING + NOUN **session | companion**

PHRASES **a bout of drinking**

drip *noun*

1 **water dripping**

ADJ. **slow, steady**

PREP. **~ of** *the steady drip of water from the tap*

2 **drop of water that falls down from sb/sth**

VERB + DRIP **catch** *There were buckets to catch the drips from the ceiling.*

DRIP + VERB **fall** *Drips fell from the roof of the cave.*

PREP. **~ from** *drips from the tap*

3 **medical equipment**

ADJ. **intravenous | saline**

VERB + DRIP **fix up, set up | be attached to, be on** *He is on a saline drip.* **| attach sb to, put sb on | take sb off** *He was taken off his drip last night.*

drive *noun*

1 **car journey**

ADJ. **long | easy, short | eight-hour, sixty-mile, etc. | leisurely | pleasant, scenic** *It's a pleasant drive to the coast.* **| test**

VERB + DRIVE **go for, take** *Let's go for a drive.*

PREP. **within a ~** *All my family live within an hour's drive.*

PHRASES **a … drive away** *The lakes are only a short drive away.*

2 **way a vehicle is moved**

ADJ. **all-wheel, four-wheel, front-wheel, rear-wheel | left-hand, right-hand** *Left-hand drive cars make driving in Britain difficult.*

3 **path/road outside a house**

ADJ. **sweeping, winding | gravel/gravelled | tree-lined | private | front**

DRIVE + VERB **sweep, swing** *A gravel drive swept between manicured lawns.*

PREP. **down the ~, in the ~, on the ~** *There was a car parked on the drive.* **| up the ~** *He walked up the front drive of the vicarage.*

4 **energy/determination**

ADJ. **competitive | personal | narrative** *A lack of narrative drive leaves the reader with piecemeal vignettes.*

VERB + DRIVE **have | lack** *He lacks the competitive drive needed to succeed.*

5 **desire/need**

ADJ. **innate, inner, instinctive/instinctual | creative | emotional, sex/sexual**

6 effort

ADJ. **big | relentless | national, nationwide | cost-cutting, efficiency, export, fundraising, marketing, membership, modernization, recruitment, sales | anti-corruption, anti-drug, etc.**

VERB + DRIVE **launch** *We're going to launch a big recruitment drive in the autumn.*

PREP. **~ against** *a drive against corruption* **| ~ by** *the recent recruitment drive by the police* **| ~ for** *the country's drive for modernization* **| ~ towards** *a drive towards higher safety standards*

7 computing

ADJ. **CD-ROM, disk, DVD, floppy, hard, zip**

8 in sport

ADJ. **powerful, strong, thunderous | angled, crisp | left-foot, right-foot** (in football) *Cole scored with a thunderous left-foot drive.* **| backhand, forehand (in tennis)** *a forehand drive down the line*

VERB + DRIVE **hit | hook, slice** (in golf) > Special page at SPORT

drive *verb*

ADV. **fast, quickly** *You shouldn't drive so fast! She drove quickly back to the office.* **| slowly | carefully | recklessly** *He was arrested for driving recklessly.* **| around, away, back, off, on** *She got into the car and drove away.*

PREP. **from, to** *driving from London to Manchester*

PHRASES **drink and drive**

driver *noun*

ADJ. **careful, good, safe | bad, dangerous, reckless | drunk/drunken, hit-and-run** *He was killed by a drunken driver.* **| experienced, inexperienced | learner** *Learner drivers are not allowed on the motorways.* **| racing, rally | ambulance, bus, cab, car, coach, engine, lorry, tanker, taxi, train, truck, van** > Note at JOB

driving licence *nou*n

ADJ. **current | clean | full | provisional**

VERB + DRIVING LICENCE **have, hold | lose**

driving *noun*

ADJ. **good, safe** *a new campaign to promote safe driving* **| aggressive, bad, careless, dangerous, reckless** *She was charged with reckless driving.* **| drink, drunk, drunken** *Police stopped 30 motorists for drink driving on New Year's Eve.*

VERB + DRIVING **be banned from, be disqualified from** *He was banned from driving for six months after failing a breath test.*

DRIVING + NOUN **seat | instructor, lesson | test | offence | charge** *There wasn't enough evidence for a dangerous driving charge.* **| ban** *She was given a large fine and a two-year driving ban.*

drizzle *noun*

ADJ. **fine, light, thin | steady | patchy**

DRIZZLE + VERB **fall** *Light drizzle fell all afternoon.*

PREP. **in/through a/the ~** *We walked home through the drizzle.*

drone *noun*

ADJ. **faint | low | distant | constant, continuous, steady**

VERB + DRONE **hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *The planes flew overhead with a low drone.* **| ~ of** *the continuous drone of the engine*

drop *noun*

1 **reduction**

ADJ. **big, considerable, dramatic, huge, large, massive, significant, substantial | slight, small | rapid, sharp, sudden | steady | catastrophic**

VERB + DROP **suffer** *The restaurant has suffered a big drop in trade.* **| cause, lead to**

PREP. **~ in** *The glut of coffee led to a sharp drop in prices.*

2 **vertical distance down from a place**

ADJ. **sheer, steep, vertical** *The cliff plunged in a sheer drop down to the beach.* **| long**

3 **small round mass of liquid**

DROP + VERB **fall** *Great drops of rain started to fall.* **| roll down sth**

PREP. **~ of** *Large drops of sweat rolled down her face.*

drop *verb*

1 **allow sth to fall**

ADV. **accidentally, carelessly | almost, nearly | promptly** *He saw Emma and promptly dropped his tray of drinks.*

PREP. **in/into, on/onto** *I accidentally dropped my glasses into the water.*

2 **jump/move downwards**

ADV. **heavily | gently, lightly | quickly | limply, uselessly** *His arms dropped uselessly to his sides.* **| down, open** *Her mouth dropped open in disbelief.*

VERB + DROP **let sth** *She smiled and let her eyes drop again.* **| be/feel ready to** *I feel ready to drop* (= because I am so tired).

PREP. **into, onto, to** *He dropped lightly down onto the lawn beneath.*

PHRASES **drop like a stone** *(figurative) Her heart dropped like a stone at this news.*

3 **become lower**

ADV. **considerably, dramatically, drastically, sharply, significantly** *The price of oil has dropped significantly.* **| slightly | fast, rapidly | steadily | further**

VERB + DROP **be likely/unlikely to** *Sales are likely to drop further.*

PREP. **below** *The temperature rarely drops below 30°C.* **| by** *The price has dropped by 15 per cent.* **| from, to** *The number of children in the class has dropped from 25 to 18.*

4 **slope downwards**

ADV. **sharply, steeply | away**

PREP. **into/to/towards** *The land dropped steeply away into a small valley.*

5 **no longer include sb in sth**

ADV. **quietly**

PREP. **from** *He has been quietly dropped from the England team.* **| in favour of**

6 **stop doing sth/be stopped**

ADV. **quietly** *The subject was quietly dropped.* **| suddenly** *He suddenly dropped his habitual banter.* **| eventually, finally | altogether** *When nobody volunteered, the idea was finally dropped altogether.*

VERB + DROP **let sth** *Can't we just let the matter drop?* **| agree to, decide to** *Both countries have agreed to drop border controls.*

PREP. **in favour of** *The formal grade of Geologist was dropped in favour of Scientific Officer.*

drought *noun*

ADJ. **severe, terrible, worst** *It has been the worst drought in the country's history.* **| long, prolonged | summer**

VERB + DROUGHT **have** *England has had several summer droughts in recent years.* **| cause | break** *A week of good rains has broken the drought.*

DROUGHT + VERB **affect sth** *Large areas of Africa are affected by severe drought.*

DROUGHT + NOUN **conditions**

PREP. **during/in ~** *Some of the newer plants in the garden died during the drought.*

PHRASES **in times of drought, months/years of drought**

drug *noun*

1 **substance used as a medicine**

ADJ. **powerful, strong | modern, new | wonder** *They're hailing it as the new wonder drug.* **| sedative | anti-cancer, anti-inflammatory, anti-malarial, etc. | prescription** *You used to be able to buy this medicine over the counter, but it is now a prescription drug.*

QUANT. **course, dose**

VERB + DRUG **be on, take** *Are you taking any other drugs at present?* **| prescribe (sb), put sb on** *The doctor put me on anti-inflammatory drugs.* **| give sb, treat sb with | administer, give sb** *The nurses came round to give the patients their drugs.* **| develop** *new drugs that have been developed recently* **| be resistant to, not respond to** *Some infections are now resistant to drugs.*

DRUG + VERB **cure sth, help sth, treat sth** *drugs that help the growth of skin tissue*

DRUG + NOUN **company**

PREP. **~ against** *a powerful drug against tuberculosis* **| ~ for** *He's taking drugs for depression.*

2 **illegal substance**

ADJ. **illegal | addictive, hallucinogenic | dangerous, hard** *heroin and other hard drugs* **| soft** (= not considered very dangerous) *Many addicts start on soft drugs, such as cannabis.* **| designer** (= artificially produced) *She took a tablet of the designer drug Ecstasy.*

VERB + DRUG **inject (See note for more verbs.)**

DRUG + NOUN **baron, pusher | cartel | misuse | drug/drugs charges, offence | squad | war** *the latest moves in the drug war* (See note for more nouns.)

PHRASES **drink and drugs** *the dangers of drink and drugs* > Note at DRUG

drum *nou*n

ADJ. **bass, kettle, side, snare**

VERB + DRUM **bang, beat, hit**

DRUM + NOUN **kit, machine | beat, pattern, rhythm, roll | major, majorette**

PHRASES **a roll of drums** > Special page at MUSIC

drunk *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound** *I was beginning to feel very drunk.* **| get** *Harry went out and got drunk last night.* **| get sb, make sb** *Andrew decided to try and get Sharon drunk. The wine had made him drunk.*

ADV. **blind, completely, extremely, hideously, hopelessly, horribly, really, roaring, very** *He came home blind drunk, as usual.* **| almost** *(often figurative) She was almost drunk with all these new impressions.* **| fairly, half, a little, pretty, quite, rather, slightly** *He was still half drunk.*

PREP. **with** *(figurative) drunk with fatigue*

dry *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get, go, run** *Come into the warm and get dry, both of you. Ruth felt her mouth go dry. The wells in most villages in the region have run dry. (figurative) Vaccine supplies started to run dry as the flu outbreak reached epidemic proportions.* **| keep, remain, stay** *We managed to keep dry by huddling in a doorway. There is every prospect of the weather remaining dry this week.* **| pat sb/sth, rub sb/sth, towel sb** *Rinse the mushrooms and pat dry. He towelled himself dry.* **| bleed sb, milk sb, squeeze sb, suck sb** *(all figurative) The big corporations are bleeding some of these small countries dry* (= taking all their money). **| keep sth** *This type of wound is best kept dry without a dressing.*

ADV. **excessively, extremely, very | bone, completely, perfectly, quite, thoroughly, totally** *The river was bone dry. Make sure the paint is thoroughly dry.* **| almost, nearly | barely, hardly, scarcely** *(often figurative) The ink was scarcely dry on the ceasefire agreement before fighting broke out again.* **| mainly, mostly** *The day will start bright and mainly dry.* **| a bit, a little, rather, reasonably, relatively**

dry *verb*

ADV. **carefully, completely, thoroughly** *Wait until the paint has completely dried. Always dry clothes thoroughly before you wear them again.* **| quickly | slowly | naturally | off, out** *We left the wood in the shed to dry out.*

VERB + DRY **allow sth to, leave sth to, let sth** *It's best to let your hair dry naturally.* **PHRASAL VERBS dry up**

1 **become empty of water**

ADV. **completely** *It's been so hot this year that the pond has dried up completely.*

2 **be no longer available**

ADV. **completely** *Funds have completely dried up.* **| virtually**

dubious *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | become**

ADV. **distinctly, extremely, highly, very** *some highly dubious information* **| rather, somewhat | morally** *It sounds a morally dubious proposition.*

duck *noun*

ADJ. **wild | plastic, rubber** *A rubber duck floated in the bath.* **| roast**

QUANT. **flock, flotilla (only used for ducks that are swimming)** *A flotilla of ducks bobbed near the shore.*

VERB + DUCK **feed** *Every afternoon they went to the park to feed the ducks.*

DUCK + VERB **quack | paddle, swim** *The ducks paddled furiously towards the bread.* **| bob | dive | dabble** *Some species of duck dive for food, while others dabble for plants and insects near the surface.* **| waddle** *A family of ducks waddled along the river bank.* **| nest | migrate**

DUCK + NOUN **breast** *Slice the duck breast and serve.* **| egg | pond**

duke *noun* > Note at PEER

dull *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become, get** *The work gets a bit dull at times.* **| make sth** *The long lectures made the afternoon dull.* **| find sth**

ADV. **deadly, extremely, stupefyingly, very** *The film was long and deadly dull.* **| a bit, a little, fairly, pretty, rather, somewhat | disappointingly**

dumb *adj.*

1 **unable to speak**

VERBS **be | become, be struck** *They were struck dumb by some sort of shock.*

PREP. **with** *She sat there, dumb with rage.*

PHRASES **deaf and dumb**

2 **stupid**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** *I'm sure my question sounded really dumb.* **| act, play** *I decided to act dumb.*

ADV. **really, very | pretty, rather**

dump *noun*

ADJ. **garbage, refuse, rubbish, waste** *cleaning up a toxic waste dump* **| nuclear**

DUMP + NOUN **site** *Local residents have organized a protest against the planned dump site.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *Radioactive waste has been found at the dump.* **| to a/the ~** *taking rubbish to the dump* **| ~ for** *a new dump for nuclear waste*

dump *verb*

ADV. **illegally** *The firm had illegally dumped toxic waste.* **| legally | unceremoniously** *They carried him down to the beach and dumped him unceremoniously in the freezing water.* **| at sea** *dumping sewage at sea* **| down** *He dumped the boxes down in the kitchen.*

duplicate *noun*

VERB + DUPLICATE **make** *We made a duplicate of the key.*

PREP. **in ~** *The contract is prepared in duplicate, so that both parties can sign it.*

duplicate *verb*

ADV. **exactly** *The original experiment cannot be exactly duplicated.* | **simply** *I wanted to avoid simply duplicating work that had already been done.*

duplication *noun*

ADJ. **unnecessary, wasteful** *Duties have been reassigned to avoid wasteful duplication of work.*

VERB + DUPLICATION **avoid, eliminate, prevent, reduce** *The new procedures should reduce duplication of medical care and treatment.*

duration *noun*

ADJ. **brief, short | long | indefinite | maximum | overall, total** *We took four trains, and the overall duration of the journey was 72 hours.* **| average, expected, likely** *the expected duration of the disease*

PREP. **for the ~ (of)** *She stayed there for the duration of the journey.* **| of … ~** *The next contract will be of shorter duration.* **| throughout the ~ of** *This continued throughout the duration of their marriage.*

dusk *noun*

ADJ. **approaching, gathering**

DUSK + VERB **approach, fall, gather** *Dusk was falling as we drove home.*

PREP. **after ~, at ~, before ~, in the ~** *The lamps twinkled in the gathering dusk.*

PHRASES **from dawn to dusk**

dust *noun*

ADJ. **fine | brick, coal, radioactive**

QUANT. **cloud, layer** *The tractor came up the track in a cloud of dust. There was a layer of fine dust on the table.* **| particle, speck** *Remove any particles of dust on the surface of the paint. microscopic specks of dust*

VERB + DUST **gather** *Her chess set lay on a shelf gathering dust.* **| be covered in/with**

DUST + VERB **lie** *The dust now lay in a thick layer on her piano.*

DUST + NOUN **cloud | particle | storm**

dustbin *noun*

VERB + DUSTBIN **chuck sth in, dump sth in, throw sth in** *She chucked the mouldy potatoes in the dustbin.* **| go in** *These old shoes can go in the dustbin now.* **| be consigned to, be destined for** *(figurative) The politicians who lost the elections will be consigned to the dustbin of history.* **| empty** *How regularly are the dustbins emptied?* **| put out** *We put out the dustbins on a Wednesday morning before the van comes.*

DUSTBIN + NOUN **bag, liner | lid | man** *The dustbin men forgot to empty our bin this morning.*

PREP. **~ of** *(figurative) The pollution in this country makes it the dustbin of Europe.*

duty *noun*

1 **sth that you have to do because it is right or expected**

ADJ. **contractual, legal, mandatory, statutory** *Retailers have a statutory duty to provide goods suitable for their purpose.* | **general, primary** *the general duty of the police to preserve the peace* | **professional** | **civic, public** *I feel it is my civic duty to vote.* | **patriotic** | **family, filial, parental** | **ethical, moral** *He felt it was his moral duty to help his neighbour.* | **absolute, bounden, fundamental, sacred, solemn** *I feel it's my bounden duty to try and help her.*

VERB + DUTY **have, owe** *(law) You have a legal duty to take reasonable care. The railway company owes a duty of care to all its customers.* | **carry out, do, fulfil, meet, perform** *She put down the phone and went out, her duty done. She felt she had fulfilled her duty by providing him with a son.* | **fail in** *He had failed in his duty towards his daughter.* | **neglect, shirk** *I'd be shirking my duty if I didn't warn him.* | **assign, charge sb with, impose** *It was a duty imposed by her father.* | **assume, take on** *He took on the duty of maintaining the family home.*

DUTY + VERB **call** *I wanted to stop and chat, but duty called and I went back to the office.*

PREP. **under a/the ~** *You are under a statutory duty to keep accurate records.* | **~ of** *It's the duty of each and every one of us to do their best for the team. They have a duty of confidentiality.* | **~ to, ~ towards** *They have a duty to their parents to work hard.*

PHRASES **a breach of duty** *It was a clear breach of professional duty.* | **do your duty** *I suppose we'd better do our duty and report the accident.* | **do your duty by sb** *You feel that you have to do your duty by your children.* | **be duty bound to do sth** *An employer is not duty bound to provide a reference when an employee leaves.* | **(above and) beyond the call of duty** *The time he put in helping new recruits went beyond the call of duty.* | **feel it your duty to do sth** *I felt it my duty to go to the police.* | **in breach of a duty** *(formal) It was ruled that the injured man was in breach of his duty by not wearing the safety equipment provided.* | **a sense of duty** *I did it out of a sense of duty.*

2 **tasks that you do when you are at work**

ADJ. **light** *When I returned to work after my illness I was put on light duties.* |

onerous | day, night *At 10.45 p.m. she reported for night duty.* **| beat, escort, guard, point, sentry** *Police usually do beat duty in pairs. The traffic lights were not working so there was a policeman on point duty.* **| daily, routine | official | administrative, professional, secretarial | domestic, household** *My household duties were not particularly onerous.* **| military**

VERB + DUTY **have** *The members of staff each have their own duties.* **| carry out, discharge, do, perform** *She was unable to carry out her duties because she was too ill.* **| come on, go on, report for** *Colleagues became suspicious when he failed to report for duty.* **| come off, go off** *What time do you go off duty?* **| neglect, shirk** *He was accused of neglecting his professional duties.* **| resume, return to** *He leaves hospital tomorrow and is expected to resume his duties at the beginning of next month.* **| be released from** *Her son was released from duty in the army to visit her in hospital.* **| be relieved of, be suspended from** *When he failed to turn up for training, he was relieved of his duties as captain.*

DUTY + NOUN **doctor, nurse, officer, pharmacist** *He went to the police station and spoke to the duty officer.*

PREP. **off ~** *I'm off duty tomorrow night.* **| on ~** *You're not allowed to drink alcohol on duty.*

PHRASES **the execution/performance of your duties** *The company is liable if you are injured during the execution of your duty.*

3 **tax**

ADJ. **heavy, high** *the heavy duty on cigarettes* **| low | customs, excise, export, import** *excise duty on spirits* **| alcohol, fuel, tobacco, etc.** *Tobacco duty is a major source of revenue for the government.* **| death**

QUANT. **amount** *We tried to estimate the amount of duty we would have to pay.*

VERB + DUTY **put on, slap on** *They are going to put duty on foreign cars.* **| take off | increase, put up, raise** *They're going to put up the duty on tobacco.* **| cut, lower, reduce | pay | avoid, evade** *They claim that the wine is for personal use and so evade the duty.* **| be liable to** *Perfume is liable to import duty.* **| carry** *Cider carries duty at the lower rate.* **| be exempt from** *Beer for personal use is exempt from duty.*

PREP. **in ~** *By changing its supplier, the company saved thousands of pounds in import duty.* **| ~ on** *You have to pay duty on all electrical goods.*

duvet *noun*

ADJ. **double, king-size, single | light, lightweight, thick, thin | warm**

VERB + DUVET **pull** *She climbed into bed and pulled the duvet over her.* **| fling back, kick off, throw back** *He flung back the duvet and got out of bed.*

DUVET + NOUN **cover**

PREP. **beneath/under a/the ~** *He snuggled down under the warm duvet.*

dweller *noun*

ADJ. **city, town, urban | country, rural | slum** *the poor slum dwellers of the capital city* **| cave, forest, hill**

dwelling *noun*

ADJ. **permanent | private | family | human** *The building looked more like a doll's house than a human dwelling.* **| characterful, elegant**

VERB + DWELLING **convert sth into** *an application to convert the old barn into a dwelling* **| occupy**

DWELLING + NOUN **house, place**

dwindle *verb*

ADV. **fast, quickly, rapidly** *Supplies of coal are dwindling fast.* **| gradually, slowly | steadily | away** *Membership of the club had dwindled away to nothing.*

PREP. **to** *Profits slowly dwindled to nothing.*

dye *noun*

ADJ. **fabric, food, hair, wood, etc. | chemical, synthetic | natural, plant, vegetable**

PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *The cloth is then soaked in blue dye.*

dynamic *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain** *The business has managed to change and remain dynamic.*

ADV. **highly, truly** *These countries are characterized by highly dynamic economies.* **| fully | increasingly | essentially, fundamentally** *The process is essentially dynamic with ideas and feedback flowing both ways.*

dynamite *noun*

1 **explosive**

QUANT. **stick**

VERB + DYNAMITE **blow sth up with, use** *They used five tons of dynamite to blow up the rock.* **| detonate**

DYNAMITE + VERB **explode**

2 **sb/sth that causes great excitement/shock, etc.**

ADJ. **absolute, pure | political** *Don't mention the single currency?it's political dynamite.*

dynasty *noun*

ADJ. **ancient** *Scotland's ancient dynasty* **| great | royal | ruling** *the ruling dynasties of the Visigoths*

VERB + DYNASTY **establish, found | bring to an end, overthrow**

DYNASTY + VERB **begin | come to an end, end | last, reign**

PREP. **during a/the ~** *a porcelain figure made during the Tang dynasty* **| from a/the ~** *bowls and pots from the twelfth dynasty* **| under a/the ~** *The civil service was established under the previous dynasty.*

PHRASES **the end/fall of a dynasty, the founder of a dynasty, a member of a dynasty, the rise of a dynasty** *the rise and fall of the Habsburg dynasty*

dysentery *noun*

ADJ. **amoebic**

QUANT. **attack | outbreak** > Special page at ILLNESS

eager *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become**

ADV. **only too, really, very** *They were only too eager to help us.* **| increasingly | quite**

PREP. **for** *We were eager for news.*

eagle *noun*

EAGLE + VERB **circle, fly, soar | swoop | catch sth, prey on sth | nest | breed**

EAGLE + NOUN **eye** *(figurative) The tiny error didn't escape the eagle eye of her boss.*

ear *noun*

1 **part of the body**

ADJ. **left, right | inner, middle, outer | big, large | long** *a rabbit with long floppy ears* **| pointed/pointy | floppy | torn** *Blood from his torn ear was soaking his collar.* **| sharp** *His sharp ears had picked up the uncertainty in her voice.* **| trained** *To the trained ear the calls of these birds sound quite different.* **| listening** *In the silence everyone seemed to be aware of listening ears.* **| receptive, sympathetic** *She did not like the scheme, as she made clear every time she found a receptive ear* (= sb willing to listen). *The counsellor provided a sympathetic ear for students with problems.*

VERB + EAR **plug** *He plugged his ears with tissue paper to drown out the music.* **| close, shut, stop** *At first I stopped my ears to what I did not want to hear.* **| strain** *I strained my ears to catch the conversation in the other room.* **| prick up** *The dog pricked up its ears.* **| flatten, lay back, put back** *A horse may show annoyance by putting its ears back.* **| pierce** *I've just had my ears pierced so I'm going to buy some earrings.* **| syringe** *He could hear much better after having his ears syringed.* **| echo in, ring in** *The voices buzzing all around echoed in her ears. He went home with the teacher's warning ringing in his ears.* **| hiss in, whisper (sth) in | reach** *If news of the break-in reaches the boss's ears, we're in trouble.*

EAR + VERB **hear sth, pick sth up** *When the notes are played so close together the ear hears no space between them.* **| prick (up), twitch** *His ears pricked up when he heard his name mentioned.* **| be alert** *He waited in the darkness, his ears alert for the slightest sound.* **| strain** *She stood outside the room, her ears straining to hear what they were saying.* **| pop** *If you suck a sweet as the plane takes off it stops your ears popping.* **| ring** *The explosion set my ears ringing and even made me jump a bit.*

EAR + NOUN **canal, drum, lobe | infection | plug, protector | flap, muffs** *She put on her ear muffs and went out into the snow.* **| wax**

PREP. **in your ~** *'Taxi?' said a voice in my ear.*

PHRASES **beam/grin/smile from ear to ear, can't believe your ears** *She actually apologized. I couldn't believe my ears!* **| (drop/have) a word in sb's ear** *Drop a quiet word in her ear about it before it's too late.* **| fall on deaf ears** *Their complaints about the poor service fell on deaf ears* (= were ignored). **| for sb's ears**

alone *I have a few words for your ears alone.* **| keep your ears open** *I'll keep my ears open for a second-hand bike for you.* **| music to sb's ears** *He arrived home hungry, and the noise of saucepans from the kitchen was music to his ears.* **| turn a deaf ear to sth** *The teacher turned a deaf ear to the boy's swearing* (= ignored it). **| with half an ear** *He listened to her with only half an ear as he watched TV.*

2 **ability to recognize sounds**

ADJ. **fine, good**

VERB + EAR **have**

PREP. **by ~** *She usually plays the guitar by ear, rather than reading the music.* **| ~ for** *He has a good ear for accents and can usually tell where a speaker comes from.*

earl *noun* > Note at PEER

early *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem**

ADV. **extremely, really, very | a bit, fairly, a little, quite, rather, relatively** *I'm sorry I'm a bit early.* **| surprisingly** *These discoveries were made at a surprisingly early date.*

PREP. **for** *It's a little early for lunch.* **| in** *He discovered these pleasures early in life.*

earn *verb*

ADV. **really** *'I feel I've really earned this,' she said, taking up her mug of tea.* **| deservedly, richly, rightly** *He deservedly earned the admiration of his colleagues.*

VERB + EARN **have to, need to** *First you have to earn their respect.* **| seek to, try to**

earnings *noun*

ADJ. **high | low, meagre | average | annual, hourly, weekly | gross, pre-tax, taxable | pensionable | after-tax, net** *Her net earnings last year were £15,000.*

QUANT. **level** *Levels of earnings are still rising.*

VERB + EARNINGS **have** *People with a university education tend to have higher earnings than those with a basic education.* **| calculate | declare** *You must declare all earnings to the tax office.* **| tax**

PREP. **~ from** *Germany's earnings from exports rose by 2%.* **| ~ of** *annual earnings of £20,000*

PHRASES **earnings-related** *an earnings-related pension scheme* **| growth in earnings** *the growth in average earnings over the last ten years* **| loss of earnings** *She is also claiming compensation for loss of earnings.* > Note at PERCENT (for more verbs) > Special page at BUSINESS

earphones *noun*

ADJ. **radio**

QUANT. **pair, set**

VERB + EARPHONES **have on, wear | put on | remove, take off**

PREP. **through ~** *She was listening to a personal stereo through earphones.*

earring *noun*

ADJ. **dangling, dangly | drop, hoop/hooped, stud**

QUANT. **pair** *She wore a pair of dangly earrings.*

VERB + EARRING **have on, wear | clip on, put in/on | take off**

earth *noun*

1 **the world**

VERB + EARTH **orbit** *satellites orbiting the earth*

EARTH + VERB **orbit sth, revolve, rotate** *The earth orbits the sun. The earth revolves on its axis.*

EARTH + NOUN **tremor** *Furniture fell over as the room was shaken by an earth tremor.* **| sciences**

PREP. **above the ~** *We are flying at 30,000 feet above the earth.* **| around/round the ~** *the moon's orbit around the earth* **| on (the) ~** *The island was there before there was life on earth.* **| to ~** *The astronauts were able to send the information back to earth.*

PHRASES **the centre/surface of the earth, the earth's core/crust/mantle/surface, (the) planet earth**

2 **soil**

ADJ. **bare** *The fields had been ploughed, and there was nothing but bare earth to be seen.* **| fertile | barren, infertile | soft | solid | damp, moist, wet | fresh, freshly-dug | loose** *I filled the pot with a handful of loose earth.* **| baked** *The sun beat down on the baked earth.* **| scorched** *The wreckage of the plane was scattered across the scorched earth.* **| chalky, sandy**

QUANT. **clod, clump, lump** *My boots were caked in big clods of wet earth.*

EARTH + NOUN **bank, mound** *I scrambled to the top of the steep earth bank.*

PREP. **in the ~** *The plants must have their roots in the earth.* **| under the ~** *in mines deep under the earth*

earthquake *noun*

ADJ. **big, great, huge, major, massive, severe | minor, small**

EARTHQUAKE + VERB **happen, hit sth, occur, strike (sth)** *The earthquake hit the city at two in the morning.* **| shake sth** *The earthquake shook buildings throughout the business district.* **| destroy sth, devastate sth, kill sb, leave sb homeless | measure sth** *an earthquake measuring 5.8 on the Richter scale*

EARTHQUAKE + NOUN **zone**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The block of flats was destroyed in an earthquake.*

PHRASES **the epicentre of an earthquake, the magnitude of an earthquake**

ease *noun*

ADJ. **alarming, astonishing, consummate, great, remarkable** *I obtained the drugs with alarming ease.* **| comparative, relative | apparent** *I was surprised at the apparent ease with which he had got into the building.* **| contemptuous** *She returned her opponent's serve with contemptuous ease.* **| practised**

PREP. **for ~ in** *The back of the garment is split for ease in walking.* **| for ~ of** *The whole machine is designed for ease of use.* **| with ~** *They passed the exam with ease.* **| ~ of** *The car brings ease of access to the countryside.*

ease *verb*

1 **make sth less painful/serious/difficult**

ADV. **considerably, greatly** *The situation would be considerably eased if more money were made available.* **| slightly, somewhat | gradually, slowly | away** *The pain in my leg gradually eased away.*

VERB + EASE **help (to)** *The new road should help ease traffic problems.* **| begin to** *Tensions between the two countries are beginning to ease.* **| try to**

2 **move carefully**

ADV. **carefully, gently | away, back, down, forward, etc.** *Jean eased back on the pillows and relaxed.*

PREP. **away from, into** *He eased himself into the driving seat.* **| out of** *She carefully eased the car out of the garage*

Easter *noun*

ADJ. **early, late** *Easter is early this year.*

VERB + EASTER **have, spend** *Have a good Easter. I prefer to spend Easter at home.* **| celebrate**

EASTER + NOUN **egg | break, holiday/holidays, vacation | Day, weekend, Monday, Saturday, Sunday, week | festival | celebrations**

PREP. **at ~** *Our next holiday is at Easter.* **| for ~** *We usually go away for Easter.* **| over ~** *The library is closed over Easter.*

PHRASES **Happy Easter!, wish sb a happy Easter**

easy *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become, get** *Life is getting easier for us.* **| remain | make sth** *These changes should make your job easier.* **| find sth** *I found the exam quite easy.*

ADV. **extremely, really, very | enough, fairly, quite, rather, relatively** *It is easy enough to see how it happened.* **| incredibly, ridiculously, surprisingly** *The written test was ridiculously easy.*

PREP. **for** *Writing is not easy for her.*

PHRASES **all too easy** *It was all too easy to forget why we had been sent there.* **| the easiest thing in the world** *It is the easiest thing in the world to blame your parents.* **| be no easy task** *Contacting everyone was no easy task.* **| quick and easy** *a book designed for quick and easy reference*

eat *verb*

ADV. **well** *We ate very well most of the time* (= had lots of nice food). **| healthily, properly, sensibly** *trying to eat more healthily He had not eaten properly for days. She doesn't eat sensibly* (= doesn't eat food that is good for her). **| hungrily | sparingly** *Barton did not feel very hungry and ate sparingly.* **| up** *Come on, eat up your lunch.*

VERB + EAT **get yourself sth to, find sth to, have sth to** *Have you got anything to eat?* **| have enough to | try and/to** *Try and eat something. It will do you good.*

PHRASES **eat and drink** *Go and get yourself something to eat and drink.* **| eat like a horse** (= eat a lot) *She's very thin but she eats like a horse!*

eater *noun*

ADJ. **meat | big, good, great, hearty** *All my children are big eaters.* **| fussy, picky** *He eats anything?he's not a fussy eater.* **| healthy | compulsive | messy**

ebb *noun*

ADJ. **strong**

EBB + NOUN **tide** *They left the harbour on the ebb tide.*

PREP. **against an/the ~** *It was difficult sailing upstream against a strong ebb.* **| on an/the ~** *By this time, the tide was on the ebb. We floated away from the beach on the ebb.* **| with an/the ~** *They went out to sea with the ebb.*

PHRASES **the ebb and flow of the tide**

ebb *verb*

ADV. **away** *He knew that his life was ebbing away.*

VERB + EBB **begin to** *Her strength began to ebb.* **| seem to**

eccentric *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get** *The old lady was getting very eccentric.* **| consider sb, find sb, regard sb as** *We were definitely regarded as eccentric.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, very, wildly | a bit, faintly, fairly, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat | endearingly, engagingly** *his engagingly eccentric brother*

echo *noun*

ADJ. **distant, faint | clear, distinct, strong** *(often figurative) There are distinct echoes of Elvis Presley in his vocal style.* **| hollow | returning** *The bat compares the sound of its cry with the sound of the returning echo.*

VERB + ECHO **hear, listen for/to** *We could just hear a faint echo.* **| produce, send back, send out** *Their footsteps on the bare boards sent out hollow echoes.* **| find** *(figurative) The political upheavals find an echo in the art of the time.*

ECHO + VERB **sound** *A faint echo sounded in the cave.* **| die (away)** *The echo slowly died away.* **| come back, return** *An echo came back from the walls of the building.*

PREP. **~ from** *the echo from a brick wall*

echo *verb*

1 **come back as an echo**

ADV. **faintly | loudly | eerily, strangely, weirdly | flatly, hollowly** *The sound echoed hollowly through the tall empty house.* **| still | back** *Their voices echoed back across the water.*

VERB + ECHO **seem to**

PREP. **across** *The protest seemed to echo across the room.* **| around/round** *His voice echoed around the room.* **| down** *Her footsteps echoed down the corridor.* **| in** *Her screams still echoed in his ears.* **| off** *The call echoed off the walls of the cave.* **| through** *Laughter echoed through the house.* **| with** *The great hall echoed with laughter.*

2 **repeat/agree with sb/sth**

ADV. **exactly | faithfully, wholeheartedly | widely** *an opinion that is widely echoed in the tabloid press* **| clearly | merely, only, simply** *In his statement, the minister merely echoed the views of the chief police officer.* **| disbelievingly, incredulously** *'He's gone!' Viv echoed incredulously.*

VERB + ECHO **seem to** *They had ideas which seem to echo our own.*

eclipse *noun*

ADJ. **lunar, solar | partial, total** *a total lunar eclipse*

PHRASES **an eclipse of the moon/sun**

ecology *noun*

ADJ. **fragile | animal, human, marine, plant**

VERB + ECOLOGY **damage, disrupt**

ECOLOGY + NOUN **movement**

economical *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem** *Solid fuel would be more economical.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, remarkably, very** *This new oven is highly economical.* **| fairly, quite**

PREP. **in** *This arrangement is more economical in its use of staff.* **| of** *more economical of time and resources* **| with** *This arrangement is more economical with space.*

economics *nou*n

ADJ. **applied, theoretical | classical, free-market, Keynesian, liberal, market, neo-classical, supply-side | business, development, environmental, health, industrial, welfare**

PHRASES **a school of economics** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

economist *noun*

ADJ. **chief, leading, senior | distinguished, respected | academic, government, professional | classical, free-market, Keynesian, liberal, neo-classical | agricultural, business, development, environmental, health, political** > Note at JOB

economy *noun*

1 **operation of a country's money supply**

ADJ. **booming, buoyant, dynamic, healthy, sound, stable, strong | ailing, depressed, flagging, fragile, stagnant, weak** *The government devalued the currency to try to revive the flagging economy.* **| advanced, developed, modern | agrarian,** agricultural, capitalist, industrial, **liberal, market, mixed, monetary, planned, rural, service-based, socialist** *a modern industrial economy* **| domestic, global, internal, international, local, national, world** *the increasingly competitive global economy* **| black, informal, underground** *The black economy booms when there is high unemployment.*

VERB + ECONOMY **build, rebuild** *Each party has its own strategy for building a strong economy.* **| control, handle, manage, manipulate, operate, regulate, run** *The government was accused of failing to run the economy competently.* **| boost, develop, expand, help, improve, kick-start, reinvigorate, rescue, revive, stabilize, stimulate, strengthen | liberalize | damage, harm, weaken, wreck**

ECONOMY + VERB **develop, expand, flourish, grow | be in/go into recession, collapse, contract, fail, slow, stagnate | pick up, recover, stabilize**

PHRASES **an area/a sector of the economy** *Transport workers are employed in all sectors of the economy.* **| the backbone/mainstay of the economy** *Agriculture was the backbone of the economy.* **| growth in/of the economy** *A small manufacturing sector inhibits growth in the economy.* **| control/handling/ management of the economy** *37% approved the president's handling of the economy.* **| the size of the economy, the state of the economy** *The government has been criticized over the state of the economy.* > Special page at BUSINESS

2 **careful use of money/time/resources**

ADJ. **important, major, significant | false** *Buying cheap shoes is a false economy.*

VERB + ECONOMY **achieve, make** *We could achieve major economies in time with this new machinery.*

ECONOMY + NOUN **drive** *Savings are being planned as part of a huge economy drive.*

PREP. **~ in** *possible economies in telephone costs*

PHRASES **economy of effort/movement** *It was impressive to see her economy of movement as she worked the machine.* **| economy of scale** *Large firms can benefit from economies of scale.*

ecstasy *noun*

1 **feeling**

ADJ. **pure, sheer | religious, sexual**

PREP. **in ~ | ~ at** *Kate closed her eyes in ecstasy at the thought of a cold drink.* **| ~ over** *I was in sheer ecstasy over the prospect of meeting my idol.*

2 **Ecstasy: drug**

ECSTASY + NOUN **tablet** > Note at DRUG(for more verbs and nouns)

ecstatic *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look | become**

ADV. **absolutely | not exactly**

PREP. **about** *Annie was ecstatic about the idea.* **| at** *Martin was not exactly ecstatic at the news.*

edge *noun*

1 **place where sth ends**

ADJ. **top** *the top edge of the picture frame* | **bottom, lower** | **inner, inside** | **outer, outside** | **front** | **northern, southern, etc.** | **very** *Erosion has left the house perched on the very edge of the cliff.* | **cliff, water's** *A row of boats was beached at the water's edge.*

VERB + EDGE **reach** *We had reached the edge of the map and didn't know which way to go.* | **skirt** *The road skirts the western edge of the forest.*

PREP. **along the ~, around/round the ~** *Smoke was making its way around the edges of the door.* | **at the ~** *Soon we were at the edge of the woods.* | **on the ~** *She sat on the edge of her bed.* | **over the ~** *The car rolled over the edge of the cliff.*

PHRASES **right on the edge** *They live right on the edge of town.*

2 **sharp side of sth**

ADJ. **sharp** | **cutting** | **serrated** *a knife with a serrated edge* | **jagged, ragged, rough** | **smooth** | **blunt**

VERB + EDGE **sharpen**

3 **advantage**

ADJ. **competitive** | **slight** | **decided**

VERB + EDGE **give sb/sth** | **gain, have** *to gain a competitive edge over rival suppliers*

PREP. **~ over** *The intensive training she had done gave her the edge over the other runners.*

edge *verb*

ADV. **carefully, cautiously, nervously | quietly | slowly**

PREP. **along** *He edged carefully along the narrow ledge.* **| towards** *We slowly edged our way towards the exit.*

PHRASES **edge your way**

edition *noun*

ADJ. **first** *a bookshop that specializes in rare first editions* | **limited, special** *The book appeared in a limited edition of 3,000.* | **cheap** | **hardback, leather-bound, paperback** | **pocket** | **abridged** *They have brought out an abridged edition of the encyclopedia.* | **illustrated** | **revised** | **critical** *a critical edition of Shakespeare's plays* | **facsimile** *a facsimile edition of Dr Johnson's Dictionary of 1755* | **electronic** | **morning, evening** *The story made it into the evening edition of the newspaper.*

VERB + EDITION **bring out, issue, produce, publish**

EDITION + VERB **appear, be out, come out** *The first edition of the newspaper appeared in 1859.*

PREP. **in a … ~** *The encyclopedia will shortly be out in a revised edition.* | **~ of** *the November edition of 'Vogue'*

editor *noun*

1 **prepares a book, television or radio programme**

ADJ. **commissioning | assistant, senior | copy | freelance | film, programme | art, cookery, fiction, music, picture**

2 **in charge of a newspaper/part of a newspaper**

ADJ. **chief, executive, managing | deputy | assistant, associate | contributing | joint | magazine, newspaper, tabloid | features, news, picture | specialist | City, economics, fashion, financial, foreign, industrial, literary, political, sports, travel** *On page 12, our City editor comments on the takeover bid.*

PHRASES **a letter to the editor** > Note at JOB

editorial *noun*

ADJ. **newspaper | lengthy | hard-hitting**

VERB + EDITORIAL **write | carry, publish, run** *The paper only occasionally carries editorials. The newspaper ran a hard-hitting editorial criticizing the government's economic policies.*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *He declared his support for the minister in an editorial.* **| ~ on** *an editorial on the problem of crime*

educated *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound**

ADV. **highly, impeccably, well** *She seemed intelligent and well educated.* **| badly, ill, poorly | reasonably, sufficiently | properly, suitably | fully | broadly** *the need for a broadly educated workforce* **| formally, traditionally** *Less formally educated people can acquire professional competence.* **| privately | expensively**

education *noun*

ADJ. **decent, excellent, first-class, good | poor | compulsory | formal** *Although he had had little formal education, he could read and write well.* **| adult, further, higher, pre-school, primary, secondary** *a college of further education* **| university | professional, vocational | all-round | health, religious, sex | full-time, part-time | public, state | private** *parents who choose private education for their children*

VERB + EDUCATION **have, receive** *He was at a disadvantage because of the poor education he had received.* **| give sb, provide (sb with)** *The school provides an excellent all-round education.* **| enter** *students entering higher education* **| continue, extend** *She went to college to continue her education.* **| leave** *young people who are just leaving full-time education* **| complete, finish** *He went to America to complete his education.*

EDUCATION + NOUN **authority, committee, department, ministry, sector, service, system** *funds provided by the local education authority* **| minister, officer, official | policy | reform | campaign, initiative, programme, project, scheme** *The council has launched a new health education campaign.* **| facilities, materials, resources | class, course** *adult education courses* **| centre, college, establishment, institution**

PREP. **in ~** *students in full-time education* **| through ~** *We acquire much of our world knowledge through education.* **| ~ about** *education about danger on the roads*

eerie *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound**

ADV. **distinctly, downright** *This place has a distinctly eerie atmosphere.* **| almost** *a silence so long that it was almost eerie* **| rather, slightly**

effect *noun*

1 **change that is caused by sth**

ADJ. **decisive, dramatic, far-reaching, important, marked, powerful, profound, significant, strong | marginal, minimal, modest, negligible | chief, main, major, principal | full** *The full effects of the new tax have not yet been felt.* **| apparent, appreciable, detectable, discernible, measurable, noticeable, visible | likely, possible, potential, predictable, probable | subtle | disproportionate | residual | adverse, catastrophic, crippling, damaging, debilitating, deleterious, destructive, detrimental, devastating, disastrous, harmful, ill, negative, serious, traumatic, undesirable, unfortunate** *the crippling effect of sanctions on the economy He didn't seem to have suffered any ill effects from his fall.* **| beneficial, positive, salutary | the desired** *We had problems with mosquitoes, but this spray had the desired effect.* **| magical, remarkable** *Giving up smoking had a magical effect on his stamina.* **| immediate | direct, indirect | short-term | lasting, long-term, permanent | domino, knock-on, ripple, spin-off** *Any delay in delivery of materials will have a knock-on effect throughout the production process.* (see also **side effect**) **| practical | aggregate, combined, cumulative, net, overall | qualitative, quantitative | cohesive | divisive | deterrent, disincentive** *The deterrent effect of the death penalty has long been questioned. Heavy taxation has a disincentive effect.* **| calming, hypnotic, soothing, soporific | curative, restorative, therapeutic | placebo | inflationary | corrosive | greenhouse** *policies to reduce emissions of gases which cause the greenhouse effect*

VERB + EFFECT **bring about, exert, have, produce** *The drug exerts a powerful effect on the brain.* **| take** *The medicine started to take effect after a few minutes.* **| feel, experience, suffer (from)** *Women feel the effects of alcohol more quickly than men.* **| recover from | observe | show | assess, determine, estimate, examine, measure, study | ameliorate, cushion, lessen, minimize, mitigate, reduce, soften** *to minimize the effects of economic change* **| cancel out | counter, counteract, offset | compound, magnify, maximize | avoid | aim at** *That is precisely the effect I was aiming at.* **| be worried about, fear | underestimate | ignore**

EFFECT + VERB **spread | last | wear off** *How soon will the effects of the drug wear off?*

PREP. **in ~** *The border closure meant, in effect, that no trade took place between the countries.* **| to this/that ~** *They told us to go away, or words to that effect.* **| with … ~** *The plague struck London again with devastating effect.* **| ~ on/upon** *The dry weather had an adverse effect on the potato crops.*

PHRASES **cause and effect** *key historical concepts such as cause and effect* **| to little/ no effect** *The air-conditioning came on, to little effect.*

2 use of an official rule/plan, etc.

ADJ. **immediate**

VERB + EFFECT **come into** *The new regulations come into effect next month.* **| bring sth into, put sth into** *The recommendations will soon be put into effect.*

PREP. **in ~** *Some laws from the eighteenth century are still in effect.* **| with ~** *The bank has cut interest rates with immediate effect.*

3 impression that a speaker/book/film, etc. gives

ADJ. **dramatic, startling, striking, stunning | maximum, optimum | the desired** *I found that by adding white I could achieve the desired effect.* **| overall** *The overall effect of the painting is overwhelming.*

VERB + EFFECT **give (sth), have** *The stage lighting gives the effect of a moonlit scene.* **| achieve, create | enhance, heighten** *The dramatic effect was heightened by her black dress and dead white face.* **| mar, spoil**

PREP. **for … ~** *'You know why I'm here?' Doug paused for maximum effect.* **| to … ~** *She uses animal sounds to startling effect in her music.*

4 techniques used when making sth

ADJ. **special | cinematic | audio, sound | optical, visual | lighting | elaborate | digital**

effective *adj.*

1 **producing the result you want**

VERBS **be, look, prove, seem | make sth | find sth** *We find advertising on the radio very effective.*

ADV. **brilliantly, especially, extremely, highly, particularly, really, remarkably, very** *a highly effective technique* **| completely, fully, perfectly | increasingly | fairly, moderately, partially, pretty, quite, rather, reasonably | enough** *This method is effective enough with greenfly.* **| not sufficiently | immediately | potentially | devastatingly, powerfully, surprisingly** *Sneezes are devastatingly effective at spreading infection.* **| politically** *What makes a TV programme politically effective?*

PREP. **at** *effective at keeping out the wind* **| in** *effective in helping people to stop smoking*

2 **of laws/rules**

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **fully | partially | directly, immediately** *directly effective treaty provisions* **| legally**

effectiveness *noun*

ADJ. **overall | limited | operational, organizational, practical | educational, military, political | cost** *This hard-wearing material combines cost effectiveness with quality.*

VERB + EFFECTIVENESS **assess, check, determine, evaluate, judge, measure, monitor, test | demonstrate** *The exam results demonstrated the effectiveness of personal tuition.* **| enhance, improve, increase, maximize | destroy, impair, limit, reduce | lose** *The drugs work well at first but gradually lose their effectiveness.*

PREP. **~ as** *They're doing tests to evaluate the effectiveness of this herb as an antiseptic.* **| ~ in** *the effectiveness of penicillin in controlling bacterial infection*

efficiency *noun*

ADJ. **ruthless | great, high** *attempts to achieve greater efficiency in the production process* **| maximum, optimum | low | cost | energy, fuel | mental, physical | administrative, business, economic, industrial, management, operational, organizational, production, productive, technical**

VERB + EFFICIENCY **achieve | boost, enhance, improve, increase, maximize, promote | decrease, impair, reduce**

EFFICIENCY + NOUN **drive, measures** *New timekeeping procedures had been introduced as part of an efficiency drive.* **| gains, improvements, savings** *the efficiency gains resulting from improved technology*

PREP. **with ~** *The uprising was put down with ruthless efficiency.* **| ~ in** *greater efficiency in energy use*

efficient *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become | make sth**

ADV. **extremely, highly, really, remarkably, very | fully, perfectly** *The procedure is not fully efficient: improvements could be made. We already have a perfectly efficient system?why change it?* **| increasingly | fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively | briskly, quietly** *The receptionist was briskly efficient. A quietly efficient manservant brought them coffee and brandy.* **| formidably, incredibly, superbly, supremely** *His secretary was formidably efficient: her minutes were works of art.* **| economically, mechanically, technically**

PREP. **at** *Their equipment was not as efficient at finding gold as today's machinery.* **| in** *The heating system is very efficient in its use of of fuel.*

effort *noun*

1 **physical/mental energy needed to do sth**

ADJ. **considerable | hard** *It took a whole day of hard effort to knock down the wall.* **| constant, sustained | extra | physical | intellectual, mental**

QUANT. **amount** *the amount of effort required*

VERB + EFFORT **demand, need, require, take** *It takes constant effort to become fluent in a language.* **| devote, expend, put in** *All the team members have put in a great deal of effort.* **| spare no** *No effort has been spared to make this hotel a welcoming, comfortable place.* **| be (well) worth** *The walk is difficult but well worth the effort.*

EFFORT + VERB **go into** *A lot of effort went into making the costumes.*

PREP. **with/without ~** *This can be done quickly and with very little effort.*

PHRASES **a great deal of effort**

2 **attempt to do sth**

ADJ. **all-out, big, brave, determined, enormous, great, herculean, heroic, huge, major, remarkable, special, strenuous, superhuman, tremendous, valiant** *I can see you have made a big effort to clean up.* **| desperate, frantic** *their frantic efforts to put out the fire* **| final, last, last-ditch** *The UN General Secretary flew in in a last-ditch effort to save the talks.* **| genuine, positive, real, serious | feeble** *She made a feeble effort to smile, then started crying again.* **| sporadic** *I make sporadic efforts to sort out my files.* **| successful | fruitless, futile, unsuccessful | collaborative, collective, concerted, cooperative, joint, team** *Students, teachers and families got together in a team effort to decorate the school.* **| conscious, deliberate** *I have to make a conscious effort to be polite so early in the morning.* **| voluntary** *The museum relies on the voluntary efforts of enthusiasts.* **| fund-raising**

VERB + EFFORT **make | increase, intensify, redouble, renew, step up** *The police have renewed their efforts to find the murderer.* **| channel, concentrate, focus** *The police channelled their efforts into searching around the river.* **| fail in** *He failed in h*

| resist *The wound resisted all my efforts to stop it bleeding.* **| abandon | be rewarded for, reward** *Her efforts were rewarded when she won an Oscar.* **| applaud** *The gallery owner applauded the efforts of firefighters to save the exhibits.*

EFFORT + VERB **come to nothing, fail**

PREP. **in an/your ~** *The club has changed the rules in an effort to make them fairer.* **| through sb's ~** *Through their efforts, enough money was raised to buy the equipment.*

PHRASES **your best efforts** *Despite our best efforts, we didn't manage to win the match.* **| a reward for your efforts** *Second prize was a fair reward for his efforts.* **| make every effort** *We are making every effort to obtain the release of the hostages.*

effortless *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem** *Burton made the jump look effortless.*

ADV. **apparently, seemingly** *her apparently effortless performance*

egg *noun*

1 **of birds/as food**

ADJ. **fresh | addled, bad, rotten | free-range, organic | chicken, duck, hen's, quail's, etc. | chocolate, Easter | boiled, fried, hard-boiled, poached, scrambled, soft-boiled | Scotch**

QUANT. **clutch** *She lays a clutch of four eggs on average.* **| box**

VERB + EGG **lay, produce | hatch | incubate | emerge from, hatch from | boil, cook, fry, poach, scramble | break, crack** *Crack two eggs into the mixture.* **| separate** *Separate the eggs, putting the whites to one side.* **| beat, whisk | brush sth with, glaze sth with** *Brush the pastry with a little beaten egg.*

EGG + VERB **hatch | break, crack**

EGG + NOUN **shell** (also **eggshell**) **| white, yolk | box | mayonnaise, noodles, pasta, sandwich**

PHRASES **the white/yolk of an egg** > Special page at FOOD

2 **cell from which a new young creature is formed**

ADJ. **fertilized | unfertilized**

VERB + EGG **fertilize** *Only one sperm fertilizes an egg.*

EGG + NOUN **donor**

PHRASES **the nucleus of an egg**

ego *noun*

ADJ. **big, enormous, huge, inflated, massive, strong** *a conceited man with a very big ego* **| fragile, weak**

VERB + EGO **bolster, boost, feed, flatter, massage** *She likes to mix with people who flatter her ego.* **| bruise, damage, deflate, dent, wound** *He was lucky to escape with just a bruised ego when he fell off his bike.*

PHRASES **a blow to your ego** *It was a huge blow to his ego to find out he was so unpopular.* **| a boost to your ego**

eject *verb*

1 **push/send sth out**

ADV. **forcibly | summarily** *They were summarily ejected by the security guard.*

PREP. **from** *He was forcibly ejected from the restaurant.*

2 **make an emergency exit**

ADV. **safely**

PREP. **from** *All the crew members ejected safely from the plane.*

elaborate *adj.*

VERBS be, look, seem, sound *The plans looked very elaborate.* **| become**

ADV. exceptionally, extremely, highly, very *highly elaborate carvings* **| increasingly | fairly, quite, rather**

elaborate *verb*

ADV. **further** *This point will be elaborated further in the next chapter.* **| at length**

VERB + ELABORATE **attempt to, try to | refuse to**

PREP. **on/upon** *They refused to elaborate on the reasons for their decision.*

elastic *noun*

ADJ. **loose, tight** *an old skirt with loose elastic*

QUANT. **length, piece** *The trousers are held up by a length of elastic around the waist.*

ELASTIC + VERB **break, go, snap** *The elastic in these socks has gone.*

elated *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **very | strangely**

PREP. **at** *I felt strangely elated at the news.* **| by** *elated by our victory* **| with** *elated with his success*

elation *noun*

ADJ. **great, sheer | unbelievable | mild | curious**

VERB + ELATION **experience, feel | show**

PREP. **~ at** *She showed her elation at having finally achieved her ambition.*

PHRASES **a feeling/mood/sense/surge of elation** *I felt a strange sense of elation.* **| tears of elation**

elbow *noun*

ADJ. **dislocated, fractured**

VERB + ELBOW **lean, place, rest** *He rested one elbow on the wall as he spoke.* **| lean on, prop/raise yourself up on** *She opened her eyes and propped herself up on one elbow to look at him.* **| catch, grasp, take** *He caught her elbow to steady her.* **| thrust** *She thrust her elbow into her attacker's face.* **| bang** *I banged my elbow on the table as I got up.* **| dislocate, fracture, injure**

ELBOW + NOUN **joint | injury | room** *The tiny toilet compartment gives you hardly any elbow room.*

PREP. **above the ~, at your ~** *A voice at my elbow said, ‘Would Sir care to be seated?’* **| below the ~** *The whole of his arm below the elbow was badly burnt.* **| beneath/under your ~** *She slid a hand under his elbow to guide him into the shop.* **| by the ~** *He took his guest by the elbow and steered him in the direction of the bar.* **| on one ~** *He raised himself on one elbow and looked at the bedside clock.*

PHRASES **be up to your elbows in sth** *He was up to his elbows in hot water, doing the washing-up.* **| the crook of your elbow** *She was cradling a small parcel in the crook of her elbow.* **| dig your elbow into sb's ribs** *She dug her elbow into Jim's ribs to remind him not to give the secret away.*

elect *verb*

ADV. **annually** *Members of the council are elected annually.* | **locally, nationally** | **democratically, freely, popularly** | **unanimously** | **directly, indirectly** *It was decided that the president should be elected directly in free elections.* | **duly, formally** | **lawfully, legally, legitimately**

PREP. **to** *She has been elected to Parliament.*

PHRASES **be/get elected** *What changes will he make if he gets elected?* | **be declared elected** *Any candidate with more than half the votes shall be declared elected.* | **be elected unopposed** *Five were successful, three being elected unopposed.* | **newly elected** *the newly elected chairman*

election *noun*

ADJ. **fair, free | democratic, multi-party | rigged | direct, indirect | fresh, new | early** *The prime minister may decide to call an early election.* **| primary, run-off | federal, local, municipal, national, regional, state | congressional, council, general, gubernatorial, leadership, legislative, local government, mayoral, parliamentary, party, presidential, Senate**

VERB + ELECTION **have, hold | call | contest, fight | stand for | lose, win | rig**

ELECTION + VERB **take place | be due, be scheduled for** *Elections are scheduled for November.*

ELECTION + NOUN **campaign | manifesto, pledge, promise | broadcast | candidate | defeat, victory | day, night, year | fraud**

PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *in the 2001 general election* **| by ~** *Membership of the committee is by election.* **| ~ to** *her election to the Senate*

PHRASES **the outcome of an election, the run-up to an election** *opinion poll results in the run-up to elections*

elector *noun*

ADJ. **eligible | registered**

ELECTOR + VERB **choose sb, vote (for sb)** *Not all the registered electors actually voted.*

PHRASES **the register of electors** *If your name is not on the register of electors, you will not be able to vote.*

electorate *noun*

ADJ. **registered | total | local, national | mass** *The rise of a mass electorate forced politicians to try and broaden their appeal.* **| middle-class, working-class, etc. | American, British, etc.**

ELECTORATE + VERB **choose sb, elect sb, go to the polls, vote** *the representative chosen by the electorate*

PHRASES **the electorate as a whole/the electorate at large** *the need to appeal to the electorate at large*

electric shock *nou*n

ADJ. **massive, severe, strong | mild**

VERB + ELECTRIC SHOCK **get, receive | give sb**

ELECTRIC SHOCK + NOUN **therapy, treatment**

electrician *noun*

ADJ. apprentice, qualified

VERB + ELECTRICIAN call in *We need to call in an electrician to sort out the wiring.*

ELECTRICIAN + VERB rewire sth, wire sth *You'll need a qualified electrician to rewire your house.* > Note at JOB

electricity *noun*

ADJ. **high-voltage, low-voltage | mains | static | off-peak** *We run the washing machine at night because off-peak electricity is much cheaper.*

VERB + ELECTRICITY **generate, produce | provide, supply** *The hydroelectric plant provides electricity for half the island's population.* **| conduct** *Metals conduct electricity well.* **| be powered by, use | cut off, disconnect** *Her electricity was cut off when she didn't pay her bill.* **| save** *I switched the light off to save electricity.*

ELECTRICITY + VERB **flow** *Electricity flows through the wires in the circuit.*

ELECTRICITY + NOUN **bill** *Insulating your house could cut your electricity bill by half.* **| charges, costs, prices** *a 10% drop in electricity prices* **| meter | board, company, industry | supply | grid** *The village will soon be connected to the national electricity grid.* **| consumption, demand | generator | pylon | cable, line, wire**

electronics *noun*

ADJ. **high-tech, state-of-the-art | consumer, defence, medical**

VERB + ELECTRONICS **work in** *About 45,000 people worked in electronics in Scotland.*

ELECTRONICS + NOUN **company, firm, giant, group** *Their firm merged with a Japanese electronics giant.* **| industry, manufacturer | market, sector | product | engineer, specialist** > Note at SUBJECT(for more verbs and nouns)

elegance *noun*

ADJ. **great | classical | sartorial** *John has never been known for his sartorial elegance.*

QUANT. **touch** *The ornamental ironwork lends a touch of elegance to the house.*

VERB + ELEGANCE **display, have** *The building has great elegance and charm.* **| lack | add, give sth, lend sth** *The pillars give a classical elegance to the room.*

elegant *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look**

ADV. **extremely, very | quite, rather | beautifully** *the beautifully elegant spire of the church* **| casually, quietly** *the quietly elegant wives of the directors* **| impossibly, supremely** *the foyer of an impossibly elegant Paris hotel*

element *noun*

1 one part of sth

ADJ. **basic, critical, crucial, decisive, essential, fundamental, important, key, main, major, necessary, principal, significant, vital | dominant** *The promise of tax cuts became the dominant element in the campaign.* **| considerable, large** *There is a considerable element of danger in her job.* **| competitive** *There is too much of a competitive element in the sales department.* **| racial, sexual** *Police say there may have been a racial element to the attacks.*

VERB + ELEMENT **be, constitute, form | contain, have, include, involve** *These rumours do contain an element of truth.* **| introduce**

PREP. **~ in** *This constitutes one of the key elements in this reform programme.* **| ~ of** *Practical work will form a major element of the syllabus. There may have been an element of jealousy in her response.*

2 the elements: bad weather

VERB + ELEMENT **brave** *I put on my thick coat ready to brave the elements.* **| battle (against)** *He told us stories of how he had battled the elements on his mountaineering trips.* **| be exposed to, be open to** *The place was completely exposed to the elements.* **| be protected from, be sheltered from**

PHRASES **protection/shelter from the elements**

elephant *nou*n

ADJ. **African | Asian, Indian | bull, cow | baby | trained | wild | rogue**

QUANT. **herd**

VERB + ELEPHANT **hunt, poach | cull | drive, herd, round up**

ELEPHANT + VERB **trumpet | charge, stampede | trample sb**

ELEPHANT + NOUN **herd | tusk | conservation**

eliminate *verb*

ADV. **altogether, completely, entirely, totally** *The risk cannot be eliminated altogether. This procedure does not completely eliminate the possibility of an accident.* **| virtually | largely | effectively** *Getting this job has effectively eliminated his financial worries.*

VERB + ELIMINATE **seek to, take steps to, try to | help (to) | be designed to** *The single market is designed to eliminate barriers to the free movement of goods, services and people.* **| be impossible to**

PREP. **from** *Try to eliminate fatty foods from your diet.*

elite *noun*

ADJ. **governing, ruling | business, political, social**

VERB + ELITE **create, form** *These people form an elite who have the power to make decisions.* **| join**

PHRASES **a member of an elite** *a club for members of the business elite*

eloquent *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, grow, wax** *He waxed eloquent about her talents as an actress.*

ADV. **extremely, very** *a very eloquent speaker* **| quite**

PREP. **about, on** *He grew quite eloquent on the subject.*

elusive *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove** *Further movie roles have proved somewhat elusive for the young actor.* **| become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very | rather, somewhat | strangely** *Sleep was strangely elusive.* **| notoriously** *Truth is a notoriously elusive quality.*

emaciated *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become, grow**

ADV. **painfully, severely** *his severely emaciated body*

email *noun*

VERB + EMAIL **write | send, fire off** *When I saw what he'd written I fired off an angry email.* **| get, receive | read | reply to | delete | archive**

EMAIL + NOUN **address | message** > Special page at COMPUTER

embargo *noun*

ADJ. **complete, strict, total | selective | international | economic | arms, oil, trade**

VERB + EMBARGO **impose, place, put | enforce, tighten | lift** *The government has agreed to lift the embargo imposed ten years ago.* **| break, violate** *We knew the arms embargo was being broken.*

PREP. **~ against** *the international embargo against the country* **| ~ on** *a strict embargo on oil imports*

embark *verb* **PHRASAL VERBS embark on/upon sth**

ADV. **immediately | seriously** *some advice for anyone seriously embarking on a career in the music business*

VERB + EMBARK **be about to, be ready to** *She was now ready to embark on her adventure.*

embarrassed *adj.*

1 shy/awkward/ashamed

VERBS be, feel, look, seem, sound | become

ADV. acutely, deeply, excruciatingly, extremely, highly, particularly, really, terribly, very | almost | a bit, faintly, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat *He looked a bit embarrassed.* **| clearly, obviously, visibly**

PREP. about *She's embarrassed about her height.* **| at** *He felt acutely embarrassed at being the centre of attention.* **| by** *She seemed almost embarrassed by her own outburst.* **| for** *His colour had risen and Isobel felt embarrassed for him.*

2 not having any money

VERBS be

ADV. financially

embarrassing *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, sound | become, get | make sth** *My mother's presence made the situation even more embarrassing.* **| find sb/sth** *I found the whole evening intensely embarrassing.*

ADV. **acutely, bloody** *(taboo)*, **deeply, excruciatingly, extremely, highly, intensely, really, seriously, terribly, very** *a deeply embarrassing moment* **| increasingly | almost | a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | potentially | politically, socially**

PREP. **for** *It was acutely embarrassing for us all.* **| to** *This latest incident could be embarrassing to the government.*

embarrassment *noun*

1 **feeling of being embarrassed**

ADJ. **acute, considerable, great, intense, severe | total | slight** *She smiled to hide her slight embarrassment.* **| further | obvious | silent**

VERB + EMBARRASSMENT **feel** *I felt some embarrassment as we shook hands.* **| cover, hide | cause | avoid** *The government wishes to avoid further embarrassment over the affair.* **| blush/flush with, giggle with, squirm with** *I still squirm with embarrassment at the thought of it.* **| die from/of** (*figurative*) *I could have died of embarrassment when I saw her standing behind me.* **| ease, relieve | save sb, spare sb** *Helen changed the subject to save me the embarrassment of replying.*

PREP. **in ~** *We all watched in silent embarrassment as Mr Rogers started to cry.* **| with/without ~** *I could finally talk about my problem without embarrassment.* **| ~ at** *her embarrassment at being found out* **| ~ over** *the government's embarrassment over the affair*

PHRASES **(much) to sb's embarrassment** *Much to his embarrassment, Mike realized that a small crowd was watching him.* **| feelings of embarrassment, a flush of embarrassment** *A flush of embarrassment came to her cheeks.* **| a source of embarrassment**

2 **sb/sth that makes you embarrassed**

ADJ. **considerable, great, huge, major, serious, severe | potential | financial, political, social**

VERB + EMBARRASSMENT **be, become, prove** *The protests were becoming something of an embarrassment to the government.* **| consider sb/sth**

PREP. **~ for** *The episode was a huge embarrassment for all concerned.* **| ~ to** *The poor child was considered an embarrassment to his family.*

embassy *noun*

ADJ. **foreign | British, Chinese, etc.**

VERB + EMBASSY **open, set up | close** *They broke off diplomatic relations and closed the embassies in each other's country.*

EMBASSY + NOUN **building, grounds | official, spokesman/spokeswoman, staff**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *She works at the Malaysian embassy in London.* **| in a/the ~** *a fire in the Spanish embassy* **| outside a/the ~** *a protest outside the American embassy*

embedded *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **deeply, firmly**

PREP. **in/within** *These ideas are deeply embedded in our culture.*

embrace *noun*

ADJ. **close, passionate, tight, warm** *the comfort of her warm embrace*

VERB + EMBRACE **be locked in, hold sb in** *They were locked in a passionate embrace on the station platform.* **| escape (from), extract yourself from, free yourself from** *He managed to free himself from her embrace.* **| release sb from** *He released her from his embrace.*

PREP. **in an ~** *two lovers in a tight embrace* **| into an ~** *He drew her into his embrace.*

embrace *verb*

1 **put your arms round sb**

ADV. **tightly, warmly** *He rose from his chair and embraced her warmly.*

2 **accept sth**

ADV. **fully, genuinely** *the only party which fully embraces the concept of a united Europe* **| enthusiastically, wholeheartedly, with enthusiasm** *She embraced the feminist cause with enthusiasm.*

embroider *verb*

ADV. **beautifully, delicately, exquisitely | heavily, richly** *a robe of richly embroidered silk*

PREP. **on** *She embroidered flowers on the front of the dress.* **| with** *She embroidered the dress with flowers.*

embryo *noun*

ADJ. **developing | early** *the cells of an early embryo* **| human, frog, etc.**

VERB + EMBRYO **implant** *Two or three embryos are implanted into the woman's body.*

EMBRYO + VERB **develop**

emerge *verb*

1 **come out**

ADV. **slowly | suddenly | finally, eventually**

PREP. **from** *The world is only slowly emerging from recession.* **| into** *They suddenly emerged into brilliant sunshine.* **| out of** *the musical forms that emerged out of the American black experience*

2 **become known**

ADV. **clearly, strongly** *One thing emerges very clearly from this study.* **| gradually | quickly** *The answer to the problem quickly emerged.* **| recently | later, subsequently** *It subsequently emerged that he had known about the deal all along.* **| eventually, ultimately** *What eventually emerged from the election disaster was a realization that it was time for change.*

VERB + EMERGE **begin to, start to** *Problems with this drug are now beginning to emerge.*

PREP. **from** *Several facts started to emerge from my investigation.*

3 **start to exist**

ADV. **rapidly** *The Pacific region has rapidly emerged as a leading force on the world stage.* **| gradually, slowly**

PHRASES **newly emerged/emerging** *newly emerging areas of science*

emergence *noun*

ADJ. **gradual | rapid, sudden**

VERB + EMERGENCE **lead to** *Conditions after the war led to the emergence of a new type of political party.* **| herald, mark, signal | see, witness** *The last decade saw the emergence of a dynamic economy.* **| encourage** *The annual competition has encouraged the emergence of several talented young musicians.* **| prevent**

PREP. **~ as** *his emergence as the party's leader* **| ~ from** *the island's emergence from the sea*

emergency *noun*

ADJ. **extreme** *(formal)*, **major, real, serious** *Don't call me unless its a real emergency.* **| sudden, unexpected, unforeseen | international, national** *in times of national emergency* **| medical | military**

VERB + EMERGENCY **cope with, deal with, handle, respond to** *firefighters on call to respond to emergencies*

EMERGENCY + VERB **arise** *Call this number if any unforeseen emergency should arise.*

EMERGENCY + NOUN **action, measures, procedures | laws, legislation, regulations | powers** *The police have been given emergency powers to deal with the crisis.* **| rule | meeting, session, talks | cover** *The army provided emergency cover when the ambulance service went on strike.* **| services** *The emergency services are struggling to cope with the number of call-outs.* **| aid, assistance, funds, relief, supply** *Emergency supplies of food have been flown to the area.* **| fund | call** *The ambulance crashed while answering an emergency call.* **| admission, case** *Emergency admissions to hospital are given top priority.* **| surgery, treatment | repairs | exit | landing**

PREP. **for ~** *She told me to keep the money for emergencies.* **| in an ~** *I need to know what to do in an emergency.*

PHRASES **the accident and emergency department** *the closure of the hospital's accident and emergency department* **| in case of emergency/emergencies** *There's a fire blanket on the kitchen wall in case of emergencies.* **| a state of emergency** *The president immediately declared a state of emergency.*

emigration *noun*

ADJ. **mass, massive**

QUANT. **wave** *He called for a halt to the recent wave of emigration.*

PREP. **~ from** *emigration from Europe to America* **| ~ to**

emission *noun*

ADJ. **harmful, noxious, toxic | gaseous | exhaust, vehicle | industrial | atmospheric | acid, carbon, carbon dioxide, lead, sulphur, sulphur dioxide, etc.**

VERB + EMISSION **cut, reduce** *We must take action to cut vehicle emissions.* **| control, limit, stabilize**

EMISSION + VERB **increase | decrease, fall**

EMISSION + NOUN **levels**

PREP. **~s from** *measures to reduce harmful emissions from traffic*

emotion *noun*

ADJ. **deep, extreme, intense, overwhelming, powerful, profound, strong, violent | complex | conflicting, contradictory, mixed, tangled** *She felt torn by conflicting emotions.* **| destructive, negative** *Counselling can teach people to handle negative emotions such as fear and anger.* **| positive | inner, innermost | painful | fragile** *The nurse was handling his fragile emotions very carefully.* **| raw** *a moving performance full of raw emotion* **| pent-up, suppressed** *Years of pent-up emotion came out as he sobbed.* **| human** *Fear is a normal human emotion.*

QUANT. **flicker, hint, trace** *There wasn't a hint of emotion in his eyes.* **| flood, rush, surge, wave** *She felt a sudden rush of emotion at the thought of seeing him again.* **| display** *She could not cope with such public displays of emotion.*

VERB + EMOTION **experience, feel** *the emotions that we experience as children He felt no emotion as she left.* **| be choked with, be filled with, be overcome with** *Her voice was choked with emotion.* **| be devoid of, be drained of | display, express, show** *Drama can help children to express their emotions. The woman's face showed no emotion.* **| release** *Releasing these emotions is part of the healing process.* **| betray | shake with, tremble with** *She realized she was shaking all over with emotion.* **| bottle up, control, hide, stifle, suppress | cope with, deal with, handle | confront** *Counsellors encourage victims of crime to confront their emotions.* **| arouse, provoke, stir (up)** *an incident that has aroused strong emotions locally* **| be charged with, be full of** *a speech that was charged with emotion*

PREP. **with/without ~** *She spoke with deep emotion.*

PHRASES **depth/intensity of emotion** *The film has a surprising depth of emotion for a comedy.* **| a gamut/range of emotions** *Her performance in the play covered the whole gamut of emotions.*

emotional *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound | become, get, grow** *He got quite emotional during the speech.* **| make sb** *Having all her friends around her made her very emotional.*

ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, very | quite, rather**

PREP. **about** *Don't be so emotional about everything!*

PHRASES **in an emotional state** *He was in a very emotional state.*

emotive *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **highly, powerfully, very** *He raised the highly emotive issue of bullfighting.* **| rather**

empathy *noun*

ADJ. **deep, great, real | total**

VERB + EMPATHY **feel, have | demonstrate, show | develop, establish**

PREP. **~ between** *The nurse should try to develop empathy between herself and the patient.* **| ~ for** *I felt real empathy for my mother and what she had been through.* **| ~ with** *She had a deep empathy with animals.*

PHRASES **a feeling of empathy, a lack of empathy**

emperor *noun*

ADJ. **reigning**

VERB + EMPEROR **crown sb** *Charlemagne was crowned Emperor on Christmas Day 800 AD.*

PREP. **under an/the ~** *It was under the emperor Justinian that these advances were made.* **| ~ of** *the emperor of Japan*

PHRASES **the reign of an emperor** *during the reign of the last emperor*

emphasis *noun*

1 **special importance/attention**

ADJ. **considerable, great, heavy, increased** *schools that put a heavy emphasis on sporting achievement* | **strong** | **main** *discussing where the main emphasis should be placed* | **particular, special** *Examine the events leading to the war, with particular emphasis on France's role in them.*

VERB + EMPHASIS **give, lay, place, put** *The company lays great emphasis on customer care.* | **shift** *The Democrats shifted the emphasis away from direct taxation.*

EMPHASIS + VERB **move, shift** *In recent years, the emphasis has moved away from punishing drug addicts towards helping them.*

PREP. **~ on/upon** *The emphasis is on keeping fit rather than developing lots of muscles.*

PHRASES **a change/shift of emphasis**

2 **stress on a word/phrase**

ADJ. **great** *'I', he said with great emphasis, 'was the one.'* | **slight** *His slight emphasis on the word 'Lady' was definitely mocking.*

VERB + EMPHASIS **put**

PREP. **with ~** *She repeated the question with emphasis.* | **~ on** *Put the emphasis on the second syllable.*

emphasize *verb*

ADV. **strongly | rightly** *The new law rightly emphasizes parental responsibility.*

VERB + EMPHASIZE **must, should** *I must emphasize that this is only a summary, and the full report will not be available until next week.* **| be important to** *It is important to emphasize this point.* **| seem to, serve to, tend to** *All the arguments and counter-arguments serve to emphasize the controversy surrounding this disease.* **| fail to | be at pains to, be keen to** *I have been at pains to emphasize the positive aspects of discipline.*

emphatic *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **most, quite, very**

PREP. **about** *He was most emphatic about me leaving.*

empire *noun*

1 **group of countries**

ADJ. **big, great, large, mighty, vast | colonial, overseas** *the decline of the old colonial empires*

VERB + EMPIRE **establish, found | dismantle** *The Japanese empire was quickly dismantled.* **| expand | lose** *By now Britain had lost its empire.*

EMPIRE + VERB **grow | collapse, crumble, disintegrate** *The mighty empire finally crumbled.*

PHRASES **the break-up/decline/fall of an empire, part of an empire** *a country that is still part of the empire*

2 **group of companies/organizations**

ADJ. **big, huge, large | little** (= used to criticize sb's attitude to the things they control) *All the bureaucrats jealously guarded their own little empires.* **| business, commercial, financial, industrial, media**

VERB + EMPIRE **build (up), create** *He has built a huge business empire from humble beginnings.*

EMPIRE + VERB **collapse, crumble**

PHRASES **the collapse of an empire**

employ *verb*

1 **pay sb to work**

ADV. **directly, indirectly** *By 1960 the arms industry in America directly employed 3.5 million people.*

PREP. **in** *A large part of the workforce is employed in agriculture.*

PHRASES **be fully employed** *10% of 10?15-year-old girls were fully employed as late as 1911.* | **be gainfully employed** *Those not gainfully employed are dependent on their savings.* | **be permanently/temporarily employed, be regularly/irregularly employed**

2 **use**

ADV. **commonly, extensively, frequently, often, widely** *The safety net is an image commonly employed in everyday life.* | **generally, usually** | **actively, deliberately** *teaching that actively employs computers in innovative and fruitful ways* | **successfully, usefully**

VERB + EMPLOY **can/could** *The army has far more junior officers than it can usefully employ.*

3 **be employed: be busy doing sth**

ADV. **better** *You'd be far better employed taking care of your own affairs.* | **busily, usefully**

PREP. **in** *Will and Joe were busily employed in clearing out all the furniture.*

employee *noun*

ADJ. **salaried | full-time, part-time | permanent, temporary | retired | junior, senior | key | long-serving, loyal | potential, prospective | manual | skilled, unskilled | blue-collar, white-collar**

VERB + EMPLOYEE **have** *The company has only 60 employees.* **| recruit | dismiss, lay off, make redundant, sack** *a fair reason for dismissing an employee The company made hundreds of employees redundant.*

EMPLOYEE + VERB **join sth | work** *employees who work more than 20 hours per week* **| leave | earn sth**

EMPLOYEE + NOUN **benefits** *In addition to a competitive salary, the company offers attractive employee benefits.* **| status** *Freelance workers do not enjoy the benefits of employee status.* **| relations**

employer *noun*

ADJ. **big, large, large-scale, major** *one of the region's major employers* **| good** *The hotel prides itself on being a good employer that treats its staff well.* **| unscrupulous** *the use of illegal workers by unscrupulous employers* **| potential, prospective, would-be**

VERB + EMPLOYER **have, work for**

employment *noun*

ADJ. **paid, salaried | full-time, part-time | lifelong, lifetime,** long-term, permanent, stable | short-term, temporary | regular **| casual | seasonal | gainful, meaningful** *The company was one of the first to offer meaningful employment to the blind.* **| full, total** *The government aims to achieve full employment within three years.* **| high, low** *an area of very low employment* **| large-scale** *Steel making is the only local industry offering large-scale employment.* **| manual | skilled, unskilled | blue-collar, white-collar | factory, office**

QUANT. **level** *policies aimed at maintaining a high level of employment*

VERB + EMPLOYMENT **look for, seek** *recent graduates seeking employment* **| find, gain, get, obtain, secure** *He finally secured employment in a local factory.* **| take up** *(formal) He took up employment with the company in May 2002.* **| give up, lose** *She lost her employment when the firm closed.* **| give sb, offer sb | create, generate, provide** *This investment will certainly create employment in the area. The steelworks provided employment for thousands of people.* **| boost, increase, raise, stimulate** *policies designed to stimulate employment*

EMPLOYMENT + VERB **increase, rise | fall**

EMPLOYMENT + NOUN **opportunities, possibilities, prospects** *There are few employment prospects in the town for unqualified young people.* **| rights | training | status** *The survey studied the employment status and lifestyle of people within the community.* **| agency | contract | conditions, terms | figures, records, statistics | levels | patterns, trends | market** *school-leavers entering the employment market* **| policy** *the government's full-employment policy* **| practices** *The firm's employment practices have been widely criticized.*

PREP. **in ~** *Most of last year's graduates are now in employment.* **| out of ~** *She had been out of employment for three years.*

PHRASES **conditions of employment** *trade union concerns such as conditions of employment and health and safety* **| a contract of employment, patterns/trends of employment** *significant changes in patterns of employment* > Special page at BUSINESS

empty *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, lie, look, seem** *The box lay empty on the bed.* **| become, end up** *The reservoirs could end up empty if this dry weather continues.* **| remain, stand, stay** *The council is letting useful housing stand empty.* **| leave sth** *The house had been left empty for several weeks.*

ADV. **completely, quite, totally, utterly** *There was a vast expanse of utterly empty sky to look at.* **| almost, nearly, practically, virtually | largely, mostly | half** *a half-empty box of chocolates* **| fairly, relatively** *Some parts of the city are desperately overcrowded while others are relatively empty.* **| apparently | curiously, horribly** *The house felt curiously empty without the children.*

PREP. **of** *The streets were empty of people.*

empty *verb*

1 **make sth empty**

ADV. **completely** *The cupboards had all been completely emptied.* **| half | out** *We emptied out the tank.*

PREP. **of** *He emptied the bottle of its contents.*

2 **become empty**

ADV. **completely | half** *The hall half emptied as bored businessmen raced for the buffet tables.* **| out** *The room gradually emptied out.*

PREP. **into** *The castle had a deep moat which emptied into the lake.* **| of** *The streets soon emptied of shoppers.*

enclose *verb*

ADV. **completely, fully, totally** *The garden is fully enclosed.* **| partially**

PREP. **in/within** *The ring is enclosed in a plastic case.*

encore *noun*

VERB + ENCORE **give, play, take** *The singer gave four encores. He took several encores before the crowd finally began to leave.* **| get** *You'll never get an encore if you perform like that!* **| call for** *The audience called for an encore.*

PHRASES **as/for an ~** *For an encore, he sang an unaccompanied folk song.*

encounter *noun*

ADJ. **brief** *I did not see him again, except for a brief encounter on a train.* | **casual, chance, unexpected** *It was a chance encounter that led to the setting up of the new political party.* | **close** *I decided not to risk a second close encounter with the snakes.* | **face-to-face** | **direct** *The press conference was her first direct encounter with the media.* | **unpleasant, violent** | **social** *the language we use in everyday social encounters* | **sexual**

VERB + ENCOUNTER **have** *I had my first encounter with the president two years ago.*

ENCOUNTER + VERB **take place**

PREP. **~ between** *violent encounters between police and protesters* | **~ with** *my first encounter with my new boss*

encounter *verb*

ADV. **commonly, frequently, often, regularly** *Walruses were commonly encountered in the Shetland Islands until quite recently.* **| rarely | inevitably**

VERB + ENCOUNTER **be likely to** *What are the difficulties you are most likely to encounter?*

encourage *verb*

ADV. **greatly, strongly** *We were greatly encouraged by the support we received.* **| actively, positively** *The government must actively encourage investment in these areas.*

VERB + ENCOURAGE **aim to | try to | be designed to** *These questions are designed to encourage debate.* **| be likely to** *Newspapers should not publish material that is likely to encourage discrimination on the grounds of race or colour.*

PREP. **in** *Her head of department encouraged her in her research work.*

encouragement *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great | active, positive | the slightest** *Given the slightest encouragement, he'd be on his knees swearing eternal devotion.*

VERB + ENCOURAGEMENT **give sb, offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *Mick was always ready to offer advice and encouragement.* **| need | draw, get, have, receive, take** *I draw great encouragement from the fact that the classroom is always full.*

PREP. **with ~** *With a bit of encouragement, she could do really well.* **| ~ by/from** *You need encouragement from people who understand what you are trying to do.* **| ~ to** *Getting the support of the Queen was a great encouragement to those involved in the project.*

PHRASES **words of encouragement** *Perhaps I can offer a few words of encouragement to those who did not win any prizes this time.*

encouraging *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | remain**

ADV. **extremely, highly, immensely, most, really, tremendously, very** *This news is most encouraging.* **| mildly, quite, reasonably | positively | hardly**

encyclopedia *noun*

VERB + ENCYCLOPEDIA **consult, look sth up in, use | compile, write | edit | publish**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *I looked the Civil War up in my encyclopedia.*

PHRASES **an entry in an encyclopedia** *There are over 20,000 entries in the encyclopedia.*

end *noun*

1 **furthest part of sth**

ADJ. **bottom, lower | top, upper | back, rear, tail** *(figurative) I just caught the tail end of the movie.* **| front | extreme, very | far, opposite, other** *That's his wife sitting at the far end of the table.* **| round, square, etc. | pointed, sharp | cheap** *housebuyers at the cheap end of the market* **| dear, expensive | dead** *We tried cutting through a back road but it was a dead end.*

(figurative) a dead-end job **| deep, shallow (of a swimming pool)** *(figurative) The company believes in throwing new employees in at the deep end with at the end of the movie.* **| by the ~** *He wants the reports by the end of the month.* **| in the ~** *In the end, they decided to spend the holiday at home.* **| to the ~** *He won't win, but he'll keep fighting to the end.* **| towards the ~** *I was getting bored towards the end of the talk.* **| till/until the ~** *I'm staying until the end of this week.* | up to the ~ *It stayed hot right up to the end of September.* **| ~ to** *What the business community wants is an end to the recession.*

PHRASES **the end of an era** *Her death marks the end of an era.* **| the end of the line/road** *(figurative) The loss of this no training.* **| free, knotted, loose** *Take the free end of the rope and pass it through the hole.contract could signal the end of*

(figurative) The author tied up all the loose ends of the story in the final chapter. **| west, western, etc.** *the southern end of the lake*

VERB + END **come to, get to, reach** *Continue until you reach the end of the road.* **| change** *The teams changed ends at half time.*

PREP. **at the ~** *Turn into Hope Street and our house is right at the end.* **| on ~** *Stand it on end* (= upright).

PHRASES **end of the spectrum** *The two parties represent opposite ends of the political spectrum.* **| (from) end to end** *We walked along the whole promenade, from end to end. They arranged the tables end to end.*

2 **last part of sth**

ADJ. **abrupt, sudden | dramatic | early** *The injury brought her career to an early* end. | **fitting** *The award was a fitting end to a distinguished career.*

VERB + END **come to, get to, reach** *The meeting finally came to an end at six. I'll never get to the end of this book!* | **approach, draw to, near** *As the evening was drawing to an end, the firework display took place.* | **bring (sth to), put** *Talks were in progress to bring an end to the fighting.* | **call for** *call for an end to the violence*

END + VERB **be in sight** *There's no end in sight to the present crisis.*

END + NOUN **product, result** *The film's backers were delighted with the end product.*

PREP. **at an ~** *The proceedings are expected to be at an end by 6 p.m.* | **at the ~** *They get married the line for the shipyard.* | **from beginning to end** *His story was one big lie from beginning to end.* | **to/until the bitter end** *We will fight this court case to the bitter end.*

3 aim/purpose

ADJ. **beneficial, desirable, worthwhile, worthy | destructive | practical, pragmatic | common** *Despite our differences, we were working to a common end.* | **selfish | commercial, economic, educational, ideological, political, social, utilitarian**

VERB + END **achieve, further, pursue** *She was prepared to lie in order to achieve her ends.* | **work to**

PREP. **to … ends** *The money might have been used to more beneficial ends.* | **to this ~** *She wished to have a house built, and to this end she engaged a local architect.*

PHRASES **an end in itself** *For her, travelling had become an end in itself rather than a means of seeing new places.* | **a means to an end** *I don't enjoy studying computing?it's just a means to an end.* | **the end justifies the means** *He defended a morality in which the end justifies the means.* | **to/for your own ends** *She is exploiting the current situation for her own ends.* | **with this end in view** (= in order to achieve this)

4 death

ADJ. **sad, tragic | bad, sticky** *to come to a sticky* (= unpleasant, but deserved) *end* | **untimely**

VERB + END **come to, meet** *(literary) He met his end at the Battle of Waterloo.*

END + VERB **come** *The end came when he collapsed after playing golf.*

end *verb*

ADV. **abruptly, suddenly** *The meeting ended abruptly when the chairman was called away.* | **prematurely** | **at last, eventually, finally** *At last the war ended.* | **all but, effectively, virtually** *A back injury effectively ended her career.* | **inconclusively** *The peace talks have ended inconclusively, with neither side prepared to give way on key points.* | **peacefully** | **disastrously, tragically** | **disappointingly, unhappily**

PREP. **in** *The attempt finally ended in failure.* | **with** *The show ended with a song.*

PHRASES **end in disaster** *The military action could end in disaster.* | **end in tears** *(figurative) After all that excitement the day was bound to end in tears* (= unhappily).

endanger *verb*

ADV. **greatly, seriously** *Taking these drugs could seriously endanger your health.*

VERB + ENDANGER **be likely to** *They are accused of causing an explosion likely to endanger life.*

PHRASES **highly endangered** *14 per cent of primate species are highly endangered.*

endear *verb*

ADV. hardly, not exactly

VERB + ENDEAR (not) be calculated to *'All better now, are we?' he enquired in a patronizing manner hardly calculated to endear.*

PREP. to *She had an unfriendly manner which did not exactly endear her to her colleagues.*

endeavour *noun*

ADJ. **cooperative, joint | brave, gallant, heroic | earnest, honest** *the government's honest endeavours to improve the lives of the poor* **| lifelong** *Learning a foreign language well can be a lifelong endeavour.* **| fruitless, futile, unsuccessful | successful | human** *Enthusiasm is a vital ingredient in all human endeavour.* **| artistic, creative, educational, intellectual, political, scientific** *She always encourages her children in their artistic endeavours.*

VERB + ENDEAVOUR **make** *You must make an endeavour to work harder.*

PREP. **in an ~** *We wish her every success in this endeavour. In an endeavour to improve the service, they introduced free parking.*

PHRASES **your best endeavours** *Despite her best endeavours, she couldn't persuade anyone to volunteer.* **| a field of endeavour** *He has the ability to achieve success in whatever field of endeavour he should choose.* **| make every endeavour** *We will make every endeavour to obtain sufficient supplies.*

ending *noun*

ADJ. **happy | sad, tragic, unhappy | dramatic | fairy-tale** *The crowd cheered on the unknown Tunisian, hoping for a fairy-tale ending to the race.* **| perfect** *The meal was the perfect ending to a great weekend.* **| abrupt** *I was surprised by the abrupt ending to the conversation.*

VERB + ENDING **have** *The book has a sad ending.*

PREP. **~ to** *This is a happy ending to a rather sad story.*

endless *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem** *The long walk back seemed endless.*

ADV. **almost, virtually | apparently, seemingly** *a seemingly endless list of repairs to be carried out*

endorse *verb*

ADV. **enthusiastically, firmly, heartily, strongly, warmly, wholeheartedly | entirely, fully | overwhelmingly, unanimously | broadly** *The government has broadly endorsed a research paper proposing new educational targets for 14-year-olds.* **| explicitly, implicitly** *The plan does not explicitly endorse the private ownership of land.* **| formally, officially | publicly | effectively**

VERB + ENDORSE **fail to, refuse to**

endorsement *noun*

ADJ. enthusiastic, full, overwhelming, ringing, strong, unanimous | lukewarm *The new design only received a lukewarm endorsement from head office.* **| official**

VERB + ENDORSEMENT give sth *We are happy to give the product our full endorsement.* **| withdraw, withhold | require | seek** *They are now seeking endorsement for their ideas.* **| get, receive, win | have** *These measures have the strong endorsement of the Labour party.*

PREP. ~ as *her endorsement as leader of the delegation* **| ~ by** *endorsement of the product by the Consumer Council* **| ~ for** *endorsement for the plan* **| ~ from** *His presidential campaign won endorsement from several celebrities.*

endurance *noun*

ADJ. **great, remarkable | sheer | mental, physical**

VERB + ENDURANCE **have, show** *She showed great endurance in the face of pain.* **| test** *The astronauts will undergo a series of trials to test their physical and mental endurance in space.* **| build (up)** *Swimming a little further each session will build endurance.*

ENDURANCE + NOUN **test**

PREP. **beyond ~** *This behaviour is beyond endurance.*

PHRASES **a feat of endurance** *They are capable of amazing feats of endurance.* **| the limit/limits of your endurance** *She was almost at the limits of her endurance.* **| powers of endurance** *The task was a test of their powers of endurance.* **| a test of endurance** *Running a marathon is seen by many as the ultimate test of endurance.*

enemy *noun*

ADJ. **arch, bitter, deadly, great, implacable, mortal, sworn | dangerous, formidable, powerful | ancient, old, traditional** *In today's match England play their old enemy, Scotland.* **| chief, main, principal** *The lion is the zebra's chief enemy.* **| natural** *The Church and the Communist Party were natural enemies.* **| common** *They united in the face of a common enemy.* **| political**

VERB + ENEMY **have** *She didn't have an enemy in the world.* **| make** *He made many enemies during his brief reign. I didn't want to make an enemy of Mr Evans.* **| attack, fight (against)** *He was prepared to use any weapon to fight against his enemies.* **| defeat, destroy | confront, face** *He turned to face his enemy.* **| defend sth against, protect sb/sth against/from** *The cat uses its claws to protect itself against enemies.* **| deter** *The skunk releases a pungent smell to deter the enemy.*

ENEMY + VERB **attack sb/sth**

ENEMY + NOUN **army, forces, soldiers, troops, unit | defences, front (line), lines, positions, ranks** *The spies managed to penetrate behind enemy lines.* **| camp | action, bombing, fire** *The men came under enemy fire. the first casualty from enemy action* **| activity** *Intelligence reported enemy activity just off the coast.* **| country | territory | aircraft, fighter, plane, ship | propaganda**

PREP. **against an/the ~** *They decided to use the weapon against the enemy.*

PHRASES **fall into enemy hands** *The document must not at any price fall into enemy hands.* **| in the face of the enemy** *He was shot for desertion in the face of the enemy.* **| public enemy (number one)** *Since the scandal, the former minister has become public enemy number one.*

energetic *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem**

ADV. **extremely, highly, really, remarkably, very** *Quasars are the highly energetic cores of distant galaxies. She seems remarkably energetic for a woman her age.* **| quite** *I'm feeling quite energetic today.*

energy *noun*

1 ability to be active/work hard

ADJ. **boundless, indefatigable, inexhaustible, unflagging** *I admire her boundless energy.* | **surplus** | **nervous, restless** | **youthful** | **creative** *There was a lack of creative energy in the British film industry.*

QUANT. **amount, level** *You can judge how healthy you are by the amount of energy you have.* | **great deal** *Bringing up twins requires a great deal of energy.* | **burst** *With a sudden burst of energy, he ran to the top of the hill.*

VERB + ENERGY **be bursting with, be full of, have** *The children are always full of energy. I don't seem to have any energy these days.* | **lack** *He never seems to lack energy.* | **expend, put** *She put all her energies into her work.* | **channel, devote, direct, turn** *We're trying to deal with young offenders by channelling their energy into sport rather than crime.* | **conserve, save** | **work off** *The kids were running around crazily, working off their surplus energy.* | **waste** *We don't want to waste our energy trying to persuade people who are just not interested.* | **sap** *The hills sapped his energy and he got off his bike for frequent rests.* | **dissipate** *The volunteers' energy was dissipated by the enormous amounts of paperwork involved in the project.*

ENERGY + VERB **flag** *It was late and my energy was beginning to flag.*

PHRASES **an outlet for your energy** *Football gives them an outlet for their energy.* | **a waste of energy** *It's a waste of energy cutting this grass?nobody's going to see it.*

2 source of power

ADJ. **renewable** *the change from fossil fuels to renewable energy* | **atomic, nuclear, solar, wave, wind**

QUANT. **amount** *The new power station produces vast amounts of energy.*

VERB + ENERGY **generate, produce** | **harness** *attempts to harness solar energy* | **provide, supply** | **consume, use** | **store** *No battery could store enough energy to turn over a car's engine.* | **conserve, save** | **waste** | **need, require**

ENERGY + NOUN **production | consumption, use | demand, needs, requirements** *total energy requirements for the coming year* **| supply** *The nuclear plant provides a fifth of the nation's energy supplies.* **| resources, sources | conservation, savings** *equipment that offers long-term energy savings* **| efficiency | bill, costs, prices | crisis, problem, shortage** *The country could face an energy crisis if demand continues to rise.* **| company, industry, sector** *state control of the energy industries* **| market** *The cost of solar power needs to fall before it makes an impact on the energy market.* **| management, plan, policy, programme, project, strategy** *a government-sponsored renewable energy project*

PHRASES **a demand for energy** *The demand for energy and fuel is expected to increase dramatically.* **| energy-saving** *energy-saving features that can reduce energy bills by 50%* **| a form of energy, a source of energy**

enforce *verb*

ADV. **fully, properly, rigidly, rigorously, strictly, vigorously** *The rules were strictly enforced.* **| legally**

VERB + ENFORCE **can/cannot, could/could not** *The ban cannot be legally enforced.* **| be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to | help (to)** *a system of local inspectors to help enforce presidential decrees* **| seek to, take steps to** *The government may take steps to enforce compliance with the new measures.* **| decline to, refuse to**

enforcement *noun*

ADJ. **effective, proper | rigorous, strict, stringent, tighter, tougher, vigorous** *MPs called for tougher enforcement of the existing laws on drugs.* **| law | legal, police**

ENFORCEMENT + NOUN **agent, officer | authority, body** *law enforcement bodies* **| machinery, mechanism, powers, system** *The court is ineffective because it lacks the necessary enforcement machinery.* **| measures, methods, practices, procedures, proceedings**

engage *verb*

ADV. **directly, fully**

VERB + ENGAGE **fail to, refuse to**

PREP. **with** *acknowledging the need to engage directly with these problems*
PHRASAL VERBS engage (sb) in sth

ADV. **actively** *people who actively engage in shaping the world they live in*

VERB + ENGAGE **attempt to, seek to, try to** *He tried to engage me in conversation.* **|**
be eager to, be willing to | be reluctant to, be unwilling to

engaged *adj.*

1 **doing sth**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **deeply, heavily** *those who are deeply engaged in party politics* **| fully, totally | largely, mainly, primarily | directly | constantly | currently | actively, busily | otherwise** *I'm afraid Mr Wilson cannot see you now as he is otherwise engaged.*

PREP. **in** *She was engaged in conversation with a client.* **| on** *He is actively engaged on several projects.* **| with** *Mrs Scott is engaged with a customer at the moment.*

2 **having promised to marry sb**

VERBS **be | become, get** *The couple got engaged last month.*

PREP. **to** *She's engaged to an actor.*

engagement *noun*

1 **appointment**

ADJ. **previous, prior** *Mrs Spratt regrets that she is unable to attend owing to a previous engagement.* **| important | business, official, public, social | dinner, lunch**

VERB + ENGAGEMENT **have | keep** *It is important that I keep this engagement.* **| carry out** *(formal) The prime minister will carry out no official public engagements during the month of August.* **| cancel, fail to keep** *The president fell ill and was forced to cancel all public engagements.*

ENGAGEMENT + NOUN **diary**

PREP. **~ with** *He had an important engagement with his financial adviser.*

2 **agreement to get married**

ADJ. **long | broken**

VERB + ENGAGEMENT **announce | break (off)**

ENGAGEMENT + NOUN **ring**

PREP. **~ to** *He announced his engagement to his long-time girlfriend.*

engine *noun*

1 **part of a vehicle that produces power**

ADJ. **big, powerful | small | twin ~s** *a large plane with twin engines* **| 1.4-litre, 1200cc, 20-valve, four-cylinder, two-stroke, etc. | diesel, internal-combustion, jet, outboard, petrol, piston, turbine, turbo/turbocharged | aircraft, car, rocket**

VERB + ENGINE **crank (up), start, switch on | cut** *(informal)*, **kill** *(informal)*, **switch off** *He pulled up under some trees and cut the engine.* **| rev (up), run** *She sat at the traffic lights revving the engine.* **| repair, service, tune | lubricate | fit (sth with)** *The new model is fitted with a more powerful engine.*

ENGINE + VERB **run** *She waited with the engine running while he bought a paper. The engine runs on unleaded petrol.* **| idle, tick over, turn over** *The engine was just ticking over.* **| catch, start** *I pressed the starter and the engine caught first time.* **| stop | fire** *The engine's firing on all four cylinders now.* **| break down, die, fail, misfire, overheat, seize up, stall | cough, splutter** *The engine coughed and died.* **| roar, scream** *The plane's engine roared as it prepared for take-off.* **| race, rev (up)** *He heard a car engine racing behind him.* **| power sth** *This model is powered by a 1.8-litre petrol engine.*

ENGINE + NOUN **capacity, power, speed | compartment, room** *the ship's engine room* **| component | failure, problems, trouble** *It looks as if we've got a spot of engine trouble.* **| noise**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *You need more oil in the engine.*

PHRASES **the noise/roar/sound of the engine**

2 **vehicle that pulls a train**

ADJ. **large, powerful | diesel, electric, steam | railway, tank**

VERB + ENGINE **build**

ENGINE + VERB **break down, fail** *The engine broke down just outside the station.*

ENGINE + NOUN **driver | failure | speed | shed**

engineer *noun*

1 **designs/builds engines/roads, etc.**

ADJ. **chief | chartered, qualified, skilled, trained** *You need the advice of a qualified engineer.* **| consultant/consulting, production | aeronautical, agricultural, aircraft, chemical, civil, design, electrical, electronics, flight, marine, mechanical, mining, railway, recording, software, sound, structural**

VERB + ENGINEER **produce, train** *Britain isn't producing enough engineers.* > Note at PROFESSIONAL(for more verbs)

2 **repairs machines/equipment**

ADJ. **qualified, registered, skilled, trained | maintenance, service | heating, lighting, telephone**

VERB + ENGINEER **call in/out** > Note at JOB(for more verbs)

engineer *verb*

1 **manage to arrange sth**

ADV. **brilliantly, carefully** *She carefully engineered a meeting with the chairman.*

VERB + ENGINEER **seek to, try to**

2 **design and build sth**

ADV. **carefully, finely, precisely, superbly** *the car is superbly engineered and a pleasure to drive.*

engineering *noun*

ADJ. **heavy, light | conventional | precision | advanced | aeronautical, agricultural, chemical, civil, design, ecological, electrical, electronic, genetic, mechanical, process, software, systems, etc.**

QUANT. **piece** *The bridge is a fine piece of engineering.*

ENGINEERING + NOUN **company, firm, group | industry | services | work/works** *Train services on Sunday will be restricted, because of engineering works.*

PHRASES **a feat of engineering** *The new building is a remarkable feat of engineering.* > Note at SUBJECT(for more verbs and nouns)

English *noun*

ADJ. **plain** *You'd have no trouble understanding his point if he'd written the article in plain English!* **| spoken, written | American, British, Indian, etc. | BBC, the Queen's | Early, Middle, Modern, Old** > Note at LANGUAGE(for more collocates)

engrossed *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become, get**

ADV. **deeply, very | completely, entirely, thoroughly, totally | apparently | happily**

PREP. **in** *He seemed completely engrossed in his book.*

enhance *verb*

ADV. **considerably, dramatically, enormously, greatly, much, significantly, substantially** *The attractiveness of the book is much enhanced by Mark Stevens's drawings.* **| directly | further | undoubtedly**

VERB + ENHANCE **can/could, may/might** *things that can significantly enhance the quality of your life* **| help (to), serve to | be designed to, seek to** *reforms designed to enhance market efficiency*

enigmatic *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **highly, very** *His reply was highly enigmatic.* **| slightly, somewhat | curiously, strangely**

enjoy *verb*

ADV. **enormously, greatly, hugely, immensely, really, thoroughly, tremendously** *She greatly enjoys her work. We enjoyed the game immensely.*

VERB + ENJOY **be able to | seem to** *The kids all seemed to enjoy themselves.* **| begin to** *I was just beginning to enjoy it when the rain came down.*

enjoyable *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, sound | become | make sth** *I always try to make my lessons enjoyable.* **| find sth**

ADV. **enormously, extremely, highly, hugely, immensely, most, really, very** *We had a most enjoyable evening.* **| thoroughly | quite**

enjoyment *noun*

ADJ. **full, great, huge, maximum, real** *A large income is not necessary for the full enjoyment of life.* | **pure, sheer** *For sheer enjoyment, you can't beat this game.* | **evident, obvious** | **quiet, simple**

VERB + ENJOYMENT **derive, find, get, have** *They found real enjoyment just in being together.* | **bring (sb), give sb, provide (sb with)** *The show brought enjoyment to millions of viewers.* | **add to, enhance, increase** *Food is there to keep you healthy and enhance your enjoyment of life.* | **spoil**

PREP. **for (sb's) ~** *I play rugby purely for enjoyment.* | **with ~** *Mackie was smiling with enjoyment.* | **~ in** *The noise really spoilt her enjoyment in living there.*

PHRASES **a source of enjoyment** *Her little grandson has been a source of great enjoyment to her.*

enlarge *verb*

ADV. **considerably, greatly** *The castle was enlarged considerably in the fifteenth century.* **| slightly**

VERB + ENLARGE **seek to** *The gallery is seeking to enlarge its holdings of Danish art.*

enmity *noun*

ADJ. **bitter, fierce | lasting, long-standing, old, traditional** *He had earned their lasting enmity.*

VERB + ENMITY **earn (sb), incur**

PREP. **~ between** *the fierce enmity between the two groups* **| ~ towards** *his enmity towards the Church*

enormity *noun*

ADJ. full, sheer

VERB + ENORMITY appreciate, grasp, realize *It's difficult to grasp the sheer enormity of the tragedy.* **| bring home** *Her words brought home the enormity of what was happening.*

enquire (*also* **inquire)** *verb*

ADV. **further | pleasantly, politely** *Adam enquired politely whether they had enjoyed the show.* **| anxiously, solicitously | eagerly, hopefully | casually, evenly, mildly | coldly, coolly** *'You wish to speak with me?' he enquired coldly.* **| drily, sarcastically, sweetly** *(ironic),* **tartly** *'Do you mean blackmail?' she enquired sweetly.*

PREP. **about** *To enquire about tickets, phone the number below.* **| after** *Rose was enquiring after you* (= asking how you were). *She enquired after my mother's health.* **| as to** *He didn't enquire as to my identity.* **| into** *A commission has been set up to enquire into alleged malpractice.*

enquiry (*also* **inquiry)** *noun*

1 **official investigation**

ADJ. **full/full-scale, major | detailed | preliminary | immediate | open, public | confidential | internal | joint** *a joint enquiry undertaken by the Department of Health and the Dental Association* **| impartial, independent | informal | formal, official | congressional, government, judicial, parliamentary, police | disciplinary | fatal accident, murder, etc.**

VERB + ENQUIRY **carry out, conduct, have, hold, undertake | announce** *The governor announced an enquiry into the events.* **| initiate, launch, open (up), set up, start** *Police have launched a murder enquiry.* **| adjourn | reopen | call for** *Local MPs are calling for a full independent enquiry into the way the police handled the affair.* **| demand, order** *The government has ordered a public enquiry into the affair.* **| be subjected to, face** *You may be subjected to a disciplinary enquiry.* **| attend | be involved in | chair, head, lead** *The enquiry will be chaired by a judge.*

ENQUIRY + VERB **be underway, take place** *A major enquiry is underway after the death of a union official. The enquiry will take place behind closed doors.* **| begin, commence, start | hear sth** *The enquiry heard this week that the crash was unavoidable.* **| consider sth, examine sth, investigate sth | reveal sth | conclude sth, establish sth, find sth** *An enquiry found that the vintage plane was in good working order.* **| rule sth** *The enquiry ruled that the cars should be fitted with bigger bumpers.* **| blame sb/sth**

ENQUIRY + NOUN **report | team**

PREP. **at an/the ~** *At the enquiry the minister maintained that nothing illegal had been done.* **| during/in an/the ~** *arguments during the enquiry* **| pending an ~** *The director has been suspended on full pay, pending an internal enquiry.* **| ~ by** *an enquiry by the Charity Commission* **| ~ into** *a public enquiry into the environmental effects of the proposed new road*

PHRASES **the outcome/result of an enquiry, the subject of an enquiry** *He now finds himself the subject of an enquiry after reports of financial irregularities.*

2 **request for information**

ADJ. **exhaustive, extensive, thorough** *I've made exhaustive enquiries, but haven't been able to find what I want.* | **detailed** | **specific** | **general** *Our national enquiry centre is open every day and can help you with all your general enquiries.* | **discreet** | **informal** | **routine** | **preliminary** | **customer** | **house-to-house, phone/ telephone, written**

QUANT. **flood, stream** *After the disaster, the police had a flood of enquiries about missing relatives.*

VERB + ENQUIRY **make, pursue, direct, undertake** *The police are still pursuing their enquiries. The committee directed its enquiries to Mrs Taylor.* | **complete** | **welcome** *The faculty welcomes enquiries from prospective entrants.* | **get, have, receive** | **be inundated with** | **answer, respond to, deal with, handle** | **assist (sb) in/with, help (sb) in/with** *Police believe he can help them with their enquiries into a robbery.*

ENQUIRY + NOUN **desk, office** | **service** | **form** *You are requested to complete an enquiry form.*

PREP. **pending an/the ~** *She has been released on bail pending further enquiries.* | **~ about/as to/concerning/regarding/relating to/with regard to** *enquiries as to the whereabouts of Erin Smith* | **~ by** *enquiries by police* | **~ from** *enquiries from the public* | **~ into** *I'm making enquiries into the possibility of going by train.*

3 **asking questions/collecting information**

ADJ. **careful** | **further** | **critical** | **intellectual** | **empirical** | **historical, philosophical, scientific, sociological** *The purpose is one of scientific enquiry.*

VERB + ENQUIRY **encourage** *The subjects on the curriculum encourage intellectual enquiry.*

PREP. **~ concerning/into** *enquiry into the origins of the universe*

PHRASES **an area of enquiry** *The purpose of the research is to put this area of enquiry on a sound experimental footing.* | **a board/commission/committee of enquiry, a line of enquiry** *No one has yet been arrested but the police have assured us that all possible lines of enquiry are being pursued.* | **a method of enquiry** *Methods of enquiry vary from subject to subject.* | **a spirit of enquiry** *Children are born with a spirit of enquiry.*

enrolment *noun*

ADJ. **high, low | total** *Total enrolment fell between 1991 and 1997.* **| open** (= not restricted) **| school | candidate, student**

ENROLMENT + VERB **take place** *Enrolment will take place in the main hall.* **| be/go up, rise | be/go down, fall**

PREP. **at ~** *You will be given a reading list at enrolment.* **| on ~** *The full fee is payable on enrolment.* **| ~ for** *Enrolment for engineering courses is low this year.* **| ~ in** *enrolments in evening classes* **| ~ on** *enrolment on a computer course*

ensure *verb*

VERB + ENSURE **must | aim to, try to | take action/care/steps to** *We must take steps now to ensure the survival of these animals.* **| be designed to** *provisions designed to ensure safe conditions of work* **| help (to) | be important to, be necessary to, be sufficient to** *It is important to ensure that delegates have been properly briefed.*

PHRASES **an attempt to ensure sth, efforts/measures to ensure sth**

entail *verb*

ADV. **actually** *What does the job actually entail?* **| inevitably, necessarily** *Restructuring will inevitably entail compromises.*

entangled *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, get** *The fishing lines had become hopelessly entangled.*

ADV. **hopelessly**

PREP. **in** *He became entangled in legal disputes.* **| with** *Sara had got entangled with some political group.*

enter *verb*

1 **come/go into a place**

ADV. **illegally** *people who enter the country illegally*

VERB + ENTER **allow sb/sth to, permit sb/sth to** *He stood back to allow us to enter.* **| forbid sb to**

PREP. **by/through** *We entered through a large iron gate.*

2 **add information to sth**

ADV. **manually** *You may need to enter this information manually.*

PREP. **in** *Your details have been entered in our database.* **| into, on** *Please enter all your personal details on the form provided.* **| onto** *Enter the data onto the computer.*

enterprise *noun*

1 **plan/project**

ADJ. **great | exciting | ambitious, difficult, hazardous | common, cooperative, joint** *The programme is a joint enterprise with the National Business School.*

VERB + ENTERPRISE **embark on/upon, start, undertake** *They are willing to undertake a new enterprise.* **| abandon**

ENTERPRISE + VERB **fail, succeed**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *The team leader will be the most important factor in this difficult enterprise.*

2 **a business**

ADJ. **large, large-scale, medium-sized, small, small-scale | profitable, successful | family, private | public, state, state-owned | multinational | agricultural, business, commercial, economic, farming, industrial, manufacturing** *the complex organization of a business enterprise*

VERB + ENTERPRISE **control, manage, run** *He runs a successful small enterprise.* **| invest in**

ENTERPRISE + VERB **expand, grow, succeed | fail**

PREP. **in/within an ~** *something that affects all the workers in the enterprise*

3 **development of businesses**

ADJ. **free, private** *The Act will encourage private enterprise.* **| local | corporate, individual, municipal**

VERB + ENTERPRISE **encourage, promote**

ENTERPRISE + NOUN **culture** *The government has promoted the small firm and the* *enterprise culture.*

4 **abilities/imagination**

ADJ. **great** *I thought she showed great enterprise.*

VERB + ENTERPRISE **show**

PHRASES **a spirit of enterprise**

entertain *verb*

1 invite sb to eat/drink with you

ADV. **lavishly** *The Bradfords always entertained lavishly at Christmas.*

PREP. **to** *They entertained us to lunch in their new house.*

2 interest/amuse sb

ADV. **thoroughly** *Everyone was thoroughly entertained.*

PREP. **with** *She entertained us with stories of her travels.*

PHRASES **keep sb entertained** *We hired a magician to keep the children entertained.*

3 think about an idea/hope/feeling

ADV. **seriously** *I am amazed that such a crackpot scheme could be seriously entertained.* | **briefly** *briefly entertaining hopes that he might keep the affair a secret*

VERB + ENTERTAIN **be prepared to, be willing to** *She would make no promises, but was prepared to entertain the idea.* | **refuse to**

entertaining *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound | become | make sth** *He tried to make his speech more entertaining.* **| find sth** *The others seemed to find my discomfort hugely entertaining.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, hugely, marvellously, vastly, very, wonderfully** *It was highly entertaining for the people around them.* **| thoroughly | fairly, quite**

entertainment *noun*

ADJ. **lavish | pure** *Soaps like 'Neighbours' are pure entertainment and there is nothing wrong with that.* **| free | live | evening, nightly** *The hotel has a varied programme of nightly entertainment.* **| mass, popular** *Cinema is a medium of mass entertainment.* **| family, light, musical** *Vote for your top light entertainment show.* **| home, public, street**

VERB + ENTERTAINMENT **lay on, offer, provide, put on** *They laid on lavish entertainment for their guests.*

ENTERTAINMENT + NOUN **business, industry, world | centre, venue | programme | value** *The films were bought chiefly for their entertainment value.*

PREP. **for sb's ~** *Ladies and gentlemen, for your entertainment, we present Magic Man.*

PHRASES **a form of entertainment, a place of entertainment** *places of entertainment such as cinemas*

enthral *verb*

PHRASES **be enthralled by/with sth** *They were enthralled with the play.* **| hold/keep sb enthralled** *She kept her audience enthralled throughout her twenty-minute performance.* **| listen/watch enthralled** *The children listened enthralled as the storyteller unfolded her tale.*

enthusiasm *noun*

ADJ. **burning, considerable, enormous, extraordinary, great, immense, passionate, tremendous | genuine, real | growing | boundless, unbounded, unbridled | undiminished | excessive | spontaneous, sudden | new, new-found, renewed** *We went about our task with renewed enthusiasm.* **| early, initial | general, widespread | popular, public | personal | infectious | boyish, youthful | innocent | natural | religious**

QUANT. **burst, surge** *After an initial burst of enthusiasm for jogging, I gradually lost interest.*

VERB + ENTHUSIASM **be full of, feel, have** *Her voice was full of enthusiasm.* **| convey, express, show** *She managed to convey an enthusiasm she did not feel. The team have shown enthusiasm and commitment.* **| summon up | feign** *He accepted the invitation with feigned enthusiasm.* **| conceal, hide | share | maintain | lose | arouse, engender, fire (sb with), generate** *The trip has fired his enthusiasm for all things French.* **| dampen, dent** *This weather would dampen anyone's enthusiasm for swimming.*

ENTHUSIASM + VERB **bubble over/up** *trying to hide the boyish enthusiasm bubbling up inside him* **| grow | fade, wane, wear off**

PREP. **with/without ~** *I look forward to the challenge ahead with great enthusiasm.* **| ~ about** *Few people expressed enthusiasm about the current leaders.* **| ~ among** *The idea aroused immense enthusiasm among party workers.* **| ~ for** *The initial enthusiasm for the project was wearing off.*

PHRASES **a lack of enthusiasm** *Both sides have shown a distinct lack of enthusiasm for discussion.*

enthusiastic *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get**

ADV. **all, extremely, highly, immensely, incredibly, really, very, wildly** *She's all enthusiastic about China now that she's been there. The audience was wildly enthusiastic.* **| less than, not overly, not particularly** *Mrs Neil did not seem particularly enthusiastic about her job.* **| largely** *Film critics are largely enthusiastic about the thriller.* **| fairly, quite | genuinely**

PREP. **about** *He was quite enthusiastic about the idea.* **| in** *enthusiastic in their support of him*

entity *noun*

ADJ. **discrete, distinct, independent, separate, single** *Church and empire were fused in a single entity.* **| basic | abstract | artificial | physical | living | business, corporate, economic, legal, national, political, social** *A company is a separate legal entity.*

VERB + ENTITY **form** *The two companies will combine to form a new entity.*

entrance *noun*

1 **door/place through which you enter sth**

ADJ. **narrow, wide | main | back, front, rear, side | cave, church, harbour, school, tunnel, etc.**

VERB + ENTRANCE **use** *While the front door is being repaired, please use the side entrance.* **| mark** *The little porch marked the entrance to a churchyard.* **| have** *The building has only one entrance.* **| block** *She stood firm, blocking the entrance.*

ENTRANCE + NOUN **area, foyer, hall, lobby | door, doorway, gate, porch | passage**

PREP. **at the ~, by a/the ~** *The band left by the rear entrance to escape photographers.* **| in the ~** *She stood in the entrance to the ward.* **| through the ~** *Go through the main entrance into the yard.* **| ~ from** *There is a back entrance from West Street.* **| ~ into** *the entrance into the car park* **| ~ to** *He was waiting at the entrance to the cave.*

2 **act of coming in**

ADJ. **dramatic, grand**

VERB + ENTRANCE **make** *She made a grand entrance once all the guests were assembled.* **| gain** *Some of the protesters tried to gain entrance to the meeting.*

PREP. **~ into** *her entrance into politics*

3 **right to enter a place**

VERB + ENTRANCE **gain** *students hoping to gain entrance to university*

ENTRANCE + NOUN **charge, fee | ticket** *an entrance ticket to the zoo* **| requirements | exam/examination**

entrant *noun*

ADJ. **school, university | competition | winning** *The winning entrant received tickets to the theatre.*

VERB + ENTRANT **attract** *The essay competition attracted 46 entrants.*

PREP. **~ for** *the entrants for the award* **| ~ in** *You will automatically be registered as an entrant in the Prize Draw.* **| ~ into** *another new entrant into the multimedia market* **| ~ to** *the number of entrants to higher education*

entrepreneur *noun*

ADJ. **good, great, successful | creative, innovative | ambitious, dynamic | large-scale, small/small-scale | individual, private | budding, potential, would-be | business, music, property, etc.**

entry *noun*

1 **right to enter sth**

ADJ. **free** *The club offers free entry to women on Thursdays.* **| school, university**

VERB + ENTRY **apply for | gain | allow sb, grant sb** *They were later allowed entry into the country.* **| refuse sb, restrict** *It has been necessary to restrict entry into the club.* **| guarantee sb**

ENTRY + NOUN **criteria, qualifications, requirements, standard | visa | ticket** *Entry tickets to most attractions are included in the price of the holiday.*

PREP. **~ into** *These qualifications will not guarantee you entry into the police force.* **| ~ to** *She applied for entry to Nottingham University.*

PHRASES **right of entry** *The landlord had the right of entry to the flat with due warning.*

2 **act of coming in**

ADJ. **forced, forcible** *The house was quiet, and there were no signs of a forced entry.* **| unauthorized** *The sign on the gates read 'No Unauthorized Entry'.* **| illegal | dramatic | triumphal** *Caesar's triumphal entry into Rome*

VERB + ENTRY **force, gain** *He found the door locked, but he forced an entry.* **| make** *The champion made his usual dramatic entry into the arena.*

ENTRY + NOUN **point** *Drugs are believed to come into the country through five main entry points.*

PREP. **~ into** *Hungary's entry into the EU* **| ~ to** *She wondered how she could gain entry to the building.*

3 **sb/sth that enters a competition**

ADJ. **winning** *The winning entry will be published in next month's issue.*

VERB + ENTRY **post, send (in)** *Send in your entry as soon as possible!* **| attract, get, have, receive** *The show attracted entries from all over the country. We have had a lot of entries this year.* **| judge**

ENTRY + NOUN **coupon, form | fee**

PREP. **~ for** *We had too many entries for this event.* **| ~ in** *There were a record 2,000 entries in the under-17 section.* **| ~ to** *one of the best entries to our competition*

4 **one item in a list/book**

ADJ. **diary | dictionary**

VERB + ENTRY **make, write**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *Very little information is given in the diary entries.* **| ~ for** *Look at the dictionary entry for 'welcome'.* **| ~ in** *the last entry she made in her diary* **| ~ on** *First examine the entries on the marriage register.*

envelope *noun*

ADJ. **fat, thick | self-addressed, stamped addressed** *Please enclose a stamped addressed envelope if you would like a reply.* **| post-paid, pre-paid, reply-paid** *To apply, use the enclosed reply-paid envelope (no stamp needed).* **| padded | airmail | brown, buff, manila, plain, white** *an official-looking manila envelope*

VERB + ENVELOPE **open, rip open, slit open, steam open, tear open** *The letter was suspicious, and I considered steaming open the envelope.* **| address, mark** *an envelope addressed in my mother's round handwriting The envelope was marked 'Personal'.* **| seal**

ENVELOPE + VERB **contain sth**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *I had put the letter in the wrong envelope.* **| into an/the ~** *He quickly stuffed the money back into the envelope.* **| on an/the ~** *I couldn't read the address on the envelope.* **| ~ of** *He gave her the envelope of certificates.*

PHRASES **the back of an envelope** *I scribbled his phone number on the back of an envelope.*

envious *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** *She tried not to appear envious.* **| become | make sb** *Don't tell me any more?you're making me envious!*

ADV. **extremely, very | almost | a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat**

PREP. **of** *He had always felt envious of his brother.*

environment *noun*

1 conditions of the place where you are

ADJ. **immediate** *Cold-blooded animals depend on the temperature of their immediate environment.* | **alien, new,** unfamiliar | changing | protected, safe, secure, stable | **friendly** | **pleasant** | **clean, healthy** | **stimulating** | **favourable** *This period provided a favourable environment for the spread of communism.* | **uncertain, unstable** | **dangerous** | **noisy** | **competitive** | **hostile** | **extreme, harsh** | **fragile** *Walkers can unwittingly damage the fragile environment in which the birds live.* | **rural, urban** | **arid, cold, warm** | **aquatic, coastal, forest, mountain** | **domestic, family, home** *Children learn best in their home environment.* | **physical** | **cultural, emotional, social** | **office, work, working, workplace** *A comfortable working environment will increase productivity.* | **classroom, educational, learning, school, teaching, training** | **economic, financial** *Investors are showing more caution in the current economic environment.* | **political** | **business, commercial, corporate** *She now had to transfer her design skills to a commercial environment.* | **professional**

VERB + ENVIRONMENT **create, provide** *parents who strive to provide a stimulating environment for their children to grow up in* | **adapt to** *creatures that have adapted to hostile desert environments* | **improve** | **explore** *The cat walked round, exploring its new environment.*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *people working in increasingly competitive environments*

2 the environment the natural world

ADJ. **natural** | **global, world** | **local**

VERB + ENVIRONMENT **preserve, protect, safeguard** *The government should do more to protect the environment.* | **clean spokesman, spokeswoman** | **policy** | **conference** | **protection** | **issues**

PREP. **in the ~** *the amount of carbon in the environment*

PHRASES **conservation/protection of the environment, damage to the environment** *farming methods that minimize damage to the environment* | **harmful to the environment** *The label identifies the products that are least* *harmful to the environment.* **| pollution of the environment up, improve | have an impact on** *factors that have a huge impact on the environment* **| damage, harm, pollute** *industries which damage the environment*

ENVIRONMENT + NOUN **agency, committee, department, group, ministry | minister, official,**

envisage *verb*

ADV. **originally** *It was originally envisaged that the talks would take place in the spring.* **| always, never**

VERB + ENVISAGE **can/could** *I can envisage difficulties if we continue with this policy.* **| be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to | be easy to, be possible to**

envoy *noun*

ADJ. **papal, personal, royal, special | diplomatic, peace | UN/United Nations | American, British, etc.**

VERB + ENVOY **be, serve as | appoint (sb as)** *The government has not yet appointed an envoy to the area.* **| dispatch, send** *A special peace envoy was sent to the area.*

PREP. **~ from** *a special envoy from the American president* **| ~ to** *He served as envoy to the French government.*

envy *noun*

ADJ. **extreme | unconscious | class, social**

QUANT. **tinge, touch** *I detected a tinge of envy in her tone.* **| pang, stab, twinge** *I felt a twinge of envy for the people who lived there.*

VERB + ENVY **be consumed with, be green with, feel, have** *I had no envy of his success.* **| express, show | arouse, excite, fill sb with, inspire** *Her youth and looks aroused extreme envy in her rivals.*

PREP. **with ~** *I look with envy on those lucky people with big families.* **| ~ at** *I was filled with envy at their adventurous lifestyle.* **| ~ for** *the envy she felt for her sister*

PHRASES **be the envy of sb/sth** *British television is the envy of the world* (= is admired by everyone). **| an object of envy** *Her car was an object of envy in the neighbourhood.*

envy *verb*

ADV. **greatly, really | secretly**

PREP. **for** *I secretly envied her for her good looks.*

epidemic *noun*

ADJ. **major | widespread, worldwide | cholera, flu, typhoid, etc.**

EPIDEMIC + VERB **break out, strike (sth)** *A typhus epidemic struck in the winter of 1919?20.* **| spread, sweep (sth)** *the flu epidemic sweeping the country*

PREP. **during/in an/the ~** *Over fifty people died during the flu epidemic last winter.* **| ~ of** *an epidemic of cholera*

PHRASES **reach epidemic proportions** *Marriage breakdown in the West has reached epidemic proportions.*

episode *noun*

1 **one separate event in sb's life/a story**

ADJ. **dramatic, exciting | bizarre, extraordinary | sad, tragic, unfortunate, unpleasant | major | brief | acute, severe** *(medical) an acute episode of pneumonia* **| latest** *She has only told you about the latest episode in a long history of mental illness.*

VERB + EPISODE **remember | forget**

PREP. **during an ~** *during a brief episode of socialist rule* **| ~ from** *remembering episodes from our childhood* **| ~ in** *an extraordinary episode in American history*

PHRASES **the entire/whole episode** *He says he just wants to forget the whole unfortunate episode.*

2 **one part of a TV/radio drama**

ADJ. **exciting, thrilling** *Don't miss next week's exciting episode!* **| next, | final, last**

VERB + EPISODE **see, watch | miss | film, make** *The next episode has not yet been filmed.*

PREP. **during/in an/the ~** *It happened in the final episode of 'Star Trek'.*

epitaph *noun*

ADJ. **fitting, perfect**

VERB + EPITAPH **write | make, stand as** *These films stand as an epitaph to the great director.*

PREP. **as an ~** *He wanted these lines as his epitaph.* **| ~ for** *She wrote the perfect epitaph for the poet.* **| ~ on** *Joyce's epitaph on King Edward VIII* **| ~ to** *It makes a fitting epitaph to a great career.*

epoch *noun*

ADJ. **new | present | past | historical**

VERB + EPOCH **mark** *The dropping of the first atom bomb marked a new epoch in warfare.*

PREP. **during/in an/the ~** *the importance of the computer in the present epoch* **| ~ of** *an epoch of great social change*

PHRASES **the beginning/end of an epoch**

equal *adj.*

1 same in size/quantity/value, etc.

VERBS **be | become | make sth** *We moved some of the better players to make the two sides equal.*

ADV. **absolutely, exactly, in every way, precisely** *Their test results were equal in every way.* **| almost, nearly, virtually | about, approximately, more or less, roughly** *The EU nations together have an economy about equal in size to that of the US.* **| just | at least** *Fitness is important in sport, but of at least equal importance are skills.*

PREP. **in** *The two books are more or less equal in length.* **| to** *Three feet is roughly equal to one metre.*

2 having the same rights

VERBS **be | be born** *I believe everyone is born equal.*

ADV. **genuinely, truly 3 equal to sth** able to do sth

VERBS **be, feel, prove, seem** *I hope that he proves equal to the challenge.* **| become | make sb** *I felt that nothing could make me equal to the demands being made of me.*

ADV. **more than** *I felt more than equal to the task.*

equal *noun*

ADJ. **intellectual, social**

VERB + EQUAL **regard sb as, treat sb as** *He did not regard himself as her intellectual equal.*

PREP. **as an ~** *He talks even to small children as equals.* **| between ~s** *An interview should be a conversation between equals.* **| without ~** *His guitar playing is without equal.*

PHRASES **be sb's equal** *I shall never be his equal at chess.* **| first among equals** *He was regarded as the 'first among equals' by the other office clerks.* **| have few equals** *When it comes to plain speaking, she has few equals.* **| have no equal** *In fighting, they had no equals.*

equality *noun*

ADJ. **complete, full, genuine, true | greater | economic, legal, political, racial, sexual, social**

VERB + EQUALITY **have** *Women do not yet have true equality in the company.* **| achieve | demand, fight for, strive for | promote | establish | ensure, guarantee**

PHRASES **equality of opportunity** *People from these minority groups must have equality of opportunity.*

PREP. **~ between** *fighting for greater equality between the sexes* **| ~ for** *the task of achieving equality for gay men* **| ~ in** *These women are demanding fairness and equality in their pay.* **| ~ with** *The women are demanding full equality with the men of their tribe.*

equate *verb*

ADV. **directly** *The constellations in the night sky cannot be directly equated with the heroes of Greek mythology.* **| roughly | simply | crudely** *crudely equating happiness with a high income*

VERB + EQUATE **can/cannot, could/could not | be difficult to, be hard to** *It's hard to equate this gentle woman with the monster portrayed in the newspapers.*

PREP. **with** *We are taught to equate beauty with success.*

equation *noun*

1 **mathematical statement**

ADJ. **complicated, simple** *This can be shown by a simple equation.* **| algebraic, mathematical**

VERB + EQUATION **solve, work out** *I could not find a way of solving the equation.* **| satisfy** *the range of values of x which would satisfy this equation*

PREP. **~ for** *the equation for a straight line*

PHRASES **a side of the equation** *the numbers on the right-hand side of the equation*

2 **situation**

VERB + EQUATION **be a part of, come into, enter (into)** *The availability of public transport is also part of the equation. Money also comes into the equation.*

equator *noun*

VERB + EQUATOR **cross**

PREP. **around the ~** *Rainforests occur around the equator.* **| at the ~** *The sun heats the sea more at the equator than at the poles.* **| close to/near the ~** *in an area near the equator* **| on the ~** *The lake lies exactly on the equator.*

PHRASES **north/south of the equator** *The island is just 80 miles north of the equator.*

equip *verb*

ADV. **lavishly, splendidly, superbly, well** *The centre is well equipped for sailing.* **| badly, poorly | comprehensively, fully, properly | adequately, suitably | specially**

VERB + EQUIP **seek to, try to**

PREP. **for** *The hostel is specially equipped for wheelchair access.* **| with** *The flat is fully equipped with a cooker and fridge.*

PHRASES **come equipped with** *Rooms vary in size and come equipped with hairdryers, television and telephone.*

equipment *noun*

ADJ. **the latest, modern, state-of-the-art, up-to-date | sophisticated | sensitive | heavy | portable | basic, standard | essential, necessary, vital** *Hospitals are increasingly depending on charity for vital equipment.* **| specialist | defective, faulty | outdated | labour-saving | domestic, household, kitchen | school | sports | play** *The local council is supplying new play equipment for the playground.* **| business, office | laboratory, scientific | computer, electrical, electronic, high-tech, technical | medical | military | communication, navigation, radar, radio, telecommunications | camera, photographic, video | life-saving, protective, safety, security | rescue | garden, gardening | intellectual, mental, physical, sensory** *He lacks the intellectual equipment to succeed in politics.*

QUANT. **item, piece**

VERB + EQUIPMENT **provide, supply | use** *The plane uses state-of-the-art navigation equipment.* **| install | need, require** *No specialist equipment is needed.*

EQUIPMENT + VERB **consist of sth** *The basic equipment consists of a plastic mask and a length of rope.*

PREP. **~ for** *high-tech equipment for keeping the temperature steady*

equivalent *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **exactly, precisely | almost, closely, essentially, practically | approximately, broadly, more or less, roughly** *the price we would pay elsewhere for a broadly equivalent house*

PREP. **in, to** *These first computers were equivalent in power to a modern calculator.*

equivalent *noun*

ADJ. **direct, exact, nearest** *the nearest equivalent we have to a carnival* **| approximate | modern** *the modern equivalent of the village inn* **| American, British, etc.**

VERB + EQUIVALENT **have** *a word which has no direct equivalent in English*

PREP. **~ for** *There is no exact male equivalent for witches.* **| ~ in** *It is the approximate equivalent in height to the Matterhorn.* **| ~ of** *This qualification is the equivalent of a degree.* **| ~ to** *This concert hall has been described as the American equivalent to London's Albert Hall.*

era *noun*

ADJ. **golden, great** *the golden era of radio* **| new | present | modern | bygone, past, previous** *The room had the elegance of a bygone era.* **| post-imperial, post-war | Edwardian, Victorian, etc. | Clinton, Thatcher, etc. | Christian, Common** *the early centuries of the Christian/Common Era*

VERB + ERA **usher in** *The fall of the Berlin Wall ushered in a whole new era.* **| enter, move into** *The country has entered an era of high unemployment.*

ERA + VERB **begin | end**

PREP. **during/in an/the ~** *We live in an era of religious uncertainty.* **| into ~** *a practice that has survived into the present era* **| ~ in** *a new era in the history of art*

PHRASES **the beginning/dawn/dawning of a (new) era, be on the threshold of a new era, the end of an era**

eradicate *verb*

ADV. **completely, entirely, totally | successfully**

VERB + ERADICATE **try to | help (to) | be difficult to, be impossible to** *These insects are very difficult to eradicate.*

PREP. **from** *The disease has now been successfully eradicated from the world.*

PHRASES **an attempt/effort to eradicate sth**

erase *verb*

ADV. **completely | virtually | partially**

VERB + ERASE **try to | be determined to** *They are determined to erase the bad memories of last year's defeats.*

PREP. **from** *These people have been virtually erased from the history book.*

erect *adj.*

1 **standing/sitting straight up**

VERBS **be, sit, stand** *He sat very erect, listening intently.* **| hold sth** *She held her head erect as she walked proudly up to the platform.*

ADV. **very**

2 **stiff**

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **completely, fully | stiffly**

erect *verb*

ADV. **hastily, quickly | specially** *The event will take place in a specially erected marquee.*

PHRASES **newly/recently erected** *the newly erected station buildings*

erection *noun*

VERB + ERECTION **get, have | lose | give sb**

erode *verb*

ADV. **badly, deeply, seriously, severely** *Walkers should stick to obvious paths, even if they are badly eroded. The experience had seriously eroded his confidence in himself.* **| completely | further | gradually, slowly** *The distinction between social classes is slowly being eroded.* **| steadily** *The river bank had been steadily eroded over the years.* **| rapidly | easily | away** *The rocks have eroded away over time.*

VERB + ERODE **threaten to** *The pressure towards uniformity that constantly threatens to erode local traditions.* **| tend to**

erosion *noun*

ADJ. **serious, severe** *Acid rain has caused severe erosion on the hillside.* **| rapid | gradual, steady** *the steady erosion of their civil liberties* **| coastal, soil | glacial, water, wind**

VERB + EROSION **cause, contribute to, lead to, result in | protect sth from, reduce | suffer (from)** *The area suffers badly from coastal erosion.*

EROSION + VERB **affect sth** *the areas worst affected by soil erosion*

PHRASES **the rate of erosion**

erotic *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become | find sth**

ADV. **highly, powerfully | mildly | blatantly, overtly** *There were some overtly erotic scenes in the film.*

errand *noun*

ADJ. **little, simple**

VERB + ERRAND **do, go on, run** *She made her brother run some little errands for her.* **|** **send sb on** *My boss kept sending me out on errands.*

PREP. **on an ~** *She's gone on an errand for her mother.*

erratic *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very, wildly | completely | increasingly** *her increasingly erratic behaviour* **| fairly, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat**

error *noun*

ADJ. **fundamental, glaring, grave, great, major, monumental, serious** *The report contained some glaring errors.* | **fatal** *He made the fatal error of borrowing more than he could pay back.* | **minor, small** | **embarrassing, unfortunate** | **past** *The ability to learn from past errors is vital in business.* | **common** | **grammatical, spelling, typing** | **factual** | **tactical** *The Kenyan athlete made a tactical error in starting too fast.* | **administrative, clerical** | **human, pilot** *The plane crash was caused by human error, not mechanical failure.*

VERB + ERROR **commit, make** *He had committed a grave error in letting them see the document. She made several serious errors during the race.* | **contain** *The document contained a lot of typing errors.* | **detect, discover, find, spot** *I found several factual errors in the report.* | **point out** *The error was pointed out to her by one of her colleagues.* | **realize** *I only realized my error when it was too late.* | **avoid** *She has avoided the common error of writing too much.* | **correct, rectify** *Glasses can correct most errors in your vision.* | **compound** *The paper accidentally printed the victim's address, then compounded their error by printing her name the next day.*

ERROR + VERB **arise (from sth), occur** *errors arising from inadequate information*

ERROR + NOUN **detection** | **correction** | **message** *An error message comes up when I try to open the program.*

PREP. **in ~** *The machine had been switched off in error* (= by mistake). | **~ in** *He checked his letter for errors in spelling. He realized his error in not attending the funeral.* | **~ of** *The speech contained many errors of fact.*

PHRASES **a comedy of errors** *His attempts to arrange a party ended up as a comedy of errors.* | **an error of judgement** *The minister had made an amazing error of judgement.* | **a margin of error** *The margin of error for a racing driver is tiny.*

erupt *verb*

ADV. **violently** *the volcano which erupted violently last month* **| suddenly** *His anger suddenly erupted into furious shouting.*

VERB + ERUPT **threaten to**

PREP. **into** *violence that threatened to erupt into a full-scale war*

eruption *noun*

1 **explosion of a volcano**

ADJ. **big, great, major, violent** *It was the biggest eruption of Vesuvius for some years.* **| minor | volcanic**

VERB + ERUPTION **predict**

ERUPTION + VERB **happen, occur, take place**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *The temple was destroyed in the violent eruption of 1470 BC.*

2 **sudden start of sth loud/violent**

ADJ. **sudden** *a sudden eruption of fighting*

PREP. **~ of**

escalate *verb*

1 **become/make sth worse**

ADV. **rapidly | steadily** *Violence between the two sides has been steadily escalating.* **| suddenly**

PREP. **into** *The conflict could escalate rapidly into a full-scale war.*

2 **increase**

ADV. **sharply** *The cost of raw materials has escalated sharply.*

escalation *noun*

ADJ. **dramatic, major, serious | further | rapid**

VERB + ESCALATION **lead to** *The reorganization has led to a dramatic escalation in costs.* **| prevent**

PREP. **~ in** *a serious escalation in the fighting* **| ~ into** *the escalation of the conflict into an all-out war*

escalator *noun*

ADJ. **down, up** *kids running up a down escalator*

VERB + ESCALATOR **take** *Take the escalator down to the lower level.* **| go up | descend, go down**

ESCALATOR + VERB **carry sb** *Passengers are carried by escalator to the first floor.*

escape *noun*

1 **getting away from a place**

ADJ. **attempted | successful | great** *one of the greatest escapes of all time*

VERB + ESCAPE **effect, make, make good** *He made his escape through the window. I found an open door and made good my escape.* **| plan | foil, prevent**

ESCAPE + NOUN **attempt, bid | route**

PREP. **~ from** *his escape from the prison camp*

PHRASES **a means/way of escape** *She looked round for a means of escape.* **| a possibility of escape** *There was clearly no possibility of escape.*

2 **avoiding sth unpleasant or boring**

ADJ. **close, narrow, near | lucky, miraculous, remarkable** *A driver had a lucky escape after a brick was dropped on his car from an overhead bridge.*

VERB + ESCAPE **have**

PREP. **~ from** *He had a narrow escape from gunfire.*

escape *verb*

ADV. **narrowly** *They narrowly escaped being killed in the fire.* **| not entirely** *The head of department cannot entirely escape responsibility for this situation.*

VERB + ESCAPE **cannot/could not | be impossible to | attempt to, try to | manage to | let sb** *It was stupid of Lee to let them escape.* **| help sb (to)**

PREP. **from** *to escape from prison* **| into** *They escaped into the forest.* **| to** *The family escaped to England.* **| with** *Thieves escaped with property worth over £5,000.*

PHRASES **escape alive** *Only two of the men escaped alive.* **| escape sb's clutches** *He had managed to escape the clutches of the police yet again.* **| escape unharmed/ unhurt/uninjured/unscathed, escape with your life** *She was very lucky to escape with her life.*

escort *noun*

ADJ. **armed, military, motorcycle, police**

VERB + ESCORT **be accompanied by, have** *She had a police escort to the hospital.* **| give sb, provide (sb with), send** *Can you give us an escort? The army provided a small armed escort for the delegation.* **| need** *The referee needed a police escort as he left the stadium.*

ESCORT + NOUN **vehicle**

PREP. **under ~** *The opposition leader was arrested and taken to the capital under escort.* **| with/without an ~** *They left with a small escort.* **| ~ for** *an escort for the Queen's car* **| ~ of** *an escort of ten soldiers*

espionage *noun*

ADJ. **industrial** *The big computer companies are very worried about industrial espionage.* **| international | American, British, etc.**

VERB + ESPIONAGE **be engaged in, be involved in, engage in | be executed for, be expelled for, be imprisoned for** *Two members of the embassy staff had been expelled for espionage.*

ESPIONAGE + NOUN **activities**

PREP. **~ against** *She was found guilty of espionage against the United States.* **| ~ on behalf of** *espionage on behalf of foreign states*

PHRASES **the world of espionage** *the shadowy world of espionage* > Note at CRIME (for more verbs)

essay *noun*

QUANT. **collection** *In 2001 she published a collection of essays.*

VERB + ESSAY **do, write** *Have you done your essay yet?* **| give in, hand in** *Essays handed in late will not be accepted.*

ESSAY + NOUN **question, title, topic** *You have to answer 3 out of 8 essay questions in the exam.*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *He made some very good points in his essay.* **| ~ about/on** *We've got to write an essay on the environment.* **| ~ by** *an essay by Montaigne*

essence *noun*

1 **basic/most important quality of sth**

ADJ. **real, true, very**

VERB + ESSENCE **capture, convey, embody, encapsulate, represent** *His paintings embody the very essence of the immediate post-war years.*

PREP. **in ~** *His theory was not new in essence.*

2 **concentrated substance**

ADJ. **almond, vanilla, etc.**

QUANT. **dash, drop** *Add a few drops of vanilla essence.*

VERB + ESSENCE **add, use**

essential *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become** *It is becoming almost essential for students to have a second language.* **| remain | make sth** *Increased competition makes it essential for the business to innovate.* **| consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as, think sth** *Do you consider these textbooks essential for the course?*

ADV. **really | absolutely | almost, virtually | fairly | by no means** *Although useful, the accessories are by no means essential.*

PREP. **for** *the skills essential for success* **| to** *He believed that some form of religion was essential to human life.*

essentials *noun*

ADJ. **bare, basic** *the bare essentials for existence*

VERB + ESSENTIALS **grasp** *Just try and grasp the essentials of the argument.* **| provide** *The relief agencies are trying to provide food and other basic essentials.* **| concentrate on** *Don't let's worry about the details at this stage. Let's concentrate on the essentials.*

establish *verb*

1 start/create sth

VERB + ESTABLISH **attempt to, seek to, try to** *trying to establish links with local schools* | **help (to), help sb (to)** | **agree to** *The two countries agreed to establish full diplomatic relations.* | **be able to** | **be important to**

PHRASES **an attempt/effort to establish sth, newly/recently established** *He was appointed to the newly established Department of the Environment.*

2 make sth known and accepted

ADV. **firmly, securely** *His position in the organization is now firmly established.*

VERB + ESTABLISH **attempt to, seek to, try to** | **help (to), help sb (to)** *The exhibition helped her establish herself as an artist.*

PREP. **as** *He has now established his reputation as a popular musician.*

PHRASES **become/get established** *The festival has become established as one of the town's annual events.*

3 make certain of sth

ADV. **conclusively, definitely** | **empirically**

VERB + ESTABLISH **attempt to, seek to, try to** *Police are still trying to establish the identity of the dead man.* | **help (to)** | **be able to** | **be possible to** | **be difficult to** | **be important to**

PHRASES **an attempt/effort to establish sth**

establishment *noun*

1 **act of starting sth**

ADJ. **formal** *the formal establishment of the republic in 1948* **| gradual, rapid**

VERB + ESTABLISHMENT **call for, support** *Opposition MPs are calling for the establishment of an independent food and drugs agency.* **| agree to, consent to | lead to** *This report led to the establishment of a special committee to investigate the matter.* **| allow (for), enable, provide for** *a law allowing the establishment of private television stations* **| announce | see** *The months that followed saw the establishment of a strong military presence in the region.*

PREP. **with the ~ of** *With the establishment of major new markets, the economy is thriving.*

2 **shop/business/organization**

ADJ. **catering, educational, military, research, training** *She's now running a small government research establishment.* > Note at ORGANIZATION(for verbs)

3 **the establishment: people in positions of power**

ADJ. **academic, art, literary, medical, musical, political, religious, scientific | British, French, etc.** *The British Establishment is very slow to accept change.*

VERB + ESTABLISHMENT **offend** *His abstract paintings offended the art establishment.*

estate *noun*

1 **land owned by a person/family/organization**

ADJ. **big, great, large, substantial, vast | small**

VERB + ESTATE **have, own** *The family owns a large estate in the north of the country.* **| buy** *Queen Victoria bought the estate in 1848.* **| manage, run**

ESTATE + NOUN **employee, manager, owner, worker | management**

PREP. **on an/the ~** *the number of people living on the estate* **| ~ of** *an estate of 20,000 acres*

PHRASES **an heir to an estate** *The young prince is the heir to a vast estate in the west of the country.*

2 **land with a lot of buildings of the same type**

ADJ. **large, massive | small | council, housing | private | industrial, trading** *The factory is on a large industrial estate on the outskirts of town.*

VERB + ESTATE **build**

PREP. **on an/the ~** *She lives on a council estate in Leeds.*

3 **property that sb leaves when they die**

ADJ. **personal**

VERB + ESTATE **leave** *She left her whole estate to her niece.* **| inherit** *She inherited her father's estate.* **| own** *He owns personal estate worth $30 million.*

ESTATE + VERB **be valued at sth, be worth sth**

esteem *noun*

ADJ. **great, high | low | personal, self-***I needed to do it for my own personal esteem.* **| popular, public, social**

VERB + ESTEEM **earn** *She had earned the esteem of everyone in the town.* **| lose** *It is easy for children to lose their self-esteem.* **| accord sb** *the level of social esteem accorded to doctors* **| fall in, rise in** *He fell in public esteem following the scandal.*

PREP. **in … ~** *the status of teachers in the public esteem* **| ~ for** *the public's esteem for the prime minister* **| ~ of** *The school's aim is to build the self-esteem of the children.*

PHRASES **hold sb/sth in great/high/low esteem** *He is held in the highest esteem by all who know him.* **| a mark/token of esteem** *We would like to offer you this gift as a mark of our esteem.*

estimate *noun*

ADJ. **official, unofficial | current, recent** *Current estimates suggest that supplies will run out within six months.* **| early, initial, preliminary | accurate, fair, good, realistic, reasonable, reliable | best** *Flight times in the brochure are based on our best estimate, and will be confirmed as soon as possible.* **| approximate, rough | conservative, low** *I think 15,000 will turn out to be a very low estimate.* **| high** *According to the highest estimate, over 100,000 men died in the battle.* **| optimistic, pessimistic | cost**

VERB + ESTIMATE **make** *Can you make an estimate of the numbers involved?* **| give (sb), provide (sb with), submit** *Three firms submitted estimates for the work.* **| revise**

ESTIMATE + VERB **be based on sth | indicate sth, predict sth, show sth, suggest sth** *One estimate suggests that 30,000 jobs may be lost.* **| put sth at** *Some estimates put the figure as high as 50%.* **| range, vary** *Cost estimates vary from $50,000 to $200,000.*

PREP. **according to an/the ~** *According to the revised estimate, four million people will be without homes.* **| at an ~** *Even at a conservative estimate, there is a lot of work to be done.* **| in an/the ~** *In his first estimate, he suggested a figure of £5,000.* **| ~ by, ~ from** *According to an estimate by a leading newspaper, she earns £40 million a year.* **| ~ for** *We will send you an estimate for the repairs.* **| ~ of** *an estimate of profits an estimate of £300*

estimate *verb*

ADV. **currently | accurately, reliably | provisionally | conservatively** *It is conservatively estimated that not less than half a million people died in the famine.* **| officially, unofficially** *The strike was officially estimated to have cost $80 million.*

VERB + ESTIMATE **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to | be used to** *The results of the survey were used to estimate the preferences of the population at large.*

PREP. **at** *We estimated the cost at £50,000.*

estimation *noun*

VERB + ESTIMATION **go up in, rise in** *He went up in my estimation when I heard about his charity work.* **| go down in**

PREP. **in sb's ~** *In my estimation, you've done a good job.*

estranged *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become**

ADV. **deeply | completely | increasingly**

PREP. **from** *He felt deeply estranged from the society he lived in.*

ethics *noun*

ADJ. **personal** *She resigned over an issue of personal ethics.* **| Christian | business, medical, professional** *The study was approved by the medical ethics committee.*

PHRASES **a code of ethics** *There should be a code of business ethics which indicates how clients are to be served.* **| a matter/question of ethics.** *It's the committee's job to decide on matters of ethics.*

etiquette *noun*

ADJ. **professional, social** *He showed his contempt for social etiquette by not wearing a tie.* **| correct** *What's the correct etiquette when addressing a judge?* **| strict** *the strict etiquette of palace life*

VERB + ETIQUETTE **breach** *He had breached etiquette by not informing his superiors of his decision.*

ETIQUETTE + VERB **require sth** *Etiquette requires that the bride's father makes a speech.*

PHRASES **a breach of etiquette** *The solicitor was accused of a breach of professional etiquette.* **| matters of etiquette** *He is an expert on matters of etiquette.* **| the rules of etiquette** *She knew how to address bishops according to the rules of etiquette.* **| a stickler for etiquette** *She's a real stickler for etiquette, so you'd better ask her advice.*

euphoria *noun*

ADJ. **early, initial** *after the initial euphoria* **| general**

QUANT. **wave** *The news sparked a wave of euphoria across the country.*

VERB + EUPHORIA **feel** *the euphoria we all felt when they were finally defeated*

EUPHORIA + VERB **evaporate, fade**

PREP. **~ about** *All the euphoria about the 'new methods' soon faded.* **| ~ over** *By then, the euphoria over the fall of the Berlin Wall had evaporated.*

PHRASES **a feeling of euphoria, a state of euphoria**

euro *noun* > Note at CURRENCY

euthanasia *noun*

ADJ. **voluntary | involuntary**

VERB + EUTHANASIA **perform, practise | legalize**

evacuate *verb*

ADV. **safely**

VERB + EVACUATE **help (to)** *to provide aircraft to help evacuate refugees*

PREP. **from** *Helicopters were used to evacuate people from their homes.* **| to** *The man has now been safely evacuated to the mainland.*

evacuation *noun*

ADJ. **large-scale, mass | emergency, immediate | casualty | wartime**

EVACUATION + NOUN **area, zone | order | plan, programme, scheme | procedures**

PREP. **~ from** *the evacuation of civilians from the area*

evade *verb*

1 **escape**

ADV. **narrowly** *They narrowly evaded a police car which was approaching.* | **successfully**

VERB + EVADE **attempt to, try to** | **manage to** *He managed to evade capture and escaped over the border.*

2 **avoid dealing with sth**

ADV. **simply** *Her response was simply to evade the problem altogether.* | **carefully, skilfully** | **easily** *Responsibility could not be so easily evaded.* | **altogether**

VERB + EVADE **attempt to, try to**

evaluate *verb*

ADV. **fully, properly, thoroughly | carefully, systematically** *The evidence should be carefully evaluated.* **| critically | positively** *The role of stay-at-home mother is more positively evaluated in working-class communities.*

VERB + EVALUATE **aim to, attempt to, be designed to | help (to)** *to help evaluate the success of the campaign* **| be used to** *criteria used to evaluate employees' performance* **| be difficult to, be hard to**

evaluation *noun*

ADJ. **comprehensive, thorough | objective | critical** *a critical evaluation of the film* **| job** *a new pay structure based on job evaluations*

VERB + EVALUATION **carry out, make** *We've still got to carry out an evaluation of the results.*

EVALUATION + NOUN **procedure, process | study**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *In their evaluation of the project, they considered only certain aspects of it.* **| under ~** *The new scheme is still under evaluation.*

eve *noun*

ADJ. **Christmas, Midsummer's, New Year's**

PREP. **on the ~ of** *opinion polls published on the eve of the election*

even *adj.*

1 **level/smooth**

VERBS **be, look** *The floor isn't completely even.*

ADV. **very | absolutely, completely**

2 **same size/level**

VERBS **be | become | keep sth** *Try to keep your stitches absolutely even.*

ADV. **very | absolutely, completely | fairly** *Try to keep the room at a fairly even temperature.*

3 **equal**

VERBS **be, seem | remain**

ADV. **very | fairly, more or less** *The scores remained more or less even throughout the competition.*

evening *noun*

1 **part of the day**

ADJ. **this, tomorrow, yesterday | Friday, Saturday, etc. | April, May, etc. | spring, summer, etc. | long** *the long winter evenings* | **dark | quiet | balmy, beautiful, fine, golden, warm | cold, cool, dry | early, late** *It was early evening and very still.*

VERB + EVENING **spend** *We spent the evening walking round the town.*

EVENING + VERB **progress, wear on** *As the evening wore on, Phil became very drunk.*

EVENING + NOUN **light, star | meal | shift, work | class, course | entertainment, performance | prayer, service | rush hour | news, newspaper, paper**

PREP. **during the ~, for an/the ~** *Her parents were out for the evening.* | **in the ~, on Friday, etc. ~**

PHRASES **an/the evening off/out** *You deserve an occasional evening out.* | **good evening**

2 **event happening in the evening**

ADJ. **gala, musical, social | open, parents'** *Prospective students were invited to the school's open evening.* | **convivial, enjoyable, lovely, memorable, pleasant, successful, wonderful**

VERB + EVENING **hold** *The club will hold a social evening to welcome new members.*

EVENING + NOUN **clothes, dress, gown, wear**

PREP. **during the ~, for the ~**

event *noun*

1 sth that happens

ADJ. **big, great, historic, important, key, main, major, momentous, significant** *Tonight's programme looks back at the main events of the year.* | **dramatic, remarkable** | **happy** | **sad, tragic, traumatic** | **rare** *Outside big cities, murder is a rare event.* | **subsequent** *Subsequent events proved him wrong.* | **historical, political**

VERB + EVENT **witness** *When the ship finally reached land, only a few of the crew were left to witness the event.* | **record** *We had a huge party, and hired a photographer to record the event.* | **celebrate, commemorate, mark** *Today is the hospital's fiftieth anniversary, and there will be a party to mark the event.*

EVENT + VERB **happen, occur, take place, unfold** *TV viewers watched in horror as events unfolded.* | **lead to sth** *These events quickly led to confusion.* | **lead up to sth** *The police are trying to establish a picture of events leading up to the killing.*

PHRASES **a chain/sequence/series of events, the course of events** *Would it have been possible to change the course of events?*

2 planned social occasion

ADJ. **big, important, main, major, special** | **popular** | **prestigious** *The Birmingham meeting is one of the most prestigious events in the racing calendar.* | **inaugural** | **annual, regular** | **forthcoming** *Forthcoming events are listed on the back page of the local newspaper.* | **fund-raising, musical, social, sporting middle-distance, sprint**

VERB + EVENT **enter (for), take part in** *A record number of teams have entered the event.* | **win**

EVENT + VERB **take place** *The team events will take place later this week.*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *African runners swept the medals in the distance events.*

VERB + EVENT **hold, organize, stage** *The event will be held in the grounds of the manor house.* | **publicize** | **attend, support** *I would like to thank everyone who* *attended our charity evening for supporting the event.* **| boycott** *Several leading players boycotted the event in protest at the reduced prize money.*

EVENT + VERB **take place**

3 **race/competition**

ADJ. **big, main** *This race will be the main event of the afternoon.* **| individual, team | men's, women's | field, track | jumping, running, throwing | distance, long-distance,**

evict *verb*

ADV. **forcibly | unlawfully**

VERB + EVICT **seek to, try to**

PREP. **from** *They were forcibly evicted from their home.*

eviction *noun*

ADJ. **illegal, unlawful** *He claimed damages for unlawful eviction.* **| forcible**

VERB + EVICTION **be threatened with, face | resist**

EVICTION + NOUN **notice, order, warrant**

PREP. **~ from** *They are facing eviction from their home.*

evidence *noun*

ADJ. **abundant, ample, considerable, extensive, plentiful, substantial, widespread | growing | clear, compelling, conclusive,** convincing, decisive, good, hard, incontrovertible, **irrefutable, overwhelming, persuasive, positive, powerful, solid, striking, strong, unambiguous, unequivocal |** adequate | flimsy, inadequate, **insufficient, scant | concrete, direct, firm, first-hand, objective, tangible** *The figures provide concrete evidence of the bank's claim to provide the best service.* **| indirect | available, current, present** *Available evidence points to pilot error as the cause of the crash.* **| fresh, further, more, new | crucial, important, valuable, vital** *The defence accused the prosecution of withholding crucial evidence.* **| corroborative** *They convicted the wrong man on the basis of a signed confession with no corroborative evidence.* **| conflicting** *Another team of scientists has come up with conflicting evidence.* **| damning** *The scandal is damning evidence of the government's contempt for democracy.* **| anecdotal, archaeological, circumstantial, documentary, empirical, experimental, factual, forensic, formal, historical, material, medical, photographic, scientific, statistical, video, visible, visual** *There was a mass of circumstantial evidence linking Watson to the murder.* **| false** *She admitted giving false evidence to the court.*

QUANT. **piece | body, mass** *A body of evidence emerged suggesting that smoking tobacco caused serious diseases.*

VERB + EVIDENCE **have** *We do not have the evidence to prove these claims.* **| look for, search for | accumulate, collect, come up with, find, gather, obtain, produce** *Scientists have found fresh evidence to suggest that a huge explosion led to the death of the dinosaurs.* **| offer (sb), provide (sb with), show (sb)** *The tapes provided evidence of her intentions.* **| give, present (sb with)** *She was hoping she would not have to give evidence in court.* | see *He says he's been working hard, but I haven't seen any evidence of it.* **| consider, examine, study | review | cite (sth as)** *The team cited evidence from a recent earthquake to back up their idea. The rise in crime is often cited as evidence of a general breakdown of authority.* **| use sth in** *The police officer took a statement which was later used in evidence.* **| hear** *We must wait to hear his evidence before we make any judgement.* **| admit, allow** *The judge can decide whether to admit or exclude evidence.* **| exclude**

EVIDENCE + VERB **exist | come to light, emerge | accumulate, grow** *Evidence is accumulating that a defective gene may be responsible for this disease.* **| confirm sth, demonstrate sth, establish sth, point to sth, show sth, suggest sth,**

support sth *The evidence pointed to the existence of an international smuggling network.* **| be based on sth, be derived from sth, come from sth** *evidence of growing poverty based on extensive surveys* **| implicate sb/sth, link sb/sth** *evidence linking her to the crime*

PREP. **as ~** *He cited Australia's sporting success as evidence for his theory.* **| in ~** *A photo of the victim's injuries was produced in evidence.* **| on … ~** *On present evidence the team will be lucky to make the final.* **| on the ~ of** *On the evidence of his latest exhibition, Miller is an artist who is past his best.* **| ~ about, ~ concerning, ~ regarding, ~ relating to** *The team have been collecting evidence about war crimes.* **| ~ against** *The woman went to court to give evidence against her attacker.* **| ~ for** *What evidence do you have for that claim?* **| ~ of** *Archaeologists found evidence of a rich and varied culture at the settlement.* **| ~ on** *The first chapter reviews the evidence on how children learn language.*

PHRASES **in the face/teeth of evidence** *The company denies, in the face of overwhelming evidence, that smoking causes cancer.* **| in the light of evidence** *In the light of new evidence, a new enquiry into the crash is likely to take place.* **| lack of evidence** *The kidnapping charge was dropped because of lack of evidence.* **| not a scrap/shred of evidence** *He made the accusations without a shred of evidence to back them up.*

evident *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain | make sth** *The silence of the forest was made evident by the occasional snap of a twig.*

ADV. **clearly, plainly, strongly, very | perfectly, quite | increasingly | especially, particularly | fairly | sufficiently | immediately | already** *It is already evident that new roads only generate new traffic.* **| painfully** *The strain of her work schedule became painfully evident as she jetted from New York to London and on to Milan.*

PREP. **from** *It was fairly evident from her tone of voice that she disapproved.* **| in** *His anger was evident in his attitude to the others.* **| to** *It was evident to me that the mission would fail.*

evil *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become**

ADV. **really, truly, very | wholly | basically, inherently, intrinsically** *He believes that all people are basically evil.*

evil *noun*

ADJ. **great | lesser** *This sort of job is a lesser evil than unemployment.* **| moral, social** *combating the social evils of poverty, disease and ignorance*

VERB + EVIL **do** *His simple message was that God will punish those that do evil.* **| combat, fight, resist, turn (away) from** *You can always choose to resist evil.*

PHRASES **the forces of evil** *a perpetual struggle between the forces of good and the forces of evil* **| good and evil** *not a simple choice between good and evil* **| the root of all evil** *He sees money as the root of all evil.*

evoke *verb*

ADV. **clearly, vividly | still** *Her face, though sad, still evoked a feeling of serenity.*

VERB + EVOKE **try to | be designed to, be intended to** *narrative techniques that are intended to evoke sympathy from the reader*

evolution *noun*

ADJ. **gradual | rapid | continuous | natural | peaceful** *the peaceful evolution to democracy* **| biological, cultural, historical, political, social, technological | animal, human | Darwinian**

VERB + EVOLUTION **trace** *a book tracing the evolution of the English language*

EVOLUTION + VERB **occur, proceed, take place** *Evolution proceeds by a series of small changes.*

PREP. **~ from … to …** *his evolution from comedian to serious actor* **| ~ towards** *the country's gradual evolution towards democracy*

PHRASES **the theory of evolution** *people who reject the theory of evolution*

evolve *verb*

ADV. **gradually, slowly | rapidly | eventually** *the theory which eventually evolved from this study* **| constantly, continually | naturally | independently, separately** *Monkeys in the New World evolved quite separately from those in the Old World.*

VERB + EVOLVE **continue to**

PREP. **from** *More complex animals gradually evolved from these very simple creatures.* **| into** *The protest movement has evolved into a well organized political party.*

PHRASES **fully/highly evolved** *These are very highly evolved animals.*

exaggerate *verb*

ADV. **greatly, grossly, vastly, wildly** *These figures have been greatly exaggerated.* **| a little, rather, slightly, somewhat | further | easily** *The historical significance of these events can be easily exaggerated* (= it is easy to think they are more significant than they are). **| artificially, deliberately**

VERB + EXAGGERATE **tend to** *John does tend to exaggerate slightly.* **| be easy to | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *It is difficult to exaggerate the importance of developing good study habits.*

exam *noun*

ADJ. **difficult, stiff | easy | entrance, matriculation, placement | end of term/year, final | professional, school | chemistry, French, geography, etc. | external | mock** *I did badly in the mock exam but passed the real thing.* **| multiple choice, oral, practical, written**

VERB + EXAM **prepare for, revise for, study for** *I can't go out because I'm revising for end of year exams.* **| do, sit, take** *When do you sit your final exams?* **| resit, retake | do well in, pass, scrape through** *In spite of her worries, she passed the exam with flying colours. I wrote two awful essays and was lucky to scrape through the exam.* **| do badly in, fail, flunk | cheat in** *Candidates found cheating in any exam will be disqualified from all their exams.* **| set** *The final exam is set by a board of professors.* **| administer, invigilate | mark**

EXAM + VERB **begin, start | be over, finish** *As soon as the exams are over I'm going on holiday.*

EXAM + NOUN **practice, preparation, revision | paper, question | marks, results | failure, pass | technique | nerves** *Most students suffer from exam nerves to some extent.* **| fee | time** *There is a subdued atmosphere in the school at exam time.* **| format** *The exam format has been changed to include multiple choice questions.* **| board** *The regional exam boards all get together regularly to ensure equal standards.*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *He did badly in his maths exam.* **| ~ for** *an exam for school leavers* **| ~ in** *an exam in chemistry*

examination *noun*

1 **exam**

ADJ. **difficult, stiff** *The stiff entrance examination removes 60 per cent of prospective students.* | **easy** | **important** | **entrance, matriculation, selection** | **end of term/year, final** *He has just completed his final examinations at London University.* | **professional, school** | **formal** | **competitive** | **external, public** *One of the teacher's principal duties is to prepare students for external examinations.* | **A level, GCSE, etc.** | **mock** | **multiple choice, oral, practical, written, viva voce**

VERB + EXAMINATION **prepare for, revise for, study for** | **enter for** *Students may enter for both examinations.* | **do, sit, take** *She will take her professional examinations later this year.* | **resit, retake** | **do well in, pass** | **do badly in, fail** | **set** *The examinations are set by individual teachers.* | **administer, invigilate** | **mark**

EXAMINATION + NOUN **paper, question** | **syllabus** | **candidate** | **grades, marks, results** | **certificate** | **hall, room** | **fee** | **technique** | **success**

PREP. **~ in** *He failed his examination in history.* | **~ on** *an examination on human anatomy*

2 **looking at sth carefully**

ADJ. **careful, close, detailed, full, lengthy, rigorous, thorough** *Each of the proposals deserves careful examination.* | **brief, cursory, superficial** | **initial, preliminary** | **critical** *The school curriculum has undergone critical examination in recent years.* | **clinical, forensic, medical, physical, post-mortem, psychiatric, scientific**

VERB + EXAMINATION **carry out, conduct, do, make, perform** *He carried out a post-mortem examination. We will make a more thorough examination of the area later.* | **come under, have, be subject/subjected to, undergo** *I was advised to have a full eyesight examination.* | **stand up to** *His ideas about social change do not stand up to close examination.*

EXAMINATION + VERB **reveal sth, show sth** *A medical examination showed no signs of* *hypertension.*

EXAMINATION + NOUN **couch** *She lay on the examination couch and waited for the doctor to return.*

PREP. **on ~** *On closer examination the wood was found to be rotten.* **| under ~** *Several items of clothing are still under examination.* **| ~ by** *The school's controversial methods have come under examination by the local authority.*

examine *verb*

1 consider/look at sb/sth carefully

ADV. **carefully, closely, in detail, minutely** *Each case must be carefully examined. We shall now proceed to examine these two aspects of the problem in detail.* **| exhaustively, fully, properly, thoroughly | briefly | further | critically** *Critically examine your work as if you were looking at someone else's efforts.* **| medically**

VERB + EXAMINE **aim to, be designed to, seek to, set out to** *This study sets out to examine the possible effects of climate change.* **| proceed to | stop to** *Anna stopped to examine a plant growing by the stream.* **| be necessary to, need to | want to, wish to**

PREP. **for** *The room was examined minutely for clues.*

PHRASES **let us examine …** *Let us examine the implications of this theory.*

2 test what sb knows/can do

ADV. **externally, internally** *The course is externally examined* (= by people from outside the college, university, etc.).

PREP. **in** *The students will be examined in all subjects at the end of term.* **| on** *You are only being examined on this semester's work.* > See CROSS-EXAMINATION

example *noun*

1 **sth that is typical/demonstrates a point**

ADJ. **characteristic, classic, prime, representative, typical** *This is a classic example of a badly designed building.* | **excellent, fine, good, impressive, magnificent, outstanding, perfect, superb, wonderful** *a magnificent example of sixteenth-century architecture* | **fascinating, interesting, intriguing** | **notable, remarkable, striking** | **graphic, vivid** | **dramatic, extreme, spectacular** | **clear, obvious, simple, straightforward** | **blatant, flagrant, glaring** *His treatment of his secretary was a blatant example of managerial arrogance.* | **familiar, famous, well-known** | **notorious** | **common** | **rare** | **much-quoted, oft-quoted, often-quoted** *The oft-quoted example of Nero playing the violin as Rome burned shows the Emperor's detachment from reality.* | **illustrative** | **helpful, illuminating, instructive, useful** | **practical** *The book is full of practical examples of classroom activities.* | **concrete** *Let me give a concrete example of what I mean.* | **hypothetical**

VERB + EXAMPLE **give sb, provide (sb with)** *Let me give you a few examples of what I mean.* | **contain, include** *The leaflet includes several examples of bad grammar.* | **cite, draw, take (sth as)** *She illustrates her point with examples drawn from contemporary newspaper accounts. To take an obvious example, if there is a good harvest the price of grain will fall.* | **find**

EXAMPLE + VERB **illustrate sth, show sth**

PREP. **for ~** *A touring cyclist, for example, might turn the pedals 80 times a minute.* | **in an/the ~** *The teacher in our example is clearly wrong.* | **~ of** *We can still find examples of discrimination today.*

2 **sb whose behaviour is good and should be copied**

ADJ. **good, great, inspiring, shining** *She is a shining example of how to organize your time.* | **bad, poor**

VERB + EXAMPLE **set, show** *You must set a good example to the children.* | **follow** *I think all schools should follow the example of this one.* | **hold sb/sth up as** *The film was held up as an example of good cinema.*

PREP. **by ~** *Children learn by example.* **| ~ to** *His generosity is an example to us all.*

PHRASES **make an example of sb** *The headmaster had made an example of him by scolding him in front of the whole school.*

exasperation *noun*

ADJ. **sheer | mild**

QUANT. **hint**

VERB + EXASPERATION **feel | express, give vent to** *The organization has expressed its exasperation with the government.* **| control, hide, suppress**

PREP. **in ~** *She rolled her eyes in sheer exasperation.* **| with ~** *He snorted with exasperation.* **| ~ at** *the exasperation he felt at his failure* **| ~ with** *their exasperation with the government rules*

PHRASES **a groan/grunt/sigh of exasperation** *With a groan of exasperation, he picked up the luggage himself.*

excavate *verb*

ADV. **completely, fully** *The area has not yet been fully excavated.* **| extensively | partially, partly | carefully**

PREP. **from** *Pottery has been excavated from the site.*

excavation *noun*

ADJ. **archaeological**

VERB + EXCAVATION **carry out, conduct** *Further archaeological excavations are now being carried out.*

EXCAVATION + VERB **reveal sth, uncover sth, unearth sth** *Excavations of the site have revealed an Iron Age settlement.* **| proceed, take place** *More discoveries were made as the excavation proceeded.*

exceed *verb*

ADV. **considerably, far, greatly, significantly, substantially | comfortably, easily** *The House voted by 327 votes to 93, comfortably exceeding the required two-thirds majority.* **| slightly | clearly | regularly | rarely** *Summer temperatures rarely exceed 27°C.* **| generally, normally, usually**

VERB + EXCEED **be expected to, be likely to** *Income is expected to exceed expenditure.* **| be unlikely to**

excellence *noun*

ADJ. **all-round | academic, artistic, culinary, educational, manufacturing, scientific, sporting, technical**

VERB + EXCELLENCE **pursue, strive for** *The school strives for academic excellence.* **| achieve**

PREP. **~ in** *The Business School has a reputation for excellence in research.*

PHRASES **a centre of excellence** *The college aims to be a world centre of excellence in the field of marine biology.* **| levels/standards of excellence** *The restaurant's standards of excellence have won it several awards.* **| the pursuit of excellence** *her relentless pursuit of sporting excellence*

excellent *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, prove, seem, sound | become | consider sth** *The school is considered excellent.*

ADV. **most, really, truly | absolutely, quite | rather | generally** *The meals are generally excellent.* **| uniformly** *The performances and recordings are uniformly excellent.* **| apparently | potentially | otherwise** *In an otherwise excellent issue about global warming, I found Jeremy Creed's article very unconvincing.*

PREP. **at** *Clancey was excellent at keeping the kids under control.* **| for** *These potatoes are excellent for baking.*

exception *noun*

ADJ. **conspicuous, important, major, notable, obvious, significant, striking** *Most industries have suffered badly in the recession, but there have been a few notable exceptions.* **| minor, rare | honourable** *With a few honourable exceptions, MPs kept quiet about the corruption.*

VERB + EXCEPTION **make** *No parking is allowed, but an exception is made for disabled drivers.*

PREP. **with the ~ of** *The whole of the island was flooded with the exception of a small area in the north.* **| without ~** *Without exception, all employees must carry their identity card with them at all times.* **| ~ to** *Guide dogs are the one exception to the store's ban on dogs.*

PHRASES **be no exception** *The weather had been rainy for days, and the day of the race was no exception.* **| be the exception rather than the rule** *Nowadays a job for life is very much the exception rather than the rule.* **| be the exception to the rule** *Most of his family are sports enthusiasts, but he's the exception to the rule.*

exceptional *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain | consider sb/sth** *The head teacher considers Jamie's performance altogether exceptional.*

ADV. **highly, really, very | altogether, quite, wholly**

excerpt *noun*

ADJ. **short**

VERB + EXCERPT **feature, give, include, play, publish, quote, show** *The programme included excerpts from Verdi's operas.*

PREP. **~ from** *The paper published some short excerpts from Mandela's memoirs.*

excess *noun*

1 **large amount of sth**

ADJ. **large**

PREP. **in ~** *The drug can be harmful if taken in excess.* **| in ~ of** *The vehicle had been travelling at speeds in excess of 90 miles per hour.* **| to ~** *They never smoked or drank to excess.* **| ~ of** *a large excess of gas*

2 **excesses: harmful actions**

ADJ. **worst**

VERB + EXCESS **avoid, curb | commit, perpetrate** *the worst excesses committed by the occupying army*

excessive *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | consider sth, regard sth as, see sth as** *He considered the level of tax excessive.*

ADV. **grossly | a bit, a little, rather, somewhat**

exchange *noun*

1 **giving/receiving sth in return for sth else**

ADJ. **fair | mutual, two-way** *We get together once a month for a mutual exchange of ideas.*

PREP. **in ~ (for)** *Woollen cloth and timber were sent to Egypt in exchange for linen or papyrus.* **| ~ between** *There were exchanges of goods between the two regions.* **| ~ for** *She considered free language lessons a fair exchange for free accommodation.*

2 **angry conversation/argument**

ADJ. **brief | acrimonious, angry, bitter, heated, sharp | verbal** *a bitter verbal exchange*

PREP. **~ about** *angry exchanges about the problem of unemployment* **| ~ between** *There were many acrimonious exchanges between the two men.* **| ~ with** *Opposition MPs were involved in heated exchanges with the prime minister.*

PHRASES **an exchange of views** *She had a full and frank exchange of views with her boss before resigning.*

3 **of foreign currencies**

EXCHANGE + NOUN **rate**

4 **visit**

ADJ. **academic, cultural | student, youth | official**

VERB + EXCHANGE **go on**

PREP. **on an/the ~** *She is in France on a student exchange.* **| ~ to** *He's gone on an exchange to Rome.* **| ~ with** *an exchange with a German student*

excise *noun*

VERB + EXCISE **impose, levy** *the excise levied on beer and tobacco* **| pay | increase, raise | cut, reduce**

EXCISE + NOUN **duty, revenue, tax | licence** *applications for vehicle excise licences* **| officer**

PREP. **~ on** *to increase the excise on whisky*

excitable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **highly, very | quite, rather, somewhat | easily** *The horses have easily excitable nervous systems.*

excited *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow | get sb** *Don't get the children too excited.*

ADV. **all, extraordinarily, extremely, highly, really, terribly, tremendously, very, wildly** *He was all excited about his new car. By now the crowd was wildly excited.* **| increasingly | a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather | strangely | sexually**

PREP. **about** *The kids seem pretty excited about the holiday.* **| at** *excited at the news* **| by** *He was puzzled but strangely excited by the commotion.*

excitement *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, fierce, great, high, intense, tremendous | breathless, febrile, feverish, heady, wild | genuine, real, sheer | initial | sudden | growing, heightened, mounting | added, further | suppressed | nervous, restless | guilty | pleasurable | strange | vicarious** *The reader of adventure stories wants romance and vicarious excite* **| youthful | intellectual, physical, political, sexual**

QUANT. **flicker, flurry, flush, frisson, ripple, surge** *She felt a surge of excitement when she heard the song.*

VERB + EXCITEMENT **be bubbling with, be filled with, be flushed with, be sick with, be trembling/tingling with, feel** *Her face was flushed with excitement. She was almost sick with excitement and apprehension.* **| cause, generate** *The news caused tremendous excitement among scientists.* **| conceal, control, hide, suppress** *He couldn't suppress the excitement in his voice.* **| add** *The element of risk just adds excitement.*

EXCITEMENT + VERB **build up, grow, mount, rise** *The tension and excitement built up gradually all day.* **| die down, evaporate, wear off**

PREP. **in ~** *clapping her hands in excitement* **| ~ among** *The news has caused great excitement among scientists.* **| ~ at** *her excitement at the prospect of a new job* **| ~ of** *the excitement of meeting new people*

PHRASES **an air of excitement** *There was an air of excitement about the place.* **| a feeling/sense of excitement, a fever/state of excitement**

exciting *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become, get** *The film was just getting exciting when we had to leave.* **| find sth** *She found the idea terrifically exciting.*

ADV. **enormously, extraordinarily, extremely, immensely, incredibly, really, terribly, terrifically, tremendously, unbelievably, very, wildly, wonderfully | pretty, quite, rather | potentially** *the germ of a potentially exciting innovation* **| undeniably | visually** *a book that is attractive and visually exciting* **| sexually**

PHRASES **exciting new** *an exciting new magazine*

exclaim *verb*

ADV. **loudly, softly | angrily, indignantly | helplessly, weakly | triumphantly | suddenly**

PREP. **at, in** *They exclaimed in horror at the price.* **| over** *standing in front of shop windows exclaiming over the beautiful clothes* **| with** *She exclaimed with delight at the sight of the presents.*

exclamation *noun*

ADJ. **sharp, sudden | loud | muffled, small**

VERB + EXCLAMATION **give, let out, utter** *She gave a loud exclamation of delight.* **| stifle, suppress**

exclude *verb*

ADV. **rigorously | altogether, completely, entirely, totally | not absolutely, not wholly** *The possibility of error cannot be absolutely excluded.* **| virtually | largely | permanently | apparently | clearly | automatically** *Unlawfully obtained evidence is not automatically excluded from a criminal trial.* **| necessarily | deliberately | explicitly, expressly, specifically | effectively** *By excluding children from pubs we are effectively excluding many parents.* **| systematically | unfairly**

VERB + EXCLUDE **attempt to, be designed to, purport to, seek to** *a clause that seeks to exclude liability for death or serious injury* **| tend to** *tending to exclude certain groups from full participation in society*

PREP. **from** *Women were excluded from the council.*

PHRASES **feel excluded** *Many local people felt excluded from decisions that affected their own community.*

exclusion *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total | virtual | continued** *women's continued exclusion from political life* **| social** *the problem of social exclusion*

EXCLUSION + NOUN **zone** *A 20-mile exclusion zone was set up around the power station to guard against further explosions.*

PREP. **to the ~ of** *Don't revise a few topics to the exclusion of all others.* **| ~ from** *disciplinary measures including exclusion from school*

exclusive *adj.*

1 **belonging to/used by only one person/group**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **almost** *the course's almost exclusive concentration on grammar* **| not necessarily** *The recording deal is not necessarily exclusive. The band can record material for other companies as well.*

PREP. **to** *These products are exclusive to our shops.*

2 **not welcoming to everyone**

VERBS **be | become | remain | keep sth** *The owners of the golf club are determined to keep it exclusive.*

ADV. **very | quite, rather, somewhat** *a somewhat exclusive venue* **| necessarily** *The school is expensive and necessarily exclusive.* **| racially, socially**

3 **not able to exist/be true at the same time**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **mutually** *The two options are not mutually exclusive* (= you can have them both).

excursion *noun*

ADJ. **brief, short | day, evening, full-day, half-day, weekend | annual | organized | boat, coach, train | holiday, shopping, sightseeing**

VERB + EXCURSION **go on, make** *We decided to make an all-day excursion to the island.* **| arrange, organize | take sb on**

PREP. **~ to** *He took us on an excursion to the ruined city.*

excuse *noun*

1 **reason given**

ADJ. **perfect, wonderful | good, legitimate, valid | convincing, plausible, reasonable | feeble, flimsy, lame, pathetic, poor | convenient, easy** *The children provided a convenient excuse for missing the party.* **| standard, usual | every** *She seized on every excuse to avoid doing the work.* **| the slightest** *He became moody and unreasonable, flailing out at Katherine at the slightest excuse.*

VERB + EXCUSE **have** *He had no excuse for being so late.* **| give, make, offer** *She made some feeble excuse about the car having broken down. You don't have to make excuses for her* (= try to think of reasons for her behaviour). *It's late. I'm afraid I'll have to make my excuses* (= say I'm sorry, give my reasons and leave). **| give sb, offer sb, provide (sb with)** *Delivering the stuff for Rodney gave me an excuse to take the car. Her mother's illness provided her with an excuse to stay at home.* **| need | look for | find, invent, make up, seize on, think up** *She had to find a valid excuse for leaving the room. He made up a rather lame excuse for the work being late.* **| use sth as** *The political crisis is being used as an excuse to dock people's pay.* **| run out of** *He's run out of excuses for not tidying his room.* **| accept, believe | reject**

PREP. **~ about** *He invented a pathetic excuse about losing his watch.* **| ~ for** *It's just an excuse for a party.*

PHRASES **there is no excuse for ...** *There's no excuse for such behaviour.*

2 **bad example of sth**

ADJ. **pathetic, poor**

PREP. **~ for** *Why get involved with that pathetic excuse for a human being?*

execute *verb*

1 kill sb as an official punishment

ADV. **summarily | extrajudicially, illegally | publicly | wrongly** *innocent people who are wrongly executed*

PREP. **for** *He was executed for treason.*

2 perform/carry out sth

ADV. **beautifully, boldly, brilliantly, cleanly, meticulously, neatly, skilfully, successfully, well** *The movement was beautifully executed.* **| poorly**

execution *noun*

1 **killing sb as an official punishment**

ADJ. **public | mass | judicial | extrajudicial | summary | political | mock**

VERB + EXECUTION **order** *The tribunal ordered the execution of 42 coup plotters.* **| carry out** *Executions were carried out in the prison yard.* **| face** *If caught, the men could face execution.* **| await** *prisoners who are on death row awaiting execution* **| suffer** *(formal) She was taken prisoner and suffered eventual execution.* **| attend, watch, witness**

EXECUTION + VERB **take place** *A bell was tolled when executions took place.*

PREP. **~ by** *execution by hanging*

PHRASES **a stay of execution** (= a delay in an execution being carried out) *The judge had granted a stay of execution.*

2 **carrying out a plan/order**

ADJ. **successful** *the successful execution of the contract*

VERB + EXECUTION **stay, suspend** *The court has discretion to stay or suspend execution of the order.*

PHRASES **the execution of your duty** *She was charged with obstruction of a police officer in the execution of his duty.* **| a stay of execution** (= a delay in an order being carried out)

executive *noun*

1 **person with an important job in business**

ADJ. **chief, senior, top** *a top executive in a large corporation* **| junior | key** *contracts to prevent the loss of key executives* **| busy | high-flying, high-powered | female, woman** *The contract gives a female executive maternity leave rights.* **| business, company, corporate, industry | advertising, legal, marketing, media, public relations, sales, television**

2 **group of people who run a company/organization**

ADJ. **central, national | political | government, party, union** *She is a member of the party's national executive.* **| strong** *Conservatives are by tradition believers in a strong executive.* **| elected**

VERB + EXECUTIVE **control** *Parliament's ability to control the executive*

EXECUTIVE + VERB **decide sth**

EXECUTIVE + NOUN **member | meeting**

PHRASES **a member of an executive**

exemplify *verb*

ADV. **clearly, well**

exempt *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **completely, entirely, totally, wholly | partially | automatically**
Pensioners are automatically exempt from prescription charges.

PREP. **from** *This income is totally exempt from taxation.*

exempt *verb*

ADV. **expressly, specifically**

PREP. **from** *Small businesses are expressly exempted from the requirements of this legislation.*

exemption *noun*

ADJ. **complete, full, total | blanket** *The bill gives sensitive police files a blanket exemption.* **| partial | temporary | special | tax**

VERB + EXEMPTION **be entitled to, be subject to, enjoy, qualify for** *These goods are subject to exemption from tax. They enjoyed exemption from customs duties on goods to be used by themselves.* **| apply for, claim, seek | gain, get, obtain | give (sb), grant (sb) | refuse | waive** *(law)*

EXEMPTION + VERB **apply (to sb/sth), cover sb/sth, relate to sb/sth** *The exemption which applies to home-buyers.*

EXEMPTION + NOUN **clause**

PREP. **~ for** *There are parking restrictions in the city centre with exemptions for disabled drivers.* **| ~ from** *You may be able to apply for exemption from local taxes.* **| ~ on** *tax exemptions on gifts to spouses*

exercise *noun*

1 **use of the body to keep healthy**

ADJ. **good, healthy | hard, strenuous, vigorous | gentle, light, moderate** *Try to do fifteen minutes of gentle exercise every day.* **| regular | daily, morning | adequate | aerobic | mental, physical**

VERB + EXERCISE **do, get, take** *John never does any exercise. Do you take enough exercise?* **| need**

EXERCISE + NOUN **programme, regime, routine | class | bike | video**

PREP. **during ~** *Stop frequently to rest during exercise until you are fitter.*

PHRASES **a form/kind/type of exercise, lack of exercise** *Lack of exercise is a risk factor in heart disease.*

2 **set of movements/activities**

ADJ. **basic, simple | keep-fit | warm-up | breathing, relaxation, strengthening, stretching | chest, leg, etc.**

QUANT. **set**

VERB + EXERCISE **do, perform** *Remember to do your breathing exercises every day. You may find it helpful to perform this exercise in front of the mirror.* **| devise** *You can devise your own exercises to music.* **| repeat**

3 **set of questions**

ADJ. **easy, simple | difficult, hard | oral, practical, written | practice | comprehension, grammar, listening, translation, writing**

QUANT. **set**

VERB + EXERCISE **do | give sb, set (sb) | create**

PREP. **~ in** *an exercise in translation*

4 **use of a power/a right/a quality**

ADJ. **effective** *the effective exercise* **futile, pointless** *In the end it proved a pointless exercise.* | **academic, intellectual, mental, (pen and) paper, technical, theoretical** *This is not a purely academic exercise: it should have a real impact on the way we work as a department. Role-playing situations allows a finer assessment to be made than in pen and paper exercises.* | **costly, expensive** | **political** *The whole consultation process was just a cynical political exercise.* | **joint** | **pilot** *After a successful pilot exercise last year, the new system is being introduced throughout the company.* | **consultation, cost-cutting, costing, damage limitation, evaluation, marketing, propaganda, publicity, public relations, research**

VERB + EXERCISE **carry out, conduct, perform** *The company has just carried out a major cost-cutting exercise.* | **embark on, mount** *Before embarking on any exercise, you should conduct a cost-benefit analysis.* | **devise**

PREP. **~ in** *The seminar was a valuable exercise in information exchange.*

PHRASES **the aim/object of the exercise** *The object of the exercise is to increase public awareness of environmental issues.*

6 **for soldiers/police**

ADJ. **training** | **flying, military, naval** | **joint** *US forces took part in joint exercises with the British Navy.*

VERB + EXERCISE **do, go on, take part in** *The troops go on exercises twice a year.* | **mount**

PREP. **on ~** *Half the regiment was away on exercise. of power by the government* | **free** *the free exercise of informed choice* | **peaceful** | **legitimate, proper** | **improper**

VERB + EXERCISE **limit, regulate** | **justify**

PHRASES **the exercise of authority/power** *to limit the exercise of political power* | **the exercise of discretion**

5 **for a particular result**

ADJ. **simple, straightforward | major, massive | successful | interesting, useful, valuable, worthwhile | arbitrary, cosmetic, cynical, fruitless,**

exercise *verb*

ADV. **effectively | properly | lawfully, rightfully** *the purposes for which power can be rightfully exercised*

VERB + EXERCISE **be able to | be free to** *Managers are free to exercise their discretion in these cases.* **| be necessary to, need to** *It is necessary to exercise caution when making recommendations.* **| continue to** *The all-powerful steering committee continued to exercise control.* **| fail to** *You need to prove that the company's representative failed to exercise due care.*

exertion *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great | mental, physical** *Try to avoid physical exertion.*

PREP. **from the ~** *She was hot and breathless from the exertion of cycling uphill.* **|** **with ~** *flushed and sweating with exertion after digging the garden*

exhaust *noun*

ADJ. **car, vehicle | diesel, petrol** *Diesel exhaust contains a lot of soot.*

EXHAUST + NOUN **emission, fumes, gas, pollution, smoke | pipe, system**

PREP. **from an/the ~** *pollution from car exhausts*

exhaust *verb*

1 **make sb very tired**

ADV. **absolutely, completely, totally, utterly** *The swimming had completely exhausted him.* **| emotionally, mentally, physically** *The experience had exhausted her physically and emotionally.*

2 **use sth up completely**

ADV. **completely, totally | almost, nearly** *The funds are nearly exhausted.* **| quickly, rapidly** *Their limited resources were quickly exhausted.*

exhausted *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get | leave sb** *The row had left him physically exhausted.*

ADV. **really | absolutely, completely, quite, thoroughly, totally, utterly** *He fell into bed utterly exhausted.* **| pretty, rather | emotionally, financially, mentally, physically** *financially exhausted countries*

PREP. **from** *I was exhausted from the day's work.*

exhausting *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become | find sth**

ADV. **really, very** *a really exhausting day* **| quite | a bit, fairly, pretty | emotionally, mentally, physically**

exhaustion *noun*

ADJ. **complete, sheer, total, utter | emotional, mental, nervous, physical | heat**

VERB + EXHAUSTION **suffer from** *She was taken to hospital suffering from exhaustion.* **| be close to** *He was hollow-eyed and seemed very close to exhaustion.* **| be overcome by, collapse from/with** *Two of the horses collapsed with exhaustion.* **| drive sb to, lead to** *Don't work too hard and drive yourself to exhaustion.* **| die from/of**

PREP. **in ~** *He fell silent, with his head bowed in exhaustion.* **| with ~** *She was faint with exhaustion.*

PHRASES **at/to the point of exhaustion** *driven to the point of complete exhaustion* **| a state of exhaustion**

exhaustive *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **by no means, not necessarily** *This list is by no means exhaustive.* **| fairly** *After a fairly exhaustive investigation, they were able to put things right.*

exhibition *noun*

ADJ. **big, large | small | important, major** *a major exhibition of the painter's work* **| annual, summer | international, local | private, public |** permanent | changing, special, **temporary** *The library has a policy of mounting changing exhibitions. There is a series of special exhibitions throughout the year.* **| touring, travelling** *a touring exhibition of Impressionist drawings* **| collaborative, joint | one-man, one-person, one-woman, solo** *By 1914 Picasso had held one-man exhibitions in England, Germany and Spain.* **| retrospective | art, craft, photographic, etc. | trade** *the international food trade exhibition in Cologne*

VERB + EXHIBITION **have, hold, host** *The museum hosted a big exhibition of her work last year.* **| house** *The old factory has been converted to house an exhibition.* **| attend, go to, see, visit | arrange, organize, plan | display, mount, present, put on, show, stage** *They plan to stage an art exhibition in a nearby town.* **| launch, open** *The mayor will open the exhibition next week.* **| sponsor | go on** *The Mappa Mundi will go on permanent exhibition at Hereford Cathedral.*

EXHIBITION + VERB **open** *The exhibition opens at the Tate Gallery in July.* **| close, end | be on, be on view, run, take place** *The exhibition runs from 11 April to 5 July.* **| continue | move (on) to** *The exhibition moves on to the National Gallery, Washington, next month.* **| be called sth, be entitled sth | comprise sth, cover sth, feature sth, include sth, show sth** *The exhibition includes drawings by Rembrandt.* **| illustrate sth, trace sth** *an exhibition illustrating the history and development of the university* **| be dedicated to sb/sth, be devoted to sb/sth** *an exhibition devoted to female painters*

EXHIBITION + NOUN **centre, gallery, hall, venue | space** *The new wing will provide 20,000 more square feet of exhibition space.* **| stand** *Hundreds of firms had exhibition stands.* **| catalogue | programme** *the gallery's exhibition programme for next year*

PREP. **on ~** *A selection of her paintings is on exhibition at the Whitechapel Art Gallery.* **| ~ of** *an exhibition of contemporary art* **| ~ on** *an exhibition on local history* > Note at ART

exile *noun*

1 **being sent to live in another country**

ADJ. **long | permanent | enforced | self-imposed, voluntary | internal** *Many spent decades in labour camps or in internal exile.*

VERB + EXILE **be driven/forced/sent into | flee into, go into** *The king went into exile after the overthrow of his government.* **| live in** *They joined the many other Armenians living in exile.* **| die in | return from** *He still hopes to return from exile one day.*

PREP. **in ~** *She had spent 40 years in exile.* **| ~ from** *Dante died in exile from Florence.*

PHRASES **a place of exile**

2 **person forced to live in another country**

ADJ. **political | tax** (= a rich person who moves to another country where taxes are lower)

EXILE + VERB **return** *A general amnesty was granted, allowing political exiles to return freely.*

PHRASES **the recall of exiles, the return of exiles**

exile *verb*

ADV. **permanently, temporarily | effectively** *He was effectively exiled after a failed bid for power.*

PREP. **from** *The family was exiled from France.* **| to** *He was exiled to Siberia.*

exist *verb*

ADV. **actually, really** *Do these creatures really exist?* **| already, still** *Few of these monkeys still exist in the wild.* **| currently | independently** *He argued that ideas do not exist independently of the language that expresses them.*

VERB + EXIST **be known to** *the enormous volcanoes now known to exist on Mars* **| continue to | cease to**

existence *noun*

1 **state of existing**

ADJ. **actual, real** *El Cid's actual existence is not in doubt. Since her illness, other people had become shadowy and had no real existence for her.* | **brief** | **continued, future** | **very** *The peasants depend on a good harvest for their very existence* (= in order to continue to live). | **mere** *The mere existence of these strange creatures fascinated him.* | **autonomous, independent, separate** *any organism capable of independent existence* | **human** *the mystery of human existence* | **material, physical** | **social**

VERB + EXISTENCE **be in** *The idea of God in nature has been in existence for as long as human beings have worshipped.* | **come into, spring into** *The organization came into existence ten years ago. What are the chances of these molecules springing spontaneously into existence?* | **be crushed out of, go out of** *If you jump into a black hole you will get torn apart and crushed out of existence. There was a fear that the club might go out of existence for lack of support.* | **bring sth into, call sth into** *striving to bring into existence a new kind of society* | **be aware of, know of** | **be unaware of** | **assert** | **assume, postulate, presuppose** *The theory assumes the existence of a ‘meritocracy’?that there is equal opportunity for all.* | **accept, acknowledge, believe in, recognize** *He didn't believe in the existence of God.* | **deny** | **doubt** | **imply, indicate, suggest** | **discover, reveal** | **confirm, demonstrate, establish, prove** | **disprove** | **explain** *How do you explain the existence of closely related species in widely separated locations?* | **justify** | **forget, ignore** *The girl's parents continued to ignore her very existence.* | **resent** *Deep down I resented his existence.* | **jeopardize, threaten** *Climate changes threaten the continued existence of the species.* | **owe** *The school owed its existence to the generosity of one man.* | **be vital to** *A super-efficient sense of smell is no longer vital to our existence.*

EXISTENCE + VERB **depend on/upon sth** *The company's existence depends on continued growth.*

PREP. **in ~** *the only instrument of its kind in existence*

PHRASES **a mode of existence** *the nature and significance of the temporal mode of existence* | **the struggle for existence** *Darwin viewed the struggle for existence as being the major promoter of evolution.*

2 **way of living**

ADJ. **bare, frugal, hand-to-mouth, miserable, precarious** *He lived a hand-to-mouth existence in the less attractive areas of London.* **| comfortable, ordered, peaceful, quiet | dull, humdrum, routine | isolated, lonely, solitary | nomadic | rural, suburban, urban | daily, day-to-day, everyday | previous, prior** *He claimed to be able to remember a previous existence.*

VERB + EXISTENCE **enjoy, have, lead, live | eke out, endure** *They eke out a precarious existence foraging in rubbish dumps.*

exit *noun*

1 **way out**

ADJ. **front, rear, side | emergency, fire | the nearest** *She headed for the nearest exit.*

VERB + EXIT **head for, make for | bar, block** *Do not leave bags lying around which could block the emergency exits.*

EXIT + NOUN **door, gate, route**

PREP. **to/towards the ~** *They moved to the exits.*

2 **act of leaving**

ADJ. **fast, hurried, quick, swift | dignified | early** *her early exit from the tournament, in only the second round* **| mass**

VERB + EXIT **make** *She turned on her heel and made what she hoped was a dignified exit.*

EXIT + NOUN **visa**

PREP. **~ from** *a mass exit of members from the party*

3 **for traffic**

ADJ. **motorway | northbound, southbound, etc.**

VERB + EXIT **take**

PREP. **~ for** *At the roundabout, take the exit for Swindon and Bristol.* **| ~ from** *Traffic lights control the exit from the M8 at Newbridge.*

exorbitant *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **grossly | quite** *The hotel charges quite exorbitant prices.* **| pretty**

expand *verb*

ADV. **considerably, dramatically, enormously, greatly, hugely, massively, significantly, vastly** *The business has expanded greatly over the last year.* **| further | fast, quickly, rapidly | gradually, slowly | suddenly | steadily**

VERB + EXPAND **aim to, be eager to, be keen to, hope to, look to, plan to, seek to, want to** *The firm is looking to expand its operations overseas.* **| help (to)** *The store has helped expand the British cheese market by encouraging small dairy farmers.* **| begin to | continue to | seem to**

PREP. **from** *The number of managers has expanded from 700 to 1,300.* **| into** *The village has expanded into a town.* **| to**

expanse *noun*

ADJ. **broad, endless, great, huge, large, vast, wide** *a vast expanse of sand* **| barren, bleak, empty** *a bleak expanse of concrete* **| flat** *looking out over the flat expanse of blackened fields* **| open | cold | grey, white** *the white expanses of the frozen north* **| shining** *the desk's shining expanse of polished wood*

PREP. **~ of**

expansion *noun*

ADJ. **big, considerable, enormous, great, huge, major, massive, significant, substantial, vast** *The company was now set for major expansion.* | **maximum** | **dramatic, marked, remarkable, unprecedented** *an unprecedented expansion in linguistic studies at British universities* | **rapid** | **gradual** | **steady** | **continued, further, sustained** | **eastward, westward, etc.** | **global, international, overseas, worldwide** | **successful** | **aggressive** *The board decided to embark on aggressive overseas expansion.* | **healthy** | **planned, proposed** | **uncontrolled** | **business, commercial, company** | **economic, industrial** | **colonial, imperial, territorial** | **population** | **urban**

VERB + EXPANSION **show** *The economy is still showing healthy expansion.* | **allow (for), provide for** *The design of the front pockets allows for expansion.* | **be ripe for** *a ready-made hotel chain ripe for further expansion* | **be set for** *The company is set for further expansion into niche areas.* | **call for** | **go for, look for** *We are going for maximum expansion.* | **encourage, facilitate, promote** | **impede, limit, restrict** | **halt, stop** | **prevent** | **embark on** | **finance, fund** *In order to finance expansion on this scale, the government has relied heavily on borrowing.*

EXPANSION + VERB **occur, take place**

EXPANSION + NOUN **plan, programme**

PREP. **~ into** *expansion into the luxury car market* | **~ in** *a great age of expansion in trade and science*

PHRASES **a period of expansion** *a period of rapid economic expansion* | **the rate of expansion** *The rate of expansion of our overseas trade has been spectacular.* | **potential/room/scope/space for expansion** *The company believes there is scope for expansion in this sector.*

expect *verb*

ADV. **confidently** *She confidently expects to win.* **| fully** *My parents fully expect us to get married.* **| not really** *I didn't really expect them to come.* **| half** *I was half expecting to see Jim at the concert.* **| honestly** *Did you honestly expect me to believe that?*

VERB + EXPECT **be reasonable to, can, can realistically, can reasonably** *We can expect to see an improvement in the weather over the next few days.* **| be unrealistic to, be unreasonable to, can hardly** *It would be unreasonable to expect them to do all that work for free. You can hardly expect to learn a foreign language in a few months.* **| would, would normally** *I would expect the factory to be working again as normal by next week.* **| be entitled to** *You are entitled to expect certain minimum standards of accommodation.*

PREP. **from** *We expect good results from our employees.*

PHRASES **(only) to be expected** *This kind of behaviour is to be expected from a two-year-old.* **| expect a lot/too much of sb** *I think my parents always expected too much of me.* **| when you least expect sth** *An accident can happen anywhere, at any time, just when you least expect it.*

expectation *noun*

ADJ. **great, high | low** *Many children start with low expectations.* **| growing, rising | heightened, increased** *Heightened expectations for educational progress had not been realized.* **| lowered | optimistic, positive | negative, pessimistic | normal** *The plaintiff is aged 30 and has a normal expectation of life.* **| clear, confident | legitimate** (*law*), **reasonable | false, naive, over-high, over-optimistic, unrealistic, unreasonable | disappointed** *There were disappointed expectations all round when the contents of his will became known.* **| wild** *This realization of our dreams surpassed even our wildest expectations.* **| future | general, widespread** *There is still a general expectation that married couples will have children.* **| popular, public | traditional | family, parental, social, teacher | market | economic | career, life**

VERB + EXPECTATION **have, hold** *You have unrealistic expectations. differences in the expectations held by different social groups* **| form** *the way in which expectations are formed* **| arouse, build up, create, raise, set up** *the high expectations aroused by civil rights legislation* **| heighten | lower, reduce** *Her approach to welfare sought to lower people's expectations and impose work discipline.* **| influence, shape** *trying to influence public expectations of the police* **| come/live up to, fulfil, match, meet, realize, satisfy** *Her new car has not lived up to her expectations.* **| exceed, go beyond, surpass | fall short of** *The reality of the holiday fell short of our expectations.* **| confound** *The rise in share price confounded expectations.*

EXPECTATION + VERB **rise, soar** *Once the government's promise was made, popular expectations soared.*

PREP. **against ~** *Against all expectations, she was enjoying herself.* **| contrary to ~** *The building work was completed on time, contrary to expectation.* **| below ~** *What should you do when an employee's performance is disappointing and below expectation?* **| beyond ~** *The scheme has produced results way beyond expectation. He had been successful beyond his expectations.* **| in the ~ of/that** *The article was written before the election result in the clear expectation of a Labour victory.* **| ~ about** *the government's expectations about the economy* **| ~ for** *We have high expectations for her future.* **| ~ of** *We certainly had a reasonable expectation of success.*

PHRASES **have every expectation** *I have every expectation of cheering the team on to victory in the final.* **| in line with expectations** *The various categories of operating expenditure are broadly in line with expectations.*

expedient *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become | consider sth, deem sth, think sth | find sth** *The government found it expedient to relax censorship a little.*

ADV. **politically**

expedition *noun*

ADJ. **great, major** *Finally, the great expedition set off for the long journey to the Holy Land.* | **small** | **joint, international** *The British agreed to a joint expedition with the French.* | **foreign** | **successful** | **collecting, fishing, foraging, hunting, shopping** | **archaeological, scientific** | **military, naval** | **punitive** *In response, Charles VI sent a punitive expedition to Brittany, raping and killing the populace.* | **Antarctic, Everest, etc.**

VERB + EXPEDITION **go on, make** *He had made two expeditions to Spain to study wild plants.* | **embark on, set off/out on, undertake** *She was about to embark on a major expedition.* | **head, lead** | **join** | **organize, plan** | **launch, mount** *They plan to launch an expedition into the mountains.* | **send**

EXPEDITION + VERB **leave, set off/out, start** | **return** *The expedition returned only two weeks after it had left.* | **reach sth** *On 21 January the expedition reached the South Pole.*

EXPEDITION + NOUN **leader, member**

PREP. **on an/the ~** *She was out on a shopping expedition.* | **~ against** *He led a military expedition against the rebels.* | **~ into** *an expedition into the interior of Australia* | **~ to** *a naval expedition to West Africa*

PHRASES **a leader/member of an expedition**

expel *verb*

ADV. **forcibly** *They were forcibly expelled from their farm by the occupying authorities.*

PREP. **for, from** *He was expelled from school for disruptive behaviour.*

expenditure *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, heavy, high, huge, major, massive** *The group is calling for higher expenditure on education.* | **low, modest** | **average** *the family's average expenditure on food* | **aggregate, overall, total** | **gross, net** | **additional, extra, further** | **increased** | **excessive** | **necessary, unnecessary** | **budget, budgeted, estimated, planned, projected, proposed** | **actual** *The next two items refer to actual expenditures incurred, rather than estimated needs.* | **current, future** *Pay constitutes two-thirds of all current expenditure.* | **annual** | **per capita** *the country with the highest per capita expenditure on health care in the EU* | **direct** *the total direct expenditure on training* | **operating** | **capital** *Capital expenditure can be financed by borrowing; operating expenditure should not.* | **local, national** | **federal, government, public, state** *Public expenditure was running at 44.6% of GNP.* | **departmental, household, personal** | **consumer** | **advertising, research and development** | **defence, health, military, social, welfare**

QUANT. **item** *You may wish to take out a loan for a major item of expenditure.* | **level**

VERB + EXPENDITURE **increase** | **control, curb, cut, limit, reduce** *plans to cut health expenditure* | **allow for, budget, provide for, plan, set** *The budget provided for expenditure of $2 billion. Expenditure was set at £16 million.* | **estimate, project, put** *Expenditure was put at 100 million euros.* | **incur** | **finance, meet** *Make sure you have enough in the current account to meet expenditure.* | **have** *Both brands had heavy advertising expenditure.* | **monitor**

EXPENDITURE + VERB **go up, grow, increase, rise** | **fall, go down** | **amount to sth** *Total expenditure amounted to approximately £1 million.* | **run at sth** | **exceed sth** *people whose annual expenditure exceeds their income* | **arise from sth** *extra expenditure arising from the commission's report into health and safety*

EXPENDITURE + NOUN **cut** *public expenditure cuts* | **level** | **pattern**

PREP. **~ of** *government expenditure of more than £500 million* | **~ on** *increased expenditure on the railway network*

PHRASES **a cut/reduction in expenditure, an increase/a rise in expenditure**

expense *noun*

1 **cost/money spent on sth**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, vast | additional, extra | unexpected | unnecessary | public** *The bridge was built at public expense.* **| personal**

VERB + EXPENSE **go to, incur** *They went to all the expense of redecorating the house and then they moved.* **| put sb to** *Their visit put us to a lot of expense.* **| bear, cover, meet** *She had to meet the expense herself.* **| spare no** *No expense was spared* (= they spent as much money as was needed) *to make the party a success.* **| avoid | be worth** *The results are well worth the expense.*

EXPENSE + VERB **arise**

PREP. **at sb/sth's ~** *They had to repair the damage at their own expense. He built up the business at the expense of his health.* **| at ... ~** *The garden was transformed at great expense. The accommodation package includes admission to the golf course at no extra expense.*

2 **sth that makes you spend money**

ADJ. **big, considerable | incidental** *Relocated employees received grants towards incidental expenses like buying carpets.* **| business, management** *Meetings, and the time for them, are a considerable management expense.*

3 **expenses: money spent for a particular purpose**

ADJ. **high** *Medical expenses can be quite high if you are not insured.* **| deduct** *You will have to pay income tax on the rent you receive, although you can deduct expenses such as insurance.*

EXPENSE + VERB **arise** *You can expect to receive compensation for all expenses arising out of the accident.*

EXPENSE + NOUN **expense account** *Put the cost of the meal on your expense account.* **| expense/expenses claim**

PREP. **on ~** *a commercial traveller staying at the hotel on expenses*

PHRASES **all expenses paid** *a two-day, all expenses paid trip to London* allowable, legitimate, reasonable *You can claim back the tax on legitimate business expenses.* **| basic** *The guides are unpaid except for basic expenses.* **| out-of-pocket** (= paid for by an employee, to be claimed back later from the employer) *Any out-of-pocket expenses incurred on the firm's business will be reimbursed.* **| personal | living | household | operating, overhead, running | business, work-related | travel/ travelling | relocation, removal | legal, medical | funeral**

VERB + EXPENSE **incur | cover, defray, meet, pay, refund, reimburse** *He was given a sum of money to cover his travel expenses.* **| claim (back)** *They are claiming expenses for travel and overnight accommodation.* **|**

expensive *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, prove, seem, sound** *Her suit looked extremely expensive.* **| become, get** *Holidays in this country are getting very expensive.* **| make sth** *Adding these safety features would make the cars too expensive.* **| find sth** *I found the food very expensive.*

ADV. **amazingly, astronomically, enormously, exceedingly, extortionately, extremely, frighteningly, hideously, highly, horrendously, horribly, hugely, immensely, incredibly, inordinately, ludicrously, massively, outrageously, ridiculously, ruinously, terribly, vastly, very** *Some of these legal cases are enormously expensive.* **| impossibly, prohibitively** *Giving every patient an annual anti-flu injection would be prohibitively expensive.* **| increasingly | a bit, comparatively, fairly, moderately, pretty, quite, rather, relatively | correspondingly** *Walls are generally the greatest source of heat loss and correspondingly expensive to tackle.* **| needlessly, unduly, unnecessarily | notoriously | obviously | discreetly** *discreetly expensive perfume*

experience *noun*

1 knowledge/skill got from seeing/doing sth

ADJ. **considerable, long, wide | good, invaluable, relevant, unrivalled, valuable** *She didn't get paid much but it was all good experience. Both candidates for the presidency were short of relevant experience. Rolls Royce's unrivalled experience in high technology manufacturing* **| previous** *Do you have any previous experience of this type of work?* **| direct, first-hand, hands-on, practical** *the importance of hands-on experience as well as academic training* **| professional, work**

VERB + EXPERIENCE **have | lack | gain, get | broaden** *She wanted to broaden her experience in international affairs.*

PREP. **~ of** *She has considerable professional experience of translation.*

PHRASES **a lack of experience, a wealth of experience** *The veteran goalkeeper will bring a wealth of experience to the team.*

2 the things that have happened to you

ADJ. **past** *We're in for a difficult couple of weeks, if past experience is anything to go by.* **| direct, first-hand, hands-on, personal | subjective** *Experience is subjective and very hard to measure.* **| vicarious** *I love reading: I have an insatiable appetite for vicarious experience.* **| common, shared** *his peers, with whom he shares the common experience of being black in a white society* **| common** *It is a matter of common experience that disorder will increase if things are left to themselves.* **| everyday** *Choose illustrative examples from the children's everyday experience.* **| human** *There are few areas of human experience that have not been written about.* **| sensory**

VERB + EXPERIENCE **have | share | draw on, learn by/from/through** *In her book, she draws on her first-hand experience of mental illness. We all learn by experience.* **| be based on** *The book is based on personal experience.*

EXPERIENCE + VERB **suggest sth, teach (sb) sth** *Experience has taught me that life can be very unfair.*

PREP. **by/from ~** *We know from experience that hot objects are painful to touch.* **| in sb's ~** *In my experience, very few people really understand the problem.* **| ~ of** *He has direct experience of poverty.*

3 event/activity that affects you

ADJ. **enjoyable, exhilarating, good, interesting, liberating, pleasant, rewarding, unforgettable, valuable | bad, harrowing, painful, traumatic, unnerving, unsettling** *I had a bad experience with fireworks once.* **| hair-raising, nerve-racking** *a hair-raising experience of white-water rafting* **| humbling, salutary, sobering | personal, subjective | common, shared** *The use of drama can motivate students by allowing them to share a common experience.* **| common** *It is a common experience to feel that an author writes well, without being able to say why.* **| real-life | past | childhood, early, formative** *Early experiences shape the way we face up to and deal with crises in later life.* **| educational, learning | mystical, religious, visionary | psychic | sexual | near-death**

VERB + EXPERIENCE **enjoy, go through, have, undergo** *She has been through a very traumatic experience. I think you will enjoy the experience of taking part in the show.* **| come through, get over** *It could take him years to get over this experience.* **| describe, recount, talk about | share, swap** *Does anyone have any experiences? good or bad?that they would like to share with the group?* **| relive** *Reliving past experiences can release powerful feelings that have been pent up too long.* **| be based on** *The novel is based on his experiences in the war.*

PHRASES **quite an experience** *It was quite an experience being involved in making a television programme.*

experience *verb*

ADV. **actually | directly, first-hand** *He hadn't directly experienced the fighting in the city. people who have actually experienced these problems first-hand* **| subjectively**

experienced *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, immensely, really, vastly, very** *The staff are all highly experienced.* **| fully | quite | sufficiently, suitably** *The task needs the skills of a suitably experienced engineer.* **| widely** *a widely experienced and articulate politician* **| sexually**

PREP. **in** *She's very experienced in looking after children.*

experiment *noun*

ADJ. **animal** *protesting against animal experiments* | **field, laboratory** | **educational, medical, psychological, scientific** | **practical** | **thought** *His efforts involved thought experiments and analogies, rather than detailed experimentation.* | **simple** | **brief** | **careful, control** (science), **controlled** | **interesting** | **ingenious** | **pioneering** | **bold** *the country's bold experiment with economic reform* | **successful, unsuccessful** | **pilot, preliminary** | **further** *Further experiments will be carried out to verify this result.* | **celebrated, classic/ classical, famous, well-known** *Pavlov's famous experiment with the dog and the dinner bell* | **unique** *Brazil's unique experiment with alcohol-fuelled cars*

VERB + EXPERIMENT **carry out, conduct, do, perform** | **try** *The school decided to try an experiment in single-sex teaching.* | **design** | **set up** | **describe, report** *a classic experiment reported in 1964*

EXPERIMENT + VERB **confirm sth, demonstrate sth, find sth, illustrate sth, prove sth, show sth** | **indicate sth, suggest sth** | **be aimed at sth, be designed to do sth** *an experiment aimed at cutting road deaths resulting from excessive speeding* | **involve sth, use sth** | **be successful, work** *If the conditions are not right, the experiment will not work.* | **fail**

PREP. **by ~** *The appropriate concentration of the drug is best determined by experiment.* | **during an/the ~** *The animals seemed healthy during the experiment.* | **in an/the ~** *In these experiments, chilling is necessary.* | **~ in** *the country's brief experiment in multi-party democracy* | **~ on** *The team carried out experiments on cancer tissue.* | **~ with** *conducting an experiment with zinc chips and hydrochloric acid*

experiment *verb*

ADV. **successfully**

VERB + EXPERIMENT **begin to | continue to**

PREP. **on** *They experimented successfully on the plants to discover disease-resistant varieties.* **| with** *We have experimented with various different designs of kite.*

expert *noun*

ADJ. **real | leading | acknowledged, recognized | professional, qualified | self-proclaimed, self-styled | so-called | international, world** *She is a world expert on butterflies.* **| local | independent, outside | computer, financial, gardening, health, legal, marketing, medical, military, scientific, technical, etc.**

QUANT. **committee, panel, team** *A panel of experts will answer questions from the television audience.*

VERB + EXPERT **consult, take advice from, talk to**

EXPERT + VERB **advise sb/sth, agree sth, argue sth, believe sth, claim sth, fear sth, predict sth, reckon sth, recommend sth, say sth** *Experts agree that a balanced diet is the key to great health.*

PREP. **~ at** *He's an expert at getting his own way.* **| ~ in** *an expert in skin care* **| ~ on** *an expert on European art*

expertise *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, extensive, great | limited | appropriate, relevant** *Each area of the curriculum should be led by a staff member with appropriate expertise.* **| necessary** *MPs may lack the necessary expertise to scrutinize legislation effectively.* **| established, existing | particular, special/specialist, specific** *areas of special expertise* **| collective, combined, shared** *They met regularly to share experiences and develop their collective expertise.* **| in-house, local, outside** *We sometimes have to call on outside expertise.* **| staff | subject | academic, business, clinical, engineering, financial, legal, management/managerial, marketing, medical, professional, scientific, technical, technological**

QUANT. **degree, level** *A high degree of expertise is required for this stage of the manufacturing process.*

VERB + EXPERTISE **have** *She has great expertise in these matters.* **| lack | need, require | acquire, develop, gain | build on** *This project builds on the existing expertise of staff at the centre.* **| provide** *Professor Simpson provided expertise in engineering.* **| apply, bring, bring to bear, use** *How could he apply his academic expertise to practical matters? He will bring a great deal of expertise to bear on this issue.* **| bring together, call on, draw on** *The project brings together expertise in teaching and library provision. We need to draw on the professional expertise of a large number of teachers.* **| rely on | pass on, share** *The teachers would be available to share expertise and offer advice.*

EXPERTISE + VERB **be available** *We need to discover what relevant expertise is available to us.*

PREP. **~ in** *gaining expertise in specialist financial areas* **| ~ on** *She brings expertise on general financial and technical matters.*

PHRASES **an area/a field of expertise, a range of expertise** *The variety of technology requires a wide range of expertise.*

expire *verb*

VERB + EXPIRE **be due to** *His contract is due to expire at the end of this year.*

explain *verb*

ADV. **in detail** *I wrote explaining the issues in great detail.* **| fully** *The reasons for the accident have not been fully explained.* **| adequately, properly, satisfactorily | partly** *This partly explains why he was so late.* **| briefly | easily, readily** *This phenomenon can be easily explained.* **| clearly | carefully | patiently** *The doctor explained patiently what the treatment would be.* **| earnestly | concisely, succinctly, tersely** *The general principles behind the method used are explained clearly and concisely. 'We've already paid,' I explained tersely.* **| awkwardly, lamely | breathlessly, excitedly**

VERB + EXPLAIN **be able/unable to, can/could** *I know I'm late, but I can explain why.* **| attempt to, seek to, try to | help (to) | purport to** *Many theories purport to explain growth in terms of a single cause.* **| be difficult to, be hard to** *It's difficult to explain exactly how the system works.* **| hasten to** *She saw his quick frown and hastened to explain.* **| let sb** *Let me explain what I mean.*

PREP. **about** *She tried to explain about her fears and anxieties.* **| to** *She explained the plan to me very carefully.*

PHRASES **explain everything** *I've got a letter here which explains everything.* **| go a long way/some way towards explaining sth** *This goes some way towards explaining the hostility between the two groups.*

explanation *noun*

ADJ. **convincing, credible, good, likely, logical, natural, obvious, plausible, probable, rational** *The most likely explanation is that his plane was delayed.* **| implausible, inadequate, unlikely | acceptable, adequate, reasonable, satisfactory, sufficient | no apparent** *There was no apparent explanation for the attack.* **| clear, coherent | complete, comprehensive, detailed, full | partial | complex, complicated | easy, simple | innocent, prosaic** *There's sure to be a perfectly innocent explanation for all this?though I admit it looks bizarre.* **| convenient | accepted, traditional** *There is no generally accepted explanation of this practice.* **| official | possible** | correct, real, true | brief | **lengthy, long | verbal | general | common** *the common explanations for hooliganism* **| only, sole** *It's the only explanation that makes any kind of sense.* **| causal** *The causal explanation must be that old age causes poverty, not that poverty causes people to be old.* **| ad hoc, post hoc** *post hoc* (= after the event) *explanations of historical changes that would have made no sense to anyone living at the time* **| cultural, historical, political, psychological, scientific, sociological, technical, theoretical**

VERB + EXPLANATION **have** *I had no explanation for her strange behaviour.* **| give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *He only offered a partial explanation for his lateness.* **| enter into, go into, launch into** *She launched into a detailed explanation of every aspect of her work.* **| advance, propose, put forward** *one explanation advanced by Marxist historians* **| call for, need, require** *An explanation is clearly called for.* **| look for, seek | find, think of** *I can think of one possible explanation for her behaviour.* **| ask for, demand** *She wrote to the company demanding an explanation.* **| wait for | deserve, merit** *I suppose you deserve an explanation.* **| owe sb** *I think you owe me an explanation.* **| accept | defy** *Her success has been so remarkable as to defy explanation.*

EXPLANATION + VERB **lie** *The simplest explanation for his achievements lies in his greater ability and superiority over his contemporaries at university.* **| emerge, occur to sb, present itself, suggest itself** *No single clear explanation emerged from the experiments. A more credible explanation now occurred to her. Another quite plausible explanation presented itself.*

PREP. **in ~** *'I've worked with them before, you see,' he added, in explanation.* **| without ~** *She left suddenly and without explanation.* **| ~ about** *He entered into a technical explanation about software and programming.* **| ~ as to** *He provided no explanation as to why he was late.* **| ~ for** *There is probably some perfectly logical* *explanation for their behaviour.* **| ~ from** *We are still waiting for a full explanation from the teacher concerned.*

PHRASES **an attempt at explanation** *The men left quickly with no attempt at explanation.* **| by way of explanation** *'I had to see you,' he said, by way of explanation.*

explicable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **easily, readily** *The sudden increase in sales is easily explicable.* **| entirely, perfectly, wholly** *His behaviour is entirely explicable.* **| largely | partly**

PREP. **by** *The delay is partly explicable by the roadworks.* **| in terms of** *The differences in the children's achievements were not wholly explicable in terms of their social backgrounds.*

explicit *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | make sth, render sth** *We think such information should be made explicit and not left vague.*

ADV. **highly** *a highly explicit description of torture* **| absolutely, fully, quite** *Our orders were quite explicit.* **| increasingly | fairly, relatively | sufficiently | sexually**

PREP. **about** *The government has been quite explicit about its intentions.* **| as to** *She told him he needed to be more creative, without being explicit as to what this meant in practice.*

explode *verb*

1 **blow up**

VERB + EXPLODE **be liable to** *The chemical is liable to explode on contact with water.* **| fail to** *A blast bomb was thrown but the device failed to explode.*

2 **get angry/dangerous/moving**

ADV. **literally | suddenly**

VERB + EXPLODE **be about to, be ready to, be set to** *A row over public spending is set to explode.* **| be liable to, be likely to | seem to**

PREP. **into** *He suddenly exploded into action.* **| with** *She literally exploded with anger.*

exploit *noun*

ADJ. **dare-devil, daring | legendary** *His courage and exploits were legendary.* **| military, sexual, sporting** *bragging about his sexual exploits*

exploit *verb*

1 **treat sb unfairly for your own advantage**

ADV. **mercilessly, ruthlessly** *The workers are ruthlessly exploited by their employers.* | **cynically** *He pursued his own interests, cynically exploiting his privileged position as trustee.* | **deliberately** | **sexually**

2 **make the best use of sth**

ADV. **extensively, heavily** | **fully, to the full** *The firm has been successful in exploiting new technology to the full.* | **further** | **widely** | **effectively, profitably, successfully** | **properly** | **quickly** | **easily** | **cleverly, skilfully** *The architect has cleverly exploited new materials and building techniques.* | **commercially** *She was keen to exploit her discovery commercially.*

VERB + EXPLOIT **be determined to, be keen to, hope to, seek to** | **be quick to** *The team were quick to exploit their competitive advantage.* | **attempt to** | **fail to**

exploitation *noun*

1 **unfair use of sb**

ADJ. **brutal, ruthless** *her ruthless exploitation of popular fear* | **capitalist, class, economic, industrial, sexual**

VERB + EXPLOITATION **prevent** | **struggle against** *The party's avowed aim was to struggle against capitalist exploitation.* | **be open to, be vulnerable to** *Migrant workers are vulnerable to exploitation.* | **be based on** *societies based on the exploitation of slaves*

2 **use of sth**

ADJ. **effective, efficient, full, successful** | **direct** *the direct exploitation of natural forests* | **large-scale** | **sustainable** | **commercial** | **mineral**

VERB + EXPLOITATION **be open for, be ripe for** *Emergent democracies created markets that were ripe for exploitation.*

exploration *noun*

1 of a place

ADJ. **gas, mineral, oil, petroleum | polar, space | offshore** *the heavy cost of offshore oil exploration* **| archaeological, scientific | speculative | extensive | detailed**

VERB + EXPLORATION **carry out** *Extensive exploration was carried out using the latest drilling technology.* **| continue**

EXPLORATION + VERB **take place** *areas where mineral exploration is taking place*

EXPLORATION + NOUN **activity, drilling** *Exploration activity slowed during the 1970s.* **| programme | company** *an oil exploration company*

PREP. **~ for** *speculative exploration for oil*

2 of an idea/subject

ADJ. **brief | extensive | deep, full | careful, detailed** *My ideas on semantics needed more careful exploration.* **| creative, critical** *creative exploration of music as a medium in education* **| intellectual | personal** *her personal exploration of spirituality*

VERB + EXPLORATION **need | continue**

explore *verb*

1 travel around an area

VERB + EXPLORE **be keen to, want to, wish to | be free to** *In the afternoon you'll be free to explore a little on your own.*

PREP. **for** *exploring for oil*

2 think about sth in detail

ADV. **extensively | briefly | fully, thoroughly** *These questions have not been fully explored yet.* **| properly, systematically | carefully, in detail** *This idea is worth exploring in some detail.* **| further | usefully** *The film usefully explores some of the issues surrounding adoption.*

VERB + EXPLORE **need to | be keen to, want to, wish to | aim to, seek to | begin to, continue to**

explorer *noun*

ADJ. **great** *the great British explorers of the sixteenth century* **| intrepid | Antarctic, Arctic, polar**

explosion *noun*

1 sudden loud bursting/exploding

ADJ. **almighty, big, deafening, enormous, huge, loud, major, massive, powerful, serious, tremendous, violent | minor, small | muffled** *There was a muffled explosion somewhere on their right.* **| distant** *The floor shook with a distant explosion.* **| controlled | test** *a nuclear test explosion* **| accidental | bomb, chemical, gas, mine, volcanic | atomic, nuclear | terrorist | political, social** *(figurative) The shock waves of this political explosion engulfed the whole of Europe.*

VERB + EXPLOSION **cause, set off, trigger** *The build-up of gas caused a small explosion.* **| carry out** *Bomb disposal experts carried out a controlled explosion on the suspect package.* **| hear | prevent**

EXPLOSION + VERB **come, happen, occur, take place** *The explosion came 20 minutes after a coded warning to the police. The explosion occurred just after midday.* **| shake sth** *The explosion shook nearby homes.* **| destroy sth, rip through sth, wreck sth** *A massive explosion ripped through the chemical works.* **| injure sb, kill sb | echo** *A loud explosion echoed round the valley.*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *3 people were injured in the explosion.*

2 sudden large increase

ADJ. **sudden | veritable** *In the 1860s a veritable explosion of major scientific publications took place.* **| population | information** *trying to keep up with the information explosion* **| price, wage**

EXPLOSION + VERB **occur, take place**

PREP. **~ in** *a sudden explosion in the number of students* **| ~ of** *an explosion of interest in learning Japanese*

explosive *adj.*

1 **capable of exploding**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly** *a highly explosive mixture of gases*

2 **causing strong feelings**

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **highly** *Race is a highly explosive issue.* **| potentially** *The political situation is potentially explosive.*

explosive *noun*

ADJ. **high** *a bomb containing 200 lb of high explosive* **| commercial, home-made | chemical, conventional, plastic, semtex**

VERB + EXPLOSIVE **make, manufacture | plant** *They planted explosives in the tunnel.* **| detonate, set off**

EXPLOSIVE + NOUN **explosives expert**

exponent *noun*

ADJ. **chief, foremost, leading, main, principal | great, outstanding | famous, well-known | early** *He was an early exponent of multimedia in the classroom.*

PREP. **~ of** *a leading exponent of the Japanese flute*

export *noun*

ADJ. **important, main, major, principal, staple** *Coconut is one of the staple exports of the islands.* | **record** *The industry has achieved record exports in the past year.* | **total** *In 2001 total exports were valued at $2 billion.* | **British, US, etc.** | **world** *The US share of world exports has declined.* | **illegal, illicit** *stopping the illegal export of live animals* | **live** *lambs for live export* | **invisible** *Earnings from the sale of banking, insurance and other services to foreigners are described as 'invisible exports'.* | **capital, commodity** | **agricultural, industrial, manufactured, manufacturing** | **arms, art, banana, beef, coal, coffee, food, grain, oil, timber, etc.**

QUANT. **level, value, volume**

VERB + EXPORT **boost, encourage, expand, increase, promote** | **reduce, restrict** *plans to restrict the export of arms to certain countries* | **allow** | **ban, prohibit** | **achieve** | **prevent, stop** | **await** *yards where thousands of cars await export*

EXPORT + VERB **grow, increase, rise** *Oil exports have risen steadily.* | **drop, fall** | **be valued at sth, total sth** *Exports totalled $10 billion in 2002.* | **account for sth** *Oil exports account for nearly 80% of the country's foreign earnings.* | **be destined for sth** *Scottish exports destined for Western Europe*

EXPORT + NOUN **crop, goods** | **business, industry, trade** | **market, sector** | **earnings, revenue, sales** | **figures, performance** *a strong export performance* | **growth** | **controls, licence, quota, restrictions** *a call for tougher art export controls* | **ban** *an export ban on live cattle* | **drive** *the export drive by Japanese industry* | **order** *how to win more export orders*

PREP. **for ~** *This is where the fruit is packaged for export.* | **~ from** *exports from the EU to Canada* | **~ to**

PHRASES **a ban on exports** *to place a ban on exports of toxic waste* | **a decline/fall in exports, an increase/a rise in exports** > Note at PERCENT (for more verbs)

export *verb*

ADV. **widely** *a French breed of cattle that has been exported widely* **| illegally** *illegally exported works of art*

PREP. **from** *Last year 2,000 birds were exported from the island.* **| to** *The country exports sugar to Europe.*

exporter *noun*

ADJ. **big, large | leading, major | food, oil** *the biggest oil exporter in the world* **| net** *The country is a net exporter of food.*

expose *verb*

1 **uncover sth**

ADV. **completely, fully | briefly | suddenly | deliberately** *She lifted her chin in a gesture that deliberately exposed the line of her throat.*

PREP. **to** *These drawings must not be exposed to the air.*

2 **show the truth**

ADV. **fully | clearly** *a report which clearly exposes the weakness of the government's economic policy* **| publicly** *He was publicly exposed as a liar and a cheat.* **| cruelly** *He was outclassed by an Aston Villa side that cruelly exposed his lack of pace.*

VERB + EXPOSE **threaten to | seek to, try to**

3 **to sth harmful**

ADV. **directly | constantly** *The general public is constantly exposed to radiation.* **| regularly**

PREP. **to**

exposed *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become | leave sb/sth** *Depletion of the ozone layer leaves the earth's surface increasingly exposed to harmful radiation from the sun.*

ADV. **extremely, heavily** *(business)*, **highly, very** *The country became highly exposed to the vagaries of international markets.* **| completely, fully, totally | increasingly | fairly, rather, relatively | dangerously, painfully** *The postponement of difficult decisions left the government dangerously exposed to American influence.*

PREP. **to** *The garden was very exposed to westerly winds.*

exposure *noun*

1 **to sth harmful**

ADJ. **high, massive | maximum | excessive | low-level | long, long-term, prolonged | brief | constant, continued, continuous, repeated | chemical, radiation, sun | human** *human exposure to asbestos*

VERB + EXPOSURE **receive, suffer** *She suffered a massive exposure to toxic chemicals.* **| increase | limit, minimize, reduce** *Banks will seek to minimize their exposure to risk.* **| avoid**

PREP. **~ to** *The report recommends people to avoid prolonged exposure to sunlight.*

2 **to experience**

ADJ. **brief | greater | limited**

VERB + EXPOSURE **give sb | get, have | increase**

PREP. **~ to** *giving children greater exposure to other cultures*

3 **showing the truth**

ADJ. **full** *full exposure of the links between government officials and the arms trade* **| public**

4 **on TV/in newspapers, etc.**

ADJ. **regular | media, press, television**

VERB + EXPOSURE **give sb/sth** *The magazine aims to give exposure to the work of women artists.* **| gain, get, have, receive** *a would-be television personality who is constantly trying to get media exposure*

express *verb*

ADV. **well** *Perhaps I have not expressed myself very well.* | **fully** *She expresses herself most fully in her paintings.* | **openly** *He expressed his anger openly.* | **clearly** | **cogently** *Students must learn to express a point of view cogently and with clarity.* | **exactly, precisely** | **concisely, succinctly** | **eloquently** *The poet eloquently expresses the sense of lost innocence.*

VERB + EXPRESS **be/feel able/unable to** *Many patients feel unable to express their fears.* | **find it difficult to**

PHRASES **a chance/an opportunity to express sth**

expression *noun*

1 showing feelings/ideas

ADJ. **clear, coherent** *Her statement was a clear expression of her views on this subject.* | **concrete, material, practical, tangible** *The report gave concrete expression to the fears of many immigrants.* | **direct** *Just because there is no direct expression of prejudice, that does not mean the prejudice does not exist.* | **full** *The new concept of form reached its fullest expression in the work of Picasso.* | **highest, perfect, ultimate** *His highest expression of praise was 'Not bad!' the highest expression of human creativity* | **effective, powerful** | **simple** | **natural** *He wanted to write a verse drama in which the verse would seem a natural expression of modern life.* | **spontaneous** | **free** *the right of free expression* | **open, overt, public** *the open expression of emotion* | **outward** *the outward expression of inner emotional feelings* | **formal** | **characteristic, classic** *Modernism was the characteristic expression of the experience of modernity.* | **unique** | **collective** *Harvest festival was the occasion for the collective expression of a community's religious values.* | **individual, personal** *to allow scope for individual expression* | **visible, visual** | **emotional, physical, sexual, verbal** | **artistic, creative, cultural, linguistic, literary, musical, poetic, political, religious** | **human**

VERB + EXPRESSION **achieve, find, reach, receive** *an anger and frustration that finds expression in* (= is shown in) *violence* | **allow sth, give sth** *The method is to listen to the music and allow expression to whatever comes to you. Only in his dreams does he give expression to his fears.* | **demand, need, require** *Suddenly her deeper feelings demanded expression.*

PREP. **beyond ~** *She suddenly felt happy beyond expression* (= so happy that she could not express it).

PHRASES **freedom of expression** *Freedom of expression* (= freedom to say what you think) *is a basic human right.* | **a means of expression** *Words, as a means of expression, can be limiting.*

2 on sb's face

ADJ. **bland, blank, frozen, set, vacant** | **dazed, glazed** | **deadpan** *cracking jokes with a deadpan expression on his face* | **curious, enigmatic, inscrutable, odd, strange, unreadable** | **guarded** | **searching** | **faraway** | **thoughtful, wistful** |

doubtful, wary | anxious, troubled, worried | bleak, grim, serious | angry, fierce, furious, stern | hangdog, hunted, lugubrious, melancholy, mournful, pained, sad | brooding, intense, rapt | surprised, shocked | baffled, bemused, bewildered, puzzled, quizzical | alert | amused, wry | benign, sympathetic | satisfied, smug | innocent | fleeting | facial

VERB + EXPRESSION **have, wear** *She had a very bewildered expression on her face. The children's faces all wore the same rapt expression.* **| assume, put on** *She carefully put on her most innocent expression.* **| take on** *Rose's face took on the fierce expression of a schoolgirl talking about her most hated teacher.* **| catch, see** *Catching a fleeting expression on Lucy's face, she persisted with her question.* **| watch | gauge, read** *I looked at her, trying to read the expression on her face.* **| change** *His face never changed expression.*

EXPRESSION + VERB **alter, change** *His expression changed to embarrassment.* **| relax, soften** *His expression softened when he saw her.* **| darken, harden** *Her expression hardened into one of strong dislike.* **| freeze | betray sth, reveal sth, show sth, suggest sth, tell sb sth** *Her expression betrayed nothing of her thoughts. His grim expression told her it would be useless.* **| give nothing away | cross sth, flit across sth** *She had been watching the expression that crossed his face.*

PREP. **without ~** *'Go on,' she said, without expression.* **| ~ of** *He wore an expression of anxiety on his face.*

PHRASES **the expression in sb's eyes/on sb's face** *He looked at her with a very strange expression in his eyes.*

3 **words**

ADJ. **common | outdated | colloquial, slang | favourite | memorable | strange, unusual | figurative, idiomatic | coarse, vulgar | American, English, etc. | geographical** *Until the mid-nineteenth century, 'Italy' was just a geographical expression.*

VERB + EXPRESSION **use** *He tends to use strange expressions like 'It's enough to make a cat laugh'.*

EXPRESSION + VERB **mean sth**

expressive *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **deeply, highly, very, wonderfully** *She has a wonderfully expressive voice.* **| emotionally**

PREP. **of** *His art is deeply expressive of emotions.*

expulsion *noun*

ADJ. **automatic | immediate | mass | forced**

VERB + EXPULSION **lead to, result in** *Copying from another candidate results in automatic expulsion.* **| call for, demand | order** *The government ordered the immediate expulsion of the two men.* **| be threatened with, face** *Several pupils now face expulsion.* **| appeal against** *an ex-party member who intends to appeal against his expulsion*

PREP. **~ from** *her expulsion from the society*

PHRASES **ground(s) for expulsion** *His disruptive behaviour was felt to be sufficient grounds for his expulsion.*

extend *verb*

ADV. **greatly, significantly** *Next year we will greatly extend the range of goods that we sell.*

PREP. **from, to** *The repayment period will be extended from 20 years to 25 years.*

extension *noun*

1 **part added to a building**

ADJ. **planned, proposed | home, kitchen | one-storey, two-storey, etc.**

VERB + EXTENSION **add, build**

PREP. **~ to** *They're building an extension to their house.*

2 **extra time**

ADJ. **one-week, two-year, etc.**

VERB + EXTENSION **apply for, ask for, request** *He's applied for an extension of his visa.* **| get, receive** *She got an extension for writing her essay.* **| give sb, grant sb**

3 **making sth larger/taking sth further**

ADJ. **considerable, great, major, massive, significant | modest | further** *This new job is a further extension of his role as a manager.* **| general | gradual** *a gradual extension of the powers of central government* **| hair** *Hair extensions are pieces of artificial hair that are added to your hair to make it longer.*

4 **taking an argument/a situation further**

ADJ. **logical, natural, obvious** *The team appraisal is a logical extension of the individual appraisal interview.*

PREP. **by ~** *The blame lies with the teachers and, by extension, with the Education Service.*

extent *noun*

ADJ. **full, greatest, maximum, overall** *The overall extent of civilian casualties remained unclear.* | **actual, exact, precise, true** | **geographical, territorial**

VERB + EXTENT **reach** *The railway network had reached its greatest extent in route mileage.* | **see** | **consider, examine, explore, investigate** | **assess, calculate, estimate, evaluate, gauge, judge, measure** | **define, determine, establish, identify** *a statement defining the extent of Latvia's territory* | **discover** | **acknowledge, appreciate, realize, recognize** | **know, understand** *We do not yet know the extent of her injuries.* | **demonstrate, illustrate, indicate, make clear, reflect, reveal, show** *The operation revealed the extent of the cancer.* | **outline** *a lengthy agenda outlining the extent of global environmental problems* | **discuss** | **clarify, explain** | **emphasize, highlight, underline** *The victory underlined the extent to which Prussia had become a major power.* | **exaggerate, overstate** *She was exaggerating the true extent of the problem.* | **overestimate** | **underestimate** | **play down, underplay, understate** *The government sought to play down the extent of the problem.* | **ignore** | **conceal, obscure** | **limit, reduce, restrict** *to reduce the extent of deforestation*

PREP. **in ~** *The park is about 20 acres in extent.* | **to an ~** *To an extent* (= to some degree) *East-West distrust continued throughout the war.* | **to a … ~** *He had withdrawn from the company of his friends to an alarming extent.*

PHRASES **at sth's fullest/greatest extent** *At its fullest extent the Angevin Empire comprised most of western France.* | **to a considerable/great/large/significant extent, to a certain/to some extent** *To some extent, we are all responsible for this tragic situation.* | **to a lesser/limited/small extent** *The pollution of the forest has seriously affected plant life and, to a lesser extent, wildlife.* | **to the same extent** *People no longer live in small communities to the same extent as they used to.*

exterior *noun*

1 **outside of a building**

ADJ. **elegant | plain**

PREP. **behind an/the ~** *Hidden behind a plain exterior is a wonderful hotel.* **| on the ~** *There is an abundance of fine sculpture, both on the exterior and inside.*

2 **sb's outward behaviour**

ADJ. **bland, bluff, calm, charming, confident, cool, glacial** *Her calm exterior hides very passionate feelings.*

EXTERIOR + VERB **belie, conceal, hide** *His bluff exterior belied a connoisseur of antiques.*

PREP. **behind sb's ~** *Behind his cool exterior lurks a reckless and frustrated person.* **| beneath/underneath sb's ~** *Beneath her charming exterior lies a very determined woman.*

extinct *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, go | presume sth, think sth** *The species was presumed extinct.*

ADV. **completely, totally | all but, almost, nearly, practically, virtually** *The numbers of these animals have been falling steadily and they are now almost extinct.*

extinction *noun*

ADJ. **mass, total, widespread** *the mass extinction of the dinosaurs* **| near, virtual | imminent, impending**

VERB + EXTINCTION **cause, lead to** *Modern farming methods have led to the total extinction of many species of wild flowers.* **| be doomed to, be in danger of, be on the brink/edge/verge of, be threatened with, face** *The island's way of life is doomed to extinction. These animals are now on the verge of extinction.* **| be saved from**

extortion *noun*

ADJ. attempted | alleged

EXTORTION + NOUN racket *He was known for running a brutal extortion racket.* > Note at CRIME(for verbs)

extra *noun*

ADJ. **little** *There was no money left over for luxuries or little extras.* **| optional | hidden** £*400 is a lot to pay for a weekend break, but there are no hidden extras.* **| added** *Regular guests also get added extras like free room service.*

EXTRA + VERB **include sth** *Optional extras include anti-lock brakes and an electric sunroof.*

extract *noun*

1 **passage from a book/piece of music**

ADJ. **brief, short | long | literary**

VERB + EXTRACT **read | publish**

EXTRACT + VERB **be from, be taken from** *The extract is taken from a long essay.*

PREP. **~ from** *He read out a brief extract from his book.*

2 **substance taken from another substance**

ADJ. **natural** *conditioners made from natural plant extracts* **| herbal, malt, meat, plant, vanilla, yeast** *Add a few drops of vanilla extract.*

PREP. **~ of** *extract of apricot*

extradition *noun*

VERB + EXTRADITION **avoid, escape** *It won't be easy for them to escape extradition.* **| ask for, call for, demand, request, seek** *The new government will seek the extradition of the suspected terrorists.* **| allow, order** *A judge ordered her extradition to Britain.* **| await, face** *The smuggler is in prison tonight, awaiting extradition to Britain.* **| fight, resist** *His lawyer announced that he will fight extradition.*

EXTRADITION + NOUN **hearing, proceedings | agreement, treaty** *There is no extradition agreement between the two countries.* **| request**

PREP. **~ from, ~ to**

extraordinary *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | make sth** *What makes it so extraordinary is that the experts had all dismissed her theories as rubbish.* **| find sth** *I find her attitude quite extraordinary.* **| regard sth as, see sth as**

ADV. **most, really, truly | absolutely, altogether, quite** *It seems altogether extraordinary.* **| rather**

extravagant *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem** *I go to that restaurant for lunch if I'm feeling extravagant.* **| become**

ADV. **terribly, very, wildly** *He had a wildly extravagant lifestyle.* **| a bit, a little, rather, somewhat**

PREP. **with** *You mustn't be so extravagant with other people's money.*

extreme *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | become**

ADV. **very | a bit, fairly, a little, quite, rather, somewhat** *Some of his views seem rather extreme.* **| dangerously | politically**

PHRASES **at its most extreme** *This is hero-worship at its most extreme.*

extreme *noun*

ADJ. **opposite, polar** *Their views are at opposite extremes from each other.* **| climatic, political, temperature** *It's a difficult place to live because of its climatic extremes.*

VERB + EXTREME **avoid** *Avoid any extremes of emotional behaviour.* **| go to** *He went to the extreme of adulation, describing Churchill as the greatest man who ever lived.* **| carry sth to, take sth to** *It's foolish to take any dieting to extremes.*

PREP. **at an/the** *At the extreme, some nuclear waste is so radioactive it has to be kept isolated for thousands of years.* **| between ~s** *There has to be a solution between these extremes.* **| in the ~** *His voice was scornful in the extreme.* **| to the ~** *She was always kindly and generous to the extreme.* **| ~s of** *These photographs show extremes of obesity and emaciation.*

PHRASES **at one extreme, at the other extreme** *At the other extreme, women still childless at 32 were more likely to be from a professional background.* **| go from one extreme to the other** *She goes from one extreme to the other, and either works very hard or does absolutely nothing.*

extremist *noun*

ADJ. **left-wing, right-wing** *an attack by right-wing extremists* **| political, religious | Muslim, Republican, etc.**

EXTREMIST + NOUN **group, party**

exuberance *noun*

ADJ. **sheer** *She was laughing from the sheer exuberance of the performance.* **|** **natural, youthful**

VERB + EXUBERANCE **curb** *He has to learn to curb his natural exuberance.*

eye *noun*

1 part of the body

ADJ. **left, right | amber, blue,** brown, dark, golden, green, **grey, hazel | big, huge, large, enormous, wide** *She just looked at me with those big blue eyes of hers. His eyes were wide with horror.* **| narrow | close-set | wide-apart, wide-set |** deep/deep-set, heavy-lidded, **hollow, hooded, sunken |** protuberant | beady, piggy | baggy, puffy, swollen | bleary, bloodshot, dark-ringed, exhausted, red, red-rimmed, **sleepy, tired, weary** *Her dark-ringed eyes showed that she hadn't slept.* **| bright, brilliant, luminous, lustrous, sparkling,** starry | clear, limpid, liquid | soft, velvety, warm | cloudy, **misty, moist, rheumy, tear-filled, tearful, watery | dry | sightless, unseeing | short-sighted | half-closed, narrowed |** unblinking | dazed, unfocused | mad, staring, wild | angry, **cruel, fierce | anxious | greedy, hungry** *The dog's hungry eyes were on my sandwich.* **| curious, prying** *He drew the curtains to make sure no prying eyes saw what he was doing.* **| intelligent, keen, sharp, shrewd | penetrating, piercing | cold, expressionless, glassy, glazed, lifeless, steely, vacant | downcast, sad, solemn, soulful**

VERB + EYE **open | close, shut | lift, raise | cast, turn** *I cast my eyes around the room but couldn't see any familiar faces. He turned his eyes to the door when he heard the handle turning.* **| avert** *She averted her eyes from his face.* **| screw up** *He screwed up his eyes against the glare of the sun.* **| strain** *I didn't want to strain my eyes to read, so I put the light on.* | protect *Skiers wear goggles to protect their eyes from the sun.* **| shade, shield** *He held up the newspaper to shield his eyes from the sun.* **| test | gouge** *She reached up and tried to gouge her attacker's eyes.* **| catch** *A movement in the reeds caught my eye* (= attracted my attention). **| look sb (straight) in, meet** *She looked her father straight in the eye and answered his question truthfully. He seemed unwilling to meet my eye.*

EYE + VERB **dilate, fly open, grow wide, open, round, widen** *Her eyes dilated with horror at what she had done. Her eyes flew open in surprise. His eyes rounded in mock amazement.* **| close, shut | stream, water** *My eyes stream when I chop onions.* **| hold sth** *His eyes held a sceptical gleam.* **| be alight with sth, blaze, flare, flash, gleam, glint, glisten, glitter, glow, light up, shine, smoulder, spark, sparkle, twinkle** *She laughed, her eyes alight with excitement. His eyes blazed with menace.* **| mirror sth, reflect sth** *His eyes reflected his anguish.* **| blur, cloud, brim/fill with tears, mist | darken, dim, dull, glaze (over)** *Her eyes glazed over when I said I worked in dictionaries.* **| harden** *His eyes hardened as he remembered how they had laughed at him.* **| narrow, sharpen | burn, hurt,**

prick, prickle, smart, sting *Her eyes prickled with unshed tears.* | **be drawn to sb/sth, follow sb/sth, turn to sb/sth** *His eyes were drawn to a bundle of papers in the corner. My eyes followed his every move.* | **fall on sb/sth, settle on sb/sth** | **dwell on sb/sth, fasten on sb/sth, fix on sb/sth, be fixed on sb/sth, be intent on sb/sth, focus on sb/sth, gaze (up) at sb/sth, be** glued to sb/sth, linger on sb/sth, lock on sb/sth, rest on sb/sth, be riveted on/to sb/sth, **stare (at) sb/sth, be trained on sb/sth, watch sb/sth** *She tried to sit up, her eyes fixed on Jean's face.* | **look at sb/sth, peer at sb/sth, regard sb/sth** | **glare at sb/sth** | **lock (together), meet** *Their eyes locked together in a battle of wills.* | **dart, flick, flicker, flit, glance, go, leap, move, run, shift** *His eyes darted from face to face.* | **roll, swivel** *She tried the door, her eyes rolling in panic.* | **dance** *Her eyes danced with amusement.* | **roam, rove** *He let his eyes roam round the scene.* | **drift, slide, slip, stray, wander** *His eyes drifted over to Helen's chair.* | **probe sth, rake sth, scan sth, scour sth, search sth, sweep sth** *His eyes scanned the room as he entered.* | **drop, fall, lower** *Her eyes dropped to her lap as she answered.* | **lift** | **bore into sb, lance (through) sb, pierce sb** *She could feel the old lady's eyes bore into her.* | **accustom to sth, adjust to sth, become/grow accustomed to sth** *As my eyes accustomed to the darkness, I could make out a shape by the window.* | **blink** | **crinkle (up), squint, wrinkle** *His eyes crinkled up at the corners as he smiled. Her eyes squinted against the brightness.* | **strain** *My eyes strained to make anything out in the darkness.* | **slant** | **bulge, pop** *His eyes bulged in fury.* | **betray sb/sth, give away sb/sth** *His narrow eyes betrayed his impatience.* | **question sb, quiz sb** | **smile** | **mock sb** | **appraise sb/sth, examine sb/sth, scrutinize sb/sth, study sb/sth, survey sb/sth** | **take sth in** *My eyes took in every detail as I entered the house for the first time in twenty years.*

EYE + NOUN **muscles, socket** | **contact** *I knew he was lying because he wouldn't make eye contact with me.* | **movement** *Rapid eye movements frequently accompany dreaming.* | **doctor, specialist, surgeon** | **hospital** | **operation, surgery, treatment** | **examination, test** | **complaint, damage, defect, disease, disorder, infection, injury, strain, trouble** | **drops** *The doctor gave me eye drops to put in three times a day.* | **protection** *It is essential to wear some form of eye protection.* | **make-up** | **level** *Your computer screen should be at eye level so that you can work with your neck straight.*

PREP. **in your ~s** *There were tears in his eyes as he spoke. The sun was in my eyes and I couldn't see the road.* | **under sb's ~** *I want you under my eye* (= where I can see you).

PHRASES **as far as the eye can see** *The tide was out, leaving nothing but mud as far as the eye could see.* | **before your very eyes** *Before our very eyes, the bird snatched the fish from the plate and flew off.* | **can't keep/take your eyes off sb/sth** *He couldn't keep his eyes off the girl sitting opposite him.* | **cast/raise/roll your eyes**

heavenwards (= to show that you are annoyed or impatient) *She rolled her eyes heavenwards when she saw what her husband was wearing.* **| a gleam/glint/ twinkle in sb's eye** *He looked at me with a twinkle in his eye.* **| have an eye on sb/ sth** (= be watching) *The store detective had his eye on a group of boys who were acting suspiciously.* **| keep an eye on sb/sth** (= watch) *Could you keep an eye on my bag while I go to the toilet?* **| keep an eye open/out for sb/sth** (= watch out for) *I walked round the shops, keeping an eye out for bargains.* **| out of the corner of your eye** *Out of the corner of her eye, she saw Harry start forward.* **| set eyes on sb/sth** *From the moment he set eyes on her he knew that he wanted to marry her.* **| to/with the naked/unaided eye** *The planet should be visible to the naked eye* (= without a telescope). **| under sb's critical, watchful, etc. eye** *The team went through their paces under their trainer's critical eye.* **| with your own eyes** *If I hadn't seen his jump with my own eyes, I would never have believed it possible.*

2 **ability to see**

ADJ. **eagle, good, keen, quick, sharp** *The children's eagle eyes spotted an ice-cream shop half a mile away. A surgeon needs a good eye and a steady hand.*

PREP. **~ for** *Her skill at working with wood is coupled to a keen eye for design.*

3 **way of seeing**

ADJ. **careful, cautious, close, suspicious, wary, watchful | critical, stern | jaundiced | fresh, new** *He saw his students with new eyes now that he had a child of his own.* **| kindly, sympathetic | fatherly | discerning | experienced, expert, practised** *To an expert eye, the painting is an obvious fake.* **| inexperienced, untrained | artistic**

PREP. **in sb/sth's ~** *She can do no wrong in his eyes. In the eyes of the law his knife was an offensive weapon.* **| through sb's ~s** *You need to look at your website through the user's eyes.* **| to sb's ~** *To my eye, the windows seem out of proportion.* **| with a ... ~** *She viewed the findings with a critical eye.* **| with the ~ of** *He looked at the design with the eye of an engineer.*

PHRASES **in your mind's eye** (= your imagination) *He pictured the scene in his mind's eye.*

eye *verb*

ADV. **keenly, narrowly, sharply, shrewdly | curiously, speculatively, thoughtfully | carefully, cautiously, suspiciously, warily | doubtfully, uncertainly | coldly, contemptuously, coolly | greedily, hungrily** *The children eyed the cakes greedily.*

eyebrow *noun*

ADJ. **heavy, thick | thin | bushy, shaggy, unkempt | plucked, shaped | winged | dark, jet-black | lifted, raised | surprised | amused | derisive, mocking | cynical, sardonic, sceptical | enquiring, querying, questioning, quizzical**

VERB + EYEBROW **arch, cock, lift, quirk, raise** *'Really?' she said, raising a sardonic eyebrow.* **| pluck** *She spent hours in front of the mirror, plucking her eyebrows.*

EYEBROW + VERB **lift, rise** *His dark eyebrows lifted in surprise.*

EYEBROW + NOUN **pencil**

eyelash *noun*

ADJ. **thick | long | curling | artificial, false**

VERB + EYELASH **bat, flutter** *She smiled and fluttered her eyelashes at the ticket inspector.*

EYELASH + VERB **flicker, flutter**

eyelid *noun*

ADJ. **lower, upper | closed, half-closed, lowered | drooping, heavy, hooded**

VERB + EYELID **lift** *She lifted one eyelid to see what he was doing.*

PREP. **behind (your) ~** *She watched him from behind half-closed eyelids.*

eyesight *noun*

ADJ. **good, keen | bad, deteriorating, failing, poor** *Failing eyesight finally forced her into an old people's home.*

VERB + EYESIGHT **have** *Owls have good eyesight.*

EYESIGHT + VERB **deteriorate, fail**

fabric *noun*

1 **cloth**

ADJ. **beautiful, rich** *rich fabric wall coverings* | **delicate, fine, lightweight, sheer, soft, thin** | **coarse, firm, hard-wearing, thick** | **stretch** | **floral, patterned, plain, printed, striped** | **knitted, woven** | **cotton, nylon, woollen, etc.** | **synthetic** | **curtain, dress, furnishing**

QUANT. **length, piece, strip**

VERB + FABRIC **produce, weave** *The fabric is woven on these machines.*

2 **basic structure of a society/way of life**

ADJ. **basic** *the basic fabric of family life* | **economic, political, social**

VERB + FABRIC **destroy** *The government's policies have destroyed the social fabric.*

PHRASES **the very/whole fabric of sth** *a threat to the very fabric of society*

face *noun*

1 front part of the head

ADJ. **angelic, beautiful, handsome, lovely, pleasant, pretty, sweet | plain, ugly, terrible | colourless, grey, pale, pallid, white | flushed, pink, red, ruddy** *Her face was flushed after her run.* **| tanned | dark | sallow | heart-shaped, oval, round, square | bearded, freckled, unshaven | lined, wrinkled | pock-marked, raddled | fat, plump** *She had a plump, pretty face.* **| gaunt, haggard, lean, pinched, thin, wizened | craggy, rugged** *a craggy face with deep-set eyes and bushy brows* **| elfin** *Her short hair suited her elfin face.* **| painted | happy, smiling | tear-stained, tear-streaked | human**

VERB + FACE **tilt, turn** *She turned her face away. He tilted her face up to his.*

FACE + VERB **look, peer, stare** *A face peered round the door at him.*

PREP. **in the/sb's ~** *The ball hit him in the face. His eyes were sunken in his gaunt face.* **| on the/sb's ~** *She put some powder on her face.*

PHRASES **a sea of faces** (= a large crowd of faces) *From the stage, he looked down at a sea of faces.*

2 expression on sb's face

ADJ. **animated, cheerful, friendly, grinning, happy, radiant, smiling | anxious, frightened, troubled | angry, furious | hard, set, stern** *His face was set and hard.* **| grave, serious | long, sad** *The news for the company isn't good, judging from the long faces in the boardroom.* **| funny** *She made a funny face and gave a snorting sort of laugh.* **| honest, kind | expectant | rapt | expressive, open** *She looked at the honest, open face of her husband.* **| blank, expressionless, impassive** *His face remained impassive, so strong was his self-control.*

VERB + FACE **make, pull** *What are you pulling a face at now?* **| search** *He searched her face for some clue as to what she meant.*

FACE + VERB **brighten, glow, light up** *Her little face lit up when I gave her the present.* **| beam, smile** *The face smiled benignly at him.* **| cloud, crumple, drop, fall** *Her face crumpled and she started crying. ‘I can't come,’ she said. His face fell.* **|**

clear *His face cleared and she smiled back.* | **darken, harden, set** *Her face darkened with anger. His face set in grim lines.* | **soften** *The father's face softened as he hugged his little boy.* | **flame, flush, go red, redden** *Jack's face flushed with embarrassment.* | **pale** *Her face paled with fright.* | **contort, crease, pucker, tighten, twist** *Her face contorted in pain.* | **betray sth, reveal sth** *Her face betrayed no emotion at all.*

PREP. **on sb's ~** *She had a big smile on her face.*

PHRASES **a face like thunder** (= a very angry face) *Mr Hibbs came in with a face like thunder.*

3 front part/side of sth

ADJ. **front, rear** | **North, South, etc.** | **steep** *We slowly climbed the steep face of the crag.* | **cliff, rock** | **clock**

PHRASES **face down/downwards, face up/upwards** *She placed the cards face downwards on the table.*

4 person

ADJ. **familiar, (same) old** *I looked around for a familiar face. I'm so bored with seeing the same old faces!* | **different, fresh, new, strange, unfamiliar** | **famous, well-known** *a restaurant where you often see famous faces*

VERB + FACE **see**

5 particular character/aspect of sth

ADJ. **human** *bureaucracy with a human face* | **acceptable** | **unacceptable** *Social deprivation is the unacceptable face of capitalism.* | **true** | **changing** *the changing face of Britain*

facet *noun*

ADJ. **essential, important | common | tiny | interesting | hidden**

VERB + FACET **have** *She has another important facet to her personality.*

facilitate *verb*

ADV. **greatly** *The use of computers has greatly facilitated the firm's ability to keep accurate records.* **| further**

VERB + FACILITATE **be designed to, help (to)**

facility *noun*

1 **facilities buildings/services/equipment**

ADJ. **excellent, first-class, good | adequate, appropriate, proper, suitable | inadequate, poor | basic, limited** *a hotel with only basic facilities* **| modern, up-to-date | extensive | extra | available, existing** *We are looking to upgrade the existing facilities.* **| essential, necessary** *to improve access to essential facilities* **| local, community** *hospitals, schools and other major community facilities* **| communal, shared** *The toilets and other communal facilities were in a shocking state.* **| public | disabled** *The railway station was criticized for its lack of disabled facilities.* **| conference | airport, hotel | bar, holiday, leisure, play, recreational, social, sporting/sports | transport, travel | parking | shopping | storage | canteen, dining, restaurant | catering, cooking, kitchen | baby changing, bathroom, laundry, sanitary, shower, toilet, washing | en suite, private** *All bedrooms offer private facilities* (= a private bathroom). **| health, health care, hospital, medical | childcare, creche, day care, nursery | educational, training | library, research | laboratory | computing**

VERB + FACILITY **have, offer, provide | improve, upgrade | make use of, use** *I made full use of the computing facilities.*

FACILITY + VERB **be available, exist | include sth** *Facilities include a large indoor pool, jacuzzi and sauna.*

PREP. **~ for** *The school has no facilities for the teaching of music. The hotel provides excellent facilities for children.*

PHRASES **a range of facilities**

2 **special feature of a machine/service**

ADJ. **central** *The archive offers a central facility for cataloguing and indexing data.* **| back-up** *The report warns that there are no back-up facilities if the reprocessing plant breaks down.* **| support** *training and other support facilities* **| special | useful | flexible** *A First National Bank loan is an extremely flexible facility.* **| technical | cheque book, credit, loan, overdraft** *a bank account with an overdraft facility* **| editing, graphics, help, mail, search, word processing** *(all* *computing)*

VERB + FACILITY **have, offer, provide | use**

FACILITY + VERB **allow (for) sth** *The cheque book facility allows for a minimum withdrawal of £200.*

PREP. **~ for** *The device has a facility for storing any sound you like.*

3 natural ability

ADJ. **amazing, great**

VERB + FACILITY **have | show**

PREP. **with ~** *He played with great facility.* **| ~ for** *She showed an amazing facility for mind-reading.*

fact *noun*

ADJ. **important, interesting, relevant, salient** *looking at all the relevant facts* | **basic** | **concrete, hard, incontrovertible, inescapable, observable, obvious, plain, straightforward, true, undeniable** *The police have to support their case with hard facts. These are all incontrovertible facts.* | **bare, brute, disturbing, harsh, sad, stark, unpalatable, unpleasant** *the bare facts of war a rather harsh fact of life* | **little-known, well-known** *It is a well-known fact that girls do better than boys at school.* | **mere** *The mere fact of your being there will arouse their suspicions.* | **historical**

VERB + FACT **be aware of, have, know** *We haven't got all the facts yet. She already knew the facts she needed.* | **ascertain, establish, find out** *the best way of establishing the facts* | **check, examine, look at** *I think you need to check your facts. For God's sake, look at the facts!* | **prove** *These facts have not yet been proved.* | **collect, gather** | **select** *Historians must first select the facts that they present.* | **give, impart, present, state** *The job of the teacher is not simply to impart facts. I'm not making excuses?I'm just stating a fact.* | **interpret** *different ways of interpreting the facts* | **account for, explain** *How do you account for the fact that unemployment is still rising?* | **accept, acknowledge, face, recognize** *She wouldn't accept the fact that she had lost. I'm afraid you'll have to face facts. She'll never marry you.* | **grasp** *He doesn't seem able to grasp this basic fact.* | **learn** | **assimilate** *Students need time to assimilate the facts.* | **deny, dispute** *No one can deny this fact.* | **ignore, overlook** *This approach ignores the fact that people, not computers, commit crimes.* | **be oblivious to** | **conceal, disguise, hide** *If he was bored, he managed to hide the fact very well.* | **obscure** *The recent improvements should not obscure the fact that general standards are still far too low.* | **draw attention to** *The report draws attention to the fact that the country is now a net exporter of the product.* | **emphasize, underline** | **confine yourself to, keep to, stick to** *Just stick to the facts.* | **be based on** *a novel based on historical fact* | **reflect** *Prices reflect the fact that the company is aiming at the luxury market.* | **stem from** *He knew their bitterness stemmed from the fact that he was in charge.* | **be explained by** | **be complicated by, be compounded by, be exacerbated by** *The problem was compounded by the fact that I had no idea what I was looking for? only 'some sort of clue'.* | **lament, regret, resent** *We sat miserably in the pub, lamenting the fact that our dry clothes were a 60-mile bus journey away. She resented the fact that I was older and had more freedom than her.*

FACT + VERB **remain** *The fact remains that we are still two teachers short.*

PREP. **after the ~** *On some vital decisions employees were only informed after the fact* (= when it was too late to change them). **| apart from the ~** *She was happy, apart from the fact that she could not return home.* **| despite/in spite of/ notwithstanding the ~** *She's taking her children on holiday, despite the fact that school starts tomorrow.* **| due to the ~** *Due to the fact that they did not read English, the prisoners were unaware of what they were signing.* **| given the ~** *The findings are not surprising, given the facts: …* **| in ~** *I used to live in France; in fact, not far from where you're going.* **| ~ about** *We learned several interesting facts about elephants.*

PHRASES **(as) a matter of fact** *It's not wild speculation! It's plain matter of fact.*

'I suppose you'll be leaving soon, then?' 'No, as a matter of fact I'll be staying for another two years.' **| facts and figures** *presenting all the facts and figures to the meeting* **| the fact of the matter** *A new car would be wonderful but the fact of the matter is that we can't afford one.* **| the facts of the case** *The facts of the case are quite straightforward.* **| a fact of life** (= a situation that cannot be changed) *It is an unpalatable fact of life that the most deserving people do no* **| the facts of life** (= the details about sex and how babies are born, especially as told to children), **fact or fiction?** *The Loch Ness Monster: fact or fiction?* **| the facts speak for themselves** (= further explanation about sth is unnecessary because the facts prove it is true), **get your facts right/wrong** *If you're going to make accusations, you'd better get your facts right.* **| have the facts at your fingertips** *When making your presentation, it is important to have all the facts at your fingertips* (= to have the information you need and be able to find it and use it quickly). **| in actual fact/in point of fact** *I thought the work would be difficult. In actual fact, it's very easy.* **| in view of the fact that …** *Voluntary work was particularly important in view of the fact that women were often forced to give up paid work on marriage.* **| know for a fact** *Do you know for a fact that he is in London?* **| a question/statement of fact** *It's a simple statement of fact.* **| a recognition of the fact that …** *a growing recognition of the fact that learning may take different forms*

faction *noun*

ADJ. **dominant, leading, main, major | internal | competing, opposing, rival, warring | breakaway | dissident, rebel | disaffected | military, parliamentary, political | conservative, hard-line, left-wing, liberal, moderate, radical, right-wing | anti-reform, anti-talks, etc.**

VERB + FACTION **lead**

PREP. **~ in** *the largest faction in the civil war* **| ~ within** *the dominant faction within the government*

factor *noun*

ADJ. **important, main, major, relevant, significant** *one of the most significant factors* | **critical, crucial, deciding, decisive, determining, key, vital** *This is regarded as the crucial factor in deciding who should get priority. Money proved to be the deciding factor.* | **contributing, contributory** *Poor organization was certainly a contributory factor to the crisis.* | **complicating, distorting** *A complicating factor is her parents' refusal to cooperate with the police.* | **limiting** | **mitigating** *The appeal judges spoke of strong mitigating factors in the case.* | **aggravating** | **additional** | **single** *The closure of the mine was the single most important factor in the town's decline.* | **common** *Look for the common factor in all these cases.* | **external, extraneous, extrinsic** *External factors in the production of disease include pollution of the environment.* | **internal, intrinsic** | **causal, causative** | **risk** *Studies have established that smoking is a risk factor for cancer.* | **contextual, demographic, economic, environmental, genetic, political, psychological, situational, social**

VERB + FACTOR **consider, take into account** *A variety of other factors will be taken into account.* | **depend on**

FACTOR + VERB **be involved, operate** *the contextual factors which operate to hinder understanding* | **affect sth, be responsible for sth, contribute to sth, determine sth, influence sth, precipitate sth, predispose sb/sth to sth** *environmental factors which predispose children to middle-ear infections* | **constrain sth, inhibit sth, militate against sth** *one of the factors that influenced his decision* | **interact** *looking at how economic and social factors interact* | **include sth**

PREP. **~ behind** *the main factors behind the dollar's weakness* | **~ in** *a key factor in the decision*

PHRASES **a combination/number/range/variety of factors** *The outcome will depend on a number of factors.*

factory *noun*

ADJ. **large | small | modern | disused | aircraft, car, chemical, clothing, munitions, etc.**

VERB + FACTORY **open, set up** *capital to set up a ceramics factory* **| close (down), shut (down)** *They had to close the factory down in the recession.* **| manage, run**

FACTORY + VERB **make sth, produce sth | open | close (down), shut (down)** *The factory closed down ten years ago.*

FACTORY + NOUN **manager, owner, worker | job, production, work | buildings | closure**

PREP. **at/in ~** *He works in a shoe factory.*

factual *adj.*

VERBS **be | keep sth** *Try to keep your account as factual as possible.*

ADV. **entirely, purely, strictly | basically, largely | supposedly** *the speculative nature of the supposedly factual information conveyed through the media*

faculty *noun*

1 **natural ability of the body/mind**

ADJ. **higher** *the evolution of man's higher faculties* **| cognitive, intellectual, mental, rational** *He is not in full possession of all his mental faculties.* **| creative, critical, imaginative, moral | human**

VERB + FACULTY **be in possession of, have** *She is over eighty but still has all her faculties.* **| lose | develop** *trying to develop the student's critical faculties*

PREP. **~ for** *our faculty for picking up speech even in noisy environments*

2 **university department**

ADJ. **Arts, English, law, medical, etc.**

FACULTY + NOUN **board, head, member**

PREP. **across ~** *collaboration across faculties* **| in a/the ~** *students who are doing degrees in the Arts Faculty* **| ~ of** *the Faculty of Arts*

fad *noun*

ADJ. **current, latest, new | passing | management | food** *Most children have food fads at some time.*

PREP. **~ for** *the fad for cookery programmes*

fade *verb*

ADV. **fast, quickly, rapidly** *Hopes of a peace settlement were fading fast.* **| gradually, slowly | quietly** *It was impossible for her to fade quietly into the background.* **| away**

VERB + FADE **begin to | seem to** *All else seemed to fade into insignificance.*

PREP. **from** *The smile faded from his face.* **| into** *Their voices faded into the distance.*

faeces *noun*

ADJ. **fresh | dog, human, etc.**

QUANT. **mass, piece**

VERB + FAECES **be excreted in, be expelled in, be passed in** *The larvae may be excreted in the faeces.* **| collect** *A sample of fresh faeces should be collected each day.*

FAECES + NOUN **sample**

PREP. **in the ~** *The amount of blood in the faeces was measured.*

fail *verb*

1 **not succeed**

ADV. **dismally, miserably** *I tried to cheer her up, but failed miserably.* **| spectacularly** *The show didn't just fail, it failed spectacularly.*

VERB + FAIL **cannot/could not, can/could hardly** *The song can't fail to be a hit* (= will definitely be a hit). **| be bound to, be destined to, be doomed to** *an enterprise that was doomed to fail from the start*

PREP. **in** *Doctors are failing in their duty if they do not warn their patients of the dangers.*

2 **fail to do sth: not do sth**

ADV. **totally** *The authorities have totally failed to address this problem.*

failing *noun*

ADJ. **major, worst** *Vanity is her worst failing.* **| common, human** *the very human failing of wanting to tell other people what to do* **| moral | personal**

VERB + FAILING **have** *We all have our failings.*

failure *noun*

1 lack of success

ADJ. **complete, total | abject, humiliating, ignominious** *The attempt ended in abject failure.* **| inevitable | costly | alleged, apparent, perceived | evident | comparative, relative | initial** *Initial failure was followed by unexpected, if modest, success.* **| ultimate** *War is the ultimate failure of public communication.* **| personal | moral | academic | economic, financial | military**

VERB + FAILURE **be doomed to, end in, result in** *All her efforts were doomed to failure.* **| admit, confess** *He was too proud to admit failure.* **| expect** *Children who are doing badly tend to expect failure and criticism.* **| fear | avoid**

FAILURE + NOUN **rate** *There is a high failure rate with this treatment.*

PHRASES **fear of failure** *Fear of failure should not deter you from trying.* **| a history of failure** *John had a long history of academic failure.* **| a possibility/risk of failure, a sense of failure**

2 unsuccessful person/thing

ADJ. **great, serious | complete, total, utter | catastrophic, disastrous | abject, conspicuous, dismal, humiliating, ignominious, lamentable, miserable | costly | heroic** *Her ideas were large: if she could not succeed, she would at least be a heroic failure.* **| alleged, apparent, perceived | evident | comparative, relative | past** *to learn from past failures* **| rare** *The film was one of the rare failures in his career.* **| unexpected | personal | collective | moral | academic | economic, financial** *economic failure and increasing unemployment* **| military**

VERB + FAILURE **be, represent | prove** *The venture proved a costly failure.* **| feel** *I felt a complete failure.* **| consider sb/sth, regard sb/sth as | brand sb/sth, pronounce sb/sth** *Her parents had long since branded her a failure.*

FAILURE + VERB **arise from sth** *failures arising from circumstances beyond your control*

PREP. **~ of** *The decision to withdraw funding represents a failure of imagination.*

3 **not doing sth**

ADJ. **fundamental | general | manifest | consistent, constant, continued/ continuing, persistent, repeated | government, management** *government failure to listen to the voice of the electorate*

VERB + FAILURE **excuse, justify** *seeking to excuse his failure to ask her permission*

4 **of a machine/system/part of the body, etc.**

ADJ. **battery, brake, component, computer, engine, equipment, mechanical, power, system, technical | bank, business, commercial, company, corporate, market** *Business failures rose by 30% in 2001.* **| brain, heart, kidney, liver | crop, harvest | communication**

VERB + FAILURE **cause, lead to, result in** *a rare viral infection that can lead to heart failure*

FAILURE + VERB **occur** *A power failure occurred between 4 and 5 p.m.*

PREP. **~ in** *a failure in the computer system*

faint *adj.*

1 not strong or clear

VERBS be, look, sound *His voice sounded faint and far away.* **| become, grow** *The whispers grew fainter and fainter, then stopped altogether.*

ADV. extremely, very *I can't make out the number?it's very faint.* **| rather**

2 near to losing consciousness

VERBS be, feel, look

ADV. extremely, very | almost | a bit, a little, quite *I was beginning to feel a little faint.*

PREP. with *I was faint with hunger.*

faint *verb*

ADV. **almost, nearly**

VERB + FAINT **be about to, be going to** *He was so pale she thought he was going to faint.*

PREP. **at** *He would faint at the sight of blood.* **|** **from** *She fainted from lack of air.* **|** **with** *She almost fainted with shock.*

fair *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | make sth** *I'll give you ten pounds each to make it fair.* **| consider sth, think sth** *I didn't think it fair that the others should be allowed to go but not me.*

ADV. **scrupulously, very** *It's important to be scrupulously fair when marking the final exam paper.* **| absolutely, completely, entirely, perfectly, quite, totally** *I don't care what he thinks. It seems perfectly fair to me. That doesn't seem quite fair.* **| hardly** *It's hardly fair that I should be working while everyone else is enjoying themselves!* **| pretty, reasonably**

PHRASES **to be fair** *To be fair, we hadn't really spent enough time on the job.*

PREP. **to** *That seems fair to all sides.*

fair *noun*

ADJ. **major | annual | trade | antiques, book, craft, horse**

VERB + FAIR **attend, go to, visit | have, hold, host** *The city is holding its annual trade fair in May this year.* **| organize** *She is organizing next year's book fair.*

FAIR + VERB **take place**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *I bought it at a local craft fair.*

fairness *noun*

ADJ. **strict**

VERB + FAIRNESS **achieve, ensure, guarantee** *a way of achieving fairness to the accused*

FAIRNESS + VERB **call for sth, demand sth, require sth** *Fairness demanded an equal division of the winnings.*

PREP. **in (all) ~** *In all fairness to him, I should say that most of his story is true.* **| with ~** *They were all treated with strict fairness.* **| ~ in** *the need for fairness in applying these rules* **| ~ to** *The new system of waiting lists should guarantee fairness to all patients.*

PHRASES **a sense of fairness** *Children have a very strong sense of fairness.*

fairy *noun*

ADJ. **good | bad, wicked**

VERB + FAIRY **believe in**

faith *noun*

1 **trust in sb/sth**

ADJ. **enormous, great, tremendous | absolute, complete, implicit, total, unshakeable | blind** *He seems to have a blind faith in his boss.* **| abiding** *an artist whose work reflects his abiding faith in humanity* **| touching** *She showed a touching faith in my ability to resolve any and every difficulty.* **| public** *Business crime undermines public faith in the business system.*

VERB + FAITH **have | place, pin, put** *He distrusted political systems and placed his faith in the genius of individuals. She did not pin much faith on their chances of success.* **| show | lose** *people who lose faith in themselves* **| shake, undermine | destroy | restore** *trying to restore faith in the political system* **| regain | retain** *If the company can retain its customers' faith it could become the market leader.* **| affirm, express, proclaim**

PREP. **~ in** *Her faith in human nature had been badly shaken.*

PHRASES **an act of faith, a leap of faith** *These reforms are totally untested and will require a leap of faith on the part of teachers.* **| have every faith in sb**

2 **strong religious belief**

ADJ. **religious | genuine, strong, true | simple | unquestioning | active** *a large decline in the number of people who have an active faith of any sort* **| personal**

VERB + FAITH **have | come to, find** *He found faith gradually, rather than in a sudden conversion.* **| lose | shake, undermine | regain | proclaim**

FAITH + NOUN **healer, healing**

PREP. **through ~** *They believe that people can come to salvation through faith.* **| ~ in** *After her son's death she lost her faith in God.*

PHRASES **an article of faith** *(often figurative) Manchester United's greatness was an article of faith for him* (= a belief that could not be questioned).

3 religion

ADJ. **living** *Christianity is a living faith which has shaped the history of Britain.* **| world** *The study of other world faiths is an important part of religious education.* **| Catholic, Jewish, Muslim, etc.**

VERB + FAITH **profess | practise** *Christians were allowed to practise their faith unmolested by the authorities.* **| keep alive, uphold** *Their aim was to keep alive the traditional Jewish faith.* **| hand on, pass on, preach, spread, teach** *the role of parents in passing on the faith to their children feeling the call to preach the faith to others*

PHRASES **people of different faiths**

4 intention to do right

ADJ. **bad, good** *The judge did not find any bad faith* (= intention to do wrong) *on the part of the defendants.*

VERB + FAITH **keep** *As club manager he was not prepared to keep faith with* (= keep a promise to) *the players who had failed him.* **| break** (= break a promise to sb)

PREP. **in … ~** *We printed the report in good faith, but have now learnt that it was incorrect.*

faithful *adj.*

1 **loyal**

VERBS **be | remain, stay** *soldiers who stayed faithful to the king*

ADV. **extremely, very** *He has been a very faithful friend to me.* **| absolutely, entirely, utterly**

PREP. **to** *He had remained entirely faithful to his wife.*

2 **accurate**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **remarkably, very | fairly, quite**

PREP. **to** *The film is quite faithful to the original novel.*

fall *noun*

1 accident

ADJ. **bad, nasty, terrible** *She took a bad fall while out riding.* | **accidental**

VERB + FALL **have, suffer, take** *The doctor says she's had a very nasty fall.* | **break, cushion** *Luckily a bush broke his fall.* | **survive** *The chances of surviving a fall under a train are almost nil.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He was hurt in a fall at his home yesterday.* | **~ from** *She broke her neck in a fall from a horse.*

2 of snow/rocks

ADJ. **heavy** | **light** | **fresh** *a fresh fall of snow* | **rock, snow** (also **snowfall)**

PREP. **~ of** *covered by a light fall of volcanic ash*

3 decrease

ADJ. **big, dramatic, great, large, marked, massive, significant, substantial** *a big fall in house prices This triggered the recent dramatic falls on the Tokyo stock exchange.* | **modest, slight, small** | **steady** | **rapid, sharp, steep, sudden, swift** | **expected, projected** *a projected fall of 2%* | **unexpected** | **continuing, further** | **overall** | **catastrophic**

VERB + FALL **bring, cause, contribute to, lead to, trigger** | **see, suffer** *Share prices suffered a slight fall yesterday.* | **record, reveal, show** *The opinion polls show a significant fall in her popularity.* | **report** *Both companies reported a fall in profits in the first quarter of this year.* | **represent** *This figure represents a fall of 21% on the same period last year.*

FALL + VERB **occur** *The fall in age at first marriage occurred during the second half of the 18th century.*

PREP. **~ in** *a large fall in share prices*

4 **defeat**

VERB + FALL **bring about, cause, contribute to, lead to** *the actions that led to his eventual fall from power*

PREP. **~ from**

PHRASES **the rise and fall of sth** *a book charting the rise and fall of the Habsburg Empire*

fall *verb*

1 **drop down towards the ground**

ADV. **heavily** *She fell heavily to the ground.* | **steadily** *The rain was falling steadily.* | **down, off, overboard** *A tile fell off the roof. He fell overboard in heavy seas.*

VERB + FALL **be about to** | **let sb/sth** *She lifted her arm, but then let it fall.*

PREP. **from, into** *One of the kids fell into the river.* | **on** *the snow falling on the fields* | **onto** *Loose bricks were falling down onto the ground.* | **to** *The plate fell to the floor.*

2 **suddenly stop standing**

ADV. **almost, nearly** *He stumbled and almost fell.* | **headlong** *She fell headlong, with a cry of alarm.* | **down, over** *One of the children fell over.*

VERB + FALL **be about to** *The house looked as if it was about to fall down.*

PHRASES **stumble/trip and fall**

3 **decrease**

ADV. **dramatically, sharply, significantly, steeply** *The price of coal fell sharply.* | **slightly** | **steadily**

VERB + FALL **be expected to, be likely to** *Demand is likely to fall by some 15%.* | **continue to**

PREP. **below** *Winter temperatures never fall below 10°C.* | **by** *Expenditure on education fell by 10% last year.* | **from** *The number of people unemployed has fallen from two million to just over one and a half million.* | **to** *Her voice fell to a whisper.*

4 **belong to a group**

ADV. **squarely**

PREP. **into** *Out of over 400 staff there are just 14 that fall into this category.* | **outside**

That topic falls outside the scope of this thesis. **| under** *This falls under the heading of scientific research.* **| within** *This case falls squarely within the committee's jurisdiction.*

false *adj.*

1 **not true, genuine or real**

VERBS **be, look, prove, sound**

ADV. **absolutely, completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly** *The gossip about her later proved to be entirely false.* | **partly** | **certainly, definitely** | **blatantly, clearly, obviously, patently, undoubtedly** *Their claim was patently false.*

PHRASES **true or false** *Lagos is the capital of Nigeria. True or false?*

2 **not showing your true feelings**

VERBS **be, ring, sound** *Ella's enthusiasm rang false.*

ADV. **horribly, very** *She managed a horribly false smile.* | **slightly** *Helen's voice sounded slightly false.*

falter *verb*

ADV. **slightly | never** *His courage never faltered.*

VERB + FALTER **begin to** *The economy is beginning to falter.*

fame *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great** *the years of his greatest fame* **| widespread | local | national | international, world/worldwide** *She gained international fame as a dancer.* **| lasting, undying | brief | instant, sudden | new-found | posthumous** *Largely unknown in his lifetime, Mendel's discoveries earned him posthumous fame.*

VERB + FAME **enjoy** *He was enjoying his new-found fame.* **| achieve, come to, find, gain, rise to, shoot to, win** *She found fame on the stage. He shot to fame in 1997 when he won the US Open.* **| bring sb, earn sb** *HIs adventure brought him both fame and notoriety.* **| seek**

FAME + VERB **rest on sth** *Her fame rests on a single book.* **| come to sb** *a man to whom fame came very late* **| grow, spread** *The restaurant's fame spread quickly.*

PHRASES **at the height of sb/sth's fame** *In 1934, when at the height of his fame, he disappeared.* **| sb/sth's (chief/main/only) claim to fame** *The town's main claim to fame is being the home of one of the strangest buildings in the world.* **| fame and fortune** *After this concert she was firmly on the road to fame and fortune.* **| a/sb's rise to fame**

familiar *adj.*

1 **well-known**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound** *The place felt faintly familiar to me.* **| become | make sth**

ADV. **distinctly, very** *The room looked distinctly familiar.* **| entirely | increasingly | faintly, fairly, quite, rather, reasonably, slightly, vaguely | enough** *The report's conclusions were already familiar enough to the government.* **| already | immediately, instantly** *His face was instantly familiar, even after all those years.* **| somehow** *a name that was somehow familiar* **| curiously, disconcertingly, oddly, strangely** *Her face looked strangely familiar.* **| blessedly, comfortingly** *The kitchen smelled warm and inviting and blessedly familiar.* **| all too, depressingly, horribly, painfully, sickeningly** *a situation which has become all too familiar to most teachers*

PREP. **to** *The name sounded vaguely familiar to her.*

2 **familiar with sth: having a good knowledge of sth**

VERBS **be, seem | become, get, grow** *I was now getting much more familiar with the local area.*

ADV. **extremely, intimately, very | completely, fully, perfectly, thoroughly** *You will need to be thoroughly familiar with our procedures.* **| increasingly | fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably | already**

familiarity *noun*

1 **knowing sb/sth well**

ADJ. **detailed, greater, intimate | basic**

VERB + FAMILIARITY **have** *I had only a basic familiarity with computers.* **| acquire, gain** *Over the years, he gained greater familiarity with the culture and way of life in the country.*

PREP. **~ with** *her detailed familiarity with her subject*

PHRASES **a lack of familiarity**

2 **friendly informal manner**

ADJ. **easy** *He treated her with the easy familiarity of an equal.*

family *noun*

1 **group of people related to each other**

ADJ. **large | old, old-established | land-owning, wealthy, well-to-do | hard-up, low-income, poor** *tax incentives for low-income families* **| homeless | close, close-knit** *We are a very close-knit family and support each other through any crises.* **| immediate** *We've only told the immediate family* (= the closest relations). **| conjugal, nuclear** *the nuclear family of parents and children* **| extended** *maintaining contact with members of his extended family* **| lone-parent, one-parent, single-parent** *the difficulties faced by one-parent families* **| two-parent | adoptive** *helping emotionally damaged children to find placements with adoptive families* **| patriarchal | middle-class, working-class, etc. | royal | bereaved** *a counselling agency to help bereaved families*

VERB + FAMILY **belong to, be one/part of, come from** *He belonged to an old-established family. We all knew her so well that we felt she was almost part of the family. Many of our students come from poor families.* **| marry into** *She married into a wealthy family.* **| run in** *a medical condition which runs in the family* **| be in** *This painting has been in our family for generations.*

FAMILY + NOUN **background, history** *Do you know anything about her family background? a family history of heart disease* **| connections, relationships, ties** *They prefer to stay in their home country because of family ties.* **| member | life | business | home | commitments** *The job wouldn't really fit in with my family commitments.* **| income | doctor | holiday | feud | heirloom | motto | name** (= surname) **| planning** (= controlling the number of children you have by using contraception)

PREP. **in a/the ~** *These problems occur in all families.* **| within a/the ~** *creating conflict within the family*

PHRASES **family and friends** *The support of family and friends is vital.* **| a member of a family**

2 **children**

ADJ. **large, small | young** *parents with young families*

VERB + FAMILY **have** *I always wanted to have a large family.* **| start** *They got married last year and plan to start a family* (= have children) *soon.* **| bring up, raise** *struggling to bring up a family on a low income* **| feed, support** *It is difficult for them to earn enough to feed their families.*

FAMILY + NOUN **size** *Average family size has decreased since the Victorian era.* **| man** *a good family man, completely devoted to his wife and kids*

famine *noun*

ADJ. **great, severe, terrible | widespread | imminent, impending** *Against a background of impending famine, heavy fighting took place.*

VERB + FAMINE **face, suffer** *Four million people are now facing famine. countries that regularly suffer famines* **| cause, produce | relieve**

FAMINE + VERB **strike** *When famine strikes, it is often women and children who suffer the most.*

FAMINE + NOUN **relief | victim**

PREP. **during a/the ~** *Thousands of people died during the terrible famine of that year.*

PHRASES **a threat of famine**

famous *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | make sb/sth** *The school was made famous by its association with Charles Dickens.*

ADV. **really, very | quite | internationally, locally** *internationally famous rock stars* **| justly, rightly** *The city is justly famous for its nightclubs.*

PREP. **as** *He was famous as both a teacher and a scientist.* **| for** *The town became famous for its lace.*

PHRASES **rich and famous** *One day I'll be rich and famous, you'll see!* **| world famous** *He became a world famous conductor.*

fan *noun*

1 **enjoys watching/listening to sb/sth very much**

ADJ. **adoring, ardent, avid, big, dedicated, devoted, great, keen, loyal, number one, real** *I'm a big fan of Italian food. one of the team's biggest fans The singer says her dad is her number one fan.* **| lifelong | armchair** *For armchair fans back home, it was one of the highlights of the Sydney Olympics.* **| obsessive** *The actress is asking the court to protect her from an obsessive fan who is making her life a misery.* **| cricket, football, rugby, soccer, sports, etc. | jazz, music, pop, etc. | film, movie | home** *The goal was greeted by jubilation from the home fans.* **| away, travelling, visiting | opposing/opposition, rival** *There were clashes between rival fans after the match.*

VERB + FAN **delight** *The big band sound of Syd Lawrence and his Orchestra will delight fans.* **| disappoint, let down** *Fans will not be disappointed.*

FAN + VERB **converge on sth, gather, turn out/up** *Soccer fans converged on the capital for the cup final. More than 40,000 fans turned up for the 12-hour event.* **| watch sth | applaud (sb/sth), boo (sb/sth), chant sth** *Over 25,000 fans applauded both teams off the field.* **| besiege sth** *Hundreds of fans besieged the star's hotel.*

FAN + NOUN **club, letter, mail**

2 **machine that creates a current of air**

ADJ. **electric | cooling | extractor | ceiling, overhead**

FAN + NOUN **belt, heater**

fanatic *noun*

ADJ. **real | cricket, fitness, football, keep-fit, health, sports** *He's a real football fanatic.* **| religious**

fancy dress *noun*

VERB + FANCY DRESS **don, wear** *Several of the managers donned fancy dress for the office party.*

FANCY DRESS + NOUN **ball, party**

PREP. **in ~** *Many of the marathon runners compete in fancy dress.*

fanfare *noun*

ADJ. **great** *(often figurative) The new building was opened with great fanfare in January 1895.* **| trumpet**

VERB + FANFARE **give, play**

FANFARE + VERB **sound** *A trumpet fanfare sounded and the procession began.*

PHRASES **a fanfare of trumpets**

fang *noun*

ADJ. **long | sharp**

VERB + FANG **bare, show** *The wolf growled and bared its sharp fangs.* **| sink** *The snake sank its fangs into its victim.*

fantastic *adj.*

1 **very good**

VERBS **be, feel, look, smell, sound, taste** *I felt fantastic after my swim. This cake tastes fantastic.*

ADV. **really, truly** *We had a really fantastic holiday.* **| absolutely, just, quite** *The sense of freedom was absolutely fantastic.*

2 **strange**

VERBS **be, look, sound**

ADV. **rather** *It may sound rather fantastic, but it's the truth.* **| increasingly** *The plot gets increasingly fantastic as the film goes on.*

fantasy *noun*

ADJ. **pure, sheer** *Most of what they told us was pure fantasy.* **| wild** *She dismissed the idea as a wild fantasy.* **| personal, private | childhood, childish | erotic, romantic, sexual | male**

VERB + FANTASY **enjoy, have, indulge in | build, weave** *She had woven a whole fantasy about living in a cottage by the sea.* **| cherish, nourish** *I cherished the fantasy that I might one day have a son who would fulfil the dream.* **| act out** *Children can act out their fantasies in a secure environment.* **| fulfil, live (out), play out, satisfy** *My childhood fantasies were finally fulfilled. He was able to play out his fantasy of pop stardom.*

FANTASY + NOUN **life, world** *living in a fantasy world*

PREP. **~ about** *She had a fantasy about going to live on a South Pacific island.*

PHRASES **the realms of fantasy** *The idea belonged in the realms of fantasy.* **| a world of fantasy** *She felt she had entered a world of fantasy.*

farce *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total** *The whole procedure has become a complete farce.* **| French, Whitehall** (*both figurative*) *It was like a Whitehall farce the way I was sent from department to department and everyone said it was someone else's job to help me.*

VERB + FARCE **become, degenerate into, end in, turn into** *The debate degenerated into farce when opposing speakers started shouting at each other.*

fare *noun*

1 **money paid to travel by bus, taxi, etc.**

ADJ. **expensive, high | cheap, low | adult, full, normal, standard | children's, concessionary, discounted, half, reduced | return, single | first-class, second-class | air, bus, cab, coach, ferry, rail, taxi, train**

VERB + FARE **pay** *I'm afraid you will have to pay the full fare.* | **charge** *Buses charged a standard fare of about 20 pence per mile.* | **increase, put up | bring down, cut, reduce, slash** *air fares slashed by a massive 30%* | **introduce, offer** *The airline has introduced a cheap return fare to New York.* | **dodge** *He faces charges of dodging taxi fares.*

FARE + VERB **cost (sb) sth** *The return fare will cost you less than two single tickets.* | **go up, increase, rise | come down**

FARE + NOUN **increase, rise | reduction | deal** *a special fare deal for air travellers*

PREP. **at… ~** *Children travel at half fare.*

PHRASES **an increase/a rise in fares, a reduction in fares** *The company is promising reductions in fares.*

2 **passenger in a taxi**

VERB + FARE **pick up** *The taxi driver picked up a fare outside the opera house.*

3 **food; material for listening to, reading, etc.**

ADJ. **delicious, rich, wholesome | plain, rough, simple | daily, standard, staple, traditional, typical** *Court trials involving famous people are the daily fare of newspapers. The band's music was standard rock fare.* | **local | vegetarian | Chinese, English, French, etc. | Christmas, farmhouse**

VERB + FARE **offer, serve** *a restaurant serving traditional Scottish fare* | **sample** *tourists seeing the sights and sampling the local Spanish fare*

fare *verb*

ADV. **badly, well** *She should fare better in this competition. He fared well against his main rival.*

farewell *noun*

ADJ. **fond | emotional, tearful | sad | silent** *I said a silent farewell to my village as I left for the city.* **| final**

VERB + FAREWELL **bid sb/sth, say, wish sb** *We bade them a final farewell.* **| wave** *I waved farewell to my friends from the deck of the ship.* **| make** *The court dignitaries made their farewells to the emperor.* **| exchange** *They exchanged fond farewells at the railway station.* **| be** *Is this farewell or will we see each other again?*

FAREWELL + NOUN **appearance** *This famous warplane is about to make its farewell appearance.* **| address, speech | performance, tour** *the band's farewell tour* **| dinner, party | card, gift, present**

PREP. **in ~** *He raised his hand in farewell.* **| ~ to** *She was sorry to bid farewell to Portugal.*

far-fetched *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound**

ADV. **extremely, impossibly, very** *The whole story was impossibly far-fetched.* **| a bit, a little, pretty, rather**

farm *noun*

ADJ. **large | little, small | 100-acre, 200-hectare, etc. | neighbouring, next** *She lives on the next farm.* **| local, nearby, surrounding | isolated, outlying, remote | border | hill | organic | intensive | commercial | factory | model** *Ten model farms have been set up to showcase modern production methods.* **| working** *The area combines a working farm and a farming museum.* **| family, home | traditional | private | state | cooperative, collective | arable, livestock, mixed | dairy, fur, stud | fish, fruit, pig, poultry, sheep, trout, turkey, etc.**

VERB + FARM **have, own | manage, run | work (at/on)** *During the war, few men were left to work the farm. The children had to work on the family farm.* **| set up | live at/on | be brought up on | visit**

FARM + VERB **lie** *The farm lies on the hills above the lake.* **| produce sth** *a dairy farm producing speciality cheeses*

FARM + NOUN **produce, product** *Farm produce, including fruits and grains, was their principal export. farm products such as eggs and vegetables* **| animal | labourer, worker | labour | work | manager, owner | management | land** (also **farmland**) **| building | equipment, implements, machinery | policy** *the EU farm policy* **| subsidies, support** *The EU has decided to cut farm subsidies.* **| life** *village and farm life* **| cottage, house** (also **farmhouse**) **| shop | road, track**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *The police are investigating a fire at a farm near Whitby.* **| down on the ~** *The myth of happy and contented animals down on the farm is now far from the truth.* **| on a/the ~** *He had lived on that farm all his life.*

farm *verb*

ADV. **heavily, intensively** *The land has been intensively farmed.* **| organically** *They farm organically now.*

farmer *noun*

ADJ. **big, large | small** *a new scheme to help the small farmer* **| peasant, tenant | gentleman | commercial | hill | organic | arable, livestock | dairy | cattle, chicken, pig, sheep, etc.**

farming *noun*

ADJ. **commercial | intensive | battery, factory | subsistence | hill | organic | arable, livestock, mixed | dairy | fish, fruit, poultry, sheep, etc.**

VERB + FARMING **be engaged in, work in**

FARMING + NOUN **community | industry | land | method, practice**

fascinating *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, sound | become | make sth | find sth**

ADV. **deeply, most, really, terribly, truly, very** *a most fascinating book ‘This is all very fascinating,’ said Wilcox, ‘but I've got a meeting in five minutes.’* **| absolutely, quite | endlessly** *I find the natural world endlessly fascinating.*

PREP. **to** *What was fascinating to me was the way the creatures moved.*

fascination *noun*

ADJ. **deep, great | growing | particular, peculiar, special | endless, enduring, lifelong, perennial | awful, horrible, horrified, morbid, unhealthy | strange** *a morbid fascination with death*

VERB + FASCINATION **have, hold** *The sea holds a fascination for all children.* **| develop, feel, find, have** *He had a deep fascination with all forms of transport.* **| exercise, exert** *These exotic plants exert a fascination all of their own.* **| share** *She shared his fascination for motorbikes.* **| gaze in/with, look (on) in/with, stare in/with, watch in/with | listen in/with** *He looked on in horrified fascination as the ship drew nearer to the rocks.*

PREP. **in/with ~** *She watched in fascination as the cat pounced on the mouse.* **| ~ for** *She developed a fascination for these creatures.* **| ~ in** *He found great fascination in her quiet, frank manner.* **| ~ with** *a lifelong fascination with Baroque music*

PHRASES **part of the fascination** *Seeing over a thousand species of fish is part of the fascination of the reef.* **| a source of fascination to sb** *His letters have been a source of fascination to a wide audience.*

fashion *noun*

1 **style of dressing, etc. popular at a particular time**

ADJ. **current, latest, modern, new | growing | changing, passing** *changing fashions in education This theory, though recent, is more than a passing fashion.* **| high** *The store sells everything from sports clothes to high fashion.* **| designer** *the influence of Italian designer fashion on the clothes industry* **| female, street, youth | architectural, cultural, intellectual**

VERB + FASHION **be, be in** *She wore a powdered wig, as was the fashion of the day. Black is always in fashion.* **| become, come into** *Pessimism has become the fashion. When did flares first come into fashion?* **| fall out of, go out of** *Careful spending has gone out of fashion in our consumer society.* **| be out of | come back into | be back in | introduce, set, start** *He set a fashion for large hats.* **| follow, keep (up) with, keep pace with** *I've given up trying to keep up with the latest fashions.*

FASHION + VERB **change** *watching how fashions change over the years*

FASHION + NOUN **statement** *Flared trousers were a fashion statement of the seventies.* **| model** *She started her career as a fashion model.* **| show | shoot** *photographers at fashion shoots* **| magazine | scene** *fresh interest in the New York fashion scene* **| capital** *Paris, the world's fashion capital* **| business, industry, market, trade, world** *Her summer collection took the fashion world by storm.* **| company, house, label** *one of the most successful fashion houses in Milan* **| retailer, shop | design, photography | designer, editor, photographer | accessory, clothes, garment | victim** *this season's must-have accessories that no fashion victim will be seen without*

PREP. **after the ~ of** *She spoke in French after* (= copying) *the fashion of the court.* **| ~ for** *the fashion for long dresses* **| ~ in** *Fashions in art come and go.*

PHRASES **changes in fashion, the fashion of the day, the height of fashion** *The palazzo represents the height of architectural fashion for the mid-17th century.* **| the world of fashion** *household names in the world of fashion and design*

2 **way you do sth**

ADJ. **true ...** *The inspector insisted the meeting be held, in true spy novel fashion, in* *the open air.* **| normal, orthodox, usual** *Application for the course can be made in the normal fashion.* **| conventional, time-honoured, traditional** *They celebrated their win, in time-honoured fashion, by spraying champagne everywhere.* **| typical** *We had just gone out when, in typical fashion, the rain came down.* **| limited** *He has a small vocabulary and is only able to express himself in a limited fashion.* **| positive | no uncertain** *Karpov struck back in no uncertain fashion to win the seventh game.* **| meaningful | parrot** *Students become frustrated with learning verbs parrot fashion.* **| best** *(often ironic),* **exemplary** *batons ready in best police fashion* **| civilized | appropriate | cavalier | controlled, orderly, organized, regular, systematic | ad hoc, desultory, haphazard, piecemeal, random, roundabout | arbitrary | straightforward | logical, predictable | linear** *Costs and revenues are assumed to behave in a linear fashion.* **| easy, leisurely, relaxed** *The descent of the footpath starts in easy fashion.* **| dramatic, spectacular | bizarre, peculiar | mysterious | friendly | jocular | business-like | democratic**

VERB + FASHION **behave in**

PREP. **after a ~** *So they became friends, after a fashion* (= to some extent). **| in a ~** *Why are they behaving in such a ridiculous fashion?* **| in … ~** *The troops embarked in orderly fashion.*

fashionable *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become | remain | make sth | consider sth**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *Furnishings of this sort are now highly fashionable.* **| increasingly | quite, rather | currently | newly | suddenly** *a young and suddenly fashionable actor* **| no longer**

PREP. **among** *These cars are no longer fashionable among the young.*

fast *adj., adv.*

VERBS **be, seem** *Her pulse seemed very fast.*

ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, really, remarkably, surprisingly, very** *I should make a very fast profit on these.* **| a bit, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively** *I suppose delivery in two days is quite fast really.* **| amazingly, blindingly, incredibly, unbelievably** *He came round the corner blindingly fast.* **| dangerously**

fast *noun*

ADJ. **long | brief**

VERB + FAST **go on, keep, observe** *All members of the religious community keep these fasts.* **| break** *In the evening the people break their fast.*

fasten *verb*

ADV. firmly, properly, securely, tightly *We fastened all the windows securely.* **| up | together** *She fastened the papers together with a paper clip.*

PREP. to *She fastened the rope to a tree.*

fat *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look | become, get, grow | make sb** *Try to cut out the foods that are making you fat.*

ADV. **enormously, hugely, immensely, really, very | quite, rather | grossly, monstrously**

PHRASES **big/great fat** *sitting next to a big fat woman a big fat envelope stuffed with banknotes*

fat *noun*

1 **substance directly under your skin**

ADJ. **excess, surplus | body | puppy** *It wasn't easy to lose puppy fat when Mum fed her on stodgy home cooking.*

VERB + FAT **go to, put on, run to** *If you eat too much you will put on fat. She was middle-aged and running to fat.* **| burn (off), lose, shed** *Exercise helps you burn off excess fat.* **| break down** *Claims that anti-cellulite creams can break down fat are controversial.*

FAT + VERB **accumulate** *The waistline is usually the first area where fat accumulates.*

PHRASES **not an ounce of fat** *His body was all muscle, with not an ounce of fat.* **| a roll of fat** *He had great rolls of fat round his middle.*

2 **in your diet/used in cooking**

ADJ. **dietary | added, excess, extra, surplus | visible | animal, vegetable | mono-unsaturated, polyunsaturated, saturated, unsaturated** *margarines that contain polyunsaturated fats* **| cooking | bacon, beef, etc. | hot** *Put the chicken in hot fat and braise thoroughly.*

VERB + FAT **contain, have** *This cheese has a lot of fat in it.* **| be high/low in fat** *Ice cream is high in fat and sugar.* **| eat** *The amount of fat you eat can affect the health of your heart.* **| cut down on** *It's easy to cut down on fat without changing your diet too much.* **| cut out** *She has cut out fat altogether in an effort to lose weight.* **| cut, trim** *Trim any visible fat off the meat before cooking.* **| drain (off), pour off, skim off** *Remove the turkey from the pan and drain off the excess fat.*

FAT + VERB **contain sth** *Fats contain more calories than carbohydrates for the same weight.* **| spit** *The only sound from the kitchen was the lamb fat spitting.*

FAT + NOUN **intake** *the relationship between fat intake and cholesterol levels* **| content** *Despite its very low fat content, it is deliciously creamy.*

fatal *adj.*

1 **causing death**

VERBS **be, prove**

ADV. **near** *He has not driven since his near fatal crash earlier this year.* **| always, invariably, universally | often, sometimes, usually | rarely | potentially** *The disease is potentially fatal.*

PREP. **for** *This kind of accident is almost always fatal for the pilot.* **| to** *a chemical which is invariably fatal to small mammals*

2 **causing serious trouble**

VERBS **be, prove**

ADV. **absolutely | ultimately** *Her disregard of this advice was ultimately fatal.*

PREP. **to** *Tax increases have proved fatal to the nation's business community.*

fate *noun*

1 sb/sth's future

ADJ. **awful, dreadful, grim, terrible | cruel, unhappy | tragic | worse** *They decided to kill themselves rather than suffer a worse fate at the hands of their enemy.* **| common, normal, usual | likely** *Under-representation is the likely fate of small parties.* **| ultimate | unknown** *The ultimate fate of the captured troops is unknown.* **| the same, similar** *She broke her ankle before the big match, then suffered the same fate a month later.*

VERB + FATE **face** *He faces a grim fate if he is sent back to his own country.* **| meet, suffer, undergo | share** *He had no desire to share the fate of his executed comrades.* **| avoid, escape** *She managed to escape the fate of the other rebels.* **| deserve** *What had he done to deserve such a terrible fate?* **| accept, be resigned to** *The condemned men were resigned to their fate.* **| bemoan, bewail** *Instead of just bemoaning your fate, why not do something to change it?* **| ponder | seal** *He had signed his confession and sealed his own fate.* **| decide** *An extraordinary general meeting to decide the company's fate will be held on Thursday.* **| abandon sb/sth to, leave sb/sth to** *The generals abandoned the men to their fate.* **| rescue/save sb/sth from | discover, hear (of), know (of), learn (of)** *He will learn of his fate in court tomorrow.* **| await** *The convicts awaited their fate in prison.*

FATE + VERB **await sb/sth, be/lie in store for sb/sth** *They were warned of the dreadful fate that awaited them if ever they returned to their homes.* **| befall sb/sth** *Worst of all was the fate that befell the captured rebel general.* **| be/hang in the balance** *The fate of the African wild dog hangs in the balance* (= is uncertain).

PHRASES **hold/have sb/sth's fate in your hands** *The jury held the fate of the accused in their hands.* **| leave/place/put your fate in sb's hands, a fate worse than death** *(often humorous) Obeying her parents' wishes for her life seemed a fate worse than death.*

2 power controlling everything

ADJ. **cruel** *He believed that the universe was controlled by the whims of a cruel fate.* **| kind** *Fate was kind to me.*

VERB + FATE **believe in** *Such coincidences are almost enough to make one believe in* *fate.* **| tempt** *It would be tempting fate to say that we will definitely win the game.* **| leave sth to** *I have a great deal of trust and I leave everything to fate.*

FATE + VERB **decide sth, decree sth** *Fate decreed that she would never reach America.* **| intervene** *He secretly hoped that fate would intervene and save him having to meet her.* **| strike** *Only weeks after her previous injury, fate struck again, leaving her unable to compete.* **| deal a/its hand, deal sb a hand** *Anne accepted the cruel hand that fate had dealt her.* **| take a hand** *Fate took a hand in* (= influenced) *the outcome of the championship.*

PHRASES **an accident/quirk/turn/twist of fate** *It seemed a cruel twist of fate that the composer should have died so young.* **| the hand of fate** *The new job had come at just the right time for him. Was it the hand of fate?*

father *noun*

ADJ. **lone, single** *As a single father, he found it a struggle bringing up three children.* **| widowed | absent | biological, natural, real | adoptive, foster, step- | surrogate** *Elena's brother was a surrogate father to her kids after her husband died.* **| elderly, old | dead, deceased, late | caring, devoted, good, loving, marvellous** *He is very good with children and would make a marvellous father.* **| adoring, doting, indulgent | beloved** *She kept the books that had belonged to her beloved father.* **| proud** *He has just become the proud father of a baby girl.* **| domineering, overbearing, possessive | drunken, violent | doctor, engineer, immigrant, etc.** *Their musician father encouraged their love of music.*

VERB + FATHER **resemble, take after** *The two boys were like their mother in character, but Louise took after her father.* **| follow, succeed** *She followed her father into the legal profession. He succeeded his father as Professor of Botany.* **| inherit sth from** *She inherited the urge to travel from her father.*

FATHER + NOUN **figure** *Some of his students regard him as a father figure.*

PHRASES **a father of two, etc.** *Boland, a father of two, was arrested on charges of theft.* **| follow in your father's footsteps** *He followed in his father's footsteps and became a motor mechanic.* **| the death/loss of your father**

fatigue *noun*

1 **great tiredness**

ADJ. **extreme, severe | growing | general | mental, physical | battle, compassion** *soldiers suffering from battle fatigue Compassion fatigue among donor countries means there is less money for worthy causes.* **| driver** *car accidents caused by driver fatigue*

VERB + FATIGUE **suffer from, drop (down) with | combat, fight (off), reduce** *The right vitamins help you combat fatigue.*

FATIGUE + VERB **set in** *She had to stop work when fatigue set in.* **| overcome sb**

PREP. **from ~** *crying from cold and fatigue* **| with ~** *The man was shivering with fatigue.*

PHRASES **a feeling of fatigue, signs of fatigue 2 fatigues** clothes worn by soldiers

ADJ. **army, battle, combat | camouflage**

PHRASES **in ~** *soldiers in combat fatigues* > Special page at CLOTHES

fault *noun*

1 responsibility for sth wrong

ADJ. **stupid** *It's his own stupid fault his car was stolen?he should have kept it locked.*

FAULT + VERB **lie with sb** *The fault lay not with her but with her manager.*

PREP. **at ~** *The party at fault in a court case usually pays the other party's legal costs.* **| through sb's ~** *Many of the soldiers died through his fault.* **| without ~** *Having made an error of judgement she was not without fault in the matter.*

PHRASES **be all/entirely your (own) fault** *It's all your own fault, you know.* **| be largely/partly your (own) fault, be hardly your (own) fault, fault on sb's part** *(law) the absence of fault on the part of the prosecution* **| through no fault of your own** *helping people who, through no fault of their own, have lost their homes*

2 weakness in sb's character

ADJ. **great** *Her great fault was that she thought too well of herself.* **| moral**

VERB + FAULT **have** *We all have our faults.* **| be blind to, overlook** *He is blind to his son's faults. She was prepared to overlook his faults.*

PREP. **~ in** *Incorrectness in speech was considered a great fault in a gentleman.*

PHRASES **for all sb's faults** *For all her faults* (= in spite of her faults) *she was a great woman.* **| to a fault** *He is generous to a fault* (= very generous and perhaps too generous).

3 sth wrong or not perfect with sth

ADJ. **bad, major, serious | basic** *There is a basic fault in the design of the engine. It cannot be fixed.* **| dangerous | minor | common** *a common fault with this type of machine* **| real** *The only real fault of the book is its looseness of structure.* **| obvious | possible | design | technical | electrical, engine, mechanical, structural** *Of course, minor mechanical faults sometimes occur.*

VERB + FAULT **have** *The engine has a serious fault.* | **develop** *The car soon developed another fault.* | **look for** | **diagnose, discover, find, identify, locate** *They've found a major fault with the electrical system. When she tested the recorder she could find no fault with it.* | **find, pick** *My mother did nothing but find fault with my schoolboy manners. He's deliberately picking fault with the meal to get a reduction on the bill.* | **correct, fix, rectify, repair** *trying to correct the faults in the program* | **report** *You should report any fault directly to the phone company.*

FAULT + VERB **occur** | **lie in sth** *The fault lay in the structure of the economy.*

FAULT + NOUN **detection, diagnosis, finding**

PREP. **~ in** *Diabetes is caused by a fault in the insulin production of the body.* | **~ with** *She was always finding fault with his manners.*

PHRASES **for all its faults** *For all its faults* (= in spite of the faults), *we love this city.*

4 **in tennis**

ADJ. **double** | **foot**

VERB + FAULT **serve** *Even tennis champions sometimes serve double faults.*

5 **geology**

ADJ. **geological**

FAULT + NOUN **line** | **scarp** | **system, zone**

favour *noun*

1 **sth that helps sb**

ADJ. **big, great | little, small | special | personal** *As a personal favour to me, please don't release my story to the press.* **| political, sexual**

VERB + FAVOUR **ask** *I came here to ask you a favour, a big favour.* **| expect** *Although I am friends with the tennis ace, I don't expect any favours from him on court.* **| bestow, do, grant sb** *Rodrigo accepted the favours bestowed on him by the new king. Do yourself a favour and cut your credit cards in half.* **| owe sb** *I'll ask Jane. She owes me a favour.* **| return** *Thanks very much. I'll return the favour one day.* **| seek | obtain | accept, receive**

2 **approval or support for sb/sth**

ADJ. **great, high, particular** *Traditionally, vigilante groups have found greater favour on the political right. He stood in high favour at the court of Lewis the Pious.* **| divine, government, political, royal** *In the Christian tradition, the world exists only as an act of divine favour.*

VERB + FAVOUR **be in, enjoy, have, stand in** *The bishop was said to have enjoyed the king's favour.* **| find, gain, win** *Her political views have not found favour in recent years.* **| curry** *trying to curry favour with the teachers* **| show** *As an examiner, she showed no favour to any candidate.* **| be out of | fall from, fall out of, lose** *The senior officials were punished and rapidly fell from favour. This idea has long since fallen out of favour.* **| be back in, bring sth back into, come back into** *A style of art can go out of fashion and then come back into favour fifty years later.* **| argue in, speak (out) in** *to argue in favour of this policy* **| come down/out in, decide in, find in, resolve in, rule in, vote in** *The committee came down in favour of setting up a national body. The High Court found in favour of the plaintiffs.* **| work in** *Environmental conservation generally works in favour of maintaining the status quo.* **| go in** *The golf tournament went in the Americans' favour* (= they won).

PREP. **in ~ of** *He is strongly in favour of capital punishment. Early in his musical career he abandoned blues in favour of jazz.* **| in sth's ~** *This piece of software has two points in its favour: it's fast and inexpensive.* **| ~ with** *She is too popular with the public to find much favour with the critics.*

PHRASES **an argument in sb/sth's favour** *an argument in favour of censorship* | **a bias in sb/sth's favour, look with favour on/upon sb/sth** *Depth of training is looked upon with favour by many employers.* | **without fear or favour (= in a fair way)**

favour *verb*

ADV. **strongly** *We strongly favour reform of the system.*

VERB + FAVOUR **appear to, be known to, be likely to, be thought to, seem to, tend to** *The prime minister is thought to favour an early referendum on the issue.*

PREP. **at the expense of** *He favoured some individuals at the expense of others.* | **over** *News coverage should not favour one party over another.*

favourable *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, highly, very** *She gained a highly favourable impression of the company.* **| extraordinarily, overwhelmingly | fairly, moderately, quite | broadly, generally** *His proposals met with a broadly favourable response.* **| uniquely**

PREP. **for** *Conditions are now favourable for skiing.* **| to** *The court's judgement was favourable to their client.*

favourite *noun*

1 **sb/sth that you like more than others**

ADJ. **firm, great, huge, particular, special, very** *This painting is a particular favourite of mine. My very favourite film is 'The Wizard of Oz'.* | **all-time, established, old, perennial, traditional** *This movie is my all-time favourite. You will find all your old favourites in this book of poems.* | **family, personal, popular**

VERB + FAVOURITE **choose** *If I had to choose a favourite, it would be Monet's 'Water Lilies'.*

PREP. **~ for** *The woods surrounding the estate were a favourite for family walks.* | **~ among** *He is a favourite among his teammates.* | **~ with** *The song is a firm favourite with their fans.*

2 **competitor expected to win**

ADJ. **clear, firm, hot, odds-on, overwhelming, red-hot** *She is odds-on favourite to win a coveted Academy Award.* | **second** | **joint** | **even money** *The horse is an even money favourite.* | **2?1, etc.** *Tiger Woods is 3?2 favourite to win the Million Dollar Challenge.* | **home, local** | **cup, race, title**

VERB + FAVOURITE **look, start (as)** *The Brazilians still look firm favourites to take the title.* | **emerge as**

PREP. **~ for** *Jopanini is second favourite for Saturday's race, behind Bright Spark.*

PHRASES **favourite to win** *The Spanish are the favourites to win.*

favouritism *noun*

VERB + FAVOURITISM **show | accuse sb of**

PREP. **~ to/towards** *She denied showing favouritism to any of her students.*

PHRASES **accusations of favouritism** *He resigned over accusations of favouritism.*

fax *noun*

ADJ. **incoming**

VERB + FAX **send (sb) | get, receive**

FAX + NOUN **machine | number | line | signal** *Our fax machine differentiates between an incoming fax signal and a voice call.* **| message | modem, software**

PREP. **by ~** *There was still time to receive copies by fax.* **| ~ from, ~ to**

fear *noun*

ADJ. **deep, great, real, terrible** *It was the first time she had experienced real fear.* **| growing | irrational | unfounded, well-founded** *Our fears proved unfounded.*

VERB + FEAR **experience, feel, have** *She did not know why she should feel such fear.* **| be filled with, be gripped by, be paralysed by/with, be trembling with | express, show, voice** *The boy showed no fear. Doctors have voiced fears that we may be facing an epidemic.* **| cause, fuel, instil** *This incident has fuelled fears of a full-scale war. the fear that her mother had instilled in her* **| allay, dispel, overcome** *The government is keen to allay the public's fears. She managed to overcome her fear.* **| live in** *The people live in fear of attack by the bandits.*

FEAR + VERB **abate, subside** *When she heard the news, some of her fear subsided.* **| grip sb, haunt sb** *A sudden fear gripped him.*

PREP. **for ~ of** *Nobody refused for fear of losing their job.* **| in ~** *He ran away in fear.* **| out of ~** *He lied out of fear.* **| through ~** *The pupils obeyed through fear of punishment.* **| without ~** *She stared at him without fear.* **| with ~** *His face was white with fear.* **| ~ about** *his fear about what might happen* **| ~ for** *my fear for her safety* **| ~ of** *They have a terrible fear of failure.*

PHRASES **fear and trepidation** *The men set off in fear and trepidation.* **| strike fear into (the heart of) sb** *The sound of gunfire struck fear into the hearts of the villagers.*

fear *verb*

ADV. **genuinely, greatly, really, seriously** *This disease is greatly feared. I really feared that this might be the end.* **| rightly** *Everyone rightly feared the coming war.*

VERB + FEAR **seem to | begin to | have little/nothing to** *You have nothing to fear from him.* **| have reason to** *I have reason to fear that you might abuse your power.*

PREP. **for** *We feared for their safety.*

fearful *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem | become, grow | remain | leave sb, make sb** *The experience had left her fearful and uncertain.*

ADV. **extremely, very | almost | a bit, a little, rather, slightly | understandably**

PREP. **about** *understandably fearful about the future* **| for** *I felt fearful for my life.* **| of** *He was fearful of every shadow.*

fearless *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | make sb**

ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, totally, utterly**

PREP. **in** *She was fearless in her attacks on public figures.*

feasibility *noun*

ADJ. **economic, technical**

VERB + FEASIBILITY **consider, discuss, examine, explore, investigate, look at, study | assess, determine, evaluate, test** *a drilling project to assess the feasibility of bringing the water four miles into the village* **| demonstrate | prove | doubt, express doubts about, question** *Some of them doubted the feasibility of the proposal.*

FEASIBILITY + NOUN **study** *The local council called for a feasibility study into the new road scheme.*

feasible *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become | consider sth** *A tunnel was not considered economically feasible.*

ADV. **entirely, perfectly, quite** *It's perfectly feasible to produce electricity without creating pollution.* **| barely, hardly, not really, scarcely | administratively, economically, financially, politically, technically**

feast *noun*

1 **special meal**

ADJ. **delicious | great, sumptuous** *Villagers used to hold a great feast at harvest time.* **| village, wedding**

VERB + FEAST **give, have, hold | make, prepare** *The women were busy preparing the wedding feast.* **| provide (sb with)** *The migrating salmon provide a delicious feast for the brown bear.* **| attend**

PREP. **at a/the ~ | ~ of** *a feast of Spanish food and wine*

2 **religious festival**

ADJ. **moveable (the date of which varies from year to year)**

VERB + FEAST **celebrate**

FEAST + NOUN **day**

PREP. **on the ~ of** *on the feast of St John* **| ~ of** *the feast of the Passover*

feat *noun*

ADJ. **amazing, astonishing, brilliant, extraordinary, incredible, remarkable | considerable, great | major | difficult, no mean** *Dragging the fully laden boat across the sand dunes was no mean feat.* **| easy | impossible | acrobatic, intellectual | engineering** *The tunnel was one of the greatest engineering feats of the 19th century.*

VERB + FEAT **accomplish, achieve, bring off, perform, pull off** *He has pulled off an extraordinary feat in completing the voyage single-handedly.* **| be capable of** *She was capable of remarkable feats of endurance.* **| repeat | emulate** *He emulated the feat of the legendary athlete Jesse Owens.*

PREP. **~ of** *a remarkable feat of strength*

feather *noun*

ADJ. **breast, neck, tail | ostrich, peacock, etc. | downy** *the downy feathers on the duck's breast*

VERB + FEATHER **preen** *a swan preening its feathers* **| fluff (out/up)** *The owl fluffed out its feathers.* **| ruffle** *Its feathers were ruffled by the chill breeze.* **| pluck** *plucking the dead hen's feathers*

FEATHER + NOUN **duster, pillow**

PHRASES **as light as a feather**

feature *noun*

1 important part of sth

ADJ. **basic, central, essential, important, key, main, major, significant | conspicuous, distinctive, distinguishing, dominant, notable, noteworthy, noticeable, predominant, prominent** *a distinctive feature of his poems* **| outstanding, remarkable, striking | attractive, endearing, eye-catching | interesting, special, unusual | salient** *He took me around our new offices, pointing out all the salient features.* **| useful | characteristic, typical | unique | common** *the common feature in all these cases* **| permanent, regular** *These walks became a regular feature of his day.* **| recurring** *Self-deprecation is a recurring feature as Stevenson talks.* **| redeeming** *The one redeeming feature of the scheme was its low cost to the council.* **| original** *The house retains most of its original features.* **| built-in | additional | constructional, design, physical, structural | energy-saving, safety** *a car with new built-in safety features*

VERB + FEATURE **have** *The site had a number of interesting features.* **| retain | point out**

FEATURE + VERB **distinguish sth** *the essential feature that distinguishes anorexia nervosa from other eating disorders* **| characterize sth** *A feature that characterizes all anteaters is an extremely slow metabolic rate.* **| include sth** *Special features include passenger airbags and an electric sunroof.*

2 features: sb's face

ADJ. **handsome | delicate, fine | rugged** *admiring his rugged features* **| chiselled** *a slim figure with strongly chiselled features* **| aquiline, hawk-like | facial**

VERB + FEATURE **have** *She's got very delicate features.*

PREP. **with ~** *a young woman with fine features*

3 newspaper article/television item

ADJ. **big, major, special | regular** *The magazine runs a regular feature on ethnic cooking.* **| in-depth**

VERB + FEATURE **do, have, publish, run** *Next month they will publish a special feature on computer books.*

FEATURE + NOUN **writer**

PREP. **~ on** *an in-depth feature on the Italian fashion scene*

feature *verb*

1 **include sth as an important part**

ADV. **regularly** *Women's magazines regularly feature diets and exercise regimes.* **| rarely**

PHRASES **be featured in/on sth** *His work is featured in a special documentary tonight. The school has been featured on television.*

2 **have a part in sth**

ADV. **heavily, highly, largely, prominently, significantly, strongly** *Reading over his past speeches, you'll see that housing, public health and education feature strongly.*

PREP. **in** *Garlic features prominently in her recipes.*

February *nou*n > Note at MONTH

federation *noun*

ADJ. **loose** *He proposed a loose federation of small, local groups.* **| national | international, world** *the International Federation of Football Clubs* **| athletics, soccer, etc.** *the British Athletics Federation* **| employers', industry, labour, police, trade union**

VERB + FEDERATION **create, form, set up** *They were now ready to create a national labour federation.*

FEDERATION + VERB **break up** *The federation broke up in 1989.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the six republics in the federation* **| within a/the ~** *He urged them to remain within the federation.* **| ~ of** *a federation of over 3,000 organizations*

PHRASES **a member of a federation**

fee *noun*

ADJ. **exorbitant, fat** (*informal*), **hefty, high, huge, large, substantial** *I expect you had to pay a fat fee to your divorce lawyers.* | **low, modest, nominal, reasonable, small** *We had to pay a nominal fee to join the club. Their fees are quite reasonable.* | **fixed, flat, set** *Many tax advisers now offer fixed fee interviews.* | **full** | **concessionary, reduced** | **normal, standard, usual** | **appropriate** *Send the form, together with the appropriate fee, to the Land Registry.* | **additional, extra, top-up** *There is no additional fee or paperwork for this insurance cover.* | **outstanding, unpaid** *We will be taking active steps to collect the outstanding fees.* | **annual, hourly, monthly** | **court, legal** | **consultancy, professional** *the professional fees of the solicitors and accountants involved* | **admission, entrance, entry, joining, membership, subscription** *a £30 membership fee* | **administration, arrangement, booking, cancellation, handling, licence, registration** | **college, course, school, student, tuition** | **transfer** (= charges paid by a football club 'buying' a player from another team) | **green** (= a charge to use a golf course)

VERB + FEE **charge, impose** *They charge higher fees to overseas students.* | **incur** *Employees are reimbursed for any legal fees incurred when they relocate.* | **pay** | **collect** | **waive** *He agreed to waive his usual fee.* | **refund, reimburse** | **increase, reduce** | **agree, negotiate** *She negotiated a fee of $1,800 a week.* | **cover** *You'll need money to cover fees and expenses.* | **afford**

FEE + VERB **be due, be payable** *All fees are payable when the invoice is issued.* | **cover sth, include sth** *The fee includes the cost of testing the electric wiring.* | **go up** *The admission fee has gone up.*

FEE + NOUN **income** *The firm's consultancy fee income rose by 3% last year.* | **structure**

PREP. **for a ~** *For a small fee, anyone can use these facilities.* | **~ for** *We now charge a fee for museum entrance.*

feed *verb*

1 give food to a person/animal/plant

ADV. **properly, well** *Have they been feeding you well?* | **regularly**

VERB + FEED **help (to)** *Let us discipline ourselves so as to help feed a hungry world.*

PREP. **on** *She fed the children on baked beans and fish fingers.* | **to** *Most of the crop is fed to the cattle.* | **with** *The animals are fed with hay and grass.*

PHRASES **a mouth to feed** *He saw the new baby as just another mouth to feed.*

2 eat

ADV. **voraciously** *The bears feed voraciously in summer and store energy as fat.* | **busily** *Egrets and a solitary grey heron were busily feeding.* | **mainly, predominantly** | **exclusively**

PREP. **on** *The seals feed mainly on fish and squid.*

3 supply sth

ADV. **directly**

PREP. **into** *The data is fed directly into a computer.* | **through** *This feeds the paper through to the printer.* | **to, with** *feeding the media with rumours and accusations*

feedback *noun*

ADJ. **constructive, favourable, good, positive, useful, valuable | negative | appropriate, relevant | direct | immediate, instant** *The writer gets no immediate feedback and simply has to imagine the reader's reaction.*

VERB + FEEDBACK **give sb, provide (sb with) | get, have, obtain, receive | collect**

PREP. **~ about/on** *They will be given feedback on their performance.* **| ~ from** *I've had a lot of very constructive feedback from the students about this.*

feel *verb*

ADV. **deeply, strongly** *She felt her mother's death very deeply.*

PREP. **about** *He feels very strongly about a lot of issues.*

feeling *noun*

1 sth that you feel/sense/believe

ADJ. **strong | definite, distinct | nagging, sneaking/sneaky, vague** *I had a nagging feeling that I had forgotten something.* **| glorious, good, great, marvellous, warm, wonderful** *It was a good feeling to be arriving home again.* **| horrible, nasty, queasy, sick, sinking, terrible, tight, uncomfortable, uneasy** *He suddenly had a terrible sinking feeling in the pit of his stomach. I've got a tight feeling in my stomach.* **| guilty | curious, eerie, odd, peculiar, strange | gut, instinctive** *My gut feeling was that we couldn't trust her.* **| general, popular, public** *The general feeling of the meeting was against the decision.*

VERB + FEELING **feel, get, have** *He felt a wonderful warm feeling come over him. Do you get the feeling that we're not welcome here?* **| give sb, leave sb with** *She was left with the feeling that he did not care.* **| know** *(informal) 'I really resent the way he treated me.' 'I know the feeling* (= I know how you feel).*'* **| arouse, evoke, inspire** *a case that has aroused strong public feeling*

FEELING + VERB **come over sb | be mutual** *'I'm going to miss you.' 'The feeling's mutual* (= I feel exactly the same).*'*

PREP. **~ about** *I don't have any strong feelings about it one way or the other.* **| ~ of** *a feeling of excitement* **| ~ on** *What are your feelings on this issue?*

2 feelings: emotions

ADJ. **deep, intense, strong | ambivalent, mixed** *I had mixed feelings about meeting them again.* **| positive, warm | hostile, negative | hurt, injured | inner, innermost, real, true | pent-up** *releasing her pent-up feelings* **| personal | religious | sexual**

VERB + FEELING **experience, harbour, have, suffer** *She experienced a whole range of feelings. He still harboured feelings of resentment. She was lucky that she had suffered no more than hurt feelings.* **| express, give vent to, release, show, vent** *He finds it difficult to express his feelings. I finally gave vent to my feelings and started yelling at him.* **| articulate, describe, discuss, talk about** *discussing his innermost feelings with me* **| bottle up, hide, mask, repress, suppress** *trying to hide her true feelings* **| banish** *He was determined to banish all feelings of guilt.* **|**

hurt *I'm sorry if I've hurt your feelings.* | **spare** *We didn't tell Jane because we wanted to spare her feelings.* | **arouse, engender, evoke, inspire** *The debate aroused strong feelings on both sides.* | **heighten** *It was the practical aspect of life that heightened her feelings of loneliness and loss.* | **understand** | **reciprocate, return** *Although she did not reciprocate his feelings, she did not discourage him.*

FEELING + VERB **come into sth** *Personal feelings don't come into it?we have to do what's right.* | **run high** *Feelings were running high* (= people were very angry or excited)*as the meeting continued.*

PREP. **~ for** *It makes no difference to my feelings for you.* | **~ of** *his feelings of grief* | **~ towards** *her feelings of anger towards him*

PHRASES **no hard feelings** *(informal) Someone's got to lose. No hard feelings, Dave, eh?*

3 **understanding/sensitivity**

ADJ. **great, wonderful**

VERB + FEELING **have** | **develop** *He had developed a feeling for when not to disturb her.*

PREP. **with ~** *She spoke with feeling about the plight of the homeless.* | **~ for** *She has a wonderful feeling for colour.*

4 **sympathy/love**

VERB + FEELING **have** *You have no feeling for the sufferings of others.*

PREP. **~ for** *She still had a lot of feeling for David.*

5 **anger**

ADJ. **bad, ill**

VERB + FEELING **cause, create, lead to** | **stir up**

PREP. **~ against** *Their aim was to stir up feeling against the war.* | **~ between** *There was a lot of bad feeling between the two groups of students.*

6 ability to feel physically

VERB + FEELING **lose | regain**

PREP. **~ in** *After the accident he lost all feeling in his legs.*

7 atmosphere

VERB + FEELING **create, recreate** *They have managed to recreate the feeling of the original theatre.*

PREP. **~ of** *Light colours create a feeling of spaciousness.*

fellow *noun*

1 **man**

ADJ. **old, young | big, little | handsome | charming, fine, good, nice, splendid | lucky, poor** (= unlucky)

2 **member of an academic society/college**

ADJ. **junior, senior | honorary, research, teaching**

VERB + FELLOW **elect sb**

PREP. **~ of** *He was elected a fellow of the Royal Society.*

feminine *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel**

ADV. **really, very | almost | traditionally** *Girls may be given fancier names because this fits in with a traditionally feminine image.*

feminism *nou*n

ADJ. **contemporary, modern | egalitarian, liberal, socialist | militant, radical, revolutionary | Western**

feminist *nou*n

ADJ. **active, committed | egalitarian | militant, radical | Western**

fence *noun*

ADJ. **high | low | barbed-wire, chain-link, iron, mesh, metal, picket, wire, wooden** *There was a cottage garden at the front and a white picket fence.* **| electric | boundary, garden, perimeter, security** *the airport perimeter fence* **| political** *(figurative) a proposal favoured by people on both sides of the political fence*

VERB + FENCE **build, erect, put up | climb (over), jump (over)**

FENCE + NOUN **post**

PREP. **over a/the ~** *She leaned over the fence.* **| ~ around/round** *a fence around the site*

fend *verb* **PHRASAL VERBS fend for yourself**

VERB + FEND **be able to | be left to, have to** *The children were left to fend for themselves.*

ferment *noun*

ADJ. **heady, intense | artistic, creative, cultural, intellectual | political, revolutionary** *a period of intense political ferment*

PREP. **in (a) ~** *The country was in ferment.*

ferocity *noun*

ADJ. **great, sheer | unexpected**

PREP. **with ~** *It attacks its prey with great ferocity.*

ferry *noun*

ADJ. **cross-channel | night | car, passenger**

VERB + FERRY **get, go on, take, travel on, use | wait for | catch | board, drive onto | drive off, get off**

FERRY + VERB **carry sb, take sb** *a ferry carrying more than a thousand people* **| arrive, come in, dock** *We watched the ferry dock.* **| depart, go, leave, sail** *The last ferry sails at 4 p.m.* **| cross sth** *the ferries that cross the River Mersey* **| run** *Ferries run every hour or so.*

FERRY + NOUN **crossing, journey | route | boat | passenger | port, terminal | line, operator, service**

PREP. **aboard/on/on board a/the ~** *the people on the ferry* **| by ~** *We went by night ferry.* **| ~ across/over** *We caught the ferry across the river.* **| ~ between** *the ferry between Dundee and Tayport* **| ~ for/to** *the ferry for Italy* **| ~ from** *the ferry from Ramsgate to Dunkirk*

fertile *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become | remain, stay**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a highly fertile soil*

fertilizer *noun*

ADJ. **natural | artificial, chemical | liquid**

VERB + FERTILIZER **spray, spread, use** *He spread fertilizer on the field with a rake.*

fervour *noun*

ADJ. **great | evangelical, moral, religious | nationalist, patriotic, revolutionary**

VERB + FERVOUR **arouse** *The speech aroused nationalist fervour.*

PREP. **with ~** *He took up the cause with evangelical fervour.* **| ~ for** *their fervour for the cause*

festival *noun*

1 **series of performances/events**

ADJ. **big, major | annual | autumn, spring, etc. | international, local | arts, beer, cultural, dance, drama, film, flower, folk, jazz, literary, music, rock, theatre**

VERB + FESTIVAL **have, hold | attend, go to, visit | organize | appear at, take part in** *The school has taken part in the festival since 1997.*

FESTIVAL + VERB **take place | begin, open, start | attract sb** *The festival attracts thousands of visitors every year.*

FESTIVAL + NOUN **organizer | events, programme**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *He's appearing at a local folk festival tonight.* **| during a/the ~** *the movies shown during the eight-day festival* **| in a/the ~** *the events in this year's festival*

2 **religious celebration**

ADJ. **great, important, major | annual | pagan, religious | Christian, Muslim, etc. | harvest**

VERB + FESTIVAL **celebrate, observe** *The family always observes the Jewish festivals.*

PREP. **at/on a/the ~** *the pilgrims who arrived on major festivals*

festivities *noun*

ADJ. **Christmas, seasonal**

VERB + FESTIVITIES **join in, take part in | enjoy**

PREP. **during the ~** *She managed to disappear during the festivities.*

feud *noun*

ADJ. **long, long-running, long-standing, old | bitter | petty | blood** *Blood feuds and general gangsterism added to the local crime rate.* **| family, internecine, personal, private** *a long-standing family feud*

VERB + FEUD **have | start** *The incident started a family feud.* **| settle** *a time to settle old feuds*

PREP. **~ between** *the feuds between rival companies* **| ~ over** *They had a long-running feud over money.* **| ~ with** *his personal feud with the city authorities*

fever *noun*

1 **high temperature**

ADJ. **high, raging** *She had a very high fever.* **| slight | glandular, rheumatic, scarlet, etc.**

QUANT. **bout** *He suffered from recurrent bouts of fever.*

VERB + FEVER **have, run, suffer from** *He put his hand to my forehead as if I was running a fever.* **| catch, come/go down with, develop** *James has gone down with a fever.* **| die of | bring down, reduce** *drugs which can help to bring down the fever* **| be accompanied by** *Inflammation is frequently accompanied by fever.*

PREP. **with a ~** *He was in bed with a fever.* > Special page at ILLNESS

2 **nervous excitement**

ADJ. **election, World Cup**

FEVER + VERB **grip sb** *Election fever suddenly gripped the nation.*

PREP. **in a ~ of** *She was in a fever of anxiety about him.*

fib *noun*

VERB + FIB **tell** *Don't tell fibs*!

fibre *noun*

1 in food

ADJ. **dietary** *your total daily intake of dietary fibre* **| vegetable**

VERB + FIBRE **be high/rich in** *foods that are rich in fibre*

FIBRE + NOUN **content** *foods that have a high fibre content* **| intake**

PHRASES **a high/low fibre diet** *the problems associated with a low fibre diet* **| an intake of fibre, a source of fibre** *Peaches are a good source of fibre.*

2 material/body tissue

ADJ. **coarse** *Mechanical filters draw air through flat, coarse fibres.* **| hollow | strong | natural | artificial, man-made, synthetic | carbon, coconut, cotton, nylon, paper, polyester, textile, wood | glass, optical | muscle, nerve | moral** *(figurative) It isn't just a lack of moral fibre that leads to a rising divorce rate.*

VERB + FIBRE **be made from/of** *Wear underwear that is made from natural fibres.*

FIBRE + NOUN **optics**

fickle *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very | a bit, rather | notoriously** *The television world was a notoriously fickle one.*

fiction *noun*

1 **stories that are not true**

ADJ. **contemporary, modern | classic | light, popular, pulp | literary, serious | crime, detective, historical, romantic, science**

VERB + FICTION **publish, write | read**

PHRASES **a work of fiction** *He has written over 20 works of fiction.* **| a writer of fiction** *a well-known writer of crime fiction*

2 **sth that is not true**

ADJ. **pure** *Don't believe what she says?it's pure fiction!*

VERB + FICTION **keep up, maintain** *She still tries to maintain the fiction that she is happily married.*

PHRASES **fact and fiction** *Fact and fiction became all jumbled up in his report of the robbery.*

fictional *adj.*

VERBS **be** *The names of the shops are entirely fictional.*

ADV. **entirely, purely, wholly**

fictitious *adj.*

VERBS **be** *His story is wholly fictitious.*

ADV. **entirely, purely, totally, wholly | largely**

fidelity *noun*

ADJ. **great | absolute | marital**

PREP. **with ~** *telling the story with great fidelity to the original* **| ~ to** *They swore an oath of fidelity to their king.*

fidget *verb*

ADV. **nervously**

PREP. **with** *She was fidgeting nervously with her pen.*

field *noun*

1 **on a farm**

ADJ. **cultivated, green, ploughed** *looking out on the green fields of Shropshire We had to walk across a ploughed field.* **| enclosed | open | surrounding | fertile | arable | paddy, rice | corn, wheat, etc.**

VERB + FIELD **work in** *People were working in the fields.* **| cultivate, work** *Despite the war, they continued to work the fields.* **| plough | plant** *He planted fields full of sunflowers.* **| graze in**

PREP. **across/through a/the ~** *walking across the field* **| (out) in a/the ~** *tractors working out in the field* **| ~ of** *a field of wheat*

2 **subject/activity**

ADJ. **chosen, specialist** *All of them are experts in their chosen field.* **| research**

VERB + FIELD **work in** *people who work in this field* **| open up** *This discovery has opened up a whole new field of research.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There has been no solid research in this field.* **| outside a/sb's ~** *I can't answer that?I'm afraid it's outside my field* (= outside the subject I am studying/ know sth about). **| ~ of** *now working in the field of computer science*

PHRASES **an expert/a leader in the field, a field of research/study**

3 **practical work**

VERB + FIELD **work in**

FIELD + NOUN **investigation, research, study, trial | methods | trip** *We went on a geology field trip.*

PREP. **in the ~** *essential reading for those working in the field*

4 **for playing a sport**

ADJ. **playing, sports | football, rugby, etc.**

VERB + FIELD **take** *Today they take the field* (= go on to the field to play a match) *against county champions Essex.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *people walking their dogs on the school's playing field* **| off the ~** *Players need discipline both on and off the field* (= when playing and in other areas of their lives).

5 **the field: competitors in a sport/business**

ADJ. **strong**

VERB + FIELD **head, lead** *She managed to head the field across the finishing line of the London Marathon. They lead the field in home entertainment systems.*

FIELD + VERB **include sb** *The strong field includes three world record holders.*

PREP. **ahead of the ~** *His superb technique puts him head and shoulders ahead of the field.*

6 **in science**

ADJ. **electric, electromagnetic, energy, force, gravitational, magnetic** *the earth's magnetic field*

FIELD + NOUN **strength**

7 **computing**

ADJ. **display, input**

VERB + FIELD **create** *You will need to create separate fields for first name, surname and address.* **| move between** *the use of keys to move between fields* > Special page at COMPUTER

fieldwork *noun*

ADJ. **extensive, intensive | detailed**

VERB + FIELDWORK **be engaged in, carry out, conduct, do, participate in, undertake**

FIELDWORK + NOUN **student**

PREP. **during/in the course of ~** *evidence obtained during fieldwork* **| ~ on** *extensive fieldwork on chimpanzees*

fifty-fifty *adj., adv.*

VERBS **be | divide sth, go, split sth** *We'll divide the profit fifty-fifty. We went fifty-fifty on the meal.*

ADV. **about, roughly** *The chances of reaching the survivors in time are about fifty-fifty.*

fight *noun*

1 struggle using physical force

ADJ. **big | fierce, furious | real** *Suddenly the argument developed into a real fight.* **| good** *There's nothing he likes so much as a good fight.* **| fair** *It was a fair fight and Stephen won.* **| free** *They inadvertently got mixed up in a free fight involving some 20 people.* **| running** *He was killed during a series of running fights outside a disco.* **| stand-up, straight** *In a straight fight the crusaders usually won; in skirmishes, the Saracens often overcame their more numerous opponents.* **| pub, street | gang | fist | food, pillow, water | championship, title** *watching the world title fight between Tyson and Lewis* **| professional | heavyweight, etc. | bull** (also **bullfight**), **cock, dog**

VERB + FIGHT **pick, start** *He tried to pick a fight with me. I don't know who started the fight.* **| be looking for, be spoiling for, want** *Andy was drunk and spoiling for a fight.* **| be in, get into, get involved in, get mixed up in, have** *Don't get into any more fights!* **| break up, stop** *The fight was broken up by a teacher.* **| win | lose | watch**

FIGHT + VERB **take place** *The dog fights took place every Sunday morning.* **| break out, erupt, start | ensue** *A fight ensued which left one man dead.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He killed a man in a fight.* **| ~ about/over** *They nearly had a fight over who should move first.* **| ~ between** *fights between police and football fans* **| ~ with** *They got involved in a fight with some older boys.*

2 trying to get/do sth

ADJ. **brave, good, strong** *She died at the age of 43 after a brave fight against cancer.* **| hard, long, real, tough** *a long fight to beat inflation* **| bitter, desperate | legal**

VERB + FIGHT **put up** *Coal workers are determined to put up a fight to save their jobs.* **| lead, spearhead** *leading the fight for compensation for the sacked workers* **| join (in)** *Doctors have now joined in the fight to make this treatment available to all.* **| face** *Now he is facing his toughest fight yet?back to fitness after a series of injuries.* **| be engaged in** *He is still engaged in a bitter fight with his old firm.* **| carry on, continue, keep up** *She said they would continue their fight to find a cure for Aids.* **|**

step up *The government has vowed to step up the fight against crime.* **| take** *She vowed to take her fight to the High Court.* **| win | lose** *Are we losing the fight against illegal drugs?* **| give up** *She just gave up her fight for life.*

FIGHT + VERB **be on** *The fight is on to have this brutal practice stamped out.* **| continue, go on** *The fight for justice goes on.*

PREP. **without a ~** *I'm not giving up without a fight!* **| ~ against** *a new weapon in the fight against car crime* **| ~ for** *their fight for a fair deal*

PHRASES **a fight for life/survival** *the firm's desperate fight for survival in a cut-throat market* **| have a fight on your hands** *Union leaders know that they have got a real fight on their hands.*

3 **competition**

ADJ. **brave, good, great, strong, tremendous | straight**

VERB + FIGHT **put up** *The team put up a good fight* (= they played well) *but were finally beaten.*

FIGHT + VERB **be on**

PREP. **~ between** *This will be a straight fight between Labour and the Conservatives: the other parties are nowhere.* **| ~ for** *The fight for supremacy in the sport is on.*

PHRASES **a fight to the death** *(figurative) By 1807 politics had become a fight to the death between the two factions.* **| a fight to the finish** *If the polls are wrong and it's a fight to the finish, the result may not be known until all the votes have been counted.* **| have a fight on your hands** *She now has a fight on her hands* (= will have to play very well) *to make it through to the next round.* **| make a fight of it** *No doubt Ferguson wants his team to make a fight of it.*

fight *verb*

1 in a war/battle

ADV. **bravely, gallantly, valiantly | bitterly, hard | back, off**

VERB + FIGHT **be prepared to, be ready to** *He did not believe that the enemy was ready to fight.* **| continue to**

PREP. **against** *They fought bravely against the enemy.* **| alongside** *fighting alongside his comrades* **| for** *They fought for control of the island.* **| over** *fighting over disputed land*

2 struggle against/hit sb

ADV. **bitterly, hard | back, off** *The jeweller was stabbed as he tried to fight the robbers off.*

VERB + FIGHT **be prepared to**

PREP. **against** *She fought hard against his strong grip.* **| with** *Riot police fought with militants demonstrating in support of the uprising.*

3 in a contest

ADV. **bitterly, hard | successfully**

VERB + FIGHT **be determined to, be prepared to, be ready to** *We need a good manager who is prepared to fight for a fair share of the funds.* **| continue to**

PREP. **for** *Regional monopolies were bitterly fought for.*

PHRASES **fiercely/keenly fought** *The second half was keenly fought, but neither side managed to score.*

4 try to stop/achieve sth

ADV. **hard, like a tiger, tooth and nail** (= in a very determined way) *He fought hard* *to overcome his disability. She'll fight like a tiger to protect her children. The residents are fighting tooth and nail to stop the new development.* **| doggedly, stubbornly, tenaciously | desperately | successfully | back, off** *It is time to fight back against street crime.*

VERB + FIGHT **be determined to, be prepared to, be ready to, vow to | continue to | help (to)**

PREP. **against** *They are committed to fighting against racism.* **| for** *fighting for equal rights*

5 **argue**

ADV. **bitterly**

PREP. **about** *It's a trivial matter and not worth fighting about.* **| over** *The children will fight over quite small things.* **| with** *He's always fighting with his brother.*

fighting *noun*

ADJ. **bitter, fierce, hard, heavy, intense, serious | continued/continuing | fresh, renewed | spasmodic, sporadic | hand-to-hand** *The sword and mace were favourite weapons for hand-to-hand fighting.* **| street**

VERB + FIGHTING **end, halt, stop** *holding talks designed to end the fighting* **| take part in** *The conspirators took no part in the fighting which ensued.* **| be killed in, die in | escape, flee** *refugees fleeing the fighting*

FIGHTING + VERB **take place | begin, break out, erupt, flare, start** *Fierce fighting broke out among the refugees.* **| ensue, follow | continue | rage** *For nearly two months the fighting raged.* **| intensify | die away/down, diminish** *Even if the fighting dies down, no answer is in sight to the political crisis.* **| stop | resume**

PREP. **during/in the ~** *He was badly wounded during the fighting.* **| ~ between** *There has been renewed fighting between the government forces and the rebels.*

PHRASES **a lull in the fighting**

figure *noun*

1 **amount/price**

ADJ. **high | low | double, single | accurate, exact | approximate, ballpark, rough, round | real, reliable, true | official | latest | inflated | target | sales, trade, unemployment, viewing, etc.**

VERB + FIGURE **reach** *The rate of inflation has now reached double figures.* **| add (together/up) | release** *The government has just released new unemployment figures.*

FIGURE + VERB **add up** *These figures don't add up.* **| be bandied about** *Lots of different figures were being bandied about.*

PHRASES **according to (the) figures** *The industry remains in the doldrums, according to official figures out today.* **| in round figures 2 figures** arithmetic

PHRASES **good/bad at figures** *I was never very good at figures.* **| have a head for figures**

3 **person**

ADJ. **great | central, important, influential, key, leading, prominent, respected, well-known** *a key figure on the committee* **| public | national | senior | familiar** *He was a familiar figure in the local pub.* **| unlikely** *They were visited by the unlikely figure of Bill Clinton.* **| authority, dominant | father, mother, parental | tragic | comic, ridiculous | cult, legendary | historical | political, religious | government, opposition**

PREP. **~ of** *a figure of authority/fun*

4 **shape of a person**

ADJ. **life-size | dark, shadowy | seated, standing, etc.** *The seated figure in the corner beckoned me over.* **| central** *the central figure in the photo* **| solitary | human**

FIGURE + NOUN **painter, painting**

5 **shape of sb's body**

ADJ. **beautiful, fine, good, handsome, hour-glass, lovely** *She's still got a lovely figure.* **| slender, slim | ample, bulky, full, large, stocky | tall | dashing, imposing, striking | neat, slight, small, tiny, trim | lithe**

VERB + FIGURE **cut, have** *He cut a dashing figure in his uniform.* **| keep** *She's kept her figure after all these years.* **| watch** *You need to watch your figure.* **| lose**

PHRASES **a fine figure of a man/woman**

6 **picture/diagram**

VERB + FIGURE **see** *See Figure 8.*

FIGURE + VERB **show sth**

figure *verb*

ADV. **largely, prominently, significantly, strongly | hardly, scarcely** *Vegetables hardly figure at all in their diet.*

PREP. **among** *This man did not figure among the suspects.* **| in** *The issue figured prominently in our discussion.*

file *verb*

1 **put sth in a file**

ADV. **carefully | alphabetically | away** *These notes should be carefully filed away for future reference.*

PREP. **under** *The card is filed alphabetically under the name of the editor.*

2 **record sth officially**

ADV. **formally** *He has now formally filed a complaint against the police.*

PREP. **for** *to file for bankruptcy/divorce* **| with** *A copy of the notice must be filed with the court.*

3 **walk in line**

ADV. **silently | out, past** *The long line of mourners filed silently past.*

PREP. **in, into, out of, past, through**

fill *verb*

ADV. **fast, quickly, rapidly** *At the moment, most reservoirs are filling fast.* **| gradually, slowly | up**

VERB + FILL **begin to** *The sails began to fill.* **| seem to** *He seemed to fill the room with his presence.*

PREP. **with** *Fill the bucket with water.*

PHRASES **be filled to capacity** *The school is filled to capacity?we simply can't take any more students.* **| be filled to the brim (with sth)** *The drawers were all filled to the brim.*

fillet *noun*

ADJ. **anchovy, cod, haddock, salmon, etc. | beef, pork**

FILLET + NOUN **steak**

PREP. **~ of** *fillet of beef with a red wine sauce* > Special page at FOOD

filling *noun*

ADJ. **dental | amalgam, gold**

VERB + FILLING **have** *She's only eight years old and she's already got five fillings. I went to the dentist yesterday and had two fillings.* **| do, give sb** *The dentist said she would do the filling straightaway.* **| replace**

FILLING + VERB **come out, fall out**

film *noun*

1 **movie**

ADJ. **long | short | exciting, good, interesting | successful | awful, bad, boring | epic | violent** *She thought the film far too violent to show to children.* **| X-rated | silent | black-and-white | low-budget | Hollywood, independent | television, video | adventure, children's, comedy, documentary, feature, gangster, horror, pornographic**

VERB + FILM **see, watch | go to (see), take sb to (see)** *We went to an awful film last night.* **| direct, make, produce, shoot** *She makes children's films. The film was shot on location in Kenya.* **| take** *film taken by security cameras* **| cut, edit** *The film was heavily edited for screening on television.* **| distribute, release, screen, show** *The film was finally released after weeks of protest by religious groups.* **| ban, censor**

FILM + VERB **be on, show** *There's an interesting film on at the local cinema.* **| come out, open, premiere** *The film came out last week.* **| be based on sth** *a film based on the novel by Charles Potter* **| be called sth, be entitled sth** *a film entitled 'Bitter Moon'* **| capture sth** *The film manages to capture the mood of the times.* **| contain sth, include sth** *The film contains explicit scenes of violence.* **| depict sth, present sth, represent sth, show sth** *The film depicts immense courage amid the horrors of war.* **| tell sth** *This film tells the remarkable story of a disabled actor.* **| feature sb, star sb** *The film stars Nicole Kidman as a nightclub singer.* **| record sth** *a film recording the* film) *to see who the music was by.* **| critic | buff, fan | premiere | censor, censorship | screenplay, script | music, score, soundtrack | narrative | scene | stunt** *He was killed when a film stunt went wrong.* **| poster | studio | set** *They built a massive film set of an airport.* **| props | adaptation, version** *the film version of the best-selling novel* **| classic** *the film classic 'Fantasia'* **| documentary, drama | genre | clip, footage, sequence | report** *The news always contains several film reports.* **| series** *the 'Star Wars' film series* **| archives, library | business, company, industry | mogul** *Tyrannical Hollywood film moguls ruled their stars' lives.* **| distributor | making, production | festival | show | awards | camera, equipment, projector, recorder | rights** *The scramble for the film rights to her next novel has already begun.* **| school, student**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There is a great car chase in the film.* **| on ~** *They captured the incident on film.* **| ~ about** *a film about Queen Victoria* **| ~ of** *They've just started* *shooting a film of the novel.*

PHRASES **the beginning/end of the film, be in films** (= work in the film industry), **a film with subtitles, the screening/showing of a film**

2 **used for taking photographs**

ADJ. **black-and-white, colour | fast** *Fast film would be best for such action shots.* **| 35 millimetre, etc.**

QUANT. **length, reel, roll** *a roll of 35 millimetre film*

VERB + FILM **load, put in | remove, take out | rewind | develop,** *first powered flight* **| deal with sth** *a film dealing with old age* **process** *I get my films developed* **| open** *The film opens with a bird's-eye shot of London.* **| end**

FILM + NOUN **crew, director, editor, maker, people, producer, team, unit, writer** *The film has plenty of what film people call 'bankability'.* **| world | actor, actress, legend, star | part, role | career, debut, work | credits** *His film credits* (= the films he has made) *as director include 'Mood Music' and 'Lies'. We stayed for the film credits* (= the names of people involved in the making of a *at a local shop.* **| expose** *In the darkroom they found that only half the film had been exposed.* **| splice** *He spliced the two lengths of film together.*

3 **thin layer of a substance/material**

ADJ. **fine, thin**

VERB + FILM **be covered in/with** *The books were covered in a thin film of dust.*

PREP. **~ of** *There was a fine film of sweat on her forehead.*

film *verb*

ADV. **secretly** *The controversial experiment involved secretly filming a group of children.* **| on location** *The serial was filmed on location in Italy.*

PHRASES **beautifully filmed** *fast-paced, well acted and beautifully filmed in the Blue Ridge Mountains*

filthy *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, smell | get | leave sth, make sth** *He always leaves the bath absolutely filthy!*

ADV. **really | absolutely, completely | pretty**

final *noun*

1 **last game/match in a competition**

ADJ. **grand** *He got through to the grand final of the competition.* **| area, national, regional, world | men's, women's | championship, cup**

VERB + FINAL **hold, stage | be/get through to, go through to, make it to, qualify for, reach** *If we play well, we hope to make it to the final.* **| compete in, meet sb in, play in** *Scotland met Wales in the final at Twickenham.*

FINAL + VERB **be played, take place**

PREP. **in the ~** *Who is in the men's final?*

2 **finals: final exams at university**

VERB + FINAL **do, sit, take | fail, pass**

finale *noun*

ADJ. **dramatic, exciting, grand, rousing, thrilling** *The evening ended with a grand finale of fireworks and music.* **| fitting**

VERB + FINALE **end in/with, have, reach** *The match had a thrilling finale, with three goals scored in the last five minutes.* **| provide** *This victory provided a fitting finale to a brilliant season for the club.*

PREP. **~ to** *a rousing finale to an evening of enthralling music*

finance *noun*

1 **money needed to fund sth**

ADJ. **cheap** (= borrowed at low interest) | **necessary** | **additonal, extra, further** *the need to obtain additional finance* | **long-term, medium-term, short-term** | **independent** | **joint** | **external, outside** | **international** | **private (sector), public (sector)** | **bridging** *You may require bridging finance until the sale of your own property is completed.* | **capital** (= money that is paid) | **credit, debt, loan** (= money that is borrowed) | **equity** (= money from issuing shares) | **bank** *the availability of bank finance* (= bank loans) *for small businesses* | **housing, mortgage**

VERB + FINANCE **get, obtain, raise** *She struggled to get the necessary finance for her training.* | **allocate, arrange, provide** | **need, require**

FINANCE + VERB **be available** *the finance available to local government*

FINANCE + NOUN **company, house** | **sector** *The banking and finance sector was booming.*

PREP. **~ for** *Several banks are providing finance for the housing programme.*

PHRASES **a source of finance**

2 **managing money**

ADJ. **high** *the world of high finance* (= finance involving large companies or countries) | **company, corporate** | **(local) government, public, state** | **consumer, personal** *that most emotive of personal finance issues?taxation* | **international** | **capital** (= paying money for sth) | **credit, debt, loan** (= borrowing money for sth) | **equity** (= issuing shares to get money)

FINANCE + NOUN **director, minister, officer** *Local government finance officers found the tax very difficult to administer.* | **committee, department 3 finances** money available

ADJ. **healthy, sound** *Our family finances are not very healthy at the moment.* | **shaky** *The company's finances are looking a bit shaky.* | **company** | **government,**

public, state | family, household, personal, private

VERB + FINANCE **have** *We don't have the finances to go on holiday this year.* **| lack | raise** *They are not sure how they will raise the finances to go on the trip.* **| deal with, handle, manage, plan, run** *how to plan your finances for a comfortable retirement* **| get/keep in order, sort out** *The company was under pressure to get its finances in order.* **| boost, improve | be a drain on, put a strain on, strain, stretch** *Buying a new car need not put a strain on your finances.*

FINANCE + VERB **be in a mess** *Their finances are in a mess: they plan to call in an accountant.*

PHRASES **the state of sb's finances** > Special page at BUSINESS

finance *verb*

ADV. **entirely, wholly | largely, mainly | partially, partly | privately, publicly** *The new roads will be financed privately.* **| jointly** *financed jointly by the British and French governments* **| directly | properly** *the introduction of a properly financed dog warden scheme*

VERB + FINANCE **help (to) | be needed to, be required to** *the £37 million needed to finance the redevelopment* **| be used to**

find *noun*

ADJ. **exciting, good, great, important, interesting, real, remarkable, significant, spectacular, startling** *The letters were a real find and James went on to publish two volumes of them.* **| small | lucky** *A lucky find in the Cotswolds is helping archaeologists discover what life was like in Roman Britain.* **| unexpected | stray** *Stray finds are more commonly discovered than whole new sites.* **| archaeological | medieval, prehistoric**

VERB + FIND **discover, make, unearth** *prehistoric finds made in an unexplored cave* **| yield** *To date the site has yielded many interesting finds.* **| report** *I reported my find to the landowner.*

finding *noun*

1 **result of research into sth**

ADJ. **important, key, significant | main | general | interesting | striking, surprising, unexpected | novel | positive | conflicting | early, initial, original** *The original findings conflict with more recent findings.* **| interim, preliminary | new, recent | scientific | empirical, experimental, research | survey**

VERB + FINDING **record, write up** *Students were asked to conduct a survey and write up their findings in the form of a report.* **| summarize | announce, make public, present, publish, report** *The findings of the commission have not yet been made public. They will present their findings to senior police officers.* **| explain, interpret | examine | comment on, discuss | confirm, support** *UN official reports supported the preliminary findings that the plane was brought down by a missile.* **| challenge** *Sociologists have challenged the findings of criminologists on the behaviour of prisoners.*

FINDING + VERB **be based on sth** *The findings are based on interviews with more than 2,000 people.* **| relate to sth** *Our findings relate to physically rather than the visually handicapped pupils.* **| apply to sth** *The findings from the case study school may apply to schools elsewhere.* **| indicate sth, point to/towards sth, reveal sth, show sth, suggest sth** *Our findings point to a lack of training among social services staff.* **| agree with sth, be consistent with sth, be in agreement with sth, be in line with sth, confirm sth, support sth** *Our recent findings are in line with those of an earlier study.* **| conflict (with sth) | lead to sth** *The findings led to the conclusion that …* **| provide sth** *The research findings will provide practical assistance for teachers.* **| be made** *Similar findings were made in Spain.* **| emerge** *A similar finding emerged from a later experiment.*

PREP. **~ about** *recent scientific findings about sleep patterns* **| ~ for** *The findings for one group can be applied to the others.* **| ~ from** *findings from a recent research project* **| ~ on** *findings on the depopulation of the countryside*

2 **decision by a court**

VERB + FINDING **make | justify** *The facts of this case do not justify a finding of negligence.* **| uphold** *The appeal court upheld a finding that the agreement was* *unlawful.*

PREP. **~ against** *a finding against him by the Independent Commission Against Corruption* **| ~ in favour of** *The court made a finding in favour of the defendant.*

fine *adj.*

1 **good enough/suitable**

VERBS **be, look, seem, smell, sound, taste | turn out** *I knew that everything would turn out fine in the end.*

ADV. **absolutely, just** *Don't worry. Your voice sounds absolutely fine.*

PREP. **for** *This paper's not very good quality, but it's fine for rough work.*

2 **in good health/happy and comfortable**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *George looks fine now.*

ADV. **absolutely** *I feel absolutely fine.*

3 **bright and sunny/not raining**

VERBS **be | turn out** *It's turned out fine again today.* **| keep, remain, stay** *Let's hope it stays fine for the wedding this afternoon.*

4 **thin/small**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, very** *Her hair is very fine. a very fine distinction* **| quite**

fine *noun*

ADJ. **big, heavy, hefty, large, massive, stiff, substantial | maximum | parking**

VERB + FINE **get** *I got a parking fine for parking on double yellow lines.* **| pay | give (sb), impose, levy** *Heavy fines were levied on motoring offenders.* **| be liable for/ to, face, risk** *Drivers risk heavy fines for driving without a licence.* **| be punishable by, carry, lead to** *The offence carries a maximum fine of £500.* **| increase**

PREP. **in ~** *The club is struggling to pay £75,000 in fines to the football league.* **| ~ for** *a fine for water pollution*

fine *verb*

ADV. **heavily** *Any company found to be breaking these rules will be heavily fined.*

PREP. **for** *He got fined £200 for parking illegally.*

PHRASES **get fined**

finger *noun*

ADJ. **first, index | middle | ring, third, wedding** *I noticed the ring on the third finger of her left hand.* | little | ringed | broken, dislocated, injured | pointing | accusatory, accusing, admonitory, warning *The teacher raised a warning finger and we stopped talking.* **| prying** *The ornaments had been put out of reach of the children's prying fingers.* **| delicate, elegant, slender, slim | bony, lean, skeletal, skinny | chubby, fat, plump, podgy | blunt, spatulate, square-tipped | gnarled | arthritic | gentle** *She took off his bandages with gentle fingers.* **| capable, deft, nimble, skilful, skilled** *Her nimble fingers undid the knot in seconds.* **| nerveless | nervous | clumsy** *His clumsy fingers struggled with the buttons.* **| dirty, filthy, grubby, sticky**

VERB + FINGER **point** *'It was them!', she cried, pointing an accusing finger at the boys.*

(figurative) The enquiry pointed the finger of blame at the driver of the crashed coach. **| draw** *The man drew a finger across his throat in a threatening gesture.* **| jam, poke, put, stick** *Everyone put their fingers in their ears when the shooting started.* **| jab, stab** *The protester was jabbing a finger aggressively at a policeman.* **| hold up, raise** *She raised a finger to her lips to ask for silence.* **| wag, waggle** *'None of that!' cried the teacher, wagging her finger.* **| dip** *I dipped my finger in the sauce and licked it.* **| run** *She ran her finger along the dusty shelf.* **| drum, tap** *He was drumming his fingers nervously on the arm of the chair.* **| click, snap** *We were swaying and clicking our fingers in time to the music. He snapped his fingers and the waiter came running.* **| stub** *I stubbed my finger painfully while reaching for a book.* **| shut, trap** *The child needed treatment after trapping her finger in the car door.* **| crook** *He crooked a finger to tell us to go over to him.* **| extend** *He held up his hand with the fingers extended.* **| prick** *The nurse pricked my finger to get some blood.* **| count (sth) on** *Although she knew lots of people, she could count her friends on the fingers of one hand.*

FINGER + NOUN **bones, joints | movement | injury**

PREP. **with your ~s** *It's easiest to eat chicken legs with your fingers.*

PHRASES **the finger of fate/suspicion** *(figurative) The finger of suspicion was pointed at the chicken served for lunch.* **| the tips of the fingers**

fingernail *noun*

ADJ. **long | black, dirty | broken, torn | manicured, well-manicured | painted, red, scarlet**

VERB + FINGERNAIL **cut, manicure, polish | bite, chew | break, tear | dig in** *She dug her fingernails into my neck.* **| drag, draw, rake, scrape** *the sound of fingernails being dragged down a blackboard* **| examine** *'Actually, I'm leaving you', she said, continuing to examine her fingernails.*

FINGERNAIL + VERB **dig in**

PREP. **under the/your ~s** *I noticed I had dirt under my fingernails.*

fingerprint *noun*

QUANT. **set** *The police were able to obtain a set of fingerprints from the suspect.*

VERB + FINGERPRINT **leave** *She was careful not to leave any fingerprints.* **| check (sth) for, dust sth for, examine sth for, look for** *The car is being examined for fingerprints.* **| find | obtain, take** *The investigator questioned him and took his fingerprints.* **| match** *The suspect's fingerprints have been matched with those found at the scene of the crime.*

finish *noun*

1 last part/end of sth

ADJ. **exciting, good, great, thrilling, tremendous** *His best finish was 11th in the Hungarian Grand Prix.* | **perfect** *It was the perfect finish to a wonderful day.* | **sprint, storming, strong** *The runners came round the bend for a sprint finish in the home straight.* | **close, dramatic, nail-biting, photo, tight** *It was a photo finish, with three horses neck and neck at the finishing line.*

VERB + FINISH **provide** *The rules of the game were changed to provide a more exciting finish for the television audience.* | **be in at** *Her car suffered from gearbox trouble, but she was still in at the finish.*

FINISH + NOUN **line**

PREP. **at the ~** *Several runners needed medical attention at the finish.* | **to a/the ~** *They fought bravely right to the finish.* | **~ to** *a dramatic finish to the match*

PHRASES **from start to finish** *He was in the lead from start to finish.*

2 look/feel of sth

ADJ. **good, neat, professional** | **perfect** | **attractive** | **decorative** | **fine, smooth** | **textured** | **natural** | **paint/painted** | **eggshell, gloss/glossy, matt, satin, shiny** | **brass, metallic, wood** *a guitar with a natural wood finish* | **surface** | **floor, wall, etc.** *The wall and floor finishes are all of the the highest standard.*

VERB + FINISH **have** *This paint has a gloss finish.* | **achieve, get, obtain** *With our new tool for putting up wallpaper you can get a perfect finish every time.* | **create, give (sth), produce, provide** *This trim really does give the garment a professional finish.* | **match** *The steel roof has been coloured to match the finish of the original wrought iron.* | **apply** *Make sure the surface is clean and smooth before the finish is applied.*

PREP. **to a ~** *Sand the wood to a fine finish using steel wool.* | **with a ~** *a door handle with a brass finish* | **~ on** *How did you achieve that finish on the wood?*

finish *verb*

ADV. **almost, nearly | just** *She had just finished dressing when the telephone rang.* **| soon | eventually, finally | off** *He finished off by welcoming new arrivals to the school.*

VERB + FINISH **let sb** *Let me just finish what I'm doing.*

PREP. **by** *He finished by telling us about his trip to Spain.* **| with** *The evening finished with a few songs. Have you finished with the vacuum cleaner yet? I need it.*

fire alarm *noun*

VERB + FIRE ALARM **set off** *It was thought that the fire alarm had been set off as a prank.* **| install** *Fire alarms have been installed in the building.*

FIRE ALARM + VERB **go (off), sound**

fire brigade *noun*

ADJ. **local**

VERB + FIRE BRIGADE **call (out), phone** *Dial 999 to call the fire brigade.* **| join**

FIRE BRIGADE + VERB **put sth out** *The fire brigade have put out a blaze in a local post office.*

fire *noun*

1 destructive flames

ADJ. **big, huge | fierce | serious | disastrous | bush, forest, house**

VERB + FIRE **be on** *The house is on fire!* **| catch** *A lantern was knocked over and the barn caught fire.* **| cause, set sth on, start** *Groups of rioters attacked and set the police headquarters on fire.* **| fan** *Strong winds fanned the fire.* **| add fuel to, fuel** *(both figurative) Frustrated ambitions can fuel the fire of anger and resentment.* **| extinguish, put out | fight** *He joined the crowds of men and women fighting the fire.* **| contain, control** *Firefighters struggled to control the fire.* **| be damaged by/ in, be destroyed by/in** *The factory was destroyed in a fire started by arsonists.* **| be killed by/in, die in**

FIRE + VERB **break out, start** *A fire broke out in the mail room.* **| go out | blaze, burn, rage** *The fire burnt for three days before it was finally contained.* **| spread, sweep through sth** *In 1925 a disastrous fire swept through the museum.* **| damage sth | destroy sth, gut sth** *The fire gutted the building, leaving just a charred shell.*

FIRE + NOUN **safety** *legislation open fire.*

FIRE + VERB **burn** *Although it was summer a fire burned in the great stone hearth.* **| kindle, light** *We had plenty of dry wood, so the fire lit easily.* **| die (down)** *The fire was beginning to die down.* **| burn (itself) out, go out | crackle | glow | smoke** *The fire smoked instead of burning properly.*

PHRASES **the glow from/of a fire** *The interior was only lit by the golden glow of the fire.*

3 apparatus for heating rooms

ADJ. **electric, gas**

VERB + FIRE **light, switch on, turn on** *Use a match to light the gas fire.* **| switch off, turn off**

FIRE + VERB **be off/on** *Is the fire still on?*

4 shots from guns

ADJ. **heavy | anti-aircraft, covering, friendly** *The commandos pushed forward under the covering fire of their artillery. Several soldiers were killed in friendly fire due a mistake by allied forces.* **| artillery, sniper | cannon, machine-gun, mortar, rifle**

QUANT. **burst** *a burst of machine-gun fire*

VERB + FIRE **open** *The troops opened fire on the crowd.* **| return** *related to fire safety* **| hazard, risk** *Foam-filled couches are a serious fire hazard.She returned fire from behind the* **| drill** *We have regular fire drills to ensure that the staff know how to evacuate the building.* **| alarm | brigade, department, service | station | engine | hydrant | hose | extinguisher | escape** *The thief got away down the fire escape.* **| door**

PHRASES **bring a fire under control** *Firefighters have now managed to bring the fire under control.* **| set fire to sth** *Someone had set fire to her car.*

2 burning fuel for cooking/heating

ADJ. **blazing, crackling, hot, roaring, warm | dying, smouldering | little | open | charcoal, coal, log, oil, peat, wood**

VERB + FIRE **build, make | kindle, light** *Kim had managed to kindle a little fire of dry grass.* **| poke, stir, stoke (up)** *On cold nights we stoked up the fire to a blaze.* **| put sth on** *Put some more wood on the fire.* **| cook on/over** *When we go on safari we like to cook on an low wall.* **| cease, hold** *They were told to hold their fire until the enemy came closer.* **| be/come under** *We were under constant fire from enemy snipers. (figurative) The minister of transport came under fire* (= was heavily criticized) *for forcing increases in rail fares.* **| draw** *A few soldiers were sent out to draw* (= attract) *the enemy's fire.*

PHRASES **be in the line of fire** *Unfortunately he was in the line of fire* (= between the people shooting and what they were shooting at) *and got shot.*

fire *verb*

ADV. **blindly, wildly** *She fired blindly into the mass of shadows.* **| wide** *Whitlock purposely fired wide.* **| back | off** *They fired off a volley of shots.*

VERB + FIRE **be ready to** *He grabbed the shotgun and levelled it, ready to fire if anyone entered.* **| order sb to** *He ordered the troops to fire over the heads of the crowd.*

PREP. **at** *She fired a revolver at her attacker.* **| into** *He fired the gun into the air.* **| on/ upon** *The police fired on protesters in the city centre.*

firearm *noun*

ADJ. **imitation, replica | unlicensed**

VERB + FIREARM **be in possession of, possess** *The police charged her with possessing a firearm with intent to endanger life.* **| carry**

FIREARM + NOUN **training | expert | certificate, licence | offence** *He is wanted for robbery and firearms offences.*

firefighter, fireman *noun*

ADJ. **full-time, part-time**

VERB + FIREFIGHTER, FIREMAN **call (out)** *Firefighters were called to a house in Chaucer Avenue.*

FIREFIGHTER, FIREMAN + VERB **fight sth, tackle sth** *Firefighters from three counties tackled a warehouse blaze.* **| put sth out | rescue sb** *Firemen rescued a driver trapped in the wreckage of his car.* > Note at JOB

fireplace *noun*

ADJ. **big, enormous, great, huge | empty | open | brick, cast-iron, marble, stone, etc.**

VERB + FIREPLACE **have** *Every room in the house has a fireplace.* **| build, install**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *A log fire crackled in the fireplace.*

firework *noun*

VERB + FIREWORK **light** *Be very careful when lighting fireworks.* **| let off, set off** *They set off fireworks in their back garden.*

FIREWORK + VERB **explode, go off**

FIREWORK + NOUN **display, show**

firing squad *noun*

VERB + FIRING SQUAD **face** *He could face a firing squad if found guilty of the charges.* **|** **be executed by, be shot by** *She was executed by firing squad.*

PREP. **before/in front of a/the ~** *Many died in front of the firing squad.*

firm *adj.*

1 **solid/strong**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | remain, stay** *Exercise is important if you want your muscles to stay firm.* **| make sth** *Use extra stuffing to make the cushions firmer.* **| keep sth** *exercises to keep your muscles firm*

ADV. **very | fairly, quite, reasonably**

2 **not likely to change**

VERBS **be, sound | hold, remain, stand** *Jo held firm: nothing else would do. We stand firm on these principles.*

ADV. **very | fairly, quite**

PREP. **with** *I have always been quite firm with my children.*

firm *noun*

ADJ. **big, large, major | medium-sized | small | well-known | successful | established | start-up** *start-up firms in the booming computer market* **| private | family | international, multinational | foreign | local | accountancy, audit/ auditing, broking, consulting, engineering, law, manufacturing, software, stockbroking, telecommunications | mail order**

VERB + FIRM **establish, found, set up, start (up)** *She set up her own software firm.* **| manage, run | merge with** *They are likely to merge with a bigger firm.* **| acquire, buy (out), take over** *The firm was taken over by a multinational consulting firm.* **| close (down), dissolve** *the decision to close down the firm* **| own | work for | join, leave | employ, hire** *She hired a firm of private detectives to follow him.*

FIRM + VERB **be based in sth** *a firm called Data Incorporated, based in Chicago* **| expand, grow | merge | compete** *Local firms are finding it difficult to compete in the international market.* **| close (down), collapse, fail, go bust, go into liquidation** *The well-established firm closed down with the loss of 600 jobs.* **| develop sth, make sth, manufacture sth, produce sth | specialize in sth** *a firm specializing in high-technology products*

PREP. **in/within a/the ~** *the different departments within the firm*

PHRASES **a client of a firm, a firm of accountants/consultants/solicitors, a partner in a firm** > Note at ORGANIZATION> Special page at BUSINESS

first aid *noun*

ADJ. **emergency**

VERB + FIRST AID **administer, give** *While one of you gives first aid, the other should call an ambulance.* **| receive | be trained in** *At least one member of staff should be trained in first aid.*

FIRST AID + NOUN **box, kit, manual | course | post** *Medics were bringing casualties to the first-aid post.*

first *noun*

1 (*also* **first gear**) **lowest gear on a bicycle/vehicle**

VERB + FIRST **engage** *She engaged first gear and pulled off.* **| get into, move into, slam into** *As he moved into first the gear-lever knob came off in his hand.* **| put sth into** *Put the car into first and pull off slowly.* **| find** *It's very difficult to find first on this car.*

PREP. **in ~** *There was something wrong with the gearbox and I had to drive all the way home in first.*

2 **highest level of university degree**

ADJ. **double** *She did Philosophy and English Literature and got a double first.*

VERB + FIRST **be awarded, gain, get, obtain**

PREP. **~ in** *He got a first in modern history.*

fish *noun*

1 **animal that lives and breathes in water**

ADJ. **freshwater, marine, salt-water, sea | tropical | predatory**

QUANT. **school, shoal**

VERB + FISH **catch, land** *He landed one very big fish.* **| breed, farm, have, keep** *fish farmed in Scotland He keeps tropical fish.*

FISH + VERB **swim | hatch | bite** *The fish aren't biting* (= biting at the bait) *today.*

FISH + NOUN **species | bowl, pond, tank | food | stocks** *the depletion of fish stocks*

2 **fish as food**

ADJ. **fresh | dried, frozen, salted, smoked | oily | red, white**

QUANT. **bit, piece | fillet**

VERB + FISH **eat, have | clean, fillet, gut, prepare, skin** *I cleaned and filleted the fish.* **| marinade | bake, cook, fry, grill, poach, steam | flake** *Remove the skin and flake the cooked fish.*

FISH + VERB **taste** *This fish tastes funny.*

FISH + NOUN **bone | cake, dish, finger, oil, paste, pie, sauce, soup, stock | market, shop | knife, slice**

PHRASES **fish and chips, fish in batter** > Special page at FOOD

fisherman *noun*

ADJ. **keen | expert, skilled | local** *Local fishermen are protesting about the latest government regulations.* **| commercial | deep-sea | fly-** *A keen fly-fisherman caught a record-sized salmon.*

FISHERMAN + VERB **catch sth** > Note at JOB

fishing *noun*

ADJ. **good, great** *This stretch of the river is renowned for its good fishing.* | **coarse, deep-sea, drift-net, fly-, sea** *One of his hobbies was fly-fishing.* | **game, salmon, shark, trout, etc.** *She has been big game fishing off the coast of Kenya.* | **commercial, industrial**

VERB + FISHING **go** *He goes fishing every weekend.*

FISHING + NOUN **basket, equipment, gear, line, rod, stool, tackle** | **boat, craft, fleet, smack, trawler, vessel** | **hamlet, harbour, port, station, town, village** | **area, grounds, spot, zone** *the rich fishing grounds off the coast of Namibia Just below that bridge is a good fishing spot.* | **activity** *controls on fishing activity* | **quotas** | **agreement** *The two countries have signed a new fishing agreement.* | **ban** | **rights** *Fishing rights are held by the local angling club.* | **licence** *You need a fishing licence to fish in the lake.* | **expedition, holiday, trip** | **club** | **lodge** | **business, industry, trade** | **methods, techniques**

PREP. **~ for** *Ecuador announced a ban on fishing for shrimps.*

fishy *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, smell, sound** *It all sounds very fishy to me.*

ADV. **very | definitely, distinctly | a bit**

PHRASES **something fishy** *There was definitely something fishy going on.*

fist *noun*

ADJ. **clenched, tight | gloved**

VERB + FIST **clench | bang, pound, slam, smack, smash, strike, thump** *He banged his fist loudly on the table.* **| shake, wave** *The man was shaking his fist at us through the window.* **| swing** *He swung his fists wildly at his attacker's head.* **| draw back** *She drew back her fist and threw a punch at his nose.*

FIST + NOUN **fight**

PREP. **in your ~** *She was holding a hammer in her fist.*

PHRASES **clench/make your hand into a fist**

fit *adj.*

1 **healthy**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get** *the struggle to get fit and stay fit* **| keep, stay** *Go for a little jog to keep fit.* **| make sb** *Exercising once a week is not enough to make you fit.* **| keep sb** *gentle exercises designed to keep you fit*

ADV. **extremely, fighting, really, very** *He seemed fighting fit and ready for action.* **| fully** *John isn't fully fit yet after his operation.* **| fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably | physically** *She felt physically fitter and more alive than she could ever remember.*

PREP. **for** *The doctor said she was now fit for work.*

PHRASES **as fit as a fiddle** (= very healthy), **fit and healthy/well** *She looks really fit and well.* **| fit and ready**

2 **suitable**

VERBS **consider sth, see, think** *The newspaper did not see fit to publish my letter* (= and I criticize it for that). *You must do as you think fit* (= but I don't agree with your decision).

PREP. **for** *The food was not fit for human consumption.*

PHRASES **fit and proper** *(law) circumstances in which someone is not considered a fit and proper person to run a bank* **| fit for a king** *It was a meal fit for a king* (= of very good quality). **| in no fit state** *He's so angry he's in no fit state to see anyone.*

fit *noun*

1 **sudden attack of illness**

ADJ. **bad, major | convulsive, epileptic, fainting**

VERB + FIT **be seized by/with** (*literary*), **have, suffer** *She suffered a major fit last year.* **| suffer from** *He suffers from fits of depression.* **| die of | bring on, cause, trigger (off)** *He suffers from a brain disorder that can trigger off convulsive fits.* **| control** *new drugs that can control fits* **| prevent**

FIT + VERB **happen, occur** *The fits usually occur at night.*

PREP. **during/in a ~** *She hurt her arm during one of her fits.*

2 **short period of coughing/laughter/strong feeling**

ADJ. **coughing, screaming, sneezing**

VERB + FIT **have, throw** *My dad will throw a fit if he finds out!* **| burst into, collapse in/into, erupt in/into, fall into** *She collapsed in a fit of laughter.* **| bring on** *The cold air brought on one of his coughing fits.*

FIT + VERB **be over, pass** *When her coughing fit was over she continued to speak.*

PREP. **in a ~ of** *He pushed the referee in a fit of temper.* **| ~ of** *a fit of anger/giggles*

PHRASES **have sb in fits (of laughter)** *The comedian had them all in fits of laughter.*

3 **way sth fits/way two things match**

ADJ. **good** *We need to achieve the best fit between the staff required and the staff available.* **| correct, exact, perfect | poor** *The door was a poor fit and didn't open properly.* **| close, snug, tight | loose | comfortable** *The jersey is a comfortable fit? not too tight and not too loose.* **| statistical**

VERB + FIT **achieve, get, produce** *File away any excess metal until a snug fit is achieved.* **| ensure** *The shoe has a special strap to ensure correct fit.* **| give (sth)** *The* *formula gives a much better fit to the experimental data.*

PREP. **~ between** *the statistical fit between the interest rate and investment*

PHRASES **a lack of fit** *He argues that there is a lack of fit between our system of values and capitalism.*

fit *verb*

1 right size/type

ADV. **neatly, nicely, securely, snugly, tightly, well** *The pencils fit neatly into this box.* | **exactly, perfectly** *The screws fitted the holes exactly.* | **badly** *The top of the box fitted badly and some of the contents had spilled out.* | **easily** *That chair should fit into the room easily.* | **together** *These two pieces of wood fit together to make the base.*

VERB + FIT **be designed to** *The waste unit is designed to fit under the sink.*

PREP. **in, into, onto, over, under, etc.** *Will this box fit into the cupboard?*

2 agree/match

ADV. **perfectly**

PREP. **for** *Your experience fits you perfectly for the job.*

fitness *noun*

ADJ. **full, peak | low | all-round, general, overall | individual, personal | aerobic, physical | match** *Hendry is back to match fitness and is expected to play.*

QUANT. **degree, level** *You need a good level of physical fitness for this sport.*

VERB + FITNESS **attain** *He has attained peak fitness this season.* **| maintain** *Regular exercise helps to maintain physical fitness.* **| be back to, get (sb) back to, regain, return to | build (up), enhance, improve, increase, work on** *A special trainer has been brought in to work on the tennis player's fitness.* **| prove** *The coach has given him until next week to prove his fitness.*

FITNESS + NOUN **level** *First, determine your present fitness level.* **| training | programme, regime | check, test | fanatic, freak** *She's a bit of a fitness freak. She goes running every night.* **| centre** *a fitness centre with gymnasium and squash courts*

PHRASES **health and fitness** *Walking is good for health and fitness.*

fitting *noun*

ADJ. **original | standard | special | interior, internal | electrical, plumbing | bathroom, kitchen | lamp, light | metal, plastic, etc. | brass, copper, etc.**

VERB + FITTING **install** *Our bathroom fittings are easy to install.* **| remove | make | use** *a fitting used to join copper pipe*

PHRASES **fixtures and fittings** *The room still has the original fixtures and fittings.*

fix *noun*

1 **solution to a problem**

ADJ. **quick** *There is no quick fix to the breakdown in negotiations between the two companies.* **| technical, technological | bug** *The new software incorporates many bug fixes and product improvements.*

2 **amount of sth, especially a drug**

ADJ. **regular**

VERB + FIX **have** *He gets withdrawal symptoms if he hasn't had his regular fix.* **| need | get**

3 **difficult situation**

VERB + FIX **be in** *I was in a fix.* **| get in/into** *How did you get into such a fix?* **| put sb in** *The power cut put us in a fix because we had invited people to dinner.* **| get (sb) out of** *I lent her the money to get her out of a fix.*

fix *verb*

ADV. **firmly, securely | directly**

PREP. **onto, to** *The handrail can be fixed directly to the wall.*

PHRASES **fix sth in place/position** *Fix the bars in position with the screws provided.*

fixed *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain, stay**

ADV. **very | firmly, securely** *Check that the boards are all securely fixed.* **| rigidly** *His gaze was rigidly fixed ahead.* **| relatively | irrevocably, permanently**

fixture *noun*

1 **sporting event**

ADJ. **important, major | difficult | away, home | annual, regular | opening | final | international | friendly | league | sporting**

VERB + FIXTURE **play** *playing an important fixture this evening* **| fulfil** *The club was fined for not fulfilling its fixtures at the weekend.* **| make sth** *There are plans to make the race an annual fixture.* **| arrange, schedule | stage** *The golf club has staged many international fixtures.* **| postpone**

FIXTURE + NOUN **list** *a full fixture list of friendly matches*

PREP. **~ against** *a home fixture against Leeds*

2 **sth fixed in a house**

ADJ. **original** *an exceptional example of Victorian architecture with the original fixtures and fittings intact* **| permanent** *(often figurative) The new conductor is now a permanent fixture in the orchestra.*

PHRASES **fixtures and fittings**

flag *noun*

ADJ. national | chequered *Schumacher took the chequered flag to win his fourth Grand Prix of the season.* **| tattered** *A tattered flag hung from the roof of the burnt-out building.*

VERB + FLAG fly, hang (out), hoist, raise, run up *a ship flying a Russian flag* **| lower | wave** *The crowd all waved flags as the president came past.* **| unfurl | carry**

FLAG + VERB hang | flap, flutter, fly, wave *a flag fluttering in the breeze* **| be/fly at half mast**

FLAG + NOUN pole (also **flagpole)**

PREP. under a/the ~ *a ship sailing under a British flag* **| ~ of** *a flag of truce*

flail *verb*

ADV. **desperately, helplessly, wildly** *She ran along, her arms flailing wildly.* **| about, around** *He flailed about in the water, shouting ‘I can't swim!’*

flair *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great | real | natural | artistic, creative, design, entrepreneurial, imaginative**

VERB + FLAIR **have** *She has a natural flair for languages.* **| show | lack** *His designs are all right, but he lacks artistic flair.* **| develop**

PREP. **with ~** *jazz guitarists who improvise with flair* **| ~ for** *an activist with a flair for publicity*

flame *noun*

1 **hot bright stream of fire**

ADJ. **hot | small | bright | pale | dancing, flickering, leaping | steady | naked** *Never smoke or use spray paint near a naked flame.* **| candle, gas | Olympic**

QUANT. **ball, sheet, tongue** *The plane crashed in a ball of flames. Sheets of flame shot into the air.*

VERB + FLAME **ignite, spark** *(often figurative) His childhood interest in the game had ignited a flame of passion for football.* **| rekindle** *(often figurative) They tried to rekindle the flames of romance.* **| douse, extinguish, quench, snuff (out) | feel** *(often figurative) She felt a flame of anger flicker and grow.*

FLAME + VERB **burn** *The flame burnt brightly.* **| grow | die, go out** *The candle flame flickered and went out.* **| leap, rise, shoot** *Flames leapt from the burning house. Flames shot high into the air.* **| lick (sth)** *Orange flames were already licking round the foot of the stairs.* **| dance, flicker** *Flames danced in the gas lantern.*

FLAME + NOUN **thrower** *The infantry were equipped with flame throwers.*

PHRASES **the crackle of flames 2 flames** fire

ADJ. **roaring**

VERB + FLAME **be engulfed in, be in** *A large part of the building was in flames.* **| go up in** *All the historical records have gone up in flames* (= have been destroyed by fire). **| burst into, erupt in, explode in/into** *The helicopter burst into flames.* **| fuel** *Oxygen tanks fuelled the flames.* **| fan** *Winds fanned the flames.* **| shoot sb/sth down in** *The aircraft was shot down in flames.* **| fight** *He fought the flames for two hours.* **| control** *Firefighters have been trying to control the flames.* **| douse, extinguish, put out, quench, smother** *Men came with buckets of water and began to douse the flames.* **| be beaten back by** *They tried to get into to the house but were beaten back by the flames.*

FLAME + VERB **die down | spread, sweep through sth** *They watched the flames sweep through the old wooden barn.* **| engulf sth** *The flames quickly spread and engulfed their home.* **| light sth (up)** *The flames lit up the skyline.*

flammable *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly** *These materials are highly flammable.*

flank *noun*

ADJ. **left, right | north, northern, etc. | lower** *the lower flanks of Vesuvius* **| mountain**

VERB + FLANK **attack** *They decided to attack their enemy's southern flank.* **| defend, protect | expose** *West Ham exposed the right flank of Norwich's defence* (= showed that it could be attacked easily).

FLANK + NOUN **attack**

PREP. **along a/the ~** *along the eastern flank of Greenland* **| down the ~** *a beautiful pass down the right flank* **| on a/the ~** *The army was attacked on the left flank.*

flannel *noun*

ADJ. **damp, wet | cold | face**

VERB + FLANNEL **use** *Use a damp flannel to clean the skin.*

PREP. **with a ~** *She wiped his eyes and nose with a wet face flannel.*

flap *noun*

1 **flat piece of paper, metal, etc.**

ADJ. **small | hinged | loose** *a loose flap of skin* **| tent | pocket** *a stylish jacket with leather cuffs and pocket flaps*

VERB + FLAP **undo** *The officer undid the flap of his holster and drew his gun.* **| draw back, lift back/up, open, pull back** *He drew back the tent flap.* **| close | lower** *The pilot lowered the flaps as the aircraft came into land.*

2 **state of worry/excitement**

ADJ. **real**

VERB + FLAP **get in/into** *Far from getting into a flap over the controversy, the government has used the media attention to its advantage.* **| put sb in/into** *Having to cook for everyone at Christmas put his mother in a real flap.*

PREP. **in a ~** *I've never seen her in a flap; she's always so calm.* **| ~ over** *a flap over nuclear issues*

flap *verb*

ADV. **gently | wildly** *The sails flapped wildly in the stiff breeze.* **| about, around**

flare *noun*

1 **bright unsteady light/flame; sudden feeling**

ADJ. **brief, sudden** *There was a sudden flare as a fuel tank exploded.* **| bright | solar** *Radiation comes from the sun during solar flares.*

VERB + FLARE **see | feel** *She felt a sudden flare of anger.*

2 **device producing a bright flame**

ADJ. **distress**

VERB + FLARE **see** *If they did not see a green flare in ten minutes, they were to launch the attack.* **| fire, send up, set off** *The ship's crew sent up a distress flare.* **| drop** *The bomber dropped a flare to illuminate the target.*

FLARE + VERB **go up** *The flare to mark the start of the attack went up at 0440.* **| burn** *They could see orange flares burning in the distance.* **| explode | hit sb/sth** *A flare fired by a supporter hit the referee in the face.* **| illuminate sth, light sth (up)** *Flares lit up the night sky.*

FLARE + NOUN **gun**

flare *verb*

ADV. **suddenly** *Anger suddenly flared in his eyes.* **| briefly** *A light flared briefly, then went out.* **| up** *Violence flared up in the capital last night.*

PHRASES **flare into life** *The fire flared into life again.*

flash *noun*

1 **sudden bright light; sudden idea/emotion/action**

ADJ. **great | blinding, bright, brilliant | sudden | brief, momentary, quick | occasional | rare** *a rare flash of humour* **| light, lightning | news** (also **newsflash)**

VERB + FLASH **feel, have** *He felt a brief flash of jealousy. She had a sudden flash of inspiration.* **| catch, detect, notice, see** *We caught a flash of white in the bushes.*

FLASH + VERB **illuminate sth, light sth (up)** *A bright flash of lightning lit up the sky.*

PREP. **~ from** *The flashes from the guns illuminated the sky.* **| ~ of** *a sudden flash of light*

2 **bright light for a camera**

ADJ. **built-in | camera**

VERB + FLASH **use** *I don't think the picture will come out in this light. Try using the flash.*

FLASH + VERB **go off, work** *The flash didn't go off.*

FLASH + NOUN **photography | bulb | unit** *a camera with a built-in flash unit*

PREP. **with (a) ~** *I took it with flash.*

flash *verb*

1 **shine**

ADV. **briefly** *It was only the sun, flashing briefly on her bleached hair.*

PREP. **at** *A car flashed its headlights at me.*

2 **show emotion**

ADV. **suddenly | angrily** *Her eyes flashed angrily.*

PREP. **with** *Her eyes suddenly flashed with anger.*

flashback *noun*

ADJ. **sudden**

VERB + FLASHBACK **get, have**

PREP. **in (a) ~** *The story is told in flashback.* **| ~ to** *I had a sudden flashback to the time immediately after the war.*

flask *noun*

ADJ. **Thermos(R), vacuum | hip | metal, silver | conical, culture, round bottom** *(all science)*

VERB + FLASK **fill | carry** *When he climbed in the snow he always carried a silver flask of brandy for emergencies.* **| pull out** *She pulled out her flask and drank from it.* **| uncork, unscrew | drink (sth) from, take a swallow from, take a swig from**

FLASK + VERB **contain sth** *a culture flask containing 4ml of the medium*

PREP. **~ of** *We took a flask of tea with us.*

flat *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become | lie, stay** *I can't get this material to lie flat. She lay flat on the ground.* **| fold sth, get sth, make sth, press sth** *Shall I fold the paper flat or roll it up?*

ADV. **very | absolutely, completely, quite** *The sea was almost completely flat.* **| almost | fairly, quite, rather**

flat *noun*

1 set of rooms

ADJ. **big, spacious | modest | cramped, little, poky, small, tiny | comfortable, cosy | beautiful, nice | luxury, posh | shabby | modern | self-contained | purpose-built | furnished, unfurnished | one-room, studio | one-bedroomed, two-room, etc. | bachelor, granny** *Even the prices of small bachelor flats are unbelievable. They converted two rooms of their house into a granny flat for Tony's elderly mother.* **| attic, basement, bottom, downstairs, first-floor, ground-floor, penthouse, top, top-floor, upstairs** *the people who lived in the downstairs flat* **| high-rise** *a block of high-rise flats* **| empty, unoccupied, vacant | privately-owned | rented | council | holiday | next** *They live in the next flat.*

QUANT. **block** *The tall blocks of flats dominated the skyline.*

VERB + FLAT **have, own** *They have a flat in Paris and a house in Normandy.* **| rent, take** *The musician took a flat in a fashionable area of London.* **| let, sublet** *The landlady found they had been illegally subletting the flat.* **| buy | sell | find (sb), look for** *Do you think that the council could find me another flat?* **| get (sb)** *We got her a flat in the same block as ours.* **| live in, occupy, stay in** *Our flat is one of the two occupied in the block.* **| share | move into, move (out) from, move out (of) | build | decorate, refurbish** *a contract to refurbish 18 council flats* **| lock (up) | let sb/yourself into** *She let herself into the flat with the spare key.* **| leave, let sb/yourself out (of) | break (into) | evict sb from**

FLAT + VERB **be located** *The flat is located in a modern development.* **| face sth, overlook sth** *a luxury block of flats overlooking the marina*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *I'll meet you back at your flat.* **| in a/the ~** *She lives in the top flat.*

PHRASES **convert/divide/make/turn sth into flats** *The house has now been converted into flats.*

2 land

ADJ. **coastal | tidal | mud** (also **mudflat**), **sand, salt** *mud and sand flats rich in animal life*

PREP. **on the ~** *These birds live on the coastal flats.*

3 **musical note**

ADJ. **A, B, etc.**

VERB + FLAT **have** *The key of E flat major has three flats.* **| play**

PREP. **in … ~** *Mendelssohn's Quintet in B flat*

flattered *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel**

ADV. **immensely, very | rather | a little, vaguely**

PREP. **at** *She felt vaguely flattered at the suggestion.*

flattering *adj.*

VERBS **be | find sth**

ADV. **enormously, extremely, tremendously, very | far from, hardly, less than, not entirely** *The descriptions of her were less than flattering.* **| quite, rather**

PREP. **to** *This style of dress is flattering to most women.*

flattery *noun*

ADJ. **artificial**

VERB + FLATTERY **use** *Salespeople are often accused of using artificial flattery.* **| fall for** *She falls for his flattery every time.*

PREP. **through ~** *He thinks he can get his way through flattery.* **| with ~** *She persuaded him with flattery.*

flaunt *verb*

ADV. **deliberately, openly** *openly flaunting their wealth*

PREP. **in front of** *She flaunted her success in front of the others.*

flavour *noun*

1 taste of food

ADJ. **delicious, exquisite, fine, good, lovely, pleasant, wonderful | characteristic, distinctive, particular, unique, unmistakable | true | full, pronounced, rich, strong | mellow, rounded | delicate, mild, subtle | bland | extra | fresh | sweet | bitter, sharp, sour, tangy, tart | salty | hot, spicy | smoky | exotic | cheese/cheesy, chocolate, fruit, lemon/lemony, minty, nutty, etc.**

VERB + FLAVOUR **have** *It's got a very mild flavour.* | **take on** *Coffee takes on a flavour all of its own when enjoyed with freshly cooked pastry.* | **keep** *Delicate herbs keep their flavour better when frozen.* | **lose** | **add, give sth, impart, lend (sth), provide** *a herb that adds a characteristic flavour to a range of dishes* | **bring out, release** *The lemon juice brings out the natural fruit flavours. Bay leaves should be broken to release their flavour.* | **enhance, improve** | **spoil** | **destroy** *Cooking the vegetable destroys its wonderful delicate flavour.* | **appreciate, enjoy, savour** *Enjoy the flavour of fresh fish.*

FLAVOUR + NOUN **enhancer** *Salt is a common flavour enhancer.*

PREP. **for ~** *Cream may be added to the sauce for extra flavour.* | **with a ~** *a dish with a strong spicy flavour*

PHRASES **full of flavour** *vegetables that are fresh and full of flavour*

2 particular quality/atmosphere

ADJ. **distinctive, particular, true, unique | pronounced, strong | international, local, oriental, regional | American, Scandinavian, etc. | political**

VERB + FLAVOUR **have** *The college has a truly international flavour.* | **acquire, take on** *The music festival has taken on a distinctly German flavour.* | **lose** | **add, give sth, impart, provide** *The intervention of the authorities gave union struggles a decidedly political flavour.* | **experience, get** *The children experienced the flavour of medieval life. She rotated around the departments to get a flavour of all aspects of the business.* | **appreciate, enjoy** | **capture** *The film captures the flavour of rural life in* *this area.* **| convey**

PREP. **with a … ~** *a TV show with an American flavour*

flavoured *adj.*

VERBS **be** *The food they eat is very highly flavoured.*

ADV. **full, highly, richly, strongly, well | delicately** *a delicately flavoured clear soup*

PREP. **with** *This dish is flavoured with lemon grass and garlic.*

flavouring *noun*

ADJ. **artificial, natural** *This product contains only natural flavourings.* **| food | peppermint, vanilla, etc.**

QUANT. **drop** *Add a few drops of peppermint flavouring.*

VERB + FLAVOURING **contain | use** *We don't use any artificial flavourings in our products.* **| add**

flaw *noun*

ADJ. **main, major, serious | basic, fatal, fundamental | minor, slight, small | obvious | design**

VERB + FLAW **have** *Unfortunately, this plate has a slight flaw in it.* **| look for | discover, find, identify, see** *It took me a long time to find the flaw in her logic. Engineers have identified serious design flaws in the proposed nuclear waste dump.* **| expose, highlight, point out/to, reveal** *The markets have exposed the fatal flaw in the government's economic policy.*

FLAW + VERB **appear** *Flaws have appeared in the new version of the software.*

PREP. **~ in** *one of the major flaws in his character*

flawed *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | remain**

ADV. **badly, deeply, hopelessly, seriously | fatally** *a series of fatally flawed judgements* **| crucially, fundamentally | slightly, somewhat | conceptually, methodologically** *The study was methodologically flawed.*

flea *noun*

ADJ. **cat, dog, etc.**

VERB + FLEA **get, have | be riddled with | control** *This drug is given to dogs to control fleas.*

FLEA + VERB **jump | bite | carry/spread disease**

FLEA + NOUN **bite | collar, powder**

flee *verb*

ADV. **abroad, across the border, into exile** *Hundreds of refugees fled across the border to escape the fighting.* **| north, south, etc. | in panic**

VERB + FLEE **be forced to, have to** *They were forced to flee the country.* **| try to | manage to | turn** *They turned and fled when they saw the gang of youths approaching them.*

PREP. **from** *She dropped the phone and fled from the office.* **| into/to** *They fled to Britain when the war started.*

PHRASES **flee empty-handed** *When the police arrived the burglars fled empty-handed.* **| flee for your life** *She had to flee for her life when soldiers attacked her village.* **| flee in panic/terror** *The children fled in terror as the hay caught fire.* **| flee like the wind** *When danger threatens, collect your possessions and flee like the wind.* **| flee to safety** *The family managed to flee to safety.*

fleet *noun*

ADJ. **great, huge, large** *a large fleet of gunboats* **| small | fishing, whaling | merchant, shipping | battle, invasion | enemy, foreign | submarine, tanker | car, vehicle** *the company car fleet*

VERB + FLEET **operate, own** *He operated a small fishing fleet.* **| command | mobilize, send (in)** *The fleet was mobilized and the country prepared for war.* **| disband, ground | defeat, destroy | join** *The ship sailed to join the fleet at Barbados.* **| maintain** *The fleet was is very expensive to maintain.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There were over 500 ships in the enemy fleet.* **| ~ of** *a fleet of taxis*

flesh *noun*

1 soft part of sb's body

ADJ. **firm, smooth, soft, tender | pale, pink, white | bare, exposed | raw | torn | burning, burnt | rotting | living | dead | female, male | animal, human**

VERB + FLESH **touch | cut (into)** *His shirt was too small for him and cut into the tender flesh at his armpit.* **| strip, tear at/off** *Peregrine falcons usually pluck the feathers and strip the flesh off their bird prey. African hunting dogs will tear at the flesh of their victim until it is weak.* **| dig into, pierce (into), tear (into)** *Cook the duck until the juices run pale yellow when the flesh is pierced. The weapon tore into his flesh.* **| eat** *According to Greek mythology, the minotaur would only eat human flesh.* **| become, make sth** *(literary) In the Christian tradition, God is made flesh* (= becomes human).

FLESH + VERB **tingle** *My flesh tingled as I got out of the ice cold pool.* **| crawl, creep** *(both figurative) The scary story made his flesh creep* (= made him feel afraid).

FLESH + NOUN **wound** *The injury was only a flesh wound and would heal in ten days or so.* **| tone** *In the centre of the painting there is a woman painted in blues, reds and flesh tones* (= colours used to paint human skin).

PREP. **in the ~** *Thousands of fans gathered to see the band in the flesh* (= see the band in reality and not just in a picture).

PHRASES **flesh and blood** *She wasn't a ghost. She was flesh and blood* (= alive/real). **| flesh and bone** *Babies are born not just as bundles of flesh and bone* (= not simply living bodies without thoughts or feelings) *but with already distinctive personalities.* **| the lusts/pleasures/sins/temptations of the flesh** *His moral sermons always denounced the lusts of the flesh* (= the fulfilment of purely physical or sexual desires). **| the smell of flesh** *the smell of rotting flesh*

2 soft part of fruit/vegetables

ADJ. **soft | sweet | juicy**

VERB + FLESH **chop, cut** *Pare the mangoes and cut the flesh away from the stone.* **|**

scoop (out) *Cut the melon in half, remove the seeds and scoop out the flesh.*

flex *noun*

ADJ. **long | trailing** *Long trailing flexes are a serious trip hazard.* **| electric/ electical | kettle, telephone, etc.**

QUANT. **length**

VERB + FLEX **cut** *Side cutters are useful for cutting electrical flex to length.*

flexibility *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great | added, additional, extra, increased, more | maximum, total | enough, sufficient | financial**

QUANT. **degree** *Police work involves a considerable degree of flexibility and discretion.*

VERB + FLEXIBILITY **have** *You have considerable flexibility in this job and can choose how to do things.* **| show | obtain** *Flexibility of labour was obtained through the break up of old trade union structures.* **| maintain, retain | restore** *She had physiotherapy to restore the flexibility of her muscles.* **| bring (sb/sth), give (sb/sth), introduce, provide (sb/sth with)** *The new range of machines will bring flexibility to your business computing.* **| allow (sb/sth), allow for, offer (sb/sth), permit (sb/sth)** *The courses are designed to allow maximum flexibility.* **| build, create** *reforms to build flexibility into the system* **| enhance, improve, increase | encourage** *an initiative to encourage greater flexibility in teaching and learning* **| reduce | need, require**

PREP. **~ in** *This will give schools greater flexibility in their use of resources.* **| ~ over** *flexibility over the deadline*

PHRASES **a need for flexibility** *There is a need for greater flexibility in the way the network is managed.*

flexible *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain | make sth** *We need to make the working day more flexible.* **| keep sth**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | completely, fully, perfectly, totally | infinitely** *Human beings are infinitely flexible and able to adjust when survival depends on it.* **| fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively | enough, sufficiently | insufficiently**

PHRASES **about** *My mother is fairly flexible about what time I need to be home.*

flick *noun*

ADJ. **quick**

VERB + FLICK **give (sth)** *The fish gave a quick flick of its tail.*

PREP. **with a ~** *With a flick of his wrist he removed the ash from the end of his cigarette.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **at the flick of a switch** *Heat is available at the flick of a switch* (= instantly, by simply switching on the electricity).

flick *verb*

ADV. **casually | nervously | quickly | away, back**

PREP. **across** *His tongue flicked nervously across dry lips.* **| from** *He casually flicked away some dust from his jacket.* **| off** *She flicked the ash off her cigarette.* **| over** *His eyes flicked quickly over the screen.*

PHRASES **flick sth open** *She snatched up her briefcase and flicked it open.*
PHRASAL VERBS flick through sth

ADV. **absent-mindedly, casually, idly** *She flicked idly through a magazine.* **| quickly**

flicker *noun*

ADJ. **faint, slight, small, tiny** *She caught the faintest flicker of amusement on his face.* **| brief, momentary | last** *(often figurative) The secret police were determined to stamp out the last flickers of academic freedom.*

VERB + FLICKER **give** *The candle gave one last flicker and went out.* **| show | catch, notice, see | detect, feel** *She felt a brief flicker of jealousy.*

FLICKER + VERB **cross sth** *A flicker of guilt crossed his face.* **| catch your eye** *A flicker of movement caught her eye and she turned her head.*

PREP. **with a ~ of** *'He'll soon be here,' she thought, with a flicker of excitement.* **| without a ~ of** *She spoke without any flicker of fear.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **the flicker of a candle/flame** *The brief flicker of a candle flame caught our eyes.* **| the flicker of an eyelid, a flicker of sb's/the eyes** *Her only reaction was a slight flicker of her eyes.* **| a flicker of hope/interest** *European stock markets showed barely a flicker of interest in the election result.* **| a flicker of light/movement** *He saw a flicker of light in the darkness.* **| a flicker of recognition** *The witness stared at the accused but she showed not a flicker of recognition.* **| a flicker of a smile** *I noticed a flicker of a smile on her face.*

flicker *verb*

ADV. **briefly, for a moment, momentarily | nervously** *Her eyes flickered nervously in anticipation.* **| (on and) off, out** *The lights flickered on and off.*

PREP. **across/over** *His gaze flickered over her.*

PHRASES **flicker into life** *The television screen flickered into life.* **| flicker open** *Katherine's eyes flickered open.*

flight *noun*

1 **journey by air; plane making journey**

ADJ. **return** *The first prize is a return flight to Delhi. The outbound flight was smooth but the return flight was held up by six hours.* | **outbound** | **connecting** | **shuttle** | **regular, scheduled** | **charter** | **commercial** | **direct, non-stop** | **special** | **delayed** | **domestic, internal, local** | **long, long-distance, long-haul** | intercontinental, international, **transatlantic** | **first** *I got to the airport early to be ready for the first flight out.* | **last** *She flew into London on the last flight from Frankfurt.* | **first, maiden** *The Wright Brothers made their first flight in the Kitty Hawk in 1903.* | **final, last** *This will be the last flight of the vintage aircraft before it is installed in the museum.* | **early** | **evening, morning, night** | **bumpy** *The bumpy flight brought on a bout of airsickness.* | **smooth** | **pleasure** | **mercy, relief** | **military** | **reconnaissance, surveillance** | **routine** | **training** *a routine air-force training flight* | **solo** | **air, space** | **airline, (hot-air) balloon, helicopter** | **cargo, passenger** | **cheap**

VERB + FLIGHT **catch, take, travel on** *They caught an early flight back to London.* | **miss** | **have** *Did you have a good flight?* | **make** *The aeroplane made its maiden flight in 1976.* | **be booked on/onto, be on** *I'm on the first flight to Milan in the morning.* | **book (sb), book sb/yourself on/onto, get** *He asked her to book him on the next available flight to Geneva. We managed to get a non-stop flight to New York.* | **charter** *The club has chartered a special flight from Manchester to Bologna for their fans.* | **confirm** | **cancel, suspend** *The UN has suspended relief flights because of shelling around the airport.* | **change** | **board** | **operate** *The airline operates regular flights to Greece.* | **delay, hold up** | **divert** *The flight was diverted to Gatwick because of a bomb scare.* | **blow up** *She was accused of planting the bomb that blew up flight 217.*

FLIGHT + VERB **be bound for sth** *a flight bound for Antigua* | **leave, take off** | **arrive** | **land** | **be full** *I'm afraid I can't book you onto that flight?it's full.*

FLIGHT + NOUN **number** *We need your time of arrival and flight number.* | **time** *The flight time from Heathrow to Marseilles is less than two hours.* | **delay** *Your travel insurance compensates you for flight delays.* | **attendant, crew** | **commander, engineer** (both military) | **instruments** | **recorder** *The flight recorder should help to establish why the plane suddenly crashed.* | **simulator** | **path** *They have persuaded the authorities to divert the flight path of the military jets away from their* *village.*

PREP. **aboard/on/on board a/the ~** *passengers aboard a flight bound for Johannesburg* **| during a/the ~** *Please refrain from smoking during the flight.* **| ~ for** *She took a flight for Los Angeles.* **| ~ from, ~ out of** *They waited for the first flight out of Lisbon.* **| ~ to** *a flight from S*

2 **action of flying**

ADJ. **sustained | steady | normal | forward | soaring | low-level | horizontal, level | vertical | circular, curving | high-speed, supersonic**

VERB + FLIGHT **be capable of** *Barn owls are capable of flight at 56 days.* **| achieve** *Bats are the only mammals to have wings and to achieve sustained flight.* **| take** *They watched the young eagles take flight.*

PREP. **during ~** *The wings vibrate during flight.* **| in ~** *a flock of geese in flight*

PHRASES **the line of flight** *Don't get into the line of flight of the bees?you'd be sure to get stung.*

3 **number of stairs/steps**

ADJ. **long | short | steep | shallow | broad | narrow | double** *The villa is fronted by a double flight of stairs.*

VERB + FLIGHT **climb (up), go/run/walk up | descend, go/run/walk down | fall down**

FLIGHT + VERB **lead ...** *a flight of steps leading to the foyer* **| go down/up sth** *A flight of steps goes up the left-hand side of the room.*

PREP. **down/up a/the ~** *The office is just round that corner and up a short flight of stairs.*

PHRASES **(at the bottom/top of) a flight of stairs/steps**

4 **running away**

ADJ. **headlong, panicked**

VERB + FLIGHT **put (sb/sth) to** *(literary) The army was defeated and the king put to flight.* | **take** *As soon as they detected the cheetah the antelope took flight.*

PREP. **in ~** *Left-wing opposition leaders, in flight from persecution, went across the border.* | **~ from** *a headlong flight from danger* | **~ into** *a flight into the unknown* | **~ to** *The story tells of his flight from East to West Berlin.*

flinch *verb*

ADV. **violently | almost | hardly** *He hardly flinched when he was hit.* **| slightly | visibly | inwardly** *She flinched inwardly as he took her hand.* **| away**

VERB + FLINCH **make sb** *Her finger touched the scar on his forehead, making him flinch.*

PREP. **at** *She flinched visibly at the sight of the body.* **| from** *She flinched away from him. (figurative) She won't flinch from speaking her mind.* **| with** *He flinched with the force of the blow.*

fling *noun*

ADJ. **brief | (one) final, (one) last** *The athlete will have one final fling* (= participate in one final competition) *before retirement.*

VERB + FLING **have** *She's had her fling and now she's got to settle down.*

PREP. **~ with** *He had a fling with his neighbour's wife.*

float *verb*

1 on water/in air

ADV. **gently | downstream, downwards | upwards** *In the dream my feet leave the ground and I start to float upwards.* **| about, around, away, off**

VERB + FLOAT **seem to** *Her voice seemed to float on the water as gently as a slight mist.*

PREP. **across** *A few small clouds floated across the sky.* **| down** *chunks of ice floating down the river* **| in** *pieces of wood floating in the water* **| on** *A few leaves floated on the surface of the water.*

2 currency

ADV. **freely** *The government decided to allow the peso to float freely.*

VERB + FLOAT **allow sth to**

flog *verb*

ADV. **publicly** *Offenders were publicly flogged.*

PHRASES **flog sb to death**

flood *noun*

1 **large amount of water**

ADJ. **devastating, great, heavy, severe | summer, winter**

VERB + FLOOD **cause** *Heavy rainfall in the mountains caused the floods.*

FLOOD + VERB **hit sth, strike sth** *This summer the region was struck by devastating floods.* **| inundate sth** *The meadowland was inundated by heavy floods.* **| cause sth** *The flood caused widespread destruction.* **| subside** *The floods are slowly subsiding.*

FLOOD + NOUN **water/waters | alert, damage, victim | control, defence, prevention, protection, relief**

PHRASES **be in (full) flood** *The river was in full flood* (= had flooded its banks).

2 **large number/amount**

ADJ. **great | constant | sudden**

FLOOD + VERB **inundate sb/sth** *She was inundated by floods of fan mail.*

PREP. **~ of** *a great flood of refugees*

PHRASES **in floods of tears** (= crying a lot) *The little girl was in floods of tears.*

flood *verb*

VERB + FLOOD **be liable to** *The area near the river is liable to flood.*

PHRASES **be badly flooded** *The village had been badly flooded.*

floor *noun*

1 **lower surface of a room**

ADJ. **bare** *I can't sleep on the bare floor!* **| carpeted, parquet, tiled, wood, wooden | polished | bathroom, kitchen, etc.**

VERB + FLOOR **clean, mop, polish, scrub, sweep, wash, wax, wipe | drop to, fall to** *His glass fell to the floor and broke.*

FLOOR + NOUN **covering, tile | space**

PREP. **on the ~** *Do you mind sitting on the floor?*

PHRASES **from floor to ceiling** *Bookcases lined the walls from floor to ceiling.*

2 **bottom of the sea, a forest, etc.**

ADJ. **cave, forest, ocean, sea, valley**

3 **level in a building**

ADJ. **bottom, ground | top | first, second, etc. | mezzanine | lower, upper**

VERB + FLOOR **occupy** *The offices occupy the two top floors of the building.*

PREP. **on the ~** *a cafe on the mezzanine floor*

floorboard *noun*

ADJ. **wooden | bare | polished | loose | creaking, squeaky**

VERB + FLOORBOARD **lay** *The builders are still laying the floorboards.* **| lift (up)** *Lift some loose floorboards to get at the pipes.*

FLOORBOARD + VERB **creak** *The wooden floorboards creaked as he walked down the corridor.*

PREP. **beneath/under/underneath the ~** *They said that he kept his money under the floorboards.*

PHRASES **a gap between/in the floorboards** *She could hear voices through the gaps in the floorboards.*

flop *noun*

ADJ. **almighty, big, resounding, spectacular** *The show was the biggest flop in TV history.* **| complete | expensive** *The concert may prove an expensive flop unless more people decide to go.*

flour *noun*

ADJ. **strong | plain, self-raising | white, wholemeal | stoneground | unbleached | rice, rye, wheat, etc.**

QUANT. **bag, packet, sack**

VERB + FLOUR **use | add, blend, fold in, mix (in), rub sth in/into, stir (in)** *Blend the flour with a little milk to make a smooth paste. Rub the butter into the flour.* **| sieve, sift** *Sift the flour and salt into a bowl.*

FLOUR + NOUN **mill** > Special page at FOOD

flourish *noun*

ADJ. **final | dramatic, rhetorical, theatrical** *a speech full of rhetorical flourishes*

VERB + FLOURISH **end in/with, finish with | start (off) with | sign with** *Bill signed on the bottom line with a flourish.*

PREP. **with a ~** *With a final flourish she laid down her pen.*

PHRASES **a flourish of trumpets**

flout *verb*

ADV. **deliberately, openly** *The protesters have openly flouted the law.*

flow *noun*

ADJ. **heavy, large, massive | good | adequate | poor** *Our shower doesn't work very well because of the poor water flow.* **| main | increased, increasing | ceaseless, constant, continuous, endless | free, uninterrupted** *the uninterrupted flow of traffic* **| even, smooth, steady** *to maintain an even flow of work through the department* **| easy, natural** *I liked the concerto for its natural flow.* **| outward** *the outward flow of investment from the country* **| annual, daily, seasonal | data, information | air, blood, gas, lava, menstrual, river, water | capital, cash, financial, investment, production, trade**

VERB + FLOW **have** *Big pension funds have a constant flow of cash.* **| get, obtain** *Squeeze the tube of sealant slowly to obtain an even flow.* **| allow** *We like to allow a free flow of ideas in our company.* **| produce, provide** *The system provides a continuous flow of information to the market.* **| keep, maintain** *He kept up a flow of chatter.* **| ensure** *You must use a wide pipe to ensure an adequate flow of water.* **| control, regulate | assist, encourage, facilitate, stimulate** *to encourage the flow of revenue into the country* **| enhance, improve, increase** *The company is trying to enhance its cash flow.* **| disrupt, impede, reduce, restrict, slow (down)** *The continual bombing disrupted the flow of supplies to the ground troops.* **| block, break (up), cut (off), halt, interrupt, staunch, stem, stop** *They tried to staunch the flow of blood.* **| divert** *The main flow of water has been diverted to a new course.* **| join | measure**

FLOW + NOUN **rate** *The flow rate was measured at 9.5 litres per second.* **| chart, diagram**

PREP. **against the ~** *They have to swim against the flow of the river.* **| ~ around/ round** *air flows around the wings of an aircraft* **| ~ from** *First cut off the water flow from the boiler.* **| ~ into** *She joined the flow of immigrants to the country.* **| ~ through** *the flow of data through the system*

PHRASES **changes in the flow** *Changes in the flow of patients have reduced the number of beds available.* **| the ebb and flow** *the ebb and flow of the tide*

(figurative) He was at the mercy of the ebb and flow of public opinion. | in full flow *She tried to interrupt his speech, but he was already in full flow* (= talking continuously and not thinking of stopping). **| the rate of flow** *the rate of flow of water*

flow *verb*

ADV. **easily, freely, smoothly** *We talked, and the conversation flowed freely. Wine and beer flowed freely.* **| fast, swiftly** *The river flows quite fast here.* **| slowly | naturally** *In a good production of the play, the action and the words flow naturally.* **| directly** *Some of these changes will flow directly from the legislation.* **| constantly, continuously | away, back, in, out, past**

VERB + FLOW **seem to | begin to, start to | continue to** *Imported food aid continued to flow in.*

PREP. **across, along, between, down** *a small stream that flowed down the hillside* **| from** *Blood was still flowing from the wound.* **| into** *One day seemed to flow into the next.* **| out of, over, through** *Information flows continuously through the network.* **| to** *to get blood flowing to the brain*

flower *noun*

ADJ. **bright, brilliantly-coloured, colourful | fragrant, scented, sweet-scented, sweet-smelling | delicate, tiny | huge | lily-like, star-shaped, etc. | exotic, rare | alpine, garden, wild, woodland | autumn, spring, etc. | seasonal | out-of-season | beautiful, lovely, pretty** *What lovely flowers!* **| fresh | cut** *They sell a few pot plants, but they mainly sell cut flowers.* **| dried, pressed | dead | artificial, fake | closed, open** *The flowers were still tightly closed.* **| daffodil, tulip, etc.**

QUANT. **bouquet, bunch**

VERB + FLOWER **have, produce** *It has deep pink scented flowers. It was the first year that the cactus had produced flowers.* **| come into** *If the winter weather is mild, plants may come into flower too early.* **| pollinate** *The flowers are pollinated by insects.* **| press**

FLOWER + VERB **go to seed, seed**

FLOWER + NOUN **bud, head, petal, seed, stalk, stem | bed, border | arrangement, arranger, arranging** *I'm learning flower arranging.* **| display | pot** (also **flowerpot**) **| basket, container, vase | garden | festival, show | market, seller, shop, stall | garland, wreath**

PREP. **in ~** *It was June and the roses were in flower.*

PHRASES **a bank/carpet/mass of flowers** *The alleys were adorned with banks of flowers. The forest floor was a carpet of wild flowers.* **| covered in flowers** *The bush was absolutely covered in flowers.* > Note at FLOWER

flu *noun*

ADJ. **mild | gastric | summer**

QUANT. **bout, dose** *She's had a nasty dose of flu.*

VERB + FLU **be in bed with, be laid up with, have, suffer from | catch, contract, get, go down with**

FLU + NOUN **bug, virus | epidemic | victim | vaccine | jab** > Special page at ILLNESS

fluctuate *verb*

ADV. **considerably | sharply, widely, wildly** *Prices have fluctuated wildly in recent years.* **| constantly, continually** *constantly fluctuating patterns*

PREP. **according to** *Traffic congestion fluctuates according to the time of day.* **| around** *The number of boys at the school fluctuates around 100.* **| between** *The number of unemployed fluctuates between two and three million.*

fluctuation *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, large, marked, sharp, violent, wide, wild | local, minor | rapid | short-term | cyclical, periodic, regular, seasonal** *seasonal fluctuations in the demand for labour* **| random | climatic, currency, economic, exchange rate, market, price, temperature**

VERB + FLUCTUATION **cause, produce** *factors which cause these exchange rate fluctuations* **| be subject to** *The number of students at a college can be subject to considerable fluctuation.*

FLUCTUATION + VERB **occur** *the climatic fluctuations that have occurred over the last ten years*

PREP. **~ in** *There have been quite wide fluctuations in oil prices in recent years.*

fluency *noun*

VERB + FLUENCY **achieve, acquire** *Some young children achieve great fluency in their reading.*

PREP. **~ in** *Fluency in spoken English is essential.*

fluid *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain | keep sth** *I think we should try and keep our arrangements fluid at this stage.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *It's a highly fluid situation.* **| fairly, quite, rather, relatively**

fluid *noun*

ADJ. **excess | amniotic, bodily/body, intravenous | brake, cleaning**

VERB + FLUID **drink** *Change your diet and drink plenty of fluids.* **| lose | replace** *replacing vital body fluids and salts that are lost when you sweat* **| retain** *Retaining excess fluid could be a problem.*

flurry *noun*

1 **small amount of rain/snow**

ADJ. **snow**

PHRASES **a flurry of rain/snow**

2 **short sudden burst of sth**

ADJ. **brief, sudden** *There was a sudden flurry of interest in the book.*

PREP. **~ of**

PHRASES **a flurry of activity/excitement**

flush *noun*

ADJ. **faint, slight | deep, dull, pink, red, scarlet, warm | hectic, sudden** *a hectic flush of rising excitement* **| hot** *Hot drinks can cause sweating and hot flushes in the face and head.*

VERB + FLUSH **feel** *She felt a dull flush of anger creeping into her face.* **| bring** *The promise in his voice brought a warm flush to her cheeks.*

FLUSH + VERB **creep, rise, spread, suffuse sth** *A flush of embarrassment rose to her cheeks.*

PREP. **~ of** *There was a faint flush of colour on those pale cheeks.*

PHRASES **(in) the first flush of enthusiasm, passion, youth, etc.** (= a time when enthusiasm, etc. is new, exciting and strong)

flush *verb*

ADV. **deeply | a little, slightly | angrily, guiltily, painfully** *He made his excuses, flushing guiltily.*

PREP. **with** *He flushed scarlet with embarrassment.*

flushed *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look | become**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, very | a bit, faintly, a little, quite, slightly | unnaturally**

PREP. **with** *Her face was flushed with embarrassment.*

flute *noun* > Special page at MUSIC

flutter *noun*

1 quick, light movement

ADJ. little

VERB + FLUTTER give *His heart gave a little flutter as the ladder slipped a couple of inches.*

2 state of nervous excitement

VERB + FLUTTER be in, feel *She felt a flutter of excitement.* **| get in | cause**

PREP. in a ~ *They arrived in a flutter.* **| ~ of**

fly *noun*

1 **insect**

VERB + FLY **swat** *I swatted the fly with a newspaper.*

FLY + VERB **buzz** *A fly was buzzing against the window.* **| crawl | land (on sth), settle (on sth)** *A fly settled on the butter.*

FLY + NOUN **larva | repellent, spray**

2 **(also flies) on trousers**

ADJ. **button/button-up, zip/zipped**

VERB + FLY **button (up), do up, zip up | undo, unzip** *Do you know your flies are undone?*

FLY + NOUN **button** > Special page at CLOTHES

fly *verb*

ADV. **high, low | fast, slowly | about, around, past**

PREP. **above** *We watched the birds flying high above us.* **| over** *an aeroplane flying low over the sea*

focal point *noun*

VERB + FOCAL POINT **act as, become, form, make, provide (sth with), serve as**

PREP. **~ for** *The school provides a focal point for the local community.* **| ~ in** *In what sense was the discovery of America a focal point in history?*

focus *noun*

1 centre of interest/attention

ADJ. **central, main, major, primary, prime, principal | important, special | greater, increased | clear, sharp, strong** *The company's restructuring is designed to give a sharper focus on key growth markets.* **| narrow** *I found the focus of the debate too narrow.*

VERB + FOCUS **act as, give sb/sth, provide (sb/sth with), serve as** *Cities have always acted as the principal focus of political life.* **| change, shift** *At this stage of the trial the defence lawyer often shifts the focus onto the victim.* **| bring sth into** *This case has brought the problem of drug abuse in schools into sharp focus.* **| come into** *The question of compensation comes into focus.*

FOCUS + VERB **be on sb/sth** *Our primary focus this term will be on group work.* **| shift** *The focus has now shifted towards the problem of long-term unemployment.*

PREP. **~ for** *She became a focus for all his anger.* **| ~ on** *an increased focus on younger people*

PHRASES **a change/shift of focus, the focus of attention** *He found he was now their main focus of attention.*

2 point/distance at which sth is clearly seen

ADJ. **sharp | soft** *soft focus shots of cuddly animals*

VERB + FOCUS **come into** *When I got glasses suddenly the whole world came into focus* (= became clear to see).

PREP. **in ~** *The binoculars were not in focus* (= were not showing things clearly). **| out of ~** *The children's faces are badly out of focus* (= not clearly shown) *in the photograph.*

focus *verb*

1 **give attention to sth**

ADV. **heavily, largely, mainly, particularly, primarily, principally | entirely, exclusively, solely** *The study focuses exclusively on secondary schools.* **| increasingly | fully | firmly** *The attention of the news media was firmly focused on the elections.* **| specifically | clearly | directly | closely, sharply | narrowly | initially | inevitably** *He inevitably focused on his own concerns, with only a passing query about Jeff.* **| traditionally** *Degree courses have traditionally focused on the established great writers of the past.*

VERB + FOCUS **need to | try to | decide to | tend to | help (to)** *Think of some questions that will help focus the discussion.*

PREP. **on/upon** *We need to focus upon the main issues.*

PHRASES **highly/tightly focused** *The department undertakes highly focused research.* **| narrowly focused** *The study was criticized for being too narrowly focused.*

2 **direct your eyes towards sth**

ADV. **automatically**

VERB + FOCUS **try to** *She blinked and tried to focus.*

PREP. **on/upon** *The eye will automatically focus on the small group in the foreground.*

foe *noun*

ADJ. **bitter, dangerous, deadly, formidable, implacable, terrible** *He knew that Carlton could be an implacable foe.* **| common | old** *playing in the final against their old foes Italy*

VERB + FOE **vanquish** *(figurative) She had fought many battles, vanquished many foes.*

PREP. **against a ~** *to join forces against a common foe*

PHRASES **friend and foe** *His newspaper articles criticized friend and foe alike.* **| friend or foe** *She was unsure as yet whether he was friend or foe.*

fog *noun*

ADJ. **dense, heavy, thick | freezing | patchy** *Drizzle and patchy fog are forecast.* **| swirling**

QUANT. **bank, blanket, patch** *The town was shrouded in a thick blanket of fog.*

VERB + FOG **be shrouded in**

FOG + VERB **cover sth, lie, shroud sth** *A freezing fog lay over the valley.* **| close in, come down, descend, roll in** *A dense fog came down in the afternoon. A heavy fog rolled in from the sea.* **| clear, disperse, lift** *The fog had lifted by late morning.* **| drift, swirl** *fog drifting over the water* **| obscure sth** *A bank of fog obscured the farmhouse.*

FOG + NOUN **patches**

PREP. **in/into (a/the) ~** *We got lost in the fog.* **| through (a/the) ~** *We drove slowly through the fog.*

foil *noun*

1 **metal in a thin sheet**

ADJ. **aluminium, gold, silver, tin | kitchen**

QUANT. **piece, sheet | roll**

VERB + FOIL **cover sth with, wrap sth in** *I wrapped the sandwiches in kitchen foil.*

2 **sth that shows off the qualities of sth else**

ADJ. **good, ideal, perfect**

VERB + FOIL **be, provide**

PREP. **as a ~** *She has used mosses as a foil for the brightly coloured flowers in the bed.* **| ~ for/to** *The couple provided the perfect foil for one another.*

fold *noun*

1 **part of sth folded**

ADJ. **billowing, loose, soft** *billowing folds of clouds* **| deep, heavy | neat | vertical**

VERB + FOLD **be hidden behind/by/in** *The troops were hidden by the deep folds of the ground.* **| fall in, hang in ~s** *The fabric fell in soft folds. His face hung in heavy folds.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *It was a solitary spot in a fold between two hills.* **| ~ in** *a fold in the land*

PHRASES **folds of flesh/skin** *the loose folds of flesh under her chin*

2 **the fold: group of people who feel they belong**

ADJ. **international | family | Anglican, Catholic, etc.**

VERB + FOLD **join | leave | come back into/to, return to | be back in** *The country is now firmly back in the international fold.* **| bring sb (back) into/to** *The indigenous people were brought into the Catholic fold.* **| accept sb back into, welcome sb (back) into/to** *His father finally accepted him back into the family fold.*

PREP. **within a/the ~** *opposing viewpoints within the Anglican fold*

fold *verb*

ADV. **carefully, neatly | deftly** *He deftly folded the typed sheets and replaced them in the envelope.* **| gently** *Her hands lay gently folded in her lap.* **| in half, in two** *She folded the piece of paper in half.* **| back, down, over | up** *I folded up the clothes and put them away.*

PREP. **into** *She folded the clothes into a neat bundle.*

foliage *noun*

ADJ. **bright | dense, heavy, luxuriant | dead | evergreen, year-round | grassy | spring, summer, etc. | tropical**

folk (*also* **folks)** *noun*

ADJ. **decent, good, honest, law-abiding | common, everyday, ordinary** *It's the ordinary everyday folk who come to shop at this market.* **| humble, simple | friendly | rich | poor | working, working-class | elderly, old | young | black, white | men** (also **menfolk)** *He described the customs of the menfolk of his family.* **| city, country** *places that appeal to city folk* **| local**

VERB + FOLK **visit** *I am going to visit my folks* (= parents) *at the weekend.*

FOLK + VERB **live** *ordinary working-class folk who live near the factory* **| say sth, talk (of sth), tell (sb) sth** *Folks say that he is a hard man. If only I'd listened to the old folk telling their stories.*

FOLK + NOUN **culture, customs, memory, myth, tradition, wisdom** *She had an interest in the folk customs of ancient societies.* **| story, tale | hero** *He is something of a folk hero in these parts.* **| art, dancing, music, singing | dance, song | musician, singer | festival | medicine, remedy**

PHRASES **the folks back home** *The visiting team lost 3?0, dismaying the folks back home* (= the people from the place the team had come from).

folklore *noun*

ADJ. **popular | local | cricket, sporting, etc.**

VERB + FOLKLORE **be part of | become part of, enter (into), pass into** *The victory became part of sporting folklore.*

FOLKLORE + VERB **have it that …** *Local folklore has it that prehistoric men drove cattle over these cliffs.*

PREP. **according to ~** *According to popular folklore, anyone who owns such a picture will have bad luck.* **| in … ~** *a character in American folklore*

follow *verb*

1 go after sb/sth

ADV. **closely** *Johnson finished first, closely followed by Stevens and Higgins.* | **dutifully, obediently** *The dog followed obediently at her heels.* | **blindly** *She followed blindly, stumbling over stones in her path.* | **on** *You go ahead and we'll follow on later.*

VERB + FOLLOW **beckon (to) sb to** *She beckoned him to follow her.*

2 happen after sth

ADV. **closely, quickly, shortly, swiftly** *The next programme will follow shortly.* | **immediately** *in the period immediately following the election*

3 happen/be true as a result of sth

ADV. **not necessarily** *It does not necessarily follow that sleep loss would cause these symptoms.*

PREP. **(on) from** *Several conclusions follow on from his statement.*

4 accept advice/instructions

ADV. **carefully** *Follow my instructions very carefully.* | **dutifully, obediently**

5 copy

ADV. **faithfully** *The film follows the book faithfully.* | **blindly, slavishly** *It wasn't in his nature to follow blindly. slavishly following the views of his teachers*

VERB + FOLLOW **be expected to, be likely to** *Banks are expected to follow the building societies in raising mortgage rates.*

PHRASES **follow suit** *(figurative)* (= act or behave in the way that sb else has just done)

6 **understand sth**

ADV. **not quite** *I'm sorry, but I don't quite follow you* (= understand what you are saying).

VERB + FOLLOW **be easy to | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *His argument was difficult to follow.*

follower *noun*

ADJ. **ardent, close, enthusiastic, keen** *a keen follower of football* **| dedicated, devoted, devout, faithful, loyal, true** *a true follower of Islam* **| local | sports | cricket, football, rugby, etc.**

QUANT. **band**

VERB + FOLLOWER **have** *She still has many loyal followers.* **| attract | lead** *The myth says that he led a small band of followers to seek their fortune in distant lands.*

PREP. **among sb's ~** *The king was not powerful enough to command respect among his followers.*

following *noun*

ADJ. **big, considerable, great, large, mass, strong | limited, small | local | dedicated, devoted, faithful, fanatical, loyal | enthusiastic | personal | cult** *They enjoy a cult following in the UK.*

VERB + FOLLOWING **command, enjoy, have | acquire, attract, build up, create, gain, gather**

PREP. **~ among** *Top of the range Scotches attract a fanatical following among whisky buffs.*

follow-up *noun*

ADJ. **long-term | immediate | six-month, two-year, etc. | regular** VERB + FOLLOW-UP **plan | write** *She is writing a follow-up to her best-selling novel.* FOLLOW-UP + NOUN **period | action, work** *After the report, advisers are expected to carry out follow-up work.* **| discussion, interview, meeting, session | visit** *You will receive a follow-up visit from the person conducting the assessment.* **| operation** *a follow-up operation to consolidate military successes* **| treatment** *They were attending hospital for follow-up treatment.* **| report, study, survey** *a long-term follow-up study of all children born in Great Britain in one week*

PREP. **~ to** *We are planning a follow-up to today's event.*

folly *noun*

1 **lack of good judgement**

ADJ. **absolute, sheer | ultimate | youthful | human | economic, political**

VERB + FOLLY **realize, recognize, see** *Suddenly she saw the folly of it all.* **| demonstrate, show** *These facts demonstrate the folly of the policy.* **| underline**

PHRASES **an act of folly** *That would be an act of sheer folly!* **| the folly of your ways** *They have finally seen the folly of their ways.* **| the height of folly** *To sign away his rights to the book would have been the height of folly.*

2 **building**

ADJ. **Gothic, Victorian | monumental | architectural**

VERB + FOLLY **build**

fond *adj.* **fond of sb/sth**

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become, grow | remain**

ADV. **especially, extremely, genuinely, immensely, particularly, really, very** *She seems genuinely fond of the children.* **| quite, rather**

fondness *noun*

ADJ. **great | certain, special**

VERB + FONDNESS **feel, have**

PREP. **~ for** *I've always had a certain fondness for her.*

food *noun*

ADJ. **delicious, excellent, good, superb, tasty, wonderful | favourite | decent | adequate, enough, sufficient** *Everyone has the right to adequate food and clean water.* **| ample | basic, everyday, staple** *lower fat alternatives to everyday foods Retail prices of staple foods remain unchanged.* **| plain, simple | exotic, speciality | fine, gourmet, quality** *Our restaurant serves the finest food.* **| cheap | bad, poor, unhealthy | healthy, nourishing, nutritious, proper, the right, wholesome** *Healthy food can and should be delicious Lack of proper food led to much illness among seamen. It's is important to get plenty of exercise and to eat the right foods.* **| diet, health** *Essential oils can be bought from most good health food shops* **| rabbit** *(informal, disapproving) My father preferred to eat meat and hated rabbit food* (= lettuce and other raw vegetables normally found in salads). **| fast, junk, snack, takeaway | hot | cold | raw, uncooked | leftover | rotten | fresh | natural | organic | frozen | canned, tinned | processed | convenience, ready-made, ready-prepared | fatty, fried, starchy, stodgy** *She is trying to cut down on fatty foods.* **| high-calorie, rich** *Avoid rich foods like pastries.* **| sugary, sweet | savoury, spicy | Greek, Indian, etc. | vegetarian | genetically-modified** *Campaigners are challenging the safety of genetically-modified foods.* **| animal, vegetable** *Omnivores are able to eat animal or vegetable food.* **| solid** *The baby refuses to swallow any solid food.* **| baby | cat, dog, fish, pet | hospital, party, prison, pub, restaurant | imported**

QUANT. **portion, plate | morsel, scrap** *They moved from village to village begging scraps of food.*

VERB + FOOD **consume, eat, have** *the amount of food that an average family consumes in a week You should eat more fresh foods. She had had no food for two days.* **| enjoy, like** *He obviously enjoys good food.* **| live on** *people who live on junk food* **| be off, go off** *The dog has gone off its food.* **| avoid, cut down on, cut out | be/go short of, run short of** *The city was under siege and began to run short of food.* **| be without, go without, live without** *We had been days without food.* **| offer (sb)** *The centre offers food and accommodation for students.* | **give sb, provide (sb with), serve (sb), supply (sb with) a** *restaurant that serves good healthy food Thanks to international aid, the town had been supplied with food for nine months.* **| feed sb/sth (on)** *He always fed Whiskers the best cat food. She fed her baby on wholesome food.* **| handle** *Always take great care when handling food.* **| cook, do, make, prepare** *A lot of people can't be bothered to cook good food. Who's doing the food for the party?* **| smell, taste** *Taste the food and tell me what you think.* **| cut (up)** *Please cut up the food for your baby sister.* **| pick at** *He had lost his* *appetite and picked at his food.* | **play with** *Stop playing with your food like a baby!* | **chew** | **swallow** | **bolt, gulp (down)** *She told the kids not to gulp down their food.* | **digest** | **order** *They sat down at the restaurant table and immediately ordered their food.* | **grow** | **import** | **beg (for), hunt for, look for, search for, scavenge for** *The female eagle broods and the male hunts for food.* | **find** *Most mammals use their sense of smell to find food.* | **keep, store** *Keep food fresher for longer with our new sealable containers. Bears store food for the winter.* | **put out** *He put out food for the birds.* | **share**

FOOD + VERB **smell, taste** *Does the food taste good?* | **be in short supply, be short** *We have strikes, food is short and the queues grow longer.* | **run out**

FOOD + NOUN **resource, source, supply** *Fruits are an important food source for bats. The seaside fish market is a ready food supply for scavenging seabirds.* | **supplies** *The UN has b* | **stuff** (also **foodstuff)** *Many basic foodstuffs, such as bread and milk, are tax-free.* | **crop, plant** *Peasants were encouraged to grow basic food crops such as beans and corn.* | **product** *The labels on food products give a lot of information about their nutritional content.* | **consumption** | **intake** *His doctor warned him to reduce his daily food intake.* | **preparation** | **hygiene, safety** | **scare** *There has been a food scare over salmonella in eggs.* | **distribution** | **crisis, shortage** | **rationing, rations** | **industry, market** *The country intends to increase its share of the European food market.* | **manufacturing, production** | **company, manufacturer, producer** | **market, outlet, retailer, shop, store, supplier** *Britain's first organic food market a fast food outlet* | **prices** | **bill** *I am trying to cut my weekly food bill by one third.* | **policy** *EU food policy* | **poisoning** | **additives** | **colouring** | **processor** *Blend the egg yolks, lemon juice and herbs in a food processor.* | **chain** *Plankton is at the bottom of the marine food chain.*

PREP. **for ~** *killing animals for food* | **without ~** *After three days without food, the men were close to starvation.*

PHRASES **food and drink** *Gina had prepared food and drink for the work party.* | **food and water** *Food and water were running out.* | **food and wine** *The Dordogne region is famous for its food and wine.* | **a smell of food** *There was a smell of food from the kitchen* | **a supply of food** *The ocean provided the villagers with an endless supply of food.* | **the taste of food** *the characteristic taste of our food*

fool *noun*

ADJ. **awful, big, bloody** *(taboo)*, **damned, great, silly, stupid** *You're an even bigger fool than I thought.* **| absolute, complete, utter | poor** (= unfortunate) **| old** (= used to show sympathy, affection or a lack of respect) *The poor old fool was imprisoned on my account.* **| young | little** *You silly little fool!* **| court** *court fools who used to provide entertainment in the royal court*

VERB + FOOL **feel (like)** *I felt such a fool when I realized what I'd done.* **| look (like)** *They had left me looking like a fool.* **| act (like), behave like, play** *Stop behaving like a fool! He thought that being an actor only involved tap dancing and playing the fool* (= acting in a childish/funny way). **| suffer, tolerate** *She doesn't suffer fools gladly.* **| call sb | take sb for** *He had taken me for a complete fool.* **| be no/nobody's** (= be too clever to be deceived by sb/sth) *She's nobody's fool. She had the car checked by a mechanic before buying it.*

PREP. **like a ~** *Like a fool, I told her everything.* **| ~ of a sth** *That fool of a doctor has prescribed me the wrong medicine!*

PHRASES **make a fool (out) of sb/yourself** *She was angry at having been made a fool of.* **| more fool (sb)** *I thought it was safe to leave my suitcase there. More fool me* (= I was stupid to think so).

fool *verb*

ADV. **completely | easily** *I'm not easily fooled by anyone, least of all you.*

VERB + FOOL **can't/couldn't | try to**

PREP. **into** *He fooled them into thinking he was a detective.* **| with** *You can't fool me with all that nonsense!*

PHRASES **have sb fooled** *She had me completely fooled for a moment.*

foolish *adj*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **exceedingly, extremely, incredibly, really, singularly, very | utterly | a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly, vaguely**

foolproof *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | make sth** *We're trying to work out a way to make the system foolproof.*

ADV. **absolutely, quite | nearly, pretty well, virtually** *The system is pretty well foolproof.*

foot *noun*

1 part of the body

ADJ. **left, right | back, front** *He shifted his weight onto his back foot.* **| dainty (little), small | big, enormous | narrow, wide | flat** *He was excused military service because of his flat feet.* **| bare** *It's dangerous to walk on the beach in/with bare feet.* **| blistered, swollen | dirty, smelly, unwashed | booted, stockinged** *the rumble of many booted feet on the bridge He padded across the room in his stockinged feet* (= wearing socks but no shoes). **| webbed** *Ducks' webbed feet help them to swim.* **| silent** *He slipped across the corridor on silent feet.* **| leaden** *(figurative) He walked towards the examination room with leaden feet* (= slowly). **| winged** *(figurative) She flew on winged feet* (= fast) *up the narrow stair.*

VERB + FOOT **get to, jump to, leap to, rise to, scramble to** *He got shakily to his feet.* **| be on** *I've been on my feet all day and I need to sit down for a rest.* **| plant, put** *I planted my feet firmly on the chair and reached up to the top window. She put her foot down on the accelerator and the car lurched forward.* **| raise** *He raised his foot off the accelerator pedal.* **| stamp | swing** *He swung a foot at the ball but missed completely.* **| shuffle | drag** *She dragged her feet as she reluctantly followed her parents.* **| wipe** *Wipe your feet when you come in from the street.* **| tread on** *That man trod on my foot and he didn't even apologize.*

FOOT + VERB **catch** *His foot caught in the cable and he fell under the train.* **| slip** *My foot slipped as I was about to shoot and I missed the ball.* **| crunch, patter, pound, shuffle** *I heard feet crunching over the gravel outside the house.* **| dangle** *I sat by the river with my feet dangling in the water.* **| kick** *They carried him out of the room with his feet kicking.* **| sink** *My feet sank deep into the mud.*

FOOT + NOUN **massage | injury | passenger, soldier** *Foot passengers were allowed to leave the ferry before the vehicles.* **| patrol** *soldiers on foot patrol*

PREP. **beneath/under your ~** *The snow crunched beneath her feet.* **| from ~ to ~** *They looked unsure and shifted uneasily from foot to foot.* **| on ~** *The city is best explored on foot.* **| in the/your ~** *He's broken several bones in his left foot.* **| with the/your ~** *She kicked the ball with her right foot.*

PHRASES **the ball of the/your foot** *I squatted down to speak to the boy, balancing on the balls of my feet.* **| from head to foot** *She was dressed from head to foot in* *green velvet.* **| put your feet up** *He likes to put his feet up and watch TV when he gets home.* **| set foot in/on sth** *Cook claimed to be the first European to set foot in Australia.* **| the sole of the/your foot** *The soles of my feet were covered in blisters.*

2 **measurement > Note at MEASURE**

football *noun*

ADJ. **adventurous, attractive, classy, creative, entertaining, exciting, fine, fluent, good, great, neat | one-touch** *The Dutch team impressed the fans with their classy one-touch football.* **| amateur, professional | junior | first-team | club, league | international, world | domestic | five-a-side | indoor | live | American, Aussie rules/Australian rules, Gaelic**

QUANT. **game**

VERB + FOOTBALL **play | watch | follow** *Young Italians follow football like we follow the royal family.*

FOOTBALL + NOUN **club, league | squad, team | hero, player, star | field, ground, pitch, stadium | terraces** *The government is trying to tackle violence on the football terraces.* **| boots, kit, shirt, shorts, strip | agent, management, manager | authorities** *The police say the players' behaviour is a matter for the football authorities.* **| enthusiast, fan, follower, supporter | crowd | programme | championship, game, match, tournament | training | career | hooliganism, riot, violence | hooligan | chant** *Obscene football chants stop people taking their children to matches.* **| commentator, writer | action, coverage** *Join Radio 5 for all the top football action.* **| world** *The football world was rocked by the scandal.* **| culture** *The World Cup is fascinating for its clash of football cultures.* > Special page at SPORT

footballer *noun*

ADJ. **brilliant, good, skilful, talented | famous | keen | amateur, professional | international**

FOOTBALLER + VERB **play**

foothold *noun*

1 **place to put your foot when climbing**

ADJ. **firm, secure**

VERB + FOOTHOLD **have | find, get, scrabble for** *He found a secure foothold and pulled himself up. scrabbling for a foothold on the steep grassy bank* **| give sb** *The bench gave me the foothold I needed to climb into the tree.*

2 **strong position for making further progress**

ADJ. **firm, secure | permanent | big | small**

VERB + FOOTHOLD **have | establish, gain, get, obtain, secure** *The company is trying to gain a foothold in the European market.* **| maintain | lose | regain | give (sb/sth), provide (sb with)** *I hope the textbook will provide a foothold for students of the subject.*

PREP. **~ in** *The firm has a firm foothold in this market.*

footing *noun*

1 **secure grip with your feet**

ADJ. **firm, sure**

VERB + FOOTING **keep** *He struggled to keep his footing on the slippery floor.* **| be sure of** *She looked over her shoulder to be sure of her footing.* **| struggle for | lose, miss | give (sb), provide (sb with)** *The sole of this shoe will give a firm footing even on slippery surfaces.*

2 **basis on which sth exists/operates**

ADJ. **firm, proper, right, secure, solid, sound | wrong | equal, the same** *All claimants stand on an equal legal footing.* **| different, unequal | normal | permanent** *The arrangement was put on a permanent footing earlier this year.* **| commercial, competitive, financial, legal | war** *The army was placed on a war footing* (= prepared for war).

VERB + FOOTING **be on, stand on** *The two teams stand on an equal footing.* **| be back on | gain** *Town planning procedures gained a footing in local government.* **| get (sb/sth) off on** *Being inconsiderate to the doctor will get you off on the wrong footing.* **| get (sth) on, place sth on, set sth on** *We need to get the business on a sound footing.* **| get (sth) back on, put sth back on**

PREP. **on a … ~** *an attempt to put the economy on a more secure footing*

footpath *noun*

ADJ. **public | long-distance**

VERB + FOOTPATH **follow, take, use | keep to**

FOOTPATH + VERB **follow sth, lead, run** *The footpath runs along the canal.* **| cross sth** *a footpath crossing farmland* **| link sth** *the footpath linking Sprotton and Lumm*

FOOTPATH + NOUN **network, system**

PREP. **along a/the ~** *We walked along the footpath.* **| by (a/the) ~** *The monastery is an hour away by footpath.* **| down a/the ~, on the ~** *We stood on the footpath and waited for a gap in the traffic.* **| up a/the ~ | ~ across, ~ along, ~ alongside, ~ from, ~ over, ~ through, ~ to** *the footpath through the wood*

footprint *noun*

ADJ. **clear | fresh | muddy, wet**

VERB + FOOTPRINT **leave, make** *The intruder had left some clear footprints in the flower beds. Her wet boots made footprints on the dusty floor.* **| find** *The detective found fresh footprints in the mud next to the victim.* **| follow** *They had fled through the snow, and police had followed their footprints.*

footstep *noun* **(**usually **footsteps)**

ADJ. **heavy | light | dragging** *He heard the sound of heavy, dragging footsteps in the corridor.* **| measured, slow | brisk, hurried, hurrying, quick, rapid, running | loud | soft | uncertain | approaching | receding**

VERB + FOOTSTEP **hear, listen to | listen for** *listening for her mother's footsteps* **| retrace** *I am retracing the footsteps of the lost expedition.*

FOOTSTEP + VERB **run, walk | halt, stop** *The footsteps halted in the doorway.* **| approach, come** *The footsteps came closer as she listened.* **| recede | pass (on)** *The footsteps passed on, receding down the corridor.* **| descend the stairs | falter | die away, fade (away)** *Her footsteps died away as she walked down the path.* **| crunch, echo, pound, sound** *Hurried footsteps sounded on the stairs.*

PHRASES **the sound of (sb's) footsteps**

footwork *noun*

ADJ. **deft, fancy, fine, good, neat, nimble**

VERB + FOOTWORK **show** *She showed some nimble footwork and looked a promising player.*

forbid *verb*

ADV. **strictly** *Smoking is strictly forbidden.* **| absolutely, totally, utterly** *You cannot do that. I absolutely forbid it.* **| expressly, specifically**

PREP. **from** *He was forbidden from leaving the country.*

force *noun*

1 **physical strength, power or violence**

ADJ. **considerable, great, terrible, tremendous | full, maximum | brute, sheer | reasonable | sufficient | excessive | unlawful | deadly, lethal | explosive | physical | gale** *The wind was increasing to gale force.*

VERB + FORCE **resort to, use** *In the end, we had to resort to brute force to get the door open.* **| take sth by** *The troops marched in and took the city by force.* **| feel** *Even the opposition MPs felt the force of the prime minister's argument.*

PREP. **by ~** *The king made laws and imposed them by force.*

PHRASES **catch/experience/feel/meet/take the full force of sth** *Our shop took the full force of the bomb blast. I felt the full force of her criticism.* **| meet force with force** *The country's attempts to meet force with force* (= resist an attack using force) *led to the outbreak of war.* **| the use of force** *The regulations allow the use of force if necessary.*

2 **effect that causes sth to move**

ADJ. **powerful, strong | weak | attractive | repulsive | balanced | external, internal** *Deep internal forces cause movements of the earth's crust.* **| lateral | centrifugal, centripetal, electromagnetic, electromotive, gravitational, mechanical, nuclear, tidal**

VERB + FORCE **exert** *The sun exerts a force on the earth.* **| increase | decrease | balance** *The forces of expansion are balanced by forces of contraction.*

FORCE + VERB **balance sth**

FORCE + NOUN **field** *the force field of a magnet (figurative) It was as if an invisible force field kept us apart.*

PREP. **~ between** *the attractive and repulsive forces between individual particles*

PHRASES **a balance of forces** *the balance of nuclear forces in atoms* **| the force of**

gravity3 authority of sth

ADJ. **binding, legal, statutory** *The contract was not signed and has no binding force.*

VERB + FORCE **come into** *The new law comes into force as from midnight tomorrow.* **| bring sth into**

PREP. **in ~** *Some laws relating to obsolete customs are still in force.*

PHRASES **the force of law** *Professional standards often do not have the force of law* (= cannot be enforced).

4 **sb/sth with power/influence**

ADJ. **considerable, formidable, great, irresistible, major, overwhelming, potent, powerful, significant, strong | active, controlling, dominant, driving, moving | motivating | persuasive | constructive, creative, dynamic, positive, progressive | destructive, disruptive, negative, subversive** *She was seen as a potentially subversive force within the party.* **| cohesive, unifying | competitive, conflicting, countervailing, reactionary | internal | external, international, outside** *The play portrays a marriage torn apart by external forces.* **| natural** *powerful natural forces such as earthquakes and drought* **| spiritual, supernatural | dark, demonic, evil, malevolent** *'There are dark forces in the universe,' he raved, 'and we are powerless against them!'* **| cultural, economic, intellectual, market, moral, political, productive, revolutionary, social** *powerful social and economic forces*

VERB + FORCE **remain** *Though officially retired, she remains the creative force behind the design business.* **| balance** *This is a politician who does not like to balance market forces.*

PREP. **~ behind** *Local parents were the driving force behind the project.* **| ~ for** *Competition is a force for change in industry.*

PHRASES **a balance of forces** *shifts in the balance of political forces in Europe* **| a force to be reckoned with** *With its new players, the team is now very much a force to be reckoned with.*

5 **group of people trained for a particular purpose**

ADJ. **large | small, token** *a token force of only 300 men* **| 100-strong, etc. | crack, elite, special** *These elite forces are the best equipped and trained in the world.* **| combined, joint** *the combined forces of MI5 and Scotland Yard a joint task force* **| allied, coalition, multinational | strategic | labour, sales** *a company's labour force the country's labour force* **| armed, military, paramilitary | government, loyal | enemy, guerrilla, hostile, occupying, opposition, rebel | regular | reserve | volunteer | conventional | nuclear | assault, defence, expeditionary, fighting, invasion, peace, peacekeeping, police, security, strike** (See also **task force**.) **| air, airborne, amphibious, ground, land, naval**

VERB + FORCE **assemble, create, form, mobilize, set up** *A large expeditionary force is now being assembled.* **| send** *the decision to send armed forces over the border* **| deploy, use** *A small peacekeeping force will be deployed in the area.* **| withdraw | demobilize | command, head (up), lead | join** *She decided to join the armed forces.* **| combine, join** *The two companies have joined forces to form a new consortium.*

FORCE + VERB **control sth** *Rebel forces now control most of the capital.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *people in the security forces*

PHRASES **a member of a force, the withdrawal of a force** *a UN deadline for the withdrawal of forces*

foreboding *noun*

ADJ. **deep, gloomy**

VERB + FOREBODING **feel, have** *I felt a gloomy foreboding that something was going to go wrong.* **| be full of** *He returned, full of foreboding, to the scene of the accident.* **| fill sb with**

PREP. **with (a) ~** *The sky was dull, with a foreboding of rain.* **| ~ of** *She had a foreboding of danger.*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of foreboding**

forecast *noun*

ADJ. **good, optimistic, promising | gloomy, pessimistic | conservative | accurate, correct | detailed | revised | annual | early | long-range, long-term** *a long-range weather forecast* **| short-term** *a short-term forecast of the UK economy* **| official | economic, financial, market, traffic, weather | cash-flow, cost, earnings, growth, profit, revenue, sales**

VERB + FORECAST **prepare, produce | give, issue, make, provide** *The government has issued a pessimistic economic forecast.* **| revise, update | rely on | be in line with** *The interest rate is in line with the forecast.*

FORECAST + VERB **predict sth, say sth, suggest sth** *Some forecasts suggest that the increase in heart disease will continue for some time.* **| assume sth | be based on sth** *forecasts based on a complicated procedure*

PREP. **~ about** *Forecasts about the economy are often misleading.* **| ~ for** *forecasts for earnings forecasts for different sectors of the industry forecasts for the year*

forecast *verb*

ADV. **accurately, correctly | originally** *higher costs than those originally forecast*

VERB + FORECAST **be difficult to, be hard to**

PHRASES **be widely forecast** *a result that was widely forecast*

forefront *noun* **the forefront**

VERB + FOREFRONT **remain at/in** *Education remains at the forefront of the state's planning.* **| keep sb/sth at/in/to | come into/to** *She came to the forefront as governor after the political change.* **| bring sb/sth to, place sb/sth at/in/to, push sb/sth into/to, put sb/sth (back) at/in, take sb/sth into/to, thrust sb/sth into/to** *The new factory could put the town back at the forefront of steelmaking.*

PREP. **at/in the ~ (of)** *issues at the forefront of government policy*

PHRASES **at/in/to the forefront of sb's mind** *This question remained at the forefront of her mind.*

foreground *noun*

VERB + FOREGROUND **occupy** *A happy family occupies the foreground of the painting.*

PREP. **in the ~** *This issue is very much in the foreground.*

forehead *noun*

ADJ. **broad, high, wide | domed | sloping | bald | furrowed, wrinkled | smooth**

VERB + FOREHEAD **wrinkle | mop, wipe | hit, rub, slap, smack, tap** *He groaned and slapped his forehead, as if suddenly remembering something obvious.*

PREP. **across your ~** *He rubbed a hand across his forehead as though he were tired.* **| from your ~** *He wiped the sweat from his forehead.* **| in the ~** *He went to bed complaining of a pain in the forehead.* **| off your ~** *She pushed her wet hair off her forehead.* **| over your ~** *His hair fell over his forehead.*

foreign *adj.*

1 **not coming from your own country**

VERBS **be, look, sound** *The name sounded foreign.*

ADV. **slightly** *a slightly foreign accent* **| distinctly** *He was a small man, distinctly foreign in appearance.*

2 **foreign to sb: not typical of sb/not known to sb**

VERBS **be, feel, seem**

ADV. **very | completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly** *This kind of behaviour is completely foreign to her.*

forerunner *noun*

ADJ. **early, immediate** *an early forerunner of the modern jet engine* **| direct**

foresee *verb*

ADV. **clearly | reasonably** *He could not reasonably have foreseen the consequences.*

VERB + FORESEE **can/could** *We could foresee no difficulties with these proposals.* **| be difficult to, be impossible to** *It is impossible to foresee the future.*

foresight *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great**

VERB + FORESIGHT **have** *He had had the foresight to bring in the washing before the rain started.* **| show** *The plans showed great foresight.* **| lack**

PHRASES **a lack of foresight**

forest *noun*

ADJ. **dense, thick | impenetrable | dark | native, natural | ancient, primeval, virgin | rain** (also **rainforest**), **tropical | coniferous, deciduous | beech, birch, pine, etc.**

QUANT. **stretch, tract** *a large stretch of virgin forest*

VERB + FOREST **plant | chop down, clear, cut down, destroy** *Forest is being cleared to make way for new farming land.* **| be covered by/in/with** *Much of Europe was once covered in forest.*

FOREST + VERB **stretch** *Thick forest stretched as far as the eye could see.*

FOREST + NOUN **tree | floor | land | fire**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *They got lost in the forest.* **| through a/the ~** *We slashed our way through the dense forest.*

PHRASES **the edge/heart/middle of the forest**

forestry *nou*n

ADJ. **commercial, plantation | sustainable | tropical**

FORESTRY + NOUN **plantation | practice | track | worker | industry, management | policy, programme, project, strategy | department**

forethought *noun*

VERB + FORETHOUGHT **have** *We had had the forethought to book places in advance.*

PREP. **with/without ~** *He had made the remark completely without forethought.*

PHRASES **a lack of forethought**

forgery *noun* > Note at CRIME

forget *verb*

ADV. **clean, completely, entirely, quite, totally** *I'm terribly sorry?I clean forgot to give your brother the message.* **| almost, nearly | never** *I'll never forget the expression on his face.* **| quickly, soon | instantly, promptly** *'I will,' she promised, and promptly forgot about it.* **| momentarily, temporarily** *Her joy was so infectious that he momentarily forgot his own fears for the future.* **| easily** *The experience of nearly getting killed is not easily forgotten.* **| conveniently** *(ironic) He conveniently forgot to tell me he was married.*

VERB + FORGET **seem to** *You seem to forget that it was your idea in the first place.* **| tend to | want to | try to | be easy to** *It is easy to forget that not all countries have these advantages.* **| let sb** *Let's forget last night, shall we?* **| make sb**

PREP. **about** *Oh yes! I almost forgot about the party.*

PHRASES **forget all about sth** *In the excitement I forgot all about my little brother.* **| forgive and forget** *It was all a long time ago and now Ellen found she could forgive and forget.* **| keep forgetting** *She keeps forgetting where she's put her glasses.* **| largely forgotten** *His pioneering work in the field was largely forgotten until the late 1940s.*

forgive *verb*

ADV. **quite** *I suspect that Rodney has never quite forgiven either of them.* **| never | easily** *Donna would not easily forgive Beth's silly attempt to trick her.*

VERB + FORGIVE **be able/unable to, can/could** *I couldn't forgive him.* **| be easy to** *An insult like that isn't easy to forgive.* **| ask sb to, beg sb to** *He fell to his knees and begged God to forgive him.* **| try to**

PREP. **for** *She never forgave him for losing her ring.*

PHRASES **forgive and forget** *He was not the sort of man to forgive and forget.*

forgiveness *noun*

ADJ. **complete**

VERB + FORGIVENESS **find, have, receive** *Do I have your forgiveness?* **| ask (for), beg (for), pray for, seek | find** *victims of violence who can nevertheless find forgiveness in their hearts* **| offer (sb), show (sb)**

PREP. **~ for** *He begged her forgiveness for his mistake.*

forgo *verb*

ADV. **willingly** *She would willingly forgo a birthday treat if only her warring parents would declare a truce.*

VERB + FORGO **have to** *Time to prepare was a luxury he would have to forgo.* **| decide to | be prepared to, be willing to**

fork *noun*

1 **tool for eating**

ADJ. **toasting**

VERB + FORK **pick up | put down | use**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *She impaled a piece of meat on her fork.* **| with a ~** *Mash the mixture with a fork.*

PHRASES **a knife and fork** *He put the knives and forks on the table.*

2 **place where sth divides into two parts**

ADJ. **left/left-hand, right/right-hand**

VERB + FORK **take** *As you pass the farm, take the right fork of the track up the hill.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *Bear left at the fork in the road.* **| ~ in** *sitting in the fork of the tree*

forlorn *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound, stand** *The house stood forlorn and empty.* **| become**

ADV. **very | quite, utterly** *She didn't belong, and felt utterly forlorn.* **| almost | rather, somewhat**

form *noun*

1 type of sth/way of doing sth

ADJ. **common** *Strikes are the most common form of industrial protest.* | **extreme** *an extreme form of socialism* | **pure** *In its purest form, the substance is highly explosive.* | **complex, simple** | **mild** | **virulent** *a virulent form of flu* | **early, final** *an early form of bicycle The document was edited before being circulated in its final form.* | **art, literary, musical** *Story-telling has acquired the status of an art form.* | **life** *primitive life forms at the bottom of the sea* | **digital, electronic** *The data is stored in digital form.* | **graphic, tabular** *The results of the survey are shown below in tabular form.* | **liquid**

VERB + FORM **take** *Bullying can take many forms.*

PREP. **in … ~** *The gas is stored in liquid form.* | **in the ~ of** *These costs were passed on to the tenants in the form of higher rents.* | **~ of** *Swimming is one of the best forms of exercise.*

PHRASES **in any shape or form** *The company will not tolerate discrimination in any shape or form.* | **in some form or other** *We spend most of our time communicating in some form or other.*

2 shape

ADJ. **human** *paintings of the human form* | **adult**

VERB + FORM **alter, change** *a mythical creature that could change its form* | **assume, take on** *a god who could take on human form*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Two weeks later the moth will emerge in its adult form.*

3 piece of paper with questions on it

ADJ. **application, booking, entry, order**

VERB + FORM **complete, fill in/out** *Please complete the application form and return it to us.* | **sign** | **return**

4 **strength/fitness**

ADJ. **fine, good | poor | current, present**

VERB + FORM **maintain** *The team is hoping that it can maintain its current form.*

PREP. **in ~** *She was in fine form for the tournament. Barcelona are the team in form.* **| off ~** *Her recent illness possibly explains why she was off form in this race.* **| on (sb's) ~** *He'll be a difficult opponent to beat; he's really on form today. On his present form it seems likely that he will win the match.* **| out of ~** *The team was out of form and did not play as well as expected.*

form *verb*

1 **make/organize sth**

VERB + FORM **attempt to, try to | agree to, decide to | ask sb to, invite sb to** *The leader of the party with the most seats is invited to form a government.* **| help (to)**

PHRASES **newly/recently formed** *a newly formed political party*

2 **make sth into a shape**

PREP. **into** *She formed the clay into a ball.*

PHRASES **fully formed** *The plan came in a flash of inspiration, fully formed.* **| perfectly formed** *a perfectly formed body*

formal *adj.*

1 **very correct/official**

VERBS **be, seem, sound | become**

ADV. **extremely, very | strictly** *Learning was by rote and strictly formal.* **| almost** *The greeting was polite, almost formal.* **| fairly, quite, rather, relatively | oddly** *Her words sounded oddly formal.* **| stiffly** *His manner was stiffly formal.*

2 **concerned with the way sth is done**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **merely, purely** *Getting approval for the plan is a purely formal matter: nobody will seriously oppose it.* **| largely** *The monarch retains largely formal duties.*

formality *noun*

1 **action that is necessary according to custom/law**

ADJ. **mere, simple** *Your acceptance into the club will be a mere formality.* **| customs, immigration, legal**

VERB + FORMALITY **complete, deal with, go through** *It only took a few minutes to complete the legal formalities.* **| dispense with** *Let's dispense with the formalities and get down to work.*

PHRASES **just/merely/only a formality** *She was clearly the best candidate for the job, so her interview was just a formality.*

2 **polite formal behaviour**

ADJ. **cold, cool, icy, stiff**

QUANT. **degree, level** *It is important to be aware of the level of formality required at any social function.*

VERB + FORMALITY **maintain** *She preferred to maintain a cool formality in her dealings with her manager.*

format *noun*

ADJ. **large, small | standard**

VERB + FORMAT **change** *For this year, we have decided to change the format of the conference slightly.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The book is now available in a slightly smaller format.*

formation *noun*

1 **making/developing sth**

ADJ. **policy** *the top civil servants who are responsible for policy formation*

VERB + FORMATION **lead to, result in** *This dispute led to the formation of a new breakaway group.*

2 **arrangement/group/pattern**

ADJ. **close, tight | battle** *The troops advanced in battle formation.* **| family, household, social** *changing patterns of marriage and family formation*

FORMATION + NOUN **dancing, flying**

PREP. **in a … ~** *The men were grouped in a close formation.* **| in ~** *a squadron of planes flying in formation*

3 **sth that has been formed**

ADJ. **cloud, geological, rock | military, political**

formidable *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** *The task looks formidable.* **| remain | find sth** *Men found her formidable.*

ADV. **really, truly, very** *a very formidable opponent* **| a bit, pretty, quite, rather, somewhat**

formula *noun*

1 **group of signs/letters/numbers**

ADJ. **complex, complicated | simple | algebraic, chemical, mathematical, scientific**

VERB + FORMULA **devise, work out** *A simple mathematical formula has been devised to allow you to calculate the interest due.* **| apply, use**

PREP. **~ for** *Do you know the formula for finding the area of a circle?*

2 **method of solving a problem**

ADJ. **good, magic, successful, winning | time-honoured, traditional | face-saving** *The government was forced to find a face-saving formula to cover its misjudgement.* **| peace** *No one has yet come up with a successful peace formula.* **| political**

VERB + FORMULA **have** *No one has a magic formula for keeping youngsters away from crime.* **| come up with, devise, find, hit on, provide, work out** *We think we might have hit on a winning formula.*

PREP. **~ for** *What is their formula for success?*

formulate *verb*

ADV. **fully | carefully, properly** *His ideas are always very carefully formulated.* **| clearly, explicitly | consciously** *He claims that Marx never consciously formulated his own theoretical position.*

VERB + FORMULATE **try to | help (to)**

fort *noun*

ADJ. **hill | Iron Age, Roman, Saxon, etc.** *an Iron Age hill fort*

VERB + FORT **attack, besiege | hold** *Government forces managed to hold the fort.*

FORT + VERB **be/come under attack, be/come under siege** *The fort was under attack for three days.* **| fall** *The fort finally fell after a week of intense fighting.*

PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *All was calm at the fort that night.*

forthcoming *adj.*

1 **available**

VERBS **be** *Help was duly forthcoming.*

ADV. **duly | readily | immediately**

2 **willing to give information**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **unusually | not very**

PREP. **about** *She wasn't very forthcoming about where she'd been.*

forthright *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **very | pretty | characteristically** *MacTavish was characteristically forthright in his reply.*

PREP. **about** *She's always been very forthright about her preferences.*

fortified *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **heavily, strongly**

PREP. **against** *The town was heavily fortified against attack.*

fortnight *noun*

ADJ. **next | last, past, previous | whole**

VERB + FORTNIGHT **spend** *We've spent the last fortnight in Spain.*

FORTNIGHT + VERB **elapse, go by, pass** *A fortnight passed and we still hadn't heard from them.*

PREP. **after a/the ~, during a/the ~, for a/the ~, in a/the ~** *We hope to leave in the next fortnight.* **| over a/the ~, within a/the ~**

fortress *noun*

ADJ. **great | formidable, impregnable, strong | grim**

VERB + FORTRESS **attack, besiege, lay siege to | take** *Greek warriors took the fortress with little effort.* **| hold, occupy**

FORTRESS + VERB **be/come under attack, be/come under siege | fall** *The fortress fell after a nine-day siege.*

FORTRESS + NOUN **town**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *They took refuge in the fortress.*

fortunate *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem | consider sb, count yourself, think sb** *We consider ourselves extremely fortunate.*

ADV. **extremely, particularly, really, very | comparatively, quite, rather | indeed** *He was indeed fortunate in his friends.*

PREP. **for** *It was fortunate for us that the rain stopped.* **| in** *We are fortunate in having quite a lot of land.*

fortune *noun*

1 **luck**

ADJ. **good | ill**

QUANT. **piece, stroke** *By a stroke of good fortune, Steven was still in his office.*

VERB + FORTUNE **have | bring (sb)** *A horseshoe nailed to your door is supposed to bring good fortune.*

FORTUNE + VERB **be on sb's side, favour sb** *For once, fortune was on our side: the weather improved in time for the match.* **| smile on sb** *Fortune smiled on me that day* (= I had good fortune).

PHRASES **as good/ill fortune would have it** *As good fortune would have it, a bus came along just when I needed it.* **| a change in/of fortune** *All we can do is hope for a change in fortune.* **| have the good fortune to do sth** *I had the good fortune to work with people I liked.*

2 **fortunes: what happens to sb/sth**

ADJ. **declining, flagging | changing, fluctuating, mixed** *a year of mixed fortunes for the company* **| economic, electoral**

VERB + FORTUNE **revive** *The party still hopes to revive its flagging electoral fortunes.* **| follow** *fans who follow the fortunes of their chosen team*

FORTUNE + VERB **change, fluctuate** *A company's fortunes can change overnight.* **| improve, rise | decline, fall** *as the country's fortunes rose and fell*

PHRASES **a reversal of fortunes** *The company suffered a great reversal of fortunes when public taste changed.*

3 **what is going to happen to sb in the future**

VERB + FORTUNE **read, tell** *They went to have their fortunes read.*

FORTUNE + NOUN **teller, telling**

4 **very large amount of money**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, immense, large, substantial, vast | small** (= quite large) *Rebuilding the house must have cost a small fortune.* **| family, personal**

VERB + FORTUNE **accumulate, acquire, amass, build (up), make, win | inherit | leave (sb)** *Her aunt died and left her a fortune.* **| lose, squander** *He lost his fortune in the stock market crash of 1929. squandering the family fortune* **| seek** *They went to seek their fortune abroad.* **| be worth** (*informal*) *Some of those old toys are worth a fortune now.* **| cost** (*informal*) **| pay, spend** (*both informal*) *She spends a fortune on clothes!*

PREP. **~ from** *He built his fortune from breeding horses.* **| ~ in** *She made a fortune in the property boom.* **| ~ on** *They sold their house at the right time and made a fortune on it.* **| ~ out** *He has amassed a considerable fortune out of trading shares.*

PHRASES **fame and fortune** *They went to America in search of fame and fortune.* **| heir/heiress to a fortune** *He was sole heir to the family fortune.*

forum *noun*

1 **way people can exchange ideas**

ADJ. **important, useful, valuable | public**

VERB + FORUM **create, provide (sb with) | act as, be used as, serve as**

PREP. **~ for** *The conference provides a useful forum for the exchange of views and ideas.*

2 **meeting at which people can exchange ideas**

ADJ. **open** *The film show was followed by an open forum on editing techniques.* **| international, national**

VERB + FORUM **hold | attend, go to**

FORUM + VERB **take place**

PREP. **~ on** *An international forum on economic development took place in Brussels.*

foster *verb*

ADV. **carefully, deliberately** *The school has carefully fostered its progressive image.* **| energetically**

VERB + FOSTER **help (to) | be designed to**

foul play *noun*

1 **criminal activity**

VERB + FOUL PLAY **suspect | rule out** *The police have ruled out foul play in the case of his death.*

2 **play that is against the rules**

ADJ. **deliberate, serious**

VERB + FOUL PLAY **be guilty of** *He was clearly guilty of foul play and deserved to be sent off.*

foul *noun*

ADJ. **blatant, clear, deliberate, nasty**

VERB + FOUL **commit** *He committed a second clear foul and was sent off.*

PREP. **~ on** *He was sent off for a blatant foul on Giggs.*

foundation *noun*

1 **organization that provides money for sth**

ADJ. **charitable, private**

VERB + FOUNDATION **establish, set up** *a charitable foundation established in 1983*

PREP. **~ for** *a private foundation for sport and the arts*

2 **foundations: parts of a building below the ground**

ADJ. **deep | concrete**

VERB + FOUNDATION **dig, lay** *digging trenches and laying concrete foundations* **| shake, undermine** *The thunder seemed to shake the very foundations of the building. They had dug too deep and undermined the foundations of the house.*

FOUNDATION + NOUN **stone** *In 1853 Queen Victoria laid the foundation stone of the new palace.*

3 **basis for sth**

ADJ. **excellent, firm, good, secure, solid, sound, strong | insecure, shaky, weak | ideological, intellectual, philosophical, political, theoretical | economic**

VERB + FOUNDATION **build, lay, provide (sth with)** *This agreement laid a sound foundation for future cooperation between the two countries.* **| build on** *We now have a firm foundation to build on.* **| rest on** *The peace treaty rests on shaky foundations.* **| rock, shake, strike at, threaten, undermine** *an event which rocked the foundations of British politics*

FOUNDATION + NOUN **course, year** *The Fine Arts degree starts with a foundation year.* **| subjects** *All students have to do the foundation subjects of maths and English.*

PREP. **~ for** *providing a solid foundation for this new democracy*

PHRASES **rock/shake sth to its foundations** *The scandal rocked the legal establishment to its foundations.*

4 facts that show that sth is true

VERB + FOUNDATION **have no** *malicious rumours which have no foundation*

PREP. **without ~** *Rumours of his resignation are entirely without foundation.*

founder *noun*

ADJ. **original | joint** *a wife and husband who are joint founders of the company* **| company**

FOUNDER + NOUN **member** *a founder member of the band*

fountain *noun*

ADJ. **ornamental | drinking** *Children were queuing at the drinking fountain.*

FOUNTAIN + VERB **play, splash** *A white marble fountain played in the middle of the square.*

fox *noun*

ADJ. **urban | rural**

VERB + FOX **hunt**

FOX + VERB **bark** *I heard a fox bark in the dark.*

FOX + NOUN **cub | hunt, hunting**

foyer *noun*

ADJ. **entrance, reception | cinema, hospital, hotel, school, station, theatre | crowded, deserted**

PREP. **across the ~, in the ~** *We arranged to meet up in the foyer of the Hyatt hotel.*

fraction *noun*

1 part/amount

ADJ. **large, significant, sizeable, substantial | mere, small, tiny** *A mere fraction of available wind energy is currently utilized.*

PREP. **~ of** *Why not grow your own fruit at a fraction of the price?*

PHRASES **just/only a fraction** *The average income is high, though many people earn just a fraction of that average.*

2 exact part of a number

ADJ. **vulgar | decimal | improper** *11/8 is an improper fraction, equivalent to one and three-eighths.*

VERB + FRACTION **express sth as** *Express 25% as a fraction.*

fracture *noun*

ADJ. **fatigue, stress** *He suffered a stress fracture of the right foot.* **| hairline | compound, depressed, double, multiple, simple, spiral | hip, leg, skull, spinal, etc.**

VERB + FRACTURE **suffer, sustain**

fragile *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | remain**

ADV. **exceedingly, extremely, very | a little, rather | ecologically** *the ecologically fragile mountain forests*

fragrance *noun*

ADJ. **exquisite, fresh, pleasant, sweet | delicate, faint, gentle, light, soft, subtle | floral**

VERB + FRAGRANCE **have** *This perfume has a light, fresh fragrance.* **| smell**

FRAGRANCE + VERB **fill sth** *The fragrance of lavender filled the room.* **| be reminiscent of sth** *Geranium oil has a sweet fragrance reminiscent of roses.*

PHRASES **full of fragrance** *fruits full of exquisite fragrance and flavour*

fragrant *adj.*

VERBS **be, smell | become**

ADV. **extremely, very, wonderfully** *a garden full of wonderfully fragrant flowers* **| mildly, slightly, subtly**

PREP. **with** *The air was fragrant with lavender.*

frail *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get, grow**

ADV. **extremely, very | increasingly | rather | mentally, physically** *Many old people become mentally frail.*

PHRASES **old and frail** *She looked old and frail.*

frailty *noun*

ADJ. **increasing** *Despite increasing physical frailty, he continued to write stories.* **|** **human** *a figure of authority, but one all too prone to human frailties* **|** **mental, physical**

frame *noun*

1 **of a door/picture/window**

ADJ. **door, window | photo, photograph, picture**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *pictures in gold frames*

3 **shape of sb's body**

ADJ. **athletic, big, bony, large, lean, muscular, powerful, skinny, slender, slight, small, tall, wiry**

VERB + FRAME **have** *She has quite a small frame.*

PREP. **with a … ~** *a man with a lean, athletic frame*

framework *noun*

ADJ. **basic, broad, general | wider** *The needs of individual schools need to be considered in a wider framework.* **| existing | flexible | comprehensive | coherent | analytical, conceptual, theoretical | legal, political | administrative, management, policy | economic, financial | chronological, historical** *Carbon dating provides the archaeologist with a basic chronological framework.*

VERB + FRAMEWORK **establish, have, set** *They established a basic framework of ground rules for discussions.* **| offer (sb), provide (sb with)**

PREP. **outside a/the ~** *Negotiations were also conducted outside the framework of the treaty talks proper.* **| within a/the ~** *The committee will work within the framework of certain broad objectives.* **| ~ for** *a legal framework for the regulation of public access to databases*

franchise *noun*

1 **right to vote in elections**

ADJ. **democratic | universal** *the fight for a universal franchise* **| limited, restricted | parliamentary**

VERB + FRANCHISE **qualify for** *It was decided that all men in the armed forces should qualify for the franchise.* **| exercise** *He had to exercise the franchise on behalf of other council members.* **| enlarge, extend, widen** *After the Second World War the franchise was extended to all adults over eighteen.* **| restrict**

2 **permission to sell a company's goods/services**

ADJ. **catering, fast food, rail, television, etc.**

VERB + FRANCHISE **have, hold** *the company that holds the rail franchise for the south-east of the country* **| acquire, buy, win** *The company has just won a television franchise.* **| award (sb), give sb, grant sb** *The franchise was awarded to a French company.* **| auction, sell** *TV franchises will be auctioned to the highest bidder.* **| retain | lose** *The ITV licensee lost its franchise to Carlton TV.*

FRANCHISE + NOUN **system | business, company, operation | holder | agreement | auction, bid | fee**

PREP. **~ for** *The diving school has acquired a franchise for scuba equipment.*

PHRASES **on a franchise basis** *Catering in the schools is run on a franchise basis.*

frank *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, remarkably, very | absolutely, perfectly, quite** *Let me be perfectly frank with you.* **| fairly | delightfully, disarmingly, refreshingly** *She surveyed Sophie from top to toe in a disarmingly frank way.* **| brutally** *She was brutally frank in her assessment of our chances.* **| surprisingly**

PREP. **about** *Macmillan was quite frank about his concerns.* **| with** *To be frank with you, I don't really think you've got a chance.*

PHRASES **full and frank** *a full and frank exchange of views*

frantic *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become, get, go | drive sb** *The children have been driving me frantic all day!*

ADV. **really | absolutely, quite** *He was quite frantic by the time we got home.* **| increasingly | almost**

PREP. **with** *We were starting to get frantic with worry.*

fraud *noun*

ADJ. **serious | massive | complex, sophisticated | attempted | alleged | computer** *A bank lost several million pounds through a sophisticated computer fraud.* **| electoral, financial, insurance, tax, etc.**

FRAUD + NOUN **squad** *detectives from the fraud squad* > Note at CRIME(for verbs)

freak *noun*

1 **strange/unusual event**

FREAK + NOUN **accident, result, storm, wave** *A driver was killed in a freak accident when a cow fell from a bridge. The manager described the 8?0 defeat as a freak result.*

PREP. **~ of** *This was no more than a freak of history.*

PHRASES **by some freak of sth** *By some freak of fate, she won an enormous sum of money.*

2 **person with a very strong interest in sth**

ADJ. **computer, fitness, health, speed** *For the real speed freak, there is a 2-litre, fuel-injection version of the car.* **| control** *Her dad seems to be a bit of a control freak, always keeping a close watch on what anybody's doing.*

PHRASES **a bit of a freak**

3 **sb who is considered to be strange**

VERB + FREAK **feel | regard sb as** *Other students regarded him as a freak.*

PHRASES **a bit of a freak** *I felt a bit of a freak in my strange clothes.*

freckle *noun*

ADJ. **brown, dark, golden, light, pale**

VERB + FRECKLE **be covered with, have**

PHRASES **a crop/sprinkling of freckles** *She had wonderful clear skin with an attractive sprinkling of freckles.*

free *adj., adv.*

1 not controlled by rules

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become | remain | leave sb** *The government wants to leave companies free to make their own decisions.*

ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally** *The students are entirely free to choose their own courses.* **| fairly, reasonably, relatively**

PREP. **from** *The organization wants to remain free from government control.*

2 not in prison; not restricted/trapped

VERBS **be, roam** *animals roaming free across the plains* **| break, get, pull, walk** *The ship broke free from its moorings. They tied him up but he managed to get free. She managed to pull free of her attacker. She walked free from jail.* **| remain | cut sb/sth, let sb/sth, pull sb/sth, set sb/sth** *He was trapped by his leg, but his rescuers cut him free. They let their prisoner free. The birds were set free.*

ADV. **completely, entirely, totally**

3 costing nothing

VERBS **be, come** *This full-colour poster comes free with the magazine.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely, entirely, totally**

PHRASES **for free** *We might be able to get some plants for free.* **| free of charge** *We will send you our booklet free of charge.*

4 free from/of sth: without sth

VERBS **be | become | remain, stay | keep sth** *We've managed to keep the garden free of weeds this year.*

ADV. **completely, entirely, totally** *At last he's totally free from pain.* **| relatively**

5 not being used

VERBS **be, look, seem | become | keep sth** *The hospital needs to keep some beds free for emergencies.*

ADV. **completely**

6 not busy

VERBS **be** *Are you free this afternoon?* **| keep sth** *We try and keep Sundays free.*

ADV. **completely, entirely, totally | fairly, pretty, reasonably**

free *verb*

VERB + FREE **struggle to, try to** *She struggled to free herself from his grip.* **| manage to**

PREP. **from** *They succeeded in freeing their friends from prison.* **| of** *He had finally been freed of his responsibilities.*

PHRASES **be freed on bail** *The court ruled that he should be freed on bail of $50,000.*

freedom *noun*

ADJ. **complete, full, maximum, perfect, total | considerable, great** *The new syllabus allows students greater freedom of choice.* **| comparative, relative | basic, fundamental** *Living without war is a fundamental freedom.* **| individual, personal** *Individual freedom should be balanced against the rights of the community.* **| new-found** *When she lost her job, she at first relished her new-found freedom.* **| academic, artistic, creative, economic, intellectual, political, press, religious, sexual** *Without academic freedom, we cannot do any research.*

QUANT. **measure** *Teachers can exercise a measure of freedom in their choice of materials.*

VERB + FREEDOM **enjoy, have** *Publishers here enjoy comparative freedom to publish what they want.* **| enjoy, relish** *I was enjoying the freedom of not having to go to work.* **| exercise | achieve, gain, obtain, secure, win** *The women have won many new freedoms for themselves.* **| maintain, retain | give up, lose, surrender** *As Mike saw it, marriage would mean giving up his freedom.* **| cost sb** *His inability to resist temptation would eventually cost him his freedom.* **| allow sb, give sb, permit sb | curtail, inhibit, reduce, restrict, threaten** *I don't want to curtail my daughter's freedom. Our freedom was threatened by press censorship.*

PREP. **~ from** *freedom from fear and pain* **| ~ in** *Branch managers have considerable freedom in running their offices.* **| ~ of** *The Official Secrets Act was amended to allow greater freedom of information.*

PHRASES **freedom of choice, freedom of expression/speech, freedom of movement, freedom of the press**

journalist *noun*

ADJ. **brilliant, good | experienced | leading, well-known | professional | freelance | investigative | foreign | magazine, newspaper, print, tabloid | broadcast, radio, television | business, environmental, fashion, financial, literary, political, sports**

VERB + JOURNALIST **speak to, talk to, tell** *She was warned against speaking to journalists about the affair.*

JOURNALIST + VERB **investigate sth | write (sth)** *a journalist writing for a current affairs publication* **| report (on) sth**

PREP. **~ on/with** *an investigative journalist with a French newspaper* > Note at JOB

freeze *noun*

1 period of weather with a temperature below 0°

ADJ. **big** *The weather report advised us to prepare for a big freeze.*

2 putting a particular level on sth

ADJ. **immediate | complete, total** *a total freeze on gas emissions* **| virtual | pay, price, wage**

VERB + FREEZE **bring in, impose** *The government has imposed a price freeze on petrol.* **| announce, declare | lift** *It's too expensive to lift the freeze on pay.*

PREP. **~ on** *a freeze on bus fares*

freeze *verb*

1 become ice/extremely cold

ADV. **solid** *The pond had frozen solid.* | **over, up** *The lake has frozen over. The pipes have frozen up.*

PHRASES **freeze to death** *Hundreds of homeless people could freeze to death this winter.*

2 preserve food

ADV. **well** *Many vegetables freeze very well.*

3 stop moving

ADV. **suddenly** | **for a moment/second, momentarily** *His smile froze for a moment.*

VERB + FREEZE **seem to** *Suddenly, Ronny seemed to freeze.*

PREP. **in/with** *She froze with horror when she saw the body.* | **into** *Maggie's face had frozen into a cold mask.*

PHRASES **freeze to the spot** *He was so surprised he froze to the spot.*

4 wages/prices

ADV. **effectively** *Wages were effectively frozen for six months.*

PREP. **at** *Prices have been frozen at this level for over a year now.*

freezer *noun*

ADJ. **domestic | fridge | chest | deep**

VERB + FREEZER **fill, stock | defrost**

FREEZER + NOUN **cabinet, compartment | bag, container | centre** *They bought all their frozen food from the same freezer centre.* **| contents** *Your freezer contents can be insured against loss.*

freezing point *noun*

VERB + FREEZING POINT **get to, reach**

PREP. **above ~** *In the Antarctic, the temperature rarely rises above freezing point.* **| at ~** *the changes that take place at freezing point* **| below ~** *The temperature dropped below freezing point this afternoon.*

freezing *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look** *That water looks freezing.*

ADV. **bloody** *(taboo)* **| absolutely** *It's absolutely freezing out there!*

PHRASES **freezing cold** *It was a freezing cold day.*

freight *noun*

ADJ. **heavy | air, rail, road**

VERB + FREIGHT **carry, handle, haul, move, transfer, transport** *All vehicles carrying freight need a special licence. an agent handling freight and passengers The freight was transferred to a train at Rotterdam.*

FREIGHT + NOUN **car, locomotive, train, transport, wagon** *The train's freight wagons can carry a fully-laden lorry.* **| traffic | depot, terminal, yard | carrier, company | business, industry | service | charges, costs**

French *nou*n > Note at LANGUAGE

frenzy *noun*

ADJ. **erotic | feeding** *The smell of blood sent the sharks into a feeding frenzy.*

VERB + FRENZY **drive sb/sth into, send sb/sth into, throw sb/sth into, whip sb/sth (up) into, work sb/sth into** *He was so angry that he worked himself into a frenzy.*

PREP. **in a/your ~** *She tore the letter open in a frenzy.*

PHRASES **a frenzy of activity, in a frenzy of excitement/rage/violence**

frequency *noun*

1 **rate at which sth happens**

ADJ. **great | increased, increasing | relative** *The relative frequency of this illness in the area is of concern to all doctors.* **| alarming** *Bullets bounced off the rock with alarming frequency.*

VERB + FREQUENCY **decrease in, increase in** *Crime increases in frequency in less settled neighbourhoods.* **| decrease, increase, reduce** *The drug can reduce the frequency and severity of attacks.*

PREP. **with ~** *Accidents of this sort are happening with increasing frequency.*

2 **of a wave**

ADJ. **high, low | ultrasonic | microwave, radio, television, vibration, wave | signal**

FREQUENCY + NOUN **range | band**

frequent *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become** *The attacks have become increasingly frequent.*

ADV. **extremely, very | increasingly | fairly, quite, relatively** *She was a fairly frequent visitor to the house.*

PREP. **among** *Coughs and colds are frequent among young children.*

PHRASES **at frequent intervals** *She phoned home at frequent intervals.*

fresh *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, smell, taste | stay** *Mushrooms don't stay fresh for long.* **| eat sth, have sth** *It's best to eat them fresh.* **| keep sth** *Put it in the fridge to keep it fresh.*

ADV. **really, very | quite**

PHRASES **lovely/nice (and) fresh** *There's some cold beef and a nice fresh loaf.*

friction *noun*

1 **disagreement between people/groups**

ADJ. **considerable, serious | increasing | constant** *I'm exhausted from the constant friction between my boss and my colleagues.*

VERB + FRICTION **cause, create, generate, lead to, produce** *His decision led to considerable friction in his family.* **| prevent**

PREP. **~ between** *friction between neighbours* **| ~ with** *Her requests for time off created friction with her boss.*

PHRASES **a cause/source of friction**

2 **rubbing of one thing against another**

VERB + FRICTION **cause, generate, produce** *Rubbing the stones together produces friction.* **| reduce**

Friday *noun* > Note at DAY

fridge *noun*

ADJ. **domestic**

VERB + FRIDGE **raid** *The kids tend to raid the fridge when they get home from school.* **| fill, stock** *The fridge was stocked with food and drink.* **| defrost**

FRIDGE + NOUN **freezer | door**

friend *noun*

ADJ. **best, bosom, close, dear, good, great, intimate, real, special** *Her best friend at school was called Anna. I'm inviting only my closest friends to the party.* **| faithful, loyal, true | lifelong, long-standing, old** *It was so relaxing to be among old friends.* **| female, male, woman** *He was last seen leaving a restaurant with a female friend.* **| fair-weather** *People he had trusted turned out to be only fair-weather friends* (= stopped being his friends when he was in trouble). **| mutual** *We met each other through a mutual friend.* **| family, personal | childhood, school** *Do you keep in touch with any school friends?*

VERB + FRIEND **become** *They became friends after meeting on holiday.* **| remain, stay** *We stayed friends even after we grew up and left home.* **| find, make** *He finds it difficult to make friends. She's made friends with the little girl who lives next door.* **| win** *He won't win any friends if he carries on talking like that.* **| have** *She doesn't have many good friends.*

PHRASES **a circle of friends** *He introduced me to his circle of friends.* **| a friend of mine, yours, etc.** *I was given this necklace by a good friend of mine.*

friendless *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | leave sb** *With the departure of his remaining colleague he was left friendless.*

ADV. **totally, utterly | virtually**

friendly *adj.*

1 behaving in a kind/pleasant way

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become**

ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, genuinely, really, very** *Frank was a genuinely friendly sort.* **| perfectly** *He seemed detached, almost bored, but perfectly friendly.* **| almost** *For once he seemed almost friendly.* **| quite, reasonably | not exactly, not particularly** *Her manner was not exactly friendly* **| naturally**

PREP. **to, towards** *He was always friendly towards me.*

2 being friends

VERBS **be, seem | become, get | remain**

ADV. **very | pretty, quite** *They were quite friendly when they worked together.*

PREP. **with** *She's very friendly with Maureen.*

PHRASES **be on friendly terms (with sb)** *We have managed to remain on friendly terms.*

3 easy to use/helpful/not harmful

VERBS **be**

ADV. **environmentally** *environmentally friendly cleaning products*

PHRASES **child-/family-friendly** *Employers are being encouraged to adopt family-friendly measures like flexible hours.* **| ozone-friendly, user-friendly**

friendship *noun*

ADJ. **beautiful, close, intimate, deep, firm, great, warm** *Their quarrel meant the end of a beautiful friendship. They formed a close friendship at university.* | **innocent** *Their affair had started out as an innocent friendship.* | **eternal, lasting, lifelong, long, long-standing** *They made vows of eternal friendship to each other. It was a period of her life when she made some lifelong friendships.*

VERB + FRIENDSHIP **develop, establish, form, make, start up, strike up** *He finds it difficult to make lasting friendships. Jo struck up a friendship with a girl on her course.* | **cement** *We cemented our friendship with a meal and a few drinks.* | **cultivate** *He's keen on cultivating his friendship with the Edwards family.* | **promote** *The aim of the culture festival is to promote friendship between the two countries.* | **renew** *It will be a pleasure to renew our friendship.* | **destroy, spoil, wreck** *How can you let such a silly incident wreck your friendship?* | **betray** *He betrayed our friendship by revealing my secret to his cousin.*

FRIENDSHIP + VERB **develop** *Friendships need time to develop.*

PREP. **~ between** *He was jealous of the friendship between his wife and daughters.* | **~ with** *Her mother did not approve of her friendship with Ahmed.*

PHRASES **bonds/ties of friendship** *The ties of friendship between us will never be broken.* | **the hand of friendship** *The president extended the hand of friendship towards the country's former enemy.* | **a gesture of friendship** *In a gesture of friendship, the president invited his former enemies to a reception.* | **an offer of friendship** *She offended them by turning down their offer of friendship.* | **a spirit of friendship** *We hope the spirit of friendship and cooperation between our countries will remain strong.* | **a token of your friendship** *Please accept this gift as a token of our friendship.*

fright *noun*

1 **fear**

VERB + FRIGHT **take | be shaking/trembling with | die of** *(informal) He almost died of fright when the fish jumped out of the water.*

PREP. **in ~** *She cried out in fright.* **| with ~** *They were paralysed with fright.* **| ~ at** *The birds took fright at the sight of the cat and flew off.*

2 **sudden feeling of fear**

ADJ. **awful, bad, dreadful, nasty, terrible**

VERB + FRIGHT **get, have** *Emma got such a fright that she dropped the tray. I had a terrible fright this morning when I saw you there.* **| give sb**

PHRASES **a bit of a fright, the fright of your life** *You gave me the fright of my life, jumping out like that!* **| quite a fright**

frighten *verb*

ADV. **really** *The prospect of war really frightens me.* **| quite | almost | easily** *a man who doesn't frighten easily* (= become frightened easily)

VERB + FRIGHTEN **want to | not mean to** *I didn't mean to frighten you.* **| try to**

PHRASES **frighten sb out of their wits, frighten sb to death, frighten the life out of sb** *(all informal) Don't creep around like that! You frightened the life out of me!*

frightened *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *I got quite frigntened when he lost his temper.* **| remain**

ADV. **badly, desperately, extremely, genuinely, really, terribly, very | thoroughly | almost | a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather | suddenly | physically** *I felt frightened, physically frightened.*

PREP. **about** *I was nervous and frightened about the future.* **| at** *Simon was badly frightened at the result of his action.* **| by** *Most of us are frightened by our emotions.* **| of** *I'm rather frightened of dogs.*

PHRASES **frightened out of your wits, frightened to death** *(both informal) She was frightened to death when she saw her small daughter on the edge of the cliff.*

frightening *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *The situation was getting quite frightening.* **| make sth** *What can we do to make the experience less frightening?* **| find sth** *He found the responsibility rather frightening.*

ADV. **extremely, genuinely, positively, really, truly, very | almost | a bit, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, rather**

PREP. **for** *This is extremely frightening for elderly people.* **| to** *It was all very frightening to a small boy.*

fringe *noun*

1 **hair**

ADJ. **heavy, thick | light, wispy**

VERB + FRINGE **grow | cut, trim** *My fringe needs trimming.* **| brush, push** *She kept brushing her fringe off her forehead.*

PREP. **from beneath/under your ~** *She stared at us from beneath her fringe.* **| in a ~** *She has her hair pulled forward in a fringe.*

2 **outer edge of a place/group/society, etc.**

ADJ. **outer | marginal | eastern, western, etc. | coastal, urban | delinquent, lunatic** *the delinquent fringe of the Nationalist Party*

VERB + FRINGE **keep to, remain on, stand on** *He has always remained on the fringes of mainstream politics.*

FRINGE + NOUN **area | group | meeting | theatre, venue** *He moved from fringe theatre to mainstream when he was chosen to play a leading role on Broadway.*

PREP. **along the ~** *the forests along the eastern fringe of the Andes* **| around the ~** *new housing around the urban fringe* **| at the ~** *They pitched their tents at the fringe of the open fields.* **| beyond the ~** *Beyond this marginal fringe no agriculture is possible.* **| on the ~(s)** *These people live on the fringes of society.*

frog *noun*

FROG + VERB **hop, jump, leap, plop into sth** *The frog plopped into the pond.* **| croak**

FROG + NOUN **spawn** (also **frogspawn)**

front *noun*

1 **line/area where fighting takes place in a war**

ADJ. **eastern, western, etc.** *Thousands were killed on the eastern front.*

VERB + FRONT **send sb to** *Even young teenagers were sent to the front.*

PREP. **at the ~** *A new battalion arrived at the front.* **| on the~** *They had to fight on two fronts.*

2 **way of behaving that hides your true feelings**

ADJ. **bold, brave**

VERB + FRONT **put on** *She put on a brave front, but I knew how miserable she was.*

PREP. **~ for** *Her aggressive behaviour is just a front for her shyness.*

PHRASES **present a united front** *However much the directors disagree with each other, they always present a united front to the world.*

frontier *noun*

1 **border between countries**

ADJ. **common** *Neither country would guarantee the integrity of their common frontier.* | **eastern, northern, etc.** *There were very few border controls on the south-western frontier.* | **Franco-Spanish, Hispano-French, Spanish-French, French, etc.**

VERB + FRONTIER **cross** *The army crossed the frontier in the middle of the night.* | **control, defend, guard** *The rebels control the frontier and the surrounding area.*

FRONTIER + NOUN **controls, post** | **guard** | **area, province, region, town, zone** | **line**

PREP. **across the ~** *Many people travelling across the frontier were illegal immigrants.* | **along the ~** *an army grouping along the frontier* | **at the ~** *There was an army checkpoint at the frontier.* | **on the ~** *people living on the German frontier* | **over the ~** *They were forced to retreat back over the frontier.* | **~ between** *the frontier between India and Pakistan* | **~ with** *France's frontier with Germany*

2 **border between what we know and do not know**

ADJ. **final, new**

VERB + FRONTIER **explore** *Space is the final frontier for us to explore.* | **advance, push back** *The scientists' work will push back the frontiers of physics.*

frost *noun*

1 **weather condition**

ADJ. **bitter, great, hard, heavy, severe, sharp | light | early, first, late** *The young plants all died in the late frost.* **| autumn, spring, winter | ground** *a heavy ground frost* **| night**

QUANT. **touch** *There was just a touch of frost in the air.* **| degree** *There were ten degrees of frost last night.*

FROST + VERB **set in** *The winter frosts have set in up north.* **| nip at sth** *The sharp frost nipped at our noses.*

2 **very thin layer of little pieces of ice**

ADJ. **white**

VERB + FROST **be covered in/with** *The windows were covered in frost.*

VERB + FROST **melt** *The car was wet with melting frost.*

frosty *adj.*

1 **cold enough for frost**

VERBS **be, look | become, get, turn** *when the weather turns frosty* **| remain, stay**

ADV. **very**

PHRASES **cold and frosty** *The day dawned cold and frosty.*

2 **unfriendly**

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, turn** *He cool green eyes became positively frosty.* **| remain**

ADV. **decidedly, distinctly, positively, very** *The atmosphere in the room was decidedly frosty.* **| pretty**

frown *noun*

ADJ. **deep, heavy | faint, quick, slight, small, tiny | puzzled, thoughtful, worried | angry, black, fierce, grim, warning | deepening**

VERB + FROWN **give** *The boy gave a small frown.* | **wear** *She wore a worried frown.* | **crease into, pucker into, wrinkle in** *Her face creased into a frown.* | **be drawn/ draw together in** *His brows drew together in a frown.*

FROWN + VERB **deepen, grow darker/deeper** *Her frown grew deeper at the memory.* | **crease sth** *Her frown creased her forehead.* | **marr sth** *A frown marred his handsome features.* | **cross sth, touch sth** *A frown crossed her brow.*

FROWN + NOUN **line**

PREP. **with a ~ | ~ of** *a frown of concentration/disapproval/puzzlement*

PHRASES **a frown in your eyes** *He looked at her with a puzzled frown in his eyes.* | **a frown on your face**

frown *verb*

ADV. **darkly, deeply, heavily, sharply | slightly | impatiently | thoughtfully** *She studied the letter, frowning thoughtfully.*

PREP. **at** *She turned and frowned at him.* **| in** *He looked at the coded message, frowning in concentration.* **| with** *He frowned with annoyance.*

fruit *noun*

1 part of a plant

ADJ. **fresh | ripe, unripe | rotten | candied, crystallized, dried | canned, tinned | exotic, tropical | citrus** *citrus fruits such as limes and lemons*

QUANT. **piece** *Finish the meal with a piece of fresh fruit.*

VERB + FRUIT **eat, have | bear** *The crab apple bears a small, bitter fruit.* **| pick | core, peel, prepare**

FRUIT + NOUN **tree | juice, salad 2 the fruits** good result/reward

VERB + FRUIT **enjoy** *Their work left them enough time to enjoy the fruits of their success.* **| reap** *He was now reaping the fruits of all his hard work.*

PHRASES **the first fruits of sth** *the first fruits of the government's health campaign*

fruitful *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove**

ADV. **enormously, extremely, remarkably, very | quite, reasonably | potentially**

PREP. **in** *This research has been enormously fruitful in helping our understanding of the disease.*

fruition *noun*

ADJ. **full**

VERB + FRUITION **come to, reach** *Their efforts came to fruition many years later.* **|** **bring sth to** *It was left to her successor to bring the plan to its full fruition.*

fruitless *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | render sth** *Dunbar's departure rendered the whole operation quite fruitless.*

ADV. **quite, utterly | largely | apparently**

frustrated *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *starting to get frustrated* **| leave sb, make sb** *This failure leaves the child depressed and frustrated.*

ADV. **deeply, extremely, really, very | completely, totally | increasingly | a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly** *She sounded rather frustrated to me.* **| sexually**

PREP. **at** *Both sides in the dispute appeared very frustrated at the lack of progress.* **| by** *We were frustrated by the long delays.* **| with** *Sometimes he gets really frustrated with his violin playing.*

frustrating *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become, get | make sth | find sth** *I found the delays intensely frustrating.*

ADV. **deeply, extremely, incredibly, intensely, particularly, really, terribly, very | increasingly | a bit, quite, rather, slightly | ultimately** *It was a demeaning and ultimately frustrating experience.*

PREP. **for** *It was rather frustrating for all of us.*

frustration *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great | sheer** *I shouted at him in sheer frustration.* **| angry, bitter | pent-up | sexual**

VERB + FRUSTRATION **experience, feel, seethe with** *He was still seething with angry frustration.* **| express, show, take out, vent** *He took his pent-up frustration out on his family.* **| hide | cause, lead to** *These petty rules can lead to frustration and anger.*

PREP. **in ~** *He clenched his fists in frustration.* **| out of ~** *crying out of bitter frustration* **| through ~** *Several people resigned through frustration.* **| with ~** *weeping with frustration* **| ~ at** *Many have expressed frustration at the delays.* **| ~ over** *showing frustration over the lack of progress* **| ~ with** *their frustration with bureaucracy*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of frustration, tears of frustration** *There were tears of frustration in her eyes.*

fry *verb*

ADV. **gently, lightly**

PREP. **in** *Fry the vegetables gently in oil.*

fuel *noun*

ADJ. **clean, smokeless, unleaded | fossil, nuclear, solid | domestic, household | aviation | spent** *The plant reprocesses spent fuel from nuclear power stations.*

VERB + FUEL **burn, run on, use** *power stations which burn fossil fuels What sort of fuel does the car run on?* **| burn sth as, use sth as** *The power plant burns used vehicle tyres as fuel.* **| save, waste | process, reprocess**

FUEL + NOUN **bill, costs, prices | consumption** *a car with high fuel consumption* **| economy, efficiency** *The engine gives good fuel economy.* **| pump, tank**

fugitive *noun*

ADJ. **hunted, wanted** *one of the most wanted fugitives sought by the Italian police*

PREP. **~ from** *a sanctuary where fugitives from justice could shelter*

fulfil *verb*

ADV. **amply, really** *He amply fulfilled the weight of expectation that they had placed on him.* **| completely | not quite** *Turkey is a market that has never quite fulfilled its potential.* **| adequately | properly | effectively | successfully | admirably** *The building is still fulfilling its original purpose admirably.* **| finally, ultimately**

VERB + FULFIL **be able/unable to, can/could** *Alan was finally able to fulfil his promise to Sarah.* **| must** *Students must fulfil the following entry criteria.* **| seek to, try to | fail to**

fulfilment *noun*

1 **doing sth to the required standard**

ADJ. **proper** *the proper fulfilment of their duties*

2 **feeling of satisfaction**

ADJ. **great** *She needed greater fulfilment in her job.* **| complete, perfect | partial | personal** *her search for personal fulfilment* **| intellectual, physical, sexual | wish** *Most computer games provide some kind of wish fulfilment.*

VERB + FULFILMENT **derive, find, gain, obtain | provide (sb with)**

PREP. **~ from** *He derives a lot of fulfilment from his charity work.* **| ~ in** *I can't find fulfilment in doing housework.*

PHRASES **a desire/need for fulfilment, a sense of fulfilment** *They gain a sense of fulfilment from their work.*

full *adj.*

1 **holding/containing as much as it will hold**

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get** *The garage has got full of junk again.* **| leave sth** *He left the bath full of water.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely** *The kitchen was absolutely full of flies!* **| almost, nearly, virtually** *The reservoirs are all virtually full.* **| half**

PREP. **of** *The bottle was half full of mineral water.*

2 **containing a lot of sth**

VERBS **be, look, seem**

ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, pretty, quite** *Her wine glass was still quite full.*

3 **having had enough to eat or drink**

VERBS **be, feel**

ADV. **absolutely | rather**

PHRASES **full up** *I'm full up. I can't eat another thing.*

fume *verb*

ADV. inwardly, quietly

PREP. about/over *She was still quietly fuming about Peter's remarks.* **| at** *We were all fuming at the delay.*

PHRASES be left fuming *Motorists were left fuming as police closed the motorway for six hours.* **| sit/stand (there) fuming** *He sat fuming over what he had just learnt.*

fumes *noun*

ADJ. **acrid, choking, dangerous, noxious, poisonous, toxic | diesel, exhaust, petrol, traffic | cooking | petrol, solvent | carbon monoxide, sulphurous, etc.**

QUANT. **cloud** *Clouds of toxic fumes escaped from the chemical plant.*

VERB + FUMES **give off, produce** *The fire gave off choking fumes. an industrial process which produces toxic fumes* **| breathe (in), inhale**

FUMES + VERB **kill sb, overcome sb** *A firefighter was overcome by fumes at a blaze in a plastics factory.* **| escape** *Sometimes exhaust fumes escape into the vehicle.*

fun *noun*

ADJ. **enormous, excellent, good, great, terrific, tremendous, wonderful | harmless, innocent** *The boys' game started as harmless fun but ended in tragedy.*

VERB + FUN **have** *We had a lot of fun at Mick's party.* **| spoil** *We won't let a bit of rain spoil our fun.*

FUN + NOUN **day** *She organized an annual fun day for local children.*

PREP. **for ~** *I write for fun, not because I expect to make money.* **| in ~** *She only said that in fun?please don't take it seriously!*

PHRASES **be no fun** *It's no fun getting up at 4 a.m. on a cold, rainy morning.* **| a bit of fun** *I was only having a bit of fun.* **| just for fun, just for the fun of it** *They took up motor racing just for the fun of it, rather than to win anything.* **| a sense of fun** *You have to have a sense of fun to be a good teacher.*

function *noun*

1 **purpose/special duty of sb/sth**

ADJ. **crucial, essential, important, useful, valuable, vital | chief, main, major, primary, prime | dual** *The committee has a dual function, both advisory and regulatory.* **| bodily, brain, liver, mental, etc.** *Fortunately, his head injuries left his bodily functions unimpaired.*

VERB + FUNCTION **have | carry out, fulfil, perform, serve** *All members carry out their own particular functions. The club serves a useful function as a meeting place.*

2 **important social event**

ADJ. **charity, official, social** *The princess attended a charity function in aid of cancer research.*

VERB + FUNCTION **hold | attend, go to**

FUNCTION + NOUN **room** *The wedding reception will be held in the Swan Hotel's function room.*

function *verb*

ADV. **effectively, efficiently, smoothly, successfully, well | perfectly | correctly, normally, properly** *All the instruments were functioning normally.* **| adequately, satisfactorily** *Problems arise when the body's immune system is not functioning adequately.* **| independently** *Can we devise a system in which judges function independently of party poltics?* **| actually** *This model does not describe accurately the way a market economy actually functions.* **| still** *The bombs continued to fall, but somehow the city still functioned.*

VERB + FUNCTION **be able/unable to, can/could** *When nutrients are in short supply the body cannot function properly.* **| begin to | continue to | cease to**

PHRASES **fully functioning** *The group has now become a fully functioning political organization.*

fund *noun*

1 **sum of money collected for a particular purpose**

ADJ. **large | appeal, charitable, charity** *The newspaper launched an appeal fund for victims of the disaster.* **| benevolent, campaign, investment, memorial, pension, prize, social, trust** *a benevolent fund for retired actors*

VERB + FUND **create, establish, launch, set up, start** *They set up an investment fund to provide money for their retirement.* **| administer, manage | draw on** *They don't want to draw on the fund unless they have to.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There is currently over £200,000 in the fund.* **| into a/the ~** *The money received is paid directly into a pension fund.*

FUND + NOUN **holder, manager 2 funds** money that is available and can be spent

ADJ. **sufficient | insufficient | limited** *There are only limited funds available.* **| unlimited | surplus | available | government, private, public**

VERB + FUND **have** *We have insufficient funds to pay for the building work.* **| be out of, be short of** *We are short of funds at the moment, so we are not going on holiday.* **| appeal for** *The school is appealing for funds to invest in new equipment.* **| borrow, boost, build up, collect, generate, get, obtain, raise, receive, secure | allocate, lend, make available, provide, release** *Funds will be made available to ensure the provision of hospital services.* **| channel, direct, use** *The government is to channel more funds into local development schemes.*

FUND + NOUN **raiser** (also **fund-raiser**), **raising** (also **fund-raising**)

PREP. **~ for** *a charity event to raise funds for local schools* **| ~ from** *Funds from the event will support the work of the hospice.*

PHRASES **access to funds** *The current account offers savers instant access to funds.* **| a flow of funds** *the flow of funds between various economic sectors* **| a lack/ shortage of funds** *The project was hampered by lack of funds.* > Special page at BUSINESS

fund *verb*

ADV. **largely, mainly | entirely** *The venture is funded entirely by its board of directors.* **| partially, partly | generously, properly, well | fully** *a new, fully funded training scheme* **| adequately | inadequately, poorly | centrally, directly** *The school opted out of local authority control and is funded directly by the government.* **| publicly | externally, independently, privately | jointly** *a scheme jointly funded by central and local government*

VERB + FUND **be used to, help (to)** *This money will help to fund administration costs.* **| agree to | refuse to**

fundamental *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | remain | consider sth, regard sth as** *We consider these freedoms fundamental to democracy.*

ADV. **truly, very | absolutely, quite** *This principle is clear and absolutely fundamental.* **| fairly, rather**

PREP. **to** *Improved funding is fundamental to the success of the project.*

fundamentals *noun*

ADJ. **basic | very** *The new law strikes at the very fundamentals of a free press.*

VERB + FUNDAMENTALS **teach | grasp, learn, master** *We quickly mastered the basic fundamentals of navigation.* **| go back to, return to** *The government went back to fundamentals, concentrating on avoiding food shortages.*

funding *noun*

ADJ. **adequate, proper | generous, substantial | inadequate | additional, extra, further | direct | long-term | annual, three-year, etc.** *the airline industry's annual funding requirement* **| emergency, short-term, stop-gap | official | clandestine, illegal, secret** *the clandestine funding of an illegal group* **| core | central | internal | external, outside** *Half the university research posts depend on outside funding.* **| international, local, national | foreign | government, public/public-sector, state | private/private-sector | corporate | development, education, research, science, venture, etc. | hospital, library, university, etc.**

VERB + FUNDING **give sb/sth, grant sb/sth, provide (sb/sth with)** *The refusal to grant extra funding to schools in the poorest areas caused a political storm.* **| attract, secure, seek, win | get, obtain, receive | increase | cut, reduce | withdraw, withhold**

PREP. **... in/of ~** *£25 million in funding* **| ~ for** *The president called for greater funding for housing for the poor.* **| ~ from** *The school has attracted funding from a number of sources.* **| ~ to** *an increase in funding to drug rehabilitation clinics*

PHRASES **a cut/an increase in funding, a lack of funding, a level of funding** *Present levels of funding have forced the school to cut its teaching staff.* **| a means/source of funding**

funeral *noun*

ADJ. **church | family | simple | state | respectable** *His savings were just enough to pay for a respectable funeral.* **| mass** *a mass funeral of the victims of the fire*

VERB + FUNERAL **attend, come to, go to | arrange** *The dead man's son arranged the funeral.* **| conduct** *A clergyman friend of the family conducted the funeral.* **| have** *She had a simple funeral, as she had requested.*

FUNERAL + VERB **take place**

FUNERAL + NOUN **ceremony, mass, rites, service | oration, sermon | cortege, procession | gathering** *Everyone went back to the house after the service for the funeral gathering.* **| car | director | home, parlour | costs, expenses | arrangements | business, industry | pyre** *the flames of the funeral pyre*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *He gave the address at her funeral.*

funny *adj.*

1 **making you laugh**

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get** *The movie gets funnier towards the end.* **| find sth**

ADV. **achingly, bloody** *(taboo)*, **brilliantly, dead, extraordinarily, extremely, genuinely, hilariously, hysterically, really, riotously, terribly, uproariously, very, wickedly, wildly, wonderfully** *At last, a genuinely funny comedy show! His performance was hilariously funny. You should have seen it?it was terribly funny!* **| almost | pretty, quite | unintentionally**

2 **strange**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, strike sb as, taste** *Didn't it strike you as funny that Adam wasn't there? This wine tastes funny.* **| find sth** *Don't you find it a bit funny that she never mentions her husband?*

ADV. **extremely, really, very | a bit, a little, pretty, rather** *Helen gave me a rather funny look.*

PHRASES **funny little** *He's a funny little man.* **| funny old** *It's a funny old world, isn't it?*

fur *noun*

ADJ. **thick | soft | real | artificial, fake, imitation, synthetic | matted** *The cat's fur was matted with blood.* **| fox, rabbit, etc.**

VERB + FUR **be wrapped in, wear** *She was wearing her fur* (= for example, a fur coat). **| be lined with, be trimmed with** *a cloak lined with fur*

FUR + NOUN **trade | farm**

PREP. **in a/sb's ~** (= wearing a fur coat, etc.) *elegant women in furs* **| of ~** *a collar of fur*

furious *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get | make sb** *Their incompetence made me furious.*

ADV. **absolutely | simply | coldly | suddenly**

PREP. **about** *He was simply furious about what had happened to his mother.* **| at** *The prime minister is said to be furious at the newspaper report.* **| over** *She was still furious over suggestions that she had lied to the public.* **| with** *I got absolutely furious with him.*

furnace *noun*

ADJ. **blazing, fiery, hot, red-hot | electric, gas | glass, steel | blast**

VERB + FURNACE **fire** *enough coal to fire the furnaces*

FURNACE + VERB **burn, glow** *The furnaces glowed fiercely.* **| roar** *A dark shed, lit only by the glow of roaring furnaces.*

furnished *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **fully** *The flat is fully furnished.* | **partially, partly** | **attractively, beautifully, charmingly, comfortably, elegantly, expensively, luxuriously, nicely, ornately, pleasantly, prettily, richly, sumptuously, tastefully, well** *His rooms were comfortably furnished. The villa was expensively furnished throughout.* | **basically, modestly, plainly, simply** *a simply furnished room* | **adequately** | **barely, sparsely** | **individually** *Each of the ten bedrooms is individually furnished.*

furniture *noun*

ADJ. **antique, period** *an eighteenth-century town house, complete with period furniture* **| modern | fine** *The wood is used for making fine furniture.* **| cheap, second-hand | foam-filled, upholstered | bedroom, garden, office, outdoor | cane, pine, rattan, wooden, etc.**

QUANT. **piece**

VERB + FURNITURE **arrange, move around, rearrange** *The room would look bigger if we rearranged the furniture.*

furore *noun*

ADJ. **considerable | public | political**

VERB + FURORE **cause, create, provoke** *His choice of words created quite a furore.*

FURORE + VERB **surround sth** *the furore which surrounded her appointment as chairman* **| follow, result from sth | die down**

PREP. **amid a/the ~ (of)** *His resignation passed almost unnoticed amid the furore of the elections.* **| ~ about/over/surrounding** *the furore over the proposed introduction of tax on fuel* **| ~ among** *The sale of the two best players caused a furore among the fans.*

furtive *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become** *The look in his eyes became furtive.*

ADV. **very | almost** *The secretary looked almost furtive when I walked in.* **| slightly | oddly** *He cast an oddly furtive glance at her.*

fury *noun*

ADJ. **cold | controlled, inner, pent-up** *He growled with barely controlled fury.*

VERB + FURY **be beside yourself with, be shaking with, feel** *He was beside himself with fury. I had never felt such fury before.* **| vent** *He vented his fury on a telephone box.* **| arouse, drive sb to, provoke** *That kind of treatment would drive anyone to fury. The decision to close the factory has provoked fury.*

FURY + VERB **mount, rise | drain, fade** *His face and body sagged as the fury drained from him.*

PREP. **in (a) ~** *She turned on him in a fury.* **| with ~** *He reacted with cold fury* **| ~ against** *Her fury against him rose.* **| ~ at** *He kicked the tree in fury at his own stupidity.*

PHRASES **turn your fury on sb** *I hoped she wouldn't turn her fury on me.*

fuse *noun*

1 **device that makes a bomb explode**

ADJ. **short | long, slow | safety**

VERB + FUSE **set** *He set the fuse to thirty minutes.* **| light**

2 **in an electric circuit**

ADJ. **5-amp, 10-amp, 13-amp, etc.**

VERB + FUSE **fit** *Make sure that the correct fuse is fitted.* **| change, replace | blow** *When the machine was switched on it blew a fuse.*

FUSE + VERB **blow** *Fuses blow if they are overloaded.*

FUSE + NOUN **wire | box** *The fire started in the fuse box downstairs.*

fuss *noun*

ADJ. **awful, big, great, terrible**

VERB + FUSS **cause, kick up, make** *She kicked up an awful fuss when she heard about it.*

FUSS + VERB **blow over, die down** *Once the fuss has blown over, we'll be able to get on with work as usual.*

PREP. **without ~** *They left quietly, without fuss.* **| ~ about** *She made a big fuss about not having a window seat on the plane.* **| ~ over** *I think it's all a lot of fuss over nothing.*

PHRASES **make a fuss of sb** *The children were all making a great fuss of the new baby.* **| with the minimum of fuss** *The job was done with the minimum of fuss.*

futile *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | consider sth, describe sth as** *The president described these activities as futile.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, totally, utterly** *an utterly futile struggle for justice* **| largely, rather | apparently, seemingly | ultimately** *Their attempts were impressive but ultimately futile.*

futility *noun*

ADJ. **complete, utter**

VERB + FUTILITY **know, realize, see, sense** *She could see the utter futility of trying to protest.*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of futility**

future *noun*

1 **time that will come after the present**

ADJ. **foreseeable, immediate, near, not-too-distant** *Things will continue as they are for the foreseeable future. A new branch of the shop will be opening in the near future.* | **distant, remote**

VERB + FUTURE **look to, plan for** *Don't think too much about past troubles?look to the future.* | **foretell, look into, predict**

FUTURE + VERB **bring (sb), hold** *whatever the future may bring you Who can tell what the future holds?*

PREP. **for the ~** *What are your plans for the future?* | **in (the) ~** *In future, employees will park their vehicles away from the works entrance. The possibility of travel to other solar systems still lies in the distant future.* | **of the ~** *The stars of the future are competing in the world junior athletics championships this month.*

PHRASES **a vision for/of the future** *In her speech, the director outlined her vision for the future.*

2 **what will happen to sb/sth**

ADJ. **bright, great, promising, rosy, secure** *He has a great future as a designer.* | **bleak, dire, gloomy, grim, uncertain** *He forecasts a dire future for the industry.* | **long-term** | **economic, financial, political**

VERB + FUTURE **face, have** *The firm faces a very uncertain future.* | **determine, shape** *the right to determine their own future in a democratic fashion* | **forecast, predict, see** | **consider, ponder (on)** *After being dropped from the team the young defender is considering his future.* | **invest in** *She decided to invest in her future by taking a management course.*

PREP. **~ as** *She has a very promising future as a musician.* | **~ in** *He could see no future in his job.*

PHRASES **a question mark over the future of sb/sth** *A question mark hangs over the future of the company after shares plunged to a record low.*

fuzzy *adj.*

1 **unclear**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, go** *The screen suddenly went fuzzy.*

ADV. **all, extremely, very** *The truck's headlights were all fuzzy and ghostlike.* **| a bit, rather, slightly**

2 **sticking up**

VERBS **be | go**

ADV. **all** *My hair's gone all fuzzy!* **| a bit, rather**

gadget *noun*

ADJ. **little | clever, neat, nifty | useless | latest, modern, new | electrical, electronic | kitchen**

VERB + GADGET **invent**

PREP. **~ for** *She has invented a nifty little gadget for undoing stubborn nuts and bolts.*

gag *noun*

1 **piece of cloth**

VERB + GAG **put on** *They tied him up and put a gag on him.* **| take off**

2 **joke**

ADJ. **good, great | sight, visual** *a mixture of wit and instant visual gags* **| running** *There was this running gag about a penguin* (= they kept telling penguin jokes).

VERB + GAG **crack** *a non-stop comedian, cracking gags by the dozen*

PREP. **~ about**

gag *verb*

PHRASES **bind and gag sb** *The men left the security guards bound and gagged.*

gain *noun*

ADJ. **big, considerable, huge, major, real, significant, substantial** *This change in the tax system will mean big gains for some companies.* **| modest, small | long-term, short-term | potential | pre-tax | net, overall** *Labour made an overall gain of 39 seats.* **| ill-gotten** *She tucked her ill-gotten gains into her purse and left.* **| personal, private** *using the investments for their private gain* **| commercial, economic, financial, material** *There will be no financial gain for mothers from this new system.* **| electoral, political** *the far right made huge electoral gains* **| military, territorial | weight** *She was most upset by her recent weight gain.* **| efficiency, productivity** *There is still scope for efficiency gains* (= gains to be made by being more efficient).

VERB + GAIN **make | bring (sb)** *Better workplace design can bring real gains in productivity.*

PREP. **for ~** *It's amazing what some people will do for gain.* **| ~ from** *£3.9 million gains from the sale of stock* **| ~ in** *Last year there was only a modest gain in earnings.*

gain *verb*

ADV. **certainly, undoubtedly** *Consumers have certainly gained from the increased competition in the telecommunications industry.* **| clearly | quickly, rapidly | gradually, slowly** *His ideas gradually gained acceptance.* **| steadily | eventually, finally, ultimately | successfully | automatically** *Husbands and wives of British nationals do not automatically gain citizenship.* **| easily**

VERB + GAIN **stand to** *The company stands to gain* (= is likely to gain) *quite a lot from this government scheme.* **| expect to, hope to** *What do you hope to gain by this action?* **| attempt to, seek to, strive to, try to** *Protesters tried to gain access to the presidential palace.* **| fail to**

PREP. **by** *There is nothing to be gained by forcing people to comply.* **| from** *We all gained a lot from the experience.*

PHRASES **have everything/much/little/a lot/nothing to gain/be gained** *Why not give it a go? You've nothing to lose and everything to gain. I don't think there's anything to be gained from this course of action.*

gait *noun*

ADJ. **rolling, strolling, stumbling, waddling**

PREP. **with a ~** *He walked with a rolling gait.*

gala *nou*n

ADJ. **charity, Royal | swimming**

VERB + GALA **have, hold | attend, go to**

GALA + NOUN **concert, day, dinner, evening, event, night, occasion, performance, weekend**

galaxy *noun*

ADJ. **distant | nearby, nearest, neighbouring**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *scientists observing phenomena in nearby galaxies*

gale *noun*

ADJ. **fierce, full, great, heavy, howling, severe, strong | Force 9, Force 10, etc. | northerly, westerly, etc. | autumn, winter, etc. | equinoctial | Atlantic, North Sea, etc.**

VERB + GALE **blow** *It was blowing a gale outside.* **| get caught in** *We got caught in a howling gale.*

GALE + VERB **blow** *A severe gale was blowing along the coast.*

GALE + NOUN **force** *gale force winds* **| warning**

PREP. **in ~** *The tree had come down in a fierce gale the night before.*

gallantry *noun*

ADJ. **great, outstanding**

VERB + GALLANTRY **demonstrate, show** *a soldier who had demonstrated outstanding gallantry*

GALLANTRY + NOUN **award, medal**

gallery *noun*

1 for art

ADJ. **art, exhibition, picture, portrait | commercial, private, public | national** *He offered ten major paintings to start a national gallery of modern British art.*

VERB + GALLERY **go to, visit**

GALLERY + VERB **exhibit sth, show sth** *Some of his work has been exhibited by local art galleries.* **| specialize in sth** *a gallery specializing in ceramics* **| close, open**

GALLERY + NOUN **space** *The extension will provide 600 square metres of new gallery space.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *The painting is now on display at the National Gallery in London.* **| in a/the ~** *There were very few people in the gallery.*

2 in a hall

ADJ. **long, wide | first-floor, upper | public** *The packed public gallery at Teesside Crown Court erupted in a roar of approval.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I found myself in a wide gallery looking down on the floor below.*

gallon *noun* > Note at MEASURE

gallop *noun*

ADJ. **fast, good, head-down, mad | steady**

VERB + GALLOP **break into** *The horses broke into a mad gallop when they heard the gunshot.*

PREP. **at a ~** *They reached the farm at a gallop.* **| into a ~** *The noise startled the horse into a gallop.* **| ~ through** *(figurative) The programme starts with a gallop through the history of the railway.*

PHRASES **at full gallop** *riders coming at full gallop*

gamble *noun*

ADJ. **big, huge, major | calculated | desperate** *It was time for a last desperate gamble.* **| political**

VERB + GAMBLE **take**

GAMBLE + VERB **pay off, work** *I took a calculated gamble and it paid off.*

PREP. **~ on** *Backpackers with a heavy load should resist taking a gamble on the weather.*

PHRASES **a bit/something of a gamble** *Trying to find the right pension can be a bit of a gamble.*

gambler *noun*

ADJ. **compulsive, heavy, inveterate** *Most compulsive gamblers are not successful.* **| notorious | professional**

gambling *noun*

ADJ. **compulsive** *He went to a psychiatrist about his compulsive gambling.* **| illegal** *The police are trying to stop all illegal gambling.* **| legalized, legitimate**

GAMBLING + NOUN **casino, club, den | table | debt** *She ran up gambling debts worth a million pounds.* **| man** *If I were a gambling man, I'd put my money on him resigning soon.*

game *noun*

1 activity/sport

ADJ. **ball, board, computer, video | good** *This is a good game for getting people to mix.* **| competitive** *competitive games in which there is always a winner and a loser* **| team** *How I hated team games at school!* **| party | children's** *children's party games like Musical Chairs* **| indoor, outdoor** *finding good indoor games for children*

VERB + GAME **have, play** *Shall we have a game of chess?* **| draw, lose, win** *We won the first game and drew the second.*

PREP. **~ against/with, ~ of** *To pass the time, we played a game of cards.*

2 sports match

ADJ. **big** (= important) *The team are in training for their big game.* **| first, opening | final, last | away, home | Cup, League** *their first League game of the season*

VERB + GAME **have, play** *United are playing a home game this week.* **| draw, lose, win**

PREP. **~ against/with** *He's hoping to be fit before next week's game with Liverpool.* **| ~ of** *a game of tennis*

3 how sb plays

ADJ. **good, great** *That girl plays a great game of bridge.*

VERB + GAME **have, play** *Trescothick had a good game and was man of the match.* **| improve, raise** *Hendry raised his game to collect the £40,000 first prize.*

4 games: sports competition

ADJ. **Commonwealth, Olympic**

VERB + GAME **compete in, participate in, take part in** *She's hoping to participate* *in the next Olympic Games.* **| host** *Beijing's bid to host the Olympic Games*

5 **business/activity**

VERB + GAME **be in** *How long have you been in this game?*

GAME + NOUN **~ of** *the game of life/politics*

PHRASES **all part of the game** *Getting dirty was all part of the game to the kids.* **| new to this game** *I'm new to this game myself.*

6 **secret plan**

ADJ. **little, silly, stupid**

VERB + GAME **play** *I realized that he had been playing a stupid game with me.* **| put an end to, put a stop to** *I'll soon put an end to her silly little games.* **| give away** *Don't let him talk to anybody or he'll give the game away.*

gamut *noun*

ADJ. **complete, entire, full, whole**

VERB + GAMUT **cover, run (through)**

PREP. **~ of** *The exhibition runs the whole gamut of artistic styles.*

gang *noun*

1 **group of criminals**

ADJ. **street** *a street gang known as the Hooligans* **| armed, criminal, organized, terror/terrorist** *The robbery was carried out by an armed gang.* **| teenage | rival** *Fights had ensued between rival gangs of football fans.*

VERB + GANG **belong to, join** *A lot of the lads belong to gangs. He pressed me to join his gang.*

GANG + NOUN **attack, fight, violence, warfare** *a gang fight between two rival teenage gangs* **| leader, member | life** *a tale of LA gang life* **| rape**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *We were in the same gang.* **| ~ of** *a gang of skinheads*

PHRASES **a member of a gang**

2 **group of friends**

PREP. **~ of** *You probably go with a gang of friends to the same pub most Saturdays.*

PHRASES **one of the gang** *Her friends made me feel welcome and treated me as one of the gang.*

gangrene *noun*

VERB + GANGRENE **have, suffer from | develop**

GANGRENE + VERB **set in** *The wound was not properly disinfected and gangrene set in.*
> Special page at ILLNESS

gaol *noun* > See JAIL

gap *noun*

1 space between things

ADJ. **big, huge, large, wide | narrow, small | awkward** *an awkward gap between the bed and the door*

VERB + GAP **leave | fill, seal** *Seal the gaps around the windows with an exterior-quality sealant.*

GAP + VERB **appear, open up** *He flashed his headlights and jumped lanes whenever a gap opened up.*

PREP. **through a/the ~** *A rabbit ran along the fence and darted through a gap.* **| ~ between** *Position the tiles, leaving a narrow gap between the edges.* **| ~ in** *A huge gap had appeared in the hedge.*

2 period of time

ADJ. **awkward | long, short | time**

VERB + GAP **fill** *wondering how to fill an awkward gap in the conversation*

GAP + NOUN **year** *I'm planning to travel in my gap year* (= the year between school and university).

PREP. **after a/the ~** *She returned to teaching after a twelve-year gap.* **| ~ between** *a job to fill the gap between school and university* **| ~ in** *a gap in his career*

3 difference

ADJ. **big, huge, large, significant, substantial, wide, yawning | unbridgeable** *the unbridgeable gap between the two cultures* **| growing, widening | narrow | age, generation** *Despite the age gap, romance blossomed.* **| cultural/culture | gender** *the gender gap in earnings* **| credibility** *Newspapers were talking of a credibility gap between what he said and what he did.* **| information, knowledge, skills** *the knowledge gap between doctor and patient* **| trade** (= the gap between export and imports; used in journalism)

VERB + GAP **bridge** *an attempt to bridge the gap between the academic world and industry*

GAP + VERB **widen | narrow | separate sb/sth** *He realized how narrow was the gap separating him from his pagan ancestors.*

PREP. **~ between** *The gap between rich and poor widened.*

4 **where sth is missing**

ADJ. **big, enormous, great, huge, important, large, serious, significant, terrible, yawning** *serious gaps in their knowledge*

VERB + GAP **create, leave** *His death left a huge gap in my life.* **| identify | close, fill (in), plug** *Her appointment will fill the gap created when the marketing manager left.*

PREP. **~ in** *legislation to close a gap in the law*

PHRASES **a gap in the market** *We think we've identified a gap in the market* (= a business opportunity to make or sell sth that is not yet available).

gape *verb*

PREP. **at** *What are you gaping at?*

PHRASES **gape open** *She watched him, her mouth gaping open. (figurative) The empty cash box lay gaping open in one corner.*

garage *noun*

1 **for keeping cars in**

ADJ. **double, single | detached, integral, lean-to, lock-up | underground | bus**

GARAGE + NOUN **door**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Don't forget to put the car in the garage.*

2 **for repairing cars/buying petrol**

ADJ. **local**

VERB + GARAGE **own, run | take sth to** *I took the car to the local garage to get it fixed.*

GARAGE + NOUN **mechanic, owner**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *The car's still at the garage.*

garden *noun*

ADJ. **beautiful, lovely, pretty | big, large | small, tiny | back, front** *people hanging out washing in their back gardens* **| flower, herb, kitchen, rose, vegetable** *Most of the hotel's salads are grown in its own kitchen garden.* **| rock, water** *a rock garden with an astonishing variety of alpine plants* **| botanical, cottage, formal, landscaped, public, town, walled** *a large country house with beautiful landscaped gardens plants suitable for a small town garden a lovely Victorian walled garden*

VERB + GARDEN **create, design, lay out, plan, plant** *creating a garden out of a wilderness We got someone to design the garden for us. The garden is laid out in eighteenth century style.* **| plant** *We planted the garden with herbs and wild flowers.* **| dig, do, tend, tidy (up), weed** *Weekends were spent doing the garden.*

GARDEN + NOUN **flower, plant | pest** *aphids, one of the commonest garden pests* **| tools | gate, path, shed, wall | furniture, seat | centre** *We got the gravel at our local garden centre.*

PREP. **in/into a/the ~** *Mary's out in the garden.*

PHRASES **the bottom/end of a garden**

gardener *noun*

ADJ. **enthusiastic, keen | experienced, expert, good | amateur | jobbing** *She employs a jobbing gardener to keep the garden tidy.* **| assistant, head** *head gardener to the Duke of Devonshire* **| organic** *The organic gardener avoids the use of pesticides.* **| landscape, market** > Note at JOB

gardening *noun*

ADJ. **organic | landscape, market**

VERB + GARDENING **do** *It's my husband who does the gardening.*

GARDENING + NOUN **business** *She started up her own market gardening business two years ago.* **| book, magazine | programme, show** *a TV gardening show* **| equipment, gloves, tools | expert**

garlic *noun*

ADJ. **wild**

QUANT. **clove**

VERB + GARLIC **peel | chop, crush**

GARLIC + NOUN **clove | bread | sausage** > Special page at FOOD

garment *noun*

ADJ. **heavy | shapeless | knitted, woollen**

VERB + GARMENT **have on, wear** *She wore a shapeless knitted garment.*

gas *noun*

1 substance like air

ADJ. **noxious, poisonous, toxic | explosive, inflammable, radioactive | inert | exhaust, greenhouse** *pollution from greenhouse gases* **| nerve, tear** *Police used water cannon and tear gas against demonstrators.*

VERB + GAS **give off, produce** *It gives off a poisonous gas as it rots down.*

GAS + VERB **build up** *Noxious gases had built up in the sewer.* **| escape, leak** *Toxic gases can escape through one of the pipes.*

2 for heating/cooking

ADJ. **butane, coal, natural, propane | bottled, Calor**

VERB + GAS **cook with** *I prefer to cook with gas.* **| light, turn on** *I lit the gas and put the soup on to warm.*

GAS + NOUN **appliance, boiler, central heating, cooker, fire, lamp, oven | bottle, cylinder, pipeline | board | industry | field** *tapping the North Sea gas fields* **| supply | works** *Local gas works were closed as natural gas became available.* **| leak** *All gas leaks should be reported as soon as possible.*

PHRASES **gas mark 2, 3, etc.** *Set the oven at gas mark 4.*

gash *noun*

1 **deep wound**

ADJ. **deep, great, long | nasty, terrible**

VERB + GASH **get, have**

PREP. **on the ~** *She got a nasty gash on the head.*

2 **large hole**

ADJ. **deep, great, long**

VERB + GASH **carve, cut, tear** *The bulldozers carved a great gash through the forest. The rocks tore a long gash in the ship's hull.*

gasp *noun*

ADJ. **big, great | little, short, small | quick, sharp, sudden | loud | low | audible | shocked | strangled | involuntary**

VERB + GASP **give, let out | stifle | bring** *The stunt brought shocked gasps from the audience.* **| hear | take (in)** *taking in great gasps of air*

GASP + VERB **escape sb**

PREP. **between ~s** *'Listen carefully,' he said, between gasps of breath.* **| in ~s** *He leant against the railing, his breath coming in short gasps.* **| with a ~** *She spun round with a little gasp of delight.* **| ~ of** > Note at SOUND

gasp *verb*

ADV. **almost | aloud | breathlessly**

VERB + GASP **make sb** *The cold made her gasp.* **| manage to** *'No!' she managed to gasp.*

PREP. **at** *She gasped at his boldness.* **| in** *Denis almost gasped aloud in astonishment.* **| with** *gasping with pain*

PHRASES **gasp for air/breath, leave sb gasping** *Her breath went and left her gasping for air.*

gate *noun*

ADJ. **entrance, front, main | back, postern** (in a castle), **side | inner, outer | double, five-bar/five-barred, portcullis** *a wide driveway with double gates* **| great** *The great gates of the abbey were shut fast.* **| heavy | high | narrow | ornamental | open | iron, metal, steel, wooden, wrought-iron | city, factory, farm, garden, park, prison, school, etc. | security | sluice**

QUANT. **set** *a set of ornamental gates*

VERB + GATE **open | bar, close, fasten, lock, shut** *Don't forget to shut the gate when you leave. The defenders had closed and barred all the city gates.* **| go through** *Go through the gate and continue down the track.*

GATE + VERB **open, swing open** *The heavy gate swung open.* **| close, shut** *The gate shut behind him.*

PREP. **through a/the ~** *He led us through a gate into a little garden.*

gather *verb*

1 come together in a group

ADV. **quickly | around/round, together**

PREP. **about/around/round** *The boys gathered around the car.* **| for** *They are all gathering for a major conference.*

2 bring people/things together

ADV. **hastily, quickly** *She hastily gathered all her belongings together.* **| carefully | together, up**

3 increase

ADV. **quickly, rapidly** *The movement for reform rapidly gathered momentum.* **| slowly | steadily**

VERB + GATHER **begin to, start to** *As the weeks passed, Charlotte began to gather strength.*

gathering *noun*

1 **meeting**

ADJ. **big, large | small | informal, private, public | illegal | family, political, religious, social**

VERB + GATHERING **attend, go to** *Women are not allowed to attend public gatherings.* **| have, hold, organize** *We're having a small family gathering to mark our wedding anniversary.* **| address**

GATHERING + VERB **take place**

PREP. **~ of** *The prime minister addressed a gathering of local government officials.*

PHRASES **a gathering of the clan/clans** *(humorous) All the children and grandchildren are going to my parents' at Christmas for the annual gathering of the clan.*

2 **collecting**

ADJ. **information, intelligence**

gauge *noun*

1 **measuring instrument**

ADJ. **accurate | fuel, oil, petrol | depth, pressure, temperature**

VERB + GAUGE **check, glance at, look at, read** *The pilot checked the fuel gauge frequently.*

GAUGE + VERB **read sth, show sth, tell sb sth** *The petrol gauge was reading 'full'. The depth gauge tells you how deep you have dived.*

2 **distance between rails**

ADJ. **broad, narrow, standard**

VERB + GAUGE **adopt** *Eventually all the British railway companies adopted the standard gauge of 4 feet 8,1/2 inches.*

3 **fact for judging sth**

ADJ. **reliable, useful**

VERB + GAUGE **be seen as, serve as** *This company is seen as a gauge of Britain's industrial well-being.*

PREP. **~ of**

gauge *verb*

ADV. **accurately, correctly | carefully**

VERB + GAUGE **be able to, can/could | try to | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *It is difficult to gauge accurately how much fuel is needed*

gay *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, sound**

ADV. **openly** *He is now openly gay.*

gaze *noun*

ADJ. **direct, fixed, level, steady, unblinking, watchful** *She felt embarrassed under his steady gaze.* **| intense, intent, penetrating, piercing, searching | clear | cold, cool, hard, steely, stony | admiring, angry, critical, etc. | blue, brown, dark, grey** *His deep blue gaze held hers.* **| public** *(figurative) Pop stars are constantly exposed to the public gaze.*

VERB + GAZE **direct, fix (sb with), focus, turn** *They fixed their gaze on the dark line of the coast ahead. She fixed him with a level gaze. He turned his gaze on me.* **| meet** *She refused to meet my gaze.* **| hold | follow** *I followed her gaze and spotted a new arrival at the far side of the room.* **| avert, drop, lower** *She deliberately averted her gaze when he came in.* **| avoid** *She avoided his gaze.*

GAZE + VERB **drift, flick, flicker, fly, move, rake (sth), roam (sth), run, shift, slide, sweep (sth), travel, wander** *His gaze flickered an instant. His gaze flickered over the room.* **| follow sth** *Her gaze followed Simon's through the archway.* **| fix on sth, lock (with sth), meet sth** *Her gaze fixed on his and held it unblinkingly. His gaze locked with hers.* **| hold sth | linger, rest** *Rebecca's gaze rested on the child thoughtfully.* **| fall** *Her gaze fell on Kate's tousled hair.* **| narrow** *The dark gaze narrowed.*

PREP. **under sb's ~** *He blushed under her angry gaze.*

gaze *verb*

ADV. calmly, steadily | intently, unblinkingly *He gazed unblinkingly into the distance.* **| absently, blankly, unseeingly** *He gazed absently at the passing crowd.* **| thoughtfully | admiringly, adoringly, fondly, longingly** *She gazed admiringly up at him.* **| down, out, up** *gazing out over the lake*

PREP. at *gazing at her beautiful jewellery* **| in** *They gazed in wonder at the mighty peaks.* **| into** *She gazed steadily into his face.*

gear *noun*

1 in a vehicle

ADJ. **bottom, top** *driving along in top gear* **| high, low | first, second, etc. | reverse**

VERB + GEAR **engage, select** *Engage first gear and move off.* **| change, change into, move into, put/slam/slip sth into, shift (into), switch** *It's difficult to steer and change gear at the same time. She put the car into first gear and drove off. (figurative) The party organization is moving into top gear as the election approaches.* **| move up, step up** *(often figurative) Coming out of the final bend, the runner stepped up a gear to overtake the rest of the pack.* **| crash, grind** *He was crashing the gears because he was so nervous.*

GEAR + NOUN **change** *She made a smooth gear change.* **| lever, stick** (also **gearstick)**

PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *driving along in third gear Some drivers leave the car in gear when parking on hills.* **| out of ~** *Leave the car out of gear.*

2 equipment/clothes

ADJ. **camping, climbing, fishing, running, sports, swimming, walking | breathing** *firemen in breathing gear* **| landing, winding** *the plane's landing gear* **| combat, riot | outdoor | designer** *wearing expensive designer gear*

VERB + GEAR **be dressed in, have on, wear** *She had her running gear on.* **| put on, take off**

PREP. **in ... ~** *a group of young men in combat gear*

gear *verb* **be geared to/towards sth**

ADV. completely, entirely, exclusively, totally *an economy exclusively geared towards tourism* **| primarily | specifically** *Our training programmes are geared specifically to the needs of older workers.* **| clearly**

gem *noun*

1 **jewel**

ADJ. **precious, priceless**

PHRASES **dripping with gems** *a millionairess dripping with gems and pearls* | **encrusted/studded with gems** *a belt studded with priceless gems*

2 **person/thing**

ADJ. **little | absolute, real** *The second side of their new album contains some real gems.* | **hidden** *She worked in the antiques trade, searching out hidden gems in the most unlikely places.* | **architectural** *architectural gems like York Minster*

PHRASES **a gem of a sth** *This is a little gem of a flower.*

gender *noun*

GENDER + NOUN **relations | differences, divisions** *She examines the interplay between changing gender divisions and urban change.* **| bias, imbalance, inequality** *The government is working on tackling gender inequalities in employment.* **| identity, role, stereotype** *Managers may value different qualities in men than in women, reinforcing gender stereotypes.* **| issues, politics**

gene *noun*

ADJ. **dominant, recessive | abnormal, defective, mutant | human**

VERB + GENE **carry, have** *people who carry the gene that causes this disease* **| pass on** *The gene is passed on to their children.*

GENE + VERB **be responsible for sth, cause sth, control sth, influence sth** *Genes control the development of an embryo.* **| mutate**

GENE + NOUN **pool** *Scientists have estimated that a gene pool of at least 300 animals is necessary to maintain a healthy tiger population.* **| defect, mutation** *Gene mutations are alterations in the DNA code.* **| sequence | therapy**

PREP. **~ for** *An individual may pass on to future generations its genes for tallness.*

general *noun*

GENERAL + VERB **command sth, lead sth** *Both generals had commanded units in that area.* > Note at RANK

generalization *noun*

ADJ. **broad, sweeping | abstract | useful, valid**

VERB + GENERALIZATION **make**

PREP. **~ about** *The author makes several sweeping generalizations about the causes of the crisis.*

generalize *verb*

VERB + GENERALIZE **can/could | be easy to, be possible to | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to | be dangerous to, be unsafe to, be unwise to**

PREP. **about** *It is impossible to generalize about such a complicated subject.* **| from** *We cannot generalize from these few examples.*

generate *verb*

ADV. **quickly | automatically, spontaneously** *People used to believe that dirt spontaneously generated disease.* **| randomly** *a sequence of randomly generated fractions* **| externally, internally** *internally generated revenue* **| locally**

VERB + GENERATE **help (to)** *the opportunity to help generate ideas* **| be used to** *The wind turbines are used to generate electricity.* **| be expected to, be likely to** *The lottery is expected to generate substantial funds for charities.*

PREP. **from** *Living cells generate energy from food. profits generated from the company's activities*

generation *noun*

1 people/period of time

ADJ. **current, present | new, younger | older** *The older generation prefer a darker and more traditional kind of clothing.* **| coming, future, later, next, rising** *The forest will be preserved for future generations.* **| earlier, former, last, past, preceding, previous** *These children seem to have a stronger sense of purpose than the previous generation. the wisdom of past generations* **| first, second, etc.** *The second generation of immigrants often adopted British forenames.* **| subsequent, succeeding, successive** *Succeeding generations have added to the stock of stories and legends.* **| whole** *The First World War slaughtered a whole generation.*

VERB + GENERATION **belong to** *people who belong to a younger generation*

GENERATION + NOUN **gap** *I was aware of a real generation gap between us.*

PREP. **for a ~** *The consequences of the radioactive leakage may not become apparent for a generation or more.* **| for ~s** *This kind of apple has been grown for generations.*

PHRASES **from generation to generation** *The recipe for making the liqueur has been handed down from generation to generation.* **| from one generation to the next**

2 production of sth

ADJ. **electricity, gas, income, power** *different methods of power generation*

generator *noun*

ADJ. **diesel, gas, petrol, steam, wind | electrical, electricity, power**

VERB + GENERATOR **drive, power** *A water turbine drives the generator.*

GENERATOR + VERB **deliver sth** *The wind generator delivers 120 watts in a strong breeze.*

generosity *noun*

ADJ. **extraordinary, great, unusual**

VERB + GENEROSITY **show (sb)** *He thanked them for the extraordinary generosity they had shown.* **| take advantage of** *Their guests took advantage of their generosity, overstaying their welcome by several days.*

PREP. **~ to/towards** *their great generosity to the school*

PHRASES **an act of generosity, generosity of spirit** *She showed an unusual generosity of spirit to those who had opposed her.* **| thanks to the generosity of sb** *The hospital has now bought a new body scanner, thanks to the generosity of local fund-raisers.*

generous *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem, sound | become, get** *John's getting very generous with the wine!*

ADV. **amazingly, exceedingly, exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, incredibly, most, very, wonderfully** *You have been most generous.* **| excessively, overly** *The review panel criticized the payments as overly generous.* **| fairly, pretty, quite, rather, reasonably, relatively**

PREP. **of** *Thank you for your donation. It was very generous of you.* **| to** *They have been extremely generous to the mosque.* **| with** *She's quite generous with her praise.*

genetics *noun*

ADJ. **evolutionary | molecular | medical | human, plant | population | Mendelian**

PHRASES **the science of genetics** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

genitals *nou*n

ADJ. **female, male**

VERB + GENITALS **cover | display, exhibit, expose**

genius *noun*

1 **very great and unusual ability**

ADJ. **great, pure, real | natural**

QUANT. **flash, stroke, touch** *In a flash of pure genius, she realized the answer to the problem. It was a stroke of genius on my part to avoid such awkward questions.*

VERB + GENIUS **have** *She has a genius for sorting things out.* **| show** *a work which shows real genius*

GENIUS + VERB **lie in sth** *His genius lies in his ability to convey pure terror in his work.*

PREP. **of ~** *a writer of genius* **| ~ for** *his genius for pinpointing the absurd*

2 **person with great and unusual ability**

ADJ. **great | natural | eccentric, wayward | artistic, comic, creative, literary, mathematical, military, musical, etc.**

genocide *noun*

ADJ. **mass** *Refugees gave accounts of the mass genocide.* **| cultural**

PREP. **~ against** *genocide against ethnic minorities* > Note at CRIME(for verbs)

gentle *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become**

ADV. **extremely, very | almost | fairly, quite | surprisingly, unusually | deceptively** *His mouth looked deceptively gentle.*

PREP. **on** *The new treatments are gentle on your hair.* **| with** *She was very gentle with the children.*

gentleman *noun*

1 **man who is polite/behaves well towards others**

ADJ. **perfect, real, true** *He's a real gentleman, always kind and considerate.*

PHRASES **be no gentleman** *He may be a lord, but he's no gentleman.* | **too much of a gentleman** *He was too much of a gentleman to ask them for any money.*

2 **rich man with a high social position**

ADJ. **country, landed** *He retired to his estate in Norfolk, and lived the life of a country gentleman.*

GENTLEMAN + NOUN **farmer**

genuine *adj.*

1 **real**

VERBS **be, look, prove | consider sth** *The document is not considered genuine.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely, perfectly, quite** *Her happiness was perfectly genuine.* **| apparently | obviously | undoubtedly**

2 **sincere**

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **really, very | absolutely, completely, perfectly, quite** *I'm convinced she is absolutely genuine.* **| enough** *His offer sounded genuine enough.* **| apparently | obviously | undoubtedly**

geography *noun*

ADJ. **economic, historical, human, physical, political, social** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

geology *nou*n

ADJ. **applied, engineering | physical, structural | environmental, marine | petroleum | Pleistocene, Quaternary, etc.**

PHRASES **the science of geology** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

geometry *noun*

ADJ. **algebraic, co-ordinate, differential, fractal, solid, three-dimensional | Euclidean | basic | internal, local | sacred** *Pre-Christian sacred geometry was incorporated into church architecture.* > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

germ *noun*

ADJ. **virulent** *The epidemic was caused by a particularly virulent flu germ.* **| flu, typhoid, etc.**

VERB + GERM **carry** *Children carry all kinds of germs home from school.* **| harbour** *Cracks and scratches in work surfaces can harbour germs.* **| destroy, kill** *They used bleach to kill any germs in the sink and drain.*

GERM + NOUN **warfare**

German measles *noun* > Special page at ILLNESS

German *nou*n > Note at LANGUAGE

gesticulate *verb*

ADV. **wildly** *He gesticulated wildly as he tried to make her understand.*

PREP. **at** *The other woman was gesticulating at the ambulance.* **| to** *gesticulating to me with her hands* **| towards** *The officer gesticulated towards the refugees.* **| with**

gesture *noun*

1 **movement that expresses sth**

ADJ. **dramatic, expansive, expressive, extravagant, flamboyant, melodramatic, sweeping, theatrical** *She made an expansive gesture with her arms.* | **abrupt** | **careless, vague** *He responded with a vague gesture in the direction of the pub.* | **obscene, rude** | **angry, defiant, threatening** | **dismissive, impatient, irritable** | **helpless** | **imperious** | **placatory**

VERB + GESTURE **make** *The children made rude gestures at them.*

PREP. **by ~** *They communicate entirely by gesture.* | **in a ~** *He waved his arms in a melodramatic gesture.* | **with a ~** *She waved us away with an impatient gesture.* | **~ of** *a gesture of despair*

2 **sth that shows other people what you think/feel**

ADJ. **nice** *I thought it was a nice gesture to send everyone a card.* | **bold** *a bold gesture of reconciliation* | **dramatic, extravagant, grand** *He had the respect of his people without the need for grand gestures.* | **conciliatory, friendly, goodwill** | **charitable, philanthropic** | **empty, small, symbolic, token** *Words and empty gestures are not enough?we demand action! a token gesture of their good intentions* | **futile** | **political**

PREP. **as a ~** *Several hostages were released as a goodwill gesture.* | **in a ~** *In a dramatic gesture, the prime minister refused to attend the meeting.* | **~ against** *The invasion attempt was intended as a political gesture against his opponents.* | **~ of** *His gift was a gesture of friendship.* | **~ towards** *The president's speech was seen as a conciliatory gesture towards former enemies.*

gesture *verb*

ADV. **vaguely | wildly | expansively | abruptly, impatiently | helplessly**

PREP. **at** *She gestured at him to step back.* **| about/around** *He gestured around the room, lost for words.* **| for** *He gestured abruptly for Virginia to get in the car.* **| to** *Mrs Davis gestured to the waiter.* **| towards** *He gestured vaguely towards the house.* **| with** *gesturing wildly with her hands*

ghost *noun*

VERB + GHOST **see** *You look as if you've seen a ghost!* **| believe in** *I don't believe in ghosts.* **| exorcise, lay to rest** *A priest was called in to exorcise the ghost.*

GHOST + VERB **appear, haunt sth, walk** *dark, cold nights when ghosts walk*

GHOST + NOUN **story**

PREP. **~ of** *The ghost of a hanged poacher is said to haunt the manor house.*

PHRASES **as pale/white as a ghost** *He looked as pale as a ghost as he climbed out of the wrecked car.*

giant *noun*

1 **very large man**

PHRASES **a gentle giant** *Some people are intimidated by his size, but in fact he's a gentle giant.* **| a giant of a man** *He was a giant of a man, standing nearly seven feet tall.*

2 **sth that is very large/important**

ADJ. **corporate, multinational | car, chemicals, financial, food, industrial, oil, retail, etc.** *The oil giant Esso is planning to set up a new refinery in the port.* **| literary** *Camus is considered to be one of the twentieth century's literary giants.*

PREP. **~ among/amongst** *The Amazon is a giant amongst rivers.* **| ~ of** *The company is now one of the giants of the computer industry.*

giddy *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become, come over all** *(informal)*, **get** *My mum came over all giddy and had to sit down.* **| leave sb, make sb** *Steep stairs may leave you giddy and faint.*

ADV. **quite | a bit, rather, slightly**

PREP. **from** *He felt tired and giddy from the sleeping pill.* **| with** *I was giddy with the heat.*

gift *noun*

1 **sth that you give to sb**

ADJ. **expensive, generous, kind, lavish, valuable** *Thank you all for your kind gifts. She received lavish gifts of jewellery and clothes.* | **perfect** | **small** | **free** *When you place your first order with us, we will send you the free gift of your choice.* | **birthday, Christmas, parting, retirement, wedding** | **unwanted** *the problem of what to do with unwanted gifts*

VERB + GIFT **bear, bring (sb), exchange, give sb, make sb, offer sb** *He arrived home bearing gifts for everyone. They gave each other gifts at Christmas. She wanted to make a gift to her grandchildren.* | **accept, get, receive** *Please accept this small gift. The children all received gifts.*

GIFT + NOUN **shop** | **box, pack, set, token, voucher** *New customers will receive a free gift pack containing a selection of our products. a gift set of shampoo, soap and hand cream* | **token, voucher**

PREP. **as a ~** *The messengers brought the king a fine suit of armour as a gift.* | **~ for** *There were gifts for all the children.* | **~ from** *This vase was a gift from my mother.* | **~ to** *The golf clubs were her gift to her husband.*

PHRASES **shower gifts on sb, shower sb with gifts**

2 **natural ability**

ADJ. **great, outstanding, remarkable, special, wonderful** *his great gifts as a teacher* | **rare** | **God-given, innate, natural, special** | **artistic, musical**

VERB + GIFT **have, possess**

PREP. **~ for** *She has a natural gift for music.*

gifted *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, highly, immensely, prodigiously, supremely, very | undeniably | naturally** *a naturally gifted sportswoman* **| uniquely | precociously | academically, athletically, intellectually, musically** *academically gifted children*

PREP. **at** *He's very gifted at maths.* **| in** *gifted in the art of healing* **| with** *Their helpers are gifted with amazing powers of patience.*

gig *noun*

ADJ. **benefit, charity | free | live | pub**

VERB + GIG **do, play (in)** *They're doing a gig in Leeds tonight.* **| go to**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *They're performing at a local pub gig.*

giggle *noun*

ADJ. **little | high-pitched | nervous | girlish**

VERB + GIGGLE **give, have, let out | collapse into, dissolve into, get ~s** *We all collapsed into giggles. Susan tends to get the giggles at the most inappropriate moments.* **| stifle, suppress** *I just managed to stifle a giggle at the absurd idea.* **| hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *'Age before beauty!' she said with a giggle.* **| ~ about/at** *We had quite a giggle about the new office romance.*

PHRASES **a fit of (the) giggles**

giggle *verb*

ADV. **helplessly, hysterically, nervously** *The children giggled hysterically.*

PREP. **about** *They giggled about their teacher's accident.* **| at** *We giggled at the picture.* **| over** *giggling over old photographs* **| with** *The children giggled with delight.*

PHRASES **a fit of giggling**

gimmick *noun*

ADJ. **latest, new** *a new gimmick to encourage people to go to the cinema* **| election, marketing, publicity, sales** *The promise of lower taxation may have been just an election gimmick to gain votes.*

PHRASES **just/nothing more than/only a gimmick** *He dismissed the event as just a publicity gimmick.*

gin *noun*

ADJ. **stiff | double, large | small | pink, sloe**

VERB + GIN **drink, have** *'What are you drinking?' 'I'll have a gin and tonic, please.'* **| sip | pour (sb)** *She poured herself a large gin.*

PHRASES **a gin and tonic**

girl *noun*

ADJ. **baby** *They've had a baby girl.* **| little, small, young** *When she was a little girl, she dreamed of becoming a ballerina.* **| adolescent, teenage | bubbly, happy, lively | lovely, nice | attractive, beautiful, good-looking, gorgeous, handsome, pretty, stunning | single, unmarried**

girlfriend *noun*

ADJ. **current, latest, new | ex-, former, old | long-standing, long-term, serious, steady | live-in | pregnant | jealous | jilted**

QUANT. **string, succession**

VERB + GIRLFRIEND **have | meet | live with | sleep with | propose to | marry**

gist *noun* **the gist**

ADJ. **general**

VERB + GIST **convey, give (sb)** *It is difficult to convey the gist of Reich's ideas simply.* **| follow, get, understand**

PREP. **~ of** *I could follow the general gist of their conversation.*

glad *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | make sb** *The smell of the sea air makes you glad to be alive!*

ADV. **awfully, extremely, heartily, only too, really, terribly, very** *She was only too glad to escape them all.* **| just** *I'm just glad it's all over.* **| almost** *Danny looked almost glad to be going.* **| quite, rather | secretly** *She was secretly glad of his company.*

PREP. **about** *What have I got to be glad about?* **| for** *We're glad for you both.* **| of** *I was quite glad of his help.*

glamorous *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become | consider sth, regard sth as, see sth as** *Canoeing is not seen as glamorous in the way that skiing is.*

ADV. **really, very | less than, not exactly, not in the least** *Working in publishing turned out to be less than glamorous.* **| quite, rather**

glamour *noun*

QUANT. **touch** *Several film stars were invited to add a touch of glamour to the occasion.*

VERB + GLAMOUR **have** *He had a glamour about him that she found very attractive.* **| lack** *Jumbo jets somehow lack the glamour of the transatlantic liner.* **| add, give sb/sth, lend sb/sth** *Her long dark hair lent her a certain glamour.*

PHRASES **a certain glamour**

glance *noun*

ADJ. **backward, sidelong, sideways** *She cast a sidelong glance at Fern.* | **brief, cursory, fleeting, quick, swift** *After a cursory glance at the report he frowned.* | **casual** | **covert, furtive, surreptitious** *The man walked slowly along, casting furtive glances behind him.* | **accusing, angry, baleful, disapproving, mocking, reproachful, scornful, sharp, suspicious, withering** *Meena threw him an angry glance.* | **curious, puzzled, questioning, quizzical** | **admiring, approving** | **knowing** | **meaningful** *The couple exchanged meaningful glances but said nothing.* | **amused, wry** | **anxious, nervous, worried** | **plaintive**

VERB + GLANCE **cast (sb), dart, give (sb/sth), have, shoot (sb), steal, take, throw (sb)** *He gave her a mocking glance. I had a quick glance at the article, but I haven't read it yet. He stole a sidelong glance at the young woman sitting next to him on the train. She took one last glance in the mirror and then left.* | **exchange** *They exchanged knowing glances.* | **catch** *I caught the teacher's glance and nearly burst into nervous laughter.* | **attract, draw** *Their vintage car attracted admiring glances wherever they went.*

GLANCE + VERB **flick, flicker, move** *Her glance flickered briefly across to the group standing at the other side of the street.* | **meet** *Their glances met, then they both looked away.* | **fall on sb/sth, rest on sb/sth** *His glance fell on a pile of papers at one side of the desk.*

PREP. **at a ~** *The software allows you to see at a glance what fonts you have on the computer.* | **with a ~** *With a quick glance at the time, she stood up and prepared to leave.* | **without a ~** *He left without a backward glance.* | **~ at** *A glance at my watch told me it was already past six o'clock.* | **~ of** *He ignored my glance of disapproval.* | **~ over** *He kept throwing nervous glances over his shoulder.*

glance *verb*

ADV. **briefly, quickly, sharply** *Norton glanced sharply at him.* | **anxiously, fearfully, nervously** *She glanced nervously over her shoulder.* | **curiously** *glancing curiously about him* | **covertly** *He glanced covertly at his watch.* | **barely, hardly** *She barely glanced at him.* | **down, up** *She glanced up at him.*

VERB + GLANCE **pause to, turn to** *He turned to glance in our direction.* | **happen to** *At that moment she happened to glance up.*

PREP. **about/around/round** *She glanced around the room.* | **across/over** *She glanced across to where the others were standing chatting.* | **at** *She glanced briefly at his lapel badge.* | **towards** *He glanced towards the kitchen.*

gland *noun*

ADJ. **enlarged, swollen** *She's gone to bed with swollen glands and a temperature.* **| adrenal, endocrine, exocrine, pineal, pituitary, prostate, sebaceous, thyroid | poison, salivary, scent, sweat, venom** *Female ants release pheromones from their scent glands.*

GLAND + VERB **release sth, secrete sth**

glandular fever *nou*n > Special page at ILLNESS

glare *noun*

1 **strong light**

ADJ. **blinding, full, harsh, hot | sudden** *A sudden glare of headlights lit the driveway.*

VERB + GLARE **reflect** *The walls were whitewashed to reflect the glare of the sun.* **| reduce** *We wore sunglasses to reduce the glare from the road.* **| be blinded by, be dazzled by** *For a moment she was blinded by the harsh glare of the sun.* **| be caught in** *The rabbit was caught in the glare of the car's headlights.*

PREP. **against the ~** *We screwed up our eyes against the blinding glare from the searchlights.* **| in/under the ~ of** *Under the glare of the street lamps, visibility was good.* **| ~ from**

PHRASES **the glare of publicity** *(figurative) The divorce was conducted in the full glare of media publicity.*

2 **angry look**

ADJ. **angry, baleful, defiant, furious, hostile, malevolent, menacing, withering | icy, steely, stony | warning**

VERB + GLARE **fix sb with, give sb, send sb, shoot (sb), turn on sb** *She fixed her questioner with an icy glare. He sent her a glare that was full of suspicion. She shot a warning glare at her companion. He turned his baleful glare on the cowering suspect.*

glare *verb*

ADV. **angrily, balefully, fiercely, furiously | back** *I looked at her and she glared angrily back.*

PREP. **(down/up) at** *He stood at the bottom of the stairs, glaring up at us.*

glass *noun*

1 transparent substance

ADJ. **clear, coloured, opaque, plain, smoked, tinted | broken | flying** *A bomb went off, and many people were injured by flying glass.* **| bulletproof, cut, frosted, plate, safety, stained, toughened**

QUANT. **piece | pane, sheet | fragment, sliver, splinter** *The floor was littered with fragments of broken glass.*

VERB + GLASS **blow, make** *watching the Venetian craftsmen blowing glass The factory makes safety glass.* **| break, crack, shatter, smash**

GLASS + VERB **break, crack, shatter, smash, splinter** *the sound of breaking glass*

GLASS + NOUN **beads, bottle, bowl, eye, jar, vase | cabinet, case | door, panel, partition, roof, wall | fibre** *a boat made of glass fibre*

PREP. **behind ~** *The books were all behind glass* (= in glass cases). **| on ~** *She cut her foot on some glass.* **| under ~** *growing fruit under glass* (= in a glasshouse) **| through ~** *He could see the light through the frosted glass.*

2 for drinking

ADJ. **brimming, full | half-empty, half-full | empty | beer, brandy, champagne, sherry, whisky, wine | crystal** *a set of crystal glasses* **| tall** *a tall glass of milk* **| fresh** *He poured her a fresh glass of sherry.* **| pint** *beer in a pint glass*

VERB + GLASS **have** *He had a small glass of lager with his meal.* **| drink, sip** *She sat sipping a glass of champagne.* **| drain, empty | fill, pour, refill, top up** *The waiter filled their glasses.* **| clean, polish, wash** *The butler was polishing the brandy glasses.* **| raise** *She raised the glass to her lips.* **| hand sb** *I handed her a glass of wine.* **| put down, set down** *I put my glass down on the table.* **| clink** *They clinked glasses, still laughing.*

GLASS + VERB **clink** *He heard glasses clinking in the other room.*

PREP. **in a/the/sb's ~** *the red liquid in his glass* **| ~ of** *She had had three glasses of whisky already.*

PHRASES **(a) glass in (your) hand** *He sat back, glass in hand.*

glasses *noun*

ADJ. **dark, sun** (also **sunglasses**), **tinted** *I wear blue-tinted glasses on sunny days.* **| reading | half-moon, (little) round | pebble, thick, thick-lensed** *a short, fat man with greasy black hair and thick pebble glasses* **| granny | owlish | heavy | gold-rimmed, horn-rimmed, steel-rimmed, wire-framed/wire-rimmed | rimless | field, opera**

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + GLASSES **have on, wear | put on | remove, take off | look over, peer over** *Her father lowered his paper and peered over his glasses at her.* **| adjust, push up** *She pushed her glasses up and rubbed the bridge of her nose.* **| clean, polish, wipe**

GLASSES + VERB **steam up** *His glasses steamed up as soon as he came indoors.* **| be perched on sth, perch on sth** *Horn-rimmed glasses perched on the bridge of her nose.*

PREP. **behind (your) ~** *She blinked behind her glasses. Their anxious faces were hidden behind dark glasses.*

gleam *noun*

1 **soft light**

ADJ. **dull, faint | distant**

PREP. **~ of** *the distant gleam of the sea*

PHRASES **a gleam of light** *a faint gleam of light from the doorway*

2 **in sb's eyes**

ADJ. **cold, dark, strange | predatory, speculative | mischievous, sardonic, wicked | sudden**

VERB + GLEAM **have** *He had a speculative gleam in his eyes.*

GLEAM + VERB **come into/enter/light sb's eye/eyes** *A sudden gleam came into her eye as she remembered that tomorrow was her day off.*

PREP. **~ of** *A gleam of laughter lit his eyes.*

PHRASES **a gleam in sb's eye/eyes**

gleam *verb*

ADV. **dully, faintly, softly** *The knife's blade gleamed dully in the dark.*

PREP. **with** *The long oak table gleamed with polish.*

PHRASES **gleam golden, white, etc.** *The pebble beach gleamed white in the moonlight.*

glimmer *noun*

ADJ. **faint, tiny** *In the east we could see the first faint glimmer of dawn. (figurative) The faint glimmer of an idea had crept into his mind.*

PREP. **~ of**

glimpse *noun*

1 **brief sight of sb/sth**

ADJ. **brief, fleeting, the merest, momentary, quick | occasional** *They caught occasional glimpses of great birds circling.* **| tantalizing** *This was my first tantalizing glimpse of the islands.*

VERB + GLIMPSE **catch, get, have, take** *Thousands of people had gathered, hoping to catch a glimpse of the Queen. We only had a fleeting glimpse of the sun all day.* **| afford sb**

PREP. **~ at** *He took a quick glimpse at the map.* **| ~ of** *We got just a brief glimpse of the car as it rushed by.*

2 **brief experience of sth**

ADJ. **brief | fascinating, intriguing | rare** *This scene may give a rare glimpse of Charles's personal style as king.*

VERB + GLIMPSE **get, have, take | afford sb, allow sb, give sb, offer (sb), provide** *That smile afforded her a brief glimpse of the other side of Adam Burns.*

PREP. **~ at** *The exhibition offers a fascinating glimpse at life beneath the waves.* **| ~ into** *Take a glimpse into the future of rail travel.* **| ~ of** *She got a glimpse of a very different way of life.*

glint *noun*

1 **flash of light**

ADJ. **golden, metallic**

VERB + GLINT **catch, see** *Among the trees I caught a glint of blue.*

PREP. **~ of**

2 **in sb's eye**

ADJ. **dangerous, determined | mischievous, playful, teasing**

VERB + GLINT **have** *He had a dangerous glint in his eyes.*

GLINT + VERB **appear in sb's eye/eyes, come into/to sb's eye/eyes** *A determined glint appeared in her eye.*

PREP. **~ in, ~ of** *There was a glint of amusement in her eyes.*

glint *verb*

ADV. **angrily** *His eyes glinted angrily.*

PREP. **with** *Her eyes glinted with amusement.*

glitter *verb*

1 **shine brightly**

ADV. **brightly** *Crystal chandeliers glittered brightly above them.*

PREP. **in** *His metal buttons glittered in the sunlight.* **| with** *Trees and grass glittered with dew.*

2 **show emotion**

ADV. **coldly, dangerously, darkly, fiercely, strangely** *His deep-set eyes glittered coldly.*

PREP. **with** *Her eyes glittered with delight.*

globe *noun* **the globe**

VERB + GLOBE **span** *a commercial service that will soon span the globe* **| circumnavigate, travel** *one of the first boats to circumnavigate the globe She travelled the globe in search of good writers of children's stories.*

PREP. **across the ~** *The railway network soon spread across the globe.* **| all over the ~** *Motor vehicles are found all over the globe.* **| around/round the ~** *Chess fans around the globe watched the match with breathless interest.*

PHRASES **all parts of the globe, every corner of the globe** *Athletes from every corner of the globe competed in the Games.*

gloom *noun*

1 **sadness**

ADJ. **black, deep** *She was in deep gloom because not even a postcard had arrived from Ricky.* | **general** | **economic** *the general economic gloom*

VERB + GLOOM **be filled with, be sunk in, sink into** *He was sunk in deep gloom at the prospect of being alone. I sank into gloom and depression.* | **fill sb with** *The news filled me with gloom.* | **cast** *Rumours of his ill health cast gloom over the celebrations.* | **combat, dispel, lift** *efforts to dispel their gloom*

GLOOM + VERB **deepen, descend** *Their gloom deepened as the election results came in. She felt gloom descend on her shoulders.* | **lift** *When the gloom finally lifts, the pessimists will be surprised at how much has been going right.*

PREP. **in ~** *The nation was deep in gloom.* | **~ about** *There is a general gloom about the farming industry.*

PHRASES **doom and gloom** *Despite falling demand, the year has not been all doom and gloom.* | **gloom and despondency** *the darkest feelings of gloom and despondency*

2 **darkness**

ADJ. **deep** | **deepening, descending, gathering** *He peered into the gathering gloom.* | **cold, damp, dingy** | **evening** *The fog looked ominous in the evening gloom.*

VERB + GLOOM **penetrate, pierce** *The sound of distant police whistles pierced the gloom.* | **adjust to, become/get accustomed to** *Slowly, my eyes became accustomed to the gloom.* | **peer into/through** | **be shrouded in** *The sun went in and the house was again shrouded in gloom.*

GLOOM + VERB **deepen, descend** *We sat and watched as the gloom descended.*

PREP. **in the ~** *We lost sight of them in the gloom.* | **into the ~** *The tram rattled off into the gloom.* | **out of the ~** *Two figures materialized out of the gloom.* | **through the ~** *She could see the house faintly through the gloom.*

gloomy *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *Now, don't start to get gloomy.* **| remain**

ADV. **decidedly, very** *The future looked decidedly gloomy.* **| far from** *The committee's view was in fact far from gloomy.* **| pretty, rather**

PREP. **about** *Her trainer was even more gloomy about the prospects for British tennis.*

glory *noun*

1 **fame/honour**

ADJ. **personal** *They are driven by a craving for personal glory.* | **reflected** *She basked in the reflected glory of her daughter's success.* | **greater** *The force behind all Peter's reforms was the greater glory of the Russian state.* | **military** *young soldiers keen to win military glory*

VERB + GLORY **cover yourself in/with, get, win** *He covered himself in glory and came home a rich man. (informal) Typical! I do all the work and she gets all the glory.* | **bring (sb)** *Victory brought them glory, fame and riches.* | **bask in** | **steal, take** *It was 19-year-old David Hagan who stole the points and the glory with a brilliant goal in the closing minutes of the game.*

GLORY + NOUN **days** *We remember the team's glory days in the 1960s, when they won the World Cup.*

PREP. **for/to the ~ of** *They built many churches, great and small, to the glory of God.*

PHRASES **a blaze of glory** *It's my last ever tournament and I hope to go out in a blaze of glory!* | **sb's moment of glory** *His moment of glory came when he won the Olympic downhill skiing event.*

2 **beauty/beautiful feature**

ADJ. **full** *You cannot appreciate the bridge's full glory by going over it; it is best viewed from below.* | **crowning** *The city's crowning glory is its Gothic cathedral.*

PHRASES **in all her/his/its/their glory** *Autumn is the time to see the beech woods in all their glory.* | **restore sth to its former glory** *The eighteenth-century building has been restored to its former glory.*

gloss *noun*

ADJ. clear, high *Use a high gloss paint.* **| healthy, natural** *Your hair has lost its natural gloss.*

VERB + GLOSS add *We used a gel to add gloss to her hair.* **| lose**

GLOSS + NOUN finish, paint, varnish *furniture with a dark gloss finish*

glove *noun*

ADJ. **long | fingerless | protective | cotton, kid** *(often figurative)*, **latex, leather, rubber, woollen** *Treat her with kid gloves?she's very sensitive.* **| boxing, driving, evening, gardening, oven, surgical**

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + GLOVE **pull on | peel off, pull off** *She peeled off her glove to reveal a wedding ring.*

GLOVE + NOUN **compartment** *Don't keep important documents in the glove compartment of your car.* > Special page at CLOTHES

glow *noun*

1 **steady light**

ADJ. **cosy, rich, soft, warm | dim, dull, faint, pale | fierce | steady | eerie, ghostly**

VERB + GLOW **cast, give sth, throw** *The lamplight gave a cosy glow to the room. The sunset threw an orange glow on the cliffs.* **| be bathed in** *The whole village was bathed in the glow of the setting sun.*

GLOW + VERB **light sth** *Our faces were lit by the faint green glow of the dashboard lights.*

PREP. **~ from** *the soft glow from the lamp* **| ~ of**

2 **in sb's face**

ADJ. **healthy, pink, rosy, warm**

VERB + GLOW **have** *Her cheeks had a healthy glow.*

PHRASES **bring a glow to sb's cheeks/face** *The wine had brought a warm glow to her cheeks.*

3 **feeling**

ADJ. **rosy, warm**

VERB + GLOW **bask in, bathe in, feel** *She bathed in the warm glow of first love.*

PREP. **~ of** *He felt a glow of pride as he watched them.*

glow *verb*

1 **give out light/heat**

ADV. **dully, faintly, softly** *Two lamps glowed softly in the lounge.*

PHRASES **glow orange, red, etc.** *The stones around the bonfire glowed red with the heat.*

2 **look healthy, happy, angry, etc.**

ADV. **positively**

PREP. **with** *She was positively glowing with happiness.*

glue *noun*

QUANT. **pot, tube** *All you will need is a sharp knife and a pot of glue.*

VERB + GLUE **apply, put on** *Put glue on both the surfaces.* **| sniff** *He took to drinking and sniffing glue.*

GLUE + VERB **dry, set** *It takes about half an hour for the glue to set.*

glue *verb*

ADV. **firmly | down, in/into place, together** *Glue the pieces firmly together.*

PREP. **onto/to** *Someone's glued this coin to the table!*

go *verb*

1 happen

ADV. **smoothly, well** *Everything went very smoothly.* **| badly**

2 pass

ADV. **quickly, slowly** *The holiday went very quickly.* **| by** *The days seemed to go by very slowly.*

3 look/taste good with sth

ADV. **well | together** *Leeks and potatoes go well together in a soup.*

PREP. **with** *That tie goes well with that shirt.* **PHRASAL VERBS go down**

ADV. **badly, well**

PREP. **with** *The novel went down well with the public.* **go on**

ADV. **endlessly**

PREP. **about** *He goes on endlessly about his health problems.* **| at** *Stop going on at me about that money.* **| with** *We'll go on with the presentations after lunch.*

PHRASES **go on and on** *The journey just seemed to go on and on.*

goal *noun*

1 **wooden frame into which a ball is kicked/hit**

ADJ. **open** *He kicked the ball into an open goal.*

VERB + GOAL **go in, play in** *The goalkeeper was injured so a defender had to go in goal.*

PREP. **in ~** *Who's in goal for Arsenal?*

2 **point scored in a game**

ADJ. **brilliant, excellent, good, great, spectacular, stunning, superb, well-taken | scrappy, soft** *The fans were annoyed that the team gave away such a soft goal.* **| decisive, winning | equalizing | important, useful, vital | own** *Vega scored an unfortunate own goal when he slipped as he tried to clear the ball.*

VERB + GOAL **get, score | kick** (in rugby) **| head (in) | make** *Visconti scored one goal himself and made two for Lupo.* **| concede, give away, let in | allow, disallow** *The referee disallowed the goal.*

GOAL + VERB **come from sb/sth** *The equalizing goal came from Cole. The second goal came from a penalty.*

PREP. **~ against** *They scored three goals against the home team.* **| ~ for** *his first goal for Spain* **| ~ from** *A late goal from Owen won the game for Liverpool.* > Special page at SPORT

3 **aim**

ADJ. **immediate, short-term** *Our immediate goal is to earn enough money to keep the business going.* **| long-term, ultimate | main, major, primary, prime | clear, explicit, specific | ambitious** *They have set themselves some ambitious goals.* **| modest | desirable | achievable, attainable, realistic | unattainable, unrealistic | elusive | personal | common** *We are all working towards a common goal.* **| twin** *The prison service pursues the twin goals of the punishment and rehabilitation of offenders.* **| strategic | political**

VERB + GOAL **have** *It is important to have explicit goals.* **| establish, set (sb) | pursue, strive for, work towards | achieve, attain, reach**

PREP. **~ of** *their goal of providing free university education for everyone*

goalkeeper *noun*

ADJ. **brilliant, excellent, good | England, Liverpool, etc.** *The England goalkeeper played brilliantly.* **| international | reserve, substitute | veteran, young**

PREP. **~ for** *He now plays as goalkeeper for Liverpool.*

goat *noun*

ADJ. **billy, male | female, nanny | wild | mountain**

QUANT. **flock, herd**

VERB + GOAT **keep | milk | tether** *Tethered goats grazed among the apple trees.*

GOAT + VERB **bleat | graze | wander**

PHRASES **goat's cheese/milk**

god *noun*

ADJ. **pagan | Christian, Greek, Roman, etc. | heathen, false** *those who follow false gods* **| fertility | sun**

VERB + GOD **believe in, follow, have** *Do you believe in God? Muslims have only one God.* **| praise, pray to, thank, worship** *The people worshipped pagan gods.*

GOD + VERB **exist** *Can we prove that God exists?*

PREP. **~ of** *the Roman god of war*

PHRASES **faith in God** *Nothing ever shook her faith in God.* **| the will of God** *He saw the accident as the will of God.*

goddess *noun*

ADJ. **pagan | Egyptian, Roman, etc. | fertility, mother | moon, sun | screen** *(figurative) She dreamed of becoming a Hollywood screen goddess.*

VERB + GODDESS **pray to, worship**

PREP. **~ of** *Aphrodite, the goddess of love*

goggles *noun*

ADJ. **protective, safety | driving, flying, motorcycle, ski, snow, swimming**

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + GOGGLES **have on, wear | put on, take off**

GOGGLES + VERB **steam up** *My swimming goggles keep steaming up so I can't see.*

gold *noun*

1 **yellow metal**

ADJ. **pure | real | solid | fool's | 9-carat, 18-carat, etc. | molten | beaten, rolled | burnished | tarnished**

VERB + GOLD **extract, mine, produce | look for, pan for, prospect for** *He spent weeks panning for gold in the river.* **| discover, find, strike | be set in** *The rubies were set in 18-carat gold.*

GOLD + NOUN **mine, miner, mining, prospecting, prospector | rush** *a gold rush town* **| deposit, dust, nugget | bar, bullion, ingot | leaf, plate | market, reserves, stocks** *falling government gold stocks* **| standard** *The currency was tied to the gold standard.*

PHRASES **a vein of gold** *In the afternoon he struck a rich vein of gold.*

2 (*also* **gold medal**) **in sports**

ADJ. **Olympic**

VERB + GOLD **get, take, win** *She got a gold in the long jump.* **| go for** *She's going for gold this time.*

golden *adj.*

VERBS **be, gleam, look** *The abbey walls gleamed golden in the light of the setting sun.* **| turn** *The whole sky turned golden and red.*

ADV. **faintly, softly** *the faintly golden afternoon light*

golf *noun*

ADJ. **amateur, pro, pro-am, professional** *Amateur golf is very competitive.* **| mini/miniature** *The hotel offers miniature golf and other activities for children.*

QUANT. **game, round**

VERB + GOLF **play | take up | watch**

GOLF + NOUN **course, links | hole** *The eighth at Banff is one of the world's great golf holes.* **| club** *She decided to join a golf club.* **| bag, ball, buggy, cart, club, equipment, glove, shoes, tee, umbrella** *You can borrow golf clubs if you want a game.* **| swing** *His coach says his golf swing needs improving.* **| game, match, tournament | title | handicap** *She has a golf handicap of 18.* **| professional, star | fan/fanatic | season | circuit, scene, tour | clinic, lesson** *The club is holding a golf clinic next week, where golfers can get advice from the pros.* **| correspondent, journalist, reporter, writer | magazine | holiday, package** *Choose from over 100 golf packages in our brochure.* **| widow** *She's been a golf widow since she gave her husband his first set of clubs.* > Special page at SPORT

golfer *noun*

ADJ. brilliant, good | experienced | handicap *a low handicap golfer* **| champion, top | keen | amateur, professional | club**

GOLFER + VERB play

good *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste | become, get** *She's getting quite good at reading now.*

ADV. **dead, extremely, really, very** *a really good film* **| fairly, pretty, quite** *You've done a pretty good job.*

PREP. **at** *He's very good at music.* **| for** *Vegetables are good for you.* **| to** *She was very good to me when my husband died.* **| with** *She's good with figures.*

good *noun*

ADJ. **common** *The results of the research should be used for the common good rather than for individual profit.*

VERB + GOOD **do (sb)** *You can try talking to her, but I don't think it will do much good. It will do you good to get out of the house more often.*

PREP. **for sb/sth's ~** *When the prime minister's health problems continued, he resigned for the good of the party.*

PHRASES **a force for good** *In disadvantaged areas, schools can be a force for good.* **| for sb's (own) good** *I know you don't want to go into hospital, but it's for your own good.* **| for the good of sth, good and evil** *the struggle between good and evil* **| a power of good** *That holiday has done me a power of good.*

good-looking *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, really, strikingly, terribly, very | not exactly, not particularly** *She was not exactly good-looking, but definitely attractive.* **| quite, rather, reasonably** *He was tall and quite good-looking.*

goods *noun*

ADJ. **consumer, electrical, electronic, household, luxury** *a shop selling electrical goods* **| durable, perishable** *A 'use by' date must be stamped on all perishable goods.* **| mass-produced | cheap, low-priced | branded, own-label** *The supermarket's own-label goods are cheaper than branded goods* **| duty-free | second-hand | defective, faulty, shoddy | stolen** *He was accused of handling stolen goods.* **| counterfeit, fake**

VERB + GOODS **make, manufacture, produce** *factories which produce luxury goods for the export market* **| buy, purchase | export, import | sell, supply | deliver** *The goods will be delivered within ten days.* | **transport**

GOODS + NOUN **train, vehicle, wagon | depot, yard**

goodwill *noun*

VERB + GOODWILL **enjoy, have | create** *Addressing customers in their own language helps create goodwill.* **| win | lose** *They are in danger of losing the government's goodwill.* **| depend on, rely on | express, show**

PREP. **~ to, ~ towards** *He expressed goodwill towards his former colleagues.*

PHRASES **a gesture of goodwill** *The government released him as a gesture of goodwill.* **| in a spirit of goodwill** *They made the offer in a spirit of goodwill.*

goose *nou*n

ADJ. **wild | roast**

QUANT. **flock, gaggle** (only used for geese on the ground), **skein (only used for geese that are flying)**

GOOSE + VERB **waddle | hiss, honk | feed, graze | migrate**

gorgeous *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, sound** *Doesn't Kate look gorgeous?*

ADV. **really | absolutely, drop-dead, simply** *a drop-dead gorgeous Hollywood icon* **| rather**

gospel *noun* **the gospel**

ADJ. **Christian**

VERB + GOSPEL **bring, preach, proclaim, spread, take** *She preached the Christian gospel to the poor and destitute.* **| hear** *Thousands came to hear the gospel.*

GOSPEL + NOUN **message, story**

gossip *noun*

1 **rumours about other people**

ADJ. **latest | common** *It's common gossip in the office that she's about to leave her husband.* **| idle, malicious, salacious, silly**

QUANT. **bit, piece, titbit** *I heard an interesting bit of gossip yesterday.*

VERB + GOSSIP **spread** *Someone has been spreading malicious gossip about me.* **| exchange, swap | hear, listen to, pay attention to** *You shouldn't listen to idle gossip.*

GOSSIP + VERB **circulate, go around/round** *A piece of silly gossip was going round the school.*

GOSSIP + NOUN **column, columnist** *I saw it in the gossip column of the local newspaper.*

PREP. **~ about** *a magazine full of gossip about famous people*

2 **conversation about other people**

ADJ. **good**

VERB + GOSSIP **have**

PREP. **~ about** *We had a good gossip about the boss.* **| ~ with** *She's having a gossip with Maria.*

govern *verb*

ADV. **well | directly** *The colony was governed directly from Paris.*

VERB + GOVERN **be fit/unfit to** *He accused the opposition party of being unfit to govern.*

government *noun*

1 **people in control of a country**

ADJ. **central, federal, local, national, provincial, regional | Communist, Conservative, Labour, etc.** *the country's new Communist government* | **left-wing, right-wing | coalition | minority** *The socialists won 42% of the seats and formed a minority government.* | **caretaker, interim, transitional** *The president dissolved the assembly and swore in an interim government.* | **military | puppet | French, Western, etc.** *The report on world poverty calls for urgent action from Western governments.*

VERB + GOVERNMENT **elect** *The present government was elected last year.* | **form** *A nre government was formed in September of that year.* | **install** *A puppet government was installed as the occupying forces withdrew.* | **swear in | head, run** *a new government headed by a former military leader* | **bring down, destabilize, oust, overthrow, topple** *This crisis could bring down the British government. The group aims to overthrow the military government.*

GOVERNMENT + VERB **come to power | take office** *On May 23 a coalition government took office.* | **fall, resign** *a national emergency that could cause the government to fall* | **announce sth** *The government announced the cancellation of the dam project.* | **introduce sth, launch sth**

GOVERNMENT + NOUN **agency, body, department | funds, money | aid, assistance, backing, funding, grant, subsidy, support | expenditure, spending | cuts** *The hospital has been hit by government cuts.* | **control | intervention, involvement** *calls for government intervention in the dispute* | **minister, official, representative, spokesman | sources** *According to government sources, two people died in the incident.* | **figures, statistics | post | reshuffle** *The former minister was relieved of his post in last month's extensive government reshuffle.* | **decisions, legislation, measures, plans, policy, proposals | report | propaganda**

PREP. **in ~** *a problem facing whichever party is in government* | **under a/the ~** *measures that were introduced under the last government*

PHRASES **a change of government** *It is time we had a change of government.* | **the government of the day** *This was a decision taken by the government of the day.* | **a**

member of a government *The prime minister has been meeting members of the French government.*

2 **act of governing**

ADJ. **democratic, representative | firm, good, strong** *We need strong government to take the country through this crisis.* **| weak**

governor *noun*

ADJ. **deputy | acting, interim** *She was appointed as acting governor until an election could be held.* **| colonial, district, provincial, regional, state | imperial | military | prison, school | parent** *She served as a parent governor at her children's school.*

VERB + GOVERNOR **appoint, appoint sb (as), co-opt, co-opt sb (as), elect, elect sb (as) | serve as**

PHRASES **a board of governors**

gown *noun*

1 **woman's long dress**

ADJ. **long | flowing** *She was dressed in a long flowing gown.* **| ball, bridal, evening, wedding**

GOWN + VERB **be trimmed with sth** *She wore a white satin gown trimmed with lace.*

PREP. **in a/the ~**

2 **worn by judges, surgeons, etc.**

ADJ. **academic | hospital, surgical**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

PHRASES **town and gown** (= the permanent members of a university town and the members of its university) > Special page at CLOTHES

GP *noun*

ADJ. **excellent, good | qualified | experienced | family, local** *Who is your local GP?*

VERB + GP **register with** *You should register with a GP as soon as possible.*

GP + VERB **refer sb** *The GP referred her to a specialist.* > Note at DOCTOR(for more verbs)

grab *verb*

ADV. suddenly

VERB + GRAB try to | manage to *He managed to grab a couple of hours' sleep.*

PREP. at *I grabbed at his arm as he ran past.* **| by** *As he walked past the boys, one of them grabbed him by the arm.* **| from** *Somebody tried to grab her handbag from her.*

PHRASES grab hold of sth *He grabbed hold of a handrail to save himself from falling.*

grace *noun*

ADJ. **easy, lithe, supple | natural | feline**

VERB + GRACE **have, move with**

PREP. **with ~** *Ann moved with easy grace.*

grade *noun*

1 level/quality

ADJ. **high, top** *a piece of high grade building land He still wants to play top grade football.* **| low, poor** *low grade steel*

2 mark given for a piece of work/an exam

ADJ. **final** *The oral exam constitutes 10% of the final grade.* **| excellent, good, high | low, poor**

VERB + GRADE **achieve, attain, get, receive** *She got very good grades in her exams.* **| award (sb)**

3 level of importance/level of pay at work

ADJ. **high, senior** *He has asked to be put onto a higher grade. large pay rises for senior grades* **| junior, low | management | manual**

PREP. **at a/the ... ~** *She was offered a job at a lower grade.* **| on a/the ... ~** *the people on management grades*

grade *verb*

ADV. **carefully** *a series of modern stories carefully graded for beginner to intermediate students*

PREP. **according to** *The timber is graded according to its thickness.* **| by** *The containers are graded by size.* **| from … to …** *Eggs are graded from small to extra large.*

gradient *noun*

ADJ. **steep | gentle, slight | downhill, uphill**

VERB + GRADIENT **have** *The road has a fairly steep gradient.*

PREP. **on a ~** *The football pitch was on a slight gradient.*

graduate *noun*

ADJ. **college, university** *job opportunities for university graduates* **| arts, engineering, history, law, medical, science, etc. | new, recent**

GRADUATE + NOUN **course, degree, diploma | school | student | recruit, trainee** *He joined the company as a graduate trainee.* **| employment, recruitment** *The company places great importance on graduate recruitment and training.* **| unemployment**

PREP. **~ in** *a graduate in sociology*

graduation *noun*

ADJ. **college, university**

GRADUATION + NOUN **ceremony, day** *Mark's whole family attended his graduation ceremony.*

PREP. **after ~** *She managed to find a job immediately after graduation.* **| on/upon ~** *On graduation, he plans to travel around Asia.*

graffiti *noun*

ADJ. **political, racist**

QUANT. **piece**

VERB + GRAFFITI **daub, draw, scrawl, scribble, spray, write** *Graffiti was scribbled all over the walls.* **| be covered with, be daubed with, be sprayed with** *The buildings were covered with racist graffiti.*

GRAFFITI + NOUN **artist** *a fashionable graffiti artist*

graft *noun*

1 **on part of the body**

ADJ. **bone, skin**

VERB + GRAFT **do** *Doctors are hoping to do a bone graft to repair the damaged bone.*

GRAFT + VERB **take** *If the skin graft takes, then surgeons will do another operation a few weeks later.*

2 **hard work**

ADJ. **hard** *Starting a new business involves a lot of hard graft.*

VERB + GRAFT **do** *Most of the graft was done for them by their assistants.*

grain *noun*

1 **seeds of wheat, etc.**

VERB + GRAIN **grow, produce | sow | store**

GRAIN + NOUN **harvest, production, yield | exports, imports**

2 **natural pattern of lines in wood**

ADJ. **fine, smooth | coarse, rough | natural** *This wood has a beautiful natural grain.*

PREP. **across/against the ~, along/with the ~** *Cut the wood along the grain.*

gram *nou*n > Note at MEASURE

grammar *noun*

ADJ. **correct, good** *Spelling and good grammar are both very important.* **| bad, incorrect | Arabic, French, Latin, etc.** *the complexities of English grammar*

VERB + GRAMMAR **correct, teach** *People were too polite to correct my grammar when I spoke German.* **| learn**

GRAMMAR + NOUN **rules**

PHRASES **the rules of grammar**

grammatical *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound**

ADV. **perfectly** *This sentence is perfectly grammatical.*

grandeur *noun*

ADJ. **rugged** *the rugged grandeur of the mountains* **| breathtaking, dramatic, majestic, sheer** *the breathtaking grandeur of the cathedral* **| faded, former**

grandfather, grandmother *nou*n

ADJ. **maternal, paternal | doting**

grandparent *noun*

ADJ. **maternal, paternal | doting** *a present from his doting grandparents*

QUANT. **set** *I've sent photos of the children to both sets of grandparents.*

grant *noun*

ADJ. **large, substantial | small | full** *The full student maintenance grant was rather less than £2,000.* **| annual | capital, lump-sum, purchase** *The school has received a large capital grant to improve its buildings.* **| maintenance | emergency** *emergency grants for special needs for items such as cookers and clothing* **| discretionary | mandatory | student | project, research** *There is a lot of competition for research grants.* **| clothing, conservation, (home) improvement, land, maternity, renovation, training, etc. | Arts Council, EU, government, local authority, etc.**

VERB + GRANT **apply for | be eligible for, qualify for** *You may be eligible for a clothing grant.* **| get, obtain, receive** *You can get a grant if you've lived in the area for three years.* **| award (sb), give sb, make (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *The government has awarded a 3.5 million pound grant for the restoration of the opera house.* **| refuse sb | cut** *The theatre's annual grant from the Arts Council has been cut.*

PREP. **~ for** *a grant for a youth project* **| ~ from** *a grant from the local authority*

grant *verb*

ADV. **expressly, specifically** *the rights expressly granted by the terms of the lease* **|** **effectively** *The law effectively grants the company immunity from prosecution.*

VERB + GRANT **agree to, decide to | refuse to** *The judge refused to grant him bail.* **|** **be willing to**

grape *noun*

ADJ. **juicy, sweet** *lovely sweet grapes* **| black, green, purple, white | seedless**

QUANT. **bunch**

VERB + GRAPE **eat, have | harvest, pick** *The first grapes are harvested in mid-August.* **| crush, tread** *The peasants were treading the grapes in huge vats.*

GRAPE + NOUN **harvest** > Special page at FRUIT

graph *noun*

ADJ. **bar, line**

VERB + GRAPH **draw, produce | depict sth as/on, show sth as/in/on** *The statistics can be depicted as a graph.* **| plot sth on** *The figures are all plotted on a graph.*

GRAPH + VERB **show sth** *She drew a graph showing the relationship between costs and sales.*

GRAPH + NOUN **paper**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I decided to show the results in a bar graph.* **| on a/the ~** *We can see on this graph how the company has grown over the last year.*

PHRASES **in graph form** *Results can be shown in numeric or graph form.*

graphics *noun*

ADJ. **computer | basic, simple** *The screen can display simple graphics as well as text.* **| colour | high-resolution | three-dimensional, two-dimensional**

VERB + GRAPHICS **produce | display | manipulate** *The program can produce and manipulate text and graphics.* **| support** *The editor's PC should support desktop publishing and graphics.*

GRAPHICS + NOUN **application, package, program, software, system | capability, performance | card, file, tablet, workstation | design, designer** > Special page at COMPUTER

grasp *noun*

1 holding sth

ADJ. **firm, strong** *She felt a firm grasp on her hand.*

VERB + GRASP **slip from** *As she jumped forward, the ball slipped from her grasp.* **| prise sth from, rip sth from, snatch sth from, wrench sth from, wrest sth from** *She wrenched the bottle from his grasp.*

PREP. **beyond your ~** *The key was on a high shelf, just beyond her grasp.* **| in your ~** *He kept the letter firmly in his grasp.* **| from sb's ~** *The robber tried to free the case from her grasp.* **| out of sb's ~** *She kicked the gun out of his grasp.* **| within (your) ~** *(often figurative) Just when victory seemed within grasp, the referee blew his whistle.*

2 understanding

ADJ. **fine, firm, good, impressive, proper, sound | limited, poor | intellectual** *The task was beyond the intellectual grasp of some of the students.* **| intuitive** *We have no intuitive grasp of the immensity of time.*

VERB + GRASP **have | get** *Working with native speakers helped me get a good grasp of the language.*

PREP. **beyond your ~** *These ideas are all beyond his grasp.* **| within your ~ | ~ of** *a poor grasp of mathematics*

grasp *verb*

1 **take hold of sb/sth suddenly and firmly**

ADV. **firmly, tightly**

PREP. **at** *Her hands were grasping at his coat.* **| by** *She grasped him tightly by the wrist.*

PHRASES **grasp hold of sb/sth** *She grasped hold of the banister to support herself.*

2 **understand sth**

ADV. **fully** *He had not fully grasped the fact that he was the one who would pay for all this.* **| not really** *I hadn't really grasped what they were talking about.* **| quickly | easily, readily** *a means by which students can more easily grasp the basics of science*

VERB + GRASP **try to | be unable to, fail to** *She failed to grasp the significance of these facts.* **| quick to** *He was quick to grasp the basic principles.* **| be difficult to, be hard to** *Some of these concepts are very difficult to grasp.*

grass *noun*

ADJ. **green | coarse, rough, thick | lush | long, tall | short | fresh-cut, freshly-cut, freshly-mown | damp, wet | dry | wild**

QUANT. **blade** *I've walked along that path for so many years I know every blade of grass.* **| clump, tuft** *There were only a few clumps of coarse grass for the animals to eat.*

VERB + GRASS **eat | cut, mow | sow**

GRASS + VERB **grow**

GRASS + NOUN **clippings, cuttings | seed | verge** *We parked on the grass verge by the side of the road.*

PREP. **across the ~** *They all set off across the grass.* **| in the ~** *I found the wallet lying in the grass.* **| on the ~** *You're not allowed to walk on the grass.* **| through the ~** *The dog came running through the long grass.*

grate *verb*

1 rub sth into small pieces

ADV. **coarsely | finely** *Sprinkle the top of the dish with some finely grated cheese.*

PHRASES **freshly grated** *a teaspoon of freshly grated nutmeg*

2 make a sharp unpleasant sound

ADV. **harshly**

PREP. **against** *The steel of the helmet grated against the door.* **| on** *The grit beneath her soles grated harshly on the wooden deck.*

grateful *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | remain**

ADV. **deeply, enormously, especially, extremely, genuinely, immensely, more than, most, particularly, profoundly, really, terribly, truly, very** *We are deeply grateful to you and your family. I am more than grateful for their generous response. Thank you for your help. I really am most grateful.* **| almost** *His father looked almost grateful for once.* **| quite, rather | just, simply** *I'm just grateful the injury is not as bad as we'd feared.* **| always | eternally** *I'm eternally grateful that we managed to go there before the war.*

PREP. **for** *I'm really grateful for your help.* **| to** *I'm immensely grateful to you for your support.*

gratifying *adj.*

VERBS be | find sth

ADV. extremely, most, particularly, very

PREP. for *It is most gratifying for me to know that my work has been useful.*

gratitude *noun*

ADJ. **deep, profound | heartfelt, real, sincere | eternal, undying**

VERB + GRATITUDE **feel** *the very deep gratitude I felt towards her* **| express, show | earn (sb)** *His kindness and support earned him her eternal gratitude.*

PREP. **in ~** *He almost wept in gratitude when he saw the money.* **| with ~** *I remember them with gratitude.* **| ~ at** *my gratitude at her thoughtfulness* **| ~ for, ~ to/towards** *I would like to express my deep sense of gratitude to the staff for their patience.*

PHRASES **as a token of your gratitude** *I sent him some money as a token of my gratitude.* **| owe a debt of gratitude to sb** *We owe her a deep debt of gratitude for her services.* **| a feeling/sense of gratitude**

grave *noun*

ADJ. **deep, shallow** *The body was found in a shallow grave in a nearby wood.* **| open** *The mourners threw flowers into the open grave.* **| freshly-dug | unmarked** *His body is buried in an unmarked grave.* **| mass** *A mass grave has been discovered in a wood outside the village.* **| watery** *He rescued her from a watery grave* (= saved her from drowning).

VERB + GRAVE **dig | mark** *The grave was marked by a simple headstone.* **| desecrate** *Some of the graves have been desecrated by vandals.*

PREP. **beyond the ~** *The old lady still influences the family from beyond the grave.* **| in a/the ~** *I'll be in my grave by the time that happens!* **| on a/the ~** *She puts fresh flowers on her husband's grave every Sunday.*

gravity *noun*

1 **natural force**

ADJ. **weak, zero** *the weak gravity on the moon* | **strong**

VERB + GRAVITY **be subject to** *All objects are subject to gravity.* | **defy** *The building leans so much that it seems to defy gravity.*

PREP. **by ~** *The water flows from the tank by gravity to the houses below.*

PHRASES **centre of gravity** *(often figurative) Europe's economic centre of gravity shifted northwards.* | **the force of gravity, the law/laws of gravity**

2 **seriousness**

ADJ. **extreme** *I don't think you realize the extreme gravity of this offence.*

VERB + GRAVITY **appreciate, realize, understand**

PREP. **with ~** *Criminal law does not treat traffic offences with the gravity they deserve.*

graze *noun*

ADJ. **minor, slight, small**

VERB + GRAZE **get, have, suffer** *She suffered only minor grazes in the crash.*

PREP. **~ on** *I've got a graze on my leg.*

graze *verb*

1 **of animals**

ADV. **peacefully, quietly** *Sheep were grazing peacefully in the fields.*

VERB + GRAZE **allow sth to, turn sth out to** *The cattle were turned out to graze.*

PREP. **on/upon** *lambs grazing on the rough moorland pasture*

2 **break the surface of your skin**

ADV. **badly** *She had grazed her elbow quite badly.*

PREP. **on** *He fell and grazed his knees on a rock*

grease *noun*

VERB + GREASE **be covered in/with, be smeared in/with** *The kitchen surfaces were all smeared with grease.* **| dissolve, remove**

GREASE + NOUN **mark, spot, stain**

PHRASES **a blob/smear of grease**

grease *verb*

ADV. well | lightly *Place the cakes on a lightly greased baking tray.*

great *adj.*

1 **large in amount/degree/size, etc.**

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **very** *The play was a very great success.*

PHRASES **great big** *There's a great big hole in this sleeve.* **| no great** *Don't worry. It's no great problem.*

2 **admired**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **really, truly, very** *He was a truly great man.*

3 **very good/pleasant**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste** *You're looking great. Marriage must suit you!*

ADV. **really** *That's really great news!* **| absolutely** *The food smells absolutely great.*

greatness *noun*

ADJ. **true** *This book tells you nothing about the true greatness of his paintings.*

VERB + GREATNESS **achieve** *those people who have achieved greatness* **| be destined for** *a woman who was destined for greatness*

GREATNESS + VERB **lie** *Her greatness lies in her deep understanding of human nature.*

greed *noun*

ADJ. **pure, sheer, simple | human, personal**

VERB + GREED **satisfy** *She killed him to satisfy her greed.* **| be consumed by, be driven by**

PREP. **~ for** *He was driven by greed for money and power.*

Greek *noun*

ADJ. **ancient, classical | New Testament | modern**

GREEK + NOUN **alphabet** > Note at LANGUAGE

greet *verb*

1 say hello to sb

ADV. **cheerfully, enthusiastically, pleasantly, warmly** *The two men greeted one another warmly.* **| courteously, politely | coolly** *Stella greeted her mother coolly.*

VERB + GREET **be there to, be waiting to** *You must be there to greet your guests. My parents were waiting to greet us at the door.* **| come to, rise to, turn to** *The president rose to greet his guests.*

PREP. **with** *She greeted him with a quick kiss.*

PHRASES **greet sb by name** *The head teacher greeted all the pupils by name.*

2 react to sth in particular way

ADV. **enthusiastically | coolly | angrily** *The announcement was greeted angrily by the workers.*

PREP. **with** *The news was greeted with astonishment.*

greeting *noun*

1 **first words you say when you meet sb**

ADJ. **formal, friendly, polite**

VERB + GREETING **call (out), nod, shout, smile, wave** *He jumped to his feet and called out a greeting. They said nothing, but nodded a polite greeting.* **| exchange** *The delegates shook hands and exchanged greetings.* **| acknowledge, respond to, return** *I said 'Good morning!', but she didn't return the greeting.* **| ignore**

PREP. **in ~** *He held out his hand in greeting.*

2 **greetings: good wishes**

ADJ. **affectionate, personal, warm | birthday, Christmas, New Year, seasonal**

VERB + GREETING **bring, extend, send (sb)** *He brought Christmas greetings from the whole family. We extend our greetings to you and thank you for listening to us.*

GREETING + NOUN **card**

gregarious *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **highly, very** *These animals are highly gregarious.*

grenade *noun*

ADJ. **hand, smoke, stun | rocket-propelled | live**

VERB + GRENADE **be armed with, carry, have** *The hijackers were armed with hand grenades.* **| hold** *She was holding the grenade above her head, ready to throw.* **| hurl, lob, throw, toss** *I tossed the grenade through the open door.* **| pull the pin out of**

GRENADE + VERB **fall, land | explode, go off**

GRENADE + NOUN **attack | launcher**

grey *adj.*

1 **of the colour between black and white**

ADV. **very** *The sky looks very grey. I think it's going to rain.* **| quite, rather, slightly**

ADJ. **dark | light, pale** *a light grey suit* **| silvery, slate** > Special page at COLOUR

2 **with grey hair**

VERBS **be | go, turn** *He went grey before he was forty.*

ADV. **very | completely** *She was completely grey by the age of thirty.*

grid *noun*

1 **pattern of lines that cross each other**

ADJ. **rectangular, square | regular**

GRID + NOUN **line, pattern, square, system** *The artist drew a set of grid lines over the area to be painted.*

2 **system of squares drawn on a map**

GRID + NOUN **line, reference, square** *The grid lines on the map run north-south. An Ordnance Survey grid reference gives the position of a place to within 100 metres.*

3 **system of electric cables**

ADJ. **national | electricity**

GRID + NOUN **system** *Power can be fed from wind generators into the electricity grid system.*

grief *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, deep, great, inconsolable, real | private** *I felt awkward at intruding on their private grief.*

VERB + GRIEF **be overcome with, be stricken with, experience, feel** *Her parents were stricken with grief.* **| express, show | die from/of | come to terms with, cope with, deal with** *struggling to come to terms with their grief* **| cause** *Such behaviour can cause considerable grief.*

PREP. **~ at** *Children can feel real grief at the loss of a pet.* **| ~ for** *her grief for her dead husband*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of grief**

grievance *noun*

ADJ. **genuine, legitimate, real** *Some people will complain even if they have no genuine grievance.* **| imaginary, imagined | long-standing, old | individual, personal | economic, social** *By the 1530s social grievances were again being voiced.*

VERB + GRIEVANCE **harbour, have, nurse** *She still nursed her old grievance.* **| air, express, vent, voice | hear** (*formal*), **listen to** *MPs spend many hours listening to the real or imagined grievances of their constituents.* **| redress, remedy, settle** *Managers would make every effort to remedy individual grievances as they arose.*

PREP. **~ about/over** *The meeting will be a chance to air your grievances about the organization.* **| ~ against** *He had a personal grievance against the professor.*

PHRASES **a sense of grievance**

grieve *verb*

ADV. **deeply** *She had grieved deeply for her father.* **| still**

PREP. **for** *They are still grieving for their child.* **| over** *grieving over the loss of his daughter*

grill *noun*

1 **part of a cooker**

ADJ. **hot** *Cook under a hot grill for 7 minutes.* **| eye-level | electric, gas**

VERB + GRILL **preheat** *Preheat the grill to medium.*

GRILL + NOUN **pan**

PREP. **under a/the ~** *Place the chops in the grill pan, and put it under the grill.*

2 **framework of metal bars that you cook food on**

ADJ. **charcoal**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *Once the charcoal is glowing, place the food on the grill, turning it regularly.*

grimace *noun*

ADJ. **little, slight, small | ugly | rueful, wry | facial**

VERB + GRIMACE **give, make** *She made a wry grimace.* **| twist into** *His face twisted into a grimace.*

GRIMACE + VERB **twist sth** *An ugly grimace twisted her face.*

PREP. **with a ~** *He acknowledged his mistake with a wry grimace.* **| ~ of** *a grimace of disgust/pain*

grimace *verb*

ADV. **slightly | ruefully, wryly**

PREP. **at** *He grimaced slightly at the pain. She grimaced at him.* **| in** *She grimaced in disgust.*

grime *noun*

VERB + GRIME **be covered in/with**

PHRASES **a layer of grime** *Over the years, the painting has become covered in a thick layer of grime*

grin *noun*

ADJ. **big, broad, huge, large, wide | faint, feeble | friendly, sympathetic | infectious | lazy | fatuous, foolish, goofy, silly | boyish, cheeky, impish, mischievous, sly** *Edmund looked up with an impish grin.* **| bashful, sheepish | sickly | rueful, sardonic, wry | self-deprecatory, self-mocking | knowing | insane, manic | grim, humourless, mirthless | evil, ferocious, hideous, wicked, wolfish | crooked, lopsided | gap-toothed, toothless, toothy**

VERB + GRIN **crack, force, give (sb)** *He gave the photographer a big grin.* **| break into, split into** *The old man's face broke into a grin.* **| hide, restrain, stifle** *She tried to stifle a grin.*

GRIN + VERB **broaden, grow broader/wider, widen | appear, spread across/over sth** *A mischievous grin spread across the little girl's face.* **| disappear, fade** *His wry grin faded.*

PREP. **with a ~** *'Fooled you!' he said, with a cheeky grin.* **| ~ at** *a grin at his wife* **| ~ of** *a grin of triumph*

PHRASES **take/wipe the grin off your face** *Take that grin off your face!* **| wipe the grin off sb's face** *I'll soon wipe that silly grin off her face.*

grin *verb*

ADV. **broadly, widely** *He appeared in the doorway grinning broadly.* **| weakly | crookedly | cheerfully, happily | amiably | cheekily, impishly, mischievously | triumphantly | inanely | sheepishly** *He just stood there, tongue-tied and grinning sheepishly.* **| apologetically, ruefully, wryly** *She grinned apologetically when she saw him.* **| unrepentantly | conspiratorially | wickedly | maliciously, wolfishly | sourly | back, down, up** *She relaxed and grinned wickedly back at him. He lay grinning impishly up at me.*

PREP. **at** *He stopped eating to grin at me.* **| to** *She grinned to herself at the thought.* **| with** *They grinned with pleasure.*

PHRASES **grin from ear to ear** *She looked at us, grinning from ear to ear.*

grind *verb*

ADV. **coarsely | finely** *The cement need not be finely ground.* **| down, up** *Grind the seeds down to a powder.*

PREP. **into** *machinery for grinding wheat into flour* **| to** *The coffee is ground to a fine powder.*

PHRASES **freshly ground** *freshly ground black pepper*

grip *noun*

1 **hold on sth**

ADJ. **firm, good, secure, strong, tight | cruel, crushing, fierce, iron, painful, punishing, vice-like** *Her upper arms were seized in an iron grip.* **| restraining**

VERB + GRIP **have** *He still had a firm grip on my arm.* **| get, take** *Taking a tight grip on the hook, he began to pull it towards himself.* **| keep** *Keep a secure grip on the rope at all times.* **| lose** *She slipped and lost her grip of the rope.* **| tighten** *Robert tightened his grip on her shoulder.* **| loosen, relax, release, slacken**

GRIP + VERB **tighten | loosen, relax, slacken** *His grip slackened and she tore herself away.*

PREP. **in a/sb's ~** *Hold the microphone in a firm grip. She was powerless in his vice-like grip.* **| ~ on** *She relaxed her grip on the door frame.*

2 **power/control**

ADJ. **firm, iron, powerful, strong, tight, vice-like**

VERB + GRIP **have** *The Church does not have a strong grip on the population.* **| get, take** *The government needs to get a grip on this problem. (informal) Get a grip!* (= take control of yourself, your life, etc.) **| keep** *We need to keep a tight grip on costs.* **| strengthen, tighten** *They managed to strengthen their grip on the southern part of the country.* **| lose** *(informal) Sometimes I feel I'm losing my grip* (= losing control of my life, etc.)

PREP. **in sth's ~** *Winter still held them in its iron grip. a country in the grip of recession* **| ~ on** *The government does not seem to have a very firm grip on the economy.*

PHRASES **come/get to grips with sth** (= to begin to take control of sth or understand sth difficult) *I'm slowly getting to grips with the language.*

grip *verb*

ADV. **firmly, hard, tightly | gently, lightly**

PREP. **at** *She gripped hard at the arms of her chair.* **| by** *He gripped her gently by the shoulders.*

grit *noun*

1 **small pieces of stone**

QUANT. **bit, piece** *A bit of grit had got into my eye.*

2 **courage/determination**

ADJ. **sheer, true**

VERB + GRIT **have** *Don't give in yet. You have more grit than that.* **| display, show** *The team showed their true grit and played a magnificent game.* **| take** *It takes sheer grit to stand up to a bully like that.*

groan *noun*

ADJ. **loud** *He let out a loud groan of frustration.* **| little, small | deep, low | harsh, hoarse | muffled**

VERB + GROAN **give, let out, utter | stifle, suppress | hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *He stood up slowly with a groan of pain.* **| ~ of** > Note at SOUND

groan *verb*

ADV. **loudly | quietly, softly | aloud, out loud | inwardly** *He groaned inwardly at the thought of spending another day in that place.*

PREP. **at, in** *She groaned out loud in protest.* **| with** *Some of the patients were groaning with pain.*

PHRASES **moan and groan** *There's no point in moaning and groaning about not having any money.*

groomed *adj.*

VERBS **be, look** *She is always perfectly groomed.*

ADV. **well | immaculately, impeccably, meticulously, perfectly | beautifully | sleekly, smoothly**

groove *noun*

ADJ. **deep, shallow | narrow, wide**

VERB + GROOVE **carve, cut, make** *Running water had carved a groove down the face of the wall.*

PREP. **~ in** *a deep groove in the surface of the rock*

grope *verb*

ADV. **blindly | vaguely | about/around/round**

PREP. **for** *She groped blindly for the door handle.*

PHRASES **grope your way** *I groped my way across the pitch-black stage.*

ground *noun*

1 **solid surface of the earth**

ADJ. **firm, hard | muddy, soft, wet | dry, dusty | fertile** *(often figurative) The fall of the old regime provided fertile ground for opportunism.*

VERB + GROUND **fall to, hit** *The helicopter burst into flames when it hit the ground.* **| reach** *She's so short, her feet don't reach the ground when she sits down.* **| get off, leave** *The plane was so overloaded it couldn't leave the ground. (figurative) His plan is too costly to ever get off the ground.*

GROUND + NOUN **level** *A waterproof membrane is built into the wall just above ground level.*

PREP. **above/below ~** *The roots may spread as far below ground as does the foliage above ground.* **| in the ~** *a hole in the ground* **| on the ~** *He sat down on the ground.* **| under the ~** *The tunnel goes deep under the ground.*

2 **area of land**

ADJ. **high, low** *The village stands on high ground and is not prone to flooding.* **| open | difficult, rocky, rough, stony, uneven | marshy**

QUANT. **patch, piece** *We found a patch of open ground in the middle of the woods.*

3 **piece of land used for a particular purpose**

ADJ. **burial | dumping | cricket, football, practice, rugby, sports, training | parade | breeding, feeding, hunting**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *I'll meet you at the football ground.* **| in a/the ~** *all the graves in the burial ground*

4 **grounds: land surrounding a large building**

ADJ. **extensive | castle, hospital, palace, school, etc.**

VERB + GROUND **be set in, have** *The palace is set in extensive grounds.*

PREP. **in the ~ (of)** *Many estate workers lived in cottages in the grounds of the castle.*

5 **area of interest/study/discussion**

ADJ. **familiar, firm, home** *I was on more familiar ground now that we were talking about our own system.* **| dangerous, shaky** *Legally, we're on very shaky ground* (= our actions may not be legal). **| safe | common** *Both parties in the debate shared some common ground.*

VERB + GROUND **cover, go over** *Several researchers have published articles covering this ground. We just seem to be going over the same ground that we covered last year.*

PREP. **on … ~** *He knew he was on dangerous ground talking about money.*

PHRASES **break new ground** *Her architectural designs have broken new ground.*

6 **grounds: reason for sth**

ADJ. **good, reasonable, sufficient, valid**

VERB + GROUND **have** *The constable had reasonable grounds for arresting her.* **| give (sb)** *His evasiveness gave grounds for the suspicion that he knew more than he was saying.*

PREP. **on … ~s** *Permission to open a mine was denied on environmental grounds.* **| on the ~s of** *He resigned from his post on the grounds of ill-health.* **| ~ for** *Drunkenness at work was sufficient grounds for instant dismissal.*

ground *verb* **be grounded in/on sth**

ADV. **firmly** *His book is firmly grounded in memories of his own childhood.*

grounding *noun*

ADJ. **good, solid, thorough | basic**

VERB + GROUNDING **have** *All applicants for the job should have a basic grounding in computer skills.* **| get | give (sb), provide (sb with)** *The course should give you a thorough grounding in financial matters.*

PREP. **~ in** *to get a good grounding in science*

groundless *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem**

ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly** *Our fears proved totally groundless.* **| largely**

groundwork *noun*

ADJ. **basic**

VERB + GROUNDWORK **do, lay, prepare, provide (sb with)** *The first meeting laid the groundwork for the final agreement. The first year provides the basic groundwork for the pupils' study of maths.*

PREP. **~ for** *We are already doing the groundwork for the introduction of the scheme next year.*

group *noun*

ADJ. **big, large, wide** *She has a very wide group of friends.* **| select, small** *The president met with a select group of senior ministers.* **| coherent, cohesive, tight, tightly-knit** *The strangers who came together for the course soon became a cohesive group.* **| minority** *Disabled drivers are an ever-growing minority group.* **| cultural, ethnic, racial | family** *The animals live in family groups of 10?20 individuals.* **| age, peer** *young people in this age group He started smoking because of peer-group pressure.* **| discussion** *a discussion group that meets once a month* **| self-help | action, pressure** *Local parents have formed an action group to campaign for better road safety.* **| splinter** *A few members of the party broke away to form a splinter group.* **| theatre | pop, rock | blood** *What blood group are you?*

VERB + GROUP **form, found, set up, start | divide sb/sth into** *We divided the class into small groups.* **| manage, run | become a member of, join | leave** *He left the group last year to pursue a solo career.*

GROUP + VERB **form** *The group formed back in 1992.* **| split up** *The group has split up and re-formed several times with different musicians.*

GROUP + NOUN **member**

PREP. **as a ~** *The gorillas go foraging for food as a group.* **| in a/the ~** *There are fifteen of us in the group.* **| within a/the ~** *Within a group, each individual had a definite status.* **| ~ of** *a group of young mothers* > Note at ORGANIZATION

group *verb*

ADV. **closely | loosely | thematically** *Works in the exhibition are grouped thematically.* **| together**

PREP. **according to** *Eggs were grouped according to colour and size.* **| around/ round** *They sat grouped around the fire.* **| by** *The children were grouped by age.* **| in/into** *These stories can be loosely grouped into three types.* **| with** *The England team was grouped with Uruguay and Holland.*

PHRASES **group sth under a heading** *The names were grouped under four different headings.*

grow *verb*

1 increase

ADV. **fast, quickly, rapidly | slowly | steadily | exponentially** *Well before a billionth of a second had elapsed the universe started to grow exponentially.*

VERB + GROW **seem to | begin to, start to | continue to | be expected to**

PREP. **by** *Profits are expected to grow by 10% next year.* **| from** *Her media empire grew from quite small beginnings.* **| in** *She continued to grow in confidence* **| into** *The village grew into a town.*

2 of a person/animal

ADV. **fast, quickly, rapidly | slowly**

PREP. **into** *The small puppy quickly grew into a very large dog.*

3 of plants/hair

ADV. **well** *Tomatoes grow best in direct sunlight.* **| fast, quickly, rapidly | slowly | steadily | thickly** *the nettles that grew thickly round the boathouse* **| outwards, upwards** *As the island subsided the reef grew upwards and outwards.*

VERB + GROW **allow sth to, let sth** *She decided to let her hair grow.*

PREP. **from** *The tree grew from a small acorn.* **| into** *Small acorns grow into great oak trees.*

PHRASES **grow unchecked** *A rose in full bloom had been allowed to grow unchecked up one of the walls.*

4 make plants grow

ADV. **organically** *organically grown produce*

VERB + GROW **be easy to** *an attractive plant which is very hardy and easy to grow*

growl *noun*

ADJ. **low | husky, soft, throaty | aggressive, threatening** *The dog gave a threatening growl.*

VERB + GROWL **give, let out | hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *He spoke with a deep soft growl in his throat.* **| ~ of** *The growl of the engine.* > Note at SOUND

growl *verb*

ADV. **angrily, savagely** *'I'm a desperate man,' he growled savagely.* **| softly, throatily**

PREP. **at** *The dog growled softly at me.* **| with** *Her stomach was growling with hunger.*

growth *noun*

1 **increase in sth**

ADJ. **considerable, dramatic, enormous, exponential, impressive, phenomenal, significant, spectacular, strong, tremendous** *the exponential growth in world population* | **explosive, fast, rapid** *the explosive growth of personal computers in the 1990s* | **modest, slow, steady** *The factory has achieved a steady growth in output.* | **low** *a vicious circle of low growth and low productivity* | **long-term** | **economic, industrial** | **population**

VERB + GROWTH **achieve** | **maintain, sustain** | **encourage, promote, stimulate** | **control** *new measures to control the growth of traffic on the roads*

GROWTH + NOUN **rate** *The economy enjoyed the highest growth rate in Asia.* | **area, industry** *Communications technology has proved to be a growth area.*

PREP. **~ in** *There was a rapid growth in the numbers of private cars.*

PHRASES **a rate of growth** > Special page at BUSINESS

2 **growing**

ADJ. **healthy, normal** *A good diet is vital for healthy growth.* | **excessive** *the excessive growth of algae in rivers* | **intellectual, personal, spiritual**

VERB + GROWTH **encourage** *Give the plants a good pruning to encourage growth.* | **stunt** *Lack of food had stunted his growth.*

GROWTH + NOUN **hormone**

3 **abnormal lump in the body**

ADJ. **cancerous, malignant** | **benign**

VERB + GROWTH **have**

PREP. **~ on** *He had a cancerous growth on his lung.*

grudge *noun*

ADJ. **long-standing, old** *It's time to forget old grudges.* **| personal**

VERB + GRUDGE **bear, harbour, have, hold, nurse** *I don't hold grudges for very long.*

PREP. **~ against** *Do you know anyone who might harbour a grudge against you?*

gruesome *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **horribly, particularly, truly | pretty, rather** *a rather gruesome sight*

grunt *noun*

ADJ. little | low | non-committal *He gave a non-committal grunt in reply.*

VERB + GRUNT give, let out | hear

PREP. with a ~ *He lifted the heavy box with a grunt.* **| ~ of** *a grunt of pain* > Note at SOUND

grunt *verb*

ADV. **loudly | merely, only** *He merely grunted at her and nodded his head.*

PREP. **at** *His father grunted at him as he left the room.* **| in** *She asked him a question and he grunted in reply. He grunted in pain.* **| with** *She stirred the soup, grunting with satisfaction.*

PHRASES **grunt and groan** *Grunting and groaning, they heaved the wardrobe up the stairs.*

guarantee *noun*

1 **written promise by a company**

ADJ. **full | lifetime, three-year, two-year, etc. | money-back**

VERB + GUARANTEE **carry, come with, have** *All our products come with a two-year guarantee.* **| give (sb), issue, offer (sb)**

PREP. **under ~** *The car is still under guarantee, so you should be able to get it repaired free of charge.* **| ~ against** *The window frames carry a 20-year guarantee against rot or decay.* **| ~ for** *The garage gives a year's guarantee for all repair work.* **| ~ on** *The contractors offer a full money-back guarantee on all their work.*

2 **promise that sth will be done/will happen**

ADJ. **absolute, cast-iron, firm, reliable | long-term | constitutional, personal** *The country gives a constitutional guarantee of the rights of minorities.*

VERB + GUARANTEE **give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with) | demand, want | get** *We didn't get any firm guarantee of a loan.*

PREP. **~ against** *There was no guarantee against misuse of the king's power.* **| ~ for** *The demonstrators were demanding guarantees for fair elections.* **| ~ of** *Driving into town early is no longer a guarantee of getting a parking space.*

guarantee *verb*

1 **promise to do sth/promise sth will happen**

ADV. **absolutely** *I can absolutely guarantee that you will enjoy the show.* **| personally** *I personally guarantee total and immediate support in all measures undertaken.*

VERB + GUARANTEE **be able to, can**

2 **give a written promise about the quality of sth**

PHRASES **be fully guaranteed** *All our electrical goods are fully guaranteed.*

3 **make sth certain to happen**

ADV. **absolutely | almost, practically, virtually | effectively** *The complicated electoral system effectively guarantees the president's re-election.* **| automatically** *The process of training and qualification does not automatically guarantee you a job.* **| by no means, not necessarily** *The outcome is by no means guaranteed.*

guard *noun*

1 person who guards sb/sth

ADJ. **armed, uniformed** *The building is protected by armed guards.* | **border, prison, security**

VERB + GUARD **post** *Guards had been posted all around the radio station.*

GUARD + VERB **patrol sth** *Guards patrolled the perimeter fence.* | **protect sth**

GUARD + NOUN **duty** | **dog**

2 being ready to prevent attack or danger

ADJ. **close** | **constant** | **armed** *The accused was taken to court under armed guard.* | **police**

VERB + GUARD **keep, mount, stand** *Soldiers stood guard on the city gates.*

PREP. **off your ~** *The question seemed to catch him off his guard.* | **on (your) ~** *Several police officers were on guard outside the factory. He was always on his guard against moneymaking schemes.* | **under ~** *The prisoners were under close guard.* | **~ against, ~ over** *Two police officers kept guard over the burnt-out building.*

3 group of soldiers/policemen who guard sb/sth

ADJ. **civil, national, palace, presidential** | **advance**

VERB + GUARD **change** *The guard was changed every two hours.* | **call out** *It would only be a matter of minutes before the alarm was raised and the guard called out.*

PHRASES **guard of honour** *Fellow soldiers from Corporal Smith's regiment formed a guard of honour at his wedding.*

guard *verb*

ADV. **well** *The mountain pass is well guarded.* **| carefully** *a bird carefully guarding its eggs* **| fiercely, jealously** *She jealously guarded her position of power.*

PREP. **against** *guarding the city against attack* **| from** *pop stars who need to be guarded from their fans*

PHRASES **closely/heavily/securely guarded** *The military base is closely guarded.* **| guard sb/sth with your life** *He was under instructions to guard the key with his life.* **| strictly/tightly guarded** *strictly guarded privacy*

guardian *noun*

1 **person/institution that guards/protects sth**

ADJ. **self-appointed** *She has become the self-appointed guardian of the nation's conscience.* **| moral**

VERB + GUARDIAN **act as** *The village people act as guardians of the land.*

2 **person who is responsible for a child**

ADJ. **legal**

VERB + GUARDIAN **appoint, appoint sb (as)** *The court appoints a legal guardian for the child.* **| act as**

guerrilla *noun*

ADJ. **armed | urban** *Urban guerrillas detonated a car bomb in front of the company's headquarters.* **| communist, opposition, right-wing, separatist, etc.**

GUERRILLA + NOUN **army, band, force, group, movement, organization, unit | commander, fighter, leader | activity, attack, campaign, offensive, raid, resistance, struggle, war, warfare** *Ten years of guerrilla resistance followed the occupation.* **| tactics**

guess *noun*

ADJ. **fair, good, reasonable, safe** *April is the best guess for first deliveries.* **| calculated, educated, informed, inspired, intelligent** *As a vet, he could make an educated guess as to what was wrong with his stomach.* **| rough, wild** *At a rough guess, I'd say we're about twenty miles from home.* **| lucky** *'How did you know?''It was just a lucky guess.'*

VERB + GUESS **have, hazard, make, take** *If you don't know the answer, have a guess. If I might hazard a guess …* **| give sb** *'Where's Tom?' 'I'll give you three guesses!'* (= the answer is fairly obvious and you should guess it easily)

PREP. **at a ~** *At a guess, I'd say there's a problem with the fuel pump.* **| ~ about/as to/at** *He made a wild guess as to how much the piano might cost.*

guess *verb*

ADV. **correctly, right | incorrectly, wrong** *Jane had guessed wrong about who was responsible for the fire.* **| never** *You'll never guess what she told me.*

VERB + GUESS **can/could** *Can you guess his age?* **| can only** *We can only guess how fast a dinosaur might have run.* **| try to | be easy to, not be difficult to, not be hard to** *It's not hard to guess where they went.*

PREP. **at** *I was only guessing at her age.* **| from** *She guessed from his expression that he had not won.*

PHRASES **could/might/should have guessed** *So it was Rob who broke the window? I might have guessed!* **| let me guess** *What star sign are you? No, let me guess.*

guesswork *noun*

ADJ. **pure | informed, inspired** *Their results owe more to informed guesswork than to actual knowledge.*

VERB + GUESSWORK **be based on** *Their price estimates are based on pure guesswork.*

PHRASES **a matter of guesswork** *Long-term forecasts were largely a matter of guesswork.*

guest *noun*

1 **person that you invite to your home**

ADJ. **house | honoured, welcome** *She was treated as an honoured guest. You are always a welcome guest in our house.* **| unexpected, uninvited** *She tactfully discouraged their uninvited guests from staying longer.* **| unwanted, unwelcome** *The refugees were made to feel like unwanted guests in the country.*

VERB + GUEST **invite** *She had invited six guests.* **| entertain** *She felt that she had to entertain her guests.*

GUEST + NOUN **room**

2 **person invited to an event**

ADJ. **chief, principal** *The athlete was chief guest at the schools sports day.* **| dinner, party, reception, restaurant, wedding** *The best man and his assistants welcomed the reception guests as they arrived.*

VERB + GUEST **greet, welcome**

GUEST + VERB **attend sth** *The banquet was attended by 200 guests.*

GUEST + NOUN **list**

PHRASES **a guest of honour**

3 **person who is staying at a hotel**

ADJ. **hotel | frequent, regular**

4 **at a public event/on a radio or television show**

ADJ. **special** *Film star Matt Damon is one of the special guests on tonight's programme.*

GUEST + NOUN **artist, celebrity, star** *Guest artists from all over Europe will take part* *in the concert.* **| speaker | appearance** *She made a rare guest appearance on the programme.*

guidance *noun*

ADJ. **careful, clear, detailed, precise | firm** *Parents need to provide their children with firm guidance.* **| gentle | helpful** *The handbook gives helpful guidance on writing articles.* **| practical | general** *These notes are for general guidance only.* **| divine, expert, parental** *She prayed for divine guidance.* **| technical | marriage | career, vocational | ethical, moral**

VERB + GUIDANCE **give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *We can give guidance to students on which courses to choose.* **| need | ask for, look to sb for, seek** *Children look to their parents for guidance. I think you should seek guidance from your solicitor on this matter.*

PREP. **under … ~, under the ~ of** *Volunteers are restoring the building under expert guidance.* **| ~ about** *The Careers Officer also offers guidance about university courses.* **| ~ as to** *Guidance must be given as to what tasks the learner should attempt.* **| ~ on** *The Safety Officer provides guidance on firefighting and office safety.*

guide *noun*

1 **sth that helps you plan what you are going to do**

ADJ. **approximate, rough | accurate**

VERB + GUIDE **give (sb), provide (sb with) | use sth as** *Use the table below as a guide to how much washing powder to use.*

PREP. **~ as to** *These figures give a rough guide as to the sales we can expect.* **| ~ to**

2 **book that gives information about a subject**

ADJ. **essential, good, helpful, informative, invaluable, practical, reliable, useful, valuable | brief, quick, short, simple | complete, comprehensive, definitive, in-depth** *This book is the definitive guide to world cuisine.* **| step-by-step** *a step-by-step guide to creating your own website* **| reference** *The book contains a quick reference guide to essential grammar at the back.*

PREP. **~ to** *a guide to British birds*

3 **person**

ADJ. **tour, tourist** *Our tour guide showed us around the old town.*

VERB + GUIDE **act as, be** *He agreed to go with them and act as their guide.*

4 **book for tourists**

ADJ. **holiday, travel | hotel | street**

VERB + GUIDE **consult** *We consulted our guides as we walked around the cathedral.* **| write | publish**

guide *verb*

1 influence sb's behaviour

ADV. firmly

VERB + GUIDE help (to) *the information and data which help guide the affairs of the business* **| try to**

PREP. into *the ways in which young people are guided into employment* **| on** *Schools were firmly guided on the details of the curriculum*

2 explain sth/help sb

ADV. carefully *Their teacher Phil Bailey carefully guides them through rehearsals.*

VERB + GUIDE help (to)

PREP. in *He guided me in my research.* **| on** *guiding teachers on how to maintain discipline* **| through** *He guided us through the intricacies of the divorce law.*

3 help sb move

ADV. gently *He took her arm, gently guiding her.*

PREP. across, along, etc. *She guided him across the busy road.* **| to/towards** *He guided her hand to his face.*

guideline *noun*

ADJ. **clear, good, helpful, practical, reliable, useful | broad, general, simple | detailed, explicit | strict, tight | EU, government | planning, safety | ethical, financial, legal**

QUANT. **set** *The organization has issued a set of guidelines for builders to follow.*

VERB + GUIDELINE **develop, draw up, lay down, set out | give (sb), issue, offer (sb), provide (sb with), suggest** *The document gives clear guidelines on the use of pesticides.* **| adhere to, apply, follow, stick to** *We have to follow the safety guidelines laid down by the government.* **| breach, ignore** *The minister is accused of allowing the company to breach guidelines on arms sales.*

GUIDELINE + VERB **apply** *The same general guidelines on when to dress formally apply to both men and women.*

PREP. **within ~** *Within clear guidelines, managers can use their budget to entertain clients.* **| ~ about** *detailed guidelines for doctors about how to deal with difficult patients* **| ~ for** *The article suggests some guidelines for healthy eating.* **| ~ from** *guidelines from the Department of Health* **| ~ on** *new EU guidelines on food hygiene*

guilt *noun*

1 **feeling**

ADJ. **dreadful, terrible**

QUANT. **pang, twinge**

VERB + GUILT **be consumed with, be haunted by, be overwhelmed with, be racked with, feel, suffer** *I knew that the next day I would be consumed with guilt. You needn't feel any guilt about me.* **| assuage** *Talking to her helped to assuage my guilt.*

GUILT + VERB **sear sb, sweep over sb, wash over sb** *Guilt swept over her.*

GUILT + NOUN **complex | feelings**

PREP. **~ about/at/over** *He had no feelings of guilt over what he had done.*

PHRASES **a burden of guilt** *the burden of guilt that she carried with her* **| a feeling/sense of guilt**

2 **fact of having broken a law/done sth wrong**

VERB + GUILT **admit | establish, prove** *It might be difficult to prove his guilt.*

GUILT + VERB **lie** *There is no doubt as to where the guilt lies.*

PHRASES **an admission of guilt** *I took his silence as an admission of guilt.* **| proof of guilt**

guilty *adj.*

1 **feeling/showing guilt**

VERBS **feel, look**

ADV. **extremely, incredibly, really, terribly, very** *She's got a terribly guilty conscience about it.* | **almost** *I feel almost guilty that so many good things are happening to us.* | **a bit, faintly, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat, vaguely** *She was looking rather guilty when I came into the room.* | **oddly, ridiculously**

PREP. **about** *I feel very guilty about leaving her.*

2 **having broken the law/done sth wrong**

VERBS **be, plead** *He pleaded guilty to starting the fire.* | **believe sb, presume sb** *No one believed him guilty of this terrible crime. A person should never be presumed guilty.* | **deem sb, find sb, hold sb, prove sb** *Company directors may be deemed guilty of an offence if their company causes pollution. He was found guilty of murder.*

ADV. **certainly, clearly** *She was certainly guilty, but the police couldn't prove it.*

PREP. **of** *She was guilty of fraud.*

guinea pig *noun*

VERB + GUINEA PIG **act as** *Twenty students volunteered to act as guinea pigs.* **| use sb as**

PREP. **~ for** *Dealers used their clients as guinea pigs for their untried techniques.*

guitar *noun*

ADJ. **acoustic, electric | bass, lead, rhythm | classical, jazz, rock | 6/12-string**

VERB + GUITAR **strum (on)** *As she sang, she strummed her guitar.* **| tune (up) | build, make**

GUITAR + NOUN **string | lick, riff** > Special page at MUSIC

Gujarati *nou*n > Note at LANGUAGE

gulf *noun*

ADJ. **deep, great, huge, unbridgeable, wide, yawning | growing, widening** *There appeared to be a growing gulf between the prosperous south and the declining towns of the north.*

VERB + GULF **cause, create** *This atrocity has created a huge gulf between the two groups.* **| widen** *Other factors widened the gulf that separated rich from poor.* **| emphasize, illustrate** *The documentary illustrated the gulf between industrialized and developing countries.* **| bridge, span** *The new degree course aims to bridge the gulf between education and industry.*

GULF + VERB **exist | separate sb/sth** *the yawning gulf that separates the two cultures* **| open up** *A gulf had opened up between the former friends.*

PREP. **~ between** *For many teachers, there existed an unbridgeable gulf between home and school life.* **| ~ in** *the huge gulf in level between professional and amateur teams*

gull *nou*n > See SEAGULL

gulp *noun*

1 **amount you swallow when you gulp**

ADJ. **deep, great, huge, large, long**

VERB + GULP **take** *She took a large gulp of wine from the bottle.*

PREP. **in ~s** *She drank the tea in great gulps.* **| ~ of**

2 **act of gulping**

ADJ. **loud, noisy**

VERB + GULP **give** *He gave a loud gulp and stopped mid-sentence.*

PREP. **with a ~** *'I'm afraid I've broken it,' she said with a gulp.*

PHRASES **at a/one gulp, in one/a single gulp** *He downed half the contents of the glass in one loud gulp.*

gulp *verb*

1 **eat/drink sth quickly**

ADV. **greedily | noisily | down** *She gulped down her coffee and left.*

2 **make a swallowing movement**

ADV. **nervously** *'Do you know where she is?' asked Chris. The man gulped nervously and nodded.*

PHRASES **gulp for air/breath** *Keith swam to the surface and gulped for air.*

gum *noun*

ADJ. **lower, upper | toothless** *The old man smiled to reveal toothless gums.* **| bleeding, swollen**

GUM + NOUN **disease**

gun *noun*

ADJ. **big, heavy | enemy** *They succeeded in silencing the enemy guns.* **| replica, toy | anti-aircraft, anti-tank, Bren, field, hand, harpoon, laser, machine, spear, Sten, stun, sub-machine | grease, spray, staple**

VERB + GUN **be armed with, carry, have** *Look out! He's got a gun!* **| load** *I loaded the gun with my last two bullets.* **| draw, produce, pull (out) | aim, hold, point, raise** *He raised his gun, aimed and fired.* **| man** *Enemy ship approaching! Man the guns!* **| handle, use | fire, shoot sb/sth with | lay down, put down | silence**

GUN + VERB **blaze, fire, go off** *Guns were firing and grenades going off all around.* **| shoot sth** *This new gun shoots a laser beam at the target.* **| jam | be mounted** *There were several guns mounted in the back of the vehicle.*

GUN + NOUN **club | control, law** *a state that has strict gun controls* **| lobby** *the powerful gun lobby in the US* **| emplacement, position | attack, battle | crew | barrel | rack**

PHRASES **the barrel of a gun** *I found myself looking down the barrel of a gun.* **| guns and ammunition** *We're very short of guns and ammunition.* **| hold a gun on sb, hold a gun to sb's head** *Two armed men held a gun to his head and made him empty the safe.* **| turn a gun on yourself** *The gunman then turned the gun on himself and blew his brains out.*

gunfire *noun*

ADJ. **heavy, intense | scattered, sporadic | indiscriminate** *Seventy protesters were killed by indiscriminate gunfire.* **| distant | automatic** *We heard the rapid crackle of automatic gunfire.*

QUANT. **burst** *A burst of gunfire echoed across the square.*

VERB + GUNFIRE **hear | spray sb/sth with** *The terrorists boarded the bus and sprayed the passengers with gunfire.* **| be hit/wounded by** *A convoy was hit by gunfire.*

GUNFIRE + VERB **break out** *Heavy gunfire broke out in the capital last night.* **| echo**

PHRASES **the crack/crackle/rattle/sound of gunfire, an exchange of gunfire** *They were killed in an exchange of gunfire between riot police and demonstrators.*

gunshot *noun*

VERB + GUNSHOT **hear** *We heard gunshots round about midnight.*

GUNSHOT + NOUN **wound** *He died of gunshot wounds to the chest.*

PHRASES **the noise/sound of a gunshot**

gurgle *noun*

ADJ. **little | low**

VERB + GURGLE **give, let out | hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *The water emptied with a gurgle.* **| ~ of** *He gave a low gurgle of laughter.* > Note at SOUND

gust *noun*

ADJ. **great | little | strong | sudden | occasional**

PREP. **~ of** *a sudden gust of wind*

PHRASES **blow/come in gusts** *The wind came in great gusts off the Pacific.*

gut *noun*

1 **tube in the lower part of the body**

ADJ. **healthy**

VERB + GUT **pass through**

GUT + NOUN **flora, wall**

PREP. **in the/your ~ 2 guts** organs inside the body

PHRASES **blood and guts** *(figurative) I don't like films that are full of blood and guts.* **| a pain in your guts** *I had a terrible pain in my guts after eating too many plums.*

3 **guts: courage/determination**

VERB + GUT **have** *She had the guts to stand up to the school bully.* **| take** *It takes guts to keep on running even though you have blistered feet.*

gut *verb*

ADV. **completely** *The hotel was completely gutted by fire last year.*

guy *noun*

ADJ. **decent, friendly, funny, good, great, nice, sweet, wonderful | bad | ordinary, regular** *Neighbours described the killer as 'just a regular guy'.* **| big, little | middle-aged, old, young | black, white | gay | tough | crazy**

gym *noun*

ADJ. **fully-equipped | school**

GYM + NOUN **session, workout | equipment**

gymnast *noun*

ADJ. **brilliant, expert, good | Olympic**

GYMNAST + VERB **train** *young gymnasts who have to train for up to five hours a day* **| compete, perform**

gymnastics *noun*

ADJ. **rhythmic**

VERB + GYMNASTICS **do** *She does gymnastics at school.*

GYMNASTICS + NOUN **display, exhibition | championships | coach**

PREP. **in (the) ~** > Special page at SPORT

habit *noun*

ADJ. **annoying, anti-social, bad, dirty, disconcerting, horrible, irritating, nasty, unfortunate** *Life has a nasty habit of repeating itself.* | **charming** *(often ironic)*, **endearing, good** *one of his more endearing habits her charming habit of setting fire to cats* | **eccentric, odd** | **old** | **daily, regular** | **personal, sexual, social** *I found some of his personal habits rather disconcerting.* | **buying, shopping, spending** *an effort to change the buying habits of the British public* | **dietary, drinking, eating, feeding** | **reading, viewing** *women's television viewing habits* | **drug, smoking** *trying to kick the smoking habit*

VERB + HABIT **be in, have** *She had been in the habit of drinking five or six cups of coffee a day. She's got some very annoying habits.*

He had an irritating habit of singing tunelessly about the house. | **acquire, develop, fall into, form, get into, make** *I had fallen into my old bad habit of leaving everything until the last minute.*

Try to get into good habits and eat regular healthy meals. Make a habit of noting down any telephone messages. | **become** *Don't let eating between meals become a habit.* | **break (yourself of), get out of, give up, kick** *a difficult habit to break*

You must break yourself of the habit. I had got out of the habit of going to the pub. | **change**

HABIT + VERB **change** *Even last year the nation's eating habits changed significantly.*

PREP. **by ~** *Much of what we do in daily life is done by habit.* | **out of ~** *I sat in my old seat purely out of habit.*

PHRASES **a creature of habit** *Horses are creatures of habit and like to have a daily routine.* | **force of habit** *Mr Norris bellowed from force of habit.* | **the habit of a lifetime** *It's hard to change the habits of a lifetime.*

habitable *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain | make sth, render sth** *They've done their best to make the house habitable.* **| consider sth** *The houses were not considered habitable.*

ADV. **barely** *The room was barely habitable.*

habitat *noun*

ADJ. **native, natural** *her observations of wild chimps in their natural habitat* **| important | endangered, fragile, threatened** *Peat bogs are one of Europe's most threatened habitats.* **| coastal, forest, wetland, wildlife, woodland**

VERB + HABITAT **provide** *The forest provides a habitat for hundreds of species of plants and animals.* **| conserve, protect** *new measures to protect wildlife habitats* **| damage, destroy, disrupt** *Development is destroying the animal's native habitat.*

HABITAT + VERB **support sth** *The many different habitats support a wide variety of birds.*

HABITAT + NOUN **destruction, loss** *Many species are threatened in the wild due to habitat destruction by man.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the animals and plants in this woodland habitat* **| ~ for** *The moorland is an important habitat for many rare bird species.*

PHRASES **loss of habitat** *The greatest danger to tigers now is through loss of habitat.*

hack *verb*

ADV. away, off *They hacked away at the dense vegetation. hacking off the dead branches*

PREP. at *She hacked at the hedge with the shears.*

PHRASES hack sth to bits/pieces *The body had been hacked to pieces.* **| hack sb to death** *He was hacked to death by the mob.* **| hack your way** *The explorers had to hack their way through dense jungle.*

haemorrhage *noun*

ADJ. **massive, severe | recurrent | acute** *The patient died from acute cerebral haemorrhage.* **| brain, cerebral**

VERB + HAEMORRHAGE **have, suffer** *Twelve hours later she suffered a massive brain haemorrhage.* **| die from/of | halt, stop** *(both usually figurative) The company is desperate to halt the haemorrhage of skilled staff.*

hail *noun*

HAIL + VERB **fall** *Hail fell shortly after lunch.* **| melt** *The hail melted once the sun came out.*

PREP. **in (the) ~** *We got caught in the hail.* **| through (the) ~** *driving through the hail*

hair *noun*

ADJ. **auburn, black, blond, brown, chestnut, dark, fair, ginger, golden, grey, grizzled, jet-black, red, sandy, white, yellow | bushy, coarse, crinkly, curly, fine, frizzy, smooth, straight, thick, wavy, wiry | beautiful, glossy, shiny, sleek | dishevelled, dry, dull, fuzzy, greasy, scruffy, tousled, unruly, untidy, windswept** *a new shampoo for dull or dry hair His hair was tousled and he looked as if he'd just woken up.* **| cropped, long, short, shoulder-length** *She had shoulder-length black hair.* **| body, facial, pubic | cat, dog, etc.** *The rug was covered with cat hairs.*

QUANT. **lock, wisp**

VERB + HAIR **have** *She had beautiful auburn hair.* **| lose** *He had turned forty and was beginning to lose his hair.* **| wear** *She wore her long hair loose on her shoulders.* **| arrange, do, tidy** *I don't like the way she's arranged her hair, do you? I'll be down in a minute, I'm just doing my hair.* **| plait, put up, tie back** *Why don't you put your hair up for this evening?* **| brush, comb | shampoo, wash | cut, trim** *He went to the barber's to have his hair cut.* **| curl, perm** *I've decided to have my hair permed.* **| grow** *I'm trying to grow my hair.*

HAIR + VERB **grow** *Why don't you let your hair grow?* **| curl** *His hair curls naturally.* **| fall, hang, lie** *Her blond hair fell over her eyes.* **| gleam, glint, glisten**

HAIR + NOUN **loss** *how to cope with hair loss*

haircut *noun*

ADJ. **decent, good | new | short, skinhead**

VERB + HAIRCUT **get, have** *You ought to smarten up and have a haircut before the interview.* **| need** *He was unshaven, and badly needed a haircut.*

half *noun*

ADJ. **first, second | last, latter** *in the latter half of the nineteenth century* **| top, upper | bottom, lower** *the lower half of the window* **| front | back, rear** *the rear half of the car* **| left, right** *the left half of the brain* **| northern, western, etc.** *the northern half of the country*

PREP. **by a ~** *Costs rose by a half.* **| in ~** *We divided the money in half.* **| in the … ~** *He played well in the second half of the match.* **| ~ of** *the first half of the concert Over a half of all accidents happen in the home.*

PHRASES **about/almost/at least/over a half** *Over a half of all the people interviewed said they were disappointed in the government.* **| half and half** *We split the work half and half.* **| one/two/three, etc. and a half** *She's four and a half years old now.*

hall *noun*

1 **inside the front entrance of a house/building**

ADJ. **entrance | reception | narrow | dark, darkened, unlit** *He hurried them along the narrow, dark hall.*

VERB + HALL **lead to** *The hall led to a locked door.*

PREP. **across the ~** *the room across the hall* **| along the ~, at/to the end of the ~, down the ~** *There were strange noises coming from the room down the hall.* **| in the ~**

2 **building/large room**

ADJ. **cavernous, huge, spacious, vast | magnificent | bare** *Our voices echoed round the huge bare hall.* **| gloomy | cold, draughty | crowded, packed | main** *More than 200 members of the public packed the main hall at the community centre.* **| baronial, great | assembly, conference, congress, meeting | booking, ticket | banquet, banqueting, dining | concert, dance, examination, exhibition, lecture, market, sports | church, city, communal, community, council, county, parish, public, school, village | bingo, pool, snooker**

VERB + HALL **crowd into, fill, pack** *The strains of the national anthem filled the hall.*

PREP. **in the ~, into the ~, through the ~** *His voice echoed through the hall.*

PHRASES **hall of residence** *Most first-year students live in the halls of residence.*

hallucination *noun*

ADJ. **mild | weird | auditory, visual | drug-induced**

VERB + HALLUCINATION **have** *For a moment I thought I was having hallucinations.* **| cause, induce**

halt *noun*

ADJ. **abrupt, sudden** *The bus came to an abrupt halt outside the school.* **| grinding, shuddering** *The strike brought the capital city to a grinding halt.* **| temporary | immediate**

VERB + HALT **come to, draw to, grind to, jolt to, lurch to, scream to, screech to, shudder to, skid to, slide to, slither to** *The economy seems to be grinding to a halt. The car skidded to a halt just inches from the river.* **| bring sth to** *Production was brought to a temporary halt when power supplies failed.* **| call** *Scientists have decided to call a halt to the tests.* **| call for, demand**

PREP. **~ in** *a halt in nuclear testing* **| ~ to** *The protesters are calling for a halt to the export of live animals.*

halt *verb*

ADV. **virtually | effectively** *The strike effectively halted production at the factory.* **| abruptly** *All these ideas for expansion were abruptly halted by the outbreak of war.* **| briefly, temporarily | finally**

VERB + HALT **try to | threaten to | fail to** *failing to halt the destruction of the rainforest*

PHRASES **halt in your tracks** *A sudden shout made them halt in their tracks and look round.* **| halt sth in its tracks** *The development programme has been halted in its tracks by this intervention.*

halve *verb*

ADV. **more than | almost, nearly, virtually | approximately, roughly | effectively**

PREP. **in** *The shares have more than halved in value since the summer high of 572p.* **|** **to** *Overall operating profits halved to $24 million.*

ham *noun*

ADJ. **lean | baked, boiled, cooked, cured, honey-roast, Parma, smoked | cold** *cold ham and salad* **| sliced**

QUANT. **bit, piece, slice | joint, leg**

VERB + HAM **eat, have | boil, cook, roast | carve, slice**

HAM + NOUN **roll, salad, sandwich**

PHRASES **ham on the bone** *We had boiled ham on the bone for dinner.* > Special page at FOOD

hammer *noun*

VERB + HAMMER **hit sth with, tap sth with, use, wield | swing** *He swung the hammer with all his strength.*

HAMMER + NOUN **blow** *(often figurative) The decision is a hammer blow for the coal industry.*

PHRASES **a hammer and chisel, a hammer and nails, hammer and sickle** *the hammer and sickle of the Soviet flag*

hammering *noun*

1 **noise**

ADJ. **loud**

VERB + HAMMERING **hear**

PREP. **~ at/on** *a loud hammering on the door*

2 **very bad defeat**

ADJ. **real**

VERB + HAMMERING **give sb | take** *They took a real hammering at the hands of their opponents.*

hamper *verb*

ADV. **badly, greatly, seriously, severely** *Rescue efforts were severely hampered by the bad weather.* **| further**

hand *noun*

1 **part of the body**

ADJ. **left, right | beautiful, delicate, long-fingered, pretty | well-manicured | coarse, rough, work-reddened, work-roughened, work-worn | soft | firm, strong | limp** *He offered a limp hand to shake.* **| frail | arthritic | gnarled, knotted | claw-like | hairy | clammy** *He clutched the cane in his clammy hand.* **| cool** *His hand, when she shook it, was cool and firm.* **| dirty, filthy, greasy, grubby, sticky, sweaty, unwashed** *He wiped his greasy hands on the front of his overalls.* **| clean | gloved | ringed | ringless | open, outspread** *She gestured towards the window with an open hand.* **| outstretched** *She walked towards him with her hand outstretched to take his.* **| free** *With his free hand he took hold of the knife.* **| cupped** *She rested her chin in her cupped hand.* **| busy, deft** *Her busy hands had transformed the tiny room into a work of art.* **| willing** *There's plenty of work for willing hands* **| eager** *Eager hands reached out to help him.* **| nervous, shaking, trembling, unsteady | steady** *A surgeon needs a good eye and a steady hand.* **| friendly, sympathetic** *He put a friendly hand on his friend's knee.* **| generous, liberal** *(both figurative) She filled our glasses with a generous hand.* **| capable, expert, practised, skilful, skilled** *With a practised hand he motioned a waiter to bring a fresh pot of coffee.* **| careless, clumsy**

VERB + HAND **take** *She took the child's hand and helped him climb the steps.* **| hold, hold on to** *They walked along, holding hands. She held on to my hand as I tried to leave.* **| reach for** *He reached for her hand and held it tightly.* **| press, squeeze, touch** *She pressed his hand. 'I know,' she said softly.* **| shake** *He shook Blake's hand as if they were long lost friends. He shook hands with all of us before leaving.* **| feel** *I felt a hand on my shoulder.* **| extend, hold out, put out, reach out** *She smiled and extended a hand in welcome. He put out a hand as if to touch her.* **| lay, place, press, put** *He laid a hand on her arm. She put her hands to her cheeks in embarrassment.* **| slide** *He slid his hands into his pockets.* **| withdraw** *Slowly Ruth withdrew her hand from his.* **| hold up, lift, put up, raise, throw up** *He lifted his hand to her face. Several students put up their hands to answer the question. She raised her hand in farewell. He threw up his hands in despair when he saw the damage.* **| spread** *She shrugged and spread her hands. 'That's all I can tell you.'* **| wave | clap** *We were all clapping our hands in time to the music.* **| clasp, clench, rub, wring** *He had his hands clasped behind his head. She clenched her hands in her lap to hide their trembling. He rubbed his hands together in satisfaction. He was sobbing and wringing his hands by the grave.* **| beat** *He beat his hands on the steering wheel in frustration.* **| cup** *I cupped my hand over the mouthpiece of the* *phone so they couldn't hear me.* | **wash** | **wipe**

HAND + VERB **shake, tremble** *Her hand shook as she lifted the glass to her lips.* | **reach out, shoot out** *A strong hand reached out and caught hold of her arm.* | **grope for sth, reach for sth, seek sth** *My hand groped for the door handle. His hand sought hers.* | **find sth** *His hand eventually found the light switch.* | **catch sth, clamp, clasp sth, close around/on/round sth, fasten around/on/round sth, grab sth, grasp sth, seize sth** *The policeman kept a firm hand clamped on his shoulder.* | **clutch sth, grip sth, hold sth** | **claw (at) sth, pull sth, tug sth** *His hands clawed at the muddy earth.* | **push sth** | **squeeze sth, tighten sth** | **brush (across/against) sth, caress sth, stroke sth, touch sth** *His hand brushed against hers.* | **creep, go, move, slide, slip, steal, stray** *Muriel's hand crept to her neck to hold her pearls.* | **fly** *Her hand flew to her mouth. 'Oh no!'* | **jerk, twitch** | **run over/through sth, trail** *Her hand ran over the surface, feeling the different textures.* | **freeze, still** *His hand froze in mid-gesture.* | **hover, waver** *My hand hovered over the switch for a moment.* | **lie, rest** *His hand rested on her shoulder.* | **go up, shoot up** | **come down, descend, drop** *A large hand descended on his shoulder. His hands dropped to his sides and he fell to the floor.* | **withdraw** | **lift, rise** *Her hand lifted to place a cigarette in her mouth.* | **cover sth** *Her hand moved to cover his.*

HAND + NOUN **gesture, movement, position, signal** | **dryer, towel** | **drill, saw** (also **handsaw**), **tools** | **pump** | **mirror** | **baggage, luggage** *You can take your laptop on the plane as hand luggage.* | **cream** | **delivery** *Mail for hand delivery is put in a separate tray.* | **grenade, gun** (also **handgun**) | **injury**

PREP. **by ~** *Delicate clothes should be washed by hand.* | **by … ~s** *The rocks looked like they had been shaped by human hands.* | **in your ~** *She had a piece of paper in her hand. (figurative) Can I leave these queries in your capable hands?* | **on your ~** *She had large rings on both hands.* | **with your ~** *Operate the gears with your left hand.*

PHRASES **fall into the wrong hands** *(figurative) Guards made sure that the food supplies didn't fall into the wrong hands.* | **get/keep/take your hands off sb/sth** *She warned her brother to keep his hands off her bag.* | **get/lay your hands on sth** *I desperately need to lay my hands on some money by Monday.* | **hand in hand** *They walked hand in hand along the path.* | **hands on hips** *She stood in the doorway, hands on hips.* | **in safe hands** *(figurative) He retired feeling confident that his company was in safe hands.* | **on (your) hands and knees** *He was on his hands and knees, looking for a contact lens.* | **out of sb's hands** *(figurative) I don't work in that department any more, so the problem is out of my hands.* | **the palm of your hand** *She studied the object in the palm of her hand.* | **run a hand/your hands over/through, etc. sth** *Clive ran a hand through his hair.* | **with your**

bare hands *He killed the lion with his bare hands.*

2 a hand: help

VERB + HAND **give sb, lend (sb)** *Can you give me a hand with loading the van? At harvest time all the villagers lend a hand.* **| need** *Do you need a hand with those invoices?*

3 role in a situation

VERB + HAND **have | strengthen** *The strategic alliance served to strengthen the country's hand in the region.*

PREP. **~ in** *Several of his colleagues had a hand in his downfall.*

4 in card games

ADJ. **bad, good**

VERB + HAND **deal (sb)** *Who dealt the last hand? (figurative) She felt that life had dealt her a bad hand.* **| get, have | play**

hand *verb*

ADV. **effectively | formally, officially** *formally handing over power to the new government* **| personally** *She wanted to hand the petition to the prime minister personally.* **| just, merely, simply** *They would simply hand her over to the magistrate as a thief.* **| quickly | immediately, promptly | grudgingly, reluctantly** *He grudgingly handed me the money.* **| silently | back, in, out, over** *She handed out the exam papers.*

VERB + HAND **be prepared to, be ready to, be willing to | refuse to | force sb to**

PREP. **to** *He handed the book to Sally.*

handbag *noun*

ADJ. **big, capacious, large**

VERB + HANDBAG **clutch, hold | carry | swing | delve into, fish about/around in, fumble in, reach into, rummage (around) in, search (in/through)** *She was rummaging in her handbag for her keys.* **| snatch** *She had her handbag snatched as she sat having a coffee.*

PREP. **from a/the ~, out of a/the ~** *She took a pen out of her large leather handbag.* **| in a/the ~, into a/the ~** *She put her purse into her handbag.*

PHRASES **the contents of a handbag**

handcuffs *noun*

QUANT. **pair, set** *The policeman slipped a pair of handcuffs on his wrists.*

VERB + HANDCUFFS **have on, wear | put on, slip on** *The other policeman put the handcuffs on him.* **| remove, take off, undo, unfasten, unlock**

PREP. **in ~** *He was taken away in handcuffs.*

handful *noun*

1 **amount that can be held in one hand**

ADJ. **good | double** *She bent and pulled up a double handful of weeds.*

PREP. **~ of** *She grabbed handfuls of the dirty snow.*

2 **small number of people/things**

ADJ. **small, tiny | mere** *having to cope with a mere handful of staff* **| good** *He has a good handful of letters after his name.*

PREP. **~ of** *a handful of people*

PHRASES **just/only a handful of sth** *We have received only a small handful of letters on this subject.*

handicap *noun*

1 physical/mental disability

ADJ. **serious, severe | mild | mental, physical, visual** *She can't drive because of her visual handicap.*

VERB + HANDICAP **be born with, have, suffer (from)** *Over a million people in Great Britain suffer from mental handicap.* **| cause | cope with, overcome** *She has managed to overcome her physical handicaps.*

PREP. **despite a/the ~** *Despite her handicap, Jane is able to hold down a full-time job.*

2 disadvantage

ADJ. **big, considerable, great, major, real, serious, severe, terrible** *Lack of transport was a major handicap.*

VERB + HANDICAP **have, suffer** *If you don't speak the language, you've got a real handicap.* **| prove** *His lack of height can prove a handicap against tall players.*

PREP. **despite a/the ~ | ~ to** *This could be a serious handicap to her education.*

handicapped *adj.*

VERBS **be, be born** *Steven was born severely handicapped.* **| leave sb** *An accident at birth left him badly handicapped.*

ADV. **badly, profoundly, seriously, severely | mildly, slightly | permanently | mentally, physically, visually** *special equipment for visually handicapped children*

handkerchief *noun*

ADJ. **clean | crumpled, dirty, grubby, used | pocket | lace, linen, paper, silk | embroidered**

VERB + HANDKERCHIEF **blow your nose on, use** *He blew his nose on a grubby handkerchief.* **| wave**

handle *noun*

ADJ. **long, short | carrying** *The table folds up and comes complete with a carrying handle.* **| door | knife, fork, pickaxe, etc.**

VERB + HANDLE **have | pull, push, try, turn** *You have to turn the handle and then pull it towards you. He tried the handle but the door was locked.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *His initials were on the knife handle.*

handle *verb*

1 touch sth with your hands

ADV. **carefully, with care** *A label on the crate read: 'Handle with care'.* **| carelessly** *Garden tools can be hazardous if carelessly handled.* **| roughly** *Many of the prisoners were roughly handled; some were killed.*

2 deal with sb/sth

ADV. **competently, efficiently, properly, skilfully, successfully, well** *I think you handled that situation very well.* **| badly | carefully, delicately** *This issue may need to be handled carefully.* **| easily** *Her next question was not so easily handled.* **| routinely** *The library routinely handles a wide variety of enquiries.*

VERB + HANDLE **be able/unable to, can/could, know how to** *This was a problem that I just couldn't handle. She knew how to handle publicity.* **| be designed to, be equipped to** *He wasn't mentally equipped to handle this situation.* **| learn how to | be easy to | be difficult to, be hard to** *Large meetings are notoriously less productive and more difficult to handle.*

PREP. **with** *She handled the crisis with total assurance.*

handling *noun*

ADJ. **careful, delicate, gentle** *Timid children need gentle handling to build up their confidence.* **| careless, clumsy | sensitive, sympathetic** *Issues such as drug addiction require sensitive handling when featured in TV dramas.* **| insensitive | competent** *She was praised for her competent handling of the crisis.* **| baggage, cargo, freight, stock | customer, passenger** *a small airport with limited passenger handling facilities* **| food** *hygienic food handling practice* **| data, information**

VERB + HANDLING **need, require**

handout *noun*

1 **food/money given to people who need it badly**

ADJ. **free | government, state | cash**

VERB + HANDOUT **give (sb) | get, receive** *All those eligible will receive a cash handout.*

PREP. **~ from** *a handout from the government* **| ~ to** *state handouts to the poor*

2 **sheet/leaflet**

VERB + HANDOUT **distribute, give sb, give out**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *More information can be found in the handout.* **| ~ on** *We were given a handout on job hunting.*

handshake *noun*

ADJ. **firm, hearty | limp** *She wasn't impressed by his limp handshake.*

VERB + HANDSHAKE **have** *He had a firm handshake.* **| give sb** *Fawcett gave me a hearty handshake.*

PREP. **with a ~** *They sealed the agreement with a handshake.* **| ~ from** *a handshake from the chairman*

handsome *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become, grow**

ADV. **devastatingly, exceedingly, extraordinarily, extremely, incredibly, strikingly, very, wonderfully** *He was young and devastatingly handsome.* **| almost | quite, rather | classically, darkly, elegantly, ruggedly, youthfully** *his ruggedly handsome features*

PHRASES **tall, dark (and) handsome** *a tall, dark, handsome stranger*

handwriting *noun*

ADJ. **clear, good, legible, neat** *Her handwriting was neat and legible.* **| awful, bad, illegible, poor, terrible** *Why do doctors have such terrible handwriting?*

VERB + HANDWRITING **have | read** *Her handwriting is very difficult to read.* **| recognize** *I didn't recognize the handwriting on the envelope.*

PREP. **in your ~** *She copied out the lines in her best handwriting.*

handy *adj.*

1 **useful**

VERBS **be | come in** *I advise you to buy one?it may come in handy one day.*

ADV. **very | quite**

PREP. **for** *The arrangement was handy for both of us.*

2 **nearby**

VERBS **be | keep sth** *Always keep a cloth handy to wipe up any mess.*

ADV. **very | quite**

PREP. **for** *The house was near Drury Lane, very handy for the theatre.*

3 **good at using sth**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very | fairly, pretty, quite**

PREP. **at** *'I'm pretty handy at giving out advice,' claimed Mark.* **| with** *Lucy is quite handy with a drill!*

hang *verb*

ADV. **limply, loosely** *He had lost weight and the suit hung loosely on him.* **| uselessly** *Her injured arm hung uselessly at her side.* **| upside down** *The sloth spends most of its time hanging upside down from the branches.* **| down** *Large leaves hung down from the branches of the trees.*

PREP. **by** *The monkey was hanging by its tail from the beams overhead.* **| from** *Banners hung from every window.* **PHRASAL VERBS hang on**

1 **keep hold of sth**

ADV. **tight** *Hang on tight?we're off.*

VERB + HANG **try to**

PREP. **for** *She hung on for dear life.* **| to** *Hang on to* (= keep) *those old photographs? they may be valuable.* **| with** *Martin tried to hold on with his toes as well as his feet.*

2 **wait**

ADV. **a minute** *Hang on a minute?I'll just see if he's here.*

hanker *verb*

ADV. **secretly | always | still**

PREP. **after** *She's always hankering after excitement.* **| for** *I still hankered for the farm life.*

haphazard *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **very | entirely, totally** *The local authority's approach to health care seems totally haphazard.* **| fairly, rather, somewhat | apparently, seemingly**

PHRASES **in a haphazard fashion/manner/way** *The town had grown in a somewhat haphazard way.*

happen *verb*

ADV. **actually, really** *She couldn't quite believe that all this was actually happening to her.* **| just** *I don't remember learning to swim, it just happened.* **| spontaneously** *Sometimes fun activities just happen spontaneously; at other times they take careful planning.* **| overnight** *Change doesn't happen overnight.*

VERB + HAPPEN **be going to** *They could only wait and see what was going to happen.* **| be likely to | be bound to** *Mistakes are bound to happen sometimes.* **| tend to** *What tends to happen is that students spend the first week of the course in a blind panic, but settle down by the second or third week.* **| want sth to | make sth** *You have to make things happen if you want them to happen.* **| let sth** *Don't just sit back and let it happen.*

PREP. **to** *She didn't know what was happening to her.*

happiness *noun*

ADJ. **deep, great | perfect, pure, sheer, true | eternal, lasting | future** *Living together before you marry is no guarantee of future happiness.* **| earthly | human | personal | domestic, family, marital**

VERB + HAPPINESS **be filled with, feel | glow with** *Her face was glowing with happiness.* **| cry with, sigh with, weep with | achieve, find** *She seems to have found happiness with her new husband.* **| bring (sb)** *It is easy to believe that money brings happiness.* **| buy (sb)** *You cannot buy happiness.* **| wish sb**

PREP. **with ~ | ~ at** *He was weeping with happiness at being free.*

PHRASES **a feeling of happiness, wish sb every happiness** *We wish them every happiness in their new life.*

happy *adj.*

1 feeling pleasure

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** *Outwardly the couple appeared happy. Andrew felt happier than he had been for a long time.* **| become | make sb** *Money won't make you happy.* **| keep sb** *He went home from time to time, to keep his mother happy.*

ADV. **extremely, only too, particularly, really, very** *We'd be only too happy to accept your invitation.* **| completely, perfectly, quite** *Mum seemed perfectly happy with my explanation.* **| genuinely, truly** *For the first time in her life, she felt truly happy.* **| far from, not altogether, not at all, not entirely, not exactly, not particularly, not too, not totally** *Her boss was not entirely happy about the situation.* **| fairly, pretty, reasonably, relatively | just** *I'm just happy to be back home.* **| absurdly, amazingly, blissfully, deliriously, ecstatically, radiantly, ridiculously, strangely, surprisingly | clearly, obviously**

PREP. **about** *I'm not too happy about her attitude.* **| for** *So you're getting married, I hear. I'm really happy for you!* **| with** *I was quite happy with the way things went.*

2 giving pleasure

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, gloriously, particularly, very, wonderfully** *It had been a gloriously happy time.* **| quite**

harass *verb*

ADV. **racially, sexually** *She had been sexually harassed at work.*

harassment *noun*

ADJ. **racial, sexual | police | constant, continual**

VERB + HARASSMENT **be subject to, be subjected to, suffer** *She had been subjected to continual sexual harassment.*

PREP. **~ by** *They are complaining about harassment by the police*

PHRASES **a victim of harassment** > Note at CRIME(for more verbs)

harbour *noun*

ADJ. **deep, deep-water | good, safe, sheltered | natural | busy | picturesque, pretty | fishing**

VERB + HARBOUR **have** *The town has a small natural harbour.* **| come into, go into, enter** *They entered the harbour with flags flying.* **| go out of, leave**

HARBOUR + NOUN **wall**

PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *The fishing fleet is in harbour. the activity in the harbour* **| into (a/the) ~** *The damaged vessel was towed into harbour.* **| out of a/the ~** *We sailed out of the harbour at daybreak.*

PHRASES **the entrance to/the mouth of a harbour**

hard *adj.*

1 **solid/stiff**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *The chairs felt hard and uncomfortable.* **| become, go** *Don't leave the cake uncovered or the icing will go hard.* **| stay**

ADV. **extremely, very | a bit, fairly, quite, rather**

PHRASES **rock hard** *The toffee was rock hard.*

2 **difficult**

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get** *Life got very hard.* **| make sth** *If you tell the children the answers, it only makes it harder for them to do the work on their own.* **| find sth** *I found the exam quite hard.*

ADV. **extremely, really, very | a bit, fairly, pretty, quite, rather**

hardback *noun*

VERB + HARDBACK **publish | come out in** *His second book came out in hardback last month.*

HARDBACK + NOUN **book, edition**

PREP. **in ~** *It's only available in hardback.*

hardship *noun*

ADJ. **appalling, considerable, dreadful, extreme, genuine, great, immense, real, severe | widespread | undue, unnecessary | economic, financial, material, personal, physical**

VERB + HARDSHIP **cause | bear, endure, experience, face, suffer, survive** *a close community which makes these hardships easier to bear Students may suffer severe financial hardship as a result of the government's decision. They have already survived considerable hardship.*

HARDSHIP + NOUN **payment** *The union made hardship payments to some of the sacked workers.*

PREP. **in ~** *They are living in genuine hardship.* **| without ~** *Rail services to rural areas could be withdrawn without undue hardship.* **| ~ among** *widespread hardship among students* **| ~ to** *The cold was no real hardship to me.*

PHRASES **times of hardship** *In times of economic hardship, firms cut back on training.*

hardware *noun*

1 **of a computer**

ADJ. **computer**

QUANT. **piece** *The laptop drawing tablet is a very useful piece of hardware.*

VERB + HARDWARE **design, develop | provide, supply** *supplying computer hardware to business*

HARDWARE + NOUN **component, device, product | environment, platform, system** *This application runs on a wide variety of hardware platforms.* **| configuration | design, development | company, manufacturer, supplier, vendor** > Special page at COMPUTER

2 **heavy machinery/weapons**

ADJ. **military** *firms selling military hardware*

harm *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, serious, untold** *He was clearly intent on inflicting serious harm on someone.* | **irreparable, lasting, permanent** | **emotional, mental, physical, psychological** *elderly people in danger of physical or emotional harm* | **economic, environmental**

VERB + HARM **cause, do, inflict** *The huge fall in exports has done a great deal of harm to the economy.* | **mean (sb), wish sb** *I'm sorry if I upset you?I didn't mean any harm. No one wishes you harm.* | **come to, suffer** *I don't think he'll come to any harm if his mother is with him.* | **keep sb from, prevent, protect sb from, shield sb from** *The children were removed from their parents to prevent harm to them. She tried to shield her child from harm.*

HARM + VERB **come to sb/sth** *I don't want any harm to come to these pictures.*

PREP. **~ from** *babies at risk of serious harm from their parents* | **~ to** *the harm done to the environment*

PHRASES **more harm than good** *The drugs he was prescribed did him more harm than good.* | **out of harm's way** *The younger children were kept out of harm's way.*

harm *verb*

ADV. **seriously** *Misusing drugs in pregnancy can seriously harm your baby.* **| deliberately | physically**

VERB + HARM **intend to, want to** *He claimed that he had not intended to harm the girl.* **| try to**

harmful *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | consider sth** *She actually considered fresh air harmful.*

ADV. **extremely, particularly, positively, very** *These products are often positively harmful.* **| quite | possibly, potentially** *A lot of these chemicals are potentially very harmful.* **| allegedly | (not) necessarily** *Not all virus infections are necessarily harmful to vines.* **| intrinsically | environmentally, socially** *These pesticides are environmentally harmful.*

PREP. **to** *pesticides that are harmful to the environment*

harmless *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | make sth, render sth** *chemical wastes which have to be rendered harmless* **| consider sth**

ADV. **absolutely, completely, perfectly, quite, totally | almost, virtually | enough** *He looks harmless enough.* **| comparatively, fairly, pretty, reasonably, relatively | apparently, seemingly** *a small and seemingly harmless creature* **| environmentally**

PREP. **to** *The substance is harmless to people.*

harmony *noun*

1 **state of agreement**

ADJ. **absolute, complete, perfect | reasonable, relative** *They've lived together in reasonable harmony for many years.* **| domestic, political, racial, social** *On the surface, their life seemed a model of domestic harmony.*

VERB + HARMONY **achieve | maintain, preserve** *They try to maintain harmony between the two communities.* **| foster, promote** *The Church tries to promote racial harmony.* **| live in**

PREP. **in ~** *They work together in harmony.* **| ~ between** *They try to foster harmony between different groups of people.* **| ~ with** *living in perfect harmony with nature*

PHRASES **a sense of harmony** *A new sense of harmony developed in the community.*

2 **pleasant combination of different musical notes**

ADJ. **musical | five-part, four-part, etc.** *an arrangement with four-part harmony*

PREP. **in ~** *to sing in harmony*

harness *noun*

1 **for a horse**

ADJ. **leather**

VERB + HARNESS **put on | remove, take off**

PREP. **in (a) ~** *a horse in harness*

2 **for a person**

ADJ. **child | safety | climbing, parachute**

VERB + HARNESS **have on, wear | do up, fasten** *She fastened the safety harness tightly round her waist before starting the descent.* **| undo, unfasten**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Another man in a harness was being lowered from the helicopter.*

harness *verb*

ADV. **effectively, successfully | fully**

VERB + HARNESS **attempt to, seek to, try to** *attempting to harness the power of the sun* **| manage to**

PREP. **for** *How can this energy be harnessed effectively for the good of humankind?*

harp *noun*

VERB + HARP **set, tune** *By means of pedals, a harp can be set in any desired key.* > Special page at MUSIC

harp *verb* **PHRASAL VERBS harp on**

ADV. **always, constantly** *He is always harping on about the war.* **| still**

PREP. **about**

PHRASES **keep harping on** *Don't keep harping on about my age!*

harsh *adj.*

VERBS appear, be, prove, seem, sound *It may seem harsh to criticize him after his death.* **| become**

ADV. exceptionally, extremely, particularly, very | increasingly | a bit, a little, rather, somewhat | unduly, unnecessarily *He accused her of being unduly harsh.* **| surprisingly**

harvest *noun*

ADJ. abundant, bumper, good, large, rich *We've had a bumper harvest of apples this year. (figurative) She returned from the conference with a rich harvest of knowledge.* **| bad, disastrous, poor** *a series of poor harvests in the 1830s* **| cereal, corn, grain, potato, wheat, etc.**

VERB + HARVEST bring in, gather (in), get in, reap *They were busy getting the harvest in. (figurative) We are now reaping the harvest of our hard work last year.*

HARVEST + VERB fail *The strawberry harvest failed because of the drought.*

HARVEST + NOUN time | feast, festival

PREP. after (the) ~ *Potatoes are normally sprayed after harvest.* **| during (the) ~** *During harvest they work from dawn to dusk.* **| ~ of** *a good harvest of potatoes*

hassle *noun*

ADJ. **legal** *They faced interminable legal hassles if they wanted to claim compensation.*

VERB + HASSLE **get, have** *I started to get all this hassle from my boss about increasing productivity.* **| give sb** *He gave me so much hassle I decided it wasn't worth it.* **| save** *It saves a lot of hassle if you buy them by post.* **| be worth** *Camping holidays aren't really worth all the hassle.*

PREP. **with no/without ~** *She got the computer set up with no hassle at all.* **| ~ about/over** *I've had so much hassle over this business.*

PHRASES **take the hassle out of sth** *Package holidays take all the hassle out of travel arrangements.*

haste *noun*

ADJ. **blind, breathless, frantic, great** *She worked with frantic haste.* **| indecent, reckless, undue** *He accused the government of undue haste in bringing in the new law.*

VERB + HASTE **make** *I had to make haste if I wasn't to be late.*

PREP. **in (your) ~** *They obviously left in great haste. In his haste to get home, he forgot to go to the library.* **| with ~** *He married again with almost indecent haste.* **| without ~** *They approached without haste.*

PHRASES **with all haste** *The ships were ordered to sea with all haste.*

hat *noun*

ADJ. **broad-brimmed, wide-brimmed | floppy | battered | pointed | fur, straw, woollen, woolly | bobble, bowler, hard, panama, party, peaked, picture, riding, sun** (also **sunhat**), **ten-gallon, three-cornered, top**

VERB + HAT **don, place** *He placed a battered felt hat on his head.* **| doff, remove | raise, tip, touch** *The doorman tipped his hat as we entered.*

HAT + VERB **be trimmed with sth** *The governor wore a cocked hat trimmed with white feathers.*

HAT + NOUN **box | shop | stand**

PHRASES **pull a hat (down) over your ears/eyes/face** > Special page at CLOTHES

hatch *noun*

ADJ. **closed, open** *Leave the hatch open.* **| escape | inspection, service** *The engineer was peering into the service hatch.* **| serving** *She opened the serving hatch and put the soup on the counter.* **| kitchen, loft**

VERB + HATCH **lift, open, raise** *She lifted the hatch and slid it away from the opening.* **| batten down, close, shut** *They battened down the hatches and prepared for the storm. He ordered the hatches to be closed.*

PREP. **through a/the ~** *They got out through the escape hatch.* **| ~ between** *a hatch between the kitchen and the dining room* **| ~ to** *a hatch to the dining room*

hate *noun*

1 **strong feeling of dislike**

ADJ. **absolute, naked, pure** *In her eyes he could see naked hate.*

VERB + HATE **be filled with, be full of, burn with** *He burned with hate for everyone and everything.*

HATE + NOUN **campaign, figure, mail** *victim of a vicious hate campaign She became a hate figure for politicians on the left.*

PREP. **~ for** *full of hate for the people who had betrayed her*

2 **sb/sth you hate**

ADJ. **pet** *Jazz has always been a pet hate of mine.*

hate *verb*

ADV. **particularly, really | absolutely** *I absolutely hate cooking.* **| almost** *For a moment she almost hated him.* **| just** *Don't you just hate people who are always right?* **| always** *I always hated school.* **| still**

VERB + HATE **begin to, come to, grow to** *He came to hate the town, with its narrow prejudices.* **| love to** *the media baron all the socialists love to hate*

PREP. **for** *He hated me for standing up to him.*

PHRASES **hate it when** *I hate it when you lose your temper like that.*

hatred *noun*

ADJ. **bitter, deep, intense, passionate, pure, violent** *She shot him a look of pure hatred.* **| absolute, implacable | blind, irrational | class, ethnic, racial, religious**

VERB + HATRED **be filled with, be full of, feel, have** *She was full of hatred and bitterness. He has a deep hatred of the police.* **| incite, stir up** *He is accused of stirring up racial hatred.*

HATRED + VERB **flare (up)** *Hatred flared up inside her.*

PREP. **in/with ~** *She stared at it in hatred.* **| ~ against** *inciting religious hatred against the Catholic minority* **| ~ between** *the intense hatred between the two communities* **| ~ for** *I felt no hatred for him.* **| ~ of** *his hatred of women* **| ~ towards** *their hatred towards the oppressors*

PHRASES **a feeling of hatred**

haul *noun*

1 **act of hauling**

VERB + HAUL **give sth**

PREP. **~ on** *When I shout, give a haul on the rope.*

2 **distance to be travelled**

ADJ. **long, short** *the long haul back to Cape Town a short-haul passenger plane* **|** **final, last** *the final haul up the hill to the finishing line*

PREP. **~ from, ~ to**

3 **of fish/stolen goods, etc.**

ADJ. **big, large, record** *The thieves got away with a record haul of £25 million.* **|** **arms, drugs**

VERB + HAUL **get, get away with** *The gang did not expect to get such a large haul.*

HAUL + VERB **be worth sth** *a haul worth £30,000*

PREP. **~ of** *the biggest ever haul of illegal drugs*

haunt *noun*

ADJ. **favourite, old, popular, regular, usual | tourist** *The area was a popular tourist haunt.*

VERB + HAUNT **go back to, return to, revisit** *We've been back to some of our old haunts.*

haunt *verb*

1 appear as a ghost in a place

ADV. **reputedly, supposedly** *a Norman castle which is reputedly haunted*

VERB + HAUNT **come back to, return to** *He said he would come back to haunt her. (figurative) That decision came back to haunt him in later life.*

2 be always in your mind

ADV. **still** *the great fear that still haunts her*

VERB + HAUNT **continue to** *These visions continued to haunt her for many years.*

haven *noun*

ADJ. **safe** *The aim is to create a safe haven for the thousands of refugees.*

VERB + HAVEN **create, offer (sb), provide (sb with)**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *They were living in a safe haven away from the fighting.* **| ~ for** *The wood is a haven for wildlife.* **| ~ of** *This house is a haven of peace compared with ours.*

havoc *noun*

VERB + HAVOC **cause, create, play, wreak**

PREP. **~ among** *The new tax could wreak havoc among smaller companies.* **| ~ for** *High winds have been creating havoc for farmers.* **| ~ in** *The disease can cause havoc in commercial orchards.* **| ~ on** *The flood wrought havoc on the countryside.* **| ~ to** *The storm caused havoc to wildlife.* **| ~ with** *The fog played havoc with flight schedules.*

hawk *noun*

HAWK + VERB **hover | swoop (down)** *The hawk swooped low over the field.*

PHRASES **watch (sb) like a hawk** *He waited, watching her like a hawk.*

hay *noun*

QUANT. **bale**

VERB + HAY **cut, harvest, make** *The freshly harvested hay was taken into the big hay barn. They make hay to feed the cattle in winter.*

HAY + NOUN **meadow | bale | barn, loft**

PREP. **in the ~** *The children were playing in the hay.*

hazard *noun*

ADJ. **big, great, major, real, serious | constant | possible, potential | hidden, unexpected, unseen | environmental, industrial, natural, occupational** *industrial hazards such as excessive noise and pollution Loneliness is one of the occupational hazards of being a writer.* **| health** *Other people's smoke is now seen as a health hazard.* **| fire** *The rubbish under the flooring is a serious fire hazard.*

VERB + HAZARD **cause, create, pose** *Production of these chemicals poses serious environmental hazards.* **| be exposed to, encounter, face, meet** *The worst hazard we faced was having our money stolen.* **| avoid** *Go in September if you want to avoid the hazard of extreme heat.* **| eliminate, minimize | cope with, deal with, negotiate** *Companies should have systems for dealing with work hazards.*

PREP. **~ for** *Holes in the pavement are a hazard for blind people.* **| ~ to** *The burning of industrial waste is a major hazard to human health.*

PHRASES **exposure to a hazard** *Try and reduce your exposure to hazards such as poor quality air.*

hazardous *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become | consider sth**

ADV. **extremely, highly, particularly, very | rather, somewhat | potentially** *burning potentially hazardous medical waste* **| environmentally** *environmentally hazardous substances*

PREP. **for** *These conditions are very hazardous for shipping.* **| to** *chemicals that are hazardous to human beings*

haze *noun*

ADJ. **thick** *a thick haze of smoke* **| faint, thin** *The sun now had a faint golden haze around it.* **| shimmering | heat** *A heat haze shimmered above the fields.*

HAZE + VERB **hang, shimmer** *In the evenings a blue haze hung in the valleys.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Meetings are always conducted in a haze of cigarette smoke.* **| through a/the ~** *He watched the world through a haze of tobacco smoke.*

hazy *adj.*

1 **not clear because the air is difficult to see through**

VERBS **be, look** *The distant mountains looked hazy and mysterious.* **| become | remain**

ADV. **very | a little, quite, rather, slightly** *Generally, it will be rather hazy today, with some hill fog.*

PREP. **with** *The summers were hazy with pollution.*

2 **confused**

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very** *I have only a very hazy idea about how the economy works.* **| a bit, fairly, a little, rather, somewhat** *My memory of that day is somewhat hazy now.*

PREP. **about** *I'm a bit hazy about my family history.*

head *noun*

1 part of the body

ADJ. **bare | bald | shaved | blonde, dark, fair, grey, greying | bent, bowed** *She sat with bowed head.* **| severed** *The city gates were adorned with severed heads.*

VERB + HEAD **poke, pop, put, stick** *He put his head round the door.* **| bob, cock, crane, incline, jerk, tilt, turn** *She jerked her head in the direction of the door.* **| lift, raise | bend, bow, drop, duck, hang, lower** *He hung his head in shame.* **| swing, throw back, toss** *He threw his head back and laughed out loud.* **| nod, shake** *They nodded their heads in agreement. She shook her head in disbelief.* **| scratch** *He scratched his head. 'I don't understand,' he said. (figurative) Detectives have been left scratching their heads over the stolen painting's sudden reappearance.* **| clutch, hold** *He lay writhing on the ground, clutching his head in pain.* **| bury** *She buried her head in the pillow.* **| shave**

HEAD + VERB **ache, throb | bob, jerk, nod, tilt, turn** *Her head tilted to one side as she considered the question.* **| droop, drop, hang down, hang low** *His head drooped and tears fell into his lap.*

HEAD + NOUN **injury | cold**

PREP. **above your ~** *The thunder burst with a grand crash above our heads.* **| over your ~** *The soldiers were ordered to fire over the heads of the crowd.*

PHRASES **from head to foot/toe** *We were covered from head to foot in mud.* **| a fine/good, etc. head of hair** (= a lot of hair) *a woman with a lovely head of chestnut hair* **| have/hold/put, etc. your head in your hands** *He put his head in his hands, exasperated.* **| head first** *He dived head first into the water. (figurative) She got divorced and rushed head first into another marriage.* **| a nod of the head** *The ambassador dismissed him with a curt nod of the head.* **| a shake of the head** *She declined with a brief shake of the head.*

2 mind

ADJ. **clear, cool, level** *She needed to keep a clear head if she was to remain in control.* **| good** *I have a good head for figures.*

VERB + HEAD **use** *I wish you'd use your head* (= think carefully before doing or saying something). | **enter** *It never entered my head that he might be lying.* | **get it into** *When will you get it into your head* (= understand) *that I don't want to discuss this any more! For some reason she's got it into her head* (= believes) *that the others don't like her.* | **put sth into** *Who's been putting such weird ideas into your head?* | **get sth out of, put sth out of** *I can't get that tune out of my head. Try to put the exams out of your head for tonight.* | **bother** *Don't bother your pretty little head with things like that!*

HEAD + VERB **spin** *He could feel his head spinning after only one drink.*

PREP. **in your ~** *I can't work it out in my head?I need a calculator.* | **inside your ~** *It was an accident, said a voice inside his head.*

PHRASES **can't get your head round sth** (= can't understand sth) *She's dead. I can't get my head round it yet.* | **need your head examined** *He looked at me as if I needed my head examined* (= as if I were crazy).

3 heads: side of a coin

VERB + HEAD **call** *I called heads and it came down tails.* | **come down/up**

PHRASES **heads or tails?**

4 of a group/organization/school, etc.

ADJ. **deputy** | **departmental** | **nominal, titular** *The Queen is titular head of the Church of England.* | **crowned** *The message was sent to all the crowned heads* (= kings and queens) *of Europe.*

HEAD + NOUN **gardener, teacher, waiter** | **boy, girl** (= in a school)

PHRASES **a head of department, the head of the family, a head of government/state** *a summit meeting of heads of state* | **a head of (the) household** > Note at JOB

head *verb*

1 go

ADV. **north, northwards, etc.** *We headed west for two days.* **| back** *Let's head back home.*

PREP. **back to** *We headed straight back to school.* **| for** *He turned and headed for the door.* **| towards** *heading towards London*

2 be in charge of sth

ADV. **jointly** *The committee will be headed jointly by two men.* **| up**

VERB + HEAD **appoint sb to** *She has been appointed to head up the research team.*

headache *noun*

1 **pain in the head**

ADJ. **bad, severe, terrible, violent | mild, slight | dull | pounding, splitting, throbbing | migraine, tension** *He developed a severe migraine headache.*

VERB + HEADACHE **have, suffer from** *I've got a splitting headache.* **| get, develop** *We all get headaches from time to time.* **| complain of** *The workers had complained of headaches and nausea.* **| bring on, cause, give sb** *Exhaust fumes made him drowsy and brought on a headache. Red wine gives me a headache.* **| plead** *She had left the party early, pleading a headache.*

HEADACHE + NOUN **pill, tablet**> Special page at ILLNESS

2 **sb/sth that causes worry/difficulty**

ADJ. **big, major, real | constant**

PREP. **~ for** *Uneven cash flow proved to be a major headache for the company.*

heading *noun*

ADJ. **broad, general** *Books on bridges should be listed under 'bridges' and not under a broader heading such as 'engineering'.* **| main, major | chapter, page, section | subject, topic | letter** *With the computer, we can print our own letter headings.*

VERB + HEADING **come under, fall under** *These drugs come under the heading of non-medical substances.*

PREP. **under a/the ~** *I've organized what I have to say about unemployment under three main headings.*

headlights *noun*

ADJ. **dimmed, undimmed** *I kept my headlights undimmed along the country lanes.*

VERB + HEADLIGHTS **put on, switch on, turn on | dip | flash** *He flashed his headlights at the oncoming car.*

HEADLIGHTS + VERB **be (full) on | blaze, flash, shine** *The headlights shone on empty streets as we drove through the town.* **| pick sth out** *My headlights finally picked out a road sign.* **| sweep** *The car's headlights swept across the front of the house.*

PHRASES **the glare of headlights**

headline *noun*

1 **title of an article in a newspaper**

ADJ. **newspaper, tabloid** *'Carnage at Airport', screamed the tabloid headline.* | **banner, front-page** | **screaming** | **lurid** *lurid headlines about the sex lives of the stars* | **sporting, sports**

VERB + HEADLINE **carry, have, run** *The Guardian carried the front-page headline 'Drugs Firms Shamed'.* | **read, scan, see** *I just had time to scan the headlines before leaving for work.* | **be in, capture, dominate, grab, hit, hog, make ~s** *She's always in the headlines. He always manages to grab the headlines. The hospital hit the headlines when a number of suspicious deaths occurred. The story has been hogging the headlines for weeks. The story was important enough to make the headlines.*

HEADLINE + VERB **proclaim sth, read sth, say sth, scream sth** *The Sunday Observer had a headline saying, 'Pop Star Arrested on Drugs Charges'.*

HEADLINE + NOUN **news** *'Queen Mother goes on Holiday' is hardly headline news!*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The most unusual fact in the story is often used in the headline.* | **under a/the ~** *The Daily Gazette ran a story under the headline 'Pope's Last Words'.* | **with a/the ~** *a story in the newspaper with the headline 'Woman Gives Birth on Train'* | **~ about** *There was a banner headline about drugs in schools.*

PHRASES **make headline news** *The engagement of the two tennis stars made headline news.*

2 **the headlines: main news stories on TV/radio**

ADJ. **news**

VERB + HEADLINE **hear, listen to** *Let's just hear the news headlines.* | **look at, see, watch**

headquarters *noun*

ADJ. **international, local, national, regional | permanent | temporary | field | enemy | rebel | administrative, campaign, operational | army, military | police | business, company, corporate, group | party**

VERB + HEADQUARTERS **have** *The organization has its headquarters in Brussels.* **| establish, set up** *The company has set up its European headquarters in the UK.* **| open | close** *They're planning to close their headquarters in Washington.*

PREP. **at (the) ~** *They're very worried about this at headquarters. She works at the company's headquarters.*

heal *verb*

ADV. **completely, properly** *The wound hasn't healed properly yet.* **| partially | beautifully, nicely, well | gradually, slowly | quickly | eventually, finally | up** *The wound healed up very nicely.*

health service *noun*

ADJ. **comprehensive, good | free | community, family, national, public**

VERB + HEALTH SERVICE **manage, run** *the problems of managing the health service* **| establish, introduce, set up** *plans to set up a national health service* **| improve, reform | finance, pay for | nationalize, privatize**

HEALTH SERVICE + VERB **provide sth** *The health service can't provide cosmetic surgery.*

HEALTH SERVICE + NOUN **employee, manager, official, staff, worker**

PREP. **in the ~** *a shortage of labour in the health service* **| on the ~** *Are you going to have your operation done on the national health service?* **| under the ~** *This treatment is difficult to obtain under the national health service.* **| within the ~** *decision-making within the health service*

health *noun*

ADJ. **excellent, full, good, perfect | bad, declining, delicate, failing, fragile, frail, ill, poor** *He had to retire due to ill health.* **| general, mental, physical, sexual | environmental, occupational** *environmental health officers* **| public** *The poisoned food has been removed from the shops and there is no threat to public health.* **| human**

VERB + HEALTH **enjoy, have** *She's never really enjoyed good health.* **| look after, maintain** *You need to maintain your physical and mental health.* **| improve** *ways to improve the nation's general health* **| promote** *a programme to promote better health in the workplace* **| recover, regain | nurse sb back to** *She was nursed back to full health.* **| damage, harm, ruin, undermine | risk**

HEALTH + VERB **improve** *Her health gradually improved.* **| deteriorate, fail, worsen** *His health began to fail under the heavy pressures of the job.*

HEALTH + NOUN **care** *How is primary health care best delivered?* **| authority, board** *the district/local/regional health authority* **| issue, needs, problem | hazard, risk | education | centre** *a community health centre* **| insurance** *private health insurance* **| food** *health food stores* **| professional, visitor, worker** *Your doctor, midwife or health visitor will advise.* **| warning** *The air quality was so bad that the government issued a health warning.* **| minister**

PHRASES **bad/good for your health** *Smoking is bad for your health.* **| health and safety** *health and safety at work* **| (not) in the best of health, in good/poor health** *He felt in much better health.* **| sb's state of health** *He is unable to travel far because of his state of health.*

healthy *adj.*

1 **not ill**

VERBS **appear, be, be born, feel, look, seem | become | keep, remain, stay | make sb** *Working in the open air has made him very healthy.* **| keep sb** *Her good diet had kept her healthy.*

ADV. **extremely, fantastically, really, very | perfectly** *He's a perfectly healthy child.* **| fairly, quite, reasonably | apparently** *The rare disorder strikes apparently healthy boys between the ages of five and twelve.* **| disgustingly** *(informal, ironic) You look disgustingly healthy! How do you manage it?* **| otherwise** *She looked pale, but otherwise healthy.* **| mentally, physically**

PHRASES **fit and healthy**

2 **producing good health**

VERBS **be | consider sth** *a new diet which is considered much healthier than previous ones*

ADV. **extremely, very** *We have a very healthy diet.* **| quite** *Their lifestyle is quite healthy.* **| generally**

3 **working well**

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very** *The economy is extremely healthy at the moment.* **| fairly, quite, reasonably, relatively | basically, fundamentally, generally | financially**

heap *noun*

ADJ. **big, great, large | little, small | crumpled, untidy | compost, manure, muck, rubbish, scrap, slag, spoil** *colliery spoil heaps*

VERB + HEAP **be piled in** *Papers were piled in great heaps on the desk.* **| collapse in, fall (down) in** *(both figurative) He collapsed in an exhausted heap on the floor.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *His clothes lay in a crumpled heap on the floor.* **| on/onto a/the ~** *Throw the potato peelings on the compost heap.* **| ~ of** *a great heap of stones*

PHRASES **the bottom/top of the heap** *(figurative) These workers are at the bottom of the economic heap.*

hear *verb*

1 be aware of sounds

ADV. **clearly, well** *He's getting old and he can't hear very well.* | **just** *I could just hear the music in the distance.* | **distantly** *Distantly he heard the report of another gun.* | **aright, correctly** *'Sheep?' It sounded so unlikely that Julia did not think she could have heard aright.*

VERB + HEAR **can/could** *Can you hear me clearly at the back?* | **pretend not to** | **strain to**

2 be told about sth

VERB + HEAR **be delighted to, be glad to, be gratified to, be pleased to** *I was delighted to hear about your promotion.* | **be sorry to** *I was sorry to hear of your father's death.* | **be interested to, be surprised to** *I was surprised to hear that she was married.* | **want to** *I told Michael what he wanted to hear.* | **let sb** *Let's hear you sing, then. You'd better not let Dad hear you say that.*

PREP. **about** *I've heard about this sort of thing before.* | **of** *On hearing of his plight, the council offered him a home.*

PHRASES **hear little, a lot, nothing, etc. about sth** *We hear very little about these issues nowadays.*

hearing *noun*

1 **ability to hear**

ADJ. **acute, excellent, good, normal, sharp | bad, impaired, poor**

VERB + HEARING **have, possess** *Whales have acute hearing.* | **lose** *She lost her hearing when she was a child.* | **get back, regain** *Is there any chance that he'll get his hearing back?* | **affect, impair, make worse**

HEARING + VERB **deteriorate, get worse, go** *His hearing began to deteriorate. Her hearing was already going.* | **come back, get better, improve** *Two months after the accident her hearing came back.*

HEARING + NOUN **impairment, loss, problems** | **aid** *to have/wear a hearing aid* | **person** *a course in sign language for both deaf and hearing people*

PHRASES **hard of hearing** *You'll have to speak more loudly. I'm afraid she's rather hard of hearing.*

2 **trial in a court of law/similar investigation**

ADJ. **final, preliminary | fair | formal, full | open, public | private, secret | oral | appeal, custody, disciplinary, petition, pre-trial | committee, congressional, court, tribunal**

VERB + HEARING **conduct, hold** *Most councils hold hearings in public.* | **ask for, call for, demand** *Protesters are calling for a public hearing.* | **get, have** *She said that she had had a very fair hearing from the disciplinary tribunal.* | **attend | adjourn | tell** *The hearing was told that the child had been left with a 14-year-old babysitter.*

HEARING + VERB **take place | begin, open**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *At a preliminary hearing the judge announced that the trial would begin on March 21.* | **in a/the ~** *She was granted a divorce in a five-minute hearing.* | **pending a/the ~** *Pending the hearing of the case by the court, the business will be allowed to continue trading.* | **without a ~** *A High Court judge dismissed the case without a hearing.*

3 **chance for an opinion to be considered**

ADJ. **fair, sympathetic**

VERB + HEARING **give sb/sth** *At least give our ideas a fair hearing before you reject them.* **| get** *You haven't got much chance of your plan getting a sympathetic hearing.* **| deserve** *Their views deserve a hearing.*

PREP. **~ for** *All I'm asking is a fair hearing for my ideas.*

hearsay *noun*

VERB + HEARSAY **be based on, rely on** *Her judgements are based on hearsay rather than evidence.*

HEARSAY + NOUN **evidence**

PREP. **by ~** *She discovered a world of parties and pleasure she had hitherto only known by hearsay.* **| from ~** *They started to piece the story together from hearsay.*

heart attack *noun*

ADJ. **fatal | massive, serious** *She died of a massive heart attack.* **| mild, minor | suspected**

VERB + HEART ATTACK **have, suffer** *He suffered a fatal heart attack while cycling.* **| die from/of** > Special page at ILLNESS

heart *noun*

1 part of the body

ADJ. **healthy, strong | bad, weak | artificial | human**

HEART + VERB **beat | pump sth** *The heart pumps blood through the body.* **| fail, stop | hammer, palpitate, pound, race, throb, thud, thump**

HEART + NOUN **rate | complaint, condition, defect, disease, failure, murmur, problem, trouble | bypass, operation, surgery, transplant** *a triple heart bypass operation open-heart surgery*

2 feelings/emotions

ADJ. **big, good, kind, soft, tender, warm | cold, hard | broken | heavy, sinking** *With a heavy heart, she watched him go.* **| light** *He set off with a light heart.*

VERB + HEART **have** *She has a kind heart. Have you no heart?* **| break** *He broke her heart.* **| gladden | steal, win | harden | open, pour out** *Finally, he broke down tears and poured out his heart to her.*

HEART + VERB **jump, leap, lurch, miss/skip a beat** *Her heart leapt with joy.* **| ache** *My heart aches when I think of their sorrow.* **| desire sth** *everything your heart could desire* **| sink | go out** *Our hearts go out to* (= we sympathize deeply with) *the families of the victims.*

PREP. **at ~** *At heart he is a republican.* **| from the ~** *I could tell he spoke from the heart.* **| in your ~** *In my heart, I knew it wasn't true.*

PHRASES **an affair of the heart** (= a romance) *Her novels tend to deal with affairs of the heart* **| a change of heart** (= a change of attitude) *He could have a change of heart and settle down to family life.* **| from the bottom of your heart** *I beg you, from the bottom of my heart, to spare his life.* **| heart and soul** *He committed himself heart and soul to the cause.* **| have a heart of gold/stone** (= to be a kind/ cruel person) (= no sympathetic feelings), **the hearts and minds of sb** *to win the hearts and minds of the nation's youth* **| in good heart** (= cheerful and well), **put some/more heart into sth** *Let's sing it one more time from the beginning?and put some heart into it!* **| sick at heart** (= very unhappy), **with all your heart** *I wish you* *well with all my heart.*

3 important/central part

ADJ. **very**

VERB + HEART **lie at** *The distinction between right and wrong lies at the heart of all questions of morality.* **| go to** *The committee's report went to the heart of the government's dilemma.*

PREP. **at the ~** *the issue at the heart of modern government* **| ~ of** *We live in the very heart of the city.*

PHRASES **the heart of the matter/problem**

4 playing card > Note at CARD

heartbeat *noun*

ADJ. **irregular, regular | racing** *She was suddenly aware of her racing heartbeat.*

VERB + HEARTBEAT **monitor | feel**

PHRASES **the sound/thud of a heartbeat** *I could feel the thud of my heartbeat.*

heartland *noun*

ADJ. **agricultural, industrial** *the industrial heartland of Germany* **| Conservative, Labour, etc. | traditional**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The party has lost seats in its traditional heartland of southern Thailand.*

heat *noun*

1 being hot/level of temperature

ADJ. **burning, fierce, great, intense, searing, terrible, tremendous** *The soil is baked dry by the fierce heat of the sun.* **| gentle | excess, excessive** *If circulation is impaired, the body cannot lose excess heat.* **| red, white** (*often figurative*) *Everything he did was at white heat and lightning speed.* **| blood, body**

VERB + HEAT **feel** *We could feel the tremendous heat coming from the fire.* **| disperse, dissipate, give out, lose** *Even after the sun had set, the stones continued to give out heat.* **| conserve, retain** *The thick walls retain the heat.* **| absorb** *Darker surfaces absorb heat.* **| conduct** *Being a metal, aluminium readily conducts heat.* **| generate, produce, provide, radiate** *Computers, faxes and photocopiers all generate heat of their own.* **| withstand** *a material which can withstand heats of up to 2,000°C*

HEAT + VERB **build up, increase** *He tried to ignore the heat building up in the confined space.*

HEAT + NOUN **loss | exhaustion, stress, stroke** (also **heatstroke)** *She slumped to the ground, near to heat exhaustion.*

PREP. **~ from** *the heat from the fire*

2 hot weather/conditions

ADJ. **baking, blazing, blinding, blistering, boiling, extreme, great, intense, oppressive, scorching, searing, shimmering, stifling, suffocating, sweltering** *We walked more than ten miles in the blistering heat.* **| dry | humid, steamy, sultry** *the steamy heat of New York in summer* **| 80-degree, 90-degree, etc. | afternoon, midday, morning | summer | desert, tropical**

HEAT + VERB **grow** *Daily the heat grew.*

HEAT + NOUN **haze** *A heat haze shimmered above the fields.*

PREP. **in the ~** *I can't work in this heat.*

PHRASES **the heat of the day** *To avoid the heat of the day we went out in the mornings.*

3 **source of heat**

ADJ. **high | gentle, low | medium, moderate | direct** *Chocolate should never be melted over direct heat.* **| dry**

VERB + HEAT **turn up** *Towards the end of the cooking, turn up the heat to brown the outside.* **| lower, reduce, turn down | remove sth from, take sth off** *Bring to the boil slowly, then remove from the heat.* **| return sth to** *Return the pan to the heat and stir.*

PREP. **off the ~** *Make sure the pan is off the heat.* **| on a ~** *Cook on a low heat for five minutes.* **| over a ~** *Simmer the sauce over a gentle heat.*

4 **strong feelings**

ADJ. **sudden** *He stared at her, sudden heat in his eyes.*

HEAT + VERB **flare, flood sth, rise** *Heat flooded her cheeks.*

PREP. **in the ~ of** *in the heat of battle/passion* **| with ~** *'It was your hare-brained idea,' Henry said with heat.* **| without ~** *She spoke without heat.*

PHRASES **in the heat of the moment** *Michael bitterly regretted those angry words, spoken in the heat of the moment.*

5 **race/competition**

ADJ. **qualifying, regional | dead** *Competition was fierce, with a dead heat in one of the races* (= with two competitors finishing in exactly the same time).

VERB + HEAT **win** *She won her heat.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He fell in the first heat.*

heat *verb*

ADV. **gently** *Heat the sauce gently for a few minutes.* **| through, up** *Allow the food enough time to heat through. They heat up the food in a microwave oven.*

heated *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **adequately, properly, well | badly, inadequately | slightly** *a slightly heated aquarium* **| centrally** *modern, centrally heated homes* **| electrically**

heater *noun*

ADJ. **convector, fan, immersion, instantaneous, multi-point, storage | electric, gas, oil, paraffin | aquarium, car, greenhouse, pool, room, water**

VERB + HEATER **have off/on | turn off/on | turn down/up**

HEATER + VERB **be off/on** *Even with the heater full on, the room felt cold.*

heating *noun*

ADJ. **electric, gas-fired, solar | central, domestic, home, underfloor | water**

VERB + HEATING **have** *The flat has gas-fired central heating.* **| have on, keep on, leave on, run, use** *We haven't had the heating on this evening.* **| put on, switch on, turn on** *They are afraid to put the heating on because it's so expensive.* **| switch off, turn off** *They have their heating turned off during the morning.* **| turn down/ up | fit, install, put in** *We're having central heating installed.*

HEATING + VERB **be (full) on, be on high/low** *The heating was on but the window was open. The heating's on low.* **| be off | come on | go off** *Our heating goes off at eleven o'clock and comes on again at seven.* **| work** *The heating doesn't work.* **| break down** *The house was very cold because the heating had broken down.*

HEATING + NOUN **bill | system** *What sort of heating system has your new flat got?*

heave *noun*

ADJ. **great, mighty**

VERB + HEAVE **give (sth)** *She gave a great heave and the box inched forward.*

heaven *noun*

1 **believed to be the home of God**

VERB + HEAVEN **ascend to, go to** *I feel like I've died and gone to heaven.*

PREP. **from ~** *Our child seemed a gift from heaven.* **| in ~** *(figurative) It was a marriage made in heaven.*

PHRASES **the kingdom of heaven**

2 **place/situation in which you are very happy**

ADJ. **absolute, sheer** *It was sheer heaven being alone at last.*

PREP. **in ~** *The kids were in absolute heaven at the fair.*

PHRASES **a heaven on earth** *The island is truly a heaven on earth.* **| sb's idea of heaven** *Building up a tan by the pool with a good book is my idea of heaven.*

heavy *adj.*

1 **weighing a lot**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *My suitcase was beginning to feel very heavy.* **| become, get** *You're getting too heavy to carry!* **| make sth** *The bottles of wine made the bag even heavier.* **| find sth** *I didn't find it too heavy to carry.*

ADV. **extremely, really, very | fairly, pretty, quite, rather** *Be careful. That box is rather heavy.*

2 **worse than usual**

VERBS **be | become, get** *The rain was getting quite heavy.*

ADV. **extremely, really, very** *The traffic's really heavy on the bypass.* **| fairly, pretty, quite**

Hebrew *noun*

ADJ. **ancient, biblical | medieval | modern**

HEBREW + NOUN **alphabet, script | scripture** > Note at LANGUAGE

hedge *noun*

ADJ. **high, low, tall, thick | boundary, garden, roadside** *Establish which boundary hedges are yours, and which belong to a neighbour.* **| beech, box, hawthorn, privet, yew, etc.** *a thick hawthorn hedge*

VERB + HEDGE **plant | clip, trim** *Trim the hedge and collect the trimmings.*

HEDGE + NOUN **clippings, trimmings | trimmer**

heel *noun*

1 **back part of the foot**

VERB + HEEL **lean back on, sit back on, squat on** *She took a potato from the fire and sat back on her heels.* **| rock (back) on** *The punch rocked him back on his heels. He rocked back and forth on his heels as he laughed.* **| pivot on, spin on, turn on** *He turned on his heel and marched away angrily.* **| click (together)** *The officer clicked his heels together and saluted.* **| catch** *She caught her heel and tripped.* **| injure**

HEEL + VERB **click**

HEEL + NOUN **injury**

PREP. **at your ~s** *She came up the path with two little dogs at her heels.* **| under the ~** *(figurative) For years the nation had been under the heel of a dictatorial regime.*

PHRASES **(close/hard/hot) on your heels** *(figurative) They reached the border with the police hot on their heels.*

2 **part of a shoe/sock**

ADJ. **flat, low | high, spike, stiletto | three-inch, etc.**

HEEL + NOUN **bar** *I took my shoes to a heel bar to have them repaired.*

height *noun*

1 **how tall sb/sth is**

ADJ. **full, maximum** *He drew himself up to his full height and glared at us.* **| considerable, great, towering** *Her great height was rather a handicap.* **| average, medium, middle** *a man of middle height*

VERB + HEIGHT **measure | grow to, reach** *The plants grow to a maximum height of 24 inches.*

PREP. **in ~** *The wall is 2.5 metres in height.*

2 **distance above the ground/sea level**

ADJ. **considerable, great** *The object had clearly fallen from a considerable height.* **| ceiling, chest, head, shoulder, waist, etc.** *Bring your hands to shoulder height.*

VERB + HEIGHT **gain | lose** *The plane was beginning to lose height.* **| maintain** *The pilot was unable to maintain height.* **| attain, climb to, reach, rise to** *The balloon reached a height of 20,000 feet.*

PREP. **at a ~ of** *The animal lives in lakes near Mexico City, at a height of 6,000 to 7,000 feet above sea level.*

3 **(usually heights) high place**

ADJ. **mountain, rocky** *The condor soars above the mountain heights.*

VERB + HEIGHT **scale** *They were the first expedition to scale the heights of Everest.* **| be afraid of, have no head for | have a head for** *A steeplejack has to have a good head for heights.*

PREP. **from a ~** *The pattern of the ancient fields is clearly visible from a height.*

PHRASES **a fear of heights 4 heights** high level of achievement

ADJ. **commanding, dizzy, giddy, lofty** *They have risen to the dizzy heights of the* *semi-finals.* | **new** *The group's popularity reached new heights when they got a top ten hit.*

VERB + HEIGHT **reach, rise to, scale** *She rose to undreamed-of heights of power and fame.*

heighten *verb*

ADV. **greatly** *This latest attack has greatly heightened fears of an all-out war.* **| further**

VERB + HEIGHTEN **serve to** *Seeing others enjoying themselves only served to heighten his sense of loneliness.* **| seek to** *an exercise which seeks to heighten people's awareness of the problems*

heir *noun*

ADJ. **lawful, legal, legitimate, rightful** *the rightful heir to the throne* **| natural, real, true** *The socialists saw themselves as true heirs of the Enlightenment.* **| direct** *When the Earl of Surrey died in 1347 he left no direct heir.* **| immediate | designated | apparent, presumptive** (both only after **heir)** *On his brother's death he became heir apparent to the title.* **| sole | female, male | political, spiritual** *The house was her spiritual home for which she sought a spiritual heir.*

VERB + HEIR **have** *He has no heir to leave his fortune to.* **| beget, get, produce** *He planned to marry and produce an heir for his estate.* **| became, fall** *At the age of twenty he fell heir to a large estate.*

PREP. **~ to** *He is the sole heir to a large mining fortune.*

PHRASES **the heir to the throne, sb's son and heir** *He left most of his property to his eldest son and heir.*

heirloom *noun*

ADJ. **family | ancient**

HEIRLOOM + VERB **be passed down, come down** *The brooch is a family heirloom which came down to her from her great-grandmother.*

helicopter *noun*

ADJ. **air force, military, police | civilian, private | rescue | model**

VERB + HELICOPTER **fly** *He flew helicopters during the Gulf War.*

HELICOPTER + VERB **fly | hover** *The helicopter hovered above the air strip.* **| take off | land | crash | carry sb** *a helicopter carrying troops*

HELICOPTER + NOUN **flight | pad | pilot | gunship**

PREP. **by ~** *The victims were flown to hospital by helicopter.* **| in a/the ~** *There were three people in the helicopter when it crashed.*

hell *noun*

1 **place bad people are said to go to when they die**

VERB + HELL **go to** *He was terrified of going to hell when he died.*

HELL + NOUN **fire**

PREP. **in ~** *tormented souls in hell*

PHRASES **the fires/flames of hell** *Lava poured out of the volcano, glowing like the fires of hell.*

2 **very unpleasant place/situation**

ADJ. **absolute, pure, sheer** *It was sheer hell having to sit through hours of boring lectures!* **| living** *The last few weeks have been a living hell for the refugees.*

VERB + HELL **go through** *She's been going through hell with that bad tooth.* **| give sb, make sb's life** *Her boss is making her life hell.*

PREP. **in ~** *'We're living in hell,' said one of the refugees.*

PHRASES **the … from hell** *It really was the holiday from hell?it rained all the time, we all got colds, and we missed the plane home.* **| hell on earth** *For someone who doesn't like heat, Florida would be hell on earth.*

helmet *noun*

ADJ. **visored | crash, cycle, flying, motorcycle, safety | fireman's, policeman's, etc.**

VERB + HELMET **have on, wear | put on | remove, take off**

help *noun*

ADJ. **big, enormous, great, invaluable, real, substantial, tremendous, valuable** *You've been a big help?thanks. It's a great help having you around. This is the first scheme to offer real help to working mothers.* | **generous** | **direct** *The careers officer gives direct help as well as advice.* | **mutual, self-** *The system is based on mutual help rather than on payment for services. a best-selling author of self-help books* | **voluntary** *The homeless centre relies entirely on voluntary help.* | **immediate** | **individual** *Teachers have little time to give individual help to students.* | **expert, skilled, technical** | **outside** *They can usually manage by themselves, but occasionally need outside help.* | **financial, legal, medical, practical, professional** *When the symptoms persisted, I decided to seek medical help.*

VERB + HELP **appeal for, ask for, beg for, call for, scream for, seek, send for, shout for, summon** *Police are appealing for help in catching the killers. I opened the window and called for help.* | **bring, enlist, fetch, find, get** *He enlisted the help of a private detective in his search for the truth. He ran to get help.* | **need, want** *Do you need any help unloading the car?* | **get, receive** | **accept** *He's too proud to accept help.* | **come to, give sb, offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *Passers-by came to the woman's help when she was mugged.*

HELP + VERB **arrive, come** *He lay injured for four hours before help arrived.* | **be at hand** *(informal) Don't panic?help is at hand.*

HELP + NOUN **desk, line** (also **helpline)** *For further information, phone our helpline.*

PREP. **beyond ~** *Some of the injured animals were beyond help and had to be destroyed.* | **of ~** *The manual is too technical to be of help to the inexperienced user.* | **with ~** *With a little help, I think I could fix the computer myself. We broke open the lock with the help of a spanner.* | **~ for** *The training centre provides special help for the long-term unemployed.* | **~ from** *With help from a parent, a child can do simple cooking.* | **~ in** *Local teachers provided invaluable help in developing the material.* | **~ to** *She's been a big help to her father.* | **~ with** *He'll need help with this homework.*

PHRASES **an appeal/a plea/a request for help** *The family's request for help went unanswered.* | **a cry for help** *I heard a cry for help from inside the building.* | **in need of help** *The man was clearly in need of urgent medical help.* | **an offer of help** *He rudely rejected her kind offer of help.*

help *verb*

1 **do sth for sb**

ADV. **a lot** *My mother helps me a lot.* **| a bit | solicitously** *He solicitously helped her back into the chair.* **| out**

VERB + HELP **be able/unable to, can/could** *Can you help me with my homework?* **| try to** *I was only trying to help out.*

PREP. **across** *I helped her across the road.* **| into, out of** *She helped the old man out of the car.* **| with** *We all help with the housework.*

PHRASES **help sb to their feet** *Mike helped the old lady to her feet.* **| a way of helping** *the best way of helping your child*

2 **make sth easier/better**

ADV. **enormously, greatly, immeasurably, a lot, really, tremendously** *Talking to a counsellor helped her enormously. The whole process was greatly helped by the widespread availability of computers.* **| a bit, a little | certainly** *It certainly helped that her father is a duke!*

VERB + HELP **be designed to** *The minimum wage is designed to help people in low-pay service industries.*

PREP. **in** *Iron helps in the formation of red blood cells.*

helper *noun*

ADJ. **voluntary, volunteer | willing**

QUANT. **band** *He recruited a band of willing helpers.*

helpful *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | consider sth, find sb/sth**

ADV. **enormously, especially, extremely, immensely, most, particularly, really, unusually, very** *Thank you, you have been most helpful.* **| not at all, not particularly** *Demanding peace short of victory would not be at all helpful.* **| fairly, quite | immediately** *indulging in ambitious, but not immediately helpful plans* **| generally, usually | always, invariably**

PREP. **for** *This information would be extremely helpful for teenagers.* **| in** *Graphs are helpful in presenting the information.* **| on** *He was quite helpful on how to do the accounts.* **| to** *The lifts will be helpful to the older patients.*

PHRASES **friendly and helpful** *I found all the staff friendly and helpful.*

helping *noun*

ADJ. **big, generous, huge, large** *a generous helping of potatoes* **| small | extra, second**

VERB + HELPING **eat, have**

PREP. **~ of** *I had an extra helping of meat.*

helpless *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, lie, look, seem, stand, watch** *John felt completely helpless. He lay helpless in the hospital ward.* **| become | leave sb, render sb** *He was left helpless and alone. She was rendered helpless by panic.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, totally, utterly | apparently, seemingly | physically**

PREP. **against** *She was helpless against his strength.* **| before** *Kirk stood helpless before this giant of a man.* **| in the face of** *feeling helpless in the face of all these rules and regulations* **| with** *She was helpless with anger.*

helplessness *noun*

ADJ. **utter**

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of helplessness** *A feeling of utter helplessness washed over him.*

hen *noun*

ADJ. **speckled | battery, free-range | mother** *She fussed around like mother hen.* **| broody**

VERB + HEN **keep**

HEN + VERB **lay (eggs)** *The hen layed three beautiful speckled eggs.* **| cackle, cluck, squawk** *I could hear the hens clucking in the farmyard.* **| roost | peck, scratch** *The hens pecked hopefully at the dusty floor.*

HEN + NOUN **coop, house, roost**

hepatitis *noun*

ADJ. **severe | acute, chronic | active | viral**

VERB + HEPATITIS **have, suffer from | be infected with, contract, get**

HEPATITIS + NOUN **virus | patient**

PHRASES **hepatitis A/B/C** > Special page at ILLNESS

herb *noun*

ADJ. **dried, fresh | mixed** *Add a teaspoonful of mixed herbs.* **| aromatic, fragrant | culinary, medicinal**

QUANT. **bunch**

VERB + HERB **garnish sth with** *Serve cold, garnished with fresh herbs.*

HERB + NOUN **bed, border, garden** > Special page at FOOD

herd *noun*

1 **group of animals**

ADJ. **great, large | small | beef, breeding, dairy** *The farm has only a small dairy herd.* **| cattle, elephant, etc.**

HERD + NOUN **instinct**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The animals tend to graze in a herd.* **| ~ of** *a large herd of cows*

PHRASES **a member of a herd**

2 **group of people**

ADJ. **common**

VERB + HERD **follow** *If you feel so strongly, why follow the herd* (= do the same as everybody else)? **| stand out from** *She prided herself on standing out from the common herd* (= being different from ordinary people).

HERD + NOUN **instinct**

heritage *noun*

ADJ. **rich | natural | common, national** *Folk songs are part of our common heritage.* **| architectural, artistic, cultural, historical, literary**

VERB + HERITAGE **have** *The city has an exceptionally rich heritage of historic buildings.* **| preserve, protect** *protecting our heritage of wild plants*

HERITAGE + NOUN **centre, museum, site**

hernia *nou*n

VERB + HERNIA **have, suffer from | remove, repair**

HERNIA + NOUN **operation, repair** > Special page at ILLNESS

hero *noun*

ADJ. **big, great** *He was one of the great football heroes of his day.* **| real | all-time** *Einstein is the all-time hero of many scientists.* **| unsung** *She was an unsung hero of the British film industry.* **| reluctant, unlikely | brave, gallant** *The song remembers the brave heroes who died for their country.* **| romantic, tragic** *Being short and overweight, he was an unlikely romantic hero.* **| square-jawed, swashbuckling** *Tired of playing the square-jawed hero, he sought out more challenging roles.* **| all-conquering, conquering** *In his war stories he portrayed himself as the all-conquering hero. He returned home from the tournament a conquering hero.* **| fallen** *a fallen hero trying to regain his position* **| cult** *James Dean was a cult hero of the fifties.* **| folk, local, national, popular | fictional, legendary, mythical | eponymous** *Don Quixote, the eponymous hero of the novel by Cervantes* **| boyhood, childhood** *Bugs Bunny was one of my childhood heroes.* **| proletarian, working-class | military | celluloid | musical** *In this album she pays tribute to her musical heroes.* **| film, football, guitar, sporting, war** *Jimi Hendrix was her guitar hero.*

VERB + HERO **be hailed (as)** *He was hailed as a hero after the rescue.* **| become, make sb into, turn sb into** *The fight to save the forest turned him into a local hero.* **| die** *He died a national hero.*

PREP. **~ to** *He was a hero to all his schoolmates.*

PHRASES **be no hero** *John was no hero?he stood back as his friends approached the two armed border guards.* **| give sb/receive a hero's welcome, hero of the hour** *Everyone played brilliantly, but Jones was the hero of the hour.* **| (die) a hero's death**

heroic *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **truly** *a truly heroic battle* **| suitably** *He struck a suitably heroic pose.*

heroin *noun*

ADJ. **pure | street**

QUANT. **dose, gram, ounce, shot, wrap**

VERB + HEROIN **fix, inject, smoke**

HEROIN + NOUN **injector | possession | injection | overdose** *a fatal heroin overdose* **| dealing** > Note at DRUG(for more verbs and nouns)

heroine *noun*

ADJ. **great** *Violetta is one of the great tragic heroines of Verdi's operas.* **| national | romantic, tragic | unsung** *She remains one of the unsung heroines of the Second World War.* **| childhood** *She was thrilled to be interviewing her childhood heroine.* **| eponymous** *Jane Eyre, the eponymous heroine of the novel by Charlotte Bronte* **| sporting**

heroism *noun*

ADJ. **great, real, true**

PHRASES **an act of heroism**

herring *nou*n

ADJ. **fresh | pickled, salted, smoked, soused**

VERB + HERRING **catch | eat, have**

HERRING + NOUN **fillet** > Special page at FOOD

hesitate *verb*

ADV. **briefly, a little, (for) a minute/moment/second, momentarily** *Alison hesitated a moment, as if she were waiting for him.*

VERB + HESITATE **appear to, seem to | make sb** *Something about his smile made her hesitate.*

PREP. **about** *I didn't hesitate about working with Craig.* **| between** *He was hesitating between a glass of wine and an orange juice.* **| over** *He stood hesitating over whether to join the fight.*

hesitation *noun*

ADJ. **brief, fractional, momentary, slight** *There was a momentary hesitation before he replied.* **| initial** *After some initial hesitation, teachers seem to have accepted the new system.*

PREP. **after … ~** *After much hesitation, they decided to leave.* **| without ~** *She answered immediately, without any hesitation.*

PHRASES **have no hesitation in doing sth** *I have no hesitation in recommending him for the job.* **| a moment's hesitation, a moment of hesitation** *After a moment's hesitation, he nodded.*

hibernation *noun*

ADJ. **long | winter**

VERB + HIBERNATION **go into** *At the first cold of autumn, many insects go into hibernation.* **| emerge from**

PREP. **in ~** *The tortoise spends the winter months in hibernation.*

hiccup *noun*

1 **sound made in the throat**

ADJ. **small | loud**

VERB + HICCUP **give, let out** *She gave a loud hiccup.*

2 **(the) hiccups: series of hiccups**

QUANT. **attack** *He suddenly had an attack of the hiccups.*

VERB + HICCUP **get, suffer from** *I ate too quickly and got hiccups.*

3 **small problem**

ADJ. **little, slight | occasional | temporary**

PREP. **~ in** *This one defeat was the only hiccup in the team's steady progress up the League.*

hide *noun*

ADJ. **thick, tough** *Elephants have a very tough hide.* **| buffalo, elephant, elk, ox, rhino**

VERB + HIDE **tan** *The hide is tanned for leather.*

hide *verb*

1 go/put sth where you/it cannot be seen

ADV. **away** *She hid the documents away in a drawer.*

VERB + HIDE **prefer to, want to** *She wanted to run away and hide. (figurative) He accused the prime minister of preferring to hide from the truth.*

PREP. **among** *hiding among the bushes* | **behind** *(figurative) He hid behind a false identity.* | **beneath** *He had a weak mouth which he hid beneath a moustache and beard.* | **from** *hiding from their enemies* | **in** *hiding in the shadows* | **under** *He hid the book under his bed.*

PHRASES **carefully/completely/well hidden** *The letters were well hidden in the back of the cupboard.* | **half hidden** *The buildings were half hidden by the trees.* | **hidden deep beneath/in sth** *tiny villages hidden deep in the softly rolling hills* | **hidden from sight/view** *The house was hidden from view by a large hedge.* | **lie/remain hidden** *treasures which have lain hidden in bank vaults since the war* | **partially/partly hidden** *The house was partially hidden behind some trees.* | **a place to hide (sth)** *I'll find a better place to hide it.*

2 keep sth secret

ADV. **well** | **completely**

VERB + HIDE **be able/unable to** *She was unable to hide her delight at his failure.* | **try to** | **make no attempt to** *He made no attempt to hide his anger* | **manage to**

PREP. **from** *The government tried to hide the evidence from the public.*

PHRASES **keep sth hidden** *feelings that she had kept completely hidden all these years* | **remain/stay hidden** *The truth may well remain hidden for ever.*

hiding *noun*

VERB + HIDING **go into** *He had gone into hiding just after war broke out.* **| come out of** *After the car had passed by they came out of hiding.*

PREP. **in ~** *The fugitive had spent five weeks in hiding.*

hierarchical *adj.*

VERBS **be** *The company's structure is rigidly hierarchical.* **| become**

ADV. **extremely, rigidly, strictly, strongly, very | fairly | essentially**

hierarchy *noun*

ADJ. **complex | rigid, strict** *the rigid class hierarchy of rural society* **| administrative, bureaucratic, corporate, management, managerial, organizational | class, social | church, ecclesiastical | party, political** *high up in the party hierarchy* **| military**

VERB + HIERARCHY **create, establish** *A new management hierarchy was created within the company.* **| move up, rise in/through** *He joined the party in 1966 and quickly moved up the hierarchy.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She is above me in the hierarchy.* **| within a/the ~** *There was a range of opinion within the ecclesiastical hierarchy on the issue.* **| ~ of** *There was a clear hierarchy of power in the company.*

PHRASES **sb's level/position/status in a hierarchy**

high *noun*

1 **high level or point**

ADJ. **all-time, new, record**

VERB + HIGH **hit, reach** *Share prices reached an all-time high yesterday.*

2 **feeling of great pleasure or happiness**

ADJ. **real, tremendous | emotional**

VERB + HIGH **experience, get** *the high she got from cocaine* **| give sb** *The drug gives you a tremendous high.*

PREP. **on a ~** *She's been on a real high since she got her exam results. This show is our swansong?we want to finish on a high.*

PHRASES **the highs and lows** *the emotional highs and lows of an actor's life*

highlight *noun*

ADJ. **real, undoubted** *The real highlight of the trip for me was the visit to the Tower of London.* **| personal | edited, recorded ~s (used to talk about sports broadcasts)** *Recorded highlights of the match will be shown later tonight.*

PHRASES **the highlight of the day, week, year, etc.** *The highlight of the week was Saturday's firework display.*

highlight *verb*

ADV. **clearly** *These figures clearly highlight the difference in world living standards.* **|** **dramatically, graphically** *The needs of these children were dramatically highlighted by the Child Poverty Action Group.* **|** **merely, only, simply** *The peace talks merely highlighted the great gulf in understanding between the two sides.*

VERB + HIGHLIGHT **serve to** *The incident has sadly only served to highlight the differences within the party.*

highway *noun*

ADJ. **broad | three-lane, two-lane, etc.** *a four-lane highway* **| public** *(formal) He was fined for obstructing the public highway.* **| main, major, national | trans-Amazon, trans-European, etc. | coastal, desert | east-west, north-south**

VERB + HIGHWAY **pull off** *We pulled off the highway and stopped for a break.* **| obstruct**

PREP. **along the ~** *They tore along the highway.* **| down the ~, off the ~, on the ~, onto the ~, up the ~ | ~ to** *the highway to Sydney*

hike *noun*

ADJ. **long | strenuous | ten-mile, two-day, etc.**

VERB + HIKE **go on** *The boys have gone on a long hike with the Boy Scouts.*

PREP. **on a ~** *They met on a hike.* **| ~ from, ~ to** *It's a hell of a hike from Sydney to Perth.*

hill *noun*

ADJ. **big, high, long** *The bus sped down the long hill.* | **little, low, small** *The village is set on a small hill.* | **steep** | **gentle** | **rolling, undulating ~s** *The landscape is made up of low, rolling hills.* | **conical, rounded** | **blue, dark, green, purple** | **bare, forested, grassy, open, rocky, rugged, wooded** | **distant, far** *the distant blue hills* | **isolated, lonely** | **encircling, surrounding ~s** *Troops forced villagers to flee to the surrounding hills.* | **prominent** | **coastal** | **chalk** *the chalk hills of southern England*

VERB + HILL **climb (up), go up** *They climbed a steep hill and came to the village.* | **come down** | **take to ~s** *(literary) We took to the hills in a variety of four-wheel-drive vehicles.*

HILL + VERB **overlook sth, rise** *a hill overlooking the wide valley below Wooded hills rise behind the town.*

HILL + NOUN **climbing, walking** | **walker** | **farming** | **farmer** | **farm, fort, station** (= a small town in the hills, especially in India), **town, village** *In the heat of summer the rich fled to the hill stations.* | **country** | **top** (= also **hilltop**) | **start** (= starting a vehicle on a slope)

PREP. **down a/the ~** *A grassy path led down the hill.* | **in the ~s** *There are several lead mines in the hills above Grassington.* | **on a/the ~** *The church is perched on a hill.* | **over a/the ~** *Over the hill lies another village.* | **up a/the ~** *A few yards up the hill, on the left, was a turning.* | **~ above** *the hills above the town*

PHRASES **the bottom/foot of a/the hill** *A spring emerges at the bottom of the hill.* | **the top of a/the hill**

hillside *noun*

ADJ. **steep | bare, exposed, open, rocky | grassy, green, wooded** *On our left was a wooded hillside.* **| terraced** *I was back in wine country, with terraced hillsides on both sides of the road.* **| distant**

VERB + HILLSIDE **be set on** *Many of the chalets are set on a hillside reached by steps.*

PREP. **down a/the ~** *A stream tumbles down the steep hillside.* **| on a/the ~** *The house was on a hillside outside the town.* **| up a/the ~** *We clambered up the hillside to the ridge above.* **| ~ above** *the hillside above the village*

hinder *verb*

ADV. **greatly, seriously** *These killings have seriously hindered progress towards peace.*

VERB + HINDER **be likely to, tend to** *Bulky clothes tend to hinder movement.*

PHRASES **help or hinder sth** *factors which might help or hinder a child's progress at school*

hindrance *noun*

ADJ. **great**

VERB + HINDRANCE **be, prove** *Having a car in the city might prove a hindrance.*

PREP. **without ~** *(formal) The cook needs room to get at the cooker, sink and cupboards without hindrance.* **| ~ to** *The new regulations are actually a great hindrance to teachers.*

PHRASES **without let or hindrance** *(law)*

hindsight *noun*

PREP. **in ~** *Their first scheme was deemed, in hindsight, a mistake.* **| with ~** *This all seems obvious with hindsight.*

PHRASES **(with) the advantage/benefit/wisdom of hindsight** *It is easy to criticize others when you have the benefit of hindsight.*

Hinduism *noun* > Note at RELIGION

hint *noun*

1 **suggestion**

ADJ. **broad, clear, heavy, strong** *He gave a broad hint that he was on the verge of leaving.* **| gentle, subtle, veiled | tantalizing**

VERB + HINT **drop, give (sb)** *I dropped a few subtle hints about the payment being due.* **| get, take** *OK, I get the hint! Can't you take a hint and leave me alone?*

PREP. **~ about, ~ from** *a hint from my boss about my absences from the office* **| ~ to** *Is that a hint to me to leave?*

2 **small amount of sth**

ADJ. **strong** *a dish with a strong hint of garlic* **| faint, merest, slightest** *The slightest hint of gossip upset her.*

PREP. **~ of** *There was a hint of amusement in his voice.*

PHRASES **at the first hint of sth** *At the first hint of trouble, I will call the police.*

3 **piece of advice**

ADJ. **handy, helpful, practical, useful**

VERB + HINT **give (sb)**

PREP. **~ about** *The book gives some useful hints about how to plan your garden.* **| ~ on** *a book full of handy hints on painting and decorating*

hint *verb*

ADV. **strongly** *He hinted strongly that he would be resigning soon.* **| discreetly | darkly** *She hinted darkly that all was not well.* **| only**

PREP. **at** *The problems are only hinted at in the report.*

hip *noun*

ADJ. **lean, narrow** *Her hips were still narrow like a girl's.* | **sturdy, wide** | **broken, dislocated, fractured** | **arthritic** | **artificial**

VERB + HIP **have/put your hands on** *He put his hands on his hips and sighed.* | **roll, sway, swing, wiggle** *She wiggled her hips seductively as she walked.* | **rotate, turn, twist** *Twist your hips towards your opponent as you punch.* | **thrust** | **break, dislocate, fracture**

HIP + VERB **spread** *Her hips had spread since having a baby.*

HIP + NOUN **fracture, injury** | **deformity** | **operation, replacement** *My grandmother's having a hip replacement.* | **bone, joint, socket** | **flask** *He took a swig of whisky from his hip flask.* | **pocket** *Don't carry money or documents in your hip pocket.*

PREP. **across the ~s** *She was wearing a short blue dress, belted across the hips.* | **at the ~** *He had his leg amputated at the hip.* | **from the ~** *The gun could be fired from the shoulder or from the hip.* | **on the ~** *She was carrying a baby on her hip.* | **to the ~** *The skirt is slit to the hip on one side.*

PHRASES **hands on hips** *He leaned casually against the door frame, hands on hips.*

hire *noun*

ADJ. **bicycle, car, equipment, etc.**

HIRE + NOUN **car** *Our hire car broke down after only an hour.* **| charge, cost | company, firm, shop**

PREP. **for ~** *There are boats for hire on the lake.* **| on ~ (from/to)** *The equipment is on hire from a local company.* **| ~ of** *The main expense was the hire of a car.*

hire *verb*

ADV. **promptly** *The entire workforce was laid off and a fresh one promptly hired.* **| by the day, week, etc.** *What's the cost of hiring by the day?* **| locally** *Ski equipment can be hired locally.*

PREP. **from** *Bicycles can be hired from several local shops.*

hiss *noun*

ADJ. sharp | faint, soft, low *There was a low hiss on the tape.* **| audible**

VERB + HISS give, let out *The snake gave a hiss.* **| hear**

PREP. with a ~ *She drew in her breath with a hiss.* **| ~ of** *We could hear the faint hiss of escaping gas.*

PHRASES boos and hisses, a hiss of air, the hiss of a snake > Note at SOUND

hiss *verb*

1 **make a sound like a long ‘s’**

ADV. **gently** *The gas lamp hissed gently.*

2 **say sth in an angry, hissing voice**

ADV. **angrily, furiously** *‘Don't be stupid!’ she hissed furiously.* | **quietly**

PREP. **at** *She hissed at me to be quiet.*

PHRASES **hiss (sth) through your teeth** *‘Go away!’ he hissed through clenched teeth.*

historian *noun*

ADJ. distinguished, eminent, great, leading, respected *a talk given by an eminent social historian* **| serious** *No serious historian today accepts this theory.* **| academic, professional | amateur | official** *the official historian of the Labour Party* **| contemporary, early, future** *The oldest tradition goes back to the contemporary historian John Foxe. What will future historians make of the late twentieth century?* **| ancient, medieval, modern** *She is a writer as well as a distinguished modern historian.* **| local | family | art, church, cultural, economic, human, literary, military, political, social, etc. | revisionist** *Revisionist historians have questioned the accepted version of events.*

history *noun*

1 **the past, especially as a subject of study**

ADJ. **contemporary, early, recent** *the early history of the trade union movement things that happened in recent history* | **ancient, medieval, modern** | **local** | **family** | **British, world, etc.** | **official** *the official history of the Labour Party* | **recorded** *The debate about the origins of the universe has been going on throughout recorded history.* | **oral** *Oral history enables us to take account of those many aspects of history that are not recorded in documents.* | **art, church, cultural, economic, human, literary, military, political, social, etc.**

QUANT. **piece** *She created a piece of history by winning her fourth title.*

VERB + HISTORY **be steeped in** *a building that is steeped in history* | **go down in, make, pass into** *He will go down in history as a wise adviser and a kind man. He made history by being the first man to walk on the moon.* | **trace** *The regiment traces its history back to 1803.* | **distort, rewrite** *her attempt to rewrite history with herself in the role of heroine*

HISTORY + VERB **go back (to) …** *The town's history goes back to Roman times.* | **reveal sth, show sth** *History shows that New Zealand are almost unbeatable by British teams on their own turf.* | **repeat itself** *Years later, family history repeated itself with Eve's daughters.*

HISTORY + NOUN **book** *(figurative) She has earned her place in the history books.*

PREP. **during sth's ~** *The country has suffered several invasions during its history.* | **in (sth's) ~** *the most extraordinary royal meeting in history the best player in the sport's history* | **throughout ~** *There have been conflicts such as this throughout history.*

PHRASES **change the course of history** *events that could change the course of history* | **a period of history** *This is a fascinating period of history.* | **the rest is history** (= the rest of the story does not need to be told because it is well-known), **a sense of history** *a people with no sense of history* | **a slice of history** *The team grabbed a slice of history here today* (= achieved sth that will be remembered). > Note at SUBJECT(for more verbs and nouns)

2 **facts about sb/sth's life/existence in the past**

ADJ. **chequered, colourful, fascinating, interesting, rich** *The city has a rich and colourful history.* **| long** *She has a long history of mental illness.* **| previous, subsequent | case** *She familiarized herself with the case history of her new patient.* **| employment, family, life, medical, personal, sexual** *The doctor will need some details of your medical history. I know nothing about his personal history.*

VERB + HISTORY **have**

PREP. **~ of** *a history of heart disease in the family*

3 **sth in the past that is no longer important**

ADJ. **past** *They had an affair once, but that's past history now.*

hit *noun*

1 **act of hitting sth/sb**

ADJ. direct

VERB + HIT give sth, make, score *Give it a good hit At last he managed to score a hit.* **| receive, suffer, take** *One of the tanks took a direct hit.*

HIT + NOUN list *She was at the top of the terrorists' hit list* (= the list of people they intended to kill) *for over two years. Which services are on the government's hit list?* **| man, squad** *He claimed that a hit man had been paid £20,000 to kill him.*

2 **sb/sth that is very popular**

ADJ. big, greatest, huge, massive, real, smash *The show has been a smash hit.* **| immediate, instant | box-office, chart** *The band are here to promote their latest chart hit.*

HIT + NOUN album, film, movie, record, show, single, song | parade *(old-fashioned) The single was number one in the British hit parade*

PREP. ~ with *The series has been a big hit with children.*

hit *verb*

1 **touch sb/sth with a lot of force**

ADV. **hard** *She didn't hit me very hard.* | **almost, nearly** *A taxi almost hit him as he was crossing the street.* | **accidentally** *I accidentally hit my knee on the desk.*

VERB + HIT **want to** *I was so angry, I wanted to hit him.* | **be going to** *I was afraid he was going to hit me.*

PREP. **in** *She hit him in the face.* | **on** *I hit my head on the low doorway.* | **with** *He hit her with a stick.*

PHRASES **hit sb over the head** *He was hit over the head with a broken bottle.*

2 **have a bad effect on sb/sth**

ADV. **badly, hard, heavily, severely** *Our department has been badly hit by the cutbacks. Some businesses have been hit very hard by the rise in interest rates.*

PHRASAL VERBS hit out

ADV. **hard** | **wildly** *I just hit out wildly in all directions.*

PREP. **at** *In a rousing speech the minister hit out at racism in the armed forces.*

hitch *noun*

ADJ. **slight | last-minute** *There are always a few last-minute hitches at the dress rehearsal.* **| legal, technical** *There was a slight technical hitch which delayed the plane's take-off.*

PREP. **without a ~** *Everything went without a hitch.* **| ~ in** *There's been a hitch in the plans.*

HIV *noun*

VERB + HIV **be at risk from | contract, get | have, suffer from** *people suffering from HIV and Aids* **| be affected by, be infected by | spread, transmit | be/test negative for, be/test positive for | test sb/sth for, screen sth for** *screening blood for HIV* **| treat**

HIV + NOUN **infection | antibody, virus | carrier, sufferer | status** *If you are unsure of your HIV status, consider having a test.* **| test**

PHRASES **HIV negative/positive** > Special page at ILLNESS

hoard *noun*

ADJ. **big, large, major, vast** *one of the biggest hoards of Roman coins ever found* **| small | secret** *her secret hoard of food*

PREP. **in ~s** *Gold coins have been found in hoards in many parts of the country.* **| ~ of** *a vast hoard of treasure*

hoarse *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound | become, get, go | leave sb, make sb/sth, scream yourself, shout yourself** *All the shouting had left her rather hoarse. Excitement made her voice hoarse. He shouted himself hoarse, but still no one came.*

ADV. **extremely, very | rather, slightly**

PREP. **from** *Her voice was hoarse from shouting.* **| with** *His voice was hoarse with anxiety.*

hoax *noun*

ADJ. **elaborate** *It turned out to be an elaborate hoax.* **| cruel** *He described the deception as a cruel hoax.* **| bomb**

VERB + HOAX **perpetrate, play, stage** *a hoax perpetrated by the British government*

HOAX + NOUN **call, caller**

PREP. **~ on** *The organizers staged a hoax on some of the competitors.*

hobby *noun*

ADJ. **absorbing, enjoyable, relaxing, satisfying | favourite, pet** *Cooking is her pet hobby.*

VERB + HOBBY **have** *Have you got any hobbies?* **| enjoy, follow, indulge (in), pursue** *She never had any time to pursue her hobbies.* **| start, take up** *Why don't you take up a new hobby?*

PREP. **among your ~s** *Cycling and karate are among her hobbies.* **| as a ~** *He takes photographs as a hobby.*

hockey *noun*

ADJ. **field, ice, indoor, roller | ladies', mens', mixed | senior, under-18, etc.**

VERB + HOCKEY **play** *She plays hockey in the winter.*

HOCKEY + NOUN **stick | pitch | match, tournament | coach, player | star | fan | club, squad, team** *the Olympic hockey squad* **| league, tournament** > Special page at SPORT

hold *noun*

1 **act/way of holding sth**

ADJ. **firm, tight** *He still had me in a tight hold.*

VERB + HOLD **catch, get, grab, grasp, seize, take** *Take hold of the handle and give it a hard pull.* | **have, keep** *He kept a firm hold on my hand.* | **lose** *He lost his hold on the rock and was swept away by the tide.* | **tighten** | **relax, release** *She finally released her hold on me.*

PREP. **~ on** *He tightened his hold on her.*

2 **influence/control over sb**

ADJ. **firm, powerful, strong, tight** *He still has a firm hold on the party.* | **increasing** | **fragile, tenuous, weak** *Her hold on power was now quite tenuous.*

VERB + HOLD **have** | **lose** *The allies lost their hold on northern France.* | **consolidate, strengthen, tighten** *Enemy forces have consolidated their hold on the northern province.* | **break, weaken** *an attempt to break the hold of the Church*

PREP. **~ on** *This had weakened his hold on power.* | **~ over** *He no longer had any hold over her.*

holder *noun*

ADJ. **licence, passport, ticket** *Only ticket holders will be allowed into the ground.* **| account, credit card, policy** *Account holders with the bank qualify for a discount on loans.* **| championship, cup, record, title** *the current 800 metres record holder* **| job, office, post** *She wondered why the previous job holder had left.*

hold-up *nou*n

[1] **robbery**

ADJ. **armed | bank** VERB + HOLD-UP **carry out**

[2] **delay**

ADJ. **lengthy | traffic**

hole *noun*

ADJ. **big, deep, gaping, great, huge, large, massive, yawning | small, tiny | circular, round | jagged, ragged** *The missile had torn a jagged hole in the side of the ship.* **| neat | bullet** *The wall was full of bullet holes.* **| mouse, rabbit, etc.**

VERB + HOLE **bore, break, cut, dig, drill, make, punch, tear, wear** *We dug a deep hole to bury the animals in. She punched two holes in each sheet of paper. He had worn a hole in the knees of his trousers.* **| fill (in), plug** *I uprooted the tree and filled the hole with earth. We used cement to plug the holes.*

PREP. **down a/the ~** *The snake disappeared down a hole.* **| in a/the ~** *There was water in the hole.* **| through a/the ~** *We climbed through the hole.* **| ~ in** *I used a skewer to make an extra hole in my belt.*

PHRASES **full of holes** *The old blankets were now full of holes.* **| riddled with holes** *The car was riddled with bullet holes.*

holiday *noun*

1 **period of time away from home for pleasure**

ADJ. **enjoyable, exciting, fun-filled, good, lovely, wonderful | disastrous** *We had a disastrous camping holiday.* | **dream** *What would be your dream holiday?* | **foreign, overseas | summer, winter | 7-night, two-week, etc. | package | family | activity, adventure, camping, skiing** *I learned to windsurf on an activity holiday.*

VERB + HOLIDAY **go on, have, take** *We're going on holiday to France this summer. Are you having a holiday this year?* | **book** *Have you booked your summer holiday yet?* | **cancel** *I got ill and had to cancel my holiday.*

HOLIDAY + NOUN **destination, resort, venue** *a popular seaside holiday resort* | **accommodation, cottage, home** *They also have a holiday home at the seaside.* | **camp, complex, village | period, season** *The pool is open throughout the holiday season.* | **brochure | business, company, firm** *The recession hit the package holiday business hard.* | **insurance** *You should take out holiday insurance before you leave.* | **arrangements, plans | romance** *Their holiday romance turned into a lasting relationship.* | **photos, snaps**

PREP. **on (a) ~** *They met while on holiday in Spain.*

PHRASES **a holiday of a lifetime** *This is your chance to win the holiday of a lifetime.*

2 **period of rest from work/school**

ADJ. **annual, Christmas, Easter, summer** *The centre is now closed for the Christmas holidays.* | **school | paid**

VERB + HOLIDAY **be entitled to, get, have** *You are entitled to 24 days' paid holiday per year. I have three weeks' holiday a year.* | **take** *I'm taking the rest of my holiday in October.* | **spend** *She spent her holiday decorating the flat.* | **need** *I really need a holiday!*

HOLIDAY + NOUN **time | entitlement | pay | job** *She had a holiday job as a gardener when she was a student.*

PREP. **during the ~s** *It can be difficult to keep children occupied during the long summer holidays.* **| in the ~s** *My aunt's coming to stay in the holidays.* **| on ~** *I'm afraid Mr Adamek is on holiday this week.*

3 **day when people do not go to work/school**

ADJ. **bank, national, public, religious**

HOLIDAY + NOUN **weekend** *The roads will be busy on Monday as it's a holiday weekend.*

hollow *noun*

ADJ. **deep | little, shallow, slight | damp, dark, grassy | sheltered | natural**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Snow lay in dark hollows.* **| ~ in** *a hollow in the ground* **| ~ of** *the hollow of her throat*

home *noun*

1 **place where sb/sth lives**

ADJ. **boyhood, childhood, family, marital, matrimonial, natural, parental** *Placing a child in public care is sometimes the only solution to ill-treatment in the natural home. It's unusual for young people over 25 to still live in the parental home.* **| native** *She left her native home in Ireland and went to America.* **| permanent, temporary** *a shelter for people with no permanent home* **| comfortable, luxurious, luxury,** magnificent, nice, pleasant | humble | happy, secure, stable, **supportive** *These children badly need a stable and secure home life. The lock-up garage provides a secure home for your car.* **| broken** *children from a broken home* (= whose parents are no longer together) **| single-parent** *More and more children in the school are from single-parent homes.* **| middle-class, working-class, etc. | dream** *They found their dream home on the shore of a lake.* **| detached,** semi-detached, terrace/terraced **| rented | council | country, island, mountain, riverside, seaside, suburban, valley, village** *He used to spend the summer painting at his country home.* **| holiday, weekend** *They also have a holiday home in Spain.* **| caravan, mobile, motor** *The storm wrecked the family's caravan home.* **| ancestral | stately** *Priceless antique furniture was destroyed in the fire at the stately home.* **| forest** *These birds are in danger of becoming extinct as their forest home disappears.* **| winter** *The mudflats offer a winter home to thousands of migrating swans.* **| legendary** *The hill is the legendary home of King Arthur.* **| spiritual** *The first time he visited New Orleans he knew he had found his spiritual home.*

VERB + HOME **arrive, come, get, go, make your way** *Let's go home?I'm tired.* **| bring sb/sth, take sb/sth | be away from, get away from, leave** *He didn't leave home until he was 24.* **| abandon** *The people abandoned their homes and headed for the hills.* **| find (sb/sth), give sb/sth** *Perhaps we could find a home for the kitten.*

HOME + NOUN **address, number** *Try phoning me on my home number after six o'clock.* **| buyer, owner | ownership | purchase | sales | background, conditions, environment, life, situation** *He came from an appalling home background. She had never had a stable home life.* **| area, base, country, district, state, town | territory, turf** *I arranged to meet her in her office, as she seemed more relaxed on her home territory.* **| improvement, maintenance, repairs | extension | loan | help** *My grandmother has a home help who comes and cleans twice a week.* **| appliance | computer | furnishings | contents** *Make sure you insure your home contents for an adequate amount.* **| comforts** *She desperately* *missed her home comforts while camping.* | **insurance** | **security** *Fitting a burglar alarm is the most effective way to increase home security.* | **entertainment** *the market for home entertainment systems* | **use** *This video is for home use only.* | **user** *a laser printer aimed at the home user* | **trial** *We are offering a free 15-day home trial on our software.* | **student, study** *The course is suitable for classroom or home study.* | **tutor** | **work, worker** *He supplements his income with part-time or home work.* | **baking, cooking** *She missed her mother's home cooking.* | **nursing** | **visit** *The doctor was assaulted on a home visit.* | **remedy, treatment** *I've tried all the home remedies for headaches without success.* | **leave** *He went missing while on home leave from prison.* | **movie, video** *We have a home movie of my dad teaching me to swim.* | **consumption** *He claimed he had bought the cigarettes for home consumption, not to sell them.* | **market** *They hope to sell as many computers on the home market as they export.* | **affairs, news** *the party's spokesman for home affairs The newspaper gives priority to home news over international news.* | **port, waters** *seamen serving in home waters*

PREP. **at ~, away from ~** *Her job means she's away from home for weeks at a time.* | **back ~, in your own ~** | **~ of** *Andalusia, the home of flamenco*

PHRASES **a home from home** *The hotel's friendly atmosphere makes it a real home from home.* | **home-grown** *home-grown vegetables (figurative) The show gives home-grown musical talent the chance to show what they can do.* | **home-made** *home-made bread* | **on the home front** (= used to introduce domestic news) *On the home front, the fuel crisis continues to worsen.* | **welcome home** *The banner said 'Welcome home dad!'*

2 **place that provides care for sb/sth**

ADJ. **care, charity, children's, convalescent, foster, nursing, old people's, remand, residential, rest, retirement** | **purpose-built** *Work begins this week on a purpose-built home for the city's homeless.*

VERB + HOME **provide (sb with)** *We have to provide a good home for the children.* | **run** *They run a retirement home for the elderly.*

homeland *noun*

ADJ. **beloved** *They were devastated that they had to leave their beloved homeland.* **| ancient, traditional** *the struggle to defend their ancient homeland* **| former | tribal | adopted** *He wants his children to grow up in his adopted homeland.* **| Jewish, Palestinian**

VERB + HOMELAND **flee, leave** *During the war, they were forced to flee their homeland.* **| go back to, return to, visit** *He longs to return to his homeland.*

PREP. **in a/sb's ~** *They hope to remain in their homeland.*

homeless *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, end up, find yourself** *He found himself homeless after his marriage broke up.* **| leave sb, make sb, render sb** *Three hundred people were made homeless by the earthquake.*

ADV. **officially | intentionally, voluntarily** *The local authority ruled that he had made himself intentionally homeless and was therefore not entitled to be rehoused.*

homesick *adj.*

VERBS be, feel | become, get | make sb *Seeing other families together made him terribly homesick.*

ADV. desperately, terribly, very | a bit, a little

homework *noun*

ADJ. **English, science, etc.**

QUANT. **piece**

VERB + HOMEWORK **do** *Have you done your maths homework yet?* **| finish | hand in** *I want you to hand in this homework on Friday.* **| get, have** *They get masses of homework at secondary school.* **| give (sb), set (sb)** *The science teacher always sets a lot of homework.* **| correct, mark**

PREP. **for ~** *We had to write out one of the exercises for homework.* **| ~ on** *I've got some homework to do on the Industrial Revolution.*

homicide *noun*

ADJ. criminal, culpable, unlawful | justifiable *The jury returned a verdict of justifiable homicide.* > Note at CRIME(for verbs)

homogeneous *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **remarkably, very | totally | largely | fairly, relatively | increasingly | apparently | supposedly | internally | culturally, ethnically, linguistically, racially, socially** *a culturally homogeneous society*

homosexual *noun*

ADJ. **practising | closet, repressed | female, male**

VERB + HOMOSEXUAL **come out as** *He came out as a homosexual after his mother died.*

HOMOSEXUAL + VERB **come out of the closet**

PHRASES **discrimination against homosexuals**

honest *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, really, scrupulously, truly, very | absolutely, completely, perfectly, quite, totally | less than, not altogether, not entirely** *I don't think you've been altogether honest with me.* **| basically, enough, reasonably** *She seems honest enough.* **| refreshingly | brutally, painfully, ruthlessly** *Let's be brutally honest about this: you haven't a hope of succeeding.*

PREP. **about** *Try to be honest about how you feel.* **| in** *He is always scrupulously honest in his business activities.* **| with** *My parents were always completely honest with me.*

PHRASES **to be honest (with you)** *To be quite honest with you, I don't think he's the right person for the job.* **| open and honest** *She was totally open and honest about her feelings.*

honesty *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, complete, scrupulous, total** *I always expect total honesty from my employees.* | **transparent** | **brutal, painful, ruthless** *'Don't you believe me?' 'I don't know,' she said with painful honesty.* | **disarming** | **intellectual** *You need ruthless intellectual honesty about your own skills, weaknesses and motives.*

VERB + HONESTY **have** *She had the honesty to admit her mother was right.* | **lack** | **expect**

PREP. **in ~** (= honestly) *Who in honesty can blame her?* | **with ~** *She answered the questions with complete honesty.* | **~ about** *I appreciate your honesty about this.*

PHRASES **honesty and integrity** *He has the honesty and integrity to be chairman.* | **in all honesty** (= used to say sth which, though true, may seem disappointing) *In all honesty, the book was not as good as I expected.*

honey *noun*

ADJ. **clear | runny | wild**

QUANT. **dollop | jar, pot**

VERB + HONEY **make, produce** *learning how bees make honey a jar of locally-produced honey* **| gather** *to gather honey from the hive* **| spread (sth with)** *He spread some honey on his bread.*

HONEY + NOUN **bee**

PHRASES **as sweet as honey** > Special page at FOOD

honeymoon *noun*

ADJ. **brief, short** *We had a brief honeymoon in Paris.* **| long | second** *After so many years of marriage, we're planning a second honeymoon.*

VERB + HONEYMOON **go on, have, leave for, spend** *They go on honeymoon the day after the wedding.*

HONEYMOON + VERB **be over** *(usually figurative) The honeymoon was over and the reality of what she had taken on began to dawn.*

HONEYMOON + NOUN **couple | suite | period** *(figurative) There was always a honeymoon period when Mum started a new job.*

PREP. **for a ~** *They can't decide where to go for their honeymoon.* **| on ~** *While on honeymoon in Bali, she learned to scuba dive.*

honour *noun*

1 **sth that makes you feel proud**

ADJ. **great, rare, signal, special, tremendous | doubtful, dubious** *Max was given the dubious honour of organizing the children's party.*

VERB + HONOUR **have** *I had the rare honour of being allowed into the artist's studio.* **| do sb** (*formal*), **give sb** *Will you do me the honour of dining with me?* **| share** *He shared the honour of being the season's top scorer with Andy Cole.*

2 **great respect**

PREP. **in sb's ~** *They organized a party in his honour.*

PHRASES **a guard of honour** *The princess's coffin was accompanied by a guard of honour.* **| (the) guest of honour** *The president was guest of honour at the society's banquet.* **| a lap of honour** *The crowd cheered while the athletes ran their lap of honour.* **| a mark of honour** *They stood in silence as a mark of honour to the drowned sailors.* **| the place/seat of honour, a roll of honour** *The school's roll of honour lists everyone killed in the war.*

3 **good reputation**

ADJ. **family, national, personal, professional** *He was now satisfied that the family honour had been restored.*

VERB + HONOUR **defend, fight for, save, uphold** *She felt she had to defend the honour of her profession.* **| restore | do, bring** *This biography does great honour to the poet's achievements. She brought honour to her country as an Olympic medal-winner.*

HONOUR + VERB **be satisfied** *In the return match the home team won 3?0 and honour was satisfied.* **| be at stake** *National honour is at stake in this match between France and England.*

PREP. **on your ~** (*old-fashioned*) *I swear on my honour* (= very seriously) *that I knew nothing about this.* **| with ~** *The prime minister sought an agreement that would* *bring peace with honour.* | **without ~** *a man without honour*

PHRASES **be/feel (in) honour bound (to …)** *He felt honour bound to help her.* | **a code of honour** *Knights in the Middle Ages had a strong code of honour.* | **a man of honour, a matter/point of honour** *It is a matter of professional honour to keep our standards as high as possible.* | **a sense of honour, sb's word of honour** ***I give you my word of honour I will not forget what I owe you.***

4 **award/official title, etc.**

ADJ. **full ~s, highest, major, top** ***the stars who took top honours at the MTV Awards*** | **academic, battle, civilian, military, political, royal**

VERB + HONOUR **award (sb), bestow, confer, give sb** ***The Order of Merit is the highest civilian honour that can be conferred on someone.*** | **accept, pick up, receive, scoop, take, win** ***She has confirmed that she will accept the honour of a peerage. It was the British who scooped the honours at last night's Oscars.***

HONOUR + NOUN **list, system** ***He was made a life peer in the New Year's honours list.***

PHRASES **with full military honours** ***He was burie***

5 **honours: type of degree course**

ADJ. **combined, joint**

VERB + HONOUR **do, take** ***(formal) All students taking honours in Greek may also study Modern Greek.***

HONOUR + NOUN **course, degree** ***He's in the third year of his honours course.*** | **graduate, student**

PREP. **~ in** ***joint honours in mathematics and statistics***

6 **honours: high mark in a degree course**

ADJ. **first-class, second-class, third-class**

HONOUR + NOUN **degree | graduate**

PREP. **with ~** ***She passed with second class honours.***

honourable *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very** *a very honourable man* **| completely, entirely, perfectly** *My intentions were perfectly honourable.*

honoured *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel**

ADV. **deeply, greatly, highly, truly** *I am deeply honoured to be invited to this momentous occasion.*

hood *noun*

VERB + HOOD **pull back, pull off, pull up, put up** *He walked into the room and pulled off his hood. She put up her hood when it started to rain.*

PHRASES **with the hood down/up** *He was wearing a blue anorak with the hood up.*
> Special page at CLOTHES

hooked *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, get** *I first got hooked on scuba diving when I was twelve.* **| get sb | keep sb** *a master storyteller who knows how to keep his readers hooked*

ADV. **truly** *People who are truly hooked will go to any lengths to satisfy their craving for the drug.* **| completely, totally**

PREP. **on** *She's completely hooked on soap operas.*

hope *noun*

1 **belief that sth you want will happen**

ADJ. **considerable, fervent, great** *a feeling of considerable hope It is my fervent hope that you will be able to take this project forward.* | **high** (only used with **hopes)** *Hopes are high that a resolution to the conflict can be found.* | **best, main** *Privatization seems to offer the best hope for the industry.* | **faint, frail, slight, vague** *There was still a faint hope that they would accept the offer.* | **real, sincere** *without any real hope of success It is my sincere hope that she will find happiness at last.* | **realistic, reasonable** | **desperate, wild** | **false, forlorn, vain** *He wasn't trying to give her false hope. It seemed a forlorn hope that we would find a taxi.* | **early** *His early hopes of freedom were now gone.* | **last, only** *He had one last hope to cling to.* | **fresh, renewed** *the treatment gave him renewed hope* | **sudden** *Her dark eyes lit with sudden hope.* | **lingering, remaining** *These figures kill off any lingering hopes of an early economic recovery.* | **personal**

QUANT. **flicker, glimmer, ray, spark** *I looked at her and felt a glimmer of hope.*

VERB + HOPE **be full of, cherish, entertain, have, see** *Lord Mountbatten secretly cherished hopes that Charles would marry his granddaughter. Political leaders do now entertain the hope that a settlement can be found. She saw little hope of meeting the targets.* | **express, voice** *The Mexican president expressed hope for cooperation on trade.* | **share** | **pin** *He pinned all his hopes on getting that job.* | **cling to, keep alive, live in** *keeping alive the hope that a peace settlement might be found I haven't yet found a flat, but I live in hope.* | **not hold out** *I don't hold out much hope of finding a buyer.* | **abandon, give up, lose** *I didn't give up hope of being released.* | **arouse, bring sb, give sb, offer (sb), raise** *The use of fish oil to treat cancer has brought fresh hope to millions of sufferers. This announcement has raised hopes that the crisis may be coming to an end.* | **boost** *The latest job figures have boosted hopes for the economy.* | **jeopardize** | **dash, destroy, kill (off), shatter, wreck** *Her hopes of going to university have now been dashed.*

HOPE + VERB **lie, rest** *Her only hope lay in escape. Their main hopes rest on their new striker.* | **grow, rise** *Hopes of a peaceful end to the strike are now growing.* | **flare (up), spring (up), surge** *Hope flared up inside her.* | **disappear, fade** *Hope faded after wrecked remains of the ship were washed onto the shore.*

PREP. **beyond ~** *damaged beyond hope of repair* | **in ~ of, in the ~ that** *I am* *writing to you in the hope that you can help me obtain some information.* **| without ~** *She felt weak and without hope.* **| ~ for** *young people who are full of hope for the future* **| ~ of** *I have no hope of winning.*

PHRASES **every/little/no/some hope of sth** *We have every hope of completing the project this year. There is little hope that they will be found alive.* **| grounds/reason for hope** *We now have good grounds for hope.* **| (not) a hope in hell** *You haven't got a hope in hell of finding a job.* **| a sign/symbol of hope**

2 **sth you wish for**

ADJ. **high ~s** *They have high hopes for their children.* **| future | distant** *Peace is a distant hope in this war-torn region.* **| personal | disappointed, unfulfilled** *a bitter tale of disappointed hopes* **| championship, medal, Olympic, etc.** *the team's championship hopes*

PREP. **~ for, ~ of**

PHRASES **your hopes and dreams/expectations/fears** *She told me all her hopes and dreams.*

3 **sb/sth that will help you get what you want**

ADJ. **bright | last, only** *He turned to her in despair and said, 'You're my last hope.'* **| medal**

PREP. **~ for** *She is Britain's brightest hope for a medal.* **| ~ of** *The operation was Kelly's only hope of survival.*

hope *verb*

ADV. **desperately, fervently, really, sincerely, very much** *hoping desperately that their missing son would come home I sincerely hope that you will be successful.*

VERB + HOPE **(not) dare (to)** *I scarcely dared hope the plan would succeed.* **| begin to | continue to**

PREP. **for** *We are hoping for good weather.*

PHRASES **hope against hope** (= to continue to hope for sth even though it is very unlikely), **hope for the best** (= to hope that sth will happen successfully, especially where it seems likely that it will not)

hopeful *adj.*

1 **thinking that sth good will happen**

VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound** *I feel quite hopeful that a peaceful solution will be found.* **| become, get** *Don't get too hopeful. We may not be able to go.* **| remain** *The police remained hopeful that she would be found alive.*

ADV. **extremely, very | almost | fairly, pretty, quite | eternally** *Only Janet, eternally hopeful, thought it was worth trying again.*

PREP. **about** *She was not very hopeful about her situation.* **| of** *The police are quite hopeful of catching the thieves.*

2 **making you think that sth good will happen**

VERBS **be, look, seem** *Things aren't looking very hopeful at the moment.*

ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, quite** *There are some fairly hopeful signs of recovery in the US market.*

hopeless *adj.*

1 **giving no hope**

VERBS **be, look, seem**

ADV. **completely, quite, utterly** *The situation seemed completely hopeless.* | **apparently, seemingly**

2 **feeling no hope**

VERBS **feel** *She felt lonely and completely hopeless.*

ADV. **completely | rather**

3 **very bad**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **absolutely | pretty** *He's a pretty hopeless dancer.*

PREP. **at** *I'm absolutely hopeless at languages.* | **with** *I've always been hopeless with machinery.*

horizon *noun*

1 **line where earth and sky meet**

ADJ. **northern, southern, etc. | distant, far** *The sea stretched away to the distant horizon.*

VERB + HORIZON **scan** *The captain scanned the horizon for any sign of other vessels.*

PREP. **above the ~** *I watched the pale sun climb over the horizon.* **| below the ~** *The sun was sinking rapidly below the western horizon.* **| beyond the ~** *Land was still out of sight beyond the horizon.* **| on the ~** *A cloud of dust on the horizon announced the arrival of the cavalry.* **| over the ~** *The moon was rising over the horizon.*

2 **horizons: limits to knowledge/experience**

ADJ. **limited, narrow | new | cultural, intellectual, musical** *My first trip to the theatre broadened my cultural horizons.*

VERB + HORIZON **broaden, expand, open up, widen** *It is hoped that the course will open up new horizons for students.* **| limit, narrow, restrict** *Their horizons were limited to events within the village community.*

HORIZON + VERB **stretch** *His horizons didn't stretch beyond his next night out.*

PREP. **beyond your ~** *They had become aware of possibilities beyond their own limited horizons.*

hormone *noun*

ADJ. **female, male | growth, sex** *children who do not produce enough growth hormone*

VERB + HORMONE **produce, release, secrete** *Hormones are secreted into the bloodstream.*

HORMONE + NOUN **production | replacement therapy, treatment | deficiency, imbalance | balance, level**

horn *noun*

1 part of an animal

ADJ. **buffalo, bull's, cow's, rhino, etc.** *ornaments made of rhino horn* **| curled, curved** *a large bull with curved horns* **| sharp**

2 warning device on a vehicle

ADJ. **car**

VERB + HORN **blow, honk, sound, toot** *Passing motorists honked their horns.*

HORN + VERB **beep, blare, hoot, sound** *Another horn blared behind me.*

HORN + NOUN **blast** *Impatient horn blasts began to sound behind him.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *He gave a furious blast on his horn.*

3 musical instrument

VERB + HORN **blow**

HORN + NOUN **section** > Special page at MUSIC

horoscope *noun*

VERB + HOROSCOPE **cast, draw up** *To draw up someone's horoscope, you need to know their date and exact time of birth.* **| consult, read | believe in** *Do you believe in horoscopes?*

HOROSCOPE + VERB **say sth** *What does your horoscope say?*

horrible *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste**

ADV. **bloody** *(taboo)*, **really** *That was a really horrible thing to say!* **| absolutely, perfectly, quite, truly** *a truly horrible sight* **| pretty, rather** *a pretty horrible experience*

PREP. **to** *My sister has always been horrible to me.*

horrific *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | describe sth as** *Police described the attack as horrific.*

ADV. **really | absolutely, quite, truly** *Some of the scenes we witnessed were quite horrific.* **| fairly, pretty**

horror *noun*

1 **feeling of fear/shock**

ADJ. **abject, absolute, utter** *The thought of working nights fills me with abject horror.* **| mock** *She raised her hands in mock horror when she saw my new haircut.*

VERB + HORROR **feel, have** *She felt horror and pity at seeing Marcus so ill. She had a horror of pubs.* **| fill sb with** *The possibility of meeting him again filled me with horror.* **| overcome | recoil in** *Anna recoiled in horror as the snake approached.*

HORROR + NOUN **film, story** *They were trying to scare each other with horror stories about going to the dentist.*

PREP. **in ~** *They watched in horror as the aircraft crashed to the ground.* **| to your ~** *To his horror, he saw a dead body lying beside the road.* **| with ~** *He realized with absolute horror that he no longer had the money.* **| ~ of** *I'm trying to overcome my horror of insects.*

PHRASES **a look of horror, shock horror** *newspapers full of shock horror headlines*

2 **sth frightening/shocking**

ADJ. **full** *He never experienced the full horrors of trench warfare.* **| ultimate** *I used to regard public speaking as the ultimate horror.*

VERB + HORROR **commit, inflict, perpetrate** *He had witnessed horrors committed by the enemy.* **| experience, suffer | witness**

horse *noun*

ADJ. **beautiful, fine, good, lovely, magnificent** *He was mounted on the finest horse you could ever see.* | **bay, black, chestnut, grey, piebald, roan, skewbald** | **thoroughbred** | **feral, wild** | **unbroken** | **highly-strung, nervous, restless, skittish** | **frightened, startled, terrified** | **placid** | **fancied** *The race organizers became suspicious when the two most fancied horses finished last.* | **loose, riderless, runaway** *Three horses fell when a loose horse ran across the track.* | **fresh** *They would need fresh horses if they were to reach the border the next day.* | **lame** | **heavy, shire** *The brewery had 25 heavy horses delivering beer in London.* | **riding, saddle** | **carriage, cart** (also **carthorse**), **draught, dray** | **pack** | **cavalry, police** | **race** (also **racehorse**) | **pantomime** *He got a part as the rear end of a pantomime horse.* | **rocking**

VERB + HORSE **breed** | **get ready** *Get my horse ready and wait for me.* | **saddle** | **be mounted on, mount** | **ride** | **lead** | **brush down, groom** | **shoe** | **stable** | **handle** *She has a knack for handling horses.* | **ill-treat** | **frighten** | **hobble, tether** | **nobble** *He was jailed for 15 years for nobbling a horse that had been going to run in the Derby.*

HORSE + VERB **canter, gallop, trot, walk** *Several horses trotted past us.* | **prance** | **run** *There are ten horses running in the next race.* | **plod** *The weary horse plodded up the hill.* | **neigh, snort, whinny** | **bolt** | **rear (up), shy** | **plunge** *The cart overturned, the horse plunging and rearing in its traces.* | **fall, slip, stumble** *The horse stumbled and threw its rider.* | **throw sb** | **jump** | **pull sth** *They passed an old horse pulling a cart full of apples.* | **prick up its ears** | **graze**

HORSE + NOUN **box** *The car in front was pulling a horse box.* | **breeder, dealer, lover, owner, rider, trainer** | **droppings, dung, manure, shit** *(taboo)* | **fair** *Hundreds of horses are bought and sold at the annual horse fair.* | **race** | **racing, riding** | **show, trials** *He won second prize in a horse show.* | **trough** *The horse trough was full of stagnant water.* | **whip** | **trading** (also horse-trading) *(figurative) political horse-trading*

PREP. **on a/the ~**

PHRASES **a horse and carriage/cart, horse-drawn** *horse-drawn vehicles*

hospital *noun*

ADJ. **community, district, local | NHS, private | day, long-stay | general | children's, maternity, mental, psychiatric, etc. | teaching**

VERB + HOSPITAL **go into/to** *He's had to go into hospital rather suddenly.* **| rush sb to, take sb to | admit sb to, readmit sb to | stay in | come out of, leave** *She came out of hospital this morning.* **| discharge sb from**

HOSPITAL + NOUN **doctor, staff | inpatient, outpatient, patient | care, services, treatment | clinic, unit, ward | bed | admission, stay**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *She works at the John Radcliffe Hospital.* **| in (a/the) ~** *He is in hospital recovering from a heart operation. I used to work as a cleaner in a hospital.* **| to (a/the) ~** *He's been taken to hospital for tests. We went to the hospital to visit my gran.*

PHRASES **admission to hospital, a stay in hospital**

hospitality *noun*

ADJ. **generous, lavish, warm | corporate** *the company's corporate hospitality budget*

VERB + HOSPITALITY **extend, offer (sb), provide (sb with), show sb** *We wish to thank the people of Norway for the warm hospitality extended to us during our recent visit.* **| accept** *We were glad to accept their generous hospitality.* **| repay, return** *You must allow me to repay your hospitality.* **| abuse**

host *noun*

1 **person who receives and entertains visitors**

ADJ. **charming, generous, genial, good, perfect, welcoming** *George was a perfect host.*

VERB + HOST **act as, play** *The village is playing host to a film crew.*

HOST + NOUN **club, community, country, family, government, nation, society, state** *The host club is to be congratulated on its organization of the tournament.*

PREP. **~ to** *The acre of garden is host to a splendid bank of rhododendrons.*

2 **person who introduces a television or radio show**

ADJ. **chat-show, game-show, talk-show, television, TV** *The event will be opened by television host Bill Punter.*

host *verb*

ADV. **jointly** *The tournament is to be jointly hosted by India, Pakistan and Sri Lanka.*

VERB + HOST **agree to, offer to | be keen to** *The country is very keen to host the Winter Olympics in six years' time.*

PHRASES **a bid to host sth** *the city's bid to host the Olympic Games in the year 2008*

hostage *noun*

VERB + HOSTAGE **hold (sb)** *Eight people were held hostage for four months.* **| seize, take (sb)** *The gunmen took 24 hostages.* **| free, release, set free** *diplomatic efforts to get the hostages released*

hostel *noun*

ADJ. **refugee, student, youth | bed and breakfast | bail, probation** *a probation hostel for young offenders*

VERB + HOSTEL **stay at/in** *homeless families staying in bed and breakfast hostels*

HOSTEL + NOUN **accommodation**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *We stayed at a student hostel during the conference.* **| in a/the ~** *He lives in a hostel for the homeless.*

hostile *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel | become | remain | make sb** *The experience has made him generally hostile towards women.* **| consider sth, construe sth as, deem sth, perceive sth as, regard sth as, see sth as** *They were reluctant to take any step that might be regarded as hostile.*

ADV. **bitterly, decidedly, deeply, downright, distinctly, extremely, fiercely, markedly, positively, uncompromisingly, unremittingly, very** *He was deeply hostile to the idea of psychotherapy. The audience gave him a downright hostile reception.* **| entirely, totally | increasingly | almost | apparently | potentially | basically, generally | actively, openly | mutually | uniformly** *The press became uniformly hostile to the new administration.* **| politically** *politically hostile newspapers*

PREP. **to** *Many people were openly hostile to the idea.* **| towards** *He was extremely hostile towards her.*

hostility *noun*

1 opposition/aggressive feelings or behaviour

ADJ. **bitter, considerable, deep, extreme, great, implacable | downright, open, outright** *Mixed-race couples faced open hostility.* **| veiled** *There was a barely veiled hostility in her tone.* **| general, widespread | popular, public** *the widespread popular hostility towards the war* **| personal | continuing, growing | mutual**

VERB + HOSTILITY **feel** *the deep hostility felt by many teenagers against the police* **| express, show | arouse, attract, provoke** *The prime minister was concerned that such a move would arouse public hostility.* **| be greeted with, be met with, encounter, face, meet with** *The proposal was met with outright hostility.*

PREP. **~ between** *You could almost feel the hostility between her and her mother.* **| ~ against/to/towards** *the bitter hostility towards the occupying forces*

2 hostilities: fighting in a war

VERB + HOSTILITY **cease, end, suspend** *Both sides finally agreed to suspend hostilities.* **| resume** *Hostilities were resumed later that year.*

HOSTILITY + VERB **begin, break out | cease, end** *On the 11th of November 1918 hostilities ceased.* **| resume**

PREP. **~ against** *the beginning of hostilities against Germany in 1914* **| ~ between** *Hostilities broke out between the two provinces later that year.*

PHRASES **the cessation of hostilities, an outbreak of hostilities**

hot *adj.*

1 **of the weather**

VERBS **be | become, get, grow** *The sun shone fiercely down and it grew hotter and hotter.*

ADV. **baking, blazing, bloody** (*taboo*), **boiling, exceedingly, exceptionally, extremely, incredibly, insufferably, intensely, oppressively, really, scorching, stiflingly, swelteringly, unbearably, uncomfortably, unusually, very** *a boiling hot summer's day It was unbearably hot in the car.* **| a bit, fairly, pretty, quite, rather** *This weather's a bit hot for me.*

2 **of a person**

VERBS **be, feel, look** *Don't you feel hot so close to the fire?* **| get, grew** *They had been going steadily up for half an hour and she was beginning to get uncomfortably hot. His face grew hot at the memory of his embarrassment.*

ADV. **boiling, burning, extremely, really, uncomfortably, very** *I was boiling hot and sweaty. His forehead was burning hot.* **| a bit, quite, rather**

3 **of a thing**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | get**

ADV. **extremely, really, red-, scalding, very, white-***white-hot metal* **| a bit, fairly, moderately, quite, rather, slightly** *Wash the tablecloth in fairly hot soapy water. Bake in a moderately hot oven.* **| enough, sufficiently** *The ground was hot enough to fry an egg on.*

4 **of food: not cold**

VERBS **be | keep, stay** *The food should stay hot until we're ready to eat.* **| keep sth** *The containers keep the food hot for five hours.* **| eat sth, serve sth** *Serve hot or cold accompanied by bread and a salad.*

ADV. **piping, really, scalding, sizzling, steaming, very** *a bowl of piping hot soup*

Make sure the fat is sizzling hot. **| a bit, fairly, quite, rather**

5 of food: spicy

VERBS **be, taste**

ADV. **extremely, really, very** *I love really hot food.* **| a bit, pretty, quite, slightly** *That was a pretty hot curry!*

hotel *noun*

ADJ. **big, large | little, small | cheap, expensive | five-star, four-star, etc. | attractive, beautiful, comfortable, delightful, deluxe, good, grand, elegant, excellent, fine, first-class, luxurious, luxury, pleasant, posh, quality, smart, top** *all the style and comfort that only the best hotels can provide It was a luxury hotel with its own swimming pool and restaurant.* **| seedy | modern | air-conditioned** *The hotel is fully air-conditioned.* **| traditional | friendly | family, family-run** *a family hotel with a playground for small children a friendly family-run hotel* **| independent, private | international | country, country-house** *a small country hotel* **| holiday, resort, tourist | seafront, seaside | local, nearby | bed and breakfast** *homeless families living in bed and breakfast hotels*

VERB + HOTEL **stay at/in** *We're staying at a cheap hotel near the station.* **| book in at/into, check in at/into, check out of** *We checked into the hotel, then went for a walk along the beachfront.* **| own | manage, run**

HOTEL + VERB **be located, be situated** *The hotel is situated in the historic heart of the city.* **| feature sth, have sth, offer sth, provide sth** *The hotel features a lovely dining room overlooking the lake. The hotel offers excellent facilities.*

HOTEL + NOUN **accommodation, bedroom, room, suite | restaurant | foyer, lobby | guest, manager | industry | chain, group**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *We met at the hotel.* **| in a/the ~** *We're staying in a two-star hotel in the centre of the city.*

hotline *noun*

ADJ. **24-hour | information, technical support, ticket | credit card | telephone**

VERB + HOTLINE **call, dial, phone, ring** *Dial our 24-hour hotline to find out if you have won a prize.* **| establish, set up** *A telephone hotline has been set up to give information about the changed train services.* **| operate, run** *The company will be operating an information hotline that customers can call if they are worried about products.*

hound *noun*

ADJ. **hunting**

QUANT. **pack**

HOUND + VERB **bark, bay** *We could hear the hounds barking at the fox.* **| pick up the scent** *The hounds picked up the scent of the fox.* **| chase sth, follow sth, pursue sth** *In drag hunting, hounds chase an artificial scent.* **| run**

PHRASES **ride to hounds** *Days off were spent riding to hounds* (= hunting).

hour *noun*

1 **period of sixty minutes**

ADJ. **solid** *I slept for eight solid hours.*

VERB + HOUR **take** *It takes two hours to get to London.* | **spend** | **last** *The performance lasted three hours.* | **gain, lose** *You gain five hours when you fly from New York to London.*

HOUR + VERB **go by, pass** *An hour passed and she still hadn't arrived.*

PREP. **by the ~** *They're paid by the hour.* | **for an ~** *She worked for three hours.* | **in/within an ~** *I should be back within a couple of hours.* | **over/under an ~** *He's been gone for over an hour.* | **per ~** *Top speed is 120 miles per hour.* | **within the ~** *We hope to be there within the hour* (= in less than an hour). | **~ of** *There are still two hours of daylight left.*

PHRASES **half an hour, hour after hour, an hour's time, with every passing hour** *She grew more worried with every passing hour.* > Note at MEASURE

2 **the hour: time when a new hour starts**

VERB + HOUR **chime, strike** *The clock struck the hour.*

PREP. **on the ~** *Buses leave every hour on the hour.* | **past the ~** *ten minutes past the hour* | **to the ~** *ten minutes to the hour*

3 **time when you do a particular activity**

ADJ. **lunch** | **peak, rush** *rush-hour traffic*

VERB + HOUR **spend** *I spent my lunch hour shopping.*

PREP. **~ of** *an hour of rest*

4 **hours: time when sb is working/a shop is open**

ADJ. **office, opening, working | licensing, visiting** *Britain's licensing hours* (= when pubs are allowed to open) the hospital's *visiting hours* **| flexible | long | regular**

VERB + HOUR **work** *She works very long hours.* **| keep** *He keeps regular hours.*

PREP. **after ~** *He spends a lot of time in his office after hours.* **| out of ~** *Doctors often have to work out of hours.*

5 time when sth happens

ADJ. **darkest, finest** *This was often thought of as the country's finest hour.* **| antisocial, unearthly, ungodly, unsocial** *I apologize for phoning you at this ungodly hour.*

HOUR + VERB **come** *The hour had come for us to leave.*

PREP. **between the ~s of** *The office is closed between the hours of twelve and two.* **| ~ of** *the hours of darkness*

PHRASES **your hour of need** *She helped me in my hour of need.*

house *noun*

1 **building that is made for one family to live in**

ADJ. **beautiful, comfortable, delightful, elegant, fine, grand, handsome, lovely, luxurious, magnificent, posh, pretty, splendid | dream** *They built their own dream house overlooking the river.* **| depressing, dingy, gloomy, ugly | derelict, dilapidated, ramshackle, shabby, untidy | detached, semi-detached, terrace/terraced | big, enormous, gigantic, huge, large, palatial, spacious | rambling** *It was easy to get lost in the rambling house.* **| little, modest, small, tiny** *They lived in a modest semi-detached house in the suburbs.* **| single-storey, single-storeyed, two-storey, etc. | four-bedroom, four-bedroomed, eight-room, eight-roomed, etc. | gabled, half-timbered, red-brick, thatched | exclusive, expensive | private | council** (= rented from the local council) **| rented | empty, unoccupied, vacant | country, suburban, town | great, manor, mansion** *The great house stood on the edge of the village.* **| farm** (also **farmhouse**), **ranch | ancestral | communal | summer | tree | halfway, safe** *a halfway house for prisoners returning to society The police provided a safe house for the informer.*

VERB + HOUSE **live in, occupy** *a house occupied by students* **| share** *She shares a house with three other nurses.* **| buy, rent | sell | let (out)** *We let out our house when we moved to America.* **| repossess** *Their house was repossessed when they couldn't keep up their mortgage payments.* **| move, move into, move out of** *It's stressful moving house.* **| set up** *They want to set up house together* **| keep** *She kept house* (= cooked, cleaned, etc.) *for her elderly parents.* **| play (at)** *The children were playing house, giving dinner to their teddies.* **| build | demolish, knock down, tear down | maintain | decorate, do up, redecorate, refurbish, renovate** *They bought a dilapidated house when they got married, and are gradually doing it up.* **| furnish | insulate, rewire | extend** *We're hoping to extend the house.*

HOUSE + VERB **be situated, lie, stand** *The house stood a short distance from the wood.* **| face sth, overlook sth** *The house faces south, making the most of the sun. houses overlooking the park* **| loom** *The house loomed over him as he waited at the front door.* **| be worth sth | collapse, fall down | burn down, catch fire | come into view**

HOUSE + NOUN **agent | buyer, owner** *The bank offers attractive rates to first-time house buyers.* **| tenant | building, construction | decoration, improvement,**

renovation, repairs | builder, decorator, painter | contents | design, plan, planning | hunting | move *They helped us with our house move.* **| prices, rents, values | purchase | sales | mortgage | insurance | repossession | front, interior | number | keys | guest | call** *In the morning, the doctor makes house calls.* **| arrest** *The former dictator is under house arrest in his country mansion.* **| dust | blaze, fire | party, -warming** *They've moved house and have invited us to their house-warming on Saturday.* **| husband** *He's happy being a house husband while his wife goes out to work.* **| plant | fly, mouse, sparrow, etc.**

PREP. **at sb's/the ~** *I finally tracked him down at his house in London.* **| from ~ to ~** *She went from house to house collecting signatures for her campaign.* **| in a/the ~** *It was so hot outside we stayed in the house.*

PHRASES **house-to-house** *Police are making house-to-house enquiries following the discovery of the body.*

2 **all the people who live in one house**

ADJ. **friendly, happy**

VERB + HOUSE **wake (up)** *You'll wake up the whole house with that noise.*

3 **in a theatre/cinema**

ADJ. **empty | full, packed**

VERB + HOUSE **play to** *They played to a packed house.*

HOUSE + NOUN **lights | manager**

PHRASES **bring the house down** (= please the audience very much), **front-of-house** (= the parts of a theatre used by the audience) *the front-of-house staff*

house *verb*

ADV. **adequately** *At no time in the 19th century were the working classes adequately housed.* **| badly, inadequately** *The losers in this society are the old, the sick, the jobless, the homeless and badly housed.* **| temporarily** *The fish can be temporarily housed in a smaller aquarium.*

household *noun*

ADJ. **average** *The average household pays 27p a day in water rates.* **| domestic, private, etc. | rural, urban | middle-class, working-class | high-income, low-income, poor, etc. | family, married-couple, single-person, etc.**

VERB + HOUSEHOLD **manage, run | set up** *Becoming an adult and setting up a household no longer mean the same thing.*

HOUSEHOLD + NOUN **appliance, contents, furniture, goods, item, product** *The household contents are covered by a separate insurance policy.* **| bills, budget, expenditure, expenses, income | chore, duties, task | rubbish, waste**

PHRASES **the head of the household** *The head of the household is responsible for completing the council tax form.*

housekeeping *noun*

ADJ. **careful, good, prudent** *The company has made considerable savings through good housekeeping, such as avoiding wastage.* **| bad, poor** *My financial problems were made worse by my bad housekeeping.*

HOUSEKEEPING + NOUN **allowance, money** *Her husband spent the housekeeping money on gambling.*

housework *noun*

VERB + HOUSEWORK **do** *I spent all morning doing housework.* **| share** *The cook their own meals but they share the housework.* **| help with** *Her husband never helps with the housework.*

housing *noun*

ADJ. **affordable, cheap, good, low-cost** *The aim of the scheme was to provide good low-cost housing for workers.* **| decent, good | adequate | bad, inadequate, poor, substandard** *Many health problems are made worse by poor housing.* **| permanent, temporary | council, local authority, public, social** *Public expenditure on social housing provision has doubled in the last five years.* **| rented | private | sheltered** *sheltered housing for old people* **| high-rise | rural, urban**

VERB + HOUSING **provide**

HOUSING + NOUN **association, authority, committee, department, office | conditions | development, estate, scheme** *Many new housing developments had sprung up around the city.* **| construction | provision | market | crisis, shortage | allowance, benefit** *She receives a substantial housing allowance on top of her salary. I received housing benefit when I was unemployed.*

PREP. **in … ~** *Too many families are still living in substandard housing.*

hover *verb*

ADV. **nearby | anxiously, uneasily** *He was hovering anxiously outside.* **| indecisively, uncertainly** *She hovered uncertainly near the front door.* **| impatiently**

PREP. **about/around, behind, by, near** *She couldn't bear him hovering around her.*

PHRASES **hover in the background** *Phoebe was hovering in the background, uncertain what to do.* **| hover in the doorway**

howl *noun*

ADJ. **deep | mournful** *The dog gave a mournful howl.*

VERB + HOWL **give, let out | hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *With a howl he leapt at his foe.* **| ~ of** *a howl of laughter/protest*

PHRASES **be greeted/met with howls of sth** *His comments were met with howls of outrage.* **| the howl of the wind/a wolf, howls of laughter, howls of outrage/protest/rage** > Note at SOUND

huddle *noun*

ADJ. **little, small, tight**

VERB + HUDDLE **get into, go into** *The team went into a huddle at half-time to discuss their tactics.*

PREP. **in a ~** *They stood in a tight huddle, whispering.* **| ~ of** *A little huddle of men stood in one corner.*

huddled *adj.*

VERBS **be, lie, sit, stand** *Phil sat huddled miserably in his chair.* **| find sb** *She found him huddled in a corner, shaking violently.*

ADV. **miserably**

PREP. **against** *Karen was huddled against the wall.* **| beneath/under** *She lay huddled under the blankets.* **| in** *He slept, huddled in an armchair.*

huff *noun*

VERB + HUFF **get in, go into | go off in, march off in, storm off in, walk off in** *She went off in a huff after losing the game.*

PREP. **in a ~** *He's in a huff because he wasn't invited.* **| ~ at** *She got in a huff at being doubted.* **| ~ over** *Alison's in a huff over the joke they played on her.*

hug *noun*

ADJ. **big | affectionate, comforting, friendly, loving, reassuring, warm | quick**

VERB + HUG **give sb** *He gave the children a quick hug, then got into the car.*

hug *verb*

ADV. **close, tight/tightly** *James went to his daughter and hugged her tightly.* **| gently | fiercely**

PREP. **to** *He reached out and hugged her to him.*

PHRASES **hug and kiss sb**

huge *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become, grow** *Her eyes grew huge.*

ADV. **really** *This is a really huge amount of money.* **| absolutely, simply** *Their house is absolutely huge!* **| potentially** *There's a potentially huge demand for this product.*

hum *noun*

ADJ. **faint, soft | low | high-pitched | constant, continuous, steady** *I could hear the constant hum of distant traffic.* **| background**

VERB + HUM **hear**

PREP. **~ of** *the background hum of the air-conditioning*

hum *verb*

ADV. **quietly, softly | happily | tunelessly | along** *humming along with the music*

VERB + HUM **begin to** *He began to hum, somewhat tunelessly.*

PHRASES **hum to yourself** *She was humming softly to herself.*

humanitarian *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **purely** *Both countries say their intervention is purely humanitarian.* **|** **essentially**

humanity *noun*

ADJ. **great, true | common** *Guilt and a sense of common humanity make people less harsh.*

humidity *noun*

ADJ. **high, low | ambient, relative** *in dry weather, when the ambient humidity is low*

QUANT. **level**

HUMIDITY + VERB **increase, rise | decrease, fall**

HUMIDITY + NOUN **level | control** *The museum is equipped with sophisticated humidity controls.*

humiliate *verb*

ADV. **deeply | totally, utterly | publicly** *Lowe was publicly humiliated by his colleagues.*

PREP. **in front of** *I had been assaulted and deeply humiliated in front of all my friends.*

PHRASES **feel humiliated** *I have never felt so humiliated in all my life.*

humiliating *adj.*

VERBS **be | find sth**

ADV. **deeply, profoundly, very | utterly** *He found the experience utterly humiliating.* **| somewhat**

PREP. **for** *The whole experience was somewhat humiliating for us.* **| to** *a settlement that was deeply humiliating to their country*

humiliation *noun*

ADJ. **great, intense, painful | total | further | public | national | final, ultimate** *He was forced to face the ultimate humiliation the next morning.* **| military**

VERB + HUMILIATION **be subjected to, endure, face, suffer** *She suffered the humiliation of having her house searched.* **| feel** *feeling the intense humiliation of having failed*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of humiliation**

humorous *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, sound | become | find sth**

ADV. **extremely, very | mildly, quite, slightly** *She has written her description of him in a mildly humorous vein.* **| delightfully** *The film is delightfullly humorous in the best traditions of romantic comedy.* **| darkly**

humour *noun*

1 **amusing quality/ability to find things funny**

ADJ. **wry** *With wry humour, they laugh at their misfortunes.* **| irreverent | caustic, sardonic | black, dark, gallows, grim | self-deprecating | gentle | tongue-in-cheek | slapstick, visual | unconscious, unintentional | deadpan, dry | schoolboy** *His colleagues soon got fed up with his schoolboy humour.* **| lavatorial**

QUANT. **touch** *Her speech was serious, but not without the occasional touch of humour.*

VERB + HUMOUR **be full of, contain** *The stories are full of humour.* **| appreciate, see** *The man who lost his shoes failed to see the humour of the situation.*

PHRASES **a brand of humour** *a television sitcom with its own peculiar brand of humour* **| sense of humour** *to have a dry/good/great/warped/weird/wicked sense of humour*

2 **mood**

ADJ. **good** *Her good humour was restored by the excellent meal.*

PHRASES **in (a) good humour** *The remarks were made in good humour. He was obviously in a good humour this evening.*

hunch *noun*

VERB + HUNCH **have** *I had a hunch that she was not telling the truth.* **| act on, follow, play** *Acting on a hunch, I waited outside her house to see if she went out. I decided to follow my hunch and come and see you.* **| back, confirm** *They now have a database of information to back their hunches about customers' preferences.*

PREP. **on a ~** *I phoned on a hunch to ask if they had any work for me.*

hunger *noun*

1 **feeling of wanting to eat**

ADJ. **extreme** *Any good weight loss regime should not lead to extreme hunger.* **| world**

VERB + HUNGER **feel** *It is usual to feel hunger during exercise.* **| be weak with | die from/of** *Thousands of people have died of hunger.* **| alleviate, relieve, satisfy** *looking for ways to alleviate world hunger Perhaps the cat was killing to satisfy hunger.*

HUNGER + NOUN **pangs** *The new snack bar will keep those hunger pangs at bay.* **| strike** *About 60 prisoners have gone on hunger strike.*

PHRASES **pangs of hunger**

2 **strong desire for sth**

ADJ. **great, insatiable | land** *Peasant land hunger grew ever more acute as the population swelled.*

VERB + HUNGER **feel, have | satisfy**

HUNGER + VERB **grow**

PREP. **~ for** *She has an insatiable hunger for knowledge.*

hungry *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, go, look** *the number of children who have to go hungry* **| become, get | make sb** *Seeing everyone eating had made him extremely hungry.*

ADV. **desperately, dreadfully, extremely, ravenously, really, starving** (*informal*), **terribly, very** *We were all ravenously hungry after the walk.* **| a bit, quite, rather | always, permanently**

hunt *noun*

1 **hunting wild animals**

ADJ. **fox, seal, tiger, etc.**

VERB + HUNT **take part in** *She had never taken part in a fox hunt before.*

HUNT + NOUN **follower, supporter** *Hunt followers deny the sport is cruel.* **| saboteur** *clashes between hunt supporters and hunt saboteurs* **| meeting**

2 **searching for sb/sth**

ADJ. **massive, nationwide** *Police launched a nationwide hunt for the woman, amid fears for her safety.* **| police | murder** *Police forces in five counties are now involved in the murder hunt.* **| treasure | witch** *(often figurative) The investigation turned into a full-scale Communist witch hunt.*

HUNT + VERB **begin, launch** *A massive police hunt was launched for the missing child.* **| lead** *Detectives leading the hunt for the killer believe he may be in hiding.* **| step up** *The mountain rescue team is stepping up its hunt for the missing climbers.* **| call off** *The hunt for survivors has now been called off.*

HUNT + VERB **begin, be on** *The hunt is on for potential employees with experience of electronic publishing.*

PREP. **~ for**

hunting *noun*

1 **chasing wild animals**

ADJ. **big-game, deer, fox** (also **fox-hunting**), **etc.** *He was killed by a lion while big-game hunting in Africa.* **| commercial** *commercial hunting of minke whales*

VERB + HUNTING **go** *Local people go hunting in the woods.* **| ban** *Should fox-hunting be banned?*

HUNTING + NOUN **knife, rifle | ground** *These waters are a hunting ground for sharks.* **| lodge** *The king built a large hunting lodge in the mountains.* **| trip | season**

2 **trying to find sth**

ADJ. **bargain, house, job, treasure** *Archaeologists have called for a ban on treasure hunting in the region.*

VERB + HUNTING **go** *We went bargain hunting at the antique market.*

HUNTING + NOUN **ground** *(figurative) Crowded markets are a happy hunting ground for pickpockets.*

hurdle *noun*

1 in a race

VERB + HURDLE **clear, jump (over)** *She cleared the first few hurdles easily.* **| fall at, hit** *His horse fell at the final hurdle.*

2 problem/difficulty

ADJ. **big, difficult | main, major | final, first, last, next** *The first big hurdle in putting your car on the road is getting insurance.*

VERB + HURDLE **face** *This is perhaps the most difficult hurdle that we face.* **| clear, jump, overcome, pass** *We'll jump each hurdle as we come to it. You have already overcome the first major hurdle by passing the entrance exam.* **| fall at** *The plan fell at the first hurdle.*

hurricane *noun*

HURRICANE + VERB **hit sth, strike (sth)** *A hurricane hit the city yesterday at 5 p.m.* **| damage sth, destroy sth, devastate sth** *The fields were devastated by the hurricane.* **| blow, blow itself out** *The hurricane took several days to blow itself out.*

HURRICANE + NOUN **force** *hurricane-force winds*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The roof blew off in a hurricane.*

PHRASES **the eye of the hurricane** (= the central point)

hurry *noun*

ADJ. **big, desperate, great, tearing, terrible** *I was late for the match and in a tearing hurry.*

PREP. **in a ~** *They were in a hurry to set off.* **| in no ~** *She's in no hurry to find out how much her phone bill comes to.* **| in your ~** *In his hurry to leave, he forgot his briefcase.*

hurt *adj.*

1 **injured**

VERBS **be, look | get** *Stop that or you'll get hurt!*

ADV. **badly, seriously** *Steve didn't look seriously hurt.* **| slightly**

2 **upset**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | get**

ADV. **bitterly, deeply, extremely, really, terribly, very | a bit, quite, rather, slightly**

PREP. **by** *Roy seemed deeply hurt by this remark.*

hurt *noun*

ADJ. **bitter, deep, great**

VERB + HURT **feel** *the deep hurt that he felt when Jane left him* **|** **cause** *She knew that she had caused her husband a lot of hurt.*

hurt *verb*

1 **cause pain/injury**

ADV. **badly, seriously** *She fell and hurt her leg quite badly. No one was seriously hurt in the accident.* **| slightly**

2 **be/feel painful**

ADV. **badly, a lot, really** *My ankle still hurts quite badly. Does it hurt a lot? Ouch! It really hurts.* **| slightly**

VERB + HURT **be going to** *I knew it was going to hurt?but not that much!* **| begin to**

3 **upset sb**

ADV. **badly, deeply, really, terribly** *Her remarks hurt him deeply. They never told me why and that really hurt.*

VERB + HURT **attempt to, try to** *Are you deliberately trying to hurt me?* **| want to** *Why would I want to hurt her?* **| not mean to** *I never meant to hurt anyone.*

hurtful *adj.*

VERBS **be | find sth** *I found some of his comments rather hurtful.*

ADV. **deeply, very** *She made some very hurtful remarks.* **| a bit, rather**

PREP. **to** *What he said was deeply hurtful to me.*

husband *noun*

ADJ. **future, prospective | suitable | ex-, former | dead, deceased, late | good, loving, wonderful | faithful | errant, unfaithful | estranged | absent | jealous | dominant, domineering | brutal, violent | house** (= a man who stays at home to look after children, cook, clean, etc. while his wife works)

VERB + HUSBAND **meet** *That was the day she met her future husband.* **| marry | be divorced from, be separated from, divorce, leave, walk out on** *She suddenly walked out on her husband, leaving him to bring up the children.*

PHRASES **husband and wife** *They lived together as husband and wife for over thirty years.* **| husband-to-be**

hush *noun*

ADJ. **sudden | breathless, deathly | expectant**

HUSH + VERB **descend, fall** *A sudden hush fell over the room as the head teacher entered.* **| follow sth** *A deathly hush followed the explosion.*

hut *noun*

ADJ. **makeshift | prefabricated | bamboo, metal, mud, stone, straw, wooden | thatched | circular, round | single-storey/single-storeyed | ramshackle, rickety | derelict | beach, garden, mountain | fisherman's, fishing, shepherd's, etc. | army, barrack | site** *The builders were collecting their wages from the site hut.* **| refreshment | changing**

VERB + HUT **build** *huts built with mud bricks*

HUT + VERB **stand** *The wooden hut stood on a lonely stretch of beach.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The scheme housed children in large numbers in prefabricated huts.*

hygiene *noun*

ADJ. **good, scrupulous | poor** *infections that are the result of poor food hygiene* **| dental, food, oral, personal, public** *Many skin diseases can be prevented by good personal hygiene.*

HYGIENE + NOUN **practices, regulations, standards**

PHRASES **standards of hygiene**

hymn *noun*

ADJ. **rousing** *The service began with a rousing hymn.* **| traditional | modern**

VERB + HYMN **play, sing**

HYMN + NOUN **book | tune**

hype *noun*

ADJ. **media | marketing | pre-match, pre-race, pre-season, etc.**

VERB + HYPE **live up to** *The movie failed to live up to all the hype.* **| believe**

HYPE + VERB **surround sth** *the hype surrounding her latest book*

PREP. **~ about** *I don't believe all the hype about how good the French team will be this season.*

hypnosis *noun*

VERB + HYPNOSIS **be given, have, undergo | practise, put sb under** *I decided to put him under hypnosis and ask him again.* **| induce | be susceptible to**

HYPNOSIS + NOUN **session**

PREP. **during ~** *changes in breathing observed during hypnosis* **| under ~** *the things that people remember under hypnosis*

hypothesis *noun*

ADJ. **acceptable, plausible | bold** *Scientists have proposed a bold hypothesis.* **| unlikely | speculative | testable | working** *These observations appear to support our working hypothesis.* **| scientific**

VERB + HYPOTHESIS **construct, form, formulate, have, make, propose, put forward, suggest** *It is possible to make a hypothesis on the basis of this graph. A number of hypotheses have been put forward.* **| consider, discuss, examine, test (out)** *using this data to test her hypothesis* **| confirm, prove, support | accept | reject** *None of the hypotheses can be rejected at this stage.*

VERB + HYPOTHESIS **concern sth** *Her hypothesis concerns the role of electromagnetic radiation.* **| predict sth** *The hypothesis predicts that children will perform better on task A than on task B.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *Her study is based on the hypothesis that language simplification is possible.* **| ~ about** *an interesting hypothesis about the development of language* **| ~ on** *The results confirmed his hypothesis on the use of modal verbs.*

hypothetical *adj.*

VERBS **be** *This is a purely hypothetical situation.*

ADV. **entirely, purely, totally**

hysteria *noun*

ADJ. **mass, public | mild, near | rising | media, tabloid** *Unnecessary anxiety has been caused by media hysteria and misinformation.* **| religious**

QUANT. **fit** *She smashed the place up in a fit of hysteria.* **| note, touch** *the touch of hysteria in her voice*

VERB + HYSTERIA **border on** *Sam arrived in a state of excitement bordering on hysteria.* **| bring on, engender, generate** *That thought was enough to bring on near hysteria.*

HYSTERIA + VERB **mount, rise** *She felt hysteria rising.* **| die down, diminish** *Eventually the hysteria died down.* **| sweep (across/through) sth** *the hysteria that swept through the country*

PREP. **~ about** *public hysteria about the bombings* **| ~ over** *hysteria over Aids*

PHRASES **on the brink/point/verge of hysteria** *She was babbling, on the verge of hysteria.*

hysterical *adj.*

1 **suffering from/caused by hysteria**

VERBS **be, feel, sound** *Emily realized that she sounded hysterical.* **| become, get** *Calm down, you're getting hysterical.*

ADV. **completely | almost, nearly** *By this time Mary was almost hysterical.* **| faintly, mildly, rather, slightly**

2 **very funny**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **absolutely, totally** *The whole episode was absolutely hysterical!*

ice cream *noun*

ADJ. **chocolate, strawberry, vanilla, etc.**

QUANT. **scoop | carton, tub**

VERB + ICE CREAM **eat, have**

ICE CREAM + VERB **melt**

ICE CREAM + NOUN **carton, cone | parlour, van**

PHRASES **and/with ice-cream** *apple pie with ice cream* > Special page at FOOD

ice *noun*

ADJ. **thick** *Is the ice thick enough to walk on?* **| thin | black** *Motorists have been warned about black ice on the roads.*

QUANT. **block, slab** *The spray froze and formed great blocks of ice on the front of the ship.*

VERB + ICE **form**

ICE + VERB **form** *Ice had formed on the pond.* **| crack, melt** *The ice was beginning to melt.*

PREP. **on the ~** *skating on the ice*

icing *noun*

ADJ. **fondant, gelatine, royal, sugar paste | chocolate, lemon, etc.**

VERB + ICING **roll out** *Roll out the icing into a large square.* **| cover sth with, pipe, smooth, spread, squeeze** *Pipe a little green icing around the strawberries.* **| trim off** *Trim off excess icing around the base.* **| colour** *Colour the remaining icing red.*

ICING + VERB **dry**

ICING + NOUN **sugar | bag**

icon *noun*

1 **small symbol on a computer screen**

ADJ. **folder, network, printer, program, window, etc.**

VERB + ICON **click (on), double-click (on), right-click (on)** *Click the 'modems' icon.* **| drag** > Special page at COMPUTER

2 **person considered to be a symbol**

ADJ. **national | cultural | gay, lesbian | fashion, pop, sporting, style**

idea *noun*

1 **plan/suggestion**

ADJ. **bright, brilliant, clever, excellent, good, great, marvellous | valuable, worthwhile | exciting, inspirational, interesting, stimulating | constructive, positive | creative, imaginative, innovative, original | wacky | big** *The latest big idea is to make women more interested in sport.* | **alternative** *Group counselling is used as an alternative idea to punishment.* | **fresh, new | absurd, bad, mistaken, ridiculous | crackpot, crazy, mad, outlandish, wild | half-baked | ambitious, big, grand** *He joined the company as an office assistant with big ideas.* | **grandiose | basic** *The basic idea is that we all meet up in London.*

VERB + IDEA **have** *Do you have any ideas for a present for Lara?* | **come up with, dream up, hit on/upon, produce, think up | draw, get** *Her ideas are drawn mainly from Chinese art.* | **contribute, input | moot, put forward | promote, push (forward), sell** *They managed to push the idea of moving office through the committee.* | **welcome** *Most employees welcome the idea of a ban on smoking.* | **consider, entertain, flirt with, toy with** *I'm toying with the idea of packing in my job.* | **mull over, turn over** *He kept turning the idea of resigning over in his mind.* | **encourage, generate** *Brainstorming is a good way of generating ideas.* | **stifle** *a system of decision-making that stifles original ideas* | **reject, scoff at, veto | test, try out | bounce around, bounce off sb, brainstorm, discuss, explore, talk about** *I met up with a designer to bounce a few ideas around. It's useful to have someone to bounce ideas off.* | **exchange, pool, share | give sb** *What gave you the idea to go freelance?* | **apply, implement, put into action/effect/practice** *The idea had long been mooted but nothing had been done to put it into practice.* | **transform, translate** *How could we translate the idea into business reality?* | **steal** *She accused the company of stealing her idea.* | **impose** *She always tries to impose her own ideas on the rest of the team.*

IDEA + VERB **come into sb's head/mind, come to sb, flash across/into sb's mind/brain, hit sb, occur to sb, pop into sb's head, strike sb** *The idea for the invention came to him in the bath.* | **emerge, evolve, form, grow** *An idea began to form in his mind.* | **flow** *His ideas flowed faster than he could express them.* | **come from sb/sth, date back from/to sth, originate, start, stem from sth** *The idea for the Olympics originated with Pierre de Coubertin.* | **blossom, work (out)** *The idea has now blossomed into a successful mail-order business.* | **lead** *The idea eventually led to the invention of the telephone.* | **come to nothing**

PREP. **~ about** *I have an idea about how to tackle the problem.* **| ~ for** *We were asked to suggest ideas for improving efficiency.* **| ~ of** *She had the idea of advertising on the Internet.*

PHRASES **be open to ideas** *I don't know what to do, but I'm open to ideas.* **| the germ/glimmering of an idea** *The germ of his idea came from watching a bird make a nest.* **| have other ideas** *I wanted to take the week off, but my boss had other ideas.* **| it might be an idea** *It might be an idea to leave a note on the door for Mark.*

2 **thought/impression**

ADJ. **clear, concrete, precise | abstract | theoretical | basic, rough, vague** *He gave me a rough idea of what was wanted.* **| key, main** *The book introduces the key ideas of sociology.* **| dominant | fixed, inflexible | preconceived | definite, firm, strong** *She has very definite ideas about what kind of a job she wants.* **| complex, difficult | simplistic | conventional | traditional | radical, revolutionary | contradictory | erroneous, false, wrong** *I don't want anyone getting the wrong idea about me.* **| funny, strange | utopian | romantic** *People have a romantic idea of the police force.* **| new-fangled | outdated | not the faintest/foggiest/remotest/slightest** *(informal) I haven't got the faintest idea what she meant. | artistic, economic, intellectual, moral, musical, philosophical, political, scientific | fascist, feminist, nationalist, socialist*

VERB + IDEA **get** *They seem to have got the idea that we will be giving them a lift. You'll soon get the idea* (= understand). **| espouse, have, hold** *He holds very different ideas to mine about discipline.* **| develop, form, shape** *the experiences that shaped her ideas* **| express | communicate, convey, get across, get over, present, put across** *The book puts across complex ideas in a way anyone can understand.* **| demonstrate, explain, expound, illustrate | clarify, formalize, formulate, organize, structure** *Give careful thought to how to structure your ideas in the essay.* **| change, reconsider, reshape, revise** *They had to reconsider their ideas in the light of new evidence.* **| accept | dismiss, reject | harbour** *I hope he's not still harbouring ideas about asking me out.* **| be obsessed with** *He's obsessed with the idea of getting a motorbike.* **| relish** *I don't relish the idea of sharing an office with Tony.*

IDEA + VERB **amuse sb, appeal to sb, please sb** *The idea of going to his rescue amused her.* **| catch on, take hold** *Some students started wearing denim, and the idea caught on.*

PREP. **~ about** *She's got some funny ideas about how to motivate staff.* **| ~ behind**

The idea behind the ceremony is to keep the gods happy to ensure a good crop. **| ~ of**
Swimming in an icy river is not my idea of fun.

ideal *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | make sth** *The hotel's size makes it ideal for large conferences.* **| consider sth**

ADV. **absolutely | almost | less than** *Language learning often takes place in a less than ideal environment.*

PREP. **for** *The houses are absolutely ideal for families with young children.*

ideal *noun*

ADJ. **high, lofty, noble** *Sam was a real leader who had high moral ideals.* **| unattainable** *This is not an unattainable ideal.* **| aesthetic, artistic, ethical, moral, political | democratic, liberal, revolutionary, socialist**

VERB + IDEAL **be committed to, be devoted to, believe in, cling to, espouse, have, support** *They still clung to the old ideals.* **| pursue, strive for | achieve, attain, be true to, conform to, live up to** *A journalist should always live up to the ideals of truth, decency, and justice.* **| fall short of** *This agreement falls far short of the ideal.* **| abandon, betray** *She was accused of betraying her political ideals.* **| embody, reflect** *the democratic ideals embodied in the charter*

identical *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | remain**

ADV. **absolutely, completely, exactly | not necessarily** *Different spreadsheet packages tend to be similar, though not necessarily identical.* **| almost, more or less, nearly, practically, virtually** *The two houses were more or less identical.* **| effectively | apparently | basically, essentially | chemically, formally, genetically**

PREP. **to** *This knife is identical to the one used in the attack.* **| with** *offspring that are genetically identical with the parents*

identification *noun*

1 act of identifying sb/sth

ADJ. **accurate, correct | positive**

VERB + IDENTIFICATION **make** *She was unable to make a positive identification of the suspect.*

IDENTIFICATION + NOUN **parade** *A witness picked him out of an identity parade as the robber.*

2 proof of identity

VERB + IDENTIFICATION **carry, have** *Always carry some identification. Do you have any identification?* **| ask for, check** *The police checked their identification.*

IDENTIFICATION + NOUN **card, papers | code, number** *The vehicle's identification number is stamped on the engine.*

PHRASES **a means of identification** *My only means of identification was my cheque book.*

identify *verb*

ADV. **accurately, correctly** *The new test will enable us to identify more accurately patients who are most at risk. Did you identify all the pictures correctly?* | **falsely, incorrectly, wrongly** | **positively** | **clearly, unambiguously, unequivocally** *We have not yet clearly identified the source of the pollution.* | **formally** *Someone has to formally identify the body.* | **easily, readily** *I could identify him easily if I saw him again.* | **tentatively** *All three structures dated to the third century and were tentatively identified as shrines.*

VERB + IDENTIFY **be able/unable to, can** *tests that can identify people at risk of cancer* | **be easy to, be possible to** | **be difficult to** | **be necessary to** | **attempt to, seek to, try to** | **be used to, enable sb to, help to** | **decline to** *The newspaper declined to identify the source of the allegations.*

PHRASES **a means/way of identifying sb/sth** *one means of identifying the disease in its early stages* **PHRASAL VERBS identify with sb**

ADV. **closely, strongly** *She identified strongly with the main character in the play.*

VERB + IDENTIFY **can/could** *I can't identify with men like him.* **identify sb with sth**

ADV. **closely** *The policy is closely identified with the prime minister himself.* | **clearly**

identity *noun*

ADJ. **true | assumed, false** *He was discovered living under an assumed identity in South America.* **| mistaken** *This is obviously a case of mistaken identity.* **| new | common, corporate, cultural, national, personal, political, racial, sexual**

VERB + IDENTITY **create, develop, establish, forge** *They are still struggling to establish their identity as a political party. The company forged its own identity by producing specialist vehicles.* **| give sb/sth** *He felt that having a job gave him an identity.* **| maintain, preserve** *Many minority groups are struggling to maintain their cultural identity.* **| lose | change** *He changed his identity and moved abroad on his release from prison.* **| assume** *She was given a false passport and assumed a new identity.* **| disclose, reveal** *He refused to reveal the identity of his client.* **| discover, find out | guess** *It was easy to guess the identity of the thief.* **| conceal, hide, keep secret, protect** *Her voice was disguised to conceal her identity.*

IDENTITY + NOUN **bracelet, tag | card, documents, papers | code | parade** *The victim picked out her attacker in an identity parade.* **| crisis** *The country suffered from an identity crisis for years after the civil war.*

PREP. **~ as** *Scotland has never lost its identity as a separate nation.*

PHRASES **proof of identity** *The police officer asked him for proof of identity.* **| a search for identity** *His search for his cultural identity took him to where his parents were born.* **| a sense of identity**

ideology *noun*

ADJ. **dominant | official | coherent** *The party's policies were based on prejudice rather than on any coherent ideology.* **| strong | cultural, economic, educational, political, religious | bourgeois, capitalist, communist, Marxist, revolutionary, socialist, etc.**

VERB + IDEOLOGY **have** *The party had a Marxist ideology.* **| adopt** *They distanced themselves from the upper class and adopted a communist ideology.* **| reject**

idiot *noun*

ADJ. **blithering, complete, gibbering, prize, right, silly, stupid** *What stupid idiot left their shoes on the stairs?*

VERB + IDIOT **be, feel (like), look like** *I felt a right idiot, standing there in front of all those people!*

PHRASES **make an idiot of yourself** *He's made a complete idiot of himself over this woman!*

idle *adj.*

1 **lazy**

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **very | bone** *(informal)*, **totally** *She never lifts a finger to help. She's bone idle.* **| rather**

2 **not in use**

VERBS **be, lie, sit, stand** *Half their machines are lying idle. The pumps are standing idle.* **| remain | leave sth, make sth** *The land was left idle for years.*

idol *noun*

ADJ. **film, football, pop, rock, sports, etc. | teen, teenage** *By this time Pitt had become a teenage idol.*

VERB + IDOL **make (sb)** *Teenagers made Dean their idol. The film made an idol of her.*

ignite *verb*

ADV. **spontaneously** *The burning foam generates such heat that other items in the room can ignite spontaneously.*

VERB + IGNITE **fail to** *The gunpowder sometimes fails to ignite.*

ignition *noun*

VERB + IGNITION **switch on, turn on** *She got into the car and switched on the ignition.* **| switch off, turn off**

IGNITION + NOUN **key** *He turned the ignition key.*

PREP. **in the ~** *I must have left my key in the ignition.*

ignorance *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total | remarkable | widespread | blissful**

VERB + IGNORANCE **betray, show** *I tried not to betray my ignorance. He showed a remarkable ignorance of the facts.* **| admit, confess, plead** *I had to confess my ignorance. He pleaded ignorance of any wrongdoing.* **| live in, remain in** *The sisters lived in total ignorance of each other.* **| keep sb in** *He was kept in ignorance of his true identity.* **| be based on** *These attitudes are based on ignorance and fear.*

PREP. **due to ~** *mistakes due to ignorance* **| in ~ (of)** *She remained in blissful ignorance of these events.* **| through ~** *Many lives are lost through ignorance.* **| ~ about** *There is still widespread ignorance about this disease.*

ignorant *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem | remain** *The general public remained totally ignorant of the danger.* **| keep sb** *We were kept ignorant of the facts.*

ADV. **completely, entirely, pig** *(informal)*, **quite, totally, utterly, very, wholly** *Don't ask Paul. He's pig ignorant.* **| largely | rather | blissfully** *We went to bed that night blissfully ignorant of the storm to come.* **| grossly, lamentably, woefully**

PREP. **about** *He was completely ignorant about the country's political system.* **| of** *We are still woefully ignorant of the causes of this disease.*

ignore *verb*

ADV. **altogether, completely, entirely, quite, totally | almost, practically, virtually | largely | generally | just, simply** *The government has simply ignored the problem altogether.* **| consistently | apparently | duly** *Her mother's opinions on how babies should be cared for were freely given and duly ignored.* **| easily** *The diesel fumes from Oxford's buses are not easily ignored.* **| conveniently** *(ironic) The managers have conveniently ignored these statistics.* **| blatantly** *Safety guidelines had been blatantly ignored.* **| assiduously, carefully, deliberately, determinedly, pointedly, resolutely, steadfastly, studiously** *She sat at her desk and studiously ignored me.* **| blithely, cheerfully** *He blithely ignored her protests and went on talking as if all were agreed between them.* **| coldly**

VERB + IGNORE **cannot (afford to)** *a warning the prime minister cannot afford to ignore* **| be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to | tend to** *Scientists have tended to ignore these creatures.* **| try to | choose to** *The judge chose to ignore the views of the doctors.*

PHRASES **be widely ignored** *Safety standards are widely ignored in the industry.* **| ignore sth at your peril** *The pernicious effect of this advertising on children is a problem that we ignore at our peril.* **| ignore the fact that …** *Did you think I'd ignore the fact that you were suffering from shock?* **| sth can be safely ignored** *(ironic) These people occupy such a marginal position in society that the authorities think they can be safely ignored.*

ill *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look | become, be taken, fall, get | make sb** *I can't eat bananas. They make me ill.*

ADV. **critically, dangerously, desperately, extremely, gravely, really, seriously, severely, terribly, very** *His mother is seriously ill in hospital.* **| almost** *Robyn was almost ill with excitement and outrage.* **| pretty, quite, rather, slightly | genuinely | violently** *She was taken violently ill and had to be put to bed.* **| acutely | chronically** *chronically ill patients* **| fatally, incurably, mortally, terminally** *a hospice for the terminally ill* **| mentally, physically** *the problems faced by mentally ill people*

illegal *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain | declare sth, deem sth, judge, make sth, pronounce sth, rule sth** *Their action was judged illegal by the International Court. The sale of these knives should be made illegal.*

ADV. **highly | absolutely, quite, strictly, totally | allegedly | technically** *Prize-fighting remained popular, though technically illegal, until the 1880s.*

illegitimate *adj.*

VERBS **be | consider sth, regard sth as**

ADV. **absolutely, completely, entirely, quite, wholly** *It is quite illegitimate to argue that the government had no choice.*

illiteracy *noun*

ADJ. **widespread** *Illiteracy was widespread at that time.*

QUANT. **level, rate**

ILLITERACY + NOUN **rate** *Illiteracy rates have fallen in recent years.*

illiterate *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **completely, totally | almost, largely, virtually | functionally** *People judged to be functionally illiterate lack the basic reading and writing skills required in everyday life.* **| economically, politically** *Is it surprising that young people who are politically illiterate do not bother to vote?*

illness *noun*

ADJ. **fatal, incurable, terminal | debilitating, life-threatening, major, serious, severe | minor | lingering, long, long-standing, long-term, prolonged | brief, short | final, last | acute, chronic | infectious | painful | depressive, mental, psychiatric, psychotic | psychosomatic | physical | respiratory | childhood**

QUANT. **bout, episode** *an acute episode of mental illness*

VERB + ILLNESS **have, suffer (from)** *Badly fed children suffer a lot of minor illnesses. people who suffer from mental illness* **| contract, develop, get** *He contracted a serious illness and died a month later.* **| diagnose | treat** *The drug is used to treat a wide range of illnesses.* **| cause** *illnesses caused by poverty* **| prevent** *a drug that may be helpful in preventing illnesses such as cancer* **| recover from | fight (off)** *The immune system enables the body to fight off illness.* **| feign** *She feigned illness so that she wouldn't have to go to school.* **| nurse sb through** *She nursed her father through his final illness.*

ILLNESS + VERB **affect sb** *The mystery illness affected hundreds of people in the city.*

PREP. **after ~** *He's just returned to work after illness.* **| because of/due to/through ~** *earnings lost due to illness* **| with ~** *people with serious psychological illnesses* **| ~ among** *a high rate of illness among the workers* **| ~ associated with** *the illnesses associated with HIV infection* **| ~ in** *episodes of illness in children*

PHRASES **the onset of illness** *the sudden onset of illness in a parent* **| a smoking-/Aids-, etc. related illness** *the most common stress-related illnesses*

illogical *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound**

ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally | rather, slightly | apparently | strictly** *Although strictly illogical, Martin's interpretation of this paradox seems the best.*

ill-treatment *noun* VERB + ILL-TREATMENT **suffer**

PHRASES **ill-treatment at sb's hands** *They suffered ill-treatment at the hands of the guards.*

illuminate *verb*

1 **give light to sth**

ADV. **brightly, clearly | dimly, faintly, softly** *The room was dimly illuminated by the soft glow of his bedside lamp.* **| briefly | suddenly**

2 **make sth clear**

ADV. **greatly, vividly** *an incident which vividly illuminated the problems we faced*

VERB + ILLUMINATE **help (to)** *The study of the present also helps to illuminate the past.*

illuminating *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | find sth**

ADV. **extremely, highly, most, very** *I found his talk most illuminating.* **| not particularly | quite**

illumination *noun*

ADJ. **bright, good, strong**

QUANT. **level** *providing an excellent level of illumination*

VERB + ILLUMINATION **provide** *The skylight will provide good illumination from above.*

ILLUMINATION + VERB **come from sth** *Most of the illumination came from candles.*

PHRASES **a source of illumination** *The only source of illumination was a single small window.*

illusion *noun*

ADJ. **dangerous** *To believe you have nothing more to learn is a dangerous illusion.* **| optical, visual** *The road ahead looks wet, but in fact this is an optical illusion.*

VERB + ILLUSION **be under, entertain, have** *They are under no illusions about the difficulties ahead of them.* **| create, give (sb)** *The huge size of the vehicle gives the illusion of safety.* **| foster, maintain, preserve, sustain** *They are trying to maintain the illusion that the company is in good shape.* **| break, destroy, dispel, shatter** *Within the first week at university all my illusions were shattered.* **| shed** *Now is the time to shed our illusions.*

PREP. **~ about/as to** *She had no illusions about her attractiveness to men.*

PHRASES **be all an illusion** *It turned out that their happy marriage was all an illusion.*

illustrate *verb*

1 **put pictures in sth**

ADV. **heavily, lavishly, richly | fully | attractively, beautifully, delightfully, handsomely, superbly**

PREP. **with** *The new edition is heavily illustrated with photographs of aircraft.*

2 **make sth clear using examples/pictures**

ADV. **amply | admirably, aptly, neatly, nicely, well** *The dire consequences of chronic underfunding are nowhere better illustrated than in the nation's schools.* **| perfectly | merely, simply** *His question merely illustrates his ignorance of the subject.* **| clearly, dramatically, graphically, strikingly, vividly | brutally, starkly, tragically** *The case tragically illustrates the dangers of fireworks.*

VERB + ILLUSTRATE **serve to** *Two examples serve to illustrate this point.* **| be chosen to, be designed to, be intended to**

PREP. **to** *a way of illustrating to the chairman the folly of his decision*

illustration *noun*

1 **picture in a book etc.**

ADJ. **black and white, colour/coloured, full-colour | beautiful, lively** *The clear, lively illustrations are in full colour.* **| clear | book, cover**

ILLUSTRATION + VERB **show sth | accompany sth** *the illustrations accompanying the text*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *The kite is assembled as shown in the illustration.* **| with an/the ~ | ~ by** *'The Black Cat' by Alan Ahlberg, with illustrations by Arthur Robins*

2 **example**

ADJ. **good, excellent, perfect | clear, dramatic, graphic, striking, vivid** *These events are a graphic illustration of the fact that their promises cannot be trusted.* **| simple** *Let us take a very simple illustration.* **| classic**

VERB + ILLUSTRATION **serve as** *Chicago serves as an illustration of the problems faced by such cities.* **| give (sb), provide** *Explain the policy of detente and provide some illustrations of how it worked in practice.* **| take, use sth as/for** *I will use one recent example as an illustration.*

PREP. **as an ~** *As an illustration of this point, I'm going to tell you a true story.* **| by way of ~** *He quoted several famous writers by way of illustration.*

image *noun*

1 **impression of sb/sth given to the public**

ADJ. **positive | negative | upmarket | downmarket | tarnished** *The party needs to clean up its somewhat tarnished image.* **| clean-cut, girl-next-door, wholesome** *She was aiming for a wholesome, girl-next-door image.* **| macho | hackneyed** *the hackneyed image of the poor student* **| media, public, screen** *In real life she looks nothing like her screen image.* **| brand, corporate** *Champagne houses owe their success to brand image.*

VERB + IMAGE **create** *The company needs to create a new image for itself.* **| present, project, promote** *a book which presents positive images of older people* **| aim for, go for | change | clean up, enhance, improve, polish, revive** *an effort to improve the organization's public image* **| keep up, live up to** *The group has failed to live up to its macho image.* **| discard, shed** *The industry is trying to shed its negative image.* **| tarnish**

2 **mental picture of sb/sth**

ADJ. **powerful, vivid | sudden** *She had a sudden mental image of herself in a wedding dress.* **| positive | negative | distorted** *the distorted images in his dreams* **| popular | stereotyped/stereotypical | mental | literary, poetic | dream**

VERB + IMAGE **have | conjure up, summon up** *Dieting always seems to conjure up images of endless cottage cheese salads. the ability to summon up images in the mind* **| build up** *I like to build up images of the characters and setting before I start to write.* **| use | reinforce** *Treating disabled people like children only reinforces negative images of disability.*

PREP. **~ from** *images from his past*

3 **copy**

ADJ. **living, spitting** *He's the spitting image of his father!* **| mirror** *Charity was a mirror image of her twin. (figurative) The return journey was almost a mirror image of the outward one* (= the same things happened in the reverse order).

4 **picture**

ADJ. **disturbing, poignant, powerful, striking** *powerful and disturbing images of the war* | **visual** *The visual image is steadily replacing the written word.* | **flickering, moving** *flickering images on a screen* | **still** *the use of still and moving video images* | **colour** | **black-and-white, monochrome** | **photographic, video** | **screen** *Each illustration is displayed as a complete screen image.* | **digital** | **graven** *(literary) It was forbidden to worship graven* (= carved) *images.* | **religious** | **pornographic**

VERB + IMAGE **produce** *the images produced on laser printers* | **capture, scan** *She longed to capture the image on film.* | **edit** | **display, show** *the pixel information used to display a digital image* | **store** *You can store these images in a separate computer file.* | **juxtapose** *The display juxtaposed images from serious and popular art.*

IMAGE + VERB **show sth** *heat images that show where most of the activity in the brain is*

IMAGE + NOUN **capture, processing** | **database** > Special page at COMPUTER

imagery *noun*

ADJ. **powerful, resonant, telling, vivid** *the vivid visual imagery of dreams* **| slick** *the slick imagery of rock stardom* **| popular** *drawing on popular imagery from newspapers and magazines* **| visual | mental** *Illustration may come between the text and the reader's own mental imagery.* **| religious, sexual**

VERB + IMAGERY **draw on, use**

imaginable *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **barely, hardly, scarcely** *To such poor people, the idea of having a choice of food is barely imaginable.*

PHRASES **the best/worst … imaginable** *They live in the worst conditions imaginable.* **| every imaginable sth** *They had every imaginable colour. They had every colour imaginable.* **| the most … imaginable** *It was the most boring film imaginable!*

imaginary *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **completely, purely, wholly** *The characters in this book are purely imaginary.*

imagination *noun*

ADJ. **great | active, creative, fertile, vivid | fevered, overactive, overheated** *It's just a product of your fevered imagination!* **| collective, popular, public** *a popular hero who inspired the collective imagination* **| visual** *I was no good at art?I have a very poor visual imagination.* **| historical, literary** *It requires a strong effort of historical imagination to understand the Roman attitude to death.* **| human** *the powers of the human imagination*

VERB + IMAGINATION **have | show | lack** *Today's pop music lacks imagination.* **| require, take** *It does not take great imagination to guess what happened next.* **| use** *I haven't got a picture of this so you'll just have to use your imagination.* **| capture, captivate, catch, excite, fire, inspire, seize, stimulate, stir** *Victorian writers fired the popular imagination with their tales of adventure.* **| grip, hold** *Dinosaurs caught and have held the imagination of us all because they seem like dragons.* **| stretch, tax | defy** *The scale of the disaster defied imagination* (= was greater than you could imagine). **| leave sth to** *As for their reaction, I'll leave that to your imagination!*

IMAGINATION + VERB **conjure sth up** *His imagination conjured up a vision of the normal family life he had never had.* **| run away with you, run riot/wild**

PREP. **beyond (your) ~** *misery that is beyond most people's imagination* **| in the/your ~** *Nobody hates you?it's all in your imagination!* **| with/without ~** *He was totally without imagination.*

PHRASES **a lack of imagination, a figment/product of sb's imagination** *The figure vanished as silently as if it had simply been a figment of her imagination.* **| not by any/by no stretch of the imagination** *Not by any stretch of the imagination could she be called beautiful* (= she was definitely not beautiful in any way). **| only your imagination** *Is it only my imagination or have you lost weight?* **| with a little imagination** *With a little imagination you can create a delicious meal from yesterday's leftovers.*

imagination *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **brilliantly, extremely, highly, most, very, wonderfully** *a wonderfully imaginative story* **| quite**

imagine *verb*

1 **form a picture of sth in your mind**

ADV. **clearly, easily, readily** *I could clearly imagine the scene in the office.* | **hardly, scarcely** *I could hardly imagine living in such a remote and desolate spot.* | **just** *She could just imagine her mother's look of horror.* | **actually** *I can't actually imagine her falling for that trick.* | **always** *I always imagined him following in his father's footsteps.* | **fondly, naively** *I had fondly imagined that riding a mule would be easy.*

VERB + IMAGINE **can/could (well)** *I can well imagine the atmosphere at home at this moment.* | **can/could not (possibly)** *There's more at stake here than you can possibly imagine.* | **try to** | **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *It is difficult to imagine Blackpool without its famous Tower.* | **be easy to**

PHRASES **let us imagine** *Let us imagine what really might have happened.*

2 **see/hear/think sth that is not true/does not exist**

ADV. **really, seriously** *You don't seriously imagine I'll agree to that?* | **almost** *I could almost imagine you were jealous.* | **actually** | **fondly, naively**

VERB + IMAGINE **be easy to**

PHRASES **be imagining things** *Had I really heard a noise, or was I just imagining things?* | **real or imagined** *He was always keen to avenge insults, real or imagined.*

imbalance *noun*

ADJ. **growing | regional | gender, power, trade | chemical, hormonal**

VERB + IMBALANCE **cause, create | correct, redress** *Increased recruitment of women engineers will help correct the gender imbalance in the profession.*

IMBALANCE + VERB **arise, occur**

PREP. **~ between** *an imbalance between imports and exports* **| ~ in** *An imbalance in certain chemicals leads to disturbances in the brain's function.*

imitation *noun*

1 **copy of a thing**

ADJ. **accurate, good, passable | cheap, crude, pale, poor** *Accept no cheap imitations of our product! Their version of jazz funk is a pale imitation of the real thing.*

2 **act of copying sth**

ADJ. **faithful, slavish | direct** *Children are seen as learning to write by direct imitation of adult models.*

PREP. **in ~ of** *The poems, some in imitation of Ossian, are graceful if unremarkable.*

3 **copy of sb's speech/behaviour**

ADJ. **fair, good, passable | poor**

VERB + IMITATION **do, give, perform** *He does a very good imitation of George W. Bush.*

immaculate *adj*

VERBS be, look | keep sth

ADV. absolutely, totally

immaterial *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become**

ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, wholly** *The condition of the car is quite immaterial as long as it works.* **| almost, virtually | relatively**

PREP. **to** *These facts are immaterial to the problem.*

immature *adj*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **very | rather, relatively | emotionally, physically, politically, sexually**

immediacy *noun*

VERB + IMMEDIACY **lack**

PHRASES **a lack of immediacy, a loss of immediacy** *Television allows viewers to experience an event without any loss of immediacy.*

immediate *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem** *The effect seems immediate.*

ADV. **almost** *The painkillers brought almost immediate relief.*

immerse *verb*

1 **put sth in liquid**

ADV. **completely, fully, totally | partially**

PREP. **in** *The seeds need to be completely immersed in water.*

2 **concentrate completely on sth**

ADV. **deeply** *Clare and Phil were deeply immersed in conversation.* **| completely, totally | in** *For six months I totally immersed myself in my work.*

immigrant *noun*

ADJ. **illegal | foreign | Irish, Italian, Jewish, etc. | recent | would-be | first-generation, second-generation** *First-generation immigrants may dream of returning 'home'; their children say Britain is their home.*

QUANT. **flood, influx, wave**

VERB + IMMIGRANT **accept, welcome | deport, return** *ships laden with would-be immigrants who were forcibly returned*

IMMIGRANT + VERB **arrive, enter sth** *immigrants seeking to enter the country* **| come from sth | settle (sth)** *European immigrants settled much of Australia.*

IMMIGRANT + NOUN **community, family, group, population | worker | labour**

PREP. **~ from, ~ to** *She was the daughter of Chinese immigrants to America.*

immigration *noun*

1 **coming to live in a country**

ADJ. **illegal | large-scale, mass**

VERB + IMMIGRATION **control, restrict** *laws restricting immigration into the US*

IMMIGRATION + NOUN **control, law, policy, rules | authority, officer, official, service**

PREP. **~ from** *There was a sudden increase in immigration from Eastern Europe.*

2 (*also* **immigration control**) **at a port/airport**

VERB + IMMIGRATION **go/pass through** *We landed at Heathrow and went through customs and immigration.*

IMMIGRATION + NOUN **checks, formalities, procedures** *calls for tighter immigration procedures*

immobile *adj.*

VERBS **lie, remain, sit, stand** *She seemed scarcely to breathe as she lay immobile.* **| become | hold sb, leave sb** *For a moment shock held her immobile. The accident left him totally immobile.*

ADV. **completely, perfectly, totally, utterly | almost, virtually | relatively**

immoral *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | condemn sth as, consider sth, regard sth as, think sth** *He condemned the government's action as immoral.*

ADV. **downright, quite, totally, utterly | rather, slightly, vaguely** *That sounds vaguely immoral.*

immortal *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **almost, virtually | effectively** *The wild cocoa tree is effectively immortal.* **| potentially**

immortality *noun*

ADJ. **personal** *Some religions include a doctrine of personal immortality.*

VERB + IMMORTALITY **achieve | confer, give sb** *It was in the power of the gods to confer immortality upon mortals.*

PHRASES **the immortality of the soul** *They believe in the immortality of the soul.*

immune *adj.*

1 **protected against a disease**

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain, stay | make sb** *The vaccination doesn't necessarily make you completely immune.*

ADV. **completely, totally**

PREP. **to** *Many people are immune to this disease.*

2 **not affected by sth**

VERBS **appear, be, prove, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | by no means, far from** *Children are far from immune to the virus of cruelty that is latent in all human beings.* **| almost, largely, virtually | relatively**

PREP. **to** *She's quite immune to criticism.*

immunity *noun*

1 **protection against disease**

ADJ. **strong | acquired, natural**

VERB + IMMUNITY **have** *The island's inhabitants had no immunity to the diseases carried by the explorers and quickly succumbed.* **| lack | acquire, build up, develop** *Once you have had a cold you build up immunity to that particular virus.* **| stimulate** *the use of vaccines to stimulate immunity* **| boost | lower** *High levels of stress may lower your immunity to common illnesses.*

IMMUNITY + VERB **develop** *A strong immunity to reinfection develops after one year.*

PREP. **~ against/to** *The newcomers lacked immunity against local strains of the disease.*

2 **protection from danger/punishment**

ADJ. **complete, total | effective | diplomatic, legal, parliamentary** *Several ministers were stripped of parliamentary immunity as a prelude to facing corruption charges.* **| public interest** *The newspaper claimed public interest immunity when threatened with prosecution for publishing the story* (= claimed that the public had a right to know about the story).

VERB + IMMUNITY **enjoy | claim, seek | confer, give sb, grant (sb), guarantee (sb), provide | abolish, lift, strip sb of** *The Supreme Court lifted the company's immunity from criminal prosecution.* **| lose**

PREP. **~ from** *Unions were granted immunity from prosecution for non-violent acts.*

immunize *verb*

ADV. **routinely**

PREP. **against** *Children have been routinely immunized against polio since 1958.* **|** **with** *They immunized some mice with a dose of the live vaccine.*

impact *noun*

1 **effect/impression**

ADJ. **big, considerable, dramatic, enormous, great, high, huge, important, main, major, massive, powerful, profound, real, significant, strong, substantial, tremendous** *a high-impact message aimed at changing high risk behaviour among drug-users* | **limited, marginal, minimal/minimum, negligible** | **full** *The industrial north of the country felt the full impact of the recession.* | **maximum** *We'll show you how to dress for maximum impact at the all-important audition.* | **overall, total** | **growing, increasing** | **added** | **disproportionate** | **uneven** *the uneven impact of the debt crisis on developing countries* | **aggregate, combined, cumulative** *considering the cumulative impact of a series of damaging events* | **decisive** | **direct** *The railways made a direct physical impact on the landscape.* | **immediate, instant** | **initial, short-term** | **lasting, long-term** | **far-reaching, wider** *It is important to appreciate the wider impact and implications of this proposal.* | **future, likely, possible, potential** | **beneficial, favourable, positive** | **adverse, catastrophic, damaging, devastating, disastrous, heavy, negative, serious, severe** | **human** *The severest human impact on the dolphins has been the loss of habitat.* | **personal** *The personal impact of party leaders has been very important.* | **physical, visual** *seeking to reduce the visual impact of wind farms on the landscape* | **cultural, ecological, economic, emotional, environmental, financial, health, political, psychological, social** *The environmental impact of power generation is being assessed.*

VERB + IMPACT **achieve, create, exert, have, make** *Variations in the interest rate will have an impact on the whole housing market. You certainly made a big impact on Carter.* | **feel** *The initial impact of the reforms will be felt most keenly in primary schools.* | **analyse, assess, consider, evaluate, examine, explore, judge, measure, monitor, study** *It is difficult to judge the likely impact of the changes on employment patterns.* | **enhance, increase, maximize** | **alleviate, cushion, lessen, minimize, reduce, soften** *We are trying to minimize the impact of price rises on our customers.* | **diminish, lessen, reduce, weaken** *Listening to the speech through an interpreter lessened its impact somewhat.* | **lose** *When peace returned, the hardline message lost much of its impact.* | **resist, withstand** *This section explores how mothers resist the impact of poverty on the health of their children.* | **be concerned about** | **appreciate** | **highlight** | **address** | **predict** | **reflect** *Architecturally, these churches reflected the impact of the Renaissance.*

PREP. **under the ~ of** *Manufacturing fell sharply under the impact of the recession.* **| ~ on/upon** *to highlight the impact of technology on working practices*

2 **act/force of one object hitting another**

ADJ. **full | initial**

VERB + IMPACT **take** *The front coach of the train took the full impact of the crash.* **| feel | absorb** *A well-designed sports shoe should absorb the impact on the 28 bones in each foot.* **| lessen, soften** *Air bags are designed to soften the impact for crash victims.* **| survive, withstand** *The crew of six may have survived the initial impact, but the whole plane went up in flames seconds later.*

IMPACT + VERB **occur** *Impact occurred seconds after the pilot signalled for help.* **| knock sb/sth …** *The impact knocked him off balance.*

IMPACT + NOUN **speed | crater** *Small meteorites have left impact craters all over the planet's surface.*

PREP. **on ~** *The front of the car had crumpled on impact.*

PHRASES **the moment/point/time of impact**

impair *verb*

ADV. **dramatically, gravely, greatly, seriously, severely, significantly, substantially | directly** *factors which directly impair memory*

PHRASES **badly impaired** *Her sight is badly impaired.* **| hearing/mentally/ visually impaired** *the problems faced by people who are hearing impaired*

impartial *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain** *The judge must remain impartial.*

ADV. **completely, quite, strictly, totally | fairly, reasonably, relatively**

impartiality *noun*

ADJ. **complete | due** *The BBC must ensure that due impartiality is preserved in its news programmes.*

VERB + IMPARTIALITY **guarantee, maintain, preserve | compromise, prejudice** *The newspaper sought to present a range of opinions without compromising its impartiality.*

impassable *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain | make sth | think sth** *The river's broad mudflats were thought completely impassable.*

ADV. **completely, totally** *The mud made the roads impassable.* **| almost, virtually**

impasse *noun*

ADJ. **diplomatic, legal, political**

VERB + IMPASSE **reach** *Negotiations seemed to have reached an impasse.* **| break, end, overcome, resolve**

PHRASES **a way out of an impasse** *The proposal offered both sides a way out of the diplomatic impasse.*

impassive *adj.*

VERBS **be, sit, stand | become | remain**

ADV. **completely, quite, totally | almost** *Her expression was cool, almost impassive.* **| rather | usually** *A smile transformed her usually impassive face.*

impatience *noun*

ADJ. **growing, mounting | slight | barely concealed/controlled**

QUANT. **hint, note, touch**

VERB + IMPATIENCE **feel** *She felt a growing impatience.* **| express, show** *He was trying hard not to show his impatience.* **| contain, control, curb, restrain** *unable to contain her impatience* **| conceal, hide**

IMPATIENCE + VERB **grow**

PREP. **with ~** *He stamped his feet as he waited with barely concealed impatience for the telephone.* **| ~ at** *He expressed impatience at the slow rate of progress.* **| ~ for** *his impatience for her to return* **| ~ with** *impatience with the slowness of change*

PHRASES **a gesture of impatience** *He shook his head in a gesture of impatience.* **| a sigh of impatience** *He bit back a sigh of impatience.* **| signs of impatience** *The children were beginning to show signs of impatience.*

impatient *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem, sound | become, get, grow** *The children were growing impatient.*

ADV. **extremely, really, very | increasingly | almost | a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat, a touch** *He spoke in a somewhat impatient tone.* **| suddenly**

PREP. **about** *She's getting impatient about the delays.* **| at** *Sean was a touch impatient at the time Valerie devoted to her mother.* **| for** *impatient for change* **| with** *Sometimes he is very impatient with his wife.*

impede *verb*

ADV. **greatly, seriously, significantly** *The bad weather seriously impeded our progress.*

impediment *noun*

ADJ. **great, major, serious | absolute | chief, main | lawful, legal** *There are no legal impediments to their appealing against the decision.*

VERB + IMPEDIMENT **be, constitute, provide | remove** *The agreement is designed to remove impediments to trade between the two countries.*

PREP. **~ to** *Their boycott of the talks constitutes a serious impediment to peace negotiations.*

impenetrable *adj.*

1 **impossible to enter/get through**

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become | find sth** *They found the jungle virtually impenetrable.*

ADV. **almost, nearly, virtually**

2 **impossible to understand**

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain | find sth**

ADV. **almost, virtually | somewhat** *I find his style somewhat impenetrable.* **| seemingly**

PREP. **to** *The language of this document would be impenetrable to anyone except a specialist.*

imperative *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain** *It remains imperative that all sides should be involved in the talks.* **| make sth** *The collapse of the wall made it imperative to keep the water out by some other means.* **| consider sth** *We consider it absolutely imperative to start work immediately.*

ADV. **absolutely**

imperceptible *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **almost, virtually** *His head moved in an almost imperceptible nod.*

PREP. **to** *The slight change in the taste was imperceptible to most people.*

imperfect *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain** *Our understanding of cancer remains imperfect.*

ADV. **highly, very** *The system is highly imperfect.* **| rather, slightly** *These goods are slightly imperfect.*

imperfection *noun*

ADJ. **moral, physical**

VERB + IMPERFECTION **cover up | reveal, show up**

PREP. **~ in** *Careful inspection in daylight revealed imperfections in the paintwork.*

imperialism *noun*

ADJ. **American, British, Roman, Western, etc. | capitalist, cultural, economic**

impersonal *adj.*

1 **not showing friendly human feelings**

VERBS **be, seem | become | find sth** *I find the atmosphere there rather impersonal.*

ADV. **very | totally | a bit, rather | coldly, coolly** *His voice was coolly impersonal.* **| oddly**

2 **not referring to any particular person**

VERBS **be | keep sth** *I think we should keep things entirely impersonal.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely, entirely, totally**

impertinence *noun*

ADJ. **gross** *I consider his remark a gross impertinence.*

VERB + IMPERTINENCE **have** *She had the impertinence to suggest I needed a holiday.*

PHRASES **the height of impertinence**

impertinent *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | get** *Don't you get impertinent with me!* **| find sth** *She found the question highly impertinent.*

ADV. **highly, very | slightly, somewhat**

impervious *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **completely, quite, totally, wholly** *He was completely impervious to criticism.* **| almost, largely, virtually | apparently**

PREP. **to** *She was impervious to his charms.*

impetus *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, powerful, strong | main, major | immediate, initial, original | fresh, new, renewed** *Each new rumour added fresh impetus to the smear campaign.* **| added, extra, further | necessary** *His disappointment in the World Championships provided the necessary impetus to give everything for this final race.*

VERB + IMPETUS **add, give sb/sth, provide (sb/sth with)** *The slope added impetus to his speed.* **| gain, gather, receive** *The movement is steadily gaining impetus.* **| lose** *With the death of its founder, the campaign lost much of its impetus.*

IMPETUS + VERB **come from sth** *Much of the impetus for change came from customers' opinions.*

PREP. **~ behind sb/sth** *The main impetus behind the move west was to find gold and other minerals.* **| ~ for** *the impetus for arms control agreements* **| ~ towards** *the impetus towards urban development*

impinge *verb*

ADV. **seriously** *actions which seriously impinge on other people's personal freedoms* **| hardly | directly, indirectly**

PREP. **on/upon** *measures which directly or indirectly impinge upon women's lives*

implausible *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | consider sth, deem sth** *These results might be considered implausible.*

ADV. **highly | quite, totally, wholly** *This idea is totally implausible.* **| increasingly** *He gave a series of increasingly implausible excuses.* **| not altogether, not entirely | pretty, rather, somewhat | inherently**

implement *noun*

ADJ. **agricultural, farm, garden, kitchen, surgical | sharp** *Make sure that all sharp implements, such as scythes, have covers.* **| flint, metal, stone, wooden**

implement *verb*

ADV. **fully, properly** *These policies have never been fully implemented.* **| partially | adequately | actually** *The proposed changes were never actually implemented.* **| widely** *These reforms have now been widely implemented in schools.* **| effectively, successfully | quickly**

VERB + IMPLEMENT **agree to, decide to, intend to, promise to | attempt to, seek to, try to | fail to** *The government failed to implement the plan.* **| refuse to | be forced to, be obliged to | be difficult to, be hard to** *The decision will be difficult to implement.*

implementation *noun*

ADJ. **effective, successful | complete, full | detailed** *Detailed implementation of the plans was left to the regional offices.* **| strict | smooth** *We will consult widely to ensure smooth implementation.* **| practical** *The practical implementation of the regulations proved difficult.* **| early, immediate | gradual | policy**

VERB + IMPLEMENTATION **achieve, ensure, secure** *To achieve implementation of the programme is a long, slow task.* **| monitor, oversee, supervise** *The UN is to supervise the implementation of the peace treaty.* **| consider, discuss**

IMPLEMENTATION + NOUN **plan | process** *The restructuring will take place in phases, to simplify the implementation process.* **| problem**

implicate *verb* **be implicated in sth**

ADV. **deeply, heavily, strongly** *These groups are very strongly implicated in the violence.* **| directly**

implication *noun*

1 possible effect/result

ADJ. **considerable, crucial, enormous, important, major, massive, strong | main | deeper, fundamental, profound | broad, far-reaching, wider** *discussing the broader implications of the medical plan* | **full** *Now they realized the full implications of the new system.* | **direct | clear, obvious | underlying | general | further | possible, potential | future, long-term | grave, serious | disturbing, frightening, ominous, sinister | adverse, damaging, negative | interesting | radical, revolutionary | practical** *These results have important practical implications.* | **commercial, constitutional, economic, educational, environmental, ethical, financial, ideological, legal, moral, philosophical, political, psychological, social** *the constitutional implications of a royal divorce* | **cost, health, policy, resource, safety, security, tax**

VERB + IMPLICATION **carry, have** *The emphasis on testing leads to greater stress among students and carries implications of failure.* | **grasp, realize, understand | assess, consider, examine, explore, ponder, study** *You need to consider the legal implications before you publish anything.* | **digest | discuss | explain | accept** *a society that fully accepts the implications of disability* | **reject | ignore**

IMPLICATION + VERB **arise** *Several interesting implications arise from these developments.* | **be involved** *Given the resource implications involved, the plan will have to be scaled down.*

PREP. **~ about** *disturbing implications about the company's future* | **~ for** *The research has far-reaching implications for medicine as a whole.*

2 sth suggested but not said openly

ADJ. **clear, obvious** *The implication is clear: young females do better if they mate with a new male.* | **possible** *His remark seemed to have various possible implications.* | **unspoken**

VERB + IMPLICATION **carry, have | understand | digest** *Brian paused for a moment while he digested the implications of this statement.* | resent *I resent the implication that I don't care about my father.*

PREP. **by ~** *In refusing to believe our story, he is saying by implication that we are lying.*

imply *verb*

ADV. **clearly, heavily, strongly | simply | generally, normally, usually | automatically | not necessarily** *This does not necessarily imply that children achieve better results in private schools.* **| in no way** *They believe that submission in no way implies inferiority.*

VERB + IMPLY **seem to** *The letter seems to imply that the minister knew about the business deals.* **| intend to, mean to** *I never meant to imply any criticism.* **| take sth to** *This statement should not be taken to imply that the government is exonerated of all blame.*

PHRASES **express or implied** *the express or implied terms of the contract*

import *noun*

ADJ. **main, major | foreign, overseas | cheap | annual** *The value of annual imports rose rapidly.* **| net** *the UK's net imports of food* **| total | essential | luxury | illegal | agricultural, car, coal, energy, food, grain, oil, steel, etc.**

VERB + IMPORT **boost, increase** *pressure on the government to stimulate the faltering economy and boost imports* **| curb, cut, reduce, restrict | discourage | control | block, prevent, stop | ban, prohibit** *The government decided to prohibit the import of toxic waste.* **| finance** *Most of their oil revenues are used to finance imports of consumer and capital goods.* **| replace** *The industry aims both to increase exports and replace imports.*

IMPORT + VERB **grow, increase, rise | drop, fall | be valued at sth, total sth** *Imports were valued at £516 million last month.* **| account for sth** *Imports of foodstuffs accounted for a small proportion of total imports.*

IMPORT + NOUN **ban, control, restrictions | duty, tariff | price** *rising import prices* **| licence | quota** *A restricted import quota was set for meat products.* **| penetration** *greater import penetration of the domestic market*

PREP. **~ from** *America has cut its oil imports from the Middle East by 73%.* **| ~ into** *Special duties were imposed on imports into the republic.*

PHRASES **a ban/restriction on imports, the demand for imports, a fall/rise in imports** > Note at PERCENT (for more verbs)

import *verb*

ADV. **directly | illegally, legally | specially**

PREP. **from** *The store's croissants are imported directly from France.* **| into** *These dogs are illegally imported into the country.* **| to** *goods that are imported to Britain*

importance *noun*

ADJ. **cardinal, central, considerable, critical, crucial,** enormous, especial, extreme, fundamental, great, high, **immense, key, major, outstanding, overriding,** overwhelming, paramount, particular, primary, prime, **profound, real, special, supreme, tremendous, vital | first, greatest, highest, utmost** *This information is of the first importance. It is of the utmost importance that you arrive on time.* **| growing, increasing | declining** *the declining importance of manufacturing industry* **| lesser, limited, marginal, minor, secondary | direct | general | added | immediate | continued/continuing, lasting | equal | relative | intrinsic | obvious | perceived** *differences in the perceived importance of the different subjects in the curriculum* **| potential | public | international, national | practical | theoretical | symbolic** *the symbolic importance of iron in German culture* **| archaeological, commercial, constitutional, cultural, ecological, economic, environmental, historical, legal, military, political, social, strategic**

VERB + IMPORTANCE **have** *These finds have considerable archaeological importance.* **| assume, take on** *Childcare schemes take on an added importance at a time of national recession.* **| grow in, increase in, rise in | decline in, diminish in, fall in** *The overseas markets have now declined in importance.* **| attach, give sth, place** *To what objectives do you attach most importance? the importance placed on cleanliness* **| accept, acknowledge, appreciate, be aware of, grasp, realize, recognize, see, understand** *People were aware of the importance of working with nature.* **| demonstrate, illustrate, indicate, point to, reflect, show, suggest** *Figure 2.2 shows the relative importance of the different service industries.* **| assert | deny | confirm | draw attention to, emphasize, highlight, point up, promote, stress, underline** *The manual stresses the importance of regular maintenance.* **| diminish, downplay, minimize, play down, underplay** *She was inclined to play down the importance of her own role in the affair.* **| exaggerate, overestimate | underestimate, undervalue** *Don't underestimate the importance of neat presentation.* **| increase | reduce | consider, discuss | explain | cast/throw doubt on, doubt, question** *No one can seriously question the political importance of the environment.* **| forget, ignore, overlook**

IMPORTANCE + VERB **arise from sth, lie in sth** *The town's importance lies in the richness and quality of its architecture.* **| depend on sth**

PREP. **of … ~** *The railways were of crucial importance in opening up the American West.* **| ~ for** *an area of enormous importance for wildlife* **| ~ to** *the importance to* *the country of a healthy economy*

PHRASES **in order of importance** *Deal with the issues in order of importance.* **| a matter of importance**

important *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain | make sth** *This is what makes our work so important.* **| believe sth, consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as, think sth** *These ideas are considered enormously important.*

ADV. **critically, crucially, enormously, especially, extremely, hugely, most, particularly, really, terribly, very, vitally** *This is most important: you must deliver the letter to Johnson himself.* **| increasingly | doubly | fairly, quite | equally** *These two factors are equally important.* **| internationally, regionally** *an internationally important site for these rare birds* **| economically, functionally, historically, politically, strategically** *historically important buildings*

PREP. **for** *It's important for you to understand this.* **| to** *Spending time with my children is important to me. The work of the intelligence services was crucially important to victory in the war.*

impose *verb*

ADV. **effectively** *The terms of the contract were effectively imposed rather than agreed.* **| simply** *New technology cannot be used successfully if it is simply imposed on an unwilling workforce.* **| centrally** *a centrally imposed school curriculum* **| externally** *the pressure of having to meet externally imposed targets* **| artificially** *Motivation to learn must come from the child; it cannot be artificially imposed.*

VERB + IMPOSE **seek to, strive to, try to**

PREP. **on/upon** *The government has imposed a ban on the sale of handguns.*

imposition *noun*

1 act of imposing sth

VERB + IMPOSITION **justify** *Several reasons were put forward to justify the imposition of censorship.* **| oppose, resist | resent**

PREP. **~ on** *resisting the imposition of VAT on fuel*

2 unreasonable thing sb expects you to do

ADJ. **unacceptable, unwelcome**

PREP. **~ on** *She felt the journey to be an unwelcome imposition on her time.*

impossible *adj.*

1 not possible

VERBS **appear, be, look, prove, seem, sound | become | remain | make sth, render sth** *Darkness made it impossible to continue.* **| believe sth, consider sth, deem sth, find sth, regard sth as, see sth as, think sth** *I found his offer impossible to resist.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, totally, utterly | frankly** *Cooking for forty would be frankly impossible without my new assistant.* **| just, simply** *I'm really sorry. It's just impossible.* **| by no means, far from, not altogether** *a desirable and far from impossible objective to achieve* **| almost, more or less, near, nearly, next to, nigh on, practically, virtually, well-nigh** *It was well-nigh impossible for him to convince her that he was right.* **| pretty | effectively | literally | apparently, seemingly | theoretically | clearly, obviously | equally** *Both options are equally impossible.* **| generally | hitherto, previously** *With the new equipment we will be able to accomplish hitherto impossible tasks.* **| ultimately | economically, financially, logically, logistically, mathematically, politically, physically, scientifically, socially, technically** *The high cost of childcare made returning to work economically impossible.*

PREP. **for** *The situation is quite impossible for us. It's impossible for me to say.*

2 bad-tempered; difficult to talk to/deal with

VERBS **be | become | find sb** *I find her impossible.*

ADV. **bloody** (*taboo*), **really | absolutely, completely, quite, totally** *You can be absolutely impossible at times!* **| just**

impotence *noun*

ADJ. **total | relative | male | political, sexual**

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of impotence** *Violence may result from a sense of impotence.*

impotent *adj.*

1 **without enough power/influence**

VERBS **be, feel, prove | remain | leave sb, make sb, render sb** *Companies are rendered impotent by all the rules and regulations.*

ADV. **completely, quite, totally | virtually | politically**

PREP. **against** *They were virtually impotent against the power of the large companies.*

2 **not capable of having sex**

VERBS **be | become | leave sb, make sb** *The operation left him impotent.*

ADV. **sexually**

impracticable *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | make sth, render sth** *The damage it would cause makes the idea utterly impracticable.* **| consider sth, find sth** *This idea was considered completely impracticable.*

ADV. **highly | completely, quite, totally, utterly**

impractical *adj.*

1 **not sensible or reasonable**

VERBS **be, prove** *Such a solution proved impractical.* **| become | make sth** *The weight of the machine makes lifting it impractical.* **| consider sth, deem sth, find sth, regard sth as** *They found his ideas impractical.*

ADV. **highly, hopelessly** *The long flowing dress was highly impractical.* **| completely, downright, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | rather, somewhat | fundamentally** *a fundamentally impractical design* **| obviously**

2 **not good at everyday jobs**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **hopelessly** *He was hopelessly impractical when it came to planning new projects.*

imprecise *adj.*

VERBS be, seem | become

ADV. extremely, very | fairly, rather, somewhat | notoriously *'Breach of the peace' is a notoriously imprecise notion.*

PREP. about *She was rather imprecise about the cost of the trip.*

impress *verb*

ADV. **really** *His work really impressed me.*

VERB + IMPRESS **be determined to, be keen to, hope to, want to | attempt to, seek to, try to | be designed to | fail to** *The results failed to impress us.*

PREP. **with** *She impressed us with both the depth and range of her knowledge.*

PHRASES **an attempt/effort to impress sb, be easily impressed** *I was young and easily impressed.*

impressed *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **deeply, enormously, especially, extremely, greatly, immensely, mightily, much, overwhelmingly, particularly, profoundly, really, terribly, tremendously, very (much) | less than, not overly** *I was not overly impressed by the proposals.* **| fairly, mildly, quite | enough, sufficiently** *The prince was impressed enough to commission a portrait from the artist.* **| genuinely | immediately, instantly | favourably | duly, suitably** *He mentioned a few famous acquaintances, and we were suitably impressed.* **| clearly, obviously**

PREP. **by** *The manager was favourably impressed by Jo's work.* **| with** *He was very impressed with her house.*

impression *noun*

1 **idea/feeling/opinion about sth**

ADJ. **distinct, firm, strong | main, overriding, overwhelming | convincing | clear, vivid | fleeting, vague | accurate | distorted, erroneous, false, mistaken, misleading, spurious, wrong | good** *The village gives a good impression of what a medieval city would have looked like.* **| favourable | negative | opposite | early, first, immediate, initial** *First impressions can be misleading.* **| final | general, overall | general, widespread** *There is a widespread impression that schooling needs to be improved.* **| public | personal, subjective**

VERB + IMPRESSION **form, gain, get, have, obtain, receive** *I got the distinct impression that you disliked her.* **| convey, create, give (sb), leave sb with, provide (sb wtih)** *The book leaves you with a distorted impression of politics.* **| maintain** *She was trying to maintain the impression that she was in control.* **| confirm | heighten, reinforce, strengthen | avoid** *It was difficult to avoid the impression that he was assisting them for selfish reasons.* **| correct** *I must correct a false impression that I gave you just now.* **| record** *She recorded her impressions of the city in her diary.*

IMPRESSION + VERB **count** *When it comes to finding a partner, first impressions do count.*

PREP. **under a/the ~** *I was under the impression that you weren't coming until tomorrow.* **| ~ about** *I had the wrong impression about him.* **| ~ as to** *mistaken impressions as to the strength of the market*

2 **effect that an experience/person has on sb/sth**

ADJ. **considerable, deep, powerful, profound, strong, tremendous | superficial | abiding, indelible, lasting | excellent, favourable, good, great | bad, poor, unfavourable | false, misleading, wrong | right** *If you want to create the right impression, I suggest you wear a suit.* **| first, immediate** *The new striker failed to make an immediate impression on the team.*

VERB + IMPRESSION **create, leave, make**

PREP. **~ on/upon** *The day's events left a lasting impression on them.*

3 drawing

ADJ. **artist's**

VERB + IMPRESSION **issue** *The police have issued an artist's impression of the attacker.*

4 amusing copy of sb

ADJ. **good, reasonable**

VERB + IMPRESSION **do** *He does some very good impressions of pop stars.*

5 mark left on an object

VERB + IMPRESSION **bear** *The sealing wax bore the impression of a sailing ship.*

impressionable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **highly, very** *He is in a highly impressionable state.*

impressive *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become | remain | make sth** *The fact that he is so young makes his achievements even more impressive.* **| find sth**

ADV. **decidedly, enormously, extremely, highly, hugely, immensely, mightily, most, particularly, really, tremendously, truly, very** *The new building looks most impressive.* **| far from, hardly, not unduly** *He was far from impressive in his semi-final against Federer.* **| fairly, pretty, quite, rather | undeniably, undoubtedly | suitably** *A large portico provides a suitably impressive entrance to the chapel.* **| equally, similarly** *The scenery to the north of the lake is equally impressive.* **| consistently | technically, visually** *The film is technically impressive, but lacks real excitement.*

imprint *noun*

ADJ. **indelible, permanent | unmistakable**

VERB + IMPRINT **bear** *The ceramics bore the imprint of Luca della Robbia.* **| leave, make** *Glaciation has left a permanent imprint on the landscape. (figurative) The sinister atmosphere of the place left an indelible imprint on my memory.*

PREP. **~ on/upon**

imprison *verb*

ADV. **virtually** *Her fear virtually imprisoned her in her home.* **| falsely, unlawfully, wrongfully, wrongly** *working on behalf of people who have been wrongly imprisoned* **| briefly, temporarily**

PREP. **for** *He was imprisoned for debt.* **| in** *He was imprisoned in a local castle.*

imprisonment *noun*

ADJ. **six months', ten years', etc. | life | indefinite | immediate | false, unlawful, wrongful**

VERB + IMPRISONMENT **be liable to, face** *The Act states that anyone committing the offence is liable to imprisonment. The coup leaders could face life imprisonment.* **| receive, suffer** *Those who were captured suffered imprisonment.* **| be released from | sentence sb to**

IMPRISONMENT + VERB **be suspended for sth** *The judge sentenced her to 6 months imprisonment suspended for 15 months.*

PREP. **~ for** *imprisonment for illegal possession of weapons*

PHRASES **(carry) a penalty of … imprisonment** *The offence carries a penalty of 2 years' imprisonment.* **| imprisonment without trial, a period/sentence/term of imprisonment, punishable by imprisonment** *a felony punishable by imprisonment*

improbable *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become | make sth** *These new facts make the theory improbable.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, very, wildly** *a wildly improbable idea* **| completely, quite | not altogether | fairly, rather, slightly | inherently, intrinsically** *There is nothing inherently improbable in the idea.*

improper *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | consider sth, regard sth as, think sth** *She thought it quite improper for a woman to ride a motorbike.*

ADV. **highly, most | entirely, quite**

impropriety *noun*

ADJ. **gross | constitutional, financial, procedural** *(law)*, **sexual**

VERB + IMPROPRIETY **commit** *Several employees were suspended amid allegations that financial improprieties had been committed.* **| accuse sb of** *Parliament was was accused of constitutional impropriety.*

PHRASES **a suggestion of impropriety** *There is no suggestion of impropriety by the minister.*

improve *verb*

ADV. **considerably, dramatically, greatly, immeasurably, materially, radically, significantly, substantially, vastly | markedly, noticeably | marginally, slightly | rapidly | steadily**

VERB + IMPROVE **continue to** *The weather should continue to improve over the weekend.* **| strive to, try to** *trying to improve their working conditions* **| help to | be designed to**

PHRASES **aimed at improving sth** *measures aimed at improving government efficiency* **| an attempt/effort to improve sth, an incentive to improve sth** *Workers need to be given an incentive to improve their performance.* **| much improved** *We now offer a much improved service to our customers.*

improvement *noun*

ADJ. **big, considerable, enormous, great, huge, marked, massive, material, radical, remarkable, significant, substantial, vast** | marginal, minor, modest, slight, **small | noticeable, obvious, visible | actual, definite, distinct, genuine, real, tangible | measurable | dramatic, rapid, sharp | gradual, incremental, steady | constant, continued, continuing, continuous, progressive, sustained | long-term | short-term | temporary | further | all-round, general, overall | important, notable | much-needed, necessary | welcome | useful** | positive | recent | immediate | **desired, expected | suggested** *If suggested improvements are not carried out, we have the right to suspend the insurance cover.* **| intended | possible, potential | underlying** *Their policies have resulted in a definite underlying improvement in the economy.* **| moral | economic, educational, environmental, health, safety, social | organizational, productivity, quality, service, technical, technological | agricultural, land | ground, home, housing, rail, road, school** *The club will spend £300,000 on ground improvements.*

VERB + IMPROVEMENT **be, constitute, reflect, represent** *The country's economic record since 1945 represents an improvement on the period between the world wars.* **| show** *Exports have showed some improvement.* **| need, require | carry out, effect, make** *He made a steady improvement and was released within 10 days of admission.* **| lead to, produce, provide, result in, yield** *The drug produced an improvement in all but one case.* **| achieve, bring (about), secure** *steps taken to secure improvement in pupils' attendance* **| seek | call for, demand | recommend, suggest | encourage, promote | announce, report** *Wholesalers reported an improvement in sales for the third quarter.* **| notice, see, witness** *With this exercise plan you will notice an enormous improvement in your stamina.* **| find** *No improvement was found after the tenth day of treatment.*

IMPROVEMENT + VERB **take place | result from sth**

IMPROVEMENT + NOUN **programme, scheme** *The proposed road improvement scheme involves bypassing several villages.* **| work** *The improvement work to houses will create jobs.*

PREP. **~ in** *The new factory brought a huge improvement in working conditions.* **| ~ on/over/upon** *These results are a distinct improvement on last year's.* **| ~ to** *Several improvements were made to the design during its production run.*

PHRASES **an area for/of improvement** *The new assessment system could pinpoint areas for improvement within the company.* | **room/scope for improvement** *Their average marks have risen, but there is still room for improvement.* | **signs of improvement** *The economy is showing signs of improvement.*

improvisation *noun*

ADJ. **spontaneous** *Most of their music was spontaneous improvisation.* **| dramatic, musical | jazz | piano**

improvise *verb*

ADV. **hastily** *We hastily improvised a screen out of an old blanket.*

VERB + IMPROVISE **have to** *There isn't much equipment. We're going to have to improvise.*

impulse *noun*

1 **sudden strong wish**

ADJ. **strong | irresistible | first, original** *My first impulse was to run away.* **| sudden | basic | instinctual, natural | repressed | conflicting, contradictory, contrary | aggressive, violent | creative | sexual**

VERB + IMPULSE **feel, have** *She felt a sudden impulse to look to her left.* **| be subject to** *We are all subject to aggressive impulses.* **| be driven by | check, control, deny, fight (back/down), resist, restrain, stifle, suppress** *He fought down an impulse to scream.* **| give in to, obey, yield to** *She gave in to an impulse and took the money.* **| act on** *Acting on impulse, he picked up the keys and slipped them into his pocket.* **| buy sth on** *Some people will buy a puppy on impulse without any idea of what is involved.*

IMPULSE + VERB **arise** *Impulses that are repeatedly denied can arise in other forms.*

IMPULSE + NOUN **buy, purchase** *The little black designer dress had been an impulse buy.* **| buying | buyer**

PREP. **on (an) ~** *On an impulse, I went into the shop and bought a box of chocolates.* **| ~ towards** *basic impulses towards things such as food and drink*

2 **movement of energy**

ADJ. **electrical, nerve/nervous**

VERB + IMPULSE **transmit** *Nerve impulses are transmitted to the brain.* **| convert sth into, transform sth into** *Radio waves are converted into electrical impulses.*

3 **sth that causes sb/sth to do sth**

ADJ. **positive | political, social**

IMPULSE + VERB **lead (sb/sth) to sth, prompt (sb/sth to sth)** *the impulse that prompted economic change*

PREP. **~ behind** *the impulse behind a concept* **| ~ for** *the impulse for social reform* **| ~ toward** *the political impulses towards joining a trade union*

inability *noun*

ADJ. **apparent | complete, total | chronic** *the government's chronic inability to face facts* **| physical**

VERB + INABILITY **be/feel frustrated by** *She felt increasingly frustrated by her inability to demonstrate her ideas.* **| overcome** *He has to overcome his inability to assert himself.*

inaccessible *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem** *The mouth of the river proved inaccessible.* **| become | remain | make sth, render sth** *A high wall made the building inaccessible.*

ADV. **very | completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly | almost, practically, virtually | largely | rather | effectively | otherwise**

PREP. **by** *areas inaccessible by road* **| to** *The hall is inaccessible to wheelchair users.*

inaccuracy *noun*

ADJ. **major, material, significant | factual, historical**

VERB + INACCURACY **contain | be fraught with, be full of** *Reference works on that country, when available, are full of inaccuracies.* **| correct** *I am writing to correct factual inaccuracies contained in your article of June 3rd.*

PREP. **~ in** *inaccuracies in reporting*

inaccurate *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become**

ADV. **extremely, grossly, hopelessly, seriously, terribly, very, wildly** *a wildly inaccurate account of events* **| quite, totally, wholly | a bit, rather, slightly, somewhat** *These figures are somewhat inaccurate.* **| notoriously** *Maps of the region are notoriously inaccurate.* **| historically** *It was good drama, but historically inaccurate.*

inactive *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **totally** *He had been totally inactive for two weeks.* **| fairly, relatively | physically, sexually | economically, politically**

inactivity *noun*

ADJ. **relative** *Her most brilliant work was done during several months of relative inactivity.* **| economic, political | enforced** *It was good to be home again after the enforced inactivity of the hospital bed.*

PHRASES **a period of inactivity** *The job entailed long periods of inactivity.*

inadequacy *noun*

ADJ. **total | fundamental | glaring, obvious | personal | sexual, social | theoretical**

VERB + INADEQUACY **demonstrate, expose, highlight, point out/to, reveal, show (up)** *She rightly points to the inadequacy of the argument. The test soon revealed several inadequacies in the equipment.* **| realize, recognize, see** *I now see the inadequacy of the explanation.* **| admit to** *His advice was to be defensive and never admit to any inadequacy.* **| cover up, disguise, hide** *They possibly falsified the results to cover up the inadequacies of their theory.* **| overcome** *Clear legislative reform is needed to overcome the inadequacies of the current situation.*

INADEQUACY + VERB **arise from sth, stem from sth**

PREP. **~ in** *inadequacies in educational facilities*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of inadequacy**

inadequate *adj.*

1 **not good enough**

VERBS **appear, be, look, prove, seem | become | consider sth, find sth, judge sth, regard sth as, think sth** *These precautions have been judged inadequate.*

ADV. **deeply, grossly, hopelessly, ludicrously, pitifully, ridiculously, seriously, very, woefully** *His wages were pitifully inadequate for the needs of his growing family.* **| completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly, wholly | increasingly | somewhat | clearly, manifestly, obviously, patently, plainly | curiously | notoriously**

PREP. **at** *People, despite their intelligence, are curiously inadequate at communicating with horses.* **| for** *This computer is clearly inadequate for my needs.*

2 **not able to deal with a situation**

VERBS **be, feel, seem** *I felt dreadfully inadequate.*

ADV. **deeply, dreadfully, hopelessly, very | quite, totally, wholly | rather | generally | personally, professionally, sexually** *The staff at the consulate seemed not only insensitive, but professionally inadequate.*

PREP. **to** *She was inadequate to the demands that were made on her.*

inadvisable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | make sth** *Her condition made surgery inadvisable.* **| feel sth, think sth**

ADV. **highly** *It was thought highly inadvisable for young women to go there alone.*

inappropriate *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | make sth** *The size of the machines makes them inappropriate for domestic use.* **| consider sth, feel sth, judge sth, regard sth as, see sth as, think sth** *It was felt inappropriate by some that such a serious occasion should include dancing.*

ADV. **highly, particularly, singularly, very** *This treatment was singularly inappropriate in her case.* **| completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly, wholly | increasingly | somewhat | clearly | embarrassingly, grotesquely | culturally**

PREP. **for** *Your bright red coat would be quite inappropriate for a funeral.* **| to** *The existing library is totally inappropriate to our needs.*

inattention *noun*

ADJ. **momentary**

PREP. **~ to** *He was dismissed for inattention to his duty.*

PHRASES **a moment of inattention** *One moment of inattention when driving could be fatal.*

inaudible *adj.*

VERBS be | become

ADV. quite, totally | almost, practically, virtually *His voice was almost inaudible.* **| largely**

PREP. to *The sound is inaudible to the human ear.*

inaugurate *verb*

ADV. **formally, officially** *The assembly was formally inaugurated on December 13.*

inauguration *noun*

ADJ. **formal | presidential**

VERB + INAUGURATION **attend | mark** *a ceremony to mark the inauguration of the president's third term i*

INAUGURATION + VERB **be held, take place**

INAUGURATION + NOUN **ceremony | speech**

incapable *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, prove, seem | become | make sb, render sb** *The wine had made him incapable of thinking clearly.* **| adjudge sb, deem sb**

ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, totally, utterly, wholly | almost | largely | clearly | inherently | constitutionally, temperamentally** *She was constitutionally incapable of bad temper.* **| physically** *He was apparently physically incapable of lowering his voice.* **| mentally** *This type of arrangement remains valid even if you become mentally incapable.*

PREP. **of** *Computers are incapable of creative thought.*

incapacitate *verb* **be incapacitated**

ADV. **severely | totally** *By this time my father was totally incapacitated by his illness.* **| temporarily | mentally, physically**

incarnation *noun*

ADJ. **current, latest, modern, new, present** *(figurative) In its new incarnation, the car has a more rounded body shape.* **| last | earlier, previous | future**

PREP. **~ as** *her previous incarnation as a Norse explorer*

incense *nou*n

ADJ. **fragrant**

VERB + INCENSE **burn**

INCENSE + NOUN **stick | burner**

PHRASES **a scent/smell of incense**

incentive *noun*

ADJ. **big, considerable, great, massive | powerful, strong | adequate, sufficient | main, major | added, additional, extra, more | less | real | direct** *The most direct financial incentive to prevent rubbish is to charge people by the amount of rubbish they put out.* **| important | positive | special | commercial, economic, financial, fiscal, monetary | cash | price, tax | sales | work | government**

VERB + INCENTIVE **act as, be** *He argues that the free supply of skilled labour will act as an incentive for employees to be more diligent.* **| have** *She had the added incentive of being within reach of the world record.* **| need | give (sb/sth), offer (sb/sth), provide (sb/sth with) | create** *The government has created tax incentives to encourage investment.* **| increase | reduce | undermine** *High taxation rates have undermined work incentives.* **| remove**

INCENTIVE + NOUN **programme, scheme, system** *The company operates a share incentive scheme for its workers.* **| payment**

PREP. **~ to** *an incentive to investment*

PHRASES **have every incentive** *The absence of penalties for anti-competitive behaviour means that firms have every incentive to engage in price-fixing.* **| a lack of incentive** *Low levels of profitability mean there is a lack of incentive to undertake new investment.*

incest *noun*

ADJ. **brother-sister, father-daughter, etc.**

VERB + INCEST **criminalize, forbid, prohibit** *taboos forbidding incest*

INCEST + NOUN **survivor, victim | taboo**

PREP. **~ between** *incest between brother and sister* > Note at CRIME(for more verbs)

inch *noun* > Note at MEASURE

incidence *noun*

ADJ. **great, high** *There is a greater incidence of cancer in the families of radiation workers.* **| low | increased/increasing, rising | actual | overall | annual | recorded** *the highest recorded incidence of air pollution*

VERB + INCIDENCE **have, show** *The country had the lowest incidence of Aids cases proportional to its population. The medical histories of our patients show a high incidence of past diseases.* **| increase, raise | reduce | find** *They found an increased incidence of childhood leukaemia in some areas.* **| measure | compare** *We compared the incidence of coronary heart disease and total mortality.* **| analyse, consider, investigate | explain** *The lack of vitamins may explain the higher incidence of heart disease.*

INCIDENCE + VERB **increase | decrease, fall**

INCIDENCE + NOUN **rate** *an incidence rate of 4 or 5 per 10,000 of the population*

PREP. **~ among** *The report analyses the incidence of cancer among people aged 0?24.* **| ~ in** *The study noted an increased incidence of heart disease in women.*

PHRASES **a decrease/an increase/a variation in the incidence of sth**

incident *noun*

ADJ. **major, serious | little, minor, small, trivial | further** *After nearly falling twice, she managed to make it to the top of the cliff without further incident.* **| whole** *He came to regret the whole incident.* **| actual, real/real-life** *The story is based on an actual incident.* **| alleged | reported | recorded | latest, recent | past | bad, horrific, horrifying, nasty, terrible, ugly, unpleasant, unsavoury** *some of the worst incidents of urban violence* **| violent | fatal, tragic | dramatic | controversial | famous | regrettable, unfortunate | embarrassing | bizarre, curious,** mysterious, strange, unusual | **amusing | unrelated, separate** *The police said that two men had been arrested after the match in unrelated incidents.* **| isolated** *It is feared that the attack may not have been an isolated incident.* **| scattered** *scattered incidents of violence across the country* **| domestic | international | border** *Talks between the neighbouring countries were called off following a border incident.* **| racial | diplomatic** *An error in the translation nearly caused a diplomatic incident.* **| terrorist | nuclear | bomb/bombing, shooting, stabbing | pollution | off-the-ball** *(sport) She received a serious jaw injury in an off-the-ball incident.*

VERB + INCIDENT **cause, provoke | be responsible for** *The group is believed to have been responsible for several terrorist incidents.* **| be involved in** *The hot-headed tennis star became involved in an incident with the umpire.* **| deal with, handle** *The incident was extremely well handled.* **| avoid, prevent | regret | see, witness | recall, remember** *He recalled a similar incident 14 months earlier.* **| forget | describe, recount** *She described the incident as outrageous. They all laughed as he recounted the amusing incident.* **| discuss, talk about | play down** *the government's desire to play down the incident* **| report** *The pedestrian who had nearly been run over reported the incident to the police.* **| investigate | be hurt in, be** injured in, be killed in | pass **(off) without, proceed without, take place without** *The demonstration passed without incident.*

INCIDENT + VERB **happen, occur, take place | arise (from/out of sth)** *incidents arising out of an industrial dispute* **| involve sb/sth** *a minor incid* | cause sth, lead to sth, spark sth (off) *The incident sparked off a riot which lasted three days.*

INCIDENT + NOUN **room** *An incident room was set up at a police station near the site of the crash.*

PREP. **following an/the ~** *He was asked to leave the club following an incident at a training camp.* **| in an/the ~** *Three soldiers were wounded in the incident.* **| over**

an/the ~ *She was never disciplined over the incident.* **| without ~** *The patrol had covered 200 miles without incident.*

incidental *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | consider sth, declare sth, deem sth** *The fact that the concert made a profit was considered incidental.*

ADV. **completely, entirely, purely** *Any resemblance of a character in this book to a living person is purely incidental.* **| merely** *Information skills are not merely incidental to the curriculum but central to it.* **| almost | seemingly**

PREP. **to** *It's just a risk incidental to the job.*

incision *noun*

ADJ. **deep | small, tiny | abdominal, etc. | surgical**

VERB + INCISION **make** *The surgeon made a small incision in the patient's cornea.*

incite *verb*

ADV. **deliberately**

PREP. **to** *deliberately inciting the crowd to violence*

inclination *noun*

ADJ. **strong | slight** *I did not feel the slightest inclination to hurry.* **| true | natural, own, personal** *The king's own inclination was always towards a pro-French policy.* **| homosexual, sexual | artistic, political**

VERB + INCLINATION **feel, have | show | lack | curb** *Hopes of advancement in the company may curb any inclination to deviate from the requirements of superiors.* **| follow** *In matters of dress she followed her personal inclinations rather than fashion.*

PREP. **by ~** *He is a teacher by occupation but a philosopher by inclination.* **| ~ for** *an inclination for war* **| ~ towards** *She has no inclination towards mysticism.*

PHRASES **the time nor/or the inclination** *I have neither the time nor the inclination to play stupid games!*

incline *verb*

1 **bend forward**

ADV. **slightly** *Luke inclined his head slightly in acknowledgement.* **| graciously, politely**

2 **lean/slope**

ADV. **gently, steeply**

PREP. **towards** *The land inclined gently towards the shore.*

inclined *adj.*

1 **wanting to do sth**

VERBS **be, feel, seem** *I only write when I feel inclined to. There's time for a swim if you feel so inclined.*

ADV. **strongly, very | rather** *I'm rather inclined to wait a few days before deciding.* **| favourably**

PREP. **towards** *Advertising aims to make people aware of a product and favourably inclined towards it.*

2 **tending/likely to do sth**

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become, grow**

ADV. **strongly, very | increasingly | a bit, half, a little, rather, slightly** *I'm half inclined to believe you. She's rather inclined to become impatient.* **| naturally | criminally, liberally, mystically, romantically, suicidally** *The club was a notorious hang-out for the criminally inclined.*

PREP. **to** *(formal) people who are naturally inclined to melancholy*

PHRASES **that way inclined** *(informal) What's that? The 'Model Railway Journal'? I didn't know you were that way inclined* (= interested in model railways).

3 **having a natural ability for sth**

VERBS **appear, be, seem**

ADV. **academically, artistically, musically** *children who are academically inclined*

inclusion *noun*

ADJ. **possible** *We welcome readers' letters for possible inclusion on this page.*

VERB + INCLUSION **be worthy of, justify, merit, warrant** *Some words are too infrequent to be worthy of inclusion in the dictionary.* **| be eligible for, be suitable for, qualify for** *All work by current students is eligible for inclusion in the journal.* **| be unsuitable for | be available for | consider sth for, welcome sth for | welcome, accept** *The rebels refused to accept the inclusion of representatives of the existing regime in the negotiations.* **| prevent** *They tried to prevent the inclusion of any wording in the statement that would cause offence.*

PREP. **for ~** *an article for inclusion in the newsletter*

PHRASES **criteria for inclusion** *There are strict criteria for inclusion in the competition.*

inclusive *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **fully** *a fully inclusive price*

PREP. **of** *The charge is inclusive of food.*

PHRASES **all inclusive** *The price is all inclusive.*

income *noun* PREP. **on an ~** *Many families on a low income are dependent on state support.* **| ~ from** *income from tourism*

PHRASES **the distribution/redistribution of income, a drop in income, income and expenditure** *Every company must keep control of its income and expenditure.* **| income per capita/head** *Real income per head of population was at a low point five years ago.* **| a source of income > Note at PERCENT (for more verbs) > Special page at BUSINESS**

ADJ. **above-average, high, large | sufficient | average** *Average incomes are rising more slowly.* **| below-average, low, meagre,** small | rising | additional *They hope that the lottery will provide additional income for charities.* **| total | future | permanent, secure | regular, steady | annual, monthly, weekly | national | per capita** ***the average*** *per capita income* **| personal,** private *He has a large private income on top of what he earns as a teacher.* **| family, household | gross, pre-tax | taxable | after-tax, net, post-tax | disposable | real | earned | unearned | money** *the money incomes of individuals* **| retirement | capital, fee, foreign, investment**

VERB + INCOME **have | receive** *She received an income for life as a result of her father's will.* **| earn, generate, provide (sb with)** *Financial assets have the advantage of earning income.*

The return on your investment can provide you with regular income. **| boost, increase, supplement** *ways of boosting your retirement income She supplements her income by doing an evening job.* **| reduce | exceed** *For 2001, expenditure exceeded income by £10,000.* **| depend on | live on** *A large number of families in the area are living on below-average incomes.* **| redistribute** *They aim to redistribute income from the rich to the poor.* **| treat sth as** *Interest is treated as income for tax purposes.*

INCOME + VERB **arise (from sth), come from sth, derive from sth** *If a person's income arises in the UK it is subject to UK income tax. A lot of our income comes from bank interest.* **| grow, increase, rise | drop, fall | exceed sth**

INCOME + NOUN **bracket, group, level** *Elderly people often belong to a low income group.* **| distribution, redistribution | incomes policy** *There are internal disputes over the party's incomes policy.* **| support** *A single mother of three, she relies on income support.* **| statement** *a company's income statement* **| tax**

incompatibility *noun*

ADJ. **basic | inherent | mutual** *the mutual incompatibility of socialist and capitalist economic systems*

VERB + INCOMPATIBILITY **demonstrate** *The disastrous merger demonstrated the incompatibility of the two companies.*

PREP. **~ between** *Incompatibility between systems has been a major problem for video users.* **| ~ with** *Critics of the new machine point to its incompatibility with other products on the market.*

PHRASES **grounds of incompatibility** *A divorce was sought and granted on grounds of incompatibility.*

incompatible *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, prove, seem | become | consider sth, see sth as**

ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | increasingly | by no means, not entirely, not necessarily** *Scepticism and trust are not necessarily incompatible.* **| largely | somewhat | apparently, seemingly | potentially | simply | basically, fundamentally | clearly | mutually** *The two systems are mutually incompatible.*

PREP. **with** *This behaviour is completely incompatible with his role as a teacher.*

incompetence *noun*

ADJ. **gross, monumental | sheer | alleged | economic, professional, technical | government, managerial, police**

VERB + INCOMPETENCE **display** *He displayed his incompetence by turning in a report that was full of errors.* **| tolerate** *I will not tolerate your incompetence any longer!* **| accuse sb/sth of, allege | be dismissed for**

PREP. **~ at/in** *incompetence in writing* **| ~ on the part of** *Several officers had alleged incompetence on the part of the general.*

incompetent *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be | adjudge sb/sth, consider sb/sth** *I know my boss considers me incompetent.*

ADV. **grossly, hopelessly, singularly** *a grossly incompetent piece of reporting* **| completely, totally, utterly | managerially, socially, technically | mentally**

PREP. **at** *He is utterly incompetent at his job.*

incomplete *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain** *Her collection remained incomplete.* **| leave sth** *The building was left incomplete.*

ADV. **seriously, very, woefully** *Any view of Shostakovich is seriously incomplete without knowledge of these recordings.* **| somewhat | inevitably, necessarily** *We begin with a brief and necessarily incomplete review of UK statistics.* **| unfortunately**

incomprehensible *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | remain | find sth** *She found his accent virtually incomprehensible.*

ADV. **completely, quite, totally, utterly | almost, nearly, virtually | largely | pretty**

PREP. **to** *Latin verse remained completely incomprehensible to me.*

inconceivable *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | find sth** *She found the idea quite inconceivable.*

ADV. **quite, totally, utterly, wholly | almost, practically, virtually**

PREP. **to** *The thought of leaving her family was inconceivable to her.*

inconclusive *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | remain**

ADV. **largely | fairly, rather, somewhat | apparently | ultimately | curiously**
the curiously inconclusive finish to the symphony

incongruous *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | find sth**

ADV. **entirely, utterly | doubly | a little, rather, somewhat** *I found the scene somewhat incongruous.*

inconsistency *noun*

ADJ. **serious | glaring | apparent | internal** *Researchers have found that internal inconsistencies in hospital case notes are common.* **| logical**

VERB + INCONSISTENCY **contain | be filled with** *The script is filled with logical inconsistencies.* **| lead to, result in** *The lack of a clear set of competition rules resulted in inconsistency in the awarding of prizes.* **| find, see, spot** *The program has found an inconsistency in the database files. She was quick to spot the inconsistencies between his two reports.* **| point out, reveal** *Commentators have pointed out the inconsistencies in the government's financial policy.* **| remove, resolve** *The amendment will remove the inconsistency between the two laws.*

INCONSISTENCY + VERB **emerge | creep in, creep into sth** *Inconsistencies began to creep into his testimony.*

PREP. **~ in** *inconsistencies in the evidence*

inconsistent *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem**

ADV. **highly, very | quite, totally, wholly | not necessarily | rather, somewhat | apparently | clearly, plainly | internally, logically** *Her argument is internally inconsistent.* **| mutually** *The two accounts are mutually inconsistent.*

PREP. **in** *The company is inconsistent in the way it disciplines staff.* **| with** *His statement was inconsistent with other accounts of the events.*

incontinence *noun*

ADJ. **faecal, urinary | stress**

VERB + INCONTINENCE **suffer from**

INCONTINENCE + NOUN **pad**

inconvenience *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, serious | minor | public** *The rail strike is likely to cause considerable public inconvenience.* **| administrative**

VERB + INCONVENIENCE **have, suffer | avoid** *I chose a different route to avoid the inconvenience of going through the town centre.* **| cause (sb), put sb to** *I don't want to put you to any inconvenience.* **| minimize, save (sb)** *You could have fetched me from the airport and saved me the inconvenience of having to take the bus!* **| apologize for, regret** *This shop is closed today for staff training. We regret any inconvenience caused.*

INCONVENIENCE + VERB **arise from sth** *inconvenience arising from errors in the timetable*

PREP. **~ to** *Every effort will be made to minimize inconvenience to customers while work is in progress.*

PHRASES **with a minimum of inconvenience** *The club management will try to ensure that the building work is carried out with the minimum of inconvenience to guests.*

inconvenience *verb*

ADV. **greatly** *The general public has been greatly inconvenienced by this strike.*

inconvenient *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become | find sth**

ADV. **extremely, highly, most, terribly, very** *She called at a most inconvenient time.* **| a bit, rather, somewhat | politically** *Further environmental legislation could be politically inconvenient for the government.*

PREP. **for** *Would this afternoon be inconvenient for you?* **| to** *This is a time of the evening that is inconvenient to many viewers.*

incorporate *verb*

ADV. **fully | largely | clearly | expressly** *These conditions must be expressly incorporated into the contract of employment.* **| properly | gradually | quickly | eventually, finally | easily, readily** *These new features can easily be incorporated.* **| neatly | effectively | satisfactorily, successfully | necessarily | forcibly** *the countries which Stalin forcibly incorporated into the Soviet empire*

PREP. **as** *In 1940 the area was incorporated as part of the city of London.* **| in** *The data is now incorporated in the total figures.* **| into** *We can incorporate this information into our report.* **| within** *Results are incorporated within personalized medical records.*

incorrect *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | consider sth**

ADV. **quite, totally | clearly, obviously | simply** *That statement is simply incorrect.* **| factually, grammatically, politically, technically** *a factually incorrect statement*

increase *noun*

ADJ. **big, considerable, dramatic, enormous, exponential, huge, large, major, marked, massive, significant, substantial, vast | moderate, modest, small | apparent | rapid, sharp | gradual, steady | fivefold, tenfold, etc. | 10%, etc. | net, overall | across-the-board** *The pay rise represented an across-the-board increase of between 9% for the highest paid and 32% for the lowest paid worker.* **| annual, monthly, etc. | dividend, fare, pay, price, rent, salary, tax, temperature, wage**

VERB + INCREASE **experience, see, show** *Many parts of the country have experienced an increase in unemployment. This year saw an increase in the number of job applicants. Profits show a steady increase.* **| enjoy** *The country is enjoying the biggest increase in business confidence for years.* **| achieve** *We achieved a small increase in profits of £3,257.* **| bring (about), cause, lead to, result in** *Intensive farming has brought about an increase in outbreaks of food poisoning. The war resulted in a massive increase in government spending.* **| reflect, represent | entail, involve, mean** *The measures to improve the health service will involve an increase in government spending.* **| announce, report** *The company reported a 9.5% increase in third quarter losses.*

INCREASE + VERB **occur**

PREP. **on the ~** *Burglaries in the area are on the increase.* **| ~ in** *There has been an increase in demand for two-bedroom flats.* **| ~ on/over** *The figures show a sharp increase on last year's turnover.* **| ~ to** *a dividend increase to 11.4 pence*

PHRASES **a rate of increase**

increase *verb*

ADV. considerably, dramatically, enormously, greatly, significantly, substantially | slightly | gradually | rapidly, sharply, steeply | steadily | twofold, threefold, etc. *Sales increased almost fourfold in this period.*

VERB + INCREASE be expected to, be likely to *Demand is expected to increase over the next decade.*

PREP. by *The budget has increased by more than a third in the last year.* **| from, in** *to increase in amount/number/price/size* **| to** *Last month the reward was increased from £20,000 to £40,000.* **| with** *Disability increases with age.*

incredible *adj.*

1 impossible to believe

VERBS **be, seem, sound | find sth** *I find this quite incredible!*

ADV. **really, truly | absolutely, quite | just, simply | almost**

PREP. **to** *It seems incredible to me that we didn't think of this before.*

2 extremely good/extremely large

VERBS **be, look, smell, taste | find sth**

ADV. **really, truly | absolutely, quite | just, simply | pretty** *You're pretty incredible, Belinda.*

indebted *adj.*

1 **feeling grateful to sb**

VERBS **be, feel | remain**

ADV. **deeply, greatly, much, profoundly**

PREP. **to** *I am deeply indebted to all the doctors and nurses who treated me.*

2 **owing money to sb**

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **heavily, highly, severely** *The company is heavily indebted. highly indebted countries*

PREP. **to** *indebted to the bank*

indecency *nou*n

ADJ. **gross | public**

PHRASES **an act of indecency** > Note at CRIME(for verbs)

indecent *adj.*

1 **involving naked people, sex, etc.**

VERBS **be | class sth as, consider sth, regard sth as, think sth** *photographs that are classed as indecent*

ADV. **grossly, positively** *That skirt of hers is positively indecent.*

2 **not morally right**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **positively** *The rush to get hold of their father's money seemed positively indecent.* **| almost** *She started a new relationship with almost indecent haste.*

indefensible *adj.*

VERBS **be | find sth** *I find such behaviour indefensible.*

ADV. **totally | morally, politically** *It would be morally indefensible for her to desert her father now.*

independence *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great | complete, full, total | relative** *The council's relative independence of the government means it can negotiate its own agreements.* **| nominal | genuine, real, true | de facto** *Aquitaine's de facto independence from the king of France* **| continued/continuing, growing | hard-won | local, national | academic, economic, editorial, financial, judicial, personal, political, professional**

QUANT. **degree, measure**

VERB + INDEPENDENCE **have** *Young people have more independence these days.* **| lack | enjoy, value** *I value my independence too much to get married.* **| display, show** *She displayed independence of judgement in choosing a career quite different from that of her parents.* **| assert** *Edward III tried to assert his independence of the regime at court.* **| achieve, gain, win** *Mexico achieved independence from Spain in 1821.* **| bring (about)** *the need to bring independence to the country a colonial crisis which brought about independence* **| declare, proclaim | ensure, maintain, preserve, retain, sustain** *The army is committed to ensuring the independence of the country.* **| give up, lose** *She doesn't want to lose her hard-won independence.* **| regain, restore | encourage, promote** *Parents should encourage independence in their children.* **| undermine** *Economic aid tends to undermine the national independence of third world countries.* **| seek | call for, demand | vote for | give sb/sth, grant sb/sth | recognize** *They have agreed to recognize the breakaway republic's independence.*

INDEPENDENCE + VERB **come** *Independence came to the British colonial territories in Africa in the late fifties and early sixties.*

INDEPENDENCE + NOUN **day | celebrations | movement | struggle**

PREP. **at ~** *Namibia became a full member of the UN at independence.* **| ~ from** *independence from Spain* **| ~ of** *the church's independence of the state independence of mind*

PHRASES **a declaration of independence, a lack of independence, the loss of independence, a sign/symbol of independence** *The car became a symbol of independence.* **| the struggle for independence, a war of independence** *the American War of Independence*

independent *adj.*

1 **not needing other people**

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become | remain | make sb** *Travelling in Asia has made her a lot more independent.*

ADV. **fiercely, sturdily, very** *Many disabled people are fiercely independent.* **| completely | fairly, pretty, quite | economically, financially**

PREP. **of** *By the age of eighteen he was completely independent of his parents.*

2 **not influenced or controlled by anyone else**

VERBS **be | become | remain | make sth | declare sth** *In 1961 the country was declared independent.*

ADV. **completely, entirely, fully, genuinely, quite, totally, truly, wholly | almost, fairly, largely, virtually | increasingly | effectively, essentially** *The country has pursued an effectively independent line on military issues.* **| nominally, supposedly | newly** *newly independent countries* **| politically**

PREP. **from** *The country became fully independent from France in 1960.* **| of** *an organization that is independent of the government*

indestructible *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem**

ADV. **completely | almost, virtually** *Their shells are so hard they are virtually indestructible.* **| seemingly**

index *noun*

1 **list of names/topics in a book**

ADJ. **comprehensive, complete | detailed | general | alphabetical**

VERB + INDEX **appear in, be in** *Although the book was devoted to cancer, the word 'cancer' did not even appear in the index.* **| consult, look (sth up) in** *Why don't you look up her name in the index?* **| compile**

INDEX + VERB **give sth, list sth** *The index only gives the main towns.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Is there any reference to it in the index?* **| ~ to** *It's a general index to the whole work.*

2 **ordered record of books/files**

ADJ. **subject, title | card | computer, computerized**

VERB + INDEX **have, keep** *We keep a card index of all the titles on the shelves.* **| compile, create | consult, look (sth up) in, search** *Look up 'The Waste Land' in the index. Search the index to find the address of the data file.*

INDEX + NOUN **card**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *cards in a card index*

3 **system showing the level of sth; measure of sth**

ADJ. **good, reliable, sensitive | high | low | weighted | official | general** *a general index calculated from death and population information* **| world** *The world index fell 3.1%.* **| cost-of-living, market, retail price | futures, share, stock | Dow Jones, FT-SE 100, etc.**

VERB + INDEX **have** *Those who lived in the inner cities had a high index of deprivation.* **| use (sth as)** *The test results were used as an index of language proficiency.* **| compile, construct, create | calculate, compute** *The index was calculated with a computer.* **| publish** *The retail price index is published monthly.* **| drag, drive,**

push, take *A wave of frenzied buying pushed the index up 136.2 points.*

INDEX + VERB **measure sth** *an index designed to measure monthly changes in the volume of industrial production* **| be based on sth** *an index based on incidents causing a loss of production* **| be linked to sth** *The increase in our standard rates will be linked to the retail price index.* **| cover sth** *an index covering some 1,700 companies* **| open | close, end** *The hundred shares index closed down 15 points.*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *dividends on shares in the index* **| on an/the ~** *people dealing in options on the FT-SE 100 index*

PHRASES **a drop/fall in an index** *a 28.2 point drop in the FT-SE 100 index* **| changes in an index, an increase in an index, as measured by an index** *Inflation, as measured by the retail price index, is expected to drop.* > Note at PERCENT (for more verbs)

indicate *verb*

ADV. **clearly | not necessarily** *Expense does not necessarily indicate worth.*

VERB + INDICATE **appear to, seem to** *These facts would seem to indicate that the family was wealthy.* **| be used to** *Symbols are used to indicate the facilities available at each hotel.*

PREP. **to** *These figures indicate to me that the company is in serious trouble.*

indication *noun*

ADJ. **firm, good, great, strong | accurate, reliable, true | clear, definite, sure | important | useful, valuable | sufficient | approximate, broad, fair, general, reasonable, rough | simple | positive | initial, preliminary | outward, visual, visible** *Rising interest rates were an outward indication of the change in government attitude to economic controls. Some car alarms have no visual indication that they are in operation.*

VERB + INDICATION **be, constitute, serve as** *The popularity of the government building project served as an indication of public support.* **| have** *A government spokesperson said they had no indication who was responsible for the attack.* **| give (sb), provide (sb with)** *His early successes gave some indication of his ability.* **| get, receive | find, see** *The researchers say they can find no indication that television has harmful physical effects on children.* **| regard sth as, see sth as, take sth as** *The comments made by management may be taken as an indication of how they felt about their workers.*

INDICATION + VERB **show sth, suggest sth** *Indications show that at least 2,000 more businesses will go bankrupt before the end of the year.*

PREP. **amid ~s of** *Amid indications of growing disorder in the capital, the president is to make a speech on television tonight.* **| ~ as to** *He gave us no indication as to what was the matter.* **| ~ to** *This is an indication to drivers who break the law that they will be punished*

PHRASES **(all) the indications are that …** *All the indications are that she will make a full recovery.* **| there is every indication that …** *There's every indication that the operation has been a success.*

indicative *adj.*

VERBS **be | consider sth, interpret sth as, regard sth as, see sth as, take sth as** *The rise in unemployment is seen as indicative of a new economic recession.*

ADV. **clearly | (not) necessarily** *Recurrent dreams are not necessarily indicative of psychological problems.*

PREP. **of**

indicator *noun*

1 **sign showing what sth is like**

ADJ. **good, reliable, sure | poor, unreliable** *Level of education is actually quite a poor indicator of ability to run a business well.* **| sensitive | crude, partial, rough | simple | key, leading, main, major | important, significant | useful, valuable | economic, financial, performance, social, socio-economic** *performance indicators such as language and numeracy skills*

VERB + INDICATOR **be, serve as** *These warts can serve as an indicator of other infections.* **| provide (sb with) | regard sth as, see sth as, take sth as** *Gold prices are often seen as an indicator of inflation.* **| use (sth as) | develop** *It is still difficult to develop indicators for many concepts used in social science.*

INDICATOR + VERB **show sth, suggest sth** *Economic indicators suggest that a recovery is on the way.*

PREP. **~ for** *an indicator for the presence of minerals*

indictment *noun*

1 **sign that sth is bad/wrong**

ADJ. **powerful | damning, scathing, terrible** *Her speech was a scathing indictment of the government's record on crime.* **| sad**

2 **accusing sb of a crime**

ADJ. **criminal | fresh**

VERB + INDICTMENT **issue, bring** *A New York jury brought criminal indictments against the founder of the organization.* **| be charged on, be convicted on, be tried on | plead (not) guilty to**

INDICTMENT + VERB **charge (sb/sth with sth)** *an indictment charging theft*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Two men were named in the indictment.* **| on ~** *a trial on indictment* **| ~ against** *They issued an indictment against them.* **| ~ for** *She was convicted on an indictment for conspiracy.*

indifference *noun*

ADJ. **complete, supreme, total | a certain | growing | studied | apparent, feigned, pretended, seeming | bland, casual | callous, cold, cool, cruel | public**

VERB + INDIFFERENCE **feel | express, show** *She showed total indifference to his fate.* **| affect, assume, feign, pretend** *He feigned indifference to criticism of his work.* **| regard sb/sth with** *The more recent members of staff regard the change in corporate culture with a certain indifference.* **| treat sb/sth with | be met with** *Constable's landscapes met with indifference when they were first exhibited.* **| be resigned to** *The president is resigned to public indifference to his latest initiative.*

PREP. **with an ~** *Ellis spoke with a casual indifference that he did not feel.* **| ~ to/ towards** *his indifference towards art*

PHRASES **an attitude of indifference** *She adopted an attitude of supreme indifference.* **| a matter of indifference** *It's a matter of indifference to me whether he goes or not.*

indifferent *adj.*

1 **not interested**

VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem, sound** *He appeared indifferent to her suffering.* **| become | remain**

ADV. **completely, quite, totally | almost** *Pat sounded almost indifferent.* **| largely | apparently | coldly**

PREP. **about** *Most staff were indiffferent about the plans.* **| to** *He was coldly indifferent to other people.*

2 **of low quality**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very** *We enjoyed the day, in spite of very indifferent weather.* **| rather** *a rather indifferent performance*

PHRASES **good, bad and indifferent** *The festival has the usual mix of films?good, bad and indifferent.*

indigenous *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **truly** *examples of truly indigenous music*

PREP. **to** *The tree is indigenous to China.*

indigestion *noun*

ADJ. **serious, severe | acute, chronic | slight**

VERB + INDIGESTION **get, have, suffer from | give sb** *Rich food always gives me indigestion.*

INDIGESTION + NOUN **tablet** > Special page at ILLNESS

indignant *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, grow, wax** *She waxes righteously indignant if anyone tries to contradict her.* **| make sb**

ADV. **extremely, fiercely, highly, very** *'He deserves to be thrashed,' she protested, fiercely indignant.* **| almost, mildly, quite, rather | justly, righteously**

PREP. **about/over** *She became rather indignant over suggestions that she had lied.* **| at** *They were quite indignant at his remarks.*

indignation *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, high** *His response was one of high indignation.* **| widespread | public | moral, righteous | mock**

VERB + INDIGNATION **be filled with, be full of, feel** *They were full of righteous indignation at the thought of being cheated.* **| express, show | blush/burn/flush with, quiver/shudder/tremble with** *His plump face flushed with indignation. Bertha's voice quivered with indignation.* **| arouse, cause, provoke**

INDIGNATION + VERB **grow, rise** *Indignation grew as more nightclubs opened. She could feel her indignation rising.*

PREP. **in ~** *She turned to him in indignation.* **| with ~** *He refused it with some indignation.* **| ~ about/at/over** *The government expressed its indignation over the way the incident had been handled.* **| ~ against** *public indignation against the government*

indiscretion *noun*

ADJ. **serious | minor, slight, small | personal | political | youthful | dietary, sexual**

VERB + INDISCRETION **commit** *He had committed a minor sexual indiscretion.* **| regret** *I instantly regretted my indiscretion and asked her to keep the news to herself.* **| report** *He had never forgiven her for reporting his indiscretion in front of his friends.*

indispensable *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become | make sb/sth** *He had soon made himself indispensable.* **| consider sb/sth**

ADV. **absolutely | almost, virtually**

PREP. **for** *Written sources are considered virtually indispensable for today's history teaching.* **| in** *These drugs are almost indispensable in the fight against the disease.* **| to** *skills which turned out to be indispensable to her career*

individual *noun*

ADJ. **outstanding, talented | key | powerful | creative | average, ordinary** *Their research shows that the average individual watches around three and a half hours of television per day.* **| private** *He was carrying out his functions as a trustee in the course of his business, rather than as a private individual.* **| single | particular, certain** *The motives influencing a particular individual may change from time to time.* **| autonomous, independent** *His philosophy is about becoming aware of oneself as an autonomous individual.* **| isolated** *Society does not consist of isolated individuals, but people in a network of relationships.* **| unique** *She saw the artist as a unique individual, possessing a heightened awareness of reality.* **| like-minded** *a group of like-minded individuals* **| named** *The book recommends that you sign 'Yours sincerely' if you are send* **| qualified** *We welcome applications from suitably qualified individuals.* **| human** *We know that all human individuals are unique.*

VERB + INDIVIDUAL **treat sb as** *The teacher should treat each pupil as an individual.*

INDIVIDUAL + VERB **vary** *Although individuals vary widely, the bones of the average female skeleton are smaller and lighter than the male.*

INDIVIDUAL + NOUN **level** *His writings are concerned with religious phenomena at the individual level.*

PHRASES **any/no/one individual** *No single individual had done so much for the development of the motor vehicle.* **| concern for the individual, the freedom of the individual** *the issue of the freedom of the individual versus the intervention of the state* **| a group of individuals** *She had taken a group of individuals and made them into a superb team.* | **the individual concerned** *It's up to the individual concerned to contact the police.* **| the needs of the individual** *Each course has to be tailored to the needs of the individual.* **| respect for the individual, vary from individual to individual** *Eating habits are bound to vary from individual to individual.*

individuality *noun*

ADJ. **human**

VERB + INDIVIDUALITY **have** *Each song has its own individuality.* **| express, reflect, show** *clothes that reflect your individuality* **| give sth** *The small items of hand-crafted furniture give individuality to the room.* **| recognize** *This book will help you recognize your individuality.* **| retain | lose**

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of individuality, the suppression of individuality** *Becoming part of a team should not mean the suppression of individuality.*

inducement *noun*

ADJ. **big, massive, powerful, strong | sufficient | extra, further | positive | cash, financial**

VERB + INDUCEMENT **offer (sb/sth as), provide (sb/sth as)** *The higher payments were offered as an inducement.* **| receive**

PREP. **~ for** *The reduced tax is a major inducement for first-time buyers.* **| ~ to** *an inducement to crime and violence inducements to employees*

indulge *verb*

VERB + INDULGE **be able to, be free to, can**

PREP. **in** *She was free to indulge in a little romantic daydreaming.* **| with** *For a special treat indulge yourself with one of these luxury flavours of ice cream.*

indulgence *noun*

1 **having whatever you want**

ADJ. **excessive | personal, self-** *guilty of self-indulgence* **| sexual**

PREP. **~ in** *She allowed herself only a few moments' indulgence in self-pity.*

PHRASES **a life of indulgence**

2 **sth you allow yourself**

ADJ. **expensive, private, small**

VERB + INDULGENCE **allow yourself** *As a relief from work she allowed herself a few small indulgences.*

3 **acceptance of change to the normal way of doing sth**

VERB + INDULGENCE **ask, beg, request** *He begged the audience's indulgence to read some passages from his latest book.* **| grant** *(law)*, **show (sb)** *He attacked the indulgence shown to religious dissenters.*

industrial action *noun*

ADJ. **continuing | unlawful**

VERB + INDUSTRIAL ACTION **take | threaten | call for | vote for | start | step up** *The union is considering stepping up its industrial action.* **| suspend | stop | take part in, be/become involved in** *His research indicates an increase in the number of women involved in industrial action.* **| support**

PREP. **~ against** *The union is threatening industrial action against the company.* **| ~ by** *industrial action by railway workers* **| ~ in support of** *industrial action in support of demands for a ten per cent salary adjustment* **| ~ over** *to take industrial action over pay*

industrialist *noun*

ADJ. **leading, prominent, top | local | wealthy**

industry *noun*

ADJ. **thriving | important, key, major | (fastest) growing | declining | modern | traditional | cottage** *Weaving and knitting are traditional cottage industries.* | **domestic, international, local, national | private, privatized | government-owned, nationalized, state-run | heavy | light | strategic** *strategic industries such as the extraction of oil and natural gas* | **manufacturing, service** *the shift away from manufacturing to service industry* | **labour-intensive | high-tech/high-technology** | building, construction | **engineering | shipbuilding** | chemical, coal, electricity, **energy, gas, mining, nuclear, oil,** petrochemical | agricultural, **fishing, food, timber | pharmaceutical | automobile, automotive, car, motor | computer, electronics | textiles | advertising | insurance | entertainment, film, music/record | catering, hospitality, hotel, leisure, tourist**

VERB + INDUSTRY **assist, develop, encourage, help, stimulate** *The government decided to encourage industries based on biotechnology. government measures to stimulate new industry* | **run down** *Running down the nuclear industry will result in heavy job losses.* | **damage** *They claim that a commercial port would damage the local tourist industry.* | **cripple, destroy, ruin | nationalize | privatize | regulate | protect** *trade barriers erected to protect domestic industry* | **subsidize** *The state's timber industry is heavily subsidized.* | **interfere in/with** *The government has interfered in industry, with disastrous results, by attempting to alter economic trends.* | **be involved in/with** *More than 140,000 people are directly involved in the industry.* | **enter, go into** *students training to enter the catering industry She decided to leave teaching and go into industry.*

INDUSTRY + VERB **develop, grow up, spring up** *In the favourable economic environment, new light industries are constantly springing up.* | **boom, expand, grow** *The tourist industry is still expanding rapidly.* | **decline, shrink | close down, disappear** *When the railway disappeared, other industries associated with it closed down.* | **compete | produce sth**

INDUSTRY + NOUN **leader | standard** *They hope that the disk drive will become an industry standard.*

PREP. **in/within ~** *In the computer industry, change comes about very rapidly.*

PHRASES **a captain of industry, commerce and industry** *The banks lend money* *to commerce and industry.* **| regulation of (an) industry** *proposals for regulation of the water industry* **| the revival of (an) industry** *the revival of the British film industry* **| a sector of industry, trade and industry** *the Department of Trade and Industry*

inedible *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become | make sth** *These chemicals make the fruit inedible.*

ADV. **totally** *The food was totally inedible.* **| almost**

ineffective *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem** *These policies have proved ineffective.* **| become | make sth, render sth** *The contract was rendered ineffective by this careless wording.*

ADV. **highly, singularly, very | completely, entirely, totally, wholly | largely | pretty, rather, relatively, somewhat | apparently | politically**

PREP. **against** *These weapons are totally ineffective against tanks.* **| in** *chemicals that are very ineffective in killing weeds*

inefficiency *noun*

ADJ. **gross | inherent | bureaucratic, economic, managerial**

VERB + INEFFICIENCY **cause, create, lead to, make for** *Conflict between management and workers makes for inefficiency in the workplace.* **| minimize, reduce | overcome, root out** *We need to root out inefficiencies in the production process.*

INEFFICIENCY + VERB **arise** *This type of inefficiency arises because workers and management are ill-equipped.*

inefficient *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **extremely, grossly, highly, hopelessly, terribly, very | quite, rather, relatively, somewhat | generally | potentially | inherently | notoriously | economically** *an economically inefficient system*

ineligible *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | make sb/sth | consider sb/sth, declare sb/sth, deem sb/sth** *The country had been declared ineligible for World Bank lending.*

PREP. **for** *The new rules have made thousands more people ineligible for legal aid.*

inept *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become**

ADV. **very | quite | rather | politically, socially** *It would be politically inept to cut these training programmes now.*

PREP. **at** *He was rather inept at word games.*

inequality *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, marked, substantial** *Inequalities of income would lead to even greater inequalities in access to health care.* **| real | growing, increased/increasing | global, regional | class, economic, educational, gender, income, pay, racial, sex/sexual, social, socio-economic, structural**

VERB + INEQUALITY **cause, create, lead to** *The introduction of school fees would create inequality between schools.* **| maintain, perpetuate** *Many sociologists have regarded education as central in perpetuating inequality.* **| reinforce** *Sex inequality in pay reinforces class inequality.* **| increase | reduce | remove** *They can build a more harmonious society once inequality and exploitation are removed.* **| rectify, redress** *The country has had some success in redressing racial inequalities.*

INEQUALITY + VERB **exist** *inequalities that exist in wealth and income* **| arise from sth, be based on sth** *inequalities based on racism and social class* **| persist, remain** *Even in the age of compulsory school, inequalities in education have remained.* **| increase | decline**

PREP. **~ between** *economic inequality between men and women* **| ~ in** *gender inequality in education*

PHRASES **inequalities of opportunity/power/wealth, a pattern of inequality**

inert *adj.*

VERBS **be, lie, remain | become**

ADV. **completely** *She lay completely inert on her bed.* **| relatively | chemically** *chemically inert radioactive waste*

inertia *noun*

ADJ. **sheer | bureaucratic, institutional, organizational, political**

VERB + INERTIA **lapse into** *She lapsed into inertia and lay there as if asleep.* **| overcome** *The forces for change in the government are not sufficient to overcome bureaucratic inertia.*

PREP. **out of ~** *He stayed where he was, not because he really wanted to, but out of inertia.* **| through ~** *Projects were frequently abandoned through sheer inertia.*

PHRASES **a state of inertia**

inevitability *noun*

ADJ. **terrible, tragic | a certain | historical**

VERB + INEVITABILITY **have | accept** *She was learning to accept the inevitability of death.*

PREP. **~ about** *The tragedy had a certain inevitability about it.*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of inevitability**

inevitable *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become | make sth** *The scandal made her resignation inevitable.* **| regard sth as, see sth as** *They came to see defeat as inevitable.*

ADV. **absolutely, quite | almost, virtually | apparently, seemingly | probably | historically, politically**

PHRASES **bow to the inevitable** *She bowed to the inevitable* (= accepted a situation in which she had no choice) *and resigned.*

inexhaustible *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem** *Her energy seemed inexhaustible.*

ADV. **virtually | apparently, seemingly**

inexpensive *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very | comparatively, fairly, quite, reasonably, relatively** *Paper is relatively inexpensive here.*

inexperience *noun*

ADJ. **relative | youthful | political**

VERB + INEXPERIENCE **reveal, show** *She showed her inexperience by asking lots of trivial questions.* **| be down to** *The team's defensive errors were down to* (= a result of their) *inexperience.* **| put sth down to** *He put his mistakes down to* (= believed they were caused by his) *inexperience.*

INEXPERIENCE + VERB **show** *Her inexperience in politics did not show as she debated with the other candidates.*

PREP. **because of/from/through ~** *They made mistakes through inexperience.* **| ~ in** *inexperience in teaching*

inexperienced *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem**

ADV. **hopelessly, very | totally** *He was unqualified and totally inexperienced.* **| relatively** *She was still a relatively inexperienced pilot.* **| politically, sexually**

PREP. **in** *She was inexperienced in teaching art.* **| with** *men who are inexperienced with children*

PHRASES **young and inexperienced**

inexplicable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | remain | find sth**

ADV. **completely, quite, totally** *Their actions are completely inexplicable.* **| apparently | otherwise** *This theory makes sense of an otherwise inexplicable phenomenon.*

infancy *noun*

ADJ. **early** *The vaccination is given in early infancy.*

VERB + INFANCY **survive (beyond)** *Their first child did not survive infancy.* **| die in** *She died in infancy.*

PREP. **during/in ~** *Deaths during infancy have fallen dramatically in the last hundred years. (figurative) The new company is still in its infancy.* **| from ~** *from infancy to late childhood* **| since (sb's) ~** *Since her infancy she has been a healthy baby.* **| throughout (sb's) ~** *He was ill many times throughout his infancy.*

infant *noun*

ADJ. **young** *He is studying hearing in very young infants.* **| newborn | unborn | stillborn | pre-term, premature** *jaundice in premature infants* **| full-term | healthy, normal | low birthweight | human** *a book on intellectual development in the human infant* **| female, male | screaming, sleeping** *Marjorie looked down at the sleeping infant in her arms.*

INFANT + NOUN **death, mortality** *countries with high infant mortality* **| child, daughter, son**

PHRASES **sudden infant death syndrome**

infected *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, get**

ADV. **badly, heavily | chronically**

PREP. **with** *patients who are infected with this virus*

infection *noun*

ADJ. **heavy, nasty, serious, severe** | mild, minor, moderate | acute | chronic | recurrent | further | **primary, secondary** *If the primary infection is not treated further outbreaks may occur.* | **new** *Over 90% of all new infections occur in the developing world.* | **rare** | **bacterial, fungal, viral** | **chest, ear, etc.** | **respiratory, urinary, etc.** | **herpes, HIV, etc.**

VERB + INFECTION **have, suffer (from)** *He's suffering from an acute infection of the lower respiratory tract.* | **be at risk from/of, be prone/susceptible/vulnerable to** *Goats appear to be more susceptible to the infection than sheep.* | **be exposed to** *Vaccination is essential to protect people exposed to hepatitis B infection.* | **acquire, catch, contract, develop, get** *She's always getting chest infections.* | **pass (on), spread, transmit** *The infection is passed on through the horse feed.* | **carry** *Almost all the sheep on the farm carried the infection.* | **guard against, protect sb/sth from** *to protect the body from infection* | **avoid, prevent** | **combat, fight** *The virus affects the body's immune system so that it cannot fight infection.* | **fight off, kill** *Normally, white blood cells fight off and kill infections.* | **recover from** | **leave/make sb susceptible to, leave/make sb vulnerable to** | **die from/of** | **diagnose (sb with)** | **treat (sb for)**

INFECTION + VERB **develop, occur** *an infection that occurs in swans* | **spread** *They want to prevent the infection spreading to other parts of the body.* | **cause sth, result in sth** *Heavy lung infections may result in pneumonia.*

PREP. **in~** *In acute infections of the urinary tract the patient may suffer severe pain.* | **~ by** *infection of people by the virus* | **~ from** *infection from sewage water* | **~ through** *infection through unsafe sex* | **~ with** *infection with bacteria*

PHRASES **a cause of infection, the onset of infection** *The drug must be taken from the onset of the infection.* | **resistance to infection** *Taking vitamin C builds up your resistance to infection.* | **a risk of infection, a site of infection** *(medical) The urethra was the primary site of infection* | **a source of infection** *We are trying to trace the source of infection.* | **the spread of infection > Special page at ILLNESS**

infectious *adj*

VERBS **be, remain**

ADV. **highly, very | potentially**

infer *verb*

ADV. **reasonably**

VERB + INFER **can/could | be possible to | be difficult to, be hard to** *It is difficult to infer anything from such scanty evidence.* **| be reasonable to | be wrong to**

PREP. **from** *From this study we can reasonably infer that this behaviour is inherited.*

inference *noun*

ADJ. **fair, logical, reasonable | obvious**

VERB + INFERENCE **draw, make**

INFERENCE + VERB **be based on sth** *inferences based on their answers to a number of set questions*

PREP. **~ about** *In the absence of detailed documentary evidence, we can only make inferences about Minoan religion.* **| ~ from** *The value of data depends on our skill in drawing inferences from it.*

inferior *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem** *Her obvious popularity made me feel inferior.* **| consider sb/sth, regard sb/sth as, see sb/sth as** *Women are often regarded as inferior.*

ADV. **decidedly, distinctly, greatly, markedly, significantly, vastly, very | slightly, somewhat | demonstrably | instrinsically | intellectually, morally, socially, technically**

PREP. **in** *These later paintings are slightly inferior in value.* **| to** *His later work was vastly inferior to his early work.*

inferior *noun*

ADJ. **intellectual, social**

VERB + INFERIOR **consider sb** *She considered everyone her intellectual inferior.*

inferiority *noun*

ADJ. **moral, racial, social** *the myth of racial inferiority* **| numerical** *The invading force, conscious of their numerical inferiority at sea, decided on an airborne attack.*

VERB + INFERIORITY **accept**

INFERIORITY + NOUN **complex** *He had an inferiority complex about his looks.*

PREP. **~ to** *She accepted her inferiority to her rivals.*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of inferiority, a position of inferiority, a sign of inferiority** *Using a false accent over the phone is a sign of inferiority.*

infertility *noun*

ADJ. **female, male**

VERB + INFERTILITY **cause, lead to | treat**

INFERTILITY + NOUN **clinic, treatment**

infested *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **badly, heavily** *The building was heavily infested with cockroaches.*

PREP. **with**

infiltration *noun*

ADJ. **large-scale | communist, right-wing, etc.**

VERB + INFILTRATION **reduce | prevent**

PREP. **~ by** *The police tried to prevent infiltration by drug traffickers.* **| ~ into** *the infiltration of rain into the soil*

infinite *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **almost, practically, virtually** *an almost infinite variety of colours* **| apparently | potentially**

infinitive *noun*

ADJ. **bare** *Modal verbs generally take the bare infinitive.* **| perfect** *You use 'have' to form the perfect infinitive of a verb.* **| passive | split** *The use of the split infinitive is now generally acceptable.*

VERB + INFINITIVE **form | take | split**

infinity *noun*

1 **endless space/time**

VERB + INFINITY **extend into/to, stretch into/to** *Theoretically, a line can extend into infinity.*

PREP. **at ~** *Parallel lines meet at infinity.* **| into ~** *In this weather the cliff face was a foggy drop into infinity.*

2 **number larger than any other**

VERB + INFINITY **approach, tend to/towards** *As x approaches infinity y approaches zero.*

PREP. **at ~** *The usual convention is to choose the reference point at infinity.*

infirm *adj*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **mentally, physically**

infirmity *noun*

ADJ. **mental, physical | increasing**

PHRASES **age and infirmity** *(literary) those incapable of supporting themselves by reason of age and infirmity*

inflamed *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, get**

ADV. **highly, severely, very** *Her joints are severely inflamed.* **| further | acutely | chronically**

inflammable *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly, very** *These gases are highly inflammable.*

inflammation *noun*

ADJ. **painful, severe | mild | acute, chronic | colonic, intestinal, etc.**

VERB + INFLAMMATION **reduce** *Steroids often help reduce the inflammation and itching in the skin.*

PREP. **~ of** *inflammation of the stomach*

PHRASES **signs of inflammation**

inflate *verb*

ADV. **fully | partially**

PREP. **with** *The balloon was kept fully inflated with hydrogen.*

inflated *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **greatly, grossly, hugely, vastly | artificially, falsely** *The prices of meals are often artificially inflated.*

inflation *noun*

ADJ. **high | low, moderate | zero | galloping, raging, rampant, rising, runaway, soaring, spiralling, uncontrollable | double-digit** (= 10 per cent or more) **| consumer-price, price, wage | domestic**

VERB + INFLATION **cause | fuel, push up, raise | beat, bring down/under control, check, combat, control, curb, cut, fight, get down/under control, keep down, keep in check, keep under control, reduce** *policies to beat inflation It is vital that inflation is kept in check.* **| keep pace with** *Wages are not keeping pace with inflation.*

INFLATION + VERB **be up | be down** *Inflation is down to its lowest level in three years.* **| exceed sth, reach sth** *Inflation reached a monthly rate of 5%.* **| average sth, be at sth, run at sth, stand at sth** *Inflation is running at 4%.* **| edge up, go up, increase, rise | fall, go down, slow** *Inflation has slowed to 7%.* **| erode sth** *savings eroded by inflation*

INFLATION + NOUN **figures, rate** *an inflation rate of 2%* **| forecast, target**

PHRASES **the battle/fight against inflation, a drop/fall in inflation, an increase/a rise in inflation** *an increase in inflation to 3.5%* **| a rate of inflation**

inflexible *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem** *The rules seemed arbitrary and inflexible.* **| become | remain**

ADV. **highly, very | completely, totally** *The seven-year period is not totally inflexible.* **| rather, relatively, somewhat** *She's a good teacher, but she can be rather inflexible.*

inflict *verb*

ADV. **deliberately** *When someone deliberately inflicts damage, it is a matter for the police.* **| maliciously, negligently** *(both law) He was charged with maliciously inflicting grievous bodily harm.*

PREP. **on/upon** *They inflicted a humiliating defeat on their rivals.*

influence *noun*

1 **effect sb/sth has; power to control sb/sth**

ADJ. **big, considerable, enormous, great, significant | growing | chief, dominant, major, overwhelming | powerful, profound, strong** *He had a profound influence on modern poets.* **| important | crucial, decisive | undue** *(law) The court found that the bank exerted undue influence over Mrs Black in getting her to sign the contract.* **| beneficial, positive | adverse, corrupting, destructive, disruptive, evil, negative | stabilizing, steadying | calming, restraining | civilizing | direct | pervasive, wide | external, outside** *The religious community wished to be independent of outside influence.* **| foreign | cultural, economic, genetic, political**

VERB + INFLUENCE **have | give sb** *Her wealth gave her influence over affairs of state.* **| exercise, exert, use, wield** *Can you use your influence with the director to get me a part in the film? Drug cartels wielded enormous influence in the city.* **| extend** *The unions have been able to extend their influence over all industries.* **| be under** *The court was told that he was under the influence of alcohol when he committed the offence.* **| come/fall under** *She came under the influence of Sartre at this period.* **| be independent of | show** *Spanish architecture shows Moorish influence.* **| attribute sth to** *Much of his writing can be attributed to the influence of Freud.*

INFLUENCE + VERB **extend** *Their influence extended as far as China.*

PREP. **under the ~** *The town grew under the influence of colonialism.* **| ~ from** *There was no influence from outside.* **| ~ in** *She has a certain amount of influence in the way things are organized.* **| ~ on/upon** *They were a major influence upon the development of the sport.* **| ~ over** *I have absolutely no influence over him.* **| ~ with** *Queen Isabella was urged to use her influence with the French monarch.*

PHRASES **a sphere of influence** *Rome's sphere of influence extended across Europe, North Africa and the Middle East.* **| bring your influence to bear on sb/sth** *The king tried to bring his influence to bear on* (= tried to influence) *the parliament.* **| under the influence (of alcohol/drink)** *He was arrested for driving under the influence.*

2 **sb/sth that affects the way sb behaves/thinks**

ADJ. **big, considerable, great, significant | dominant, major, overwhelming | powerful, profound, strong | important | early** *Who were your early influences* (= influences at the start of your career)*?* **| formative** *The massive intellect of his mother had been a formative influence from his earliest years.* **| diverse** *He is a writer of Indian descent and draws upon diverse cultural influences.* **| outside** *Parents often seek to shelter their children from outside influences* **| good | adverse, bad, corrupting, destructive, disruptive, harmful, negative | stabilizing, steadying | calming, restraining | civilizing | environmental, genetic | artistic, cultural, musical**

VERB + INFLUENCE **be, represent** *The legacy of Ancient Rome represented the overwhelming influence on Romanesque architecture.* **| have** *The band had many influences.* **| be exposed to** *a study of children exposed to different cultural influences* **| draw from/on/upon**

INFLUENCE + VERB **be at work** *There were a number of influences at work in Gaudi's architecture.*

PREP. **~ on** *She's by far the biggest influence on my writing.*

influence *verb*

ADV. **considerably, deeply, enormously, greatly, heavily, powerfully, profoundly, strongly** *This book influenced her profoundly.* **| increasingly | largely, mainly, primarily | partly, slightly | directly, indirectly** *Pressure from industry bosses has directly influenced government policy.* **| clearly, obviously, undoubtedly | actively | critically, crucially, decisively, significantly | inevitably | positively** *actions that positively influence health* **| adversely | unduly** *Try to be aware of external factors which may unduly influence your judgement.*

VERB + INFLUENCE **seem to | attempt to, seek to, try to** *seeking to influence university appointments*

PREP. **in** *Her parents tried to influence her in her choice of university.*

PHRASES **be easily/readily influenced** *He was naive and easily influenced by his friends.*

influential *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become**

ADV. **deeply, enormously, especially, extraordinarily, extremely, highly, hugely, immensely, particularly, really, very** *This was a highly influential work. As a writer she was hugely influential.* **| increasingly | fairly, quite | widely | politically**

PREP. **in** *The group was influential in setting up the new schools.*

influenza *noun*

QUANT. **attack, bout**

VERB + INFLUENZA **have, suffer from | catch, contract**

INFLUENZA + NOUN **epidemic | virus** > Special page at ILLNESS

influx *noun*

ADJ. **great, huge, large, massive, vast | small | new | sudden | continuing | steady | daily** *the daily influx of sightseers to the city*

VERB + INFLUX **have, receive** *The hotel has received a large influx of guests.* **| prevent** *The country sealed its borders to prevent the influx of illegal immigrants.* **| cope with** *They didn't know how they were going to cope with the sudden influx of refugees.*

PREP. **~ into/to** *a massive influx of foreign tourists into London*

inform *verb*

ADV. **merely, simply** *I am not advising you. I am merely informing you of the situation.* **| regularly | immediately | officially | personally | kindly, politely** *Next time you decide to take some action, kindly inform me.* **| bluntly** *'I won't do it!' she informed him bluntly.* **| coldly, coolly**

VERB + INFORM **be pleased to | regret to** *I regret to inform you that you have been unsuccessful in your application.* **| be required to** *The clinic is required to inform the patient about possible alternative treatments.*

PREP. **about** *efforts to inform young people about the dangers of drugs* **| of** *We will immediately inform you of any changes to the programme.*

informal *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | fairly, quite, rather, relatively** *Our meetings are relatively informal.* **| purely** *These meetings should remain purely informal, with no obligation on either side.* **| cheerfully, delightfully**

information *noun*

ADJ. **accurate, correct, precise | false** *It is alleged that he gave false information to the tax authorities.* | **relevant, useful, valuable | useless | available** *Further information is available on request.* | **missing | fresh, new | latest, up-to-date** *the latest information on lung conditions* | **additional, extra, further | general** *general information about the company as a whole* | **basic** *basic information like date of birth, doctor's name and phone number* | **background | detailed | factual | classified, confidential, secret | price-sensitive** *There are legal constraints on the use of price-sensitive information.* | **bibliographic, economic, educational, financial, social, technological, etc.**

QUANT. **item, piece** *an interesting piece of information* | **bit, fragment, nugget, scrap, snippet** *She let slip a few nuggets of information about herself.* | **mine, wealth** *This book is a mine of information on the Romans.*

VERB + INFORMATION **contain | have** *Do you have the information I need?* | **retain, store** *James is able to retain an enormous amount of factual information in his head. database systems that process and store information* | **need, require | ask for, request | look for, seek | find, gain, get, obtain** *information gained from research* | **collect, gather** *The police are still questioning witnesses and gathering information.* | **receive | dig up** *Have you dug up any further information on the suspect?* | **extract, retrieve** *the difficulties of extracting information from government officials software that retrieves information from a variety of different sources* | **access** *Portable computers are good for accessing information while travelling.* | **download | disclose, give, impart, make available, provide (sb with), supply (sb with)** *a court order preventing an ex-employee from disclosing confidential information* | **leak** *Someone leaked information to the press.* | **pass on** *They passed on the information about the crime to the police.* | **circulate, disseminate** *an organization that collects and disseminates information about women in science* | **exchange** *The French and British police will exchange information on wanted criminals.* | **withhold** *It was improper of the broker to withhold the information from the stock exchange.* | **cover up, suppress | collate, organize | check | analyse | present** *The way you present the information is important.* | **publish | act on, go on** *At the moment we've very little information to go on.*

INFORMATION + VERB **relate to sth** *information relating to the social background of the child* | **lead to sth** *a reward for information leading to an arrest*

INFORMATION + NOUN **service | bureau, desk, office, centre | source | system | processing**

PREP. **according to ~** *According to information received by the police, the terrorists have left the country.* **| for sb's ~** *This leaflet is produced for the information of our customers.* **| ~ about/concerning/on/regarding** *financial information concerning a company*

PHRASES **access to information, the exchange of information, the flow of information** *to improve the flow of information within the company* **| a lack of information, a request for information, a source of information**

informative *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | find sth**

ADV. **extremely, highly, most, particularly, very, wonderfully** *The survey proved most informative.* **| quite**

PREP. **about** *The book is extremely informative about life in Roman times.*

informed *adj.*

VERBS **be | keep | keep sb**

ADV. **closely, well** *The kids are much better informed than I was at their age.* **| fully, properly** *Consumers must be fully informed of the services available.* **| adequately, reasonably** *I offer my observations as those of an interested and reasonably informed member of the general public.* **| badly, ill, poorly | reliably** *I am reliably informed that there are plans to close this school.* **| politically** *a politically informed public* **| theoretically** *theoretically informed research*

PREP. **about** *They were poorly informed about their rights.* **| of** *We will keep you informed of any developments.* **| on** *Keep me informed on progress.*

informer *noun*

ADJ. **police** *He later became a police informer.*

VERB + INFORMER **become, turn** *One of the gang members had turned informer.*

PHRASES **a network of informers**

infrequent *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **very | comparatively, fairly, rather, relatively** *Disturbances are relatively infrequent in British prisons.*

infringement *noun*

ADJ. **serious | minor | clear | alleged | possible | copyright, patent, trademark**

VERB + INFRINGEMENT **be, constitute** *The committee ruled that the US ban constituted an infringement of free trade.* **| commit** *sympathy for people who commit minor infringements under difficult circumstances*

PHRASES **an infringement of copyright/the law**

ingenious *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound** *The idea sounds quite ingenious*

ADV. **extremely, highly, most, quite, very** *a most ingenious device*

ingenuity *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great | intellectual, technical | human**

QUANT. **amount, degree** *Getting out of this mess was going to require a fair degree of ingenuity.*

VERB + INGENUITY **have** *someone who has the ingenuity to solve problems* **| apply, use** *There is always a solution, so long as you are prepared to use your ingenuity.* **| display, show** *The children showed a lot of ingenuity.* **| admire | call for, need, require, take** *Considerable ingenuity is needed to minimize costs. It didn't take much ingenuity to transform the door into a table.*

PREP. **with ~** *They adapted the available materials with great ingenuity.* **| ~ in** *We have to admire his ingenuity in redesigning the machinery.*

ingrained *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **deeply** *Prejudice remains deeply ingrained in many organizations.*

PREP. **in**

ingredient *noun*

1 **thing from which sth is made**

ADJ. **excellent, good** *It always pays to use the best ingredients when cooking.* | **main, major, principal** *the principal ingredient of smog* | **important, vital** | **secret, special** | **basic** | **common** | **active** *salicylic acid, the active ingredient in aspirin* | **remaining** *Add all the remaining ingredients and bring to the boil.* | **fresh** | **natural** | **artificial** | **exotic** | **dry** *Use a spoon to mix the dry ingredients.* | **raw** | **food**

VERB + INGREDIENT **use** *I only use natural ingredients.* | **add, pour in/on/over** *Mix the marinade ingredients and pour over the goose.* | **blend, combine, mix, stir (in)** *Blend all the ingredients together in a bowl.*

PHRASES **a list of ingredients** *All food products should carry a list of ingredients on the packet.* > Special page at FOOD

2 **thing/quality necessary to make sth successful**

ADJ. **crucial, essential, fundamental, important, key, vital** *Hard work is a vital ingredient for success.* | **main, major, principal** | **basic, necessary** *Forecasting is a basic ingredient of business planning.* | **right** *The little town has all the right ingredients for a murder mystery.* | **magic, secret, special** | **added/additional, extra** | **missing**

VERB + INGREDIENT **have** *The Australian team had the added ingredient of perseverance.* | **provide, supply** *She hopes the change of career will supply the missing ingredient in her life? excitement.*

PREP. **~ for** *Tolerance is an essential ingredient for a happy marriage.* | **~ in** *Individualism has been the secret ingredient in developing his chain of fashion stores.*

PHRASES **an ingredient for success**

inhabitant *noun*

ADJ. **local | old** *He is Brixham's oldest inhabitant.* **| younger | present | permanent | early** *The island's earliest inhabitants came from India.* **| original | indigenous, native | rural, village | human**

VERB + INHABITANT **have** *London has over seven million inhabitants.*

INHABITANT + VERB **live** *77% of the inhabitants lived in the countryside.*

PREP. **of/with ... ~** *towns of about 10,000 inhabitants*

inhale *verb*

ADV. **deeply | sharply** *Janet inhaled sharply when she saw him.* **| slowly**

inherit *verb*

VERB + INHERIT **stand to** *He stood to inherit* (= was likely to inherit) *property worth £5 million.*

PREP. **from** *She inherited some money from her mother.*

PHRASES **be genetically inherited** *How many of these traits are genetically inherited?*

inheritance *noun*

1 **money/property**

ADJ. **large | small | rightful** *(literary) He accused his younger brother of trying to steal his rightful inheritance.* **| shared**

VERB + INHERITANCE **leave sb** *She left him an inheritance of £100,000.* **| come into, enter (into/on/upon)** *(literary),* **receive** *When he was 21 he came into a large inheritance.* **| claim** *When his father died, he returned to England to claim his inheritance.* **| renounce | challenge** *Jealous relatives tried to challenge her inheritance.* **| steal | restore (sb to)** *The Earl of Arundel's heir was restored to his inheritance and granted the lordship of Chirk.* **| divide** *The inheritance was divided equally among all the sons.* **| share (in)** *Under their law, all children shared in the inheritance.*

INHERITANCE + NOUN **tax | law**

PREP. **~ by** *The system involved inheritance by the eldest son.* **| ~ through** *inheritance through marriage*

2 **sth from the past/your family**

PREP. **common** *a common inheritance of language and culture* **| cultural | genetic, physical | classical** *the influence of the classical inheritance* (= the culture of ancient Greece and Rome) *on Renaissance thought*

inhibit *verb*

ADV. **seriously, severely, significantly** *Alcohol significantly inhibits the action of the drug.* **| completely | slightly**

VERB + INHIBIT **tend to** *A large service sector and a small manufacturing sector would tend to inhibit growth in the economy.*

PREP. **from** *The fear of dismissal inhibited employees from raising problems.*

inhibited *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become**

ADV. **very | rather, slightly | emotionally**

PREP. **about** *He was rather inhibited about discussing politics.* **| by** *She felt very inhibited by her own lack of experience.* **| from** *No one should feel inhibited from taking part in the show.*

inhibition *noun*

VERB + INHIBITION **have (no) | show (no) | get rid of, lose, overcome** *The children, at first shy, soon lost their inhibitions.*

PREP. **without ~** *Young children will participate in a drama class without inhibition.* **| ~ about** *They had no inhibitions about voicing their feelings.* **| ~ against** *an inhibition against certain behaviour*

inhuman *adj.*

VERBS **be | consider sth, regard sth as** *We regard their treatment of the prisoners as inhuman.*

ADV. **positively** *What she proposes is positively inhuman!* **| totally, utterly | almost**

initial *noun*

VERB + INITIAL **have** *The two authors have the same initials.* **| be/become known by** *She's always been known by her initials.* **| use | bear, carry** *A stone over the door bears the initials 'R.P.', which stand for 'Ralph Piggot'.* **| carve, embroider, engrave (sth with), mark sth with, monogram sth with, put, sign, stamp (sth with), write** *He carved his girlfriend's initials in the rock. Now that she was managing director she could put the initials MD after her name.*

INITIAL + VERB **stand for sth**

PREP. **~ for** *When writing, if you use initials for a long name, make sure you spell out the name at least once.*

initiate *verb*

ADV. **formally** *The enquiry was formally initiated last month.*

initiation *noun*

INITIATION + NOUN **ceremony, rite, ritual** *an initiation ceremony for new members of the organization*

PREP. **~ into** *It was my initiation into the world of high fashion.*

PHRASES **a ceremony/rite of initiation**

initiative *noun*

1 **new plan**

ADJ. **fresh, new** *fresh initiatives to find a peaceful end to the conflict* | **pioneering** *pioneering initiatives in bioengineering* | **current, latest, recent** | **important, major** | **welcome** | **successful** | **practical** | **exciting** | **private** | **co-operative, joint** | **international, local, national, regional** | **government** | **business, diplomatic, economic, education/educational, environmental, marketing, peace, policy, political, research, training**

QUANT. **range, series**

VERB + INITIATIVE **undertake** *The research initiative is being undertaken by a group of environmentalists.* | **plan** | **develop** | **announce** | **introduce, launch, set up, start** *The government has launched a new policy initiative.* | **be/become involved in** *Ten schools have been involved in the initiative.* | **lead** | **approve** | **reject** *The peace initiative was rejected out of hand.* | **sponsor** *a peace initiative sponsored by the Organization of African Unity* | **endorse, support** *The committee endorsed an initiative by the chairman to enter discussion about a possible merger.* | **welcome** *We welcome the government's initiative to help the homeless.* | **praise** | **encourage**

INITIATIVE + VERB **be aimed at sth, be designed to** *a local initiative aimed at economic regeneration an initiative designed to promote collaborative research* | **involve sth, relate to sth** | **founder** *The initiative foundered because there was no market interest in redevelopment.*

PREP. **~ against** *a new initiative against car theft* | **~ by** *the latest initiative by the UN Secretary General* | **~ for** *an initiative for peace and human rights* | **~ on** *the government's major new initiative on crime* > Special page at BUSINESS

2 **ability to decide/act independently**

ADJ. **considerable, great, real** | **individual, personal, private** *It is a very hierarchical company and there's little place for individual initiative.* | **entrepreneurial**

VERB + INITIATIVE **have** *He had the initiative to ask what time the last train left.* | **display, show** | **act/work on your own, use** *He acted on his own initiative and* *wasn't following orders. Don't ask me what you should do all the time. Use your initiative!* **| lack | encourage, promote | stifle** *Raising taxes on small businesses will stifle initiative.*

PREP. **on sb's ~** *The project was set up on the initiative of a local landowner.* **| ~ in** *Some scientists show little initiative in applying their knowledge.*

PHRASES **a lack of initiative, on your own initiative** *In an unprecedented action, the army, on its own initiative, arrested seven civilians.*

3 **the initiative: opportunity to gain an advantage**

VERB + INITIATIVE **have, hold** *After their latest setback, the rebel forces no longer hold the initiative.* **| gain, seize, take | regain** *In the second half, Manchester United regained the initiative.* **| lose**

INITIATIVE + VERB **comes from sb/sth, lie with sb** *The initiative to re-open negotiations came from Moscow.*

PREP. **~ in** *She took the initiative in asking the board to conduct an enquiry.*

injection *noun*

1 **act of injecting sb**

ADJ. **intramuscular, intravenous | anti-tetanus/tetanus, flu, pain-killing | insulin, penicillin, etc. | booster** *Can I bring my dog in for his booster injection?* **| lethal** *In some US states execution is by lethal injection.* **| regular | daily**

VERB + INJECTION **have** *He had to have a tetanus injection after injuring himself with a shovel.* **| administer, give sb, perform** *They gave her an injection to stop the pain.* **| receive** *The rats received a daily injection of the drug.*

PREP. **by ~** *The best treatment is antibiotics, preferably by injection.* **| ~ against** *an injection against whooping cough* **| ~ for** *injections for diabetes* **| ~ in/into** *an injection into the vein* **| ~ with** *Both groups received a second injection with the same solution.*

2 **money**

ADJ. **massive, substantial | much-needed | capital, cash** *An undisclosed buyer will provide a much-needed cash injection for the fragile balance sheet.*

VERB + INJECTION **need, require | give sth, provide (sth with) | receive**

PREP. **~ from** *a cash injection from the Belgian state* **| ~ into** *an injection of cash into the economy*

PHRASES **an injection of capital/cash/money/resources** *The company had reached the size where it needed an injection of capital.*

injunction *noun*

1 **court order**

ADJ. **interim, preliminary | temporary | permanent | court**

VERB + INJUNCTION **apply for, seek | get, obtain, take out, win** *She took out an injunction to prevent the press publishing the information.* **| grant (sb), issue | refuse (sb/sth) | vary** *an application to court to vary an injunction* **| lift** *It was agreed that the temporary injunction should be lifted.* **| uphold | overturn | ignore**

INJUNCTION + VERB **order sth, require sth | ban sth, bar sth, forbid sth, prohibit sth, restrain sb/sth** *The court upheld an injunction barring protesters from blocking access to the company. an injunction restraining the disclosure of company secrets* **| prevent sth**

PREP. **~ against/on** *They got an interim injunction against the union.*

PHRASES **a breach of an injunction**

2 **warning/order from sb in authority**

ADJ. **stern**

VERB + INJUNCTION **follow, obey** *The rank and file members will follow the injunction of the party leadership.* **| ignore**

injure *verb*

1 **harm yourself/sb physically**

ADV. **badly, seriously, severely | slightly | accidentally** *insurance to cover you in case one of your employees accidentally injures someone* **| deliberately**

2 **damage sb's reputation, pride, etc.**

ADV. **seriously, severely** *This incident could seriously injure the company's reputation.*

VERB + INJURE **be calculated to** (*law*), **be likely to** *espionage activity which was likely to injure the national interest*

injured *adj.*

VERBS **be, lie** *He could have been lying injured on the moors after a fall from his horse.* **| get**

ADV. **badly, critically, gravely, seriously, severely** *her badly injured ankle Several people were seriously injured.* **| slightly** *a slightly injured arm* **| fatally**

injury *noun*

ADJ. **appalling, bad, horrendous, major, nasty, serious, severe, terrible | crippling | fatal |** multiple | extensive | minor, **slight, superficial | old | nagging, niggling, recurring | long-term | permanent** *Researchers have determined that heading a football can cause permanent injury.* **| accidental | internal | visible | facial, head, knee, leg, spinal, etc. | sports | industrial | bodily, emotional, personal** *(all law)*

QUANT. **run, series, spate** *He missed most of the season with a spate of injuries.*

VERB + INJURY **do yourself, incur, pick up, receive, suffer** *You'll do yourself an injury riding that old bike. She picked up an injury during the quarter-final.* **| risk** *The doctor said he would risk serious injury if he were to fall again.* **| cause (sb/sth), inflict** *The car turned right over, causing severe injury to the driver. Please help me before our dogs inflict serious injury on each other!* **| carry, have, nurse, suffer from** *She has replaced him in the team while he nurses a shoulder injury.* **| be prone to | feign** *He was accused of feigning injury.* **| aggravate** *He aggravated a neck injury while playing for Derby County.* **| die from/of** *The inquest heard that he died from multiple injuries.* **| avoid, escape** *Stretching exercises can help avoid injury.*

Fortunately, the passengers escaped serious injury. **| overcome, shake off** *She has failed to shake off her stomach injury.* **| recover from | deal with, treat, be treated for** *Finger injuries should be dealt with immediately. He is still being treated for injuries to his legs.* **| go off with** *He went off* (= off the playing field) *with an injury in the second half.* **| be out with** *She is out* (= out of the competition/team) *for six weeks with a hamstring injury.* **| pull out because of/due to/with** *He pulled out with* (= decided not to compete because of) *an injury at the last moment.* **| be back after/from, come back from, return after/from** *She should be back from injury.* **| have sb back after** *India had wicketkeeper More back after injury.*

INJURY + VERB **happen (to sb), occur** *This type of injury could happen to any player at any time.* | result from sth *injuries resulting from exposure to harmful substances* **| heal | dog sb/sth, hamper sb/sth, trouble sb** *Her athletics career has been dogged by injury.* **| sideline sb** *Both defenders have been sidelined by injury.* **| force sb to** *The knee injury forced him to give up playing at the age of 23.* **| arise from/out of** *(law) personal injuries arising from negligence*

INJURY + NOUN **problems** *The team has a lot of injury problems.* **| time** *They scored two goals in injury time* (= time added at the end of a game because the game has been interrupted by injured players needing treatment).

PREP. **because of ~** *She's unable to play because of injury.* **| through ~** *He has pulled out of the match through injury.* **| with ~** *She slumped to the floor with injuries to her back and neck.* **| without ~** *a step-by-step guide to lifting without injury* **| ~ from** *injuries from the fire* **| ~ to**

PHRASES **add insult to injury** *It adds insult to injury* (= it make things worse) *that banks are allowed to increase their charges without our knowledge or consent.* **| a claim for injury** *(law) a claim for personal injury* **| a risk of injury** *There is a real risk of injury in sports such as climbing.*

injustice *noun*

ADJ. **cruel, grave, great, gross, terrible | perceived | racial, social**

VERB + INJUSTICE **experience, suffer** *He suffered the injustice of being punished for a crime which he did not commit.* **| regard sth as** *The trial was regarded as the greatest injustice of the post-war criminal justice system.* **| cause** *(law)*, **commit, do (sb/yourself)** *She remains adamant that an injustice was done. We may have been doing him an injustice* (= criticizing him unfairly). *This work is good.* **| expose** *a novel that sets out to expose social injustice* **| fight against, protest against, speak out against, struggle against, work against** *She was acclaimed for speaking out against injustice.* **| correct, remedy** *people who work hard to correct society's injustices* **| stop**

PREP. **~ by** *a terrible injustice by the police* **| ~ to** *It would be an injustice to the man to imprison him for life.*

PHRASES **the injustice of it all** *She was overwhelmed by the injustice of it all* (= of the situation). **| a sense of injustice, a victim of injustice**

ink *noun*

ADJ. **wet** *Be careful. The ink is still wet.* **| coloured | India/Indian | indelible, permanent, waterproof | washable | invisible | printing**

VERB + INK **use** *Most people now use ballpoints rather than ink.* **| write in** *He wrote very neatly in blue ink.* **| spill**

INK + VERB **dry** *Allow the ink to dry.* **| smudge** *The drawback of this printer is that the ink tends to smudge.*

INK + NOUN **blot, spot | pen | cartridge** *We need to replace the ink cartridge in the printer.* **| drawing**

PREP. **in ~** *There were several alterations in ink.*

PHRASES **pen and ink** *a pen and ink drawing*

inkling *noun*

ADJ. **first** *The first inkling we had of Cliff's problem was when he didn't come to work.* **| faintest, slightest** *We didn't have the slightest inkling of the dramatic news we were about to hear.*

VERB + INKLING **have (no) | get | give (sb)** *She never gave us any inkling of what she was planning.*

PREP. **~ of**

inmate *noun*

ADJ. **fellow | former** *a former inmate of Gloucester jail* **| young | male, female | camp, prison**

VERB + INMATE **move, transfer** *The inmates were moved to an undisclosed location.*

INMATE + VERB **escape**

INMATE + NOUN **population**

PREP. **among ~** *drug and alcohol misuse among inmates*

innocence *noun*

1 **being not guilty of a crime, etc.**

ADJ. **total**

VERB + INNOCENCE **declare, proclaim** *The prisoners passionately proclaimed their innocence in front of the jury.* | **claim** *She claimed total innocence of all charges.* | **protest** *Hayes has protested his innocence throughout the case.* | **demonstrate, establish, prove** | **be convinced of** *The solicitors were convinced of his innocence and urged him to appeal the conviction.*

PHRASES **in all innocence** *I asked her the question in all innocence. I didn't know it was going to upset her.* | **the presumption of innocence** *(law)*

2 **lack of knowledge/experience**

ADJ. **childlike, wide-eyed** | **lost** | **injured** *She replied to her father's accusations in tones of injured innocence.* | **apparent** | **mock**

VERB + INNOCENCE **lose** *He had lost the innocence of childhood.* | **retain** | **take advantage of** *She had taken advantage of his innocence.*

PREP. **in your ~** *In his innocence he had allowed the salesman in to discuss vacuum cleaners.* | **with … ~** *He grinned with apparent innocence.* | **~ about** *There is an innocence about the story.*

PHRASES **an air of innocence** *There was a touching air of innocence about the boy.* | **a look of innocence, the picture of innocence** *'You cheated!' 'I what?' asked David, the picture of innocence* (= pretending to look innocent). | **a state of innocence**

innocent *adj.*

1 not guilty

VERBS **be, plead** *He pleaded innocent to the charges.* **| believe sb, presume sb** *I had always believed her innocent. The accused person should always be presumed innocent until proved guilty.* **| declare sb, find sb, prove sb** *The court found her innocent of the crime.*

ADV. **completely, entirely, totally, wholly**

PREP. **of** *I am totally innocent of this crime.*

2 not intended/intending to cause harm

VERBS **be, look, play, seem, sound** *Stop playing innocent and answer my questions, please.*

ADV. **very | all, altogether, perfectly** *She tried to sound all innocent as she asked the question. The circumstance could be altogether innocent, but suspicions have been raised.* **| relatively | apparently, seemingly**

3 with no experience of the world

VERBS **be, seem** *She was sixteen and sweetly innocent.*

ADV. **remarkably, very | sweetly | strangely** *the strangely innocent world of her childhood* **| sexually**

innocuous *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem**

ADV. **perfectly, totally, wholly** *His comment seemed perfectly innocuous.* **| fairly, pretty, quite, relatively** *The liquid looked fairly innocuous.* **| enough** *The question appeared innocuous enough, but I still did not trust her.* **| apparently, seemingly**

innovation *noun*

1 **introduction of new ideas**

ADJ. **constant, continuous | successful | cultural, educational, industrial, scientific, technical, technological | design, policy, product** *industries where constant product innovation is a criterion for survival*

VERB + INNOVATION **encourage, facilitate, foster, stimulate | stifle** *Too strict a regulatory system will stifle innovation.*

INNOVATION + VERB **occur** *Technical innovation may occur directly in the factory.*

INNOVATION + NOUN **process**

PREP. **~ in** *innovation in engineering*

PHRASES **scope for innovation**

2 **new idea**

ADJ. **great, major, important, significant | successful | welcome | interesting | latest, new | recent | scientific, technical, technological**

VERB + INNOVATION **come up with** *She believed she had come up with one of the greatest innovations of modern times.* **| introduce** *Many innovations were introduced by the 1919 Act.* **| design, develop** *technological innovations designed to save energy*

INNOVATION + VERB **occur**

PREP. **~ by** *Mathematical astronomy was the great innovation by the Greeks of the 5th century BC.* **| ~ in** *innovations in machinery and instruments*

input *noun*

1 **of time/knowledge/ideas**

ADJ. **considerable, great, important, major, significant, substantial | additional | direct | regular | local | specialist, technical**

VERB + INPUT **have | need | get, receive | provide** *constructive criticism which provided an input into the school's decision-making process*

PREP. **~ by** *The report contains a substantial input by the police.* **| ~ from** *input from various interested parties* **| ~ in** *They all had some input in the discussion.* **| ~ into** *her input into the survey* **| ~ on** *The union would like more input on redundancies.* **| ~ to** *an additional input to market analysis*

2 **for a computer**

ADJ. **data | user | keyboard | computer**

VERB + INPUT **require** *Early computers required input in the form of punched cards.* **| accept** *The software will accept input from a variety of other programs.* **| process** *It may be beyond the capability of the hardware to process the input.* **| be used as/for** *Decision tables can be used as computer input.* **| check** *Check your input and make sure you have selected only one item.*

INPUT + NOUN **data | file | field, form, screen** *The cursor is positioned on the first input field of the page.* **| device** *an input device such as a keyboard*

PREP. **~ for** *inputs for the printers* **| ~ from** *input from a mouse* **| ~ to** *input to a computer database*

PHRASES **input and output**

inquest *noun*

ADJ. **full | fresh | coroner's**

VERB + INQUEST **conduct, hold | order** *The court ordered a fresh inquest into the tragedy.* **| open | adjourn | attend**

INQUEST + VERB **open | hear sth** *An elderly woman froze to death, an inquest heard yesterday.* **| decide sth, find sth** *An inquest found that the deceased had died of a drugs overdose.* **| return a verdict** *The inquest returned a verdict of accidental death.*

INQUEST + NOUN **jury | verdict**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *A verdict of suicide was recorded at the inquest.* **| ~ into** *an inquest into the team's poor performance* **| ~ on** *an inquest on three fishermen*

inquisitive *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become**

ADV. **highly, very** *a highly inquisitive mind* **| naturally** *Children are naturally inquisitive.* **| incurably**

PREP. **about** *We try not to be too inquisitive about what he's doing.*

insane *adj.*

1 **mentally ill/crazy**

VERBS **be, look | become, go** *He later became insane and was confined to an asylum. He went almost insane when he heard that his daughter had died.* **| drive sb** *You're driving me nearly insane with that noise.* **| certify sb, declare sb** *In 1975 she was certified clinically insane and sent to a mental hospital.*

ADV. **completely, totally | almost, nearly | a little | dangerously | clinically | criminally** *He is criminally insane, unable to stop himself attacking women.*

2 **very stupid/dangerous**

VERBS **be, seem** *It seems insane to cut the budget now.*

ADV. **quite, totally** *The whole idea is quite insane.*

insanity *noun*

ADJ. **total**

VERB + INSANITY **plead** *At the murder trial, he pleaded insanity.*

inscribe *verb*

ADV. **personally** *The volume had been personally inscribed by the author.* | **suitably** *He sent me a number of his books, all suitably inscribed.*

PREP. **on** *Her name was inscribed on the watch.* | **with** *The watch was inscribed with her name.*

inscription *noun*

ADJ. **faded | famous | dedicatory, funerary, memorial, monumental | Greek, Latin, etc.**

VERB + INSCRIPTION **bear, carry, have** *The monument carries the inscription: 'To the fallen in two world wars'.* **| carve, engrave** *an inscription carved in the stone*

INSCRIPTION + VERB **bear sth, read sth, record sth, say sth, show sth, tell sb sth** *The inscription bears the date 1655. The simple inscription on her grave reads: 'She sleeps in peace.'*

insect *noun*

ADJ. **flying, winged | aquatic | beneficial** *Unfortunately, pesticides kill off beneficial insects as well as harmful ones.* **| harmful, poisonous | social** *Social insects, such as ants, live in large colonies.*

QUANT. **swarm**

INSECT + VERB **buzz** *An insect was buzzing around the room.* **| fly | crawl | swarm | bore** *Insects had bored deep into the wood.* **| bite, sting**

INSECT + NOUN **attack** *The wood should be treated against insect attack.* **| bite | eggs, larva | pests** *Gardeners welcome birds as they control insect pests.* **| repellent, spray | species | world** *Wasps are the master builders of the insect world.*

insecure *adj.*

1 **not safe**

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very | increasingly | a little, rather, somewhat | financially** *men who are worried about losing their jobs and becoming financially insecure*

2 **anxious**

VERBS **be, feel | become, grow**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, profoundly, really, very | increasingly | a bit, a little, quite, rather | basically | notoriously** *a star who is notoriously insecure about her looks*

PREP. **about** *He felt a bit insecure about being left alone.*

insecurity *noun*

ADJ. **deep, great | growing, increased | general** *The prime minister spoke of the general insecurity in the country.* **| economic, emotional, financial | job**

PREP. **~ about** *her insecurities about her abilities*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of insecurity**

insensitive *adj.*

1 **not knowing or caring how sb else feels**

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become, grow | make sb | think sb** *I don't want to be thought insensitive, but I do think we should go ahead despite the accident.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, incredibly, remarkably, very | totally | a bit, rather, somewhat**

PREP. **to** *Years of abuse at boarding school had made him insensitive to others' suffering.*

2 **not able to feel/be influenced by sth**

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **completely, totally | almost | largely | fairly, relatively**

PREP. **to** *The machine is relatively insensitive to changes in the atmosphere.*

insensitivity *noun*

ADJ. **complete | crass**

VERB + INSENSITIVITY **display, show**

PREP. **~ to/towards** *The government has shown complete insensitivity to the refugees.*

inseparable *adj.*

VERBS be, seem

ADV. absolutely, quite | almost, practically, virtually *The two brothers are almost inseparable.* **| effectively**

PREP. from *Religion is inseparable from politics.*

insert *verb*

ADV. **carefully, gently**

PREP. **between** *The English translation is inserted between the lines of text.* **| in/into** *Fine needles are gently inserted into the patient's skin.* **| through** *A probe was inserted through his mouth.*

insight *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, real, significant | deep | detailed | brief | good, remarkable** *The objective of the research is to gain a better insight into labour market processes.* **| penetrating, profound, revealing, illuminating | crucial, important, invaluable, valuable | useful | fascinating, interesting | startling | fresh, new | original, unique** *Freud's original insights into the working of the mind* **| rare | clear | basic | direct** *The research will provide direct insight into molecular mechanisms.* **| further | sufficient | individual, personal | critical, historical, theoretical**

QUANT. **flash** *With a flash of insight, she found the solution to the problem.* **| degree**

VERB + INSIGHT **have** *The experienced specialist has professional skills and insight.* **| be lacking in, lack | show | allow (sb), afford (sb), give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with), produce, yield | gain, get, obtain | apply** *Teachers have to apply in the classroom the insights that they gain in educational courses.*

PREP. **~ about** *Schopenhauer's insight about music* **| ~ into** *a fresh insight into Picasso's mind* **| ~ (as) to** *an insight as to how the gene works*

PHRASES **a lack of insight**

insignificance *noun*

ADJ. **comparative, relative**

VERB + INSIGNIFICANCE **pale into, fade into** *Her achievements fade into insignificance beside those of her sisters.*

insignificant *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem** *He made her feel insignificant.* **| become | remain | consider sth** *an event that was considered insignificant*

ADV. **very | completely, quite | almost | comparatively, fairly, rather, relatively | apparently, seemingly | statistically** *These results are statistically insignificant.* **| socially**

insination *noun*

ADJ. **veiled**

VERB + INSINUATION **make | resent** *I deeply resent the insinuation that I'm only interested in the money.*

PREP. **~ about** *Why did you make those veiled insinuations about me?* **| ~ against** *insinuations against the unsuccessful candidate*

insist *verb*

ADV. **firmly, strongly | stubbornly** *He stubbornly insisted on doing it all himself.* **| absolutely** *I'm paying for this?no, I absolutely insist.* **| gently, quietly** *He quietly but firmly insisted.* **| always | repeatedly | still** *She still insists her critics are wrong.* **| rightly** *People rightly insist on being treated as individuals.*

VERB + INSIST **continue to | try to | be entitled to** *Employers are entitled to insist that employees honour the terms of their agreement.*

PREP. **on/upon** *He insists on speaking to you personally*

insistence *noun*

ADJ. **strict | gentle | earlier, previous**

VERB + INSISTENCE **abandon, drop** *The union has dropped its earlier insistence that workers should receive bonus payments.*

PREP. **at/on sb's ~** *At the insistence of his father, he bought himself a new suit.* **| ~ by** *insistence by the government that 25% of all household waste be recycled* **| ~ on/ upon** *an insistence upon the highest standards of grammatical correctness*

insistent *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, grow | remain**

ADV. **extremely, most, very** *She was most insistent that we shouldn't leave the door unlocked.* **| fairly, quite**

PREP. **about** *She was insistent about inviting him.* **| on/upon** *He was insistent on a formal written agreement.*

insoluble *adj.*

1 **that cannot be solved/explained**

VERBS **be, seem | remain**

ADV. **absolutely | almost | apparently, seemingly**

2 **impossible to dissolve in a liquid**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly | practically, virtually**

PREP. **~ in** *These chemicals are practically insoluble in water.*

inspect *verb*

ADV. **carefully, closely, thoroughly | regularly**

VERB + INSPECT **allow sb to, be entitled to** *Each party in the case is entitled to inspect the documents held by the other.*

PREP. **for** *He inspected the water tank carefully for cracks.*

inspection *noun*

ADJ. **careful, close, detailed, thorough | full | brief, cursory | routine | frequent, regular | annual, daily, etc. | surprise** *a surprise inspection of the premises by the health inspector* **| preliminary | public** *The records are open to public inspection.* **| independent | international** *They have refused to allow international inspection of their nuclear facilities.* **| physical, visual | safety | medical | on-site, site** *Following an on-site inspection, the surveyor prepared a written report on the property.*

VERB + INSPECTION **be available for, be open for/to, be subject to** *A company's accounting records must be open for inspection at all times. Nursing agencies are subject to inspection by the health authority.* **| bear** (literary) *He knew that his motives would not bear too close an inspection* (= that his motives were not good). **| carry out, conduct, make** *The architect is carrying out a thorough inspection of the building.* **| allow | pass** *The hotel passed its annual inspection.* **| fail**

INSPECTION + VERB **reveal sth, show sth, suggest sth** *Closer inspection of the vase revealed it to be a fake.* **| take place**

INSPECTION + NOUN **visit | report | team | hatch, panel**

PREP. **for ~** *He held out the saucepan for inspection.* **| on/upon ~** *The report seemed impressive at first, but on closer inspection there were several inaccuracies.* **| ~ by** *an inspection of the troops by the commander-in-chief*

PHRASES **a tour of inspection** *The head went on a tour of inspection of all the classrooms.*

inspector *noun*

1 **official who inspects sth**

ADJ. **chief, principal | deputy | local | independent | official | government, ministry, RSPCA, UN/United Nations, etc. | building, factory, (health and) safety, planning, (public) health, school, tax, ticket, weapons** *UN weapons inspectors*

VERB + INSPECTOR **call in** *The school inspectors were called in.*

INSPECTOR + VERB **be in charge of sth** *the inspector in charge of producing the report* **| look at sth | report (on) sth**

PREP. **~ of** *an inspector of prisons* > Note at JOB

2 **police officer**

ADJ. **police | Chief, detective**

PHRASES **the rank of inspector**

inspiration *noun*

ADJ. **great, sheer | direct** *His wife was the direct inspiration for the main character in the book.* **| sudden | fresh | artistic, creative, poetic | divine**

QUANT. **flash, moment** *In a flash of sheer inspiration, I decided to paint the whole house white.*

VERB + INSPIRATION **derive, draw, find, gain, get, owe, take** *The movement draws much of its inspiration from the Greek philosophers. Many of us found inspiration in her teaching. Where did you get the inspiration for the book? Her latest book owes its inspiration to childhood memories.* **| give sb, provide (sb with) | look for, seek** *He peered into his glass, as if seeking inspiration there.* **| be lacking (in), lack**

INSPIRATION + VERB **come (from sth)** *One day the inspiration just came. Her inspiration comes from Asia.*

PREP. **~ behind** *He was the inspiration behind last week's victory.* **| ~ for** *The sea has provided an inspiration for many of his paintings.* **| to** *She's been a great inspiration to me.*

PHRASES **a source of inspiration**

inspired *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become**

ADV. **divinely** *divinely inspired wisdom* **| ideologically, politically** *politically inspired violence*

inspiring *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem** *None of the leaders seems very inspiring.* **| find sth/sb** *People find her inspiring.*

ADV. **deeply, really, very** *a very inspiring sight* **| far from, hardly, less than, not particularly** *A pile of ironing is hardly inspiring.*

instability *noun*

ADJ. **increased | growing, increasing | continuing | inherent, internal | economic, financial, political, social | emotional, mental**

QUANT. **degree** *The increased inflation will inject a degree of instability into the economy.*

VERB + INSTABILITY **cause, create** *Racism causes political instability and violence.* **| avoid** *The law was introduced to avoid instability during the transition.*

INSTABILITY + VERB **arise, occur** *Instability may arise at times of change.*

PHRASES **a period of instability** *a long period of economic instability* **| a source of instability**

install *verb*

ADV. **properly, safely** *Make sure the equipment is properly installed. (figurative) She saw her guests safely installed in their rooms and then went downstairs.* **| easily** *The loft ladder is easily installed.* **| successfully | professionally** *A professionally installed alarm will cost from about £500.*

VERB + INSTALL **be easy to, be simple to** *The switches are cheap to buy and easy to install.*

PHRASES **newly/recently installed** *a recently installed swimming pool*

instalment *noun*

1 **regular payment**

ADJ. **fixed | equal** *a loan repaid in equal annual instalments* **| first, initial | second, third, etc. | final, last | next | annual, monthly, weekly, quarterly**

VERB + INSTALMENT **pay (off), pay (sth) by/in, pay sth off in** *She sold the car before she had paid the instalments. The tenants agreed to pay off the arrears in instalments.* **| repay (sth) by/in**

INSTALMENT + VERB **be/become due, be payable by/in** *The next instalment is not due until July.*

INSTALMENT + NOUN **payment | plan, terms** *We offer an instalment plan.*

PREP. **by ~** *The amounts are repayable by instalment.* **| in ~** *Repayment is in ten instalments.*

2 **part of a story**

ADJ. **first, second, etc. | final, last | daily, weekly | next**

VERB + INSTALMENT **publish (sth in)** *The 'Screwtape Letters' were published in instalments from May to November 1941.*

PREP. **~ in** *the final instalment in the trilogy*

instance *noun*

ADJ. **countless, innumerable, numerous | occasional, rare | isolated | (any) given, particular, specific** *Further information is required to determine the correct answer in any given instance.* **| extreme | striking | classic** *This is a classic instance of Dostoevsky's writing operating on two levels.*

VERB + INSTANCE **give, provide** *North America provides the most striking instance of European settlement on a grand scale.* **| cite (sth as), take** *Experts cite the country as an instance where human rights violations could lead to international intervention. To take a particular instance of this problem: …* **| recall** *I cannot recall any other instance in modern times in which a huge and mighty state crumbled to dust.*

INSTANCE + VERB **occur** *An instance of this controversy occurred last year.* **| show sth** *This instance shows how important it is to check that the machine is working properly before you use it.*

PREP. **for ~** (= for example) *Murder, petty theft and tax evasion, for instance, all have different motives and consequences.* **| in … ~** *In one instance, several people had their mobile phones stolen. It is not always helpful to draw analogies between sexism and racism, but in this instance it is useful.* **| ~ of** *This is an instance of his general attitude to his employees.*

PHRASES **in the first instance** *(formal) In the first instance, a letter from your employer may be all you need.*

instant *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **almost** *His response was almost instant.*

instant *noun*

1 short period of time

ADJ. **brief, fleeting** *For a brief instant, I thought she was going to fall.* **| one, single** *His news was too important to be contained for a single instant longer.*

VERB + INSTANT **pause for** *He paused for an instant before continuing.*

PREP. **for an ~** *Just for an instant I thought he was going to refuse.* **| in an ~** *It was all over in an instant.* **| ~ after/before** *She woke up in the instant before the phone rang.*

2 single point in time

ADJ. **(any) given, (any) one** *At any given instant the distribution of molecular speeds is always constant under the same conditions.* **| very** *He took out his keys to lock the door. At that very instant the door flew open and a man ran into the room.*

PREP. **at … ~** *The bomb could go off at any instant.*

instantaneous *adj.*

VERBS **be** *Her death was almost instantaneous.*

ADV. **almost, virtually**

instinct *noun*

ADJ. **deep, powerful, strong | gut | first, initial** *His first instinct was to run away from danger.* **| good, unerring** *Against her better instincts, she ran back into the burning house to save some of her jewellery. He had an unerring instinct for when people were lying to him.* **| base | basic | natural | primitive | creative | aggressive, competitive | maternal, mothering, protective | fighting, hunting, killer, predatory** *(often figurative) He plays well but lacks that killer instinct that wins matches.* **| survival | herd** *What makes all these people come to the club? In my view it's the herd instinct.* **| sexual | business, commercial, political | animal, human**

VERB + INSTINCT **have | lack | develop** *In negotiating you have to develop an instinct for when to be tough and when to make a deal.* **| follow, go on, obey, rely on, trust** *Why don't you just follow your natural instincts?* **| ignore, suppress | satisfy | appeal to** *They accused the campaign of appealing to the electorate's baser instincts.* **| share** *Both superpowers shared the same instinct for self-preservation.*

INSTINCT + VERB **tell sb sth** *Her instinct told her that she was being followed.* **| guide sb** *Artists have to learn to be guided by their instincts.* **| take over** *Her instincts took over and she dived on the escaping thief.* **| be right/wrong** *I've trusted my instincts in the past and they've usually been right.*

PREP. **by ~** *Babies know by instinct who their mother is.* **| on ~** *I acted purely on instinct.* **| ~ for** *He's got an instinct for survival in a tough job.*

instinctive *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **totally | purely** *My reaction was purely instinctive.* **| almost**

institute *noun*

ADJ. **professional | independent | government | international, national | economic, education, educational, research, scientific, technical**

VERB + INSTITUTE **establish, found, set up | open | belong to** *She belongs to the Chartered Institute of Management.* **| join**

INSTITUTE + VERB **find sth** *The environmental research institute found that the global average temperature had risen by 1.2°C.* **| claim sth, say sth** *The Institute says that an unidentified virus is to blame for the syndrome.* **| publish sth | provide sth** *an institute providing opportunities to veterinary graduates*

PREP. **at an/the ~** *She used to give lectures at the Mechanics' Institute.* **| in/within an/the ~** *He is a key figure in the Institute of Mathematics.* **| ~ for** *the International Institute for Economic Development* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **a founder of an institute, a member of an institute** > Note at ORGANIZATION

institution *noun*

1 **large organization**

ADJ. **central, major** *Parliament remains the central institution of the constitution of the United Kingdom.* **| established | existing** *They argue for the reform of existing political institutions.* **| traditional | public | private | government, governmental, state | international, national | local | democratic | academic, administrative, charitable, cultural, economic, educational, financial, legal, lending, political, religious, research** *cultural institutions such as the Danish Institute*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *a course at an institution of higher education* | **in/within ~** *examination procedures within educational institutions* > Note at ORGANIZATION (for verbs)

2 **building for people with special needs**

ADJ. **mental, penal**

VERB + INSTITUTION **be admitted to, be placed in** *Many people with dementia would rather remain at home than be placed in an institution.* **| be kept in**

PREP. **at/in ~** *patients in mental institutions* **| ~ for** *an institution for mentally ill offenders*

3 **custom**

ADJ. **national** *Fish and chips became a national institution in Britain.* **| cultural, economic, legal, political, religious, social** *cultural institutions such as religious and legal codes*

instruct *verb*

ADV. **carefully | explicitly, specifically** *You were explicitly instructed to wait here.*

PHRASES **as instructed** *I took the pills as instructed.*

instruction *noun*

1 **instructions information on how to do sth**

ADJ. **comprehensive, full | adequate | clear, explicit | detailed, precise, specific, step-by-step | complex | simple | general | special | careful | printed, verbal, written | pack, packet | technical | safety | operating, cooking, washing | manufacturer's**

QUANT. **list, series, set**

VERB + INSTRUCTION **read** *You should always read the instructions on medicines thoroughly.* | **understand | follow** *These fondant decorations are easy to master if you follow our simple step-by-step instructions.* | **give (sb), leave (sb), supply** *He gave her detailed instructions on the procedure to be followed. instructions supplied with a product* | **repeat | come with** *Did it come with any instructions about assembling it?*

INSTRUCTION + VERB **tell sb sth** *instructions that tell you where everything goes*

INSTRUCTION + NOUN **book/booklet, leaflet, manual** *I had to refer to the instruction booklet.*

PREP. **according to the ~** *Microwave ovens should be serviced according to the manufacturer's instructions.* | **in accordance with the ~, in the ~** *It tells you in the instructions not to let the machine get too hot.* | **~ about, ~ as to** *The organizer will give instructions as to what to do.* | **~ on** *instructions on how to use the photocopier*

PHRASES **follow (sb's) instructions to the letter** *The jockey followed his trainer's instructions to the letter* (= followed them in every detail).

2 **instructions: sth that sb tells/permits you to do**

ADJ. **clear, explicit, express, specific | firm, strict** *I have strict instructions not to let anyone else in.* | **direct | special | fresh, new | further | final | written**

VERB + INSTRUCTION **be under, have | act on/under** *She is acting under direct instructions from the president.* | **carry out, comply with, follow, obey** *Failure to obey a policeman's instructions may amount to an offence.* | **disobey | ignore |**

await, wait (for) *He remained under cover and waited further instructions from headquarters.* | **accept** *Solicitors may not accept instructions in cases where they would have a conflict of interests.* | **receive** | **give (sb), issue, leave (sb), send (sb)** *The government has issued specific instructions on reducing waste disposal.* | **bark (out), shout, yell** *The director sat in his chair barking instructions at the cast.* | **repeat**

PREP. **according to the ~** *We acted according to the instructions we received.* | **in accordance with the ~, on (sb's) ~** *She was released on instruction from the Foreign Ministry.* | **under (sb/sth's) ~** *Under Charlemagne's instructions, many classical texts were recopied.* | **with/without ~** *They were not empowered to negotiate without instructions.* | **~ from, ~ to** *an instruction to Lieutenant-General Gough from General Clark*

PHRASES **carry out/follow/obey (sb's) instructions to the letter** (= follow them in every detail)

3 **in a computer**

QUANT. **series, set**

VERB + INSTRUCTION **carry out, execute** *The chip runs at speeds of up to 100MHz and executes two instructions per clock cycle.*

4 **teaching**

ADJ. **proper** | **formal, informal** | **advanced, basic** | **further** | **individual, individualized** | **practical, professional, technical** | **moral, religious** | **flying**

QUANT. **course**

VERB + INSTRUCTION **get, have, receive** *She had no formal instruction in music.* | **need** | **offer (sb)** *The Cleveland Clog Dancers were on hand to offer instruction on the important steps.* | **give (sb), provide (sb with)**

PREP. **for the ~ of** *The information is for the instruction of passengers.* | **under ~** *drivers under instruction* | **~ by** *The two-day course features instruction by leading professionals and academics.* | **~ in** *He claimed that he was not capable of giving instruction in poetry.* | **~ on** *basic instruction on using the Internet*

PHRASES **a medium of instruction** *The medium of instruction throughout the course* *is English.*

instructive *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, highly, most, particularly, very** *It was a most instructive day.* **| quite**

instructor *nou*n

ADJ. **qualified, trained | experienced | chief, senior | driving, flying, parachute, riding, ski, swimming, etc.**

INSTRUCTOR + VERB **teach sb/sth** > Note at JOB

instrument *noun*

1 tool for a particular task

ADJ. **precision | sophisticated | reliable | crude | blunt** *The autopsy revealed that the deceased had been hit with a blunt instrument. (figurative) Even though it was a somewhat blunt instrument* (= not very precise), *our questionnaire provided us with some interesting ideas.* **| sharp | small | delicate | appropriate | research | drawing, measuring, writing | astronomical, flight, flying, mathematical, medical, navigation, navigational, optical, scientific, surgical | cockpit**

QUANT. **set** *a set of mathematical instruments*

VERB + INSTRUMENT **use** *All pupils should learn to use drawing instruments.* **| check, read** *to read the instruments and make a note of the wind speed and direction* **| design, develop, devise, invent | build, make** *All the instruments are made from glass capillary tubing.*

INSTRUMENT + VERB **measure sth** *an instrument that measures light intensity*

INSTRUMENT + NOUN **check** *The pilot did his instrument checks and taxied towards the runway.* **| maker | panel** *There was a warning light flashing on the instrument panel.*

PHRASES **an instrument of torture** *medieval instruments of torture such as the rack and the wheel*

2 for playing music

ADJ. **musical | beautiful, fine | classical | modern | period** *baroque music played on period instruments* **| solo | orchestral | brass, keyboard, percussion, string/stringed, wind, woodwind | acoustic, electric, electronic**

VERB + INSTRUMENT **play (on)** *She plays three musical instruments. The score was written to be played on a keyboard instrument.* **| learn, learn (how) to play | tune** *Ensure the instrument is tuned to concert pitch.* **| make** *an instrument made by a woman guitar maker in Canada*

INSTRUMENT + VERB **sound** *The instrument sounds like a cello.*

INSTRUMENT + NOUN **maker** > Special page at MUSIC

3 **sb/sth used to make sth happen**

ADJ. **chief, key, main, major, prime, principal | good, great** *They agreed that the UN was the best instrument for reaching agreement.* **| ideal | important, valuable | powerful | useful | effective | flexible | mere** *Some cynics say that sport is a mere instrument of capitalist domination.* **| chosen** *The despot claimed to be the chosen instrument of divine providence.* **| divine | political**

VERB + INSTRUMENT **perceive sb/sth as, regard sb/sth as, see sb/sth as, view sb/sth as** *They saw criminal law as an instrument for improving public morals.* **| use sb/sth as | make sb/sth**

PREP. **~ for** *Criminal law is not the best instrument for dealing with family matters.* **| ~ of** *She was accused of making a public service an instrument of private advantage.*

instrumental *adj.*

1 **important in making sth happen**

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **highly | largely | partly**

PREP. **in** *They were highly instrumental in bringing the business to Newtown.*

2 **being only a means to an end**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very | purely | merely | essentially**

insufficient *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove**

ADV. **quite, wholly | simply | clearly**

PREP. **for** *The resources available are quite insufficient for the task.*

insulated *adj.*

1 **protected against the cold, sound, etc.**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **well | badly, poorly | heavily | properly**

PREP. **against** *The laboratory was well insulated against all outside noise.* **| with** *The hot water tank should be insulated with proper insulating materials.*

2 **protected from unpleasant experiences**

ADV. **completely, totally | largely**

PREP. **from** *The community was totally insulated from the outside world.*

insult *noun*

ADJ. **bad, terrible** *one of the worst insults you can throw at somebody* **| ultimate** *Whatever you do, don't call a ‘railway enthusiast’ a trainspotter?it's the ultimate insult.* **| calculated, deliberate | personal**

VERB + INSULT **hurl, offer** *(literary)*, **shout, throw** *They were hurling insults at the police. The king is unlikely to forgive the insult offered to his ambassador.* **| mean sth as** *I don't mean this as an insult, but I think the team would play better without you.* **| take sth as** *I meant it as a bit of constructive advice, but he took it as a personal insult* **| endure, suffer** *Foreigners have to suffer constant insults from the local population.* **| exchange, trade** *The two groups of fans exchanged insults.*

INSULT + VERB **fly** *Insults were flying back and forth.*

PREP. **~ to** *It was an insult to his wife.*

PHRASES **add insult to injury** *Only 300 people came to the match and to add insult to injury* (= to make things worse), *the floodlights went out during the second half.* **| an insult to your intelligence** *The questions were a real insult to our intelligence* (= because they were too easy).

insult *verb*

ADV. **publicly** *He was dismissed for publicly insulting prominent politicians.*

PHRASES **be/feel (deeply) insulted** *I felt deeply insulted that she hadn't asked me to the meeting.*

insulting *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | become | find sth, regard sth as** *I find it insulting to be spoken to in that way.*

ADV. **highly, very | quite | almost** *He made the question sound almost insulting.* **| a little, rather, vaguely | deliberately** *Her tone was deliberately insulting.*

PREP. **to** *His opinions are highly insulting to women.*

insurance *noun*

ADJ. **(fully) comprehensive | adequate | additional | long-term, short-term | national, social, state | personal, private | commercial | compulsory | voluntary | life | health, medical | animal, car, home, house, household, marine, motor | travel | accident, fire, legal expenses, unemployment | civil liability, liability, professional indemnity, public liability, third party | general | special**

VERB + INSURANCE **have, maintain** *Have you got fully comprehensive insurance?*

(formal) The company maintains liability insurance for its directors and officers. **| apply for | arrange, buy, get, obtain, purchase, take out** *The contract requires me to arrange my own insurance. The travel agent recommended that I take out travel insurance.* **| sell | pay** *I haven't paid the insurance yet this month.* **| claim (on)** *She set fire to her house and then claimed insurance. We claimed for the car repairs on the insurance.* **| offer (sb) | provide (sb with)**

INSURANCE + VERB **cover sb/sth, pay for sth** *Does your personal accident insurance cover mountain rescue? Millions of people in the US are not covered by health insurance. The insurance will pay for the damage.*

INSURANCE + NOUN **cover** *insurance cover for bodily injury to third parties* **| policy** *a personal insurance policy* **| scheme** *a national insurance scheme* **| contribution, payment, premium** *a monthly insurance premium* **| costs** *rising insurance costs* **| claim | money, payout** *He bought a new suit out of the insurance money.* **| broking, services | business, industry, market, sector | company, firm, fund, group | agent, broker, salesman, underwriter | certificate**

PREP. **~ against** *More people are taking out insurance against the high cost of dental care.* **| ~ for** *compulsory insurance for personal injury to employees* **| ~ on** *The court heard that he stood to gain millions in insurance on his wife.* **| ~ with** *Her insurance is with General Accident.*

PHRASES **a certificate of insurance, a contract of insurance, a period of insurance** *If you make more than two claims in any period of insurance you may lose your no claim bonus.*

insured *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **fully | adequately | inadequately | privately** *There is evidence that privately insured patients are offered a higher level of care.*

PREP. **against** *Your video is not insured against accidental damage.* **| for** *I was not adequately insured for the damage my tenants caused.*

insurmountable *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, prove, seem** *The age barrier appeared insurmountable.* **| become | remain**

ADV. **nearly, virtually | apparently, seemingly** *They were now faced with seemingly insurmountable technical problems.*

insurrection *noun*

ADJ. armed *Years of discontent turned into armed insurrection.* **| popular** *There was a popular insurrection against the police.*

VERB + INSURRECTION plan, plot *They were accused of plotting insurrection against the government.* **| lead | launch | crush, put down**

PREP. ~ against *insurrection against the monarchy*

intact *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be | remain, stay, survive** *The building survived almost intact.* **| emerge** *a hero who always escaped by the skin of his teeth, emerging miraculously intact after each cliff-hanging episode* **| find sth** *We found the tomb perfectly intact.* **| keep sth, maintain sth, preserve sth** *The collection should be kept completely intact.* **| leave sth** *a group of old army buildings that had been left largely intact*

ADV. **remarkably, substantially, very much** *The character of the original house is very much intact.* **| completely, entirely, perfectly, wholly | almost, nearly, virtually | basically, essentially, largely, more or less | fairly, reasonably, relatively | apparently | still** *The mill machinery is still intact.* **| miraculously**

intake *noun*

1 **amount of food/drink taken into the body**

ADJ. **high | moderate | low | increased | total | good | excessive | adequate | balanced | normal | average | (recommended) daily | regular | dietary, nutritional | calorie | alcohol, calcium, energy, fat, fibre, fluid, food, oxygen, protein, salt, sugar, water**

VERB + INTAKE **have** *Make sure you have a balanced intake of vitamins A, B, C and D.* **| maintain** *You should maintain a low intake of fat.* **| increase, raise | control, watch** *You need to watch your alcohol intake.* **| cut, cut down (on), limit, lower, reduce, restrict** *One of the best ways to get to your ideal size is to cut fat intake right down.*

2 **number of students in a year**

ADJ. **high | low | new | annual | graduate, student**

VERB + INTAKE **have** *The school has an annual intake of 20 to 30.* **| cut, reduce | increase**

3 **where liquid/air enters a machine**

ADJ. **air, water | pump**

VERB + INTAKE **clog (up)** *Algae has clogged the intake to the water turbine.*

4 **of breath**

ADJ. **harsh, sharp** *She gave a sharp intake of breath.*

VERB + INTAKE **give**

PHRASES **an intake of breath**

integrate *verb*

1 **combine two things**

ADV. **closely, tightly, well** *They called for the defence system to be more closely integrated.* | **completely, fully, seamlessly, thoroughly** | **properly** | **successfully** *The department has successfully integrated new ideas into the traditional course structure.*

PREP. **into** *The results should be integrated into the final report.* | **with** *This computer program can be integrated with existing programs.*

PHRASES **highly integrated** (= with many different parts working successfully together) *a highly integrated approach to planning* | **poorly integrated**

2 **mix with other people**

ADV. **well** *The lower primary pupils are well integrated into the life of the school.* | **completely, fully** | **quickly**

PREP. **into** *They soon became fully integrated into the local community.* | **with** *They didn't integrate with the other children.*

integration *noun*

ADJ. **true | complete, full | close, seamless | further, greater, improved, increased | rapid | economic, monetary, political, racial, social** *We are working to bring about closer political integration in the EU.* **| internal | systems** *(computing)*

QUANT. **degree, level**

VERB + INTEGRATION **achieve, bring about | accelerate, encourage, facilitate, promote, speed up, stimulate** *measures to promote the social integration of mentally handicapped people* **| require | lead to**

PREP. **~ between** *integration between research and higher education* **| ~ into** *the integration of disabled pupils into the general education system* **| ~ with** *He called for greater integration with Europe.* **| ~ within** *economic integration within the three communities*

PHRASES **a move towards integration** *a move towards greater internal integration in Europe* **| a need for integration, a process of integration**

integrity *noun*

ADJ. **great, high | absolute, complete | personal | artistic, financial, moral, political, professional | physical, structural, territorial** *The country is fighting to preserve its territorial integrity.* **| data** *(computing)*

VERB + INTEGRITY **have** *Her photography had great artistic integrity.* **| lack | lose | restore** *The minister promised to restore the honesty and integrity of the government.* **| ensure** *It's up to the user to ensure the integrity of the data they enter.* **| maintain, retain** *We all have an interest in maintaining the integrity of the ecosystem.* **| defend, preserve, safeguard | threaten** *The project threatens the integrity of one of the world's most important wetlands.* **| compromise, impair, undermine** *I would never do anything to compromise the integrity of the company.* **| destroy** *Nuclear weapons have the capability to destroy the physical integrity of the planet.* **| question** *She questioned his integrity as a councillor.*

PREP. **with ~** *The code calls on members to behave with integrity at all times.*

PHRASES **an attack on sb/sth's integrity, a challenge/threat to sb/sth's integrity**

intellect *noun*

ADJ. **brilliant, considerable, formidable, keen, powerful, superior, sharp | limited, low, weak | creative, rational, scientific | human**

VERB + INTELLECT **have** *She has a formidable intellect.* **| exercise** *He enjoyed exercising his intellect in analysing the controversies of his day.*

intelligence *noun*

1 **ability to understand**

ADJ. **acute, considerable, great, high** *a writer with an acute intelligence This essay shows considerable intelligence.* **| quick | average, normal | limited, low | innate, native | human | artificial** *Computer scientists study artificial intelligence.*

VERB + INTELLIGENCE **have** *At least he had the intelligence to turn off the gas.* **| demonstrate, show | use**

INTELLIGENCE + NOUN **test**

2 **information**

ADJ. **secret** *We've obtained secret intelligence about enemy plans.* **| reliable | military** *Military intelligence is gathered using sophisticated technology.* **| criminal**

VERB + INTELLIGENCE **collect, gather**

INTELLIGENCE + NOUN **agency, service** *He works for the French intelligence service.* **| officer | gathering** *His unit was responsible for intelligence gathering in North Africa.* **| report | operation**

intelligent *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem**

ADV. **extremely, highly, incredibly, most, remarkably, very** *a highly intelligent woman* **| fairly, quite, reasonably** *He should be able to solve the problem. He's reasonably intelligent.* **| obviously | seemingly**

intelligible *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | make sth** *They do their best to make science intelligible to young children.* **| find sth** *She found his motives perfectly intelligible.*

ADV. **perfectly | easily, immediately, readily | barely, scarcely** *His reply was barely intelligible.* **| mutually** *Czech and Slovak are separate languages but they are mutually intelligible.*

PREP. **to** *We need an explanation that is readily intelligible to ordinary people.*

intend *verb*

ADV. **fully** *She fully intends to continue her sporting career once she has recovered from her injuries.* **| clearly | originally** *He had originally intended to stay in the country for only a year or two.*

PREP. **for** *It was thought that the bomb might have been intended for a visiting MP.*

intensify *verb*

ADV. **greatly | sharply** *The fighting in the area has intensified sharply.* **| further**

VERB + INTENSIFY **appear to, seem to** *The extreme cold seemed, if anything, to intensify.* **| tend to | be likely to | serve to** *The reforms served only to intensify the misery of the poorer peasants.*

intensity *noun*

ADJ. **high, low** *a band of light with high intensity* **| fierce, great** *The sun beat down with fierce intensity. He studied the report with great intensity.* **| emotional | passionate**

VERB + INTENSITY **decrease (in), reduce (in) | grow in, increase (in)** *Her headaches started to increase in intensity.* **| vary in**

PREP. **in ~** *The pain was growing in intensity.*

intensive *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly, very** *highly intensive courses for business and professional people* **| increasingly**

PHRASES **labour intensive** *Rice production is very labour intensive* (= requires a lot of labour).

intent *adj.*

1 **determined to do sth**

VERBS **appear, be, seem**

ADV. **apparently, seemingly | clearly, evidently, obviously** *They are clearly intent on maintaining standards.*

PREP. **on/upon** *He was intent on murder.*

2 **concentrating on sth**

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **very | suddenly** *Her gaze was suddenly intent.*

PREP. **on** *She was very intent on her work.*

intention *noun*

ADJ. **original** *My original intention was to study all morning, but this turned out to be impractical.* **| declared, stated | firm | general | deliberate**

VERB + INTENTION **have** *I have no intention of changing jobs.* **| announce, declare, state** *The council has announced its intention to crack down on parking offences.*

PREP. **with a/the ~ of** *I went to the bank with the intention of getting some traveller's cheques.* **| ~ behind** *The general intention behind the project is a good one.* **| ~ by** *The intention by the local authority to build 2,000 new houses is unrealistic.* **| ~ in** *His intention in inviting us to dinner was to persuade us to back his project.*

PHRASES **good/the best intentions** *It was done with the best intentions, I assure you* **| have every/no intention of doing sth** *We have every intention of winning the next election.* **| make your intention clear** *He didn't make his intentions clear in his letter.*

interact *verb*

1 have an effect on each other

ADV. **closely | directly**

PREP. **with** *This hormone interacts closely with other hormones in the body.*

2 mix with other people

ADV. **well | socially**

PREP. **with** *He interacts very well with other children.*

interaction *noun*

ADJ. **complex | informal | social | human | face-to-face, group | classroom**

INTERACTION + NOUN **processes** *the interaction processes of chimpanzees*

PREP. **~ among** *Informal interaction among employees is seen as part of the ongoing training process.* **| ~ between** *the complex interaction between animals and their environment* **| ~ with** *What is her interaction with her boss like?* **| ~ within** *interaction within the group*

PHRASES **patterns of interaction** *Specific patterns of interaction in the family have been observed.*

interactive *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **highly | fully** *The program is fully interactive.*

interchangeable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **fully, totally | almost, virtually**

PREP. **with** *These parts are fully interchangeable with those in other machines.*

intercom *noun*

INTERCOM + VERB **buzz, sound**

INTERCOM + NOUN **system**

PREP. **on the ~** *I spoke to her on the intercom and said I'd call round later.* **| over the ~** *Mr Jack's arrival was announced over the intercom.*

intercourse *noun*

1 **sex**

ADJ. **sexual | heterosexual, homosexual | anal, vaginal | non-consensual | unlawful**

VERB + INTERCOURSE **engage in, have, indulge in** *She never had sexual intercourse before she was married.* **| consent to** *The judge asked if she had consented to intercourse.*

INTERCOURSE + VERB **occur, take place** *He admitted that intercourse had taken place.*

PREP. **~ between** *intercourse between consenting adults* **| ~ with** *He accused her of intercourse with another man.*

2 **exchange of ideas, feelings, etc.**

ADJ. **social** *Life is a pleasant blend of work and social intercourse.*

interest *noun*

1 desire to learn/hear more about sb/sth

ADJ. **avid, burning, close, considerable, consuming, deep, great, intense, keen, lively, passionate, strong** *The police were starting to take a close interest in the company's activities. She always had a great interest in the supernatural.* **| particular | growing, increasing | slightest** *He's never shown the slightest interest in football.* **| general, widespread | worldwide | serious | genuine | abiding, lifelong | passing | renewed | added** *I'll watch the programme with added interest now I know you're in it.* **| active | passive | polite** *He showed a polite interest in her story.* **| personal | media** *The event attracted a lot of media interest.*

VERB + INTEREST **have | evince, express, show, take** *My cousin expressed an interest in seeing where I work.* **| feign, simulate** *She feigned interest in a magazine article to avoid meeting the man's stare.* **| lose | arouse, attract, awaken, caught, drum up, excite, generate, kindle, spark, stimulate, stir up, whip up** *A sticker on a bag caught my interest. The government failed to drum up any public interest in the referendum. A childhood journey sparked his lifelong interest in railways.* **| develop** *While in prison he developed an interest in art.* **| maintain, sustain** *Despite intensive publicity, Channel 4 failed to maintain interest in its expensive new show.* **| revive**

INTEREST + VERB **grow | flag, wane** *The children's interest began to flag after half an hour of the lesson.*

PREP. **for/out of ~** *I'm asking purely out of interest.* **| with ~** *They listened with interest.* **| ~ among** *to stimulate interest among teachers* **| ~ from** *growing interest from younger members* **| ~ in** *She took an active interest in their welfare.*

2 quality that attracts attention

ADJ. **great | particular** *Her comments are of particular interest to me.* **| broad, general, wide | architectural, artistic, historic/historical, scientific | academic** *Since the championship has already been decided, this match is of purely academic interest.* **| human** *a plot devoid of human interest* **| love** *Angelina Jolie supplies the love interest in the film.*

VERB + INTEREST **be of** *His books are of no interest to me at all.* | **hold no** *Their conversation held no interest for me.* | **add** *Bushes that flower in winter will add interest to your garden.* | **supply**

INTEREST + VERB **lie in** *The interest of the painting lies in its unusual use of colour.*

PREP. **of ~** *a building of great architectural interest*

3 **sth you enjoy doing/learning about**

ADJ. **diverse, varied, wide, wide-ranging | private | artistic, musical, etc.**

VERB + INTEREST **have | share | pursue** *He wanted time to pursue his many and varied musical interests.*

4 **money earned from investments**

ADJ. **annual, monthly, etc. | compound, simple**

VERB + INTEREST **earn, make, receive | pay | charge**

INTEREST + VERB **accrue, bear**

INTEREST + NOUN **rate | payment | charge**

PREP. **~ on** *to pay interest on a loan*

PHRASES **a rate of interest** *a mortgage with a fixed/flexible rate of interest*

5 **benefits that sth has for sb**

ADJ. **best** *It's not in your best interests to let your boss know you're looking for a new job.* | **self-, selfish | common, mutual | competing, contradictory | long-term, short-term | narrow** *narrow sectional interests* | **direct** *Lawyers have a direct financial interest in the outcome of the debate.* | **paramount, vital | vested | national, public | class, sectional | foreign, outside | economic, financial, political, strategic, etc.**

VERB + INTEREST **defend, guard, look after, protect, safeguard | act in, advance, champion, further, promote, serve** *He claimed to be acting in the public interest.* | **represent | act against, jeopardize, threaten**

INTEREST + VERB **lie in sth | be at stake**

INTEREST + NOUN **group** *Various interest groups have expressed their opposition to the policy.*

PREP. **against sb/sth's ~(s)** *The solicitor refused to act against his client's interests.* **| contrary to sb/sth's ~** *The union refused to support proposals that it saw as contrary to the interests of its members.* **| in sb/sth's ~(s)** *New work practices were introduced in the interests of efficiency.* **| of ~** *We met to discuss matters of common interest.* **| out of ~** *He was obviously acting purely out of selfish interest.*

PHRASES **a conflict of interests** *One member of the planning committee had a conflict of interests as he lived near the proposed motorway.* **| have sb's (best) interests at heart** *Although he was sometimes too strict with his children, he had their best interests at heart.*

6 legal right to share in profits

ADJ. **powerful | controlling, majority | minority | joint | banking, business, commercial, shipping**

VERB + INTEREST **have** *He has controlling interests in several ventures.* **| sell**

PREP. **~ in**

interest *verb*

ADV. **greatly, particularly, really, very much** *It is this aspect of the work that really interests me.*

VERB + INTEREST **try to** *She tried to interest the director in her scheme.*

interested *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *She got very interested in politics.* **| remain | get sb** *We need to get more young people interested in the sport.* **| keep sb** *You need to keep your audience interested.*

ADV. **deeply, especially, extremely, greatly, intensely, keenly, more than a little, most, particularly, passionately, really, seriously, specially, terribly, very (much)** *Ben must have been more than a little interested in the possibility to have pursued it so far.* **| genuinely, truly | increasingly | not at all, not (in) the least bit, not in the least, not remotely** *He's not in the least bit interested in girls.* **| only half, not much, not very** *Carrie was only half interested in the conversation.* **| fairly, mildly, quite, vaguely | just** *'Why do you ask?' 'I'm just interested, that's all.'* **| enough, sufficiently** *I wasn't interested enough in the argument to take sides one way or the other.* **| chiefly, mainly, primarily, principally | always, long** *I am always interested in how differently people can look at the same event. Charles had long been interested in architecture.* **| still | no longer | potentially | apparently, reportedly | clearly, obviously | actively** *As a landowner, he was actively interested in agricultural improvements.* **| professionally**

PREP. **in** *She's always been interested in other people.*

interesting *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become, get | make sth | find sb/sth** *I find her ideas really interesting.*

ADV. **deeply, especially, extraordinarily, extremely, highly, immensely, incredibly, intensely, most, particularly, really, terribly, very | equally | doubly | fairly, mildly, pretty, quite, rather | enough, sufficiently** *Some topics appeared interesting enough to require more detailed information.* **| potentially | inherently, intrinsically, in itself** *This subject is intrinsically interesting and worthy of study in its own right.* **| always** *It was always interesting to hear his stories.* **| architecturally, geologically, historically, sociologically** *architecturally interesting buildings*

PREP. **for** *It's not very interesting for visitors.* **| to** *How can we make the subject more interesting to young people?*

interfere *verb*

ADV. **seriously** *Emotional problems can seriously interfere with a student's work.* **| directly** *The judge cannot interfere directly in these proceedings.* **| not lightly** *The court will not lightly interfere while an interim order is in place.*

VERB + INTERFERE **have a right to** *Britain has no right to interfere in the internal affairs of other countries.* **| try and/to** *If you try and interfere in my life, I'll leave.* **| be reluctant to** *The courts are reluctant to interfere in these matters.*

PREP. **in** *outsiders interfering in local politics* **| with** *You mustn't interfere with her work.*

interference *noun*

ADJ. **undue, unwarranted | gross** *I will not tolerate such gross interference.* **| bureaucratic, government, political, state | external, outside**

VERB + INTERFERENCE **avoid, prevent** *The law is designed to prevent interference by local police.* **| tolerate | brook no** *My boss said she would brook no interference from other departments.*

PREP. **without ~** *I told her I wanted to make decisions without interference from her.* **| ~ in** *political interference in the legal process* **| ~ with** *interference with proper medical procedures*

interim *noun*

INTERIM + NOUN **period** *The value of the property almost doubled during the interim period.* **| measure | agreement, arrangement | payment | award, damages** *The injured passenger received an interim award of £50,000 damages.* **| profits | figures, results | report | government**

PREP. **in the ~** *Her job was done by her deputy in the interim before she returned to work.*

PHRASES **on an interim basis** *The company uses the agency when a vacancy needs to be filled on an interim basis.*

interior *noun*

ADJ. **original** *The original interior of the hotel has been replaced.* **| dark, dim, gloomy, shadowy | spacious**

INTERIOR + NOUN **decorator, designer**

PREP. **in the ~** *There is ample space in the interior of the car.*

interlude *noun*

ADJ. **brief | romantic | peaceful, pleasant | musical** *a musical interlude between two the acts of the play*

PREP. **~ between** *a peaceful interlude between periods of intense activity* **| ~ in** *He'd had two romantic interludes in a rather lonely life.* **| ~ of** *interludes of calm*

intermediary *noun*

ADJ. **financial**

VERB + INTERMEDIARY **act as**

PREP. **through an ~** *They were approached indirectly through an intermediary.* **| via an ~** *The product is then sold to the end-user via an intermediary.* **| ~ between** *She agreed to act as intermediary between the two tribes.*

interminable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem** *The journey seemed interminable.*

ADV. **seemingly** *For several seemingly interminable seconds no one spoke.*

Internet *noun*

ADJ. **wireless**

VERB + INTERNET **access, go on, use** *She likes to go on the Internet in the evenings.*

INTERNET + NOUN **site, website | portal | bulletin board, chat room | magazine | auction, broadcast, link** *Thousands logged on to view the live Internet broadcast of the concert. The auction was held in Paris with an Internet link to New York.* **| cafe** *Travellers can check their email at the Internet cafe in the square.* **| domain** *Registering an Internet domain name is now an essential part of setting up a company.* **| access, usage, use** *unlimited/unmetered Internet access* **| connection** *a broadband/high-speed Internet connection* **| search engine, (service) provider | customer, user | traffic** *the laying of fast networks to carry Internet traffic* **| brand, group | services | arm, division, operation, subsidiary** *the bank's Internet arm* **| entrepreneur | analyst, expert | banking, betting, dating, shopping | bank, bookie/bookmaker, business, company, firm, retailer, start-up, venture | industry, sector | fraud | security | economy | file** *software for downloading Internet files* **| image | software | technology | age** *issues facing the music industry in the Internet age* **| boom, revolution** *Many of the sites launched at the peak of the Internet boom have now disappeared.*

PREP. **on the ~** *More and more people are shopping on the Internet.* > Special page at COMPUTER

interpret *verb*

ADV. **correctly, rightly | wrongly | differently** *Different people might interpret events differently.* **| clearly | broadly, liberally** *The term 'business' is here interpreted broadly to include all types of organization in the public and private sectors. The strictness of the rules, even when liberally interpreted, has the effect of restricting innovation.* **| narrowly, restrictively, strictly | literally | metaphorically** *It is context and convention that determine whether a term will be interpreted literally or metaphorically.* **| easily, readily** *These figures cannot be easily interpreted.* **| cautiously** *These results must be interpreted cautiously.*

VERB + INTERPRET **be difficult to, be hard to | be able/unable to | seek to, try to** *We all seek to interpret what we hear and what we read.*

PREP. **as** *Her message was interpreted as a warning to the general.*

PHRASES **be variously interpreted (as sth)** *The figure of the Ancient Mariner has been variously interpreted* (= interpreted in various different ways). **| be widely interpreted as sth** *Her resignation has been widely interpreted as an admission of her guilt.*

interpretation *noun*

ADJ. **correct, right, true, valid | erroneous, false, wrong | plausible, reasonable | simplistic | literal, narrow, strict | free, generous, liberal, loose, wide | alternative, competing, conflicting, different, diverse, multiple | artistic**

VERB + INTERPRETATION **give sth, make** *In practice, this law is often given a wide interpretation by the police. Scientists made an interpretation based on the data available.* **| be open to** *The wording of this section of the contract is open to interpretation.*

PHRASES **put an interpretation on sth** *It is possible to put an entirely different interpretation on her behaviour.*

interpreter *noun*

VERB + INTERPRETER **act as | speak through** *Speaking through an interpreter, a Japanese fisherman gave his account of the tidal wave.*

PREP. **~ for** *Susan acted as interpreter for us.* > Note at JOB

interrelated *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **closely** *The two problems are closely interrelated.*

PREP. **with** *Feminist ideas are interrelated with philosophical ideas.*

interrogation *noun*

ADJ. **police | further**

VERB + INTERROGATION **conduct** *The interrogation was conducted by senior police officers.*

INTERROGATION + NOUN **cell, room | methods, procedures, techniques**

PREP. **during ~** *She revealed the name of her accomplice during interrogation.* **| under ~** *Under interrogation, he refused to say anything at first.*

PHRASES **power/powers of interrogation** *The committee has no power of interrogation.*

interrupt *verb*

ADV. **impatiently | rudely** *What was I saying, before we were so rudely interrupted?* **| harshly, sharply** *'Don't talk like that!' he interrupted harshly.* **| brutally, cruelly, violently** *Their luncheon was brutally interrupted by gunfire.* **| abruptly, suddenly | temporarily | constantly, repeatedly** *The morning's work was constantly interrupted by phone calls.* **| occasionally, periodically**

VERB + INTERRUPT **be sorry to** *I'm sorry to interrupt, but there's a telephone call for you.* **| (not) dare (to)** *It was all irrelevant, but I didn't dare interrupt him in mid-flow.*

PREP. **with** *I thought it better not to interrupt her with any comment.*

PHRASES **get interrupted** *I didn't manage to finish the report. I kept getting interrupted.*

interruption *noun*

ADJ. **brief, minor, short, temporary** *The game continued after a short interruption because of rain.* **| major | constant, endless, repeated** *I found it hard to work with all the noise and constant interruptions.*

VERB + INTERRUPTION **ignore** *He ignored her interruption and carried on talking.*

PREP. **without ~** *Can I please have this conversation on the phone without interruptions?* **| ~ from** *He continued speaking despite regular interruptions from the Opposition.* **| ~ to** *The birth of her son was a minor interruption to her career.*

interval *noun*

ADJ. **brief, short** *She ruled for ten years, except for a brief interval.* **| long, wide** *You are advised to leave a wide interval before you have your next child.* **| decent**

PREP. **at ~s** *At intervals a bell rings and workers stop for a drink.* **| ~ between** *The intervals between his various illnesses grew shorter and shorter.*

PHRASES **at fixed/frequent/periodic/regular intervals** *Trains run at fixed intervals. He returned home during the day at regular intervals.* **| at hourly/weekly/fortnightly/monthly, etc. intervals** *Meetings are held at monthly intervals.*

intervene *verb*

1 **become involved in a situation**

ADV. **actively, directly | personally | decisively | effectively, successfully | militarily** *Intervening militarily will not bring peace.*

VERB + INTERVENE **be forced to, have to** *Eventually, the army was forced to intervene.* **| be reluctant to | be powerless to** *Local people feel strongly about the proposed development but are virtually powerless to intervene.* **| have the power to, have the right to** *Our government has no right to intervene.* **| refuse to** *The UN refused to intervene.*

PREP. **against** *They would not intervene against the rebels themselves.* **| between** *She went over to intervene between the two men.* **| in** *She was reluctant to intervene in what was essentially a private dispute.* **| on behalf of** *The King intervened personally on behalf of the children.* **| with** *to intervene with the authorities on the prisoners' behalf*

intervention *noun*

ADJ. **direct** *direct intervention to stop abuses of the environment* **| active, decisive, forceful | early, immediate, timely** *A full-scale riot was prevented by the timely intervention of the police.* **| effective, successful | limited | personal** *the Emperor's personal intervention* **| government, ministerial, official, state | external, foreign, outside | armed, military** *We would resist any armed intervention from outside in our country's affairs.* **| police | judicial, legal | medical, surgical | economic, political, social | divine, human** *The king saw this victory as the direct result of divine intervention.*

VERB + INTERVENTION **make** *to make a forceful intervention in a dispute* **| call for, demand** *The prime minister was always demanding active intervention early on.* **| resist**

PREP. **~ against** *armed intervention against the rebels* **| ~ by** *intervention by a senior judge* **| ~ from** *He was furious at this intervention from the press.* **| ~ in** *the government's intervention in the dispute* **| ~ on behalf of** *state intervention on behalf of the British film industry*

PHRASES **the power/right of intervention**

interview *noun*

ADJ. **face-to-face | telephone | group | in-depth | police** *a police interview with suspected terrorists* **| newspaper, press, radio, television | job** *I've got a job interview tomorrow.*

VERB + INTERVIEW **carry out, conduct, do, hold** *The survey team carried out over 200 interviews with retired people.* **| do, give (sb), grant (sb)** *He's a very private man and rarely does interviews.* **| attend, be called for, have**

INTERVIEW + NOUN **board, panel | techniques | procedure**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *He said in an interview that he wanted to get married.* **| ~ about** *The prime minister gave the paper an interview about his musical tastes.* **| ~ between** *an interview between the French Foreign Minister and the President of Egypt* **| ~ for** *an interview for the post of sales manager* **| ~ with** *He had an interview with United Biscuits. an interview with the Vietnamese leader*

PHRASES **a round of interviews** *We're about to start the second round of interviews for the post.*

interviewer *nou*n

ADJ. **clever, experienced, good, skilled, trained | radio, television/TV**

intestine *noun*

ADJ. **large, small**

PREP. **along the ~, in the ~** *bacteria in the small intestine* **| through the ~**

PHRASES **the wall of the intestine**

intimacy *noun*

ADJ. **genuine, real, true | close, deep, great | enforced | emotional, physical, sexual**

VERB + INTIMACY **be capable of** *She isn't capable of real intimacy.* **| enjoy** *(formal) He enjoys an intimacy with the prime minister.* **| create, promote | develop | destroy** *The noise destroyed the intimacy of their conversation.* **| sense** *I sensed a close intimacy between them.*

INTIMACY + VERB **develop**

PREP. **~ between** *the intimacy created between student and teacher* **| ~ with** *A writer must develop an intimacy with the subject at hand.*

PHRASES **fear of intimacy** *He was prevented from declaring his love by his fear of intimacy.* **| a feeling/sense of intimacy**

intimidate *verb*

VERB + INTIMIDATE **try to**

PREP. **into** *The police had tried to intimidate him into signing a confession.*

PHRASES **an attempt to intimidate sb, be easily intimidated** *He was not a man to be easily intimidated.* **| feel intimidated** *She did not feel intimidated by him.*

intimidation *noun*

ADJ. **physical, verbal | police**

VERB + INTIMIDATION **be subjected to, experience, face, suffer** *Workers were subjected to intimidation as they crossed the picket line.*

PREP. **~ against** *intimidation against trade unions* **| ~ by** *Workers continue to enter the plant despite intimidation by mass pickets.* **| ~ from** *fear of intimidation from paramilitary organizations*

PHRASES **an act of intimidation, a campaign of intimidation**

intolerable *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | make sth** *The constant pain made her life intolerable.* **| consider sth, find sth** *I find his rudeness intolerable.*

ADV. **absolutely, quite | increasingly | almost, nearly** *The job placed almost intolerable pressure on her.*

PREP. **to** *The situation had become intolerable to him.*

intolerance *noun*

1 **lack of tolerance**

ADJ. **racial, religious**

VERB + INTOLERANCE **display, show**

PREP. **~ of** *The town began to show increasing intolerance of immigrants.* **| ~ to** *the professor's intolerance to any views other than his own* **| ~ towards** *the intolerance of local residents towards refugees*

2 **inability to digest certain substances**

ADJ. **food | glucose, lactose, etc.**

PREP. **~ of** *intolerance of potatoes* **| ~ to** *an intolerance to milk products*

intolerant *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, very | utterly**

PREP. **of** *They are deeply intolerant of all opposition.*

intonation *noun*

ADJ. **falling, flat, rising** *the rising intonation at the end of spoken questions* **|** **foreign** *He speaks excellent Spanish but with a distinctly foreign intonation.*

INTONATION + NOUN **pattern**

intricacy *noun*

VERB + INTRICACY **learn, master, understand** *I've never mastered the intricacies of cricket.* **| guide/steer sb through, steer sb through**

intricate *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **amazingly, extraordinarily, extremely, highly, very** *an amazingly intricate structure* **| quite**

intrigue *noun*

ADJ. **international, political | court** *a tale of treachery and court intrigue*

VERB + INTRIGUE **carry on, engage in**

PREP. **~ against** *The prime minister engaged in political intrigues against the king.*

PHRASES **a web of intrigue**

intriguing *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound** *It all sounds very intriguing.* | **find sth** *I found the story rather intriguing.*

ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, highly, most, very | quite, rather**

introduce *verb*

1 tell people sb's name

ADV. **formally, properly** *We have met before, but we haven't been formally introduced.*

VERB + INTRODUCE **allow me to, can, let me, may** *Let me introduce myself. May I introduce my wife, Sarah?*

PREP. **as** *He introduced me as a new member of the company.* **| to** *She introduced me to her neighbours.*

2 start using/doing sth for the first time

ADV. **gradually | rapidly**

VERB + INTRODUCE **intend to, plan to, want to** *The local council plans to introduce new regulations on parking.* **| attempt to, try to** *She attempted in vain to introduce some order into the classroom.*

PREP. **into** *New technology is rapidly being introduced into factories.*

PHRASES **newly/recently introduced** *These measures have only been recently introduced.*

introduction *noun*

1 **first use**

ADJ. **early, gradual, recent, widespread**

PREP. **~ into** *the gradual introduction of modern farming methods into traditional societies*

2 **first part of a book/talk**

ADJ. **brief, short** *He began with a brief introduction.*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *His mother is mentioned in the introduction.* **| ~ to** *the introduction to her latest book*

3 **book for studying a subject**

ADJ. **excellent, general, useful** *It serves as an excellent introduction to 19th-century painting.*

PREP. **~ to**

4 **telling people each other's names**

ADJ. **formal**

VERB + INTRODUCTION **make** *I can never remember names, so I don't like to make the introductions.*

PHRASES **a letter of introduction** *He gave me a letter of introduction to the manager.*

intruder *noun*

ADJ. **unwanted, unwelcome | masked**

VERB + INTRUDER **catch, disturb, find, startle, surprise** *He surprised a masked intruder in the kitchen.* **| deter, keep away/out** *Dogs can deter unwelcome intruders.* **| tackle** *He was stabbed when he tackled an intruder armed with a knife.* **| repel** *Staff were instructed to repel intruders with physical force, if need be.*

INTRUDER + VERB **break into, force their way into** *Intruders had forced their way into the house.*

INTRUDER + NOUN **alarm**

PREP. **against ~s** *security measures against intruders*

intrusion *noun*

ADJ. **media, press | unnecessary, unwanted, unwarranted, unwelcome**

VERB + INTRUSION **resent**

PREP. **~ in** *I really resented his intrusion in a family matter.* **| ~ into** *media intrusion into the lives of celebrities* **| ~ on/upon** *an unwarranted intrusion upon the singer's privacy*

intrusive *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | find sth**

ADV. **extremely, very | increasingly | rather, somewhat | visually** *Planning permission was refused on the grounds that the proposed building would be 'visually intrusive'.*

intuition *noun*

ADJ. **feminine, women's** *Her feminine intuition told her that he was unhappy.*

QUANT. **flash** *It came upon him in a flash of intuition.*

VERB + INTUITION **have** *She had an intuition that her mother wasn't very well.* **| rely on, trust, use** *She learned to trust her intuitions about other people's motives.*

INTUITION + VERB **suggest sth, tell sb sth** *Intuition told me we were going in the wrong direction.*

PREP. **by ~** *By intuition, he sensed what was wrong.* **| ~ about** *an intuition about where to find wild strawberries* **| ~ behind** *the intuition behind her theory*

intuitive *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a highly intuitive thinker* **| purely | almost | fairly, quite**

invalid *adj.*

VERBS **be | became | make sth, render sth** *This action would render the agreement invalid.* **| consider sth, declare sth, deem sth, regard sth as** *The contract was declared invalid.*

invaluable *adj.*

VERBS be, prove | become | remain | make sb/sth *His knowledge of the area made him invaluable.* **| find sth** *You will find their help absolutely invaluable.*

ADV. absolutely, quite

PREP. for *This technology is invaluable for pupils with poor sight.* **| to** *Your support has been invaluable to us.*

invasion *noun*

ADJ. **full-scale | military** *Latest reports are of a full-scale military invasion.*

VERB + INVASION **carry out, launch, mount | repel, repulse | counter, resist**

PHRASES **an invasion of privacy** *Having all those photographers in the house was a terrible invasion of privacy.* **| fear of invasion, a threat of invasion**

invent *verb*

PHRASES **newly invented** *using the then newly invented automatic rifle*

invention *noun*

1 **new thing**

ADJ. **latest, new | modern | brilliant, ingenious, wonderful | successful**

VERB + INVENTION **come up with, design | patent, register** *He failed to patent his invention and never made a penny from it.*

2 **untrue story**

ADJ. **pure** *Most of what he says is pure invention!*

PHRASES **power/powers of invention** *His powers of invention are somewhat limited.*

inventive *adj*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **brilliantly, highly, very | quite**

inventory *noun*

ADJ. **complete, comprehensive, detailed, full**

VERB + INVENTORY **compile, draw up, make, produce, take** *The manager is compiling an inventory of all the hotel furniture.* **| list sth on**

INVENTORY + VERB **list sth** *The inventory lists many rare items.*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *There were no forks in the inventory.* **| on an/the ~** *That lamp isn't listed on the inventory.*

invest *verb*

ADV. **heavily** *The company invested heavily in new technology.* | **directly** *If you invest directly in the stock market potential profits are greater, but so are potential losses.* | **carefully, safely, wisely** | **tax-free** *We can invest your money tax-free abroad.* | **abroad, overseas**

VERB + INVEST **be willing to** *Are you willing to invest the time and effort necessary to make the scheme work?* | **look to, plan to, seek to** *investors looking to invest in US companies* | **decide to** | **rush to** *When exchange controls were lifted Swedes rushed to invest abroad.* | **fail to** *The industry has failed to invest in new product development.*

PREP. **in** *encouraging people to invest in pension plans* | **with** *Her savings are invested with a building society.*

investigate *verb*

ADV. **carefully, closely | extensively | fully, properly, thoroughly** *The allegations have not yet been properly investigated.* **| further | actively**

VERB + INVESTIGATE **ask sb to, be called in to** *Police have been called in to investigate the complaints.* **| agree to, pledge to, promise to** *The company has pledged to investigate claims that its products are unsafe.* **| aim to, be designed to, seek to**

investigation *noun*

ADJ. **careful, close, detailed | extensive** *The authorities conducted an extensive investigation into his tax affairs.* **| full, thorough | criminal, murder, police | scientific | government**

VERB + INVESTIGATION **carry out, conduct, pursue** *Police are still pursuing their investigations.* **| launch | head, lead | complete**

INVESTIGATION + VERB **reveal sth, show sth** *Closer investigation showed this idea to be untenable.*

PREP. **on ~** *On investigation, the noise turned out to be only a door banging.* **| under ~** *The singer is currently under investigation for possessing illegal drugs.* **| ~ into** *Police have launched an investigation into the allegations.*

PHRASES **the subject of an investigation** *The matter is the subject of a police investigation, and we have been advised not to comment.*

investment *noun*

ADJ. **good, excellent, profitable, sound, successful, wise, worthwhile | bad, poor, unwise** *He lost a lot of money through poor investments.* **| high-risk, risky, speculative | safe | considerable, enormous, great, heavy, high, huge, large, large-scale, major, massive, significant, sizeable, substantial** *The president has called for massive investment to rebuild the country's economy.* **| low, modest, small | inadequate** *The country's infrastructure is crumbling because of inadequate investment.* **| maximum, minimum | additional, extra, further | gross, net | overall | new | necessary | strategic | direct | domestic, local | cross-border, foreign, international, inward, offshore, outside, overseas | long-term, short-term | initial, original** *an initial investment of $5 million* **| capital, financial | business, industrial, infrastructural, manufacturing | government, public, public-sector, state | corporate, insitutional | private, private-sector** *private investment in the health service* **| personal** *I had made a personal investment in time and energy.* **| emotional** *parents' emotional investment in their children*

QUANT. **level, rate**

VERB + INVESTMENT **make | attract, encourage, promote, stimulate** *a business plan to encourage new investment* **| increase | cut | recoup** *It took two years before I recouped my investment.* **| realize** *She felt the time was right to realize her investment, and sold all her shares.* **| spread** *When buying shares, it's wise to spread your investment over several companies.* **| protect**

INVESTMENT + VERB **increase, rise | fall**

INVESTMENT + NOUN **funds | levels, rates** *inadequate investment levels* **| scheme | decision | company, trust**

PREP. **as an ~** *I don't really like modern art but I bought it as an investment.* **| ~ from** *investment from American pension funds* **| ~ in** *investment in local industry*

PHRASES **a loss on an investment** *losses made on investments in stocks and bonds* **| a profit/return on an investment** *I'm hoping for a good return on my investment.*
> Special page at BUSINESS

investor *noun*

ADJ. **big, large, major | ordinary, small** *Many ordinary investors stand to lose money in this affair.* **| potential, prospective, would-be | business, institutional | personal, private | domestic, local | foreign, international, inward, outside, overseas**

VERB + INVESTOR **attract, encourage** *A stable firm is more likely to attract potential investors.* **| advise** *advising investors where to put their money*

INVESTOR + VERB **buy sth, invest in sth** *Investors will be able to buy the shares from next week.* **| sell sth**

INVESTOR + NOUN **confidence** *the need to restore investor confidence* **| protection**

PREP. **~ in** *investors in plantation forestry (figurative) encouraging companies to become investors in people*

invincible *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become | make sb** *a secret weapon that will make us invincible.*

ADV. **almost, virtually | apparently, seemingly**

invisible *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain | make sb/sth, render sb/sth** *He wished that he could make himself invisible. It's interesting how women are rendered invisible in these statistics.*

ADV. **altogether, completely, totally | almost, nearly, practically, virtually | largely | effectively**

PREP. **to** *Infrared light is invisible to the human eye.*

invitation *noun*

ADJ. **kind | formal | open** *We have an open invitation to use their holiday cottage whenever we like. (figurative) An unlocked door is an open invitation to any burglar.* **| dinner, party, wedding**

VERB + INVITATION **get, have, receive | accept, take sb up on, take up** *We'd love to to take up your invitation to visit you some time.* **| decline, refuse, turn down** *I must sadly decline your generous invitation.* **| extend** *(formal)*, **issue, send, send out**

PREP. **at sb's ~** *He is here to give a concert at the invitation of the British Council.* **| by ~** *Membership of the club is by invitation only.* **| from ~** *We got a wedding invitation from Shashi and Len.* **| to ~** *Have you received your invitation to the exhibition? The head extended an invitation to all parents to come and see the school.*

invite *verb*

1 **ask sb to do sth**

ADV. **formally, officially | cordially, kindly, warmly** *You are cordially invited to attend the annual parish meeting. She very kindly invited me to lunch.* **| personally | along, around/round/over, back, in, out** *They've invited us over for a drink.*

PREP. **into** *As a child I was allowed to play in the garden at the Manor, but I never got invited into the house.* **| for** *Let's invite them all for dinner.* **| to** *Thank you for inviting me to the meeting.*

2 **encourage sth**

ADV. **positively** *The hype and fervour surrounding the event positively invited scepticism.*

VERB + INVITE **seem to** *The film seems to invite comparison with 'The Italian Job'.*

inviting *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, sound**

ADV. **very | hardly, not particularly** *The house, with its boarded-up windows, was hardly inviting.* **| quite**

invoice *noun*

ADJ. original | final *Please pay the final invoice within two weeks.* **| tax, VAT** *The seller has to issue a tax invoice.*

VERB + INVOICE issue, raise, send | get, receive | pay

INVOICE + NOUN price, value *The shipping costs can be as high as 50% of the invoice value of the goods.*

involve *verb*

1 **make sth necessary**

ADV. **ordinarily, typically, usually** *Inventions typically involve minor improvements in technology.* | **inevitably, necessarily** *The reforms will inevitably involve a lot of new paperwork for teachers.*

2 **include sb**

ADV. **actively, directly** *methods that actively involve students in learning*

PREP. **in** *I didn't mean to involve you in all this.*

involved *adj.*

1 **taking part in sth**

VERBS **be | become, get**

ADV. **closely, deeply, heavily, intimately, very** *She became heavily involved in politics.* **| actively** *He wanted to be actively involved in school life.* **| directly** *Drugs were not directly involved in her death.* **| personally**

PREP. **in** *He was involved in a road accident.* **| with** *She first became involved with the organization in 1998.*

2 **emotionally connected with sb**

VERBS **be | become, get**

ADV. **deeply, heavily, very | personally | emotionally, romantically, sexually**

PREP. **with** *I never wanted to get emotionally involved with him.*

3 **complicated**

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become, get**

ADV. **extremely, terribly, very** *It all sounds terribly involved and complicated.* **| rather**

involvement *noun*

ADJ. **active, direct | close, deep, intense | full | day-to-day** *When she was promoted, she missed the day-to-day involvement with customers.* **| personal | emotional** *Nurses usually try to avoid emotional involvement with patients.* **| parental** *He encourages parental involvement in the running of school.* **| political | military** *The US government has ruled out military involvement in the region.* **| alleged** *He is serving a 15-year sentence for his alleged involvement in a plot to overthrow the government.*

VERB + INVOLVEMENT **accuse sb of | suspect sb of | admit, deny** *Winters denies any involvement in the robbery.*

PREP. **~ by** *The success of the venture may lead to involvement by other foreign companies.* **| ~ from** *The project needs full involvement from all members of the group.* **| ~ in** *He was found to have a deep involvement in drug dealing.* **| ~ with** *Her husband's involvement with another woman led to their divorce.*

iron *noun*

1 **metal**

ADJ. **rusty | cast, corrugated, galvanized, wrought** *a hut with a corrugated iron roof* **| pig | scrap**

VERB + IRON **make, produce, smelt** *Germany produced enormous quantities of coal, iron and steel.* **| be rich in, contain** *foods that are rich in iron* **| be made from/(out) of, be cast in** *a bridge made of wrought iron*

IRON + VERB **go rusty, rust**

IRON + NOUN **ore** *mining iron ore locally* **| bar, ingot | filings | industry | foundry, works | deficiency** *patients with iron deficiency* **| tablets** *I was put on iron tablets for my anaemia.*

2 **tool**

ADJ. **cool, hot, warm | electric, steam | travel**

VERB + IRON **use** *Use a cool iron on synthetics.*

PHRASES **run an iron over sth** *I just need to run an iron over my shirt, then I'm ready.*

iron *verb*

ADV. **beautifully, carefully, properly** *Her clothes were always beautifully ironed.*

PHRASES **freshly/newly ironed** *a neat pile of freshly ironed shirts* **| need ironing** *My jeans need ironing.*

ironic *adj*

VERBS **be, seem | find sth**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, heavily, particularly, very | quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | doubly | deliciously, suitably | tragically**

ironing *noun*

QUANT. **pile** *There's a pile of ironing waiting to be done.*

VERB + IRONING **do** *Who does the ironing in your house?* | **need** *This shirt needs ironing.*

IRONING + NOUN **board**

irony *noun*

ADJ. **great, heavy** *She tried to ignore the heavy irony in his voice.* **| gentle** *She congratulated him with gentle irony.* **| bitter, cruel, tragic | neat, nice** *It is a nice irony that the Minister of Transport missed the meeting because her train was delayed.* **| final, supreme, ultimate** *The final irony was that he became Minister of Education having left school at 12.* **| dramatic** (= in a play, when a character's words carry an extra meaning that the character is not aware of)

QUANT. **hint, touch, trace** *He thanked us all without a touch of irony.*

PREP. **by a … ~** *By a cruel irony, he died in a crash while returning home from the war.*

irrational *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | consider sth, regard sth as, see sth as | dismiss sth as** *He dismissed her fears as irrational.*

ADV. **quite, totally, wholly | increasingly | somewhat | apparently, seemingly**

irreconcilable *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **absolutely, totally, utterly | apparently, seemingly** *a seemingly irreconcilable conflict*

PREP. **with** *These practices are irreconcilable with the law of the Church.*

irregular *adj.*

1 **not regular in size/shape/frequency**

VERBS **be, look | become**

ADV. **highly, very | rather, slightly, somewhat** *The cells are slightly irregular in shape.*

2 **not allowed according to the rules**

VERBS **be, seem, sound**

ADV. **highly, most, very** *It would be highly irregular for a police officer to accept money in this way.* **| slightly, somewhat** *some somewhat irregular business practices*

irregularity *noun*

ADJ. **serious | minor, slight** *a slight irregularity in the surface of the wood* **| widespread** *The newspaper claimed there were widespread irregularities in the election.* **| electoral, financial, procedural, voting** *Investigators found no evidence of financial irregularity.*

VERB + IRREGULARITY **investigate, uncover**

IRREGULARITY + VERB **occur, take place** *Irregularities occur when there is no central control.*

PREP. **~ in** *Auditors have uncovered serious irregularities in the accounts.*

irrelevant *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | make sth, render sth | consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as, view sth as | dismiss sth as** *These arguments were dismissed as irrelevant.*

ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly, wholly | increasingly | almost, more or less, virtually | largely | rather, somewhat | simply | strictly** *The matter is strictly irrelevant at this point in the proceedings.* **| apparently, seemingly | ludicrously** *Ludicrously irrelevant thoughts swarmed in her head.* **| politically**

PREP. **to** *Her statement is irrelevant to this case. It's all irrelevant to me.*

irresistible *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become | remain | make sb/sth** *The very high salary made the job irresistible.* **| find sb/sth** *You'll find our offer irresistible.*

ADV. **quite, totally | almost | simply | apparently, seemingly** *Public spending has an apparently irresistible momentum.* **| somehow**

PREP. **to** *His rugged good looks made him irresistible to women.*

irresponsible *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | become | consider sb/sth**

ADV. **extremely, grossly, highly, terribly, very** *This was highly irresponsible behaviour.* **| completely, totally, utterly, wholly** *He's fun, but totally irresponsible.* **| rather, slightly, somewhat | socially** *It is socially irresponsible to refuse young people advice on sexual matters.*

irrigation *noun*

ADJ. **large-scale, small-scale**

IRRIGATION + NOUN **project, scheme, system | canal, channel, ditch | pump**

PREP. **under ~** *two million acres under irrigation*

irritate *verb*

ADV. **intensely, really** *The noise was beginning to irritate me intensely. That man really irritates me!* **| slightly | easily** *She was moody at times and easily irritated.*

irritated *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound | become, get**

ADV. **deeply, profoundly | thoroughly | increasingly | faintly, a little, mildly, rather, slightly | visibly**

PREP. **at** *She was deeply irritated at being thwarted.* **| by** *He was slightly irritated by her forgetfulness.*

irritation *noun*

1 **feeling/cause of being irritated**

ADJ. **considerable, great, intense, major, serious, some | growing, increasing | mild, minor, slight** *the minor irritation of having to queue* **| constant**

VERB + IRRITATION **feel** *He felt slight irritation at being kept waiting.* **| express, show** *He showed no irritation at the delay.* **| conceal, hide, suppress** *She made no attempt to conceal her irritation.* **| cause** *Such delays can cause considerable irritation.*

IRRITATION + VERB **grow, rise** *She felt irritation rising in her.* **| show** *She didn't let her irritation show.*

PREP. **in ~** *Gary shook his head in irritation.* **| to your ~** *I found to my great irritation that I'd forgotten the film.* **| with ~** *'Of course not' she said with some irritation.* **| ~ at** *our irritation at the delay* **| ~ to** *This is a major irritation to travellers.* **| ~ with** *her irritation with people who were slow*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of irritation, a source of irritation** *Traffic noise is a source of constant irritation.*

2 **slight pain in part of the body**

ADJ. **intense, severe | mild | eye, skin** *a new cream to treat skin irritation*

VERB + IRRITATION **cause, lead to** *The infection can cause intense irritation of the throat.* **| experience, get, suffer** *Stop using the cream if you get any irritation.*

Islam *noun*

ADJ. **Shia, Sunni** > Note at RELIGION(for verbs and phrases)

island *noun*

ADJ. **outlying, remote** *a ferry service to the outlying islands* **| coral, tropical, volcanic | desert, uninhabited | offshore** *His money is in an offshore island bank.*

QUANT. **chain, group** *a group of tropical islands*

ISLAND + NOUN **chain, group** *the island chain of the Outer Hebrides* **| home** *They were forced to leave their island home and start a new life on the mainland.* **| paradise** *the island paradise of Phuket*

PREP. **on an/the ~** *He owns a house on the island.*

PHRASES **the … coast/end/side/tip of an island** *The best beaches are on the southern tip of the island.*

isolated *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel | become, get | remain | leave sb/sth** *Without help, many elderly people would be left isolated.* **| keep sb/sth** *She kept herself almost isolated from her colleagues.*

ADV. **extremely, very | completely, entirely, totally, utterly | increasingly, progressively | almost | largely | quite, rather, relatively, somewhat | effectively, essentially | apparently** *an apparently isolated incident* **| culturally, diplomatically, economically, geographically, physically, socially** *a culturally isolated community Unless a compromise could be reached the country would be diplomatically isolated on this issue.*

PREP. **from** *a child who is isolated from other children*

isolation *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total | enforced** *the enforced isolation of life in an Arctic weather station* **| diplomatic, geographical, political | international** *The country could face international isolation if it does not withdraw its troops.* **| emotional, social** *the social isolation of single mothers at home with their babies*

VERB + ISOLATION **experience, suffer (from)** *Many immigrants experience isolation.*

ISOLATION + NOUN **hospital, ward**

PREP. **in ~** *The figures should not be looked at in isolation but as part of a pattern.*

PHRASES **in splendid isolation** *The tower stands in splendid isolation on the cliff edge.*

issue *noun*

1 **problem**

ADJ. **big, burning, central, critical, crucial, important, key, main, major, vital** *Europe remains the burning issue within the party.* | **wider** *The problem raises wider issues of gender and identity.* | **minor, side** | **basic, fundamental** | **real** *The real issue is where the power lies.* | **contentious, controversial, difficult, thorny** *the controversial issue of censorship* | **complex** | **live, unresolved** *The strike of ten years ago is still very much a live issue in the town.* | **domestic, global, international, local, national, regional** | **commercial, constitutional, economic, educational, environmental, ethical, health, moral, policy, political, social, technical, theoretical**

QUANT. **number, range, series**

VERB + ISSUE **raise** | **debate, discuss** *This evening we're debating the issue of the legalization of soft drugs.* | **decide, settle** *A referendum was held to settle the issue.* | **address, consider, deal with, examine, explore, look at, tackle** | **clarify** | **focus on** *We really need to focus on this one issue and not get sidetracked.* | **touch on** *The issue of birth control was touched on, but we need to examine it in more detail.* | **highlight** *The report highlights three issues.* | **confuse** *This argument should not be allowed to confuse the issue.* | **avoid, evade**

ISSUE + VERB **arise** *issues arising from the survey* | **underlie sth** *A more important issue underlies this debate.*

PREP. **at ~** *What you say is interesting, but it does not affect the point at issue here.* | **on an/the ~** *She spoke on the issue of private health care.* | **~ about** *fundamental issues about working conditions* | **~ concerning** *issues concerning the environment* | **~ relating to** *The conference examined key issues relating to the reform.*

2 **one in a series of publications**

ADJ. **current** | **back** | **special** *a special issue of stamps*

VERB + ISSUE **bring out, publish**

ISSUE + VERB **come out, go on sale** | **be out**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *an article in the current issue of ‘Newsweek’*

issue *verb*

ADV. **formally** *the bank which formally issues and handles these credit cards* **|** **directly** *The safest cheques are those issued directly by the bank?known as bankers' draughts.* **|** **jointly** *a document issued jointly by the Treasury and the Home Office* **|** **immediately, promptly** *He left the company and promptly issued a writ claiming $45 million in damages.*

PREP. **against** *(formal) Arrest warrants were issued against 16 of the protesters.* **|** **on behalf of** *a statement issued on behalf of the UN Secretary-General* **|** **to** *The new guidelines have been issued to all doctors.* **|** **with** *Some of the police were issued with rifles.*

PHRASES **newly issued** *newly issued banknotes*

Italian *nou*n > Note at LANGUAGE

itch *noun*

ADJ. **irritating**

VERB + ITCH **relieve, scratch (at)** *The dog was scratching at an itch behind its left ear.*

itch *verb*

ADV. **positively**

VERB + ITCH **make sb** *The heat made me itch all over.*

PREP. **for** *He was itching for a chance to show how good he was.* **| with** *Her fingers positively itched with the desire to slap his face.*

item *noun*

ADJ. **individual, particular, single, specific** *Each individual item has a number.* **| essential, important** *I keep essential items in my hand luggage when I fly.* **| main, major** *the main item on the agenda a major item of expenditure* **| expensive, valuable** *Several valuable items were stolen.* **| commodity, consumer** *Computers became a consumer item in the early 1990s.* **| luxury** *There is a higher tax on luxury items.* **| food | household** *household items such as brushes and bedclothes* **| collector's** *The 1970s American model has become something of a collector's item.* **| agenda | data | news**

PREP. **~ of** *Several items of clothing were found near the scene of the crime.* **| ~ on** *The programme featured an item on clothes for young children.*

PHRASES **item by item** *Check the list carefully, item by item.* **| an item on the agenda/menu**

itinerary *noun*

ADJ. **detailed, full | demanding | tourist**

VERB + ITINERARY **arrange, plan | follow** *tourists following a demanding itinerary*

ITINERARY + VERB **include sth** *Your itinerary includes a visit to Stonehenge.*

PREP. **in an/the ~** *Historic sites are featured prominently in their itineraries.* **| on an/the ~** *The National Gallery is on most tourists' itinerary.*

ivory *noun*

ADJ. **solid | carved | poached**

VERB + IVORY **be made from/(out) of, carve sth from/in** *a figure delicately carved in ivory* **| be inlaid with** *a table made of polished wood, inlaid with ivory*

IVORY + NOUN **trade**

PREP. **in ~** *a statuette in ivory and gold*

PHRASES **the trade in ivory**

ivy *noun*

ADJ. **dense, thick | trailing | variegated**

VERB + IVY **grow** *We're going to grow a variegated ivy up the back of the house.* **| plant, put in | cut back, cut down, keep down** *The ivy's got very thick. It needs cutting back a bit.* **| be covered in** *The walls were covered in ivy.*

IVY + VERB **grow** *Ivy grew up the side of the house.* **| climb, cling, crawl, creep, trail, twine** *There was ivy clinging to the wall.*

IVY + NOUN **leaves**

jab *noun*

1 **sudden hit/push**

ADJ. **left, right | hard, painful, sharp | elbow**

VERB + JAB **give sb | feel**

PREP. **~ in/to** *Scott gave him a sharp left jab to the ribs.*

2 **injection**

ADJ. **flu, tetanus, typhoid, etc.**

VERB + JAB **have** *Did you have a flu jab this year?* **| give sb**

jack *nou*n > Note at CARD

jacket *noun*

ADJ. **fitted, tailored | baggy, loose | heavy | light, lightweight | double-breasted, single-breasted | belted, zip-up | padded, quilted | bolero | waterproof, waxed | bulletproof | camouflage, check/checked, striped | corduroy, cotton, denim, fleece, leather, linen, sheepskin, suede, tweed, wool | pyjama, suit, uniform | bomber, combat, dinner, flak, flying, life, shooting, ski, smoking, sports** *He wore a tweed sports jacket.*

VERB + JACKET **pull on, shrug (sth) into, shrug on, slip on, throw on** *She shrugged her shoulders into her jacket.* **| pull off, remove, shrug off/out of, slip off | button (up), do up, zip up | unbutton, undo, unzip | hang up | drape, sling** *A light cotton jacket was draped over her shoulders.*

JACKET + VERB **hang** *His jacket hung over the back of his chair.*

JACKET + NOUN **pocket, sleeve** *He pulled his passport from his inside jacket pocket.*

PHRASES **a jacket and tie** *Gentlemen are requested to wear a jacket and tie for dinner.* > Special page at CLOTHES

jackpot *noun* ADJ. £

1 **million, etc.**

VERB + JACKPOT **get, hit, scoop, win** *(figurative) The National Theatre hit the jackpot with its first musical, 'Guys and Dolls'.*

JACKPOT + NOUN **prize | winner**

PREP. **~ in** *They scooped the jackpot in yesterday's lottery.* **| ~ of** *a prize jackpot of* £*100,000* **| ~ on** *He won the jackpot on the football pools.*

jail (*also* **gaol)** *noun*

ADJ. **county, local | high-security, maximum security, top security | private | overcrowded**

VERB + JAIL **go to** *He's gone to jail for fraud.* **| put sb in, send sb to, throw sb into | keep sb in | be freed from, be/get out of, be released from** *With good behaviour, she could be out of jail in two years.* **| escape from | threaten sb with** *He was threatened with jail if evidence of a hoax was discovered.* **| face | avoid, escape** *She avoided jail by pleading self-defence.*

JAIL + NOUN **sentence, term**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *riots at Strangeways jail* **| in (a/the) ~** *How long has she been in jail? There was a fire in the jail last night.*

jam *noun*

ADJ. **home-made | plum, strawberry, etc.**

QUANT. **dollop | jar, pot**

VERB + JAM **make | spread (sth with)** *She spread the toast thinly with raspberry jam.*

JAM + NOUN **jar | doughnut, sandwich, sponge, tart**

PHRASES **bread and jam** > Special page at FOOD

jam *verb*

ADV. **completely**

PHRASES **be jammed full (of sth)** *The cupboards were jammed full of old newspapers.* | **be jammed solid** *The traffic was jammed solid in the city centre.* | **be jammed tight with sth** *The room is jammed tight with furniture.* | **be jammed (up) with** *The streets were completely jammed with traffic.*

January *nou*n > Note at MONTH

Japanese *nou*n

JAPANESE + NOUN **script | character** > Note at LANGUAGE

jar *noun*

ADJ. **screw-top/screw-topped | airtight, sealed, stoppered | sterilized | preserving, storage | earthenware, glass, stone/stoneware | coffee, cookie, jam, marmalade, pickle, sweet**

VERB + JAR **fill** *He was filling a jar with coins for his holiday.* **| seal | preserve sth in, store sth in**

JAR + VERB **be filled with sth, be full of sth, contain sth** *a jar full of pickled onions*

PREP. **in/into a/the ~ | ~ of** *a jar of marmalade*

jargon *noun*

ADJ. **current | incomprehensible, obscure | unnecessary | academic, computer, legal, scientific, technical**

QUANT. **piece**

VERB + JARGON **speak (in), use** *He always speaks in obscure legal jargon.* **| avoid**

PREP. **in ~** *in computer jargon* **| ~ for** *'All necessary means' is diplomatic jargon for 'war'.*

jaw *noun*

1 **bone that contains teeth**

ADJ. **bottom, lower | top, upper | firm, strong | clenched, set | slack | jutting, lantern** (= in which the lower part sticks out), **thrusting | pointed, square | broken, dislocated, fractured**

VERB + JAW **clench, set | finger, rub, stroke** *He fingered his jaw thoughtfully.* **| break, dislocate, fracture**

JAW + VERB **drop, sag** *My jaw dropped in astonishment when I saw the size of the audience.* **| be set, clench, set, tighten** *Her jaw was set, ready for a fight.* **| jut** *His jaw jutted stubbornly forward; he would not be denied.*

JAW + NOUN **bone, muscle | injury**

PREP. **in your ~** *A muscle in his jaw pulsed angrily.* **| on your ~** *He had two days' growth of stubble on his jaw.* **| to the ~** *a punch to the jaw* **| under your ~** *She had a fold of flesh under her jaw.*

PHRASES **the line/set of your jaw** *The stern set of the officer's jaw made Tony realize he was in trouble.*

2 **jaws: mouth**

ADJ. **gaping, open | massive, powerful** *A shark can crush a boat with its massive jaws.* **| slavering** *The slavering jaws of the guard dog stopped anyone going near.*

VERB + JAW **clamp, close, lock, sink** *The dog locked its jaws on her leg and wouldn't let go. A spider sank its jaws into my ankle.* **| escape (from)** *The antelope could not escape the crocodile's gaping jaws.*

PREP. **between its ~s** *The dog had his arm clamped between its jaws.*

jazz *noun*

ADJ. **live | free/free-form, modern, trad/traditional**

VERB + JAZZ **play | improvise | listen to**

JAZZ + NOUN **music | clarinettist, guitarist, musician, player, singer, etc. | clarinet, guitar, vocals, etc. | band, combo, group, quartet, trio | improvisation | chords, rhythms | club, venue | festival | scene** *the rising stars of the New York jazz scene*

PREP. **in ~** *harmonies and rhythms common in jazz*

jealous *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, sound | become, get, grow | make sb** *Ignore her?she's only trying to make you jealous.*

ADV. **bitterly, furiously, insanely, madly, really, very** *I can remember feeling madly jealous when he was with other women.* **| a bit, a little, quite, rather | obsessively** *Peter was obsessively jealous and his behaviour was driving his wife away.* **| sexually**

PREP. **about** *There's nothing for you to feel jealous about.* **| of** *She was rather jealous of me. He had started to get jealous of her success.*

jealousy *noun*

ADJ. **bitter, extreme, intense, obsessive, pure, violent | irrational | professional, sexual**

QUANT. **fit** *He broke off the engagement in a fit of jealousy.* **| pang, rush, stab, twinge** *I felt a pang of jealousy.*

VERB + JEALOUSY **feel** *She'd never felt jealousy before.* **| arouse, cause, create, provoke** *Her promotion aroused intense jealousy among her colleagues.*

PREP. **~ of** *his obsessive jealousy of his ex-wife*

PHRASES **feelings of jealousy**

jeans *noun*

ADJ. **stretch, tight | baggy, flared | denim | black, blue | bleached, faded, stonewashed | patched, ripped, scruffy, torn | cut-off | designer**

QUANT. **pair** *She pulled on a pair of faded blue jeans.*

VERB + JEANS **pull on, pull up | pull off, strip off | zip up | unzip**

JEANS + NOUN **pocket** > Special page at CLOTHES

jelly *noun*

VERB + JELLY **eat, have | make** *Shall I make a jelly for pudding?*

JELLY + VERB **set** *Put the jelly in the fridge to set.* **| wobble**

PREP. **in ~** *fruit in jelly* > Special page at FOOD

jeopardize *verb*

ADV. **seriously** *This scandal could seriously jeopardize his chances of being re-elected.*

jerk *noun*

ADJ. **sharp, sudden | painful**

VERB + JERK **give** *His thigh muscle gave a sudden jerk.*

PREP. **with a ~ of** *She answered with a jerk of her head.*

jerk *verb*

ADV. **suddenly | sharply, violently | convulsively, spasmodically | away, back, backwards, downwards, forward, round, up, upright, upwards** *She suddenly jerked her hand away. His head jerked up.*

PHRASES **jerk awake** *The train stopped and she jerked awake.* **| jerk sth open** *He jerked the door open.* **| jerk to a halt/stop** *The bus jerked to a stop.*

jersey *noun*

ADJ. **thick | polo-neck, V-neck, etc. | cashmere | football, rugby**

VERB + JERSEY **pull on | knit** > Special page at CLOTHES

jet *noun*

1 **plane with a jet engine**

ADJ. **jumbo | supersonic | commercial, passenger | private | business, corporate, executive | holiday | cargo | air force, fighter, military | low-flying**

VERB + JET **fly, pilot**

JET + VERB **fly | take off | land | crash, explode**

JET + NOUN **aircraft, airliner, bomber, fighter, plane | engine | fuel | pilot**

PREP. **by ~** *Australia was a mere couple of hours away by jet. She was flown by private jet to the capital Lusaka.* **| in a/the ~** *He flew to Majorca in his private jet.*

2 **stream of gas, water, etc.**

ADJ. **little | air, gas, water**

PREP. **~ of** *Little jets of steam spurted from the engine.*

Jew *noun*

ADJ. **devout, pious, practising, religious** *His family are all practising Jews.* **| secular | Hasidic, orthodox | Progressive, Reform | Ashkenazi, Sephardic**

VERB + JEW **be born** *He was born a Jew in first century Palestine.* **| become**

jewel *nou*n

ADJ. **precious, priceless | bright, brilliant, sparkling**

VERB + JEWEL **wear**

JEWEL + VERB **sparkle**

JEWEL + NOUN **thief | box, case**

jewellery *noun*

ADJ. **expensive, valuable | cheap | beautiful, fine | costume** (= which may be designed to look expensive but is made with cheap materials) **| designer | antique | family, personal** *She inherited the family jewellery.* **| diamond, gold, etc.**

QUANT. **piece**

VERB + JEWELLERY **wear | make | design | steal**

JEWELLERY + NOUN **box, case | shop | design | designer** > Special page at CLOTHES

jigsaw *noun*

ADJ. **giant, huge | 200-piece, etc.**

QUANT. **bit, piece** *One piece of the jigsaw is still missing.*

VERB + JIGSAW **do** *I used to enjoy doing jigsaws.* **| piece together** *(figurative) The police managed to piece together the jigsaw and reconstruct the victim's last hours.* **| finish**

JIGSAW + NOUN **puzzle | piece**

PHRASES **a piece in a jigsaw** *(figurative) This is another piece in the jigsaw that will help us understand the biology of cancer.*

jinx *noun*

VERB + JINX **shake off** *The team seems to have shaken off the jinx that's been dogging them for months.*

JINX + VERB **hit sb, strike sb** *The injury jinx has struck Real Madrid.* **| dog sb, haunt sb**

PREP. **~ on** *I'm sure there's a jinx on this car.*

job *noun* JOB + NOUN **search** *The first step in a job search is to prepare an up-to-date CV.* **| ad, advertisement | vacancy | application | interview | title** *His job title is Chief Hygiene Operative.* **| description, specifications** *Cleaning the office is not in my job description.* **| market** *There is an enormous job market for teachers at the moment.* **| cuts, losses | creation | opportunities, prospects | satisfaction** *How would you rate your job satisfaction?* **| security** *Workers questioned rated job security as being more important than high salary.* **| hunter, seeker** *Local companies are holding an open day for job seekers.* **| sharing** *The introduction of job sharing could prevent the need for redundancies.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There's not much chance of promotion in a job like that.* **| on the ~** *You will receive training on the job.* **| out of a ~** *She found herself out of a job when her boss died.* **| ~ as** *She's got a job as a waitress.* **| ~ at** *She got a teaching job at the university.* **| ~ for** *jobs for women* | ~ in *a job in food retailing a job in a large firm* **| ~ with** *He moved to a better-paid job with another employer.*

PHRASES **a loss of jobs** *The closure of the cement factory will mean the loss of over 800 jobs.* **| the**

1 **employment**

ADJ. **high-powered, top** *It's one of the top jobs in management.* **| decent, good, worthwhile | interesting | plum** ***The plum jobs*** *all went to friends of the prime minister.* **| cushy** *His father found him a cushy job in the office, with almost nothing to do and a whacking great salary.* **| dream, ideal** *What would be your dream job?* **| boring, dead-end, menial, routine, undemanding** *He was forced to take a series of menial jobs.* **| challenging, demanding, difficult, taxing | highly-paid, well-paid | badly-paid, low-paid | full-time, part-time | 9-to-5 | regular, steady** *He was tempted to give up freelancing and get a regular job.* **| permanent, temporary | holiday, summer, vac/vacation | evening, Saturday, weekend | paid, unpaid | manual, non-manual | semi-skilled, skilled, unskilled |** blue-collar, white-collar | desk *a desk job in the police housing department* **| proper** *He'd done lots of part-time work, but this was his first proper job.* **| manufacturing, teaching**

VERB + JOB **have** *She's got a very good job with a local firm of solicitors.* **| look for | apply for, go for | find, get, land, take** *She got a temporary job stacking shelves. He's just landed himself a highly-paid job in the City.* **| lose** *He's frightened of losing his job.* **right person for the job** *Despite* **| give up, pack in, resign from | hold**

down, keep *He's always had difficulty holding down a job.* | **advertise** *I saw the job advertised on the Internet.* | **interview (sb) for** *We're interviewing for the job in the Sales Department.* | **give sb, offer sb** | **create, provide (sb with)** *It is hoped that the scheme will create new jobs in the region.* | **axe, cut, shed** *Management are hoping to shed 200 jobs.* | **protect, safeguard** *The deal between the union and management should safeguard 6,000 jobs.* | **do** *I'm only doing my job* (= doing what I am paid to do). | **know** *He certainly knows his job* (= is very good at his job).

JOB + VERB **pay** *The job doesn't pay very well.* | **go** *250 jobs are to go at the local steel plant. the small number of applicants, they managed to find the right person for the job.*

2 **task**

ADJ. **admirable, amazing, excellent, fine, first-rate, good, grand, magnificent, marvellous, professional, terrific, thorough, wonderful** | **difficult, hard, tough** *They gave me the tough job of telling applicants that they'd been rejected.* | **easy** | **important** | **big, long** | **little, small** | **fiddly, tedious** *fiddly little jobs like wiring plugs* | **dirty** | **unenviable** *Cooper had the unenviable job of announcing the redundancies.*

VERB + JOB **do, make** *You've done a grand job with that decorating. Try wedging it open?that should do the job* (= be effective/successful). *She made a very good job of covering up the damage.* | **have (on)** *You'll have a hard job convincing them that you're right. The builder has a couple of jobs on at the moment.* | **give sb** | **take on** *She's taken on the job of organizing the Christmas party.* | **get on with** *I want to get on with the job of painting my room today.*

PREP. **~ in** *The author has done an admirable job in compiling all this material.* | **~ of** *He made a very professional job of replacing the windows.* | **~ on** *You've done a good job on the car.*

PHRASES **get a job done** *We're hoping to get the job done this weekend.* | **odd jobs** (= small, practical jobs) *I spend most Saturdays doing odd jobs around the house.*

3 **crime**

ADJ. **bank** | **inside** (= done by sb in the organization where the crime happens)

VERB + JOB **do** *He got six months for that last job he did.* | **bungle** *The gang bungled the job and got caught.* > Note at JOB

jockey *noun*

ADJ. **champion, top | winning | apprentice | amateur | jump** (= who rides in races that involve jumping) **| stable** (= who rides the horses of a particular trainer or training stable)

JOCKEY + VERB **ride (sth)** *Which jockey will be riding tomorrow?* **| win (sth)** *The race was won by top jockey Eddie Andrews.*

jog *noun*

ADJ. **brisk | slow**

VERB + JOG **go for** *He goes for a brisk jog before work each morning.*

PREP. **at a ~** *I began at a slow jog and gradually increased my pace.*

jog *verb*

ADV. **slowly, steadily**

PREP. **along, down, up** *They jogged steadily up the hill.*

PHRASES **go jogging** *She decided to go jogging each morning.* **| jog on the spot** *She was jogging on the spot to keep warm.*

join *verb*

1 **become a member of sth**

VERB + JOIN **want to, wish to | flock to** *By this time people were flocking to join the cult.* **| decide to | persuade sb to | be allowed to | refuse to**

PHRASES **an invitation to join sth**

2 **do sth with sb else**

VERB + JOIN **wish to | invite sb to** *They've invited us to join them on their yacht.* **| be allowed to** *She was now old enough to be allowed to join the adults.* **| be expected to** *Thousands of people are expected to join the sponsored walk.* **| decide to | refuse to**

PREP. **for** *Will you join me shortly for a drink in the bar?* **| in** *I'm sure you will all wish to join me in thanking our speaker tonight.* **| with** *Please will you all join with me in singing the national anthem.*

PHRASES **come and join sb** *He waved a fork in greeting. 'Come and join us!'* **| an invitation to join sb/sth PHRASAL VERBS join in**

ADV. **enthusiastically** *They all joined enthusiastically in the dancing.*

VERB + JOIN **want to | refuse to**

PREP. **with** *Everyone joined in with the singing. I wish he would join in with the other children.*

joint *noun*

1 **in the body**

ADJ. **elbow, hip, knee, etc. | inflamed, painful, rheumatic, stiff, swollen | artificial**

VERB + JOINT **replace** *He's going to have his hip joint replaced.*

JOINT + VERB **ache | move** *The joint should be able to move freely.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *You've got fluid in the joint.* **| ~ between** *the joint between the lower and upper parts of the arm*

PHRASES **put sth out of joint** *She fell and put her knee out of joint.*

2 **connecting point**

ADJ. **airtight, watertight | leaking**

VERB + JOINT **make, seal**

PREP. **~ between** *a joint between two lengths of copper*

3 **piece of meat**

ADJ. **bacon**

VERB + JOINT **cook, roast | carve**

PREP. **~ of** *a joint of beef/lamb/pork*

joke *noun*

ADJ. **funny, good | old** *That's an old joke?I've heard it lots of times.* **| cruel, sick | huge | dirty**

VERB + JOKE **crack, make, tell** *He's marvellous at telling jokes.* **| play** *He's always playing jokes on people.* **| have, share** *She likes to have a joke with her employees.* **| hear | get, laugh at** *We all fell about laughing, but he didn't get the joke.* **| take** *The trouble is she can't take a joke.* **| treat sth as** *He treated his exams as a huge joke.*

JOKE + VERB **fall flat** *The audience weren't very responsive and the jokes fell a bit flat.* **| be on sb** *I thought I'd play a trick on them, but in the end the joke was on me.*

PREP. **as a ~** *It was only said as a joke.* **| ~ about** *Have you heard the joke about the elephant and the mouse?*

PHRASES **make a joke of sth** *We tried to make a joke of our situation, but it wasn't really funny.*

joke *verb*

ADV. **half** *She was only half joking about being prime minister one day.*

PREP. **about** *We joked about the amount of luggage we had to carry.* **| with** *joking with her friends*

PHRASES **be only joking** *Don't worry, I'm only joking!* **| joking apart/aside** (= used to show you are now being serious after you have said sth funny), **laugh and joke** *They laughed and joked as they walked along.* **| you must be joking** *No way am I doing that. You must be joking!*

joker *nou*n > Note at CARD

jolt *noun*

ADJ. **nasty, severe, sharp, sickening, sudden, unpleasant | little, slight**

VERB + JOLT **feel | give** *My mother's death gave me a severe jolt.* **| send | receive** *She received such a jolt that she nearly dropped her cup.*

PHRASES **with a ~** *The train started with a jolt.* **| ~ of** *The blow sent a jolt of pain through his body.* **| ~ to** *His dismissal was a severe jolt to his pride.*

journal *noun*

1 **serious magazine**

ADJ. **academic, learned, scholarly | professional, technical, trade | house/in-house** *the house journal of the South Western Gas Board* **| non-specialist, specialist | research, reviewing | business, literary, medical, science/ scientific | august, highly-ranked/high-ranking, leading, major, prestigious** *'Nature' was the highest-ranked journal in thte survey.* **| official** *It's the official journal of the Medical Foundation.* **| international, national | monthly, quarterly, weekly**

QUANT. **copy** *Please send me two copies of your new journal.* **| edition, issue, volume**

VERB + JOURNAL **read | edit, write for** *an academic who writes for specialist journals* **| produce, publish | buy, get, subscribe to** *She subscribes to quite a few academic journals.*

JOURNAL + VERB **come out** *The journal comes out five times a year.*

JOURNAL + NOUN **article | editor**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *an article in a medical journal* **| ~ of** *the British Journal of Geology*

2 **diary**

ADJ. **private | daily**

VERB + JOURNAL **keep, write** *Lady Franklin kept a daily journal of the voyage.* **| read**

JOURNAL + NOUN **entry** *Her journal entry for that day describes a thunder storm.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The events are all recorded in her journal.* **| ~ of** *He wrote a journal of his travels.*

journalism *noun*

ADJ. **good | professional | investigative | popular, tabloid | chequebook** *(disapproving)* **| magazine, newspaper, print | broadcast, radio, television | fashion, literary, medical, music, science, sports**

QUANT. **piece** *a fine piece of investigative journalism*

PHRASES **a career in journalism** *I'd like a career in journalism.* **| the world of journalism** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

journey *noun*

ADJ. **long, marathon | brief, short | outward | homeward, return | onward** *The bus driver told us where to change buses for our onward journey.* **| bus, car, rail, railway, train, etc. | five-mile, four-hour, etc. | comfortable, easy, good, pleasant, safe** *I hope you had a good journey. Have a safe journey.* **| arduous, awkward, bad, difficult, gruelling, hard, tedious, terrible, tiring, tortuous | dangerous, hazardous, perilous | overland | cross-country | daily | overnight | epic** *an epic journey across Africa on foot* **| wasted** *The library was closed when I got there, so it was a wasted journey.* **| emotional, sentimental, spiritual** *He made the emotional journey back to the house he grew up in.*

VERB + JOURNEY **go on, have, make** *He wasn't there and we had a wasted journey.* **| break** *We broke our return journey in San Francisco.* **| begin, set out on | continue, resume** *They continued their journey on foot.* **| complete**

JOURNEY + VERB **take (sb)** *The journey takes about five hours. His journey took him across central Asia.* **| begin | end**

JOURNEY + NOUN **time**

PREP. **on ~** *They were on a journey to the Far East.* **| ~ by** *a journey by air/bus/land/rail/sea, etc.* **| ~ across, ~ between, ~ down** *the journey down the Rhine* **| ~ from, ~ of** *a journey of 300 miles a journey of five days* **| ~ through, ~ to** *The bus journey from London to Athens took 60 hours.* **| ~ up**

PHRASES **be tired after/from a journey, a leg/stage of a journey** *Dawn was breaking as we set out on the last leg of our journey.*

joy *noun*

ADJ. **delirious, ecstatic, fierce, great, heady, overwhelming, pure, real, sheer, true, wild, wonderful | simple | sudden | inner | physical** *the physical joys of fine wines and gourmet foods*

VERB + JOY **bring sb** *Her books have brought great joy to millions of people.* **| experience, feel** *the pure joy I felt at being free again* **| be filled with, be full of | express | find, get, take** *I find joy in many kinds of music. She got no joy out of working. I took a fierce joy in telling them the truth.*

JOY + VERB **go** *All the joy had gone out of his life.*

PREP. **to your ~** *She found to her joy that the house had a large garden.* **| with ~** *I could have shouted with joy.* **| ~ at** *Protesters expressed joy at the government's decision.*

PHRASES **dance, jump, sing, weep, etc. for joy** *I literally jumped for joy when I heard the news.* **| a joy to behold, see, watch, etc.** *The children's expressions were a joy to behold.* **| your pride and joy** (= a person or thing that makes you feel great pride or satisfaction) *The pride and joy of the town is the splendid castle.* **| tears of joy**

judge *noun*

1 applies the law

ADJ. **experienced | learned | senior | presiding, trial | deputy | appeal (court), appellate, circuit, county court, district, federal, High Court, Supreme Court**

VERB + JUDGE **be, sit as** *By next year you could be sitting as a High Court judge.* **| appoint (sb as)**

JUDGE + VERB **preside, sit** *Which judge will be sitting next week?* **| call sb** *The judge called the remaining witness for the Crown.* **| direct sb** *The judge must direct the jury on points of law.* **| consider sth | accept sth, admit sth** *The judge admitted the notes of the interview as evidence.* **| dismiss sth, refuse sth, reject sth** *The trial judge dismissed her compensation claim.* **| conclude sth, decide sth, find sth, hold sth, rule sth, uphold sth** *The judge held that the company had been negligent.* **| sum up** *The judge summed up and the jury retired to consider its verdict.* **| sentence sb | order sth** *The judge ordered the company to pay compensation to the claimant.* **| award (sb) sth, grant (sb) sth** *The judge awarded him damages of £20,000.*

2 decides who has won a competition

ADJ. **competition | independent**

QUANT. **panel** *a panel of independent judges*

VERB + JUDGE **choose sb/sth, decide sth**

PHRASES **the judges' decision** *The judges' decision on the entries is final.*

3 has the ability/knowledge to give an opinion

ADJ. **astute, good, great, shrewd** *You are the best judge of what your body needs. a shrewd judge of character* **| poor | impartial**

PREP. **~ of** *He is a good judge of footballing talent.*

judge *verb*

ADV. **correctly, rightly | wrongly** *I think I judged the distance wrongly.* **| fairly, properly | harshly** *I think you're judging her rather harshly.* **| objectively | beautifully, carefully, finely, nicely, perfectly, well** *Their performance of the concerto was beautifully judged and finely controlled. 'There's something I haven't told you.' She judged her words carefully. The bowler judged it well, timing the ball to perfection.* **| accordingly** *Those who preach intolerance should be judged accordingly.*

VERB + JUDGE **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to | be able to, be in a position to** *I am in no position to judge whether what she is doing is right or wrong.* **| learn to** *learning to judge distances*

PREP. **according to** *He believed that schools should be judged according to strictly academic criteria.* **| against** *judging his own performance against the performance of others* **| by** *You will be judged by the work you have produced over the year.* **| from** *The age of the furniture can be judged from the type of wood used.* **| on** *Your slogan will be judged on its originality and style.*

PHRASES **criteria for judging** *People use different criteria for judging success at school.* **| don't judge a book by its cover** *(figurative)* (= don't judge sth by how it looks), **judge by appearances, judging by/from sth** *He seems to have been a popular person, judging by the number of people at his funeral.* **| to judge by/from** *To judge from what she said, she was very disappointed.* **| judge for youself** *Readers are left to judge for themselves whether McCrombie is hero or villain.* **| judge sth on its merits** *Each painting must be judged on its own merits.*

judgement *noun*

1 **decision/opinion**

ADJ. **accurate | balanced | impartial, independent, objective | personal, subjective | intuitive | qualitative | harsh | snap** *I hate having to make snap judgements.* **| definitive**

VERB + JUDGEMENT **form, make** *It's difficult to form a judgement when you don't have all the facts.* **| express** *Remember to be tactful when expressing a personal judgement.* **| confirm** *This latest case confirms my earlier judgement.* **| come to, reach** *It is too soon to reach any definitive judgement.* **| deliver, give, pass, pronounce** *The school inspector's function is not merely to pronounce judgement, but also to suggest improvements.* **| reserve, suspend** *The court reserved judgement on the two appeals.* **| obtain, win** *They obtained a judgement in their favour.* **| reverse** *They are trying to get the judgement reversed.* **| abide by**

PREP. **in sb's ~** *What, in your judgement, would be the best way to deal with the problem?* **| ~ about** *She must make her own judgement about when to go.* **| ~ against** *The sacked workers won a judgement against the company.* **| ~ as to** *Experience helps us to form judgements as to the best course of action in given circumstances.* **| ~ on** *I'm not equipped to pass judgement on such matters.*

2 **decision making**

ADJ. **fine, good, remarkable, shrewd, sound** *Landing a plane requires fine judgement.* **| impartial, independent | impaired, weak | aesthetic, artistic, critical, ethical, moral, political, professional** *She has a reputation for sound professional judgement.*

VERB + JUDGEMENT **display, show | rely on | respect, trust** *He trusted his wife's judgement.* **| doubt | back** *The company backed her judgement and implemented all her recommendations.* **| exercise, use | colour, influence** *He never allows any prejudices to colour his judgement.* **| sit in** *He felt he had no right to sit in judgement on someone he had only just met.*

PREP. **~ about** *You will need to exercise your own judgement about what clothes to wear.* **| ~ in** *The speaker showed good judgement in his choice of topic.*

PHRASES **an error of judgement** *Accepting the gift was an error of judgement on the part of the party chairman.* | **a lack of judgement, a matter of judgement** *How much money you should invest is a matter of judgement.*

judo *noun*

VERB + JUDO **do, practise**

JUDO + NOUN **hold, move, throw** *She managed to get the man in a judo hold.* **| mat**

PHRASES **a black, etc. belt in judo** *He's a black belt in judo. He's got a brown belt in judo.* > Special page at SPORT

jug *noun*

ADJ. **measuring | china, earthenware, enamel, enamelled, glass, plastic | cream, milk, water, wine**

VERB + JUG **fill, pour sth into** *He filled a jug with juice.* **| pour, tip** *She poured a jug of water over his head.* **| empty, pour sth from/out of**

PREP. **~ of** *a jug of milk*

juice *noun*

ADJ. **fruit, lemon, tomato, etc. | fresh, freshly-squeezed | concentrated | unsweetened**

VERB + JUICE **extract, squeeze | strain | sprinkle** *Sprinkle the avocado slices with lemon juice.*

PREP. **~ from** *The juice from the meat is used to make the sauce.* **| ~ of** *the grated rind and juice of two lemons* > Special page at FOOD

July *nou*n > Note at MONTH

jump *noun*

1 movement

ADJ. **little | running, standing** *Cats can clear two metres with a standing jump.* **| high, long, triple | bungee, parachute, ski**

VERB + JUMP **make** *She made a jump for the river bank.* **| take** *He took a running jump and just managed to clear the stream.* **| do** *He's going to do a parachute jump for charity.* **| give** *Her heart gave a little jump at his smile.*

PREP. **in the … ~** *Allen won silver in the high jump.* **| with a ~** *I sat up with a jump* (= suddenly.). **| ~ into** *(figurative) The new law is a jump into the unknown.* **| ~ onto**

2 increase

ADJ. **big, quantum, sharp | small**

VERB + JUMP **make** *Is he good enough to make the jump into Formula One?*

PREP. **~ in** *The sportswear company reports a jump in sales since the Olympics.*

jump *verb*

1 **move off the ground**

ADV. **suddenly | about, around, back, down, in, off, out, up, up and down** *He was jumping up and down with excitement.*

VERB + JUMP **try to** *He tried to jump back on board.*

PREP. **from** *He had to jump from a first floor window.* **| into, off, on** *Stop jumping on the furniture!* **| onto** *She jumped up onto the table.* **| out of, over** *Can you jump over that fence?* **| through**

2 **make a sudden movement because of surprise/fear**

ADV. **almost, nearly** *He almost jumped in surprise.*

VERB + JUMP **make sb** *He crept up behind me and made me jump.*

PHRASES **jump out of your skin** *(figurative) I nearly jumped out of my skin when he told me.*

jumper *noun*

ADJ. **baggy, loose, sloppy | tight | heavy, thick | light, thin | cashmere, cotton, woollen, woolly, etc. | knitted | crew-neck, polo-neck, turtleneck | Fair Isle** *a Fair Isle jumper in navy and red*

VERB + JUMPER **pull on | knit, make** > Special page at CLOTHES

junction *noun*

ADJ. **busy | dangerous | motorway, road | railway**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *Turn off the motorway at junction 6.* **| ~ with** *The college is on the Manchester road, by the junction with the A5.*

June *noun* > Note at MONTH

jungle *noun*

ADJ. **dense, impenetrable, thick | tropical | concrete, urban** *(figurative) This outback area is a far cry from the city's concrete jungle.*

JUNGLE + NOUN **warfare**

PREP. **in ~** *a temple deep in the Brazilian jungle* **| through ~** *They hacked their way through dense jungle.*

junior *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very** *a very junior officer* **| comparatively, fairly, quite, relatively** *She's quite junior in the organization.*

PREP. **to** *John is still junior to me at work.*

junk *noun*

ADJ. **old** *sculptures made from old junk and scrap metal*

QUANT. **bit, piece** *There were bits of junk lying around.*

JUNK + VERB **lie about/around**

JUNK + NOUN **shop | room** *They cleared out the junk room to make a tiny bedroom.* **| heap | material** *He made the boat out of junk materials.*

junta *noun*

ADJ. **ruling | civilian, military, revolutionary**

VERB + JUNTA **form | dissolve, overthrow**

JUNTA + VERB **appoint sb** *The civilian junta appointed a prime minister.*

JUNTA + NOUN **leader, member**

jurisdiction *noun*

ADJ. **limited | exclusive** *The commissioners had exclusive jurisdiction to decide.* **| civil, criminal, ecclesiastical**

VERB + JURISDICTION **have, retain** *The court has no jurisdiction in this case.* **| exercise** *The court may exercise its jurisdiction to compel the husband to make a settlement upon his wife.* **| claim** *The offshore government claims jurisdiction over the mainland.* **| be subject to, come under** *He is subject to the jurisdiction of the English courts.*

PREP. **beyond your ~** *She acted beyond the jurisdiction of any teacher.* **| outside your ~** *The matter is outside the jurisdiction of UK administrative agencies.* **| under ~** *The territory is still under Russian jurisdiction.* **| within your ~** *The matter was not within the jurisdiction of the court.* **| ~ over** *The senate committees have exclusive jurisdiction over the FBI.*

juror *noun*

VERB + JUROR **swear in** *The jurors were sworn in.*

jury *noun*

1 in a court of law

ADJ. **inquest, trial | unanimous** (only after **jury)** *The jury were unanimous in their verdict.* **| hung** *A retrial was necessary after the original trial ended with a hung jury.*

VERB + JURY **serve on, sit on | tell** *Tell the jury what happened, in your own words.* **| direct** *The judge directed the jury to return a verdict of not guilty.* **| swear in** *The new jury were sworn in.*

JURY + VERB **hear sth** *The jury heard how the boy had obtained a carving knife from a friend's house.* **| retire | consider its verdict** *The jury has retired to consider its verdict.* **| be out** *The jury is still out* (= still deciding). *(figurative) The jury is still out on this new policy.* **| agree (on) a verdict, arrive at/reach a verdict, give its verdict, return a verdict | convict sb, find sb guilty** *The jury convicted Menzies of assaulting Smith.* **| acquit sb, clear sb, find sb not guilty | award sb** *The jury awarded her damages of £30,000.*

JURY + NOUN **service** *It was the second time he had been called up for jury service.* **| trial | foreman, member | system** *a review of the jury system*

PREP. **before a ~** *The trial will take place before a jury.* **| on a/the ~** *There were only three women on the jury.* **| ~ of** *the jury of seven women and five men*

PHRASES **trial by jury** *You have a right to trial by jury.*

2 of a competition

VERB + JURY **choose, select** *The jury is selected from the winners in previous years.*

JURY + VERB **judge sth | consist of sb** *The jury consisted of an architect, a photographer and an artist.* **| award (sb) sth, give sb sth** *The jury has awarded the prize for best exhibit in the show to Harry Pearson.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *He was on a jury judging a songwriting competition.*

justice *noun*

1 fairness

ADJ. **economic, natural, social | rough** *He saw it as rough justice when he got food poisoning from the stolen meat.* **| divine** *Some people saw the epidemic as divine justice.*

VERB + JUSTICE **ask for, want** *All I'm asking for is justice.* **| get | deny sb** *We have been denied justice for too long.*

PHRASES **a sense of justice** *The teacher's system of punishments appealed to the children's sense of justice.*

2 law

ADJ. **civil, criminal, juvenile**

VERB + JUSTICE **do** *Justice must be done in every case.* **| bring sb to | escape** *So far the robbers have escaped justice.*

JUSTICE + NOUN **department**

PHRASES **a miscarriage of justice** *He spent twenty years in prison as a result of a miscarriage of justice.* **| pervert the course of justice** *She was charged with perverting the course of justice after admitting to burning vital evidence.*

justifiable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | consider sth, think sth** *We consider this action justifiable.*

ADV. **entirely | commercially, economically | ethically, morally**

PREP. **~ on the grounds of/that** *The cutbacks are justifiable on the grounds of cost.* **| ~ on … grounds** *The rule is justifiable on safety grounds.*

justification *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, every, some** *You have every justification for feeling angry.* | **the slightest** *She had not given him the slightest justification for thinking she was interested in him.* | **ample, sufficient** | **ethical, moral** | **intellectual, rational, theoretical** | **legal, political**

VERB + JUSTIFICATION **give (sb), provide (sb with)** *She's unable to provide any justification for her actions.* | **see**

PREP. **in ~** *the argument which he put forward in justification* | **with ~** *He felt, with some justification, that he had been unfairly treated.* | **without ~** *She was arrested entirely without justification.* | **~ for** *I can see some justification for her remarks.*

justified *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, prove, seem**

ADV. **amply** *The suspicion proved amply justified.* **| completely, entirely, fully, perfectly, quite, totally | hardly | partially, partly | clearly | easily, readily** *a logical and easily justified decision* **| economically, financially, legally, morally, rationally, scientifically, theoretically** *Can her actions be morally justified?*

PREP. **in** *She felt fully justified in asking for a refund.*

justify *verb*

ADV. **really, truly** *Can you really justify the destruction of such a fine old building?* **| hardly** *The meagre result hardly justified the risks they took to get it.*

VERB + JUSTIFY **can/could | attempt to, seek to, try to | need to | be difficult to, be hard to** *He found it very difficult to justify his decision.*

PREP. **on the grounds of/that** *The decision is justified on the grounds that there is no realistic alternative.* **| to** *How will you justify this pay cut to your employees?*

karate *noun*

ADJ. **full-contact**

VERB + KARATE **do**

KARATE + NOUN **stance | jacket, suit | blow, chop, kick, punch | bout, competition, tournament | training | champion, expert | instructor**

PHRASES **a black, etc. belt in karate** *She's a black belt in karate. She's got a brown belt in karate.* > Special page at SPORT

keen *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | remain**

ADV. **awfully, desperately, especially, extremely, frightfully, mad** *(informal)*, **more than, particularly, really, terribly, very** *He's mad keen on football. She's a very keen gardener.* **| not at all, not overly, not too** *The banks were not at all keen to lend to somebody who actually seemed to need money.* **| fairly, pretty, quite, rather | always** *She was always keen to hear the local gossip.* **| obviously | naturally, understandably** *She was naturally keen to make a good impression.*

PREP. **for** *They were desperately keen for information.* **| on** *Sally's quite keen on the idea.*

PHRASES **as keen as mustard** (= very keen)

keep *noun*

VERB + KEEP **earn** *It's time you did a job to earn your keep.*

keep *verb*

ADV. **well** *Milk and cream should keep quite well in a fridge.*

kerb *noun*

ADJ. dropped *Dropped kerbs make wheelchair access easier.*

VERB + KERB draw away from, pull away/out from *The car pulled away from the kerb.* **| draw up at/to, pull in/over to | step off** *He stepped off the kerb without looking and was hit by a cyclist.* **| clip, hit | mount** *The car mounted the kerb and knocked over a pedestrian.*

PREP. at the ~ *I parked at the kerb and waited.* **| on the ~** *They stood on the kerb waiting to cross the road.*

kettle *noun*

ADJ. **electric**

VERB + KETTLE **fill | plug in | have on** *Get yourself in, Pat, I've got the kettle on.* **| put on, switch on** *I'll just put the kettle on.* **| boil**

KETTLE + VERB **boil** *She made herself a sandwich while she waited for the kettle to boil.* **| sing, whistle** *The kettle started to sing.* **| switch itself off**

key *noun*

1 for a door

ADJ. **master, skeleton | duplicate, spare | car, desk, front door, house, ignition, etc.**

QUANT. **bunch, set** *a large bunch of keys a set of car keys*

VERB + KEY **turn** *She turned the key in the lock.* **| insert, put in | remove, take out | use** *She must have used a key to get in.*

KEY + VERB **open, unlock** *You need a key to open the garage.* **| lock | turn** *They heard a key turn in the back door lock.*

PREP. **with a/the ~** *You have to close it with the key.* **| ~ to** *the key to the front door*

PHRASES **get a key cut** *I'll get another key cut so that you can have one.*

2 on a computer

ADJ. **Alt, arrow, backspace, control, delete, escape, function, return, shift, etc. | shortcut** *F1 is the shortcut key for calling up help.*

QUANT. **row** *the top row of keys*

VERB + KEY **hit, hold down, press, touch** *Hold down the Alt key while pressing the arrow keys.* **| release** > Special page at COMPUTER

3 explanation of symbols, etc.

KEY + VERB **tell sb sth** *The key tells you what all the symbols mean.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *You can find the symbols in the key at the bottom of the page.* **| ~ to** *the key to the signs and symbols*

4 decisive factor

VERB + KEY **have, hold** *First-time voters could hold the key to the election result.*

PREP. **~ to** *Language is the key to understanding those around you.*

5 **in music**

ADJ. **major, minor | high, low**

VERB + KEY **change**

KEY + VERB **change** *The key changes from C major to A minor.*

KEY + NOUN **change | signature** *There are two sharps in the key signature of D major.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *What key's it in? Can we try it in a lower key?* **| ~ of** *the key of G major*

keyboard *noun*

1 **set of keys on a computer, etc.**

ADJ. **British, Cyrillic, etc. | qwerty | computer, PC, typewriter**

VERB + KEYBOARD **lock** *The program locks the keyboard until a password is given.*

KEYBOARD + NOUN **operator**

PREP. **on the~** *Using the mouse is quicker than typing it on the keyboard.* > Special page at COMPUTER

2 **set of keys on a piano, etc.**

ADJ. **piano**

KEYBOARD + NOUN **instrument**

3 **electrical musical instrument**

ADJ. **electric, electronic**

PREP. **at the ~** *Ed Duke was at the keyboard.* **| on (a/the) ~** *He played the song on his keyboard. The recording features Herbie Hancock on keyboard.* > Special page at MUSIC

kick *noun*

1 act of kicking

ADJ. **good, hard, hefty, painful | corner, free, goal, overhead, penalty, spot** (all in football) **| high** *an energetic performer using dance routines and high kicks*

VERB + KICK **give sb/sth** *Give the door a good kick if it won't open.* **| get, receive** *He had received a painful kick on the knee.*

PREP. **~ at** *a kick at goal* **| ~ by/from** *a kick from Maynard in the last minute of the game* **| ~ in** *a kick in the stomach* **| ~ on** *a kick on the ankle* **| ~ to** *a kick to the ribs*

2 feeling of great pleasure/excitement

ADJ. **real**

VERB + KICK **get** *He gets a real kick out of mending something so that it can be used again.* **| give sb** *It gave the youngsters a kick to see their own play on television.*

PREP. **for ~s** *They don't really want the things they steal. They just do it for kicks.*

kick *verb*

1 **hit sb/sth with your foot**

ADV. **hard, savagely, vigorously** *Don't kick the ball too hard.* **| deliberately | repeatedly** *Foster admitted punching and kicking the man repeatedly.* **| around** *The boys were kicking a ball around in the yard.*

PREP. **against** *She could feel the baby kicking against her stomach wall. (figurative) Young people often kick against convention.* **| at** *She kicked at the loose pebbles by the roadside.* **| in** *They threw him to the ground and kicked him hard in the stomach.* **| on** *She kicked me on the knee.*

PHRASES **kick a door down/open/shut** *Suddenly the far door was kicked open.* **| kick sb to death**

2 **move your feet in the air**

ADV. **frantically, wildly** *He rolled over in the sand, kicking wildly.*

PREP. **out at** *The horse kicked out at the yapping dog.*

PHRASES **drag sb kicking and screaming** *The police had to drag her kicking and screaming out of the house.* **| kick your legs/your legs kick** *The little boy was now lying on his back kicking his legs in the air. I was carried upstairs, arms waving and legs kicking.*

kid *noun*

ADJ. **little, young | big, older** *The older kids had lessons in the afternoon as well.* **| cute, good, lovely, nice | poor** *I feel desperately sorry for the poor kid.* **| rich** *a spoilt little rich kid* **| local** *a gang of local kids* **| street** *street kids who rely on their ingenuity to keep alive* **| school** (also **schoolkid)**

QUANT. **bunch, couple** *They're just a bunch of kids.*

VERB + KID **have** *We both wanted to have kids.* **| bring up** *I've tried to bring my kids up to respect other people.* **| look after, take care of**

PHRASES **just/only a kid** *He's only a kid. You can't expect him to understand what's going on.* **| like a kid** *She was crying like a kid.*

kill *noun*

ADJ. **easy, quick**

VERB + KILL **make** *The lion made a quick kill.* **| be in at** *I didn't even get to see the fox, let alone be in at the kill.* **| close in for, move in for** *The hunters moved in for the kill.*

PREP. **at the ~** *The meat is divided up among all those present at the kill.* **| for the ~** *The animal crouched down, getting ready for the kill.*

kill *verb*

ADV. **outright** *He has fought more than fifty bulls, killing three outright.* **| almost, nearly | instantly | accidentally | unlawfully**

VERB + KILL **want to | be prepared to** *They are quite prepared to kill to achieve their ends.* **| threaten to | be going to, intend to** *(figurative) Mum's going to kill me when she finds out.* **| plot to** *plotting to kill the dictator* **| try to | help (to) | make sb** *It must have been really awful to make her kill herself.*

PHRASES **admit/deny killing sb, be accused of killing sb, be charged with killing sb, be killed in sth** *soldiers killed in battle* **| be tragically killed** *Their daughter was tragically killed in a road accident.*

killer *noun*

ADJ. **big, major** *Overdoses were the single biggest killer among the city's young.* **| real** *I don't care what they ask me if it helps them find the real killer.* **| alleged | convicted | notorious | brutal, vicious | crazed, psychopathic | mass, serial | contract, hired | child, wife, etc.** *a convicted child killer* **| giant** *(figurative) Salford Juniors proved to be the giant killers in last week's semi-finals* (= by beating a much better team).

VERB + KILLER **hunt, track down | catch, find**

KILLER + VERB **strike** *The killer has struck again.*

KILLER + NOUN **bug, disease, virus** *Heart attacks have become Britain's No. 1 killer disease.* **| instinct** *(figurative) He plays well but still lacks the killer instinct.* **| blow** *(figurative) Owen delivered the killer blow soon after half-time.*

killing *noun*

1 killing sb deliberately

ADJ. **brutal, cold-blooded** *the cold-blooded killing of a defenceless woman* **| deliberate | indiscriminate, random | mass, serial** *This was the fourth mass killing in Australia in four years.* **| contract, gangland, political, revenge, sectarian** *a brutal revenge killing* **| mercy** *Should the law allow mercy killing?* **| unlawful** *(law) a verdict of unlawful killing*

VERB + KILLING **be responsible for, carry out | order** *The Mafia ordered the killing.* **| prevent, stop** *It is difficult to prevent such killings.* **| confess to | deny** *The sentenced man had denied the killings.*

KILLING + VERB **happen, occur, take place**

PHRASES **a motive for the killing** *No motive for the killing has yet been established.*

2 making a lot of money quickly

VERB + KILLING **make** *Investors are set to make a killing from the sell-off.*

kilo, kilogram, kilometre > Note at MEASURE

kin *noun*

ADJ. **close, intimate, near** *Marriage between close kin is prohibited.* **| extended** *Ties with extended kin vary from family to family.* **| distant | female, male**

KIN + NOUN **group, network | relationships**

PREP. **between ~**

PHRASES **next of kin** *One of the drivers was fatally injured; his next of kin has been informed.*

kind *adj.*

VERBS **be** *She was endlessly kind and sympathetic.*

ADV. **especially, extremely, most, particularly, really, very | quite | endlessly**

PREP. **of** *It really was most kind of you to help.* **| to** *My boss has been extremely kind to me.*

kind *noun*

ADJ. **different, same** *She does the same kind of work as me.* **| all, another, any, some, various** *You need some kind of cover over it to protect it from the rain. We stock various kinds of lawnmower.* **| each, every | certain, particular, special** *Certain kinds of food are unsuitable for small children.* **| best, worst | right, wrong** *Be sure to eat enough of the right kind of food.* **| funny, odd, strange**

PREP. **in ~** *The regions differ in size, but not in kind.* **| of a ~** *You're making progress of a kind* (= some progress, but not very much, or not of the best type). *They're two of a kind* (= very like each other)*?both workaholics!* **| of … ~** *books of every kind music of different kinds* **| of its ~** *The new school was the first of its kind.* **| ~ of** *a special kind of oil*

PHRASES **a/the kind of thing** *Do you know the kind of thing I mean? They sell all kinds of things.* **| a kind of way** *I missed him, in a funny kind of way.* **| nothing/something of that/the kind** *'I was terrible!' 'You were nothing of the kind!' 'He's resigning.' 'I'd suspected something of the kind.'*

kindness *noun*

ADJ. **great | loving | simple | natural | unexpected** *This unexpected kindness touched her deeply.* **| human**

VERB + KINDNESS **show sb, treat sb with** *They had shown him great kindness. They treated us with kindness and courtesy.* **| meet with, receive** *We met with much kindness and help.* **| appreciate** *I really appreciate your kindness.* **| repay** *I tried to think of a way to repay his kindness.* **| not forget**

PREP. **out of ~** *I went with her out of kindness.* **| ~ to/towards** *I'll never forget your kindness to me.*

PHRASES **an act of kindness** *Show your appreciation by little acts of kindness.* **| kindness itself** *She has always been kindness itself to me.*

king *noun*

1 male ruler

ADJ. **rightful | anointed, crowned | uncrowned** *(figurative) He became the uncrowned king of the East End, scoring 28 goals in his first season.* **| deposed, exiled**

VERB + KING **become | crown (sb), make sb, proclaim sb** *He was crowned king at the age of fifteen. The new king was crowned immediately.* **| depose, put aside**

KING + VERB **reign, rule, rule (over) sb/sth** *The kings of Sicily also ruled over the southern part of Italy.* **| abdicate** *the king's decision to abdicate*

PREP. **under a/the ~** *Life under the new king was very different.* **| ~ of** *the King of Spain*

2 playing card > Note at CARD

kingdom *noun*

ADJ. **independent**

VERB + KINGDOM **rule**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *It was one of the richest towns in the kingdom.* **| throughout a/the ~** *changes that were taking place throughout the kingdom* **| ~ of** *He ruled the ancient kingdom of Kaffa.*

kip *noun*

VERB + KIP **catch, get, have** *Try to catch some kip while you can.* **| need**

PHRASES **an hour's, a night's, etc. kip** *I was feeling much better after a good night's kip.*

kiss *noun*

ADJ. **brief, quick, swift | lingering, long | gentle, light, soft | big, smacking | hard | sloppy | affectionate, loving, tender, warm | ardent, hungry, passionate | brotherly, chaste, friendly, innocent, sisterly | farewell, goodbye, goodnight**

VERB + KISS **give sb** *He gave his daughter a gentle kiss on the forehead.* **| drop, plant, press** *She planted a big kiss on his cheek.* **| steal** *The children hid behind the bike shed to steal a kiss.* **| return** *She returned his kiss with passion.* **| deepen | blow (sb)** *As the train drew away he blew her a kiss.*

KISS + VERB **deepen** *His kiss deepened and became hungrier.*

PREP. **with a ~ | ~ on** *He greeted her with a kiss on the cheek.*

PHRASES **give sb the kiss of life** *A policeman pulled the man out of the river and gave him the kiss of life.* **| hugs and kisses** *We were greeted with hugs and kisses.* **| the kiss of death** *That TV commercial was the kiss of death to his career as a serious actor.*

kiss *verb*

ADV. **gently, lightly | lovingly, softly, tenderly | deeply, fiercely, firmly, hard, hungrily, passionately, soundly, violently | briefly, quickly | lingeringly, long** *He kissed her long and hard on the mouth.*

VERB + KISS **bend to, stoop to** *He bent to kiss her again.* **| try to | let sb**

PREP. **on** *She let him kiss her lightly on the cheek.*

PHRASES **kiss and cuddle** *The love-struck pair have been spotted kissing and cuddling at parties.* **| kiss sb full on the lips/mouth, kiss sb goodbye/goodnight, kiss goodbye to sth** *(figurative) Well, you can kiss goodbye to your chances of promotion.*

kit *noun*

1 **set of clothes/equipment**

ADJ. **combat, football, sports | first-aid, repair, sewing, shaving, survival, test, tool** *Check the acidity of the soil with a test kit.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There should be a needle and thread in the sewing kit.*

2 **set of parts**

ADJ. **construction**

VERB + KIT **make up** *Have you made up the kit yet?*

KIT + VERB **comprise sth, contain sth, include sth** *The kit contains everything you need to make six candles.*

PREP. **from a ~** *They built the garage from a kit.* **| ~ for** *a kit for making candles*

PHRASES **in kit form** *The doll's house comes in kit form.*

kitchen *noun*

ADJ. **clean, spotless | dirty, grubby | big, cavernous, huge, roomy, spacious, vast | small, tiny | fully-equipped, fully-fitted, well-equipped | ultra-modern | fitted | stone-flagged, tiled | communal, shared | domestic, professional | mobile | kosher**

KITCHEN + NOUN **area | cabinet, chair, counter, cupboard, drawers, dresser, fitments, fittings, sink, surface, table, unit, worktop | equipment, gadgets, implements, knife, scales, scissors, utensils | foil, paper, roll, towels | hatch** *We handed our trays through the kitchen hatch as we left.* **| fire, range, stove | facilities** *All our chalets have kitchen facilities.* **| waste | maid, porter, staff | garden** (= for growing food for the kitchen)

PREP. **in a/the ~**

kite *noun*

ADJ. **stunt** *John wants to fly his new stunt kite.*

VERB + KITE **fly**

KITE + NOUN **flying** *the joys of kite flying*

knack *noun*

ADJ. **happy | uncanny | unhappy** *He had the unhappy knack of making enemies in the party.*

VERB + KNACK **have | acquire, develop, get** *Once you get the knack, it's easy.* **| lose** *I don't cook much these days and I think I may have lost the knack.*

PREP. **~ for** *a woman with a knack for handling horses* **| ~ of** *He has the knack of scoring goals just when they are most needed.* **| ~ to** *Making omelettes isn't difficult, but there's a knack to it.*

knead *verb*

ADV. **gently, lightly** *She gently kneaded the muscles in his back.* **| well** *Add the water and knead the mixture well.*

knee *noun*

ADJ. **bony | bare | bent | drawn-up** *I rested my chin on my drawn-up knees.* **| arthritic, bad, dodgy, injured, stiff, troublesome, twisted**

VERB + KNEE **bend | straighten | draw up | hug** *He hugged his knees to keep warm.* **| drop (down) on, drop to, fall on/to, go down on, sink to** *He went down on his knees and begged for forgiveness.* **| sit on** *She sat on her father's knee* (= lap) *while he read her a story.* **| sprain, twist | graze, skin | slap** *He slapped his knee as he rocked with laughter.* **| pat** *He patted her knee reassuringly.*

KNEE + VERB **buckle, give way** *Suddenly her knees buckled and she fell to the floor.* **| knock, shake, tremble**

KNEE + NOUN **injury, problem, trouble | operation, surgery | joint, ligament | socks | pad**

PREP. **above the ~, across your ~s** *She had a blanket draped across her knees.* **| at sb's ~** *The children had learnt these stories at their mother's knee.* **| below the ~** *His leg was missing below the knee.* **| between your ~s** *If you hear the crash-landing warning, put your head between your knees.* **| in your ~** *He's snapped a ligament in his knee.* **| on one ~** *I went down on one knee to plug in the vacuum cleaner.* **| on your ~** *I balanced the pile of books on my knees. He was on his knees, searching for the missing spring.* **| to your ~s** *The blow knocked him to his knees.*

PHRASES **bring sth to its knees** *(figurative) The fuel shortage brought the country to its knees within weeks.* **| on bended knee** *(figurative) She would ask for a rise, but would not beg for one on bended knee.*

knickers *noun*

ADJ. **French**

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + KNICKERS **pull down/up**

PHRASES **bra and knickers** > Special page at CLOTHES

knife *noun*

1 **tool for cutting**

ADJ. **blunt, sharp | long | bone, bone-handled, silver, steel | bread, butcher's, carving, craft, fish, flick, hunting, kitchen, palette, pocket, sheath, Stanley(R), surgeon's, table**

QUANT. **set** *a set of kitchen knives*

VERB + KNIFE **pick up** *She picked up her knife and fork and started to eat.* **| lay down, put down | use** *Use a sharp knife to cut away the spare pastry.* **| sharpen | hold**

KNIFE + VERB **cut** *That knife doesn't cut very well?it needs sharpening.* **| clatter**

KNIFE + NOUN **blade, handle**

PREP. **with a/the ~** *The lines can be cut with a craft knife.*

PHRASES **the blade of a knife, the handle of a knife, a knife and fork**

2 **used as a weapon**

ADJ. **long, sharp**

VERB + KNIFE **be armed with, carry, have** *She carries a knife in her bag now.* **| brandish, wield | draw (out), produce, pull (out), take out** *He suddenly pulled a knife on me.* **| come at sb with, stab sb with, threaten sb with** *She stabbed him in the back with a 12-inch knife.* **| plunge, push, put, stick** *He plunged the knife deep into her heart.* **| sharpen, whet**

KNIFE + VERB **cut | clatter** *As he fell, the knife clattered to the floor.*

KNIFE + NOUN **attack** *a frenzied knife attack* **| wound | blade**

PREP. **with a/the ~**

PHRASES **the blade of a knife, the hilt of a knife, hold a knife against/at/to**

sb's throat, a knife in sb's heart *(figurative) Each word he uttered was a knife in her heart.* **| put a knife to sb's throat** *She put the knife to his throat to frighten him into silence.*

knight *noun*

1 in the Middle Ages

ADJ. **medieval | chivalrous, noble | armoured | mounted**

PHRASES **a knight errant** *tales of medieval knights errant, wandering in search of chivalrous adventures* **| a knight in armour, a knight in shining armour** *(figurative, humorous) She's still waiting for a knight in shining armour to come and rescue her.*

2 man given an honour by the king/queen > Note at PEER

knighthood *noun*

ADJ. **honorary**

VERB + KNIGHTHOOD **get, receive | refuse | award sb, bestow on sb, confer on sb, give sb, offer sb, reward sb with** *He was rewarded with a knighthood for his services to the government.*

knitting *noun*

ADJ. **hand, machine | plain, purl**

QUANT. **piece** *Sew the two pieces of knitting together* **| row** *I had to undo several rows of knitting.*

VERB + KNITTING **do** *She sat doing her knitting while she watched television.* **| undo**

KNITTING + NOUN **machine, needle | wool, yarn | pattern**

knob *noun*

ADJ. **door | control, volume** *Adjust the control knobs by pressing lightly.*

VERB + KNOB **adjust, fiddle with, touch, turn, twiddle** *I've tried twiddling the knobs, but nothing seems to happen.*

KNOB + VERB **adjust sth, control sth**

PREP. **~ on** *the knobs on the radio*

knock *noun*

1 **firm sharp sound**

ADJ. **loud, sharp | gentle, light | determined | timid**

VERB + KNOCK **hear | answer** *She hurried to answer the knock at the door.*

PHRASES **a knock at/on the door** *There was a loud knock at the door.*

2 **sharp blow from sth**

ADJ. **hard, nasty, severe** *(figurative) the hard knocks of life* **| minor**

VERB + KNOCK **get, have, take** *You've had a nasty knock on the head. (figurative) Their pride took quite a knock when they lost 5?0.* **| give sb/sth**

PREP. **~ on**

knock *verb*

1 **hit/bump**

ADV. **accidentally** *I accidentally knocked the vase off the table.* **| about, aside, over** *Her boyfriend had been knocking her about. Mind you don't knock that glass over.*

PREP. **against** *The stick knocked against the wall.* **| off** *He had knocked one of the pictures off the wall.* **| on** *I knocked my head on one of the beams.*

PHRASES **knock sb/sth flying** *He was knocked flying as two policemen came crashing through the door.* **| knock sb off their feet** *The explosion knocked him off his feet.* **| knock sb out/senseless/unconscious** *The blow knocked him unconscious.* **| knock sb to the ground**

2 **bang on a door**

ADV. **loudly | softly | politely, timidly**

PREP. **at** *Someone knocked loudly at the door.* **| on** *She knocked timidly on the study door and entered.*

PHRASES **without knocking** *Dobson walked straight into her office without knocking.*

knot *noun*

ADJ. **loose, tight | granny, reef, slip, etc.**

VERB + KNOT **do, tie** *Tie a knot in the rope.* **| undo, untie | loosen, tighten**

knot *verb*

ADV. **securely, tightly | loosely | neatly | badly, clumsily | together** *I knotted the ropes together securely.*

PREP. **around/round** *She knotted the scarf loosely around her neck.*

know *verb*

1 have information about sth

ADV. **for certain, full well, perfectly well, very well** *I don't know for certain, but I think she lives in the next village. You know very well what I'm talking about!* **| honestly not** *I honestly don't know what they mean to do.*

VERB + KNOW **let sb** *Please let me know* (= tell me) *if there's anything I can do to help.*

PREP. **about** *He knows a lot about early music.* **| of** *I don't know of anyone who might be interested in the job.*

PHRASES **be widely known** *It is widely known that CFCs can damage the ozone layer.* **| know a lot, nothing, very little, etc.**

2 realize

ADV. **exactly, precisely** *I know exactly how you feel.* **| instinctively** *He knew instinctively where he would find her.*

3 be familiar with sb/sth

ADV. **well** *I don't know John very well.* **| hardly** *But I hardly know the woman!*

VERB + KNOW **get to** *She's very nice when you get to know her*

PHRASES **be known to sb** *This man is known to the police* (= as a criminal). **| be widely known 5 be known as** have a particular name

ADV. **colloquially, commonly, popularly | affectionately, familiarly | collectively** *parts of the body known collectively as the sensory system* **| variously** *The drug is variously known as crack or freebase.* **| locally | formerly** *Xinjiang was formerly known as eastern Turkestan.*

PREP. **to** *He was known as Bonzo to his friends.*

know-how *noun*

ADJ. **practical, technical** VERB + KNOW-HOW **have | acquire, get**

PREP. **~ about** *to acquire a little know-how about the job* **| ~ for** *He doesn't have the technical know-how for this kind of job.* **| ~ in** *know-how in various high-tech fields*

knowledge *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, vast | complete, comprehensive, sound, thorough | deep, detailed, intimate, profound** *She has an intimate knowledge of the Asian market.* **| broad, encyclopedic, extensive, wide | unrivalled | expert, specialist | inside** *He managed to find contacts who had inside knowledge of the organization.* **| local | direct, first-hand | up-to-date | limited, rudimentary, superficial** *I have a limited knowledge of French.* **| general** *I don't like quizzes because my general knowledge is so poor.* **| factual | practical | working** *He has a good working knowledge of the subject.* **| professional | academic, linguistic, medical, scientific, technical, etc. | common** *It's common knowledge that he's left his wife.* **| public | full** *She had acted with her parents' full knowledge and consent.* **| previous, prior**

VERB + KNOWLEDGE **acquire, gain | have | demonstrate, flaunt, parade, show (off) | test | apply** *The job gave her the chance to apply the knowledge she had acquired at university.* **| share** *The barman was happy to share his knowledge of wine with us.* **| spread** *The volunteers' task is to spread knowledge of how to prevent the disease.* **| broaden, extend, improve, increase | deny** *He denied all knowledge of what had happened.*

PREP. **in the ~** *They put the car on the market in the full knowledge that it had design faults.* **| to sb's ~** *He's never worked here to my knowledge.* **| with sb's ~** *The letter was sent with the full knowledge of the head of department.* **| without sb's ~** *She borrowed my car without my knowledge.* **| ~ of** *a wide knowledge of antiques*

PHRASES **a gap in your knowledge** *I did some research to fill in the gaps in my knowledge.* **| to the best of your knowledge** *She still lives in San Francisco to the best of my knowledge.*

knowledgeable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound** *Her lawyer seemed very knowledgeable and experienced.* **| become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | quite, reasonably**

PREP. **about** *He's quite knowledgeable about the theatre.*

knuckle *noun*

ADJ. **bony | bleeding, bloodied, bruised, grazed, swollen**

VERB + KNUCKLE **crack** *He rubbed his hands together, cracking his knuckles as he tried to control his anger.* **| bruise, graze, scrape, skin**

KNUCKLE + NOUN **bone**

PHRASES **rap sb on/over the knuckles** *(figurative) The Assistant Manager was rapped over the knuckles for criticizing the company in the press.*

Korean *noun* > Note at LANGUAGE

kosher *adj.*

1 suitable to be eaten by religious Jews

VERBS **be**

ADV. **strictly** *All their food is strictly kosher.*

2 correct/honest

VERBS **be, seem** *It all seems kosher enough.*

ADV. **strictly | enough**

kudos *noun*

ADJ. **considerable | personal**

VERB + KUDOS **acquire, gain | lose | bring** *Employees enjoy the kudos that the job brings as much as the financial rewards.*

KUDOS + VERB **be attached to sth** *There was considerable kudos attached to being on the advisory board.*

laboratory *noun*

ADJ. **up-to-date, well-equipped | commercial, industrial | school, university | biology, chemistry, physics, science | chemical, pharmaceutical | analytical, clinical, development, experimental, forensic, medical, nuclear, pathology, photographic, public health, quality control, research, testing**

VERB + LABORATORY **build, establish, set up** *She has donated money to establish a pharmaceutical laboratory.* **| run** *He runs his own research laboratory.* **| work in** *They work in a laboratory studying growth patterns.*

LABORATORY + NOUN **assistant, chemist, manager, scientist, technician, worker | apparatus, bench, equipment, facilities | animal | analysis, experiment, investigation, measurement, simulation, study, test, testing, trial, work** *laboratory tests on animals* **| science, subject | practices, procedures | data, evidence, findings, report, results | conditions, setting** *The athletes' reflexes were tested under laboratory conditions. simulated driving in a laboratory setting*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The effects of weathering can be simulated in the laboratory.*

label *noun*

1 **paper, etc. attached to sth**

ADJ. **adhesive, sticky | designer** *clothes with a designer label* **| address, luggage | price | warning**

VERB + LABEL **bear, carry, have** *It doesn't have a price label on it.* **| attach, put on, stick on** *She stuck labels on all the jars.* **| remove, take off | read** *Always read the label before taking any medicine.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *What does it say on the label?* **| ~ on** *the label on the bottle*

2 **description**

VERB + LABEL **apply, attach, use** *One sometimes feels that the label 'classic' is applied to any book that is dull.*

3 **company that produces records**

ADJ. **record | major | independent**

VERB + LABEL **sign to/with** *The band are hoping to sign with a major label by the end of the year.*

PREP. **under a/the ~** *The record was produced under the Virgin label.*

label *verb*

1 **put a label on sth**

ADV. **correctly, properly | wrongly** *Some of the plants were wrongly labelled.* **| carefully, clearly, neatly** *a pile of small plastic bags, each carefully labelled*

PREP. **with** *The samples were all labelled with a date and place of origin.*

2 **describe sb/sth as a particular thing**

ADV. **falsely, wrongly** *She was wrongly labelled a liar.* **| automatically**

PREP. **as** *She had automatically labelled the boys as troublemakers.*

labour *noun*

1 **work**

ADJ. **manual, physical | forced, hard** *He was sentenced to four years hard labour for his crime.*

VERB + LABOUR **withdraw** *The miners are threatening to withdraw their labour.*

LABOUR + NOUN **market** *an increasingly competitive labour market*

2 **workers**

ADJ. **cheap | casual | skilled, unskilled | child, migrant, slave** *It is thought that Stonehenge was built using slave labour.*

LABOUR + NOUN **force** *the size of the labour force* **| cost/costs | relations**

3 **giving birth**

ADJ. **difficult, easy | long, short** *The baby was born after a long labour.*

VERB + LABOUR **go into** *She went into labour two weeks early.* **| induce** *Labour was induced when the baby was ten days overdue.*

LABOUR + NOUN **room, ward | pains**

PREP. **in ~** *She was in labour for ten hours.*

lack *noun*

ADJ. **profound, serious, severe | conspicuous, distinct, notable, obvious** *There was a distinct lack of urgency in his manner.* **| complete, sheer, total** *a complete lack of confidence* **| relative | abysmal** *an abysmal lack of knowledge*

PREP. **by ~ of** *The situation was worsened by lack of communication.* **| for ~ of** *They lost the game, but not for lack of trying.* **| from ~ of** *She thought she would collapse from lack of sleep.* **| through ~ of** *I've lost those skills through lack of practice.* **| ~ of** *I couldn't hide my lack of enthusiasm.*

PHRASES **no lack of sth** *There is certainly no lack of interest in the subject.*

lack *verb*

ADV. **really | completely, entirely** *She completely lacks confidence.* **| apparently** *He apparently lacked the desire to learn.* **| clearly, conspicuously, manifestly, obviously | simply** *Perhaps you simply lack the intelligence to realize just how serious this is?* **| otherwise** *Her high-heeled shoes gave her the height she otherwise lacked.* **| somehow** *His claim somehow lacked conviction.*

VERB + LACK **appear to, seem to** *His life seemed to lack direction.*

lacking *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem** *Her life felt lacking in direction and purpose.* **| find sth** *an area of policy where the government has been found seriously lacking*

ADV. **seriously | altogether, completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly** *The book is altogether lacking in originality.* **| a bit, a little, rather, somewhat | apparently | clearly, conspicuously, distinctly, notably, noticeably, obviously** *Tom was conspicuously lacking in enthusiasm for the idea.* **| singularly | curiously, strangely | sadly, sorely, woefully**

PREP. **from** *the passion sadly lacking from his performance* **| in** *Her remarks were curiously lacking in perception.*

lacquer *noun*

ADJ. **protective | clear, matt**

VERB + LACQUER **be coated with, be varnished with | apply, put on, spray on**
Apply the lacquer evenly.

LACQUER + NOUN **finish**

ladder *noun*

1 **piece of equipment for climbing up sth**

ADJ. **rickety | wooden | loft, rope**

VERB + LADDER **ascend, clamber up, climb (up), mount, go up** *He went up the ladder onto the deck.* **| come down, descend, go down | put up** *We put up the ladder and went to get the paint.* **| fall off, step off**

PREP. **on/up a/the ~** *She was up a ladder mending the roof.* **| down a/the ~** *I was standing lower down the ladder.* **| ~ to** *the ladder to the gallery*

PHRASES **the bottom/foot of a ladder, a rung/step of a ladder** *Several of the ladder's rungs were broken.* **| the top of a ladder**

2 **levels in a system**

ADJ. **evolutionary, social** *the people at the top of the social ladder* **| career, corporate, housing, promotion**

VERB + LADDER **ascend, climb, move up** *She was anxious to move up the promotion ladder.* **| get onto**

PREP. **higher up the ~** *creatures higher up the evolutionary ladder* **| lower down the ~ | ~ of** *the ladder of fame* **| ~ to** *helping her on the ladder to success*

PHRASES **get/have one foot on the ladder** *He finally managed to get one foot on the career ladder.* **| a rung/step on the ladder** *the old problem of how to get onto the first step on the ladder*

lady *noun*

ADJ. **elderly, middle-aged, old, young** *A little old lady opened the door.* **| attractive, beautiful, lovely, pretty | charming, fine, lovely, nice | cleaning, dinner, tea** *The school employs four dinner ladies.*

LADY + NOUN **friend** *We teased my uncle about his new lady friend.*

PHRASES **a lady of leisure** *She's a lady of leisure now that she's retired.* **| the lady of the house** > Note at PEER

lag *verb*

ADV. **badly, seriously | behind** *She did well in her first year at school but then started to lag behind.*

PREP. **behind** *Britain still lags badly behind the rest of Europe on this.*

PHRASES **lag far/way/well behind (sb/sth)** *The Tories are still lagging way behind in the opinion polls.*

lake *noun*

ADJ. **big, great, huge, large | little, small | deep | shallow | beautiful, lovely | blue | freshwater, salt | frozen | artificial, man-made, ornamental | inland, mountain | boating**

VERB + LAKE **cross** *You should cross the lake before nightfall.*

LAKE + NOUN **bed, water**

PREP. **across a/the ~** *A ferry takes people across the lake.* **| around/round a/the ~** *We walked around the lake.* **| at a/the ~** *We had a holiday at Lake Como.* **| in a/the ~** *Carp live in the lake.* **| into a/the ~** *She fell into the lake.* **| on a/the ~** *We went boating on the lake a cottage on the lake*

PHRASES **the edge/middle/shores/side/surface of the lake** *There is a cafe on the other side of the lake.*

lamb *noun*

1 **young sheep**

ADJ. **newborn | orphaned | sacrificial** *(often figurative) I am not going to be a sacrificial lamb on the altar of political correctness.*

VERB + LAMB **fatten | kill, slaughter** *the traffic in illegally slaughtered lamb*

LAMB + VERB **bleat | frolic, gambol**

2 **meat**

ADJ. **spring | curried, grilled, minced, roast**

LAMB + NOUN **chop, cutlet | casserole, curry, stew**

PHRASES **breast/leg/neck/rack/shoulder of lamb** > Special page at FOOD

lame *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | go** *His horse had gone lame.* **| leave sb, make sb** *an accident which had left him lame*

ADV. **completely, quite | slightly**

lamp *noun*

ADJ. **bedside, desk, reading, standard, table | gas, oil, paraffin**

VERB + LAMP **light, switch on, turn on | switch off, turn off**

LAMP + VERB **burn, glow, shine** *An oil lamp burned in the darkness.* **| flicker, go out**

land *noun*

1 **surface of the earth**

ADJ. **dry** *It was good to be on dry land again after months at sea.*

VERB + LAND **reach** *The explorers reached land after a long voyage.* | **sight** *In the distance the crew sighted land.* | **reclaim** *The new project will reclaim the land from the sea.*

LAND + NOUN **mass** *chains of volcanoes running along the edge of continental land masses* | **animal, mammal** | **battle, war** | **forces** *With the land forces defeated, everything now rested on the navy.*

PREP. **by ~** *It's impossible to reach this beach by land because of the high cliffs.* | **on ~** *Some animals can live both on land and in water.*

2 **piece of ground**

ADJ. **good, prime** *prime building land* | **fertile, rich** *rich agricultural land land that is rich in mineral deposits* | **marginal, poor** *animals grazing on marginal land that was previously heath or moorland* | **arid, dry, hard, parched** *The land was very dry and hard after the long, hot summer.* | **marshy** | **barren** | **derelict, waste** (also **wasteland)** *A new shopping centre will be built on the derelict land.* | **contaminated** | **empty, unused, vacant** | **uncultivated, virgin, wild** | **agricultural, arable, cultivated, farm** (also **farmland**), **farming** | **grazing** | **industrial** | **building, housing** | **green belt** | **rural, urban** | **private** | **public** | **common** *This used to be common land, where everyone had the right to graze animals.* | **open** *They finally got out of the town and reached open land.* | **flat, low-lying** | **hill, undulating** | **coastal, forest, meadow**

QUANT. **parcel, piece, plot, scrap, strip, tract** *Every scrap of land is used for growing food. The college owns vast tracts of land.*

VERB + LAND **have, hold, own** *The inhabitants of a village held land in common.* | **acquire, buy, purchase** | **sell** | **cultivate, farm, plough, work** | **irrigate** | **clear** *The land has been cleared ready for building.* | **develop** *They were refused permission to develop the land.* | **occupy** *During the war their lands were occupied by the enemy.* | **seize** | **allocate, distribute, redistribute** | **grant sb** *He was* *granted land by the king.*

LAND + VERB **adjoin sth** *a piece of land adjoining a disused railway line*

LAND + NOUN **owner, ownership | acquisition, purchase | reclamation | development | use | prices, values | dispute 3 the land** farming land

VERB + LAND **live off** *It's very fertile countryside where you can just live off the land.* **| farm, work (on)** *His family had always worked the land.* **| leave** *Many people leave the land to find work in towns and cities.* **| get/go back to** *He's tired of living in cities, and wants to get back to the land.*

4 **country**

ADJ. **ancestral, native** *the tribe's ancestral lands* **| distant** *He travelled to many distant lands.* **| alien, foreign, strange** *She was all alone in a strange land.* **| promised** *(often figurative) the promised land of progressive education* **| cloud cuckoo, never-never** *(both figurative) Anyone who thinks this legislation will be effective is living in cloud cuckoo land.*

land *verb*

1 **of an aircraft**

ADV. **safely** *The pilot managed to land the plane safely.*

VERB + LAND **be due to | come down to** *The plane slowly came down to land.* **| be forced to** *The plane was forced to land in a nearby field.* **| manage to**

PREP. **at** *We are due to land at Heathrow at 12.15.*

2 **fall to the ground**

ADV. **awkwardly, badly** *I landed awkwardly and twisted my ankle.* **| expertly, neatly** *He tensed himself for the jump and landed expertly on the other side.* **| heavily | lightly**

PREP. **on** *She fell and landed heavily on her back.*

landing *noun*

1 **of an aircraft**

ADJ. **abrupt, bumpy | crash, emergency, forced | gentle, safe, smooth, soft**

VERB + LANDING **make** *The pilot had to make an emergency landing in a field.*

LANDING + NOUN **strip**

2 **top of a staircase**

ADJ. **first-floor, second-floor, etc.**

PREP. **off the ~** *The room opens off the landing.* **| on the ~** *There's a phone on the landing outside your room.*

landlady, landlord *noun*

1 **sb who lets a house/room**

ADJ. **resident | absentee** *The house has an absentee landlord, who visits the property once a year.*

2 **sb who owns/runs a pub**

ADJ. **pub** *He left the army and became a pub landlord.*

LANDLADY, LANDLORD + VERB **serve sb** *The landlady came over to serve me.*

landmark *noun*

1 **feature of the landscape**

ADJ. **distinctive, prominent | famous, well-known | familiar** *After twenty years, all the familiar landmarks had disappeared.* **| local | historic**

VERB + LANDMARK **recognize**

PREP. **~ for** *The tower was once a landmark for ships.*

2 **important stage in the development of sth**

ADJ. **great, important, major, significant**

VERB + LANDMARK **be, represent** *The Russian Revolution represents a landmark in world history.*

LANDMARK + NOUN **decision, ruling** *a landmark decision on the legal status of a foetus* **| case**

PREP. **~ in** *The film is an important landmark in the history of the cinema.*

landscape *noun*

ADJ. **barren, bleak, dramatic, rocky, rugged** *the dramatic landscape of the desert* **| beautiful | rural, urban** *an urban landscape of factories and skyscrapers* **| industrial | winter | lunar | political, social** *(both figurative) The political landscape of the country has changed since unemployment rose.*

VERB + LANDSCAPE **conserve, preserve, protect** *the need to conserve the rural landscape* **| dominate** *The power station dominates the landscape.*

LANDSCAPE + NOUN **architect, gardener | design, gardening | painter, photographer | painting**

landslide *noun*

1 **fall of earth or rocks**

VERB + LANDSLIDE **cause** *The floods caused a landslide.*

LANDSLIDE + VERB **destroy sth** *The village was destroyed by a landslide.*

2 **election victory**

ADJ. **electoral** *Nobody predicted such an electoral landslide.* **| Conservative, Labour, etc.**

VERB + LANDSLIDE **win by** *The National Party won by a landslide.*

LANDSLIDE + NOUN **victory**

lane *noun*

1 **narrow road**

ADJ. **little, narrow, single-track, small | quiet | bumpy, rough | dusty, muddy | twisting, winding | grassy, green, leafy | cobbled | country | back** *Lighting is poor in the back lanes of the city.*

VERB + LANE **turn down/into**

LANE + VERB **go, lead, run** *the lane leading to the village The lane runs past the the lake.*

PREP. **along a/the ~** *We cycled for miles along winding country lanes.* **| down a/the ~, in a/the ~, up a/the ~**

2 **part of a wide road for one line of traffic**

ADJ. **fast, slow | inside, left-hand, middle, outside, right-hand | overtaking | northbound, southbound, etc. | traffic | bus, cycle**

VERB + LANE **change, get in** *I hate changing lanes on the motorway. Get in lane early when approaching a junction.* **| keep in, stay in**

LANE + NOUN **closures, restrictions** *Lane closures are causing hold-ups on the M6 near junction 2.*

PREP. **in (the) ~** *The bus was crawling along in the slow lane.*

language *noun*

1 system of communication

ADJ. **first, native** *She grew up in Spain, so her first language is Spanish.* | **foreign, second** *How many foreign languages does she speak? the teaching of English as a second language* | **original** *Most local cinemas show films in the original language, with German subtitles.* | **source, target** *(both technical)* | **ancient, classical, dead** *Latin is a dead language.* | **modern** | **common, shared** | **indigenous, local** | **official** *Belgium has two official languages.* | **national** *Portuguese is the national language of Brazil.* | **international** | **minority** *Some minority languages are dying out.* | **spoken, written** *She could speak some Chinese, but never studied the written language.* | **colloquial, everyday, informal** | **formal** | **flowery, literary, poetic** | **racist, sexist** | **sign** *Not all deaf people use sign language.* | **body, non-verbal** *You could tell from his body language that he was very embarrassed.* | **legal, technical, etc.** | **computer, programming**

VERB + LANGUAGE **speak** | **understand** | **use** | **learn, study** | **master** | **be couched in, be expressed in** | **enrich** *idiomatic expressions that enrich the language*

LANGUAGE + NOUN **acquisition, learning** *new methods of language learning* | **course, lesson**

PREP. **in … ~** *His letter was couched in very formal language.*

PHRASES **command/knowledge/mastery of (a) language** *Her command of language is very advanced for a six-year-old.* | **use of language** *The writer's use of language reflects the personality of each character.*

2 offensive words

ADJ. **bad, crude, foul, obscene, offensive, strong** *using foul language*

VERB + LANGUAGE **use** | **mind, watch** *The referee warned the players to mind their language.* > Note at LANGUAGE

lantern *noun*

VERB + LANTERN **light, shine** *He shone his lantern into the dark room.* **| blow out, put out**

LANTERN + VERB **glow, shine | hang** *The lantern hung from the roof.*

lap *noun*

ADJ. **first, opening | final, last**

VERB + LAP **complete, do, run**

LAP + NOUN **record** *He set a new lap record.*

PREP. **on the … ~** *He tripped and fell on the final lap.*

PHRASES **a lap of honour** *The silver medallist joined the winner in a lap of honour.*

lap *verb*

ADV. **gently, softly**

PREP. **against** *The waves lapped gently against the side of the ship.* **| around** *The water lapped around his ankles.* **| over** *The freezing water lapped over her boots.*

lapel *noun*

ADJ. **narrow, wide** *a coat with wide lapels*

VERB + LAPEL **be pinned to** *A silver brooch was pinned to her lapel.*

LAPEL + NOUN **badge, pin**

PREP. **in the/your ~** *He was wearing a carnation in his lapel.* **| on the/your ~** *a jacket with a badge on the lapel*

PHRASES **grab sb by the lapels** *He grabbed her by the lapels and shook her violently.*

lapse *noun*

1 **small error**

ADJ. **minor | momentary, temporary | sudden | memory, mental** *I keep suffering these mental lapses.*

VERB + LAPSE **have, suffer** *I had a momentary lapse when I couldn't remember his name.*

PREP. **~ in** *a lapse in attention* **| ~ of** *sudden lapses of concentration*

2 **bad behaviour**

ADJ. **curious, odd** *It was an odd lapse for one who is normally so polite.*

3 **passing of time**

ADJ. **brief, considerable | time**

PHRASES **~ of** *after a considerable lapse of time a time lapse of three months*

larder *noun*

ADJ. **full, well-stocked | bare, empty | walk-in**

VERB + LARDER **fill, stock | empty, raid** *He comes home from school and raids the larder.*

LARDER + NOUN **door, shelf**

PREP. **in the ~** *There wasn't much food left in the larder.*

large *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *Some of the clothes looked very large.* **| become, get, grow** *By this time his debt had got extremely large. The plant had grown quite large.* **| remain**

ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, very | comparatively, fairly, moderately, quite, rather, reasonably, relatively** *Isn't that jumper rather large?* **| enough, sufficiently** *Are you sure the hall will be large enough?* **| indefinitely, infinitely** *The universe is infinitely large.* **| abnormally, disproportionately, surprisingly, unexpectedly, unusually** *His eyes were abnormally large.*

laser *nou*n

ADJ. **powerful**

VERB + LASER **use**

LASER + NOUN **beam, light | printer | gun | surgery, therapy, treatment**

lash *noun*

ADJ. **bottom, lower | long, thick**

VERB + LASH **bat, flutter** *She batted her lashes flirtatiously.* **| lower** *She lowered her lashes in sudden embarrassment.*

LASH + VERB **flicker, flutter** *Her lashes flickered and I knew she was lying.*

last *verb*

ADV. **long** *Your car will last longer if you look after it.* **| forever, indefinitely** *Nothing lasts forever.*

With care, the vines will last indefinitely. **| never** *Happiness never lasts.*

VERB + LAST **can/cannot, could (not)** *The storm could last quite a long time.* **| will/ won't, would (not)** *The kids are all very enthusiastic, but it won't last?it never does.* **| be likely/unlikely to** *I always thought his popularity was unlikely to last.* **| be expected to | seem to** *The journey seemed to last forever.* **| be built to** *This house was built to last.*

PREP. **for** *The war lasted for three years.* **| into** *The celebrations lasted well into the next week.* | **until** *The trial is expected to last until the end of the week.*

PHRASES **while sth lasts** *Make the most of this feeling while it lasts.*

late *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem** *I don't know what the time is, but it feels quite late.* **| make sb**

ADV. **extremely, really, very | a bit, fairly, a little, quite, rather, relatively**

PREP. **for** *I'm late for work.* **| in** *He took up music late in life.* **| with** *He was now three weeks late with his rent.*

PHRASES **an hour, ten minutes, etc. late** *The train was 45 minutes late.* **| leave it a bit/rather/very late** *You've left it a bit late to start your homework, haven't you?*

Latin *noun*

ADJ. classical | medieval > Note at LANGUAGE

latitude *noun*

1 **geographical position**

ADJ. **high, low | northern, southern | polar, temperate** *These birds only survive in temperate latitudes.*

VERB + LATITUDE **calculate, determine**

PHRASES **a line of latitude**

2 **freedom**

ADJ. **considerable, great**

QUANT. **degree** *Some degree of latitude is required in interpreting the law on this point.*

VERB + LATITUDE **allow (sb), give sb**

PREP. **~ for** *This method allows very little latitude for error.* **| ~ in** *Nowadays, newspapers are allowed considerable latitude in criticizing the government.*

laugh *noun*

1 **sound/act of laughing**

ADJ. **loud | light, little, short, slight, small | low | big, good, great** *The last joke got the biggest laugh.* **| belly, booming, hearty | barking, cackling, harsh, husky, throaty | silvery, tinkling | amused, delighted | embarrassed, nervous, shaky | polite | bitter, brittle, cynical, derisive, dry, forced, hollow, humourless, mirthless, mocking, rueful, scornful** *She forced a humourless laugh.* **| infectious**

VERB + LAUGH **give, let out, utter** *He gave a short, amused laugh.* **| have | force, manage | enjoy, like** *He enjoys a good laugh.* **| get, raise** *Few of his jokes got a laugh. She got a laugh out of Jack.* **| hear**

LAUGH + VERB **escape sb** *A small laugh escaped her.*

PREP. **for a ~** *She dyed her hair green just for a laugh.* **| with a ~** *He left the room with a cynical laugh.* **| ~ about/at** *We all had a great laugh about it afterwards.*

PHRASES **be good for a laugh** *Paul's always good for a laugh* (= always amusing). **| have the last laugh** *We'll have the last laugh if she finds out that you're the one who played the trick.* **| a laugh at sb's expense** *Oh yes, very funny?have your laugh at my expense!* **| the laugh is on sb** (= sb looks ridiculous after they have tried to make fun of sb else)

2 **sb/sth that is amusing**

ADJ. **good, real**

PHRASES **a barrel of laughs, a bit of a laugh, a laugh a minute** (= very funny)

laugh *verb*

ADV. **aloud, loudly, out loud** *It looked so funny that I almost laughed out loud.* | **gently, lightly, quietly, softly, silently, under your breath** | **deeply, heartily, a lot, really, uproariously** *He laughed heartily at his own joke.* | **just, merely, simply** *I thought she would be angry but she just laughed.* | **almost** | **briefly, a little, shortly** | **suddenly** | **easily, freely** *She smiles and laughs easily.* | **openly, outright** | **helplessly, uncontrollably** | **cheerfully, delightedly, excitedly, happily** | **hysterically, nervously** | **politely** | **incredulously, in disbelief** | **angrily, bitterly, cynically, derisively, grimly, harshly, hollowly, humourlessly, mirthlessly, ruefully, scornfully, sourly, wryly** *He realized how he had been fooled, and laughed bitterly.* | **together** *talking and laughing together*

VERB + LAUGH **have to, want to** *He looked so funny I just had to laugh.* | **begin to, start to** | **try not to** *I was watching them and trying not to laugh.* | **make sb** *He pulled a funny face to make us laugh.* | **hear sb** *I heard him suddenly laugh aloud.*

PREP. **about** *Tomorrow you'll be able to laugh about this.* | **at** *The audience laughed at her jokes.* | **with** *talking and laughing with the children Trent almost laughed with relief.*

PHRASES **burst out laughing, can't/couldn't help/stop laughing** *She was telling us jokes and we couldn't stop laughing.* | **fall about laughing** *It was so funny we just fell about laughing.* | **find yourself laughing** *He laughed, and she found herself laughing with him.* | **stop laughing**

laughter *noun*

ADJ. **helpless, hysterical, loud, raucous, wild** *I heard sounds of raucous laughter upstairs.* **| delighted, happy | infectious** *Her infectious laughter had everyone smiling.* **| nervous | silent, suppressed** *She was bent over with suppressed laughter.* **| derisive, mocking**

QUANT. **bellow, hoot, howl, roar, shriek, snort** *He gave a sudden bellow of laughter.* **| fit** *Everyone dissolved into fits of laughter when they saw my haircut.* **| gale, peal, ripple** *His suggestion was greeted with peals of laughter. A ripple of laughter ran round the room.*

VERB + LAUGHTER **burst into, dissolve into/with, explode with | bellow with, cackle with, hoot with, howl with, roar with, scream with, shriek with, snort with, whoop with, yell with | rock with, shake with**

launch *noun*

ADJ. **official, press, public** *She is signing copies of her book at the official launch.* **| successful | imminent | book, campaign, product | balloon, rocket, satellite, shuttle**

VERB + LAUNCH **get (sth) ready for, prepare (sth) for** *They are preparing for the launch of the new campaign next month.* **| announce | mark** *a big Hollywood event to mark the launch of the movie* **| coincide with** *The show is timed to coincide with the launch of a new book on the subject.* **| attend, go to, speak at | delay, postpone, put off**

LAUNCH + NOUN **date | party** (= for a product or book) **| pad, site**

PREP. **after/following/since the ~** *In the six months since its launch the car has sold extremely well.* **| at a/the ~** *I met her at the launch of her new book.* **| ~ for** *a spring launch for the new TV system*

laundry *noun*

ADJ. **clean, dirty**

QUANT. **bundle, pile** *There was a pile of clean laundry on her bed.*

VERB + LAUNDRY **do** *The housekeeper cooks, does the laundry and cleans.*

LAUNDRY + NOUN **bag, basket | service** *The hotel offers a free laundry service.*

lavatory *noun*

ADJ. **public | communal, shared | indoor, inside | outside | flush, flushing**

VERB + LAVATORY **go to, use | need | flush, flush sth down**

LAVATORY + NOUN **basin, bowl | seat | cistern | chain | paper | brush**

PREP. **in the ~, on the ~**

law *noun*

1 **official rule/rules**

ADJ. **administrative, case, civil, common, constitutional, contract, criminal, international, statute, etc.** (see also **martial law)**

VERB + LAW **become** *Parliament voted for the bill to become law.* | **enforce, uphold** *It's the job of the police to enforce the law.* | **obey, observe** | **break, flout, violate** | **adopt, enact, pass** | **annul, repeal** | **interpret** *Judges interpret this law in different ways.*

LAW + VERB **allow sth, forbid sth, prohibit sth** *The law forbids gambling of any kind.* | **permit sth** | **require sth** *The wearing of a crash helmet is required by law.* | **govern sth** *the law governing school attendance*

LAW + NOUN **court** | **enforcement**

PREP. **above the ~** *No one is above the law.* | **against the ~** *What you did was clearly against the law.* | **by ~** *By law, you are obliged to install smoke alarms in the factory.* | **within the ~** *The company is operating entirely within the law.* | **~ against** *a local law against keeping horses* | **~ concerning** *the law concerning industrial action ballots* | **~ on** *A law on hunting will cause a lot of disagreements.* | **~ relating to** *the law relating to the sale of goods*

PHRASES **as the law stands** *As the law stands, you can get married while still too young to have a driving licence.* | **law and order** *Martial law was imposed to prevent the breakdown of law and order.* | **the letter of the law** *In spite of the difficulties it would cause her family, the judge stuck to the letter of the law and jailed her.* | **take the law into your own hands** *When police failed to arrest the suspect, local people took the law into their own hands and beat him up.*

2 **subject of study/profession**

VERB + LAW **practise**

LAW + NOUN **firm** > Note at SUBJECT(for more verbs and nouns)

lawful *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | consider sth, deem sth**

ADV. **perfectly** *This is a perfectly lawful activity.*

lawn *noun*

ADJ. **manicured, neat, tended** *a carefully tended lawn* **| overgrown | back, front**

VERB + LAWN **cut, mow, trim** *The lawn really needs mowing.*

PHRASES **a sweep of lawn** *The cottage sits on a hill above a sweep of lawn.*

lawsuit *noun*

VERB + LAWSUIT **bring, file, issue** *A lawsuit has been filed against the company.* **| be involved in, pursue | drop** *They have agreed to drop their lawsuit against the Dutch company.* **| be faced with, face** *The company now faces several lawsuits over its failure to protect its employees.* **| defend** *She plans to defend the lawsuit vigorously.* **| win | lose | settle** *The two companies have settled the lawsuit.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *They are seeking damages in a lawsuit.* **| ~ against** *a lawsuit against her former husband* **| ~ over** *a lawsuit over a disputed estate*

lawyer *nou*n

ADJ. **clever, competent, good, successful | leading, senior | experienced, qualified | practising | academic | defence, prosecuting, prosecution | corporate, government | foreign, international, local | civil, civil rights, commercial, constitutional, criminal, divorce, human rights, libel, personal injury** > Note at PROFESSIONAL(for verbs)

lay *verb*

ADV. **carefully, gently, tenderly | down** *He laid the books down on the table.*

PREP. **on** *She laid the child tenderly on the bed.* **| over** *They carefully laid a blanket over the body.* **PHRASAL VERBS lay sth out**

ADV. **tastefully, well** *The owners have built a gift shop and a tastefully laid out caravan site.*

lay-by *noun* VERB + LAY-BY **pull into**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I was parked in a lay-by, having a nap.*

layer *noun*

ADJ. **fine, thin** *Everything was covered with a fine layer of dust.* **| deep, generous, heavy, thick** *Mulch with a generous layer of peat or compost.* **| bottom, inner, lower, middle, outer, surface, top, upper** *the upper layers of the earth's atmosphere* **| double | protective** *a protective layer of black plastic* **| ozone** *holes in the ozone layer*

VERB + LAYER **form** *Use enough gravel to form a layer about 50mm thick.* **| be covered by/with** *The body had been covered with a thin layer of soil.*

LAYER + NOUN **cake**

PREP. **beneath/under a/the ~** *Beneath the surface layer of the skin are several further layers.* **| in ~s** *The building is constructed in layers.* **| ~ of** *an extra layer of clothing a layer of bureaucracy multiple layers of meaning*

PHRASES **layer after/on/upon layer** *The remains lay buried under layer upon layer of black earth.*

layout *noun*

ADJ. **basic, general** *Before designing the house we planned the basic layout of the rooms.* **| physical, spatial | interior, internal | page, text** *page layout software* **| road, street**

lazy *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become, get, grow** *He had grown lazy and fat. We thought we were winning, so we got lazy.*

ADV. **extremely, incredibly, really, very | downright | almost** *His smile was slow, almost lazy.* **| a bit, pretty, rather**

lead1 /li:d/ *noun*

1 **example set by sb's behaviour**

ADJ. **moral**

VERB + LEAD **give, take** *The government should give a lead in tackling racism.* **| follow**

PREP. **~ in** *We should follow their lead in banning chemical weapons.*

2 **position ahead of other people**

ADJ. **big, clear, comfortable, commanding, good, strong | narrow | overall | early**

VERB + LEAD **be in, have** *She has a narrow lead over the other runners.* **| go into, move into, take** *They took an early lead.* **| build up, establish** *The team has now built up a commanding lead.* **| hold, maintain | lose | regain** *They regained the lead with only a few minutes left to play.* **| put sb/sth (back) into | extend, increase** *Sheffield increased their lead just before half time.* **| give**

PREP. **in/into the ~** *struggling to stay in the lead* **| ~ over** *This win gives the team a two-point lead over their closest rival.*

3 **main part in a play, show, etc.**

ADJ. **romantic | female, male**

VERB + LEAD **play** *Her big break came when she was chosen to play the lead in a Broadway musical.*

LEAD + NOUN **role | singer | guitar, guitarist**

4 **clue**

ADJ. **good | new | possible** *The police are following every possible lead.*

VERB + LEAD **have | follow, pursue | give**

PREP. **~ on** *leads on the murderer's identity*

lead2 /li:d/ *verb*

1 **show the way**

ADV. **back, on** *'Lead on!' said Arnold.*

VERB + LEAD **help (to)** *Five people helping to lead a convoy of aid are feared dead.* | **allow sb to, let sb** *Let me lead the way.*

PREP. **along, down, into, out of, through, to, etc.** *She led them along a dark corridor to a small room.*

PHRASES **lead the way** *You lead the way and we'll follow.*

2 **go to a place**

ADV. **directly** | **back, down, up** *An old track led back through the wood.* | **nowhere, somewhere** (often figurative) *Often there are discoveries which lead nowhere.*

PREP. **from, onto** *The gardens lead directly onto a beach.* | **to** *a path leading from the village to the old church*

3 **cause**

ADV. **normally, usually** | **inevitably, inexorably** *Industrialization inevitably led to the expansion of the urban working class.* | **(almost) certainly, undoubtedly** | **not necessarily** *The use of soft drugs does not necessarily lead to a progression to hard drugs.* | **automatically** *Business success does not automatically lead to financial success.* | **naturally** *Discussion of a client's tax affairs will lead naturally into consideration of investment options.* | **directly** | **indirectly** | **eventually, ultimately**

VERB + LEAD **can/could (easily/only), may/might (well), must** *Sugar and fat can more easily lead to obesity than some other foods. The carbon tax might well lead to a doubling of prices for fossil fuels.* | **appear to, seem to** | **be expected to, be likely to, tend to** *Worrying about your weight is more likely to lead to comforting yourself with a piece of chocolate.* | **be bound to**

PREP. **to** *the events that led eventually to war*

lead3 /led/ *nou*n

ADJ. **molten**

VERB + LEAD **be made of**

LEAD + NOUN **pipe, piping | paint | shot | poisoning | content, levels | industry, mine, miner, mining**

leader *noun*

1 **person who is in charge of sth**

ADJ. **born, natural | charismatic, effective, good, great, inspiring, inspired, visionary | undisputed | powerful, strong | weak | deputy | former | joint | local, national | opposition, parliamentary, party | Conservative, Labour, etc. | military, political, religious, spiritual | gang, guerrilla, nationalist, rebel | group, project, squadron, team** *Discuss any problems with your team leader.* **| business, church, civic, community, council, government, strike, student, (trade) union, youth** *Business leaders have been in talks with the government.* **| miners', teachers', etc.**

VERB + LEADER **be appointed, become, be elected | appoint (sb), appoint sb as, choose (sb as), elect (sb), elect sb as, nominate (sb), nominate sb as**

PHRASES **a leader of the Opposition**

2 **person/team that is best or in first place**

ADJ. **undisputed | brand, market, world** *The company is a world leader in electrical goods.* **| championship, league, tournament**

VERB + LEADER **overtake** *aiming to overtake the market leaders within two years*

PREP. **behind the ~** *ten points behind league leaders Manchester United* **| ~ in** *the undisputed leader in her field*

leadership *noun*

ADJ. **clear, effective, firm, outstanding, real, strong** *He was praised for his firm leadership.* **| poor, weak | charismatic, dynamic, visionary | hardline | traditional | personal | deputy** *He is standing in the deputy leadership election.* **| collective, joint | local, national, world | Conservative, Labour, etc. | cultural, industrial, intellectual, military, moral, political, spiritual** *Political leadership needs a particular combination of skills.* **| church, government, parliamentary, party, union**

VERB + LEADERSHIP **assume, take on/over** *When Smith died, Blair took over the leadership of the party.* **| assert** *her method of asserting personal leadership* **| exercise, provide, show** *In the crisis he showed real leadership.*

LEADERSHIP + NOUN **bid, campaign, challenge | ballot, battle, contest, election, race, struggle | role | structure | style | qualities, skills** *He lacks leadership qualities.*

PREP. **under sb's ~** *The school has flourished under the leadership of Mr Buxton.* **| ~ from** *What is really needed is clear leadership from the prime minister.* **| ~ in** *Leadership in science now went to the United States.*

PHRASES **a challenge to sb's leadership** *She withstood several challenges to her leadership.* **| a lack of leadership, sb's style of leadership**

leaf *noun*

ADJ. **new, young | autumn, dead, dry, fallen, falling, rotting, rotten** *The ground was thick with dead leaves.* **| broad** (*especially technical*), **heart-shaped, oval** *broad leaf plants* **| green, yellow, etc. | glossy, hairy, leathery, mottled, shiny, spiky, variegated | bay, lettuce, oak, tea, etc.** *Throw the tea leaves on the flower bed.*

VERB + LEAF **have** *This plant has beautifully variegated leaves.* **| break/burst/come into, grow, produce, put out** *It was spring and the trees were coming into leaf. In the spring the plant began to put out new leaves.* **| shed** *Deciduous trees shed their leaves in autumn.*

LEAF + VERB **appear** *Spring arrived and the first green leaves began to appear.* **| turn, yellow** *The summer was over and the leaves were beginning to turn.* **| fall | rustle** *The leaves rustled in the light breeze.*

LEAF + NOUN **litter, mould** *the leaf litter on the forest floor*

PHRASES **in full leaf** *The corn was already ripening and the trees in full leaf.*

leaflet *noun*

ADJ. **free** *a free leaflet explaining your tax return* | **helpful, useful** | **explanatory, information, instruction** | **promotional, publicity** | **campaign, election, party**

QUANT. **copy**

VERB + LEAFLET **issue, produce, publish** *The Health Council issued hundreds of leaflets.* | **deliver, distribute, give out, hand out, send out** *Campaigners handed out leaflets to passers by.* | **enclose** *I enclose a leaflet about some of the other services we offer.*

LEAFLET + VERB **advertise sth, explain sth**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *More details are given in our promotional leaflet.*

league *noun*

1 **group of sports clubs that compete with each other**

ADJ. **cricket, football, etc.** *They want to start a new football league.* **| European, northern, etc. | local, national | Sunday** *He played Sunday League cricket for years.* **| premier | major, minor** *major league baseball* **| super** *new proposals for a European super league*

VERB + LEAGUE **create, form, set up, start | join** *The team joined the Northern League last year.* **| win**

LEAGUE + NOUN **champions, leaders | championship, cup, title | club, side | player | game, match | table | cricket, football, etc.**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The team is now in the Premier League.*

PHRASES **at the bottom/top of the league, (come) bottom/top of the league, a position in the league** *hoping to improve their position in the league*

2 **level of quality, ability, etc.**

ADJ. **big, super, top, world** *This move propelled him into the political big league.*

PHRASES **in a different league** *Today's technology is in a different league* (= very much better). **| in a league of your own** *As a painter he is in a league of his own* (= much better than others). **| not in the same league (as …)** (= not nearly as good as), **out of sb's league** *A house like that is way out of our league* (= too expensive for us).

leak *noun*

1 small hole/crack

VERB + LEAK **have** *The boat had a small leak.* | **spring** *The pipe has sprung a leak.* | **plug, stop** *I managed to plug the leak.*

PREP. **~ in** *a leak in the roof*

2 when gas/liquid escapes

ADJ. **major, serious** | **minor** | **slow** | **fuel, gas, oil, radiation, radioactive**

VERB + LEAK **cause** *The dismantling of a nuclear reprocessing plant caused a leak of radioactivity yesterday.* | **detect, discover, find, notice, spot** *Fortunately, we spotted the leak in time.* | **fix, repair, stop** *The plumber fixed the leak.* | **prevent** *taking steps to prevent gas leaks in the future*

LEAK + VERB **happen, occur**

PREP. **~ from** *Pollution inspectors were called to a leak from a chemical factory.* | **~ of** *a leak of dangerous chemicals*

3 giving away information

ADJ. **security**

LEAK + VERB **come from sth** *The leak could only have come from one source.*

PREP. **~ about** *a security leak about a number of suspicious deaths among civil servants* | **~ from** *a leak from the prime minister's office* | **~ of** *a leak of confidential material* | **~ to** *a leak to the American authorities*

PHRASES **the source of a leak** *The organization's press secretary is thought to be the source of the leak.*

leak *verb*

1 **allow sth to get out through a hole**

ADV. **badly** *The house was old and the roof leaked quite badly.* **| slightly**

2 **tell sb about sth**

ADV. **carefully, deliberately | widely** *The document had been widely leaked.*

PREP. **from** *Confidential information that has been leaked from the BBC.* **| to** *The report was leaked to the press.*

lean *verb*

ADV. **heavily | lightly | slightly | casually, easily, lazily, nonchalantly | eagerly | earnestly | confidentially, confidingly, conspiratorially | weakly, wearily | drunkenly | precariously | close, near** *He leaned closer, lowering his voice.* **| across, forward, down, out, over** *She leant forward eagerly to listen to him.* **| away, back, backwards** *He leaned back in his chair.* **| sideways**

PREP. **across** *She was leaning confidentially across the table.* **| against** *She leaned her head against his shoulder.* **| into** *He leaned into the open doorway.* **| on** *The old man was leaning heavily on a stick.* **| out of** *She leaned precariously out of the window.* **| over** *She leaned casually over the railings.* **| through** *The taxi driver leaned through his window.* **| towards** *He leaned towards her.* **PHRASAL VERBS lean on sb/sth**

ADV. **heavily** *Britain leans heavily on Europe for trade.*

leap *noun*

1 **big jump**

ADJ. **big, giant, prodigious | little | flying, running** *He made a flying leap at the ball.*

VERB + LEAP **make, take**

PREP. **~ from, ~ into** *a leap into the air* **| ~ to**

2 **great change/increase in sth**

ADJ. **big, enormous, giant, great, huge, quantum** *There has been a quantum leap in profits since 1995.* **| small | bold, dramatic, sudden** *a dramatic leap in the number of people out of work* **| imaginative, intuitive | technological**

VERB + LEAP **make** *They've made a great leap forward with their road building in the last few years.*

PREP. **~ from** *a leap from $632 to $735* **| ~ in** *a leap in prices* **| ~ of** *a leap of 750%* **| ~ to**

PHRASES **a leap forward, by leaps and bounds, come on/improve in leaps and bounds** *His technique has come on in leaps and bounds this season.*

leap *verb*

ADV. **almost, nearly** *He almost leaped down the stairs when he heard who it was.* **| immediately | suddenly | clear, high** *She leaped clear of the water.* **| about, around, back, down, forward, out, up (and down)** *children leaping about with excitement*

VERB + LEAP **seem to** *(figurative) The photograph seemed to leap off the page at her.* **| be about to, be ready to** *Don't be so nervous?anyone would think I was about to leap on you.*

PREP. **across** *leaping across the puddles* **| from** *He leaped down from the ladder and ran over towards her.* **| into, off, on, onto** *He leaped onto his horse and rode off.* **| out of** *He leaped out of bed when he heard the telephone.* **| over** *leaping over high fences*

PHRASES **leap to your feet** *Rosie immediately leaped to her feet.*

learn *verb*

1 gain knowledge/skill

ADV. **a lot** *I learned a lot from my father.* **| quickly, soon** *Children learn very quickly. They soon learn that bad behaviour is a sure-fire way of getting attention.*

VERB + LEARN **need to | be eager to, want to** *He was eager to learn all she could teach him.* **| have a lot to** *I've got a lot to learn, haven't I?*

PREP. **about** *learning about art* **| from** *She learned from watching others.* **| through** *Children learn through play.*

2 become aware

VERB + LEARN **be astonished to, be astounded to, be intrigued to, be surprised to** *I was surprised to learn that he was only 24.* **| be dismayed to, be saddened to**

PREP. **of** *We first learned of the problem from her school.*

learner *noun*

ADJ. **quick, slow** *She was a quick learner, and her German got better by the day.* **| advanced, intermediate** *a book for advanced learners of English* **| adult, older | young** *The book has been written with the interests of young learners in mind.* **| language | foreign**

LEARNER + NOUN **driver**

learning *noun*

1 **process of learning sth**

ADJ. **effective, successful** *a model for effective learning* **| rapid | independent | distance** (= by correspondence course) **| early** (= the education of very young children, often through play) **| higher** *institutions of higher learning* **| active, passive | formal, informal | rote | computer-assisted | language**

LEARNING + NOUN **curve** *The whole team has been on a steep learning curve since the project began.* **| environment** *The centre aims to provide a supportive learning environment.* **| experience, process | difficulty, disability** *severe learning difficulties*

PHRASES **a seat of learning**

2 **knowledge got from reading and studying**

ADJ. **great | book** *(old-fashioned)*

VERB + LEARNING **acquire, gain**

lease *noun*

ADJ. **long, long-term | short, short-term | ten-year, etc. | business, commercial | building, mining**

VERB + LEASE **have, hold** *They've got a lease with five years to run.* **| draw up | acquire, buy, enter into, get, negotiate, obtain, sign, take (on/out/up)** *She has taken out a new ten-year lease on the flat.* **| grant (sb), sell (sb)** *A freeholder may grant a lease of any duration.* **| renew | forfeit, surrender** *They moved out and the lease was surrendered.* **| cancel, terminate | take over | transfer**

LEASE + VERB **run** *The lease runs from April 19.* **| take effect | come up for renewal, expire, run out**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *a new clause in the lease* **| on a ~** *The company holds the building on a long lease.* **| under a/the ~** *Under the new lease, the rent would go up.* **| ~ of** *He took a lease of the premises.* **| ~ on** *The club has a 20-year lease on the property.*

PHRASES **a clause in a lease, a condition of a lease, the length/period/term of a lease, a provision in a lease, the terms of the lease**

leather *noun*

ADJ. **thick | thin | tough | soft | shiny | worn | genuine, real | imitation, synthetic | calf, chamois, etc. | morocco, patent | shoe**

VERB + LEATHER **tan | treat** *The leather has been treated with wax.* **| polish | be made from/in/(out) of** *a coat made from buffalo leather* **| bind sth in** *Each volume is bound in genuine leather.*

LEATHER + VERB **crack** *a cracked leather belt*

PREP. **in ~** (= made of leather) *I'm looking for a pair of boots in dark brown leather.* **| in ~s** (= wearing leather) *a biker in black leathers*

leave *noun*

1 **period of time when you do not go to work**

ADJ. **annual | paid, unpaid | extended, indefinite, weekend | compassionate, maternity, parental, paternity, sabbatical, sick, study | home, shore**

VERB + LEAVE **be entitled to, get, have** *How much annual leave do you get? I've still got some leave left this year.* **| go on, spend, take, use (up)** *She spent most of her leave with her family. I've still got some leave to use up.* **| save** *I'm saving all my leave to have a long holiday later in the year.* **| cancel** *When the war broke out all leave was cancelled.* **| give sb, grant sb | be due for, be owed | apply for**

LEAVE + NOUN **entitlement**

PREP. **on ~** *She's on leave until the end of the month.*

2 **official permission to do sth**

ADJ. **special**

VERB + LEAVE **ask, request** *He asked leave to absent himself for four days.* **| give sb, grant sb | obtain | refuse sb**

PREP. **by sb's ~** *The appeal can only be brought by leave of the trial judge.* **| with/without sb's ~** *No application may be made without the leave of the court.*

PHRASES **absent without leave, leave of absence, without (so much as) a by your leave** (= without asking permission)

leave *verb*

VERB + LEAVE **decide to | intend to, plan to, want to | be ready to** *We were all packed and ready to leave.* **| be about to, be going to** *Did you want something? I was just about to leave.* **| threaten to** *My secretary has threatened to leave.* **| attempt to, try to** *They were caught trying to leave the country.* **| refuse to | be compelled to, be forced to, be obliged to | ask sb to, order sb to** *They were being extremely rowdy and the manager had to ask them leave.* **| allow sb to, let sb** *I wanted to leave but they wouldn't let me.* **| enable sb to**

PREP. **for** *They left for Scotland this morning.*

lecture *noun*

1 **talk given to a group of people**

ADJ. **fascinating, interesting | boring | formal | illustrated | impromptu | guest** *A two-day event of guest lectures, seminars and workshops.* **| popular, public | annual | inaugural, introductory** *Professor Pearson gave the inaugural lecture in the new lecture theatre.* **| keynote, plenary | memorial**

QUANT. **course, programme, series**

VERB + LECTURE **deliver, give, present | hold, put on** *The society is putting on a series of lectures on the subject next term.* **| attend, go to, hear** (*formal*), **listen to | miss, skip | prepare, write**

LECTURE + NOUN **course, programme, series | hall, room, theatre | notes | tour | circuit** *a familiar figure on the international lecture circuit*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *She wasn't at the lecture.* **| during a/the ~** *The fire bell went during his lecture.* **| in a/the ~** *She referred to Professor Jones's work in her lecture on Shakespeare's imagery.* **| ~ by** *a lecture by Professor Snow* **| ~ about/on, ~ to** *a lecture to the Darwin Society*

PHRASES **a lecture entitled sth** *a lecture entitled 'How to Prevent Food Poisoning'* **| a lecture on the subject of sth**

2 **serious talk to sb about their behaviour**

ADJ. **little, long | severe, stern**

VERB + LECTURE **give sb, read sb** *She read me a stern lecture on ingratitude.* **| get** *I got a lecture from Dad about coming home on time.* **| take**

PREP. **~ about/on** *I don't take lectures from anyone on how to behave.* **| ~ from**

lecturer *noun*

ADJ. **principal, senior | assistant, junior | college, university | guest, visiting | English, physics, etc.**

PREP. **~ in** *a lecturer in German at Plymouth University* > Note at JOB

ledge *noun*

ADJ. **high | narrow, wide | cliff, mountain, window**

VERB + LEDGE **cling to** *The climbers were clinging to a ledge hundreds of feet above the sea.* **| be perched on**

LEDGE + VERB **go, run** *A narrow ledge runs across the northern face of the cliff.*

PREP. **along a/the ~** *I felt along the ledge at the top of the door.* **| on a/the ~** *The phone was perched precariously on the window ledge.*

left *noun*

1 **side**

ADJ. **extreme, far** *My dad's in the front row, on the extreme left of the picture.*

VERB + LEFT **turn to** *If you turn to your left you will see the parliament building.*

PREP. **from the ~** *The car came from the left.* **| on the/your ~** *The bank is on the left, just after the post office. As you go in the door, you'll see it on your left.* **| on the ~ of** *The car park is on the left of the library.* **| to the/your ~** *He looked to the left and then crossed.* **| to the ~ of** *My office is just to the left of the main door.*

PHRASES **from left to right; from right to left** *Arabic script reads from right to left.*

2 **the left: political groups**

ADJ. **extreme, far**

PREP. **of the ~** *In recent years the country has been ruled only by governments of the left.* **| on the ~** *They're both on the extreme left of the party.* **| to the ~** *The party has moved further to the left. He is somewhat to the left of the previous leader.*

leg *noun*

1 **part of the body**

ADJ. **left, right | front | back, hind | long | short, stumpy | beautiful, good, shapely | muscled, muscular, powerful, strong | skinny, spindly, thin | fat | bandy | hairy | bare | artificial, wooden | bad, stiff | broken, fractured | lame, withered** *He sat down with his lame leg outstretched.* **| tired** *She crossed the finish line on tired legs.* **| fresh** *They don't train the day before a match to ensure they have fresh legs.* **| outstretched**

VERB + LEG **bend | brace** *He put his back against the car, braced his legs and pushed.* **| straighten | cross** *I moved the chair away from the table so I could cross my legs.* **| splay, spread** *They made him put his hands on the police car and spread his legs.* **| extend, stretch (out)** *She stretched her legs under the table. (figurative) It was good to get out of the car and stretch our legs* (= walk about). **| lift** *The dog lifted its leg against the lamp post.* **| draw up, tuck under** *She sat with her legs drawn up underneath her.* **| kick | swing** *She swung her legs over the side of the bed and reached for her crutches.* **| entwine, tangle** *They gazed at each other, their legs entwined under the table.* **| break, injure | amputate** *She had her leg amputated below the knee.* **| shave**

LEG + VERB **move** *They ran together, their legs moving in unison.* **| flail, kick** *He jumped to avoid the flailing leg of the defender.* **| pump** *She started running, fat legs pumping.* **| bend | buckle, give way** *His legs buckled and he collapsed on the floor.* **| shake, tremble | dangle, hang, swing** *He sat with his legs dangling off the bridge.* **| ache**

LEG + NOUN **exercise | muscle | injury, pains, trouble, ulcer, wound | room** (also **legroom)** *You don't get much legroom on economy-class flights.*

PREP. **between the/your ~s** *The dog sloped off, its tail between its legs.* **| in the ~** *He was shot in the leg by a sniper.* **| on the/your ~** *I've got a big bruise on my leg.* **| on one ~** *Many birds are able to stand on one leg for hours at a time.*

PHRASES **(have, etc.) your leg in plaster** *He was wheeled out of the hospital with his leg in plaster.*

2 **of trousers**

ADJ. **trouser**

VERB + LEG **pull up, roll up** *He rolled up his trouser legs.* **| roll down**

PHRASES **long/short in the leg** *These jeans are too long in the leg.*

3 **of a journey/race**

ADJ. **first, second, etc. | final, last | anchor** *The fastest runner often runs the anchor leg* (= the last one) *of a relay.* **| outbound | homeward**

PREP. **on the … ~** *At last we were on the homeward leg of our journey.*

legacy *noun*

1 **money/property**

ADJ. **generous, large | small**

VERB + LEGACY **bequeath (sb), leave (sb) | get, receive** *He received a large legacy from his uncle.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She left her the money in a legacy.* **| ~ from** *a legacy from my old teacher*

PHRASES **heir to a legacy** *She is the heir to a legacy of £1 million.*

2 **result of previous events**

ADJ. **enduring | historical** *These problems have arisen as a result of historical legacies.* **| bitter, grim**

VERB + LEGACY **bequeath (sb), leave (sb), leave behind** *the enduring legacy bequeathed by the war years*

PREP. **~ from** *Such attitudes are a legacy from colonial times.*

legal *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **completely, perfectly** *It is perfectly legal to charge extra for these services.*

legality *noun*

ADJ. **doubtful, dubious**

VERB + LEGALITY **challenge, question** *Her lawyer is challenging the legality of the court order.* **| assert, recognize, uphold** *The government does not recognize the legality of this court.*

PHRASES **doubt/doubts about the legality of sth**

legend *noun*

1 **well-known story**

ADJ. **ancient | Greek, Roman, etc. | local**

VERB + LEGEND **become, pass into** *The story of how she was rescued has already passed into legend.* **| tell (sb)** *He told us the legend of the ghostly horseman.*

LEGEND + VERB **live on** *The legend of his supernatural origins lives on.*

PREP. **according to ~** *According to ancient legend, the river is a goddess.* **| in (a/the) ~** *There have always been stories of human giants in Celtic legend and mythology.* **| ~ about** *legends about the Vikings* **| ~ of** *The story is part of the ancient legend of King Arthur.*

PHRASES **legend has it that …** *Legend has it that the Bridge of Sighs got its name from the cries of prisoners being led across it.* **| myths and legends** *the myths and legends of Mexico* **| the subject of legend** *The unusual shell has long been the subject of legend.*

2 **famous person/event**

ADJ. **living** *pop stars who become living legends* **| basketball, motoring, racing, sporting, etc.**

legible *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **clearly, easily** *Her handwriting was clearly legible.* **| perfectly | barely, scarcely**

PREP. **to** *The price must be legible to a purchaser.*

legislation *noun*

ADJ. **parliamentary | draft | fresh, further, new | effective, tough | complex | controversial | unworkable** *The police think that such legislation would be unworkable.* **| knee-jerk** *The terrorist attack prompted knee-jerk legislation.* **| anti-abortion, anti-discrimination, employment, environmental, financial, gun control, health, housing, social, etc.**

QUANT. **piece** *a major piece of legislation*

VERB + LEGISLATION **need, require | call for, propose** *They are calling for tough legislation to tackle this problem.* **| draft, draw up | bring forward, initiate** *Anyone has the right to initiate legislation in Parliament by means of a private bill.* **| approve, enact, introduce, pass** *Congress approved legislation which outlawed the sale of the drug.* **| adopt** *Member states may not adopt legislation contrary to EU law.* **| block, delay** *The reform will make it more difficult for MPs to block legislation.* **| amend | repeal | comply with** *Companies have until December 31 to comply with the new legislation.*

LEGISLATION + VERB **come into effect, come into force** *New legislation on drink-driving comes into effect at the end of the year.*

PREP. **under ~** *This will be a criminal offence under the new legislation.* **| ~ against** *They are planning the introduction of legislation against sex discrimination.* **| ~ on** *Legislation on this issue is urgently needed.*

legislature *noun*

ADJ. **highest, supreme | bicameral, unicameral | 109-member, etc. | elected | standing | central, federal, national, provincial, state**

VERB + LEGISLATURE **be elected to** *She is the youngest woman to be elected to the national legislature.*

LEGISLATURE + VERB **comprise sth, consist of sth** *The legislature comprises a 212-member Chamber of Deputies elected for a four-year term.* **| pass sth** *The legislature passed a law to prohibit the dumping of nuclear waste.* **| vote** *The legislature voted narrowly to table a motion of no-confidence in the government.*

legitimate *adj*

VERBS **be, seem | consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as**

ADV. **entirely, perfectly, quite | apparently**

leisure *noun*

VERB + LEISURE **have** *We have more leisure than our parents had.*

LEISURE + NOUN **hours, time | activities, interests, pursuits | centre, complex | facilities | equipment, goods | industry**

lemon *noun*

ADJ. **fresh**

QUANT. **slice, wedge** *Garnish the fish with wedges of lemon.*

VERB + LEMON **squeeze** *Squeeze a quarter of a lemon over the fish.* **| slice | garnish sth with**

LEMON + NOUN **tree | pip | peel, rind, zest | juice** > Special page at FRUIT

lend *verb*

ADV. **kindly** *She very kindly lent me her bicycle.*

VERB + LEND **be prepared to, be willing to | refuse to, be unwilling to** *The bank was unwilling to lend him the money.* **| persuade sb to**

PREP. **to** *I've lent my car to George for the weekend.*

lender *noun*

ADJ. **big, large, leading, major** *The bank is the largest mortgage lender in the country.* **| money, mortgage**

PREP. **~ to** *The bank was an important lender to the British government.*

length *noun*

1 distance from one end to the other

ADJ. **entire, full, maximum, whole** *There is a maximum length of 2,500 words. The queue stretched the whole length of the High Street.* | **great** *a ditch of great length and width* | **medium** | **overall, total**

VERB + LENGTH **estimate, measure** *He measured the length and width of the table.* | **have** *The vehicle has an overall length of 12 feet.* | **grow to, reach** *These fish can reach a length of over two metres.* | **double in, increase in** | **cut sth to** *Measure the size of the window and cut the cloth to length.* | **drive, run, swim, travel, walk, etc.** *The fence runs the length of the footpath.*

PREP. **along the ~ of** *There were coloured lights along the whole length of the street.* | **in ~** *The pipe was two metres in length.*

PHRASES **at arm's length** *He has to hold newspapers at arm's length to focus on the print.* | **double, twice, three times, half, etc. the length of sth** *The queen bee is twice the length of a worker bee.*

2 amount of time that sth lasts

ADJ. **considerable, great, inordinate** | **reasonable**

VERB + LENGTH **cut, reduce, shorten** | **increase**

LENGTH + VERB **increase** | **decrease**

PREP. **at ~** *He told me at length about his new job.* | **in ~** *Each lesson was an hour in length.*

PHRASES **length of time** *They complained about the inordinate length of time they had to wait.*

3 length of a swimming pool

VERB + LENGTH **do, swim** *I did 20 lengths today.*

lengthy *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, very** *Agreement was finally reached after very lengthy discussions.* **| fairly, quite, rather, reasonably, relatively, somewhat** *After a fairly lengthy delay, we were able to continue.*

leniency *noun*

ADJ. **great** *Judges are advised to show greater leniency towards first-time offenders.* **| excessive, undue**

VERB + LENIENCY **show | appeal for, beg for**

PREP. **~ for** *She begged for leniency for her son.* **| ~ of** *the undue leniency of the sentence* **| ~ to** *Police offer leniency to criminals in return for information.* **| ~ towards** *Let's hope the judge shows leniency towards her.*

PHRASES **a plea for leniency** *Even the victim's family made a plea for leniency on behalf of the accused.*

lenient *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **extremely, very | quite, relatively | excessively, unduly** *The appeal judge agreed that the original sentence was unduly lenient.*

PREP. **with** *The police are sometimes more lenient with female offenders.*

lens *noun*

ADJ. **strong, thick** *She wears glasses with very thick lenses.* **| coloured, tinted | contact | optical, spectacle | camera | fish-eye, long, long-focus, magnifying, telephoto, telescopic, wide-angle, zoom** *a long-lens shot of a rare bird The photograph was taken using a zoom lens.*

LENS + NOUN **cap** *I took the lens cap off my camera and waited for a good shot.*

PREP. **through a/the ~** *Put your hand in front of your right lens and just look through your left lens.*

leprosy *noun*

VERB + LEPROSY **have, suffer from | contract**

LEPROSY + NOUN **bacillus | patient, sufferer, victim** > Special page at ILLNESS

lesbian *noun*

ADJ. **butch | femme, lipstick**

VERB + LESBIAN **come out as** *She came out as a lesbian in her teens.*

LESBIAN + NOUN **icon** *The singer has become a lesbian icon.*

lessen *verb*

ADV. **considerably, greatly, significantly** *Eating a good diet significantly lessens the risk of heart disease.* **| gradually** *Time had gradually lessened the pain of her grief.*

VERB + LESSEN **begin to** *The noise began to lessen.* **| try to | tend to** *Too much background detail tends to lessen the impact of the central image.* **| help (to)** *Regular exercise can help to lessen the pain.*

lesson *noun*

1 period of teaching or learning

ADJ. **good, interesting | boring | individual | private | driving, English, geography, maths, piano, swimming, etc.**

VERB + LESSON **attend, go to, have, take** *I go to Italian lessons at the local college. We had a history lesson followed by a double maths lesson. I'm taking driving lessons at the moment.* **| give (sb), offer (sb), provide, take, teach** *She gives singing lessons. They're offering free lessons in computing. I had to take a biology lesson this afternoon because the biology teacher was away. He doesn't teach very many lessons these days.* **| get** *Pupils get lessons on how to organize their study time.* **| prepare** *The trouble is that teachers don't prepare their lessons carefully enough.* **| skip** *He got into trouble for skipping lessons.*

PREP. **during a/the ~** *No talking was allowed during the lesson.* **| in a/the ~** *You can't expect to learn all there is to know about the subject in a 45-minute lesson.* **| ~ about** *a lesson about the Civil War* **| ~ in** *He took lessons in Thai cookery.* **| ~ on** *a lesson on the Roman Empire* **| ~ with** *They've got a lesson with Mrs Evans at two o'clock.*

2 sth learnt through experience

ADJ. **important, salutary, useful, valuable | bitter, hard, painful** *It's a hard lesson to learn.* **| clear**

VERB + LESSON **draw, learn** *What lessons can we draw from this unfortunate experience?* **| teach sb** *It taught me some valuable lessons about working with other people.*

PREP. **~ from** *There are important lessons to be learnt from this mistake.* **| ~ in** *I learned a lesson in harsh economics when I was made redundant.*

lethal *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove**

ADV. **absolutely** *All these knives are absolutely lethal.* **| pretty | potentially** *It was a potentially lethal mixture of drugs.*

PREP. **to** *The pesticide is lethal to all insect life.*

lethargy *noun*

VERB + LETHARGY **be overcome by, feel, suffer from** *She was suddenly overcome by lethargy.* **| sink into | drag/stir yourself out of, overcome, shake off** *He felt that he had to drag himself out of his lethargy and begin to write.*

LETHARGY + VERB **creep over/through sb, overtake sb** *After the meal, I could feel lethargy overtaking me.*

PHRASES **a feeling of lethargy** *trying to shake off the feeling of lethargy*

letter *noun*

1 **written/printed message**

ADJ. **lengthy, long | brief, short | ten-page, etc. | rambling | countless, endless, numerous** *She received countless letters of support while in jail.* | **occasional** *Apart from the occasional letter, they had not been in touch for years.* | **incoming** *The porter distributes incoming letters to the offices.* | **urgent | airmail | handwritten | anonymous | formal, official | business | personal | confidential, private | open, public** *The editor published an open letter to the prime minister.* | **circular | chain | form, standard | specimen | accompanying, covering, explanatory** *The conditions are explained in the accompanying letter. Send your CV with a covering letter.* | **thank-you** *I wrote my uncle a thank-you letter as soon as I opened the present.* | **congratulatory | warning | rejection** *I've had job interviews and received ten rejection letters.* | resignation | suicide | fan | **love | affectionate, intimate |** charming, delightful | chatty, **cheerful, friendly | heartfelt, impassioned** *She wrote an impassioned letter to her local newspaper to complain about the new road.* | **courteous, polite | apologetic | angry, rude, strong, strongly-worded, threatening | indignant | critical | frank | poison pen** *He had been sending poison pen letters to his neighbours, hoping to make them move away.*

VERB + LETTER **draft, write** *drafting an angry letter to the newspaper* | **read | get, have, receive** *I haven't had a letter from her for ages.* | **post, send | fax | deliver | forward** *The letter was forwarded from my old address.* | **register | seal | open | acknowledge, answer, reply to, respond to** *I was angry that they didn't even acknowledge my letter.* | **address** *The letter was addressed to me.* | **sign | publish** *The newspaper refused to publish the letter.*

LETTER + VERB **arrive, come, reach sb** *I hope my last letter has reached you.* | **be dated …** *The letter is dated 7 July.* | **cross** *Our letters crossed in the post.* | **be lost, go astray | announce sth, ask (sb) sth, begin, start (off)** *The letter started off by thanking us for our offer.* | **continue, go on** *His letter wen* | conclude, end *The letter concluded with a threat of possible legal action.* | **contain sth** *The letter contained information that only the killer could know.* | **enclose sth** *The charity received an anonymous letter enclosing a large cheque.* | **appear** *A letter headed 'Advertising Mania' appeared in the paper.*

LETTER + NOUN **writing | box** *The postman put a bundle of letters through the letter* *box.* **| bomb**

PREP. **by ~** *Please reply by letter.* **| in a/the ~** *In your letter of 5 June …* **| ~ about/ concerning/regarding, ~ from, ~ of** *a letter of application/apology* **| ~ to** *a letter to the editor*

2 **sign that represents a sound in a language**

ADJ. **big, large | block, capital, upper-case** *Fill in the form in block letters.* **| lower-case, small | bold | initial** *The company's name is made from the initial letters of his children's names.* **| double** *Words with double letters, such as ‘accommodation’, are commonly misspelt.* **| silent** *words such as ‘debt’ and ‘half’, which contain silent letters*

PREP. **in … ~s** *His name was written in large white letters over the doorway.*

PHRASES **the letters of the alphabet**

lettuce *noun*

ADJ. **crisp, crunchy | limp | chopped, shredded | cos, Iceberg, etc.**

QUANT. **head** *You need one whole head of lettuce for this salad.*

VERB + LETTUCE **eat, have** *All she had was a tomato and some lettuce.* **| wash**

LETTUCE + NOUN **leaf**

PHRASES **on a bed of lettuce** > Special page at FOOD

leukaemia *noun*

ADJ. **childhood**

VERB + LEUKAEMIA **have, suffer from | contract, develop | diagnose | treat sb for**

LEUKAEMIA + NOUN **case, patient, sufferer, victim | research | cluster** *The newspapers are full of stories of leukaemia clusters near nuclear establishments.* > Special page at ILLNESS

level *adj.*

1 **with no part higher than any other**

VERBS **be, look, seem | get sth, keep sth** *Make sure you get the shelf level before screwing it in. Keep the pot level, or you'll spill the coffee.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely** *The floor has got to be absolutely level.* **| approximately, more or less**

2 **at the same height/position as sth**

VERBS **be | come, draw** *As they reached the final bend, Graham drew level and threatened too overtake him.*

ADV. **almost**

PREP. **with** *The top of the water came level with her chin.*

level *noun*

1 amount/size/number

ADJ. **high, record, significant, substantial** *Industrial output has reached record levels.* **| increasing, rising | excessive** *Excessive levels of lead were found in the water.* **| low | decreasing, falling | varying** *keen amateurs who work hard, with varying levels of success* **| generous** *a generous level of financial support for the arts* **| permitted, recommended, required** *permitted levels of chemical pollutants* **| acceptable, adequate, necessary, normal, realistic, reasonable, safe** *an acceptable level of risk Her blood pressure has returned to its normal level.* **| dangerous, unacceptable | worst** *the worst level of business failure since 1997* **| noise, pollution, radiation | crime | blood-sugar, cholesterol, hormone, etc. | stress**

VERB + LEVEL **achieve, reach** *They have achieved higher levels of efficiency. Crime has reached its highest level ever.* **| remain at** *She predicts that fuel prices will remain at current levels.* **| improve, increase, raise | maintain | bring down, control, decrease, keep down, lower, reduce | change | set** *Emissions are well below the levels set by the World Health Authority.* **| exceed** *There will be stiff penalties if companies exceed these levels of pollution.*

LEVEL + VERB **go up, rise, soar | fall, go down, plummet | change, vary**

PREP. **above a/the ~** *Mortgage rates were 10% above their current level.* **| at a/the ~** *Rents will be kept at this level for another year.* **| below a/the ~** *Radiation is well below the permitted level.*

2 stage of progress/standard

ADJ. **basic, elementary, low** *The teaching is at quite a basic level.* **| entry** *They have a good range of entry-level computers for beginners.* **| intermediate | advanced, high** *Her illness has reached an advanced level.* **| degree | difficulty** *The difficulty level of the exercises in the book varies widely.* **| fitness** *a sport suitable for people of all fitness levels*

VERB + LEVEL **attain, reach** *students who have reached the intermediate level* **| complete, do, take** *You need to do all three levels to qualify as a canteen supervisor.*

PREP. **above a/the ~** *His English is way above the level of the other students.* **| at a/the ~** *students at intermediate level She has played tennis at a high level.* **| below a/the ~** *The book is not suitable for students below degree level.*

3 grade in an organization or structure

ADJ. **high, upper** *the upper levels of the civil service* **| low | senior | global, international, local, national, regional | grass-roots** *The party needs to win support at grass-roots level.* **| ministerial | board** *These decisions are made at board level.*

VERB + LEVEL **reach, rise to** *He rose to the level of general manager.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *At the local level there's a lot to be said for the plan.* **| on a/the ~** *The thing has got to be organized on an international level.*

4 way of considering sth

ADJ. **conscious, unconscious** *At a conscious level, I was quite satisfied with my life.* **| deep | superficial | detailed** *We probably need to look at this problem at a more detailed level.* **| general | practical | theoretical | political**

PREP. **at a/the ~, on a/the ~** *On a superficial level everything appears to be in order, but at a deeper level you an see that there's a lot wrong.*

5 height

ADJ. **high, low | ground, sea, water** *the problem of rising sea levels* **| eye** *a shelf at eye level*

VERB + LEVEL **adjust, change, lower, raise** *They are going to raise the level of the banks to prevent flooding.*

PREP. **above a/the ~** *200m above sea level* **| at a/the ~** *The plane was flying at a very low level.* **| below a/the ~** *below the level of the cloud* **| on a ~ with** *On the second floor you are on a level with the treetops.* **| to a/the ~** *The water rose to the level of the ground floor windows.*

PHRASES **a change in/of level**

6 **floor in a building**

ADJ. **ground, lower | higher, top, upper**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *Are we on the right level for the restaurant?* **| to a/the ~** *Take the lift to Level Four.*

lever *noun*

1 **handle for operating a machine**

ADJ. **brake, control, gear**

VERB + LEVER **move, operate, position, press, pull, push, put, release, set, throw** *When the lever is operated, the machine sews backwards. To release the brake, pull the lever towards you. Push the gear lever into first. The machine will stop immediately once the lever is released. Set all three levers to the 0 position. He threw a lever and the engines roared to life.*

PREP. **by (means of) a ~** *The machine is operated by means of* a *lever.*

PHRASES **the position of the lever**

2 **means of achieving sth**

ADJ. **powerful, useful**

VERB + LEVER **act as, be, give sb, provide (sb with), serve as | use sth as**

PREP. **~ against** *If this allegation is true, it will give us a useful lever against him.* **| ~ for** *This could serve as a powerful lever for peace.*

leverage *noun*

1 **force**

ADJ. **enough, sufficient | extra | maximum**

VERB + LEVERAGE **have** *He tried to push the door open, but he didn't have sufficient leverage.* **| gain, get, obtain | apply, exert** *Position the piece of wood so that maximum leverage can be applied.* **| provide | increase**

2 **influence**

ADJ. **economic, political**

VERB + LEVERAGE **have | gain** *They are determined to gain more political leverage.* **| give sb**

liability *noun*

1 **responsibility**

ADJ. **full | legal**

VERB + LIABILITY **have** *They have no legal liability for damage to customers' possessions.* **| accept, acknowledge, admit, assume | deny**

PREP. **~ for** *They have denied liability for the accident.*

2 **liabilities: money owed**

ADJ. **substantial | financial, tax** *an assessment of the company's financial liabilities*

VERB + LIABILITY **have | take on, take over** *He wants to know the precise amount of the liabilities he is taking over.* **| cover, discharge, meet** *There is enough money to cover existing liabilities.* **| reduce**

PREP. **~ to** *The company has liabilities to its employees.*

liable *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain | make sb, render sb** *Failure to provide insurance rendered him liable to prosecution.* **| find sb, hold sb** *They could be found liable for the entire amount.*

ADV. **strictly | fully | potentially | personally | jointly, severally** *(law) Partners are jointly and severally* (= together and individually) *liable for a partnership's debts.* **| vicariously** *Under this rule, if Y is employed by X, X will be vicariously liable for the actions of Y.* **| criminally, financially, legally**

PREP. **for** *She's fully liable for the company's debts.*

liaise *verb*

ADV. **closely, directly**

PREP. **between** *Her job is to liaise between the school and the home.* **| with** *The tax office liaises closely with our department on such matters.*

liaison *noun*

1 **communication**

ADJ. **close, effective, good | poor | community, customer | military**

VERB + LIAISON **maintain** *We maintained a close liaison with the trade union.* **| establish** *We are hoping to establish better customer liaison.* **| improve**

LIAISON + NOUN **committee, group, unit | officer | work**

PREP. **in ~ with** *It's important that we work in close liaison with other charities in this field.* **| ~ between** *good liaison between management and staff* **| ~ with** *She is responsible for liaison with researchers at other universities.*

2 **sexual relationship**

ADJ. **romantic, sexual | adulterous**

VERB + LIAISON **have** *She was having a romantic liaison with her husband's best friend.* **| form**

PREP. **~ with**

liar *noun*

ADJ. **accomplished, good** *She's an accomplished liar?they believed every word she said.* **| bad, poor | big, terrible** *She's the biggest liar I've ever known.* **| compulsive, habitual, pathological**

VERB + LIAR **call sb** *Are you calling me a liar?*

libel *noun*

ADJ. **alleged | criminal, seditious**

VERB + LIBEL **sue (sb) for | claim | deny**

LIBEL + NOUN **action, case, proceedings, suit | writ | law, lawyer | damages**

PREP. **~ against** *He has issued a writ for libel against the radio star Michael Clery.* > Note at CRIME(for more verbs)

liberal *adj.*

1 respecting other opinions

VERBS **be**

ADV. **remarkably, very | fairly, quite, relatively** *His attitudes are quite liberal.*

2 in politics

VERBS **be**

ADV. **comparatively, relatively** *comparatively liberal in trade matters* **| broadly, essentially** *a broadly liberal policy programme*

2 generous

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **very**

PREP. **with** *She's very liberal with her advice!*

liberal *nou*n

ADJ. **leading | bourgeois, middle-class | old-fashioned, traditional | radical | market | economic, political, social**

LIBERAL + NOUN **leader, party**

liberalism *nou*n

ADJ. **radical | bourgeois | laissez-faire | market | economic, political, social**

liberation *noun*

ADJ. **animal, gay, national, personal, sexual, women's**

VERB + LIBERATION **achieve**

LIBERATION + NOUN **movement**

PREP. **~ by** *the liberation of the capital by allied forces* **| ~ from** *the struggle for liberation from colonial rule*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of liberation** *Up in the mountains we had the most wonderful sense of liberation.* **| a fight/struggle for liberation, a war of liberation**

liberty *noun*

ADJ. **great | complete | basic** *a citizens' charter which gives people basic civil liberties* **| civil, individual, personal, political, religious**

VERB + LIBERTY **enjoy, have | demand, fight for | win** *The city won its liberty in the sixteenth century.* **| lose** *If found guilty, she is in danger of losing her liberty.* **| defend, protect, safeguard** *The law should protect the liberty of the individual.* **| threaten** *The new legislation threatens individual liberty.* **| erode, restrict** *Our personal liberty is being eroded.* **| deny, deprive sb of, destroy | allow sb, give sb** *The system allows us complete liberty to do the task as we like.*

PREP. **at ~** *The escaped prisoner has been at liberty for five days.* **| ~ for** *demanding greater liberty for women* **| ~ from** *liberty from the abuse of police power*

PHRASES **an infringement of liberty, loss of liberty, a threat to liberty**

librarian *noun*

ADJ. **professional, qualified | chief, head, senior | assistant | branch, country | academic, public, reference | college, school, university** > Note at JOB(for verbs)

library *noun*

1 building

ADJ. **large, small | excellent, good | public | private | branch, county, local, national, regional | mobile** *A number of councils operate mobile libraries.* **| well-stocked | circulating** *(historical),* **lending, subscription** *In 1784 he established his first circulating library.* **| reference | general | special, specialist | academic, research | college, departmental, school, university | copyright** *It is a copyright library and receives three copies of all books published in Britain.*

VERB + LIBRARY **have** *The school has an excellent library.* **| go to, use, visit** *How often do you go to the library?* **| borrow sth from, get/take sth out of** *I got this very interesting book out of the library.* **| return sth to, take sth back to** *Do you have any books to take back to the library?* **| be available at/from** *Do you know about the other services available at your local library?* **| have access to** *Everyone in the country should have access to a lending library.*

LIBRARY + VERB **have sth, hold sth** *The library has an extensive collection of books on French history.*

LIBRARY + NOUN **book | shelf | catalogue | ticket | assistant, staff | user | facilities, provision, resources, service** *the need to improve library provision* **| skills** *teaching library skills to schoolchildren*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *a holiday programme for children at the local library* **| in a/the ~** *I've been reading newspapers in the library.*

2 collection of books, etc.

ADJ. **considerable, extensive | fine, impressive, magnificent, valuable | personal | film, music, photographic, picture, video**

VERB + LIBRARY **have, possess** *The family possessed an extensive library.* **| amass, build (up)** *She had built up an impressive library of art books.* **| add to**

PREP. **~ of** *a personal library of over 1,000 volumes*

licence *noun*

ADJ. **valid | special | car, driving | marriage | export, gaming, import, operating, trade, trading** *The government is currently granting no operating licences to foreig* **| television/TV | gun | software, user** *The CD-ROM comes with a single-user licence.* **| entertainment, music** *The bar was refused a music licence.* **| hotel, refreshment, restaurant**

VERB + LICENCE **have, hold** *You have to have a licence to sell beer. Applicants must hold a valid driving licence.* **| buy, gain, get, obtain, win** *You can buy a TV licence at the post office. She gained her private pilot's licence. I got my driving licence when I was eighteen. The company has won the licence to run trains from the south coast to London.* **| apply for, make an application for | grant (sb), issue | refuse sb | revoke, take away** *He's had his licence taken away.* **| renew | lose** *She lost her driving licence when she was caught drink-driving.*

LICENCE + VERB **expire, run out** *The licence expires at the end of the year.*

LICENCE + NOUN **fee, holder**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *All these details are specified in the licence.* **| under a/the ~** *The weapons were exported under a special export licence.* **| under ~** *They are Italian trains, but they will be built in Britain under licence.* **| ~ for** *a licence for software manufacture* **| ~ from** *a licence from the Performing Rights Society*

PHRASES **the holder of a licence**

lid *noun*

1 removable top

ADJ. **airtight, close-fitting, sealed, tight-fitting, tight** *Choose a dish with a tight-fitting lid.* **| hinged | box, case, coffin, dustbin, piano, saucepan, etc.**

VERB + LID **lift, open, prise off, raise, remove, take off** *She lifted the lid of the box. We managed to prise off the lid with a tyre lever.* **| close, put down, put on, replace, screw down, screw on, shut** *I poured some water and screwed the lid back on the bottle. The coffin lid had been screwed down.* **| keep on** *Keep the lid on the pan until the liquid comes to the boil.*

PREP. **on the ~** *His name was on the lid.*

2 lids: eyelids

ADJ. **closed, drooping, half-closed, half-open, heavy, hooded, lowered, narrowed** *She felt the tears burning against her closed lids.*

VERB + LID **close, lower** *She saw James walk in and hastily lowered her lids.* **| lift, open** *She lifted her lids and found him looking at her.*

LID + VERB **droop** *Heavy lids drooped over her eyes.*

PREP. **behind … ~** *She could still see the light flickering behind her closed lids.* **| beneath … ~** *She glanced at him occasionally from beneath lowered lids.* **| through … ~** *He was watching her through hooded lids.*

lie *noun*

ADJ. **big, monstrous, (whopping) great** *He told a whopping great lie!* **| little | complete, downright, outright** *That's a downright lie!* **| white** *A little white lie is surely excusable.* **| deliberate | barefaced, blatant, obvious, transparent | elaborate** *a web of elaborate lies*

VERB + LIE **tell (sb) | believe, swallow** *How could she swallow such a blatant lie?* **| live** *He lived* a *lie for thirty years, pretending to be the faithful husband of two different women living in two different towns.*

LIE + NOUN **detector**

PHRASES **a pack/tissue/web of lies**

lie *verb*

1 **be in a flat position**

ADV. **down** *He was lying down on the bed.*

PREP. **on** *She lay on her stomach.*

PHRASES **lie asleep/awake** *I used to lie awake at night worrying about it.* | **lie face down/prostrate** *lying face down in the mud* | **lie flat** *lying flat on the floor* | **lie motionless/still** *Lie still while I put the bandage on.* | **lie sprawled** *She lay sprawled on the sofa.*

2 **say sth that is not true**

ADV. **convincingly** *He was unable to lie convincingly.* | **easily**

PREP. **about** *She lied about her age.* | **to** *Don't lie to me.*

lieutenant *noun* > Note at RANK

life *noun*

1 living things

ADJ. **intelligent** *Is there intelligent life on other planets?* **| animal, bird, human, insect, marine, plant**

LIFE + NOUN **form | cycle**

2 existence

VERB + LIFE **lose** *He lost his life in an air crash.* **| bring sb back to, restore sb to | cling to, fight for** *She clung to life for several weeks.* **| risk** *She risked her life for the sake of the children.* **| save** *a drug that will save lives* **| spare** *She begged the soldiers to spare her son's life.* **| give, lay down, sacrifice | claim, cost, end, take** *The crash claimed 43 lives. His foolishness almost cost him his life. She took her own life.* **| start** *(figurative) The restaurant started life as a cinema.*

LIFE + VERB **be lost** *No lives were lost in the accident.*

LIFE + NOUN **assurance, insurance**

PHRASES **an attempt on sb's life** *There have been three attempts on the president's life.* **| in fear for/of your life** *Witnesses are living in fear for their life after giving evidence against the gang.* **| life after death** *Do you believe in life after death?* **| loss of life** *The plane crashed with heavy loss of life.* **| a matter of life and death** *(figurative) These talks are a matter of life and death for the factory.* **| the right to life** *anti-abortionists campaigning for the right to life* **| signs of life** *The driver showed no signs of life.*

3 period between birth and death

ADJ. **long, short | entire, whole | early | adult | later** *In later life he took up writing.* **| past, previous** *He never discussed the unhappinesses of his past life. I think I may have been an animal in a previous life.* **| future, next | working** *He was a miner all his working life.*

VERB + LIFE **go through, live, spend** *She went through life always wanting what she* *couldn't get. He spent his whole life in Cornwall.* | **end** *He ended his life a happy man.* | **shorten** | **prolong** | **dedicate, devote** *He devoted his life to the education of deaf children.*

LIFE + NOUN **history, story** | **membership** | **imprisonment, sentence** | **expectancy, span** (also **lifespan)** *Japanese people have a very high life expectancy. the lifespan of a mouse*

PREP. **for ~** *She thought marriage should be for life.* | **in your ~** *for the first time in her life* | **throughout your ~** *Throughout her life she was dogged by loneliness.*

PHRASES **all your life** *I've known her all my life.* | **at sb's time of life** ***At his time of life he should be starting to take things easy.*** | **the end of your life** ***Her paintings became more obscure towards the end of her life.*** | **late in life** ***She discovered jazz quite late in life.*** | **the … of your life** ***I had the fright of my life when I saw the snake in my bed. He met the love of his life at college.*** | **a phase/stage in/of (your) life** ***She sensed she was entering a new phase in her life.*** | **the prime of life** ***You're still in the prime of life.*** | **the remainder/rest of your life** ***He'll be haunted by the crash for the rest of his life.***

4 activity in the world

ADJ. **daily, day-to-day, everyday** | **real** ***a real-life drama*** | **modern** | **personal, private** ***She did not tolerate press intrusion into her private life.*** | **inner** ***Only his wife had access to his inner life.*** | **family, married** | **social** | **love, sex** | **public** ***His fame was so sudden that he was unprepared for public life.*** | **academic, business, cultural, economic, intellectual, political, professional, school** | **night (also nightlife)** ***What's the nightlife like in the town?*** | **city, village, etc.**

VERB + LIFE **build, rebuild** ***He built his whole life around his children. She is still reb***

PHRASES **an attitude to life, an outlook on life, a philosophy/view of life** ***I've always had a fairly optimistic outlook on life.*** | **a love of life** ***He always had a great love of life.*** | **a man/woman in your life** ***There has only been one woman in his life.*** | **see sth of life** ***I wanted to see something of life before I settled down.*** | **the … side of life** ***His time in London was his first glimpse of the seamier side of life.*** | **want sth from/in/out of life** *They both seem to want the same things out of life.*

5 way of living

ADJ. **good, happy | lonely, miserable, sad, unhappy | hard | easy | active, busy, hectic | exciting | full | peaceful, quiet | normal, ordinary | healthy | sheltered | double** *He had been leading a double life, married to two women.*

VERB + LIFE **have, lead, live** *She leads a busy social life.* **| enjoy | change** *Learning meditation changed her life.* **| dominate, take over** *He never let his work dominate his life.* **| ruin** *He ruined his life through drinking.*

PHRASES **build/make/start a new life** *They went to Australia to start a new life.* **| enjoy/live life to the full** *He always believed in living life to the full.* **| the high life** *enjoying the high life in the smartest hotels and restaurants of New York* **| live a life of …** *They're living a life of luxury in the Bahamas.* **| a/the pace of life** *The pace of life is much gentler on the island.* **| the quality of life** *He gave up his high-flying job and now enjoys a better quality of life.* **| a way of life** *She loved the Spanish way of life and immediately felt at home there.*

6 liveliness

VERB + LIFE **come to** *The city only comes to life at night.* **| breathe, bring sth to, inject** *They need some new, younger staff to breathe some life into the company.* **| burst/hum/teem with** *a child bursting with life*

PHRASES **full of life** *It's nice to see an old man still so full of life.*

lifeboat *noun*

ADJ. **inshore, offshore**

VERB + LIFEBOAT **get into, man, take to** *The crew took to the lifeboats.* **| call out** *The lifeboat was called out five times in the January storms.* **| launch**

LIFEBOAT + VERB **be stationed …** *The lifeboat is stationed just along the coast from here.*

LIFEBOAT + NOUN **service | crew | house, shed, station**

PREP. **aboard/on board a/the ~** *two survivors on board the lifeboat* **| in/on a/the ~** *There was only room for ten people in the lifeboat.*

lifeless *adj.*

1 **dead**

VERBS **appear, be, lie, look** *She lay lifeless in the snow.*

ADV. **completely | almost, nearly** *His body was limp and almost lifeless.* **| apparently, seemingly** *She lay there, apparently lifeless.*

2 **without living things**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **completely** *a time when they earth was completely lifeless*

3 **dull/without interest**

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **completely | rather** *The acting was dull and rather lifeless.*

lifeline *noun*

1 **rope**

VERB + LIFELINE **throw sb | catch, cling to** *He clung to the lifeline and the woman pulled him towards the bank.*

2 **important help**

ADJ. **real, vital** *Visits from loved ones are a vital lifeline for prisoners.* **| financial** *The state pension is their financial lifeline.*

VERB + LIFELINE **give sb, hold out, offer (sb), provide (sb with), throw sb (out)** *The organization provides a real lifeline for many women in poverty. He threw me a lifeline when he offered me a job.* **| have** *With this one unexpected victory, the club now has a lifeline.*

lifestyle *noun*

ADJ. **healthy, unhealthy | active | sedentary | busy, hectic | stressful | affluent, comfortable, expensive, extravagant, glamorous, lavish | modern | nomadic**

VERB + LIFESTYLE **change** *She had to change her lifestyle and eating habits.* **| enjoy, have, lead** *They enjoy a very comfortable lifestyle.* **| adopt** *We want them to adopt a healthier lifestyle.*

PHRASES **a change in lifestyle**

lifetime *noun*

ADJ. **long** *wisdom gained in the course of a long lifetime* | **short** *A lifetime is too short for all the great books there are!* | **entire, whole**

VERB + LIFETIME **devote, spend** *He devoted a lifetime to working with disabled children.* | **take (sb)** *It took a whole lifetime to solve the mystery of her father's disappearance.* | **last (sb)** *This watch should last you a lifetime.* | **seem (like)** *It seems a lifetime since we first met.*

LIFETIME + NOUN **achievement** *The veteran director won a lifetime achievement award.* | **employment, income** *Payments are based on expected lifetime income.* | **lifetime's experience, lifetime's work**

PREP. **after a ~** *After a lifetime as a journalist in the troublespots of the world, he retired to the country.* | **during your ~** *I've seen many changes during my lifetime.* | **in your ~** *The artist was little known in his lifetime.* | **of a ~** *It was the holiday of a lifetime!* | **~ in** *She spent a lifetime in politics.* | **~ of** *a lifetime of problems*

PHRASES **the habits of a lifetime** *It's hard to break the habits of a lifetime.* | **half a lifetime, a legend in your own lifetime** *Herbert von Karajan was a legend in his own lifetime.* | **a lifetime ago/away** *University seems a half a lifetime away.* | **once in a lifetime** *That sort of thing happens only once in a lifetime.*

lift *noun*

1 **machine for taking people/goods up and down**

ADJ. **private, service** *The hotel has a private lift linking it to the beach.* | **baggage, goods, passenger, wheelchair** | **electric, hydraulic** | **basket, chair, gondola** | **ski**

VERB + LIFT **go down in, go up in/on, take** *We took the lift down to the ground floor.* | **operate**

LIFT + VERB **serve sth** *The lift serves the top four floors of the building.* | **arrive**

LIFT + NOUN **button** | **doors** | **shaft** | **attendant** | **pass** *You'll need your lift pass for the ski lifts.*

2 **free ride in a car, etc.**

ADJ. **free**

VERB + LIFT **ask for, cadge, hitch, thumb** *We stood by the roadside and thumbed a lift.* | **give sb, offer sb** | **accept** *Don't accept lifts from strangers.*

PHRASES **a lift back/home** *He offered us a lift home.*

3 **feeling of increased happiness/excitement**

ADJ. **great, huge, real** *Winning the semi-final gave the team a huge lift.*

VERB + LIFT **give sb** | **get**

lift *verb*

1 **raise/move sb/sth**

ADV. **almost, half** *Her hugged her, almost lifting her off the ground.* | **fractionally, a little, slightly** | **slowly** | **sharply** *Her head lifted sharply* | **carefully, gently, gingerly** *Carefully lift the cake off the tray and cool on a wire rack.* | **bodily** *She was lifted bodily aboard by two sailors.* | **back, down, out, up** *She lifted back the sheet.*

VERB + LIFT **can/could barely/hardly** *The box was so heavy I could barely lift it.* | **try to** | **manage to** | **be too heavy to**

PREP. **above** *He stood, legs apart, arms lifted above his head.* | **down** *She leaned on him and he half lifted her down the stairs.* | **from** *He felt as if an enormous weight had been lifted from his shoulders.* | **into** *The heavy beams were lifted into place.* | **off** *She lifted the book up off the table.* | **out of** *He lifted the baby out of its cot.* | **over** *She lifted the child over the fence.* | **to** *Juliet nodded, lifting her face to David's.*

2 **remove a law/rule**

ADV. **completely** | **partially** *The police managed to restore calm and the curfew was partially lifted.*

VERB + LIFT **agree to, decide to, vote to** *The government decided to lift the ban on arms exports.* | **refuse to**

ligament *noun*

ADJ. **ankle, knee**

VERB + LIGAMENT **bruise, pull, rupture, strain, tear**

LIGAMENT + NOUN **damage, injury, problem**

light bulb *nou*n > See BULB

light *adj.*

1 **not dark**

VERBS **be | become, get, grow** *It was starting to get light. As soon as it grew light, we got up and dressed.*

ADV. **completely, quite** *We'll set out as soon as it's completely light.* **| almost** *It was almost light outside.* **| fairly | enough** *It was not light enough to see things clearly.* **| still | beautifully** *The whole house was beautifully light and airy.*

2 **not weighing much**

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become**

ADV. **exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, very | fairly, quite, reasonably, relatively | enough** *The tent is light enough for backpacking and touring.* **| surprisingly**

3 **not great in amount/degree**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very | comparatively, fairly, quite, relatively** *The traffic is usually fairly light in the afternoons.*

light *noun*

1 **brightness**

ADJ. **clear, good | bright, harsh, intense, strong | blinding | full** *In full light, you could see Alison was well over forty.* **| bad, dim, faint, feeble, murky, poor, uncertain, weak | subdued | failing** *We could hardly see the ball in the failing light.* **| gentle, pale, soft, watery | mellow, warm | cold, cool** *in the cold light of morning* **| early | artificial | natural | infrared, ultraviolet** *film that is sensitive to ultraviolet light* **| visible**

QUANT. **beam, ray | burst, flash, gleam, glimmer** *There was a flash of light followed by an explosion.* **| patch, pool**

VERB + LIGHT **have** *Have you got enough light for reading?* **| generate, produce | cast, emit, give (out), provide, shed** *light emitted by a star* **| be bathed in | be sensitive to**

LIGHT + VERB **gleam, glow, shine | come, fall, pour** *Light from a tall lamp fell in a pool on the desk.* **| reflect** *The light reflecting off the snow was dazzling.* **| grow stronger, increase | fade, fail | blind sb, dazzle sb** *We were momentarily blinded by the light of the sun.* **| catch sth** *You could see the imperfections in the repair when the light caught it.*

LIGHT + NOUN **level | source | beam**

PREP. **against the ~** *She held up the letter against the light.* **| by the ~ of** *They managed to see where the door was by the light of the moon.* **| into the ~** *Bring it into the light and we'll have a look at it.* **| in the ~** *The place looked calm in the golden evening light.* **| ~ from** *the light from the kitchen window*

PHRASES **(at) the speed of light** *Nothing can travel faster than the speed of light.* **| a point of light, a source of light** *The lamp was the only source of light in the room.*

2 **sth that produces light**

ADJ. **bright** *the bright lights of the city* **| flashing, twinkling | electric, fluorescent, gas, neon, strip | bedside, ceiling, outside, overhead, wall | street | hazard, security, warning** *The car was stopped at the side of the road* *with its hazard lights flashing. A warning light goes on when the battery is running low.* **| landing** *The pilot could just make out the runway landing lights.*

VERB + LIGHT **put on, switch on, turn on | have on** *Some cars already had their lights on.* **| leave on | extinguish, put off/out, switch off, turn off/out | turn up | dim, turn down | shine** *Someone shone a light in my face.* **| flash** *He flashed his lights to warn the oncoming cars.*

LIGHT + VERB **be off/on | come on** *The warning light came on.* **| go out | fuse | gleam, glimmer, glow, shine | flash** *The blue light was flashing.* **| flicker** *The light flickered a couple of times then went out.* **| blind sb, dazzle sb**

LIGHT + NOUN switch | fitting > See TRAFFIC LIGHT

light *verb*

1 **make sth begin to burn**

VERB + LIGHT **attempt to, try to | pause to, stop to** *She paused to light another cigarette.*

2 **(oftenbe lit) give light to sth**

ADV. **well** *a brightly lit room* **| badly, dimly, poorly** *a dimly lit street* **| brightly, brilliantly | softly | briefly, momentarily** *(figurative) A gleam of humour momentarily lit his face.* **| suddenly | artificially, electrically | up** *There was an explosion and the whole sky lit up.*

PREP. **with** *(figurative) Her face lit up with pleasure.*

lighter *noun*

ADJ. **cigar, cigarette | butane, gas, petrol | gold**

VERB + LIGHTER **flick** *He flicked his lighter but it didn't catch.*

LIGHTER + VERB **catch**

light-headed *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become | make sb** *The wine had made him a little light-headed.*

ADV. **very | a little, slightly | curiously** *She felt curiously light-headed.*

lighting *noun*

ADJ. **bright, good, strong | low, poor, soft, subdued, subtle | adequate | artificial, natural | electric, fluorescent, gas, neon, strip | street | stage | domestic | emergency** *The generator supplies emergency lighting.* **| background | concealed | security**

QUANT. **level**

VERB + LIGHTING **have** *The kitchen hasn't really got adequate lighting.* **| fit, instal, put in**

LIGHTING + NOUN **level | arrangement, scheme, system** *a typical lighting scheme for a house* **| effects | engineer**

lightning *noun*

ADJ. **forked, sheet** *Forked lightning flickered across the sky.*

QUANT. **bolt, flash** *A bolt of lightning struck the roof of the building.*

LIGHTNING + VERB **flash, flicker, fork, light sth (up)** *Lightning flashed outside. Lightning lit up the night sky.* **| hit sb/sth, strike sb/sth** *Lightning hit the tree. He was struck by lightning.*

LIGHTNING + NOUN **bolt, flash | strike** *Lightning strikes caused scores of fires across the state.* **| speed**

PHRASES **thunder and lightning**

like *verb*

ADV. **enormously, a lot, particularly, really** *I liked him enormously and was sorry when he left. I really like that restaurant.* **| best, better** *Which story do you like best?* **| quite, rather | always, never** *I have always liked Sue and I don't intend to stop now.*

VERB + LIKE **seem to | get to** *I hope you will get to like our town.*

PHRASES **be universally liked** *a man who was universally liked*

likeable *adj*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, immensely, most, very | quite**

likelihood *noun*

ADJ. **every** *There's every likelihood that she'll be able to help us.* **| greater, increased | real, strong**

VERB + LIKELIHOOD **decrease, minimize, reduce** *Taking regular exercise reduces the likelihood of a heart attack.* **| increase, maximize, raise | affect** *This shouldn't affect the likelihood of you getting the job.*

LIKELIHOOD + VERB **grow | diminish**

PREP. **~ of** *Is their any likelihood of our getting our money back?*

PHRASES **in all likelihood** *In all likelihood, he'll be fit to play on Saturday.*

likely *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *It is highly likely that the factory will have to close.* **| hardly** *They're hardly likely to get home before ten.* **| quite**

likeness *noun*

ADJ. **strong** *The children all share a strong family likeness.* **| good | superficial** *There's a superficial likeness, but they're really very different.* **| physical | family**

VERB + LIKENESS **see | bear, show** *She bears a remarkable likeness to her grandmother.*

PREP. **~ between** *I can't see any likeness between her children.* **| ~ to**

liking *noun*

ADJ. **great | particular, special**

VERB + LIKING **have** *They have little liking for each other.* **| demonstrate, develop | share**

PREP. **for your ~** *The weather's too hot for my liking.* **| to your ~** *The food wasn't really to my liking.* **| ~ for** *We share a liking for Italian cooking.*

limb *noun*

ADJ. **long | thin | silken | powerful | bare, naked | broken, injured | stiff** *I eased my stiff limbs into the hot bath.* **| weary | amputated | artificial, prosthetic | lower, upper | hind** *The animal is able to stand up on its hind limbs.*

VERB + LIMB **amputate**

LIMB + NOUN **development, growth**

lime *noun*

ADJ. **fresh**

QUANT. **slice, wedge** *Serve the dish garnished with wedges of lime.*

VERB + LIME **squeeze | slice | garnish sth with**

LIME + NOUN **tree | juice** > Special page at FRUIT

limelight *noun*

VERB + LIMELIGHT **grab, hog, steal** *She accused her co-star of trying to hog the limelight.* **| enjoy | avoid, shun | share**

PREP. **into the ~** *an ordinary person who was suddenly thrust into the limelight* **| in the ~** *She likes being in the limelight.* **| out of the ~** *The band started touring again after two years out of the limelight.*

limit *noun*

ADJ. **outer | northern, southern, etc. | three-mile, etc. | absolute** *I can offer you £20 but that's my absolute limit.* **| higher, maximum, upper | lower | strict, stringent, tight** *The application must be made within a strict time limit.* **| age, speed, time, weight** *There's a weight limit on the bridge.* **| physical | safety | budget, cash, credit, earnings, financial, income, overdraft | legal, prescribed, statutory | recommended**

VERB + LIMIT **reach | cross | establish, impose, place, put, set** *Central government has set a limit on spending by local councils.* | **increase, raise | lower | exceed** *exceeding the speed limit* **| push sb to** *She pushed me to the limit of my abilities.*

PREP. **above a/the ~** *The level of radioactivity in the soil was found to be above recommended limits.* **| at a/the ~** *I was almost at the limits of my patience.* **| below a/the ~** *The price fell below the lower limit. The trees are found only below a limit of 500 metres.* **| beyond a/the ~** *Heat levels rose beyond the recommended limits. fishing beyond the twelve-mile limit* **| on a/the ~** *islands on the outer limit of the continent* **| over a/the ~** *He'd been drinking and was well over the legal limit.* **| up to a/the ~** *You can buy cigarettes up to a limit of 200 per person.* **| within a/the ~** *They did well within the limits of their knowledge. There was no school within a limit of ten miles.* **| within ~s** *The children can do what they like, within limits.* **| without ~** *Banks may buy bills of exchange without limit.* **| ~ on** *There's a limit on the number of tickets you can buy.* **| ~ to** *There's a limit to what we can do to help.*

limit *verb*

ADV. **seriously, severely, strictly**

VERB + LIMIT **attempt to, seek to, take steps to, try to | be designed to** *The change in the law was designed to limit the scope for corruption.* **| agree to | serve to, tend to** *Rigid job descriptions can serve to limit productivity.*

PREP. **to** *The teaching of history should not be limited to dates and figures.*

limitation *noun*

1 **limiting of sth**

ADJ. **important, major, serious, severe | family | damage** *an exercise in damage limitation* | **arms** *talks on arms limitation* | **budget, budgetary, financial**

VERB + LIMITATION **impose, place | remove | accept** *a limitation of your personal freedom*

PREP. **~ on** *limitations on one's freedom of action* | **~ to** *There should be no limitations to progress in the talks.*

2 **limitations: sth that sb cannot do**

ADJ. **important, major, serious, severe | inherent | physical, technical**

VERB + LIMITATION **have** *She has serious limitations as a mother.* | **overcome, transcend** *At times his technique seems to transcend the limitations of the piano.* | **know, recognize** *Please don't ask me to sing?I know my limitations!* | **expose, reveal, show** *The team's technical limitations were exposed by the Italians.* | **accept** *You've just got to accept your limitations.*

PREP. **despite sb's/sth's ~** *It's a useful book despite its limitations.*

limited *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **decidedly, distinctly, extremely, highly, really, remarkably, seriously, severely, sharply, strictly, very** *Places are strictly limited, so you should apply as soon as possible.* **| increasingly | a bit, comparatively, fairly, quite, rather, relatively, somewhat | apparently | inevitably | socially** *The role that women could play was socially limited.*

PREP. **in** *We're really limited in what we can do these days.* **| to** *The number of passengers is limited to fifteen.*

limousine *noun*

ADJ. **big, long | black | gleaming | stretch | chauffeur-driven, hired | waiting**
They walked back to the waiting limousine.

limp *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, hang, lie, look, seem** *His arm hung limp at his side. Her hair looked limp and lifeless.* **| become, go, grow** *Her body suddenly went limp.*

ADV. **very | completely | rather**

limp *noun*

ADJ. **pronounced | slight**

VERB + LIMP **walk with | leave sb with** *The accident had left him with a slight limp.*

limp *verb*

ADV. **badly, heavily** *He had hurt his leg and was limping badly.* **| a little, slightly | along, away, off** *He limped away from his car.*

line *noun*

1 **long thin mark on the surface of sth**

ADJ. **long | short | thick | fine, thin | direct, straight | curved, wavy, wiggly, zigzag | diagonal, horizontal, parallel, perpendicular, vertical | continuous, solid | broken, dotted** *Sign on the dotted line.* **| finishing, starting | contour**

VERB + LINE **draw**

LINE + VERB **run | divide sth**

PREP. **in a ~** *walk in a straight line*

PHRASES **a line of latitude/longitude**

2 **mark like a line on the skin**

ADJ. **deep** *Deep lines ran from her nose to her mouth.*

VERB + LINE **have** *He has lines on his forehead.*

LINE + VERB **run**

3 **row of people, things, words on a page, etc.**

ADJ. **long | short | new | continuous**

VERB + LINE **form**

PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *children standing in a line* **| on a/the ~** *Start each paragraph on a new line.*

4 **telephone/electricity wire/connection**

ADJ. **direct | bad** *Speak up?it's rather a bad line.* **| busy | power | phone, telephone | outside, party, private** *What do I dial for an outside line?*

VERB + LINE **hold** *Hold the line* (= Don't put the receiver down), *please.*

LINE + VERB **be engaged | be/go dead**

PREP. **down the ~** *He kept shouting down the line at me.* **| on the ~** *It's your mother on the line* (= on the telephone). **| on ~** (also **online**) (= connected to a computer system)

5 **section of railway track**

ADJ. **railway, train | main | branch, commuter, feeder** *The branch line is threatened with closure.*

VERB + LINE **take** *Take the Bakerloo line and change at Piccadilly.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *We live on the Northern Line.*

PHRASES **the end of the line 6 lines** words spoken by an actor in a play

VERB + LINE **learn | forget | fluff**

7 **direction/course of thought/action**

ADJ. **broad** *The broad lines of company policy are already laid down.* **| firm, hard, strong, tough | official, party, political**

VERB + LINE **adopt, follow, pursue, take | bring sb/sth into** *The other members of the board must be brought into line.*

PREP. **in ~ with** (= in agreement with), **out of ~ with** (= not in agreement with) *out of line with party policies* **| ~ on** *the official line on food safety*

PHRASES **a line of argument/enquiry/questioning**

8 **place where an army is fighting**

ADJ. **battle, firing, front**

PHRASES **behind enemy lines, in/on the front line**

lined *adj.*

1 **of skin**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **deeply, heavily** *Her deeply lined face was creased into a smile*

2 **of clothes, etc.**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **fully** *The coat is fully lined.*

PREP. **with** *The case was lined with black velvet.*

linen *noun*

1 **fabric**

ADJ. **fine, pure** *a fine linen shirt* | **coarse** | **Irish**

VERB + LINEN **weave (sth from)** | **spin**

2 **sheets/tablecloths/underwear, etc.**

ADJ. **clean, fresh** | **dirty, soiled** | **crisp, starched** | **bed, table** | **household**

VERB + LINEN **change** *We change the bed linen once a week.*

LINEN + NOUN **basket, cupboard**

liner *noun*

ADJ. **luxury | ocean, ocean-going, transatlantic | cruise, passenger** *a job aboard a luxury cruise liner*

linger *verb*

ADV. **long | faintly** *The smell of lavender lingered faintly in the room.* **| still | on** *The feelings of hurt and resentment lingered on for years.*

PREP. **on** *Her eyes lingered on the stranger's face.* **| over** *They stayed in the restaurant, lingering over coffee.*

linguistics *nou*n

ADJ. **contemporary, modern | applied, theoretical | computational, contrastive, descriptive, generative, historical, structural | Saussurean** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

link *noun*

ADJ. **close, intimate | strong | tenuous, weak | clear, definite, obvious | possible** *Scientists have established possible links between cancer and diet.* **| crucial, essential, important, vital** *Social workers provide a vital link between hospital and community.* **| common** *The common link between the three artists is their age.* **| formal, informal | direct, indirect | historical, long-standing | connecting | causal** *The report failed to prove a causal link between violence on screen and in real life.* **| missing** *the missing link in the search for the causes of cancer* **| tangible** *a tangible link with the past* **| business, commercial, communication, cultural, diplomatic, economic, financial, military, political, professional, sporting, trade, etc. | family, kinship | air, rail/ railway, road, transport | fast, high-speed | computer, modem, radio, satellite, telephone, video**

VERB + LINK **have | build, create, develop, establish, forge, foster, make** *The college is keen to build links with local industries.* **| provide | maintain, preserve | strengthen | break, cut, sever** *She has severed her last links with her family.*

LINK + VERB **connect sth, join sth**

LINK + NOUN **road**

PREP. **via a/the ~** *a programme transmitted via a satellite link* **| ~ across** *trade links across the border* **| ~ between** *The statistics show a clear link between social class and crime.* **| ~ in** *The sales manager is regarded as the weakest link in the chain.* **| ~ to** *The driver has a radio link to base.* **| ~ with** *the city's traditional link with opera*

link *verb*

ADV. **closely, intimately | firmly, strongly, tightly | loosely | directly, explicitly** *Diseases that can be directly linked to pollution.* **| indissolubly, inescapably, inevitably, inexorably, inextricably, inseparably** *Poverty and crime are inextricably linked.* **| clearly, obviously | necessarily | intrinsically | causally | physically | romantically** *She has never been romantically linked with anyone.* **| in some way, somehow** *I could not help feeling that these factors were somehow linked.* **| together, up** *The two spacecraft will link up in orbit.*

PREP. **into** *The computers are linked into a network.* **| to** *Scientists have linked the illness to the use of pesticides.* **| with** *the road that links Cairo with Alexandria*

lion *noun*

QUANT. **pride**

LION + VERB **growl, purr, roar | attack sb, maul sb | catch sth, hunt sth (down) | kill sb/sth | prowl**

LION + NOUN **cub | tamer**

PHRASES **a lion's mane**

lip *noun*

ADJ. **top, upper | bottom, lower | chapped, cracked, dry | moist | fleshy, thick | thin | firm**

VERB + LIP **bite, chew** *He bit his lip nervously, trying not to cry.* **| press together, purse** *She pursed her lips in disapproval.* **| pout | lick, smack** *He licked his lips hungrily.* **| moisten** *He nervously moistened his lips with his tongue.*

LIP + VERB **move, part** *Her lips parted with a cry of fear.* **| quiver, tremble | curl** *His lips curled contemptuously.* **| pout** *The firm lips pouted in a sulk.* **| protrude**

PREP. **around/round your ~** *He ran his tongue round his lips.* **| between your ~** *a cigarette between his lips* **| on your ~** *There was a slight smile on her lips.*

lipstick *noun*

QUANT. **dab** *She put on a quick dab of lipstick and rushed out.*

VERB + LIPSTICK **have on, wear | apply, put on | renew, touch up** *She touched up her lipstick in the mirror.* **| remove, take off, wipe off**

LIPSTICK + VERB **smudge** *Her lipstick had smudged and she looked a real mess.*

liquid *noun*

ADJ. **glutinous, thick, viscous | thin | clear | colourless | cloudy | flammable | volatile | immiscible, miscible** *immiscible liquids such as oil and water*

QUANT. **drop, pool**

VERB + LIQUID **empty, pour** *Empty the liquid into a large bowl.* **| spill | drain (off), pour off, strain (off)** *Drain off the liquid from the meat into a measuring jug.* **| boil, bring to the boil, simmer | reduce** *Reduce the liquid by boiling for two minutes.* **| absorb, soak up**

LIQUID + VERB **boil, simmer**

LIQUID + NOUN **refreshment** *(informal) After two hours of the meeting we stopped for liquid refreshment.* **| soap | waste** *unprocessed liquid waste from a nuclear power station*

PHRASES **in liquid form** *The medicine is usually taken in liquid form.*

liquidation *noun*

ADJ. **compulsory, voluntary**

VERB + LIQUIDATION **be forced into, be placed in, be put into, go into** *The firm may be forced into liquidation.*

PREP. **in ~** *a company in liquidation*

liquor *noun*

ADJ. **alcoholic, hard, intoxicating, strong** *It is an offence to sell intoxicating liquor to anyone under the age of 18.*

LIQUOR + NOUN **licence** *The restaurant finally obtained a liquor licence.*

list *noun*

ADJ. **long, short | complete, comprehensive, full** *We are compiling a full list of all local businesses.* **| alphabetical | waiting** *We're on the waiting list for membership of the golf club.* **| shopping | mailing | reading** *For further information, see the reading list at the end of the chapter.* **| guest | cast** *The play has an impressive cast list.* **| transfer** (= in football) *The club captain has been put on the transfer list at his own request.*

VERB + LIST **compile, draw up, make | put sth on** *Did you put bread on the shopping list?*

LIST + VERB **comprise sth, contain sth** *a list comprising all the paintings in the gallery*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Names of past members are not included in the list.* **| on a/the ~** *I can't see your name on the list.* **| ~ of** *a list of 200 names*

PHRASES **the bottom/top of a list** *Variety is near the top of many people's list of job requirements.* **| high on a list** *Safety is high on our list of priorities.* **| a list of priorities** *Phoning the bank is top of my list of priorities today.*

listen *verb*

ADV. **attentively, carefully, closely, hard, intently** *Now, listen very carefully to what she says.* | **half** *Lucy was only half listening to their conversation.* | **patiently, politely, sympathetically** *We listened politely to his stories.* | **avidly, eagerly, with interest** *The guests were listening with great interest.* | **gravely, impassively** *Pym listened impassively until the woman had finished.* | **in silence, quietly** *They listened to the announcement in silence.* | **anxiously** | **in awe**

VERB + LISTEN **(not) want to, will/would (not)** *Nobody will listen to me! I tried to warn her, but she wouldn't listen.* | **be prepared to, be willing to** | **refuse to** *He refused to listen to her explanation.*

PREP. **for** *We listened anxiously for the sound of footsteps.* | **to** *listening to the radio*

PHRASES **listen with half an ear** *I listened with half an ear to the conversation at the next table.*

listener *noun*

ADJ. **attentive, good, great, sympathetic | radio**

literacy *noun*

ADJ. **basic** *All the children are tested in basic literacy.* **| adult | mass | computer**

VERB + LITERACY **achieve, acquire** *different methods for acquiring literacy* **| develop, promote, teach**

LITERACY + NOUN **campaign, programme**

literate *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **highly, very** *Only highly literate people are capable of discussing these subjects.* **| fully** *They are the first fully literate generation in the country.* **| barely, hardly** *He was uneducated and barely literate.* **| fairly, quite | economically, musically, politically, technologically** (= educated about economics, music, etc.)

PREP. **in** *Both parents were literate in English.*

PHRASES **computer literate** (= able to use a computer)

literature *noun*

1 **written works of art**

ADJ. **classical, contemporary, modern | great**

QUANT. **piece, work**

VERB + LITERATURE **read, study**

2 **writing on a particular subject**

ADJ. **extensive, voluminous | promotional, sales**

QUANT. **body** *the growing body of literature on development issues*

PREP. **~ about** *I picked up some literature about pensions.* **| ~ on** *There's an extensive literature on the subject.*

litigation *noun*

ADJ. **costly, expensive | endless, lengthy, protracted | threatened | pending | ensuing, subsequent | civil, commercial, criminal**

VERB + LITIGATION **be/become/get involved in, be engaged in, conduct, engage in | threaten | avoid** *The payment was made to avoid threatened litigation.*

LITIGATION + NOUN **costs**

PREP. **~ against** *He engaged in endless litigation against the media.* **| ~ between** *litigation between private parties*

PHRASES **the cost of litigation, the risk/threat of litigation**

litre *nou*n > Note at MEASURE

litter *noun*

VERB + LITTER **drop, leave** *Please do not leave litter after your picnic.* **| clean up, clear up, pick up**

LITTER + VERB **be strewn** *Litter was strewn all over the field.*

LITTER + NOUN **basket, bin | lout** *The local council has pledged to clamp down on litter louts on the beach.*

live *adj., adv.*

VERBS **appear, be, play** *He appeared live on the Song and Dance Show. Is the show live or recorded? The band have never played this song live before.* **| come to sb, go out** *This programme comes to you live from the Albert Hall. In those days the broadcasts all went out live.* **| be broadcast, be screened, be shown, be televised, be transmitted** *The match will be televised live this evening.* **| be recorded** *The CD was recorded live at a concert given last year.*

live *verb*

1 **in a place**

ADV. **alone | together** *She disapproves of unmarried couples living together.* **| apart** *The couple have lived apart for two years.*

VERB + LIVE **come to, go to** *We went to live in London when I was three.*

PREP. **among** *living among the people of this remote island* **| in** *He lives in Manchester.* **| near** *She lives quite near here.* **| with** *I still live with my mum.*

PHRASES **a place to live** *young couples looking for a place to live*

2 **be alive**

ADV. **longer** *Women live longer than men in general.* **| forever** *Who wants to live forever? I don't.* **| happily (ever after)** *All she wanted was to get married and live happily ever after.* **| amicably, harmoniously, peaceably** *the need to live as harmoniously as possible with everyone else* **| well** *Most of the people live very well, with nice houses and plenty to eat.* **| frugally, modestly** *They lived frugally off a diet of porridge and lentils.* **| vicariously** *She tried to live vicariously through her children.*

PREP. **in** *Many of the people live in poverty and misery.* **| through** *She lived through two world wars.* **| with** *living with Aids*

PHRASES **(for) as long as you live** *I shall remember this day for as long as I live.* **| learn to live with sth** *learning to live with disability* **| live a life of sth** *He's now living a life of luxury in Australia.* **| live to (be) 80, 90, etc., live to the age of 80, 90, etc.** *She lived to the age of 95.* **| the world we live in** *teaching children about the world we live in*

livelihood *noun*

VERB + LIVELIHOOD **earn, gain | protect, secure** *an insurance policy to secure your livelihood in old age* **| affect, threaten** *The new law threatens the livelihood of thousands of farmers.* **| destroy, take away**

LIVELIHOOD + VERB **depend on sth** *people whose livelihood depends on the forest*

PHRASES **a means/source of livelihood** *The boat was his main source of livelihood.*

liver *noun*

1 **organ in the body**

ADJ. **enlarged, fatty | donor** *a nationwide appeal for a donor liver*

LIVER + NOUN **cancer, cirrhosis, damage, disease, dysfunction, failure, injury | cell, enzyme, tissue | function | biopsy, transplant, transplantation**

PREP. **in the ~** *enzymes in the liver* **| of the ~** *cirrhosis of the liver* **| to the ~** *bile acids returning to the liver*

2 **liver of an animal as food**

VERB + LIVER **eat, have | chop | braise, cook, fry**

LIVER + NOUN **pâté, sausage**

PHRASES **chicken/lamb's/pig's, etc. liver** > Special page at FOOD

living *noun*

ADJ. **comfortable, decent, good** *He makes a good living as a builder.* **| meagre** *She eked out a meagre living as an artist's model.*

VERB + LIVING **earn, make** *Her dream was to earn her living as a singer.* **| eke out, scrape (together), scratch** *They were forced to scrape a living by selling things on the streets.* **| do sth for** *He asked what I did for a living.*

load *noun*

ADJ. **heavy, light** *He has a heavy teaching load this year.* **| full** *The plane took off with a full load.*

VERB + LOAD **bear, carry | lighten, share, spread** *We're trying to spread the load by employing more staff.* **| drop, dump, shed** *A lorry has shed its load of wood on the motorway.*

PREP. **under its, etc. ~** *The tables creaked under their heavy load.*

loaded *adj.*

1 **carrying a load**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **heavily** *a convoy of heavily loaded lorries* **| fully** *a fully loaded truck* **| lightly**

PREP. **with** *The lorry was loaded with crates of beer.*

2 **biased**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **heavily | rather, slightly | emotionally, ideologically, politically** *Try to avoid politically loaded terms like 'nation'.*

PREP. **against** *The odds were slightly loaded against us.* **| in favour of** *The legislation is heavily loaded in favour of employers.*

loaf *noun*

ADJ. **fresh, stale | cut, sliced | brown, white, wholemeal, etc.**

VERB + LOAF **bake | cut, slice**

LOAF + NOUN **tin**

PHRASES **a loaf of bread**

loan *noun*

ADJ. **large, massive | long-term, short-term | interest-free, low-interest | secured, unsecured** *As it was an unsecured loan, their property was not at risk.* **| outstanding** *They used the inheritance to pay off their outstanding loan.* **| personal | bank | bridging, temporary**

VERB + LOAN **apply for, ask for, request | arrange, get, raise, take out** *She had to take out a bridging loan until she could sell her house.* **| give sb, grant sb, make sb** *My bank manager offered to make me a loan.* **| receive | pay off, repay | secure, underwrite**

LOAN + VERB **average sth, total sth** *loans totalling a million pounds*

LOAN + NOUN **application | agreement, arrangement, deal | charges, interest, rate | repayment** *They were struggling to meet their monthly loan repayments.* **| commitments | facility, service** *The bank provides personal loan facilities at competitive rates.* **| period** *The book must be returned by the end of the loan period.* **| shark** *He ran up massive debts borrowing from loan sharks.*

PREP. **on ~ (from)** *The paintings are on loan from the Wallace Collection.* **| ~ from** *a loan from my brother*

PHRASES **give sb/have the loan of sth** *He's given us the loan of his car for the weekend.* **| security against/for a loan** *He had to use his house as security for the loan.* > Special page at BUSINESS

loathing *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, deep, intense**

VERB + LOATHING **arouse, fill sb with** *People who took football too seriously aroused deep loathing in me.* **| develop, feel, have**

PREP. **~ for** *She felt an intense loathing for her boss.* **| ~ of** *a deep loathing of war*

PHRASES **fear and loathing** *The incident has created an atmosphere of fear and loathing among the people.*

lobby *noun*

ADJ. **powerful, strong** *a powerful anti-smoking lobby* **| mass | anti-abortion, anti-hunt, environmental, industrial, nuclear, political, etc.**

VERB + LOBBY **mount, organize**

LOBBY + NOUN **group**

PREP. **~ against** *Many groups have together mounted a lobby against cuts in hospitals.* **| ~ for** *Villagers have organized a lobby for improved local facilities.*

lobby *verb*

ADV. **actively, hard | successfully**

PREP. **against** *Head teachers have been lobbying hard against education cuts.* **| for** *The group successfully lobbied for changes in the law.* **| on behalf of** *The organization has been set up to lobby the government on behalf of all the people who have lost their pensions.*

PHRASES **intense/intensive lobbying** *The decision followed months of intense lobbying of UN officials.* **| political lobbying** *The group achieved its aims after months of political lobbying.*

locate *verb*

1 **find the position of sb/sth**

ADV. **accurately, precisely** *The machine can accurately locate radioactive material.* **| quickly | easily**

VERB + LOCATE **be able/unable to, can/could** *We haven't yet been able to locate a suitable site.* **| try to | fail to | be easy to** *Some stars are quite easy to locate with a telescope.* **| be difficult to 2 be located** be in a place

ADV. **centrally** *The hotel is centrally located between Dam Square and Central Station.* **| conveniently, ideally, strategically | physically** *Two people can meet in virtual reality even if physically located in different continents.* **| abroad**

PREP. **at, between, close to, in, on, near, outside, within, etc.** *Your accommodation is conveniently located within walking distance of the town centre.*

location *noun*

ADJ. **exact, precise, specific** *We still do not know the precise location of the crash.* **| secret, undisclosed | convenient, ideal, suitable**

VERB + LOCATION **show** *The map shows the exact location of the mine.*

PREP. **at a/the … ~** *The meeting is taking place at a secret location.* **| on ~** *The film is being made on location in India.*

lock *noun*

1 **fastening device**

ADJ. **Chubb, combination, lever, mortise, Yale | door, window**

VERB + LOCK **fit** *We had new locks fitted after the burglary.* **| break, force, pick | turn** *He turned the lock and pushed the door open.*

PHRASES **insert/turn the key in the lock, (keep sb/sth) under lock and key** *Prisoners are kept under lock and key 24 hours a day.*

2 **small bunch of hair**

ADJ. **stray** *She flicked a stray lock of hair off her face.* **| flowing** *She had long flowing locks and blue eyes.*

lock *verb*

1 **close with a lock**

ADV. **carefully** *He carefully locked the door behind him.*

VERB + LOCK **forget to**

PHRASES **be firmly/securely locked, keep sth locked** *Keep your garage securely locked.*

2 **put sb/sth inside sth that is locked**

ADV. **away, in, up** *I was terrified they would lock me up again.*

PREP. **in** *I locked myself in the bathroom.*

PHRASES **be safely/securely locked** *All the valuables were safely locked away.*

locust *noun*

QUANT. **plague, swarm**

LOCUST + NOUN **swarm**

log *noun*

1 **wood**

ADJ. **cut, sawn** *a pile of sawn logs* **| fallen** *The road was blocked by fallen logs.* **| blazing, burning**

VERB + LOG **chop, saw, split**

LOG + VERB **blaze, burn, crackle** *logs crackling in the fireplace*

LOG + NOUN **cabin | fire**

2 **written record**

ADJ. **detailed | captain's, ship's**

VERB + LOG **keep** *She kept a log of their voyage.*

LOG + NOUN **book**

logic *noun*

1 **system of reasoning**

ADJ. **formal | deductive, inductive**

VERB + LOGIC **apply, use** *Philosophers use logic to prove their arguments.*

2 **use of reason**

ADJ. **compelling, exquisite, impeccable, inexorable** *There is a compelling logic to his main theory.* **| strict | internal, underlying | commercial, economic, political, scientific** *There is sound commercial logic in never giving credit to retailers.*

VERB + LOGIC **accept, follow, understand** *I can't follow the logic of what you are saying.* **| defy** *It's a stupid decision that completely defies logic.* **| apply, use** *You can't use the same logic in dealing with children.*

PREP. **~ behind** *What's the logic behind this decision?* **| ~ in** *There doesn't seem to be any logic in the move.*

logical *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound** *It all sounds quite logical.*

ADV. **eminently, extremely, highly, very | absolutely, completely, entirely, perfectly, quite** *His arguments seemed perfectly logical.* **| purely** *The issue here is purely logical: it has nothing to do with ethics.* **| hardly**

logo *noun*

ADJ. **distinctive** *The company has a distinctive logo that makes it well known.* **| company, corporate**

VERB + LOGO **bear, carry, display, feature** *The diary features the organization's distinctive new logo.* **| unveil** *The new logo was unveiled in a blaze of publicity.*

PREP. **~ for** *the logo for the World Cup*

loneliness *noun*

ADJ. **aching, great, intense, terrible, utter | personal**

VERB + LONELINESS **experience, feel, suffer** *He experienced terrible loneliness after the loss of his wife*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of loneliness**

lonely *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get**

ADV. **desperately, extremely, terribly, unbearably, very** *She was desperately lonely at school.* **| a bit, a little, pretty, rather | oddly** *She felt oddly lonely without her books.*

long *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem** *That dress looks a bit long to me.*

ADV. **really, very | extra** *Economy class can be uncomfortable for those with extra-long legs.* **| a bit, fairly, quite, rather** *His journey to work is quite long.* **| enough** *Are you sure two hours will be long enough?*

long *verb*

ADV. **desperately** *He longed desperately to be back at home.* **| secretly** *They were the words she had secretly longed to hear.* **| always** *She had always longed to go abroad.*

PREP. **for** *He hated the city and longed for the mountains.*

longing *noun*

ADJ. **deep, desperate, great, intense, overwhelming, passionate, terrible, wild** *She had a desperate longing to go back.* **| sudden | hopeless | nostalgic, wistful** *a wistful longing for the past* **| physical, sexual**

VERB + LONGING **be filled with, be full of, feel, have** *He felt an overwhelming longing to hear her voice again.*

PREP. **~ for** *his intense longing for privacy*

longitude *noun*

ADJ. **calculate, determine**

PREP. **at (a) ~** *The town is at longitude 28° west.*

PHRASES **a line of longitude** *This line of longitude cuts through the jungle.*

long-lived *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, remarkably, unusually, very** *Some of these creatures are remarkably long-lived.*

loo *noun*

ADJ. **public | outside | gents', ladies', men's, women's**

VERB + LOO **go to, use** *Can I use your loo?* **| be desperate for, need** *We got stuck in a traffic jam and I was desperate for the loo.* **| flush, flush sth down** *He flushed the letter down the loo.*

LOO + NOUN **paper, roll**

PREP. **in the ~, on the ~**

look *noun*

1 **act of looking at/considering sth**

ADJ. **little | brief, cursory, quick | leisurely | careful, close** *Take a closer look at it.* **| furtive** *I had a furtive look in her bag when her back was turned.* **| overall** *We need to take an overall look at the situation.* **| nostalgic** *The book takes a nostalgic look at the golden age of the railway.* **| critical, hard, honest, radical, realistic, serious, uncompromising** *You should take a long, hard look at your reasons for wanting to join the army.* **| humorous, light-hearted** *The book takes a humorous look at parenthood.* **| fresh** *I think it's time to take a fresh look at our sales techniques.*

VERB + LOOK **have, take | get** *Did you get a look at his new car?* **| sneak, steal**

PREP. **~ at** *I managed to steal a look at the exam paper.* **| ~ in/into** *She couldn't resist a quick look in the mirror.* **| ~ out of** *Have a look out of the window and see who's at the door.* **| ~ through** *I had a brief look through the report before the meeting.* **| ~ towards** *The book concludes with a look towards the future.*

PHRASES **without a backward look** *She walked out of the door without a backward look.*

2 **exploring/looking for sth**

ADJ. **good | little, quick**

VERB + LOOK **have**

PREP. **~ around/round** *We had a good look around the old town on* **glazed, unfocused, vacant | wild** *The man had a wild look in his eyes.* **| funny, odd, strange** *He gave me a funny look.* **| curious, meaningful, puzzled, quizzical, searching, speculative, thoughtful | knowing, shrewd | penetrating, piercing | earnest, intense, intent, steady | bold, challenging | smug, triumphant | mischievous, wicked | amused, wry | innocent | coy, shy | compassionate, loving | grateful | apologetic | appealing, despairing, desperate, frantic | hungry**

VERB + LOOK **have | cast (sb), dart (sb), give (sb), shoot (sb), throw (sb) | get** *I* *got a black look from Amy.* **| exchange** *They exchanged meaningful looks.*

PREP. **~ from** *A withering look from his wife silenced him.* **| ~ of** *He darted her a look of contempt.*

PHRASES **a … look in sb's eyes/on sb's face** *She had a puzzled look in her eyes. He opened the door with a scornful look on his face.* **| take that (…) look off your face** *Take that smug look off your face before I slap you!*

4 sb/sth's appearance

ADJ. **overall** *the overall look of the house* **| professional** *Use high-quality paper to give your CV a more professional look.* **| youthful**

VERB + LOOK **have | like** *I didn't like the look of the salad so I didn't touch it.*

PREP. **by/from the ~ of sb/sth** *Joe isn't getting much sleep from the look of him. By the looks of the first day of our holiday.* **| ~ for** *I had a look for websites on Egyptian music, but didn't find anything.it, someone's already staying in*

3 expression on sb's face

ADJ. **angry, black, dark, dirty, exasperated, fierce, furious, harsh, irritated, murderous, reproachful, savage, scathing, scornful, severe, sharp, withering** *She threw him a dirty look.* **| cold, cool, dry, frosty, steely | disgusted | pained | baleful, forbidding | glum, grim, hangdog | suspicious, wary | cautious | sideways | guilty, sheepish, shifty** *The guilty look on his face told us all we needed to know.* **| apprehensive, anxious, doubtful, worried** *They had worried looks on their faces.* **| sad | blank, dazed, distant, faraway,** *this room.* **| ~ about** *He still had a youthful look about him.* **| ~ of** *a fabric with the look of silk*

5 looks: sb's attractiveness

ADJ. **good | striking | classic** *He had classic good looks.* **| boyish, clean-cut, youthful | craggy**

VERB + LOOK **have | lose** *She's lost her looks.*

6 fashion/style

ADJ. **latest, new | casual | classic | sophisticated | individual**

VERB + LOOK **have | give sb/sth** *They've given the place a completely new look this year.*

LOOK + VERB **be/come back in (fashion), go out (of fashion)** *The classic look never goes out of fashion.*

look *verb*

1 **turn your eyes in a particular direction**

ADV. **carefully, closely** *Look at the machine quite carefully before you buy it.* | **sharply** *She looked up at me sharply when I said that.* | **intently, searchingly** | **archly** | **enquiringly, questioningly, quizzically, speculatively** | **doubtfully, dubiously** | **expectantly** | **anxiously, apprehensively** | **enviously, longingly** *He looked longingly at the food on the table.* | **beseechingly, imploringly, pleadingly** | **reproachfully** | **disapprovingly** | **pityingly** | **reflectively** | **studiously** *He was looking studiously down to avoid meeting her eyes.* | **impassively** | **blankly, dumbly, uncomprehendingly, unseeingly** | **across, away, down, over, round, up** *She looked over to where the others were chatting.*

VERB + LOOK **turn to** *He turned to look as she came down the stairs.* | **let sb** *'It's beautiful!' 'Oh! Let me look!'*

PREP. **at** *What are you looking at?* | **towards** *She looked towards the door.*

PHRASES **look and see** *I'll look and see if I've got any sugar in the cupboard.*

2 **seem/appear**

VERB + LOOK **make sb/sth** *You made me look a complete fool!*

PREP. **like** *an animal that looked like a large hedgehog* | **to** *It looks to me as if the company is in real trouble.*

PHRASES **look as if/as though**

loop *noun*

ADJ. **continuous, endless**

VERB + LOOP **form, make** *Lay the two ends of string so they make a loop over each other.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The audio tape runs in a continuous loop lasting thirty minutes.* **|** **through a/the ~** *Put the other end of the string through the loop.*

loophole *noun*

ADJ. **legal, security, tax**

VERB + LOOPHOLE **find | exploit, use** *People who don't want to pay tax will exploit any loophole.* **| close, plug, tighten** *a law designed to close any loopholes in tax*

LOOPHOLE + VERB **allow sb/sth, enable sb/sth** *a loophole enabling workers to take unnecessary sick leave*

PREP. **~ in** *a loophole in the regulations*

loose *adj.*

1 **not firmly fixed**

VERBS **be, feel, seem** *One of the bricks feels slightly loose.* **| come, shake, work** *The top of the tap has come loose. A screw had worked loose from the door handle.* **| prise sth**

ADV. **a bit, rather, slightly**

2 **not tied back**

VERBS **be, hang** *Her hair hung loose about her shoulders.* **| leave sth, wear sth** *Shall I wear my hair loose?*

3 **not shut in or tied up**

VERBS **be | cut** *(figurative),* **break, get** *The animals had broken loose from their pens. (figurative) The organization broke loose from its sponsors. He felt he had to cut loose from his family.* **| let sth, turn sth** *I'm going to let the dogs loose.*

lord *noun*

ADJ. **great, noble | feudal**

VERB + LORD **serve**

LORD + VERB **rule sb/sth** > Note at PEER

lorry *noun*

ADJ. **big, heavy, huge, large | ten-ton, etc. | articulated | open | long-distance | diesel | army | breakdown, container, delivery, gritting, refrigerated, tipper**

QUANT. **convoy**

VERB + LORRY **drive**

LORRY + VERB **carry sth** *a refrigerated lorry carrying beer*

LORRY + NOUN **driver | load**

lose *verb*

1 **not keep**

ADV. **financially**

VERB + LOSE **be going to, be likely to, stand to** *The company stands to lose financially if this deal falls through.* | **have nothing to** *You have nothing to lose by telling the truth.* | **not want to** | **cannot/could not afford to** *We cannot afford to lose any more senior members of staff.* | **begin to**

2 **be defeated**

VERB + LOSE **cannot/could not afford to** *This is a game that Lazio cannot afford to lose.*

PREP. **against** *We lost against Leeds.* | **by** *We lost by five goals to two.* | **to** *The visiting side lost to the home team.*

PHRASES **win or lose** *Win or lose, the important thing is to remain calm.* **PHRASAL VERBS lose out**

ADV. **financially**

PREP. **on** *Many of the canal children were constantly on the move, and lost out on regular schooling.* | **to** *Our firm lost out to a larger company that could offer a lower price.*

loser *noun*

ADJ. **good | bad, poor** *He's extremely competitive and a bad loser.* **| born | big, main** *The main loser was the United Left, which lost eight seats.* **| real, ultimate** *If the teachers go on strike, the children are the ultimate losers.*

VERB + LOSER **back** *The film company thought they'd backed a loser until the film won an Oscar.*

loss *noun*

1 losing of sb/sth

ADJ. **appreciable, dramatic, great, major, serious, significant, substantial, tremendous** *The ship sank with great loss of life. She suffered a significant loss of hearing after the operation.* | **slight** | **total** | **temporary** | **permanent** | **sad** *His death is a sad loss to all who knew him.* | **blood, hair, hearing, weight** *Weight loss can be a sign of a serious illness.* | **job** *The company is expected to announce 200 job losses.*

VERB + LOSS **mourn** *China mourned the loss of a great leader.*

PREP. **~ of** *loss of appetite loss of confidence*

PHRASES **no great loss** *She wouldn't be able to attend the lecture, which was no great loss.* | **a sense of loss** *She was filled with an overwhelming sense of loss.*

2 amount of money lost

ADJ. **heavy, huge, massive** | **slight, small** | **net** | **pre-tax** | **overall, total** | **economic, financial** | **trading**

VERB + LOSS **incur, make, suffer, sustain** *There's no way you can make a loss on this deal. The business sustained losses of £20 million.* | **cut, minimize** *He decided to cut his losses and sell the shares before they sank further.* | **recoup, recover** *It took the firm five years to recoup its losses.* | **offset** *We can offset the loss against next year's budget.* | **underwrite** *No bank would be willing to underwrite such a loss.*

PREP. **at a ~** *The bookshop was operating at a loss.* | **~ on** *We made a net loss on the transaction.*

3 sb/sth lost/killed

ADJ. **big, great, heavy, severe** *The enemy suffered heavy losses.*

VERB + LOSS **suffer, sustain, take** | **inflict** *Fighter planes inflicted heavy losses on the enemy.*

lost *adj.*

1 **unable to find the way**

VERBS **be | get** *We got lost in the woods.*

ADV. **completely** *By this time we were completely lost.*

2 **not knowing what to do**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *I felt lost without my watch.*

ADV. **completely, totally** *Alina was looking totally lost.* **| very | a bit, a little, rather** *She looked rather lost and lonely, standing in a corner by herself.*

lot *noun*

1 **whole amount**

ADJ. **whole** *She bought the whole lot.*

2 **large amount**

ADJ. **awful** *I've got an awful lot of work to do before I go on holiday.*

PHRASES **a hell of a lot** *a hell of a lot of money*

3 **empty ground**

ADJ. **empty, vacant** *He parked his caravan on a vacant lot.*

lotion *noun*

ADJ. **soothing | body, eye, face, foot, hand, skin | moisturizing, setting, sun/ suntan | calamine**

VERB + LOTION **apply, dab on, rub in** *She dabbed calamine lotion on her mosquito bites.*

lottery *noun*

ADJ. **national, state**

VERB + LOTTERY **have, hold** *We're having a lottery to raise money for homeless families.* **| win**

LOTTERY + VERB **raise sth** *The lottery has raised millions of pounds.*

LOTTERY + NOUN **ticket | winner | jackpot, prize** *a £3 million lottery jackpot* **| funds**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I won my car in a lottery* **| on the ~** *A couple have scooped £10 million on the national lottery.*

loud *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound | turn sth up** *She turned the radio up loud.*

ADV. **deafeningly, extremely, really, very | pretty, rather | unnaturally** *Her voice sounded unnaturally loud.*

PHRASES **loud and clear** *Tommy's voice came loud and clear from the back row.*

loudspeaker *noun*

LOUDSPEAKER + VERB **broadcast sth** *Loudspeakers broadcast the football results.*

LOUDSPEAKER + NOUN **announcement | system**

PREP. **from a/the ~** *Christmas songs blared from loudspeakers.* **| over a/the ~** *We heard the news over the loudspeaker.* **| through a/the ~** *A woman was addressing the crowd through a loudspeaker.*

lounge *noun*

1 **room in a house/hotel**

ADJ. **bar, cocktail, coffee, reception, sun, television/TV | attractive, comfortable, cosy, elegant, pleasant, spacious | attractively-furnished, comfortably-furnished, etc. | communal | hotel | guest**

LOUNGE + NOUN **area, bar**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

2 **room at an airport**

ADJ. **airport | arrivals, departure | passenger, VIP**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

love *noun*

ADJ. **deep, great, overwhelming, passionate** *her deep love for him* | **genuine, pure, real, true** | **unconditional** | **abiding, eternal, undying** *He had an abiding love of the English countryside. You have my undying love.* | **hopeless, unrequited** *a sad tale of unrequited love* | **thwarted** *a play about thwarted love* | **mutual** | **free** *They were into free love and avoided commitment.* | **first** *I like most sports but tennis is my first love.* | **brotherly, maternal, parental, sisterly** | **courtly, platonic, romantic** *the cult of courtly love in twelfth-century Aquitaine* | **erotic, physical, sexual** | **heterosexual, homosexual, lesbian** | **redemptive** | **divine, human**

VERB + LOVE **feel, have** *She felt no love for him. He had a great love of life.* | **search for, seek** | **find** *At last she had found true love.* | **express, show** | **declare, profess** *They publicly declared their love for each other.* | **promise** *'You promised me love!' he cried despairingly.* | **return** *He didn't return her love.* | **share** *They share a love of music.* | **give sb, send (sb)** *Bob sends his love.* | **be in, fall in** *He fell in love with one of his students.* | **fall out of** | **make** (= have sex) *It was the first time they had made love. He wanted to make love to her.*

LOVE + NOUN **affair** | **life** | **letter** | **scene, song, story**

PREP. **for/out of ~** *I did it for love!* | **in ~** *We are very much in love.* | **~ between** *the love between parent and child* | **~ for** *He did not know how to express his love for her.* | **~ of** *She had a great love of painting.*

PHRASES **an act of love, deeply/madly/passionately in love** *I was madly in love with her.* | **desperately/hopelessly in love, head over heels in love, love at first sight** *Do you believe in love at first sight?* | **the love of sb's life** *She was the love of his life.*

love *verb*

ADV. **dearly, deeply, passionately, really, tenderly, very much** *He loved his wife dearly*. **| unconditionally** *He wanted to be unconditionally loved.*

lovely *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound** *The cool water felt lovely after being in the hot sun. Your idea of a day on the beach sounds lovely.*

ADV. **breathtakingly, particularly, really, very** *She looked really lovely in the blue dress.* **| absolutely, perfectly, quite, utterly, wholly** *She's got an absolutely lovely face.* **| rather | hauntingly** *a hauntingly lovely melody*

lover *noun*

ADJ. **good, great, passionate | jilted, rejected** *She was shot by her jilted lover.* **| unfaithful | long-time** *They're colleagues as well as being long-time lovers.* **| live-in | secret**

VERB + LOVER **be, become** *They became lovers when her husband first went abroad.* **| have, take** *It was common for upper-class women to take lovers.*

low *adj.*

1 **not far above the ground**

VERBS **be, look, seem** *The windows look very low to me.*

ADV. **extremely, very** *The river was extremely low for winter.* **| a bit, fairly, quite, rather**

2 **small in degree/amount**

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get, run** *Our stocks of food were getting low. Supplies ran low.* **| remain, stay | keep sth** *The government wants to keep taxes low.*

ADV. **extremely, very** *The failure rate is extremely low.* **| comparatively, fairly, quite, rather, relatively**

PREP. **in** *This dish is very low in fat.*

low *noun*

ADJ. **all-time, new, record** *The pound has hit a new low against the dollar.*

VERB + LOW **fall to, hit, reach, sink to**

PREP. **at a ~** *Morale is at an all-time low.*

PHRASES **highs and lows** *He had experienced all the highs and lows of an actor's life.*

lower *verb*

ADV. **carefully, gently | slowly | hastily, quickly** *Christina blushed and hastily lowered her eyes.* **| down**

PREP. **into** *She lowered herself into the driver's seat.* **| onto** *He carefully lowered the sleeping child onto the bed.* **| to** *She lowered herself down to the floor.*

low-key *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | keep sth** *We want to keep the whole affair as low-key as possible.*

ADV. **extremely, very** *The wedding was a very low-key affair.* **| fairly, quite, rather, relatively** *We have a fairly low-key approach to discipline.* **| deliberately**

loyal *adj.*

VERBS **be, remain, stay**

ADV. **extremely, fiercely, intensely, very** *a fiercely loyal friend* **| absolutely, completely, entirely, totally, unfailingly, utterly | apparently**

PREP. **to** *The troops remained loyal to the president.*

loyalty *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, complete, total, undivided, unswerving** *He showed unswerving loyalty to his friends.* | **fierce, great, intense, strong, tremendous** | **conflicting, divided** *Rows with one's in-laws often create divided loyalties.* | **primary, prime** *His prime loyalty was to his family.* | **family, filial, group, personal, tribal** | **local, national, regional** | **religious** | **party, political** | **brand, customer**

VERB + LOYALTY **command, inspire, win** *He inspires great loyalty from all his employees.* | **feel, have** | **display, express, prove, show** | **pledge, swear** *They pledged their loyalty to the king.* | **transfer** *Some party members found it hard to transfer their loyalty to the new leader.* | **expect**

LOYALTY + VERB **be, lie, remain** *His loyalties lay with people from the same background as himself.*

LOYALTY + NOUN **oath**

PREP. **out of ~** *She stayed on at the school out of loyalty to her students.* | **~ among** *The village is the object of fierce loyalty among its inhabitants.* | **~ for** *Mass advertising creates brand loyalty for a product.* | **~ from** *The company expects loyalty from its employees.* | **~ to** *men whose loyalty is to their political careers* | **~ towards** *The team members felt tremendous loyalty towards one another.*

PHRASES **a conflict of loyalties, an oath/a pledge of loyalty, a sense of loyalty**

luck *noun*

ADJ. **better, good | pure, sheer** *It was sheer luck that we met like that.* **| bad, ill, rotten, tough** *It was rotten luck to be ill on the day of the interview.*

QUANT. **piece, stroke** *By a stroke of luck I came across it in a local bookshop.*

VERB + LUCK **bring (sb), give sb** *This ring has always brought me good luck.* **| try** *I decided to try my luck at the roulette wheel.*

LUCK + VERB **run out** *It looks as though our luck's finally run out.* **| hold** *If our luck holds, we should win.* **| improve, turn** *He went on gambling, sure his luck was about to turn.*

PREP. **by … ~** *By ill luck, my flight had been cancelled.* **| for ~** *I always carry it with me, just for luck.* **| in ~** *You're in luck?there are just two tickets left.* **| out of ~** *I had hoped there would be another train, but I was out of luck.* **| with ~** *With luck, we'll get there before it closes.*

PHRASES **beginner's luck** *I don't know why I did so well?it must be beginner's luck.* **| better luck next time** *If you didn't win a prize, better luck next time.* **| can't believe your luck** *He couldn't believe his luck when the other candidate for the job withdrew.* **| just my luck** *Just my luck to get the broken chair!*

lucky *adj.*

VERBS **be | get, strike (it)** *(both informal) hoping that some day she'll get lucky and win the jackpot* **| consider/count/think youself** *He considered himself lucky to have had the opportunity.*

ADV. **bloody** *(taboo),* **damn/damned, dead, exceedingly, extraordinarily, extremely, incredibly, really, remarkably, terribly, very** *She is incredibly lucky to be alive.* **| a bit, fairly, pretty, quite** *We've been pretty lucky so far.*

PREP. **for** *It was lucky for you that no one saw you.* **| with** *We certainly struck it lucky with the weather.*

lucrative *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | fairly, quite, rather | potentially | commercially** *a commercially lucrative venture*

ludicrous *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become**

ADV. **absolutely, perfectly, quite, simply, utterly** *The whole idea is absolutely ludicrous!* **| almost** *The plot was so simple, it was almost ludicrous.* **| faintly, rather**

luggage *noun*

ADJ. **heavy | hand**

QUANT. **item, piece** *You are only allowed one piece of hand luggage.*

VERB + LUGGAGE **carry | claim, collect | check in** *They like you to check your luggage in an hour before the flight.* **| load, pack, unload** *She packed all the luggage into the boot of the car.*

LUGGAGE + NOUN **compartment, locker | rack | trolley, van | label**

PREP. **in your ~** *I always carry a first-aid kit in my luggage.*

lukewarm *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem**

ADV. **decidedly, distinctly**

PREP. **about** *She was distinctly lukewarm about my idea.*

lull *noun*

ADJ. **brief, temporary | sudden**

PREP. **during a/the ~** *They crossed the road during a lull in the traffic.* **| ~ in** *a brief lull in the fighting*

luminous *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly, very | almost** *The colours were bright, almost luminous.* **| faintly, slightly**

lump *noun*

ADJ. **big, enormous, great, huge, large** *a great lump of cheese* **| heavy, solid** *a heavy lump of clay* **| small** *Stir the sauce to remove any small lumps.* **| painful** *He's developed a painful lump on his neck.* **| breast** *She's just had a breast lump removed.*

VERB + LUMP **have | feel** *She felt a lump in her breast.*

LUMP + VERB **form**

lunatic *noun*

ADJ. **complete, raving | dangerous | criminal**

LUNATIC + NOUN **asylum**

lunch *noun*

ADJ. **cold, hot | delicious, tasty | hearty, slap-up, splendid, sumptuous | four-course, three-course, etc. | leisurely, long | heavy | healthy, light | meagre | sandwich** *We went for a sandwich lunch at the local bar.* **| packed | picnic | pub | early, late | Sunday | annual** *The society's annual lunch will be held next Wednesday.* **| business, expense-account, working | school | literary | boozy, liquid** (= consisting only of alcoholic drinks)

LUNCH + NOUN **box, break, date, hour, party, table | things** *I helped wash up the lunch things.* **| meeting | guest | bill | club**

PHRASES **a spot of lunch** *Come and have a spot of lunch with me.* > Note at MEAL(for verbs)

luncheon *noun*

ADJ. **buffet | annual | anniversary, charity, literary**

VERB + LUNCHEON **have | attend | served** (= it is ready now) **| give** *The anniversary was marked by a luncheon given in the town hall.*

LUNCHEON + NOUN **room, table | menu | party | engagement**

PREP. **at ~** *They met at a literary luncheon.* **| during ~, for ~, over ~**

lung *noun*

ADJ. **collapsed, punctured**

VERB + LUNG **fill, refill** *I opened the window and filled my lungs with cool fresh air.* | **clear, empty** *Coughing clears the lungs of mucus.* | **block, choke, clog** *The smoke was beginning to choke her lungs.* | **enter** *Water had entered his lungs and he was choking.* | **puncture**

LUNG + VERB **heave** | **fill** *I let my lungs fill with the scented air.* | **collapse** | **burst** *(figurative) Lungs bursting, she flew across the finish line.*

LUNG + NOUN **capacity, power** | **cancer, complaint, condition, disease, infection, problems, tumour** | **surface, tissue** | **function** | **transplant**

PREP. **in the ~** *levels of carbon dioxide in the lungs* | **into the ~** *These particles are breathed into the lungs.* | **on the ~** *He had blood clots on the lung.*

lunge *noun*

ADJ. **quick, sudden | despairing, desperate** *He skipped past the defender's despairing lunge.*

VERB + LUNGE **make**

PHRASES **~ at** *The burglar made a lunge at him with a knife.* **| ~ for** *The boy made a sudden lunge for his wallet.* **| ~ to** *a lunge to one side* **| ~ towards** *a lunge towards the door*

lurch *noun*

ADJ. **little | sickening, sudden, violent**

VERB + LURCH **give** *Her heart gave a little lurch when she saw him.* **| feel** *John felt a lurch of dismay.*

PREP. **with a ~** *The train stopped with a lurch.* **| ~ into** *Starting her own business was a lurch into the unknown.*

lurch *verb*

ADV. **violently** *Suddenly the train lurched violently.* **| slightly | backwards, forward, sideways** *She gave a little cry and lurched forwards.*

PREP. **along** *The coach lurched along the mountain road.* **| into** *A man lurched into her office.* **| towards** *He lurched towards the door.*

PHRASES **lurch to your feet** *The drunk lurched to his feet and tried to follow us.*

lure *noun*

ADJ. **irresistible, strong**

VERB + LURE **resist** *She can't resist the lure of the bright lights.* **| feel** *He felt the lure of distant places.*

lust *noun*

1 **sexual desire**

ADJ. **naked, pure** *a relationship based on pure lust* **| carnal, fleshly, physical, sexual**

VERB + LUST **be consumed with, feel** *She felt no lust whatsoever for him.* **| sate, satisfy** *He used her just to sate his lust.*

2 **strong desire for sth**

ADJ. **blood** *The ogre demanded the annual sacrifice of a young village lass to satisfy his blood lust.*

VERB + LUST **be driven by, have | satisfy**

PREP. **~ for** *She was driven by a lust for power.*

PHRASES **a lust for life**

luxurious *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *The car felt luxurious.*

ADV. **extremely, positively, very, wonderfully** *Camping these days can be positively luxurious.* **| almost | quite**

luxury *noun*

1 comfort and pleasure

ADJ. **great, pure, sheer** *It was sheer luxury to step into a hot bath.* **| ultimate** *the ultimate luxury of a sauna in your own home*

QUANT. **touch** *Silk sheets added the final touch of luxury.*

VERB + LUXURY **enjoy** *enjoying the luxury of an expensive bottle of wine* **| afford** *We can't afford such luxury.* **| live in**

LUXURY + NOUN **hotel | car, coach, liner, yacht | cruise | apartment, flat, home**

PREP. **in ~** *brought up in luxury*

PHRASES **(live) a life of luxury** *I found out that he wasn't dead, but living a life of luxury in Australia.*

2 sth expensive and unnecessary

ADJ. **expensive | little, simple, small** *one of life's little luxuries* **| unnecessary**

VERB + LUXURY **afford** *We can't afford luxuries.* **| enjoy, have, indulge in | do without | miss** *He missed the simple luxuries of life, like regular meals.*

LUXURY + NOUN **goods, items**

PHRASES **have every luxury** *She's had every luxury in life.*

lyrical *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become, wax** *He waxed lyrical about the variety of fish in the river.*

ADV. **intensely, very** *There are some intensely lyrical passages in his first symphony.* **| almost** *She wrote an almost lyrical account of her childhood.* **| quite**

lyrics *noun*

ADJ. **song**

VERB + LYRICS **write | set** *Strauss set several of Mackay's lyrics to music.*

PREP. **~ about** *lyrics about death and misery* **| ~ by** *a song with lyrics by Lorenz Hart* **| ~ for** *the lyrics for a new tune* **| ~ to** *He wrote the lyrics to our first song.*

machine *noun*

1 piece of equipment

ADJ. **great, huge, large, powerful | automatic, electronic | labour-saving | ingenious, versatile | sophisticated | reliable | defective | cash, coffee, exercise, fax, sewing, (telephone) answering, vending, video, washing | kidney, life-support** *The crash victim is now on a life-support machine.*

VERB + MACHINE **operate, use, work | install** *We've had a new washing machine installed.* **| start, stop | plug in, unplug | build, make | service | design** *The machine is designed to fit under a counter.*

MACHINE + VERB **go, work** *Have you got the machine working again?* **| break down | run** *The machine runs on solar power.*

MACHINE + NOUN **operator | parts | tool** *machine tools for making weapons*

PREP. **by** *The potatoes are planted by machine.* **| in a/the ~** *Just put those clothes in the machine* (= the washing machine). **| on a/the ~** *I make my own dresses on my sewing machine.* **| ~ for** *a machine for making coffee*

PHRASES **a make of machine** *What make of machine are they using?*

2 system/organization

ADJ. **party, political** *The independent candidates did not have the support of a party machine.* **| administrative, government, state | propaganda, publicity | military, war** *the president's propaganda machine*

PHRASES **a cog in the machine** *(figurative) Tired of being a tiny cog in a vast machine, he handed in his resignation.* **| a well-oiled machine** *(figurative) The department ran like a well-oiled machine since the reorganization.*

machinery *noun*

ADJ. **heavy | complex, complicated, elaborate, sophisticated | electrical | agricultural, construction, farm, industrial, manufacturing, office, textile**

QUANT. **piece** *large and complex pieces of machinery*

VERB + MACHINERY **maintain, service | install, set up | control, drive, operate | renew, replace, update | house** *The machinery is housed in a special building.*

MACHINERY + VERB **drive sth, work sth | break down | hum**

PREP. **~ for** *machinery for grinding wheat*

PHRASES **the hum of machinery**

mad *adj.*

1 **not sane; crazy/stupid**

VERBS **be, look, seem | go** *He went mad and spent the rest of his life locked up in a mental hospital. The world had gone completely mad.* **| drive sb** *His experiences in the First World War drove him mad. The children are driving me mad!* **| consider sb, think sb** *Her colleagues thought her quite mad.* **| pronounce sb**

ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, utterly | barking, (stark) raving** *What a barking mad idea! You must be stark raving mad to risk your money like that!* **| almost | a bit, half, a little, slightly | dangerously**

PREP. **with** *I went mad with joy and danced a little jig.*

2 **angry**

VERBS **be, feel, look | get** *I get so mad when people don't take me seriously.* **| make sb** *It makes me really mad when people waste food.*

ADV. **hopping, really | absolutely | pretty**

PREP. **at/with** *My mum's absolutely mad with me!*

madness *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, pure, sheer, utter** *It's sheer madness to go sailing in weather like this.*

PHRASES **the first sign of madness** *They say that talking to yourself is the first sign of madness!* **| a moment of madness** *In a moment of madness, I said I'd help him.*

magazine *noun*

ADJ. **new, old | rolled-up** *She hit him with a rolled-up magazine.* **| colour, glossy | monthly, quarterly, weekly | local, national, parish | school, student | house, in-house, official** *the company's in-house magazine* **| in-flight | popular | quality | special interest, specialist | teen/teenage, women's | business, trade | listings** *Check a listings magazine for what's on this weekend.* **| computer, consumer, fashion, gardening, literary, motoring, music, news, satirical, style, travel | girlie, (hard/soft) porn, porno/pornographic, sex**

QUANT. **copy** *Why did you buy three copies of the same magazine?* **| edition, issue**

VERB + MAGAZINE **leaf through, look at, read** *leafing through the magazines in the waiting room I never read magazines.* **| edit, write for | produce, publish** *a company that publishes fashion magazines* **| buy, get, subscribe to** *Which magazines do you get regularly?*

MAGAZINE + VERB **come out** *The magazine comes out once a month.* **| be aimed at sb** *a magazine aimed at mothers with young children* **| be devoted to sth** *a magazine devoted to country life* **| carry sth, feature sth, run sth** *The magazine carried an interview with the actor considered Hollywood's hottest property.*

MAGAZINE + NOUN **article, interview, story, survey | ad/advert/advertisement | cover | editor, writer**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *an article in a women's magazine*

magic *noun*

1 **secret power**

ADJ. **black**

VERB + MAGIC **do, practise** *He earns extra money doing magic at children's parties. People found guilty of practising black magic were hanged.* **| believe in** *I don't believe in magic.* **| work**

MAGIC + VERB **work** *The magic slowly begins to work, and the princess starts to come to life again.*

PREP. **by ~** *The rabbit disappeared by magic.*

PHRASES **as if by magic** *The money had reappeared as if by magic.*

2 **special quality**

ADJ. **absolute, pure, sheer** *The show is three hours of pure magic.*

QUANT. **touch** *The fireworks brought a touch of magic to the occasion.*

VERB + MAGIC **work** *A hot bath and a good night's sleep worked their usual magic.*

magical *adj.*

VERBS **be | find sth**

ADV. **truly, very** *a truly magical experience* **| quite, totally | almost** *Her beauty had an almost magical quality.*

magistrate *noun*

ADJ. **examining, investigating, licensing | chief, senior | city, local, town**

VERB + MAGISTRATE **appoint (sb), appoint sb as | appear before, come up before** *He is due to appear before magistrates in connection with a public order offence.*

MAGISTRATE + VERB **hear sth** *A thief who stole power tools from a store later sold them in a pub, Whitby magistrates heard yesterday.* **| fine sb | remand sb in custody | sentence sb | adjourn sth** *Magistrates adjourned the case until June 9.*

PHRASES **magistrates' court**

magnet *noun*

ADJ. **powerful, strong | weak | bar | fridge**

VERB + MAGNET **act as/like** *The scent of flowers acts as a magnet to bees.*

MAGNET + VERB **attract sth**

PREP. **~ for** *The place is a magnet for tourists.*

magnetism *noun*

ADJ. **sheer, strong | animal, personal, sexual | the earth's, terrestrial** *changes in the earth's magnetism*

VERB + MAGNETISM **exert, exude, project** *He exudes a strong sexual magnetism.*

MAGNETISM + VERB **attract sth, draw sth** *The magnetism produced by the battery attracts the metal. His personal magnetism drew people to the church.*

magnificent *adj.*

VERBS **be, look**

ADV. **really, truly | absolutely, quite** *an absolutely magnificent performance* **| rather**

magnify *verb*

ADV. **greatly, highly, hugely** *The daring of his exploits had been hugely magnified by constant telling.*

PHRASES **magnify sth 10, 100, etc. times** *The picture shows the insect's head magnified ten times.*

magnitude *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great | sufficient** *a fall in costs of sufficient magnitude to enable us to reduce prices*

PREP. **in ~** *The effects were substantial in magnitude.*

PHRASES **of the first magnitude** *Stars of the first magnitude are visible to the naked eye. a disaster of the first magnitude* **| (by) an order of magnitude** *Her calculation was out by several orders of magnitude.*

maid *noun*

ADJ. **dairy, kennel, kitchen, laundry, parlour, scullery | lady's, personal | daily** *They had a daily maid, but no live-in servants.* > Note at JOB

mail *noun*

ADJ. **first-class, second-class | surface | express | registered | internal** *If we want to send something to another department, we use the internal mail.* **| international | direct** *direct mail advertising* **| incoming, outgoing | unopened, unread | electronic, video, voice | junk** *I throw junk mail straight in the bin without reading it.* **| hate** *He has received death threats and hate mail from angry fans.* **| fan**

QUANT. **item, sackful**

VERB + MAIL **send | get, receive | deliver | forward, redirect** *We got the Post Office to redirect our mail when we moved.* **| collect** *The mail is collected twice a day.* **| sort** *The postcode allows the mail to be sorted automatically.* **| check** *She checked her mail before leaving the hotel.* **| pick up | open | read | answer, deal with**

MAIL + VERB **come, go** *Has the mail come yet?*

MAIL + NOUN **order** *All our products are available by mail order.* **| message | item | program | system**

PREP. **by ~** *Send it by first-class mail.* **| in the ~** *My reply is in the mail. Is there anything interesting in the mail?*

mail *verb*

ADV. **direct**

PREP. **to** *The brochures are mailed direct to members.*

mailing list *noun*

ADJ. **free** *Why not join our free mailing list?*

VERB + MAILING LIST **go on, join, subscribe to | add sb to, put sb on | come off, unsubscribe from | remove sb from, take sb off**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *We're on the mailing list for the Film Centre.* **| ~ for** *a mailing list for primary teachers*

main *noun*

ADJ. **gas, water | burst, leaking** *There's a burst water main in Quarry Road.*

VERB + MAIN **lay** *They're laying a new gas main through the town.*

MAIN + VERB **serve sth** *The main serves four villages.* **| explode, leak**

MAIN + NOUN **electricity, gas, water** *an island without mains electricity*

PREP. **at the ~s** *Turn the water off at the mains.* **| on the ~s** *Some of the remoter houses in the village are not on the mains.*

mainstream *noun*

ADJ. **cultural, educational, political, etc.**

VERB + MAINSTREAM **enter, join | cut sb/sth off from, exclude sb/sth from** *These teachers have been cut off from the mainstream of educational activity.*

MAINSTREAM + NOUN **society | education, schools | parties, politics | art, cinema | media**

PREP. **in/within the ~** *He was in the mainstream of British contemporary music.* **| into the ~** *This technology was designed for specialists but is now starting to move into the mainstream.* **| out of/outside the ~** *He drifted out of the mainstream of society.*

PHRASES **part of the mainstream** *This style of drama is not part of the mainstream.*

maintain *verb*

1 **keep sth at the same level**

VERB + MAINTAIN **be anxious to, want to** *We are anxious to maintain our close links with the police.* **| have to, need to | strive to, try to | help (to) | be able to | be difficult to** *The government's position became increasingly difficult to maintain.*

PHRASES **the duty/need to maintain sth** *He emphasized the need to maintain the status quo.*

2 **keep sth in good condition**

ADV. **properly, well | poorly** *a poorly maintained central heating system*

VERB + MAINTAIN **be difficult to | be easy to**

PHRASES **be responsible for maintaining sth**

maintenance *noun*

1 **keeping sth in good condition**

ADJ. **annual, regular, routine | long-term, ongoing | proper | essential** *The power station has been shut down for essential maintenance.* **| preventative | careful | easy** *The engine is designed for easy maintenance.* **| low, minimal** *This type of garden requires minimal maintenance.* **| on-site | aircraft, car, machine, etc.**

VERB + MAINTENANCE **carry out** *We carry out routine maintenance of the equipment.* **| need, require**

MAINTENANCE + NOUN **engineer, crew, man, staff, team | bill, costs | contract | service** *We provide a maintenance service on all our products.* **| programme | work**

2 **money paid to support sb**

ADJ. **child**

VERB + MAINTENANCE **pay | claim**

MAINTENANCE + NOUN **payments | arrears** *He was jailed for failing to pay maintenance arrears.*

PREP. **in ~** *He pays £1,000 a month in child maintenance.*

major *nou*n > Note at RANK

majority *noun*

1 most

ADJ. **big, great, huge, overwhelming, substantial, vast | silent** *The march was by the silent majority who oppose terrorism.*

VERB + MAJORITY **comprise, constitute, form, make up** *English speakers form the majority of the population.*

MAJORITY + NOUN **culture, group, population | opinion, view | shareholder | stake** *The French company holds a majority stake in the retail chain.*

PREP. **in the ~** *In the general population, right-handed people are in the majority.*

PHRASES **in the majority of cases** *In the vast majority of cases, customers get their money back.*

2 in an election

ADJ. **handsome, huge, large, massive, overwhelming, substantial | clear, comfortable, decisive | bare, narrow, slender, slight, slim, small, tiny, wafer-thin | ten-seat, three-to-one, two-thirds, etc. | absolute, outright, overall** *Although they are the biggest single party, they don't have an outright majority.* **| simple | decreased, increased | working** *the first Labour government with a clear working majority in the House* **| parliamentary | government | Conservative, Labour, etc. | necessary, requisite**

VERB + MAJORITY **command, have | achieve, gain, get, secure, win** *They failed to win the requisite two-thirds majority.* **| defend, maintain, retain | lose | overturn | indicate, show**

MAJORITY + NOUN **government, rule | party | decision | vote, voting | support**

PREP. **by a ~** *They won by a huge majority.* **| ~ against** *Latest opinion polls have a comfortable majority against the reform.* **| ~ in** *a majority in Parliament* **| ~ in favour of** *Opinion polls indicated a two-thirds majority in favour of ratification of the treaty.* **| ~ over** *He has a decisive majority over his main rivals.*

make-up *noun*

1 **cosmetics**

ADJ. **heavy, thick | eye | stage** VERB + MAKE-UP **use, wear** *I never wear make-up.* **| apply, put on | remove, take off | touch up | smudge** MAKE-UP + NOUN **artist, girl | remover**

2 **sb's character**

ADJ. **genetic, physical, psychological**

PHRASES **part of sb's make-up** *Jealousy is not part of his make-up.*

malaria *noun*

ADJ. **acute, severe**

VERB + MALARIA **have, suffer from | catch, contract | carry, transmit** *Malaria is transmitted by mosquitoes.* **| treat | eradicate**

MALARIA + NOUN **sufferer, victim | parasite | vaccine | control, eradication** > Special page at ILLNESS

male *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **entirely, exclusively** *The club is an exclusively male preserve.* **| largely, mainly, mostly, overwhelmingly, predominantly** *The workforce is predominantly male.* **| essentially** *an essentially male Western view of progress* **| typically | peculiarly** *He nodded with a peculiarly male satisfaction at her capitulation.* **| traditionally** *traditionally male interests*

male *noun*

ADJ. **adult | immature, young | old | dominant** *the dominant male in the herd* **| large, powerful, strong**

MALE + NOUN **hormone | sexuality | chauvinism, chauvinist | identity, role**

PHRASES **the male of the species** *The male of the species has more brightly-coloured feathers than the female.*

malice *noun*

ADJ. **pure, sheer**

VERB + MALICE **bear (sb), feel, have** *He bore me no malice. She felt no malice. She has no malice in her.*

PREP. **out of ~** *She sacked him out of sheer malice.* **| with/without ~** *'You're lying,' he said, without malice.* **| ~ towards** *I bear no malice towards anybody.*

malicious *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **faintly, rather** *He gave a faintly malicious smile at her furious expression.*

malnutrition *noun*

ADJ. **severe | chronic | child**

VERB + MALNUTRITION **suffer (from) | die from/of**

mammal *noun*

ADJ. **large, small | higher, lower | common | endangered, rare | wild | aquatic, marine, sea | land, terrestrial | carnivorous, grazing, herbivorous | nocturnal | hoofed | warm-blooded**

MAMMAL + NOUN **species | prey**

PREP. **among ~s** *deaths among marine mammals*

man *noun*

1 **male person**

ADJ. **elderly, middle-aged, old, older, young** *a little old man* | **attractive, good-looking, handsome** | **ugly** | **short, tall** | **fat, thin** | **big, burly** | **little** *a nice little man* | **black, white** | **dark, dark-haired, fair, fair-haired** | **bearded** | **blind** | **sick** | **dead** | **intelligent, wise** | **great** *Several people made speeches in honour of the great man.* | **brave** | **charming, fine, good, kind, nice** | **honest** | **proud** | **quiet** | **bad, horrible** *What a horrible man!* | **arrogant** | **strange** | **brutal, hard, violent** | **married, single** | **family** *He's a family man who rarely goes out with his friends.* | **gay** | **professional** | **lucky** *He was a lucky man to have found such a partner.* | **poor, rich** | **betting, gambling** *I've never been a gambling man.* | **self-made** | **right-hand** *He found success hard to come by after losing his right-hand man.* | **innocent** | **free** *He walked out of court a free man.* | **condemned**

2 **human beings**

ADJ. **early, prehistoric, primitive** | **Stone Age, etc.** | **Neanderthal, etc.**

PREP. **in ~** *In man the brain is highly developed.*

PHRASES **known to man** *the most poisonous substance known to man*

manage *verb*

1 succeed in doing sth

ADV. **nicely, perfectly/very well** *I can manage perfectly well on my own, thank you.* **| successfully | eventually, finally | somehow | financially** *She was finding it difficult to manage financially.*

VERB + MANAGE **be able to, can/could** *Can you manage?* **| have to** *We'll just have to manage somehow.* **| be difficult to | be easy to**

PREP. **on** *I don't know how they manage on only £50 a week.* **| without** *I can manage without a dishwasher.*

PHRASES **manage on your own**

2 control/direct sb/sth

ADV. **competently, effectively, efficiently, properly, successfully, well | badly | actively** *We will actively manage your portfolio to maximize the return on your investment.* **| sustainably** *All our tropical timber products come from sustainably managed sources.*

VERB + MANAGE **be difficult to** *The children were very difficult to manage.* **| be easy to | learn (how) to** *You need to learn how to manage your time effectively.*

manageable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **easily** *The journey is easily manageable in half an hour.* **| quite | just (about)** *The job is just about manageable in the time.* **| relatively**

management *noun*

1 **managing sth**

ADJ. **careful, competent, effective, efficient, firm, good, sound | bad, inefficient, poor | day-to-day, routine | general, overall | business, corporate | personnel, staff | production | project, task | hospital, hotel, school | database, network, systems | asset, economic, financial, investment, money, resource | information | crisis | household | traffic | waste | forest, land | anger, anxiety, stress** *He's been sent on an anger management course to help him control his temper.* **| time**

VERB + MANAGEMENT **need** *The project needs stronger management.* **| be responsible for** *She is responsible for the day-to-day management of the company.*

MANAGEMENT + NOUN **company, consultancy, consultant, services | course, studies, training | plan, policy, strategy | expertise, skills | method, philosophy, practice, style, technique**

PREP. **in ~** *She is now celebrating ten years in management.* **| under sb's ~** *The club prospered under Ferguson's management.*

PHRASES **a board of management, under new management** *The restaurant is under new management.*

2 **managers**

ADJ. **junior, middle, senior, top**

VERB + MANAGEMENT **criticize** *The unions have criticized management over their handling of the dispute.*

MANAGEMENT + NOUN **board, committee, staff, team | meeting | decision | job, position, post, role | hierarchy, structure | buy-out | level** *This decision should be taken at a higher management level.*

PREP. **in … ~** *young people in middle management*

PHRASES **a layer/level/tier of management**

manager *noun*

1 **controls an organization/part of an organization**

ADJ. **assistant, junior, middle, senior | general | accountable, responsible** *Each programme is discussed with the responsible manager. A product manager is responsible for product profitability.* **| bank, business, commercial, corporate | area, branch, departmental, divisional, office, regional | functional, operations, personnel, product | advertising, catering, development, fund, marketing, production, project, sales, technical | successful | sympathetic** *It helps to have a sympathetic manager.*

VERB + MANAGER **promote sb to** *He has been promoted to business development manager.* **| assist** *Your job will be to assist the production manager.*

PREP. **~ for** *the marketing manager for a large company*

2 **looks after a sports team**

ADJ. **England, Scotland, etc. | team | caretaker** *He will be the club's caretaker manager until a new manager is appointed.* **| beleaguered** *another disappointing day for the beleaguered England manager* > Note at JOB

mandate *noun*

ADJ. **popular | clear | legal | presidential | electoral** *It is undemocratic to govern an area without an electoral mandate.*

VERB + MANDATE **have | give sb, issue | seek** *The party sought a mandate to reform the constitution.* **| get, obtain, receive, win | extend, implement**

MANDATE + VERB **run** *The mandate ran until 1947.*

PREP. **in your ~** *He failed in his mandate.* **| under a/the ~** *They ruled the country under a United Nations mandate.* **| with a/the ~** *The party was elected with a mandate to reduce the size of government.* **| without a ~** *They accused him of acting without a mandate.* **| ~ for** *She has received a clear mandate for educational reform.* **| ~ from** *a mandate from the United Nations to govern the territory*

PHRASES **an extension/a renewal of a mandate**

mane *noun*

ADJ. **flowing | shaggy, tangled, tousled | thick | luxuriant, shining**

VERB + MANE **have | shake, toss** *She shook her mane of auburn hair. The horse tossed its flowing mane behind it.* **| braid** *She spent ages braiding her horse's mane.*

MANE + VERB **stream** *The horse's mane streamed in the wind.*

PREP. **~ of** *He has a mane of white hair.*

PHRASES **a horse's/lion's mane**

manhood *noun*

ADJ. **early, young**

VERB + MANHOOD **grow to, reach** *He grew from adolescence to young manhood.* | **prove** *It seemed they were fighting to prove their manhood.*

PREP. **in ~** *He began to go bald in early manhood.*

mania *noun*

1 **extreme enthusiasm for sth**

ADJ. **gambling, railway, sex, etc.**

VERB + MANIA **have**

PREP. **~ for** *She had a mania for fast cars.*

2 **serious mental illness**

ADJ. **collective** *The violence of the crowd can only be explained as a sign of some collective mania.* **| religious**

VERB + MANIA **suffer from**

PHRASES **a state of mania**

maniac *noun*

ADJ. **sex | homicidal | religious**

PREP. **like a ~** *He was driving like a maniac.*

manifestation *noun*

ADJ. **concrete, physical, visible | obvious | public** *the public manifestation of private grief*

PREP. **~ in** *The manifestation of the disease in adults is less dramatic.*

PHRASES **in all its manifestations** *combating racism in all its manifestations*

manifesto *noun*

ADJ. **Conservative, Labour, etc. | party, party's** *We must all support the party manifesto.* **| election**

VERB + MANIFESTO **draft, draw up, write | sign | issue, launch, publish | support**

MANIFESTO + VERB **pledge sth, promise sth** *The manifesto promised reform of the social security system.* **| call for sth, demand sth | contain sth | say sth**

MANIFESTO + NOUN **commitment, pledge, promise | proposal**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The policy is outlined in the party's election manifesto.* **| on a/the ~** *Labour won the election on this manifesto.* **| ~ for** *a manifesto for reform*

manipulate *verb*

ADV. **easily** *They believe that voters can be easily manipulated.* **| successfully | deftly, delicately, skilfully | deliberately, systematically | genetically** *genetically manipulated organisms*

VERB + MANIPULATE **be able to, can | attempt to, try to** *Children try to manipulate you.* **| be easy to | know how to, learn (how) to** *She knows how to manipulate the audience.*

PHRASES **the ability to manipulate sb/sth**

manipulation *noun*

ADJ. **careful, clever, skilful | conscious, cynical, deliberate, systematic | political** *People think that the investigation was independent, but in fact a lot of political manipulation went on.* **| data, image, text**

PREP. **by ~** *The government has disguised the true situation by clever manipulation of the figures.*

mankind *noun*

VERB + MANKIND **save** *to save mankind from misery and destruction*

PHRASES **all mankind/the whole of mankind** *According to the Bible, the whole of mankind is descended from Adam.* **| benefit to mankind** *It is doubtful whether this research is of any benefit to mankind.* **| the dawn of mankind** *objects dating back to the dawn of mankind* **| the fate/future of mankind** *politicians who care about the future of mankind* **| for the benefit of mankind** *The results of the research were made freely available for the benefit of all mankind.* **| the history of mankind, known to mankind** *one of the most toxic substances known to mankind*

manner *noun*

1 **way of doing sth/behaving**

ADJ. **conventional, customary, normal, standard, time-honoured, traditional, usual | correct** *You are not approaching the problem in the correct manner.* **| appropriate, satisfactory** *I did my best to behave in the appropriate manner.* **| prudent, reasonable, responsible, safe, sensible** *Chemical waste must be disposed of in an environmentally-responsible manner.* **| efficient, productive, profitable | logical, methodical, orderly, rational, systematic | consistent, uniform | objective | arbitrary, haphazard** *Files have been stored in such a haphazard manner that they are impossible to find.* **| professional | constructive, positive** *The dispute could have been handled in a more constructive manner.* **| non-violent, peaceful | straightforward | suspicious** *He was behaving in a highly suspicious manner.* **| light-hearted | casual, easy, informal, leisurely, relaxed | formal | calm | off-hand** *He answered in such an off-hand manner that I wondered if he'd misheard me.* **| confident, decisive | dignified | diffident, mild, quiet, shy | charming, cheerful, friendly, jovial, kindly, pleasant, sympathetic | abrasive, aggressive, arrogant, unfriendly, unpleasant | forthright | brusque, cold | businesslike, no-nonsense** *His no-nonsense manner gave him the reputation of being a good doctor.* **| authoritarian, autocratic, high-handed | condescending, dismissive | authoritative** *The authoritative manner in which he talked concealed his ignorance.* **| bedside, telephone** *He's a good doctor with a sympathetic bedside manner. She has a very pleasant telephone manner.*

VERB + MANNER **have | adopt** *He tends to adopt a condescending manner when talking to young women.* **| act in** *She accused the teacher of not acting in a professional manner.*

MANNER + VERB **change** *His manner changed abruptly when he heard how much I wanted.* **| conceal sth** *Her brusque m* **| suggest sth** *He was not as loutish as his manner suggested.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The inspection was conducted in a thoroughly professional manner.* **| in the ~ of** *He lectured us in the manner of a headmaster.* **| in your ~** *There was something in his manner that I found very irritating.*

PHRASES **in a timely manner** *All claims must be settled in a professional and timely* *manner.* | **in no uncertain manner** *He told her in no uncertain manner that her behaviour was unacceptable.*

2 **manners: polite behaviour**

ADJ. **beautiful, charming, excellent, good, impeccable, nice, perfect** *It's not good manners to stare at people.* **| bad | table** *His children have no table manners.*

VERB + MANNER **have | teach sb** *Didn't your parents teach you any manners?* **| learn | forget** *I'm sorry, I was forgetting my manners. Can I offer you a drink?*

PHRASES **have the (good) manners to do sth** *He could at least have had the manners to answer my letter.* **| a lack of manners** *Her lack of manners is quite appalling.*

mannerism *noun*

ADJ. **odd | irritating**

VERB + MANNERISM **have | acquire, adopt**

PREP. **~ of** *He has this irritating mannerism of constantly scratching his nose.*

manoeuvre *noun*

1 **skilful movement**

ADJ. **complex, complicated | difficult | dangerous | clever, skilful**

QUANT. **series**

VERB + MANOEUVRE **carry out, execute, perform** *The pilot has to carry out a series of complex manoeuvres.* **| attempt | complete**

2 **clever plan**

ADJ. **successful | strategic, tactical** *Her withdrawal from the contest was a tactical manoeuvre.* **| diplomatic, political**

VERB + MANOEUVRE **carry out, execute**

MANOEUVRE + VERB **fail, succeed**

PREP. **by a/the ~** *By this manoeuvre, he hopes to gain an advantage at a later stage.*

PHRASES **freedom of manoeuvre** *The economic conditions are restricting the Chancellor's freedom of manoeuvre.* **| room for manoeuvre** *The government has very little room for manoeuvre on this issue.*

3 **military operation**

ADJ. **military, strategic, tactical**

VERB + MANOEUVRE **carry out, conduct, execute, perform**

PHRASES **be/go on manoeuvres** *The unit is on manoeuvres in southern Italy.*

manoeuvre *verb*

ADV. **carefully | easily | expertly, skilfully**

VERB + MANOEUVRE **be difficult to, be easy to**

PREP. **around, past, through, etc.** *He skilfully manoeuvred the motor boat past the rocks.*

PHRASES **manoeuvre (sth) into position, manoeuvre your way** *(figurative) He had manoevred his way into a position of strength in the party.* **| room to manoeuvre** *The clutter of ships had little room to manoeuvre.*

manor *noun*

ADJ. **ancient, former, medieval, old | country | royal | fortified, moated**

MANOR + NOUN **farm, house**

PREP. **of** *the ancient manor of Tregarrick*

PHRASES **lord of the manor**

manpower *noun*

ADJ. **qualified, skilled, trained** *a shortage of skilled manpower* **| medical, military, police, etc.**

VERB + MANPOWER **need, require | provide | cut, reduce** *Manpower will be reduced by an average of 20 per cent.* **| increase**

MANPOWER + NOUN **shortage | allocations, levels, requirements, resources**

PREP. **in ~** *a reduction in manpower* **| ~ for** *a pool of manpower for the new industries*

PHRASES **the availability of manpower** *The factory's opening hours over the holiday period will depend on the availability of manpower.* **| a reduction in manpower, a shortage of manpower**

mansion *noun*

ADJ. **great, huge, imposing, large | lavish, luxurious, luxury, palatial | fine | country | old | stone | historic | 17th century, 200-year-old, etc. | Elizabethan, Victorian, etc. | Beverly Hills, Hollywood, etc. | family | executive** *The rebels besieged the heavily-fortified executive mansion.* **| crumbling, deserted, ruined, run-down**

VERB + MANSION **live in | build**

MANSION + VERB **stand** *The historic mansion stands in 160 acres of parkland.*

MANSION + NOUN **block, flat, house**

manslaughter *noun*

ADJ. **attempted | involuntary | reckless | corporate** *The directors of the railway company could be charged with corporate manslaughter.* > Note at CRIME(for verbs)

manual *noun*

ADJ. **instruction, training | owner's, user | car, computer, sewing, software, etc. | maintenance, operating, operation, operational, reference, technical, workshop | comprehensive, detailed**

VERB + MANUAL **come with** *The computer comes with a comprehensive owner's manual.* **| check, consult, look at, read** *Check your manual for details.*

PREP. **according to the ~** *According to the manual, the wires should be the other way round.* **| in a/the ~** *What does it say in the manual?* **| ~ for** *an instruction manual for a knitting machine* **| ~ on** *a manual on teaching drama*

manufacture *noun*

ADJ. **large-scale, small-scale | commercial, industrial | local** *cotton ropes of local manufacture* **| metal, steel, etc. | cloth, cotton, textile, woollen, etc. | car, vehicle, etc. | drug, food, etc.**

VERB + MANUFACTURE **commence, start** *They commenced large-scale commercial manufacture of the chairs in January.* **| complete | be engaged in**

MANUFACTURE + VERB **start**

PHRASES **costs of manufacture, date of manufacture** *The date of manufacture of the jewellery has not been authenticated.* **| the method/process of manufacture**

manufacturer *noun*

ADJ. **big, large, leading, major** *the world's largest computer manufacturer* **| well-known | commercial | independent | foreign, overseas | car, chemical, computer, motor, textile, etc.**

PHRASES **the manufacturer's instructions** *The guarantee may be rendered invalid if the manufacturer's instructions are not followed.*

manufacturing *noun*

ADJ. **large-scale, small-scale | industrial | heavy | labour-intensive | computer-aided, computer-integrated, high-tech/high-technology | car, chemical, component, food, motor, textile, vehicle, etc.**

MANUFACTURING + NOUN **business, company, enterprise, firm, organization | division, facility, operation, plant, site, subsidiary, unit** *The company set up a manufacturing operation in Lisbon.* **| side** *He now works on the manufacturing side of the business.* **| base, industry, sector** *the decline in the country's manufacturing base* **| area, centre, district, region, town | capability, capacity | output, production, productivity | costs | worker, workforce | employment, jobs | methods, process, system, techniques | expertise**

manure *noun*

ADJ. **animal, chicken, cow, horse, pig | farmyard, garden | green** *A green manure is a crop grown mainly to improve soil fertility.* **| organic | well-rotted | liquid**

VERB + MANURE **apply, spread** *the best time to spread manure on the fields* **| dig in, work in** *Work in plenty of well-rotted manure.*

MANURE + NOUN **heap**

manuscript *noun*

1 **copy of a book that has not yet been printed**

ADJ. **original | autograph, handwritten** *the original autograph manuscript of the poem* **| unpublished | unfinished | literary, music/musical**

QUANT. **copy** *I only have one copy of the manuscript.*

VERB + MANUSCRIPT **write | type | edit, revise | submit (for publication)** *He submitted the manuscript to an editor at Longman.* **| accept/reject (for publication)** *He was delighted when the manuscript was accepted for publication.*

PREP. **in ~** *Her autobiography remained in manuscript* (= was not published).

2 **very old book/document, written by hand**

ADJ. **ancient, early, medieval | contemporary** *One contemporary manuscript shows Henry II crowned by the hand of Christ.* **| rare | surviving** *the surviving manuscript of 'Beowulf'* **| illuminated**

MANUSCRIPT + VERB **survive** *earlier manuscripts which no longer survive*

map *noun*

ADJ. **large-scale | small-scale | accurate | detailed | quick** (only used with the verb **draw**), **rough, simple, sketch** *'How do you get there?' 'I'll draw you a quick map.'* **| local | road, street** *a street map of central London a road map of the British Isles* **| world | bus, tube, underground | contour, outline, relief | geological, political | weather | Ordnance Survey | tourist | route | wall**

VERB + MAP **read** *Are you any good at reading maps?* **| check, consult, look at | draw | be marked on** *The museum is clearly marked on the map.* **| spread out, unfold** *We spread the map out on the floor.* **| fold (up)**

MAP + VERB **show sth**

MAP + NOUN **projection**

PREP. **off the ~** *Our village is just off the map.* **| on a/the ~** *The lane isn't on the map.* **| ~ of** *a map of the area*

marathon *noun*

1 **long race**

ADJ. **half, full**

VERB + MARATHON **prepare for, train for | compete in, run, take part in | complete, finish | win**

MARATHON + NOUN **champion, runner | racing, running** *He says that he keeps fit by marathon running.*

2 **long activity**

ADJ. **12-hour, 700-mile, etc. | car, cycling, etc.**

MARATHON + NOUN **journey, walk | effort | match, race** *a marathon five-set tennis match*

marble *noun*

ADJ. **cool** *The hotel is traditionally furnished, with cool marble floors.* **| coloured | veined | polished | carved**

QUANT. **block, slab**

VERB + MARBLE **carve (sth from/in), make sth from/in/(out) of** *a statue of Cupid carved in black marble* **| quarry**

MARBLE + NOUN **quarry**

PREP. **in ~** *sculptures in polished white marble*

march *noun*

1 **movement/journey**

ADJ. **long | brisk | steady | forced | approach** *They reached the enemy position after an arduous approach march.* **| fifty-mile, four-day, etc. | two hours, half a day's, etc.** *The camp was half a day's march away.* **| northward, southward, etc. | forward, onward** *(figurative) the forward march of technology* **| inevitable, inexorable** *(figurative) the inexorable march of time*

VERB + MARCH **begin, set off on** *The army set off on a forced march towards Berlin.*

PREP. **on the ~** *The army has been on the march for two weeks* **| ~ from** *the march from Paris to Brittany* **| ~ of** *a march of over 30 miles (figurative) the march of history/progress/science* **| ~ to, ~ towards** *(figurative) the steady march towards equality*

PHRASES **line of march** *Villages in the army's line of march were burned to the ground.* **| a … march away** *The border was still a day's march away.* **| the march eastward, westward, etc.**

2 **organized walk**

ADJ. **hunger, peace, protest, victory | anti-racism, pro-democracy, etc.**

VERB + MARCH **hold, organize, stage | lead | be on, go on, join in, take part in | halt, stop** *The farmers halted the march outside the Ministry of Agriculture.* **| break up** *The march was broken up by police in riot gear.*

MARCH + VERB **mark sth** *a march marking the thirtieth anniversary of the shootings*

PREP. **at/on a/the ~** *There were in excess of 100,000 people at the march.* **| ~ against** *a march against racism* **| ~ for** *a march for the victims of the war* **| ~ from, ~ of** *a march of over 6,000 people* **| ~ to**

PHRASES **a march past** *There will be a special march past of competitors.*

3 **music**

ADJ. **military | funeral, wedding**

VERB + MARCH **compose | play | strike up** *The orchestra struck up a military march.*

march *verb*

1 **walk with regular steps**

ADV. **briskly, swiftly | boldly | purposefully | inexorably** *(figurative) Time marches inexorably on and we still have not made a decision.* **| north, south, etc. | ahead, away, back, forward, off, on, out, over, past, up (and down)** *Craig marched up to the front door and rang the bell. Soldiers were marching up and down outside the government buildings.*

PREP. **from, into, on** *The invading army marched on Rome.* **| out of** *So saying, she marched boldly out of the house.* **| through, to** *They marched all the way from London to Edinburgh.* **| towards**

PHRASES **march in step** *conscripts learning to march in step* (= in time with each other)

2 **walk in a large group to protest about sth**

ADV. **peacefully**

PREP. **for** *marching for peace* **| in support of** *protesters marching in support of the students' demands* **| on** *The demonstrators marched on the Italian embassy.* **| through** *marching peacefully through the town centre* **| to, towards**

margarine *noun*

ADJ. **hard | soft | low-fat, polyunsaturated** *a tub of low-fat margarine* **| sunflower, vegetable**

QUANT. **tub**

VERB + MARGARINE **put on, spread (sth with)** *She put some margarine on her roll. Spread some margarine on the toast, please.* **| heat, melt, soften | beat (in), cream, mix, rub in** *Cream the margarine and sugar together. Rub the margarine into the flour.* > Special page at FOOD

margin *noun*

1 **empty space at the side of a page in a book, etc.**

ADJ. **generous, wide** *Leave a generous margin on the left.* | **narrow** | **left-hand, right-hand**

VERB + MARGIN **leave, rule, set** | **adjust**

PREP. **at the ~** *Start writing at the left-hand margin.* | **in the ~** *She scribbled notes in the margin.*

2 **space, time, votes, etc. by which sth is won**

ADJ. **comfortable, considerable, greater, huge, large, wide** | **narrow, slim, small** | **clear, safe**

VERB + MARGIN **have**

PREP. **by a ~** *She won by a clear margin.* | **~ over** *He had an 18-second margin over his nearest rival.*

PHRASES **by the largest/narrowest, etc. of margins** *He won by the narrowest of margins.* | **a margin of victory**

3 **amount of extra space, time, etc.**

ADJ. **good, greater, wide** *Sales predictions are open to wide margins of error.* | **narrow** | **adequate** | **safety**

VERB + MARGIN **allow (sb/sth), give (sb/sth), leave, provide** *The device gives a greater margin of safety.*

PREP. **~ for** *We have substantial reserves, which provide a good margin for uncertainties.*

PHRASES **a margin for/of error** *The schedule left no margin for error.* | **a margin of safety**

[4] **profit**

ADJ. **high, large | low, narrow, small, tight** *We're working to rather tight profit margins.* **| gross, net | profit | operating, pre-tax, retail**

VERB + MARGIN **achieve, have** *These manufacturers have high gross margins.* **| operate at/on, work to | improve, increase** *Higher productivity has enabled them to increase their profit margins.* **| cut, erode, reduce, squeeze** *Price rises have eroded profit margins.*

MARGIN + VERB **widen | narrow**

PREP. **at a ~** *They are operating at very low margins.* **| ~ on** *They hope to improve their margins on computers.* > Note at PERCENT (for more verbs)

marijuana *nou*n

QUANT. **joint**

VERB + MARIJUANA **smoke**

MARIJUANA + NOUN **cigarette, joint | plant** > Note at DRUG(for more verbs and nouns)

mark *noun*

1 spot/line

ADJ. **dirty, grease, greasy, grubby | visible | distinguishing, identifying** *Does he have any distinguishing marks?* **| chalk, pencil | bite, burn, claw, finger** (also **fingermark**), **scorch, scratch, scuff, skid, stretch, tyre**

VERB + MARK **get** *How did you get that mark on your shirt?* **| leave, make** *The dirty water left a mark round the side of the bath.* **| get off/out, remove** *I can't get the children's dirty fingermarks off the wall.*

MARK + VERB **come off/out** *These greasy marks just won't come out.*

PREP. **~ on** *There were grubby marks on the wall.*

2 sign of a quality/feeling

ADJ. **deep, indelible, permanent** *The experience left a deep mark on her memory.* **| real** *the real mark of a master craftsman*

VERB + MARK **bear, have | leave**

PREP. **~ of** *Such thoughtful behaviour is the mark of a true gentleman.*

PHRASES **as a mark of respect**

3 used to show the standard of sb's work

ADJ. **good, high | bad, low, poor | full** *I got full marks for my homework.* **| top | pass** *What's the pass mark in maths?* **| total | average**

VERB + MARK **get | give sb | take off** *She took off a mark for bad handwriting.* **| gain | lose**

PREP. **above … ~s, below … ~s** *If you get below 40 marks, you're not allowed to go up into the next class.* **| ~ for** *You get two marks for each correct answer. a good mark for geography* **| ~ out of** *How many marks out of ten would you give it?*

4 **level of sth**

ADJ. **halfway** *We've reached the halfway mark in the show.* **| high-water, low-water, tide**

VERB + MARK **set | reach | pass** *This year's sales figures have already passed the mark set last year.* **| fall short of**

PREP. **above the ~, around the ~** *around the £500 mark* **| at a/the ~** *The river was at its low-water mark.* **| below the ~, up to the ~** (= as good as sb/sth should be) *Your grammar is not quite up to the mark.*

5 **target**

ADJ. **easy**

VERB + MARK **find, hit** *The shot found its mark.* **| miss**

PHRASES **wide of the mark** *(figurative) Shock tactics often fall wide of their mark.*

mark *verb*

1 write/draw sth

ADV. **clearly** *My room was clearly marked on the plan.* | **carefully** *She carefully marked where the screws were to go.* | **indelibly** *One way of protecting your valuables is to mark them indelibly with an identifying code.*

PREP. **as** *Certain words were marked as important.* | **for** *Some of the crates were marked for export.* | **in** *Mark the position of all the building sites in black.* | **on** *All buildings are marked on the map.* | **with** *The boundary was marked with a dotted line.*

2 spoil/damage sth

ADV. **badly, deeply** *The paperweight had fallen onto the desk, badly marking the surface. (figurative) The town is still deeply marked by the folk memory of the Depression.*

3 be a sign of sth

ADV. **effectively** | **conveniently** *'Lyrical Ballads' conveniently marks the beginning of nineteenth-century poetry.* | **publicly** *The wedding ceremony publicly marks the beginning of commitment to another through marriage.*

VERB + MARK **appear to, seem to** *This speech appears to mark a change in government policy.*

marked *adj.*

1 **easy to see**

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **especially, extremely, particularly, strongly, very** *There is a strongly marked difference between the two creatures.* **| increasingly | quite**

2 **with markings**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **heavily** *Most cranes lay two heavily marked eggs.* **| attractively, beautifully, brightly, strikingly**

PREP. **with** *These trout are beautifully marked with bright red spots.*

market *noun*

1 **place where people go to buy and sell things**

ADJ. **open-air, outdoor, street | covered, indoor | antiques, cattle, fruit and vegetable, etc. | flea** (= that sells old or used goods at low prices)

VERB + MARKET **hold** *The market is held on Wednesdays.* **| go to | take sth to** *They took the pigs to market.*

MARKET + NOUN **square | town | day**

PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *to buy some fish at the market*

2 **business/trade**

ADJ. **competitive | active, booming, bullish, lively, strong, thriving | bull** *(finance),* **rising | depressed, dull, sluggish, weak | bear** *(finance),* **falling | steady | buyer's, seller's | foreign, global, international, overseas, world | domestic, home, internal, local | single** *the completion of the European single market in 1992* **| common | economic | free | open | black** (= illegal) **| bond, capital, commodity, consumer, currency, export, financial, foreign exchange, futures, housing, money, product, property, securities, stock | car, computer, etc. | job, labour**

VERB + MARKET **put sth on | come on/onto** *A new model has come on the market.* **| develop | break into, get into, penetrate** *They're hoping to get into the Far Eastern market.* **| capture, corner, monopolize | supply | flood** *flooding the market with cheap foreign goods* **| lose | depress | play** *an investor who knows how to play the market?and win*

MARKET + VERB **open up** *The Chinese market has opened up recently.* **| boom | pick up, rally | slump | be down, be up** *The market was down 15 per cent.* **| close** *The market closed weaker.* **| open**

MARKET + NOUN **price, value | conditions | leader | position, share | sector | trends**

PREP. **in/into a/the ~** *changes in the UK market* **| on the ~** *one of the best car deals* *on the market* **| ~ in** *a thriving market in second-hand cars*

PHRASES **be in the market for sth** (= be interested in buying sth), **the bottom's dropped/fallen out of the market** (= the market has collapsed), **a gap in the market, the bottom/lower/top/upper end of the market**

3 **people who want to buy sth**

ADJ. **big, good, huge, large | poor, small | expanding, growing | shrinking | ready | niche**

VERB + MARKET **create** *The company has created a niche market for itself.*

MARKET + VERB **expand, grow | shrink | collapse | bear sth** *We will charge whatever the market will bear* (= as much as people can be persuaded to pay).

MARKET + NOUN **segment | niche | research**

PREP. **~ for** *the market for new cars*

4 **the free market**

VERB + MARKET **leave sth to** *Some services cannot be left to the market.*

MARKET + NOUN **forces | economy**

market *verb*

ADV. **heavily | effectively, successfully | cleverly | aggressively | actively | selectively** *The printer is being selectively marketed in a handful of countries.*

PREP. **as** *It will be marketed as a tonic for the elderly.* **| through** *The product is being marketed through the existing sales force.* **| to** *The company is not actively marketing its products to schools.*

marketable *adj*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **easily, highly, readily, very | potentially**

marketing *noun*

ADJ. **effective, good | poor | aggressive | direct | global, international, worldwide | niche**

VERB + MARKETING **do** *The company has done some effective marketing of the new model.* **| improve**

MARKETING + NOUN **campaign, exercise, strategy | ploy, tool | director, manager | agency, company, department**

PREP. **in ~** *She works in marketing.* **| through/with ~** *We could get more sales through better marketing.*

PHRASES **sales and marketing** > Special page at BUSINESS

marketplace *noun* **(**often**the marketplace)**

ADJ. **competitive | commercial, financial | global, international | changing**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The company found it hard to survive in a changing marketplace.*

marquee *noun*

ADJ. **giant, huge, large**

VERB + MARQUEE **erect**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The wedding reception was held in a marquee.* **| under a/the ~** *The guests sat on a platform under a large marquee.*

marquess *nou*n > Note at PEER

marriage *noun*

1 **state of being husband and wife**

ADJ. **good, happy, successful | broken, disastrous, failed, unhappy** *She was the child of a broken marriage.* **| first, second, etc. | previous | early | late | conventional | modern | open | morganatic | loveless | childless | mixed | arranged**

VERB + MARRIAGE **have** *He had an unhappy marriage with an older woman.* **| propose | enter into | consummate | annul, dissolve | save** *They are struggling to save their marriage for the children's sake.*

MARRIAGE + VERB **last | be over, break down/up, end, fall apart, fail** *Their marriage ended in divorce.*

MARRIAGE + NOUN **vows | plans, proposal | partner | relationship | break-up, breakdown, problems | counselling, guidance | counsellor | certificate, contract | market** *Daughters were expected to join their well-bred friends on the marriage market.* **| bed**

PREP. **by/from a ~** *She's his daughter by a previous marriage.* **| by ~** *They are related by marriage.* **| in a/the ~** *She was the dominant partner in the marriage.* **| outside ~** *sex outside marriage* **| within ~ | ~ between** *the marriage between John and Elizabeth* **| ~ into** *his marriage into a wealthy family* **| ~ to/with** *her marriage to Jim*

PHRASES **ask for/win sb's hand in marriage** *(old-fashioned)*, **the break-up/breakdown of a marriage, give sb in marriage** *(old-fashioned)*, **the institution of marriage, a marriage of convenience, a proposal of marriage**

2 **wedding ceremony**

ADJ. **Christian, Jewish, etc. | civil | shotgun** (= arranged quickly because the bride is pregnant)

VERB + MARRIAGE **celebrate** *The marriage was celebrated in the cathedral.*

MARRIAGE + VERB **be held, take place**

MARRIAGE + NOUN **ceremony | licence**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *She wanted to be present at the marriage of her grandson.* **| ~ to** *Mr and Mrs Wall invite you to the marriage of their daughter Ann to Mr Thomas Lea.*

married *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel** *I wouldn't have felt properly married if it hadn't been a church wedding.* **| get** *When did you get married?* **| remain**

ADV. **newly, recently** *The newly married couple left for their honeymoon in Spain.* **| previously | happily | unhappily | lawfully, legally | properly, safely, truly**

PREP. **to** *She's married to an actor.*

marry *verb*

VERB + MARRY **hope to, want to** *I don't want to marry Robert.* **| agree to, promise to** *He promised to marry her when he returned.* **| be going to, plan to** *Matt told me he was going to marry again. They plan to marry next year.* **| forbid sb to** *Duty forbade them to marry.* **| ask sb to** *He asked me to marry him but I said no.*

PREP. **for** *He married her for love, not for money.* **| into** *the difficulties of marrying into the royal family*

PHRASES **get married** *They are hoping to get married next year.* **| marry late/young** *People are marrying later these days.* **| not be the marrying kind** (= not be the kind of person who wants to get married)

marsh *noun*

ADJ. **coastal, salt | freshwater | grazing**

VERB + MARSH **drain, reclaim**

MARSH + NOUN **plant**

PREP. **in/on a/the ~** *He keeps his cattle on the marshes.*

marshal *nou*n > Note at RANK

martial law *noun*

VERB + MARTIAL LAW **declare, impose, introduce, place sth under | lift**

PREP. **under ~** *The city remains under martial law.*

martyr *noun*

1 **sb who is killed/suffers for what they believe**

ADJ. **early | Christian**

VERB + MARTYR **make sb** *Killing him would only make him a martyr.*

PREP. **~ to** *a martyr to the cause*

PHRASES **a martyr's death**

2 **sb who tries to gain sympathy**

VERB + MARTYR **play** *Stop playing the martyr.*

PHRASES **make a martyr of yourself**

marvel *verb*

VERB + MARVEL **can/could only** *One can only marvel at the way the building has been constructed.* **| never cease to** *I never cease to marvel at his stupidity.*

PREP. **at** *He marvelled at how easy it was to make money.*

marvellous *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound**

ADV. **bloody** *(taboo, ironic)*, **really** *This is really marvellous news!* **| absolutely, quite, simply** *The food looks absolutely marvellous!* **| pretty**

mascara *noun*

ADJ. **thick | waterproof**

VERB + MASCARA **wear | apply, put on | remove | smudge** *Her tears had smudged her mascara.*

MASCARA + VERB **run, smudge**

MASCARA + NOUN **brush, wand**

masculine *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **distinctly, extremely, heavily, severely, uncompromisingly, unmistakably, very** *an environment which is heavily masculine the severely masculine cut of his suit* **| exclusively** *The ceremony is exclusively masculine.* **| overwhelmingly, predominantly | essentially | typically** *That's a typically masculine attitude!* **| inherently, intrinsically | overtly | aggressively** *He has an aggressively masculine approach to these questions.*

mask *noun*

1 **cover for sb's face**

ADJ. **face | gas | oxygen | surgical | Hallowe'en**

VERB + MASK **have on, wear | put on | pull off, remove, strip off, take off, tear off** *In the second part of the play, the actors take off their masks.*

MASK + VERB **cover sth**

PREP. **behind/beneath a/the ~** *Two eyes glared at him from beneath the mask.* **| in a/the ~** *two men in black masks* **| ~ over** *She wore a mask over her face.*

2 **sth that hides sb's real feelings**

ADJ. **blank, cold, expressionless, grim, rigid** *Her face was a blank mask as she answered my question.*

MASK + VERB **slip** *For a moment her mask slipped, and I saw how scared she really was.*

PREP. **behind a/the ~** *Behind the mask of friendliness, I know he really dislikes me.* **| ~ for** *His fooling around is a mask for his lack of confidence.*

mask *verb*

ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally | partly | barely | effectively**

VERB + MASK **tend to** *Wood stains provide good protection but tend to mask the natural grain of the wood.*

PREP. **with** *She masked her anger with a smile.*

masochism *noun*

ADJ. **pure, sheer**

QUANT. **streak, touch** *There's a streak of masochism in his personality.*

PHRASES **a form of masochism**

mass *noun*

1 **large amount/number of sth**

ADJ. **enormous, great, huge, large, vast | broad** *Their policies appeal to the broad mass of the population.* **| formless, shapeless** *When I washed the jumper, it just turned into a shapeless mass.* **| compact, dense, solid | chaotic** *a chaotic mass of ideas* **| tangled** *a tangled mass of hair*

PREP. **~ of** *a dense mass of smoke* **| ~es of** *(informal) There were masses of people at the concert.*

2 **Mass: Christian ceremony**

ADJ. **requiem, Sunday**

VERB + MASS **attend, go to, hear** *She never failed to attend Sunday Mass.* **| celebrate, offer, say** *The local priest celebrates Mass in the village church.*

PREP. **~ for** *a requiem Mass for the sailors who drowned*

massacre *noun*

ADJ. **appalling, bloody, cold-blooded, horrible, terrible** *an appalling massacre of women and children*

VERB + MASSACRE **be responsible for, carry out, perpetrate, take part in** *The massacre was carried out by enemy troops. As many as fifty men took part in the massacre.* **| be killed in | escape, survive**

MASSACRE + VERB **take place**

PREP. **~ by** *a massacre by rebel soldiers*

PHRASES **the victims of a massacre**

massage *noun*

ADJ. **gentle, relaxing, soothing | vigorous | back, body, foot, full-body, neck | cardiac, heart** *They managed to revive the injured driver with cardiac massage.*

VERB + MASSAGE **have, receive | give sb** *The physiotherapist gave me a massage to ease the pain.*

MASSAGE + NOUN **parlour** *She went to the massage parlour for a full-body massage.*

massage *verb*

ADV. **firmly, vigorously | gently, lightly**

PREP. **into** *Gently massage the cream into your skin.* **| with** *He massaged her back with scented oil. Massage it lightly with your fingertips.*

master *noun*

1 person in charge

ADJ. **political** *His political masters are all old right-wing politicians.*

PREP. **~ of** *He wants to be master of his own destiny.*

2 person with skill

ADJ. **acknowledged, great** *This portrait is the work of an acknowledged master.*

MASTER + NOUN **builder, craftsman**

PREP. **~ of** *a master of disguise*

PHRASES **be a past master at/in/of sth** (= to be very good at sth) *He's a past master at delaying meetings.*

3 Master's: university degree

VERB + MASTER **do, study for, take** *He did a Master's at Hull University.* **| get** *She got her Master's last year.*

MASTER + NOUN **Master's degree**

PREP. **~ in** *a Master's in politics*

master *verb*

ADV. **completely, entirely, fully, quite | quickly**

VERB + MASTER **be difficult to** *a technique that was surprisingly difficult to master* **| struggle to, try to** *the challenge of trying to master a new language* **| fail to**

PHRASES **master the art of sth** *He never completely mastered the art of lip-reading.*

masterpiece *noun*

ADJ. **great** *It's one of the greatest masterpieces of Western art.* **| minor | architectural, literary, musical**

VERB + MASTERPIECE **create, produce | be considered, be hailed as, be recognized as** *Within a week of publication, the novel was hailed as a masterpiece.*

PREP. **~ by** *a masterpiece by Picasso* **| ~ of** *a masterpiece of classical architecture* > Note at ART

mastery *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, complete, total | gradual** *Children show gradual mastery of reading in the first years at school.* **| practical, technical** *He plays the violin with technical mastery, but no feeling.*

VERB + MASTERY **have** *The allied bombers had total mastery of the skies.* **| demonstrate, display, show** *He shows complete mastery of the instrument.* **| achieve, acquire, attain, gain**

PREP. **~ of** *He acquired mastery of four languages.* **| ~ over** *The king had absolute mastery over the country.*

mat *noun*

ADJ. **dense, thick** *a thick mat of hair*

PREP. **~ of** *the dense mat of roots at the bottom of the tree*

match *noun*

1 **in sports**

ADJ. **big, crucial, important | exciting, thrilling | championship, competitive, cup, league | friendly | away, home** *He's such a keen fan, he even goes to all the away matches.* **| cricket, football, rugby, wrestling, etc.**

VERB + MATCH **play** *The match will be played in the new stadium.* **| have** *Figo had an outstanding match.* **| go to, see, watch | be defeated in, lose | clinch, win** *A late goal clinched the match for Porto.* **| draw** *We drew our first game of the season 1?1.*

MATCH + VERB **take place**

PREP. **during a/the ~** *an incident which took place during Saturday's match* **| in a/the ~** *She was injured in last week's match.* **| ~ against** *the match against Wales* **| ~ between** *the match between Japan and Brazil* **| ~ with** *They lost their match with Estonia.*

2 **for lighting a fire**

ADJ. **lighted**

QUANT. **box**

VERB + MATCH **light, strike** *He lit a match so they could see in the cave.* **| blow out**

PHRASES **put a match to sth** *Someone had put a match to the pile of papers.*

3 **good combination**

ADJ. **excellent, good, perfect** *The blouse and skirt are a perfect match.*

PREP. **~ between** *an excellent match between our goals and what your company offers* **| ~ for** *That jumper should be a good match for your trousers.*

4 **sth the same**

ADJ. **exact**

PREP. **~ for** *To forge the certificate, she needed an exact match for the paper and the fonts.*

match *verb*

1 combine well

ADV. **well** *As a couple they are not very well matched* (= they are not very suitable for each other). **| not quite** *The room was full of old furniture that didn't quite match.*

PHRASES **to match** *I bought a duvet cover and some curtains to match.*

2 find sth similar/connected

ADV. **correctly | carefully**

PREP. **for** *The control group in the experiment was matched for age and sex.* **| to** *The aim of the competition is to match the quote to the person who said it.*

3 be/make sth equal/better

ADV. **almost** *She found that his determination almost matched her own.* **| not quite** *Nothing quite matches the fine, subtle flavour of this cheese.*

VERB + MATCH **come close to | be able/unable to** *The company was unable to match his current salary.* **| try to | fail to** *Children can be made to suffer when they fail to match their parents' expectations.*

PREP. **for** *No other rock band comes even close to matching them for dynamism or style.*

PHRASES **be equally/evenly/well matched** *The teams were very evenly matched.* **| be unevenly matched**

5 provide sth suitable

ADV. **carefully | up** *We have to match up the right pet with the right owner.*

VERB + MATCH **seek to, try to**

PREP. **to** *The available organs are carefully matched to people in need of transplants.*

| **with** *The agency tries to match single people with suitable partners.*

mate *noun*

1 **friend**

ADJ. **best, good** *They've been good mates ever since they were at school together.*

VERB + MATE **have** *He's got loads of mates at school.*

2 **sexual partner**

VERB + MATE **attract, choose, find** *These birds have colourful feathers to attract a mate.*

material *noun*

1 **substance**

ADJ. **combustible, flammable, hazardous, inflammable, radioactive, toxic | recyclable | man-made**

2 **things for making sth**

ADJ. **raw** *Higher raw material costs have pushed up the price of many manufactured goods.* **| industrial | building** *a storeroom full of building materials* **| drawing, writing** *Prisoners were not allowed writing materials.*

3 **cloth**

ADJ. **thick, thin | coarse, fine | woven**

QUANT. **length, piece, roll, scrap, strip** *A patchwork quilt is a good way of using up scraps of material.*

4 **written matter**

ADJ. **fascinating, good, relevant, useful | source** *The letter were used as source material in this new biography.* **| classified, confidential, sensitive | unpublished | educational, instructional, promotional, teaching | biographical, historical | indecent, obscene, pornographic** *He was convicted of importing indecent material.*

VERB + MATERIAL **collect, find, gather, get hold of** *He's collecting material for a new book on space travel. I can't find any relevant material on him in the library.* **| contain, include** *This new biography contains a wealth of previously unpublished material.* **| produce, publish**

PREP. **~ for** *useful material for a documentary* **| ~ on** *original material on the First World War*

materialize *verb*

ADV. **never** *The hoped-for boom never materialized.*

VERB + MATERIALIZE **fail to** *The rise in share prices failed to materialize.*

mathematician *noun*

ADJ. **brilliant | distinguished, great** *one of the greatest mathematicians of all time* **| applied, pure**

mathematics *noun*

ADJ. **applied, pure | investigative | school | elementary, higher, primary, secondary**

PHRASES **a branch of mathematics** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

maths *noun*

ADJ. **basic | complicated** *Working out the quantities of the ingredients involved some complicated maths.*

MATHS + NOUN **problem** *The class were struggling to find the solution to a maths problem.* > Note at SUBJECT

matter *noun*

1 **subject/situation that must be dealt with**

ADJ. **important, pressing, serious, urgent, weighty** *He left, saying he had pressing matters to attend to. The question of his innocence is a weighty matter for this court.* | **awkward, complex, complicated, delicate, difficult** *I wasn't sure how to approach the delicate matter of pay.* | **no easy, (no) simple** *It is then a simple matter to print off the data you have collected. It is no simple matter starting a new business.* | **trifling, trivial** | **practical** *They've agreed in theory, but now we need to discuss practical matters.* | **family, personal** | **subject** *His articles deal with a wide range of subject matter.* | **economic, environmental, financial, legal, political, procedural, routine, technical** *The rest of the meeting was taken up by routine matters.* | **different** *I don't mind lizards, but snakes are a different matter.*

VERB + MATTER **bring up, broach, raise** *I thought I'd better broach the matter with my boss. The matter will be raised at our next meeting.* | **address, debate, discuss, go into, take up** *I don't really want to go into this matter now.* | **pursue, take further** *After legal advice I chose to take the matter further.* | **drop** *His lawyer advised him to drop the matter.* | **consider, examine, look at/into, tackle** | **clarify, clear up, decide, resolve, settle** *It's a relief to have the matter settled.* | **approach, deal with, treat** *Police are treating the matter as a murder enquiry.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I don't have much experience in these matters. Do I have any choice in the matter?* | **on a/the ~** *Speak to your manager if you need help on this matter.* | **~ for** *The incident is definitely a matter for the police.* | **~ of** *It's a matter of concern to all of us. We discussed the matter of whether or not to hire a bus. Getting the effect you want is a matter of trial and error.*

PHRASES **the crux/heart of the matter** (= the most important part of a subject/situation), **let the matter drop/rest** *She refused to let the matter rest.* | **the matter in hand** *Let's concentrate on the matter in hand for now, and leave other issues till later.*

2 **matters: situation you are in**

VERB + MATTER **complicate, confuse, make worse, not help** *It didn't help matters that I had a terrible cold. To make matters worse, my friend then lost her keys.* |

arrange *She always arranges matters to suit herself.*

3 **substance**

ADJ. **solid | organic, vegetable** *composed entirely of organic matter* **| inanimate, inorganic | printed, written**

matter *verb*

ADV. **a great deal, a lot, really** *These things matter a lot to young children.* **| hardly, little** *(formal)*, **not much, scarcely** *She could find a job. It hardly mattered what.* **| no longer, not any more**

VERB + MATTER **not seem to** *Somehow it didn't seem to matter much any more.*

PREP. **about** *It doesn't matter about the mess.* **| to** *It didn't matter to her that he was blind.*

mattress *noun*

ADJ. **double, single | comfortable | firm, hard | soft | lumpy, sagging** *an old bed with a sagging mattress*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *The children slept on mattresses on the floor.* **| under a/the ~** *My grandmother keeps her money under the mattress.*

mature *adj*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **fully | emotionally, physically, sexually**

mature *verb*

ADV. **fully** *a fully matured cheese* **| early** *This variety is easy to grow and matures early.* **| quickly, rapidly | slowly | emotionally, physically** *The teenage years cover a period in which people mature physically and emotionally.*

VERB + MATURE **allow sth to, leave sth to** *The cheese is smoked and then left to mature.*

PREP. **into** *She had matured into a beautiful young woman.* **| to** *a young man who is maturing to adulthood*

maturity *noun*

1 adult behaviour

ADJ. **great, growing, increasing** *I can see an increasing maturity in how she understands the world.* | **emotional, intellectual**

VERB + MATURITY **have | show** *She has shown great maturity in her behaviour this term.* | **grow in** *These latest paintings show how the artist has really grown in maturity.* | **lack**

2 full growth

ADJ. **full** *It can take years for these plants to reach full maturity.* | **physical, psychological, sexual**

VERB + MATURITY **approach, come to, grow to, reach** *The insects lay eggs when they approach maturity.*

maul *verb*

ADV. **badly, severely** *She was badly mauled by a lion.*

maxim *noun*

ADJ. **general, simple**

VERB + MAXIM **apply, follow** *If you follow a few simple maxims, your business should be a success.*

maximum *noun*

ADJ. **absolute | agreed, recommended** *Do not exceed the recommended maximum of three tablets a day.* **| legal, statutory**

VERB + MAXIMUM **reach, rise to** *The temperature reached a maximum of 35°C yesterday.* **| exceed | allow (sb/sth), permit (sb/sth)** *In the exam, allow yourself a maximum of 30 minutes per question. the maximum permitted speeds* **| limit sth to, restrict sth to** *The amount you have to pay will be limited to a maximum of £500.*

PREP. **above (the) ~, at (the) ~** *a journey of four hours at the maximum* **| below (the) ~, to (the) ~** *He is using his talents to the maximum.* **| (up) to a/the ~ | ~ of** *You can claim the allowance for a maximum of six months.*

PHRASES **maximum possible** *They fined her the maximum possible for the offence.*

May *noun* > Note at MONTH

mayor *noun*

ADJ. **local | deputy | lord** *In 1662?3 he served as Lord Mayor of London.* **| right-wing, socialist, etc.**

VERB + MAYOR **run for** *running for mayor of Bogota* **| elect (sb), elect sb as | serve as**

PREP. **~ of** *the mayor of Southampton*

maze *noun*

ADJ. **complex, intricate, tortuous**

VERB + MAZE **be/get lost in | find your way through** *He found his way through the complex maze of corridors.*

PREP. **in a/the ~, through a/the ~** *I followed him through a maze of narrow alleys.* **| ~ of** *I was lost in a maze of passages.*

meal *noun*

ADJ. **big, filling, heavy** *I always want to go to sleep after a heavy meal.* **| slap-up | lavish, sumptuous | square, substantial** *She hadn't had a square meal for days.* **| light, simple** *The bar serves light meals.* **| meagre** *a meagre meal of bread and cheese* **| four-course, three-course, etc. | appetizing, decent, delicious, excellent, lovely, tasty** *Thanks for a delicious meal.* **| balanced, healthy, nourishing, wholesome | main** *When do you have your main meal of the day?* **| evening, midday | hot** *Hot meals are not available after 10 o'clock.* **| vegetarian** > Special page at FOOD > Note at MEAL

mean *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become**

ADV. **really, very** *I thought it was really mean of him not to let her use the car.* **| a bit, pretty, rather, slightly** *That was a pretty mean trick. He's rather mean when it comes to spending money on the children.*

PREP. **to** *He's so mean to his mother!* **| with** *She's very mean with her money.*

meaning *noun*

1 what sth means

ADJ. **clear, exact, precise** *The context makes the meaning clear. What is the exact meaning of this phrase?* **| correct, true | original | double, hidden** *There's often a double meaning in jokes and riddles. I'm sure there's no hidden meaning in what he says.* **| figurative, metaphorical, symbolic | literal**

VERB + MEANING **get, grasp, understand** *I can't grasp the meaning of this quotation.* **| decipher, interpret, work out** *Historians are trying to decipher the meaning of the documents.* **| assign, attribute** *She assigns a meaning to his words they just didn't have.* **| bear, carry, have** *Some of the symbols carry meaning and some just represent sounds. a word that has more than one meaning* **| take on** *The word 'gay' took on its modern meaning in the 1960s.* **| communicate, convey, express**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *ambiguity in the meaning of a phrase* **| with a/the ~** *I am using the word with its original meaning.* **| ~ behind** *the meaning behind an event*

PHRASES **a nuance/shade of meaning** *It is difficult for a non-Italian to grasp all the nuances of meaning.*

2 purpose/importance

ADJ. **deep, real, true** *She's searching for the deeper meaning of life.* **| spiritual** *He found spiritual meaning through religion.*

VERB + MEANING **have** *Her work no longer had any meaning for her.* **| find | lose** *After his death, she felt life had lost all meaning.* **| give sth** *Falling in love gave meaning to his life.*

PREP. **without ~** *Young people can feel that life is without meaning.*

meaningless *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | render sth**

ADV. **absolutely, quite, totally | increasingly | almost, practically, virtually** *The phrase has become almost meaningless.* **| essentially, largely | fairly, pretty | apparently, seemingly** *apparently meaningless jargon*

means *noun*

1 **method of doing sth**

ADJ. **appropriate, best, effective, efficient, reliable, useful** *an effective means of mass communication* | **necessary, possible, practicable** *We will use every possible means to achieve our objective.* | **alternative, other** *War is famously 'the continuation of policy by other means'.* | **conventional, traditional** | **legal, legitimate**

VERB + MEANS **have** *We have no means of knowing how they will react.* | **use** | **offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *My English teacher provided me with the means to enjoy reading poetry.* | **devise** *Can you devise a means of overcoming the problem?*

PREP. **by ~ (of)** *The stone was lifted by means of a rope and pulley.* | **through ~** *They cannot achieve their goal through legal means.* | **~ for** *the means for achieving happiness* | **~ of** *a means of access/communication/transport a means of getting what you want*

PHRASES **a means to an end** *He saw his education merely as a means to an end.* | **by fair means or foul, by no means/not by any means** (= not at all), **ways and means** *There are ways and means of raising money.*

2 **money/wealth**

ADJ. **independent, private** *She must have independent means to live in such style.* | **limited, moderate, modest, slender** | **visible** *people who lack visible means of support*

VERB + MEANS **have** | **lack**

MEANS + NOUN **test** *Eligibility for the benefit was determined by a means test.*

PREP. **according to your ~** (= according to what you can afford), **beyond your ~** *Private school fees are beyond the means of most people* (= more than they can afford). | **within your ~** (= according to what you can afford) *She finds it difficult to live within her means.*

PHRASES **a man/woman of means** (= a rich man/woman)

measles *noun*

VERB + MEASLES **have** *All our children have had the measles.* **| catch, contract | immunize sb against, vaccinate sb against**

MEASLES + NOUN **virus | vaccination, vaccine** > Special page at ILLNESS

measure *noun*

1 **official action to deal with a problem**

ADJ. **appropriate, effective, necessary, practical** *We urge you to adopt all necessary measures to guarantee people's safety.* | **important, key, special** | **simple** | **desperate, draconian, drastic, extreme, harsh, radical, repressive, strong, tough** | **emergency, urgent** | **interim, short-term, temporary** | **defensive, precautionary, preventative** | **disciplinary, punitive** | **corrective, remedial** | **safety, security** *New security measures implemented to prevent further violence.* | **austerity, cost-cutting, economy, efficiency** | **economic, policy** | **government**

QUANT. **package, range, series** *a package of measures aimed at cutting pollution*

VERB + MEASURE **adopt, implement, impose, introduce, take** *Special measures are being taken to protect the local water supplies.* | **propose, suggest**

MEASURE + VERB **be aimed at sth, be designed to, be intended to**

PREP. **~ against** *tougher measures against racism* | **~ for** *measures for reducing delays*

2 **amount/quantity of sth**

ADJ. **broad, considerable, fair, generous, great, significant, substantial, wide**

PREP. **~ of** *He poured me a generous measure of whisky.*

PHRASES **in large/some measure** *His success was due in large measure to your help.* | **in equal measure, in no small measure**

3 **unit of size/quantity**

ADJ. **accurate, direct, objective, precise**

PREP. **~ of** *an accurate measure of length*

PHRASES **weights and measures**

4 **sign of sth**

ADJ. **crude, simple, true, useful**

PREP. **~ of** *Landed income was the true measure of the gentry.* > Note at MEASURE

measure *verb*

1 **find the size of sth**

ADV. **accurately, exactly, precisely | carefully | directly** *Any type of data that could not be directly measured was rejected.* **| easily | experimentally | up** *We need to measure the room up for a new carpet.*

VERB + MEASURE **be able to, can/cannot** *You can now measure its length more accurately.* **| be easy to, be possible to | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to**

PREP. **for** *She's being measured for her wedding outfit.* **| in** *Cloth is measured in metres.*

2 **judge the importance/value/effect of sth**

ADV. **easily** *The policy's impact cannot be easily measured.* **| effectively | objectively**

VERB + MEASURE **can/cannot | be easy to, be possible to | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *It is hard to measure the benefits to society of this scheme.* **| be used to** *the criteria that are used to measure performance*

PREP. **according to** *Is it really possible to measure the skills of such jobs according to objective standards?* **| against** *The school's performance is measured against a strict set of criteria.* **| by** *The policy's effectiveness cannot be measured by numbers alone.* **| in terms of** *Success cannot be measured merely in terms of the size of your salary.*

PHRASES **a method/way of measuring sth**

measurement *noun*

ADJ. **accurate, careful, exact, objective, precise** *It is important to take precise measurements of the structure. Objective measurement is difficult with such poor equipment.* **| laboratory, scientific | imperial, metric | length, pressure, temperature, etc. | body, bust, chest, waist**

VERB + MEASUREMENT **carry out, get, make, obtain, perform, record, take**

MEASUREMENT + NOUN **system, technique | scale, unit | error**

PHRASES **a scale/unit of measurement**

meat *noun*

ADJ. **fresh | bad, rancid, rotten** *That meat smells rotten.* **| tender** *Simmer the meat for 30 minutes until tender.* **| tough | lean | fatty | dark, red, white | raw, uncooked | rare, undercooked | cooked, cured, processed, roast, salted, smoked | cold** *a plate of cold meats* **| frozen | minced | luncheon, potted, tinned | sausage | organic | halal, kosher | crab, horse, etc.**

QUANT. **bit, chunk, lump, piece, slab, slice | cut, joint** *She always buys the cheaper cuts of meat.*

VERB + MEAT **consume, eat** *The animals do not hunt and rarely consume meat. Do you eat meat?* **| chew (on)** *chewing on the tough meat* **| barbecue, cook, fry, grill, roast, stew** *Fry the meat in a little olive oil.* **| marinate | tenderize | seal** *Turn the meat frequently to seal it.* **| chop, cube, cut, dice, mince | bone | carve, slice**

MEAT + VERB **be/go off, rot** *The meat has gone off.*

MEAT + NOUN **dish, pie, products** *recipes for simple meat dishes* **| market | cleaver | eater** *I'm not a great meat eater.* **| content** *These pies have a low meat content.* **| production | consumption** *Britain's meat consumption* > Special page at FOOD

mechanic *noun*

ADJ. **competent, good, skilled | chief | trained | car, garage, motor** > Note at JOB

mechanics *noun*

1 how sth works/is done

ADJ. **actual, basic, detailed, sheer** *We need to discuss the actual mechanics of the operation.*

2 science of movement and force

ADJ. **classical, fluid, Newtonian, quantum, statistical**

mechanism *noun*

1 **part of a machine**

ADJ. **firing, locking, steering, trigger, winding**

MECHANISM + VERB **operate, work** *The door locking mechanism doesn't work.* **| jam**

2 **how sth works**

ADJ. **effective, precise** *an effective mechanism for enforcing the rules* **| underlying | complex | social**

VERB + MECHANISM **provide** *The system provides a mechanism whereby information is channelled into the market.*

MECHANISM + VERB **operate, work | allow sth, ensure sth**

PREP. **by/through the ~ of** *The government is held accountable through the mechanism of regular general elections.* **| ~ for** *a mechanism for dealing with complaints*

3 **system of parts/behaviour that performs a function**

ADJ. **avoidance, control, defence, escape, survival** *The body has defence mechanisms against many diseases.* **| cellular, genetic, immunological, molecular, neural, physiological, psychological, etc.**

PREP. **~ for**

medal *noun*

ADJ. **bronze, gold, silver** *He won a gold medal in the 100 metres.* **| championship, Olympic | commemorative** *A commemorative medal was struck in honour of the event.*

VERB + MEDAL **be awarded, collect, get, receive, win | award (sb), give sb, present (sb with) | strike**

MEDAL + NOUN **winner | hope, hopes** *He is a major medal hope for Britain. Her medal hopes were dashed by injury.*

PREP. **~ for** *a medal for bravery*

media *noun*

ADJ. **audio-visual, broadcast, broadcasting, electronic, mass, news, print, visual** *The event was widely covered by the mass media* **| foreign, international, local, national | mainstream, official, popular**

MEDIA + VERB **report sth** *The local media reported rioting across the country.*

MEDIA + NOUN **attention, coverage, interest, publicity, reporting** *There was a lot of media coverage of the wedding.* **| campaign | report | event** *Sport has been turned into a series of media events.* **| blitz, circus, hype** *The company is anxious to play down the media hype.* **| spotlight | image** *She's very different from her media image.* **| bias | blackout, censorship | freedom | relations | baron, magnate, mogul, person, pundit, tycoon | conglomerate, empire, group, interests, organization, outlet | awareness, studies**

PREP. **through/via the ~** *propaganda through the media*

PHRASES **access to the media, the role of the media**

mediation *noun*

ADJ. **French, international, UN, etc.**

VERB + MEDIATION **accept** *Unless management accepts mediation, the strike will never be resolved.*

MEDIATION + NOUN **efforts, process**

PREP. **through sb's ~** *The conflict ended through the mediation of the United Nations.* **| under sb's ~** *under international mediation* **| ~ between, ~ by** *mediation by the prime minister between the two sides*

medical *noun*

ADJ. **full, regular** *Pilots undergo regular medicals.*

VERB + MEDICAL **have, undergo | pass** *He was accepted onto the course after passing the medical.*

medication *noun*

ADJ. **prescribed | over-the-counter | regular**

VERB + MEDICATION **be on, receive, take | prescribe (sb) | administer, give sb | stop** *She stopped the medication because of side effects.* **| need, require**

PREP. **~ for** *He is on regular medication for his fits.*

medicine *noun*

1 science of treating/preventing illness

ADJ. **modern** *advances in modern medicine* | **traditional** *qualified in traditional Chinese medicine* | **folk** *Garlic was widely used in folk medicine.* | **conventional, orthodox** | **alternative, complementary, holistic, homeopathic** | **preventative, preventive** | **academic, clinical, forensic, scientific** | **general** *She gave up general medicine to specialize in geriatric medicine.* | **geriatric, obstetric, paediatric, veterinary, etc.** | **Chinese, Western** | **private, public health** *She believed private medicine was a threat to the existence of the National Health Service.*

VERB + MEDICINE **train in** | **qualify in** | **practise** *people practising alternative medicine*

PHRASES **a branch of medicine** > Note at SUBJECT(for more verbs and nouns)

2 substance taken to treat an illness

ADJ. **powerful, strong** | **cough** *a bottle of cough medicine* | **herbal** | **prescription**

QUANT. **dose**

VERB + MEDICINE **take** | **swallow** | **prescribe (sb)** | **administer, give sb** | **treat sb with**

MEDICINE + NOUN **bottle, chest**

PREP. **~ for** *medicine for a chest infection*

meditation *noun*

ADJ. **deep, profound** *Techniques of deep meditation help people under stress.* **| quiet, silent** *He stared out of the window in silent meditation.* **| Buddhist, Christian | religious, transcendental**

VERB + MEDITATION **do, practise**

PREP. **in ~** *spending hours in meditation* **| ~ on** *The novel is an extended meditation on art, love and loss.*

medium *noun*

1 **means of expressing/communicating sth**

ADJ. **communication** *Radio is an important communication medium in many countries.* | **mass** | **print, written**

PREP. **through the ~ of** *The government communicates through the medium of television.*

PHRASES **a medium of communication**

2 **sth used for a particular purpose**

ADJ. **storage** *An optical disk is just another kind of electronic storage medium.*

PREP. **~ for** *she used her novels as a medium for encouraging political debate.* | **~ of** *the medium of study*

PHRASES **a medium of instruction** (= a language used for teaching) *English is the medium of instruction in many African countries.*

3 **material/form that an artist, etc. uses**

ADJ. **mixed media** *mixed media artwork*

PREP. **through a/the ~** | **~ of** *to express yourself through the medium of paint/poetry/drama*

meet *verb*

1 **come together**

ADV. **first** *the place where they had first met* **| regularly | never | up** *We met up after school.*

VERB + MEET **arrange to | chance to, happen to** *A year or so later I happened to meet him again.*

PREP. **for** *I arranged to meet her for lunch.* **| with** *Management will meet with union representatives next week. I met up with my friends in town.*

PHRASES **look forward to meeting sb** *I look forward to meeting you next week.* **| nice/pleased to meet you** (= a greeting used when you meet sb for the first time)

2 **satisfy sth**

ADV. **head-on** *Thet were determined to meet the challenge head-on.*

VERB + MEET **be able to, can | be unable to, fail to** *He had failed to meet his performance targets.* **| be designed to, be tailored to** *The course is designed to meet the needs of young learners.*

3 **sb's eyes/gaze/look**

ADV. **levelly, squarely, unflinchingly, without flinching** *Leonora met his gaze without flinching.* **| fleetingly | challengingly, determinedly**

PREP. **~ across** *Their eyes met across the crowded room.*

meeting *noun*

1 **when people come together to discuss/decide sth**

ADJ. **frequent, regular | annual, biennial, half-yearly, monthly, quarterly, weekly, etc. | all-day, hour-long, two-hour, etc. | afternoon, breakfast, lunchtime, weekend, etc. | full, plenary | formal, informal | inaugural | mass | open-air | open, public | closed, private | secret | joint** *Management have called a joint meeting with staff and unions.* **| general** *The society is holding its Annual General Meeting in the conference room next Monday.* **| face-to-face, personal | bilateral, trilateral, tripartite | high-level, summit, top-level | exploratory, initial, introductory, preliminary, preparatory | follow-up | extraordinary, special | crisis, emergency, urgent | crucial, decisive, key, vital | impromptu | pre-inquiry, pre-session, pre-summit, etc. | post-election, post-results, etc. | board, cabinet, committee, council, departmental, family, ministerial, shareholders', staff, team, union | inter-governmental, inter-ministerial, inter-party, inter-tribal, etc. | business | political | discussion | protest | prayer | brief | endless, interminable, long** *We had endless meetings about the problem. The meeting seemed interminable.* **| angry, difficult, stormy | fruitless, inconclusive | successful, valuable**

QUANT. **series**

VERB + MEETING **have, hold | arrange, call, convene, organize, schedule, summon** *The committee has called a meeting to discuss the president's death.* **| attend | declare open, open** *The chairman declared the meeting open.* **| close, declare closed | adjourn, break up | call off, cancel | postpone | host | chair, conduct, preside over** *I've got to chair a meeting tomorrow.* **| call to order** *The chairman called the meeting to order.* **| participate in | address** *He always spoke as if he were addressing a public meeting.* **| ban | boycott | disrupt**

MEETING + VERB **go ahead, take place** *It is unclear whether the meeting will go ahead as planned.* **| be aimed at sth** *a meeting aimed at restoring peace in the region* **| begin, open, proceed, start | adjourn** *The meeting adjourned for coffee at eleven.* **| break up** *The meeting broke up after a row over whether to allow cameras in.* **| close, end** *The meeting closed on a sour note.* **| vote** *The meeting voted 423?133 in favour of a strike.* **| discuss sth | agree to sth, approve sth | condemn sth | urge sth** *This meeting urges the company to reconsider its decision to close the factory.* **| express sth** *The meeting expressed concern that the problem had still not* *been addressed.* **| hear sth** *The meeting heard that two workers had been sacked on the spot with no official reason given.* **| conclude sth, decide sth, resolve sth | drag (on)** *The meeting dragged into the early hours of the next day.*

MEETING + NOUN **house, place**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I'm afraid Mrs Haley is in a meeting at the moment.* **| ~ about** *a meeting about the plans for a new road* **| ~ between** *a meeting between tutors and students* **| ~ for** *a meeting for parents* **| ~ over** *Directors called a crisis meeting over the future of the company.* **| ~ with** *a meeting with French officials*

PHRASES **the purpose of a meeting, the minutes of a meeting** *The secretary circulated the minutes of the previous week's meeting to all committee members.* **| the outcome/result of a meeting**

2 **coming together of two or more people**

ADJ. **accidental, chance, unexpected | fateful | clandestine, secret | historic, unprecedented | emotional | romantic**

VERB + MEETING **have**

PREP. **~ with** *I had a chance meeting with an old schoolfriend last week.*

mellow *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, grow**

ADV. **extremely, very | beautifully, delightfully, wonderfully** *a delightfully mellow flavour*

melody *noun*

ADJ. **beautiful, lovely, sweet | bold, simple, strong | complex | haunting, memorable | familiar, popular, traditional**

VERB + MELODY **play, sing | hear | have** *Most of her songs have a bold melody.* **| write**

member *noun*

ADJ. **key, leading, powerful, prominent | junior, senior | long-serving, long-standing, long-time | board, club, committee, crew, family, group, party, staff, team, union | individual** *Subscriptions are cheaper for individual members.* **| founder | active, enthusiastic** *She's an active member of her local church.* **| honorary | full | associate | life** *a life member of the Red Cross* **| paid-up** *He was a paid-up member of the Communist Party.*

VERB + MEMBER **become | resign as**

MEMBER + VERB **join sth | resign**

MEMBER + NOUN **country, nation, state**

PHRASES **a member of staff** *All members of staff will receive a pay rise.*

PREP. **~ of** *I've become a member of our local sports club.*

membership *noun*

ADJ. **associate, corporate, full, honorary, temporary | club, party, union** *to apply for union membership*

VERB + MEMBERSHIP **apply for | renew | grant sb | resign** *He has resigned his membership of the club.*

MEMBERSHIP + NOUN **fee**

membrane *noun*

ADJ. **thin | permeable, semi-permeable | cell | cellular | mucous**

MEMBRANE + VERB **surround sth**

MEMBRANE + NOUN **wall**

PREP. **through a/the ~** *The virus then passes through the cell membrane.*

memento *noun*

ADJ. **family, personal | permanent**

VERB + MEMENTO **be presented with, receive**

PREP. **as a ~** *They gave him a watch as a memento of his time with the company.* **| ~ for** *The director will be presented with a memento for his long years of service.* **| ~ from** *a memento from his dear friends* **| ~ of** *The photos will be a permanent memento of your wedding.*

memo *noun*

ADJ. **internal**

QUANT. **copy**

VERB + MEMO **draft, write | circulate, send (out) | receive | sign | leak**

MEMO + NOUN **pad**

PREP. **in a/the ~ | ~ from, ~ of** *my memo of 28 June, 2001* **| ~ on** *A memo on the curriculum changes from the Head of Education.* **| ~ to** *She ciurculated a memo to the staff.*

memoirs *noun*

ADJ. **political** *the market for political memoirs*

VERB + MEMOIRS **publish, write | read**

PREP. **in your ~** *She describes in her memoirs how she coped with her mother's death.*

memorable *adj.*

VERBS **be** *It was a truly memorable experience.*

ADV. **extremely, most, particularly, truly, very** *one particularly memorable evening last year*

PREP. **for** *The holiday was memorable for the food.*

memorandum *noun*

ADJ. **internal | confidential, private, secret | brief | detailed | explanatory, factual**

QUANT. **copy**

VERB + MEMORANDUM **draft, draw up, prepare, write | issue, send, submit | sign | date** *The memorandum was dated 23 August, 2001.* **| leak**

MEMORANDUM + VERB **set sth out**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Refer to the terms set out in the company's memorandum.* **| ~ from, ~ of** *your memorandum of 18 February, 2001* **| ~ on, ~ to**

memorial *noun*

ADJ. **lasting, permanent** *The statue is a lasting memorial to those who died in the war.* **| fitting | war**

VERB + MEMORIAL **build, erect, put up | unveil**

MEMORIAL + VERB **commemorate sb/sth | stand** *The memorial stands on the village green.*

MEMORIAL + NOUN **ceremony, service** *a memorial service for sailors drowned at sea*

PREP. **~ for** *a memorial for victims of the air crash* **| ~ to** *The prime minister today unveiled a memorial to those who died in the disaster.*

memory *noun*

1 **ability to remember**

ADJ. **excellent, good, long, prodigious, retentive | bad, poor, short | long-term, short-term** *His short-term memory was damaged in the accident.* **| visual** *Bad spellers have a weak visual memory.* **| photographic**

VERB + MEMORY **jog, refresh** *Seeing your name in the paper jogged my memory.* **| lose** *Most people start to lose their memory as they get older.* **| commit sth to** *I committed the number to memory and threw the letter away.*

PREP. **from ~** *He recited the whole poem from memory.* **| ~ for** *I have a good memory for faces.*

PHRASES **in living/recent memory** *the coldest winter in living memory*

2 **thought of the past**

ADJ. **childhood, early** *My earliest childhood memory is of falling in a pond in winter.* **| dim, distant, fading, hazy, vague | clear, vivid | affectionate, fond, good, happy, lovely, nostalgic, pleasant, positive, precious, sweet, warm, wonderful | bitter-sweet | bad, bitter, disturbing, embarrassing, horrific, painful, sad, traumatic, unhappy, unpleasant | abiding, enduring, lasting, lingering** *My abiding memory of our first meeting is of a girl too shy to talk.*

VERB + MEMORY **bring back, evoke, rekindle, revive, stir (up) | blot out** *He tried to blot out his memories of the ordeal.*

MEMORY + VERB **come flooding back, flood back** *When we visited my old family home, memories came flooding back.* **| fade**

PREP. **in ~ of** *He planted some apple trees in memory of his wife.* **| ~ from** *Smells and tastes often evoke memories from the past.* **| ~ of** *fond memories of her childhood*

menace *noun*

1 **danger**

ADJ. **growing, increased, increasing** *the growing menace of drugs* **| serious**

VERB + MENACE **pose** *the menace posed by car fumes* **| combat, counter** *Shop owners are struggling to combat the menace of armed robbery.*

PREP. **~ to** *He's a menace to society.*

2 **threatening quality**

ADJ. **hidden, quiet, silent** *‘Where do you think you're going?’ he said with quiet menace.*

PREP. **with ~** *eyes glittering with menace*

PHRASES **an air of menace** *The scar down his face added to his air of menace.*

menacing *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become**

ADV. **almost** *His voice was quiet and almost menacing.* **| faintly, rather, slightly** *She had a slightly menacing manner.* **| darkly** *darkly menacing alleys* **| quietly**

meningitis *noun*

ADJ. **acute | bacterial, meningococcal, viral**

QUANT. **case**

VERB + MENINGITIS **have, suffer from** *He is suffering from viral meningitis.* **| catch, contract** > Special page at ILLNESS

menopause *noun*

ADJ. early | male *The male menopause is said to affect men who are approaching middle age.*

VERB + MENOPAUSE reach | go through

PREP. at the ~, after/past the ~ *a disease that can afflict women past the menopause* **| during the ~**

mention *noun*

ADJ. **brief, passing | special | earliest, first** *The earliest mention of the village is in a 16th-century manuscript.*

VERB + MENTION **deserve** *My cousin deserves a mention for all his hard work.* **| get, receive** *His professor gets a mention in the acknowledgements.* **| make** *Special mention must be made of Yuki Yamagishi's wonderful performance as the doctor.* **| hear** *I've heard no mention of a salary increase this year.*

PREP. **at the ~ of** *At the very mention of his name, Kate started shaking with fright.*

mention *verb*

ADV. **already, earlier, just, previously, so far** *As already mentioned, the legislation does not consider low pay as an acceptable reason for turning down a job. This aspect is discussed further by Crane, whom I mentioned earlier. All the approaches mentioned so far are fairly conventional.* **| commonly, frequently | rarely, seldom | briefly, in passing** *He only mentioned his work in passing.* **| casually** *I casually mentioned that I might be interested in working abroad.* **| directly, explicitly, expressly, specifically** *She did not specifically mention your name.* **| inadvertently | barely, hardly, scarcely | not actually, not at all** *Although she didn't actually mention the move, I am sure that was in her mind. My name wasn't mentioned at all.*

VERB + MENTION **fail to, forget to, omit to**

PREP. **as** *Next spring has been mentioned as a possible time for the event.* **| in** *She didn't mention the economy in her speech.* **| in connection with sth** *I was very angry when I saw my name mentioned in connection with an incident that had absolutely nothing to do with me.* **| to** *Please don't mention this to Sally.*

PHRASES **avoid mentioning sb/sth** *He avoided mentioning his family.* **| be worth mentioning sth** *At this point, it is worth mentioning that many people who were adopted as babies have no desire to meet their biological parents.* **| mentioned above/below** *In the example mentioned above, either method of construction could have been used.* **| mentioned in dispatches** *Wounded in action, he was twice mentioned in dispatches.* **| mention the fact that … , not to mention** (= used to add extra information) *He has two big houses in this country, not to mention his villa in France.* **| now you come to mention it** *Now that you come to mention it, he did say something about a ghost.* **| to mention but a few** *plumbers, printers, dyers, glaziers and potters, to mention but a few*

menu *noun*

1 **list of dishes**

ADJ. **extensive | varied | daily | fixed price, set, table d'hote | a la carte | three-course, etc. | traditional | breakfast, dinner, lunch | bar, pub, restaurant | dinner-party | fish, vegetarian**

VERB + MENU **consult, have, look at, read, see, study** *May we have the menu?* **| do, have, offer** *Many restaurants do a very reasonable set menu at lunchtime.* **| choose (sth) from, order (sth) from | plan**

MENU + VERB **offer sth** *a menu offering many vegetarian dishes*

MENU + NOUN **board** *The chef was chalking the daily specials on the menu board.*

PREP. **on the ~** *What's on the menu this evening?*

PHRASES **a choice of menu** *Passengers are offered a daily choice of menu.*

2 **on a computer**

ADJ. **pop-up, pull-down | main | sub | edit, file, options, etc.**

VERB + MENU **select sth from**

MENU + NOUN **bar | item, option** > Special page at COMPUTER

mercenary *noun*

ADJ. **foreign**

QUANT. **army, band** *a small army of mercenaries*

VERB + MERCENARY **employ, hire, recruit | pay**

MERCENARY + NOUN **army**

merchandise *noun*

ADJ. **general**

QUANT. **piece** *a substandard piece of merchandise*

VERB + MERCHANDISE **buy, purchase | carry, sell** *The company carries a wide range of merchandise.*

PHRASES **a range of merchandise**

merchant *noun*

ADJ. **prosperous, rich, wealthy | powerful, prominent, substantial, successful | foreign, local | builders', coal, corn, timber, wine, wool** *We bought a ton of sand from the builders' merchant.*

MERCHANT + NOUN **fleet, marine, seaman, ship, shipping, vessel**

mercy *noun*

ADJ. **divine, infinite** *God's infinite mercy*

VERB + MERCY **ask for, beg for, plead for, scream for | have, show (sb)** *God have mercy on us! They showed no mercy to their captives.*

MERCY + NOUN **dash, flight, mission** *Aid agencies are making mercy flights into the flood region.* **| killing**

PREP. **at the ~ of** *We're at the mercy of the weather.* **| without ~** *The terrorists are completely without mercy.*

merger *noun*

ADJ. **proposed**

VERB + MERGER **plan | agree | carry out**

MERGER + VERB **go through** *If the merger goes through, thousands of jobs will be lost.*

MERGER + NOUN **activity | proposal | negotiations | agreement**

PREP. **~ between** *the merger between Lake Biscuits and D M Confectionery*

merit *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, exceptional, great, outstanding | aesthetic, architectural, artistic, literary** *The film has no artistic merit whatsoever.* **| relative** *We need to consider the relative merits of both makes of cooker.* **| individual** *Each case should be judged on its individual merits.*

VERB + MERIT **have | argue, assess, consider, debate, discuss, judge** *We need to assess the merits of both proposals before making our decision.*

MERIT + NOUN **award** *She received a merit award for outstanding work.*

PREP. **according to ~** *Films are given a rating of one to five stars according to merit.* **| on ~** *Prizes are awarded entirely on merit.*

PHRASES **no merit in doing sth** *I can see no merit in excluding the child from school.* **| order of merit** *The winners are ranked in order of merit.*

merit *verb*

ADV. **certainly, clearly | hardly** *The question hardly merits an answer.*

mess *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, complete, real, right, total | appalling, awful, bloody** *(taboo)*, **nasty, terrible | confusing | tangled, untidy** *Her hair was a tangled mess.* **| gooey, slimy, soggy, sticky | emotional** *He's an emotional mess since his girlfriend left him.* **| economic, financial**

VERB + MESS **leave, make** *Must you always leave such a mess? She felt she was making a terrible mess of her life.* **| clean up, clear up, tidy up, wipe up | feel** *I felt a mess.* **| look | create, get sb into** *Who got us into this mess in the first place?* **| deal with, get sb out of, sort out**

PREP. **in a ~** *The kitchen's in an awful mess.* **| ~ of** *There was a soggy mess of porridge on the table.*

message *noun*

1 **from one person to another**

ADJ. **important, urgent, vital | brief, short | coded, cryptic, scrambled | secret | garbled | email, radio, text | heartfelt** *The family sent a heartfelt message of thanks to everyone who helped.*

VERB + MESSAGE **convey, give sb, pass on, relay** *He's not here?I'll pass on the message.* **| take** *She's out?can I take a message?* **| carry, deliver, take sb | send, transmit | leave (sb)** *I left a message for her at reception.* **| get, receive** *I never got your message.*

MESSAGE + VERB **come | say sth, tell sb sth**

PREP. **~ about** *There was a message about the meeting.* **| ~ for** *Are there any messages for me?* **| ~ from** *a urgent message from your mother* **| ~ of** *They sent messages of hope to prisoners of war.* **| ~ to** *The message was to your sister, not you.*

2 **main idea of a book, speech, etc.**

ADJ. **important | fundamental, main | clear, simple, unambiguous, unmistakeable | ambiguous, conflicting, mixed | powerful, strong | positive, upbeat | stark, uncomfortable | hidden, implicit, subliminal** *stories with hidden moral messages* **| anti-drugs, anti-war, etc.** *a party with an anti-immigrant message* **| ideological, moral, political, social**

VERB + MESSAGE **spread** *spreading the message of the Bible* **| drive home, get/put across** *We need to get this important message across to teenage smokers.* **| reinforce**

MESSAGE + VERB **emerge** *A clear message is emerging from these government statements.*

PREP. **~ of** *The president toured the country spreading the message of national unity.*

metal *noun*

ADJ. **soft | pure | ferrous, non-ferrous | base, heavy, noble, precious, rare, trace, transition | cold, hot** *the sudden pressure of cold metal against her cheek* **| bare | solid | gleaming, shining, shiny | tarnished | corroded, rusty | scrap** *to recycle scrap metal* **| twisted** *The bomb left a pile of jagged glass and twisted metal.* **| ductile | molten | sheet | toxic**

QUANT. **lump, piece, strip**

VERB + METAL **be cast from/in, be made from/(out) of** *a statue cast in metal The doors are made of metal.* **| recycle**

METAL + VERB **contract, expand | rust**

METAL + NOUN **alloy | band, bar, box, frame, mesh, plate, rod, sheet | fatigue | detector**

PREP. **in ~** *a sculptor who works in metal*

PHRASES **the clang/clash of metal**

metaphor *noun*

ADJ. **appropriate, apt, striking | mixed**

VERB + METAPHOR **use** *He uses the metaphor of fire to represent hatred.*

METAPHOR + VERB **describe sth, represent sth**

PREP. **~ for** *'This vale of tears' is a metaphor for the human condition.* **| ~ of** *the metaphor of life as a journey*

meter *noun*

ADJ. **electricity, gas, light, moisture, parking, sound-level, water | card, prepayment, slot, token** *The token meter is operated by tokens costing £1 or £5.*

VERB + METER **read** *The electricity company will send an employee to read your meter.* **| fit, install**

METER + VERB **tick** *The taxi waited, its motor running, the meter ticking away.*

METER + NOUN **reader, reading | box, cupboard**

method *noun*

ADJ. **effective, efficient, good, practical, reliable** *Which method is the most effective?* **| simple | common, conventional, principal, traditional, usual | new | alternative, other | different, various | unorthodox, unusual | farming, research, scientific, teaching, working ~s** *modern farming methods*

VERB + METHOD **adopt, employ, follow, use** *the method adopted by the party for the selection of its candidates* **| develop, devise, work out | change, improve**

METHOD + VERB **involve sth** *This method involves cutting a very thin slice from the object.* **| work** *How does this method work?*

PREP. **~ for** *an alternative method for resolving disputes* **| ~ of** *This is the best method of settling such arguments.*

metre *noun* > Note at MEASURE

microphone *noun*

ADJ. **extension, radio, stick, tie-clip | built-in, camcorder | omnidirectional, unidirectional | hidden**

VERB + MICROPHONE **speak into, use | check, test**

MICROPHONE + VERB **pick sth up, record sth** *the microphone picks up the surrounding sounds*

MICROPHONE + NOUN **socket | stand**

PREP. **behind a/the ~** *John Peel is back behind the microphone for a new series.* **| in front of a/the ~** *Interviewees are placed in front of the microphone and grilled.*

microscope *noun*

ADJ. **binocular, electron, optical**

MICROSCOPE + NOUN **slide** *Place the specimen on a microscope slide.*

PREP. **through a/the ~** *a section of a potato as seen through a microscope* **| under a/the ~** *examining bacteria under the microscope*

middle age *noun*

ADJ. early | late *a woman of late middle age* **| comfortable** *He settled into comfortable middle age.*

VERB + MIDDLE AGE approach *a bald man approaching middle age* **| reach**

PREP. in ~ *He mellowed in middle age.*

PHRASES well into middle age *She had her first child well into middle age.*

middle-aged *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look** *She felt middle-aged and dull.* **| become**

ADV. **prematurely**

middleman *noun*

VERB + MIDDLEMAN **act as, be | cut out** *Some factories have cut out the middleman and sell their products directly to customers.*

PREP. **through a ~** *The firm sells through a middleman because it does not have its own sales force.* **| ~ for** *He acts as middleman for companies seeking contracts abroad.*

midnight *noun*

VERB + MIDNIGHT **chime, strike** *The church clock struck midnight.*

MIDNIGHT + VERB **chime, strike** *Downstairs in the hall, midnight struck.*

MIDNIGHT + NOUN **feast | blue**

PREP. **around ~, at ~, by ~**

PHRASES **on the stroke of midnight** *On the stroke of midnight, Prince Charming turned back into a rat.*

midwife *noun*

ADJ. **qualified, registered | community, local**

MIDWIFE + VERB **examine sb | deliver a baby** > Note at JOB

migraine *noun*

ADJ. **severe**

VERB + MIGRAINE **get, have, suffer from | bring on, trigger** *Even the smell of oranges can trigger his migraine.*

MIGRAINE + NOUN **headache | attack** > Special page at ILLNESS

migrant *noun*

ADJ. **economic | illegal | rural**

MIGRANT + NOUN **labourer, worker** *entering the country as migrant workers* **| population | bird**

PREP. **~ from** *migrants from rural areas* **| ~ into, ~ to** *Migrants to the city send money home to their relatives.*

PHRASES **a flow/an influx of migrants**

migrate *verb*

ADV. **north, northwards, etc.** *birds that migrate south in the winter* | **seasonally**

PREP. **from, into, to** *migrating from Europe to Africa*

migration *noun*

ADJ. **seasonal** *the seasonal migration of birds* **| internal, inward | international | mass**

QUANT. **wave** *the great waves of migration that took Europeans to the New World*

MIGRATION + VERB **occur | increase**

MIGRATION + NOUN **path, pattern, route** *changes in the migration routes of reindeer*

PREP. **~ from, ~ to** *migration from rural to urban areas*

mild *adj.*

1 **not very cold**

VERBS **be | turn** *Towards the end of the week the weather turned very mild.* **| remain**

ADV. **very | quite, relatively** *It's quite mild for the time of year.* **| surprisingly, unseasonably, unusually** *The late summer air was surprisingly mild.*

2 **not severe or strong**

VERBS **be, seem** *The infection seems quite mild, so she should be better soon.*

ADV. **very | comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively** *a fairly mild flavour*

3 **gentle and kind**

VERBS **be, sound** *His voice was deceptively mild.*

ADV. **seemingly | deceptively**

mile *noun*

ADJ. **nautical**

VERB + MILE **cover, cycle, do, drive, go, ride, run, travel, trudge, walk** *Fell-runners who are out to win can cover the three miles in just over 15 minutes.* **| clock (up)** *Altogether on the trip we clocked up over 1,800 miles.*

PHRASES **miles an/per hour** *The police stopped them doing 100 miles per hour on the motorway.* > Note at MEASURE

mileage *noun*

ADJ. **annual, weekly | high, low** *Car for sale: one careful owner, low mileage.* **| unlimited** *Your car hire costs include unlimited mileage.*

VERB + MILEAGE **cover, do** *There was no record of the mileage the car had done.*

MILEAGE + NOUN **allowance** *The company gives a generous mileage allowance.*

milestone *noun*

ADJ. important, significant

VERB + MILESTONE pass, reach *The company passed the £6 million milestone this year.* **| celebrate, mark**

PREP. ~ in *The film proved to be a milestone in the history of cinema.* **| ~ for** *a milestone for French technology*

militant *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *The women on the march were highly militant.* **| increasingly**

military *noun* **the military**

VERB + MILITARY **serve in** *I wasn't surprised to learn that he'd served in the military.* **| call in** *The government called in the military to deal with the riots.*

MILITARY + VERB **seize/take power**

PREP. **among/in/within ~** *reports of growing discontent among the military*

PHRASES **a member of the military**

militia *noun*

ADJ. **armed** *a highly armed militia* | **voluntary, volunteer** | **local** | **government**

VERB + MILITIA **join, serve in** | **raise, recruit** | **create, form, set up** *The anarchists started to form volunteer militias.* | **train** | **disarm, disband**

MILITIA + NOUN **forces, group, unit** | **commander, leader**

milk *noun*

ADJ. **fresh | curdled, off, sour** *The milk has gone off/turned sour.* **| full-cream, full-fat, whole | low-fat, semi-skimmed | non-fat, skimmed | creamy | cold, warm | cow's, goat's, etc. | breast | baby, formula | coconut, soya | condensed, evaporated** *a tin of condensed milk* **| dried, powdered | pasteurized, unpasteurized | homogenized | long-life, UHT | organic**

QUANT. **litre, pint | bottle, carton, cup, glass, jug**

VERB + MILK **drink, have, take** *Do you take milk in your coffee?* **| add | pour | spill | deliver** *They've stopped delivering milk in our area.* **| boil, heat, scald | produce | express** *She expressed some milk so her husband could do the night feeding.*

MILK + NOUN **powder | pudding, shake** (also **milkshake**) **| chocolate | product | bottle, churn, jug | production, yield | float, round**

PHRASES **the top of the milk** (= the creamy part at the top of a milk bottle)

mill *noun*

1 **for making flour**

ADJ. **corn, flour | water** (also **watermill)**

VERB + MILL **operate, work | convert, restore** *living in a converted watermill* **| drive, power** *The river was harnessed to drive many mills.*

MILL + VERB **grind sth, work sth** *The mill can be seen grinding corn.*

MILL + NOUN **house | wheel**

2 **factory**

ADJ. **cotton, paper, steel, textile, woollen**

VERB + MILL **operate, own, run | work in**

MILL + VERB **manufacture sth, produce sth**

MILL + NOUN **town** *a northern mill town* **| buildings**

mimic *verb*

ADV. **accurately, closely** *The computer model is able to mimic very closely the actions of a golfer.* **| exactly, perfectly** *She could mimic her father perfectly.*

VERB + MIMIC **try to**

mind *noun*

ADJ. human *the complex nature of the human mind* **| conscious, subconscious, unconscious** *Our subconscious mind tries to protect us.* **| best, brilliant, finest** *a problem that has defeated the world's finest minds* **| agile, enquiring, lively | open** *Try to keep an open mind until you've heard all the facts.* **| impressionable** *influencing impressionable young minds* **| one-track** *Honestly, all you ever talk about is sex?you've got a one-track mind!*

VERB + MIND come into, come to, cross, flash across/into, go through, spring to *The thought never crossed my mind! I'm sure someone can help you, but no one immediately springs to mind.* **| bear in, keep in** *Bear in mind the age of the vehicle when assessing its value. Here are some important points to keep in mind ...* **| slip** *I'm sorry I forgot your birthday?it completely slipped my mind.* **| be imprinted on, stick in** *terrible images that will be imprinted on our minds for ever* **| prey on** *It's been preying on my mind ever since it happened.* **| occupy** *He occupied his mind by playing cards against himself.*

MIND + VERB wander *Her mind began to wander.* **| race** *His mind raced, trying to think of a way out of the situation.* **| be in a turmoil, reel** *Her mind was still reeling from the shock.*

PREP. in your ~ *You've been in my mind a lot lately.* **| in ~** *I'll keep what you say in mind.* **| on your ~** *I've got a lot on my mind at the moment.*

PHRASES at/in the back of your mind *The problem was always at the back of my mind.* **| at/in the forefront of your mind** *Try to keep safety in the forefront of your mind at all times.* **| a frame/state of mind** *He's in rather a negative frame of mind.* **| have sth in mind** *What kind of party do you have in mind?* **| in the recesses of your mind** *It was something she had never imagined, not even in the deepest recesses of her mind.* **| mind and body** *refreshed in mind and body* **| no doubt in your mind** *There was absolutely no doubt in my mind that he was guilty.* **| uppermost in your mind** *Their own problems of course remained uppermost in their minds.*

mind *verb*

ADV. **bitterly, terribly, very much** *They had thought the boys wouldn't mind sharing; as it turned out, they minded bitterly. Would you mind terribly if I went on my own?* **| not a bit, not at all** *I don't mind at all telling people my age.* **| not greatly, not much, not really** *Nobody really minded much about what happened to them.*

VERB + MIND **not seem to** *His parents didn't seem to mind that he dropped out of university.*

PREP. **about** *I didn't mind about the money.*

mine *noun*

1 **for coal, etc.**

ADJ. **coal, copper, diamond, salt, tin, etc. | deep, drift, opencast | abandoned, disused**

VERB + MINE **operate, run, work | go down, work at/down/in** *At 14, he went down the mines.*

MINE + VERB **produce sth** *At its peak, the mine produced 5,000 tons of coal a day.*

MINE + NOUN **shaft** (also **mineshaft**), **workings** *flooded mine workings* **| owner**

2 **explosive device**

ADJ. **anti-personnel, land, limpet**

VERB + MINE **lay, plant** *soldiers laying anti-personnel mines* **| clear, dispose of, remove** *The troops are slowly clearing the mines.* **| detonate, hit, set off, strike**

MINE + VERB **blow up, explode, go off**

minefield *noun*

1 area where there are mines

VERB + MINEFIELD **advance into/through, enter**

2 situation full of difficulties

ADJ. **legal, political** *Suggesting changes to the benefits system would be a political minefield.*

VERB + MINEFIELD **negotiate, pick your way through** *You will first have to pick your way through the minefield of professional advice.*

PREP. **~ for** *Tax is a minefield for the unwary.*

miner *noun*

ADJ. coal, copper, gold, lead, tin, uranium, etc. > Note at JOB

mineral *noun*

ADJ. **essential, vital | trace | rare | industrial**

VERB + MINERAL **be rich in, contain** *foods that are rich in essential minerals* **| extract** *to extract minerals from ores* **| absorb**

MINERAL + VERB **be found in sth, be present in sth** *calcium and other minerals found in your bones*

MINERAL + NOUN **deposits, resources, wealth | exploitation, exploration, extraction, working**

PHRASES **vitamins and minerals**

mingle *verb*

ADV. **freely** *The prince mingled freely with the crowd.* **| together** *a lot of emotions all mingled together*

PREP. **with** *She felt fear mingled with excitement.*

minimum *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, bare, very | agreed, guaranteed | recommended | legal, mandatory, required, statutory**

VERB + MINIMUM **keep sth to, reduce sth to** *Two fire crews managed to keep damage to a minimum.* **| reach** *The sun's temperature reached a minimum in the summer of 1981.* **| exceed | regard sth as** *A temperature of 121°C is regarded as the minimum necessary to achieve sterility.*

PREP. **above (the) ~, at (a/the) ~** *Candidates must have a first degree at a minimum.* **| below (the) ~, down to a ~** *We tried to keep costs down to a minimum.* **| ~ of** *a minimum of £20 a minimum of fuss*

PHRASES **the minimum acceptable/necessary/needed/required, the minimum possible** *He's always done the minimum possible to pass his exams.* **| with the minimum of delay/discomfort/disruption/effort/fuss/risk**

minister *noun*

1 **member of the government**

ADJ. **prime | chief, principal** *Queen Elizabeth's chief minister, Lord Burghley* **| deputy | junior, senior | cabinet, departmental, EU, Foreign Office, government, Home Office | defence, education, environment, finance, foreign, health, interior, transport, etc. | relevant, responsible** *Local authorities should submit schemes to the relevant minister for approval.* **| former, outgoing**

VERB + MINISTER **appoint (sb), appoint sb as, nominate (sb), nominate sb as | elect (sb), elect sb as | dismiss (sb as) | serve as** *He served briefly as prime minister from 1920 to 1921.* **| lobby, persuade, urge** *lobbying the Transport Minister over the issue* **| advise, consult, instruct | accuse, criticize**

MINISTER + VERB **resign, retire | be accountable to sb, be responsible for sth** *Ministers are accountable to Parliament. the minister responsible for the health service* **| announce sth, unveil sth | agree (to) sth, approve sth, decide sth, endorse sth | intervene (in sth)** *The foreign minister intervened with disastrous results.*

PREP. **~ for** *the new minister for the Arts* **| ~ of** *A new minister of defence had been appointed.* > See PRIME MINISTER

2 **priest**

ADJ. **church | Baptist, Congregational, Methodist, Nonconformist, Presbyterian**

VERB + MINISTER **ordain (sb), ordain sb as** *He was ordained minister of a small rural congregation.*

PHRASES **a minister of religion**

ministry *noun*

ADJ. **government | Agriculture, Defence, Education, Environment, Finance, Foreign (Affairs), Health, Interior, Justice, Transport, etc. | key** *He assumed direct control of key ministries.*

VERB + MINISTRY **run | take over** *The president took over the Ministry of Justice.* **| create**

MINISTRY + VERB **approve sth, support sth** *The scheme was approved by the Ministry of Housing.* **| control sth | own sth** *on ministry-owned land*

MINISTRY + NOUN **official, spokesperson**

PREP. **at the ~** *staff at the Greek Foreign Ministry* **| for a/the ~, in/within the ~** *a senior man in the Ministry of Health* **| ~ of** *a spokesman for the Ministry of Culture*

PHRASES **a department at/in the ministry**

minor *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, very** *This is a very minor operation and there is very little risk involved.* **| comparatively, fairly, quite, relatively** *That's a relatively minor matter. We can leave it till later.* **| apparently, seemingly**

minority *noun*

ADJ. **large, significant, sizeable, substantial | small, tiny | vociferous** *the view of a small but vociferous minority* **| ethnic, national, racial, religious | oppressed, persecuted**

VERB + MINORITY **belong to | discriminate against**

MINORITY + NOUN **opinion, view | community, group | government**

PREP. **among a/the ~** *You are definitely among the minority.* **| from a/the~** *people from ethnic minorities* **| in a/the ~** *We are in the minority on this issue.* **| ~ of** *a sizeable minority of the population*

PHRASES **only a minority** *Only a tiny minority of holidays are affected.*

minute *noun*

1 **one sixtieth of an hour**

VERB + MINUTE **last, take**

MINUTE + VERB **pass, tick by** *The minutes ticked by and still nothing happened.*

MINUTE + NOUN **hand** *the minute hand on the clock*

PREP. **after … ~s** *After twenty minutes I started to get worried.* **| for … ~s** *We waited for ten minutes and then left.* **| in … ~s** *The film starts in ten minutes.* **| ~s past** *four minutes past two* **| ~s to** *ten minutes to three* > Note at MEASURE

2 **moment**

ADJ. **last** *Don't leave everything till the last minute.*

VERB + MINUTE **hang on, hold on, wait** *Could you wait a minute, please?* **| have, spare** *Do you have a minute, Miss Brown? Can you spare a minute?* **| take** *This will only take a minute.*

PREP. **in a ~** *I'll be with you in a minute.* **| within ~s** *The ship sank within minutes.*

PHRASES **just a minute, the minute sth happens** *Tell him I want to see him the minute he arrives.* **| not for a minute** *I never thought for a minute he'd refuse.* **| this minute** *Come here this minute!*

3 **minutes: written record of what is said at a meeting**

VERB + MINUTE **keep, take** *Who's going to take the minutes?* **| circulate | read | agree, approve, sign | write up** *I wrote up the minutes of the meeting and circulated them by email.*

PHRASES **the minutes of a meeting** > Special page at MEETING

miracle *noun*

ADJ. **great | minor** *The letter's survival is something of a minor miracle.* **| economic**

VERB + MIRACLE **perform, work** *Don't expect this medicine to work miracles.* **| believe in | ask for, expect, hope for, pray for | need, take** *It would take a miracle to get the old car going again.*

MIRACLE + VERB **happen, occur**

MIRACLE + NOUN **worker | cure**

PREP. **by a ~** *By a miracle she escaped serious injury.*

miraculous *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **quite** *Something quite miraculous happened.* **| almost, near** *a near miraculous escape* **| apparently**

PHRASES **little/nothing short of miraculous** *a transformation that was little short of miraculous*

mirage *noun*

VERB + MIRAGE **see | chase** *(figurative) Perhaps we are all just chasing a mirage.*

MIRAGE + VERB **vanish**

mirror *noun*

ADJ. **bathroom, hand, shaving, wardrobe | full-length | gilt-framed, ornate | two-way** *He watched them through a two-way mirror.* **| driving, rear, rear-view, wing** *Always check your mirror before pulling out to overtake.*

VERB + MIRROR **glance in, look in/into | admire yourself in, examine yourself in, look at yourself/your face in** *He was busy admiring himself in the wardrobe mirror.* **| sit at, stand in front of | check | catch sight of sb/sth in, see sb/sth in | fix, hang** *We hung a mirror over the fireplace.* **| break, crack**

MIRROR + VERB **reflect sth**

MIRROR + NOUN **image** *Art can be seen as a mirror image of society.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She stared at her face in the mirror.*

miscalculate *verb*

ADV. **badly, seriously** *The government has seriously miscalculated the economic effect of this policy.*

miscalculation *noun*

ADJ. **grave, serious, terrible | financial, political**

VERB + MISCALCULATION **make**

miscarriage *noun*

ADJ. **early | threatened | spontaneous**

VERB + MISCARRIAGE **have, suffer | cause, induce | end in** *Her first pregnancy ended in miscarriage.*

PHRASES **a risk of miscarriage** *Smoking during pregnancy increases the risk of miscarriage.*

mischief *noun*

QUANT. **glint, hint** *There was a glint of mischief in her eyes.*

VERB + MISCHIEF **cause, do, make** *Such people will do anything they can to make mischief.* **| get into/up to** *Don't get up to any mischief while we're out.* **| keep/stay out of** *Try to stay out of mischief, will you?*

misconception *noun*

ADJ. **common, popular | basic | major**

VERB + MISCONCEPTION **have | give rise to, lead to | break down, correct, dispel** *We hope the programme will dispel certain misconceptions about the disease.*

MISCONCEPTION + VERB **be based on sth, stem from sth | grow up** *A number of misconceptions have grown up around this theory.*

PREP. **~ about** *popular misconceptions about Aids*

misconduct *noun*

ADJ. **alleged | gross, serious** *She was sacked last year for gross misconduct.* **| financial, professional, sexual**

VERB + MISCONDUCT **dismiss sb for, sack sb for | deny** *The directors all deny financial misconduct.*

PREP. **~ by** *allegations of misconduct by the security forces* **| ~ on the part of** *There was no misconduct on the part of the police.*

PHRASES **on (the) grounds of misconduct** *Staff can lose their jobs only on grounds of professional misconduct.* > Note at CRIME(for more verbs)

miserable *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look** *We got home feeling tired and miserable.* **| become**

ADV. **bloody** *(taboo)*, **damned, dead, intensely, really, very | thoroughly, utterly | pretty, quite, rather**

PREP. **about** *feeling utterly miserable about his exams*

misery *noun*

ADJ. **abject, deep, extreme, great, real, sheer, untold** *This phobia can cause untold misery for the sufferer.* **| complete** *Her misery was made complete when she was separated from her children.* **| personal | human | economic** *the country's economic misery*

VERB + MISERY **be full of, be wrapped (up) in, endure, feel, live in, sink into, suffer** *He was too wrapped in misery to reply. I sank deeper into my misery. men who suffer the misery of unemployment* **| bring (sb), cause (sb), create** *The money brought him nothing but misery.* **| add to, heap, prolong** *War has now added to the misery of these starving people. The giant-killers heaped more misery on the home team.* **| alleviate, ease, relieve** *ways to alleviate human misery* **| put sb/sth out of** *In the end we asked the vet to put the poor creature out of its misery* (= kill it humanely). *(humorous) Oh, put her out of her misery?tell her who won.* **| spare sb** *At least we were spared the misery of having to do it all again.* **| forget**

PREP. **~ of** *the sheer misery of homelessness*

PHRASES **a feeling of misery, make sb's life a misery** *His constant criticism made her life a misery.*

misfire *verb*

ADV. **badly** *Unfortunately their plan misfired badly.*

misfortune *noun*

ADJ. **great | sheer**

VERB + MISFORTUNE **be dogged by, have, suffer** *The expedition was dogged by misfortune. I had the misfortune to share a room with someone who snored loudly.*

MISFORTUNE + VERB **befall sb, strike** *Misfortune struck before they had even left the harbour.*

PHRASES **be sb's misfortune** *He is the rudest man it has ever been my misfortune to meet.*

misgivings *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, deep, grave, great, serious**

VERB + MISGIVINGS **be filled with, harbour, have | express** *I felt I had to express my misgivings about her decision.* **| share** *She shared my misgivings about the planned weekend.* **| allay, quell**

MISGIVINGS + VERB **be/prove unfounded, be/prove well-founded**

PREP. **despite/in spite of sb's ~** *He agreed, despite his misgivings.* **| with ~** *I viewed the process with grave misgivings.* **| ~ about** *She had serious misgivings about the whole affair, but they proved unfounded.* **| ~ at** *He had considerable misgivings at the prospect of moving jobs.* **| ~ over** *The local people still harboured considerable misgivings over the flood of workers into their village.*

misguided *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **entirely, quite, totally | rather, somewhat | fundamentally** *Their approach to the problem is fundamentally misguided.*

mishap *noun*

ADJ. **serious | minor, slight**

QUANT. **series** *The group suffered an extraordinary series of minor mishaps.*

VERB + MISHAP **have, suffer** *I'm afraid your son had a slight mishap in the playground.* **| avoid, prevent**

PREP. **without ~** *We reached home without mishap.*

misinform *verb*

PREP. **about** *The parents had been misinformed about the incident.*

PHRASES **be badly misinformed** *It became clear that the general had been badly misinformed.*

misinformation *noun*

QUANT. **piece**

VERB + MISINFORMATION **feed sb, spread** *The public have been fed misinformation about the health risks.* **| be based on**

PREP. **~ about/on** *misinformation about Soviet policy*

PHRASES **a campaign of misinformation**

misinterpret *verb*

ADV. **grossly | deliberately**

VERB + MISINTERPRET **be easy to** *It would be easy to misinterpret results from such a small sample.*

PREP. **as** *I realized that what I'd said could be misinterpreted as criticism.*

misjudge *verb*

ADV. **badly, seriously | completely | easily** *Quantities are easily misjudged.*

mislead *verb*

ADV. **seriously | completely, totally | slightly | actively, deliberately** *She was accused of deliberately misleading Parliament.* **| allegedly | easily** *They were naive and easily misled.*

VERB + MISLEAD **attempt to, try to | be liable to** *Statistics taken on their own are liable to mislead.*

PREP. **about** *Parliament has been totally misled about this affair.* **| into** *The company misled hundreds of people into investing their money unwisely.*

misleading *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be**

ADV. **extremely, grossly, highly, positively, profoundly, seriously, very | completely, entirely, totally, wholly | a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | potentially | deliberately** *Her statement was deliberately misleading.* **| dangerously** *Some of the information was dangerously misleading.*

PREP. **about** *The brochure was extremely misleading about the cost of the holiday.*

mismanage *verb*

ADV. **badly, seriously** *The prison service has been badly mismanaged in recent years.*

mismanagement *noun*

ADJ. **economic, financial | gross**

VERB + MISMANAGEMENT **uncover** *An investigation uncovered mismanagement and a lack of proper financial controls.*

PREP. **through ~** *The project collapsed through financial mismanagement.*

misplaced *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem**

ADV. **entirely, quite, totally, wholly** *Her confidence in him was entirely misplaced.* **| not altogether | largely | rather | sadly** *His optimism proved sadly misplaced.*

misread *verb*

ADV. **completely, totally** *I had completely misread his intentions.*

PREP. **as** *I misread 'Mrs' as 'Mr'.*

misrepresent *verb*

ADV. **grossly, seriously | completely | deliberately | easily** *Think carefully about what you say: your views could be easily misrepresented by the press.*

PREP. **as** *Ecstasy is widely misrepresented as a soft drug.*

PHRASES **be widely misrepresented**

miss *verb*

1 not hit/catch/reach sth

ADV. **completely | just, narrowly** *The plane crashed, narrowly missing a hotel.*

PREP. **by** *The bullet missed his head by only a few inches.*

2 not hear/see/understand

ADV. **completely** *He completely missed the point of what I was saying.*

VERB + MISS **can't** *The station is just down this road on the left. You can't miss it.*

3 feel sad because sb is not with you

ADV. **dreadfully, a lot, really, terribly, very much** *Your father misses you dreadfully. I still miss her a lot.*

PHRASES **be greatly/sadly/sorely missed** *Anne, who died on 22 July, will be sadly missed by all who knew her.*

missile *noun*

1 explosive weapon

ADJ. **long-range, medium-range, short-range | ballistic, cruise, guided, heat-seeking | land-based | mobile | intercontinental | strategic, tactical | anti-aircraft, anti-ballistic, anti-missile, anti-tank | air-to-air, air-to-surface, surface-to-air, surface-to-surface | nuclear | conventional**

VERB + MISSILE **be armed with, carry | aim | fire, launch | intercept, shoot down | deploy** *strategic missiles deployed in sparsely-populated desert areas*

MISSILE + VERB **destroy sth, hit sth | miss sth** *All of the missiles missed their target.*

MISSILE + NOUN **base, site | attack, strike | programme, system | warhead**

2 object fired or thrown

VERB + MISSILE **be armed with, carry, hold** *a crowd of youths armed with missiles that included petrol bombs* **| hurl, pelt sb with, throw** *They pelted her with eggs and various other missiles.*

MISSILE + VERB **hit sb/sth, strike sb/sth**

missing *adj.*

VERBS **be | go** *a woman who went missing three months ago* **| discover sb** *It was six hours before the seamen were discovered missing.* **| list sb (as), post sb (as), report sb (as)** *A leading businessman has been reported missing from his home.*

ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally** *The study of housework as work is a topic entirely missing from sociology.* **| sadly** *The spirit of fair play is sadly missing from the sport these days.*

PREP. **from** *The file was missing from its place.*

PHRASES **missing in action** *servicemen listed as missing in action* **| missing, presumed dead**

mission *noun*

1 **important task**

ADJ. **joint** *a joint Anglo-American mission* **| secret | dangerous | suicide | fact-finding |** reconnaissance | bombing, combat, military | mercy, (search and) rescue | peacekeeping | diplomatic

VERB + MISSION **carry out, conduct, go on, undertake | accomplish, complete** *Our mission accomplished, we headed for home.* **| dispatch sb on, give, send sb on** *sending an aid team on a mercy mission to the earthquake zone* **| abandon, abort (especially of military missions)** *The captain instructed them to abort the mission.* **| fly (on) (used of military planes)** *He flew a total of 41 missions over Britain.*

MISSION + VERB **end in failure, fail** *Their mission ended in failure.* **| be a success, succeed**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *He was often out of the office on various missions.*

PHRASES **mission impossible** *Many regard his task as mission impossible.*

2 **team sent to perform a task**

ADJ. **diplomatic, military, trade**

VERB + MISSION **establish, set up | send**

PREP. **~ to** *The US is sending a trade mission to China.*

3 **space journey**

ADJ. **shuttle, space, spacecraft | manned**

VERB + MISSION **go on, make** *He's been on several shuttle missions over the last decade.* **| abort**

MISSION + NOUN **control** *The spacecraft lost contact with mission control.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *experiments conducted on a space mission* **| ~ to** *a successful spacecraft mission to Venus*

4 **special aim**

VERB + MISSION **have** *He now has a mission in life: to expand the horizons of those around him.*

PHRASES **a man/woman with a mission** *You can tell by the determined way he talks that he is a man with a mission.* **| a sense of mission** *A powerful sense of mission underpins everything he does.*

5 **place where people work to help others**

ADJ. **Christian**

VERB + MISSION **establish, found | run**

MISSION + NOUN **work | hospital, school**

missionary *noun*

ADJ. **foreign | pioneer | evangelical, medical | Baptist, Catholic, Christian, Jesuit, Protestant**

VERB + MISSIONARY **work as | send (sb as)** *sending clergy as missionaries to Latin America* **| pray for**

MISSIONARY + NOUN **work | zeal** *He argued the case for reorganization with missionary zeal.*

PREP. **as a ~** *He spent 15 years as a missionary in Africa.*

mist *noun*

ADJ. **dense, heavy, thick** *A heavy mist rolled over the fields.* | **faint, fine, light, slight, thin** | **dark, grey, red, white** *There was a red mist in front of his eyes.* | **dawn, evening, morning** *an early morning mist* | **autumn** | **sea**

VERB + MIST **be cloaked in, be covered in, be shrouded in, be wreathed in** *The harbour was covered in a thick mist.* | **disappear into, vanish in/into** *The little town had vanished in the mist.* | **emerge from, loom out of** *A large figure loomed out of the mist.* | **break through, shine through** *Soon the sun would break through the mist.* | **peer into/through** | **be lost in** *(figurative) The origins of Morris dancing are lost in the mists of time.*

MIST + VERB **hang, hover, lie** *A faint mist hung over the valley.* | **come down, descend** *When the mist comes down it comes quickly and covers everything.* | **clear, lift** *The mist had cleared by mid-morning.* | **drift, float, rise, roll, swirl** *A grey mist floated towards us. a swirling mist a thin mist rising from the river* | **cling to sth** *Early morning mist still clung to the hollows.* | **fill sth** | **cover sth, hide sth, obscure sth, shroud sth** *A white mist obscured the top of the hill.*

PREP. **in/into the ~** *It was hard to make out the path in the mist.* | **through the ~** *The cottage was scarcely visible through the mist.*

PHRASES **a curtain/veil of mist**

mistake *noun*

ADJ. **big, great** *It is a great mistake to assume that your children will agree with you.* **| bad, dreadful, fundamental, ghastly, grave, serious, terrible | costly, expensive** *This dress was an expensive mistake.* **| disastrous, fatal | tragic | elementary, little, simple** *All those problems because of one little mistake!* **| common | genuine, honest | deliberate | past** *The company has learned from its past mistakes.* **| stupid | spelling**

VERB + MISTAKE **make** *Don't make the same mistakes as I did.* **| repeat | learn from | pay for** *Ordinary people are paying for the government's mistakes.* **| discover, realize** *Too late, she realized her mistake.* **| acknowledge, admit (to) | correct, put right, rectify**

MISTAKE + VERB **happen, occur** *Mistakes are bound to happen sometimes.*

PREP. **by ~** *I picked up the wrong bag by mistake.* **| ~ about** *I made a mistake about her.*

PHRASES **all a mistake** *I kept telling myself that it was all a terrible mistake.* **| an easy mistake to make** *Don't worry about it?it's an easy mistake to make!*

mistake *verb*

ADV. **easily** *An unwary observer could easily mistake this constellation for a comet.*

VERB + MISTAKE **can't** *You can't mistake him. He's got long ginger hair.*

PREP. **for** *I'm sorry. I mistook you for George.*

PHRASES **there is no mistaking sth** *There was no mistaking the admiration in his eyes.*

mistaken *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove**

ADV. **badly, gravely, profoundly, sadly, seriously, very (much)** *You are very much mistaken if you think that people will agree to these changes.* **| completely, quite, utterly, wholly | somehow**

PREP. **about** *I think you're mistaken about the time.*

mistress *noun*

QUANT. **string** *The king kept a string of mistresses.*

VERB + MISTRESS **have | take | keep**

mistrust *noun*

ADJ. **deep, profound | growing | widespread | mutual** *trying to overcome their mutual distrust*

VERB + MISTRUST **create, fuel | overcome**

PREP. **~ between** *There is suspicion and mistrust between immigrants and the police.* **| ~ in** *The incident has increased workers' mistrust in the management.* **| ~ of** *His experience left him with a mistrust of banks.* **| ~ towards**

PHRASES **an atmosphere/a climate/a sense of mistrust** *Corruption creates an climate of mistrust towards authority.*

misunderstand *verb*

ADV. **badly | completely**

PREP. **as** *My concern for their well-being was misunderstood as interference.*

PHRASES **be often/widely misunderstood, much misunderstood** *a charming and much misunderstood man*

misunderstanding *noun*

ADJ. **serious, terrible | complete, total | considerable, widespread | simple, slight | fundamental | genuine | possible**

VERB + MISUNDERSTANDING **cause, give rise to, lead to | avoid** *I am anxious to avoid any possible misunderstanding.* **| clear up, correct**

MISUNDERSTANDING + VERB **arise, occur, result** *Somehow a misunderstanding arose.* **| be based on sth, stem from sth**

PREP. **~ about** *There was considerable misunderstanding about the aim of the project.* **| ~ between** *There must have been some misunderstanding between the minister and his secretary.* **| ~ by** *The oversimplification results in the possibility of misunderstanding by the reader.* **| ~ over** *a slight misunderstanding over the terms of the contract*

PHRASES **a possibility/risk of misunderstanding, room/scope for misunderstanding** *Leave no scope for misunderstandings of any type.*

misuse *noun*

ADJ. **alleged, possible | serious | alcohol, drug, substance** *alcohol misuse among teenagers* **| computer** *He was sacked for computer misuse.*

VERB + MISUSE **prevent | investigate**

PREP. **through ~** *causing pollution through misuse of pesticides*

misuse *verb*

ADV. **grossly** *He had grossly misused his power.*

PHRASES **widely misused** *'Marketing' is a widely misused word in the book business.*

mix *noun*

ADJ. **good, right** *a party with just the right mix of people* | **judicious** | **curious, odd, strange** | **fascinating, interesting, intriguing** | **rich** | **heady, potent, powerful** | **eclectic** *an eclectic mix of theatrical styles* | **broad** | **cosmopolitan** | **cultural, ethnic, racial** | **marketing, product** | **cake** *a packet of cake mix* | **concrete, mortar**

VERB + MIX **contain, have**

MIX + VERB **vary** *The precise mix will vary.*

PREP. **~ of** *The college has a broad mix of students.*

mix *verb*

1 combine things

ADV. **thoroughly, well** *Mix all the ingredients together thoroughly.* **| gently** *When the rice is cooked, gently mix in all the other ingredients.* **| in, together**

PREP. **with** *Mix yellow with blue to make green.*

PHRASES **mix and match/pick and mix** (= combine things in different ways for different purposes) *You can mix and match courses to suit your requirements.*

2 meet people

ADV. **easily, well** *a child who mixes well at school* **| freely** *Whites and blacks mixed freely at dance halls and clubs.* **| happily | socially** *They had attended university together and often mixed socially.*

PREP. **with** *She mixed happily with the other children.*

mixed *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **decidedly, extremely, very | fairly, rather, somewhat | curiously, strangely | randomly | inextricably** *In his world-view, art and religions were inextricably mixed.* **| ethnically, racially, socially** *an ethnically mixed community*

mixture *noun*

ADJ. **fascinating, good, interesting, intriguing | bizarre, curious, extraordinary, odd, peculiar, strange | eclectic** *an eclectic mixture of architectural styles* **| judicious** *a judicious mixture of young and experienced players* **| rich | chaotic, confusing | complex | explosive | heady, potent** *a heady mixture of desire and fire* **| cake**

VERB + MIXTURE **be made from/of/with** *The cloth is made from a mixture of linen and cotton.* **| pour, spoon, spread, stir** *Pour the cake mixture into the tin.*

MIXTURE + VERB **contain sth, have sth** *The mixture contains some ingredients that are difficult to find.*

PREP. **with a ~** *He looked at me with a mixture of amazement and horror.* **| ~ of** *The pond contains a mixture of goldfish and carp.*

moan *noun*

ADJ. **faint, little, small, soft | deep, low**

VERB + MOAN **give, let out, make | hear**

MOAN + VERB **escape sb** *A low moan of despair escaped her as she realized what had gone wrong.*

PREP. **with a ~** *He staggered about ten yards and fell down with a moan.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **a moan of pleasure/despair, the moan of the wind** > Note at SOUND

moan *verb*

1 **make a low sound of pain/pleasure**

ADV. **loudly | quietly, softly**

PREP. **in** *He moaned in despair.* **| with** *She was still conscious and was moaning loudly with pain.*

2 **complain**

ADV. **on** *They kept moaning on about their illnesses.*

PREP. **about** *What are you moaning about now?* **| at** *My parents moan at me if I'm home late.* **| to** *She's always moaning to me that she hasn't got enough money.*

PHRASES **moan and groan** *The unwilling children climbed into the bus, moaning and groaning.*

mob *noun*

ADJ. **angry, hostile, unruly | lynch**

VERB + MOB **break up, disperse**

MOB + VERB **attack sb/sth, set upon sb, surround sb/sth | chant (sth), shout (sth)** *a mob of chanting fans*

MOB + NOUN **rule** *the lawless days of mob rule and anarchy* **| violence**

mobile *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, get** *Babies start to get mobile around the age of eight months.* **| remain**

ADV. **exceptionally, extraordinarily, freely, highly, very | fully** *The barbecue is fully mobile.* **| increasingly | fairly, quite, relatively** *She remained fairly mobile despite her disabilities.* **| geographically, socially** *a geographically mobile population* **| downwardly, upwardly** *downwardly mobile members of society* **| internationally** *internationally mobile investment*

mobility *noun*

ADJ. **limited | full | greater, increased | downward, upward | personal | social** *Education was the key to upward social mobility.* **| career, job, labour, occupational | geographical**

VERB + MOBILITY **have** *She has limited mobility in her arms.*

PHRASES **mobility of labour** *The difference in regional house prices acts as an obstacle to mobility of labour.*

mobilize *verb*

ADV. **effectively, successfully**

PREP. **against** *They successfully mobilized public opinion against him.*

mock *verb*

ADV. **bitterly, ruthlessly, scornfully | gently, softly** *'Too scary for you?' he mocked softly.* **| subtly** *The play subtly mocks the conventions of courtly love.*

PREP. **at** *He mocked at her hopes of stardom.* **| for** *mocking him for his failure* **| with** *She mocked him with her smile.*

PHRASES **faintly/slightly mocking** *a faintly mocking smile*

mode *noun*

ADJ. **normal, traditional, usual | effective**

VERB + MODE **use** *Try using some other mode of organization.* **| change, switch to** *He had no intention of changing his mode of attire. Switch from 'receive' mode to 'transmit' mode.*

PREP. **in … ~** *The machine is in its 'suspend' mode.* **| ~ of** *Their main mode of subsistence is hunting.*

PHRASES **a mode of address, a mode of communication/expression, a mode of transport**

model *noun*

1 **copy of sth**

ADJ. **full-scale, scale | three-dimensional | detailed | working | clay, plastic, wooden, etc.**

VERB + MODEL **assemble** (used of models that you buy in a lot of parts), **build, construct, make**

MODEL + NOUN **aeroplane, car**

PREP. **~ of** *She made a fantastic clay model of her dog.*

2 **type of product**

ADJ. **de luxe, popular, standard | latest, new**

VERB + MODEL **do, make, produce** *They do several other models of washing machine.* **| sell | design, develop | recall** *They're recalling their new model for modifications to the engine.*

3 **example**

ADJ. **excellent, good | conceptual, experimental, statistical, theoretical | clinical, economic, mathematical, medical, political, scientific | computer**

VERB + MODEL **give sb, provide (sb with)** *The tape provides a model for students to copy* **| copy | use**

PREP. **~ of** *She was a model of restraint.* **| ~ for** *Successful state schools must be used as models for the rest.*

4 **for clothes**

ADJ. **female, male | top | catwalk, fashion**

VERB + MODEL **photograph, shoot** > Note at JOB

5 for painting, etc.

ADJ. **artist's, photographic**

MODEL + VERB **sit for sb/sth** *The model sits for me for three hours every day.*

model *verb*

ADV. **closely | explicitly**

PREP. **on/upon** *This system is closely modelled upon one used in French hospitals.*

modem *noun*

ADJ. **data, facsimile, fax | external, internal | fast**

VERB + MODEM **connect, plug in | drive**

MODEM + NOUN **link** *Data is transmitted via a modem link to the central office.*

PREP. **via (a/the) ~** *You can send the files to us on disk or via modem*. > Special page at COMPUTER

moderate *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very | fairly, quite, relatively** *a fairly moderate increase in the rate of inflation* **| surprisingly | politically**

moderation *noun*

ADJ. **great**

VERB + MODERATION **call for** *The government called for greater moderation on the part of the unions.* **| show**

MODERATION + VERB **be the key to sth** *Moderation is the key to good health.*

PREP. **in ~** *Drinking alcohol is all right in moderation.* **| with ~** *Always act with moderation.*

modest *adj.*

1 **not having a high opinion of your own abilities**

VERBS **be, look, seem**

ADV. **extremely, very | quite | genuinely | falsely** *She would be falsely modest not to acknowledge that she had come a very long way since those early days.*

PREP. **about** *He is modest about his achievements.*

2 **not very large, expensive, important, etc.**

VERBS **be, seem** *Our requirements seem fairly modest.*

ADV. **extremely, very | comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively | apparently | admittedly** *He is looking to improve on his admittedly modest achievements so far.* **| surprisingly**

modesty *noun*

ADJ. **characteristic, natural, typical | false | becoming** *She accepted their congratulations with becoming modesty.*

VERB + MODESTY **display, show**

MODESTY + VERB **forbid sb** *Modesty forbade me from mentioning that my novel had been published.*

PREP. **with ~** *She spoke with characteristic modesty.* **| ~ about** *his modesty about his achievements*

modification *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, extensive, major | minor, slight | further | important, necessary, significant**

VERB + MODIFICATION **involve, need, require** *The design requires considerable modification.* **| propose, suggest | carry out, introduce, make | receive, undergo** *The original plan had undergone fairly extensive modifications.*

PREP. **with/without ~** *These bikes are designed for racing and cannot be used on the road without modification.* **| ~ in** *a modification in smoking behaviour among older men* **| ~ to** *We need to make a few modifications to the proposals.*

modify *verb*

ADV. **considerably, drastically, greatly, heavily, profoundly, radically, significantly, substantially** *The original text has been modified so radically that it is barely recognizable.* **| a little, partially, partly, slightly, somewhat | gradually | constantly | specially | appropriately, suitably | accordingly | chemically, genetically** *genetically modified organisms*

VERB + MODIFY **have to, need to** *You may need to modify your plans a little.*

PHRASES **highly modified, in a modified form** *These ideas are still used today, though in a slightly modified form.* **| a modified version** *using a highly modified version of the program*

module *noun*

ADJ. **individual | compulsory, optional**

VERB + MODULE **do, study** *I'm doing two optional modules.* **| complete | divide sth into** *The course material is divided into four modules.*

moist *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look** *Her skin felt moist and feverish.* **| become, grow** *Beth's dark eyes grew moist as she kissed her son.* **| remain | keep sth** *Keep the atmosphere in your greenhouse slightly moist throughout the spring.*

ADV. **very | reasonably, slightly**

PREP. **with** *His fingers were becoming moist with sweat.*

moisture *noun*

ADJ. **excess | earth, soil | body**

QUANT. **bead, drop, droplet**

VERB + MOISTURE **absorb, draw (in/up)** *Wind is caused by the sun drawing up moisture from the earth.* **| conserve, hold (in), retain | lose**

MOISTURE + VERB **get in, penetrate sth** *Tiles stop moisture penetrating your walls.* **| evaporate**

MOISTURE + NOUN **loss | content**

PREP. **~ in** *the moisture in the soil*

mole *noun*

1 animal

MOLE + VERB **dig, burrow, tunnel**

2 person

VERB + MOLE **plant** *They suspected that a mole had been planted in the organization.*

3 mark on the skin

ADJ. **hairy**

VERB + MOLE **remove**

molecule *noun*

ADJ. **complex | simple | stable | CO**2**, DNA, hydrogen, water, etc.**

VERB + MOLECULE **form**

MOLECULE + VERB **combine | be composed of sth, contain sth**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the number of atoms in a molecule* **| ~ in** *the molecules in the crystal*

moment *noun*

ADJ. **brief, fleeting | long | precious, quiet** *making the most of those last precious moments together* **| anxious, awful, awkward, embarrassing, heart-stopping, terrifying** *For one heart-stopping moment, we thought she was going to fall.* **| bad, difficult** *That was a bad moment in my life.* **| spare** *Could you look through this report when you have a spare moment?* **| exact, precise, very** *I felt at home here from the very moment I arrived.* **| good, opportune, perfect, right** *I don't think this is the right moment to ask for a pay rise.* **| critical, crucial, decisive, important, key** *We have reached a critical moment in the negotiations.* **| historic | climactic, dramatic | magic/magical, marvellous, memorable | emotional, poignant | finest, great, happiest, proudest** *Her finest moment came when she won Wimbledon.* **| unguarded** *She let the news slip by mistake, in an unguarded moment.* **| last (possible)** *Why do you leave it until the last possible moment before getting ready to leave?*

VERB + MOMENT **last, take** *The feeling only lasted a moment. This won't take a moment.* **| spend** *I spent a few moments thinking what I was going to say.* **| give sb, spare (sb)** *I can only spare you a moment, I'm afraid?I'm terribly busy.* **| enjoy, savour** *Victory was sweet, and he wanted to savour every moment.* **| choose, pick** *He's in a bad mood today?you need to choose your moment carefully.* **| capture** *I managed to capture the moment on film.*

MOMENT + VERB **arrive, come** *The moment had finally come to make a move.* **| pass** *He opened his mouth to say he loved her, but the moment passed.*

PREP. **after a/the ~** *After a moment we followed him.* **| at a/the ~** *At that very moment the telephone rang. He might wake up at any moment.* **| for a/the ~** *She paused for a moment.* **| from a/the ~** *I loved her from the first moment I met her.* **| in a/the ~** *I'll be back in a moment. in her rare moments of leisure* **| ~ in** *a great moment in the country's history* **| ~ of** *at the moment of death It was the proudest moment of my entire life. There was a moment of silence.*

PHRASES **a few moments** *Could you wait a few moments?* **| a moment ago** *He was here just a moment ago.* **| a moment later** *A moment later, the ceiling fell in.* **| a moment longer/more** *I couldn't stand it a moment longer.* **| a moment or two** *I stood there for a moment or two.* **| never a dull moment** *There's never a dull moment in this job.*

momentum *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, irresistible | initial | fresh** *She gave fresh momentum to the campaign.*

VERB + MOMENTUM **have** *The campaign for change now has considerable momentum.* **| build up, gain, gather, increase** *The car gathered momentum as it rolled down the hill.* **| create, give sth, provide | keep up, maintain, sustain | lose** *The team has lost momentum in recent weeks.* **| slow**

MOMENTUM + VERB **build up, increase | go** *Their momentum has gone, and they feel they cannot fight any longer.*

PREP. **~ for** *keeping up the momentum for growth* **| ~ towards** *the irresistible momentum towards reunification of the two countries*

PHRASES **keep the momentum going** *We have to keep the momentum of our sales operation going.*

monarch *noun*

ADJ. **reigning | absolute | constitutional**

MONARCH + VERB **reign, rule**

PHRASES **the power of the monarch** *a new law which limited the power of the monarch*

monarchy *noun*

ADJ. **strong, weak | absolute | constitutional | elective, hereditary**

VERB + MONARCHY **establish, set up | have** *The country still has a strong monarchy.* **| abolish** *the arguments for abolishing the monarchy* **| overthrow** *rebels trying to overthrow the absolute monarchy* **| restore**

monastery *noun*

ADJ. **great** *the great monstery of St-Quentin* **| medieval, old | ruined | Benedictine, Dominican, etc. | Buddhist**

VERB + MONASTERY **enter, go into** (= become a monk) *He entered a monastery as a young man.* **| found** *The monastery was founded in 1665.*

MONASTERY + NOUN **building, church**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *You can stay at the monastery.* **| in a/the ~** *He lived in a monastery for most of his life.*

Monday *nou*n > Note at DAY

money *noun*

ADJ. **big** *There is big money in golf for the top players.* | **easy** *He started stealing as a way of making easy money.* | **government,** public, taxpayers' *Is this a good way to spend taxpayers' money?* | **private** | **pocket, spending** *Did your parents give you pocket money when you were little? I don't know how much spending money to take on holiday.* | **prize** | **sponsorship** | **paper** *The collection box was full of coins and paper money.* | **counterfeit**

QUANT. **amount, sum** *the large sums of money we handle in this store*

VERB + MONEY **have** *I haven't got any money left.* | **borrow, bring in, collect, earn, get, make, raise, receive** *He hoped the scheme would bring in quite a bit of money. Some people were in the street collecting money for charity. How much money did he earn last year? I'll have to get some more money from somewhere.* | **bank, deposit, pay in** *small shopkeepers banking their money at the end of the day I need to pay this money in today.* | **draw out, get out, take out,** withdraw | fritter away, lose, **run out of, spend, squander, throw away, waste** *She lost a lot of money at the casino. We ran out of money and had to come home early. He squandered his money on gambling and drink.* | **hoard, save, set aside, stash away** *an old miser who hoarded his money We're trying to set some money aside for a new car.*

She stashed the money away in the bank. | **invest, tie up** *They sensibly invested their prize money rather than spending it. All their money was tied up in long-term investments.* | **donate, give sb,** lend sb, pay (sb), provide (sb **with), put up** *Half the money raised was donated to charity. He managed to persuade his friend to put up the money for the venture.* | **give (sb) back, pay (sb) back, refund (sb), repay (sb)** *I'll pay the money back next week, I promise. The shop was unwilling to refund my money.* | **owe (sb)** *They owe lots of people money.* | **accept, take** *I don't think they'll accept French money on the plane. The bookmaker was quite happy to take his money.* | **cost** *These cars cost quite a lot of money.* | **be worth** *That painting is worth a lot of money.* | **change, exchange** *We changed our money into dollars at the airport.* | **allocate** *The quality of public health care depends on the amount of money allocated to it.* | **launder** *He was charged with laundering money.*

MONEY + VERB **come from sth** *Money for the extension to the gallery came from the sale of old exhibits.* | **go (on sth), go to** *I don't know where all the money goes! All his money went on drink. Most of the money went to pay for the food and drink.* | **come in** *She had two children to support and no money coming in.*

MONEY + NOUN **management | problems | laundering | market** *He made a fortune dealing on the money markets.* **| box**

PREP. **for ~** *He'll do anything for money!* **| ~ for** *Where's the money for the milk?*

PHRASES **get money off sth** *You might get some money off the price if it's an old model.* **| get your money's worth** *The boat trip lasts three hours, so you certainly get your money's worth.* **| pay/put money in/into the bank** *I pay my money into the bank as soon as I get paid.* **| put money on sth** *He stopped at the betting shop to put money on a horse.* **| put/sink money into sth** *He sank most of his money into his struggling business.* **| take money off sth** *He felt sorry for her and took some money off her bill.* **| throw money at sth** *They tend to throw money at problems without trying to work out the best solution.* **| throw your money around** *He thinks he can make friends by throwing his money around.* > Special page at BUSINESS

monitor *noun*

1 **television/computer screen**

ADJ. **colour | CCTV, computer, television/TV, video**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *The security staff can see all the outside of the building on their CCTV monitors.*

2 **machine that records/checks sth**

ADJ. **foetal, heart, oxygen, pulse, radiation**

MONITOR + VERB **detect sth | show sth** *The heart monitor shows the strength of your pulse.*

3 **sb who checks sth is done fairly/properly**

ADJ. **EU, UN** *UN monitors declared the referendum fair.* **| school | health, peace**

monitor *verb*

ADV. **carefully, closely, rigorously, strictly** *Television advertising is strictly monitored.* **| regularly, routinely, systematically | constantly, continuously | effectively, properly | automatically**

VERB + MONITOR **be able to** *We will now be able to monitor its progress more closely.* **| continue to** *The authorities will continue to monitor the situation.*

PREP. **for** *The workers are constantly monitored for exposure to radiation.*

monitoring *noun*

ADJ. **careful, close, systematic | frequent, regular | long-term, ongoing | constant, continuous | routine** *The problem was discovered during routine monitoring.* **| independent | environmental**

VERB + MONITORING **need, require** *It is a problem that requires constant monitoring.*

MONITORING + NOUN **agency, body, committee, group, network, organization, team, unit** *a UN monitoring team* **| device, equipment | procedure, process, system | programme | visit**

monk *nou*n

ADJ. **Buddhist, Christian | Benedictine, Dominican, etc. | novice**

monkey *noun*

QUANT. **horde, troop**

MONKEY + VERB **chatter | hang, swing** *monkeys swinging from branch to branch*

monologue *noun*

ADJ. **long, rambling | short | comic, dramatic**

VERB + MONOLOGUE **deliver, do, go into, launch into, recite** *She delivered her monologue in a deadpan voice. an entertainer who does comic monologues*

PREP. **~ about** *She launched into a long monologue about how wonderful the company was.* **| ~ on** *He went straight into a rambling monologue on the state of the country.*

monopoly *noun*

1 control by one company

ADJ. **effective, near, virtual | absolute, total | government, state | domestic, local, national**

VERB + MONOPOLY **enjoy, exercise, have, hold** *The company has a virtual monopoly in world markets.* **| create, establish, gain, get, secure, set up | keep, maintain, preserve, retain | lose | give sb, grant sb, guarantee sb** *This Act of Parliament guaranteed solicitors a monopoly on particular legal services.* **| challenge** *companies who are challenging the state monopolies* **| break (up), end** *attempts to break the company's monopoly of the sugar industry*

MONOPOLY + NOUN **position** *The company was able to exploit its monopoly position.*

PREP. **~ in** *creating a monopoly in the export of wool* **| ~ of** *One company holds a monopoly of the raw materials.* **| ~ on** *The company lost its monopoly on exporting beer to India.* **| ~ over** *maintaining their monopoly over local bus services*

2 organization

ADJ. **giant, huge, powerful | public, state, state-controlled, state-owned** *the privatization of state-owned monopolies such as the gas and electricity industries* **| private | statutory**

monsoon *noun*

ADJ. **east, west, etc.**

MONSOON + VERB **set in** *The south-west monsoon sets in during April.*

MONSOON + NOUN **rains, season**

PREP. **during a/the ~** *Travelling is much more difficult during the monsoon.*

monster *noun*

ADJ. **big, huge, large | ugly | bug-eyed, hairy, scaly** *cheap sci-fi films with bug-eyed monsters* **| evil | alien, mythical, prehistoric | sea | sex** *The tabloid papers labelled him 'an evil sex monster'.* **| Frankenstein's** *Bad organizations are self-created Frankenstein's monsters, beyond the control or influence of their leaders.*

VERB + MONSTER **create** *(often figurative) The government has created a bureaucratic monster.* **| fight** *(often figurative) I wanted to fight these monsters: I didn't want to go on living with them.* **| be inhabited by** *a barren wilderness inhabited by monsters*

MONSTER + VERB **devour sb/sth**

month *noun*

ADJ. **last, past** *The past few months have been hectic.* **| preceding, previous, recent | current | coming, following, next, future** *Winning stories will be published in the magazine in future months.* **| consecutive, successive | alternate | intervening** *To occupy the intervening months she took a temporary job.* **| early, later** *the early months of 2003* **| cold, dry, hot, wet | autumn, spring, summer, winter** *hot summer months* **| lunar | calendar | record** *This has been a record month for sales.*

VERB + MONTH **spend** *He spent about a month decorating the house.* **| take** *It took months to find another job.*

MONTH + VERB **elapse, go by, pass**

PREP. **by the ~** *paid by the month* **| during/in a/the ~ of** *The festival is always held in the month of May.* **| for a ~** *It hasn't rained for months.* **| in a ~** *We're getting married in a month/in a month's time.* **| over/under a ~** *I've been working on the illustration for over a month.* **| per ~** *What does the salary work out as per month?* **| ~ of** *The months of July and August are the hottest.*

PHRASES **a time of the month** *Our money's usually running low by this time of the month.* > Note at MONTH

monument *noun*

ADJ. **ancient, historic | national, public | great | famous | fitting** *The new boat is a fitting monument to the crew members who lost their lives.* **| lasting** *The museum was built as a lasting monument to the civil war.*

VERB + MONUMENT **stand as** *The tower stands as a monument to the invasion of the island.* **| commission** *A monument has been commissioned in his memory.* **| build, erect, put up, set up | unveil | conserve, preserve, protect** *the best preserved Roman monument in Britain* **| destroy, pull down** *Monuments to the former leader were all pulled down.*

MONUMENT + VERB **be, stand** *The monument will stand just inside the cathedral.* **| survive** *Some of the town's Roman monuments still survive.*

PREP. **as a ~ | ~ of** *monuments of the army's past campaigns* **| ~ to** *The statue was built as a monument to victims of the war.*

mood *noun*

ADJ. **amiable, cheerful, good, happy, jolly, jovial** *She was not in the best of moods.* | **exultant, jubilant** | **bullish, buoyant, confident, optimistic** *She was in a bullish mood about the future of the company.* | **bad, black, filthy, foul, rotten, terrible** | **pessimistic** | **gloomy, melancholy, sombre** | **contemplative, introspective, pensive, reflective, serious, sober, thoughtful** | **expansive, talkative** | **mellow, relaxed** | **restless** | **changeable, changing** *I can't keep up with his constantly changing moods.* | **defiant** *The sacked workers were in defiant mood as they entered the tribunal.* | **generous** | **funny, strange** *He's in a funny mood today?who knows how he'll react?* | **playful** | **festive** *It was Christmas and everyone was in festive mood.* | **national, popular, public** *a prime minister who can gauge the popular mood*

VERB + MOOD **be in** *Don't talk to Miranda today?she's in a terrible mood!* | **get sb in, put sb in** *The music helped to put them in a more relaxed mood.* | **create, evoke** | **affect** | **match, reflect, suit** *Choose colours to match your mood. The weather seemed to reflect his sombre mood.* | **capture** *a film that has captured the mood of the moment* | **gauge**

MOOD + VERB **change** | **darken** | **improve, lift, lighten** *His mood lifted as he concentrated on his driving.*

MOOD + NOUN **swing** *After the accident he suffered violent mood swings.*

PHRASES **be in no mood for sth** *I tried to make him laugh, but he was in no mood for jokes.* | **a change of mood** *Instantly he felt her change of mood.*

moon *noun*

ADJ. **bright** *A bright moon shone high overhead.* **| crescent, full, half, new**

VERB + MOON **cover, hide** *A large black cloud covered the moon.* **| fly to, go to, land on**

MOON + VERB **appear, come out, rise | shine | set** *The moon had almost set and the night was now dark.* **| wane, wax | orbit sth**

PREP. **on the ~** *the first man to walk on the moon* **| under a/the ~** *The road shone frostily under the full moon.*

PHRASES **the light of the moon** *They had to work by the light of the moon.* **| the surface of the moon**

moonlight *noun*

ADJ. **bright, clear | faint, pale**

QUANT. **shaft** *a single shaft of moonlight*

VERB + MOONLIGHT **be bathed in, gleam in, glint in, shine in** *The fields were bathed in bright moonlight that night. His helmet glinted in the moonlight.*

MOONLIGHT + VERB **filter, shine, stream** *the faint moonlight filtering through the stained glass windows*

PREP. **by ~** *The castle looks fantastic by moonlight.* **| in the ~** *The leaves were silver in the moonlight.*

moor *noun*

ADJ. **barren, bleak, desolate, open, wild, windswept**

PREP. **across the ~** *the wind blowing across the moors* **| down from the ~** *the slopes leading down from the moor* **| on the ~** *We got lost on the moors.* **| over the ~** *Don't walk over the moors in bad weather.*

PHRASES **the edge of the moor**

mooring *noun*

VERB + MOORING **be torn from, break/come loose from, slip** *During the storm several of our boats were torn from their moorings. The crowds cheered as the great ship slipped her moorings and slid out into the Atlantic.*

MOORING + NOUN **post, rope**

moral *noun*

1 **practical lesson**

ADJ. **clear**

VERB + MORAL **draw** *There are clear morals to be drawn from the failure of these companies.*

PREP. **~ to** *There is a clear moral to all this.*

2 **morals: principles**

ADJ. **good, strict | doubtful, loose** *Women who went to pubs alone would sometimes be assumed to have loose morals.* **| sexual | public | Christian**

VERB + MORAL **have** *He has absolutely no morals, that man!* **| instil** *She had tried her best to instil morals into her daughters.* **| protect | corrupt**

PHRASES **a decline in morals**

morale *noun*

ADJ. **good, high** *Morale is very high in the school.* **| low, poor, shaky | national, popular | staff**

VERB + MORALE **affect, be bad for, be damaging to, damage, hit, lower, sap, undermine** *These unfortunate incidents sapped both our morale and our resources.* **| be good for, bolster, boost, do wonders for, improve, lift, raise, restore** *measures designed to boost the morale of the police* **| keep up, maintain** *The bonus helped maintain morale among the staff.* **| destroy**

MORALE + VERB **improve, rise | be at rock bottom, decline, sag, weaken**

MORALE + NOUN **booster** *Mail from home is a great morale booster for our soldiers.*

PREP. **~ among** *Morale among nurses is at rock bottom.*

PHRASES **a collapse/loss of morale**

morality *noun*

ADJ. **conventional, traditional | personal, private | public, social | political | sexual | Christian**

VERB + MORALITY **preserve, protect, strengthen** *efforts to strengthen traditional morality*

PHRASES **standards of morality** *She criticized politicians' standards of personal morality.*

moratorium *noun*

ADJ. **six-month, etc.**

VERB + MORATORIUM **impose, place | call for | announce, declare**

PREP. **~ on/upon** *The government has called for a moratorium on weapons testing.*

morning *noun*

ADJ. **this, tomorrow, yesterday | Friday, Saturday, etc. | early, late** *The side of the mountain appeared pink in the early morning light.* **| April, May, etc. | spring, summer, etc. | beautiful, bright, fine, sunny | cold, frosty, grey**

VERB + MORNING **spend** *I spent the morning doing some sightseeing.*

MORNING + VERB **dawn** *The morning dawned bright and sunny.* **| progress, wear on** *As the morning wore on she became more and more tired.*

MORNING + NOUN **coffee, tea | prayer, service | rush hour, train | newspaper, paper | sickness**

PREP. **by ~, during the ~, in the ~, on Monday, etc. ~, towards ~** *Towards morning the snow turned to rain.*

PHRASES **first thing in the morning** *I'll see to it first thing in the morning.* **| from morning till night, good morning** *He didn't even say 'Good morning'.* **| morning, noon and night** *It's all she talks about, morning, noon and night* (= all the time). **| the rest of the morning**

morsel *noun*

ADJ. **choice, juicy, tasty** *(often figurative) a juicy morsel of gossip* **| tiny**

VERB + MORSEL **eat** *I couldn't eat another morsel.*

PREP. **~ of** *a few tiny morsels of bread*

mortal *noun*

ADJ. **lesser, mere, ordinary** *I just assumed you were a mere mortal like the rest of us. a holiday resort that caters for royalty as well as for ordinary mortals*

mortality *noun*

ADJ. **high** *Poor hygiene led to high mortality among children.* **| adult, child, infant**

VERB + MORTALITY **reduce** *measures that should reduce infant mortality*

MORTALITY + VERB **increase | decrease, fall**

MORTALITY + NOUN **rate**

PREP. **~ among** *Mortality among immigrant groups was higher than average.* **| ~ from** *a lower annual mortality from cancer*

PHRASES **a change/a decline/an increase in mortality**

mortar *noun*

ADJ. **heavy** *They could not move their heavy mortars over the swampy ground.*

VERB + MORTAR **be armed with, have** *Their troops were armed with mortars and machine guns.* **| fire**

MORTAR + VERB **burst, explode** *The occasional mortar burst near our truck.* **| hit sth**

MORTAR + NOUN **attack, fire** *We were under constant mortar fire.* **| bomb, shell** *hit by a mortar shell*

mortgage *noun*

ADJ. **big, huge | small | cheap** *Banks often offer their employees cheap mortgages.* **| endowment, fixed-rate, repayment**

VERB + MORTGAGE **have** *We've got a big mortgage.* **| get, raise** *(formal)*, **take out** *They were having trouble getting a mortgage. We'll have to take out a second mortgage to pay for this holiday!* **| pay, pay off, redeem, repay** *He didn't earn enough to support his family and pay the mortgage. There are penalties if you want to redeem your mortgage early.* **| be in arrears with, fall behind with, get behind with** *They were in arrears with their mortgage, so their home was repossessed.*

MORTGAGE + NOUN **(interest) payment, repayment** *They were struggling to keep up with their mortgage repayments.* **| rate** *a rise in mortgage rates* **| lender**

PREP. **~ of** *a mortgage of £80,000* **| ~ on** *I couldn't get a mortgage on the property.*

mosquito *noun*

QUANT. **swarm**

VERB + MOSQUITO **swat** *He swatted the mosquito with a newspaper.*

MOSQUITO + VERB **fly | buzz, hum, whine | bite | carry sth, spread sth** *This strain of mosquito carries malaria and yellow fever.*

MOSQUITO + NOUN **bite** *I was awake all night scratching my mosquito bites.* **| larva** *fish that feed on mosquito larvae* **| net/netting | repellent**

PHRASES **a strain of mosquito**

motel *noun*

VERB + MOTEL **check into/out of | stay at/in**

PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *We spent a night at a motel on the way.*

mother *noun*

ADJ. **lone, single, unmarried** *She felt proud that she had raised four children as a lone mother.* **| widowed | biological, natural, real | surrogate** (= bearing a child for sb else) **| adoptive, foster, step-**(also **stepmother**) **| teenage, young | elderly, old | dead, deceased, late | good, excellent, loving, wonderful | proud** *the proud mother of the bride* **| doting, over-protective, possessive | stern, strict | dominant, domineering | bad, unfit** *The court decided she was an unfit mother.* **| anxious, distraught, frantic** *Her distraught mother had spent all night waiting by the phone.* **| expectant, pregnant** (also **mother-to-be** (*informal*) **| first-time | new | full-time | breast-feeding | sick** *caring for his sick mother*

VERB + MOTHER **resemble, take after** *The two boys were like their father in character, but Louise took after her mother.* **| inherit sth from** *She inherited the urge to travel from her mother.*

motif *noun*

ADJ. **central, dominant** *Alienation is a central motif in her novels.* **| recurring | simple** *The rug was decorated with a simple flower motif.* **| decorative | fish, flower, etc.** *The jacket has a rose motif on the collar.*

VERB + MOTIF **be decorated with, have**

motion *noun*

1 movement

ADJ. **steady | circular, rolling, swaying | perpetual** *the search for the secret of perpetual motion*

VERB + MOTION **feel** *She could feel the rolling motion of the ship under her feet.* **| make** *He made little flapping motions with his arms.*

PREP. **into ~** *The insects are stirred into motion by the heat of the sun.* **| in ~** *Do not open the door when the train is in motion.*

2 suggestion

VERB + MOTION **propose, put, put forward, table** *The motion was put to the conference and fully debated. The Opposition tabled a motion calling for the prime minister's resignation.* **| debate, discuss** *The motion will be debated later today.* **| vote on | be in favour of, speak in favour of, support, vote for | accept, adopt, approve, carry, pass** *The motion was passed by 165 votes to 78.* **| be against, speak against, oppose, vote against | defeat, reject** *The motion was defeated by 51 votes to 43.*

PHRASES **a motion of no confidence** *He proposed a motion of no confidence in the government.*

motionless *adj.*

VERBS **be, crouch, hang, kneel, lie, remain, sit, stand, stay, wait** *The flag hung motionless on its pole.*

ADV. **absolutely, perfectly, quite | almost, virtually | apparently**

motivated *adj.*

VERBS be, feel, seem | become | get sb | keep sb

ADV. extremely, highly, strongly, very, well *a highly motivated group of workers* **| poorly | ideologically, politically, racially** *The attack was racially motivated.*

motivation *noun*

ADJ. **main, primary | real | underlying | high, strong** *students with high motivation his strong motivation to succeed* **| low, poor**

QUANT. **level** *pupils who have a low level of motivation*

VERB + MOTIVATION **have** *Many of the boys have very poor motivation.* **| lack | lose** *By this time the children had lost all their motivation for writing poetry.* **| generate, provide** *high rewards that generate the necessary motivation in the workers* **| improve, increase, strengthen**

PREP. **~ for** *his main motivation for supporting the government* **| ~ in** *my main motivation in making the suggestion* **| ~ behind** *the primary motivation behind the government's intervention*

PHRASES **a lack of motivation**

motive *noun*

ADJ. **hidden, ulterior | clear, good, strong** *There seemed to be no clear motive for the attack. I'd say he had a very strong motive for wanting her dead.* **| high, pure** *He was acting from the highest motives when he offered her money.* **| base, selfish | prime | real | underlying** *She was not sure what his underlying motives were.* **| mixed** *We give aid to other countries with mixed motives.* **| financial, political, racial**

VERB + MOTIVE **be inspired by, have** *She knew that he was inspired by base motives.* **| establish, find, suggest** *The police are still trying to establish a motive for the attack.* **| be suspicious of, examine, question** *He was suspicious of her motives in inviting him into the house. She should examine her motives for marrying him.* **| explain** *However you explain the motives behind his actions, he was still wrong.* **| understand**

PREP. **~ in** *What was their motive in setting fire to the building?* **| ~ behind** *There is no doubt about the motive behind it all.* **| ~ for** *There may be a hidden motive for his departure.* **| ~ of** *acting from motives of revenge*

motor *noun*

ADJ. **large, powerful | small | diesel, electric | outboard** *a boat with a powerful outboard motor*

VERB + MOTOR **start, turn on | turn off**

MOTOR + VERB **run, work** *He left the motor running.* **| drive sth** *A powerful motor drives the mill wheel.*

motorbike, motorcycle *noun*

ADJ. **powerful | 250cc, 350cc, etc. | veteran, vintage** *a collection of vintage motorcycles* **| police**

VERB + MOTORBIKE, MOTORCYCLE **ride** *He's learning to ride a motorcycle.* **| climb on, get on, mount | climb off, get off | come off, fall off** *The motorbike skidded and I came off it.* **| knock sb off | park | rev up** *a crowd of bikers all revving up their motorbikes*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *He was sitting on his motorbike.*

PHRASES **the back of a motorbike/motorcycle** *She climbed onto the back of my motorbike.*

motorway *noun*

ADJ. **busy | four-lane, three-lane, etc. | orbital, urban** *the M25 London orbital motorway*

VERB + MOTORWAY **join | leave, turn off | build**

MOTORWAY + NOUN **driving, traffic | network, system | bridge, junction | service area/station | crash, pile-up** *Five people have been killed in a motorway pile-up.*

PREP. **along the ~** *driving along the motorway* **| down the ~** *He sang as he rattled down the motorway.* **| off the ~, onto the ~, on the ~, up the ~ | ~ from, ~ to** *We were on the motorway to London.*

motto *noun*

ADJ. **club, family, school, etc.**

VERB + MOTTO **have** *Surfers have a motto?'Life's a beach and then you die'.* **| coin, have sth as, use sth as** *He was the first to coin the motto 'Make Love, Not War'. Let's use that as our motto.*

PREP. **~ for** *a good motto for gardeners*

mould *noun*

1 **hollow container**

VERB + MOULD **cast sth in, make sth in** *The statues were cast in clay moulds.* **| fill, pour sth into**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Leave the clay in the mould overnight.* **| ~ for** *a mould for a bronze statue*

2 **type of sth**

ADJ. **old, traditional**

VERB + MOULD **be/come from, be cast in, fit (into)** *She is clearly from a different mould from her team mate. He doesn't fit into the usual mould of head teachers.* **| break, break free of** *Breaking the traditional mould of local politics is not going to be easy. trying to break free of the old mould*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *a young politician in the mould of the great statesmen of the past*

PHRASES **from/in a different/the same mould** *His brother came from a different mould, being a successful lawyer.*

3 **organic growth**

VERB + MOULD **be covered in/with** *The biscuits were covered in green mould.*

MOULD + VERB **form, grow**

mound *noun*

1 **small hill**

ADJ. **high, large** *The church stands on a high mound just outside the village.* **| low, small | grassy**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *a small tree on a grassy mound*

PHRASES **the foot/top of a mound**

2 **pile**

ADJ. **great, huge, large | little, neat, small** *a neat mound of leaves*

PREP. **~ of** *a great mound of paperwork*

mount *verb*

1 organize sth

ADV. **successfully** *The company successfully mounted a takeover bid in 1996.*

2 increase

ADV. **quickly, rapidly | steadily | gradually | hourly** *Election fever is mounting hourly.* **| up** *The cost quickly mounts up.*

VERB + MOUNT **begin to, continue to**

3 picture/jewel, etc.

ADV. **beautifully** *The prints were beautifully mounted.* **| carefully | directly** *The switch is mounted directly on the wall.* **| horizontally, vertically**

PREP. **in** *The diamond is mounted in gold.* **| on** *The specimens were carefully mounted on slides.*

mountain *noun*

1 **very high hill**

ADJ. **big, great, high, huge, large, lofty, massive, tall, towering | small | steep | low | beautiful, dramatic, fine, majestic, spectacular | surrounding** *The surrounding mountains make the city difficult to evacuate.* **| distant | isolated, remote | inland | jagged, rocky, rugged | snow-capped, snow-covered, snowy | holy** *the holy mountain of the Lapp community*

QUANT. **chain, range** *a chain/range of mountains*

VERB + MOUNTAIN **ascend, climb, come/go up, scale | come/go down, descend, walk down | walk in** *We enjoy walking in the mountains.* **| cross (over)**

MOUNTAIN + VERB **rise, soar, tower** *The mountains here rise to well over 2,000m.* **| fall** *The mountains fall to the east to the flat expanse of the plateau.* **| surround sth** *Towering mountains surrounded the village.* **| shake** *The earth tremor made the mountains shake.*

MOUNTAIN + NOUN **chain, range | area, country, environment, region** *Between the two towns was 50 miles of mountain country.* **| height** *We crossed the rugged mountain heights.* **| pass, path, road, route, track | landscape, scenery | crag, face, flank, peak, ridge, side, slope, top, valley, wall | cave | lake, stream | air** *Many people come to the resort simply to enjoy the fresh mountain air.* **| pasture | barrier** *The invading army could only penetrate the mountain barrier at one point.* **| village | fastness, fortress, stronghold | hut, lodge, resort | folk, men, people | climber, climbing, walking, walks | guide | rescue, rescue team | bike, biker, biking | sickness | boot | goat, gorilla, hare, sheep**

PREP. **across/over/through the ~** *a pass through the mountains* **| down/up a/the ~** *She arranged to meet the others halfway up the mountain.* **| in the ~s** *This type of goat lives high up in the mountains.*

PHRASES **the flank/side/slope of a mountain, the foot/bottom/top of a mountain**

2 **large amount/number of sth**

ADJ. **great | debt | paper | butter, food, etc.** *They revealed a solution to reduce Europe's butter mountain.*

VERB + MOUNTAIN **generate | reduce**

PHRASES **a mountain of paper/paperwork** *The enquiry generated a mountain of paperwork.*

mourning *noun*

1 **sadness about sb's death**

ADJ. **deep | national, official**

VERB + MOURNING **be in, go into** *He was in deep mourning for his dead wife.*

MOURNING + NOUN **clothes**

PHRASES **a day/period of mourning** *a day of mourning for the victims of the tragedy* **| a state of mourning**

2 **clothes**

ADJ. **full**

VERB + MOURNING **wear**

PREP. **in ~** *She was still in full mourning six months after her son's death.*

mouse *noun*

1 **animal**

ADJ. **field, house | laboratory | white**

VERB + MOUSE **catch**

MOUSE + VERB **squeak | run, scamper, scurry | gnaw sth** *A mouse has gnawed its way through the telephone wire.*

MOUSE + NOUN **droppings | hole | trap**

PHRASES **as quiet as a mouse** *She crept upstairs, as quiet as a mouse.*

2 **for a computer**

VERB + MOUSE **click, double click, move, use**

MOUSE + NOUN **button | click** *Some of these mouse click short cuts are worth learning.* **| cursor, pointer**

PREP. **with the ~** *Move the cursor around the screen with the mouse.* > Special page at COMPUTER

moustache *noun*

ADJ. **thick, thin | bushy, clipped, curly, drooping, droopy, handlebar, military, neat, pencil, toothbrush, tufty, walrus, waxed | nicotine-stained | false**

VERB + MOUSTACHE **have, sport** *Her fiance sported a neat ginger moustache.* **| grow** *He's trying to grow a moustache.* **| trim | shave off | tug at, twirl | stroke** *He stroked his moustache thoughtfully.*

MOUSTACHE + VERB **droop** *An enormous black moustache drooped over his mouth.* **| bristle** *His grey moustache bristled with importance.*

mouth *noun*

ADJ. **big, cavernous, enormous, generous, huge, large, wide | small | beautiful, chiselled, handsome, lovely, pretty, sensual, sensuous, well-shaped | firm, hard, strong** *A smile played around his strong mouth.* **| soft | hot, warm | loose, slack | full, full-lipped | lipless, thin | toothless | lopsided | wet | dry, tight** *A tight mouth was the only sign of her nerves.* **| gaping, half-open, open | cruel | hungry | swollen**

VERB + MOUTH **open, shut | cover** *He covered his mouth to hide his yawn.* **| wipe** *He wiped his greasy mouth on his sleeve.* **| fill** *He coughed as the blood filled his mouth.* **| foam at, froth at** *The dog was foaming at the mouth and near death.*

MOUTH + VERB **drop open, fall open, hang open, open, sag open** *Our mouths dropped open in surprise.* **| close, shut | be contorted, be distorted, be set, compress, contort, harden, purse, set, thin, tighten, turn down, twist** *His mouth compressed into a thin, hard line.*

'Get out!' she shouted, her mouth contorted by emotion. Her mouth suddenly set in a determined line. **| curl, curve, lift, quirk, stretch, tilt, turn up** *Her mouth curved into a smile. His mouth lifted in a wry smile.* **| droop, sag | pout | twitch | quiver, tremble | water** *My mouth started watering when I smelled the food.* **| be/go dry**

MOUTH + NOUN **ulcer**

PREP. **about/around your ~** *There were lines of tension about his mouth.* **| across your ~** *A cool smile played across her mouth.* **| in your ~** *I could taste blood in my mouth.* **| over your ~** *She put her hand over her mouth to stifle the cough.*

PHRASES **the back/roof of the mouth** *I was so thirsty my tongue was sticking to the roof of my mouth.* **| the corner/side of the mouth** *There was blood trickling from the corner of his mouth. The corners of her mouth turned up in a slight smile.* **| keep your mouth shut** (= don't speak), **(have, etc.) your mouth full** (= full of food) *Don't talk with your mouth full!* **| a mouth to feed** *Twins would mean two extra mouths to feed.* **| mouth-to-mouth (resuscitation)** *He pulled the boy from the river and gave him mouth-to-mouth.*

mouthful *noun*

ADJ. **great, large | small**

VERB + MOUTHFUL **drink, eat, gulp (down), have, swallow, take** *She took a large mouthful of bread and started to read the letter.* | *chew* | *spit (out)* | *choke on choking on a mouthful of tea*

PREP. **between ~s** *He told the story between mouthfuls.* **| through a ~** *She answered through a mouthful of cake.* **| ~ of** *a mouthful of coffee*

mouthpiece *noun*

1 **part of a telephone**

ADJ. **phone/telephone**

VERB + MOUTHPIECE **cover (up), put your hand over** *He put his hand over the mouthpiece and called his wife to the phone.*

2 **sb/sth that informs the public about sb/sth's opinions**

ADJ. **official, political**

VERB + MOUTHPIECE **act as, be**

PREP. **~ for/of** *The media is controlled by the state and acts as a mouthpiece for the ruling party.*

move *noun*

1 **action to achieve sth; change in ideas/behaviour**

ADJ. **big, important, major, radical, significant, substantial | decisive | astute, brilliant, clever, good, inspired, sensible, shrewd, smart, wise | bad | right** *She wondered whether she had made the right move in telling the truth.* | **false, wrong** *One false move could lead to war.* | **positive | bold, brave, strong | defensive | serious | dramatic, shock** (used in journalism), **surprise, unexpected** *The company was put up for sale yesterday in a shock move by management.* | **obvious | interesting | unusual | controversial | conciliatory | popular | gradual | rapid | new | current, present** *the current move towards networked organizations* | **latest, recent | first, initial** *If he wants to see me, he should make the first move.* | **far-sighted | strategic, tactical | precautionary | logical | diplomatic, legal, military, political | career** *Getting a job in advertising was a good career move.*

VERB + MOVE **be, represent** *The talks represented the first significant move towards peace.* | **make** *The management has made no move to settle the strike.* | **prompt | initiate | signal** *The new legislation signalled a move away from state involvement in telecommunications.* | **spearhead** *The move is spearheaded by a former MP.* | **back, encourage, support | welcome | condemn | oppose, reject, resist | consider, contemplate | decide (on)** *They are waiting for the results of the opinion polls before deciding their next move.* | **announce** *The government announced its move to ban smoking in public spaces.*

MOVE + VERB **take place | be afoot, be underway** *Moves are afoot to increase car insurance premiums.* | **fail | be aimed at sth, be designed to do sth** *a move designed to control inflation* | **reflect sth** *The move reflects a change in approach to research.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *In a move which surprised commentators, the president sacked several cabinet ministers.* | **~ against** *a move against drug dealers* | **~ away from** *a move away from traditional Labour policies* | **~ back to** *a move back to old teaching styles* | **~ to/towards** *a move towards greater trade liberalization*

PHRASES **a move in the right direction** *Although the new environmental regulations are flawed, they represent a move in the right direction* (= they do improve the current situation).

2 change of place

ADJ. **false** *One false move and I'll shoot!* | **sudden**

VERB + MOVE **make** *We should make a move* (= leave) *? it's really late.*

PREP. **~ to/towards** *She made a move towards the door.*

PHRASES **be/keep (sb/sth) on the move** *His career as a petroleum engineer has kept him on the move* (= kept him moving about from place to place). | **every/no/one move** *She made no move as the lion sniffed at the tent.* | **follow/watch sb/sth's every move** *The cubs followed their mother on the hunt, watching her every move.* | **get a move on** *We're leaving in five minutes so you'd better get a move on* (= hurry)*!* | **make a move for sth** *(informal) He made a move for* (= towards) *the door.*

3 change of house/job

ADJ. **permanent** | **sideways** *His new job was a sideways move rather than a promotion.* | **house**

MOVE + VERB **take place**

PREP. **~ from, ~ to** *a move from London to Leeds*

4 in a board game

ADJ. **brilliant, good** | **bad** | **opening** | **chess**

VERB + MOVE **learn** *She learned all the chess moves when she was four.* | **play**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *She captured the rook with her bishop on the 32nd move.*

movement *noun*

1 **act of moving**

ADJ. **big | little, slight, small, tiny** *The eyes of predators are highly sensitive to the slightest movement.* **| quick, rapid, swift | gentle, slow | easy, graceful, smooth** *She mounted the horse in one easy movement.* **| easy** *The refrigerator unit has rubber wheels for easy movement.* **| jerky | sudden | deft | controlled | free** *the free movement of goods in Europe* **| involuntary | random | constant, continuous | repetitive | rhythmic | backward, downward, forward, lateral, sideways, upward | body | eye, hand, etc. | dance | currency, price** *the volatility of currency movements in the foreign exchange markets* **| troop | pincer** *The army surrounded the town in a pincer movement.*

VERB + MOVEMENT **make, produce** *He made a slight movement with his right hand. Hydraulic jacks under the machine produce the movement.* **| allow** *clothing that allows easy movement* **| control, direct** *As infants grow they become better able to direct their own movements.* **| facilitate** *an initiative to facilitate the movement of labour in the EU* **| restrict | prevent** *The striking farmers threatened to prevent the movement of goods across the country.* **| sense** *She sensed a movement in the dark beneath the stairs.* **| monitor** *They are monitoring the movement of animals in and out of the country.* **| follow, watch ~s** *The police are following the suspect's movements very closely.* **| trace ~s** *The police have traced her movements to the time of her death.*

MOVEMENT + VERB **occur** *Some movement in the building will occur as it settles into the subsoil.* **| catch your eye** *A movement caught his eye in the tangled undergrowth.*

PREP. **in a ~** *She kicked down the door in one swift movement.* **| ~ away from, ~ from, ~ to** *movement from one level to the next* **| ~ towards** *(figurative) Recently there's been a movement* (= a change in attitude) *away from tinned food towards fresh food.*

PHRASES **the direction/rate/speed of movement, freedom of movement** *The government's decree allowed freedom of movement for all citizens.* **| the movement of capital/goods/labour, a sense of movement** *(figurative) His music has a real sense of movement.*

2 **group of people**

ADJ. **radical | mass, popular | organized** *The country has a well organized labour movement.* **| international, national | artistic, literary | avant-garde | Modern, Romantic, etc.** *Both architects were part of the Modern Movement.* **| political | protest | anti-nuclear, anti-war, etc. | peace | reform | civil/ human rights | independence, liberation, opposition, resistance, revolutionary, separatist | democracy/pro-democracy, democratic, fascist, nationalist | labour, trade union | feminist, gay | consumer, student, women's, working-class, youth, etc. | ecumenical | scout | suffragette**

VERB + MOVEMENT **create, establish, launch, set up, start (up)** *She started a movement for agricultural reform.* **| join, support | be involved in, be part of | lead | direct** *a protest movement directed against exploitative trade practices* **| suppress | ban, outlaw**

MOVEMENT + VERB **begin, emerge (out of sth)** *The movement emerged out of concern for human rights abuses.* **| develop, gain/gather strength** *The movement gained strength during the 1970s.* **| reach a peak** *The student movement reached its peak in 1968.* **| lose strength**

PREP. **~ against** *a mass movement against the dictatorship* **| ~ for** *He launched a movement for children's rights.*

PHRASES **| a leader/member of a movement, the rise of a movement** *the rise of the labour movement in France*

3 **part of a long piece of music**

ADJ. **first, opening | second, etc. | final, last** *the last movement of Brahms's Fourth Symphony* **| slow | fast**

VERB + MOVEMENT **perform, play**

PREP. **in (the) … ~** *a symphony in four movements There is a cello solo in the second movement.*

movie *noun*

ADJ. **good, great, wonderful | classic, cult | blockbuster/blockbusting, hit, smash-hit, successful | big, big-budget, top | low-budget | television/TV | home** *We watched a home movie of my second birthday party.* **| in-flight | silent | action, disaster, gangster, horror, war, etc. | blue, dirty, porn/porno**

VERB + MOVIE **see, watch | go to (see), take sb to (see)** *I'd never go to a movie alone.* **| direct, make, produce, shoot**

MOVIE + VERB **be based on sth** *a movie based on the novel by Betty Munn* **| be called sth, be entitled sth** *a movie entitled 'Short Legs'* **| star sb**

MOVIE + NOUN **actor, actress, director, maker, mogul, people, producer, star** *The former footballer is now mixing with movie people in Hollywood.* **| audience | fan | premiere | company | business, industry, world | career | channel | score, script | rights** *the movie rights to her autobiography* **| version** *the movie version of the well-known novel* **| camera | poster**

PREP. **~ about** *a movie about the life of Castro*

moving *adj.*

VERBS **be | find sth** *I found the story intensely moving.*

ADV. **deeply, extraordinarily, intensely, profoundly, very** *a deeply moving account of life on the streets* **| quite**

mucus *noun*

ADJ. **copious, excess | cervical, nasal | sticky, stringy, thick, thin**

VERB + MUCUS **produce, secrete**

MUCUS + NOUN **discharge, production, secretion**

mud *noun*

ADJ. **deep | glutinous, thick | hard | liquid, soft, sticky, wet | dried, dry** *footprints left in the hard dried mud* **| black, brown, grey, red**

VERB + MUD **be caked in/with, be covered in/with, be plastered with, be smeared with, be streaked with mud** *Her boots were caked in mud.* **| get/ become bogged (down) in, get stuck in** *Several cars got bogged down in the mud.* **| churn sth into, turn (sth) to** *The cars had churned the lane into mud.* **| wallow in** *pigs wallowing in the mud* **| spatter (sb/sth with)**

MUD + VERB **ooze** *Wet mud oozed up between their toes.* **| crack** *The mud in the dried-up river bed had cracked.*

MUD + NOUN **brick, floor, house, hut | flats**

PREP. **in the ~** *She fell in the mud.* **| through the ~** *We squelched through the mud.*

PHRASES **a layer of mud, a sea of mud**

muddle *noun*

ADJ. **awful | embarrassing | bureaucratic, financial**

VERB + MUDDLE **get (sb) in/into** *I got into an awful muddle with my tax forms.* **| make** *The judge made a muddle of the case.*

PREP. **in a ~** *The house was in a awful muddle by the time the children left.* **| ~ about/over/with** *There was a bureaucratic muddle over his appointment.*

muddled *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become, get**

ADV. **extremely, hopelessly, very | a bit, rather, slightly, somewhat** *Her ideas are slightly muddled.*

PHRASES **be/get muddled up**

muddy *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become, get | get sth, make sth** *Don't get your shoes muddy! The rain had made the football pitch extremely muddy.*

ADV. **extremely, very | all** *My boots were all muddy.* **| a bit, rather** *We all got a bit muddy and wet.*

mug *noun*

ADJ. **large | empty | chipped, cracked | hot, steaming** *a hot mug of tea* **| beer, coffee | pint | commemorative, souvenir | shaving | china, plastic, etc.**

VERB + MUG **fill, pour (out)** *She filled her mug with orange juice. He poured a mug of tea.* **| pour (sb) out** *Craig got up and poured himself a mug of soup.* **| pour sth into** *She poured hot water into the mug.* **| drink (sth from)** *He drank a mug of coffee and left. We drank champagne from tin mugs.*

PHRASES **a mug of beer/coffee/tea, the rim of a mug** *He ran his finger around the rim of the mug.*

mule *noun*

ADJ. **pack**

QUANT. **team**

VERB + MULE **ride (on) | drive | saddle**

MULE + VERB **bray | carry sth**

PREP. **by ~** *They travelled across the mountains by mule.* **| on a/the ~** *a man on a mule*

multinational *noun*

ADJ. **big, giant, large | leading, major | foreign**

MULTINATIONAL + VERB **operate** *foreign multinationals operating in the UK*

multiply *verb*

ADV. **fourfold, fivefold, manifold, etc.** *Just imagine all the problems we've been having, multiplied a thousandfold.* **| endlessly, indefinitely | quickly, rapidly** *micro-organisms that multiply rapidly* **| together, up** *Multiply these two figures together. If you are cooking for more people, just multiply up the quantities.*

PREP. **by** *2 multiplied by 4 makes 8* (= 2•~4

8)

mum *noun*

ADJ. **young | single, unmarried | career, working | proud | expectant, pregnant** (also **mum-to-be**) **| new** *The group is aimed at new mums with young babies.* **| surrogate** *The cat acted as a surrogate mum to the chicks.*

PHRASES **mum and dad**

mumble *verb*

ADV. **incoherently | drowsily, sleepily**

PREP. **about** *I couldn't understand what he was mumbling about.* **| into** *She mumbled something into her pillow.* **| to** *George mumbled incoherently to himself.*

mumps *noun* > Special page at ILLNESS

mundane *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | become | find sth** *I found the job very mundane*

ADV. **very | thoroughly, utterly | fairly, pretty, rather, somewhat** *a rather mundane task* | **apparently**

mural *noun*

ADJ. **giant, huge, large-scale | painted**

VERB + MURAL **create, produce | paint | design**

MURAL + VERB **depict sth, show sth** *murals depicting Aesop's fables*

murder *noun*

ADJ. **brutal, horrific, terrible, vicious | cold-blooded, premeditated, wilful** *(law) a verdict of wilful murder* **| attempted | double, mass, multiple | terrorist | racial, sectarian | unsolved**

VERB + MURDER **commit** *murders committed by terrorists* **| jail sb for | avenge** *He vowed to avenge his brother's murder.* **| witness | implicate sb in** *new evidence that implicated her in the murder* **| get away with** *(figurative) They let their children get away with murder!*

MURDER + VERB **take place**

MURDER + NOUN **victim | suspect | hunt** *(informal)*, **inquiry, investigation | bid, plot | conviction | scene | mystery, story** *Her latest novel is a gripping murder mystery*. > Note at CRIME(for more verbs)

murder *verb*

ADV. **barbarously, brutally, foully, in cold blood** *The boy was brutally murdered. They were murdered in cold blood.* **| ritually | allegedly**

VERB + MURDER **attempt to, try to | plan to, plot to**

PHRASES **admit/deny murdering sb, be accused of murdering sb, be charged with murdering sb** *She was arrested and charged with murdering the two children.* **| be convicted/found guilty of murdering sb, be found murdered** *He was found murdered in the cemetery.*

murderer *noun*

ADJ. **alleged | convicted | mass, multiple, serial | real** *He protested his innocence and promised to help police track down the real murderer.* **| notorious | child**

VERB + MURDERER **hunt, track down | catch, find, reveal (sb as), uncover**

MURDERER + VERB **strike** *The murderer has struck again.* **| kill sb**

PHRASES **the identity of the murderer** *The identity of her murderer has not yet been revealed.*

murmur *noun*

1 **sound of words that are spoken quietly**

ADJ. **dull, faint, low, quiet, soft | general** *a general murmur of assent* **| angry**

VERB + MURMUR **give, let out** *He gave a little murmur of relief.* **| hear**

MURMUR + VERB **rise, run** *A murmur of excitement rose from the audience. A murmur of amusement ran round the room.*

PREP. **in a ~** *She answered in a low murmur.* **| with a ~** *He took the mug of coffee with a murmur of thanks.* **| without a ~** *They did as they were told, without a murmur.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **the murmur of voices** > Note at SOUND

2 **low, gentle, continuous sound**

ADJ. **soft | low | distant, far-off**

VERB + MURMUR **hear**

PREP. **~ of** *the distant murmur of traffic*

murmur *verb*

ADV. **gently, quietly, softly, under your breath** *'What a fool I've been,' he murmured softly.* **| huskily, thickly, throatily | sleepily | shakily | apologetically, appreciatively, politely, soothingly, thoughtfully** *'Mmm,' she murmured appreciatively.* **| drily, ironically, sarcastically, sardonically, silkily, sweetly** *(ironic)*, **wryly**

VERB + MURMUR **hear sb** *She heard him murmur something under his breath.*

PREP. **to** *He held her tight and murmured to her.*

muscle *noun*

ADJ. **hard, powerful, strong | taut, tense, tight | cramped** *I walked up and down the aisle to stretch my cramped muscles.* **| tired | abdominal, arm, calf, facial, heart, thigh, etc. | skeletal**

VERB + MUSCLE **flex, tense** *He flexed his muscles, then set off to run.* **| relax** *Learn how to relax tense muscles.* **| stretch | build (up), strengthen, tone (up) | pull, tear** *I laughed so hard I almost pulled a muscle.*

MUSCLE + VERB **ache | clench, contract, stiffen, tense, tighten | go limp, loosen, relax, slacken | quiver, ripple, twitch** *His muscles rippled beneath his T-shirt as he worked.* **| control sth** *the muscles controlling speech production*

MUSCLE + NOUN **cell, fibre, tissue | group | disease, pain | contraction, relaxation, spasm, tension | tone**

PREP. **~ in** *The muscles in my face tensed.*

museum *noun*

ADJ. **excellent, fascinating, great, interesting, major** *one of the world's great museums* **| local, municipal, national, provincial, regional, town | private, public | purpose-built | open-air** *an open-air museum of farming and the countryside* **| working** *Although the mill is no longer in commerical use, it is maintained as a working museum.* **| archaeological, folk, industrial, local history, maritime, military, railway, science, war, etc.**

VERB + MUSEUM **go to, visit**

MUSEUM + VERB **be devoted to sth, contain sth, house sth** *a museum devoted to railway memorabilia The museum houses a fine collection of textiles.*

MUSEUM + NOUN **building | collection, display, exhibition | piece** *all the planes are museum pieces* **| curator, director, staff | visit**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *an exhibition of Chinese ceramics at the Ashmolean Museum* **| in a/the ~** *There's a gift shop in the museum.* **| ~ of** *the Museum of Modern Art*

mushroom *noun*

ADJ. **edible | poisonous | cultivated | wild | button, chestnut, field, oyster, porcini, shiitake | dried | hallucinogenic, magic, psychedelic | garlic**

VERB + MUSHROOM **eat, have** *I'll have the garlic mushrooms for a starter.* **| cultivate, grow | pick** *They went into the woods to pick wild mushrooms.* **| chop, slice** *Slice the mushrooms and add to the salad.* **| cook, fry**

MUSHROOM + NOUN **compost | omelette, sauce, soup | cloud** > Special page at FOOD

music *noun*

1 **arrangement of sounds for singing/playing**

ADJ. **beautiful, good, great, wonderful | loud | quiet, soft, sweet** *The soft background music made her feel sleepy.* | **heavy** *Heavy music thundered from the basement.* | **light | serious | tonal | atonal, twelve-note | contrapuntal, polyphonic | original | live | recorded, taped | background | piped | band, choral, instrumental, orchestral, symphonic | guitar, keyboard, organ, piano, vocal, etc. | chamber | church, liturgical, religious, sacred | secular | ballet, film, incidental, theme** *the incidental music for a radio play* | **computer, electronic | Western | traditional | period** *Appropriate period music can be played on visits to a historic building.* | **experimental | avant-garde, Baroque, classical, contemporary, early, medieval, modern | black, calypso, country, dance, disco, ethnic, folk, gospel, indie, jazz, pop/popular, rap, rave, reggae, rock, soul, underground, world**

QUANT. **piece | bar, line**

VERB + MUSIC **listen to** *Listening to music is a great way to relax.* | **hear** *She could hear music coming from the upstairs flat.* | **make, perform, play** *We love to make music as a family.* | **play, put on** *Put some music on, would you?* (= play a CD/ cassette) | **turn down/up** *Could you turn that music down?* | **compose, write | arrange | put/set sth to** *Schubert set several poems by Goethe to music.* | **create, produce** *With the guidance of the conductor, an orchestra creates music and harmonies. The city has produced a lot of good music.* | **provide** *a beach party with music provided by a local band* | **broadcast | record | be into, enjoy, like, love** *She's really into rock music.* | **get into** *He got into music* (= became involved in the music business) *by chance.*

MUSIC + VERB **play** *Calypso music played faintly in the distance.* | **blare, thunder** *disco music blaring out of the open windows of a car* | **come, drift** *The music was coming from next door.*

MUSIC + NOUN **business, industry | scene** *Birmingham's live music scene* | **world** *She is a rising star in the music world.* | **press** *The album has been praised in the music press.* | **charts** *The band are number one in the music charts.* | **festival | appreciation | fan, lover | critic, director, teacher** *the choir's music director* | **group | centre** *We bought a new television and music centre at the weekend.* |

video | room

PREP. **to (the) ~** *to dance to the music*

PHRASES **in time to (the) music** *They did their exercises in time to the music.* **| music and song** *an evening of Scottish music and song* **| the sound of music** *The sound of pop music drifted through the open window.* **| a style of music, taste in music** *Her taste in music was wide.* **| words and music** *He made up the words and music for the song.* > Note at SUBJECT(for more verbs and nouns)

2 **written signs that represent musical sounds**

ADJ. **printed, sheet**

QUANT. **bar, line, sheet**

VERB + MUSIC **read** *Can you read music?*

MUSIC + NOUN **score | stand** *Put your music on the music stand.* **| publisher, publishing**

PREP. **~ for** *music for piano, cello and voice*

PHRASES **play/sing, etc. with/without (the) music**

musical *noun*

ADJ. **hit, popular, successful | Broadway, Hollywood, West End**

MUSICAL + VERB **be based on sth** *a musical based on the biblical story of Job* > Note at PERFORMANCE(for more verbs)

musician *noun*

ADJ. **excellent, fine, gifted, good, great, talented | distinguished, famous | aspiring | local | traditional | dedicated, serious, trained | amateur, performing, professional, working | backing, orchestral** *She had toured as a backing musician for a rock star.* **| classical, folk, jazz, pop/popular, rock**

MUSICIAN + VERB **perform (sth), play (sth) | practise (sth), rehearse (sth)** > Note at JOB

Muslim *nou*n

ADJ. **devout, fervent | Shia, Shiite, Sunni**

MUSLIM + NOUN **beliefs, faith | community | extremist, fundamentalist**

mustard *noun*

ADJ. **hot** *Add some hot English mustard.* **| mild | wholegrain | Dijon, English, French**

VERB + MUSTARD **spread (sth with)** *Spread the bread thinly with mustard.* **| add, mix (sth with)** *Mix together the mustard and olive oil.* **| eat sth with, serve sth with**

MUSTARD + NOUN **seed | powder | sauce | colour** > Special page at FOOD

mutation *noun*

ADJ. **chance, random | common | cell, gene/genetic**

VERB + MUTATION **carry, contain** *The protein contained a mutation.* **| suffer** *The genetic material has suffered a mutation.* **| introduce** *Mutations were introduced in the region using various techniques.* **| cause, produce**

MUTATION + VERB **arise, occur | affect sth** *These cells carry a mutation affecting the prevention mechanism.* **| cause sth, lead to sth, result in sth**

MUTATION + NOUN **rate**

muted *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | remain**

ADV. **distinctly, extremely, noticeably, very** *a distinctly muted and moderate sermon* **| slightly, somewhat** *Their reaction to the news was somewhat muted.* **| curiously, strangely**

mutilate *verb*

ADV. **badly, horribly, severely, terribly** *A lot of the bodies had been badly mutilated.*

mutiny *noun*

ADJ. **army, prison | military**

VERB + MUTINY **lead | be faced with, face**

PREP. **~ against** *He led a military mutiny against the senior generals.* **| ~ by** *mutiny by the men* > Note at CRIME(for more verbs)

mutter *verb*

ADV. **gruffly, harshly, hoarsely, huskily, thickly, through clenched/gritted teeth** *'I don't need a drink,' she muttered through clenched teeth.* **| quietly, softly, under your breath | incoherently, vaguely | angrily, bitterly, darkly, fiercely, grimly, irritably, savagely, ungraciously** *Helen began muttering darkly about hospitals.*

VERB + MUTTER **be heard to, hear sb** *A number of non-British visitors were heard to mutter that it would not have happened in Frankfurt. She heard him mutter an oath under his breath.*

PREP. **about** *muttering about the incompetence of the office staff* **| to** *muttering incoherently to himself*

mystery *noun*

ADJ. **big, great** *How the disease started is one of medicine's great mysteries.* | **little, minor, small** *one of life's little mysteries* | **complete, total** *She was a total mystery to him despite their long association.* | **whole** *He had found the clue to unlock the whole mystery* | **certain** *Her blue eyes had a certain mystery.* | **real** | **central** *the central mystery of the story* | **deep, profound** *a place of deep mystery and enchantment* | **arcane** | **dark, terrible** | **fascinating** | **insoluble** | **unexplained, unsolved** | **religious, sacred** | **scientific** | **murder** *He is the author of several murder mysteries.*

VERB + MYSTERY **be, present (sb with), remain** *How these insects actually communicate presents something of a mystery.* | **have, hold** *It was easy to believe that the tiny hamlet held some great mystery.* | **be cloaked in, be shrouded in, be veiled in** *The whole incident was shrouded in mystery.* | **lose** *Air travel has lost much of its mystery.* | **clear up, explain, resolve, solve, uncover, unlock, unravel** *The police are close to solving the mystery of the missing murder weapon.* | **shed/throw light on** *The witness could shed no light on the mystery of the deceased's identity.* | **explore, fathom, grapple with, penetrate, understand** *Her poetry attempts to penetrate the dark mystery of death.* | **ponder (on)** *She pondered the mystery of the disappearing thief.*

MYSTERY + VERB **deepen** *The mystery deepened when the police's only suspect was found murdered.* | **surround sth** *the mystery surrounding her resignation*

MYSTERY + NOUN **man, woman** *Their suspect was a mystery man: a quiet, happily married man with no enemies.* | **caller, guest** | **tour** | **disease, illness, virus**

PREP. **~ about** *There's a bit of a mystery about this child.* | **~ as to** *It remains a mystery as to where he was buried.* | **~ to** *My sister is a complete mystery to me.*

PHRASES **an air/aura of mystery** *Wearing dark glasses gives him an air of mystery.* | **something of a mystery, take the mystery out of sth** *Modern weather forecasts try to take the mystery out of meteorology.*

mystified *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | remain**

ADV. **completely | genuinely, truly** *She was genuinely mystified by her success.* **| rather, somewhat**

myth *noun*

1 **story from ancient times**

ADJ. **ancient, classical | religious | Christian, Greek, Norse, Roman, etc. | creation** (= that explains how the world began) *the creation myths of the Eskimos*

PREP. **~ about** *the myth about the golden apple*

2 **idea/belief which is untrue/impossible**

ADJ. **great** *There is a great myth that all sports players are stupid.* **| powerful | enduring, persistent | complete, total** *It's a complete myth that he has royal blood.* **| modern | folk, popular, widely held | national** *The battle has become part of national myth.* **| historical, political** *The propaganda of both sides relies heavily on historical myth.* **| heroic, romantic** *Propaganda has turned the former president into a heroic myth.* **| pernicious | cosy** *The film tears down the cosy myths about fair play in war.*

VERB + MYTH **create, cultivate, establish** *How did the myth get so firmly established in the popular consciousness?* **| counter, counteract | bury, debunk, destroy, dispel, dispose of, explode, lay to rest, puncture, scotch, tear down | feed, foster, keep alive, maintain, perpetuate, sustain | be based on** *People's faith in the Emperor was based on the myth that he was infallible.*

MYTH + VERB **surround sth** *trying to lay to rest the myths surrounding mental disabilities* **| persist** *The myth persists that men are more intelligent than women.*

PREP. **~ about** *a popular myth about twins* **| ~ of** *perpetuating the myth of racial superiority*

PHRASES **contrary to popular myth** *Contrary to popular myth, women are not worse drivers than men.*

mythology *noun*

ADJ. **powerful | popular | personal | cultural, political | ancient, classical | Greek, Roman, etc.**

VERB + MYTHOLOGY **enter** *Stories about ghosts in the cathedral have entered the mythology of the town.* **| create** *She has created her own mythology in the books.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the characters in Greek mythology* **| ~ about/of** *a mythology about how to get fit*

nail varnish (*also* **nail polish)** *noun*

ADJ. **chipped, cracked**

VERB + NAIL VARNISH **have on, wear** *She wore red nail varnish.* **| apply, put on | remove, take off**

nail *noun*

1 **on the fingers/toes**

ADJ. **long | short | sharp | healthy, strong | brittle | broken | manicured, well-kept | painted, polished** (See also **fingernail** and **toenail.)**

VERB + NAIL **bite, chew | do, manicure** *Do your nails after your bath as they will be softer.* **| scrub | clip, cut, trim | file | paint, polish, varnish | dig** *He screamed as she dug her nails into his shoulders.*

NAIL + VERB **break, split | bite/dig into sth**

NAIL + NOUN **brush | clippers, scissors | file | polish, varnish**

PREP. **under your ~** *There was dirt under his nails.*

2 **piece of metal**

ADJ. **long | small | six-inch, etc. | loose | protruding | bent | rusty | brass, iron, etc. | masonry, upholstery, wood**

VERB + NAIL **drive (in), hammer (in), knock (in) | pull out, remove**

NAIL + NOUN **head | hole | bomb**

naive *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, prove, seem, sound | regard sth as** *He regarded the move as politically naive.*

ADV. **extremely, incredibly, very | a bit, fairly, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat | politically**

naked *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, go around, lie, look, stand** *Never had he felt so completely naked. He lay naked on the bed.* **| strip** *She quickly stripped naked.* **| strip sb | leave sb** *She had been left naked and alone.* **| find sb**

ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, stark, totally** *She realized with a shock that she was stark naked.* **| almost, nearly, virtually | half** *I suggest you don't make a habit of going around half naked.*

name *noun*

1 **word/words sb/sth is known by**

ADJ. **Christian, first, given | middle, second | family, last** (see also **surname**) | **married | maiden | full** *His full name was William Augustus Grove.* | **proper, real | pet** *She insisted on being called by her full name 'Clementia' rather than the pet name 'Clemmey'.* (see also **nickname**) | **assumed, false | official | joint** *The account is in joint names.* | **common** *'Smith' is a very common family name.* | **double-barrelled, hyphenated | strange-sounding | personal** *The village of Low Catton takes its name from the Old English personal name 'Catta'.* | **pen-, professional, stage** *George Eliot was a pen-name; her real name was Mary Ann Evans.* (see also **pseudonym**) | **brand, proprietary, trade | company | code | file | place, street**

VERB + NAME **have** *Have you got a middle name?* | **bear, carry** *The Julian calendar was introduced by Julius Caesar and hence carries his name.* | **be known by, go by** *The island is more commonly known by the name 'Krakatoa'. He goes by the name of Jonno.* | **use** *She uses a different name in her professional life.* | **acquire, get, obtain** *The Brady bill acquired its name from its best-known sponsor, James Brady.* | **adopt, assume, take** *He was elected Pope in 1978 and took the name of John Paul II.* | **keep** *She decided to keep her maiden name for professional purposes.* | **abandon | change | carry on** *He wanted an heir to carry on the family name.* | **immortalize** *His name was immortalized in 1992 when he scored three goals in the space of five minutes.* | **choose, decide on/upon | give sb/sth** *She was given the name Maria, after her grandmother.* | **give sb, name, pass on** *Detectives believe that a hitman was sent to silence the witness before he could name names* (= give evidence to the court/police). | **call sb/sth by** *Please call me by my first name.* | **call sb ~s** *Stop calling me names* (= stop saying rude/insulting things about me)*!* | **call (out)** *Somebody called out her name from below.* | **mention** *We cannot mention the suspect's name for legal reasons.* | **drop** *She found him rather irritating to talk to; all he did was drop names* (= mention the names of famous people he knew or had met in order to impress her). | **invoke** *He invoked the name of Freud in support of his argument.* | **ask (sb)** *I asked him his name.* | **hear** *I've heard that name mentioned before.* | **know** *How do you know my name?* | **remember | print, sign, write | spell | enter, put down** *Have you put your name down for* (= applied to take part in) *the school quiz?* | **put forward** *They put his name forward* (= chose him) *as one of the five candidates for the post.*

NAME + VERB **appear** *The name of the artist appears on the vase.* | **imply sth,**

suggest sth *As the name implies, Oxford was the place at which oxen could ford the river.* **| mean sth | ring a bell** *(figurative) 'Does that name mean anything to you* (= do you recognize it)*?' 'Yes, it does ring a bell* (= it is familiar).*'*

NAME + NOUN **badge, plate**

PREP. **by ~** *The head teacher knows every child in the school by name.* **| by the ~ of** *an actor by the name of Tom Rees* **| in sb/sth's ~** *The tickets were booked in the name of McLean. I arrest you in the name* (= on the authority) *of the law.* **| under a/the ~** *The room was booked under* (= using) *a false name.* **| ~ for/of** *The common name for the flower is 'pineapple lily'.*

PHRASES **a change of name, give your name to sth** *The invading Franks gave their name to the country in which they settled.* **| name and address, names and faces** *I have a bad memory for names and faces.* **| put a name to sb/sth** *Nobody puts their name to a business* (= uses their name for the name of a business) *they are not proud of.* **| take sb's name in vain** *Have you been taking my name in vain* (= showing lack of respect when using my name)*?*

2 **reputation**

ADJ. **big | good | bad**

VERB + NAME **have | become** *She has become a big name in documentary photography.* **| make** *He made his name writing travel books. She's made quite a name for herself.* **| acquire, get** *The area got a bad name after a series of nasty murders.* **| protect** *They tried to protect the good name of the college.* **| give sb** *This kind of behaviour gives students a bad name.* **| blacken, damage** *The riots after the match only served to blacken the name of football.*

PREP. **~ for** *The company has a name for reliability.*

PHRASES **sb's name is mud** *If you tell our secret your name will be mud* (= you will not be popular) *round here.*

3 **famous person/thing**

ADJ. **big, famous, household, well-known** *They are a big name in the world of rock music.*

name *verb* **(**often **be named)**

ADV. **originally | appropriately, aptly, suitably, well | significantly | correctly, incorrectly** *The present Kew Bridge was opened by King Edward VII and is correctly named 'King Edward Bridge'.* **| curiously, delightfully, exotically, grandly, improbably, oddly, quaintly, romantically, strangely, wonderfully** *the curiously named Egg Castle* **| confusingly | euphemistically | ironically**

PREP. **after** *I named my son after my father.* **| for** *(literary) the dead sister for whom she had been named* **| in honour of sb/sth** *The hospital was named in honour of its principal benefactor.*

nanny *noun*

ADJ. live-in | qualified, trained

PREP. ~ to *She was taken on as a nanny to their two small children.* > Note at JOB

nap *noun*

ADJ. **brief, little, quick, short | afternoon, morning | cat** (also **catnap)** *If you have difficulty sleeping at night, avoid taking catnaps during the day.* **| power** *A ten-minute power nap can boost your productivity.*

VERB + NAP **have, take** *I had a short nap after lunch.*

napkin *noun*

ADJ. **clean | folded | dinner | table** *She dabbed her mouth with her table napkin.* **| damask, linen, paper**

VERB + NAPKIN **fold | unfold | tuck** *He tucked his napkin under his chin.* **| dab sth with, wipe sth on/with**

NAPKIN + NOUN **ring** *napkin rings made of silver*

nappy *noun*

ADJ. **clean | wet | dirty, soiled | disposable | washable | cloth, terry**

VERB + NAPPY **have on, wear | change | put on | remove, take off | wash | dispose of**

NAPPY + NOUN **change, changing | liner | pin | rash**

PREP. **in ~** *Isn't he rather old to be still in nappies?* > Special page at CLOTHES

narcotic *noun*

ADJ. **mild, powerful**

VERB + NARCOTIC **inject, use | trade in** *He has been arrested for trading in narcotics.*

NARCOTIC + NOUN **agent, officer, official, squad** > Note at DRUG(for more verbs and nouns)

narrative *noun*

ADJ. **popular | coherent | simple, straightforward | complex, detailed | chronological, sequential | first-person, second-person, third-person** *The book is written in the style of first-person narrative.* **| fictional, prose | film | historical | biblical**

VERB + NARRATIVE **construct, create, develop, produce** *It's difficult to construct a narrative out of a series of fast-moving events.* **| interrupt** *The author interrupts her narrative to tell us that the idea for the book had not been well received.*

NARRATIVE + VERB **be based on sth**

NARRATIVE + NOUN **form, style, technique | framework, structure | flow** *interruptions to the narrative flow* **| content | passage, sequence, text**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *events in the narrative*

narrow *adj.*

1 **not wide**

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get**

ADV. **extremely, very | a bit, fairly, quite, rather, relatively** *The pass gets quite narrow towards the east.*

2 **limited**

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **excessively, extremely, peculiarly, very | increasingly | comparatively, fairly, quite, rather, relatively, somewhat**

PREP. **in** *people who are rather narrow in outlook*

narrow *verb*

1 of a road/river/gap/range

ADV. **considerably | a bit, a little, slightly** *The river narrows a little here.* **| sharply** *The gap between the two parties narrowed sharply in the days before the election.* **| steadily**

PREP. **to** *By the final round the gap had narrowed to three votes.*

2 of eyes

ADV. **fractionally, slightly** *Though her eyes narrowed fractionally, she made no comment.* **| suddenly | dangerously, shrewdly, speculatively, suspiciously, thoughtfully** *The blue eyes narrowed thoughtfully.*

PREP. **against** *Her eyes narrowed against the sun.* **| at** *His eyes suddenly narrowed at the sight of her.* **| to** *His eyes narrowed to slits.* **| with** *His eyes narrowed with suspicion.*

nasty *adj.*

VERBS be, look, smell, sound, taste *He made it all sound very nasty.* **| become, get, turn** *Things could turn nasty* (= dangerous) *if we're not careful.*

ADV. extremely, particularly, really, very | thoroughly *gang warfare of a thoroughly nasty kind* **| pretty, quite, rather**

PREP. about *She was nasty about everyone.* **| to** *Kevin seems to enjoy being nasty to his sisters.*

PHRASES cheap and nasty *a room full of cheap and nasty ornaments* **| nasty little** *a nasty little man*

nation *noun*

ADJ. **large | little, small | major | great, leading, powerful, strong | advanced, developed, industrial, industrialized | developing, emergent, emerging, less-developed, Third World | affluent, prosperous, rich, wealthy** *the richest nation on earth* **| poor | civilized | backward | new | young | ancient, old | free, independent, sovereign | democratic | capitalist | united | divided | entire, whole** *The entire nation mourned her death.* **| foreign | Western** *the imperialist expansion of Western nations in the 1880s* **| Arab, European, French, etc. | maritime, oil-producing, trading | nuclear | creditor, debtor** *In 1950 the UK was the world's largest debtor nation and the US the largest creditor.* **| host** *France was host nation for the 1998 World Cup.* **| member** *the member nations of the UN*

VERB + NATION **create** *They wanted to create a new nation.* **| unite** *The fight against terrorism seemed to unite the nation.* **| divide | govern, lead | shock** *the savage murder that shocked the nation*

NATION + NOUN **building** *The biggest task of the government was to address national unity and nation building.* **| state**

PREP. **across a/the ~** *swings in public opinion across the nation* **| among ~** *economic inequality among the nations of the world* **| in/within a/the ~** *In the nation as a whole there is no desire for war.* **| ~ of** *They are a nation of food lovers.*

PHRASES **the birth of a nation, the interests of a nation, the life of a nation** *They hoped that the exhibition would enhance the cultural life of the nation.* **| the nation as a whole, the nation at large** *The new economic policies were in the best interests of the nation at large.* **| the nations of the world**

nationalism *noun*

ADJ. **aggressive, extreme, fierce, militant, revolutionary | popular | conservative, radical | secular | black | cultural, economic, political, racial**

PHRASES **the growth of nationalism, the resurgence/revival of nationalism, the rise in nationalism, a tide of nationalism** *a tide of militant nationalism*

nationalist *noun*

ADJ. **ardent | extreme, hard-line, radical | militant | moderate | left-wing, liberal | conservative, right-wing | veteran | former | local | Basque, Irish, etc. | African, black**

NATIONALIST + NOUN **leader | forces, troops | uprising** *leading a nationalist uprising*

nationalistic *adj*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **fiercely, intensely, strongly | increasingly**

nationality *noun*

ADJ. **various** *cultural differences among various nationalities* **| mixed** *teams of mixed nationality* **| dual** *He has dual British and South African nationality.* **| foreign | minority | Argentinian, etc.**

VERB + NATIONALITY **have | acquire, adopt, assume, obtain, take** *She is hoping to adopt Australian nationality.* **| inherit | retain | change | give up, renounce | lose | grant sb | refuse sb**

NATIONALITY + VERB **be represented** *About 30 nationalities were represented at the tournament.*

PHRASES **on (the) grounds of nationality** *He accused them of discrimination on the grounds of nationality.*

natural *adj.*

1 **not made by people**

VERBS **be** *All the fibres are natural.*

ADV. **completely** *completely natural materials*

2 **usual/normal**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **only, perfectly, quite** *It's only natural that she should feel upset.* **| fairly**

nature *noun*

1 **the physical world; plants, animals, etc.**

ADJ. **Mother** *Mother Nature had served up some terrible weather for their cruise.*

VERB + NATURE **commune with** *He believed in spending half an hour each day to relax and commune with nature.* | **be/get back to** *We built our house in the country because we wanted to get back* (= be close) *to nature.* | **be found in** *man-made substances not found in nature*

NATURE + VERB **endow (sb with) sth** *Nature had endowed her with exceptional vitality.* | **produce sth** *It's unlikely that this gully was produced by nature.*

NATURE + NOUN **conservation** | **reserve** | **trail**

PREP. **close to ~** *people who live in the country and are close to nature* | **in ~** *We appreciate beauty in nature.*

PHRASES **the forces of nature, the laws of nature, a love of nature** *His love of nature was expressed through his wildlife paintings.*

2 **qualities/features of sb/sth**

ADJ. **basic, essential, fundamental, intrinsic, real, true** | **artificial** | **exact, precise, specific** *I'm not clear about the exact nature of their relationship.* | **general** | **selective** | **limited, restrictive** | **changing, seasonal, temporary, transitory** | **uncertain, unpredictable** | **arbitrary, random** | **subjective** *the subjective nature of an odour* | **abstract** | **capricious, fickle** | **intractable** | **distinctive, unusual** | **radical** | **complex** | **special, specialist** | **traditional** | **controversial** | **contradictory** | **problematic** | **unsatisfactory** *the unsatisfactory nature of the meeting* | **good** *People are always taking advantage of her good nature* (= her kindness). | **human** *It's only human nature to want more money.* | **divine** | **confidential, personal, private** | **public** | **international, local** *the international nature of the business* | **repetitive** | **routine** *matters of a routine nature* | **detailed** *Because of the detailed nature of the work, I have to use a very fine brush.* | **practical** | **physical, psychological, sexual** *They define sexual harassment as unwanted conduct of a sexual nature.* | **economic, legal, political, social** *Their problems are of an economic nature.* | **contemplative** | **inquisitive**

VERB + NATURE **have** *He has an inquisitive nature.* | **reveal** *The parties would not reveal the exact nature of the dispute.* | **conceal** | **reflect** | **belie** *The gentle lower slopes belie the true nature of the mountain.* | **be contrary to, be/run against** *It was against his nature to tell lies.* | **alter, change** *This new information does not change the nature of our findings.* | **acknowledge, be aware of, recognize** *Are you aware of the nature of the risks involved?* | **define, specify** *It is important to define the nature of the problem.* | **assess, consider, discuss, examine, explore, investigate** | **comprehend, realize, understand** | **misconceive** | **clarify, elucidate, explain, give/offer/provide an insight into** *His theory provides a remarkable insight into the nature of the British constitution.* | **describe** | **determine** | **depend on** *The method employed will depend on the nature of the task.* | **appeal to** *There was no point appealing to her better nature* (= kindness).

PREP. **by ~** *He's not by nature an inquisitive person.* | **concerning the ~** *a debate concerning the nature of violence* | **considering/given the ~** *Given the nature of this matter, I am inclined to think it should be managed by you personally.* | **in ~** *Their strategy was essentially political in nature.* | **in sb/sth's ~** *It's not in his nature to complain. A certain element of risk is in the nature of the job.* | **of a … ~** *The legal concept of insanity is of a different nature from the medical.*

PHRASES **by its very nature** *By its very nature a secret service is not open to public inspection.* | **the extent and nature of sth** *We need to understand the true extent and nature of the problem.* | **a part of sb's nature** *the expressive part of his nature Her view is that aggression is part of human nature.* | **a side of/to sb's nature** *He had a vicious side to his nature.*

nausea *noun*

ADJ. **intense, severe | sudden | nervous**

QUANT. **wave** *I was overcome by waves of nausea.*

VERB + NAUSEA **experience, feel | complain of | bring on, cause | relieve**

NAUSEA + VERB **engulf sb, overcome sb, sweep over sb**

PHRASES **a feeling/sensation of nausea**

navigate *verb*

ADV. **accurately, successfully** *Pigeons navigate less accurately when the earth's magnetic field is disturbed. (figurative) Those who successfully navigate this social minefield are accepted by the royal family.*

PREP. **across, by** *These birds navigate by the sun.* **| through** *learning to navigate your way through a forest*

PHRASES **navigate your way**

navigation *noun*

ADJ. **accurate | radio, satellite**

NAVIGATION + NOUN **system | aids, equipment, instruments, lights | beacon | rights**

PREP. **~ through** *(often figurative) navigation through complex documents*

PHRASES **an aid to navigation** *small boats equipped with electronic aids to navigation* **| freedom/rights of navigation** *freedom of navigation through international waterways*

navy *noun*

ADJ. **strong | merchant**

VERB + NAVY **have | build | serve in | join**

PREP. **in the ~** *He spent ten years in the merchant navy.*

PHRASES **the Royal Navy**

neat *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | leave sth, make sth** *Be sure to leave the room neat and tidy.* **| keep sth** *She kept her desk extremely neat.*

ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, quite, rather | surprisingly** *The handwriting was surprisingly neat.*

PHRASES **neat and tidy**

necessary *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | remain | make sth** *The cold weather has made it necessary to protect the crops.* **| consider sth, feel sth, find sth, regard sth as, see sth as, think sth** *Make any alterations you consider necessary. You may find it necessary to readjust the wheels from time to time.*

ADV. **really, strictly** *I was determined not to stay in hospital for any longer than was strictly necessary.* **| absolutely | causally, logically**

PREP. **for** *qualifications which are necessary for work with the under-fives*

PHRASES **if necessary** *These measures will be enforced, if necessary, by the army.* **| as/when/where necessary** *We are here to give help and support when necessary.*

necessity *noun*

1 **fact that sth must happen; sth that cannot be avoided**

ADJ. **overwhelming, sheer | absolute | fundamental, vital | real | dire, pressing, urgent | immediate | strategic | logical, physical, practical** *The people in the rural areas use mud bricks only as an immediate, practical necessity.* **| commercial, economic, financial, historical, military, political, social** *He argued that nuclear weapons were a political necessity.*

VERB + NECESSITY **recognize, see** *She saw the necessity to make an immediate impression on him.* **| accept (sth as), be convinced of** *They have accepted the necessity of greater state intervention.* **| avoid, obviate, remove, spare | emphasize, highlight, stress** *Observers stressed the necessity for the ceasefire to be observed.* **| be born (out) of** *Culling of the animals was born out of the necessity for successful conservation.*

NECESSITY + VERB **arise** *These animals don't like water but will swim if the necessity arises.* **| demand (sth)** *Where necessity demands, we can seat more guests in the gallery.* **| force sth** *Necessity forced an urgent solution.*

PREP. **of ~** *The visit will, of necessity, be brief.* **| out of ~** *He is changing job out of necessity, not because he particularly wants to.* **| through ~** *Most of the women are forced, through economic necessity, to work in part-time low-paid jobs.* **| without the ~ of** *You can dial direct without the necessity of going through the operator.* **| ~ for** *There's no necessity for you to come.* **| ~ to** *the necessity to earn a living*

PHRASES **any/no necessity** *The company sees no necessity for a more cautious approach to investment.*

2 **sth you must have**

ADJ. **absolute | vital | real | urgent** *Policies which address these issues are an urgent necessity.* **| bare, basic** *They have nothing but the barest necessities.* **| daily**

VERB + NECESSITY **have | lack**

PHRASES **a necessity of life** *Food is a necessity of life.*

need *noun*

1 **situation where sth is needed/necessary**

ADJ. **considerable, great, strong | special** *There is a special need for well-trained teachers.* **| overriding, overwhelming, paramount | burning, compelling, critical, crying, desperate, dire, driving, immediate, pressing, urgent** *a crying need for skilled workers These children are in dire need.* **| real | clear | basic, essential, fundamental | sudden | constant, continuing** *He's in constant need of treatment.* **| growing, increased/increasing | reduced | possible | perceived | common** *our common need for self-preservation* **| individual | human** *the human need to order existence* **| political, social**

VERB + NEED **feel, have** *I felt the need to do something.* **| express** *Several governments have expressed the need for a cautious approach to the conflict.* **| demonstrate, prove, show, suggest** *The incident proved the need for a continuing military presence in the area.* **| reflect** *a law reflecting a need for better social conditions* **| create** *The war created a need for national unity.* **| address, fulfil, meet, satisfy | avoid, eliminate, obviate, remove** *I avoid the need to travel by plane.* **| reduce | be aware of, be sensitive to | accept, acknowledge, perceive, recognize, see** *I see no need to do anything hasty.* **| emphasize, heighten, highlight, reaffirm, stress, underline** *She stressed the need for cooperation with the authorities.* **| ignore, overlook | deny** *The government has denied the need for economic reform.* **| understand | consider**

NEED + VERB **exist** *A need exists to bridge the gap between theory and practice in nursing.* **| arise** *The system can be switched to emergency power should the need arise.*

PREP. **in ~ (of)** *a campaign to help children in need The room was sorely in need of a fresh coat of paint.* **| ~ for** *the need for change*

PHRASES **any/little/no need** *There's no need to worry.*

2 **sth that sb requires**

ADJ. **basic, essential, fundamental | particular, special, specific** *a school for children with special educational needs* **| immediate, pressing | long-term | changing | conflicting | unmet | local | individual | community | customer/**

customer's, patient/patient's | human *Energy for cooking is a basic human need.* **| humanitarian | material, physical** *material needs of food and drink* **| dietary | health care, medical | biological, bodily, emotional, physical, psychological, sexual, spiritual | educational | political, social | business | operational | energy | information**

VERB + NEED **be responsive to, be sensitive to | address, cater for/to, cover, fulfil, meet, provide (for), respond to, satisfy, serve, supply** *a new union set up to address the needs of seasonal labourers*

£10 a day was enough to cover all his needs. We have now met most of the humanitarian needs of the refugees. **| suit, tailor sth to** *The coaching is informal and tailored to individual needs.* **| identify | assess, consider**

PHRASES **needs and desires, sb's every need** *Our staff will cater to your every need.*

need *verb*

ADV. **badly, desperately, really, urgently** *She needed some money badly. Research is urgently needed into the causes of this illness.* **| certainly, definitely | clearly, obviously | just, only, simply** *I just need some information.* **| hardly** *You hardly need me to tell you that your father is still very frail and must not be upset.* **| not necessarily** *These people may need 24-hour attention, but they do not necessarily need to be in hospital.* **| no longer | still**

VERB + NEED **be going to | be expected to, be likely to, may well** *You may well need to look outside your preferred area to find affordable accommodation.*

needle *noun*

1 **for sewing**

ADJ. **long | blunt | sharp | fine | darning, embroidery, sewing, tapestry**

VERB + NEEDLE **use | thread**

PHRASES **the eye of a needle, needle and thread** *She sewed it on with needle and thread.*

2 **for knitting**

ADJ. **empty | knitting**

NEEDLE + VERB **hold sth** *a needle holding two stitches*

3 **for drugs**

ADJ. **hypodermic, syringe | long | sharp | fine | clean, sterile | contaminated, infected | used**

VERB + NEEDLE **insert, jab (sb with), plunge, put, stick** *He saw her stick a needle into her arm.* **| use | share** *the dangers of sharing needles*

NEEDLE + VERB **go in** *The needle went in easily.*

NEEDLE + NOUN **tip | exchange** *He believes that needle exchange schemes* (= where drug users can change used needles for clean ones) *encourage drug addiction.*

PHRASES **the prick of a needle**

4 **on a compass/instrument**

ADJ. **magnetized | compass**

NEEDLE + VERB **move** *The needle moved away from the wind.* **| point | settle** *Wait until the needle settles and is pointing in one direction.*

PHRASES **the needle of a compass**

5 **on a pine tree**

ADJ. **conifer, pine**

VERB + NEEDLE **drop, lose**

needy *adj.*

VERBS **be, look** *a woman who looked needy*

ADV. **genuinely, really, truly, very**

PHRASES **poor and needy** *helping the children of poor and needy parents*

negative *adj.*

1 only thinking about/showing sb/sth's bad qualities

VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | become | remain**

ADV. **distinctly, extremely, strongly, terribly, very** *the strongly negative implications of these survey results Their attitude was terribly negative.* **| completely, entirely, exclusively, purely, totally, wholly** *She spoke in entirely negative terms.* **| largely, mainly, overwhelmingly | fairly, rather, slightly, somewhat | apparently | essentially** *Critical thinking is essentially negative as it seeks to dissect and not to build.* **| generally**

PREP. **about** *He's been rather negative about the idea.*

2 showing that sth has not happened/been found

VERBS **be, prove, test** *The breathalyser test proved negative. He tested negative for HIV infection.*

PREP. **for** *The urine tests were negative for protein.*

negative *noun*

1 **denial**

VERB + NEGATIVE **answer (sth) in, reply in** *She answered the question in the negative.*

2 **developed photographic film**

ADJ. **original | photographic | film, glass**

QUANT. **strip**

VERB + NEGATIVE **produce | develop** *His interest in photography started with him developing negatives that he found lying around the house.* **| keep** *We must assume that the spy kept the negatives.* **| destroy**

neglect *noun*

ADJ. **general, total | comparative, relative | benign** *The eighteenth-century interior of the building has survived through benign neglect.* **| deliberate, serious, wilful | physical | child** *The maximum penalty for child neglect is ten years' imprisonment.*

VERB + NEGLECT **suffer (from)** *The buildings suffered neglect for centuries.* **| be guilty of** *The doctor was guilty of serious neglect of duty.*

PREP. **by ~** *cruelty by neglect* **| through ~** *the suffering of children through neglect* **| to the ~ of** *She had concentrated on her music to the neglect of her other studies.*

PHRASES **centuries/years of neglect** *After years of neglect the house is at last being restored.*

neglect *verb*

ADV. **grossly, seriously | completely, entirely, totally, wholly | largely | conveniently** *(ironic)*, **deliberately, wilfully** *conveniently neglecting their responsibilities* **| conspicuously** *an aspect of the problem conspicuously neglected by social scientists* **| hitherto, previously**

VERB + NEGLECT **tend to | cannot/could not afford to** *This sector is one of the major growth areas and we cannot afford to neglect it.*

PREP. **in favour of** *Local communities have been neglected in favour of private sector interests.*

neglected *adj.*

1 **not given enough attention**

VERBS **be, feel, lie, look, remain, seem, stand** *His tools lay neglected in the garden.* **| become, get**

ADV. **badly, extremely, much, sadly, seriously, sorely, very, woefully** *It is a sadly neglected work. The building is sorely neglected.* **| largely | comparatively, rather, relatively, somewhat | hitherto, previously | unjustly** *She is an excellent and unjustly neglected author.*

2 **not given enough food, clothing, etc.**

VERBS **be, look** *The group of street children looked ragged and neglected.*

ADV. **badly, grossly, severely**

negligence *noun*

ADJ. **gross | contributory** *The plaintiff was guilty of contributory negligence for failing to wear a crash helmet.* **| medical, professional | criminal**

VERB + NEGLIGENCE **be guilty of | accuse sb of, allege, claim, sue for** *The solicitor was accused of professional negligence.* **| deny | prove | arise from** *death arising from negligence*

NEGLIGENCE + NOUN **case | claim**

PREP. **by ~** *His death was brought about by negligence on the doctor's part.* **| through ~** *damage to company property through negligence* **| ~ in** *negligence in navigation*

PHRASES **a finding of negligence** *The court made a finding of contributory negligence.* **| the result of (the) negligence** *The accident was the result of negligence on the part of the driver.* > Note at CRIME(for more verbs)

negligent *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, grossly, seriously, very | wholly | criminally**

PREP. **in** *The hospital was negligent in the way it looked after this young man.* **| over** *The court found him to be negligent over the loss of £18 million by the local authority.*

negligible *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **absolutely | by no means, far from** *Delays in the courts are far from negligible.* **| almost**

negotiate *verb*

1 **try to reach an agreement**

ADV. **carefully** *a carefully negotiated series of concessions* | **successfully** | **freely** | **individually, separately** *Rents are individually negotiated between landlord and tenant.* | **jointly** | **directly** *negotiating directly with the rebels* | **secretly** | **constantly, continually** *The parameters of the job are being continually negotiated.*

VERB + NEGOTIATE **be able to** | **be prepared to, be willing to** *Are the employers really willing to negotiate?* | **attempt to, seek to, try to** | **manage to** | **help (to)**

PREP. **between** *to negotiate between the two sides* | **for** *We are negotiating for the release of the prisoners.* | **on** *They have refused to negotiate on this issue.* | **on behalf of** *negotiating on behalf of Britain* | **with** *I managed to negotiate successfully with the authorities.*

2 **successfully get over/past sth**

ADV. **easily, safely** *He safely negotiated the slippery stepping stones.*

VERB + NEGOTIATE **be difficult to** *The flight of steps was quite difficult to negotiate with a heavy suitcase.*

negotiation *noun*

ADJ. **difficult, lengthy, protracted | direct | successful | fruitless, unsuccessful | behind-the-scenes, secret | bilateral, multilateral | constant, continuous | delicate | detailed | serious** *It's time for some serious negotiation.* **| high-level | pay, peace, trade, wage, etc.**

VERB + NEGOTIATION **enter into, open | break off | resume | conduct** *Negotiations were conducted in secret.* **| conclude | be open to, be subject to** *The final price is open to negotiation.*

NEGOTIATION + VERB **begin, start | continue, go on** *Negotiations continued all day to avert a strike.* **| break down, collapse**

NEGOTIATION + NOUN **process**

PREP. **by ~** *Rents are agreed by negotiation.* **| in ~ (with)** *She is in negotiation with other heads of state on the question of oil prices.* **| through ~** *The problem should be resolved through negotiation.* **| under ~** *Contracts are under negotiation.* **| ~ between** *The alliance is the product of months of negotiation between the two parties.* **| ~ of** *the negotiation of a new contract* **| ~ on** *international negotiations on reducing sulphur dioxide emissions* **| ~ over** *negotiations over the number of houses to be built* **| ~ with** *negotiations with the other side*

PHRASES **a basis for negotiation, a matter for negotiation, months/years of negotiation** *They signed the treaty after several years of negotiation.* **| a process of negotiation** *Compromise is reached by a process of negotiation.* **| room for negotiation** *There is considerable room for negotiation on some of the details.* > Special page at MEETING

negotiator *noun*

ADJ. **clever, good, skilled, tough | professional, trained | chief, principal, senior** *the trade union's chief negotiator* **| union** > Note at JOB

neighbour *noun*

ADJ. **friendly, good** *She's been a very good neighbour to me.* **| close, immediate, near, next-door** *They are near neighbours of ours.* **| nearest** *She leaned towards her nearest neighbour and whispered something.* **| northern, southern, etc.** *England's northern neighbour now has its own parliament.*

PHRASES **friends and neighbours**

neighbourhood *noun*

ADJ. **friendly, nice | respectable, select, smart | poor, run-down | immediate, local, surrounding** *They often got together with other parents in the local neighbourhood.* **| residential | middle-class, working-class | Asian, black, white, etc. | entire, whole** *Before long the whole neighbourhood knew about it.*

VERB + NEIGHBOURHOOD **move into** *A lot of new families have moved into the neighbourhood.*

NEIGHBOURHOOD + NOUN **police, policing | school**

PREP. **around/round the ~** *There were various parks around the neighbourhood.* **| in a/the ~** *There was a large school in the neighbourhood.* **| outside a/the ~** *It was a car from outside the immediate neighbourhood.*

nerve *noun*

1 **in the body**

ADJ. **sensitive, trapped | facial, optic, spinal, etc.**

VERB + NERVE **damage, strain, trap** *I've trapped a nerve in my spine.*

NERVE + VERB **go, lead, run** *The nerve runs from the eye to the brain.* **| transmit sth** *The nerves transmit pain.* **| throb** *He lay awake, his nerves throbbing.*

NERVE + NOUN **cell, end, ending, fibre, tissue | pathway | impulse | damage, injury | gas**

PREP. **along a/the ~** *The message travels along the nerve to the brain.* **| ~ in** *He's been off work with a trapped nerve in his back.* **| ~ to** *Cutting the nerves to the stomach does not affect hunger.*

PHRASES **every nerve in sb's body** *Intense pain shot through every nerve in his body.* **| hit a nerve, touch a (sensitive/raw) nerve** *(figurative) My remarks about divorce had unwittingly touched a raw nerve.*

2 **nerves: mental state**

ADJ. **good, steady | bad, frayed, ragged, shattered, taut** *At the end of a day's teaching, her nerves were absolutely shattered.*

VERB + NERVE **stretch** *Her nerves were stretched to breaking point.*

NERVE + VERB **be on edge** *After the bomb, my nerves were on edge.* **| jangle** *His nerves jangled every time the phone rang.* **| stand** *I'm not sure my nerves can stand another night like this.*

PREP. **~s for** *Skydiving is all right for people who've got the nerves for it.*

PHRASES **a battle/war of nerves** *The union has been fighting a war of nerves with the management over pay.* **| get on sb's nerves** *His endless whining really gets on my nerves.* **| nerves of steel** *You need nerves of steel to be a good poker player.* **| a**

strain on sb's nerves *Looking after him while he was so ill has been a great strain on her nerves.*

3 **nerves: nervous state**

ADJ. **exam, first-night** *I've never suffered from first-night nerves.*

VERB + NERVE **calm, control, soothe, steady** *She took a few deep breaths to calm her nerves.* | **suffer from**

PHRASES **an attack of nerves** *I had an attack of nerves just before I went on stage.* | **a bag/bundle/mass of nerves** *By the time of the interview, I was a bundle of nerves.*

4 **courage**

ADJ. **sufficient**

VERB + NERVE **have** *I didn't have the nerve to ask.* | **lack** | **lose** *At the last minute she almost lost her nerve.* | **keep** *He kept his nerve to win a thrilling match.* | **find** *You must find the nerve to ask for more money.* | **take** *It took a lot of nerve to stand up and speak.*

NERVE + VERB **break, crack, fail (sb)** *At the last moment her nerve failed her.*

PHRASES **a failure/loss of nerve, a test of nerve** *Singing in front of so many people was a real test of nerve.*

nervous breakdown *noun*

ADJ. **complete**

VERB + NERVOUS BREAKDOWN **have, suffer**

PHRASES **the brink/edge/verge of a nervous breakdown** *The stress of her job had brought her to the brink of a nervous breakdown.*

nervous *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** *Both men appeared nervous.* **| become, get, grow | make sb** *Sit down?you're making me nervous!*

ADV. **desperately, extremely, highly, really, very** *He had worked himself up into a highly nervous state.* **| increasingly | almost | a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | suddenly | clearly, obviously | understandably**

PREP. **about** *nervous about the wedding* **| at** *nervous at what might happen* **| of** *I was slightly nervous of him.*

nervousness *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, extreme, great** *With great nervousness she followed him.* **| increasing | slight | initial**

VERB + NERVOUSNESS **feel | betray, show (signs of)** *She managed to speak without betraying her nervousness.* **| cover, hide** *She laughed to hide her nervousness.* **| overcome | sense** *I could sense his nervousness.*

PREP. **from ~** *I was babbling from nervousness.* **| out of ~** *He found himself chattering away out of nervousness.* **| ~ about** *her nervousness about working with children* **| ~ at** *He felt some nervousness at the prospect of meeting her.*

PHRASES **a sign of nervousness** *Adjusting your tie is often a sign of nervousness.*

nest *noun*

ADJ. **ant's, bird's, wasp's, etc.**

VERB + NEST **build, make | sit on** *The male and female take turns to sit on the nest.* **| fly, leave** *The young ones have flown the nest.*

NEST + NOUN **site** *The male uses song to attract a female to his nest site.* **| hole**

PREP. **away from a/the ~** *A rat took the egg while the mother was away from the nest.* **| in/inside a/the ~** *The snake will attack if disturbed inside its nest.* **| on a/the ~** *The female spends all her time on the nest.*

nestle *verb*

ADV. **comfortably, safely**

PREP. **against** *She sat back, nestling against his chest.* **| among** *The town nestles comfortably among the hills.* **| between, in** *a tiny village nestling in a valley*

net *noun*

ADJ. **fine, fine-mesh | safety | fishing | mosquito**

VERB + NET **mend** *The fishermen were mending their nets.* **| cast, spread (out) | haul in | slip through** *(often figurative) We tried to contact all former students but one or two slipped through the net.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Unfortunately the animals are often caught in fishing nets.* **| into a/the ~** *The ball went into the net.* **| over the ~** *to hit the ball over the net*

nettle *noun*

ADJ. **stinging | dead** (= a variety that does not sting)

QUANT. **clump, patch**

VERB + NETTLE **cut (down), get rid of**

NETTLE + VERB **grow | sting | spread** *The nettles had spread and now covered half the garden.*

PREP. **in (the) ~s** *There was an old car half buried in the nettles.* **| on ~s** *The butterflies lay their eggs on nettles.*

network *noun*

ADJ. extensive, large, vast, wide, widespread | complex, elaborate, intricate | dense | strong *a strong network of friends* **| supportive | global, local, national, worldwide | communications, telephone | bus, motorway, rail, railway, road | social | news, radio, television | computer | distribution, support | integrated**

VERB + NETWORK build up, create, establish, form, set up *They are establishing a network of pumps and pipelines to move the oil.* **| form** *The new rail services will form a network connecting the capital and major cities.* **| run** *They were unable to run the telephone network economically.* **| manage** *software to help you manage your network*

PREP. across a/the ~ *Users can access data across a network.* **| in a/the ~** *Members are all linked together in a network.* **| on a/the ~** *All computer users are connected on a network.* **| over a/the ~** *The files are accessible over a network.* **| through a/the ~** *Drinking water is brought to the village through a network of underground pipes.* **| via a/the ~** *The newspapers are sent out via a national distribution network.* **| ~ of** *a network of motorways* > Note at ORGANIZATION

neurosis *noun*

ADJ. **individual, personal | anxiety, obsessional**

VERB + NEUROSIS **have**

PREP. **~ about** *the director's neurosis about actors arriving late for filming*

neutral *adj.*

1 **not supporting either side**

VERBS **be | remain, stay**

ADV. **strictly** *The government maintained its strictly neutral policy.* **| completely | basically, broadly** *The Russians took a broadly neutral position.* **| politically** *The meeting must be at a politically neutral location.*

PREP. **about** *neutral about this issue*

2 **not showing strong qualities/feelings/colour**

VERBS **be, seem** *Her expression seemed neutral.* **| remain | keep sth** *Dolly kept her voice carefully neutral.*

ADV. **perfectly | fairly, quite, relatively** *She chose fairly neutral make-up.* **| apparently | carefully**

3 **not affected by sth**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **culturally, ethically, ideologically, morally, politically** *Behaviour is never culturally neutral.*

PHRASES **gender neutral** *She argued that the law should always be gender neutral* (= apply in exactly the same way to men and women).

neutrality *noun*

ADJ. **political | armed** *a policy of armed neutrality.*

VERB + NEUTRALITY **declare, proclaim** *Switzerland declared its neutrality.* **| maintain, preserve**

PREP. **~ between** *the commission's neutrality between Protestants and Catholics*

neutralize *verb*

ADV. **effectively** *This strategy effectively neutralized what the Conservatives had hoped would be a vote-winner.*

PREP. **with** *Discarded acid should be neutralized with alkali before disposal.*

new *adj.*

1 **recently built/made**

VERBS **be, look** *The car still looks quite new.*

ADV. **brand, spanking** *a scratch on my brand new car very proud of their spanking new kitchen* **| fairly, quite**

2 **different/not familiar**

VERBS **be** *These ideas are not entirely new.*

ADV. **very | completely, entirely, quite | fairly, quite**

PREP. **to** *It was all very new and strange to me. She's still quite new to the job and needs a lot of help.*

PHRASES **be nothing new about/in sth** *There is nothing new in teenagers wanting to change the world.*

news *noun*

1 **new information**

ADJ. **encouraging, excellent, good, great, marvellous, terrific, tremendous, welcome, wonderful** *The good news is that we've all been given an extra day's leave. Great news! We've bought the house.* | **bad, gloomy, grim, sad, terrible, tragic, unwelcome** | **dramatic, important, momentous** | **hot, late, latest, recent** *Some late news has just come in.* | **old, stale** | **exciting, interesting** | **front-page** *It was front-page news at the time.* | **domestic, home, local, national, regional** | **foreign, international** | **business, City, financial** | **sports, tennis, etc.**

QUANT. **bit, item, piece** *We've had a bit of good news.*

VERB + NEWS **get, have, hear, learn, receive** *Have you heard the latest news?* | **catch up on** *I want to catch up on all your news.* | **announce, break, bring (sb), give sb, tell sb** *The police had to break the news to the boy's parents.* | **spread** *She ran from office to office, spreading the news.* | **leak** *News of their engagement was leaked to the press.* | **report** *I haven't really got any news to report.* | **carry** *'The Daily Nation' carried news of the event.* | **gather, get** *It's the reporter's job to go out and gather news.* | **await, expect, wait for** *They are waiting for news of their relatives.* | **greet, react to, welcome** *The news was greeted with astonishment.* | **make** *It was a very minor incident and barely made the news.*

NEWS + VERB **come, come in, come through** *News is coming in of a large fire in central London.* | **break, leak out** *The news broke while we were on holiday.* | **spread, travel** *The news spread like wildfire.*

NEWS + NOUN **bulletin, flash, item, release, report, story** *Programmes were interrupted for a news flash.* | **coverage** *News coverage of the fighting was extremely biased.* | **conference** *The former manager gave his first news conference since being sacked.* | **agency, service** | **programme** | **editor** | **source** | **media**

PREP. **at the ~** *She went completely to pieces at the news of his death.* | **in the ~** *She's been in the news a lot lately.* | **with the ~** *Joan came in with the news that a pay rise had been agreed.* | **~ about** *I'm not interested in news about celebrities.* | **~ from** *And now with news from the Games, over to our Olympic correspondent.* | **~ of** *news of fresh killings* | **~ on** *Is there any news on the car bomb attack?* | **~ to** *It was news* *to me that they'*d *got married.*

2 the news: on TV or radio

ADJ. radio, television, TV | evening, lunchtime, nine o'clock, etc.

VERB + NEWS hear, listen to, see, watch | turn on | broadcast | read *The news is read by Harriet Daly.*

PREP. in the ~ *Our school was mentioned in the news.* **| on the ~** *I heard it on t*

newspaper *noun*

ADJ. **daily, evening, morning, Sunday, weekly | today's, yesterday's | independent, left-wing, right-wing | local, national, provincial, regional | broadsheet, quality | tabloid | popular | financial | folded, rolled-up**

QUANT. **copy** *Have you got a copy of yesterday's newspaper?* **| edition** *today's edition of the newspaper*

VERB + NEWSPAPER **buy, get, take** *Do you take a daily newspaper?* **| flick through, read | print, produce, publish | edit, write for/in | appear in** *Her article appeared in the Saturday newspaper.* **| get into**

NEWSPAPER + VERB **come out** *The newspaper comes out every Saturday.*

NEWSPAPER + NOUN **article, clipping, column, coverage, cutting | baron, magnate, owner | correspondent, editor, reporter | kiosk, shop, stand**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *an article in a local newspaper* **| on a/the ~** *She got a job on a national newspaper.*

nice *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste** *I felt nice and cosy. That bread smells nice. His mother sounded very nice on the phone.* **| make sth** *I tidied the room to make it nice for the others when they came home.*

ADV. **awfully, exceptionally, extremely, incredibly, jolly, really, terribly, very** *an awfully nice man* **| perfectly, thoroughly** *I'm sure she's perfectly nice really.* **| not particularly** *It had not been a particularly nice experience.* **| pretty, quite, rather | enough** *Some of the boys were nice enough, but she didn't want to go out with them.*

PREP. **about** *He was incredibly nice about it, though I am sure it caused him a lot of trouble.* **| for** *It's nice for Mum to get out more.* **| to** *Can't you be nice to each other for once?*

PHRASES **nice little** *It's a nice little place you've got here.*

niche *noun*

ADJ. **right, suitable | distinctive, particular, special | little** *He had found his own little niche in life.* **| market | ecological**

VERB + NICHE **have** *Each animal has its ecological niche.* **| find, identify, see, spot** *He saw a niche in the market and exploited it.* **| carve out, create, establish, secure** *She's carved out quite a niche for herself in fashion design.* **| fill, occupy | exploit**

NICHE + NOUN **market, marketing | product**

PREP. **in/into a/the ~** *These animals are moving into the niche left vacant by the disappearance of the big predators.* **| ~ for** *There's a niche for a small stylish car.* **| ~ in** *women who dared question their niche in society*

PHRASES **a niche in the market**

nickname *noun*

VERB + NICKNAME **give sb | acquire, get** *He got his nickname 'Ash' from his heavy smoking.* **| earn (sb) | live up to** *Leicester Tigers lived up to their nickname in a very attacking game.*

NICKNAME + VERB **stick** *He got his nickname when he was at school and it stuck for the rest of his life.*

PREP. **~ for** *'Chalky' is a common nickname for people called White.*

PHRASES **hence her/his nickname** *He worked in a garage?hence his nickname 'Spanner'.*

nicotine *noun*

ADJ. **pure**

VERB + NICOTINE **be addicted to, be dependent on | be stained with**

NICOTINE + NOUN **addiction, craving | addict | patch, substitute | stain** *The nicotine stains on his fingers told me he was under stress.*

PHRASES **dependence on nicotine**

night *noun*

1 **when it is dark and most people sleep**

ADJ. **last, tomorrow | Friday, Saturday, etc. | early, late** *I think I'll have an early night* (= go to bed early). **| long | winter, etc. | bad, restless, sleepless | black, dark | clear, moonlit, starlit, starry | cold, stormy | wedding**

VERB + NIGHT **have | spend** *They spent the night in Bristol.* **| stay** *Ask your Mum if you can stay the night.*

NIGHT + VERB **fall** *When it came the night fell quickly.* **| progress, wear on** *As the night wore on it grew colder.*

NIGHT + NOUN **air, sky | duty, shift**

PREP. **at ~** *lying awake at night* **| by ~** *Paris by night* **| during/in the ~** *I woke in the night.* **| for a/the ~, on Friday, etc. ~, per ~** *The hotel costs £65 per person per night.* **| through/throughout the ~**

PHRASES **all night long, at this time of night, day and night/night and day** (= all the time), **a good night's sleep, good night** *She kissed him good night.* **| in the dead of night** (= in the middle of the night), **morning, noon and night** (= all the time)

2 **time between late afternoon and when you go to bed**

ADJ. **last, tomorrow | Friday, Saturday, etc. | the other** *I saw her the other night* (= a few nights ago).

NIGHT + NOUN **school**

PREP. **at ~** *She doesn't like to walk home late at night.* **| by ~, on Friday, etc. ~**

3 **evening when a special event happens**

ADJ. **first, opening | last** *the last night of the play's run* **| big, great, memorable | dance, election, quiz**

PHRASES **make a night of it** *They decided to make a night of it and went on to a club.* **| a night out** *Fancy a night out?*

nightclub *noun*

ADJ. **top** *a top London nightclub* | **seedy**

VERB + NIGHTCLUB **go to** | **run**

NIGHTCLUB + NOUN **bouncer, owner, singer, staff**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *She's performing at a nightclub in Paris.* | **in a/the ~** *He was murdered in a London nightclub.*

nightmare *noun*

1 **bad dream**

ADJ. **awful, horrible, terrible, terrifying | continuing, recurring**

VERB + NIGHTMARE **have, suffer | wake (up) from | give sb** *The film gave me nightmares.*

PREP. **~ about** *I have nightmares about drowning.*

2 **bad/feared experience**

ADJ. **absolute, awful, horrible, real, terrible, terrifying | worst** *Losing a child is my worst nightmare.* **| personal | living** *The refugees had survived a living nightmare.* **| administrative, bureaucratic, financial, etc.**

VERB + NIGHTMARE **endure, face, suffer, survive | become, prove, turn into** *Their dream of living in the country turned into a nightmare when they both fell seriously ill.* **| create | escape (from)**

NIGHTMARE + VERB **be over | come true**

NIGHTMARE + NOUN **scenario, vision** *the nightmare scenario of mass unemployment The writer evokes a nightmare vision of a future on a polluted planet.* **| world | journey**

nipple *noun*

ADJ. **pert, pointed | erect, hard, rigid, swollen, taut | sensitive, sore**

VERB + NIPPLE **suck**

NIPPLE + VERB **harden, rise, stiffen, tighten**

nod *noun*

ADJ. **brief, brisk, quick, imperceptible, little, slight, small | curt, perfunctory, terse** *He dismissed them with a curt nod.* **| approving, satisfied** *She inspected my work and gave a satisfied nod.* **| reassuring | passing** *(figurative) He gave a passing nod* (= a brief acknowledgement) *to the show that had launched his career.*

VERB + NOD **give (sb)** *My teacher gave me a nod of reassurance and I began.* **| get** *He's ready to play and just waiting to get the nod from the team coach.* **| wait for**

PREP. **at a ~, with a ~ | ~ from** *At a nod from Lawton, he gently turned the handle.* **| ~ in the direction of, ~ of** *a nod of approval* **| ~ to, ~ towards** *'I couldn't have done this alone', he said with a nod towards his wife.*

PHRASES **a nod of sb's/the head** *She answered with an almost imperceptible nod of the head.*

nod *verb*

ADV. **just, merely, only, simply** *Ashamed, I could only nod.* | **fervently, furiously, vigorously, violently** *'That's exactly it,' she said, nodding vigorously.* | **gently** *She nodded gently to herself.* | **almost imperceptibly, slightly** | **slowly** | **quickly** | **abruptly, briefly, briskly, curtly** *He nodded curtly and walked away.* | **jerkily, stiffly** | **dumbly, mutely, silently, wordlessly** *She could not speak but just nodded mutely.* | **absently, abstractedly, vaguely** *He nodded absently, his mind obviously on other things.* | **meekly** | **politely, respectfully** | **amiably, cheerfully, happily** | **appreciatively, approvingly, eagerly, encouragingly, enthusiastically, gratefully, sympathetically, understandingly** | **doubtfully, reluctantly** | **coolly** | **grimly** | **glumly, miserably, sadly** | **gravely, seriously, solemnly, thoughtfully** | **intelligently, sagely, wisely** *She nodded sagely as she listened.* | **back**

PREP. **at** *They nodded at us, so we nodded back.* | **in** *She nodded in agreement.* | **to** *She nodded to Duncan as she left.* | **towards** *'Let's go,' he said, nodding towards the door.* | **with** *He nodded with satisfaction.*

noise *noun*

ADJ. **deafening, loud | awful, horrible, terrible | low, slight** *The slightest noise will wake him.* **| sudden | funny, strange | background** *There was constant background noise from the motorway.* **| constant, incessant | banging, buzzing, clattering, etc. | aircraft, engine, traffic | rude** *One of the children made a rude noise.*

VERB + NOISE **create, generate, make** *the noise created by aircraft She was making a lot of noise.* **| hear, listen to** *We could hear funny little sucking noises.* **| deaden, reduce** *Wood is used to deaden the noise.*

NOISE + VERB **come from sth** *There were strange noises coming from the sitting room.* **| become/get/grow louder, grow, increase, rise | abate, die away/down, drop, fade away, fall** *The deafening noise of the machine dropped to a rumble, then stopped.*

NOISE + NOUN **level | pollution**

PREP. **above/over the ~** *We had to shout over the noise of the traffic.* **| ~ from** *the noise from the engine room*

noisy *adj.*

VERBS **be | get, grow** *The party was getting a bit noisy.*

ADV. **deafeningly, extremely, particularly, really, terribly, very | a bit, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, rather**

nominate *verb*

ADV. **formally, officially**

VERB + NOMINATE **ask sb to, invite sb to** *Ten critics were asked to nominate their Book of the Year.*

PREP. **as** *He has now been formally nominated as presidential candidate.* **| for** *She was nominated for a special award.* **| to** *He has been nominated to the committee.*

PHRASES **the power/right to nominate sb**

nomination *noun*

ADJ. **presidential | Democratic, Republican, etc. | Oscar, etc.**

VERB + NOMINATION **secure, win | stand for** *She is standing for the Democratic Party presidential nomination.* **| accept | withdraw | support | invite** *Nominations are invited for the post of party chairman.* **| seek** *She is seeking nomination as a candidate in the elections.*

NOMINATION + NOUN **form, paper | process**

PREP. **~ as** *She has withdrawn her nomination as chairman.* **| ~ for** *his nomination for the Best Actor award* **| ~ to** *He will not accept nomination to the committee.*

nominee *noun*

ADJ. **presidential | Democratic, Republican Party, etc. | Oscar, etc.**

VERB + NOMINEE **appoint**

PREP. **through a/the ~** *They were acting through nominees.* **| ~ for** *the nominees for Best Director*

nonchalance *noun*

ADJ. **cool**

VERB + NONCHALANCE **affect, feign, pretend** *She shrugged, feigning nonchalance.*

PREP. **with ~** *declining the offer with cool nonchalance*

PHRASES **an air of nonchalance** *'Oh, by the way ... ' she started, with a false air of nonchalance.*

non-existent *adj.*

VERBS **be | become** *Services for customers on public transport are becoming non-existent.*

ADV. **completely, totally** *The hotel turned out to be completely non-existent.* **|** **almost, practically, virtually** *Crime is almost non-existent in these communities.*

nonsense *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, arrant, complete, pure, total, utter** *Most of his theories are arrant nonsense.* **| superstitious** *You don't believe that superstitious nonsense, do you?*

VERB + NONSENSE **talk** *Don't talk nonsense!* **| put up with, stand** *I'm not going to stand any more of this nonsense.* **| stop** *Just stop this nonsense of refusing to talk to anybody.* **| believe**

PREP. **~ about** *What's all this nonsense about you giving up your job?*

PHRASES **a load/lot of nonsense** *People are talking a lot of nonsense about him being the new Michael Jordan.* **| make (a) nonsense of sth** *This decision makes absolute nonsense of all our hard work.*

noon *noun*

ADJ. **12** *The football action starts at 12 noon.* **| high** *the glaring light of high noon*

PREP. **around ~, at ~, by ~, till/until ~**

PHRASES **morning, noon and night** (= all the time)

noose *noun*

ADJ. **hangman's**

VERB + NOOSE **fasten, tie | pull, tighten | make**

NOOSE + VERB **tighten**

PREP. **in/into a/the** *He put his head into the noose.* **| ~ around/round** *They tied a noose round her neck.*

norm *noun*

ADJ. **accepted, established | ethical, moral | cultural, social | statistical | community, family, group**

VERB + NORM **conform to** *Their behaviour conforms to the group norm.* **| break, challenge | deviate from, differ from**

PREP. **above the ~, below the ~, over the ~** *They want to discourage pay settlements over the norm.* **| ~ for** *On-screen editing has become the norm for all student work.* **| ~ of** *accepted norms of behaviour*

PHRASES **a deviation/departure from the norm, an exception to the norm, the norm rather than the exception** *In the inner-city areas, poverty is the norm rather than the exception.*

normal *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become | consider sth, regard sth as, view sth as** *It is now regarded as normal for women to work outside the home.*

ADV. **very | completely, perfectly, quite** *It started out as a perfectly normal day.* **| fairly, near, pretty** *I'd say it was pretty normal to be upset if your house burned down.*

PREP. **for** *The temperature is near normal for spring.*

PHRASES **as normal** *First work out the answers as normal.* **| in the normal way** *Go for your check-ups in the normal way until you are six months pregnant.* **| in/under normal circumstances** *Under normal circumstances Martin would probably have gone to university.* **| sb's normal self** *Mandy doesn't seem her normal self today.*

normal *noun*

VERB + NORMAL **be/go back to, return to** *After a week of festivities, life returned to normal.*

PREP. **above ~** *The rainfall has been above normal for the time of year.* **| below ~** *Sales to December are well below normal.* **| near ~** *His pulse rate had slowed to somewhere near normal.*

normality *noun*

VERB + NORMALITY **restore, return to**

PHRASES **a return to normality** *A complete return to normality may take weeks.* **|** **some semblance of normality** *By now any semblance of normality had disappeared.*

north *noun*

ADJ. **magnetic, true | frozen** *the white expanses of the frozen north* > Note at DIRECTION(for more collocates)

nose *noun*

1 **part of the face**

ADJ. **big, bulbous, enormous, huge, large, long, prominent, strong | little, small, stubby, tiny | straight | aquiline, curved,** Roman | beaky, crooked, **hooked | snub, tip-tilted, turned-up, upturned | pointed, sharp** *The sharp nose and thin lips gave his face a very harsh look.* **| narrow, thin** *She had dark eyes and a long narrow nose.* **| flat, flattened | aristocratic, elegant | pink, red, shiny** *He stuck his bulbous red nose back into his pint of beer. She dressed up as a clown with a white face and red nose.* **| blocked, congested, dripping, runny, snotty** *a child with a runny nose* **| bleeding, bloodied, bloody, broken, swollen | wet** *The dog pushed its wet nose into my palm.* **| sensitive** *Cats have very sensitive noses and rely heavily on scent markings.* **| pierced | false** *I had to wear a black moustache and false nose for the role.*

VERB + NOSE **breathe through | blow, wipe | pick, rub, scratch | tap** *He tapped his nose in a knowing gesture.* **| wrinkle** *She wrinkled her nose as if she had just smelt a bad smell.* **| break, split | turn up** *(figurative) The children turn up their noses at almost everything I cook.* **| look down** *(figurative) People who live in that area tend to look down their noses at their poorer neighbours.*

NOSE + VERB **wrinkle** *His nose wrinkled with distaste.* **| twitch | point** *She walked with her shoulders back and her nose pointing skyward.* **| run** *She was weeping quite loudly and her nose was running.* **| bleed**

NOSE + NOUN **job** *She wasn't happy with her appearance so she had a nose job.* **| bleed** (also **nosebleed)**

PREP. **through the ~** *Breathe in through your nose and out through your mouth.* **| up your ~** *The boy sat there with his finger up his nose.*

PHRASES **the bridge of the nose** *He pushed his glasses up the bridge of his nose.* **| (put/stick, etc.) your nose in the air** *(often figurative) She walked in with her nose in the air, ignoring everyone.* **| press your nose against sth** *Charlie pressed his nose against the window.*

2 **front part of a vehicle**

ADJ. **blunt**

VERB + NOSE **push down, put down** *He pushed the nose down for the final approach.*

NOSE + VERB **dip, drop** *The plane's nose dipped as it started descending towards the runway.*

NOSE + NOUN **cone, section | dive** (also **nosedive)**

PHRASES **nose to tail** *The traffic was nose to tail for miles.*

nostalgia *noun*

ADJ. **great | pure** *an evening of pure nostalgia*

QUANT. **wave** *A wave of nostalgia came over him.*

VERB + NOSTALGIA **feel** *He thought back to his time as a student and felt no nostalgia for any of it.* **| evoke | indulge in, wallow in**

NOSTALGIA + NOUN **buff** *Nostalgia buffs gathered for the auction of wartime memorabilia.* **| trip** *The college reunion was a great nostalgia trip.*

PREP. **with ~** *I remember it with great nostalgia.* **| ~ for** *She felt great nostalgia for the old way of life.*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of nostalgia**

nostril *noun*

VERB + NOSTRIL **clog, fill** *The stench of the cellar filled my nostrils.*

NOSTRIL + VERB **dilate, flare**

NOSTRIL + NOUN **hair**

PREP. **in your ~s** *The smell of decay lingered in her nostrils.* **| through your ~s** *She drew on the cigarette and blew smoke through her nostrils.*

notable *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **especially, particularly**

PREP. **for** *The drawing room is particularly notable for its splendid oak panelling.*

note *noun*

1 **short letter**

ADJ. **brief, little, quick, short** *Just a quick note to wish you luck.* | **handwritten** | **covering, credit, delivery, love, promissory, ransom, sick, suicide, thank-you**

VERB + NOTE **scribble (sb), write (sb)** | **send (sb)** | **leave (sb)** *She left me a note to say my supper was in the fridge.*

PHRASES **a note of thanks**

2 **(often notes) words that you write down quickly**

ADJ. **brief** | **copious, detailed** | **scrappy** | **lecture** | **case, clinical, medical**

VERB + NOTE **jot down, keep, make, take** *She kept detailed notes of her travels.* | **go through, look through, read through, sift through**

PREP. **~ of** *I've made a note of the book's title.* | **~ on** *The catalogue has full notes on each artist.*

PHRASES **make a mental note (of sth/to do sth)** *She made a mental note to ring them in the morning.*

3 **(usually notes) extra piece of information**

ADJ. **detailed** | **explanatory** | **introductory** | **marginal** | **biographical** | **briefing, programme, usage**

4 **piece of paper money**

ADJ. **crumpled** | **five-pound, ten-euro, etc.**

QUANT. **bundle, roll, wad** *a thick wad of notes*

5 **single musical sound**

ADJ. **high, top** *She's a bit wobbly on the top notes.* | **low** | **right** | **wrong** | **musical** | **dissonant** | **chromatic, diatonic**

VERB + NOTE **play, sing** | **hit, strike** | **hold**

6 **quality/feeling**

ADJ. **brighter, cheerful, happier, lighter, optimistic, positive** *On a brighter note ...* | **discordant, jarring, sad, sour** | **faint** | **serious** | **right** *His opening remarks struck the right note.* | **odd** | **false** | **cautionary, warning** *He sounded a cautionary note.* | **personal**

VERB + NOTE **hit, sound, strike** | **inject, introduce** *His remarks injected a note of levity into the proceedings.* | **detect** *I detected a faint note of weariness in his voice.* | **end on** *The conference ended on an optimistic note.*

NOTE + VERB **creep into/enter sb's voice**

PREP. **~ of** *A note of suspicion entered his voice.*

PHRASES **a note in sb's voice** *There was a sad note in her voice.* | **on a brighter/happier, etc. note**

7 **notice/attention**

ADJ. **careful**

VERB + NOTE **take** *He took careful note of the suspicious-looking man in the corner of the bar.*

PHRASES **worthy of note** *The frescoes are worthy of note.*

note *verb*

ADV. **carefully | in passing** *He noted in passing that the government's record on unemployment was not very good.* **| duly** *Her lapse was duly noted by the stage manager and reported to the director.* **| above, already, earlier, previously** *These policies, as noted above, are not always successful.* **| approvingly | ruefully**

VERB + NOTE **should** *Visitors should note that the tower is not open to the public.* **| be important to | be interesting to | be pleased to** *I was pleased to note that my name had been spelt correctly for once.*

PHRASES **be worth noting** *There are a few points here that are worth noting.* **| it must/should be noted that … , a point to note** *There are two other points to note from this graph.*

notebook *noun*

ADJ. **bound, leather-bound, spiral-bound | loose-leaf | pocket | shorthand | reporter's**

VERB + NOTEBOOK **enter sth in, jot sth down in, record sth in, scribble (sth) in, write sth down in, write (sth) in | draw (out), get out, pull out, take out** *She drew a notebook from her bag.* **| tear a page/sheet from, tear out a page/sheet of | consult | fill | carry | keep** *She kept a notebook during the trip.*

NOTEBOOK + NOUN **computer**

PREP. **in a/your ~**

PHRASES **an entry in a notebook**

noted *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **especially, particularly**

PREP. **for** *The lake is also noted for its bird population.*

noteworthy *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | make sth** *the thing that makes this era so noteworthy* **| consider sth** *His reign has never been considered particuarly noteworthy.*

ADV. **especially, particularly**

PREP. **for** *The bridge is noteworthy for its sheer size.*

notice *noun*

1 attention

VERB + NOTICE **take** *Take no notice of what you read in the papers.* **| come to** *Normally such matters would not come to my notice.* **| bring to | attract** *The change was too subtle to attract much notice.*

2 written statement

ADJ. **warning**

VERB + NOTICE **issue, place, post, put up** *The company has issued warning notices saying that all water should be boiled.* **| take down | read, see**

NOTICE + VERB **appear, go up** *The notice about his resignation went up this morning.* **| say sth, tell sb sth**

PREP. **~ about** *There are notices about where to park.*

3 information given in advance

ADJ. **written | advance, prior | short | reasonable**

VERB + NOTICE **give, hand in your** *She's given notice that she intends to leave.* **| have, receive | need, require** *The bank requires three days' notice.*

PREP. **without ~** *They cut off the electricity without notice.* **| ~ of** *A landlord must give reasonable notice of his intention to inspect the property.*

PHRASES **at a moment's notice** *The team is ready to go anywhere in the world at a moment's notice.* **| at short notice** *It's the best we can do at such short notice.* **| notice to quit** *His landlord gave him two months' notice to quit.* **| on a month's/week's, etc. notice** *She's on a week's notice, which doesn't give her long to find another job.*

notice *verb*

ADV. **not even** *My mum probably won't even notice I'm gone.* **| not really** *Nobody really noticed the changes.* **| barely, hardly, scarcely | (only) just** *I must go! I've only just noticed how late it is.* **| suddenly | at once, immediately** *He noticed at once that something was wrong.* **| quickly, soon | eventually, finally**

VERB + NOTICE **fail to | not appear to, not seem to** *He didn't seem to notice her.*

PHRASES **can't/couldn't help noticing sth** *You couldn't help noticing how his eyes kept following her.*

noticeable *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **especially, extremely, particularly, very | barely, hardly, scarcely | quite | immediately** *The smell was immediately noticeable when you walked in the front door.*

PREP. **in** *These changes are more noticeable in women than in men.* **| to** *This may not be noticeable to people from outside New York.*

notification *noun*

ADJ. **formal, official, written | advance, prior**

VERB + NOTIFICATION **have, receive | give (sb)**

PREP. **without ~** *The police are entitled to inspect the premises without notification.* **| ~ of** *They failed to give notification of their intention to demolish the building.*

notify *verb*

ADV. **forthwith, immediately | in advance | by post, in writing | formally**

VERB + NOTIFY **be obliged to, be required to, must, should** *If you see anything suspicious you should notify the police immediately.* **| fail to**

PREP. **of** *All applicants will be notified of the result by post.* **| to** *Changes must be notified to the chairman.*

notion *noun*

ADJ. **absurd, peculiar, ridiculous | hazy, vague | faintest, foggiest** *I haven't the faintest notion how to get there.* **| romantic | accepted, conventional, traditional | preconceived | general** *There seems to be a general notion that nothing can be done about the problem.* **| simple, simplistic**

VERB + NOTION **have** *He's got some vague notion that people will be queueing up to finance the project.* **| reject | accept | support | dispel** *We must dispel this notion that you can rely on the state for everything.*

PREP. **~ of** *They have come to reject the traditional notion of womanhood.*

notoriety *noun*

ADJ. **sudden | certain | international, public**

VERB + NOTORIETY **have | achieve, gain** *He achieved sudden notoriety when the details of his private life were revealed.* **| bring**

PREP. **~ for** *This make of car has a certain notoriety for rust problems.*

noun *noun*

ADJ. **plural, singular** *'Sheep' is both a singular and plural noun.* **| countable | mass, uncountable | feminine, masculine, neuter** *Most feminine nouns in Polish end in the letter 'a'.* **| common, proper** *Proper nouns begin with a capital letter.* **| abstract, concrete** *'Happiness' is an abstract noun. 'Car' is a concrete noun.* **| collective** *'Flock' is a collective noun.*

VERB + NOUN **decline, inflect** *English nouns are not usually inflected.* **| modify, qualify** *a prepositional phrase qualifying a noun* **| follow** *The noun is followed by an intransitive verb.* **| precede** *an adjective preceding the noun*

NOUN + VERB **end in sth** *Most English plural nouns end in an 's'.* **| follow sth | precede sth**

NOUN + NOUN **class, phrase**

nourish *verb*

PHRASES **properly/well nourished** *Patients recover quickly if they are well nourished.*

nourishment *noun*

ADJ. **adequate, proper, sufficient** *lack of adequate nourishment* **| vital | emotional, intellectual**

VERB + NOURISHMENT **draw, get, obtain, take | deprive sb/sth of, provide (sb/sth with)**

PREP. **~ from** *Every animal in the food chain draws nourishment from other animals or plants.*

novel *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound** *The scheme sounded rather novel.*

ADV. **extremely, very | completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | rather, relatively | essentially**

novel *noun*

ADJ. **hardback, paperback | first** *a prize for the best first novel of the year* **| latest, new | literary | best-selling, popular | acclaimed** *his critically acclaimed novel* **| famous | classic | contemporary, modern | nineteenth-century, Victorian | adult, children's | autobiographical | epistolary** *Samuel Richardson's novels are all epistolary in form.* **| adventure, comic, crime, detective, historical, satirical, spy, realist, romantic**

QUANT. **copy** *I took a copy of a Graham Greene novel on the train with me.*

VERB + NOVEL **produce, write | publish | read | accept (for publication), reject (for publication)** *Her first novel was finally accepted for publication.* **| translate | adapt** *adapting the novel for television* **| review**

NOVEL + VERB **be based on sth** *The novel was based on a true life story.* **| be set, take place** *The novel was set in a small village in France.*

PREP. **~ about** *a novel about growing up*

novelist *noun*

ADJ. **great, leading** *one of the country's leading contemporary novelists* **| famous | best-selling, popular** *his ambition to become a best-selling novelist* **| neglected | prolific | contemporary | nineteenth-century, Victorian | crime, historical, romantic, satirical**

NOVELIST + VERB **write sth** *A prolific novelist, she wrote more than forty books.*

novelty *noun*

ADJ. **great** *This tropical fruit is still a great novelty in Europe.* **| sheer** *The sheer novelty of the band's performance won them many fans.*

NOVELTY + VERB **wear off** *The novelty of her new job soon wore off.*

NOVELTY + NOUN **value** *A trip down a mine has great novelty value for most people.*

PHRASES **be something of a novelty** *At that time the motor car was still something of a novelty.*

November *noun* > Note at MONTH

novice *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, complete | young**

NOVICE + NOUN **user** *The on-screen manual shows the novice user the basics of the program.* **| pilot, sailor, teacher, etc.**

PREP. **~ at** *I'm still a novice at the sport.* **| ~ in** *a novice in politics*

nuance *noun*

ADJ. **delicate, fine, slight, subtle** *A baby is sensitive to the slightest nuances in its mother's voice. the painting's subtle nuances of colour and texture* **| social** *It took a while to get used to the social nuances of the office.*

VERB + NUANCE **understand** *Spectators may not understand all the nuances of the game.*

nude *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, lie, sit, stand** *He refused to appear nude in the film. She was lying nude on a beach towel.*

ADV. **completely | almost | semi**

nudge *noun*

ADJ. **gentle, little | affectionate**

VERB + NUDGE **give sb** *She gave me a gentle nudge in the ribs to tell me to shut up.* **| feel**

nudge *verb*

ADV. **gently, playfully**

PHRASES **nudge sb in the ribs** *She nudged him playfully in the ribs.*

nuisance *noun*

ADJ. **great | awful, bloody** *(taboo)*, **confounded, damned** *It's an awful nuisance having builders in the house all day.* **| private, public, statutory** *(all law) He was charged with committing a public nuisance.*

PREP. **~ to** *I don't want to be a nuisance to you.*

PHRASES **make a nuisance of yourself**

null *adj.* **null and void**

VERBS **be | become | render sth** *Their actions rendered the contract null and void.* **| declare sth** *They declared the agreement null and void.*

numb *adj.*

1 **unable to feel pain**

VERBS **be, feel** *Robin's hand felt numb with cold.* **| become, go, turn** *His fingers were beginning to turn numb.*

ADV. **completely | almost | slightly**

PREP. **from** *My legs were numb from kneeling.*

PHRASES **numb with (the) cold** *Their fingers were going numb with cold.*

2 **unable to feel/think/react**

VERBS **be, feel, sound** *Her voice sounded numb.* **| leave sb** *The news left us numb and confused.*

ADV. **totally** *Laura felt totally numb.*

PREP. **with** *He felt numb with weariness and grief.*

number *noun*

1 symbol/word

ADJ. **cardinal, decimal, ordinal | even, odd** *Houses on this side of the road have even numbers.* **| high, low | prime | random | lucky, unlucky** *Many people think 13 is an unlucky number.* **| winning** *the winning numbers in tonight's lottery*

VERB + NUMBER **add, divide, multiply, subtract, take away** *Add all the numbers together, divide by ten, and take away the number you first thought of.*

PHRASES **in round numbers** *There were about 150 there, in round numbers.* **| number crunching** (= doing calculations) *There's more to accountancy than just number crunching.*

2 quantity/amount

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, huge, inordinate, large, substantial, vast | record** *a record number of enquiries* **| disproportionate, surprising | fair, reasonable, significant** *We've had a fair number of complaints about the new phone system.* **| finite, infinite** *There are an infinite number of solutions to the problem.* **| equal** *The candidates received an equal number of votes.* **| maximum, minimum | average, mean, median | adequate, sufficient | limited, small | growing, increasing, rising | exact, precise** *Many people have died in the epidemic?the precise number is not known.* **| indefinite, unspecified | approximate | total**

VERB + NUMBER **grow in, increase in** *Factories had increased in number between the wars.* **| decrease in, reduce in**

NUMBER + VERB **double, grow, increase | decline, diminish, drop, dwindle, fall (off/down)** *Shark numbers have dwindled as a result of hunting.*

PREP. **in ~** *The paintings, twelve in number, are over 200 years old.*

PHRASES **a decline/drop in numbers** *The decline in numbers of young people means that fewer teachers will be needed.* **| a growth/an increase in numbers, few/limited/small in number** *Wild dogs are now few in number.*

3 **for identifying sb/sth**

ADJ. **account, identity, registration, serial, etc. | flat, house**

PREP. **at ~** *We live at number 21.*

4 **telephone number**

ADJ. **fax, phone, telephone | home, office, work | wrong** *I keep getting the wrong number.*

VERB + NUMBER **call, dial, phone, ring | get**

number *verb*

ADV. **clearly | consecutively, sequentially**

PREP. **according to, by** *Each pigeon hole is clearly numbered by floor and by room.* **| from, to** *Number the car's features from 1 to 10 according to importance.*

numerous *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **especially, particularly, very | increasingly | reasonably, relatively | enough, sufficiently** *By the mid-twelfth century pilgrims were numerous enough to merit a guidebook.*

PHRASES **too numerous to list/mention** *The related publications are far too numerous to list individually.*

nurse *noun*

ADJ. **qualified, registered, trained | staff** *the children's ward staff nurse* **| ward | junior, senior | ancillary, auxiliary | student, trainee | male | day, night | community, district | hospital, practice, school** *This is a job for the school nurse.* **| private | specialist | maternity, psychiatric, triage, veterinary**

NURSE + NOUN **manager, practitioner, specialist, tutor | education** > Note at JOB

nursery *noun*

ADJ. **day, residential, workplace**

NURSERY + NOUN **school | class | education | teacher | facilities, provision | assistant | nurse**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *The children are at nursery three days a week.* **| in a/the ~** *She works as an assistant in a nursery.*

nursing *noun*

ADJ. **general | clinical | geriatric, mental health, psychiatric, surgical | community, district | home, hospital | private**

NURSING + NOUN **care, services, skills | home | staff | student | practice** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and more nouns)

nut *noun*

1 **food**

ADJ. **cashew, pistachio, etc. | chopped, salted**

VERB + NUT **crack, shell**

NUT + NOUN **oil**

2 **for screwing onto a bolt**

VERB + NUT **put on, screw on, tighten | loosen, remove, unscrew**

nutrition *noun*

ADJ. **adequate, good, proper | inadequate, poor** *Many children at the school were found to be suffering from inadequate nutrition.*

PHRASES **a source of nutrition**

nutritious *adj.*

VERBS **be | make sth** *Adapt your usual eating regime to make it more nutritious.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | fairly**

oar *noun*

VERB + OAR **take** *We each took an oar.* **| pull on** *We pulled hard on the oars.* **| ship** *We shipped the oars to get through the narrow opening.*

oath *noun*

1 **formal promise**

ADJ. **sacred, solemn | Hippocratic** *a doctor's Hippocratic oath*

VERB + OATH **swear, take** *He took an oath of allegiance to his adopted country.* **| break, violate**

PREP. **~ of** *an oath of allegiance/loyalty*

2 **in a court of law**

VERB + OATH **administer** *Only a judge is allowed to administer the oath.*

PREP. **on ~** *He swore on oath that he had never seen me before.* **| under ~** *Witnesses must testify under oath.*

3 **swear word**

ADJ. **obscene**

QUANT. **stream, string** *He muttered a stream of oaths.*

VERB + OATH **mutter, utter**

oats *noun*

ADJ. **rolled | porridge**

QUANT. **field**

VERB + OATS **grow | sow | cut, harvest**

OATS + VERB **grow**

obedience *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, complete, total** *He demands absolute obedience from his men.* **| blind, passive, unquestioning**

VERB + OBEDIENCE **demand, exact, expect | owe** *All clergy owed obedience to their superior.* **| pledge, swear**

PREP. **in ~ to** *She acted in passive obedience to her boss's directions.* **| ~ to** *The slaves had to swear obedience to their masters.*

obey *verb*

ADV. **immediately, instantly** *She was used to having her orders instantly obeyed.* **| automatically, blindly, meekly, unquestioningly | eagerly | reluctantly**

VERB + OBEY **have to, must | refuse to** *He refuses to obey the school rules.* **| fail to | be willing to | promise to**

PHRASES **be only obeying orders** *At the trial the soldiers made the excuse that they were only obeying orders.* **| a duty/an obligation to obey** *People have a moral duty to obey the law.* **| sth has to be/must be obeyed** *Rules are rules and they must be obeyed.*

obituary *noun*

VERB + OBITUARY **write | print, publish | read**

OBITUARY + NOUN **column, page**

object *noun*

1 solid thing

ADJ. **solid | inanimate | everyday, household** *Her paintings are of ordinary everyday objects.*

2 purpose

ADJ. **main, primary, principal | sole** *My sole object is to get to the bottom of this mystery.*

OBJECT + NOUN **lesson** *The plans are an object lesson in how to ruin a city centre.*

PHRASES **the object of the exercise** *The object of the exercise is to score as many points as possible.*

object *verb*

ADV. **strenuously, strongly, vehemently**

VERB + OBJECT **can/could hardly** *It was your own idea in the first place, so you can hardly object now.* **| be entitled to, have a/the right to**

PREP. **to** *a petition objecting to the scheme*

PHRASES **object on the grounds that …** *I objected on the grounds that it was unkind to the animals.*

objection *noun*

ADJ. **serious, strenuous, strong | valid | main, major, principal | fundamental | common**

VERB + OBJECTION **lodge, make, raise, state | have** *I'd like to open a window, unless anyone has any objections.* **| meet, overcome | withdraw**

PREP. **over the ~s of** *She was appointed over the objections of certain members of the board.* **| ~ against** *a common objection against nuclear power* **| ~ to** *The committee has raised serious objections to the plans.*

objective *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | remain**

ADV. **truly, very | completely, purely, totally, wholly** *It is impossible to be completely objective.* **| fairly, quite, reasonably | apparently | supposedly**

objective *noun*

ADJ. **key, main, major, primary, prime, principal | broad, overall, overriding, ultimate | limited, narrow | long-term, short-term | clear, specific | stated** *The legislation has failed to achieve its stated objectives.* **| common** *The two groups are pursuing a common objective.* **| economic, educational, environmental, military, political, strategic | business, policy**

VERB + OBJECTIVE **accomplish, achieve, attain, fulfil, meet, reach, succeed in** *The department needs more money to fulfil its objectives.* **| fail in | agree, define, establish, formulate, identify, set, specify** *We need to establish a clear objective.* **| declare, state | clarify | promote, pursue**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *The party is radical in its objectives.* **| ~ of** *We succeeded in our prime objective of cutting costs.*

obligation *noun*

ADJ. **contractual, legal, statutory | moral, social | financial | family** *I can't travel next month because of family obligations.* **| professional | mutual**

VERB + OBLIGATION **discharge, fulfil, meet** *The builders failed to meet their contractual obligations.* **| comply with, honour | have** *We have a moral obligation to help.* **| feel | owe | assume, incur, take on | impose**

OBLIGATION + VERB **arise from sth** *obligations arising from your contract of employment*

PREP. **under an ~** *I am under no obligation to tell you my name.* **| without ~** *Our mortgage advice is given free and without obligation.* **| ~ to** *A lawyer owes an obligation of confidence to the client.*

obligatory *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain | make sth** *The college authorities have now made these classes obligatory.*

ADV. **almost, practically | legally**

PREP. **for** *It is obligatory for vets to be registered.*

oblige *verb*

ADV. **duly** *The fans were looking for another goal and Owen duly obliged* (= scored). **| kindly**

VERB + OBLIGE **be delighted to, be glad to, be (only too) happy to, be pleased to, be willing to** *The staff are always happy to oblige.* **| hasten to**

PREP. **by** *Will you oblige by filling in this form?* **| with** *Would you be willing to oblige us with some information?*

obliged *adj.*

1 **forced to do sth**

VERBS **be, feel**

ADV. **virtually** *Libel plaintiffs are virtually obliged to go into the witness box.* **| by law, contractually, legally** *Parents are obliged by law to send their children to school.* **| morally** *I felt morally obliged to do the best I could for her.*

2 **grateful**

VERBS **be, feel**

ADV. **much**

PREP. **for, to** *I'm much obliged to you for helping us.*

obliterate *verb*

ADV. **completely, entirely, totally** *The village was totally obliterated by the bomb.* **|** **almost, virtually**

oblivion *noun*

ADJ. **political**

VERB + OBLIVION **fade into, fall into, pass into, sink into, slide into | be rescued from, be saved from** *a minor masterpiece, saved from oblivion* **| consign to** *Most of his work has now been consigned to oblivion.*

PREP. **in ~** *He died in oblivion in a remote village.*

oblivious *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem** *Chiko appeared oblivious to the uproar.* **| become | remain | make sb** *His own arrogance made him oblivious to the criticisms of others.*

ADV. **completely, quite, totally | almost | apparently, seemingly | clearly**

PREP. **of** *oblivious of the stares of the whole town* **| to** *She seemed almost oblivious to the crowds of reporters.*

oboe *noun* > Special page at MUSIC

obscene *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | declare sth, deem sth, judge sth** *The book was declared obscene.*

ADV. **really | utterly | almost | allegedly**

obscure *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become** *The origins of the tradition have become obscure.* **| remain** *The motives behind this decision remain somewhat obscure.*

ADV. **extremely, very | completely, totally | largely | fairly, rather, relatively, somewhat**

obscure *verb*

ADV. **completely, totally | almost | largely | half, partially, partly, slightly, somewhat | deliberately** *All trace of his working-class background was deliberately obscured* **| easily** *Solo passages in this register are very easily obscured by other instruments.*

VERB + OBSCURE **serve to, tend to** *The emphasis on social integration often served to obscure the real differences within the community.* **| allow sth to**

PREP. **behind/beneath** *The moon was obscured behind a wall of cloud.*

PHRASES **obscure the fact that …** *These figures obscure the fact that a lot of older people live in great poverty.* **| obscure sth from view** *The house was obscured from view by a high hedge.*

obscurity *noun*

ADJ. **total | comparative, relative | political, professional | impenetrable** *poems of impenetrable obscurity*

VERB + OBSCURITY **fade into, sink into, slip into | be plucked from, emerge from** *After many years, his scientific work emerged from obscurity.* **| be consigned to, be relegated to**

PREP. **in ~** *He spent his early life in relative obscurity.*

observant *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **acutely, highly, very** *She was intelligent and highly observant.* **| fairly, quite**

observation *noun*

1 **examination**

ADJ. **careful, close, detailed | direct | systematic | casual | empirical, scientific | clinical | astronomical**

PREP. **for ~** *She was admitted to hospital for observation.* **| under ~** *The police have had him under observation for several weeks.* **| ~ of** *The survey was based on direct observation of over 500 schools.*

PHRASES **powers of observation** *an artist with acute powers of observation*

2 **remark**

ADJ. **general | astute, keen, shrewd | interesting**

VERB + OBSERVATION **make**

PREP. **~ about** *He smiled, and made some observation about the weather.* **| ~ on** *her witty observations on life*

observe *verb*

1 notice/watch

ADV. **carefully, closely | precisely | directly** *It is not possible to observe this phenomenon directly, but its effects can be seen in the rise in global temperatures.* **| actually** *It is the parents who actually observe these behavioural problems in their children.* **| just, simply** *You can learn a lot by simply observing.* **| generally, normally | quietly** *She stood there, quietly observing the domestic scene.* **| secretly | experimentally** *This phenomenon has been observed experimentally.*

VERB + OBSERVE **be able to | be possible | be difficult to | be interesting to** *It is interesting to observe the reaction of the children to these changes.*

PREP. **from** *unaware that she was being observed from the window*

PHRASES **be commonly/frequently/widely observed** *This behaviour is commonly observed among several species of finch.* **| be easily/readily observed, an opportunity to observe sb/sth**

2 make a remark

ADV. **correctly, justly, rightly, shrewdly** *She correctly observed that there was very little difference between the two parties on domestic policies.* **| drily, sardonically, wryly | tartly | coldly, coolly** *'You took your time,' he observed coolly.* **| conversationally | mildly, quietly | sadly**

PREP. **to** *'It's easy for him to say that,' she observed tartly to Michael, 'but can he prove it?'*

3 obey rules

ADV. **correctly, faithfully, scrupulously, strictly** *This procedure must be correctly observed.*

VERB + OBSERVE **fail to**

PHRASES **failure to observe sth** *Failure to observe club rules may result in* *expulsion.*

observer *noun*

ADJ. **casual** *To the casual observer, it would have looked like any other domestic argument.* **| informed | accurate, acute, astute, careful, experienced, keen, seasoned, shrewd | sceptical | sympathetic | detached, impartial, neutral | external, independent, outside** *Independent observers will monitor the elections.* **| foreign, international | American, Western, etc. | industry, military** *Some military observers fear the US could get entangled in another war.* **| human**

VERB + OBSERVER **send** *sending observers to check the conduct of the elections* **| attend sth as | impress, puzzle, strike, surprise** *The suddenness of this move surprised many observers.*

OBSERVER + VERB **attend sth** *The talks were attended by observers from eight Arab countries and Israel.* **| monitor sth**

OBSERVER + NOUN **status** *The country was granted observer status at the summit.*

PREP. **as an ~** *I attended the conference as an observer.*

obsession *noun*

ADJ. **dangerous, unhealthy | current**

VERB + OBSESSION **become** *Don't let this interest of yours become an obsession.*

PREP. **~ with** *I don't understand television's current obsession with cookery programmes.*

PHRASES **in the grip of an obsession** *He was in the grip of an obsession and would not listen to reason.*

obsolete *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | make sth, render sth** *Their work is now rendered obsolete by machines.*

ADV. **totally | increasingly | largely | almost, practically, virtually**

obstacle *noun*

ADJ. **big, chief, main, major | enormous, formidable, serious** *The attitude of the unions is a serious obstacle.* **| impossible, insuperable, insurmountable** *Lack of money has proved an almost insurmountable obstacle.*

VERB + OBSTACLE **pose, prove, remain | come across, encounter | overcome, remove, surmount** *He was determined to overcome all obstacles in his way.*

PREP. **~ for** *Lack of childcare provision can be a major obstacle for women wishing to work.* **| ~ to** *The huge distances involved have proved an obstacle to communication between villages.*

PHRASES **an obstacle in the path/way (of sb/sth)** *The release of prisoners remains an obstacle in the path of a peace agreement.*

obstruct *verb*

ADV. **deliberately, wilfully** *(law) wilfully obstructing a police officer in the execution of his duty*

PREP. **in**

obstruction *noun*

ADJ. **physical | unlawful, wilful** *(law)* **| bureaucratic** *The asylum seekers had to contend with continued bureaucratic obstruction.*

VERB + OBSTRUCTION **cause, create** *The lorry had been parked on the pavement, causing an obstruction.* **| clear, remove** *She had to have surgery to remove an obstruction from her throat.*

obstructive *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **positively | quite | deliberately** *He doesn't really have an alternative suggestion; he's just being deliberately obstructive.*

obtain *verb*

ADV. **fraudulently, unlawfully** *(law)*

VERB + OBTAIN **be able/unable to | attempt to, endeavour to | fail to | assist sb to, enable sb to** *The local authority may assist you to obtain alternative accommodation.* **| be easy to, be possible to | be difficult to, be impossible to** *goods which are difficult to obtain* **| be necessary to, be required to, need to** *It is necessary to obtain the patients' consent.*

PREP. **from** *Anglers are required to obtain prior authorization from the park keeper.*

PHRASES **be easily obtained** *Such information is easily obtained from the Internet.* **| sth can/may be obtained** *Details of this offer can be obtained from any of our stores.* **| a means/method/way of obtaining sth**

obtainable *adj*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **easily, readily | commercially**

obvious *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become** *It soon became obvious that the machine did not work.* **| make sth** *His manner made it obvious he didn't like her.*

ADV. **blatantly, blindingly, extremely, glaringly, patently, transparently, very | completely, perfectly, quite** *The answer is perfectly obvious!* **| increasingly | by no means, far from, less than, not at all, not entirely** *It was far from obvious how they were going to get off the island.* **| a bit, fairly, pretty, rather** *I'm not going to tell Jim about this, for fairly obvious reasons.* **| apparently, seemingly | immediately** *It was immediately obvious that the bag was too heavy.* **| intuitively** *Avoid making intuitively obvious but unfounded assertions.* **| depressingly, distressingly, painfully** *It was becoming painfully obvious that the two of them had nothing in common.*

PREP. **to** *It is obvious to me that you're unhappy in your job.*

occasion *noun*

1 **time when sth happens**

ADJ. **many, numerous** *It was the first of many such occasions.* **| rare | previous | separate**

VERB + OCCASION **recall, remember**

PREP. **on an/the ~** *The police were called out on 24 separate occasions.* **| on ~(s)** *He has even been known to go shopping himself on occasion.*

PHRASES **a number of occasions** *I have stayed there on a number of occasions.* **| on one occasion** *On one occasion he even rang me in the middle of the night.* **| on that/this ~** *On this occasion, as it happens, the engine started immediately.*

2 **suitable time**

ADJ. **right, suitable**

OCCASION + VERB **arise** *I'll speak to him if the occasion arises.*

PREP. **~ for** *It should have been an occasion for rejoicing.*

PHRASES **have occasion to do sth** *Last year we had occasion to visit relatives in Cornwall.*

3 **special event**

ADJ. **auspicious, big, great, important, memorable, momentous, special | festive, happy, joyous | formal, sad, solemn | social | ceremonial, state** *The Queen's coach is only used for state occasions.*

VERB + OCCASION **celebrate, mark** *a party to mark the occasion of their daughter's graduation* **| rise to** *The choir rose to the occasion and sang beautifully.*

PHRASES **for all occasions, for every occasion** *We sell cards and notepaper for all occasions.* **| a sense of occasion** *On the day of the wedding there was a real sense of* *occasion.*

occupant *noun*

ADJ. **current, former, next, original, present, previous | sole** *The sole occupant of the car was an elderly man.*

occupation *noun*

1 **job**

ADJ. **full-time | dangerous, hazardous | female, male** *Agricultural work is traditionally seen as a male occupation.* **| low-paid, well-paid | high-status, low-status | sedentary | managerial, professional, technical | skilled, unskilled | manual, non-manual | blue-collar, white-collar | industrial, service** *service occupations such as cleaning and catering*

VERB + OCCUPATION **choose, find | take up | follow** *The people interviewed followed a variety of occupations* **| give up** *He gave up his occupation as a farmer and became a teacher.* **| resume | provide (sb with)**

PHRASES **a range of occupations** *The college provides training in a wide range of occupations.*

2 **control of another country**

ADJ. **continuing | military**

VERB + OCCUPATION **begin, take up | be/remain in | give up** *The invaders have given up occupation of large parts of the territories.* **| resume**

OCCUPATION + VERB **begin, end**

OCCUPATION + NOUN **force, power | zone**

PREP. **during the ~** *During the occupation, the church was used as a mosque.* **| under ~** *Large parts of Britain were under Roman occupation.*

3 **living in a room, house, etc.**

ADJ. **exclusive | joint, multiple** *the conversion of big old buildings to multiple occupation* **| peaceful** *the right to peaceful occupation of the property* **| land | illegal, unlawful** *illegal occupation of the premises*

VERB + OCCUPATION **take up** *You can only take up occupation once the tenancy has* *been signed.* **| be/remain in, enjoy | share | give up | resume**

PREP. **in ~ of** *He intends to remain in occupation of the building for as long as possible.*

PHRASES **ready for occupation** *The flats will be ready for occupation by March.* **| unfit for occupation** *The houses were judged to be unfit for human occupation.*

occupied *adj.*

1 being used by sb

VERBS **be**

ADV. **densely** *the most densely occupied areas of the country* **| entirely** *The sofa was entirely occupied by two large cats.* **| permanently | illegally**

2 busy

VERBS **be | become | keep sb** *We need something to keep the children occupied.*

ADV. **fully | chiefly, mainly | busily | happily**

PREP. **in** *You will be mainly occupied in checking sales records.* **| with** *She was happily occupied with reading.*

occur *verb*

ADV. **commonly, frequently | infrequently, rarely | sporadically | naturally** *These chemical changes occur quite naturally.* **| spontaneously** *Opportunities for learning occur spontaneously every day.*

VERB + OCCUR **be likely to, tend to | be unlikely to**

occurrence *noun*

ADJ. **common, everyday, widespread | daily, frequent, regular | rare, uncommon | isolated | strange, unexpected, unusual**

VERB + OCCURRENCE **prevent | predict**

PREP. **~ in** *These mild fits are quite a common occurrence in babies.*

PHRASES **frequency of occurrence** *words with a high frequency of occurrence in language*

ocean *noun*

ADJ. **deep | vast | great** *exploring the depths of the three great oceans* **| open** *A storm started up once we got out into the open ocean.* **| tropical, warm | southern** *penguins of the southern oceans*

VERB + OCEAN **cross, sail | explore**

OCEAN + NOUN **depths** *the darkness of the ocean depths* **| surface | bed, floor | basin | water | wave** *a life on the ocean wave* (= at sea) **| current | voyage | liner**

PREP. **across the ~** *trade across the Atlantic Ocean* **| in the ~** *Various toxic substances have been dumped in the ocean.*

PHRASES **the bottom/depths/middle/surface of the ocean, the oceans of the world** *great ships that sailed the oceans of the world*

October *nou*n > Note at MONTH

odd *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste | consider sth, find sth, think sth** *I find it odd that she takes so long to do that job. I didn't think it odd at the time.*

ADV. **decidedly, distinctly, extremely, really, very** *There's something distinctly odd about her.* **| a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat**

odds *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, high, impossible, insuperable, overwhelming, terrible** *She struggled against terrible odds to overcome her illness.* **| long, short** *Sometimes an outsider will win at long odds, but not often. The bookmakers are offering only short odds on the favourite.*

VERB + ODDS **offer, quote | lay** *I'll lay odds we never see him again.* **| reduce, shorten | beat, defy, overcome** *She defied the odds to beat the clear favourite.*

ODDS + VERB **shorten | lengthen**

PREP. **against the ~** *The film is a heart-warming tale of triumph against the odds.* **| ~ against** *The odds against their survival have lengthened.* **| ~ of** *They were offering odds of ten to one.* **| ~ on** *The odds on the outsider were 100?1.*

PHRASES **against all (the) odds** *Against all the odds, we managed to get through to the final.*

odour *noun*

ADJ. **foul, obnoxious, offensive, unpleasant | musty, stale | heavy, pungent, strong | faint | sweet | characteristic, distinctive, familiar, unmistakable | body**

VERB + ODOUR **emit, give off**

ODOUR + VERB **emanate from sth**

PREP. **~ from** *odours from the local brewery*

offence *noun*

1 illegal act

ADJ. **grave, heinous, major, serious | lesser, minor, petty, trivial | alleged | statutory | arrestable, bookable, imprisonable, indictable, punishable, sackable** *The offence is punishable by up to three months' imprisonment.* **| criminal, disciplinary | driving, political, sexual, terrorist** *Motorists may be fined on the spot for driving offences such as speeding.* **| violent | drug-related**

PREP. **~ against** *offences against public decency* > Note at CRIME(for verbs)

2 hurt feelings

VERB + OFFENCE **cause, give | take**

PREP. **~ at** *He takes offence at the slightest joke against him.* **| ~ to** *I didn't mean to give offence to anyone.*

PHRASES **no offence (intended/meant)** *No offence intended, but are you sure your calculations are right?*

offend *verb*

ADV. **deeply, gravely, greatly** *He knew that he had offended her deeply.* **| mortally | slightly | easily** *He was very sensitive and easily offended.*

VERB + OFFEND **be likely to** *Omit anything that is likely to offend people.* **| be anxious not to, be careful not to, not mean to, take care not to** *She stopped mid-sentence, anxious not to offend him.*

PREP. **against** *Viewers complained that the programme offended against good taste.*

PHRASES **feel/look/sound offended** *She sounded offended when she replied.*

offender *noun*

1 **person who commits a crime**

ADJ. **alleged | convicted | first** *As a first offender, he received a lenient sentence.* **| persistent | adult, juvenile, young | sex**

VERB + OFFENDER **sentence**

2 **sb/sth that causes trouble**

ADJ. **main, worst** *As regards pollution, old diesel-engined vehicles are the worst offenders.*

offensive *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | consider sth, deem sth, find sth, think sth** *He's always making rude remarks about women. I find that deeply offensive.*

ADV. **deeply, downright, extremely, grossly, highly, very | quite, rather | deliberately**

PREP. **to** *This sort of attitude is very offensive to black people.*

offensive *noun*

ADJ. **all-out, full-scale, major | army, guerrilla, military, terrorist | air, bombing | ground | diplomatic, government**

VERB + OFFENSIVE **launch, mount | be on, go on, take** *She took the offensive, challenging her critics to prove their allegations.*

PREP. **~ against** *The government is launching an all-out offensive against the drug cartels*

offer *noun*

1 of help or sth that is needed

ADJ. **generous, kind | conditional, unconditional | job | peace**

VERB + OFFER **make (sb)** *He made me an offer I simply couldn't refuse* **| withdraw | accept, take up | decline, refuse, turn down**

PREP. **on ~** *the range of goods on offer* **| ~ from** *I had to turn down a job offer from a theatre because the pay was too low.* **| ~ of** *They refused our offer of help.*

2 special price/deal

ADJ. **special | cheap | free** *I got the conditioner in a free offer with my shampoo.* **| introductory** *Your first order is delivered free as an introductory offer.*

PREP. **on ~** *We have a number of bargains on offer.*

3 amount of money

ADJ. **acceptable, attractive, fair, favourable, reasonable | tempting | high, low** *We realized we would not get a higher offer.* **| final, initial | firm, formal** *Several people have made enquiries but no one has made a firm offer.* **| lucrative | pay | takeover | cash**

VERB + OFFER **make (sb), put in | withdraw | get, receive | listen to** *I'll listen to any reasonable offer.* **| accept | reject, turn down | increase, up** *They just kept upping their offer until I had to say yes.*

OFFER + NOUN **price**

PREP. **under ~** *The property is currently under offer to a client.* **| ~ for** *Several people put in an offer for the house.* **| ~ of** *They accepted our offer of £80,000.*

PHRASES **be open to offers** *The asking price is £500 but I'm open to offers.* **| or near offer** *They are selling their car for £2,500 or near offer.*

offer *verb*

1 **give/provide sth; ask if sb would like sth**

ADV. **generously, kindly | helpfully | impulsively** *'Do you need any help?' he offered impulsively.*

VERB + OFFER **be able/unable to, can/could** *the protection that life insurance can offer* **| appear to, seem to** *The plan seemed to offer real advantages.* **| fail to | be pleased to** *(formal),* **would like to** *I refer to your recent application and interview and am pleased to offer you the post of editor.* **| aim to, seek to | claim to** *They claim to offer a more comprehensive service than other firms.* **| be expected to, be likely to** *This investment is likely to offer a higher return.* **| be/feel compelled to, be forced to, be/feel obliged to** *She felt obliged to offer him a bed for the night.* **| have little/a lot/nothing, etc. to, have sth to** *This player has proved that he still has a lot to offer* (= can still play well). *The open evening is a chance to see what the college has to offer students.*

PREP. **to** *She offered drinks to her guests.*

2 **say that you will pay a certain amount**

VERB + OFFER **be able/unable to, can/could | be prepared to, be ready to, be willing to** *Would they be prepared to offer any more?*

PREP. **for** *They have offered over £500,000 for the house.*

offering *noun*

ADJ. **latest | peace** *I think the present she sent you was intended as a peace offering.* **| burnt, sacrificial, votive**

VERB + OFFERING **make | accept**

PREP. **~ from** *The latest offering from this young band is their best album yet.* **| ~ of** *offerings of food and drink* **| ~ to** *They made sacrificial offerings to the gods.*

office *noun*

1 room/building where written work is done

ADJ. **big, huge, large, spacious | cramped, small, tiny | plush | high-rise | five-storey,** ten-storey, etc. | glass-fronted, **glass-walled | busy, noisy | open-plan | air-conditioned | electronic, paperless | permanent, temporary** *The company set up its first permanent offices in the city centre.* **| private** *The prime minister arranged a meeting in his private office.* **| central, head, main | area, branch, district, local, overseas, regional, subsidiary | administrative, editorial, press, sales, etc. | council, government, newspaper, etc.**

VERB + OFFICE **manage, run, supervise | come/go into, come/go to** *I sometimes go into the office on Saturdays when we're busy.* **| arrive at, get to | leave** *What time do you usually leave the office?*

OFFICE + NOUN **job, work | hours** *Call this number outside normal office hours.* **| colleague, staff, worker | life | gossip, politics | party** *We have an office party every Christmas.* **| administrator, assistant, cleaner, clerk, manager | boy, girl, junior** *(all old-fashioned)* **| desk, door, equipment, furniture, safe, shredder, software, stationery | system, technology | environment** *Working in a busy office environment can be stressful.* **| accommodation, block, building, complex, development, premises, space, suite** *The old warehouses have been redeveloped for office accommodation.* **| facilities, services** *The conference centre provides office facilities such as computers and faxes.* **| expenses, overheads | administration, management | skills | procedures, routine**

PREP. **at the ~** *I sometimes have to stay late at the office.* **| in the ~** *I'm sorry, Mr Anders is not in the office today.*

2 official position

ADJ. **exalted, great, high, important | minor | lucrative, prestigious | hereditary | national, public | ecclesiastical, judicial, ministerial, political**

VERB + OFFICE **run for, stand for** *He ran for office in the last presidential election.* **| hold, remain in, retain, stay in** *The president holds office for a period of four years.* **| be appointed to, be elected to | be re-elected to, be returned to** *The government was returned to office by a large majority.* **| assume, be sworn into,**

come into, come to, enter, take, take up *Martin was sworn into office as prime minister in March. The Labour Party took office in 1997.* **| give up, leave, lose, relinquish, resign from, retire from, vacate | be driven from, be forced from, be removed from, be suspended from, be turned out of**

OFFICE + NOUN **holder**

PREP. **in ~** *The government seemed likely to remain in office for the next five years.* **| out of ~** *breaking promises made when out of office*

PHRASES **a candidate for office, duties of the office, a term of office** *to be re-elected for a second term of office*

officer *noun*

1 in the army, navy, etc.

ADJ. **air force, army, military, naval | commanding, high-ranking, ranking, senior, superior** *The decision rests with the ranking officer* (= the most senior officer present). **| junior, petty | commissioned, non-commissioned | recruiting | duty** *He telephoned the duty officer at regimental headquarters.* **| uniformed | retired**

VERB + OFFICER **salute** *to salute a superior officer*

OFFICER + VERB **command sth** *the officer commanding the infantry*

OFFICER + NOUN **cadet, corps** > Note at RANK

2 in the government or other organization

ADJ. **chief, principal, senior | full-time, part-time | presiding, responsible, supervising** *Report the incident to the responsible officer. the officer responsible for implementing the scheme* **| regional | administrative, customs, environmental health, financial, liaison, medical, press, trading standards, training, welfare**

VERB + OFFICER **be, work as | be appointed (as), become | have** *The charity has a full-time press officer working with the national newspapers.*

3 policeman/policewoman

ADJ. **police | chief, senior, superior | junior | investigating | duty** *We spoke to the duty officer at the police station.* **| uniformed | plain-clothes | undercover**

OFFICER + VERB **investigate sth** *officers investigating the murder* **| patrol sth | raid sth, swoop on sth** *(informal) Officers raided an address in south London, seizing bomb-making equipment.* **| seize sth | arrest sb** > See POLICEMAN

official *noun*

ADJ. **high-ranking, prominent, senior, top | junior, minor | local, provincial, regional | departmental | public | full-time, part-time | elected | permanent | retired | responsible** *Report the incident to the responsible official. the official responsible for handling the case* **| corrupt | bank, company, corporate, council, court, customs, government, judicial, military, ministry, party, royal, state, (trade) union**

VERB + OFFICIAL **appoint (sb), appoint sb as | consult, meet | bribe** *attempting to bribe local officials*

off-putting *adj.*

VERBS **be | find sth** *I find it very off-putting when people don't look me in the eye.*

ADV. **distinctly, very | a bit, a little, rather, slightly** *The noise was rather off-putting.*

offset *verb*

ADV. **largely, substantially | completely, exactly | more than** *The company's losses in the USA were more than offset by gains everywhere else.* **| partially, partly**

VERB + OFFSET **help (to)** *The money will help offset big medical bills.*

PREP. **against** *Your donations to charity can be offset against tax.*

offside *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | catch sb, rule sb** *an attempt to catch an opponent offside He was ruled offside by the referee.*

oil *noun*

1 **used as fuel/to make machines work smoothly**

ADJ. **heavy | light | crude | refined | offshore | engine, fuel, heating, lubricating, motor | linseed, paraffin** *Use a rag soaked in linseed oil.*

QUANT. **barrel | film** *a rod coated with a film of oil* **| drop**

VERB + OIL **extract, obtain, produce | drill for** *The company is drilling for oil in the North Sea.* **| discover, find, hit, strike | pump | export, import | burn, use | change** (in a car, etc.) **| soak sth in | smell of** *The place smelled of paint and oil.*

OIL + NOUN **company, producer | industry, production | drilling, exploration | field, rig, well | drum | tanker | refinery | prices, revenue | slick, spill, spillage** *a seven-mile-long oil slick off the Scottish coast*

2 **used in cooking**

ADJ. **cooking | polyunsaturated | rancid | coconut, cod liver, fish, groundnut, olive, sesame, sunflower, vegetable** *a bottle of extra virgin olive oil* **| salad**

VERB + OIL **heat | boil sb/sth in, cook sth in, fry sth in | drizzle, pour** *Toast the bread, rub with garlic and drizzle over a little olive oil.*

PREP. **in ~** *Fry the potato in a little sunflower oil.* > Special page at FOOD

3 **used as a cosmetic/medicine**

ADJ. **aromatic, fragrant, scented | essential** *extracting essential oils from flowers* **| body, hair | baby, bath | aromatherapy, massage | castor, evening primrose, lavender, etc.**

VERB + OIL **massage/rub into, massage/rub sth with** *She rubbed a scented oil into her hair.* **| anoint sb/sth with** *The sick were anointed with oil.* **| extract**

PREP. **~ of** *oil of rosemary*

oily *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become**

ADV. **very | rather, slightly** *He had rather oily hands.* **| naturally** *Lank or naturally oil hair is often difficult to care for.*

ointment *noun*

QUANT. **tube**

VERB + OINTMENT **apply, put on, rub on** *He put some ointment on the cut.*

OK (*also* **okay)** *adj., adv.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste | do, go** *I think I did OK in the exam. I hope the meeting goes OK.*

ADV. **perfectly, quite** *I'm quite OK now, thanks.*

PREP. **~ by sb** *John has suggested meeting at six, and that's OK by me.* **| ~ with sb** *Is it OK with you if I come about six?*

old age *noun*

ADJ. **advanced, extreme | good** *He attained a good old age and died content.* **| happy** *She can look forward to a happy old age.* **| lonely** *fears about a lonely old age*

VERB + OLD AGE **attain, live to, reach, survive into** *All my grandparents survived into advanced old age.* **| approach | look forward to | dread**

OLD AGE + NOUN **pension, pensioner**

PREP. **in (your) ~** *Loss of hearing often occurs in old age. He took up golf in his old age.* **| into ~** *She was now well into old age.*

PHRASES **the grand/ripe old age of sth** *She lived to the ripe old age of 98.*

old *adj.*

1 age

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *You are as old as you feel.*

ADV. **enough** *He's old enough by now to manage his own affairs.*

PHRASES **six months, ten years, etc. old**

2 not young

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** *The way the young people rushed about made her feel old. He was beginning to look old.* **| become, get, grow** *We're all getting older. As they grow older, they develop new interests.*

ADV. **extremely, terribly, very | fairly, quite** *She was quite old when she got married.*

3 not new

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, really, terribly, very** *It's a very old tradition.* **| fairly, quite**

PHRASES **oldest known** *These are some of the oldest known fossil remains.* **| oldest remaining** *It's one of the oldest remaining parts of the church.* **| oldest surviving** *It's the world's oldest surviving ship.*

4 shows affection/lack of respect

PHRASES **boring/silly old** *boring old history books She's a silly old cow!* **| dear/good old** *Good old Dad!* **| funny old** *It's a funny old world.* **| poor old** *You poor old thing!* **| same old** *always the same old faces*

old-fashioned *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become | consider sth, regard sth as, see sth as** *Wearing a hat is regarded as rather old-fashioned nowadays.*

ADV. **terribly, very | plain** *It was plain old-fashioned instinct, the gut feeling that something was wrong.* **| a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat | curiously** *His clothes were curiously old-fashioned.*

PREP. **in** *She's somewhat old-fashioned in her attitudes.*

PHRASES **call me old-fashioned** *Call me old-fashioned, but I still believe in good manners.*

ombudsman *noun*

ADJ. **consumer, insurance, local government, pensions** *A pensions ombudsman has been appointed.*

VERB + OMBUDSMAN **appoint**

omen *noun*

ADJ. good | bad, evil, ill *They took the storm as a bad omen.*

VERB + OMEN take sth as

PREP. ~ for *The sunny weather was a good omen for the holiday.* **| ~ of** *an omen of death*

omission *noun*

ADJ. **important, major, serious | complete | glaring, notable, obvious | curious, strange, surprising | deliberate | inadvertent**

VERB + OMISSION **correct, rectify, remedy**

PREP. **by ~** *Several offences such as manslaughter may be committed by omission.* **| ~ from** *her omission from the guest list*

PHRASES **an act or omission** *The accident was not caused by any act or omission of the transport company.* **| errors and/or omissions, a sin of omission**

omit *verb*

ADV. **altogether, completely, totally | accidentally, inadvertently | deliberately | conspicuously | controversially** *He was controversially omitted from the World Cup side.* **| wrongly**

PREP. **from** *Some important details were deliberately omitted from the report.*

one-sided *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **very | totally, wholly | far from** *The violence was far from one-sided* (= both people, teams, etc. were violent). **| a little, rather, somewhat** *Their relationship seems rather one-sided.*

onion *noun*

ADJ. **raw | pickled | spring, red, Spanish**

VERB + ONION **chop, peel, slice | brown, soften | cook, fry, saute | garnish sth with** *Garnish with a little chopped spring onion.* **| grow**

ONION + NOUN **ring | soup | skin | set | dome**

PHRASES **cheese and onion** *cheese and onion flavoured crisps* **| sage and onion** *sage and onion stuffing* > Special page at FOOD

onset *noun*

ADJ. **rapid, sudden** *the sudden onset of the disease* **| slow | early | delayed, late**

VERB + ONSET **delay | mark** *His first hit record marked the onset of an astonishing career.*

PREP. **after the ~** *after the onset of sleep* **| at the ~** *at the onset of the war* **| before/ prior to the ~, since the ~**

onslaught *noun*

ADJ. **sudden** *She could not withstand such a sudden onslaught.* **| first, initial | latest | renewed | verbal**

VERB + ONSLAUGHT **face** *to face the verbal onslaught of an angry teenager* **| resist, survive, withstand | launch, mount**

PREP. **~ against/on** *a renewed onslaught against the proposed bill* **| ~ from** *the latest onslaught from the Russian team*

ooze *verb*

ADV. **slowly | out** *Cream oozed out at the sides.*

PREP. **from** *Blood oozed slowly from his wound.* **| out of, with** *(figurative) He was oozing with contempt for us.*

opaque *adj.*

1 not clear enough to see through

VERBS **be, look | become** *Add the rice to the pan and cook until it becomes opaque.*

ADV. **very | completely | almost, nearly | relatively, slightly** *The glasses looked slightly opaque.*

PREP. **with** *The windows were nearly opaque with grime.*

2 difficult to understand

VERBS **be | become | render sth** *The complex administrative arrangements render the decision-making process somewhat opaque.*

ADV. **extremely, very | completely | relatively, slightly, somewhat**

open *adj.*

1 **not closed**

VERBS **be, gape, lie, stand** *The book lay open in front of him. The door stood open.* | **burst, clang, creak, fall, fly, judder, sag, swing** *The bag fell open. Suddenly the door flew open. The woman's mouth sagged open. The gate swung open.* | **remain** | **fling sth, flip sth, get sth, prise sth, pull sth, push sth, tear sth, throw sth, wrench sth, yank sth** *She flung the door open and rushed in. She flipped open Chris's diary. He tore the letter open.* | **have sth, hold sth, keep sth, leave sth** *She held the door open for them.* | **find sth, see sth** *I found the door open.*

ADV. **fully, wide** *The door was wide open.* | **slightly**

2 **honest and willing to talk**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, completely, quite**

PREP. **about** *She's very open about her mistakes.* | **with** *I don't think you've been completely open with me.*

3 **available for people to use**

VERBS **be | remain, stay** *In spite of the snow, the roads remained open. Some of the supermarkets stay open till ten.* | **keep sth** *We want to keep the village store open.*

PREP. **to** *The car park is only open to residents.*

4 **having begun**

VERBS **be | declare sth** *The Australian premier declared the Olympic Games open.*

ADV. **officially** *The bridge is officially open now.*

open *verb*

1 door, window, box, etc.

ADV. **wide** *She opened all the windows wide to let some fresh air in.* | **slowly** | **gingerly** *Fred opened it gingerly and peered inside.* | **automatically** *The glass doors opened automatically for him.* | **out, up** *I opened out the map and laid it on the table. 'Open up!' He hammered on the door.*

VERB + OPEN **try to** | **manage to** | **fail to** *Her parachute failed to open.*

2 building, road, etc.

ADV. **formally, officially** | **up** *opening up new markets*

VERB + OPEN **be due to, be expected to, be scheduled to** *The museum is due to open next year.* | **hope to, intend to, plan to, want to, wish to**

PHRASES **newly/recently opened** *the newly opened gallery of Western decorative art*

opening *noun*

1 **beginning**

ADJ. **successful | chess, conversational**

OPENING + NOUN **day, night | lines, pages | gambit**

PREP. **~ to** *the famous opening to the novel*

2 **hole; way in/out**

ADJ. **large, wide | narrow, small | window**

VERB + OPENING **cut | block, seal**

PREP. **~ in** *to cut an opening in the fence*

3 **opportunity; job which is available**

ADJ. **new | possible | clear (used in the context of sport and games)** *He missed one of the clearest openings in the game.* **| career, political**

VERB + OPENING **create** *Cooper created the opening for Russell to shoot the first goal.* **| give sb | miss**

PREP. **~ for, ~ in** *career openings for biologists in the Ministry of Health*

4 **ceremony**

ADJ. **grand | formal | official, royal, state** *the state opening of Parliament*

VERB + OPENING **attend**

OPENING + NOUN **ceremony**

openness *noun*

ADJ. **greater, more** *There is a need for greater openness in government.* **| complete**

VERB + OPENNESS **demonstrate, show**

PREP. **~ about** *her openness about her marital problems* **| ~ to/towards** *He demonstrated an openness to change.*

opera *nou*n

ADJ. **comic, grand, light**

VERB + OPERA **compose, write**

OPERA + NOUN **singer, star | company | house | season | buff, lover** > Note at PERFORMANCE(for more verbs)

operate *verb*

1 machine

ADV. **effectively, efficiently, reliably | continuously** *The machine can operate for 15 hours continuously at full power.* **| electrically, electronically, hydraulically, manually, remotely** (= by remote control) *The doors can be manually operated in the event of fire.*

VERB + OPERATE **be designed to** *systems designed to operate at the highest speeds* **| be easy to** *The machinery is easy to operate.*

PHRASES **battery operated**

2 business/system

ADV. **effectively, efficiently, profitably, successfully | autonomously, independently | commercially** *The laboratory is still owned by the government but is now commercially operated.*

VERB + OPERATE **be able to | be allowed to | continue to**

PREP. **according to** *The government does not operate according to fixed rules.* **| as** *We operate as an advisory service for schools.* **| within** *Local authorities operate within a wider political system.*

operation *noun*

1 **medical**

ADJ. **major | minor, small | life-saving, vital | emergency | routine | delicate** *a delicate eye operation* **| exploratory | surgical, transplant | heart, knee, etc.**

VERB + OPERATION **have, undergo** *He had an operation to remove a tumour.* **| come through, survive** *She came through the operation very well.* **| carry out, perform** *the surgeon performing the operation*

PREP. **during a/the ~** *She woke during the operation.* **| ~ for** *an operation for a kidney problem* **| ~ on** *a major operation on his heart*

2 **organized activity**

ADJ. **big, large-scale, major, massive | covert, undercover | combined, joint | tricky** *a tricky rescue operation* **| intelligence, military, naval, police | guerrilla | clean-up, drilling, mining, mopping-up, offensive, peacekeeping, relief, rescue, salvage, security** *UN troops supervised the relief operations.* **| banking, building, business** *restrictions placed on business operations*

VERB + OPERATION **begin, launch, mount, undertake** *The authorities launched a massive security operation in the city.* **| carry out, conduct | supervise**

PREP. **during a/the ~** *during joint military operations*

PHRASES **a theatre of operations** (= where military operations take place)

3 **fact of sth functioning**

ADJ. **effective, efficient, smooth | day-to-day** *the smooth day-to-day operation of the department*

VERB + OPERATION **come into** *A ceasefire came into operation in May.* **| bring/put sth into | cease** *The factory will cease operation at the end of the year.*

PREP. **during ~** *The machine can get very hot during operation.* **| in ~** *The current tax system has been in operation for ten years.*

PHRASES **in/into full operation** *the only reactor in full operation*

operational *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **fully** *The equipment is now fully operational.*

operative *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **fully** *The new system will not become fully operative until next year.*

operator *noun*

1 **person who connects telephone calls**

ADJ. **switchboard, telephone**

OPERATOR + VERB **connect sb, put sb through** *I asked the operator to put me through to her office.*

2 **person who works a machine, etc.**

ADJ. **experienced, skilled | unskilled | machine, plant | computer, lathe, radio, word processor, etc.**

3 **person/company that does particular business**

ADJ. **big, small | private | holiday, tour, travel | cable (television), satellite, telecommunications, etc. | airline, bus, coach, ferry**

4 **sb who is skilful at getting what they want**

ADJ. **shrewd, slick, smooth**

opinion *noun*

1 what you think about sb/sth

ADJ. **good, high | low, poor | strong | conflicting, different, mixed** *Opinions are mixed regarding genetically-modified food.* **| honest** *If you want my honest opinion, I think the book is awful.* **| expert, informed,** professional | considered | **personal, subjective | objective | contrary, dissenting | majority | minority | second** *If in doubt about your diagnosis, get a second opinion.*

VERB + OPINION **entertain, have, hold | air, express, give (sb), offer (sb), pass, state, venture, voice** *The bishop spoke without passing any opinion on the scandal.* **| ask sb, seek** *He asked me for my opinion on the course.* **| get | form** *I formed the opinion that he was not to be trusted.* **| change**

OPINION + VERB **change | differ, vary** *Opinions differ as to when this wine should be drunk.*

PREP. **in your ~** *In my opinion, golf is a dull sport.* **| ~ about/on** *She holds strong opinions on education.* **| ~ as to** *opinions as to the merits of the scheme* **| ~ of** *He has a very high opinion of your work.*

PHRASES **be of the opinion that …** *(formal)* (= to believe or think that), **a difference of opinion** *a genuine difference of opinion between the experts* **| in my humble opinion** *(humorous)*, **a matter of opinion** *'London is wonderful.' 'That's a matter of opinion.'*

2 what people in general think about sth

ADJ. **prevailing | general, popular, public** *Contrary to popular opinion, many adult cats dislike milk.* **| international, local, national | expert, informed, professional | academic, legal, medical, political**

QUANT. **body** *This view is supported by a growing body of professional opinion.*

VERB + OPINION **mould, shape** *attempts to shape public opinion*

OPINION + VERB **be against sth, be in favour of sth** *Prevailing local opinion is against the new road proposals.* **| be divided** *Public opinion is divided on the subject* *of capital punishment.*

OPINION + NOUN **poll | former, leader**

PREP. **~ among** *Opinion among doctors is that the medication is safe.*

PHRASES **climate of opinion** *in the present climate of opinion* **| shades of opinion** *all shades of political opinion*

opium *noun*

VERB + OPIUM **smoke**

OPIUM + NOUN **poppy | den** > Note at DRUG(for more verbs and nouns)

opponent *noun*

1 **person who plays against sb**

ADJ. **chief, main | dangerous, tough | worthy**

VERB + OPPONENT **attack, hit | beat, defeat | get past, outfox, outmanoeuvre, outwit | face** *Today she faces her toughest opponent on Centre Court.* **| mark | tackle | bring down, foul** > Special page at SPORT

2 **sb who disagrees with sb's actions/plans/beliefs**

ADJ. **chief, leading, main | bitter, fierce, formidable, strong, vigorous | outspoken, vocal, vociferous | worthy | political | government**

opportunity *noun*

ADJ. **ample, considerable, plenty of** *We'll have plenty of opportunity to talk later.* **| limited, little, not much | excellent, favourable, golden, good, great, marvellous, tremendous, welcome, wonderful** *a golden opportunity to invest and export into new markets* **| exciting | ideal, perfect | suitable | reasonable** *We need to give them a reasonable opportunity to look at the display.* **| available | every** *Students should take every opportunity to widen their experience.* **| historic, once-in-a-lifetime, rare, unique, unparalleled, unprecedented, unrivalled | lost, missed, wasted | career, educational, employment, job, training | business, commercial, economic, investment, market, sales** *a missed sales opportunity* **| photo** (= an opportunity to take photographs of famous or important people) **| equal opportunities** (= the principle of treating all people the same, regardless of sex. colour, etc.) *an equal opportunities employer*

VERB + OPPORTUNITY **have | find, get** *We didn't get much opportunity to swim.* **| afford, create, give sb, offer (sb), open up, provide (sb with)** *to provide better educational opportunities* **| grasp, seize, take (up), take advantage of** *May I take this opportunity to congratulate Ruth on her promotion.* **| lose, miss** *He lost no opportunity to vent his anger on those around him.* **| pass up**

OPPORTUNITY + VERB **exist | arise, come, occur, offer** *When the opportunity came, I seized it with both hands. (formal) The company aimed to expand as and when opportunity offered.*

PREP. **~ for** *The job will offer you excellent opportunities for promotion.*

PHRASES **at the earliest/first (possible) opportunity, at every (available) opportunity, equality of opportunity, the opportunity of a lifetime, a window of opportunity** *The ceasefire has created a window of opportunity to rescue the peace process.*

oppose *verb*

ADV. **adamantly, bitterly, fiercely, firmly, hotly, resolutely, strenuously, strongly, vehemently, vigorously, violently** *We would vigorously oppose such a policy.* **| totally** *We totally oppose the use of gas to kill any animal.* **| actively | openly, publicly | successfully, unsuccessfully** *Environmental lobby groups successfully opposed the plan.* **| initially** *The ban was initially opposed by the US.* **| consistently** *The minister has consistently opposed any relaxation in the law.*

VERB + OPPOSE **vote to | continue to**

opposed *adj.*

1 **opposed to disagreeing strongly with sth**

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **adamantly, bitterly, deeply, fiercely, firmly, fundamentally, implacably, profoundly, resolutely, strongly, vehemently, very (much), violently | absolutely, categorically, completely, directly, totally, utterly, wholly | largely | actively, openly, publicly** *the party most openly opposed to military rule*

2 **very different from sth**

VERBS **be, seem, stand | remain**

ADV. **completely, diametrically, directly, entirely, fundamentally, utterly** *Our views are diametrically opposed on this issue.* **| mutually** *The two sets of values seemed mutually opposed.*

PREP. **to** *The path he saw himself taking in his research seemed directly opposed to the ethos of the department.*

opposite *noun*

ADJ. complete, direct, exact, precise, very | polar

OPPOSITE + VERB be the case, be true *The oboe tends to lose power in the upper register, but with the clarinet the opposite is the case.*

PREP. the ~ of/to *Doubt is not the opposite of faith?unbelief is. In temperament, she was the complete opposite to her sister.*

PHRASES exactly/just/quite the opposite *The effect was exactly the opposite to what he intended.*

opposition *noun*

1 **disagreeing with sth/trying to change it**

ADJ. **bitter, considerable, determined, fierce, stiff, strong, vehement | violent | growing, mounting | effective, powerful | direct** *a statement in direct opposition to party policy* **| active | organized | political | public | widespread**

VERB + OPPOSITION **express | mount, put up** *They mounted an effective opposition to the bill.* **| arouse | crush, overcome, stifle, suppress, wear down | be/come/run up against, encounter, face, meet (with), run into** *He is up against stiff opposition from his colleagues.* **| brook** *We will brook no opposition to the strategy.* **| strengthen | weaken**

OPPOSITION + VERB **come from sb** *Opposition came primarily from students.*

OPPOSITION + NOUN **force, group, movement**

PREP. **against/in the face of ~** *She won against determined opposition from last year's champion.* **| despite/in spite of ~** *The authorities succeeded despite bitter opposition from teachers.* **| in ~ to** *The warring factions had united in opposition to the common enemy.* **| ~ from** *The proposals met with violent opposition from the environmental lobby.* **| ~ to** *There was fierce public opposition to the plan.*

2 **(usuallythe Opposition) parties not in government**

OPPOSITION + NOUN **party | candidate, leader, member, MP, politician, spokesman | bench**

PREP. **in ~** *The Conservative Party is now in opposition.*

PHRASES **the Leader of the Opposition**

oppression *noun*

ADJ. **class, economic, political, racial, sexual | black, colonial, gay, women's | male**

VERB + OPPRESSION **face, suffer** *ethnic minorities suffering oppression at the hands of occupying forces*

optician *noun*

ADJ. **dispensing, ophthalmic** *A dispensing optician supplies glasses, but doesn't test your eyes.*

PHRASES **at/to the optician's** *I've got to go to the optician's tomorrow*. > Note at DOCTOR(for verbs)

optimist *noun*

ADJ. **eternal, incurable**

PHRASES **ever the optimist** *Pete, ever the optimist, said things were bound to improve.*

optimistic *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, highly, strongly, very** *He remained strongly optimistic that an agreement could be reached.* **| excessively, hopelessly, incredibly, overly, ridiculously, unduly, wildly** *These estimates were wildly optimistic.* **| a bit, fairly, a little, quite, rather, reasonably, somewhat | basically, essentially, generally** *an essentially optimistic view of human nature* **| cautiously, guardedly, quietly** *I don't want to exaggerate our chances, but I'm cautiously optimistic.* **| cheerfully**

PREP. **about** *He's very optimistic about his chances.*

option *noun*

1 **freedom to choose**

VERB + OPTION **have** *You have the option of taking your holiday early.* | **give sb**

PREP. **with/without the ~ of** *He was jailed without the option of a fine.*

PHRASES **have little/no option but to** *We had no option but to leave without them.*

2 **sth you choose/can choose**

ADJ. **available, possible, viable** | **real, realistic** | **attractive, good** *Deciding on your best option is not easy.* | **preferred** | **practical** | **easy, soft** *He thought General Studies would be a soft option.* | **cheap** | **expensive** | **policy** | **menu (on a computer)**

VERB + OPTION **choose, exercise, select, take** *Look at the on-screen menu and select the 'File' option.* | **give sb, offer (sb)** | **limit** | **look at** *Let's look at all the options available.*

PHRASES **keep/leave your options open** (= to avoid making a decision now so that you still have a choice later)

3 **right to buy/sell sth at some time in the future**

ADJ. **first** | **share, stock**

VERB + OPTION **have** | **exercise, take (up)** *She took up an option in her contract to buy three million shares.*

PREP. **~ on** *He's promised me first option on his car.*

optional *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **entirely, purely** *The extra language classes are entirely optional.*

orange *adj.* > Special page at COLOUR

orange *noun*

ADJ. juicy | sour, sweet | mouldy

QUANT. segment

VERB + ORANGE eat, have, squeeze | peel

ORANGE + NOUN segment | pip | peel, rind, zest *Add a little grated orange peel.* **| juice** > Special page at FRUIT

orbit *noun*

ADJ. **circular, elliptical | eccentric** *Mercury's orbit is fairly eccentric.* **| stable | planetary**

VERB + ORBIT **enter, go into | put/send sth into | complete, make** *The spaceship made an orbit of the moon.*

PREP. **in ~** *The satellite will remain in orbit for several years.* **| ~ around/round** *the moon's orbit around the earth*

orchestra *noun*

ADJ. **large, small | full** *The full orchestra includes two pairs of French horns.* **| great, top | amateur, professional | philharmonic, symphony | chamber, dance, jazz, string, wind | school, youth**

VERB + ORCHESTRA **conduct | lead**

ORCHESTRA + VERB **perform (sth), play (sth) | strike (sth) up** *The orchestra struck up a lively march.* **| tune up**

ORCHESTRA + NOUN **pit**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She plays viola in a string orchestra.* **| ~ under** *the Ulster Orchestra under Philip Ledger*

PHRASES **the leader of the orchestra**

ordeal *noun*

ADJ. **long | dreadful, terrible, terrifying**

VERB + ORDEAL **endure, face, go through, suffer, undergo | subject sb to** *She was subjected to a terrible six-day ordeal.* **| survive | recover from | be spared**

PREP. **~ by** *(often humorous) This is the fourth time the prime minister has faced ordeal by egg* (= had eggs thrown at him). **| ~ of** *They were spared the ordeal of giving evidence in court.*

PHRASES **an ordeal at the hands of sb** *their 20-hour ordeal at the hands of a gunman*

order *noun*

1 **way in which people/things are arranged**

ADJ. **correct, right | wrong | logical** *The paragraphs are not in a logical order.* **| ascending** *arranged in ascending order of size* **| descending | alphabetical, chronological, numerical, random, reverse | pecking** *the pecking order among the hospital staff* **| word**

PREP. **in ~** *The winners were announced in reverse order.* **| in ~ of** *I've listed the tasks in order of priority.*

2 **organized state**

ADJ. **apple-pie** (= perfect) *The accounts were in apple-pie order.*

VERB + ORDER **bring, create, impose** *to bring order out of chaos She attempted to impose some order on the chaos of her files.* **| put/set sth in | leave sth in**

PREP. **in ~** *My notes are in order.*

PHRASES **in good order** *The house is in good order.*

3 **when laws, rules, authority, etc. are obeyed**

ADJ. **public**

VERB + ORDER **keep, maintain, preserve | restore | keep sb/sth in** *Some teachers find it difficult to keep their classes in order.* **| call sb/sth to** *The argument continued until the chairman called them both to order* (= ordered them to obey the formal rules of the meeting).

PREP. **in ~** (= allowed by the rules) *Would it be in order for us to examine the manuscript?* **| out of ~** (= not allowed by the rules) *His objection was ruled out of order.*

PHRASES **law and order, a point of order** *One of the committee members raised a point of order.*

4 **way a society is arranged**

ADJ. **established, existing, old** *He was seen as a threat to the established order.* | **new** | **natural** *the natural order of things* | **economic, political, social** | **world** *a new world order*

5 **instruction/demand**

ADJ. **direct, specific** | **executive** | **sealed** *He opened his sealed orders.* | **court** | **maintenance, preservation, restraining** *a wildlife preservation order*

VERB + ORDER **give, issue, make** *(law) The captain gave the order to fire. The judge made an order for the costs to be paid.* | **receive** | **carry out, execute, follow, obey, take** *The local civilians don't take orders from the military.* | **disobey, ignore, violate** | **cancel, countermand, rescind, revoke** | **bark/bawl/shout (out)** *He barked out orders as he left.*

PREP. **by ~** *The council's functions were established by order.* | **by ~ of** *by order of the police* | **on sb's ~s** *The ship was to set sail at once, on the admiral's orders.* | **under ~s (from)** *A group of soldiers, under orders from the president, took control of the television station.* | **~s for** *The colonel had given orders for the spy's execution.*

PHRASES **doctor's orders** *I'm not to drink any alcohol?doctor's orders!* | **get your marching orders** (= be ordered to leave), **give sb their marching orders**

6 **request for sth to be made/supplied/delivered**

ADJ. **bulk, large, record** | **small** | **firm** | **advance** | **back, outstanding** | **repeat** | **tall** (= difficult to fulfill; unreasonable) | **mail, money, postal, standing** | **export**

VERB + ORDER **place, put in** *I've placed an order for the CD.* | **cancel** | **receive, win** *The company won a £10 million order for oil-drilling equipment.* | **have** | **fill, fulfil, meet** *trying to fill all the back orders* | **make sth to** *a cupboard made to order*

ORDER + NOUN **form**

PREP. **on ~** *We have ten boxes on order.* | **~ for** *We have a firm order for ten cases of wine.*

7 **request for food, etc. in a restaurant, etc.**

ADJ. **side** *a side order of mixed salad* **| last ~s** *Last orders at the bar now please!*

VERB + ORDER **take** *The waiter came to take their orders.* **| give sb**

PREP. **~ for** *an order for steak and fries*

8 **group of people living in a religious community**

ADJ. **monastic, religious | contemplative | closed** (= with little or no contact with the outside world) **| Benedictine, Cistercian, etc.**

order *verb*

1 **tell sb to do sth**

ADV. **expressly, specifically | immediately | personally** *The army's Chief of Staff had personally ordered the raid.* **| formally | about, around** *Stop ordering me around!* **| back, home, off, out** *There were seven bookings and two players were ordered off.*

PREP. **off, out of** *All journalists have been ordered out of the country.*

2 **ask for sth**

ADV. **direct/directly**

PREP. **for** *We can order the book for you, if you like.* **| from** *You can order the book direct from the publisher.*

3 **organize/arrange sth**

ADV. **alphabetically, chronologically, hierarchically, logically** *The entries are ordered alphabetically.*

PREP. **according to** *Different senses of a word are ordered according to frequency.*

PHRASES **highly/well ordered** *She led a highly ordered existence, with everything having its own time and place.*

orderly *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very | fairly, more or less, relatively**

PHRASES **in an orderly fashion/way** *We want to bring about this change in an orderly fashion.*

ordinary *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become**

ADV. **decidedly, terribly, very** *He made all the other players on the field look decidedly ordinary.* **| perfectly, quite** *It was a perfectly ordinary day.* **| fairly, pretty, rather** *The meal was pretty ordinary.* **| essentially**

ore *noun*

ADJ. **rich | metal/metallic, mineral | copper, iron, uranium, etc.**

QUANT. **lode, vein | lump**

VERB + ORE **extract, mine | dress, extract sth from, refine, smelt** *smelting the ore with charcoal*

ORE + NOUN **deposits**

organ *noun*

1 **part of the body**

ADJ. **internal | important, vital** *The eyes are an important organ of balance. to preserve blood flow to the brain and the other vital organs* **| abdominal, genital | digestive, olfactory, reproductive, sense/sensory, sex/sexual, etc. | human | donor** *waiting for a suitable donor organ*

VERB + ORGAN **donate | transplant**

ORGAN + NOUN **donation, donor | transplant, transplantation**

2 **musical instrument**

ADJ. **pipe | mechanical | electric, electronic, Hammond (R) | barrel, mouth | church, fairground**

ORGAN + NOUN **pedal, pipe, stop | loft** > Special page at MUSIC

3 **official organization**

ADJ. **central, major** *the central organs of state* **| administrative, constitutional, economic, judicial, legislative, political, security | party**

organic *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, go**

ADV. **fully, totally** *The farm went fully organic in 1996.*

organization *noun*

1 **organized group of people**

ADJ. **large, mass | small | community, international, local, national | government, state | official | party, political | professional | non-governmental | grass-roots | voluntary | charitable, philanthropic | non-profit, not-for-profit | commercial, profit-making | environmental, human rights, labour, relief | student, women's, youth | terrorist | umbrella | front** *a front organization for drug trafficking*

VERB + ORGANIZATION **disband (For more verbs see note.)**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There are several talented people in that organization.* > Special page at BUSINESS

2 **way in which sth is organized**

ADJ. **effective, efficient, smooth** *the smooth organization of the trip* **| poor | internal**

QUANT. **degree** *a high degree of organization*

VERB + ORGANIZATION **lack** > Note at ORGANIZATION

organize *verb*

ADV. **effectively, efficiently, properly, successfully, well | badly, poorly | carefully, neatly | locally, nationally | centrally | jointly** *They organized the festival jointly with the French cultural service.* **| separately | independently, privately | formally**

VERB + ORGANIZE **seek to, try to | help (to) | be able to | manage to | fail to | learn (how) to | be difficult to | be easy to, be possible to**

PREP. **according to** *We need to organize the work according to the availability and skills of each volunteer.* **| around** *We're organizing the evening around a Japanese theme.* **| into** *It was difficult to organize the men into teams.*

organized *adj.*

1 **arranged/planned**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, highly, strongly, very** *Although it doesn't look like it, the whole thing is highly organized.* | **carefully, efficiently, properly, superbly, well** | **badly, poorly** | **minutely, neatly** | **rigidly, tightly** | **loosely, weakly** *a loosely organized confederacy of allies* | **specially** *a specially organized programme of sightseeing and shopping* | **centrally, locally, nationally** | **faintly** | **separately** | **independently, privately** | **formally** *Often there is no formally organized system of childcare.* | **traditionally** | **systematically** | **hierarchically, sequentially** *Each department is hierarchically organized.* | **socially**

2 **able to plan things well**

VERBS **be, seem** | **get** *You need to get organized.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** | **fairly**

orgasm *noun*

ADJ. **female, male | multiple | simultaneous**

VERB + ORGASM **achieve, have, reach | fake, simulate**

orgy *noun*

ADJ. **drunken, sex/sexual**

VERB + ORGY **have**

PREP. **~ of** *an orgy of looting and vandalism*

orientated *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **strongly, very | totally | sufficiently | correctly** *Make sure all the components remain correctly orientated.* **| academically, industrially, politically, technically, vocationally** *The organization is not politically orientated.*

PREP. **to/towards** *The service is not sufficiently orientated to the needs of those who use it.*

PHRASES **career/profit orientated** *She's very career orientated and not really interested in having a family.*

origin *noun*

1 time/place/reason that sth starts

ADJ. **common | doubtful, obscure, unknown** *a letter of doubtful origin* | **true | ancient, early, primitive | recent** *The term 'black hole' is of very recent origin.* | **immediate** *The development had its immediate origins in discussions with management.* | **African, English, etc. | foreign | local | mixed | natural | supernatural | environmental, geographical, historical, intellectual | animal, human, mineral, plant, vegetable** *foods of animal origin We shouldn't forget our animal origins.*

VERB + ORIGIN **have, share** *The vases share common origins.* | **investigate, trace | owe** *Population genetics owes its origin to Francis Galton.* | **explain | reflect**

ORIGIN + VERB **go back to sth, lie in sth** *The origins of Gdansk go back to the tenth century.*

PREP. **in ~** *The rock is volcanic in origin.* | **of … ~** *a painting of unknown origin*

PHRASES **sth's country of origin** *Bottles are labelled by country of origin.* | **have its origin in sth** *The dispute had its origin in the Battle of Wakefield.*

2 family, race, class, etc, that a person comes from

ADJ. **African, English, etc. | foreign | mixed | class, ethnic, national, racial, social | middle-class, noble, peasant, slave, working-class | humble, lowly** *He had risen from humble origins through hard work.*

VERB + ORIGIN **trace** *Their family can trace its origins back to the Norman Conquest.* | **betray** *Her accent betrayed her working-class origins.*

PREP. **by ~** *He is a Londoner by origin.* | **in ~** *Her family is Portuguese in origin.* | **of … ~** *He was of lowly origins.*

PHRASES **sb's country of origin**

original *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, highly, startlingly, very** *She has a highly original mind. a startlingly original idea* **| completely** *tackling the problem in a completely original way*

original *noun*

VERB + ORIGINAL **pass sth off as** *He copied paintings of famous artists and passed them off as originals.*

PREP. **in the ~** *to read Tolstoy in the original*

originality *noun*

ADJ. **great, startling, striking**

VERB + ORIGINALITY **have | display, show | be lacking in, lack**

ORIGINALITY + VERB **lie in sth** *His originality as a painter lies in his representation of light.*

PREP. **~ in** *The government has shown great originality in its foreign policy.*

PHRASES **a spark of originality**

ornamental *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly, very** *a plant which is highly ornamental in flower* **| purely** *The turrets are purely ornamental.*

ornate *adj*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly, richly, very | quite, rather**

orphan *noun*

ADJ. **little | poor** *a poor little orphan* **| war**

VERB + ORPHAN **be left** *She was left an orphan at the age of five.* **| adopt**

ORPHAN + NOUN **boy, girl**

orthodox *adj.*

VERBS **be** *His ideas are all fairly orthodox.*

ADV. **highly, strictly, very** *This is the strictly orthodox view. I am not a very orthodox kind of counsellor.* **| fairly**

orthodoxy *nou*n

ADJ. **rigid, strict | prevailing | Catholic, Christian, etc. | communist, liberal, etc. | party | economic, scientific, etc.**

ounce *noun* > Note at MEASURE

outbreak *noun*

ADJ. **large, major, serious | fresh, further, new | occasional, periodic, sporadic | recurrent, repeated | sudden | cholera, salmonella, etc.**

VERB + OUTBREAK **lead to** *the events that led to the outbreak of World War I*

OUTBREAK + VERB **occur**

PREP. **~ of** *A new outbreak of smallpox occurred in 1928.*

PHRASES **an outbreak of disease, an outbreak of rain, an outbreak of war/fighting/hostilities/violence**

outburst *noun*

ADJ. **sudden | spontaneous | occasional** *her occasional outbursts of temper* **| angry, furious, violent | emotional, hysterical, passionate**

PREP. **~ against** *A player was cautioned for his angry outburst against the referee.* **| ~ of** *an outburst of anger/laughter/temper/violence*

outcast *noun*

ADJ. **social** *He was treated as a social outcast.*

VERB + OUTCAST **make sb** *Her criminal past made her an outcast.* **| treat sb as/like**

PREP. **~ from** *an outcast from society*

outcome *noun*

ADJ. **desirable, desired, favourable, good, happy, positive, satisfactory, successful | negative, unfortunate, unsatisfactory | fatal, tragic | possible | likely, probable | anticipated, expected, inevitable, intended, logical, predicted | unexpected | immediate | actual, eventual, final, long-term, ultimate | direct** *a direct outcome of the strike* **| practical | educational, electoral, political, etc.** *(all technical)*

VERB + OUTCOME **affect, influence | decide, determine | achieve, have, produce** *Their strategy produced the desired outcome.* **| evaluate, measure** *(technical) The aim is to evaluate possible outcomes.*

PREP. **~ of** *the outcome of the election*

PHRASES **whatever the outcome** *Whatever the final outcome of the talks, the war should end soon.*

outcry *noun*

ADJ. **great, huge, massive | immediate | popular, public | national | international**

VERB + OUTCRY **cause, provoke, spark** *The bombing caused an international outcry.*

PREP. **~against/over** *There was a massive public outcry against the harsh prison sentence.* **| ~ from** *an immediate outcry from workers over pay reductions*

outfit *noun*

1 **set of clothes worn together**

ADJ. **complete | new | summer, winter | interview, party, wedding, etc. | clown, cowboy, etc.**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He looked very smart in his new outfit.*

2 **organization/company, etc.**

ADJ. **large | small | professional | cowboy, dodgy | computer, publishing, etc.**

outing *noun*

ADJ. **little | special | day's, summer, weekend | annual | family, school, social**

VERB + OUTING **be/go on**

PREP. **~ from** *The children were on a day's outing from school.* **| ~ to** *a family outing to the seaside*

outlay *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, huge, large, massive | modest, small | initial** *The revenue from the farm could repay the initial outlay within three years.* **| total | capital, cash, financial, investment**

VERB + OUTLAY **make | require** *The project would require little financial outlay.* **| recoup, recover | repay**

PREP. **~ on** *The railway had made a considerable capital outlay on new rolling stock.*

outlet *noun*

1 **place that sells goods of a particular company/type**

ADJ. **specialist | high-street, local | commercial, distribution, retail, sales | DIY, fast-food, etc.**

PREP. **~ for** *a retail outlet for exotic plants*

2 **means of releasing energy/strong feeling/talents**

ADJ. **emotional | creative**

VERB + OUTLET **have | find | provide (sb with)** *Sport provided an outlet for his energy.* **| need**

PREP. **~ for** *She needs an outlet for her talents.*

3 **pipe/hole**

ADJ. **electrical, gas, sewage, socket, waste, water**

OUTLET + NOUN **hose, pipe**

outline *noun*

1 **line that shows the shape/outside edge of sb/sth**

ADJ. **clear, sharp** *The sharp outline of the island had become blurred.* **| blurred, dim, faint, vague | simple**

VERB + OUTLINE **draw, make, trace** *The children made an outline of their hands.* **| make out, see** *I could just make out the dim outlines of the house in the mist.* **| soften**

OUTLINE + NOUN **drawing, map**

PREP. **around/round the ~** *to cut round the outline* **| in ~** *He sketched the street in outline only.* **| ~ of**

2 **most important facts/ideas about sth**

ADJ. **bare, basic, brief, rough** *a brief outline of Polish history* **| broad, general | course**

VERB + OUTLINE **give (sb), provide (sb with), write (sb)** *Write an outline for your essay.*

PREP. **in ~** *Here's the plan in outline.* **| ~ for, ~ of**

outline *verb*

ADV. **briefly | clearly | roughly** *He roughly outlined the plot of the opera.* **| here | above, earlier, previously** *using the plan outlined above* **| below**

VERB + OUTLINE **attempt to, seek to, try to**

PREP. **to** *the policies outlined to Parliament on May 20th*

outlook *noun*

1 **attitude to life**

ADJ. **optimistic, positive | negative, pessimistic | general | broad** *Having children gave her a broader outlook on life.* **| different, differing | mental | moral, philosophical, religious**

VERB + OUTLOOK **have | give sb | change | broaden** *Travel broadens your outlook.*

PREP. **in ~** *She is rather cautious in outlook.* **| of (a) … ~** *people of widely differing religious outlooks* **| ~ on** *Losing his job changed his whole outlook on life.*

2 **what will probably happen**

ADJ. **bright, good | bleak, gloomy, grim** *The outlook for people on a state pension is grim.* **| uncertain | business, economic, political | long-term, short-term**

VERB + OUTLOOK **improve** *The drug improves the long-term outlook of migraine sufferers.* **| worsen**

PREP. **~ for** *a brighter outlook for the economy*

outnumber *verb*

ADV. **considerably, easily, far, greatly, heavily, substantially, vastly** *Their failures vastly outnumber their successes.* **| almost | slightly**

PREP. **by** *The Czechs outnumbered the Slovaks by at least two to one.*

PHRASES **be hopelessly outnumbered** *The Spanish were hopelessly outnumbered in the battle.*

output *noun*

ADJ. **high, large, massive | greater, increased | steady | low | aggregate, gross, overall, total** *10 per cent of the country's total output* **| net | real | average | annual, monthly, etc. | maximum | current | national, world | prodigious, prolific** *her prodigious literary output* **| agricultural, industrial, manufacturing | computer | data | literary**

QUANT. **level** *changes in the level of output*

VERB + OUTPUT **produce | double, expand, increase** *The plant plans to increase output to 10,000 cars a year.* **| reduce**

OUTPUT + VERB **increase, rise | decrease, fall**

PREP. **~ of** *a steady output of new ideas*

PHRASES **a drop/fall in output** *the fall in output due to outdated equipment* **| a growth/an increase/a rise in output**

outrage *noun*

1 **great anger**

ADJ. **genuine | widespread | international | public | moral** *Media reports generated moral outrage.*

VERB + OUTRAGE **be greeted with, cause, generate, provoke, spark** *The news was greeted with outrage.* **| feel | express, voice** *Shopkeepers voiced their outrage at the new tax.*

OUTRAGE + VERB **be directed at sb/sth** *Much of the outrage was directed at foreign nationals.*

PREP. **in ~** *The guests all shouted in outrage.* **| with ~** *She was trembling with outrage.* **| ~ at** *Campaigners have expressed outrage at the decision.* **| ~ over** *There is widespread public outrage over the massacre.*

PHRASES **cries/howls of outrage** *The announcement provoked howls of outrage.* **| a feeling/sense of outrage**

2 **cruel/shocking act**

VERB + OUTRAGE **commit, perpetrate** *the outrages committed by the invading army*

PREP. **~ against** *The new law on pensions is an outrage against the elderly.*

outrageous *adj.*

VERBS **be | consider sth, regard sth as, see sth as, think sth** *She thought it absolutely outrageous that he should be promoted over her.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, totally | morally**

outsider *noun*

1 **not a member of a group**

ADJ. **complete | political, social**

VERB + OUTSIDER **feel** *I felt a complete outsider.*

PREP. **~ to** *an outsider to the group*

2 **competitor who will probably not win**

ADJ. **complete, rank**

PREP. **~ in** *The firm has gone from being an outsider in the market to being a market leader.*

outskirts *noun*

ADJ. **sprawling | city | northern, etc.**

VERB + OUTSKIRTS **reach**

PREP. **in the ~** *a school in the outskirts of Athens* **| on the ~** *We live on the outskirts of Leeds.* **| through the ~** *driving through the outskirts of London*

outstanding *adj.*

1 **excellent**

VERBS **be | consider sth**

ADV. **particularly, really, truly | absolutely, quite** *That was a quite outstanding performance!*

2 **not yet paid or done**

VERBS **be, remain** *Two or three tasks still remain outstanding.* **| leave sth** *One option may be to leave the debt outstanding and extend the payment terms.*

ADV. **still** *75 per cent of the amount originally borrowed is still outstanding.*

outweigh *verb*

ADV. **considerably, easily, far, greatly, heavily, more than, vastly** *The benefits would surely far outweigh the risks. The advantages of this scheme more than outweigh the costs involved.*

oval *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **perfectly** *her delicate, perfectly oval face* **|** **almost** *The leaves are long and almost oval.*

PHRASES **oval in shape** *The handle is oval in shape* **|** **oval-shaped** *an oval-shaped box*

ovation *noun*

ADJ. enthusiastic, huge, long, loud, rapturous, thunderous | standing *The audience gave her a standing ovation for her performance.*

VERB + OVATION give sb | get, receive *He received the longest ovation of the evening.* **| bring, earn, win**

PREP. to an ~ *He came off the field to a huge ovation.* **| ~ from** *The final piece won her a rapturous ovation from the audience.*

oven *noun*

ADJ. **electric, gas, microwave | hot, low, moderate, warm** *Bake them in a warm oven until risen and golden brown.* **| preheated | combination, convection, conventional, fan-assisted | domestic | self-cleaning | bread | clay** *Tandoori food is cooked in a clay oven.*

VERB + OVEN **light, switch on, turn on | heat, preheat** *Preheat the oven to 190°C.* **| bake sth in, cook sth in | put sth in | remove sth from, take sth out of | clean**

OVEN + VERB **heat (up)** *Switch on the oven and let it heat up.* **| cool (down)**

OVEN + NOUN **dish | glove | temperature | door, rack | timer | cleaner | chips**

PREP. **in an/the ~** *baking bread in the oven* > Special page at FOOD

overcast *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become** *The sky became heavily overcast.* **| remain, stay**

ADV. **heavily, very**

overcoat *nou*n

ADJ. **long | heavy, thick | dark | tweed** > Special page at CLOTHES

overcome *verb*

1 **defeat/conquer sb/sth**

ADV. **completely | successfully | not entirely** *These problems were never entirely overcome.* **| largely | partially | easily | quickly | gradually | eventually, finally** *He eventually overcame his disability.*

VERB + OVERCOME **be able to | help (to), help sb (to)** *Therapy helped her overcome her fear.* **| be designed to** *methods designed to overcome these problems* **| attempt to, battle to, struggle to, try to | manage to**

PHRASES **an attempt to overcome sth 2 be/feel overcome** become weak/ill; lose control

ADV. **completely, quite** *She felt quite overcome by their kindness.* **| almost, nearly** *She felt almost overcome by a tide of relief.* **| visibly** *The officers on duty were visibly overcome, many of them in tears.* **| suddenly**

PREP. **by** *Several firefighters had been overcome by smoke and fumes.* **| with** *He was suddenly overcome with remorse for the harm he had done.*

overcrowded *adj*

VERBS **be | become, get**

ADV. **extremely, grossly, severely, very | a little**

overdose *noun*

ADJ. **large, massive | drug/drugs, heroin, paracetamol, etc. | fatal | accidental**

VERB + OVERDOSE **take | die from/of**

PREP. **~ of** *She took an overdose of paracetamol.*

overdraft *noun*

ADJ. **enormous, huge, large | agreed, authorized | unauthorized | free** *We offer a free £400 overdraft.* **| bank**

VERB + OVERDRAFT **have | get, take out | run up** *The president ran up a huge overdraft during her year in office.* **| arrange | extend, give sb, offer (sb) | pay off | increase | reduce | exceed** *They exceeded their overdraft by £200,000.*

OVERDRAFT + NOUN **facility | limit**

overdrawn *adj.*

VERBS **be | go** *I never like to go overdrawn if I can help it.* **| remain**

ADV. **badly, very | rather, slightly, somewhat**

overdue *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **long** *These reforms are long overdue.*

PREP. **for** *This system is overdue for reform.*

PHRASES **months/weeks/years overdue** *These changes are years overdue.*

overestimate *verb*

ADV. **considerably, greatly, grossly, seriously, vastly | consistently** *The Ministry of Finance consistently overestimated its budget deficits.*

VERB + OVERESTIMATE **tend to | be easy to** *It is easy to overestimate the cost of this kind of research.* **| be difficult to, be hard to**

PREP. **by** *We overestimated the cost by about 2 per cent.*

PHRASES **sth cannot be overestimated** *The importance of this group cannot be overestimated.*

overgrown *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become, get**

ADV. **extremely, thickly, very | completely** *The path was completely overgrown.*

PREP. **with** *The canal bank was thickly overgrown with last year's brambles.*

overhaul *noun*

ADJ. **complete, major, massive, thorough | radical**

VERB + OVERHAUL **have, undergo** *The tax system has undergone a complete overhaul.* **| give sth | need**

overhaul *verb*

ADV. **drastically, radically** *Within a year the party had drastically overhauled its structure.* **| completely, thoroughly** *The plan was completely overhauled.*

overhead *adj., adv.*

VERBS **be | appear, circle, fly, gather, hover, pass, soar, wheel** *The seagulls circled overhead. Storm clouds were gathering overhead.* **| buzz, roar, scream, whirr** *Helicopters buzzed overhead.* **| shine**

ADV. **directly** *The storm must be directly overhead.* **| nearly | high** *The moon was high overhead.* **| low** *aircraft passing low overhead*

overhear *verb*

ADV. **accidentally**

PHRASES **couldn't help overhearing sth** *Excuse me for interrupting, but I couldn't help overhearing what you were saying.*

overjoyed *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **less than, not exactly** *She was not exactly overjoyed to see us again.*

PREP. **about** *They're all overjoyed about it.* **| at** *overjoyed at the thought of having a son* **| by** *We are overjoyed by this decision.* **| with** *Mr Crangle was overjoyed with his success.*

overlap *verb*

ADV. **almost | partially, partly, slightly, to some extent** *Put the two pieces of paper together so that they overlap slightly. The two categories overlap to some extent.* **| clearly**

PREP. **in** *terms which overlap slightly in meaning* **| with** *a world which overlaps with the newspaper world*

overload *verb*

PREP. **with** *Their staff are heavily overloaded with work.*

PHRASES **be heavily/seriously overloaded**

overlook *verb*

ADV. **completely, entirely | largely | frequently, often | generally | conveniently** *Conveniently overlooking the fact that she wouldn't be able to meet the commitment, she agreed enthusiastically.*

VERB + OVERLOOK **cannot, cannot afford to, should not** *We should not overlook this possibility.* **| be inclined to, tend to** *Hospitals have tended to overlook this need.* **| seem to | be prepared to, be willing to** *I was prepared to overlook her mistakes this time.* **| be easy to** *It is easy to overlook the significance of this change.* **| be impossible to**

PHRASES **be easily overlooked** *another fact which is all too easily overlooked* **| sth should not be overlooked** *The importance of this should not be overlooked.*

oversee *verb*

ADV. **directly | personally** *He personally oversaw the design of all the rooms.*

VERB + OVERSEE **be appointed to, be created to, be set up to** *A committee has been appointed to oversee the work.*

PHRASES **be responsible for overseeing sth** *the committee that is responsible for overseeing the day-to-day implementation of this policy*

oversight *noun*

ADJ. **unfortunate**

PREP. **by (an) ~** *By an oversight, we did not send out the agenda for the meeting.* **|** **due to (an) ~** *The mistake was due to an unfortunate oversight on my part.* **|** **through (an) ~** *Through oversight, the bill was still unpaid.*

overthrow *noun*

ADJ. **attempted | violent**

VERB + OVERTHROW **bring about, lead to | plot**

PREP. **~ of** *to bring about the overthrow of the military dictatorship*

overtime *noun*

ADJ. **excessive** *Doctors work excessive unpaid overtime.* **| unlimited | paid, unpaid**

VERB + OVERTIME **do, put in, work** *I do about five hours' overtime a week. She puts in a lot of overtime.*

OVERTIME + NOUN **earnings, pay, payments, rates | ban** *The union imposed an overtime ban in protest at the sacking of two workers.*

overtone *noun*

ADJ. **strong** *a play with strong religious overtones* **| serious | negative** *The word ‘cheap’ has negative overtones.* **| emotional, moral, political, racial, religious, sexual | racist**

VERB + OVERTONE **carry, have | take on** *The organization's cultural activities took on political overtones.*

overture *noun*

1 **(usually overtures) friendly behaviour**

ADJ. **friendly | diplomatic, peace, sexual**

VERB + OVERTURE **make | receive | respond to | reject, spurn** *She spurned his overtures of love.*

PREP. **~s of** *overtures of friendship* **| ~s to** *He made friendly overtures to his new neighbours.*

2 **piece of music**

ADJ. **operatic, symphonic**

PREP. **~ to** *the overture to Mozart's 'Don Giovanni'*

overturn *verb*

ADV. **completely** *She completely overturned my preconceptions about film stars.*

VERB + OVERTURN **seek to, try to** *seeking to overturn his conviction for armed robbery* **| fail to**

PHRASES **be easily overturned** *This argument seems convincing, but is easily overturned.*

overview *noun*

ADJ. **brief, short | broad, general | complete, comprehensive | detailed, in-depth | critical | balanced | historical** *The opening chapter gives a brief historical overview of transport.*

VERB + OVERVIEW **give (sb), offer (sb), present, provide (sb with) | have** *Only the Head of Sales has an overview of the situation worldwide.*

PREP. **~ on** *The seminar aims to provide an overview on new media publishing.*

overweight *adj.*

VERBS **be, look** *You don't look overweight.* **| become, get** *Don't let yourself get overweight.*

ADV. **extremely, grossly, heavily, seriously, very | a bit, a little, rather, slightly**

PHRASES **a few pounds, two stone, etc. overweight**

overwhelm *verb*

ADV. **completely, totally | almost | suddenly**

VERB + OVERWHELM **threaten to** *Deal with stress fast whenever it threatens to overwhelm you.*

PREP. **with** *The children pressed around him eagerly, overwhelming him with questions.*

PHRASES **be/feel overwhelmed (by/with sth)** *We were totally overwhelmed by the response to our appeal. She felt completely overwhelmed.*

overwhelming *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **completely, quite | almost** *The urge to look was almost overwhelming.* **| a little, pretty** *All these new experiences were a little overwhelming.* **| apparently, seemingly** *seemingly overwhelming obstacles*

owl *noun*

ADJ. **wise | stuffed**

OWL + VERB **fly | hoot, screech | catch sth, prey on sth** *Owls prey on small rodents.* **| nest, roost**

OWL + NOUN **pellet**

own *verb*

ADV. **communally, jointly** *Only when the means of production were communally owned would classes disappear. She owns the house jointly with her husband.* **| legally** *He committed the crime with a gun that he legally owned.*

PHRASES **directly/indirectly owned by sb, own your own boat, home, etc.** *They dreamed of owning their own home.* **| partly/wholly owned by sb** *The company is a wholly owned subsidiary of SNL Research.* **| privately/publicly owned** *The museum is privately owned.*

owner *noun*

ADJ. **sole | part** *I'm part owner of the restaurant.* **| joint | former, original, previous | current, present | new | future, prospective | lawful, legal, rightful** *The stolen painting has now been returned to its rightful owner.* **| private | lucky, proud** *the proud owner of a new stereo* **| car, dog, factory, home, land**

VERB + OWNER **have** *The car had only one previous owner.* **| trace** *The police have been unable to trace the owner of the vehicle.*

ownership *noun*

ADJ. **full | sole | collective, common, joint, shared | new | legal | private | corporate | public, state | foreign | car, home, land**

VERB + OWNERSHIP **change, transfer** *The shop has changed ownership several times. He transferred the legal ownership of his property to his children.* **| pass into** *The railways passed into public ownership.* **| acquire, seize, take (over) | retain**

OWNERSHIP + VERB **pass** *Ownership of the land passed from father to son.*

PREP. **under (the) ~** *The cafe is under new ownership.*

PHRASES **a change in ownership**

oxygen *noun*

ADJ. **pure | liquid | atmospheric**

VERB + OXYGEN **carry, contain** *the blood which carries oxygen to the brain* **| absorb, breathe, consume, take in, use up | generate, produce, release** *After dark the plants stop producing oxygen.* **| administer, give sb | get, receive** *The patient didn't seem to be getting enough oxygen.* **| deprive sb/sth of, starve sb/sth of** *There was a risk the brain might be starved of oxygen.*

OXYGEN + NOUN **atom | level, supply | mask**

PHRASES **a lack of oxygen, a supply of oxygen**

ozone layer *noun*

VERB + OZONE LAYER **be damaging to, damage, deplete, destroy | protect**

OZONE LAYER + VERB **thin | disappear** *The ozone layer is disappearing over northern Europe.*

PHRASES **damage to the ozone layer, depletion/destruction of the ozone layer, a hole in the ozone layer**

ozone *noun*

VERB + OZONE **deplete, destroy**

OZONE + NOUN **levels | depletion, destruction, loss | hole | pollution**

PHRASES **the loss of/reduction in ozone** *the discovery of massive springtime reductions in ozone over Antarctica*

pace *noun*

1 **one step**

VERB + PACE **take** *Take two paces forward.* | **step back** *Step back three paces.*

PREP. **~ behind** *Two bodyguards remained a couple of paces behind the president throughout the walkabout.* | **~ from** *I stopped a few paces from the edge of the cliff.*

2 **speed**

ADJ. **blistering, breakneck, breathtaking, brisk, cracking, fast, frantic, frenetic, frenzied, furious, good, great, hectic, lightning, lively, rapid** | **gentle, leisurely, relaxed, slow, unhurried, walking** *the slow pace of economic reform* | **even, measured, moderate, steady**

VERB + PACE **gather, increase, quicken** *The project had a slow start, but is now gathering pace. Thinking that she was being followed, she quickened her pace.* | **slacken, slow down** | **dictate, set** *Brown set the pace in the first mile.* | **keep (up), maintain** *The younger children struggled to keep pace with the older ones. She kept up a pace of ten miles an hour.* | **stand** *You shouldn't have such a job if you can't stand the pace.*

PACE + VERB **increase** | **slow**

PREP. **at a … ~** *They set off at a cracking pace.* | **~ of** *The pace of change means that equipment has to be constantly replaced. The pace of life is much slower on the islands.*

PHRASES **at sb's own pace** *The students work at their own pace.* | **at a snail's pace** *I set off at a snail's pace to conserve my energy for later in the race.* | **a change of pace** *I try to get away at weekends for a change of pace.* | **a turn of pace** *He's a skilful player with a good turn of pace.*

pace *verb*

ADV. **slowly | anxiously, nervously, restlessly** *She paced restlessly up and down.* **| about/around/round, back and forth, to and fro, up and down** *He paced slowly back and forth.*

VERB + PACE **begin to**

PREP. **about, around/round**

PHRASES **begin pacing** *She began pacing round the room.*

pack *noun*

1 **things put together for carrying**

ADJ. **heavy**

VERB + PACK **carry**

PACK + NOUN **animal, horse, mule**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The water in his pack made it very heavy.*

2 **things supplied together**

ADJ. **cigarette | battery, power | gift, sample | action, information, resource, starter, study, training**

PACK + VERB **contain sth, include sth** *Your resource pack includes addresses of leading manufacturers.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *How many needles are there in a pack?* **| ~ of** *It comes in packs of six. a pack of cigarettes*

3 **group of animals**

ADJ. **wolf | hunting**

VERB + PACK **lead**

PACK + NOUN **instinct**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the dominant animal in the pack* **| in ~s** *The animals hunt in packs.* **| ~ of** *a pack of dogs/wolves*

PHRASES **the leader of the pack**

4 **playing cards**

VERB + PACK **shuffle | cut**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There are 52 playing cards in a pack.*

PHRASES **the bottom/top of the pack** *Take a card from the top of the pack.* **| a pack of cards**

pack *verb*

1 **put things into containers**

ADV. **carefully | tightly** *Live animals are transported across the continent, packed tightly into lorries.* **| away, together, up** *The passengers travelled packed together like cattle. I think we might as well pack up and go home.*

PREP. **in, into** *She packed her clothes into a suitcase.*

2 **fill a place/sth**

PREP. **into** *Crowds of people packed into the hall.*

PHRASES **be packed full of sth** *Our new brochure is packed full of inspirational ideas.* **| be packed out** *The cinema was packed out!* **| be packed to bursting/capacity/overflowing** *The hall was packed to capacity.* **| be packed to the gunwales/rafters** *The hostel was packed to the rafters.* **| be packed with sb** *The place was packed with football fans.* **| closely/densely/tightly packed**

package *noun*

1 **parcel**

ADJ. **bulky | neat | suspect, suspicious** *Police destroyed the suspect package in a controlled explosion.*

VERB + PACKAGE **unwrap, wrap | post, send | deliver | sign for**

PACKAGE + VERB **contain**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I sent the books in one big package.*

2 **set of proposals**

ADJ. **complete, comprehensive, total | attractive, excellent | reform | benefits, compensation, financial, remuneration** *a comprehensive benefits package* **| redundancy | aid, assistance | austerity, economic, recovery, rescue | jobs | training**

VERB + PACKAGE **offer, produce, put together** *The IMF has put together a rescue package for the country's faltering economy.* **| accept, approve | reject**

PACKAGE + VERB **contain sth, include sth | be aimed at sth** *a jobs package aimed at helping the unemployed*

PACKAGE + NOUN **holiday, tour | deal**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the measures included in the package* **| under a/the ~** *Under the reform package spending on health will increase.* **| ~ of** *a package of measures to assist industry*

PHRASES **part of a package** *The pay freeze forms part of a package of budget cuts.*

3 **computer software**

ADJ. **software | integrated** *an integrated business software package* **| application, desktop publishing, drawing, graphics, word-processing | accounting,**

business

VERB + PACKAGE **use | develop**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *word processing and database software in one package*

packaging *noun*

ADJ. **fancy, glossy** *CDs would be far cheaper to produce without the glossy packaging.* **| discarded, waste | non-recyclable, recyclable | drinks, food, product, etc.**

VERB + PACKAGING **recycle**

PACKAGING + NOUN **materials | technology | waste | company, firm, group, manufacturer | industry**

packet *noun*

ADJ. **empty | cereal, cigarette, cornflake, crisp, seed | pay, wage** *a weekly pay packet* (= wage) *of £200*

VERB + PACKET **open, undo | take sth from/out of**

PACKET + VERB **contain sth** *a packet containing seeds*

PACKET + NOUN **soup**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *Follow the instructions on the packet.* **| ~ of** *a packet of crisps*

packing *noun*

VERB + PACKING **do** *When shall we do the packing?*

PACKING + NOUN **case**

PHRASES **postage and packing** *All prices include postage and packing.*

pact *noun*

ADJ. **bilateral, mutual | defence, military, security | non-agression, peace | electoral, political, social, trade | suicide**

VERB + PACT **have | conclude, enter into, form, make, strike** *The Social Democrats struck an electoral pact with the Liberals.* **| sign | break**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She died with her lover in a suicide pact.* **| under a/the ~** *conditions under the recently signed non-aggression pact* **| ~ between** *a defence pact between Pakistan and France* **| ~ with** *He made a pact with the devil.*

pad *noun*

ADJ. **memo, message, note | drawing, sketch**

PREP. **on a/the~** *She doodled on a pad as she spoke.*

pad *verb*

1 **be padded be filled/covered with soft material**

ADV. **heavily, thickly** *She was wearing a warm coat and thickly padded gloves.* **| lightly**

PREP. **with** *The shoulder straps are padded with foam.*

2 **move quietly**

ADV. **silently, softly | barefoot | about/around**

PREP. **about/around** *padding softly around the house* **| across** *padding barefoot across the carpet* **| along** *The cat padded silently along the track.* **| to, towards**

paddle *verb*

ADV. **downstream, upstream | frantically, furiously** *He paddled furiously against the current.* **| slowly**

page *noun*

ADJ. **back, front | facing, opposite** *There's a photo of him on the opposite page/on the page opposite.* **| left-hand, right-hand | next, previous | opening | new** *Write each answer on a new page.* **| blank, empty | full | loose | dog-eared | printed** *The speech did not transfer well to the printed page.* **| contents, title | business, editorial, financial, sports** (all in a newspaper) **| problem** *reading the problem pages of magazines*

VERB + PAGE **read | scan | turn (over), turn to** *I turned the dog-eared pages of my old address book. Turn to page 30 in the coursebook.* **| flick through, flip through, leaf through** *She sat idly flipping through the pages of a fashion magazine.* **| tear (out) | splash sth across** *The headlines were splashed across the front page of every newspaper.*

PAGE + VERB **come loose** *Several pages had come loose.* **| yellow** *the yellowing pages of her old diary*

PAGE + NOUN **number | layout, make-up**

PREP. **at (a/the) ~** *Open your books at page 14.* **| in the ~s** *The murder takes place in the opening pages of the novel.* **| on a/the ~** *The crossword is on the back page.* **| over the ~** *The article continues over the page.*

PHRASES **at the bottom/foot of the page, at the head/top of the page** *Write your name at the top of each page.* **| pages long** *The story is thirty pages long.* **| run your eye/finger down a page** *I ran my finger down the page until I found the name I was looking for.*

paid *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly, well** *a well-paid job* **| badly, poorly** *poorly paid workers*

pain *noun*

1 **physical pain**

ADJ. **acute, agonizing, awful, excruciating, extreme, great,** intense, severe, sharp, terrible, **unbearable | burning, searing, shooting, stabbing, throbbing** *She had a burning pain in one eye.* **| dull, little, slight | chronic,** constant, nagging, persistent | **sudden | intermittent | physical** | abdominal, back, chest, leg, **muscle, shoulder, stomach** *She's been off work with back pain. He went to the doctor with chest pains.* **| growing, labour, period**

QUANT. **spasm, stab**

VERB + PAIN **be in, be racked with, experience, feel, get, go through, have, suffer (from)** *He was obviously in a great deal of pain. Can you feel any pain? Marathon runners are used to going through pain. He was taken to hospital suffering from severe abdominal pain.* **| cause, give sb, inflict** *His back gives him great pain. It's wrong to inflict pain on any animal.* **| increase, make worse | alleviate, control, deaden, do something for, dull, ease, help, kill, relieve, stop** *Your doctor should be able to do something for the pain.* **| bear, endure, put up with, stand, take | cry out in, cry with, groan with, scream with | be contorted with, contort in** *His face was contorted with pain as he crossed the finish line.*

PAIN + VERB **begin, come** *The pains began shortly after she started work as a gardener.* **| shoot through/up** *A sharp pain shot up his leg.* **| grow stronger, increase, intensify | disappear, go, stop, wear off** *Has the pain gone yet? A few hours after he'd had his tooth out, the pain began to wear off.* **| come back, return**

PAIN + NOUN **control, relief | threshold**

PREP. **~ in** *a pain in her side*

PHRASES **aches and pains** *Eucalyptus oil is good for easing muscular aches and pains.* **| a cry of pain, a threshold for/of pain** *I have a very low threshold for pain.*

2 **unhappiness**

ADJ. **great, intense, terrible | emotional**

VERB + PAIN **cause (sb), give sb, inflict** *Through her drug addiction she had inflicted a lot of pain on the family.* **| feel, go through | get over** *It took him several years to get over the pain of losing his job.* **| ease | spare sb** *We hoped to spare her the pain of having to meet her attacker.* **| express | conceal** *He tried to conceal his pain from her.* **| bear, endure | be worth** *The government has to persuade the people that the economic reforms are worth the pain.*

pained *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **positively | slightly** *a slightly pained expression on his face*

painful *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get | find sth** *She found it unbearably painful to speak.*

ADV. **acutely, excruciatingly, extremely, intensely, particularly, terribly, unbearably, very | increasingly | almost | pretty, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | potentially | emotionally, physically**

PREP. **to** *The subject of his failed marriage was quite painful to him.*

painless *adj.*

VERBS **be** *The operation was relatively painless.*

ADV. **completely, entirely, totally | almost, virtually | comparatively, relatively**

paint *noun*

ADJ. **thick | runny, thin | fresh | dry, wet | emulsion, enamel, gloss, matt, metallic, satin, spray | lead, lead-based, oil-based, water-based | acrylic, oil, poster** *an artist working with acrylic paints*

QUANT. **blob, speck, splash, spot** *Specks of paint found at the scene were found to match the accused's car.* **| coat** *I'll give the walls a fresh coat of paint.* **| layer** *The artist has used several layers of paint to create the stormy sky.* **| lick** *(informal) A lick of paint will do wonders for the room.* **| jar, pot, tube | box, set** *a set of watercolour paints*

VERB + PAINT **apply, put on, spray | daub with, spatter with, splash with | remove, scrape off, strip (off) | mix | dilute, thin**

PAINT + VERB **dry | blister, chip, crack, flake (off), peel** *Paint was peeling from the walls.*

PAINT + NOUN **brush** (also **paintbrush**) **| pot | manufacturer, shop | job** *We did a quick paint job on the car and hoped the damage wasn't noticeable.*

paint *verb*

ADV. **carefully | badly, crudely** *The walls had been painted very badly. a crudely painted human figure* **| beautifully, exquisitely | brightly, gaily** *the cheerful, brightly painted doors* **| garishly, gaudily**

PREP. **in** *an artist who usually paints in oils* **| on** *I like to paint on canvas.* **| with** *Paint the box all over with varnish.*

PHRASES **freshly/newly painted, paint sth blue, white, etc.** *We painted the walls light green.*

painter *noun*

1 person whose job is to paint buildings, walls, etc.

ADJ. self-employed | house

PHRASES painter and decorator *He now works as a painter and decorator.*

2 artist who paints pictures

ADJ. celebrated, distinguished, great, famous, master, well-known *some of the great painters of the last century the Dutch master painter Jan Vermeer* **| good, talented | amateur, professional | contemporary, modern** *an exhibition of works by contemporary painters* **| court** *Rudolf II's court painter* **| abstract, animal, figurative, fresco, genre, landscape, miniature, portrait, realist, watercolour | Cubist, Impressionist, etc.** > Note at JOB

painting *noun*

1 act of painting

ADJ. **acrylic, oil, watercolour | finger | miniature | abstract, decorative, figurative, genre, landscape, life, portrait, still-life, surrealist**

VERB + PAINTING **do** *I'll do some painting this afternoon.* **| take up** *When she retired she took up painting.*

PAINTING + NOUN **style, technique | course**

PHRASES **painting and decorating** *The firm specializes in painting and decorating.*

2 picture

ADJ. **fine, good, great | famous, well-known | valuable | original** *The design is based on an original painting by Matisse.* **| miniature | Cubist, Impressionist, Old Master, etc. | avant-garde | abstract, figurative, figure, genre, landscape, life, nude, still-life, surrealist | ceiling, fresco, wall | acrylic, gouache, oil, watercolour**

QUANT. **series | collection, exhibition**

VERB + PAINTING **do, execute, paint, work on** *Degas did several paintings of ballet dancers.* **| frame | hang, put up | display, exhibit, show | collect** *She collects paintings by nineteenth-century Australian artists.* **| clean, conserve, restore | copy, reproduce**

PAINTING + VERB **depict sb/sth, portray sb/sth, show sb/sth | hang** *His most famous paintings hang in the Tate Gallery.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The woman in the painting is the artist's mistress.* **| ~ by** *a painting by Gauguin* **| ~ in** *a fine painting in oils* **| ~ of** *paintings of flowers* > Note at ART

pair *noun*

1 **two things the same**

ADJ. **matching** *a matching pair of vases* | **identical**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Answer one question in each pair.* | **in ~s** *These candlesticks only come in pairs.* | **~ of** *a pair of shoes*

PHRASES **one of a pair** *one of a pair of crystal vases*

2 **people who are connected**

ADJ. **inseparable** | **good** | **happy** (= a newly married couple) | **odd** *They make an odd pair.*

VERB + PAIR **match** *The pair were matched for age.* | **make** *I thought they would make a good pair so I arranged for them to meet.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The students worked in pairs.*

3 **male and female animal**

ADJ. **breeding**

PAIR + VERB **breed, mate**

PREP. **~ of** *a pair of swans nesting by the river*

palace *noun*

ADJ. **ancient | 14th-century, etc. | imperial, papal, presidential, royal | grand, great, magnificent, sumptuous, whacking great | veritable** *(figurative) Even this small house was a veritable palace compared to his tent.* **| fairy-tale**

VERB + PALACE **build | live in**

PALACE + VERB **stand** *The palace stands on the west bank of the river.*

PALACE + NOUN **complex, compound | courtyard, gardens, grounds | gates | affairs | aide, guard, official, spokesman | coup, revolution** *The king was deposed by his son in a palace coup.*

PREP. **at a/the ~, in a/the ~**

PHRASES **the interior of the palace**

palate *noun*

1 part of the mouth

ADJ. **hard | soft | cleft** *Their baby had an operation to repair a cleft palate.*

2 sense of taste

ADJ. **discerning, discriminating, sophisticated | jaded** *Here is a dish that will revive jaded palates.*

VERB + PALATE **have** *She has a discerning palate.* **| appeal to, suit** *This kind of food appeals to more sophisticated palates.* **| clean, cleanse** *Have an apple to cleanse your palate.*

pale *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become, go, grow, turn** *Ruth went pale as the news sank in.* **| remain**

ADV. **deathly, extremely, sickly, terribly, very** *He turned deathly pale.* **| a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly | strangely, unnaturally**

PHRASES **pale and drawn** *He looked pale and drawn.*

pallor *noun*

ADJ. **slight | deathly, ghostly, sickly** *the deathly pallor of her face* **| green, grey, white**

VERB + PALLOR **have** *He had a sickly green pallor.*

palm *noun*

1 **flat part of the front of your hand**

ADJ. **soft | horny | sweaty | open | outstretched**

VERB + PALM **hold up, raise** *He held up a palm for silence.* **| spread** *He spread his palms in a gesture of openness.* **| press** *I pressed my palm to the wound to stop the bleeding.* **| slap** *She slapped her palm against the desk in anger.*

PALM + VERB **sweat | face** *Hold out your arms with the palms facing downwards.*

PALM + NOUN **reading | print**

PREP. **against your ~s** *The metal felt hot against my palms.* **| between your ~s** *He took her hand between his palms and squeezed it.* **| in your ~** *He showed me the coins in his palm.*

PHRASES **palm/palms up/upwards** *She held out her hand to me, palm up.*

2 **tree**

ADJ. **coconut, date, oil**

PALM + NOUN **tree | branch, frond, leaf | grove | oil**

pamphlet *noun*

ADJ. **political**

VERB + PAMPHLET **print, produce, publish, write | circulate, distribute**

PAMPHLET + VERB **be entitled sth**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *accusations that were made in the pamphlet*

pan *nou*n

ADJ. **chip, frying**

PHRASES **pots and pans** > See SAUCEPAN (for other collocates of **pan)**

pancake *noun*

ADJ. **savoury**

VERB + PANCAKE **make | toss**

pane *noun*

ADJ. **broken | missing** *The missing pane has been replaced.* **| glass | window**

VERB + PANE **break, shatter, smash | blow in/out** *The wind blew in a pane of their front window.* **| replace**

PREP. **against/to a/the ~** *Her face was pressed against the pane.* **| down a/the ~** *The rain ran down the window pane.* **| on a/the ~** *There was dirt on the pane.*

PHRASES **a pane of glass** *The burglars got in by smashing a pane of glass in a door.*

panel *noun*

1 **group of people**

ADJ. **distinguished** *a distinguished panel of academics* **| independent | international | advisory, interview, interviewing, judging, review, selection**

VERB + PANEL **convene, select, set up | chair**

PANEL + VERB **be drawn from sb/sth** *a panel of scientists drawn from universities*

PANEL + NOUN **member | interview | discussion | game** *The comedian will chair a new TV panel game.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *The head of department serves on the advisory panel.* **| ~ on** *an independent panel on takeovers and mergers*

PHRASES **a member of a panel, a panel of experts/judges** *The winners were chosen by a panel of judges.*

2 **part of a door, wall, etc.**

ADJ. **ceiling, door, wall | sliding**

VERB + PANEL **fit, insert, put in | remove, take out**

3 **section of vehicle body**

ADJ. **front, rear | nearside, offside | body** *My rear nearside body panel needed replacing after the accident.*

VERB + PANEL **beat**

PANEL + NOUN **beater, beating** *He works as a panel beater in a local garage.*

4 **surface containing controls**

ADJ. **control, display, instrument**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *A red light flashed on the control panel.*

pang *noun*

ADJ. **sharp | little | passing** *a passing pang of regret* **| sudden, unexpected | hunger | birth** *(figurative) the birth pangs of the new technology*

VERB + PANG **experience, feel, suffer** *He experienced a sudden pang of conscience.* **| cause, give sb** *The photograph gave her a pang of homesickness.*

PANG + VERB **shoot through sb** *A sharp pang of guilt shot through him.*

PREP. **with a ~** *With a pang she recalled the last time she had seen him.* **| ~ of** *She felt a little pang of jealousy.*

panic *noun*

ADJ. **blind, mad, sheer, total | mild, minor | momentary | growing, mounting, rising | sudden | last-minute** *There was a last-minute panic when nobody could find the tickets.* | **moral** *a moral panic over rising crime rates*

QUANT. **surge, wave** *I felt a surge of panic when I realized my mistake.*

VERB + PANIC **feel** *He felt panic rising within him.* | **get into, go into** *She went into a mad panic when she couldn't find the exit.* | **cause, create, spread | fill sb with, throw sb into** *The thought of having to be in charge threw him into a mild panic.*

PANIC + VERB **break out, spread (across/through, etc. sth), sweep over/through sth** *Panic swept through the crowd.* | **seize sb | grow, rise | subside | ensue** *In the ensuing panic, they lost each other.*

PANIC + NOUN **attack** *She still has panic attacks, two years after the accident.* | **button** *The shopkeeper pressed the panic button and the police arrived in minutes.* | **buying, selling** *Panic buying turned the petrol shortage into a crisis.*

PREP. **in (a) ~** *He jumped out of the car in a panic. People fled in panic.* | **with ~** *Her mind went blank with panic.* | **~ about** *panic about food contamination* | **~ among** *panic among the population* | **~ over** *The keys were lost during the panic over the fire alarm.*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of panic, in a state of panic, a look of panic** *A look of panic spread across the boy's face.* | **a moment of panic, a moment's panic**

pant *verb*

ADV. **breathlessly | heavily, loudly | slightly**

PREP. **for** *He was panting for breath.* **| with** *She was panting with the effort of carrying the suitcase.*

PHRASES **puff and pant** *Mason puffed and panted up the stairs.*

pantomime *noun*

ADJ. **Christmas**

PANTOMIME + NOUN **cow, dame, horse | season** > Note at PERFORMANCE(for verbs)

pants *noun*

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + PANTS **pull on, pull up | drop, pull down | wet** *He was so frightened that he wet his pants.*

PHRASES **bra and pants** > Special page at CLOTHES

paper *noun*

1 material

ADJ. **thick, thin | see-through, transparent | plain, unlined | lined | graph, squared | A3, A4, etc. | foolscap | blank** *I stared at the blank paper, not knowing how to start the letter.* **| printed** *The Post Office has a special rate for printed paper.* **| brown, coloured** *a brown paper parcel of books* **| greaseproof, waxed | glossy, shiny | scrap, waste** *I made some notes on a piece of scrap paper.* **| computer, typing | writing | blotting | tracing | wrapping | crepe | tissue | photographic | filter | kitchen | toilet | cigarette** *a packet of cigarette papers*

QUANT. **bit, piece, scrap, sheet, slip, strip** *I scribbled down his number on a scrap of paper.* **| roll** *a roll of kitchen paper* **| side** *The essay filled seven sides of A4 paper.*

VERB + PAPER **fold** *Fold the paper in half.* **| shred, tear | crumple (up), screw up** *I screwed up the paper and threw it in the bin.* **| recycle | wrap sth in**

PAPER + VERB **be strewn** *There was paper strewn all over the floor.*

PREP. **on ~** *I've had nothing on paper* (= in writing) *to say that I've been accepted.*

PHRASES **put pen to paper** *I've thought about what I'm going to write, but I haven't yet put pen to paper.* **| a waste of paper** *This report is a waste of paper.*

2 newspaper

ADJ. **daily, evening, morning, Sunday, weekly | today's, yesterday's | independent, left-wing, right-wing | local, national | broadsheet, quality | tabloid**

QUANT. **copy** *Have you got a copy of yesterday's paper?* **| edition** *today's edition of the paper*

VERB + PAPER **buy, get, take** *Do you take a daily paper?* **| flick through, read** *What paper do you usually read?* **| print, produce, publish | edit, write for/in | appear in | get into** *The story got into the papers.*

PAPER + VERB **come out** *The paper comes out every Saturday.*

PAPER + NOUN **shop | boy, girl | round**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I read about his arrest in the papers.* **| on a/the ~** *She got a job on the local paper.*

3 (usually papers) official document

ADJ. **commercial | necessary | official | identity | personal, private | ballot**

QUANT. **pile, sheaf**

VERB + PAPER **show** *Be prepared to show your identity papers at the border.*

4 exam

ADJ. **exam, examination, question, test | written** *I did well on the oral but not on the written paper.* **| English, geography, etc.**

VERB + PAPER **do, sit, take | set** *The exam papers are set by experienced teachers.* **| mark | turn over** *You may now turn over your papers.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the questions in the physics paper* **| on a/the ~** *You must not write on the question paper.*

5 piece of writing on a specialist subject

ADJ. **draft | consultation, consultative, discussion, position, working | research, scientific**

VERB + PAPER **deliver, give, present, put forward, read | draft, prepare, produce, write | issue, publish, release**

PAPER + VERB **consider sth, deal with sth, focus on/upon sth, look at sth** *The paper looks at the future of primary school education.* **| argue sth, propose sth | demonstrate sth | describe sth, outline sth, present sth | be called sth, be entitled sth**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Freud first mentioned this concept in his paper 'On Narcissism'.* **| ~ on** *a paper on the development of the novel*

paperback *noun*

ADJ. **mass-market** *the demand for mass-market paperbacks* **| original** *The book is to be published as an original paperback* (= it is not being published in hardback first).

VERB + PAPERBACK **read | produce, publish (sth as) | be out in, come out in** *The novel has just come out in paperback.*

PAPERBACK + VERB **come out** *The paperback came out in June.*

PAPERBACK + NOUN **book, edition, novel, version | original | fiction | rights, sales**

PREP. **in ~** *The book is now available in paperback.*

paperwork *noun*

ADJ. **routine | necessary**

VERB + PAPERWORK **deal with, do, get through, go through, work through** *I've got a lot of routine paperwork to get through.* **| involve** *The project involved an enormous amount of paperwork.*

PREP. **~ for** *Have you done all the necessary paperwork for the sale?*

PHRASES **a backlog/mountain/pile of paperwork**

parachute *noun*

VERB + PARACHUTE **pack**

PARACHUTE + VERB **open | fail to open**

PARACHUTE + NOUN **descent, drop, jump** *He made his first parachute jump at the age of seventy.* **| instructor**

PREP. **by ~** *Supplies were dropped by parachute.*

parade *noun*

ADJ. **grand | colourful | fashion | military, victory | identification, identity**

VERB + PARADE **have, hold, stage** *The police held an identity parade.* **| go on** *The battalion went on parade to welcome the new commander-in-chief.* **| inspect, review** *The president reviewed the military parade.*

PARADE + VERB **take place**

PARADE + NOUN **ground**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *Thousands of people were at the parade.* **| on ~** *The soldiers will be on parade tomorrow.*

paradise *noun*

1 **heaven**

VERB + PARADISE **go to** *They all expected to go to paradise.*

PREP. **in ~** *an angel in paradise*

2 **perfect place**

ADJ. **perfect, unspoilt | beautiful | lost** *the lost paradise of childhood* **| children's, walker's, etc. | earthly, island, tropical**

VERB + PARADISE **create** *She worked on the garden until she had created her own little paradise.* **| find** *They moved to the country hoping to find paradise.*

PARADISE + NOUN **island**

PREP. **in (a) ~** *We found ourselves in a tropical paradise.* **| ~ for** *The airport is a paradise for pickpockets.* **| ~ of** *a paradise of golden beaches*

PHRASES **a paradise on earth**

paradox *noun*

ADJ. **apparent | central | curious**

VERB + PARADOX **pose, present** *The facts pose something of a paradox.* **| explain, resolve**

PREP. **~ about** *The paradox about time is that it seems to go faster as we become older and less active.* **| ~ between** *the paradox between the real and the ideal* **| ~ in** *the paradox in the relationship between creativity and psychosis*

PHRASES **by a curious paradox** *By a curious paradox, the team became less motivated the more games it won.*

paradoxical *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound**

ADV. **distinctly, very | slightly, somewhat | seemingly** *trying to understand her seemingly paradoxical behaviour* **| inherently | curiously** *He found himself in a curiously paradoxical situation.*

paragraph *noun*

ADJ. **new | introductory, opening**

VERB + PARAGRAPH **begin, start** *Start each paragraph on a new line.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The identity of the murderer is revealed in the very last paragraph.* **| in accordance with/under ~** *(law) Cancellation charges will apply in accordance with paragraph 4 above.* **| ~ about** *a paragraph about the writer's reaction to his mother's death*

parallel *adj.*

VERBS **be, run**

ADV. **exactly | nearly | roughly**

PREP. **to** *The lane is roughly parallel to the main road.* **| with** *The road runs parallel with the sea.*

parallel *noun*

ADJ. **direct, exact | clear, close, obvious | interesting, striking**

VERB + PARALLEL **have** *This weather pattern of the southern hemisphere has no parallel in the north.* **| find, see | draw, make** *He drew an interesting parallel with religious practices in Japan.* **| provide**

PREP. **without ~** *a speed of development without parallel in post-war Europe* **| ~ between** *a parallel between economic and cultural advancement* **| ~ in** *We found a direct parallel in the attitudes of schoolchildren in other countries.* **| ~ to** *A close parallel to this behaviour is found in dolphins.* **| ~ with** *She saw an obvious parallel with her sister's predicament.*

paralyse *verb*

ADV. **completely, totally | partially, partly** *He was partially paralysed by the fall.* **| almost, virtually**

PHRASES **be paralysed from the chest/neck/waist down, be paralysed with fear, leave sb paralysed** *The accident left her paralysed.*

paralysis *noun*

1 **being unable to move your body or a part of it**

ADJ. **complete | partial | instant** *The snake's venom induces instant paralysis.* **| permanent | infantile**

VERB + PARALYSIS **be struck with | suffer from | cause, induce**

PARALYSIS + VERB **spread** *He had been crippled by a rare type of paralysis spreading from his ankle.*

2 **being unable to work in the normal way**

ADJ. **complete** *Strike leaders claimed ‘almost complete paralysis’ in the ports and mines.* **| emotional, political**

paranoia *noun*

ADJ. **increasing, mounting**

VERB + PARANOIA **suffer from | border on, verge on** *Her passion for cleanliness borders on paranoia.*

PARANOIA + VERB **afflict sb**

parasite *noun*

ADJ. **common | dangerous** *These flies carry a dangerous parasite.* **| external, internal | intestinal**

VERB + PARASITE **carry, have**

parcel *noun*

ADJ. **bulky | neat | brown-paper | gift-wrapped, tissue-wrapped, etc. | clothing, food**

VERB + PARCEL **post, send | get, receive | make sth (up) into, pack (up), wrap, wrap sth (up) in** *The waiter had our left-over food made up into a parcel to take home.* **| open, unpack, unwrap**

PARCEL + NOUN **bomb**

PREP. **in a/the ~ | ~ from, ~ to**

PHRASES **laden/loaded with parcels** *He came in laden with parcels for the children.*

pardon *noun*

ADJ. **full | partial | conditional | general | free | posthumous | presidential, royal**

VERB + PARDON **give sb, grant sb | offer sb** *The government offered a free pardon to the rebels.* **| buy, obtain, receive | ask (for), seek | refuse**

PREP. **~ for** *She asked for pardon for her crime.*

parent *noun*

ADJ. **lone, single | unmarried | widowed | divorced | absent | substitute, surrogate | elderly | prospective, would-be | new | biological, birth, natural, real | adoptive, foster, step- | good | proud** *They have just become the proud parents of a baby girl.* **| caring, devoted, fond, loving | doting, indulgent | over-protective | stern, strict | domineering | bad, inadequate | abusive | angry, anxious, distressed, heartbroken | working** *The government has promised a better deal for working parents.*

PARENT + NOUN **company** *The subsidiary eventually outgrew its parent company and took it over.*

PHRASES **lone/one/single-parent family**

parenthood *noun*

ADJ. **lone, single | responsible** *education about family planning and responsible parenthood*

PHRASES **preparation for parenthood**

park *noun*

ADJ. **local | city | public | country | national** *The mountain has been designated as a national park.* **| safari, wildlife | amusement, leisure, theme**

VERB + PARK **go to** *They go to the park most Sunday afternoons.* **| landscape, lay out** *a beautifully landscaped park*

PARK + NOUN **bench | ranger** *The lion was shot dead by a park ranger.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *We met at Hyde Park.* **| in a/the ~** *They went for a walk in the park.*

park *verb*

ADV. **carefully, neatly, well | badly | illegally | discreetly** *The police car was discreetly parked in the furthest corner of the courtyard.*

parking *noun*

ADJ. **convenient, easy | off-road, off-street, on-street, street, roadside | long-stay, short-stay | illegal | car**

PARKING + NOUN **area, facilities, lot | bay, place, space, spot** *a restaurant with ample parking space I spent ages looking for a parking place/space.* **| meter | fine, ticket | restrictions**

PREP. **~ for** *parking for 300 cars*

parody *noun*

1 **writing/speech/music**

ADJ. **brilliant, clever | cruel**

VERB + PARODY **compose, write**

PREP. **through ~** *He attacked her ideas through parody.* **| ~ of** *She has written a cruel parody of his book.* **| ~ on** *The show included a parody on current affairs programmes.*

2 **bad example**

ADJ. **grotesque**

PREP. **in a ~ of** *He sighed in a parody of deep emotion.* **| ~ of** *She has become a grotesque parody of her former elegant self.*

PHRASES **a parody of justice** *The trial was a parody of justice.*

parole *noun*

ADJ. **early**

VERB + PAROLE **be on | give sb, grant sb | get** *She's got (her) parole.* **| let sb out on, release sb on** *She was released on parole after serving just half of her sentence.* **| break** *He broke (his) parole.* **| be eligible for, be/come up for** *Her case comes up for parole in September.*

PAROLE + NOUN **board, system**

PREP. **on ~** *He committed a burglary while on parole.* **| with ~** *With parole, he could be out in two years.* **| without ~** *sentenced to life imprisonment without parole*

parsley *noun*

QUANT. **sprig**

VERB + PARSLEY **grow | chop | garnish sth with** > Special page at FOOD

part *noun*

1 **piece/area/period/division, etc. of sth**

ADJ. **big, good, greater, large, major, significant, substantial** *We spent a good part of the day rehearsing. The greater part of the building has been refurbished.* | **minor, small** | **equal** *Cut it into four equal parts.* | **important, main, principal** | **basic, central, essential, fundamental, indispensable, vital** | **integral, intrinsic** | **separate** | **inseparable** | **component, constituent** | **best** | **worst** *The worst part was having to wait three hours.* | **difficult, hard** *I gave up once I got to the hard part.* | **easy** | **early** *In the early part of his career he worked in India.* | **latter** *the latter part of the century* | **different, distinct, various** | **foreign** *travellers returning from foreign parts* | **separate** | **inseparable** | **component, constituent** *Break it down into its constituent parts.* | **private** (= sexual organs)

VERB + PART **constitute, fall into, form** *The book falls into three distinct parts.* | **break sth down into, divide sth into, split sth into**

PREP. **in ~** *Your salary depends in part on your qualifications. The film is good in parts. a serial in four parts* | **~ of** *Part of me wants to stay and part of me doesn't.*

PHRASES **the parts of the body**

2 **a piece of a machine**

ADJ. **spare** *Where can I get spare parts for my bike?*

3 **role in a play, film, etc.**

ADJ. **big, leading** | **bit, small, walk-on** | **speaking**

VERB + PART **have, play, take** | **learn** | **look** *He was a pirate in the school play and certainly looked the part.*

PREP. **in the ~** *He's very good in the part.* | **~ of** *She played the part of Juliet.*

4 **share in an activity, event, etc.**

ADJ. **big, leading, major** *Luck played a big part in it.* **| minor | central, significant, vital | active**

VERB + PART **have** *He had no part in the scam.* **| do, play, take** *She did her part in bringing them back together.*

PREP. **~ in** *They took little part in the discussion.*

partial *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **very | only | inevitably, necessarily** *The information we have is inevitably partial.*

participant *noun*

ADJ. **full | active | unwilling, willing** *She was an unwilling participant in his downfall.* **| key, leading, main, major | course | conference, seminar**

VERB + PARTICIPANT **attract** *Protests on 12 April attracted 100,000 participants.*

PARTICIPANT + VERB **attend sth**

PREP. **~ in** *an active participant in the discussion*

participate *verb*

ADV. **fully | actively**

VERB + PARTICIPATE **be able to, have the opportunity to | be allowed to, be encouraged to, be invited to** *Other countries were invited to participate in the project.* **| agree to | refuse to**

PREP. **in** *They will have the opportunity to participate actively in the decision-making process.*

participation *noun*

ADJ. **full | broader, greater, increased | limited | direct | active | political | popular, public | audience, employee, student, worker** *Some of the magic tricks called for audience participation.*

QUANT. **degree, extent, level** *We were very pleased with the high level of participation in the charity events.*

VERB + PARTICIPATION **encourage** *The scheme aims to encourage increased participation in sporting activities.* **| increase**

PARTICIPATION + VERB **increase**

PARTICIPATION + NOUN **rate**

PREP. **~ in** *direct participation by the masses in the running of the country*

parting *noun*

ADJ. final | sad

PARTING + NOUN gift | shot, words *As her parting shot she told me never to phone her again.*

PHRASES the moment of parting *She was already dreading the moment of parting.*

partition *noun*

ADJ. **movable | folding**

VERB + PARTITION **build, erect, put up | remove, take down**

PARTITION + VERB **divide sth (up), separate sth** *The cafe was divided up by glass partitions.*

PARTITION + NOUN **wall**

PREP. **~ between** *There were no partitions between the showers.*

partner *noun*

1 in a marriage/relationship

ADJ. **former | dominant** *She was the dominant partner in the relationship.* **| female, male | marriage, sexual** *the choice of marriage partner*

VERB + PARTNER **have**

2 in an activity

ADJ. **bridge, doubles, playing, tennis** *I need a doubles partner for the table tennis tournament.* **| dancing | sparring** *(figurative) The old political sparring partners are now firm friends.* **| drinking**

VERB + PARTNER **choose** *The teacher asked the students to choose a partner for the next activity.* **| change** *All change partners for the next dance!*

3 in business

ADJ. **full | equal | active, managing | sleeping | junior, senior | business**

VERB + PARTNER **make sb**

PREP. **~ in** *He has recently been made a junior partner in the family business.*

4 in international relations

ADJ. **biggest, main, principal | foreign | coalition, trading** *France's principal trading partners*

PREP. **~ in** *Britain's partner in the aeronautic project*

partnership *noun*

ADJ. **close | limited | effective, good, great, successful | working** *We are trying to develop a working partnership between local schools and industries.* **| unique | equal** *an equal partnership of men and women in government* **| international, multinational | business**

VERB + PARTNERSHIP **have | create, establish, form, set up (in) | enter into, go into** *The company has gone into partnership with Swiss Bank Corporation.* **| take sb into** *We took him into partnership in 2002.* **| work in** *We shall be working in close partnership with our Japanese clients.* **| break up**

PARTNERSHIP + NOUN **agreement, arrangement**

PREP. **in ~ with** *They are in partnership with Apex software.* **| ~ between** *a partnership between the university and local colleges* **| ~ in** *She has a partnership in the business.* **| ~ of** *a unique partnership of private companies and trade unions* **| ~ with** *a partnership with an American firm* > Note at ORGANIZATION

party *noun*

1 **political group**

ADJ. **political | centre, left-wing, right-wing | centrist, fascist, populist, progressive, radical, reactionary, revolutionary, social democratic, socialist | Communist, Conservative, Democratic, Labour, Liberal, Republican, etc. | opposition | parliamentary** *members of the parliamentary party* (= MPs, not ordinary party members) | **main** *both main political parties* | **majority, minority** *They are now the majority party in Parliament.* | **governing, ruling**

VERB + PARTY **establish, form, found, set up | dissolve, wind up** *The party was officially dissolved in 1927.* | **split** *a bitter dispute which finally split the party* | **be/become the leader of, lead | be/become a member of, belong to, join | be affiliated to, have links with** *He was accused of having strong links with the Communist Party.* | **leave, resign from** *She left the party in 2000.* | **expel sb from | vote for | elect, put in/into power, return to power** *The Labour Party was returned to power in 2001.*

PARTY + VERB **come to power, gain power, win (sth) | lose (sth), lose power** *The Labour party lost the vote on this important issue.* | **contest sth** *the parties contesting the elections*

PARTY + NOUN **conference, congress | activist, member, faithful** (= loyal members of the party) | **chairman, leader, leadership | line** *Most MPs will follow the party line* (= the official view of the party). | **politics**

PHRASES **the left/right wing of the party**

2 **social occasion**

ADJ. **cocktail, dinner, tea | birthday, Christmas, farewell, house-warming, leaving | garden, office, street | all-night | fancy-dress | surprise**

VERB + PARTY **give, have, hold, organize, throw** *On moving in they threw a huge house-warming party.* | **invite sb to | attend, go to | gatecrash | leave**

PARTY + VERB **go on** *There was a party going on next door.* | **be in full swing** (= to be very busy and noisy) *By now the party was in full swing.* **| break up** *The party broke up around midnight.*

PARTY + NOUN **guest | pooper** (also **party-pooper**; sb who does not want to join in the fun at a party)

PREP. **at a/the ~** *I was at a party in London that night.* **| ~ for** *I'm organizing a surprise party for my sister.*

3 **group of people working/doing sth together**

ADJ. **boarding, coach, landing, raiding, reading, rescue, search, stretcher, working** *It was time for us to join the coach party.*

PREP. **~ of** *She arrived with a party of helpers.*

4 **person in a legal case**

ADJ. **guilty, innocent | aggrieved, injured | interested** *First we must notify all the interested parties.* **| third** *You must sign the document in the presence of an independent third party* (= another person apart from the two main people involved)

VERB + PARTY **notify | be binding on/upon, bind** *This agreement shall be binding upon both parties.*

pass *noun*

1 **in sport**

ADJ. **good, perfect | careless, sloppy | long, short | back, cross-field, square** (in football) **| forward (in rugby)** *The referee disallowed the try for a forward pass.*

VERB + PASS **play** *Ziege played a pass behind the defence to Weiss.* **| get, pick up, receive | block, intercept**

PREP. **~ from** *Owen picked up a long pass from Beckham to score.* **| ~ to** *He played a careless back pass to the goalkeeper.*

2 **success in exam**

ADJ. **good | exam, examination, A Level, GCSE, etc.**

VERB + PASS **get, manage, obtain, scrape** *She barely scraped a pass in chemistry.*

PASS + NOUN **mark, rate** *The pass mark is 40%.* **| degree** *Applicants need a good degree pass.*

PREP. **~ at** *It's difficult to obtain a pass at A Level.* **| ~ in** *He should get a good pass in mathematics.*

3 **official piece of paper**

ADJ. **free | day, monthly, weekend, yearly | bus, rail, railway** *a monthly rail pass* **| security | boarding**

VERB + PASS **have | use | give sb, issue (sb with)** *The visitors were issued with day passes.* **| produce, show**

PREP. **on a ~** *soldiers on a weekend pass* **| ~ to** *We bought a two-day pass to Disneyland.*

4 **way through mountains**

ADJ. **high, low | narrow | mountain**

VERB + PASS **cross, take**

PASS + VERB **be blocked**

PREP. **over a/the ~** *struggling over the pass with their donkeys* **| through a/the ~** *building a road through the pass* **| ~ over** *We took the high pass over the ridge.*

PHRASES **the head/summit/top of the pass**

pass *verb*

1 of time

ADV. **quickly, soon** *The time passed quickly.* **| slowly | peacefully, uneventfully** *The days passed uneventfully.*

VERB + PASS **help (to)** *We played games to help pass the time.*

2 law

ADV. **unanimously**

PREP. **by … to …** *The bill was passed by 360 votes to 280.*

4 happen

ADV. **peacefully | off** *The demonstration passed off peacefully.*

VERB + PASS **come to** *(formal or old-fashioned) I wondered how it came to pass that a thinking man bore the prejudices of his unthinking parents.* **| let sth** *I don't like it, but I'll let it pass* (= will not object).

PREP. **between** *They'll never be friends again after all that has passed between them.*

PHRASES **pass unnoticed** *In the confusion her departure passed unnoticed.*

passage *noun*

1 **narrow way through**

ADJ. **long, short | narrow, small | wide | twisting, winding | connecting, side | subterranean, underground | dark, secret**

VERB + PASSAGE **clear** *to clear a passage for ships through the ice* | **force** *He forced a passage for the singer through the crowd.*

PREP. **along/down/through a/the~** *We ran through the dark passage.* | **in/into a/the ~** *Someone was waiting outside in the passage.* | **~ between** *the passage between the cottage and the house* | **~ from** *There is an underground passage from the church to the house.* | **~ through** *a narrow passage through the bushes* | **~ to**

PHRASES **the end of a passage** *There was a door at the end of the passage.* | **a maze of passages** *the maze of secret passages which wound their way under the building*

2 **tube in the body**

ADJ. **nasal | back** (= rectum)

VERB + PASSAGE **block, obstruct | clear**

3 **extract from a book/speech**

ADJ. **lengthy, long | short | opening | famous, well-known | descriptive, purple**

VERB + PASSAGE **quote, read**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There's a lot of slang in this passage.* | **~ from** *a passage from the Bible*

4 **extract from a piece of music**

ADJ. **lengthy, long | short | opening | fast, slow | loud | quiet, soft | solo**

VERB + PASSAGE **play, quote** *In the 15th symphony he quotes a passage from Rossini's 'William Tell' overture.*

PREP. **in a/the ~ | ~ from**

5 **movement/progress**

ADJ. **rapid, speedy | slow | safe | smooth | free** *The UN Security Council has demanded free passage for families fleeing from the fighting.*

VERB + PASSAGE **deny sb, refuse sb**

PREP. **~ across** *the slow passage of a snail across the veranda* **| ~ down** *Steps cut in the hillside give walkers an easy passage down the mountain.* **| ~ from … to …** *We are not aware of our passage from consciousness to sleep.* **| ~ into** *Portugal's passage into the next round of the tournament* **| ~ out of** *a safe passage out of the war zone* **| ~ over** *State-of-the-art suspension guarantees a smooth passage over the bumpiest road.* **| ~ through** *They denied him passage through the territory.*

PHRASES **the passage of time** *The problems only got worse with the passage of time.* **| a rite of passage** *Marriage is seen as a rite of passage.*

6 **journey by ship**

ADJ. **long, short | rough, stormy | homeward, outward | sea**

VERB + PASSAGE **have | book | work** *He worked his passage* (= he worked to pay for his journey) *to Australia.*

PREP. **during a/the ~** *During the passage, she taught herself basic Arabic.* **| on sb's/the ~** *We met him on our outward passage.* **| ~ across** *a rough passage across the Atlantic* **| ~ to** *We had a stormy passage to India.*

7 **of a bill through Parliament**

ADJ. **smooth | speedy**

VERB + PASSAGE **begin, complete** *The bill will complete its passage in November.*

PREP. **during the ~** *There was much controversy during the passage of the bill.* **| ~ through** *a strategy to ensure the bill's smooth passage through Parliament*

passenger *noun*

ADJ. **business-class, economy-class, first-class, second-class, standard-class | front-seat, rear-seat | airline, bus, rail | pillion** (= riding on the back of a motorcycle) **| fellow** *I soon got talking to my fellow passengers.*

VERB + PASSENGER **carry** *Last year the airline carried 4.6 million passengers.* **| let on, pick up, take on** *A taxi was picking up a passenger outside the hotel.* **| drop off, let off/out** *The bus stopped to let its passengers off.*

PASSENGER + VERB **wait** *passengers waiting to board the plane* **| be aboard (sth), go in/on sth, travel in/on sth** *passengers travelling on the Orient Express* **| board (sth), embark (on sth), get on (sth), go aboard (sth) | disembark, get off/out | be stranded** *Thousands of passengers were stranded last night at Heathrow airport.*

PASSENGER + NOUN **compartment | door | seat, side** *There is no air bag on the passenger side.* **| comfort, safety | aircraft, ferry, train | flight, services | list**

PREP. **~ for** *Will all passengers for Frankfurt please go to Gate 21.* **| ~ in** *the passengers in her car* **| ~ on** *all the passengers on the ferry*

passing *noun*

VERB + PASSING **mourn** *Few will mourn his passing.* **|** **mark** *Her death marks the passing of an era.*

PHRASES **the passing of time** *The colour of the wood darkens with the passing of time.*

passion *noun*

1 **strong sexual love/attraction**

ADJ. **grand, great** *She didn't believe in grand passion or love at first sight. She was his first great passion.* **| all-consuming, blind, consuming, fierce, fiery, intense | tender | animal, romantic, sexual**

QUANT. **surge, wave**

VERB + PASSION **arouse, awaken** *No one had ever aroused his passion as much as Sandra.* **| be filled with, feel** *the great passion he felt for her*

PASSION + VERB **cool, wane**

PREP. **with ~** *They kissed with passion.* **| ~ between** *The passion between them had cooled.* **| ~ for** *his all-consuming passion for her*

PHRASES **a night of passion** *They spent a night of passion in a hotel.* **| the object of sb's passion** *the young girl who was the object of his passion*

2 **strong feeling**

ADJ. **considerable, great, high, real** *a woman of great passion There were moments of high passion in the game.*

VERB + PASSION **have** *A writer should have passion.* **| arouse, rouse** *This issue always arouses passion.*

PREP. **with ~** *He argued his case with great passion.*

PHRASES **a crime of passion** *She killed her husband's lover in a crime of passion.* **| full of passion** *a speech full of passion*

3 **strong liking for/interest in sth**

ADJ. **all-consuming, consuming, great, real | abiding, genuine, lifelong** *his lifelong passion for aeroplanes*

VERB + PASSION **develop, have | share** *They shared a passion for food.* **| indulge** *She had very little time to indulge her passion for painting.*

PREP. **~ for** *He developed a real passion for acting.*

passive *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | became | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very | purely | fairly, rather, relatively, somewhat | essentially** *The heroine plays an essentially passive role in the drama.*

passport *noun*

ADJ. **valid | false, forged | EU, Mexican, French, etc. | visitor's**

VERB + PASSPORT **apply for | renew | get, obtain | be in possession of, carry, have, hold, travel on** *The police think the smugglers are travelling on Irish passports.* **| give sb, issue sb (with) | hand sb, produce, show (sb)** *You have to show your passport at the border.* **| surrender** *The Embassy made him surrender his passport.* **| ask for | check | stamp | hand back/over** *He examined my face carefully before handing back my passport.* **| confiscate, seize**

PASSPORT + VERB **be valid | expire**

PASSPORT + NOUN **number, photo, photograph | holder | Agency, Office | control** *We had to queue for ages at passport control.*

PREP. **~ into** *(figurative) The gold medal is his passport into professional boxing.* **| ~ to** *(figurative) Good qualifications are a passport to success.*

PHRASES **a full British/French, etc. passport** (= one showing that sb has all the rights of British/French, etc. citizenship)

password *noun*

ADJ. correct, valid | invalid | user *Please supply a valid user password.*

VERB + PASSWORD know | give *You must give the password before they'll let you in.* **| enter, provide, supply, type in | change**

PHRASES be password protected *Your mailbox can be password protected to ensure security.*

past *noun*

1 time before the present

ADJ. **immediate, recent | ancient, (dim and) distant, remote** *Many modern festivals can be traced back to an ancient past. It all happened in the distant past.*

VERB + PAST **cling to, live in** *We're going to have to stop living in the past and invest in new technology if the firm is to survive.* **| belong in/to** *Those memories belong to the past and I don't want to think about them.*

PREP. **from the ~** *Memories from the past came flooding back to him.* **| in the ~** *I admit that I have made mistakes in the past.* **| into the ~** *events stretching back many years into the past* **| of the ~** *great artists of the past*

PHRASES **be all in the past** *Don't worry about it?it's all in the past now.* **| a break with the past** *In an effort to make a complete break with the past, she sold everything and went abroad.* **| a glimpse of the past** *The uncovering of the buried town gives us a unique glimpse of the past.* **| a link with the past** *The old market is a living link with the past, unchanged for hundreds of years.* **| nostalgia for the past, a thing of the past** *a new device that makes such problems a thing of the past*

2 sb/sth's history

ADJ. **historic, historical | colourful, rich | chequered, murky, sordid | criminal | glorious, illustrious** *Few remnants remain of the city's glorious past.* **| cultural, political | ancestral, evolutionary | imperial, industrial**

VERB + PAST **reflect on/upon | recapture** *trying in vain to recapture his past* **| erase, escape from, put behind you, wipe out** *Political parties cannot escape from their pasts any more than individuals can. The counselling helped Dan to put the past behind him.*

PREP. **from your ~** *ghosts from his past* **| in your ~** *at some time in her past*

pasta *nou*n

ADJ. **fresh | dried | egg, wholemeal**

VERB + PASTA **cook | drain, strain**

PASTA + NOUN **bows, shapes, shells, etc. | sauce | dish, salad** > Special page at FOOD

paste *noun*

ADJ. **firm, stiff, thick | lumpy, smooth | wallpaper | curry, fish, tomato, etc.**

VERB + PASTE **make (up), mix (up), mix sth into/to** *Mix the sugar mixture to a smooth paste.* **| form** *Mix the flour with enough water to form a thick paste.* **| apply, put on** *Apply the wallpaper paste with a roller.*

pastime *noun*

ADJ. **enjoyable, rewarding | favourite, popular | dangerous | expensive | national** *Eating out is the national pastime in France.*

VERB + PASTIME **enjoy, indulge in, pursue**

PREP. **~ among** *Fighting is a popular pastime among some of the town's boys.* **| ~ for** *Cycling is an enjoyable pastime for people of all ages.*

pastry *noun*

ADJ. **crisp, light** *Bake until the pastry is crisp and golden.* **| soggy | golden | ready-made | sweet | choux, filo, flaky, puff, shortcrust**

VERB + PASTRY **make | cut, knead, roll out** *Cut the filo pastry into 10 cm strips.* **| line sth with** *Line the tin with the pastry.* **| brush** *Brush the pastry with a little water.* **| bake/wrap sth in** *prawns wrapped in filo pastry*

PASTRY + NOUN **base, case, parcel | board, cutter | chef**

pat *noun*

ADJ. **affectionate, friendly | reassuring**

VERB + PAT **give sb/sth** *He gave the dog a pat.*

PREP. **~ on** *He gave her a reassuring pat on the shoulder.*

pat *verb*

ADV. **gently, lightly | affectionately**

PREP. **on** *He patted her gently on the shoulder.*

patch *noun*

1 material over a hole

VERB + PATCH **have** *Her trousers have patches all over them.* **| sew on**

PREP. **~ on** *dancers with patches on their costumes*

2 part of a surface that is different

ADJ. **irregular | clear, coloured, dark | damp, wet | icy** *icy patches on the roads* **| bald** *He has a small bald patch on the crown of his head.* **| rough, sore**

PREP. **in ~es** *The velvet curtains were faded in patches.* **| ~ of** *There were some patches of clear blue sky.* **| ~ on** *A large damp patch had appeared on the ceiling.*

PHRASES **a patch of colour** *flowers providing little bright patches of colour around the garden*

3 piece of land

ADJ. **isolated** *an isolated patch of forest* **| cabbage, potato, vegetable**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *working in his vegetable patch* **| on a/the ~** *located on a small patch of flat ground*

PHRASES **a patch of grass/ground** *We found a nice patch of grass to sit on.*

4 period of time

ADJ. **bad, difficult, rocky, rough, sticky | purple** *The team has hit a purple patch, with nine wins from their last ten games.*

VERB + PATCH **go through, have, hit** *Their business hit a sticky patch last year.*

PREP. **~ of** *going through a patch of poor health*

patchy *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **decidedly, extremely, very** *The local provision of facilities is decidedly patchy.* **| a bit, a little, rather** *Attendance at these matches has been rather patchy recently.*

patent *noun*

VERB + PATENT **apply for, file** *In 1843 Bain filed a patent for his fax machine.* **| get, obtain, take out | protect sth by** *Genetically engineered plants can be protected by patent.* **| grant (sb), issue | refuse** *A patent will be refused if details of the item have already been released to the public.* **| have, hold | infringe**

PATENT + NOUN **application | protection | law** *a leading authority on patent law* **| Office**

PREP. **~ for** *In 1995 he was granted a patent for his invention.* **| ~ on** *Edison took out a patent on the light bulb.*

PHRASES **patent pending** (= waiting to be issued) *The item is Patent Pending No. 912057.*

path *noun*

1 way across land

ADJ. **long | narrow | steep | winding | cliff, coast, coastal, forest, garden, woodland | pedestrian, public | cycle | bridle**

VERB + PATH **follow, go along/down/up, take** *Follow this path for about 100 metres, and it's on your right.* **| climb | keep on/to, stay on | leave, stray off | clear, make** *A path was cleared through the jungle.*

PATH + VERB **go, run** *That path goes down to the sea.* **| descend | follow sth** *The path follows the stream for quite a way.* **| branch off, leave sth** *The path left the river bank and wound its way into the woods.* **| divide, fork | go to sth, lead (to) sth** *Where does this path lead?* **| bear left/right | wind, zig-zag** *Then the path zig-zags steeply uphill for a while.* **| be marked (sth), be signposted (sth)** *The path is clearly marked.* **| narrow, widen**

PREP. **along/down/up a/the ~** *children running along the path* **| on a/the ~** *I think we're on the path we used yesterday.* **| ~ along/beside/by** *the path along the canal* **| ~ for** *a path for cyclists* **| ~ from** *the path from the hotel to the beach* **| ~ through** *I took the path through the park.* **| ~ to**

2 line of movement

ADJ. **correct | flight** *The pilot was instructed to change his flight path.*

VERB + PATH **steer** *He steered a path through the crowd.* **| trace** *Scientists can trace the path of the tornado.* **| block, stand in** *You're standing in my path!*

PREP. **across sth's ~** *The car pulled right across the path of another vehicle.* **| in/into the sth's ~** *She stepped into the path of an oncoming lorry.* **| out of sth's ~** *I managed to jump out of the path of the bike just in time.* **| ~ through** *Footsteps had scored a diagonal path through the snow.* **| ~ to** *He moved quickly to block her path to the door.*

PHRASES **everything in sb/sth's path** *The tornado destroyed everything in its path.*

3 **way of achieving sth**

ADJ. **well-trodden, well-worn** *Her education followed the usual well-worn path of rich youngsters in the 1930s.* **| chosen | career**

VERB + PATH **choose, find** *Everyone has to find their own path in life.* **| follow, pursue, tread | deviate from**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *His feet were now firmly on the path to success.* **| ~ of** *The path of true love is never easy.* **| ~ to** *the path to happiness*

PHRASES **obstacles in sb/sth's path**

pathologist *noun*

ADJ. **consultant | forensic | independent | Home Office, police**

PATHOLOGIST + VERB **examine sth | confirm sth** *The police pathologist examined the body and confirmed that death was due to poisoning.*

PHRASES **pathologist's report**

patience *noun*

ADJ. **endless, great, infinite**

VERB + PATIENCE **exercise, have, show** *They thanked him for showing so much patience.* **| lack | be out of, lose, run out of** *It is quite clear that they are out of patience with me. We eventually ran out of patience with his childish behaviour.* **| keep** *I find it hard to keep my patience with them.* **| require, take** *Above all, fishing requires great patience.* **| exhaust, stretch, tax, test, try** *The children were beginning to try my patience.*

PATIENCE + VERB **be exhausted, run out, snap, wear thin** *Molly could see Mr Kirkham's patience was running out, so she shut up. Her patience snapped and she walked out.* **| be rewarded** *Our patience was finally rewarded and we got the band's autographs.*

PREP. **with ~** *She listened with infinite patience to his excuses.* **| ~ for** *He has little patience for people who don't work.* **| ~ with** *The fans were losing patience with the team.*

PHRASES **the patience of a saint** *These endless meetings are enough to tax the patience of a saint.*

patient *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound | remain**

ADV. **extremely, incredibly, very | endlessly**

PREP. **about** *She's been extremely patient about it all.* **| with** *He was endlessly patient with the children.*

patient *noun*

ADJ. **Aids, cancer, diabetic, heart, etc. | mental, mentally-ill, psychiatric | seriously-ill, terminally-ill | hospital | long-stay | private** *He only takes private patients.* **| elderly, older | adult, child**

VERB + PATIENT **examine, see, treat** *A GP sees an average of 35 patients every day.* **| admit** *The patient was admitted to hospital yesterday.* **| discharge** *patients waiting to be discharged from hospital* **| transfer**

PATIENT + VERB **develop sth, have sth, suffer from sth** *The patient has a severe mental condition.* **| respond (to sth)** *These patients are responding well to the new drug.* **| improve**

PATIENT + NOUN **care**

PREP. **~ with** *patients with liver disease*

patriotic *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **fiercely, intensely, strongly, very | quite | unashamedly** *The party framed its message in unashamedly patriotic language.*

patrol *noun*

ADJ. **routine | special | armed | foot** *Every police car and foot patrol in the area is on full alert.* | **dawn, night | air, army, military, naval, police, security | enemy | border, shore | traffic** *helicopters used for traffic patrols*

VERB + PATROL **carry out, fly, go on** *The Italians flew regular patrols over the desert.* **| maintain** *Britain can maintain a continuous patrol of the seas with only three submarines.* **| send out** *They sent out four-man patrols to scout the area.*

PATROL + NOUN **boat, car, vehicle | duty**

PREP. **(out) on ~** *police officers on patrol*

patron *noun*

ADJ. **official** *the official patron of the college* **| influential, powerful | generous | wealthy**

PHRASES **a patron of the arts** *The BBC is a major patron of the arts.*

patronizing *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound | become | find sb/sth** *I found his tone rather patronizing.*

ADV. **extremely, very | almost | mildly, rather, slightly, somewhat | unduly**

PREP. **towards** *He's always very patronizing towards my mother.*

patter *verb*

ADV. **gently, lightly, softly | down** *The rain pattered down softly.*

PREP. **across** *Footsteps pattered across the floor.* **| against, along** *The child's feet pattered along the landing.* **| on** *Rain pattered lightly on the window.*

pattern *noun*

1 **arrangement of lines, shapes, etc.**

ADJ. **intricate | geometric | floral**

VERB + PATTERN **have** *The jumper has a geometric pattern on it.* **| design, make, print, produce, weave**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He had arranged the glasses in a pattern on the table.* **| ~ on** *the pattern on the carpet*

2 **usual manner**

ADJ. **basic, existing, familiar, normal, predictable, regular, set, traditional** *There is no set pattern for these meetings.* **| changing, ever-changing | complex | main | overall** *The overall pattern of our life changes little.* **| behaviour | employment | weather**

VERB + PATTERN **establish, set | follow** *Their actions follow a very predictable pattern.* **| fall into, fit into** *ideas that do not fit neatly into his patterns of thought* **| show** *67% of patients showed a similar pattern of improvement.*

PATTERN + VERB **develop, emerge** *Similar patterns are emerging all over Eastern Europe.* **| change**

PREP. **~ for** *the normal pattern for a boy/girl relationship* **| ~ in** *the main patterns in English spelling* **| ~ of** *patterns of behaviour*

patterned *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **heavily, highly, richly** *a highly patterned fabric* **| attractively, beautifully, prettily | boldly, brightly, brilliantly, strikingly | delicately, intricately**

PREP. **with** *patterned with flowers*

pause *noun*

ADJ. **brief, momentary, short, slight, small | long, prolonged | frequent | awkward | pregnant**

VERB + PAUSE **take** *Shall we take a pause here?*

PAUSE + VERB **follow** *In the pause that followed, I noticed that he was shaking.*

PAUSE + NOUN **button (on a video recorder, etc.)**

PREP. **after a/the ~** *'I don't know,' he said after a long pause.* **| in a/the ~** *Everyone nodded in agreement in the pauses.* **| with a/ the ~** *He read very slowly and with frequent pauses.* **| without a/the ~** *She read the whole text without a pause.* **| ~ before** *There was a long pause before he spoke again.* **| ~ between** *in the pauses between his jokes* **| ~ for** *a pause for breath* **| ~ in** *during a pause in the conversation*

pause *verb*

ADV. **briefly, (for) a moment, (for) an instant, momentarily** *She paused a moment and then walked away.* **| barely, hardly** *He spoke for two hours and barely paused for breath.* **| deliberately** *She paused deliberately, her eyes holding his.* **| dramatically, impressively, meaningfully, significantly | reflectively, thoughtfully | irresolutely**

PHRASES **pause for breath/thought, pause only (long enough) to do sth** *Pausing only to put out her cigarette, she left the room.* **| pause to consider/look/reflect/think** *Just pause to think before giving me your answer.* **| without pausing** *Without pausing to knock, she opened the door.*

pavement *noun*

ADJ. **wide | narrow | hard** *She had sore feet from walking on hard pavements all day.* **| broken, uneven | crowded | empty**

VERB + PAVEMENT **step off, step onto | keep to | mount** *The car mounted the pavement and crashed into a lamp post.*

PAVEMENT + NOUN **cafe, table, terrace**

PREP. **along the ~, down the ~, on the ~** *There was a car parked on the pavement and we couldn't get by.* **| up the ~**

PHRASES **the edge of the pavement**

pay *noun*

ADJ. **monthly, weekly | full, half** *He has taken leave on half pay.* **| high | low, poor** *workers on low pay* **| equal** *equal pay for men and women* **| basic | gross | take-home** *the average take-home pay of a manual worker* **| holiday | maternity | overtime | redundancy, severance | unemployment | sick, sickness | back** *The workers are demanding their back pay.* **| merit, performance, performance-related | profit-related**

QUANT. **level, rate** *The job offers good rates of pay and excellent conditions.*

VERB + PAY **get | give sb**

PAY + NOUN **day | cheque, packet** *the money in my weekly pay packet* **| slip | increase, rise | cut | freeze | claim, demand | bargaining, negotiations | agreement, award, deal, offer, settlement | dispute, strike | levels, rates** *industrial unrest over pay levels in the public sector* **| scale, structure** *He's at the top of his company's pay scale.*

PREP. **on … ~** *Women are eligible for 18 weeks maternity leave on full pay.* **| with ~** *holidays with pay* **| without ~** *He has been suspended without pay.*

PHRASES **a cut/an increase/a reduction in pay**

pay *verb*

ADV. **handsomely, well** *She pays her workers very well.* **| gladly** *I would gladly pay for the extra security such a scheme would bring.* **| up** *I had a hard time getting him to pay up.*

VERB + PAY **have to, must | be able/unable to, can/can't, can/can't afford to** *help for those genuinely unable to pay Protesters against the tax carried banners reading 'Can't pay! Won't pay!'* **| expect (sb) to** *You can expect to pay upwards of £200 a night at this exclusive hotel.* **| be liable to** *It is for the courts to decide who is liable to pay damages.* **| be ordered to, be required to** *The company was ordered to pay the five workers £5,000 in compensation each.* **| agree to, be prepared to, be willing to, offer to, promise to | fail to, neglect to** *He was made bankrupt for failing to pay debts totalling over £2 million.* **| refuse to | help (to)** *The revenue will be used to help pay for environmental improvements.* **| get sb to, make sb** *If Mac had killed Caroline, then he was going to make him pay the price.* **| let sb** *She wouldn't let me pay for my ticket.*

PREP. **for** *How much did you pay for your new car?* **| to** *We pay £200 a week to our landlord.*

PHRASES **ability to pay** *Taxation should be based on ability to pay.*

payable *adj.*

VERBS **be | become** *the date on which the rent becomes payable* **| make sth** *Cheques should be made payable to Brighton Borough Council.*

ADV. **immediately** *This amount is payable immediately.*

PREP. **by** *the costs payable by a client* **| on** *No tax is payable on these earnings.* **| to** *An initial fee is payable to the franchiser.*

payment *noun*

1 **paying/being paid**

ADJ. **immediate, prompt | late** *penalties for late payment of tax* **| early | full, part** *I enclose £65.20, in full payment of the bill.*

VERB + PAYMENT **make** *How do you want to make payment?by cheque or in cash?* **| arrange for | accept, take** *Do you accept payment by credit card?* **| get, receive | stop, suspend, withhold** *I have authorized the bank to stop payment of the cheque.* **| refuse sb | defer, delay** *We may have to defer payment for a week.* **| demand**

PAYMENT + VERB **be due**

PREP. **in ~** *She wrote out a cheque in payment of the fees.* **| on ~ of** *He was released on payment of the ransom.* **| ~ for** *payment for work done* **| ~ from, ~ to** *payment to the company from its customers*

PHRASES **a method of payment, payment in advance** *The hostel requires full payment in advance.*

2 **amount of money paid**

ADJ. **annual, monthly, etc. | regular | one-off, single** *All families of the crash victims will receive a one-off payment of £100,000.* **| cash, lump sum | token | generous | down, initial | additional, further, subsequent | interim, transitional | final | credit card | benefit, compensation, interest, maintenance, mortgage, rent, tax**

VERB + PAYMENT **keep up, meet** *My client was unable to meet her rent payments.* **| increase, reduce | collect** *It was my job to collect payment for the trip.*

PREP. **in ~s** *an extra $9 million in interest payments* **| ~ for** *a generous payment for his services* **| ~ from** *payments to the landlord from his tenants* **| ~ to**

PHRASES **the balance of payments** *measures designed to reduce the balance of payments deficit*

pea *nou*n

ADJ. **dried, fresh, frozen, tinned | green | mushy | split**

VERB + PEA **eat, have | shell | cook**

PEA + NOUN **soup** > Special page at FOOD

peace *noun*

1 **not war**

ADJ. **lasting, permanent | fragile, uneasy | relative** *The country is in a state of relative peace after ten years of fighting.* | **world** *obstacles in the way of world peace*

VERB + PEACE **bring about, establish, make | keep** *UN troops are trying to keep the peace in the region.*

PEACE + VERB **come | prevail, reign** *An uneasy peace prevailed in the first days of the ceasefire.*

PEACE + NOUN **conference, congress, negotiations, process, talks** *This must not be allowed to hold up the peace process.* | **efforts, initiative | formula, plan, proposal | accord, agreement, deal, pact, settlement, treaty | broker, envoy | mission** *The president is visiting the country on a peace mission.* | **activist, campaigner, protester | group, movement | rally**

PREP. **at ~ (with)** *Although the two countries were officially at peace, fighting continued.* | **~ between** *peace between the warring factions in the area* | **~ with** *England finally made peace with France.*

2 **state of being calm**

ADJ. **inner | perfect**

VERB + PEACE **find, seek** *She finally found inner peace and happiness.* | **disturb, shatter** *The peace of the afternoon was suddenly shattered by a police siren.* | **leave sb in** *Go away and leave me in peace!*

PEACE + VERB **reign** *She stopped shouting, and peace reigned supreme once again.* | **descend on sth, settle over sth** *Peace descended once more on the little town.*

PREP. **at ~** *Her father is at peace* (= dead) *now.* | **at ~ with** *For the first time in months, she felt calm and at peace with the world.* | **in ~** *to live in peace and harmony*

PHRASES **peace and quiet/tranquillity** *The island is a haven of peace and tranquillity.* | **peace of mind** *The computer comes with a three-year guarantee for peace of mind.*

peaceful *adj.*

1 **without war/violence**

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very | wholly** *The aims of the organization are wholly peaceful.* **| largely | comparatively, fairly, quite, reasonably, relatively**

2 **quiet and calm**

VERBS **be, feel, look | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very | utterly | comparatively, fairly, quite, relatively | blissfully, delightfully, serenely** *The time without her in the house had been blissfully peaceful.*

peak *noun*

1 **mountain top**

ADJ. **high | jagged, rocky | snow-capped, snow-covered | distant | mountain**

VERB + PEAK **climb, conquer, scale**

PEAK + VERB **rise, tower** *We looked up at the rocky peaks towering above us.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *climbers on the distant mountain peaks*

2 **highest level, rate, etc.**

ADJ. **all-time** *The share index rose to a new all-time peak of 2732.* **| summer, winter, etc.** *The influx of tourists has reached its summer peak.*

VERB + PEAK **rise to/towards** *Production is rising back towards its 1999 peak.* **| hit, reach | fall below/from, pass | be past** *Her performance is just past its peak.*

PEAK + NOUN **hours, period, season, time, year | demand** *at times of peak demand* **| rate** *peak-rate phone calls* **| level | efficiency, performance** *The engine is tuned to peak efficiency.* **| fitness, form**

PREP. **at a/the/your ~** *The crisis was now at its peak. At his peak he was the best player in the world.* **| ~ of** *She is at the peak of her popularity. The party's numbers reached a peak of 40,000 in 2001.*

PHRASES **in peak condition** *You want your hair to look in peak condition.* **| peaks and troughs** *Economic life moves in cycles of peaks and troughs.*

peal *noun*

1 **loud sound**

ADJ. **loud**

VERB + PEAL **burst into, give, let out** *He burst into peals of laughter. She let out a peal of laughter.* **| hear**

PEAL + VERB **ring out**

PREP. **with a ~** *The bishop was welcomed to the church with a peal of bells.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **a peal of bells/laughter/thunder** > Note at SOUND

2 **loud ringing sound of a bell**

ADJ. **loud**

VERB + PEAL **ring (out)** *The bells of the cathedral rang out their loud peal.*

PEAL + VERB **ring out**

PHRASES **a peal of bells**

peculiar *adj.*

1 **odd/strange**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste | become | find sb/sth, regard sb/sth as, think sb/sth** *I find her attitude a bit peculiar, to say the least.*

ADV. **most, very** *He is a most peculiar man!* **| a bit, a little, quite, rather** *The meat tasted rather peculiar.*

2 **only belonging to a particular person/place**

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **by no means** *These problems are by no means peculiar to this country.*

PREP. **to** *the smell that is peculiar to hospitals*

peculiarity *noun*

ADJ. **physical | individual | local**

VERB + PECULIARITY **have** *The area has a few local peculiarities.*

PREP. **~ about** *I noticed a certain peculiarity about his appearance.*

pedal *noun*

ADJ. **accelerator, brake, clutch | foot** *To stop the machine push the foot pedal.* **| bicycle | organ, piano | wah/wah-wah** *Some guitar players tend to overuse the wah-wah pedal.*

VERB + PEDAL **press, push, put your foot on, step on, use, work** *Her foot was working the pedal of the sewing machine.* **| release, take your foot off**

PEDAL + VERB **control sth, operate sth**

PEDAL + NOUN **boat, car, cycle | bin**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *with one foot on the pedal*

pedal *verb*

ADV. **fast, furiously, hard, like mad, madly** *He pedalled furiously up the hill.* **| slowly | away** *She pedalled away as fast as she could.*

PREP. **along, down, up** *He pedalled along the lane and up the hill.*

pedigree *noun*

ADJ. **long** *Hereford cattle have a long pedigree.* **| distinguished, illustrious, impeccable, impressive**

VERB + PEDIGREE **prove, show** *The champions really showed their pedigree today.*

PEDIGREE + VERB **stretch back** *These trees have pedigrees stretching back thousands of years.*

PEDIGREE + NOUN **cat, dog, etc. | breed**

pee *noun*

VERB + PEE **do, have, take** *I'm going to have a pee.* **| be bursting for, be desperate for, need, want** *I need a pee really badly.* **| go for**

peep *noun*

ADJ. **little, quick**

VERB + PEEP **have, take | get**

PREP. **~ at** *I noticed him take a little peep at his watch.* **| ~ behind** *The film gives us a peep behind the curtain at a Broadway musical.* **| ~ into** *a peep into the private life of a world leader* **| ~ through** *I took a peep through the keyhole.*

peep *verb*

ADV. **cautiously | out** *He peeped out cautiously from behind the door.*

PREP. **at** *She was tempted to peep at the letter.* **| through** *The child peeped through a crack in the door.*

peer *noun*

1 person of the same age/status

PEER + NOUN **group** *She was rejected by her peer group.* **| pressure** *Children often take up smoking because of peer pressure.*

PREP. **among sb's ~s** *They adopt behaviour that is more socially acceptable among their peers.*

2 person of noble rank

ADJ. **Conservative, Labour, etc. | hereditary | life** *The Act made it possible for a woman to be created a life peer.*

PHRASES **a peer of the realm** > Note at PEER

peer *verb*

ADV. **closely, intently | anxiously, cautiously, nervously | curiously | short-sightedly** *peering short-sightedly at the book* **| around/round, down, in, inside, out, up, upwards** *A face was peering down at him.*

VERB + PEER **try to**

PREP. **around/round, at** *His pale blue eyes peered anxiously at Vic.* **| into** *She peered round into the farmyard.* **| out of** *She peered out of the window.* **| over** *trying to peer over her shoulder* **| past, through** *I peered through the letter box.*

peg *noun*

ADJ. **steel, wooden | tent**

VERB + PEG **drive in, hammer in** *She hammered in the steel tent pegs.* **| insert, put in** *The score is kept by inserting pegs into a board.*

pelvis *noun*

ADJ. **narrow, wide | broken, fractured**

VERB + PELVIS **tilt, thrust**

pen *noun*

ADJ. **ballpoint, felt-tip/felt-tipped, fountain, ink, marker, quill | coloured**

VERB + PEN **use, write (sth) with**

PEN + VERB **write** *This pen won't write.* **| run out** *My pen's run out* (= has no more ink).

PEN + NOUN **nib**

PHRASES **pen and ink** *pen and ink drawings*

penalize *verb*

ADV. **heavily | deliberately | unfairly, wrongly** *He claims he was unfairly penalized.* **| financially**

PREP. **for** *Students will be penalized for mistakes in spelling and grammar.*

penalty *noun*

1 punishment

ADJ. **harsh, heavy, severe, stiff, strict, tough | light | maximum, minimum | fixed, mandatory** *a new system of fixed penalties for most traffic offences* **| financial, tax** *the heavy financial penalties of leaving the scheme early* **| death** *the movement for the abolition of the death penalty*

VERB + PENALTY **impose, introduce | threaten | increase | carry** *crimes which carry severe penalties* **| face, incur**

PREP. **on/under ~ of** *They made him promise, under penalty of death.* **| ~ for** *the penalty for murder* **| ~ on** *He threatened stiffer penalties on young offenders.*

2 disadvantage

VERB + PENALTY **pay, suffer** *He's now paying the penalty for his misspent youth. People who lose their jobs are suffering the penalties for longer periods.* **| accept**

PREP. **~ for** *You must accept the penalty for your rash behaviour.* **| ~ of** *It's just one of the penalties of fame.*

3 in football

ADJ. **disputed | winning | first-half, second-half | early, late**

VERB + PENALTY **award (sb), give (sb) | give away** *They were leading until Cole gave away a penalty.* **| appeal for | be awarded/given, get, have** *We were unlucky not to get a penalty.* **| kick, take | score from** *Owen scored from a first-half penalty.* **| miss | save**

PENALTY + NOUN **area, box, spot | shoot-out**

PREP. **~ by/from** *Thet won, thanks to a late penalty from Fry.* > Special page at SPORT

penance *noun*

ADJ. **public**

VERB + PENANCE **do, perform**

PREP. **as a ~** *He devoted his life to helping the poor as a penance for his past crimes.* **| in ~** *She knelt at her mother's feet in penance.* **| ~ for** *He decided to do public penance for his sins.*

PHRASES **an act of penance**

pencil *noun*

ADJ. **blunt, sharp | hard, soft | coloured** *a box of coloured pencils* **| graphite, lead**

VERB + PENCIL **colour sth in with, draw (sth) with, use, write (sth) with | sharpen**

PENCIL + NOUN **lead, sharpener | drawing, sketch | line, mark**

PREP. **in ~** *margin notes in pencil*

penetrate *verb*

ADV. **deep, deeply, far** *caves penetrating deep into the hills* **| fully, totally | hardly** *The sunlight hardly penetrated the inner room.* **| quickly | slowly** *The news slowly penetrated his consciousness.* **| easily, readily** *These so-called secret societies were easily penetrated by intelligence agents.* **| successfully**

VERB + PENETRATE **be able to, can/could | be difficult to | seem to** *The cold seemed to penetrate his bones.* **| fail to | allow sth to** *Cut two slashes on each side of the fish to allow heat to penetrate.*

PREP. **into** *It is not yet known how deeply the radiation has penetrated into the soil.* **| through** *The light could not penetrate through the thick curtains.* **| to** *The dust had penetrated to all corners of the room.*

penetration *noun*

ADJ. **deep | greater | import, market** *Our aim is to achieve greater market penetration.* **| water | sexual**

VERB + PENETRATION **achieve**

penis *noun*

ADJ. **erect | flaccid, limp**

PENIS + VERB **become/get/go hard, harden, stiffen | become/go soft | shrivel**

PENIS + NOUN **envy | length, size**

penniless *adj.*

VERBS **be, die** *He died penniless in Paris.* **| find yourself** *Laura found herself virtually penniless.* **| leave sb** *The legal dispute left them penniless.*

ADV. **totally | almost, practically, virtually**

pension *noun*

ADJ. **big, comfortable, generous, good | small | basic | state | company, occupational | personal, private | old age, retirement**

VERB + PENSION **draw, get, receive** *He draws his pension at the post office.* **| give sb, provide (sb with) | claim, qualify for** *You will have to find out whether or not you qualify for a pension.* **| live on** *She lives on her pension and her savings.*

PENSION + NOUN **contributions, fund** *the company pension fund* **| plan, scheme**

PREP. **on a ~** *He is now retired and on a pension.*

people *noun*

1 **more than one person**

ADJ. **young | elderly, old | common, ordinary | (very) important** *a line of limousines carrying very important people* **| famous | middle-class, working-class | business, professional, working | unemployed | blind, deaf, disabled** *access for disabled people* **| intelligent | interesting, nice | strange | single | homeless**

VERB + PEOPLE **meet | attract** *The local tourist board is trying to attract more people to the town.*

2 **of a particular place/race**

ADJ. **local | country | indigenous, native | primitive** *the customs of primitive peoples of the Amazon Basin* **| tribal | Arab, Japanese, Slav, etc.** *the culture of the Basque people* **| black, white**

VERB + PEOPLE **represent** *I was elected to represent the people of Bristol.*

PHRASES **the peoples of the world**

pepper *noun*

1 **spice**

ADJ. **ground** *freshly ground black pepper* **| black, white | cayenne**

VERB + PEPPER **add, put in/on, season sth with, sprinkle** *He put some pepper on his steak.* **| grind**

PEPPER + NOUN **mill, pot, shaker**

PHRASES **salt and pepper** *Add salt and pepper to taste* (= in the quantity preferred).

2 **vegetable**

ADJ. **bell, sweet | chilli, hot | green, red, yellow | stuffed** *peppers stuffed with meat and rice* > Special page at FOOD

perceive *verb*

ADV. **clearly | dimly** *Babies are weak and vulnerable in the presence of huge shapes that they can only dimly perceive.* **| directly** *the world of directly perceived objects* **| differently** *Risks are perceived differently by different people.* **| easily, readily** *The industrial bias of canal building can be readily perceived by looking at Figure 7.3.* **| correctly | immediately**

VERB + PERCEIVE **be able/unable to, can/could | fail to | be difficult to**

PREP. **as** *The General's words were perceived as a threat by neighbouring countries.*

PHRASES **commonly/generally/widely perceived** *It is widely perceived as a women's health problem, but it does also affect men.* **| a failure/an inability to perceive sth**

per cent *noun*

VERB + PER CENT **account for, amount to, be equal to, constitute, equal, represent** *Overseas earnings accounted for 9% of the total last year.* | **contain** *Roman coins containing about 25% zinc* | **reach, stand at** *Their share of the vote reached 6.5% in 1998.* | (All the verbs in the following collocate groups may be followed by **by**, **from** or **to** plus **per cent**. Sometimes the word **by** is left out.), **be/go/shoot up, expand, grow, improve, increase, jump, rise, soar** *Prices rose by 12% in 1998. Prices rose 12%.* | **be/go/come down, decline, decrease, depreciate, drop, fall, plummet, plunge, shrink** *Profitability is down from 16% to 12.2%.* | **boost sth, increase sth, raise sth** *hoping to boost sales by 10%.* | **cut sth, devalue sth, reduce sth, slash sth** *The currency was devalued 20% overnight.*

PREP. **by 10, 20, etc. ~** *cutting carbon dioxide levels by 20% in 15 years* | **~ of sth** *In 40% of all cases, the parents had no idea of their child's problem.*

PHRASES **about/around/only/over/up to 10, 20, etc. per cent ~** *Only 10% of the teenagers agreed with this statement. a process that can reduce the cost by up to 15%* | **a boost/an improvement/an increase/a jump/a rise of 10, 20, etc. per cent** *a jump of 8% in cases of the disease* | **a cut/decline/decrease/drop/fall/reduction of 10, 20, etc. per cent, fewer/less/more than 10, 20, etc. per cent** *Profits rose by more than 50% last year.* | **growth of 10, 20, etc. per cent, in the bottom/top 10, 20, etc. per cent** *His son was in the top 2% of the university's students.* | **10, 20, etc. per cent less/more** *New cars will use about 35% less fuel by the year 2001.* | **10, 20, etc. per cent of all/of a total** *The tribe's land now amounts to around 50% of the total land area.* > Note at PERCENT

percentage *noun*

ADJ. **high, large** *The area has a high percentage of unemployed men.* **| low, small**

VERB + PERCENTAGE **calculate | express sth as** *This figure can be expressed as a percentage of the total.*

PERCENTAGE + NOUN **point** *Unemployment has fallen by two percentage points this month.* **| rate** *Insurance contributions are paid at a fixed percentage rate on all earnings.* **| figure | increase, rise** *the percentage rise in the average salary* **| decline, fall, reduction | share**

PREP. **~ of** *What percentage of women own a car?*

PHRASES **in percentage terms** *The numbers are relatively low in percentage terms.* **| on a percentage basis** *The artist's agent receives commission on a percentage basis.*

perceptible *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **clearly, easily** *a clearly perceptible decline in public confidence* **| barely, hardly, scarcely** *His lips curved in a barely perceptible smile.*

PREP. **to** *The difference is scarcely perceptible to the average reader.*

perception *noun*

ADJ. **clear | common, general, widely-held, widespread | growing | accurate | public | human | extrasensory, sensory, visual**

VERB + PERCEPTION **have** *I was shocked to learn of the perception people have of me.* **| gain** *We need to gain a clearer perception of how young people feel about the problem.* **| affect** *These developments hardly affected the public perception of the crisis.*

perceptive *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a highly perceptive analysis of the problem* **| pretty, quite**

PREP. **about** *He's very perceptive about people.*

perch *verb*

ADV. perilously, precariously *The hotel was perched precariously on a steep hillside.*

PREP. on *The birds perched on nearby buildings.*

PHRASES be perched high above/on sth *The castle is perched high above the valley.* **| perch/be perched on the edge of sth** *I perched on the edge of his desk to listen to him.* **| perch/be perched on top of sth**

percussion *nou*n

ADJ. **tuned, untuned**

PERCUSSION + NOUN **instrument | section** > Special page at MUSIC

perfect *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | make sth** *Hove's position makes it perfect for touring.*

ADV. **absolutely, quite | far from, less than** *The treaty is far from perfect, but it is clearly the way forward.* **| almost, near, practically, virtually | impossibly** *the impossibly perfect shine on the vinyl-tiled floors* **| seemingly** *a seemingly perfect alibi* **| physically | mathematically**

PREP. **for** *The day seemed perfect for a picnic.*

perfection *noun*

ADJ. **great | absolute, utter | near | moral, physical, technical**

VERB + PERFECTION **achieve, bring sth to, reach | seek, strive for** *She strives for perfection in everything.* **| fall short of**

PREP. **close to ~** *The cooking was close to perfection.* **| near ~** *A night's labour brought the sculpture one step nearer perfection.* **| to ~** (= perfectly) *The dress fitted to perfection.* **| towards ~** *a sequence of developmental stages towards the perfection of his violin technique*

PHRASES **a degree/point of perfection** *He brought the art of photography to the highest point of perfection.* **| a model of perfection** *The building became the model of perfection that architects sought to emulate.* **| the pursuit of perfection** *She sometimes stayed up painting all night in her pursuit of perfection.* **| a quest/search for perfection**

perform *verb*

1 **do a task/duty/piece of work**

ADV. **effectively, efficiently, properly, successfully, well** *ensuring that tasks are properly performed* | **poorly** | **adequately, competently, reliably, satisfactorily** | **correctly** | **duly, faithfully** *He duly performed his own half of the bargain and expected the others to do likewise.* | **automatically** | **manually**

VERB + PERFORM **be able/unable to** *The prince is no longer able to perform his duties.* | **be expected to**

PHRASES **failure to perform sth** *failure to perform a contract*

2 **work/function/play**

ADV. **brilliantly, efficiently, excellently, faultlessly, strongly, well** *One or two of the players performed brilliantly. The company has been performing strongly over the past year.* | **badly, disappointingly, disastrously, poorly** *The car performed poorly at high speeds.* | **adequately, competently, reliably, satisfactorily**

VERB + PERFORM **be able/unable to** | **be expected to** *students who are expected to perform well*

3 **give a performance**

ADV. **live** *The group will be performing live on tonight's show.* | **in public, publicly** | **together** *The two artists have never performed together before.*

PHRASES **first performed** *The play was first publicly performed in 1872.* | **rarely performed, see sth performed** *I've never seen this play performed before.*

performance *noun*

1 **sth performed**

ADJ. **live | public | evening, matinee | amateur, professional | cameo | solo | repeat** *The party are dreading a repeat performance of their defeat in the last election.* | **ballet, concert, dance, musical, opera, theatrical | benefit, charity**

VERB + PERFORMANCE **give, put on** *The theatre is putting on a performance of the popular musical 'Cats'.* | **attend, go to**

PERFORMANCE + NOUN **art | artist**

PREP. **in ~** *The course aims to develop the children's appreciation of music in performance.*

2 **way in which sth is done**

ADJ. **brilliant, convincing, dazzling, electrifying, excellent, fine, flawless, good, great, impressive, inspired, outstanding, polished, remarkable, sparkling, spirited, strong, superb, wonderful** *The recording gives the most convincing performance of Stravinsky's 'Rite of Spring' to date. the country's strong economic performance over the last two years* | **bad, disappointing, lacklustre, poor | satisfactory | consistent | central** *Mel Gibson's central performance in the film as Hamlet* | **all-round, overall** *He got top marks for overall academic performance.* | **business, economic, financial, sales | academic, school**

VERB + PERFORMANCE **deliver, give, put in** *The team put in an excellent performance at the World Cup.* | **affect | assess, measure | improve**

PERFORMANCE + NOUN **indicator, level, measure, measurement, standard, target**

PREP. **~ as** *her fine performance as Ophelia* | **~ from** *The film has a great performance from Jack Lemmon.* | **~ on** *his flawless performance on the piano*

PHRASES **a level/measure/quality/standard of performance** *to maintain a high level of performance* | **on past performance** *Sales forecasts were based on past performance.* | **the proper performance of your duties**

3 **of a machine**

ADJ. **high | low, poor | engine**

VERB + PERFORMANCE **affect | assess, measure | enhance, improve** > Note at PERFORMANCE

performer *noun*

ADJ. **key, star, top** *The star performer of the match was Bill Holland who scored 26 points.* **| good, great, impressive, outstanding, polished, talented | poor | seasoned** *She's a seasoned concert performer.* **| live | solo | amateur, professional | circus, concert, radio, stage, street, television** *The president was a polished television performer.*

perfume *noun*

1 **liquid with a sweet smell that you put on your body**

ADJ. **expensive | cheap | strong | subtle | fragrant, sweet | exotic | musky | stale**

QUANT. **bottle**

VERB + PERFUME **use, wear | dab on, put on, spray on** *She dabbed some perfume on her wrists.* **| smell | reek of, smell of** *She reeked of cheap perfume.*

PERFUME + NOUN **bottle | company, house**

PHRASES **a waft/whiff of perfume** *He caught a faint whiff of her expensive French perfume.*

2 **pleasant smell**

ADJ. **sweet | heady, strong | delicate, faint | exotic, strange**

VERB + PERFUME **smell | give off, release** *The lilies release their heady perfume in the evening.*

PERFUME + VERB **fill sth** *The perfume of the roses filled the room.*

peril *noun*

1 **great danger**

ADJ. **deadly, dire, grave, great**

VERB + PERIL **be at/in | put sth in**

PREP. **~ of** *All aboard were in grave peril of drowning.*

PHRASES **at your ~** *Ignore these warnings at your peril.*

2 **sth dangerous**

ADJ. **great** *the great perils facing the environment* **| immediate | hidden**

VERB + PERIL **face** *We face the immediate peril of being bought out by another company.* **| avoid**

PERIL + VERB **face sth**

perimeter *noun*

ADJ. **inner, outer | northern, southern, etc.**

VERB + PERIMETER **mark** *The river marks the eastern perimeter of our land.*

PERIMETER + NOUN **fence, wall | road, track**

PREP. **along the ~** *I lugged my suitcase along the perimeter of the square.* **| around/ round the ~** *We walked round the perimeter of the prison.* **| inside/outside the ~** *They demonstrated just outside the perimeter of the embassy.* **| on the ~** *There's a small shop on the perimeter of the camp.*

period *noun*

1 **length of time**

ADJ. **extended, lengthy, long, prolonged | brief, limited, short** *The offer is only available for a limited period.* | **full** *You have been paid for the full period of your employment with us.* | **fixed, set** *The medication is prescribed for a fixed period of time.* | **indefinite | early, late** *the late Victorian period* | **happy** *a happy period in her life* | **dark, difficult, lean** *a dark period in the country's history* | **critical** *a critical period in the development of the project* | **interim, intervening | transitional | off-peak, peak | Christmas | medieval, Tudor, etc. | inter-war, post-war | accounting | cooling-off** *The customer has the right to cancel the contract during the seven-day cooling-off period.* | **formative** *The most formative period of life is childhood.* | **gestation, incubation | rest | training | waiting | trial** *You can use the software free for a 30-day trial period.* | **time**

VERB + PERIOD **cover** *the period covered by the book*

PERIOD + VERB **begin, commence | end | last**

PERIOD + NOUN **costume, furniture**

PREP. **after a ~** *after a long period of waiting* | **during/throughout the ~** *during the intervening period* | **for a ~** *We lived in Caracas for a brief period.* | **in/within a/the ~** *Sales have gone up in the last-five-year period.* | **over a/the ~** *There will be a reduced bus service over the Christmas period. Changes were monitored over a period of two months.* | **within a/the ~** *Committee members will not be eligible for re-election within a period of two years.* | **~ between** *the period between his resigning and finding a new job* | **~ from … to …** *the period from 1 July to 31 December*

PHRASES **the beginning/end/start of a period, a period of history, sb's period of office** *Public spending was cut during his period of office.* | **a period of study** *Try breaking your period of study into 20-minute blocks.* | **a period of time** *The balance must be paid within an agreed period of time.* | **a period of transition** *a period of transition between communist rule and democratic government*

2 **menstruation**

ADJ. **heavy, light | menstrual | monthly**

VERB + PERIOD **have** *I've got my period and don't feel too great.* **| start** *I was thirteen when I started my periods.*

PERIOD + VERB **start | stop | last**

PERIOD + NOUN **pains**

perishable *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly** *Many fresh foods are highly perishable.*

perjury *noun* > Note at CRIME

permanent *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | make sth** *We decided to make the arrangement permanent.*

ADV. **almost, virtually** *living in an almost permanent state of fear* **| relatively | apparently | not necessarily**

permissible *adj.*

VERBS **be | consider sth**

ADV. **perfectly** *This is perfectly permissible under the new regulations.* **| legally, morally**

permission *noun*

ADJ. **full | special | express** *Staff may not leave early without the express permission of the director.* **| formal, government, official | written | necessary** *They chopped the trees down without having been granted the necessary permission.* **| prior** *He was not allowed to leave the city without the prior permission of the authorities.* **| planning** *You will need to obtain planning permission if you want to extend your house.*

VERB + PERMISSION **have | gain, get, obtain, receive, secure | give (sb), grant (sb) | deny sb, refuse sb | need, require | apply for, ask (for), request, seek**

PREP. **with/without sb's ~** *The information was published with the full permission of Amnesty International.* **| ~ for** *The council refused planning permission for the erection of a block of flats.* **| ~ to** *permission to park*

PHRASES **by (kind) permission of sb** *The illustrations are reproduced by kind permission of the British Library.*

permissive *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a highly permissive attitude* **| sexually** *a society that is sexually permissive*

permit *noun*

ADJ. **government, official | export, import | residence, residency | work | travel | resident's, visitor's | building, filming, fishing, landing, parking**

VERB + PERMIT **have | give (sb), grant (sb), issue | get, obtain, receive | revoke | renew | apply for | need, require**

PERMIT + VERB **expire, run out**

PERMIT + NOUN **holder**

PREP. **by ~** *Entry is by permit only.* **| with/without a ~** *You can't park here without a permit.* **| ~ for** *They applied for a permit for a street demonstration against university fees.*

permit *verb*

ADV. **legally | generally, normally** *Development is not normally permitted in conservation areas.*

VERB + PERMIT **refuse to | be designed to** *The bill was designed to permit workers to take up to twelve weeks' unpaid leave annually for family reasons.*

perpendicular *adj.*

1 **pointing straight up**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **almost, nearly** *an almost perpendicular staircase*

2 **at an angle of 90° to sth**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **exactly | almost | mutually** *two mutually perpendicular directions*

PREP. **to** *The axis of the moon will now be exactly perpendicular to that of the earth.*

perpetuate *verb*

ADV. **merely, only, simply** *Giving these events a lot of media coverage merely perpetuates the problem.*

VERB + PERPETUATE **help (to) | serve to, tend to** *Schools tend to perpetuate the myth that boys are better at sport than girls.* **| seek to**

perplexed *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound**

ADV. **deeply, genuinely, very | a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** *Gary looked rather perplexed.*

persecution *noun*

ADJ. **systematic | political, religious**

VERB + PERSECUTION **be subject/subjected to, face, suffer (from)** *Some students returning to the country may face political persecution.* **| escape from, flee from | fear**

PERSECUTION + NOUN **complex** *She started to have a persecution complex when she couldn't get a job.*

PHRASES **delusions/feelings of persecution, (a) fear of persecution, a victim of persecution**

perseverance *noun*

ADJ. **great, sheer | dogged, untiring**

VERB + PERSEVERANCE **have** *Does she have the perseverance to finish the work?* **| display, show** *He showed great perseverance by staying in the job.* **| require, take** *It may take some perseverance to find the right people.*

PERSEVERANCE + VERB **pay off**

PREP. **with ~** *Anyone can learn Japanese with perseverance.* **| ~ with** *His perseverance with the new technique paid off.*

persist *verb*

1 **continue doing sth**

ADV. **doggedly, stubbornly**

PREP. **in** *If you persist in upsetting her, I will have to punish you.* **| with** *The detective stubbornly persisted with his questions.*

2 **continue to exist**

ADV. **still, to this day** *a belief that persists to this day* **| indefinitely**

VERB + PERSIST **be likely to | tend to | be allowed to** *This situation cannot be allowed to persist.*

PREP. **for** *If symptoms persist for more than a few days, see a doctor.* **| into** *These practices persisted into the Middle Ages.* **| through/throughout** *The depression persisted through much of the 1930s.* **| until** *The snows persisted until the second month of the new year.*

persistence *noun*

ADJ. dogged, remarkable, sheer

VERB + PERSISTENCE show

PERSISTENCE + VERB be rewarded, pay off *My persistence in demanding my rights finally paid off.*

PREP. by ~ *By sheer persistence, I eventually got her to change her mind.* **| through ~** *He achieved success through dogged persistence.*

persistent *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, incredibly, really, very** *The weeds were very persistent.* **| quite, rather** *Some infections can be quite persistent.*

person *noun*

ADJ. **young | elderly, old | married, single | decent, good, lovely, nice | caring, gentle, kind, warm | bad, evil, wicked | happy, outgoing | rational, reasonable, sensible** *Any reasonable person can see that it is not fair.* **| average, normal, ordinary | private** *She is a warm but very private person.* **| blind, deaf, disabled | ill, sick** *the care of a terminally-ill person* **| missing | displaced, homeless | unemployed | dead | famous | important | innocent** *the imprisonment of an innocent person* **| right, wrong** *She's the right person for the job. The police now realize that they had the wrong person.* **| religious | business**

PREP. **as a ~** *What's she like as a person?* **| in ~** *She appeared in person to collect her prize.* **| in the ~ of** *Help arrived in the person of our next-door neighbour.*

PHRASES **the person concerned** *The disciplinary panel will notify the person concerned of its findings.* **| the person in charge** *Can I speak to the person in charge, please?* **| the person responsible** *Police think they have found the person responsible for the of muggings.*

personal *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *highly personal information* **| rather**

personality *noun*

1 **character**

ADJ. **bright, bubbly, extrovert, jovial, lively, outgoing, sparkling, vibrant, vivacious | attractive, charismatic, charming, engaging, lovely, magnetic, pleasant, warm | dominant, dynamic, forceful, formidable, powerful, striking, strong | vulnerable, weak | multiple, split** *He developed a split personality after the crash.*

VERB + PERSONALITY **be, have** *Barbara is/has a very forceful personality.* **| develop | express, reflect** *His choice of clothes reflects his personality.* **| suit** *The job didn't really suit my personality.*

PERSONALITY + NOUN **characteristic, trait | type | disorder, problem | development | change | test** *All candidates have to undergo a personality test.* **| clash**

PHRASES **an aspect of your personality** *For the first time she was seeing the more unpleasant aspects of her husband's personality.* **| a clash of personalities, the force/power/strength of your personality** *He has achieved success by the sheer strength of his personality.* **| impose/stamp your personality on sth** *She stamped her personality on the whole programme.*

2 **famous person**

ADJ. **leading, prominent, top, well-known | sports | media, radio, television/ TV**

PERSONALITY + NOUN **cult** *the personality cult surrounding Stalin*

personnel *noun*

1 **staff**

ADJ. **qualified, skilled, trained | key | senior | management | authorized** *Only authorized personnel have access to the computer system.* **| company, corporate | army, military, security (force), service** *an employment agency for ex-service personnel* **| civilian | government, state | hospital, medical | administrative | technical**

2 **department of a company**

VERB + PERSONNEL **be in, work in** *He's is in personnel, isn't he?*

PERSONNEL + NOUN **department | director, manager, officer | records**

perspective *noun*

1 **in art**

ADJ. **distorted | horizontal, vertical**

PREP. **in ~, out of ~** *That tree is out of perspective.*

PHRASES **the laws of perspective**

2 **attitude to sth**

ADJ. **different, new | broader, wider | proper, true** *We can now see things in their true perspective.* **| cultural, historical, political, social, theoretical, etc.**

VERB + PERSPECTIVE **get sth in/into, place sth in/into, put sth in/into, see sth in** *Her death put everything else into perspective.* **| gain, get, put** *When you reach middle age you get a different perspective on life. This website puts a completely different perspective on world news.* **| keep | lose | adopt** *The book adopts a historical perspective.* **| shift | provide**

PREP. **from the ~ of** *We should view this from the perspective of the people involved.* **| in/into ~** *Let's get this into perspective.* **| ~ in** *a feminist perspective in philosophy* **| ~ on/upon** *It's easy to lose perspective on things when you are under stress.*

PHRASES **a sense of perspective**

perspiration *noun*

QUANT. **bead, drop** *Great beads of perspiration trickled down his forehead.*

VERB + PERSPIRATION **wipe** *He wiped the perspiration from his brow.* **| be bathed in, be drenched in, be soaked in** *My shirt was soaked in perspiration.* **| be clammy with, be damp with, be moist with, be wet with, glisten with** *Her face was wet with perspiration.*

PERSPIRATION + VERB **run down sth, trickle down sth** *Perspiration ran down his face.* **| break out** *Perspiration broke out on my skin.* **| glisten**

perspire *verb*

ADV. **heavily, profusely** *He had been working hard and was perspiring profusely.* | **a little**

PREP. **with** *She was perspiring a little with the heat.*

persuade *verb*

ADV. **successfully | almost | eventually, finally | quickly | easily** *She was easily persuaded to accompany us.* **| gently** *Dave gently persuaded the fish close enough to be lifted aboard the boat.* **| personally** *The education minister personally persuaded the prime minister to rethink.* **| somehow** *He somehow persuaded the studio to let him make the film.*

VERB + PERSUADE **attempt to, endeavour to, seek to, try to | hope to | be able/unable to, can/could | manage to** *He eventually managed to persuade one of the staff to let him in.* **| help (to) | be difficult to | fail to**

PREP. **into** *She was persuaded into buying an expensive dress.* **| of** *We must persuade the government of the need for change.*

PHRASES **an attempt/effort to persuade sb** *an unsuccessful attempt to persuade her colleagues* **| be reluctantly persuaded** *I was reluctantly persuaded to join the committee.* **| have difficulty (in) persuading sb** *They had difficulty in persuading the two sides to sit down together.*

persuasion *noun*

1 **persuading**

ADJ. **gentle**

VERB + PERSUASION **use** *I had to use a little gentle persuasion to get her to agree.* **| need, take** *She didn't need much persuasion.* **| be/seem open to** *He refused my offer at first, but seemed open to persuasion.*

PHRASES **the art of persuasion** *She is very charming, and skilled in the art of persuasion.*

2 **set of beliefs**

ADJ. **political, religious**

PHRASES **of all/different/varying persuasions** *The meeting is open to people of all political persuasions.*

persuasive *adj.*

VERBS **be | find sth**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *His analysis is in many ways highly persuasive.* **| fairly, quite | enough, sufficiently** *The evidence was not really persuasive enough.*

pertinent *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **especially, extremely, highly, particularly, very**

PREP. **to** *The issues dealt with in the report are highly pertinent to our own situation.*

pervasive *adj.*

VERBS be, prove | become | remain

ADV. very | all- *the all-pervasive influence of television*

perverse *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **deeply, very** *This kind of reasoning is deeply perverse.* **| quite | almost | a little, rather, slightly, somewhat | deliberately** *Had you truly forgotten or were you just being deliberately perverse?*

perversity *noun*

ADJ. **sheer** *She's marrying him out of sheer perversity.*

PREP. **out of ~**

pessimism *noun*

ADJ. **deep, widespread**

VERB + PESSIMISM **display** *He displayed his usual pessimism.* | **overcome**

PREP. **~ about** *There were good grounds for pessimism about future progress.*

PHRASES **a mood of pessimism**

pessimistic *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, prove, seem, sound** *These figures look quite pessimistic.* **| become | remain**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, terribly, very | increasingly | rather, somewhat | unduly, unnecessarily** *His predictions proved unduly pessimistic.* **| generally**

PREP. **about** *I am deeply pessimistic about the future.*

pest *noun*

ADJ. **common | serious | agricultural, crop, garden, plant | insect | sex (in newspapers)** *Police are looking for a sex pest who is frightening late-night travellers.*

VERB + PEST **control, eradicate** *These birds provide a useful function in controlling insect pests.*

PEST + NOUN **control, controller, management | population**

pesticide *noun*

ADJ. **chemical | dangerous, hazardous | approved | banned, unapproved**

QUANT. **level** *It is claimed that current levels of pesticide do not pose a threat to health.* **| trace** *Traces of pesticide in the water were ten times above permissible levels.*

PESTICIDE + NOUN **use | levels | residues | contamination, pollution** *tests for pesticide contamination in food* **| poisoning | spray**

PHRASES **the use of pesticide**

pet *noun*

ADJ. **domestic, family, household**

VERB + PET **have, keep**

PET + NOUN **shop | cat, dog, rabbit, etc. | owner | food**

petition *noun*

ADJ. **bankruptcy, divorce | protest**

VERB + PETITION **sign | deliver, file, present, send, submit | draw up, get up, launch, organize, raise | support | hear** *The petition will be heard tomorrow.* **| grant** *Her petition for divorce was granted.* **| dismiss, oppose, reject** *The district court has opposed the petition by the local electricity company.*

PETITION + VERB **call for sth, demand sth, urge sth | oppose sth** *The petition opposes the closures.* **| support sth** *The petition supports the scheme to rebuild the road.*

PREP. **~ against** *We're getting up a petition against the proposed building plans.* **| ~ by/from** *a petition by local residents* **| ~ for** *Local government supports the petition for a new hospital.* **| ~ in favour of** *a petition in favour of reform*

petrol *noun*

ADJ. **lead-free, ultra-low sulphur** (= **ULSP**), **unleaded | leaded, lead replacement** (= **LRP**) **| high-octane**

QUANT. **litre, tankful**

VERB + PETROL **fill up with, fill sth (up) with | run on, take, use** *My car runs on unleaded petrol.* **| run out of** *We ran out of petrol and had to walk to the nearest garage.* **| douse sb/sth in/with, pour** *Thugs poured petrol over a schoolboy and tried to set him alight.* **| smell (of)** *Can you smell petrol? The air smelled of petrol.*

PETROL + VERB **burn, ignite**

PETROL + NOUN **engine, tank | gauge, pump | station | tanker | fumes | prices | tax | bomb**

pharmacy *noun*

ADJ. **hospital, local | dispensing, retail**

PHARMACY + NOUN **business, chain | licence | counter**

PHRASES **available from pharmacies** *The ointment is available from pharmacies without prescription.*

phase *noun*

ADJ. **early, first, initial, primary | second, secondary, etc. | current, latest, new, present | final, last | intermediate, transition | temporary | critical, crucial, important** *the critical phase of the operation* **| distinct** *The period can be divided into three distinct phases.*

VERB + PHASE **begin, enter, open, start** *Society has entered a technological phase of evolution.* **| go through** *It's just a phase he's going through.* **| complete, pass**

PREP. **during a/the ~** *During the first phase of expansion staff will move to the new offices.* **| in a/the ~** *In the earliest phase of mental disorder, relatives feel confused.* **| ~ in** *a new phase in the European economy*

phenomenal *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **absolutely, quite, simply, truly** *This plant has truly phenomenal healing powers.*

phenomenon *noun*

ADJ. **common, universal, widespread | isolated, rare, unique | new, recent | natural | curious, inexplicable, remarkable, strange | complex | observable | cultural, historical, linguistic, mental, physical, political, psychological, social, supernatural, urban**

VERB + PHENOMENON **investigate** *His job is to investigate supernatural phenomena.*

PHENOMENON + VERB **emerge, occur** *The phenomenon occurs during early foetal development.*

philosopher *noun*

ADJ. **distinguished, eminent, famous, great** *the great philosophers of ancient Greece* **| ancient, classical | contemporary, modern | Eastern, Western | professional | experimental, legal, moral, natural** *(historical)*, **political, social** *a talk by a distinguished moral philosopher He called himself a ‘natural philosopher’: today we would say a ‘scientist’.* **| sceptical**

PHRASES **a philosopher of religion/science**

philosophical *adj.*

1 of philosophy

VERBS **be | become, get** *The debate was getting too philosophical for me.*

ADV. **purely** *a purely philosophical argument* **| rather**

2 calm and accepting

VERBS **be** *Try to be philosophical about it.* **| remain**

ADV. **very | quite**

PREP. **about** *Mum's being quite philosophical about the whole thing.*

philosophy *noun*

1 **study of ideas about the meaning of life**

ADJ. **ancient, classical | contemporary, modern | Eastern, Western | experimental, moral, natural** *(historical)*, **political, religious, social**

PHRASES **the philosophy of history/religion/science** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

2 **particular system of beliefs**

ADJ. **competing, differing | prevailing** *humanism?the prevailing philosophy today in the Western world* **| basic, general, underlying | personal | homespun, simple** *the homespun philosophy that kept her going during this difficult period* **| liberal | design, economic, educational, management, market, political, religious, social** *a furniture-maker's design philosophy*

VERB + PHILOSOPHY **develop, formulate** *developing a personal philosophy* **| articulate | adopt, embrace, espouse | reject**

PHILOSOPHY + VERB **inform sth, underlie sth, underpin sth** *the philosophy underlying the education system* **| prevail** *the management philosophy which prevailed at that time*

PREP. **~ behind** *The new measures were introduced with no explanation of the philosophy behind them.*

PHRASES **a philosophy of life/mind**

phobia *noun*

ADJ. **cat, water, etc.**

VERB + PHOBIA **have, suffer from**

PHOBIA + NOUN **sufferer**

PREP. **~ about/of sth** *He has a phobia about snakes.*

phone *noun*

ADJ. **cellular, cordless, mobile, portable | car | pay** (also **payphone**), **public** *There's a public payphone in reception.* **| office, private**

VERB + PHONE **be on** *She's on the phone at the moment.* **| use** *Can I use your phone?* **| answer, get** *(informal)*, **lift, pick up** *If the phone rings, don't answer it. Can you get the phone?* **| hang up, put down, replace** *I hung up the phone when he started shouting at me.* **| slam down** *She slammed the phone down in a rage.* **| be wanted on** *Mum, you're wanted on the phone.* **| call sb to** *He was called to the phone just as he was leaving.* **| connect | disconnect | bug, tap** *I think our phone is being tapped.* **| wait by** *She waits by the phone all day but he doesn't ring.* **| leave/take off the hook** *I couldn't get through because you'd left the phone off the hook.*

PHONE + VERB **ring | be engaged** *His phone is engaged.* **| be off the hook | go dead** *The phone suddenly went dead in the middle of our conversation.*

PHONE + NOUN **number | book | bill | call, conversation, message | card** (also **phonecard**) **| company, network, service | booth, box | line** *The modem links the computer to a phone line.*

PREP. **by ~** *We keep in contact by phone but we rarely see each other.* **| on the ~** *We spoke on the phone the other day.* **| over the ~** *I haven't seen her but we spoke over the phone.*

photo *noun*

ADJ. **old, recent | black-and-white, colour | clear | excellent, good, great | (good) quality | glossy | framed | signed** *His most treasured possession is a signed photo of his footballing hero.* **| group, team | family | wedding | school | cover, newspaper, press | passport, publicity, security | still | action** *The annual has a good range of features and colour action photos.* **| aerial, air | digital, polaroid | nude, pornographic, topless**

VERB + PHOTO **get, take** *I got some great photos of the party. Can I have my photo taken with you?* **| pose for** *posing for a group photo* **| develop** *I can't wait till the photos have been developed.* **| blow up, enlarge | crop | mount | publish | make** *The sun rising over the horizon would have made a good photo.*

PHOTO + NOUN **album | frame | call, opportunity, session, shoot** *The press followed the president round the hospital, waiting for a photo opportunity.* **| journalism, journalist | processing | booth** *We found a photo booth on the station.* **| story | caption**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Tell me who everyone is in the photo.* **| ~ of** *a photo of my son Edmund*

photocopy *noun*

VERB + PHOTOCOPY **do, make, run off, take** *Could you take a photocopy of this letter for me, please?*

photograph *noun*

ADJ. **old, recent | black-and-white, colour, coloured, sepia, tinted** *Tinted photographs were an early substitute for colour.* **| blurred, fuzzy, grainy, out of focus** *This photograph is out of focus.* **| faded | clear | sharp | excellent, good, great, lovely, stunning, superb, wonderful | (good) quality | glossy | framed | signed | studio | group, team | family | wedding | school | cover, magazine, newspaper, press** *The cover photograph of one magazine showed a dying soldier.* **| publicity | documentary | fashion | portrait-sized, postcard-sized | passport, passport-sized | facial** *Send a recent facial photograph of yourself with your application.* **| close-up | still** *Frame the subject in the video viewfinder as you would for a still photograph.* **| aerial, air, satellite | digital, polaroid | infrared | erotic, explicit, indecent, nude, obscene, pornographic, topless**

VERB + PHOTOGRAPH **get, take** *Did you manage to get a photograph of the goal? I spent the day taking photographs of the city.* **| pose for | develop | blow up, enlarge | scan (in)** *I scanned in some photographs of the family to send to friends by email.* **| touch up** *The photograph has been touched up to conceal her double chin.* **| crop | mount** *I cropped the photograph and mounted it on some card.* **| publish | make** *The sun rising over the horizon would have made a good photograph.*

PHOTOGRAPH + VERB **appear** *Her photograph appeared in all the papers.* **| depict sth, show sth | capture sth** *The photograph manages to capture the excitement of the occasion.*

PHOTOGRAPH + NOUN **album | frame**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The wing is assembled as shown in the photograph below.* **| ~ of** *An aerial photograph of the field shows clearly where the buildings were.*

PREP. **photograph courtesy (of) …** *photograph courtesy Liverpool Evening News* (= acknowledging permission to publish a photograph) > Note at ART

photographer *noun*

ADJ. **distinguished, famous, leading, top | brilliant, experienced, good | keen | amateur | commercial, freelance, professional | official | newspaper, press | police | fashion, landscape, portrait, sports, etc.**

VERB + PHOTOGRAPHER **pose for**

PHOTOGRAPHER + VERB **shoot sth, take pictures/shots** *The photographer shot the usual roll of pictures.* **| snap (away at) sb/sth** *She didn't think much of the photographers snapping away at her.* **| capture sb/sth** *Photographer Darren Kidd captured the unique atmosphere of the event.*

PHRASES **a photographer's gallery/studio** > Note at JOB

photography *noun*

ADJ. **black-and-white, colour | flash | infrared | aerial, underwater | close-up | still | trick | professional | documentary, news | art | fashion, portrait, sports, wildlife, etc.**

PHOTOGRAPHY + NOUN **magazine | competition**

phrase *noun*

ADJ. **colloquial, idiomatic | key** *'Start slowly' is the key phrase for the first-time marathon runner.* **| famous | empty, glib, hackneyed, stock** *He keeps coming out with the same old stock phrases* **| memorable, well-turned | musical | adjectival, adverbial, noun, verb**

VERB + PHRASE **use | coin** *Who coined the phrase 'desktop publishing'?*

PHRASE + NOUN **book**

PREP. **in a/the~** *She was, in her own memorable phrase, 'a woman without a past'.*

PHRASES **a choice of phrase** *Her unfortunate choice of phrase offended most of the audience.* **| a turn of phrase** *He is meticulous in his choice of words and turns of phrase.*

phrase *verb*

ADV. **carefully** *The statement was very carefully phrased.* **| differently** *I should have phrased my question differently.*

physical *adj.*

VERBS **be** *The problem is purely physical, not mental.*

ADV. **purely | almost** *The shock of the darkness was almost physical.*

physician *noun*

ADJ. **eminent | experienced, qualified | junior, senior | practising | consultant | general | hospital | family, personal, royal** *the king's personal physician*

PREP. **~ to** *physician to the Duke of Albemarle* > Note at DOCTOR(for verbs)

physicist *nou*n

ADJ. **brilliant, distinguished, eminent | classical, modern | experimental, theoretical | atomic, mathematical, medical, nuclear, particle** > Note at JOB

physics *noun*

ADJ. **classical | modern | experimental, theoretical | atomic, high-energy, mathematical, medical, Newtonian, nuclear, (elementary) particle, quantum | A-level | school, university**

PHRASES **the laws of physics** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

physiotherapist *noun*

ADJ. **qualified, trained** > Note at DOCTOR(for verbs)

physiotherapy *noun*

ADJ. **intensive | regular**

VERB + PHYSIOTHERAPY **provide | have, receive, undergo** *I'm undergoing regular physiotherapy for a back problem.*

PHYSIOTHERAPY + NOUN **clinic, department | treatment | equipment | training**

physique *noun*

ADJ. **good, magnificent, muscular, powerful, strong, superb | frail**

PREP. **~ for** *She doesn't have the physique for a dancer.*

piano *noun*

ADJ. **baby grand, grand, upright | digital, electric, electronic | tinny**

VERB + PIANO **tune | build, make**

PIANO + NOUN **key, lid, wire | stool | tuner | bar** *There is a piano bar for evening entertainment.*

PREP. **at the ~** *sitting at the piano* **| on the ~** *playing classical music on the piano* > Special page at MUSIC

pick *noun*

VERB + PICK **have** *She had her pick of the single men.* **| take** *Which do you want? Take your pick.*

PHRASES **get/take first pick** *I got the first pick of the prizes because I was the oldest.*

pick *verb*

1 **choose sb/sth**

ADV. **at random** *Names were picked at random out of a hat.* | **out** *He was picked out as the best player.*

PREP. **as** *They picked Jane as the captain.* | **for** *Have you been picked for the team?*

2 **take sth from the place where it is growing**

PHRASES **freshly picked** *freshly picked strawberries* **PHRASAL VERBS pick sth up**

ADV. **carefully, gingerly** *Rather gingerly, George picked up the tiny bundle.* | **idly** *I idly picked up a magazine and flicked through it.*

VERB + PICK **try to** | **bend to, stoop to**

PREP. **by** *He picked the pan up carefully by the handle.* | **from, off** *She stooped to pick the book up off the floor.*

picket *noun*

ADJ. **mass | flying** *Flying pickets arrived from all over the country.*

VERB + PICKET **organize** *They organized a mass picket of the governor's palace.*

PICKET + NOUN **duty | line** *Abuse was hurled at workers who crossed the picket line.*

pickle *noun*

ADJ. **sweet | dill | lime**

QUANT. **jar**

PHRASES **and/with pickle/pickles** *a cheese and pickle sandwich*

picnic *noun*

VERB + PICNIC **go for/on, have** *Lets have a picnic down by the river.* **| make** *Will you help me make a picnic?* **| bring, take** *We took a picnic and spent the day watching the races.* **| pack, unpack**

PICNIC + NOUN **basket, blanket, hamper, rug, set, table | lunch, tea | area, place, site, spot**

picture *noun*

1 **painting/drawing/photograph**

ADJ. **attractive, beautiful, lovely, striking, stunning, wonderful | blurred | black and white, colour | posed**

VERB + PICTURE **draw, paint | colour in** *The book has simple stories and pictures to colour in.* **| frame, hang, mount | display, exhibit, show | pose for, sit for | get, snap, take** *I got some good pictures of the procession.* **| touch up**

PICTURE + VERB **depict sth, show sth | hang**

PICTURE + NOUN **frame | book, postcard | gallery | hook, rail | editor**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I can't see you in the picture. The story is told in pictures.* **| ~ of** *It's a picture of a country village.* > Note at ART

2 **mental image**

ADJ. **vivid** *The book gives a vivid picture of life in Victorian England.* **| clear | complete, comprehensive, full, general, overall, total, whole** *The programme was interesting but it didn't give the full picture.* **| incomplete | broad** *My visits enabled me to build up a broad picture of the culture.* **| composite** *Through interviews and old photos we put together a composite picture of life in the village a hundred years ago.* **| accurate, balanced, realistic, representative, true | false, misleading, one-sided, over-simplified, unbalanced | idealized, optimistic, rosy | bleak, depressing, dismal, gloomy, grim, negative** *The report paints a dismal picture of the government's economic record.* **| confused, distorted | detailed | complex, complicated | disturbing | mental** *I tried to form a mental picture of the building being described.* **| historical**

VERB + PICTURE **build (up), construct, create, develop, establish, form, gain, get, obtain, put together** *They're trying to build up a detailed picture of the incident.* **| give, paint, present, project, reveal** *The figures reveal a disturbing picture of the state of our schools.* **| complete | conjure up** *The smell of the sea conjures up pictures of children playing on the beach.*

PICTURE + VERB **emerge** *What emerges is a complex picture of family rivalry.*

pie *noun*

ADJ. **apple, meat, etc. | mud** *The children are making mud pies in the garden.*

QUANT. **piece, slice**

VERB + PIE **eat, have | bake, cook, make**

PIE + NOUN **filling | dish**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *What's the filling in these pies?* > Special page at FOOD

piece *noun*

1 separate amount; parts of sth

ADJ. **big, huge, large, long | little, short, small, tiny** *The plate smashed into little pieces on the stone floor.* **| bite-sized** *The book breaks the information into bite-sized pieces.* **| equal | odd** *She makes her sculptures out of odd pieces of scrap metal.*

PREP. **in ~s** *The vase was now in pieces on the kitchen floor.* **| ~ of** *a piece of bread A few pieces of the jigsaw were missing.*

PHRASES **bits and pieces** *I just need to get a few bits and pieces at the supermarket.* **| break/smash into pieces** *The cake just broke into pieces when I cut it.* **| come to pieces** *This chair comes to pieces.* **| fall to pieces** *My old dictionary is falling to pieces.* **| piece by piece** *We'll need to take the engine apart, piece by piece.* **| smash sth to pieces, take sth to pieces** *Can I take this jigsaw to pieces?* **| tear sth into/to pieces** *She tore the letter into tiny pieces.*

2 of art/music/writing, etc.

ADJ. **amazing, beautiful, brilliant, fine, good, impressive, lovely, magnificent, marvellous, remarkable, superb, wonderful** *The best pieces include three paintings by El Greco.* **| effective, powerful** *This is an effective piece of writing.* **| atmospheric, dramatic | interesting | favourite | important | ambitious | original** *an original piece written specifically for the producer* **| short** *a short piece by Willie Simmonds on television satire* **| finished | occasional** *an occasional piece on the lives of ordinary people* **| centre** (also **centrepiece**) **| companion** *a companion piece to the portrait of Gauguin's empty chair* **| modern, period, traditional | choral, orchestral, piano | museum**

VERB + PIECE **compose, produce, write** *He hasn't produced a single piece of writing this year.* **| commission | perform, play, sing | read, hear | publish | display, exhibit, show**

PIECE + VERB **be called sth, be entitled sth**

PREP. **~ by** *They are exhibiting two important pieces by Calder.* **| ~ for** *a piece for symphony orchestra, choir and four soloists* **| ~ from** *She read a piece from 'Alice in Wonderland'.* **| ~ of** *a piece of jewellery*

PHRASES **a piece of music/sculpture/work/writing > Note at ART**

pig *noun*

1 **animal**

ADJ. **domestic | feral, wild | sucking/suckling**

VERB + PIG **breed | keep | feed | fatten** *pigs being fattened for slaughter* **| slaughter**

PIG + VERB **grunt, oink, squeal | browse, root** *A pig rooted in the orchard.*

PIG + NOUN **farm, farmer**

2 **person**

ADJ. **fat | greedy | male chauvinist**

PHRASES **make a pig of yourself** *We cooked up a load of pasta and all made pigs of ourselves.*

pigeon *noun*

ADJ. **carrier, homing, racing | feral | wood | clay** *clay pigeon shooting*

QUANT. **flock**

PIGEON + VERB **fly | strut** *A pigeon strutted along the roof, cooing rhythmically.* **| nest, roost | coo, croon**

PIGEON + NOUN **droppings, shit** *(taboo)* **| loft | fancier**

pile *noun*

ADJ. **big, great, high, huge, large, massive, vast | thick | little, small, tiny | neat, tidy | untidy**

VERB + PILE **place sth in/into/on, put sth in/into/on** *I put the letter in the envelope and placed it on the pile. I've put the books into three separate piles.* **| dump** *He dumped a pile of dirty clothes onto the floor.* **| add sth to** *Just add that application to the pile.* **| flick through, leaf through, look through, riffle through, shuffle through, sort through** *I leafed through the pile of documents until I found the one I wanted.*

PREP. **amid a/the ~** *The money lay amid a pile of unopened letters.* **| behind a/the ~** *He was busy behind a pile of papers on his desk.* **| beneath/under a/the ~** *I pulled my diary from beneath a pile of files.* **| in a/the ~** *The washing is in a pile on the floor.* **| on a/the ~** *She closed the magazine and threw it back on the pile.* **| ~ of** *a pile of books I've got piles of work to do.*

PHRASES **be reduced to a pile of sth** *The house was reduced to a pile of rubble.* **| the bottom/top of the pile** *(figurative) The government is doing little to help those on the bottom of the social pile.* **| sort sth into piles** *I sorted the clothes into two piles.*

pile *verb*

ADV. **neatly | up** *We piled the boxes up neatly.*

PREP. **against** *We piled sandbags against the door.* **| on, onto** *She piled food onto our plates.* **| on top of** *They piled stones on top of the mound.* **| with** *a table piled high with magazines*

PHRASES **piled high**

pile-up *noun*

ADJ. **multiple** *a multiple pile-up involving a minibus and five cars* **| eight-vehicle, five-car, etc. | motorway** PILE-UP + VERB **involve sth | happen, occur**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *A young man died in a pile-up on the M1 last night.*

pilgrimage *noun*

ADJ. **annual | spiritual**

VERB + PILGRIMAGE **go on, make**

PILGRIMAGE + NOUN **route**

PREP. **during a/the ~** *There was a ban on political protests during the pilgrimage.* **| on a/the ~** *He was on his annual pilgrimage to Mecca when he fell ill.* **| ~ to** *His parents made a pilgrimage to Lourdes.*

PHRASES **a centre/place of pilgrimage, an object of pilgrimage** *The shrine was an object of pilgrimage.*

pill *noun*

1 **small round flat piece of medicine**

ADJ. **diet, sleeping, vitamin**

QUANT. **bottle**

VERB + PILL **pop, swallow, take | give sb, prescribe (sb)** *The doctor prescribed her some pills to help her sleep.*

2 **the pill: to avoid becoming pregnant**

ADJ. **contraceptive**

VERB + PILL **be on, go on, use | prescribe (sb), put sb on** *Her doctor put her on the pill at 16.* **| come off, stop**

pillar *noun*

ADJ. **massive, solid, squat | supporting | concrete, marble, stone**

PILLAR + VERB **hold sth up, support sth** *The roof is supported by eight massive stone pillars.*

PREP. **behind a/the ~** *I hid behind a pillar when I saw my former teacher.* **| ~ of** *a pillar of rock/smoke*

pillion *noun*

VERB + PILLION **ride** *He drove his motorbike, with me riding pillion.*

PILLION + NOUN **seat | passenger, rider**

PREP. **on the ~** *I made the whole journey on the pillion.*

pillow *noun*

ADJ. **feather | lumpy**

VERB + PILLOW **fluff (up), plump up, pummel, punch** *She plumped up the pillows for her sick daughter.* **| fall/lie/sink back against/on** *He lay back on his pillows and closed his eyes.* **| be propped (up) on | bury your face/head in** *She buried her head in the pillow and wept.*

PILLOW + NOUN **case, slip | fight**

pilot *noun*

ADJ. **experienced, professional, qualified, trained | inexperienced, trainee | airforce, RAF | private | airline, bomber, fighter, glider, helicopter, jet | aerobatic | automatic** *The aircraft was set on automatic pilot. (figurative) She worked on automatic pilot, her hands carrying out the necessary movements.*

PILOT + VERB **fly (sth) | crash (sth) | bale out, eject** *The pilot baled out as the aircraft crashed into the sea.*

PILOT + NOUN **error** *The air crash is thought to have been caused by pilot error.* > Note at JOB

pin *noun*

ADJ. **drawing, safety, tie | brass, bronze, diamond, metal, steel**

VERB + PIN **drive in, stick in** *The map had a lot of little pins stuck into it.* **| remove**

pin *verb*

1 **fasten sth with a pin**

ADV. **carefully** *She carefully pinned the two pieces of cloth together.* **| firmly | back, on, together, up** *Her hair was pinned back. pictures pinned up on the walls*

PREP. **onto** *The poster had been pinned onto a large wooden board.* **| to** *Maps were pinned to the walls.*

PHRASES **pin sth in place**

2 **hold sb in one position**

ADV. **helplessly | down** *He was pinned down on the floor.*

PREP. **against** *He pinned her against the wall.* **| behind** *His arms were pinned behind his back.* **| to** *She was pinned helplessly to the desk.* **PHRASAL VERBS pin sth down**

ADV. **precisely** *The difference between the two approaches is hard to pin down precisely.*

VERB + PIN **be difficult to, be hard to**

pinch *verb*

1 **take hold of sth between your thumb and finger**

ADV. **firmly | gently | sharply | playfully | together** *Apply pressure to the nose by pinching the nostrils firmly together.*

PREP. **between** *He pinched the leaf between his thumb and forefinger.* **| on** *He pinched me sharply on the arm.*

2 **be too tight**

ADV. **badly** *My shoes were pinching badly.*

pineapple *noun*

ADJ. **juicy, sweet**

PINEAPPLE + NOUN **chunks, rings** *a tin of pineapple chunks* > Special page at FRUIT

pink *adj.*

1 **pale red**

VERBS **glow** *The western sky was glowing pink.*

ADV. **very | slightly**

ADJ. **bright, brilliant, fluorescent, hot, shocking, vivid | dark, deep, rich | baby, delicate, light, pale, pastel, soft | dusky | coral, pearly, rose, salmon** > Special page at COLOUR

2 **red in the face**

VERBS **be, glow, look | go, grow, turn** *She could feel herself going pink.*

ADV. **very | faintly, quite, slightly**

ADJ. **bright**

PREP. **with** *He was pink with anger.*

pinnacle *noun*

VERB + PINNACLE **reach** *He had reached the pinnacle of his military career.*

PREP. **at the ~ of** *She is at the pinnacle of her profession.*

pinpoint *verb*

ADV. **exactly, precisely**

VERB + PINPOINT **can/could** *With this you can pinpoint the precise location of the sound.* **| be difficult to**

PREP. **as** *Stress at work was pinpointed as the cause of his illness.*

pint *noun*

1 **measure of liquid > Note at MEASURE**

2 **pint of beer**

VERB + PINT **consume, drink, have | sip | down, drain, finish, knock back, sink** *He could sink a pint faster than anyone else I knew.* **| draw (sb), draw off, pull (sb)** *I got the barman to pull me another pint.* **| buy (sb), order, stand sb** *He stood me a pint in the pub after work.*

PINT + NOUN **glass**

pioneer *noun*

ADJ. **early | true**

PIONEER + NOUN **spirit | missionary**

PREP. **~ in** *one of the early pioneers in plastic surgery*

pipe *noun*

1 **hollow tube that carries gas/liquid**

ADJ. **underground | gas, sewage, waste, water** *the hot and cold water pipes* **| brake, central heating, hose** (also **hosepipe**) **| drainage, drain** (also **drainpipe**), **exhaust, inlet, outfall, outflow, outlet, overflow, service, supply | blocked, broken, burst, cracked, frozen, leaking | concrete, copper, iron, lead, metal, plastic, steel**

QUANT. **length** *to join two lengths of pipe together Copper pipe is sold in lengths.*

VERB + PIPE **lay, run** *He laid the pipes under the floorboards.* **| connect | insulate, lag** *Insulating your pipes will save on your heating bills.*

PIPE + VERB **lead, pass through sth, run** *The pipes lead into the river. The pipes will have to pass through the wall.* **| burst, freeze, leak**

PIPE + NOUN **cutter, fitter | insulation**

PREP. **through a/the ~ | ~ for** *the pipe for the hot water* **| ~ from, ~ to** *The pipe from the boiler to the bath.*

2 **used for smoking tobacco**

ADJ. **clay | peace**

VERB + PIPE **smoke | light | fill | draw on, puff away at/on, puff on | knock out** *He knocked out his pipe in the big glass ashtray.*

PIPE + NOUN **smoker | tobacco | rack**

PHRASES **the bowl/stem of a pipe**

pipeline *noun*

ADJ. **gas, oil, water**

VERB + PIPELINE **build, construct, lay**

PIPELINE + VERB **supply sth** *The pipeline supplies Jordan with 15 per cent of its crude oil.* | **pass through sth, run through sth** *The pipeline runs through central Mozambique.* | **link sth** *The pipeline links the refinery with the port.*

PIPELINE + NOUN **network, system**

PREP. **in the ~** *(figurative)* (= being discussed or prepared) *Important changes are already in the pipeline.* | **~ across** *a pipeline across the desert* | **~ through** *the construction of a gas pipeline through Morocco*

pistol *noun*

ADJ. **automatic, machine, semi-automatic | unlicensed | loaded | air, water | duelling, starting** *runners waiting for the starting pistol*

VERB + PISTOL **load | draw, produce** *He drew his pistol, aimed and fired.* **| cock | aim, level, point, raise | fire | carry** *There were two of them, both carrying pistols.*

PISTOL + NOUN **shot**

PHRASES **at pistol point** *He was robbed in his hotel at pistol point.*

pit *noun*

1 **hole**

ADJ. **deep, shallow | bottomless | black, dark | chalk, gravel** *a disused gravel pit*

VERB + PIT **dig**

2 **coal mine**

ADJ. **open** *They extract the mineral from open pits and underground mines.*

VERB + PIT **go down** *He went down the pit at the age of fifteen.*

PIT + NOUN **village** *There's no more work in these pit villages.* **| closure**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Most boys in the village worked in the pits.*

pitch *noun*

1 sports field

ADJ. **all-weather, grass, non-turf, synthetic | waterlogged | cricket, hockey, football, rugby**

VERB + PITCH **invade, run onto** *The pitch was invaded by angry fans.*

PITCH + NOUN **invasion** *Police could do nothing to stop the pitch invasion.*

PREP. **off the ~** *The players have just come off the pitch. Negotiations about his transfer are continuing off the pitch.* **| on a/the ~** *He was the best player on the pitch today.*

2 strength of feeling

ADJ. **fever, high** *Excitement rose to fever pitch the day before the procession.*

VERB + PITCH **reach, rise to**

PREP. **~ of** *to reach a high pitch of excitement*

3 of a musical note

ADJ. **high, low | correct** *The instrument is not tuned to the correct pitch.*

VERB + PITCH **fall in, rise in** *Her voice fell slightly in pitch as she grew older.*

PHRASES **have absolute/perfect pitch** (= to be able to recognize or produce any given note)

pitch *verb*

1 **fall over/throw sb**

ADV. **violently** *The explosion pitched her violently into the air.* | **forward, headlong**

PREP. **from** *There was a loud bang and he was pitched from his seat.* | **into** *If they hit any unseen obstacle they would be pitched headlong into the snow.* | **out of**

2 **of a ship/aircraft**

ADV. **violently** *The boat pitched violently in a heavy swell.*

3 **set sth at a particular level**

ADV. **deliberately** *Estimates have been deliberately pitched on the conservative side.*

PREP. **at** *The test is pitched at a high GCSE standard.*

PHRASES **pitch sth high/low** *The price has been pitched quite high. Her voice was pitched low.*

pitfall *noun*

ADJ. **obvious | common | hidden | possible, potential, unforeseen** *We need to be alert to potential pitfalls.*

VERB + PITFALL **be fraught with, be full of, have, hold** *Trading in a foreign country can be fraught with pitfalls.* **| avoid | overcome**

PITFALL + VERB **await sb** *Numerous pitfalls await unsuspecting investors.*

PREP. **~ for** *Buying property holds many pitfalls for the unwary.* **| ~ in** *pitfalls in the interpretation of statistics*

pity *noun*

1 **feeling of sadness for sb/sth**

ADJ. **immense**

VERB + PITY **be filled with, be full of, feel, have | show | arouse, inspire** *an unfortunate man who inspires pity*

PREP. **out of ~** *I threw the child some money out of pity.* **| without ~** *a cruel leader without pity* **| ~ for** *She was full of pity for him.*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of pity, have pity on sb** *We begged him to have pity on us.* **| an object of pity** *Deaf people do not want to be seen as objects of pity.* **| take pity on sb** *I took pity on him and allowed him to stay.*

2 **a pity: sth that makes you feel disappointed**

ADJ. **great, real, terrible | slight**

PREP. **~ about** *The place was lovely, but it was a pity about the weather.*

PHRASES **a bit of a pity, rather/such a pity** *That would be rather a pity, wouldn't it?* **| what a pity** *What a pity you didn't tell me earlier!*

pizza *noun*

ADJ. **take-away**

QUANT. **piece, slice** *a slice of cheese and tomato pizza*

PIZZA + NOUN **topping | parlour, place, restaurant** *Let's go to that new pizza place tonight.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *What do you want on your pizza?*

place *noun*

1 particular position/area

ADJ. **good, great, ideal | terrible** *It was a terrible place to live.* **| safe** *Keep your purse in a safe place.* **| right, suitable** *I happened to be in the right place at the right time.* **| wrong | beautiful, nice** *It's a nice place you've got here.* **| interesting | busy, crowded | quiet | strange | faraway, out-of-the way, remote** *holidays in faraway places* **| public | hiding, market, meeting, resting**

VERB + PLACE **mark** *I forgot to mark my place* (= in a book). **| lose** *I've lost my place in the script.*

PLACE + NOUN **name**

PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *We had dinner at a crowded place in Soho.* **| in ~** *It was held in place with tape. There will be rain in places.* **| into ~** *She tapped the lid into place.* **| out of ~** *Some of these files seem to be out of place.*

PHRASES **all over the place** (= everywhere), **no place/not the place** *This is not the place for an argument.* **| a place of birth/business/interest/learning/work/worship** *Please state your date and place of birth.*

2 seat/position for sb/sth

VERB + PLACE **sit (down) in, take** *We took our places round the table.* **| go back to, return to** *The boy returned to his place* **| keep (sb), save (sb) | lose** *I've lost my place in the queue.* **| give up | change, swap** *He swapped places with me.* **| show sb to** *She showed them to their places.* **| lay, set** *I've laid four places for dinner.*

PLACE + NOUN **mat | card**

PHRASES **the place of honour** *He took the place of honour on his hostess's right.*

3 role/position/function

ADJ. **central, important, prominent | special** *He holds a special place in her affections* **| proper, rightful**

VERB + PLACE **have, hold, occupy** *Housing occupied a prominent place in the discussions.* **| know** *She knows her place.* **| forget** *I'm sorry?I was forgetting my place.* **| restore sth to** *He has been restored to his rightful place in the community.* **| put sb in** *At first he tried to take charge of the meeting but I soon put her in her place.*

PREP. **~ in** *Dance has a central place in their culture.*

PHRASES **it's not sb's place to** *It's not your place to correct her.* **| a place in history** *a statesman who is assured a place in history*

4 **opportunity to study at a college, play for a team, etc.**

ADJ. **free | college, nursery, school, university**

VERB + PLACE **get, win | award sb, offer sb | lose** *He was injured and lost his place in the side.*

PREP. **~ at/in** *He was awarded a place at Leeds University.* **| ~ on** *She got a place on the French course.*

5 **sb's position at the end of a race, competition, etc.**

VERB + PLACE **finish in, take** *She took third place.*

PLACE + VERB **go to sb** *Second place went to the Moroccan athlete.*

place *verb*

1 **(often be placed) put sth in a position**

ADV. **carefully, neatly | haphazardly** *The books were placed haphazardly on the shelf.* **| firmly** *She produced a long silver whistle and placed it firmly between her lips.* **| gently, lightly | centrally** *The table was placed centrally.* **| ideally, conveniently, uniquely, well** *The hotel is well placed for restaurants, bars and clubs.* **| judiciously, strategically** *There are candles strategically placed?just in case we have another power cut.* **| side by side** *The boots, neatly placed side by side, were near the bed.*

PREP. **between, in, inside, on, over, under, etc.** *He placed the letter in a drawer.*

2 **(often be placed) put sb in a situation**

ADV. **firmly | ideally, conveniently, uniquely, well** *The company is ideally placed to win the contract.*

VERB + PLACE **atttempt to, try to | be difficult to, be hard to** *children who are difficult to place in foster homes*

PREP. **in, on** *an attempt to place the question firmly back on the political agenda*

PHRASES **an attempt to place sth**

3 **emphasis, value, blame, etc.**

ADV. **squarely**

PREP. **on** *The blame was placed squarely on the doctor.*

plague *noun*

ADJ. **bubonic | great** *Nearly a third of the population died in the Great Plague.*

QUANT. **outbreak** *a decline in population following outbreaks of plague*

VERB + PLAGUE **suffer** *The region has just suffered a plague of locusts.* **| be decimated by, be destroyed by**

PLAGUE + VERB **break out, start, strike (sth)** *Bubonic plague struck London in 1665.* **| spread**

PREP. **~ of** *The city is suffering a plague of rats.* > Special page at ILLNESS

plain *adj.*

1 **simple/not decorated**

VERBS **be, look, seem**

ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, completely** *The dress was absolutely plain, but quite stunning.* **| fairly, quite, rather** *The food was fairly plain, but well cooked.*

PHRASES **plain blue, white, etc.** *a plain white shirt*

2 **not beautiful**

VERBS **be, look**

ADV. **extremely, very** *She looked very plain and dowdy.* **| rather** *a rather plain woman*

3 **clear**

VERBS **be, seem | become | make sth** *They made it plain that they were against the idea.*

ADV. **very | absolutely, perfectly, quite** *Within weeks, it became perfectly plain that we were in the grip of a tyrant.* **| increasingly | fairly, pretty, reasonably**

PREP. **to** *It is all quite plain to me.*

plain *noun*

ADJ. **open** *The horses galloped across the open plains.* **| rolling, sweeping** *miles of rolling plain, made fertile by the river* **| great, unbroken, vast | flat | fertile** *fertile plains suitable for farming* **| grassy | coastal**

PREP. **across a/the ~** *Cattle move freely across the grassy plain.* **| in a/the ~** *the Olduvai Gorge in the vast plain of Tanzania* **| on a/the ~** *Nothing grew on the plain.*

plaintiff *noun*

VERB + PLAINTIFF **compensate**

PLAINTIFF + VERB **bring an action (against sb), sue sb | allege sth, argue sth, claim sth, contend sth, seek sth, submit sth** *The plaintiff claimed that the correct procedures had not been followed.* **| obtain sth, prove sth** *The plaintiffs obtained an injunction in the High Court.*

PREP. **against the ~** *Costs were awarded against the plaintiff.* **| on behalf of the ~** *the lawyer appearing on behalf of the plaintiff*

plan *noun*

1 **for future**

ADJ. **ambitious, audacious, grand, grandiose** *The government has ambitious plans for prison reform.* | **future** | **long-term, three-year, etc.** | **immediate** *What are your immediate plans?* | **new** | **original** | **five-point, three-point, etc.** *a three-point action plan to improve hygiene at work* | **definite, firm** *A spokeswoman confirmed there was no definite plan to stage a concert in the park.* | **detailed** | **good** *The best plan is for me to meet you at the theatre.* | **best-laid** *Even the best-laid plans can go wrong.* | **brilliant, clever, cunning, fiendish, ingenious** | **feasible, realistic, sound** *We need to develop a sound business plan.* | **impractical** | **controversial** | **master** | **contingency** *Do you have any contingency plans if the scheme doesn't work?* | **secret** | **action** | **strategic** | **business, career, corporate, development, economic, financial** | **travel** | **marriage** | **peace**

VERB + PLAN **have** | **come up with, develop, devise, draw up, formulate, make, prepare, work out** *I like to make plans well in advance.* | **present, propose, put forward** | **discuss** | **agree** *The moves contravene the peace plan agreed by both sides.* | **announce, launch, outline, unveil** *The minister unveiled a new plan for reducing traffic accidents.* | **go ahead with, implement, press ahead with** | **keep to, stick to** *Let's stick to our original plan* | **cancel, change** | **abandon, cancel, drop, scrap, shelve** | **fight, oppose** *Local residents have vowed to fight plans to build a new road.*

PLAN + VERB **be afoot** *Plans are afoot to stage a new opera.* | **be aimed at sth** *The government launched a five-year plan aimed at diversifying the economy.* | **call** *dam have been shelved following protests.*

PHRASES **a plan of action/attack/campaign** *To change anything in this organization, we'll need a plan of action.* | **put a plan into action/effect/ operation**

2 **map**

ADJ. **street, town** | **seating**

PLAN + VERB **show sth** *The plan shows the exact location of the house.* for sth, envisage sth, involve sth *The plan calls for investments totalling $100 million.* | **contain sth,**

include sth *The plan contains four main elements.* **| succeed | fail, fall through, founder**

PREP. **~ for** *The president will now press ahead with his plans for reform.* **| ~ to** *Plans to build a*

plan *verb*

ADV. **ahead, in advance | originally** *The government had originally planned to launch the review in June.* **| carefully, meticulously | intelligently, rationally | centrally** *centrally planned economies*

VERB + PLAN **have to, need to** *You will need to plan your shopping carefully in advance.*

PREP. **for** *We must plan for the future. A meeting has been planned for early next year.* **| on** *I had planned on staying here for two or three years.*

PHRASES **go as planned** *Everything went exactly as planned.* **| plan sth down to the last detail**

plane *noun*

1 aeroplane

ADJ. **private**

VERB + PLANE **catch, get, take** *She caught the first plane out.* **| miss | board, get on | get off, step off** *I fell in love with the city the moment I stepped off the plane.* **| fly, pilot | charter**

PLANE + VERB **take off | come down, land | crash | cruise, fly | carry sb/sth** *The plane was carrying 350 people.*

PLANE + NOUN **crash, disaster**

PREP. **by ~** *We left by plane for Peking.* **| in a/the ~** *I've never flown in a plane.* **| on a/the ~** *The president was never on the plane at all.*

2 flat surface

ADJ. **horizontal, parallel, vertical**

3 standard/level of thought/activity

ADJ. **higher** *With practice, an athlete can reach a higher plane of achievement.* **| mental, mystical, spiritual**

PHRASES **be/exist/function/operate on a different plane** *Like all talented musicians, he operates on a different plane from most people.*

planet *noun*

ADJ. **distant | alien, unknown | another** *He looked like something from another planet!*

PLANET + VERB **orbit** *How many planets orbit the sun?*

PREP. **from a/the ~** *creatures from an alien planet* **| on a/the ~** *She believes there is life on other planets.*

plank *noun*

ADJ. **timber, wooden | loose | rotten**

PHRASES **a plank of wood**

planning *noun*

ADJ. **careful, detailed, meticulous, thoughtful | initial** *the initial planning stage* **| advance, forward** *The trip calls for careful advance planning.* **| pre-match, pre-retirement, etc.** *Deciding the agenda is the most vital aspect of pre-meeting planning.* **| long-range, long-term | short-range, short-term | corporate | family** *They give free advice on contraception at the family planning clinic.* **| town, urban | economic, educational, environmental, financial, military, strategic**

VERB + PLANNING **call for, demand, need, require | do** *The industry needs to do some long-term planning.*

PLANNING + NOUN **phase, stage** *The scheme is still at the planning stage.* **| process | decisions | meeting | application | approval, consent, permission** *We've applied for planning permission to build an extension to the house.* **| authority, committee, department**

PREP. **in the ~** *The festival was four years in the planning.* **| ~ for** *Planning for future development is vital for the community.*

plant *noun*

1 **living thing**

ADJ. **attractive | delicate | wild | rare | garden, house, indoor, potted | exotic, tropical | medicinal | food** *food plants of rare butterflies* **| crop | poisonous | perennial | aquatic, desert, marsh | bedding, climbing, flowering, ornamental | herbaceous, leguminous | strawberry, tomato, etc.**

VERB + PLANT **cultivate, grow | water**

PLANT + VERB **develop, grow | flourish | die | absorb sth, consume sth** *Plants absorb carbon in the form of carbon dioxide.*

PLANT + NOUN **roots | growth | life** *Much of the local plant life has been destroyed by the chemicals.* **| species, variety | material, matter, tissue | pot | science**

2 **factory**

ADJ. **industrial | assembly, manufacturing, production | car | nuclear, power | processing, reprocessing, sewage, treatment, water-treatment** *a waste reprocessing plant* **| chemical, petrochemical**

VERB + PLANT **build | dismantle | manage, run**

PLANT + NOUN **manager**

plant *verb*

1 **put plants/seeds in the ground to grow**

ADV. **carefully | deliberately** *weeds that had not been deliberately planted*

PREP. **in** *Carefully plant your cutting in the soil.* **| with** *The garden was planted with roses and other shrubs.*

PHRASES **densely/thickly planted** *a thickly planted orange grove* **| freshly/newly/recently planted**

2 **put sth firmly in a place/position**

ADV. **firmly, solidly, squarely** *She planted a kiss squarely on his cheek.*

PREP. **on** *He was determined to keep both feet firmly planted on dry land.*

plantation *noun*

1 **for growing a crop**

ADJ. **coconut, coffee, cotton, rubber, sugar, tea, etc.**

VERB + PLANTATION **work (on)** *Hundreds of slaves worked on the plantations.*

PLANTATION + NOUN **owner, worker | economy | house**

2 **land planted with trees**

ADJ. **conifer, eucalyptus, etc. | forestry**

PREP. **~ of** *a plantation of oaks*

plaque *noun*

1 on the wall

ADJ. **commemorative, memorial**

VERB + PLAQUE **put up** *The local historical society put up a plaque at the site of the battle.* **| unveil**

PLAQUE + VERB **be dedicated to sb, commemorate sb/sth, honour sb | mark sth, record sth** *A plaque marks the place where the first printing press was built.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *Some Latin words were engraved on the plaque.* **| ~ on** *a plaque on the wall* **| ~ to** *There is a commemorative plaque to the artist in the village hall.*

2 substance on teeth

ADJ. **dental**

VERB + PLAQUE **remove**

PLAQUE + VERB **accumulate, build up**

plaster *noun*

1 **smooth covering for a wall**

ADJ. **fresh | chipped, cracked, crumbling, peeling**

QUANT. **chunk, flake** *Each blow of the hammer removed a great chunk of plaster.*

VERB + PLASTER **apply** *Apply the plaster evenly.*

PLASTER + VERB **come off (sth), fall off (sth), peel off (sth)** *Plaster was peeling off the ceiling.*

PLASTER + NOUN **cast** *A plaster cast of Madame Fournier stood in the artist's studio.*

2 **for covering a cut**

ADJ. **sticking**

VERB + PLASTER **put on | peel off, take off**

3 **for protecting broken bones**

PLASTER + NOUN **cast** *Her broken leg was put in a plaster cast*

PREP. **in ~** *Your arm will have to be in plaster for at least six weeks.*

plastic *noun*

ADJ. **heavy-duty, reinforced, strong, sturdy, tough | thin | flexible | rigid | moulded | clear, see-through, transparent | shiny | biodegradable | foam | sticky-backed**

VERB + PLASTIC **make, manufacture, produce | recycle | make/mould sth from/in/(out) of** *dashboards moulded in plastic* **| cover sth with, wrap sth in**

plate *noun*

1 **for food**

ADJ. **dessert, dinner, serving, side, soup | clean, dirty** *The sink was full of dirty plates.* **| empty, full**

VERB + PLATE **clear, empty** *I could see how hungry she was from the way she cleared her plate.* **| clear (away), collect**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *She ate everything on her plate.* **| ~ of** *a plate of rice*

2 **piece of metal with writing on**

ADJ. **licence, number** *The driver was arrested for having false number plates on his car.* **| name** *He read the brass name plate by the door.*

plateau *noun*

ADJ. **high | broad, rolling, vast | central**

VERB + PLATEAU **reach** *(figurative) The children's standard of reading seems to have reached a plateau* (= they are not making any more progress).

PLATEAU + VERB **overlook sth**

PREP. **across a/the ~** *A terrible storm swept across the plateau.*

platform *noun*

1 **raised floor**

ADJ. **high, raised | wooden**

VERB + PLATFORM **mount, stand on** *The king mounted the platform to loud cheers.* **| appear on, speak from | share** *Union leaders shared the platform with business leaders in a debate on the future of the industry.*

2 **at a railway station**

ADJ. **railway, station**

PREP. **along a/the ~** *He ran along the platform to catch the train.* **| at ~** *The train at platform 3 is the 13.15 service to Liverpool.* **| from ~** *The next train to depart from platform 2 is the 10.30 for London Paddington.* **| on ~** *the waiting room on platform 7*

3 **in politics**

ADJ. **political | election, electoral**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the promises in their election platform* **| on a/the ~ of** *They fought the election on a platform of economic reform.*

platonic *adj.*

VERBS be | become | remain

ADV. purely, strictly *Their friendship remained purely platonic.*

plausible *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | make sth | find sth, judge sth, think sth** *He did not think it plausible that all the differences could be explained in this way.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, terribly, very | entirely, perfectly, quite** *a perfectly plausible theory* **| not remotely** *There was no way the story could be made to sound even remotely plausible.* **| barely, hardly | reasonably | superficially | intuitively, psychologically** *This explanation fits the facts and is psychologically plausible.*

play *noun*

1 **activity done for fun**

ADJ. **outdoor | creative, imaginative, pretend**

PLAY + NOUN **area | equipment | scheme** *The local council runs some good play schemes.*

PREP. **at ~** *Children spend hours at play.* **| in ~** *I only said it in play* (= not seriously).

2 **drama**

ADJ. **one-act | radio, television | musical | miracle, morality, mystery, nativity, passion** *The children always perform a nativity play every Christmas.*

VERB + PLAY **review** *The play is reviewed in most of today's papers.*

PREP. **~ about** *a play about teenage runaways* > Note at PERFORMANCE(for more verbs)

3 **in sport**

ADJ. **excellent, good | fair | dangerous, dirty, foul, rough, violent** *He was sent off for foul play.*

VERB + PLAY **stop** *Rain stopped play 40 minutes into the match.*

PREP. **in ~** *The ball is still in play.* **| out of ~** *He kicked the ball out of play.*

PHRASES **at close/start of play (in cricket)** *At close of play he had scored 38 not out.*

play *verb*

1 **of children**

VERB + PLAY **let sb** *The other children wouldn't let him play.*

PREP. **at** *Let's play at pirates!* **| with** *a little girl playing with her toys*

2 **game/sport**

ADV. **brilliantly, excellently, superbly, well | badly**

VERB + PLAY **learn to | teach sb to | be difficult to, be easy to | see sb, watch sb**

PREP. **against** *United are difficult to play against.* **| at** *I've never played John at tennis.* **| for** *He plays for Aston Villa.* **| in** *She has played in every match this season.* **| with** *playing cards with her mother*

3 **music**

ADV. **brilliantly, excellently, superbly, well | badly | live** *The band will be playing live in the studio.*

VERB + PLAY **learn to** *learning to play the violin* **| teach sb to | be easy to, be difficult to** *a piece that is relatively easy to play* **| hear sb** *Have you ever heard her play?*

player *noun*

1 of a game

ADJ. **accomplished, brilliant, dangerous, excellent, exciting, fine, gifted, good, great, outstanding, strong, talented, top, world-class** *one of the country's top tennis players* **| star** *The club were forced to sell their star player.* **| poor** *He's a poor player, but he tries very hard.* **| average** *These boots are for the professional rather than for the average player.* **| experienced | aggressive | attacking, midfield** (both in football) **| handicap, scratch** (both in golf) **| basketball, bridge, chess, rugby, snooker, tennis, etc.**

2 of a musical instrument

ADJ. **accomplished, gifted, great, outstanding, talented | bass, horn, keyboard, sax, etc.**

3 in business

ADJ. **key, leading, major**

PREP. **~ in** *Their firm is a major player in the London property market.*

playground *noun*

ADJ. **children's | adventure | school**

PLAYGROUND + NOUN **bully, bullying | equipment | duty** *teachers on playground duty*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *children in the school playground*

playgroup *noun*

ADJ. **nursery, pre-school | local**

VERB + PLAYGROUP **go to | run | start** *She started a playgroup in her own house.* **| start (at)** *He'll grow in confidence once he starts at playgroup.*

PLAYGROUP + NOUN **leader**

PREP. **at ~** *She goes shopping while her little girl's at playgroup.*

plea *noun*

1 **request**

ADJ. **desperate, dramatic, strong, urgent | heartfelt, impassioned, passionate | repeated | personal**

VERB + PLEA **make | ignore**

PREP. **despite a/the ~, in spite of a/the ~** *Despite pleas from his mother, the gunman refused to give himself up.* **| ~ by/from** *Hospital visiting hours were extended in response to pleas from patients.* **| ~ for** *The director of the charity made an impassioned plea for help.*

2 **statement in court**

ADJ. **guilty | not guilty**

VERB + PLEA **enter | hear | change | accept, sustain** *The prosecution accepted a plea of manslaughter.* **| support | reject**

PLEA + NOUN **bargain, bargaining**

PREP. **~ for** *A senior judge heard a plea for damages on behalf of the accident victims.* **| ~ of** *Her solicitor entered a plea of guilty on her behalf.*

plead *verb*

1 **ask sb for sth in a very serious way**

ADV. **almost** *She was almost pleading with him.* **| silently | successfully** *She successfully pleaded their cause with the mayor.*

PREP. **for** *They pleaded for mercy.* **| with** *His eyes silently pleaded with her.*

2 **say that you are guilty/not guilty**

PHRASES **plead guilty/not guilty** *He pleaded not guilty to the murder.*

pleasant *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | find sth**

ADV. **exceedingly, extraordinarily, extremely, very | perfectly** *His colleagues were perfectly pleasant and friendly but they had their own lives to lead.* **| less than, not altogether, not entirely, not exactly, not particularly** *It was not a particularly pleasant experience.* **| almost | fairly, quite, rather, reasonably | enough** *It was a pleasant enough day's journey.* **| undeniably**

PREP. **to** *He has always been extremely pleasant to me.*

please *verb*

ADV. **enormously** *The result pleased us enormously.*

VERB + PLEASE **be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *Some children are very difficult to please.* **| be easy to | be eager to** *He's always very eager to please.* **| try to | fail to** *The planning policy failed to please anyone.*

PHRASES **there's no pleasing sb** *There's just no pleasing some people.* (= Some people are impossible to please.)

pleased *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **awfully, dead, especially, extremely, genuinely, immensely, inordinately, more than, only too, particularly, really, ridiculously, very, well | far from, not at all, not best** *She seemed surprised and not at all pleased to see him.* **| fairly, mildly, pretty, quite, rather, reasonably | half** *He laughed, half pleased and half resentful.* **| enough** *They seemed pleased enough with the result.* **| apparently | clearly, evidently, obviously | quietly, secretly | oddly, strangely | always** *I am always pleased to hear from former students.*

PREP. **about** *pleased about the move* **| at** *She seemed pleased at our success.* **| by** *You must be pleased by their confidence in you.* **| for** *I'm very pleased for you both.* **| with** *We are immensely pleased with this result.*

pleasing *adj.*

VERBS **be | find sth**

ADV. **extremely, particularly, very | quite, rather | aesthetically** *aesthetically pleasing colour combinations*

PREP. **to** *a design which is pleasing to the eye*

pleasurable *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | make sth | find sth** *activities which they find pleasurable and rewarding*

ADV. **deeply, highly, intensely, very | mildly, quite** *a feeling of mildly pleasurable excitement*

pleasure *noun*

1 enjoyment

ADJ. **considerable, deep, enormous, great, intense** *It gives me enormous pleasure to welcome my next guest.* | **genuine, real** | **pure, sheer** | **quiet** *The audience nodded with quiet pleasure at her remark.* | **obvious** | **endless** *Children find endless pleasure in playing with water.* | **malicious, perverse, sadistic** | **vicarious** *He gained vicarious pleasure from watching people laughing and joking.* | **aesthetic, physical, sensual, sexual**

VERB + PLEASURE **bring (sb), give (sb), provide** | **derive, find, gain, get, take** *My grandfather got immense pleasure out of life until the end.*

PREP. **for ~** *Some people read for pleasure, and others read to study.* | **with ~** *His eyes lit up with pleasure.* | **~ at** *He beamed with pleasure at seeing her.* | **~ from** *She was deriving a perverse pleasure from his discomfort.* | **~ in** *They took great pleasure in each other's company.*

PHRASES **business and pleasure** *I often meet useful people at parties, so I combine business with pleasure.* | **have the pleasure of sth** *May I have the pleasure of the next dance?*

2 sth that makes you happy

ADJ. **great** | **doubtful, dubious** *the dubious pleasure of growing up in the public eye* | **little, simple** *one of life's little pleasures* | **fleeting, momentary, temporary**

VERB + PLEASURE **have** *(formal) I hope to have the pleasure of meeting you again.* | **enjoy** | **forego**

PLEASURE + NOUN **boat, craft**

PHRASES **the pleasures of life** *She enjoys the simple pleasures of life.* | **the pleasures of the flesh** *Priests promise to forego the pleasures of the flesh.*

pledge *noun*

ADJ. **campaign, election, manifesto | spending** *spending pledges given by the government*

VERB + PLEDGE **give (sb), make, sign | fulfil, honour | betray, go back on, renege on**

PREP. **~ on** *manifesto pledges on greater public spending*

PHRASES **a pledge of support**

plight *noun*

ADJ. **desperate, sad, sorry, tragic** *the desperate plight of flood victims* **| economic, financial**

VERB + PLIGHT **recognize, see | draw attention to, highlight, publicize** *He has been sleeping rough in the streets to highlight the plight of the homeless.* **| alleviate, ease | ignore**

plot *noun*

1 **plan**

ADJ. **fiendish | alleged | assassination, blackmail, coup, death, murder**

VERB + PLOT **hatch | uncover | foil**

PREP. **~ against** *They had taken part in a Jacobite plot against William III.* **| ~ by** *The police claim to have uncovered a plot by terrorists to assassinate the president.*

2 **events in a story**

ADJ. **simple | complex, complicated**

VERB + PLOT **construct** *She has constructed a complicated plot, with a large cast of characters.*

PLOT + VERB **develop, unfold**

PLOT + NOUN **development**

PHRASES **a twist in/of the plot** *There are several unexpected twists in the plot before the murderer is revealed.*

3 **piece of land**

ADJ. **garden, vegetable | farm, subsistence | building | burial | small | 10-acre, 12-acre, etc.** *They own a five-acre plot of land.* **| family, private**

VERB + PLOT **work**

PLOT + VERB **measure sth** *The plots each measure 10 metres by 20 metres.*

PHRASES **a plot of land**

plot *verb*

1 **make secret plans**

ADV. **allegedly | secretly**

PREP. **against** *He was arrested on suspicion of plotting against the king.* **| with** *Taylor plotted with his daughter to murder her husband.*

PHRASES **accuse/suspect sb of plotting sth**

2 **mark sth on a chart**

ADV. **accurately** *The positions of the archaeological finds are accurately plotted.*

PREP. **against** *Greenhouse temperature can be plotted against plant growth.* **| on** *plotting the figures on a graph*

plough *noun*

ADJ. **heavy**

VERB + PLOUGH **draw, pull** *They need two horses to pull these heavy ploughs.* **| guide**

PLOUGH + NOUN **boy, team | furrow**

ploy *noun*

ADJ. **clever, effective, good, useful | deliberate, tactical | favourite, old, usual | marketing, sales**

VERB + PLOY **resort to, try**

PLOY + VERB **work**

PREP. **~ for** *a ploy for deflecting criticism*

plug *noun*

1 **electric**

ADJ. **electric | mains | three-pin, two-pin** *The iron is fitted with a three-pin plug.* **| jack | fused**

VERB + PLUG **pull (out), take out | fit, wire | be fitted with | change**

2 **for a sink, etc.**

ADJ. **basin, bath, sink**

VERB + PLUG **put in | pull out**

PLUG + NOUN **hole** (also **plughole)**

plumbing *noun*

ADJ. **cold water, hot water | domestic, household**

VERB + PLUMBING **put in** *They're going to have to put in new plumbing.*

PLUMBING + NOUN **arrangements, system | fittings | tools | job, work | leak**

plunge *noun*

ADJ. **headlong | cold** *Bathers would go straight from the hot room to take a cold plunge.*

VERB + PLUNGE **take** *The river takes a headlong plunge into a maelstrom of rocks and boulders. (figurative) He finally took the plunge and gave in his notice.*

PREP. **~ into** *a plunge into the icy water* **| ~ to** *a plunge to the ground*

plunge *verb*

ADV. **downwards, forward, head first, headlong** *The car plunged headlong into the river.* **| in** *The pool was declared open and eager swimmers plunged in.*

PREP. **down** *The bus came off the road and plunged down an embankment.* **| from** *He plunged from a tenth floor window.* **| into** *(often figurative) She plunged straight into her story.* **| off** *The car had plunged off the road.*

PHRASES **plunge to your death** *A climber plunged 300 feet to his death.*

plutonium *noun*

ADJ. **radioactive | civil | military, weapons-grade**

VERB + PLUTONIUM **extract, produce, recover** *one tonne of plutonium extracted from spent nuclear fuel*

PLUTONIUM + NOUN **fuel**

pneumonia *noun*

ADJ. **severe | bronchial, double | bacterial**

QUANT. **bout**

VERB + PNEUMONIA **have, suffer from | catch, contract, develop, get | die from/of | cause** > Special page at ILLNESS

pocket *noun*

1 for keeping things in

ADJ. **bulging** *tourists with bulging pockets* | **deep** | **zipped** | **coat, jacket, shirt, trouser, waistcoat, etc.** | **back, breast, hip, inner, inside, outer, top** | **door, seat** *Please read the safety leaflet in the seat pocket in front of you.* (= on a plane) | **secret** *Forged passports were found in a secret pocket in the suitcase.*

VERB + POCKET **feel in, fish in, fumble in, go through, rummage in, search** *He went through all his pockets looking for his key.* | **reach in** *She reached in her pocket and pulled out her phone.* | **dip into** *(figurative) Once again club members have had to dip into their pockets* (= spend their own money) *to buy new equipment.* | **fish/get/pull/take sth from/out of** *I fished the number out of my pocket and dialled.* | **empty, turn out** *The security guard made them empty their pockets.* | **put/stuff/thrust sth in/into** *She stuffed the money into her pocket and walked out. He walked past with his collar turned up and his hands thrust into his pockets.* | **fill, stuff** *We filled our pockets with apples.* | **line** *(figurative) Dishonest officials have been lining their pockets with public funds.* | **pick** *He caught a boy trying to pick his pocket on the bus.*

POCKET + VERB **bulge** *My pockets were bulging with loose change.*

POCKET + NOUN **lining**

PREP. **in the/your ~** *My wallet was in the back pocket of my jeans.* | **out of the/your ~** *He took a few coins out of his pocket.*

PHRASES **hands in pockets** *He stood there, hands in pockets.* | **the lining of a pocket**

2 small area/group

ADJ. **small** | **isolated**

PHRASES **a pocket of resistance** *Government forces are mopping up the last pockets of resistance.*

poem *noun*

ADJ. **fine, good, great, magnificent, remarkable | collected, selected** *His collected poems were published after the war.* **| anonymous | autobiographical | sad | dramatic, epic, lyric, heroic, narrative | prose | love | war | humorous, nonsense, satirical**

QUANT. **anthology, collection**

VERB + POEM **compose, write | read** *She read the poem aloud.* **| recite | learn by heart | dedicate** *He dedicated the poem to his mother.*

POEM + VERB **be addressed to sb**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *In his autobiographical poem ‘The Prelude’, Wordsworth describes his boyhood in the Lakes.* **| ~ about** *a poem about cultural differences*

poet *noun*

ADJ. **accomplished, good, great | distinguished, famous, well-known | foremost** *the foremost poet of his generation* **| minor | unknown | aspiring | contemporary | epic, lyric | Romantic, metaphysical**

VERB + POET **inspire** *These river banks have inspired poets for many centuries.*

POET + VERB **write sth**

poetic *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound**

ADV. **very | truly** *The piece ends with a truly poetic slow movement.* **| almost | quite | self-consciously** *His writing is rather self-consciously poetic.*

poetry *noun*

ADJ. **good, great | classical | contemporary, modern | 18th-century, etc. | dramatic, epic, heroic, lyric, narrative | Modernist, Romantic, symbolist, etc. | love, pastoral, war, etc.**

QUANT. **line** *He began his speech with a few lines of poetry.* **| piece | anthology, book, collection, volume**

VERB + POETRY **compose, write | read | recite | learn by heart** *At school we had to learn a lot of poetry by heart.*

POETRY + NOUN **book, collection | reading** *She invited me to one of her poetry readings.* **| competition, workshop | group**

PREP. **in ~** *an essay on imagery in poetry*

poignant *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | become | make sth** *The presence of the rest of the family made John's absence even more poignant.* **| find sth**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, particularly, unbearably, very** *I found his speech deeply poignant.* **| quite**

point of view *noun*

ADJ. **alternative, different** *He listened patiently to what we all had to say before putting across an alternative point of view.* **| aesthetic, business, commercial, economic, environmental, financial, legal, management, medical, personal, practical, psychological, safety, security, technical, theoretical, etc.**

VERB + POINT OF VIEW **have | take** *He always seems to take the opposite point of view to me.* **| express, get across/over, present, put (across/forward/over)** *A union representative was present to put the farmers' point of view.* **| see (sth from), understand** *I can see your point of view, but I think we have to consider the long-term implications. Try to see the situation from my point of view.* **| agree with, share | come round to** *If we can talk to her for an hour I'm sure she'll come round to our point of view.* **| reflect** *I do not think the article reflects the point of view of the majority of the population.*

PREP. **from a/sb's ~** *From a purely personal point of view, I'd like to see cars banned from the city centre.* **| from the ~ of** *The book tells the story of a murder investigation from the point of view of the chief suspect. From the point of view of safety, a lower speed limit would certainly be a good thing.* **| ~ on** *I don't have a point of view on this issue.*

point *noun*

1 thing said as part of a discussion

ADJ. **good, interesting, valid | important | minor | subtle | moot | central, crucial, key, major, salient | controversial | talking** *The possibility of an interest rate cut is a major talking point in the City.*

VERB + POINT **have** *She's got a point.* **| see, take** *I see your point. Point taken.* **| concede | cover, make, raise** *She made some interesting points.* **| argue, discuss** *They argued the point for hours.* **| illustrate | get across, make, prove** *He had trouble getting his point across. That proves my point.* **| drive/hammer home, emphasize, labour, press, stress** *I understand what you're saying?there's no need to labour the point.*

PHRASES **a case in point** (= an example relevant to the matter being discussed), **the point at issue, a point of agreement/disagreement, a point of law** > Special page at MEETING

2 the point: essential aspect of sth

ADJ. **basic** *The basic point is that ...*

VERB + POINT **come/get to** *Hurry up and get to the point!* **| get** *It took me a few minutes to get the point.* **| miss | wander from/off**

PREP. **beside the ~** (= not relevant) *That's beside the point.* **| to the ~** *His remarks were brief and to the point.*

PHRASES **more to the point** (= what is more important) *More to the point, did they get away?*

3 meaning/reason/purpose of sth

ADJ. **whole** *That's the whole point.*

VERB + POINT **have** *It doesn't have any point to it.* **| see** *I don't see the point in arguing.*

PREP. **~ in/of** *There's absolutely no point in complaining now. What's the point of worrying?*

4 **item/detail/feature**

ADJ. **finer, good, strong** *We discussed the finer points of growing roses.* **| bad, weak | salient**

PHRASES **a point of difference, a point of interest**

5 **particular time/moment**

ADJ. **high** *He had reached the high point of his career.* **| low | breaking, bursting, saturation** *to fill a bag to bursting point* **| boiling, freezing, melting**

VERB + POINT **get to, reach** *I've got to the point* (= in a book, etc.) *where his father is dying.*

POINT + VERB **come** *There comes a point in most people's lives when they want to settle down.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *At one point he looked like winning.* **| on the ~ of** *on the point of departure* **| to the ~ of** *We worked all night to the point of collapse.* **| up to a ~** *I agree with you up to a point.*

PHRASES **a point in time** *At this point we can't give you a final answer.* **| the point of no return** (= after which it is impossible to go back/undo what you have done)

6 **particular place/position**

ADJ. **central, focal** *the focal point of his life* **| fixed | assembly, meeting, rallying | starting | vantage | reference | turning** *This proved to be the turning point of the game.* **| cut-off | pressure | vanishing**

VERB + POINT **arrive at, reach**

PHRASES **a point of contact, a point of reference**

7 **punctuation**

ADJ. **decimal**

8 **in a game/sports competition**

ADJ. **match, set** *It's set point to Henman.*

VERB + POINT **get, score, win | lose**

PHRASES **beat sb/win on points**

9 **measurement**

ADJ. **percentage** *Interest rates fell by one percentage point.* VERB + POINT (All the verbs in the following collocate groups may be followed by **by**, **from** or **to** plus **point**. Sometimes the word **by** is left out.), **be/go/shoot up, improve, increase, jump, rise, soar** *The Nikkei index rose 710 points to 14894. His popularity rose by 18 points in public opinion polls.* **| be/come/go down, deline, decrease, depreciate, drop, fall, plummet, plunge** *The CAC-40 index is down 67 points at 4413.*

PHRASES **about/around/only/over/up to 10, 20, etc. points** *The index was down only 4.6 points at the close.* **| an improvement/an increase/a jump/a rise of 10, 20, etc. points** *to achieve an improvement of over 4.6 points in operating ratio* **| a drop/fall/reduction of 10, 20, etc. points** **10** thin sharp end of sth

ADJ. **fine, sharp**

point *verb*

PREP. **at, in the direction of** *He pointed in the direction of the town centre.* **| to** *The toddler pointed to the toy he wanted.* **| towards, with** *She pointed with her finger at the map.*

PHRASES **point straight at sb/sth** *The gun was pointing straight at me.* **| point the way** *'You must cross that field,' she said, pointing the way.* **PHRASAL VERBS point sth out**

ADV. **correctly, rightly** *As you so rightly pointed out, our funds are not unlimited.* **| tartly** *His wife pointed out tartly that none of them were exactly starving.*

VERB + POINT **must, should** *I should point out that not one of these paintings is original.* **| try to | fail to | be at pains to, be keen to, be quick to** *She was at pains to point out that she was no newcomer to the area.* **| be right to** *You were right to point out that this is only one of the difficulties we face.* **| be important to**

PREP. **to** *She tried in vain to point out to him the unfairness of the situation.* **point to sth**

ADV. **clearly** *Fragments of woven cloth at the site, clearly point to the production of textiles.*

VERB + POINT **seem to** *The evidence all seems to point to one conclusion.*

pointer *noun*

1 advice/indications

ADJ. **good, important | clear, obvious | practical, useful**

VERB + POINTER **give (sb), provide (sb with)**

PREP. **~ for** *The examiners comments include pointers for future study.* **| ~ to** *His symptoms gave no obvious pointer to a possible diagnosis.* **| ~ towards** *pointers towards a new political agenda*

PHRASES **a pointer to the future**

2 sth used for pointing

ADJ. **mouse** *Move the mouse pointer to the menu bar.* **| light** *A light pointer is often useful with a slide projector.*

pointless *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | consider sth, think sth** *She considered it pointless to plan in too much detail.*

ADV. **absolutely, quite, totally, utterly | a bit, fairly, rather, somewhat | apparently**

poise *noun*

ADJ. **natural** *the natural poise and balance of the body* **| social** *She never lost her social poise, however awkward the situation.*

VERB + POISE **retain | lose | recover, regain** *She hesitated briefly but quickly regained her poise.*

poised *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, stand** *She stood poised for a moment.* **| remain**

ADV. **delicately, finely | perfectly** *His manner was perfectly poised between gravity and teasing.*

PREP. **above/over** *Peter hesitated, his hand poised above the telephone.* **| between, for** *They hovered by the door, poised for flight.*

PHRASES **poised on the brink/edge/threshold of sth** *The two countries were poised on the brink of war.*

poison *noun*

ADJ. **strong, virulent | deadly | nerve, rat**

QUANT. **trace**

VERB + POISON **administer, give sb | lace sth with, put in/on** *She had laced his drink with poison. She had put poison in his wine.* **| put down** (= put somewhere to kill animals) *The farmer had put down some rat poison.* **| swallow, take**

POISON + NOUN **gas, pill | arrow**

poisoning *noun*

ADJ. **acute, chronic | blood | food** *a bad case of food poisoning* **| alcohol, arsenic, carbon monoxide, lead, mercury, pesticide, radiation, etc.**

QUANT. **case**

VERB + POISONING **die from/of**

poisonous *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **deadly, extremely, highly**

PREP. **to** *The leaves of yew trees are poisonous to cattle.*

polarized *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **highly, sharply** *Public opinion is sharply polarized on this issue.* **| increasingly**

PREP. **between** *In this period politics became polarized between extreme right and left.*

pole *noun*

ADJ. **North, South | geographic, geomagnetic, magnetic** *The north magnetic pole lies to the west of the geographic North Pole.* **| opposite** *(figurative) The two authors represent the opposite poles of fictional genius*

PREP. **between the (two) ~s of** *(figurative) an artistic compromise between the poles of abstraction and representation* **| from ~ to ~** *The meridian is an imaginary line drawn from pole to pole.*

PHRASES **be poles apart** *(figurative) In temperament, she and her sister are poles apart* (= completely different).

police *noun*

ADJ. **armed, mounted | plain-clothes, uniformed | anti-riot, riot | paramilitary, secret, security | federal, local, national, state**

VERB + POLICE **call | alert, tell**

POLICE + VERB **arrest sb | patrol sth | interview sb, question sb | investigate sth | appeal for sth** *Police have appealed for witnesses to come forward.*

POLICE + NOUN **chief, constable, officer | spokesman | headquarters, station | cell** *He spent the night in a police cell after his arrest.* **| custody | car, helicopter, van, vehicle** *an unmarked police car* **| driver, marksman | dog, horse | authorities, force, service | unit | enquiries, investigation | escort** *The visiting fans returned to the railway station under police escort.* **| patrol** *A routine police patrol spotted signs of a break-in at the offices.* **| raid** *Nine arrests were made in a series of police raids across the city.* **| presence** *There was a huge police presence at the demonstration.* **| protection** *All prosecution witnesses were given police protection.* **| cordon, lines** *Some protesters managed to break through the police cordon.* **| chase | informer | brutality, harassment**

PHRASES **helping the police with their enquiries** *No arrest has been made, but a man is helping the police with their enquiries.*

policeman *noun*

ADJ. **senior | ordinary** *the duties of the ordinary policeman* **| local, neighbourhood | uniformed | plain-clothes | undercover | military | off-duty | friendly | bent, crooked** *The robbery may have been carried out with the help of a bent policeman.*

VERB + POLICEMAN **call, fetch** *A policeman was called to the house just after midnight. She went off to fetch a policeman.*

POLICEMAN + VERB **patrol sth | arrest sb** > See OFFICER

policy *noun*

1 **plan of action**

ADJ. **clear, coherent | conscious, deliberate** *a deliberate policy to involve people of all ages in the scheme* | **strict | controversial | official, public | government, party | company | domestic, internal, national, regional | open-door** *an open-door policy for migrant workers* | **agricultural, conservation, economic, educational, energy, environmental, financial, fiscal, foreign, housing, industrial, military, social, transport, etc.**

VERB + POLICY **develop, formulate, frame, shape | establish, implement, introduce | adopt, carry out, follow, pursue** *The government followed a policy of restraint in public spending.* | **have, operate** *The company operates a strict no-smoking policy.*

POLICY + VERB **be aimed at sth** *a policy aimed at halting economic recession*

POLICY + NOUN **decision, making | change, review | document, statement**

PREP. **~ of** *The company's policy of expansion has created many new jobs.* | **~ on** *the party's policy on housing*

PHRASES **a matter of policy** *It is a matter of company policy that we do not disclose the names of clients.*

2 **insurance contract**

ADJ. **insurance | contents, life, motor, etc.**

VERB + POLICY **take out | renew**

POLICY + VERB **cover sb/sth** *The policy covers (you for) accidental loss or damage.* | **expire**

POLICY + NOUN **holder | schedule**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *risks defined in the policy* | **under a/the ~** *the types of claims* *covered under the policy*

polio *nou*n

VERB + POLIO **have | contract | immunize sb against, vaccinate sb against**

POLIO + NOUN **vaccination, vaccine | virus | victim** > Special page at ILLNESS

polish *noun*

ADJ. **boot, furniture, metal, nail, shoe, silver | French | beeswax, wax**

VERB + POLISH **apply** *Apply polish with a soft brush.* **| give sth** *You'll need to give your shoes a good polish.* **| remove** *Use acetone to remove nail polish.*

polished *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **brightly, deeply, highly, well** *the brightly polished brasses slipping on the highly polished floor* **| beautifully, nicely | freshly, newly**

polite *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very | perfectly, scrupulously, unfailingly | fairly, quite | coolly, formally** *His manner was coolly polite and impersonal.*

PREP. **to** *She was scrupulously polite to him.*

politeness *noun*

ADJ. **common, conventional** *It's no more than common politeness to hear what she has to say.* **| formal | social | natural** *Her natural politeness could not hide the distress in her voice.* **| exaggerated, excessive**

PREP. **out of ~** *They accepted the food more out of politeness than because they were hungry.* **| with ~** *They greeted their visitor with formal politeness.*

PHRASES **a veneer of politeness** *His veneer of politeness concealed a ruthless determination.*

political asylum *noun*

VERB + POLITICAL ASYLUM **apply for, ask for, claim, demand, seek | grant sb, offer sb**

PHRASES **an application for political asylum**

political *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **highly, very** *This whole issue has become highly political.*

politician *noun*

ADJ. **leading, prominent, senior | experienced, veteran** *a veteran politician of the left* **| influential | astute, clever, shrewd | corrupt | career, professional | conviction | local | left-wing, right-wing | Conservative, Labour, etc. | Opposition**

VERB + POLITICIAN **elect | bribe**

politics *noun*

1 **work/ideas connected with getting/using power**

ADJ. **county, local** *She was active in local politics for many years.* **| domestic, internal, national** *the country's internal politics the internal politics of the legal profession* **| global, international, world | democratic, electoral, multiparty, parliamentary, party | contemporary, modern | mainstream | practical** *He argued that it was not practical politics to abolish private schools.* **| power** *They took the view that Casper was playing power politics with their jobs at stake.* **| consensus** *Consensus politics places a high value on existing political institutions.* **| conviction | cultural, gender, sexual | office**

VERB + POLITICS **enter, go into** *They went into politics in the hope of changing society.* **| abandon, retire from** *He abandoned politics and went into business.* **| be interested in | be active in, be engaged in, be/get immersed in, be/get involved in, engage in, participate in | dabble in, play** *(informal)* **| get embroiled in | interfere in, intervene in, meddle in** *As a churchman, he was accused of meddling in politics.* **| dominate** *the issues which have dominated Irish politics* **| reshape** *reforms that are intended to reshape Italian politics*

POLITICS + VERB **dominate sth** *In their world politics dominates everything.*

PHRASES **the world of politics**

2 **political beliefs**

ADJ. **extreme, radical** *His manners were as mild as his politics were extreme.* **| left-wing, right-wing | sectarian | working-class | feminist**

VERB + POLITICS **discuss, talk (about)** *(informal) Let's not talk politics now.*

3 **study of government**

ADJ. **comparative** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

poll *noun*

1 **survey of opinion**

ADJ. **local, national | opinion | political, popularity | exit** *Exit polls suggest a big Labour majority, but the true picture will only be known after the count.* **| straw** *I took a straw poll among my colleagues to find out how many can use chopsticks.* **| latest, recent**

VERB + POLL **carry out, conduct, take | lead (in) | publish**

POLL + VERB **indicate sth, reveal sth, show sth, suggest sth**

POLL + NOUN **rating, results**

PREP. **in the ~s** *success in the polls*

PHRASES **be ahead/behind in the polls** *With a week to go until polling day, the Conservatives are still behind in the polls.* **| a lead in the polls** *A tougher budget might have widened Labour's lead in the polls.*

2 **(usually the polls) voting in an election**

ADJ. **presidential**

VERB + POLL **go to** *The country goes to the polls on May 7th to elect local councillors.*

POLL + VERB **open | close** *Counting will begin as soon as the polls close.*

PREP. **at the ~s** *She was defeated at the polls.*

pollen *noun*

VERB + POLLEN **collect, gather** *bees gathering pollen*

POLLEN + NOUN **grain | count** *Hay fever sufferers have a worse time when the pollen count is high.* **| analysis | record** *The pollen record shows that this plant was never common on the island.*

pollutant *noun*

ADJ. **air, atmospheric, environmental, water | chemical, toxic | major | industrial**

VERB + POLLUTANT **discharge, emit, release**

POLLUTANT + NOUN **emission**

PREP. **~ from** *pollutants from nearby industries* **| ~ in** *pollutants in exhaust gases*

PHRASES **the emission/release of pollutants**

polluted *adj.*

ADV. **badly, heavily, highly, seriously, severely**

PREP. **with** *The air is heavily polluted with traffic fumes.*

pollution *noun*

ADJ. **air, atmospheric, environmental, marine, river, water | chemical, industrial, nuclear | lead, nitrate, noise, oil, ozone, sewage, vehicle, etc. | airborne**

VERB + POLLUTION **cause | avoid, prevent | combat, control, fight, tackle** *a convention on combating atmospheric pollution* **| cut, limit, minimize, reduce** *The summit ended with a joint pledge to limit pollution.* **| monitor**

POLLUTION + NOUN **level | abatement, control, prevention, reduction | limits | standards** *a tightening of water pollution standards* **| monitoring | inspectorate, watchdog** *a survey by the government's water pollution watchdog* **| incident, problem | laws, legislation, regulations | offence | sources** *The computer model assesses the likely impact of new pollution sources.*

PHRASES **the cost of pollution** *the cost of air pollution in health and other terms* **| a risk of pollution** *Environmentalists say there is a high risk of pollution from the landfill site.* **| a source of pollution**

polythene *nou*n

ADJ. **heavy-duty**

VERB + POLYTHENE **cover sth with, line sth with, wrap sth in**

POLYTHENE + NOUN **bag | sheeting**

pond *noun*

ADJ. **big, large | little, small | stagnant | muddy | ornamental | garden, village | duck, fish, lily**

VERB + POND **build, construct, dig | fill | drain, empty** *The pond is drained every year.*

POND + NOUN **life, water**

PREP. **across a/the ~** *She swam across the pond.* **| in a/the ~** *There are goldfish in the pond.* **| into a/the ~** *Her sunglasses had fallen into the pond.* **| on a/the ~** *some ducks swimming on a pond*

PHRASES **the bottom/edge/middle/side/surface of a pond** *The dog raced around to the other side of the pond.*

ponder *verb*

ADV. **carefully, deeply, hard | (for) a moment** *She pondered for a moment before replying.*

VERB + PONDER **leave sb to** *He walked out of the room, leaving me to ponder what he had just said.* **| be forced to**

PREP. **about** *This was something I had been pondering about for some time.* **| on** *I walked up the stairs, pondering on her reaction to my news.* **| over** *I pondered hard over the reply to his letter.*

pony *noun*

VERB + PONY **pit** *Pit ponies were used in most mines at the turn of the last century.* **| polo | wild**

VERB + PONY **ride | lead | brush down | saddle | shoe**

PONY + VERB **neigh, whinny | canter, gallop, trot, walk | prance | jump**

PONY + NOUN **club | ride | riding, trekking**

PHRASES **a pony and cart/trap**

pool *noun*

1 **swimming pool, etc.**

ADJ. **paddling, swimming | birthing** *babies born in birthing pools* **| big | little, small | deep | empty | indoor | open-air, outdoor | heated | inflatable** *We gave the children an inflatable paddling pool for Christmas.*

VERB + POOL **swim in | dive/jump/plunge into**

POOL + NOUN **attendant**

PHRASES **the bottom/edge/middle/side of the pool, a length of the pool** *He swam three lengths of the pool.*

2 **small shallow area of water**

ADJ. **big, large | little, small | deep | shallow | stagnant, still | freshwater, salt-water | muddy | rock | ornamental**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The children waded in the shallow rock pools.* **| ~ of** *pools of water*

3 **small area of liquid/light**

ADJ. **big | little, small | dark | mud**

VERB + POOL **lie in** *The body lay in a dark pool of blood.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *animals wallowing in the mud pools* **| ~ of** *pools of light*

4 **supply of sth**

ADJ. **big, huge, large | small | common** *drawing on funds from a common pool* **| car, labour, typing**

PREP. **~ of** *a large pool of cheap labour*

pop *noun*

1 short sharp sound

ADJ. **loud | sudden**

PREP. **with a ~** *The cork came out with a loud pop.*

2 popular music

ADJ. **classic, melodic, psychedelic**

VERB + POP **play | listen to**

POP + NOUN **classic, hit, music, song, tune | artist, singer, star | band, group | concert, festival | record, video | fan | charts | culture**

PREP. **in ~** *He was an important figure in pop during the seventies.*

pope *noun*

VERB + POPE **elect**

PHRASES **an audience with the pope** *He was granted an audience with the Pope.*

popular *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | remain | make sth** *What makes this subject so popular?*

ADV. **enormously, especially, extremely, genuinely, highly, hugely, immensely, incredibly, massively, particularly, phenomenally, really, vastly, very, wildly | increasingly | less than, not exactly** *Jack was not exactly popular after the incident with the fire extinguisher.* **| fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively | deservedly** *a deservedly popular restaurant with all who enjoy Mexican food* **| instantly** *He was one of those people who are instantly popular.* **| always, enduringly, eternally, ever, perennially** *Seaside holidays are always popular. a concert featuring the ever popular music from Hollywood's silver screen* **| widely | universally | internationally | personally** *The prime minister remained personally popular despite his party's disastrous slide in the opinion polls.* **| politically**

PREP. **among** *popular among young people* **| as** *These animals are quite popular as pets.* **| for** *a restaurant that is popular for light meals* **| with** *This area is immensely popular with tourists.*

popularity *noun*

ADJ. **enormous, great, huge, immense, massive, widespread | growing, increasing | dwindling | continued, continuing | personal | current**

VERB + POPULARITY **achieve, win | deserve** *The film deserves its popularity.* **| court** *She is a tough decision-maker who does not court popularity.* **| enjoy | gain (in), grow in** *Organic produce appears to be gaining in popularity.* **| retain | regain**

POPULARITY + VERB **grow | decline, wane**

POPULARITY + NOUN **rating | stakes** *They are running neck-and-neck in the popularity stakes.*

PREP. **~ among/amongst** *The current system has never enjoyed popularity among teachers.* **| ~ with** *She enjoys huge popularity with the voters.*

PHRASES **a decline/drop in popularity, an increase/a rise/a surge/an upsurge in popularity** *the recent upsurge in the popularity of folk music* **| the peak of (sb/sth's) popularity** *At the peak of its popularity in the late nineties, the band sold ten million albums a year.*

populated *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **densely, heavily, highly, thickly** *the most densely populated part of the island* **| sparsely, thinly**

PREP. **with** *The prison was populated with people of every trade and profession.*

population *noun*

ADJ. **large | small, sparse | overall, total** *The country has a total population of 65 million.* **| global, local, national, world | indigenous, native | adult, ageing, elderly, young, youthful | female, male | black, white | active, working** *Most of the economically active population is employed in the primary industries.* **| student | civil, civilian | prison, school | rural, urban | general** *The general population was in favour of the National Health Service.*

POPULATION + VERB **be sth, stand at sth** *The population now stands at about 4 million.* **| reach sth | exceed sth | double, grow, increase, rise | decline, decrease, fall | consist of sth | live** *The majority of the population live in these two towns.*

POPULATION + NOUN **levels, size | density | data, estimate, figures, projections, trends** *No reliable population estimates exist.* **| growth, increase | decline, loss | ageing | explosion | census | centre** *major population centres along the coast*

PHRASES **a decline/an increase in population, the growth of population** *The rapid growth of population led to an acute shortage of housing.* **| per head of population** *The income per head of population was under £1,000 per annum.*

porcelain *noun*

ADJ. **exquisite, fine | Chinese, Meissen, etc.**

QUANT. **piece** *some fine pieces of Chinese porcelain*

PORCELAIN + NOUN **factory | manufacturer**

porch *noun*

ADJ. **entrance | church | back, front | north, south, west** (= of a church) **| pillared, projecting**

PORCH + NOUN **door, light**

PREP. **in/on the~** *She stood in the porch and rang the doorbell.*

pore *noun*

ADJ. **blocked | open**

VERB + PORE **block | unblock | open** *A hot bath opens the pores.* **| close**

pork *noun*

ADJ. **fresh | roast, smoked | organic**

QUANT. **bit, piece, slice | belly, knuckle, leg, loin, shoulder** *roast leg of pork*

PORK + NOUN **chop, pie, sausage | butcher**

PHRASES **pork and apple sauce, sweet and sour pork**

pornography *noun*

ADJ. **hard-core, soft | child**

port *noun*

ADJ. **bustling, busy | Channel, coastal, foreign, sea | cargo, coal, commercial, ferry, fishing**

VERB + PORT **come into, reach** *The vessel reached port the next morning.* **| leave**

PORT + NOUN **area | authority | facilities**

PREP. **in ~** *Bad weather kept the ship in port for three more days.* **| into ~** *trying to steer the boat into port*

PHRASES **a port of call** *Our next port of call was Piraeus.*

portable *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **easily, highly, very** *a machine that is designed to be easily portable* **| completely, fully**

porter *noun*

1 **helps lift and carry things**

ADJ. **hospital, kitchen, railway**

VERB + PORTER **act as** *Some Sherpas act as guides and porters for mountaineering expeditions.* **| call, hail** *On arriving at the station, we hailed a porter to carry the bags.*

PORTER + VERB **carry sth**

2 **in charge of the entrance of a large building**

ADJ. **head | hall, hotel | night | uniformed**

PHRASES **porter's desk, porter's lodge** > Note at JOB

portion *noun*

1 **part/share**

ADJ. **considerable, large, significant, sizeable, substantial | small**

VERB + PORTION **make up, take up**

PREP. **~ of** *Salaries take up a considerable portion of our total budget.*

2 **of food**

ADJ. **double, generous, large** *a generous portion of vegetables* **| small, tiny | individual**

PREP. **~ of** *He asked for a double portion of chips.*

PHRASES **divide sth into portions**

portrait *noun*

ADJ. **full-length, half-length, head and shoulders | oil, pastel, pencil, etc. | photographic, sculptural | equestrian, family, group, royal | literary, pen**

VERB + PORTRAIT **do, paint, photograph | sit for | commission | write | display, exhibit, show**

PORTRAIT + VERB **hang** *Ancient family portraits hung on the walls of the staircase.*

PORTRAIT + NOUN **gallery | artist, painter, photographer** *sitting to a fashionable portrait painter*

PREP. **~ by, ~ of** *a portrait of the Queen by Annigoni* > Note at ART

portray *verb*

ADV. **accurately | clearly | dramatically, graphically, vividly** *an incident that graphically portrays the dangers associated with this sport The museum collection vividly portrays the heritage of 200 years of canals.*

VERB + PORTRAY **attempt to, try to**

PREP. **as** *trying to portray themselves as the victims*

portrayal *noun*

ADJ. accurate, realistic, vivid | moving, poignant | chilling, frightening *He is best remembered for his chilling portrayal of Norman Bates in 'Psycho'.*

PREP. in the/its, etc. ~ *She shows a full range of emotions in her portrayal of an ambitious politician.* **| ~ of** *His novel is a vivid portrayal of life in a mining community.*

Portuguese *noun* > Note at LANGUAGE

position *noun*

1 **place**

ADJ. **correct, exact | central | geographical | military, strategic | defensive**

VERB + POSITION **take (up)** *The guards took up their positions on either side of the door.* **| jostle for** *Hordes of journalists jostled for position outside the conference hall.* **| play** (sport) *What position does he play?*

PREP. **in ~** *Fix the pieces in position before gluing them together* **| into ~** *Please get into position.* **| out of ~** *Nakata had to play out of position when the defender was injured.*

2 **way of sitting, standing, etc.**

ADJ. **comfortable, uncomfortable | crouched, kneeling, sitting | sleeping | horizontal, vertical | foetal**

VERB + POSITION **change**

3 **situation**

ADJ. **business, economic, financial, legal | dominant, impregnable, strong | favourable, good, ideal, perfect | envious, invidious | competitive | precarious, vulnerable, weak | awkward, difficult, embarrassing, impossible | current, present | bargaining, negotiating | trading** *the trading position of the British economy*

VERB + POSITION **achieve, attain, reach** *It has taken years to achieve the position we are now in.* **| put sb in** *It put me in an awkward position when he asked me to keep a secret.* **| strengthen** *Their obvious desperation strengthens our bargaining position.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *We may be in a position to help you. I was in the embarrassing position of having completely forgotten her name.* **| ~ of**

4 **opinion**

ADJ. **extreme | ideological, philosophical, political, theoretical | official** *The country's official position is that there is no famine in the area.*

VERB + POSITION **adopt, take | defend**

PREP. **~ on** *He took an extreme position on religious matters.*

5 **rank**

ADJ. **first, second, etc. | dominant, high, important, influential, pre-eminent | inferior, lowly** *They occupy a lowly position in society.* **| privileged, secure | social**

VERB + POSITION **establish, gain, secure | hold, occupy**

PREP. **~ among/amongst** *This latest novel confirms herpre-eminent position amongst today's writers.* **| ~ in** *The firm gained a dominant position in the market.*

PHRASES **a position of authority/influence/power**

6 **job**

ADJ. **full-time, part-time | key, responsible, senior | junior, menial | official | skilled | administrative, management, managerial**

VERB + POSITION **have, hold, occupy | apply for | obtain | fill | offer sb | resign**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *How long were you in your previous position?* **| ~ in/within** *his new position in the firm* **| ~ of** *She was offered the position of sales manager.*

position *verb* **(**often **be positioned)**

ADV. firmly *The radiologist firmly positioned Phoebe in front of a ferocious-looking machine.* **| centrally** *The markers were not positioned centrally.* **| carefully | correctly | wrongly | favourably, well | ideally, perfectly, uniquely** *The company is uniquely positioned to compete in foreign markets.* **| strategically**

PREP. at, behind, between, in, in front of, near, on, etc. *Police marksmen were positioned on the roof.*

positive *adj.*

1 certain

VERBS **be, seem, sound**

ADV. **absolutely, quite** *I'm absolutely positive it was him.* **| fairly**

PREP. **about** *She seemed fairly positive about it.* **| of** *Are you positive of your facts?*

2 hopeful and confident/encouraging

VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem, sound | remain**

ADV. **distinctly, extremely, highly, overwhelmingly, really, very** *He took a highly positive view of the matter.* **| entirely, wholly | fairly, mildly, moderately, quite | broadly, essentially, generally | apparently, seemingly**

PREP. **about** *sounding very positive about his chances*

3 showing that sth has happened/is present

VERBS **be, prove, test** *The test proved positive.*

ADV. **strongly, weakly** *(both technical)*

PREP. **for** *He tested positive for HIV.*

possession *noun*

1 **having/owning sth**

ADJ. **exclusive** *They had exclusive possession of the property as tenants.* **| illegal, unlawful** *They were charged with unlawful possession of firearms.*

VERB + POSSESSION **gain, get, obtain | take** *When do you take possession of your new house?* **| retain** *The team was struggling to retain possession of the ball.*

POSSESSION + NOUN **order** *The judge made a possession order against the tenant.*

PREP. **in ~ of sth** *Drivers must be in possession of a current driving licence.* **| in your ~** *They have in their possession some very valuable pictures.*

PHRASES **in full possession of sth** *Anyone in full possession of the facts would see that we are right.*

2 **sth that sb has/owns**

ADJ. **family, personal, private | cherished, prized, proud, treasured, valuable, valued** *The sports car was her proudest possession.* **| material, worldly** *He carried all his worldly possessions in an old suitcase.* **| colonial, continental, overseas** *the country's overseas possessions* (= colonies).

VERB + POSSESSION **acquire | collect | sell | lose**

possessive *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become, get** *Nick's starting to get possessive and jealous.*

ADV. **extremely, fiercely, intensely, very** *her fiercely possessive love for him* **| rather**

PREP. **about** *Why should he feel so possessive about some old photos?* **| of** *She had always been possessive of her brother.* **| towards** *He was very possessive towards her.*

possibility *noun*

ADJ. **exciting, interesting | endless, many** *The resort offers endless possibilities for entertainment.* **| further, other | different, various | future | distinct, great, real, serious, strong** *There's a strong possibility that it will rain today.* **| reasonable | faint, remote** *There is a faint possibility that he might have got the wrong day.* **| practical | theoretical | obvious**

VERB + POSSIBILITY **allow sb, offer sb, open up, raise | see | consider, discuss, examine, explore, study** *Have you explored the possibilities of setting up your own business?* **| accept, acknowledge, admit, concede, countenance, entertain, recognize | ignore, overlook | deny, discount, dismiss, eliminate, exclude, preclude, rule out** *We cannot rule out the possibility of mistaken identity.* **| face** *The club is facing the real possibility of relegation.* **| risk** *We don't want to risk the possibility of losing all our money.* **| allow for, cover** *Some reserves were named to cover the possibility of withdrawals.* **| avert | lessen, reduce**

PREP. **~ for** *She was quick to see the possibilities for making money that her new skills gave her.* **| ~ of** *Careful checks will reduce the possibility of unpleasant surprises.*

PHRASES **beyond/within the bounds of possibility** *It's not beyond the bounds of possibility that a similar situation could arise again.* **| a number/range of possibilities** *The course offers a wide range of possibilities for personal development.*

possible *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | become | make sth** *New technology has made it possible to communicate more easily.* **| think sth** *In those circumstances, I thought it possible to work with him.*

ADV. **perfectly, quite | just** *It is just possible that he's still here.* **| humanly** *I think that what he's suggesting is not humanly possible.* **| theoretically** *It's theoretically possible but highly unlikely ever to happen.*

PHRASES **as far/long/much as possible** *She did as much as possible to help him.* **| as quickly/soon as possible** *Please come as soon as possible.* **| if (at all) possible** *I'd like the money back by next week if possible.*

post office *noun*

ADJ. **head, main | sub | local, village**

VERB + POST OFFICE **go to**

POST OFFICE + NOUN **counter**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *You can buy stamps at the post office.*

post *noun*

1 **postal system**

ADJ. **first-class, second-class | registered | inland**

PREP. **by ~** *I sent it by first-class post.* **| in the ~** *My application for the job is in the post.*

PHRASES **by return of post** *Orders will be sent by return of post.*

2 **letters, parcels, etc.**

ADJ. **first, last** *If you hurry you'll just catch the last post.*

VERB + POST **check, open** *She arrived at the office early and checked her post*

VERB + POST **box** (also **postbox)**

3 **job**

ADJ. **senior | full-time, part-time | permanent, temporary | vacant | managerial, teaching | government, university**

VERB + POST **apply for | take up | hold | leave, quit, resign | appoint sb to, fill | dismiss sb from, relieve sb of** *He was relieved of his post when he was found to have accepted bribes.*

PREP. **~ as** *He quit his post as chief executive.* **| ~ of** *She applied for the new post of training officer.*

4 **place where sb is on duty**

ADJ. **army, police | command, observation | border, frontier**

VERB + POST **take up** *The guard took up his post at the gate.* **| desert** *The sentries had deserted their posts.*

PREP. **at your ~** *The gun crew were at their posts.*

5 **upright piece of wood, etc.**

ADJ. **finishing, winning | far, near (both in football)** *He steered a shot between the keeper and the near post.*

PHRASES **first past the post** *The first horse past the post wins the race.* **| pip sb/sth at the post** *She led for most of the way before being pipped at the post.*

postage *noun*

VERB + POSTAGE **pay** *I had to pay £4 postage.* **| cover** *Add £3 to each order to cover postage.* **| include**

POSTAGE + NOUN **stamp | rates**

PREP. **for ~** *It costs £60, plus £5 for postage.* **| in ~** *Sending those books cost me a fortune in postage!* **| ~ on** *What's the postage on this parcel?*

PHRASES **postage and packing** *All prices include postage and packing.*

postcard *noun*

ADJ. **picture | holiday**

VERB + POSTCARD **write** *I hate writing holiday postcards.* **| post, send (sb) | get, receive**

POSTCARD + VERB **arrive | depict sth, show sth**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *Write your answers on a postcard.* **| ~ from, ~ of** *I sent my mum a postcard of the cathedral.* **| ~ to**

poster *noun*

ADJ. **cinema, circus, election | wanted** *The police have put up wanted posters describing the man.*

VERB + POSTER **display, exhibit, put up, stick up | be covered with, be plastered with** *His walls are plastered with posters of rock stars.* **| take down | design | print**

POSTER + VERB **appear, go up** *Huge election posters suddenly went up all over the town.* **| feature sth, show sth | advertise sth**

POSTER + NOUN **campaign** *Detectives have launched a massive poster campaign to help in the search for two killers.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *the picture on the poster* **| ~ for** *posters for tonight's concert* **| ~ of** *a poster of James Dean*

posting *noun*

ADJ. **diplomatic, foreign, overseas | three-month, two-year, etc. | temporary**

VERB + POSTING **get | accept, take up** *She was unable to take up the London posting.*

PREP. **~ as** *She has now accepted a posting as ambassador to Latvia.* **| ~ to** *He received a posting to Japan as soon as his training was finished.*

postman *nou*n

ADJ. **local, village**

POSTMAN + VERB **deliver sth** > Note at JOB

post-mortem *noun* VERB + POST-MORTEM **carry out, conduct, do | have, hold** *The coroner says we will have to hold a post-mortem*. POST-MORTEM + VERB **reveal sth, show sth** POST-MORTEM + NOUN **examination**

PREP. **~ on** *They're doing a post-mortem on her today.*

postpone *verb*

ADV. **indefinitely** *The event has been postponed indefinitely due to lack of interest.* **| merely** *The inevitable conflict was merely postponed till the next meeting.*

VERB + POSTPONE **agree to, decide to, vote to | be forced to | ask sb to** *Ruth wrote at once, asking Maria to postpone her visit.*

PREP. **for** *Our visit had been postponed for several weeks.* **| from, to** *The match has been postponed from Wednesday night to Friday night.* **| till/until** *The meeting has been postponed until next week.*

postponement *noun*

ADJ. **further, repeated | indefinite**

VERB + POSTPONEMENT **ask for, call for, request, seek** *They are calling for a further postponement of the election date.* **| announce | force, result in**

PREP. **~ until** *The death of one of the candidates forced postponement of the voting until 1 June.*

posture *noun*

1 **position of the body**

ADJ. **correct, good | bad, poor | erect, upright** *the normal upright posture* **| stiff, stooping | body**

VERB + POSTURE **have** *She has very good posture.* **| adopt | maintain | change, improve**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He sat in a posture of absolute respect.* **| ~ for** *a poor posture for driving*

2 **attitude**

ADJ. **defensive | agressive, threatening | military**

VERB + POSTURE **adopt, assume | maintain**

PREP. **~ towards** *to adopt a threatening posture towards an opponent*

pot *noun*

1 **for cooking**

ADJ. **cooking**

VERB + POT **scour | cover** *Cook gently in a covered pot for 3 to 4 hours.*

POT + VERB **brim (over) with sth** *The waiter brought over a steaming pot brimming with seafood.* **| bubble, steam** *He could hear the pot bubbling on the stove.*

PREP. **for the ~** *Local people kill these animals for the pot* (= to eat). **| in/into a/the ~** *Put all the ingredients in a large pot.* **| ~ of** *a pot of soup*

PHRASES **pots and pans**

2 **for tea/coffee**

ADJ. **steaming | fresh | coffee, tea** (also **teapot)**

VERB + POT **brew, make, put on** *I'll make a fresh pot of tea.* **| share | fill, refill, top up** *She refilled the teapot with boiling water.* **| empty**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Is there any more tea in the pot?* **| ~ of**

3 **container for storing/growing things, etc.**

ADJ. **ceramic, clay, earthenware, glass, iron, pewter, plastic, terracotta | flower, plant | jam, paint, pepper, yogurt | chamber | chimney | lobster**

VERB + POT **grow sth in, plant sth in**

POT + VERB **be filled with sth, be full of sth, contain sth** *a clay pot full of oil*

POT + NOUN **plant**

PREP. **in/into a/the ~** *Plants in pots require more water than you might think.* **| ~ of** *a pot of glue/jam*

potato *noun*

ADJ. **baking, new | sweet | seed | baked, boiled, chipped, creamed, fried, jacket, mashed, roast, saute** *jacket potatoes with sour cream and chives*

QUANT. **sack**

VERB + POTATO **eat, have | peel, scrape | chop, mash, slice | bake, boil, cook, fry, roast, saute** *potatoes baked in their jackets*

POTATO + NOUN **chip, crisp, puree, salad | peel, skin | peeler | crop, harvest** > Special page at FOOD

potency *noun*

ADJ. **sexual** *a man at the peak of his sexual potency*

VERB + POTENCY **increase | affect | lose**

potent *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, particularly, very | pretty, quite** *The vodka must have been pretty potent stuff.*

potential *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, limitless | full** *You aren't using your computer to its full potential.* **| true | unfulfilled, untapped | commercial | growth**

VERB + POTENTIAL **have, show** *This young man has enormous potential.* **| be aware of, see** *John Cadbury could see the potential for his product.* **| develop, exploit, unlock** *They were among the first companies to exploit the potential of the Internet.* **| fulfil, reach, realize** *Signing for a top club would enable him to fulfil his true potential.*

PREP. **with ~** *looking for a trainee with potential* **| ~ as** *She showed great potential as an actor.* **| ~ for** *an industry that has the potential for growth*

pottery *noun*

ADJ. **decorated, glazed, painted | hand-thrown | coarse, fine**

QUANT. **fragment, piece** *fragments of Iron Age pottery*

VERB + POTTERY **make, manufacture, produce | fire** *the kilns in which the pottery is fired*

POTTERY + NOUN **kiln** > Note at ART

potty *noun*

VERB + POTTY **use | sit (sb) on**

POTTY + NOUN **training**

PREP. **on the ~**

poultry *noun*

ADJ. **free-range**

VERB + POULTRY **keep, rear** *He rears rabbits and poultry in the garden.*

POULTRY + NOUN **farming, industry | dish** *a wine that goes well with fish and poultry dishes*

pound *noun*

1 **money > Note at CURRENCY**

2 **measure of weight > Note at MEASURE**

pour *verb*

ADV. **carefully | deliberately | quickly | gradually, slowly | out** *Helen poured out two stiff drinks.*

PREP. **from, into, on, onto, out of, over** *Pour the sauce over the pasta.*

pout *verb*

ADV. **slightly | prettily, sulkily** *Her lips pouted sulkily.*

PREP. **at** *She pouted prettily at him.*

poverty *noun*

ADJ. **abject, absolute, extreme, grinding, severe | widespread | rural, urban**

VERB + POVERTY **alleviate, combat, reduce | eliminate, eradicate** *hoping to eradicate urban poverty*

POVERTY + NOUN **trap** *Caught in the poverty trap, they are unable to save money for business ventures.*

PREP. **in ~** *Most of the population lives in grinding poverty.* **| ~ among** *the true extent of poverty among the unemployed* **| ~ of** *His work displays a poverty of imagination.*

PHRASES **below/on the poverty line** *families living on incomes below the poverty line*

powder *noun*

ADJ. **fine | chilli, cocoa, coffee, curry, milk | baking | soap, washing | baby, face, talcum**

VERB + POWDER **grind sth into** *The seeds are ground into a fine powder before use.* **| dust sth with, sprinkle on** *Before the photo dries, the image is dusted with a special powder.* **| dab on, put on** *She quickly dabbed some powder on her cheeks.* **| add, mix sth with, stir in** *Add a teaspoonful of curry powder.*

POWDER + NOUN **snow**

PHRASES **in powder form** *The tablets are also available in powder form.*

power *noun*

1 authority/control

ADJ. **absolute, ultimate | considerable, enormous | limited | arbitrary | economic, legal, legislative, political | popular | secular**

VERB + POWER **come to, rise to** *When did this government come to power?* **| assume, seize, take** *The Crown prince assumed power in his father's place.* **| restore sb to, return sb to | have, hold** *The court has no power to order a psychiatric examination of the child's parents. They held power for 18 years.* **| share | exercise, use, wield | confer, give sb, grant sb** *The new law delegates many of these powers to school governors.* **| fall from, lose** *They fell from power in 1992.* **| give up, relinquish, renounce | delegate, devolve**

POWER + VERB **be concentrated in (the hands of sb/sth), rest with sb/sth** *The real legislative power still rests with the lower chamber.*

POWER + NOUN **struggle** *getting the upper hand in a power struggle* **| base** *The party's power base is in the industrial north of the country.*

PREP. **in (your) ~** *the party in power They held us in their power.* **| ~ of** *the power of veto* **| ~ over** *The government has limited legal powers over television.*

PHRASES **abuse of power, the balance of power** *The war brought about a shift in the balance of power.* **| a bid for power, the exercise of power, a position of power** *the father's position of power and influence in the home* **| the power behind the throne** (= the person who is really in control) *People say that the prime minister's wife is the power behind the throne.* **| power-hungry** *The company was too small to hold two such power-hungry men.* **| a transfer of power** *the transfer of power from a military to a civilian government*

2 ability to do sth

ADJ. **air, military, naval, sea** *an increase in Britain's air power* **| fire** *weapons with enormous fire power* **| bargaining | computing | healing** *the healing power of sleep* **| earning, purchasing | staying** *Having served in four governments, he has the greatest staying power of any politician today.* **| magic, magical, mystical, psychic, supernatural** *They believe he has supernatural powers.*

VERB + POWER **have | use | develop | lose** *Religion is rapidly losing its power to shape our behaviour.*

PREP. **beyond sb/sth's ~** *a task still beyond any computer's power* **| in/within your** *I'm afraid it's not within my power to help you.* **| through the ~ of** *He wants to change the world through the power of prayer.* **| ~s as** *a tribute to his powers as a teacher* **| ~ of** *her powers of observation I lost my power of speech for a while after the accident.*

PHRASES **at the height/peak/zenith of your powers** *In 1946 Dali was at the peak of his powers.* **| do all/everything in your power** *He did everything in his power to find us somewhere to live.*

3 **country with influence**

ADJ. **great, major | world | foreign | allied, enemy | occupying | victorious | European, Western, etc.** *major European powers such as France and Germany* **| colonial, industrial, naval**

4 **force**

ADJ. **great | destructive, terrible** *the destructive power of a hurricane*

5 **energy**

ADJ. **full** *The plane was still climbing at full power.* **| reduced** *The transmitter is operating on reduced power.* **| electric, electrical, hydroelectric, nuclear, solar, steam, tidal, water, wind**

VERB + POWER **generate, produce** *They use these streams to generate power for the mill.* **| provide (sb/sth with), supply (sb/sth with)** *This wheel provides the power to the cutting machine.* **| use | harness | turn on | cut off, turn off**

POWER + VERB **drive sth** *Wind power is used to drive the machinery.*

POWER + NOUN **cable, line, point, supply | tool** *DIY grew in popularity with the advent of power tools.* **| plant, station | worker | cut, failure**

PREP. **~ for** *supplying power for the grinding process*

PHRASES a source of power

powerful *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become**

ADV. **enormously, especially, exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, immensely, incredibly, particularly, really, remarkably, surprisingly, tremendously, unusually, very | increasingly | fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively | enough, sufficiently** *She had a voice powerful enough not to need a microphone.* **| potentially | economically, politically** *a politically powerful figure* **| locally** *locally powerful landowners*

powerless *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, seem | become | remain | render sb** *If he took control, they would be rendered virtually powerless.*

ADV. **completely, quite, totally, utterly | comparatively, relatively, virtually**

PREP. **against** *They were completely powerless against such a large group.* **| in the face of** *They felt powerless in the face of disaster.*

practicable *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become**

ADV. **perfectly | reasonably** *We will do this as soon as is reasonably practicable.* **| not very**

PHRASES **as far/soon as practicable**

practical *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | become**

ADV. **eminently, extremely, highly, intensely, very | entirely, purely, strictly** *For entirely practical reasons, children are not invited.* **| hardly | quite, reasonably | essentially | severely** *She always adopted a severely practical tone.*

practical *noun*

ADJ. **chemistry, physics, etc.**

VERB + PRACTICAL **sit, take | pass | fail** *I passed the written exam but failed the practical.*

practice *noun*

1 **actual doing of sth**

VERB + PRACTICE **put sth into** *I can't wait to put what I've learned into practice.*

PREP. **in ~** *The idea sounds fine in theory, but would it work in practice?*

2 **doing sth many times**

ADJ. **basketball, catching, piano, etc. | target**

VERB + PRACTICE **do, get (in), have** *I'll be able to get in a bit of practice this weekend. I've had a lot of practice in saying 'no' recently!* **| need, require, take** *Don't worry if you can't do it at first?it takes practice!* **| give sb** *This chapter gives students practice in using adjectives.*

PRACTICE + NOUN **ground | game, session**

PREP. **out of ~** *If you don't play regularly you soon get out of practice.* **| with ~** *His accent should improve with practice.* **| ~ at** *practice at swimming underwater* **| ~ in** *The children need more practice in tying their shoelaces.*

PHRASES **be good practice for sth** *It will be good practice for later, when you have to make speeches in public.*

3 **way of doing sth**

ADJ. **good** *adopting current best practices in your business* **| corrupt, sharp, unethical, unfair | discriminatory, restrictive | accepted, common, current, established, normal, standard, universal, usual, widespread** *It is standard practice not to pay bills until the end of the month.* **| local | cultural, legal, medical, religious, sexual** *the medical practices of ancient Egypt* **| accounting, administrative, business, employment, management, working** *studying Japanese working practices*

VERB + PRACTICE **introduce** *The practice of community policing was introduced in the 1970s.* **| adopt, follow, use | promote | change, modify** *Established practices are* *difficult to modify.* **| ban, outlaw, prevent, prohibit, stop**

PRACTICE + VERB **begin | continue** *the ancient custom of log rolling, a practice which continues to this day* **| change, develop, evolve**

PREP. **~ of** *the practice of acupuncture*

PHRASES **a change in/of practice** *changes in employment practices* **| a code of practice** *voluntary codes of practice between sellers and customers* **| make a practice of sth** *I don't make a practice of forgetting to pay my bills, I assure you!*

4 **work/office of a professional person**

ADJ. **successful | legal, medical, professional | general** (= medicine of a non-specialized type, not in a hospital), **private** (= accepting paying patients) **| group** *It's a group practice, so you can easily change doctors.*

VERB + PRACTICE **be in, go into, set up in** *She wants to go into general practice.* **| retire from | suspend sb from** *He has been suspended from practice, pending legal investigations.* **| open, start** *She has opened a new practice in the town.* **| run** *He runs a successful legal practice in Ohio.* **| join** *A new partner has joined the practice.* **| leave**

practise *verb*

ADV. **hard | regularly**

PREP. **for** *She's practising hard for the piano competition.* **| on** *I learned hairdressing by practising on my sister.*

pragmatic *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **highly, very | entirely, purely, utterly | essentially, largely** *Our approach is essentially pragmatic.* **| quite, rather**

PREP. **about** *They're pragmatic about the spending cuts.*

prairie *noun*

ADJ. **high, rolling, wide | American**

VERB + PRAIRIE **cross** *a train of covered wagons crossing the wide American prairies*

PRAIRIE + NOUN **dog**

PREP. **across the ~** *their route across the prairie* **| on the ~** *settlers' houses on the prairies of Canada*

pram *noun*

VERB + PRAM **push, wheel**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She was pushing her baby along in a pram.*

pray *verb*

ADV. **earnestly, fervently, hard** *He thought if he prayed hard enough God might eventually listen.* **| quietly, silently | regularly | together**

PREP. **for** *He prayed for rain.* **| to** *I prayed to God for guidance.* **| with** *She asked the priest to pray with her.*

PHRASES **hope and pray** *We can hope and pray that no one gets hurt.* **| let us pray** *'Let us pray.' The congregation bowed their heads. Let's pray Mick doesn't find out.*

prayer *noun*

ADJ. **little, short | private, silent | special | fervent | evening, morning | daily | family**

VERB + PRAYER **offer (up), say, send up, utter** *I sent up a quick prayer and entered the interview room.* **| remember sb in** *Let us remember them in our prayers today.* **| hear | answer** *Does God answer our prayers?* **| kneel in** *The congregation knelt in prayer.* **| join in, meet for** *local groups meeting for prayer* **| have** *We had family prayers before breakfast.* **| attend** *Students are required to attend prayers twice a week.*

PRAYER + NOUN **book | mat, rug | meeting, service**

PREP. **at ~** *He spends an hour each day at prayer.* **| in ~** *She moved her lips in silent prayer.* **| ~ for** *a prayer for peace* **| ~ of** *I said a prayer of grateful thanks to God.* **| ~ to**

PHRASES **the answer to (all) sb's prayers** (= exactly what sb needs) *The letter was the answer to her prayers.*

preacher *noun*

ADJ. **celebrated, eminent, famous, good, great, leading | Baptist, Methodist, etc. | evangelical | lay | local | itinerant**

VERB + PREACHER **hear, listen to**

precaution *noun*

ADJ. **sensible, wise | adequate, proper, reasonable | necessary | elaborate | basic, simple** *You'll be quite safe if you observe certain basic precautions.* **| every** *We take every precaution to ensure that you have a comfortable journey.* **| extra, special | fire, safety, security**

VERB + PRECAUTION **follow, observe, take**

PREP. **as a ~** *She had to stay in hospital overnight, just as a precaution.* **| ~ against** *a precaution against customers who try to leave without paying* **| ~ for** *Staff are expected to take reasonable precautions for their own safety.* **| ~ of** *I took the precaution of turning the water supply off first.*

precede *verb*

ADV. **directly, immediately** *in the moments which immediately preceded the earthquake*

precedence *noun*

ADJ. **historical**

VERB + PRECEDENCE **have, take | give sb/sth** *You should give your schoolwork precedence.* **| claim** *The French kings claimed precedence over those of Spain.*

PREP. **~ over** *The needs of the patient take precedence over those of the student doctor.*

PHRASES **in order of precedence** *The guests were seated strictly in order of precedence.*

precedent *noun*

ADJ. **bad, dangerous, unfortunate | good, important | historical | judicial, legal**

VERB + PRECEDENT **serve as** *This case could could serve as a precedent for others against the tobacco companies.* **| have | create, establish, provide, set** *This lowering of standards sets a dangerous precedent for future developments.* **| cite, quote | find | base sth on, use sth as** *The judge based his decision on precedents set during the Middle Ages.* **| follow**

PREP. **without ~** *The achievements of this period were without precedent in history.* **| ~ for** *Many precedents can be found for this decision.*

precious *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **extremely, incredibly, infinitely, very**

PREP. **to** *You are infinitely precious to me.*

precise *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely | increasingly | fairly, quite, reasonably | enough, sufficiently** *Are the measurements precise enough?* **| insufficiently | legally, mathematically** *You need to use legally precise terms.*

PREP. **about** *You have to be precise about the numbers.*

precision *noun*

ADJ. **absolute | great, high** *high precision measurement tools* **| analytical, mathematical, military, surgical, technical** *He organized the team with military precision.*

QUANT. **degree** *Chimps are able to manipulate objects with a high degree of precision.*

VERB + PRECISION **call for, demand, require** *surgery which requires great precision*

PRECISION + NOUN **engineering | bombing**

PREP. **with ~** *These items cannot be dated with any precision.* **| ~ in** *a new era of precision in engineering*

PHRASES **a lack of precision** *Any lack of precision in the contract could give rise to a dispute.*

preconception *noun*

VERB + PRECONCEPTION **have | fit in with** *We like this approach because it fits in with our own preconceptions.* **| challenge, get away from** *It is important to challenge society's preconceptions about disabled people.*

PREP. **with/without ~s** *It's important that you come to this task with no preconceptions.* **| ~ about** *Most people have preconceptions about old age.* **| ~ of** *her preconceptions of life in the country*

predicament *noun*

ADJ. **awful, awkward, dire, worse** *Other companies are in an even worse predicament than ourselves.* **| current, present | financial, personal**

VERB + PREDICAMENT **be in, find yourself in, get into** *Many young people find themselves in this predicament.* **| place sb in, put sb in | escape (from), get out of** *How were we to escape this awful predicament?* **| solve**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Now I really was in a dire predicament.*

predict *verb*

ADV. **accurately, correctly, reliably, successfully, with accuracy/certainty** *It is not possible to predict with any certainty what effect this will have.* **| exactly, precisely | confidently | wrongly**

VERB + PREDICT **be able/unable to, can/could | try to | dare (to)** *Few would have dared to predict such a landslide victory.* **| fail to | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to | be easy to, be possible to | use sth to** *a computer model used to predict future weather patterns* **| allow sb to, enable sb to** *Newton's theories allow us to predict the flight of a cricket ball.*

PREP. **from** *We can predict from this information what is likely to happen next.*

PHRASES **be widely predicted** *This result had been widely predicted by the opinion polls.*

predictable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **easily, extremely, highly, very | completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | almost | largely | fairly, pretty, reasonably, relatively | sadly** *England's defeat in the third test match was sadly predictable.*

PREP. **from** *He asked whether this was predictable from previous performances.*

prediction *noun*

ADJ. **accurate, correct | dire, gloomy | long-term | reliable, safe | confident | definite, firm | computer | earthquake, weather**

VERB + PREDICTION **make | confirm, fulfil** *The results of the experiment confirmed their predictions.* **| confound, contradict**

PREDICTION + VERB **prove sth, turn out to be sth** *Our prediction turns out to be correct.* **| be borne out, come true**

PREP. **amid ~s** *Six hundred workers there lost their jobs today, amid gloomy predictions that there could be worse to come.* **| contrary to a/the ~** *Contrary to almost all predictions, however, the government did not fall.* **| despite a/the ~** *Despite earlier dire predictions, shares remained steady.* **| ~ about** *I've learnt not to make predictions about the weather.* **| ~ for** *the government's prediction for unemployment* **| ~ of** *their predictions of future growth*

prefer *verb*

ADV. **greatly, much, strongly** *I much prefer the orchestra's 1998 recording of the symphony.* **| infinitely | simply** *You may simply prefer just to sit on the terrace with a cocktail.* **| really** *I would really prefer to teach girls.* **| rather, slightly | certainly** *Egg pasta is certainly preferred by many chefs.* **| clearly, obviously | apparently** *Huge majorities apparently prefer reducing unemployment to fighting inflation.* **| generally, usually | naturally** *Employers naturally prefer candidates with some previous experience of the job.* **| personally | still**

VERB + PREFER **would** *We can eat out if you like, but I would prefer to stay in.* **| tend to** *Industries still tend to prefer virgin raw materials to recycled ones.* **| seem to**

PREP. **to** *I prefer his earlier paintings to his later ones.*

preferable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain | consider sth**

ADV. **far, greatly, infinitely, vastly**

PREP. **to** *Death was considered vastly preferable to dishonour.*

preference *noun*

ADJ. **clear, definite, marked, strong | slight | individual, personal** *It's a matter of personal preference.* **| consumer | first, second, etc.** *Local voters gave Harry West first preference.*

VERB + PREFERENCE **have** *Do you have any particular preference?* **| demonstrate | express, indicate, show, state | give sb** *Preference is given to students who have passed maths and chemistry.* **| receive**

PREP. **for ~** *I choose motorways when driving, for preference.* **| in ~ to** *They bought French planes in preference to British ones.* **| ~ as to/with regard to** *He has not expressed a preference as to which school he wants to go to.* **| ~ between** *people's preferences between brown, white and wholemeal bread* **| ~ for sth (over sth)** *the government's preference for tax cuts over greater public spending* **| ~ in** *changing preferences in furniture styles*

PHRASES **in order of preference** *List the candidates in order of preference.*

pregnancy *noun*

ADJ. **early | late | full-term, post-term | easy, healthy, normal | difficult** *She had a difficult pregnancy with her first child.* **| teenage | premarital | unplanned, unwanted** *There are thousands of unwanted teenage pregnancies every year.*

VERB + PREGNANCY **have | avoid, prevent** *taking precautions to avoid pregnancy* **| continue (with), keep** *the difficult decision about whether to continue with a pregnancy* **| terminate** *the right of a woman to terminate her pregnancy*

PREGNANCY + VERB **be at/go to (full) term**

PREGNANCY + NOUN **test** *a home pregnancy test kit*

PREP. **during/in (a/the) ~** *Lower blood pressure is common in early pregnancy.* **| throughout (a/the) ~** *You will be tested throughout your pregnancy.*

pregnant *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become, fall** *(informal)*, **get | get sb, make sb** *He got her pregnant.*

ADV. **heavily, very**

PREP. **by** *She was pregnant by a former client.*

PHRASES **six weeks, three months, etc. pregnant**

prejudice *noun*

ADJ. **deep, deep-rooted, deep-seated, strong | blatant | serious, unfair** *(both law)* **| personal | old** *It's hard to break down old prejudices.* **| blind, irrational | anti-gay, anti-Catholic, etc. | class, cultural, political, racial, religious, sectarian, sexist**

VERB + PREJUDICE **have, hold** *We all have prejudices of some kind.* **| air, express** *He sat there airing his personal prejudices.* **| arouse, feed, stir up | appeal to, pander to** *We must not pander to the irrational prejudices of a small minority.* **| confirm | come up against, encounter** *She had never encountered such deep prejudice before.* **| suffer | challenge | overcome | break down, eliminate, eradicate**

PREP. **~ about** *a book written to challenge prejudices about disabled people* **| ~ against** *deep-rooted prejudice against homosexuals* **| ~ among** *prejudice among ignorant people* **| ~ towards** *prejudice towards immigrants*

PHRASES **a victim of prejudice**

prejudice *verb*

1 cause sb to have a prejudice

ADV. **unfairly**

PREP. **against, in favour of** *Reading newspaper reports had unfairly prejudiced the jury in her favour.*

2 weaken sth/make it less fair

ADV. **seriously, severely, substantially**

VERB + PREJUDICE **be likely to** *She did not disclose evidence that was likely to prejudice her client's case*

prejudiced *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **deeply, extremely | racially**

PREP. **against** *He's deeply prejudiced against women.*

preliminary *noun*

ADJ. **essential, necessary, useful | usual** *After the usual preliminaries the meeting began.*

PREP. **as a ~** *The two presidents met today, as a preliminary to resuming the peace talks.* **| without preliminaries** *She began speaking intensely, without preliminaries.* **| ~ to** *an essential preliminary to serious research*

prelude *noun*

ADJ. **essential, inevitable, necessary**

VERB + PRELUDE **consider sth, see sth as**

PREP. **as a ~** *events held as a prelude to the Christmas festivities* **| ~ for** *the prelude for the battles ahead* **| ~ to** *He considered the strikes a prelude to the great socialist revolution.*

premier *noun*

ADJ. **acting, deputy | former | British, Chinese, etc. | Conservative, Labour, etc. | state**

VERB + PREMIER **appoint (sb), appoint sb as, elect (sb), elect sb as, swear sb in as** *She was sworn in as premier on 4 June.* **| succeed sb as, take over as**

PREP. **as ~** *during his 25 years as Liberal premier*

premises *noun*

ADJ. **new** *The company is moving to new premises next month.* **| suitable | bigger, large | cramped, modest | city-centre | purpose-built | adjoining, neighbouring | temporary | private, residential | business, church, club, commercial, company, factory, hospital, hotel, industrial, office, retail, school, shop**

VERB + PREMISES **enter** *The police have the power to enter the premises at any time.* **| find | own | acquire, lease | move to | occupy, use | leave, vacate**

PREP. **on the ~** *Smoking is strictly forbidden on school premises.*

premium *noun*

1 **extra value/price**

ADJ. **high | additional, extra | price**

VERB + PREMIUM **pay** *Electricity companies pay a premium for renewable energy.* **| charge | place, put**

PREMIUM + NOUN **price**

PREP. **at a ~** *Good student accommodation is at a premium* (= difficult to obtain and therefore expensive). **| ~ of** *bought at a premium of 40 per cent above the current market price* **| ~ on** *The company places a high premium on customer loyalty.*

2 **payment for insurance**

ADJ. **annual, monthly, regular | high, low** *Intense competition has kept premiums low.* **| insurance**

VERB + PREMIUM **pay | keep up** *We're struggling to keep up our premiums.* **| increase, raise** *The insurance company has increased our premiums.* **| cut, reduce**

PREMIUM + VERB **go up, rise | fall, go down**

PREMIUM + NOUN **payment, rate**

PREP. **~ for** *the premiums for your pension plan* **| ~ on** *Premiums on many cars will go up this year.*

premonition *noun*

ADJ. **shudder**

VERB + PREMONITION **feel, have**

PREP. **~ about** *Perhaps he had a premonition about what might happen in London.* **|** **~ of** *I wonder if she had a premonition of her own fate.*

preoccupation *noun*

ADJ. **current, present, recent | central, chief, main, major** *Their chief preoccupation was how to feed their families.* **| constant, continuing | growing | obsessive**

PREP. **~ for** *By now this had become a major preoccupation for him.* **| ~ with** *his growing preoccupation with death*

preoccupied *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **deeply, very | completely, entirely, totally | increasingly | a bit, a little, rather**

PREP. **with** *He was too preoccupied with his own problems to worry about hers.*

preparation *noun*

1 **getting sth ready**

ADJ. **careful, thorough | elaborate | adequate | initial** *It is the initial preparation that takes the time.*

VERB + PREPARATION **need, require** *a dish that requires no elaborate preparation or cooking* **| do** *He's done a lot of preparation for this meeting.*

PREPARATION + NOUN **time** *This simple dish takes very little preparation time.*

PREP. **in ~ for** *Get a good night's sleep in preparation for the journey.*

2 **preparations: things done to get sth ready**

ADJ. **elaborate, meticulous, special | secret | necessary | final, last-minute | Christmas, wedding, etc. | military** *military preparations for full-scale action*

VERB + PREPARATION **make** *making the final preparations for the party* **| begin, go ahead with | be busy with | complete, finalize**

PREPARATION + VERB **be in hand, be under way** *Preparations are now in hand to close half the factories.* **| be complete**

PREP. **~ for** *The family can now go ahead with preparations for the funeral.*

prepare *verb*

ADV. **properly, well | fully | badly, inadequately, poorly | adequately | carefully, painstakingly | specially** *a table full of specially prepared food*

VERB + PREPARE **help (sb), help (sb) to | fail to** *He had failed to prepare adequately for the task before him.* **| be easy to, be quick to** *a meal that is very quick and easy to prepare* **| be designed to** *The course is designed to prepare graduates for management careers.*

PREP. **for** *We all set about preparing for the party.*

PHRASES **time to prepare (sth)** *I haven't had time to prepare my arguments properly.*

prerequisite *noun*

ADJ. **essential, important, necessary, vital | first**

PREP. **~ for** *Training is a prerequisite for competence.* **| ~ to** *Recognition is a prerequisite to understanding.*

prerogative *noun*

ADJ. **exclusive, sole** *Making such decisions is not the sole prerogative of managers.* **| judicial, managerial, royal | personal**

VERB + PREROGATIVE **enjoy, have** *one of the prerogatives enjoyed by the president* **| exercise, use** *You can of course exercise your prerogative to leave at any time.* **| defend, preserve, protect** *The tsar protected his personal prerogatives.* **| give up, surrender**

prescribe *verb*

1 **drugs**

ADV. **legally** *The drug can no longer be legally prescribed.* **| medically, medicinally**

PREP. **for** *drugs prescribed for high blood pressure This drug is often prescribed for women with heart trouble.*

2 **what should/should not be done**

ADV. **narrowly, rigidly, strictly, tightly** *The curriculum is rigidly prescribed from an early age. Everything about her life was strictly prescribed* (= there were strict rules about what she could and could not do).

prescription *noun*

ADJ. **medical | free** *people who get free prescriptions* **| repeat** *I just get a repeat prescription every week.*

VERB + PRESCRIPTION **give sb, write (out) | make up** *Would you like to wait while the pharmacist makes up your prescription?*

PRESCRIPTION + NOUN **charge | drug, medicine**

PREP. **on ~** *Some drugs are only available on prescription.* **| ~ for** *the usual prescription for asthma She gave him a prescription for antibiotics.*

presence *noun*

1 **being present**

ADJ. **mere** *The mere presence of children in the room is enough to upset him.* **| constant, continued, continuing, permanent | strong** *The company now has a strong presence in Germany.*

VERB + PRESENCE **indicate, reveal, show** *These chemicals could indicate the presence of water on the planet.* **| acknowledge** *He acknowledged our presence with a nod of his head.* **| detect | grace sb with** *(ironic or humorous) How nice of you to grace us with your presence!*

PREP. **in sb's ~** *He should never have made those remarks in your presence.*

PHRASES **make your presence felt/known** *She certainly made her presence felt in the boardroom.*

2 **number of people**

ADJ. **constant | military, police** *There was a strong police presence throughout the demonstration.*

VERB + PRESENCE **maintain** *The army maintains a constant presence in the area.*

3 **force of personality**

ADJ. **charismatic, commanding, formidable, great, imposing, powerful, strong | stage** *He had a formidable stage presence.*

VERB + PRESENCE **have**

present *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **ever** *the ever present risk of pollution*

PHRASES **past and present** *a list of all club members, past and present*

present *noun*

ADJ. **anniversary, birthday, Christmas, wedding**

VERB + PRESENT **buy | get, receive | give sb, send sb | wrap (up) | open, unwrap**

PREP. **~ for** *a present for my daughter* **| ~ from, ~ to** *It's a present to us all from Granny.*

PHRASES **make sb a present of sth** *My nephew loves this bike so I'm going to make him a present of it.*

present *verb*

ADV. **clearly, well** *The arguments were well researched and clearly presented.* **| attractively, neatly | orally, visually** *The results can be presented visually in the form of a graph.*

VERB + PRESENT **aim to, attempt to, seek to, try to** *We have tried to present both sides of the debate.* **| be designed to** *Hotel brochures are designed to present the most attractive aspects of the hotel.*

PREP. **as** *He likes to present himself as a radical politician.* **| to** *He presented the information to his colleagues.*

presentable *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | make sb** *Could you try and make yourself a little more presentable?*

ADV. **very | perfectly** *She was not exactly good-looking, but perfectly presentable.* **| quite, reasonably**

presentation *noun*

1 **of a gift or prize**

ADJ. **annual | official | special | farewell, retirement**

VERB + PRESENTATION **make**

PRESENTATION + NOUN **ceremony, dinner, evening, night** *the school's annual presentation evening*

PREP. **~ to** *The president made a presentation to the businesswoman of the year.*

2 **informative talk**

ADJ. **formal | effective | slick | upbeat | business, sales | audio-visual, slide, video**

VERB + PRESENTATION **give, make**

PRESENTATION + NOUN **skills | software**

PREP. **~ on** *Candidates have to give a short presentation on a subject of their choice.*

presenter *noun*

ADJ. **radio, television/TV | BBC, ITV, etc. | programme, sports** *a BBC sports presenter* > Note at JOB

preservation *noun*

ADJ. **environmental | building, railway, etc.**

PRESERVATION + NOUN **order** *The council has placed a preservation order on the building.*

PHRASES **a state of preservation** *Most of the buildings are in an excellent state of preservation.*

preservative *noun*

ADJ. **food, wood | artificial** *Our products contain no artificial preservatives or colourings.*

VERB + PRESERVATIVE **apply, treat sth with** *Make sure the panels are treated with a wood preservative.*

preserve *verb*

ADV. **carefully, jealously, lovingly, zealously** *She carefully preserved all his letters.*

VERB + PRESERVE **seek to, try to | be anxious to, want to, wish to** *We were anxious to preserve the original character of the house.* | **help (to)** *taking action to help preserve fish stocks* **| fight to** *campaigners fighting to preserve a historic railway line* **| be designed to** *The Act contained provisions designed to preserve the status quo.* **| be important to**

PREP. **as** *The prison is preserved as a tourist attraction.* **| for** *The collection has been sold to the British Museum where it will be preserved for the nation.* **| from** *an attempt to preserve the corpse from decomposition*

PHRASES **an attempt to preserve sth, beautifully/exquisitely/finely/perfectly/superbly/well preserved** *They were thrilled to discover a perfectly preserved specimen of Roman pottery.* **| be preserved intact** *The bones had all been preserved intact.* **| be worth preserving** *You need to say why the building is worth preserving.* **| preserve sth for future generations/posterity**

presidency *noun*

ADJ. **directly-elected | executive, federal**

VERB + PRESIDENCY **be nominated for, run for, stand for | be elected to | assume, take on/over | hold** *She held the presidency of the association for three years.*

PREP. **into sb's ~** *Three years into his presidency, he is more popular than ever.* **| under sb's ~** *under the presidency of George W. Bush.*

president *noun*

ADJ. **acting, caretaker, honorary, interim, provisional | deputy, vice | elect** *the president elect, Michael Roberts* **| incoming, outgoing | incumbent | former, past, previous | lame-duck | civilian, military | federal, national, state | club, company, party, university**

VERB + PRESIDENT **appoint, appoint sb (as), elect, elect sb (as), name sb (as), swear sb in as** *He was sworn in as president on August 31.* **| serve as | impeach**

PRESIDENT + VERB **veto sth | intervene (in sth)**

press conference *noun*

ADJ. **joint | formal | impromptu, informal | concluding** *At the concluding press conference, both leaders said that the talks had been constructive.* **| post-match, post-summit, etc.**

VERB + PRESS CONFERENCE **call | arrange, organize, plan | give, hold | tell** *The chairman told a press conference of the forthcoming merger.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *The prime minister outlined the privatization plans at a press conference.* **| during/in a/the ~** *The announcement was made in an impromptu press conference at the airport.*

press *noun*

1 **media**

ADJ. **foreign, international, local, national, provincial | gutter, popular, quality, tabloid | financial, music | free** *A free press is fundamental to democracy.*

PRESS + NOUN **release, statement** *He issued a press statement insisting on his innocence.* **| coverage, report** *extensive press coverage of the event* **| cuttings** *He kept a scrapbook containing press cuttings of his concerts.* **| officer | photographer | agency | ad, advertisement | campaign | freedom**

PREP. **in the ~** *There was no mention of the incident in the national press.*

PHRASES **get/have a good/bad, etc. press** *His latest novel didn't get a very good press* (= was not praised in the media).

2 **machine for printing**

ADJ. **printing**

VERB + PRESS **go to** *The newspaper goes to press at 6 o'clock.*

PRESS + VERB **roll** *The presses are already rolling.*

PREP. **in ~** *Their new book is in press.*

PHRASES **hot off the press** *We've just received a copy of her latest book, hot off the press.*

press *verb*

1 **push sth firmly**

ADV. **firmly, hard** *She pressed down hard on the gas pedal.* | **gently, lightly** | **close/closely** *He pressed up closer against the wall, terrified of being seen.* | **back, down, forward, together, up** *The crowd pressed forward. She pressed her lips together.*

PREP. **against** *She pressed her face against the window.* | **into** *Bella pressed her face into the pillow.* | **on** *She pressed on the doorbell.* | **to** *He pressed a finger gently to her lips.*

PHRASES **press sth flat/open/shut** *He pressed the lid firmly shut.*

2 **try to persuade sb**

ADV. **strongly** *In the interview he strongly pressed his point of view.* | **consistently, continually, repeatedly** | **further** | **successfully**

VERB + PRESS **continue to**

PREP. **for** *The party will continue to press the case for a new electoral system.* | **on** *I did not press him further on the issue.*

3 **iron sth**

PHRASES **immaculately/neatly pressed** *his immaculately pressed suit* **PHRASAL VERBS press on**

ADV. **blindly** | **boldly**

PREP. **with** *They pressed boldly on with their plan.*

PHRASES **press on regardless** *The weather was dreadful but we pressed on regardless.*

pressure *noun*

1 **force produced by pressing**

ADJ. **gentle, light | firm | downward**

VERB + PRESSURE **apply, put | reduce**

2 **force of a gas or liquid**

ADJ. **high, low | air, blood, water** *an instrument for measuring blood pressure* **| atmospheric, barometric**

PRESSURE + VERB **build up, increase, rise | ease, fall**

3 **cause of worry**

ADJ. **considerable, constant, intolerable, undue, unrelenting | commercial, competitive, economic, financial, political, social** *The economic pressures on small businesses are intense.*

VERB + PRESSURE **place/put sb under | cope with, withstand | escape, get away (from)** *It's an ideal place in which to relax and escape the pressures of modern life.* **| reduce**

PRESSURE + VERB **build up, increase**

PREP. **under ~** *He's felt under pressure since his wife had the operation.* **| ~ on** *There's a lot of pressure on the soldiers preparing for battle.*

PHRASES **pressure of work** *The holiday was a welcome relief from the pressure of work.*

4 **attempt to persuade/influence sb**

ADJ. **enormous, great, intense, strong, tremendous** *There is intense pressure on her to resign.* **| growing, increasing, mounting | popular** *The government bowed to popular pressure and repealed the law.* **| peer, peer-group** *She started smoking* *because of peer pressure.*

VERB + PRESSURE **bring to bear, exert, place/put (sb under)** *This concession would not have happened but for the pressure that was brought to bear on the authorities. My parents never put any pressure on me to get a job.* **| be brought under, be under, come under, face** *Hospital staff are coming under pressure to work longer hours.* **| resist, withstand | bow to, give in to, respond to** *The editor bowed to pressure from his staff, and the article was suppressed.*

PRESSURE + VERB **intensify, mount**

PRESSURE + NOUN **group**

PREP. **under ~** *Management is under pressure to set an example on pay restraint.* **| ~ for** *pressure for change in the country's economy* **| ~ from** *pressure from religious groups* **| ~ on** *pressure on foreign diplomats*

prestige *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, high, immense** *Winning the prize carries immense prestige.* **| low | international, national | personal | military, political, social**

VERB + PRESTIGE **enjoy, have** *an international company that enjoys immense prestige* **| lack | acquire, derive, gain, get | accord sb/sth, give sb/sth** *Different jobs are accorded different levels of prestige.* **| bring, carry | lose | rise in | boost, enhance, increase, raise | damage, lower** *The royal couple's prestige was damaged by the allegations.*

PREP. **~ among/with** *the party's prestige among the public* **| ~ within** *The post carried great prestige within the police force.*

PHRASES **a loss of prestige** *Doctors have suffered a loss of prestige following a spate of scandals.* **| a matter of prestige** *Wearing designer clothes is a matter of personal prestige for many teenagers.*

prestigious *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *She won a highly prestigious award.*

presume *verb*

ADV. **rightly, wrongly** *I had presumed wrongly that Jenny would be there.* **| reasonably | automatically | conclusively** *(law)*

presumption *noun*

ADJ. **strong | general** *There is a general presumption that fatty foods are bad for your heart.*

PREP. **~ about** *The argument is based on certain presumptions about human nature.* **| ~ against** *the presumption against changes in the common law* **| ~ of** *a strong presumption of guilt*

pretence *noun*

ADJ. **elaborate** *It was all an elaborate pretence.*

VERB + PRETENCE **keep up, maintain, sustain** *I don't know how long I can keep up this pretence.* **| abandon, drop, give up**

PRETENCE + VERB **be over** *Now that the pretence was over, he could tell them what he really thought.*

PREP. **under the ~ of** *He tried to get close to her under the pretence of examining the pictures on the wall.* **| ~ at** *His pretence at friendliness fooled no one.* **| ~ of** *He was hanged without even the pretence of a proper trial.*

PHRASES **make a/little/no pretence** *I make no pretence to be an expert on the subject.* **| by/under false pretences** *obtaining money under false pretences*

pretend *verb*

ADV. **otherwise** *You know what this is all about, Natasha. Why pretend otherwise?*

VERB + PRETEND **can/could no longer | try to | be dishonest to, be idle to, be ridiculous to, be useless to** *It's useless to pretend that we might still win.*

PREP. **to** *He pretended to his boss that he'd written the article.*

PHRASES **go on pretending** *I can't go on pretending any longer.* **| just/only pretending** *Maria knew he was only pretending.* **| let's pretend** *Let's pretend it never happened.* **| stop pretending, there's no point in pretending**

pretext *noun*

VERB + PRETEXT **give sb, provide (sb with) | find, invent** *He considered inventing some pretext for calling her.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *He disappeared into his study on the pretext that he had work to do there.* **| under a/the ~** *Under the pretext of checking her identity, the man had copied down her credit card details.* **| ~ for** *He used his research as a pretext for travelling to Hungary.*

PHRASES **at/on the slightest pretext** *He keeps popping into my office on the slightest pretext.*

pretty *adj*

VERBS **be, look**

ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, ravishingly, really, strikingly, very, wonderfully | almost | quite, rather | undeniably**

prevail *verb*

ADV. **always** *Her happy outlook always prevailed.* **| eventually, finally, in the end, ultimately**

VERB + PREVAIL **be likely to | must, ought to** *Common sense must prevail in the end.*

PREP. **against** *The wishes of 20 million people ought to prevail against those of 200 thousand.* **| over** *His view eventually prevailed over theirs.*

prevent *verb*

ADV. **effectively, successfully** *This new legislation effectively prevents us from trading.* **| forcibly, physically**

VERB + PREVENT **be able/unable to, can/could** *No one can prevent you from attending this meeting.* **| attempt to, seek to, take action/steps to, try to | help (to)** *A good sun cream will help prevent sunburn.* **| be designed to | be/do nothing to** *There was nothing to prevent him setting up in business on the premises. The whole affair is an outrage and the authorities have done nothing to prevent it.*

PREP. **from** *They took action to prevent the disease from spreading.*

PHRASES **aimed at preventing sth** *new measures aimed at preventing accidents* **| action/measures to prevent sth, an attempt to prevent sth, in order to prevent sth** *Action must be swift in order to prevent further damage.*

preventable *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **entirely** *These injuries are entirely preventable.* **| largely**

prevention *noun*

ADJ. **accident, crime, drug, fire, flood, pollution** *a drug prevention programme* **| primary, secondary, tertiary (all used when talking about health care)**

PREVENTION + NOUN **programme, scheme, strategy** *a crime prevention scheme*

preview *noun*

ADJ. **press** *a press preview of a new film* **| sneak** *Journalists have been given a sneak preview of the singer's latest album.*

VERB + PREVIEW **get, have | see | give sb**

PREVIEW + NOUN **audience | theatre**

prey *noun*

ADJ. **easy** *Teenagers are easy prey for unscrupulous drug dealers.* **| ideal**

VERB + PREY **chase, hunt for, look for, pursue, stalk | capture, pounce on** *a cat pouncing on its prey* **| kill**

PREP. **~ for** *The young deer are ideal prey for the leopard.* **| ~ to** *(figurative) She was prey to all kinds of conflicting emotions.*

PHRASES **a beast/bird of prey, be/fall prey to sth** *(figurative) The new government has fallen prey to corruption and fraud.*

price *noun*

ADJ. **exorbitant, high, inflated, prohibitive, steep | low | bargain, budget** *designer clothes at bargain prices* | **attractive, fair, reasonable, right** *We sell quality tools at the right price.* | **good** *I managed to get a good price for my old car.* | **average | asking, purchase** *What's the asking price for this house? You need to pay a deposit of 10 per cent of the purchase price of the property.* | **retail, sale, selling | cost** *They are selling off summer shoes at cost price.* | **full, half** *Children travel half price until age ten.* | **market** *This website tells you the market price of all makes of second-hand car.* | **admission** *admission prices at the museum* | **consumer | commodity, food, house, land, property, share | electricity, energy, fuel, oil, petrol**

VERB + PRICE **command, fetch, go for** *Property in the area is now fetching ridiculously high prices.* | **give sb, quote sb** *I got a number of suppliers to quote me their best prices.* | **charge, set | increase, push up, raise | bring down, cut, lower, mark down, push down, reduce, slash | go up in, increase in, rise in** *Oil is set in go up in price.* | **come down in | range in, vary in** *These computers range in price from £1,300 to £2,000.* | **undercut**

PRICE + VERB **go up, rise, shoot up, skyrocket, soar** *House prices went up by 5 per cent last year. Prices soared during the war.* | **drop, fall, go down, slump** *If prices slump further, the farmers will starve.* | **go from … to … , range from … to … , start at** *Prices go from $30 for the standard model to $150 for the deluxe version.*

PRICE + NOUN **level, range | increase, rise | cut | change, movement | war | tag** *I got a shock when I looked at the price tag.* | **list | index** *the share price index*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *Food is available, at a price* (= at a high price). *I can't afford it at that price.* | **in ~** *Cigarettes have remained stable in price for some time.*

PHRASES **a drop/a fall/a reduction in price, an increase/a rise in price, pay a heavy price (for sth)** *The team paid a heavy price for its lack of preparation.* | **place/put a price on sth** *You can't put a price on happiness.* | **the price of freedom/success, etc.** (= the unpleasant things you must suffer to have freedom, success, etc.), **a small price to pay (for sth)** ***The cost of a policy premium is a small price to pay for peace of mind.*** **> Note at PERCENT (for more verbs)**

price *verb* **be priced**

ADV. **highly | attractively, competitively, economically, fairly, moderately, modestly, realistically, reasonably, sensibly** *a wide range of competitively priced office furniture* **| accordingly** *This is considered a luxury item and is priced accordingly.*

PREP. **at** *The car is priced at $60,000.* **| between** *Tickets for the concert are priced between £15 and £35.* **| from, to** *The kits are priced from £8.50 to £20.*

PHRASES **be priced high/low** *The house was priced much too high.*

pride *noun*

1 **feeling of being proud of sb/sth**

ADJ. **fierce, great**

VERB + PRIDE **feel, have, swell with** *They have a fierce pride in their traditions. He swelled with pride as he held the trophy.* | **express**

PREP. **with ~** *I wear my policeman's uniform with pride. 'My daughter's a writer,' he added with pride.* | **~ in** *She expressed pride in her child's achievement.*

PHRASES **a cause/matter for pride** *Their reputation for fairness is a matter for pride.* | **a source of pride, take (a) pride in sth** *She takes great pride in her work.*

2 **self-respect**

ADJ. **great** | **civic, family, local, national, personal, professional** | **dented, hurt, injured, wounded** *He was nursing his hurt pride.* | **foolish, stubborn** *It was foolish pride that prevented me from believing her.*

VERB + PRIDE **have** *I don't want your money?I have my pride, you know!* | **hurt** *I didn't mean to hurt your pride.* | **restore, salvage** *We want to restore pride in our public services. They managed to salvage some pride with a late goal.* | **swallow** *She swallowed her pride and phoned him.*

PREP. **out of ~** *She refused their help out of pride.* | **through ~** *It would be stupid to refuse through pride.*

PHRASES **a matter of pride** *It is a matter of pride for him that he has never accepted money from his family.* | **a sense of pride** *They have a strong sense of pride in their work.* | **with your pride intact** *She refused his offer tactfully, allowing him to go away with his pride intact.*

priest *noun*

1 **in Christianity**

ADJ. **local, parish, village | celibate | married | woman | Anglican, (Roman) Catholic, Jesuit, etc.**

VERB + PRIEST **become, be ordained (as)**

PRIEST + VERB **celebrate sth, officiate (at sth)** *the priest who was celebrating Mass*

2 **in some other religions**

ADJ. **chief, high** *a ceremony led by the High Priest (figurative) He was considered the high priest of finance at that time.* **| temple | Brahmin, Buddhist, etc.**

prime minister *noun*

ADJ. **deputy | acting, caretaker, interim, transitional | incumbent, present | former, previous | outgoing | strong | beleaguered** *The beleaguered prime minister is coming under yet more pressure.* **| Conservative, Labour, etc.**

VERB + PRIME MINISTER **appoint, appoint sb (as), elect, elect sb (as) | serve as** *He served briefly as prime minister from 1920 to 1921.* (For more verbs see the entry for **minister.)**

PREP. **under a/the ~** *She held office under two different prime ministers.*

principal *noun*

ADJ. **college, school** > Note at JOB

principle *noun*

1 **basic general rule**

ADJ. **basic, broad, central, fundamental, general** *the basic principles of car maintenance* **| cardinal, essential, key | universal | democratic, legal, market, political, scientific, theoretical**

VERB + PRINCIPLE **establish, formulate, lay down | apply | explain**

PRINCIPLE + VERB **apply** *This principle applies to all kinds of selling.* **| underlie sth, underpin sth** *the principles underlying Western philosophy*

PREP. **in ~** *I agree with you in principle, but we'll need to discuss the details.* **| ~ behind** *She went on to explain the principles behind what she was doing.*

2 **rule for good behaviour**

ADJ. **high | guiding | Christian | moral** *He was a man of high moral principles.*

VERB + PRINCIPLE **betray, compromise** *I refuse to compromise my principles by eating meat.* **| adhere to, stick to** *She sticks to the principle that everyone should be treated equally.*

PREP. **against your ~s** *Eating meat was against her principles.* **| on ~** *She's opposed to abortion on principle.*

PHRASES **a matter of principle** *They reject the proposal as a matter of principle.* **| a person of principle** (= a person with high moral standards)

print *noun*

ADJ. **large | fine, small** *Always read the small print in a contract before signing.* **| clear | bold**

PRINT + NOUN **journalist, worker | industry, union | run** *The initial print run for her book was 6,000 copies.*

PREP. **in ~** *All her books are still in print.* **| out of ~** *The shop specializes in out-of-print books.*

print *verb*

ADV. **beautifully** *The book is beautifully printed on good quality paper.* **| badly | correctly** *I couldn't get the graphics to print correctly.* **| clearly | indelibly** *(figurative) The incident was indelibly printed in her memory.* **| privately** *She had the memoir privately printed in a limited edition.* **| specially** *We had the T-shirts specially printed with the firm's logo.*

PREP. **from** *printing from a file* **| in** *The message was printed in blue ink.* **| on** *a leaflet printed on recycled paper* **| with** *a dress printed with blue flowers*

printer *noun*

1 **person/company that prints books, etc.**

ADJ. **book | lithographic | commercial | master | jobbing**

PRINTER + VERB **print sth, run sth off** *The printer has run off 2,000 copies of the leaflet.* > Note at JOB

2 **machine**

ADJ. **black-and-white, colour | computer | desktop | bubblejet, daisy wheel, dot matrix, inkjet, laser, line, page | compatible**

VERB + PRINTER **control, drive | connect** *Coonect the printer to your PC with a printer cable.*

PRINTER + VERB **print (sth), work** *The printer won't print for some reason.*

PRINTER + NOUN **cable | port | ribbon | driver | icon** > Special page at COMPUTER

priority *noun*

ADJ. **high, main, major, number one, top | first, immediate, urgent** *Getting food, medicine and blankets to flood victims is the most urgent priority.* **| low** *Material possessions have always been a low priority for Mike.*

VERB + PRIORITY **choose, decide on, determine, identify, sort out** *You need to sort out your priorities before making a decision about the future.* **| get, have, take** *When hospital funds are being allocated children take priority.* **| give sb/sth** *The government is giving priority to school leavers in its job-creation programme.*

PREP. **~ over** *Her family takes priority over her work.*

PHRASES **a list of priorities, order of priority** *List the tasks in order of priority.*

prison *noun*

ADJ. **local | overcrowded | high-security, maximum-security, top-security | closed | open** *Open prisons prepare prisoners for life back in the community.* **| private | women's | debtors'** *(historical)* **| military**

VERB + PRISON **go to** *He went to prison for tax evasion.* **| put sb in, send sb to, throw sb into** *She was sent to prison for leaking state secrets. He was immediately seized and thrown into prison.* **| be discharged from, be released from, come out of, get out of** *When did he get out of prison?* **| escape from** *A dangerous criminal has escaped from a high-security prison.* **| avoid, escape** *You only escaped prison* (= escaped being sent to prison) *because of your previous good character.* **| face** *She was told by magistrates she could now face prison.*

PRISON + NOUN **sentence, term | cell, hospital | conditions | population | authorities, governor, inmate, officer, staff, warder | service, system**

PREP. **at a/the~** *The police are investigating disturbances at the prison.* **| in (a/the) ~** *How long has her father been in prison? There have been riots in the prison.*

prisoner *noun*

ADJ. **virtual** *Without a wheelchair, she is a virtual prisoner in her own home.* **| political | life, life-sentence, long-term | short-term | remand | condemned, convicted, sentenced | escaped | model** *He was a model prisoner, and was released after serving only half of his five-year sentence.*

VERB + PRISONER **capture, take** *They had captured over 100 prisoners. Many soldiers were taken prisoner.* **| hold, keep** *They were kept prisoner for eight months in a tiny flat.* **| free, release**

PHRASES **a prisoner of conscience** *The former prisoner of conscience was elected president of the new democracy.* **| a prisoner of war**

privacy *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total | individual, personal**

VERB + PRIVACY **preserve, protect, respect | disturb, intrude on, invade, violate** *I hope I'm not intruding on your privacy.*

PREP. **in ~** *I want to be left in privacy.* **| in the ~ of** *She longed to be in the privacy of her own room.* **| ~ from** *privacy from prying eyes*

PHRASES **an intrusion/invasion of privacy** *These phone calls are a gross invasion of privacy.* **| an intrusion on (sb's) privacy**

privatization *noun*

ADJ. **large-scale, mass, wholesale | partial | electricity, rail, water, etc.**

PRIVATIZATION + NOUN **plan, programme, proposal**

PREP. **under ~** *Several railway lines were closed under privatization.*

privilege *noun*

1 **special right**

ADJ. **exclusive, special** *Club members have special privileges, like free use of the pool.* **| class | diplomatic**

VERB + PRIVILEGE **enjoy, exercise, have | accord sb, give sb, grant sb | abuse** *He was accused of abusing his diplomatic privileges.* **| revoke, withdraw**

2 **opportunity to do sth pleasant**

ADJ. **enormous, great, rare, real** *It is a great privilege to be attending this conference.* **| doubtful, dubious** *I was given the dubious privilege of organizing the summer fair.*

VERB + PRIVILEGE **have** *She had the rare privilege of a viewing of his private art collection.* **| give sb**

privileged *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | consider sb/yourself** *I consider myself highly privileged to have this opportunity.*

ADV. **highly, specially, very | absolutely | quite, relatively | financially, socially** *She came from a financially privileged background.*

prize *noun*

ADJ. **big, great, prestigious | special | coveted** *She was the first woman to win this coveted prize.* **| glittering** *He strove for the glittering prizes of politics.* **| first, top | runner-up, second | consolation | booby** *The booby prize was awarded to the worst singer in the competition.* **| cash, money**

VERB + PRIZE **award (sb), give (sb) | present** *The prize was presented by the mayor.* **| get, receive, take, win | accept**

PRIZE + VERB **go to sb/sth** *The prize went to the grey long-haired cat.* **| be worth sth** *a prize worth over £3,000*

PRIZE + NOUN **winner** (also **prizewinner**) **| money | draw**

PREP. **~ for** *He won the Nobel Prize for Literature.*

prize *verb*

PREP. **above** *a precious thing to be prized above all else* **| as** *The library is prized as the finest of its kind in England.* **| for** *The berries are prized for their healing properties.*

PHRASES **highly/much prized** *two fruits that are much prized in Madeira*

probability *noun*

ADJ. **high, real, strong** *There is a high probability that it will snow tonight.* **| greater, increased | low**

QUANT. **degree** *We can say with a high degree of probability that the poem was written by Shakespeare.*

VERB + PROBABILITY **have | increase | reduce | assess, calculate, judge**

PREP. **~ of** *This surgical procedure has a high probability of success.*

PHRASES **in all probability** *In all probability she wouldn't come even if we invited her.* **| on a balance of probabilities** *The coroner thought that on the balance of probabilities, the pilot had suffered a stroke just before the crash.*

probable *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | quite | equally** *The two outcomes are equally probable.*

probation *noun*

ADJ. **give sb, place sb on, put sb on, sentence sb to** *He was placed on probation for two years. She was sentenced to a year's probation.* **| release sb on**

PROBATION + NOUN **order** *He was under a probation order for attacking a photographer.* **| officer | service | hostel | period** *Once your probation period is successfully completed, you will be offered a contract.*

PREP. **on ~** *The judge put her on probation for a year. He joined the company on six months' probation.*

probe *verb*

ADV. **deep/deeply** *(figurative) probing deeper and deeper into the secrets of the universe* **| further | gently**

PREP. **for** *using its long beak to probe for worms* **| into** *(figurative) The police were probing into her personal life.* **| with** *He probed the mud with his knife.*

problem *noun*

1 **sth that causes difficulties**

ADJ. **acute, big, enormous, grave, great, serious** *Our greatest problem is the lack of funds.* | **little, minor, petty** | **complex, complicated, difficult, knotty, thorny** | **growing** | **basic, central, main, major** | **common** | **pressing, urgent** | **immediate** | **insoluble, insuperable, insurmountable, intractable** *Depression is a natural feeling if your problems seem intractable.* | **long-standing, long-term, perennial** | **practical** | **technical** | **attitude, behavioural, emotional, psychological** *His teachers say he has an attitude problem.* | **health, physical, sexual** | **back, heart, knee** | **drink, drug** | **social** | **housing** | **economic, financial** *They sold their car to ease their financial problems.* | **environmental** | **legal**

VERB + PROBLEM **be, pose, present (sb with)** *Inadequate resources pose a problem for all members of staff.* | **have** | **bring, cause, create** *Success brings its own problems. Staff shortages cause problems for the organization.* | **be beset with, be confronted by/with, be dogged by, be faced with, be fraught with, confront, encounter, face, run into** *He has been faced with all manner of problems in his new job. The scheme has been fraught with problems from the start.* | **raise** *She raised the problem of falling sales at the last meeting.* | **identify** | **consider, debate, discuss, look at/into** | **address, approach, attack, combat, come/get to grips with, grapple with, handle, tackle** *The next meeting will address the problem of truancy.* | **avoid, circumvent, find a way around/round, get around/round** | **clear up, cure, deal with, overcome, resolve, solve** *He had to undergo surgery to cure the problem with his knee.* | **alleviate, ease, reduce** | **exacerbate** | **analyse, explore**

PROBLEM + VERB **arise, come up, occur** *problems arising from poor ventilation* | **exist** | **persist, remain** *If the problem persists you should see a doctor. The basic problem remains the lack of housing available.* | **confront sb, face sb** | **lie in sth** *The problem lies in the lack of communication between managers and staff.*

PROBLEM + NOUN **area** | **child**

PREP. **~ about** *I didn't imagine there would be a problem about getting tickets.* | **~ for** *The rail strike is a problem for all commuters.* | **~ of** *the problem of poverty* | **~ with** *Have you got a problem with her?*

PHRASES **an approach to a problem, the crux/heart/root of the problem** *We need to get to the root of the problem before we can solve it.* **| a remedy/solution to a problem, the scale of a problem**

2 **question to be solved**

ADJ. **complicated, difficult | easy, simple | mathematical** *solving simple mathematical problems*

VERB + PROBLEM **do, find the answer to, solve** *I have five problems to do for homework.*

PROBLEM + NOUN **solving** *This kind of activity develops the children's problem-solving skills.*

procedure *noun*

ADJ. **complex, complicated | simple, straightforward | correct, normal, proper, standard, usual** *There are standard procedures for dismissing staff.* **| agreed, established | special | administrative, appeals, application, assessment, complaints, court, criminal, disciplinary, emergency, parliamentary, safety, scientific, selection, surgical** *a minor surgical procedure*

PROCEDURE + NOUN **adopt, follow, use** *Did you follow the emergency procedure when you heard the alarm?* **| establish** *A straightforward complaints procedure must be established from the outset.*

PREP. **under a/the ~** *under a procedure established by legislation* **| ~ for** *the correct procedure for hiring staff*

proceed *verb*

ADV. **apace, quickly, rapidly** *Work is now proceeding apace.* **| slowly | carefully, cautiously, with caution** *It will be necessary to proceed with caution.* **| smoothly, uneventfully | directly** *In some cases appeals may proceed directly from the High Court to the House of Lords.* **| further**

VERB + PROCEED **be able to | decide to, intend to, wish to | allow sb/sth to, enable sb/sth to** *This project cannot be allowed to proceed.* **| instruct sb to** *I will instruct my solicitor to proceed with the preparation of draft contracts.*

PREP. **along** *Proceed along the Botley Road.* **| down, through, to** *students who wish to proceed to university* **| with** *She decided not to proceed with the treatment.*

PHRASES **proceed on the basis of sth** *The council must proceed on the basis of the vote.*

proceedings *noun*

ADJ. **court, criminal, judicial, legal | bankruptcy, divorce, extradition, impeachment, libel | appeal, civil, committal, summary**

VERB + PROCEEDINGS **bring, institute, take | begin, commence, start**

PROCEEDINGS + VERB **begin, commence**

PREP. **in ~** *decisions made in court proceedings* **| ~ against** *She is bringing divorce proceedings against her husband.* **| ~ before** *in appeal proceedings before a tribunal* **| ~ between** *proceedings between the four parties involved*

proceeds *noun*

ADJ. **total | gross | net | sale**

VERB + PROCEEDS **use** *The proceeds will be used to improve the school playground.* **| donate**

PROCEEDS + VERB **go to sth** *All the proceeds will go to the local pensioners' club.*

PREP. **on the ~** *I sold my car and I'm planning a long holiday on the proceeds.* **| with the ~** *They bought a new minibus with the proceeds from the auction.* **| ~ from**

PHRASES **your share of the proceeds** *She bought a small flat with her share of the proceeds.*

process *noun*

ADJ. **gradual, lengthy, long, slow | constant, continuous | complex, complicated, difficult | natural | due** *the due process of law* **| painful** *Removing the splinters from the wound was a long and painful process.* **| consultation, consultative, decision-making, management, planning | cognitive, creative, learning, mental** *Teachers are trained to stimulate the child's cognitive processes.* **| assessment, selection | democratic, electoral, political** *Churches are taking a key role in the democratic process.* **| chemical, industrial, manufacturing, production | ageing, biological, evolutionary, physical | judicial, legal | peace** *a stalemate in the peace process* **| historical, social**

VERB + PROCESS **go through** *Each time we have to go through the whole decision-making process again.* **| accelerate, speed up, stimulate** *Excessive exposure to sunlight speeds up the ageing process of the skin.*

PROCESS + VERB **take place** *The selection process takes place over a period of two weeks.*

PREP. **~ for** *a legal process for dealing with defrauders* **| ~ of** *the process of change*

PHRASES **a stage in/of the process**

process *verb*

ADV. **efficiently | quickly | automatically | routinely**

PREP. **for** *The plant is then processed for dye.* **| into** *The berries are processed into juice or sauce.*

PHRASES **highly processed** *highly processed foods*

procession *noun*

ADJ. **grand, great, large, long | little, small | public, street | slow, solemn, stately | colourful | ceremonial | triumphal | constant, endless, never-ending** *(figurative) We've had an endless procession of new secretaries through the office since Amy left.* **| torchlight | funeral, religious, wedding**

VERB + PROCESSION **head, lead** *The mayor of the town led the procession to the central square.*

PROCESSION + VERB **make its way, move, pass, wind (its way)** *The funeral procession moved slowly down the avenue. The solemn procession wound its way through the narrow streets.* **| leave, move off, set off**

PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *The children marched in procession behind the band.* **| ~ of** *a procession of circus performers*

proclaim *verb*

ADV. **loudly | formally, officially | openly, publicly | proudly | unilaterally** *The district unilaterally proclaimed its independence from the national government.*

VERB + PROCLAIM **seem to** *His classic boyish looks seemed to proclaim his good humour and openness.*

PREP. **as** *Everyone is proclaiming him as the next president.* **| to** *proclaiming her innocence to the world*

proclamation *noun*

ADJ. **official, public, royal**

VERB + PROCLAMATION **issue, make**

PROCLAMATION + VERB **forbid sth, prohibit sth**

PREP. **by ~** *The government restricted the use of water by proclamation.*

produce *noun*

ADJ. **fresh | local | seasonal | agricultural, animal, dairy, farm, garden, organic, primary** *fresh farm produce*

VERB + PRODUCE **grow | export, market, sell**

produce *verb*

ADV. **domestically, locally** *fruit and vegetables that are produced locally* **| commercially | organically** *organically produced food*

VERB + PRODUCE **be able/unable to, can/could | be expected to, be likely to** *Which method is likely to produce the best results?* **| combine to** *All of these processes combine to produce a particular form of language.* **| be designed to | use sth to** *The technology can be used to produce interactive educational programs.*

PREP. **from** *The wine is produced from Chardonnay grapes.*

producer *noun*

1 **sb/sth that makes/grows sth**

ADJ. **big, large, leading, major** *one of the world's largest meat producers* | **small, small-scale** | **efficient** *a very efficient wine producer* | **domestic, local** | **foreign** | **private** | **specialist** *specialist producers of high-quality British beef* | **agricultural** | **milk, oil, software, steel, etc.**

2 **organizes a play, film, etc.**

ADJ. **film, radio, television/TV** | **BBC, Hollywood, etc.** | **independent** *commissioning programmes from independent producers* | **executive** | **assistant, associate**

PHRASES **the role of producer** *She was keen to take on the role of producer.* > Note at JOB

product *noun*

1 sth that is made or formed

ADJ. **good, right** *We have a good product, but it needs to be marketed better. the right product in the right place at the right time* | **innovative** | **quality** | **everyday** | **natural** | **manufactured** | **finished** *the manufacture of chocolate from cocoa bean to the finished product* | **commercial, consumer** | **household, industrial** *everyday household products* | **waste** | **agricultural, cereal, dairy, food, meat** | **pharmaceutical** | **software** | **beauty**

VERB + PRODUCT **buy** | **sell** | **market, promote** | **develop** | **launch**

PRODUCT + NOUN **area, category, group, line, range, sector, type** | **design** | **development** | **package** | **price** | **quality**

PHRASES **a range of products** *a wide range of beauty products* > Special page at BUSINESS

2 result

ADJ. **end, final** *A complicated string of chemical reactions leads to the end product.* | **natural**

PREP. **~ of** *Like many of his generation, he was a product of Scotland's obsession with football.*

production *noun*

1 **making/growing sth**

ADJ. **full** *The machine will go into full production in November 2002.* | **large-scale, mass** | **small-scale** | **efficient** | **annual** | **domestic** | **car, steel** | **coal, energy, gas, oil** | **agricultural, food, livestock, meat, milk** | **factory, industrial**

QUANT. **level, volume** *The increase in volume of production brought down the price of the goods.*

VERB + PRODUCTION **be in** *That particular model is no longer in production.* | **go into** | **go out of** | **begin, start** *They are going to start production of the car next year.* | **boost, increase, step up** | **cut, cut back (on)** | **halt, stop** | **speed up**

PRODUCTION + NOUN **line, plant** *a car production plant* | **methods, process, system** | **director, manager, team** | **costs** | **capacity, level, volume**

PRODUCTION + VERB **increase, rise** | **fall**

PHRASES **a cut/fall in production, an increase/a rise in production, the means of production** *They believed that power largely derives from ownership of the means of production.* > Special page at BUSINESS

2 **play, film, etc.**

ADJ. **successful** | **controversial** | **amateur, professional** | **stage** | **Broadway, West End, etc.** | **school** | **film, television/TV, theatrical, video** > Note at PERFORMANCE(for verbs)

productive *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **enormously, extremely, highly, remarkably, very** *It was a highly productive meeting.* **| fairly, quite | potentially**

productivity *noun*

ADJ. **high, low | greater, improved, increased | lost** *The strike took a heavy toll in lost productivity.* **| agricultural, labour, manufacturing**

QUANT. **level** *Farmers are struggling to maintain a level of productivity that generates an acceptable income.*

VERB + PRODUCTIVITY **boost, improve, increase, raise | decrease, reduce**

PRODUCTIVITY + VERB **increase, rise | decrease, drop, fall**

PRODUCTIVITY + NOUN **level | gains, growth, increase | deal** *Management is negotiating a new productivity deal with the union.*

PHRASES **a decline/reduction in productivity, a gain/an improvement/an increase in productivity, growth in productivity** *Wage increases outpaced growth in productivity.*

profession *noun*

ADJ. **chosen | legal, medical, teaching, etc.**

VERB + PROFESSION **practise** *In the 1930s he was forbidden to practise his profession.* **| enter, go into, join** *She entered the legal profession after university.*

PREP. **by ~** *He was a consultant physician by profession.* **| in a/sb's/the ~** *making an impact in her chosen profession*

PHRASES **a choice of profession** *She was shocked at her daughter's choice of profession.* **| the top of sb's profession** *He reached the top of his profession in very little time.*

professional *adj.*

1 **connected with a job**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **purely, strictly** *He insisted that his relationship with the duchess was purely professional.*

2 **extremely skilled**

VERBS **be, look** *Their designs look very professional.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, really, truly, very** *He dealt with the problem in a highly professional way.* **| thoroughly | increasingly | almost | quite, rather**

3 **done as a paid job, not a hobby**

VERBS **be | become, turn**

ADV. **fully** *He wants to turn fully professional.*

professional *noun*

ADJ. **committed, dedicated, experienced | real, true** *This is the work of a real professional.* **| leading, senior, top** *a top golf professional* **| independent** *The survey should be performed by an independent professional.* **| fellow** *an actor revered by his fellow professionals* **| computer, health (care), medical | golf, tennis, etc.** > Note at PROFESSIONAL

professor *noun*

ADJ. **distinguished, eminent | college, university | assistant, associate | emeritus | visiting** *I spent six months as a visiting professor at Brown University.* **| history, law, etc. | absent-minded, mad** *He fitted perfectly the stereotype of the absent-minded professor.*

PREP. **~ of** *an eminent professor of English* > Note at JOB

proficiency *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great | technical | language, oral, reading, written | cycling, skiing, etc.**

QUANT. **degree, level** *He taught himself to carve to a high degree of proficiency.*

VERB + PROFICIENCY **acquire, develop, increase** *He acquired greater proficiency after a three-month intensive course.* **| demonstrate, show**

PROFICIENCY + NOUN **examination, test** *a language proficiency test* **| certificate**

PREP. **~ in** *a certificate for proficiency in English*

proficient *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **very | fully | fairly, reasonably | technically** *a technically proficient performance of the piece*

PREP. **at** *very proficient at sign language* **| in** *She's fairly proficient in Italian.*

profile *noun*

1 **face seen from the side**

ADJ. **beautiful, handsome | strong | three-quarter**

VERB + PROFILE **present**

PREP. **in ~** *The painting shows her in profile.*

PHRASES **sb's best profile** *He presented his best profile to the camera.*

2 **description of sb/sth**

ADJ. **detailed | age, career, psychological | company, customer | financial, social**

VERB + PROFILE **build up, construct, develop**

PREP. **~ of** *The data will enable us to construct a profile of the firm's customers.*

3 **public image**

ADJ. **high, low** *She decided to keep a low profile until the scandal had died down.* **| public | political | corporate**

VERB + PROFILE **have | give sb/sth** *The story was given a low profile in today's papers.* **| improve, increase, raise** *a campaign to raise the profile of the city as a cultural leader* **| lower | keep, maintain | adopt**

profit *noun*

ADJ. **big, fat, good, greater, handsome, healthy, high, huge, large, record, substantial, tidy | low, modest, small** *They closed down after years of low profits.* **| excess | lost, unrealized** *Damaged goods mean lost profit.* **| realized | quick** *He's only interested in making a quick profit.* **| gross, pre-tax | after/post-tax, clear, net | taxable | interim, short-term | annual** *an annual profit of £50,000* **| first-quarter, full-year, half-year, second-quarter, etc. | corporate, group | operating, trading**

VERB + PROFIT **bring (in), earn, generate, make, realize, reap, yield** *The CD generated record profits.* **| boost, increase | maximize | show** *The company started to show a profit in its first year.*

PROFIT + VERB **grow, increase, rise | fall, plummet, plunge | accrue, arise** *profits accruing to the taxpayer from the sale of property*

PROFIT + NOUN **margin, rate**

PREP. **against ~s** *The firm made losses of 500,000 against profits of 750,000.* **| at a ~** *We should be able to sell the piano at a profit.* **| for ~** *The goods were sold for profit.* **| ~ on** *Did you make a profit on your house when you sold it?*

PHRASES **a decline/fall in profits, an increase/a rise in profits, profit after/before tax** *Profit before tax increased by 40% on last year.* > Note at PERCENT (for more verbs) > Special page at BUSINESS

profitability *noun*

ADJ. **high, low | greater | declining** *concerns about the declining profitability of the industry* **| overall | long-term, short-term**

QUANT. **level**

VERB + PROFITABILITY **achieve** *measures to achieve greater profitability* **| maintain | improve, increase | maximize | reduce**

PHRASES **a decline/fall in profitability, an increase in profitability, a return to profitability** *The firm is now showing signs of a return to profitability.* > Note at PERCENT (for more verbs)

profitable *adj.*

1 **making a profit**

VERBS **be, prove, seem** *confident that the venture will prove profitable* **| become | remain | make sth | keep sth** *What can be done to keep the business profitable?*

ADV. **extremely, highly, hugely, immensely, very** *a highly profitable chain of shops* **| barely | quite, relatively | enough, sufficiently** *The business is not really profitable enough.* **| financially | potentially**

2 **helpful**

VERBS **be | find sth** *Some churches have found it profitable to hold services during the week.*

ADV. **very | mutually** *Cooperation could be mutually profitable.* **| potentially**

program *noun*

ADJ. **computer, software | analysis, database, design, desktop publishing, drawing, graphics, image-editing, page make-up, simulation, spreadsheet, video-editing, word-processing, etc. | shareware**

VERB + PROGRAM **run, use | design, develop, write** *a program designed to evaluate road safety measures* **| download, execute, install, load | uninstall | copy**

PROGRAM + VERB **crash** *I lost half a morning's work when the program crashed.* **| allow sth** *This program allows you to edit and catalogue digital photographs.* **| contain sth** *The program contains powerful new features.* **| provide sth** *This program provides everything you need to prepare your own publication.* **| require sth** *This program requires at least 24Mb of RAM.* **| create sth** *The program creates simulations of real-life driving conditions.* **| operate, run | close**

PROGRAM + NOUN **file**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There may be a bug in the program.* **| ~ for** *a program for debugging* > Special page at COMPUTER

programme *noun*

1 plan of things to do

ADJ. **ambitious | comprehensive, major, massive, radical, wide-ranging** *a comprehensive programme of economic reform* **| modest | long-term | regular | varied** *a varied programme of entertainment* **| pilot** *The pilot programme of vaccination proved successful.* **| party, political | government | collaborative, joint** *joint programmes between government and industry* **| action, development, improvement, modernization, privatization, research | economic, expenditure, investment, recovery** *Mr Brown called for a national recovery programme.* **| austerity, closure, cost-cutting | aid, assistance, relief, welfare | assessment, testing | degree, education, educational, literacy, training** *students enrolled on the two-year MA degree programme* **| care, health** *a community care programme for psychiatric patients* **| exercise, weight-loss | breeding, building, conservation, defence** *Female seals are needed for the breeding programme.*

VERB + PROGRAMME **agree (on), develop, draw up, establish, organize, plan, set up | outline** *The course leader outlined the programme we would be following.* **| carry out, implement, launch, run | expand | offer** *The college offers a wide variety of programmes of study.* **| finance, fund** *How is the programme to be financed?* **| embark on, undertake | enrol on | follow | complete | disrupt** *Renewed fighting disrupted the relief programme.*

PROGRAMME + VERB **aim to, be aimed at sb/sth, be designed to** *The programme aims to increase employment.* **| include sth, involve sb/sth | offer sth, provide sth**

PREP. **in a/the ~, on the/your ~** *What's on your programme today* (= What are your plans)*?* **| ~ for** *What's the programme for* (= What are we going to do) *tomorrow?* **| ~ of** *a programme of study*

PHRASES **the aim/objective/purpose of a programme**

2 radio/televsion show

ADJ. **radio, television/TV | current affairs, documentary, factual, news | comedy | educational | children's | cookery, wildlife, religious, etc. | phone-**

in

VERB + PROGRAMME **see, watch | listen to | record | do, make | host, present** *a phone-in programme hosted by Freddie Greenan* **| broadcast, screen, show**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *In today's programme, we'll be giving you advice on how to manage your money.* **| on a/the ~** *He appeared on the programme last night.* **| ~ about/on** *I saw a good programme on owls last night.*

3 **booklet for a play/concert/event**

ADJ. **concert, theatre | match, race**

PREP. **in the ~** *Her name doesn't appear in the concert programme.*

4 **order of events**

ADJ. **exciting, interesting | musical, sporting**

VERB + PROGRAMME **arrange, draw up, plan, organize** *planning an exciting programme of activities*

PROGRAMME + VERB **include sth**

PREP. **~ of** *a programme of 17th century music*

programmer *noun*

ADJ. **senior | assistant | experienced, skilled, trained | freelance | computer, software**

PROGRAMMER + VERB **write sth** > Note at JOB

progress *noun*

1 movement forwards

ADJ. **considerable, dramatic, encouraging, excellent, genuine, good, great, impressive, real, remarkable, significant, substantial | fast, rapid, swift | inexorable | slow, stately** *We watched the ship's stately progress out of the harbour.* **| satisfactory, steady | further | academic, educational**

VERB + PROGRESS **achieve, make | assess, chart, check (on), evaluate, monitor, observe, review, trace, track, watch** *Regular tests enable the teacher to monitor the progress of each child.* **| block, hamper, hinder, impede, obstruct, slow (down) | halt, stop | accelerate, facilitate**

PROGRESS + NOUN **report**

PREP. **in ~** *There was a cricket match in progress.* **| ~ from … to …** *The book traced his steady progress from petty theft to serious crime.* **| ~ in** *He's making good progress in maths.* **| ~ on** *How much progress have the builders made on the extension?* **| ~ towards** *Who can halt Woods' inexorable progress towards yet another championship?* **| ~ with** *She's making steady progress with her thesis.*

PHRASES **a lack of progress** *I was frustrated by my apparent lack of progress when I started the violin.* **| a rate of progress** *At the present rate of progress we won't be finished before July.* **| work in progress** *I have one file for completed work and one for work in progress.*

2 improvement in society

ADJ. **economic, evolutionary, industrial, medical, scientific, social, technical, technological | human**

VERB + PROGRESS **hold back**

PHRASES **the march of progress** *the onward march of technological progress*

progress *verb*

ADV. **satisfactorily, smoothly, well** *The talks are progressing very well.* **| further** *He felt he still needed to progress further in his learning.* **| rapidly** *progressing rapidly in his chosen career* **| slowly** *The work is progressing quite slowly.* **| steadily**

VERB + PROGRESS **fail to**

PREP. **beyond** *Samir failed to progress beyond this first step on the ladder.* **| from, through** *allowing students to progress through the stages of the course* **| to** *She soon progressed from the basics to more difficult work.* **| towards** *slowly progressing towards a new kind of art* **| up** *his ambition to progress up the career ladder* **| with** *They are keen to progress with the scheme.*

progression *noun*

ADJ. **rapid | gradual, slow, steady | smooth | upward | linear, logical, natural** *By a logical progression of thought, she worked out why the remark had caused offence.* **| career | chord, harmonic**

PREP. **~ from … to …** *his progression from chubby teenager to handsome movie star* **| ~ through** *Her progression through the grades of the civil service had been rapid.* **| ~ within** *his steady upward progression within the company*

PHRASES **the progression of a disease** *one of the later stages in the progression of the disease*

progressive *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly, very** *highly progressive in outlook* **| relatively | politically**

prohibit *verb*

ADV. **strictly** *Smoking in the cinema is strictly prohibited.* **| expressly, specifically | effectively** *The very restrict regulations effectively prohibit the entry of soil or plants grown in soil into the country.* **| constitutionally** *The president is constitutionally prohibited from serving more than two terms in office.*

PREP. **from** *The Act specifically prohibits any council from spending money for political purposes.*

prohibition *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, total | general | legal, statutory**

VERB + PROHIBITION **impose | abolish, lift**

PROHIBITION + NOUN **notice, order** *The prohibition order meant that the book could not be sold in this country.*

PREP. **~ against** *prohibition against sales to under-18s of alcohol* **| ~ of** *a treaty for the prohibition of nuclear tests* **| ~ on** *the prohibition imposed on the sale of arms*

project *noun*

1 **planned piece of work**

ADJ. **large, major | ambitious | exciting | worthwhile | successful | joint | community | pilot** *The scheme will be extended throughout the country after a successful six-month pilot project.* **| research** *They've set up a research project to investigate the harmful effects of air pollution.* **| building, construction | capital, investment | development, educational, environmental**

VERB + PROJECT **set up | carry out, run | conceive, plan | launch | fund, support**

PROJECT + VERB **aim to, be aimed at sth** *The project aims to reduce homelessness.*

PROJECT + NOUN **management | leader, manager, team**

PHRASES **the aim of the project** *The aims of the project are threefold ...* > Special page at BUSINESS

2 **piece of school work**

ADJ. **French, history, etc.**

VERB + PROJECT **do**

PREP. **~ on** *My class is doing a project on medieval towns.*

PROJECT + NOUN **work**

projection *noun*

ADJ. **current, latest | forward, future | population | financial, profit, sales**

VERB + PROJECTION **make | revise**

PREP. **on … ~s** *On current projections, there will be more than ten million people 65 or over in 2010.* **| ~ about** *He declined to make projections about the next quarter's earnings.* **| ~ as to** *We have been making forward projections as to future profitability of the firm.* **| ~ for** *They presented profit projections for the rest of the year.* **| ~ of** *The council has revised its projections of funding requirements upwards.*

projector *noun*

ADJ. **overhead | cine, film, slide, video**

VERB + PROJECTOR **switch off/on | operate**

prolific *adj*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, highly, immensely, incredibly, very | fairly, quite**

prolong *verb*

ADV. **indefinitely** *Might it be possible to prolong life indefinitely?* **| artificially | deliberately** *Doctors commented that some patients deliberately prolong their treatment.* **| unduly, unnecessarily** *We do not want to prolong the meeting unnecessarily.*

prolonged *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **very | not unduly** *The surgery must not be unduly prolonged.* **| fairly, quite, relatively, somewhat**

prominence *noun*

ADJ. **great | growing, increasing | equal | special** *a performance which gives a special prominence to the part of Hamlet's mother* **| due | undue | international, local, national | political, public**

VERB + PROMINENCE **achieve, come into/to, gain, rise to, shoot to** *She came to national prominence as an artist in the 1960s.* **| bring sb/sth into/to, give sb/sth** *His account gives due prominence to the role of the king.*

PHRASES **a position of prominence** *The former rebels were given positions of prominence in the new government.* **| a rise to prominence** *The city's rise to prominence as a port began in the early nineteenth century.*

prominent *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **especially, extremely, particularly, unusually, very | increasingly | fairly, quite**

PREP. **as** *prominent as a player and coach* **| in** *prominent in the trade unions*

promise *noun*

1 **statement that you will do sth**

ADJ. **big** *He makes all kinds of big promises he has little intention of keeping.* **| rash | broken, unfulfilled | empty, false, hollow | vague | binding, firm | campaign, election, pre-election**

VERB + PROMISE **give sb, make (sb)** *You gave me your promise I could use the car tonight. I'll consider it, but I make no promises.* **| fulfil, honour, keep | break, go back on | extract** *We extracted a promise from them that they would repay the money by May.* **| hold sb to** *The Opposition is determined to hold the government to its election promises.*

PREP. **~ about** *They've made all sorts of promises about reforming the health system.* **| ~ of** *promises of support*

2 **signs that sb/sth will be successful**

ADJ. **considerable, great, real** *This new venture holds great promise for the future.* **| early, youthful**

VERB + PROMISE **hold, show | fulfil, live up to** *His career failed to fulfil its early promise.*

PREP. **of ~** *a pianist of promise* **| ~ as** *She showed great promise as a runner.*

PHRASES **full of promise** *The year began so full of promise, and ended in disappointment.*

promise *verb*

ADV. **faithfully** *She promised faithfully that she would come.* **| solemnly**

VERB + PROMISE **can/can't | seem to** *The plan seemed to promise a new beginning.*

PREP. **to** *I've promised my old computer to Jane.*

PHRASES **as promised** *I am sending you information on holidays as promised.* **| I can't promise anything** *I can't promise anything, but I hope to have it finished next week.*

promising *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **extremely, highly, particularly, very | hardly** *The outlook is hardly promising.* **| quite**

promote *verb*

1 **encourage sth**

ADV. **strongly** *The idea of equal opportunities was strongly promoted by many Labour MPs.* **| actively, directly | indirectly | deliberately, intentionally** *They claimed that the authorities had deliberately promoted and condoned the violence.*

VERB + PROMOTE **aim to, seek to, try to | help (to)** *Basketball stars from the United States have helped promote the sport in Italy and Spain.* **| be designed to** *measures designed to promote economic growth* **| be likely to | serve to, tend to** *Bonus payments to staff serve to promote commitment to the company.*

PREP. **through** *Young people's awareness of agricultural issues is promoted through publicity material.*

PHRASES **be aimed at promoting sth, be widely promoted, a campaign/scheme to promote sth, efforts/measures to promote sth**

2 **advertise sth**

ADV. **aggressively, heavily** *The new products have been very heavily promoted.* **| widely**

PREP. **as** *The town is now being promoted as a holiday destination.* **| through** *The company's products have been promoted mainly through advertising in newspapers.*

promotion *noun*

1 to a higher position

ADJ. **rapid | internal** *The company encourages internal promotion.*

VERB + PROMOTION **gain, get, win** *If I can't get promotion soon, I'll look for another job.* **| deserve** *We congratulate James on his well-deserved promotion to Chief Executive.* **| recommend sb for**

PROMOTION + NOUN **opportunities, prospects | race** *With three matches remaining, there are six teams in the promotion race.*

PREP. **~ from, ~ to** *his promotion from lecturer to senior lecturer*

PHRASES **chance/chances of promotion** *The team's chances of promotion took a knock when they lost at home.*

2 advertising

ADJ. **special | sales, trade | book, tobacco, etc. | health** *The new health promotion clinic will provide free check-ups.*

VERB + PROMOTION **do** *We're doing a special book promotion at key bookshops this week.*

prone *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | leave sb/sth, make sb/sth** *Sun removes the oil and wax, leaving the leather prone to cracking.*

ADV. **especially, highly, particularly, very | increasingly | rather, slightly | notoriously** *The M40 through Oxfordshire is notoriously prone to fog.*

PREP. **to** *She seems very prone to chest infections.*

PHRASES **accident prone**

pronoun *nou*n

ADJ. **plural, singular | first-person, second-person, etc. | definite, demonstrative, indefinite, interrogative, personal, possessive, relative | object, subject**

pronounce *verb*

1 **make the sound of a word/letter**

ADV. **clearly, distinctly | correctly, properly**

VERB + PRONOUNCE **can, know how to** *I don't know how to pronounce the name of the town.* **| be difficult to**

PREP. **as** *'Gone back' is sometimes pronounced as 'gom back'.* **| as in** *She pronounded the 'o' as in 'no'.*

2 **state sth**

ADV. **confidently** *Press reports beforehand confidently pronounced that an agreement had already been reached.*

PREP. **in favour of** *The committee has pronounced in favour of the merger.* **| on/ upon** *I do not feel competent to pronounce on this matter.*

pronounced *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **especially, particularly, very** *These blooms have a very pronounced tendency to hang their heads.* **| fairly, quite** *walking with a fairly pronounced limp*

pronunciation *noun*

ADJ. **correct, good | bad, incorrect | alternative, different, variant | standard | American, Australian, etc.**

VERB + PRONUNCIATION **correct** *She doesn't like having her pronunciation corrected.*

PRONUNCIATION + NOUN **drill, exercise, practice**

proof *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, clear, conclusive, concrete, convincing, direct, good, incontrovertible, irrefutable, positive, real, tangible** *Have you got any positive proof that she took the money? We have proof positive that he is in hiding. I have no real proof that he was at the flat.* **| ample, sufficient | further | final, ultimate** *The photo was final proof of her husband's infidelity.* **| documentary, written | legal | scientific | living** *The lungfish is living proof that fish could evolve to breathe on land.*

VERB + PROOF **have | give sb, offer (sb), produce, provide (sb with) | get, obtain | need, require**

PREP. **without ~** *He is unlikely to make wild accusations without proof.* **| ~ of** *Her account gives us no concrete proof of his guilt.*

PHRASES **the burden/onus of proof** *The burden of proof lay on the plaintiff to prove negligence.* **| a lack of proof** *The men were acquitted for lack of proof.* **| proof of identity, proof of purchase** *Proof of purchase must be provided before a refund can be made.* **| a standard of proof** *Civil proceedings require a lower standard of proof than criminal cases.*

propaganda *noun*

ADJ. **government, official, party, state | political, religious, revolutionary | Conservative, socialist, etc. | enemy, hostile, war**

VERB + PROPAGANDA **broadcast** *The pirate radio station broadcast anti-government propaganda.*

PROPAGANDA + NOUN **battle, campaign, effort, exercise, war | triumph, victory | department, machine | film, material, tool, weapon | purposes** *The film was made in 1938 for propaganda purposes.* **| value** *The Olympics were of great propaganda value to the regime.*

PREP. **~ about** *The papers were full of political propaganda about nationalization.* **| ~ against** *Soviet propaganda against Fascism*

proper *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem** *It seemed proper to pay tribute to her in this way.* **| consider sth, deem sth, think sth** *It was not considered proper for young ladies to go out alone.*

ADV. **very | entirely, perfectly, quite** *The tribunal decided that his behaviour was perfectly proper.*

PHRASES **(only) right and proper** *It is only right and proper that you should attend his funeral.*

property *noun*

1 **possessions**

ADJ. **personal, private | common, public | intellectual** *Companies should protect their intellectual property with patents and trademarks.* **| stolen | lost** *I phoned the lost property office to see if someone had found my bag.*

VERB + PROPERTY **dispose of** *The market was known as a place where people disposed of stolen property.*

PROPERTY + NOUN **rights** *The firm was found to have infringed intellectual property rights.*

2 **land/building**

ADJ. **freehold, leasehold | adjacent, adjoining, neighbouring | detached, semi-detached | two-bedroom, three-bedroom, etc. | business, commercial, hotel, residential | investment | private | council, council-owned | family**

VERB + PROPERTY **hold, own | acquire, buy, invest in, purchase | inherit | sell | lease, let, rent out** *They decided to rent out the property while they were abroad.* **| rent** *living in rented property* **| view** *We have a potential buyer who wants to view the property.* **| value** *The property was valued at £250,000.* **| put on the market** *Once the tenants have left, the property will be put on the market.*

PROPERTY + NOUN **market, prices, values | company, developer | owner | tax | boundary**

PHRASES **a man/woman of property** *Now that you've paid off your mortgage, how does it feel to be a woman of property?*

3 **characteristic**

ADJ. **biological, chemical, electrical, magnetic, mechanical, physical | antiseptic, health-giving, medicinal** *The medicinal properties of the leaves of this tree have been known for centuries.* **| observable | individual | general**

prophecy *noun*

ADJ. **Biblical, Messianic, Old Testament | self-fulfilling** *low expectations that become a self-fulfilling prophecy*

VERB + PROPHECY **make | fulfil**

PREP. **~ about** *Macbeth believed the witches' prophecy about his future.* **| ~ of** *The poem contains a bleak prophecy of war and ruin.*

PHRASES **the gift of prophecy**

prophet *noun*

ADJ. true *Some believe that he was not a true prophet.* **| false | great | Old Testament**

PHRASES a prophet of doom *(informal) In spite of the prophets of doom, her business proved very successful.*

prophetic *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem** *His warnings about the journey proved prophetic.*

ADV. **highly | almost | strangely**

PREP. **of** *a book that was prophetic of future developments in science*

proportion *noun*

1 **part/share of a whole**

ADJ. **appreciable, considerable, fair, good, great, high, huge, large, overwhelming, significant, sizeable, substantial | reasonable | low, small | minute, negligible, tiny | certain | equal** *The company employs men and women in roughly equal proportions.* | **equivalent, similar | different, differing, varying | fixed | exact | approximate | average | overall | growing, increasing, rising | declining, decreasing, diminishing**

VERB + PROPORTION **express sth as** *The chart shows government spending expressed as a proportion of national income.* | **grow as, increase as, rise as | decline as, decrease as, diminish as, fall as** *The unskilled section of the working class was diminishing as a proportion of the workforce.*

PROPORTION + VERB **grow, increase, rise | decline, decrease, fall**

2 **relationship between the size/amount of two things**

ADJ. **correct | direct | inverse** *The human population in the region is expanding in inverse proportion to the wildlife.* | **relative**

VERB + PROPORTION **keep sth in** *Try to keep your view of the situation in proportion* (= not think it is more serious than it is).

PREP. **in ~ (to)** *The cost of insurance increases in proportion to the performance of the car.* | **out of ~ (to)** *The costs of the plan are out of proportion to the budget available.* | **~ of sth to sth** *The proportion of sand to cement used was three to one.*

PHRASES **out of all proportion** *The problem has been exaggerated out of all proportion.* | **a sense of proportion** *Try to keep a sense of proportion* (= of the relative importance of different things).

3 **proportions: size and shape of sth**

ADJ. **enormous, epic, extraordinary, gargantuan, generous, gigantic, heroic, huge, immense, major, mammoth, massive, monumental, staggering |**

modest | manageable, unmanageable *The computer brings the huge task of stock control down to more manageable proportions.* **| alarming | crisis, epidemic | classic, elegant, fine, noble, perfect** *There is an entrance hall of perfect proportions, twice as long as it is wide.* **| bodily**

VERB + PROPORTION **reach** *The food shortage had reached crisis proportions.*

proportional *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **broadly, roughly** *The amount of food a child needs is roughly proportional to its size.* | **directly** *The speed of the glider is directly proportional to the speed of the wind.* | **inversely** *The amount of force needed is inversely proportional to the rigidity of the material.*

PREP. **to**

proposal *noun*

1 **plan**

ADJ. **concrete | detailed | controversial | compromise | peace, reform, research, etc.**

QUANT. **package, set** *The government outlined a new set of proposals on human rights.*

VERB + PROPOSAL **formulate | outline | bring forward, make, put forward, submit | accept, back, support, welcome** *I welcome the proposal to reduce taxes for the poorly paid.* **| block, oppose, reject, vote against | push through** *The government could face defeat if it tries to push through the controversial proposals.* **| drop, withdraw | consider, discuss**

PREP. **~ concerning/relating to** *proposals concerning the use of land* **| ~ for** *The Ministry submitted a proposal for lower speed limits on motorways.* > Special page at MEETING

2 **offer of marriage**

VERB + PROPOSAL **make | receive | accept** *She accepted his proposal of marriage.* **| turn down**

PHRASES **a proposal of marriage**

propose *verb*

ADV. **seriously** *Are you seriously proposing that we should allow this situation to continue?*

PREP. **as** *The measures have been proposed as a way of improving standards.* **| for** *He was proposed for the job of treasurer.*

PHRASES **originally proposed** *The plan originally proposed was ruled completely unrealistic.*

proposition *noun*

1 arrangement/offer/suggestion

ADJ. **attractive, tempting | feasible, practical, viable | business, commercial, economic, paying**

VERB + PROPOSITION **put to sb** *Ring up your agent in New York and put your proposition to him.*

2 problem/task

ADJ. **tough, tricky | different** *He's a different proposition from his father?much less tolerant.*

3 idea/opinion

ADJ. **basic, central, fundamental | true | extreme | abstract, causal, empirical, ethical, existential, general, theoretical, universal**

QUANT. **set**

VERB + PROPOSITION **express, put forward**

PROPOSITION + VERB **concern sth, relate to sth**

PREP. **~ about** *The book puts forward a number of extreme propositions about the nature of language.*

proprietor *noun*

ADJ. **hotel, newspaper, restaurant | landed | sole** *He is now sole proprietor of the business.*

prose *noun*

ADJ. **clear, plain, simple | elegant, flowing, rhythmic | flowery, purple** (= elaborate or exaggerated in style) **| descriptive | discursive | continuous** *I plan out an essay in note form before writing it up in continuous prose.* **| academic, literary**

QUANT. **piece**

VERB + PROSE **write (in)**

PROSE + NOUN **works, writing | writer | style | narrative | passage, text | fiction**

PREP. **in ~** *a passage in prose*

prosecution *noun*

1 **trying to prove sb's guilt in court**

ADJ. **criminal, private | successful | impending, possible** *He faces possible prosecution.*

VERB + PROSECUTION **bring, initiate | be liable to, face, risk | escape | lead to, result in**

PREP. **~ against** *The police brought a prosecution against the driver involved.* **| ~ for** *Prosecutions for water pollution more than doubled.*

PHRASES **immunity from prosecution**

2 **lawyers trying to prove sb's guilt**

PROSECUTION + VERB **prove sth | allege sth, claim sth** *The prosecution alleged that he murdered his wife.*

PROSECUTION + NOUN **case, evidence | counsel, lawyer, witness | costs**

PREP. **for the ~** *a witness for the prosecution*

prospect *noun*

1 **chance/hope that sth will happen**

ADJ. **reasonable | immediate**

VERB + PROSPECT **have | offer**

PREP. **in ~** *Major developments are in prospect for the company.* **| ~ of sth** *There is little prospect of any improvement in the weather.*

2 **idea of what may/will happen**

ADJ. **attractive, exciting, inviting | bleak, daunting**

VERB + PROSPECT **be excited at, relish, welcome** *I don't relish the prospect of having to share an office.* **| be faced with, face 3 prospects** chances of being successful

ADJ. **bright, excellent, exciting, good | limited, poor | future, long-term | development, economic, growth | career, employment, job, promotion | election, electoral, re-election**

VERB + PROSPECT **have | offer (sb)** *This position offers a good starting salary and excellent promotion prospects.* **| boost, enhance, improve** *Getting the right qualifications will enhance your employment prospects.* **| blight, damage, diminish, ruin, wreck | assess, examine, review**

PROSPECT + VERB **improve**

PREP. **with/without ~** *At 25 he was an unemployed musician with no prospects.* **| ~ for** *Long-term prospects for the economy have improved.* **| ~ of** *Their prospects of employment look better than last year.*

prospectus *noun*

ADJ. **detailed | college, school**

QUANT. **copy**

VERB + PROSPECTUS **browse through, leaf through, look through | produce**

prosperity *noun*

ADJ. **economic, material | growing, increasing, rising | relative | future, lasting, long-term | general, global, national, world | personal**

QUANT. **level** *an area with a level of prosperity higher than the national average*

VERB + PROSPERITY **bring, create** *The growth of tourism brought prosperity to the island.* **| achieve**

PROSPERITY + VERB **depend on sth** *The island's prosperity depends on its fishing industry.*

PHRASES **a period of prosperity**

prosperous *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become, grow | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, quite, relatively | formerly, once** *this once prosperous region* **| newly** *Suburbs sprawled out to provide homes for the newly prosperous.* **| economically**

prostitute *noun*

ADJ. **common** *She was arrested and charged with being a common prostitute.* **| child, female, girl, male | former, reformed** *a book written by a former prostitute*

VERB + PROSTITUTE **be, work as | go to, use, visit** *the men who use prostitutes* **| control** *He was arrested on charges of controlling prostitutes.*

PROSTITUTE + VERB **solicit** *The prostitutes solicit openly here.*

prostitution *noun*

ADJ. **child, female, juvenile, male**

VERB + PROSTITUTION **be involved in | turn to** *Some turned to prostitution in order to survive.*

PROSTITUTION + NOUN **trade** *There is a long-standing prostitution trade in the port.*

prostrate *adj.*

VERBS **be, lie** *lying prostrate on the ground* **| fall** *They fell prostrate before the king.*

protect *verb*

ADV. **fully | adequately, properly, suitably | inadequately | carefully | effectively, successfully | jealously, rigorously** *a star who jealously protects her right to privacy*

VERB + PROTECT **need to | seek to, strive to, try to | act to, fight to** *Each company is fighting to protect its own commercial interests.* **| take steps to** *We must take steps to protect the UK as a manufacturing base.* **| help (to) | serve to | be designed to**

PREP. **against** *a cream that helps to protect your skin against the sun* **| from** *The new measures are designed to protect the public from people like these.* **| with** *Protect the exposed areas of wood with varnish.*

PHRASES **be aimed at protecting sth, a desire/duty/need to protect sb/sth** *He felt it was his duty to protect the child.* **| heavily/highly protected** *The Far Eastern markets are heavily protected* (= with high taxes for imported goods). **| legally/ officially/specially protected** *Many of these sites?of immense scientific interest? are not legally protected.* **| measures to protect sb/sth, poorly/well protected** *Keep the camera well protected at all times.*

protection *noun*

ADJ. **adequate, effective | legal | police** *Witnesses at the trial were given police protection.* **| animal, child, consumer, data, environmental, personal, wildlife** *Animal protection supporters gathered to protest against hunting. She carries a gun in her bag for personal protection.* **| fire, flood** *Fire protection equipment must be available on all floors.* **| sun** *sun protection products*

QUANT. **degree** *A helmet affords the cyclist some degree of protection against injury.*

VERB + PROTECTION **afford (sb), give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)**

PROTECTION + NOUN **law, legislation, order** *The couple were found guilty of violation of child protection laws.* **| measures, mechanism, scheme, system**

PREP. **under the ~ of** *Many British wild animals are now under the protection of the Wildlife and Countryside Act.* **| ~ against** *Fill the cooling system with antifreeze as a protection against frost.* **| ~ from** *The high walls give the garden protection from the wind.*

PHRASES **a means of protection** *The skunk releases a pungent smell as a means of protection.*

protective *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become**

ADV. **fiercely, highly, very** *The lionesses are fiercely protective of their young.*

PREP. **of** *He's too jealous and protective of her.* **| towards** *feeling suddenly very protective towards her mother*

protein *noun*

ADJ. **essential | natural | animal, vegetable**

VERB + PROTEIN **be high/rich in, contain, supply** *Cereals supply essential protein and vitamins.* **| produce**

PROTEIN + NOUN **content | intake | deficiency**

PHRASES **a high/low protein diet, a source of protein**

protest *noun*

ADJ. **angry, strong, violent | peaceful | sit-down | mass | formal, official | popular, public, student | anti-government, political | continuing, further, renewed | rooftop, street** *a rooftop protest by prison inmates* | **widespread**

QUANT. **flood, storm, tide, wave** *The new tax sparked a wave of public protest.*

VERB + PROTEST **organize, stage | lodge, register** *The Samoan team lodged a formal protest after the referee sent off the wrong player.* | **lead to, spark**

PROTEST + NOUN **group, movement | demonstration, march, meeting, rally | strike | petition | song**

PREP. **in ~** *Prisoners shouted and hurled slates in protest.* | **under ~** *The strikers returned to work, but under protest.* | **without ~** *The crowd dispersed without protest.* | **~ about** *a protest about the new bypass* | **~ against** *There had been a number of public protests against the new tax.* | **~ at** *The party boycotted the election in protest at alleged vote rigging.* | **~ over** *a student protest over tuition fees*

PHRASES **a chorus/cry/howl of protest** *The announcement brought cries of protest from the crowd.* | **the freedom/right of protest** *The constitution guarantees the right of peaceful protest.* | **a letter of protest**

protest *verb*

ADV. **strongly, vehemently, vigorously | formally | loudly | mildly | weakly | peacefully** *the right to protest peacefully* **| bitterly, desperately, indignantly**

VERB + PROTEST **begin to, try to** *When he tried to protest, she insisted.* **| gather to** *Crowds gathered to protest about the police violence.*

PREP. **about/over** *protesting over an income tax increase* **| against** *protesting against the proposed agreement* **| at** *Many people have protested at the cuts in state benefits.* **| to** *We have protested to the government.*

protester *noun*

ADJ. **student | anti-government, anti-nuclear, peace, political | peaceful, unarmed | angry**

VERB + PROTESTER **arrest**

PROTESTER + VERB **call for sth, demand sth | march | demonstrate, gather | clash, fight** *Protesters clashed with police outside the embassy.*

PREP. **~ against** *The streets were crowded with protesters against the war.*

prototype *noun*

ADJ. **pre-production | working**

VERB + PROTOTYPE **build, develop | test**

PROTOTYPE + NOUN **stage** *The car is presently at the prototype stage.*

PREP. **~ for** *The team is developing a prototype for a digital compact camera.* **| ~ of** *He is working on the prototype of a new type of ventilator.*

proud *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | make sb**

ADV. **enormously, especially, extremely, fiercely, immensely, inordinately, intensely, more than a little, particularly, really, terribly, tremendously, very** *She was fiercely proud of family traditions and continuity. He was more than a little proud of himself.* **| almost** *He seemed almost proud of his practical incompetence.* **| quite, rather | justifiably, justly, rightly | perversely** *Londoners have long been perversely proud of a health service that does not serve them well.* **| quietly** *He was not vain, but he was quietly proud of his literary achievements.* **| secretly**

PREP. **of** *We are all really proud of you!*

PHRASES **have every reason/right to be proud** *All those involved have every reason to be proud of their achievement.*

prove *verb*

ADV. **conclusively, definitively** *All this proves conclusively that she couldn't have known the truth.* **| just** *Their behaviour just proves my point.*

VERB + PROVE **be difficult to, be impossible to | be easy to | be able to | try to** *What are you trying to prove?* **| be determined to | have sth to** *I certainly don't have anything to prove?my record speaks for itself.*

PREP. **to** *He tried to prove his theory to his friends.*

PHRASES **a chance to prove sth, prove sb right/wrong** *I was determined to prove my critics wrong.*

proven *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **well | completely, conclusively, fully** *No funding will be available until the technology is completely proven.* **| not yet | scientifically, statistically**

provide *verb*

ADV. **kindly** *a buffet supper, kindly provided by club members* **| free (of charge)** *Careers advice is provided free of charge.*

VERB + PROVIDE **be able to, can/could | aim to, seek to, try to** *trying to provide the best possible medical care* **| fail to | be designed to, be intended to** *The scheme was intended to provide financial help to unemployed workers.* **| be expected to, be likely/unlikely to** *The report was not expected to provide any answers.*

PREP. **for** *providing food and shelter for the refugees* **| with** *He provided us with a lot of useful information.*

province *noun*

1 **region**

ADJ. **northern, southern, etc. | central, coastal, frontier** *the central province of Ghor* **| English-speaking, French-speaking, etc. | autonomous 2 the provinces** not the capital city

VERB + PROVINCE **tour** *The show is currently touring the provinces.*

PREP. **from the ~** *She's from the provinces and not familiar with Rome.* **| in the ~** *There are a number of press agencies based in London and in the provinces.*

provision *noun*

1 **supply**

ADJ. **private, state | educational, housing, nursery, pension, service, welfare, etc.**

PREP. **~ of** *Several firms are responsible for the provision of cleaning services.*

2 **for a future situation; in a legal document**

ADJ. **full | adequate** *It is important to make adequate provision for your retirement.* **| detailed | express, particular, special, specific | relevant | constitutional, legal, legislative, statutory**

VERB + PROVISION **make | contain** *provisions contained in the contract*

PROVISION + VERB **apply** *The same provisions apply to foreign-owned companies.*

PREP. **~ against** *They had made all kinds of provisions against bad weather.* **| ~ for** *The Act contains detailed provisions for appeal against the court's decision.*

3 **provisions: food and drink**

VERB + PROVISION **buy, stock up on/with** *We went into town to stock up on provisions.*

provocation *noun*

ADJ. **extreme, severe | deliberate**

QUANT. **element** *The victim's conduct had involved an element of provocation.*

VERB + PROVOCATION **respond to**

PREP. **under ~** *The crime was committed under provocation.* **| without ~** *She attacked him without provocation.*

PHRASES **at the least/slightest provocation** *He would lose his temper at the slightest provocation.*

provocative *adj*

1 **intending to cause an argument**

VERBS **be, seem | consider sth**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | rather | deliberately | unnecessarily**

2 **intending to cause sexual excitement**

VERBS **be, look**

ADV. **highly, very | unconsciously | sexually**

provoke *verb*

ADV. **deliberately | inevitably** *The suggestion inevitably provoked outrage from student leaders.* **| immediately | eventually, finally**

VERB + PROVOKE **try to | be likely to** *The report is likely to provoke discussion of this issue.* **| be designed to, be intended to**

PREP. **into** *She had been trying to provoke her sister into an argument.* **| to** *Their laughter provoked him to anger.*

PHRASES **be easily provoked** *He was sensitive and easily provoked.*

prowess *noun*

ADJ. **academic, athletic, golfing, intellectual, military, physical, sexual, sporting, technical, etc.**

VERB + PROWESS **demonstrate, show | boast about/of | admire | be famed/famous for**

PREP. **~ as** *He boasted of his prowess as a lover.* **| ~ at** *her prowess at tennis* **| ~ in** *The Gurkhas are famed for their prowess in battle.* **| ~ with** *Their striker demonstrated all his prowess with the boot.*

proximity *noun*

ADJ. **close | geographical, physical, spatial**

PREP. **in ~ to** *The site is in close proximity to motorways and an airport.* **| ~ to** *House prices in the area are elevated by its proximity to London.*

proxy *noun*

VERB + PROXY **appoint** *You may appoint a proxy to vote for you.*

PROXY + VERB **vote | attend (sth)** *Your proxy may attend the meeting if you are unable to attend.*

PROXY + NOUN **vote, voting | card, form**

PREP. **by ~** *If you will not be able to vote on polling day, you may vote by proxy.* **| ~ for** *Husbands are discouraged from voting as proxy for their wives.*

PHRASES **a form of proxy** *We enclose a form of proxy for use at the Annual General Meeting.*

prudent *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | consider sth, think sth** *We thought it prudent to telephone first.*

ADV. **extremely, very | reasonably**

prune *verb*

ADV. **hard, heavily, savagely, severely** *Prune the trees hard in the winter. (figurative) Local councils could find their housing budgets severely pruned.* **| back** *The roses had been pruned back savagely.*

pseudonym *noun*

VERB + PSEUDONYM **adopt, take, use**

PREP. **under a/the ~** *Eric Blair wrote under the pseudonym of George Orwell.*

psychiatrist *noun*

ADJ. **leading, senior, top** *a leading child psychiatrist* **| consultant, research | child | forensic**

PHRASES **the psychiatrist's couch** *the secrets revealed on the psychiatrist's couch* > Note at DOCTOR(for verbs)

psychiatry *nou*n

ADJ. **clinical, community, forensic | child, geriatric**

PHRASES **a department of psychiatry, an institute of psychiatry** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

psychological *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **purely** *The symptoms are purely psychological.*

psychologist *noun*

ADJ. **eminent, leading, top | clinical, consultant, professional** *He is now a consultant psychologist with a major London hospital.* **| academic, experimental | behavioural, child, developmental, educational, occupational, social, sports** > Note at DOCTOR(for verbs)

psychology *noun*

1 **study of the mind/the way people behave**

PSYCHOLOGY + NOUN **clinical, professional | academic, experimental | applied | cognitive, developmental, educational, social | child** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

2 **type of mind that a person/group has**

ADJ. **individual, own** *The answers we give will reflect our own psychology.* **| crowd, group** *Watching the shoppers at the sales gave her a first-hand insight into crowd psychology.* **| human**

pub *noun*

ADJ. **excellent, good | favourite | corner, local, nearby, nearest** *The corner pub is quite good.* **| crowded | friendly, welcoming | country, village | historic, traditional | modern | theme** *It's one of those modern theme pubs.*

VERB + PUB **go down (to), go (round) to** *Let's go down the pub for a drink.*

PUB + NOUN **food, lunch, meal | landlady, landlord**

PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *He spent all afternoon in the pub.*

puberty *noun*

VERB + PUBERTY **reach** *He reached puberty at the age of fourteen.* **| approach**

PREP. **at ~** *Girls start menstruating at puberty.* **| during ~** *The body undergoes many changes during puberty.*

PHRASES **the age of puberty, the onset of puberty**

public *noun*

1 **the public people in general**

ADJ. **general**

VERB + PUBLIC **inform** *The government was slow to inform the public about the health hazards of lead in petrol.* **| protect | serve | be open to** *The house is open to the public at weekends.*

PREP. **in ~** *He rarely appears in public these days.*

PHRASES **a member of the public**

2 **group of people with sth in common**

ADJ. **book-buying, paying, reading, sporting, theatre-going, travelling, viewing, etc.** *Satellite television has provided the viewing public with a wide choice of programmes.* **| larger, wider** *Her work is now available to a wider public.*

publication *noun*

1 **of a book, etc.**

VERB + PUBLICATION **begin | cease, stop | prepare sth for | be due/scheduled for** *The book is scheduled for publication in the autumn.* **| accept sth for**

PUBLICATION + VERB **be due/scheduled** *The publication of her memoirs is scheduled for the autumn.*

PUBLICATION + NOUN **date**

PHRASES **the date/time of publication**

2 **book, magazine, etc.**

ADJ. **new, recent | forthcoming | leading, major | sister** *'This Week''s German sister publication, 'Diese Woche', went out of business.* **| government, official | specialist | academic, business, scientific, trade**

PUBLICATION + NOUN **publications catalogue/list**

PREP. **~ about** *specialist publications about bees* **| ~ on** *She has several publications to her name on local history.*

publicity *noun*

1 **media attention**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, extensive, greater, wide, widespread** *The papers have begun to give greater publicity to the campaign against GM food.* | **maximum** *The release of the report was timed to generate maximum publicity.* | **favourable, good, positive** | **adverse, bad, negative, unfavourable, unwelcome** | **free** | **international, local, national**

VERB + PUBLICITY **give sb/sth** | **gain, get, receive** | **attract, generate** | **seek** | **avoid, shun**

PUBLICITY + VERB **surround sth** *There was a lot of negative publicity surrounding the film.*

PREP. **~ about** *There has been a lot of unfavourable publicity about the hospital.* | **~ for** *Taking part in the event will be good publicity for our school.* | **~ over** *The firm had received bad publicity over a defective product.*

PHRASES **amid/amidst a storm of publicity** *The chairman resigned amid a storm of publicity over the bonus payments.* | **a blaze of publicity** *The film stars were married in a blaze of publicity.* | **the glare of publicity** *He carried on his life in the full glare of publicity.*

2 **advertising**

ADJ. **advance**

PUBLICITY + NOUN **material, photograph, shot** *He's better-looking in his publicity shots than he is in real life.* | **campaign** | **stunt** *The actress denied that her marriage was just a publicity stunt.* | **agent, officer** | **machine** *The record company's publicity machine was working flat out.*

PREP. **~ about** *I read some publicity about vaccinations while waiting my turn at the doctor's.* | **~ for** *There have been months of advance publicity for the show.*

PHRASES **a lack of publicity**

publicize *verb*

ADV. **well | widely**

VERB + PUBLICIZE **help (to)**

PHRASES **little publicized, highly/much publicized** *her highly publicized affair with a leading politician*

publish *verb*

ADV. **recently | posthumously** *Her last book was published posthumously in 1948.* **| anonymously**

VERB + PUBLISH **decide to | intend to, plan to | refuse to | be free to** *The press should be free to publish and comment on all aspects of political and social life.* **| dare (to)** *Freud had not dared to publish the third chapter of his book in Vienna.*

publisher *noun*

ADJ. **big, large, leading, major** *one of the country's biggest book publishers* **| small | local** *He's writing a history of the town for a local publisher.* **| commercial | mainstream | specialist | book, electronic, hardback, magazine, multimedia, music, newspaper, paperback, software | academic, educational, ELT, trade**

VERB + PUBLISHER **find, have** *Finding a publisher is hard for all writers. She now has a publisher for her book.*

publishing *noun*

ADJ. **book, newspaper, etc. | academic, music, etc.** *She works in music publishing.* **| desktop | electronic**

VERB + PUBLISHING **work in**

PUBLISHING + NOUN **agreement, deal | arm, company, firm, house** *The Cranfield Press is the publishing arm of the Cranfield Institute of Technology.* **| business, industry, sector, world** *The publishing world is extremely competitive.*

puff *noun*

1 **of air/smoke/wind**

ADJ. **little, tiny**

PREP. **~ of** *a little puff of smoke*

2 **on a cigarette/pipe, etc.**

ADJ. **long | short**

VERB + PUFF **have, take** *He took a long puff at his cigar and began his story.*

PREP. **~ at/on** *a puff on her cigarette*

puff *verb*

1 **smoke**

ADV. **furiously, vigorously**

ADV. **contentedly, happily | thoughtfully | away** *He puffed away at his cigar.*

PREP. **at** *She puffed furiously at her cigarette.* **| on** *My father sat puffing contentedly on his pipe.*

2 **breathe loudly**

ADV. **hard** *She was puffing quite hard by the time she reached the office.* **| loudly**

PREP. **along, from** *She was still puffing from the climb.* **| up** *puffing up the hill*

PHRASES **huff and puff/puff and pant** *She puffed and panted behind the others.* **| puffing and blowing** *Far behind us, puffing and blowing, came Matt.*

pull *noun*

1 **act of pulling**

ADJ. **sharp | strong | gentle | downward | gravitational** *the earth's gravitational pull* **| magnetic** *(figurative) The magnetic pull of the city was hard to resist.*

VERB + PULL **give sth** *I gave the door a sharp pull.* **| feel** *(figurative) She felt the pull of her homeland.*

PREP. **~ at** *A gentle pull at her sleeve got her attention.* **| ~ on** *He felt a strong pull on the rope.*

2 **on a cigarette/drink**

ADJ. **long**

VERB + PULL **take** *She took a long pull on her cigarette and sighed.*

PREP. **~ at** *a pull at his flask* **| ~ on**

pull *verb*

ADV. **hard** *He got hold of the rope and pulled hard.* **| gently | apart, off, on, out, over** *She pulled off her boots. He pulled his sweater on.* **| along, away, back** *She took his arm and pulled him along. The dog snapped at her and she pulled back her hand.*

VERB + PULL **try to** *He tried to pull away.* **| manage to**

PREP. **at** *He pulled at her coat sleeve.* **| on** *She pulled on the lever.* **| towards** *She pulled him gently towards her.*

PHRASES **pull (yourself) free** *John finally managed to pull himself free.* **| pull yourself to your feet**

pullover *noun*

ADJ. **woollen, woolly | sleeveless | knitted** *She was wearing a knitted pullover.* **| Fair Isle**

VERB + PULLOVER **knit** > Special page at CLOTHES

pulse *noun*

ADJ. **fast, racing, rapid | slow | strong | faint, weak**

VERB + PULSE **check, feel, take** *Last time I took my pulse, it was a bit fast.* **| check for, feel for** *She reached in through the driver's broken window and checked for a pulse.* **| find | quicken** *There was little to quicken the pulse in his dull routine.*

PULSE + VERB **beat | quicken, race** *She felt her pulse quicken as she recognized the voice.* **| slow**

PULSE + NOUN **rate** *My at-rest pulse rate is usually about 80 beats per minute.*

punch *noun*

ADJ. **good, powerful | knockout**

VERB + PUNCH **deliver, give sb, land, swing, throw** *She gave him a punch on the nose. He can throw a powerful punch.* **| pull** *He pulled his punches to avoid hurting his sparring partner.*

PREP. **~ in** *a punch in the stomach* **| ~ on** *She gave him a punch on the nose.* **| ~ to** *a punch to the jaw*

punch *verb*

ADV. **hard | lightly | repeatedly**

PREP. **in** *His attacker had punched him hard in the face.* **| on** *She punched him on the nose.*

PHRASES **kick and punch/punch and kick** *He was repeatedly kicked and punched as he lay on the ground.*

puncture *noun*

ADJ. **slow** *The tyre had a slow puncture and had to be pumped up every day.* **| bicycle**

VERB + PUNCTURE **get, have, suffer** *She suffered a puncture in the fifth lap.* **| fix, mend, repair**

punish *verb*

ADV. **severely | justifiably, justly | unfairly | accordingly, duly** *Those who had opposed the court were duly punished.*

VERB + PUNISH **want to | try to** *He was trying to punish her for deserting him all those years ago.* **| be designed to** *Damages are not designed to punish the person in breach, but to compensate for the loss sustained.*

PREP. **by** *Never punish children by making them go hungry.* **| for** *They will be severely punished for their crimes.* **| with** *Offenders will be punished with a £1,000 fine.*

punishment *noun*

ADJ. **cruel, harsh, heavy, severe | unusual** *the constitutional prohibition on cruel and unusual punishment* **| appropriate, fitting | capital | corporal, physical**

VERB + PUNISHMENT **administer, hand out, impose, inflict, mete out** *It is unlawful for a teacher to inflict corporal punishment on pupils. Harsh punishment is expected to be meted out to the murderer.* **| receive, suffer | avoid, escape | deserve**

PUNISHMENT + VERB **fit the crime** *The victim's family do not believe that this punishment fits the crime.*

PREP. **as ~ (for)** *She had to tidy the classroom as punishment for being late.* **| ~ for** *Punishments for killing the king's deer were severe.*

PHRASES **crime and punishment** *the sociology of crime and punishment* **| on pain of punishment** (= with the threat of punishment) *He was compelled on pain of punishment to answer the question.* **| reward and punishment** *They use a system of reward and punishment to discipline their children.*

pupil *noun*

1 **child in school**

ADJ. **able, bright, good, star | first-year, second-year, etc. | older, senior | younger | disruptive | ex-, former | private | school | primary, secondary**

VERB + PUPIL **teach | exclude, expel**

PUPIL + NOUN **attendance, numbers | assessment | performance | behaviour**

2 **of the eye**

ADJ. **dilated, enlarged**

VERB + PUPIL **dilate**

PUPIL + VERB **dilate**

puppet *noun*

1 **model of a person/animal**

ADJ. **finger, glove, hand, rod, shadow**

VERB + PUPPET **manipulate, work** *How do you work these puppets?*

PUPPET + NOUN **play, show | theatre | master**

2 **sb whose actions are controlled by sb else**

ADJ. **mere** *The king was a mere puppet of the mayor.*

PUPPET + NOUN **government, king, regime, state**

purchase *noun*

1 **buying sth**

ADJ. **cash | credit | online | bulk** *the bulk purchase of paper* **| outright** *Companies are moving away from outright purchase of company cars to contract hire.* **| compulsory** *The council applied for a compulsory purchase order on the the tennis courts.* **| arms, house, land, share**

PURCHASE + NOUN **price | tax | order**

PHRASES **the cost of purchase** *You can resell books and cut the original cost of purchase.* **| the date/time of purchase** *I did not notice the defects at the time of purchase.* **| the place/point of purchase** *Ticket holders should return to the point of purchase for a refund.* **| proof of purchase** *Keep your receipt as proof of purchase.*

2 **sth bought**

ADJ. **excellent, good | expensive**

VERB + PURCHASE **make** *some ways to encourage customers to make a purchase* **| pay for**

purchase *verb*

ADV. **compulsorily** *The land was compulsorily purchased from the owner to make way for the new road.*

VERB + PURCHASE **agree to, be willing to | wish to | can/cannot afford to**

PREP. **for** *They purchased the land for $1 million.* **| from** *They purchased the house from an elderly couple.*

purity *noun*

ADJ. **absolute** *the absolute purity of her love* **| great, high** *high-purity silver* **| ideological | racial | moral**

VERB + PURITY **maintain, preserve** *He struggled to preserve his ideological purity.*

PHRASES **purity of form/sound/style** *the building's unadorned purity of style*

purple *adj.*

ADV. **almost | slightly**

ADJ. **bright, vivid | dark, deep, rich | light, pale**

PHRASES **purple in the face, purple with rage** *He turned purple with rage.* > Special page at COLOUR

purpose *noun*

1 aim/function

ADJ. **limited | chief, main, primary, prime, principal | true | sole | practical, useful** *These bars serve no useful purpose.* **| general** *a general-purpose cleaning fluid* **| common** *a group of individuals sharing a common purpose* **| particular, special, specific | dual** *a toy with the dual purpose of entertaining and developing memory skills* **| stated | social** *the view that art should serve a social purpose*

VERB + PURPOSE **have | lack | accomplish, achieve, fulfil, serve** *The scheme achieved its primary purpose, if nothing else.*

PREP. **for a/the ~** *I put the chair there for a purpose. a measure introduced for the purpose of protecting the interests of investors* **| on ~** (= intentionally) *He slammed the door on purpose.*

PHRASES **at cross purposes** (= not understanding or having the same aims, etc. as each other) *I finally realized that we were talking at cross purposes.* **| for/with the express purpose of sth** *The school was founded with the express purpose of teaching deaf children to speak.* **| for (all) practical purposes** *Nominally she is the secretary, but for all practical purposes she runs the place.* **| purpose-built** *The cycling events will take place in a purpose-built 20,000-seater stadium.* **| your purpose in life** *She saw being a doctor as her purpose in life.* **| put/use sth to (a/some) purpose** *The old mill has been put to good purpose.* **| a sense of purpose** *Encouraged by her example, they all set to work with a fresh sense of purpose.* **| strength of purpose** *They had great confidence and strength of purpose.*

2 purposes: requirements of a particular situation

ADJ. **administrative, business, commercial, domestic, educational, insurance, legal, medical, medicinal, political, research, tax, teaching** *You will need to have the vehicle valued for insurance purposes.*

PREP. **for … ~** *The drug can be sold for medicinal purposes only.* **| for the ~s of** *Let's assume he knows, for the purposes of our argument.*

pursue *verb*

1 **continue sth/try to achieve sth**

ADV. **further, still | actively, energetically, vigorously | doggedly** *He was still doggedly pursuing his studies.* **| relentlessly | effectively, successfully** *How can we most effectively pursue these aims?*

VERB + PURSUE **decide to** *We have decided not to pursue the matter further.* **| intend to, want to, wish to** *deciding on which career you wish to pursue* **| be/feel inclined to | be reluctant to | be able to, be at liberty to, be free to | continue to**

PHRASES **the ability/freedom to pursue sth** *the freedom to pursue her own interests* **| be not worth pursuing** *I decided the matter was not worth pursuing further.*

2 **chase sb**

ADV. **relentlessly** *He pursued her relentlessly, refusing to take 'no' for an answer.*

PHRASES **closely/hotly pursued by sb** *He ran past, hotly pursued by two policemen.*

pursuit *noun*

1 **attempt to find sth**

ADJ. **relentless, ruthless, single-minded, vigorous | successful**

VERB + PURSUIT **be engaged in**

PREP. **in ~ of** *people travelling around the country in pursuit of work* **| ~ of** *He is engaged in the ruthless pursuit of wealth.*

PHRASES **the pursuit of a goal** *He devoted his waking hours to the single-minded pursuit of his goal.* **| the pursuit of excellence/happiness/knowledge/pleasure/truth**

2 **attempt to catch sb/sth**

VERB + PURSUIT **give** *The police gave pursuit.*

PREP. **in ~ (of)** *Two boys ran past with a security guard in pursuit. The guard set off in pursuit of the thief.*

PHRASES **in close/hot pursuit** *Away ran the fox, with the hunters in hot pursuit.*

3 **(usually pursuits) pastime**

ADJ. **favourite, popular | active, energetic** *active leisure pursuits* **| country | indoor, outdoor | leisure, recreational | academic, artistic, cultural, educational, intellectual, sporting**

VERB + PURSUIT **follow** *She has time now to follow her various artistic pursuits.*

pus *noun*

ADJ. **yellow**

VERB + PUS **discharge, ooze** *The wound had not healed properly and was oozing pus.*

PUS + VERB **gather | ooze (out)**

PUS + NOUN **cell**

push *noun*

1 **act of pushing**

ADJ. **big, hard | gentle, little**

VERB + PUSH **give sb/sth** *She gave him a gentle push towards the door.*

PHRASES **at the push of a button** *The machine washes and dries at the push of a button.*

2 **effort to do/obtain sth**

ADJ. **big | final**

PREP. **~ against** *the final push against the enemy* **| ~ for** *There has been a big push for better public transport.* **| ~ towards** *a push towards organic food*

push *verb*

1 **use force to move sb/sth away from you**

ADV. **firmly, hard** *You'll have to push harder if you want it to move.* | **roughly, violently** | **gently** | **carefully** | **deliberately** *He was deliberately pushed into the path of the vehicle.* | **hastily, hurriedly, quickly** | **slowly** | **suddenly** | **just, merely, simply** *Jack flung himself at Steve, but he simply pushed him away.* | **aside, away, back, down, home, inside, over, together** *She leaned on the door and pushed the bolt home. They pushed the two desks together.*

VERB + PUSH **try to** | **manage to** | **begin to**

PREP. **across, against** *The fans pushed against the barrier.* | **at** *She pushed at the door but it wouldn't budge.* | **into, off, out of** *He pushed her roughly out of the door.* | **through, to** *The woman had been pushed violently to the ground.* | **towards, under** *She found a note pushed under the door.*

PHRASES **push sth open/shut** *He managed to push the window open a few inches.*

2 **move forward by pushing people**

ADV. **roughly** | **blindly**

VERB + PUSH **try to** | **begin to** *I began to push my way through the crowd.*

PREP. **past** *She pushed blindly past him and made for the door.* | **through** *pushing through the crowd*

PHRASES **push and shove** *People were pushing and shoving to get to the front.* | **push your way** *A man pushed his way to the front of the crowd.*

3 **put pressure on sb/yourself**

ADV. **hard** *Lucy should push herself a little harder.* | **too far** *Her parents are very tolerant, but sometimes she pushes them too far.* | **around** *Don't allow yourself to be pushed around by that bully.*

PREP. **into** *Her parents pushed her into accepting the job.*

PHRASES **push sb/yourself to the limit** *He felt he was being pushed to the limits of his self-control.* **PHRASAL VERBS push for sth**

ADV. **hard** *They're pushing hard for a ban on GM foods.*

VERB + PUSH **have to** *I'm going to have to push you for an answer.*

pushchair *noun*

ADJ. **collapsible, folding**

VERB + PUSHCHAIR **push (along), wheel (along) | collapse, fold (up)**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

put *verb*

ADV. **cleverly, well** *I thought you put your points very well.* **| badly | tactfully | bluntly, crudely | simply, succinctly** *Put simply, we accept their offer or go bankrupt.* **| mildly** *(ironic) I was, to put it mildly, annoyed* (= I was extremely angry).

PHRASES **to put it another way** *He was too trusting?or, to put it another way, he had no head for business.*

puzzle *noun*

1 **sth that is difficult to understand**

ADJ. **great | perplexing | scientific, theoretical**

VERB + PUZZLE **solve | remain** *What happened to the ship remains a puzzle.*

PUZZLE + VERB **remain** *The puzzle remains of what happened to the ship.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *They knew who the killer was, but there were still some gaps in the puzzle.* **| ~ about** *There is a puzzle about how the plant first came to Britain.* **| ~ of** *They're trying to solve the puzzle of how gravity works.*

PHRASES **a bit/piece of the puzzle** *Another piece of the puzzle fell into place.* **| the key to a puzzle** *Traces of explosives found among the wreckage were the key to the puzzle.* **| a piece in the puzzle** *The police didn't know what the message meant, but it was another piece in the puzzle.* **| a solution to a puzzle, something of a puzzle** *The origin of the word is something of a puzzle.*

2 **game that tests your skill, intelligence, etc.**

ADJ. **crossword, jigsaw | number, picture, word | complicated**

VERB + PUZZLE **do, solve**

PUZZLE + NOUN **book**

puzzled *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *beginning to get a bit puzzled* **| remain**

ADV. **extremely, very | a bit, faintly, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat | genuinely | clearly, obviously**

PREP. **about** *You look very puzzled about something.* **| at** *I was somewhat puzzled at his unwillingness to help.* **| by** *Mrs Sykes seemed slightly puzzled by this.*

pyjamas *noun*

QUANT. **pair**

PYJAMAS + NOUN **jacket, top | bottoms, trousers** *wearing only his pyjama trousers*
> Special page at CLOTHES

qualification *noun*

1 **skill/knowledge needed for a job, etc.**

ADJ. **formal, paper, recognized | basic, minimum | entry | further | appropriate, necessary | special, specialist | management, professional, vocational | academic, educational, postgraduate | technical | legal, medical, secretarial, teaching, etc.**

VERB + QUALIFICATION **acquire, gain, obtain | have, hold** *Only two of the applicants had the necessary qualifications.*

QUALIFICATION + NOUN **course, programme** *a qualification programme in business management* **| period** *The job usually has a three-year qualification period.*

PREP. **~ for** *the minimum entry qualification for admission* **| ~ in** *He held no formal qualification in law.*

2 **weakening of a statement**

ADJ. **important**

VERB + QUALIFICATION **add | need, require** *The term 'population' as used here requires qualification.*

PREP. **with ~s** *I agree with his view, with a few qualifications.* **| without ~** *The committee supported her proposal, without qualification.*

qualified *adj.*

1 having completed a course of study

VERBS **be | become, get**

ADV. **highly, well** *The teaching staff are all highly qualified.* **| fully, properly** *a fully qualified electrician* **| newly, recently** *newly qualified doctors* **| appropriately, duly, suitably** *Applications are invited from suitably qualified individuals.* **| sufficiently | legally, medically, professionally** *She is a professionally qualified social worker.*

PREP. **as** *She is now qualified as a teacher.*

2 having the skill needed to do sth

VERBS **be, feel** *Elaine did not feel qualified to comment.*

ADV. **eminently, ideally, well** *My father was well qualified to act the part of a head teacher.*

3 limited in some way

VERBS **be**

ADV. **heavily** *The proposals received heavily qualified approval.*

qualify *verb*

1 **have/give sb the right to sth**

ADV. **automatically**

PREP. **for** *You will automatically qualify for a pension.*

PHRASES **qualify on the grounds of sth** *people who qualify for the grant on the grounds of disability*

2 **for a sports competition**

ADV. **easily | duly** *South Korea duly qualified for the finals when they beat Italy 6?1.*

VERB + QUALIFY **fail to**

PREP. **for** *England failed to qualify for the final.*

3 **fit a description**

ADV. **hardly**

PREP. **as** *A three-week course hardly qualifies as sufficient training.*

quality *noun*

1 **how good/bad sth is**

ADJ. **excellent, good, high, outstanding, superior, top** *All our cakes are made with top quality ingredients.* **| inferior, low, poor | variable | product, service | recording, sound | air, water | artistic, technical**

VERB + QUALITY **maintain | enhance, improve, raise | affect, impair, reduce | assess, determine, evaluate, monitor, test**

QUALITY + VERB **improve | suffer** *When costs are cut product quality suffers.*

QUALITY + NOUN **control | assurance | standards**

PREP. **of … ~** *The photos are of variable quality.*

PHRASES **quality of life** *Advances in technology would, it was hoped, improve the quality of life.*

2 **characteristic**

ADJ. **admirable, desirable, fine, good, great, positive, valuable | negative | redeeming** *I found him thoroughly unpleasant, with no redeeming qualities whatsoever.* **| individual, personal | inborn, inherent, innate, intrinsic | distinctive, particular, special, unique | elusive, rare** *a singer with that elusive quality that sells records* **| essential, important | aesthetic, artistic, literary | moral | mental, psychological | feminine, masculine | leadership, managerial | aphrodisiac, medicinal**

VERB + QUALITY **have | display, show**

quantity *noun*

ADJ. **appreciable, considerable, enormous, fair, great, huge, large, massive, prodigious, sheer, substantial, vast | minute, modest, small | maximum, minimum | increasing | average | sufficient** *Gas was detected in sufficient quantity to warrant careful monitoring.*

PREP. **in ~** *There is a discount for goods bought in quantity.* **| ~ of** *A quantity of jewellery was taken during the burglary.*

quarantine *noun*

ADJ. **strict**

VERB + QUARANTINE **keep sb/sth in, put sb/sth in**

QUARANTINE + NOUN **period | regulations**

PREP. **in ~** *The animals are still in quarantine at the port.*

quarrel *noun*

ADJ. **bitter, fierce, serious, violent | family, internal, lovers', private | long-standing, old**

VERB + QUARREL **pick** *I don't want to pick a quarrel with her.* **| be/become/get involved in** *He got involved in a quarrel with his neighbour.* **| make up, patch up, settle**

QUARREL + VERB **break out, ensue**

PREP. **~ about** *a quarrel about money* **| ~ between** *a quarrel between family members* **| ~ over** *a quarrel over the ownership of a piece of land* **| ~ with** *Our quarrel is not with the people, but with their leader.*

PHRASES **have no quarrel with sb/sth** *We have no quarrel with their plans, in fact we support them.*

quarrel *verb*

ADV. **bitterly, fiercely, violently**

PREP. **about, over** *What did you two quarrel about?* **| with** *He wished he hadn't quarrelled with Tania.*

quarter *noun*

1 **one of four equal parts into which sth is divided**

VERB + QUARTER **break/cut/divide/fold sth into ~s**

PREP. **~ of** *a quarter of a century/mile/million a quarter of an hour a quarter of all potential customers*

2 **period of three months**

ADJ. **first, second, third, fourth/last** *Profits fell during the third quarter.* **| current, previous**

PREP. **during the ~**

3 **part of a town**

ADJ. **old | Arab, Chinese, Latin, etc. | diplomatic, historic, industrial, residential 4 quarters** place to live in

ADJ. **comfortable, spacious | confined, cramped, modest | private** *the president's private quarters* **| living, sleeping | officers', servants', soldiers' | married** *The corporal and his family lived in married quarters.*

VERB + QUARTER **be confined to** *He was confined to quarters as a punishment.*

queen *noun*

1 **female ruler/wife of a king**

ADJ. **rightful | crowned | future**

VERB + QUEEN **become | crown (sb), make sb, proclaim sb** *She was crowned queen at the age of fifteen.* **| depose, put aside**

QUEEN + VERB **reign, rule, rule (over) sb/sth | abdicate** *the queen's decision to abdicate*

PREP. **under a/the ~** *England under Queen Elizabeth I* **| ~ of** *the Queen of France*

PHRASES **queen consort** (= the wife of a king)

2 **playing card > Note at CARD**

query *noun*

VERB + QUERY **have** *If you have any queries regarding this offer, simply call our helpline.* **| raise | send in, write in with | put** *I've a query to put to the last speaker.* **| answer, deal with, reply to, respond to**

PREP. **~ about/as to/concerning/on/regarding/relating to** *Have you any queries about what you're supposed to do? We regret that we cannot deal with queries on individual cases.* **| ~ from** *We had queries from people all over the country.*

quest *noun*

ADJ. **continuing, endless, eternal, relentless | religious, spiritual**

VERB + QUEST **begin, embark on, go on, set off on | continue, pursue** *The team will continue its quest for Olympic gold this afternoon.* **| abandon**

QUEST + VERB **end** *It is possible that his quest will end in Geneva.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *an important stage in their quest for truth* **| in ~ of** *We set off in quest of the perfect wedding dress.* **| ~ for** *her quest for a better life*

question mark *noun*

ADJ. **big, huge, serious**

VERB + QUESTION MARK **put** *His arrival clearly puts a huge question mark against the future of the present team captain.*

QUESTION MARK + VERB **hang over sth, remain** *A big question mark hangs over the wisdom of the move.*

PREP. **~ against** *A slight question mark against her character remains.* **| ~ over** *There is now a serious question mark over his leadership ability.*

question *noun*

1 **sentence, etc. that asks sth**

ADJ. **pointed, probing, searching** *He became embarrassed when a journalist asked him pointed questions about his finances.* **| awkward, difficult, embarrassing, tricky | personal | academic, hypothetical, rhetorical | leading, loaded** *The judge told him not to ask the witness leading questions.* **| good, pertinent, relevant | simple | daft, inane, silly, stupid | direct, straight** *I wanted to find out how old he was without asking him a direct question.* **| exam, multiple choice, quiz, test**

VERB + QUESTION **ask (sb) | have** *Have any of the audience got questions for our speaker?* **| address, put** *I'd like to put a question to the first speaker.* **| bombard sb with, fire** *The children bombarded us with questions. The interview panel fired questions at me from all angles.* **| frame, phrase** *I need to phrase my question rather carefully.* **| face | answer, reply to, respond to | do (used only about written questions)** *I couldn't do Question 6.* **| field** *The chairperson fielded technical questions that she could not answer herself.* **| evade, parry** *He skilfully parried all the interviewer's most probing questions.*

PREP. **~ about** *She refused to answer questions about her private life.* **| ~ as to** *Don't be afraid to ask questions as to why things are done in the way they are.* **| ~ concerning/regarding/relating to** *The former minister faced questions concerning his role in the affair.*

2 **issue**

ADJ. **burning, challenging, controversial, difficult, unanswerable, vexed** *We come now to the vexed question of pension rights.* **| crucial, fundamental, important, key | delicate, sensitive | economic, ethical, political, etc.**

VERB + QUESTION **bring up, pose, raise** *The new play poses some challenging questions.* **| consider, discuss, examine | address, deal with, face, tackle | answer, decide, find a solution to | come to**

QUESTION + VERB **arise | remain unanswered** *Only one question remains unanswered.*

PREP. **~ about** *fundamental questions about the nature of our society* **| ~ for** *one of the crucial questions for the jury* **| ~ of** *questions of national security Now it's just a question of getting the wording of the statement right.*

[3] **doubt**

VERB + QUESTION **come into | call into** *It does call into question the decision to send troops into the area.* **| be open to** *The government's handling of the whole affair remains open to question.*

PREP. **beyond ~** *Her loyalty is beyond question.* **| in ~** *His sincerity is not in question.* **| without ~** *It was, without question, the worst day of my life.* **| ~ about** *There is no question about her enthusiasm for the job.* **| ~ as to** *I did have some questions as to his motive in coming.*

question *verb*

ADV. **closely, further**

PREP. **about** *She was closely questioned about her whereabouts on the night of the murder.* **| in connection with** *A man is being questioned in connection with the robbery.* **| on** *He was questioned on his role in the affair.*

questionable *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **highly, very** *Their motives for undertaking this study are highly questionable.* **| rather, somewhat**

questionnaire *noun*

ADJ. **short, simple | detailed, lengthy | postal**

VERB + QUESTIONNAIRE **design, draw up, prepare | circulate, distribute, send (out) | receive | complete, fill in/out | reply to, respond to, return, send in** *Most of the staff who responded to the questionnaire were supportive.* **| analyse** *The college is now analysing thousands of questionnaires.*

PREP. **~ about** *Local companies were asked to complete a questionnaire about their exports.* **| ~ concerning** *questionnaires concerning people's leisure preferences* **| ~ on** *a questionnaire on the environment*

queue *noun*

ADJ. **endless, long | growing, lengthening | orderly** *Please form an orderly queue.* **| bus, checkout, cinema, etc. | bread, dinner, food** *the country's soaring prices and growing food queues* **| traffic | dole** *More unemployed people are joining the dole queue each week.*

VERB + QUEUE **form, line up in | join, stand in, wait in** *He had to join the queue for the toilets.* **| jump** *Don't jump the queue?take your turn like everyone else!*

QUEUE + VERB **form | build up, grow** *Long queues are building up on most of Britain's motorways.* **| move** *The queue's not moving at all.* **| stretch** *The queue stretched for more than a mile.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the people in the queue* **| ~ for** *the queue for tickets* **| ~ of** *a long queue of shoppers*

PHRASES **the back/end of the queue, the front/head of the queue**

queue *verb*

ADV. **patiently | up** *People queued up outside.*

VERB + QUEUE **have to**

PREP. **for** *We had to queue for tickets.*

quick *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem** *We'd better be quick.* **| become, get**

ADV. **extremely, particularly, really, very** *a really quick worker* **| fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively | amazingly, remarkably, surprisingly | mercifully** *It was a mercifully quick end for those condemned to die.*

PREP. **at** *I was getting quite quick at putting up fences.*

PHRASES **quick and easy** *meals that are quick and easy to prepare*

quiet *adj.*

1 **with little or no noise; not talking**

VERBS **be | become, fall, go, grow | lie, keep, remain, sit, stay** *Just sit quiet for a moment, there's a good boy.* **| keep sb/sth** *Keep that dog quiet, will you!*

ADV. **all, extraordinarily, extremely, really, remarkably, unusually, very** *Suddenly the room went all quiet.* **| absolutely, completely, perfectly | fairly, pretty, rather | enough | blissfully | deathly, eerily** *The house was eerily quiet.* **| dangerously, ominously** *His voice was dangerously quiet as he asked the question.* **| oddly, strangely, unnaturally** *She went back to a strangely quiet house.* **| uncharacteristically**

PREP. **about** *I knew I had to keep quiet about it.*

PHRASES **nice (and) quiet** *I was looking forward to a nice quiet afternoon.*

2 **without much activity**

VERBS **be, look, seem | become | lie, remain, sit** *Lie quiet for an hour and you'll feel better.* **| keep sb/sth** *Keep the patient as quiet as possible.*

ADV. **extremely, very | comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, reasonably, relatively | enough** *Things seemed quiet enough, but it was an uneasy calm.*

quiet *noun*

ADJ. **comparative, relative** *a period of comparative quiet* | **sudden**

VERB + QUIET **call for** *A man's voice was calling for quiet.* | **shatter** *A machine gun shattered the quiet.*

QUIET + VERB **follow** *in the sudden quiet that followed the gunshot*

PHRASES **peace and quiet** *I'm going home for a bit of peace and quiet!* | **a place/ time of quiet** *She made sure she had times of quiet in which to write.*

quirk *noun*

ADJ. **curious, odd, peculiar, strange | little**

VERB + QUIRK **have** *The system has some odd little quirks.*

PREP. **by a ~ of** *By a strange quirk of fate, she later married the first boyfriend she'd ever had.* **| ~ in** *as a result of some quirk in the social order*

PHRASES **a quirk of fate**

quit *verb*

VERB + QUIT **try to** *I'm still trying to quit smoking.* **| decide to | threaten to | be forced to, have to**

PREP. **as** *He was forced to quit as the team's manager.* **| over** *Their longest-serving employee is threatening to quit over pay.*

PHRASES **give/issue notice to quit** *Landlords are normally required to give 28 days' written notice to quit.*

quiz *noun*

ADJ. **film, general knowledge, sports, etc.**

VERB + QUIZ **compile | hold, organize | enter, take part in | win**

QUIZ + NOUN **competition, game, programme, show | evening, night** *The pub has a quiz night every Wednesday.* **| question**

PREP. **~ about** *a quiz about the week's news*

quota *noun*

ADJ. **full** *He never takes his full quota of holidays.* **| annual, daily, monthly, weekly | national | fishing, milk, etc.** *the introduction of EU milk quotas* **| export, import, production**

VERB + QUOTA **agree, determine, establish, set | allocate, impose, introduce | increase | reduce | achieve, fill, fulfil, reach** *We had to increase our output to fill the quota by the end of the year.* **| exceed** *Many countries are still exceeding their quotas.*

QUOTA + NOUN **system**

PREP. **~ for** *quotas for oil production* **| ~ on** *national quotas on imports of cars*

quotation *noun*

1 **words taken from a book, etc.**

ADJ. **famous, memorable | direct, verbatim** *a direct quotation from a recent speech by the prime minister* **| illustrative | biblical**

VERB + QUOTATION **take** *My quotation is taken from 'Hamlet'.*

QUOTATION + VERB **come from sth** *Where does that quotation come from?*

QUOTATION + NOUN **dictionary**

PREP. **~ from** *It's a quotation from a poem by Keats.*

2 **price that will be charged for a piece of work**

ADJ. **written | free | detailed**

VERB + QUOTATION **give (sb), provide (sb with), supply (sb with)** *Most builders will give you a free quotation.* **| get, obtain | accept**

PREP. **~ for** *Always get several quotations for the job.*

quote *noun*

1 **words taken from a book, etc.**

ADJ. **famous, memorable, quotable | direct, verbatim** *a direct quote from this morning's paper*

VERB + QUOTE **take** *quotes taken from various lifestyle magazines*

QUOTE + VERB **come from sth** *The quote of the week comes from Mae West.*

PREP. **~ from** *a quote from Albert Einstein*

2 **price that will be charged for a piece of work**

ADJ. **written | free**

VERB + QUOTE **give (sb) | get, obtain** *Always get a written quote before proceeding with work.* **| accept**

PREP. **~ for** *a quote for the hire of the equipment*

quote *verb*

1 **repeat exactly what sb has said/written**

ADV. **at length, extensively** *She quotes extensively from the author's diaries.* **| in full** *The passage is quoted in full.* **| accurately, exactly | directly | approvingly, with approval | above, below, earlier, here, previously** *The new text of Article 92, quoted above, gives member states more discretion on this issue.*

PREP. **as** *She is wrongly quoted as saying 'Play it again, Sam.'* **| from** *quoting from Shakespeare/'Hamlet'*

2 **give sth as an example**

ADV. **frequently, often**

PREP. **as** *an example that is often quoted as evidence of mismanagement* **| on** *Don't quote me on this but I think the figure is in excess of £2 billion.*

PHRASES **widely quoted** *the most widely quoted and influential study in this field*

rabbit *noun*

VERB + RABBIT **hunt, shoot, trap | skin**

RABBIT + VERB **hop, jump | bolt, run** *A frightened rabbit will bolt for its hole.* **| breed** *Rabbits breed very fast.*

RABBIT + NOUN **fur, skin | burrow, hole, hutch, warren** *(often figurative) The building was a real rabbit warren of corridors.*

race *noun*

1 contest to find the fastest person, car, etc.

ADJ. **big** *I get very nervous before a big race.* **| close, tight | long-distance | 10-kilometre, 24-hour, 7-lap, etc. | gruelling, hard, tough | relay, road | men's, women's | boat, motor, motorbike, yacht, etc. | dog, horse, etc. | Grand Prix, World Cup, etc.**

VERB + RACE **have, hold, organize, stage** *Let's have a race!* **| be in, compete in, enter, go in for, run in, take part in** *Is she running in the big race on Saturday?* **| drop out of, pull out of, withdraw (sth) from** *He dropped out of the race with a pulled muscle after two laps. She had to pull out of the race at the last minute.* **| lead, win** *I was leading the race until the half-way point. She has won the race for the last five years.* **| lose | come first/second, etc. in | beat sb/sth in | fix** *There is a rumour that the race was fixed.* **| throw** (= to lose deliberately) *He was paid £1,000 to throw the race.*

RACE + VERB **be run/held, take place**

RACE + NOUN **meeting** *The horse was withdrawn from today's race meeting with an injured leg.* **| winner | official, organizer**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I'm not in this race.* **| ~ against/with** *the race against the Danish team* **| ~ between** *the University Boat Race between Oxford and Cambridge* **| ~ over** *a race over 200 metres*

2 competitive situation

ADJ. **two-horse** *Although there are five candidates, realistically it is a two-horse race.* **| presidential | arms** *the halting of the nuclear arms race*

VERB + RACE **be (involved) in, join** *The rival TV companies are in a race to bring out the first film drama of his life.* **| be ahead in, lead, win** *Who will win the race for the White House?* **| be left behind in, lag behind in, lose**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *lagging behind in the race for the presidency* **| ~ between** *a race between the developing countries* **| ~ for** *the race for nuclear supremacy* **| ~ with** *the race with their rivals*

3 **racial group**

ADJ. **human | mixed** *a child of mixed race* **| Irish, Jewish, Latin, etc. | master** *the ideology of the master race*

RACE + NOUN **relations** *Immigration and race relations were key political issues at the time.* **| equality | discrimination, prejudice | riot**

PREP. **among ~s** *The disease is more common among European races.* **| between ~s** *greater understanding between nations and races* **| from a ~** *children from all races and religions* **| of a ~** *people of different races and cultures* **| ~ of** *The Amazons were a race of female warriors.*

PHRASES **on (the) grounds of race** *discriminating*

race *verb*

ADV. **frantically, madly** *She raced frantically towards the train.* **| ahead, away, back, by, downstairs, off, out, past, upstairs** *Farms and villages raced by.*

PREP. **across, after, along, around/round, down, for, into, out of, through, to, towards, up** *He raced madly up the stairs.*

PHRASES **come racing** *Two boys suddenly came racing round the corner.*

racing *noun*

1 **sport of racing horses**

ADJ. **horse | flat, jump**

RACING + NOUN **results | tip | expert, tipster** *Her racing tipster got the Derby winner right.* **| manager, owner, trainer | career | stable | trophy | calendar, programme, season** *He organizes his life according to the racing calendar.* **| business, game, industry** *He has ridden horses all his life, but he was a late starter in the racing game.* **| circles, scene** *He's known in racing circles as a fierce competitor. She's a familiar face on the racing scene.* **| correspondent** *the racing correspondent of 'The Times'*

2 **sport of taking part in races**

ADJ. **competitive, top-level** *Today's cross-country event marks his return to top-level racing.* **| bike, dog, motor, yacht, etc. | Grand Prix | road, track**

RACING + NOUN **champion | legend, star** *racing legend Ayrton Senna* **| cyclist, driver | team | programme, season | scene | career, days | debut** *He made his racing debut for Benetton three years ago.* **| car | circuit** *The bikes sped by on the racing circuit.* **| enthusiast, fan**

racism *noun*

ADJ. **blatant, overt** *I was shocked by the blatant racism of his remarks.* **| rampant** *Racism is rampant in the armed forces.* **| institutional, institutionalized**

VERB + RACISM **be a victim of, experience** *Many immigrants have experienced racism.* **| combat, fight (against), stamp out** *measures to combat racism*

PREP. **against ~** *the fight against racism*

PHRASES **a form of racism**

rack *noun*

ADJ. **display, storage | cooling, drying | letter, luggage, magazine, plate, spice, toast, vegetable, wine, etc. | roof** *We fixed the canoe onto the car's roof rack.*

VERB + RACK **hang sth on, put sth on/onto/in/into, stack sth in/on, store sth in/on** *The wine is stored in special racks.*

RACK + VERB **contain sth, hold sth** *The racks along the wall held most of the costumes.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He replaced the CD in the rack.* **| on a/the ~** *Spread the flowers out to dry on a rack.* **| ~ for** *a rack for storing apples* **| ~ of** *racks of magazines*

racket *noun*

1 **noise**

ADJ. **appalling, frightful, hellish, terrible**

VERB + RACKET **make** *Do you kids have to make such a terrible racket?*

PREP. **above/over the ~** *He had to shout over the racket.*

2 **illegal way of making money**

ADJ. **drugs, extortion, protection, smuggling**

VERB + RACKET **set up** *He set up a protection racket and demanded thousands of pounds from local shopkeepers.* **| control, operate, run | be involved in**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the other people in this racket* **| ~ in** *a racket in stolen goods*

radar *noun*

ADJ. **enemy, police**

VERB + RADAR **be equipped with**

RADAR + NOUN **operator | screen | beam, signal | equipment, scanner, station, system, transmitter**

PREP. **by ~** *navigating by radar* **| on ~** *The submarine is impossible to detect on radar.*

radiation *noun*

ADJ. **background | low-level | harmful | electromagnetic, gravitational, infrared, microwave, nuclear, solar, thermal, ultraviolet**

QUANT. **dose** *Patients receive high doses of radiation during cancer treatment.*

VERB + RADIATION **emit, give off | absorb** *The ozone layer absorbs solar radiation.* **| measure, monitor | expose sb to** *Nuclear testing has exposed millions of people to radiation.*

RADIATION + NOUN **sickness | leak | dose, level | exposure | therapy**

PREP. **~ from** *radiation from computer screens*

radiator *noun*

1 **equipment used for heating a room**

ADJ. **central heating, convector, storage**

VERB + RADIATOR **turn off/on | bleed** *You'll need to bleed the radiators to remove the airlocks.*

RADIATOR + VERB **leak**

RADIATOR + NOUN **key, valve**

2 **equipment for keeping an engine cool**

ADJ. **car**

VERB + RADIATOR **top up** *Top up the radiator before making a long journey.*

RADIATOR + NOUN **grille**

radical *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | become**

ADV. **really, very | increasingly | fairly, quite, somewhat | genuinely, truly** *a truly radical concept* **| apparently | potentially | politically, socially**

radio *noun*

ADJ. **cab, car** *There were calls for cab radios to link train drivers and signal boxes.* **| CB, mobile, portable, transistor, two-way | FM, long-wave, short-wave | army, police | community, local, national, state**

VERB + RADIO **listen to | turn on, tune in to | tune** *His radio is permanently tuned to Radio 1.* **| turn down/up**

RADIO + VERB **announce sth, report sth** *The radio announced that the president had been assassinated.* **| blare (out), play (sth)** *He drove along with his windows open and the radio blaring out.*

RADIO + NOUN **receiver, set | alarm, cassette (player) | message, signal, waves | operator | system | transmitter | silence** *The troops maintained a strict radio silence while they moved into position.* **| station | advertisement, broadcast, interview, news, programme, report, show, transmission | frequency | amateur, ham** *The distress call was picked up by a young radio ham.* **| drama, play**

PREP. **by ~** *The message was sent by radio.* **| on the ~** *We were listening to a show on the radio.*

radioactive *adj*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **dangerously, highly | slightly**

radioactivity *noun*

QUANT. **level** *The soil contains 30 times the acceptable level of radioactivity.*

VERB + RADIOACTIVITY **discharge, produce, release | measure, monitor**

RADIOACTIVITY + VERB **be present | escape, leak | contaminate sth** *The site was found to be contaminated by radioactivity.*

RADIOACTIVITY + NOUN **levels**

raffle *noun*

ADJ. **charity**

VERB + RAFFLE **have, hold, organize, run | enter | win | draw** *The club secretary will now draw the raffle.*

RAFFLE + NOUN **ticket** *the winning raffle ticket* **| prize**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I won a bottle of wine in the office Christmas raffle.* **| ~ for** *He's organizing a raffle for the school playground appeal fund.*

raft *noun*

ADJ. **life**

VERB + RAFT **build, make** *They built a raft of logs.*

RAFT + VERB **bob, float, sail** *The raft floated away down the river.* **| capsize, overturn**

RAFT + NOUN **race, racing**

PREP. **on/onto a/the ~** *floating on a raft*

rag *noun*

ADJ. **clean | dirty, filthy, oily, old | bloodstained**

QUANT. **bundle, heap, pile** *He noticed what looked like a bundle of rags beside the road.*

VERB + RAG **wipe sth (off) with | be wrapped in** *The gun was wrapped in a dirty rag.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *He wiped his hands on an oily rag.* **| with a ~** *I cleaned the board with an old rag.*

rage *noun*

1 **great anger**

ADJ. **blind, cold, icy, pure | helpless, impotent** *burning with impotent rage* **| pent-up, suppressed**

QUANT. **fit, burst** *He punched the wall in a fit of rage.*

VERB + RAGE **be beside yourself with, be boiling/burning with, be choked with, be filled with, be full of, be purple/red/white with, be rigid/stiff with, be shaking/trembling with, feel, seethe with** *He glared at me, quite beside himself with rage. 'How dare you!' she said, her voice choked with rage.* **| vent** *The people vented their rage on government buildings.* **| control, master** *He managed to master his rage.*

RAGE + VERB **build up** *She felt the rage building up inside her.* **| erupt** *His rage suddenly erupted.* **| subside** *His rage was beginning to subside.*

PREP. **with ~** *She was speechless with rage.* **| ~ at** *boiling with rage at the unfairness of it all*

PHRASES **a bellow/cry/roar/shout of rage** *He gave a roar of rage and punched me in the face.* **| tears of rage**

2 **sudden display of great anger**

ADJ. **blind, terrible, towering | jealous | drunken** *She smashed up his car in a drunken rage.*

VERB + RAGE **be in, fly into, get in** *If something's too difficult she gets in a rage.*

PREP. **in a ~** *She killed him in a rage of despair.* **| ~ about** *He was in a towering rage about his lost watch.* **| ~ at** *He flew into a rage at the insult.* **| ~ of** *He left in a rage of humiliation.*

rage *verb*

1 **show great anger**

ADV. **inwardly**

PREP. **about** *She was still raging about the treatment she had received.* **| against** *I raged inwardly against his injustice.* **| at** *The team was left raging at the referee's decision.*

2 **continue with great force**

ADV. **still, on** *The argument still rages on.*

PREP. **around** *Even the dogs were quiet while the heated quarrel raged around them.* **| within** *trying to control the fury raging within her*

PHRASES **rage unabated** *The storm raged unabated.*

raid *noun*

1 **surprise attack**

ADJ. **daring | destructive, heavy, major | punitive, retaliatory, revenge | dawn, daylight, night | border, cross-border | air, bombing | commando, guerrilla**

VERB + RAID **carry out, conduct, make** *bombers carrying out daylight raids over northern France* **| launch, mount, stage | lead sb in | suffer**

PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *Five civilians died in the raid.* **| on a/the ~** *He led his men on a cross-border raid.* **| ~ against** *The raids against Norway continued.* **| ~ by** *The town suffered several raids by Vikings.* **| ~ on** *air raids on Liverpool*

2 **robbery from a building**

ADJ. **bank, post office, shop | armed, smash-and-grab | dawn, daylight, night | daring**

VERB + RAID **plan | carry out | foil** *Two customers have foiled a smash-and-grab raid on a local shop.*

PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *the jewels stolen in the raid* **| ~ on** *She was shot during an armed raid on a security van.*

3 **surprise visit by the police**

ADJ. **dawn, early morning | police | drug/drugs**

VERB + RAID **carry out, launch, stage** *Police staged an early morning raid on the premises.*

PREP. **during a/the ~** *He was injured during a police raid on his nightclub.* **| in a/the ~** *the drugs seized in last night's raid* **| ~ by** *a raid by drugs squad detectives* **| ~ on** *raids on houses in Catholic areas of the city*

rail *noun*

1 **bar**

ADJ. **guard, safety | curtain, picture, towel** *heated towel rails* **| altar, balcony, banister**

VERB + RAIL **grip, hold on to, lean on** *She held tightly on to the rail.* **| hang from** *Lace curtains hung from the brass rails over the bed.* **| fit, fix**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *She sat on the rail.* **| over a/the ~** *He folded the towel over the rail.*

2 **(usually rails) tracks**

VERB + RAIL **run along/on ~** *Trams run alog rails.*

PREP. **along (the) ~s** *The train thundered along the rails.* **| between the ~** *Weeds grew between the rails.* **| off the ~s** *The train came off the rails.* **| on (the) ~s** *The gun is mounted on rails.*

3 **railway system**

RAIL + NOUN **fare, ticket | network** *modernizing the rail network* **| route | timetable | service | connection, line, link** *the Channel Tunnel rail link* **| journey | commuter, passenger, traveller, user | transport, travel | traffic | freight | bridge | accident, crash, disaster | employee, staff, worker | union | enthusiast**

PREP. **by ~** *We went from London to Budapest by rail.*

railway *noun*

ADJ. **mainline | high-speed | disused | narrow gauge, standard gauge | miniature** *A miniature railway runs around the park.* **| model | funicular, overhead** *Tourists can take the funicular railway to the top of the mountain.* **| private, regional, state | electric, steam**

VERB + RAILWAY **manage, operate, run | nationalize, privatize | build, construct | close, open**

RAILWAY + VERB **run | carry sth** *The railways carry millions of tons of freight every year.*

RAILWAY + NOUN **carriage, coach, train, wagon | station, terminus | platform | ticket | ticket office | timetable | service | connection | journey, travel** *the pleasures of railway travel* **| passenger, traveller | employee, porter, staff, worker | architect, engineer | authorities, company | network, system | line, track | junction, sidings | bridge, tunnel, viaduct | enthusiast** *He is a lifelong railway enthusiast.* **| accident | age** *Such speed of travel was unimaginable before the railway age.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *doing maintenance work on the railway He works on the railways.* **| ~ between** *the railway between Funchal and Monte* **| ~ from, ~ to**

rain *noun*

ADJ. **driving, heavy, lashing, pouring, torrential | steady | fine, gentle, light, patchy** *The fine rain turned to mist in the early evening. The forecast is for wind and patchy rain.* **| warm | cold | constant, continuous, persistent | intermittent | overnight** *Overnight rain had freshened up the garden.* **| monsoon, tropical** *The monsoon rains started early this year.* **| autumn, spring, etc.**

QUANT. **drop, spot** *A few spots of rain had fallen.* **| inch, shower, spot** *(informal) We had three inches of rain last night. We could do with a spot of rain.*

VERB + RAIN **forecast** *Rain is forecast for tomorrow.* **| look like, threaten** *It looks like rain* (= it looks as though it is going to rain). *Black clouds threatened rain.* **| pour with** *It poured with rain all afternoon.* **| get caught in** *We got caught in the rain on the way home.*

RAIN + VERB **beat, come down, drip, drum, fall, lash, patter, pelt, pour down, splash, trickle** *Rain beat against the window all night. Rain dripped down his collar.* **| come, set in, start** *The rain came just as we set off. The rain had set in steadily by the time we got home.* **| cease, let up, stop** *The rain didn't let up all day.* **| continue** *The rain continued for most of the day.* **| threaten** *With rain threatening, we headed home as fast as we could.* **| drive sb** *The rain drove the players off the court.*

RAIN + NOUN **cloud, water**

PREP. **in the ~** *We found her sitting in the pouring rain.* **| out of the ~** *Come in out of the rain.* **| through the ~** *We drove slowly through the driving rain.*

rain *verb*

ADV. **hard, heavily | a little, slightly | incessantly, non-stop, solidly, steadily** *It's been raining solidly for an hour now. It rained incessantly for the whole two weeks.*

VERB + RAIN **begin to, start to | be going to** *I don't think it's going to rain.*

PHRASES **start/stop raining**

rainfall *noun*

ADJ. **abundant, excessive, heavy, high** *There have been heavy rainfalls this month.* **| low | moderate | normal | good, poor** *We need a good rainfall to save the crops.* **| annual | average | local | summer, winter**

VERB + RAINFALL **have** *The area has a high annual rainfall.* **| measure** *Her work includes measuring the local rainfall.*

rally *noun*

1 **political meeting**

ADJ. **big, huge, large, major, mass, massive | public | indoor, outdoor** *at a massive outdoor rally in Paris* | **campaign, election, political | opposition, protest | peace | anti-government, anti-war, etc.**

VERB + RALLY **have, hold, stage** *The demonstrators marched to Trafalgar Square where they held a rally.* | **call for, organize, plan | attend, take part in** *About 5,000 people attended a rally calling for peace.* | **address, speak at | ban** *The government closed the schools and banned all rallies.*

RALLY + VERB **take place | break up, disperse, end** *The rally dispersed peacefully after six hours.* | **call for sth**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *She spoke at a public rally in Hyde Park.* | **~ against** *a mass rally against the treaty* | **~ for** *a rally for the winning candidate* | **~ in support of** *a rally in support of the strike*

2 **motor race**

ADJ. **club, international | motor, motorcycle**

VERB + RALLY **hold, organize | compete in, enter | win**

RALLY + NOUN **circuit | driver, driving**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *He will join the team on the rally next week.*

3 **in tennis**

ADJ. **long, short | exciting**

VERB + RALLY **play | win | lose**

rally *verb*

ADV. **around/round** *Neighbours rallied round and alerted the emergency services.*

VERB + RALLY **try to** *The team captain vainly tried to rally his troops.*

PREP. **around/round/behind** *She urged everyone to rally behind the president.* **| to** *Friends rallied to her.*

PHRASES **rally to sb's defence** *BBC leaders rallied to his defence.* **| rally to sb's/the cause** *Friends and colleagues have rallied to her cause.*

ram *verb*

ADV. **hard | deliberately**

PREP. **into** *He deliberately rammed his truck into the back of the one in front.*

ramble *noun*

ADJ. **country, nature**

VERB + RAMBLE **go for/on** *We went for a ramble over the moors.*

PREP. **on a ~** *The family made the amazing find while on a nature ramble in the woods.*

random *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **completely, entirely, purely, quite, totally | almost | fairly | truly | apparently, seemingly** *a seemingly random sequence of numbers*

range *noun*

1 **different things within the same category**

ADJ. **broad, enormous, extensive, great, huge, large, vast, wide | complete, comprehensive, full, whole | infinite | excellent,** exciting, good, superb | **astonishing, extraordinary,** *range.*

PREP. **beyond ~** *This car is beyond the range of most people's pockets.* **| in/within ~** *Are we within range of the local transmitter?* **| out of ~** *Don't shoot yet?he's still out of range.* **| outside a/the ~** *It's outside my range of vision.* **impressive, remarkable | diverse** *people from a diverse range of backgrounds* **| acceptable | limited, poor | new** *Come and see our new range of furniture.* **| product** *For more information about our product range, call your local branch.*

VERB + RANGE **have, stock** *They stock a very wide range of garden products.* **| make, produce | offer (sb), provide (sb with), supply (sb with)** *We provide a full range of financial services.* **| choose (sth) from, try out** *Students can choose from a wide range of options.* **| create, develop, launch** *The company is launching a new range of cosmetics.* **| expand, extend**

RANGE + VERB **include sth** *Our comprehensive range of benefits includes pension and health insurance.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the other models in their new range*

PHRASES **bottom/middle/top of the range** *This is a top of the range refrigerator.*

2 **amount between particular limits**

ADJ. **broad, wide | narrow | normal | ability, age, price, size, temperature, etc.**

VERB + RANGE **cover, encompass, feature, include** *The trade show will feature an enormous range of goods.* **| extend, increase** *trying to extend the range of children's language*

PREP. **across a/the ~** *There is considerable variation in ability across the range.* **| in a/the ~** *Most of the students are in the age range 17?21.* **| outside a/the ~** *No, that's* *completely outside my price range.* **| within a/the ~** *The level of mistakes is within the acceptable range of standards for a public organization.* **| ~ of** *a broad range of abilities*

3 **distance that it is possible to travel, see, etc.**

ADJ. **long** *missiles effective over a long range* **| close, point-blank, short** *He shot her at point-blank*

range *verb*

ADV. **enormously, widely**

PREP. **across** *The opinions they expressed ranged right across the political spectrum.* **| between** *The town's population ranged between 15 and 20,000.* **| from, in** *The disease ranges widely in severity.* **| over** *Her lecture ranged over a number of topics.* **| through** *an array of lilies, ranging through yellow to sombre purple* **| to** *selling them at prices ranging from about $10 to $500.* **| up to** *Their ages range up to 84.*

rank *noun*

1 **level of importance**

ADJ. **high, senior, superior, upper | middle | inferior, junior, low** *the lowest ranks of the aristocracy* **| first, second** *He is in the first rank of university teachers.* **| social | Cabinet, ministerial** *a government minister of Cabinet rank*

VERB + RANK **achieve, attain, be promoted to, get to, reach, rise to** *She joined the navy, where she rose to the rank of captain.* **| have, hold** *He held officer rank in the air force for many years.* **| be stripped of** *He was stripped of his rank by a military court.*

PREP. **above a/the ~** *He never rose above the rank of lieutenant.* **| below a/the ~** *police officers below the rank of sergeant* **| in ~** *He is higher in rank than I am.* **| ~ in** *all ranks in society* **| ~ of** *She reached the rank of captain.*

PHRASES **of high/low, etc. rank** *officers of senior rank*

2 **group/line of things/people**

ADJ. **front, rear | massed, serried** *the serried ranks of hotel staff*

PREP. **along a/the ~** *The president moved slowly along the ranks of men.* **| in a/the ~** *standing in the second rank The soldiers marched in three ranks of ten.*

PHRASES **break ranks** (= to leave a line of soldiers, police, etc.) *The police broke ranks and started hitting people with their batons.* **| rank on/upon rank (of sth)** *Rank upon rank of caravans filled the field.*

3 (*also* **the ranks**) **ordinary members of a large group**

VERB + RANK **be admitted into/to, enter, join, swell** *Each month thousands more swell the ranks of the unemployed.* **| serve in** *They had served in the ranks of the Sultan's army.* **| come up from/through, rise from/through** *He came up through the ranks to become a general.*

PREP. **among/within the ~s of** *There is much disaffection among the ranks of the*

party. **| beyond/outside the ~s** *The group has little influence over those outside its own ranks.* **| in the ~s** *There are few women in the highest ranks of the organization.*
> Note at RANK

rank *verb*

ADV. **high/highly, low** *These subjects ranked low for most students.*

PREP. **above** *She ranks above any other musician of her generation.* | **according to** *The children were ranked according to academic ability.* | **alongside** *This city ranks alongside London as one of the great tourist centres of the world.* | **among** *He ranks among the greatest boxers of all time.* | **as** *Their performance ranks as the best of the year.* | **below, with** *This ranks with the great paintings of the nineteenth century.*

PHRASES **be ranked/rank number two, three, etc.** *the tennis player ranked number two in the world* | **high-/low-ranking** *He is a high-ranking officer in the Indian Army.* | **rank sth in order of sth** *ranked in order of size* | **rank in the top 10, 100, etc.** *She is now ranked in the top five hockey players in Britain.* | **rank second, third, etc.** *The company ranks second among food manufacturers.*

ransom *noun*

VERB + RANSOM **hold sb for/to, kidnap sb for** *She was kidnapped and held for ransom. (figurative) The company refused to be held to ransom by the union.* **| demand | pay**

RANSOM + NOUN **demand, note | money, payment**

PREP. **for ~** *stealing cattle for ransom*

rap *verb*

ADV. **sharply** *He rapped sharply on the door.* **| gently**

PREP. **on, with** *rapping on the window with his stick*

rape *noun*

ADJ. **alleged | attempted | marital | date, gang**

RAPE + NOUN **victim**> Note at CRIME(for verbs)

rape *verb*

ADV. **brutally, forcibly, savagely** *She was attacked and brutally raped.* **| repeatedly | allegedly**

VERB + RAPE **attempt to, try to**

PHRASES **be/get raped** *worried about getting raped on her way home* **| be accused/convicted of raping sb, be charged with raping sb, be found guilty of raping sb, deny raping sb**

rapid *adj*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, unusually, very | fairly, quite, relatively**

rapidity *noun*

ADJ. **alarming, amazing, bewildering, extreme, great, remarkable** *The styles change with bewildering rapidity.* **| increasing**

PREP. **with ~**

rapist *noun*

ADJ. **potential, would-be | convicted | multiple, serial** *The serial rapist has struck again.*

RAPIST + VERB **attack (sb), strike**

rapport *noun*

ADJ. **close, easy, good, great, tremendous | personal | instant**

VERB + RAPPORT **build, develop, establish | enjoy, have | feel**

PREP. **~ between** *She felt an instant rapport between them* **| ~ with** *He had enjoyed a personal rapport with the former president.*

rare *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become, get | remain**

ADV. **decidedly, distinctly, especially, exceedingly, exceptionally, extremely, particularly, surprisingly, very | increasingly | comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively, somewhat | enough, sufficiently** *The stamps were not rare enough to be interesting.*

rash *noun*

ADJ. **skin | itchy | allergic | heat, nappy, nettle**

VERB + RASH **have | break out in, come out in** *When I'm stressed I break out in a rash.*

RASH + VERB **appear, come out, spread** *The rash most commonly appears on the back.*

PREP. **~ on** *He's got a slight rash on his chest.*

raspberry *noun*

QUANT. **punnet** *I bought a punnet of fresh raspberries.*

RASPBERRY + NOUN **cane** *rows of raspberry canes* > Special page at FRUIT

rat *noun*

ADJ. **black, brown | laboratory | sewer | water**

RAT + VERB **scurry, scuttle** *A brown rat scurried across the road.* **| squeak | gnaw** *Rats had gnawed through the wires.* **| carry/spread disease**

RAT + NOUN **catcher** *The dog was a useful rat catcher in the warehouse.* **| droppings | poison**

PHRASES **rat-infested** *a rat-infested cellar*

rate *noun*

1 **speed/frequency**

ADJ. **constant, expected, regular, steady | slow** *the slow rate of change* **| fast, rapid | alarming, phenomenal** *The costs of the project are rising at an alarming rate.* **| low** *There is a low survival rate among babies born before 22 weeks.* **| high | ever-increasing, rocketing | seasonally-adjusted** *The seasonally-adjusted unemployment rate in December stood at 5%.* **| success | divorce, marriage | death, mortality |** survival | birth, fertility | **accident | crime | growth, inflation | metabolic, pulse, respiratory** *We need to eat less as we get older and our metabolic rate slows down.*

VERB + RATE **improve, increase, speed up | cut, hold down, reduce, slow down** *trying to hold down the rate of inflation* **| stabilize | maintain | increase**

RATE + VERB **be/go/shoot up, grow, increase, rise, rocket, skyrocket, soar | be/come/go down, decline, decrease, drop, fall, plummet, plunge, slow, slip**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *The water was escaping at a rate of 200 gallons a minute.*

2 **amount of money paid**

ADJ. **competitive, cheap, low, moderate, reasonable** *We have a wide range of vehicles available for hire at competitive rates. Calls are cheap rate after 6 p.m.* **| extortionate, high | excellent, good | poor** *The account offers a poor rate of interest.* **| fixed, flat** *You can opt to pay a flat rate for unlimited Internet access.* **| usual | going** *I'll pay you at the going rate* (= the present usual rate of payment). **| variable | annual, hourly, weekly | base, basic, standard | top** *paying the top rate of tax* **| average | market** *current market rates for borrowing* **| group, preferential, reduced** *Ask about the special group rates for entrance to the house and gardens.* **| bank, exchange, interest, lending, mortgage, tax**

VERB + RATE **determine, fix, set | increase, lift, put up, raise | cut, lower, reduce | hold** *We will hold these rates until 1 April.* **| charge** *They charge the usual rate of interest.* **| pay | give (sb), offer (sb)**

RATE + VERB **go/shoot up, increase, rise** *Their hourly rates have gone up.* **| come/go down, drop | fluctuate** *Exchange rates are fluctuating wildly.* **| apply to sth**

Standard rates of interest apply to these loans.

PREP. **at a/the ~** *borrowing money at a high rate of interest* **| ~ for** *the average rate for an unskilled worker* **| ~ of** *an increase in the rate of taxation*

PHRASES **a drop in interest rates, a rise in mortgage rates, etc.** *a one-point rise in base lending rates* | a rate of return *safe investments which give a good rate of return* > Note at PERCENT (for more verbs)

rate *verb*

ADV. **highly** *Silver was rated more highly than gold.*

PREP. **among** *a golf course that is rated among the top ten in America* **| as** *It is rated as one of the city's best hotels.* **| for** *a university that is highly rated for its research work*

rating *noun*

1 **measurement of how good sb/sth is**

ADJ. **high, top | low, poor | overall** *The overall performance rating puts the new model well ahead of its main rivals.* **| approval, opinion poll, popularity** *He has the highest opinion poll rating of any president this century.* **| performance | credit** *Most countries try to preserve their international credit rating in order to secure necessary loans.* **| personal**

VERB + RATING **have | assign (sb/sth), give (sb/sth) | achieve, earn, get, receive, score** *The university scored a top rating among students.* **| preserve | improve**

RATING + VERB **climb, improve, rise, rocket, soar** *The president's ratings have suddenly rocketed.* **| fall**

RATING + NOUN **scale, system**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *a drop of 50 points in her personal rating* **| ~ for** *The resort got a low rating for children's facilities.* **| ~ on** *The judges gave her the maximum rating on style.*

2 **ratings: number of TV viewers, etc.**

ADJ. **good | poor | audience, TV**

VERB + RATING **get, have** *At this stage the series was getting good ratings.*

RATING + VERB **go up, improve, pick up, shoot up, soar** *The ratings went shooting up overnight.* **| dip, fall, go down** *The programme's ratings have dipped sharply.*

RATING + NOUN **battle, war**

PREP. **in the ~s** *It has been ousted from top spot in the TV ratings.*

ratio *noun*

ADJ. **high, low | male/female, pupil/teacher, etc. | benefit-to-risk, power-to-weight, etc.**

VERB + RATIO **achieve, have** *They have a high ratio of imports to exports.* **| improve, increase** *The hospital is trying to improve its staff/patient ratio.* **| reduce | calculate, find, work out**

RATIO + VERB **improve | worsen** *the worsening pupil/teacher ratio in our schools*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *We mixed the oil and water in a ratio of one to five.* **| ~ between** *the ratio between the amount of time spent on the work and the profit produced* **| ~ of sth to sth** *the ratio of house prices to incomes*

PHRASES **in direct ratio to sth** *Their sales rose in direct ration to the amount they spent on advertising.*

ration *noun*

ADJ. **daily, monthly | double, entire, extra, full** *Pregnant women received a double ration of milk.* **| meagre** *The refugees queued up for their meagre rations of soup.* **| emergency, short, starvation, wartime ~s** *We've been put on short rations.* **| cigarette, food, petrol, etc.**

VERB + RATION **give sb, hand out, provide (sb with) | get, receive | consume, have, use up** *You've had your ration of sweets for the day!* **| cut, reduce** *The guards are going to cut our rations again.*

RATION + NOUN **book, card, coupon**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *living on starvation rations* **| ~ of** *our daily ration of bread*

ration *verb*

ADV. **strictly** *These foods had to be strictly rationed.*

PREP. **to** *The soldiers were rationed to one litre of water each per day.*

rational *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem** *It all seemed quite rational to me.*

ADV. **highly, very | entirely, fully, perfectly, quite** *At the time she was perfectly rational.* **| purely, strictly | essentially** *Humans are essentially rational beings.* **| apparently | economically** *With children working from the age of ten, large families were economically rational.*

PREP. **about** *Try to be rational about it.*

rationing *noun*

ADJ. **strict | bread, credit, food, fuel, petrol, etc. | wartime**

VERB + RATIONING **have | bring in, introduce** *The government introduced meat rationing in May.* **| end**

RATIONING + VERB **be in force, exist**

RATIONING + NOUN **system**

PREP. **~ of** *Strict rationing of basic foodstuffs was still in force by the end of the year.*

ray *noun*

ADJ. **powerful | bright | harmful | dying, last** *the dying rays of a winter sun* **| cathode, cosmic, gamma, heat, infrared, light, ultraviolet, X- | the moon's, the sun's**

VERB + RAY **emit, give off, send out** *gamma rays given off by plutonium* **| expose sb/sth to | block, filter out, protect/shield sb/sth from** *creams which filter out the sun's harmful ultraviolet rays* **| bend, catch, deflect, reflect** *Her brooch caught the rays of the setting sun.*

RAY + VERB **filter through sth, pass through sth, penetrate sth, travel** *the moon's rays filtering through the trees* **| hit sth** *When the sun's rays hit the earth, a lot of heat is reflected back into space.* **| damage sth** *Ultraviolet rays damage the skin.*

PREP. **in the ~s of** *a stream sparkling in the rays of the June sun*

PHRASES **a ray of light/sunlight/sunshine, the rays of the sun**

razor *noun*

ADJ. **open | blunt | cut-throat, disposable, electric, safety**

VERB + RAZOR **cut sb/sth with, shave with, slash sb/sth with, use** *We used a razor to cut the string.* **| be armed with** *He was armed with a cut-throat razor.*

RAZOR + NOUN **blade | wire**

PREP. **with a/the ~** *He slashed his wrists with a razor.*

reach *noun*

ADJ. **long** *Gorillas have a very long reach.*

VERB + REACH **have**

PREP. **beyond (sb/sth's)** *The latch was just beyond her reach.* **| in/within sb/sth's ~** *a holiday town within reach of Marseilles* **| out of sb/sth's ~** *Keep all medicines out of reach of children.*

PHRASES **within arm's reach** *I always keep my mobile phone within arm's reach.* **| within easy reach (of sth)** *The house is within easy reach of the shops.*

reach *verb*

1 **arrive at a place/condition**

ADV. **eventually, finally**

VERB + REACH **attempt to, try to | be expected to, be likely/unlikely to, expect to** *Profits are expected to reach £2 billion this year.* **| be able to | be unable to, fail to** *The jury was unable to reach a verdict.*

2 **stretch out your arm to touch/get sth**

ADV. **gingerly | out, over** *He reached out gingerly to touch it.*

PREP. **for** *She reached for the telephone and picked it up.* **| into** *He reached into his bag and took out a book.*

3 **be able to touch sth**

ADV. **easily** *She had arranged her desk so that she could reach everything easily.*

VERB + REACH **can/could** *I can't reach the top shelf.*

react *verb*

ADV. **strongly | favourably, positively, sympathetically** *people who react positively to change* **| adversely, badly, negatively, unfavourably | aggressively, angrily, violently | cautiously, coolly | sharply | appropriately | immediately, instantly | quickly, swiftly** *The police must be able to react swiftly in an emergency.* **| differently | accordingly** *His insensitive remarks hurt and she reacted accordingly.* **| automatically, instinctively, spontaneously | physically**

VERB + REACT **tend to | be slow to** *The industry has been slow to react to these breakthroughs in technology.* **| not know how to** *He did not know how to react to her sudden mood swings.*

PREP. **against** *Many young people react against traditional values.* **| by** *The government reacted by increasing taxation.* **| to** *The university reacted unfavourably to the proposals.* **| with** *Her family reacted with horror when she told them.*

reaction *noun*

1 **response**

ADJ. **extreme, sharp, strong, violent | favourable, positive | adverse, hostile, negative | mixed** *The speech got a mixed reaction.* **| angry | first, immediate, initial | delayed** *Her outburst was a delayed reaction to an unpleasant letter she'd received that morning.* **| chain** *The change of plan set off a chain reaction of confusion.* **| mixed | common, general, public | natural, normal | automatic, gut, instinctive, knee-jerk, spontaneous** *The incident calls for a measured response, avoiding knee-jerk reactions.* **| nervous | emotional | critical** *The critical reaction to his first novel has been positive.*

VERB + REACTION **get, have, meet with** *The play met with a mixed reaction from the critics.* **| bring, cause, produce, provoke, set off, spark (off), trigger (off)** *She was surprised at the reaction brought by the mention of his* **delayed** *a delayed reaction to the drugs* **| allergic**

VERB + REACTION **have, suffer** *She had a very bad allergic reaction to the peanuts.* **| cause, produce**

PREP. **~ to** *A small minority of patients suffer an adverse reaction to the treatment. name.* **| gauge, judge (by/from)** *He eyed her cautiously, trying to gauge her reaction. Judging by her reaction, she liked the present.*

PREP. **in ~ to** *There's been a drop in ticket sales in reaction to the review.* **| ~ against** *Her rebellious attitude is just a reaction against her strict upbringing.* **| ~ to** *the public reaction to the news*

2 **(usually reactions) ability to react quickly**

ADJ. **fast, good, lightning, quick | slow, sluggish**

VERB + REACTION **have** *She has very quick reactions.* **| speed up | slow down** *Alcohol has the effect of slowing down your reactions.*

REACTION + NOUN **time** *Your reaction time increases when you are tired.*

3 chemical reaction

ADJ. **chain | chemical, nuclear**

VERB + REACTION **cause, produce, start, trigger | stop | speed up | slow down**

REACTION + VERB **occur, take place**

PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *the energy given out during the reaction* **| ~ between** *studying the reactions between certain gases* **| ~ with** *the fuel's chemical reaction with the surrounding water*

4 allergy

ADJ. **adverse, bad | mild, slight |**

reactionary *adj*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | politically**

reactor *noun*

ADJ. **nuclear | fast, fast-breeder, fission, fusion, gas-cooled, pressurized-water, thermal**

VERB + REACTOR **build | operate, run | close (down), decommission, shut down**

REACTOR + VERB **operate, run**

REACTOR + NOUN **building, site | fuel | core | accident, safety, shut-down**

read *noun*

1 **activity of reading**

ADJ. **good | quiet**

VERB + READ **have** *I had a good read of the paper before they arrived.*

2 **writer/book**

ADJ. **compelling, good, great, interesting**

VERB + READ **be, make** *The story made an interesting read.*

read *verb*

ADV. **aloud** *listening to children reading aloud* **| silently | carefully, with interest** *He read her letter with interest.* **| avidly, voraciously** *She read avidly from an early age?books, magazines, anything.* **| out** *Shall I read this out to you?*

VERB + READ **be able to, can/could** *Most children can read by the age of seven.* **| learn (how) to | teach sb (how) to**

PREP. **about** *Hogan had read about her death in the papers.* **| from** *She read from the letter.* **| of** *I had read of the case in the local newspaper.* **| through** *I read through the first paragraph again.* **| to** *I read a story to my son every night.*

PHRASES **read and write** *She had great difficulty learning to read and write.*

readable *adj.*

1 enjoyable to read

VERBS **be | make sth**

ADV. **eminently, extremely, highly, immensely, very** *a stimulating and highly readable account* **| quite**

2 able to be read

VERBS **be**

ADV. **clearly, easily** *The figures should be clearly readable. printed in large, easily readable type*

PHRASES **machine readable**

reader *noun*

ADJ. **careful, competent, fast, fluent, good | alert, attentive** *Alert readers may have noticed the misprint in last week's column.* **| discerning, sophisticated | poor, slow | avid, great, voracious | omnivorous | regular** *regular readers of this magazine* **| casual | adult, female, male, women, young | specialist | general, non-specialist** *a book that will be too difficult for the general reader* **| Daily Express, Guardian, etc. | tabloid**

PREP. **~ of** *a voracious reader of science fiction*

readiness *noun*

ADJ. **greater | constant | combat** *The troops were in a state of combat readiness.*

VERB + READINESS **declare, express, indicate, show, signal** *Hungary has indicated its readiness to sign the treaty.* | **hold sb/sth in** *He held his gun in readiness.*

PREP. **in ~ (for)** *service the car in readiness for the journey* | **~ for** *to express a readiness for change*

PHRASES **a state of readiness**

reading *noun*

1 **sth you can read**

ADJ. **compelling, compulsive, fascinating, good, interesting | depressing, disturbing | heavy, serious | light | compulsory, essential, required | recommended, suggested | background, introductory | further | bedtime, holiday** *some light holiday reading*

VERB + READING **be, make (for)** *Their story makes compulsive reading.*

READING + NOUN **list**

2 **activity of reading**

ADJ. **extensive** *After extensive reading on the subject she set to work on an article.* **| careful, close, critical** *A close reading of the text reveals several contradictions.* **| serious | map** *My map-reading skills are not the best.*

VERB + READING **do, get down to** *I haven't had time to do much reading lately. In the holidays I'll get down to some serious reading.*

READING + NOUN **material, matter | ability, age, knowledge, skills** *He has a reading age of eight. She has a good reading knowledge of Russian.* **| glasses, light, room**

PREP. **~ about/on** *His reading about Ruskin led him to the works of Turner.*

3 **reading in public**

ADJ. **public | Bible, poetry**

VERB + READING **give** *Dickens gave many public readings from his works.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *We met at a reading of his poetry.* **| ~ from/of** *readings from the Koran*

4 **figure/measurement shown on an instrument**

ADJ. **high, low | zero | normal | accurate, correct | false | meter, thermometer**

VERB + READING **get, obtain, take | give** *The dials were giving higher readings than we had expected.*

ready *adj.*

1 **prepared**

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem | get** *We were getting ready to go out.* **| get sb** *trying to get the children ready to leave* **| consider sb, declare sb, deem sb, judge sb** *She was concerned to protect the children from the truth until she judged them ready to hear it.*

ADV. **all** *I was all ready to leave when the phone rang.* **| not quite** *He didn't feel quite ready for marriage.* **| (just) about, almost, nearly, practically** *I think we're just about ready to start.* **| always, ever | not yet | emotionally** *Though Paul had wanted a child, he wasn't emotionally ready for it.*

PREP. **for** *I feel ready for anything!* **| with** *He's always ready with a quick answer.*

2 **prepared and available**

VERBS **be, stand** *The suitcases were standing ready by the front door.* **| have sth, hold sth, keep sth, leave sth** *Please have your tickets ready for inspection. holding his gun ready I've left everything ready in the kitchen.* **| get sth, make sth** *I'll get all the boxes ready. The warships were soon made ready.* **| consider sth, declare sth, deem sth, judge sth** *The plane was refuelled and declared ready for service again.*

PREP. **for** *The cases are ready for delivery.*

3 **willing**

VERBS **appear, be, seem | remain**

ADV. **more than, only too, very** *Connors was more than ready to oblige. She was only too ready to believe the worst of him.* **| always, ever | apparently | clearly**

PHRASES **ready and willing** *always ready and willing to help*

real *adj.*

1 **serious**

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **all too, very** *Her suffering was all too real. the very real danger of war*

2 **genuine**

VERBS **be, look, seem**

ADV. **enough** *The pearls looked real enough.*

realism *noun*

ADJ. **political | gritty, stark** *the stark realism of Loach's films*

QUANT. **degree | element, note** *I hate to interject a note of realism, but we don't have any money to do any of this.*

VERB + REALISM **add, bring, lend** *Clever lighting and sound effects brought greater realism to the play.* **| achieve** *Children can get frustrated when they are unable to achieve realism in their drawings.*

PREP. **~ about** *the band's realism about their chances of success*

PHRASES **a sense of realism**

realistic *adj.*

1 showing acceptance of the facts of a situation

VERBS **be, seem | keep sth** *Try to keep your ambitions realistic.*

ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, quite, reasonably | enough, sufficiently** *He was realistic enough to know this success could not last.*

PREP. **about** *My friends were quite realistic about my problems.* **| in** *being very realistic in their expectations*

2 showing things as they really are

VERBS **be, look, sound | become | make sth** *You could make the hands a little more realistic.*

ADV. **extremely, truly, very | fairly, quite | grimly** *his grimly realistic first novel about drug addicts*

reality *noun*

ADJ. **awful, bitter, brutal, cold, grim, hard, harsh, painful, sad, stark** *We were faced with the awful reality of having nowhere to live.* **| complex | underlying** *He has no illusions about the underlying reality of army life.* **| objective, practical** *the practical realities of running a children's home* **| daily, everyday | external** *Painters at the time were largely concerned with reproducing external reality.* **| commercial, economic, historical, physical, political, psychological, social** *the harsh economic realities of life as a student* **| virtual** *the use of virtual reality in computer games*

VERB + REALITY **become** *One day her dream will become a reality.* **| make sth** *It's our task to make the proposals a reality.* **| accept, confront (sb with), face (up to), get a grip on, grasp, wake up to** *She will have to face reality sooner or later. I don't think you have quite grasped the realities of our situation!* **| bear little/no, etc. relation/resemblance to, be cut off/divorced/removed from, be out of touch with, have little/not have much to do with** *They are out of touch with the realities of modern warfare. Most people's ideas of the disease do not have much to do with the reality.* **| escape from | deny, ignore | bring sb back to, come/get back to, return to** *He called for the committee to stop dreaming and return to reality.* **| distort** *Most comedy relies on distorting reality.* **| protect/shelter/shield sb from** *Her parents always tried to shield her from the realities of the world.* **| reflect**

PREP. **in ~** *The media portray her as happy and successful, but in reality she has a difficult life.*

PHRASES **a grasp of reality** *He has a rather tenuous grasp of reality.* **| a perception/sense of reality**

realization *noun*

ADJ. **full | dawning, growing | gradual | sudden | awful, terrible**

VERB + REALIZATION **come to** *He came to the realization that he would never make a good teacher.*

REALIZATION + VERB **come (to sb), dawn (on sb), hit sb** *The realization that the murderer must have been a close friend came as a shock. We saw the terrible realization of what she'd done dawn on her face.*

realize *verb*

ADV. **fully | dimly** *She dimly realized that she was trembling.* **| suddenly | quickly, soon | now | for the first time** *I realized for the first time how difficult this would be.* **| at first** *The situation was more complicated than they had at first realized.* **| at last, belatedly, eventually, finally | never** *I never realized how much it meant to you.*

VERB + REALIZE **begin to, come to | make sb** *The experience made me realize that people did care.* **| seem to** *You don't seem to realize the seriousness of the situation.* **| fail to | be important to**

PHRASES **without realizing (sth)** *We are constantly using historic buildings, without even realizing it.*

realm *noun*

1 **area of activity/interest/knowledge**

ADJ. **whole** *the whole realm of human intellect* | **new** | **international** | **public** | **domestic, private** | **political, social, spiritual**

VERB + REALM **be/lie in, belong in/to** | **open up** *The research has opened up new realms for investigation.* | **enter, move into** | **descend into/to** (*disapproving*) *Most readers are likely to lose interest when he descends into the realms of* (= starts discussing) *rhetorical terminology.* | **move from/out of** *The euro has moved from the realms of theory into reality.*

PREP. **beyond/out of/outside the ~ of** *His ambitions are way beyond the realms of possibility.* | **in/within the ~ of** *The idea belongs in the realm of science fiction.*

PHRASES **the realms of fantasy/possibility**

2 **country ruled by a king/queen**

VERB + REALM **defend** *They fought to defend the realm.*

PREP. **beyond/outside the ~** *wealth acquired outside the realm* | **in/within the ~** *peace within the realm* | **throughout the ~** *There was rejoicing throughout the realm.*

PHRASES **a part of the realm, the defence of the realm** *Royal taxation usually had to be for the defence of the realm.*

reappraisal *noun*

ADJ. **fundamental, major, radical | complete | constant | careful | critical** *a critical reappraisal of existing ideas and social institutions*

VERB + REAPPRAISAL **cause, lead to** *Her theory is that disillusionment with employment leads to reappraisal of career goals.* **| undertake** *They have undertaken a reappraisal of pupils' needs.*

rear *noun*

VERB + REAR **bring up** *Three drummers brought up the rear* (= were last in the parade). **| attack (sb/sth) from**

PREP. **at the ~** *The socket for the printer cable is located at the rear of the computer.* **| from the ~, in the ~** *The radio is loudest in the rear of the car.* **| to/towards the ~** *A high gate blocks the only entrance to the rear.*

rear *verb*

ADV. **intensively** *intensively reared beef cattle* **| naturally** *naturally reared pork and beef* **| successfully**

reason *noun*

1 **cause/motive/justification; explanation of sth**

ADJ. **cogent, good, sound, strong | compelling, convincing | plausible | adequate, sufficient | bona fide, legitimate, valid | wrong** *He married her for all the wrong reasons.* | **opposite** *Tom's problem was that he lacked confidence; Ed failed for precisely the opposite reason.* | **important | special | chief, main, major, primary, principal | only, simple, sole** *The only reason I didn't become a professional golfer was because of my family commitments. I was never good at playing the trumpet for the simple reason that I never practised.* | **real, underlying** *She did not tell him the real reason for her change of heart. The underlying reasons for these differences will be explored in depth in the next chapter.* | **very** *There is an assumption that a state will protect its citizens. That is the very reason for the existence of states.* | **apparent, particular** *He was attacked for no apparent reason.* | **no earthly, (no) possible** *Surely there is no earthly reason why you wouldn't want to come with us?* | **clear, obvious** *The reasons for her decision soon became clear.* | **unclear | logical | understandable | justifiable | inexplicable, unexplained, unknown** *For some unexplained reason the pilot jettisoned all his fuel shortly after take-off.* | **unspecified | unconnected** *dismissal for reasons unconnected with redundancy* | **personal | sentimental | selfish | professional | commercial, economic, financial, legal, political, social, technical | practical, pragmatic | security | health | humanitarian**

VERB + REASON **be aware of, see** *We see no reason why this band shouldn't be a huge success.* | **have** *I don't know why he did that, but I'm sure he had his reasons. I have no reason to believe that she was lying to me.* | **cite, give (sb/sth), set out, state** *Give me one good reason why I should help you. In the letter she carefully set out her reasons for leaving.* | **cite sth as, give sth as | suggest | explain | understand | uncover**

PREP. **by ~ of** *(formal) persons in need of care by reason of* (= because of) *old age* | **for a/the ~** *procedures carried out for reasons of national security* | **for ~ of** *(formal) For reasons of security, you are requested to keep your luggage with you at all times.* | **with/without ~** *They complained about the food, and with good reason* (= rightly). | **~ against** *There are obvious reasons against such a move.* | **~ behind** *We are trying to uncover the reasons behind her decision.* | **~ for** *They didn't give any reason for the delay.*

PHRASES **all the more reason** *If he's unwell, that's all the more reason to go and see him.* | **all sorts of reasons** *People buy things for all sorts of reasons.* | **any/every/little/no/one/some reason** *I know you're angry with me, and you have every reason* (= very good reasons) *to be.* | **for reasons best known to yourself** *For reasons best known to herself she has turned down the offer.* | **for whatever reason** *people who, for whatever reason, are unable to support themselves* | **a number/variety of reasons, rhyme or reason** *There's no rhyme or reason* (= logic) *to the new opening hours.*

2 **power to think logically; what is possible/right**

ADJ. **human**

VERB + REASON **lose** *He seems to have lost all sense and reason.* | **be open to, listen to, see** *I tried to persuade her, but she just wouldn't listen to reason.*

PREP. **beyond ~** *He was beyond all reason.* | **within ~** *I'll lend you the money you need?within reason, of course!*

PHRASES **an appeal to reason** *The residents hope that an appeal to reason* (= asking the rioters to be reasonable) *will end the rioting.* | **it stands to reason** *It stands to reason* (= it is logical) *that she wouldn't want them to find out about her personal problems.* | **the voice of reason** *She was always the voice of reason, persuading him not to buy things they couldn't afford.*

reasonable *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound | consider sth, judge sth, regard sth as, think sth**

ADV. **eminently, extremely, very | entirely, perfectly, utterly** *The police apparently thought this explanation perfectly reasonable.* **| fairly, quite | enough** *Her request sounded reasonable enough to me.* **| apparently**

reasoning *noun*

ADJ. **careful, sound | false, faulty | underlying | abstract | practical | logical | deductive, inductive | judicial, legal, moral, scientific, theological | human**

QUANT. **piece** *a rather confused piece of reasoning*

VERB + REASONING **adopt, apply, employ, use** *the reasoning adopted by the court* **| follow, understand** *I can't quite follow your reasoning.* **| accept | reject | challenge | explain**

REASONING + VERB **apply** *The same reasoning applies to the current situation.* **| lead sb/sth to sth** *I cannot accept the reasoning that led the trial court to its decision.*

REASONING + NOUN **process | ability**

PREP. **in your ~** *the circularity in their reasoning* **| ~ about** *reasoning about art* **| ~ behind** *Many people challenged the reasoning behind the proposal.*

PHRASES **a flaw in your reasoning, a form/kind/line of reasoning** *The implication of this line reasoning is that globalization of capital is destructive.* **| power of reasoning** *She seemed to have lost her powers of reasoning.*

reassurance *noun*

ADJ. **great | further | constant, continual | calm** *Continual calm reassurance should be given.*

VERB + REASSURANCE **have** *We have had some reassurances from the council that the building will be saved.* **| need, want | look for, seek** *He glanced at her, seeking reassurance.* **| draw, find, gain, receive** *He drew reassurance from the enthusiastic applause. She found reassurance in the high attendance at her lectures.* **| bring (sb), give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *A system of beliefs can bring you reassurance at times of stress.*

PREP. **despite ~** *She kept looking in the mirror despite my constant reassurances that her hair looked fine.* **| for ~** *He held onto her hand for reassurance.* **| in ~** *I patted her shoulder in reassurance.* **| ~ about/on** *The ministry tried to offer reassurance on the safety of eating beef.* **| ~ from** *reassurances from the researchers about their work*

reassure *verb*

ADV. **constantly** *He was constantly reassuring himself that he had acted for the best.* **| quickly**

VERB + REASSURE **be able to, can | seek to, try to | hasten to | do little to, do nothing to | do much to** *The report will do much to reassure parents of children at the school.*

PREP. **about** *trying to reassure the public about the safety of public transport* **| of** *She needed to be reassured of his love for her.* **| with** *He reassured her with a pat on the arm.*

PHRASES **feel reassured** *Kate nodded, but she didn't feel reassured.* **| need reassuring** *Often parents simply need reassuring that their children are happy at school.*

reassuring *adj.*

VERBS **be | find sth**

ADV. **extremely, immensely, very | hardly** *Her comment?‘You can always try again if you fail’?was hardly reassuring.* **| faintly, quite, vaguely | oddly | somehow**

rebate *noun*

ADJ. **generous, substantial | maximum | rate, rent, tax** *She's claiming a 100% tax rebate.*

VERB + REBATE **be eligible for, be entitled to** *People on low incomes are entitled to a rebate of up to 80%.* **| apply for, claim | get, receive | give sb, grant sb | introduce | scrap**

REBATE + NOUN **scheme, system**

PREP. **~ on** *rebates on the new council tax*

PHRASES **a system of rebates**

rebel *noun*

ADJ. **anti-government | left-wing, right-wing | US-backed, etc. | former | armed**

QUANT. **band, group**

VERB + REBEL **back, help, support** *They sent in troops to back the rebels.* **| repel | defeat | join | lead**

REBEL + VERB **be based …** *The rebels were based in camps along the border.* **| advance | attack sth | capture sth, gain/regain/seize/take control (of sth)** *The rebels seized control of the national radio headquarters.*

REBEL + NOUN **faction, group, movement | army, fighters, force/forces, soldiers, troops, officers | commander, leader | control** *The southern parts of the country had fallen into rebel control.* **| base, camp, position, stronghold | activity, advance, assault, attack, invasion | cause, movement** *new recruits to the rebel cause*

PREP. **against the ~** *military operations against the rebels* **| ~ against** *a group of rebels against the emperor*

PHRASES **a bit/something of a rebel** *(figurative) He's a bit of a rebel* (= he doesn't like to obey rules).

rebellion *noun*

1 **attempt to change the government**

ADJ. **full-scale, major | minor, small | general, open | armed | military, peasant, popular**

VERB + REBELLION **rise (up) in** *Simon de Montfort rose in rebellion in 1258.* **| launch, raise** *(literary)*, **stage** *They staged a rebellion against British rule in Ireland.* **| set off, spark off** *The re-introduction of conscription sparked off a major rebellion.* **| foment, provoke (sb/sth to)** *attempts to foment rebellion in the Cabinet The new taxes provoked the population to open rebellion.* **| threaten** *The opposition party members threatened rebellion.* **| join | take part in | lead | support | crush, put down, quell, suppress**

REBELLION + VERB **occur** *Peasant rebellions occurred throughout the 16th century.* **| begin, break out** *Rebellion broke out in the Rhineland.* **| fail**

PREP. **in ~** *They are in rebellion against the conservative hierarchy of the Church.* **| ~ against** *a rebellion against the new king* **| ~ over** *a rebellion over an increase in VAT*

2 **opposition to authority**

ADJ. **adolescent, teenage, youthful**

REBELLION + VERB **stir** *The band refused to go on stage and rebellion began to stir in the audience.*

PREP. **~ against** *rebellion against their parents*

PHRASES **an act of rebellion, a form of rebellion**

rebuff *noun*

ADJ. **harsh, sharp, stinging | humiliating**

VERB + REBUFF **meet (sth) with, receive, suffer** *Her efforts were met with a sharp rebuff.* **| risk** *My father was too proud to risk a rebuff, so he simply did not ask her.* **| expect** *He avoided speaking to her, expecting a rebuff.* **| accept | ignore**

PREP. **(in) a ~ to** *In a rebuff to the president, Congress voted against the bill.* **| ~ from** *She suffered a rebuff from her manager when she raised the matter.*

rebuild *verb*

ADV. **completely, entirely, totally** *The hall had to be completely rebuilt after the fire.* **| virtually | extensively, largely, substantially | partly | painstakingly**

VERB + REBUILD **begin to, start to** *beginning to rebuild her life* **| try to | help (to)** *The international community must step in to help rebuild the country.*

PHRASES **newly/recently rebuilt, rebuild sth from scratch** *Much of the damaged vehicle had to be rebuilt from scratch.*

rebuke *noun*

ADJ. **sharp, stern, stinging | gentle, mild | silent | implied | public**

VERB + REBUKE **receive | draw, earn (sb)** *Even one minute's lateness would earn a stern rebuke.* **| accept** *He meekly accepted the rebuke.* **| administer** *If the general found his authority questioned he invariably administered a sharp rebuke.*

PREP. **~ for, ~ from** *They received a public rebuke from the prime minister for their handling of the matter.* **| ~ to** *He hit back with a stinging rebuke to his critics.*

rebuke *verb*

ADV. **sharply | gently | publicly**

PREP. **for** *She rebuked herself sharply for her stupidity.*

recall *verb*

ADV. **clearly, distinctly, vividly, well** *I well recall walking the five miles to school every morning.* **| dimly, vaguely | correctly** *If I recall correctly, he lives in Luton.* **| easily** *She could easily recall the smell of the orange groves.* **| suddenly | fondly | still** *Becky could still recall that first meeting clearly.*

VERB + RECALL **seem to** *I seem to recall that she said she was going away.* **| be able to, can/could (barely), can't/couldn't (quite) | try to**

recede *verb*

ADV. **a bit, a little, slightly** *His fine dark hair was receding a little.* **| further | gradually, slowly** *The pain was gradually receding.* **| fast, rapidly** *The January flood waters receded as fast as they had risen.*

PREP. **from** *These worries now receded from his mind.*

PHRASES **recede into the background/distance** *His footsteps receded into the distance.*

receipt *noun*

1 **piece of paper showing what was paid for**

ADJ. **original**

VERB + RECEIPT **ask (sb) for | get, obtain | receive | have** *Could I have a receipt for that please?* **| make out, write (out)** *a receipt made out for £5* **| sign | give sb, issue | keep** *You can claim a refund provided you keep the receipt.* **| produce** *The original receipt must be produced in order to reclaim your goods.*

RECEIPT + NOUN **book**

PREP. **~ for** *She issued a receipt for the goods.*

2 **act of receiving sth**

VERB + RECEIPT **acknowledge** *I would be grateful if you would acknowledge receipt of this letter.*

PREP. **in ~ of** *people in receipt of housing benefit* **| on/upon ~ of** *The goods will be sent on receipt of your cheque.*

PHRASES **the date for receipt** *The closing date for receipt of your application is July 14.* **| within … days of receipt** *Items should be paid for within 14 days of receipt.*

3 **receipts: money received**

ADJ. **total** *Cash income is calculated by subtracting total trading income from total receipts.* **| net | capital | income, revenue | tax | cash | foreign currency/exchange | dollar, euro, etc. | box-office, gate, match**

VERB + RECEIPT **receive**

RECEIPT + VERB **rise** *Customs and excise receipts rose 2.5 per cent.* **| reach sth** *Cash receipts reached £70 million.* **| fall, slump** *Match receipts slumped by £89,000 compared to last season.*

PREP. **~ from** *receipts from land sales*

PHRASES **receipts and payments**

receive *verb*

1 get/accept sth

ADV. **gratefully** *All donations will be gratefully received.*

VERB + RECEIVE **be entitled to** *You might be entitled to receive housing benefit.* | **expect to** *You can expect to receive compensation for all direct expenses arising out of the accident.*

PREP. **from** *I received a parcel from my mother.*

2 react to sth in a particular way

ADV. **well** *The play was very well received.* | **badly** *The speech was badly received by republican leaders.*

PREP. **with** *The news was received with dismay.*

receiver *noun*

1 **part of a telephone**

ADJ. **phone, telephone**

VERB + RECEIVER **lift, pick up** *She took a deep breath and lifted the receiver off its hook.* | **hold** | **put back/down, replace** | **snatch up** | **bang down, slam down** *He slammed the receiver down and burst into tears.* | **drop**

RECEIVER + VERB **dangle** *The receiver was dangling from the payphone.*

PREP. **over the ~** *'It's your mother on the phone again!', said John with his hand over the receiver.*

PHRASES **hold/put the receiver to your ear** *She picked up the receiver and put it to her ear.*

2 **piece of radio/television equipment**

ADJ. **portable** | **radio, satellite, television**

RECEIVER + NOUN **unit** *To change channel, select the desired number on the receiver unit.*

3 **person in charge of a bankrupt company**

ADJ. **official** | **administrative**

VERB + RECEIVER **appoint, appoint sb (as)** | **call in** *They had to lay off 200 staff and call in the receivers.*

PHRASES **in the hands of the receiver** *The company remained in the hands* (= under the control) *of the receiver.*

recent *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very | comparatively, fairly, quite, relatively** *a relatively recent development*

reception *noun*

1 **area in a building**

VERB + RECEPTION **wait (for sb) in** *Please wait for me downstairs in reception.* | **leave sth at/with** *I've left the keys at reception.* | **report to** *All delegates should report to reception on arrival.* | **phone, ring**

RECEPTION + NOUN **area** | **counter, desk** | **hall** | **staff**

PREP. **at (the) ~** *The man at reception says there's a call for you.* | **in ~** *The documents are in reception.* | **on ~** *I've been on reception* (= working at the reception desk) *the whole morning.*

2 **formal party**

ADJ. **big, large** | **intimate, small** | **formal** | **informal** | **official** | **special** | **evening** | **civic, diplomatic, press, wedding** | **buffet, champagne, sherry, wine**

VERB + RECEPTION **attend** | **give, have, hold, host** *Are you having a big reception after the wedding?* | **organize** | **invite sb to** *Friends and family are invited to a reception after the ceremony.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *We met at a reception.* | **~ for** *a reception for the Japanese trade delegation*

3 **type of welcome given to sb/sth**

ADJ. **enthusiastic, favourable, friendly, good, great, marvellous, positive, rapturous, rousing, sympathetic, warm** | **lukewarm, mixed** | **bad, chilly, cool, frosty, hostile** | **critical** *critical reception to a movie* | **public**

VERB + RECEPTION **enjoy, get, have, meet (with), receive** *The returning soldiers enjoyed a rousing reception. The scheme has had a somewhat mixed reception from local people.* | **expect** *The managers did not expect a sympathetic reception from the striking workers.* | **give sb/sth** *She was given a rapturous reception by the crowd.*

RECEPTION + NOUN **party** *A reception party of soldiers was there to greet the visiting head of state.* | **centre** *a reception centre for children who have run away from home*

PREP. **~ by** *the book's reception by reviewers* | **~ from** *a cool reception from the crowd* | **~ into** *reception into the monastic order* | **~ to** *the positive reception to the Chancellor's speech*

4 **quality of radio/television signals**

ADJ. **good, strong** *Television reception is very good in this area.* | **bad, poor, weak** | **radio, television**

recess *noun*

1 **period when a parliament, etc. does not meet**

ADJ. **Christmas, summer, Whitsun | parliamentary**

VERB + RECESS **go into, rise for** *(formal)*, **take** *Parliament is taking the Christmas recess a little early this year.* **| return from**

PREP. **in ~** *The decision cannot be made while the council is in recess.*

2 **part of a wall, set back from the rest of the wall**

ADJ. **deep | shallow | dark | window**

PREP. **in/inside** *to fit a blind inside a window recess*

3 **(usually recesses) part furthest from the light**

ADJ. **dark, deep, dim** *He stared into the dark recesses of the room.* **| far, inner | hidden**

VERB + RECESS **lurk in** *(figurative) fears lurking deep in the recesses of our minds* **| push sth into/to** *(figurative) I had continually pushed my doubts to the darker recesses of my mind.*

PREP. **in/within the ~ of** *The statue was in the inner recesses of the temple.*

PHRASES **the recesses of your mind** *(figurative)*

recession *noun*

ADJ. **bad, damaging, debilitating, deep, major, massive, painful, severe, sharp, steep** *It was the worst recession since the war.* | **mild** | **deepening** | **long, prolonged** | **short, short-lived** | **continuing** | **global, international, widespread, world, worldwide** | **economic, industrial, retail**

VERB + RECESSION **cause** | **go into, move into, plunge (sth) into, sink into, slip into** *A rise in interest rates plunged Britain deeper into recession.* | **beat, combat** | **climb out of, come out of, emerge from, get (sth) out of, lead sth out of, move out of, pull (sth) out of** *active policies to pull the country out of recession* | **end** | **suffer from** | **escape (from)** | **ride out, survive** *As dozens of pubs go out of business, others are riding out the recession.* | **worsen**

RECESSION + VERB **loom** *With a recession looming, consumers are spending less.* | **hit sth** *The country has been hit by recession.* | **bottom out** (= reach the lowest level)

PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *The economy is in deep recession.*

PHRASES **the depth of the recession, the effects/impact of the recession, in the depths of a recession, in times of recession, recovery from (the) recession, a way out of the recession** > Special page at BUSINESS

recipe *noun*

ADJ. **good | perfect | sure** *(figurative) Turning away under a strong attack is a sure recipe for defeat.* **| delicious, mouth-watering, tasty | favourite | basic** *The basic recipe can be adapted by adding grated lemon.* **| easy, simple | complicated | new | authentic, classic, old, original, traditional** *The ales are brewed to an original Yorkshire recipe.* **| original** *Was there rum in the original recipe?* **| secret, special | family | vegetarian | Italian, Mexican, etc. | cake, sauce, etc.**

VERB + RECIPE **have** *I've got a good recipe for fudge.* **| cook, make** *This recipe can also be made with ricotta cheese.* **| try (out)** *I enjoy trying out new recipes.* **| read | follow, stick to, use** *If you want the dish to turn out right you should follow the recipe.* **| adapt | devise** *All the recipes in the book have been devised by our team of experts.* **| discover, find** *He is credited with having discovered the first recipe for gin back in the 1600s.*

RECIPE + VERB **call for sth, use sth** *She always said that if a recipe calls for cream you shouldn't use yogurt instead.* **| contain sth** *The recipe contains lots of fat.* **| make sth, serve sb** *This recipe makes about thirty biscuits. This recipe serves four people.*

RECIPE + NOUN **book, card, leaflet | idea** *a magazine filled with recipe ideas*

PREP. **to a ~** *The dish is made to a traditional Italian recipe.* **| ~ for** *a recipe for leek soup (figurative) To live every day to the full is a recipe for happiness.*

PHRASES **a recipe for disaster/success**

recipient *noun*

ADJ. **largest | main, major | intended** *She was not the intended recipient of the reward.* **| ultimate** *the ultimate recipient of the money* **| suitable** *matching a donor kidney with the most suitable recipient* **| passive** *We are passive recipients of information from the world around us.* **| grateful** (ironic) *Dad was always the grateful recipient of her snobbery.* **| unwilling | lucky** *Our 1,000th member will be the lucky recipient of a mystery gift.*

recital *noun*

ADJ. **brief, short | solo | lunchtime | organ, piano, etc. | poetry, song**

VERB + RECITAL **give, play | attend, go to | listen to**

PREP. **~ by** *a recital by the Grieg Trio*

recognition *noun*

1 **remembering/identifying sb/sth**

ADJ. **immediate, instant | early** *the early recognition of a disease* **| dawning | character, face, handwriting, speech, text** *(computing)* **| automatic, computer** *the automatic recognition of handwriting by computer*

QUANT. **flicker, sign** *She stared directly at the witness but he did not show a flicker of recognition* (= he did not show that he recognized her).

VERB + RECOGNITION **show | avoid** *He pulled the hood of his cloak over his head to avoid recognition.* **| allow** *The monitoring system allows recognition of pollution hot spots.*

RECOGNITION + VERB **dawn** *Recognition slowly dawned, 'Oh, it's you Mrs Foster!'*

RECOGNITION + NOUN **software, system**

PREP. **beyond (all) ~** *(figurative) Many of those interviewed said their job had changed beyond recognition* (= changed completely) *over the past five years.* **| out of (all) ~** *(figurative) The equipment and methods of production have improved out of all recognition* (= greatly improved). **| without ~** *He looked up, glanced at them without recognition, and went on his way.*

PHRASES **recognition in sb's eyes** *There was no recognition in his eyes* (= he did not look as if he recognized her).

2 **accepting that sth exists/is true; public praise/reward**

ADJ. **full | appropriate, due, proper | insufficient | greater, growing, increasing** *There needs to be a greater recognition of corporate crime as a social problem.* **| clear, explicit, overt | implicit | apparent | grudging | positive | equal** *equal recognition for the work women do* **| mutual | immediate, instant | belated** *The award is being made in belated recognition of her services to the industry.* **| individual, personal** *personal recognition for your achievements* **| general, universal, wide, widespread** *The young talent at the club deserves wider recognition.* **| international, national, worldwide | public, social | professional | diplomatic | formal, legal, legislative, official | de facto**

Twelve states have accorded de facto recognition to the new regime. **| government**

VERB + RECOGNITION **achieve, earn sb, gain, get, obtain, receive, win** *His recitals have earned him recognition as a talented performer.* **| deserve | require** *Both of these perspectives are valid and require recognition.* **| imply** *They claim that signature of the peace accord did not imply recognition of the state's sovereignty.* **| ask for, call for, demand, request, seek | apply for | qualify for** *to qualify for UN recognition as an International Biosphere Reserve* **| accord sb/sth, give sb/sth, grant sb/sth | refuse sb/sth**

RECOGNITION + VERB **come** *Official recognition of the change came fast.*

PREP. **in ~ of** *an award in recognition of his outstanding work* **| without ~** *She has worked actively but without recognition.* **| ~ as** *a country that has long sought recognition as a major power* **| ~ by/from** *recognition by his superiors of the service he had performed* **| ~ for** *They received recognition for their 20-year commitment to safety at sea.*

PHRASES **a lack of recognition, recognition of the importance of sth, recognition of the need for sth, a struggle for recognition**

recognizable *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **clearly, easily, immediately, instantly, quite, readily** *John's car was easily recognizable in the car park. a building that was immediately recognizable as a prison* **| barely, hardly, scarcely**

PREP. **as** *a language barely recognizable as English* **| by** *recognizable by their distinctive uniforms* **| to** *The scheme's benefits were recognizable to all interest groups.*

recognize *verb*

1 know sb/sth again

ADV. **immediately, instantly** *I immediately recognized the building.* | **easily** *This is the only species of flamingo in the region, easily recognized by its pink plumage.* | **barely, hardly** *Stella hardly recognized her brother.*

VERB + RECOGNIZE **learn to** *You learn to recognize the calls of different birds.* | **be easy to**

PREP. **as** *He recognized the man as one of the police officers.* | **by** *I recognized her by her red hair.* | **from** *I recognized them from a television show.*

2 understand sth

ADV. **fully** *They fully recognize the need to proceed carefully.* | **belatedly, finally** *The government has belatedly recognized the danger to health of passive smoking.*

VERB + RECOGNIZE **must** | **be important to** | **begin to** | **be slow to** *The company had been slow to recognize the opportunities available to it.* | **fail to**

PREP. **as** *This issue must be recognized as a priority for the next administration.*

PHRASES **be generally/universally/widely recognized, be increasingly recognized** *The strength of this argument is being increasingly recognized.* | **failure to recognize sth**

3 accept sth officially

ADV. **clearly** *The law clearly recognizes that a company is separate from those who invest in it.* | **formally, officially** | **internationally, nationally** *The Medway estuary is recognized internationally as a conservation area.*

VERB + RECOGNIZE **agree to** | **refuse to**

PREP. **as** *All rivers should be officially recognized as public rights of way.*

PHRASES **be legally recognized** *A bill of exchange is a legally recognized document.* **|** **a refusal to recognize sth**

recoil *verb*

ADV. **a little, slightly | instinctively** *As he leaned towards her she instinctively recoiled.*

PREP. **at** *Howard recoiled a little at the sharpness in my voice.* **| from** *She felt him recoil from her, frightened.* **| in** *He recoiled in apparent disgust.*

recollection *noun*

ADJ. **clear, distinct, vivid | dim, faint, hazy, vague | earliest | sudden | painful | personal**

VERB + RECOLLECTION **have (no)** *I have only a vague recollection of sunshine and sand. I have absolutely no recollection of the incident.* **| bring back** *The place brought back painful recollections.* **| chuckle at/in, laugh at, smile at/in | shudder at**

PREP. **in ~** *She stared at him in sudden recollection.* **| ~ from** *recollections from Eliot's own life*

PHRASES **to the best of your recollection** *To the best of my recollection* (= if I remember correctly), *he was not there that day.*

recommend *verb*

1 **say that sb/sth is good**

ADV. **highly, thoroughly** *This book is highly recommended by teachers.* | **certainly, definitely** *I definitely recommend this film.* | **heartily** | **personally** *Consult a solicitor who is personally recommended to you.*

PREP. **for** *Who would you recommend for the job?* | **to** *I can recommend this book to anyone interested in food.*

PHRASES **sth has a lot/much to recommend it** *Your idea has much to recommend it.*

2 **advise sb to do sth**

ADV. **strongly** *I would strongly recommend that you get professional advice.* | **particularly, specifically**

recommendation *noun*

1 **official suggestion**

ADJ. **firm, strong | clear | unanimous | detailed | specific | broad, general, wide-ranging** *The committee put forward broad recommendations for the improvement of safety at sports grounds.* | **far-reaching | important | central, key, main, major, principal | positive | first, initial | final | further | draft | written | word-of-mouth | medical, official, practical | policy, safety**

QUANT. **list, series, set**

VERB + RECOMMENDATION **come up with, make, produce** *The council has produced a set of recommendations on ethics in health care.* | **give, offer, put forward, submit | publish | consider, discuss, review | agree with | disagree with | accept, adopt, approve, endorse** *The UN Security Council endorsed the recommendation submitted by the Secretary General.* | **reject | act on, carry out, follow, implement** *The government gave assurances that it would implement the recommendations in full.* | **enforce | support | oppose | ignore | be in accordance with, be in line with** *to develop a plan in line with the recommendations of national policy* | **base sth on** *The design of the breakwater was based on the recommendations of an engineering study.*

RECOMMENDATION + VERB **arise from sth, be based on sth, follow (from) sth, relate to sth** *a detailed set of recommendations following a comprehensive examination of the subject* | **aim at sth** *recommendations aimed at achieving a more equitable admissions policy*

PREP. **on/upon sb/sth's ~** *I had the operation on the recommendation of my doctor.* | **~ about/as to/concerning/on** *recommendations on how health and safety standards might be improved* | **~ by/from** *recommendations by the judges* | **~ for** *recommendations for improving the quality of service* | **~ in respect of** *recommendations in respect of bank officials* | **~ to** *the board's recommendations to the minister* | **~ with regard/respect to** *recommendations with regard to management procedures* > Special page at MEETING

2 **saying sb/sth is good/suitable**

ADJ. **glowing, high/highest | personal** *It's best to find a builder through personal* *recommendation.*

VERB + RECOMMENDATION **give sb/sth | get, receive | come on/with** *The new housekeeper came on the highest recommendation. The chef comes with her recommendation.* **| need no** *Swiss chocolates need no recommendation* (= their good reputation is enough to recommend them).

PREP. **at/on/upon sb's ~** *At the recommendation of a psychiatrist, the accused will remain under observation. We went to Corfu on your recommendation* (= because you recommended it).

PHRASES **a letter of recommendation**

recompense *noun*

ADJ. **adequate, sufficient | financial**

VERB + RECOMPENSE **have** *All struggles should have their recompense.* **| expect | receive | give (sth in), pay (sth in)** *Substantial damages were paid in recompense.*

PREP. **as/in ~** *She received a gift as recompense.* **| ~ for** *He was given £1,000 in recompense for his loss.* **| ~ from** *recompense from the government*

reconciliation *noun*

1 **ending a disagreement/conflict**

ADJ. **full | lasting | national, personal, political**

VERB + RECONCILIATION **seek** *He sought reconciliation with those he had stolen from.* **| attempt | achieve, bring about, effect, make, secure | promote, work for | call for** *The rebel leader called for reconciliation with the armed forces.*

RECONCILIATION + NOUN **agreement | talks**

PREP. **~ between** *They aimed to secure a lasting reconciliation between the two countries.* **| ~ with** *She attempted reconciliation with her estranged brother.*

PHRASES **an attempt at reconciliation, efforts at/towards reconciliation, a gesture of reconciliation** *In a bold gesture of reconciliation, the government released the rebel leader.* **| a mood/spirit of reconciliation, a policy of reconciliation**

reconnaissance *noun*

ADJ. **general | preliminary | aerial/air, maritime, military** *Spotter planes made a preliminary aerial reconnaissance of the island.*

VERB + RECONNAISSANCE **carry out, conduct, do, make**

RECONNAISSANCE + VERB **reveal sth** *Reconnaissance revealed not a single large ship.*

RECONNAISSANCE + NOUN **flight, mission, sortie | party, patrol, team, unit | aircraft, plane**

reconstruct *verb*

ADV. **completely | partially | painstakingly** *Every aspect of the original has been closely studied and painstakingly reconstructed.*

VERB + RECONSTRUCT **attempt to, try to | be possible to** *It is not possible to reconstruct the complete symphony from these manuscript sketches.*

PREP. **from** *Local historians have reconstructed from contemporary descriptions how the hall may have looked in 1300.*

PHRASES **an attempt to reconstruct sth**

reconstruction *noun*

ADJ. **fundamental, major | complete, total | large/large-scale, life-size** *a life-size reconstruction of a Viking longboat* **| dramatic** *a dramatic reconstruction of school life in the 1940s* **| national** *The country faces a huge task of national reconstruction following the war.* **| post-war | economic, historical, social**

VERB + RECONSTRUCTION **undertake** *A group of enthusiasts have undertaken the reconstruction of a steam locomotive.* **| stage** *The police have staged a reconstruction of the events leading up to the murder.*

RECONSTRUCTION + NOUN **period | work | plan, programme, scheme | cost** *reconstruction costs following the cyclone*

record *noun*

1 **account**

ADJ. **formal** *No formal record of the marriage now survives.* | **official, public** | **permanent** | **accurate, careful, exact** | **up-to-date** | **adequate, proper, reliable** | **inadequate** | **incomplete, sketchy** | **brief** | **complete, comprehensive, detailed, extensive, systematic** | **verbatim** | **authentic** | **daily** | **documentary, handwritten, written** | **photographic, pictorial** | **archival, historical** | **archaeological** *This period of barbarian rule is poorly represented in the archaeological record.* | **fossil, geological** | **administrative, departmental, financial, personnel** | **dental, health, medical**

VERB + RECORD **keep** *He has always kept an accurate record of his spending.* | **check, consult** *I checked the records but nobody of that name had worked here.* | **destroy** *Medical records should not be destroyed.* | **file** | **update** | **be on, go on** *She is on record as saying that she once took drugs. He is the latest public figure to go on (the) record about corruption in politics.*

RECORD + VERB **contain sth** *The records contain the bank details of all employees.* | **show sth** *The records showed that the building had not been inspected for ten years.* | **suggest sth** *Fossil records suggest that the region was covered in water until relatively recently.* | **exist, survive** *No record exists of a battle on this site.* | **go back** *The university records go back as far as the 13th century.*

PREP. **in the ~(s)** *The historic agreement is preserved in the university records.* | **off/on the ~** *Off the record, he told the interviewer what he thought of his colleagues.* | **~ of** *a record of achievement* | **~ on** *records on children's progress*

PHRASES **access to the records** *Under the law, every citizen has access to their official records.* | **put/set the record straight** *She called a press conference to set the record straight about her disappearance.*

2 **best result, highest level, etc.**

ADJ. **all-comers, club, course, national, Olympic, track, world** | **unbeaten, unbroken** | **long-standing** *Bob Beamon's long-standing record for the long jump was eventually broken.* | **all-time** | **speed**

VERB + RECORD **hold** *Who holds the 100 metre sprint record?* | **establish, set** *She has just set a new world record.* | **beat, break, shatter** *If she continues like this she could beat the record.* | **equal** *He has equalled the Olympic record.*

RECORD + VERB **stand** *His mile record stood for twelve years.* | **fall**

RECORD + NOUN **book/books** *Bubka rewrote the pole-vault record books during his career.* | **attempt** | **breaker, holder** | **high, number** *Unemployment has reached a record high* (= the highest level ever). *There was a record number of candidates for the post.*

PREP. **~ for** *These viewing figures are an all-time record for a single broadcast.* | **~ with** *Lewis established a new world record with a time of 9.86 seconds.*

PHRASES **in record time** *I got to work in record time.*

3 **sb's performance in a particular area**

ADJ. **past, track** | **distinguished, enviable, excellent, exceptional, exemplary, fine, formidable, good, impressive, magnificent, outstanding, proven, remarkable, unique, unparalleled, unrivalled** | **abysmal, appalling, atrocious, bad, dismal, mediocre, poor, sorry** | **unenviable** *He has an unenviable record of ill-health.* | **satisfactory** | **consistent** | **clean, unblemished** *Apart from a parking fine ten years before, she had an unblemished driving record.* | **academic, educational, school** | **military** | **attendance** *The teacher spoke to her about her poor attendance record.* | **economic, environmental, human-rights** *the government's economic record* | **disciplinary** | **criminal, police** | **accident, safety** *The airline's accident record makes it among the safest.*

VERB + RECORD **have, possess** | **keep, maintain** *The company has maintained an accident-free record since it started business.*

RECORD + VERB **show sth** *Her record shows that she is able to compete under great pressure.* | **compare with sth** *Our record compares favourably with that of any similar-sized company.* | **speak for itself** *When it comes to quality, our record speaks for itself.*

PREP. **~ among** *They have the worst human-rights record among member countries.* | **~ for** *He has an appalling record for dishonesty.* | **~ in** *The ideal candidate will have a proven track record in project management.* | **~ on** *the government's abysmal record on crime*

PHRASES **on past records** *On past records, she should have no problem passing the exam.* **| on sb's past record**

4 **music**

ADJ. **long-playing | gramophone | classical, jazz, pop | best-selling**

VERB + RECORD **cut, make | release** *They released their first record in 1963.* **| listen to, play, put on** *I'll put on one of my favourite records.*

RECORD + NOUN **company, industry, label | producer | deal** *The band signed their first record deal a year after forming.* **| collection | shop | library | player | sleeve**

record *verb*

1 **information**

ADV. **carefully, meticulously, painstakingly | accurately, correctly, properly** *The weights must be recorded accurately.* **| faithfully** *It was all there, faithfully recorded in his uncle's stiff and formal style.* **| duly** *The contract is witnessed by others and duly recorded.* **| automatically, routinely** *The mother's occupation was not routinely recorded on the birth certificate.* **| officially | electronically, manually | graphically, vividly** *The circumstances of her death were graphically recorded in the local press.*

PREP. **as** *The time of the accident is recorded as 6.23 p.m.*

PHRASES **be recorded for posterity** *The names of those who died are recorded for posterity on a tablet at the back of the church.* **| historically recorded** *historically recorded events* **| poorly/well recorded** *The geographical spread of the industry in the 16th century is hard to ascertain, for much of it is poorly recorded.*

2 **sound/pictures**

ADV. **secretly** *She secretly recorded the conversation.*

PREP. **from** *a programme she had recorded from the radio* **| on** *I recorded the film on video.*

PHRASES **beautifully/well recorded** *This CD has been beautifully recorded.* **| digitally recorded**

recorder *noun* > Special page at MUSIC

recording *noun*

ADJ. **excellent, fine, good | accurate, careful, detailed** *a detailed recording of facts* **| complete** *a complete recording of Mozart's piano sonatas* **| last, later/latest, new, recent** *the band's latest recording* **| modern | early, old | original** *to enhance the quality of the original recording* **| pirate | commercial** *one of the first commercial recordings of the artist* **| professional | live, studio | audio, video | cassette, tape | analogue, digital | mono, stereo | electrical, magnetic** *The principles of magnetic recording have been around for a long time.* **| music, sound** *before the invention of sound recording* **| orchestral, piano, etc. | test**

VERB + RECORDING **make (sb)** *Make a few test recordings before you start the session in earnest.* **| play (sb), play (sb) back** *I want to play you a recording of the rehearsal.* **| hear, listen to | view, watch**

RECORDING + VERB **give sth, show sth** *The recording gives an account of his kidnapping.* **| sound …** *The recording sounds just like a live performance.*

RECORDING + NOUN **process | session | facilities, studio | device, equipment, system | engineer | artist | career** *The clarinet player has launched her recording career.* **| contract, deal | company | industry**

PREP. **~ by** *a recording by the Amadeus Quartet*

recount *verb*

ADV. **vividly** *The story of his life is vividly recounted in this new book.*

recourse *noun*

ADJ. **constant, frequent | limited | no other, only** *I have no other recourse than to inform the police.* **| direct** *The study of these creatures has been conducted without direct recourse to living specimens.* **| legal**

VERB + RECOURSE **have** *The mother of an illegitimate child had no legal recourse to the father.* **| seek** *An order was made against which he sought recourse in the supreme court.* **| avoid** *Their system of dispute resolution avoids recourse to the courts.*

PREP. **by ~ to** *people who deal with emotional pain by recourse to drugs and alcohol* **| without ~ to** *They tried to settle the dispute without recourse to the courts.* **| ~ against** *Citizens have learnt that they do have recourse against governments.* **| ~ to** *She often had recourse to her dictionary.*

recover *verb*

ADV. **completely, fully | partially | only just | hardly, never/not quite, never really** *She had hardly recovered from the birth of her last baby.* **| well** *Your baby is recovering well.* **| enough, sufficiently** *After a minute she recovered enough to speak.* **| quickly, soon | gradually, slowly | apparently | never**

VERB + RECOVER **help sb (to) | struggle to** *Yates is struggling to recover form a serious knee injury.*

PREP. **from** *Mrs Burton was last night recovering from her injuries in hospital.*

recovery *noun*

ADJ. **amazing, astonishing, dramatic, excellent, miraculous, remarkable | good, satisfactory, significant, strong, substantial | complete, full | limited, modest, partial** *The FTSE staged a modest recovery to be 6.5 points down.* **| fragile | fast, quick, rapid, speedy, swift | gradual, slow | steady | faltering | eventual | continuing, lasting, long-term, sustained | spontaneous | national | economic, industrial, physical, political | price, profits | post-war**

VERB + RECOVERY **achieve, make, stage** *Many people make remarkable recoveries after strokes.* **| aid, speed (up), stimulate** *A holiday would speed his recovery. a reduction in interest rates to stimulate global economic recovery* **| delay, hamper, hinder | wish sb** *We wish them all a speedy recovery.*

RECOVERY + VERB **be on the way, come** *The economic circumstances are right and recovery is on the way* (= recovery will occur soon). **| be … way off** *Unemployment is high and economic recovery is still a long way off* (= it will be a long time until recovery). **| be underway, occur, take place | continue**

RECOVERY + NOUN **time** *His injuries have returned as there was insufficient recovery time between matches.* **| period, phase | process | plan, programme | room** *After the operation she was taken to the recovery room.* **| position** *Continue resuscitation until the person starts breathing and then place them in the recovery position.*

PREP. **beyond ~** *The region has been damaged by acid rain and rivers are fouled almost beyond recovery.* **| in ~** *He's in recovery from the disease.* **| ~ from** *recovery from his illness* **| ~ in** *the recent recovery in consumer spending* **| ~ to** *a slow recovery to full health*

PHRASES **be on the road to recovery** *She is well on the road to recovery* (= making good progress towards recovery). **| hopes/prospects of recovery, a sign of recovery** *The economy is showing the first signs of recovery.*

recreation *noun*

ADJ. **popular | chief, main** *Playing billiards is my chief recreation.* **| informal | physical | countryside, outdoor | indoor**

RECREATION + NOUN **area, centre, facilities, ground, room**

PREP. **for ~** *She cycles for recreation.*

PHRASES **a form of recreation** *His only form of recreation is playing cards.* **| a source of recreation** *exploiting the countryside as a source of recreation*

recruit *noun*

ADJ. **latest, new, raw, recent** *raw recruits marching up and down with the drill instructor* **| possible, potential | young | graduate | army**

VERB + RECRUIT **find** *A common way for companies to find new recruits is by taking a stand at a job exhibition.* **| attract** *It's difficult to attract recruits when working conditions are so poor.* **| enlist, gain, sign up** *Thousands of recruits had been enlisted and partly trained. She tried to gain recruits for the party.* **| train** *Army recruits are all trained in first aid.* **| provide** *Their business schools provide recruits for domestic industry.*

PREP. **~ to** *new recruits to the party*

recruit *verb*

ADV. **directly** *The specialist institutions directly recruit their own staff.* | **actively** | **locally** *Most of the workers will be recruited locally.* | **personally** *She personally recruited the teachers.* | **specially** *Staff were recruited specially for the event.*

VERB + RECRUIT **need to** | **seek to, try to**

PREP. **as** *Peter Watson has been recruited as Sales Manager.* | **for** *A hundred patients were recruited for the study.* | **from** *Soldiers were recruited from the local villages.* | **into** *Some of the men were recruited into the army.* | **to** *Ten new members were recruited to the committee.*

PHRASES **newly/recently recruited**

recruitment *noun*

ADJ. **large/large-scale | annual | forced** *forced recruitment of labour* **| labour, staff | executive, graduate, student** *She has set up her own executive recruitment business in Paris.* **| army, military, police**

RECRUITMENT + NOUN **policy | strategy | procedure, process | campaign, drive, programme | market | agency, consultancy, service | consultant, manager, officer, specialist** *the company's recruitment officer*

PREP. **~ by** *recruitment by large companies* **| ~ into/to** *large-scale recruitment to the new industries*

PHRASES **a method of recruitment, a source of recruitment** *One source of recruitment is the civil service.*

recur *verb*

ADV. **constantly, frequently, regularly** *This is a constantly recurring problem which we must deal with.*

VERB + RECUR **be likely to | tend to**

PREP. **throughout** *a theme that recurs throughout the book*

PHRASES **keep recurring**

recurrence *noun*

ADJ. **high | frequent | tumour, ulcer, etc.**

VERB + RECURRENCE **avoid, prevent | experience, have, suffer** *He has suffered a recurrence of his hamstring injury.*

RECURRENCE + NOUN **rate**

PHRASES **the likelihood of a recurrence, the risk of recurrence** *a high risk of recurrence*

recyclable *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **easily** *Paper is easily recyclable.* **| completely** *Glass products are completely recyclable.* **| potentially**

recycle *verb*

ADV. **endlessly, regularly** *(often figurative) endlessly recycling the same worn-out arguments*

PREP. **from** *made of plastic recycled from old packaging material* **| into** *These materials can be recycled into other packaging products.*

red tape *noun*

ADJ. **bureaucratic**

VERB + RED TAPE **cut (through), reduce**

red *adj.*

1 **of the colour of blood**

VERBS **glow** *The coals glowed red in the dying fire.*

ADV. **very | slightly** *The leaves looked slightly red.*

ADJ. **bright, brilliant, fiery, flaming, vibrant, vivid** *flaming red hair* **| dark, deep, rich | light, pale | dull | blood, brick, ruby** *her ruby red lips* > Special page at COLOUR

2 **of the face**

VERBS **be, look | flush, go, grow, turn** *Mr Grubb was shouting and growing redder and redder in the face.*

ADV. **very | quite | rather, slightly**

ADJ. **bright, fiery** *He could feel himself going bright red.*

PREP. **with** *Ross flushed red with embarrassment.*

PHRASES **as red as a beetroot, red in the face** *Charles was rapidly turning red in the face.*

redemption *noun*

1 **being saved from the power of evil**

VERB + REDEMPTION **be in need of, need** *She believes that humanity is in need of redemption.*

PREP. **beyond ~** *After another incident at the weekend, the club's reputation for violence is beyond redemption.* **| ~ from** *redemption from evil*

2 **repayment of money invested/borrowed**

ADJ. **early** *There is a fee for early redemption.* **| capital, loan, share**

REDEMPTION + NOUN **date | price, value, yield**

PREP. **on ~** *A charge is payable on redemption.*

redistribution *noun*

ADJ. **major, massive, significant, substantial | equitable | income, land, population**

VERB + REDISTRIBUTION **be/become available for** *a national tax available for redistribution to local government* **| bring about** *The tax brought about a significant redistribution of wealth.*

PREP. **~ from, ~ to** *redistribution from the rich to the poor*

reduce *verb*

ADV. **considerably, dramatically, drastically, greatly, sharply, significantly, substantially | further | slightly** *We need to reduce the speed slightly.* **| gradually, progressively** *Legislation progressively reduced the number of situations in which industrial action could be taken.*

VERB + REDUCE **aim to, attempt to, seek to, try to | help (to)** *Giving up smoking helps reduce the risk of heart disease.* **| manage to | be designed to, be intended to | be expected to, be likely to**

PREP. **by** *Pollution from the works has been reduced by 70 per cent.* **| from, to** *The price is reduced from 99p to 85p.*

PHRASES **an attempt/effort to reduce sth, measures to reduce sth, reduce sth to a minimum** *The risks must be reduced to the absolute minimum.*

reduction *noun*

ADJ. **big, considerable, dramatic, drastic, great, huge, large, major, marked, massive, remarkable, severe, significant, substantial** *The changes may result in a greater reduction in employee numbers than we had previously expected. a sale with massive reductions on selected items* | **minor, slight, small** | **further** | **possible** | **actual, net, overall, real** | **across-the-board, general** | **rapid, sharp, steep** | **slow** | **immediate, sudden** | **gradual, progressive, steady** | **initial** | **recent** | **long-term, permanent** | **proposed** | **percentage** *A small percentage reduction in the cost of materials would mean a significant increase in profit.* | **capital, cost, debt, deficit, expenditure, pay, price, tariff, tax, wage** | **emission, noise, pollution, waste** | **weight** | **staff** | **arms, troop**

VERB + REDUCTION **achieve, make, secure** *The government has found it difficult to make real reductions in government spending. Every effort is made to secure the highest possible reduction in casualties.* | **cause, lead to, make, produce, result in** *These simple changes will make a substantial reduction in the fat content of your diet.* | **avoid** | **ask for, demand, seek** *I asked for a reduction as the dress was damaged.* | **get, receive** *Guests staying 14 nights will receive a ten per cent reduction.* | **suffer** *They suffered a severe reduction in income.* | **accept, welcome** | **give (sb), offer (sb)** | **propose** *She proposed a reduction in the state president's powers.* | **notice, observe, witness** *I haven't noticed any significant reduction in the performance of my car since switching to unleaded fuel.* | **announce** | **forecast** *The budget forecasts a deficit reduction of 27%.* | **mean, represent** *Our average margins dropped to 35%, which represents a reduction in gross margins of £109 million.* | **show** *Figures just released show a steady reduction in levels of emissions over the last four years.*

REDUCTION + VERB **occur, take place**

REDUCTION + NOUN **target** *the government's waste reduction targets*

PREP. **through a/the ~** *economic growth through a reduction in interest rates* | **~ by** *reduction by 30%* | **~ from, ~ in** *There has been a sharp reduction in the number of accidents on motorways.* | **~ on** *a 25% reduction on normal subscription rates* | **~ to** *a reduction in the speed limit from 50 to 40 miles per hour*

PHRASES **a reduction in numbers** *They are concerned about the reduction in numbers of people eligible for legal aid.* | **a reduction in the amount/number/**

size of sth *the reduction in the number of hospital beds*

redundancy *noun*

ADJ. **large-scale, major, mass, massive** *The closure of the mine led to large-scale redundancies.* | **widespread** | **threatened** | **compulsory, enforced, forced** | **voluntary**

QUANT. **round, wave** *a fresh wave of redundancies*

VERB + REDUNDANCY **make** *The bank will be making 3,500 redundancies over the next five years.* | **lead to, result in** | **avoid** | **announce** | **be threatened by/with, face** *Sixty workers at a clothing factory face redundancy because the firm is relocating.* | **accept, take, volunteer for** *Those choosing to take redundancy will receive the company's standard redundancy terms.*

REDUNDANCY + VERB **occur, take place**

REDUNDANCY + NOUN **policy** | **programme** | **notice** *Redundancy notices have been sent to 200 workers.* | **compensation, package, terms** | **money, pay, payment** | **costs** *Most of the companies' losses stemmed from redundancy costs.*

PHRASES **the threat of redundancy**

redundant *adj.*

1 **no longer needed for a job**

VERBS **be | become | make sb** *the decision to make 800 employees compulsorily redundant*

ADV. **compulsorily**

2 **not necessary or wanted**

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become | declare sth, make sth, render sth** *The chapel was declared redundant in 1995.*

ADV. **completely | virtually | largely**

refer *verb* **PHRASAL VERBS refer to sb/sth**

ADV. **briefly, in passing** *He referred to the report in passing.* **| specifically | commonly** *The disease was commonly referred to as 'the green sickness'.* **| frequently, often | generally, usually | sometimes | always | never | jokingly**

VERB + REFER **be used to** *The term 'alexia' is used to refer to any acquired disorder of reading.*

PREP. **as** *She always referred to Ben as 'that nice man'.*

referee *noun*

1 controls a sports match

ADJ. **boxing, football | match, tournament** *decisions taken by the match referee* **| international**

REFEREE + VERB **award sb sth** *The referee awarded a free kick to the home team.* **| book sb, send sb off** *The referee booked three players for offensive behaviour.*

PHRASES **the referee's decision**

2 recommends sb for a job

ADJ. **academic, professional**

VERB + REFEREE **act as, be**

PREP. **~ for** *His former employer agreed to act as a referee for him.*

3 settles a dispute between people

ADJ. **official**

VERB + REFEREE **act as** *to act as referee between the parties involved*

PREP. **~ between**

reference *noun*

1 **mentioning sb/sth**

ADJ. **extensive | brief, casual, passing | occasional | frequent, repeated | constant | further** *They could find no further reference to Mr LaMotte in the records.* **| general | particular, special, specific** *She won a grant to study political science with special reference to China.* **| definite | explicit, express | direct | cryptic, indirect, oblique, obscure, veiled | clear, obvious | ambiguous, confusing | early** *one of the earliest references to the game of chess* **| biblical, cultural, historical, literary | written**

VERB + REFERENCE **contain, have** *Her diary contains no reference to the alleged appointment.* **| drop, make** *He dropped casual references to the legacy of his great work. The article makes no reference to his first marriage.* **| drop, omit** *The new constitution dropped all reference to previous wars.* **| find**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *In an obvious reference to the president, he talked of corruption in high places.* **| in/with ~ to** (*written*) *I am writing with reference to your job application.* **| ~ (back) to** *The summary should be comprehensible without reference back to the source work.*

2 **consulting sb/sth for advice/help/information**

ADJ. **easy, quick** *The book is organized alphabetically for easy reference.* **| further, future**

PREP. **by ~ to** *Our charges are calculated by reference to an hourly rate.* **| for ~** *Retain a copy of the form for future reference.* **| without ~ to** *The decision was taken without reference to local managers.*

PHRASES **for reference purposes** *She needs the book for reference*

4 **number/note/symbol**

ADJ. **copious | full** *For full references of all books cited, see Appendix B.* **| appropriate** *Please send a full CV, quoting the appropriate reference.* **| cross-***The cross-references refer you to information in other parts of the dictionary.* **| bibliographic/bibliographical | grid, map**

VERB + REFERENCE **quote | cite, give** *References to original sources are given at the end of each chapter.*

REFERENCE + NOUN **number**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The date of publication should be included in the reference.* **| ~ to** *a reference to page 17*

PHRASES **a list of references**

5 **letter about your character/abilities**

ADJ. **glowing | character**

VERB + REFERENCE **ask for | give (sb), provide (sb with), write (sb) | follow up, take up** *They've taken up my references* (= contacted the person who provided the reference), *so they must be interested in me.*

PREP. **~ from** *a reference from your current employer*

5 **standards by which sth is judged**

REFERENCE + NOUN **point**

PHRASES **a frame of reference** *People interpret events within their own frame of reference.* **| a point of reference** *Unemployment serves as a useful point of reference in examining social problems.* **| terms of reference** *The matter was outside the committee's terms of reference. purposes.* **| a source of reference** *The book is an invaluable source of reference for the art historian.*

3 **book containing facts/information**

ADJ. **general** *The book is by far the best general reference on natural history.*

REFERENCE + NOUN **book, material, source, work | library | section** *You'll find the information in the reference section of your local library.*

referendum *noun*

ADJ. **planned, proposed | popular | national, nationwide | constitutional, independence**

VERB + REFERENDUM **conduct, hold** *The referendum will be held on July 14th.* **| put sth to** *The proposals were put to a referendum.* **| call** *The president called a referendum that he hoped would confirm him in power.* **| call for, demand, propose** *The group called for a referendum on the death penalty.* **| oppose | boycott** *The unions urged people to boycott the referendum.* **| declare, organize | be adopted by, be approved by, be confirmed by, be endorsed by** *a new constitution adopted by referendum*

REFERENDUM + VERB **show sth** *A popular referendum showed that the majority of people want reform.*

REFERENDUM + NOUN **proposal** *The Democrats rejected the referendum proposal.* **| campaign | result**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The issue will be decided in a national referendum.* **| ~ on** *a referendum on a new constitution*

PHRASES **declare a referendum fair/illegal** *UN monitors declared the referendum fair.* **| the result/results of a referendum**

refine *verb*

ADV. **slightly | further | increasingly | constantly, continuously** *The information system is constantly refined and updated.* **| gradually**

VERB + REFINE **attempt to, try to | help (to)**

PREP. **into** *Sugar cane is refined into sugar.*

refinement *noun*

1 **improvement to/on sth; process of improving sth**

ADJ. **considerable, great** *A greater refinement of the categorization is possible.* **| extra, further | continuous, endless** *All programs have bugs and need endless refinement.* **| useful** *It is possible to add a few useful refinements to the basic system.* **| technical | modern**

QUANT. **degree**

VERB + REFINEMENT **need, require** *The technology requires a great deal of refinement.* **| add, introduce**

PREP. **~ in** *a refinement in the masonry* **| ~ on** *a refinement on previous methods* **| ~ to** *to add a further refinement to the computer system*

2 **being polite/well educated; clever in design**

ADJ. **great** *a woman of great refinement and beauty*

VERB + REFINEMENT **lack** *The kite was star shaped and lacked the refinement of current designs.*

PREP. **~ in** *a lack of refinement in engine design*

PHRASES **a lack of refinement**

reflect *verb*

1 send back light/heat/sound

ADV. **dimly, dully** *The sun reflected dully off the stone walls. (figurative) In Milton's poem, Satan, even after his fall, dimly reflects his former glory.* **| back**

PREP. **from** *The screen reflects light from the sun.* **| off**

2 show/express sth

ADV. **clearly | directly | accurately, closely, correctly, faithfully, well** *Does this opinion poll accurately reflect the public mood?* **| adequately** *The punishment should adequately reflect the revulsion felt by most people for this appalling crime.* **| merely, simply** *This year's budget simply reflects the fact that we have fewer people out of work.* **| not necessarily** *The views expressed in this article do not necessarily reflect those of the editor.*

VERB + REFLECT **be designed to** *The exhibition is designed to reflect the diversity of the nation and its regions.*

PREP. **in** *The condition of the house is reflected in its low price.*

3 think deeply

ADV. **bitterly, gloomily, ruefully, wryly** *reflecting ruefully that the great American dollar didn't buy as much as it used to*

VERB + REFLECT **pause to | leave sb to** *He was left to reflect on the implications of his decision.*

PREP. **on/upon** *She paused to reflect on what she had achieved.*

PHRASES **time to reflect** *I need time to reflect.*

reflection *noun*

1 **image in a mirror, etc.**

ADJ. **clear | faint | blurred, distorted**

VERB + REFLECTION **catch a glimpse of, catch sight of, see** *He caught sight of her reflection in the window.* **| glance at, look at | gaze at, stare at, watch | examine, inspect, study**

REFLECTION + VERB **look …** *Her reflection in the mirror looked distorted.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *In the reflection on the glass door he could see the class behind him.* **| ~ in** *I saw my reflection in the polished marble.* **| ~ on** *the reflection of the mountains on the calm waters of the lake*

2 **sending light/heat/sound back from a surface**

ADJ. **heat, light, sound**

PREP. **~ from** *There is reflection of heat from the metal surface.*

PHRASES **the angle of reflection**

3 **indication/description of sth**

ADJ. **accurate, fair, true | inadequate | mere, pale** *This account is only a pale reflection of the true state of affairs.* **| direct, simple** *Young people's behaviour is a direct reflection of adults'.* **| sad**

VERB + REFLECTION **give (sb), provide** *Such studies do not give a true reflection of population needs.*

PREP. **~ of/on/upon** *His low level of performance is no reflection on his general ability.*

4 **careful thought about sth**

ADJ. **deep, mature, serious, sober | further | quiet | personal | critical, philosophical, theological**

VERB + REFLECTION **encourage** *Counselling should encourage reflection on the past.*

REFLECTION + VERB **show sb/sth** *A moment's reflection will show you that that can't be true.*

PREP. **after/on/upon ~** *On further reflection, I'm not so sure it's a good idea.* **| ~ about/on/upon** *The party needs a period of sober reflection about what went wrong.*

PHRASES **a moment's reflection, a period for/of reflection, time for reflection**

5 **written or spoken thoughts about sth**

ADJ. **interesting | poignant**

VERB + REFLECTION **have**

PREP. **~ about/on/upon** *She has some interesting reflections about the spiritual state of the country.*

reflective *adj*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly, very | slightly**

reflex *noun*

ADJ. **good, lightning, quick | poor | automatic | natural | conditioned**

VERB + REFLEX **trigger** *The rapid movement of an object towards the eye triggers the blink reflex.* **| control | sharpen, speed up** *The training is designed to sharpen the fighter's reflexes.* **| slow (down)** *Alcohol can slow your reflexes.* **| suppress | test** *The doctor tested her reflexes.*

REFLEX + NOUN **action, reaction** *Almost as a reflex action, I grab my pen as the phone rings.*

PREP. **by ~** *Almost by reflex, he helped himself to a drink.*

reform *noun*

ADJ. **drastic, fundamental, great, important, major, radical, significant, substantial | comprehensive, far-reaching, sweeping, wholesale, wide-ranging | minor | piecemeal | new | further | immediate | rapid | much needed, necessary, overdue** *Health care reform is long overdue.* **| effective | practical | moral, political, social | democratic, liberal | domestic, institutional, internal | procedural, structural | administrative, governmental | constitutional, electoral, judicial, law, legal, legislative | penal, prison | curriculum, educational | welfare | budgetary, economic, financial, monetary, tax | agrarian, agricultural, environmental, land**

QUANT. **package**

VERB + REFORM **adopt, bring about, introduce, put in place | push through** *They wanted a weak president and a strong one-chamber parliament able to push through radical reforms.* **| carry out/through, implement, put into practice, undertake | accelerate** *efforts to accelerate the structural reform of the economy* **| delay | block** *The conservative coalition could delay further reforms or block them altogether.* **| accept, welcome | advocate, call for, press for, propose** *They have issued a statement advocating reform of the legal system.* **| demand | back, encourage, support** *We are committed to supporting democracy and reform in the region.* **| require** *The practice of global politics requires reform.* **| plan | discuss**

REFORM + VERB **go through** *The reforms went through in spite of opposition from teachers.* **| aim at sth** *tax reforms aimed at encouraging land development*

REFORM + NOUN **process | movement | initiative, measure, package, programme | act, bill | policy**

PREP. **~ in** *reforms in housing and education*

PHRASES **the need for reform, the pace of reform, a programme of reform, a timetable for reform**

reform *verb*

ADV. **drastically, fundamentally, radically** *The health service must be radically reformed.*

VERB + REFORM **attempt to, seek to, try to**

PHRASES **attempts/efforts/proposals to reform sth, a need to reform sth**

refrain *noun*

ADJ. **constant | familiar** *Complaints about school food have become a familiar refrain.*

VERB + REFRAIN **sing, take up** *The choir's sopranos took up the refrain.*

REFRAIN + VERB **go** *Shoppers, so the refrain goes, are never happy until they have found a bargain.*

refrain *verb*

ADV. **carefully, deliberately** *He deliberately refrained from expressing his opinion on the matter.* **| wisely**

PREP. **from** *I refrained from laughing.*

refreshing *adj.*

VERBS **be | find sth**

ADV. **extremely, highly, really, very, wonderfully** *The water was cold and wonderfully refreshing.* **| quite**

refreshment *noun*

ADJ. **light | liquid** *(humorous)*

VERB + REFRESHMENT **need | take | pause for, stop for** *We stopped for refreshment halfway through the journey.* **| provide (sb with), serve** *Light refreshments will be served in the interval.*

REFRESHMENT + VERB **be available**

REFRESHMENT + NOUN **area, hut, kiosk, room | facilities, service**

PREP. **for ~** *We're allowed twenty minutes for refreshment.* **| for ~s** *What are we going to have for refreshments?*

PHRASES **a place of refreshment, rest and refreshment** *rest and refreshment for the mind and body*

refuge *noun*

ADJ. **safe | temporary | wildlife | mountain** *a monk living in a mountain refuge* **| last** *(figurative) They looked to the country as the last refuge of liberty.*

VERB + REFUGE **take** *They took refuge in the embassy.* **| look for, seek** *They sought refuge in the mountain villages.* **| find** *They were hoping to find a safe refuge for the night. They found refuge from the bright sun.* **| give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)**

PREP. **~ against** *(figurative) Home is a refuge against the pressures of work.* **| ~ from** *The cave provided refuge from the storm.*

PHRASES **a place of refuge**

refugee *noun*

ADJ. **genuine, real | would-be | returning | economic, environmental, political, war** *Many claimed to be environmental refugees, leaving for the sake of their health.* **| civilian | child**

VERB + REFUGEE **qualify as** *Those who did not qualify as refugees were returned to their home countries.* **| be considered, be found to be, be recognized as** *Only nine per cent were found to be genuine political refugees.* **| accept, resettle, take (back/in)** *The government has agreed to take only 150 refugees plus their dependants.* **| expel, return | house | help**

REFUGEE + VERB **flee sth** *refugees fleeing political persecution* **| be displaced** *refugees displaced by the civil war* **| arrive | pour** *Hundreds of refugees are pouring over the border.* **| live** *refugees living in camps along the border* **| return**

REFUGEE + NOUN **crisis, issue, problem, question, situation | exodus | resettlement | status** *The Home Office has refused him refugee status.* **| group, organization, worker | camp, centre, hostel | children, community, family, population**

PREP. **among ~** *Unemployment among the refugees has risen sharply.* **| ~ from** *refugees from civil wars*

PHRASES **a flood/influx of refugees** *a new influx of refugees from the combat zone* **| the flow of refugees, the plight of refugees, the return of refugees**

refund *verb*

ADV. **in full** *Your money will be refunded in full.* **| promptly**

PREP. **to** *If you are not satisfied with the goods, the price will be refunded to you.*

refusal *noun*

ADJ. **blank, blunt, complete, flat, outright, point-blank | continued/ continuing, obstinate, persistent, repeated, steadfast, stubborn | cowardly | wilful | polite | first** *If you decide to sell your car, I hope you'll give me first refusal* (= the opportunity to buy it before it is offered to others).

VERB + REFUSAL **be met by/with** *Her appeals for funds to support the cause were met with blank refusal.*

PREP. **~ by/of** *a refusal by a patient to accept the recommended treatment*

PHRASES **a refusal of consent** *a refusal of consent to blood transfusions* **| refusal on … grounds** *their refusal on religious grounds to perform military service*

refuse *noun*

ADJ. **domestic, household | uncollected**

QUANT. **heap, mound, pile**

VERB + REFUSE **dump** *People dump their refuse in the surrounding woods instead of taking it to the tip.* **| collect** *What day do they collect the refuse?* **| recycle**

REFUSE + NOUN **collection, disposal | bin | dump**

refuse *verb*

ADV. **adamantly, obstinately, resolutely, steadfastly, stoutly, stubbornly | categorically, flatly, point-blank, simply** *Gerard refused point-blank to co-operate.* **| pointedly** *The demand for an apology was pointedly refused.* **| politely | consistently**

VERB + REFUSE **can't/couldn't, can/could hardly** *They made me an offer I couldn't refuse.* **| be entitled to, have the right to** *Workers should be entitled to refuse to work under these conditions.* **| be/seem churlish to** *She offered them cups of tea and it seemed churlish to refuse.*

regain *verb*

ADV. **completely** *He hadn't completely regained his strength.* **| quickly, rapidly | gradually, slowly | eventually, finally | never** *He was severely injured and never regained consciousness.*

VERB + REGAIN **fight to, struggle to, try to** *The team are struggling to regain last season's form.* **| be desperate to, be determined to, hope to** *He was determined to regain what his father had lost.* **| help sb (to) | manage to | be unable to, fail to**

PHRASES **an attempt/a bid/an effort to regain sth** *He is making a bid to regain his World No 1 ranking.* **| a chance/an opportunity to regain sth** *a chance to regain the lead in the contest*

regard *noun*

1 **attention to/thought for sb/sth**

ADJ. **due, full, proper | scant | particular, specific**

VERB + REGARD **have** (*often law*) *When exercising its discretion, the court will have regard to all the circumstances.* **| pay, show** *The manifesto pays scant regard to green issues.*

PREP. **in/with ~ to** *I am writing with regard to your recent order.* **| without ~ for/to** *an attempt to plan the future of an industry without due regard to market forces* **| ~ for** *a proper regard for human dignity*

PHRASES **in that/this regard** *I have nothing further to say in this regard* (= in regard to what has just been said). **| a lack of regard** *a lack of regard for public safety* **| little/no regard for/to sb/sth**

2 **respect/admiration for sb**

ADJ. **considerable, great, high | insufficient, low | mutual | critical**

VERB + REGARD **have, hold sb/sth in** *I have the greatest regard for his abilities. He is held in the highest regard by his colleagues.* **| win** *The film has won critical regard in America.*

3 **regards: used to send greetings to sb**

ADJ. **best, kind, warm** (*all written*) *The letter ended, 'Kindest regards, Felicity.'*

VERB + REGARD **convey, give (sb), send (sb)** (*written*) *David sends his warmest regards to your parents.*

PREP. **~ to** (*written*) *My regards to your aunt* (= please give my regards to your aunt).

regard *verb*

1 **(often be regarded) think of sb/sth in a particular way**

ADV. **highly, well** *She was highly regarded as a sculptor.* | **generally, universally, widely** *The project was widely regarded as a success.* | **commonly, popularly, usually** | **conventionally, traditionally** *Foxes were traditionally regarded as vermin.* | **legitimately, properly, reasonably** *Civil contempt is not properly regarded as a criminal offence.* | **hitherto** | **still** | **no longer**

VERB + REGARD **seem to** *He seemed to regard the whole thing as a joke.* | **tend to** *They tend to regard the open expression of emotion as being soft and feminine.* | **come to** *I had come to regard him as a close friend.* | **continue to** | **be tempted to, be tempting to** *The successful are often tempted to regard their success as a kind of reward.* | **be a mistake to** *It would be a mistake to regard the incident as unimportant.*

PREP. **as** *Many of her works are regarded as classics.* | **with** *They regarded people outside their own village with suspicion.*

2 **look steadily at sb/sth**

ADV. **steadily** | **intently** | **curiously, suspiciously, thoughtfully, warily**

VERB + REGARD **continue to** *His eyes continued to regard her steadily.*

PREP. **with** *She regarded the mess with distaste.*

regime *noun*

1 **system of government**

ADJ. **new | old | current, established, existing, present | former, previous | interim | political | conservative, liberal, radical | authoritarian, autocratic, dictatorial, totalitarian | communist, democratic, fascist, socialist | brutal, hard-line, harsh, oppressive, repressive | constitutional, parliamentary | revolutionary | military | colonial | puppet** *In 1940 a puppet regime was established by the invaders.*

VERB + REGIME **establish, install, set up | defeat, overthrow, topple | bolster, strengthen** *Education was seen as a way of bolstering the existing regime.* **| destabilize | support | oppose | head** *a military regime headed by the general*

REGIME + VERB **exist | come to power** *The communist regime came to power in 1975.* **| collapse, fall**

PREP. **against a/the ~** *She called for sanctions against the regime.* **| under a/the ~** *He spoke of the abhorrent crimes that had been committed under the regime.* **| ~ under** *a military regime under Franco*

PHRASES **a change of regime, the collapse/fall/overthrow of a regime, a member of a regime**

2 **set of rules/procedures**

ADJ. **harsh, rigorous, strict, tight | relaxed | new | special | exercise, fitness, health, training | dietary | drug, therapeutic, treatment | educational | economic, financial, fiscal, legal, regulatory** *a financial regime imposed by the government* **| trade/trading, tax | safety**

VERB + REGIME **create, introduce, set up, start** *It will be necessary to create a regime to monitor compliance with the agreements.* **| impose | subject sb to** *The children were subjected to a strict regime of meals, walks and lessons.* **| follow** *He suggested to me that I follow his fitness regime.*

REGIME + VERB **be based on sth** *a regime based on discipline and training*

PREP. **under a/the ~** *Under the new regime you will be liable for automatic penalties for late submission of tax returns.* | **~ for** *the new regime for accounting for charities*

regimen *noun*

ADJ. **strict | combined | dietary | treatment | drug | dosage/dose**

VERB + REGIMEN **use** *We used a combined regimen of injection treatment and radiation therapy.*

REGIMEN + VERB **comprise sth** *a treatment regimen comprising two antibiotics*

region *noun*

1 **area of land/part of a country**

ADJ. **large | small | entire, whole | distinct, particular, specific | northern, southern, etc. | central | border, far-flung, outlying, peripheral, remote | neighbouring, surrounding | unexplored | geographical | arid, coastal, desert, equatorial, jungle, mountain/mountainous, polar, tropical | Basque, Gulf, London, Pacific, etc. | autonomous | urbanized | rural | populated** *a sparsely populated region* **| economic | developed, industrial | developing | depressed, poor, underdeveloped** *the poorer regions of the continent* **| prosperous, rich** *Italy's richest region* **| oil-producing, etc.**

VERB + REGION **inhabit, live in** *Nomads have inhabited this region for thousands of years.* **| work in | leave | visit | divide sth into** *The country is divided into 17 autonomous regions.* **| confine sb/sth to** *This bird is largely confined to the southern regions of the country.*

REGION + VERB **cover sb/sth** *The champagne-producing region covers 34,500 hectares.*

PREP. **across a/the ~** *Sports events across the region have been cancelled because of the weather.* **| from a/the ~** *Twenty participants from the Asia-Pacific region will be invited to the seminar.* **| in/within a/the ~** *The animal is found in the northern regions of Sweden.* **| in the ~ of** *(figurative) She earns in the region of* (= approximately) *£200,000.* **| throughout a/the ~** *The plant is found throughout the western regions of the country.*

PHRASES **sth varies from region to region** *Sanitary facilities varied widely from region to region.*

2 **part of the body**

ADJ. **distinct, particular, specific | brain, etc.**

PREP. **from a/the ~** *tissue from the mouth region* **| in/within a/the ~** *cells in a particular region of the brain*

register *noun*

1 **list of names**

ADJ. **detailed | full | up-to-date | annual | central, national, public | statutory | professional | attendance, membership | electoral, voters' | medical | birth, burial, marriage | address | class, school | church, parish | hotel | asset, land, property, share**

VERB + REGISTER **appear on, be on** *All those appearing on the register must notify the authorities of any change of address.* **| remain on | keep, maintain** *They keep a register of all those who have contributed to the fund.* **| call, take** *The teacher takes the register at the beginning of each class.* **| inspect | compile, create, draw up, establish** *She was asked to draw up a register of suitable sites.* **| add sb/sth to, enter sb/sth in/on, register sb/sth in/on** *Their names had been entered in the register as owners of the company.* **| omit sb/sth from | remove sb from, strike sb from/off** *He was struck off the medical register for professional misconduct.* **| sign** *The bride and bridegroom signed the register.*

REGISTER + VERB **contain sth, include sth** *a register containing details of four million cars*

REGISTER + NOUN **office**

PREP. **in a /the~** *It was the last entry in the register.* **| on a/the ~** *There are 36 children on the register.*

PHRASES **an entry in/on a register**

2 **range of a voice/an instrument**

ADJ. **high, low, middle, upper** *the lower register of the piano*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *boy trebles singing in high registers*

3 **level/style of a piece of writing/speech**

ADJ. **formal, informal | appropriate**

VERB + REGISTER **adopt** *He has adopted an informal register so as not to alienate his audience.*

register *verb*

1 **put sb/sth on an official list**

ADV. **fully** *On completion of the preregistration year, graduates become fully registered by the General Medical Council.* | **jointly** *About 68 per cent of illegitimate births were jointly registered by both parents.* | **formally, officially** | **legally** | **duly** *As I reached my eighteenth birthday I duly registered for military service.* | **automatically**

VERB + REGISTER **be required to, have to, must** *You must register the death within three days.* | **be eligible to, be entitled to** | **fail to** | **refuse to**

PREP. **as** *the number of people officially registering as unemployed* | **at** *He registered at his local university.* | **for** *There is still time to register for English classes.* | **with** *Students living away from home are required to register with a local doctor.*

2 **notice sth**

ADV. **barely, hardly, scarcely** *She had barely registered his presence.* | **vaguely** *He vaguely registered that the women had gone.*

VERB + REGISTER **fail to** *His eyes failed to register Meredith's surprise.*

registration *noun*

ADJ. **full | limited | formal | compulsory | civil** *civil registration of births* **| birth, death | student, voter | car, company, land, trademark, vehicle | VAT**

VERB + REGISTRATION **require | be exempt from** *Certain charities are exempt from VAT registration.* **| be eligible for, qualify for** *You should be eligible for registration as a student member.* **| apply for, seek | obtain | grant sb** *Under the new regulation we can grant full registration to foreign lawyers.* **| refuse sb | renew | cancel**

REGISTRATION + VERB **be required**

REGISTRATION + NOUN **requirement** *a failure to comply with the registration requirements* **| period | procedure, process | scheme, system | records** *I traced my family history using the civil registration records.* **| form | book, card, document | number** *I gave the registration number of the robbers' car to the police.* **| plate** *The police are looking for a large black saloon with German registration plates.* **| officer | fee**

PREP. **on ~** *You will receive a free CD on registration with the club.* **| ~ as** *registration as a political party* **| ~ by** *the registration of the vehicle by the appropriate authority* **| ~ with** *Registration with the council is compulsory.*

PHRASES **an application for registration, a certificate of registration**

registry *noun*

ADJ. **public | private | central** *a central registry for all applicants* **| district, national, regional | land, companies'** *The deed of transfer must be entered at the land registry.* **| land** *fees for land registry*

VERB + REGISTRY **enter sth at/in, lodge sth at/in, register sth at** *The certificate will have to be lodged at the registry.*

REGISTRY + VERB **have sth, hold sth, keep sth** *The registry holds records of all major operations.*

REGISTRY + NOUN **fee | office | staff**

PHRASES **at a/the ~** *The map is kept at the local land registry.*

regret *noun*

ADJ. **big, bitter, deep, genuine, great, profound, real, sincere** *Her biggest regret was that she had never had children. She expressed deep regret at the incident.*

QUANT. **pang, stab, tinge, twinge**

VERB + REGRET **feel, have** *I have absolutely no regrets about resigning.* **| express, show**

PREP. **to your ~** *To my regret, I lost touch with her years ago.* **| with ~** *It is with deep regret that we announce the death of Mr Fred Fisher.* **| without ~** *She thought of them without regret.* **| ~ about/over** *She showed no regret about leaving her country.* **| ~ at** *my sincere regret at what has happened* **| ~ for** *She enjoyed living alone, but felt a tiny pang of regret for her mother's cooking.*

PHRASES **expression of regret** *The police offered no expression of regret at his wrongful arrest.* **| a matter for/of regret** *I never learned to play an instrument and that's a matter of some regret.*

regret *verb*

ADV. **bitterly, deeply, greatly, really, very much** *The president said that his country deeply regretted the incident.* **| rather | immediately, instantly** *I immediately regretted not asking for his name and address.* **| later** *Pierre told them some things he later regretted telling.* **| never**

VERB + REGRET **begin to | come to, live to** *She knew that she would live to regret this decision.*

regrettable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, very** *a deeply regrettable incident It is highly regrettable that the minister cannot be here in person.* **| rather**

regular *adj.*

1 **frequent**

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **very | fairly, quite** *at fairly regular intervals*

2 **following a pattern**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly, very** *highly regular patterns* **| perfectly** *Her face was perfectly regular.* **| fairly**

regularity *noun*

QUANT. **degree** *Sons followed their fathers' trade with a high degree of regularity.*

VERB + REGULARITY **maintain** *The idea is to maintain the regularity of the heartbeat.*

PREP. **with (a) ~** *He exercised with a regularity that amazed us.* **| ~ in** *Is there any regularity in English word stress?*

PHRASES **with alarming/depressing/monotonous regularity** *the statistics that he quotes with monotonous regularity* **| with great/increasing regularity**

regulate *verb*

ADV. **carefully, closely, properly, strictly, tightly** *The use of these chemicals is strictly regulated.*

VERB + REGULATE **attempt to, seek to | be designed to, be intended to** *a code of conduct intended to regulate press reporting on the royal family*

PHRASES **an attempt to regulate sth, heavily/highly regulated** *a highly regulated economy*

regulation *noun*

1 **control of sth**

ADJ. **strict, tight, tough | increased | government, international, official, professional, public, state** | legal, statutory | self, voluntary | **economic, environmental, financial | price, temperature**

VERB + REGULATION **call for, demand** *They are calling for tighter regulation of the industry.* **| introduce | be subject to** *Theatre, cinema and broadcasting are all subject to regulation by local authorities.*

PREP. **~ by** *regulation by local authorities*

2 **(usually regulations) law/rule**

ADJ. **strict, stringent, tighter, tougher** *The Act imposes more stringent regulations on atmospheric pollution.* **| draft | emergency | statutory | building, fire, hygiene, planning, safety, traffic, etc. | EU, federal, government, international, official | prison, school**

VERB + REGULATION **comply with, conform to, meet, observe, satisfy** *To comply with government hygiene regulations, there must be a separate sink for hand washing.* **| breach, break, contravene, flout, infringe | adopt, bring in, impose, introduce, issue, make** *These restrictions are set out in regulations made by the minister.* **| liberalize, relax** *The government is under pressure to relax censorship regulations.* **| tighten | enforce** *In practice, the regulations are rarely enforced.*

REGULATION + VERB **be designed to** *The regulations are designed to encourage lower consumption of water.* **| control sth, govern sth, protect sth** *regulations governing trade and industry* **| impose sth, require sth, restrict sth, specify sth, stipulate sth** *Regulations require water authorities to test sea water for bacteria.* **| apply (to sth)** *These regulations apply to all cows sold after June 1998.* **| come into force**

REGULATION + NOUN **uniform, white shirt, etc.** *She was wearing the regulation school uniform.*

PREP. **against (the) ~s** *It's against safety regulations to fix these doors open.* **| in (the) ~** *The limits are specified in the regulations.* **| under (the) ~** *Under the new regulations, each worker must have a rest every two hours.* **| ~s concerning/ regarding** *There are strict regulations concerning the adoption of children.* **| ~ on** *regulations on hygiene*

PHRASES **a breach of the regulations, compliance with a regulation, in accordance with (the) regulations** *The notice is in accordance with Regulation 7.* **| rules and regulations**

rehabilitation *noun*

ADJ. **economic, physical, psychiatric, social**

REHABILITATION + NOUN **centre, unit** *a drug rehabilitation centre* **| services | plan, period, process, programme, scheme**

rehearsal *noun*

ADJ. **dress**

VERB + REHEARSAL **do, have, hold** *We only had one full rehearsal.* **| attend, go to**

REHEARSAL + VERB **take place | go** *How did the rehearsal go?*

REHEARSAL + NOUN **room, space, studio | time**

PREP. **at (a/the) ~** *He apologized for his outburst at rehearsal.* **| during (a/the) ~** *During the dress rehearsal she suddenly forgot her lines.* **| in ~** *They're performing every night and they have another production in rehearsal.* **| ~ for** *rehearsals for ‘Romeo and Juliet’* **| ~ of** *a rehearsal of the final scene*

rehearse *verb*

ADV. **carefully | mentally** *She mentally rehearsed what she would say to Jeff.*

PREP. **for** *rehearsing for the show*

PHRASES **well rehearsed** *He had all the words he needed typed out and well rehearsed.*

rein *noun*

1 **(often reins) for controlling a horse**

VERB + REIN **hold** *Can you hold the reins for a minute?* **| gather (up), pick up** *Sean gathered up the horse's reins.* **| grab (at), pull on** *She pulled sharply on the reins.* **| give/hand sb, let go of | lengthen, shorten**

PREP. **on a ~** *She had the horse on a long rein.*

2 **the reins: being in control/the leader of sth**

VERB + REIN **hold** *It's the Treasury that effectively holds the reins.* **| grasp, take up** *The vice-president was forced to take up the reins of office.* **| hand over**

PHRASES **the reins of government/office/power**

reinforce *verb*

1 **support sth that already exists**

ADV. **enormously, greatly, massively, powerfully, strongly** *This report strongly reinforces the view that the system must be changed.* | **further** | **merely, only, simply** *All this simply reinforces my earlier point.* | **constantly, continually, continuously, repeatedly** | **implicitly** | **mutually** *Violent behaviour and rejection by society are mutually reinforcing.* | **unwittingly** | **positively**

VERB + REINFORCE **help (to), serve to, tend to**

2 **make sth stronger**

ADV. **heavily**

PREP. **with** *The door was built of oak, heavily reinforced with iron.*

reinforcement *noun*

1 **supporting/strengthening sth**

ADJ. **powerful**

VERB + REINFORCEMENT **provide** *The minister's statement provides reinforcement for the view that tax cuts are likely in the budget.* **| receive | have** *The windows have steel reinforcement.* **| need 2 reinforcements** extra soldiers, etc.

ADJ. **police, troop**

VERB + REINFORCEMENT **call for, call in, send for, summon** *The crowd was very large and police reinforcements were called in.* **| bring in, send**

REINFORCEMENT + VERB **arrive** *Reinforcements arrived too late.*

reject *verb*

ADV. **decisively, emphatically, firmly, roundly, strongly, vehemently, vigorously** *She firmly rejected the suggestion that she had lied to Parliament.* **| categorically, completely, flatly, out of hand, outright, unequivocally, utterly** *Don't just reject their suggestions out of hand.* **| overwhelmingly | unanimously | narrowly** *Voters narrowly rejected the scheme.* **| immediately, instantly | quickly | consistently, constantly | eventually, finally | deliberately | explicitly, expressly, specifically | effectively | indignantly** *The paper indignantly rejected charges that it had invented the story to boost sales.* **| formally | publicly | instinctively | automatically** *No one knows why a foetus is not automatically rejected by the mother's immune system.* **| rightly** *It was an ill-researched product that consumers rightly rejected.*

VERB + REJECT **vote to | be free to, have the right to** *Consumers have the right to reject faulty goods and demand a refund.* **| urge sb to** *He urged the committee to reject the plans.*

PREP. **as** *The proposal was rejected as too costly.* **| in favour of** *Their design was rejected in favour of one by a rival company.*

PHRASES **reject sth on … grounds** *The scheme was rejected on economic grounds.*

rejection *noun*

ADJ. **blanket, outright, total, wholesale | deliberate**

VERB + REJECTION **fear** *Children who have had bad experiences fear rejection.* **| risk | cope with, take** *It takes a very buoyant personality to cope with constant rejection.*

REJECTION + NOUN **letter, slip** *a publisher's rejection slip*

PREP. **~ by** *the rejection of the child by its mother*

PHRASES **fear of rejection, feelings of rejection, the rejection of an idea/a proposal/a theory**

rejoicing *noun*

ADJ. **great, much | general, popular**

PREP. **amid/amidst ~** *The bridge was completed in 1811 amidst much rejoicing.* **| ~ at** *general rejoicing at the team's victory*

PHRASES **a cause for rejoicing** *She had a personal cause for rejoicing.* **| an occasion for rejoicing** *Finding a job should have been an occasion for rejoicing.* **| scenes of rejoicing** *There were scenes of rejoicing at the news.*

relapse *noun*

ADJ. **acute**

VERB + RELAPSE **suffer | cause, trigger** *A wide range of emotionally stressful events may trigger a relapse.* **| prevent**

RELAPSE + VERB **occur**

PREP. **in ~** *Even in relapse there will be times when the patient's general condition improves.*

PHRASES **a risk of relapse**

relate *verb*

ADV. **closely | directly, specifically** *The issues raised in the report relate directly to Age Concern's ongoing work in this area.*

VERB + RELATE **be able to, can/could | attempt to, try to | be difficult to, find sth difficult to** *I found it difficult to relate the two ideas in my mind.*

PREP. **to** *Our product needs an image that people can relate to.*

PHRASES **the ability to relate to sb/sth, an attempt to relate sth** *Attempts to relate studies on animals to those on humans are not really comparing like with like.*

related *adj.*

1 **connected**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **closely, integrally, intimately, strongly** *The two ideas are very closely related.* | **inextricably** | **loosely** | **not necessarily** | **largely** | **partly** | **directly** | **indirectly** *The old rates were at least indirectly related to income; the new tax takes no account of a person's ability to pay.* | **broadly, roughly** | **specifically** | **fundamentally** | **positively** | **inversely, negatively** *The traditional approach has tended to regard unemployment and inflation as being inversely related.* | **apparently** | **clearly, obviously** | **causally, contextually, functionally, logically, thematically** *Is unemployment causally related to crime?*

PREP. **to** *The occurrence of the disease is apparently related to standards of hygiene.*

2 **of the same family**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **closely** | **distantly** | **genetically** *All the bees in the colony are genetically related.*

PREP. **to** *He claims to be distantly related to the British royal family.*

relation *noun*

1 connection between two or more things

ADJ. **causal | direct** *The energy an animal uses is in direct relation to speed and body mass.* **| close** *The study shows the close relation between poverty and ill health.* **| significant**

VERB + RELATION **bear, have** *The film bore no relation to* (= was very different from) *the book. The fee bears little relation to the service provided.* **| show**

PREP. **in ~ to** *Similar policies were pursued in the 1970s, particularly in relation to health services.* **| ~ between, ~ to** *the relation of the subject to the object*

2 member of sb's family

ADJ. **close, near | distant | blood | poor** *(often figurative) Other sparkling wines are often considered the poor relations of champagne.*

VERB + RELATION **visit**

PREP. **~ to** *What relation is Rita to you?*

PHRASES **friends and relations 3 relations** between people/groups/countries

ADJ. **close, cordial, friendly, good, harmonious | improved | difficult, poor, strained | class, diplomatic, economic, foreign, gender, human, industrial, international, labour, personal, political, power, public, race, sexual, social, trade** *The change of government led to improved industrial relations. a public relations exercise* **| Anglo-American, East-West, etc.**

VERB + RELATION **cultivate, develop, establish, foster** *the need to establish good relations with our European partners* **| break off, damage, sever, suspend** *Diplomatic relations have been broken off between the two countries.* **| improve, strengthen** *Renewed efforts are being made to improve the strained relations between the two countries.* **| restore, resume | regulate** *the mechanisms that regulate the relations between labour and capital*

RELATION + VERB **improve** *Relations between the two states have improved.* **| deteriorate, sour, worsen**

PREP. **~ among, ~ between, ~ with**

PHRASES **an improvement in relations**

relationship *noun*

1 **between people/groups/countries**

ADJ. **friendly, good, happy, harmonious, healthy, strong | broken, difficult, failed, fragile, poor, stormy, strained, troubled, uneasy | close, intense, intimate, special** *Britain's special relationship with the US* **| enduring, lasting, long-standing, long-term, permanent, serious, stable, steady** *He was not married, but he was in a stable relationship.* **| brief, casual | family, human, interpersonal, one-to-one, personal | doctor-patient, parent-child, etc. | business, contractual, formal, marital, physical, power, professional, sexual, social, working | caring, love-hate, loving**

VERB + RELATIONSHIP **enjoy, have** *They enjoyed a close working relationship. The school has a very good relationship with the community. He had brief relationships with several women.* **| begin, build (up), develop, establish, foster** *Building strong relationships is essential. They established a relationship of trust.* **| cement, improve, strengthen | continue, maintain | handle, manage** *He's not very good at handling personal relationships.* **| break off** *She broke off the relationship when she found out about his gambling.* **| destroy** *Lack of trust destroys many relationships.*

RELATIONSHIP + VERB **exist** *We want to improve the relationship that exists between the university and the town.* **| blossom, deepen, develop | flourish | work** *I tried everything to make our relationship work.* **| continue, last | deteriorate, go wrong, worsen | break down, break up, fail**

RELATIONSHIP + NOUN **difficulties, problems | goals**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *In normal human relationships there has to be some give and take. At the moment he isn't in a relationship.* **| ~ among** *The focus is on relationships among European countries.* **| ~ between, ~ to** *their relationship to each other* **| ~ with**

PHRASES **the breakdown of a relationship, a network/web of relationships**

2 **family connection**

ADJ. **blood, family, kin, kinship**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Some people think only about themselves, even in family relationships.* **| ~ between** *'What's the relationship between you and Tony?' 'He's my cousin.'* **| ~ to** *What relationship are you to Pat?*

3 **connection between two or more things**

ADJ. **close** *There's a close relationship between increased money supply and inflation.* **| direct | clear | complex | significant | true | particular | inverse, negative** *the inverse relationship between gas consumption and air temperature* **| positive | causal, dynamic, reciprocal | linear, spatial | economic, functional, legal | natural, organic | symbolic**

VERB + RELATIONSHIP **bear, have** *The fee bears little relationship to the service provided.* **| examine, explore, look at, study** *His latest book examines the relationship between spatial awareness and mathematical ability.* **| discover, find** *They discovered a relationship between depression and lack of sunlight.* **| demonstrate, show | see, understand | stand in** *Women and men stand in a different relationship to language.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The different varieties of the language are in a dynamic relationship with each other.* **| ~ between** *I can't see the relationship between the figures and the diagram.* **| ~ to** *the relationship of a parasite to its host* **| ~ with**

PHRASES **the nature of the relationship**

relative *noun*

ADJ. **close, near** *The succession passed to the nearest surviving relative.* **| distant | blood, family** *If you die without a will, only a husband, wife, children and blood relatives are entitled to inherit your property.* **| immediate** *The deceased's immediate relatives, her mother and father, will inherit her estate.* **| living, surviving | elderly, old | young | female, male | poor** *(often figurative) He believes that interior design is the poor relative of* (= inferior to) *architecture.* **| dependent | disabled, ill, sick | distressed, grieving**

VERB + RELATIVE **have** *I have no parents or close relatives.* **| lose** *an organization that helps people who have lost their relatives* (= whose relatives have died) **| care for, give support to, help, look after, support** *She's looking after an elderly relative.* **| live with | stay with, visit | trace** *The police are trying to trace the relatives of the deceased.* **| inform** *The names of the victims are being withheld until the relatives have been informed.*

PHRASES **friends and/or relatives** *an intimate reception for close friends and relatives* **| a relative by marriage**

relax *verb*

ADV. **deeply** *Deeply relax all your muscles.* | **completely, totally** | **a little, slightly** | **just, simply** *Just relax and take it easy.* | **gradually, slowly** *He gradually relaxed and began to enjoy himself.* | **consciously** *She realized how tense she was and consciously relaxed.* | **visibly**

VERB + RELAX **begin to** | **try to** *Just try to relax completely.* | **learn to** | **help sb (to)** *Use music to help you relax.* | **make sb** | **appear to, seem to** *Julie seems to be relaxing a little now.*

PREP. **against** *Jenna relaxed against the pillows.* | **into** *His severe expression relaxed into a half-smile.*

PHRASES **lie/sit back and relax, relax and enjoy sth/yourself**

relaxation *noun*

1 **time spent resting/sth you do to rest**

ADJ. **deep, great** *an ointment that helps muscle relaxation* **| complete, total | muscle/muscular**

VERB + RELAXATION **aid, promote** *Some people take up yoga to aid relaxation.*

RELAXATION + NOUN **exercises, techniques | therapy | class** *He goes to relaxation classes.*

PREP. **for ~** *She listens to classical music for relaxation.* **| ~ from** *a chance for relaxation from work*

PHRASES **a form/kind of relaxation, rest and relaxation, a state of relaxation**

2 **making rules/controls less strict**

ADJ. **further | general | limited, partial, slight | temporary | gradual**

VERB + RELAXATION **call for, seek** *Financiers are calling for a relaxation of these stringent measures.* **| promise** *The government has promised further relaxations in foreign exchange controls.*

PREP. **~ in/of** *a relaxation in the rules*

relaxed *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem | keep sb**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, very | completely, perfectly, totally | fairly, quite | apparently, seemingly | enough, sufficiently** *You need to ensure that a patient feels relaxed enough to discuss things fully.* **| pleasantly**

PREP. **about** *I was very relaxed about the decision.*

relay (*also* **relay race)** *noun*

ADJ. **4 •~ 400, etc. | medley, sprint**

VERB + RELAY **run (in)** *She ran in the 4 •~ 400 relay.* **| win**

RELAY + NOUN **race | team**

release *noun*

1 **freeing sb from prison, etc.**

ADJ. **immediate** *There have been calls for his immediate and unconditional release.* **| imminent | early | unconditional**

VERB + RELEASE **grant sb** *He was granted early release.* **| secure** *A public outcry secured her release from detention.*

RELEASE + NOUN **date**

PREP. **~ from** *his release from hospital*

PHRASES **release on bail/parole**

2 **freeing sb from an emotion, a pain, etc.**

ADJ. **welcome** *She saw death as a welcome release from pain.* **| emotional**

VERB + RELEASE **give (sb)** *Crying gave some emotional release.*

PREP. **~ from**

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of release, a release of tension** *All societies have social mechanisms for the release of tension.*

3 **book/film/record/piece of news**

ADJ. **latest, new, recent | commercial | book, CD, film's, news, press, record, video**

RELEASE + VERB **be/come out** *The new CD releases will be out on Friday.*

release *verb*

1 **allow sb to be free**

ADV. **quickly | immediately | eventually, finally | conditionally, unconditionally**

PREP. **from** *She was released from prison last week.*

PHRASES **newly/recently released**

2 **allow sth to escape**

ADV. **accidentally** *The factory had accidentally released a quantity of toxic waste into the sea.*

PREP. **from** *the gases that are released from aerosols* **| into** *How much radiation was released into the air?*

3 **make sth less tight**

ADV. **suddenly** *She laughed, the tension inside her suddenly released.*

4 **make sth available**

ADV. **officially** *Figures to be officially released this week reveal that long-term unemployment is still rising.*

VERB + RELEASE **refuse to** *Police have refused to release the name of the dead man.*

PREP. **to** *Details of the attack have not yet been released to the public.*

PHRASES **newly/recently released** *newly released recordings* **| originally/ previously released** *The album was originally released in 1974.*

relevance *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, wider | limited, marginal | doubtful, dubious | equal | direct, immediate | continued/continuing | declining | obvious | real | possible, potential | general | particular, special | contemporary** *He claims that the laws are antiquated and have no contemporary relevance.* **| practical | political**

VERB + RELEVANCE **be/remain of** *The book is of particular relevance to student nurses.* **| bear, have** *The theory bears little relevance to practice.* **| lack, lose** *Her ideas have lost all relevance to the modern world.* **| ensure** *Constant revision of the curriculum must be undertaken to ensure its continuing relevance.* **| increase | see | demonstrate, establish** *Skim the book in order to establish its relevance to your needs.* **| assess, consider, examine, explore, judge | question**

PREP. **~ for/to** *I can't see the relevance of his comment to the debate.*

relevant *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as**

ADV. **especially, extremely, highly, particularly, specially, very | barely, hardly, not really, scarcely** *Past imperial glories are hardly relevant to the present day.* **| (only) marginally, partially | not necessarily, not strictly** *Resist the temptation to discuss topics that are not strictly relevant to the essay question.* **| directly | only indirectly | immediately | no longer | potentially | apparently | clearly, obviously | universally | morally, politically, socially** *Is there a morally relevant difference between human life and animal life?* **| vocationally** *vocationally relevant qualifications*

PREP. **to** *information relevant to this case*

reliability *noun*

ADJ. **greater/greatest, high | poor | absolute | improved, increased | statistical**

QUANT. **degree, level**

VERB + RELIABILITY **ensure** *Changes in design will ensure the quality and reliability of the printer.* **| improve, increase | reduce | assess, evaluate, judge** *It is important to assess the reliability of the data.* **| measure** *The reliability of the statistical estimates can be measured.*

RELIABILITY + VERB **improve, increase**

RELIABILITY + NOUN **problem**

reliable *adj.*

VERBS be, prove, seem | become | consider sth

ADV. extremely, highly, very *It has a highly reliable control system.* **| absolutely, completely, perfectly, totally** *He's a good musician and totally reliable.* **| not entirely, not exactly, not terribly, not wholly | fairly, quite, pretty, reasonably | enough, sufficiently** *These measurements are reliable enough for most purposes.*

PREP. as *This statement is not reliable as evidence.*

reliance *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total | considerable, great, heavy, strong** *Too heavy a reliance on a particular market may be dangerous for the company.* **| excessive, undue | misplaced | continued, continuing | growing, increasing | increased | reduced | self**

QUANT. **degree** *a high degree of reliance on newspaper reports*

VERB + RELIANCE **place** *I don't think you should place too much reliance on these figures.* **| act in** (law) **| increase | reduce | eliminate** *the means by which individuals might reduce or eliminate reliance on the state* **| encourage** *They believe that modern farming techniques encourage an excessive reliance on harmful chemicals.* **| lead to**

PREP. **in ~ on/upon** *(law) He acted in complete reliance on the account of a couple of eyewitnesses.* **| ~ on/upon** *the increased reliance of the university on private funds*

reliant *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **heavily, highly** *The service has become heavily reliant on government support.* **| completely, entirely, totally, wholly | increasingly | largely | quite**

PREP. **on/upon** *The charity is completely reliant on public donations.*

relic *noun*

ADJ. **ancient | last** *It was the last relic of the old system.* **| historic/historical | precious | holy, religious, sacred, saintly**

VERB + RELIC **discover** *The relics were discovered in a lead box in the ruins of an abbey.* **| shelter** *A shrine was constructed to shelter the relics.* **| remove** *The duke secretly removed the relics from the reliquary.*

RELIC + VERB **survive** *This silver belt buckle is the only relic of the imprisoned soldiers that survives.*

PREP. **~ from** *Most of these guns are relics from the Boer War.*

PHRASES **a relic of an age/a time** *relics of a bygone age a relic of the time when people travelled by horse and carriage* **| a relic of the past** *They believe that hunting is a relic of the past and are calling for it to be banned.*

relief *noun*

1 **removal of anxiety/pain**

ADJ. **considerable, deep, enormous, great, huge, immense, intense, overwhelming, tremendous | certain** *The news of his appointment was received with a certain relief by most people.* **| sheer | complete | temporary** *The drugs only provided temporary relief from the pain.* **| fast, immediate, instant | evident, obvious** *She smiled with evident relief.* **| blessed, welcome | pain** *The injection gives complete pain relief.*

VERB + RELIEF **bring (sb), give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *Morning brought no relief from the heat.* **| come as** *The news came as a welcome relief to Brian.* **| seek** *She sought relief in drink.* **| find, get** *He found relief from his fears in a world of fantasy and art.* **| experience, feel** *I felt enormous relief once they phoned.* **| sense** *She could sense his relief when she said she wouldn't be leaving.* **| express**

RELIEF + VERB **come** *He believes that relief only comes from helping others with their suffering.* **| flood** *Relief flooded through me as the aeroplane landed safely.*

PREP. **in ~** *She smiled in relief.* **| out of ~** *He hugged her out of sheer relief.* **| to your ~** *To my great relief, she didn't notice that anything was wrong.* **| with ~** *He sighed with relief.* **| ~ at** *relief at not having been made a fool of* **| ~ from** *relief from hunger* **| ~ to** *The news was a huge relief to her.*

PHRASES **a cry/a sigh/tears of relief** *He breathed a sigh of relief.* **| a sense/wave of relief**

2 **food/money/medicine given to people in need**

ADJ. **humanitarian | emergency | famine, flood | foreign, international**

VERB + RELIEF **give sb, provide (sb with), send (sb)** *The organization provides emergency famine relief.*

RELIEF + NOUN **work** *She said that the fighting has halted almost all relief work in the area.* **| effort, operation** *There was a huge international relief effort to bring help to the stricken area.* **| package, programme** *Congress has agreed an $11 million relief package for victims of the hurricane.* **| aid, supplies | agency, fund,**

organization | staff, worker | convoy, flight

3 **reduction in the amount of tax, etc. you have to pay**

ADJ. **debt, interest, mortgage, tax**

VERB + RELIEF **get, obtain, receive** *You get mortgage relief of 10% on the next £5,000.* **| be entitled to, qualify for | apply for, claim, seek**

RELIEF + VERB **be available** *No tax relief is available in respect of this loss.*

4 **sth interesting that replaces sth boring**

ADJ. **light | comic**

VERB + RELIEF **give (sb), provide (sb with)** *The scene provided some comic relief for the audience.*

PREP. **for ~** *The comical characters are brought into the story for a little light relief.*

PHRASES **a moment of relief**

5 **way of decorating wood, stone, etc.**

ADJ. **high** *The scene has been carved in high relief.* **| bas, low | carved, sculptured | alabaster, bronze, marble, plaster, stucco | classical, Greek, Roman**

VERB + RELIEF **carve (sth) in**

RELIEF + NOUN **carving, sculpture | panel**

PREP. **in ~** *a sculpture in high relief*

6 **making sth noticeable**

ADJ. **sharp, stark**

VERB + RELIEF **bring sth into, throw sth into** *(often figurative) The proximity of the wealthy suburb to the squatter camp throws the plight of the squatters into even sharper relief.* **| stand out in** *The snow-capped mountains stood out in sharp relief* *against the blue sky.*

relieve *verb*

ADV. **temporarily**

VERB + RELIEVE **attempt to, try to** *trying to relieve the symptoms of depression* **| help (to)** *Her jokes helped to relieve the tension.* **| be designed to, be intended to** *Respite care is intended to relieve parents temporarily of the burden of caring for severely disabled children.*

relieved *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem**

ADV. **extremely, greatly, hugely, immensely, mightily, profoundly, very | almost | a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | clearly, obviously, visibly | secretly** *I was secretly relieved when Ed said it was time to turn back.*

PREP. **at** *We were greatly relieved at the news of their safe return.*

religion *noun*

ADJ. **great, major | world** *Islam is one of the great world religions.* **| dominant | established, old | new | orthodox | true | false | alternative** *Football has become an alternative religion for many people.* **| organized** *I believe in God, but I don't belong to any organized religion.* **| primitive | pagan | monotheistic, polytheistic | eastern** *eastern religions such as Shintoism* **| Hindu, Jewish, etc. | Catholic, evangelical, Orthodox, Protestant | official, state**

VERB + RELIGION **belong to, have** *She has no religion.* **| follow, practise** *Do you still practise your religion?* **| change | abandon, reject | defend** *She believed that her religion needed to be defended by philosophy and logic.* **| found** *He founded a new religion.* **| spread**

RELIGION + VERB **be based on sth** *a religion based on reason* **| originate from sth** *He believes that all religions originated from a single source.* **| develop | spread**

PREP. **by ~** *These people are predominantly Russian Orthodox by religion.* **| in a/the ~** *In their religion, mountains are sacred.*

PHRASES **an adherent/follower of a religion, a form/kind of religion** > Note at RELIGION

religious *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **deeply, devoutly, highly, very** *a deeply religious person* **| strictly** *He distanced himself from the strictly religious aspects of the music.* **| quite | essentially, fundamentally** *Yoga is essentially religious and not just physical.* **| specifically** *the specifically religious content of the programme*

relinquish *verb*

ADV. **voluntarily** *They will never voluntarily relinquish their independence.*

VERB + RELINQUISH **be forced to** *He was forced to relinquish control of the company.* **| refuse to | be willing to | be reluctant to | persuade sb to**

PREP. **to** *She has relinquished the post to her cousin, Sir Edward.*

relish *verb*

ADV. **positively, really | not particularly** *He did not particularly relish the prospect of a meeting with his boss.* **| rather | clearly, obviously | secretly** *She secretly relished the thought of being alone with him.*

VERB + RELISH **appear to, seem to**

reluctance *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, deep, extreme, great, marked | certain** *I noticed a certain reluctance among the teachers.* **| increased | clear, evident, obvious | apparent | initial | growing | continued/continuing | general | natural, understandable**

VERB + RELUCTANCE **have | display, express, indicate, reflect, show** *His designs indicate a reluctance to conform to fashion. She showed considerable reluctance to leave.* **| pretend | overcome | notice, sense | understand** *I can quite understand your reluctance to talk about what happened to you.* **| explain** *These political tensions explain the reluctance of financiers to invest in the region.*

PREP. **with ~** *With great reluctance, we have come to the decision to close the hospital.* **| ~ by/on the part of** *reluctance by insurers to keep paying out heavy claims*

PHRASES **a show of reluctance** *With a great show of reluctance, the government granted independence to the colony.* **| a sign of reluctance**

reluctant *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem** *Students may feel reluctant to ask questions.* **| become | remain**

ADV. **decidedly, deeply, extremely, remarkably, very | increasingly | a little, rather, somewhat | apparently | clearly | curiously, strangely** *She was curiously reluctant to talk about the experience.* **| understandably** *Children are sometimes understandably reluctant to wear glasses that are ugly or uncomfortable.* **| notoriously** *The monarchy was notoriously reluctant to embrace change.*

rely *verb* **PHRASAL VERBS rely on/upon sb/sth**

1 **need sb/sth**

ADV. **heavily, a lot, strongly** *countries that rely heavily on food aid* | **entirely, exclusively, solely** | **increasingly** | **largely, mainly** | **traditionally**

VERB + RELY **be forced to, have to, must** *people who are forced to rely on public transport* | **tend to**

PREP. **for** *They relied entirely on these few weapons for their defence.*

2 **trust sb/sth**

ADV. **safely** *You can safely rely on his judgement.* | **simply** *Most historians simply rely on archives.*

VERB + RELY **can/could** | **can/could always** | **can/could no longer** *The party could no longer rely on its traditional supporters.*

PREP. **for** *I couldn't rely on John for information.*

remains *noun*

ADJ. **abundant, considerable, extensive, substantial** *abundant remains of marine algae the extensive remains of a medieval abbey* | **impressive** | **fragmentary** | **visible** | **existing, surviving** | **ancient, prehistoric** | **Greek, Roman, etc.** | **battered, mangled, shattered** *the mangled remains of the bomber's van* | **burnt(-out), charred, smouldering** | **earthly, human, mortal** *This tomb holds the mortal remains of King Richard III.* | **animal, archaeological, fossil/fossilized, organic, plant, skeletal**

VERB + REMAINS **discover, find, locate, reveal, uncover, unearth** *While excavating the site for a new hotel, workers unearthed the remains of several dinosaurs.* | **identify** *The remains have been identified as those of a Mr Thomas, who lived in Richmond.* | **excavate, exhume, remove** *They are excavating the remains of an Iron Age settlement. Marie Curie's remains were exhumed and interred in the Pantheon.* | **bury, inter** | **dump** | **destroy** *Environmentalists say that the road will destroy the remains of the world's first commercial railway.* | **feed on** *The ivory gull often follows polar bears to feed on the remains of seal kills.*

REMAINS + VERB **survive** *Considerable remains survive of the great city walls begun by Theodosius in AD 413.* | **lie** *Her remains lie at rest in St Andrew's churchyard.* | **date from …** *The burnt-out remains date from the 13th century.*

PREP. **among/in the ~** *The body was found among the remains of a burnt-out cottage.*

remand *noun*

ADJ. **custodial**

VERB + REMAND **be held on** *He was held on remand, charged with causing malicious damage to property.*

REMAND + NOUN **centre, home | prisoner**

PREP. **on ~** *I was in prison on remand for three weeks.*

remark *noun*

ADJ. **brief, passing | occasional | casual, chance, off-the-cuff, throwaway | careless, tactless | barbed, cutting, derogatory, dismissive, disparaging, insulting, nasty, offensive, pointed, scathing, snide, uncomplimentary | complimentary, encouraging, kind | innocent | critical | cynical | controversial | provocative | famous | enigmatic | odd, strange | silly | funny, witty | racist, sexist | obscene, rude | defamatory | personal** *How dare you make personal remarks!* **| general | introductory, opening, preliminary | closing, concluding** *I agreed with most of what he said at the beginning of the speech b*

VERB + REMARK **make, pass, utter | withdraw** *He was expelled from the party for failing to withdraw his controversial remarks.* **| address** *Who were those rude remarks addressed to?* **| ignore, take no notice of** *I just ignored her last remark.*

REMARK + VERB **apply to sb/sth** *These remarks apply equally to doctors.* **| be directed at/to sb** *The remark was directed at him.* | **suggest sth** *Her remarks suggest that the negotiations may be successful.* **| provoke sth** *The remark provoked an angry response from the crowd.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He made a few factual errors in his remarks on Rembrandt.* **| ~ about/concerning/on** *I shall keep my remarks on the subject brief.* **| ~ by/from** *remarks by officials* **| ~ to** *a casual remark to his father*

remark *verb*

ADV. **casually, idly** *She remarked casually that she was changing her job.* **| pointedly | lightly, mildly | drily, wryly | ruefully | jokingly | cheerfully | coolly | acidly, tartly**

VERB + REMARK **be heard to**

PREP. **on/upon** *Several people remarked on her outfit.* **| to** *He remarked to Jane that he had not heard from Sally for a long time.*

remarkable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **most, quite, really, truly, very** *a most remarkable musician a truly remarkable discovery* **| rather**

PREP. **for** *These cars are remarkable for the quietness of their engines.*

remedy *noun*

1 **treatment/medicine**

ADJ. **effective, good | correct | wrong | common | traditional | ancient, old | folk | home | herbal, homoeopathic, natural | cold** *The player insists that he merely took a cold remedy and not a banned substance.*

QUANT. **dose** *One dose of the remedy is sufficient.*

VERB + REMEDY **take, use | need | try | give sb** *The remedy was given in different strengths to a group of volunteers.* **| prescribe (sb) | prepare** *The remedies are all prepared from wild flowers.* **| find** *They're hoping to find a remedy for the condition.*

REMEDY + VERB **be available | work** *She tried various remedies, but none of them worked.*

PREP. **~ for** *He took a herbal remedy for his hay fever.*

2 **way of dealing with a problem**

ADJ. **adequate, effective, good** *Your best remedy is to go to the small claims court.* **| appropriate, suitable | easy, simple** *There's no easy remedy for unemployment.* **| common, usual | alternative | desperate, drastic | proposed | civil (law), common/private/public law, contractual, judicial, legal, statutory**

VERB + REMEDY **have | pursue, seek** *They will have to seek a judicial remedy for breach of contract.* **| resort to** *Desperate remedies were resorted to in the search for food.* **| exhaust** *They advised him to exhaust all other remedies before applying to court.* **| create | offer | afford (sb), grant sb, provide (sb with)** *remedies afforded to creditors by a bankruptcy order*

REMEDY + VERB **be available | lie in sth** *When the reservoir becomes blocked, the only remedy lies in cleaning the entire system.*

PREP. **~ against** *The agreement states that he has a remedy against the subcontractor.* **| ~ for** *remedies for breach of contract* **| ~ in** *You have a remedy in civil law.*

PHRASES **rights and remedies** *The Act created rights and remedies for consumers.*

remedy *verb*

ADV. **easily** *This could easily be remedied if the authorities were willing.*

VERB + REMEDY **attempt to, seek to, take steps to, try to** *The government should have taken steps to remedy the situation.*

remember *verb*

ADV. **clearly, distinctly, vividly, well** *I distinctly remember Jane saying that the show started at eight. I remember Miss Scott very well.* **| dimly, vaguely | correctly, rightly** *If I remember correctly, you were supposed to collect the keys on your way here.* **| fondly** *She fondly remembered her early years in India.* **| still | always** *I'll always remember this holiday.* **| suddenly | belatedly** *Julia belatedly remembered what else she was supposed to do.*

VERB + REMEMBER **can/could** *I can't remember her name.* **| try to | be important to**

PREP. **as** *He still remembered her as the lively teenager he'd known years before.* **| for** *She is best remembered for her first book, 'In the Ditch'.*

remind *verb*

ADV. **constantly, frequently, repeatedly | gently** *She gently reminded him that the baby was getting cold and should be taken indoors.*

VERB + REMIND **not have to, not need to** *I'm sure I don't need to remind you that we have lost our last ten matches.* **| serve to** *An event like this serves to remind us that we do not have control over nature.*

PREP. **about** *I rang to remind him about the party.* **| of** *She looked at her watch to remind him of the time.*

PHRASES **keep reminding sb PHRASAL VERBS remind sb of sb/sth**

ADV. **forcefully, forcibly, sharply, strongly, vividly** *The building reminded me strongly of my old school.* **| irresistibly | suddenly** *I was suddenly reminded of a tiger defending its cubs.* **| always** *Mrs Nolan always reminded Marie of her own mother.*

reminder *noun*

ADJ. **powerful, strong | lasting, permanent | constant, continual, daily | further | graphic, sharp, stark, visual, vivid | chilling, grim, painful, uncomfortable | poignant, solemn | salutary | timely | important | gentle, little, quick | final** *It always took a final reminder to get her to pay her share of the rent.* **| useful** *The list serves as a useful reminder of the issues to consider.*

VERB + REMINDER **act/serve as, be, provide** *The ruined church acts as a constant reminder of the war.* **| give sb, issue, send (out)** *She gave him a gentle reminder that payment was due.* **| receive | need**

REMINDER + NOUN **letter, note, notice**

PREP. **~ about** *We were sent a reminder about the next meeting.* **| ~ to** *a timely reminder to people that leaving their doors open is an invitation to thieves*

reminiscent *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **closely, highly, strongly, very** *This painting is strongly reminiscent of da Vinci's 'Annunciation'.* **| faintly, slightly, somewhat | curiously, strangely | strikingly | irresistibly**

PREP. **of**

remnant *noun*

ADJ. **small | last, surviving** *The museum is one of the last remnants of the 17th-century palace.* **| faint, tattered** *the tattered remnants of the flag (figurative) faint remnants of the city's glorious past*

PREP. **~ from** *(figurative) Their outdated attitudes are a remnant from colonial days.*

PHRASES **a remnant from/of the past**

remorse *noun*

ADJ. **deep, genuine, real**

QUANT. **pang, stab**

VERB + REMORSE **be filled with, be full of, be overcome with, be stricken with, feel, have, suffer** *She knew that the next day she would be guilty and full of remorse. I suffered no remorse.* **| display, express, show**

PREP. **without ~** *He died without remorse.* **| ~ at** *He felt some remorse at his behaviour.* **| ~ for** *She was filled with remorse for the crime.* **| ~ over** *She felt a sharp pang of remorse over the incident.*

PHRASES **a feeling of remorse, tears of remorse**

remote *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem**

ADV. **extremely, very | impossibly, infinitely, utterly** *Adulthood and responsibility seemed impossibly remote.* **| increasingly | comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively, somewhat** *a fairly remote possibility rural areas that are relatively remote* **| geographically, physically** *geographically remote areas*

PREP. **from** *Jane felt remote from what was going on around her.*

removal *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total, wholesale | temporary | effective, successful | immediate, speedy** *his immediate removal from power* **| easy** *a liquid for the easy removal of coffee stains* **| forced/forcible** *the forcible removal of the protesters' barricades.* **| surgical | hair, stain**

VERB + REMOVAL **call for, demand, seek** *They demanded her removal from office.* **| order** *In a symbolic move, the new government ordered the removal of the dictator's statue.* **| require** *The programme required the removal of government subsidies.* **| allow | arrange for** *to arrange for the removal and disposal of waste.* **| facilitate | prevent**

PREP. **~ from** *The local council does not allow the removal of sand from the beach.* **| ~ to** *the collection's temporary removal to storage*

PHRASES **removal from office**

remove *verb*

ADV. **altogether, completely, entirely | effectively** *By producing an heir, the Queen effectively removed her cousin's hopes of succeeding to the throne.* **| permanently, temporarily | quickly | easily** *The old cladding can be easily removed using a claw hammer.* **| painlessly | carefully | forcibly** *people who have been forcibly removed from their homes* **| surgically** *Unsightly moles can be removed surgically.* **| physically**

ADV. **try to | be possible to | be difficult to** *These stains can be difficult to remove.*

PREP. **for** *Fittings should be completely removed for cleaning.* **| from** *She removed the dirty dishes from the table.* **| with** *Bee stings should be removed with tweezers.*

PHRASES **remove sth at a stroke** *The proposed law would remove at a stroke the long-cherished right to trial by jury.*

rendezvous *noun*

1 **arrangement to meet sb**

ADJ. **secret**

VERB + RENDEZVOUS **have | arrange | keep** *Although it was late, there was still enough time to keep the rendezvous.* **| make** *She made the rendezvous with only minutes to spare.* **| miss**

PREP. **~ with** *I have a rendezvous with Peter at a restaurant on the harbour.*

PHRASES **a place for a rendezvous**

2 **place where people meet**

ADJ. **popular** *The cafe is a popular rendezvous for young lovers.* **| secret | pre-arranged**

VERB + RENDEZVOUS **make your way (back) to/towards** *The platoon made its way to the pre-arranged rendezvous in the desert.*

RENDEZVOUS + NOUN **point**

renew *verb*

ADV. **completely | annually** *Membership must be renewed annually.* **| periodically, regularly | constantly, continually, repeatedly | automatically**

VERB + RENEW **decide to | agree to | refuse to**

PHRASES **a chance/an opportunity to renew sth** *a chance to renew acquaintance with old friends* **| need renewing** *The paintwork will need renewing every five years.*

renewal *noun*

ADJ. **annual | cultural, economic, national, physical, religious, spiritual, urban** *an urban renewal programme in the city centre*

VERB + RENEWAL **seek** *He sought renewal of the grant. to seek spiritual renewal* **| apply for | obtain** *to obtain a renewal of the certificate* **| bring (about)** *They felt the need to bring about a renewal of society.* **| be/fall due for, come up for** *Her contract is coming up for renewal in the autumn.*

RENEWAL + NOUN **programme, project | date | notice** *If you have any queries, please contact us on the number shown on your policy or last renewal notice.* **| fee**

renovate *verb*

ADV. **extensively, substantially | completely** *The hotel has been completely renovated.*

PHRASES **newly/recently renovated** *the newly renovated church*

renovation *noun*

ADJ. **extensive, major** *The building has undergone major renovation.* **| complete, full-scale, total | house**

VERB + RENOVATION **carry out** *The council is to carry out extensive renovations to the building.* **| complete | be in need of, need, require** *The old Victorian house is in need of renovation.* **| be closed for** *The gallery is closed for renovation.* **| undergo**

RENOVATION + NOUN **work | programme**

PREP. **~ to** *renovation to the town hall*

rent *noun*

ADJ. **exorbitant, high** *The tenants were not prepared to pay the higher rents demanded.* | **affordable, low** | **nominal, peppercorn** | **fair** | **reduced** | **increased** | **rising** *Discontent resulted from sharply rising rents.* | **fixed** | **annual, monthly, weekly** | **initial** *The initial rent will be reviewed annually.* | **back, outstanding, unpaid** | **farm, ground, house/housing, land, office**

VERB + RENT **pay** | **afford** *He couldn't afford the rent by himself.* | **be/fall behind with, owe** *You put your tenancy at risk if you fall behind with the rent.* | **charge** *The rent charged depends largely on the size and locality of the flat.* | **collect** *The landlord came around to collect the month's rent.* | **receive** *The council receives rent on local property that it owns.* | **fix** *The rent will be fixed at 18% of the market value of the property.* | **increase, push up, put up, raise** *The large stores have pushed up the rents in the area. The new lease will put her rent up to £200 a week.* | **calculate, determine**

RENT + VERB **be/fall due, be payable** *The rent will fall due on the last day of the quarter.* | **go up, increase, rise** *Their rent has increased from £5,200 to £8,600 a year.* | **fall**

RENT + NOUN **money, payment** | **arrears** | **level** *They took the landlord to court over increasing rent levels.* | **increase, rise** | **review** | **allowance, rebate, subsidy** | **control** | **collection** | **strike** | **man** *Thousands try to avoid the rent man so they can have more cash to spend.*

PREP. **in ~** *The company has paid out a lot of money in rent.* | **~ for** *The rent for the four-roomed house is affordable.* | **~ from** *They earned rent from their property in London.* | **~ on** *the rent on a factory*

PHRASES **arrears of rent** *to be liable for arrears of rent* | **a month's/week's/year's rent, the non-payment/payment of rent** *The movement advocated the non-payment of rent and taxes.*

rental *noun*

ADJ. **annual, monthly, weekly | short term | car, line, telephone, television, video** *The phone bill gives a breakdown of the cost of the line rental and of calls.*

RENTAL + NOUN **company | terms | charge, fee, payment | income | accommodation**

reorganization *noun*

ADJ. **comprehensive, fundamental, major, radical | corporate, internal | government, school**

VERB + REORGANIZATION **undergo** *The company has undergone a major reorganization.* **| carry out**

REORGANIZATION + VERB **take place**

REORGANIZATION + NOUN **costs**

reorganize *verb*

ADV. **completely, totally | systematically**

PREP. **as** *The laboratory was reorganized as a separate establishment.* **| into** *Their headquarters was reorganized into five regional offices.*

repair *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, extensive, major | minor | essential, necessary, vital | emergency, immediate, urgent | quick, rapid | constant | temporary | running** *The rally drivers carried small tool-kits for making running repairs.* **| building, house/housing, roof, structural | car, motorway, road, vehicle | electrical, TV | shoe**

VERB + REPAIR **carry out, do, make | complete** *It is unlikely that the repairs will be completed on time.* **| be in need of, need, require | be closed for** *The museum is currently closed for structural repairs.* **| undergo** *The highway is undergoing major repairs.*

REPAIR + VERB **cost sth**

REPAIR + NOUN **work | job** *The damage meant a nine-month repair job.* **| bill, cost | centre, facility, garage, shop, yard** *a repair yard for fishing boats* **| man** *Why don't you get a TV repair man to have a look at it before you buy a new one?* **| kit**

PREP. **beyond ~** *The gearbox was damaged beyond repair.* **| under ~** *We were given a courtesy car to use while our car was under repair.* **| ~ to** *to carry out repairs to the railway track*

PHRASES **a backlog of repairs** *Investment is needed to reduce the backlog of repairs.* **| in good/poor repair** *The tools are old but in good repair.* **| keep sth in (good) repair** *As a tenant you are required to keep the house in good repair.* **| repair and maintenance** *They are responsible for the repair and maintenance of the buildings.* **| a ... state of repair** *The barn was in a poor state of repair.*

repair *verb*

ADV. **properly, successfully** *Most of the damage has now been successfully repaired.* **| poorly | extensively | completely | partially | quickly | regularly**

VERB + REPAIR **try to | help (to)** *Natural vitamins in the shampoo will help repair damaged hair.*

PHRASES **the cost of repairing sth** *They estimate the cost of repairing the damaged roads at £1 million.* **| have sth repaired** *I'm having my car repaired next week.*

repatriate *verb*

ADV. **forcibly**

PREP. **from, to** *The refugees were forcibly repatriated from Hong Kong to Vietnam.*

repatriation *noun*

ADJ. **compulsory, forced/forcible, involuntary, mandatory | voluntary**

VERB + REPATRIATION **await, face** *refugees awaiting repatriation*

REPATRIATION + NOUN **programme**

PREP. **~ from** *voluntary repatriation of people from the disputed territory to their homes* **| ~ to**

PHRASES **the repatriation of profits**

repay *verb*

1 **pay back money**

ADV. **fully, in full** *The loan must be repaid in full by December 31.*

VERB + REPAY **be able/unable to, can/could (afford to) | use sth to** *The proceeds from the sale will be used to repay the loan.*

PREP. **to** *This money must be repaid to the bank.*

2 **bring you sth in return for your efforts**

ADV. **amply, more than, well** *The charter can be seen in the town museum, which more than repays a visit.*

PREP. **for** *I felt that I had been amply repaid for my exertions.*

repayment *noun*

ADJ. **full | partial | early** *Interest will be refunded in the event of early repayment of the loan.* **| regular | monthly, weekly, etc. | capital, principal | interest | debt, loan, mortgage**

VERB + REPAYMENT **make** *The repayments can be made directly from your current account.* **| keep up, meet** *They are struggling to keep up their loan repayments.* **| claim, demand** *The bank has demanded repayment of the loan.* **| be due for** *The loans were due for repayment in July 2002.* **| spread** *Repayments can be spread over one to 25 years.* **| calculate**

REPAYMENT + NOUN **period | method, schedule, terms | loan, mortgage**

PREP. **~ on** *repayments on the mortgage* **| ~ to** *repayment to the fund*

repeat *verb*

ADV. **just, merely, simply** *There is no point in merely repeating what we've done before.* **| again | constantly, continually, endlessly, indefinitely, over and over (again)** *constantly repeating the same mistakes A single note repeated over and over again, throbbing in my head.* **| consistently, persistently, regularly | exactly, faithfully, word for word** *She faithfully repeated everything he had told her. He repeated what she had said word for word.* **| mechanically, parrot-fashion, parrot-like** *students repeating drills parrot-fashion* **| blandly, desperately, helplessly, lamely** *'Oh,' she repeated lamely.* **| slowly | quietly, softly | patiently | stubbornly**

VERB + REPEAT **can/could only** *I can only repeat what I have already said to other journalists.* **| be necessary to, need to** *It may be necessary to repeat the dose several times to effect a cure.*

PREP. **after** *The students repeated each sentence after their teacher.* **| to** *You must not repeat this to anyone.*

PHRASES **keep repeating sb/sth** *She kept repeating it over and over again like a robot.*

repellent *adj.*

VERBS **be | find sb/sth**

ADV. **utterly | slightly, vaguely | mutually** *mutually repellent substances such as oil and water*

PREP. **to** *His arrogance was utterly repellent to her.*

repent *verb*

ADV. **bitterly** *She bitterly repented what she had done.*

VERB + REPENT **come to** *He came to repent his hasty decision.*

PREP. **of** *She has repented of her sins.*

repentance *noun*

ADJ. **genuine, sincere, true | deathbed**

VERB + REPENTANCE **show** *They refused to showed repentance for their crimes.*

PHRASES **a sign of repentance** *They were released on parole for showing signs of repentance.*

repercussion *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, important, major, serious, significant | wide/widespread | international | economic, political, social**

VERB + REPERCUSSION **have**

REPERCUSSION + VERB **be felt** *The repercussions of the change in policy will be felt throughout Europe.*

PREP. **~ for** *Changes in the industry had major repercussions for the local community.* **| ~ on** *The pay cuts are likely to have serious repercussions on productivity.*

repertoire *noun*

ADJ. **extensive, large, vast, wide | full | limited, small | mainstream, standard | emotional** *An actor has to build a character and extend his own emotional repertoire.* **| music/musical | concert, opera, etc. | classical, jazz, etc. | guitar, piano, etc.**

VERB + REPERTOIRE **have** *She has a rather limited repertoire.* **| add (sth) to, broaden, build (up), develop, expand, extend, increase** *He has added considerably to his piano repertoire. She needs to build up a repertoire of pieces.*

REPERTOIRE + VERB **include sth** *His repertoire includes a large number of Scottish folk songs.*

PREP. **in the/your ~** *a key piece in the standard concert repertoire*

repetition *noun*

ADJ. **exact | frequent | constant, endless**

VERB + REPETITION **use** *Blues is a musical form that uses a lot of repetition.* **| avoid, prevent** *She said I should avoid repetition of words in my essay.*

PHRASES **the risk of repetition** *At the risk of repetition* (= although I have already mentioned this)*, it is worth mentioning again that young children are particularly vulnerable to accidents in the home.*

repetitive *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become, get**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | endlessly** *a boring and endlessly repetitive task* **| a bit, rather**

replace *verb*

1 take the place of sb/sth; exchange sb/sth

ADV. **completely | largely | simply** *Putting in a new bathroom suite can cost as little as £800 if you are simply replacing an old one.* **| easily** *These losses are not easily replaced.* **| immediately | gradually | eventually**

VERB + REPLACE **cannot/could not** *Machines cannot replace people in this work.* **| can/can't afford to | be built to, be designed to, be intended to, be used to** *It was built to replace the old Victorian jail.* **| appoint sb to, elect sb to | be expensive to** *Halogen lamps give excellent service, but the bulbs are expensive to replace.*

PREP. **as** *She replaced Jane Stott as Managing Director.* **| with** *We replaced the old television set with a newer one.*

2 put sth back in the right place

ADV. **carefully, gently**

PREP. **in** *She replaced the dress in the wardrobe.* **| on** *He carefully replaced the vase on the shelf.*

replacement *noun*

1 **replacing one thing with another**

ADJ. **complete, full** *Complete replacement of the roof tiles would be very costly.* | **partial** | **direct** *The series III gearbox is a direct replacement for a series II.* | **gradual** | **eventual**

VERB + REPLACEMENT **be in need of, need, require** *The original furnishings are now in need of replacement.*

REPLACEMENT + NOUN **programme** | **cost, value** *Rare instruments are usually insured for their full replacement value.* | **equipment**

PHRASES **hormone replacement therapy**

2 **sb/sth that replaces sb/sth else**

ADJ. **permanent** | **temporary** | **immediate** | **likely** *He is the most likely replacement for the captain.* | **possible** | **ideal** | **adequate** | **appropriate, suitable** | **hip, joint, knee** | **valve**

VERB + REPLACEMENT **appoint, bring in (sb/sth as), hire** *We'll have to see how bad the injury is before deciding whether to bring in a replacement.* | **name (sb as)** *She was named as a possible replacement for the cabinet minister.* | **need** | **look for, seek** | **find** *We need to find a replacement for Jan when she goes on maternity leave.* | **get** | **come in/on as, go on as** *He came on as a replacement for the injured striker.* | **have** *She had a hip replacement six years ago.*

REPLACEMENT + NOUN **teacher** | **part, unit** *Do you know where I can get the replacement part?* | **car, vehicle**

PREP. **as ~** *Trams are now often preferred as replacements for buses.* | **~ by** *the president's temporary replacement by the Chief of Staff* | **~ for**

replay *noun*

1 **game that is played again**

ADJ. **final, first-round, quarter-final, etc. | championship, cup**

VERB + REPLAY **earn, force** *They earned a replay with their 1?1 draw.*

PREP. **~ against/with** *a replay against Real Madrid* **| ~ between** *the replay between Liverpool and Portsmouth*

2 **playing again of a short section of a film, tape, etc.**

ADJ. **action** *(often figurative) It was an action replay* (= repetition) *of the problems of his first marriage.* **| slow-motion | television/TV, video**

VERB + REPLAY **see, study, view, watch** *He has watched a video replay of his fall on numerous occasions.*

REPLAY + VERB **show sth** *The replay shows that it was a handball.*

replica *noun*

ADJ. **exact | full-scale, full-size, life-sized | half-scale, 1:5 scale, etc. | miniature**

VERB + REPLICA **build, create, construct, make** *She made a 1:5 scale replica of Captain Cook's ship, ‘The Endeavour’.*

PREP. **in ~** *The original conservatory has been rebuilt in replica.*

reply *noun*

ADJ. **brief, monosyllabic | curt, sharp, tart | only** *'Billy, I think it's your turn to wash the dishes,' said Jane. A non-committal grunt was his only reply.* **| simple** *Her reply was simple. 'No,' she said.* **| standard, usual** *'No comment' is his standard reply to most questions.* **| straight** *She refused to give a straight reply, deciding rather to defer the question.* **| evasive, non-committal | unsatisfactory | proper, satisfactory | suitable | correct | positive | negative | early, immediate, prompt, quick | formal | personal | written**

VERB + REPLY **get, have, receive** *Have you had a reply to your letter yet?* **| give sb, make** *He made no reply, but simply walked away.* **| send (back), write** *I must write my letter in time for them to send back a reply.* **| elicit, produce** *The report elicited a formal reply from the minister. The questionnaire produced 9,000 replies.* **| await** (*written*), **wait for | expect**

REPLY + VERB **come (back)** *'No,' came the reply. A reply came back almost by return of post.* **| be forthcoming** *They waited patiently for a reply but none seemed to be forthcoming.*

REPLY + NOUN **card, form, slip** *Please fill in the reply card and return it to us as soon as possible.*

PREP. **in ~ (to)** *What did they say in reply? I am writing in reply to your request for information on holidays in Italy.* **| ~ from** *a reply from the minister* **| ~ to** *my reply to your query*

PHRASES **a chance to reply** *She quickly left the room before he had a chance to reply.* **| a right of reply** *I am grateful to you for having given me a right of reply* (= the opportunity to respond) *to the article in your magazine about my company.*

reply *verb*

ADV. **merely, simply** *He simply replied that he hadn't the faintest idea.* **| directly** *She did not reply directly to the allegations.* **| personally** *Well, you weren't expecting the prime minister to reply personally, were you?* **| at once, immediately | hastily, hurriedly, promptly, quickly | slowly | at length** *'OK,' he replied at length. She replied at length, but not to the point.* **| briskly, briefly, curtly, shortly, tersely | abruptly, brusquely, sharply | bluntly, flatly** *'No, you're not,' Graham replied bluntly.* **| firmly | gently, politely, soothingly | lightly | seriously | quietly, softly | angrily, bitterly, crossly, indignantly, sourly | coldly, coolly, icily | cautiously, guardedly, hesitantly, nervously | calmly, equably, evenly, mildly | sternly, stiffly | brightly, cheerfully | bleakly, grimly | drily, sarcastically, sardonically, sweetly** (*ironic*), **tartly | absently, vaguely | evasively | honestly | in kind** *Charles was insulted and replied in kind* (= by insulting them back).

VERB + REPLY **not bother to** *She didn't even bother to reply.*

PREP. **to** *He did not reply to my letter.* **| with** *She replied with a smile.*

report *noun*

1 **written/spoken account of sth**

ADJ. **important, influential, major | lengthy | brief, short | complete, comprehensive, extensive, full, wide-ranging** *I will have to make a full report of the situation to my superiors.* **| detailed, in-depth | general | encouraging, excellent, favourable, positive | adverse, bad, critical, damning, hard-hitting, negative, pessimistic | sensational | latest, new, recent, up-to-date | previous | original** *There have been many new findings since the original report.* **| early, initial, interim, preliminary | further, later, subsequent | periodic, regular | annual, quarterly | final | draft | formal | written | verbal | published | unpublished | special | standard** | verbatim | reliable | false, **misleading | conflicting** *There have been conflicting reports on the number of people killed.* **| factual | anecdotal | eyewitness, first-hand, on-the-spot | second-hand | anonymous | unconfirmed** *unconfirmed reports of a shooting in the capital* **| independent | joint | official | unofficial | confidential, secret | public | government, parliamentary | intelligence, police** *Reliable intelligence reports suggest that the terrorists have bases in five cities.* **| media, press | magazine, newspaper, radio, television | news | weather** | committee | company | **economic, financial, market | environmental | medical, psychiatric | scientific, technical** | lab/laboratory | case, **research, survey | enquiry** | accident, crash | autopsy | **progress, status | probation | audit, due diligence** (*law*) **| law** *The case has not yet been reported in the law reports.*

VERB + REPORT **deliver, give sb, make, present** *The committee presented its report to the Attorney General.* **| compile, do, draw up, prepare, produce, type (up), write** *I typed up a report about the morning's events for our clients.* **| file, give (sb/sth), let sb have, submit** *Our correspondent in Washington files a report most days. I'll let you have a report as soon as I can.* | issue, release *Auditors normally issue a report as to whether the company accounts have been prepared correctly.* **| leak** *a confidential report leaked to the press* **| have, hear, receive** *We've had reports of a gang shooting in the city.* **| call for** *The MPs called for a full report on the nuclear contract.* **| commission** *The government commissioned a report on the state of agriculture in the country.* **| launch, undertake | accept, endorse** *Following discussion, the annual report was accepted unanimously.* | reject | confirm | deny *They could neither confirm nor deny reports that the chairperson was to be replaced.* **| read | consider, discuss | publish | appear in** *A large number of tables and figures appear in the report.*

REPORT + VERB **be based on sth** *This report is based on the analysis of 600 completed questionnaires.* | **concern sth, cover sth, detail sth, examine sth, look at sth, relate to sth** *The report looks at the health risks linked to obesity.* | **comprise sth, contain sth, include sth** | **comment (on) sth, describe sth, explain sth, express sth, indicate sth, mention sth, outline sth, say sth, state sth** *Reports have indicated that a growing number of medium-sized firms are under financial pressure.* | **cite sth, list sth, note sth** *The report notes evidence that secondary smoke from other people's cigarettes harms unborn children.* | **add sth, go on …** *The report went on to list her injuries.* | **acknowledge sth, admit (to) sth** *The report admits to several outstanding questions about the safety of the waste dumps.* | **allege sth, claim sth** | **argue sth** | **demonstrate sth, show sth** | **reveal sth** *The riots had been sparked off by police mishandling of a case, a report revealed yesterday.* | **draw attention to sth, emphasize sth, highlight sth, point sth out, stress sth** *The report draws attention to the appalling conditions in the country's prisons.* | **warn sth** *The report warns that more job losses are likely.* | **confirm sth** | **conclude sth, find sth, link sth with sth** *a report linking ill health with industrial pollution* | **advocate sth, call for sth, propose sth, recommend sth, suggest sth, urge sth** *The report called for sweeping changes in the education system.* | **accuse sb/sth, attack sb/sth, blame sb/sth, criticize sb/sth** | **be called sth, be entitled sth** *a report entitled 'Kick-start'* | **be out** *Criticism has been levelled at local businesses in a report out* (= released) *today.*

REPORT + NOUN **writer, writing**

PREP. **according to a/the ~** *According to this evening's weather report, there will be snow tomorrow.* | **amid/amidst ~s** *The pro-democracy rally came amidst reports of dissatisfaction among army officers.* | **in a/the ~** *The findings are summarized in the report.* | **~ about, ~ by** *a report by scientists* | **~ from** *a report from the select committee* | **~ into** *The department has launched a report into the bombing.* | **~ on** *an official report on the accident*

2 **written statement about a student's work**

ADJ. **good** | **bad** | **school** | **end-of-term**

VERB + REPORT **get** *She got a better report this year.*

report *verb*

ADV. **back** *The reconnaissance party reported back that the town was heavily fortified.*

VERB + REPORT **be expected to, expect to** *The company is expected to report record profits this year.* **| be delighted to, be glad to, be happy to, be pleased to** *I am pleased to report that the scheme is going well.* **| have to** *It is with regret that I have to report the death of one of our members.* **| fail to** *He was charged with careless driving and failing to report an accident.*

PREP. **from** *This is John Hutchins, reporting from Zimbabwe.* **| on** *reporting on the situation in central Africa* **| to** *Report the theft to the police as soon as possible.*

PHRASES **be widely reported** *The incident was widely reported in the British press.*

reporter *noun*

ADJ. **chief | cub, junior, trainee | foreign | local | newspaper, radio, television/TV | crime, financial, news, political, sports | investigative | freelance**

VERB + REPORTER **speak to, talk to, tell** *We were warned not to talk to reporters.*

PREP. **~ for/with** *She then became a crime reporter with a national newspaper.* **| ~ from** *The secret was leaked to a reporter from the 'New York Times'.* **| ~ on** *the chief reporter on the 'Daily Herald'* > Note at JOB

represent *verb*

1 be a member of a group

ADV. **strongly, well** *Local businesses are well represented on the committee.* **| poorly | adequately | disproportionately** *Women are disproportionately represented among welfare recipients.*

2 act/speak officially for sb

ADV. **legally** *The suspect must appear and may be legally represented.*

VERB + REPRESENT **choose sb to, elect sb to, select sb to** *He was chosen to represent Scotland in three consecutive World Cup Finals.*

3 show sth

ADV. **accurately** *Representing an image accurately requires a great many bytes of digital information.* **| fairly | falsely | diagrammatically, graphically, schematically, visually** *The data can be represented graphically in a line diagram.* **| symbolically**

VERB + REPRESENT **be intended to** *It is not clear what these symbols were intended to represent.* **| purport to** *The film purported to represent the lives of ordinary people.*

PREP. **as** *The film represents women as victims.* **| to** *He admitted falsely representing to police officers that the car had been stolen.*

representation *noun*

1 **sth that shows/describes sth**

ADJ. **accurate, faithful, good, true | simplified | diagrammatic, graphic, pictorial, visual | symbolic | written** *the written representation of a spoken text* **| two-dimensional, etc.**

VERB + REPRESENTATION **generate, produce** *There are many ways of generating a two-dimensional representation of an object.*

PHRASES **a form/means of representation**

2 **having representatives to speak/vote for you**

ADJ. **large | increased | strong | effective | adequate | balanced, equal, fair | direct** *direct representation in Parliament* **| democratic, proportional | parliamentary, political | black, female, minority | legal | consular, diplomatic | union | employee, labour**

VERB + REPRESENTATION **have** *They had a strong representation in government.* **| achieve, secure, win** *All parties won representation in the national assembly.* **| ensure, guarantee** *He claims that their electoral system ensures fair representation of all parties.* **| increase** *The party has increased its representation in Parliament.* **| reduce | allow sb, provide (sb with)** *The accused was not allowed legal representation.* **| get, obtain**

PREP. **~ by** *representation by a lawyer* **| ~ for** *representation for employees* **| ~ from** *representation from all parties*

PHRASES **a system of representation**

3 **formal statements**

ADJ. **false | oral, written**

VERB + REPRESENTATION **make | receive**

PREP. **~ to** *They may make representation to government on matters affecting their organization.*

representative *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | consider sb/sth**

ADV. **very | fully, properly, truly | not necessarily | broadly, fairly, reasonably** *a broadly representative sample* **| widely** *Exhibits include a widely representative collection of railway rolling stock.* **| statistically | nationally** *a nationally representative picture of the employment situation*

PREP. **of** *Is this group of people fully representative of the population in general?*

representative *noun*

ADJ. **leading, main | senior | sole** *I was the sole representative of the general practitioners.* **| appointed, elected | accredited, authorized, official | local, national, regional | branch | personal | legal | parliamentary, political | council, government | diplomatic | UN | special** *the UN special representative for Cyprus* **| permanent** *the Algerian permanent representative at the UN* **| military | company, industry, management, trade | sales**(also *informal* **rep)** *She's a sales rep for sports equipment* (= she travels around selling sports equipment for a company). **| employee, union | student | community, public | club, committee | church**

VERB + REPRESENTATIVE **appoint, appoint sb (as), choose (sb as), elect, elect sb (as), nominate, nominate sb (as) | send** *The association is sending representatives to the conference.* **| recall** *They have recalled their representatives from the negotiations.* **| consult (with), meet (with)** *Management are obliged to consult with union representatives about possible redundancies.* **| discuss (sth) with**

REPRESENTATIVE + VERB **attend sth** *The negotiations were attended by representatives of several states.*

REPRESENTATIVE + NOUN **body** *The country has a new supreme representative body.*

PREP. **~ for** *a representative for international shipping companies* **| ~ from/of** *representatives from citizens' groups* **| ~ to** *representatives to a conference* > Note at JOB

repress *verb*

ADV. **firmly** *feelings that had been firmly repressed* | **barely** *She could barely repress a sigh of relief.*

VERB + REPRESS **try to | be unable to**

repressed *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **extremely, severely, very | rather | sexually** *women who are sexually repressed*

repression *noun*

1 **using force to control people**

ADJ. **extreme, massive, severe | bloody, brutal, ruthless | political | government, military, police, state**

VERB + REPRESSION **suffer (from)** *The trade unions suffered brutal repression after the coup.* **| subject (sb/sth) to** *Reports claimed that civilians were being subjected to ruthless repression.*

PREP. **~ against** *repression against ethnic minorities* **| ~ by** *repression by the state*

PHRASES **a target for/of repression**

2 **controlling strong emotions/desires**

ADJ. **emotional, sexual**

reprieve *noun*

ADJ. **temporary | last-minute** *He was saved from the gallows by a last-minute reprieve.*

VERB + REPRIEVE **earn, gain, get, win | give sb/sth, grant (sb/sth)** *The railway line, due for closure, has been granted a six-month reprieve.*

PREP. **~ from** *The family have won a temporary reprieve from eviction.*

reprimand *noun*

ADJ. **severe | public | verbal, written**

VERB + REPRIMAND **earn (yourself), get, receive** *The manager earned himself a severe reprimand for criticizing the referee.* **| give sb, issue (sb with)** *She was issued with a reprimand for leaking the news.*

PREP. **~ for** *a reprimand for a breach of the rules*

reprimand *verb*

ADV. **severely | gently | officially | publicly**

PREP. **for** *She was severely reprimanded for accepting the money.*

reprisal *noun*

ADJ. **bloody, savage**

VERB + REPRISAL **take** *The gang threatened to take reprisals against them.* **| threaten (sb with) | suffer** *She tried to persuade the soldiers that they would not suffer reprisals if they surrendered.* **| expect, fear**

REPRISAL + NOUN **attack, raid**

PREP. **in ~ for** *A dozen hostages were shot in reprisal for the killing of an army officer.* **| ~ against** *reprisals against witnesses for the evidence they have given* **| ~ from** *reprisals from angry fans*

PHRASES **fear of reprisals**

reproach *noun*

ADJ. **bitter | mild** *There was mild reproach in his tone.*

PREP. **beyond/above ~** *Her conduct had always been beyond reproach.* **| with ~** *He glanced at her with reproach.* **| ~ about** *There was no reproach about his failure to turn up.* **| ~ to** *Paul saw this as a reproach to himself.*

PHRASES **full of reproach** *Her voice was full of reproach.* **| a look of reproach** *He gave Helen a look of bitter reproach.* **| a word of reproach** *She had never uttered a word of reproach.*

reproduce *verb*

1 produce a copy of sth; produce sth again

ADV. **accurately, exactly, faithfully** *The colours can be reproduced fairly accurately. The book's characters are faithfully reproduced in the film.* **| merely, simply** *In her own work she simply reproduces the very conventions that she claims to despise.*

VERB + REPRODUCE **be able to, can/could | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *It is difficult to reproduce a signature exactly.*

PREP. **from** *The map is reproduced here from a Victorian original.*

PHRASES **an attempt to reproduce sth** *Writing grew out of an attempt to reproduce speech in a permanent form.* **| reproduced by courtesy/permission of sb/sth** *The painting is reproduced here by courtesy of the Tate Gallery.* **| widely reproduced** *These works were popular and widely reproduced.*

2 produce young

ADV. **asexually, sexually**

VERB + REPRODUCE **be able to, can/could** *The offspring have to be able to reproduce in their turn.* **| fail to**

PREP. **by** *Many single cell organisms reproduce by splitting in two.*

reproduction *noun*

1 **producing babies/animals/plants**

ADJ. **human | biological | asexual, sexual**

REPRODUCTION + VERB **take place**

PHRASES **a method of reproduction**

2 **act/process of producing a copy/recording**

ADJ. **accurate, faithful, (good/high) quality | colour, graphic, photographic, sound** *Using a wide tape gives better quality sound reproduction.*

VERB + REPRODUCTION **give, provide | ensure** *The craftsmen have ensured faithful reproduction of the original painting.*

3 **sth that has been reproduced**

ADJ. **exact, faithful** *an exact reproduction of an ancient building* **| large | black and white, colour | photographic** *The quality of a photographic reproduction decreases with time.*

REPRODUCTION + NOUN **furniture** (= furniture made as a copy of an earlier style)

PREP. **~ from** *a reproduction from an old book*

republic *noun*

ADJ. **new | autonomous, independent | breakaway** *the breakaway republics of the former Soviet empire* **| self-proclaimed | democratic, federal, Islamic, people's, socialist** *the People's Republic of China* **| banana** *(disapproving, offensive)* (= a small poor country with a weak government, that depends on foreign money)

VERB + REPUBLIC **create, establish, form, found | abolish | declare (sth), proclaim (sth)** *They have declared themselves an independent democratic republic.* **| recognize (sth as) | overthrow**

repulsive *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, smell | find sb/sth**

ADV. **deeply, extremely** *She found the idea deeply repulsive.* **| utterly | slightly | morally, sexually**

PREP. **to** *He was utterly repulsive to her.*

reputable *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly, very** *a highly reputable company*

reputation *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, enviable, excellent, fine, good, great, high, unrivalled, well-deserved, well-earned** *She has built up an enviable reputation as a harpist.* **| awesome, fearsome, formidable | bad, poor, unenviable, unsavoury | established | growing | undeserved | intact** (only after **reputation)** *He emerged from the trial with his reputation intact.* **| public | international, worldwide | professional**

VERB + REPUTATION **enjoy, have** *He has the reputation of being a hard worker.* **| acquire, build (up), earn, establish, gain, make** *Her international reputation is built on an impressive list of publications.* **| damage, destroy, lose, ruin, tarnish | protect | live up to** *November is certainly living up to its reputation?we've had nothing but rain all week.* **| live down** *She found it hard to live down her reputation as a second-rate actress.* **| stake** *He has staked his reputation on the success of the play.*

REPUTATION + VERB **grow | suffer** *The company's reputation suffered when it had to recall thousands of products that were unsafe.*

PREP. **by ~** *He was by reputation difficult to please.* **| ~ as** *You've made quite a reputation for yourself as a rebel!* **| ~ for** *The company has a well-deserved reputation for being reliable.*

PHRASES **a loss of reputation**

request *noun*

ADJ. **special | reasonable, unreasonable | formal, official | polite | strange, unusual | repeated | urgent | explicit, particular, specific | written**

VERB + REQUEST **make, put in, submit** *I've put in a request for a room with a view of the sea.* **| get, have, receive** *We have had repeated requests for a pedestrian crossing near the school.* **| agree to, comply with, grant | respond to | refuse, reject, turn down | repeat**

PREP. **at sb's ~** *The play was written by Agatha Christie at the request of Queen Mary.* **| by ~** *The writer's name was withheld by request* (= because the writer had asked for this to be done). **| on/upon ~** *We will arrange accommodation on request.* **| ~ for** *The helpline was inundated with requests for information on the crash.*

PHRASES **available on request** *A detailed list of our publications is available on request.* **| by popular request** *The film is being shown again by popular request.* **| a number of requests**

request *verb*

ADV. **explicitly, expressly, specifically | formally | politely | reasonably** *(law) Auditors will be required to provide any information reasonably requested by the bank.* **| urgently | repeatedly**

PREP. **from** *We have requested some information from the company.*

require *verb*

ADV. **urgently** *Many of the refugees urgently require medical treatment.* **|** **reasonably** *(law)*

requirement *noun*

ADJ. **absolute** *There's no absolute requirement to disclose your age.* | **important, key, main, prime** | **essential, fundamental** *An open system of criminal justice is a fundamental requirement of any democratic society.* | **demanding, strict, stringent** | **detailed** | **exact, precise** | **reasonable** | **basic** | **minimum** | **additional, further** | **general** | **special** | **particular, specific** | **individual, personal** | **annual, daily** *your daily requirement of vitamin C* | **constitutional, contractual, formal, legal, legislative, mandatory, procedural, regulatory, statutory** | **business, commercial** | **borrowing** *The public sector borrowing requirement is expected to rise.* | **client, customer, market** | **academic, course, curriculum, educational, entrance, entry** | **technical** | **environmental, safety** | **visa** | **dietary, nutritional** *patients with special dietary requirements* | **energy, food, housing, information, labour, manpower**

VERB + REQUIREMENT **comply with, fulfil, meet, satisfy, suit** *We can arrange a holiday to meet your requirements exactly.* | **impose, lay down, set (down/out)** *The government has imposed strict safety requirements on fairground rides.* | **relax, waive** *to relax university entrance requirements*

PREP. **for your ~** *We grow enough vegetables for our own requirements.* | **to your ~** *Our conservatories and porches can be designed to your exact requirements.* | **~ for** *Large buildings have specific requirements for fire-brigade access.*

PHRASES **subject to (the) requirements** *The school can decide which pupils will be given priority of admission, subject to the requirements of the law.* | **surplus to requirements** (= more than is needed) *300 workers at the factory have been told they are surplus to requirements.*

rescue *noun*

ADJ. **dramatic | daring | attempted | air-sea, mountain, sea | financial**

VERB + RESCUE **attempt** *Her own boat capsized after she attempted a rescue.* **| come/go/rush to** *No one came to their rescue until the following day.*

RESCUE + NOUN **attempt, effort, mission, operation | party, team, unit** *a mountain rescue team* **| service | worker | work | boat, helicopter, vehicle, vessel | centre** *an animal rescue centre* **| bid, package, plan, scheme** *a financial rescue package for the company*

PREP. **to sb's/the ~** *Her wails of distress brought him running from the house, like a knight to the rescue.* **| ~ from** *his rescue from a burning building*

PHRASES **fire and rescue** *New Zealand fire and rescue services carried out several extensive searches for survivors.* **| search and rescue** *The navy are on a search and rescue mission.*

research *noun*

ADJ. **detailed, in-depth, painstaking | extensive** *He has carried out extensive research into renewable energy sources.* **| basic | original | further | ground-breaking, pioneering** *pioneering research into skin disease* **| collaborative | empirical | academic, clinical, historical, medical, military, scientific, social, space | AIDS, cancer, etc. | animal** *calling for a ban on animal research* **| market**

QUANT. **piece** *a startling piece of historical research*

VERB + RESEARCH **carry out, conduct, do, undertake** *She's doing research on Czech music between the wars.* **| be based on** *One paper based on research conducted at Oxford suggested that the drug may cause brain damage.*

RESEARCH + VERB **demonstrate sth, indicate sth, prove sth, reveal sth, show sth, suggest sth** *What have their researches shown?* **| produce sth, yield sth** *Recent research on deaf children has produced some interesting findings about their speech.*

RESEARCH + NOUN **degree | effort, programme, project, work** *directing the group's research effort* **| methods | findings, results | purposes** *Copies of the tape can be made for research purposes.* **| centre, institute, laboratory | assistant, group, student, team, worker | grant**

PREP. **~ in** *Most research in the field has concentrated on the effects on children.* **| ~ into/on** *They are carrying out research into the natural flow patterns of water.*

PHRASES **an area of research, research and development** *spending on military research and development*

research *verb*

ADV. **carefully, exhaustively, extensively, fully, meticulously, properly, thoroughly, well | poorly** *The book has been poorly researched.*

PREP. **for** *She is currently researching for her next novel.* **| into** *I spent two years carefully researching into his background.*

researcher *noun*

ADJ. **eminent, experienced, leading | chief, senior | young | early** *She based her work on that of earlier researchers.* **| independent | academic | post-doctoral, post-graduate | cancer, medical | educational, social | market**

QUANT. **group, team**

RESEARCHER + VERB **investigate sth, work in/on sth** *researchers working in different disciplines researchers working on the biochemistry of learning* **| believe sth, claim sth, note sth, say sth, suggest sth, think sth | discover sth, find sth** *Researchers found 17 per cent of their random sample to be severely depressed.* **| show sth | conclude sth** *The researchers have concluded that further studies are needed.*

PHRASES **researchers in the field** *The book is written by experts who are well known as researchers in the field.* > Note at JOB

resemblance *noun*

ADJ. **close, great, marked, remarkable, striking, strong | uncanny | obvious | faint, passing, remote, slight, superficial | physical | family**

VERB + RESEMBLANCE **bear, have, show** *The plot of the movie bears more than a passing resemblance to Jane Austen's 'Emma'.* **| see** *I can see the family resemblance.*

RESEMBLANCE + VERB **end** *They are both called Nigel, but there the resemblance ends* (= they are not similar to each other in any other way).

PREP. **~ between** *There is a close resemblance between her and her daughter.* **| ~ to** *Crocodiles still have a strong resemblance to their long-lost ancestors.*

PHRASES **a point of resemblance** *The story has points of resemblance to a Hebrew myth.*

resemble *verb*

ADV. **closely, greatly, strongly, very much** *He very much resembles a friend of mine.* **| in no way, not remotely** *He does not resemble his brother in any way. I have never seen anything remotely resembling the horrors of that day.* **| faintly, in some respects/ways, rather, somewhat, superficially, vaguely | oddly, uncannily**

VERB + RESEMBLE **be designed to** *The house was designed to resemble a church.* **| tend to**

PREP. **in** *The meat resembles chicken in flavour.*

resent *verb*

ADV. **bitterly, deeply, greatly, strongly** *She bitterly resented the fact that her husband had been so successful.* **| rather | rightly | secretly**

resentful *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, grow** *They grew bitter and resentful.* **| remain**

ADV. **bitterly, deeply, extremely, very** *They were bitterly resentful of the fact that they had to work such long hours.* **| increasingly | almost** *She looked at him, almost resentful now.* **| a little, slightly, vaguely | secretly**

PREP. **about/at** *She felt resentful at the way she had been treated.* **| of** *He was very resentful of their success.* **| towards** *He felt deeply resentful towards his ex-wife.*

resentment *noun*

ADJ. **angry, bitter, considerable, deep, deep-seated, great, intense, smouldering | growing, increasing | popular, widespread | old** *She felt all her old resentment flaring up.*

VERB + RESENTMENT **bear, feel, harbour** *I bore him no resentment. You seem to be harbouring some resentment against your boss.* **| express, show | contain, hide** *He struggled to contain his resentment.* **| arouse, breed, cause, create, fuel, give rise to, lead to, provoke** *Inequality breeds resentment.*

RESENTMENT + VERB **build up, grow** *Don't let your resentment build up.* **| flare up**

PREP. **~ about/over** *Maggie was filled with resentment about her treatment.* **| ~ against** *the growing resentment against foreigners* **| ~ among** *The measures fuelled resentment among students.* **| ~ at** *I felt great resentment at having to work such long hours.* **| ~ between** *the bitter resentment between the two brothers* **| ~ towards** *their resentment towards each other*

PHRASES **a cause/source of resentment, a feeling/sense of resentment**

reservation *noun*

1 **arrangement for a seat/room**

ADJ. **airline, hotel**

VERB + RESERVATION **have** *Do you have a reservation?* | **make** | **confirm** | **cancel**

RESERVATION + NOUN **service** | **fee** | **form**

PREP. **~ for** *I'd like to make a reservation for four people for Friday night, please.*

2 **feeling of doubt about sth**

ADJ. **considerable, deep, grave, major, serious, severe, strong** | **minor, slight** | **certain** *I have certain reservations regarding several of the clauses in the contract.* | **initial**

VERB + RESERVATION **have** | **express, voice** *NATO generals voiced reservations about making air strikes.*

RESERVATION + VERB **concern sth**

PREP. **despite ~s** *Despite his initial reservations, he came to love London.* | **with ~s** *The employees are backing the reorganization plans, with reservations.* | **without ~** *I can recommend her without reservation.* | **~ about/concerning/over/regarding** *They have expressed reservations concerning the provisions of the treaty.*

PHRASES **one/only reservation** *My one reservation concerns the performance of the vehicle in wet conditions.*

reserve *noun*

1 **supply of sth available to be used in the future**

ADJ. **great, huge, large, substantial, vast | sufficient | low, small | existing | additional | last** *It took my last reserves of strength and will to swim to the lifeboat.* **| untapped** *The region is thought to have some of the world's largest untapped oil reserves.* **| hidden** *She had hidden reserves of courage.* **| capital, cash, contingency, currency, financial, foreign currency/exchange, gold, international** *In the face of a severe crisis relating to international reserves, the government devalued the currency twice.* **| coal, energy, gas, oil | timber | food | fat** *The birds build up fat reserves to help them survive the winter.*

VERB + RESERVE **have** *We have only a small reserve of coal.* **| hold sth in, leave sth in, keep sth in** *The crack troops were held in reserve behind the front line.* **| dig into, dip into, draw on/upon, tap, use** *He had to draw on reserves of strength just to finish the race.* **| call on/up/upon, summon (up)** *her ability to summon up reserves of concentration and energy* **| build (up) | deplete, exhaust** *The company has depleted its reserves to make the purchase.* **| pay sth out of** *The dividend had to be paid out of reserves.* **| take**

RESERVE + VERB **be available | dwindle, fall**

RESERVE + NOUN **currency, funds | tank** *The plane was fitted with fuel reserve tanks for long-distance flights.*

PREP. **in ~** *The rail company has two trains in service and one in reserve.*

2 **protected area for plants/animals, etc.**

ADJ. **national | bird, forest, game, natural/nature, wildlife**

VERB + RESERVE **create, establish**

3 **quality/feeling**

ADJ. **deep, strong | natural** *They made him feel at ease, despite his natural reserve.*

PREP. **with ~** *Any contract should be treated with reserve until it has been checked.* **|** **without ~** *She trusted him without reserve* (= completely).

4 **extra player; second team**

VERB + RESERVE **play in** *He will continue to train and may play in the reserves next season.*

RESERVE + NOUN **side, team | goalkeeper, striker, etc. | game, match**

5 **extra military force**

ADJ. **army | strategic | volunteer**

RESERVE + NOUN **force, police**

reserve *verb*

ADV. **exclusively, expressly, specially, specifically, strictly** *The star has a ski slope reserved exclusively for her.* **| normally, usually** *a ceremony normally reserved for heads of state*

PREP. **for** *The car park is reserved for customers only.*

reserved *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem** *She seems quite reserved.*

ADV. **deeply, extremely, very | quite, rather | naturally** *his naturally reserved manner*

reservoir *noun*

1 **where water is stored**

ADJ. **natural | artificial, man-made | underground**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

2 **amount of sth that can be used**

ADJ. **huge, vast**

VERB + RESERVOIR **tap (into)**

PREP. **~ of** *tapping into the vast reservoir of information available on the Internet*

residence *noun*

1 **house**

ADJ. **desirable | palatial | official | royal | private | main, principal** *Versailles was the principal residence of the kings of France until 1793.* **| summer | country, town | family | student**

2 **living in a particular place**

ADJ. **long | permanent | temporary | main, normal, principal**

VERB + RESIDENCE **establish, take up** *The family took up temporary residence in the manor house.* **| remain in, stay in** *The family house was sold off but she remained in residence on the ground floor.*

RESIDENCE + NOUN **permit** *He has applied for a residence permit.*

PREP. **in ~** *The flag flying above the palace indicates that the Queen is in residence.*

PHRASES **a change of residence, a hall of residence** *The university has two halls of residence for its postgraduate students.* **| a place of residence** *The notice was addressed to her last known place of residence.*

resign *verb*

ADV. **formally**

VERB + RESIGN **be forced to, be obliged to, have to** *He was forced to resign due to ill health.* **| intend to | offer to, threaten to** *The minister offered to resign after his affair became public. Two MPs threatened to resign if the government did not agree to examine this case.* **| decide to | refuse to | call on sb to** *They called on her to resign as chief executive.*

PREP. **as** *He resigned as chairman.* **| from** *She formally resigned from the government.* **| over** *Three members of the committee resigned over the issue.*

resignation *noun*

1 **giving up your job; letter of resignation**

ADJ. **immediate | shock, sudden, surprise, unexpected | forced | mass**

VERB + RESIGNATION **hand in, submit, tender** *She handed in her resignation following the dispute over company policy.* **| announce | withdraw | offer (sb), proffer | threaten | prompt, provoke, lead to** *The accusation prompted the resignation of the cabinet minister.* **| force** *Illness forced his resignation from the squad.* **| call for, demand** *The protesters called for the immediate resignation of the minister.* **| accept** *She has refused to accept the resignation of her deputy.* **| reject**

RESIGNATION + VERB **be/become effective** *My resignation is effective from May 1.*

RESIGNATION + NOUN **letter | announcement** *His resignation announcement was widely expected.* **| speech, statement**

PREP. **~ as** *her resignation as party leader* **| ~ from** *A scandal led to his resignation from office.*

PHRASES **a call for sb's resignation, resignation on (the) grounds of sth** *She tendered her resignation on grounds of ill health.* **| a letter of resignation**

2 **willingness to accept a difficult situation**

ADJ. **weary**

PREP. **in ~** *Hearing that the train was running late, he sighed in weary resignation.* **| with ~** *She spoke with resignation.* **| ~ to** *resignation to fate*

PHRASES **a look/sigh of resignation**

resilience *noun*

ADJ. **great, remarkable | natural**

VERB + RESILIENCE **have | demonstrate, show**

PREP. **~ to** *She has shown great resilience to stress.*

PHRASES **strength and resilience**

resilient *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | make sth**

ADV. **extremely, highly, remarkably, very** *a remarkably resilient woman* **| pretty**

PREP. **to** *The body of the camera makes it highly resilient to outdoor use.*

resist *verb*

ADV. **fiercely, firmly, resolutely, strenuously, strongly, vigorously | successfully** *They successfully resisted pressure from their competitors to increase prices.* **| naturally** *People naturally resist change.* **| stubbornly | passively** *The civil population passively resisted.* **| physically | at first, initially, so far** *He has so far resisted pressure to resign.*

VERB + RESIST **be able/unable to, can/could (hardly), can't/couldn't (easily)** *She could hardly resist the urge to turn and run. Trends in the national economy confront firms with pressures they cannot easily resist.* **| can/could never, can/could no longer | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to | try to | manage to | be determined to | be helpless to, be powerless to** *She was powerless to resist the attraction that she felt to him.* **| tend to**

PHRASES **the strength to resist sth**

resistance *noun*

1 **trying to stop sth**

ADJ. **considerable, great, stiff, strong, substantial | determined, fierce, heroic, serious, spirited, stubborn | effective | token | active | passive | collective, organized | widespread | armed, military | political | popular, public | guerrilla, peasant**

VERB + RESISTANCE **mount, offer, put up** *They mounted stiff resistance to the proposal.* **| encounter, meet (with), run into** *The advancing army met with little resistance.* **| break (down), crush, overcome**

RESISTANCE + VERB **stiffen | collapse, crumble**

RESISTANCE + NOUN **movement | fighter, forces, group, leader, worker**

PREP. **without ~** *The attacks did not take place without resistance.* **| ~ against** *armed resistance against the Nazis* **| ~ to** *There was fierce resistance to the new laws.*

PHRASES **the line/path of least resistance** (= the easiest way of doing sth), **a pocket of resistance** (= an area of resistance)

2 **to a disease/drugs**

ADJ. **high | low | disease | antibiotic, drug**

VERB + RESISTANCE **have | build up, develop** *You need to build up your resistance to colds.* **| lower**

PREP. **~ to** *Aids lowers the body's resistance to infection.*

resistant *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, highly, particularly, remarkably, very | quite, relatively**

PREP. **to** *a metal that is highly resistant to corrosion*

resolution *noun*

1 formal decision taken after a vote

ADJ. **draft | formal | joint** *a joint US-British resolution* **| unanimous | ordinary | emergency, special | compromise | affirmative, negative** *(both law) An affirmative resolution of both Houses of Parliament is needed.* **| Security Council, UN, etc.**

VERB + RESOLUTION **draft | propose, put forward, table | vote on | adopt, agree, approve, carry, pass** *The resolution was carried unanimously.* **| block, reject**

RESOLUTION + VERB **be aimed at sth, call for sth** *The resolution called for the resumption of negotiations.* **| declare sth, proclaim sth** *a resolution declaring independence* **| approve sth, authorize sth** *The assembly adopted a resolution approving the scheme.* **| condemn sth** *a resolution condemning the invasion*

PREP. **under (a/the) ~** *weapons banned under Resolution 687* **| ~ on** *The General Assembly rejected the resolution on the subject of arms control.* > Special page at MEETING

2 settling a dispute

ADJ. **early, quick, rapid | final, ultimate | peaceful** *Hopes of a peaceful resolution to the conflict were fading.* **| satisfactory, successful | conflict, dispute** *methods of conflict resolution*

VERB + RESOLUTION **require | press for** *The government is pressing for an early resolution of the hostage crisis.* **| achieve, reach**

PREP. **~ to** *the likelihood of achieving a satisfactory resolution to the problem*

3 being firm and determined

ADJ. **great**

VERB + RESOLUTION **have | show** *She showed great resolution in her dealings with management.* **| lack**

4 **firm decision to do/not to do sth**

ADJ. **firm, good | New Year/New Year's**

VERB + RESOLUTION **make** *I made a New Year resolution to give up smoking.* **| keep**

5 **power to give a clear image**

ADJ. **high** *high-resolution graphics* **| low | maximum | screen | pixel** *a monitor capable of a 1,024 by 768 pixel resolution*

resolve *verb*

ADV. **completely, fully** *The matter is not yet fully resolved.* **| successfully | adequately, satisfactorily | amicably, peacefully** *We hope that the dispute can be resolved peacefully.* **| easily, readily | quickly, rapidly, speedily | immediately | eventually, finally, ultimately**

VERB + RESOLVE **attempt to, take steps to, try to | be unable to, fail to** *The two countries have failed to resolve their differences on this.* **| help (to) | be difficult to**

PREP. **by/through** *The crisis was finally resolved through high-level negotiations.*

PHRASES **an attempt/effort to resolve sth** *They met in a last-ditch attempt to resolve their differences.* **| a means/method/way of resolving sth**

resort *noun*

ADJ. **fashionable, favourite, popular | attractive, bustling, lively | modern | purpose-built | health, holiday, ski, spa, tourist | beach, coastal, lakeside, mountain, seaside | summer, winter**

RESORT + NOUN **area, town | hotel**

PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *They spent a month at a fashionable ski resort in Switzerland.*

resource *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, large, major, substantial** *The library is an enormous resource for historians of medieval France.* | **important, vital** | **adequate, sufficient** | **limited, meagre, scarce** | **renewable, sustainable, unlimited** | **finite, limited, non-renewable** | **available** | **additional, extra** | **invaluable, useful, valuable** *Time is your most valuable resource, especially in examinations.* | **untapped** | **natural** | **material, physical** | **energy, mineral, oil, water** | **capital, economic, financial** *The school has limited financial resources.* | **human, staff** | **information, learning, library, teaching** *The database could be used as a teaching resource in colleges.* | **national** | **inner, personal** *She is someone of considerable personal resources.*

VERB + RESOURCE **be rich in, have** *Australia is a country rich in natural resources. We do not have the resources* (= the money) *to update our computer software.* | **lack** | **pool, share** *We'll get by if we pool our resources.* | **allocate, distribute, provide** | **divert, reallocate, redistribute** *the government's role in diverting resources into social policies* | **draw on, exploit, manage, mobilize, tap, use** *to mobilize resources in the community to provide shelter for the homeless We need to manage our resources better.* | **deplete, use up** | **squander, waste** | **conserve**

RESOURCE + NOUN **centre** | **allocation, management** | **depletion** | **constraints, implications**

PHRASES **access to resources, the allocation/distribution/provision of resources, the exploitation of resources, a lack of resources, the use of resources** *We must make the most efficient use of the available resources.*

resourceful *adj.*

VERBS **be** *He is very clever and endlessly resourceful.*

ADV. **highly, very | endlessly**

respect *noun*

1 admiration

ADJ. **considerable, deep, great | grudging | mutual** *a relationship based on mutual respect*

VERB + RESPECT **feel, have, hold sb in** *She held him in considerable respect.* **| command, earn (sb), gain (sb), get, inspire, win (sb)** *a society in which age commands great respect* **| lose**

PREP. **~ for** *He felt a grudging respect for her talents as an organizer.*

2 polite behaviour/consideration/care

ADJ. **great, utmost | due, proper** *the respect due to his great age*

VERB + RESPECT **accord sb/sth, pay (sb/sth), show (sb/sth), treat sb/sth with** *the respect accorded to her memory He treats his grandparents with great respect.*

PREP. **out of ~** *We observed a minute's silence out of respect for the disaster victims.* **| with ~** *With all due respect, I think you've misunderstood what he said. The chainsaw is a dangerous tool?it should be used with respect.*

PHRASES **a lack of respect** *to show a lack of respect for authority* **| a mark/sign/token of respect**

3 detail/point

ADJ. **certain | different | crucial, important, significant | material**

VERB + RESPECT **differ in** *There was one respect, however, in which they differed.* **| be alike in, be identical in, be similar in, resemble sth in**

PREP. **in … ~ (s)** *The report is accurate in all material respects.* **| in ~ of** (= concerning) *A writ was served on the firm in respect of their unpaid bill.* **| with ~ to** (= concerning) *The two groups were similar with respect to income and status.*

PHRASES **in all/many/some respects** *In many respects she is like her mother.* **| in every/this respect** *The marriage was a disaster in every respect.*

respect *verb*

1 **admire sb/sth**

ADV. **deeply, greatly, really, very much**

PREP. **as** *She is widely respected as a politician.* | **for** *She was much respected for her knowledge of herbs.*

PHRASES **be highly/much/well respected** *a highly respected doctor* | **be internationally/universally/widely respected** *WWF is internationally respected for its conservation work.*

2 **pay attention to sth**

VERB + RESPECT **promise to, undertake to** *The government has promised to respect human rights.* | **fail to** *Her daughters failed to respect her last wishes.*

PHRASES **a duty to respect sth, failure to respect sth**

respectability *noun*

ADJ. **international** *The country has again achieved international respectability after years of isolation.* **| bourgeois, middle-class, working-class | academic, intellectual, political, scientific**

VERB + RESPECTABILITY **achieve, gain** *The theory has now gained scientific respectability.* **| give sth**

PHRASES **an air/a facade/a veneer of respectability**

respectable *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become**

ADV. **eminently, extremely, highly, very** *It was an eminently respectable boarding school.* **| entirely, perfectly, wholly | almost | fairly | enough** *She seems respectable enough.* **| apparently | academically, intellectually**

respite *noun*

ADJ. **brief, moment's, temporary** *a moment's respite from the ringing of the phone* **| much needed, welcome**

VERB + RESPITE **have | bring (sb), give (sb), provide (sb with)** *The tablets brought temporary respite from the excruciating pain.* **| gain (sb), win (sb)**

RESPITE + NOUN **care**

PREP. **without ~** *The storm continued for two hours without respite.* **| ~ from** *They had no respite from the demands of their children.*

PHRASES **a period of respite**

respond *verb*

1 **react**

ADV. **immediately, instantly | promptly, quickly, rapidly, swiftly | enthusiastically, favourably, positively, well** *Both sides have responded positively to the plan. Their son is responding well to the treatment.* **| forcefully, vigorously | adequately, appropriately, constructively, effectively, intelligently | adversely, aggressively, angrily | cautiously, coolly | sensitively, sympathetically | generously | magnificently** *The teams responded magnificently to the challenge.* **| accordingly** *The government needs to listen to the public and respond accordingly.* **| readily** *The plants readily respond to these stimuli.* **| directly | automatically, instinctively | flexibly | differently | merely, simply** *We do not have a strategy. We merely respond to ideas from local people.* **| emotionally, imaginatively** *to respond emotionally to the landscape* **| in kind** *The terrorists declared all-out war on the government and the government responded in kind.*

VERB + RESPOND **be able/unable to | be likely to** *She wasn't sure how he was likely to respond.* **| fail to** *His condition failed to respond to the treatment.* **| be slow to | enable sb to** *enabling teachers to respond flexibly to the needs of their students*

PREP. **by** *The government responded by tightening the law on gun ownership.* **| to** *Companies have to respond to the changing economic climate.* **| with** *The demonstrators threw stones and the police responded with tear gas.*

PHRASES **an ability/a capacity/a willingness to respond, a failure to respond**

2 **say sth in reply**

ADV. **politely | angrily | coolly | drily**

PREP. **to** *He responded politely to her questions.* **| with** *He responded with a smile when she spoke.*

response *noun*

ADJ. **encouraging, enthusiastic, favourable, good, positive | lukewarm, muted | angry, discouraging, negative | appropriate, correct | inappropriate, incorrect** *incorrect responses in a multiple choice test* **| strong** *These images are likely to evoke a strong response in the viewer.* **| direct | quick, rapid | slow | automatic, immediate | initial** *My initial response was one of anger.* **| public | natural | behavioural, emotional, physiological, political | verbal, written | immune** *the immune response to viral infections*

VERB + RESPONSE **give, make | get, have, receive** *Have you had any responses to the advertisement yet?* **| bring/call forth, draw, elicit, evoke, produce, provoke** *His comments drew an angry response from the crowd.*

RESPONSE + NOUN **rate, time** *We sent out over 100 letters but the response rate was low* (= few people replied).

PREP. **in ~ (to)** *In response, she stormed out of the room.* **| ~ from** *The response from local businesses has been muted.* **| ~ to** *What was their response to the question?*

PHRASES **(a) lack of response** *Due to lack of response the event has been cancelled.*

responsibility *noun*

1 being responsible

ADJ. **full, total | awesome, great, heavy, weighty** *It is a great responsibility looking after other people's children.* **| direct | overall | primary | ultimate** *Ultimate responsibility rests with the prime minister.* **| special | diminished** *He was found not guilty of murder on the grounds of diminished responsibility.* **| sole | collective, joint, shared | individual, personal | ministerial, parental | financial, legal, moral, social**

VERB + RESPONSIBILITY **have** *She has responsibility for public transport.* **| accept, assume, bear, shoulder, take (on/over)** *The bank refuses to accept responsibility for the mistake. Will you take responsibility for arranging the food?* **| share | lay, place** *The government of the time placed responsibility for the poor on the Church.* **| delegate, devolve, hand over** *devolving responsibility downwards so decisions are taken nearer to the people they will affect* **| abdicate, evade, shirk, shift** *to shift legal responsibility for the correct labelling of goods onto the shopkeeper* **| admit, claim** *No organization has yet claimed responsibility for the bomb attack.* **| deny, disclaim, duck** *Ducking responsibility is fatal in a democracy.* **| allocate, assign (sb), give sb | attribute** *He attributed responsibility for the killing to the secret service.* **| burden sb with | absolve sb from/of**

RESPONSIBILITY + VERB **fall on sb, lie/rest with sb**

PREP. **~ for** *Full responsibility for the fiasco lies with the PR department.* **| ~ towards** *He feels a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents.*

PHRASES **the age of criminal responsibility, the burden of responsibility** *The school governors carry a special burden of responsibility.* **| do sth on your own responsibility** (= without being told to and being willing to take the blame if it goes wrong), **a position of responsibility, a sense of responsibility**

2 job/duty

ADJ. **heavy, onerous | additional, increased | altered | caring, departmental, domestic, family, financial, managerial, ministerial, parental, professional, teaching | contractual, statutory | particular, special**

VERB + RESPONSIBILITY **have | carry out, discharge, fulfil | accept, face up to, take on, undertake** *He seems unwilling to face up to his responsibilities as a father. I don't feel ready to take on new responsibilities.* **| delegate | avoid, evade, shirk | relieve sb of**

PREP. **~ for** *The heads of school departments have particular responsibilities for the curriculum.* **| ~ to/towards** *The club has a responsibility to its members.*

PHRASES **duties and responsibilities, rights and responsibilities** *parental rights and responsibilities*

responsible *adj.*

1 **having the job/duty of doing sth**

VERBS **be | become | remain | make sb** *I am making you responsible for the cooking.*

ADV. **entirely, totally, wholly | chiefly, largely, mainly, primarily | individually | collectively, jointly** *All members of the Cabinet are collectively responsible for decisions taken.* **| formally, legally | nominally** *The company could not indicate a person even nominally responsible for staff training.* **| ultimately** *The board is ultimately responsible for policy decisions.* **| financially**

PREP. **for** *They're responsible for cleaning the engine.*

2 **being the cause of sth/to blame for sth**

VERBS **be, feel | become | consider sb, deem sb, find sb, hold sb, regard sb as, see sb as, think sb** *They held him responsible for the failure of the policy.*

ADV. **entirely, fully, wholly | partially, partly | directly | indirectly | personally | single-handedly, solely** *He was almost single-handedly responsible for the flourishing drug trade in the town.* **| ultimately | somehow** *Did he think her somehow responsible for Eddie's death?* **| morally**

PREP. **for** *Who was responsible for the mistake?*

3 **having to report to sb/sth**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **directly | ultimately** *a complex web of party bodies ultimately responsible to the Central Committee*

PREP. **to** *The prime minister is directly responsible to Parliament.*

4 **showing/needing good sense and reliability**

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | fairly, quite | ecologically, environmentally** *The organization needs to become more environmentally responsible.* **| morally, politically, socially** *allocating resources in a morally responsible way*

responsive *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *The company is highly responsive to changes in demand.* **| fully | fairly, quite | directly, immediately | sexually**

PREP. **to** *She's fairly responsive to new ideas.*

rest *noun*

ADJ. **complete | good, long | little, short | well-deserved, well-earned | bed** *She's on complete bed rest, antibiotics and plenty of fluids.*

VERB + REST **find** *(formal)*, **get, have, take** *Her heart would find no rest until she knew the truth. Get some rest while you can. I had a good long rest before the party.* **| need | come to** *The ball rolled down the hill and came to rest against a tree.*

REST + NOUN **day, period | area | home**

PREP. **at ~** *At rest* (= when not moving) *the insect looks like a dead leaf.* **| ~ from** *The doctor advised him to take a complete rest from football.*

PHRASES **a day of rest**

rest *verb*

ADV. **casually, gently, lightly, loosely | heavily | comfortably** *Her head was resting comfortably against his chest.* **| peacefully, quietly | momentarily | awhile**

VERB + REST **let sth** *She let his hand rest heavily on hers.*

PREP. **against** *She rested the ladder against the wall.* **| on/upon** *His hands rested lightly on her shoulders.*

PHRASES **rest easy** *I can rest easy* (= stop worrying) *knowing that she's safely home.*
PHRASAL VERBS rest on/upon sth

ADV. **solely, squarely** *It is rare for the responsibility for causing conflict to rest solely on one side.* **rest with sb**

ADV. **squarely** *Surely the blame rests squarely with Sir Ralph?* **| ultimately** *The decision ulitmately rests with the council.*

restaurant *noun*

ADJ. **large | little, small | elegant, excellent, fine, good, smart, stylish | cheap, expensive | local | crowded | family | candlelit, intimate |** a **la carte | self-service | take-away | licensed | Chinese, French, etc. | fast-food, fish, seafood**

VERB + RESTAURANT **go (out) to** *If you're too tired to cook, let's go to a restaurant.* **| leave, walk out of** *They walked out of the restaurant without paying.* **| manage, run** *She runs a family fish restaurant on the seafront.*

RESTAURANT + VERB **offer sth, serve sth, specialize in sth** *a restaurant offering a wide variety of local specialities The hotel restaurant serves a buffet breakfast. an Asian restaurant specializing in Thai cuisine*

RESTAURANT + NOUN **manager, owner, staff | chain**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *They argued the whole time we were at the restaurant.* **| in a/the ~** *We had a quick meal in a small local restaurant.*

restoration *noun*

1 **returning sth to its original condition**

ADJ. **complete, full | extensive** *Many of the older paintings have undergone extensive restoration.*

VERB + RESTORATION **carry out | undergo | await, be in need of, need** *This historic watermill is currently awaiting restoration.*

RESTORATION + NOUN **programme, project, work**

PREP. **for ~** *The palace is closed for restoration.* **| under ~** *a steam engine under restoration*

2 **bringing sth back into use/existence**

ADJ. **full** *the full restoration of Sino-US relations* **| immediate** *Protesters called for the immediate restoration of civil liberties.*

PHRASES **the restoration of diplomatic relations, the restoration of the monarchy**

restore *verb*

1 **bring back a situation/feeling**

ADV. **quickly, soon** *Order was quickly restored.* | **formally** *Diplomatic relations were formally restored.*

VERB + RESTORE **need to** *We need to restore public confidence in the industry.* | **attempt to, try to** | **help (to)** | **be designed to, be intended to**

PREP. **to** *Peace has now been restored to the area.*

PHRASES **an attempt/effort to restore sth** *an attempt to restore the company's finances* | **be aimed at restoring sth, measures to restore sth, a way of restoring sth**

2 **repair/rebuild sth**

ADV. **extensively** *The interior has recently been extensively restored.* | **completely, fully** | **partially, partly** | **beautifully, handsomely, sympathetically, tastefully** | **carefully, faithfully, lovingly, painstakingly**

PREP. **to** *The train has been restored to full working order.*

PHRASES **newly/recently restored, restore sth to its former glory** *The buildings have now been restored to their former glory.*

restrain *verb*

ADV. **barely** *I barely restrained myself from hitting him.* **| effectively | forcibly, physically** *She had to be physically restrained.*

VERB + RESTRAIN **be unable to, can't/couldn't, can/could no longer** *She could not restrain a flash of pride.* **| seek to, try to | manage to**

PREP. **from** *He restrained himself from shouting at her.*

PHRASES **an attempt/effort to restrain sb**

restrained *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **remarkably, unusually, very** *I thought she was remarkably restrained in the circumstances.* **| fairly, quite**

restraint *noun*

1 **limit/control on sth**

ADJ. **effective | voluntary** *talks on voluntary wage restraint* **| conventional** *what happens when the conventional restraints on human cruelty are removed* **| physical** *Sometimes the care workers need to use physical restraint on the hospital patients.* **| budgetary, economic, expenditure, financial, fiscal, monetary, pay, spending, wage | contractual, judicial, legal, regulatory | cultural, moral, social**

VERB + RESTRAINT **impose, use | remove**

PREP. **without ~** *Prices continued to rise without restraint.* **| ~ on/upon** *The government imposed restraints on spending.*

2 **behaving in a calm/moderate way**

ADJ. **considerable, great, remarkable | mutual** *the mutual restraint shown by police and protesters.* **| sexual**

VERB + RESTRAINT **exercise, show** *Journalists have exercised remarkable restraint in not reporting all the sordid details of the case.* **| appeal for, call for**

PREP. **~ by** *The government called for restraint by both sides.*

restrict *verb*

ADV. **greatly, seriously, severely | further** *The government is considering new laws which will further restrict people's access to firearms.* **| effectively | unduly, unnecessarily | apparently | deliberately**

VERB + RESTRICT **attempt to, seek to, try to | tend to** *Having small children tends to restrict your freedom.*

PREP. **to** *I'm restricting myself to one glass of wine a day.*

PHRASES **an attempt to restrict sth** *attempts to restrict the sale of alcohol* **| measures to restrict sth**

restricted *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **heavily, highly, narrowly, seriously, severely, very** *New heavy industries were concentrated in narrowly restricted areas. He has a severely restricted diet.* **| increasingly | fairly, rather, relatively, somewhat | apparently | unduly** *Access to higher education has been unduly restricted for people with disabilities.*

PREP. **to** *Access to the documents remains restricted to civil servants.*

restriction *noun*

ADJ. **severe, tight, tough | major | petty** *The removal of petty restrictions has made life easier.* **| absolute | further | artificial** *free movement of goods between member countries without any artificial restrictions* **| proposed | contractual, government, legal, statutory | advertising, age, credit, financial, import, parking, price, reporting** (= restrictions on information that newspapers may report), **speed, time, trade, travel, visa**

VERB + RESTRICTION **impose, introduce, place** *The government has introduced tough new import restrictions.* **| lift, remove** *The press asked for restrictions on reporting the war to be lifted.* **| accept | be subject to** *The right of sale is subject to certain restrictions.*

RESTRICTION + VERB **affect sth, apply** *The 30 mph speed restriction applies in all built-up areas.*

RESTRICTION + NOUN **order**

PREP. **without ~** *Citizens of the EU can travel without restriction within the EU.* **| ~ on/upon** *The regulations were seen as a restriction on personal freedom.*

restrictive *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | increasingly | fairly, rather, somewhat | unduly, unnecessarily** *He argued that the law was unduly restrictive.*

result *noun*

1 **outcome/effect**

ADJ. **good, positive** *For the best results buy one of the more expensive brands.* **| disastrous, unfortunate | direct, indirect | net | inevitable, logical | dramatic, impressive, spectacular, surprising | lasting | desired** *And did your intervention produce the desired result?*

VERB + RESULT **have, produce** *My interference had rather an unfortunate result.* **| achieve, get, obtain** *This was not the result we had hoped to achieve.*

PREP. **as a/the ~** *These actions were taken as a direct result of the strike.* **| with a/the ~** *Parking restrictions were lifted, with the result that the road is permanently blocked by cars.*

2 **desired effect**

ADJ. **concrete, tangible** *We have yet to see any concrete results from the research.*

VERB + RESULT **come up with, get, produce | give, show** *When is all your effort going to show some results?*

3 **final position in a competition**

ADJ. **election | football, racing, etc.**

VERB + RESULT **announce, read out** *The announcer was reading out the football results.*

4 **(often results) mark given for an examination**

ADJ. **encouraging, good | disappointing, poor | exam, examination | A-level, degree, etc.**

VERB + RESULT **get, have** *When do you get your exam results?*

5 **of an experiment, a medical test, an investigation, etc.**

ADJ. **interim, preliminary | experimental, research | test, X-ray | referendum, survey**

VERB + RESULT **wait for** *The doctor is still waiting for my results.* **| get, have, receive** *I haven't had the X-ray results yet.* **| analyse, evaluate | present, publish** *They hope to publish their results next month.* **| give, yield** *All three methods yielded identical results.*

RESULT + VERB **demonstrate sth, indicate sth, reveal sth, show sth, suggest sth** *Preliminary results suggest that there is no cause for concern.* **| confirm sth, support sth**

PREP. **pending the ~(s) of** *Work on the scheme has been halted, pending the results of a judicial enquiry.* **| ~ from** *evaluating the results from various recent surveys*

result *verb* **PHRASAL VERBS result in sth**

ADV. **inevitably** *This move will inevitably result in the loss of a lot of jobs.* **| not automatically, not necessarily | easily** *Complacency could easily result in tragedy.* **| quickly | eventually**

VERB + RESULT **can/could, may/might, should, will/would | be expected to, be liable to, be likely/unlikely to** *Such measures are likely to result in decreased motivation of the workforce.*

resuscitation *noun*

ADJ. **emergency, mouth-to-mouth**

VERB + RESUSCITATION **give sb** *We gave him mouth-to-mouth resuscitation and heart massage.*

RESUSCITATION + NOUN **equipment**

retailer *noun*

ADJ. **big, large, leading, major** *the country's biggest food retailer* **| small | local | high street** *High street retailers reported a marked increase in sales before Christmas.* **| multiple | independent, niche, specialist | carpet, clothing, DIY, electrical, fashion, food, etc.**

retain *verb*

ADV. **still | no longer | somehow** *Despite the decay the mosque somehow retained a profound grandeur.*

VERB + RETAIN **be keen to, hope to, want to, wish to | attempt to, seek to, struggle to, try to** *He struggled to retain control of the situation.* **| manage to | help (to) | be allowed to, be entitled to, have the right to** *He was allowed to retain his parliamentary seat.*

PREP. **as** *The president retained her as his chief adviser.*

retaliation *noun*

ADJ. **massive | swift | trade | nuclear**

VERB + RETALIATION **bring, prompt, provoke** *a casual remark that brought swift retaliation from her boyfriend* **| threaten | fear**

PREP. **in ~** *He never said a single word in retaliation.* **| in ~ for** *They killed two men in retaliation for a bomb attack the previous day.* **| ~ against** *fearing retaliation against government troops* **| ~ by/from** *the possibility of retaliation by other governments* **| ~ for** *retaliation for the bombing of civilians*

PHRASES **an act of retaliation**

retarded *adj.*

VERBS **be, look**

ADV. **severely** *Many of the children are severely retarded.* **| slightly |** **educationally, emotionally, mentally** *a mentally retarded child*

rethink *noun*

ADJ. **complete | fundamental, major, radical**

VERB + RETHINK **have**

PREP. **~ of** *to have a fundamental rethink of policy*

rethink *verb*

ADV. **radically**

VERB + RETHINK **be forced to, have to, need to** *I think we may have to rethink our policies fairly radically.*

retire *verb*

ADV. **early** *He is hoping to retire early on medical grounds.*

VERB + RETIRE **be compelled to, be forced to, be obliged to, have to** *Anderson was forced to retire because of injury at the age of 26.* **| be due to, plan to** *Mr McNeil is due to retire later this month.* **| decide to**

PREP. **as** *He recently retired as head teacher of their school.* **| at** *Most women retire at 60.* **| from** *She retired from the bank last year.*

retirement *noun*

ADJ. **early, premature** *A knee injury forced him into premature retirement.* **| active | comfortable, happy** *He provided for a comfortable retirement by selling the business.* **| compulsory, enforced** *compulsory retirement at 60 her enforced retirement from the sport*

VERB + RETIREMENT **consider, look forward to, think about | approach, be close to, near | plan (for), prepare for, provide for** *helping you to plan your retirement* **| reach | announce | go into | come out of** *He is going to come out of retirement for this one last concert.* **| force sb into | mark** *They presented him with an engraved watch to mark his retirement.* **| enjoy, spend** *I intend to spend my retirement travelling.*

RETIREMENT + NOUN **age | benefits, package, pension | gift, party | home**

PREP. **after/before (your) ~** *After her retirement from the stage she began to drink.* **| at (your) ~** *Your pension plan provides a cash lump sum at retirement.* **| for (your) ~** *saving for her retirement* **| in (your) ~** *His father was now living in retirement in France. She has found a new hobby in her retirement.* **| on (your) ~** *a gift from the firm on his retirement* **| until (your) ~** *He remained in the post until his retirement last year.* **| ~ as** *her retirement as sales director* **| ~ at** *retirement at fifty-five* **| ~ from** *his retirement from first-class cricket*

PHRASES **the age of retirement** *The age of retirement for all employees is 60.* **| take early retirement** *The company suggested that he should take early retirement.* **| wish sb a long and happy retirement**

retort *noun*

ADJ. **quick, sharp | angry, caustic, furious**

VERB + RETORT **hurl, make** *He opened his mouth to make a caustic retort.* **| bite back, refrain from, suppress** *He bit back a sharp retort.* **| bring, draw, meet with** *Her remark drew bitter retorts from the unemployed workers.* **| sting sb into** *He was stung into an angry retort.*

retort *verb*

ADV. **quickly | angrily, bitterly, coolly, crisply, curtly, drily, flatly, furiously, grimly, harshly, sarcastically, sharply, stiffly** *'How dare you!' he retorted angrily.*

retreat *noun*

1 retreating/leaving

ADJ. **hasty, headlong, rapid** *I decided to beat a hasty retreat.* | **humiliating, ignominious, undignified** | **dignified, orderly, strategic, tactful, tactical** *I made a tactful retreat before they started arguing.*

VERB + RETREAT **beat, make** | **lead** | **order, sound** | **force/send/throw sb into** *Eventually the police forced the crowd into retreat.* | **block, cut off** | **cover** *We covered his retreat with bursts of gunfire.*

PREP. **in ~** *The enemy was now in retreat.* | **on the ~** *fresh evidence that trade unionism is on the retreat* | **~ from** *He took part in the retreat from Paris.* | **~ into** *her retreat into a fantasy world of her own* | **~ to** *an ignominious retreat to the River Vistula*

PHRASES **be in full retreat** *On the eastern front the army was in full retreat.* | **a line of retreat** *We succeeded in cutting off the enemy's line of retreat.*

2 quiet and private place

ADJ. **favourite, perfect** *the perfect retreat for a romantic honeymoon* | **private, secret** | **peaceful** | **country, rural** *designed as a gentleman's country retreat* | **summer, winter** | **holiday, weekend**

VERB + RETREAT **turn sth into, use sth as** *She plans to use it as a winter retreat.* | **go into** *He went into retreat at his country home to escape the attention of the media.*

PREP. **~ for** *a summer retreat for the rich* | **~ from** *staying here at his secret retreat from life in the busy city*

3 private time at a quiet place

ADJ. **religious, spiritual**

VERB + RETREAT **go on** *She goes on a spiritual retreat for two weeks every summer.*

retreat *verb*

ADV. **hastily, quickly, rapidly, swiftly | further | back** *He retreated hastily back to his car.*

VERB + RETREAT **try to | order sb to** *The army was ordered to retreat.*

PREP. **before** *They retreated before the Americans.* **| behind** *He retreated behind the table.* **| from, in the face of** *He retreated in the face of strong opposition.* **| into** *He retreated into his own world.* **| to** *She retreated from the busy office to her own room.*

retribution *noun*

ADJ. **fair, just | divine**

VERB + RETRIBUTION **demand, seek | exact | fear**

RETRIBUTION + VERB **come, follow** *Violent retribution soon followed.*

PREP. **in ~** *His armies invaded their lands in retribution.* **| ~ against** *retribution against wrongdoers* **| ~ for** *He saw his suffering as retribution for the sins of his past life.* **| ~ from** *Members of Parliament clearly feared retribution from their constituents.* **| ~ on** *She saw the sentence as just retribution on the man who had assaulted her.*

PHRASES **an act of retribution, fear of retribution** *The victim did not report the incident for fear of retribution.*

return *noun*

1 **coming/going back; giving sth back**

ADJ. **complete, full** *a full return to health* | **gradual** | **imminent** | **brief** | **emotional, happy** | **dramatic**

VERB + RETURN **make** *Shevchenko made an emotional return to his former club.* | **mark** *The victory marked Williams' return to top form.* | **await, wait for** | **greet** *The smell of cooking greeted his return home.* | **celebrate** | **delay, put off** | **demand** *He demanded the return of his money.* | **call for, push for, vote for** *The UN continued to call for a return to civilian rule.*

RETURN + NOUN **address, date**

PREP. **in ~ (for)** *She gave them all the help she could, and asked for nothing in return.* | **on sb's ~** *He promised to visit us on his return.* | **~ from** *The date of their return from India is a fortnight from now.* | **~ to** *Jones is hoping for an early return to racing after her injury.*

PHRASES **by return (of post)** *All orders will be dispatched by return of post* (= by the next post).

2 **(also returns) profit**

ADJ. **attractive, big, excellent, generous, good, high, substantial** | **acceptable, adequate, decent, fair, healthy, reasonable** | **inadequate, low, marginal, meagre, poor, small** | **diminishing** *the law of diminishing returns* | **immediate** | **long-term** | **annual, monthly, quarterly, etc.** | **expected, likely, possible, potential, projected** | **gross, pre-tax** | **after-tax, net** | **tax-free**

VERB + RETURN **achieve, get, make, receive** *You should get a good return on this investment.* | **boost, enhance, improve, increase, maximize** *to maximize returns to shareholders* | **estimate** | **give (sb), offer (sb), produce, provide, show, yield** *The venture yielded a net return of £15 million.* | **represent** *These figures represent a return of 8.5% per annum.*

RETURN + VERB **increase** | **decline, decrease**

PREP. **~ on** *the return on capital/investment/savings*

PHRASES **a rate of return**

3 **ticket to travel to a place and back again**

ADJ. **day, period | business class, economy, first-class, standard, tourist class**

RETURN + NOUN **ticket | flight, journey**

return *verb*

ADV. **recently | shortly | eventually | safely** *Our aircraft all returned safely to their bases.* **| voluntarily | forcibly** *The asylum seekers are to be forcibly returned to their home countries.* **| home**

VERB + RETURN **be due to** *She is due to return to school in a fortnight.* **| be expected to, be likely to, be/look set to | be allowed to | decide to, expect to, hope to, intend to, plan to, want to, wish to | agree to, promise to | fail to** *Suspicions were aroused when he failed to return to work on Monday morning.* **| force sb to** *Lack of cash forced her to return to work.*

PREP. **from** *She had recently returned from Paris.* **| to** *She never returned the book to me.*

reunion *noun*

ADJ. **emotional, tearful | class, college, school, university | family | annual | grand**

VERB + REUNION **have, hold, plan** *The reunion is held every two years.* **| arrange, organize | attend, go to | celebrate** *Let's have a party to celebrate our reunion.*

REUNION + VERB **take place**

REUNION + NOUN **dinner, lunch**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *At the reunion I met a friend I hadn't seen for twenty years.* **| ~ between** *an emotional reunion between mother and son* **| ~ for** *organizing a reunion for former company employees* **| ~ with** *a tearful reunion with his family*

rev *noun*

ADJ. **high | low** *The engine is almost silent at low revs.* **| engine**

VERB + REV **do** *On average the engine does 4,000 revs per minute.*

REV + NOUN **counter**

PHRASES **revs a/per minute** > See REVOLUTION

revealing *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **deeply, highly, particularly, very** *some deeply revealing insights into his life* **| quite, rather**

PREP. **about** *The book is very revealing about young people's views of themselves.*

revelation *noun*

ADJ. **amazing, astonishing, devastating, embarrassing, sensational, shattering, shock, startling, sudden | fresh, latest, recent | divine** *He claimed to know these things by divine revelation.*

QUANT. **flash** *A sudden flash of revelation came to him.*

VERB + REVELATION **come as, prove** *To many younger members of her audience, these performances must have come as a revelation.*

REVELATION + VERB **come** *The embarrassing revelations came just hours before he was to make his speech.*

PREP. **~ about/concerning** *fresh revelations concerning their private lives* **| ~ for** *The demonstration proved something of a revelation for our teachers.* **| ~ from** *He claimed to have had a revelation from God.* **| ~ to** *His acting ability was a revelation to us all.*

revenge *noun*

ADJ. **sweet**

VERB + REVENGE **seek, want | exact, get, have, take, wreak** *He vowed to take his revenge on the man who had killed his brother.*

REVENGE + NOUN **attack, killing**

PREP. **in ~** *The attack was in revenge for the deaths of two loyalist prisoners.* **| ~ for** *revenge for the insult* **| ~ on** *taking revenge on her attacker*

PHRASES **an act of revenge** *The bombing was an act of revenge for the shooting of two young boys.* **| a desire for revenge** *The accusations were driven by a desire for revenge.*

revenue *noun*

ADJ. **annual, yearly | expected, potential** *the firm's expected annual revenue* **| overall, total, worldwide | additional, extra | considerable, substantial | lost** *Tax fraud costs the country millions in lost revenue.* **| government, public, tax** *the main sources of public revenue* **| advertising, export, oil, sales, tourism, tourist, etc.**

VERB + REVENUE **depend on, need, rely on** *These television companies rely on advertising revenue for their funds.* **| earn, get, raise | collect** *The central government collects the tax revenue on behalf of local authorities.* **| spend, use | bring in, generate, produce, yield** *The project will not generate any revenue until 2010.* **| increase | reduce | lose**

REVENUE + VERB **be derived from sth, come from sth** *Their government's revenues come mainly from direct taxes.* **| go up, grow, rise | drop, fall, go down**

PREP. **in ~** *a drop in revenue* **| ~ from** *revenues from the sale of oil*

PHRASES **loss of revenue, a source of revenue** *Tourism is the island's main source of revenue.* > Special page at BUSINESS

reverence *noun*

ADJ. **deep, great, profound | due, proper**

VERB + REVERENCE **have | hold sb in** *He is still held in great reverence throughout the country.* **| inspire** *a painting that inspires deep reverence for nature*

PREP. **in ~** *I closed my eyes in reverence.* **| with ~** *She spoke of them with profound reverence.* **| ~ for** *reverence for human life* **| ~ to/towards** *Children are taught to show respect and reverence towards their grandparents.*

reversal *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total | dramatic, sudden | apparent | policy | role** *Some people looking after elderly parents have trouble with the role reversal involved.*

VERB + REVERSAL **amount to, mark, represent** *This represents an apparent reversal of previous US policy.* **| bring about, lead to, result in**

PREP. **~ in** *the dramatic reversal in population decline* **| ~ of** *a reversal of current trends*

PHRASES **a reversal of fortunes** *Industrial unrest and cheaper imports played their part in the company's reversal of fortunes.*

reverse *noun*

1 **opposite**

ADJ. **exact**

VERB + REVERSE **do** *If you tell children to do something, they will often do the exact reverse.*

PREP. **on the ~** (= on the opposite side) *The coin has a date on one side and the emperor's head on the reverse.*

2 **gear**

VERB + REVERSE **put sth in/into, throw sth into** *I put the car in reverse.*

REVERSE + NOUN **gear**

3 **problem**

ADJ. **major, serious**

VERB + REVERSE **experience, have, meet with, suffer** *Their forces have suffered serious reverses in recent months.*

reverse *verb*

1 **move backwards**

ADV. **carefully** *She carefully reversed the lorry up the narrow driveway.* **| slowly | in, out**

PREP. **into** *The car reversed into a hedge.* **| out of** *He reversed slowly out of the garage.*

2 **change sth to the opposite**

ADV. **dramatically, radically | completely, exactly, totally** *The decline in this industry has now been completely reversed.* **| almost | partially, partly | simply** *To solve the puzzle, simply reverse the order of the numbers.* **| quickly, rapidly | suddenly**

VERB + REVERSE **seek to, try to | fail to**

reversible *adj.*

VERBS **be** *The operation is easily reversible.*

ADV. **easily, readily | completely, totally**

review *noun*

1 **considering sth again**

ADJ. **complete, comprehensive, extensive, full, full-scale, fundamental, in-depth, major, overall, systematic, thorough, wide-ranging | brief, rapid, short | urgent | annual, periodic, regular** *the government's annual policy review* **| constant, continuous | critical** *The first chapter presents a critical review of the existing nursery education system.* **| government, independent, internal, judicial | financial, pay, performance, policy, rent**

VERB + REVIEW **ask for, call for, campaign for, press for, seek** *Greenpeace will seek a judicial review if a full public enquiry is not held.* **| announce, order | carry out, conduct, do, hold, undertake | present**

REVIEW + VERB **take place | cover sth, deal with sth | conclude sth, indicate sth, propose sth, recommend sth, suggest sth**

REVIEW + NOUN **body, committee, group**

PREP. **due for ~** *The rent is due for review.* **| under ~** *The matter is still under review.* **| ~ by** *a review by the court*

2 **report on a film, restaurant, etc.**

ADJ. **enthusiastic, favourable, glowing, good, rave | bad, hostile, poor, scathing** *The show has good audience figures despite poor reviews in the press.* **| critical | mixed** *The book received mixed reviews.* **| book, film**

VERB + REVIEW **do, write** *I'm doing a review for the local paper.* **| give sth | get, have, receive, win | open to** *Their new musical opened to glowing reviews.* **| read, see** *Did you see the review in 'The Times'?*

REVIEW + VERB **appear** *His review appeared in yesterday's paper.*

REVIEW + NOUN **copy**

review *verb*

1 examine sth again

ADV. **comprehensively, fully, thoroughly | extensively, widely | carefully | briefly | urgently** *Safety procedures are being urgently reviewed after a chemical leak at the factory.* **| currently** *We are currently reviewing the situation.* **| constantly, regularly | annually, from time to time, periodically** *This figure will be reviewed from time to time in the light of inflation.* **| critically** *Pull out your budget and critically review each line on it.*

VERB + REVIEW **agree to, promise to | ask sb to | decline to, refuse to**

PHRASES **review sth in the light of sth** *This case should be reviewed in the light of new evidence.*

2 write a report of a book/film, etc.

ADV. **favourably** *The film has been favourably reviewed in a number of papers.* **| critically**

revise *verb*

ADV. **extensively, drastically, heavily, radically, substantially** *The text has been quite radically revised.* **| completely, fully, thoroughly | slightly | constantly, continually** *The procedures are continually revised?it is very difficult to keep up with the latest version.* **| periodically | downwards, upwards**

VERB + REVISE **be forced to, have to** *The estimate for the building work had to be revised upwards.* **| be necessary to**

PREP. **from, to** *The figure has now been revised from £1 million to £2 million.*

revision *noun*

1 making changes

ADJ. **complete, considerable, drastic, extensive, fundamental, major, radical, substantial, thorough | minor | constant, frequent | downward, upward** *an upward revision of government expenditure plans* **| policy, treaty**

VERB + REVISION **propose, recommend, suggest | call for, demand** *They called for revisions to the treaty.* **| be open to, be subject to** *Our conclusions are always open to revision in the light of fresh evidence.* **| undergo** *The scheme has recently undergone drastic revision.* **| agree (to), announce, approve** *In October Parliament approved a revision of the budget.* **| bring about, lead to, result in | carry out, complete, conduct, make, undertake**

PREP. **~ in** *This has brought about a radical revision in the style of school management.* **| ~ to** *revisions to the plan*

PHRASES **the process of revision** *The process of revision continued at rehearsals.*

2 studying

VERB + REVISION **do** *I've got to do some maths revision tonight.*

REVISION + NOUN **class, course, lesson | question**

PREP. **~ for** *revision for tomorrow's history exam*

revival *noun*

ADJ. **great, major, marked | modern, recent | cultural, economic, industrial, literary, religious, etc.** *The late 19th century was a time of religious revival.*

VERB + REVIVAL **enjoy, experience, undergo** *His work is enjoying a revival in popularity.* **| stage** *The economy has staged something of a revival in the last year.* **| bring about, cause, lead to, spark, stimulate** *The exhibition has stimulated a revival of interest in the Impressionists.* **| see** *The period saw a great revival in the wine trade.*

PREP. **~ in** *a revival in the fortunes of the Democratic Party* **| ~ of** *a revival of ancient skills*

PHRASES **a revival of interest** *the revival of interest in local radio* **| signs of (a) revival** *He claimed the housing market was showing signs of a revival.*

revive *verb*

1 **bring sth back**

ADV. **quickly, rapidly** *Banks and businesses had been rapidly reviving business activities in China.* **| suddenly**

VERB + REVIVE **try to** *trying to revive some of the old customs* **| help (to), help sb (to)** *the country's readiness to help revive the economic fortunes of its neighbours*

PHRASES **an attempt/effort to revive sth** *attempts to revive falling sales* **| be aimed at reviving sth** *an initiative aimed at reviving talks on the country's political future*

2 **make sb conscious again**

VERB + REVIVE **try to**

PREP. **with** *They revived him with cold water.*

PHRASES **an attempt/effort to revive sb** *Attempts to revive her failed and she was dead on arrival at hospital.*

revolt *noun*

ADJ. **great** *The Great Revolt of 1381 may have been caused by attempts to keep wages down.* **| full-scale, general, large-scale, mass, popular, serious, widespread** *There was a general revolt against the leadership at the party congress.* **| open** *Parliament came out in open revolt against the president.* **| armed | peasant/ peasant's, shareholder's, student, etc.**

VERB + REVOLT **cause, prompt, provoke, stir up | lead** *a student-led revolt* **| stage | control, crush, deal with, put down, quash, suppress** *The revolt was suppressed with total ruthlessness.*

REVOLT + VERB **break out** *Revolt broke out when the government decided to raise the price of bread.* **| spread | overthrow sb/sth** *The regime was overthrown by a popular revolt.*

PREP. **in ~** *The farmers rose in revolt.* **| ~ against** *the revolt against the poll tax in Britain* **| ~ by** *a revolt by backbenchers* **| ~ over** *the farmers' revolt over imported meat* **| ~ within** *revolt within the party*

revolution *noun*

1 **changing the political system**

ADJ. **successful | bloody, violent** *Thousands of people were killed in the bloody revolution that toppled the government.* **| bloodless, peaceful | popular | political | anti-communist, anti-democratic, etc. | communist, socialist, etc. | palace | bourgeois, proletarian | world** *Some Marxists still believe that socialism will one day triumph through world revolution.*

VERB + REVOLUTION **carry out, conduct, fight, foment, stage** *The activists were charged with fomenting revolution.* **| crush, put down | call for**

REVOLUTION + VERB **break out | spread | overthrow sth, topple sth** *the revolution which overthrew the old regime* **| fail** *the failed 1911 revolution*

PREP. **~ against** *a revolution against communist rule*

PHRASES **the outbreak of the revolution, revolution from above/below** (= fought by people already in power/by people without political power), **the threat of revolution**

2 **complete change in methods, opinions, etc.**

ADJ. **quiet** *There has been a quiet revolution in the way writing is taught.* **| complete | virtual | minor | agrarian, agricultural, computer, cultural, economic, electronic, environmental, industrial, political, scientific, sexual, social, technological**

VERB + REVOLUTION **achieve, bring (about)** *The coming of television brought about a revolution in people's leisure activities.* **| undergo** *Marketing has undergone a revolution in recent years.* **| embrace, welcome** *Doctors have welcomed the fitness revolution.*

REVOLUTION + VERB **take place** *As the eighteenth century wore on, an agricultural revolution took place.* **| transform sth** *The computer revolution has transformed the workplace.*

PREP. **~ in** *He achieved a virtual revolution in the way music is recorded.*

3 **movement around sth; one complete turn**

ADJ. **complete, full** *One full revolution of the knob will open the hatch.*

VERB + REVOLUTION **make**

PREP. **through a ~** *The earth turns through one complete revolution approximately every twenty-four hours.* **| ~ about/around/round** *How long does it take for the planet Jupiter to make a complete revolution around the sun?*

PHRASES **revolutions a/per minute** > See REV

revolver *noun*

ADJ. **army, service**

VERB + REVOLVER **load | draw | aim | fire | shoot sb with | be armed with, carry**

revulsion *noun*

ADJ. **deep, utter | widespread** *The killing caused widespread revulsion.* **| instinctive**

VERB + REVULSION **be filled with, feel | cause | express | conceal**

PREP. **in/with ~** *The children shrank back from him in revulsion.* **| ~ against** *public revulsion against violence in our society* **| ~ at** *He tried to conceal his instinctive revulsion at the idea.* **| ~ for** *He was filled with hatred and revulsion for everything about her.* **| ~ towards** *She seems to feel revulsion towards her own children.*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of revulsion**

reward *noun*

1 for effort, etc.

ADJ. **considerable, great, high, huge, rich** *Top athletes enjoy rich rewards.* **| fitting, just, suitable, well-deserved | poor, scant** *It was a poor reward for years of devoted service.* **| tangible** *Victory brought glory as well as more tangible rewards.* **| economic, financial, material, monetary**

VERB + REWARD **earn, enjoy, gain, get, obtain, reap, receive** *We are just starting to reap the rewards of careful long-term planning.* **| bring, have, provide** *Hard work usually brings its own rewards.* **| deserve** *You deserve a reward for all your efforts.*

PREP. **as a ~** *Give yourself some time off as a reward.* **| ~ for** *a reward for hard work rewards for employees who do their jobs well*

PHRASES **reward enough** *The look on her face when I told her was reward enough.*

2 for helping the police

ADJ. **big, huge, large, substantial | $20,000, £10,000, etc. | cash**

VERB + REWARD **offer, put up | give sb, pay sb | claim | get, receive**

REWARD + NOUN **money**

PREP. **~ for** *There is a reward for information leading to an arrest.*

reward *verb* **(**often **be rewarded)**

ADV. **amply, generously, handsomely, highly, well** *You will be handsomely rewarded for your loyalty. highly rewarded occupations* (= those that pay well) **| poorly | adequately, duly, properly, suitably** *We must make sure that effort is properly rewarded.* **| justly | further | immediately, promptly, quickly | eventually, finally**

PREP. **for** *He was duly rewarded for his outstanding contribution to the arts.* **| with** *Her efforts were justly rewarded with a British Empire Medal.*

rewarding *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | find sth** *I found it immensely rewarding working with the less able children.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, immensely, particularly, richly, very | intrinsically** *I did not expect the job to be intrinsically rewarding.* **| potentially | mutually** *a mutually rewarding partnership* **| financially** *a satisfying as well as a financially rewarding career*

rewrite *verb*

ADV. **drastically, extensively, substantially | completely | slightly**

PHRASES **an attempt to rewrite sth** *attempts to rewrite history*

rhetoric *noun*

ADJ. **empty, mere** *Her speech was just empty rhetoric.* **| militant, powerful, radical | government, official | nationalist, patriotic, political, revolutionary, sectarian**

VERB + RHETORIC **adopt, engage in, resort to, use** *He was quite prepared to use militant rhetoric in attacking his opponents.*

PREP. **behind/beneath the ~** *Behind all the rhetoric, his relations with the army are dangerously poised.* **| despite the ~** *Little has changed, despite the rhetoric about reform.* **| ~ about/concerning/on** *official rhetoric on the virtues of large families*

rheumatism *noun*

ADJ. **chronic**

VERB + RHEUMATISM **get | have, suffer from | relieve** *The pills help to relieve my rheumatism.* > Special page at ILLNESS

rhyme *noun*

1 **using words that have the same sound as each other**

ADJ. **internal**

VERB + RHYME **write (in)**

RHYME + NOUN **scheme**

PREP. **in ~** *a story in rhyme*

2 **word that has the same sound as another**

ADJ. **half**

PREP. **~ for** *Can you think of a rhyme for ‘tragic’?*

3 **short piece of writing with rhyming words**

ADJ. **nonsense | nursery**

VERB + RHYME **recite | make up**

PREP. **~ about** *The kids made up a rhyme about a frog.*

rhythm *noun*

ADJ. **fast, slow | constant, good, regular, steady** *the steady rhythm of his heartbeat* **| irregular, staccato | intricate | strong | easy** *Tidying the house in the morning fell into an easy rhythm.* **| natural, normal** *part of the natural rhythm of life* **| fierce, frenzied, insistent, pounding, pulsating | dance | body, circadian** *My body rhythms had not yet adapted to the ten-hour time difference.* **| cardiac, heart | daily** *changes to our daily rhythms*

VERB + RHYTHM **develop, fall into, get into, settle into, slip into** *She soon settled into a regular rhythm.* **| have, lack | make** *Her feet made a steady rhythm on the pavement.* **| find** *Williams is having trouble finding her rhythm on the serve.* **| beat (out), clap (to), tap out** *Her pencil tapped out a staccato rhythm on the desk top.*

RHYTHM + NOUN **section** *the band's rhythm section*

PREP. **in (a) ~** *snapping his fingers in rhythm* **| to a/the ~** *I found myself swaying to the rhythm of the music.* **| with a/the ~** *I like music with a good rhythm.* **| ~ in** *There's rhythm in her movements.*

PHRASES **a sense of rhythm**

rib *noun*

ADJ. **bony, skinny | broken, bruised, cracked, fractured** *He sustained a broken rib.*

VERB + RIB **break, crack, crush | dig sb in, nudge sb in, poke sb in, prod sb in**

RIB + NOUN **cage | injury**

PREP. **against the/your ~s, in the/your ~s** *I woke him up with a poke in the ribs.*

ribbon *noun*

ADJ. **long | wide | narrow, thin | satin, silk, velvet | hair, medal**

QUANT. **length, piece** *He cut off a length of ribbon.*

VERB + RIBBON **tie, tie sth (back/up) with** *He tied some gold ribbon round the present. Her hair was tied back with a black silk ribbon.* **| undo, untie | cut** *The Lord Mayor cut a ribbon to launch the celebrations.* **| have, wear** *She had a pink ribbon in her hair. She was wearing a pink hair ribbon.*

rice *noun*

ADJ. **brown, white | boiled, fried | sticky | long/short-grain | wild | polished | creamed**

QUANT. **grain | bag, packet, sack | bowl**

VERB + RICE **cultivate, grow, produce | harvest | boil, cook | drain, strain**

RICE + NOUN **crop, production | farmer, grower, producer | field, paddy | cake, pudding, salad, wine | dish** *a spicy rice dish*

rich *adj.*

1 with a lot of money

VERBS **be, feel, look | become, get, grow** *people who want to get rich quickly* **| make sb** *This discovery never made her rich.*

ADV. **enormously, extremely, fabulously, filthy** *(informal)*, **immensely, incredibly, seriously, stinking** *(informal)*, **very** *He's fabulously rich, one of the richest men in the world. It was mean of her only to give £1?she's filthy rich, you know.* **| quite, relatively | newly** *a newly rich businessman*

2 containing/providing sth

VERBS **be**

ADV. **especially, exceptionally, extraordinarily, particularly, unusually, very** *the exceptionally rich fishing grounds of the North Sea* **| fairly, quite, relatively | potentially | culturally** *a culturally rich nation*

PREP. **in** *Oranges are rich in vitamin C.*

3 of food

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very, wonderfully** *The sun-dried tomatoes give the dish a wonderfully rich flavour.*

ride *noun*

ADJ. **long, short** *We have a long ride ahead of us tomorrow.* **| leisurely** *We went for a leisurely ride along the canal.* **| comfortable, easy, smooth** *(all often figurative) The new legislation did not have a smooth ride through Parliament.* **| bumpy, rough, uncomfortable** *It was a bumpy ride along the farm track. (figurative) The new teacher was given a rough ride by the class.* **| wild** *He took her for a wild ride on the back of his motorbike.* **| free** *He used to get free rides by hiding in the toilet of the train.* **| bike, bus, cab, car, coach, cycle, gondola, sleigh, taxi, train, tram | camel, donkey, pony | funfair, helterskelter, rollercoaster, white-knuckle** *(often figurative) The day had been a rollercoaster ride of emotion.*

VERB + RIDE **have, take** *Visitors can take a ride on a steam locomotive.* **| go for** *She's gone for a ride on her bike.* **| enjoy | bum, cadge, get, hitch, thumb** *I managed to cadge a ride with a lorry driver.* | **give sb**

PREP. **~ from** *The ride from our house to my parents' takes about an hour.* **| ~ to**

ride *verb*

ADV. **fast, hard** *They rode hard all night.* **| slowly | steadily | bareback, side-saddle** *riding bareback on a circus horse* **| away, back, home, off, on, out, over, past** *At the end of the film they ride off into the sunset.*

VERB + RIDE **learn to | teach sb (how) to**

PREP. **along, down, from, on, through, to, up, etc.** *riding along a country lane*

PHRASES **go riding**

ridicule *noun*

ADJ. **general, public**

VERB + RIDICULE **attract, draw, receive | expose sb/sth to, hold sb/sth up to, treat sb/sth with | be open to, face, invite, risk | fear** *A faintly comic figure, he fears ridicule above all else.*

PHRASES **an object of ridicule, a target for/of ridicule** *The prime minister was becoming an object of ridicule.*

ridiculous *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *This is getting ridiculous!*

ADV. **bloody** *(taboo),* **really | absolutely, completely, downright, quite, totally, utterly** *It's downright ridiculous that the library isn't open on Mondays!* **| almost | a bit, faintly, a little, mildly, pretty, rather, slightly, somewhat | patently** *The whole idea was patently ridiculous.*

PHRASES **a sense of the ridiculous** *The whole situation appealed to her sense of the ridiculous.*

riding *noun*

ADJ. **horse**

VERB + RIDING **go**

RIDING + NOUN **boots, breeches, crop, hat, jacket | centre, school, stables**

rifle *noun*

ADJ. **automatic, high-powered, semi-automatic, .22 | air, army, assault, hunting, sporting | Kalashnikov, M-16, etc.**

VERB + RIFLE **load, reload | raise | aim | fire | shoot sb/sth with | be armed with, carry**

RIFLE + NOUN **barrel, butt | bullet | fire, shot | club, range**

rift *noun*

ADJ. **deep, growing, serious | public | ideological | marital, marriage**

VERB + RIFT **cause, create, lead to | deepen, widen** *His actions only deepened the rift between himself and the majority of Congress.* **| heal, mend, patch up, repair**

RIFT + VERB **develop, occur, open up** *A rift had opened up within the party.* **| deepen, grow, widen**

PREP. **~ among/between** *new evidence of a rift between the two countries* **| ~ in/within** *The debate has succeeded only in widening rifts within the Church.* **| ~ over** *a rift over public spending* **| ~ with** *trying to heal the rift with his brother*

right *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound, taste** *The meat doesn't taste right to me.* **| come, turn out** *I'm sure it'll all turn out right in the end.* **| get sth** *He never gets anything right.* **| make sth** *It may be a very easy way to make money, but that doesn't make it right.*

ADV. **absolutely, dead, exactly, just, quite** *You're dead right. There's nothing we can do. She needs to get everything exactly right for her guests. There's something not quite right about these figures.* **| almost, more or less, nearly** *Don't worry about it?that's more or less right.*

PREP. **about** *You were quite right about the weather.*

right *noun*

1 what is morally good

PREP. in the ~ (= having justice and truth on your side) *There's no doubt that he's in the right on this.*

PHRASES have right on your side *I appealed against the decision because I knew I had right on my side.* | **know right from wrong** *Children of that age don't know right from wrong.* | **right and wrong** *She doesn't understand the difference between right and wrong.* | **the rights and wrongs of sth** *We sat discussing the rights and wrongs of the prison system.*

2 entitlement

ADJ. basic, fundamental, inalienable *the basic rights of all citizens* | **absolute, perfect** *I've got a perfect right to park here if I want to.* | **equal** | **exclusive, sole** | **full** | **automatic** *Any employee who is sacked has an automatic right to appeal.* | **animal, human** *animal rights campaigners human rights violations* | **legal, statutory** | **contractual** | **moral** *You have a moral right to that money.* | **civil** *the civil rights movement* | **gay, women's** | **parental** *The local authority exercises parental rights over the children until foster homes are found.* | **squatters'** *The teenagers claimed squatters' rights and were allowed to remain in the building.* | **pension** | **voting** | **divine, god-given** *the old idea of the divine right of kings I suppose you think you have some god-given right to tell me what to do?*

VERB + RIGHT enjoy, have, retain *They have no right to come onto my land.* | **assert, claim, demand** | **know** *You can't do that to me?I know my rights.* | **establish** *The new president undertook to establish full rights for all minorities.* | **stand up for** *You should stand up for your rights and insist that he pays you.* | **reserve** *I reserve the right to leave at any time I choose.* | **gain, get** | **confer on sb, give sb, grant sb** *We were granted the exclusive rights to produce the software in the UK.* | **extend** *The government extended voting rights to everyone over the age of 18.* | **exercise** | **enforce** *The landlord enforced his right to enter the property.* | **abdicate, give up, relinquish, renounce** *He renounced his right to the throne.* | **waive** *They gave me my uncle's money, on condition that I waived all rights to his property.* | **forfeit, lose** | **defend, protect, safeguard** | **acknowledge, recognize, respect** | **affect, infringe** *These additional guarantees do not affect your statutory rights.* | **deny sb** | **abolish**

PREP. **as of ~, by ~** *The property belongs to her by/as of right.* **| by ~ of** *The Normans ruled England by right of conquest.* **| within your ~s** *You're acting entirely within your rights.* **| ~ of** *the right of assembly/asylum/citizenship/free speech/ownership* **| ~ over** *He claimed full rights over the discovery.* **| ~s for** *equal rights for all* **| ~ to** *Do I have any right to compensation?*

PHRASES **have every right** *She has every right to feel bitter.* **| right of way** *There is no public right of way across the fields.*

3 **rights: legal authority/claim to sth**

ADJ. **film, movie, television | translation | foreign | property | mineral | grazing**

VERB + RIGHT **acquire, buy, get, obtain | sell** *He sold the film rights for $2 million.* **| have, hold**

PHRASES **all rights reserved** (= protected or kept for the owner of the book, film, etc.)

4 **right side/direction**

VERB + RIGHT **take** *Take a right at the traffic lights.*

PREP. **from the ~** *Look out for traffic coming from the right.* **| on the ~** *Ours is the first house on the right.* **| to the ~** *Keep over to the right.*

PHRASES **the first/second, etc. right** *Take the first right, and then it's the second turning on your left.* **| from left to right/from right to left** *The books are numbered from right to left.*

5 **the right: in politics**

ADJ. **extreme, far**

PREP. **on the ~** *He's on the extreme right of the party.*

rigid *adj.*

1 **not able/willing to change**

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become, grow** *He grew even more rigid and uncompromising as he got older.*

ADV. **extremely, very | entirely** *An entirely rigid system is impractical.* **| excessively | fairly, rather, relatively** *We operate within fairly rigid parameters.*

2 **stiff**

VERBS **be, feel, lie, look, stand** *She feigned sleep, lying rigid in bed.* **| become, go | remain**

ADV. **very | absolutely, completely, quite | almost**

PREP. **with** *He went absolutely rigid with shock.*

rigour *noun*

1 **strictness**

ADJ. **full** *The crime will be treated with the full rigour of the law.* **| academic, intellectual, logical, scientific**

VERB + RIGOUR **lack** *Their analysis lacks rigour.*

PREP. **with ~ | ~ in** *There is a need for academic rigour in approaching this problem.*

2 **rigours: severe conditions**

ADJ. **full**

VERB + RIGOUR **be subjected to, face, suffer** *computers that are subjected to the rigours of the office environment* **| avoid, escape** *The town managed to escape the rigours of war.* **| stand up to, survive, withstand | prepare sb/sth for, protect (sb/sth) against** *The thick coat of the mountain goat protects it against the rigours of winter.*

ring *noun*

1 **piece of jewellery**

ADJ. **engagement, eternity, signet, wedding | diamond, gold, etc.** *She wore a diamond engagement ring.*

VERB + RING **have on, wear** *He had a signet ring on his little finger.* **| put on | take off**

RING + NOUN **finger** (= the finger next to the little finger, especially on the left hand)

2 **circle**

ADJ. **inner | outer | concentric** *The street plan of the city has evolved as a series of concentric rings.* **| black, dark** *He had dark rings around his eyes.* **| smoke, tree** *to blow smoke rings*

VERB + RING **form, stand in** *The children formed a ring around their teacher.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The children sat on the floor in a ring.*

3 **where a performance, match, etc. takes place**

ADJ. **boxing, bull, circus, show, wrestling**

PREP. **in/into the ~** *He was back in the ring* (= the boxing ring) *only a month after the injury.*

PHRASES **retire from the ring** (= stop boxing)

4 **people involved in sth secret/illegal**

ADJ. **drugs, smuggling, spy**

VERB + RING **be involved in | break up** *Customs officials have broken up a major drugs ring.*

5 **telephone call**

VERB + RING **give sb** *I'll give you a ring once I get home.*

rinse *noun*

ADJ. **good | final | cold**

VERB + RINSE **give sth** *Give your hair a good rinse after shampooing it.*

PREP. **~ in/with** *a rinse with cold water*

rinse *verb*

ADV. **well | thoroughly** *Always rinse your hair thoroughly.* **| quickly | away, off, out** *She rinsed out her coffee cup. Make sure you rinse all the soap out.*

PREP. **from** *rinsing the flour from his hands* **| in** *She rinsed her hands in cold water.* **| with** *Rinse the dishes with warm water.*

riot *noun*

ADJ. **major, serious | full-scale | violent | inner-city, urban | prison | race | student | bread, food** *Shortages eventually led to food riots.*

VERB + RIOT **cause, provoke, spark (off), start** *The city's housing and unemployment problems sparked serious riots.* **| put down, quell**

RIOT + VERB **begin, break out, erupt, occur, start** *Prison riots broke out over worsening conditions.*

RIOT + NOUN **police, squad | gear, shield | control**

PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *He was killed in the riots.* **| ~ against/over** *a riot against bread prices*

PHRASES **run riot** *Fans ran riot after the match, overturning cars and looting shops.*

ripe *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, smell, taste**

ADV. **really, very** *a really ripe strawberry* **| fully, perfectly, quite** *Make sure the plums are fully ripe before you eat them.*

Some of the apples were not quite ripe. **| almost, just about, nearly** *The crops were just about ripe.*

ripple *noun*

ADJ. **little, small**

VERB + RIPPLE **cause, set off** *The decision caused ripples of concern among the parents.* **| send** *I dropped the pebble in the water, sending ripples across the pond. His remarks sent a ripple of laughter through the audience.* **| feel** *He felt a small ripple of fear pass through him.*

RIPPLE + VERB **pass/run through sb/sth | spread (across) sth** *He watched the ripples spread across the pool.*

RIPPLE + NOUN **effect**

PREP. **~ of** *A ripple of unease passed through her.*

ripple *verb*

ADV. **gently, smoothly, softly**

PREP. **across** *Small waves rippled gently across the pond.* | **through** *Shock rippled through her.*

rise *noun*

1 **increase**

ADJ. **big, dramatic, huge, large, massive, sharp, strong, substantial | modest, slight, small | threefold, 80 per cent, etc. | appreciable, significant | abrupt, rapid, steep, sudden | slow | steady | inexorable, remorseless** *Unemployment continued its remorseless rise.* **| general, overall | annual, monthly | interest rate, pay, price, sea-level, tax, temperature, wage, etc.** *The union is demanding an across-the-board pay rise of 5%.*

PREP. **on the ~** (= rising) *Crime is on the rise.* **| ~ in** *a twofold rise in prices* **| ~ on** *a rise on last year's levels*

2 **becoming more powerful/important**

ADJ. **meteoric, spectacular, swift**

PREP. **~ of** *the rise of capitalism* **| ~ to** *His swift rise to the national team surprised everyone.*

PHRASES **the rise and fall of sth** *the rise and fall of the Roman Empire* **| rise to fame/power/prominence** *a meteoric rise to fame*

rise *verb*

1 **move upwards**

ADV. **majestically** *the cliffs which rise majestically from the ocean*

PREP. **from** *Smoke rose from the chimney.*

2 **stand up**

ADV. **slowly**

VERB + RISE **make to, try to** *He made to rise but found his legs were not strong enough to support him.*

PREP. **from** *She rose slowly from her chair to greet us.*

3 **get out of bed**

ADV. **early, late** *He rose early and went for a walk.*

4 **increase**

ADV. **dramatically, markedly, sharply, significantly, steeply, substantially** *House prices have risen sharply in recent months.* **| a little, slightly | further, higher | steadily | fast, quickly, rapidly** *The cost of health care is rising faster than ever.*

VERB + RISE **be expected to, be likely to, be projected to, be set to** *Entry standards into the profession are set to rise further.* **| be unlikely to | begin to | continue to**

PREP. **above** *Air pollution has risen above an acceptable level.* **| by** *Unemployment has risen by 25,000 this month.* **| from, in** *Gas rose in price.* **| in line with** *State benefits will rise in line with inflation.* **| to** *Inflation rose from 2% to 5% last year.*

rising *noun*

ADJ. **military, peasant**

VERB + RISING **participate in, take part in | lead | crush, put down, suppress**
The government succeeded in crushing the military rising.

risk *noun*

ADJ. **big, considerable, grave, great, high, major, serious, significant, substantial, terrible** *high-risk patients a major risk to livestock* **| good | bad, poor | low, slight, small | additional, extra, increased | reduced | genuine, real | attendant, inherent, possible, potential** *Standards of hygiene have fallen with all the attendant risks of disease. There are considerable risks inherent in the policy.* **| long-term | relative | foolish, unacceptable, unnecessary | calculated** *I take calculated risks but never gamble.* **| commercial, credit, environmental, financial, fire, health, insurance, safety, security** *Those old boxes in the corridor are a fire risk. He's a good insurance risk.*

QUANT. **degree, level | element** *The operation carries an element of risk.*

VERB + RISK **face, run, take** *If you don't revise, you run the risk of failing. I'm not prepared to take risks?I want the equipment thoroughly checked.* **| entail, incur, involve, pose** *Pollutants in the river pose a real risk to the fish.* **| increase | minimize, reduce | avoid | assess, measure** *The directors will have to assess our credit risk.* **| outweigh** *The benefits outweigh the risks.*

RISK + VERB **outweigh sth**

RISK + NOUN **group** *Miners are a high risk group for certain types of gastric cancer.* **| factor** *Cigarette smoking is a risk factor for this disease.* **| assessment | reduction | management**

PREP. **at ~** *to put someone's life at risk* **| at ~ from/of** *Journalists in the zone are at serious risk of being kidnapped.* **| at the ~ of** *At the risk of sounding rude, don't you think you'd better change for the party?* **| at ~ to** *He saved the child at considerable risk to himself.* **| ~ by** *He knew he was taking a big risk by going skiing.* **| ~ from** *a risk from contaminated water* **| ~ in** *I was taking a big risk in lending her the money.* **| ~ to** *a risk to health*

PHRASES **at your own risk** *The building is unsafe?enter at your own risk.* **| an increase/a reduction in risk, risks and benefits/rewards** *the risks and benefits of a drug*

risk *verb*

VERB + RISK **cannot/could not, dare not, not want to, would not** *I simply can't risk being seen there. I didn't want to risk being late.* **| be prepared to, be willing to** *He was prepared to risk everything in order to achieve his ambition.* **| decide to**

PREP. **for** *I am not risking my neck for anyone!* **| on** *I wouldn't risk my money on a scheme like this one.*

PHRASES **risk it** *I knew I would be in trouble if I was found out, but I decided to risk it anyway.* **| risk life and limb** *the brave tourist who risks life and limb for adventure* **| risk losing sth** *families who risk losing their homes*

risky *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, prove, seem, sound | consider sth**

ADV. **decidedly, extremely, highly, very** *It all sounds decidedly risky to me.* **| increasingly | a bit, a little, quite, rather, somewhat | inherently** *All business activities are inherently risky.* **| potentially | politically**

ritual *noun*

ADJ. **ancient, primitive | daily, nightly, Sunday, etc. | little** *A cognac before bed is one of our little nightly rituals.* **| elaborate, solemn | empty** *Bargaining at the markets is now just an empty ritual.* **| religious, social | pagan | courtship, fertility, initiation, mating**

VERB + RITUAL **go through, perform** *She had to go through the ritual of kissing the toys before her son would go to sleep. rituals performed by druids at Stonehenge on Midsummer's Day* **| make** *She makes an elaborate ritual of the washing-up.*

RITUAL + VERB **take place**

RITUAL + NOUN **practice** *the ritual practices of ancient religions* **| murder, sacrifice, slaughter** *the accusation that they practised ritual murder*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Women's roles in the rituals of many religions have been limited.*

rival *noun*

ADJ. **arch, bitter, close, deadly, fierce, great, serious | biggest, chief, main, nearest, principal | long-standing, old** *They're old political rivals.* **| jealous | foreign, international** *The company is well equipped to compete with its international rivals.* **| business, political**

VERB + RIVAL **have** *She has no rivals for the job.* **| beat, defeat**

RIVAL + NOUN **candidate | faction, gang, group | company, firm | bid, offer | claim**

PREP. **~ for** *They were rivals for her love.* **| ~ in** *They were rivals in love.* **| ~ to** *Grand it may be, but this cathedral is no rival to the great cathedral of Amiens.*

rivalry *noun*

ADJ. **bitter, fierce, great, intense | long-standing, old | friendly | international | ethnic, personal, political, professional, sexual, sibling** *Bitter ethnic rivalries within the region have grown in recent years.*

RIVALRY + VERB **grow**

PREP. **~ between** *rivalry between the army and the police* **| ~ for** *rivalry for the party leadership* **| ~ over** *rivalry over who is to head the delegation* **| ~ with** *rivalry with foreign firms*

river *noun*

ADJ. **broad, great, large, long, mighty, wide** *the mighty River Nile The river was too wide to swim across comfortably.* | **little, narrow, short, small** | **deep** | **shallow** | **high** *The river is still high after the recent rain.* | **low** | **fast-flowing** | **slow-moving, sluggish** | **winding** | **swollen** *The river was swollen after the floods.* | **navigable** *The river is navigable by vessels of up to 90 tons.*

VERB + RIVER **cross, ford, get across** *We crossed the river by ferry. How are we going to get across the river?* | **bridge** *They've bridged the river at four points.* | **dam** *Wildlife groups are protesting against the proposal to dam the river.* | **dredge** *They're dredging the river to make it safer for larger boats.* | **navigate** *The rocks and sandbanks make the river hard to navigate.*

RIVER + VERB **flow, run, wind** *This river flows into the Mediterranean Sea. A river runs through the field. The river winds its way through the hills.* | **rise** *The river has risen with the rains. The river rises in Bulgaria and flows through Greece to the Aegean.* | **be in flood, burst its banks, flood (sth), overflow sth** *The river had overflowed its banks.* | **dry up** *This river dried up long ago.*

RIVER + NOUN **bank** | **water** | **valley** | **system** | **crossing** | **traffic**

PREP. **across a/the ~** *There's a bridge across the river.* | **along a/the ~** *We walked along the river.* | **down a/the ~, down by a/the ~, down to a/the ~** *Let's go down to the river at sunset.* | **into a/the ~** *He dived into the river.* | **in a/the ~** *Trout live in this river.* | **on a/the ~** *There was a rowing boat on the river.* | **up a/the ~** *sailing up the river* | **~ of** *(figurative) a river of lava*

PHRASES **the banks/bottom/middle/side/surface of a river** *They were waiting for us on the other side of the river.* | **a bend in the river, the course/direction of a river, the river's edge**

road *noun*

ADJ. **broad, wide | narrow | busy, congested | clear, deserted, empty, lonely, quiet** *Let's leave when the roads are clear.* **| direct** *The airport's near here but there's no direct road.* **|** straight | twisting, twisty, **winding | steep | scenic | good, metalled, paved, smooth, surfaced, tarmac | bad, bumpy, dirt, poor, rough, unmade** *a bumpy road through the forest* **| dangerous, difficult, hard** *(often figurative) Bringing up a handicapped child can be a long and hard road.* **| safe | slippery | dusty, icy, muddy, snowbound, snowy, wet | fast | long, long-distance, main, major, national, trunk | B-, back, local, minor, secondary, small, unclassified | single-track | rural | urban | residential | tree-lined | private, public | dead-end** *(figurative) The government's policy on education is a dead-end road.* **| open** *We'll be able to go faster once we're out on the open road.* **| right, wrong** *We took the wrong road and had to turn back.*

(figurative) It does appear we are on the right road to success. **| east-west, etc. | coast, coastal, country, mountain | access, arterial, ring, service, side, slip** *The new ring road should reduce city centre traffic.* **| toll**

VERB + ROAD **follow, go down** *Follow the road round to the left.*

(figurative) We have discussed privatization, but we would prefer not to go down that road. **| take, turn (left/right) into/off** *Take the next road on the right.* **| cross, get across | pull (out) into** *He was hit by a lorry as he pulled out into the main road.* **| pull off** *I pulled off the road for a rest.* **| join** *The track joins the main road just south of the village.* **| hog** (= drive near the middle of the road so that others cannot get past) **| block, cordon off** *Angry farmers blocked the road with their tractors. Police cordoned off the road and diverted commuter traffic.* **| build | pave, resurface, surface | widen**

ROAD + VERB **go, lead, run** *Where does this road go? The road runs parallel to the river.* **| bend, curve, turn, twist, wind** *The road twists and turns up the hillside.* **| ascend, climb** *The road ascends steeply from the harbour.* **| cross sth** *The road crosses the river further up the valley.* **| branch (off), fork** *Our road branches off to the left just past the wood.*

ROAD + NOUN **atlas, map | markings, sign | intersection, junction | bridge, crossing, tunnel | closure | humps** *Road humps have been laid down to limit the speed of cars along the road.* **| communications, infrastructure, network |**

layout | access, link *There is still no road access to the island.* **| development, plan, programme, project, proposal, scheme | improvements | surface | journey | crash, smash, (traffic) accident | safety | deaths | conditions | traffic, vehicles | user | manners, sense** *poor driving standards and lack of road manners* **| engineer | haulier | haulage | sweeper | tax, toll** *Road tax is set to rise in next month's budget. Road tolls can make travelling by motorway fairly expensive.* **| rage** *A man has been stabbed to death in a road rage attack.*

PREP. **across the ~** *The house across the road is for sale.* **| along the ~** *He was walking along the road when he was attacked.* **| by ~** *It takes three hours by road* (= driving). **| down/up the ~** *They live just down the road from us.* **| in the ~** *There was a dog in the road so we stopped. We live in/on Kingston Road.* **| (out) into the ~** *She stepped out into the road without looking.* **| off the ~** *My car's off the road at the moment while I recondition the engine.* **| on a/the ~** *There's something lying on the road. There was a lot of traffic on the road this morning. on the road to Damascus My car is back on the road* (= is working) *again. We'd been on the road* (= travelling) *since dawn and needed a rest.* **| ~ along/over/through, etc.** *the main road through the centre of town* **| ~ from, ~ to** *the road to London*

(figurative) to be on the road to recovery/success

PHRASES **at/by/on the side of the road, the bottom/end/top of the road, the end of the road** *(figurative) This latest row could mean the end of the road for the band.* **| the middle of the road** *A dog was sitting in the middle of the road, so we stopped.* **| the next/second, etc. road on the left/right, a stretch of road** *a notoriously dangerous stretch of road*

roadblock *noun*

ADJ. **army, police**

VERB + ROADBLOCK **erect, set up** *Police have set up a roadblock on the road to London.* **| remove**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *They were stopped at a roadblock leaving the city.* **| through a/the ~** *The truck drove through the roadblock at 100 mph.*

roam *verb*

ADV. **free, freely** *The animals were allowed to roam free.* **| about/around**

VERB + ROAM **allow sb/sth to, let sb/sth**

PREP. **over** *Her eyes roamed over him, assessing him.* **| through** *roaming through the town*

PHRASES **the freedom/right to roam** *Ramblers are calling for the right to roam to be made law.*

roar *noun*

ADJ. **almighty, deafening, great, loud, mighty** *The lion let out a great roar.* **| deep | dull, muffled | hollow | throaty** *the throaty roar of the engine* **| background, distant** *the distant roar of the sea* **| sudden**

VERB + ROAR **give, let out | hear**

ROAR + VERB **go up** *A mighty roar went up from the crowd as the home team scored.*

PREP. **above/over the ~** *She couldn't make herself heard over the roar of the engines.* **| with a ~** *The car sped off with an almighty roar.* **| ~ from** *There was a crash and a roar from the kitchen.* **| ~ of** *a roar of applause/laughter* > Note at SOUND

robber *noun*

ADJ. **armed, masked | bank, train | grave, tomb**

QUANT. **band, gang**

VERB + ROBBER **hunt** *Police are hunting a masked robber who snatched £15,000 from a post office.* **| catch**

ROBBER + VERB **hold sb/sth up** *Robbers held up a bank at gunpoint.* **| snatch sth, steal sth, take sth | escape with sth, get away with sth, make off with sth** *Robbers escaped with £30,000 of payroll money.*

robbery *noun*

ADJ. **attempted, bungled, failed | armed | bank, highway, street**

VERB + ROBBERY **commit, take part in**

ROBBERY + NOUN **attempt**

PHRASES **robbery with violence** *He was sentenced to four years in prison for robbery with violence.* > Note at CRIME(for more verbs)

robe *noun*

ADJ. **long | loose, voluminous | flowing** *a ghostly figure in flowing robes of white* **| rich** *The emperor was clad in a rich robe encrusted with jewels.* **| embroidered | ceremonial, christening, coronation** (often with **robes)**

VERB + ROBE **slip on**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *an old man swathed in robes* > Special page at CLOTHES

rock *noun*

1 **hard, stony part of the earth**

ADJ. **hard, solid** *Solid rock is broken down by weathering.* | **soft** | **jagged, rough** | **smooth** | **weathered** | **bare** *Ahead the vegetation broke into bare rock.* | **sheer, steep** *The river runs between walls of sheer rock.* | **overhanging** | **liquid, molten** | **igneous, sedimentary, volcanic** | **permeable, porous** | **impermeable**

QUANT. **chunk, lump, piece, slab**

VERB + ROCK **form**

ROCK + VERB **form** *rocks that formed beneath the sea* | **jut out** *A great rock jutted out into the sea.*

ROCK + NOUN **type** | **formation, structure** | **strata** | **ledge, outcrop** | **face, surface, wall** | **crevice** | **debris, fragment, sample** | **fall** *The path had been blocked by a rock fall.* | **crystal, salt** | **climber, climbing** | **pool** *Children were looking for crabs in the rock pools.* | **art, carvings** | **garden**

PHRASES **a layer of rock, an outcrop of rock** *The castle is perched on a massive outcrop of rock.*

2 **music**

ADJ. **live** | **country, glam, hard, heavy, indie, progressive, punk**

ROCK + NOUN **album, anthem, CD, music, number, record, song, video** | **band, group** | **concert, festival, gig** | **venue** | **circuit, scene** *one of the biggest bands on the rock circuit* | **drummer, guitarist, musician, singer, vocalist** | **guitar** | **hero, legend, star** | **culture, history**

PHRASES **rock and roll** *the king of rock and roll*

rock *verb*

ADV. violently *The boat rocked violently in the huge waves.* **| gently, slightly** *She gently rocked the baby in her arms. The boat rocked slightly.* **| back and forth, backwards and forwards, from side to side, to and fro** *He rocked back and forth in his chair.*

rocket *noun*

1 **spacecraft**

ADJ. **space**

VERB + ROCKET **launch | go/send into orbit**

ROCKET + VERB **blast off, take off | land**

ROCKET + NOUN **booster, engine | fuel | scientist** *(often humorous) You don't have to be a rocket scientist* (= very clever) *to do this job.*

2 **weapon**

ADJ. **long-range | anti-aircraft, anti-tank**

VERB + ROCKET **fire**

ROCKET + VERB **explode**

ROCKET + NOUN **attack | launcher**

role *noun*

1 in a play, film, etc.

ADJ. **lead, leading, starring, title | supporting | comic, tragic | cameo | film, television | TV**

VERB + ROLE **perform, play, take** *John's playing the leading role in this year's play.* **| cast sb in | interpret** *She interprets the role as more tragic than I expected.*

PREP. **in the ~ (of)** *He was very good in the role.*

2 position and importance

ADJ. **central, crucial, decisive, dominant, essential, fundamental, important, key, leading, major, pivotal, primary, prominent, significant, vital | minor, secondary, subordinate | constructive, full, positive, useful, valuable | active | passive | direct | clear** *Every member of staff must have a clear role.* **| traditional | changing | dual, twin** *She has a dual role as principal and French teacher.* **| conflicting** *her conflicting roles as mother and manager of a large company* **| advisory, consultative, managerial, supervisory | maternal, parental | economic, educational, military, political, social, strategic** *the economic role of small towns A cup of tea often serves an important social role.* **| symbolic**

VERB + ROLE **have, occupy, perform, play, serve** *Regional managers occupy a crucial role in developing a strategic framework.* **| provide (sb/sth with) | adopt, assume, take (on)** *I've had to take on the role of mother in her absence.* **| fulfil** *He really wants to fulfil his role as godfather properly.* **| cast sb in** *He has been cast in the role of chief apologist for the government.* **| find** *We need to find a useful role for the volunteers in the campaign.* **| define, redefine** *a clearly defined role within the group* **| swap**

ROLE + NOUN **model | reversal**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She has joined the team in a consultative role.* **| ~ as** *the teacher's role as instructor* **| ~ for** *The new prime minister promised a greater role for women in government.* **| ~ in** *Pressure groups played a major role in bringing about the reforms.*

roll *noun*

1 **bread**

ADJ. **bread | crusty, soft | brown, white, wholemeal | buttered, filled | ham, cheese, etc.**

2 **list of names**

ADJ. **falling** *Falling rolls could lead to smaller class sizes.*

ADJ. **electoral, membership, school**

VERB + ROLL **strike sb off, remove sb from** *He should be struck off the roll of solicitors.* **| call, take** *The chairman called the roll* (= to see if everyone was present).

ROLL + NOUN **call** *Staff evacuated the building and a roll call was taken outside.*

PREP. **on (the) ~** *The local authority has 50,000 pupils on roll. There are 340 children on the school roll.*

PHRASES **a roll of honour** *Her name was engraved on sport's roll of honour.*

roll *verb*

1 **move by turning over**

ADV. **slowly | around, away, back, forward, over** *rolling over and over in the mud*

PREP. **down** *A tear rolled slowly down her cheek.* **| off**

2 **make sth into the shape of a ball/tube**

ADV. **tightly** *She carried the magazine tightly rolled up in her hand.* **| up**

PREP. **into** *He rolled the paper into a tight ball.*

3 **of a ship/plane**

ADV. **heavily | to and fro** *The ship was rolling heavily to and fro.*

romance *noun*

1 love affair

ADJ. **brief | broken | whirlwind** *They married after a whirlwind romance.* **| holiday | teenage**

VERB + ROMANCE **have** *They had a brief romance in the eighties.*

ROMANCE + VERB **blossom**

2 romantic feeling

ADJ. **true**

VERB + ROMANCE **find** *People find romance in strange places.*

ROMANCE + VERB **be in the air** *Could romance be in the air for the young prince?*

PHRASES **love and romance** *Most of her songs are about love and romance.*

romantic *adj.*

1 **showing/causing feelings of love**

VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | become, get** *You're getting quite romantic in your old age!*

ADV. **extremely, incredibly, intensely, terribly, very, wildly, wonderfully | not at all | quite, rather**

2 **imaginative and emotional, not realistic**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *highly romantic notions of honour* **| hopelessly, ridiculously** *Their dreams of love and marriage are hopelessly romantic.* **| rather**

romantic *noun*

ADJ. **great, true | old | incurable**

PHRASES **be a romantic at heart**

roof *noun*

ADJ. **conical, flat, gabled, mansard, pitched, pointed, sloping, steep | corrugated iron, glass, slate, thatched, tiled, tin | car, church, etc.**

VERB + ROOF **support** *The roof is supported by stone columns.*

ROOF + VERB **slope** *The roof slopes down to the top of the windows.* **| cave in, fall in, collapse** *Five people were killed when the roof fell in.* **| leak**

ROOF + NOUN **space** *The burglars removed tiles to climb into the roof space.* **| covering, slate, tile | beams, rafters, structure, timbers | insulation | garden, terrace** *The hotel has a charming roof garden.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There are small windows in the roof.* **| on a/the ~** *There's a cat on the roof.* **| under your ~** (= in your house) *I won't have that man under my roof again!*

PHRASES **under one/the same roof** (= in the same building) *We're good friends but we could never live under the same roof.*

room *noun*

1 **in a house/building**

ADJ. **big, cavernous, enormous, high, high-ceilinged, huge, large, palatial, spacious, vast |** cell-like, cramped, little, low, low-ceilinged, narrow, small, tiny | L-shaped, odd-shaped | north-facing, south-facing, etc. | airy, well-ventilated | airless, **claustrophobic, stuffy, windowless | bright | dark, dim, dimly-lit, dingy, moonlit, pitch-dark, shadowed,** shadowy, unlighted | depressing, dreary | chilly, cold, **draughty | hot, warm | clean,** tidy | dirty, dusty, scruffy, shabby, smelly, untidy | comfortable, cosy, homely | **attractive, beautiful, elegant,** graceful, gracious, handsome, **impressive, luxurious, magnificent, pretty | bare,** bleak, empty | book-lined | **newly-painted, whitewashed |** tiled, wood-panelled | crowded, **overcrowded | smoke-filled, smoky | quiet, silent | locked | adjacent, adjoining | attic, back, basement, downstairs, front, upstairs | first-floor, second-floor, etc. | guest, spare** *Our guests are sleeping in the spare room.* **| hotel | double, family, single, three-bedded,** twin-bedded | bed-sitting | rented | breakfast, dining, living, reception, sitting, utility | dressing, make-up, rehearsal | **control | fitness, weight-training | news, press** *He emailed his report back to the news room.* **| committee,** conference, meeting | storage, **store** (also **storeroom**) **| incident, interview** *Police have set up an incident room at the scene of the murder.* **| changing, locker, shower | emergency,** first-aid, medical, recovery, **treatment | lecture, reading, seminar, staff** (also **staffroom**) **| boiler, engine**

VERB + ROOM **burst into, come/go into, creep into, enter, hurry into, march into, run/rush into, slip/sneak into, step into, storm into, stride into, walk into,** wander into | back out of, **come/go out of, creep out of, flounce out of, hurry out of, leave, march out of, run/rush out of, slip out of, step out of, storm out of, stride out of, walk out of** *As soon as the teacher left the room there was uproar.* **| show sb into, usher sb into | cross, go around/round, pace (around/round), prowl (around/round), walk, wander around/round** *He was pacing the room nervously. She prowled around the room like a caged tiger. I wandered restlessly round my room.* **| echo around/round, run around/round** *A ripple of laughter ran round the room.* **| glance, look around/round, scan | fill | clean, tidy | decorate, paint** *a room decorated in pastel shades* **| air, ventilate | light** *a room lit by one dusty light bulb* **| share** *I used to share a room with my sister.* **| occupy | vacate** *Guests are requested to vacate their rooms by 11 a.m.* **| set aside** *a room set aside for quiet study* **| book, hire, rent** *We hired a room for the party. I rented a room while looking for a house to buy.*

ROOM + VERB **adjoin sth, face sth, overlook sth** *The room adjoins the hotel kitchens.* | **contain sth** *The room contained little more than a table and chair.* | **be crammed with sth, be filled with sth, be full of sth | be equipped with sth, be furnished with sth, have sth** *The patient was in a private room equipped with bathroom and colour TV.* | **measure sth** *a room measuring 6 metres by 7* | **darken | fall silent, grow quiet** *The room fell silent as she rose to speak.* | **smell** *The room smelled of stale sweat and coffee.* | **spin, sway** *She felt sick and the room was spinning.*

ROOM + NOUN **key | number | lighting, lights | mate** (also room-mate) (= person who you share a room or house with) | **service | temperature** *This wine should be served at room temperature.* | **rates** *Soaring room rates have put tourists off visiting the city.*

PREP. **around/round a/the ~, from ~ to ~** *She flew from room to room looking for the fire extinguisher.* | **in/into a/the ~, inside a/the ~**

2 **space; enough space**

ADJ. **ample, considerable, enough, sufficient | insufficient | head** (also **headroom**), **leg** (also **legroom)**

ADJ. **leave, make** *We had to move the furniture to make room for the piano.*

PREP. **~ for** *Will there be enough room for that large sofa in your sitting room? (figurative) The sales figures are good, but there is still room for improvement.*

PHRASES **room for manoeuvre**

root *noun*

1 **of a plant**

ADJ. **deep, shallow | gnarled**

ROOT + VERB **develop, grow | put down, take** *I hope those cuttings will take root.*

ROOT + NOUN **system | crops, vegetables**

PREP. **by its/the ~s** *She pulled the shrub out by its roots.*

2 **roots: place where you feel you belong**

ADJ. **humble** *Despite his wealth, he never forgot his humble roots.* **| cultural** *severed from our cultural roots by industrialization* **| middle-class, peasant, working-class | French, Scottish, etc.**

VERB + ROOT **get/go back to, return to** *My husband wants to go back to his Irish roots.* **| trace** *They can trace their roots back to the sixteenth century.* **| put down** *We haven't been here long enough to put down roots.* **| cut yourself off from**

3 **cause/source**

ADJ. **deep | very | common** *The two languages share a common root.* **| historical**

VERB + ROOT **have | get at/to, go to** *I've spent months trying to get to the root of the problem.* **| lie at**

ROOT + NOUN **cause**

PREP. **at (the ~ of)** *It is a moral question at root. His fears of loneliness lay at the very root of his inability to leave.* **| ~ in** *The unrest has roots in religious differences.*

PHRASES **the root of all evil** *They consider globalization to be the root of all evil.* **| the root of the matter/problem** *I expect money is at the root of the matter.*

rooted *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **deeply | firmly**

PREP. **in** *His problems are deeply rooted in his childhood experiences.*

rope *noun*

ADJ. **strong | slack | guy, mooring, skipping, tow** *I tripped over the guy rope of the tent in the dark.*

QUANT. **length, piece**

VERB + ROPE **knot, tie (sth together with)** *He tied the planks together with a strong rope.* **| tighten | loosen | coil (up) | pull (at/on)**

PHRASES **a coil of rope**

rose *noun*

ADJ. **deep pink, red, yellow, etc. | early, late | climbing, rambler, rambling, shrub | long-stemmed | scented | fresh** *She put fresh roses in the vases.* **| wild**

ROSE + NOUN **garden | bed | bush | petals | bowl**

PHRASES **a bed of roses, the scent/smell of a rose** > Note at FLOWER(for verbs)

rota *noun*

ADJ. **daily, weekly, etc. | duty | cleaning**

VERB + ROTA **have | draw up, work out** *I've been asked to draw up the cleaning rota.*

ROTA + NOUN **scheme, system**

PREP. **on the ~ | ~ for** *Are you on the rota for cooking?*

PHRASES **on a rota basis** *We share the babysitting duties on a rota basis.*

rotate *verb*

ADV. **quickly, rapidly | gently, slowly | freely**

VERB + ROTATE **allow sth to** *It is best to allow the rotor to rotate freely.*

PREP. **around** *The blades rotate around a central point.* **| on** *The earth rotates on its axis.* **| through** *The handle rotates through 360 degrees.*

round *noun*

1 series of events

ADJ. **ceaseless, endless, long** *Life to him was one long round of parties.* | **fresh, further, new**

PREP. **~ of** *a fresh round of peace talks*

2 regular series of visits, etc.

ADJ. **daily, weekly | milk, paper**

VERB + ROUND **do, make** *The milkman does his round very early.*

PREP. **on sb's ~** *a doctor on his round*

3 number of drinks

VERB + ROUND **buy, order** *I bought the last round.*

PHRASES **It's my round.** (= It's my turn to buy the drinks.), **a round of drinks** *We just had time for one more round of drinks.*

4 part of a competition

ADJ. **first, second, etc.** *Italy qualified for the second round of the tournament by beating Germany.* | **opening, preliminary | final | qualifying**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Australia were knocked out in the second round.*

5 (in golf) one game

VERB + ROUND **have, play, shoot**

PHRASES **a round of golf** *We had a good round of golf today.*

6 **bullet/bullets**

ADJ. **live | blank**

VERB + ROUND **fire** *The soldiers fired several blank rounds into the crowd.*

round *verb* **PHRASAL VERBS round sth off**

ADV. **nicely** *A coffee would round the meal off nicely.*

PREP. **with** *We rounded off the day with a picnic.*

roundabout *noun*

VERB + ROUNDABOUT **enter | get off, leave** *Leave the roundabout at the second exit.* **| drive/go around/round**

PREP. **at the ~** *At the roundabout, turn right.* **| on the ~** *There was a lot of traffic on the roundabout.*

rounded *adj.*

1 **having a round shape**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **gently, slightly, softly | beautifully, nicely** *beautifully rounded arches*

2 **complete and balanced**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **well | fully** *a fully rounded education*

rout *noun*

ADJ. **total**

VERB + ROUT **become, end in, turn into** *The game ended in a total rout.* **| put sb to** *They put the rebel army to rout.* **| start | complete**

route *noun*

ADJ. **quick, short** *The shortest route home is round the ring road.* **| convenient, easy | long | direct | circuitous, circular, devious, indirect, roundabout, tortuous | dangerous, safe | attractive, beautiful, scenic** *We had plenty of time so we took the scenic route.* **| accessible | alternative** *Travellers are advised to find an alternative route during road repairs.* **| main, trunk | air, overland, sea | bus, cycle, etc. | shipping, supply, trade | coastal | east-west, southerly, southern, etc. | trans-Pennine, trans-Sahara, etc. | tourist | well-travelled, well-worn | access | escape**

VERB + ROUTE **follow, take | choose, map out, plan, work out** *You'll have to plan your route carefully.* **| retrace** *We retraced our route in an attempt to get back on the right path.*

ROUTE + VERB **cross sth, follow sth, go, pass through sth, run, take sb** *The alternative route takes you along the river.* **| climb, turn | lead | lie** *Our route lay straight ahead and downhill.*

ROUTE + NOUN **map**

PREP. **along the ~** *There are plenty of bed and breakfasts along the route.* **| on the ~** *We live on the school bus route.* **| ~ between** *the most direct route between London and Brighton* **| ~ from** *the air route from Berlin to Beijing* **| ~ through** *a scenic route through the south of France* **| ~ to** *the shortest route to Bruges the best route to success*

PHRASES **en route** (= on the way) *We'll stop for lunch en route.*

routine *noun*

ADJ. **fixed, set | inflexible, rigid, strict | dull, humdrum, monotonous | familiar, normal, old, regular, usual | daily, day-to-day | domestic, exercise, school, work**

VERB + ROUTINE **establish, get into, settle into** *It took me a week to settle into a routine.* **| follow, go through** *We go through the same old routine every morning.* **| break, change, vary**

PHRASES **a change from the/in/of routine** *The children were confused by the change of routine.* **| a matter of routine** *Bags of all visitors to the museum are searched as a matter of routine.*

row1 /req/ *noun*

ADJ. **bottom, middle, top | back, front | horizontal, vertical | double, single | neat** *She arranged the chairs in two neat rows.* **| serried** *serried rows of vines* **| endless** *endless rows of identical houses*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The children stood in a row. It rained for five days in a row* (= without a break). *We have seats in the front row.* **| ~ of** *a long row of shops*

PHRASES **the end/middle of the row, rows and rows, row upon row** *He looked down at row upon row of eager faces.*

row2 /raq/ *noun*

1 **argument**

ADJ. **almighty, awful, big, bitter, blazing, fearful, ferocious, fierce, flaming, furious, great, huge, major, serious, terrible, tremendous, unholy, violent** *We had a blazing row over who should do the cooking.* **| domestic, family | stand-up** *A couple was having a stand-up row in the street.* **| public | drunken | long-running | diplomatic, political**

VERB + ROW **have | kick up** *I'm going to kick up a row if I don't get my money back.* **| cause**

ROW + VERB **blow up, break out, develop, erupt** *A row blew up over pay rises for ministers.* **| go on, rage (on)**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He came to prominence in the row over defence policy.* **| ~ about/over** *Carol and I had a terrible row about how much money she spends.* **| ~ between** *a row between the left and right wings of the party* **| ~ with** *a row with my mother*

2 **loud noise**

ADJ. **unholy**

VERB + ROW **make** *Someone's making an unholy row outside.*

ROW + VERB **go on, rage (on)** *The row went on and on.*

royalty *noun*

1 **money paid to an author, etc.**

ADJ. **advance**

VERB + ROYALTY **pay | earn, get, receive | charge**

ROYALTY + NOUN **cheque, payment**

PREP. **in ~s** *She earns a lot in royalties.* **| ~ from/on** *He has received royalties on previous inventions.*

PHRASES **an advance on royalties**

2 **members of the royal family**

ADJ. **minor**

PHRASES **in the presence of royalty** *She behaved as if she were in the presence of royalty.*

rub *verb*

ADV. **briskly, hard, vigorously** *He rubbed his face briskly with the towel.* **| well** *Put a little cream onto each hand and rub it in well.* **| gently, lightly** *He gently rubbed his swollen nose.* **| thoughtfully** *She rubbed her chin thoughtfully.* **| wearily** *Corbett rubbed his eyes wearily.* **| in, together** *He began to rub his hands together in glee.*

VERB + RUB **begin to**

PREP. **against** *The cat rubbed against my legs.* **| at** *She stood up, rubbing at her back.* **| into** *Rub the cream well into your skin.* **| on** *She rubbed her hands on her apron.* **| with** *I rubbed my glasses with my handkerchief.*

rubbish *noun*

1 **waste material**

ADJ. **domestic, household | garden**

QUANT. **bag, pile | tons**

VERB + RUBBISH **put out** *I forgot to put the rubbish out last night.* **| collect, remove, take away** *The rubbish is collected on Tuesdays.* **| clear (out), dispose of, dump, throw (away/out)** *He's clearing rubbish out of the attic. Someone had dumped their rubbish by the road. Throw the rubbish in the bin.* **| leave, strew (around)** *There was rubbish strewn around everywhere.* **| pick up**

RUBBISH + VERB **decay, rot**

RUBBISH + NOUN **bag, bin, skip | dump, heap, tip | collection, disposal | chute**

2 **sth that you think is bad/silly/wrong**

ADJ. **absolute, complete, total, utter** *The film was absolute rubbish.* **| worthless** *Many critics see the paintings as worthless rubbish.* **| old** *The antique shop was just full of old rubbish.*

VERB + RUBBISH **talk** *Don't talk such rubbish!*

PREP. **~ about** *the usual rubbish about his undiscovered talents*

PHRASES **a load of (old) rubbish, What rubbish!**

rubble *noun*

ADJ. **brick, rock, stone | building**

QUANT. **heap, pile** *What was once a cottage was now a crumbling heap of rubble.*

VERB + RUBBLE **be reduced to** *The school was reduced to rubble.* **| clear (away) | sift through** *Police sifted through the rubble looking for clues.*

PREP. **amid/amidst/among/amongst the ~** *She stood among the rubble left by the earthquake.* **| beneath/under the ~** *Our car was buried somewhere under the rubble.* **| in the ~** *Several people were trapped in the rubble.*

rucksack (*also* **backpack)** *noun*

VERB + RUCKSACK **pack | unpack | put on, shoulder | pull off, remove, take off | carry, have on, wear** *He had a large rucksack on.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He had very little in his rucksack.*

rude *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound | become | consider sth, think sb/sth** *I hope you won't think me rude if I leave early.*

ADV. **downright, extremely, really, terribly, very** *He wasn't just impolite?he was downright rude.* **| a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather | deliberately**

PREP. **about** *He's very rude about her cooking.* **| to** *Don't be so rude to your mother!*

rug *noun*

ADJ. **threadbare | bedside, fireside, hearth, picnic | oriental, Persian**

VERB + RUG **make, weave | scatter, spread** *There were several brightly coloured rugs scattered around.*

RUG + VERB **cover sth** *A Persian rug covered the polished floor.*

rugby *noun*

ADJ. **amateur, professional | competitive, representative | junior, school, student, youth | senior | club, league | first-class, international, test, world | touch | mini** *Kids from six years old play mini rugby at the club.* **| running** *The crowd enjoyed the Fijians' running rugby.*

QUANT. **game**

VERB + RUGBY **play | watch**

RUGBY + NOUN **scrum, tackle | club, side, team | ball, jersey, shirt | championship, game, international, match | tour | ball, posts | boots, jersey | field, pitch | forward, international, player** *the former rugby international, Serge Blanco* **| coach | official | career | season | buff, enthusiast, fan, follower, supporter | circles, community, folk, fraternity, people** *In rugby circles, there is nothing but criticism for the coverage of sport on terrestrial TV.* **| country, nation**

PHRASES **Rugby League, Rugby Union** > Special page at SPORT

ruin *noun*

1 **spoilt state**

ADJ. **complete, utter**

VERB + RUIN **fall into, go to** *The cottage gradually fell into ruin.*

PHRASES **be the ruin of sb/sth** *Drink has been the ruin of her.* **| go to rack and ruin** *They've let the house go to rack and ruin.*

2 **end of success, hopes, etc.**

ADJ. **economic, financial | political**

VERB + RUIN **face** *The company faces ruin over the new road plans.* **| bring, lead to, mean, spell** *The cost would have meant financial ruin for us.* **| save from**

PHRASES **on the brink/verge of ruin, the road to ruin** *He's on the road to political ruin.*

3 **damaged building, town, etc.**

ADJ. **ancient | charred, smoking** *the charred ruins of their home* **| abbey, castle, etc.**

VERB + RUIN **be/lie in ~** *The church now lies in ruins.* **| leave sth in ~** *The earthquake left the town in ruins.*

PREP. **~s of** *the ancient ruins of Jericho*

ruin *verb*

ADV. **completely, quite, totally** *The experience has completely ruined her life.* **| nearly | partly | effectively | financially** *The long legal battle ruined him financially.*

VERB + RUIN **threaten to** *A knee injury threatened to ruin her Olympic hopes.* **| be going to** *All this mud is going to ruin my shoes.*

rule *noun*

1 **what you can or cannot do, say, etc.**

ADJ. **basic, cardinal, first, fundamental, golden | ground ~s** *You and your flatmates should establish some ground rules.* **| general | formal, official, written | informal, unwritten | rigid, strict, stringent | absolute, hard and fast** *There are no hard and fast rules when it comes to choosing a typeface.* **| clear | simple** *Follow these few simple rules, and you won't go far wrong.* **| arbitrary | petty** *He made his children's lives a misery with all his petty rules.* **| club, company, competition, school, union, etc. | cultural, ethical, legal, moral, social | disciplinary, immigration, safety, tax | grammar, grammatical**

QUANT. **set** *The aim is to get each member country to adhere to a single set of rules.*

VERB + RULE **draw up, establish, formulate, impose, issue, lay down, make, set out | abide by, adhere to, follow, go by, obey, observe, play by, stick to** *If he wanted a loan he would have to play by the bank's rules.* **| be in line with, conform to** *The packaging does not conform to EU rules.* **| be in breach of, break, disregard, fall foul of, flout, violate** *Their action was in breach of Stock Exchange rules.* **| apply, enforce** *The referee applied the rules to the letter* (= very strictly). **| bend, relax** *Couldn't they just bend the rules and let us in without a ticket?* **| waive | tighten up** *The rules on claiming sickness benefit have been tightened up.* **| be bound by, be fettered by, be governed by** *Social workers are bound by rules of confidentiality.* **| interpret, understand** *The punishment depends on how the umpire interprets the rules.*

RULE + VERB **apply, be applicable, operate | provide sth, say sth, state sth, stipulate sth** *The competition rules provide that a cash alternative may be given.* **| govern sth** *the rules governing the importing of livestock* **| allow (for) sth, permit sth** *The existing rules allow for some flexibility.* **| forbid sth, prohibit sth | limit sth, restrict sth** *rules limiting imports*

RULE + NOUN **book** *The officials went strictly by the rule book.*

PREP. **according to the ~s** *According to the rules, no alcohol can be consumed on the premises.* **| against/contrary to the ~s** *Tackling a player without the ball is against the rules.* **| in accordance with the ~s** *The music was turned off at midnight, in accordance with the rules.* **| outside the ~s** *behaviour which is outside* *the rules* **| under a/the ~** *Under this rule, only full members of the club are entitled to vote.* **| within the ~s** *I believed I was acting within the rules.* **| ~ about/ concerning/on/regarding/relating to** *What are the school rules about dress?* **| ~ for** *There seems to be one rule for the rich and another for the poor. What is the rule for forming plurals?* **| ~ of** *the rules of the game*

PHRASES **a breach/violation of the rules, a body/code/network/system of rules, respect for the rules, rules and regulations**

2 what is usual

ADJ. **general** *There are few exceptions to the general rule that shops close at six o'clock.*

PREP. **as a ~** *As a rule, hardly anybody uses this road.*

PHRASES **be the rule** *Among her friends, casual dress and a relaxed manner are the rule.*

3 government

ADJ. **authoritarian, harsh | direct, indirect | emergency** *The president imposed emergency rule following the riots.* **| majority | one-party | Labour, Tory, etc. | colonial | home | civilian, military | presidential | mob** *the lawless days of mob rule*

VERB + RULE **impose**

PREP. **under … ~** *The country remained under direct rule by the occupying powers.*

PHRASES **the rule of law** *a society based on the rule of law*

rule *verb*

ADV. **justly**

PREP. **by** *the president's powers to rule by decree* **| over** *He left his son to rule over Saragossa.*

PHRASES **rule supreme, rule with an iron fist/hand; rule with a rod of iron** (= control a person or group of people very severely) **PHRASAL VERBS rule sth out**

ADV. **altogether, categorically, completely, definitely, entirely, firmly, totally** *This theory cannot be ruled out altogether.* **| virtually | effectively** *His age effectively ruled him out as a possible candidate.* **| apparently | automatically** *Infringement of this regulation would automatically rule you out of the championship.* **| immediately | formerly, hitherto, previously**

VERB + RULE **cannot/could not, fail to, refuse to**

PREP. **as** *Police have now ruled her out as the killer.*

ruler *noun*

ADJ. **great | effective, powerful, strong | weak | enlightened | democratic | absolute** *an absolute ruler who will tolerate no opposition* **| virtual** *At that time the East India Company was the virtual ruler of Bengal.* **| sovereign | supreme | hereditary | legitimate, rightful | independent | former | colonial, military | secular**

RULER + VERB **come to power, seize power | govern (sb/sth), hold power** *a ruler who held power for over twenty years*

PREP. **under a/the ~** *The country was finally united under one ruler.* **| ~ over** *He eventually became ruler over the Burgundians.*

ruling *noun*

ADJ. **authoritative, definitive | unanimous | adverse | preliminary | original | final | court, legal**

VERB + RULING **give, hand down, issue, make | overturn, reverse** *The Court of Appeal overturned the original ruling.* **| uphold**

PREP. **~ against** *the European Court's ruling against detention without trial* **| ~ by** *the ruling by the High Court* **| ~ in favour of** *The newspaper said that this was a ruling in favour of freedom of speech.* **| ~ on** *The House of Lords will make a final ruling on the case next week.*

rumble *noun*

ADJ. **deep, low | dull | distant | ominous**

VERB + RUMBLE **give, let out | hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *The door slid shut with a rumble.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **the rumble of thunder** *We could hear the distant rumble of thunder.* > Note at SOUND

rumour *noun*

ADJ. **malicious, nasty, scurrilous, ugly, vicious | baseless, false, unconfirmed, unfounded, unsubstantiated, wild | strong, widespread | persistent**

VERB + RUMOUR **start | fuel** *His lengthy absence from work fuelled rumours that he might have been sacked.* **| spread | hear | believe | deny | confirm** *The actor confirmed rumours that he will be leaving the series.* **| quash, scotch, silence** *The Chief Executive issued a statement to quash rumours of financial problems.*

RUMOUR + VERB **circulate, get about/around, go around/round, spread | abound, be flying about/around, be rife** *Rumours about an impending royal divorce were rife.* **| sweep sth** *The rumour quickly swept the town.* **| persist**

RUMOUR + NOUN **factory, mill** *The Washington rumour mill suggests the money changed hands illegally.*

PREP. **amid/amidst ~s** *The manager resigned suddenly amidst rumours of misconduct.* **| ~ about/concerning/surrounding** *rumours surrounding the closure of the hospital* **| ~ of** *There were persistent rumours of drug taking among staff.*

PHRASES **rumour has it that …** *Rumour has it that he was sacked from his last job.* **| there is no truth in the rumour** *There is no truth in the rumour that the head teacher is about to resign.*

run *noun*

1 **on foot**

ADJ. **five-mile, etc. | fun, sponsored** *The local council has organized a two-mile fun run for charity.* **| training | record-breaking** *The Ethiopian is aiming to produce his second record-breaking run of the week.*

VERB + RUN **go for, have** *Let's go for a run before dinner.* **| go on** *I'm going on a sponsored run tomorrow.* **| break into** *When he saw me he broke into a run.* **| take** *He took a run at the wall and just managed to clear it.*

PREP. **at a ~** *She took the stairs at a run.* **| on the ~** (= escaping by running) *The prisoners have now been on the run for three days.*

PHRASES **make a run for it** (= escape by running)

2 **of success/failure**

ADJ. **bad, disappointing, disastrous, dismal, poor | excellent, fine, good, remarkable, successful | unbeaten, winning | record-breaking**

VERB + RUN **enjoy, have** *Spurs have had a winning run of ten games.* **| begin | end** *Manchester United have finally ended their run of victories.*

RUN + VERB **begin | end**

PREP. **~ of** *a run of good/bad luck*

3 **of a play/film**

ADJ. **long | short | eight-week, six-month, etc. | successful | sell-out**

VERB + RUN **have** *The play had a long run in the West End.* **| begin** *They play began its run last June.* **| end**

RUN + VERB **begin | end**

4 **way things are/happen**

ADJ. **common, general, ordinary, usual** *She was very different from the general run of American movie stars. In the normal run of things the only exercise he gets is climbing in and out of taxis.*

PHRASES **against the run of play** *Villa scored in the 15th minute against the run of play* (= although the other team had seemed more likely to score).

5 **in cricket/baseball**

ADJ. **home**

VERB + RUN **get, make, score** *They've got another run! He's only made four home runs all season.* **| be on, have** *Our team is on 90 runs.*

6 **attempt/practice**

ADJ. **dry, dummy, practice, trial**

run *verb*

1 **move quickly on foot**

ADV. **fast, quickly** *John can run very fast. She ran quickly downstairs.* **| blindly | headlong | away, downstairs, home, off, out, upstairs**

VERB + RUN **begin to, turn and/to | want to** *He just wanted to run away and hide.*

PREP. **down** *She turned and ran blindly down the street.* **| into** *He ran headlong into an enemy patrol.* **| out of** *He ran out of the house.* **| to, towards, up, etc.**

2 **manage sth**

ADV. **efficiently, properly, well | badly** *a badly-run company* **| professionally | jointly** *The programme will be jointly run with NASA in the US.* **| personally | privately | independently** *The student union is run independently of college authorities.* **| in parallel, in tandem** *The two experiments are run in parallel.*

VERB + RUN **try to** *Stop trying to run my life for me.* **| manage to | help (to), help sb (to)**

3 **work**

ADV. **efficiently, smoothly** *The engine was running very smoothly.*

PREP. **on** *Our car only runs on unleaded petrol.*

4 **happen**

ADV. **smoothly** *Things ran very smoothly for a while.* **| concurrently, consecutively** *He was given two twelve-month sentences to run concurrently.*

5 **buses/trains**

ADV. **regularly** *Local buses run regularly to and from the town.* **| late** *The train was running late, as usual.*

PREP. **between, from, to**

runner *noun*

ADJ. **fast, good | distance, long-distance, marathon, middle-distance | cross-country, fell, road | front** *(often figurative) He is currently the front runner for the Democratic Party presidential nomination.* **| fancied** *one of the fancied runners in today's race*

running *noun*

1 **activity/sport**

ADJ. **cross-country, fell, road | distance, long-distance, marathon, middle-distance**

RUNNING + NOUN **event, race | shoe, shorts, vest | track**

2 **management of business, etc.**

ADJ. **efficient, smooth** *Careful planning is needed to ensure the smooth running of the event.* **| day-to-day**

VERB + RUNNING **be involved in, be responsible for**

RUNNING + NOUN **costs, expenses**

rural *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, overwhelmingly, truly, very** *At the end of the 17th century England was still overwhelmingly rural.* **| completely | largely, mainly, predominantly | semi-***the ideal of suburban or semi-rural living* **| quite | essentially | pleasantly**

ruse *noun*

ADJ. **simple | clever, subtle**

RUSE + VERB **succeed | fail**

PREP. **~ by sb** *The attack may merely be a ruse by the enemy to distract our forces.*

rush *noun*

1 **sudden quick movement**

ADJ. **headlong, sudden**

PREP. **~ for** *The film ended, and there was a rush for the exits.* | **~ of** *A rush of water came from the burst pipe.*

2 **busy period**

ADJ. **awful, great, mad, tearing | sudden | last-minute | Christmas**

RUSH + NOUN **decision | job** *You can see that the painting was a rush job.* | **hour** *During the rush hour the journey may take up to twice as long.*

PREP. **in a ~** *I've been in a mad rush all day.* | **~ for** *a last-minute rush for tickets* | **~ of** *a sudden rush of tourist traffic*

PHRASES **have a rush on** *We've had a rush on at the office, dealing with the backlog of orders.*

rush *verb*

ADV. **headlong, madly** *a train rushing headlong down the track* **| immediately | suddenly | about, around, back, home, in, off, out, over, past** *She was rushing around madly looking for her bag.*

PREP. **along, from, into, out of, through, to, etc.** *A surge of joy rushed through her body. He was rushed to hospital.*

PHRASES **come/go rushing** *Two men came rushing into the room.* **| rush to sb's/the rescue** *Whenever her little brother was upset, Jane rushed to the rescue.*

Russian *noun* > Note at LANGUAGE

rust *noun*

VERB + RUST **clean off, get off, remove, scrape off**

RUST + NOUN **spot, stain | protection** *A zinc coating is applied to the steel for rust protection.*

PHRASES **covered/flecked/red/spotted with rust** *The old padlock was red with rust.*

rust *verb*

ADV. **badly | away, through** *The car had been rusting away in his garage for years.*

rustle *verb*

ADV. **softly** *the sound of the leaves rustling softly*

PREP. **in** *The wind rustled in the bushes.* **| through** *the sound of their feet rustling through the grass*

rut *noun*

ADJ. **muddy | deep | cart, tractor, wagon**

PREP. **in a ~** *(figurative) My job bores me?I feel I'm in a rut.* **| into a ~** *(figurative) I'd got into a rut, cooking the same things week after week.* **| out of a ~** *(figurative) Moving abroad gave her the chance to get out of a rut.*

sabbath *noun*

ADJ. **Jewish, Muslim, etc.**

VERB + SABBATH **keep, observe | break**

SABBATH + NOUN **day | rest**

PREP. **on the ~** *It was considered a sin to work or play on the Sabbath.*

PHRASES **observance of the Sabbath** *The speaker advocated a less austere observance of the Sabbath.*

sabotage *noun*

ADJ. **deliberate, planned | economic, industrial** *They conducted a campaign of economic sabotage.*

SABOTAGE + NOUN **attempt | raid**

PHRASES **an act of sabotage**

sabotage *verb*

ADV. **deliberately** *They accused him of deliberately sabotaging the peace talks.*

VERB + SABOTAGE **attempt to, try to** *They had tried to sabotage our plans.*

sack *noun*

1 large bag

ADJ. **bulging** *bulging sacks of toys* **| hessian, paper, plastic, stuff | flour, mail, potato, refuse**

VERB + SACK **fill** *They filled the sacks with potatoes.* **| put sth in, tie sb/sth (up) in** *The kittens had been tied up in a sack and thrown in the river.* **| empty | carry (sth in)**

SACK + VERB **be filled with sth, be full of sth**

PREP. **in a/the ~ | ~ of** *a sack of coal*

2 the sack: dismissal from your job

VERB + SACK **get** *She got the sack after 20 years of service.* **| give sb | be threatened with, face** *Hundreds of postal workers are facing the sack.*

sacred *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain | consider sth, deem sth, hold sth, regard sth as** *Certain animals were regarded as sacred. the feeling that all life should be held sacred*

ADV. **absolutely | almost**

PREP. **to** *The place was sacred to the Celts.*

sacrifice *noun*

1 **giving sth up**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, heavy, real | financial, personal | heroic | supreme, ultimate** *Soldiers who die for their country have made the supreme sacrifice.*

VERB + SACRIFICE **make**

2 **part of a ceremony**

ADJ. **animal, human | religious, ritual | blood | pagan**

VERB + SACRIFICE **perform | offer (sth as)**

PREP. **~ to** *Food and wine were offered as sacrifices to the gods.*

sacrifice *verb*

VERB + SACRIFICE **be obliged to, have to | be prepared to, be willing to** *She was prepared to sacrifice having a family in order to pursue her career.*

PREP. **for** *soldiers who sacrificed their lives for their country*

PHRASES **sacrifice sth for the sake of sth** *Comfort has been sacrificed for the sake of improved performance.*

sad *adj.*

1 unhappy

VERBS appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, grow | make sb *This music always makes me sad.*

ADV. all, desperately, immensely, particularly, profoundly, really, unbearably, very *I called Mum, sounding all sad and pathetic.* **| almost | a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | strangely**

PREP. about *She was still feeling very sad about her father's death.*

2 causing unhappiness

VERBS be, seem | find sth

ADV. deeply, extremely, intensely, particularly, profoundly, really, terribly, unutterably, very *a deeply sad occasion* **| a bit, a little, quite, rather** *a rather sad story*

sadden *verb*

ADV. **deeply, greatly** *I was deeply saddened by his death.*

sadness *noun*

ADJ. **deep, great, real, unutterable**

QUANT. **hint**

VERB + SADNESS **be filled with, be full of, feel** *Claudia felt a deep sadness.* **| express, show | hide | bring (sb)** *I had brought nothing but sadness to my family.* **| be tinged with** *Our joy was tinged with sadness.*

PREP. **with ~** *It was with great sadness that we learned of the death of William Hales.* **| ~ about/at/over** *He expressed his sadness about what had happened.* **| ~ for** *Kate felt a great sadness for him.*

PHRASES **an air/aura of sadness** *a lonely place with an aura of sadness* **| a feeling/sense of sadness**

safe *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become | remain, stay | play (it)** *Does good marketing mean playing safe* (= avoiding risks) *and staying traditional?* **| make sth, render sth** *The army experts made the bomb safe.* **| keep sth** *Keep your money safe by carrying it in an inside pocket.* **| consider sth, declare sth, deem sth** *The water was not considered safe to drink.*

ADV. **all, extremely, really, very** *Don't worry?he'll be all safe and snug in the barn.* **| absolutely, completely, perfectly, quite, totally** *a completely safe and secure environment for young children* **| not entirely** *The wood is never entirely safe for women on their own.* **| comparatively, fairly, pretty, reasonably, relatively | enough** *You should be safe enough, but don't go too far.* **| environmentally** *She claimed that nuclear power was the most environmentally safe form of energy.*

PREP. **from** *They were safe from attack.* **| with** *Your money will be safe with me.*

PHRASES **better safe than sorry, safe and sound** *They returned from their adventure safe and sound.*

safe *nou*n

ADJ. **bank, hotel, office | wall**

VERB + SAFE **open | close, lock | break into, crack**

safeguard *noun*

ADJ. **adequate, effective, proper, sufficient** *Does the procedure provide adequate safeguards against corruption?* **| added, additional, extra, further | appropriate, necessary | environmental, nuclear | constitutional, legal, procedural**

VERB + SAFEGUARD **introduce | provide (sb with) | build in/into sth** *Appropriate safeguards would have to be built into the procedures to avoid abuses.*

PREP. **~ against** *The credit agreement includes safeguards against overcharging.*

safeguard *verb*

ADV. **fully, properly | adequately, satisfactorily** *This legislation does not adequately safeguard the rights of consumers.*

VERB + SAFEGUARD **help (to) | be designed to | take steps to**

PREP. **against** *We must take steps to safeguard our environment against these threats.* **| from** *to safeguard the young plants from frost*

safety *noun*

ADJ. **extra, greater** *The seat is bolted in place for extra safety.* | **comparative, reasonable, relative** *A blizzard forced the climbers back to the relative safety of their tents.* | **perfect** *Walkways allow visitors to enter the caves in perfect safety.* | **child, passenger, personal, public** *The house has to be rearranged with a view to child safety.* | **fire, food, nuclear, etc.** | **air, home, industrial, occupational, road, traffic, etc.**

VERB + SAFETY **ensure, guarantee** | **improve** | **fear for** *Police fear for the safety of the missing children.*

SAFETY + NOUN **controls, improvements, limits, measures, precautions, procedures, provisions** | **guidelines, laws, legislation, levels, policy, recommendations, regulations, requirements, rules, standards** | **violation** | **hazard, risk** | **check, inspection** | **inspector, officer, official, watchdog** *The plan was rejected by the government nuclear safety watchdog.* | **record** | **aspect, considerations, factor, implications, issues, matters** | **awareness** *The police are conducting a safety awareness programme in local schools.* | **campaign, initiative, training** | **belt, equipment, features, harness, helmet, rope** *The car has many safety features, including anti-skid braking.* | **catch, device, valve** | **barrier, net** (*often figurative*) *State benefits provide a safety net for the very poor.* | **glass, pin, razor, seat**

PREP. **for ~** *The stairs are fitted with handrails either side for safety.* | **for your own ~** *The police gave him protection for his own safety.* | **in ~** *The people want to be able to walk the streets at night in safety.* | **to ~** *We managed to run to safety before the building collapsed.*

PHRASES **for safety reasons** *For safety reasons, children should not operate the machine unsupervised.* | **health and safety** *The company was fined by the health and safety inspectors.* | **on safety grounds** *The playground was closed down on safety grounds.* | **a place of safety** *The refugees finally reached a place of safety.* | **safety first** *When cycling on the roads, remember: safety first.*

sag *verb*

ADV. **slightly | wearily | back, forward** *He sagged wearily back in his chair. Helga's body sagged forward.*

PREP. **against** *She sagged against the door.* **| under** *The shelf sagged under the weight of hundreds of volumes.*

PHRASES **sag in the middle** *a mattress that was beginning to sag in the middle*

saga *noun*

ADJ. **continuing, long-running, ongoing | extraordinary | sorry, terrible | complicated | family**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *His suicide is the latest chapter in this terrible saga of greed and betrayal.*

sail *noun*

ADJ. **main | canvas**

VERB + SAIL **hoist, raise | drop, lower | adjust, trim | fill** *The dinghy gathered speed as the wind filled her sails.* **| reef, shorten | furl**

SAIL + VERB **billow, flap** *The bay was full of yachts with billowing sails.* **| fill**

SAIL + NOUN **area, shape, size | canvas**

PREP. **under ~** *The yacht came in under sail and anchored near us.*

PHRASES **the days of sail** *The boat is preserved as a monument to the days of sail.* **| in/under full sail** *She advanced towards us like a galleon in full sail.* **| set sail (for)** *We set sail for France at first light.*

sail *verb*

ADV. **serenely | single-handed** *to sail single-handed around the world* **| away, back, on, out, past** *The boat sailed serenely on towards the horizon.*

VERB + SAIL **learn to | teach sb to**

PREP. **across** *sailing across the English Channel* **| down, for** *The ferry sails for Southampton at 5.30.* **| from, into** *We sailed the boat out into the middle of the lake.* **| on** *We sailed on a large ocean liner. sailing on the sea* | **out of** *sailing out of the harbour* | **to** *sailing from Dover to Calais.* | **up, etc.**

sailing *noun*

1 **sport**

ADJ. **catamaran, dinghy, etc.**

VERB + SAILING **go**

SAILING + NOUN **club, school | holiday, trip | boat, craft, dinghy, ship, vessel**

2 **journey made by boat**

ADJ. **daily, overnight, regular, weekday, weekend | return**

VERB + SAILING **delay | suspend** *Sailings were suspended in the high winds.*

PREP. **~ between** *The company operates regular sailings between Hull and Zeebrugge.* **| ~ from, ~ to** *the 4 p.m. sailing from Dover to Calais*

sailor *nou*n

ADJ. **experienced, good, keen | inexperienced, novice | drowned, shipwrecked**

saint *noun*

ADJ. **blessed, holy | patron** *St Nicholas is the patron saint of children.*

VERB + SAINT **canonize**

salad *noun*

ADJ. **fresh | crisp, crunchy | limp | green, mixed, potato, rice, tomato, etc. | fruit | chicken, ham, etc. | side** *Is the steak served with a side salad?*

VERB + SALAD **make, prepare | toss** *She tossed and dressed the salad.* **| dress | serve sth with | come with**

SALAD + NOUN **greens, leaves | cream, dressing | garnish** *The sandwiches came with a rather limp salad garnish.* **| bowl | bar** > Special page at FOOD

salary *noun*

ADJ. **competitive, generous, good, handsome, high, large, top** *Top salaries are liable for a higher rate of tax.* **| low, small | reasonable | average | basic | pensionable | gross | net | starting | current | final** *Your pension will be based on a proportion of your final salary.* **| annual, monthly | tax-free**

VERB + SALARY **pay (sb) | earn, receive | increase | cut, decrease, reduce**

SALARY + NOUN **package** *The position is rewarded with a generous salary package.* **| award, increase, rise** *The top salary awards are completely out of line with inflation.* **| cut | level | review | band, grade, range** *What salary band will I be on after two years in the company?* **| scale, structure | bill, costs**

PREP. **on a ~** *It's impossible to bring up a family on such a low salary.*

PHRASES **an increase/a rise in salary, a cut/drop in salary** *Workers are being asked to take a cut in salary.*

sale *noun*

1 **act of selling**

ADJ. **quick** *The price is low to ensure a quick sale.* | **major, massive** *a major sale of paintings the massive sale of foreign currency reserves* | **illegal** *the illegal sale of alcohol* | **auction, bring-and-buy, car-boot, garage, jumble, tabletop** | **house, share, etc.**

VERB + SALE **ban, block, halt, prevent, prohibit, stop** | **close, make** *Closing the sale means that you ask the buyer to say yes or no.* | **hold** *A sale of paintings will be held at the Town Hall on Saturday.*

SALE + VERB **make sth, realize sth, total sth** *The jumble sale made £358 for cancer research. The sale of paintings totalled £250,000.* | **go ahead/through, proceed** | **fall through** *The sale of the house fell through when the buyer pulled out.*

SALE + NOUN **agreement, contract** | **price** | **proceeds** *to maximize the sale proceeds*

PREP. **for ~** *I see they've put their house up for sale.* | **on ~** *The new stamps are now on sale at main post offices.*

PHRASES **conditions of sale** *The conditions of sale were posted up around the auction room.* | **a contract of sale, on open sale** *Drugs were on open sale in the club.* | **the proceeds/profits from a sale** *All proceeds from the sale of the book will go to charity.* | **(on) sale or return** *The novels are delivered to newspaper shops and other outlets on a sale or return basis.*

2 **sales: amount sold**

ADJ. **good, healthy, high, huge, massive, strong** | **increased** | **poor** | **annual, quarterly, etc.** | **direct, retail, telephone** *Direct sales, by mail order, were up by 15%.* | **domestic** | **export, foreign, international, overseas** | **global, overall, total, world, worldwide** | **gross, net** | **unit, volume** | **high-street** *High-street sales have fallen for the fifth consecutive month.* | **arms, car, house, land, ticket, etc.**

QUANT. **level, value, volume** *The high volume of sales makes the low pricing policy profitable.*

VERB + SALE **achieve, have | generate** *The advertising campaign generated massive sales.* **| boost**

SALE + VERB **account for sth** *North American sales account for 40% of the worldwide market.* **| amount to sth, reach sth** *sales amounting to over £4 million Sales failed to reach 10,000 units.* **| exceed sth | be/go up, grow, improve, increase, rise, rocket, skyrocket, soar** *Sales of ice cream are up because of the hot weather.* **| be/go down, decline, drop, fall, slump**

SALE + NOUN **force, people, personnel, staff, team | department, office | director, manager, rep/representative | campaign, drive, effort, promotion | estimates, figures, levels, performance, revenue, targets, volume | growth | slump** *The car manufacturer was forced to shed jobs following a dramatic sales slump.* | **conference | presentation | report | tax | contract | patter, pitch, talk** *an aggressive sales pitch from the company rep*

PHRASES **a decline/drop/fall/slowdown/slump in sales, a growth/an increase/a jump/a rise/a surge/an upturn in sales, sales and marketing** > Note at PERCENT (for more verbs)> Special page at BUSINESS

3 period of reduced prices

ADJ. **annual, summer, winter, etc. | clothing, furniture, etc. | clearance, closing-down**

PREP. **at/in the ~s** *I bought it at the winter sales.*

salesman, salesperson *noun*

ADJ. **experienced | door-to-door, telephone, travelling | car, computer, double-glazing, insurance, used car, vacuum cleaner**

SALESMAN, SALESPERSON + VERB **sell sth** *a travelling salesman selling electrical goods* > Note at JOB

saliva *noun*

QUANT. **dribble** *He wiped a dribble of saliva from his chin.*

VERB + SALIVA **produce | swallow**

SALIVA + VERB **dribble, drip, drool | flow** *The smell of food causes the saliva to flow.*

salmon *noun*

ADJ. **fresh | wild | farmed | smoked | tinned | pink, red**

VERB + SALMON **eat, have | bake, cook, grill, poach, roast | fish for | catch, land | farm**

SALMON + NOUN **fillet, steak | mousse, paste | farm, farming, fishing | river | pink** *a salmon-pink shirt*

PHRASES **a fillet of salmon**

salon *nou*n

ADJ. **beauty, grooming, hair, hairdressing | leading, professional, top | unisex**

VERB + SALON **go to**

salt *noun*

ADJ. **soluble | potassium, sodium, etc. | mineral, rock, sea | common, cooking, table | celery, garlic**

QUANT. **grain | pinch**

VERB + SALT **add, put in/on, season sth with, sprinkle (sth with)** *Don't put so much salt on your chips!*

SALT + NOUN **crystal | solution | content** *foods with a high salt content* **| intake** *He wants to reduce his salt intake.* **| cellar, pot, shaker | air, spray, water | marsh | mine**

PHRASES **high/low in salt, salt and pepper** *Add salt and pepper to taste* (= in the quantity preferred). > Special page at FOOD

salute *noun*

1 **military gesture**

ADJ. **military, naval | smart | mock**

VERB + SALUTE **give (sb)** *The sentry gave a smart salute and waved us on.* **| acknowledge, return | take** *The Queen took the salute as the guardsmen marched past.*

2 **action of respect or welcome**

ADJ. **final, last | 21-gun, etc. | special | triumphant, victory**

PREP. **in ~** *The guests raised their glasses in salute.* **| ~ from** *The retiring editor received a special salute from the local newspaper.* **| ~ to** *His first words were a salute to the people of South Africa.*

salute *verb*

ADV. **smartly** *The captain stood to attention and saluted smartly.*

PREP. **with** *He saluted Pippa with a graceful bend of his head.*

salvation *noun*

ADJ. **individual, personal | eternal**

VERB + SALVATION **bring | seek | attain, find | work out** *I can't solve her problems for her?she'll have to work out her own salvation.*

PREP. **~ from** *salvation from sin* **| ~ through** *The medieval Church believed in salvation through faith and works.*

same *adj., pron.* **the same**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste** *They both taste just the same to me.* **| remain, stay**

ADV. **exactly, just, precisely** *I had exactly the same experience.* **| not altogether, not quite** *That's not quite the same thing, is it?* **| almost, basically, broadly, essentially, more or less, nearly, practically, pretty much, roughly, substantially, virtually** *Your new job will be essentially the same as your old one.*

PREP. **as** *Your dress is nearly the same as mine.*

PHRASES **one and the same** *We can do the two things at one and the same time.*

sample *noun*

1 **small quantity of sth**

ADJ. **blood, DNA, faecal, RNA, rock, serum, tissue, urine, etc. | biopsy, clinical**

VERB + SAMPLE **collect, take | provide** *All the athletes had to provide a urine sample.* **| analyse, study, test**

SAMPLE + NOUN **book** *We looked at sample books to choose the furniture fabric.* **| bottle**

PREP. **~ of** *samples of tissue*

2 **people in a survey**

ADJ. **small | large, wide | population | representative | random**

VERB + SAMPLE **draw** *a sample drawn from men aged 35?40*

SAMPLE + VERB **comprise sth, consist of sth** *Our sample comprised 250 catering workers.*

SAMPLE + NOUN **size** *A larger sample size yields more reliable data.* **| survey | group**

PREP. **~ of** *a wide sample of people*

sample *verb*

ADV. **randomly**

PREP. **from** *The survey was done using a group of 100 children randomly sampled from the school population.*

sanction *noun*

1 **official permission**

ADJ. **official | divine, religious**

VERB + SANCTION **give sb/sth** *The conference gave its official sanction to the change of policy.*

PREP. **with/without sb/sth's ~** *No decision can be taken without the sanction of the complete committee.*

2 **punishment**

ADJ. **heavy, severe, strict | final, ultimate | effective | limited | available** *The school will use all available sanctions to maintain discipline.* **| civil, criminal, disciplinary | legal, penal, social**

VERB + SANCTION **impose | use**

PREP. **~ against** *There were strict sanctions against absenteeism.* **| ~ for** *Employers imposed heavy sanctions for union activity.*

3 **(usually sanctions) against a country**

ADJ. **punitive | international, UN | economic, financial, military, trade**

VERB + SANCTION **impose | lift | break** *Some companies have broken sanctions by supplying arms to the warring states.* **| call for**

SANCTION + NOUN **order** *The company is in breach of a sanctions order.* **| busting** *Several firms were under investigation for sanctions busting.*

PREP. **~ against** *The UN called for sanctions against the invading country.*

PHRASES **the imposition of sanctions, the lifting of sanctions, a threat of sanctions**

sanction *verb*

ADV. **officially | legally, socially** *Slavery was once socially sanctioned.* **| tacitly** *He had tacitly sanctioned repression against the opposition parties.*

VERB + SANCTION **refuse to**

sanctuary *noun*

VERB + SANCTUARY **seek** *Thousands of refugees have sought sanctuary in neighbouring countries.* **| take** *In former times, criminals could take sanctuary inside a church.* **| give sb, offer (sb)**

PREP. **~ from** *It had been built as a sanctuary from World War II bombs.*

sand *noun*

ADJ. **fine** *a beach of fine golden sand* **| coarse | soft | hard | damp, wet | dry | burning, hot | golden, silver, white, yellow | desert** *the burning desert sands*

QUANT. **grain | patch, strip**

SAND + NOUN **beach, dune | pit** (also **sandpit**) **| castle** (also **sandcastle)**

PREP. **in the ~** *The children played happily in the sand.* **| on the ~** *We found her asleep on the sand.*

sandal *nou*n

ADJ. **high-heeled | flat, low-heeled | open, open-toed | strappy**

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + SANDAL **kick off** > Special page at CLOTHES

sandwich *noun*

ADJ. **cheese, ham, etc. | toasted | open | club**

QUANT. **round**

VERB + SANDWICH **make** *He made two rounds of tuna sandwiches.* **| bite into, eat, have, munch, take a bite of**

SANDWICH + NOUN **filling | bag, box | bar**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *What would you like in your sandwich?*

sane *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | remain, stay | keep sb** *Having that little bit of time to myself is what keeps me sane.*

ADV. **eminently, very | completely, perfectly, quite, utterly** *She seems perfectly sane to me.* **| not entirely**

sanitation *noun*

ADJ. **inadequate, poor, primitive | better, improved, proper | public**

SANITATION + NOUN **system | project**

PHRASES **lack of sanitation** *the direct link between disease and lack of adequate sanitation*

sanity *noun*

VERB + SANITY **doubt, question** *There were moments when he doubted his own sanity.* **| fear for** *I fear for her sanity if this continues much longer.* **| keep, maintain, preserve, retain** *Getting away at weekends is the only way I can retain my sanity.* **| lose | recover, regain | threaten** *The pace of city life threatens our sanity.*

SANITY + VERB **return** *Stock market trading slowly settled down as sanity returned.*

PREP. **for your ~** *Such a move is essential for the sanity of all concerned.*

sap *noun*

VERB + SAP **extract** *Maple syrup is made from sap extracted from the sugar maple tree.*

SAP + VERB **rise** *It was spring, and the sap was rising.*

sarcasm *noun*

ADJ. **bitter, heavy, withering | gentle, mild | deliberate | thinly-veiled, veiled**

QUANT. **edge, hint, note, touch, trace** *There was an edge of sarcasm in her voice. He made the remark without a hint of sarcasm.*

VERB + SARCASM **be full of, be heavy with, drip** (used about sb's voice) *His voice dripped sarcasm.*

PREP. **with ~** *'Your skills amaze me,' she said, with heavy sarcasm.* **| ~ in** *I detected a touch of sarcasm in his remarks.*

sarcastic *adj.*

VERBS be | become, get

ADV. extremely, very | faintly, lightly, mildly, slightly, somewhat *His tone was lightly sarcastic.*

PREP. about *He was very sarcastic about my attempts at telling jokes.*

satellite *noun*

ADJ. **artificial | commercial, communications, meteorological, reconnaissance, research, spy, weather**

VERB + SATELLITE **launch, put into orbit, put up, send up**

SATELLITE + VERB **be in orbit, orbit sth** *About 100 Russian satellites are orbiting the earth.* **| pass over sth** *The satellite passes over Britain every afternoon.* **| monitor sth, track sth** *a new satellite that monitors changes in the environment* **| broadcast sth, relay sth, transmit sth** *The satellite will transmit the information back to earth.*

SATELLITE + NOUN **photograph, picture | data | link** *The pictures are broadcast through a live satellite link with Tokyo.* **| communications, system, technology | dish, receiver, television/TV | broadcasters, channel, company, station**

PREP. **from a/the ~** *images from satellites* **| via ~** *The BBC broadcast the game via satellite.*

satire *noun*

ADJ. **biting, brilliant | political, social** *the recent boom in political satire*

PREP. **~ on** *The film is a brilliant satire on Hollywood.*

satisfaction *noun*

ADJ. **complete, deep, great, immense, tremendous | evident, obvious | quiet | personal | job | sexual**

QUANT. **level** *My current level of job satisfaction is pretty low.*

VERB + SATISFACTION **derive, feel, find, gain, get, have, take** *He derived great satisfaction from knowing that his son was happy. Although we didn't win, we were able to take some satisfaction from our performance.* **| bring (sb), give sb, provide (sb with) | express**

PREP. **in ~** *She watched in satisfaction as he opened the present.* **| to your ~** *The matter was resolved to our general satisfaction.* **| with ~** *He nodded with evident satisfaction.* **| ~ at** *her deep satisfaction at seeing justice done* **| ~ in** *I find satisfaction in helping people.* **| ~ of** *I had the satisfaction of proving him wrong.* **| ~ with** *Both parties expressed their complete satisfaction with the decision.*

PHRASES **cause/grounds for satisfaction** *Although the team lost, their performance gave cause for satisfaction.* **| a feeling/sense of satisfaction, a source of satisfaction** *The children were a major source of satisfaction.*

satisfactory *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, prove, seem, sound | consider sth, find sth, regard sth as**

ADV. **eminently, highly, most, very** *It was all most satisfactory.* **| completely, fully, perfectly, quite | far from, less than, not altogether, not at all, not entirely, not totally, not wholly** *The results were not entirely satisfactory.* **| broadly, fairly, generally, more or less, reasonably | apparently | mutually** *The arrangement has proved mutually satisfactory.*

PREP. **to** *We hope this proposal is satisfactory to you.*

satisfied *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem | declare/profess/pronounce yourself** *He declared himself satisfied with the results.*

ADV. **extremely, more than, very, well** *feeling well satisfied with her day's work* **| absolutely, completely, fully, perfectly, quite, totally | far from, not entirely, not wholly | fairly, generally, reasonably | enough, sufficiently** *Her parents seemed satisfied enough with her progress.* **| apparently**

PREP. **with** *She seemed satisfied with the arrangements.*

satisfy *verb*

VERB + SATISFY **must, should** *The education system must satisfy the needs of all children.* **| be able/unable to, can/could** *The owners were unable to satisfy all the demands of the workers. Nothing could satisfy his desire for power.* **| seem to** *His answer seemed to satisfy her.* **| be enough to, be sufficient to** *Her description of events was not enough to satisfy the court.* **| fail to** *The meal failed to satisfy his hunger.*

satisfying *adj.*

VERBS **be | find sth**

ADV. **deeply, eminently, extremely, highly, immensely, really, richly, very** *There's something deeply satisfying about eating vegetables that you have grown yourself.* **| completely, thoroughly, wholly | quite | personally** *the need for a personally satisfying set of beliefs* **| mutually** *a mutually satisfying relationship* **| aesthetically, logically, musically**

saturation *noun*

ADJ. **market**

VERB + SATURATION **approach, be close to** *The company's sales are now close to saturation in many western countries.* **| reach**

SATURATION + NOUN **level, point** *Demand for the product has reached saturation point.* **| coverage** *television's saturation coverage of the World Cup* **| bombing**

Saturday *nou*n > Note at DAY

sauce *noun*

ADJ. **thick, thin | creamy | piquant, rich, spicy, tangy | delicate | smooth | lumpy | barbecue, chilli, soy, sweet and sour, Tabasco, tomato, white** (= made from butter, flour and milk), **etc.** *fish in white sauce* **| pasta**

VERB + SAUCE **make | thicken | reduce | pour on/over sth, spoon on/over sth** *Pour the sauce over the pasta.*

SAUCE + VERB **thicken**

SAUCE + NOUN **bottle**

PREP. **in ~** *chicken in white wine sauce* **| with ~** *We had lamb with mint sauce.* > Special page at FOOD

saucepan (*also* **pan)** *noun*

ADJ. non-stick | heavy, heavy-based

VERB + SAUCEPAN cover *Cover the saucepan and remove from the heat.* **| remove from the heat | add sth to, put sth in/into, return sth to | remove sth from**

SAUCEPAN + VERB contain sth *a pan containing lots of boiling salted water*

PREP. in/into a/the ~ *Heat one tablespoon of oil in a saucepan. Pour the pasta into a pan of boiling water.*

saunter *verb*

ADV. **casually, slowly | along, back, in, out, over** *She sauntered in fifteen minutes late.*

PREP. **along, into, out of, through, etc.** *He sauntered casually through the door.*

PHRASES **come sauntering** *He came sauntering over to meet us.*

sausage *noun*

ADJ. **beef, garlic, liver, pork, etc. | vegetarian | spicy**

QUANT. **slice**

VERB + SAUSAGE **eat, have | cook, fry, grill**

SAUSAGE + VERB **sizzle**

SAUSAGE + NOUN **meat, skin | roll** > Special page at FOOD

savage *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become**

ADV. **downright, really, very | increasingly** *The war became increasingly savage.* **| rather** *a rather savage dog*

save *noun*

ADJ. **brilliant, excellent, fine, good, great, outstanding, spectacular, superb | crucial, important, vital | diving | one-handed**

VERB + SAVE **bring off, make, pull off** *Casillas made some spectacular saves.*

PREP. **~ by/from** *some great saves from both keepers*

save *verb*

1 **keep sb/sth safe**

VERB + SAVE **be able/unable to, can/could, may, might (just)** *It's a trick that might just save us from total disaster.* | **help (to)** *She helped save my career.* | **battle to, try to** *Doctors battled to save the little boy's life.* | **manage to** *We managed to save the animals from being put down.*

PREP. **from** *They saved the paintings from destruction.*

PHRASES **an attempt/effort to save sth** *a last, desperate attempt to save his marriage* | **a battle/bid/campaign to save sth**

2 **not spend money**

ADV. **up**

VERB + SAVE **try to | manage to**

PREP. **for** *I'm trying to save up for my holiday.*

3 **in football/hockey**

ADV. **brilliantly**

PREP. **from** *The goalie saved brilliantly from Johnson's long-range shot.*

saver *noun*

ADJ. **existing** *Only children whose parents are existing savers may open an account.* **| small** *encouraging small savers to invest in UK companies*

PREP. **~ with** *savers with the United Bank*

saving *noun*

1 **amount not used or wasted**

ADJ. **big, considerable, great, major, significant, substantial | estimated, expected, possible, potential** *The potential savings are enormous.* **| overall, total | actual, net | cost, financial | energy, fuel** *the advantages of energy saving*

VERB + SAVING **add up to, give (sb), mean, represent, result in** *For a family of four this can mean a saving of around £500.* **| offer (sb)** *This design offers considerable savings in fuel efficiency.* **| achieve, make** *We need to see where financial savings can be made.* **| pass on** *We will pass on this saving to our customers.*

SAVING + VERB **come from sth, result from sth** *The major savings come from reduced labour costs.*

PREP. **with a ~** *This was done, with a saving of 40% in staff costs.* **| ~ for** *a saving for club members* **| ~ from** *savings from the use of the new technology* **| ~ in** *a significant saving in energy costs* **| ~ on** *You can have all the benefits of membership while making a big saving on price.* **| ~ to** *This represents a saving to British business of about £175 million a year.*

2 **savings: money saved in a bank, etc.**

ADJ. **small | long-term | life | personal, private**

VERB + SAVING **have** *I haven't got any savings.* **| invest | deposit, put** *My grandfather refused to put his savings in the bank.* **| take out, withdraw | break into, dip into | tie up** *You get higher interest if you agree to tie up your savings for a long period.* **| build up** *I was determined to build up some savings.* **| spend, use (up) | live on** *She lost her job and had to live on her savings.* **| lose** *The couple lost their entire life savings on the venture.*

SAVING + VERB **grow**

SAVING + NOUN **account, bank | certificate | plan, scheme**

PHRASES **access to your savings** *The card gives you instant access to your savings.*

saviour *noun*

ADJ. **possible, potential**

VERB + SAVIOUR **hail sb as, see sb/sth as, treat sb as** *The people clearly saw her as their saviour.* **| be acclaimed as, emerge as** *He emerged as the potential saviour of the club.*

say *verb*

ADV. **aloud, out loud | loudly | gently, quietly, softly | gruffly, huskily, thickly | at once | at last, at length, finally | again, repeatedly | simply** *'I am home,' he said simply.* **| hastily, hurriedly, promptly, quickly | slowly | steadily | abruptly, suddenly | briskly, curtly, shortly, tersely | angrily, bitterly, crossly, fiercely, furiously, sharply** *'I don't know,' she said crossly.* **| bluntly, flatly | firmly | harshly, sternly | brightly, cheerfully, happily | miserably, sadly | gravely, grimly, seriously, solemnly | airily, casually, easily, lightly, smoothly** *'There's nothing wrong with him,' she said airily.* **| stiffly, tightly | proudly | carefully, thoughtfully | conversationally | calmly, evenly, mildly | patiently | impatiently | ungraciously | politely | soothingly | apologetically | awkwardly, lamely | drily, tartly | coldly, coolly, icily | breathlessly | absently, vaguely | honestly, truthfully** *Can you honestly say you're sorry?*

VERB + SAY **be about to, be going to** *I've forgotten what I was going to say.* **| hasten to | long to, want to** *I want to say how much we have all enjoyed this evening.* **| hate to** *I hate to say it, but I think Stephen may be right.* **| dare (to)** *I dared not say a word about it to anyone.* **| suffice (it) to** *Suffice it to say, I refused to get involved.* **| be fair to** *It is fair to say a considerable amount of effort went into the project.* **| be untrue to | have nothing to, have something to** *Be quiet, I have something to say.* **| hear sb, overhear sb** *I heard him say they were leaving tomorrow.*

PREP. **about** *Do you have anything to say about this?* **| to** *That's not what he said to me.*

PHRASES **be quoted as saying sth** *The minister was quoted as saying that the government would do whatever was necessary to restore order.* **| a thing to say** *That was a very cruel thing to say.*

saying *noun*

ADJ. **well-known | old, traditional | favourite** *It was one of my mother's favourite sayings.*

PREP. **~ about** *traditional sayings about the weather*

PHRASES **as the saying goes** *'Practice makes perfect,' as the old saying goes.*

scaffolding *noun*

QUANT. **piece**

VERB + SCAFFOLDING **erect, put up | remove, take down | climb (up)**

SCAFFOLDING + NOUN **pole**

PREP. **on the ~** *There are several builders working on the scaffolding.*

scale *noun*

1 size/extent

ADJ. **full** *It was several days before the full scale of the accident became clear.* | **big, considerable, grand, greater, huge, large, massive, monumental, vast** | **modest, small** | **sheer** *It is difficult to comprehend the sheer scale of the suffering caused by the war.* | **unprecedented** *a misuse of presidential power on an unprecedented scale* | **ambitious, lavish** *Do they always entertain on such a lavish scale?* | **global, international, national, regional, world** | **commercial** *The dolls are now produced on a commercial scale.* | **human** *The city would operate on a more human scale if cars were banned from the centre.*

VERB + SCALE **increase** | **reduce**

PREP. **in ~** *The paintings are small in scale.* | **on a ~** *pollution on a massive scale*

PHRASES **an economy of scale** *Economies of scale enable the larger companies to lower their prices.* | **the scale of the problem**

2 range of values

ADJ. **fixed** | **sliding** *Benefits are paid on a sliding scale according to family income.* | **rating** | **time** *Can you give me any sort of time scale for the completion of the building work?* | **evolutionary** | **social** | **pay, salary, wage** *The company has a five-point pay scale.* | **Beaufort, Richter** *The earthquake measured 6.4 on the Richter scale.*

VERB + SCALE **go/move down/up, rise up** *He has risen up the social scale from rather humble beginnings.*

SCALE + VERB **go/range from … to …** *a scale ranging from ‘utterly miserable’ to ‘deliriously happy’*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *Where do birds come on the evolutionary scale?* | **~ of … to …** *On a scale of 1 to 10, he scores 7.*

PHRASES **the bottom/end/top of the scale** *After 10 years, she had worked her way to the top of the pay scale.*

3 **relation between actual size and size of a model, etc.**

VERB + SCALE **draw sth to | have**

SCALE + NOUN **drawing, model** *He's made a scale model of the Eiffel Tower.*

PREP. **to ~** *The plan of the building is not drawn to scale.* **| ~ of … to …** *The map has a scale of one centimetre to the kilometre. a scale of 1: 25,000*

4 **in music**

ADJ. **major, minor | chromatic, diatonic, diminished, pentatonic, whole-tone**

VERB + SCALE **play, sing | practise** *We could hear her practising her scales.*

PREP. **~ of** *the scale of C major*

5 **on a fish, etc.**

ADJ. **overlapping | fine, thin | armoured | fish**

VERB + SCALE **be covered in/with**

scales *noun*

ADJ. **weighing | bathroom, kitchen**

QUANT. **pair, set** *a pair of kitchen scales*

VERB + SCALES **put sth on/onto, weigh sth on | get on/onto, stand on, step on/onto | tip** *At birth, she tipped the scales at a healthy 7lb 9oz.*

PREP. **on the ~** *I had a shock when I stood on the scales.*

scalp *noun*

ADJ. **itchy | flaky**

VERB + SCALP **massage | scratch**

SCALP + VERB **itch | crawl, prickle** *Her scalp crawled with tension.* **| gleam** *His pink scalp gleamed through his sparse hair.*

SCALP + NOUN **condition, problem** *treatment for hair and scalp problems* **| massage, treatment**

scan *noun*

1 **quick look**

ADJ. **quick, rapid** *A quick scan of the local paper revealed nothing.*

PREP. **~ of**

2 **examination by a machine**

ADJ. **body, bone, brain | ultrasound | routine**

VERB + SCAN **have | give sb | take**

SCAN + VERB **reveal sth** *A routine scan revealed abnormalities in the foetus.*

PREP. **~ of** *The doctors took a scan of his thigh bone.*

scan *verb*

ADV. **carefully | quickly, rapidly | anxiously, nervously** *She scanned the street nervously, looking for the two men.* **| eagerly**

PREP. **for** *I scanned the paper for news.*

scandal *noun*

ADJ. **big, great, major | fresh | national, public | bribery, corruption, drug/drugs, financial, political, sex/sexual**

QUANT. **series** *The government was rocked by a series of scandals.*

VERB + SCANDAL **cause, create | expose, reveal, uncover | be embroiled in, be implicated in, be involved in, be mixed up in** *There have been calls for the resignation of the minister involved in the sex scandal.* **| be rocked by | attract** *Their relationship attracted a lot of scandal.* **| spread, stir up** *She's always trying to stir up scandal.* **| cover up, hush up**

SCANDAL + VERB **break, develop, erupt** *The scandal broke on the front pages of all the papers the next day.* **| involve sb/sth | surround sb/sth** *financial scandals surrounding the government*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He was imprisoned for his part in the bribery scandal.* **| ~ over** *the scandals over corruption in public life*

PHRASES **the centre of a scandal** *The apartment was paid for by the bank at the centre of the scandal.* **| a hint/suggestion of scandal** *Until the story was published there had been no hint of scandal.*

scapegoat *noun*

ADJ. **convenient, easy**

VERB + SCAPEGOAT **make sb, use sb as** *He has been made a scapegoat for the company's failures.*

PREP. **~ for** *They are being made the scapegoats for all the ills of society.*

scar *noun*

ADJ. **deep, large, long | puckered | disfiguring, ugly, unsightly | permanent | emotional, mental, psychological** *Her mental scars will take time to heal.*

VERB + SCAR **leave | bear** *(often figurative) The countryside still bears the scars of the recent hurricane.*

SCAR + VERB **form | heal**

SCAR + NOUN **tissue**

PREP. **~ on** *The cut left a permanent scar on his arm.*

scar *verb* **(**often **be scarred)**

ADV. **badly, deeply, hideously** *His face was badly scarred by the fire.* **| emotionally, mentally, physically, psychologically** *She was both physically and mentally scarred by the accident.* **| permanently**

PREP. **with** *(figurative) Their minds were scarred with bitterness.*

PHRASES **be scarred for life, leave sb scarred** *The accident left him permanently scarred.*

scarce *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become, grow** *Medical supplies were growing scarce.* **| remain**

ADV. **extremely, particularly, very | increasingly** *Skilled workers were becoming increasingly scarce.* **| pretty, rather, relatively, somewhat** *Money was somewhat scarce after the war.*

scarcity *noun*

ADJ. **great | relative**

SCARCITY + NOUN **value** *Old properties in the town have acquired a scarcity value.*

PREP. **~ of** *There is a great scarcity of food in the drought-stricken areas.*

PHRASES **in times/years of scarcity** *In times of scarcity, lions will travel great distances in search of food.*

scare *noun*

ADJ. **major, terrible** *a major health scare* **| minor | bomb | food, health | Aids, BSE, etc.**

VERB + SCARE **cause | give sb** *It wasn't a serious heart attack, but it gave him a terrible scare.* **| get, have**

SCARE + NOUN **story, tactics** *The government used scare tactics to get parents to have their children vaccinated against the disease.*

PREP. **~ about/over** *the scare over British beef*

PHRASES **a bit of a/quite a scare** *I got a bit of a scare when the police rang.*

scare *verb*

ADV. **really | easily** *He doesn't scare easily.*

VERB + SCARE **try to**

PREP. **into** *They're just trying to scare us into letting out the secret.* **| with** *You don't scare me with your threats!*

PHRASES **scare sb silly/stiff/to death** *(informal) The very thought of flying scares me stiff.* **| scare the hell/life/living daylights out of sb** *(informal) You scared the life out of me, hiding like that!* **| scare the pants off sb** *(informal)*

scared *adj.*

VERBS **be, be running** *(figurative)*, **feel, look, seem, sound** *They had their opponent running scared.* **| get**

ADV. **dead, downright, extremely, really, shit** *(taboo)*, **very | a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather | just, plain** *He wasn't ill, Sophie decided. He was just plain scared.*

PREP. **about** *It's only a little injection. It's nothing to be scared about.* **| at** *feeling a little scared at the thought of the operation* **| of** *I'm really scared of heights.*

PHRASES **scared out of your wits, scared stiff** *(informal)*, **scared to death** *(informal)*

scarf *noun*

ADJ. **long | chiffon, silk, woollen | college, football**

VERB + SCARF **wind around sth, wrap around sth** *He wrapped his scarf around his neck.* **| knot, tie** *She had a scarf tied over her head.* **| unwind**

SCARF + VERB **cover sth** *Her hair was covered by a silk scarf.* > Special page at CLOTHES

scarlet *adj.*

1 **bright red in colour**

ADJ. bright, brilliant, flaming, vivid > Special page at COLOUR

2 **red in the face**

VERBS be | become, blush, flush, go, turn

ADV. absolutely *He had gone absolutely scarlet with embarrassment.*

ADJ. bright *She flushed bright scarlet.*

PREP. with

scattered *adj.*

VERBS **be, lie**

ADV. **liberally** *Large vases of flowers were liberally scattered about the room.* **| randomly | thinly | widely** *living in widely scattered communities* **| geographically | everywhere**

PREP. **about/around, across, among, on, over** *Broken glass lay scattered over the floor.* **| throughout, with** *The whole area was scattered with debris.*

scenario *noun*

ADJ. **future, likely, possible** *The more likely scenario is that the president will resign and an election will be held.* **| unlikely | optimistic | doomsday, nightmare, pessimistic, worst, worst-case | dramatic | alternative**

VERB + SCENARIO **consider, construct, imagine | describe, paint** *the scenario painted by some sections of the Western press* **| enact, play out** *He enjoyed playing out the various scenarios in his own mind.*

SCENARIO + VERB **unfold**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *In a worst-case scenario, the disease will reach epidemic proportions.* **| under a/the ~** *Under any of these scenarios, the company will run into debt.*

scene *noun*

1 **place where sth happened**

ADJ. **accident, crash, murder** *footprints found near the murder scene*

VERB + SCENE **attend, be on** *PC Michael Potter attended the scene.* | **arrive at/on, reach** *An ambulance soon arrived at the scene of the accident.* | **leave** | **be called to** *The police were called to the scene.* | **survey** *He surveyed the scene with horror.*

PREP. **at the ~** *Police say the man died at the scene.* | **on the ~** *Photographers were on the scene in seconds.* | **~ of** *The criminal often revisits the scene of the crime.*

2 **what you see around you**

ADJ. **beautiful, charming, idyllic, peaceful, picturesque** | **appalling, distressing, horrific** | **touching** | **bizarre, extraordinary, strange** *She opened the door on an extraordinary scene of disorder.* | **familiar** | **domestic** *a touching domestic scene* | **ever-changing** *I stared out of the window of the train on the ever-changing scene.* | **city, country, rural, street**

VERB + SCENE **watch, witness**

SCENE + VERB **occur, take place, unfold** *We sat in horror watching the scenes of violence unfold before us.* | **be reminiscent of sth** *Paramedics tended the wounded in scenes reminiscent of wartime.*

PREP. **amid/amidst ~s of** *The star arrived amidst scenes of excitement.* | **in a/the ~** | **~ from** *scenes from Greek mythology* | **~ of** *He painted scenes of country life. The battlefield was a scene of utter carnage.*

PHRASES **a change of scene** *You're exhausted. What you need is a complete change of scene.*

3 **one part of book, play, etc.**

ADJ. **opening** | **climactic, final, last** | **dramatic, funny, steamy, touching, tragic** *The film has several steamy bedroom scenes.* | **action, battle, bedroom,**

crowd, death, fight, love, nude, sex

VERB + SCENE **act, play** *She plays the love scenes brilliantly.* | **rehearse, run through** *to run through the final scene again* | **film, shoot** | **set** *The scene is set in the first paragraph with an account of Sally's childhood.* | **change** | **steal** *The little girl stole the scene from all the big stars.*

SCENE + VERB **take place** | **shift** *Then the scene shifts to the kitchen.*

SCENE + NOUN **change**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He appears in the opening scene.* | **~ between** *There is a dramatic fight scene between the two brothers.*

PHRASES **behind the scenes** (= behind the stage), **a change of scene**

4 **public display of anger, etc.**

ADJ. **big** | **little** | **angry, ugly, unpleasant, terrible** | **emotional, violent**

VERB + SCENE **cause, create, make** *Quiet, now! Don't make a scene!* | **have**

PREP. **~ between** *There have been a couple of ugly scenes between him and the manager.* | **~ with** *She had some terrible scenes with her father.*

5 **area of activity**

ADJ. **burgeoning, flourishing, lively** | **contemporary** | **international, local, world** | **art, club, comedy, drug/drugs, economic, education/educational, fashion, gay, literary, music/musical, political, social, sporting, etc.** *He is heavily involved in the local art scene.*

VERB + SCENE **be involved in, be part of** | **appear on, arrive on, come on/onto** *Owen arrived on the international scene in the 1998 World Cup.* | **vanish from** *Many of the stars of the nineties have completely vanished from the music scene.* | **dominate**

PREP. **on/onto the ~** *the eruption of Cuban music onto the world scene*

PHRASES **a newcomer to the scene** *The film's dir* | **not your scene** *(informal) Hillwalking is not my scene, so I stayed at home.*

scenery *noun*

1 **features of the countryside**

ADJ. **beautiful, breathtaking, delightful, dramatic, fantastic, glorious, impressive, magnificent, spectacular, stunning, superb, wonderful | changing, ever-changing, varied | surrounding** *The village is charming and the surrounding scenery superb.* **| passing | coastal, mountain, mountainous**

VERB + SCENERY **admire, enjoy, look at, take in** *An observation deck lets you take in the passing scenery.*

SCENERY + VERB **change**

PREP. **amid/amidst/in (the) ~** *The hotel lies amidst spectacular mountain scenery.* **| through (the) ~** *The train passes through some magnificent scenery.*

PHRASES **the beauty of the scenery, a change of scenery** *For a complete change of scenery, take a ferry out to one of the nearby islands.* **| a variety of scenery** *The river passes through a rich variety of scenery.*

2 **in a theatre**

VERB + SCENERY **set up | change**

PREP. **~ for** *That table is part of the scenery for Act 2.*

scent *noun*

1 **pleasant smell**

ADJ. **heady, heavy, pungent, rich, sharp, strong** *the heavy scent of Indian cooking* | **delicate, faint** | **sweet** | **beautiful, lovely** | **fresh** *the fresh scent of flowers* | **warm** | **musky** | **exotic**

VERB + SCENT **have** *This flower has no scent.* | **be filled with** *The air was filled with the scent of lilac.* | **give off, release** *The flowers give off a heady scent at night.* | **smell**

SCENT + VERB **come, drift** *From the vine outside came the scent of honey.* | **fill sth** *The scent of pine filled the room.* | **linger** *The scent of incense lingered in the air.*

2 **smell that an animal/a person leaves behind**

ADJ. **body, human, masculine, personal, sexual**

VERB + SCENT **be on, have** *The dog was on the scent of a rabbit. The hounds have the scent.* | **leave** *The cat had left its scent on the sofa.* | **catch, pick up** *One of the hounds had picked up the scent of a fox.* | **lose** | **follow**

SCENT + NOUN **gland** | **trail**

3 **liquid with a sweet smell that you put on your body**

ADJ. **expensive** | **cheap**

QUANT. **bottle**

VERB + SCENT **use, wear** | **dab on, put on, spray on** *She dabbed some scent on her wrists.* | **smell** | **reek of, smell of** *She reeked of cheap scent.*

SCENT + NOUN **bottle**

scented *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **heavily, highly, powerfully, richly, strongly** *richly scented flowers* **|** **delicately, lightly** *the delicately scented writing paper* **|** **beautifully, sweetly**

PREP. **with** *The air was scented with the smell of pines.*

sceptic *noun*

VERB + SCEPTIC **convince, win over** *He has managed to convince even the sceptics.* **| confound**

SCEPTIC + VERB **argue sth, point out sth, say sth** *Sceptics will argue that no such scheme has ever proved successful.*

PREP. **~ about** *She is a sceptic about the dangers of global warming.*

PHRASES **prove the sceptics right/wrong** *Events since the elections have proved the sceptics right.*

sceptical *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, remain | become**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, very | increasingly | fairly, mildly, rather, slightly, somewhat** *in a mildly sceptical tone of voice* **| openly** *They remained openly sceptical about her promises of improvement.*

PREP. **about** *He is deeply sceptical about the value of teaching poetry.* **| as to** *Many were sceptical as to whether the plan would succeed.* **| of** *They are highly sceptical of political leaders.*

scepticism *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total | considerable, deep, extreme, great | healthy | growing | widespread | initial** *My initial scepticism was replaced with respectful admiration.*

QUANT. **certain amount, degree, great deal** *I regard their press releases with a degree of scepticism.*

VERB + SCEPTICISM **have** *She has a healthy scepticism towards the claims in the company's report.* **| express, voice**

PREP. **with ~** *This theory was initially received with great scepticism by her fellow scientists.* **| ~ about/over/towards** *He expressed a great deal of scepticism about the value of psychoanalysis.*

schedule *noun*

ADJ. **daily, weekly, etc. | ambitious, busy, demanding, gruelling, heavy, hectic, punishing, tight | rigid, strict | business, production, training, work, etc. | flight, television, etc.** *disruptions to flight schedules caused by the strike*

VERB + SCHEDULE **have, work to** *She has an very demanding schedule.* **| arrange, design, draw up, plan, prepare | amend | be/go according to, keep to, meet, run to, stick to** *At this stage everything is going according to schedule. We had to work a lot of overtime to meet the strict production schedule.* **| be/run ahead of | be/fall/run/slip behind | interrupt, take time out of** *The president took time out of his busy schedule to visit our school.*

PREP. **in the ~** *Allow time in the schedule for holidays and illness.* **| on ~** *The project is right on schedule.*

schedule *verb*

ADV. **currently | originally** *The meeting was originally scheduled for March 12th.* **| provisionally, tentatively**

PREP. **for** *The film is scheduled for release next month.*

PHRASES **be scheduled to begin/start/take place** *The Grand Prix is scheduled to take place on July 4th.*

scheme *noun*

ADJ. **major | ambitious, grand, grandiose | imaginative, ingenious, innovative | crazy, hare-brained, ill-conceived | successful | voluntary | pilot** *The project is based on a successful pilot scheme in Glasgow.* **| incentive, insurance, pension, recycling, share, training, etc.**

VERB + SCHEME **have** *He has an ingenious scheme to attract funding.* **| come up with, design, devise, draw up, dream up, plan, prepare, propose, think up** *She's come up with a hare-brained scheme for getting her novel published.* **| approve | announce, establish, initiate, introduce, launch, organize, set up, start** *The government set up a scheme of limited public health assistance in 1992.* **| adopt, carry out, operate, run | back** *a government-backed scheme* **| be in, join, participate in, take part in | use | leave** *I opted to leave the company pension scheme.* **| abolish, wind up**

SCHEME + VERB **offer sth, provide sth | allow sth, enable sth** *The scheme allows customers to trade in their own computer against the cost of a new one.* **| aim to, be aimed at sth, be designed for/to, involve sth** *a scheme involving local libraries* **| apply to sth, cover sth** *The scheme applies to families with three or more children.* **| go ahead, proceed** *The scheme has been given approval to go ahead.* **| succeed, work | collapse, fail**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Schools in the scheme will receive an annual grant.* **| under a/the ~** *Under the scheme, land would be sold to building companies.* **| ~ for** *Is this another one of your crazy schemes for making money? a training scheme for unemployed teenagers* **| ~ whereby** *a scheme whereby the elderly will be provided with help in the home*

schizophrenia *noun*

ADJ. **chronic**

VERB + SCHIZOPHRENIA **have, suffer from | develop | diagnose | treat**

SCHIZOPHRENIA + NOUN **sufferer** > Special page at ILLNESS

scholar *nou*n

ADJ. **brilliant, distinguished, eminent, famous, great, leading, outstanding | visiting | biblical, classical, French, history, literary, etc.**

scholarship *noun*

VERB + SCHOLARSHIP **gain, get, win | award (sb), give (sb)** *The Fund awards four scholarships every year.*

SCHOLARSHIP + NOUN **exam/examination | programme, scheme | student**

PREP. **on a ~** *Two of the girls here are on scholarships.* **| ~ to** *He won a scholarship to Queens' College, Cambridge.*

school *noun*

ADJ. **elementary, high, middle, nursery, prep/preparatory, primary, secondary | comprehensive, grammar, secondary modern | direct-grant, grant-maintained, state | independent, private, public** (In Britain ‘public schools’ are private.) **| special** *She attends a special school for children with learning difficulties.* **| boys', co-educational, girls', mixed, mixed-sex, single-sex | boarding, residential | day | Sunday | summer | local, rural, village | art, business, dance, drama, film, language, medical, riding, secretarial, training, etc.**

VERB + SCHOOL **attend, go to | start | finish, leave | skip, (play) truant from | be/stay off, keep sb off** *His mum kept him off school for two weeks when he was ill.*

SCHOOL + NOUN **curriculum | student | teacher** (also **schoolteacher)** *She's a middle-school teacher.* **| leaver | building, hall, library | term, year | holidays | bus | meals | rules | uniform | assembly | age** *She's got four children of school age.*

PREP. **after ~** *We're going to play football after school.* **| at (a/the) ~** *She didn't do very well at school. Their son's at the school near the station.* **| in (a/the)~** *Are the children still in school? the cleverest child in the school*

schooling *noun*

ADJ. **good** *She received the best schooling the town could offer.* **| bad, poor** *Many children are disadvantaged by poor schooling.* **| compulsory** *Compulsory schooling ends at sixteen.* **| formal | primary, secondary**

VERB + SCHOOLING **get, have, receive** *He has had no formal schooling.* **| continue (with)** *She continued with her schooling after a long period of illness.* **| interrupt**

SCHOOLING + VERB **suffer** *We will stay in this country, as we don't want her schooling to suffer.*

SCHOOLING + NOUN **system**

PHRASES **access to schooling** *A child's access to schooling varies greatly from area to area.* **| years of schooling** *children's development in the early years of schooling*

science *noun*

ADJ. **hard** *His essay is not based on hard science.* **| exact, inexact** *Politics is as much an art form as an exact science.* **| popular** *The magazine contains a lot of popular science.* **| basic, school** *I was trying to remember what I had learnt about gravity in school science.* **| applied, experimental | biological, human, life, natural, physical** *The life sciences include biology and botany.* **| agricultural, earth, environmental, food, marine, soil | forensic | medical, veterinary | behavioural, political, social | computer, information | cognitive, linguistic | space | sports | management**

SCIENCE + NOUN **education, research, teaching | museum, park**

PREP. **~ of** *Meteorology is the science of the weather.*

PHRASES **the history of science, the laws of science, science and technology, the world of science** *His experiments have achieved notoriety in the world of science.* > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and more nouns)

scientific *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem**

ADV. **highly** *It all looks highly scientific!* **| truly | purely** *Her curiosity was purely scientific.* **| not very** *His approach was not very scientific.*

scientist *noun*

ADJ. **brilliant, good, great | distinguished, eminent, famous, leading, respected | trained | chief, senior | serious | mad** *(often humorous) She had an image of a mad scientist working in his laboratory.* | **professional | amateur | independent | government | fellow** *She gave a lecture to 2,000 fellow scientists in Kyoto.* | **experimental, laboratory, research | applied | natural, physical | agricultural, earth, environmental, food, marine, soil | atomic, nuclear | rocket** *(often humorous) You don't have to be a rocket scientist* (= very clever) *to do this job.* | **forensic, medical | behavioural, political, social | computer | young** *a contest for young scientists*

QUANT. **group, team**

SCIENTIST + VERB **be interested in sth, be involved in sth, specialize in sth, study sth, work (on sth)** *scientists interested in Antarctic research* | **know sth | estimate sth** *The scientists estimate that nearly two-thirds of the continent has become drier over the past 60 years.* | **argue sth, believe sth, claim sth, say sth, suggest sth, warn (of) sth** *Scientists warned of even greater eruptions to come.* | **examine sth | discover sth, find sth, identify sth, reveal sth | agree (on) sth, conclude sth | disagree (on) sth | report sth | develop sth** *Scientists have developed an injection that doesn't use a needle.* > Note at JOB

scissors *noun*

ADJ. **blunt, sharp | kitchen | nail**

QUANT. **pair** *a pair of nail scissors*

VERB + SCISSORS **cut sth with, use** *Don't use these scissors to cut paper or card.*

SCISSORS + VERB **cut** *These scissors don't cut very well.*

scold *verb*

ADV. **gently | severely**

PREP. **for** *Rose scolded the child gently for her bad behaviour.*

scope *noun*

1 opportunity

ADJ. **full** *In her new house she had full scope for her passion for gardening.* **| ample, considerable, enormous, great, tremendous | limited**

VERB + SCOPE **have | allow (sb), give sb, leave (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *These courses give students more scope for developing their own ideas.* **| increase | cut down, reduce**

PREP. **~ for** *There is limited scope for creativity in my job.*

2 range/extent

ADJ. **broad, wide | limited, narrow** *The scope of the exhibition is disappointingly narrow.* **| geographical, territorial** *The geographical scope of product markets has widened since the war.*

VERB + SCOPE **broaden, expand, extend, increase, widen | limit, reduce, restrict | define, determine** *These criteria were used to determine the scope of the curriculum.*

SCOPE + VERB **broaden, expand, extend, increase, widen | narrow**

PREP. **beyond/outside the ~ of** *The subject lies outside the scope of this book.* **| in (sth's) ~** *The survey is too limited in (its) scope.* **| within the ~ of** *These disputes fall within the scope of the local courts.*

score *noun*

1 in a game, competition, etc.

ADJ. **big, excellent, good, high, perfect, record, top | bad, low, poor | average, mean | close, level** *The score was close in the final match.* **| overall, total | final | cricket, football, etc.**

VERB + SCORE **achieve, finish with, get, have | give (sb)** *He got round the course in 72, giving him an average score of 70.* **| make, take** *A goal in the last few minutes took the score to 4?2.* **| keep, record** *I'll keep (the) score.* **| level, tie** *Figo levelled the scores with a curling free kick.*

SCORE + VERB **be, stand at** *At half-time the score stood at 3?0.*

SCORE + NOUN **card** (also **scorecard**), **chart, sheet** *Inamoto had a good game but failed to get his name on the score sheet* (= failed to score).

PREP. **~ against** *the best score for years against Italy*

2 in a test

ADJ. **excellent, good, high, perfect, record, top | bad, low, poor | average, mean | aggregate, overall, total | IQ, test**

VERB + SCORE **achieve, get, have, obtain | give sb | boost, increase** *Some scientists claim that vitamins will boost your child's IQ score.*

SCORE + VERB **range** *Most ten-year-olds had scores ranging between 50 and 70.*

PREP. **~ for** *She got an unusually low score for creativity.*

3 written music

ADJ. **full | music/musical | orchestral, piano, vocal** *the vocal score of 'The Magic Flute'* **| film**

VERB + SCORE **play, read, write**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *a mistake in the piano score*

score *verb*

1 **win points/goals, etc.**

ADV. **nearly | easily** *Cunningham broke away and ran some 40 metres to score easily.*

VERB + SCORE **try to | manage to | fail to, have yet to** *Peter Walker has yet to score this season.* **| look likely to** *Villa always looked the team most likely to score.*

PREP. **against** *The England team failed to score against Italy on Saturday.* **| for** *She has not yet scored for her new club.* **| with** *He scored with a neat header.*

PHRASES **come close to scoring** *It was Robertson who came closest to scoring.* **| open the scoring** *Zidane opened the scoring in the seventh minute of the game.*

2 **gain marks in a test**

ADV. **highly, well** *In the key area of negotiation, women scored highly.*

scorn *noun*

ADJ. **withering** *She reserved her most withering scorn for journalists.*

VERB + SCORN **feel | express | heap, pour, throw** *Abuse and scorn were heaped upon the new tax.*

PREP. **with ~** *He stared with some scorn at his interviewers.* **| ~ for** *She expressed her scorn for the rules.*

PHRASES **an object of scorn** *His poetry was the object of scorn.*

scowl *noun*

ADJ. **black, dark | permanent**

VERB + SCOWL **wear | give sb | be set in** *His face was set in a permanent scowl.*

SCOWL + VERB **deepen**

PREP. **in a ~** *Her brows drew together in a scowl.* **| with a ~** *He looked up at me with a scowl.*

PHRASES **have a scowl on your face**

scowl *verb*

ADV. **darkly, fiercely, heavily** *She scowled darkly and muttered something under her breath.* **| down**

PREP. **at** *His eyes scowled down at her.*

scramble *noun*

ADJ. **difficult, steep | desperate, mad, undignified, wild** *There was a mad scramble for the exits.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I lost my sister in the scramble for a seat.* **| ~ down, over, up, etc.** *an undignified scramble down the slope* **| ~ for** *a scramble for tickets for the game*

scramble *verb*

ADV. **frantically** *They scrambled frantically over the piles of debris.* **| awkwardly | away, back**

VERB + SCRAMBLE **manage to**

PREP. **down, into, out of, over, through, up, etc.** *She managed to scramble over the wall.*

PHRASES **scramble to your feet** *He scrambled awkwardly to his feet.* **| scramble to safety**

scrap *noun*

1 **small piece or amount**

ADJ. **little** *She scribbled the address on a little scrap of paper.* **| food** *The pigs are fed on food scraps.*

PREP. **~ of** *Every scrap of land in the town has been built on.*

2 **recyclable items or material**

QUANT. **piece**

VERB + SCRAP **sell sth for** *The engine has been sold for scrap.* **| collect**

SCRAP + NOUN **iron, material, metal, paper, etc. | heap, yard** (also **scrapyard)** *My first computer has been consigned to the scrap heap.* **| dealer, merchant | value** *Police estimate the scrap value of the lead at around £8,000.*

3 **fight**

VERB + SCRAP **get into, have**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He looks like he's been in a scrap.* **| ~ with** *He had a bit of a scrap with the boy next door.*

scrape *verb*

ADV. **carefully, gently** *She carefully scraped away the top layer of paint.* **| away, back, off** *I scraped the dirt off.*

PREP. **against** *He scraped the car against the garage wall.* **| along** *Patrick lifted the gate to prevent it scraping along the ground.* **| from** *Her hair was scraped back from her face.* **| on** *I scraped my elbow on the wall as I cycled past.* **| with** *I scraped the carrots with a knife.*

PHRASES **scrape sth clean** *The wood had been scraped clean.* **PHRASAL VERBS scrape through**

ADV. **(only) just** *He only just scraped through his exams.*

VERB + SCRAPE **manage to** *The Conservatives managed to scrape through to an election victory.*

scratch *noun*

ADJ. **deep, long, nasty, terrible | light, little, minor, slight, small, superficial** *His only injuries were some minor scratches above his eye.*

VERB + SCRATCH **have**

SCRATCH + NOUN **mark**

PREP. **without a ~** *She emerged from the wrecked vehicle without a scratch.* **| ~ on** *I've got some nasty scratches on my legs.*

scratch *verb*

ADV. **badly** *The table had been badly scratched.*

PREP. **at** *He kept scratching at his nose.* **|** **on** *I scratched my arm on a rose bush.* **|** **with** *She scratched his face with her nails.*

scream *noun*

ADJ. **high-pitched, loud, piercing, shrill | muffled, stifled | blood-curdling, hysterical, terrible, terrified**

VERB + SCREAM **give, let out | hear**

SCREAM + VERB **echo, ring out** *His screams echoed through the empty house.*

PREP. **with a ~** *She reacted to the news with hysterical screams.* **| ~ for** *a scream for help* **| ~ of** *screams of laughter/terror*

scream *verb*

ADV. **aloud | loudly | silently** *Despair shook him and he screamed silently in the darkness.* **| hysterically, shrilly, wildly | almost | out**

VERB + SCREAM **want to** *I was so bored I wanted to scream.* **| begin to | hear sb**

PREP. **after** *Marion screamed after them, 'Stop! Stop!'* **| at** *She screamed at me to get out of the way.* **| for** *The trapped passengers screamed for help.* **| in** *People ran for the exits, screaming out in terror.* **| with** *People were staggering about, screaming with pain.*

PHRASES **begin/start screaming, scream your head off** *The baby was screaming its head off.* **| stop screaming**

screen *noun*

1 on a TV, computer, etc.

ADJ. **big** *(often figurative)*, **giant, huge, large** *big screen entertainment* (= at the cinema) | **small** *(often figurative) She appears regularly on the small screen* (= on television). | **blank** *I sat gazing at the blank screen, trying to think of something to write.* | **computer, television/TV, video**

VERB + SCREEN **appear on** | **fill** *The star's lovely face filled the screen.* | **gaze at, look at, stare at, watch**

SCREEN + VERB **flicker** *The screen flickered, and then everything went dark.*

PREP. **off ~** *They play deadly rivals in the show but they are good friends off screen.* | **on (the) ~** *She is remembered mainly for her performances on screen. Information can be viewed on screen or printed out. The image came up on the screen for a few seconds.*

PHRASES **stage and screen** *stars of stage and screen*

2 partition

ADJ. **folding** *The room was divided by a folding screen.*

VERB + SCREEN **put up**

PREP. **behind a/the ~** *His desk was discreetly placed behind a screen.* | **~ between** *There is a screen between the two beds.*

screen *verb*

1 **hide sth**

ADV. **well | completely | partly | effectively | neatly** *The shed is neatly screened by a hedge.* **| off** *One part of the room was screened off.*

PREP. **from** *The building is completely screened from the road by high bushes.*

2 **check sb/sth for faults/illnesses**

ADV. **carefully** *All foster parents are carefully screened.*

PREP. **for** *All pregnant women are to be screened for the infection.*

3 **show sth on television/in a cinema**

ADV. **live** *The programme will be screened live on BBC1.*

screw *nou*n

ADJ. **masonry, wood**

VERB + SCREW **fix, loosen, tighten, turn**

screw *verb*

ADV. **firmly, tightly | down, together** *Screw the drain cover down tightly.*

PREP. **into** *She screwed the lock into the door.* **| on/onto** *I screwed the lid back on the jar.* **| to** *The bed was screwed to the floor.*

PHRASES **screw sth in place/into position** *I screwed the curtain rail in place.*

scribble *verb*

ADV. **furiously** *The students were all scribbling away furiously.* **| away, down**

script *noun*

1 **text of a play, film, etc.**

ADJ. **draft | original | final | drama, film, movie, news, radio, television/TV**

VERB + SCRIPT **prepare, write | read**

SCRIPT + NOUN **editor**

PREP. **~ about** *a script about a farmer's life* **| ~ for** *a script for children's TV*

2 **system/style of writing**

ADJ. **neat | cursive | copperplate | bold, italic, roman | phonetic | Cyrillic, Hebrew, Japanese, etc.**

VERB + SCRIPT **decipher, read** *Archaeologists have had trouble deciphering the script.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She writes in a neat copperplate script.*

scripture *noun* **(**often **scriptures)**

ADJ. **holy, sacred** *the sacred scripture of the Buddhists* **| Christian, Hebrew, Hindu, Jewish, etc.**

QUANT. **passage, verse**

VERB + SCRIPTURE **interpret, read (from)** *She read from the scriptures.* **| teach | follow | quote (from)**

PREP. **in the ~s** *You won't find this moral precept in the scriptures.*

scrub *noun*

1 **small trees growing in a dry area**

ADJ. **desert** *miles of desert scrub* | **low** *The vegetation consisted of low scrub.*

QUANT. **patch** *The horses stood near a patch of scrub.*

VERB + SCRUB **be covered in, be overgrown with** *The mountain was covered in scrub.*

2 **cleaning**

ADJ. **good** *I gave the table a good scrub.*

VERB + SCRUB **give sb/sth**

scrub *verb*

ADV. **thoroughly | away, down, out**

PREP. **at** *She scrubbed at the child's face with a tissue.* **| from, off** *He scrubbed the blood from his shoes.*

PHRASES **freshly scrubbed** *his freshly scrubbed face* **| scrub sth clean** *The table had been scrubbed clean.*

scruples *noun*

ADJ. **moral, religious** *a man of few moral scruples*

VERB + SCRUPLES **have | overcome** *Some persuasion would be required to overcome her scruples.*

PREP. **without ~** *A man who can treat his family so must be completely without scruples.* **| ~ about** *I don't have any scruples about taking her car?she's often borrowed mine.*

scrutinize *verb*

ADV. **carefully, closely, minutely | fully, thoroughly**

PREP. **for** *All parts of the aircraft are closely scrutinized for signs of wear or damage.*

scrutiny *noun*

ADJ. **careful, close, detailed, intense, rigorous, serious, thorough** *The company has come under intense scrutiny because of its environmental record.* **| international, judicial, media, parliamentary, public, scientific** *The activities of the committee are subject to public scrutiny.*

VERB + SCRUTINY **be subjected to, come under, submit to, undergo | be open to, be subject to | bear** *The testimony of the chief witness doesn't bear scrutiny.*

PREP. **under ~** *The company is under scrutiny by the Inland Revenue.* **| ~ by** *I realized I was being subjected to intense scrutiny by a group of children.*

scuffle *noun*

ADJ. **brief | minor**

VERB + SCUFFLE **be involved in**

SCUFFLE + VERB **break out** *A scuffle broke out among people in the crowd.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He was injured in a scuffle at the football match.* **| ~ between** *a scuffle between rival gangs* **| ~ with** *He was involved in a scuffle with photographers.*

sculptor *noun*

ADJ. **celebrated, famous, great, influential | talented | contemporary | court** *He was court sculptor to Alexander the Great.*

SCULPTOR + VERB **create sth, work (on sth)** *a classical Greek figure created by the sculptor Polyclitus* > Note at JOB

sculpture *noun*

ADJ. **abstract | monumental**

QUANT. **piece | series | collection**

VERB + SCULPTURE **create, make** *She creates sculptures out of scrap materials.* **| display, exhibit, show**

PREP. **~ by** *a sculpture by Henry Moore* **| ~ of** *a sculpture of a horse*

PHRASES **an exhibition of sculpture/sculptures** > Note at ART

sea *noun*

1 **large area of salt water**

ADJ. **calm, smooth** *a calm sea after the storm* | **choppy, rough** *The sea was too rough for sailing in small boats.* | **deep** | **shallow** | **blue, grey** | **cold** | **warm** | **inland** | **open** *The fishing boats headed for the open sea.*

VERB + SEA **cross** *We crossed the Mediterranean Sea on a cruise ship.* | **go to** (= become a sailor) | **put (out) to** *The ship put to sea* (= left port) *in deteriorating weather conditions.* | **be lost at** *They were lost at sea when their ship sank en route for Madeira.* | **stare out to** *She stood on the cliff, staring out to sea.*

SEA + VERB **rise** *In recent years the sea has risen by a couple of inches.* | **recede, retreat** *The sea has retreated a little since the river was diverted.*

SEA + NOUN **water** | **bottom, floor** | **breeze** | **creature** | **port** (also **seaport**), **voyage** | **cliff, front, view**

PREP. **at ~** *We spent three weeks at sea.* | **across the ~** *We sailed across the Black Sea in a yacht.* | **by (the) ~** *We sent our furniture by sea. They live by the sea.* | **down to the ~** *We'll go down to the sea for a swim before dinner.* | **in/into the ~** *I love swimming in the sea!* | **on the ~** *three ships sailing on the sea* | **out to ~** *She fell overboard and was swept out to sea.*

PHRASES **the bottom/edge/middle/surface of the sea, the boom/booming/murmur/roar/sound of the sea**

2 (*also* **the seas**) **movement of the waves of the sea**

ADJ. **choppy, dangerous, heavy, mountainous, raging, rough, stormy** *A week of heavy seas has created problems for fishermen.*

VERB + SEA **roam, sail** *He has sailed the seven seas.*

PHRASES **on the high seas, the seven seas**

3 **large amount of sth**

ADJ. **vast**

PREP. **~ of** *She scanned the vast sea of faces below her.*

seafood *noun*

ADJ. **fresh**

VERB + SEAFOOD **eat, have | prepare**

SEAFOOD + NOUN **dish** *a good wine to drink with fish or seafood dishes* **| cocktail, salad | restaurant** > Special page at FOOD

seagull (*also* **gull)** *noun*

QUANT. **flock**

SEAGULL + VERB **circle, fly, wheel | dive-bomb, swoop | cry, scream, screech, shriek**

seal *noun*

1 **animal**

QUANT. **colony** *A colony of seals lay basking in the sun.*

VERB + SEAL **cull** *Environmentalists claim there is no reason to cull seals.*

SEAL + VERB **bark**

SEAL + NOUN **pup | cull**

2 **for a document**

ADJ. **wax** *an official-looking letter with a wax seal*

VERB + SEAL **break** *He broke the seal, and opened the envelope.*

PHRASES **a seal of approval** *Her report was given the seal of approval by senior management.*

seal *verb*

1 **close sth**

ADV. **carefully, firmly, properly, tightly, well** *The containers must be carefully sealed so that no air can get in.* **| completely, totally** *The unit is completely sealed.* **| virtually | effectively | hermetically** *a hermetically sealed container* **| off, up**

PREP. **from** *The nuclear plant would be effectively sealed off from the world.* **| with** *He sealed the bag tightly with sticky tape.*

2 **show formally that sth is agreed**

ADV. **formally**

PHRASES **be signed and sealed** *The contracts are already signed and sealed.*

seam *noun*

1 in fabric

VERB + SEAM **sew, stitch, tack** *She sewed the seam with small neat stitches.* **| unpick** *It took hours to unpick the seams.* **| iron, press**

PHRASES **be bursting at the seams** *(often figurative) The film is bursting at the seams with good performances.* **| come/fall apart at the seams** *(often figurative) Their marriage was coming apart at the seams.*

2 of coal, etc.

ADJ. **coal | rich** *They're still mining a rich seam of high-grade coal.*

VERB + SEAM **mine**

search *noun*

ADJ. **careful, exhaustive, extensive, painstaking, systematic, thorough | major, massive, nationwide | desperate, frantic | constant | police | routine** *Police conducted a routine search of all the houses in the area.* **| house-to-house | fingertip** *A team of police officers did a fingertip search of the area.* **| body, strip** *I was subjected to a body search by customs officials.* **| computer, Internet**

VERB + SEARCH **begin, launch, mount, start** *The police immediately launched a nationwide search for the killer.* **| carry out, conduct, do, make** *The search for the missing men was conducted in poor weather conditions.* **| abandon, call off** *The search was called off when it began to get dark.*

SEARCH + NOUN **operation** *The police mounted an extensive search operation.* **| party, team | warrant | engine** *This is one of the fastest Internet search engines.*

PREP. **in ~ of** *We're constantly in search of new talent.* **| ~ for** *the search for oil off the coast*

search *verb*

ADV. **thoroughly** *The area has been thoroughly searched.* | **carefully, diligently, painstakingly** | **systematically** | **actively** *actively searching for something to keep the conversation going* | **eagerly** | **desperately, frantically** | **in vain** | **aimlessly** *For the rest of the morning he searched aimlessly through the town.* | **constantly** | **around/round** *I searched around for a thick stick.*

PREP. **among** *We searched among the rocks for crabs.* | **for** *Police are still searching for the missing child.* | **in** *He searched in his pocket and found a few coins.* | **through** *searching through a drawer*

PHRASES **search far and wide, search sth from top to bottom** *We searched the house from top to bottom.* | **search high and low** *I have searched high and low and cannot find them.*

seaside *noun*

VERB + SEASIDE **go to** *Every summer we went to the seaside for two months.*

SEASIDE + NOUN **resort, town, village**

PREP. **at the ~** *a holiday at the seaside* **| by the ~** *They have a cottage by the seaside.*

season *noun*

1 **of the year**

ADJ. **dry, monsoon, rainy, wet** *In this climate there are no real changes of temperature, just a wet and a dry season.* | **summer, winter, etc.**

VERB + SEASON **be in, come into** *Melons are just coming into season.* | **be out of, go out of**

2 **period when an activity takes place**

ADJ. **holiday, tourist** | **high, peak** *The resort gets overcrowded in peak season.* | **low, off** *The hotel is almost empty in the off season.* | **breeding, mating** | **growing, planting** | **lambing** | **cricket, football, hunting, racing, etc.** | **championship, league** | **gruelling, hard** *It was the final race of a hard season.* | **successful** | **disappointing, disastrous** | **close** *The team trained hard during the close season and won its first five matches.* | **consecutive, successive** *Our team won the trophy for the second successive season.* | **Christmas, festive** *best wishes for the festive season*

SEASON + NOUN **ticket** *Season ticket holders do not have to queue.*

PHRASES **the height of the season** > Note at SEASON

season *verb*

ADV. **well**

PREP. **with** *Season the meat well with salt and pepper.*

PHRASES **highly seasoned** *highly seasoned food*

seat belt *noun*

VERB + SEAT BELT **wear** *By law, you are obliged to wear seat belts.* **| fasten, put on | undo, unfasten**

seat *noun*

1 **for sitting on**

ADJ. **empty, spare, vacant** *There were no empty seats left in the hall. Do you have a spare seat in your car?* | **comfortable, comfy** | **cushioned** | **bicycle, car** | **back, front, rear** *I always feel sick if I sit in the back seat of the car.* | **driver's, driving, passenger** | **baby, child, safety** | **pillion** *I had a terrifying journey on the pillion seat of a Honda 750.* | **aisle, window** *I always ask for an aisle seat when I fly.* | **lavatory, toilet** | **good, ringside** *I got to the theatre early to get a good seat. We had ringside seats for the boxing match.*

VERB + SEAT **get, have, take** *Please take a seat. Is this seat taken?* | **book, reserve** *Is it possible to book seats for the play?* | **save** *Can you save me a seat if you get there first?* | **occupy, sit on** *The best seats were occupied by the friends and families of the performers. It is very uncomfortable to sit on these seats.* | **resume** *The audience resumed their seats for the second half of the play.* | **give up, vacate** *He gave up his seat on the bus to a pregnant woman.* | **lean back in, recline in, settle back in** | **settle into** *We had hardly settled into our seats when the first goal was scored.* | **get (up) out of** | **put back, recline**

SEAT + NOUN **cover** | **reservation**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The man in the passenger seat seemed to be asleep.* | **on a/the ~** *I found my gloves lying on the back seat.* | **out of a/the ~** *He leapt out of his seat when he saw the rat.* | **~ for** *I managed to get some seats for the ballet.*

2 **in Parliament, etc.**

ADJ. **congressional, parliamentary, Senate** | **marginal** | **safe** | **Labour, Tory, etc.**

VERB + SEAT **gain, win** | **lose** *He lost his seat in the last election.* | **keep, retain** | **regain** | **contest** | **resign**

PREP. **~ in** *a seat in Parliament* | **~ on** *a seat on the local council*

seat *verb*

ADV. **comfortably** *He seated himself comfortably at the foot of the bed. The car seats six comfortably.*

PREP. **at** *Ramirez was seated at a table near the window.* **| on** *She seated herself on the sofa.*

PHRASES **be seated** *Please be seated.* **| be seated cross-legged, remain/stay seated** *Please remain seated until your name is called.*

seating *noun*

ADJ. comfortable *The auditorium has comfortable seating and modern acoustics.*

SEATING + NOUN area | arrangements, plan *We need to work out the seating plan for the wedding.*

PREP. ~ for *There is seating for 250 people.*

secluded *adj.*

VERBS **be, look**

ADV. **very, wonderfully | fairly, pretty** *We managed to find a fairly secluded spot for our picnic.*

seclusion *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total, utter | relative** *For holidays, I prefer the relative seclusion of the countryside.*

PREP. **in (the ~ of)** *I live very much in seclusion these days. She liked to sunbathe in the seclusion of her own garden.*

second thought *noun*

VERB + SECOND THOUGHT **have ~s | not give sth** *As for the money, don't give it a second thought.*

PREP. **on ~s** *On second thoughts, maybe I won't apply for the job after all.* **| without a ~** *He dismissed the rumour without a second thought.* **| ~s about** *We're beginning to have second thoughts about buying a car.*

second *noun*

1 **very short moment of time**

ADJ. **brief, fleeting, split** *I only saw the man for a split second as he ran past.* **| single | heart-stopping** *For a heart-stopping second he thought he had lost his keys.*

VERB + SECOND **take** *This will only take a second.* **| have** *Do you have a second, Miss White?* **| wait** *Wait a second?this letter's been sent to me by mistake.*

SECOND + VERB **pass, tick by** *The seconds ticked by.*

SECOND + NOUN **hand**

PREP. **for a ~** *For a second I thought you were my mother.* **| in a ~** *I'll be with you in a second.* **| in/within ~s** *Within seconds he had disappeared from view.*

PHRASES **a fraction of a second** *If he'd reacted a fraction of a second later, he would surely have died.* **| a matter of seconds** *The end of the match is only a matter of seconds away.* > Note at MEASURE

2 **person/thing that comes next after the first**

ADJ. **close, good | bad, distant, poor | equal, joint | creditable, worthy** *The young German runner finished a creditable second.*

VERB + SECOND **come, finish**

PREP. **~ to** *Sunny Boy came a close second to the winner.*

3 **university degree**

ADJ. **lower, upper | good**

VERB + SECOND **be awarded, gain, get, obtain**

PREP. **~ in** *He got a good second in history.*

secrecy *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, total | great, strict | excessive, unnecessary | commercial, official**

VERB + SECRECY **maintain | be shrouded in | swear sb to** *All the researchers on the project are sworn to secrecy.*

SECRECY + VERB **surround sth**

PREP. **in ~** *The drugs squad operates in the greatest secrecy.* **| ~ about** *The organization has managed to maintain secrecy about its activities.*

PHRASES **a blanket/cloak/veil of secrecy** *A blanket of secrecy surrounded the tribunals.*

secret *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain, stay | keep sth**

ADV. **highly, top, very** *a top secret meeting* **| absolutely, entirely | more or less | formerly, hitherto, previously** *revealing the text of the hitherto secret treaty*

PREP. **from** *They managed to keep the party more or less secret from Christine.*

secret *noun*

1 **sth that must not be known by others**

ADJ. **big, great | little | closely guarded, well-kept** *a charming museum that is one of the city's best-kept secrets* (= that not many people know about) **| hidden, inner, innermost, intimate** *That evening she had revealed many of her innermost secrets.* **| open** *Their affair is an open secret.* **| dark, guilty, shameful, terrible | commercial, family, military, official, state, trade**

VERB + SECRET **have | guard, keep** *Can you keep a secret?* **| betray, divulge, let sb in on/into, reveal, tell sb** *She let us into her secret?she'd got engaged.* **| find out, uncover**

SECRET + VERB **be/get out** *How did the secret get out?*

PREP. **in ~** *The film stars were married in secret to avoid publicity.* **| ~ about** *There was some secret about the source of his wealth.* **| ~ from** *I have no secrets from you.*

PHRASES **make no secret of the fact that … , make a secret of sth** *He refuses to make any secret of his political allegiances.*

2 **only/best way of doing/achieving sth**

VERB + SECRET **reveal, tell sb**

PREP. **~ behind** *She revealed the secret behind her extraordinary success.* **| ~ of** *the secrets of staying healthy*

PHRASES **the secret of (sb's) success**

secretary *noun*

1 **person who works in an office**

ADJ. **executive, legal | press, publicity | personal, private | social | school** > Note at JOB

2 **official of a club/government department, etc.**

ADJ. **chief, first** *the First Secretary of the Communist Party* **| deputy, under | assistant | acting | permanent | honorary | former, then** *the then Secretary of State for Energy, Cecil Parkinson* **| executive, general | branch, district, group, national, regional | club, company | cabinet, shadow** (= a senior British politician of the opposition party) **| parliamentary, state | Agriculture, Defence, Economic, Education, Employment, Energy, Environment, Financial, Foreign, Health, Home, Trade and Industry, Transport, Treasury, etc.**

VERB + SECRETARY **act as | resign as | elect, elect sb (as) | replace (sb as)**

SECRETARY + NOUN **General** *UN Secretary General, Kofi Annan*

PREP. **~ for** *the Secretary for National Defence* **| ~ to** *secretary to the jockey club*

PHRASES **the post of secretary, Secretary of State** *the United States Secretary of State*

secretive *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, unusually, very** *his highly secretive nature* **| almost | rather, slightly, somewhat**

PREP. **about** *They were very secretive about their plans.*

sect *noun*

ADJ. **religious | evangelical, fundamentalist | Buddhist, Christian, etc.**

VERB + SECT **belong to | join**

SECT + NOUN **member**

PHRASES **a leader/member of a sect**

section *noun*

ADJ. **large, long** *Large sections of the forest have been destroyed by acid rain. a long section of roadway* **| short, small | main | personnel, political (in a company, an organization, etc.)** *He works in the embassy's political section.* **| business, finance, travel, etc.** (of a newspaper) **| biology, history, reference, etc.** (in a library) **| brass, percussion, rhythm, string, wind, woodwind** (in an orchestra) **| cello, horn, etc. (in an orchestra)**

VERB + SECTION **divide sth into** *The book is divided into chapters, sections and sub-sections.*

SECTION + NOUN **manager (in a company, an organization, etc.)**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *You'll find the book in the music section.* **| in ~s** *The table comes in sections.* **| under ~ (relating to a section of a law, etc.)** *The case was the first prosecution under Section 3A of the Road Traffic Act 1988.*

PHRASES **a section of society** *an area populated largely by the poorer sections of society*

sector *noun*

1 **part of the business activity of a country**

ADJ. **important, key | growing, growth | independent, private | public, state | voluntary | formal | informal | agricultural, banking, business, commercial, corporate, economic, financial, further/higher education, health, industrial, industry, manufacturing, market, primary, retail, service** *The survey covers a wide range of industry sectors.* **| rural, urban**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *employment opportunities in the higher education sector*

PHRASES **a sector of the economy/market**

2 **part of an area or of a large group of people**

VERB + SECTOR **divide sth into** *Berlin was divided into four sectors after the war.*

PHRASES **a sector of the population/society**

secular *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **completely, purely** *It began as a religious organization, but these days it is purely secular.* **| essentially, largely** *We live in a largely secular society.* **| aggressively**

secure *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become | make sth | keep sth** *It's important to keep your documents secure.*

ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, completely, entirely, perfectly, quite, totally, utterly | fairly, pretty, reasonably, relatively | enough, sufficiently** *I finally felt secure enough in myself to have a child of my own.* **| apparently | economically, financially | socially**

PREP. **against** *The house has been made secure against intruders.*

secure *verb*

1 **fix/lock sth firmly**

ADV. **firmly, properly, tightly**

PREP. **to** *The crates had not been properly secured to the truck.* | **with** *She secured the boat with a rope.*

2 **get/achieve sth**

ADV. **easily** *Victory was not going to be easily secured.* | **automatically**

VERB + SECURE **be able to, manage to** | **fail to** *They failed to secure the release of the prisoners.* | **help (to)**

PHRASES **an attempt/effort to secure sth, be aimed at securing sth, a chance/hope of securing sth** *trying to improve their chances of securing employment* | **succeed/be successful in securing sth**

security *noun*

1 **feeling safe/being free from worry**

ADJ. **greater | emotional, psychological | economic, financial | job**

VERB + SECURITY **have** *They have the security of a good home.* | **give (sb), provide (sb with)** *He gave her the emotional security she needed.*

PHRASES **be lulled into a false sense of security, a feeling/sense of security, the security of tenure**

2 **to protect sb/sth from thieves, attack, war, etc.**

ADJ. **maximum, top** *Screw windows to the frame for maximum security. a maximum security prison* | **heightened | strict, tight | lax | collective | national, state | internal | personal | home**

VERB + SECURITY **ensure, provide (sb with) | improve, strengthen, tighten (up)** *We need to tighten security around the hotel during the president's visit.* | **compromise, undermine** *The leaking of secrets from the Defence Ministry has compromised national security.*

SECURITY + NOUN **apparatus, forces, services | adviser, guard, man, people, personnel, staff | arrangements, matters, measures, policy, system | check | risk | camera, device, van, video**

PREP. **~ against** *The bars are to provide security against break-ins.*

PHRASES **for security reasons** *For security reasons, passengers are requested not to leave any luggage unattended.* | **peace and security**

3 **when you borrow money**

VERB + SECURITY **lend sth on | stand** *His father agreed to stand security for his son's house-purchase loan.* | **take (sth as)**

PREP. **against the ~ of** *The bank will make a loan against the security of the lender's* *house.* **| as ~** *She pledged her jewellery as security for a £50,000 loan.* **| ~ for 4 securities** share documents

ADJ. **company, government | foreign, overseas | listed, unlisted | gilt-edged**

VERB + SECURITY **issue | buy | sell**

sedation *noun*

ADJ. **heavy | light**

PREP. **under ~** *The attack victim is currently in hospital, under heavy sedation.*

sedative *noun*

ADJ. **powerful, strong | mild** *The doctor gave her a mild sedative to help her sleep.*

VERB + SEDATIVE **give sb, prescribe (sb)**

seductive *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **extremely, very | infinitely** *These opportunities seemed infinitely seductive.* **| almost** *His words had a soothing, almost seductive quality.*

see *verb*

1 **become aware of sth using your eyes**

ADV. **clearly | dimly | hardly** *I could hardly see because of the smoke.* **| just** *We could just see the hotel in the distance.* **| suddenly**

VERB + SEE **be able to, can/could** *I could see the boat quite clearly now.* **| strain to | be amazed to, be surprised to** *He was surprised to see Lucy standing there.* **| be relieved to | be glad to, be overjoyed to, be pleased to** *I'm glad to see that you're keeping well.* **| let sb** *A dolphin? Oh, let me see!*

PHRASES **turn and see** *He turned and saw her smile.*

2 **meet/visit sb**

VERB + SEE **want to, wish to** *What is it you want to see me about?* **| live to** *He didn't live to see his grandchildren.* **| be glad to, be overjoyed to, be pleased to** *Aren't you pleased to see me?*

PREP. **about** *She's gone to see the mechanic about getting her car repaired.*

3 **go with/accompany sb**

PHRASES **see sb home** *Don't worry, I'll see you home.*

4 **understand/realize sth**

VERB + SEE **can/can't, don't** *I can see why you were so angry about it. I don't see why she should get more money than the others.* **| be difficult to** *It is difficult to see how to get round this problem.*

5 **find out**

VERB + SEE **want to** *I want to see how they'll react.* **| let sb** *Let's see what happens.*

PHRASES **go and see** *'Has the post come yet?' 'I'll just go and see.'* **| wait and see** *'Is he going to get better?' 'I don't know, we'll just have to wait and see.'*

seed *noun*

1 **from which a plant grows**

ADJ. **grass, poppy, etc. | bird**

QUANT. **packet**

VERB + SEED **plant, sow | produce, set** *This tree produces very hard seeds. The plant will set seed in June.* **| grow/raise sth from** *She grew all the broccoli plants from seed.* **| spread** *Most seeds are spread by the wind.* **| go/run to** *Allow some of the plants to run to seed, and save the seed for next year.*

SEED + VERB **germinate, grow, sprout**

SEED + NOUN **head, pod | packet, tray | bank, catalogue, merchant | cake | corn, potato**

PHRASES **a variety of seeds** *The catalogue has hundreds of different varieties of seeds.*

2 **player in a sports competition**

ADJ. **first, second, etc. | number one, number two, etc. | top** *Venus Williams was the top seed at Wimbledon this year.*

seek *verb*

ADV. **actively** *people who are unemployed and actively seeking work* **| avidly, eagerly, keenly | desperately, urgently** *He was desperately seeking a way to see her again.* **| successfully | in vain, unsuccessfully, vainly**

PREP. **for** *They sought in vain for somewhere to shelter.*

seep *verb*

ADV. **gradually, slowly | away, out, through** *The power had gradually seeped away.*

VERB + SEEP **begin to**

PREP. **from** *Blood was seeping slowly from the wound.* **| into, out of** *Water was seeping out of the tank.* **| through** *The damp seeped through her thin shoes.*

seethe *verb*

ADV. inwardly, privately *Inwardly she was seething, and vowed to get her own back.* **| quietly, silently**

PREP. at *She was seething at the insult.* **| with** *He clenched his fists, seething with anger.*

segregate *verb*

ADV. **strictly**

PREP. **according to, by** *Jobs were strictly segregated by gender.* **| from** *The women were segregated from the male workers in the factory.* **| into** *The common room was segregated into smoking and non-smoking areas.*

PHRASES **highly segregated** *Women's work has always been highly segregated.* **| racially/socially segregated**

segregation *noun*

ADJ. **complete | racial, religious, residential, sex, social** *to bring an end to sex segregation within the school*

VERB + SEGREGATION **practise**

PREP. **~ between** *Partitions provided a segregation between the smoking and non-smoking areas of the canteen.* **| ~ by** *segregation by race* **| ~ within**

seize *verb*

1 **take hold of sb/sth suddenly and firmly**

ADV. **immediately, suddenly** *He was immediately seized and thrown into prison.*

PREP. **by** *She seized him by the arm.* **| from** *He seized the book from her hand.*

PHRASES **seize hold of sb/sth** *The wrestlers try to seize hold of each other.*

2 **take sth**

ADV. **immediately, promptly** *She promptly seized the opportunity his absence gave her.* **| eagerly, gratefully**

VERB + SEIZE **be quick to, be ready to** *He was quick to seize on this idea.* **| be determined to | attempt to, try to | fail to** *He had failed to seize his chance.*

PREP. **on/upon** *The rumours were eagerly seized on by the local press.*

PHRASES **an attempt to seize sth**

seizure *noun*

ADJ. **biggest | drugs, land | cocaine, heroin, etc.**

VERB + SEIZURE **make** *Customs have made their biggest ever seizure of heroin.*

PHRASES **search and seizure** *The Act confers powers of entry, search and seizure on the police.*

select *verb*

ADV. **carefully, rigorously | specially | deliberately | arbitrarily, at random, randomly** *The winning entry will be selected at random by computer.* **| automatically** *The program automatically selects and stores the most frequently used data.* **| manually | personally**

VERB + SELECT **allow sb to, enable sb to**

PREP. **according to** *The design of the course allows students to select modules according to their interests.* **| for** *She has been selected for the England team.* **| from** *You can select goods from our catalogue.*

PHRASES **highly selected** *Although this was a very highly selected study group, the results were in agreement with our findings.* **| well selected** *This anthology is well selected and presented.*

selection *noun*

1 **process of choosing/being chosen**

ADJ. **careful | random | initial | final | jury, team | natural, sexual** *Natural selection is a key element of Darwin's theory of evolution.*

VERB + SELECTION **make** *She took a long time to make her selection.* **| win** *She hopes to win selection for the Olympic 800 metres team.*

SELECTION + NOUN **criteria, policy | procedure, process | board, committee, panel**

PREP. **~ as** *his selection as candidate for the Green Party* **| ~ for**

2 **number of people/things that have been chosen**

ADJ. **varied, wide | random** *We interviewed a random selection of teenagers.* **| representative | judicious, well-chosen | final** *The final selection of winners will be announced at the end of the event.*

PREP. **~ from, ~ of** *a selection of hits from well-known musicals*

3 **collection of goods in a shop, etc. that are for sale**

ADJ. **comprehensive, extensive, huge, large, vast, wide | limited, small | excellent, fine, good, great, interesting, superb**

VERB + SELECTION **offer** *The shop offers a wide selection of wines.* **| choose from**

PREP. **~ of**

selective *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | increasingly | fairly, quite, rather | necessarily** *The list provided here is necessarily selective.* **| notoriously** *The human memory is notoriously selective.* **| socially** *the socially selective nature of population changes*

PREP. **about** *He is quite selective about what he studies.* **| in** *Most of the girls are extremely selective in their choice of boyfriends.*

self *noun*

ADJ. **whole** *He put his whole self into the performance.* **| real, true | deep, inner, innermost | private | public** *Her private and public selves were vastly different.* **| normal, usual | former, old** *She knew that with a holiday he would be back to his former self.* **| cheerful** *He's his usual cheerful self again.* **| better** *She knew his better self would struggle to serve her best interests.* **| conscious | physical | good** *(humorous) We look forward to seeing Mrs Brown and your good self this evening.*

VERB + SELF **reveal** *He was afraid to reveal his innermost self.*

PHRASES **a loss of self, a sense of self, a shadow of your former self**

self-assurance *noun* VERB + SELF-ASSURANCE **be lacking in, lack | exude** *In conversation she exudes wit and self-assurance.*

self-confidence *noun*

ADJ. **great, unshakeable | growing | new, renewed** VERB + SELF-CONFIDENCE **have | exude, show | be lacking in, lack | gain | lose | give sb** *A few months living away from home have given him renewed self-confidence.* **| boost, build (up), develop, increase** *He thought a few kind words might boost her self-confidence.* **| dent, shake, undermine**

PHRASES **an air of self-confidence** *She had an air of self-confidence that he admired.* **| a lack of self-confidence**

self-conscious *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look | become, get | make sb** *He studied her in a way that made her very self-conscious.*

ADV. **acutely, highly, horribly, painfully, very | a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat**

PREP. **about** *He started to get self-conscious about his weight.*

self-contained *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **extremely, very | completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly** *The flat is completely self-contained.* **| largely** *a largely self-contained community* **| fairly, relatively**

self-control *noun* VERB + SELF-CONTROL **have | lose | regain | keep** *She struggled to keep her self-control.* **| exercise, show** *You should try exercising a little self-control!* **| take** *It took all the self-control he had not to lose his temper.* **| learn** SELF-CONTROL + VERB **snap**

PHRASES **a lack/loss of self-control**

self-defence *noun* SELF-DEFENCE + NOUN **class, group**

PREP. **in ~** *He told police that he had acted in self-defence.* **| ~ against** *self-defence against armed assailants*

PHRASES **an act of self-defence, the art of self-defence**

self-evident *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become**

ADV. **by no means** *These truths were by no means self-evident when Galileo first suggested them.* **| almost | largely | fairly**

PREP. **to** *It was self-evident to her that anything so wonderful could not have evolved accidentally.*

self-interest *noun*

ADJ. **enlightened | pure** VERB + SELF-INTEREST **be motivated by | pursue your own**

PHRASES **in your own self-interest** *Directors may be tempted to act in their own self-interest.*

selfish *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | become**

ADV. **extremely, incredibly, very | entirely, purely, totally, utterly | pretty, quite, rather** *a pretty selfish attitude* **| basically** *People are basically selfish.*

selfishness *noun*

ADJ. **pure, utter**

PHRASES **an act of selfishness** *an act of utter selfishness* **| greed and selfishness**

self-pity *noun*

QUANT. **wave** *He felt a sudden wave of self-pity*. VERB + SELF-PITY **wallow in**

PHRASES **tears of self-pity**

self-respect *noun* VERB + SELF-RESPECT **have** *She has little self-respect.* **| lose | regain | keep, preserve** *He chose not to resign to keep his self-respect.*

self-sufficient *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **completely, wholly | almost, virtually | essentially, largely, more or less | fairly, pretty | economically, financially | socially**

PREP. **in** *These people have now become almost self-sufficient in grain crops.*

sell *verb*

ADV. **cheaply**

VERB + SELL **be able to, can/could | want to | plan to | try to** *They are still trying to sell their house.* **| be expected to, expect to** *The novel was expected to sell between 1,000 and 1,500 copies.* **| be willing to | be forced to** *The company has been forced to sell land to recoup some of the losses.* **| be/prove difficult to, be/prove hard to** *The property proved hard to sell.*

PREP. **at** *We sell these little notebooks at £1 each.* **| for** *They sold their house for £147,000.* **| to** *She sold her car to a friend.*

PHRASES **buy and sell (sth)** *Many banks are willing to buy and sell shares on behalf of customers.* **PHRASAL VERBS sell sth off**

ADV. **cheaply** *Derelict inner-city sites could be sold off cheaply for housing.*

semblance *noun*

VERB + SEMBLANCE **have | lack** *The film lacks any semblance of realism.* **| gain | drop, lose** *He dropped all semblance of dignity and rushed down the street after her.* **| keep, maintain, preserve, retain | bring, give sth** *She struggled to bring a semblance of order to the meeting.* **| restore (sth to), return (sth) to**

PREP. **in/into a/the ~ of** *She bared her teeth in a semblance of a smile.* **| ~ of** *He tried to restore some semblance of normality to their home life.*

PHRASES **a/some semblance of order**

seminar *noun*

1 **class at a university, etc.**

ADJ. **termly, weekly, etc. | graduate**

QUANT. **series**

VERB + SEMINAR **conduct, give | attend, go to**

SEMINAR + NOUN **group | discussion, paper | room | programme, series**

PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *There was some lively debate at this week's seminar.* **| ~ on** *Professor Mackay will give a seminar on musical settings of Verlaine's poetry.*

2 **conference for discussion/training**

ADJ. **all-day, half-day, weekend | one-day, two-day, etc. | business, economic | training**

VERB + SEMINAR **organize, hold, run | attend, go to**

SEMINAR + VERB **take place**

SEMINAR + NOUN **participant**

senator *noun*

ADJ. **American, US | Democratic, Republican | former** *the former US Senator, James Hurley*

VERB + SENATOR **elect, elect sb (as)**

senior *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very** *a meeting of all the very senior officers* **| fairly, quite, relatively | enough, sufficiently** *She wasn't senior enough to take such a decision.*

PREP. **to** *Is Mark senior to you?*

seniority *noun*

VERB + SENIORITY **attain, gain**

PREP. **by ~** *Promotion in the job was by seniority.*

PHRASES **in order of seniority, a level of seniority, next in seniority** *On the death of the captain, the officer next in seniority assumed command.*

sensation *noun*

1 **physical feeling**

ADJ. **delicious, exquisite, pleasant, pleasurable, wonderful | unpleasant | curious, odd, strange | burning, choking, prickling, tingling | bodily, physical**

VERB + SENSATION **experience, feel, have** *He felt a tingling sensation down his side.* **| produce | enjoy** *Most people enjoy the sensation of eating.*

PREP. **~ of** *the sensation of sand between your toes*

2 **ability to feel**

ADJ. **pure** *He gave way to pure sensation.*

VERB + SENSATION **have** *She had no sensation in her hands.* **| lose**

SENSATION + VERB **come back**

3 **feeling/impression**

ADJ. **curious, eerie, odd, strange**

VERB + SENSATION **have** *I had the eerie sensation that I was not alone.*

PREP. **~ of** *the sensation of being watched*

4 **great excitement/surprise/interest**

ADJ. **great | overnight**

VERB + SENSATION **cause, create** *The film caused a sensation among film critics.*

sense *noun*

1 **one of the five natural physical powers of the body**

ADJ. **acute, good, keen | poor | sixth**

VERB + SENSE **have** *He has an acute sense of smell.* **| lose** *She lost her sense of hearing early in life.* **| regain | heighten, sharpen | dull | appeal to** *He argued that art should appeal to the senses rather than the intellect.*

SENSE + VERB **tell sb** *When she came to, her senses told her she was lying on a sandy beach.* **| reel, swim** *Her senses reeled as she fought for consciousness.*

SENSE + NOUN **organ**

PREP. **through the ~s** *Although he can't see, he learns a lot through his other senses.*

PHRASES **an assault on the senses, the evidence of your senses, the five senses, the sense of hearing/sight/smell/taste/touch**

2 **understanding/awareness of sth**

ADJ. **deep, great, keen, strong, tremendous** *He felt a deep sense of relief after the phone call.* **| growing, heightened | slight, vague** *a vague sense of unease* **| innate, intuitive, natural** *a natural sense of justice* **| moral**

VERB + SENSE **feel, have | display, show | give sb | lose | heighten, sharpen | dull**

PREP. **~ of** *He seems to have lost his sense of reality.*

3 **natural ability to do/produce sth well**

ADJ. **good | bad, poor | innate, intuitive, natural | business, dress** *He has no dress sense.*

VERB + SENSE **have**

PREP. **~ of** *a good sense of direction/rhythm/timing*

4 **ability to think/act in a sensible way**

ADJ. **good | common, horse** *Common sense tells me I should get more sleep.*

VERB + SENSE **have** *He at least had the sense to call the police.* **| display, show | learn** *I wish my daughter would learn some sense.*

SENSE + VERB **tell sb**

PHRASES **have more money than sense, (not) an ounce of sense** *If you had an ounce of sense, you'd never have agreed to help him.*

5 **reason**

ADJ. **perfect** *It all makes perfect sense* (= is easy to understand).

VERB + SENSE **make | see** *I tried to make him see sense, but he just wouldn't listen.* **| talk** *If you can't talk sense, I'm leaving!*

PREP. **~ in** *There's a lot of sense in what he's saying.*

PHRASES **talk sense into sb** *We'll try and talk a little sense into her.* **| there's no sense in sth** *There's no sense in going home before the film.*

6 **your senses: ability to think clearly**

VERB + SENSE **come to, regain | take leave of** *Have you taken leave of your senses?* **| bring sb to**

PHRASES **in your (right) senses** *No one in their right senses would give him the job!*

7 **meaning**

ADJ. **broad, wide** *The novel is about education in its widest sense.* **| narrow, strict | accepted | figurative, metaphorical | literal | pejorative | legal, technical**

VERB + SENSE **have** *That word has three senses.* **| make** *That sentence doesn't make sense* (= has no meaning).

PREP. **in a ~** *In a sense, she's right.*

PHRASES **in every sense of the word, in a very real sense** *In a very real sense, post-war repression was the continuation of the war.* **| in the true sense of the word**

sense *verb*

ADV. **clearly, strongly** *I sensed quite strongly that she was angry with me.* **| dimly, vaguely | just** *Maybe she could just sense what I needed.* **| intuitively**

senseless *adj.*

1 having no meaning

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **absolutely, quite** *It was an absolutely senseless act of violence.*

2 unconscious

VERBS **be, lie** *He lay senseless out in the rain.* **| beat sb, kick sb, knock sb** *The thugs beat him senseless with a baseball bat. The branch of a tree knocked one of the riders senseless.*

sensible *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound** *This approach seems very sensible to me.* **| consider sb/sth, deem sth**

ADV. **eminently, extremely, really, very | perfectly** *In the state I was in, this seemed a perfectly sensible remark.* **| hardly** *Are you going out to search for it at this time of night? It seems hardly sensible.* **| fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably** *Ben's usually pretty sensible.* **| enough** *That advice sounds sensible enough.* **| apparently | clearly, obviously | politically, strategically**

sensitive *adj.*

1 able to understand other people's feelings

VERBS **be | become | make sb** *Her experiences had made her sensitive to other people's troubles.*

ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, unusually, very** *a highly sensitive, caring man* **| increasingly | quite**

PREP. **to** *Horses are very sensitive to their riders' moods.*

2 easily upset/annoyed

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **acutely, deeply, extremely, morbidly, painfully, particularly, terribly, very | a bit, pretty, rather**

PREP. **about** *Teenagers are often very sensitive about their appearance.* **| to** *He was acutely sensitive to criticism.*

3 needing to be dealt with carefully

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, highly, particularly, very** *this highly sensitive issue* **| fairly, rather, somewhat** *a somewhat sensitive question* **| commercially, environmentally, politically, socially** *commercially sensitive information*

4 reacting quickly/more than usual to sth

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, morbidly, painfully, particularly, unusually, very | quite**

PREP. **to** *Her eyes are very sensitive to light.*

5 **able to measure very small changes**

VERBS **be** *The bat's hearing is remarkably sensitive.*

ADV. **acutely, especially, exquisitely, extremely, highly, keenly, remarkably, very** *The equipment is highly sensitive.* **| fairly, quite | enough, sufficiently** *The probe is sensitive enough to detect the presence of a single microbe.*

PREP. **to** *sensitive to the slightest movement*

sensitivity *noun*

ADJ. **deep, extreme, great | heightened, increased**

VERB + SENSITIVITY **have | develop, display, show** *Migrating birds show extreme sensitivity to air currents.* **| lack** *Many doctors lack sensitivity when dealing with their patients.*

PREP. **with ~** *She broke the news to us with great sensitivity.* **| ~ in** *She is not known for her sensitivity in dealing with complaints.* **| ~ over** *There is deep sensitivity over the treatment of minority groups.* **| ~ to** *The course teaches sensitivity to body language.* **| ~ towards** *the need for sensitivity towards the views of the children*

PHRASES **a lack of sensitivity**

sentence *noun*

1 **group of words**

ADJ. **long, short** *Try to keep your sentences short.* | **complete, whole** | **broken, incomplete** | **grammatical, grammatically correct** | **grammatically incorrect, ungrammatical** | **coherent** | **affirmative, negative** | **complex, simple** | **compound**

VERB + SENTENCE **begin** | **finish** *Peter finished Jane's sentence for her.* | **construct, form, formulate, generate, write** *He can barely form a grammatical sentence.* | **parse**

SENTENCE + VERB **contain sth, have sth** *Does the sentence contain an adverb?*

SENTENCE + NOUN **structure**

2 **punishment given by a judge**

ADJ. **maximum, minimum** | **long, short** | **harsh, heavy, severe, stiff** | **lenient, light** | **indefinite, indeterminate** | **appropriate** | **mandatory** *The judge imposed the mandatory sentence for murder.* | **suspended** | **custodial, jail, prison** | **non-custodial** | **death** | **life**

VERB + SENTENCE **hand down, impose, pass, pronounce** *The judge will pass sentence on the accused this afternoon.* | **be given, get, receive** | **serve** *He will have to serve a life sentence.* | **carry out** | **await** *He spent a week in custody on remand awaiting sentence.* | **face** *She could face a long prison sentence.* | **commute, reduce** *The death sentence may be commuted to life imprisonment.* | **suspend** | **appeal against** | **review** | **quash** | **carry** *The offence carries a maximum sentence of two years in prison.*

PREP. **under ~ (of)** *He has been in prison for two months under sentence of death.* | **~ for** *an eight-year sentence for burglary*

sentence *verb*

PREP. **for** *They had been sentenced for murder.* **| to** *He was sentenced to two years in prison.*

PHRASES **sentence sb to death, sentence sb to imprisonment** *The judge sentenced her to life imprisonment.*

sentiment *noun*

ADJ. **deep, strong | growing, rising | fine, lofty, noble** *All these noble sentiments have little chance of being put into practice.* **| national, popular, public | nationalist/nationalistic, patriotic | anti-British, anti-Japanese, etc. | racist | anti-government, anti-war, etc. | moral, religious** *The people are renowned for their deep religious sentiment.*

VERB + SENTIMENT **express | agree with, echo, endorse, share** *He agrees with the sentiments expressed in the editorial.* **| disagree with | arouse**

SENTIMENT + VERB **grow**

PREP. **~s about/on** *It would be a mistake to ignore their strong sentiments on the issue.* **| ~ against** *The killings at the weekend helped arouse popular sentiment against the organization.* **| ~ in favour of** *public sentiment in favour of state ownership*

PHRASES **my sentiments exactly** (= I agree) *'I don't see why we should change our plans just because of him.' 'My sentiments exactly.'*

separable *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **easily, readily** *Church and State were not easily separable in this period.* **| completely**

PREP. **from** *The two things were never identical, but never separable from each other.*

separate *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain | keep sb/sth** *The women are kept separate from the men.* **| consider sth**

ADV. **very, widely** *I kept my two lives very separate. species from widely separate parts of the world* **| absolutely, completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly** *The waste water is kept entirely separate from the rainwater.* **| largely | rather, relatively, somewhat | essentially** *The two groups are essentially separate and independent.* **| apparently | hitherto, previously** *to merge the two previously separate businesses* **| geographically, physically**

PREP. **from** *a lifestyle which is quite separate from that of her parents*

separate *verb*

1 move/keep people/things apart

ADV. **completely, totally | carefully | clearly** *These two branches of the science have now become clearly separated.* **| effectively | easily, readily** *One cannot easily separate moral, social and political issues.* **| formally | legally | physically, spatially | out** *A magnet separates out scrap iron from the rubbish.*

VERB + SEPARATE **attempt to, try to | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *It was impossible to separate the rival fans.*

PREP. **from** *separating the boys from the girls* **| into** *I separated the documents into two piles.*

PHRASES **sharply separated** *The disciplines of science and engineering are not always sharply separated.* **| widely separated** *The two groups became widely separated.*

2 stop living together

ADV. **legally**

VERB + SEPARATE **decide to**

PREP. **from** *She is separated from her husband.*

separation *noun*

1 **being apart**

ADJ. **complete, total | clear, rigid, strict | long** *She is visiting her family after a long separation.* **| physical**

PREP. **~ between** *the clear separation of powers between the executive and the legislature* **| ~ from** *the separation of children from their parents during the war*

2 **when a married couple lives apart**

ADJ. **formal, judicial, legal | trial**

SEPARATION + NOUN **agreement, order**

PREP. **~ between** *the separation between Mary and her husband* **| ~ from** *the separation from his wife*

September *noun* > Note at MONTH

sequel *noun*

1 to a book, film, etc.

VERB + SEQUEL **do, make, write** *He's been asked to make a sequel to 'Peter Pan'.*

PREP. **in a/the~** *Some important new characters appear in the sequel.* **| ~ to**

2 sth that happens after sth else

ADJ. **immediate | strange, unexpected**

VERB + SEQUEL **have** *The affair had a strange sequel.*

PREP. **~ to** *The immediate sequel to the price rises was uprisings across the country.*

sequence *noun*

ADJ. **complete, whole | continuous | complex | correct | opening | closing | alphabetical, chronological, logical, natural, random** *The article describes the chronological sequence of events.* **| action, dance, dream, film | DNA, gene**

VERB + SEQUENCE **complete** *Complete the following sequence: 1, 4, 8, 13 ...* **| follow** *We had to follow a complex sequence of movements.*

PREP. **in ~** *The book is more satisfying if you read each chapter in sequence.* **| in a/the ~** *The heroine dies in the closing sequence of the film.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **a sequence of events**

serene *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound | remain**

ADV. **very | perfectly, utterly | almost | quite | outwardly** *beneath the outwardly serene surface*

serenity *noun*

ADJ. **absolute** *Her face had an expression of absolute serenity.* **| comparative** *She escaped to the comparative serenity of the kitchen.*

VERB + SERENITY **achieve, find**

PREP. **with ~** *She was able to face death with serenity.* **| ~ of** *older people who have achieved a serenity of understanding*

PHRASES **a feeling of serenity**

sergeant *noun*

1 **officer of low rank in the army/air force**

ADJ. **flight, platoon** > Note at RANK

2 **officer in the police**

ADJ. **police | detective** *Detective Sergeant Peter Wiles* **| desk, duty, station** *Visitors to the police station should report to the station sergeant.*

PHRASES **the rank of sergeant**

series *noun*

1 **number of things that come one after another**

ADJ. **whole** *He is in hospital for a whole series of tests.* **| endless, long | complex** *a complex series of events* **| continuous | concert, lecture, test (in cricket)** *Australia won the test series against England.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The quartet will be performing in a series of lunchtime concerts.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **the first/last, etc. of a/the series, the first/latest, etc. in a series**

2 **programmes on radio/television**

ADJ. **radio, television/TV | comedy, crime, documentary, drama**

QUANT. **part**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She has a small part in a drama series for radio.* **| ~ about/on** *We watched the final part of a series on famous gardens.*

serious *adj.*

1 **bad/dangerous**

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become, get** *By this time the riots were getting serious.* **| remain**

ADV. **extremely, particularly, really, very | fairly, quite | potentially**

2 **not joking**

VERBS **be, look, sound** *Come on, be serious!* **| become, turn** *He became serious all of a sudden.*

ADV. **deadly, quite, very**

PREP. **about** *Are you serious about resigning?*

seriousness *noun*

ADJ. **deadly, deep, full, great, high** *He maintained an attitude of high seriousness.* **| mock | underlying** *The joke did not obscure the underlying seriousness of his point.* **| moral**

VERB + SERIOUSNESS **appreciate, realize, recognize, understand** *Only later did he realize the full seriousness of his offence.* **| exaggerate | underestimate | play down | treat sth with** *The problem was not treated with the seriousness it deserved.*

PREP. **with ~** *She spoke with great seriousness of the hardships she had endured.*

PHRASES **in all seriousness** *You can't in all seriousness think they'll give you the job!* **| take, treat, etc. sth with the utmost seriousness**

sermon *noun*

ADJ. **lengthy, long | short**

VERB + SERMON **deliver, give, preach**

PREP. **during/in a/the ~** *He fell asleep during the sermon.* **| ~ against** *He gave a long sermon against abortion.* **| ~ on** *She preached a sermon on forgiveness.*

servant *noun*

ADJ. **devoted, faithful, good, loyal, trusted | female, male | maid | hired | indentured | personal | domestic, farm, household, royal**

VERB + SERVANT **employ, have**

SERVANT + VERB **serve sb, wait on sb** *An army of servants waited on the king's household.*

SERVANT + NOUN **girl**

PHRASES **an army/a retinue of servants** *The duchess arrived, surrounded by her retinue of servants.* **| servants' quarters**

serve *verb*

1 **give sb food or drink**

ADV. **immediately** *Pour the sauce over the pasta and serve immediately.*

VERB + SERVE **be ready to** *Cover and chill the salad until ready to serve.*

PREP. **to** *They served a wonderful meal to more than 50 delegates.* | **with** *The delegates were served with a wonderful meal. Serve the lamb with new potatoes and green beans.*

PHRASES **serve sth chilled/cold/hot** *The quiche can be served hot or cold.*

2 **work**

ADV. **faithfully, loyally, well** *She served the family faithfully for many years* (= as a servant).

VERB + SERVE **continue to**

PREP. **as** *I shall continue to serve as a trustee.* | **in** *She served in the medical corps.* | **under** *He served under John Major in the early 1990s.*

service *noun*

1 **system that provides sth the public needs**

ADJ. **efficient, excellent, good, valuable | adequate | bad, inadequate, poor, terrible | complete, comprehensive, full | standard | basic | reduced | back-up, support | emergency, essential** *A passer-by called the emergency services* (= the ambulance/fire /police services). *Essential services* (= the supply of water, gas, electricity) *will be maintained.* | **vital** *providing a vital service to the public* | **available** *Find out what services are available in your area.* | **public | advisory, banking, counselling, financial, information, medical, news, rescue, telephone, etc. | ambulance, diplomatic, fire, foreign, health, intelligence, library, police, postal, prison, probation, prosecution, secret, security, social** *She works for the social services*

VERB + SERVICE **offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *We offer a comprehensive service to home buyers.* | **operate, run | maintain | guarantee | improve | expand, extend** *We need to expand this valuable service to other cities.* | **cut back on, run down** *This government has systematically run down public services since it took office.* | **suspend | axe, cut | restore | make use of, use** *people who use the library service* | **complain about**

SERVICE + VERB **improve | deteriorate**

SERVICE + NOUN **industry, sector**

PREP. **in/out of ~ (used of buses, trains, etc.)**

PHRASES **goods and services**

2 **work of serving a customer**

ADJ. **efficient, excellent, first-class, first-rate, good, professional, quality | bad, poor, terrible | prompt, quick | slow | friendly, personal | customer | after-sales** *We offer excellent after-sales service on all our goods.* | **room** *If you would like a meal in your room, please call room service.*

VERB + SERVICE **give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *Our main concern is to provide quality customer service.* | **get | guarantee** *We guarantee first-class service.*

| complain about *complaining about poor service*

3 **working for a country, company, etc.**

ADJ. **meritorious, outstanding | faithful | long | active** *He died on active service.* **| military, national | domestic** *a job in domestic service* **| community, public | voluntary | jury**

VERB + SERVICE **do** *All 18-year-old males are required to do a year's military service.* **| see** *He saw service during the First World War.*

PREP. **~ to** *service to the community*

PHRASES **conditions of service**

4 **work done for sb; help given to sb**

ADJ. **great, immense, invaluable, valuable | professional**

VERB + SERVICE **be of, do sb, perform, render** *May I be of service to you? You have done us a great service. payment for services rendered* **| offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *She offered her services as a childminder.*

PREP. **at your ~** *The cabin staff are at your service throughout the flight.* **| ~s of** *We need the services of a good lawyer.* **| ~ to** *He was given an award for his services to the disabled.*

5 **the services: the armed forces**

ADJ. **armed**

VERB + SERVICE **go into, join** *Most of the boys went straight into the services.*

6 **bus, train etc.**

ADJ. **efficient, good, reliable | fast | frequent, regular | direct | full | limited, reduced** *We will be operating a reduced service while engineering work takes place.* **| scheduled** *changes to scheduled services* **| bus, coach, ferry, rail, taxi, train, tram, tube, underground**

VERB + SERVICE **lay on, offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *Bus companies are planning* *to lay on extra services.* **| operate, run | extend, improve | suspend | axe, cut | restore | use | complain about**

PREP. **in ~** *This bus is not in service.* **| out of ~ | ~ between** *The company offers direct, fast and frequent services between large towns and cities.* **| ~ from, ~ to**

7 **religious ceremony**

ADJ. **church, religious | funeral, marriage, memorial, etc. | afternoon, evening, morning**

VERB + SERVICE **attend, go to | hold**

service *verb*

ADV. **fully, properly** *The car was fully serviced last month.* **| regularly**

PHRASES **have/get sth serviced** *You should get all gas appliances regularly serviced.*

session *noun*

1 **meeting of a court, parliament, etc.**

ADJ. **stormy** *a stormy session of the European Parliament* | **inaugural, opening | closing, final, last | current | joint | open, public | closed, private | annual, regular, weekly, etc. | extraordinary | emergency | full, plenary** *a full session of the peace talks a plenary session of the committee* | **follow-up** *A follow-up session was held a month after the initial meeting.* | **congressional, parliamentary**

VERB + SESSION **hold | attend | boycott | address** *The president addressed a closed session of Congress.*

SESSION + VERB **convene, take place | begin, open | close, end | adopt sth, approve sth** *The session adopted a resolution on disarmament.* | **agree sth | call for sth**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *in the opening session* | **in ~** *The court is now in session.*

2 **time spent doing an activity**

ADJ. **lengthy, long | short | bargaining, counselling, negotiating, question and answer | briefing, coaching, practice, training | photo, photographic | jam, jazz, recording | workout, yoga | drinking** *The man fell in the canal after a heavy drinking session.*

VERB + SESSION **have, offer (sb), provide (sb with), run** *The college runs training sessions every afternoon.* | **attend**

SESSION + VERB **take place**

SESSION + NOUN **guitarist, musician, singer, etc.**

PREP. **~ on** *a session on remedial reading*

set *adj.*

1 **ready**

VERBS **be, look, seem | get (used when starting a race)** *Get set ... Go!*

ADV. **all** *Are you all set? Let's go!*

PREP. **for** *The Italian team looks set for victory.*

2 **determined**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **dead**

PREP. **against** *Her father is dead set against the marriage.* **| on** *The council is now set on expanding the sports centre.*

set *noun*

1 group of similar things

ADJ. **complete, full, whole | common** *These two species share a common set of characteristics.* **| closed, open** *A grammatical choice is drawn from a closed set of options.* **| complex | data, instruction** *a computer's instruction set* **| chess, dinner, printing, tea, train**

VERB + SET **break up** *She had a complete set of these dining-room chairs but it was broken up after she died.* **| complete, make up** *She won a silver medal in the long jump to complete her set* (= of all three types of medal).

SET + VERB **comprise sth, consist of sth**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There are ten pictures in the set.* **| ~ of** *a set of accounts/books/ clothes/keys/valves a set of beliefs/circumstances/factors/guidelines*

PHRASES **one/part of a set** *The plate is part of a set.*

2 scenery for play or film

ADJ. **film, stage, studio**

VERB + SET **design | build | dismantle, take down**

PREP. **off ~** *Off set, the two actors became close friends.* **| on (the) ~** *All the cast are on the set throughout.*

3 in tennis

VERB + SET **play | win | lose**

PHRASES **in straight sets** *Rusedski won in straight sets* (= his opponent won none).

setback *noun*

ADJ. **temporary | initial | big, major, serious, severe | unexpected | economic, financial | military**

VERB + SETBACK **experience, receive, suffer** *His research has suffered a temporary setback.*

PREP. **~ for** *a further setback for the coal industry* **| ~ to** *a serious setback to his chances of re-election*

settee *noun*

ADJ. **comfortable, comfy | chintz, leather-covered, etc. | three-seater, two-seater | wide**

VERB + SETTEE **sink down on/onto, sit (down) on, slump down on/onto** *He slumped down exhausted on the settee.* **| be sprawled on, lie on, sprawl on**

PREP. **on the ~** *She found her glasses lying on the settee.*

PHRASES **the arm/back of a settee**

setting *noun*

1 place where sth happens

ADJ. **unlikely** *The hospital is an unlikely setting for an art auction.* **| unfamiliar | natural** *wild animals in their natural setting* **| attractive, beautiful, charming, delightful, idyllic, lovely, magnificent, perfect, picturesque | dramatic | peaceful, secluded, tranquil | intimate | formal, informal | rural | contemporary** *biblical stories in a contemporary setting* **| social** *The French Club offers the chance to practise your language skills in a social setting.* **| work** *In a work setting, more formal language would be used.* **| hospital, laboratory, etc. | cultural, educational, historical | domestic, family** *elderly people living in a domestic setting*

VERB + SETTING **create, provide** *The park provides the perfect setting for the play.*

PREP. **in a/the … ~** *a hotel in a beautiful setting of landscaped gardens* **| ~ for** *a lovely setting for a picnic* **| ~ in** *a dramatic setting in Cornwall* **| ~ of** *the rural setting of Petrarch's sonnets*

2 of controls

ADJ. **high, low, moderate | default, standard**

VERB + SETTING **adjust, change | increase, reduce**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *The oven should be at a high setting.*

settle *verb*

1 **end an argument**

ADV. **amicably, peacefully** *Hopes of settling the conflict peacefully are fading.* **| satisfactorily** *The matter has not yet been satisfactorily settled.* **| eventually, finally | informally, out of court** *The company has agreed to settle out of court* (= come to an agreement without going to court).

VERB + SETTLE **attempt to, try to | agree to**

PREP. **with** *After six months, the company finally settled with the unions.*

PHRASES **an attempt to settle sth**

2 **choose a permanent home**

ADV. **permanently** *He has now settled permanently in London.* **| eventually, finally | happily | down**

VERB + SETTLE **decide to, intend to**

PHRASES **be densely settled** *a fertile area that was densely settled in early times* **| be ready to settle down** *She felt she wasn't yet ready to settle down.*

3 **make sb/yourself comfortable**

ADV. **comfortably, happily, peacefully, snugly** *He settled himself more comfortably in his chair.* **| quickly, soon | back, down** *He settled back in his chair to watch television. She settled down for a quiet doze on the sofa.*

VERB + SETTLE **be unable to, can't/couldn't** *Unable to settle, she trailed around the house all day.* **| allow sb to, let sb** *She kept fussing around, refusing to let him settle.* **| help (to), help sb (to)** *I took a pill to help settle my nerves.* **PHRASAL VERBS settle in/settle into sth**

ADV. **happily, nicely** *The kids settled happily into their new school.* **| quickly, soon**

settled *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem | get**

ADV. **very | fairly, quite** *She seems fairly settled in her new job already.* **| comfortably, happily** *He is happily settled with third wife Gladys and their two children.*

settlement *noun*

1 **agreement**

ADJ. **early, speedy | final | lasting, long-term | temporary | amicable, friendly, peaceful | just, reasonable, satisfactory | compromise | negotiated | constitutional, diplomatic, financial, political | compensation, divorce, marriage | out-of-court | peace | pay, wage** *Nurses refused to accept a pay settlement less than the rate of inflation.* **| dispute**

VERB + SETTLEMENT **agree, reach** *Both parties hope to reach an amicable settlement.* **| negotiate, produce** *The union has negotiated a temporary settlement.* **| seek** *Lawyers are seeking an out-of-court settlement.* **| offer**

PHRASES **the terms of the settlement**

2 **payment of debt, etc.**

ADJ. **prompt, speedy | early | full** *full settlement of a debt* **| cash | debt**

PREP. **in ~ of** *a cheque in settlement of the amount owing* **| under a/the ~** *a beneficiary under the settlement*

3 **place where people have come to live**

ADJ. **ancient, early | land | agricultural, rural**

VERB + SETTLEMENT **establish, found** *The Romans established a settlement on the south shore.*

SETTLEMENT + VERB **grow up** *A settlement grew up around the castle.*

SETTLEMENT + NOUN **site**

settler *noun*

ADJ. **early, first, original**

SETTLER + VERB **move in/into sth** *When the first settlers moved into the area they faced immense hardships.* **| establish, found** *French settlers founded New Orleans.*

PREP. **~ from** *settlers from France* **| ~ in** *Dutch settlers in Cape Town*

severe *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | become | remain**

ADV. **especially, exceptionally, extremely, particularly, really, unusually, very** *an exceptionally severe frost* **| increasingly | fairly, moderately, quite, relatively** *women affected by mild to moderately severe symptoms* **| enough, sufficiently** *Cases of plant poisoning severe enough to warrant hospital admission are rare.*

severity *noun*

ADJ. **great | extreme, utmost | increasing | mock** *She wagged her finger with mock severity.*

VERB + SEVERITY **assess**

sew *verb*

ADV. **carefully, neatly** *The squares of fabric were all sewn neatly together.* **| on, together, up** *I sewed on three buttons. He sewed up the tear with needle and thread.*

PREP. **onto** *He sewed the patch onto the back of his trousers.*

sewage *noun*

ADJ. **raw, untreated | treated**

VERB + SEWAGE **dump, pump** *In some parts of the country raw sewage is pumped straight in the sea.* **| treat** *Sewage should be treated in a proper disposal system.*

SEWAGE + NOUN **farm, plant, works | disposal, treatment | discharge, effluent, sludge | pollution**

sewing *noun*

ADJ. **hand**

VERB + SEWING **do** *I haven't done any sewing for ages.* **| take in** *She took in sewing to supplement her income.*

SEWING + NOUN **basket, kit | needle, thread | machine | machinist**

sex *noun*

1 male or female

ADJ. **female, male | opposite** *At that age they can started becoming shy with the opposite sex.* **| single** *a single-sex school* **| fair/fairer, gentle** *(humorous)* (= women; some women may find these terms annoying)

SEX + NOUN **change** *She's had a sex change operation.* **| equality | discrimination, inequality | ratio**

PREP. **between the ~es** *differences/inequalities/relations between the sexes*

PHRASES **the battle of the sexes** *The quiz is a battle of the sexes between a team of male students and a team of female students.* **| on grounds of sex** *discrimination on grounds of sex* **| irrespective/regardless of sex** *The word 'man' can refer to all humans, irrespective of sex.*

2 sexual intercourse

ADJ. **anal, oral, penetrative, vaginal | gay, homosexual, lesbian | heterosexual | good, great, passionate | safe | unprotected, unsafe | consensual, non-consensual | extra-marital, illicit, premarital | kinky | casual, promiscuous | unlawful** *He was convicted of having unlawful sex with an underage girl.* **| explicit, gratuitous** *Films containing explicit sex are banned.*

VERB + SEX **engage in, have** *She had never had sex before.* **| consent to | refuse | obtain, procure**

SEX + NOUN **life** *a healthy sex life* **| drive, urge** *a low sex drive* **| appeal** *Despite his age, he still has a lot of sex appeal.* **| act, practices** *photos showing sex acts safer sex practices* **| therapist, therapy | organ | hormone | education | abuse, assault, attack, crime, offence** *child sex abuse* **| maniac** *He had a reputation of being a sex maniac.* **| fiend** *(informal)*, **offender, pest** *(informal)* **| film, scene, show | symbol** *She wants to be known as a singer rather than as a sex symbol.* **| shop | aid, toy | scandal**

PREP. **~ between** *sex between consenting adults* **| ~ with** *sex with her husband*

sexism *noun*

ADJ. **blatant, rampant** *She was shocked by his blatant sexism. Sexism is rampant in many institutions.*

VERB + SEXISM **combat, fight (against)** *efforts to combat sexism in the workplace*

sexual intercourse *noun*

ADJ. **full | consensual | non-consensual, unlawful | unprotected**

VERB + SEXUAL INTERCOURSE **engage in, have | consent to | submit to | refuse | obtain, procure** *the crime of obtaining sexual intercourse by threat*

SEXUAL INTERCOURSE + VERB **occur, take place** *Rape is committed where sexual intercourse takes place without consent.*

PREP. **during ~ | ~ with** *She denied having had sexual intercourse with him.*

PHRASES **an act of sexual intercourse**

sexuality *noun*

ADJ. **female, male | human | deviant | gay, lesbian | overt** *Her overt sexuality shocked cinema audiences.*

VERB + SEXUALITY **express** *Victorian women were rarely allowed to express their sexuality.* **| come to terms with** *He couldn't come to terms with his sexuality.*

sexy *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look | find sb**

ADV. **extremely, incredibly, really, very** *I find him incredibly sexy.* **| pretty, quite, rather**

shack *noun*

ADJ. **tin, wooden | derelict, dilapidated, run-down**

PREP. **in a /the ~**

shade *noun*

1 **area out of the sunlight**

ADJ. **cool | deep | welcome | dappled | leafy** *in the leafy shade of a fig tree*

QUANT. **patch** *searching for a patch of shade to rest in*

VERB + SHADE **give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)**

PREP. **in (the) ~** *a plant that grows well in shade sitting in the shade* **| into the ~** *Let's move into the shade.* **| under the ~ of** *sitting under the shade of an umbrella* **| ~ for** *giving shade for cattle* **| ~ from** *The huge trees offered shade from the sun.*

PHRASES **light and shade**

2 **type of colour**

ADJ. **delicate, light, muted, pale, pastel, soft, subtle, translucent** *The rooms were decorated in delicate pastel shades.* **| dark, deep, rich, strong** *His face turned an even deeper shade of red.* **| bright, vivid | attractive, beautiful | startling, stunning** *painted in startling shades of pink and orange* **| autumnal, natural, neutral, warm** *Towels in warm shades can soften the room.*

VERB + SHADE **be available in, come in** *This wool is available in 18 stunning shades.*

PREP. **in a ~** *The sea glistened in shades of blue and emerald.* **| ~ for** *our new range of shades for lips and eyes* **| ~ of** *He threw out his old suits, all in shades of grey and brown.*

3 **small difference**

ADJ. **political** *reformers of all political shades*

PREP. **~ of** *a word with various shades of meaning*

PHRASES **shades of opinion**

shade *verb*

ADV. **completely | lightly, partially** *This plant prefers a lightly shaded position.*

PREP. **against** *She shaded her eyes against the fierce sun.* **| from** *We were completely shaded from the sun by the poplar trees.* **| with** *a small town square shaded with trees*

shading *noun*

ADJ. **light, subtle** *an effect that is achieved with subtle shading* **| dark, heavy**

shadow *noun*

ADJ. **dark, dense, deep, strong** *The house lay in dark shadow.* **| giant, long | grotesque, monstrous, sinister, strange, terrible | dancing, flickering**

VERB + SHADOW **cast, make, produce, throw** *The boat's sail cast a shadow on the water. Use a desk light to produce a strong shadow. The candles on the table threw huge flickering shadows against the wall.* **| fill sth with ~s** *The streets were now filled with terrible shadows.* **| emerge from, loom up out of, step out from/of ~s** *Suddenly a huge figure loomed up out of the shadows.* **| move into, shrink into, slip (back) into ~s** *She shrank back into the shadows as the footsteps approached.* **| lurk in, wait in, watch from** *criminals lurking in the shadows*

SHADOW + VERB **fall, lie** *The evening shadows were beginning to fall. Deep shadows lay across the small clearing where they sat.* **| get longer, lengthen** *As the shadows lengthened, the men drifted home for their tea.* **| dance, leap, move, pass** *the leaping shadows of the flames The shadows of the clouds passed over us.*

PREP. **among the ~s** *an odd shape among the shadows* **| in the ~s** *I could just make out a figure in the shadows.* **| into the ~s** *I backed into the shadows until the police car had passed.* **| in ~** *His face was in shadow.* **| into ~** *The storm clouds threw the mountain peaks into dense shadow.* **| from/out of the ~s** *A huge figure stepped out of the shadows.* **| through the ~s** *the fears that kept crowding in on her as she hurried through the shadows*

PHRASES **live in the shadow of sb/sth** *(often figurative) She had always lived in the shadow of her older sister.*

shaft *noun*

ADJ. **deep | vertical | lift, mine** (also **mineshaft)** *A fire broke out in the main lift shaft.* **| air, ventilation**

VERB + SHAFT **bore, drill, sink**

PREP. **down a/the ~** *The body had been thrown down a disused mineshaft.* **| in/into a/the ~, through a/the ~** *The workers go down to the tunnels through a vertical shaft sunk from the top of the cliff.*

PHRASES **the bottom/top of a shaft** *They lowered him down to the bottom of the deep shaft.*

shake *noun*

ADJ. **brisk, good, vigorous** *Give the tablecloth a good shake before putting it away.* **| little, slight | mental** *He gave himself a mental shake and got down to work.* **| rueful** *a rueful shake of the head*

VERB + SHAKE **give sb/sth**

PREP. **with a ~ | ~ of**

PHRASES **a shake of your/the head**

shake *verb*

1 of a person/building

ADV. **badly, uncontrollably, violently** *Her hands were shaking so badly that she couldn't hold her glass.* | **almost** *He was almost shaking with the intensity of what he was saying.* | **fairly** (*informal*) *Natalie fairly shook with laughter.* | **literally, physically** *I was numb with dread. I was literally shaking.*

PREP. **with** *She was shaking with rage.*

PHRASES **be shaking all over** *He was crying and shaking all over.* | **be shaking like a leaf, find yourself/start shaking** *I found myself shaking uncontrollably with cold.* | **stop shaking** *I just couldn't stop shaking.*

2 object/person

ADV. **roughly, vigorously, violently** *He shook the blankets vigorously to get rid of the dust. She must have shaken the baby quite violently to inflict such severe injuries.* | **gently, slightly** | **well** *Shake well before use.* (instructions on a bottle of medicine, etc.) | **suddenly** | **physically**

PREP. **by** *He shook her gently by the shoulders.*

3 your head

ADV. **decisively, emphatically, firmly** | **fiercely, vehemently, vigorously, violently, wildly** | **a little, gently, slightly** | **quickly** | **slowly** | **dismissively, impatiently** | **despairingly, desperately, dismally, gloomily, helplessly, miserably, mournfully, regretfully, ruefully, sadly, sorrowfully** | **wearily** | **disbelievingly, doubtfully, wonderingly** | **just, merely, only, simply** *He merely shook his head.* | **from side to side**

PREP. **at** *He shook his head at her disbelievingly.* | **in** *She shook her head in disbelief.*

4 sb's hand

ADV. **firmly, vigorously** | **warmly**

PHRASES **shake sb by the hand** *Our host shook each of us warmly by the hand.*
PHRASAL VERBS shake sb/sth off

ADV. **completely, fully | quickly | easily** *He had not easily shaken Claudine off.* **| off**

VERB + SHAKE **can't/couldn't (seem to)** ***I can't seem to shake off this cold.*** **| seem to | try to**

shaken *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | leave sb** *The experience left her deeply shaken.*

ADV. **badly, considerably, deeply, profoundly, quite, severely | a bit, a little, rather, somewhat** *Are you all right? You look a bit shaken up.* **| clearly, obviously, visibly | still | up**

PREP. **by** *She was visibly shaken by the news.*

shake-up *noun*

ADJ. **big, major, radical | urgent | boardroom, council, personnel** VERB + SHAKE-UP **need | call for** *The paper calls for an urgent shake-up in the system for looking after the elderly.* **| plan** *The headline read 'Local council plans shake-up'.* **| face, go through, have, undergo** *Police forces face the biggest shake-up in their 150-year history.* **| survive** *My job did not survive the shake-up.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the posts that were scrapped in the recent shake-up* **| ~ at** *a major shake-up at the company* **| ~ in** *a radical shake-up in the chemical industry*

shaky *adj.*

1 **shaking because you are frightened/ill**

VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | get, go | leave sb/sth** *The experience had left him rather shaky.*

ADV. **distinctly, extremely, very | all** *You've gone all shaky!* **| a bit, a little, rather, slightly**

PREP. **with** *Her voice was low and shaky with emotion.*

2 **not firm or strong**

VERBS **be, feel, look | remain**

ADV. **dangerously, decidedly, distinctly, extremely, very** *Financially, the arrangement was distinctly shaky.* **| a bit, a little, pretty, rather, somewhat**

shallow *adj.*

1 **not deep**

VERBS **be, look | become, get** *The water gets quite shallow towards the shore.* **| remain**

ADV. **extremely, very | comparatively, fairly, quite, relatively** *Don't worry, the water's quite shallow.* **| enough, sufficiently** *Follow the south shore, crossing the river where it is shallow enough.*

2 **not showing serious thought**

VERBS **appear, be, seem** *Tony seemed very shallow and immature.*

ADV. **exceedingly, extremely, very | quite, rather**

shame *noun*

1 **feeling that you have lost the respect of others**

ADJ. **deep**

VERB + SHAME **be filled with, feel | bring, cause** *His arrest for stealing brought shame on his family.* **| die of** *(figurative) I nearly died of shame!*

PREP. **from ~** *She wept from the shame of having let everyone down.* **| in ~** *She shut her eyes in shame.* **| to your ~** *To my shame, I didn't tell Robert about the party.* **| without ~** *He had cried noisily and without shame at the news of Esther's death.* **| with ~** *She blushed with shame.* **| ~ about/over** *You feel absolutely no shame over what you did, do you?* **| ~ at** *She felt a flush of shame at what she'd done.*

PHRASES **a cause for shame** *Her pregnancy was no cause for shame.* **| a feeling/ sense of shame, bow/hang your head in shame** *He was being held by two security guards, his head bowed in shame.*

2 **a shame: sth that makes you feel disappointed**

ADJ. **crying, great, real, terrible, wicked**

PREP. **~ about** *It's a terrible shame about Stuart losing his job, isn't it?*

PHRASES **a bit of a shame, rather a shame, such a shame, what a shame** *What a shame you can't come!*

shame *verb*

ADV. **publicly** *The people who did this deserve to be publicly shamed.*

PREP. **into** *An outcry from customers has shamed the company into lowering its prices.*

shampoo *noun*

1 **liquid soap for washing hair**

ADJ. **anti-dandruff, baby, frequent-use, gentle, mild, moisturizing, revitalizing**

VERB + SHAMPOO **use, wash your hair with**

PREP. **~ for** *a shampoo for greasy hair*

PHRASES **shampoo and conditioner**

2 **act of washing hair**

VERB + SHAMPOO **give sb/sth | have**

PHRASES **a shampoo and set** *I'll have a shampoo and set, please.*

shape *noun*

1 physical outline

ADJ. **basic, simple** *The children cut the paper into various simple shapes.* | **characteristic, distinctive** *I recognized the distinctive shape of a Boeing-747.* | **curious, interesting, unusual, weird** | **awkward** *The desk was an awkward shape and wouldn't fit through the door.* | **original** | **geometric/geometrical, regular, symmetrical** | **complex** | **asymmetrical, irregular** | **odd, random** *tiles of random shape* | **solid, three-dimensional** | **aerodynamic** | **angular, arch, circular, cone/conical, cylindrical, diamond, dome, egg, elliptical, elongated, hemispherical, hexagonal, oblong, pentagonal, pointed, pyramid/pyramidal, rectangular, round, spherical, triangular, wedge** | **rounded, smooth** | **arrow, banana, cross, pear, star, T, etc.** *The road forms an L shape. The bruise was a sort of mushroom shape.* | **blurred, ghostly, shadowy, vague** | **huge, massive** | **black, dark, grey** | **human** | **body** *You can't change your natural body shape.*

VERB + SHAPE **cut out, draw, make, trace** *First draw the rough shape of your chosen animal. Fold the paper to make the shape of a cone.* | **cut sth into, make sth in, produce sth in** *a cheese similar to Brie but produced in a different shape* | **come in, have** *Tables come in various shapes.* | **assume, make, take on** *Ordinary things assumed different shapes in the mist.* | **keep, retain** *These garments will retain their shape even with repeated washing.* | **regain** | **change** | **lose** | **distort** *The wide-angle lens distorts shapes.* | **distinguish, make out, see** *I could just make out the shapes of animals in the field.*

SHAPE + VERB **appear, emerge, loom** *Ghostly shapes loomed out of the fog.*

PREP. **in the ~ of** *a doormat in the shape of a cat*

PHRASES **out of shape** *The bicycle had been battered out of shape.* | **oblong/rectangular/hexagonal, etc. in shape** *The island is roughly circular in shape.*

2 structure/nature of sth

ADJ. **general** | **changing** | **final** | **future**

VERB + SHAPE **alter, change, determine, influence** *He did much to determine the* *shape of Europe's political map at that time.* **| take** *A wonderful idea began to take shape in her brain.* **| give** *the words we use to give a shape to our feelings*

PHRASES **in any shape or form** *I can't stand insects in any shape or form.* **| the shape of things to come** *This revolutionary transport system could be the shape of things to come.*

3 good or bad condition

ADJ. **fine, good, great | bad, poor | physical** *He's 64, but he's in better physical shape than I am.*

VERB + SHAPE **get sb/sth into, knock/lick/whip sb/sth into** *Get your body into shape for the summer! Leave the boy with me?I'll soon knock him into shape!* **| be in, keep in, stay in** *You are in pretty good shape for your age. She likes to stay in shape.* **| be out of**

shape *verb*

ADV. **profoundly** *Memory can be profoundly shaped by subsequent experience.* **| largely | actively, deliberately** *actively shaping the history of their country*

VERB + SHAPE **help (to)**

PHRASES **a part/role in shaping sth**

shaped *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **beautifully, perfectly** *her beautifully shaped mouth* **| grotesquely | irregularly | awkwardly** *All the rooms in the house were awkwardly shaped.* **| curiously, oddly, strangely** *an oddly shaped parcel* **| specially** *You can buy specially shaped bricks for an arch.*

PHRASES **be shaped like sth** *curious vases shaped like birds and animals*

share *noun*

1 **part of sth that has been divided**

ADJ. **bigger, large, the lion's, major, significant, substantial | full | modest** *a modest share of total exports* **| 5%, 10%, etc.** *The wife owns an 80% share of their second home.* **| equal | disproportionate** *The government devotes a disproportionate share of the budget to military expenditure.* **| proportionate | market** *The company's market share slipped to under 15% last month.*

VERB + SHARE **get, have, receive, take** *You should receive a large share of the profits. Hospitals take the lion's share of the NHS budget.* **| increase, reduce | claim** *Everyone seems to want to get into television to claim their share of fame and fortune.* **| do** *We must all do our share of the work.*

PREP. **~ of** *a reduced share of the vote*

PHRASES **sb/sth has their/its (fair) share of sth** *The industry has had its fair share of problems.*

2 **in a company**

ADJ. **ordinary | preference**

VERB + SHARE **acquire, buy, get, invest in, purchase | have, hold** (*formal*), **own | sell | deal in, trade in** *a new firm dealing in US shares* **| float, issue** *The company has issued four classes of shares.*

SHARE + NOUN **price, value** *Hong Kong share prices plunged.* **| valuation | certificate | portfolio | capital | option, scheme** *The Chief Executive's share option has earned him over £2 million.* **| ownership | transaction, transfer | purchase | issue, offer, sale** *A share issue has been launched to finance the restoration of the building.* **| dealing** *allegations of illegal share dealings*

PREP. **~ in** *I've got a few shares in British Aerospace.*

PHRASES **a class of shares, the value of your shares** *Will this affect the value of my shares?* > Note at PERCENT (for more verbs) > Special page at BUSINESS

share *verb*

ADV. **fully** *Personal experience of childbirth gives a dimension of knowledge that others cannot fully share.* **| equally** *We shared the money equally between the three of us.* **| out**

VERB + SHARE **want to | be prepared to, be willing to** *experienced teachers willing to share their expertise with others* **| be reluctant to | be forced to, have to | agree to | refuse to | be entitled to** *Each partner is entitled to share in the profits of the business.* **| let sb** *She wished he would let her share his pain.*

PREP. **among** *How do you share out three cakes among four people?* **| between** *Responsibility is shared between parents and teachers.* **| in** *He shared in our enthusiasm for rowing.* **| with** *She had to share a bedroom with her sister.*

PHRASES **widely shared** *These ideas are widely shared in the community.*

shareholder *noun*

ADJ. **big, large, major, substantial | small | main, principal | controlling, majority** *The government is still a majority shareholder in the industry.* **| minority | corporate, institutional | ordinary, private** *voicing the concerns of ordinary shareholders*

PREP. **~ in** *the major shareholders in the company*

shark *noun*

ADJ. **killer, man-eating**

SHARK + VERB **attack sb, maul sb**

SHARK + NOUN **attack | fishing**

PHRASES **shark-infested** *The boat went down in shark-infested waters off the coast of South Africa.*

sharp *adj.*

1 **having a fine edge or point**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | stay | keep sth**

ADV. **extremely, really, very, wickedly** *a display of wickedly sharp teeth* **| pretty, quite, rather**

PHRASES **as sharp as a razor**

2 **very great or sudden**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **particularly, very | fairly, quite, rather** *a fairly sharp rise in the cost of living*

3 **able to think/act/understand/see/hear quickly**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, razor, very** *a razor sharp mind* **| pretty, quite**

4 **angry/severe**

VERBS **be, sound** *Her voice sounded rather sharp.*

ADV. **very | a bit, quite, rather | suddenly** *'Stick to the facts,' said Romanov, his voice suddenly sharp.*

PREP. **with** *She was quite sharp with me when I talked during her lecture.*

5 **flavour**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extremely, very** *Raw cranberries are extremely sharp and must always be cooked with a little sugar.* | **slightly** *This cheese has a slightly sharp flavour.*

shatter *verb*

1 **break into very small pieces**

ADV. **completely**

PHRASES **shatter (sth) into pieces** *The mirror shattered into a thousand pieces.*

2 **destroy sth completely**

ADV. **completely** *an event that completely shattered her life* **| abruptly, brutally, rudely, suddenly** *The moment was abruptly shattered by the sound of Mia's loud voice.*

shattered *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **absolutely, completely, totally** *His run had left him feeling totally shattered.* **| pretty | emotionally** *feeling drained and emotionally shattered after her ordeal*

shave *noun*

ADJ. **close, smooth** *You can get a really close, smooth shave with this new double-bladed razor.*

VERB + SHAVE **need** *He badly needed a shave.* **| get, have** *He had a bath and a quick shave first.* **| give sb**

shawl *noun*

ADJ. **heavy | light | crocheted, knitted | embroidered, fringed**

VERB + SHAWL **be draped in, be wrapped in | drape, throw, wrap** *Ruth draped a shawl over her shoulders.* **| throw off | draw, pull** *She pulled her shawl about her protectively.* **| tie** *wearing a shawl tied around her waist*

SHAWL + VERB **cover sth** > Special page at CLOTHES

shed *nou*n

ADJ. **lean-to | storage | engine, goods, loco, locomotive, railway, train | tool | bicycle, bike | cow | milking | garden, potting**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

sheep *noun*

ADJ. **hill | lost, stray** *the doleful cries of lost sheep*

QUANT. **flock, herd**

VERB + SHEEP **farm, keep, raise, rear** *My grandfather used to raise sheep in Wales.* **| tend | slaughter | shear | drive, herd, round up, shepherd** *The dogs herded the sheep into the pen.*

SHEEP + VERB **graze** *There were a lot of sheep grazing high up on the mountain.* **| bleat, (go) baa | lamb** *It's nearly the sheep's lambing time.*

SHEEP + NOUN **farm, station** *a 4,000-acre sheep station in New South Wales* **| farmer | farming, industry | dip | dog** (also **sheepdog**) **| flock | pasture | shearing**

PHRASES **a breed of sheep**

sheet *noun*

1 large piece of fabric used on a bed

ADJ. **clean, fresh** *a pile of clean sheets* | **crumpled** *She had slept in her bed?the sheets were crumpled.* | **white** | **cool** | **cotton, linen, plastic, rubber, satin, silk** | **bed, double, fitted, single** | **bottom, top**

VERB + SHEET **change, fold, put on, tuck in** *She changed the sheets on all the beds. Could you put some fresh sheets on the bed?* | **climb between, slide between, slip between/under** *I slipped under the sheets and was asleep in an instant.* | **cover sb/sth with, pull back/over/up** *The police had covered the body with a sheet. I pulled the sheet up over my nose.*

PREP. **beneath/under a/the ~** | **between the ~** *She lay between the cool sheets.*

PHRASES **sheets and blankets**

2 piece of paper

ADJ. **blank, clean** *He pulled a blank sheet of paper towards him and began to write.* | **A3, A4, etc.** | **large** | **printed, typed** *The advertisement was a single printed sheet.* | **loose, separate** | **answer, balance, data, diet, fact, information, news, record, score** *I sent for the programme's free fact sheet on the disease.*

VERB + SHEET **take, use** *Take a clean sheet of paper and start again.*

SHEET + NOUN **music**

PREP. **~ of** *a sheet of blotting paper*

PHRASES **a sheet of paper**

3 flat thin piece of any material

ADJ. **flat, large, thin** | **baking** | **dust** *The furniture was covered in dust sheets.* | **canvas, plastic, polythene** | **ice** *the Antarctic ice sheet*

SHEET + NOUN **metal, steel, vinyl** *sheet metal workers*

PREP. **~ of** *a sheet of glass/plastic/metal (figurative) Sheets of flame shot into the air.*

shelf *noun*

ADJ. **high, low | deep, shallow | bottom, middle, top** *He took a book down from the top shelf.* **| bare, empty | open | dusty | glass, metal, wooden | bathroom, kitchen, library, shop, supermarket**

VERB + SHELF **have** *The fridge had three shelves.* **| build, put up** *She soon learned how to put up her own shelves.* **| arrange sth on, display sth on, put sth (back) on, replace sth on, return sth to, stack sth on, stock** *I put the packet back on the shelf. He's got a job stocking shelves in a supermarket.* **| clear** *I've cleared a shelf in the cupboard for you.* **| get sth down from/off, pick sth from/off, remove sth from, take sth down from/off** *The supermarket immediately removed the product from its shelves.* **| fill, fit on, go on, remain on, sit on** *Souvenirs filled the shelves. Her diaries just sat on the shelf for years* (= nobody looked at them for years). **| reach (for/to)** *She reached for the shelf next to the bed.*

SHELF + VERB **be full of sth, contain sth, hold sth**

SHELF + NOUN **space | life** *The medicine has a shelf life of six months.*

PREP. **off a/the ~** *I knocked it off the shelf by accident.* **| on a/the ~** *the books on the shelves* **| ~ of** *a shelf of books on economics*

PHRASES **be filled/lined with shelves** *The walls of her study were lined with shelves.* **| a place on your shelves** *The book deserves a place on everyone's shelves.*

shell *noun*

1 on eggs/nuts/some animals

ADJ. **broken, empty, hard, outer, protective, thick** *(figurative) She had built up a protective shell of indifference around herself.* | **egg** (also **eggshell**) | **cockle, conch, cowrie, fossil, mollusc, mussel, oyster, scallop, sea** (also **seashell**), **snail** *The garden was littered with empty snail shells.* | **coconut, walnut**

VERB + SHELL **have** *creatures that have shells* | **come out of, emerge from** *(often figurative) He's really come out of his shell since he met Marie.* | **go (back) into, retreat into, withdraw into** *The snail went back into its shell.* | **remove sth from** *Remove the mussels from their shells.*

2 explosive weapon

ADJ. **heavy** | **unexploded** | **anti-aircraft, artillery, cannon, howitzer, mortar**

VERB + SHELL **load** | **fire**

SHELL + VERB **fall, land** | **blow up, burst, crash, explode** | **hit sth, strike sth** *Two shells hit the roof.* | **blow sth apart/off, blow sb/sth up**

SHELL + NOUN **fire** *They braved heavy shell fire to rescue the wounded.* | **case/casing, fragments, splinter** | **crater, hole**

3 outer walls of a building

ADJ. **concrete** | **burnt-out, empty, hollow** *The fire reduced the school to a hollow shell.*

shelter *noun*

1 protection from danger/bad weather

VERB + SHELTER **afford (sb), give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *The great elm trees gave shelter from the wind.* **| need | find, run for, seek, take | refuse sb** *The nuns won't refuse you shelter.* **| leave** *We had to leave the shelter of the trees.*

PREP. **in/under the ~ of** *standing in the shelter of the shop doorway* **| ~ from** *to seek shelter from the rain*

PHRASES **shelter for the night**

2 small building that gives protection

ADJ. **makeshift, temporary | stone, underground, wooden | air-raid, bomb, bus, emergency, fallout**

VERB + SHELTER **build, erect, make, put up** *The villagers were building temporary shelters.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *You'll be safer in the shelter.* **| ~ for** *a shelter for cattle*

sheltered *adj.*

VERBS **be, look**

ADV. **snugly, well** *The farmyard was snugly sheltered with buildings on three sides.* **| fairly, quite, relatively**

shelve *verb*

1 **put sth to one side and leave it for a while**

ADV. **quietly** *Plans to expand the company have had to be quietly shelved.*

VERB + SHELVE **be forced to, have to**

2 **slope**

ADV. **gently, steeply** *The ground shelves quite steeply here.* **| down** *The beach shelves gently down to the sea.*

PREP. **to, towards**

sherry *noun*

ADJ. **small | cream, dry, sweet | cooking**

QUANT. **bottle, glass**

VERB + SHERRY **have** *I'll have a small sherry, please.* **| drink, sip**

SHERRY + NOUN **glass**

shield *noun*

1 **used to protect the body**

ADJ. **riot**

VERB + SHIELD **be armed with, be equipped with, carry, have | act as** *Look for something that can act as a shield, like a dustbin lid.*

PREP. **behind a/the ~** *a row of police officers behind their riot shields* **| on a/the ~** *She did not recognize the coat of arms on his shield.*

2 **sb/sth used for protecting yourself**

ADJ. **protective | human | nuclear | heat** *The nose of the space capsule is protected by a heat shield.* **| breast, face, gum, hand**

VERB + SHIELD **use sb/sth as** *They used 400 hostages as human shields.* **| form**

PREP. **~ against** *The ozone layer forms a shield against harmful solar rays.*

shield *verb*

ADV. **partially, partly | carefully** *He carefully shielded the flame with his cupped hand.*

VERB + SHIELD **try to** *trying to shield the children from the full horrors of the war*

PREP. **against** *She raised her hand to shield her eyes against the sun.* **| from** *new laws to shield companies from foreign competition* **| with** *He shielded her with his body.*

shift *noun*

1 **change**

ADJ. **distinct, dramatic, fundamental, major, marked, profound, pronounced, radical, significant, substantial | discernible | slight, subtle | gradual | abrupt, sudden | decisive, irreversible, long-term | climate, cultural, demographic, ideological, policy, population**

VERB + SHIFT **be, represent** *These proposals represent a dramatic shift in policy.* **| bring about, cause, lead to, produce, result in | mark, see** *The moment marked a significant shift in attitudes to the war.* **| detect** *I detected a subtle shift towards our point of view.* **| explain** *one factor which may explain the president's policy shift*

SHIFT + VERB **occur, take place** *These climate shifts occurred over less than a decade.*

PREP. **~ between** *the many shifts between verse and prose that occur in Shakespeare* **| ~ (away) from** *the shift away from direct taxation* **| ~ in** *a shift in public opinion* **| ~ to** *a sudden shift to the right in British politics* **| ~ towards** *a shift towards part-time farming*

2 **division of the working day**

ADJ. **double, long, split** *I agreed to work double shifts for a few weeks.* **| day, early, late, night | eight-hour, ten-hour, etc. | afternoon, evening, morning, weekend**

VERB + SHIFT **be/come/go on, do, work (in) ~s** *I'm doing the early shift this week. I didn't realize that I'd have to work shifts. The clinic is staffed by ten doctors who work in shifts.* **| change (your) ~s** *It was 8.00 a.m. and the nurses were changing shifts. My husband has changed his shifts, from the afternoon shift to the night one.* **| be/go/come off**

SHIFT + NOUN **work | supervisor, manager, worker | pattern, system** *They'd altered his shift pattern twice in the past fortnight.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *a decision for the chief nurse on each shift*

shift *verb*

1 **move**

ADV. **slightly** *Julie shifted her position slightly and smiled.* | **impatiently, restlessly, uncomfortably, uneasily** *She shifted uncomfortably in her chair.* | **away**

PREP. **from** *She shifted her gaze away from the group of tourists.* | **onto** *He shifted his weight onto his left foot.* | **to** *Her eyes shifted to his face.*

PHRASES **shift from foot to foot**

2 **change**

ADV. **dramatically, markedly** *The emphasis has shifted markedly in recent years.* | **slightly** | **effectively** | **simply** *We cannot simply shift the responsibility onto someone else.* | **gradually, slowly** | **rapidly** | **suddenly** | **constantly, continually** *constantly shifting alliances*

VERB + SHIFT **attempt to, try to** *trying to shift the blame onto the government* | **tend to** | **begin to**

PREP. **(away) from** *I felt the advantage had suddenly shifted away from us.* | **onto, to** *His sympathies rapidly shifted to the side of the workers.* | **towards** *These changes will shift the balance in higher education more towards science subjects.*

shin *noun*

VERB + SHIN **kick (sb in/on)** *I kicked him hard in the shins to shut him up.* **| bang, bark, bruise, gash, graze, knock** *I barked my shin on a tree stump.*

SHIN + NOUN **bone | guard, pad**

PREP. **on the/your ~** *a nasty cut on her shin*

shine *verb*

ADV. **brightly, brilliantly** *The sun was shining brightly.* **| faintly | briefly | steadily | warmly | down, in, out** *Sunlight shone in through the window.*

VERB + SHINE **seem to** *(figurative) She seemed to shine with an inner radiance.* **| make sth** *You've really made that floor shine!*

PREP. **at** *The watchman shone his torch at us.* **| from** *(figurative) Love and pride shone from her eyes.* **| in** *The water was shining faintly in the moonlight.* **| like** *The dark wood shone like glass.* **| on/upon** *The light shone on his face.* **| with** *(figurative) His dark eyes shone with excitement.*

ship *noun*

ADJ. **wooden | enemy | cargo, container, cruise, merchant, pirate, sailing, supply**

QUANT. **fleet**

VERB + SHIP **board, come/go aboard, come/go on board | sail | steer | moor** *The ship is now permanently moored on the Thames in London.* **| build, launch | load (sth onto), unload (sth from)** *The dockers were loading the cargo onto the ship.* **| christen, name | abandon** *The captain gave the order to abandon ship.* **| go down with** *The captain went down with his ship.* **| scuttle, sink, torpedo | jump** *Some of the crew jumped ship* (= left it illegally) *at Gibraltar and disappeared.*

SHIP + VERB **carry sb/sth** *a ship carrying more than a thousand people* **| arrive, dock | anchor, be/lie at anchor** *Their ship lay at anchor at the mouth of the harbour.* **| depart, go, leave, put to sea, sail, set sail | be wrecked, collide with sth, hit sth, run aground | capsize | go down, sink**

PREP. **aboard/on/on board a/the ~** *They are now on a ship bound for New York.* **| by ~** *There was no time to send the goods by ship.* **| ~ to/(bound) for**

PHRASES **the bow/stern of a ship, the captain/crew of a ship, the deck of a ship**

shipment *noun*

1 **quantity of goods sent from one place to another**

ADJ. **arms, drug, oil, plutonium, weapons, etc.**

VERB + SHIPMENT **receive, send | escort** *An armed patrol boat will escort the shipment.* **| seize** *Customs officers have seized a large shipment of cocaine.*

PREP. **~ of** *a shipment of arms*

2 **act of transporting goods**

ADJ. **illegal | bulk | onward** *taken to Aqaba in Jordan for onward shipment to Brazil* **| waste** *trying to ban toxic waste shipments*

VERB + SHIPMENT **await** *large quantities of food awaiting shipment to the worst affected areas* **| arrange, begin, make | ban, stop | resume**

PREP. **~ from** *to arrange a shipment from India* **| ~ to** *illegal shipment of arms to the Third World*

shirt *noun*

ADJ. **clean, crisp, fresh** *He wears a crisp white shirt to the office every day.* **| baggy | unbuttoned | long-sleeved, short-sleeved | button-down, collarless, open-necked | unironed | football, polo, rugby, sports | Hawaiian**

VERB + SHIRT **button up, unbutton | pull off | tuck in** *He tucked his shirt into his trousers.* **| wash | iron**

SHIRT + NOUN **button, collar, cuff, front, pocket, sleeve, tail**

PHRASES **in (your) shirtsleeves** (= not wearing a jacket) > Special page at CLOTHES

shiver *noun*

ADJ. **little, slight, small | involuntary | sudden, unexpected | cold | delicious** *a delicious shiver of pleasure*

VERB + SHIVER **give** *She gave a little shiver and laughed.* **| feel** *He felt a shiver of excitement.* **| send** *His appearance sent a cold shiver down her spine.* **| suppress** *She tried to suppress a shiver of anticipation.*

SHIVER + VERB **go, pass, ripple, run** *A shiver of unease ran through the audience.*

PREP. **with a ~** *'I'm scared,' she admitted, with a shiver.* **| ~ of** *a shiver of fear*

PHRASES **give sb the shivers** *Just thinking about flying gives me the shivers.*

shiver *verb*

ADV. **convulsively, uncontrollably, violently | a little, slightly | involuntarily** *She shivered involuntarily as he approached her.*

VERB + SHIVER **begin to, start to | make sb** *His cruel and callous comments made me shiver.*

PREP. **at** *He shivered at the thought of it.* **| with** *I was shivering with cold.*

shock *noun*

1 **extreme surprise**

ADJ. **awful, big, complete, considerable, dreadful, great, major, nasty, real, terrible, tremendous | mild, slight | first, initial** *Once the initial shock had worn off, I got to like my new hairstyle.* **| sudden | culture** *It was a bit of a culture shock when I first came to this country.*

VERB + SHOCK **come as | feel, get, have** *She felt shock that he would be capable of such an act. I got a terrible shock when I saw him.* **| give sb | be in for** *If you think it's going to be easy you're in for a shock!* **| die of** *(informal) I nearly died of shock when your mother appeared.* **| get over, recover from**

PREP. **in ~** *She looked round in shock.* **| with a ~** *She realized with a sudden shock that she was being followed.* **| ~ at/on** *her shock on seeing him with another woman* **| ~ to** *This news came as a great shock to me.*

PHRASES **a bit/something of a shock, quite/rather a shock, a hell of a shock, in a state of shock** *I think I'm still in a state of shock.* **| a feeling/sense of shock, the shock of your life** *(informal)*, **a shock to the system** *(informal) The low wages came as something of a shock to her system.*

2 **electric shock**

ADJ. **massive | mild** *He gave himself a mild electric shock while changing a light bulb.* **| electric**

VERB + SHOCK **get, receive | give sb**

3 **extreme weakness caused by injury or shock**

ADJ. **deep | mild | delayed**

VERB + SHOCK **be in, be suffering from, suffer** *He was in deep shock after the accident.* **| go into** *He had gone into shock and was shaking violently.* **| be treated for**

shock *verb*

ADV. **deeply, really** *The news had shocked her deeply.* **| easily** *He had old-fashioned ideas and was easily shocked.*

PREP. **into** *The news shocked her into action.*

shocked *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, sound**

ADV. **badly, deeply, genuinely, greatly, profoundly, quite, really, terribly, truly, very** *The passengers were badly shocked but unharmed.* **| almost | a bit, a little, mildly, rather, slightly | visibly**

PREP. **at** *They were shocked at how the children had been treated.* **| by** *She was visibly shocked by the conditions she witnessed in the refug*

shocking *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | find sth**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, very** *a deeply shocking and painful discovery* **| quite, rather, slightly**

PREP. **to** *His attitude was shocking to her.*

shoe *noun*

ADJ. **clumpy, heavy, stout, strong, sturdy | light | comfortable, sensible | fashion | built-up, court, flat, flat-heeled, high-heeled, low-heeled, platform | buckled, lace-up | ballet, dancing, gym, outdoor, running, sports, tennis, training, walking**

QUANT. **pair** *a sturdy pair of walking shoes*

VERB + SHOE **lace up, unlace | kick off, pull off | break in** *to break in a new pair of shoes* **| mend, reheel, repair, resole** *I've had my shoes resoled.* **| clean, polish, shine | scuff**

SHOE + VERB **fit (sb) | pinch sth** *The shoes, though elegant, pinched her feet terribly.*

SHOE + NOUN **polish | size | shop | repair | leather | company, factory, maker, manufacturer | box**

PHRASES **the heel/sole/toe of a shoe** > Special page at CLOTHES

shoelace *noun*

ADJ. **undone | loose**

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + SHOELACE **do up, tie | undo, untie | retie**

SHOELACE + VERB **come undone** > Special page at CLOTHES

shoot *noun*

1 new part of a plant

ADJ. **fresh, green, new, tender, young | flowering | lateral, side | bamboo**

VERB + SHOOT **have** *This plant hasn't got any shoots yet.* **| develop, produce, put out, send out** *These shrubs will need more light to produce flowering shoots.*

SHOOT + VERB **appear, come up, develop, emerge, grow, sport** *Keep the bulbs in a cool dark place until shoots appear.*

2 occasion when you photograph sb/sth

ADJ. **fashion, film, photo, photographic, video** *a five-day photo shoot in Cyprus* **| location**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *He goes out on shoots with very little equipment.*

shoot *verb*

ADV. **straight** *She practised for days until she could shoot straight.* **| accidentally** *He accidentally shot himself in the foot.* **| fatally** *Four policemen were fatally shot in the incident.* **| summarily** *If caught, the men could be summarily shot as spies.* **| back** *If they shoot, we shoot back.*

VERB + SHOOT **want to | threaten to | be going to** *I thought for a moment that he was going to shoot.* **| try to**

PREP. **at** *soldiers shooting at a target* **| with** *She was shot with a small automatic pistol.*

PHRASES **shoot (sb) on sight** *Any intruders will be shot on sight.* **| shoot sb dead** *The police shot him dead.* **| shoot sb in the arm, leg, chest, etc., shoot to kill** *The soldiers were told to shoot to kill.*

shop *noun*

ADJ. **high-street | corner, local, village | busy | elegant, fine, exclusive, expensive, grand, high-class, posh, smart, stylish, sumptuous, upmarket | delightful, excellent, good, wonderful | well-stocked | trendy | old-fashioned, quaint, traditional | dingy, shabby | colourful | boarded up, disused, empty, vacant | butcher's, greengrocer's, etc. | gift, pet, shoe, etc. | electrical, photographic, etc. | specialist | duty-free** *She bought 400 cigarettes at the airport duty-free shop.* **| charity** *I gave all my old books to a charity shop.* **| junk | betting | mobile** *Mobile shops are invaluable to people in rural areas.* **| retail | one-stop** *This is your one-stop shop for all your holiday needs.*

QUANT. **parade, row** *The post office is at the end of the row of shops.* **| chain** *The brothers opened a chain of electrical shops in the eighties.*

VERB + SHOP **have, keep, own, run | open, set up** *She opened a flower shop in the High Street. (figurative) Some buskers had set up shop outside the station.* **| close, shut (up)** *At 5.30 she shuts up shop and goes home.*

SHOP + VERB **sell sth | offer sth** *The shop offers a large selection of leather goods at reasonable prices.* **| specialize in sth | advertise sth | display sth | open | close, shut**

SHOP + NOUN **assistant, manager, manageress, owner, staff, worker | counter, display, doorway, front, premises, shelves, sign, window | chain** *a famous shoe shop chain*

PREP. **around/round a/the ~** *I went around all the shops but I couldn't find a present for him.* **| at a/the ~** *There was was a break-in at that new shop last night.* **| in a/the ~** *She works part-time in a shop.*

shopkeeper *noun*

ADJ. **small** *an organization set up to help small shopkeepers* **| prosperous | local, village**

SHOPKEEPER + VERB **sell sth** > Note at JOB

shoplifting *noun*

SHOPLIFTING + NOUN **spree** *They stole thousands of pounds' worth of goods in a two-day shoplifting spree.* > Note at CRIME(for verbs)

shopper *noun*

ADJ. **average** *what the average shopper's trolley contains* **| compulsive | Christmas | window | personal** (= sb you pay to do your shopping)

VERB + SHOPPER **be crowded with, be packed with, be thronged with** *The street was thronged with shoppers.* **| attract, encourage, persuade, tempt** *encouraging shoppers to leave their cars at home*

SHOPPER + VERB **rush** *a busy day in London stores as shoppers rushed to beat the rise in VAT*

shopping *noun*

1 food, etc. bought in shops

VERB + SHOPPING **be laden with | carry | put away, unpack** *They unpacked the shopping and put it away.*

2 activity of shopping

ADJ. **weekend, weekly, week's** *I do my weekly shopping on a Saturday.* **| Christmas | supermarket | home, Internet** *the move towards home shopping using your computer* **| late-night | duty-free | window | one-stop** *the consumers' demand for one-stop shopping* (= buying all they need in one place)

VERB + SHOPPING **do, go (out)** *She's doing some last-minute Christmas shopping. I have to go shopping in town this afternoon.*

SHOPPING + NOUN **bag, basket, trolley | list | arcade, area, centre, complex, facilities, mall, precinct, street** *the town's main shopping street* **| expedition, spree, trip** *She won £10,000 and immediately went on a shopping spree.* **| hours** *outside normal shopping hours*

shore *noun*

1 **land along the edge of a sea/lake**

ADJ. **golden, sandy** *on the golden shores of beautiful Bali* **| rocky, wooded | barren, bleak, desert, deserted, exposed, lonely, wilder** *(figurative) a Belgian from the wilder shores of Flemish nationalism* **| lee, sheltered | distant, far, farther, opposite, other** *Meg was pointing towards the far shore.* **| north/ northern, etc.** *The path ran along the southern shore of the lake.* **| lake**

VERB + SHORE **approach, reach | leave | follow, hug** *We sailed until midnight, hugging the shore.* **| be found on, be washed up on** *A dying dolphin was found washed up on the shore.*

SHORE + NOUN **bird | road | leave**

PREP. **along the ~** *walking along the wooded shores of the lake* **| around the ~ of** *The route goes around the shore of Derwent Water.* **| by the ~** *strolling by the shore* **| close to/near the ~** *The sea appears calm near the shore.* **| from (a/the) ~** *just a few miles from shore watching from the shore* **| on (a/the) ~** *The others were now safely on shore. There are a lot of rocks on that shore.* **| on the ~s of** *The hotel is situated on the sheltered shores of the Moray Firth.* **| (down/back) to/towards the ~** *The hotel's gardens stretch down to the lake shore.*

2 (*also* **shores**) **particular country**

ADJ. **American, British, etc.** *the ship in which Columbus first sailed to American shores* **| foreign, native | our, these**

VERB + SHORE **arrive on, come to, reach, return to** *He was glad to return to his native shores.* **| leave | defend** *We will fight to the death to defend our shores.*

PREP. **beyond/outside the ~** *The decisions will be taken beyond these shores.*

short cut *noun*

VERB + SHORT CUT **take, use**

PREP. **~ across/through** *Take the short cut across the fields.* **| ~ to** *There are no short cuts to economic recovery.*

short *adj.*

1 **not measuring much from one end to the other**

VERBS **be, look, seem**

ADV. **extremely, really, very | comparatively, fairly, quite, rather, relatively** *a relatively short distance of 50 to 100 miles*

2 **not lasting a long time**

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become, get** *The working week is getting shorter and shorter.* **| make sth | keep sth** *Do you mind if we keep the meeting short?*

ADV. **extremely, very | comparatively, fairly, quite, relatively** *It was all over in a relatively short space of time.*

3 **not having enough of what is needed**

VERBS **be, look** *Our team was one player short.* **| become, get** *We're getting short of funds.*

ADV. **extremely, really, terribly, very, woefully** *If space is really short, that door can be moved. United looked woefully short of menace in attack.* **| a bit, quite, rather**

PREP. **of** *Mike was a bit short of cash just then.*

4 **rude**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **a bit, rather**

PREP. **with** *Sorry I was a bit short with you earlier.*

shortage *noun*

ADJ. **acute, desperate, dire, serious, severe** *the current acute shortage of teachers* | **growing, increasing** | **chronic** | **general** | **national, world** *the world shortage of coffee* | **current** | **wartime** | **cash, energy, food, fuel, housing, labour, manpower, skill/skills, staff, water**

VERB + SHORTAGE **cause, create, lead to, result in** | **be affected by, be hampered by, face, have, suffer (from)** *Industry is facing a serious labour shortage.* | **alleviate, deal with, ease, meet, overcome, solve, tackle** *The recent heavy rains have helped to ease the water shortage.* | **exacerbate** *The energy shortages were exacerbated by the severe winter.*

SHORTAGE + VERB **occur** | **cause sth, lead to sth** *A shortage of resources has led to a cutback.*

PREP. **because of/due to a/the ~** *Lives are being put at risk because of staff shortages.* | **~ in** *Their economy continued to suffer shortages in raw materials.* | **~ of** *a desperate shortage of food*

shortcoming *noun*

ADJ. **obvious, perceived | fundamental, serious | minor | sb's own, personal | technical**

VERB + SHORTCOMING **have, suffer from | draw attention to, expose, highlight, identify, reveal | be aware of** *They are well aware of their own shortcomings.* **| ignore, overlook** *The committee is willing to overlook your past shortcomings.* **| compensate for, eliminate, make good, make up for, overcome, remedy** *Their proposal seeks to remedy these shortcomings.*

SHORTCOMING + VERB **stem from sth** *Not all these shortcomings stem from inadequate resources.*

PREP. **despite/in spite of sb/sth's ~s** *Despite its obvious shortcomings, the plan was accepted by the government.* **| ~ in** *the shortcomings in the law*

PHRASES **shortcomings on sb's part** *They said the accident was due to shortcomings on the part of the pilots.*

shorten *verb*

ADV. **considerably, dramatically, significantly** *The course has now been shortened considerably.*

PREP. **by** *His driving ban has been shortened by a year.* **| from, to** *The waiting time has been shortened dramatically from eight weeks to just one week.*

shorthand *noun*

1 **system of writing**

VERB + SHORTHAND **learn | do, take, take/write sth down in** *Her secretary was taking shorthand. He took the speech down in shorthand.* **| transcribe**

SHORTHAND + NOUN **typist, writer** *A shorthand writer will make a transcript.* **| notes | notation**

2 **quick way of talking about sth**

ADJ. **convenient, useful**

VERB + SHORTHAND **use sth as**

PREP. **~ for** *The term 'machine' is used as a convenient shorthand for the total hardware and software system.*

shortlist *noun*

VERB + SHORTLIST **compile, draw up** *The interviewers have to draw up a shortlist of five or six people.* **| put sb on** *I think we should put her on our shortlist.* **| choose from** *They will choose from a shortlist of seven candidates.*

PREP. **on a/the ~ | ~ for** *The film is on the shortlist for Best Picture.* **| ~ of** *a shortlist of three* a *shortlist of candidates*

shorts *nou*n

ADJ. **long | knee-length | baggy | tight | cycling, football, running, tennis | Bermuda | boxer**

QUANT. **pair** > Special page at CLOTHES

shot *noun*

1 **act of firing a gun**

ADJ. **fine, good | lucky | random | fatal | warning | first, opening** *(often figurative) the opening shot in the party election campaign* **| cannon, gun, pistol, rifle** *I heard a pistol shot.*

QUANT. **series, volley** *A volley of shots rang out.*

VERB + SHOT **aim | fire, take** *I took a few more shots at the target, but missed every time.*

SHOT + VERB **ring out | hit sb/sth, strike sb/sth** *The shot hit him in the upper chest.* **| kill sb/sth | miss (sb/sth)**

PREP. **~ from** *a shot from his semi-automatic rifle* **| ~ to** *She was killed by a single shot to the head.*

2 **person who shoots a gun, etc.**

ADJ. **crack, good, excellent** *She is a crack shot with a rifle.* **| bad, poor**

3 **act of kicking/hitting a ball**

ADJ. **fine, good, great, superb | poor, wayward | long**

VERB + SHOT **crack/get in, have, take, try** *Go on?take another shot.* **| miss | mishit | block, parry, save** *The goalkeeper parried his first shot but he scored from the rebound.*

SHOT + VERB **be on target | go wide, miss** *My first shot went wide, but my second was right on target.*

PREP. **~ at/on** *Their captain tried a long shot on goal.* **| ~ from** *his right-footed shot from outside the penalty area a superb shot from Rivaldo* > Special page at SPORT

4 **photograph; picture in a film**

ADJ. **camera | aerial, close-up, long, still, tracking, wide-angle, zoom | location | opening | action, crowd | fashion, publicity | cover**

VERB + SHOT **get, take** *I got some great shots of the runners as they crossed the line.*

SHOT + VERB **show sth** *a wide-angle shot showing the Houses of Parliament*

PREP. **~ from** *a shot from a low angle* **| ~ of** *a publicity shot of the band performing*

5 **injection of a drug**

ADJ. **booster**

VERB + SHOT **give sb | get, have** *Have you had all your shots for your holiday yet?*

PREP. **~ of** *a shot of penicillin The applause acted on her like a shot of adrenalin.*

shotgun *noun*

ADJ. **12-bore, double-barrelled, pump-action, sawn-off** *The men were armed with sawn-off shotguns.* **| loaded**

VERB + SHOTGUN **fire | be armed with, carry | threaten sb with | load | aim**

SHOTGUN + NOUN **licence | cartridge, pellet | blast** *The cause of death was a shotgun blast at close range.* **| wound**

shoulder *noun*

1 **part of the body between the neck and the arm**

ADJ. **dislocated, frozen** *His frozen shoulder has stopped him playing tennis.*

SHOULDER + NOUN **injury | blade, bones, joint, muscle, socket** *The bullet hit him squarely between the shoulder blades.* **| height, level | width** *Keep the feet shoulder width apart.* **| harness, sling, strap | injury**

PREP. **over your ~** *He slung the sack over his shoulder and set off.*

PHRASES **a pat on the shoulder** *He gave me a reassuring pat on the shoulder.* **| shoulder to shoulder** *The route of the procession was lined with police officers standing shoulder to shoulder.* **| tap sb on the shoulder** *I tapped the man on the shoulder and asked him to move.*

2 **shoulders: the part between the two shoulders**

ADJ. **big, broad, great, huge, manly, massive, muscled, muscular, powerful, strong, wide | delicate, shapely, slim | narrow, thin | square | round | bony | bowed | bare | tense, tight | tired**

VERB + SHOULDER **shrug** *When I asked him why he'd done it he just shrugged his shoulders.* **| hunch** *He hunched his shoulders against the cold wind.*

SHOULDER + VERB **be bent, be bowed, be stooped** *She was crouched with her head forward and her shoulders bent.* **| droop, drop, sag, slump** *My shoulders dropped with relief.* **| lift, shrug** *Her shoulders lifted in a vague shrug.* **| heave, shake, twitch** *His enormous shoulders heaved with sobs.* **| stiffen, tighten | relax**

PREP. **on your ~s** *The child sat on her father's shoulders to watch the parade go by.*

shoulder *verb*

1 **accept the responsibility for sth**

VERB + SHOULDER **have to, must** *She had to shoulder the burden of childcare.* **| be willing/unwilling to** *He was unwilling to shoulder this responsibility alone.*

2 **push sb/sth with your shoulder**

ADV. **roughly** *We were shouldered roughly out of the way.* **| aside, out of the way**

PHRASES **shoulder your way past/through sb/sth** *She shouldered her way through the crowd.*

shout *noun*

ADJ. **great, loud | low | faint, muffled | distant | sudden | angry, indignant | triumphant | raucous, wild | warning**

VERB + SHOUT **give, let out | hear** *I heard her warning shout too late.* **| be greeted with | give sb** *(figurative) Give me a shout if you'd like to come with us.*

SHOUT + VERB **echo, go up** *A great shout of excitement went up as she crossed the finishing line.*

PREP. **with a ~** *With a shout of pain, he pulled his hand away from the hot stove.* **| ~ from** *There were shouts of laughter from the crowd.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **a shout of anger/alarm/pain, a shout of laughter, a shout of victory**
> Note at SOUND

shout *verb*

ADV. **aloud** *'I'm done for!' he shouted aloud.* | **loudly** | **hoarsely** | **hysterically, wildly** | **angrily, furiously** | **almost** *He found he was almost shouting.* | **suddenly** | **back** *If they shout at you, shout back!* | **out**

VERB + SHOUT **want to** | **try to** | **open your mouth to** *He opened his mouth to shout, but no sound came out.* | **begin to, start to** | **hear sb** *I could hear him shouting down the telephone.*

PREP. **about** *What were they shouting about?* | **above** *We had to shout above the noise of the engines.* | **after** *We shouted after him, but he couldn't hear us.* | **at** *There's no need to shout at me!* | **for** *We shouted for help.* | **to** *He shouted to the lorry driver to stop.*

PHRASES **keep (on) shouting, shout and scream** *They were surrounded by people shouting and screaming.* | **shout at the top of your voice, shout yourself hoarse** *She shouted herself hoarse, cheering on the team.* | **start/stop shouting**

shove *noun*

ADJ. **little | good, hefty, violent**

VERB + SHOVE **give sb/sth** *Harry gave him a hefty shove and he fell over.*

PREP. **with a ~** *She sent him off with a little shove.*

shove *verb*

ADV. **hard, roughly** *I shoved hard until the door opened.* **| aside, away, back** *He shoved me roughly aside.*

PREP. **down, in** *She shoved the letter in a drawer.* **| into, out of, through** *A leaflet was shoved through my letter box.*

PHRASES **push and shove** *The crowd was pushing and shoving to get a better view.* **| shove your way** *We shoved our way to the bar.*

show *noun*

1 **type of entertainment**

ADJ. **live | family, popular | radio, television/TV | floor, stage | benefit, charity | chat, talk | game, quiz | cabaret, comedy, magic, musical, talent, variety | film, light, slide | Punch and Judy, puppet | freak | peep | one-man, one-woman, solo | sb's own** *She finally got her own TV show.* **| road, touring, travelling**

VERB + SHOW **see, watch** *Did you see the Lenny Henry Show last night?* **| host**

SHOW + VERB **feature sb/sth, star sb** *a live show featuring the best of Irish talent*

SHOW + NOUN **business**

PREP. **from a/the ~** *songs from the show* **| in a/the ~** *one of the acts in the show* **| on a/the ~ (only used about television and radio shows)** *I saw her on a chat show yesterday.*

PHRASES **the star of the show** *The dog was the real star of the show.* > Note at PERFORMANCE(for more verbs)

2 **public display/exhibition**

ADJ. **big | annual, spring, summer | local | agricultural, air, art, boat, cat, dog, fashion, flower, horse, motor, trade**

VERB + SHOW **have, hold, organize, put on** *They are holding a big fashion show at the Hilton tonight.* **| attend, go to**

SHOW + VERB **feature** *The show features the work of local artists.*

SHOW + NOUN **ring**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *There were more than 500 exhibitors at the trade show.* **| on ~ (being shown for people to look at)** *The paintings are on show until April.*

3 **outward expression of an emotion/attitude**

ADJ. **great | brave | public**

VERB + SHOW **make, put on** *Although she hated him, she put on a show of politeness.* **| be all** *He shouts a lot but it's all show.*

PREP. **for ~** *She pretends to be interested in opera, but it's only for show.* **| ~ of** *He made a great show of welcoming us.*

PHRASES **a show of force/strength** *The Democrats organized a show of strength, a mass rally in Central Park.*

show *verb*

1 **make sth clear; let sb see sth**

ADV. **clearly** *The figures clearly show that her claims are false.*

VERB + SHOW **appear to, seem to | go to** *It just goes to show what you can do when you really try.* **| aim to, attempt to, seek to, try to | be able to, can/could | be unable to, fail to | be expected to, be likely to** *Third quarter figures are likely to show a further fall in figures.* **| help (to) | offer to | refuse to** *Lewis refused to show any emotion.* **| be anxious to, be eager to, be happy to, be keen to, intend to, want to, wish to** *Les was happy to show her how it should be done.* **| be designed to | let sb** *Let me show you on the map.*

PREP. **to** *She showed her new toy to her friends.*

PHRASES **a chance to show sth** *I'm giving him a chance to show what he can do.*

2 **be visible**

ADV. **hardly** *It's such a tiny mark, it hardly shows.*

VERB + SHOW **begin to | let sth** *She tried not to let her disappointment show.*

showdown *noun*

ADJ. **final** *The scene was set for the final showdown.* **| title, World Cup, etc.**

VERB + SHOWDOWN **have | avoid | face, head for | force, seek** *He was now strong enough to force a showdown with them.*

PREP. **~ against** *the showdown against Holland in April* **| ~ between** *the title showdown between Arsenal and United* **| ~ over** *The council is heading for a showdown over the new proposals.* **| ~ with** *Britain's World Cup showdown with Australia last month*

PHRASES **it comes to a showdown** (= a showdown happens) *Of course I'll support you if it comes to a showdown.*

shower *noun*

1 **for washing your body**

ADJ. **cold, cool, hot | power | brief, quick** *I'll just take a quick shower.* **| electric | en suite, private**

VERB + SHOWER **have, take**

SHOWER + NOUN **cubicle, curtain, room | head, mixer, rose, tray | gel**

2 **of rain or snow**

ADJ. **rain, sleet, snow | heavy, light | blustery, wintry | scattered | April**

SHOWER + VERB **spread | die out** *Scattered showers during the afternoon will die out by late evening.*

3 **of small objects**

ADJ. **dust, meteor, meteorite**

PREP. **~ of** *The grinding wheel sent out a shower of sparks.*

showing *noun*

1 **how sb/sth behaves or performs**

ADJ. **good, strong | disappointing, disastrous, dismal, poor** *the party's poor showing in the election*

VERB + SHOWING **make, put up** *The opposing team put up a very strong showing.* **| improve on** *The team will have to improve on today's showing if it is to survive in the competition.*

PREP. **on sb's ~** *On its present showing, the party should win the election.* **| ~ against** *the euro's strong showing against the dollar* **| ~ by/from** *It was a great showing by the Brazilian team.*

2 **showing a film, etc.**

ADJ. **private**

VERB + SHOWING **attend, go to** *The young princes attended a private showing of the new Disney film.* **| get, have, receive | give sth**

showroom *noun*

ADJ. **car, furniture | electricity, gas** *We chose a new cooker from the gas showroom.*

VERB + SHOWROOM **go to, visit | open, set up**

SHOWROOM + NOUN **door, window | condition** *He managed to find a second-hand Ferrari in showroom condition.* **| price | model** *They took 10 per cent off the price of the computer as it was a showroom model.*

shrapnel *noun*

ADJ. **flying** *He was hit in the arm by flying shrapnel.*

QUANT. **piece**

VERB + SHRAPNEL **be hit by, be shattered by, be wounded/killed by**

SHRAPNEL + VERB **fly, whistle** *The bomb exploded, sending shrapnel whistling through the trees.*

SHRAPNEL + NOUN **wound**

PREP. **~ from** *the shrapnel from the grenade*

shred *noun*

1 **small thin piece of sth**

ADJ. **fine, thin | tattered** *the tattered shreds of their flag*

PREP. **in/into ~s** *Cut the orange peel into fine shreds. (figurative) Their economy is in shreds.* **| ~ of** *leaving just a few shreds of cloth*

PHRASES **cut/rip/tear sth to shreds** *(figurative) Their case was torn to shreds by the defence lawyer.*

2 **very small amount of sth**

ADJ. **every** *With her had gone every shred of hope he had for the future.* **| last, remaining** *She was hanging on to the last remaining shreds of her reputation.*

PREP. **~ of** *There is not a shred of doubt in my mind that we will win.*

PHRASES **not a/the slightest shred of sth, not/without a shred of evidence**

shred *verb*

ADV. **finely** *Shred the lettuce leaves finely.*

shriek *noun*

ADJ. **loud | little** *She gave a little shriek of delight.* **| high-pitched, piercing**

VERB + SHRIEK **give, let out | hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *She fell to the floor with a shriek of pain.* **| ~ of** *Shrieks of laughter came from the bedroom.*

PHRASES **a shriek of delight/pain, a shriek of laughter** > Note at SOUND

shriek *verb*

ADV. **aloud | all but, almost** *He all but shrieked when he saw her.*

VERB + SHRIEK **hear sb**

PREP. **at** *Stop shrieking at me!* **| in** *She shrieked in terror.* **| with** *The audience shrieked with laughter.*

shrine *noun*

ADJ. **hallowed, holy, religious, sacred** *This shrine is sacred to the Hindu god Vishnu.* **| Christian, Islamic, etc. | forest, rural, wayside | portable**

VERB + SHRINE **build, erect, turn sth into | dedicate** *a shrine dedicated to the sea goddess* **| go on/make a pilgrimage to, visit** *On his recovery he made a pilgrimage to the shrine of St John.*

PREP. **at a/the** *worshipping at wayside shrines* **| ~ of** *the shrine of St Cuthbert at Durham* **| ~ to** *She had turned the room into a shrine to her dead son.*

shrink *verb*

1 **become smaller**

ADV. **dramatically | a little, slightly | further | fast, rapidly** *competing in a market that is shrinking fast* **| gradually, slowly | steadily**

PREP. **by** *Their profits shrank by 4% last year.* **| from, to** *Their share of the market has shrunk from 14% to 5%.*

PHRASES **shrink in size** *Households have been shrinking in size but increasing in number.*

2 **move away**

ADV. **a little** *He shrank a little at the sight of the blood.* **| away, back**

VERB + SHRINK **try to**

PREP. **against** *He shrank back against the wall.* **| in** *She shrank back in terror.* **| into** *I shrank back into the shadows.* **| from** *She shrank from his touch.*

shroud *noun*

VERB + SHROUD **wrap sb in** *A human form lay there, wrapped in a shroud.*

PREP. **in a/the ~ | ~ of** *(figurative) The nuclear project was cloaked in a shroud of secrecy.*

shrub *noun*

ADJ. **deciduous, evergreen | hardy, tender | dwarf, large, low, medium-sized, small, tall | autumn, autumn-flowering, spring, spring-flowering, etc. | flowering | scented | thorny | fast-growing | ornamental | overgrown**

VERB + SHRUB **grow | plant, put in | dig up, take out | replant | cut back, prune** *Overgrown deciduous shrubs can be cut back at this time of year.*

SHRUB + VERB **grow** *Tender shrubs don't grow well here.* **| come into flower, flower**

SHRUB + NOUN **rose**

PHRASES **be planted with shrubs** *The bed is planted with flowering shrubs.* **| a variety of shrub**

shrug *noun*

ADJ. **little, slight, small | careless, indifferent | nonchalant | dismissive | helpless, hopeless, resigned | tired, weary | apologetic | self-deprecating | expressive | mental** *With a mental shrug, he decided to tell the truth.* **| Gallic**

VERB + SHRUG **give** *The boy gave a slight shrug and walked away.*

PREP. **in a ~** *She lifted her shoulders in a little shrug* **| with a ~** *'I don't know,' she said with a shrug.* **| ~ of** *a shrug of resignation*

PHRASES **a shrug of the shoulders**

shrug *verb*

ADV. **lightly, slightly | carelessly, dismissively, indifferently, negligently, nonchalantly** *She shrugged nonchalantly and turned away.* **| impatiently, irritably | apologetically | helplessly, ruefully** *He shrugged helplessly and said nothing.* **| expressively | just, merely, only, simply** *He merely shrugged his shoulders in reply.* **PHRASAL VERBS shrug sth off**

VERB + SHRUG **be able to, can/could, try to** *The team have been able to shrug off their recent failures and perform well.* **| try to**

shudder *noun*

ADJ. **little, slight, small, tiny | deep, exaggerated, great, violent | involuntary**

VERB + SHUDDER **give** *She gave a little shudder when she touched his clammy hand.* **| feel | repress, suppress** *He repressed a shudder of disgust.* **| send** *The sight of the coffin sent a shudder through him*

SHUDDER + VERB **go/pass/run through sb/sth, rack sb/sth** *A shudder of pain racked his body.*

PREP. **with a ~** *He remembered that awful moment with a shudder.* **| ~ of** *a shudder of relief*

shudder *verb*

ADV. **convulsively, uncontrollably, violently | slightly | involuntarily** *She shuddered involuntarily as he approached her.* **| inwardly**

VERB + SHUDDER **make sb** *The sight of the dead body made them shudder.*

PREP. **at** *She shuddered at the memory of school exams.* **| through** *A deep sigh shuddered through her body.* **| with** *His whole body shuddered with fury.*

shuffle *verb*

1 **walk by sliding your feet along**

ADV. **awkwardly, slowly** *Simon shuffled awkwardly towards them.* | **along, away, forward, out, off, over** *The queue shuffled slowly forward.*

PREP. **across, down, into, out of, towards, etc.**

2 **move your body/feet around**

ADV. **nervously, uncomfortably, uneasily** *She shuffled nervously on the bench.* | **about, around** *The boys shuffled around uncomfortably.*

PHRASES **shuffle in your chair/seat**

shut *adj.*

1 **in a closed position**

VERBS **be, look | bang, blow, clang, click, clunk, slam, slide, swing** *The window blew shut. The elevator door slid shut.* **| remain, stay | be clenched, be jammed** *His jaw was clenched shut.* **| bang sth, kick sth, leave sth, pull sth, slam sth, slide sth, snap sth** *I'll leave the window shut for now. He slammed the case shut. She snapped shut a file on her desk.* **| keep sth** *The gates are always kept shut. (figurative) Afraid to ask seemingly stupid questions, I kept my mouth shut.*

ADV. **firmly, properly, tightly** *The door was firmly shut.*

2 **not open to the public**

VERBS **be, look** *The bars all look shut to me.* **| remain**

PREP. **for** *The park is now shut for the winter.*

shutter *noun*

1 **cover for a window**

ADJ. **closed, open** *He left the shutter open.* | **metal, steel, wooden** | **security, window**

VERB + SHUTTER **have** | **fling open, fold back, open, throw back/open** *He threw open the shutters to cool the room.* | **close, pull down, put up** *The village shop had put up the shutters for the night.*

SHUTTER + VERB **be/come down** *All the shutters in the street were down. (figurative) I could feel the shutters coming down in her mind.*

PREP. **behind ~** *She could be seen waiting for him behind half-closed shutters.* | **through ~** *Daylight was filtering through the shutters when he woke up.*

2 **part of a camera**

ADJ. **camera**

VERB + SHUTTER **press**

SHUTTER + VERB **click** *As the princess approached you could hear hundreds of camera shutters clicking.*

SHUTTER + NOUN **speed** *You will need a fast shutter speed for photographing sport.*

shuttle *noun*

1 **plane/bus/train**

VERB + SHUTTLE **catch, fly on, get, take**

SHUTTLE + NOUN **bus, flight, service, train** *The supermarket operates a complimentary shuttle service.* | **diplomacy** (= international talks carried out by sb who travels between two or more countries)

PREP. **on a/the ~** *We'll fly up on the shuttle.* | **~ between** *the shuttle between Adrar and Oran* | **~ from, ~ to** *I took the Eastern Airlines shuttle from Washington to New York.*

2 (*also* **space shuttle**) **spacecraft**

SHUTTLE + NOUN **craft** | **crew** | **mission**

PREP. **aboard/on board the ~**

shy *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** *Please don't be shy?I won't eat you!* **| become, get, go, grow**

ADV. **desperately, excessively, extremely, painfully, terribly, very** *As a teenager I was painfully shy.* **| all** *She went all shy and hid behind her mother.* **| almost | a bit, fairly, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | naturally** *He is a naturally shy, retiring man.* **| chronically**

PREP. **of** *I was a bit shy of them at first.* **| with** *You don't have to be shy with me, you know.*

shy *verb*

ADV. **violently**

PREP. **at** *Her horse shied violently at a gorse bush.*

shyness *noun*

ADJ. **natural | extreme, intense, paralysing**

VERB + SHYNESS **be overcome with, have, suffer from** *He was suddenly overcome with shyness.* **| forget, get over, lose, overcome** *She had to work very hard to overcome her paralysing shyness. She completely forgot her shyness in her fascination with what he was saying.* **| cure**

SHYNESS + VERB **disappear, vanish**

sibling *noun*

ADJ. **elder/older, younger** *The younger children were badly treated by older siblings.*

SIBLING + NOUN **rivalry**

PREP. **among/between ~s** *poor relationships between siblings*

sick *adj.*

1 **ill**

VERBS **be, look | become, fall** *(formal)*, **get** *(informal)* *He fell sick with yellow fever. She was afraid she would get sick if she stayed in that place any longer.*

ADV. **chronically, desperately, extremely, terribly, very** *The house has accommodation for up to 60 chronically sick or disabled residents. a very sick woman in the next bed* **| incurably, terminally | mentally**

PHRASES **be off sick** *John's not in the office today, he's off sick.*

2 **ill in your stomach**

VERBS **be, feel, look** *Mum, I feel sick!* **| get** *I get travel-sick if I sit in the back seat.* **| make sb** *If you eat all that chocolate it'll make you sick.*

ADV. **horribly, really, very, violently** *He leaned sideways and was violently sick.* **| almost | a bit, faintly, a little, quite, rather, slightly | continually | physically** *Every time I think about it I feel physically sick.*

PREP. **with** *Laura felt almost sick with embarrassment.*

PHRASES **be as sick as a dog**

3 **bored/disgusted/annoyed**

VERBS **be | become, get** *I'm getting sick of all these delays.* **| make sb** *Her attitude makes me sick.*

ADV. **heartily, really** *He was getting heartily sick of all the false sympathy.* **| absolutely, thoroughly | a bit, pretty, rather** *She was getting a bit sick of his moaning.*

PREP. **of** *I'm getting sick of you leaving things in a mess.*

PHRASES **sick and tired of sth, sick to death of sth, sick to the back teeth of**

sth

4 **cruel/in bad taste**

VERBS **be, seem, sound**

ADV. **extremely, really, very** *You're really sick, you know that?* **| pretty, rather** *It was pretty sick humour, I thought.*

PHRASES **sick in the head** *Whoever started the fire must be sick in the head.*

sick *noun* **the sick**

ADJ. **chronic, long-term**

VERB + SICK **visit | care for, look after** *workers who are caring for the sick and elderly* **| treat | cure, heal** *the Church's mission to preach the gospel and heal the sick*

PHRASES **the sick and wounded** *The sick and wounded were evacuated from the war zone.*

sickness *noun*

1 **state of being ill**

ADJ. **chronic, long, long-term**

SICKNESS + NOUN **absence | allowance, benefit | insurance | rate**

PREP. **due to/owing to/through ~** *The Personnel Department keeps a record of employees absent through sickness.*

2 **nausea**

VERB + SICKNESS **suffer (from)**

SICKNESS + VERB **rise** *The sickness rose inside him.*

PHRASES **a feeling of sickness** *Several workers complained of feelings of sickness and headaches.*

3 **particular type of illness**

ADJ. **acute, chronic | air, car, motion, travel | altitude/mountain, decompression, radiation, sleeping** > Special page at ILLNESS

side effect *noun*

ADJ. **adverse, dangerous, harmful, nasty, negative, serious, severe, toxic, undesirable, unexpected, unfortunate, unpleasant, unwanted | beneficial | long-term | physical**

VERB + SIDE EFFECT **cause, have, produce** *The treatment has some unfortunate side effects.* **| suffer**

PREP. **~ from** *The patient suffered severe side effects from the drug.* **| ~ of** *The drug has the beneficial side effect of lowering the patient's blood pressure.* **| ~ on** *The medication can have adverse side effects on the patient.*

side *noun*

1 **flat surface of sth thin**

ADJ. **flip, reverse** *The reverse side of the coin has a picture of a flower.*

2 **either of the two parts of a place/object**

ADJ. **far, opposite, other** *At the other side of the room, a group of people were clustered around the fire.* **| near | right, wrong** *A car came rushing towards them on the wrong side of the road.* **| left-hand, right-hand** *the left-hand side of the page* **| east, west, etc.**

PREP. **at one/the ~** *Some people were standing at one side of the room.* **| down one/the ~** *A path leads down one side of the garden.* **| from ~ to ~** *The cat sat with its tail twitching from side to side.* **| on/to one ~** (= not in the middle) *She put her head to one side as she talked.*

3 **right/left part of your body**

ADJ. **left-hand, left, right-hand, right** *the right-hand side of the brain*

PREP. **down your ~** *He is paralysed down his left side as a result of polio.* **| in the/your ~** *I've got an awful pain in my side.* **| on your ~** *I always sleep on my side because I'm not comfortable on my back.*

4 **aspect/quality of sb/sth**

ADJ. **positive | bad, dark, negative, ugly** *The scandal has shown us the ugly side of politics.* **| caring, creative, feminine** *She likes men who do not hide their feminine side.* **| business, commercial, financial, management, marketing, etc.** *I had nothing to do with the financial side of the firm.*

VERB + SIDE **have** *He's usually very kind and gentle, but he has his less positive side too.* **| show | hide**

PREP. **~ to** *There are several sides to most problems.*

PHRASES **look on the bright side** *Even when things go badly, try to look on the bright side.* | **on the credit/debit side** *On the credit side, we played well, although we lost the match.* | **see the funny side (of sth)** *Fortunately, Julie saw the funny side when I spilled coffee on her.*

5 **team**

ADJ. **good, strong** | **losing, winning** | **away, home** *As the home side, they were expected to play an attacking game.* | **League, Test**

VERB + SIDE **captain** | **field** *Sussex are likely to field a strong side.*

sideline *noun*

ADJ. **lucrative, nice (little), profitable, useful** *He decided to turn his hobby into a lucrative sideline.*

VERB + SIDELINE **have | develop**

PREP. **~ for** *Cider making was a sideline for many farmers.* **| ~ in** *She is developing a nice little sideline in childminding for friends.* **| ~ to** *The restaurant started out as a sideline to his main business.*

siege *noun*

1 **when an army surrounds a town**

ADJ. **long, prolonged**

VERB + SIEGE **lay** *The English forces laid siege to the city of Tournai.* **| withstand** *This fortress could withstand a siege for years if necessary.* **| lift, raise, relieve** (= arrive to help the people in a siege) *The royal forces marched south to lift the siege of Donnington Castle.*

SIEGE + VERB **last** *The siege lasted two years.*

SIEGE + NOUN **warfare | engine**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *wounded at the siege of Edinburgh Castle in 1573* **| during a/the ~, under ~** *At the very end of the war, Prague again came under siege.* **| ~ of**

2 **when the police, etc. surround a building**

ADJ. **four-day, ten-hour, etc. | armed, gun, police**

SIEGE + VERB **end** *The seven-hour armed siege at the school ended peacefully.*

PREP. **during a/the ~** *The terrorists were shot dead during the siege of the embassy.*

PHRASES **a state of siege** *The police placed the city centre under a virtual state of siege.*

siesta *noun*

ADJ. **short | afternoon**

VERB + SIESTA **have, take** *Lots of people were taking a short siesta in the shade.*

SIESTA + NOUN **time**

PREP. **for a ~** *I went upstairs for my afternoon siesta.*

sieve *noun*

ADJ. **fine**

VERB + SIEVE **pass/press/strain sth through**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Wash the rice in a sieve under cold running water.* **| through a/the ~** *Strain the cream through a fine sieve into the egg mixture.*

sift *verb*

1 **pass sth through a sieve**

ADV. **finely** *Sift the flour finely before adding it to the mixture.* **| in, together** *Beat the mixture until smooth, then sift in the remaining sugar.*

2 **examine sth very carefully**

ADV. **carefully, methodically**

PREP. **through** *They spent days carefully sifting through the evidence.*

sigh *noun*

ADJ. **big, deep, great, heavy, huge | little, small, soft | long | heartfelt | resigned, weary | exaggerated | audible** *There was an audible sigh of relief when the news came through that nobody was hurt.* **| collective**

VERB + SIGH **breathe, give, heave, let out** *I breathed a sigh of relief.* **| repress, stifle, suppress | hear**

SIGH + VERB **escape sb** *A weary sigh escaped him.*

PREP. **on a ~** *She let out her breath on a sigh.* **| with a ~** *'I suppose we'd better get back to work,' he said with a heavy sigh.* **| ~ of** *She gave a deep sigh of contentment.*

PHRASES **a sigh of relief** > Note at SOUND

sigh *verb*

ADV. **deeply, heavily** *She sighed heavily and sat down.* **| softly | audibly, gustily, loudly, noisily | inwardly | a little | contentedly, happily** *She looked at her son and sighed happily.* **| impatiently | resignedly | wearily** *He sighed wearily as he looked at the pile of work.*

PREP. **in** *He sighed in exasperation.* **| with** *We sighed with relief when the noise stopped.*

sight *noun*

1 ability to see

ADJ. **excellent, good, normal, perfect | defective, failing, poor, weak | long, short**

VERB + SIGHT **have** *She has very little sight in her left eye.* **| lose** *He's lost the sight of one eye.* **| save** *The surgeons battled to save her sight.*

SIGHT + VERB **deteriorate, fail, go** *I think my sight is beginning to go.*

SIGHT + NOUN **test | defects, problems**

PHRASES **the/your sense of sight**

2 act/moment of seeing sth

VERB + SIGHT **catch, get, have** *She suddenly caught sight of the look on her mother's face. We will soon get our first sight of the Statue of Liberty.* **| keep** *She kept sight of him in her mirror.* **| lose**

PREP. **at the ~ (of)** *Her knees went weak at the sight of him.*

PHRASES **at first sight** *He looked at first sight like an English tourist.* **| cannot stand/bear the sight of sth** (= hate seeing sb/sth) *I never could stand the sight of blood.* **| a clear sight of sth** *He didn't shoot until he had a clear sight of the goal.* **| know sb by sight** (= to recognize sb without knowing them well), **the mere/very sight of sb/sth** *The mere sight of her sitting there made his heart beat faster.* **| shoot (sb) on sight** (= to shoot sb immediately you see them) *Soldiers have been ordered to shoot looters on sight.* **| sick of the sight of sb/sth** *We've shared an office for too long and we're sick of the sight of each other.*

3 position where sth can be seen

VERB + SIGHT **come into** *Then the towers of the castle came into sight.* **| disappear from, vanish from** *She watched until the car disappeared from sight.* **| hide (sth) from, remove sth from** *I hid the papers from sight.* **| keep sth in** *Keep their car in* *sight for as long as you can.*

PREP. **in ~** *(often figurative) The end is in sight* (= will happen soon). | **out of ~** *He kept out of sight behind a pillar.* | **within ~ of** *The cricket ground was situated within sight of both village pubs.*

PHRASES **come in sight of sb/sth** *At last we came in sight of a few houses.* | **in full sight of sb** *He tried to break into a car in full sight of a policeman.* | **in plain sight** *They waited until the enemy was in plain sight.* | **your line of sight** *She was now standing just out of his line of sight.* | **not let sb/sth out of your sight** *Whatever you do, don't let them out of your sight!*

4 **sth that you see**

ADJ. **common, regular | bizarre, rare, strange, unexpected, unfamiliar, unlikely, unusual | awe-inspiring, awesome, beautiful, breathtaking, fine, impressive, inspiring, magnificent, spectacular, splendid, unforgettable, wonderful | depressing, pathetic, pitiful, sad, sorry** *He really did look a sorry sight, his hair tangled and his clothing covered in feathers.* | **ghastly, gruesome, horrifying, terrible, terrifying**

VERB + SIGHT **look**

PHRASES **not a pretty sight** *I'm not a pretty sight when I get out of bed in the morning.* | **sights and sounds** *The sights and sounds of the city distracted her from her work.*

5 **sights: places of interest**

ADJ. **famous, historic**

VERB + SIGHT **see, take in, visit** *Let's get out of the hotel and see the sights.*

6 **sights: your aim/expectation**

VERB + SIGHT **have sb/sth in/within** *Rossi has the defending champion in her sights in tomorrow's race.* | **lower, raise** *After failing to get into university, he lowered his sights and got a job in a shop.*

PHRASES **set your sights on sth/have your sights set on sth** *She has her sights set on becoming a writer.* | **set your sights high/low** *He says he wants to win the* *trophy, but I think he's setting his sights too high.*

sighting *noun*

ADJ. **confirmed, reliable | unconfirmed | reported | rare | UFO**

VERB + SIGHTING **have** *We now have three confirmed sightings of an enemy plane.* **| report | follow up, investigate** *The police are now following up a number of reported sightings of the missing woman's car.*

PREP. **~ of**

sightseeing *noun*

VERB + SIGHTSEEING **do, go** *We did some sightseeing in the morning. It's too hot to go sightseeing.*

SIGHTSEEING + NOUN **excursion, tour, trip**

sign *noun*

1 **sth that shows that sth exists/may happen**

ADJ. **clear, definite, distinct, obvious, real, sure, telltale, unmistakable | external, outward, visible** *All the outward signs of growth in the market are there.* **| tangible | early, first** *Strong likes or dislikes of various foods are another of the early signs of pregnancy.* **| increasing | encouraging, good, healthy, hopeful, positive, welcome** *He was silent. It was a good sign.* **| bad, disturbing | danger, ominous, warning** *Are appliances you buy safe? We point out the danger signs.*

VERB + SIGN **bear, have** *The murder had all the signs of a crime of passion.* **| exhibit, display, give, show** *By now the fish was showing signs of distress.* **| detect, find, see, watch out for** *We detected signs that they were less than enthusiastic about the holiday.* **| interpret (sth as), read, recognize, see sth as | look for** *Look carefully for signs of damp.* **| point out**

SIGN + VERB **appear, come** *The first signs of spring appeared.* **| indicate sth, point to sth** *All the signs pointed to it being more than just a coincidence.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *He disappeared at the first sign of trouble.* **| from ~** *The villages regarded the earthquake as a sign from God.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **sign of life** *There was no sign of life in the house* (= there seemed to be nobody there). **| a sign of the times** *It's a real sign of the times: 30 small businesses face financial ruin this month.* **| little/no/not the least/not the slightest sign (of sb/sth)** *He spoke up without the slightest sign of nervousness.*

2 **board, etc. giving information/a warning**

ADJ. **flashing, illuminated | neon | handwritten, painted | exit | inn, pub, shop, street | direction, road, traffic | 'Stop' | warning | 'For sale', 'No Smoking', 'To let'**

VERB + SIGN **erect, hang out/up, hold up, put up** *Some of the marchers were holding up signs and placards. Someone had put up a 'For Sale' sign.* **| see | read | follow** *Just follow the signs for Bridgend.*

SIGN + VERB **read sth, say sth** *The sign read 'No Fishing'.* **| indicate sth** *This sign* *indicates that cycling is allowed.* **| point** *The sign pointed down a small lane.* **| advertise sth | warn** *signs warning against trespass* **| flash** *A neon sign flashed above the door.*

PREP. **~ for/to** *Follow the road and you'll see signs for the turn-off.*

3 **movement with a particular meaning**

ADJ. **frantic | rude | thumbs-up, V**

VERB + SIGN **give (sb), make** *She gave me a thumbs-up sign.* **| communicate through** *They had to communicate through signs and grunts.*

SIGN + NOUN **language, system**

PREP. **~ for** *the sign for 'woman' in sign language*

PHRASES **make the sign of the cross** *The priest made the sign of the cross over the dead body.*

4 **mark/symbol with a particular meaning**

ADJ. **euro, pound, etc. | equals, minus, plus, etc.**

VERB + SIGN **draw, make** *The wizard drew some strange signs in the air with his wand.* **| use** *I used the Chinese sign for 'father' instead of 'uncle'.*

SIGN + VERB **mean sth** *What does this sign mean?*

PREP. **~ for** *I can't remember the sign for 'square root'.*

5 **star sign**

ADJ. **birth, star**

VERB + SIGN **be born under**

PREP. **~ of** *people born under the sign of Gemini*

PHRASES **the signs of the Zodiac**

sign *verb*

ADV. **duly** *One copy of this letter should be duly signed and returned to us.* **| formally | personally** *a first edition of the book, personally signed by the author*

VERB + SIGN **be required to, have to** *This is the contract you will be required to sign.* **| ask sb to, persuade sb to | agree to | refuse to**

PREP. **for** *The postman asked me to sign for the parcel.*

signal *noun*

1 **sign/action/sound that sends a message**

ADJ. **clear, unmistakable | agreed, pre-arranged | conflicting, confusing, contradictory, mixed | wrong** *Laughing when you should be crying sends out the wrong signals to people.* **| alarm, danger, distress, warning | hand, non-verbal, semaphore, smoke, verbal, visual**

VERB + SIGNAL **arrange** *He had arranged a signal for the band to begin.* **| give (sb), make, send (out)** *When I give the signal, run!* **| interpret (sth as), read, see sth as** *The remark was seen as a signal that their government was ready to return to the peace talks.* **| pick up, respond to** *Interviewers quickly learn to pick up non-verbal signals.* **| act as** *The insect's bright colours act as warning signals to its predators.*

SIGNAL + VERB **come from sth** *trying to read the signals coming from the patient* **| indicate sth** *the signals that can indicate danger*

PREP. **at/on a ~** *At a pre-arranged signal, everyone started cheering.* **| ~ for** *She made a signal for the car to stop.* **| ~ from/to** *Wait for the signal from the leader of your group.*

2 **set of lights for drivers**

ADJ. **railway, traffic**

VERB + SIGNAL **operate**

SIGNAL + VERB **be (on) red/green** *The traffic signals were on red.* **| fail**

SIGNAL + NOUN **box | failure**

3 **series of radio waves, chemical messages, etc.**

ADJ. **faint, weak | strong | high-frequency, low-frequency | acoustic, analogue, audio, chemical, digital, electrical, electronic, light, radar, radio, sonar, sound, television/TV, video, wireless**

VERB + SIGNAL **carry, pass** *The nerves carry these signals to the brain.* | **convert (sth into), scramble, unscramble** *The signal is scrambled into code before it is sent.* | **emit, generate, send, transmit** | **detect, pick up, receive, respond to** *This equipment can detect very low frequency signals.*

SIGNAL + VERB **travel** *A light signal can travel well over 16km before it halves in intensity.* | **fade**

PREP. **~ from** *a faint signal from the satellite* | **~ to**

signal *verb*

1 **move your arms to give a signal**

ADV. **frantically, wildly** *She signalled frantically to us.*

PREP. **for** *He raised his hand and signalled for the waiter.* **| to** *She signalled to the bus driver to stop.*

2 **show/mark sth**

ADV. **clearly** *These changes clearly signal the end of the welfare state as we know it.* **| effectively | not necessarily** *A change of mind in one instance does not necessarily signal a change in overall policy.*

signatory *noun*

ADJ. authorized *The document must be signed by an authorized signatory of the company.* **| first, original**

SIGNATORY + VERB agree sth *Signatories agreed to support the nuclear test ban.*

PREP. ~ of/to *the signatories to the treaty*

signature *noun*

ADJ. **illegible**

VERB + SIGNATURE **add, append, put, scrawl, write** *We both refused to put our signatures to the agreement.* **| witness** *Your signature must be witnessed by two people.* **| collect, gather, get, obtain** *They collected over 1,000 signatures for the petition.* **| bear, carry** *The will bears her signature.* **| forge**

significance *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, criminal, deep, enormous, great, immense, major, profound, real | full, general, wider** *The scientists are cautious about the wider significance of their findings.* **| limited, minor | particular, special | real, true** *They failed to appreciate the true significance of these discoveries.* **| functional, practical, statistical, strategic, symbolic, theoretical | constitutional, cultural, economic, moral, historical, political, religious, social**

VERB + SIGNIFICANCE **have** *The ceremony has great symbolic significance.* **| acquire, assume, gain, take on** *Suddenly his son's relationship with the girl took on a new significance.* **| attach** *Let us not attach too much significance to these meetings.* **| assess | appreciate, be aware of, grasp, understand | exaggerate | minimize, play down, underestimate**

SIGNIFICANCE + VERB **lie in sth** *The significance of this lies in the fact that he had previously denied all knowledge of the fund.* **| attach to sth** *Does any significance attach to the use of the technical terms?*

PREP. **~ for/to** *a meal that has particular significance for a Jewish family* **| of ~** *a policy of special significance to women*

PHRASES **be of little, no, etc. significance**

significant *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become | remain | consider sth (as), deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as, think sth, view sth as** *The move was regarded as significant in Japan.*

ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, particularly, very | fairly, quite | statistically** *These differences are not statistically significant.*

PREP. **for** *This development proved highly significant for the whole town.* **| to** *rituals which are deeply significant to Christians*

Sikhism *noun* > Note at RELIGION

silence *noun*

1 **quietness**

ADJ. **lengthy, long, prolonged | brief, momentary, a moment's, short** *There was a moment's silence before she replied.* **| deep, hushed | absolute, complete, dead, deadly, deathly, total, utter** *We sat in complete silence, save for the ticking of the clock. A deathly silence hung over the town.* **| shocked, stunned | awkward, embarrassed, embarrassing, strained, uncomfortable** *An awkward silence followed.* **| fraught, heavy, ominous, tense | brooding** *She fell into long, brooding silences.* **| stony, sullen | eerie | companionable** *They walked in companionable silence.* **| expectant, pregnant | sudden**

VERB + SILENCE **maintain** *She maintained a stony silence.* **| break, interrupt, punctuate, shatter** *Lewis finally broke the long silence between them. a silence punctuated only by the occasional sniff from the children* **| lapse into, relapse into, retreat into, subside into, trail into (all only used about people)** *He lapsed into a sullen silence.* **| stun sb into** *The boys were stunned into silence by this news.* **| be met with** *Her question was met with an uneasy silence.* **| observe** (= as a sign of respect for the dead, etc.) *A minute's silence for the victims will be observed.*

SILENCE + VERB **descend, fall** *A sudden silence fell over the room.* **| hang, prevail, reign** *Silence reigned.* **| ensue, follow | deepen, grow, lengthen, spread, stretch** *He thought for a moment, the silence lengthening.*

PREP. **in (the) ~** *They ate their breakfast in silence.*

2 **not saying anything about sth**

ADJ. **deafening** *The government's only response has been a deafening silence.* **| dignified | deliberate**

VERB + SILENCE **keep, maintain** *He has so far kept a dignified silence on the subject.*

PREP. **~ from** *There seems to have been a deliberate silence from the newspapers.*

PHRASES **a conspiracy/wall of silence** *There is a conspiracy of silence about what is happening* (= nobody is willing to talk about it). **| the right to silence** (= the right not to say anything when accused of a crime), **a vow of silence** *She has broken her* *vow of silence on the issue.*

silence *verb*

ADV. **completely | effectively** *Criticism has now been effectively silenced.* **| quickly | abruptly, instantly** *Her scream was abruptly silenced.*

VERB + SILENCE **try to | manage to | fail to** *Even these improvements to the service failed to silence a grumbling chorus of complaints.*

PREP. **with** *She silenced him with a glare.*

silent *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become, fall, go, grow** *The crowd fell silent as she began to speak. The room grew silent as the men entered.* **| keep, lie, remain, sit, stand, stay** *I could not keep silent any longer. The street lay silent and deserted. She sat silent throughout the meal.*

ADV. **remarkably, unusually | absolutely, completely, perfectly, quite, totally, utterly | almost, virtually** *The new bus is virtually silent.* **| largely** *an issue about which the researchers are largely silent* **| fairly, rather | suddenly | eerily, strangely** *The street was strangely silent.* **| grimly, obstinately, resolutely, stubbornly** *Len remained obstinately silent.* **| uncomfortably** *For long periods they were uncomfortably silent because they could think of nothing to say.* **| uncharacteristically**

PREP. **about** *They had kept remarkably silent about their intentions.* **| on** *The report was silent on that subject.*

silhouette *noun*

ADJ. **black, dark, stark**

VERB + SILHOUETTE **see**

PREP. **in ~** *He drew the city in silhouette.* **| ~ against** *I could see its black silhouette against the evening sky.*

silhouetted *adj.*

VERBS **be, stand** *A dark shape stood silhouetted against the bright morning sky.*

ADV. **clearly, sharply, starkly** *He woke to see their two heads clearly silhouetted against his window.*

PREP. **against**

silk *noun*

ADJ. **heavy | delicate, fine, thin | soft | pure | artificial | bright** *the bright silks of saris* **| rich** *a drawing room decorated in rich blue and purple silks* **| faded | watered | raw | Chinese, Thai, etc.**

VERB + SILK **produce** *fine silks produced in Italy* **| spin, weave | be lined with, be trimmed with**

SILK + NOUN **industry, mill**

PREP. **in ~** (= wearing clothes made of silk) *ladies in silks and satins* **| of ~** *an evening dress of pure white silk*

silly *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *Stop it now, you two?this is getting silly!*

ADV. **bloody** *(taboo)*, **damn/damned, downright, extremely, incredibly, really, remarkably, very** *a really silly question* **| a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather**

silt *noun*

ADJ. **fine** *The water contains fine silt.*

VERB + SILT **deposit** *During the annual floods the river deposits its silt on the fields.*

SILT + NOUN **deposit**

silver *noun*

1 **metal**

ADJ. **pure, solid | sterling**

VERB + SILVER **extract, mine** *Silver is extracted from silver ore.* **| set sth in** *a gemstone set in silver*

SILVER + NOUN **ore | bar, ingot, plate | mine**

2 **(***also* **the silver) objects made of silver**

ADJ. **family** *He was forced to sell the family silver to pay for the repairs to the house.*

VERB + SILVER **polish**

3 **(***also* **silver medal) in sports**

ADJ. **Olympic**

VERB + SILVER **get, take, win** *She got a silver in the long jump. He took the silver this year.*

similar *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound, taste | remain**

ADV. **extremely, remarkably, strikingly, uncannily, very** *The three portraits are remarkably similar.* **| basically, broadly, quite, rather, roughly, somewhat** *countries with broadly similar characteristics* **| superficially** *Their experiences are superficially similar.* **| qualitatively**

PREP. **in** *The two houses are similar in size.* **| to** *Snake meat tastes similar to chicken.*

similarity *noun*

ADJ. **close, considerable, great, strong** *the close similarity in our ages* | **clear, marked, obvious** | **striking, uncanny** | **significant** | **certain** | **basic, fundamental** | **apparent, superficial** | **broad, general**

QUANT. **degree**

VERB + SIMILARITY **bear, have** *The area bears a superficial similarity to south London.* | **reveal, show** | **share** *these theories share certain similarities* | **explain** *a route across the Pacific which may explain the similarity between the two cultures*

SIMILARITY + VERB **exist** | **end** *Here the similarity with Western politics ends.*

PREP. **~ between, ~ in** *the striking similarity in their behaviour* | **~ to** *the chimpanzee's similarity to humans* | **~ with** *The panel shows marked similarities with mosaics found elsewhere.*

PHRASES **a point of similarity** *There are several points of similarity between the two cases.*

simmer *verb*

ADV. **gently, slowly** *Allow the soup to simmer gently for ten minutes.* **| quietly** *(figurative) She was still quietly simmering from her row with Nathan.*

VERB + SIMMER **allow sth to**

PREP. **in** *a mixture of vegetables simmered in yogurt*

simple *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, prove, seem, sound | keep sth, make sth** *The golden rule when creating your design is: keep it simple. Is all this technology making our lives simpler?* **| find sth** *I found the work fairly simple.*

ADV. **extremely, quite, very** *Don't worry?it's all quite simple.* **| fairly, pretty, rather, relatively | deceptively** *a deceptively simple technique*

simplicity *noun*

ADJ. **extreme, great | relative | apparent** *Don't be fooled by the music's apparent simplicity.*

VERB + SIMPLICITY **have**

PREP. **for ~** *For simplicity, I shall continue to use the general word 'river'.*

PHRASES **be simplicity itself** (= to be very simple) *His solution to the problem was simplicity itself.* **| for the sake of simplicity**

simplification *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, drastic, gross**

VERB + SIMPLIFICATION **make**

PREP. **~ in** *He made a number of simplifications in the taxation system.*

simplify *verb*

ADV. **considerably, greatly** *The whole process has now been greatly simplified.* **| drastically, grossly** *He presents the theory in a grossly simplified form.* **| slightly**

VERB + SIMPLIFY **try to**

PHRASES **highly simplified** *This is a highly simplified view of the economy.*

simplistic *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **extremely, grossly, highly, overly, very** *a highly simplistic generalization* **| a bit, fairly, a little, rather, somewhat** *The graphics are somewhat simplistic.*

simulate *verb*

ADV. closely *The device simulates conditions in space quite closely.*

VERB + SIMULATE be designed to, be used to *Models are used to simulate the workings of a real-life system.* **| try to**

simulation *noun*

ADJ. **computer, electronic, laboratory, real-time, virtual reality | accident, flight**

VERB + SIMULATION **carry out, run** *To test the model under different conditions, it is necessary to run simulations on a computer.*

SIMULATION + VERB **indicate sth, show sth**

SIMULATION + NOUN **model** *using simulation models to predict earthquake patterns* **| program | techniques | exercise, experiment | game**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the basic steps in the simulation* **| through** *The pilot's skills are tested through simulation.* **| ~ of** *a virtual reality simulation of a moon landing*

sin *noun*

ADJ. **cardinal, deadly, mortal | unforgivable | venial | besetting** *The besetting sin of 18th-century urban Britain was drunkenness.* **| original** *the Christian doctrine of original sin*

VERB + SIN **commit | confess** *They had confessed their sins and done their penance.* **| forgive (sb their)**

PREP. **~ against** *Sin against others is seen as a sin against God.*

sincere *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **deeply, really, very** *the warm, deeply sincere note in her voice* **| completely, entirely, perfectly, quite, utterly, wholly | enough** *Her protests seemed sincere enough.*

PREP. **about** *his refusal to be sincere about his feelings* **| in** *Have they been sincere in their efforts to resolve the crisis?*

sincerity *noun*

ADJ. **complete, deep, great, total | genuine, passionate | apparent** *'It's wonderful,' he said with apparent sincerity.*

VERB + SINCERITY **doubt, mistake, question** *There seems no reason to doubt the sincerity of his beliefs. There was no mistaking his sincerity.* **| be convinced of** *She wasn't yet convinced of his sincerity.* **| demonstrate, prove, show**

PREP. **with ~**

sing *verb*

ADV. **loud, loudly, lustily** *The birds sang louder than ever.* **| gently, quietly, softly** *singing quietly to himself* **| beautifully, like an angel, sweetly, well | badly | cheerfully, happily** *Birds sang cheerfully in the trees.* **| a bit, a little** *She could sing a bit and agreed to take part in the show.* **| live** *Have you ever heard the band sing live?* **| together** *We played and sang together.*

VERB + SING **can** *I can't sing very well.* **| start to | hear sb/sth**

PREP. **about** *singing about love* **| to** *Shall I sing to you?*

PHRASES **start/stop singing**

singer *noun*

ADJ. **accomplished, fine, good, great, talented | chart-topping, famous, popular, well-known | amateur, professional | backing, lead** *an interview with the band's lead singer* **| blues, carol, country (and western), folk, gospel, jazz, opera, pop, rock, soul | cabaret, nightclub, pub**

SINGER + VERB **perform sth** *Singers took turns to perform songs they had written.*

singing *noun*

ADJ. **beautiful, fine, good | lusty, spirited | carol, choral, folk, hymn | communal, community, congregational, massed | solo, unaccompanied**

VERB + SINGING **lead** *The vicar led the hymn singing.* **| accompany** *Her brother accompanied her singing on the piano.*

SINGING + NOUN **career | lesson | teacher | voice** *He has a lovely singing voice.*

single *noun*

1 **ticket**

VERB + SINGLE **buy, get** *I got a single to Birmingham.*

PREP. **~ to** *A single to Stratford, please.*

2 **CD, tape, etc.**

ADJ. **best-selling, hit | debut, first | forthcoming | latest, new**

VERB + SINGLE **play** *She was in her room playing her singles.* **| release (sth as)** *The band later released this album track as a single.*

SINGLE + VERB **come out**

SINGLE + NOUN **chart** *number one in the singles chart*

PHRASES **~ by** *It was voted the best single by a solo artist.* **| ~ from** *the new single from the band 'Therapy?'*

3 **singles: in tennis**

ADJ. **junior, men's, women's**

VERB + SINGLE **play** *I prefer playing singles to doubles.* **| win** *She won the junior singles.*

SINGLE + NOUN **championship, final, match | champion, player | title**

PHRASES **in the ~** *She decided not to play in the singles.*

sinister *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | find sth**

ADV. **downright, extremely, really, very | almost | faintly, rather, slightly, somewhat, vaguely** *I found his silence rather sinister.* **| somehow**

sink *noun*

ADJ. **kitchen | blocked | earthenware, enamel, porcelain, stainless steel, stone**

VERB + SINK **fill** *She filled the sink with hot water.* **| block | clear, unblock**

SINK + NOUN **unit | plunger** *I bought a sink plunger to clear the blocked kitchen sink.*

PREP. **at the ~** *She was at the sink, washing up the dinner things.* **| down the ~** *Don't pour tea leaves down the kitchen sink?it'll get blocked.* **| in the ~** *Put the dishes in the sink.*

sink *verb*

1 **in water/mud, etc.**

ADV. **slowly | fast** *Fergus was in waist-deep and sinking fast.* **| deep | down** *She sank down into the soft soil.*

VERB + SINK **begin to, start to**

PREP. **below/beneath** *We watched the boat sink beneath the waves.* **| into** *Our feet sank deep into the soft sand as we walked.* **| (up) to** *He sank up to his knees in the mud.*

PHRASES **sink like a stone** *The box sank like a stone.* **| sink without trace** *It seemed as though the ship had sunk without trace.*

2 **fall/sit down**

ADV. **gratefully, happily** *I sank gratefully into the warm, dry bed.* **| gracefully | low | back, down**

PREP. **into** *He sank lower into his chair.* **| onto** *She sank gracefully down onto a cushion at his feet.*

PHRASES **sink to the floor/ground** *She sank to the ground, exhausted.* **| sink to your knees** *The old man had sunk to his knees.*

sip *noun*

ADJ. **careful, cautious, little, nervous, small | long | noisy**

VERB + SIP **have, take** *I took a little sip of my drink.*

PREP. **in ~s** *He drank the whisky in sips.*

sip *verb*

ADV. **slowly | thoughtfully | idly** *She sat in the warm sun, idly sipping champagne.* **| appreciatively, gratefully** *He sipped the warm milk appreciatively.*

VERB + SIP **pause to** *She paused to sip her tea.*

PREP. **at** *He sipped at his beer thoughtfully.* **| from** *She sipped from her glass of water.*

siren *noun*

ADJ. **approaching** *The cars had stopped at the sound of the approaching siren.* **| air-raid, ambulance, factory, police, warning**

VERB + SIREN **put on, sound, switch on** *The ships all sounded their sirens.* **| hear**

SIREN + VERB **go (off), sound, start | blare, howl, scream, wail** *The ambulance sped off with its siren wailing.* **| die away** *The police siren died away into the hot night.*

sister *noun*

ADJ. **big, elder, older | baby, kid, little, small, wee, younger | twin | full** (= sharing both parents) **| half-**(= sharing one parent), **step-**(also **stepsister**) (= the daughter from an earlier marriage of your stepfather or stepmother) **| beloved, much-loved | dead, deceased, late | unmarried**

PHRASES **brother and sister** *Have you got any brothers and sisters?* **| like sisters** *The girls are so close, they're like sisters.*

sit *verb*

1 **on a chair, etc.**

ADV. **still** *Just sit still!* | **quietly** *He would sit quietly and watch what was happening.* | **comfortably** | **in silence** *We sat in silence for a few moments.* | **cross-legged, with your legs crossed** *The children sat cross-legged on the floor. She was sitting in her favourite chair with her legs crossed.* | **(bolt) upright** *He sat bolt upright, hands folded in front of him.* | **demurely, primly** *She sat demurely on the edge of her chair.* | **back, down** | **side by side, together**

VERB + SIT **let sb** *Surely someone would stand up and let her sit down?* | **gesture for/to sb to, motion (for/to) sb to** *He motioned the young officer to sit down.*

PREP. **astride** *sitting astride a horse* | **at** *He was sitting at his desk.* | **beside** *She went and sat beside him.* | **in** *He sat back in his chair and started to read.* | **on** *Can I sit on this chair?* | **opposite** *They sat opposite each other.*

2 **seem right/not seem right**

ADV. **comfortably, easily, well** | **uneasily**

PREP. **with** *His views did not sit comfortably with the management line.*

site *noun*

1 **piece of land where a building was/is/will be**

ADJ. **good, prime | designated, possible, potential, proposed, suitable | building, construction, development | demolition | manufacturing, industrial | factory, hospital, school, etc. | greenfield, protected | 5-acre, 20-acre, etc.**

VERB + SITE **choose, find, identify, locate, look for | acquire, buy, purchase** *The local council has recently acquired the site.* **| clear, prepare** *The site is being cleared for development.* **| build (sth) on, develop | occupy** *The site is presently occupied by offices.* **| stand near/on** *The school stands on the site of an ancient settlement.*

SITE + VERB **belong to sb**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *The factory will be built at a site to the north of the city.* **| in a/the ~** *The hotel is in a prime site overlooking the sea.* **| on (a/the) ~** *Hard hats must be worn on site. He was injured on a building site.*

2 **place where sth happened or that is used for sth**

ADJ. **ancient, archaeological, historic/historical | important | sacred | accident, bomb, crash | dump, landfill, (waste) disposal | burial** *Many of these ancient burial sites were destroyed in the last century.* **| landing, launch | camp** (also **campsite**), **camping, caravan, picnic | breeding, nest/nesting**

VERB + SITE **visit** *The president is to visit the crash site later today.* **| disturb, remove sth from, steal sth from** *penalties for disturbing archaeological sites*

3 **on the Internet**

ADJ. **Internet, web** (also **website**), **WWW | free** *a free site devoted to tropical fish* **| official** *the official website of the New York Yankees* **| chat, home | browse/browsing, search, surf/surfing | destination**

VERB + SITE **access, browse, search for, visit | build, create, design, set up |**

host, own

PREP. **at ~** *At this site you'll find all the latest news and gossip.* **| in ~** *Check out the links in our home site.* **| ~ about** *sites about Japan* **| ~ for** *the most popular sites for children* **| ~ on** *I'm searching for sites on aromatherapy.* > Special page at COMPUTER

site *verb*

ADV. **carefully, strategically** *The fence is strategically sited to prevent anyone getting onto the beach.* **| conveniently | discreetly | attractively, beautifully** *The hotel is beautifully sited by a lake in a steep valley.* **| badly**

situated *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **beautifully, delightfully, ideally, picturesquely, pleasantly, superbly, well** *The hotel is delightfully situated close to the waterfront. Zakro was well situated for trade with Greece.* **| conveniently | inconveniently | centrally | remotely | quietly**

PREP. **for** *ideally situated for touring the country*

situation *noun*

1 **the things that are happening**

ADJ. **general, overall, total, whole | current, immediate, present | international, local, national, world | actual, concrete, real/real-life | hypothetical, unlikely | favourable, happy, healthy, ideal, privileged | satisfactory, stable | chaotic, explosive, fluid, unstable, volatile | awkward, delicate, difficult, embarrassing, sticky, stressful, tense, tricky, uncomfortable, unpleasant, vulnerable** *I always seem to get into sticky situations on holiday.* | **dangerous, hazardous, perilous, risky | crisis, emergency | alarming, bad, critical, deplorable, desperate, disgraceful, grave, intolerable, serious, terrible, tragic, unhappy | catch-22, hopeless, no-win | absurd, bizarre, extraordinary, ludicrous, novel, odd, paradoxical, ridiculous, strange, unique, unusual | complex, complicated | simple | one-to-one | social** *Do you feel awkward in social situations?* | **strategic | work | domestic | economic, financial, legal, military, political** *the international political situation*

VERB + SITUATION **bring about, create, lead to, result in | be faced with, be placed in, encounter, face, find yourself in, get into** *I found myself in rather an awkward situation.* | **avoid | grasp, take in, understand** *She found it difficult to take in the situation.* | **analyse, appraise, assess, consider, discuss, examine, judge, look at, review, size up, take stock of, think about, weigh up | clarify, describe, explain, outline, sum up | accept, face up to | address, be in control of, cope with, deal with, handle, respond to, take control of** *learning strategies to cope with difficult situations* | **ameliorate, defuse, ease, help, improve, rectify, remedy** *The peacekeepers are trained to defuse potentially explosive situations.* | **exploit, take advantage of** *He saw she was confused and he took full advantage of the situation.* | **lose control of | affect, change, influence, transform | aggravate, complicate, exacerbate** *Interfering now would only exacerbate the situation.*

SITUATION + VERB **arise, develop** *We will deal with that if the situation arises.* | **improve | change | deteriorate, worsen** *The situation is deteriorating rapidly.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *What would you do in this situation?*

PHRASES **the gravity/seriousness of the situation** *Given the gravity of the* *situation, I'm not surprised she's panicking.* **| a way out of the situation** *I was in trouble and I could see no way out of the situation.*

2 position of sth

ADJ. beautiful, idyllic, pleasant

PREP. in a ~ *located in a beautiful situation*

size *noun*

1 **how big or small sth is**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous,** fair, good, great, impressive, **large, massive, substantial, vast** *The kitchen is (of) a fair size. The vast size of the country made it difficult to govern.* | **diminutive, limited, modest, small** *Despite its diminutive size, the car is quite comfortable.* | **average, medium, middle, moderate, reasonable, sufficient** | **overall, total** | **sheer, very** *The sheer size of these dinosaurs was their main defence.* | **appropriate, convenient,** correct, desirable, handy, **manageable, optimum, right** *The ladder is a handy size for using in the house. classes of manageable size* | **wrong** | **comparable, equivalent, similar** | **standard, uniform** *The standard size for the tiles is 300mm square.* | non-standard | maximum, **minimum** *The fish grow to a maximum size of 50cm.* | **actual, full, life** *The ring is shown actual size in the illustration. a life-size model of a Roman soldier* | **class, family, group, household, market, population, sample**

VERB + SIZE **increase** | **decrease, limit, reduce** *The company is reducing the size of its workforce.* | **double in, grow in, increase in** *Houses increase in size further away from the city centre.* | **be reduced in, decline in, decrease in, diminish in** | **differ in, range in, vary in** *These insects range in size from 2 to 5cm.* | **grow to, reach** | **estimate, guess (at)** *I had to guess at the size of the batteries.* | **overestimate, underestimate**

SIZE + VERB **increase** | **decline, decrease, fall** | **range from, vary** *The size of her audience varied.*

PREP. **from the ~ of** *From the size of the queues outside the cinema, it was a very good film.* | **in ~** *How do the samples compare in size?* | **in the ~ of** *the increase in the size of the population*

PHRASES **half, two, three, etc. times the size of sth** *Their house is twice the size of ours.* | **shapes and sizes** *There are people of all shapes and size in the judo class.*

2 **one of a number of fixed measurements**

ADJ. **large, medium, small** *The company is now going to make these products in larger sizes.* | **2-litre, 4-pound, etc.** *The 5-litre size comes in a metal tin.* | **imperial, metric** *New radiators come in metric sizes.* | **children's, men's,**

women's | chest, collar, foot ***'Extra large' fits chest sizes 44 to 50.*** **| bra, shoe**

QUANT. **range, variety**

VERB + SIZE **be, take** ***What size are you*** **(= for shoes or clothes)***? What size do you take?* **| find sth in, get sth in** *I couldn't find the blouse in my size.* **| be available in, come in** *The bricks come in four sizes.*

SIZE + VERB **fit sb** *I have to wear children's shoes because the women's sizes don't fit me.*

PREP. **in a/your ~** *Have you got this dress in a Size 12?*

PHRASES **be a size too big, small, etc.** *The jacket is several sizes too large for him.* **| Size 2, 10, etc.**

skating *noun*

ADJ. **ice, roller | figure, speed**

VERB + SKATING **go** *We used to go skating on the lake in cold winters.*

SKATING + NOUN **championships, event | rink | routine | world** *some of the skating world's leading choreographers* > Special page at SPORT

skeleton *noun*

ADJ. **dinosaur, fish, human, mammal/mammalian, etc. | external, internal**

VERB + SKELETON **form**

sketch *noun*

1 **quick drawing**

ADJ. **lightning, quick | rough | preliminary, preparatory | charcoal, ink, pencil, watercolour**

VERB + SKETCH **do, draw, make**

SKETCH + NOUN **book, pad | map | plan**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The family house appears in several of her sketches.* **| ~ by** *a series of sketches by John Constable* **| ~ for** *to make a sketch for an oil painting* **| ~ of** *He did some rough sketches of the costumes.* > Note at ART

2 **short description**

ADJ. **brief, thumbnail** *The talk began with a thumbnail sketch of the political situation at that time.* **| biographical, character**

VERB + SKETCH **give sb**

PREP. **~ of** *He gave us character sketches of all his eccentric relations.*

3 **short comic scene**

ADJ. **short | comic, satirical**

VERB + SKETCH **do, perform | write**

PREP. **~ about** *a comic sketch about a talking cat*

ski *noun*

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + SKI **put on | remove, take off**

SKI + NOUN **pole | boot, jacket, mask, pants, suit | instructor, lesson | area, run, slope | lift | jump | resort**

PREP. **on ~s** *The children go to school on skis.*

skid *noun*

VERB + SKID **get into, go into** *The lorry went into a skid and crashed into the barrier.*

SKID + NOUN **mark** *The police examined the skid marks to see how fast the car had been travelling.*

skiing *noun*

ADJ. **alpine, downhill | cross-country, langlauf, Nordic | dry-slope | off-piste | freestyle | good, quality**

VERB + SKIING **go | have** *The United States has plenty of good skiing.*

SKIING + NOUN **holiday, trip | resort | season | equipment | facilities | slope | conditions** > Special page at SPORT

skilful *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | fairly, reasonably**

PREP. **at** *I became skilful at drawing.* **| in** *highly skilful in his tactics*

skill *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, consummate, extraordinary, great, remarkable** *He is a negotiator of considerable skill. With consummate skill, she steered the conversation away from any embarrassing subjects.* | **good, poor** *She has good organizational skills.* | **basic, necessary** *the basic skills of reading, writing and arithmetic* | **essential, important, marketable, practical, transferable, useful** *training in problem-solving and other transferable skills* | **new, old** *to learn some new skills* | **special, specialist** *No special skills or knowledge are required for the job.* | **professional** | **analytical** | **entrepreneurial, management, managerial, organizational** | **diplomatic, negotiating** | **linguistic, reading, writing** | **business, communication, computer, interpersonal, language, research, social, study, survival** *It is important to develop good study skills.* | **manual** | **artistic, culinary, medical, military, musical, political, scientific, tactical, technical**

QUANT. **range, set** *She had to develop a whole new set of skills when she changed job.* | **degree, level** *an operation that called for a high degree of skill*

VERB + SKILL **have, possess** | **lack** | **need, require, take** *a feat requiring skill and patience* | **acquire, develop, learn, pick up** | **demonstrate, display, exercise, practise, show (off)** | **apply, harness, use, utilize** *The manager must harness the skills of the workers to firm objectives.* | **broaden, hone, improve, increase, master, sharpen, upgrade** *helping children to master the skills necessary to live in our society She attends regular training weekends to sharpen her skills.* | **refresh, update** | **pool, share** | **assess, test** *a course that will test the skills of any golfer*

SKILL + NOUN **level** | **acquisition, development, training** | **shortage** *The country is facing a skills shortage.*

PREP. **with ~** *She performed the task with great skill.* | **~ as** *her skills as a doctor* | **~ at** *his skill at painting* | **~ in** *their skill in selecting the best designs* | **~ of** *the basic skills of managing an office* | **~ with** *his skill with a sword*

PHRASES **a lack of skill, a mastery of skills** *a mastery of basic language skills*

skilled *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **especially, extremely, highly, particularly, remarkably, very** *a highly skilled workforce Interviewing is a very skilled job.* **| fully** *fully skilled craftsmen* **| increasingly | quite | enough, sufficiently**

PREP. **at** *skilled at needlework* **| in** *skilled in the basic techniques* **| with** *She wasn't very skilled with the camera yet.*

skim *verb*

ADV. **barely** *(figurative) This report has barely skimmed the surface of the subject.* **|** **low** *A bird skimmed low over the heather.*

PREP. **across/over** *We skimmed across the water in a small sailing boat.*

skin *noun*

1 **covering of a human/animal body**

ADJ. **beautiful, clear, fine, flawless, good, healthy, lovely, perfect | smooth, soft | translucent | supple, young, youthful | wrinkled | coarse, hard, leathery, rough, tough | delicate, sensitive | greasy, oily | moist | dry, flaky | congested | black, brown, dark, fair, golden, milky, olive, olive-tinged/-tinted, pale, swarthy, white | bronzed, tanned | sunburnt | weathered | pallid, sallow | freckled | raw, tender** *There was a patch of raw skin on my back where the sun had burnt it.* **| blotchy | puffy** *I examined the puffy skin under my eyes.* **| blistered | hairy | hairless | chilled, cold, cool | facial | bare, naked** *The sheets felt nice next to his bare skin.* **| loose** *I picked up the kitten by the loose skin on its neck.* **| armoured, scaly** *the armoured skin of the rhinoceros* **| dead** *A lot of dust is made up of particles of dead skin.*

VERB + SKIN **break, burn, damage, irritate | protect | nourish, soothe | shed** *This snake sheds its skin eight times a year.*

SKIN + VERB **glisten, glow** *Her skin was glistening with sweat after her run.* **| age** *They claim that this cream makes the skin age more slowly.* **| hang, sag | blister,** *to the doctor.*

PHRASES **skin and bone** *The dog lost more and more weight, and was soon little more than skin and bone.*

2 **skin of an animal that has been removed**

ADJ. **animal | crocodile, goat, leopard, sheep** (also **sheepskin**), **etc.**

VERB + SKIN **cure, tan**

3 **covering of some fruits/ vegetables**

ADJ. **banana, onion, potato, etc.**

VERB + SKIN **peel off, remove burn, peel | crawl, prickle, tingle** *Just thinking about spiders makes my skin crawl.*

SKIN + NOUN **allergy, burns, cancer, complaint, condition, damage, disease, disorder, infection, irritation, lesion, problems, rash | graft | clinic | specialist | care, cleanser, cream, moisturizer, tonic | colour, tone | texture | type | cells, tissue | contact** *Avoid skin contact with the glue.*

PREP. **against the/your ~** *The sheets felt rough against her sunburnt skin.* **| beneath the/your ~** *Beneath his skin, the muscles were tight with tension.* **| in the/your ~** *The drugs reduce the inflammation in the skin.* **| on the/your ~** *blisters on the skin* **| through the/your ~** *A network of veins showed through his skin.* **| under the/your ~** *He discovered a lump under his skin so he went*

skinny *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become**

ADV. **really, terribly, very | a bit, fairly, rather** *At school I was fairly skinny and undersized.*

skip *verb*

ADV. **lightly, nimbly | happily | along**

PREP. **down, up** *He skipped lightly up the stairs.*

skirmish *noun*

ADJ. **little, minor | border**

SKIRMISH + VERB **break out, take place** *Minor skirmishes broke out all along the border.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He was killed in a border skirmish.* **| ~ between** *skirmishes between the police and guerillas* **| ~ over** *a skirmish over boundaries* **| ~ with** *They were involved in a skirmish with rival fans.*

skirt *noun*

ADJ. **ankle-length, long | short | knee-length | tight | circular, flared, full, gathered, voluminous** *She tucked up her voluminous skirts to make room for Jane beside her.* **| pencil, straight | pleated, wrap-around**

VERB + SKIRT **hitch up, lift, pull up | pull down | tuck up | smooth (down)** *She sat down, smoothing the skirt of her dress.* **| straighten | ruck up**

SKIRT + VERB **billow, swirl** *Her full skirt billowed around her as she danced.* **| ride up** *Her skirt rode up her thighs when she sat down.*

SKIRT + NOUN **length** > Special page at CLOTHES

skull *noun*

ADJ. **thick | thin | fractured**

VERB + SKULL **crack, fracture**

SKULL + NOUN **fracture**

PHRASES **the back/base/front/side/top of the skull, close to the skull** *The soldiers' hair was cropped close to the skull.* **| a fracture of/to the skull**

sky *noun*

ADJ. **big, huge | open** *We slept under the open sky.* **| empty | bright, clear, cloudless, sunny** *a week of cloudless skies* **| cloudy, dull, overcast, sullen | starry | azure, black, blue, dark/darkening, grey, pale, leaden | night, morning, etc. | autumn, January, etc. | northern, southern, etc.**

QUANT. **patch** *a patch of blue sky*

VERB + SKY **light up** *The fireworks lit up the sky.* **| patrol**

SKY + VERB **clear (up), lighten** *The rain stopped and the skies cleared.* **| cloud over, darken, turn grey, etc. | be streaked with sth** *The sky was streaked with gold.*

PREP. **across the ~** *Black clouds spread across the sky.* **| against the ~** *The eagle was black against the early morning sky.* **| beneath/under a ~** *a ship tossing under a darkening sky* **| from/out of the ~** *A strange object dropped out of the sky.* **| in the ~** *There was a kite high up in the sky.* **| ~ above** *A helicopter appeared in the sky above them.* **| ~ over** *patrolling the skies over the Channel*

PHRASES **high/low in the sky** *when the sun is low in the sky* **| the sky above/overhead** *Swallows darted about in the sky overhead.* **| take to the skies** (= to go into the sky) *Some vintage aircraft will be taking to the skies at this weekend's fair.*

skyline *noun*

ADJ. **dramatic | city | Hong Kong, London, etc. | northern, southern, etc.**

VERB + SKYLINE **form | dominate** *The skyline is dominated by a nuclear power station.* **| be silhouetted against/on, stand (out) against/on** *A medieval castle stands against the skyline.* **| break** *The skyline is broken by a water tower.*

PREP. **above/over ~** *Clouds of smoke floated over the skyline.* **| against the ~** *the moving figures he could see against the skyline* **| along the ~** *lights twinkling along the Beirut skyline* **| below the ~** *The sun slipped below the skyline.* **| on the ~** *There are several gothic spires on the city skyline.*

skyscraper *noun*

ADJ. **towering**

SKYSCRAPER + VERB **loom, rise** *On all sides, skyscrapers rose like jagged teeth.*

SKYSCRAPER + NOUN **block**

slab *noun*

ADJ. **great, huge, large** *They were unloading great slabs of rock.* **| thick | paving | mortuary**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *corpses laid out on cold mortuary slabs* **| ~ of** *a slab of butter/chocolate/concrete/meat*

slack *adj.*

1 **loose**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, go** *Let the reins go slack.* **| leave sth** *Leave the thread slightly slack to allow for movement.*

ADV. **very | completely** *Some of the ropes were completely slack.* **| a bit, fairly, slightly**

2 **not busy**

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain** *The antiques business remained slack.*

ADV. **extremely, very | a bit, fairly, pretty, rather** *This season has been pretty slack for local hotels so far.*

3 **lazy**

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **very | a bit, rather**

PREP. **in** *She knew she had been very slack in her church attendance recently.*

slacken *verb*

ADV. **a little, slightly** *His grip slackened a little and she pulled away.* **| off** *Slacken off the ropes. Growth in the economy was beginning to slacken off.*

slam *verb*

ADV. **hard** *She ran out of the room and slammed the door as hard as she could.* **| back, down** *He said goodbye and slammed the phone down.*

VERB + SLAM **hear sth**

PREP. **against** *Kath's heart slammed against her ribs.* **| behind** *I heard the door slam behind him.* **| into** *The car skidded and slammed into a tree.*

PHRASES **slam (sth) shut** *He slammed the lid shut.*

slander *noun*

ADJ. **gross, malicious, vicious, vile**

VERB + SLANDER **be guilty of | sue sb for**

PREP. **~ against** *He was found guilty of slander against his employers.* **| ~ on** *Many teachers saw the statement as a gross slander on their profession.*

slang *noun*

ADJ. **colloquial | current | army | rhyming**

VERB + SLANG **talk in, use**

SLANG + NOUN **expression, term, word**

PREP. **in ~** *in army slang* **| ~ for** *'Ruby Murray' is rhyming slang for 'curry'.*

slant *noun*

1 leaning position

VERB + SLANT **have | take on** *Her chin took on a stubborn slant.*

PREP. **at a ~** *They held their spears at a slant.* **| on the ~** *Cut the flower stems on the slant.*

2 way of thinking about sth

ADJ. **different, new | feminist, left-wing, etc.**

VERB + SLANT **give sth, put** *He puts his own particular slant on everything.*

PREP. **with a … ~** *an article with a right-wing slant* **| ~ on** *That's a different slant on the causes of the First World War.* **| ~ to** *The story gives a new slant to his character.*

slap *noun*

ADJ. **gentle, little | hard, sharp, stinging | resounding | hearty** *He gave his brother a hearty slap on the back to congratulate him.*

VERB + SLAP **deliver, give sb** *His mum delivered a hard slap and sent him to bed.* **| get, receive**

PREP. **with a ~** *He hit the water with a resounding slap.*

PHRASES **a slap in the face** *(figurative) The closure of the school is a slap in the face to the local community.*

slap *verb*

ADV. **hard | gently, lightly | away** *She slapped his hand away.*

VERB + SLAP **want to** *I wanted to slap his face.*

PREP. **across** *The officer slapped him hard across the face.* **| on** *She slapped the boy on the leg.*

slash *verb*

ADV. **wildly**

PREP. **at, through** *He slashed through the rope.* **| with** *He slashed wildly at me with a knife.*

slaughter *noun*

ADJ. **indiscriminate, mass, wholesale** *the indiscriminate slaughter of civilians* **| senseless, terrible | ritual**

VERB + SLAUGHTER **prevent, stop** *We were helpless to stop the slaughter.*

SLAUGHTER + NOUN **house** (also **slaughterhouse)**

PREP. **for ~** *transporting live horses for slaughter*

slaughter *verb*

1 kill an animal

ADV. **humanely** *The animals are all humanely slaughtered.* **| ritually | illegally** *elephants illegally slaughtered by poachers*

PREP. **for** *Thousands of birds were slaughtered for their feathers.*

2 kill a large number of people

ADV. **brutally, cruelly** *Hundreds of innocent civilians were cruelly slaughtered.*

slave *noun*

ADJ. **fugitive, runaway**

VERB + SLAVE **have, own | buy, take sb as | sell (sb as) | use (sb as) | free, liberate** *landowners who freed their slaves voluntarily*

SLAVE + NOUN **labour** *a railway built by slave labour* **| driver, master, owner, trader | market, trade, traffic** *the abolition of the slave trade* **| ship**

PREP. **~ of** *a slave of habit* **| ~ to** *a slave to fashion*

PHRASES **the emancipation of slaves, the trade in slaves**

slavery *noun*

ADJ. **domestic** *Their stated aim was to free women from domestic slavery.*

VERB + SLAVERY **establish, introduce** *Chios is said to have introduced slavery into Greece.* **| abolish | sell sb into | free sb from | be born into**

PREP. **in ~** *They were living in slavery and poverty.* **| under ~** *conditions for children under slavery*

PHRASES **the abolition of slavery**

sledge *noun*

ADJ. **dog, horse-drawn, motor**

VERB + SLEDGE **pull | drive**

PREP. **in/into/on/onto a/the ~**

sleep *noun*

1 **condition of rest**

ADJ. **deep | light | REM**

VERB + SLEEP **drift into/off to, drop off to, get to, go (back) to | cry/sob yourself to | get, sleep, snatch** *Close your eyes and get some sleep now. Tom was in the front room sleeping the sleep of the dead. I snatched a few hours' sleep in the afternoon.* **| need | survive on** *They seem to survive on only a few hours' sleep a night.* **| induce, lull/send sb to** *using drugs to induce sleep The quiet music soon sent her to sleep.* **| drift in and out of** *He drifted in and out of sleep all night.* **| lose** *Don't lose sleep over it?we'll sort everything out in the morning.* **| disrupt | catch up on** *I used Saturday to catch up on my sleep.* **| feign** *I feigned sleep when the ticket inspector came round.*

SLEEP + VERB **come** *Sleep came to her in snatches.* **| overcome sb, overtake sb** *Sleep finally overtook me.*

SLEEP + NOUN **pattern | deprivation, loss | apnoea**

PREP. **during ~** *your heart rate during sleep* **| in your ~** *He often walks and talks in his sleep.*

PHRASES **a lack of sleep** *suffering from a lack of sleep* **| a wink of sleep** *I won't get a wink of sleep with that noise downstairs.*

2 **period of sleep**

ADJ. **long | little, short | dead, deep, heavy, sound | good, restful | light | disturbed, exhausted, fitful, restless, uneasy** *I woke up early after a disturbed sleep.* **| dreamless, peaceful | drunken | beauty** *Sorry but I need my beauty sleep.*

VERB + SLEEP **need | have** *Did you have a good sleep?* **| be in** *I was in a deep sleep when the phone rang.* **| drift into, fall into, sink into** *I immediately fell into a dead sleep.* **| awake/awaken/wake (sb) from** *He woke from a fitful sleep with a headache.*

PHRASES **a (good/poor) night's sleep** *You'll feel better after a good night's sleep.*

sleep *verb*

ADV. **properly, soundly, well** *I haven't slept properly for weeks. The children were all sleeping soundly. Did you sleep well last night?* **| peacefully, quietly | easier, easily, quiet** *When the murderer is caught we can all sleep easier in our beds at night.* **| badly, fitfully, uneasily | deeply, heavily** *He was exhausted and slept deeply.* **| lightly** *She always slept very lightly so I had to be careful not to wake her.* **| barely, hardly, scarcely** *She felt as if she had hardly slept.* **| a little | alone | together**

VERB + SLEEP **be unable to, can't/couldn't** *I couldn't sleep so I got up and went downstairs.* **| try to** *You must be very tired. Try to sleep a little.* **| let sb | put sb/sth to** *You should always put babies to sleep on their backs. We had to have our dog put to sleep* (= humanely killed because it was so ill).

PREP. **for** *I only slept for four hours that night.* **| through** *She slept right through the storm.* **| with** *Everyone knows she sleeps with the boss.*

PHRASES **not sleep a wink** (= not sleep at all) *I didn't sleep a wink last night.* **| sleep late** *Let them sleep late on Saturday morning if they want to.* **| sleep like a baby/log** (= sleep very well), **sleep rough** *the problem of young people who sleep rough in the streets*

sleepy *adj.*

1 **ready to go to sleep**

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound | become, get, grow | make sb** *The alcohol was making him sleepy.*

ADV. **extremely, really, very | a bit, a little, quite, rather** *She was beginning to get a bit sleepy.*

2 **very quiet**

VERBS **be, seem | remain** *The town remains sleepy despite the activity all around it.*

PHRASES **sleepy little** *a sleepy little fishing village*

sleeve *noun*

ADJ. **long, short | full, puffed, voluminous, wide | rolled-up | coat, shirt, etc.**

VERB + SLEEVE **push back/up, roll up** *She rolled up her sleeves and got down to work.* **| roll down | tug at** *I looked around to see who was tugging at my sleeve.*

PREP. **in … ~s** *It was sunny, and everyone was in short sleeves.* **| on a/the ~** *There's tomato sauce on your sleeve.*

PHRASES **in (your) shirtsleeves** (= not wearing a jacket)

slender *adj.*

1 **thin in an attractive way**

VERBS **be, look**

ADV. **very** *Those trousers make you look very slender.* **| quite | boyishly** *her boyishly slender figure*

2 **small in amount/size**

VERBS **be, seem | remain**

ADV. **decidedly, very** *His musical achievements have been decidedly slender.* **| fairly, pretty, rather**

slice *noun*

ADJ. **big, generous, great, huge, large, thick | considerable, fair, significant, sizeable, substantial** *They spend a fair slice of the budget on research and development.* **| small, thin | cheese, lemon, pizza, etc.**

VERB + SLICE **cut** *She cut a thin slice of lemon.*

PREP. **in ~s** *The sausage is also sold pre-packed in slices.* **| ~ of** *a slice of toast The agency takes a large slice of the profits.*

PHRASES **cut sth into slices** *He cut the meat into thick slices.*

slice *verb*

ADV. **finely, thinly** *Slice the bread thinly.* **| thickly | neatly | off, up** *Slice up the mushrooms and fry them.*

PREP. **into** *The axe sliced into her shoulder.* **| off** *slicing pieces off the joint of meat* **| through** *The knife sliced through his ear.*

PHRASES **slice sth in half/two** *Slice the onion in two.*

slide *noun*

1 **in photography**

ADJ. **colour | photographic**

VERB + SLIDE **show** *He gave a fascinating slide show on climbing in the Himalayas.* **| develop**

SLIDE + NOUN **film | presentation, show | projector**

2 **for use with a microscope**

ADJ. **glass | microscope**

VERB + SLIDE **mount sth on**

3 **playground equipment**

VERB + SLIDE **go/play on, go down** *He wouldn't go down the slide by himself.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *There were lots on children on the slide.*

4 **change to a lower/worse condition**

ADJ. **downward | inexorable**

VERB + SLIDE **halt, prevent, stop**

PREP. **~ in** *to stop the slide in the euro* **| ~ into** *trying to prevent the inexorable slide into war* **| ~ towards** *the market's recent slide towards panic*

slide *verb*

ADV. **slowly** *Tears slid slowly down his pale cheek.* **| quickly | easily | smoothly** *a vehicle that will slide smoothly across snow* **| gently | gracefully | noiselessly, quietly, silently** *The moon slid silently behind a cloud.* **| imperceptibly | helplessly** *We slid helplessly down the slope.* **| away, back, backwards, down, forward, forwards, in, out, sideways** *The drawers slide in and out easily. (figurative) The eyes slid away from his own in embarrassment.*

VERB + SLIDE **begin to** *The melting snow began to slide from the sloping roofs.*

PREP. **across, along, down, from, into, off, onto, out of, over, to, up, etc.** *She took the note and slid it quickly into her pocket. He slid off the couch and walked over to me.*

PHRASES **slide open** *The lift doors slid open.*

slight *adj.*

1 **very small in degree**

VERBS **appear, be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, very | comparatively, fairly, quite, rather, relatively**

2 **thin and delicate**

VERBS **be, look** *She looked very slight, almost fragile.*

ADV. **very | physically**

slim *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look | become, get** *(informal) dieters who have got slim using these methods* **| keep, remain, stay** *She works very hard to stay slim.* **| make sb** *Step exercises can help make you slim.* **| keep sb**

ADV. **very | quite**

PHRASES **tall and slim**

slime *noun*

ADJ. **thick | primeval, primordial** *the primeval slime from which all life developed*

VERB + SLIME **be covered in/with | produce** *Frogs produce slime to keep their skin moist.*

SLIME + VERB **ooze**

PHRASES **a trail of slime** *The snail left a trail of slime along the floor.*

slimy *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look** *The seaweed felt cold and slimy.*

ADV. **very | all** *The walls were all slimy and green.*

PREP. **with** *The steps were slimy with moss.*

sling *verb*

ADV. **loosely | carelessly, casually** *His jacket was carelessly slung over one shoulder.*

PREP. **across, around/round, from, in, on, over, etc.**

slip *noun*

1 **mistake**

ADJ. **little, slight, tiny | unfortunate | Freudian**

VERB + SLIP **make** *She made a couple of unfortunate slips during the talk.*

PHRASES **a slip of the pen/tongue** *I didn't mean to say that?it was just a slip of the tongue.*

2 **piece of paper**

ADJ. **betting, pay, rejection, voting** *He got over fifty rejection slips before his novel was published.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *He wrote the address on a slip of paper.*

PHRASES **a slip of paper**

slipper *noun*

ADJ. **warm | bedroom, carpet | satin, sheepskin, silk, suede**

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + SLIPPER **kick off** > Special page at CLOTHES

slippery *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look | become, get** *The concrete gets slippery when it's wet.* **| make sth** *The oil made the ground slippery and treacherous to walk on.*

ADV. **extremely, very | a bit** *Watch out?the floor's a bit slippery.*

PREP. **with** *rocks that were slippery with seaweed*

slither *verb*

ADV. **silently** *A snake was slithering silently towards us.* **| helplessly** *He slithered helplessly down the slope.* **| away** *The snake slithered away.*

PREP. **across, along, down, on, over, to, etc.** *Her knees gave way and she slithered to the floor.*

slogan *noun*

ADJ. **catchy, snappy | popular | empty** *The 'freedom to learn' has become just another one of the government's empty slogans.* **| anti-government, anti-war, etc. | advertising | campaign, election, political**

VERB + SLOGAN **coin, come up with, invent | adopt (sth as), have (sth as), use (sth as) | chant, shout | bear** *a T-shirt bearing the slogan 'I Flirt, Therefore I Am'*

PREP. **on the ~** *They fought the election on the slogan 'The time has come'.* **| under a/ the ~** *protesting under the slogan 'When women stop, everything stops'*

slope *noun*

ADJ. **precipitous, severe, sheer, steep | gentle, gradual, slight | long, short | downhill, downward | uphill, upward | higher, upper** *There was snow on the higher slopes of the mountain.* **| lower | northern, north-facing, etc.** *The vineyards on the south-facing slopes get more sunshine.* **| open | forested, grassy, icy, rocky, scree, smooth, snow-covered/snowy, wooded | mountain | dry, nursery, ski** *dry-slope skiing Some tourists were having a skiing lesson on the nursery slope.* **| negative, positive** *The unemployment-income curve on the graph has a negative slope.* **| slippery** *(figurative) Once he'd tried that first cigarette, he was on the slippery slope to being a smoker.*

VERB + SLOPE **ascend, clamber up, climb (up)** *We clambered up the steep, rocky slope.* **| descend | have** *The football pitch has a slope of about one metre.*

SLOPE + VERB **lead (up/down) to sth** *a slope leading down to the river* **| fall, rise** *The lower slopes rise quite gently.* **| steepen | flatten, level off**

PREP. **down a/the ~** *I scrambled down the icy slope.* **| on a/the ~** *We camped on an open mountain slope.* **| up a/the ~** *There were more skiers further up the slope.*

PHRASES **the angle of slope** *the angle of slope of the sides of the pyramid* **| the bottom/foot/top of a slope**

slope *verb*

ADV. **steeply** *The ground slopes away steeply at the back of the house.* **| gently, slightly | away, down, downwards, up, upwards**

PREP. **to** *The field slopes down to a small river.* **| towards**

slot *verb*

ADV. **easily, neatly, simply | together** *The panels slot together to make a compost bin.*

PREP. **between, in, into** *He slotted the magazines neatly into the rack.*

PHRASES **slot (sth) into place** *All the pieces of the puzzle now slotted into place.*

slow *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | remain**

ADV. **extremely, incredibly, remarkably, very | interminably | a bit, comparatively, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, rather, relatively | agonizingly, desperately, frustratingly, painfully, tediously, tortuously** *Filming was painfully slow.* **| notoriously** *Civil court proceedings are notoriously slow.* **| noticeably** *He was noticeably slow to respond.* **| necessarily** *Genetic evolution is necessarily slow.*

PREP. **at** *They are extremely slow at reaching decisions.*

slow *verb*

ADV. **considerably, markedly, noticeably, sharply, significantly** *Sales have slowed down quite markedly.* **| barely, hardly** *The roadblocks hardly slowed them at all.* **| a bit, a little, slightly | gradually | deliberately** *She very deliberately slowed her steps.* **| down, up**

VERB + SLOW **begin to | try to** *Rachel tried to slow her breathing.* **| be expected to** *Economic growth is expected to slow.*

PHRASES **slow to a crawl/walk/snail's pace, slow to a halt/stop** *The two of them had slowed almost to a stop.*

slum *noun*

ADJ. **crowded, overcrowded, teeming | deprived, poor, poverty-stricken | filthy | notorious | city, inner-city, urban | tenement | rural**

VERB + SLUM **clear (away), demolish, knock down, remove**

SLUM + NOUN **conditions | area, district, ghetto, neighbourhood, street | dwelling, housing, property | clearance | children, kids, dwellers, youths | life | landlord**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *born in the slums of East London*

PHRASES **the clearance/demolition/removal of slums**

slumber *verb*

ADV. **deeply | peacefully** *The child slumbered peacefully in her arms.* **| fitfully**

slump *noun*

ADJ. **world/worldwide | economic, housing, price, property, sales**

PREP. **in a ~** *The economy is in a slump.* **| into ~** *The industry is sinking into slump.* **| ~ in** *Estate agents were badly hit by the slump in property prices.*

slump *verb*

1 **decrease suddenly**

ADV. **badly, disastrously, dramatically, heavily** *Oil prices have slumped quite badly in recent months.*

PREP. **by** *Profits slumped by 70 per cent.* **| from, to** *Shares in the company slumped from £2.75 to £1.54.*

2 **fall/sit down suddenly and heavily**

ADV. **a little | dejectedly | forward** *sitting with her head slumped forward* **| back, down**

PREP. **against** *He slumped against the wall.* **| in** *She slumped back in her seat.* **| into** *He slumped down into a chair.* **| over** *She slumped dejectedly over the wheel.*

PHRASES **be found slumped …** *He was found slumped in a pool of blood by security guards.* **| lie/sit slumped …**

slur *noun*

ADJ. **racial, racist, sexist, sexual**

VERB + SLUR **cast** *The comments cast a slur on her character.*

PREP. **~ against/on** *The joke was seen as a slur against the mentally ill. a slur on his good name*

slush *noun*

ADJ. **dirty** *There was dirty brown slush all over the roads and pavements.* **| brown, grey**

VERB + SLUSH **turn to** *The snow had turned to slush.*

PREP. **through the ~** *A pair of wide tracks led through the slush and mud.*

smack *noun*

ADJ. **good, hard**

VERB + SMACK **give sb, land (sb)** *He longed to land her a good smack in the face.* **| get**

PREP. **with a ~** *She brought her hand down on the water with a smack.*

smack *verb*

ADV. **hard** *I'll smack you very hard if you do that again!*

PREP. **on** *She smacked the boy on his leg.* **PHRASAL VERBS smack of sth**

ADV. **strongly, too much** *Today's announcement smacks strongly of a government cover-up.* **| a little**

small *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get, grow** *The gap seemed to be getting smaller. The kite grew smaller and smaller and finally disappeared altogether.* **| remain, stay** *Choose plants that will stay quite small.*

ADV. **extremely, really, terribly, very | a bit, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively**

PREP. **for** *My coat was rather small for Bob.*

smallpox *noun*

QUANT. **attack** *In 1742 he suffered a fatal attack of smallpox.* **| case | outbreak**

VERB + SMALLPOX **have, suffer from | catch, contract, get | die from/of | eradicate**

SMALLPOX + NOUN **epidemic | vaccination** > Special page at ILLNESS

smash *noun*

1 **breaking noisily into pieces**

VERB + SMASH **hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *The plate hit the floor with a smash.* **| ~ of** *He heard the smash of breaking glass.*

2 **car, etc. crash**

ADJ. **head-on | bus, car, train | motorway, road**

VERB + SMASH **have**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Four people were seriously injured in a head-on smash on the A45.*

3 **in tennis**

ADJ. **powerful | overhead**

VERB + SMASH **hit** *He can hit a powerful overhead smash.*

smear *noun*

1 **mark**

ADJ. **greasy**

VERB + SMEAR **leave**

PREP. **~ of** *His fingers left a smear of sweat on the wall.*

2 **lies about an important person**

VERB + SMEAR **cast** *The article cast a smear on the Minister for Health.*

SMEAR + NOUN **campaign, tactic**

PREP. **~ against/on** *campaign smears against the socialist candidate*

smear *verb*

ADV. **liberally** *She smeared the cream liberally on her face.*

PREP. **across, on, (all) over, with** *The child had smeared jam all over her face.*

PHRASES **heavily smeared with** *Their faces were heavily smeared with mud.*

smell *noun*

ADJ. **overpowering, pervasive, pungent, rich, sharp, strong** *There was an overpowering smell of burning tyres.* | **faint** | **distinct** | **distinctive, particular, unmistakable** | **funny, peculiar, strange, unusual** *What's that funny smell?* | **familiar** | **lingering** | **aromatic, delectable, delicious, fragrant, fresh, lovely, nice, savoury, sweet, wonderful** *the aromatic smells of a spring garden full of herbs* | **warm** | **appalling, awful, bad, evil, horrible, nasty, offensive, terrible, unpleasant, vile** | **acrid, nauseating, putrid, rank, sickly** *An acrid smell filled the air.* | **damp, dank, musty, rancid, sour, stale** *the sour smell of unwashed linen* | **earthy, fishy, masculine, metallic, musky, oily, smoky, spicy** | **cooking** *Cooking smells drifted up from the kitchen.*

VERB + SMELL **be filled with, have** *The air was filled with a pervasive smell of chemicals. The cottage had a musty smell after being shut up over the winter.* | **give off** *The skunk gives off an unpleasant smell when attacked.* | **catch, detect** *As she walked into the house she detected the smell of gas.*

SMELL + VERB **come, emanate, drift, float, waft** *A delicious smell of freshly baked bread wafted across the garden.* | **fill sth, hang** | **hit sb** *Then the pungent smell hit us?rotting fish and seaweed.*

PREP. **~ from** *the putrid smell from the slaughterhouse* | **~ of** *The faint smell of her perfume hung in the air.*

smell *verb*

1 **notice/identify sth by using your nose**

ADV. **properly, well** *I had a streaming cold, so I could not smell properly.* **| almost** *Snow fell so that you could almost smell the cold.*

VERB + SMELL **can/could**

2 **have a particular smell**

ADV. **strongly** *His clothes smelled strongly of fish.* **| faintly, slightly, vaguely** *He smelled faintly of sweat.* **| deliciously, pleasantly, sweetly**

PREP. **like** *It smells like rotten meat!* **| of** *The kitchen smelled sweetly of herbs and fruit.*

smile *noun*

ADJ. **bright, broad, wide | faint, thin, wan, weak | beatific, cheerful, dazzling, happy, radiant, sunny, warm** *the warm smile in his eyes* **| charming, gentle, sweet, winning | arch, disarming, enigmatic, mocking, rueful, sardonic, wry** *She gave a wry smile.* **| sad | shy | apologetic, sheepish | encouraging, indulgent, reassuring | polite | beguiling | ready | fixed, forced | supercilious | conspiratorial, knowing | grim** *a grim smile of satisfaction* **| humourless, mirthless** *She suppressed a mirthless smile.* **| crooked, lopsided | toothless**

QUANT. **glimmer, hint, trace** *A trace of a smile played across her lips.*

VERB + SMILE **have, wear** *She had a happy smile on her face.* **| flash (sb), give sb, smile** *He flashed her a disarming smile. She smiled a smile of dry amusement.* **| manage** *She managed a weak smile.* **| return** *She returned his smile.* **| hide, repress, suppress** *They had to hide their smiles.* **| forced** *Her father forced a smile.* **| bring** *Her antics brought a smile to my face.* **| crease into** *His face creased into a smile.*

SMILE + VERB **fade, freeze, vanish** *Her sunny smile vanished as she read the letter.* **| cross sth, flicker across sth, play across sth** *A faint smile flickered across her face.* **| tug at the corner of the mouth** *A wry smile tugged at the corner of his mouth.* **| grow, spread (across/over sth)** *Her smile grew radiant. A gentle smile spread over her face.*

PREP. **with a ~** *'Oh, hello,' he said, with a smile.* **| ~ of** *a smile of approval*

PHRASES **be all smiles** *Twelve hours later she was all smiles again.* **| be wreathed in smiles** *His face was wreathed in smiles.* **| wipe the smile off sb's face** *I'm going to wipe that smile off your face* (= make you stop thinking this is funny).

smile *verb*

ADV. **broadly, widely** *She put down her tools and smiled broadly.* **| faintly, slightly, thinly, wanly, weakly** *He looked at the mess and smiled weakly.* **| dazzlingly, happily, radiantly, warmly** *Lawrence nodded, smiling happily.* **| charmingly, gently, sweetly, winningly | benignly, kindly, politely | shyly | encouragingly, indulgently, reassuringly** *The doctor smiled reassuringly.* **| apologetically, sheepishly | ruefully, wryly** *Molly smiled rather wryly and said nothing.* **| archly, enigmatically | conspiratorially | sadly | grimly | humourlessly, mirthlessly | crookedly, lopsidedly | back** *He smiled at her, and she smiled back.*

VERB + SMILE **try to | manage to | make sb** *The memory still made her smile.*

PREP. **at** *He turned and smiled at me.* **| with** *She smiled with pleasure.*

PHRASES **smile from ear to ear, smile to yourself** *She smiled to herself, picturing how surprised her mother would be to see her.*

smirk *noun*

ADJ. **arrogant, knowing, patronizing, self-satisfied**

VERB + SMIRK **have** *She had a self-satisfied smirk on her face.* **| give** *She gave a knowing smirk.* **| conceal, hide** *He made no attempt to conceal his smirk.*

SMIRK + VERB **flicker** *A smirk flickered at the corner of his mouth as he watched my struggle.*

PREP. **with a ~** *'Comfortable?' he asked with a smirk.* **| ~ of** *a smirk of triumph*

smog *noun*

ADJ. **heavy | urban | photochemical**

VERB + SMOG **reduce** *measures to reduce smog*

SMOG + NOUN **alert | level**

smoke *noun*

ADJ. **dense, thick | black, blue, grey, etc. | billowing | acrid, choking, stale | cigar, cigarette, pipe, tobacco**

QUANT. **cloud, column, haze, pall, plume, puff, spiral, wisp** *We sat drinking in a haze of cigarette smoke. The witch disappeared in a puff of smoke.*

VERB + SMOKE **belch (out), blow, emit** *The lorry ahead was belching out black smoke. Don't blow smoke in my face!* **| exhale | inhale | go up in** *The barn went up in smoke* (= was destroyed by a fire). **| be wreathed in** *She sat there wreathed in cigarette smoke.*

SMOKE + VERB **belch, billow, curl, drift, fill, pour, rise from/into** *Blue smoke curled upwards from her cigarette.* **| hang** *A pall of yellow smoke hung over the quarry.* **| clear** *When the smoke cleared we saw the extent of the damage.*

SMOKE + NOUN **plume, ring** *I taught myself to blow smoke rings.* **| signal | bomb | alarm, detector | emission | inhalation**

PHRASES **full of smoke, thick with smoke** *The public bar was thick with stale tobacco smoke.*

smoke *verb*

1 **cigarette/pipe, etc.**

ADV. **heavily** *He has always smoked heavily.*

2 **meat/fish/cheese**

ADV. **heavily | lightly** *The ham is cured, then lightly smoked.*

smoker *noun*

ADJ. **chain, heavy | regular | light | passive** *the risk of lung cancer in passive smokers* **| cigar, cigarette, pipe**

SMOKER + NOUN **a smoker's cough**

smoking *noun*

ADJ. **chain, heavy | passive** *the dangers of passive smoking* **| cigar, cigarette, pipe, tobacco**

VERB + SMOKING **start, take up | give up, quit, stop** *I'm trying to give up smoking.* **| cut down on** *The doctor advised me to cut down on smoking and alcohol.* **| ban**

SMOKING + NOUN **habit | ban** *A total smoking ban has been imposed throughout the building.* **| room**

PHRASES **a ban on smoking, the dangers/effects of smoking** *a study of the harmful effects of smoking* **| no smoking** *The company has a strict no smoking policy.* **| smoking-related death/disease/illness**

smooth *adj.*

1 **without bumps**

VERBS **be, feel, look | become | wear sth** *The steps had been worn smooth by the thousands of passing feet.*

ADV. **beautifully, exceptionally, extremely, really, very** *her beautifully smooth complexion* **| completely, perfectly | almost | fairly, quite | deceptively** *the deceptively smooth surface of the glacier*

2 **without problems**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become**

ADV. **extremely, incredibly, really, remarkably, very** *The project got off to a remarkably smooth start.* **| completely | not entirely** *The process of negotiation was not entirely smooth.* **| almost | fairly, quite, reasonably, relatively** *a fairly smooth transition to democracy*

smooth *verb*

ADV. **carefully, gently** *She smoothed his hair gently.* **| back, down, out** *Her mother smoothed back Alice's hair. Use an iron to smooth out any creases.*

smug *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *Now don't get smug just because you've won a couple of games.*

ADV. **incredibly, very** *the incredibly smug expression on his face* **| almost | a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly**

PREP. **about** *What are you looking so smug about?*

smuggle *verb*

ADV. **secretly | aboard, abroad, in, out**

VERB + SMUGGLE **try to | manage to**

PREP. **into** *goods which have been smuggled into Britain* **| out of** *Friends managed to smuggle him secretly out of the country.*

smuggling *nou*n

ADJ. **arms, cocaine, drug, heroin, gold, ivory, etc.**

SMUGGLING + NOUN **attempt | gang, operation, racket, ring | route | vessel** > Note at CRIME(for verbs)

snack *noun*

ADJ. **healthy, light | tasty | savoury, sweet | hot, cold | quick** *We stopped at a service station for a quick snack.* **| bedtime, lunchtime, mid-afternoon, mid-morning, midnight | party**

VERB + SNACK **eat, have | stop for | cook (sb), fix (sb), make (sb), prepare** *I fixed myself a light snack.* **| provide (sb with), serve** *A bar service provides drinks and snacks throughout the day.*

SNACK + NOUN **food | lunch, meal, time** *Most office staff prefer a snack lunch to a sit-down meal.* **| service | bar, counter, kiosk** > Special page at FOOD

snag *noun*

ADJ. **big, major | minor, small** *A minor snag is that it's expensive.* **| possible, potential | technical**

VERB + SNAG **hit** *We've hit a technical snag: the printer isn't compatible with my PC.* **| iron out** *There are a few snags to iron out before the prototype is ready.*

PREP. **~ in** *one of the snags in the scheme* **| ~ to** *There is a snag to the job: you have to work at weekends.* **| ~ with** *I suddenly saw the major snag with the whole idea.*

snail *noun*

ADJ. **edible | land, marine, pond, sea, water**

SNAIL + NOUN **shell**

PHRASES **(at) a snail's pace** *Traffic had slowed to a snail's pace.*

snake *noun*

ADJ. **deadly** *one of the world's deadliest snakes* **| poisonous, venomous | grass, sea, tree, water**

SNAKE + VERB **bite sb/sth, strike sth** *She was bitten by a snake while walking through long grass. The snake lifted up its head before striking its prey.* **| slide, slither, wind (its way)** *A small green snake slithered across the wet road. The snake wound its way through the undergrowth.* **| hiss, spit | moult, shed its skin | coil (itself) around, coil up, curl up | uncoil**

SNAKE + NOUN **bite** (also **snakebite) | charmer | venom**

snap *verb*

1 **break suddenly with a sharp noise**

ADV. **suddenly** *The branch suddenly snapped.*

PHRASES **snap (sth) in half/two** *She picked up the pencil and snapped it in two.*

2 **move (sth) quickly with a sharp noise**

PHRASES **snap (sth) open/shut** *She snapped the lid shut.* **| snap (sth) together** *The plastic pieces snap together to make a replica of a dinosaur.*

3 **speak in a quick angry way**

ADV. **angrily, impatiently, irritably, sarcastically, sharply | back** *'How should I know?' Zen snapped back.*

PREP. **at** *He lost his temper and snapped irritably at the children.*

4 **lose control**

ADV. **finally** *My patience finally snapped.*

snarl *verb*

ADV. **savagely, viciously** *He snarled savagely at her.* **| almost**

PREP. **at** *A guard dog snarled at us as we walked by.*

snatch *noun*

ADJ. **brief**

VERB + SNATCH **catch, hear, overhear** *We caught snatches of conversation from the room next door.* **| hum, sing** *He was humming a snatch of a song from 'Cabaret'.*

PREP. **in ~es** *She learnt to sleep in brief snatches.*

PHRASES **a snatch of conversation/music/song**

snatch *verb*

ADV. **almost | quickly | away, up** *She leapt to her feet, snatching up her bag.*

VERB + SNATCH **try to**

PREP. **at** *He snatched at her arm as she walked past.* **| from** *She almost snatched the letter from my hand.*

sneer *noun*

ADJ. **arrogant | faint, slight**

VERB + SNEER **give** *He gave an arrogant sneer.* **| hide**

PREP. **with a ~ | ~ at** *The prime minister resisted a sneer at his opponent's misfortune.*

PHRASES **curl/twist your lips into a sneer, a sneer in your voice**

sneeze *verb*

ADV. **loudly** *Someone sneezed loudly at the back of the hall.*

VERB + SNEEZE **make sb** *The smoke reached her and made her sneeze.*

sniff *noun*

ADJ. **deep, good | loud**

VERB + SNIFF **give, let out** *She gave a loud sniff of disapproval.* **| hear | get, have, take** *to get a sniff of fresh air*

PREP. **between ~s** *'I'm sorry,' he said between sniffs.* **| with a ~** *'I'm fine,' she said with a sniff.* **| ~ at** *The dog had a good sniff at the bushes around the garden.*

PHRASES **a sniff of disapproval** > Note at SOUND

sniff *verb*

ADV. **loudly** *She wiped her eyes and sniffed loudly.* **| deeply | a little | carefully, delicately | appreciatively** *He sniffed appreciatively. 'Smells delicious. What is it?'* **| disapprovingly, disdainfully, disparagingly | suspiciously | back** *The woman sniffed back her tears.*

PREP. **at** *The dog sniffed at his shoes.*

snippet *noun*

ADJ. **little | interesting** *He passed on any interesting snippets of information he could glean from his colleagues.*

VERB + SNIPPET **gather, glean | give, pass on**

PREP. **~ from** *The article gave a few snippets from her forthcoming memoirs.* **| ~ of** *a snippet of conversation*

snobbery *noun*

ADJ. **inverted** *His dismissive attitude towards the rich is just inverted snobbery.* **| cultural, intellectual, musical**

PREP. **~ about** *his snobbery about mixing with people from other classes* **| ~ towards** *snobbery towards electronic music*

snooker *noun*

ADJ. **professional**

QUANT. **frame, game** *We played a couple of frames of snooker in the evening.*

VERB + SNOOKER **play**

SNOOKER + NOUN **ball, cue, table | ace, champion, player, star | club, hall, room | match, tournament | league** > Special page at SPORT

snore *verb*

ADV. **loudly, noisily | gently, lightly, quietly, softly** *She was asleep in a chair and snoring gently.* **| contentedly** *He began to snore contentedly.*

VERB + SNORE **begin to, start to**

snort *noun*

ADJ. **little | loud | derisive**

VERB + SNORT **give, let out** *He gave a snort of contempt.* **| hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *'What a mess they made of it,' said Sam with a snort of derision.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **a snort of derision/disgust, a snort of laughter** *She let out a loud snort of laughter.* > Note at SOUND

snort *verb*

ADV. **loudly | softly | angrily, contemptuously, derisively, impatiently, indignantly** *He snorted indignantly and walked away.*

PREP. **in** *He snorted in disgust.* **| with** *Her friends snorted with laughter.*

snow *noun*

ADJ. **heavy, thick | fine, light** *The plants were covered in fine snow.* **| deep | damp, wet | compacted, crisp, frozen, hard, packed** *The crisp snow crunched as we walked through it. The frozen snow was treacherous to walk on.* **| powder/ powdery, soft | drifting, driving, falling, swirling** *They struggled on through the driving snow.* **| melted, melting | fresh, new, newly fallen | first** *the first snow of winter* **| spring, winter | artificial** *They had to use artificial snow at the Winter Olympics.* **| dirty**

QUANT. **flake | fall, flurry | patch | blanket, carpet | inch** *Three inches of snow fell had fallen.*

VERB + SNOW **be covered in** *The car was completely covered in snow.* **| clear, shovel, sweep** *She cleared the snow from the path.*

SNOW + VERB **cover sth, lie, pile (up), settle** *Snow covered everything from horizon to horizon. Snow had piled up against the walls of the cottage. It was too warm for the snow to settle.* **| drift, drive, fall, swirl | melt, thaw**

SNOW + NOUN **conditions, flurry, storm** (also **snowstorm**) **| plough** (also **snowplough**) **| blindness**

PREP. **across ~** *They travelled across the snow in a sleigh.* **| in/into ~** *The children are playing in the snow.* **| through ~** *We struggled through the deep snow back to the chalet.* **| under ~** *The steps were buried under the snow.*

snow *verb*

ADV. **hard, heavily** *It had been snowing heavily all night.* **| lightly**

PHRASES **start/stop snowing** *It started snowing just as we were setting out.*

snowfall *noun*

ADJ. **heavy | light | annual | average** *What's the average snowfall for this region?*

VERB + SNOWFALL **have** *We had a light snowfall last night.*

snowflake *noun*

SNOWFLAKE + VERB **fall, flutter | melt**

snub *noun*

ADJ. **deliberate**

VERB + SNUB **deliver sb** *He took the opportunity to deliver us another snub.* **| receive**

PREP. **as a ~ | ~ for/to** *His cancellation of the concert was seen as a deliberate snub to the organizers.*

snub *verb*

ADV. **deliberately | publicly | rudely**

PHRASES **feel snubbed** *He was not invited to the party, and felt snubbed.*

snuff *nou*n

QUANT. **pinch**

VERB + SNUFF **inhale, take**

SNUFF + NOUN **box**

snuggle *verb*

ADV. **close** *She slipped her arm through his and snuggled close.* **| down, up** *I snuggled down in my sleeping bag.*

PREP. **against** *Claudia snuggled against him.* **| into** *She snuggled into him and closed her eyes.*

soak *verb*

ADV. **completely, thoroughly | overnight | off, out** *Place the jar in warm water to soak the label off.*

VERB + SOAK **leave sth to** *I've left the clothes to soak overnight.*

PREP. **in** *Soak the clothes in cold water.* **| into** *Water dripped off the table and soaked into the carpet.* **| through** *The rain had soaked through every layer of his clothing.* **| with** *He soaked the cloth with petrol.*

soaked *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | get**

ADV. **absolutely, completely, thoroughly**

PHRASES **soaked to the skin** *There was a sudden shower and we got soaked to the skin.*

soap *noun*

ADJ. **mild | perfumed, scented | liquid | carbolic | toilet | saddle**

QUANT. **bar, cake**

VERB + SOAP **use, wash (sth) with**

SOAP + NOUN **flakes, powder | bubble, suds | dish, dispenser**

PHRASES **soap and water**

soar *verb*

1 **increase very fast**

ADV. **dramatically** *Profits have soared dramatically in recent months.*

VERB + SOAR **be expected to, be set to** *Borrowing is set to soar to an astonishing £60 billion.*

PREP. **by** *Retail sales soared by 10% in the twelve months to November.* **| from, to** *Inflation has soared from 5% to 15%.*

PHRASES **send sth soaring** *The fuel shortage sent prices soaring.*

2 **fly high in the air**

ADV. **high | overhead** *A buzzard soared high overhead.*

PREP. **above, over** *an eagle soaring high above them*

sob *noun*

ADJ. **big, deep, great | little | loud | choked, hoarse, stifled, strangled | choking, gasping, gulping, racking, shuddering | occasional | dry**

VERB + SOB **give, let out | be racked by/with, shake with** *He was too racked by sobs to reply.* **| choke back, stifle** *Choking back a sob, she ran to her father's chair.* **| hear**

SOB + VERB **break from sb/sth, burst from sb/sth, escape sb/sth** *A sob escaped her lips.* **| rise** *A choked sob rose in his throat.* **| catch** *A dry sob caught in her throat.* **| rack sth, shake sth** *Deep racking sobs shook his whole body.* **| subside**

SOB + NOUN **story** *You can't expect me to believe this sob story!*

PREP. **between ~s** *'I don't want to go!' she got out between sobs.* **| through ~s** *He continued his story through stifled sobs.* **| with a ~** *'Why didn't you tell me?' she said with a sob.* **| ~ from** *a sob from George* **| ~ of** *a great sob of despair*

PHRASES **a sob of despair/pain/relief** > Note at SOUND

sob *verb*

ADV. **aloud | loudly | quietly, silently | hysterically, uncontrollably, wildly | almost** *He was pleading, almost sobbing, first silently and then aloud.*

VERB + SOB **begin to, start to** *He began to sob uncontrollably.* **| hear sb** *I heard a child sobbing loudly.*

PREP. **with** *She was sobbing with pain and fear.*

PHRASES **sob your heart out**

sober *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | remain, stay** *She wanted a drink, but she had to stay sober.* **| keep sb** *Only the thought of her kept him sober.*

ADV. **completely, perfectly, quite, stone-cold | not entirely | almost, fairly, more or less, pretty well, reasonably, relatively** *By this time he felt more or less sober again.* **| enough** *At that point she was still sober enough to ask sensible questions.*

soccer *noun*

ADJ. **amateur, professional | top-class | junior, senior, youth | ladies', women's | league, non-league | premiership | first-division, etc. | international, world | competitive | five-a-side | indoor**

QUANT. **game**

VERB + SOCCER **play | watch**

SOCCER + NOUN **ball | field, ground, pitch, stadium | game, match, tournament | club, team | ace, hero, legend, player, star | boss, coach, manager, official | management | fan, spectator, supporter | season | career | skills | strip | hooligan, thug | violence | fanzine, magazine | memento, memorabilia**

social security *noun*

VERB + SOCIAL SECURITY **be entitled to, claim, receive** *If you are unemployed you can claim social security.*

SOCIAL SECURITY + NOUN **provision, system** *plans to improve social security provision for single parents* **| benefits, payments | contributions** *All people in work pay social security contributions.* **| department, minister, office | budget, funds, spending**

PREP. **on ~** *He's out of work and on social security.*

social worker *nou*n

ADJ. **senior | trained | specialist | psychiatric | hospital, residential** > Note at JOB

socialism *noun*

ADJ. **democratic, state**

VERB + SOCIALISM **build, establish** *trying to build socialism in their own country*

PREP. **under ~** *They believed that these problems would disappear under socialism.*

socialist *noun*

ADJ. **dedicated, staunch, strong | radical, revolutionary | liberal | moderate | democratic**

SOCIALIST + VERB **come to power** *The socialists came to power in 1981.*

society *noun*

1 **people who have shared customs and laws**

ADJ. **wider** *the position of women within the family and the wider society* | **contemporary, modern** | **traditional** | **advanced** *the division of labour in an advanced capitalist society* | **primitive** | **egalitarian, free, just, open** | **closed** | **civilized, humane** | **affluent** *the consumerist values of the affluent society* | **consumer, consumerist** | **throwaway** *Our throwaway society must be encouraged to recycle.* | **permissive** | **multicultural, multiracial, pluralistic** | **divided, stratified** *Years of high unemployment have left society deeply divided.* | **civil** *the relationship between the state and civil society* | **secular** | **human** *a theory on the basis of human society* | **class** | **classless** | **tribal** | **matriarchal, patriarchal** | **bourgeois** | **capitalist, democratic, feudal, socialist, etc.** | **industrial, post-industrial, pre-industrial** | **agricultural, technological** | **Western** | **rural, urban, village** | **polite** *Such language would not be used in polite society.*

VERB + SOCIETY **build, create, shape** *the struggle to build a just society* | **permeate, pervade** *the greed that pervades modern society* | **fit into** *Prisoners often have problems fitting into society on their release.* | **polarize**

SOCIETY + VERB **be based on sth** *a society based on social justice*

PREP. **in/within (a) ~** *the role of television in modern Western society*

PHRASES **a cross-section of society** *The clinic deals with a wide cross-section of society* | **the fabric of society** *The civil war tore apart the fabric of society.* | **the higher/top echelons of society** *Officers were drawn largely from the top echelons of society.* | **a level/rank/stratum of society** *Child cruelty exists at all levels of society.* | **a member of society** *welfare reforms to protect the most vulnerable members of society* | **an outcast from/of society** *She devoted herself to helping the outcasts of society.* | **the backbone/a bulwark/a pillar of society** *One of the pillars of society must be that everyone has access to the legal system. He considered himself to be a pillar of society.* | **your place/rank in society** *A person's job is one of the factors that determines their place in society.* | **the rest of society** *He felt isolated from the rest of society.* | **a section/sector/segment of society** *Every section of society must have access to education.* | **society as a whole** *The research examines minorities and their relation to society as a whole.* | **society at large**

Health standards have risen in society at large. **| the structure of a society** *the class structure of British society*

2 **organization formed for a particular purpose**

ADJ. **secret | debating, dramatic, historical, horticultural, law, medical, musical, religious, etc.**

VERB + SOCIETY **belong to** *She belongs to the historical society.* **| become a member of, join | create, establish, form, found, set up, start**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She was active in the Society for Women's Suffrage.* **| ~ for** *a society for the prevention of cruelty to animals* **| ~ of** *the Society of Motor Manufacturers and Traders* > Note at ORGANIZATION

sociology *noun*

ADJ. **classical, mainstream, radical | industrial, medical, political, urban, etc.**

PHRASES **the sociology of culture/knowledge/religion/science, etc.** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

sock *noun*

ADJ. **knee, long | ankle, short | thick | woolly | old, smelly | odd** *He wore odd socks, one red and one yellow.*

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + SOCK **pull on, pull up | pull off | knit | darn, mend** > Special page at CLOTHES

socket *noun*

1 **for electricity**

ADJ. **13 amp, etc. | electric/electrical, mains, plug, power | aerial, headphone, etc. | input, output | floor, wall**

VERB + SOCKET **plug (sth) into** *The battery charger plugs into any mains socket.*

SOCKET + NOUN **outlet**

2 **in the body**

ADJ. **sunken | eye, hip, shoulder**

VERB + SOCKET **sink into** *Her eyes sank deep into their sockets.*

PREP. **in its ~** *His eyes bulged madly in their sockets.*

sofa *noun*

ADJ. **battered | comfortable, plush | deep, low-slung** *She sank into the deep sofa.* **| chintz, leather, etc. | wide | three-seater, two-seater, etc. | convertible** *The convertible sofa means that the apartment can sleep four.*

VERB + SOFA **collapse on/onto, flop (back) on/onto, lower yourself onto, settle (yourself) (down) on, sink down on/onto, sink (back/down) onto, sit (down) on, slump (back) on/onto** *He slumped back on the sofa in tears.* **| be sprawled across/on, be stretched out on, lie on, lounge on, recline on, sprawl across/on, stretch out on** *I spent the evening sprawled on the sofa, watching TV.* **| get up from, jump up from, pull yourself up from, rise from** *He got up from the sofa to fetch some drinks.*

SOFA + NOUN **bed**

PREP. **on the ~** *She was curled up on the sofa.*

PHRASES **the arm/back/edge of a sofa**

soft *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look | become, go, turn | stay** *Her skin had stayed soft and supple.*

ADV. **beautifully, extremely, incredibly, really, very** *The fabric has a beautifully soft texture.* **| all** *These tomatoes have gone all soft.* **| fairly, quite, rather, relatively, slightly**

soften *verb*

1 **become/make sth softer/gentler**

ADV. **considerably, a lot | a little, slightly** *His smile softened slightly.*

2 **make sth seem less severe**

ADV. **slightly, somewhat**

VERB + SOFTEN **try** *The chancellor may try to soften the blow somewhat with a cut in interest rates.* **| help (to)**

software *noun*

ADJ. **computer | application | accounting, design, educational, management, music-sharing, etc. | anti-virus | proprietary | pirated** *He was arrested for selling pirated software.*

QUANT. **piece** *an exciting piece of design software*

VERB + SOFTWARE **use, run** *My PC isn't powerful enough to run that software.* **| design, develop, write | download, install**

SOFTWARE + VERB **run** *The software will run on most IBM-compatible PCs.*

SOFTWARE + NOUN **application, package, product, program, system, tool | development, engineering | developer, engineer | company, firm, house** > Special page at COMPUTER

soil *noun*

1 earth

ADJ. **deep | shallow, thin | fertile, good, rich | barren, infertile, poor | light | heavy | loose | dry | damp, moist, waterlogged, wet | acid/acidic, alkaline | contaminated | top** (also **topsoil**) **| chalky, clay/clayey, peaty, sandy, stony | alluvial, desert, forest, garden, polar, volcanic**

VERB + SOIL **cultivate | dig, till, turn, work** *fields of newly turned soil The clayey soils of the region are difficult to work.* **| fertilize | drain | loosen**

SOIL + NOUN **conservation | degradation, erosion | conditions, fertility, quality** *declining soil fertility* **| type | surface | science, scientist**

PREP. **in (the) ~** *The flowers do well in sandy soil.*

2 part of a country

ADJ. **native | foreign**

VERB + SOIL **set foot on** *She first set foot on French soil at a small Channel port.*

PREP. **on … ~** *protests over the siting of nuclear weapons on British soil*

solace *noun*

ADJ. **great | spiritual**

VERB + SOLACE **bring (sb), give sb, offer (sb)** *The news brought no solace to the grieving relations.* **| find, take** *Unable to travel, he found some solace in reading about other people's journeys abroad.* **| seek** *They sought solace in religion from the harshness of their everyday lives.*

PHRASES **turn to sb/sth for solace** *His career took a nosedive and he turned to drink and drugs for solace.*

soldier *noun*

ADJ. **brave, fine, good, great** *The minister paid tribute to the brave soldiers who had lost their lives.* | **trained** | **experienced, veteran** | **former, old, retired** | **professional, regular** | **volunteer** | **conscript** | **common, ordinary, private, rank-and-file** *What was life like for the common soldier?* | **fellow** *He was deeply affected by the death of one of his fellow soldiers.* | **loyal** *soldiers loyal to the president* | **dead, injured, wounded** | **armed** | **foot, mounted** | **mercenary** | **enemy** | **Allied, British, etc.** | **government, rebel** | **uniformed** | **undercover** | **toy**

VERB + SOLDIER **be, serve as** | **enlist as** *He decided to enlist as a soldier.* | **play** *little boys playing soldiers*

SOLDIER + VERB **enlist** *The number of soldiers enlisting has fallen dramatically.* | **be stationed, serve** *soldiers serving in the Germany* | **march** | **fight (sb)** | **defend sth, guard sth** | **open fire (on sb)** *At least 19 people were killed when soldiers opened fire on a peaceful demonstration.* | **shoot sb dead** | **be killed in action, die** | **be wounded** | **be missing in action** | **be captured, be taken prisoner** | **return** *soldiers returning from the war* | **desert**

sole *noun*

ADJ. **thick, thin | leather, rubber | inner**

PHRASES **the sole of your boot/shoe** *I've got a hole in the sole of my shoe.* **| the soles of your feet** *The sand was so hot I got blisters on the soles of my feet.*

solemn *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** *She usually had a smile on her face, but now she looked solemn.* **| become, grow** *His face grew solemn.* **| remain**

ADV. **very** *He addressed them all in very solemn tones.* **| rather** *Her mood was rather solemn.*

solemnity *noun*

ADJ. **great** *The monument was unveiled with great solemnity.* **| mock**

PREP. **with ~**

solicit *verb*

ADV. **actively** *She had actively solicited funds for her election campaign.*

PREP. **for** *Local companies were solicited for money.* | **from** *She solicited support from other teachers.*

solicitor *noun*

ADJ. good | qualified | trainee | duty, practising *There will be no court duty solicitor today. She is still a practising solicitor at the age of sixty-two.*

PHRASES a firm of solicitors > Note at PROFESSIONAL(for verbs)

solid *adj.*

1 **hard and firm/not hollow**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, go** *If you put it in the freezer, it will go solid.*

ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, completely | almost, practically | quite | enough** *The ice felt solid enough.* **| apparently, seemingly**

2 **reliable and strong**

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, really, very | absolutely, rock** *Support for the plan remained rock solid.* **| fairly, pretty** *There is pretty solid evidence to show that the disease is caused by poor hygiene.*

solidarity *noun*

ADJ. **international, national | class, community, family, group, social, (trade) union, working-class**

VERB + SOLIDARITY **feel | demonstrate, express, show | foster, promote**

PREP. **in ~ with** *Various other groups of workers went on strike in solidarity with the train drivers.* **| ~ against** *promoting union solidarity against management* **| ~ among/amongst/between** *The conflict fostered solidarity among Arab oil states.* **| ~ with** *Orwell expressed his solidarity with the miners in the book.*

PHRASES **a gesture of solidarity** *Catering staff staged a sit-down protest as a gesture of solidarity with the striking nurses.* **| a sense of solidarity** *The strike fostered a sense of solidarity among the workers.*

solitude *noun*

ADJ. **absolute**

VERB + SOLITUDE **seek**

PREP. **in ~** *to pray in solitude* **| in the ~ of** *She enjoyed a few moments of peace in the solitude of the garden.*

solo *noun*

ADJ. **long | brief, short | brilliant | piano, violin, etc. | soprano, tenor, etc.**

VERB + SOLO **do, perform, play, sing**

soluble *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **highly, very** *It is a highly soluble gas.* **| easily, freely | completely, totally | partially, partly, slightly**

PREP. **in** *The disulphate was easily soluble in water.*

solution *noun*

1 **to a problem, difficult situation, etc.**

ADJ. **complete, comprehensive | partial | effective, good, happy, ideal, neat, optimal, perfect, real** *His plan does not offer a real solution to the problem.* | **acceptable | satisfactory, workable | correct, right | easy, obvious, simple | possible | feasible, practical, realistic, viable | cost-effective | creative, imaginative, ingenious | drastic, radical | early, immediate, instant, quick, speedy** *The UN representative stressed the urgency of an early solution.* | **final, lasting, long-term, permanent, ultimate | interim, short-term, temporary | proposed | pragmatic | compromise, negotiated | diplomatic, peaceful, political | military | technical**

VERB + SOLUTION **look for, seek, work towards | achieve, agree (on), arrive at, come up with, find, produce, reach, work out** *attempts to find a comprehensive political solution to the crisis* | **propose, put forward, suggest | adopt | offer, provide**

PREP. **~ for** *a quick solution for dealing with the paper shortage* | **~ to** *They were seeking an ultimate solution to the city's traffic problem.*

2 **liquid in which a solid has been dissolved**

ADJ. **concentrated, neat, strong | dilute, weak | saturated | acid | alkaline | aqueous | saline, salt | bicarbonate, sodium chloride, etc.**

SOLUTION + VERB **contain**

PREP. **in ~** *aluminium ions in solution*

solve *verb*

ADV. **completely** *The mystery has not yet been completely solved.* **| largely | half, partially, partly | hardly | not necessarily** *Being with peers and friends does not necessarily solve this feeling of loneliness.* **| adequately, satisfactorily** *This question has never been satisfactorily solved.* **| effectively | convincingly | easily, readily | quickly | elegantly, neatly | magically, somehow | eventually, finally | never**

VERB + SOLVE **attempt to, try to | help (to), help sb (to)** *We were given clues to help us solve the puzzle.* **| be designed to** *a scheme designed to solve the housing problem* **| fail to | be difficult to**

PREP. **by** *We hope the difficulty can be solved by getting the two sides together to discuss the issues.* **| with** *The problem cannot be solved with spending cuts alone.*

PHRASES **an attempt to solve sth**

solvent *noun*

ADJ. **volatile | chlorinated | chemical, organic | cleaning, industrial**

VERB + SOLVENT **abuse, sniff**

SOLVENT + VERB **evaporate**

SOLVENT + NOUN **abuse, sniffing**

sombre *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem** *Everyone looked very sombre.* **| become, grow** *His eyes grew sombre.* **| remain** *The mood in Parliament remained sombre.*

ADV. **very | fairly, rather, somewhat** *She was in a somewhat sombre mood.* **| suitably** *The funeral cortege passed, to suitably sombre music.*

son *noun*

ADJ. **baby, newborn | little, small, young | teenage | grown-up | only | eldest, first-born, middle, oldest, youngest | elder, younger | illegitimate, legitimate | dutiful, good | fine, strong** *The queen bore him four fine sons.* **| long-lost, prodigal** *They welcomed me like a long-lost son.* **| married, unmarried**

VERB + SON **have** *They've got three young sons.* **| bear** *(formal)*, **give birth to | bring up** *Living alone and trying to bring up a young son is no easy task.*

SON + VERB **grow up**

song *noun*

1 **piece of music with words**

ADJ. **beautiful, good, great, lovely | catchy | mournful, sad | country, folk, pop/popular, traditional** *a Hungarian folk song* **| bawdy, children's, drinking, love, patriotic, protest, religious** *After a few drinks, they were all singing bawdy songs at the top of their voices. a protest song written in the sixties* **| theme, title** *the theme song from 'The Godfather' the title song from the Beatles' album 'Help!'*

VERB + SONG **compose, write | do, perform, play, sing** *They performed another two songs as encores. Sing us a song, Susanna!* **| record**

SONG + NOUN **writer** (also **songwriter)** *a singer-songwriter* **| contest**

PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *Important historical events were commemorated in song.* **| ~ about** *a song about love*

2 **act of singing**

VERB + SONG **break into, burst into** *He strummed a couple of chords on the guitar and they all burst into song.*

PREP. **in ~** *He heard voices raised in song.*

soothing *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel** *Her touch felt wonderfully soothing.*

ADV. **very, wonderfully**

sophisticated *adj.*

1 **having a lot of experience of the world**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get**

ADV. **highly, very** *She was a highly sophisticated and elegant woman.* **| quite, rather | enough, sufficiently | intellectually, politically**

2 **advanced and complicated**

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *incredibly sophisticated computers* **| increasingly | fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively | enough, sufficiently | technically, technologically**

sophistication *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great | growing, increased, increasing | cool | political, technical, technological**

VERB + SOPHISTICATION **have** *The decor has a cool sophistication.* **| lack**

PREP. **with ~** *He writes with increasing sophistication on the subject.*

PHRASES **an air of sophistication** *Despite her scruffy clothes, there was an air of sophistication about her.* **| a degree/level of sophistication** *Computers raised the level of sophistication of these maps.* **| a lack of sophistication** *He felt people were contemptuous of his lack of sophistication.* **| a veneer of sophistication** *She adopted an upper-class accent to give herself a veneer of sophistication.*

soprano *noun*

ADJ. **first, principal, second | boy, female, male | coloratura, lyric, operatic | clear, pure**

VERB + SOPRANO **sing** *She has sung soprano in many major operas.*

SOPRANO + NOUN **voice** *She has a natural, clear soprano voice.* **| part** *The soprano part in this opera is very demanding*

PREP. **in a ~** *She sings in an exceptionally pure soprano.*

sore *noun*

ADJ. **open, running** *(often figurative) The border dispute was a running sore in relations between the countries.*

sorrow *noun*

ADJ. **deep, genuine, great, unbearable**

VERB + SORROW **feel** *I felt no sorrow for her.* **| express** *He wrote to the dead man's mother expressing his deep sorrow.* **| share** *She wanted to share his sorrow.* **| hide** *I couldn't hide my sorrow and anger.* **| bring, cause** *The war brought sorrow to millions.*

PREP. **to sb's ~** *To his great sorrow he could not remember his mother.* **| with ~** *They accepted the decision with sorrow.* **| ~ at** *his sorrow at having to quit his job*

PHRASES **a feeling/pang of sorrow** *Claudia felt a deep pang of sorrow for her sister.* **| full of sorrow** *He looked at Katherine, his eyes full of sorrow.* **| tears of sorrow** *Tears of relief were mixed with tears of sorrow.* **| a time of sorrow** *This is a time of great sorrow for all the family.*

sorry *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | make sb** *I'll make you sorry you were ever born!*

ADV. **awfully, deeply, desperately, dreadfully, extremely, frightfully, genuinely, really, terribly, truly, very** *I'm really sorry Jane can't come with us. I'm terribly sorry. I didn't catch your name.* **| almost** *She was almost sorry to stop work.* **| a bit, a little, quite, rather**

PREP. **about** *I'm sorry about the noise. I'm sorry about your mother. I do hope she'll soon be feeling better.* **| for** *She is obviously deeply sorry for what she has done. I feel really sorry for John.*

PHRASES **better safe than sorry**

sort *noun*

ADJ. **best, worst | right, wrong | funny, odd, strange** *He was friendly in a funny sort of way.*

PREP. **~ of** *The shop sells all sorts of books.*

sort *verb*

1 put things into different groups/places

ADV. **busily | out** *I sorted the clothes out into two piles.*

PREP. **according to** *Sort the books according to their subject matter.* **| by** *The most common way of grouping was to sort the children by ability.* **| into** *We sorted the washing into piles of different garments.* **| through** *busily sorting through her clothes*

2 find an answer to a problem

ADV. **out** *Someone will have to sort this problem out.*

VERB + SORT **have to | try to | help (to), help sb (to) | leave sb to** *Leave them to sort it out among themselves.*

PHRASES **get sth sorted (out)** *If he can't get his talk sorted, we'll have to ask someone else.*

soul *noun*

1 **part of sb believed to exist after body is dead**

ADJ. **immortal | damned | human, individual**

VERB + SOUL **save** *Missionaries saw it as their task to save souls.* **| sell** *to sell your soul to the Devil*

PHRASES **the souls of the dead**

2 **part of sb/sth that shows its true nature**

ADJ. **very** *The plea touched him to his very soul.* **| whole | inner**

VERB + SOUL **lose** *In the process of being made into a film, the story seemed to have lost its soul.* **| bare** *He bared his soul to her.* **| search** *I searched my soul for any malice that could have provoked his words, but found none.*

SOUL + NOUN **mate**

PREP. **in your ~** *Deep in her soul she knew she had to return to her country.*

PHRASES **body and soul** *She gave herself to him body and soul.* **| heart and soul** *He gave himself heart and soul to the cause.*

3 **deep feeling and thought**

VERB + SOUL **have | lack**

PREP. **with ~** *She sang the song with passion and soul.*

4 **person**

ADJ. **little** *poor little soul* **| old | good | bad | lost, poor, unfortunate | simple | dear, gentle, kind, kindly** *a kind old soul* **| sensitive | brave | romantic | tormented, tortured, troubled | living** *There was no other living soul to be seen.*

PHRASES **a soul in torment** *The dog was howling like a soul in torment.* **| not be a soul in sight** *By midnight, there wasn't a soul in sight.*

sound *adj.*

1 **in good condition**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem**

ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably** *That seems like fairly sound advice.* **| structurally** *Is the building structurally sound?*

PHRASES **safe and sound** (= not hurt) *We arrived home safe and sound.*

2 **sensible**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, perfectly** *She had a perfectly sound reason for acting as she did.* **| fairly, pretty, reasonably | basically, fundamentally | commercially, ecologically, environmentally, financially, ideologically, theoretically** *It was a financially sound investment.*

sound *noun*

1 **sth you hear**

ADJ. **big, deafening, loud, powerful** *We need a big powerful sound from the trumpets in the final passage.* | **audible** | **faint, little, soft** | **high** | **deep, low** | **clean, clear, sharp** *He produces a good clean sound on his flute.* | **piercing** | **muffled** | **amazing, beautiful, good, lovely, pleasing** | **awful, horrible, sickening** *There was a sickening sound as his head made contact with the concrete.* | **familiar, strange** | **distinctive** | **haunting** | **booming, buzzing, clanking, etc.** | **metallic** | **hollow** | **distorted** | **distant** *the distant sound of church bells* | **guitar, piano, etc.** *She tried to describe what made a good guitar sound.* | **speech, vowel**

VERB + SOUND **hear** | **emit, make, produce, pronounce, transmit, utter** *What's making that awful creaking sound? Three bones transmit sounds to the inner ear. He didn't utter a single sound throughout the meeting.*

SOUND + VERB **carry, travel** *Sound carries well over calm water.* | **come** *A strange sound came from the box.* | **echo** | **die away**

SOUND + NOUN **wave** | **effect** | **bite** *As a politician he is a master of the 30-second sound bite.*

PREP. **at the ~ of** *He turned around at the sound of footsteps behind him.* | **without a ~** *The door opened without a sound.* | **~ of** *the sound of breaking glass* | **~ from** *There was a strange sound from downstairs.*

PHRASES **the speed of sound 2 the sound** from television/radio, etc.

ADJ. **recorded** | **mono, stereo**

VERB + SOUND **turn down/up** *Can you turn the sound up?*

SOUND + NOUN **level, quality** | **system** *a stereo sound system* | **recording** | **recorder** | **engineer** > Note at SOUND

soundtrack *noun*

ADJ. **film**

VERB + SOUNDTRACK **compose | listen to**

PREP. **~ for/of/to** *She composed the soundtracks to several hit movies.*

soup *noun*

ADJ. **chunky, creamy, hearty, thick** *hearty vegetable soup* **| clear, thin | hot | cold | home-made | condensed, dried, packet, tinned | chicken, tomato, etc.**

QUANT. **bowl, cup, mug | packet, tin**

VERB + SOUP **cook, make, prepare | bring to the boil, heat (up), simmer | have** *We had a cold cucumber soup as a starter.* **| drink, eat** (**Eat** is the normal verb when the soup is served in a bowl.) **| slurp** *Don't slurp your soup!* **| ladle (out), serve** *He ladled out three bowls of soup.*

SOUP + NOUN **bowl, dish, plate, tureen | spoon | kitchen** (= a place where soup and other food is supplied free to people with no money)

PHRASES **a bowl/cup/mug of soup, a packet/tin of soup** > Special page at FOOD

sour *adj.*

1 **having a sharp taste**

VERBS **be, taste** *The sauce tasted very sour.*

ADV. **extremely, very | a bit, quite, rather, slightly**

2 **not fresh**

VERBS **be, smell, taste** *The milk smelled sour.* **| go, turn** *By the next day the wine had turned sour.*

ADV. **very | a bit, rather, slightly**

3 **bad-tempered**

VERBS **be | go, grow, turn | a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** *Their friendship has turned a little sour.*

ADV. **extremely, really, very**

source *noun*

1 where you get sth from

ADJ. **excellent, fertile, good, lucrative, reliable, rich, valuable** *a fertile source of ideas a lucrative source of income a rich source of vitamins* | **important, main, major, principal** | **cheap** *a cheap source of labour* | **external, foreign** *Do you have any foreign sources of income?* | **independent** *an independent source of funding* | **additional** | **alternative** *We need to look for alternative sources of energy.* | **natural** | **renewable** *The village obtains all its energy from renewable sources.* | **energy, food, heat, light, power, water**

VERB + SOURCE **be, constitute, prove, provide** *The census constitutes the principal source of official statistics. These crustaceans provide a valuable food source for some fish.* | **exploit, tap, use (as)** *The government hopes to tap new sources of employment in the area of health.* | **locate** *We tried to locate the source of the sound.*

PREP. **at ~** *Under the PAYE system, employees' income is taxed at source* (= by the employer). | **~ of** *a reliable source of advice*

PHRASES **a variety of sources** *The research was funded from a wide variety of sources.*

2 person, book, etc. that gives information

ADJ. **invaluable, useful, valuable** | **authoritative, informed, reliable, reputable** | **unreliable** | **original** | **independent** | **anonymous** | **primary, secondary** | **published** | **biographical, documentary, historical, literary, written** | **diplomatic, government, intelligence, military, official, police** *Intelligence sources report a build-up of troops just inside the border.* | **data, information**

VERB + SOURCE **use (as)** | **cite, quote** *Researchers try to quote primary sources wherever possible.* | **disclose, name, reveal** *The police refused to reveal the source of their information.*

SOURCE + VERB **claim sth, describe sth, disclose sth, indicate sth, report sth, reveal sth, say sth, suggest sth** *Government sources indicated that a compromise might be reached. One source said: 'Our blood is up. We are angry at the way we* *have been treated.'* **| deny sth**

SOURCE + NOUN **material**

PREP. **according to ~s** *According to informed sources, a takeover bid is planned for next month.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **sources close to sb** *Sources close to the player claim he won't be entering this year's championship.*

sovereignty *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, full, unlimited** *Demonstrators demanded full sovereignty for the self-proclaimed republic.* **| limited | inalienable | joint, shared | national, popular | British, Japanese, etc. | consumer, economic, legal, parliamentary, political, territorial**

VERB + SOVEREIGNTY **enjoy, exercise, have** *China exercises sovereignty over Hong Kong.* **| share | claim, declare, establish, proclaim | give sb/sth, grant sb/sth | give up, relinquish, renounce | violate | defend**

SOVEREIGNTY + VERB **reside (in/with sb/sth)** *Sovereignty resides with the people.*

PREP. **~ over** *The treaty gave Edward III sovereignty over Calais and the whole of Aquitaine.*

PHRASES **a claim to sovereignty** *Two countries have a claim to sovereignty over the islands.* **| a declaration of sovereignty** *Protesters called on the government to adopt a declaration of sovereignty.* **| a loss of sovereignty** *the partial loss of sovereignty to supranational institutions* **| the sovereignty of Parliament/the people** *This constitutes an attack on the sovereignty of Parliament.* **| a transfer of sovereignty** *fears about the transfer of sovereignty to the European Union* **| a violation of sovereignty**

sow *verb*

ADV. **early** *Sow early for an early crop.* **| thickly, thinly** *Sow the seeds quite thinly.*

PREP. **with** *We've sown that field with wheat.*

space *noun*

1 **empty area**

ADJ. **large, vast, wide** *She left a large space empty at the bottom of the page. He liked the wide open spaces of the Australian countryside.* | **adequate, ample, enough, sufficient** *The new flat has ample living space.* | **limited, small, tiny** | **narrow** *the narrow space between the sofa and the wall* | **open** | **confined, enclosed** *Avoid using the cleaner in a confined space.* | **awkward** *This chisel is useful for getting into awkward spaces.* | **available, free, vacant** *The exhibition takes up most of the available space in the gallery. looking for a free parking space* | **blank, empty, white** *Fill in the blank spaces in the table. The page layout included plenty of white space.* | **living** | **storage** | **floor, roof, shelf, wall, etc.** | **office** | **parking** | **personal** *She moved out of the house because she wanted her own personal space.* | **private** | **public** | **green** *The inner residential areas don't have many green spaces.* | **air** *The plane strayed into French air space.* | **disk** | **advertising** *The magazine is struggling to fill all its advertising space.* | **exhibition, gallery**

VERB + SPACE **make use of, take up, use** *The potted plants take up too much space.* | **create, make** *They moved the sofa to make space for the piano.* | **waste** | **save** | **clear** *We'd better clear a space for the new computer.* | **fill (in)** | **jostle for** *A motley collection of ornaments jostled for space on the crowded shelf.* | **stare into** *She sat there motionless, staring into space.*

PREP. **~ between** *the space between the bookshelves*

PHRASES **be/run short of space** *I'm running short of disk space.* | **time and space** *The writer lacked the time and space to develop his idea fully.*

2 **vast area containing planets, stars, etc.**

ADJ. **deep** | **outer**

VERB + SPACE **go into**

SPACE + NOUN **exploration, programme, research, science** | **flight, travel** | **capsule, probe, rocket, ship** (also **spaceship**), **shuttle, station**

PREP. **in ~** *the first man in space*

3 period of time

ADJ. **long | brief, short | 2-second, 10-minute, etc.** *The recording includes a 5-second space between tracks.* **| breathing** *The extension of the deadline gives us a breathing space.*

PREP. **for the ~ of** *The job holder will be on probation for the space of six months.* **| in/within the ~ of** *He fell asleep in the space of a few minutes.* **| ~ of** *She returned to top-class tennis after a space of two years.*

PHRASES **a space of time** *They have achieved a great deal in a short space of time.*

space *verb*

ADV. **at intervals, equally, evenly, regularly** *Telephone boxes are spaced at regular intervals along the motorway. Make sure the posts are spaced evenly apart.* **| irregularly | closely | generously, well, widely | apart, out** *The fruits should be well spaced out so that they are not touching each other.*

PREP. **along**

spacecraft *noun*

VERB + SPACECRAFT **launch**

SPACECRAFT + VERB **orbit sth** *a spacecraft orbiting the earth*

PREP. **in/on a/the ~**

spacious *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem**

ADV. **extremely, very | fairly, quite, reasonably | deceptively, surprisingly**
The house benefits from a deceptively spacious kitchen (= that is larger than it seems).

spade *noun*

1 **tool for digging**

ADJ. garden *There was a garden spade in the shed.*

VERB + SPADE dig sth with, use *He dug a deep hole in the lawn with his spade.*

PHRASES bucket and spade *children playing in the sand with their buckets and spades*

2 **playing card > Note at CARD**

spaghetti *noun*

ADJ. **wholemeal**

QUANT. **strand**

VERB + SPAGHETTI **eat, have | cook | drain, strain** *Drain the spaghetti well.*

SPAGHETTI + NOUN **sauce** > Special page at FOOD

span *noun*

1 **length**

ADJ. **full | broad, wide** *a broad span of interests* **| clear** *The bridge has a clear span of 36 metres.* **| 12-foot, 500-metre, etc. | wing** (also **wingspan)** *The bird has a 1-metre wingspan.*

2 **length of time**

ADJ. **long | short | 10-day, 2-week, etc. | entire | allotted** *The speech continued well beyond its allotted span.* **| time | life** (also **lifespan**) **| attention, concentration, memory** *He has a short attention span.*

VERB + SPAN **cover** *The book covers the entire span of Arab history.*

PREP. **over a/the ~** *Developments were monitored over a span of two years.*

PHRASES **a span of time/years**

Spanish *nou*n > Note at LANGUAGE

spare *verb*

ADV. **barely, hardly, scarcely** *She hardly spared him a second glance.*

VERB + SPARE **can/could**

PREP. **for** *Can you spare some money for the homeless?*

PHRASES **to spare** *Have you any money to spare? We should get there with half an hour to spare.*

spark *noun*

1 **small bright piece of burning material/electric flash**

ADJ. **tiny | flying | electric**

VERB + SPARK **emit, produce, send (out), shower, strike** *The firework showered sparks all over the lawn. His iron-tipped stick struck sparks from the pavement.*

SPARK + VERB **fly | ignite sth, set fire to sth** *Flying sparks set fire to the dry grass.* **| die (out)**

PHRASES **a shower of sparks** *The grinding wheel sent a shower of sparks across the workbench.* **| a spark of light**

2 **small amount of a quality/feeling**

ADJ. **little, tiny** *A tiny spark of rebellion flared within her.* **| creative, divine, vital**

VERB + SPARK **have | lack** *His performances lack creative spark.* **| feel** *She felt a little spark of anger.* **| kindle**

SPARK + VERB **flare, kindle**

PREP. **~ of** *He had kindled a spark of interest within her.*

PHRASES **a spark of hope/life, a spark of originality**

3 **(usually sparks) feelings of anger/excitement**

VERB + SPARK **shoot** *Her eyes shot sparks of contempt.* **| draw** *His remarks drew sparks from her.*

SPARK + VERB **fly** *Sparks flew at the meeting.*

sparkle *noun*

ADJ. **extra | old** *She has lost none of her old sparkle as a jazz singer.*

VERB + SPARKLE **have | lack | lose | add, put (back)** *A live band added extra sparkle to the occasion.*

PHRASES **a sparkle in your eyes**

spasm *noun*

ADJ. **sudden | muscle, muscular**

VERB + SPASM **feel** *He felt a spasm of panic sweeping over him.* **| go into** *The muscle goes into spasm, producing the symptom of cramp.*

SPASM + VERB **pass, subside**

PREP. **in ~** *She could not speak; her throat was in spasm.* **| ~ of** *He kicked the chair in a spasm of impatience.*

PHRASES **a spasm of coughing/pain**

spatter *verb*

ADV. **liberally**

PREP. **against** *Rain spattered against the window.* **| on** *Blood was spattered on the walls and doors.* **| over** *The water had spattered all over her face.* **| with** *His clothes were liberally spattered with mud.*

speak *verb*

1 have a conversation

ADV. **briefly** *We spoke briefly on the phone.* | **at length** | **hardly** *Ben hardly spoke to me all evening.*

VERB + SPEAK **want to** | **refuse to** *The president refused to speak to the waiting journalists.* | **dare (to)** *No one had ever dared speak to him like that before.*

PREP. **about, to** *I need to speak to Joseph about this matter.* | **with** *Can I speak with you for a minute?*

PHRASES **be on speaking terms (with sb)** *We are still on speaking terms after the argument.* | **not be speaking (to sb)** *Ed and Dave aren't speaking at the moment.*

2 use your voice to say sth

ADV. **loudly** | **quietly, softly** | **clearly** *You must speak loudly and clearly on the stage.* | **slowly** | **calmly** | **brusquely, sharply** | **briefly** | **at length** | **suddenly** | **hardly** | **eloquently, movingly** *She spoke eloquently about the need for action.* | **lovingly, warmly** | **disparagingly, harshly** | **encouragingly, soothingly** | **authoritatively, forcefully** | **earnestly** | **coherently, intelligibly, meaningfully** | **absently** | **freely, openly** | **boldly** | **hesitantly** | **out**

VERB + SPEAK **be able/unable to, can/could (hardly)** *She was so moved she could hardly speak.* | **begin to, open your mouth to** *She opened her mouth to speak and found she couldn't.* | **try to** | **dare not, not trust yourself to** *He nodded, not trusting himself to speak.* | **hear sb** *I heard him speak at the debating society.*

PREP. **about, against** *He spoke out against mismanagement.* | **for** *I speak for all my colleagues.* | **in favour of** *She spoke in favour of the new tax.* | **on** *She speaks on women's issues.* | **on behalf of** *I speak on behalf of many thousands of women.* | **of** *He speaks very warmly of you.* | **to** *He will be speaking to history students about the causes of war.*

3 know a language

ADV. **fluently, well** *He speaks German fluently.*

VERB + SPEAK **be able/unable to, can/could | learn to** *learning to speak a foreign language* **| teach sb to**

PREP. **in** *Would you prefer it if we spoke in French?*

speaker *noun*

1 **person who makes a speech**

ADJ. **brilliant, good | keynote, main, principal | guest, invited, visiting | public** *She's a good public speaker.* **| after-dinner**

2 **person who speaks a particular language**

ADJ. **fluent** *He's a fluent Arabic speaker.* **| mother-tongue, native** *a native speaker of English* **| non-native | Japanese, Russian, etc.**

spear *noun*

ADJ. **hunting**

VERB + SPEAR **be armed with, carry** *The tribesmen were armed with spears and shields.* **| lift, raise | brandish | hurl, throw | thrust**

PHRASES **the point of a spear** *She had a fish impaled on the point of her spear.*

special *noun*

ADJ. **daily** *The restaurant has an extensive menu and daily specials.* **| television, TV** *There are lots of TV Christmas specials for children this year.* **| Christmas, election | football**

specialist *noun*

ADJ. **leading, top** *a leading cancer specialist* | **qualified, trained** | **experienced** | **independent** | **academic** | **professional** | **technical** | **clinical, medical** | **industry, subject** | **hospital** | **cancer, ear, eye, heart, skin** | **finance/ financial, marketing, property** | **tax** | **recruitment** | **communications, computer, software, systems** | **education**

VERB + SPECIALIST **bring in** *They brought in an outside specialist to install the computer system.*

PREP. **~ in** *She is a specialist in eighteenth-century English painting.* | **~ on** *a specialist on the history of this city*

PHRASES **a group/team of specialists, a specialist in the field** *The book is written by P.H. Reaney, a noted specialist in the field.* > Note at DOCTOR> Note at JOB

speciality *noun*

ADJ. **local, regional**

PHRASES **a speciality of the house** *I ordered the speciality of the house?frogs' legs.*

specialization *noun*

ADJ. **increased, increasing | narrow** *His specialization is too narrow to be of interest to more than a handful of students.* **| professional | academic | economic** *There has been increased economic specialization throughout the country.* **| regional**

QUANT. **degree** *The production line involves a high degree of specialization of labour.*

PREP. **~ in** *Her degree is in French, with specialization in seventeenth-century literature.*

PHRASES **an area of specialization** *The company has gradually focused on its current areas of specialization.*

specialized *adj.*

VERBS **be** *These tools are very specialized.* **| become**

ADV. **highly, very** *a job calling for highly specialized skills* **| increasingly | narrowly** *narrowly specialized subjects* **| fairly, quite, rather, relatively**

species *noun*

ADJ. **living | extinct | common | rare | different, distinct | related** *closely related species of beetle* **| native | alien | wild | dominant | endangered, threatened | protected | animal, bird, fish, insect, mammal/mammalian, plant, tree, etc.** *The area is rich in different plant species.* **| human** *the development of the human species*

SPECIES + VERB **be found, grow, live, occur** *Similar species of fish occur in Mongolia.* **| be threatened with extinction, become extinct, die out | survive**

PREP. **~ of** *a native species of fish*

PHRASES **a member of a species**

specific *adj.*

VERBS **be** *Can you be a little more specific in your instructions?*

ADV. **highly, very** *issuing a highly specific set of instructions* **| quite | fairly, rather**

PREP. **about** *She was quite specific about the type she wanted.*

specification *noun*

ADJ. **complete, detailed, full | clear, exact | standard | high** *The yachts are built to the highest specifications.* **| strict | original | design, technical | customer | contract, job, product, service** *The manager has drafted job specifications for each of the positions.*

VERB + SPECIFICATION **draft, draw up, lay down, write | meet** *The aircraft have to meet the strict specifications laid down by the FAA.*

PREP. **(according) to the/your ~s** *Each vehicle can be equipped according to your specifications.*

specify *verb*

ADV. **clearly | fully | carefully | exactly, precisely** *She did not specify precisely how many people were involved in the incident.* **| explicitly | correctly** *Are all the details correctly specified?* **| uniquely** *Each computer is uniquely specified by its serial number.* **| otherwise** *Unless otherwise specified, all fields have a maximum length of 20 characters.*

VERB + SPECIFY **allow sb to | require sb to | be used to | be possible to** *It should be possible to specify the range of values of x which would satisfy this equation.* **| be difficult to**

specimen *noun*

1 **example**

ADJ. **large, small | beautiful, fine, good, healthy, magnificent, perfect, prize** *This is a fine specimen of a walnut tree.* **| poor | living, preserved | rare | physical**

SPECIMEN + NOUN **plant, tree | letter, paper** *specimen exam papers*

2 **small amount of sth used for testing**

ADJ. **blood, urine, etc. | geological**

VERB + SPECIMEN **collect, take | give** *The motorist may be required to give a urine specimen.* **| obtain**

PREP. **~ of** *a specimen of blood*

spectacle *noun*

ADJ. **dramatic, great, magnificent | sad, unedifying** *the sad spectacle of him struggling to keep up with the younger players* **| public** *Hangings took place outside the prison as a public spectacle.* **| sporting**

VERB + SPECTACLE **witness**

PHRASES **make a spectacle of yourself** (= make yourself look ridiculous in public)

spectacles *noun*

ADJ. **heavy | gold-rimmed, horn-rimmed, metal-framed, rimless, steel-rimmed, wide-framed | pebble, thick, thick-lensed | bifocal, half-moon, tinted | dark | safety**

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + SPECTACLES **have on, wear | put on | take off | push up** *She pushed her spectacles up her nose and sighed.* **| adjust | polish | look through/over, peer through/over** *He peered at the waiter over his spectacles.*

SPECTACLES + VERB **be perched on sth, perch on sth** *Her wire-framed spectacles were perched on the end of her nose.* **| glint** *Her spectacles glinted in the moonlight.* **| steam up** *His spectacles steamed up in the hot room.*

PREP. **behind your ~, through your ~**

spectacular *adj.*

VERBS **be, look**

ADV. **really, very | absolutely, quite, truly** *The waterfall is quite spectacular.* **| pretty, rather**

spectator *noun*

ADJ. **mere, passive | interested | paying | cricket, football, sports, etc.**

QUANT. **crowd**

SPECTATOR + VERB **gather, turn up | line sth** *Spectators lined the route of the president's walkabout.* **| applaud (sb/sth), boo (sb/sth), cheer (sb/sth)**

SPECTATOR + NOUN **event, sport**

spectre *noun*

ADJ. **terrible | old | constant**

VERB + SPECTRE **evoke, raise** *Wall Street's collapse raised spectres of the 1987 stock market crash.* **| banish**

SPECTRE + VERB **hang over sb/sth, haunt sb/sth, hover over sb/sth, loom (over sb/sth)**

PREP. **~ of** *The terrible spectre of civil war hung over the country once again.*

spectrum *noun*

1 of colours

ADJ. **visible** *Beyond the red end of the visible light spectrum is infrared.* **| continuous** *a continuous spectrum of light waves* **| colour, electromagnetic**

SPECTRUM + NOUN **analysis**

PHRASES **the colours of the spectrum** *Other species can perceive colours of the spectrum that are invisible to us.* **| the … band/end/part of the spectrum** *the ultraviolet part of the spectrum*

2 full or wide range

ADJ. **complete, full** *The courses cover the full spectrum of levels.* **| broad, wide | narrow | entire, whole | political, social**

VERB + SPECTRUM **cover**

PREP. **across the ~** *There was consensus across the political spectrum.* **| ~ of** *a wide spectrum of interests*

PHRASES **at one/the other end of the spectrum, both/opposite ends of the spectrum** *The two speakers were chosen to represent opposite ends of the spectrum.* **| a spectrum of opinion** *The newspaper covers a broad spectrum of opinion.*

speculate *verb*

VERB + SPECULATE **can/could only | decline to, refuse to | be fascinating to, be interesting to, be tempting to | be idle to** *It is idle to speculate what the consequences would have been.* **| be difficult to**

PREP. **about** *There was no point speculating about the possibility of them getting back together.* **| as to** *We can only speculate as to this man's identity.* **| on/upon** *He refused to speculate on her reasons for leaving.*

speculation *noun*

1 making guesses about sth

ADJ. **considerable, intense, much, widespread | further, increasing, renewed | continuing, endless | pure | mere** *Whether or not he will get the job is mere speculation.* **| wild | idle, fruitless | rife** *Speculation was rife as to whom the prince might marry.* **| media, press | metaphysical, philosophical**

VERB + SPECULATION **cause, encourage, fuel, give rise to, increase, intensify, invite, lead to, prompt, raise | dampen, discourage, end, put an end to | dismiss | indulge in**

PREP. **amid ~** *He was dropped from the team amid speculation that he was seriously ill.* **| ~ among** *There was wild speculation among the students as to the reason for cancelling the lecture.* **| ~ about/as to/on/over** *There has been increasing speculation over the future of the monarchy.*

PHRASES **a matter for speculation, a subject of speculation**

2 buying and selling for profit

ADJ. **financial | market | currency, land, property, etc.**

PREP. **~ against** *speculation against the euro* **| ~ in** *speculation in oil* **| ~ on** *speculation on the stock market*

speech *noun*

1 **speaking**

ADJ. **careful, clear, clipped | casual | impaired | slurred** *She could tell by his slurred speech that he had been drinking.* **| connected, continuous, fluent | natural, normal, ordinary | spontaneous | direct | indirect, reported | free** *The demonstrators were demanding rights of assembly and free speech.* **| conversational, everyday | children's, female, human, etc. | middle-class, working-class, etc.**

VERB + SPEECH **have** *Most people have speech, but significantly fewer have writing.*

SPEECH + NOUN **act | style | defect, impairment, impediment | therapist, therapy | community** *phonological variation in a speech community*

PREP. **in ~** *Certain grammatical rules must be followed when describing a conversation in reported speech.*

PHRASES **a figure of speech** *When we talk about 'selfish' genes it is just a figure of speech.* **| freedom of speech** *the right of/to freedom of speech* **| the power of speech** *He temporarily lost the power of speech after the accident.*

2 **formal talk**

ADJ. **brief, little, short | interminable, long, long-winded, rambling | keynote, major | eloquent, excellent, good | emotional, impassioned, rousing, stirring | boring | impromptu | public | televised | political | opening | closing | acceptance, after-dinner, Budget, campaign, conference, farewell, inaugural** *The prizewinner gave an emotional acceptance speech. the Chancellor's Budget speech* **| maiden** *her maiden speech in the House of Commons*

VERB + SPEECH **deliver, give, make | broadcast** *His speech was broadcast on national radio.* **| write**

PREP. **in a/the ~ | ~ about/on** *She made a stirring campaign speech on improving the lot of the unemployed.* **| ~ to** *In her speech to the House of Commons, she outlined her vision of Britain in the 21st century.*

speechless *adj.*

VERBS **be, remain, sit, stand** *Rachel stood speechless.* **| leave sb, render sb** *The news left us all speechless.*

ADV. **completely, totally | almost, practically | for a moment, momentarily, temporarily**

PREP. **with** *He was almost speechless with anger.*

speed limit *noun*

ADJ. **high, low | legal**

VERB + SPEED LIMIT **keep to/within | break, exceed** *Motorists can be fined on the spot for exceeding speed limits.* **| set | raise | reduce**

PREP. **over the ~** *He was driving over the 60 mph speed limit.* **| below/under the ~, within the ~** *You have to come down that hill in a low gear to keep within the speed limit.*

speed *noun*

ADJ. **amazing, astonishing, breakneck, fast, great, high, incredible, lightning, phenomenal, remarkable, startling, surprising, terrific** *The new houses have been built with astonishing speed. He drove us to the hospital at breakneck speed.* | **low, slow** | **full, maximum, top** | **excess** *90% of car accidents involve excess speed.* | **constant, steady** | **average** | **cruising, flying, operating, reading, running** *The machinery is regulated to a safe running speed.* | **engine, traffic, etc.** | **air, wind**

QUANT. **burst** *The Greek runner produced an electrifying burst of speed over the last 50 metres.*

VERB + SPEED **attain, reach** *The car reaches a speed of 60 miles per hour within five seconds.* | **build up, gain, gather, increase, pick up** *The train pulled out of the station, slowly gathering speed.* | **lose** | **curb, kill, reduce** *measures to curb the speed of cars travelling through the village* | **maintain** *The boat maintained a steady speed while the sea was calm.* | **measure**

SPEED + VERB **increase** | **decrease**

SPEED + NOUN **control, reduction, restriction** | **record** *'Mallard' holds the speed record for a steam locomotive.* | **hump** | **camera, trap**

PREP. **at ~** (= fast) *The train was travelling at speed when the accident happened. at lightning speed* | **with ~** *Hedgehogs, though small, can move with surprising speed.*

PHRASES **(at) full speed** *He was running at full speed when a tendon snapped in his leg.* | **full speed ahead** *The boat can be brought to a stop from full speed ahead within her own length.* | **the speed of light/sound** *Concorde crosses the Atlantic at twice the speed of sound.* | **a turn of speed** *For a small car it has a good turn of speed.*

speeding *noun*

VERB + SPEEDING **fine sb for, stop sb for** *The driver had been stopped twice for speeding on the same day.*

SPEEDING + NOUN **conviction, offence | fine** *He was obliged to pay a £40 speeding fine.*

spell *noun*

1 **period of time**

ADJ. **lengthy, long, prolonged | brief, short | 5-minute, 10-day, etc. | good | bad** *He's going through a bit of a bad spell at the moment.* **| quiet | barren, lean** *Viera ended his barren spell with a goal against Parma.* **| cold, dry, hot, mild, sunny, warm, wet**

VERB + SPELL **go through, have**

PREP. **during a … ~** *She managed to write a letter during a quiet spell at work.* **| ~ as** *He had a brief spell as ambassador to Turkey.*

PHRASES **a spell of … weather** *a spell of sunny weather* **| a spell of unemployment**

2 **magical effect**

ADJ. **magic, magical | powerful | hypnotic** *the hypnotic spell of the crickets singing in the garden*

VERB + SPELL **be/come/fall under | cast, put, weave** *The witch cast a spell on/over them.* **| break, remove** *She uttered the magic word, and the spell was broken.*

PREP. **under a/the ~** *Sleeping Beauty was under a spell when the prince found her.* **| under sb's ~** *The audience was completely under his spell.*

spell *verb*

ADV. **correctly, wrongly**

PREP. **as** *The article spelled 'survey' as 'servay'.* **| with** *Is 'necessary' spelt with one 's', or two?* **PHRASAL VERBS spell sth out**

ADV. **clearly | fully, in detail | exactly, precisely** *She spelled out precisely what she wanted.*

VERB + SPELL **have to, need to**

PREP. **for** *Do I really have to spell it out for you?* **| to** *His speech spelled out a clear message to the car industry.*

spelling *noun*

ADJ. **correct, incorrect | conventional, usual | alternative, different, variant | American, English, etc. | phonetic**

VERB + SPELLING **use | check | correct | improve**

SPELLING + NOUN **error, mistake | test | checker | dictionary, rule | variant | reform**

PREP. **in … ~** *In American spelling ‘travelled’ only has one ‘l’.* **| ~ for/of** *The document uses the British spelling for caesium.*

PHRASES **be good/poor, etc. at spelling**

spend *verb*

ADV. **wisely** *Try to be objective if you want to spend your money wisely.* **| lavishly**

PREP. **on** *The company spent a lot on advertising.*

spending *noun*

ADJ. **total** *There has been an increase in total government spending.* **| high, low | annual, monthly, etc. | defence, education, military, R & D, welfare, etc. | capital | government, local (authority), public, state | private | consumer**

VERB + SPENDING **boost, increase | cut, cut back (on), reduce**

SPENDING + VERB **rise | fall**

SPENDING + NOUN **level | programme, target | cut, limit | money** *How much spending money are you taking on holiday?* **| power | spree** *The boys went on a two-day spending spree with the stolen credit cards.*

PREP. **~ on** *More spending on the National Health Service was promised.*

PHRASES **a cut/reduction in spending, an increase/a rise in spending** > Special page at BUSINESS

sperm *noun*

VERB + SPERM **produce**

SPERM + VERB **fertilize sth** *The sperm fertilizes the egg.*

SPERM + NOUN **cell | count** *a high/low/normal sperm count* **| duct | bank, donor**

sphere *noun*

ADJ. **wider** *He wanted to spread his ideas to a wider sphere than the school.* **| academic, cultural, domestic, economic, military, political, social** *His work is little known outside the academic sphere.* **| private, public**

PREP. **in/within sb's/the ~** *The region is within the Russian sphere of influence.* **| outside sb's/the ~** *The matter is outside my sphere of responsibility.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **a sphere of activity/influence/life**

spice *noun*

1 **flavour for food**

ADJ. **ground | mixed | exotic**

SPICE + NOUN **mix/mixture | cupboard, jar, rack**

PHRASES **herbs and spices**

2 **excitement and interest**

VERB + SPICE **add, give** *The romance added spice to the holiday.*

spice *verb*

PREP. **with** *Their bread is spiced with cinnamon.*

PHRASES **heavily/highly spiced** *I don't really like highly spiced food.* **| lightly spiced** *a dish of lightly spiced rice*

spicy *adj.*

VERBS **be, smell, taste** *The soup tasted mildly spicy.*

ADV. **really, very | lightly, mildly, quite, slightly | deliciously** *a deliciously spicy flavour*

spider *noun*

ADJ. **hairy | poisonous**

SPIDER + VERB **make/spin/weave a web | crawl, run, scuttle | hunt sth | catch sth | bite sth | lurk**

SPIDER + NOUN **silk | web**

PHRASES **a spider's web**

spill *verb*

ADV. **almost | accidentally | out, over** *He nodded, his tears spilling over.*

VERB + SPILL **try not to | let sth** *He opened the curtains, letting the morning light spill into the room.*

PREP. **down, from, into, onto, out of, over** *I accidentally spilled my drink all over him.*

spin *noun*

1 **fast turning movement**

ADJ. **quick, rapid | slow | back** (also **backspin**), **top** (also **topspin)** *She puts heavy topspin on her serve.*

VERB + SPIN **go into** *He had to stop the helicopter from going into a spin.* **| come out of | put sb/sth in(to), send sb/sth into** *(figurative) The president's death sent the stock market into a spin.* **| give sth** *Give the washing another spin.* **| impart, put on** *How do you put more spin on the ball?*

SPIN + NOUN **bowler | bowling**

2 **on information**

ADJ. **positive**

VERB + SPIN **put on** *The chairman tried to put a positive spin on the closure of the factory.*

SPIN + NOUN **doctor** *government spin doctors*

PREP. **with a ~** *The film retells the famous legend with a Marxist spin.*

spin *verb*

ADV. **fast, quickly, rapidly** *The blade spins very fast.* **| freely** *The wheel can now spin freely.* **| around/round, away, back** *He spun round to face her.*

VERB + SPIN **begin to, start to | make sth** *(figurative) The wine made my head spin.*

PHRASES **spin like a top** *The engine stopped. The dinghy spun like a top and a huge wave came at me.* **| spin on your heel** *She spun on her heel and walked out of the room.* **| spin out of control** *The car spun out of control.*

spine *noun*

1 **backbone**

ADJ. **fractured | cervical, lumbar**

VERB + SPINE **bend, curve | straighten | stiffen | slide along/down/up** *(figurative) An icy chill slid up my spine.*

PREP. **in the/your ~** *the nerves in the spine*

PHRASES **the base of the spine, curvature of the spine, send shivers along/down your spine**

2 **sharp point on some plants/animals**

ADJ. **pointed, sharp | fine | poisonous, venomous | savage** *Once embedded in the skin, these savage spines are difficult to dislodge.*

VERB + SPINE **bear, carry, have**

spin-off *noun*

ADJ. **positive, valuable | unexpected | commercial**

PREP. **~ from**

spiral *noun*

ADJ. **destructive, vicious | downward, upward | inflationary, wage-price**

VERB + SPIRAL **halt, stop**

PREP. **~ of** *to halt the vicious downward spiral of drug abuse*

spirit *noun*

1 **mind or feelings**

ADJ. **human**

PREP. **in ~** *I will be with you in spirit.*

2 **spirits: morale**

ADJ. **flagging**

VERB + SPIRIT **keep up, lift, raise** *We sang songs to keep our spirits up.* **| revive | break, dampen** *A string of defeats has failed to dampen the team's spirits.*

SPIRIT + VERB **lift, rise**

PHRASES **in good/high/low/poor, etc. spirits** *She isn't in the best of spirits today.*

3 **person**

ADJ. **guiding, leading, moving** *She was a guiding spirit in primary education.* **| generous | grudging, mean | brave, proud | free, independent | kindred** *He found kindred spirits in the peace movement.*

4 **courage/liveliness**

ADJ. **great, tremendous | adventurous, competitive, fighting, indomitable, pioneer/pioneering**

VERB + SPIRIT **be full of, have** *She has plenty of fighting spirit.* **| display, show | break**

PREP. **with ~** *He sang with great spirit.*

PHRASES **broken in spirit** *They tortured him until he was broken in spirit.*

5 **feelings of loyalty**

ADJ. **community, party, public, team**

VERB + SPIRIT **have | develop, foster, promote**

6 **attitude/mood**

ADJ. **right** *He's got the right spirit!* **| essential, genuine, true | carefree | democratic, revolutionary | entrepreneurial | festive, Christmas**

VERB + SPIRIT **have | enter into**

PREP. **in a ~ of** *Both sides have come together in a spirit of goodwill.* **| ~ of** *a spirit of adventure*

PHRASES **in the right/wrong spirit, the spirit of the age/times**

7 **real/intended meaning of a rule, an agreement, etc.**

VERB + SPIRIT **obey | be/go against, be contrary to**

PHRASES **the spirit of the law** *The referee should try to obey the spirit as well as the letter of the law.*

8 **soul/ghost**

ADJ. **ancestral | evil, malevolent | restless** *Owls were believed to be restless spirits who had returned to earth.*

VERB + SPIRIT **conjure up, contact, invoke, summon (up) | exorcise, ward off** *She slept with a cross under the pillow to ward off evil spirits.* **| be possessed by**

SPIRIT + VERB **live on** *Many people believe the spirit lives on after death.*

PHRASES **the spirits of the dead**

9 **(usually spirits) strong alcoholic drink**

QUANT. **measure** *a single measure of spirits*

VERB + SPIRIT **drink**

PHRASES **a bottle of spirits**

spiritual *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **deeply, truly, very** *This is an deeply spiritual piece of music. a truly spiritual experience* **| purely | almost** *The colours had an almost spiritual quality.*

spite *noun*

ADJ. **pure | personal**

VERB + SPITE **be full of, feel** *She was angry and full of spite.* **| vent** *He vented his spite on his grandfather.*

PREP. **out of ~** *She killed her neighbour's cow out of pure spite.* **| with ~** *'Your cooking is hard to forget', he said with spite.* **| ~ towards** *I felt no spite towards her.*

splash *noun*

1 **sound; amount of liquid**

ADJ. **big, huge | small | loud | soft**

VERB + SPLASH **make** *(often figurative) She intended to make a big splash with her wedding.* **| hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *She jumped into the pool with a splash.*

2 **area of colour/light**

ADJ. **bold, bright** *a bold splash of red*

VERB + SPLASH **add, lend** *Window boxes of tulips added a splash of colour to the street.*

PHRASES **a splash of colour/light**

splash *verb*

1 **in/with water**

ADV. **happily** *The baby was splashing happily in the bath.* | **about, around** *splashing around in the sea*

PREP. **against** *Rain splashed against the window.* | **on/onto** *She splashed some petrol onto the wood and set fire to it.* | **over** *She splashed some water over her boots to clean them.* | **through** *They splashed through the puddles.* | **with** *Her clean washing was all splashed with mud.*

2 **be splashed with sth: with a colour**

ADV. **generously, liberally** *He was in his mid-forties, his hair liberally splashed with grey.*

splendid *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **really** *a really splendid evening* **| absolutely, perfectly, quite, simply, truly** *The meal was quite splendid!* **| pretty, rather**

splendour *noun*

ADJ. **full** *A butterfly emerged in its full splendour a week later.* **| glorious, great, regal | former, original | faded, fading | scenic**

VERB + SPLENDOUR **have** *The hotel has the splendour of a nineteenth-century mansion.* **| lose | recapture, regain** *It will take a lot of repair work before the theatre regains its former splendour.* **| restore sth to** *The house has been restored to its original splendour.*

PREP. **in ~** *They dined in a special suite in glorious splendour.* **| in sb's/sth's ~** *There below lay Paris in all its splendour.* **| of ~** *a castle of great splendour* **| ~s of** *I've only just discovered the splendours of the English countryside.*

PHRASES **in solitary splendour** *The castle rises in solitary splendour on the fringe of the desert.*

splinter *noun*

ADJ. **tiny | glass, metal, wooden**

VERB + SPLINTER **get, have | pull out, remove**

SPLINTER + VERB **lodge**

PREP. **~ of** *A small splinter of metal had lodged in his thumb.*

split *noun*

ADJ. **clear, deep, major, serious** *A serious split in the ruling coalition appeared soon after the election.* **| growing | damaging**

VERB + SPLIT **cause, lead to**

SPLIT + VERB **appear, occur, open up**

PREP. **~ between** *a split between the right and left wings of the party* **| ~ in/within, ~ over** *a growing split in the Church over the ordination of women* **| ~ with** *Mike's split with his wife*

split *verb*

1 **break into two or more parts**

ADV. **easily** *Plastic splits quite easily.* | **apart**

PREP. **into** *He split the log into several pieces.*

PHRASES **split (sth) across/down the middle** *The lid had split down the middle.* | **split (sth) open** *The ripe seed pod splits open and scatters the seeds.* | **split (sth) in half/two** *Split the coconut in half.*

2 **separate into different groups**

ADV. **formally | eventually, finally | apart, away, off, up** *The rock group split up last year.*

PREP. **from** *Several factions split from the party.* | **into** *On January 1,1993 Czechoslovakia formally split into two independent states.* | **on/over** *The party finally split over the issue of gun control.*

PHRASES **be deeply/irrevocably split** *The party is deeply split on this issue.*

3 **divide/share sth**

ADV. **equally, evenly**

PREP. **among, between** *The cost has been split equally between three countries.*

PHRASES **split sth two/three/four ways** *The profit will be split three ways.*

spoil *verb*

1 **make sth useless/unsuccessful/not very good**

ADV. **completely, quite** *Her selfish behaviour completely spoiled the evening.* **| rather, slightly, somewhat**

VERB + SPOIL **mustn't, not be going to, not want to** *I don't want to spoil things for everyone else.* **| be a pity to** *It would be a pity to spoil the surprise.* **| try to | not let sth** *Don't let the bad weather spoil your holiday.*

2 **a child**

PREP. **with** *spoiling the children with expensive toys*

PHRASES **be completely/thoroughly/utterly spoilt** *Those children are thoroughly spoilt!* **| spoil sb rotten** *My grandparents used to spoil me rotten.* **| a spoilt brat/child**

spoils *noun*

VERB + SPOILS **divide, share** *The soldiers began to divide the spoils.* **| take**

PHRASES **a division/share of the spoils**

sponge *noun*

ADJ. **damp/dampened, wet | bath**

VERB + SPONGE **squeeze (out)**

SPONGE + VERB **fill with sth, soak sth up** *This sponge doesn't soak up water very well.*

PREP. **with a/the ~** *Wipe the surface with a damp sponge.*

sponsor *noun*

ADJ. **big, major | main | potential | private | official | commercial, corporate, industrial**

VERB + SPONSOR **look for, seek | attract, find, get | act as**

SPONSOR + VERB **back sb/sth, support sb/sth**

SPONSOR + NOUN **money**

PREP. **~ for/of** *I need to find some more sponsors for my bike ride to Brighton.*

sponsorship *noun*

ADJ. **generous, major | direct | arts, sports | business, commercial, corporate, government, industrial, private | tobacco**

VERB + SPONSORSHIP **attract, find, get, obtain, raise, receive, win | look for, seek | withdraw (from)** *The company has decided to withdraw from some of its sports sponsorship.*

SPONSORSHIP + NOUN **deal, package, programme, scheme | money**

PREP. **through ~** *Two million pounds were raised through sponsorship.* **| under (the) ~** *under commercial sponsorship* **| with/without ~** *Without generous corporate sponsorship, the ballet company would not have survived.* **| ~ for/of** *sponsorship for next year's World Cup* **| ~ from** *We have won sponsorship from one of the big banks.*

spontaneous *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem**

ADV. **genuinely | quite, totally | apparently, seemingly | wonderfully** *a wonderfully spontaneous performance of the symphony*

spooky *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound | become, get** *It got a bit spooky when James started telling ghost stories.*

ADV. **dead, decidedly, really, very | a bit, pretty, quite, rather, slightly**

spoon *noun*

ADJ. **dessert, serving, soup, sugar**

VERB + SPOON **pick up | lay down, put down | beat sth with, eat sth with, fold/stir sth in with, stir sth with, use** *I stirred my coffee with the sugar spoon.*

PREP. **~ of** *two spoons of sugar*

sport *noun*

ADJ. **mainstream, major, popular** *popular field sports such as football* **| minor, minority | amateur, professional, semi-professional | competitive | inter-club, inter-school, etc. | contact, non-contact** *In theory, basketball is a non-contact sport.* **| active | dangerous, hazardous, risky | gruelling | spectator | indoor, outdoor | summer, winter | individual, team | adventure** *the inherent dangers of adventure sports such as mountaineering* **| field | country | motor | water | combat** *Combat sports such as karate and judo carry with them the risk of injury.* **| racket | equestrian | blood, cruel**

VERB + SPORT **do, play** *He does a lot of sport. We played sports together when we were kids.* **| take up** *I need to take up a sport to get fit.* SPORT + NOUN (The following nouns all follow **sports**.), **event | centre, club, facilities, field, ground, hall, pavilion, stadium, venue | day** *the school sports day* **| person, personality, star | team | enthusiast, fan, follower | commentator | channel, coverage, page, paper** *Sports coverage in the local newspaper is quite good.* **| correspondent, editor, journalist, photographer, reporter, writer | injury | bag | equipment | goods | clothes/clothing | shop**

PREP. **in ~** *the use of dogs in sport*

PHRASES **the world of sport**

sportsman, sportswoman *noun*

ADJ. **famous | great, outstanding** *one of the greatest all-round sportswomen this country has produced* **| all-round | keen** *They are all keen sportsmen.* **| amateur, professional**

spot *noun*

1 **small red mark on the skin**

VERB + SPOT **break out in** *The children all had measles, and had broken out in spots.* **| scratch, squeeze**

2 **place/area**

ADJ. **exact, particular, precise | convenient, good, ideal, perfect, right, suitable** *Take the time to find the right spot to pitch your tent.* **| beautiful, beauty, idyllic, lovely, pleasant** *The lake is one of the local beauty spots.* **| favourite, popular** *a favourite spot for picnickers* **| deserted, desolate, isolated, lonely, remote | quiet, secluded | shady, sheltered | sunny | holiday, tourist | picnic | sore, tender | sensitive** *(often figurative) From his angry reply it was obvious that I had touched a sensitive spot.* **| vulnerable, weak** *Check your house for weak spots where a thief could get in.* **| blind** *(often figurative) I have a blind spot where jazz is concerned* (= I don't understand it). **| danger, trouble** *one of the world's major trouble spots* **| high, number one/two, etc., top** *The record quickly reached the number one spot in the charts.* **| bald** *He usually wears a hat to hide his bald spot.*

VERB + SPOT **mark** *On your map, X marks the spot where the race begins.* **| reach | be frozen/rooted to** *He stood rooted to the spot, unable to move.*

PREP. **on the ~** *The fire brigade was on the spot within minutes.*

PHRASES **an accident black spot**

spot *verb*

ADV. **quickly | easily** *Most of these fossils are too small to be easily spotted.* **| suddenly | eventually, finally**

VERB + SPOT **be difficult to, be easy to | fail to**

PHRASES **well spotted** *‘There's parking space over the far side.’ ‘Well spotted!’*

spotlight *noun*

1 **lamp**

VERB + SPOTLIGHT **shine on** *They shone the spotlight on a woman waving at the back of the audience.* **| step into** *He stepped into the spotlight to the wild applause of the crowd.*

SPOTLIGHT + VERB **be on sb/sth, fall on sb/sth, shine on sb/sth**

PREP. **in/under the ~** *It was hot under the spotlights.*

2 **public attention/interest**

ADJ. **national, public | media**

VERB + SPOTLIGHT **come into/under** *This issue will come under the spotlight at tomorrow's meeting.* **| bring sth into, put, throw, turn** *These revelations threw a spotlight on the shakiness of the economy.* **| share** *The captain had to share the spotlight with the new young star.* **| steal**

SPOTLIGHT + VERB **be on sb/sth, fall on sb/sth, turn on sb/sth**

PREP. **in/under the ~** *The quality of food in the shops is back in the spotlight.* **| out of the ~** *The affair is now out of the spotlight.*

sprawl *verb*

ADV. **untidily | out** *He was sprawled out on the sofa.*

PREP. **across, in, on, over** *She sprawled untidily in an armchair.*

PHRASES **lie/sit sprawled** *She lay sprawled across the bed.* **| send sb sprawling** *The blow sent him sprawling.*

spray *noun*

ADJ. **fine, light | salt, sea**

QUANT. **cloud, plume** *The boat sent a cloud of spray up behind it.*

VERB + SPRAY **send (up), throw (up)**

SPRAY + VERB **fly (up)** *Spray flew up onto the rocks.*

PREP. **~ of** *a spray of salt water*

spread *noun*

ADJ. **good, great, wide | rapid | gradual, slow | geographical, global** *The current survey will have a wider geographical spread.*

VERB + SPREAD **encourage** *Such unhygienic conditions encourage the spread of disease.* **| halt, prevent, stop | control, limit, reduce**

PREP. **~ of** *the spread of fire*

spread *verb*

1 **open sth so that you can see all of it**

ADV. **carefully | out** *We spread the rug out on the floor.*

PREP. **across, on, over**

PHRASES **spread sth open** *He had a newspaper spread open on his knee.*

2 **reach more people/wider area**

ADV. **fast, like wildfire, quickly, rapidly, soon** *The news spread like wildfire.* **| gradually, slowly | easily** *The disease spreads easily.* **| widely** *Allow plenty of space for this plant as its roots spread widely.* **| far and wide** *His fame had spread far and wide.* **| geographically** *Friends may be spread geographically. Neighbours, by definition, are nearby.* **| outwards**

PREP. **across, among, around/round, beyond, from, into, over, through, throughout, to** *The effects of this policy spread far beyond children now at school. The fire rapidly spread to adjoining buildings.*

PHRASES **thinly spread** *Expertise in this field is very thinly spread across the country.*

3 **cover a surface with a soft substance**

ADV. **generously, liberally, thickly | lightly, thinly | evenly** *Don't make the paste too thick, or it will not spread evenly.*

PREP. **on** *He spread jam on the toast.* **| with** *Spread each slice generously with butter.*

4 **divide/share sth**

ADV. **equally, evenly, uniformly | unevenly**

VERB + SPREAD **try to**

PREP. **among, between** *We tried to spread the workload evenly between the departments.* | **over** *The course takes forty hours, spread over twenty weeks.*

spree *noun*

ADJ. **massive** *a massive buying spree* **| mad | buying, shopping, spending | drinking, drunken | crime, killing | scoring** *Uruguay's scoring spree began in the fourth minute.*

VERB + SPREE **go on** *He's gone on a drinking spree.*

PREP. **on a ~** *She's out on a mad spending spree.*

spring *noun*

1 **season**

ADJ. **last, next, this (coming) | early, late, mid- | wet**

SPRING + NOUN **weather | sun, sunlight, sunshine | frost/frosts, rain/rains, wind | tide** *The highest spring tides of the the year occur after the equinoxes in March and September.* **| equinox | term** *The students spend the whole spring term on teaching practice.* **| flower | lamb, greens** *a delicious recipe for spring lamb* **| clean, cleaning** *They decided to give the attic a spring clean.* **| collection, exhibition** > Note at SEASON(for more collocates)

2 **coiled metal or wire**

VERB + SPRING **break** *The children broke some springs jumping on the bed.*

SPRING + VERB **break, go** *Most of the springs have gone in the old sofa.*

3 **where water comes up**

ADJ. **hot, thermal | bubbling | mineral, mountain**

SPRING + VERB **bubble** *A thermal spring bubbled up out of the rocks.*

SPRING + NOUN **water**

spring *verb*

ADV. **suddenly | apart, back, down, forward, out, up** *He sprang back in alarm.*

VERB + SPRING **be ready to, be waiting to** *The lion crouched, ready to spring.*

PREP. **at** *Therese sprang at him and kissed him on both cheeks.* **| into, out of** *He sprang out of the car.*

PHRASES **spring open** *He worked a knife blade into the drawer and it sprang open.* **| spring to attention** *The sentry sprang to attention.* **| spring to your feet** *She sprang to her feet and ran to answer the doorbell.*

sprinkle *verb*

ADV. **lightly | evenly**

PREP. **on, onto, over** *Sprinkle sugar evenly over the top of the cake.* **| with** *Sprinkle the meat lightly with salt.*

sprint *noun*

ADJ. **quick, short | 100-metre, etc.**

VERB + SPRINT **break into, make** *The runners broke into a sprint a few hundred yards from the finish. It started raining, so we made a sprint for a cafe.*

SPRINT + NOUN **relay** *Jamaica won the gold in the sprint relay.* **| finish** *Sato just pipped the Kenyan runner in a sprint finish.* **| champion** *Olympic sprint champion Marion Jones* **| hurdles | double** *the 100-metre and 200-metre sprint double*

PREP. **in a ~** *This car could comfortably outpace its rivals in a sprint.* **| ~ for** *The Moroccan came out best in a frantic sprint for the line.*

spur *noun*

1 **on horse rider's boots**

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + SPUR **dig in/into, put/set to** *He dug his spurs into the horse's flank and cantered off.*

2 **encouragement**

ADJ. **great, powerful, strong**

VERB + SPUR **act as, be | give (sb), provide (sb with)**

PREP. **~ for** *The research provided a spur for reform.* **| ~ to** *a spur to action*

spurt *noun*

ADJ. **sudden | great** *A great spurt of blood came out of the wound.* **| brief, little | final | growth**

VERB + SPURT **put on** *She put on a spurt to get to the station in time.* **| feel** *He felt a spurt of resentment against his brother.*

PREP. **with a ~** *With one final spurt, he reached the top of the hill.* **| ~ in** *a spurt in capital spending* **| ~ of**

spy *noun*

ADJ. **enemy, government, police**

VERB + SPY **act as, be, work as** *He denied acting as an enemy spy.* **| recruit (sb as)**

SPY + NOUN **film, movie, novel, story, thriller | camera, plane, satellite | network, ring** *Counter-intelligence officers uncovered a spy ring involving twenty agents.*

PREP. **~ for** *He was a spy for the government.*

PHRASES **a network of spies**

squabble *noun*

ADJ. **petty | bitter | domestic, family | internal**

VERB + SQUABBLE **have | resolve, settle**

PREP. **~ about/over** *squabbles about money* **| ~ among/between** *I always have to settle squabbles between the children.* **| ~ with** *a squabble with her publisher over royalties*

squad *noun*

ADJ. **good, strong** *They've got together a good squad for the World Cup.* **| anti-terrorist, bomb (disposal), crime, drug/drugs, flying, fraud, police, riot, vice** *an early-morning raid by the police flying squad* **| assassination, death, hit | demolition | firing** *It was almost his turn to go before the firing squad.* **| football, rowing, etc.**

SQUAD + NOUN **detective, member, officer** *a fraud squad detective* **| car**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He's working in the drugs squad.*

squalor *noun*

ADJ. **public, urban**

VERB + SQUALOR **live in**

PREP. **amid/in the ~ of** *a beautiful garden amid the squalor of the slums* **| in ~** *He was born in squalor next to London's docks.*

square *adj.*

VERBS **be, look**

ADV. **very** *The rooms are all very square.* **| absolutely, exactly | not quite** *The grid doesn't look quite square.* **| quite | nearly | roughly**

square *noun*

1 **shape**

ADJ. **neat | perfect**

VERB + SQUARE **cut sth into, divide sth into** *Cut the sandwiches into neat squares.*

SQUARE + NOUN **shape**

PREP. **~ of** *A square of light shone from the skylight.*

2 **open space in a town, etc.**

ADJ. **central, main | public | city, town, village | market** *crowds thronging the market square*

VERB + SQUARE **throng**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

squeak *noun*

ADJ. little | high, high-pitched

VERB + SQUEAK give, let out | hear

PREP. with a ~ *The door opened with a squeak.* **| ~ of** *She gave a little squeak of surprise.*

PHRASES not a squeak *(figurative) 'Have you heard from them?' 'Not a squeak since yesterday.'* **| the squeak of rubber** *the squeak of rubber soles on the wooden floor* **| a squeak of surprise** > Note at SOUND

squeal *noun*

ADJ. **little | high-pitched**

VERB + SQUEAL **give, let out** *She gave a little squeal of delight.* **| hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *The car stopped with a squeal of brakes.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **the squeal of brakes, a squeal of delight** > Note at SOUND

squeeze *noun*

1 pressing with fingers

ADJ. **affectionate | comforting, reassuring**

VERB + SQUEEZE **give sb** *He gave his mother a comforting squeeze as he left.*

PHRASES **~ of** *A squeeze of her hand reassured him.*

2 in a small space

ADJ. **tight** *There were seven of us in the car and it was a tight squeeze.*

PREP. **at a ~** *We can get six in the car at a squeeze.*

PHRASES **a bit of a squeeze**

3 reduction in money

ADJ. **cash, credit, economic, financial, profits, tax**

VERB + SQUEEZE **feel** *All manufacturers are feeling the squeeze.* **| put** *The government is trying to put the squeeze on high earners.*

PREP. **~ on** *a squeeze on spending*

squeeze *verb*

1 **press sth hard**

ADV. **hard, tightly | gently** *'I know,' she said, squeezing his hand gently.*

PREP. **from** *squeezing the juice from a lemon* **| out of** *I squeezed the last bit of toothpaste out of the tube.*

PHRASES **freshly squeezed** *freshly squeezed orange juice*

2 **limit the money available**

ADV. **hard, severely** *High interest rates have squeezed the industry hard.*

squint *noun*

ADJ. **bad | slight**

VERB + SQUINT **have | correct** *A squint can sometimes be corrected by an eyepatch.*

SQUINT + NOUN **surgery**

squirm *verb*

ADV. **uncomfortably | silently | visibly**

VERB + SQUIRM **make sb** *The very mention of her singing made her squirm uncomfortably.*

PREP. **at** *He squirmed visibly at the thought of his secret being revealed.* **| in/with** *He squirmed with embarrassment.*

squirrel *noun*

ADJ. **grey, red**

SQUIRREL + VERB **dart, scamper, scurry** *The squirrel scampered across the lawn*

stab *noun*

1 **injury**

VERB + STAB **make** *the boy made a stab at the pig*

STAB + NOUN **wound**

PREP. **~ at**

2 **sudden pain**

ADJ. **sharp, sudden**

VERB + STAB **feel**

PHRASES **~ of** *He felt a sharp stab of disappointment.*

3 **attempt**

ADJ. **brave, good | unsuccessful**

VERB + STAB **have, make, take**

PREP. **~ at** *I had a stab at answering the question.*

stab *verb*

ADV. **repeatedly** *He is accused of repeatedly stabbing a sixteen-year-old boy.*

VERB + STAB **threaten to | try to**

PREP. **at, in** *He was stabbed in the chest.* **| with** *I stabbed at my meat with my fork.*

PHRASES **be found stabbed** *He was found stabbed in his car.* **| stab sb to death**

stability *noun*

ADJ. **greater | relative | long-term | internal | economic, financial, monetary, price | political, social | emotional**

VERB + STABILITY **achieve, bring, ensure, give sb, provide (sb with)** *The policy should bring greater monetary stability to the country.* **| lack | threaten, undermine | maintain, preserve**

PHRASES **a period of stability** *The country was enjoying a period of political stability.* **| a threat to stability** *The conflict is becoming a threat to stability in the region.*

stable *adj.*

1 **not likely to move**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | make sth | keep sth** *Put a book under the table to keep it stable.*

ADV. **extremely, very | perfectly, quite** *Don't worry?it's perfectly stable!* **| fairly, pretty | enough, sufficiently** *The unit is stable enough on level ground.*

2 **not likely to change suddenly**

VERBS **be, look, seem | become | remain | keep sth** *attempts to keep prices stable*

ADV. **extremely, highly, remarkably, very | completely, perfectly** *Animals rarely live in completely stable environments.* **| broadly, comparatively, fairly, more or less, quite, reasonably, relatively, roughly | enough, sufficiently** *He was not emotionally stable enough to think through his decision.* **| apparently | emotionally, financially, politically**

stack *verb*

ADV. **carefully, neatly | away, up** *The wood was collected up and carefully stacked away. Stack the chairs up over there.*

PREP. **against** *The cases were stacked against the wall.* **| in** *The paintings were stacked in a corner of the room.* **| on** *The plates were neatly stacked on the draining board.* **| with** *shelves stacked with boxes*

PHRASES **be stacked in piles** *Boxes were stacked in piles all round the room.*

stadium *noun*

ADJ. **packed | all-seater | indoor | sports | Olympic | baseball, football, greyhound**

VERB + STADIUM **fill, pack (into)** *Thousands packed into the stadium to watch the final.*

PREP. **at a/the ~**

staff *noun*

ADJ. **full-time, part-time | permanent, temporary | skeleton** *We'll be down to a skeleton staff over Christmas.* **| experienced, professional, qualified, skilled, trained | unskilled | junior, senior | ancillary, support | general** (= officers assisting a military leader in administration and planning) **| academic, administrative, editorial, etc. | nursing, teaching, etc. | hospital, hotel, etc. | bar, kitchen, etc.**

QUANT. **member** *There are only four full-time members of staff in the company.*

VERB + STAFF **employ, have** *The company has a staff of fifty.* **| appoint, engage, hire, recruit, take on** *staff appointed to the project I've heard they're recruiting staff at the moment.* **| dismiss, fire, lay off, make redundant, sack** *A spokesperson said that the bank expects to make 15,000 staff redundant over the next three years.* **| train | pay** *They pay their staff by cheque.* **| join** *He joined the editorial staff in 1999.* **| leave**

STAFF + NOUN **member | levels, numbers, resources | shortage | turnover | cut | appointment** *The hospital is freezing staff appointments as part of its cutbacks.* **| development, training | morale | meeting | canteen, dining room, restaurant, room**

PREP. **on the ~ (of)** *She has been on the staff of the hospital for most of her working life.*

PHRASES **chief of staff** (= the most senior officer serving under and advising the person who commands each of the armed forces)

staff *verb* **be staffed**

ADV. **well | fully, properly** *The ward is now fully staffed.* **| adequately | inadequately, short** *I'm afraid we're desperately short staffed at the moment.*

PHRASES **be staffed (entirely/largely/mainly) by/with sb** *The office will be staffed entirely with volunteers.*

stage *noun*

1 **period/state in progress/development**

ADJ. **distinct** *The process has three distinct stages.* | **early, first, initial, opening, preliminary** | **advanced, closing, final, last, late, latter, terminal** *Her husband was in the advanced stages of cancer.* | **halfway, intermediate,** secondary | transitional | **successive** | **critical, crucial, important, key, main** | **easy** *The book guides you through making your own website in easy stages.* | **difficult** | **delicate, vulnerable** | **embryonic, larval, pupal** | **experimental, exploratory** | **committee, design, development/developmental, formative, planning** *The scheme is still at the planning stage.* | **knockout, semi-final, etc.** *Colombia's win sent them through to the knockout stage of the tournament.*

VERB + STAGE **go/move/pass through** *The water goes through three stages of purification.* | **enter, reach** *We've entered a crucial stage in the project.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *You should read this article at some stage.* | **by ~s** *The university was put together by stages.* | **during/in a/the ~** *in the early stages of the job* | **in ~s** *We renovated the house in two stages.* | **~ in** *an important stage in her life* | **~ of** *the latter stages of the race*

PHRASES **the beginning/end of a stage** *Pupils are tested at the end of each stage of the course.* | **a/one stage further** *take the investigation one stage further* | **a stage of development/life**

2 **in a theatre, etc.**

ADJ. **centre** *(often figurative) A new actress will take centre stage in next month's production of 'The Doll's House'.* | **revolving**

VERB + STAGE **go on, take (to)** *He was too nervous to go on stage. I was shaking as I took the stage. She took to the stage when she was at university.* | **leave** *She left the stage to tumultuous applause.* | **set** *(often figurative) The thrilling semi-finals set the stage for what should be a great game.* | **boo sb off**

STAGE + NOUN **management, manager** | **direction** *Shakespeare's famous stage direction: 'Exit, pursued by a bear.'* | **play, production, show** | **appearance, performance, role** | **set** *The stage set is the most expensive ever built.* | **door** |

name *David Harries adopted the stage name Dixon Hare when he became a full-time actor.* **| left, right | fright** *Even experienced actors can suffer from stage fright.*

PREP. off ~ *A trumpet sounded off stage.* **| on ~** *The entire cast is on stage in the final scene.*

stage *verb*

ADV. **carefully** *The event was very carefully staged.* **| elaborately** *an elaborately staged drama*

stagger *verb*

ADV. **almost | a little, slightly | blindly** *She staggered blindly off into the darkness.* **| about, around, away, back, backwards, forward, off, out**

PREP. **from, into, out of, through, towards, under, etc.** *He was staggering under the weight of the sack.*

PHRASES **stagger to your feet** *She staggered to her feet and tottered unsteadily across the room.*

staggered *adj.*

VERBS **be, look**

ADV. **absolutely, quite**

PREP. **at** *I was staggered at her rudeness.* **| by** *He looked quite staggered by the news.*

staggering *adj.*

VERBS be

ADV. absolutely, quite *The public response was absolutely staggering.* **| fairly, pretty**

stagnation *noun*

ADJ. **economic, political**

VERB + STAGNATION **lead to**

PHRASES **a period/years of stagnation** *Poor economic policies led to a long period of stagnation and decline.*

staid *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get, grow** *He had grown staid and dull.*

ADV. **positively, very** *The locals were a very staid lot.* **| rather** *a rather staid and old-fashioned hotel*

stain *noun*

ADJ. **stubborn | dark | coffee, grass, etc.**

VERB + STAIN **leave | get out, remove**

STAIN + VERB **spread** *The glass fell off the table and a dark stain spread over the carpet.*

PREP. **~ on** *The coffee left a stain on his shirt.*

stain *verb*

PREP. **with** *The shirt was heavily stained with blood.*

PHRASES **be badly/heavily/slightly stained, stain sth green, red, etc.** *The children's fingers were stained purple with blackberry juice.*

stair *noun*

1 **stairs steps inside a building**

ADJ. **steep | wide | narrow | rickety | main | back**

QUANT. **flight** *We went up three flights of stairs.*

VERB + STAIR **ascend, climb, go/run, etc. up, mount | descend, go/run, etc. down | take, use** *Take the back stairs.*

STAIR + VERB **lead to sth | creak**

STAIR + NOUN **rod** *The carpet was held in place by brass stair rods.* **| gate**

PREP. **under the ~** *a cupboard under the stairs* **| ~ (down/up) to** *the stairs to the third floor*

PHRASES **the bottom/foot/head/top of the stairs, take the stairs two, etc. at a time** *He rushed up to the bedroom, taking the stairs two at a time.*

2 **one step**

ADJ. **top | bottom**

STAIR + VERB **creak** *The third stair creaked as I stepped on it.*

PREP. **on/the a ~** *He sat waiting on the bottom stair.*

staircase *noun*

ADJ. **steep | broad, wide | narrow | elegant, grand, great | rickety | curving, spiral, sweeping, twisting, winding | moving | main | outside | back**

VERB + STAIRCASE **ascend, climb, go/run, etc. up, mount | descend, go/run, etc. down | use**

STAIRCASE + VERB **lead to sth** *The spiral staircase led to an upper gallery.*

PREP. **on the ~** *They passed each other on the staircase.*

PHRASES **the bottom/foot/head/top of the staircase**

stake *noun*

1 (*also* **stakes**) **amount that could be won/lost**

ADJ. **big, high | low, small | political**

VERB + STAKE **play for** *They always play for high stakes.* **| raise | lower**

PREP. **at ~** *The minister will face the enquiry with his reputation at stake.*

2 **share of a company, etc.**

ADJ. **controlling, large, majority, significant, substantial | minority, small | direct | financial, equity**

VERB + STAKE **have | acquire, buy, take | sell | build up, increase, lift, raise | cut, reduce**

PREP. **~ in** *She acquired a four per cent direct stake in the business.*

stale *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, smell, taste** *The room smelled musty and stale.* **| become, go, turn** *This bread's going stale.*

ADV. **extremely, very | a bit, a little, rather, slightly**

PREP. **with** *The atmosphere was stale with cigarette smoke.*

stalemate *noun*

ADJ. **political**

VERB + STALEMATE **end in, reach, result in** *The talks reached (a) stalemate.* **| break** *Efforts to break the stalemate in the peace talks continue.* **| be locked in** *Discussions are locked in stalemate.*

STALEMATE + VERB **continue**

PREP. **~ between** *a stalemate between management and unions* **| ~ in** *The stalemate in the trade talks continues.* **| ~ on/over** *a stalemate over economic union*

stall *noun*

ADJ. **market | book, cake, fish, flower, etc.**

VERB + STALL **have** *He has a flower stall in Portobello Road market.* **| put up, set out/ up | pack up | man, run** *Who's going to man the stall at lunchtime?*

STALL + VERB **sell sth** *a stall selling second-hand books*

STALL + NOUN **holder** (also **stallholder**), **keeper**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *I bought this trout at the market fish stall.* **| behind the ~** *the man behind the stall*

stall *verb*

ADV. **effectively** *Discussions were effectively stalled by the union's refusal to participate.*

PHRASES **stall for time** *He asked them all kinds of pointless questions, stalling for time.*

stamina *noun*

ADJ. **great | mental, physical**

VERB + STAMINA **have** *She didn't the stamina to complete the course.* **| lack | need, require | build (up), increase** *Aerobic exercise helps to build up stamina.*

PHRASES **reserves of stamina** *Emma Walton had to call on all her reserves of stamina to win the 10,000 metres.* **| a test of stamina** *Final exams at university can be as much a test of stamina as of knowledge.*

stammer *noun*

ADJ. **bad, nervous, severe | slight**

VERB + STAMMER **develop | have, speak with**

stamp *noun*

1 on a letter/package

ADJ. **postage | first-class, second-class | Christmas, commemorative**

QUANT. **book, set, sheet** *a book of ten first-class stamps*

VERB + STAMP **put on, stick on** *She stuck a first-class stamp on the letter.* **| lick, moisten | issue, launch** *The Post Office has launched some new Christmas stamps.* **| collect**

STAMP + NOUN **album, collecting, collector**

2 instrument for stamping a design, etc. on a surface

ADJ. **official | date**

3 character/quality

ADJ. **unmistakable**

VERB + STAMP **bear, carry** *His work bears the unmistakable stamp of genius.* **| leave, put** *She left her stamp on the school.*

PREP. **~ of** *the stamp of authority*

stamp *verb*

ADV. **hard | impatiently** *She stamped her foot impatiently.* **| about, around, down, off** *He stamped off in disgust.*

PREP. **on** *She stamped on my toe!*

stance *noun*

1 **position in which sb stands**

ADJ. **correct, good | natural | rigid | relaxed | upright | defensive, fighting**

VERB + STANCE **adopt, take up** *The boxer took up a fighting stance.* **| change | keep, maintain**

PREP. **in a ~** *He lounged in an armchair in a stance of deliberate contempt.*

2 **attitude**

ADJ. **positive | critical, negative | impartial, neutral | aggressive, hardline, rigid, tough, uncompromising | cautious | conservative | radical | ideological, moral, political | public** *Her public stance was much tougher than her private feelings on the subject.*

VERB + STANCE **adopt, take (up) | alter, change | maintain** *The wife of the accused has maintained an impartial stance throughout the trial.*

PREP. **~ against** *The president has adopted a hardline stance against abortion.* **| ~ on/towards** *He has changed his stance on monetary union.*

stand *noun*

1 effort to resist opposition

ADJ. **defiant, determined, firm, strong, tough | moral, principled | last, last-ditch | public**

VERB + STAND **make, take**

PREP. **~ against** *to make a stand against industries that contribute to river pollution* **| ~ on** *He has taken a public stand on the issue of misuse of hospital funds.*

2 table/small shop

ADJ. **market, trade | hot-dog, newspaper, etc. | display, exhibition | information**

VERB + STAND **have** *Our company has a display stand at this year's fair.* **| set up | man** *We took it in turns to man the exhibition stand.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *We can get a magazine at the newspaper stand.* **| on the ~** *I'll be on the stand for two hours. You'll find brochures on our new products on the stand.*

3 furniture/equipment for putting sth on

ADJ. **hat, umbrella | microphone, music**

PREP. **in/on a/the ~** *There was some flute music open on the music stand.*

stand *verb*

1 **be on your feet/be upright**

ADV. **upright | still** *Stand still while I take your photo.* **| barefoot | on tiptoe** *She stood on tiptoe to reach the shelf.* **| awkwardly, meekly, stiffly, uncertainly** *He stood awkwardly in the doorway, not sure what to say.* **| around, there** *Don't just stand there?do something.*

VERB + STAND **can/can't, could/couldn't** *The roof was so low I could not stand upright.* **| can/could barely/hardly** *He felt so weak he could hardly stand.*

PHRASES **be left standing** *After the earthquake only a few houses were left standing.*

2 **tolerate sth**

VERB + STAND **can/can't, could/couldn't** *I can't stand that man!* **| can/could hardly**

3 **be a candidate in an election**

ADV. **successfully, unsuccessfully**

PREP. **against** *Two candidates will be standing against her.* **| as** *She stood unsuccessfully as a candidate in the local elections.* **| for** *He is standing for Oxford East in the parliamentary election.* **PHRASAL VERBS stand by**

ADV. **idly, passively** *Surely the world cannot stand idly by and let this country go through the agony of war yet again?*

VERB + STAND **can/can't, could/couldn't stand up**

ADV. **straight** *You'll look taller if you stand up straight.*

standard *adj.*

VERBS **be, be fitted as, come as** *Anti-lock brakes are fitted as standard.* **| become**

ADV. **almost** *The stations were built to a simple, almost standard design.* **| fairly, pretty** *a fairly standard method of assessing employees*

standard *noun*

1 **level of quality**

ADJ. **high | low, poor | minimum | acceptable, adequate, decent, proper, reasonable** *We must ensure proper standards of care for the elderly.* | **improved, rising | clear | objective** *Judged by any objective standards, the campaign was a disaster.* | **official, required | conventional, usual | consistent, uniform, universal | exacting, rigorous, strict, stringent | professional** *The work has been done to a professional standard.* | **international, national | quality** *We have to try and achieve the quality standards set by the project.* | **qualifying** *The Olympic qualifying standard has been set at 64.50m.* | **living** *The region enjoys the highest living standards in Europe.* | **accounting, advertising, safety, trading, etc. | academic, educational, environmental, health, intellectual, technical, etc.**

VERB + STANDARD **have** *The agency has very high standards.* | **boast, enjoy | define, establish, set | achieve, meet, reach** *The factory is struggling to meet national environmental standards. She has reached an acceptable standard of English.* | **fall short of** *The hotel service fell short of the usual standard.* | **apply, enforce, provide** *It's impossible to apply the same academic standards across the country.* | **judge sb/sth by | improve, raise | lower | maintain, sustain**

PREP. **above/below (the) ~** *Your work is below standard.* | **by … standards** *By modern standards, he isn't a particularly fast runner.* | **to a … ~** *The building work had not been completed to a satisfactory standard.* | **up to ~** *We need to bring our computer system up to standard.* | **~ in** *standards in safety*

PHRASES **by any standard** *She's a great violinist by any standard.* | **a drop/fall in the standard, an increase/a rise in the standard** *There has been an increase in the standard of service provided.* | **a standard of living** *the fall in their standard of living caused by redundancy*

2 **(usually standards) acceptable level of behaviour**

ADJ. **declining, falling** *My grandparents are always complaining about falling moral standards.* | **double** *the double standard frequently encountered in nineteenth-century attitudes to sex* | **ethical, moral**

VERB + STANDARD **prescribe | keep up, maintain | improve, raise**

STANDARD + VERB **drop, fall**

PHRASES **standards of behaviour/conduct**

standing *noun*

1 **reputation**

ADJ. **good, high | low | equal | public | international | academic, economic, financial, legal, moral, political, professional, social**

VERB + STANDING **have** *Professor Greenan has a high standing in the academic world.* **| enhance, improve | damage, diminish**

STANDING + VERB **decline, fall | rise**

PREP. **of … ~** *She married into a family of higher social standing.* **| ~ among** *her low standing among her fellow scientists* **| ~ as** *His standing as a film director has risen in recent years.* **| ~ in/within** *his international standing in cancer research* **| ~ with** *She was appointed for her high moral standing with the general public.*

PHRASES **in good standing with sb** *a knight in good standing with the king*

2 **length of time that sth has existed**

ADJ. **long | many years', 25 years', etc.** *Their relationship is of many years' standing.*

PREP. **of … ~**

standpoint *noun*

ADJ. **different** *We must approach the problem from a different standpoint.* **| positive | practical | ideological, theoretical | economic, historical, political, religious, technical, etc.**

VERB + STANDPOINT **adopt** *We should try to adopt a more positive standpoint.* **| approach sth from, view sth from**

PREP. **from a/the ~ (of)** *From the standpoint of women, this looks like a policy of discrimination.*

standstill *noun*

ADJ. **complete, total | virtual**

VERB + STANDSTILL **come to, grind to** *The train came to a complete standstill.* **| bring sth to** *The roadworks brought the traffic to a standstill.*

PREP. **at a ~** *The factory has been at a standstill for days.*

star *noun*

1 **small point of light in the night sky**

ADJ. **bright, brilliant | faint | distant | nearby, nearer/nearest | falling, shooting | evening, morning**

QUANT. **cluster** *a dense cluster of stars at the galaxy's nucleus*

STAR + VERB **be out | shine, twinkle** *A bright star shone in the East.* **| appear, come out**

STAR + NOUN **cluster**

PREP. **under the ~s** *We camped out under the stars.*

PHRASES **a canopy of stars** *They lay down under a canopy of stars.* **| the brightness/density/luminosity of a star**

2 **famous person**

ADJ. **big** *There were several big Hollywood stars at the function.* **| true, undisputed | rising, young | football, pop, etc. | Hollywood, screen, film, movie, soap, TV**

QUANT. **array, galaxy, host** *Channel 4 has lined up a galaxy of stars for the coming season.*

STAR + NOUN **quality, status | role | actor, performer, player | attraction, turn** *He was the star turn at the celebrations.* **| vehicle** *The film was nothing more than a star vehicle for Tom Hanks.*

stardom *noun*

ADJ. **Hollywood, international**

VERB + STARDOM **achieve, rise to, rocket to, shoot (sb) to** *Her number one single shot her to stardom.* **| be tipped for** *This young tennis player is being tipped for stardom.* **| be coached for, be groomed for** *He was groomed for stardom by his rock-singer father.*

PHRASES **sb's rise to stardom** *her meteoric rise to stardom* **| the road to stardom** *He set out on the lonely road to stardom early in life.*

stare *verb*

ADV. **fixedly, hard, intently, unblinkingly** *I could see a man staring at me intently.* | **steadily** | **impassively** | **absently, blankly, blearily, blindly, dully, sightlessly, uncomprehendingly, unseeingly, vacantly** *She stared blankly at the brick wall in front of her.* | **dazedly, disbelievingly, incredulously, open-mouthed, wide-eyed, wildly** *I stared at him open-mouthed, unable to speak.* | **bleakly, gloomily, glumly, grimly, helplessly, hopelessly, morosely** *He stared at me bleakly and said nothing.* | **coldly, coolly, defiantly, fiercely, moodily, stonily** *She stared at him stonily as he came in.* | **curiously, quizzically, suspiciously, thoughtfully** | **silently, wordlessly** | **just, merely, simply** | **(for) a moment** *For a long moment they just stared at each other.* | **still** *He was still staring at himself in the mirror.* | **across, around/round, back, down, out, (straight) ahead, up** *She stared back at him. He stared straight ahead and did not move.*

VERB + STARE **can/could only** *She could only stare at him with pain in her eyes.* | **seem to** | **continue to** | **turn to** *Everyone in the room turned to stare at her.* | **pause to, stop to**

PREP. **across, after** *She stalked off, leaving them all staring after her.* | **around/round, at, in** *I stared in horror at his bloody mouth.* | **into, out of, through, with** *He just stared at her with disbelief.*

PHRASES **sit/stand staring, stand/stop and stare** *It was too cold to stand and stare.* | **stare into space** *She was just sitting there, staring into space.*

start *noun*

ADJ. **auspicious, bright, encouraging, flying, good, great, impressive, promising, sound, wonderful** *Despite a bright start, Liverpool lost the match.* **| disappointing, disastrous, poor, rocky, shaky, slow, uncertain | false** *After a couple of false starts, she found the job that suited her.* **| fresh, new | early, late | very** *right from the very start*

VERB + START **make** *I think it's time we made a start.* **| get off to** *The company has got off to an impressive start this financial year.* **| herald, mark**

START + NOUN **button, date, signal**

PREP. **at the ~ (of)** *Everyone was in a conciliatory mood at the start of the meeting.* **| from the ~** *She felt at home in her new job right from the start.* **| ~ to** *The fine winter weather heralded a good start to the year.* **| ~ in** *Moving to a good school gave Sally a fresh start in life.*

PHRASES **from start to finish** *This is a thoroughly good book from start to finish.*

start *verb*

ADV. **suddenly** *Her heart suddenly started to race.* **| immediately | just** *He has just started at school. At that point I just started to hate the man.* **| off, out** *We'll start off by doing some warm-up exercises.* **| (all over) again** *We'll just have to start all over again.*

VERB + START **decide to, expect to, hope to, intend to, plan to | be due to, be expected to, be scheduled to** *Work is due to start this weekend.* **| be ready to** *By early evening he was ready to start work.* **| be about to, be going to** *A new term was about to start.* **| had better** *You'd better start packing if you're to leave early tomorrow morning.*

PREP. **by** *Let's start by reviewing what we did last week.* **| from** *Start from the beginning and tell me exactly what happened.* **| on** *I've finished decorating the bathroom, so now I can start on the bedroom.* **| with** *Let's start with this first piece of music.*

PHRASES **get started** *It's already quite late, so I think we should get started.* **| let's start**

starter *noun*

ADJ. **cold, hot**

VERB + STARTER **eat, have** *Are you having a starter?* **| choose, order** *I've chosen a hot starter.* **| serve sth as** *This dish can be served as a starter or a main course.*

starting point *noun*

ADJ. **convenient, good, suitable, useful**

VERB + STARTING POINT **be, provide, serve as | take sth as, use sth as**

PREP. **from a/the ~** *They reached the same conclusion from different starting points.* **| ~ for** *Your paper provides a useful starting point for the discussion.*

startled *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **very | a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat | for a moment, momentarily** *She was momentarily startled by the sight before her.* **| suddenly**

PREP. **at** *She was obviously a little startled at this idea.* **| by** *startled by his sudden appearance in the doorway*

starvation *noun*

ADJ. **prolonged, slow | mass | oxygen** *The pilot had lost consciousness because of oxygen starvation.*

VERB + STARVATION **be threatened by, face, suffer | rescue sb from, save sb from | die from/of**

STARVATION + NOUN **diet, rations | wages** *The workers lived in poor conditions and were paid starvation wages.* **| level** *Millions of people around the world live at or below starvation level.*

PHRASES **death by/from starvation**

starve *verb*

ADV. **literally** *She refused food and literally starved herself to death.*

VERB + STARVE **leave sb to** *He locked them in and left them to starve.*

PHRASES **be half starved** *The poor cat was half starved.* **| starve to death**

state *noun*

1 **condition**

ADJ. **acceptable, fit, good, healthy** *She managed to get the company's finances into a healthy state.* | **appalling, awful, bad,** desperate, dire, dreadful, pitiful, **poor, sorry, terrible** | **run-down** *We were shocked at the run-down state of the hospital.* | **emotional, mental, psychological** *He's not in a fit enough mental state to drive.* | physical *The inspectors assess the physical state of schools and equipment.* | **financial** | **nervous, trance-like** *He goes into a trance-like state when he plays the guitar.* | **current, present** | **former, previous** | **natural** *You can either varnish the wood or leave it in its natural state.* | constant, continual, continuous, **permanent, perpetual** *The country is in a perpetual state of anarchy.* | **advanced** *an advanced state of dehydration*

VERB + STATE **get into, go into** | **get sth into**

PREP. **in a ~** *Jane was in a terrible state after losing her job.* | **into a ~** *Babies can cry themselves into a state of frenzy.* | **~ of** *His life seems to be in a constant state of chaos.*

PHRASES **be in a good/bad, etc. state of repair** *The house was in a poor state of repair when we bought it.* | **a state of affairs** *The brothers' refusal to work together had brought about this sad state of affairs.* | **a state of emergency** *The government has declared a state of emergency in the flooded regions.* | **a state of flux** *The education system is still in a state of flux following the recent reform.* | **a state of health** *He's concerned about his mother's state of health.* | **a state of mind** *Public speaking can produce a state of mind akin to panic.* | **a state of shock** *The driver was just sitting there in a state of shock.* | **a state of war**

2 **country/government**

ADJ. **independent, nation, sovereign** | **foreign** | **democratic, one-party, socialist, totalitarian, etc.** | **member** *member states of the European Union* | **powerful, strong** | **weak** | **neighbouring**

STATE + NOUN **enterprise, monopoly** | **control, ownership** *The telephone network is still under state control.* | **property** *Every citizen could buy shares in privatized state property.* | **sector, system** *Teachers in the state sector are asking for a 7% pay* *rise. schools outside the state system* **| education, school** *Did you go to a state school or a private school?* **| aid, funding, funds, subsidy, support | benefit, pension** *unemployed people living on state benefit The state pension is barely enough to live on.* **| intervention** *large-scale state intervention in industry* **| spending** *Some prefer tax cuts to greater state spending on health and social services.* **| employee | secret** *He was shot for passing state secrets to foreign powers.*

PHRASES **affairs/matters of state** *The president's wife is said to have a powerful hand in affairs of state.* | head of state *Visiting heads of state usually stay in the palace.*

state *verb*

ADV. **clearly, plainly** *Please state clearly how many tickets you require.* **| exactly, explicitly, expressly, precisely, specifically** *These facts were nowhere explicitly stated.* **| categorically, definitely, positively, unequivocally** *She stated categorically that she had no intention of leaving.* **| emphatically, firmly | bluntly, flatly** *'Alcohol doesn't solve problems,' she stated flatly.* **| confidently | correctly, rightly | falsely, incorrectly, wrongly | openly, publicly** *He stated his own views quite openly.* **| formally, officially | blandly | easily** *The demands are more easily stated than met.* **| briefly, succinctly | quietly | just, merely, simply** *I am merely stating the facts.* **| repeatedly | previously** *As previously stated, the phrase 'value for money' has an ambiguous meaning.*

VERB + STATE **go on to** *The report goes on to state that: ...* **| fail to** *The committee failed to state their reasons for this decision.*

PHRASES **stated above/below** *We cannot accept this proposal for the reasons stated above.* **| state the obvious** *At the risk of stating the obvious, people who have not paid cannot be admitted.* **| unless otherwise stated/unless stated otherwise** *All the photographs in this book, unless otherwise stated, date from the 1950s.*

statement *noun*

ADJ. **brief, short** *Saunder's lawyer made a brief statement to the press outside the court.* **| bald, blunt, flat** *His bald statement that he'd resigned concealed his anxiety about the situation.* **| comprehensive, definitive, detailed, full | explicit** *An explicit statement of objectives is vital before the project begins.* **| clear, simple | bold, firm, positive, strong | explanatory | false, inaccurate, misleading | sweeping** *She made one of her sweeping statements about foreigners.* **| joint** *The two heads of state issued a joint statement.* **| formal, government, official, public | political** *They decided to make a political statement by refusing to vote.* **| oral, signed, sworn, written**

VERB + STATEMENT **issue, put out, release | give, make** *He admitted giving a false statement to the police.* **| take** *The police will take a statement from each of you.* **| withdraw | deny**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *In a statement released today, the Department of Health said ...* **| ~ about** *The clothes you wear are a statement about yourself.* **| ~ on** *a statement on human rights* **| ~ to** *He's trying to withdraw the statement he made to Parliament last week.*

statesman *noun*

ADJ. great, leading | elder, senior *Political power resided with the nation's elder statesman and party leader.* **| international, world** *his reputation as a world statesman*

static *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain, stay**

ADV. **very | completely, totally | far from | almost, largely, more or less, virtually** *The population remained more or less static.* **| essentially | fairly, rather, relatively, somewhat** *The economy is fairly static at the moment.*

station *noun*

1 **where trains stop**

ADJ. **next** *We get off at the next station.* | **railway, train** | **metro, subway, tube, underground**

VERB + STATION **get to, go to** *We got to the station just as the train was pulling out.* | **leave** | **arrive at** *The train arrived at Oxford Station twenty minutes late.*

STATION + NOUN **platform**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *He got off at the same station.* | **in a/the ~** *There's a newspaper kiosk in the station.*

2 **where buses/coaches begin and end journeys**

ADJ. **bus, coach**

VERB + STATION **leave** *The coach leaves the station at 0900 hours.* | **arrive at**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *We waited for him at the coach station.*

3 **radio/television company**

ADJ. **radio, television/TV** | **foreign, local** | **cable, satellite** | **commercial**

VERB + STATION **get, pick up, tune (in) to** *I can pick up a lot of foreign stations on this radio.* | **listen to**

stationery *nou*n

ADJ. **business, hotel, office, wedding | quality**

STATIONERY + NOUN **shop, supplier | cupboard**

statistics *noun*

ADJ. **annual, monthly | latest | reliable | vital | bald, raw** *The bald statistics tell us nothing about the underlying trends.* **| government, national, official, police | accident, crime, criminal, economic, health, population, transport, unemployment, etc.**

VERB + STATISTICS **prepare, produce | keep** *We no longer keep statistics on former employees.* **| release**

STATISTICS + VERB **indicate sth, prove sth, reveal sth, show sth, tell sb sth | suggest sth**

STATISTICS + NOUN **office**

PREP. **according to ~** *According to official statistics, the island had 37 inhabitants.* **| ~ on** *The government has released new statistics on the cost of living.* > Note at SUBJECT(for more verbs and nouns)

statue *noun*

ADJ. **colossal, enormous, huge, large | small | life-size | equestrian | bronze, marble, etc.**

VERB + STATUE **erect, put up | unveil**

STATUE + VERB **be, stand** *The statue stands in one of the main squares.*

PREP. **~ of** *a statue of the Virgin* **| ~ to** *the unveiling of a statue to Lord Brown*

stature *noun*

1 **height**

ADJ. **great, imposing | diminutive, short, slight, small | full** *The statue shows King Richard in full stature beside his horse.* **| physical**

VERB + STATURE **have | lack** *The president lacks physical stature.*

PREP. **of … ~** *He was a man of great stature who carried himself well.*

PHRASES **a lack of stature** *Despite his lack of stature, he became a successful footballer.* **| small in stature** *Both her parents are fairly small in stature.*

2 **importance**

ADJ. **considerable, great, growing | full | public | international, world | political**

VERB + STATURE **gain in, grow in, rise in** *She has grown in stature since winning the Tchaikovsky Piano Competition.* **| achieve** *Geomorphology has now achieved full stature as a branch of geology.* **| enhance** *The election result enhanced the party's stature.* **| diminish | rise to …** *Her reputation has risen to world stature.*

STATURE + VERB **grow, increase, rise** *His political stature increased during the crisis.*

PREP. **of ~** *a writer of international stature*

status quo *noun*

VERB + STATUS QUO **defend, keep, maintain, preserve** *There are many people who wish to maintain the status quo.* **| threaten, upset | change | restore**

PHRASES **a return to the status quo** *They wanted a return to the status quo before the war.*

status *noun*

ADJ. **great, high, superior | inferior, low, lowly** *low-status jobs* **| relative** *The relative status of the speakers affects what language is used.* **| equal | current | full** *The college has now achieved full status as part of the university.* **| privileged, special | economic, educational, employment, financial, occupational, professional, social, socio-economic** *a payment made to every individual irrespective of employment status* **| marital | legal** *They argued that the email had no signature and therefore no legal status.* **| independent** *A referendum produced a massive majority in favour of fully independent status for the region.* **| amateur | charitable** *The organization has charitable status.* **| diplomatic | immigrant, refugee, resident | international | celebrity** *He achieved celebrity status through his role in a popular sitcom.* **| classic, cult, legendary** *a car from the 50s that has acquired cult status*

VERB + STATUS **enjoy, have** *The teaching profession has a low status in England. This sort of bike has status among teenagers.* **| achieve, acquire** *Marrying a rich woman helped him achieve status.* **| bring sb, give sb** *Owning the yacht has given them status.* **| accord, attach, give** *High social status is attached to the legal profession.* **| recognize | befit** *At last James had an office that befitted his status.* **| rise in** *The neighbourhood has risen in status in recent years.* **| improve, raise** *They are campaigning to raise the status of nurses.* **| lower | change | maintain | lose** *Churches seem to have lost some of their status.* **| apply for** *She applied for resident status but was turned down.* **| acquire, get** *They have acquired refugee status.* **| grant sb | deny sb, refuse sb** *Women are still denied equal status in the company.*

STATUS + NOUN **symbol** *Scars are status symbols among mountain bike riders.*

PREP. **~ as** *China's status as an economic superpower* **| ~ among** *The company has managed to maintain its status among retailers.*

PHRASES **change in status** *the change in status of teachers*

statute *noun*

ADJ. **legal | federal, parliamentary | criminal**

VERB + STATUTE **pass | comply with**

STATUTE + NOUN **law** *the obligations of the employer in common and statute law* **| book** *This archaic law remained on the statute books until last year.*

PREP. **by ~** *Local authorities are required by statute to provide care homes for the elderly.* **| under (a/the) ~** *a trading company formed under statute*

stay *noun*

ADJ. **lengthy, long, prolonged | brief, overnight, short, temporary | indefinite | 3-week, 3-weeks', week-long, etc. | comfortable, enjoyable, pleasant | hospital** *In recent years the average hospital stay for elderly patients has decreased.*

VERB + STAY **enjoy** *Did you enjoy your stay in Prague?* **| shorten | extend, prolong** *She has extended her stay by three days.*

PREP. **during a/the ~** *We did a lot of walking during our stay.* **| throughout a/the ~** *It poured with rain throughout their stay.*

PHRASES **the duration/length of (your) stay**

stay *verb*

ADV. **behind, on** *Alex stayed behind when the others had gone. She failed her exam, and had to stay on at school for another year.* **| on** *My hat won't stay on!* **| (at) home, indoors** *financial incentives for women to stay at home with their children* **| away | here, there | late** *I'm staying late at the office tonight.* **| overnight | indefinitely** *We can't stay here indefinitely.*

VERB + STAY **can/can't, could/couldn't** *I just couldn't stay away.* **| want to | decide to | be going to, intend to | let sb** *Won't you let me stay?* **| ask sb to, beg sb to, plead with sb to | persuade sb to**

PREP. **for** *We ended up staying for lunch.* **| till/until** *I'm going to stay until tomorrow.* **| with** *'Stay with me,' he pleaded.*

steady *adj.*

1 **not moving or shaking**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become | remain | hold sb/sth, keep sb/sth** *Hold the ladder steady!*

ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, perfectly, quite, rock** *His gaze was rock steady.* **| not quite** *She opened the letter with hands that were not quite steady.* **| almost**

2 **developing/happening at a regular rate**

VERBS **be, seem | become | hold, remain** *Share prices have held steady over the last few days.*

ADV. **remarkably, very | fairly, relatively**

steak *noun*

ADJ. **juicy, tender | tough | medium, medium-rare, rare, well done** *I like my steak rare.* **| chuck, fillet, loin, rump, sirloin, T-bone** *a lightly-grilled fillet steak* **| braising, stewing | beef | gammon, salmon, etc.**

VERB + STEAK **eat, have | cook, fry, grill, stew** > Special page at FOOD

steam *noun*

ADJ. **hot, scalding | high-pressure**

QUANT. **cloud, jet** *The saucepan on the cooker puffed little jets of steam.*

VERB + STEAM **emit, generate, produce**

STEAM + VERB **come, escape | rise** *Steam rose from her mug of cocoa.* **| condense | drive sth** *The engine is driven by steam.* **| hiss**

STEAM + NOUN **power | engine, locomotive, ship, train, turbine | age**

PHRASES **the age of steam** *Savour the sights and smells of the age of steam in the National Railway Museum.*

steamer *noun*

ADJ. **paddle | lake, river | pleasure | tramp**

PREP. **by ~, on (board) a/the ~**

steel *noun*

ADJ. **solid | forged, galvanized, mild, reinforced, rolled, stainless**

VERB + STEEL **make, manufacture, produce | harden, temper**

STEEL + NOUN **ingot, sheet | industry, manufacture, mill, plant, works**

PREP. **in ~** *building in steel and aluminium*

steep *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get**

ADV. **extremely, impossibly, incredibly, really, terribly, very** *an incredibly steep hill* **| increasingly | fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively | deceptively** *The terrain is often deceptively steep* (= steeper than you expect).

steering wheel *noun*

VERB + STEERING WHEEL **grip, hold | turn** *Turn the steering wheel hard to the right.* **| grab** *He grabbed the steering wheel from her to prevent the car going off the road.* **| lose control of**

steering *noun*

ADJ. **heavy, light | power/power-assisted**

VERB + STEERING **have** *Does the car have power steering?*

STEERING + NOUN **column, wheel**

stem *noun*

ADJ. **long, tall | short | thick | slender, thin | flexible, strong | brittle, weak | iris, rose, etc.**

VERB + STEM **break, cut (back/out), prune (back), shorten, trim** *When the bush has finished flowering, cut back all the stems.*

STEM + VERB **break**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *There are several leaves on each stem.*

PHRASES **the base of the stem** *Cut half an inch off the base of each stem.*

stench *noun*

ADJ. **overpowering, powerful | unmistakable | appalling, foul, nauseating, sickening, terrible, unpleasant | acrid, fetid, putrid**

STENCH + VERB **fill sth** *The air was filled with the overpowering stench of decomposing vegetation.*

step *noun*

1 **in walking, running, etc.**

ADJ. **large, small | heavy, light | quick, slow | hesitant | involuntary** *I gasped and took an involuntary step backwards.* **| careful | unsteady**

VERB + STEP **go, take** *He'd only gone a few steps, when he realized he'd left his wallet behind.* **| retrace** *You might find your ticket if you retrace your steps back to the car.*

PREP. **~ (away) from** *She was only a step away from the cliff edge.* **| ~ towards** *He took a hesitant step towards her.*

PHRASES **a spring in your step** *I had a spring in my step when I walked into that office for the last time.* **| a step ahead/behind** *He lagged a few steps behind.* **| a step back/backwards/forward/sideways, a step closer/nearer, with each/every step** *He grew fainter with every step.*

2 **in dancing**

ADJ. **dance | jive, tango, etc.**

VERB + STEP **execute, perform** *He executed some jive steps on the pavement.* **| learn | keep in** *She had trouble keeping in step.*

PREP. **in ~, out of ~ (with)** *He was out of step with the music.*

3 **action taken in order to achieve sth**

ADJ. **big, considerable, giant, huge, massive | small | critical, crucial, decisive, essential, great, important, key, major, vital | first, initial, preliminary | final, last | additional, further, next** *What's the next step?* **| logical, necessary, reasonable** *We shall take all necessary steps to prevent public disorder.* **| active | forward, positive | backward, retrograde** *The new law is seen by many as a backward step.* **| bold, brave, reckless | dramatic, drastic, extraordinary, rare, unprecedented, unusual | irreversible, irrevocable** *It suddenly struck her that having a baby was an irrevocable step.* **| careful, precautionary | faltering, tentative** *They have taken their first tentative steps* *towards democracy.* | **practical** | **welcome** | **immediate, urgent** *I shall take immediate steps to have this matter put right.* | **false** *One false step could mean disaster.*

VERB + STEP **go, make, take** | **follow** *If you follow all the steps, nothing will go wrong.*

PREP. **~ in** *The move was a first step in establishing a union.* | **~ to/towards** *The talks mark a step towards peace.*

PHRASES **bring sth/be/come/move a step closer/nearer (to sth)** *Greece moved a step closer to the World Cup finals with last night's win.* | **a short step from/to sth** *It's only a short step from this disorder to complete chaos.* | **a step back/backwards/forward** *The offer constitutes a considerable step forward.* | **step by step** *a step-by-step guide to setting up an aquarium* | **a step further** *If he goes one step further with this crazy idea, I'll resign.* | **a step in the right direction** *The new speed limit does not solve the problem, but it is a step in the right direction.* | **a step on the road/way to sth**

4 on stairs, a ladder, etc.

ADJ. **bottom, top**

VERB + STEP **mind** *Mind the step!*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *She paused on the top step.*

PHRASES **a step down/up** *There are three steps down to the garden.*

5 steps: set of steps

ADJ. **front** | **back** | **outside**

QUANT. **flight** *You have to go up four flights of steps to get up to the roof.*

VERB + STEP **ascend, climb, go/run, etc. up, mount** *She went up a flight of steps to the side entrance.* | **descend, go/run, etc. down**

STEP + VERB **lead to sth** *The front steps lead to an enormous terrace.*

PREP. **~ (down/up) to** *the steps down to the pool*

PHRASES **the bottom/foot/top of the steps**

step *verb*

ADV. **briskly, quickly | hastily, smartly** *He stepped back smartly from the edge.* **| slowly | silently | delicately, lightly | carefully, gingerly** *He stepped gingerly over the cat.* **| boldly | aside, away, back, close, down, forward, inside, out, outside** *Would you like to step inside for a few minutes?*

PREP. **across, from, in, in front of, into, on, onto, out of, over, past, through, towards** *Don't step in the puddle.*

stereotype *noun*

ADJ. **common, popular, traditional, usual | negative | cultural, national, racial | gender, sexual | social**

VERB + STEREOTYPE **create, produce | perpetuate, reinforce** *Jokes perpetuate various national stereotypes.* **| conform to, fit** *Not all areas of the country fit the stereotypes of the poor north and the rich south.* **| challenge, reject** *a writer who challenges sexual stereotypes*

PREP. **~ about** *common stereotypes about the French* **| ~ of** *the stereotype of women as passive victims*

sterile *adj.*

1 **completely clean**

VERBS **be | become | remain | make sth | keep sth** *This top fits over the bottle and keeps the teat sterile.*

ADV. **completely | virtually**

2 **not able to produce young animals/babies**

VERBS **be | become | remain | leave sb, make sb**

ADV. **permanently** *Male workers were made permanently sterile by this pesticide.*

3 **with no interest or life**

VERBS **be | become, grow** *Their relationship had grown sterile over the years.*

ADV. **very | increasingly** *the increasingly sterile debate on constitutional reform* **| largely | rather, somewhat**

sterling *noun*

PHRASES **pounds sterling** *50 pounds sterling* > Note at CURRENCY

steward, stewardess *noun*

ADJ. **chief, senior | air, cabin, ship's | wine | shop** *She was an active trade unionist and had been elected a shop steward.*

VERB + STEWARD, STEWARDESS **act as | elect (sb)**

PREP. **~ to** *Moore was acting as steward to Sir Michael le Fleming.* > Note at JOB

stick *noun*

ADJ. **big, long | little, short | thick, thin**

QUANT. **bundle | pile**

VERB + STICK **brandish, wave** *A mob came over the hill yelling and brandishing sticks.*

stick *verb*

ADV. **just, simply** *He simply stuck a pin in at random amongst the names of candidates.*

PREP. **in, into, on, onto, through** *He stuck the note through her letter box.*
PHRASAL VERBS stick to sth

ADV. **close, closely | rigidly, slavishly, strictly** *sticking slavishly to the rules* **| doggedly, firmly, resolutely, stubbornly** *She simply made a decision and resolutely stuck to it.*

VERB + STICK **tend to** *I tended to stick to tried and tested techniques.* **| decide to | be determined to**

sticky *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | become, go**

ADV. **horribly, really, very** *covered in a horribly sticky mess* **| all** *The rubber's gone all sticky.* **| a bit, rather, slightly** *The paint was still slightly sticky.*

PREP. **with** *His hair was sticky with blood.*

stiff *adj.*

1 **difficult to bend/move**

VERBS **be, feel, lie, look, sit, stand** *She lay stiff and still beside him.* | **become, get, go** *My trousers were getting stiff with mud. My fingers had gone stiff with cold.*

ADV. **very** | **a bit, fairly, quite, rather**

PREP. **with** *The clothes were stiff with dust and grease.*

2 **having sore muscles**

VERBS **be, feel** *He felt stiff all over.* | **become, get, go** *You'll get stiff if you don't have a hot bath.* | **leave sb, make sb** *All that digging made me really stiff.*

ADV. **really, very** | **all** *My arm's gone all stiff.* | **a bit, a little, rather**

PREP. **from** *stiff from kneeling*

3 **strong/severe**

VERBS **be, seem** *Their punishment seemed rather stiff.*

ADV. **very** *in the face of some very stiff competition* | **a bit, fairly, quite, rather**

4 **not friendly or relaxed**

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** *She was aware that her words sounded stiff.* | **become**

ADV. **very** | **a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** *His manner seemed rather stiff and impersonal.*

stigma *noun*

ADJ. **social**

VERB + STIGMA **carry** *Being an unmarried mother used to carry a social stigma.* **|** **remove** *Wider knowledge of the disease removed some of the stigma from it.* **|** **suffer (from)** *He still suffered the stigma of having been rejected for the army.*

STIGMA + VERB **be attached to sth, be associated with sth** *There is still a lot of stigma attached to suicide.*

PREP. **~ to** *There is no stigma to being made redundant.*

still *adj.*

1 **not moving**

VERBS **be, hold, keep, lie, sit, stand, stay** *Hold still a minute while I pin your dress up. For goodness' sake, sit still!* **| hold sb/sth, keep sb/sth** *I held the cat still while the vet gave the injection.*

ADV. **very | absolutely, quite, stock-***He stood stock-still, hardly daring to breathe.*

2 **calm and quiet**

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, go** *Suddenly everything went still.* **| remain**

ADV. **very | completely** *It was a completely still, warm evening.* **| strangely** *The air was strangely still and silent.*

stillness *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, great, utter | sudden** *There was a sudden stillness in the air.* **| eerie | inner**

VERB + STILLNESS **break** *A voice behind the hedge broke the stillness.*

PREP. **in (the) ~** *He lay in absolute stillness. in the stillness of the night*

stimulate *verb*

ADV. **greatly, significantly, strongly | further | effectively | directly** *An interest rate increase directly stimulates saving and reduces real expenditure.* **| intellectually** *activities designed to stimulate the children intellectually*

VERB + STIMULATE **help (to) | be designed to, be intended to**

stimulating *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound | find sb/sth**

ADV. **extremely, really, very | intellectually, visually** *The programme contains some creative and visually stimulating material.*

stimulation *noun*

ADJ. **direct | electrical** *electrical stimulation of nervous tissue* **| auditory, sensory, visual | sexual | intellectual, mental**

VERB + STIMULATION **get** *You don't get any intellectual stimulation in this job.* **| give sb, provide (sb with)** *The playgroup provides plenty of stimulation for the children.* **| respond to**

PHRASES **a lack of stimulation**

stimulus *noun*

ADJ. **great, major, powerful, strong | negative, positive | external | initial | auditory, intellectual, sensory, verbal, visual**

VERB + STIMULUS **act as, give, provide | react to, respond to**

STIMULUS + VERB **come from sth** *The initial stimulus came from a letter in the newspaper.*

PREP. **~ for** *The very act of lying down in bed should provide a strong stimulus for sleep.* **| ~ to** *A reduction in corporate tax should act as a stimulus to economic activity.*

PHRASES **(in) response to a stimulus**

sting *noun*

1 of an insect, etc.

ADJ. **dangerous, nasty, painful | bee, wasp, etc. | nettle, etc. | deadly, fatal**

VERB + STING **have** *The scorpion has a sting that can be deadly.* **| get** *You can get a nasty sting from a jellyfish.* **| give sb | feel**

2 sharp pain

ADJ. **hot, sharp** *the hot sting of tears*

VERB + STING **feel** *He felt the sharp sting of the soap in his eyes.*

stink *noun*

1 **very unpleasant smell**

ADJ. **acrid, overpowering**

STINK + NOUN **bomb**

PREP. **~ of** *the acrid stink of cordite*

2 **very strong complaint about sth**

ADJ. **tremendous**

VERB + STINK **cause, kick up, make, raise** *The parents of the pupils say they'll kick up a stink if the school roof isn't repaired before the winter.*

stint *noun*

ADJ. **long | brief**

VERB + STINT **do** *He's doing a brief stint at the World Bank in Washington.* **| start | finish**

PREP. **during a/the ~** *She met her husband during her stint at the London office.*

stipulation *noun*

VERB + STIPULATION **make** *The only stipulation the building society makes is that house must be insured.* **| drop**

PREP. **with the ~** *He left all his money to the town with the stipulation that it should be used to build a new football stadium.* **| ~ about/as to** *There's no stipulation as to the amount you can invest.*

stir *noun*

1 action of stirring

ADJ. **good**

VERB + STIR **give sth** *Give the mixture a good stir.*

2 general excitement or shock

ADJ. **considerable, great, real**

VERB + STIR **cause, create**

PREP. **~ about/over** *There was quite a stir about the book.* **| ~ among/amongst** *The discovery caused something of a stir among physicists.*

PHRASES **quite a/something of a stir**

stir *verb*

1 **move a liquid round and round**

ADV. **thoroughly, well | carefully, gently | vigorously | gradually | all the time, constantly, continuously** *Bring to the boil, stirring all the time.* **| occasionally | in** *Gradually stir in the beaten egg.*

PREP. **into** *Chop an onion and stir it into the sauce.*

2 **move**

ADV. **barely, hardly** *The wind came in tiny puffs that hardly stirred the surface of the water.* **| slightly | suddenly | restlessly** *The students stirred restlessly in their seats.* **| sleepily | uneasily**

PHRASES **stir in your sleep**

3 **make sb feel an emotion**

ADV. **deeply, greatly** *It was not music to set hearts on fire or deeply stir the emotions.* **| up** *Going back there stirred up a lot of memories for her.*

stirrup *noun*

VERB + STIRRUP **adjust | rise in, stand (up) in** *She stood up in her stirrups to see where the others had gone.*

STIRRUP + NOUN **leather** *She had to lengthen her stirrup leathers.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He put his feet in the stirrups.*

stitch *noun*

1 in sewing

ADJ. **blanket, chain, cross, running, seam, tacking, zigzag, etc.**

VERB + STITCH **do, put, sew (sth) with** *Can you do chain stitch? Put a stitch in the corner of the pocket to keep it in place. The edge was sewn with blanket stitch.* **| remove, take out**

2 in knitting

ADJ. **knitted | cable, garter, plain, purl, slip, stocking, tuck, etc.**

VERB + STITCH **knit | cast on, cast off | drop, pick up**

3 in a wound

ADJ. **dissolvable, dissolving, self-dissolving**

VERB + STITCH **have** *I had to have five stitches when I cut my finger.* **| insert, put in | remove, take out | have out** *When are you having your stitches out?*

STITCH + VERB **dissolve**

PREP. **~ in** *He had twenty stitches in a head wound.*

stock exchange *noun*

VERB + STOCK EXCHANGE **open | close** *Bahrain's stock exchange closed up 10.09 points today at 2160.09.*

STOCK EXCHANGE + VERB **rally, rise** *The stock exchange rallied in response to the announcement of massive American investment.* **| fall**

STOCK EXCHANGE + NOUN **collapse, crash**

PREP. **on the ~** *to lose money on the stock exchange*

stock *noun*

1 **available supply of sth**

ADJ. **good, high, huge, large | low | adequate | declining, dwindling, falling** *dwindling fish stocks in the North Sea* **| surplus | buffer, reserve** *A buffer stock of grain was held in case of emergency shortages.* **| fresh, new | old | existing | fish, food, etc. | housing** *The housing stock is no longer large enough for the population.* **| capital, money | library**

VERB + STOCK **carry, have, hold, keep** *The big supermarkets carry huge stocks of most goods.* **| add to, increase | dispose of, get rid of, reduce, sell off** *They're selling off their old stock cheap.* **| maintain, protect** *laws to protect fish stocks* **| replace, replenish**

STOCK + VERB **be/go up, increase | be/go down, decline, dwindle, fall, run low** *Stocks of coal are running dangerously low.* **| last** *The offer is only available while stocks last.*

STOCK + NOUN **cupboard, room** (also **stockroom**) **| levels | control**

PREP. **from ~** *We can supply the table from stock.* **| in ~** *Have you got futon beds in stock or will I have to order one?* **| out of ~** *Red tights are out of stock.*

2 **share in the capital of a company**

ADJ. **blue-chip, gilt-edged, index-linked**

VERB + STOCK **acquire, buy, invest in, purchase | cash in, dispose of, sell | deal in, trade | have, hold, own | issue | value** *The stocks were valued at £100,000.*

STOCK + VERB **be down/up | fall, go down, plummet, sink | go up, rise, soar**

STOCK + NOUN **exchange, market | index**

PREP. **in ~s** *She's got about £30,000 in stocks.*

PHRASES **investment in stocks, the value of the stocks** *The total value of the* *stocks was over £3 million.*

3 **liquid used for making soups, sauces, etc.**

ADJ. **chicken, fish, vegetable, etc.**

VERB + STOCK **make | thicken | dilute, reduce | flavour** *Flavour the stock with bay leaves.*

STOCK + NOUN **cube**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Poach the fish in the stock.*

stock *verb* **be stocked**

ADV. **plentifully, well | fully, properly**

PREP. **with** *shops stocked with cheap souvenirs*

stockbroker *noun*

ADJ. **large | leading | private client | City**

VERB + STOCKBROKER **consult**

PREP. **through a ~** *The bonds were sold through a stockbroker.*

PHRASES **a firm of stockbrokers** > Note at JOB

stocking *noun*

ADJ. **fishnet, sheer | 15-denier, etc. | laddered | Christmas** *trinkets you can use to fill a Christmas stocking*

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + STOCKING **pull on | peel off** *She slowly peeled off one stocking.* **| ladder** *She laddered her stocking on a bramble bush.* > Special page at CLOTHES

stomach *noun*

1 **part of the body where food is digested**

ADJ. **empty, full** *You shouldn't drink wine on an empty stomach* (= without eating food). | **queasy, upset** *She's been off work with an upset stomach.* | **strong** *You need a strong stomach to go on the giant roller coaster.* | **weak**

VERB + STOMACH **turn** *The smell of the dead dog turned his stomach.* | **settle** *He had a hangover, so he ordered a sandwich to settle his stomach.* | **settle in** *A feeling of nausea settled in her stomach.* | **pump** *He had his stomach pumped after taking an overdose.*

STOMACH + VERB **churn, heave, lurch** *My stomach lurched as another big wave hit the boat.* | **rumble** | **tighten, turn (over), twist**

STOMACH + NOUN **ache, bug, cancer, complaint, cramp, disorder, illness, pain, problem, ulcer, upset** | **lining, wall** | **acids, juices** | **contents** *Human remains were found among the stomach contents of the shark.* | **pump, tube**

PREP. **in the/your ~** *enzymes in the stomach*

PHRASES **butterflies in your stomach** *I had butterflies in my stomach as I went to get my exam results.* | **the pit of your stomach** *I felt a sickening feeling in the pit of my stomach when I saw the ambulance.*

2 **front part of the body below the chest**

ADJ. **firm, flat** | **bulging, fat, flabby, large, stout** | **bloated, swollen** | **bare**

VERB + STOMACH **hold in, pull in, suck in** *He sucked in his stomach as he walked past the girls.* | **lie on** | **clutch, hold** *'Call a doctor!' he said, clutching his stomach.* | **pat, rub** *'I'm eating for two now,' she said, patting her stomach.*

STOMACH + VERB **protrude, stick out**

STOMACH + NOUN **muscles** | **injury, strain, wound**

PREP. **on the/your ~** *I lay on my stomach on the beach.*

stone *noun*

1 **hard solid substance**

ADJ. **heavy | hard, soft | rough, smooth | weathered | carved** *a carved stone fireplace* **| building**

QUANT. **block, slab**

VERB + STONE **break, cut, hew (sth from/out of)** *Convicts were made to break stone for the roads. The stone is cut into blocks ready for building. The walls were hewn from local stone.* **| dress | be built/carved/made from/in/(out) of, carve sth in** *names carved in stone*

STONE + NOUN **block, flag, slab** *The path's stone flags were worn and broken.* **| arch/archway, bridge, building, floor, pillar, stairs, structure, wall, etc. | monument, sculpture | age**

PREP. **in ~** *He is a sculptor who works mainly in stone.*

2 **small piece of rock**

ADJ. **sharp | smooth | round | loose** *Some loose stones tumbled down the slope behind her.* **| foundation, memorial, paving, stepping | grinding**

QUANT. **heap, pile**

VERB + STONE **hurl, throw** *The boys were caught throwing stones at passing trains.*

3 **precious stone**

ADJ. **gem** (also **gemstone**), **precious, semi-precious**

VERB + STONE **mine | cut | set** *She had the stone set in a ring.*

STONE + VERB **glitter, shine**

4 **measure of weight > Note at MEASURE**

stool *noun*

ADJ. **high, tall | three-legged | folding, fold-up | bar, kitchen, music, piano**

VERB + STOOL **perch on/be perched on, sit (down) on** *He was perched on a bar stool, ordering a beer.* **| get off | drag up, pull up** *She pulled up a stool next to me.*

stop *noun*

1 **stopping or staying**

ADJ. **long | brief, short | overnight | abrupt, sharp, sudden | emergency | scheduled, unscheduled | coffee, fuel, lunch, refreshment, refuelling, toilet, etc. | pit** *The cars made two pit stops during the race.*

VERB + STOP **bring/draw sth to, put** *She brought the car to an abrupt stop. to put a stop to all the arguments* **| come to, draw to, slow to** *The truck came to a sudden stop.* **| screech to | have, make** *We had a lunch stop at Timperley.*

STOP + NOUN **sign**

PREP. **~ at** *There will be a stop at Canterbury.* **| ~ for** *a stop for refreshments*

PHRASES **come to a dead/full stop** *Between twelve and two everything comes to a dead stop.*

2 **for a bus, etc.**

ADJ. **bus, tram | request**

VERB + STOP **get off at | miss** *We were chatting and missed our stop.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *We dropped the kids off at the bus stop.* **| between ~s** *You're not allowed to get off between stops.*

stop *verb*

ADV. **abruptly, dead, (dead) in your tracks, immediately, short, suddenly** *Suddenly he stopped dead: what was he doing? The question stopped Alice in her tracks.* **| altogether** *The sobs came less frequently, then stopped altogether.* **| for a moment, momentarily | never** *That phone never stops ringing!*

VERB + STOP **can/can't, could/couldn't** *He couldn't stop thinking about her.* **| try to | be going to** *When is the violence going to stop?* **| want (sb/sth) to** *I was enjoying myself so much I didn't want to stop.*

PREP. **from** *They tried to stop me from leaving.*

stopover *noun*

ADJ. **brief**

VERB + STOPOVER **have**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *We had our tickets checked at each stopover.* **| during a/the ~** *During our two-day stopover in Bangkok we saw most of the sights.*

stoppage *noun*

ADJ. **complete | work**

VERB + STOPPAGE **call** *The stoppage was called to protest against wage cuts.* **| threaten | be involved in | end**

PREP. **during a/the ~**

storage *noun*

ADJ. **safe** *the safe storage of nuclear weapons* **| cold | disk** *the available disk storage capacity* **| food, water, etc. | data, information, etc.**

VERB + STORAGE **put sth in/into** *The strawberries are put into cold storage for several months.* **| take sth out of**

STORAGE + NOUN **facilities | device, medium, system** *digital storage devices* **| area, capacity, space | building, cabinet, compartment, cupboard, depot, room, shed, unit** *a handy storage compartment below the oven* **| bin, container, jar, tank, vessel | cost | life** *The cheese has a storage life of two months.*

PREP. **in ~** *All their furniture is in storage until they come back from Africa.*

store *noun*

1 **shop**

ADJ. **big, large, major | small | retail | department | self-service | high-street, local, village | chain | discount | convenience, corner, general | electrical, grocery, hardware, etc.**

QUANT. **chain**

STORE + VERB **sell sth**

STORE + NOUN **chain | account, card | assistant, manager, owner | detective**

PREP. **at/in a/the ~**

2 **supply for future use**

ADJ. **considerable, good, great, inexhaustible, large, vast | small | food | fat** *your body's fat stores*

VERB + STORE **have, keep | build up**

STORE + NOUN **cupboard, room** (also **storeroom)**

PREP. **~ of** *a vast store of knowledge*

3 **place for keeping sth**

ADJ. **cold, cool, dry** *Beef and lamb are hung in a cold store for at least a week.* **| temporary | ammunition, equipment, grain, etc.**

STORE + VERB **hold sth** *The grain store holds several thousand tonnes.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *You'll find a ladder in the equipment store.* **| ~ for** *We're using the shed as a temporary store for all our stuff.*

store *verb*

ADV. **carefully, properly, safely** *The paintings were carefully stored in crates dependent on their size.* **| conveniently, easily** *Butane can be conveniently stored as a liquid in a can.* **| electronically** *electronically stored information* **| separately | together | away, up**

storey *noun*

ADJ. **lower | top, upper**

VERB + STOREY **have** *The house has three storeys.* **| occupy** *The kitchen occupies the lower storey.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *I live on the top storey.*

PHRASES **5/10, etc. storeys high** *The building is four storeys high.*

storm *noun*

1 period of bad weather

ADJ. **bad, big, devastating, disastrous, ferocious, fierce, great, heavy, raging, severe, terrible, tremendous, violent | approaching, gathering, impending** *the dark clouds of an approaching storm* **| freak | autumn, summer, winter | tropical | monsoon | dust, electric/electrical, lightning, magnetic, rain, sand, snow, thunder** (also **thunderstorm)**

VERB + STORM **be in for** *I think we're in for a storm* (= going to have one).

STORM + VERB **hit sth, strike sth** *It was the worst storm to hit London this century.* **| rage** *The storm raged all night.* **| be brewing, be coming** *A storm had been brewing all day.* **| blow up, break, burst** *The storm broke while we were on the mountain.* **| abate, blow itself out, blow over, pass, subside** *The storm blew over after a couple of hours.* **| batter sth, buffet sth, lash sth, ravage sth, sweep sth** *a boat battered by the storm Winter storms swept the coasts.* **| last** *The storm lasted for three days.*

STORM + NOUN **cloud** *(often figurative) In 1939 the storm clouds gathered over Europe.* **| damage, losses** *Insurance companies face hefty payouts for storm damage.*

PREP. **during/in a/the ~**

PHRASES **at the height of the storm, the calm/lull before the storm, the eye of the storm**

2 violent display of strong feeling

ADJ. **approaching, coming, gathering** *a gathering storm of discontent* **| political**

VERB + STORM **arouse, cause, create, provoke, raise, spark | face | ride out, weather** *The government is determined to ride out the political storm sparked by its new immigration policy.*

STORM + VERB **blow up, break, burst, erupt | blow over, pass**

PREP. **amid a/the ~** *The band toured Ireland amid a storm of controversy.* **| ~ between, ~ of** *His comments created a storm of protest in the media.* **| ~ over** *A storm blew up between Britain and America over Venezuela.*

story *noun*

1 **account of events/people, true or invented**

ADJ. **true | plausible | false, made-up** *She told the police a false story about being attacked.* **| apocryphal | cock-and-bull, tall** *No one would believe such a tall story.* **| official** *The official story was that the singer had broken his arm falling in the shower.* **| wild | convincing | charming, compelling, delightful, dramatic,** exciting, fantastic, fascinating, good, great, interesting, **intriguing, nice, wonderful | amazing, bizarre, colourful, crazy, extraordinary, incredible,** outrageous, remarkable, **strange | inspiring | amusing, entertaining, funny | epic** *the epic story of a family's escape from war* **| complex, elaborate | straightforward | awful, horrific, horrifying, nasty, shocking, terrible, tragic | sorry** *His life was a sorry story of betrayal and rejection.* **| depressing, heart-rending, moving, poignant, sad | improbable** *The film tells the improbable story of a monkey that becomes a politician.* **| well known | familiar** *the familiar story of a star who turns to drink and drugs* **| popular** *There is one popular story in the village of a man-eating cat that lives in the forest.* **| life, success** *She told them her life story.* **| hard-luck, rags-to-riches** *He was boring people with more of his hard-luck stories. The film is the rags-to-riches story of a country girl who becomes a famous singer.* **| after-dinner | coherent** *The film lacks a coherent story.* **| full, whole** *I suspected he hadn't told us the whole story.* **| short** *a collection of short stories* **| children's | classic | bedtime | mythical, mythological | adventure, Bible, biblical, crime, detective, fairy, ghost, horror, love, private-eye, spy, suspense**

QUANT. **fragment** *We had difficulty in piecing together the fragments of her story.* **| collection** *a collection of stories by modern writers*

VERB + STORY **read (sb)** *My dad sometimes read me a story at bedtime.* **| write | narrate, recount, relate, tell (sb) | embellish, embroider | believe** *The police didn't believe her story.* **| stick to** *We must stick to our story about the accident.* **| change** *At first he denied everything, but then he changed his story and said it was an accident.* **| swap** *We swapped stories about our worst teachers.* **| circulate, spread**

STORY + VERB **abound, circulate, get about, go around/round, spread** *Stories abound of vandalism and looting. A story was going round that the factory was in line for closure.* **| emerge | begin, open, start** *The story opens with a man hiding* *from the police under a woman's skirt.* | **progress, unfold** *The motives of the hero become clearer as the story unfolds.* | **end** | **be called sth, be entitled sth** | **be set in ...** *The story is set in Poland in the 1930s.* | **be based on sth** | **concern sth, involve sth, revolve around sth** | **contain sth** | **illustrate sth** *This story illustrates the dangers of living on credit.*

STORY + NOUN **teller**(also **storyteller**) | **telling** (also **storytelling**) | **line** (also **storyline)** *His novels always have the same basic storyline.*

PREP. **~ about** *a story about time travel* | **~ of** *the story of the Beatles*

PHRASES **but that's another story** *Many years later I returned to Africa but that's another story* (= I am not going to talk about it now). | **it's a long story** *'How come you've only got one shoe on?' 'It's a long story.'* | **sb's half/side of the story** *The teacher punished me without listening to my side of the story.* | **so the story goes, the story goes that ...** (= used to describe what people are saying although it may not be correct) *She never saw him again?or so the story goes.* | **the story of my life** *Out of work with no money?that's the story of my life.* | **to cut a long story short** *Anyway, to cut a long story short* (= not to give all the details), *we had this argument and I haven't seen him since.* | **a version of a story** *According to Rachel's version of the story, they threw the key in the river.*

2 **report in a newspaper, etc.**

ADJ. **big, top** *The biggest story of the day was the signing of the peace agreement. And now back to our top story tonight ...* | **exclusive** | **main** | **full** *Full story on page 3.* | **scare** *scare stories about the harmful effects of the vaccination* | **inside** *The magazine gives the inside story of life in a rock band.* | **sensational** | **lurid, sordid, spicy** *lurid stories of politicians' sexual adventures* | **cover, front-page, lead** *The magazine chose the peace process as its cover story.* | **news**

VERB + STORY **file, write** *More than one correspondent filed a story about the incident.* | **carry, print, publish, run** *Every newspaper carried the story.*

PREP. **~ about, ~ of** *the story of his arrest*

stow *verb*

ADV. **carefully, neatly, safely | away**

PREP. **in** *The luggage was now safely stowed away in the back of the truck.*

straight *adj.*

1 not bent or curved

VERBS **be, look | become | stay | keep sth** *Keep your back absolutely straight.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely, dead, perfectly** *Keep going in a dead straight line. His teeth were white and perfectly straight.* **| almost, more or less, nearly, practically | fairly, relatively**

2 level/upright

VERBS **be, look | hang sth, put sth** *Can you hang that sign straight for me?*

ADV. **absolutely, completely, perfectly, quite | almost, more or less, nearly**

3 tidy/in order

VERBS **be | get sth, put sth** *I'm trying to get the house straight before the weekend. She tidied up and put the ornaments straight.*

4 honest and truthful

VERBS **be** *I think he was pretty straight with me.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely, totally | fairly, pretty**

PREP. **with** *Are you being completely straight with her?*

5 clear/understood

VERBS **be | get sth**

ADV. **absolutely** *Let's get this absolutely straight.*

straightforward *adj.*

1 **clear and simple**

VERBS **appear, be, look, prove, seem, sound | find sth** *I think you'll find it all quite straightforward.*

ADV. **extremely, remarkably, very | absolutely, entirely, perfectly, quite** *Look, it's perfectly straightforward?just multiply everything by five.* **| by no means, far from, hardly, less than** *Getting funding for the project was far from straightforward.* **| comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively | apparently | deceptively** *The answer to this question is deceptively straightforward* (= more straightforward than it looks).

2 **honest**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **very | quite | refreshingly** *a refreshingly straightforward attitude*

PREP. **about, with** *He was quite straightforward with us about the difficulties involved.*

strain *noun*

1 **severe demand on strength, resources, etc.**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, heavy, real, severe, terrible, tremendous** *It's a real strain having to get up so early!* | **slight** | **increasing** | **constant** | **excessive, intolerable, unbearable, undue** | **emotional, financial, mental, nervous, physical, psychological** *The mental strain of sharing an office with Alison was starting to tell.* | **breaking** *a fishing line with a 15lb breaking strain*

VERB + STRAIN **be/come under, feel, suffer (from)** *Television newsreaders come under enormous strain. After weeks of overtime, she was starting to feel the strain.* | **cause, create, impose, place, put** *Increasing demand is placing undue strain on services.* | **ease, reduce** | **cope with, stand, take** | **increase**

STRAIN + VERB **show, take its toll (on sb), tell (on sb)** *After six weeks of uncertainty, the strain was beginning to take its toll.*

PREP. **under the ~** *The ice gave way under the strain. He broke under the strain of having to work twelve hours a day.* | **~ on** *There's too much strain on the corner of the table.*

PHRASES **a bit of a strain** *I found it a bit of a strain making conversation with her.* | **signs of strain** *After three years, their marriage was beginning to show signs of strain.* | **stresses and strains** *the stresses and strains of a long day* | **take the strain off sb/out of sth** *The new scheme is designed to take the strain out of shopping.*

2 **injury**

ADJ. **bad** | **slight** | **back, eye, muscle, thigh, etc.**

VERB + STRAIN **have, be suffering from** | **get** *You'll get eye strain if you don't put the light on.* | **recover from, shake off** *Gerrard will play if he can shake off a slight thigh strain.*

strain *verb*

1 **make a great effort to do sth**

ADV. **hard** *straining hard to understand* **| forward** *I strained forward to get a better view.*

VERB + STRAIN **have to**

PREP. **against** *The dogs were straining against the sledge.* **| at** *Several men were straining at a rope, trying to move the stalled vehicle.* **| for** *Their ears strained for any slight sound.*

PHRASES **strain to hear/see sth** *We had to strain to hear what was being said.*

2 **put a lot of pressure on sth**

ADV. **seriously, severely** *The dispute severely strained relations between the two countries.*

strained *adj.*

1 worried and tense

VERBS be, feel, look, seem, sound

ADV. very | a bit, a little, rather *She looked rather strained and miserable.*

2 not natural or friendly

VERBS be | become, grow | remain *The atmosphere remained somewhat strained all evening.*

ADV. extremely, severely, very *Relations between the two countries had become severely strained.* **| increasingly | a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat**

strait *noun*

1 **narrow piece of water connecting seas, etc.**

ADJ. **narrow**

VERB + STRAIT **go through, pass through | enter**

STRAIT + VERB **separate sth** *The oil terminal is in the narrow strait that separates the island from the mainland.*

PREP. **across the ~** *He tried to swim across the Straits of Gibraltar.* **| in the ~** *a ship anchored in the Straits of Hormuz* **| on the ~** *The town is on the straits between the Black Sea and the Mediterranean.* **| through the ~** *Many hundreds of vessels pass through the straits each year.* **| ~ between 2 straits** trouble

ADJ. **desperate, dire, serious | financial**

PREP. **in ~** *The business is in dire financial straits.*

strand *noun*

1 **single thread, hair, etc.**

ADJ. **long | thick, thin | loose | single**

VERB + STRAND **twist (together), weave (together)** *She wove the four coloured strands together into a ribbon.*

PREP. **~ of** *a loose strand of hair*

2 **one part of a story, idea, etc.**

ADJ. **important, main | different, distinct, separate, various** *At the end, all the different strands of the story are brought together.*

VERB + STRAND **bring together, draw together, pull together, weave together | disentangle, unravel**

STRAND + VERB **come together**

PREP. **~ to** *There are three main strands to the policy.* **| ~ in/within** *There are various strands in feminist thinking.*

PHRASES **strands of opinion/thought**

stranded *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, end up, find yourself, get** *We ended up stranded in Paris with no money. Some people found themselves stranded in the lifts as the power failed yet again. We got stranded in the city centre after we missed the last bus home.* **| leave sb** *Thousands of air travellers were left stranded by the strike.*

strange *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste | consider sth, find sth, regard sth as, think sth** *His behaviour was regarded as very strange.*

ADV. **extremely, really, very | a bit, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, rather, somewhat** *He's quite nice, but a bit strange.*

PREP. **to** *Their accent was strange to her ears.*

stranger *noun*

ADJ. **complete, perfect, total | virtual | passing**

PREP. **~ to** *He was a complete stranger to me. She was a stranger to the place*

PHRASES **almost a stranger** *His years abroad had made him almost a stranger with his family.* **| a stranger here** *You're a stranger here, aren't you?* **| a stranger in/to these parts** *A stranger to these parts would be confused by some of the local customs.*

strangle *verb*

ADV. **almost, half, nearly**

VERB + STRANGLE **try to**

PREP. **with** *He was strangled with a scarf.*

PHRASES **be found strangled**

strap *noun*

ADJ. **broad, wide | narrow | tight | loose | adjustable, detachable** *The bag comes with detachable straps.* **| elastic, elasticated, padded | carrying, safety** *a portable radio with a carrying strap* **| ankle, chest, shoulder, waist, wrist, etc. | bra, watch, etc.**

VERB + STRAP **buckle (up), do up, fasten | unbuckle, undo, unfasten | tighten | loosen | adjust | attach, clip on, fit** *He clipped on his safety strap. The camera was fitted with a strap.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *His binoculars were on a strap round his neck.* **| ~ across, ~ around/round, etc.** *She had a wide leather strap around her wrist.*

strap *verb*

ADV. **safely | firmly, tightly | down, in, on** *He strapped his gun belt on.*

PREP. **into** *Make sure that the child is strapped tightly into the buggy.* **| to**

strategy *noun their strategy* **| ~ for** *to develop*

ADJ. **effective, good, successful |** *an effective strategy for change* | **bad, poor | clear, coherent | ~ on** *the party's strategy* on **viable | future | long-term,** *poverty* **| ~ towards a medium-term, short-term |** *comprehensive strategy towards* **basic, broad, general, overall** *regional development*t*Their overall strategy is quite*

PHRASES **a change in strategy** *The good, but one or two of the details coming year may herald a change* *could be improved.* **|** *in strategy for major publishers.* | **comprehensive | global** *a global* **the** *marketing strategy* **| grand | adoption/ development/formulation draft | dual, two-pronged** *The* **of a strategy** *The money will go government has employed a dual towards the development of new strategy to achieve these two product and sales strategies.* **| the** *objectives.* **| radical | high-risk, implementation/pursuit of a risky | defensive | prevention | strategy** *Their single-minded* **economics-based,** *pursuit of this controversial* **market-oriented, etc.** *a strategy led to their fall from customer-oriented business power.* **| part of a strategy** *He strategy* **| anti-inflationary,** *pretended that resigning was part* **anti-racist, etc. | survival |** *of his long-term career strategy.* **defence, military | campaign, election, electoral, government, political | pedagogic, teaching | learning | business, commercial, company, corporate, financial, investment, management/managerial, marketing, product, promotional, recruitment, research, sales | economic, energy, environmental, industrial, legislative, etc.**

VERB + STRATEGY **have | design, develop, devise, draw up, formulate, map out, plan, work out** *A coherent strategy for getting more people back to work needs to be developed. The council is drawing up a strategy to meet the needs of the homeless.* **| explore** *It is certainly a strategy worth exploring.* **| adopt, decide (on), employ, follow, implement, pursue, use** *They're pursuing a strategy of massive retaliation.* **| outline, propose, set out, unveil** *The document sets out the government's new strategy.* **| change, revise | focus** *The company will now focus its strategy on its core business areas.* **| abandon**

STRATEGY + VERB **be based on sth | be aimed at sth, be designed to** *a strategy aimed at reducing the risk of accidents* **| consist of sth, involve sth | work** *The company's financial strategy is not working.* **| fail**

STRATEGY + NOUN **development, formulation | review | document, paper**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the key idea in*

straw *noun*

ADJ. **fresh**

QUANT. **bale** *I sat on a bale of straw near the fire.*

PREP. **in (the) ~** *The rat hid in the straw.* **| on (the) ~** *The animals sleep on straw.*

strawberry *noun*

QUANT. **punnet** *I bought a punnet of strawberries.*

STRAWBERRY + NOUN **bed, plant** > Special page at FRUIT

stray *verb*

ADV. **far** *The animals hadn't strayed too far.* **| accidentally, involuntarily** *Her eyes strayed involuntarily.*

VERB + STRAY **allow sth to** *new penalties for owners who allow their dogs to stray*

PREP. **from** *Be careful not to stray from the path.* **| into, off, to** *His eyes strayed to the telephone. (figurative) Her thoughts strayed to the journey ahead of her.*

streak *noun*

1 **thin line**

ADJ. **dark** *There were dark streaks down her cheeks where she had been crying.* **| faint, pale**

PREP. **~ of** *The last streaks of light faded from the sky.*

PHRASES **a streak of lightning** *A streak of lightning forked across the sky.* **| a streak of red, white, etc.** *She had a few streaks of grey in her black hair.*

2 **aspect of sb's character**

ADJ. **strong | hidden | adventurous, competitive, independent, mean, puritanical, rebellious, ruthless, selfish, stubborn, vicious**

VERB + STREAK **have** *Most of the players have a strong competitive streak.* **| reveal, show** *She suddenly revealed a mean streak in her character.*

PREP. **with a ~** *Holidays in the Australian outback are for those with an adventurous streak.* **| ~ of** *There was a streak of insanity in the family.*

3 **period of good/bad luck**

ADJ. **winning | losing**

VERB + STREAK **be on** *The team has been on a winning streak since it won against Lazio.*

stream *noun*

1 **small river**

ADJ. **little, small | shallow | clear | fast-flowing | bubbling** *We picknicked beside a bubbling stream.* **| mountain, underground**

VERB + STREAM **cross**

STREAM + VERB **flow, run** *The stream flows through a narrow valley.*

STREAM + NOUN **bed**

PREP. **across a/the ~, down a/the ~, in a/the ~** *There are small fish in the stream.* **| on a/the ~** *a leaf floating on the stream* **| up a/the ~**

PHRASES **the side/edge of the stream**

2 **continuous flow of a liquid/gas/light**

ADJ. **thin | air, gas**

VERB + STREAM **let in**

STREAM + VERB **flow** *A stream of blood flowed from the wound.*

PREP. **~ of**

3 **continuous flow of people/vehicles/things happening**

ADJ. **constant, continuous, endless, never-ending, steady** *a constant stream of letters Cars filed past in an endless stream.*

VERB + STREAM **let loose/out**

PREP. **~ of** *He let loose a stream of abuse.*

streamline *verb*

ADV. **perfectly**

PREP. **for** *Dolphins are perfectly streamlined for movement in the water.*

street *noun*

ADJ. **broad, wide | narrow | bustling, busy, congested, crowded | pedestrianized, traffic-free** *Most local people support the idea of traffic-free streets.* | **deserted, desolate, empty, lonely, quiet | noisy | dark | bright, well-lit | dim, dimly-lit, gloomy | winding | steep | cobbled, paved | unpaved | clean | dusty, filthy, grubby | dangerous, mean, unsafe** *He grew up on the mean streets of one of the city's toughest areas.* | **leafy, tree-lined | one-way, two-way | dead-end | main, principal | back, side** *a rundown house in the back streets of London a bar in a side street off Oxford Street* | **city, village | right | wrong** *You've taken the wrong street.* | **shopping** *the town's main shopping street* | **residential, suburban, urban**

VERB + STREET **go along/down/up, take, turn down/into/up** *Take the second street on the right after the bridge. We turned down a dead-end street by mistake.* | **cross | block, cordon off | patrol** *The police have been patrolling the streets in this area since the murder.* | **roam, throng, walk** *Gangs roamed the streets at night. Crowds thronged the streets.* | **clear** *Police were told to clear the streets of drug dealers before the Olympics.* | **widen**

STREET + VERB **go, lead, run | bend, curve, turn | be lined with sth** *streets lined with cafes* | **be named sth, be named after sb/sth** *Mozart is remembered by a street named after him.*

STREET + NOUN **corner | map, plan | layout, network, pattern** *the dense street pattern of the old town* | **name, number, sign** *Most street names were changed under the new regime. The shops had no street numbers on.* | **lamp, light, lighting | parking | crime, gang | attack, battle, brawl, fight, fighting, robbery, violence** *He suffered extensive injuries in a street attack. street fighting between police and stone-throwing youths* | **demonstration, protest | party, procession | cleaner, sweeper | door** *There were photographers outside the street door so she used a back entrance.* | **market | entertainer, entertainment, musician, performer, theatre | pedlar, seller, trader, vendor | hustler** *Tourists need to be wary of street hustlers near the station.* | **cred/credibility, culture, fashion, life, wisdom** *His spell in prison gained him a lot of street cred. the street culture of working-class youth* | **collection** *The charity is having a street collection in aid of the local hospital.* | **children, kids, urchins** *a charity set up to house street children* | **girls** (= prostitutes) | **value** *drugs with a street value of £5 million*

PREP. **across a/the ~** *He could see her across the street.* | **along a/the ~** *They* *walked along the street.* **| down a/the ~** *A band was playing a little way down the street.* **| in a/the ~** *We live in Barker Street.* **| (out) in a/the ~** *A couple were arguing out in the street.* **| into a/the ~** *She stepped out into the street. He turned into a side street.* **| off a/the ~** *a club just off William Street a scheme to keep teenagers off the streets* **| (out) on the ~s** *Thousands of people were out on the streets for the protest.* **| through the ~s** *He wandered through the streets of Calcutta.* **| up a/the ~** *There's a chemist's just up the street.*

PHRASES **at/above/below street level, the end/top of the street, the other side of the street, the street on the left/right**

strength *noun* PREP. **below/under ~** *Injuries meant that the Dutch team was below strength for the final.* | **with ~** *She pushed him away with unexpected strength.*

PHRASES **at full strength** *The orchestra was at full strength for the Mahler symphony.* | **be/get back to full strength** *I'm still not quite back to full strength after my illness.* | **every ounce of strength** *She summon* | **a feat of strength** *He used to entertain people with his feats of strength.* | **a pillar/tower of strength** *He was a tower of strength to his sisters when their father died.* | **a position of strength** *They are negotiating from a position of strength.* | **reserves of strength** *When she had twins, she discovered reserves of strength that she didn't know she had.* | **a show of strength** *50,000 troops massed on the border in the biggest show of strength to date.* | **a source of strength** *Her childhood memories were a great source of strength when her mother was killed.* | **strength born of desperation/fear/panic, etc.** *With strength born of pure panic, she threw her attacker to the ground.* | **strength of character/purpose/will, strength of feeling, the strength of your position, a test/trial of strength** *Today's vote is being seen as a test of strength for the government. The dispute developed into a trial of strength between management and the union.* | **with all your strength** *She threw the rope with all her strength.*

2 **useful quality**

ADJ. **great** | **real**

VERB + STRENGTH **exploit, play to** *The team may not have the best players, but it plays to its strengths.*

STRENGTH + VERB **lie in sth** *Her great strength lies in her flexibility.*

PHRASES **strengths and weaknesses**

1 **how strong sb/sth is**

ADJ. **enormous, great, immense** | high *The material has exceptionally high strength for its weight.* | **greater, superior** *His superior physical strength won him the title.* | **growing** | **continuing** *the continuing strength of the pound* | **relative** | **surprising, unexpected** | **superhuman, supernatural** | **brute** *He got the door open with brute strength.* | **extra** *They are reinforced with steel for extra strength.* |

collective | emotional, inner | muscle, muscular, physical | economic, electoral, financial, industrial, military | numerical *the relative numerical strengths of men and women in the group* **| police, union, etc. | bargaining | wind | alcoholic**

VERB + STRENGTH **have** *He had just enough strength to reach for the phone.* **| find, summon up** *I'm trying to summon up the strength to do some more work.* **| build up, gain, gather** *You need to try and build up your strength before the winter. The opinion that the president should stand down has gained considerable strength.* **|** gain in, grow in, increase in | vary in *These wines vary in strength between 11° and 15°.* **| lose | get back, recover, regain | give sb/sth, lend sb/sth** ***Her*** *love and support gave me strength. The metal reinforcement gives it the strength to resist the high winds.* **| sap** *The series of steep hills sapped the cyclists' strength.* **| conserve, save | draw (on), use** *She was able to draw on her immense inner strength.* **| put** *He put all his strength into reorganizing the department.* **| take** *It took all his strength to open the box.* **| test** *The Moroccan athlete ran a fast lap to test the strength of the other runners.* **| increase | reduce,** undermine *Her unwillingness to answer questions undermined the strength of her position.*

STRENGTH + VERB **grow, increase | decline, ebb (away), fail, falter, wane** *The country's economic strength is declining. Her strength was ebbing fast, so her children were called to her bedside.*

strengthen *verb*

ADV. **considerably, enormously, greatly, immeasurably, significantly, substantially** *The success in the election strengthened the party's position considerably.* **| further** *This merger will further strengthen the company and ensure its continued success.* **| merely** *This temporary setback merely strengthened her resolve.* **| gradually**

VERB + STRENGTHEN **help (to), serve to | be designed to** *These exercises are designed to strengthen your stomach muscles.*

PREP. **against** *The euro has strengthened against the dollar.*

PHRASES **an attempt/effort to strengthen sth, be aimed at strengthening sth** *The new law is aimed at strengthening protective measures for workers.* **| measures to strengthen sth**

stress *noun*

1 state of tension

ADJ. **acute, considerable, extreme, great, high, severe** *Separation is a time of high emotional stress.* | **excessive** | **greater, increased** | **low** | **daily** *the daily stress of teaching* | **emotional, mental, psychological, social** | **economic, financial** *The high mortgage payments put them under severe financial stress.*

QUANT. **level** *Many workers experience a high level of stress in their daily life.*

VERB + STRESS **cause, create** *A divorce causes children great emotional stress.* | **avoid, remove** | **add to, increase** | **reduce, relieve** | **be under, experience, have, suffer (from)** *He's been under a lot of stress lately.* | **cope with, handle, manage, stand, take** *He's had to give up his job as leader of the project?he just couldn't take the stress.*

STRESS + VERB **bring sth about/on** *an illness brought on by stress*

STRESS + NOUN **level** *high stress levels* | **control, management** *Staff are encouraged to go on stress management courses.*

PREP. **under ~** *He broke under stress and had to leave.*

PHRASES **a source of stress** *An overcrowded workplace can be a major source of stress.* | **a symptom of stress** *Tiredness is one of the most common symptoms of stress.*

2 emphasis that shows importance

ADJ. **enormous, great** | **particular, special** | **equal** | **undue**

VERB + STRESS **lay, place, put** *I must lay great stress on the need for secrecy.*

PREP. **with the ~ on** *a study of child development, with the stress on acquisition of social skills* | **~ on** *There's been a lot of stress on getting drug sellers off the streets.*

3 emphasis on a word, syllable, etc.

ADJ. **main, major, primary, strong | secondary, weak | sentence, word**

VERB + STRESS **carry, have, take** *Italian words usually have the main stress on the penultimate syllable in the word. The first syllable takes the stress.* **| place, put | mark** *Mark the primary stress in each word.*

STRESS + VERB **fall, go** *Where does the stress fall in ‘psychological’?*

STRESS + NOUN **mark | pattern**

PREP. **~ on** *There's a stress on the second syllable.*

4 physical force

ADJ. **enormous, high | low | constant | equal** *There is equal stress on all parts of the structure.*

VERB + STRESS **exert, set up** *The tower exerts an enormous stress on the walls. The movements set up stresses in the earth's crust.* **| apply, put, subject sth to** *Stress is applied to the wood to make it bend. Standing all day puts stress on your feet. The buttresses are subjected to constant stress.* **| bear, take, withstand | increase, reduce | transfer, transmit | calculate** *Engineers calculated the stresses borne by each of the bridge supports.*

PREP. **under ~** *Some woods warp under stress.*

stress *verb*

ADV. **heavily, strongly** *He stressed the point very strongly that all these services cost money.* **| constantly, continually, repeatedly** *She has constantly stressed the government's poor record in this area.* **| rightly** *Doctors have rightly stressed the importance of exercise.*

VERB + STRESS **can only, must** *I must stress that we still know very little about this disease.* **| tend to** *Private schools tend to stress the more academic subjects.* **| be anxious to, be at pains to, be careful to, be keen to** *She is at pains to stress the cultural differences between the two countries.* **| be important to**

PHRASES **be worth stressing sth** *It is worth stressing that this was only a relatively small survey.*

stressful *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, sound | become, get** *My job's getting more and more stressful.* **| find sth** *I find these meetings rather stressful.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, particularly, very | fairly, quite, rather | emotionally** *It was an emotionally stressful time for him.*

stretch *noun*

1 area of land or water

ADJ. **great, huge, large, long, open, vast, wide** *A great stretch of ocean lay beneath them.* | **narrow, short, small** | **straight** *a straight stretch of road* | **continuous, unbroken** | **beautiful, lovely** | **deserted, empty, lonely** *an empty stretch of beach* | **fast** | **dangerous, hazardous** | **coastal** *a wild uninhabited coastal stretch*

PREP. **along a/the ~** *There are tailbacks along a 10-mile stretch of the motorway.* | **on a/the ~** *The festival is being held on a stretch of parkland near the river.* | **~ of**

2 stretching

ADJ. **good** | **gentle**

VERB + STRETCH **have** *Have a good stretch from time to time to prevent yourself getting stiff.*

PHRASES **at full stretch** *Her arms were at full stretch.*

stretch *verb*

1 **pull sth tight**

ADV. **taut/tautly, tight/tightly** *Make sure that the rope is stretched tight. Stretch the fabric tightly over the frame.*

PREP. **across, between, over** *Striped awnings had been stretched across the courtyard.*

2 **your body/part of the body**

ADV. **gently | lazily, luxuriously** *He stirred and stretched lazily.* **| full-length** *Andrea turned out the light and stretched full-length on the bed.* **| down, forwards, out, up, upwards** *She stretched up to reach the top shelf.*

3 **cover a large area**

ADV. **far** *The wood does not stretch very far.* **| endlessly | ahead, away** *The road stretched ahead.*

VERB + STRETCH **seem to** *The beach seemed to stretch endlessly.*

PREP. **along, beyond, for** *The beach stretches for five miles.* **| from, into, to** *an area which stretches from London to the north*

4 **continue over a period of time**

ADV. **endlessly | back, out** *The town's history stretches back to before 1500.*

PREP. **before** *Endless summer days stretched out before us.* **| into** *The talks look set to stretch into a second week.*

5 **your ability/intelligence**

ADV. **really | fully** *We can't take on any more work?we're fully stretched as it is.*

PREP. **to** *This department is stretched to its limit.*

stride *noun*

1 **step**

ADJ. **long, short** *In one short stride, he reached the window.* **| quick, rapid | slow | easy | purposeful**

VERB + STRIDE **take | lengthen, shorten** *He lengthened his stride to keep up with her.* **| break** *Without breaking her stride she ducked the ball.* **| match** *He matched his stride to her slower pace.*

PREP. **in a ~**

2 **progress**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, giant, great**

VERB + STRIDE **make** *She's made enormous strides in English this term.*

PREP. **~s in**

stride *verb*

ADV. **briskly, quickly | confidently | purposefully | angrily | ahead, away, back, forward, in, off, out, over, past** *He strode off in search of a taxi.*

PREP. **across, along, away, down, into, out of, over, past, through, towards, up** *She strode purposefully towards the door.*

PHRASES **come striding** *He came striding up the path.*

strife *noun*

ADJ. **internal | ethnic, factional, internecine, sectarian | civil, industrial, political, religious, social | domestic, marital**

VERB + STRIFE **cause, provoke | be torn (apart) by** *The country has been torn apart by years of civil strife.* **| end**

PREP. **during/in the ~** *He lost his job during last year's industrial strife.* **| ~ among/between** *internecine strife among the nationalities of the empire*

PHRASES **an end to the strife, a time of strife**

strike *noun*

1 **industrial protest**

ADJ. **long | short | indefinite |** crippling, damaging, major | **bitter | official | illegal, unofficial, unlawful | protest | token, warning | lightning, wildcat** *a series of lightning strikes in parts of the coal industry* **| all-out, general, mass, national, nationwide** *A general strike brought the country to a standstill.* **| hunger | sit-down | political | sympathy** *The suppression of the strike led to sympathy strikes in other industries.* **| pay, rent | dock, dockers', miners', postal, train, etc.**

QUANT. **series, wave**

VERB + STRIKE **be on | come out on, go on, join, take part in | call (sb out on), organize, stage** *The union leaders called a strike. He called all the workers out on strike.* **| avert, prevent | threaten** *More train strikes are threatened.* **| begin, start | call off, end | break (up), crush** *The army was used to help break the strike.* **| settle | ban** *The new government banned strikes.*

STRIKE + VERB **occur, take place | start | end | last | spread** *The strike soon spread to other cities.* **| paralyse sth** *The strike paralysed the port.*

STRIKE + NOUN **action** *Prison officers are threatening to take strike action.* **| ballot, call, threat | leader | breaker | committee, movement**

PREP. **during a/the ~** *There was a continual police presence during the strike.* **| ~ against** *a strike against the employment of non-union labour* **| ~ by** *a strike by tax collectors* **| ~ for** *a strike for a ten-hour day* **| ~ in protest at** *a strike in protest at the government's economic policies* **| ~ in support of** *Miners staged a one-day strike in support of the steel workers.* **| ~ over** *a strike over wages*

PHRASES **days lost in/through strikes** *Unofficial action accounted for 40% of the days lost through strikes last year.*

2 **sudden military attack**

ADJ. **air, military, nuclear | pre-emptive | retaliatory**

VERB + STRIKE **carry out, launch, make**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The house was damaged in an air strike.* **| ~ against/on** *The aircraft carried out a pre-emptive strike against bases in the north.*

strike *verb*

1 hit/attack sb/sth

ADV. **firmly, hard** *He struck her hard across the face.* | **deep** *The German army struck deep into northern France.* | **directly** | **repeatedly** | **home** *(often figurative) The remark struck home.*

VERB + STRIKE **be ready to, prepare to**

PREP. **against** *The oar struck against something hard.* | **at** *He struck at me repeatedly with a stick.* | **into** *He struck the ball firmly into the back of the net.* | **on** *The ball struck her on the head.*

2 come into your mind suddenly/give an impression

ADV. **immediately** | **suddenly** *It suddenly struck me how we could improve the situation.* | **just** *An awful thought has just struck me.* | **forcibly** *Joan was struck quite forcibly by the silence.*

PREP. **as** *He struck me as being rather stupid.*

3 go on strike

VERB + STRIKE **threaten to** | **vote to**

PREP. **against, for** *The union has voted to strike for a pay increase of six per cent.* | **in protest at**

PHRASES **the right to strike**

striking *adj.*

VERBS **be, look** *That hat looks very striking.*

ADV. **especially, extremely, particularly, very | quite** *She was tall and quite striking.* **| immediately** *What is immediately striking is how resourceful the children are.*

PREP. **in** *The picture was striking in its simplicity.*

string *noun*

1 **thin cord**

ADJ. **taut, tight** *He pulled the string tight.* **| loose | tangled** *He had hair like tangled yellow string.*

QUANT. **bit, length, piece** *I cut a length of string to tie up the package.* **| ball**

VERB + STRING **knot, tie, tie sth up with** *Tie the string round the parcel.* **| undo, untie | wind (up)** *He wound the string into a ball.* **| unwind | dangle (sth) on** *Next to the phone, there was a pencil dangling on a string.*

PREP. **in the ~** *There's a knot in the string.*

PHRASES **on the end of a string**

2 **on a musical instrument**

ADJ. **tight | slack | open | stopped | guitar, violin, etc. | A, G, etc.**

VERB + STRING **tighten, tune | loosen | pluck | change, replace | break**

STRING + VERB **break | vibrate**

STRING + NOUN **instrument**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *Play it on the G string.*

strip *noun*

ADJ. **narrow, thin, tiny | thick, wide** *Cut the meat into thick strips.* **| coastal | landing** *This aircraft requires a good-sized landing strip.*

PREP. **in ~s** *The wallpaper can then be torn off in strips.* **| ~ of** *a narrow strip of leather*

PHRASES **cut/tear sth into strips**

strip *verb*

1 take off your/sb's clothes

PREP. **down to** *Office workers stripped down to their shirtsleeves in the heatwave.* **| off** *He stripped off his shirt. We stripped off and went for a swim.*

PHRASES **strip (sb) naked** *She was stripped naked and left in a cell.* **| strip to the waist** *He stripped to the waist and began to dig.*

2 take sth away

ADV. **completely | away, off, out** *Strip out any damaged wiring.*

PREP. **from** *The bark is stripped from the trees by hand.* **| of** *The president had been completely stripped of power.* **| off** *We stripped the paint off the walls.*

PHRASES **strip sth bare** *The room had been stripped bare by the thieves.*

stripe *noun*

ADJ. **broad, wide | fine, narrow, thin | bold | subtle | distinctive | horizontal, vertical**

STRIPE + VERB **run** *The butterfly is black and white with a blue stripe running down each wing.*

PREP. **with ~s** *a white tablecloth with red stripes* **| ~ across/down, etc.** *The toad has a distinctive yellow stripe down its back.*

strive *verb*

ADV. **hard, mightily** *He strove very hard to remain calm.* **| desperately** *desperately striving for some sort of dignity* **| earnestly | always, constantly, continually**

PREP. **after** *striving after artistic beauty* **| against** *man striving against the elements* **| for** *The school constantly strives for excellence in its teaching.* **| towards** *companies that strive towards bigger profits*

stroke *noun*

1 **of a brush, pen, etc.**

ADJ. **long, short | broad, thick | narrow, thin | bold, vigorous** *She caught his likeness with a few bold brush strokes.* **| even | quick, slow | downward, upward | brush, pen, pencil**

PHRASES **with a stroke of the pen** *With a stroke of the pen our names were removed from the register.*

2 **in sport**

ADJ. **fast, slow | powerful** *The Romanian rowers pulled ahead with fast, powerful strokes.* **| backhand, forehand (in tennis, etc.)**

VERB + STROKE **play** *He played some powerful backhand strokes throughout the game.*

PREP. **by a, two, etc. ~ (in golf)** *Woods leads by two strokes.*

PHRASES **a/two, etc. strokes ahead/behind (in golf)**

3 **in swimming**

ADJ. **long, short** *He swam back with long slow strokes.* **| fast, slow | back** (also **backstroke**), **breast** (also **breaststroke)**

VERB + STROKE **do, swim** *You can't swim more than four strokes before you reach the other side.*

4 **sudden illness of the brain**

ADJ. **crippling, massive, serious | minor, slight | fatal**

VERB + STROKE **have, suffer** *She had a massive stroke and lost her speech.*

STROKE + VERB **leave sb …** *The stroke left him paralysed down his right side.*

STROKE + NOUN **patient, victim** > Special page at ILLNESS

5 sth that happens unexpectedly

ADJ. **sudden** *I had a sudden stroke of inspiration.*

VERB + STROKE **have**

PREP. **at a/one ~** *They lost half their fortune at a stroke.* **| ~ of** *a stroke of genius*

PHRASES **a stroke of (good/bad) luck, a stroke of (good) fortune** > Note at STROKE

stroke *verb*

ADV. **gently, lightly, softly, tenderly | thoughtfully** *He stroked his beard thoughtfully.* **| absently** *She stroked the cat absently.* **| away** *She gently stroked away his tears.*

stroll *noun*

ADJ. **little, short | five-minute, etc.** *The shops are only a ten-minute stroll away.* **| casual, easy, gentle, leisurely | pleasant | moonlit, romantic | afternoon, evening, morning, etc. | after-lunch, post-prandial**

VERB + STROLL **be/go out for, go for, take** *They took a leisurely stroll along the river bank.*

PHRASES **a stroll around (sth)/away** *The beach is only a short stroll away.*

stroll *verb*

ADV. **casually, leisurely, slowly | about, around, away, back, down** *They strolled down to the canal.*

PREP. **across, along, around, down, into, out (of), past, through** *as he strolled leisurely through the streets*

strong *adj.*

1 physically powerful

VERBS **be, feel, look | become, grow | make sb** *All that outdoor work has made him very strong.*

ADV. **extremely, immensely, really, very | pretty, quite | enough** *Don't try to go back to work before you are physically strong enough.* **| physically**

2 not easily damaged

VERBS **be, look**

ADV. **extremely, really, very | fairly, pretty, quite | enough** *The box looks strong enough.*

3 powerful

VERBS **be, look, prove, seem, smell, taste | become, get, grow | remain | make sth | keep sth** *This news helped keep the dollar relatively strong today.*

ADV. **extremely, immensely, particularly, really, very** *He exerts an extremely strong influence on his classmates.* **| fairly, pretty, quite, rather | enough** *The party lacks a strong enough local base.*

structure *noun*

ADJ. **basic, simple | complex, elaborate | coherent, logical | rigid, stable | flimsy** *The flimsy structure of the vehicle could not withstand even mild impacts.* **| formal | internal | solid, three-dimensional | anatomical, body, bone, skeletal/skeleton | atomic, cell/cellular, chemical, molecular | grammatical, language, linguistic, sentence, syntactic | administrative, bureaucratic, committee, control, corporate, hierarchical, institutional, management, organizational, power, etc. | economic, financial, political, social, etc.** *the social structure of the village* **| democratic, federal, etc. | class | family, household | pay, price, salary, tax, wage | career**

VERB + STRUCTURE **have | lack** *The job lacked a basic career structure.* **| be based on | create, devise, establish** *to devise a new management structure* **| impose**

STRUCTURE + VERB **be based on sth**

PREP. **of a … ~** *The cell walls of plants are of a fairly rigid structure.* **| … in ~** *The building is very simple in structure.* **| in a/the ~** *There are weaknesses in the structure of the organization.* **| ~ in/within** *the salary structure in the firm*

PHRASES **a change in structure, a change in/to the structure** *significant changes in the power structure* **| a lack of structure** *The novel suffers from a lack of structure.*

structure *verb*

ADV. **beautifully, carefully, clearly, neatly, properly, well** *She had structured her arguments very carefully.* **| badly | loosely** *a very loosely structured organization* **| rigidly, tightly | hierarchically, logically**

PREP. **according to** *the idea that living organisms had been structured according to a divine plan* **| around** *The teaching is structured around three topics.* **| into** *The company is structured into two divisions.*

PHRASES **highly structured** *a complex but highly structured complaints procedure*

struggle *noun*

1 **fight**

ADJ. **great, life-and-death, titanic | bitter, desperate, fierce, heroic, violent** *There were the sounds of a desperate struggle.* **| just** *The UN supported what it saw as the just struggle of an oppressed people.* **| unequal | armed** *The group supported the armed struggle against the dictator.* **| class, internecine** *Marx wrote about the class struggle.* **| economic, ideological, leadership, political, power, revolutionary**

VERB + STRUGGLE **begin, put up, take up** *If someone snatched your bag, would you put up a struggle? They took up the struggle against racism.* **| be engaged/locked in, carry on, wage** *species engaged in a life-or-death struggle with the ever-changing environment*

STRUGGLE + VERB **ensue, take place | continue, go on | intensify**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *One of the security guards was hurt in the struggle.* **| without a ~** *She won't give up without a struggle.* **| ~ against** *the struggle against fascism* **| ~ between** *the struggle between good and evil* **| ~ for** *the long struggle for democracy* **| ~ over** *a struggle over the property* **| ~ with** *He was involved in a struggle with the police.*

PHRASES **a sign of a struggle** *The police said that there was no sign of a struggle by the murder victim.* **| years of struggle** *After 150 years of struggle against brutal colonial rule, the country won its independence.*

2 **great effort**

ADJ. **desperate, great, hard, real, uphill** *It will be an uphill struggle to maintain exports at the current level.* **| long | ceaseless, constant, endless | unequal**

VERB + STRUGGLE **face, have** *We had a real struggle to get everything into the suitcase.* **| give up** *I've given up the unequal struggle to keep my house tidy.*

PHRASES **a bit of a struggle** *It was a bit of a struggle for me to get there so early.*

struggle *verb*

1 **try very hard to do sth**

ADV. **desperately, hard, manfully, painfully, really, valiantly** *He struggled desperately to get to the shore. He struggled hard to keep the boat upright.* **| a little | constantly | on** *She struggled on despite the pain.*

VERB + STRUGGLE **have to**

PREP. **against** *The small boat struggled against the waves.* **| along, down, for** *Shona struggled for breath.* **| through** *The family struggled through the next few years.* **| up** *They struggled up the hill.* **| with** *I'm really struggling with this essay.*

PHRASES **struggle to your feet** *She struggled to her feet and set off after him.*

2 **have great difficulties**

ADV. **badly** *The team struggled badly last season.* **| financially** *I was unemployed and struggling financially.*

3 **fight sb/try to get away from them**

ADV. **fiercely, furiously, violently** *She struggled furiously but could not get away.* **| together** *Ben and Jack struggled together on the grass.*

PREP. **against** *struggling against her attacker* **| with** *He was hit in the mouth as he struggled with the raiders.*

PHRASES **struggle free** *The attacker's victim managed to struggle free.*

stuck *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, get | remain | get sth**

ADV. **firmly | completely, fast** *I couldn't budge the drawer?it was stuck fast.*

PREP. **in** *She got the key stuck in the lock.* **| onto, to** *The tiles were stuck firmly to the wall.*

student *noun*

ADJ. **brilliant, good** *one of the best students the college has ever had* **| college, school, university | full-time, part-time | first-year, second-year, etc. | graduate, postgraduate, research | doctoral, MA, etc. | mature** *He studied metallurgy as a mature student, having spent ten years working in a foundry.* **| overseas | engineering, history, law, medical, etc.**

STUDENT + NOUN **nurse, teacher | numbers, population** *Student numbers at the college have increased by 25 per cent.* **| days** *She travelled a lot in her student days.* **| life** *thoroughly enjoying student life* **| grant, loan** *She had to take out a student loan to help her through college.* **| accommodation, dormitory | demonstration, protest, unrest** *taking part in a student demonstration*

PREP. **as a ~** *She first went to London as a student.*

studio *noun*

ADJ. **art, artist's, design, photographer's, photographic, photography, portrait | broadcasting, film, movie, radio, recording, sound, television/TV | rehearsal | dance**

STUDIO + NOUN **recording | audience** *a studio audience for a new television sitcom* **| executive** *a studio executive for a major Hollywood studio*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The photograph was taken in a studio.*

study *noun*

1 **learning**

ADJ. **full-time, part-time | graduate, postgraduate | independent, private** *This grammar book is suitable both for classroom use and for independent study.* **| academic** *The course integrates academic study and practical training.* **| language**

QUANT. **course, programme**

VERB + STUDY **take up** *Now that her children are all at school, she's going to take up full-time study again.*

STUDY + NOUN **group** *A bible study group meets every Sunday at the church.* **| leave** *The company allows its staff to take paid study leave.* **| skills** *The first part of the course is designed to develop students' study skills.*

PREP. **~ for** *full-time study for an MA*

PHRASES **an area/a field of study** *Students do a foundation year before specializing in their chosen field of study.* 2 studies sb's learning activities

ADJ. **further** *Many undertake further studies after passing their A levels.*

VERB + STUDY **undertake | continue, pursue | complete, finish** *When he has completed his studies, he'll travel round the world.* **| resume, return to** *She returned to her studies when her children reached school age.* 3 studies subjects

ADJ. **business, management, religious, women's, etc.** *She's doing women's studies at Liverpool University.*

VERB + STUDY **do | lecture in, teach** *He lectures in management studies.*

4 **piece of research**

ADJ. **new, present, recent** *The present study reveals an unacceptable level of air pollution in the city centre.* **| earlier, previous | careful, close, comprehensive, detailed, intensive, serious** *a close study of share prices She devoted herself to a* *serious study of the Koran.* **| major | definitive | initial, pilot, preliminary** *A preliminary study suggested that the product would be popular.* **| research** *Research studies carried out in Italy confirmed the theory.* **| empirical, experimental, systematic, theoretical | anthropological, historical, scientific, sociological | field** *This phenomenon has been observed in both laboratory and field studies.* **| feasibility** *The company undertook an extensive feasibility study before adopting the new system.* **| literary | case** *a detailed case study of nine companies* **| comparative** *a comparative study of the environmental costs of different energy sources*

VERB + STUDY **commission, fund, support** *the recommendations of a study commissioned by the World Bank* **| carry out, conduct, do, make, undertake, work on** *He has made a special study of the way that birds communicate with one another.* **| publish**

STUDY + VERB **take place | aim at/to, be aimed at sth, attempt to, be designed to, set out to** *The study set out to examine bias in television news coverage.* **| be based on sth** *a study based on a sample of male white-collar workers* **| cover sth** *The ten-year study covered 13,000 people aged 15-25.* **| concern sth, deal with sth, examine sth, focus on sth, investigate sth, look at sth | compare sth** *The study compares the incidence of bone cancer in men and women.* **| conclude sth, demonstrate sth, find sth, indicate sth, report sth, reveal sth, say sth, show sth, suggest sth, warn sth | provide sth** *The study provided valuable insight into the development of the disease.* **| highlight sth, identify sth** *The study highlighted three problem areas.*

STUDY + NOUN **group** *The study group was selected from a broad cross section of the population.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *In a recent study, 40% of schools were found to be understaffed.* **| under ~** *the biochemical process under study* **| ~ into** *a study into the viability of the mine* **| ~ on** *a definitive study on medieval weapons*

PHRASES **an area/a field of study, the results/findings of a study, the subject of a study** *Shakespeare is the subject of a new study by Anthony Bryan.*

study *verb*

1 **spend time learning about sth**

ADV. **hard**

PREP. **for** *She is studying hard for her A levels.* **| under/with** *He studied under Professor Sager.*

2 **examine sth carefully**

ADV. **carefully, closely, in depth, in detail, intently, intensively** *She picked up the letter and studied it carefully. In the third year a number of areas are studied in detail.* **| extensively, widely | fully, thoroughly | systematically | thoughtfully** *He studied her thoughtfully, then smiled.*

PHRASES **be easily/well studied** *The influence of heredity is best studied in genetically identical twins.*

stuff *verb*

ADV. **frantically, hastily, quickly**

PREP. **inside, into** *He hastily stuffed a few clothes into a bag.* **| with** *She stuffed her case with presents for the kids.*

PHRASES **be stuffed full of sth** *Her briefcase was stuffed full of papers.*

stumble *verb*

ADV. **almost, nearly | a little, slightly** *She stumbled a little on the uneven path.* **| blindly** *He stumbled blindly on through the dark building.* **| about, along, around, away, back, backwards, forward, on, out**

PREP. **against, along, down, from, into, out of, over, towards, etc.** *They stumbled over the ploughed field.*

PHRASES **stumble to your feet** *The train stopped, and several passengers stumbled to their feet.* **PHRASAL VERBS stumble across/on/upon sth**

ADV. **accidentally, by chance, unwittingly** *I stumbled across the place quite by chance.*

stumbling block *noun*

ADJ. **big, main, major, real**

VERB + STUMBLING BLOCK **remove**

PREP. **~ to** *The question of disarmament proved a major stumbling block to agreement.*

stun *verb*

ADV. **absolutely | almost | briefly, momentarily**

PREP. **into** *The assault was so unexpected that he was briefly stunned into submission.*

PHRASES **stun sb into silence** *The guests were stunned into silence.*

stunned *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sit, sound, stand** *Morton stood stunned, unable to believe his ears.* **| leave sb** *Leaving them all stunned, she walked out of the bar.*

ADV. **deeply | absolutely, completely, quite | almost | a bit, a little, slightly, somewhat | briefly, momentarily**

PREP. **at** *They seemed stunned at his outburst.* **| by** *She was a bit stunned by the news.* **| with** *stunned with grief*

stunning *adj.*

VERBS **be, look**

ADV. **really** *You look really stunning in that dress!* **| absolutely, quite, simply** *The finished effect was absolutely stunning.* **| visually** *a visually stunning piece of cinema*

stunt *noun*

1 **sth done for attention**

ADJ. **publicity**

VERB + STUNT **arrange, organize** *She arranged a publicity stunt to make the public aware of the product.* | **pull** *What do you hope to gain by pulling a stunt like that?*

PREP. **as a ~** *They jumped off London Bridge as a publicity stunt.*

2 **dangerous act**

ADJ. **dangerous, daredevil | dramatic, spectacular | film**

VERB + STUNT **carry out, do, perform** *The actor performed all the stunts himself.* | **attempt**

STUNT + VERB **backfire, go wrong**

STUNT + NOUN **artist, man** (also **stuntman**), **woman** (also **stuntwoman**) | **driver, pilot, rider**

stupid *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** *I felt really stupid when I realized what had happened. My sister made me look stupid in front of all my friends.* **| act** *(informal) I decided it was best to act stupid.*

ADV. **bloody** *(taboo)*, **damn/damned, exceptionally, extremely, fucking** *(taboo)*, **incredibly, monumentally, particularly, really, very | absolutely, completely, (just) plain, utterly** *That was just plain stupid!* **| not entirely** *I'm not entirely stupid. I checked the train times before we came out.* **| a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather | enough, sufficiently** *He's stupid enough to believe anything.* **| crassly, grossly** *a crassly stupid thing to do*

stupidity *noun*

ADJ. **complete, crass, incredible, sheer, utter**

VERB + STUPIDITY **demonstrate, show** *Her answer showed the most incredible stupidity.*

PREP. **through (your) ~** *Through his own stupidity, he missed an excellent opportunity.*

stupor *noun*

ADJ. **drunken**

VERB + STUPOR **drink yourself into, fall into, go into, sink into** *As the whisky took effect, he gradually fell into a drunken stupor.* **| come out of, emerge from | rouse sb from** *The noise of someone banging at the door roused her from her stup*

PREP. **in a ~** *He fell to the ground in a stupor.*

stutter *noun*

ADJ. **bad | slight | occasional**

VERB + STUTTER **have, speak with** *He spoke with a stutter, which got worse when he was angry.*

style *noun*

1 **way that sth is done/made**

ADJ. **latest, modern, new | classical, old, old-fashioned, period, traditional** *an old style of management* | **contemporary** *The 16th century house has been renovated and furnished in contemporary style.* | **characteristic, distinctive, individual, inimitable, original** *her inimitable style of humour* | **personal | musical | architectural | teaching | leadership, management, managerial | political | literary, narrative, prose, writing | elegant, lively | flamboyant** *a flamboyant style of dress* | **formal | casual** *a casual style of speech* | **conversational** *The article is written in a conversational style.* | **aggressive** *His aggressive style of play sometimes gets him in trouble.* | **autocratic** *an autocratic style of leadership* | **18th-century, etc. | Gothic, Renaissance, etc.**

VERB + STYLE **have** *The two artists have radically different styles.* | **develop, establish, evolve, find, form** *He evolved his style of painting while working as a magazine illustrator.* | **adapt, adjust, alter, change, modify, tailor** *The pianist had to tailor his style to suit the vocalist's distinctive voice.* | **adopt, use | copy, emulate, follow**

PREP. **in ~** *very utilitarian in style* | **in a/the ~** *The new houses have been built in a traditional style.*

2 **good quality**

ADJ. **enormous, fine, great, real, terrific | certain**

VERB + STYLE **have** *He has a certain style.* | **ooze** *The whole house just oozed style.* | **add, give sb/sth**

PREP. **with ~** *Whatever she did, she did it with style.*

PHRASES **a touch of style** *Long velvet curtains add a touch of style to the main room.*

subdued *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **very | almost | a bit, fairly, rather, somewhat | suitably** *She was dressed in grey and looked suitably subdued.* **| strangely, unusually** *I felt strangely subdued when it was all over.*

subject *adj.* **subject to sth**

1 **likely to be affected by sth**

VERBS **be, seem | become | leave sb/sth, make sb/sth** *His illness left him subject to asthmatic attacks.*

ADV. **very | increasingly | rather | still** *At this stage these are proposals and are still subject to change.*

2 **under the authority of sb/sth**

VERBS **be** *Everyone was entirely subject to the whim of the Sultan.* **| become | remain | make sb/sth** *All the priories were made directly subject to the abbot of Cluny.*

ADV. **entirely | directly | expressly**

subject *noun*

1 **topic or person under consideration**

ADJ. **big, complex, vast | simple | excellent, fascinating, good, interesting | cheerful** *Can we talk about a more cheerful subject?* **| gloomy, unpleasant | delicate, difficult, embarrassing | taboo** *Work is a taboo subject when we go out for dinner.* **| closed** *I don't wish to discuss it any further?the subject is closed.* **| chosen** *Each candidate has to speak for three minutes on their chosen subject.* **| pet** *Once he gets onto his pet subject there's no stopping him.*

VERB + SUBJECT **cover, debate, discuss, talk about, touch on** *We touched briefly on the subject.* **| deal with** *I wasn't quite sure how to deal with the delicate subject of money.* **| examine, have a (fresh) look at, investigate, look into** *We want to have a fresh look at the difficult subject of social security benefits.* **| bring up, broach, get onto, raise | drop** *Let's drop the subject since we don't seem to be able to agree.* **| stick to** *I wish he'd stick to the subject rather than telling us his boring stories.* **| get off, wander off** *She was supposed to be speaking about sales figures, but she kept wandering off the subject.* **| get back to, return to** *Getting back to the subject of heating, has anyone got any suggestions for improvements?* **| avoid | change** *Don't change the subject.*

SUBJECT + VERB **arise, come up** *The subject of gambling has come up several times recently.*

SUBJECT + NOUN **matter** *I like the way she writes, although I'm not interested in her subject matter.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *While we're on the subject of the theatre, has anyone been to see the new show?*

PHRASES **a range of subjects** *We discussed a wide range of subjects.*

2 **area of study**

ADJ. **difficult, easy | compulsory, core, main | additional, optional, special, subsidiary | specialist | arts, science | academic**

VERB + SUBJECT **take** *What subjects are you taking at A level?* **| offer** *The department* *offers seven different subjects in all.* **| fail (in), pass** *She was disappointed to fail in two of her four subjects.* **| drop**

SUBJECT + NOUN **area** *The syllabus is divided into five subject areas.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He did well in every subject.*

PHRASES **a choice of subject/subjects** *His unusual choice of subjects made it harder to find a job.* **| a range of subjects > Note at SUBJECT**

subjective *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **highly, very** *painted from a highly subjective point of view* **| entirely, purely, wholly** *The criticisms are purely subjective.* **| essentially, largely** *Taste in art is essentially subjective.* **| rather, somewhat | inevitably, necessarily** *making inevitably subjective judgements*

submarine *noun*

ADJ. **conventional | diesel, diesel-powered | atomic, nuclear, nuclear-powered | midget, miniature | enemy**

SUBMARINE + VERB **dive | surface | sink (sth) | operate, patrol (sth)** *the problem of submarines operating too close to fishing vessels*

SUBMARINE + NOUN **captain, commander, crew | base, fleet | attack, warfare**

submerged *adj.*

VERBS be, lie, remain | become

ADV. deeply | completely, fully, totally | almost | barely *barely submerged antagonism* **| half, partially, partly**

PREP. in *The machine can be totally submerged in water.* **| below/beneath/under** *The car was submerged under 20 feet of water.*

submission *noun*

1 **accepting sb else's control**

ADJ. **complete, total**

VERB + SUBMISSION **demand, expect** *The emperor demanded total submission from his subjects.* **| gain, get | beat sb into, bomb sb into, force sb into, starve sb into, stun sb into** *They bombed the village into submission.*

PREP. **~ to** *the patient's submission to the demands of the hospital*

2 **of a plan/statement**

ADJ. **detailed | joint | oral, written**

VERB + SUBMISSION **make | accept | reject | consider, hear | support, uphold** *The judge upheld the defendant's submission and quashed his conviction.*

PREP. **in a/the ~ | ~ to** *The companies have made a joint submission to the minister.*

submit *verb*

1 **give/propose sth so that it can be discussed**

ADV. **formally** *He formally submitted his resignation*

VERB + SUBMIT **ask sb to, invite sb to, require sb to** *Six groups were invited to submit proposals for the research. Candidates for the degree are required to submit a 30,000-word thesis.*

PREP. **for** *They have submitted plans for our approval.* **| to** *She submitted her report to the committee.*

2 **accept sb's power/control**

ADV. **voluntarily, willingly** *He submitted voluntarily to arrest.* **| meekly**

VERB + SUBMIT **refuse to | be willing to | be compelled to, be forced to, be obliged to** *They were forced to submit to Bulgarian rule.*

PREP. **to** *She refused to submit to threats. They abandoned their town rather than submit to the Persians.*

subnormal *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | classify sb as, treat sb as**

ADV. **severely | educationally, mentally** *special provision for educationally subnormal children*

subordinate *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **completely, wholly | essentially** *He had an essentially subordinate role.* **| directly** *She was directly subordinate to the president* (= reported directly to the president). **| formally** *The monarch is formally subordinate to Parliament.*

PREP. **to**

subordinate *verb*

ADV. **firmly | completely, totally, wholly | largely**

PREP. **to** *The needs of the individual are completely subordinated to those of the state.*

subscribe *verb* **PHRASAL VERBS subscribe to sth**

ADV. fully, wholeheartedly *I subscribe wholeheartedly to this theory.*

subscriber *noun*

ADJ. **cable/digital/satellite TV, magazine, phone, telephone | regular | annual**

PREP. **~ to** *Subscribers to the magazine can take advantage of this special offer.*

subscription *noun*

ADJ. **annual, monthly, yearly, etc. | full**

VERB + SUBSCRIPTION **pay | take out | cancel**

SUBSCRIPTION + NOUN **fee, rate**

PREP. **~ to** *Do you wish to take out a full twelve-month subscription to the journal?*

PHRASES **a year's/month's/lifetime's, etc. subscription** *The prize was a lifetime's subscription to ‘Newsweek’.*

subside *verb*

ADV. **quickly, rapidly | gradually, slowly** *The storm gradually subsided.* **| eventually, finally**

VERB + SUBSIDE **begin to**

PREP. **into** *Her tears subsided into sniffs.*

subsidence *noun*

ADJ. **rapid, slow, steady**

VERB + SUBSIDENCE **be liable to, suffer from** *A number of houses had suffered from coal-mining subsidence.*

SUBSIDENCE + VERB **occur**

subsidiary *noun*

ADJ. **foreign, overseas | Spanish, Madrid-based, etc. | owned** *a 58%-owned subsidiary of Millennium Graphics* **| banking, manufacturing, software, etc.**

VERB + SUBSIDIARY **operate as** *The company operates as a wholly-owned subsidiary of a large French company.* **| have, own | create, establish, form, set up | acquire | close**

SUBSIDIARY + NOUN **company** > Note at ORGANIZATION

subsidize *verb*

PHRASES **heavily/highly subsidized** *The airline is heavily subsidized by the government.*

subsidy *noun*

ADJ. **big, heavy, huge, large, massive | small | direct | hidden, indirect** *The help that the government gives the industry amounts to an indirect subsidy.* **| annual | EU, government, public, state | agricultural, export, food, housing**

QUANT. **level** *The level of subsidy given to farmers is to be reduced.*

VERB + SUBSIDY **get, receive | lose | give sth, grant sth, pay, provide (sth with)** *The Arts Council granted them a small subsidy.* **| cut, reduce** *Export subsidies have been reduced by 20%.* **| abolish, remove**

SUBSIDY + NOUN **payments | scheme, system | cuts**

PREP. **~ for** *state subsidies for rice producers* **| ~ on** *subsidies on basic goods and services* **| ~ to** *subsidies to agriculture*

PHRASES **a cut/reduction in subsidies** *The government cut spending through reductions in state subsidies to industry.* **| the removal/abolition of subsidies** *protests against the removal of subsidies on basic commodities*

subsistence *noun*

ADJ. **bare, basic**

SUBSISTENCE + NOUN **agriculture, farmer, farming | economy | level** *Most of the population lives at subsistence level.*

PHRASES **a level of subsistence** *They were living barely above the level of subsistence.* **| means of subsistence** *She had no means of subsistence and was dependent on charity.*

substance *noun*

1 material

ADJ. **addictive, carcinogenic, dangerous, harmful, hazardous, noxious, poisonous, radioactive, toxic | innocuous** *Even innocuous substances can sometimes register a positive result in a drug test.* **| banned, illegal | natural** *a natural substance found in the body of animals* **| chemical | inorganic, organic | pure | soluble, volatile | crystalline, fatty, oily, slimy, sticky, viscous | medicinal**

VERB + SUBSTANCE **use | contain | produce** *Some frogs produce very toxic substances in their skin.* **| take** *The athletes had taken banned substances to increase their strength.*

2 important content

ADJ. **real** *The real substance of the report was in the third part.* **| added** *His disappearance has given added substance to the argument that he stole the money.*

VERB + SUBSTANCE **have** *The image of him that the media have presented has no substance.* **| give sth, lend sth** *The letters lent substance to the rumours.* **| lack**

PREP. **in ~** *There's no difference in substance between the two points of view.* **| of ~** *Nothing of substance was achieved at the meeting.* **| without ~** *Their allegations were without substance.* **| ~ in** *There's no substance in the story.* **| ~ to** *There was little substance to his claims.*

substitute *noun*

ADJ. **good | acceptable, adequate, satisfactory | close | poor** *The television is a poor substitute for human companionship.*

VERB + SUBSTITUTE **act as, serve as** *His teacher acted as a father substitute.* **| use sth as | produce, provide** *The company produces substitutes for lead in petrol.*

PREP. **~ for** *There's no substitute for hard work.*

subtitle *noun*

ADJ. **English, French, etc.**

VERB + SUBTITLE **have | read**

PREP. **with ~s** *a Japanese film with English subtitles*

subtle *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, very | infinitely** *making infinitely subtle distinctions* **| not exactly, not too** *He was not exactly subtle about it!* **| fairly, quite, rather**

subtlety *noun*

ADJ. **extreme, great, real**

VERB + SUBTLETY **have** *Her dancing has great subtlety.* **| display, show | bring sth, lend sth** *His understanding of light brings great subtlety to his painting.* **| lack | appreciate, grasp, understand** *She was too young to grasp the subtleties of the film.*

PREP. **with ~** *He uses language with great subtlety.*

PHRASES **a lack of subtlety, of great/some subtlety** *a pianist of great subtlety*

suburb *noun*

ADJ. **outer, outlying | inner | northern, southern, etc. | Berlin, Tokyo, etc. | affluent, comfortable, exclusive, prosperous, smart, wealthy | poor | middle-class, working-class | respectable | pleasant | leafy, quiet | grey | industrial, residential | sprawling** *out beyond the sprawling suburbs*

VERB + SUBURB **move out to** *As soon as we can afford it, we'll move out to the suburbs.*

SUBURB + VERB **grow** *The middle-class suburbs are growing fast.*

PREP. **from the ~s** *For a child from the suburbs, a trip to the city was a great adventure.* **| in a/the ~** *She's renting in some grey suburb of Birmingham.* **| in the ~s** *Many people work in the centre but live in the suburbs.*

subversive *adj.*

VERBS **be | consider sth, deem sth, judge sth, regard sth as, see sth as**

ADV. **very | inherently | overtly** *taking an overtly subversive approach* **| potentially | morally**

subversive *noun*

ADJ. **dangerous**

subway *noun*

ADJ. **pedestrian**

VERB + SUBWAY **take, use**

PREP. **along a/the ~, in a/the ~, through a/the ~** *He ran through the pedestrian subway.*

succeed *verb*

1 **manage to achieve what you want; do well**

ADV. **admirably, brilliantly, well** *The plan succeeded pretty well.* | **not quite** | **nearly** *They very nearly succeeded in blowing up the parliament building.* | **largely** *We feel that we have largely succeeded in our aims.* | **partially, partly** | **eventually, finally** | **apparently** | **academically** *the pressure on children to succeed academically*

VERB + SUCCEED **be likely/unlikely to** *The appeal is unlikely to succeed.* | **be determined to, hope to, want to** *No company can hope to succeed at everything.*

PREP. **against** *to succeed against serious opposition* | **at** *She can teach you how to succeed at tennis.* | **in** *She has succeeded in a difficult career. We succeeded in repairing the engine.* | **with** *hints on how to succeed with interior design*

2 **have a job/position after sb else**

VERB + SUCCEED **appoint sb to, elect sb to** *He was appointed to succeed Sir Georg Solti as head of the Chicago Symphony Orchestra.* | **be tipped to**

PREP. **as** *He was widely tipped to succeed William Hague as leader of the party.* | **to** *She succeeded to the throne in 1558.*

success *noun*

1 **good results**

ADJ. **considerable, conspicuous, enormous, great, notable, overwhelming, phenomenal, remarkable, spectacular, tremendous, unprecedented | limited, moderate, modest** *The campaign to stop drink-driving had only limited success.* **| popular, public | early, initial | immediate | long-term, short-term | business, commercial, economic, financial | academic, educational, electoral, literary, military, etc. | international** *The company's excellent marketing has resulted in enormous international success.*

QUANT. **amount, degree** *Initially, the venture enjoyed a fair amount of success.*

VERB + SUCCESS **achieve, enjoy, have, notch up** *She had little success in getting new customers. He is keen to notch up yet another success.* **| bring** *A change of management failed to bring success.* **| end in, lead to, result in** *The year-long fight for a pay rise ended in success.* **| ensure, guarantee** *We can't guarantee immediate success.* **| be vital to** *Your contribution was vital to the success of the concert.*

SUCCESS + VERB **come** *Success didn't come overnight?she struggled for years before making any money.* **| lie (in sth)** *Much of his success lies in his skill in handling staff.* **| depend on sth** *The success or failure of the project depends on how committed the managers are.*

SUCCESS + NOUN **rate** *The operation has a success rate of over 80%.* **| story** *The company has been one of the success stories of the past decade.*

PREP. **without ~** *She tried to persuade them without success.* **| ~ in** *I've had some success in getting rid of the weeds.* **| ~ with** *the secret of his success with women*

PHRASES **a chance/hope of success** *What are our chances of success? We're trying to get him to sponsor us, but there's not much hope of success.* **| confident of success** *She had worked hard and was confident of success.* **| the key to success, a lack of success, the secret of (sb's) success, a symbol of (sb's) success**

2 **sth that achieves its aim**

ADJ. **big, complete, considerable, conspicuous, enormous, great, huge,**

major, notable, outstanding, phenomenal, popular, real, remarkable, resounding, roaring, runaway, spectacular, total, tremendous, unprecedented, unqualified *The band's new album has been a runaway success.* **| modest, qualified | business, commercial, economic, popular** *The book proved a major commercial success.* **| international | immediate**

VERB + SUCCESS **be, prove | have** *We had one or two outstanding successes.* **| judge sth** *The event was judged a success by its organizers.* **| make** *She's made a real success of that job.*

PHRASES **wish sb (every) success** *We are sad to see Hiroko go, and wish her every success in the future.*

successful *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become**

ADV. **astonishingly, enormously, extremely, highly, hugely, outstandingly, particularly, phenomenally, remarkably, spectacularly, very** *his phenomenally successful period as manager* **| not entirely** *Their attempts had not been entirely successful.* **| fairly, moderately, partially, quite, rather, relatively** *The operation was only partially successful.* **| academically, commercially, politically** *a politically successful manoeuvre*

PREP. **at** *Though a top-rated movie star he has been remarkably successful at keeping his private life private.* **| in** *hoping their party would be successful in the elections*

succession *noun*

1 **series of people, things, etc.**

ADJ. **endless, long, never-ending | constant, continuous, uninterrupted | quick, rapid** *We lost three secretaries in quick succession.* **| whole** *A whole succession of presidents had tried to resolve the issue without success.*

PREP. **in ~** *There has been a rise in crime for the second year in succession.*

2 **right to have an important position after sb else**

ADJ. **legitimate | disputed | dynastic, hereditary**

VERB + SUCCESSION **ensure, secure** *He wanted to have a son to secure the succession.*

PREP. **in ~ to** *Betty Munn is the manager in succession to Edna Greenan.*

PHRASES **the line/order of succession** *He is next in (the) line of succession to the British throne.* **| the right of succession, succession to the throne**

successor *noun*

ADJ. **logical, natural, obvious | rightful, worthy** *Their latest disc is a worthy successor to their popular debut album.* **| chosen, designated, eventual | immediate | likely, possible, potential**

VERB + SUCCESSOR **have** *He doesn't have an obvious successor as party leader.* **| appoint, choose, elect, find | groom | hand over to** *She will hand over to her successor in one year's time.*

SUCCESSOR + VERB **take over**

PREP. **as sb's ~** *She has been appointed as his successor.* **| ~ as** *Andrew Kirkham will be her successor as Chief Executive.* **| ~ to** *The new Ministry of Food is the successor to the old Department of Agriculture.*

PHRASES **the appointment/choice/election of a successor, be tipped as a possible successor** *The former newsreader is being tipped as a possible successor to the outgoing Head of Broadcasting.*

succumb *verb*

ADV. **almost | rapidly | eventually, finally | easily, readily** *people who succumb easily to exploitation*

VERB + SUCCUMB **be likely to**

PREP. **to** *Malnourished children are more likely to succumb to infections.*

suck *verb*

ADV. **noisily** *She was noisily sucking up milk through a straw.* | **away, in, out, up** *She sucked away on her thumb. He cut the orange in half and sucked out the juice.*

PREP. **at** *He sucked at the wound on his hand.* | **from** *The machine sucks up mud and stones from the bottom of the pond.* | **into, on** *The baby sucked on her bottle.* | **out of, through**

sue *verb*

ADV. **successfully | unsuccessfully**

VERB + SUE **be able to, be entitled to, have the right to | threaten to**

PREP. **for** *He threatened to sue the company for negligence.* **| over** *The water authority was successfully sued over his illness.*

suffer *verb*

ADV. **a lot, badly, greatly, severely, terribly** *This area suffered very badly in the storms.* **| needlessly** *Thousands of children in the world today suffer needlessly.*

VERB + SUFFER **be likely to** *Premature babies are more likely to suffer from breathing difficulties in childhood.*

PREP. **for** *I played tennis yesterday and I know I shall suffer for it today.* **| from** *She suffers from asthma.* **| with** *He suffers terribly with migraines.*

PHRASES **suffer in silence** *They were just expected to suffer in silence.*

sufferer *noun*

ADJ. **main, worst** *The worst sufferers of the condition tend to live in highly polluted areas.* **| lifelong, long-term | fellow** *The sessions will enable you to discuss problems with fellow asthma sufferers.* **| aids, arthritis, asthma, cancer, hay fever, etc. | back, back pain**

PREP. **~ from** *He's been a lifelong sufferer from hay fever.*

suffering *noun*

ADJ. **great, intense, terrible, unbearable | needless, unnecessary | widespread | human | mental, physical** *The taunts of her schoolmates caused her intense mental suffering.*

QUANT. **amount** *The western world has contributed to the immense amount of suffering in underdeveloped countries.*

VERB + SUFFERING **cause (sb), inflict | increase | alleviate, ease, reduce, relieve** *These tablets should relieve his suffering for a couple of hours.* **| endure, experience**

PHRASES **pain and suffering** *His life was one of pain and suffering.*

sufficient *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem, sound | consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as** *Do you really regard that explanation as sufficient?*

ADV. **quite | far from | barely, hardly, scarcely** *Our budget is scarcely sufficient to pay people, let alone buy any new equipment.* **| just | almost**

PREP. **for** *The salary proved sufficient for his needs.*

sugar *noun*

ADJ. **raw, unrefined | refined | natural** *Fruit juices contain natural sugars.* **| simple** *simple sugars, such as glucose* **| brown, white** *Add one cup of soft brown sugar.* **| caster, demerara, granulated, lump, icing | beet, cane | fruit** *Fructose is a fruit sugar.* **| blood** *to raise blood sugar levels*

QUANT. **lump, spoonful | bag, packet**

VERB + SUGAR **put in/on, spoon, sprinkle, stir in/into, take** (= in tea or coffee) *He stirred another spoonful of sugar into his tea. Do you take sugar in your tea?* **| contain | produce**

SUGAR + VERB **dissolve**

SUGAR + NOUN **cube, lump | bowl | substitute | intake** *a high sugar intake* **| beet, cane | industry, plantation, production, refinery**

PHRASES **high/low/reduced sugar content, high/low in sugar** *Most junk food is high in sugar.* **| no added sugar** *apple juice with no added sugar*

suggest *verb*

1 **propose sth/state sth indirectly**

ADV. **tentatively** *I tentatively suggested that she might be happier working somewhere else.* | **respectfully, tactfully** *I would respectfully suggest a different explanation for the company's decline.* | **helpfully** *'Shall I tell them you're ill?' Alice suggested helpfully.*

VERB + SUGGEST **seem reasonable to** *It seems reasonable to suggest that all life forms on earth share a common origin.* | **be wrong to** | **be tempting to** | **dare (to)** *How dare you suggest such a thing?*

PREP. **as** *She suggested John as chairman.* | **for** *Who would you suggest for the job?* | **to** *He suggested to the committee that they should delay making a decision.*

PHRASES **can/may I suggest, I (would) suggest** *I would suggest that you see your doctor about this.*

2 **show sth in an indirect way**

ADV. **strongly** *The evidence suggests quite strongly that the fire was caused by an explosion.*

VERB + SUGGEST **seem to** *The evidence seems to suggest that he did steal the money.*

suggestion *noun*

1 **proposal**

ADJ. **constructive, excellent, good, interesting, helpful, positive, practical, sensible, valuable | absurd, bizarre, impractical, ludicrous, outrageous, preposterous, ridiculous, stupid | tentative**

VERB + SUGGESTION **have** *Has anyone got any suggestions for a title? I've had several helpful suggestions from colleagues.* **| come up with, give sb, make, offer, put forward** *Can you give us any suggestions for a slogan? May I make a suggestion?* **| accept, act on, adopt, take up** *I think we might take up the suggestion of printing the books in Hong Kong.* **| take sb up on** *May we take you up on your suggestion of sharing the costs for the party?* **| deny, dismiss, reject** *They dismissed the suggestion that they hadn't worked hard. He rejected my suggestion as impractical.* **| welcome | consider, look at, note** *We have noted your suggestion and will give it due consideration.*

SUGGESTION + NOUN **book, box**

PREP. **at the ~ of** *At the suggestion of his boss, he resigned.* **| ~ about/as to/ concerning/on** *Management welcomes practical suggestions on how to improve the facilities.* **| ~ for** *suggestions for further reading*

PHRASES **amid suggestions that** *She left the country amid suggestions that she had stolen from the firm.* **| be open to suggestions** *I'm not sure what to do with all this money, but I'm open to suggestions.* > Special page at MEETING

2 **communicating without stating directly**

ADJ. **implicit | hypnotic** *analgesia through hypnotic suggestion*

PREP. **by/through ~** *There's no scientific basis to the method?it works by suggestion.*

PHRASES **the power of suggestion** *These healers claim to remove the pain by the power of suggestion.*

3 **trace of sth**

ADJ. **faint, mere, slightest**

VERB + SUGGESTION **carry, have**

PREP. **at the ~ of** *At the slightest suggestion of criticism, he loses his temper.* **| ~ of**

suggestive *adj.*

1 **making you think of sth**

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **highly** *(medical)*, **strongly, very** *The results were highly suggestive of malignancy.* **| vaguely**

PREP. **of** *music that is suggestive of warm summer days*

2 **making people think about sex**

VERBS **be, look, sound | become**

ADV. **very | faintly, quite, rather | sexually**

suicidal *adj.*

1 **wanting to kill yourself**

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound | become, get** *He became very depressed and even got suicidal at one point.*

ADV. **almost**

2 **likely to cause your failure**

VERBS **be, prove**

ADV. **economically, politically** *a move which would be politically suicidal*

PREP. **for** *These policies would prove suicidal for our economy.*

suicide *noun*

ADJ. **attempted | mass** *Members of the sect committed mass suicide.* **| economic | electoral, political** *Raising taxes before an election would be political suicide.*

VERB + SUICIDE **commit | attempt | contemplate**

SUICIDE + NOUN **threat | attempt, bid** *He slashed his wrists in a failed suicide bid.* **| pact** *The couple died together in a suicide pact.* **| bomber, bombing | mission | letter, note** *He died without leaving a suicide note.* **| rate**

suit *noun*

1 set of clothes

ADJ. **designer, elegant, immaculate, smart, well-cut | ill-fitting | off-the-peg | best, good** *He wore his one good suit to the interview.* **| tailored | double-breasted, single-breasted | one-piece, three-piece, two-piece | pinstripe/ pinstriped | linen, tweed, etc. | summer | business, dinner, evening, dress, formal, lounge, morning, safari | trouser | bathing, diving, wet | ski**

SUIT + NOUN **jacket, trousers**

PREP. **in a ~** *Two men in suits came out of the hotel.*

PHRASES **a suit and tie** *They won't let you into the restaurant without a suit and tie.* **| a suit of armour** *The cavalry wore a suit of light armour and carried a shield.* **| a suit of clothes** *We bought the baby a couple of suits of clothes.*

2 of playing cards

ADJ. **trump**

VERB + SUIT **follow** (= play the same suit as the previous player)

SUIT + VERB **be trumps** *Which suit is trumps?* **| change** *The suit changed to diamonds.*

PREP. **from/in a/the ~** *All the cards have to be from the same suit.*

suit *verb*

ADV. **admirably, fine, well** *A camping holiday would suit me fine. You will have to try out the various tennis rackets to find out which one suits you best.* **| down to the ground** *(informal)*, **perfectly** *Country life suits me down to the ground! This arrangement suited me perfectly.*

VERB + SUIT **seem to | adapt sth to, adjust sth to, be designed to, be tailored to** *a shampoo designed to suit all hair types*

suitability *noun*

ADJ. **greater**

VERB + SUITABILITY **assess, demonstrate, determine** *to assess the suitability of the accommodation for a disabled person* **| ensure | doubt, have doubts about, question**

PREP. **~ for** *the greater suitability of women for the work*

suitable *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, prove, seem, sound | make sth** *The exercise-with-answer-key format makes the book suitable for self-study.* **| consider sth, deem sth** *These properties are considered especially suitable for older people.*

ADV. **eminently, especially, highly, particularly, very | perfectly | quite | not entirely, not quite, not really** *This holiday is not really suitable for wheelchair users.* **| not necessarily | hardly, scarcely | potentially | equally** *There are many other training courses that would be equally suitable.*

PREP. **as** *not suitable as a word-processing program* **| for** *The walk is suitable for all the family.* **| to** *conditions suitable to their development*

suitcase (*also* **case)** *noun*

ADJ. heavy, light | open | battered *His only possession was a battered old suitcase of clothes.* **| false-bottomed** *The money was smuggled out in a false-bottomed suitcase.*

VERB + SUITCASE cram/stuff/throw sth in/into, pack *He stuffed a few clothes in a case, grabbed his wallet and left. Have you packed your case yet?* **| take sth out of, unpack | close, fasten, shut, snap shut** *She snapped her suitcase shut and stuck on a label.* **| open | lift, pick up** *The suitcase was too heavy to lift.* **| clutch, hold | carry, drag, heave, hump, lug** *She heaved her case down from the luggage rack. travellers humping suitcases about* **| drop, dump, put down | live out of** *He got fed up of living out of a suitcase and left his job as a sales rep.*

SUITCASE + VERB be crammed/stuffed with sth, be full of sth, contain sth *The suitcase was full of drugs.*

PREP. in/inside a/the ~

suite *noun*

1 **of furniture**

ADJ. **three-piece** *a three-piece lounge suite* **| bathroom, bedroom, dining/ dining-room, lounge**

VERB + SUITE **put in** *We're having a new bathroom suite put in.*

PHRASES **a suite of furniture**

2 **set of rooms in a hotel, office block, etc.**

ADJ. **private | executive, luxury | furnished | penthouse | bridal, conference, delivery** (= in the maternity ward of a hospital), **family, honeymoon, hospitality** *a family suite of two interconnecting rooms* **| hotel, office**

PHRASES **a suite of rooms/offices**

suited *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem | make sth**

ADV. **admirably, eminently, especially, particularly, peculiarly, very, well** *lands that are well suited to dairy farming* **| ideally, perfectly, uniquely** *She was ideally suited to the job.* **| hardly, not really | ill-, little, not really** *a song ill-suited to male voices* **| genuinely** *Is this a job for which you are genuinely suited?* **| naturally | temperamentally**

PREP. **for** *He was not really suited for army life.* **| to** *an approach especially suited to the adult learner*

sum *noun*

1 **amount of money**

ADJ. **considerable, generous, good, handsome, hefty, high, large, not inconsiderable, princely** (ironic), **significant, substantial, tidy** (informal) *It seemed an absurdly high sum to pay for a coat. For his first book he received the princely sum of $400. The team has raised substantial sums for local charities.* | **astronomical, colossal, enormous, exorbitant, huge, magnificent, massive, record, staggering, vast** *£200 was an astronomical sum of money in 1547. He joined the club two years ago for a record sum.* | **five-figure, six-figure, etc.** | **small, modest, nominal, reasonable, token, trifling** *The charity pays a nominal sum to lease the premises.* | **derisory, paltry** | **average** | **net** | **round** *$10,000 is a good round sum.* | **full, overall, total** | **agreed, fixed** | **undisclosed, unspecified** | **annual, monthly, etc.** | **regular** | **guaranteed** | **capital, cash, lump** *My wife would receive a guaranteed lump sum in the event of my death.* | **tax-free**

VERB + SUM **borrow, earn, fetch, raise, recover** *Some of the paintings should fetch a tidy sum at today's auction. You will have to go to court to recover these sums.* | **get, receive** | **award sb, contribute, give sb, grant sb, lend sb, offer sb, pay (sb), repay** *The judge awarded them an undisclosed six-figure sum in damages.* | **invest, spend** | **cost** *a project that cost vast sums of public money* | **charge (sb), fine sb** | **agree (on)** *We eventually agreed a sum and I gave him a cheque.*

SUM + VERB **be due, be payable** *The landlord has the right to recover any sums payable under this lease* | **be equal/equivalent to sth** *The gangsters offered him a sum equivalent to a whole year's earnings.* | **exceed sth**

PHRASES **a sum of money**

2 **calculation**

ADJ. **difficult, easy**

VERB + SUM **do, find the answer to** *I did a quick sum to work out how much it would cost.*

PHRASES **get your sums right/wrong** *The company got its sums wrong when* *estimating how many customers it would attract.*

3 **amount got by adding numbers**

VERB + SUM **calculate, find, work out** *Calculate the sum of the following figures.*

PREP. **~ of** *The sum of two and five is seven.*

sum *verb* **PHRASAL VERBS sum sth up**

ADV. **aptly, neatly, nicely, succinctly, well | perfectly | just about** *'So we're stuck in this place, with no food, no heat, no light and no prospect of anyone coming to rescue us?' 'That just about sums it up.'*

VERB + SUM **seem to | attempt to, try to** *attempting to sum up recent economic trends* **| be difficult to, be hard to** *The appeal of this charming little town is hard to sum up.*

PREP. **as** *She summed it up as 'the most brilliant lecture I've ever attended'.*

summarize *verb*

ADV. **briefly, succinctly | aptly, best, conveniently, neatly, usefully, well** *The research has been usefully summarized in an article by Greenwood.* **| easily**

VERB + SUMMARIZE **attempt to, try to | be possible to | be difficult to**

PREP. **as** *The results of the survey can be summarized as follows: …*

summary *noun*

ADJ. **accurate, apt, clear, excellent, fair, good, useful** *Is that a fair summary of the situation?* **| comprehensive, detailed, full | general, overall | brief, concise, quick, short | bald, crude | financial, statistical | news, plot** *Details of new titles, with plot summaries, are included in the catalogue.*

VERB + SUMMARY **make, prepare, write** *Could you make a short summary of this article for me?* **| give (sb), provide (sb with), supply (sb with)** *He has provided a useful summary of the main categories.*

SUMMARY + NOUN **sheet, table | report, statement**

PREP. **in ~** *In summary, his views are out of date.* **| in a/the ~** *She decided not to include this incident in her summary of the day's events.*

PHRASES **in summary form** *The information is shown in summary form in the following tables.*

summer *noun*

ADJ. **last, next, this (coming) | early, late, mid-**(also **midsummer**) **| high** *Seville is scorching in high summer.* **| good, hot, scorching | dry, wet | Indian** *We had an Indian summer that year, very warm until October. (figurative) She seems to be enjoying an Indian summer of popularity.*

SUMMER + NOUN **temperature, weather | sun, sunlight, sunshine | rain/rains | breeze, gale, wind | sky | solstice | course, school | term** *There are two new courses being run in the summer term.* **| break, holiday, recess, vacation** *I went home for the summer holidays.* **| garden | flower | clothes, clothing, dress | collection, exhibition | Olympics, sports** > Note at SEASON(for more collocates)

summit *noun*

1 **top of a mountain**

ADJ. **high** *The Pic Long is the highest summit in the region.* | **very** | **rocky, snow-capped, snow-covered, snowy** | **mountain**

VERB + SUMMIT **arrive at, climb (to), gain, get to, reach**

SUMMIT + NOUN **attempt, bid** *The blizzard forced them to delay their summit bid.*

PREP. **at the ~** *We were standing at the very summit of the highest mountain in India.* | **below the ~** *They reached base camp, 12,000 metres below the summit.* | **on the ~** *The climbers planted a flag on the summit.*

2 **important meeting between leaders**

ADJ. **annual, biennial, etc.** | **regular** | **emergency, extraordinary, special** | **two-day, etc.** | **first, inaugural** | **global, international, regional** | **bilateral, trilateral** | **European, Franco-German, etc.** | **G8, NATO, etc.** | **presidential** | **Paris, Rio, etc.** | **drugs, earth, economic, peace**

VERB + SUMMIT **have, hold, host** *The 2004 summit will be hosted by Japan.* | **attend, go to**

SUMMIT + NOUN **conference, meeting, talks** | **agenda** | **agreement, declaration**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *These measures were decided at a summit in July.* | **~ between** *annual summits between the major OECD economies* | **~ on** *a two-day international summit on drugs*

summon *verb*

1 **order a person to come to a place**

ADV. **duly | hastily, urgently | back**

PREP. **for** *She was duly summoned for an interview.* | **from** *He has been summoned from New York to give evidence at the trial.* | **to** *She was summoned back to his office.*

2 **find sth that you need**

ADV. **barely, hardly** *He could hardly summon the strength to stand up.* | **up**

VERB + SUMMON **can/could | try to | manage to** *She managed to summon up a smile.*

summons *noun*

1 order to go somewhere

ADJ. **peremptory, urgent | royal**

VERB + SUMMONS **send (out) | await, expect** *I stayed in that night awaiting her summons.* **| get, hear, receive | answer, obey, respond to | ignore**

SUMMONS + VERB **come** *She was ready when the summons duly came.*

PREP. **~ from** *She responded immediately to the summons from the head teacher.* **| ~ to** *I received an urgent summons to her office.*

PHRASES **in answer to a summons** *He arrived panting in answer to Blake's summons.*

2 order to go to a court of law

ADJ. **court | private | witness**

VERB + SUMMONS **issue, take out | deliver, present (sb with), serve (sb with)** *The summons can be served on either of the partners in the business.*

PREP. **~ against** *Her neighbours took out a summons against her for noise nuisance.* **| ~ for**

sun *noun* (usually **the sun**)

ADJ. **blood-red, bright, brilliant, golden, red, yellow | hazy, pale, thin, watery, weak, wintry | high, low** *The wintry sun was already low in the sky.* **| rising | dying, setting, sinking, westering, western** *The distant mountains glowed in the light of the setting sun.* **| baking, blazing, burning, fierce, harsh, hot, scorching, strong, warm | direct, full** *This plant likes a dryish soil in full sun.* **| afternoon, early, early-morning, evening, late, midday, morning, noon/noonday | autumn, spring, summer, winter | August, February, etc. | desert, tropical | Caribbean, Italian, etc.**

VERB + SUN **blot out, obliterate** *The clouds darkened, obliterating the sun.* **| soak up** *We were lying by the pool, soaking up the afternoon sun.* **| catch** *You've caught the sun* (= become slightly burnt by the sun).

SUN + VERB **come up, climb, rise** *The sun climbed higher in the sky.*

The sun rises in the east. **| dip, drop, go down, set, sink** *The sun sets in the west. It was getting cooler as the sun sank below the horizon.* **| be out, be up** *The sun was up now, and strong.* **| move** *The sun moved slowly westward.* **| appear, break through (sth), come out, emerge** *Just then, a watery sun broke through the clouds.* **| beat down, blaze down, burn, glare, shine** *A brilliant sun shone through the trees.* **| disappear, go in** *The sun went in and it started to rain.* **| catch sth, flash on sth, glance on sth, glint off/on sth, play on sth, sparkle (on sth)** *The sun caught her dazzling copper hair. The sun glinted on the blades.* **| pour down/in, slant through sth, stream in/through sth** *The evening sun slanted through the window.* **| strike sth, touch sth** *The sun struck the steep blue slates of the roof.* **| warm sth** *The sun warmed his face.*

SUN + NOUN **god | worshipper | lounge, terrace, trap** (also **suntrap**) **| bed** (also **sunbed**), **lounger** (also **sunlounger**) **| hat** (also **sunhat**), **umbrella, visor | tan** (also **suntan**) **| cream, lotion, oil, protection** *On children, use a cream with a high sun protection factor.* **| damage, exposure** *wrinkles caused by sun damage*

PREP. **in the ~** *Don't sit in the sun too long. The helmets were glinting in the sun. We've booked a holiday in the sun* (= in a place that is warm and sunny). **| into the ~** *We went out into the sun.* **| out of the ~** *We did our best to keep out of the sun.* **| ~ in** *with the sun in her eyes* **| ~ on** *enjoying the feel of the sun on his back*

PHRASES **the rays of the sun/the sun's rays**

Sunday *noun* > Note at DAY

sunglasses *noun*

ADJ. **clip-on | wrap-around | mirror, mirrored, reflecting | designer**

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + SUNGLASSES **have on, wear | put on, take off | adjust**

SUNGLASSES + VERB **be perched on sth, perch on sth** *Her sunglasses were perched on her head.*

PREP. **behind your ~** *She observed the goings-on from behind her mirrored sunglasses.*

sunlight *noun*

ADJ. **blinding, bright, brilliant, harsh, hot, intense, scorching, strong, warm** *He emerged from the tunnel into blinding sunlight.* **| direct, full** *plants that do not like direct sunlight* **| pale, weak, wintry | dappled, golden** *the dappled sunlight of the forest* **| reflected | afternoon, morning, evening | autumn, spring, etc.**

QUANT. **beam, ray, shaft | patch, pool**

VERB + SUNLIGHT **block out** *a dank backyard with a wall that blocked out the sunlight* **| gleam in, glint in, shimmer in, sparkle in** *The sea shimmered in the sunlight.* **| be exposed to** *Do not leave your skin exposed to sunlight for too long.* **| blink in, squint in** *They emerged from the cinema, blinking in the sunlight.*

SUNLIGHT + VERB **come, fall, filter, flood, penetrate, pierce, pour, shine, slant, stream** *Sunlight filtered dustily through the slats of the door. in dark thickets where sunlight could not penetrate She threw back the shutters and the sunlight streamed in.* **| dapple sth, gleam on/through sth, glimmer on sth, glint on sth, glitter on sth, reflect from/on sth, shimmer on sth, sparkle on sth** *Sunlight dapples the grass around us. the sunlight sparkling on the water*

PREP. **in the ~** *waves sparkling in the sunlight* **| into the ~** *We came out into bright sunlight again.*

sunny *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become, get | remain, stay**

ADV. **brilliantly, very** *a brilliantly sunny day* **| quite**

sunset *noun*

ADJ. **beautiful, glorious, spectacular, stunning | orange, red**

VERB + SUNSET **admire, watch, ride/sail off into** *At the end of the movie, the hero rides off into the sunset.*

PREP. **against the ~** *The trees were black against the sunset.* **| at ~** *walking along the beach at sunset* **| ~ over** *a beautiful sunset over the bay*

PHRASES **the glow of the sunset** *sitting in the last glow of the sunset*

sunshine *noun*

ADJ. **blazing, bright, brilliant, dazzling | beautiful, glorious, pleasant** *two weeks of glorious sunshine* **| hot, sweltering, warm | hazy, mild, pale, watery, wintry | fitful** *It was a cool day with fitful sunshine.* **| afternoon, evening, morning | June, July, etc. | autumn, spring, etc.** *She sat on the wall, enjoying the spring sunshine.*

VERB + SUNSHINE **bask in, enjoy, soak up | be bathed in** *The town was bathed in spring sunshine.* **| gleam in, glow in, sparkle in**

SUNSHINE + VERB **beat down, flood, pour, slant, stream** *The sunshine came streaming in at the window.*

PREP. **in (the) ~** *The race was run in bright sunshine.* **| into the ~** *She followed us out into the sunshine.*

suntan *noun*

ADJ. **golden, good**

VERB + SUNTAN **have | show off, sport** *Everyone in the bar was sporting a suntan.* **| get, work on** *He spent the mornings on the beach getting a suntan. I'm going down to the pool to work on my suntan!*

SUNTAN + NOUN **lotion, oil**

superb *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, sound** *She looked superb.*

ADV. **really | absolutely, quite, simply** *The cuisine is absolutely superb.*

superficial *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very | entirely, purely** *He began to feel he could cope, on a purely superficial level, at least.* **| increasingly | largely, more or less | fairly, quite, rather, relatively, somewhat**

superfluous *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become | make sth, render sth | consider sth**

ADV. **quite, totally, wholly** *She gave him a look that made words quite superfluous.* **| almost | rather**

superior *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become | make sth** *What is it that makes this technique superior?* **| consider sth, see sth as** *I don't see either product as superior to the other.*

ADV. **clearly, distinctly, far, greatly, markedly, vastly** *The new products are far superior to the old ones. They defeated a greatly superior Roman army.* **| altogether, infinitely, wholly** *The house was altogether superior to the kind of thing most men of Adam's age could aspire to.* **| rather, slightly, somewhat | inherently, intrinsically, naturally | supposedly | undoubtedly | numerically** *the numerically superior* (= larger in numbers) *British forces* **| economically, educationally, intellectually, morally, socially, technically**

PREP. **in** *a microwave that is vastly superior in design to all other models* **| to** *She felt socially superior to most of her neighbours.*

superior *noun*

ADJ. **immediate** *The form has to be signed by your immediate superior.* **| social**

VERB + SUPERIOR **report sb/sth to** *She threatened to report the assistant to his superiors.*

superiority *noun*

ADJ. **absolute, complete, overwhelming, total | effortless** *Driving the Jaguar gave him a feeling of total control, effortless superiority.* **| inherent, innate, intrinsic, natural | academic, biological, cultural, intellectual, moral, numerical, physical, racial, social, technical, technological** *a discredited ideology of racial superiority* **| male, masculine** *his air of masculine superiority* **| air, military, naval**

VERB + SUPERIORITY **achieve, establish** *the enemy's attempts to establish air superiority* **| enjoy, have** *For a long time France enjoyed overwhelming superiority in this field.* **| confirm, convince sb of, demonstrate, prove, show, underline | maintain | assert, assume, claim, imply** *The use of the words 'modern' and 'old' is not meant to imply the superiority of one over the other.* **| acknowledge, bow to** *Their team has had to bow to Australia's superiority in recent years.*

PREP. **~ in** *making use of their superiority in numbers* **| ~ over** *the company's clear technological superiority over its rivals* **| ~ to** *The settlers remained convinced of their superiority to the native population.*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of superiority**

supermarket *noun*

ADJ. **leading, major, top | high-street, local**

SUPERMARKET + NOUN **chain, giant, group | development | car park, checkout, queue, shelf, trolley** *An increasing amount of organic produce is to be found on supermarket shelves.* **| brand | assistant, manager**

superstition *noun*

ADJ. popular | age-old, ancient, old | local | pagan | primitive

VERB + SUPERSTITION have *We have a lot of superstitions about animals.* **| be riddled with** *The topic of birth is riddled with superstition.* **| believe in** *unwilling to believe in local superstitions* **| dismiss sth as, reject sth as**

SUPERSTITION + VERB be attached to sth *Red-headed people have many superstitions attached to them.*

PREP. ~ about *primitive superstitions about death*

supervise *verb*

ADV. **carefully, closely, strictly, well** *The children will be closely supervised at all times.* **| fully, properly** *The pool is fully supervised by trained staff.* **| adequately | inadequately | personally** *I will supervise the work personally.* **| internationally** *a proposal for an internationally supervised ceasefire*

VERB + SUPERVISE **appoint sb to** *An executive officer was appointed to supervise the arrangements.*

supervision *noun*

ADJ. **careful, close, strict | adequate, effective, proper | inadequate | constant, daily, day-to-day, regular | minimal | direct** *New staff are trained to work without direct supervision.* **| general, overall | adult, clinical, expert, medical, parental, personal**

VERB + SUPERVISION **need, require | get, have, receive | exercise, give sb, offer (sb), provide (sb with)** *The scheme offers only minimal supervision for young offenders.* **| be responsible for** *The head porter is responsible for the supervision and allocation of duties.* **| keep sb/sth under** *He needs to be kept under strict supervision.* **| improve, tighten | relax | escape (from), evade** *She managed to escape her boss's constant supervision.*

SUPERVISION + NOUN **order** *The local authority can apply for a supervision order for the child.*

PREP. **under (sb's) ~** *under the close supervision of her teachers* **| with/without ~** *Children are not allowed to swim without adequate supervision.* **| ~ by** *They still require supervision by skilled colleagues.* **| ~ from** *Trainees will receive personal supervision from experienced staff.*

PHRASES **a lack of supervision**

supervisor *noun*

ADJ. **chief, senior | area | office | shift | project | production | technical | research**

VERB + SUPERVISOR **act as**

PREP. **under a/the ~** *the people working under that supervisor* > Note at JOB

supper *noun*

ADJ. **light | cold, hot | buffet | early, late | family | harvest** *There was always a harvest supper for the farm workers after the hay and wheat had been cut.* **| fish and chip, pie, etc.**

SUPPER + NOUN **dish** *It can also be eaten as a supper dish with a salad.* **| table, things, tray** *Ellie cleared away their supper things.*

PHRASES **a bit/bite of supper** *They invited me round for a bite of supper.* > Note at MEAL(for verbs)

supple *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look** *leaving your skin feeling soft and supple* **| become, get** *He was gradually getting more supple.* **| keep, remain, stay** *exercises that will help you to keep supple* **| make sth** *a cream that is used on dry skins to make them nice and supple* **| keep sth** *You must exercise your joints to keep them supple.*

ADV. **extremely, very**

supplement *noun*

1 **sth that is added**

ADJ. **useful, valuable | colour** (= a colour magazine that comes with most weekend papers in Britain), **magazine, special, Sunday** *Our special supplement is packed with inspirational ideas for healthy and glamorous hair.* **| dietary, food, mineral, nutritional, vitamin**

VERB + SUPPLEMENT **provide (sb/sth with) | add** *The farmer adds a supplement to the horse's feed.* **| take, use (sth as)** *I take a vitamin supplement every day. You can use these books as supplements to the basic English course.*

PREP. **~ to** *This document is a supplement to the main report.*

2 **extra amount of money**

ADJ. **$100,** £**50, etc.** *A balcony is available for a £20 supplement.* **| flight, single room** *If you want to travel on a different day a flight supplement is payable.* **| earnings-related, means-tested** *means-tested supplements to the basic pension*

VERB + SUPPLEMENT **add, charge** *We charge a small supplement for this service.* **| carry, have** *Weekend flights carry a supplement.* **| pay**

SUPPLEMENT + VERB **be payable**

PREP. **at a ~** *Single rooms are available at a supplement.* **| ~ for** *a $20 supplement for each extra night* **| ~ on** *There is a supplement on rooms with a sea view.*

supplier *noun*

ADJ. **big, largest, leading, main, major, principal | small | sole | reliable | external, foreign, outside, overseas | local | independent | mail-order | agricultural, arms, component, equipment, food, software, etc. | electricity, gas, oil**

PREP. **~ to** *the leading arms supplier to the rebel forces*

supply *noun*

1 **sth that is supplied**

ADJ. **total** *It is impossible to measure the total supply of money in circulation.* | **endless, inexhaustible, infinite, limitless, never-ending, unending** *He has an endless supply of corny jokes.* | **abundant, bountiful, good, large, plentiful** | **adequate, ample, sufficient** | **inadequate, limited, small** *Hurry, as we only have a limited supply of these TVs in stock!* | **dwindling** | **constant, continuous, regular, steady** | **fresh** *The body needs a fresh supply of vitamin C every day.* | **ready, reliable** *the provision of a reliable supply of clean water to rural communities* | **domestic** | **air, blood, oxygen, etc.** *A clot in the brain cut off her blood supply.* | **food, milk, water, etc.** | **coal, electricity, energy, fuel, gas, oil, power, etc.** *Domestic coal supplies were more plentiful in the mid-1950s. Turn off the mains electricity supply.* | **mains** | **labour** *The farmers depend on a casual labour supply at harvest time.* | **money** *the country's problems with ballooning inflation and swelling money supply*

VERB + SUPPLY **have** *Make sure you have an adequate supply of brochures.* | **get, lay in, obtain, receive** *We should lay in a good supply of beer for the party.* | **produce, provide** *The studio produced a steady supply of good films.* | **ensure, maintain** | **cut off, disconnect, disrupt, stop** *The electricity company disconnected our supply for non-payment of a bill. The storm disrupted the town's power supply.* | **deplete, exhaust, use (up)** *By the end of the winter the supply of grain was severely depleted.* | **replenish, restore** | **increase** | **restrict, limit, reduce** | **exceed, outstrip** *Demand for top-quality programmers exceeds supply, leading to extortionate salaries.*

SUPPLY + VERB **increase** | **fall** | **exceed/meet demand** *Labour supply did not increase to meet demand.*

SUPPLY + NOUN **line, system** *the water supply system* | **contract**

PREP. **~ of** *a supply of spare batteries* | **~ to** *to maintain an adequate water supply to the inner city areas*

PHRASES **be in short supply** *Food is in short supply following the flooding.* | **demand and supply/supply and demand** *laws of supply and demand* | **a fall/a shortfall in supply** *There will soon be a shortfall in supply of qualified young* *people.* **| an increase in supply 2 supplies** amount of sth needed

ADJ. **abundant, plentiful | limited, meagre | vital | emergency, relief | arms, food, medical, military, office** *The Red Cross flew emergency food supplies into the war zone.*

VERB + SUPPLY **bring (in/up), lay in, provide (sb/sth with)** *The money raised will provide vital medical supplies to refugee camps.* **| be/run out of, be/run short of | threaten** *Rebel action threatened relief supplies.*

SUPPLY + VERB **hold out, last | be depleted, be exhausted, run low/out/short**

PREP. **~ of** *The injured climbers had only meagre supplies of water and peanuts to live off.*

supply *verb*

ADV. **amply, liberally, well | adequately** *Any room where gas is used must be adequately supplied with air.* **| poorly | generously, kindly** *a buffet supper, generously supplied by club members* **| readily | free (of charge)**

VERB + SUPPLY **agree to | refuse to | fail to | ask sb to** *Each applicant is asked to supply a portfolio of work at interview.*

PREP. **for** *goods supplied for private use* **| from** *The water was supplied from an eight-wheeled tanker.* **| to** *They were accused of supplying arms to the rebels.* **| with** *He refused to supply the police with information.*

PHRASES **a contract to supply sth, intent to supply (sb/sth)** *(law) He was charged with possession of drugs with intent to supply others.* **| keep sb/sth supplied with sth** *keeping the guests well supplied with champagne*

support *noun*

1 **help and encouragement**

ADJ. **complete, full, total | active, considerable, enthusiastic, firm, generous, good, great, loyal, massive, overwhelming, solid, strong, tremendous, unqualified, wholehearted** *The socialist candidate enjoys the firm support of local industry. the company's generous financial support of the arts The poll revealed massive support for the proposal. The plan received strong support from farmers.* | **unflagging, unstinting, unswerving, unwavering** *We would like to thank Edna Hales for her unstinting support over the years.* | **growing, increased, increasing | continued, continuing | broad, community, general, majority, mass, popular, public, wide/widespread** *The government has lost majority support in the Assembly.* | **main | limited, lukewarm, qualified** *My idea only received lukewarm support from my colleagues.* | **adequate, sufficient | direct, indirect | long-term** *people who need long-term support at home* | **personal** *The proposal has the personal support of the president.* | **mutual** *The parents of the sufferers get together for mutual support.* | **international | Labour, Liberal, etc. | all-party, bipartisan, cross-party | administrative, economic, electoral, emotional, financial, moral, political, practical, technical, etc.** *She took her sister with her to the interview for moral support.* | **government, official, state | air, military, naval | price** *a price support mechanism*

VERB + SUPPORT **enjoy, have** *The policy has the support of the community.* | **derive, draw, get, receive** *Which groups does the party draw most of its support from?* | **enlist, find, gain, mobilize, secure, win** *Campaigners have enlisted the support of their local MP.* | **attract, cultivate, drum up, muster, rally, recruit, seek, solicit, whip up | give sb/sth, lend (sb/sth), offer (sb/sth), provide (sb/sth with), throw** *organizations that provide support and advice to small businesses She threw her full support behind him.* | **lose | cut (off), withdraw | need, require** *She will need a lot of emotional support at this difficult time.* | **count on, rely on** *Can I count on your support?* | **announce, come out in, confirm, demonstrate, express, pledge, reaffirm, show** *one of the first scientists to come out in support of 'The Origin of Species' Many TV celebrities have already pledged their support to the appeal.* | **bolster, broaden, build (up), increase, strengthen** *The government is trying to build popular support for an unwinnable war.* | **weaken**

SUPPORT + VERB **come** *Support came from all sections of the community.* | **grow, rise** *Support for the Liberals has risen to 30 per cent.* | **fall**

SUPPORT + NOUN **base** *He had no support base within the party.* **| group** *a local support group for single parents* **| network | services**

PREP. **in ~ of** *an intense campaign in support of the proposal* **| with/without ... ~** *The pipeline is to be built with international support.* **| ~ against** *Farmers mobilized considerable support against government plans to remove import restrictions.* **| ~ among** *The party wishes to broaden its support among professionals.* **| ~ between** *mutual support between local cooperatives* **| ~ for** *The president has expressed his support for the project.* **| ~ from** *The policy has broad support from industry.*

PHRASES **a base of support** *Fears that instability would return under the Democrats gave the government a broad base of support.* **| a cut/decline in support, an expression of support** *The rebel leader claimed to have received expressions of support from all the neighbouring countries.* **| a lack of support, a source of support**

2 **money to buy food, clothes, etc.**

ADJ. **child, family, social | income**

VERB + SUPPORT **claim** *Families earning below a certain amount can claim child support.*

PHRASES **a means of support**

3 **sth that carries the weight of sb/sth**

ADJ. **firm | additional, extra | back, knee, etc. | roof**

VERB + SUPPORT **give sth** *The piece of wood under the mattress is to give my back extra support.*

PHRASES **hold onto sb/sth for support** *He held onto his wife for support as he left the hospital.*

support *verb*

1 **help/encourage/agree with sb/sth**

ADV. **fervently, overwhelmingly, strongly** *The people of this country overwhelmingly support their president. I strongly support the view that education should be available to everyone.* **| fully, wholeheartedly | unanimously | actively** *The group is actively supported by several Members of Parliament.* **| tacitly | enthusiastically | loyally** *He has supported the party loyally for over twenty years.* **| ably** *The soloists were ably supported by the University Singers.*

VERB + SUPPORT **agree to, be pledged to, pledge to, promise to** *He promised to support me at the meeting.* **| be prepared to, be willing to | fail to, refuse to**

PREP. **in** *Very few countries supported the United States in its action.*

PHRASES **be widely supported** *These policies were widely supported in the country.*

2 **show that sth is true/correct**

ADV. **strongly** *The evidence strongly supports his claims.*

VERB + SUPPORT **appear to, seem to, tend to**

3 **give sb money**

ADV. **financially | generously**

VERB + SUPPORT **help (to)**

PREP. **through** *Her parents supported her all through college.*

supporter *noun*

ADJ. **active, ardent, close, committed, die-hard, enthusiastic, faithful, fanatical, fervent, great, keen, loyal, passionate, stalwart, staunch, strong** *an active supporter of democratic change The emperor was deserted by his closest supporters before the end of the war. die-hard supporters of the old system Only stalwart supporters of the team stayed to the end of the match.* **| leading, principal, prominent | lifelong, long-time | traditional** *an area of traditional Labour supporters* **| reluctant | government, opposition, party, political | Conservative, Labour, etc. | grass-roots, rank-and-file** *The party has not been listening to the concerns of its grass-roots supporters.* **| football, rugby, etc.**

QUANT. **army, group, set, team** *Both sets of supporters applauded the fantastic goal.*

VERB + SUPPORTER **have | attract, rally** *to attract supporters to the cause*

SUPPORTER + VERB **rally** *Supporters rallied to his assistance when he was declared bankrupt.* **| cheer** *a coachload of cheering football supporters*

PHRASES **a crowd/rally of supporters** *The opposition leader addressed a rally of 50,000 supporters.*

supportive *adj.*

VERBS be, seem | become | remain | find sb

ADV. extremely, highly, incredibly, strongly, very, wonderfully *strongly supportive of the government's approach All the hospital staff were wonderfully supportive.* **| entirely, fully, totally, wholly** *We are totally supportive of this idea.* **| broadly, generally, largely | mutually** *establishing a mutually supportive and caring relationship*

PREP. of *fully supportive of the changes* **| to** *They were all extremely supportive to me.*

suppose *verb*

ADV. **mistakenly, wrongly**

VERB + SUPPOSE **be plausible to, be reasonable to** *It's reasonable to suppose that people go into this business in search of fame.* | **be absurd to, be implausible to, be naive to, be unreasonable to**

PHRASES **be commonly/generally/popularly suppposed** *This combination of qualities is generally supposed to be extremely rare.* | **reason to suppose sth** *There is no reason to suppose she's lying.*

supposition *noun*

ADJ. **mere, pure** *That is mere supposition!* **| reasonable** *It is a reasonable supposition that many mothers would welcome the offer of part-time work.*

VERB + SUPPOSITION **make, work on** *Let's work on the supposition that she meant no offence.* **| be based on | confirm, support | be correct in** *You are correct in your suppositions about the source of his wealth.*

SUPPOSITION + VERB **be based on sth**

PREP. **on (a/the) ~** *She was charged on the supposition that she had colluded with her husband in the murders.* **| ~ about** *They are making all sorts of suppositions about our possible reaction.* **| ~ of** *a supposition of innocence*

suppress *verb*

1 **stop sth by using force**

ADV. **bloodily, brutally, ruthlessly, vigorously, violently** *A pro-democracy uprising was brutally suppressed.*

VERB + SUPPRESS **attempt to, seek to, try to | use sth to** *using violence to suppress opposition*

PHRASES **an attempt to suppress sth**

2 **stop sth from being seen/known**

ADV. **completely | effectively** *The medication effectively suppressed the pain.* **| deliberately** *This information had been deliberately suppressed.* **| systematically**

VERB + SUPPRESS **attempt to, seek to, try to**

PHRASES **an attempt to suppress sth**

3 **stop yourself doing/expressing sth**

ADV. **firmly | hardly** *He could hardly suppress his surprise.* **| instantly** *The disloyal thought was instantly suppressed.* **| quickly**

VERB + SUPPRESS **be unable to, cannot/could not** *She was unable to suppress a giggle.* **| try to | manage to | be hard to**

PHRASES **barely suppressed** *Her face was charged with barely suppressed anger.*

suppression *noun*

ADJ. **total | bloody, brutal, violent**

PREP. **during/in the ~ of** *He was injured in the bloody suppression of the uprising.*

supremacy *noun*

ADJ. **total, unchallenged | world | air, military, naval | economic, political | male**

VERB + SUPREMACY **enjoy, have** *a period when the British enjoyed supremacy in international trade* **| lose | battle for, fight for, struggle for | assert, establish | proclaim | acknowledge, uphold** *to uphold the supremacy of the country's own laws* **| give sb/sth** *Coal gave the region industrial supremacy.* **| maintain | challenge**

PREP. **~ in** *the battle for supremacy in the world economic markets* **| ~ over** *By the end of the war, the prince had established total supremacy over all his rivals.* **| ~ within** *factions fighting for supremacy within the Church*

PHRASES **a battle/fight/struggle for supremacy, a challenge/threat to sb/sth's supremacy, a symbol of supremacy**

surcharge *noun*

ADJ. **small | tax** *a corporate tax surcharge*

VERB + SURCHARGE **add, impose, levy, put** *A surcharge of 40 francs was added to our bill. A surcharge is levied on late applications.* **| pay**

PREP. **~ for** *There is a surcharge for excess baggage.* **| ~ on** *There is a 2% surcharge on credit card users.*

sure *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound** *You don't seem very sure to me.* **| make** *Make sure no one finds out about this.* **| make sb** *What makes you so sure she'll come back to you?*

ADV. **absolutely, completely, damned, quite | doubly** *To make doubly sure they would not be disturbed she turned the key in the lock.* **| not altogether, not entirely, not quite, not really** *I'm not altogether sure he would appreciate your efforts.* **| fairly, pretty**

PREP. **about** *Pottz was confident of taking the American title, but less sure about the world championship.* **| of** *You'd better be completely sure of your facts.*

surf *noun*

ADJ. **heavy | distant** *the roar of distant surf*

VERB + SURF **ride** *dolphins riding the surf*

SURF + VERB **break, roll (in)** *the sound of surf breaking on the beach* **| roar, thunder**

PREP. **in the ~** *The children splashed about in the surf.*

PHRASES **the roar/thunder of (the) surf**

surface *noun*

ADJ. **even, flat, level, smooth | rough, uneven | curved | firm, hard, solid | soft | slippery | calm, glassy, polished, reflective, shiny** *the glassy surface of the lake* **| frozen** *The ball rolled onto the frozen surface of the pond.* **| inner, interior, internal** *the inner surface of a bone* **| exterior, external, outer | lower, upper | water | floor, ground, land, road, rock, wall | kitchen, work/ working** *a cleaning product for all kitchen surfaces* **| earth's** *Visible light from the sun passes through the atmosphere to the earth's surface.*

VERB + SURFACE **come (up) to, rise to | bring sth to** *The captain brought the submarine to the surface.* **| scratch, skim, touch** *(all figurative) The investigation barely scratched the surface of the city's drug problem.* **| ripple** *The wind rippled the surface of the lake.*

SURFACE + NOUN **area | level | layer** *the surface layer of the skin* **| temperature, tension | water** *Surface water made driving conditions hazardous.*

PREP. **above/over the ~, across the ~, along the ~, below/beneath/under the ~** *The ring slowly sank beneath the surface of the mud pool. (figurative) She gives the impression of being rather conventional, but under the surface she is wildly eccentric.* **| in the ~** *Cracks began to appear in the surface of the earth.* **| on a/the ~** *a trail of pink flowers floating on the surface of the water (figurative) On the surface his words were funny, but I detected quite a lot of anger behind them.*

surge *noun*

1 **of feeling**

ADJ. **great, huge | wild | abrupt, sudden, swift | initial** *His initial surge of euphoria was quickly followed by dismay.* **| fresh, new, renewed** *She felt a fresh surge of anger when he denied lying.* **| familiar | adrenalin**

VERB + SURGE **experience, feel** *He experienced that familiar surge of excitement.*

SURGE + VERB **sweep (over/through) sb/sth** *A great surge of emotion swept through him.*

PREP. **with a ~** *He thought of his old teacher with a surge of affection.* **| ~ of** *a sudden surge of adrenalin*

2 **movement/increase**

ADJ. **dramatic, extraordinary, great, huge, massive | growing | sudden, unexpected | temporary | last-minute, overnight, recent** *A last-minute surge in ticket sales saved the show from closure.* **| storm, tidal** *The storm surge caused widespread flooding.*

PREP. **~ in** *a dramatic surge in the demand*

PHRASES **a surge forward** *Police struggled to control the sudden surge forward by the demonstrators.*

surgeon *noun*

ADJ. **distinguished, eminent, leading, top | brilliant | pioneering | chief, consultant, senior | qualified | general | brain, dental, eye, heart, orthopaedic, plastic, transplant, veterinary** *A plastic surgeon successfully rebuilt his nose.* **| police**

VERB + SURGEON **be, work as | become, qualify as** *He is determined to qualify as a surgeon.* **| see**

SURGEON + VERB **operate, perform an operation, remove sth** *the surgeon who will operate on you Surgeons removed her right leg above the knee.*

PHRASES **surgeon's knife** *Many people are terrified at the thought of the surgeon's knife.*

surgery *noun*

1 medical treatment

ADJ. **major, radical | minor | extensive | further | successful, unsuccessful | keyhole, laser | invasive** *One of his specialities is minimally invasive surgery.* **| elective, emergency, experimental, exploratory, remedial** *They discussed whether patients should have to pay for all elective surgery.* **| cosmetic, plastic | general | abdominal, brain, bypass, cardiac, gastric, heart, knee, open-heart, orthopaedic, paediatric**

VERB + SURGERY **have, undergo** *She had minor surgery on her knee.* **| perform** *He has been performing heart surgery for ten years.* **| need, require**

PREP. **after/before/during ~** *She felt weak for six months after undergoing major abdominal surgery.* **| ~ for** *emergency surgery for a twisted gut* **| ~ to** *After the accident, she needed extensive plastic surgery to her face.*

2 place/time a doctor/dentist sees patients

ADJ. **open | afternoon, evening, morning | dental, doctor's, GP's, veterinary**

VERB + SURGERY **do, have, hold** *I'll do morning surgery, if you like. We only have a morning surgery. He holds surgery from 10 a.m. to 1 p.m.* **| attend, go to** *those attending the doctor's surgery with physical symptoms I'll have to go to the surgery to pick up the prescription.*

SURGERY + NOUN **hours**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Dr Smith isn't in the surgery today.*

surname *noun*

ADJ. **double-barrelled, hyphenated**

VERB + SURNAME **bear, have | address/call sb by** *The teacher addresses the students by their surnames.* **| change | adopt, assume, take** *On marriage most women still take their husband's surname.*

surpass *verb*

ADV. **far | comfortably, easily**

PREP. **in** *The second half of the match comfortably surpassed the first in entertainment value.*

surplus *noun*

ADJ. **large** *a large grain surplus* **| small**

VERB + SURPLUS **produce**

SURPLUS + NOUN **cash, stock**

PREP. **in ~** *The pension fund is in surplus.*

surprise *noun*

1 **feeling of surprise**

ADJ. **great, utter | mild, some | initial** *After the initial surprise I got to like the place.* **| mock** *His eyebrows rose in mock surprise.*

QUANT. **element** *The Egyptian team relied on the element of surprise to defeat their stronger opponents.*

VERB + SURPRISE **express, register, show | feign** *He feigned surprise when I went up and said hello.* **| hide** *She was quick to hide her surprise.* **| cause** *The president's remarks caused surprise and embarrassment.*

PREP. **in ~** *'Walk twenty miles!' repeated the old man in surprise.* **| to your ~** *Much to her surprise she enjoyed the party.* **| with/without ~** *It was with some surprise that I read of his resignation.* **| ~ at** *She showed no surprise at the news.*

PHRASES **an expression/a look of surprise, a gasp/scream/shriek, etc. of surprise**

2 **sth that you did not expect**

ADJ. **big, complete, great, major, total | lovely, nice, pleasant, wonderful**

VERB + SURPRISE **come as | get, have** *I had a lovely surprise when I saw Mark there.* **| spring** *Johnson sprung a surprise by beating the favourite in the first round.* **| be in for** *Your mother's in for a bit of a surprise when she gets home.* **| catch sb by, take sb by** *The storm took us completely by surprise.*

SURPRISE + NOUN **announcement, attack, party, victory, visit**

PREP. **~ for** *It was a complete surprise for me.* **| ~ to** *His refusal came as no surprise to his boss.*

PHRASES **a bit of a/quite a surprise**

surprise *verb*

ADV. **greatly, really | not at all** *The outcome did not surprise me at all.* **| hardly | a little, slightly**

VERB + SURPRISE **wouldn't** *It wouldn't surprise me if they announced they were going to get married.* **| seem to | want to** *They wanted to surprise their mother and get the breakfast ready.*

surprised *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **extremely, greatly, most, really, terribly, very | hardly, not altogether, not at all, not entirely, not in the least, not particularly, not totally, scarcely** *Her father didn't seem at all surprised.* **| almost | a bit, faintly, a little, mildly, pretty, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat, vaguely** *She looked faintly surprised at my remark.* **| genuinely | clearly, evidently, obviously | secretly | constantly, continually** *I am constantly surprised by what my fourteen-month-old son understands.* **| momentarily | agreeably, pleasantly** *He was pleasantly surprised to discover that he was no longer afraid.*

PREP. **at** *He sounded surprised at this request.* **| by** *She appeared genuinely surprised by this gesture of affection.*

surprising *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | make sth | find sth**

ADV. **extremely, really, very | hardly, not altogether, not at all, not entirely, not really, not totally, not wholly, scarcely** *It is hardly surprising that rumours continue to circulate.* **| a bit, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat**

surrender *noun*

ADJ. **total | unconditional | immediate**

VERB + SURRENDER **demand** *The allied commander demanded their immediate and unconditional surrender.* **| force/starve into** *The villagers were starved into surrender.* **| accept, take** *The division took the surrender of a group of some 500 rebels.*

PREP. **~ to** *the government's surrender to the nationalists' demands*

PHRASES **a flag of surrender** *The rebels hoisted the white flag of surrender.* **| in (mock) surrender** *He raised his hands in mock surrender.* **| the terms of surrender** *offering them easy terms of surrender*

surrender *verb*

ADV. **completely** *After three weeks under siege they surrendered completely.* **| immediately | eventually, finally | formally** *The British formally surrendered on 31 May.* **| voluntarily**

VERB + SURRENDER **order sb to** *They were ordered to surrender their weapons to the police.* **| agree to** *They agreed to surrender their claim to the territory.* **| refuse to | be forced to**

PREP. **to** *He surrendered voluntarily to his enemies. The dictator surrendered power to Parliament.*

surrogate *noun*

VERB + SURROGATE **act as, be**

SURROGATE + NOUN **father, mother, parent | child**

PREP. **~ for** *He used the Internet as a surrogate for contact with real people.*

surround *verb*

ADV. **completely, entirely, totally | almost, virtually | quickly | immediately** *Will found himself immediately surrounded by screaming fans. the immediately surrounding area*

PREP. **with** *They surrounded the building with tanks and armoured vehicles.*

surroundings *noun*

ADJ. **attractive, beautiful, congenial, elegant, idyllic, lovely, magnificent, picturesque, pleasant | comfortable, luxurious, opulent, sumptuous | peaceful, quiet, tranquil | familiar | new, strange, unfamiliar | natural** *animals living in their natural surroundings* **| physical | immediate | historic | rural**

VERB + SURROUNDINGS **adapt to, be in harmony with, blend into, blend (in) with, fit into/in with** *The new hotel blends perfectly with the immediate surroundings.*

PREP. **amid ... ~** *classic French cuisine served amid elegant surroundings* **| in ... ~** *We spent the afternoon relaxing in the beautiful surroundings of my parents' home.*

PHRASES **the beauty of the surroundings**

surveillance *noun*

ADJ. **close, constant, regular, round-the-clock, routine | covert | aerial, CCTV/closed-circuit television, electronic, satellite, video | military, police**

VERB + SURVEILLANCE **be under** *The suspects are under police surveillance.* **| keep/place/put sb/sth under** *The country's borders are kept under constant surveillance.* **| carry out, mount** *The army carried out covert surveillance of the building for several months.* **| increase, reduce**

SURVEILLANCE + NOUN **camera, device, equipment | method, operation, system | aircraft | flight | team**

survey *noun*

1 **study of sth**

ADJ. **comprehensive, detailed, extensive, full, in-depth, major, systematic | brief, quick | sample** *The council undertook a sample survey of primary schools in the county.* | **regular | annual, monthly, etc. | local, national, nationwide, regional | independent | historical** *a historical survey of children's clothing* | **doorstep, postal, questionnaire, telephone | comparative | field | pilot | attitude, customer, opinion** *A recent customer survey showed widespread ignorance about the availability of organic food.* | **market (research), marketing**

VERB + SURVEY **carry out, conduct, do, make, undertake** *The charity did a survey of people's attitudes to the disabled.* | **commission | participate in, respond to, take part in** *94 per cent of people who took part in the survey said they agreed.*

SURVEY + VERB **cover sth, deal with sth, examine sth** *The survey covered 74 species.* | **ask sth | claim sth, conclude sth, confirm sth, disclose sth, find sth, highlight sth, identify sth, indicate sth, report sth, reveal sth, say sth, show sth, suggest sth** *A customer satisfaction survey highlighted the need for clearer pricing.*

SURVEY + NOUN **data, results | method, technique | respondent**

PREP. **according to a/the ~** *According to the survey, many young adults have experimented with drugs of some kind.* | **in a/the ~** *the questions used in the survey* | **~ into** *a survey into the state of English in universities* | **~ on** *a survey on drivers' attitudes to the police*

PHRASES **the findings/results of a survey**

2 **of land or a building**

ADJ. **full | aerial | archaeological, geological, geophysical, land, seismic | structural, valuation** *A structural survey of the property revealed serious defects.*

VERB + SURVEY **carry out, do, make**

survey *verb*

ADV. **carefully | coldly, coolly, critically** *Her green eyes surveyed him coolly.*

PREP. **from** *I surveyed the scene from my window.*

survival *noun*

ADJ. **long-term, short-term | continued | day-to-day | sheer** *fighting for the sheer survival of the museum* **| improved** *The study showed improved survival of patients using the drug.* **| chance, miraculous** *the chance survival of the king's letters to his mistress* **| business, economic, human, national, physical, political**

VERB + SURVIVAL **fight for | ensure** *The campaign will hopefully ensure the survival of the tiger.* **| improve, prolong** *Chemotherapy can prolong survival in cancer patients.* **| threaten** *The arrival of this South American predator threatened the survival of native species.* **| be crucial for/to, be essential to, be necessary for, be vital for/to** *Adaptability is essential to survival in a changing environment.*

SURVIVAL + NOUN **chances, rate | skills, strategy | kit** *The expedition members carried flares in their survival kit.* **| instinct**

PREP. **~ against** *the struggle for survival against such well-armed enemies* **| ~ as** *his survival as leader*

PHRASES **a battle/fight/struggle for survival, be a matter/question of survival** *For the poorest people, life was merely a matter of survival.* **| a chance of survival** *Doctors gave him only a 50% chance of survival.* **| the instinct for survival** *He lacked the common instinct for survival.* **| a threat to the survival of sth** *The main threat to the survival of these creatures comes from their loss of habitat.*

survive *verb*

ADV. **well** (used with another adverb or in the forms **better** or **best)** *The frescoes have survived remarkably well. Seedlings survive better in stony soil.* **| barely, hardly** *The islanders could barely survive without an export crop.* **| just (about), narrowly** *I can just about survive on what I earn. The prime minister narrowly survived a leadership challenge.* **| (for) long** *Nobody can survive long without water.* **| still** *Only one copy of the book still survives.* **| miraculously** *A schoolboy miraculously survived a 25,000-volt electric shock.* **| somehow**

VERB + SURVIVE **struggle to** *poor people struggling to survive* **| be able to, can/could, manage to | expect (sb/sth) to** *Doctors did not expect him to survive the night.* **| hope to** *She cannot hope to survive long in power.* **| be likely/unlikely to | be lucky to** *Once diagnosed with lung cancer, a patient is lucky to survive for five years.* **| enable sb to, help sb (to)**

PREP. **as** *Will she survive as party leader?* **| from** *Very little has survived from this period of history.* **| into** *Very few of the children survived into adult life.* **| on** *They survived on roots and berries.* **| through** *She survived through two world wars.* **| until** *The original apple tree survived until 1911.*

PHRASES **the only/sole surviving sb/sth** *the only surviving member of her family* **| survive intact/unscathed** *Few buildings survived the war intact.*

survivor *noun*

ADJ. **great** *Like all great survivors, she has a ruthless streak.* **| the last, the only, a rare, the sole** *This grand park is a rare survivor from the eighteenth century.* **| bomb, crash**

VERB + SURVIVOR **find, pick up, rescue** *The navy helped pick up the survivors.* **| look/search for** *The emergency services searched all night for crash survivors.*

PREP. **~ from** *a survivor from the Titanic*

susceptible *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain | leave sb/sth, make sb/sth** *The operation had left her susceptible to infection.*

ADV. **easily, extremely, highly, particularly, readily, unusually, very** *certain highly susceptible individuals* **| quite, rather | genetically**

PREP. **to** *Some dogs are thought to be genetically susceptible to the disease.*

suspect *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | render sth** *The theory is rendered suspect by its reliance on now discredited sources.*

ADV. **deeply, highly, very** *Some of the evidence was deeply suspect.* **| increasingly | a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat | politically** *the forced adoption of children of politically suspect citizens*

suspect *noun*

ADJ. **chief, main, number one, prime** *She has been identified as the prime suspect.* **| likely, obvious, possible, potential | usual | murder, terrorist**

VERB + SUSPECT **have, identify (sb as)** *The police have several suspects.* **| arrest, detain, hold, round up** *The army rounded up all the usual terrorist suspects.* **| interrogate, interview, question | release | extradite, hand over**

PREP. **~ for** *The letter makes him a possible suspect for her murder.* **| ~ in** *Two men were arrested as suspects in the bombing.*

suspect *verb*

1 believe that sth may happen/be true

ADV. **strongly | rather** *I rather suspect they were trying to get rid of me.* **| rightly, wrongly | all along, always** *These revelations only prove what I suspected all along.*

VERB + SUSPECT **begin to | have reason to** *She had no reason to suspect that Sylvia had not been telling the truth.*

PHRASES **be widely suspected** *It was widely suspected that the cadets had been acting on orders.*

2 believe sb is guilty of sth

ADV. **rightly, wrongly**

PREP. **of** *He was wrongly suspected of the crime.*

VERB + SUSPECT **have grounds to, have reason to**

PHRASES **have grounds for suspecting sb/sth**

suspend *verb*

ADV. **immediately | indefinitely | temporarily** *Funding for the new building has been temporarily suspended.* **| effectively**

VERB + SUSPEND **agree to, decide to, vote to** *The government has decided to suspend production at the country's biggest lead plant.* **| threaten to | be forced to**

PHRASES **the power to suspend sth** *The EU should have the power to suspend subsidy payments to farmers who pollute the environment.*

suspense *noun*

ADJ. **heart-pounding, nail-biting, unbearable**

VERB + SUSPENSE **keep sb in** *Don't keep us in suspense?did you get the job or not?* **| break** *Don't look at the end of the book yet?you'll break the suspense.* **| build (up), create | bear** *She couldn't bear the suspense a moment longer.*

SUSPENSE + VERB **be killing sb** *(informal) I don't get the results till next week, and the suspense is killing me.*

SUSPENSE + NOUN **story**

PREP. **~ about** *They were kept in suspense about their possibility of joining the expedition for several weeks.*

PHRASES **an agony of suspense** *I suffered agonies of suspense in silence.* **| a state of suspense**

suspension *noun*

1 **stopping of activity**

ADJ. **total | brief, temporary | lengthy, long | immediate | automatic** *Another caution will result in his automatic suspension from the final.*

VERB + SUSPENSION **give sb, impose, order** *A four-day suspension was imposed on her.* **| get, incur** *He incurred a suspension on reduced pay.* **| appeal against**

PREP. **under ~** *a detective under suspension from the Metropolitan Police* **| ~ from** *his suspension from the club*

PHRASES **a period of suspension** *The athlete could face a lengthy period of suspension if found guilty.*

2 **on a vehicle**

ADJ. **front, rear | active, computer-controlled, independent, self-levelling | car, etc.**

VERB + SUSPENSION **be fitted with, have** *The new model is fitted with computer-controlled suspension.*

SUSPENSION + NOUN **system**

suspicion *noun*

1 **belief that sb has done sth wrong or that sth is true**

ADJ. **strong** *There is strong suspicion on both sides that information is being withheld.* | **the slightest, vague** *I don't think he had the slightest suspicion anything was wrong.* | **awful, dark, horrible, nagging, nasty, sneaking, terrible, worst** *I have a nasty suspicion he's organized a surprise party for me. My worst suspicions were realized when I received my redundancy notice.* | **lingering** | **growing** | **groundless, unfounded** *Our suspicions turned out to be groundless.* | **widespread** | **initial**

VERB + SUSPICION **entertain, harbour, have** *We had our suspicions as to who did it, but nothing could be proved.* | **be/come/fall under** *He fell under suspicion of tax evasion.* | **arouse, cast, cause, create, fuel, give rise to, invite, raise, sow** *Parked vehicles that arouse suspicion should be reported to the police. information that casts suspicion on one of the most powerful figures in the party Their suspicions were further fuelled when both men failed to turn up to the appointment. odd behaviour that invites suspicion* | **avoid** | **confide, share** *She confided her suspicions to no one but her diary.* | **confirm, justify** *A telephone call confirmed my worst suspicions.* | **realize** | **allay, dispel** *She was anxious to allay any suspicion that she had married for money.*

SUSPICION + VERB **exist** *The suspicion exists that Harries is stealing money from the company safe.* | **linger, remain** | **grow** | **attach to sb, fall on sb** *Strong suspicion attached to the victim's boyfriend.*

PREP. **above/beyond ~** *They thought the head teacher was beyond suspicion.* | **on ~ of** *arrested on suspicion of bribery* | **~ about/as to/concerning** *his suspicions about the candidate's background* | **~ against** *Suspicions against the former prime minister remain.*

PHRASES **the finger of suspicion** *The finger of suspicion pointed to Gilbert Cash, a close friend of the victim.* | **grounds for suspicion** *The police must have reasonable grounds for suspicion before they can get a search warrant.* | **an object of suspicion** *Boys were an immediate object of suspicion to her.* | **under a cloud of suspicion** *He ended his athletics career under a cloud of suspicion when he refused to take a drug test.*

2 **absence of trust**

ADJ. **considerable, deep, grave, great | mutual** *an atmosphere of mutual suspicion*

VERB + SUSPICION **regard/treat/view sb/sth with** *They viewed the new scheme with great suspicion.*

3 **small amount of sth**

ADJ. **faint, slightest** *Her remarks lacked even the faintest suspicion of humour.*

PREP. **~ of** *His mouth quivered in the suspicion of a smile.*

suspicious *adj.*

1 **not trusting sb**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow** *I think they're starting to get suspicious.* **| remain | make sb** *Something about her smile made him suspicious.*

ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, profoundly, very** *She remained deeply suspicious of computers.* **| increasingly | a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat** *His voice grew faintly suspicious.* **| immediately, instantly | naturally** *I have a naturally suspicious mind.* **| rightly** *British voters are rightly suspicious of attempts to save money in the area of education.*

PREP. **about** *They were somewhat suspicious about her past.* **| of** *She was highly suspicious of his motives.*

2 **making you feel that sth is wrong**

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound** *We have to carry on as usual or it would look suspicious.* **| consider sth, find sth, regard sth as, treat sth as** *I find it very suspicious that he left halfway through the morning. Police are treating both fires as suspicious.*

ADV. **highly, very** *acting in a highly suspicious manner* **| not remotely** *Are you sure you haven't seen anything even remotely suspicious?* **| a bit, rather, somewhat**

PHRASES **see/hear anything suspicious** *Inform the police immediately if you see anything suspicious.*

sustain *verb*

ADV. **long** *The soil was so badly eroded it could no longer sustain crop production.* **| indefinitely | still**

VERB + SUSTAIN **be able/unable to, can/could | help (to) | be difficult to, be hard to, be impossible to** *This relationship would be very difficult to sustain.*

Swahili *noun* > Note at LANGUAGE

swallow *verb*

1 **food/drink, etc.**

ADV. **hastily, quickly | accidentally** *She accidentally swallowed a glass bead.* **| easily** *Liquid food may be more easily swallowed.* **| down** *She swallowed down her breakfast in a hurry.*

PHRASES **swallow sth whole** *Most snakes swallow their prey whole.*

2 **move your throat muscles**

ADV. **deeply, hard | convulsively, drily, nervously, painfully** *She swallowed convulsively, determined not to cry.* **| back** *He swallowed back the lump in his throat.*

VERB + SWALLOW **have to** *She had to swallow hard before she could speak.*

swan *noun*

ADJ. **black, white | graceful**

SWAN + VERB **glide, swim | fly | land | hiss**

swap *noun*

ADJ. **straight | job | spy**

VERB + SWAP **do, make** *Let's do a straight swap?your guitar for my bike.* **| agree on/to**

SWAP + NOUN **deal** *The football managers agreed on swap deals involving their star players.*

PREP. **~ between** *a spy swap made between East and West Germany* **| ~ with** *I did a swap with my brother.*

sway *verb*

1 **from side to side/backwards and forwards**

ADV. **gently, lightly, a little, slightly | alarmingly, dangerously, precariously** *The stage swayed alarmingly under their weight.* **| dizzily, drunkenly, unsteadily | back and forth, backwards and forwards, from side to side** *The cow's udder swayed from side to side as she walked along.*

VERB + SWAY **begin to**

PREP. **in** *The curtains swayed gently in the breeze.*

2 **influence sb/sth**

ADV. **easily** *He will not easily be swayed by argument.*

swear word *noun*

ADJ. **bad, strong** *That's one of the strongest swear words in Spanish.* **| mild**

QUANT. **string**

VERB + SWEAR WORD **use | mouth, mutter** *He mouthed a swear word at me through the window.* **| leave out** *I left out the swear words when I told the boss what the staff had said about him.*

swear *verb*

1 **use bad language**

ADV. **loudly | quietly, silently, softly, under your breath | viciously, violently**

VERB + SWEAR **hear sb** *He heard her swear under her breath.*

PREP. **at** *He swore loudly at her and left.*

2 **make a serious promise**

ADV. **solemnly** *He swore solemnly that he would never hit her again.* **| on oath**

VERB + SWEAR **be prepared to** *I would be prepared to swear on oath that they didn't see me.* **| make sb** *He made her swear on the Bible that she wouldn't leave him.*

PREP. **by** *I swear by Almighty God to tell the truth.* **| to** *I swear to you, I don't know anything.*

PHRASES **swear sb to secrecy/silence** *We were all sworn to secrecy about the plan.*

sweat *noun*

ADJ. **heavy | fine, light | clammy** *My shirt stuck to the clammy sweat on my back.* **| cold | stale** *The room smelled of stale sweat.* **| good** *We worked up a good sweat carrying the boxes outside.*

QUANT. **bead, drop, trickle**

VERB + SWEAT **break into, break out in/into** *She broke out in a cold sweat when she saw the spider.* **| work up | wake (up) in | bring sb out in | be bathed/covered/ drenched/soaked in, be beaded/streaming with, be dripping (with), be slippery/wet with, glisten with** *The workmen were streaming with sweat. His forehead was dripping sweat.* **| mop, wipe** *He mopped the sweat from his brow.*

SWEAT + VERB **appear, break out** *His hands trembled and sweat broke out all over his body.* **| glisten, stand out** *sweat glistening on her forehead Sweat stood out on his shoulders.* **| bead sth, drip/pour/run from/into/off sth, run/trickle down sth** *Sweat beaded her face. Sweat was running down his back.* **| soak sth**

SWEAT + NOUN **gland**

PREP. **in a ~** *She woke up in a cold sweat.*

sweat *verb*

ADV. **freely, heavily, a lot, profusely | slightly | off** *He's trying to sweat off a few pounds in the gym.*

VERB + SWEAT **begin to | make sb** *The heat was making us sweat.*

PREP. **from** *We were sweating profusely from the exertion of moving the furniture.* **| with** *He awoke with a pounding heart, sweating with fear.*

PHRASES **sweat buckets, sweat like a pig** *(both informal) After two hours of digging he was sweating like a pig.*

sweater *noun*

ADJ. **chunky, heavy, thick | light, thin | baggy, sloppy | warm | high-necked, polo-neck, roll-neck, turtleneck, V-neck | hand-knitted, knitted | cashmere, wool, woollen | cricket | Aran, Fair Isle**

VERB + SWEATER **pull on | peel off | knit** > Special page at CLOTHES

sweaty *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, smell | become, get**

ADV. **really, very | all** *Ugh! You're all sweaty and horrible!* **| a bit, rather**

PREP. **from** *Her forehead was sweaty from the pain she was in.* **| with** *feeling sweaty with embarrassment*

sweep *noun*

ADJ. **broad, great, long, wide** *The house overlooks the great sweep of the St Lawrence river.* | **grand, grandiose** *He dismissed his assistant with a grandiose sweep of his hand.* | **comprehensive** *Her eyes made a comprehensive sweep of the room.* | **upward** *The upward sweep of her hair was held in place by a comb.* | **elegant, fine, graceful**

VERB + SWEEP **make, take** *We made a wide sweep south to the River Dee.*

PREP. **in one ~** *(figurative) Thousands of jobs were lost in one broad sweep.* | **with a ~** *with a sweep of his arm*

sweet *adj.*

1 tasting like sugar/smelling pleasant

VERBS **be, smell, taste** *The air smelled sweet and clean.* **| make sth | find sth** *I found the dessert a bit sweet for my taste.*

ADV. **extremely, very | a bit, quite, rather, slightly | enough** *Is the tea sweet enough for you?* **| sickly** *an overpowering, sickly sweet smell*

2 nice

VERBS **be, look | keep sb** *(informal) He'd promised her a new car, just to keep her sweet* (= keep her in a good mood).

ADV. **awfully, really, terribly, very | quite, rather**

PREP. **to** *She was really sweet to me.*

PHRASES **sweet little** *a rather sweet little cottage*

sweet *noun*

ADJ. **chewy, sugary | boiled**

QUANT. **bag, box, packet, tube**

VERB + SWEET **eat, suck** *sucking a boiled sweet*

SWEET + NOUN **shop**

sweetness *noun*

1 **sweet smell/taste**

ADJ. **natural | cloying, sickly | lingering** *the lingering sweetness of incense*

QUANT. **hint** *This is a full-bodied wine with just a hint of sweetness.*

VERB + SWEETNESS **taste**

2 **pleasantness**

ADJ. **exquisite, great | saccharine** (= false) *She smiled with saccharine sweetness.*

VERB + SWEETNESS **taste** *to taste the sweetness of military success*

PHRASES **all sweetness and light** *People think she's all sweetness and light, but she's actually got an awful temper.*

swell *noun*

1 **movement of the surface of the sea**

ADJ. **heavy | gentle, slight | 10-foot, 20-foot, etc. | Atlantic, ocean** *bobbing up and down like a small boat in a heavy ocean swell*

SWELL + VERB **break, come/roll in, lift sb/sth, surge up** *The Atlantic swell surged up under them.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The trawler rolled wildly in the heavy swell.* **| on/with the ~** *The boat rose and fell with the swell.*

2 **curve in sth**

ADJ. **firm, gentle, soft, warm**

PREP. **~ of** *the gentle swell of her breasts*

swell *verb*

ADV. **badly** *His sprained ankle had swollen badly.* **| slightly | up** *Her feet swelled up after the long walk to the top of the hill.*

PREP. **with** *Her legs had swollen with the heat.*

swelling *noun*

ADJ. **marked** *There is a marked swelling of the lymph nodes.* **| slight**

VERB + SWELLING **reduce**

SWELLING + VERB **occur | go down, subside**

swerve *noun*

ADJ. **sudden** *The car made a sudden swerve to the left.*

VERB + SWERVE **make**

swerve *verb*

ADV. **sharply, violently | suddenly | away**

PREP. **across** *The car veered out of control and swerved across the road.* **| into** *A lorry suddenly swerved into her path.* **| off** *The vehicle swerved off the road.*

PHRASES **swerve to avoid sb/sth** *The car swerved sharply to avoid the bus.*

swift *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **incredibly, remarkably, very** *He made a remarkably swift recovery.* **| fairly**

swig *noun*

ADJ. **deep, good, long | quick**

VERB + SWIG **have, take**

PREP. **~ from** *He took a deep swig from the bottle.* **| ~ of** *She had a quick swig of water and then set off again.*

swim *noun*

ADJ. **evening, morning, regular | quick** *How about a quick swim before breakfast?*

VERB + SWIM **go for, have, take** *She got up early and went for a swim.*

PREP. **for a ~** *Are you joining us for a swim?*

swim *verb*

ADV. **strongly, vigorously** *A water vole swam vigorously upstream.* **| quickly, rapidly | slowly | around, ashore, back, downstream, out, upstream** *Exhausted, they swam ashore.*

VERB + SWIM **can/could | learn to | teach sb to**

PREP. **across** *swimming across the river* **| in** *swimming in the sea* **| to** *We swam out to the boat.* **| towards** *She swam back towards the shore.*

PHRASES **go swimming**

swimmer *noun*

ADJ. **good, keen, strong** *She's a strong swimmer.* **| poor | champion, competitive, Olympic**

swing *noun*

1 change in public opinion, sb's mood, etc.

ADJ. **big, dramatic, huge, sharp, violent** *violent swings in policy* **| modest, small | 10%, etc. | adverse, negative** *The Conservatives suffered an adverse swing of 6%.* **| sudden, wild** *his sudden swings of mood* **| late** *a late swing towards the Tories* **| national | electoral | mood** *She suffers from severe mood swings.*

VERB + SWING **need, require** *The party needs a swing of only 2.5% to win the seat.* **| represent** *This represents a swing of 14% towards Labour.* **| suffer (from)**

PREP. **~ against** *a dramatic swing against the socialists* **| ~ away from** *the swing away from science in the sixth form* **| ~ from, ~ in** *a sharp swing in the attitudes of many economists* **| ~ to/towards/in favour of** *signs of a late swing to the Democrats*

2 swinging movement

ADJ. **wild | backward, forward | golf | practice**

VERB + SWING **do, make, take** *the technique for making the perfect golf swing* **| change | practise** *golfers practising their swings*

PREP. **~ at** *He took a wild swing at the ball.*

3 swinging seat

VERB + SWING **go/play on** *Some kids were playing on the swings.*

PREP. **on a/the ~**

swing *verb*

1 **move backwards and forwards/from side to side**

ADV. **gently, slowly | violently, wildly** *She lashed out, her arm swinging wildly.* **| back and forth, backwards and forwards, from side to side, to and fro** *The pendulum swung slowly backwards and forwards.*

PREP. **from** *I could see him swinging from the branch of a large tree.*

2 **move smoothly**

VERB + SWING **slowly | suddenly | sharply** *The road swung sharply round.* **| across, around/round, away, back, down, off, up** *Hearing a sarcastic note in his voice, she swung around to face him.*

VERB + SWING **let sth** *She let the door swing shut behind her.*

PREP. **from** *She swung down from the tree in one easy movement.* **| into** *He swung up into the saddle and rode off.* **| towards** *Niccolo ` swung towards her.*

PHRASES **swing open/shut/to**

3 **change quickly**

ADV. **rapidly | suddenly | wildly** *The balance of power swung wildly from one party to the other.* **| heavily** *Opinion swung heavily to the left.*

PREP. **from, to** *Her mood could swing rapidly from gloom to exhilaration.*

swipe *noun*

ADJ. **good | playful | side**

VERB + SWIPE **take** *She took a playful swipe at her brother.*

PREP. **~ at** *The article takes a side swipe at the teachers.*

switch *noun*

1 small button/lever

ADJ. **mains, master, power** *The mains switch is in the cupboard under the stairs.* | **electric, electrical** | **dimmer, off, on, on-off, time, timer** *We fitted dimmer switches in all the bedrooms. I couldn't find the off switch on the remote control.* | **ignition, intercom, light**

VERB + SWITCH **flick, flip, press, pull, throw, turn off/on** *Someone threw a switch and the electricity went off.*

SWITCH + VERB **activate sth, control sth, operate sth** *This switch controls the heating system.*

PREP. **by (a) ~** *The light operates by time switch.* | **on a ~** *The heater is on a timer switch.* | **~ for** *the switch for the air conditioning*

PHRASES **at the flick of a switch** *in the days before electricity was available at the flick of a switch* | **a bank of switches** *The pilot reached across to the huge bank of switches on his right and flicked a couple.*

2 change that sb makes

ADJ. **abrupt, immediate, sudden** | **big** | **complete** | **tactical** *The team's manager made a shrewd tactical switch in defence.*

VERB + SWITCH **make**

PREP. **~ away from** *There will be no overnight switch away from old voting habits.* | **~ back to, ~ between** *the recent switches between direct and indirect taxation* | **~ from** *her switch from full-time to part-time work* | **~ in** *their abrupt switch in allegiance* | **~ (over) to** *theatre directors who make the switch over to films*

switch *verb*

ADV. **easily, readily | suddenly** *My mind suddenly switched back to my conversation with Jeremy.* **| around/round, back, over**

VERB + SWITCH **decide to** *He decided to switch tactics.*

PREP. **between** *The remote control allows you to switch easily between TV channels.* **| (away) from** *He switched his allegiance from the British to the French.* **| to, with** *We asked them if they would switch places with us.*

switchboard *noun*

ADJ. **busy | telephone**

VERB + SWITCHBOARD **call, ring | jam, swamp** *The BBC switchboard was jammed with furious calls.* **| be/work on, operate**

SWITCHBOARD + NOUN **operator**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *the girl on the switchboard* **| through a/the ~** *All calls must pass through the switchboard.*

swollen *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get** *Her legs had got swollen from standing up all day.* **| remain**

ADV. **badly, grossly, hideously, horribly, very** *His ankle is bruised and quite badly swollen. Her face was still horribly swollen.* **| all** *Her eyes were all red and swollen from crying.* **| a bit, quite, rather, slightly**

swoop *verb*

ADV. **low** *An eagle swooped low over the trees.* **| suddenly | down, in**

PREP. **on, over, towards** *(figurative) Customs officers swooped on several houses last night looking for drugs.*

sword *noun*

ADJ. long, short | double-edged, two-edged *(both figurative) The potential financial boost is a double-edged sword* (= has advantages and disadvantages). **| ceremonial, dress | Samurai**

VERB + SWORD be armed with, carry, wear | draw, unsheathe | brandish, wield | thrust *I thrust my sword into his chest.* **| sheathe**

SWORD + NOUN arm | belt | blade | stroke

syllable *noun*

ADJ. **final, first, last, middle, second, third, etc. | accented, stressed, strong, tonic | unstressed, weak**

VERB + SYLLABLE **consist of, contain, have** *words that have three or more syllables* **| pronounce | put the accent/stress on, stress** *Put the stress on the second syllable.* **| split a word into** *She split the word up into syllables so that he could have a go at spelling it.*

PHRASES **stress falls/is on a syllable** *Normally, the stress falls on the first syllable of a word.* **| a word of one, two, etc. syllables** *You'll have to spell it out to him, using words of one syllable* (= explain it in simple language).

syllabus *noun*

ADJ. **formal, official, prescribed | exam/examination, A level, GCSE, etc. | college, primary, school, secondary school, undergraduate, university | first-year, second-year, etc. | history, mathematics, writing, etc. | narrow, wide | overloaded**

VERB + SYLLABUS **design, develop, devise, draw up, plan, work out, write | follow, offer, teach, use** *The courses do not follow the syllabus of any particular examination board. Several schools in Britain already teach the baccalaureate syllabus.* **| follow, do, study** *Students do different syllabuses according to their ability.* **| change, extend, reform, revise, widen** *the need to revise the history syllabus* **| cover, get through** *It was impossible to cover the overloaded syllabus in a year.* **| stick to | depart from** *There is little time to depart from the syllabus.* **| fit/ plan sth into, integrate sth into/with** *How can computer skills be integrated into the syllabus?* **| be based on | fit in with**

SYLLABUS + VERB **contain sth, cover sth, include sth** *Does the syllabus cover modern literature?*

SYLLABUS + NOUN **content, design**

PREP. **from ~** *questions from last year's syllabus* **| in a/the ~** *Let's include that in this year's syllabus.* **| on a/the ~** *Is geometry on the GCSE syllabus?* **| under a/the ~** *This period of history was not examined under the old syllabus.* **| ~ for** *some syllabuses for basic courses in geography* **| ~ in** *the exam syllabuses in arts subjects*

symbol *noun*

1 image/object/event that is a sign of sth

ADJ. **clear, dramatic, perfect, potent, powerful, supreme, ultimate** *The Berlin wall was the supreme symbol of the Cold War.* | **universal** *The dove is a universal symbol of peace.* | **outward, physical, visual** *The company car is an outward symbol of the employee's status.* | **ancient, traditional** | **national** | **cultural, military, political** | **divine, religious, sacred** | **Christian, Hindu, etc.** | **fertility, phallic, sexual, virility** *The villagers took fertility symbols into the fields to ensure a good harvest.* | **sex** (= a person famous for being attractive) *He is not most people's idea of a sex symbol.* | **status** *A stressful job can actually be a status symbol.*

VERB + SYMBOL **adopt sth as, regard sth as, see sth as, use sth as** *Eggs are seen as the symbol of new life.*

2 letter/sign that has a particular meaning

ADJ. **identifying** *All GM products carry an identifying symbol.* | **abstract, geometric, geometrical** | **graphic, written** | **chemical, Chinese, linguistic, mathematical, musical, phonemic, phonetic, punctuation** *A list of phonetic symbols is given in the front of the dictionary.*

VERB + SYMBOL **bear, be marked with, have** *The coin bears a Jewish symbol. The bottle had a skull and crossbones symbol on it.* | **display, show, use** *Hotels that show this symbol offer activities for children.* | **look out for, see** *Always look out for the special ABTA symbol at your travel agent's. You can use your tokens wherever you see this symbol.* | **decipher, interpret, understand**

SYMBOL + VERB **denote sth, indicate sth, mean sth, represent sth** *What does this little symbol mean?*

PREP. **in ~s** *a message written in symbols* | **~ for** *O is the chemical symbol for oxygen.*

symbolic *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become** *The case became symbolic of US racial tension.* **| regard sth as, see sth as** *His refusal to accept the honour was seen as highly symbolic.*

ADV. **deeply, heavily, highly, very** *This is a gruesome and heavily symbolic tale.* **| purely** *The role of monarch is a purely symbolic one.* **| largely, mainly | somehow**

PREP. **of** *These two objects are symbolic of life and death.*

symbolism *noun*

ADJ. **expressive, rich | sound** *Sound symbolism means that we can often guess the meaning of a word from its sound.* **| mythological, pagan, religious | political | phallic, sexual**

VERB + SYMBOLISM **be full of, be rich in, contain** *Christian churches are still full of pagan symbolism.* **| interpret, understand**

symmetrical *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become**

ADV. **highly** *highly symmetrical crystals* **| exactly, fully, perfectly, quite, wholly | almost | broadly, fairly** *The plan of the building is broadly symmetrical.*

symmetry *noun*

ADJ. **perfect, pleasing**

VERB + SYMMETRY **break, destroy** *The trees break the symmetry of the painting.*

PREP. **~ between** *the symmetry between different forces*

PHRASES **an axis/a line of symmetry**

sympathetic *adj.*

1 **showing you understand sb's feelings**

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become | find sb** *I found the doctors quite sympathetic.*

ADV. **deeply, extremely, genuinely, immensely, truly, very** *a patient and deeply sympathetic man He sounded genuinely sympathetic.* **| largely | fairly, pretty, quite | suitably** *She made suitably sympathetic noises down the phone.*

PREP. **about** *My boss is being very sympathetic about my problems.* **| to** *They were extremely sympathetic to my plight.* **| towards** *I did not feel sympathetic towards them.*

2 **in agreement with sb/sth**

VERBS **appear, be, seem**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, highly, very | entirely | less than | broadly, generally, quite | politically**

PREP. **to** *The government is broadly sympathetic to our ideas.*

sympathize *verb*

1 **understand sb's feelings/problems**

ADV. **deeply, really** *I sympathize deeply with his family.*

VERB + SYMPATHIZE **can/could** *I can really sympathize with John.* **| be easy to, be hard not to** *It is hard not to sympathize with her dilemma.*

PREP. **with** *We sympathized with the bereaved family.*

2 **agree with sb**

ADV. **entirely, fully**

PREP. **with** *I entirely sympathize with this view.*

sympathy *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, deep, genuine, great, heartfelt, real | scant | general, popular, public, widespread**

VERB + SYMPATHY **be full of, feel, have** *She seemed to feel some sympathy for the patients.* **| express, extend, give sb, offer (sb), show (sb)** *She expressed her deepest sympathy for him. She says I haven't given her enough sympathy. We extend our sympathy to the families of the victims.* **| expend, waste | demand, want** *I don't want your sympathy!* **| deserve | arouse, attract, earn, elicit, engage, evoke, excite, gain, get, rouse, win** *Their plight aroused considerable public sympathy. He didn't get much sympathy from anyone.* **| lose**

SYMPATHY + VERB **go out to sb, lie with sb** *Our deepest sympathy goes out to his wife and family. My sympathy lies with his wife.*

PREP. **in ~ with** *Nurses came out on strike in sympathy with the doctors.* **| out of ~** *She married him more out of sympathy than love.* **| with ~** *Desmond eyed her anguished face with sympathy.* **| ~ for** *He has a total lack of sympathy for young people.* **| ~ to** *The government showed sympathy to their cause.* **| ~ towards** *He acted with some sympathy towards his victim.* **| ~ with** *She had every sympathy with him.*

PHRASES **a feeling of sympathy, full of sympathy, have every/little sympathy for sb, a lack of sympathy, a pang of sympathy** *I felt a pang of sympathy for her.*

symphony *noun*

ADJ. **Beethoven's 5th, Dvorak's 7th, etc. | C major, D minor, etc.**

VERB + SYMPHONY **compose, write | conduct, perform, play** *Bruckner's Symphony No. 5, conducted by Hugh Wolff*

SYMPHONY + NOUN **orchestra** *the Chicago Symphony Orchestra* **| concert**

PHRASES **symphony No. 2, etc.**

symptom *noun*

ADJ. **characteristic, classic, common, typical | minor, secondary | chronic | acute | intermittent, recurrent | dangerous, distressing, potentially fatal, serious, severe, unpleasant | mild | visual, visible** *These virus infections display obvious visual symptoms.* | **behavioural, mental, neurotic, physical, physiological, psychiatric, psychological, psychosomatic, schizophrenic** *the physical symptoms that are the result of stress* | **abdominal, respiratory, urinary | allergic, asthmatic, flu, flu-like, menopausal, stress, withdrawal**

VERB + SYMPTOM **display, exhibit, experience, have, present with** *(medical),* **report, show, suffer (from)** *She had all the classic symptoms of the disorder. The patient was admitted presenting with flu-like symptoms.* | **develop, get** *Not all carriers of the disease develop symptoms.* | **bring about, cause, produce | aggravate, exacerbate** *Cigarettes can aggravate the symptoms of a cold.* | **ignore** *He had been ignoring the symptoms for years.* | **detect, diagnose, identify, interpret, recognize** *teaching nursing staff how to identify and treat the symptoms of poisoning* | **control, reduce, relieve, suppress, treat**

SYMPTOM + VERB **appear, arise, develop, occur | persist, recur** *If symptoms persist, consult your doctor.* | **worsen | disappear**

PHRASES **the onset of symptoms** *40 per cent of patients were treated within three hours of the onset of symptoms.* | **symptom free** *after two symptom free years*

synchronize *verb*

ADV. **carefully | exactly, precisely**

PREP. **with** *The timing of the gun was precisely synchronized with the turning of the plane's propeller.*

syndicate *noun*

ADJ. **crime, criminal, drug/drugs, smuggling | banking, insurance | lottery, pools**

VERB + SYNDICATE **form | run | join**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I'm in a lottery syndicate at work.*

PHRASES **a member of a syndicate**

syndrome *noun*

ADJ. **acute | clinical**

VERB + SYNDROME **have, suffer from | develop | cause, produce | diagnose, recognize | be known as** *This phenomenon has become known as the 'Californian syndrome'.*

SYNDROME + VERB **affect sb, be present in sb, occur** *This syndrome mostly affects women in their forties.*

synonymous *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain | make sth** *His deeds had made his name synonymous with victory.* **| consider sth, regard sth as, see sth as, treat sth as**

ADV. **completely, exactly | almost, largely, more or less, roughly, virtually**

PREP. **with** *Until the late eighteenth century, ‘opera’ was almost synonymous with Italian opera.*

syringe *noun*

ADJ. **clean, sterile | used** *a beach scattered with used syringes* **| disposable | hypodermic**

VERB + SYRINGE **fill, prepare | draw sth into** *The doctor drew a dose of morphia into the syringe.* **| share**

SYRINGE + NOUN **exchange** *a syringe exchange scheme*

system *noun*

1 **set of ideas/rules for organizing sth**

ADJ. **current, existing** *looking to replace the existing system* | **modern** | **old-fashioned, outdated** | **traditional** | **standard** | **complex, complicated, elaborate, intricate, sophisticated** | **simple** | **comprehensive** | **coherent** | **effective, efficient** | **viable, workable** | **inefficient, wasteful** | **flexible** | **rigid** | **stable** | **foolproof** | **imperfect, perfect** | **unique** | **ad hoc** | **centralized, decentralized** | **closed, open** *a closed system with a rigidly defined set of choices* | **bureaucratic** | **hierarchical** | **authoritarian, oppressive, repressive** | **equitable, fair** | **corrupt, unjust** | **bankrupt** *The governor referred to a prison system that was bankrupt of compassion.* | **state** *The law applies to schools within the state system.* | **local government, parliamentary, political** | **electoral, voting** | **banking, economic, monetary** | **tax, taxation** | **educational, examination, school, university** | **court, judicial, justice, legal, penal, prison** | **benefit/benefits, national/social insurance, social security, welfare** | **care, health (care)** | **rail, railway, road, subway, transport** | **communication** | **warning** | **security** | **back-up, support** | **accounting, administrative** | **disciplinary** | **agricultural** | **commercial, market** | **cultural, social** | **grammatical, language** | **classification, classificatory, filing** | **belief, value** | **capitalist, caste, communist** | **multi-party, two-party** | **two-tier**

VERB + SYSTEM **build, create, design, develop, devise, set up** | **adopt, apply, implement, introduce** *implementing a new system of stock control* | **advocate** | **join** | **be part of** *They are all part of the corrupt system we need to change.* | **manage, operate, run** | **manipulate, play, use** *playing the legal system to his own advantage* | **organize** *How is the sytem organized?* | **adapt, change, transform** | **tinker with** | **improve, modernize, overhaul, refine, reform, reorganize, simplify, streamline, strengthen** *modernizing their judicial system* | **perfect** | **perpetuate** *perpetuating an unjust system* | **clog up** *a backlog of cases clogging up the system* | **destabilize, disrupt, undermine, weaken** *attempts to disrupt the rail system* | **dismantle** | **abandon, do away with, scrap** | **destroy, overthrow** | **replace** | **restore** | **criticize, fight, rebel against** *She spent her years at school fighting the system.* | **defend, support** | **beat, buck** *You can never beat the system!* | **bypass** *trying to bypass the bureaucratic system* | **blame** *It's not your fault?blame the system.*

SYSTEM + VERB **exist** | **be based on sth, rest on sth** *Every political system rests on certain fundamentals.* | **be aimed at sth, be geared to sth** | **allow sth, enable**

sth *This system allows you to study at your own speed.* **| offer sth, provide sth | be in operation, be operational, function, work** *proving that the system works effectively* **| break down, collapse**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *at another point in the transport system* **| under a/the ~** *Under the new system, all children will be monitored by a senior social worker.* **| ~ for** *devising an appropriate system for presenting the required information*

2 **group of things/parts that work together**

ADJ. **sophisticated | computer, computer-based, electronic, manual, mechanical | audio, sound, stereo | satellite | air-conditioning, alarm, electronic mail, exhaust, heating, life-support, phone, plumbing, public address, sprinkler, telephone, ventilation | river, road**

VERB + SYSTEM **build, create, develop | improve, streamline | install** *For this month only, installing the system is free.*

SYSTEM + VERB **function, operate, work | break down, fail** *The air-conditioning system failed.*

PREP. **in/with a/the ~** *a fault in the sound system*

3 **the body, or parts of it that work together**

ADJ. **auditory, circulatory, digestive, immune, (central) nervous, reproductive, respiratory, sensory, visual**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *a valve in the circulatory system*

PHRASES **a shock to the system** *Returning to work after a long break can be a terrible shock to the system.*

4 **workings of a computer**

ADJ. **advanced, powerful | interactive | online | compatible, incompatible | computer, PC | operating, operational | database, management, information | processing, recognition, retrieval** *an information retrieval system* **| server, software | parallel**

VERB + SYSTEM **install | boot up, reboot** *Just reboot the system and try again.* **|**

build, design, develop *designing a voice recognition system* | **launch**

SYSTEM + VERB **run** *The system runs on this workstation.* | **crash, fail, go down** *The entire computer system went down.*

SYSTEM + NOUN **software**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *faults in the data processing system*

table *noun*

1 **piece of furniture**

ADJ. **big, high, huge, large, long | little, low, small | circular, rectangular, round, square | drop-leaf, fold-away, folding, trestle** *We arranged the party food on a trestle table in the garden.* | **baize-covered, glass-topped,** white-clothed, white-napped | **glass, plastic, wooden | polished, scrubbed | ramshackle, rickety, rough | empty** *We found an empty table at the back of the restaurant.* | **bare | corner, window** *We'll take the corner table near the bar, please.* | **dining (room), kitchen** *She often does her homework at the kitchen table.* | **breakfast, dinner, lunch** *We never discuss politics at the breakfast table.* | **conference, negotiating** *They spent hours around the negotiating table.* | **billiard, ping-pong, pool, snooker, table-tennis | makeshift** *We turned the box upside down and used it as a makeshift table.*

VERB + TABLE **sit around/round, sit (down) at** *They were all five of them sitting round the kitchen table.* | **get up from, leave** *He left the table in a hurry.* | **lay, set** *Please lay the table for six.* | **clear** *You clear the table and I'll wash the dishes.* | **book, reserve** *We booked a table in our favourite restaurant for 8 p.m.*

TABLE + NOUN **decorations | edge**

PREP. **across the ~** *She leaned across the table towards him.* | **around/round the ~** *We gathered round the table to hear his news.* | **at the ~** *to sit down at the table* | **on the ~** *She put the vase on the table.* | **over the ~** *They flirted over the dinner table.* | **under the ~** *The potato rolled under the table.*

PHRASES **the centre/middle of the table, the edge/end/head of the table** *My father always sits at the head of the table.* | **a round table discussion/meeting, round table talks** *All parties took part in the round table discussions on the peace process.*

2 **list of facts/figures**

ADJ. **statistical | league** *The league table shows the Danish team in first place with eight points.*

VERB + TABLE **compile, draw (up) | see** *See Table XII for population figures.*

TABLE + VERB **show sth**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He showed the price fluctuations in a statistical table. United are second in the table.*

PHRASES **the bottom/top of the table, mid-table** *The team will be lucky to finish the season mid-table.*

tablet *noun*

1 **pill**

ADJ. **Ecstasy, paracetamol, saccharin, sleeping, vitamin, etc.** *Take two paracetamol tablets with water.*

VERB + TABLET **take**

PHRASES **in tablet form** *The drug is now available in tablet and capsule form.*

2 **slab**

ADJ. **clay, stone, wax, etc. | commemorative, memorial** *We had a memorial tablet put up on the church wall.*

tabloid *noun*

ADJ. **daily, Sunday | national | popular**

VERB + TABLOID **read**

TABLOID + NOUN **journalism, newspaper, press** *He believes that the tabloid press has behaved disgracefully.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *I despair when I read what passes for news in some of the tabloids.*

taboo *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain | consider sth, regard sth as** *Sex is considered taboo as a topic for discussion.*

ADV. **strictly** *The subject of death was strictly taboo in their society.*

PREP. **to** *Such work was taboo to women.*

taboo *noun*

ADJ. **rigid, strict | deep-seated | cultural, gender, religious, sexual, social | incest**

VERB + TABOO **observe** *his failure to observe the tribe's rigid taboos* **| break, flout, violate | break down** *the problem of breaking down deep-seated cultural taboos* **| reinforce**

TABOO + NOUN **subject**

PREP. **~ about** *the taboo about religion in British society* **| ~ against** *the taboo against marrying a foreigner* **| ~ on** *reinforcing their taboos on sexuality* **| ~ surrounding** *the taboos surrounding menstruation*

tack *noun*

1 way of achieving sth

ADJ. **right, wrong**

VERB + TACK **go off on, take, try** *New research is taking a different tack. The interviewer decided to try another tack.* **| change, switch** *She suddenly changed tack, taking him by surprise.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *I think you're on the wrong tack with that approach.*

PHRASES **a change of tack**

2 direction of a sailing boat in relation to the wind

ADJ. **port, starboard | opposite**

VERB + TACK **sail on** *We were sailing on starboard tack.* **| change, swing onto/to** *The yacht swung to the opposite tack.*

tackle *noun*

ADJ. **bad, crunching, ferocious, high, hard, late, scything, strong** *Their captain was sent off for a high tackle on Cooper.* **| brave, skilful | cover, last-ditch** *Only a last-ditch tackle by Song prevented Raul from scoring.* **| sliding | flying** *A security guard brought him down with a flying tackle.* **| rugby**

VERB + TACKLE **execute, get in, go in for, make** *I managed to get in a sliding tackle, but he scored anyway.*

PREP. **~ from** *a crunching tackle from her opponent* **| ~ on** *He was booked for a tackle from behind on Morris.* **| in a/the ~** *She lost the ball in a tackle.*

tackle *verb*

1 **deal with sth difficult**

ADV. **properly, seriously | directly, head-on** *The drugs problem has to be tackled head-on.* **| effectively, successfully**

VERB + TACKLE **attempt to, try to | help (to) | fail to** *failing to tackle the key issues*

PREP. **with** *The problem is being tackled with a range of measures.*

PHRASES **a way of tackling sth**

2 **in sport**

ADV. **hard** *He can run fast and tackle hard.*

tact *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great, the utmost**

VERB + TACT **have | call for, need, require** *The situation called for considerable tact.* **| display, exercise, show, use** *Employees are trained to show tact and patience with difficult customers.*

PREP. **with ~** *The incident should have been handled with more tact by the police.*

PHRASES **a lack of tact, the soul of tact** *Their host, who was the soul of tact, never mentioned the incident again.* **| tact and diplomacy/sensitivity**

tactic *noun*

ADJ. **subtle | legitimate** *Some players see injuring their opponent as a legitimate tactic.* **| devious, dubious, underhand | aggressive, bully-boy, bullying, extreme, guerrilla, heavy-handed, militant, revolutionary, scare, shock, strong-arm, terror, violent | non-violent, softly-softly | psychological | smear | avoidance, delaying, diversionary, spoiling, stalling** *Children are adept at delaying tactics.* **| negative, time-wasting** *The coach was criticized for his negative tactics.* **| short-term | campaigning, marketing, negotiating, promotional | military, naval, parliamentary, police, political**

VERB + TACTIC **decide on, discuss, plan, talk (about), work out** *She decided on a stalling tactic.* **| adopt, apply, deploy, employ, try, use** *the temptation to use underhand tactics They were desperate enough to try shock tactics.* **| resort to, stoop to** *I refuse to stoop to such bullying tactics.* **| change, rethink, switch** *They would do well to switch tactics.* **| demand, require** *Longer races demand different tactics.*

TACTIC + VERB **pay off, succeed, work** *His strong-arm tactics paid off.* **| fail**

PREP. **~ for** *teaching parents tactics for dealing with aggressive children*

tag *noun*

1 **label**

ADJ. **identity, name, price** *The baby had a plastic name tag on its ankle. Despite a price tag of £100,000, the car was sold in two days.* **| security | gift, luggage | ankle, ear, wrist**

VERB + TAG **attach, put** *I still have to put gift tags on all the presents.*

PHRASES **sth carries/has a price tag of £500/$10,000, etc.** *This designer suit carries a price tag of £2,000.*

2 **reputation**

VERB + TAG **lose, shake off, shed** *The president made several jokes in an attempt to shake off his 'humourless' tag.*

tail *noun*

1 **of an animal, a bird, etc.**

ADJ. **long | short | bushy, curly, curved, forked, pointed | muscular, prehensile**

VERB + TAIL **flick, swish, thrash, wag, whisk** *The dog wagged its tail furiously.* **| dock** *It used to be fashionable to dock horses' tails.*

TAIL + VERB **twitch, wag, wave** *The dog ran out with its tail wagging madly.*

TAIL + NOUN **feathers, fin**

2 **of a thing**

TAIL + NOUN **section** *The plane's tail section had broken off.* **| fin, light**

PREP. **at the ~** *the truck at the tail of our convoy*

PHRASES **nose to tail** *Traffic which used to be nose to tail now flows freely.*

tailor *verb*

ADV. **carefully | exactly | accordingly, individually, specially, specifically** *We identify your needs, and tailor your training accordingly.*

PREP. **for** *a system that is specially tailored for small firms* **| to** *The account offered by the bank will be tailored exactly to your needs.*

tailored *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **beautifully, elegantly, exquisitely, finely, immaculately, superbly** *wearing a beautifully tailored suit* **| perfectly | expensively**

take *verb*

ADV. **well | badly** *She took the news of her father's death very badly.* **| seriously** *I wanted to be taken seriously as an artist.* **| philosophically** *Harry took his rejection philosophically.*

PREP. **as** *He took what I said as a criticism.* **PHRASAL VERBS take to sth**

ADV. **kindly** *They won't take kindly to being ordered about.*

takeover *noun*

ADJ. **attempted, proposed | hostile | agreed | company | communist, military**

TAKEOVER + NOUN **attempt, bid** *a hostile takeover bid* **| offer | battle** *The consortium won a fierce takeover battle for the engineering group.*

takings *noun*

ADJ. **the day's, the month's, etc. | weekly | gross, net | cash | record** *Store managers are predicting record takings this Christmas.* **| bar, box office**

VERB + TAKINGS **add up, check, count (up) | boost** *The shop's new look has boosted its takings considerably.* **| cut**

TAKINGS + VERB **be up/down, drop, rise** *Box office takings are up by 40% on last year.*

PREP. **in ~** *She was losing about £100 a week in takings.* **| ~ from** *the takings from wines and beers* > Special page at BUSINESS

tale *noun*

ADJ. **long, rambling | amazing, bizarre, curious, extraordinary, fantastic, magical, marvellous, strange | awful, dire, sad, sorry, terrible** *the sorry tale of his marriage breakdown* | **dreary** *She was tired of hearing the same dreary tale of drunkenness and violence.* | **chilling, gruesome, hair-raising, horror, macabre | mysterious, spooky | funny, humorous, witty | foolish | lurid, spicy, tawdry | fanciful, far-fetched, incredible, tall, unlikely** *a tall tale that would fool no one* | **old wives' | rags-to-riches** *the rags-to-riches tale of an orphan who becomes a star* | **epic, heroic** *an epic tale of courage and heroism* | **cautionary, moral, morality | folk, traditional | childhood | fairy** *(often figurative) Winning the French Open was a fairy-tale end to her career.* | **romantic**

VERB + TALE **narrate, regale sb with, relate, tell (sb)** *She regaled us with tales of her wild youth.* | **invent, make up, spin**

TALE + VERB **begin | unfold | concern sb/sth, involve sb/sth | be set in …** *a tale set in 19th-century Moscow* | **be based on sth**

PREP. **~ about** *a tale about a hungry snake* | **~ of** *tales of adventure the curious tale of the man who sold his hair*

PHRASES **a tale of woe** (= about failure, bad luck, etc.), **(have) a tale to tell** *Each of the survivors had a terrible tale to tell.* | **tell tales** (= to say things about sb that are untrue or that they would prefer to be secret)

talent *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, exceptional, extraordinary, formidable, genuine, great, major, outstanding, prodigious, rare, real, remarkable, special, tremendous, undoubted, unique | God-given, inborn, innate, natural, raw** *Hard work is important, but it is no substitute for raw talent.* **| hidden, undiscovered | mediocre | fresh, new** *The company is always looking out for new talent.* **| young | precocious | home-grown, local** *one of the few teams that relies on home-grown talent* **| top** *We are losing our top talent to other countries who pay more.* **| acting, artistic, creative, literary, managerial, musical, scientific, vocal, writing**

VERB + TALENT **have, possess** *The lad has undoubted talent.* **| demonstrate, display, reveal, show | flaunt, show off** *The banquet gave the chef a chance to flaunt his talents.* **| direct, redirect, turn** *After making her name as a singer, she turned her talents to acting.* **| discover, recognize, spot, unearth** *She has a keen eye for spotting talent. United have unearthed a real talent in this young defender.* **| build (on), cultivate, develop, harness, make the most of, nurture, realize, tap, use, utilize** *an effort to develop his creative talents to the full The theatre visits schools to tap young talent.* **| squander, waste** *His parents accused him of wasting his talents and abilities.*

TALENT + VERB **lie** *Her talents lay in organization.*

TALENT + NOUN **scout, spotter | competition, contest, show**

PREP. **of ~** *He is a violinist of exceptional talent.* **| with/without ~** *kids with musical talent* **| ~ for** *You have a natural talent for storytelling.*

PHRASES **a man/woman, etc. of many talents, a pool of talent** *Hollywood directors have a marvellous pool of acting talent to draw from.* **| a wealth of talent** *There is a wealth of talent out there in our schools.*

talented *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound**

ADV. **exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, highly, hugely, immensely, incredibly, outstandingly, really, supremely, truly, very** *an extraordinarily talented designer Some of these young musicians are hugely talented.* **| not particularly | quite | precociously** *a precociously talented youngster* **| artistically, musically**

talk *noun*

1 **a conversation**

ADJ. **good, little** *(often ironic)*, **long, quiet, serious** *I will have to have a little talk with that young lady* (= tell her that I disapprove of sth). **| heart-to-heart, intimate**

VERB + TALK **have**

TALK + NOUN **show**

PREP. **~ about** *I enjoyed our talk about the old days.* **| ~ with** *I need to have a heart-to-heart talk with her.*

PHRASES **(to exchange/make) small talk** (= to talk politely about unimportant things) *He was never very good at making small talk with her parents.*

2 **talking**

ADJ. **excited, heady** *There was excited talk of emigrating to America.* **| ridiculous, wild** *There is ridiculous talk of her breaking the world record soon.* **| careless, dangerous, idle, loose | fighting, tough | straight** *She likes straight talk and hates hypocrites.* **| double** *The president's true agenda was hidden in political double talk.* **| dirty, filthy | cheap, easy, empty, mere** *The chairman's boasts about future profits was just cheap talk.* **| fine, grand** *(ironic) What all the fine talk came down to was hard cash.* **| baby** *I never used baby talk to my little girl.* **| pillow** *the pillow talk of lovers*

TALK + VERB **turn to sth** *Talk turned to money and tempers began to fray.*

PREP. **~ about/of** *All this talk of the president resigning is nonsense!*

PHRASES **be just talk** *'You think it's just talk?' 'No, I think it's true.'* **| for all the talk of sth** *For all the talk of bringing their children up the same, the boys ended up never doing any of the cooking.*

3 (*also* **talks**) **discussions between official groups**

ADJ. **lengthy | high-level, top-level | informal | formal, official | private, secret | open | direct, face-to-face | wide-ranging | all-party, bilateral, inter-party, joint, multilateral, round-table, trilateral, tripartite | fresh, further | fruitless, inconclusive | crisis, emergency, urgent | exploratory, preliminary | constitutional, political | arms, pay, peace, trade**

QUANT. **round** *A further round of talks is expected in March.*

VERB + TALK **conduct, have, hold** *The two governments held secret talks on the nuclear threat.* **| broker, host | attend, enter | initiate, open | break off, pull out of, walk out of** *The union has broken off talks with the management.* **| cancel, suspend | reopen, resume**

TALK + VERB **be scheduled** *Talks were scheduled for Rome the following month.* **| take place** *The peace talks will take place in Cairo.* **| begin, open, start | end | resume | be aimed at sth, be designed to** *the latest round of talks aimed at ending the civil war* **| centre on sth, concentrate on sth, cover sth, deal with sth, focus on sth** *The talks centred on bilateral trade.* **| produce sth** *Talks produced agreement on an end to the occupation.* **| be deadlocked, break down, collapse, fail, founder, stall** *The talks remain deadlocked over spending plans. The talks foundered on the issue of compensation.*

PREP. **during ~** *The agreement was concluded during talks in Beijing.* **| in ~** *He is currently in talks with two football clubs.* **| ~ about/on/over** *holding talks over the political future of the province* **| ~ between** *the failure of talks between the two communities* **| ~ with** *The delegation arrived for talks with their government.*

4 **lecture**

ADJ. **entertaining, informative, interesting | introductory | pep, sales, team | radio**

VERB + TALK **give | attend, go to**

TALK + VERB **be entitled sth** *She gave a very entertaining talk entitled 'My life and hard times'.*

PREP. **~ about/on** *Did you go to the talk on Peru?*

talk *verb*

ADV. **loudly | quietly | at length | continuously, endlessly, incessantly, non-stop | freely | openly** *She talked quite freely about her work.* **| enthusiastically, excitedly | politely | glibly | vaguely** *He had talked vaguely of going to work abroad.* **| casually | earnestly** *a group of students talking earnestly* **| sensibly** *Let's talk sensibly about this.* **| wildly**

VERB + TALK **be able to, can/could** *I can't talk about it just now.* **| need to, want to** *I need to talk to you.* **| begin to | be easy to** *He was so easy to talk to.* **| be difficult to, be hard to | hear sb, listen to sb, overhear sb** *I loved to hear him talk about the old days.* **| make sb** *The police questioned him for four hours, trying to make him talk.* **| let sb** *Just shut up and let me talk for a minute.*

PREP. **about** *talking about their new clothes* **| of** *(formal) We often talked of the war.* **| to** *I'll talk to John this afternoon.* **| with** *I've talked with him on the telephone.*

PHRASES **start/stop talking**

tall *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get, grow**

ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, unusually, very | fairly, quite, rather** *She is quite tall for her age.*

tame *adj.*

1 **not afraid of people**

VERBS **be, look, seem | become**

ADV. **extremely, very | almost | quite**

2 **boring**

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound | become | find sth** *I found office work very tame after army life.*

ADV. **positively, very** *living a life that makes Wild West movies look positively tame* **| a bit, a little, pretty, rather, somewhat** *To us it was all pretty tame stuff.*

tan *noun*

ADJ. **deep, golden | healthy | all-over | fake**

VERB + TAN **have | show off, sport** *Show off your tan in this little white top.* **| get, top up, work on** *I want to top up my tan on the sunbed at the gym.*

PREP. **against your ~** *His teeth were a gleaming flash of white against his tan.*

tangle *noun*

ADJ. **bewildering, confused** *a confused tangle of voices* **| dense, matted** *a dense tangle of undergrowth*

VERB + TANGLE **get into** *He got into a tangle with his budget figures.* **| sort out, unravel** *The legal tangle was never really unravelled.*

PREP. **in a ~** *This string's in a tangle.*

tangled *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become, get**

ADV. **hopelessly | all** *My hair had got all tangled.* **| a bit** *Your hair looks a bit tangled.* **| up**

PREP. **in** *My legs got hopelessly tangled in the rope.*

tank *noun*

1 container

ADJ. **empty, full | glass, steel | 4-foot, 50-gallon, 80-litre, etc. | fuel, gas, oil, oxygen, petrol, water** *the hot and cold water tanks* **| storage | septic, slurry | fish**

VERB + TANK **fill**

TANK + VERB **contain sth**

PREP. **in/into a/the ~** *Put a little fish food into the tank.* **| ~ of** *a full tank of petrol*

2 military vehicle

ADJ. **armoured, army, battle**

VERB + TANK **climb into, get into | drive**

TANK + VERB **roll** *Tanks rolled in to end the siege.*

TANK + NOUN **regiment**

tanker *noun*

1 **ship carrying oil or petrol**

ADJ. **giant, huge, large | gas, oil | coastal**

TANKER + VERB **carry sth, transport sth** *a tanker carrying thousands of tons of crude oil* | **run aground** *The tanker ran aground in heavy seas and is breaking up on the rocks.* | **break up | spill sth** *A damaged tanker has spilled millions of gallons of oil into the sea.*

TANKER + NOUN **disaster, spill** *the worst year for tanker spills for ten years* | **fleet | route | traffic | operator, owner**

2 **heavy vehicle for carrying liquids**

ADJ. **fuel, milk, petrol | road**

VERB + TANKER **drive**

TANKER + VERB **carry sth**

TANKER + NOUN **driver**

tanned *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become, get**

ADV. **deeply, very** *His blue eyes glittered in his deeply tanned face.* **| lightly, slightly | healthily**

tantrum *noun*

ADJ. **temper**

VERB + TANTRUM **have, throw** *He threw a tantrum on the school bus.* **| deal with | ignore**

tap *noun*

1 **for water, gas, etc.**

ADJ. **hot, hot-water | cold, cold-water | mixer | dripping, running** *the sound of a dripping tap* **| leaky | bath, bathroom, kitchen**

VERB + TAP **turn (off/on)** *Turn the tap clockwise.* **| run** *You have to run the tap a long time before the hot water comes.*

TAP + VERB **drip, run** *Someone has left the tap running.* **| leak**

TAP + NOUN **water | washer**

PREP. **on ~** *The pub has two sorts of beer on tap* (= in a barrel with a tap on it). *(figurative) We have this sort of information on tap* (= available to be used at any time).

2 **quick gentle blow; the sound it makes**

ADJ. **gentle, light, little | sharp**

VERB + TAP **give sb/sth**

PREP. **~ at** *There was a little tap at the door.* **| ~ on** *He gave her a tap on the shoulder.*

tap *verb*

ADV. **gently, lightly** *She tapped her fingers gently on the table.* **| away** *She tapped away at her keyboard.*

PREP. **against, at, on, with** *She tapped the ice with a stick.*

tape *noun*

1 magnetic material used for recording

ADJ. **magnetic** *The data is stored on the magnetic tape.* | **audio, computer, video** (also **videotape**) | **recording**

VERB + TAPE **hold sth on, store sth on** | **capture sth on, get sth on** *Police are examining the incident, which was captured on tape.* | **splice**

TAPE + NOUN **drive** (= in a computer) | **recording**

PREP. **on ~** *I've got the whole concert on tape.*

2 cassette with magnetic tape on it

ADJ. **cassette** | **audio, music, sound** | **video** (also **videotape**) | **demo, master** | **compilation** *a compilation tape featuring new Irish bands* | **blank** | **pre-recorded** | **bootleg, pirated** *The court heard that Ellis sold pirated tapes of Hollywood blockbusters.*

VERB + TAPE **make** *I made another tape to play in the car.* | **play (back), put on** *The police will be able to play back the videotape for clues.* | **listen to, watch** | **mime to** *The singer was miming to a pre-recorded tape.* | **fast-forward, pause, replay, rewind, start, stop, wind back, wind forward/on** | **erase, wipe** *Someone had deliberately erased the tapes.*

TAPE + VERB **contain sth, have sth** *The tape contained damning evidence. What does this tape have on it?*

TAPE + NOUN **deck, recorder** | **recording**

3 long narrow strip of fabric/paper

ADJ. **adhesive, Scotch(R), sticky** | **insulating, masking** | **measuring** | **paper, plastic, steel** | **ticker** | **double-sided** *Fit the carpet using double-sided tape.*

QUANT. **piece, strip** | **roll**

VERB + TAPE **seal sth (up) with** *I sealed up the package with strong adhesive tape.*

TAPE + NOUN **measure** *Use a steel tape measure to measure the dimensions of the room.*

4 **piece of material stretched across a racetrack**

ADJ. **finishing**

VERB + TAPE **break** *her look of triumph as she broke the finishing tape*

tape *verb*

ADV. **firmly** *The wires are taped firmly together.* **| together, up** *The box was all taped up.*

PREP. **onto, to** *She had taped a note to the fridge door.*

target *noun*

1 sb/sth that you try to destroy, hurt, steal, etc.

ADJ. **favourite, likely, natural, obvious, perfect, possible, potential, prime, suitable** *The prime minister is a favourite target of comedians.* | **easy, sitting, soft, tempting, vulnerable** *The stationary trucks were sitting targets for the enemy planes.* | **legitimate** | **intended** | stationary | moving | ground | **military** | **civilian, non-military** | **terrorist**

VERB + TARGET **aim at, attack, go for, shoot at** | **hit, reach (used of a missile)** *The bomb reached its intended target ten seconds later.* | **miss, overshoot** *The flare overshot its target and set light to a hotel.* | **destroy** *The missile is aimed specifically to destroy military targets.* | **track** *The radar beam can track a number of targets almost simultaneously.*

PREP. **off ~** *The missile veered way off target and landed in the sea.* | **on ~** *Politically speaking, his jibes were right on target.* | **~ for** *an easy target for shoplifters*

2 object that you shoot at

VERB + TARGET **put up, set up** *The archers were setting up their targets.* | **aim at, shoot at** | **hit** | **miss** | **use sth as** *The boys used an old tree stump as a target.*

TARGET + NOUN **area** | **practice**

PREP. **off ~** *Patton was just off target with a header.* | **on ~** *His first shot was bang on target.* | **wide of the ~** *The shot went wide of the target.*

3 result, person, etc. that you aim to reach

ADJ. **achievable, attainable, low, modest, realistic** | **ambitious, demanding, difficult, high, tough, unrealistic** *She has always set herself very high targets.* | **impossible** | **clear** | **chief, key, main, major, primary, prime, principal** | **annual** | **immediate, initial** | **future, long-term, ultimate** | **attainment, economic, financial, growth, inflation, performance, production, profit, recruitment, sales, spending**

VERB + TARGET **set** *Managers must set targets that are realistic.* **| aim for** *Pupils should be given a target to aim for.* **| achieve, meet, reach | stay within** *in a desperate attempt to stay within budget targets* **| exceed** *The company pays bonuses to workers who exceed production targets.* **| fall short of**

TARGET + NOUN **audience, group, market | date** *to meet a target date of May 2002* **| figure, price, weight**

PREP. **above (a/the) ~** *Sales so far this year are 20% above target.* **| off ~** *These figures are way off target.* **| on ~** *We are still right on target.* **| over (a/the) ~** *Many wage settlements reached were over the original target of 4%.* **| towards (a/the) ~** *We are working towards a target of twenty cars a week.* **| ~ for** *setting new targets for growth*

target *verb*

ADV. **carefully, deliberately** *a carefully targeted marketing campaign Children are deliberately targeted.* **| particularly, specifically**

PREP. **at** *The products are targeted at young people.* **| for** *This hospital is targeted for additional funding.* **| on** *Tax cuts should be targeted on the poor.* **| towards** *We target our services towards specific groups of people.*

tariff *noun*

ADJ. **high, low | preferential, protective, punitive** *British industry was sheltered from foreign competition by protective tariffs.* **| external | domestic, internal | import | customs**

QUANT. **level** *a 40% level of tariffs on imports*

VERB + TARIFF **fix, set** *The agreement fixed tariffs for foreign goods coming into Japan at 5%.* **| impose, introduce, levy** *The US could impose punitive tariffs of up to 100% on some countries' exports.* **| pay | increase, raise | cut, lower, reduce | abolish, eliminate**

TARIFF + NOUN **reduction, reform | structure, system | level, rate | barrier** *the aim of removing all tariff barriers by the year 2003*

PREP. **~ on** *They set a tariff of 36% on British wool cloth.*

PHRASES **a reduction in tariff/tariffs**

tarnish *verb*

1 **become/make sth less bright**

ADV. **badly** *The mirror had tarnished quite badly.*

2 **spoil sth**

ADV. **severely** *their severely tarnished reputation*

tart *noun*

1 **open pie**

ADJ. **fruit, jam, treacle | apple, strawberry, etc.**

VERB + TART **make**

2 **woman**

ADJ. **cheap, little**

VERB + TART **look like** *That dress makes her look like a tart.* | **call sb** *He had called her a cheap little tart.*

task force *noun*

ADJ. **special | government, presidential, etc. | naval, police, etc. | health, housing, etc.**

VERB + TASK FORCE **create, establish, form, set up | lead**

TASK FORCE + NOUN **team**

PREP. **~ on** *The government has set up a special task force on health care reform.*

task *noun*

ADJ. **awesome, challenging, daunting, enormous, formidable, great, Herculean, huge, mammoth, massive, monumental | arduous, demanding, difficult, exacting, exhausting, hard, laborious, onerous, stiff, time-consuming, tough, uphill | dangerous, hazardous | basic, easy, simple, small** *Translating the letter was no easy task.* **| menial, mundane, repetitive, tedious | complex, mind-boggling | delicate, tricky | fruitless, hopeless, impossible | daily, day-to-day, routine | central, fundamental, important, main, major, primary, principal** *The primary task of the chair is to ensure the meeting runs smoothly.* **| essential, vital | immediate, urgent | enviable, pleasant | thankless, unenviable, unpleasant | administrative, domestic, household, manual | self-appointed, self-imposed**

VERB + TASK **take on, take upon yourself, undertake** *Nobody was keen to take on such a thankless task.* **| approach, get to grips with, tackle** *How do you tackle a task like that?* **| carry out, do, fulfil, get on with, perform** *I left her to get on with the task of correcting the errors.* **| accomplish, complete, succeed in | cope with | fail in | allocate, assign (sb), delegate, entrust sb with, give sb, set sb** *She failed to complete the task that she had been set.* **| be charged with, be faced with, have** *She was charged with the important task of telling the children.* **| be engaged in** *I was engaged in the delicate task of clipping the dog's claws.* **| help sb with | be suited/unsuited to** *His thick fingers were not well suited to the task.*

TASK + VERB **require sth** *The task requires a variety of skills and experience.* **| fall to sb** *The unenviable task of telling my parents fell to the head teacher.* **| confront sb, face sb** *The team have no illusions about the size of the task confronting them.*

PREP. **~ for** *a hard task for the committee* **| ~ in** *one of the first tasks in language learning*

PHRASES **the task ahead** *We need to think realistically about the task ahead.* **| the task in hand** *We should stop chatting and get back to the task in hand.*

taste *noun*

1 flavour

ADJ. **delicious, fresh, pleasant, refreshing | distinctive | pungent, rich, strong | bland, mild | foul, nasty, unpleasant | bitter, creamy, metallic, salty, sharp, smooth, sour, spicy, sweet | authentic** *You need to use fresh herbs to get the authentic Italian taste.*

VERB + TASTE **have** *The soup had a very salty taste.* **| leave** *The drink left a bitter taste in his mouth. (figurative) The whole business left a nasty taste in my mouth.* **| spoil** *Don't have a cigarette now?you'll spoil the taste of your food!* **| enhance, improve | enjoy, savour** *She savoured the taste of the champagne.* **| disguise, take away** *I had a strong coffee to take away the nasty taste of the food.*

TASTE + NOUN **buds 2 a taste** small amount

ADJ. **little | real** *That job gave me my first real taste of teaching.* **| first**

VERB + TASTE **get, have** *Have a taste of this cake.* **| give sb, provide (sb with)**

PREP. **~ of** *This was her first taste of success.*

PHRASES **a taste of things to come** *The new appraisal scheme is only a taste of things to come.*

3 liking

ADJ. **catholic, eclectic, varied, wide | modest, simple | advanced, cultured, educated, sophisticated | expensive, extravagant | eccentric, esoteric, strange | acquired, natural** *Art is an acquired taste?no one is born knowing that Michelangelo is wonderful.* **| natural | local, national | modern | personal, private | aesthetic, artistic, literary, musical, reading, sexual | audience, consumer, contemporary, popular, public, Western** *Her msuic appeals to popular taste.*

VERB + TASTE **have** *They have a taste for adventure.* **| like, share** *You obviously share her taste in reading.* **| acquire, cultivate, develop, get | lose** *I've lost my taste for travelling.* **| indulge** *Now he is retired he has time to indulge his tastes for writing* *and politics.* | **demonstrate, display** *Her choice of outfit demonstrated her taste for the outrageous.* | **appeal to, cater for, match, meet, satisfy, suit** *a range of hotels to suit all tastes and budgets*

TASTE + VERB **lie** *It all depends on where your tastes lie.* | **change, differ, vary** *Lifestyles differ and tastes vary.*

PREP. **for your ~** *The theatre was too modern for my taste.* | **to ~** (= according to how much of sth as you want) *Add salt and pepper to taste.* | **to your ~** *If fishing is not to your taste, there are many other leisure activities on offer.* | **~ for** *People with a taste for complex plots will enjoy this book.* | **~ in** *young people's tastes in music*

PHRASES **a man/woman of … tastes** *a man of advanced tastes* | **a matter of (personal) taste** *What type of bicycle you should buy is very much a matter of personal taste.*

4 **ability to make good choices**

ADJ. **excellent, exquisite, good, great, impeccable** *Her work is executed with impeccable taste.* | **appalling, bad, deplorable, doubtful, dubious, poor, terrible**

VERB + TASTE **reflect, show** *The house reflected his taste.* | **exercise** *The designer has exercised good taste in her use of different fonts.*

PREP. **in … ~** *That joke was in very poor taste.* | **with ~** *The room had been decorated with great taste.* | **~ in** *She has terrible taste in clothing.*

PHRASES **an arbiter of taste** *Contemporary arbiters of taste dismissed his paintings as rubbish.* | **in the best/worst possible taste** *The love scenes are all done in the best possible taste.* | **a lack of taste** *The remark showed a deplorable lack of taste.* | **a man/woman of taste, taste and decency** *The film was judged to offend against standards of public taste and decency.*

taste *verb*

ADV. **strongly** *The water tasted strongly of chemicals.* **| faintly, slightly** *The fish tasted faintly of garlic.*

PREP. **like** *The fruit tasted rather like mango.* **| of** *a cake which tasted of almonds*

PHRASES **taste awful/bitter/foul/horrible, taste delicious/good/sweet/wonderful, taste funny**

tasteful *adj.*

VERBS **be** *Most of the furniture was quite tasteful.*

ADV. **very | impeccably | quite**

tatters *noun*

VERB + TATTERS **lie in** *(figurative) Her marriage now lay in tatters.* **| hang in** *Everywhere wallpaper hung in tatters.* **| leave sth in** *(figurative) an injury that left his dreams in tatters*

PREP. **in ~** *Her clothes were in tatters. (figurative) With their plans now in tatters, they gave up.*

PHRASES **rags and tatters**

tattoo *noun*

VERB + TATTOO **do** *She's having a tattoo done on her leg.* **| have | be covered in** *His arms were covered in tattoos.* **| remove** *I've decided to get my tattoo removed.*

TATTOO + NOUN **parlour**

taunt *noun*

ADJ. **playground, racial/racist**

VERB + TAUNT **hurl, shout | endure, face, suffer** *He had to endure the racist taunts of the crowd.* **| ignore**

TAUNT + VERB **sting (sb into)** *Their taunts stung him into his best performance for the team yet.*

taunt *verb*

ADV. **softly** *'Running away?'he taunted softly.*

PREP. **about** *Some of the girls taunted her about her weight.* **| with** *The other children taunted him with nicknames.*

taut *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look | become, go** *Her body went as taut as a bowstring.* **| remain, stay** *Exercise helps your muscles to stay taut.* **| pull sth, stretch sth** *His skin was stretched taut over his cheekbones.* **| hold sth, keep sth** *Try to keep the lead taut, as it will help your puppy to learn.*

PREP. **with** *(figurative) a voice taut with anger*

tax *noun*

ADJ. **high, low | direct, indirect | basic, basic-rate, higher-rate | progressive, redistributive | regressive** *A regressive tax, like the poll tax, takes proportionately more of a poor person's income.* | **windfall** *The privatized utility companies may be faced with a windfall tax on the profits of the last few years.* | **back** *(informal) The tax office demanded £80,000 in back taxes.* | **council, poll | capital, capital gains, income, inheritance, land, profits, property, savings, wealth | consumption, purchase, sales, value added** (= VAT) | **capital transfer, investment | company, corporation | car, road, vehicle** *It's time to renew your car tax.* | **carbon, energy, fuel, petrol | excise, import**

VERB + TAX **pay | impose, introduce, levy, put** *Direct taxes could only be levied with the consent of Parliament. The government may put an indirect tax on books.* | **collect** *the government department responsible for collecting taxes* | **deduct** *Your employer will deduct the tax for you.* | **increase, put up, raise | cut, lower, reduce | abolish | overpay | reclaim | offset sth against, set/write sth off against** *Claims for expenses can be set off against tax.* | **avoid, escape | evade** *She was charged with conspiracy to evade taxes.*

TAX + VERB **go up, increase, rise** *Taxes look set to rise again.* | **come/go down, fall | be chargeable, be payable** *the amount on which capital gains tax is payable*

TAX + NOUN **payer** (also **taxpayer)** *a higher-rate tax payer* | **authority/authorities, office, man** (also **taxman)** *(informal) She owes the taxman £10,000.* | **law, legislation, measures, policy, reform, structure, system | period, year** *The tax year begins in April.* | **cut, increase | band, bracket, rate, threshold** *Her salary puts her in the highest tax band.* | **revenue, yield | assessment, form, return** *You have to fill in your tax return by tomorrow.* | **advantage, allowance, benefit, break, concession, credit, exemption, incentive, perks, rebate, refund, relief** *There are tax advantages to working freelance. You will only receive tax relief on the first £30,000.* | **affairs, arrangements** *His tax affairs are under investigation by the police.* | **avoidance | loophole** *Her accountant was good at exploiting tax loopholes.* | **dodge, evasion, fraud** *He gave the Porsche to his mother as a tax dodge.* | **dodger | exile** *She is living as a tax exile in Monaco.* | **haven** *The island is a popular tax haven for the very rich.* | **collector, consultant, inspector | bill, charge, invoice, payment | arrears** *He was ordered to pay $2 million in tax arrears.* | **liability** *an increase in tax liability on company cars* | **burden** *putting a new tax burden on the middle classes* | **base** *By broadening the tax base* (= making more people pay tax) *the chancellor could raise more revenues.*

PREP. **after/before ~** *Profits after tax were £262,000.* **| in ~** *Collectively, smokers pay over £15,000 a day in tax.* **| ~ on** *introducing a 60% tax on alcohol*

PHRASES **for tax purposes** *the rules for deciding on someone's residence status for UK tax purposes* **| (the basic/higher) rate of tax** *an increase in the basic rate of tax*

tax *verb*

ADV. **heavily** *Many self-employed people are heavily taxed. goods which are most heavily taxed* **| lightly**

PREP. **according to** *Drinks would be taxed according to their alcoholic strength.* **| at** *Many goods were taxed at 17.5%.* **| on** *You will be taxed on all your income.*

taxable *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain | make sth**

ADV. **fully** *Where payments exceed these limits they become fully taxable.*

taxation *noun*

ADJ. **excessive, heavy, high** *the heavy taxation on smokers and drinkers* | **low** | **direct, indirect** | **progressive, redistributive** | **company, corporate, general, local, personal** *changes in corporate taxation*

QUANT. **level, rate** *a promise to lower the overall level of taxation*

VERB + TAXATION **increase, put up, raise** *If the government raises direct taxation, it will lose votes.* | **cut, lower, reduce** | **avoid** | **be exempt from** *Any profits made are totally exempt from taxation.*

TAXATION + NOUN **policy, system** | **rate**

PREP. **after/before ~** *The loss before taxation was $2.7 million.* | **from/out of ~** *The hospital was funded from taxation.* | **through ~** *the power to raise funds through taxation* | **~ on** *increased taxation on oil companies*

PHRASES **the burden of taxation** *reducing the heavy burden of taxation on the wealthy* | **a form of taxation** *The poll tax was a very unpopular form of taxation.* | **for taxation purposes** *They were treated as a married couple for taxation purposes.*

taxi *noun*

VERB + TAXI **go by, take** *I took a taxi back home.* **| call (sb), get (sb), order (sb), phone for** *I'll get my secretary to call you a taxi.* **| find** *We had some difficulty finding a taxi.* **| catch, hail** *We caught a taxi to the airport.* **| get into/out of | drive | pay for/off | share**

TAXI + NOUN **cab | firm | ride | service | fare | driver | rank**

PHRASES **by ~** *a five-minute trip by taxi*

taxing *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | become**

ADV. **very | fairly | intellectually, physically** *There was nothing intellectually taxing about the course.*

tea *noun*

1 **drink**

ADJ. **fresh** *There's some fresh* (= just made) *tea in the pot.* | **stewed** (= very strong), **strong** | **weak** | **cold, hot, lukewarm, scalding** | **milky** | **white** (usually after **tea)** ***I'll have tea?white, no sugar, please.*** | **black** | **sugary, sweet** | **(early) morning** | **decaffeinated** | **fragrant** | **China/Chinese, Indian, etc.** | **Earl Grey, green** | **fruit, herb/herbal** | **camomile, jasmine, lemon, mint, etc.** | **iced**

QUANT. **cup, flask, mug, pot**

VERB + TEA **drink** ***I don't drink tea.*** | **have** | **sip, swallow** ***She sipped her hot tea slowly.*** | **take a mouthful/sip of** | **brew, get (sb), make (sb), mash** ***I'll make you some tea.*** | **bring sb, dispense** ***(often humorous)***, **ply sb with** ***(humorous)***, **serve (sb), take sb** ***I'll bring you a cup of tea in a few minutes. John rushed around dispensing tea and cakes to everyone.*** | **pour (sb) (out)** ***Pour me out a cup of tea please.*** | **stir**

TEA + VERB **brew, mash** ***You haven't let the tea brew long enough.*** | **cool**

TEA + NOUN **pot (also teapot), urn** | **cosy** | **service, set** ***a bone china tea service*** | **tray, trolley** ***A lady comes round the office with a tea trolley in the afternoon.*** | **bar, garden, room, shop** ***The hospital tea bar is run by volunteers.*** | **boy** ***(offensive when used of an older man)***, **lady** | **drinker, drinking** | **break** | **party** | **ceremony**

PREP. **in your ~** ***Do you take sugar in your tea?***

PHRASES **tea and coffee, tea and biscuits/cake/cakes/sandwiches/scones, tea and sympathy** ***He tried to alleviate their disappointment by inviting them in for tea and sympathy.*** | **tea for two** ***'Tea for two', said Mary, 'and a slice of your delicious chocolate cake.'*** | **tea or coffee** ***Would you like tea or coffee?*** | **tea-making facilities** ***All rooms have tea-making facilities.***

2 **leaves for making tea**

ADJ. **loose (= tea that is not in bags)**

QUANT. **packet**

VERB + TEA **grow**

TEA + VERB **grow**

TEA + NOUN **leaf | bag | caddy | strainer | estate, plantation | chest** ***He stores his books in a tea chest.***

3 **meal**

ADJ. **afternoon, cream, high | birthday, funeral**

TEA + NOUN **things** ***I cleared away the tea things.*** **> Note at MEAL(for verbs)**

teach *verb*

ADV. **effectively** *information which helps the teacher teach more effectively*

VERB + TEACH **try to** *trying to teach my daughter to behave* **| be qualified to** *I am not qualified to teach this subject.* **| be designed to** *training courses designed to teach managerial techniques* **| help (to), help sb (to)**

PREP. **about** *teaching children about the world around them* **| to** *She teaches English to Polish students.*

teacher *noun*

ADJ. **competent, good, inspired, skilled | bad, incompetent | qualified | experienced | inexperienced | sympathetic | senior | head | fellow | former | female, woman | male | full-time, part-time | supply, support | peripatetic | college, primary (school), school, secondary (school), Sunday school, university | class/classroom | remedial | non-specialist, specialist | language | subject | art, EFL, English, history, maths, music, PE, woodwork, etc. | spiritual**

VERB + TEACHER **train | find (sb)**

TEACHER + VERB **teach sth | work with sb** *teachers working with pupils with special educational needs*

TEACHER + NOUN **education, training** *She's been accepted at Bath Teacher Training College.* **| trainer | association, union** *He is chairman of the Parent Teacher Association.* **| shortage** > Note at JOB

teaching *noun*

1 **work/profession of a teacher**

ADJ. **effective, good | poor | classroom** *a system that rewards good classroom teaching* **| whole-class | individual, one-to-one | collaborative, team** | mixed-ability | formal, **traditional** *the formal teaching of grammar* **| creative, experimental | remedial, support | academic, college, graduate, postgraduate, primary, school, secondary, undergraduate, university | English, language, music, etc.**

VERB + TEACHING **get/go into** *He's going to go into teaching.*

TEACHING + NOUN **method, strategy, style, technique | aid, material, resource** *She used puppets as teaching aids.* **| aim, objective, point** *Write each teaching point on the whiteboard.* **| ability, skills | experience, qualification** *Applicants must hold a recognized teaching qualification.* **| job, post | career** *Mr Murphy retired at the end of a disciples who passed on Jesus's teaching* **| base sth on** *the great moral teachings on which our culture is based*

PREP. **in the ~** *regarded as the source of goodness in the teachings of Confucius* **| ~ about/on** *the Church's teaching on forgiveness 30-year teaching career.* **| practice** *You have to do six weeks teaching practice as part of the course.* **| staff, profession** *They have left the teaching profession, demoralized and undervalued.* **| commitments, duties, load, responsibilities, role** *Lecturers who have heavy teaching loads.* **| centre, establishment, institution | environment, situation** *a teaching environment where English is not the first language* **| programme, session, term, year** *Work experience is integrated into the teaching programme. The teaching year runs from October to May.* **| time** *Critics say that these tests waste teaching time.* **| hospital**

PREP. **in ~** *I've been in teaching for ten years.*

PHRASES **an approach to teaching** *the modern approach to language teaching* **| a method/style of teaching**

2 **ideas and beliefs that are taught by sb**

ADJ. **ancient, traditional | biblical, moral, religious | Buddhist, Christian,**

etc.

VERB + TEACHING **follow** *He followed the teachings of the Koran on this subject.* **| reject | explain, interpret | pass on, spread** *the*

team *noun*

1 **group of people who play a sport together**

ADJ. **home | away, opposing, rival, visiting | decent, strong | successful, winning | weak | dream** *The England manager has chosen his dream team for the World Cup.* **| junior, senior, youth | under-16, etc. | A, B,** first, second, etc. | **international, local, national |** England, Ireland, Scotland | **French, Irish, etc. | basketball, football, relay, etc. | display** *the Army Parachute Display Team* **| five-man, five-person, five-strong, five-woman** *Spain are fielding a three-man team in this race.* **| men's, mixed, women's**

VERB + TEAM **field, have | choose, get together, organize, pick, put together** *Can you get a team together by Saturday?* **| coach, manage | be in/on, play in/for** *I'm playing for the first team this week.* **| be called up to, be selected for, get into/onto, make** *Cole has been selected for the team to meet Italy next week. You didn't make the team, I'm afraid.* **| be dropped from, be left out of | join, sign for | play (against) | lead | support**

TEAM + VERB **compete (in sth), take part (in sth)** *The team competes in a local league. There are six teams taking part.* **| win (sth) | lose (sth)** *Our team lost the final.*

TEAM + NOUN **game, sport | captain, coach, manager, mate** (also **teammate)** *He apologized to his teammates for his mistake.* **| championship, event, prize | effort, performance | selection | talk** *The manager gives his team talks in English.* **| sheet** (= the list of players chosen for the team)

PREP. **in/on a/the ~** *I'll have you on the first team.* **| ~ for** *She's in the team for the World Championships.* > Special page at SPORT

2 **group of people who work together**

ADJ. **joint** *a joint team of French and German economists* **| five-strong | husband and wife | campaign, creative, design, development, editorial, investigation, management, marketing, production, project, research, sales** *a member of the senior management team* **| legal, medical | multidisciplinary | rescue**

VERB + TEAM **build, form, train** *Willing volunteers formed teams of helpers to carry everything in. a specially trained team of counsellors* **| lead, head, manage, run | join** *She has recently joined our sales team.* **| work (together) as** *learning to work together as a team*

TEAM + VERB **comprise sb, consist of sb** *The team consisted of six investigators and two secretaries.* **| develop sth, operate, work on/with sth** *the team that developed this microchip The team will work closely with other government departments.*

TEAM + NOUN **leader, member | player** *(informal)* (= sb who works well as part of a team) **| meeting | approach | building, development** *The survival course was intended as a team building exercise.* **| spirit | effort** *It took a tremendous team effort to finish the project on time.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There are 20 people in the team.* **| ~ of** *a team of scientists*

PHRASES **a member of a team, part of a team**

teamwork *noun*

ADJ. **effective, good**

VERB + TEAMWORK **emphasize, encourage** *The company says the aim is to encourage teamwork.*

PREP. **through ~** *achieving our success through effective teamwork*

tear1 /tie(r)/ *noun*

ADJ. **angry, bitter, emotional** *There were angry tears in Lily's eyes.* | **burning, fresh, hot, salty, scalding** *Her eyes were blinded by scalding tears.* | **genuine, real** | **crocodile** *(figurative)* (= insincere) *They weep crocodile tears for the poor and disadvantaged but are basically happy with things as they are.* | **great, huge, large** | **single, solitary** | **silent** | **helpless, sudden, uncontrollable** | **unshed** *His eyes were bright with unshed tears.*

VERB + TEAR **cry, shed, weep** *She wept silent tears when she heard his name. (figurative) I won't shed any tears when Frank retires.* | **dry, wipe (away)** *I picked the little girl up and helped dry her tears. She wiped a tear from her eye.* | **blink/choke/fight/hold back** *He had to fight back tears of frustration.* | **break down in, burst into** *She broke down in tears in court.* | **move/reduce sb to** *His father's angry shouting reduced the little boy to tears.* | **brim/fill with** *His eyes filled with sudden tears.* | **end in** *(figurative)* (= to have an unhappy result)

TEAR + VERB **appear, brim in your eyes, brim over, come, fill your eyes, form, gather, spring into/to your eyes, start, well (up)** *Her tears brimmed over and fell on her cheek. He could never read the letter without tears coming to his eyes.* | **course/pour/roll/run/slide/trickle down sth, drip into/onto sth, fall, flow, overflow, stream** *A single tear rolled slowly down her cheek.* | **stand** *Tears stood in Oliver's eyes.* | **blur sth, cloud sth** *Tears blurred his vision.* | **burn (sth), prick (at/in) sth, sting your eyes** *She felt tears pricking her eyelids.* | **dry (up)**

PREP. **in ~s** *He came to me in tears.* | **through your ~s** *She tried to smile through her tears.* | **~ for** *He shed no tears for his lost youth.* | **~ of** *tears of happiness* | **~ over** *It turned out to be a lot of tears over nothing.*

PHRASES **bring tears to your eyes** *It brings tears to your eyes to see the children having such fun.* | **close/near to tears** *More than once I came near to tears.* | **a flood/floods of tears** *We were in floods of tears at the end of the film.* | **a mist of tears** *I saw it all through a mist of tears.* | **on the verge of tears, tears in your eyes, too deep for tears** *There are times when suffering may be too deep for tears.*

tear2 /tee(r)/ *noun*

VERB + TEAR **have | make | mend**

PREP. **~ in** *This sheet has a tear in it.*

PHRASES **wear and tear** (= the damage to objects, furniture, etc. that is the result of normal use)

tear3 /tee(r)/ *verb*

ADV. **badly** *His clothes were badly torn.* **| easily** *Careful?the fabric tears very easily.* **| almost, nearly** *The storm nearly tore the roof off.* **| apart, off, out, up** *The dogs tore the fox apart. (figurative) We tore the other team apart in the second half.*

VERB + TEAR **threaten to**

PREP. **from** *I tore another sheet from the pad.* **| off** *She tore the label off the suitcase.* **| on** *She tore her skirt on a nail.* **| out of** *Several pages had been torn out of the book.*

PHRASES **tear free/loose** *She tore herself free. One error and he would have been torn loose and hurled overboard by the squalling wind.* **| tear sth in half/two** *She tore the piece of paper in half.* **| tear sb limb from limb** *He threatened to tear me limb from limb.* **| tear sth open** *She tore the letter open.* **| tear sth to pieces/shreds** *(often figurative) The critics tore his last film to shreds.*

tearful *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** *She sounded angry and tearful.* **| become, get** *He suddenly became very tearful.* **| leave sb** *Defeat left her tearful, pale and drained.*

ADV. **very | almost** *I felt quite emotional?almost tearful.* **| a bit, a little, rather**

tease *verb*

ADV. **mercilessly | a little, gently, lightly**

VERB + TEASE **used to**

PREP. **about** *His friends used to tease him about his tatty clothes.* **| with** *They teased her mercilessly with remarks about her weight.*

PHRASES **be just/only teasing** *Don't get upset, I was only teasing.*

technical *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound | become, get** *The conversation was getting a bit technical for me, so I left them to it.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *A lot of the discussions were highly technical.* **| purely** *This is a purely technical problem.* **| a bit, quite, rather, somewhat**

technicality *noun*

ADJ. **complex | legal**

VERB + TECHNICALITY **understand | discuss, go into** *I don't want to go into all the technicalities just now.*

PREP. **on a ~** (= because of a technicality) *The court was forced to release him on a technicality.*

technician *noun*

ADJ. **chief, senior | skilled | inexperienced | qualified | trainee | lab/ laboratory | architectural | dental | computer | lighting, sound** *He works as a sound technician in a recording studio.*

VERB + TECHNICIAN **train** *a need to train technicians in computer aided engineering* > Note at JOB

technique *noun*

ADJ. **effective, powerful, useful | basic, simple | conventional, established, standard, traditional | advanced, modern, sophisticated | ingenious | alternative, experimental | assessment, communication, dating, evaluation, exam/examination, farming, interview, management, manufacturing, marketing, problem-solving, recording, relaxation, research, sales, teaching, training** *She needs to work on her interview technique if she's going to get a job.* **| analytical, mathematical, medical, photographic, scientific, statistical, surgical**

VERB + TECHNIQUE **have** *He has an ingenious technique for dealing with problems of that sort.* **| adopt, apply, deploy, employ, implement, try, use** *On the walls I applied the same technique as I had used for the ceiling.* **| develop, devise, pioneer** *The technique was pioneered in California.* **| acquire, learn, master, practise** *struggling to master the new technique* **| adapt, improve, perfect, work at/on | demonstrate, describe**

TECHNIQUE + VERB **allow sth, enable sth** *Modern freezing techniques enable the chickens to be stored for weeks.* **| work** *The new technique works better than the one it has replaced.* **| be based on sth, be derived from sth** *singing techniques derived from Tibetan music*

PREP. **~ for** *techniques for the storage of data* **| ~ in** *They learn basic techniques in self-defence.*

technology *noun*

ADJ. **current, existing, present-day | emerging, the latest, modern, new** *small businesses that are involved with emerging technologies* **| basic, low | advanced, complex, high, leading-edge, sophisticated, state-of-the-art, up-to-date, white-hot | alternative, innovative** *a car based on alternative technology* **| efficient | communication/communications, computer, digital, energy, information, management, manufacturing, nuclear, production, software, telecommunications | educational, environmental, medical, military**

VERB + TECHNOLOGY **have** *We now have the technologies to transplant limbs.* **| adopt, apply, employ, exploit, introduce, take advantage of, use** *exploiting existing technologies more fully* **| create, develop, improve | be based on** *a car engine based on technology developed for aeroplanes* **| invest in** *The company is investing heavily in new technologies.*

TECHNOLOGY + VERB **develop** *Telecommunications technology is developing fast.* **| allow sth, enable sth** *This technology enables computers to read handwriting.*

PREP. **~ for** *the technology for the extraction of iron ore*

PHRASES **advances in technology** *recent advances in medical technology* **| the impact of (a) technology, science and technology**

tedious *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound | become, get** *Her visits were starting to get a bit tedious.* **| make sth | find sth** *He found committee meetings extremely tedious.*

ADV. **extremely, incredibly, very | almost | a bit, a little, pretty, rather, somewhat**

teenager *noun*

ADJ. **older, young** *a young teenager of fourteen* **| difficult, rebellious | spirited | gauche, gawky**

teens *noun*

ADJ. early *a girl in her early teens* **| late | mid**

VERB + TEENS reach *He didn't want to share a room with his brother once he reached his teens.*

PREP. during your ~ *His parents divorced during his teens.* **| in your ~** *All my children are in their teens.* **| since your ~** *She's had skin problems since her teens.*

teetotal *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **strictly** *I'm strictly teetotal.*

telecommunications *noun*

ADJ. **global, international, national, world | public** *a public telecommunications system* **| digital**

TELECOMMUNICATIONS + NOUN **infrastructure, link, network, services, system** *modernizing their postal and telecommunications networks* **| equipment, products, satellite, technology | company, firm, giant** (*informal*), **group, operator** *Japan's telecommunications giant, NTT* **| business, industry, market, sector**

telegram *noun*

ADJ. **congratulatory**

VERB + TELEGRAM **send (sb) | get, receive**

TELEGRAM + VERB **arrive, come**

PREP. **~ from, ~ to**

telephone *noun*

ADJ. **pay, public | office, private** *The office telephones were all out of order.* **| cellular, cordless, mobile, portable | radio, satellite**

VERB + TELEPHONE **use** *Can I use your telephone?* **| be on** *Don't pester me now?I'm on the telephone. We're not on the telephone, so you'll have to come round to the house.* **| answer, get** *(informal)*, **pick up** *Hang on?I'll just get the telephone.* **| hang up, put down** *She put down the telephone and burst into tears.* **| leave/take off the hook** *I've been trying to phone him all day?he must have left his telephone off the hook.* **| be wanted on** *The waiter came to tell me I was wanted on the telephone.* **| call sb to** *He was called to the telephone just as he was leaving.* **| bug, tap | connect, install | disconnect**

TELEPHONE + VERB **ring, shrill** *The telephone was ringing furiously. The telephone shrilled into the silence.* **| be off the hook**

TELEPHONE + NOUN **number | book, directory | bill | call, message | conversation, enquiry, interview, query, survey | contact** *She is in telephone contact with headquarters.* **| helpline, hotline, support** *The charity has set up a 24-hour telephone helpline.* **| company | banking, marketing, service | charges | cord, headset, receiver | cable, exchange, line, network, switchboard, system, wire | box, kiosk | voice** *A good telephone voice can do much to improve the temper of irate callers.*

PREP. **by ~** *Can I get in touch by telephone?* **| on the ~** *She sounded very distant on the telephone.* **| over the ~** *I don't want to talk about this over the telephone.*

telescope *noun*

ADJ. **powerful | 26-metre, 60-millimetre, etc. | astronomical, optical, radio, space** *images from the Hubble space telescope*

VERB + TELESCOPE **use | look at sth with/without, see sth with/without** *stars that cannot be seen without a telescope* **| look (at sth) through, view sth through | set up** *She set up her telescope on the balcony.* **| build** *building the largest telescope in the world*

PREP. **through a/the ~**

PHRASES **the wrong end of a telescope** *He felt as if he were seeing things through the wrong end of a telescope.*

televise *verb*

ADV. **nationally** *a nationally televised debate* **| live**

television *noun*

ADJ. **cable, closed-circuit, digital, high-definition, satellite, terrestrial | commercial, state | local, national | live** *Millions watched the events on live television.* **| black-and-white, colour | portable**

VERB + TELEVISION **watch** *The children watched television for most of the evening.*

TELEVISION + VERB **broadcast sth, screen sth** *The state television screened pictures of the trial.*

TELEVISION + NOUN **chat show, comedy, documentary, drama, film, news, programme, series, show | debate, interview | advert/advertisement, commercial | audience, viewer | personality, presenter | actor, director | character | cameraman, crew | journalist | appearance** *She recalled her first television appearance forty years ago.* **| career | coverage, exposure** *The Olympics receive extensive television coverage.* **| adaptation** *a television adaptation of the popular novel* **| camera | aerial | channel, network, station | licence | business, company, industry, service | monitor, receiver, set | screen | aerial**

PREP. **in ~** *She works in television.* **| in front of the ~** *He spends hours in front of the television every night.* **| on ~** *We were watching the news on television.*

tell *verb*

1 give sb information

ADV. **bluntly, curtly, flatly** *She told me bluntly it was my own fault.* **| gravely | smugly | truthfully | falsely**

VERB + TELL **want to | be going to** *I was going to tell you?I just didn't get round to it.* **| try to | hate to** *I hate to tell you, but the car's a write-off.* **| let sb** *I tried to tell them but they wouldn't let me.*

PREP. **about** *I never told him about the money.* **| of** *No one had told her of the dangers.* **| to** *He told the story to all his friends.*

2 order sb

ADV. **firmly, sternly** *'Calm down,' he told her firmly.*

temper *noun*

1 **tendency to become angry easily**

ADJ. **bad, fierce, fiery, nasty, terrible, vicious, violent | uncontrollable**

QUANT. **display, fit, flash, outburst** *He broke the chair in a fit of violent temper.*

VERB + TEMPER **have** *He has a nasty temper.* **| control, keep** *I only just managed to keep my temper with him.* **| fly into, lose** *She loses her temper at the drop of a hat* (= without good reason).

TEMPER + VERB **flare, rise** *Tempers flared as the traffic jam became worse.* **| cool (down)**

TEMPER + NOUN **tantrum**

PREP. **in a ~** *She stormed out of the room in a temper.*

PHRASES **keep you temper in check/under control** *He had to learn to keep his temper under control before he could become a teacher.*

2 **way you are feeling**

ADJ. **bad, filthy, foul, ill, terrible** *Peter's comments were responsible for her ill temper.* **| good | frayed** *Frayed tempers at the end of the match led to three players being se* **| uncertain**

VERB + TEMPER **improve | recover, regain** *She regained her good temper after a chat.*

TEMPER + VERB **improve | fray, worsen**

PREP. **in a ~** *He stormed out of the room in a temper.*

PHRASES **not be in the best of tempers** *I wasn't in the best of tempers when I arrived at the meeting.*

temperament *noun*

ADJ. **fiery, violent, volatile | brittle, fragile, highly-strung | cool, equable, even, good, sanguine, unflappable | docile | sunny | questionable, suspect, uncertain | right, wrong** *He doesn't have the right temperament for the job.* **| nervous | romantic | artistic, scientific, etc.**

VERB + TEMPERAMENT **have**

PREP. **by/in ~** *She was fiery by temperament.* **| of ... ~** *a man of an equable temperament*

PHRASES **a display of temperament** *He's given to displays of temperament* (= he often behaves in an emotional way).

temperamental *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become, get**

ADV. **highly, very** *Actors have the reputation of being highly temperamental.* **| a bit, quite**

temperature *noun*

1 **how hot or cold sth is**

ADJ. **high, warm** *Yesterday the town reached its highest ever February temperature.* | **cold, cool, low, sub-zero** | **moderate** | **normal** | **extreme** *Avoid exposing the instrument to extreme temperatures.* | **boiling, freezing, melting** *the boiling temperature of the solvent* | **maximum, minimum** | **average, mean** | **constant, stable, steady** | **daytime** | **daily** | **summer, winter, etc.** | **April, July, etc.** | **global** *The increase in the mean global temperature will be about 0.3°C per decade.* | **air, sea, water, etc.** | **ambient, room** | **oven** | **body** | **surface** *the surface temperature of our planet*

VERB + TEMPERATURE **have** *Some places had temperatures in the forties during the heat wave.* | **heat sth to, raise** *Heat the oven to a temperature of 200°C.* | **reduce** | **reach** | **control** | **expose sth to**

TEMPERATURE + VERB **go up, increase, rise** | **drop, fall, go down, plummet** *Overnight the temperature fell as low as -30°C.*

TEMPERATURE + NOUN **conditions** | **change, difference, increase, rise** | **gradient, range, variation** *a temperature range of 60?74°F* | **control, regulation** | **measurement** | **gauge, sensor**

PREP. **at ~** *Serve the wine at room temperature.* | **in a ~** *This plant grows well in temperatures above 55°F.* | **~ above/below/between, ~ of** *The fish prefer a temperature of 24?27°C.*

PHRASES **a change/variation in temperature, a drop in temperature, an increase/a rise in temperature, a range of temperature**

2 **fever**

ADJ. **high** | **slight**

VERB + TEMPERATURE **have, run** *She's running a temperature.* | **take** *The nurse produced a thermometer and took my temperature.* | **bring down** *They used ice packs to bring down her temperature.*

TEMPERATURE + VERB **go up, rise | come down**

PREP. **~ of** *He's in bed with a temperature of 102.*

temple *noun*

1 **building used for worship**

ADJ. **great** *the great temples of Egypt* **| ancient, classical | sacred | ruined | Buddhist, Hindu, etc. | heathen, pagan**

TEMPLE + NOUN **priest**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *They went to pray in the temple.*

2 **part of the head**

ADJ. **left, right | throbbing**

PREP. **at sb's/the ~ s** *He's greying at the temples.* **| in sb's ~ s** *There was a throbbing in her temples.*

tempo *noun*

1 **speed of an activity/event**

ADJ. **increasing**

VERB + TEMPO **increase, raise, step up** *United stepped up the tempo in the second half.* | **slow (down)**

TEMPO + VERB **quicken | slacken | change**

PHRASES **the tempo of life** *They soon adapted to the tempo of life on the island.*

2 **speed of a piece of music**

ADJ. **fast, quick | slow | moderate | waltz, etc.**

VERB + TEMPO **change**

TEMPO + NOUN **indications, markings**

PREP. **at a … ~** *They took the last movement at an unusually slow tempo.*

temporary *adj.*

VERBS **be** *The arrangement's only temporary.*

ADV. **very | strictly | relatively | only**

tempt *verb*

VERB + TEMPT **could, may/might | try to**

PREP. **into** *Charlotte was tempted into parting with £20 for the painting.* **| with** *restaurants tempting us with delicious cakes*

PHRASES **be almost/half tempted** *I was almost tempted to strip off and plunge straight into the pool.* **| be/feel tempted** *Did you ever feel tempted to cheat?* **| be seriously/severely/sorely/very tempted** *She was sorely tempted to throw the wine in his face.*

temptation *noun*

ADJ. **big, great, overwhelming, strong | constant**

VERB + TEMPTATION **feel, have** *I had the constant temptation to look out of the window.* **| avoid, overcome, resist | give in/way to, succumb to, yield to**

PHRASES **in/out of temptation's way, place/put temptation in sb's way** *Keep your valuables locked away so as not to put temptation in the way of thieves.*

tenancy *noun*

ADJ. **weekly, yearly, etc. | life | shorthold | joint | assured, protected, secure | business, council, local authority**

VERB + TENANCY **hold (sth on)** *The tenancy is held in joint names. The land was held on a yearly tenancy.* **| take over | grant (sb) | terminate | renew | create** *shorthold tenancy created by the Housing Act of 1980*

TENANCY + VERB **end, expire**

TENANCY + NOUN **agreement**

PREP. **under a/the ~** *The club occupies the land under a protected tenancy.*

tenant *noun*

ADJ. **current, existing, sitting** *the sale of council houses to sitting tenants* **| life | protected, secure | joint | potential, prospective | business, council, council-house, housing association, local authority, private**

VERB + TENANT **find | evict**

TENANT + VERB **occupy sth** *The property is currently occupied by a life tenant.*

TENANT + NOUN **farmer**

PHRASES **landlord and tenant** *conflicts that might arise between landlord and tenant*

tend *verb*

ADV. **carefully, lovingly** *She lovingly tended her little garden.*

PREP. **to** *He tended to her every need.*

PHRASES **well-tended** *well-tended lawns*

tendency *noun*

ADJ. **clear, great, marked, strong | slight | greater, growing, increasing** *There's a growing tendency for women to marry later.* **| broad, common, general | in-built, inherent, innate, natural, underlying | alarming, dangerous, unfortunate, worrying** *The later model has an unfortunate tendency to collapse after a few weeks' use.* **| contradictory | centrifugal** *The civil war reinforced the centrifugal tendencies at work within the economy.* **| aggressive, homicidal, suicidal, violent | artistic, criminal, etc.** *He displayed artistic tendencies at an early age.* **| homosexual, lesbian**

VERB + TENDENCY **have | display, reveal, show | reinforce | curb, reduce**

PREP. **~ among** *a worrying tendency among the abused to become abusers* **| ~ for** *There is a tendency for farm sizes to increase.* **| ~ on the part of** *The tendency on the part of the children is to blame their parents for everything.* **| ~ towards** *Industry showed a tendency towards increasingly centralized administration.*

tender *adj.*

1 kind and loving

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become**

ADV. **very | almost** *Her expression became soft, almost tender.* **| quite**

PREP. **towards** *He felt tender and loving towards her.*

2 soft and easy to cut/bite

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **beautifully, very** *This meat is beautifully tender.* **| just** *Boil the potatoes in salted water until just tender.* **| almost | quite**

3 painful when touched

VERBS **be, feel, look** *The back of my neck feels very tender.* **| become**

ADV. **very | rather, slightly**

tender *noun*

ADJ. **highest, lowest | successful | competitive | open, private, public**

VERB + TENDER **lodge, make, put in, submit | invite, put sth out to, seek** *The government invited tenders for a project to computerize the social security system. The laundry service was put out to competitive tender.* **| go out to** *The building of the new school will go out to tender.* **| win | lose | accept**

TENDER + NOUN **offer | document, list | price**

PREP. **by ~** *The property is to be sold by tender.*

tenderness *noun*

ADJ. **extreme, great, infinite | unexpected | loving**

QUANT. **wave** *He felt a brief wave of tenderness towards his old teacher.*

VERB + TENDERNESS **feel | show**

PREP. **with (a) ~** *She spoke with loving tenderness.* **| ~ for/towards** *She felt great tenderness for him.*

PHRASES **tenderness in sb's eyes/voice, etc.** *There was tenderness in his face as he looked at her.*

tendon *noun*

ADJ. **damaged, severed | Achilles**

VERB + TENDON **pull, sever, tear**

TENDON + NOUN **injury, trouble | operation, repair**

tenement *noun*

ADJ. **crowded | crumbling, dilapidated, ruined, run-down | four-storey, two-storeyed, etc.**

TENEMENT + NOUN **block, building, house, housing, slum**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *living in a crowded tenement*

tennis *noun*

ADJ. **men's, women's | junior | professional | international, world | competitive** *Williams' return to competitive tennis after injury* **| lawn, real**

QUANT. **game**

VERB + TENNIS **play | watch**

TENNIS + NOUN **ball, racket | dress, shoe, shorts | court, facilities | camp, centre, club | circuit, scene** *She is a popular figure on the international tennis circuit.* **| championship, competition, event, match, tournament | ace, champion, coach, legend, player, star | fan | commentator, journalist | career** > Special page at SPORT

tenor *noun*

1 **male singing voice/singer**

ADJ. **celebrated, famous, great | high | operatic**

VERB + TENOR **sing** *We persuaded Jake to sing tenor* (= sing the tenor part).

TENOR + VERB **sing** *Three celebrated tenors sang at the president's inauguration.*

TENOR + NOUN **voice | part, solo | register**

2 **atmosphere/feeling**

ADJ. **even** *Nothing ever changes the even tenor of life in our village.* **| general, whole** *The whole tenor of the meeting was very positive.*

tense *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow** *The situation grew increasingly tense.* **| remain**

ADV. **extremely, incredibly, very | increasingly | a bit, a little, rather** *I was feeling a bit tense and restless.*

PREP. **about** *There's no point in getting tense about the situation.*

tense *noun*

ADJ. **future, past, present | continuous, perfect, progressive, simple** *the present simple tense* **| verb**

VERB + TENSE **use | form** *'Have' is the auxiliary verb used to form perfect tenses.*

TENSE + NOUN **marker | system**

PREP. **in the … ~** *In the sentence 'I stroked the cat', 'stroked' is in the past tense.*

tension *noun*

1 **inability to relax**

ADJ. **inner | emotional, muscle/muscular, nervous, pre-menstrual, sexual** *He suffers from nervous tension.*

VERB + TENSION **feel, suffer from** *I feel some tension in my shoulders.* **| sense** *As soon as he entered, he sensed a tension in the air.* **| cause, create | relieve | release**

TENSION + NOUN **headache**

PREP. **~ in** *The hot bath eased the tension in his body.*

PHRASES **a release of tension** *Laughter can be a great release of tension.* **| a sign of tension** *Horses are very sensitive to signs of tension in humans.*

2 **bad feeling between people, countries, etc.**

ADJ. **considerable, great, high** *More police have been sent to areas of high political tension.* **| slight | growing, heightened, increased, increasing, mounting | constant | unresolved | renewed | ethnic, political, racial, religious, social | communal, family, internal, international, national, regional**

VERB + TENSION **cause, create, generate | defuse, ease, reduce** *She often used humour to defuse tension in meetings.* **| heighten**

TENSION + VERB **build up, grow, increase, mount, rise | ease | be palpable**

PREP. **~ among** *The tension among the audience was palpable.* **| ~ between** *tension between local youths and the police* **| ~ in/within** *The redundancies caused greater tensions within the company.* **| ~ over** *There has been increased tension over the border incident.* **| ~ with** *renewed tension with France*

PHRASES **a source of tension** *Money was always a source of tension between her parents.*

3 **of rope, wire, etc.**

ADJ. **string**

VERB + TENSION **adjust** *This old racket needs its string tension adjusted.* **| release**

PREP. **in ~** *The metal is weak in tension.* **| under ~** *Stay clear of cables which are under tension.* **| ~ on** *The sudden tension on the line told me I had hooked a fish.*

tent *noun*

ADJ. **dome, ridge | lightweight | three-person, two-person, etc. | makeshift** *The refugees had been living in makeshift tents for a year.* **| leaking, leaky | circus | beer, dining, luncheon, hospitality, mess, refreshment, tea | cook, cookhouse, cooking** *There was a long queue of troops outside the cookhouse tent.* **| hospital | press | oxygen**

QUANT. **row**

VERB + TENT **erect, pitch, put up, set up** *They pitched their tent in a little clearing in the wood.* **| unzip, zip shut/up | dismantle, take down | pack away/up | share**

TENT + VERB **blow down, collapse**

TENT + NOUN **camp, city** *a tent city housing refugees from the war* **| door, flap, frame, opening, peg, pole, rope, wall**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

PHRASES **the door/flap/roof of a tent**

tenure *noun*

1 **holding an important position**

ADJ. **life, long | brief, short**

VERB + TENURE **have** *She had a long tenure of office.*

PREP. **during sb's ~** *He achieved a lot during his short tenure.*

PHRASES **a tenure of office**

2 **legal right to occupy property/land**

ADJ. **life, secure | fixed-period | housing, land | feudal, freehold**

PHRASES **security of tenure** *The tenants have security of tenure.*

3 **right to remain permanently in your job**

ADJ. **academic**

VERB + TENURE **have | get | grant sb** *She has been granted tenure at Leeds University.*

term *noun*

1 **word or group of words**

ADJ. **specific | blanket, broad, general, generic | clear, precise | vague | ambiguous | strong** *His objection was couched in the strongest terms.* **| mild | colloquial, slang | pejorative** *'Swot' is a pejorative term for someone who studies a lot.* **| technical | clinical, legal, medical, musical, etc.**

VERB + TERM **use | be couched in | define, explain | coin** *The term 'acid rain' was coined in the nineteenth century.*

TERM + VERB **connote sth, denote sth, describe sth, mean sth | apply to sth, be applied to sth, cover sth, refer to sth** *The term 'renewable energy' is applied, for example, to energy deriving from solar radiation.*

PREP. **~ for** *'Old man' is a slang term for 'father'.* **| ~ of** *a term of abuse/endearment*

PHRASES **in glowing terms** *The chairman spoke of the achievements of the company in glowing terms.* **| in no uncertain terms** *We let them know in no uncertain terms just how disappointed we were.* **| in simple terms 2 in … terms** showing what aspect of something you are considering

ADJ. **absolute, material, practical, real** *Income has increased in real terms by 5%.* **| relative** *Iceland has had a mild winter, in relative terms.* **| broad, general | concrete | abstract | international | cultural, economic, financial, money, political, social, etc.** *In money terms, the event was a disaster.*

3 **(usually terms) of an agreement/a relationship**

ADJ. **favourable, unfavourable | express** *the breach of an express term in the contract* **| implied | contract, credit, peace**

VERB + TERM **dictate, negotiate, set** *Our opponents set the terms of the debate.* **| agree on**

PREP. **under the ~s of** *Under the terms of the alliance, Japan was not obliged to enter the war.*

PHRASES **on amicable/friendly/good terms** *The dispute was resolved on amicable terms.* | **on equal terms** *It is a sport in which the top men and women can compete on equal terms.* | **on familiar/first-name terms** *I'm on first-name terms with my boss.* | **on speaking terms** *They haven't been on speaking terms since they had that big row.* | **terms and conditions** *A wide range of accounts are available, with varying terms and conditions.*

4 **period of a school/university year**

ADJ. **college, school, university | autumn, spring, etc. | teaching**

PREP. **during (the) ~** *It's hard to get away during term.* | **in the ~** *We have exams in the summer term.*

PHRASES **the beginning/end of term** *We have exams at the end of term.*

5 **period of time**

ADJ. **long, short** *a long term of imprisonment* | **full** *(medical) The pregnancy went to full term* (= lasted the normal length of time). | **fixed** *The contract was for a fixed term of five years.* | **jail, prison | presidential**

VERB + TERM **serve** *He served a five-year prison term.*

TERM + VERB **expire, run out**

PREP. **at ~** *(medical) Her baby was born at term.*

PHRASES **in the long/medium/short term** *In the long term, our efforts will pay off.* | **a term of imprisonment, a term of office** *The president was sworn in for his second term of office.* | **a term of years** *The lease is granted for a set term of years.*

term *verb* **be termed**

ADV. **aptly | accurately | broadly, loosely | commonly, generally | variously** *This material is variously termed ash, clinker, cinders or slag.* **| euphemistically**

PREP. **as** *His condition would be more accurately termed as 'chronic fatigue'.*

terminal *noun*

1 **place/building that handles goods/passengers**

ADJ. **international | air/airport, bus, ferry, rail/railway | passenger | container, freight | coal, gas, etc.**

TERMINAL + NOUN **building**

PREP. **at/in a/the ~** *We met up at the bus terminal.*

2 **computer equipment**

ADJ. **colour | computer | network | display**

VERB + TERMINAL **connect, disconnect**

TERMINAL + NOUN **keyboard, screen, server**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *There were two students at each terminal.* | **on a/the ~** *pressing keys on a terminal*

terminate *verb*

ADV. **abruptly, prematurely** *His contract was abruptly terminated.* **| swiftly | automatically**

VERB + TERMINATE **be entitled to, be free to**

PHRASES **the right to terminate sth** *Either party has the right to terminate the agreement.*

termination *noun*

1 **ending of sth**

ADJ. **early, premature | sudden**

TERMINATION + NOUN **date**

PHRASES **notice of termination** *The landlord gave notice of the termination of tenancy.* **| a termination of a contract, termination of employment** *You are required to give the company six weeks' notice of termination of employment.*

2 **abortion**

ADJ. **early**

VERB + TERMINATION **have, undergo** *She chose to have an early termination.*

PHRASES **a termination of (a) pregnancy**

terminology *noun*

ADJ. modern | specialist, specialized, technical | computer, legal, medical, scientific, etc.

VERB + TERMINOLOGY use *The article uses rather specialized musical terminology.* **| borrow | standardize**

PREP. in … ~ *The outer walls, in building terminology, are ‘double skin’.*

terrace *noun*

1 **flat area of stone next to a restaurant, etc.**

ADJ. **paved | covered | shaded | sunny | cafe, garden, pool/poolside, roof/rooftop | sun, sunbathing**

VERB + TERRACE **open onto** *The dining room opens onto a paved terrace.*

TERRACE + VERB **overlook sth** *The hotel has a roof terrace overlooking the sea.*

TERRACE + NOUN **bar, garden, restaurant**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *There's a table free on the terrace.*

2 **line of joined houses**

ADJ. **long | two-storey, three-storey, etc.**

TERRACE + NOUN **house** (also **terraced house)**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Our house is in a long Victorian terrace in north London.*

PHRASES **a terrace of houses**

3 **(usually terraces) for growing crops on a hill**

ADJ. **steep | cultivated**

VERB + TERRACE **dig** *The villagers had dug terraces in the hillside.*

terrain *noun*

ADJ. **flat | hilly, mountainous, rocky, rough, rugged, uneven | difficult, harsh, inhospitable** *difficult terrain for cycling* **| familiar | unknown | boggy, marshy**

VERB + TERRAIN **cross, traverse**

PREP. **across/over ~** *It took us the whole day to trek across the rocky terrain.*

terrible *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **really, truly** *I thought something really terrible had happened.* **| absolutely, just, quite, simply** *He suddenly collapsed?it was simply terrible.* **| pretty, rather | not very** *Nothing very terrible happened.*

PREP. **for** *It must have been terrible for the survivors.*

terrified *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem**

ADV. **really, truly | absolutely, completely, quite, utterly | pretty | clearly, obviously, plainly | secretly**

PREP. **at** *She was absolutely terrified at the thought of jumping off the bridge.* **| of** *He's terrified of spiders.*

territory *noun*

1 **area of land that belongs to one country, etc.**

ADJ. **vast | new** *The explorers set off to conquer new territories.* **| former** *former French territories* **| neighbouring, surrounding | home, national | alien, foreign, overseas | enemy, hostile | neutral | colonial, dependent | sovereign** *Troops were stationed on sovereign German territory.* **| conquered, lost, occupied** *a town in British-occupied territory* **| unoccupied | disputed | familiar | uncharted, unexplored, unknown, virgin | dangerous**

VERB + TERRITORY **hold | annex, capture, conquer, invade, occupy, recapture, take | control, govern, rule** *The territory had been controlled by Azerbaijan for many years.* **| cede, surrender | explore** (*often figurative*) *Tired of writing detective novels, she began to explore new territory.* **| settle** *The territory was never densely settled.* **| enter | leave | overfly** *The plane was shot down while overflying enemy territory.* **| stray into** *The soldiers strayed into hostile territory.*

2 **of an animal**

ADJ. **breeding**

VERB + TERRITORY **defend, patrol | mark (out), scent-mark**

terror *noun*

1 **great fear**

ADJ. **absolute, naked, pure, real, sheer | constant**

VERB + TERROR **be filled with, feel, have, shake/tremble with** *He was filled with absolute terror at the sight. the sheer terror she felt when she saw him He had a real terror of darkness.* **| bring, inspire, spread** *The explosion brought terror to hundreds of local residents. He inspired terror in everyone he met.* **| live in** *She lived in terror of her father.* **| flee in** *The shots sent the crowd fleeing in terror.*

PREP. **from ~** *trembling from terror and excitement* **| in ~** *He was found hiding in terror.* **| out of ~** *He cried out, out of pure terror.* **| with ~** *His face was white with terror.*

PHRASES **strike terror into (the heart of) sb** *Its fearsome appearance struck terror into their hearts.*

2 **violent action for political purposes**

ADJ. **political**

VERB + TERROR **resort to, use** *The group has resorted to terror to try to get what it wants.* **| give in to**

TERROR + NOUN **campaign | tactics | gang, group**

PHRASES **an act of terror** *people who carry out acts of terror* **| a campaign of terror** *The bombing formed part of a nationwide campaign of terror.* **| a reign of terror** *The dictator's ten-year reign of terror left over 100,000 dead.*

terrorism *noun*

ADJ. **urban | international, organized, state**

VERB + TERRORISM **combat, fight | defeat | give in to** *This government will not give in to terrorism.*

TERRORISM + NOUN **campaign**

PREP. **~ against** *Public cooperation is vital in the fight against terrorism.*

PHRASES **an act of terrorism** > Note at CRIME(for more verbs)

terrorist *noun*

ADJ. **suspected | armed | international** *The bomb attacks have been attributed to a group of international terrorists.* **| republican, right-wing, separatist, etc.**

TERRORIST + NOUN **band, faction, gang, group, organization, unit | act, action, activity, atrocity, attack, bomb, bombing, campaign, explosion, incident, murder, violence** *an increase in terrorist activity* **| threat | target** *Aircraft remain likely terrorist targets.* **| victim | charge, crime, offence | suspect**

test *noun*

1 examination of sb's knowledge/ability

ADJ. **demanding, difficult, gruelling | easy, simple | fair, good, objective** *This type of exam does not provide a fair test of the student's knowledge.* **| listening, oral, practical, written | cloze, multiple-choice | placement** *He scored well in the placement test and was put in the most advanced class.* **| achievement, aptitude, endurance, intelligence, IQ, language, memory, mental, proficiency, spelling** *The recruits were put through a week of gruelling endurance tests.* **| driving | screen** *Three actors out of a hundred were chosen from the screen test.*

VERB + TEST **do, sit (for), take** *I took my driving test last week.* **| pass | fail | give, set | administer | mark**

TEST + NOUN **result | conditions** *As a final practice for the exam, they had to write two essays under test conditions.* **| paper, questions**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Some of the questions in the history test were rather difficult.* **| ~ in** *a test in mathematics* **| ~ on** *a test on the French Revolution*

2 experiment/medical examination

ADJ. **exhaustive, extensive, rigorous, stringent, thorough | statistical | empirical, experimental | field, laboratory | successful | negative, positive | medical | screening** *screening tests for cancer* **| diagnostic | forensic** *Forensic tests showed that the man had been poisoned.* **| eye, sight | hearing | blood, DNA, skin, urine | dope, drug/drugs | fitness | breath, breathalyser | smear** *The government has launched a campaign advising women of the need for regular smear tests.* **| HIV | pregnancy | personality, psychological, psychometric | lie-detector, polygraph | means | flight, road, safety | atomic, nuclear | alpha, beta** *The revolutionary new system goes into beta test this month.*

QUANT. **number, series** *She underwent a series of blood tests.*

VERB + TEST **have, undergo | do, | use** *The test used in detecting the disease carries its own risks.* **| fail** *Three athletes were sent home after failing drugs tests.*

TEST + VERB **take place | confirm sth, indicate sth, reveal sth, show sth** *The urine test showed some sort of infection.* **| prove negative/positive | come into force** *The new safety test came into force last month.* **| be designed to** *a test designed to detect bowel cancer*

TEST + NOUN **result** *a negative/positive test result* **| data | conditions** *The machine refused to perform properly under test conditions.* **| bed** *The company is using the university data library as a test bed for its new software.* **| site** *protesters at nuclear test sites* **| facility | drive, flight, run** *He's taken the car out on a test run.* **| driver, pilot | aircraft, car | trial** *The new drink went down well in the test trials.* **| methods, procedures | system | performance | subject | equipment, instruments, kit, machine | samples, substances | programme, schedule | phase, stage** *The software is still at the test stage.* **| session** *Subjects had to attend ten test sessions on different days.* **| certificate** *The vehicle did not have a current test certificate at the time of the accident.* **| case** *This was the first action taken by a cancer sufferer against a tobacco company, and was seen as a test case.*

PREP. **~ for** *a test for diabetes* **| ~ on** *a test on the engine*

3 **shows how good, strong, effective, etc. sb/sth is**

ADJ. **good | critical, crucial, key, real, supreme, true, ultimate, vital** *a real test of character* **| serious, severe, stiff, tough | simple | objective | subjective | political**

VERB + TEST **pose** *The calls for tax reform pose a severe test for the government.* **| put sb/sth to** *The latest pay dispute has really put her management skills to the test.* **| face** *The new prime minister is facing his toughest political test so far.*

TEST + NOUN **case**

PHRASES **the acid test** (= a way of **carry out, conduct, perform, run** *Rigorous safety tests are being carried out on the new jet.* deciding whether sth is successful or true) *Whether he would accept a pay cut would be the acid test of his loyalty to the company.* **| stand the test of time** *Whether this new technology will stand the test of time remains to be seen.*

test *verb*

1 examine sth to find out if it is working/what it is like

ADV. **adequately, properly** *The product had not been adequately tested before being put on the market.* | **rigorously** | **extensively** | **fully, exhaustively, thoroughly** | **regularly, routinely** *You should test your brakes regularly.* | **directly** | **empirically, experimentally** *the importance of empirically tested research* | **formally** | **successfully** *The exercise successfully tested the procedures for dealing with a serious oil spillage.* | **clinically, dermatologically** | **out** *a good way to test out his hypothesis*

VERB + TEST **decide to** *We decided to test the theory experimentally.* | **attempt to, seek to, try to** | **be designed to, be intended to** | **be used to** | **be difficult to** *It is difficult to test a potential cure when a disease is ill-defined.*

PREP. **for** *Squeeze the fruit to test for ripeness.* | **on** *We only sell products that have not been tested on animals.*

PHRASES **have sth tested** *I'm having my eyes tested this week.* | **test negative/positive** *Two of the athletes tested positive for illegal drugs.* | **test sth to the limit** *The training tested his body to the very limit.* | **tried and tested** *tried and tested techniques*

2 require all sb's strength/ability/resources, etc.

ADV. **seriously, severely, sorely** *Neither goalkeeper was seriously tested in a rather poor match. There were times when my temper was sorely tested.*

testament *noun*

ADJ. **fine, fitting, worthy**

VERB + TESTAMENT **bear** *The immaculate state of the garden bears testament to a lifetime's effort.*

PREP. **~ to** *The monument is a worthy testament to the courage of the men who fought in the war.*

testify *verb*

VERB + TESTIFY **be prepared to, be willing to | be unwilling to, refuse to | call sb to, force sb to** *The president's former aides were called to testify at his trial.*

PREP. **against** *She refused to testify against her brother.* **| before** *She was unwilling to testify before Congress.* **| for** *a Mafia member who was prepared to testify for the authorities* **| to** *A senior officer testified to the existence of police hit squads. A large number of witnesses testified to the tribunal.*

PHRASES **testify in court**

testimony *noun*

1 **formal statement that sth is true**

ADJ. **reliable | false | oral, sworn, verbal, written | eyewitness, personal | expert | court, trial** *a transcript of the trial testimony*

VERB + TESTIMONY **give | hear**

PREP. **by your ~** *He had by his own testimony taken part in the burglary.* **| in ~** *In testimony before the Crown Court, she described her movements on the day of the murder.* **| ~ about** *The witness was called to give oral testimony about the incident outside the theatre.* **| ~ against** *The court heard her testimony against the accused.* **| ~ before**

2 **proof**

ADJ. **ample, clear, eloquent, powerful, remarkable, striking**

VERB + TESTIMONY **bear, stand as**

PREP. **~ to** *His thick, swollen fingers bore testimony to a lifetime of toil.*

text *noun*

1 writing in a book/newspaper, on a computer, etc.

ADJ. **complete, full** *The newspaper printed the full text of the interview.* | **draft** | **final** | **original** | **main** *The illustrations are printed separately from the main text.* | **accompanying** *The catalogue consists of colour reproductions of the paintings with accompanying text.* | **electronic, handwritten, printed, typewritten, written**

QUANT. **block, body, chunk, line, page, piece, portion** *Hand symbols in the main body of the text cross-refer the reader to the appendices. Use the mouse to move chunks of text from place to place.*

VERB + TEXT **create, draft, write** | **edit, modify** | **highlight** | **cut, delete** | **insert, move, paste** | **scan (in)** | **handle, manipulate, process** *computer programs that process text* | **set, typeset** | **print** | **publish** | **read** | **transcribe** | **annotate** | **stray from** *She strayed from the text in a few places to illustrate some of her more interesting points.*

TEXT + NOUN **file** *The program allows you to import text files from other word processors.* | **editor** *one of the best HTML text editors available* | **message, messaging** *The text message just said 'Hope 2CU@the party'.* > Special page at COMPUTER

2 book or piece of writing to be studied

ADJ. **basic, key, standard** | **recommended, set** *'Antony and Cleopatra' was one of our set texts for A level.* | **prepared** *He stood up and began reading from a prepared text.* | **authoritative, influential** | **introductory** | **academic, dramatic, legal, literary, poetic, sacred, scientific, etc.** *We're studying dramatic texts by sixteenth-century playwrights.* | **biology, mathematics, etc.**

VERB + TEXT **read (from)** | **analyse, deconstruct, interpret, study** | **annotate**

TEXT + NOUN **analysis**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *We discussed the use of metaphor in the text.* | **~ about/on** *a poetic text about growing up in rural England*

textbook *noun*

ADJ. **basic, general, introductory, standard** *Do you have the standard textbook on the subject?* **| recommended | economics, geography, medical, etc. | school**

textile *noun*

ADJ. **embroidered, handwoven, printed, woven | cotton, woollen, etc.**

TEXTILE + NOUN **business, company, factory, firm, industry, manufacture, manufacturer, manufacturing, mill, trade, worker | design, designer**

PREP. **in ~s** *She has a job in textiles.*

PHRASES **the manufacture/production of textiles**

texture *noun*

ADJ. **dense, firm, thick | delicate, fine, light, soft** *Sponge cakes have a light texture.* **| coarse, crumbly, crunchy, rough | creamy, silky, smooth, velvety | spongy | sticky | different, varied | interesting, rich** *She enjoyed the rich texture of the beer.* **| skin, soil, surface | choral, instrumental, musical, string**

VERB + TEXTURE **have | add, give sth** *I use a styling gel to give texture to my hair.*

PREP. **in ~** *The cloth was rough in texture.* **| with a ... ~** *a piece with a dense choral texture*

thank you *noun*

ADJ. **big, special | polite**

VERB + THANK YOU **give, say** *He didn't even say thank you. We said our thank yous and goodbyes to the hosts and went to catch a cab.* **| get**

THANK YOU + NOUN **letter, present**

PREP. **~ for** *She got a special thank you for all her hard work.* **| ~ to** *a big thank you to the hospital staff*

thank *verb*

ADV. **gratefully, profusely, properly, sincerely, warmly** *I would like to thank you all most sincerely. He thanked her warmly for the meal.* **| politely | personally | publicly**

VERB + THANK **must, want to, would like to** *I wanted to thank him personally.*

PREP. **for** *I haven't thanked Bill properly yet for his present.*

thankful *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, very | just** *I'm just thankful that my mother never lived to see this.*

PREP. **for** *We were thankful for the chance to rest.*

thanks *noun*

ADJ. **big, special** *A big thanks to all of you who supported our fund-raising campaign.* **| heartfelt, sincere, warm | grateful**

VERB + THANKS **express, give, say** *We would like to express our warmest thanks for all you've done. I said thanks and put the phone down.* **| nod, smile** *She smiled her thanks as the car drove off.* **| get, receive** *You'll get little thanks from him for all your trouble.* **| accept | deserve** *Their generosity deserves our grateful thanks.*

THANKS + VERB **go to sb** *Thanks go to Claire Potter for making the hall available to us.*

PREP. **as/in ~ for** *He got a bottle of whisky in thanks for his cooperation.* **| ~ to** *He gave thanks to God for the safe return of his son.*

PHRASES **a letter/vote/word of thanks** *The chairperson proposed a vote of thanks to the volunteers.* **| many thanks** *Many thanks for the flowers.* **| thanks be to God** *We were all pulled out alive, thanks be to God.*

thaw *noun*

ADJ. **rapid, sudden | spring, summer** *The arctic shore remains frozen until the summer thaw.*

THAW + VERB **begin, come, set in**

PREP. **during a/the ~** *The river often floods during the thaw.*

thaw *verb*

ADV. **completely** *Make sure the meat has thawed completely before cooking.* **| a little** *(figurative) Relations between the two countries thawed a little after the talks.* **| visibly** *(figurative) The old nun was as imperious as ever, but visibly thawed when she saw the children.* **| out** *Has the meat thawed out yet?*

theatre *noun*

1 **where you go to see plays, etc.**

ADJ. **large | little, small | crowded, packed** *The theatre was packed for the opening night.* **| open-air | puppet** *The pier has a unique little puppet theatre.*

VERB + THEATRE **go to, visit** *I haven't been to the theatre for ages.*

THEATRE + NOUN **ticket | production | audience | manager, staff**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *We were at the theatre last night.* **| in a/the ~** *There's a bar in the theatre.*

2 **drama**

ADJ. **good, great** *He writes the sort of dialogue that makes great theatre.* **| live | amateur | commercial, professional | fringe, provincial, repertory** *There was some good fringe theatre at the festival.* **| classical, contemporary, experimental, modern, music/musical, popular | street** *We saw some good street theatre while we were in Paris.* **| community, youth | political** *(often figurative) The Chancellor's speech was an absorbing piece of political theatre.*

QUANT. **piece**

VERB + THEATRE **study** *He is studying Greek theatre.*

THEATRE + NOUN **studies | critic**

3 **work of acting in/ producing plays**

VERB + THEATRE **be in, work in | go into** *He wants to go into the theatre when he finishes university.*

THEATRE + NOUN **director, producer | company, group**

4 **in a hospital**

ADJ. **operating**

VERB + THEATRE **take to** *He's already been taken to theatre for the operation.*

THEATRE + NOUN **nurse, sister**

PREP. **in (the) ~** *She was in the operating theatre for two hours.*

theft *noun*

ADJ. **petty | attempted | car, cattle, etc.**

PREP. **~ from** *They are accused of theft from a newsagent's shop.* **| ~ of** *She admitted the theft of three pairs of trousers.* > Note at CRIME(for verbs)

theme *noun*

ADJ. **basic, central, dominant, important, key, main, major, underlying | broad, general | common, popular, universal** *universal themes of love and loneliness* **| constant, familiar, favourite, recurrent, recurring | related | unifying | contemporary, topical | historical, religious, etc. | campaign, conference, research | musical** *The film's haunting musical theme stayed in my head for days.*

VERB + THEME **develop, discuss, examine, explore** *His later novels develop the theme of alienation.* **| warm to** *'Our work', he continued, warming to his theme, 'will be a milestone in scientific history.'*

THEME + VERB **emerge** *Several familiar themes emerged from the discussion.* **| run through sth** *The same themes run through all her novels.*

THEME + NOUN **music, song, tune | park, pub**

PREP. **on the ~ of** *He gave a talk on the theme of teenage unemployment.*

PHRASES **variations on a theme** *Most of the essays appear to be variations on a few central themes.*

theology *nou*n

ADJ. **dogmatic, liberal, natural, practical, systematic | ecumenical | traditional | eastern, western | Christian, Hindu, etc. | Catholic, Protestant, etc.** > Note at SUBJECT(for verbs and nouns)

theoretical *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **highly | purely** *This research is purely theoretical.* **| largely | rather**

theory *noun*

ADJ. **complete | partial | general** *Einstein's general theory of relativity* **| coherent | unified** *the existence of a grand unified theory that determines everything in the universe* **| current, new | classical** *the classical theory of gravity* **| pet** *One of her pet theories is that people who restrict their calorie intake live longer.* **| conflicting | critical | abstract** *His comments are just abstract theory and show little understanding of the realities of the situation.* **| economic, legal, linguistic, literary, political, scientific, social, etc. | post-modernist, structuralist, etc.** *Current feminist theory consists of several different trends.* **| conspiracy** *a conspiracy theory about the princess's death* **| chaos, game, quantum, number, particle, probability, relativity, etc.**

QUANT. **set** *Each school has its own set of theories.*

VERB + THEORY **have, hold | advance, develop, formulate, produce, propose | work on** *Police are working on the theory that the murderer was known to the family.* **| refute | confirm, prove | disprove | challenge, test**

THEORY + VERB **evolve | hold sth, suggest sth**

PREP. **in ~** *In theory, these machines should last for ten years.* **| ~ about** *He has a theory about why dogs walk round in circles before going to sleep.*

PHRASES **theory and practice** *the distinction/relationship between theory and practice*

therapist *noun*

ADJ. **trained | experienced | beauty, occupational, sex, speech** > Note at DOCTOR> Note at JOB

therapy *noun*

ADJ. **alternative, complementary | behaviour, speech | aversion, occupational, regression, relaxation, shock, etc. | family, group** *They discuss their problems in group therapy sessions.*

QUANT. **course**

VERB + THERAPY **need, require | be given, have, receive, undergo** *He will have to have shock therapy.* **| be in, go into** *I went into therapy because my doctor suggested it.*

THERAPY + NOUN **group, session**

PHRASES **a form of therapy** *the use of hypnosis as a form of therapy*

thermometer *noun*

ADJ. **accurate | clinical | digital, mercury | rectal | meat, sugar** *Check that the roast is cooked right through, using a meat thermometer.*

VERB + THERMOMETER **read**

THERMOMETER + VERB **measure sth**

THERMOMETER + NOUN **reading**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *the reading on the thermometer*

thesis *noun*

1 **part of a university degree**

ADJ. **doctoral, MA, Master's, MSc, PhD, etc. | chemistry, geology, etc. | research**

VERB + THESIS **work on | complete, do, write (up) | submit | publish**

THESIS + NOUN **research, title, topic**

PREP. **by ~** *She completed an MSc by thesis.* **| in a/the ~** *research presented in a thesis* **| ~ about/on** *He's doing a doctoral thesis on the early works of Shostakovich.*

2 **statement of an idea/a theory**

ADJ. **basic, central, main**

VERB + THESIS **prove, support** *The results of the experiment support his central thesis.* **| disprove | advance** *He advanced the thesis that too much choice was burdensome to people.* **| challenge, refute**

PREP. **~ about** *a thesis about the effects of new technology on skills*

thick *adj.*

1 **of solid things/growing things**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem**

ADV. **extremely, really, very | fairly, quite, rather, relatively** *Use fairly thick wads of newspaper.* **| enough, sufficiently** *a screen of trees thick enough to conceal the building entirely*

2 **of liquid**

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get** *The paint's got too thick. I'll have to thin it down.*

ADV. **very | fairly, quite, rather | enough, sufficiently**

3 **of fog/smoke/air**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, grow** *The air had grown thick and smoky.*

ADV. **very | fairly, quite, rather**

PREP. **with** *The air was thick with dust. (figurative) The atmosphere was thick with tension.*

thief *noun*

ADJ. **would-be** *The alarm is usually sufficient to deter a would-be thief.* **| common, petty | professional | casual, opportunist | sneak | car, jewel, etc.**

QUANT. **gang**

VERB + THIEF **catch**

THIEF + VERB **take sth, snatch sth, steal sth** *A thief snatched her handbag containing her wages.* **| escape with sth, get away with sth, make off with sth | break in | strike** *The thief struck while the family were out.*

thigh *nou*n

ADJ. **fat, flabby, plump | beefy, hard, huge, muscular, powerful, strong, sturdy | lean, slender, slim | bare, naked | silken | inner**

THIGH + NOUN **bone, muscle | injury, strain**

thin *adj.*

1 **of solid things: not thick**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, wear** *The fabric was wearing thin. (figurative) That joke is wearing a little thin.*

ADV. **extremely, incredibly, very, wafer-***a plate of wafer-thin bread and butter* **| a bit, fairly, a little, quite, rather, relatively | enough** *a sliver of rock thin enough to be translucent*

2 **not fat**

VERBS **be, look | become, get, grow**

ADV. **extremely, painfully, pathetically, pitifully, terribly, very** *The old horse was painfully thin.* **| fairly, quite, rather** *She's tall and quite thin.*

3 **of liquids**

VERBS **be, look, seem** *The paint looks a bit thin.* **| become, get** *Be careful that the mixture doesn't get too thin.*

ADV. **terribly, very | a bit, rather**

thing *noun*

1 used instead of the name of an object

ADJ. **basic, essential** *I need to buy a few basic things like bread and milk.*

VERB + THING **make** *He makes things out of wood.*

2 things: objects/clothing/tools

ADJ. **swimming, tennis, etc. | breakfast, lunch, etc.** *He hadn't washed up the dinner things yet.*

VERB + THING **get together, pack** *Come on kids, get your things together?we're going.* **| put on, take off** *Hang on a second?I'll just take off my painting things* (= clothes). **| clear away/up, put away, tidy away/up** *Clear your painting things* (= materials) *away.*

3 (used with negatives) anything

VERB + THING **hear, know, notice, see** *I can't see a thing without my glasses.* **| miss** *I'm going to arrive early, because I don't want to miss a thing.* **| do** *She's tricked you, and you can't do a thing about it.* **| eat** *I haven't eaten a thing all day.* **| say** *Nobody said a thing when he appeared with a wig on.* **| mean** *Fame and fortune don't mean a thing if you don't have happiness.*

4 fact/event/situation/action

ADJ. **good, great, positive** *It's a good thing you remembered to turn off the gas! The best thing would be to apologize straight away. If she works hard she's capable of great things. Try to look on your rejection as a positive thing.* **| lovely, nice, wonderful | bad, negative** *Too much studying can be a bad thing. It's no bad thing to express your anger.* **| appalling, awful, dreadful, horrible, terrible** *That was a horrible thing to say to her.* **| amazing, curious, exciting, extraordinary, funny, interesting, remarkable, startling, strange, striking, surprising, weird** *The amazing thing is, he wouldn't accept any money!* **| ridiculous | frightening, worrying | annoying | foolish, silly, stupid** *I admit it was a foolish thing to do.* **| bloody** (*taboo*), **damn/damned | crucial, key, main, important,**

vital *The key thing is to remain calm.* | **little, the slightest, small, trivial** *I give thanks for every little thing. He loses his temper at the slightest thing. It's such a small thing to ask.* | **easy** *Apologizing is never the easiest thing to do.* | **hard** | **brave, dangerous, risky** | **natural** *Entertaining people is the most natural thing in the world for her.* | **close, close-run** *I managed to get on the train, but it was a close-run thing* (= I almost missed it). | **rare** | **everyday** *She helped with the everyday things like shopping and cooking.* | **usual** *I did my usual thing of losing my keys.* | **nearest, next best** *He's the nearest thing to a film star I've ever met. I wanted to be a musician, but teaching music is the next best thing.* | **real** *It's just a practice, not the real thing.* | **the whole** *Let's forget the whole thing.* | **last** *The last thing she wanted was to upset her parents.*

QUANT. **loads, lots, plenty** *I've got loads of things to do today.*

VERB + THING **do** *He has a funny way of doing things. It's impossible to get things done when you're looking after a baby.* | **make up, say** *Who's been saying things about me?* | **be hearing/imagining/seeing** *There's nobody at the door?you must have been imagining things!*

THING + VERB **go on, happen, occur** *There are some weird things going on in that house. A funny thing happened to me this morning ...*

PREP. **~ about** *The best thing about Alan is he's always honest.*

PHRASES **among/amongst other things** *Amongst other things, I have to deal with mail and keep the accounts.* | **have better things to do** *I've got better things to do than stand here chatting all day!* | **kind/sort of thing** *They go canoeing, climbing, that sort of thing.* | **know/learn/teach sb a thing or two** *Jack knows a thing or two about kids?he's got five.* | **no such thing** *There's no such thing as ghosts* (= they don't exist). | **such a thing/a thing like that** *People defraud their companies every day, but Mike would never do such a thing!* | **a thing of the past** *Books may one day become a thing of the past.*

5 **things: general situation, as it affects sb**

VERB + THING **think over/through** *She's taken a few days off to think things over.* | **look at, see** *Try to look at things from my point of view.* | **discuss, talk over, talk through** *We arranged to meet and talk things over.* | **explain** | **accept** *You should suggest changes, rather than accept things as they are.* | **change** | **arrange, deal with, handle, look after, run, sort out** *Who's going to look after things while you're away? I want to get things sorted out before I go away.* | **straighten out** | **mess up, spoil** | **patch up** *They patched things up a week after their quarrel.* |

speed along/up *It might speed things up if you phone them.* | **delay, hold up, slow down**

THING + VERB **stand** *As things stand at present, he seems certain to win.* | **be going** *He asked me how things were going.* | **change** | **go (according) to plan, go well, work (out)** *I just don't know if things are going to work out.* | **get better, improve, look up** *We were in trouble but now things are looking up.* | **look bright/good/ promising/rosy** *There was a week to go to the deadline and things were looking good.* | **look bleak/grim** *Things looked bleak for the future of the factory.* | **be in/ get into a mess, get out of hand, get/run out of control, go wrong** | **get worse, go downhill** | **turn out** *I'm sure things will turn out OK.* | **come to a head** *Things came to a head when money was found to be missing from the account.* | **get to sb** *Try not to let things get to you.*

PHRASES **all/other things being equal** *All other things being equal, the bigger fighter should win.* | **all things considered** *All things considered, I think we've done a good job.* | **get/keep things going/moving** *They hired temporary staff to keep things going over the summer.* | **get/put things straight** *I marched into his office to get a few things straight.* | **have/keep things in hand/under control** *He offered to help, but she assured him she had things in hand.* | **have things on your mind** *We chatted about school, but I could tell she had other things on her mind.* | **let things slide/slip** *She'd started the term studying hard, but now was beginning to let things slip.* | **let things take their course/happen** *Don't worry about it?just let things take their course.* | **make things better, easier, difficult, worse, etc.** *Her apology only served to make things worse.* | **put things right** *He apologized, and asked for a chance to put things right.* | **things to come** *The pay cut was just a taste of things to come.*

6 what is needed/socially acceptable

ADJ. **proper, right** *He did the right thing and went back to his wife. I did all the right things but I couldn't get the engine to start.* | **wrong** *She always manages to say the wrong thing.* | **logical, obvious, prudent, sensible** *Calling a doctor seemed the logical thing to do.* | **decent, done, honourable** *He did the decent thing and resigned. It's not the done thing to ask someone how much they earn.* | **very** *Iced tea? the very thing!*

VERB + THING **do** | **say**

PHRASES **just the thing, not quite the thing** *It wouldn't be quite the thing to turn up in running gear.*

7 **a person/an animal**

ADJ. **little, old** *The baby's a pretty little thing.* **| silly | poor** *You must be starving, you poor thing!*

think *noun*

ADJ. **long | hard**

VERB + THINK **give sth, have**

PREP. **~ about** *I've had a long, hard think about it.*

think *verb*

1 **have an opinion**

ADV. **really | personally** *I personally think it's all been a lot of fuss over nothing.* **| honestly** *Did you honestly think I would agree to that?* **| never** *I never thought you would carry out your threat.*

VERB + THINK **be inclined to** *I'm inclined to think we've been a little harsh on her.*

PREP. **about** *I still don't know what he really thinks about it.* **| of** *What did you think of the film?*

2 **have an idea**

ADV. **suddenly**

PREP. **of** *I suddenly thought of a way I could help.*

3 **consider/reflect**

ADV. **carefully, deeply, (long and) hard** *She thought long and hard before accepting his offer.* **| fleetingly | rationally** *He seemed to have lost the ability to think rationally.* **| frantically** *What can I do now? he thought frantically.* **| contemptuously, despairingly, dully, glumly, grimly, guiltily, indignantly, irritably, miserably, resentfully | ruefully, wistfully, wryly**

VERB + THINK **dread to, hate to, shudder to, tremble to** *I hate to think what would have happened if we hadn't arrived.*

PREP. **about** *Think about what you are going to do next.* **| of** *I often think of Jane.*

thinker *noun*

ADJ. **great, leading** *Einstein was one of the world's greatest thinkers.* **| deep, profound, serious | clear, logical | lateral | quick | creative, original | strategic | political, religious, scientific, etc. | conservative, liberal, radical, etc. | Christian, Marxist, western, etc.**

PREP. **~ on** *a leading thinker on constitutional law*

thinking *noun*

1 using your mind to think

ADJ. **deep, hard, serious** *This topic requires a lot of deep thinking.* | **good** *Yes, we'll phone them instead?that's good thinking* (= a good idea). | **clear, logical** | **muddled** | **quick** | **forward** *The school would have made better use of the money with a little forward thinking.* | **positive** | **abstract, analytical, critical** | **creative, independent, innovative, original** | **lateral** | **wishful** *His claims to be a millionaire are just wishful thinking.*

QUANT. **piece** *a brilliant piece of lateral thinking*

VERB + THINKING **do** *We have some hard thinking to do before we agree to the plan.* | **apply** *The book shows you how to apply critical thinking to your studies.*

PREP. **~ behind** *It was difficult to see what the thinking was behind their eventual decision.*

2 opinion

ADJ. **contemporary, current, modern** | **fresh, new** | **conventional, old, traditional** | **divergent** | **government** | **Labour, Republican, etc.** | **economic, educational, historical, political, scientific, etc.** *Traditional educational thinking placed importance on learning by rote.* | **feminist, socialist, etc.** | **military, strategic**

VERB + THINKING **develop, shape** | **clarify, explain** | **change** *They are unlikely to have changed their thinking so soon.* | **dominate** *His writings on motorized warfare dominated strategic thinking in the 1930s.*

PREP. **in … ~** *contemporary trends in feminist thinking* | **~ about/on** *What is the current Conservative thinking on social security?*

PHRASES **a shift in sb's thinking** *There's been a shift in government thinking on genetically-modified food.* | **to sb's way of thinking** (= in sb's opinion) *To my way of thinking, it would just be a massive waste of money.*

third *noun*

ADJ. **first, middle, last** *the last third of the novel* **| bottom, lower | top, upper** *Most of the pupils' marks were in the upper third of the range.*

VERB + THIRD **divide sth into** *He divided the money into thirds.*

PREP. **~ of** *Over a third of sales were made over the Internet.*

PHRASES **about/almost/at least/over a third, between a third and a half, a third to (a) half** *The discount is a third to a half of the full price.*

thirst *noun*

1 **desire to drink**

ADJ. **great, intense, raging, terrible, unquenchable**

VERB + THIRST **suffer from** *Many of the refugees were suffering badly from thirst.* **| quench, slake | die of | work up** *After walking five miles, they had worked up a great thirst.*

2 **strong desire**

ADJ. **great, unquenchable** *He has an unquenchable thirst for knowledge.*

VERB + THIRST **have | satisfy**

PREP. **~ for**

thought *noun*

1 **sth that you think**

ADJ. **comforting, good, happy, pleasant, positive** *It was a comforting thought that at least her father hadn't suffered. Before going on stage, I breathe deeply and think positive thoughts.* | **anxious, appalling, awful, bad, black, dark, depressing, disquieting, disturbing, gloomy, negative, sad, sobering, terrible** *A disturbing thought suddenly struck me.* | **interesting, intriguing** | **first, immediate, initial** *My immediate thought was that he must be joking.* | **sudden** | **little** | **fleeting, passing** | **conscious** | **unspoken** | **waking** *She occupied all his waking thoughts.*

VERB + THOUGHT **have, think** *I've just had a thought* (= an idea). *He remained aloof, thinking his own thoughts.* | **have** *Let me have your thoughts on the report.* | **express, write down** | **read** *She often seems to know what I'm thinking, as though she can read my thoughts.* | **dread, not be able to bear, not like, not relish** *She said she couldn't bear the thought of living alone in the house. I don't like the thought of you walking home alone.*

THOUGHT + VERB **come/pop into your mind, come to sb, cross your mind, go/flash/pass/race through your mind, hit sb, occur to sb, strike sb** *The thought crossed my mind that Jim might know the answer. All kinds of thoughts raced through my mind.* | **~s turn to sth** *My thoughts turned to home.*

PREP. **~ about** *He lay there thinking gloomy thoughts about life and death.* | **~ of** *The children were overjoyed at the thought of going to the seaside on holiday.* | **~ on** *They asked him what his thoughts were on the government's announcement.*

PHRASES **just a thought** *Would Mark be able to help? It's just a thought.* | **keep your thoughts to yourself** *He's not the kind of man to keep his thoughts to himself.* | **the mere/very thought of sth** *The mere thought of lice makes my head itch.* | **push/put the thought aside/away, push the thought from/out of your mind**

2 **process/act of thinking**

ADJ. **careful, proper** | **deep, profound** *She is known for her deep thought and intellectual ways.* | **coherent** *He was so upset, he was incapable of coherent thought.* | **logical, rational** | **analytical, critical** | **abstract** | **creative** | **free,**

independent | conscious *My job is so repetitive, it does not require much conscious thought.* **| fresh** *We have to give the matter fresh thought.* **| second** *I accepted the offer without a second thought.*

VERB + THOUGHT **give sb/sth, spare (sb)** *I've given the matter careful thought. Don't give it another thought* (= to tell sb not to worry after they have said they are sorry). *Spare a thought for us?we'll be working through the night to finish the report.* **| direct, turn** *I tried to turn my thoughts to pleasanter things.* **| provoke** *The article was intended to provoke thought.* **| be deep in, be lost in** *She was deep in thought and didn't hear me call her.*

THOUGHT + VERB **go into sth** *Not enough thought has gone into this essay.*

THOUGHT + NOUN **pattern, process** *I couldn't see what thought processes led him to that conclusion.*

PREP. **without ~** *They had acted rashly, without thought.*

PHRASES **after a moment's thought** *After a moment's thought, I accepted his offer.* **| freedom of thought** *The constitution guarantees freedom of thought and belief.* **| a line/mode/train of thought** *That line of thought can only lead to one conclusion. He hesitated, as though he had lost his train of thought.* **| thought-provoking** *There was a thought-provoking article about poverty in the paper.* **| with no thought for sth** *He ran into the burning house with no thought for his own life.*

3 ideas

ADJ. **modern | 19th-century, etc. | Eastern, Western | intellectual, philosophical, scientific | economic, political | feminist, liberal, socialist, etc.**

PHRASES **a school of thought** *They belong to different schools of thought.* **| a strand of thought** *three different strands of scientific thought*

4 kindness

ADJ. **kind, kindly, nice** *Thank you for the flowers?it was a very kind thought.*

thrash *verb*

1 **hit sb many times**

ADV. **soundly** *That boy deserves to be soundly thrashed!*

PREP. **with** *He thrashed the poor servant with his stick.*

2 **move your arms and legs in an uncontrolled way**

ADV. **helplessly, violently, wildly | about, around** *The cow fell on its side and thrashed about wildly.*

3 **defeat sb easily in a game**

ADV. **soundly** *The visiting side were soundly thrashed.*

thrashing *noun*

1 **hitting**

ADJ. **good, sound**

VERB + THRASHING **give | get** *He got a sound thrashing once his father found out.* **| deserve**

2 **defeat**

VERB + THRASHING **give | have, suffer, take** *The team suffered a 4-0 thrashing on Sunday.*

PREP. **~ of** *Richmond clinched promotion with a 50-3 thrashing of Roundhay.*

thread *noun*

1 **piece of cotton, etc.**

ADJ. **strong | delicate, fine, fragile, thin | loose | matching | cotton, silk, etc. | embroidery, sewing | warp, weft**

QUANT. **length, piece**

VERB + THREAD **spin | catch, pull** *You've pulled a thread in your jumper.*

PHRASES **hanging by a thread** *(often figurative) The player's career is hanging by a thread after this latest injury to his knee.*

2 **connection between ideas, parts of a story, etc.**

ADJ. **central, main | common, connecting | consistent, continuous | narrative | loose** *Apart from one or two loose threads, the police now had the complete picture of what happened.*

VERB + THREAD **follow, trace** *I found it hard to follow the main thread of his argument.* **| lose** *The speaker lost his thread halfway through the talk.* **| keep** *She struggled against all the interruptions to keep the thread of her argument.* **| draw together, pick up, pull together, weave** *The author eventually picks up the various threads of the plot and weaves them into a masterly conclusion.*

THREAD + VERB **run through sth** *A continuous thread runs through all the versions of the legend.* **| emerge** *On studying the different historians' accounts, common threads emerge.* **| unravel** *As the film progresses, the threads of the plot slowly begin to unravel.*

threadbare *adj.*

VERBS **be | wear sth** *The carpets had worn rather threadbare.*

ADV. **a little, rather**

threat *noun*

1 **expression of intention to do harm/punish**

ADJ. **dire, terrible** *Despite dire threats of violence from extremist groups, the protest passed off peacefully.* | **empty, idle** *The kids took no notice of the teacher's idle threats.* | **implied, veiled** *The company's pay offer was accompanied by thinly-veiled threats of redundancies if it was rejected.* | **explicit** | **physical, violent** | **verbal** | **bomb, death, suicide**

VERB + THREAT **issue, make, utter** | **receive** | **carry out** *It's unwise to make threats that you cannot carry out.* | **lift, withdraw** *Teachers have lifted their threat of strike action.* | **reduce** | **give in to** *The government refused to give in to the hijackers' threats.*

PREP. **~ against** *The accused made death threats against a notable politician.*

2 **possible danger**

ADJ. **big, considerable, dangerous, deadly, grave, great, major, real, serious, significant** | **main** | **growing, increasing** | **constant, continual, continuous, ever-present, permanent** | **renewed** *The national park is under renewed threat from road-building schemes.* | **direct, immediate, imminent** *The opposition presents no immediate threat to the government.* | **insidious** | **long-term, short-term** | **potential** | **apparent, perceived** | **external** *The government was faced with internal rebellion as well as external threats.* | **physical** | **political** | **environmental** | **military, nuclear, terrorist**

VERB + THREAT **be, pose, present, represent** *the environmental threat posed by oil spillages* | **consider sth (as), perceive sth as, regard sth as, see sth as, view sth as** *Translators do not yet perceive computers as a threat to their livelihood.* | **face, meet**

PREP. **under ~** *Many wild plants are under threat of extinction.* | **~ from** *the threat from overfishing* | **~ of** *a threat of violence* | **~ to** *The junta reacted violently to the perceived threat to its authority.*

threaten *verb*

1 **warn sb that you may hurt, kill or punish them**

ADV. **publicly | personally, physically** *He says he was physically threatened in an attempt to get him to sign over his rights.* **| repeatedly** *She had repeatedly threatened to commit suicide.* **| allegedly, reportedly**

PREP. **with** *She threatened him with a gun.*

PHRASES **feel threatened** *I never felt threatened by him.*

2 **be likely to harm/destroy sth**

ADV. **gravely, seriously, severely** *social unrest which seriously threatens the stability of the whole area* **| increasingly | directly | constantly, continually** *Our marriage was constantly threatened by his other women.*

VERB + THREATEN **could | appear to, seem to**

PHRASES **be threatened with sth** *Many species are now threatened with extinction.*

threatening *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound | become | regard sth as, see sth as**

ADV. **extremely, seriously, very** *seriously threatening behaviour* **| increasingly | almost | rather, slightly, somewhat | potentially**

threshold *noun*

1 **doorway**

VERB + THRESHOLD **cross**

PREP. **across/over the ~** *He hesitated before stepping across the threshold.* **| on the ~** *She stood on the threshold, unsure whether to enter.*

2 **level**

ADJ. **high, low | maximum, minimum | critical | earnings, tax | boredom, pain** *She has an extremely low boredom threshold.*

VERB + THRESHOLD **have | reach** *The number of people with the disease is reaching a critical threshold.* **| cross, exceed | set** *They earn wages below the decency threshold set by the EU.* **| raise | lower**

THRESHOLD + NOUN **level, value** *Below a certain threshold level a person will not be able to detect sound.*

PREP. **above/below a/the ~** *Her wages are below the income tax threshold.*

thrill *noun*

ADJ. **big, great, real | cheap | vicarious** *He gets vicarious thrills from watching people bungee jumping.*

VERB + THRILL **enjoy, experience, feel, get, have | give sb**

THRILL + NOUN **seeker**

PREP. **for a/the ~** *He used to steal from shops just for the thrill of it.* **| ~ from/out of** *He used to get cheap thrills out of frightening the girl next door.* **| ~ of** *She felt a thrill of excitement as the mountains came into view.*

thrilled *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem**

ADV. **really | absolutely, quite, utterly | not exactly** *He's not exactly thrilled at the prospect of working for his old rival.* **| secretly**

PREP. **at** *I was secretly thrilled at the prospect of going there again.* **| with** *I'm really thrilled with the results.*

PHRASES **thrilled to bits** *I was thrilled to bits when my son won the cup.*

thriller *noun*

ADJ. **gripping | best-selling | comedy, erotic, mystery, political, psychological, sci-fi/science fiction, spy** *a gripping political thriller*

VERB + THRILLER **publish, write** *She had always wanted to write a spy thriller.* **| read**

THRILLER + NOUN **writer**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *one of the characters in the thriller* **| ~ by** *a new thriller by this American writer*

thrive *verb*

ADV. **positively | still** *The glass industry still thrives there.*

VERB + THRIVE **seem to | continue to** *These traditions continued to thrive.* **| fail to** *(medical)*

PREP. **on** *Some people seem to thrive on stress.*

PHRASES **failure to thrive** *(medical) concerned about their baby daughter's failure to thrive*

throat *noun*

1 **front part of the neck**

VERB + THROAT **cut, slash, slit**

PREP. **by the ~** *She seized her attacker by the throat.*

2 **passage down which air and food pass**

ADJ. **bad, infected, sore | dry**

VERB + THROAT **clear** *She cleared her throat, then began to speak.*

THROAT + VERB **ache, hurt | close (up), constrict, seize up, tighten** *His throat constricted with fear when he saw the knife.* **| dry, go dry**

THROAT + NOUN **infection | lozenge, pastille**

PREP. **down the/your ~** *She felt the cold water trickle down her throat.*

PHRASES **the back of your throat** *The medicine left a sour taste in the back of my throat.* **| a lump in your throat** *He felt a lump in his throat, and tears forming in his eyes.*

throb *noun*

ADJ. **deep, heavy | dull | steady** *the steady throb of the engine*

VERB + THROB **feel, hear**

PREP. **~ of** *a throb of pain*

throb *verb*

ADV. **painfully | angrily** *The vein at his temple throbbed angrily.* **| rhythmically**

VERB + THROB **begin to, start to**

PREP. **with** *Her head throbbed with pain.*

throne *noun*

ADJ. **empty, unoccupied, vacant | imperial, papal, royal**

VERB + THRONE **ascend, assume, come to, gain, inherit, succeed to, take** *Elizabeth I came to the throne in 1558.* **| seize, usurp | occupy | give up, renounce | lose | regain | put sb on | topple sb from** *Left-wing revolutionaries toppled the king from his throne.* **| restore sb to | be in line to** *The prince is second in line to the throne behind his brother.*

PREP. **on the ~** *Queen Victoria remained on the throne for over sixty years.*

PHRASES **sb's accession to the throne, a claimant/pretender to the throne** *a claimant to the vacant Spanish throne* **| sb's claim/right to the throne, an heir to the throne** *The marriage failed to produce an heir to the throne.* **| the power behind the throne** *(figurative) According to the papers, the prime minister's private secretary is the real power behind the throne.* **| the succession to the throne**

throng *noun*

VERB + THRONG **join** *people coming from all directions to join the throng*

PREP. **among/through the ~** *He made his way slowly through the throng.* **| in the ~** *She was lost in the throng.* **| into the ~** *He disappeared into the throng.*

throw *verb*

ADV. **angrily | casually** *He threw the keys casually down on the table.* **| aside, away, back, down, out** *She threw her head back and laughed.*

VERB + THROW **be ready to, be tempted to, want to | threaten to** *He threatened to throw her in the river if she screamed.* **| be going to**

PREP. **at** *He threw a stone at the window.* **| in/into** *I just wanted to throw myself into his arms and cry.* **| to** *She threw the ball to him.* **| towards**

PHRASES **throw sth open** *He threw the double doors open in a dramatic gesture.*

thrust *noun*

1 **strong push**

ADJ. **backward, downward, forward, upward | aggressive, fierce, powerful | knife** *The realization that she was gone was like a knife thrust.* **| pelvic**

VERB + THRUST **make** *The Third Army made an aggressive thrust towards the front line.*

PHRASES **~ into** *a thrust into the unknown*

2 **the thrust: main part/ideas**

ADJ. **broad, central, general, main, major** *She explained the broad thrust of the party's policies.* **| dramatic, intellectual, narrative, political** *The dramatic thrust of the film centres around the conflict between the brothers.*

VERB + THRUST **direct** *He's going to direct the main thrust of his work towards reforming welfare policy.*

thrust *verb*

ADV. **deep/deeply | hard | suddenly** *She suddenly thrust out her arm.* **| aside, away, back, forward, out**

PREP. **at** *He thrust a piece of paper at me.* **| into** *She thrust her hands deep into her pockets.*

PHRASES **thrust your way** *She thrust her way through the dense undergrowth.*

thud *noun*

ADJ. **heavy, loud, resounding | dull, muffled, soft | sickening**

VERB + THUD **give** *She felt her heart give an extra thud.* **| hear | feel**

PREP. **with a ~** *He hit the floor with a sickening thud.*

PHRASES **the thud of a heart, the thud of hooves**

thud *verb*

ADV. **hard, painfully, violently, wildly** (all only used with **heart)** *Her heart was thudding violently as she went into the room.*

PREP. **against** *The waves thudded against the side of the ship.* **| into** *The sniper's bullets thudded into the wall.* **| on** *Steps thudded on the stairs.* **| with** *His heart thudded with excitement.*

thug *noun*

ADJ. **teenage, young | vicious | armed, knife-wielding | racist | football, soccer**

QUANT. **gang** *He was beaten up by a gang of thugs.*

thumb *noun*

VERB + THUMB **suck | flick, jab, jerk** *'What'll we do with them?' he asked, jerking his thumb at the suitca* **| raise, stick out** *He smiled and raised a thumb in greeting. I stuck out a thumb and a car stopped immediately.* **| twiddle** *(often figurative) I sat there twiddling my thumbs until the manager finally appeared.*

THUMB + NOUN **nail** (also **thumbnail)**

PHRASES **between finger and thumb/between thumb and forefinger** *I picked up the beetle carefully between finger and thumb.* **| thumbs up** *He made* a *thumbs-up sign through the window to tell us everything was fine.*

thump *noun*

ADJ. **good, heavy, loud | muffled**

VERB + THUMP **give sb/sth** *She gave the television a good thump, and the picture came back.* **| hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *The sack of wheat hit the ground with a loud thump.*

thump *verb*

1 **hit sb/sth with your fist**

ADV. **hard** *He thumped Jack hard in the face.* | **down** *He thumped his fist down onto the table.*

PREP. **with** *She thumped the desk with her fist.*

2 **of the heart**

ADV. **hard, heavily, loudly, painfully, wildly**

VERB + THUMP **begin to** *Her heart began to thump wildly in her chest.*

PREP. **against** *He spun round, his heart thumping against his ribs.*

thunder *noun*

ADJ. **loud** *The thunder was getting louder and louder.* **| dull** *The gunfire rumbled like dull thunder.* **| distant** *the rumble of distant thunder* **| approaching**

QUANT. **clap, crash, peal, roll, rumble**

THUNDER + VERB **boom, break, burst, crash, explode, roar** *Thunder boomed in the sky overhead.* **| growl, grumble, roll, rumble | rattle sth, shake sth** *The windows were shaken by a tremendous crash of thunder.*

THUNDER + NOUN **clap** (also **thunderclap**) **| cloud** (also **thundercloud)**

PHRASES **the sound of thunder, there's thunder in the air** (= thunder is likely), **thunder and lightning**

thunderstorm *nou*n > See STORM

Thursday *noun* > Note at DAY

thwart *verb*

ADV. **easily | constantly** *Plans to expand the company have been constantly thwarted.*

VERB + THWART **attempt to, try to**

PREP. **in** *They were thwarted in their attempt to gain overall control of the company.*

tick *verb*

1 **of a clock, etc.**

ADV. **loudly | relentlessly | away** *The clock ticked relentlessly away on the mantelpiece.*

2 **mark sth with a tick**

ADV. **simply** *To take advantage of this extra bonus offer, simply tick the box on your order form.* **| mentally | off** *She mentally ticked off the names of the people she had already spoken to.* **PHRASAL VERBS tick along/over**

ADV. **nicely** *The business is ticking over nicely at the moment.* **| still**

PHRASES **keep things ticking over** *Morrison had kept things ticking over in my absence.*

ticket *noun*

1 **for travel, an event, the theatre, etc.**

ADJ. **one-way, single | return, round-trip | day, season, weekly** *an annual season ticket* **| first-class, second-class, etc.** *a first-class rail ticket* **| invalid, valid | complimentary, free** *I've got complimentary tickets for the theatre.* **| concessionary, family** *Concessionary tickets are available at half the standard price.* **| advance** *Use the coupon below to reserve advance tickets for the exhibition.* **| admission, entrance, entry | air/airline, bus, plane, rail, train, etc. | cinema, concert | library**

VERB + TICKET **buy, get, obtain, purchase | have, hold** *You must hold a valid ticket for your entire journey before boarding the train.* **| book, reserve | show (sb)** *He showed the guard his ticket.*

TICKET + NOUN **agency, counter, machine, office | price | sales | holder | collector, inspector | tout | barrier | stub**

PREP. **by ~** *admission by ticket only* **| ~ for** *I bought a ticket for the concert. a ticket for Saturday* **| ~ to** *I've got a free ticket to the match. a plane ticket to New York*

2 **for a lottery, etc.**

ADJ. **winning | lottery, raffle**

QUANT. **book** *I bought a whole book of raffle tickets and I still didn't win anything.*

3 **giving a penalty**

ADJ. **fixed-penalty | parking**

VERB + TICKET **give sb, issue | get**

PREP. **~ for** *The police officer gave us a ticket for going through a red light.*

tickle *noun*

ADJ. little

VERB + TICKLE give sb/sth | feel, get, have *He felt a tickle on the back of his neck.*

tide *noun*

1 **change in the level of the sea**

ADJ. **big, strong | flood, incoming, rising | ebb, outgoing | full, high | low | neap, spring**

VERB + TIDE **catch** (= to take advantage of a favourable tide) *We have to get up early to catch the tide.*

TIDE + VERB **be in | be out | come/flow in, rise | ebb, fall, flow/go out, retreat | be on the turn, turn | occur** *the time of day when the highest tides occur* **| wash sb/sth up** *The body was washed up by the tide the next day.*

PREP. **at … ~** *Seals lie on the rocks at low tide.* **| on a/the ~** *We went out to sea on the ebb tide.*

PHRASES **the ebb and flow of the tide**

2 **strong movement in favour of/against sth**

ADJ. **growing, rising** *the rising tide of crime* **| shifting | political** *He hasn't the courage to swim against the political tide.*

VERB + TIDE **go with | go/swim against | stem, turn (back)** *attempts to stem the tide of revolution*

TIDE + VERB **run** *Seeing the tide was now running in his direction, he renewed his campaign for reform.* **| carry sb/sth along | turn** *The tide of public opinion seems to be turning at last.*

PREP. **against a/the ~** *It takes courage to speak out against the tide of public opinion.* **| on a ~** *They were carried along on a tide of euphoria.* **| ~ against, ~ in favour of** *Civil liberties groups helped to turn the tide against industrial violence.*

PHRASES **a tide of history** *the shifting tides of history* **| the turn of the tide** *In the early 1990s there was a marked turn of the tide.*

tidy *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | stay** *Why does nothing ever stay tidy around here?* **| get sth, make sth | keep sth** *I hope you're going to keep your room tidy.*

ADV. **extremely, very | immaculately, scrupulously** *It was a neatly furnished and immaculately tidy room.* **| fairly, quite** *The sitting room is fairly tidy.*

PHRASES **clean/neat and tidy**

tie *noun*

1 worn round the neck with a shirt

ADJ. **undone** *His tie was undone.* | **loose** | **askew** *His tie was askew and his hair dishevelled.* | **loud** | **bootlace, bow, kipper** | **black, white** (= a black/white bow tie as part of formal dress) *a black-tie dinner* | **club, college, regimental, school**

VERB + TIE **knot, tie** | **loosen** | **adjust, straighten**

TIE + NOUN **pin**

PHRASES **collar/jacket/shirt/suit and tie** > Special page at CLOTHES

2 (usually ties) sth that connects you with sb/sth

ADJ. **close, strong** | **weak** | **blood, family** | **emotional** | **personal** | **business, commercial, economic** | **cultural, diplomatic, political, social, traditional**

VERB + TIE **have** *We have close economic ties with our neighbours.* | **establish** | **cement, strengthen** | **cut, sever** *He cut all ties with the Church.* | **loosen, weaken**

PREP. **~ between** *There is a strong tie between her and her daughters.* | **~ of** *ties of kinship* | **~ to/with** *to establish diplomatic ties with China*

3 in a game/competition

VERB + TIE **end in, result in** *The match ended in a tie.*

TIE + NOUN **break/breaker**

PREP. **~ between** *a tie between Egypt and France* | **~ for** *There was a tie for first place.*

tie *verb*

1 **attach/fasten sb/sth with string/rope**

ADV. **firmly, securely, tightly** *Did you tie the balloons on tightly?* | **loosely** *He wore plimsolls, loosely tied with bits of string.* | **carefully** | **neatly** *Tie the cords neatly.* | **back, on, together, up**

PREP. **around/round** *He tied his dressing gown firmly around him.* | **onto** *I tied the bundle onto the end of the string.* | **to** *She tied the rope securely to a tree.* | **with** *Katie tied her hair back with a ribbon.*

PHRASES **tie sb hand and foot** *The prisoners were tied hand and foot.*

2 **connect sb/sth with sb/sth else**

ADV. **closely, intimately** *Their company's future is closely tied to our own.* | **directly** | **firmly** | **inextricably** | **in, together, up** *Production and consumption are inextricably tied together.*

PREP. **in with** *The concert will tie in with the festival of dance taking place the same weekend.* | **to** *You can't stay tied to her forever.* | **up with** *Her behaviour is tied up with her feelings of guilt.*

tiger *noun*

ADJ. **man-eating | marauding | sabre-toothed**

TIGER + VERB **growl, purr, roar | spring | maul sb** *The zookeeper was mauled to death by a tiger.* **| prowl** *A marauding tiger was often seen prowling around the village.*

TIGER + NOUN **cub | skin | hunt**

tight *adj., adv.*

1 **not loose**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get, go** *Those jeans have got too tight and I can't wear them any more. The rope suddenly went tight.* **| hold (on)** *'Hold tight!' She increased her grip.* **| clamp sth, clench sth, close sth, draw sth, pull sth, shut sth, stretch sth, tie sth** *His jaw was clenched tight. Every muscle in her face was drawn tight. Shut your eyes tight. The cloth was stretched tight over the frame.* **| clutch sth, grip sth, hold sth, keep sth** *He held his children tight. Keep the rope tight.*

ADV. **extremely, really, very | a bit, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, reasonably | enough** *You didn't tie it tight enough.*

2 **with not much time/money to spare**

VERBS **be, look, seem | get** *I think we'd better leave?time's getting very tight.*

ADV. **extremely, particularly, really, very | a bit, fairly, pretty, rather**

3 **controlled very strictly**

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain** *Security at the airport remains tight.*

ADV. **extremely, really, very | increasingly | fairly, pretty, quite | enough** *Are the controls tight enough?*

tighten *verb*

1 **become/make sth firmer/tighter**

ADV. **fractionally, a little, slightly | convulsively, involuntarily** *Her fingers tightened convulsively with every jolt she received.* **| painfully | up** *Can you tighten up the bolts for me?*

VERB + TIGHTEN **seem to | feel sth, sense sth** *He felt his stomach tighten.* **| make sth** *His words made her throat tighten.*

PREP. **about/around/round** *His hand tightened painfully around her wrist.* **| on** *Her grip seemed to tighten on the door handle.* **| in** *He saw his father's jaw tighten in irritation.* **| into** *His mouth tightened into a thin hard line.* **| with** *Her face tightened with pain.*

2 **make sth more strict**

ADV. **considerably**

VERB + TIGHTEN **take steps to** *Steps were taken to tighten discipline in the school.*

PREP. **up** *The law in this area has been tightened up considerably.*

tights *noun*

ADJ. **opaque, thick | sheer | fishnet | 15-denier, etc. | support | laddered**

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + TIGHTS **pull on | peel off | ladder**

TIGHTS + VERB **ladder**

PHRASES **a ladder in your tights** > Special page at CLOTHES

tile *noun*

ADJ. **broken, damaged, loose, missing | decorative, glazed, hand-painted, plain | ceramic, clay, cork, mosaic, quarry, stone, terracotta, vinyl | carpet, ceiling, floor, roof/roofing, wall | bathroom, kitchen**

VERB + TILE **cover sth with, fit, lay, put down** *I'm laying ceramic floor tiles in the kitchen.*

till *noun*

ADJ. **computerized, electronic**

TILL + VERB **ring** *a sales idea that has set tills ringing all over the country*

TILL + NOUN **receipt, roll**

PREP. **at/behind/on the ~** *The supermarket didn't have enough people working on the tills.* **| in/into a/the ~** *Put the money straight into the till.* **| from/out of a/the ~** *He gave her £10 from the till.*

tilt *noun*

ADJ. **sharp | slight | downward, upward | backward, forward**

PREP. **at a ~** *I positioned the photo at a slight tilt.* **| ~ to/towards** *a tilt to the left*

tilt *verb*

ADV. **sharply** *The ground tilted sharply downwards.* **| a little, slightly | back/backwards, down/downwards, forward, up/upwards**

PREP. **away from** *Tilt the mirror away from you.* **| towards** *Her face was tilted towards the sky.*

PHRASES **tilted to one side** *She thought for a minute, her head tilted to one side.*

timber *noun*

1 **trees/wood for use in building/carpentry**

ADJ. **heavy | solid** *a solid timber door* **| rough | dead, decayed, rotten, rotting | seasoned, treated | unseasoned, untreated**

QUANT. **baulk, length, piece**

VERB + TIMBER **cut, fell, harvest, saw | dress, season, treat**

TIMBER + VERB **decay, rot**

TIMBER + NOUN **product | company, industry, merchant, production, yard | construction, frame, structure, support | beam, building, floor, etc.**

2 **(usually timbers) piece of wood used in a building**

ADJ. **sound | exposed** *The house has exposed oak timbers.* **| ceiling, floor, roof | ship's**

time *noun*

1 **what is measured in minutes, hours, days, etc.**

TIME + VERB **elapse, go by, pass** *As time went by we saw less and less of each other. The changing seasons mark the passing of time.* | **fly** *How time flies!* | **drag** *Time drags in this job.* | **heal sth** *Time heals all wounds.*

PREP. **in ~** *The world exists in time and space.* | **over ~** *Perceptions change over time.* | **through ~** *travel through time*

PHRASES **the mists of time** *The origins of this custom are lost in the mists of time.*

2 **time shown on a clock**

ADJ. **good, perfect** *My watch keeps good time.* | **local** *The attacks were launched at 9 p.m. local time.* | **British Summer, Greenwich Mean, etc.**

VERB + TIME **tell** *Can your son tell the time yet?* | **have** *Have you got the time?* | **make** *What time do you make it?* | **look at** *Look at the time! We'll be late.* | **keep**

PREP. **ahead of/behind … ~** *two hours behind Central European Time*

PHRASES **this time tomorrow, etc.** *This time tomorrow I'll be in Canada.* | **time in/of the morning/afternoon/evening, time of (the) night/year, time of day**

3 **time when sth happens/should happen**

ADJ. **peak** *There are extra buses at peak times.* | **closing, opening** | **arrival, departure**

VERB + TIME **fix, set** *We need to fix a time for the next meeting.*

TIME + VERB **come** *You'll feel differently about it when the time comes.*

PREP. **ahead of ~** *Check the programme ahead of time.* | **behind ~** *The plane took off an hour behind time.* | **by the ~** *By the time you get there the meeting will be over.* | **in ~** *We got home in time to see the end of the match.* | **on ~** *The trains are rarely on* *time.*

4 **amount of time**

ADJ. **considerable, long | little, short | reasonable | precious** *We're wasting precious time.* **| idle | free, leisure, spare | journey, travel, travelling | lead, waiting** *There is a long lead time between order and delivery of the product.*

VERB + TIME **have** *Have you got time for a chat? I had no time to think.* **| give sb/sth** *I can certainly do the job if you give me time.* **| take (sb)** *It takes time to make changes in the law. It took her a long time to read the report.*

Take your time (= take as much time as you like). **| spend** *She spends much of her time reading.* | kill, pass, while away *It helps to pass the time.* **| fritter away, idle away | devote, put** *She devotes all her spare time to gardening. He put all his time into the show.* **| allow** *They didn't allow much time for discussion.* **| find, make** *I can never find time to write letters. I can probably make the time to see them.* **| wait** *We had to wait some time before the bus arrived.* **| gain, save** *You would save time with a dishwasher.* **| waste | lose, run out of** *We have no time to lose* (= we must hurry). *I didn't finish the test?I ran out of time.* **| be pressed for/short of | be out of | play for** *Not knowing what to do, she played for time by going to the bathroom.*

TIME + VERB **be up, run out** *Sorry, your time is up.*

TIME + NOUN **period, scale, span | limit | lag**

PREP. **at a ~** *He surfs the Internet for hours at a time.* **| for a ~** *I lived there for a time.* **| in ~** *You'll get used to the work in time.* **| over/with ~** *Her skills improved with time.*

PHRASES **all in good time** (= sth will happen when the time is right) *Be patient, Emily! All in good time.* **| all the time/the whole time** *The letter was in my pocket all the time* (= while I was looking for it). *She leaves the lights on all the time* (= always/repeatedly). **| a battle/race against time** *Finishing the book was a race against time.* **| if time permits** *We will discuss this matter later, if time permits.* **| in the fullness of time** (= when the time is right, usually after a long period), **in good/plenty of time** *Get to the airport in good time* (= plenty of time before the plane leaves). **| in next to no time/in no time at all, in ten minutes', three hours', etc. time** *I'll be back in ten minutes' time.* **| in your own (good) time** (= taking as long as you want/need), **a length of time** *Have you lived abroad for any length of time?* **| most of the time, a period of time, some/a long time ago** *Her parents died a long time ago.* **| a waste of time** *What a waste of time!*

5 **(often times) period in the past/present**

ADJ. **good, great, happy | bad, difficult, hard, rough, sad, troubled, unhappy** *Times are hard for the unemployed.* **| ancient, early, former, old** *in ancient times* **| modern, recent | medieval, prehistoric, etc.**

VERB + TIME **have** *We had a great time at the party.*

TIME + VERB **change** *Times have changed since Grandma was young.*

PREP. **at a/the~** *He lived at the time of the French Revolution. At one time Mary was my best friend.* **| before your ~** *The Beatles were before my time.* **| in your ~** *Mr Curtis was the manager in my time* (= when I was working there). **| in ~s** *in times of trouble*

PHRASES **from/since time immemorial** (= for a very long time), **of all time** *the greatest footballer of all time* **| a sign of the times, time was when** *Time was when* (= there was a time when) *we never needed to lock our house at night.*

6 **occasion**

ADJ. **that, this** *I'm determined to pass this time.* **| last** *When was the last time you saw her?* **| another, next** *Next time you're here let's have lunch together.* **| one | each, every** *Every time I hear that song I feel happy.* **| appropriate, good, suitable** *Is this an appropriate time to discuss my salary?* **| appointed, right | bad, wrong** *This would be a bad time to tell her.* **| first, second, etc. | umpteenth | countless** *I've told you countless times.*

VERB + TIME **bide** *We'll have to bide our time until the rain stops.*

TIME + VERB **come** *Your time will come.* **| be ripe** *The time is ripe for revolution.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *The lift can take four people at a time. At the time of writing, a ceasefire is under discussion. Hot water is available at all times. He can be rather moody at times.* **| by the ~** *She'll have gone by the time we get there.* **| for the … ~** *I told her not to do it for the umpteenth time.* **| ~ for** *It's time for a break.*

PHRASES **at the present time, for the time being** (= temporarily), **a number of times, X times out of X** *three times out of ten*

7 **when you experience sth in a particular way**

ADJ. **enjoyable, fun, good, grand, great, marvellous, pleasant, splendid, wonderful** *It was a fun time for us girls.* | **awful, dreadful, horrible, miserable, sad, terrible**

VERB + TIME **have** *Did you have a good time in Spain?*

8 **time taken in a race, etc.**

ADJ. **fast | record** *He completed the course in record time.*

VERB + TIME **clock up, record** *She clocked up one of the fastest times of the year.*

9 **musical rhythm**

ADJ. **march, waltz | double, quick | four-four, three-four, etc.**

VERB + TIME **beat, keep** *The conductor beat time with a baton.*

TIME + NOUN **signature**

PREP. **in/out of ~ (to/with)** *clapping in time to the music*

time *verb*

ADV. **beautifully, conveniently, well** *This campaign is well timed.* **| perfectly, to perfection** *We had timed our arrival to perfection.* **| badly | carefully** *The schedule must be carefully timed.*

PREP. **for** *The meeting is timed for 3 o'clock.*

PHRASES **be timed to coincide with sth** *The show is timed to coincide with the launch of her new book.*

timetable *noun*

ADJ. **overall | detailed | strict | realistic | busy, full** *a full timetable of teaching* **| college, school, etc. | exam/examination | bus, train, etc.**

VERB + TIMETABLE **agree on, draw up, establish, outline, set (out) | adhere to, follow, keep to** *Implementation of the reforms was kept to a very strict timetable.* **| consult, look at**

PREP. **according to the ~** *According to the timetable, the bus should have come in at 9.00.* **| in a/the ~** *It said in the timetable that a train was due at 5.30.* **| ~ for** *The delegates outlined what they considered a realistic timetable for troop withdrawal.*

timing *noun*

ADJ. **exact, precise** *There is disagreement within the government over the exact timing of the referendum.* **| convenient** *The timing of the meeting is not convenient.* **| inconvenient, unfortunate** *the unfortunate timing of the announcement* **| accurate, careful, good, impeccable, perfect | bad, poor | split-second | comic**

VERB + TIMING **have** *He has the split-second timing all good players need.*

PREP. **with … ~** *The punchline was delivered with perfect comic timing.*

PHRASES **get the timing right/wrong, a matter of timing** *Using press releases to good effect is a matter of timing.* **| a sense of timing** *She has a wonderful sense of timing.*

tin *noun*

ADJ. **biscuit | airtight, sealed**

TIN + NOUN **opener** (also **tin-opener**)

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Store the seeds in an airtight tin.* **| ~ of** *a tin of tomatoes*

tinge *noun*

ADJ. **faint, slight** *blue with a slight tinge of purple* **| blue, bluish, etc.** *a slight reddish tinge*

VERB + TINGE **have**

PREP. **~ of** *a tinge of regret* **| ~ to** *The sky had a slight pink tinge to it.*

tinkle *noun*

ADJ. **faint, little, soft**

VERB + TINKLE **hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *The wine glass dropped to the floor with a tinkle.*

tint *noun*

ADJ. **rich | blue, bluish, etc. | autumn** *The fabrics were mainly in rich autumn tints, reds and oranges.*

PREP. **~ of** *The branches of the trees were barely showing their first tint of green.*

tiny *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become**

ADV. **extremely, really, very | quite | comparatively, relatively** *The minister appealed to the Cabinet not to target her comparatively tiny budget of £4 billion.*

PHRASES **little tiny/tiny little** *Look at his little tiny fingers. Aren't they sweet?*

tip *noun*

1 pointed end

ADJ. **northern, etc.** *We took a bus to the northern tip of the island.* | **very** *The cat was black except for a patch of white on the very tip of its tail.*

PREP. **~ of** *the tips of your fingers/toes*

2 money

ADJ. **big, generous, good, large** | **poor, small**

VERB + TIP **give sb, leave sb** *He left the waitress a large tip.* | **get** *We get rather poor tips on weeknights.*

3 advice

ADJ. **good, handy, helpful, useful** | **hot** *He said he'd been given a hot tip for that afternoon's race.* | **beauty, gardening, money-saving, safety, etc.** | **racing**

VERB + TIP **have** | **give sb, pass on** | **take, use** *Take a safety tip from me?get that light mended!* | **pick up**

PREP. **~ for** *some handy tips for gardeners* | **~ on** *Do you have any tips on buying a second-hand car?*

tip *verb* **(**often **be tipped)**

ADV. hotly, strongly | widely

PREP. as *The senator has been widely tipped as a future president.* **| for** *The band is being hotly tipped for the top.*

tip-off *noun*

ADJ. **anonymous | phone** VERB + TIP-OFF **give sb | get, receive | act on** *Acting on a tip-off, police raided the house.*

PREP. **~ about** *Customs officers had received a tip-off about a shipment of cocaine.*

tire *verb*

ADV. **easily, quickly** *She found herself tiring more quickly these days.* **| out** *The long walk had really tired me out.*

VERB + TIRE **begin to** *After an hour Rick began to tire.*

tired *adj.*

1 **needing rest**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get | leave sb, make sb** *The walk left me quite tired out.*

ADV. **awfully, bone** *(informal)*, **dead, desperately, extremely, really, terribly, very** *Polly suddenly felt bone tired.* **| a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather | just** *Of course I'm not ill. I'm just tired.* **| enough** *He felt tired enough to go to sleep standing up.* **| mentally, physically | visibly | out**

PREP. **from** *I'm still a bit tired from the journey.*

PHRASES **tired and drawn** *He looked tired and drawn.*

2 **tired of sb/sth: feeling you have had enough**

VERBS **be | become, get, grow** *(formal) She had grown heartily tired of his company.*

ADV. **heartily, really, very | a bit, a little, rather**

PHRASES **sick and tired** *(informal) I'm sick and tired of listening to you whine.*

tiredness *noun*

ADJ. **desperate, extreme, overwhelming | mental, physical | chronic, constant**

QUANT. **wave** *Once the last boxes were packed away, he was overtaken by a wave of tiredness.*

VERB + TIREDNESS **be overtaken by, feel, suffer from | relieve**

TIREDNESS + VERB **overcome sb** *Finally tiredness overcame him, and he fell asleep on the sofa.* **| set in** *A desperate tiredness set in after hours of anxious waiting.*

PHRASES **a sign of tiredness** *The team was in good spirits and showed no signs of tiredness.*

tissue *noun*

1 organic material

ADJ. **living | healthy, normal** *Vitamin C helps maintain healthy connective tissue.* **| damaged, diseased | animal, human, plant** *Dyes were extracted by boiling the plant tissue.* **| body, brain, intestinal, muscle, etc. | connective, scar | fat, fatty, fibrous, soft** *She treats skin and soft tissue injuries in casualty.*

2 paper handkerchief

ADJ. **paper | toilet**

QUANT. **box, pack, packet, wad** *She grabbed a wad of tissues from the box and soaked up the spilt wine.*

VERB + TISSUE **use**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *He wiped his nose on a tissue.* **| with a/the ~** *She gently dabbed her eyes with a tissue.*

title *noun*

1 **name of a book, film, etc.**

ADJ. **book, essay, film, song**

VERB + TITLE **give sth**

TITLE + NOUN **page | role** *He played the title role in 'Hamlet'.* **| track** *'Birth', the title track of his latest album*

PREP. **under a/the ~** *She published her poetry under the title 'The Land and the Garden'.*

2 **book, magazine, etc.**

ADJ. **new** *Forty per cent of new titles were actually new editions of existing books.* **| best-selling**

VERB + TITLE **publish** *The company is publishing fewer titles than last year.*

3 **name of a rank/profession**

ADJ. **grand, long** *She bears the grand title 'Divisional President of the Finances Committee'.* **| courtesy, diplomatic, honorary, honorific, official** *'Mrs' was a courtesy title for any unmarried woman in business at that time. 'Minister' is one of several diplomatic titles.* **| job** *His job title is Special Projects Officer.* **| full** *Victor Oldenburg, or Count Victor Oldenburg and Hess, to give him his full title*

VERB + TITLE **bear, have, inherit** *She has a title* (= is of noble birth). **| award, bestow, confer** *The king bestowed lands and titles upon his followers.*

4 **championship win**

ADJ. **European, national, world, etc. | championship, French Open, Premier League, etc. | heavyweight, middleweight, etc.**

VERB + TITLE **clinch, win** *Deportivo clinched the title with a goal in the final seconds* *of the last game of the season.* **| hold** *He held the world heavyweight title until last year.* **| defend | retain | lose**

TITLE + NOUN **challenge, fight, match** *He has been building up fitness for his world title challenge.* **| holder** > Special page at SPORT

toast *noun*

1 **bread**

ADJ. **brown, white, wholemeal | dry | soggy**

QUANT. **piece, round, slice** *We'll have another round of toast, please.*

VERB + TOAST **make** *making toast for breakfast* **| butter, spread** *buttered toast She ate two slices of toast spread with jam.* **| burn** *I can smell burnt toast.*

PREP. **on ~** *For lunch we had cheese on toast.*

2 **drink**

VERB + TOAST **make, propose** *He raised his glass as if to make a toast.* **| drink | respond to**

PREP. **~ to** *The bridegroom ended his speech by proposing a toast to the hosts.*

toast *verb*

1 **make sth brown and crisp by heating it**

ADV. **lightly** *Toast the bread lightly on both sides.*

2 **drink to sb/sth**

ADV. **silently** *He raised his glass, silently toasting his absent son.*

PREP. **in/with** *We toasted his victory in champagne.*

tobacco *noun*

ADJ. **mild, strong | stale | pipe**

VERB + TOBACCO **chew, smoke | be addicted to | grow**

TOBACCO + NOUN **addiction, consumption, use | smoke** *The air was thick with tobacco smoke.* **| business, company, firm, industry, manufacturer, producer | lobby** *The ban on cigarette advertising will upset the tobacco lobby.* **| products | market | sales | advertising, sponsorship | pouch, tin | grower, plantation**

toe *noun*

ADJ. **big, little** *The shoe pressed painfully against her big toe.* **| bare** *Under his bare toes the floor felt gritty.* **| broken, bruised**

VERB + TOE **stand on, tread on** *She stood on her toes to kiss him. Ouch! That was my toe you just trod on. (figurative) She trod on a lot of toes when she joined the company.* **| stub | break, bruise, crack | dip** *I dipped my toe in the river to test the temperature. (figurative) So far they have only dipped their toe in the potentially vast computer market.* **| point | curl | touch** *Can you touch your toes* (= while keeping your legs straight)*?*

TOE + VERB **curl** *(often figurative) The man's broad smile made her toes curl* (= made her feel embarrassed or uncomfortable).

TOE + NOUN **injury**

PREP. **between the/your ~s** *He had some kind of fungus between his toes.* **| on your ~s** *He moved lightly on his toes like a boxer. (figurative) The threat of inspections kept us all on our toes* (= made sure we kept everything up to standard and were ready).

PHRASES **from head/top to toe** *He gave himself a good scrub from head to toe.* **| the tips of your toes** *I stood on the tips of my toes to look through the window.* **| the toe of your boot/shoe**

toenail *noun*

ADJ. **ingrowing**

VERB + TOENAIL **clip, cut, trim**

TOENAIL + NOUN **clippings**

toil *noun*

ADJ. **hard | relentless, unceasing, unending, unremitting | daily | manual, physical | honest**

PHRASES **hours, years, etc. of toil** *a lifetime of unremitting toil* **| sweat and toil** *a day of sweat and toil*

toilet *noun*

ADJ. **public | communal, shared** *There was a communal toilet on the landing for the four flats.* **| indoor, inside | outside | flush/flushing** *The caravan is equipped with a sink and a flush toilet.* **| gents', ladies', men's, women's | disabled**

VERB + TOILET **go to, use** *I need to go to the toilet.* **| be desperate for, need** *Do you need the toilet?* **| flush (sth down)** *Someone's forgotten to flush the toilet. He flushed the letter down the toilet.* **| block, clog | unblock**

TOILET + NOUN **bowl, seat | paper, roll, tissue | brush, cleaner | facilities | training**

PREP. **in the ~, on the ~**

token *noun*

ADJ. **good luck, love**

PREP. **in ~ of** *She presented them with a small gift in token of her thanks.*

PHRASES **(as) a token of appreciation/friendship/respect** *We hope you will accept this book as a small token of our appreciation.*

tolerable *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | make sth | find sth** *She inspected the rooms and found them perfectly tolerable.*

ADV. **very | perfectly | barely, scarcely** *In August the heat is barely tolerable.* **| fairly, quite**

tolerance *noun*

ADJ. **great, high, remarkable | low | amused, patronising** *He watched the kids throw water around with amused tolerance.* **| political, racial, religious | zero (of crime)** *Howard County has a zero tolerance policy on alcohol use by teenagers.*

QUANT. **degree, level**

VERB + TOLERANCE **have | show | lack | learn**

TOLERANCE + NOUN **level**

PREP. **~ for** *Some children have a low tolerance for boredom.* **| ~ of** *people with a high tolerance of discomfort* **| ~ to** *Tolerance to alcohol decreases with age.* **| ~ towards** *She was showing greater tolerance towards her younger sister than before.*

tolerant *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become, get, grow**

ADV. **extremely, remarkably, surprisingly, very, wonderfully** *Mares are surprisingly tolerant of the roughness and rudeness of their own offspring.* **| pretty, quite, reasonably** *He's pretty tolerant of my faults.*

PREP. **of** *They learn to be tolerant of other people.* **| towards** *They are more tolerant towards gypsies now.*

tolerate *verb*

1 **allow sth you do not like**

ADV. **barely | merely** *She actually seemed pleased to see him: most of her visitors she merely tolerated.* **| grudgingly | officially** *Union activity was officially tolerated but strongly discouraged.* **| no longer** *The government is not prepared to tolerate this situation any longer.*

VERB + TOLERATE **be unable to, (not) be prepared to, (not) be willing to, cannot/could not, find sth difficult to, will/would not** *I will not tolerate this behaviour*!

2 **not be affected by difficult conditions**

ADV. **readily, well** *This plant prefers alkaline soil, though it will readily tolerate some acidity. She tolerated the chemotherapy well.*

VERB + TOLERATE **be unable to, cannot/could not, find/make sth difficult to, will/would not** *people whose eye condition makes it difficult to tolerate bright light*

toleration *noun*

ADJ. **religious**

QUANT. **degree, measure** *Religious minorities were allowed a wide measure of toleration.*

PREP. **~ for** *He preached toleration for all religions.*

toll *noun*

1 **money that you pay to use a road, bridge, etc.**

ADJ. **motorway, road**

VERB + TOLL **charge, collect, exact, impose, levy** *the possibility of imposing tolls on some motorways* **| pay**

TOLL + NOUN **bridge, motorway, road | booth | charge**

2 **amount of damage done/number of people killed**

ADJ. **great, heavy, terrible, tragic | casualty, death, injury | human**

VERB + TOLL **take** *The pressure of fame can take a terrible toll. The recession is taking its toll.*

TOLL + VERB **mount, rise** *The death toll from yesterday's crash is still rising.* **| reach sth** *The casualty toll could reach 200.*

PREP. **~ on** *Illness has taken a heavy toll on her.*

tomato *nou*n

ADJ. **ripe | green | rotten, squashed | cherry, plum | sundried, tinned**

VERB + TOMATO **eat, have | chop, peel, slice | grow**

TOMATO + NOUN **juice, ketchup, paste, puree, salad, sauce, soup | plant**

ton *noun* > Note at MEASURE

tone *noun*

1 **quality of a sound, especially of the human voice**

ADJ. **deep, low | falling, rising** *The rising tone of her voice emphasized her panic.* **| hushed, quiet, subdued** *speaking in hushed tones* **| clear, ringing | sharp, shrill, stentorian, strident | gravelly | dry, even, expressionless, flat, level, measured, neutral** *The question was posed in a flat tone.* **| normal, reasonable | brisk, businesslike, matter-of-fact** *She answered him in a brisk, matter-of-fact tone.* **| commanding, firm, forthright | formal | sepulchral, solemn | dramatic, urgent | casual, offhand | bright, conversational | gentle, mild, pleasant, soft, sympathetic, warm** *Her tone was mild, almost conversational.* **| dulcet, honeyed** *(both often ironic) We heard the dulcet tones of the sergeant, bawling at us to get on parade.* **| clipped, cool, curt, frigid, hard, harsh, icy** *In cool, clipped tones, he told her what had happened.* **| aggressive, biting, contemptuous, disapproving, dismissive, ironic, mocking, patronizing, sarcastic, sardonic, scathing, threatening** *His tone was faintly mocking.* **| aggrieved, reproachful, shocked | bantering, conciliatory, conspiratorial, reverential, wheedling**

VERB + TONE **adopt, speak in, take** *When she heard my accent, she adopted a warmer tone. Don't you take that tone with me.* **| soften | change | interpret** *Her tone was hard to interpret.*

TONE + VERB **change** *His tone changed dramatically when he saw the money.* **| convey sth, imply sth, indicate sth, suggest sth | betray sb/sth, give away sb/sth** *Her tone betrayed her impatience.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *'You ought to have thought of them,' she said in a reproachful tone.* **| in ~s of** *'I don't believe it!' cried Henry in tones of utter amazement.*

PHRASES **a tone of voice** *I didn't like his tone of voice; I felt he was being condescending.*

2 **general quality/style of sb/sth**

ADJ. **dominant, general, overall, prevailing** *The general tone of the report was favourable.* **| moral, political, social** *The newspaper sets a high moral tone in its editorial about politicians' private lives.* **| favourable | negative | comic,**

humorous

VERB + TONE **set** *Her enthusiastic speech set the tone for the day's conference.*

PREP. **in ~** *His letter was very negative in tone.*

3 **shade of a colour**

ADJ. **light, muted, neutral, pale, pastel, soft** *muted tones of grey and brown* | **dark, deep** | **rich, warm** | **earthy, flesh, grey, natural, silvery** | **colour** | **skin** *What is your natural skin tone?*

4 **on the telephone**

ADJ. **dial/dialling, engaged**

VERB + TONE **get** *I keep getting the engaged tone.*

tongue *noun*

1 soft part inside the mouth

ADJ. **forked | loose, sharp** *(both figurative) Everyone knows now, thanks to Ken's loose tongue* (= he could not keep the secret). *She could tear a character to pieces in three minutes with her sharp tongue.*

VERB + TONGUE **poke/put/stick out** *It's very rude to stick your tongue out at people.* **| run** *He ran his tongue nervously over his lips.* **| click/cluck | bite, hold** *(both figurative) She was dying to say something sarcastic to him, but bit her tongue and stayed silent.* **| free, loosen** *(both figurative) The wine had loosened his tongue.* **| roll/slip/trip off** *It's not a name that exactly trips off the tongue* (= is easy to say).

TONGUE + VERB **hang out** *The dog lay in a patch of shade with its tongue hanging out.* **| flick, flicker** *The snake's tongue flicked out of its mouth.* **| lick sth** *His tongue licked dry lips.* **| wag** *(figurative) This is a small island and tongues are beginning to wag* (= people are beginning to gossip). **| find** *(figurative) Before she could find her tongue* (= speak) *the door had closed behind him.* **| watch** *(figurative) You just watch your tongue* (= be careful what you say)*!*

PHRASES **be on the tip of your tongue** *(figurative) It was on the tip of her tongue to refuse.* **| get your tongue around/round sth** *(figurative) He was having trouble getting his tongue around my name.* **| a tongue of fire/flame** *(figurative) Tongues of flame licked up the walls.*

2 a language

ADJ. **mother, native** *She speaks English and Danish, though her native tongue is German.* **| foreign | strange**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She could hear men whispering in a foreign tongue.*

PHRASES **speak in tongues** (= to speak in unknown languages, especially at a religious ceremony)

tonne *noun* > Note at MEASURE

tonsils *noun*

ADJ. **swollen**

VERB + TONSILS **have out** *I had my tonsils out when I was ten.*

tool *noun*

1 **instrument for making/repairing things**

ADJ. **general-purpose, multi-purpose | basic, primitive, standard, traditional** *craftsmen using traditional tools* **| sophisticated, special | sharp | rusting/rusty | cutting, drawing, measuring | cordless, hand, machine, power | agricultural, engineering, farm, garden/gardening, industrial, woodworking**

QUANT. **set**

VERB + TOOL **use | sharpen | blunt** *Cutting concrete would blunt a metal-cutting tool.* **| down ~s** *Workers downed tools* (= stopped work) *in protest at poor safety standards in the works.*

TOOL + NOUN **kit**

PHRASES **the tool/tools of the trade** *The guitarist opened the case and took out the tool of his trade.*

2 **sth that helps you do/achieve sth**

ADJ. **effective, essential, important, indispensable, invaluable, major, necessary, powerful, useful, valuable, vital | educational, learning, reference, research** *This dictionary is an invaluable reference tool for advanced learners.* **| ideological, negotiating, political, propaganda** *We must ensure that education is not used as a political tool.* **| communication, management, marketing | analysis/analytical, design, desktop, development, drawing, multimedia, presentation, programming, software**

toot *noun*

VERB + TOOT **give (sb), let out | hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *The car overtook with a toot.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **the toot of a horn, a toot on the horn** *The taxi driver gave a toot on the horn.* > Note at SOUND

tooth *noun*

ADJ. **big, enormous, huge | gappy** *She wore a brace to correct her gappy teeth.* **| prominent, sticking-out** *I used to be self-conscious of my sticking-out teeth.* **| even, straight | crooked, jagged** *(often figurative)*, **misshapen** *Her smile showed crooked teeth. Skyscrapers rose like jagged teeth.* **| broken, missing | good, healthy, pearl-like, pearl-white, perfect, splendid, strong, white | yellow | decayed, rotten | loose, wobbly | aching | capped, false, gold | needle-sharp, razor-sharp, sharp** *Mink have razor-sharp teeth.* **| savage | back, front | bottom, top | canine | baby, milk** *I've still got one of my baby teeth.* **| wisdom**

VERB + TOOTH **have | brush, clean | extract, pull out, remove | have out** *I've just had a tooth out at the dentist's.* **| knock out | lose** *I lost three teeth in the fight.* **| fill | bare, reveal, show** *The dog bared its teeth at us and growled. The man smiled, revealing perfect white teeth.* **| clamp, clench, grit** *He broke off what he was saying, clamping his teeth together. She answered through clenched teeth* (= opening her mouth only a little because of anger). **| clamp sth between/in** *His pipe was firmly clamped between his teeth.* **| gnash, grind | sink** *The cat sank its teeth into his finger.* **| cut** *The baby's crying because he's cutting a new tooth* (= a new one is coming through).

TOOTH + VERB **be/come through** *Billy's first tooth is now through.* **| fall out | bite sb/sth, nip sb/sth, sink into sb/sth, snap together | ache | chatter** *Their teeth were chattering with cold.* **| flash, gleam, glint, shine** *Her teeth flashed as she smiled.* **| grin**

TOOTH + NOUN **decay, loss | abscess | enamel | mark** *The cat left teeth marks in my arm.*

PREP. **against the/your ~** *He clashed the spoon against his teeth as he ate.* **| between the/your ~** *She answered the phone with a cigarette between her teeth.* **| in the/your ~** *The cat came in with a mouse in its teeth.* **| through the/your ~** *‘Come here now!’ she growled through her teeth.*

top *adj.*

VERBS **be | come** *She came top in the exams.*

PREP. **in** *She was top in maths.* **| of** *He was top of his class.*

top *noun*

1 **highest part/surface of sth**

ADJ. **extreme, very** *We didn't climb to the very top of the mountain, but close enough.* | **cliff** (also **clifftop**), **hill** (also **hilltop**), **mountain** (also **mountaintop**), **roof** (also **rooftop**), **table, tree** (also **treetop)**

PREP. **at the ~, on ~** *Each cake had a cherry on top. There was a vase on top of the bookcase.* | **to the ~**

PHRASES **from top to bottom** *I'm going to clean the house from top to bottom this weekend.*

2 **highest/most important rank/position**

VERB + TOP **get to, make it to, reach, rise to** *Few of the trainee footballers make it to the top. She rose to the top of her profession within ten years.*

PREP. **at the ~** *The company has an unusually high proportion of young people at the top.* | **on ~, to the ~**

PHRASES **top of the agenda** *Pay was now (at the) top of the employees' agenda.* | **top of the class** *She was top of the class in maths.*

3 **cover that you put on sth in order to close it**

ADJ. **bottle**

VERB + TOP **lever off, prise off, remove, take off, unscrew | put on, screw on**

4 **piece of clothing**

ADJ. **hooded, long-sleeved, sleeveless | baggy, loose | bikini, pyjama, tracksuit** > Special page at CLOTHES

topic *noun*

ADJ. **chosen, selected | broad, general, large, wide** *Before dealing with specific cases, she spoke on the broad topic of 'discipline'.* **| diverse, wide-ranging** *The book covers such diverse topics as snorkelling and first aid.* **| narrow | central, dominant, important, key, main, major, principal | complex, difficult | conversational, essay, lecture, research | controversial, sensitive** *It might be better to avoid such a controversial topic.* **| historical, philosophical, scientific, social, etc.**

VERB + TOPIC **consider, cover, discuss, explore, deal with, focus on, look at, speak on, write on** *In the next chapter the writer focuses on the topic of adoption.*

TOPIC + NOUN **area, heading | work** *Our teaching is based largely on topic work.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *Mr Graham will speak on the topic of dog breeding.*

PHRASES **a choice of topic** *She was an excellent speaker, but I found her choice of topic strange.* **| a range/variety of topics, a topic of conversation/discussion** *His main topic of conversation is football.*

topless *adj.*

VERBS **be, go, perform, pose, sunbathe** *Do you dare to go topless on the beach? There were rumours that she had posed topless for a magazine.* **| show sb**

torch *noun*

1 **electric light carried in the hand**

ADJ. **powerful | electric**

VERB + TORCH **carry, have | switch off/on, turn off/on | flash, play, point, shine** *The policeman played his torch over the men's faces. I shone my torch through the crack.*

TORCH + VERB **flash, play, shine** *A powerful torch shone in their direction.*

TORCH + NOUN **beam**

PHRASES **the beam of a torch, light from/of a torch** *We struggled to read the map by the light of the torch.*

2 **piece of burning wood carried to give light**

ADJ. **blazing, burning, flaming, flaring, flickering**

VERB + TORCH **light** *They lit their torches from the fire.* **| carry, hold** *Servants were carrying lighted torches.*

TORCH + VERB **light** *The path to the castle was lit by blazing torches.* **| burn** *The torches were burning fiercely.* **| flare | flicker, splutter | go out** *The torch flickered and went out.*

torment *noun*

ADJ. **great | inner, mental, private**

VERB + TORMENT **endure, suffer** *She has suffered great mental torment.* **| be released from**

PREP. **in ~** *He was a man in torment.*

PHRASES **a soul in torment** *The sea wailed like a soul in torment.*

tornado *noun*

TORNADO + VERB **hit sth, strike sth** *The town was hit by a tornado last night.* **| damage sth, destroy sth, devastate sth**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The building was badly damaged in a tornado.*

torpedo *noun*

VERB + TORPEDO **carry** *enemy planes carrying torpedoes* **| fire, launch, release | drop**

TORPEDO + VERB **hit sth, strike sth**

TORPEDO + NOUN **tube | boat, bomber**

torrent *noun*

1 **large amount of water moving very quickly**

ADJ. **raging, roaring, rushing** *After heavy rain, the little stream becomes a raging torrent.* **| foaming, muddy**

PREP. **in ~s** *The rain poured down in torrents.*

PHRASES **a torrent of rain/water**

2 **large amount of sth that comes suddenly**

VERB + TORRENT **unleash** *The sight of her father unleashed a torrent of emotions.*

PREP. **in a ~** *Her pent-up anger was released in a torrent of words.* **| ~ of** *a torrent of abuse/criticism/tears*

torso *noun*

ADJ. **bare, naked | tanned | lower, upper | human | headless, mutilated** *The headless torso of a man was found in some bushes.*

VERB + TORSO **reveal** *He took off his shirt to reveal his tanned torso.*

torture *nou*n

ADJ. **brutal | systematic | mental, physical**

VERB + TORTURE **inflict | suffer**

TORTURE + NOUN **camp, chamber, room | victim**

torture *verb*

ADV. **badly, brutally, severely | routinely** *The prisoners were routinely tortured.*

PHRASES **torture sb to death**

toss *noun*

VERB + TOSS **lose, win** *England won the toss and chose to kick off.*

PREP. **with a ~**

PHRASES **(by/on) the toss of a coin** *The order of play was decided by the toss of a coin.* **| a toss of sb's/the head** *'Of course not,' she said with a toss of her head.*

toss *verb*

1 **throw sth carelessly**

ADV. **carelessly, casually** *She picked up the package and casually tossed it into her bag.* **| aside, away, back, over** *She tossed back her blonde hair.*

PREP. **into, out of, to** *He tossed the letter over to me.*

2 **keep moving up and down/from side to side**

ADV. **restlessly** *She tossed about restlessly all night with a high fever.* **| about** *He was tossed about in his boat.*

PHRASES **toss and turn** *He tossed and turned all night, unable to sleep.*

3 **cover food in a sauce**

ADV. **gently, lightly | well | together**

PREP. **in** *Toss the vegetables lightly in olive oil.*

total *noun*

ADJ. **annual, monthly | combined, cumulative, grand, overall, sum** *His two goals give him a grand total of 32 for the season. The sum total of my knowledge of biology is not impressive.* **| final | high, huge, large, record** *a record total of victories* **| low, small | global, national, world/worldwide | jobless, unemployment** *Britain's jobless total rose by 20,000 last month.*

VERB + TOTAL **add up to, give, make (up)** *Their earnings were £250, £300 and £420, giving a total of £970.* **| bring, take** *A donation of £250 has been received, bringing the total to £3,750.* **| achieve** *The Greens achieved a total of 18 seats.*

TOTAL + VERB **rise | fall**

PREP. **in ~** *In total, they spent 420 hours on the project.* **| out of a ~ of** *180 vehicles out of a total of 900 examined were not roadworthy.* **| ~ of**

touch *noun*

1 **act of touching sb/sth**

ADJ. **delicate, gentle, light, slight** *The slightest touch will set off the alarm.*

PREP. **at sb/sth's ~** *The door swung open at his touch. You can now do your shopping at the touch of a button.*

2 **small detail**

ADJ. **final, finishing | decorative, festive, homely, romantic** *The family photos give the room a homely touch.* **| humorous | classy, lovely, nice, professional** *Giving her flowers was a nice touch.* **| feminine, human, idiosyncratic, individual, personal | little** *The decor includes many idiosyncratic little touches.*

VERB + TOUCH **add, give sth, put** *She's just putting the finishing touches to her painting.*

3 **particular ability**

ADJ. **golden, magic | deft, sure** *With students she had a sure touch and showed great personal sensitivity.* **| light** *He handles this controversial subject with a light touch.* **| political** *He found his old political touch when the crisis emerged.*

VERB + TOUCH **find | lose** *Maybe the champion is losing her magic touch.*

4 **small amount of sth**

ADJ. **little, subtle | welcome**

VERB + TOUCH **add, bring** *Her speech brought a welcome touch of humour to the evening.*

PREP. **with a ~ of** *'Thanks,' she said, with a touch of sarcasm.* **| ~ of**

5 **contact**

ADJ. **close** *The security staff were in close touch with the local police.*

VERB + TOUCH **get in** *I'm trying to get in touch with Jane. Do you have her number?* **| keep in, stay in** *It is important to keep in touch with the latest research. Let's keep in touch.* **| put sb in** *I'll put you in touch with someone in your area.* **| lose** *I've lost touch with all my old friends.*

PREP. **in ~** *Are you still in touch with your friends from college?* **| out of ~** *This government is increasingly out of touch with ordinary voters.* **| ~ with**

touch *verb*

1 **put your hand on sb/sth; be in contact with sb/sth**

ADV. **(not) actually, not even, not quite** *He did not actually touch the substance, but may have inhaled microparticles.* | **barely, hardly, scarcely** *You've hardly touched your food* (= not eaten it). | **almost, nearly, practically** *Their faces were almost touching.* | **just** | **briefly** *His fingers briefly touched hers.* | **gently, lightly** | **gingerly** | **accidentally, inadvertently** *He accidentally touched a live wire attached to overhead power cables.* | **never** *He said I kicked him, but I never touched him!*

VERB + TOUCH **want to** | **(not) dare (to)** *Don't you dare touch me!* | **reach out to** *Her hand reached out to touch his cheek.* | **let sb** *He wouldn't let me touch the wound.*

PREP. **on** *He touched her gently on the arm.* | **with** *She touched him with her hand.*

2 **make sb feel a strong emotion**

ADV. **deeply** *The story touched me very deeply.* **PHRASAL VERBS touch on/upon sth**

ADV. **briefly** | **just, merely** *Photojournalism and the birth of photography are merely touched on in the book.*

VERB + TOUCH **want to** *I want to touch briefly on another aspect of the problem.*

touched *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem**

ADV. **deeply, greatly, really, very | quite, rather**

PREP. **by** *We were deeply touched by your concern.*

tough *adj.*

1 **difficult/unpleasant**

VERBS **be, seem | get**

ADV. **extremely, particularly, really, very | a bit, fairly, a little, pretty, quite** *Things were pretty tough at first.*

PREP. **on** *It's very tough on the wives when the husbands go off like that.*

2 **strict/firm**

VERBS **be | become, get**

ADV. **extremely, particularly, very | fairly, pretty, quite | enough** *Has the government been tough enough on polluters?*

PREP. **on** *The government has promised to get tough on crime.* **| with** *You have to be tough with these young thugs.*

3 **strong**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get, grow | act, talk** *(both informal) Then this guy started acting tough.*

ADV. **incredibly, really, remarkably, very | pretty, quite, reasonably | enough** *Are you sure you're physically tough enough for this job?* **| mentally, physically**

tour *noun*

1 **journey**

ADJ. **foreign, international, national, nationwide, overseas, provincial, world | American, UK, etc. | two-city, three-country, etc.** *The group will shortly go on a ten-city European tour.* **| whirlwind, whistle-stop** *The president embarked on a whirlwind tour of the provinces.* **| comprehensive, gruelling, lengthy, long, marathon | two-week, three-week, etc. | official** *the prime minister's first official overseas tour* **| grand** *He took his degree in 1665 before embarking on the grand tour* (= a tour of Europe lasting several months). **| inclusive, package** *an all-inclusive package tour of Austria* **| mystery** *(often humorous) We reboarded the coach and set off on a magical mystery tour in search of tea.* **| coach, cycle, rail, walking | camping | cricket, rugby, etc. | concert, lecture, speaking, study, theatre | sell-out, successful** *The band is just back from a sell-out European tour.*

VERB + TOUR **do, go on, make, undertake | embark on, set off on**

TOUR + NOUN **company, operator | date, schedule** *Phone for details of the band's tour dates.* **| leader, manager** *Our tour leaders are all fluent in English. The team's tour manager called a press conference.* **| party, squad** *He wasn't selected for England's tour party to Australia.* **| bus, van**

PREP. **on (a) ~** *We met a group of cyclists on a tour in the Lake District. The band is currently on tour in the States.* **| ~ of** *I'd like to do a tour of Belgium on foot.*

PHRASES **tour of duty** *The soldiers were returning from a six-month tour of duty in Northern Ireland.*

2 **short visit**

ADJ. **brief, quick, lightning** *Our host gave us a quick tour of the house.* **| extensive | grand** *(humorous) Come on, I'll give you the grand tour of the backyard.* **| conducted, guided, self-guided | city, factory | sightseeing | circular**

VERB + TOUR **give sb, take sb on | do, make** *I made a lightning tour of the office to say goodbye.*

TOUR + NOUN **guide**

PHRASES **tour of inspection** *The headmaster started his tour of inspection with the staff room.*

tour *verb*

ADV. **extensively**

VERB + TOUR **plan to**

PREP. **all over** *We plan to tour all over the country.* **| in** *She has toured extensively in the US.*

tourism *noun*

ADJ. **international, overseas | mass, package | expanding, increased | eco-friendly, ecological, environmental, green, sustainable | farm**

VERB + TOURISM **boost, increase, promote | be dependent upon, depend on, rely on** *The islands' economy is largely dependent upon tourism.*

TOURISM + VERB **boom, increase** *With the advent of the railways, tourism boomed.* **| decline, fall, slump**

TOURISM + NOUN **business, enterprise, industry, market, sector | development, promotion | strategy | officer | potential** *The city is finally realizing its tourism potential.*

PREP. **through ~** *The town survives mainly through tourism.*

PHRASES **a decline/downturn/drop in tourism, the development/promotion of tourism, earnings/income/revenue from tourism, the growth in/of tourism, the impact of tourism, an increase/a rise in tourism**

tourist *noun*

ADJ. **foreign, Western | American, Japanese, etc. | modern, nineteenth-century**

QUANT. **coachload, party**

VERB + TOURIST **attract, draw** *The Story of the Loch Ness Monster has attracted many tourists to the area.* **| drive/frighten away** *The high level of crime is frightening away tourists.*

TOURIST + VERB **flock to sth, frequent sth, visit sth** *the part of town most frequented by tourists*

TOURIST + NOUN **area, centre, destination, haunt, resort, spot, town, trap** *Recently Edinburgh has become a popular tourist centre.* **| attraction, facility, sight** *Pompeii is one of Italy's prime tourist attractions. The theme park is the region's most popular tourist facility.* **| route, trail** *The town is off the usual tourist trail.* **| hotel, shop | business, industry, trade | board, office | information** *the local tourist information office* **| guide** *I bought a tourist guide to Paris. She works as a tourist guide.* **| map | traffic, visitors** *the reduction in tourist traffic due to the violence* **| season | potential** *The city has unrealized tourist potential.* **| visa | bus, coach**

PHRASES **influx of tourists** *The festival is accompanied by a huge influx of tourists.*

tournament *noun*

ADJ. **chess, golf, tennis, etc. | qualifying, ranking, World Cup | European, international, national, world | major | one-day | knockout, round-robin | doubles, five-a-side, seven-a-side, etc., sevens, singles | indoor | club, open, professional | pre-season**

VERB + TOURNAMENT **enter, play (in), take part in** *The tournament was played under floodlights. Several top teams have agreed to play in the tournament.* **| win | hold, organize**

TOURNAMENT + VERB **take place**

TOURNAMENT + NOUN **victory, win** *her first tournament win of the season* **| leader, winner | director, organizer, sponsor | referee | player, professional** *the tournament professional at the local golf club* **| golf** *She retired from tournament golf last year.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *the strongest player in the tournament* **| out of a/the ~** *The loser will be out of the tournament.*

tow *noun*

VERB + TOW **give sb** *A truck driver gave me a tow to the nearest garage.*

TOW + NOUN **bar, line, rope | plane, truck, vehicle | pilot**

PREP. **in ~** *(usually figurative) a harassed mother with three small children in tow* **|** **under ~** *The ship, whose engine had failed, is now safely under tow.*

towel *noun*

ADJ. **clean, fresh | damp, wet | dry | rolled-up | fluffy, soft, thick | paper | bath, bathroom, beach, hand, kitchen, tea | roller | sanitary**

VERB + TOWEL **drape, wrap** *He had a towel draped across his shoulders.*

TOWEL + VERB **hang** *Several towels hung over the side of the bath.*

TOWEL + NOUN **rail** *a heated towel rail*

tower *noun*

ADJ. **high, high-rise, lofty, massive, tall | squat | two-storey, three-storey, etc.** *They lived in a ten-storey tower in the town centre.* **| octagonal, round, square | ancient, Gothic, medieval | fortified | twin** *Twin towers flanked the castle gateway.* **| ruined | control, lookout, observation, watch** (also **watchtower)** *Armed border guards manned the lookout towers.* **| bell, clock | cooling, water | television | computer | conning | castle, cathedral, church | ivory** *(figurative) academics sitting in their ivory towers*

TOWER + VERB **collapse**

town *noun*

1 **place with many streets and buildings**

ADJ. **big, large, major | little, small | nearby, neighbouring, surrounding | ancient, historic, medieval, old | new** *It was built as a new town in the 1960s.* **| industrial | busy** *a busy market town* **| boom, thriving** *London was a boom town and the stock market was soaring. a thriving holiday town* **| sleepy** *a sleepy provincial town in southern France* **| country, provincial | county** *Beverley was then the county town of the East Riding of Yorkshire* (= the main town where the county offices were). **| home, native** *She has gone back to live in her home town.* **| border | coastal, seaside | holiday, resort | cathedral, market, university | dormitory, satellite | fortified** *Kitzbuhel is an ancient fortified town with fine medieval buildings.* **| shanty | ghost** *It's been a ghost town since the gold rush ended.* **| twin** *Darlington's twin town of Amiens*

VERB + TOWN **build, found | live in** *How many people live in the town?* **| get out of, leave, move out of** *He left town yesterday for a conference in York. They wanted to move out of town and start a new life in the country.*

TOWN + VERB **grow | flourish**

TOWN + NOUN **hall, square, walls | council | life | planning**

PREP. **in ~** *They'll be back in town tomorrow.* **| out of ~** *I was out of town last week. an out-of-town superstore* **| outside (the) ~** *a lake just outside the town*

PHRASES **the centre/middle of (the) town, the edge/outskirts of (the) town**

2 **main part of a town, with the shops, etc.**

VERB + TOWN **go into** *I'm going into town?can I get you anything?*

PREP. **in ~** *Mum's in town doing some shopping.*

toxic *adj.*

VERBS **be, stay | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | quite | potentially** *potentially toxic chemicals*

PREP. **to** *This chemical is toxic to many forms of life.*

toy *noun*

ADJ. **cuddly, fluffy, soft | battery-operated, clockwork, electronic, mechanical, remote-control, wind-up | construction/constructional, educational, learning, scientific | squeaky | child's, children's | executive** *Desktop publishing is probably the best executive toy ever invented.* **| sex**

VERB + TOY **play with | snatch** *Freddie kept snatching toys from the other children.* **| pick up, put away, tidy up/away**

TOY + NOUN **department, library, shop, store** *All kinds of toys can be borrowed from the toy library.* **| company, maker, manufacturer | box, cupboard**

trace *noun*

1 **mark/sign that shows sb/sth happened/existed**

ADJ. **archaeological, historical | indelible, permanent | memory** *(technical)*

VERB + TRACE **leave** *The burglar had left several traces of his presence. Little trace is left of how Stone Age people lived.* **| bear, reveal, show | discover, find** *The search party had found no trace of the missing climbers.* **| obliterate, remove** *Remove all traces of rust with a small wire brush.* **| disappear/sink/vanish without** *The ship seems to have sunk without trace.*

TRACE + VERB **remain** *Traces still remain of the long-defunct Surrey Iron Railway.*

PREP. **with/without a ~ of sth** *'No thanks,' she said, with a trace of irritation in her voice.* **| without ~** *The plane was lost without a trace over the Atlantic.*

2 **very small amount of sth**

ADJ. **discernible, faint, minute, slight, small, tiny** *There was not the faintest trace of irony in her voice.* **| unmistakable**

VERB + TRACE **contain** *The water was found to contain traces of sulphuric acid.* **| detect, find**

TRACE + NOUN **amount | element, gas, metal, mineral** *Kelp is rich in vitamins and trace elements.*

PREP. **~ of** *a trace of amusement/anxiety/a smile*

trace *verb*

1 find out where sth is/where it comes from

ADV. **successfully**

VERB + TRACE **be able/unable to, can** *Police have been unable to trace her movements during her final days.* **| attempt to, try to | help (to) | fail to | be difficult to | be possible to**

PREP. **to** *The stolen paintings have been successfully traced to a London warehouse.*

2 find/describe the cause/origin of sth

ADV. **carefully | easily** *Words have over the centuries acquired meanings not easily traced in dictionaries.* **| directly | historically | back**

VERB + TRACE **can | attempt to, try to | be difficult to** *The origins of the custom are difficult to trace.* **| be possible to**

PREP. **to** *The book traces the history of the game back to an incident in 1863.*

3 mark where the line of sth is with a thin object

ADV. **lightly**

PREP. **with** *She lightly traced the outline of his face with her finger.*

track record *noun*

ADJ. **good, impressive, proven | poor**

VERB + TRACK RECORD **have, possess**

PREP. **~ for** *If possible, select pairs of fish that already have a track record for breeding.* **| ~ in** *Applicants should have a proven track record in telesales.*

track *noun*

1 marks left behind by a car/a person/an animal

ADJ. **deep | fresh | animal, boot, car, tyre** *The beach is criss-crossed with animal tracks.*

VERB + TRACK **leave, make** *Rabbits had left tracks in the snow.* **| cover** *(often figurative) He had been careless, and had done little to cover his tracks.* **| follow**

PREP. **on the ~ of** *(often figurative) She felt the excitement of a journalist on the track of a good story.*

PHRASES **freeze/halt/stop in your tracks** *(figurative)*, **halt/stop sb/sth in their/its tracks** *(figurative) The disease was stopped in its tracks by immunization programmes.* **| make tracks** *(figurative) It's getting late?I'd better make tracks* (= leave).

2 path/rough road

ADJ. **narrow | wide | steep | bumpy, dusty, grassy, muddy, rough, rutted, sandy, slippery, stony | ancient, medieval | cinder, dirt, mud, unpaved | cart, cycle, sheep, ski | single** *a single track road with passing places* **| farm, forest/forestry, hillside, mountain, woodland | perimeter** *A few planes were parked on the perimeter track of the airfield.*

VERB + TRACK **follow**

TRACK + VERB **lead** *The track leads across a meadow.* **| fork** *When the track forks, take the left fork.*

PREP. **along/down/up a/the ~** *Continue along the farm track for another hundred metres.*

PHRASES **off the beaten track** *(figurative)* (= not in a place that most people go to), **on the right/wrong track** *(figurative) The new manager successfully got the team back onto the right track.* **| on the wrong track** *(figurative) The police were on the wrong track when they treated the case as a revenge killing.*

3 special path, often in a circle, for racing

ADJ. **race** (also **racetrack**), **running | indoor, outdoor | all-weather | training, warm-up | fast | dog**

PHRASES **track and field** *The competition features many top track and field athletes.*

4 metal rails on which a train runs

ADJ. **rail, railway, tram | double, single | elevated | eastbound, westbound, etc. | narrow gauge, standard gauge**

VERB + TRACK **lay | lift** *Many branch lines were closed, and the tracks lifted.*

TRACK + NOUN **layout**

5 direction/course that sb/sth takes

ADJ. **fast, inside** *an inside track to the ear of government* **| parallel, twin** *a twin track approach to crime* **| career** *She decided to change her career track.*

VERB + TRACK **switch** *He switched tracks and went back to college.*

PREP. **along a/the ~** *Film comedy developed along a similar track to film drama.* **| on (a/the) ~** *A UN spokesman insisted that the implementation of the peace plan is back on track. The ship was on a southerly track.* **| ~ for** *She seems to be on the fast track for promotion.* **| ~ to** *The country is on the fast track to democracy.*

PHRASES **keep track of sth** (= to know what is happening, where sth is, etc.) *Keep track of all your payments by writing them down in a book.* **| lose track of sth** (= to not know what is happening, where sth is, etc.) *I was so absorbed in my work that I lost track of time.*

6 one song/piece of music on a cassette/CD

ADJ. **album | live | title | unreleased | dance, disco | backing | drum, guitar, rhythm, solo, vocal** (see also **soundtrack)**

VERB + TRACK **cut, lay down, record** *She had already cut a couple of tracks as lead singer with her own group.* **| play | listen to**

tractor *noun*

ADJ. **caterpillar | agricultural, farm**

VERB + TRACTOR **drive**

TRACTOR + VERB **plough, work** *the sound of a tractor ploughing in the field nearby*

TRACTOR + NOUN **driver | cab | shed**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *a farmer on his tractor*

PHRASES **a tractor and trailer**

trade union (*also* **trades union, union)** *noun*

ADJ. **free, independent, official, public sector, recognized, registered | militant, strong | local, national | electricians', teachers', etc.**

VERB + TRADE UNION **form, set up | dissolve | join | belong to | ban**

TRADE UNION + VERB **be affiliated to sth | represent sb/sth** *The union represents 40% of all hospital workers.* **| negotiate (sth)** *The nurses' union negotiated a 3% pay rise.* **| accept sth, agree (to sth) | refuse sth, reject sth, threaten sth** *The union threatened strike action if its demands were not met.* **| claim sth, express sth** *Several unions expressed support for the strike.* **| support sb/sth**

TRADE UNION + NOUN **confederation, federation, movement, organization | affiliation | action, activism, activity, militancy, power | rights | activist, leader, member/membership, official, representative | law** > Note at ORGANIZATION

trade *noun*

1 **buying/selling of goods/services**

ADJ. **brisk, flourishing, lively, roaring, thriving** *All around the pyramids, salespeople were doing a roaring trade in souvenirs.* | **lucrative, profitable** | **external, foreign, global, international, overseas, world** | **domestic, internal, inter-provincial, inter-regional, regional** | **export, import, import-export** | **direct, indirect** | **free** | **fair** *The organization promotes fair trade with developing countries.* | **legal, legitimate** | **illegal, illicit** *attempts to curb the illicit trade in exotic species* | **private** | **bilateral, mutual** | **unilateral** | **coastal, maritime** | **agricultural, commercial** | **retail, wholesale** *It has been a bad year for the retail trade.* | **book, fur, slave, timber, tourist, wine, wool** | **evil** *the evil trade in drugs*

VERB + TRADE **carry on, conduct, do, engage in, ply** *the tools needed to carry on a trade All manner of hawkers and street sellers were plying their trade.* | **boost, build up, develop, expand, increase, promote** *a bid to boost foreign trade He built up a trade in seeds, corn and manure.* | **damage, harm** *A bitterly cold winter damaged industrial output and trade.* | **lose** *Shops have lost a day's trade.* | **ban, restrict**

TRADE + VERB **boom, expand, grow, increase, pick up** | **decline, fall**

TRADE + NOUN **balance, figures, performance, statistics** | **surplus** | **deficit, gap, imbalance** | **barrier, blockade, boycott, embargo, restrictions, sanctions** | **tariff** | **dispute, war** *The countries were locked in a trade war, refusing to allow imports of each other's goods.* | **liberalization** | **benefits, concessions** | **accord, agreement, deal, pact, protocol, treaty** | **negotiations, talks** | **cooperation, links, network, relations** | **policy, practice** *The US was accused of employing unfair trade practices.* | **law, rules** | **bloc** *The five countries formed a regional trade bloc.* | **delegation, mission** *Several local firms took part in a trade mission to Spain.* | **official, representative** *talks between trade officials from the two countries* | **mark** (also **trademark**), **name** | **exhibition, fair, show** | **centre** | **route** *The road has been an important trade route since prehistoric times.* | **cycle** *the boom and slump periods of a trade cycle* | **association, body, group, organization** *the trade body representing water companies* (see also **trade union**) | **buyer, customer** *The vase was bought by a trade buyer* (= for example, somebody who works in the antiques trade). | **directory** | **journal, magazine, paper, press** |

information, secret *The employees were fired for divulging trade secrets to a competitor.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She's in the wholesale fruit trade. These special flour sacks are known in the trade as 'pockets'.* **| ~ between** *Trade between the Adriatic ports and their hinterland had grown.* **| ~ in** *Steps were taken to ban the trade in ivory.* **| ~ with** *The US has restricted trade with India.* > Special page at BUSINESS

2 **job**

VERB + TRADE **learn | exercise, follow, practise**

PREP. **by ~** *She is a carpenter by trade.*

PHRASES **a jack of all trades** (= a person who can do many different types of work), **the tricks of the trade** *The experienced artisan would pass on the tricks of the trade to the apprentice.*

trade *verb*

ADV. **profitably, successfully | actively | openly** *The firm openly traded in arms.* **| publicly** *publicly traded securities* **| freely** *He claimed that all shops should be able to trade freely on Sundays.* **| directly | illegally**

VERB + TRADE **continue to | cease to**

PREP. **as** *They now trade as a partnership.* **| in** *countries trading illegally in rhinoceros horn* **| with** *Early explorers traded directly with the Indians.*

PHRASES **cease/continue trading** *The company has now ceased trading.* **| trade under the name (of) sth** *The company trades under the name 'English Estates'.*

trader *noun*

ADJ. **large** *China is now one of the largest traders in the world.* **| small, small-scale** *small market traders* **| local | foreign, international | prosperous, wealthy | market, street | itinerant | sole** *You can set up in business as a sole trader, in partnership or as a limited company.* **| independent, private | retail | cattle, motor, slave, etc. | commodity, currency, options**

tradesman *noun*

ADJ. **skilled** *This is a job for a skilled tradesman.* **| local | self-employed | respectable** *He got into trouble for seducing the daughter of a respectable tradesman.* **| wealthy**

PHRASES **tradesmen's entrance** *All deliveries should be made to the tradesmen's entrance.*

trading *noun*

ADJ. **busy, heavy, hectic, intensive** *In heavy trading, the 100-share index closed down 38 points.* **| quiet | free | fair, unfair** *a code of practice for fair trading* **| fraudulent, illegal, insider** *a Wall Street dealer jailed for insider trading* **| sole** *Sole trading is where an individual carries on his or her own business.* **| global, international, world | stock market | commodity, currency, equity, foreign exchange, share, stock | ivory**

TRADING + VERB **begin, open | close**

tradition *noun*

ADJ. **age-old, ancient, archaic, centuries-old, deep-rooted, enduring, living, long/long-established, old, time-honoured, unbroken, well-established | distinguished, fine, great, honourable | cherished, hallowed | dominant, powerful, strong | ancestral, family | local, national, native | folk, popular | oral | Catholic, Christian, pagan, etc. | Eastern, English, European, etc. | 19th-century, classical, medieval, modernist, etc. | academic, artistic, cultural, ideological, literary, military, musical, philosophical, political, religious, sociological, sporting, teaching, theatrical** *This region has a great sporting tradition.* **| democratic, liberal, radical, revolutionary**

VERB + TRADITION **have | cherish, continue, follow (in), keep alive, maintain, preserve, uphold** *Following in the Hitchcock tradition, he always appears in the films he directs. Villagers get together every year to keep this age-old tradition alive.* **| hand down** *an oral tradition handed down from generation to generation* **| break (with), go against** *He broke with the family tradition and did not go down the mines.* **| establish, start | revive**

TRADITION + VERB **continue, die hard, survive** *Old habits and traditions die hard.*

PREP. **according to (a/the) ~** *According to tradition, a tree grew on the spot where the king was killed.* **| by ~** *By tradition, nobody interrupts an MP's maiden speech.* **| in (a/the) ~** *In time-honoured tradition, a bottle of champagne was smashed on the ship. He's a politician in the tradition of* (= similar in style to) *Kennedy.*

PHRASES **a departure from tradition** *In a departure from tradition, the bride wore a red dress.* **| in the best traditions of sth** *The building was constructed in the best traditions of medieval church architecture.* **| respect for tradition** *I acquired lasting respect for tradition and veneration for the past.*

traditional *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **very | almost | fairly, pretty, quite, rather | essentially** *a bold but essentially traditional design*

traffic jam *noun*

ADJ. **long, severe**

VERB + TRAFFIC JAM **be/get caught/stuck in, sit in** *Our coach was caught in a traffic jam and got to Heathrow forty minutes late.*

PREP. **~ on the …** *Police report severe traffic jams on the M25, with five-mile tailbacks in places.*

traffic light (*also* **light)** *noun*

ADJ. **amber, green, red | temporary** *There are temporary traffic lights because of the roadworks.*

QUANT. **set** *Turn left at the third set of traffic lights.*

VERB + TRAFFIC LIGHT **go though, jump** *He was stopped by the police for going through a red light.*

TRAFFIC LIGHT + VERB **change (to sth), go green, etc.** *A line of vehicles waited for the traffic lights to change. Stop when the lights change to red.* **| be (on) green, etc.** *The lights were on red but she didn't stop.* **| work** *The traffic lights weren't working.*

PREP. **at the ~s** *There was a hold-up at the lights.*

traffic *noun*

1 **vehicles travelling somewhere**

ADJ. **bad, busy, congested, heavy, thick | light | constant | fast, fast-flowing | slow-moving, sluggish | cycle, heavy goods vehicle, lorry, motor, road, vehicular, wheeled | foot, pedestrian | air, airline** *an air traffic controller* | **boat, maritime, river, sea | rail, railway | motorway | commercial, freight, goods, industrial, passenger | city, city-centre, local, town-centre, urban | international | commuter, tourist | rush-hour | holiday, summer | oncoming** *I stood waiting for a gap in the oncoming traffic.* | **through** *Through traffic is directed around the bypass.* | **northbound, southbound, etc. | one-way, two-way**

QUANT. **stream**

VERB + TRAFFIC **generate, increase** *Building larger roads could generate more traffic.* | **cut, reduce | slow down | block, hold up, obstruct, stop, tie up** *Traffic was held up for six hours by the motorway blockade.* | **direct | divert**

TRAFFIC + VERB **build up, thicken** *In the town centre, traffic was already building up as early as 3 p.m.* | **grow, increase** *Traffic has increased by 50% in ten years.* | **clog sth** *Traffic clogs the streets of the city centre.* | **thin** *Traffic thins noticeably after 9 a. m.* | **flow, move, speed, travel** *The road is being widened to keep traffic moving.* | **go by, pass | head** *We joined the traffic heading northwards on the motorway.* | **roar, rumble**

TRAFFIC + NOUN **accident | hazard** *Sheep are a traffic hazard in the hills.* | **chaos, congestion, disruption, delays, hold-ups, problems, queues | fumes, pollution | noise | flow, speed** *Widening the road would improve traffic flow.* | **levels, volume | calming, management, restraint, safety | sign, signal | laws, legislation, regulations | system | offence, violation | bollard, cone, island** *A traffic island at the junction separates left- and right-turning vehicles.* | **artery** *(formal)*, **route | report, survey, update | cop, officer, police, policeman, warden | engineer, planner | duty** *a policeman on traffic duty*

PHRASES **the volume of traffic**

2 **messages, signals, etc.**

ADJ. **radio, telephone | data, voice | network | Internet, Net, site, Web, website** *Our company will help you generate site traffic.*

VERB + TRAFFIC **boost, build, generate**

3 **illegal buying and selling of sth**

ADJ. **illegal | arms, drug**

PREP. **~ in sth** *the traffic in arms*

tragedy *noun*

1 **event/situation that causes great sadness**

ADJ. **absolute, appalling, awful, great, major, real, terrible | family, human, personal, private**

VERB + TRAGEDY **end in** *A family's outing ended in tragedy when their boat capsized.* **| be dogged by, suffer | avert, avoid, prevent**

TRAGEDY + VERB **happen, occur, strike (sb)** *Tragedy struck when their 8-year-old daughter was knocked down by a car.*

PREP. **~ for sb** *The closure of the factory is a tragedy for the whole community.*

2 **serious play with a sad ending**

ADJ. **classical, Greek, Jacobean, Shakespearean**

tragic *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **genuinely, particularly, really, terribly, very** *a genuinely tragic figure in the play* **| almost | quite, rather** *a rather tragic story*

trail *noun*

1 **line/smell that sb/sth leaves behind**

ADJ. **scent** *Ants follow a scent trail laid down previously.* | **blood, smoke, vapour** | **thin** | **muddy** | **false**

VERB + TRAIL **lay, leave, make** *The couple laid a false trail to escape the paparazzi. The tourists left a trail of litter behind them.* | **pick up** *The dog had picked up the trail of a rabbit.* | **follow** | **lose** *The fox had crossed a stream, and the hounds lost the trail.*

TRAIL + VERB **go cold** *They had to find the kidnappers before the trail went cold.*

PREP. **on sb's ~** *Detectives had found several new clues and were back on the murderer's trail.*

PHRASES **a trail of blood, a trail of devastation** *The hurricane passed, leaving a trail of devastation in its wake.* | **a trail of smoke**

2 **path/route**

ADJ. **forest, nature, woodland** | **10-kilometre, 5-mile, etc.** | **cycle, mountain bike, tourist, walking** | **hippy, tourist** *This restaurant is off the tourist trail.* | **campaign, comeback, winning** *(all figurative) After a disastrous few seasons, the team are on the comeback trail.*

VERB + TRAIL **follow, hit** *In 1967 she hit the hippy trail to India.* | **be on** *(often figurative)*

TRAIL + VERB **go, lead, wend its way** *The trail wends its way through leafy woodland and sunny meadows.*

PREP. **along a/the ~**

trail *verb*

1 **move/walk slowly**

ADV. **slowly | wearily**

PREP. **after** *I trailed wearily after the others.* **| around/round** *They spent their lives trailing around the country.* **| (along) behind**

2 **have a lower score than the other player/team**

ADV. **badly** *Liverpool are now trailing badly in the league.*

PREP. **by** *They were trailing by 12 points until the last few minutes of the game.*

trailer *noun*

ADJ. **lorry | horse**

VERB + TRAILER **load | pull, tow**

TRAILER + VERB **carry sth** *a trailer carrying a motor boat*

PREP. **on/onto a/the ~** *a broken-down car on a trailer*

PHRASES **a tractor and trailer**

train *noun*

1 railway engine pulling carriages/trucks

ADJ. **railway | metro, subway, tube, underground | intercity,** international, long-distance | **local, suburban | express, fast | direct, through** *I got the through train to Manchester.* **| slow, stopping | special | early, evening, midnight, morning,** night, overnight | two o'clock, 10.45, etc. | return *What are the times of the return trains?* **| first, last, next** *The last train leaves at*

TRAIN + VERB **run** *In summer the trains run as often as every ten minutes.* **| start | terminate** *The train terminated in Carlisle.* **| be bound for …** *an express train bound for Edinburgh* **| be due** *The next train is due at 9.45.* **| be delayed, be held up, be late, run late** *Most trains are running late because of the accident.* **| arrive, come in, come into sth, draw in, draw into sth, pull in, pull into sth, steam in, steam into sth** *The next train to arrive at Platform 2 is 00.30.* **| London to Glasgow, etc.** *the Paris to Brussels train The trainthe 12.30 from Leeds.*

| Stuttgart-bound, etc. | northbound, southbound, etc. | Piccadilly line, etc. | crowded, full, loaded | empty | moving | stationary | speeding | runaway | approaching, oncoming *the sound of an approaching train He was pushed into the path of an oncoming train.* **| passing** *the roar of a passing train* **| departing** *She ran alongside the departing train, waving goodbye.* **| delayed, late-running | luxury, Pullman | four-coach, three-coach, etc. | bullet, high-speed | diesel, electric, steam | coal, commuter, freight, goods, mail, passenger | military, troop | model | ghost** *a carnival with ghost trains and dodgem cars*

VERB + TRAIN **take, travel by** *From Germany they travelled by train to Poland.* **| travel on** *She's travelling on the same train as you.* **| use | catch, get, make** *We had to get up early to make the 6 o'clock train for Florence.* **| miss | wait for | run for** *I was late and had to run for my train.* **| board, get on, hop on, jump aboard/on** *We jumped on the train just as it was about to leave.* **| jump from/off, jump out of** *She tried to kill herself by jumping off a moving train.* **| alight from, get off | meet (sb off)** *I'm going to the station to meet her off the train.* **| change** *You'll have to change trains at Cambridge.* **| operate, run** *The company plans to run trains on key intercity routes.* **| cancel** *The 10.19 train has been cancelled.* **| drive | haul** *a train hauled by a steam locomotive* **| stop | derail | fall under, throw sb under** *Driven to despair, he threw himself under a train. came in and I got on. The train drew into the station.* **| come, go** *We didn't want to leave the platform in case the* *train came.* | **reach** *The train reached Prague at half past six.* | **return** | **depart, draw out (of sth), leave, pull away, pull out (of sth), start (off), steam out** *The train pulled out of the station.* | **head …** *The train headed out of Athens.* | **stand, wait** *The train now standing at Platform 3 is the 16.50 to Brighton. a train waiting at a signal* | **move** *Slowly the train began to move.* | **travel** *The high-speed train travels at 120 mph.* | **chug, trundle** *The train chugged slowly forward.* | **gather speed** | **hurtle, rush, speed, steam** *a picture of the bullet train speeding past Mount Fuji* | **slow (down)** | **brake** | **be brought to a halt, come to a halt, halt, stop** | **rattle, rumble, thunder, whistle** *The train rattled into the station.* | **jerk, jolt, lurch, shudder** *The train jolted into motion.* | **approach, come** *The train came towards them.* | **pass** | **enter sth** *The train entered the tunnel.* | **collide (with sth)** | **be loaded with sth, carry sth**

TRAIN + NOUN **journey, ride** | **service** | **station** | **times, timetable** | **fare** | **ticket** | **crew, driver, guard, staff** | **travellers, travelling** | **spotter, spotting** | **accident, collision, crash, disaster** | **window** | **carriage** | **shed** | **robber** | **set** *I saved up my pocket money to buy an electric train set.*

PREP. **aboard/on/on board a/the ~** *the people on the train* | **by ~** *It's quicker by train.* | **~ between** *trains between Brindisi and Rome* | **~ for/to** *He was leaving on the early train for Zaragoza.* | **~ from** *the train from Birmingham to Worcester*

PHRASES **a train load of sth** *train loads of iron ore* | **a train to catch** *I can't stop now, I have a train to catch.*

2 **number of people/animals moving in a line**

ADJ. **camel, mule, wagon** | **supply**

3 **series of events/actions/thoughts**

VERB + TRAIN **set sth in** *That telephone call set in train a whole series of events.* | **bring sth in** *(figurative) Unemployment brings greater difficulties in its train* (= causes great difficulties).

PHRASES **a train of events, a train of thought** *The telephone rang and she lost her train of thought.*

PREP. **in sb's ~** *(figurative) In the train of* (= following behind) *the rich and famous came the journalists.*

train *verb*

ADV. **hard**

PREP. **for** *The team is training hard for the big match.*

trained *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly** *a highly trained army* **| well** *The animals have all been well trained.* **| fully, properly, thoroughly** *It is important that staff should be properly trained.* **| adequately | badly, inadequately, poorly | appropriately, suitably | explicitly, specially, specifically | formally | professionally | classically** *classically trained dancers*

trainee *noun*

ADJ. **management, teacher | graduate** *Many companies recruit graduate trainees to train as managers.*

VERB + TRAINEE **employ, recruit, take on**

TRAINEE + VERB **work**

TRAINEE + NOUN **accountant, dealer, manager, nurse, solicitor, teacher**

PREP. **as a ~** *She joined as a management trainee.*

trainer *noun*

1 person who trains sb/sth

ADJ. **orchestral, teacher | boxing, etc. | animal, dog, horse, racehorse | champion, winning | personal, private** *He works out every morning with his personal trainer.* > Note at JOB

2 (usually trainers) sports shoe

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + TRAINER **lace up, unlace** > Special page at CLOTHES

training *noun*

1 **learning skills**

ADJ. **basic, initial, preliminary** *New recruits undergo six weeks' basic training at this naval base.* | **advanced, high/higher, high-level** | **comprehensive, systematic, thorough** | **extensive, lengthy** | **intensive** | **essential, necessary** | **minimum** | **adequate, proper** *No one must operate the machinery without proper training.* | **inadequate** | **minimal** *Using spreadsheets requires minimal training.* | **excellent, first-class, high-quality** | **specialist** | **hands-on, practical** | **theoretical** | **continuous, long-term, ongoing** | **individual, one-to-one** | **formal, informal** *He is good at selling, although he has had no formal training.* | **job, job-related, occupational, professional, vocational, work-related** | **in-service, on-the-job** | **off-the-job** | **external** | **internal, on-site** | **computer-based** | **mental, moral, physical, social** | **academic, educational, industrial, intellectual, journalistic, legal, management, medical, military, musical, scientific, technical** | **first-aid** | **assertiveness** | **potty** (= when a child learns to use a potty) | **staff, teacher**

VERB + TRAINING **do, get, have, receive, undergo** *You have to do a year's intensive training to become a paramedic.* | **give sb, provide (sb with)** | **require**

TRAINING + NOUN **base, camp, centre, college, establishment, facility, school** *an army training base a teacher training college* | **activity, course, exercise, initiative, package, plan, programme, project, scheme, strategy, system** *The soldiers were building a bridge as a training exercise.* | **methods, policy, procedures, process, techniques, skills** | **needs, objectives, requirements** | **opportunities, provision** | **aid, device, equipment, material** | **manual** | **instructor, manager, officer, staff** | **body, committee, company, department, organization, provider, service** | **place, placement** | **event, workshop** | **day, period, etc.** | **budget, costs, fees**

PREP. **by ~** *She's an accountant by training.* | **in ~** *I am delighted with the work he has done in training.* | **~ for** *Training for nursing was on strictly formal lines.* | **~ in** *Employees should be given training in safety procedures.*

2 **physical exercises**

ADJ. **hard, rigorous, serious, strict, tough** *She did six months' hard training* *before the marathon.* **| pre-season**

VERB + TRAINING **do**

TRAINING + NOUN **run, session, stint | regime, regimen, routine, schedule | ground, pitch, track** (*figurative*) *This local newspaper has been a training ground for several top journalists.*

PREP. **in ~** *Lewis is in serious training for the Olympics.* **| ~ for**

trait *noun*

ADJ. **admirable, appealing | negative, undesirable, unfortunate | human** *Her boss did not display any human traits.* **| distinctive, enduring, individual | family, genetic, hereditary, inherited | behavioural, character, personal, personality | mental, psychological | obsessional | physical | female, male | cultural, national**

VERB + TRAIT **have, possess | lack | share** *She shares several character traits with her father.* **| display, exhibit, show | acquire, develop, inherit** *We do not know which behavioural traits are inherited and which acquired.* **| identify, recognize**

traitor *noun*

VERB + TRAITOR **turn** *He turned traitor and joined the opposition.* **| denounce sb as**

PREP. **~ to** *He is seen as a traitor to the cause.*

tram *noun*

ADJ. **modern | electric, horse/horse-drawn, steam**

VERB + TRAM **catch, go on, take | miss | board, get on | get off**

TRAM + VERB **run** *The last tram ran through Glasgow in September 1962.* **| rattle | stop**

TRAM + NOUN **service, system | route | stop | ride | driver | car** *a conducted tour in an old tram car* **| shed | line, rail, track | ticket**

PREP. **by ~** *There is easy access to the centre of the city by tram.* **| on a/the ~** *They sat together on the rattling tram.* **| ~ from, ~ to**

trample *verb*

ADV. **down** *crops that have been trampled down by walkers' feet* **| underfoot** *He saved a little girl from being trampled underfoot in the rush for the fire exit.*

PREP. **on** *(often figurative) The government is trampling on the views of ordinary people.* **| over** *Police officers had been trampling all over the ground.*

PHRASES **be trampled to death**

trance *noun*

ADJ. **catatonic, deep | light | hypnotic, mesmeric**

VERB + TRANCE **fall into, go into | put sb into | come out of, awake/wake from**

TRANCE + NOUN **state**

PREP. **in a ~** *In a deep trance, the subject is taken back to an earlier stage of their life.*

tranquil *adj.*

VERBS **be, lie, look, seem** *The village lay tranquil in the evening sunlight.* **| become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very, wonderfully | perfectly, quite | fairly, rather**

transaction *noun*

ADJ. **cross-border, international | domestic | profitable | fraudulent, illegal** *The president had entered into fraudulent property transactions.* **| credit, credit/ debit card | cash, cheque | online | over-the-counter** *Electronic banking may make over-the-counter transactions obsolete.* **| banking, business, commercial, consumer, economic, financial, market, monetary, trade | foreign currency, foreign exchange | property, share | human, intellectual, interpersonal**

VERB + TRANSACTION **carry out, conduct, enter into, make | effect, handle** *to effect a transaction for a client* **| close, complete**

TRANSACTION + VERB **proceed, take place** *to ensure the transaction proceeds smoothly*

TRANSACTION + NOUN **charges, costs**

PREP. **~ between** *The system records all transactions between the firm and its suppliers.* **| ~ in** *Transactions in land are frequently handled by an estate agent.* > Special page at BUSINESS

transcript *noun*

ADJ. **faithful, full, verbatim | edited | official | radio, video | interview, trial**

VERB + TRANSCRIPT **read (through), go through | make | print, publish**

transfer *noun*

ADJ. **massive** *The war caused a massive transfer of population.* | **efficient, smooth, successful** *the smooth transfer of power to the new government* | **net** *There has been a net transfer of lower-paid people away from the inner cities.* | **permanent** *Her boss recommended a permanent transfer overseas.* | **direct** *Employees are paid by direct transfer to a bank account.* | **data, information, knowledge | land, property | population | resource | technology | file, multimedia, software | inter-company, inter-hospital, etc. | bank, capital, cash, credit, financial, money, share, stock | electronic, telegraphic | embryo, gene | charge, electron, energy, heat, nuclear, thermal | close-season, free, 15-million-pound, etc.** (all in football)

VERB + TRANSFER **make** *Only the owner can make a transfer of goods.* | **give sb** *His club have given him a free transfer.*

TRANSFER + VERB **take place**

TRANSFER + NOUN **deal, fee, list, payment, price, system (all in football)**

PREP. **~ between** *the transfer of property between private buyers* | **~ from, ~ to**

transfer *verb*

ADV. **carefully | directly** *Skills cannot be transferred directly from a trainer to a trainee.* **| easily** *Data is easily transferred electronically.* **| successfully | merely, simply | immediately | quickly, rapidly | gradually | eventually | temporarily | formally** *Sovereignty was formally transferred on December 27.* **| automatically | electronically | abroad, back** *transferring assets abroad*

VERB + TRANSFER **agree to | refuse to**

PREP. **across/between** *Can the disease be transferred across species?* **| from, into** *She transferred the sauce into a china jug.* **| onto, to**

transferable *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **easily, freely, highly, readily** *The shares are freely transferable.* **| fully, wholly | not necessarily**

PREP. **between** *Tickets are transferable between members of the same family.* **| from, to** *Skills which are not necessarily transferable from one environment to another.*

transform *verb*

ADV. **considerably, fundamentally, profoundly, radically** *The riots radically transformed the situation.* **| completely, entirely, totally, utterly | quickly, rapidly | gradually, slowly | suddenly | apparently | miraculously** *He seems to have been miraculously transformed into a first-class player.* **| overnight** *Things cannot be transformed overnight.*

VERB + TRANSFORM **help (to) | manage to**

PREP. **from, into** *The place was transformed from a quiet farming village into a busy port.*

PHRASES **the power to transform sb/sth** *the power of religion to transform our hearts and minds*

transformation *noun*

ADJ. **amazing, complete, dramatic, fundamental, major, miraculous, profound, radical, remarkable, revolutionary, startling, total | subtle | gradual | immediate, instant, rapid, sudden | cultural, economic, historical, intellectual, physical, political, social, structural**

VERB + TRANSFORMATION **undergo** *The way we work has undergone a radical transformation in the past decade.* **| make** *He was struggling to make the transformation from single man to responsible husband.* **| achieve, bring about, carry out, cause, effect, lead to** *Going to college brought about a dramatic transformation in her outlook.* **| accelerate | complete**

TRANSFORMATION + VERB **begin | come about, occur, take place** *A startling cultural transformation occurred in post-war Britain.*

TRANSFORMATION + NOUN **process**

PREP. **~ from** *The transformation from disused docks into city-centre cultural venue took three years.* **| ~ in** *This decision marked a fundamental transformation in policy.* **| ~ into** *Japan's transformation into an economic superpower* **| ~ to** *Russia's transformation to a market economy*

transit *noun*

ADJ. **air, rail, road, sea | mass** *An improved mass transit system would cut traffic on the roads.* **| rapid**

TRANSIT + NOUN **point** *The port has become a transit point in the drug trade.* **| camp** *a transit camp for refugees* **| lounge** *The passengers had been transferred into the transit lounge.* **| shed** *The goods were still in a transit shed on the quay.* **| system** *The city has acquired a light rail transit system.*

PREP. **in ~** *Many of the goods were damaged in transit.* **| ~ between** *goods in transit between factory and store* **| ~ from, ~ to** *in transit from factory to store*

transition *noun*

ADJ. **abrupt, immediate, rapid, sudden | direct | gradual, phased, slow | awkward, difficult, painful | easy, smooth | non-violent, orderly, peaceful**

VERB + TRANSITION **bring about, cause, effect** *The negotiators hoped to effect a smooth transition to an interim administration.* **| complete, make** *The company was slow to make the transition from paper to computer.* **| undergo | mark** *The ceremony marks the transition of the student to graduate status.* **| ease, smooth**

TRANSITION + VERB **occur, take place | be complete** *Her transition from girl to woman was complete.*

TRANSITION + NOUN **period, process | phase**

PREP. **during (the) ~** *He will remain head of state during the transition to democracy.* **| in ~** *The country is in transition from an agricultural to an industrial society.* **| ~ between** *This training course aims to smooth the transition between education and employment.* **| ~ from, ~ to**

PHRASES **a period of transition, a process of transition, a state of transition**

translate *verb*

1 **change sth from one language to another**

ADV. **literally** *'Tiramisu' literally translates as 'pull-me-up'.* **| accurately, correctly | freely, loosely, roughly | generally, normally, usually | variously** *a Greek word variously translated as 'summit', 'top' and 'finishing stroke'*

VERB + TRANSLATE **attempt to, try to | be difficult to** *This word is difficult to translate.*

PREP. **as** *The word 'sensus' can be translated as 'feeling'.* **| for** *I don't speak Italian? can you translate for me?* **| from** *The book has been translated from the Japanese by Livia Yamaguchi.* **| into** *an expression that is difficult to translate into English*

PHRASES **widely translated** *The novel has been widely translated.*

2 **change into a different form**

ADV. **directly | effectively | easily | automatically** *Teacher expectations do not automatically translate themselves into student results.*

VERB + TRANSLATE **attempt to, try to** *trying to translate the theory into simple concepts* **| be difficult to**

PREP. **into** *A small increase in local spending will translate into a big rise in council tax.*

PHRASES **translate sth into action/practice** *attempting to translate these ideas into action*

translation *noun*

ADJ. **accurate, correct, exact | approximate, free, rough | direct, literal, straight, word-for-word | English, Japanese, etc. | simultaneous** *There will be simultaneous translation in English and Chinese.* **| automatic, machine** *advances in machine translation*

VERB + TRANSLATION **do, make** *I've got this translation to do for Friday. She tried making her own translation of the sign without consulting a dictionary.* **| work on | read | survive** *The poems do not survive the translation into English.* **| lose sth in** *The irony is lost in translation.*

TRANSLATION + VERB **read** *The translation of the Latin motto reads 'Not for oneself, but for others'.*

TRANSLATION + NOUN **process | service, work | facilities | exercise | equivalent**

PREP. **for ~** *Each unit of the course ends with sentences for translation.* **| in ~** *I read the book in translation, not in the original Norwegian.* **| ~ into** *Simultaneous translation into English is available to delegates.*

translator *noun*

ADJ. **Dutch, Japanese, etc. | professional | freelance** *working as a freelance translator*

TRANSLATOR + VERB **translate from/into sth, work from/into sth** *translators working from Portuguese into English* > Note at JOB

transmission *noun*

1 **sending out/passing on**

ADJ. **direct, indirect | one-way** *Classes are based on discussion rather than on the one-way transmission of knowledge.* **| onward, outward** *An extra copy of each document was supplied for onward transmission to head office.* **| data, information, voice | facsimile/fax | light, power | money | gas | cable, radio, satellite, television | analogue, digital | live, simultaneous** *There will be simultaneous transmission of the concert on TV and radio.* **| genetic, oral, person-to-person, sexual | herpes, HIV, malaria | cultural**

VERB + TRANSMISSION **prevent**

TRANSMISSION + NOUN **equipment, line, technology | mechanism, network, system | route** *The virus's usual transmission route is by sneezing.*

PREP. **~ among** *HIV transmission among homosexual men* **| ~ between** *transmission between patients* **| ~ by** *transmission by satellite* **| ~ from, ~ to** *transmission from one aircraft to another* **| ~ through** *HIV transmission through blood transfusion*

PHRASES **a mode of transmission, a risk of transmission** *There is a risk of transmission of the virus between hypodermic users.*

2 **TV/radio programme**

ADJ. **radio, television/TV | FM, long-wave, medium-wave, short-wave, UHF, VHF | live, satellite, stereo | test**

VERB + TRANSMISSION **receive**

PREP. **~ from** *a live transmission from Sydney*

3 **in a car, etc.**

ADJ. **automatic, manual | 4-speed, 5-speed**

TRANSMISSION + NOUN **system**

transmit *verb*

1 **pass sth from one person to another**

ADV. **actively | easily, readily | genetically, sexually** *the study of genetically transmitted diseases*

PREP. **from, through** *The disease cannot be transmitted through coughing or sneezing.* **| to** *The infection can be transmitted from a mother to her baby.* **| via** *The virus is easily transmitted via needles.*

2 **send out TV programmes/electronic signals, etc.**

ADV. **automatically | electronically**

PREP. **from, to** *automatically transmitting data from one part of the system to another*

transmitter *noun*

ADJ. **radar, radio, television/TV | voice** *They discovered voice transmitters hidden in the wall.* **| FM, long-wave, medium-wave, short-wave, VHF | low-power, powerful | ground, hand-held, satellite**

VERB + TRANSMITTER **be equipped/fitted with**

TRANSMITTER + VERB **emit sth, send out sth** *The receiver picks up pulses emitted by the transmitter.*

transparent *adj.*

VERBS be, look | become

ADV. extremely, very | completely, entirely, fully, perfectly, quite, totally *They are so thin that they are quite transparent.* **| almost** *Her eyelids were blue and almost transparent.* **| fairly, rather, slightly**

transplant *noun*

ADJ. **bone-marrow, heart, heart-lung, kidney, liver, etc. | double, multi-organ, multiple**

VERB + TRANSPLANT **have, undergo** *She will have to have a heart-lung transplant within 48 hours.* **| carry out, do, perform | reject** *It is likely that such a transplant will be rejected in older people.*

TRANSPLANT + NOUN **operation, surgery | surgeon | team | centre, unit | donor** *A suitable transplant donor has been found.* **| candidate, patient, recipient**

PREP. **for ~** *a shortage of kidneys for transplant*

transplant *verb*

ADV. **successfully**

PREP. **from, into** *Organs are transplanted from donors into patients who need them.* **| to** *The Dutch successfully transplanted trees to the East Indies.*

transport *noun*

ADJ. **cheap, efficient | mass, public** *to travel by/on public transport* **| private | local | city, urban | rural | horse-drawn, motor | air, canal, ground, land, marine, rail, railway, river, road, sea, water | passenger | freight**

VERB + TRANSPORT **use | arrange | provide | have access to** *people who have no access to private transport*

TRANSPORT + NOUN **facilities, provision, services | infrastructure, network, system | business, company, group, industry, operator, organization | chairman, chief, executive, manager, officer, official | consultant, planner | project, scheme, strategy | legislation, policy | budget | minister, spokesman | authority/authorities, committee, department, ministry | needs, requirements | market, sector | costs, fares | allowance** *Staff who transfer to a different office will receive a transport allowance.* **| user | worker | links, routes | congestion | police | safety | strike | union**

PREP. **without ~** *The car broke down, leaving us without transport.*

PHRASES **a form/means/method/mode of transport, your own transport** *Applicants for the job must have their own telephone and transport.*

trap *noun*

1 **hidden equipment used for catching sb/sth**

ADJ. **animal, bear, man, mouse** (also **mousetrap**), **etc. | gin, leghold, pit/ pitfall | radar, speed** *Slow down?there are speed traps along this stretch of road.*

VERB + TRAP **be/get caught in | catch sth in | free sth from** *The fox had managed to free itself from the trap.* **| lay, set | bait** *Mousetraps are traditionally baited with cheese.*

2 **sth that tricks you; unpleasant situation**

ADJ. **hidden, obvious | potential | booby | deadly | death, debt, poverty, unemployment** *The overhead cable is a potential death trap for birds.* **| offside (in football)**

VERB + TRAP **lay, set | spring | lure sb into | catch sb in | be/get caught in, fall into, stumble into, walk into** *It is easy to fall into the trap of taking out a loan you cannot afford.* **| avoid | fear, suspect**

trappings *noun*

ADJ. **external, outward, visible** *She scorns the visible trappings of success, preferring to live unnoticed.*

PHRASES **all the trappings** *They enjoyed all the trappings of wealth.* **| the trappings of power/success**

trauma *noun*

ADJ. **major, severe | emotional, physical, psychological | childhood** *The phobia may have its root in a childhood trauma.*

VERB + TRAUMA **go through, suffer | get over, recover from**

traumatic *adj.*

VERBS be | become, get

ADV. deeply, extremely, particularly, really, very *this deeply traumatic incident in his past* **| fairly, quite, rather**

travel *noun*

ADJ. **air, bus, car, coach, rail, sea, train | foreign, international, overseas, world | long-distance | business | leisure | cheap, concessionary, free | first-class | high-speed | return | frequent** *The job involves frequent travel.* **| space, time**

TRAVEL + NOUN **agency, business, company, firm, industry | arrangements, plans | allowance, costs, expenses | insurance | document, documentation | itinerary | time** *The new bypass will reduce travel time to the airport.* **| sickness | book, brochure, guide, writer**

PREP. **~ from, ~ to** *The price includes return rail travel from London Victoria to Dover.*

travel *verb*

ADV. **fast** *News travels fast these days.* **| slowly | regularly** *business people who travel regularly to the US* **| widely** *She travels widely in her job.* **| freely** *The dissidents were unable to hold meetings or travel freely.* **| independently** *I prefer travelling independently to going on a package holiday.* **| together | separately** *We had to travel separately as we couldn't get seats on the same flight.* **| economy class, first class, etc.** *I always travel first class.* **| far, further (afield)** *for the holidaymaker who wants to travel further afield* **| abroad** *The job gives her the opportunity to travel abroad.* **| home | back, back and forth, down, downstream** *travelling back and forth across the Channel* **| north, northwards, etc.**

VERB + TRAVEL **be able/unable to | be free to | want to, wish to | be forced to, have to** *Hundreds of hospital patients may have to travel long distances for treatment.* **| refuse to**

PREP. **across, along, around/round, between, by, from, into, through, to** *We decided to travel by car. We travelled through France and into Germany.*

PHRASES **freedom to travel, go travelling** *When I finished college I went travelling for six months* (= spent time visiting different places). **| travel light** *She travels light, choosing to use as little equipment as possible.*

traveller *noun*

ADJ. **business | commercial** *Her father was a commercial traveller who sold kitchenware.* **| frequent** *Attractive discounts are available to frequent travellers.* **| foreign, international | great, inveterate, keen, seasoned | adventurous, intrepid | independent** *Independent travellers often steer clear of the most touristy spots.* **| discerning | fellow** *I got to know my fellow travellers quite well in the course of the three-day journey.* **| tired, weary | unwary** *Stations can be dangerous places for the unwary traveller.* **| air, rail/railway, train | space | armchair** (= sb who doesn't travel but likes to read about distant places) *His travel books have given pleasure to generations of armchair travellers.*

VERB + TRAVELLER **guide** *Local tribesmen earn their living guiding travellers across the mountains.*

tray *noun*

ADJ. **laden, loaded** *a heavily laden tray* **| breakfast, coffee, drinks, hospitality, supper, tea** *Every hotel room has a colour TV, telephone and hospitality tray.*

VERB + TRAY **bear, carry | pick up | balance** *He balanced the tray on his knees.* **| place, put down**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *A waitress came in, carrying tea on a tray.* **| ~ of** *waiters bearing trays of champagne*

treacherous *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, prove | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, very | rather | notoriously** *the mountain's notoriously treacherous rocky crest*

tread *noun*

1 sound you make when you are walking

ADJ. **firm, heavy** *I heard his heavy tread moving about upstairs.* **| light, soft | measured, slow, steady**

VERB + TREAD **hear**

TREAD + VERB **move**

PREP. **with a … ~** *A policeman walked by with a slow, measured tread.*

PHRASES **the tread of feet** *The streets have echoed to the tread of feet for more than ten centuries.*

2 on a tyre

ADJ. **tyre, wheel | deep, shallow | worn**

TREAD + VERB **be worn** *The tyre tread has been worn below the legal limit.*

TREAD + NOUN **depth, pattern, width**

PHRASES **a breadth/depth/width of tread**

tread *verb*

ADV. **heavily** *He came down the stairs, treading as heavily as he could.* **| gently, lightly, softly | carefully, gingerly, warily** *She trod gingerly. It would be risky to hurry. (figurative) The government will have to tread carefully in handling this issue.* **| down** *She planted the seeds and trod the earth down.*

PREP. **in** *Billy trod in a big puddle.* **| into** *Some cake crumbs had been trodden into the carpet.* **| on** *Be careful not to tread on the flowers.*

treason *noun*

ADJ. high

PREP. ~ against *an act of high treason against the English crown*

PHRASES an act of treason > Note at CRIME(for verbs)

treasure *noun*

1 collection of very valuable objects

ADJ. **buried, hidden, lost, sunken | pirate, Roman, royal | vast** *a vast treasure of medieval manuscripts*

VERB + TREASURE **hunt for, look for, search for | dig up, discover, find, uncover, unearth | hide**

TREASURE + NOUN **chest, house, trove** *(figurative) This book is a treasure house of information on Arctic birds.* **| hunter, hunting**

PHRASES **a hoard of treasure**

2 sth that is very valuable

ADJ. **great, priceless | rare | ancient | forgotten, hidden, secret, unexpected** *Many forgotten treasures have been discovered in the attics of old houses.* **| archaeological, historic, historical | art, artistic, cultural | church | family | national**

VERB + TREASURE **discover, find, uncover, unearth**

treasurer *noun*

ADJ. **deputy | honorary** *the honorary treasurer of the rugby club* **| corporate**

VERB + TREASURER **act as, be, serve as** *He agreed to act as treasurer.* **| appoint, appoint sb (as), elect, elect sb (as) | resign as, retire as**

PHRASES **treasurer's report** *The treasurer's report gives a breakdown of the club's income and expenditure.*

treat *noun*

ADJ. **great, real, special | little** *I like to give the girls a little treat every now and then.* **| occasional, rare | anniversary, birthday, Christmas, holiday | family | tasty** *Snails are a tasty treat for hedgehogs.*

VERB + TREAT **give sb | deserve**

PREP. **as/for a ~** *We took the kids to the zoo for a special treat.*

PHRASES **be in for a treat/have a treat in store** *If their latest album is half as good as their last one, we've a real treat in store.*

treat *verb*

1 **handle sb/sth in a particular way**

ADV. **equitably, fairly, humanely, kindly, leniently, sympathetically, well | abominably, badly, harshly, roughly, shabbily, unfairly, unjustly** *They treat their animals quite badly.* **| seriously** *These allegations are being treated very seriously indeed.* **| differently | separately**

VERB + TREAT **tend to** *Parents still tend to treat boys differently from girls.*

PREP. **as** *the tendency to treat older people as helpless and dependent* **| like** *Don't treat me like a child!* **| with** *He treated the idea with suspicion.*

PHRASES **a tendency to treat sb/sth**

2 **give sb medical treatment**

ADV. **easily | successfully | surgically**

VERB + TREAT **be difficult to | use sth to**

PREP. **for** *She was treated for cuts and bruises.* **| with** *We can treat this condition quite successfully with antibiotics.*

3 **use a substance to protect sth**

ADV. **chemically** *Chemically treated hair can become dry and brittle.*

PREP. **for** *You need to treat this wood for woodworm.* **| with** *The timber has been treated with chemicals to preserve it.*

treatment *noun*

1 way you behave towards sb/deal with sth

ADJ. **favourable, preferential, special, VIP** *She was given the VIP treatment after winning gold for her country at the Sydney Olympics.* | **generous, lenient** | **equal, fair** | **good, humane** | **sensitive, sympathetic** | **discriminatory, unequal, unfair, unjust, unkind** | **brutal, cruel, degrading, harsh, ill-, inhuman, inhumane, rough, violent** *He claims he suffered ill-treatment at the hands of prison officers.* | **shabby** *You shouldn't put up with such shabby treatment.*

VERB + TREATMENT **get, have, receive, suffer** | **deserve** *He had done nothing to deserve such cruel treatment.* | **give sb, mete out (to sb)** *The treatment meted out to captured soldiers was harsh.* | **put up with**

2 medical care

ADJ. **emergency, immediate, on-the-spot, prompt, urgent** | **follow-up, further** | **long-term** | **effective, successful** | **conventional, orthodox** | **alternative, holistic, homoeopathic** | **hospital** | **inpatient, outpatient** | **free, NHS** | **private** | **specialist** | **dental, medical, psychiatric, veterinary** | **drug, hormone** | **operative, surgical** | **non-operative, non-surgical** | **laser** | **dietary, nutritional** | **beauty, hair**

QUANT. **course**

VERB + TREATMENT **get, have, receive, undergo** *She is still undergoing medical treatment.* | **administer, give sb, provide (sb with)** *Paramedics are to have extra training in administering on-the-spot treatment.* | **need, require** | **seek** *When his depression worsened, he decided to seek treatment.* | **advise, prescribe, recommend, suggest** | **refuse** | **benefit from, respond to** *He responded well to treatment and is now walking again.*

TREATMENT + NOUN **decision, option** | **centre, room** | **method, procedure, technique** | **course, plan, programme, regime, regimen, schedule**

PREP. **in ~** *He's in treatment for cocaine addiction.* | **~ for** *She is receiving treatment for a heart condition.*

3 **process for cleaning/protecting sth**

ADJ. **sewage, surface, water** *Galvanizing is a common surface treatment for steel.*

TREATMENT + NOUN **facility, plant, works**

4 **discussion of a subject, work of art, etc.**

ADJ. **definitive, exhaustive, systematic | lengthy | cursory, superficial | philosophical, theoretical**

treaty *noun*

ADJ. **global, international, state, union | bilateral, multilateral | formal | draft | commercial, economic, military, political | unequal | cooperation, friendship | non-aggression, peace | arms, disarmament, non-proliferation, test ban** *A multilateral nuclear test ban treaty was to be signed.* **| defence | extradition**

VERB + TREATY **agree on/to | draw up, prepare | negotiate | be/become a party to, conclude, enter into, finalize, make, sign** *In September 1871 Japan entered into a commercial treaty with China.* **| accept, approve, ratify, vote for** *All the members have voted to ratify the treaty.* **| reject, vote against | condemn, criticize, oppose | amend, review, revise | adhere to | be in breach of, breach, break, violate** *The new law may be in breach of the Treaty of Rome.* **| abrogate, repudiate | enforce | impose** *The people felt the treaty had been imposed on them by their government.* **| be bound by | be laid down by/in** *the criteria laid down in the treaty*

TREATY + VERB **come into force** *The treaty comes into force at midnight on December 31.* **| provide for** *The treaty provides for UN inspection of all countries' weapons systems.* **| guarantee sth | govern sth, regulate sth | create sth, establish sth | recognize sth | declare sth | require sth | ban sth, prohibit sth | draw criticism** *The treaty has drawn criticism from opposition groups.*

TREATY + NOUN **party | amendment, changes, revision | provision | terms | document, text | law | commitment, obligation | rights | relations, relationship**

PREP. **by ~** *Certain areas had been ceded by treaty.* **| under a/the ~** *These arrangements under the treaty apply to the whole of Europe.* **| ~ between** *a bilateral treaty between the US and Mexico* **| ~ with** *The government concluded a peace treaty with the rebels.*

PHRASES **an article/a clause of a treaty, the provisions/terms of a treaty, the ratification of a treaty**

treble (*also* **triple)** *verb*

ADV. more than | almost, nearly

PREP. in *Some goods have almost trebled in price.* **| to** *The figure has more than trebled to 67 per cent.*

tree *noun*

ADJ. **deciduous, evergreen | coniferous | native | exotic, tropical | ornamental | forest, woodland | big, great, high, huge, large, massive, mighty, tall | low, small, stunted | mature | bare, leafless | shady** *We sat beneath a shady tree.* **| shade** *It was a small town of dust lanes and wide shade trees.* **| hollow | gnarled** *a gnarled old apple tree* **| fruit | apple, peach, pear, etc. | beech, elm, oak, willow, etc. | Christmas**

QUANT. **clump, copse, grove | avenue, belt, line**

VERB + TREE **plant | climb | chop down, cut down, fell** *Protesters formed a human blockade to stop loggers felling trees.* **| uproot** *The floods left a tide of mud and uprooted trees.* **| prune**

TREE + VERB **grow | stand** *An enormous oak tree stands at the entrance to the school.* **| line sth** *Palm trees line the broad avenue.* **| sway** *Trees swayed gently in the breeze.* **| be blown down, blow down | produce sth** *The tree produces tiny white blossoms.*

TREE + NOUN **bark, branch, leaves, root, stump, trunk | tops** (also **treetops**) **| canopy** *dappled shafts of light which struggled through the tree canopy* **| cover** *Tree cover would prevent further soil erosion.* **| felling, planting | species | line** (also **treeline)** *Above the treeline take a grassy path leading steeply towards the summit.* **| belt** *The tree belt around the fields acts as a windbreak.* **| growth | rings** *The forest can be dated by studying tree rings.* **| damage** *tree damage caused by acid rain* **| nursery** *He bought tools and seeds with the aim of setting up a tree nursery.* **| surgeon**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *a bird in a tree* **| on a/the ~** *fruit on a tree* **| under a ~** *We sat under a tree, in the shade.* **| up a/the ~** *The cat got stuck up a tree.*

trek *noun*

ADJ. **long, marathon | 100-kilometre, 20-mile, etc. | 3-day, 10-hour, etc. | arduous, hard**

VERB + TREK **go on, make, take** *The family made the long trek west in 1890.*

PREP. **on a/the ~**

tremble *verb*

ADV. **badly, violently | helplessly, involuntarily, uncontrollably | a little, slightly | inside**

VERB + TREMBLE **begin to, start to** *I began to tremble uncontrollably.* **| make sb** *The thought made him tremble inside.*

PREP. **at** *She trembled at the thought of going back through those prison doors.* **| with** *trembling with anger*

PHRASES **tremble all over, tremble from head to foot/toe, tremble like a leaf**

tremor *noun*

1 **small earthquake**

ADJ. **minor, slight | severe | earth**

2 **shaking movement**

ADJ. **faint, slight, small, tiny** *He felt a tiny tremor of excitement as he glimpsed the city lights.* **| violent | uncontrollable | nervous | icy**

VERB + TREMOR **send** *Her expression sent an icy tremor through him.* **| feel** *She felt a tremor run down her back when she saw him.* **| control** *He couldn't control the tremor in his voice.*

TREMOR + VERB **run** *A tremor ran through the audience.* **| shake sb/sth** *An uncontrollable tremor shook his mouth.*

PREP. **with/without a ~** *He managed to make his short speech without a tremor.* **| ~ of** *a tremor of fear*

trench *noun*

ADJ. **deep, narrow, shallow | muddy | defensive | enemy | communication, front-line**

VERB + TRENCH **dig**

TRENCH + NOUN **warfare**

PREP. **in the ~** *life in the trenches in the First World War*

trend *noun*

ADJ. **strong | consistent, constant, steady | accelerating, growing, increasing | underlying** *Despite this month's disappointing figures, the underlying trend is healthy.* **| dominant, main, major, prevailing | gradual | clear, marked | general | apparent, discernible | global, national, international, universal, worldwide | wider** *The increase in crime in London was just part of a wider trend.* **| positive, upward | downward, negative | contrary, opposite | healthy, welcome | adverse, dangerous, disturbing, unfortunate, worrying | fashion | demographic, population | cultural, social | evolutionary, historical | economic, market | growth, inflationary** *The latest figures show a clear growth trend in the service sector.*

VERB + TREND **begin, create, set, start** *In the 1960s, Britain set the fashion trends.* **| continue | follow** *We are following the American trend towards more flexible working conditions.* **| reinforce | buck, counteract, go against** *efforts to buck the current downward trend in sales* **| reverse | halt | detect, notice | indicate, reflect, show, suggest** *The data indicates a trend towards earlier retirement.*

TREND + VERB **develop, emerge | continue | indicate sth, reflect sth, suggest sth** *Current trends suggest that car traffic will continue to grow.* **| grow**

PREP. **~ away from** *a trend away from narrow specialization* **| ~ for** *A trend for romance and nostalgia has emerged.* **| ~ in** *future trends in the volume of employment* **| ~ towards** *the trend towards privatization*

trial *noun*

1 in a court of law

ADJ. **fair** *The men claim they did not receive a fair trial.* | **unfair** | **full** | **criminal** | **fraud, murder, rape** | **jury** | **crown court, high court, supreme court** | **civil** | **public** | **show** *A series of show trials of former senior officials of the ousted regime took place.* | **summary** *The rebels were brutally executed after summary trials.* | **controversial, notorious, sensational**

VERB + TRIAL **come to, face, go on, go to, stand** *He never came to trial for the robbery. She died before the case came to trial. A man has gone on trial accused of murdering his girlfriend.* | **bring sb to, commit sb for, put sb on** *Four people had been arrested and committed for trial.* | **await** *He is in prison awaiting trial on drugs charges.* | **attend** *As a journalist he attended every murder trial of note.* | **order** *The judge ordered a new trial on the grounds that evidence had been withheld.* | **adjourn** | **halt, stop** *The judge halted the trial when it emerged witnesses had been threatened.* | **tell (in a news report)** *Murder trial told of horrific attack.*

TRIAL + VERB **proceed, take place** | **begin, open** | **continue, resume** | **collapse** *The trial collapsed after a key prosecution witness admitted lying.*

TRIAL + NOUN **court, judge, jury, lawyer** | **verdict** | **procedure, proceedings, process**

PREP. **at the ~** *More than a hundred witnesses gave evidence at the trial.* | **during the ~** *The letters that were shown during his trial turned out to be forgeries.* | **on ~** *She is presently on trial at the Old Bailey.* | **without ~** *Opposition leaders had been jailed without trial.* | **~ by** *The president faces trial by television tonight when he takes part in a live debate.* | **~ for** *She faces trial for murder.* | **~ over** *Three people are to stand trial over the deaths of a young couple.*

2 act of testing sb/sth

ADJ. **clinical, experimental, field** *If clinical trials are successful the drug could be on the market early next year.* | **full-scale, large-scale** | **controlled, double-blind, randomized** | **free, home** *We've got this vacuum cleaner on ten days' free trial.* | **speed** | **Olympic, rowing, soccer, etc.**

VERB + TRIAL **carry out, conduct | take part in | have** *He had a trial with Chelsea when he was young.*

TRIAL + VERB **show sth** *The trial showed a dramatic reduction in side effects.*

TRIAL + NOUN **period** *She agreed to employ me for a trial period.* **| run** *They are treating the trip as a trial run for their 500-mile sponsored ride later this month.* **| data, results | project, scheme | game | separation** *The couple agreed on a trial separation.*

PREP. **under ~** *A new stocktaking system is currently under trial at the supermarket.*

PHRASES **on a trial basis** *The new system will be introduced on a trial basis.* **| trial and error** *We discovered the ideal mix of paint by trial and error.* **| a trial of strength** *The dispute was regarded as a trial of strength by the unions.*

3 **experience/person that causes difficulties**

ADJ. **sore** *She was a sore trial to her family at times.*

PREP. **~ to**

PHRASES **trials and tribulations** *the trials and tribulations of married life*

triangle *noun*

1 **shape**

ADJ. **equilateral, isosceles, right-angled, scalene**

VERB + TRIANGLE **construct** *(technical)*, **draw** *Use your protractor to construct an equilateral triangle.* **| form | cut sth into** *I cut the sandwiches into triangles.*

PHRASES **the apex of a triangle**

2 **musical instrument > Special page at MUSIC**

tribe *nou*n

ADJ. **aboriginal, indigenous, native | desert, forest, hill | nomadic | backward, primitive | barbaric, hostile, warring**

VERB + TRIBE **belong to**

PHRASES **a member of a tribe**

tribunal *noun*

ADJ. **independent | international, local, village | higher, inferior | industrial, military, transport, war crimes | appeal/appeals, appellate, arbitral, arbitration, complaints, disciplinary, judicial**

VERB + TRIBUNAL **set up** *A war crimes tribunal was set up to prosecute those charged with atrocities.* **| go to** *The dismissed workers decided to go to a tribunal.* **| apply to | refer sth to** *The case was referred to an industrial tribunal.* **| appear before/at | tell** *She told the tribunal that she was a victim of sex discrimination.*

TRIBUNAL + VERB **be in session, hold a session** *The tribunal held its first session later that month.* **| hear sth | conclude sth, decide sth, find sth** *The tribunal found for her employers* (= judged that they were right). **| settle sth** *The dispute was settled by a tribunal.* **| order sth, rule sth | dismiss sth**

TRIBUNAL + NOUN **decision | hearing | procedure, proceedings | representation | chairman, member**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *The police gave evidence at the tribunal.* **| before a/the ~** *No legal aid was available to cover representation before tribunals.* **| by ~** *The fee for the player will be decided by tribunal.*

tributary *noun*

TRIBUTARY + VERB **feed sth** *The Thames is fed by several small tributaries.*

tribute *noun*

1 **sth you say/do to show you respect/admire sb/sth**

ADJ. **anniversary, birthday, centenary | final, last | fitting | lasting | affectionate, emotional, moving, warm | generous, glowing, handsome, special | silent** *Thousands of people stood in silent tribute to the dead president.* **| floral** *Floral tributes were piled up outside the church.*

VERB + TRIBUTE **pay** *The couple paid tribute to the helicopter crew who rescued them.* **| lead** *The prime minister led the tributes to 'a great statesman and a decent man'.*

TRIBUTE + VERB **flood in** *Tributes flooded in when her death was announced.*

TRIBUTE + NOUN **album, concert**

2 **sign of how good sb/sth is**

ADJ. **great, remarkable**

PREP. **~ to** *The bridge is a remarkable tribute to the skill of the Victorian railway engineers.*

trick *noun*

1 **deception**

ADJ. **cheap, dirty, knavish, mean, nasty, rotten** *The party chairman accused the opposition of dirty tricks in their election campaign.* **| stupid | funny | little | con/ confidence**

VERB + TRICK **play, pull, try, use, work** *We decided to play a little trick on the teacher.* **| fall for** *She won't fall for such a stupid trick.* **| learn** *He's learnt a trick or two in his time working in the tax office.*

TRICK + VERB **work**

TRICK + NOUN **question**

PHRASES **a trick of the light** *A trick of the light made it look like she had a moustache.*

2 **best way of doing sth**

ADJ. **special | useful**

PREP. **~ of** *the trick of getting out red wine stains* **| ~ to** *There's no trick to it?you just need lots of practice.*

PHRASES **the trick is to ...** *The trick is to keep your body still and your arms relaxed.* **| the tricks of the trade**

3 **skilled act**

ADJ. **clever, difficult | card, conjuring, disappearing, magic | party**

VERB + TRICK **do, perform | learn | teach**

TRICK + VERB **work**

TRICK + NOUN **photography | ending**

trickle *noun*

ADJ. **small, thin | constant, steady** *a constant trickle of water* **| slow | mere** *The flood of offers of help had dwindled to a mere trickle.*

VERB + TRICKLE **dwindle to, slow to**

PREP. **~ of** *a trickle of blood*

trigger *noun*

VERB + TRIGGER **pull, squeeze | tighten on** *Her finger tightened on the trigger as she heard footsteps approaching.*

TRIGGER + NOUN **finger**

PHRASES **have your finger on the trigger** (= to be ready to shoot)

trim *verb*

ADV. **carefully, neatly** *his neatly trimmed moustache* **| away, off** *Trim away the lower leaves.* **| into** *trimming the bush into a heart shape*

PHRASES **get/have your hair trimmed**

trip *noun*

ADJ. **extended, long | brief, little, quick, short | day, overnight, weekend** *We went on a day trip to the seaside.* **| frequent, occasional, rare, regular** *He makes frequent trips to Poland.* **| annual, weekly, etc. | forthcoming | fantastic, good, great, nice, pleasant, successful | memorable | abortive, fruitless | successful | return, round** *From London to Oxford and back is a round trip of over a hundred miles.* **| foreign, overseas | round-the-world, world | European, Japan, etc. | boat, coach, cycle, etc. | business, fishing, pleasure, shopping, sightseeing | school** *a school trip to the Science Museum* **| field** *a geography field trip to study a limestone landscape* **| study**

VERB + TRIP **be (away) on, go on, make, take** *She's away on a business trip. From here visitors can take a boat trip along the coast to Lundy Island.* **| have** *Did you have a good trip?* **| come back from, return from | be back from** *He's just back from a trip to New York.* **| arrange, organize, plan | book | cancel | extend | cut short** *I had to cut short my trip when my wallet was stolen.* **| enjoy** *Enjoy your trip!*

PREP. **~ by** *a five-minute trip by taxi* **| ~ to** *a trip to Tokyo*

PHRASES **a trip abroad** *My last trip abroad was two years ago.* **| the trip home** *The trip home took us five hours!* **| the trip of a lifetime** *They saved for years for their trip of a lifetime to Hawaii.*

trip *verb*

1 **knock your foot on sth and fall**

ADV. **almost, nearly | over, up** *One of the boys tripped over and crashed into a tree. Be careful or you'll trip up.*

PREP. **on** *She tripped on the loose stones.* **| over** *I nearly tripped over the cat.*

PHRASES **trip and fall** *Don't leave toys on stairs where someone could trip and fall.*

2 **walk lightly**

ADV. **lightly | out**

PREP. **along** *tripping along the path* **| down** *She came tripping lightly down the stairs.* **| up**

PHRASES **come tripping**

triple *ver*b > See TREBLE

triumph *noun*

ADJ. **great, major, remarkable, resounding | little, minor | final, ultimate | latest, new** *Hollywood's favourite actor was modest about his latest triumph.* **| diplomatic, election, electoral, military, political | personal**

VERB + TRIUMPH **score** *The union scored a triumph in negotiating a minimum wage within the industry.* **| hail sth as, see sth as** *They hailed the signing of the agreement as a major diplomatic triumph.*

PREP. **in ~** *The leading runner raised his arms in triumph.* **| ~ against** *their recent triumph against Brazil triumph against seemingly insuperable odds* **| ~ for** *The match was a personal triumph for Rivaldo.* **| ~ in** *their triumph in the general election* **| ~ over** *Her Wimbledon victory was hailed as a triumph over adversity.*

PHRASES **a moment of triumph, a sense of triumph**

triumph *verb*

ADV. **eventually, finally, ultimately** *She was confident that she would ultimately triumph over adversity.*

PREP. **over**

triumphant *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | emerge, return** *The Democrats have emerged triumphant from the political crisis.*

ADV. **positively** *There was a positively triumphant note in her voice.* **| almost | ultimately** *Hers is a moving and ultimately triumphant story.*

trivial *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as**

ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, completely | almost | a bit, comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively | essentially** *making a few essentially trivial changes* **| apparently, seemingly** *Apparently trivial clues may turn out to be quite important.*

trolley *noun*

ADJ. **laden, loaded** *The waiter was pushing a laden sweet trolley towards our table.* **| baggage, luggage, shopping | drinks, tea | dessert, sweet | hospital, supermarket**

VERB + TROLLEY **load, pile** *Passengers with trolleys piled high with luggage waited at the check-in desk.* **| push, wheel**

TROLLEY + NOUN **service** *On many trains, refreshments are provided by a trolley service.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *They brought breakfast to the room on a trolley.*

trombone *noun*

ADJ. **muted | bass, tenor | slide** > Special page at MUSIC

troops *noun*

ADJ. **crack, elite | additional, extra | armed** *a division of up to 6,000 heavily armed troops* **| allied, government, loyal** *troops loyal to the government* **| enemy, foreign, rebel | auxiliary, paramilitary, regular | combat, fighting | peacekeeping, security | airborne, ground | border, front-line, garrison**

VERB + TROOPS **deploy, mass, send (in)** *They are massing troops on the border. The UN is sending peace-keeping troops into the trouble spot.* **| provide (sb with), supply (sb with)** *The British Army has provided troops for the UN all over the world.* **| withdraw | command, lead, order** *He ordered troops to shoot to kill if attacked.* **| call in | quarter, station** *Five hundred troops were quartered in a village just behind the front line.* **| transport | rally | train**

TROOPS + VERB **fight (sb), kill sb | be based, be positioned, be posted, be stationed** *troops based in West Germany* **| advance, march, move in, move into sth** *Allied troops were advancing on the capital.* **| arrive, cross (into) sth, enter sth, land, reach sth** *Russian troops crossed into Austrian territory.* **| mass** *Government troops have massed on the northern border.* **| guard sth, patrol sth** *troops patrolling the border* **| occupy sth | attack (sb), invade (sth), overrun sth, storm sth, surround sth** *Rebel troops stormed the presidential palace.* **| fire on sb/sth, open fire, shoot sb | pull out, withdraw**

TROOPS + NOUN **deployment, levels, numbers, presence** *Various figures for US troop presence in Europe were quoted.* **| reductions | movements | withdrawal | reinforcements | carrier, ship, train, transport | commander**

PHRASES **the deployment of troops, the withdrawal of troops**

trophy *noun*

ADJ. **major | coveted, prestigious, prized | quiz, racing, sporting, swimming, etc. | championship**

VERB + TROPHY **lift, pick up, receive, take, win** *Britain has not lifted the trophy since it last hosted the event.* **| award, present | defend** *Portugal will be defending the trophy they won last year.*

TROPHY + NOUN **cabinet | winner**

PREP. **~ for** *He picked up a trophy for best news editor.*

trot *noun* **a trot**

ADJ. **brisk, fast, spanking | gentle**

VERB + TROT **break into** *When the horses reached the field they broke into a brisk trot.* **| slow to**

PREP. **at a ~** *We set off at a fast trot.* **| into a ~** *He kicked his horse into a trot.*

trot *verb*

ADV. **briskly, quickly | happily | obediently** *Anne trotted obediently beside her mother.* **| across, along, off, over** *He trotted off to greet the other guests.*

PREP. **down, up** *She trotted quickly down the stairs.*

trouble *noun*

1 **problems**

ADJ. **bad, big, deep, desperate, real, serious** *The company is in desperate trouble financially.* | **endless** | **domestic, family, marital** | **financial, money** | **political** | **back, heart, tummy, etc.** | **boyfriend, girl, man, etc.** *He was obviously upset, and muttered something about girlfriend trouble.* | **engine**

VERB + TROUBLE **mean, spell** *She knew that a hygiene inspection could spell trouble for her restaurant.* | **have, suffer from** *He has had back trouble since changing jobs.* | **get (yourself) into, run into** *The firm soon ran into financial trouble.* | **keep out of, stay out of** | **pour out** *She poured out all her troubles to her mother.* | **cause, lead to** *The printer's causing trouble again.* | **avoid** | **forget, put behind you** *He put his past troubles behind him and built up a successful new career.*

TROUBLE + VERB **come** *Trouble often comes when you're least expecting it.*

PREP. **in ~** *When she saw the teacher coming towards her she knew she was in big trouble.* | **~ for** *He got into trouble for not doing his homework.* | **~ with** *I've had endless trouble with my car. He is in trouble with the law again.*

PHRASES **a cause/source of trouble, a history of … trouble** *She has a history of back trouble.* | **in times of trouble** *In times of trouble she always turns to her mum.* | **trouble ahead** *I can see trouble ahead.*

2 **arguing/violence**

ADJ. **crowd**

VERB + TROUBLE **cause, make** *He had a reputation for making trouble in the classroom.* | **be asking for, be looking for, court, stir up** *He was asking for trouble when he insulted their country. Fans wandered the town after the match looking for trouble.*

TROUBLE + VERB **be brewing** *There was trouble brewing among the workforce.* | **blow up, flare (up)** *Trouble blew up when the gang was refused entry to a nightclub.*

TROUBLE + NOUN **spot** *Extra journalists have been sent to the main trouble spots.*

PREP. **~ between** *trouble between the teachers*

3 **extra work**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great** *They went to enormous trouble to make her stay a pleasant one.*

VERB + TROUBLE **bring (sb), cause (sb), give sb, make, put sb to** *I don't want to make trouble for her. I don't want to put you to any trouble.* **| go to, take** *We took the trouble to plan our route in advance.* **| be worth** *Do you think it's worth the trouble of booking seats in advance?* **| save sb** *Why don't we bring a pizza to save you the trouble of cooking?* **| thank sb for** *Thank you very much for all your trouble.*

PHRASES **be more trouble than it's worth** *Growing your own vegetables is more trouble than it's worth.*

trouble *verb*

ADV. **deeply, greatly** *This latest news troubled him deeply.* **| hardly, scarcely**

PHRASES **be troubled with sth** *He has been troubled with a knee injury.*

troubled *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look**

ADV. **deeply, greatly, particularly, very | vaguely** *She still felt vaguely troubled by it all.* **| financially** *financially troubled firms*

PREP. **at/by** *He was deeply troubled by the news.*

trough *noun*

1 **container for animal feed/water**

ADJ. **drinking, feeding | water | cattle, horse, pig**

2 **low point**

ADJ. **deep**

VERB + TROUGH **fall to, reach** *Inflation fell to a trough of 3.3%.*

PHRASES **from peak to trough** *The stock market fell by 48% from peak to trough.* **| the peaks and troughs** *the peaks and troughs of economic cycles*

trousers *noun*

ADJ. **long | short** *I was still in short trousers* (= still only a boy) *at the time.* **| baggy | tight | bell-bottom, bootleg, drainpipe, flared | pyjama**

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + TROUSERS **pull on, pull up | drop, pull down** *He dropped his trousers in a rude gesture.*

TROUSERS + NOUN **bottoms, leg, pocket** *He tucked his trouser bottoms into his socks.*

PREP. **in ~** *He disapproves of women in trousers.* > Special page at CLOTHES

trout *nou*n

ADJ. **fresh | wild | farmed | river, sea | smoked | brown, rainbow, salmon**

VERB + TROUT **eat, have | bake, cook, fry, grill | catch, fish for, land, tickle | farm**

TROUT + NOUN **fishing | farm, fishery | stream** > Special page at FOOD

truancy *noun*

ADJ. **persistent**

VERB + TRUANCY **combat, tackle** *measures to combat persistent truancy in our schools* **| reduce | condone** *parents who condone their children's truancy*

TRUANCY + NOUN **level, rate**

truant *noun*

ADJ. **persistent | school**

VERB + TRUANT **play** *She often played truant and wrote her own sick notes.*

TRUANT + NOUN **officer**

truce *noun*

ADJ. **brief, temporary** *A temporary truce had been reached earlier that year.* **| permanent | three-day, week-long, etc. | fragile, uneasy | electoral, party, political**

VERB + TRUCE **call, declare, offer, propose** *The guerrillas have called a one-month truce.* **| agree (to/on), conclude, make, negotiate, reach** *The priest helped to negotiate a truce between the warring sides.* **| maintain | break, violate**

TRUCE + VERB **hold, last, prevail | collapse** *The two-day truce collapsed in intense shellfire.* **| expire, lapse** *They renewed the war as soon as the truce expired.*

PREP. **during a/the ~** *during a wartime electoral truce* **| ~ among/between** *An uneasy truce prevailed between them at dinner.* **| ~ with** *the fragile truce with France*

PHRASES **a flag of truce**

truck *noun*

1 **large heavy vehicle**

ADJ. **big, heavy | articulated, open | refrigerated | ten-ton, etc. | delivery, pick-up | farm | army, military | garbage, refuse | breakdown, dumper, fork-lift**

QUANT. **convoy**

VERB + TRUCK **drive | park | load, unload**

TRUCK + VERB **rumble** *A convoy of heavy trucks rumbled past.* **| carry sth** *a truck carrying sacks of vegetables*

TRUCK + NOUN **driver | load** *a truck load of grain*

2 **open railway wagon**

ADJ. **railway | cattle, coal, goods**

VERB + TRUCK **pull**

trudge *verb*

ADV. **slowly** *trudging slowly back to the office* **| wearily** *He trudged wearily on down the road.* **| along, back, home, off, on** *trudging along in silence*

PREP. **across, along, around, down, through, up** *We trudged slowly through the fields.*

true *adj.*

1 **right or correct**

VERBS **be, ring, seem, sound** *Her explanation doesn't ring quite true.* | **come** *All her wishes came true. It was like a dream come true.* | **remain**

ADV. **particularly, very** *This is particularly true of older women.* | **absolutely, perfectly, quite** *It's perfectly true that I didn't help much, but I was busy.* | **certainly** *While this is certainly true for some, it's not true for others.* | **by no means, far from, not at all** *This degree of inequality was by no means true of all Victorian marriages. 'That's not true at all,' he said firmly.* | **hardly, not completely, not entirely, not quite, not strictly, scarcely** *It's hardly true to call cleaning windows a 'profession'. That's not strictly true, I'm afraid.* | **almost, more or less, pretty well** *The story is more or less true.* | **objectively**

2 **faithful**

VERBS **be** | **remain, stay**

ADV. **absolutely**

PREP. **to** *She stayed true to her principles.*

trump *noun*

TRUMP + NOUN **card** *(often figurative) Vienna's trump cards include concerts in the palaces where Mozart made music.* **| suit** > Note at CARD

trumpet *noun*

ADJ. **muted | B**B**, C, E**B**, etc.**

VERB + TRUMPET **blow**

TRUMPET + VERB **blare, sound**

TRUMPET + NOUN **blast, call, fanfare**

PHRASES **a blast of the trumpet** *the shrill blast of a trumpet* **| a fanfare/flourish of trumpets** *A wreath was laid on the monument to a fanfare of trumpets.* > Special page at MUSIC

truncheon *noun*

ADJ. **rubber**

VERB + TRUNCHEON **be armed with, carry | draw | beat sb with** *Some of the prisoners were beaten about the head with rubber truncheons.*

trunk *noun*

1 **part of a tree**

ADJ. **thick | gnarled | fallen | rotting | tree 2 trunks** for swimming

ADJ. **bathing, swimming**

QUANT. **pair** *I need a new pair of swimming trunks.* > Special page at CLOTHES

3 **strong box with a lid**

ADJ. **old | tin | steamer**

VERB + TRUNK **pack, unpack**

PREP. **in a/the ~**

trust *noun*

1 relying on sb/sth

ADJ. **great** *They have placed great trust in him as a negotiator.* | **absolute, complete** | **blind, implicit** *They followed the instructions in blind trust that all would turn out well.* | **basic** | **mutual** | **sacred** *They accepted the responsibility as a sacred trust* (= sth that had been trusted to them). | **fragile** *the fragile trust that existed between them* | **misplaced** | **public** *the need to restore public trust*

VERB + TRUST **have** *We have absolute trust in the teachers. Does the scheme have the trust and cooperation of the workers?* | **place, put** | **build (up), develop** | **earn, gain, win** | **abuse, betray** *He claimed the government had betrayed the trust of the British peo* | **lose** | **restore** | **be based on** *a relationship based on trust*

TRUST + VERB **exist**

PREP. **~ between** *efforts to promote mutual trust between nations* | **~ in** *His trust in them was misplaced.*

PHRASES **a breach of trust, a lack of trust, a position of trust** *As a teacher, you are in a position of trust.*

2 financial arrangement

ADJ. **independent, self-governing** | **offshore, overseas** | **investment** | **unit** *Investing in a unit trust reduces risks for small investors.* | **charitable, family, hospital**

VERB + TRUST **hold sth in/on, keep sth in** *The proceeds will be held in trust for the children until they are eighteen.* | **create, establish, set up** *Wealthy people can set up overseas trusts for their children.* | **invest in** | **administer, run**

TRUST + NOUN **account, assets, fund** | **deed** | **status** | **manager** | **beneficiary, holder**

PREP. **in ~** *His father put the money in trust for him until he was 21.* | **~ for** *the Cecil Houses Trust for old people*

trust *verb*

ADV. **implicitly** *I trust you implicitly.* **| completely, fully | not entirely, not quite, not really** *You can never entirely trust even a 'tame' leopard.*

VERB + TRUST **can/could** *I knew I could trust John.* **| be prepared to, be willing to | be reluctant to** *I was reluctant to trust the evidence of my senses.*

PREP. **to** *I stumbled along in the dark, trusting to luck to find the right door.* **| with** *I'd trust her with my life.*

PHRASES **not to be trusted** *He is not to be trusted with other people's money.* **| tried and trusted** *tried and trusted techniques*

trustee *noun*

ADJ. **joint** *They act as joint trustees of the fund.* | **sole** | **independent** | **public** | **professional**

VERB + TRUSTEE **act as, be, serve as** | **appoint, appoint sb (as)** | **remove (sb as)** | **resign as**

PREP. **~ for** *They hold the land as trustees for the infant.*

PHRASES **a board of trustees**

truth *noun*

1 **what is true**

ADJ. **absolute, gospel** *(informal)*, **honest** *(informal)*, **real** *She takes everything she reads in the paper as gospel truth.* | **full, whole** *It still doesn't make sense to me?I don't think he's told us the whole truth.* | **exact, literal** | **naked, plain, simple** *The simple truth is he's lost his job.* | **underlying** | **awful, bitter, cruel, dreadful, hard, harsh, horrible, horrid, painful, sad, shocking, terrible, unpalatable, unpleasant, unwelcome** *the shocking truth about heroin addiction among the young The sad truth is he never loved her.* | **objective** | **empirical, historical, moral, poetic, psychological, religious, scientific, spiritual** *It's a good film but contains little historical truth.* | **divine**

QUANT. **element, grain** *There may have been a grain of truth in what he said.*

VERB + TRUTH **know** *So now you know the truth. If the truth be known, I was afraid to tell anyone.* | **admit, speak, tell (sb)** *He was reminded of his duty to speak the truth when questioned in court. I'm sure she's telling the truth. To tell you the truth, I'm rather dreading his return.* | **establish, discover, find out, get at, learn, reveal, uncover** *She was determined to discover the truth about her neighbours. The journalist protested that he was only trying to get at the truth.* | **guess** | **accept, acknowledge, face (up to)** | **doubt** *The police doubt the truth of his statement.* | **conceal, cover up, hide, suppress** *You've been hiding the truth from me!*

TRUTH + VERB **be, lie** *We are examining the matter to see where the truth lies.* | **come out, emerge** *Towards the end of the letter the cruel truth emerged.* | **dawn on sb** *The awful truth suddenly dawned on her.*

PREP. **in ~** *She laughed and chatted but was, in truth* (= in fact), *not having much fun.* | **~ about** *finding out the truth about her husband* | **~ behind** *What's the truth behind all the gossip?* | **~ in** *There is no truth in the rumour.*

PHRASES **be economical with the truth** (= not to tell the whole truth), **nothing could be further from the truth** *I know you think she's mean, but nothing could be further from the truth.* | **the quest/search for (the) truth, a ring of truth** *His explanation has a ring of truth to it.* | **a seeker after truth** *(literary) seekers after divine truth* | **the truth of the matter** *The truth of the matter is we can't afford to keep all the staff on.* | **the truth will out** *(saying)* (= People will find out the true facts of a situation even if you try to keep them secret.)

2 **fact that is true**

ADJ. **basic, central, common, essential, eternal, fundamental, general, great, important, profound, simple, ultimate, universal** *in search of the eternal truths of life* **| ancient | obvious, self-evident, undeniable** *We hold these truths to be self-evident ...* **| underlying | half, partial** *His evidence was a blend of smears, half truths and downright lies.* **| harsh, home, painful, unpalatable, unpleasant, unwelcome** *It's time we told him a few home truths about sharing a house.* **| necessary | moral, philosophical, scientific, spiritual | divine**

VERB + TRUTH **establish, reveal, uncover | tell sb | accept, acknowledge, face up to**

PREP. **~ about** *She was forced to face up to a few unwelcome truths about her family.*

truthful *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **very | absolutely, completely | not entirely, not quite** *I don't think you are being entirely truthful.*

PREP. **about** *She was completely truthful about her involvement in the affair.*

try *noun*

1 **attempt**

ADJ. **good, nice** *Never mind?it was a good try. Better luck next time.* **| another**

VERB + TRY **have** *Can I have a try?* **| give sth** *It looks difficult, but let's give it a try.* **| be worth** *It may not work, but it's certainly worth a try.*

PREP. **~ at** *She's having another try at the marathon.*

2 **scoring move in rugby**

ADJ. **dazzling, excellent, good, great, splendid, superb, well-taken | opening | last-minute, late | decisive, winning | penalty | pushover**

VERB + TRY **get, go over for, score | convert**

PREP. **~ against** *He scored three tries against New Zealand.* **| ~ by/from** *an excellent try by winger Neil Lang* > Special page at SPORT

try *verb*

ADV. **desperately, frantically, hard** *She was trying desperately to stay afloat. Sam was trying hard not to laugh.* | **gamely, manfully, valiantly** *trying valiantly to smile through her tears* | **clumsily** *clumsily trying to make amends* | **feebly** | **in vain, unsuccessfully, vainly**

VERB + TRY **decide to** *I decided to try again.* | **be going to** *I hope you're not going to try and deny it.* | **be tempted to** | **be tempting to** | **let sb** *Can't you do it? Let me try.*

PHRASES **be just/only trying to do sth** *I was just trying to help!* | **give up trying** *I've given up trying to persuade her.* | **try your best/hardest/utmost** *I tried my best not to laugh.*

T-shirt *noun*

ADJ. **baggy, loose | long-sleeved, short-sleeved** > Special page at CLOTHES

tub *noun*

ADJ. **bath** (also **bathtub**) **| hot**

VERB + TUB **lie in, soak in** *I love soaking in a hot tub.* **| climb/get in | climb/get out of**

tuba *noun*

ADJ. **muted | bass, tenor** > Special page at MUSIC

tube *noun*

1 **long hollow pipe**

ADJ. **fine, narrow, thin | broad | hollow | flexible | closed, sealed | inner** (= in a bicycle tyre) **| fluorescent** (= a kind of light) **| aluminium, cardboard, copper, glass, metal, plastic, steel | discharge, drainage, suction | test | breathing, feeding, ventilation | capillary, bronchial, Fallopian, neural**

PREP. **down a/the ~** *pouring the liquid down the tube* **| in/into a/the ~** *I put the poster back into its tube.* **| through a/the ~** *He gave the lamb its food through a tube.* **| up a ~** **2 the tube** the Underground

ADJ. **London**

VERB + TUBE **go on, take, travel by/on**

TUBE + NOUN **line, station, ticket, train**

PREP. **by ~** *I go to work by tube.* **| on the ~** *I bumped into him on the tube.*

tuck *verb*

ADV. **carefully, discreetly, neatly | gently | firmly | cosily, safely** *The children were safely tucked up in bed.* **| away, in, up** *The boys tucked their shirts in.*

PREP. **behind** *The loos were discreetly tucked away behind a screen of trees.* **| inside** *He tucked the map inside his shirt.* **| into** *He tucked his trousers neatly into his boots.* **| under** *She tucked the newspaper under her arm.*

Tuesday *noun* > Note at DAY

tug *noun*

ADJ. **good, sharp** *All it needed was a good tug.* **| gentle, little, slight | quick, sudden**

VERB + TUG **give (sth) | feel**

PREP. **with a ~** *She started the engine with one tug of the starter rope.* **| ~ at** *She felt a sharp tug at her sleeve.* **| ~ on** *She gave a little tug on the rope.*

tug *verb*

ADV. **gently | hard** *He tugged harder, but it was caught fast.*

PREP. **at** *She tugged at his arm to get his attention.* **| by** *He tugged me by the sleeve.*

tuition *noun*

ADJ. **private | individual, one-to-one, personal | daily | extra | advanced | expert** *The students get expert tuition in small groups.* **| language, music, etc.**

VERB + TUITION **give (sb), offer (sb), provide (sb with) | get, have, receive**

TUITION + NOUN **fee**

PREP. **under sb's ~** *She had become expert in Chinese cooking under the tuition of her aunt.* **| ~ for** *tuition for beginners extra tuition for the exams* **| ~ from** *He is receiving tuition from a well-known artist.* **| ~ in** *tuition in Italian*

tulip *noun*

ADJ. **dwarf | early, late, mid-season**

TULIP + NOUN **bulb | fields** > Note at FLOWER(for verbs)

tummy *noun*

1 **part of the body where food is digested**

ADJ. **empty, full**

TUMMY + VERB **rumble**

TUMMY + NOUN **ache, bug, trouble, upset**

PREP. **in the/your ~** *I get a fluttery feeling in my tummy before meeting new people.*

2 **front part of the body below the chest**

ADJ. **bulging, fat, flat**

VERB + TUMMY **pull in**

TUMMY + NOUN **muscles**

PREP. **on the/your ~**

tumour *noun*

ADJ. **cancerous | malignant | benign | primary | brain, breast, kidney, etc.**

VERB + TUMOUR **diagnose | remove**

TUMOUR + NOUN **cell, tissue | formation, growth | virus**

PREP. **~ in** *a primary tumour in the breast* **| ~ on** *a malignant tumour on the eyelid*

tune *noun*

ADJ. **little** *He hummed a little tune as he washed the dishes.* **| good, nice | familiar, popular, traditional, well-known, well-loved | catchy, memorable | lively, uplifting | dance, hymn | signature, theme**

VERB + TUNE **give sb, hum, play (sb), sing, whistle** *She gave us a tune on the piano.* **| hum/sing along with | compose, write | pick out** *The kids were picking out a popular tune on the old piano.* **| carry, hold** *He wasn't allowed in the choir because he couldn't hold a tune.*

PHRASES **to the tune of sth** *The crowd were singing 'Give us jobs, not more cuts!' to the tune of 'Happy Birthday To You'.*

tune *verb*

1 **adjust an engine/a machine**

ADV. **permanently**

PREP. **to** *a laser that is permanently tuned to the correct frequency*

PHRASES **finely/highly tuned** *a finely tuned engine*

2 **adjust a television/radio**

ADV. **in** *Don't forget to tune in to our special election programme this evening.*

PREP. **for, to** *I tuned to the BBC for the late news.*

PHRASES **badly tuned** *He heard everything through a screen of interference, like on a badly tuned radio.* | **stay tuned** *Stay tuned for the news.*

tunnel *noun*

ADJ. **long, short | narrow, wide | dark | subterranean, underground | connecting, entrance, escape, service | rail, railway, road | wind** *a wind tunnel for aerodynamic experiments*

VERB + TUNNEL **go through, use | disappear into, enter, go into** *The train disappeared into a tunnel.* **| come out of | bore, build, construct, dig, excavate** *They've built a new tunnel through the mountain. The initial section of tunnel had to be dug by hand.*

TUNNEL + VERB **run** *A service tunnel runs between the two buildings.*

TUNNEL + NOUN **mouth, roof, wall**

PREP. **through a/the ~**

PHRASES **a labyrinth/maze/network/system of tunnels** *The badger sett had twelve entrances to what must have been a labyrinth of tunnels.*

turf *noun*

ADJ. **green | soft, springy | artificial | hallowed, home (of a sports pitch)** *the hallowed turf of Wembley the team's first success of the season on home turf*

QUANT. **piece, sod** *primitive cottages made of sods of turf and sticks*

VERB + TURF **cut** *They still cut turf here for fuel.* **| lay** *laying turf to create a lawn*

TURF + NOUN **fire**

turkey *noun*

ADJ. **lean, tender | Christmas | traditional** *the traditional turkey with all the trimmings* **| frozen | oven-ready | stuffed | roast, smoked | boned, minced**

VERB + TURKEY **breed | raise** *We raise turkeys mainly for the Christmas market.* **| eat, have | stuff | cook, roast | baste | carve**

TURKEY + VERB **gobble** *Turkeys make a funny gobbling sound.*

TURKEY + NOUN **farm | breast | dinner, lunch** > Special page at FOOD

turmoil *noun*

ADJ. **constant** *Her mind was in a state of constant turmoil.* **| emotional, inner, mental | economic, political**

VERB + TURMOIL **cause, plunge/send/throw sb/sth into** *Her emotional life was thrown into turmoil.*

PREP. **in ~** *He came to a stop, his chest heaving, his thoughts in turmoil.* **| ~ of** *a turmoil of emotions*

PHRASES **a state of turmoil**

turn *noun*

1 **act of turning sb/sth round**

ADJ. **full, half, quarter** *a full turn of the handle to the right* | **90-degree, 180-degree, etc.** | **quick** *a quick turn of his head*

VERB + TURN **give sth** *Give the knob a turn.*

2 **change of direction**

ADJ. **left/left-hand, right/right-hand** | **sharp** | **wide** | **sudden** | **three-point** (see also **U-turn**)

VERB + TURN **do, make, negotiate** *She stopped talking as she negotiated a particularly sharp turn.*

PHRASES **at every turn** *(figurative) At every turn I met with disappointment.* | **a turn to the left/right** *He made a sudden turn to the right.* | **twists and turns** *(figurative) trying to follow all the twists and turns of the plot*

3 (*also* **turning**) **bend/corner in a road**

ADJ. **next** | **wrong**

VERB + TURN **take** *He took a wrong turn and ended up on the coast road.* | **miss**

PHRASES **a turn on the left/right** *Take the next turn on the right.* | **twists and turns** *a lane full of twists and turns*

4 **time when you must or may do sth**

VERB + TURN **have, take** *Can I have a turn? I'll take a turn making the dinner?you have a rest. The children took turns on the swing.* | **miss** *If you can't put any cards down you have to miss a turn.* | **give sb** *Give Sarah a turn on the swing.* | **wait** *Be patient and wait your turn!* | **come to** *By the time it came to my turn to sing, I was a bag of nerves.*

TURN + VERB **come** *When my turn finally came, I was shaking with nerves.*

PREP. **in ~** (= one after the other) *They gave their names in turn.* **| in sb's ~** *She had not been friendly to Pete and he, in his turn, was cold to her when she came to stay.* **| out of ~** (= before or after your turn) *I'm writing to you out of turn because I have some very important news.*

5 **change**

ADJ. **dramatic, sudden, unexpected | different, new | downward**

VERB + TURN **take** *Her career took an unexpected turn when she moved to New York.*

PREP. **by ~(s)** *This movie is by turn* (= alternately) *terrifying and very funny.* **| on the ~** (= changing) *Our luck is on the turn.*

PHRASES **take a turn for the better/worse** *I'm afraid Grandma has taken a turn for the worse.* **| a turn of events** *In a dramatic turn of events she took control of the company into her own hands.*

turning point *noun*

ADJ. **crucial, major, real, significant | historic** *This win could prove to be a historic turning point* (= one that will be remembered) *in the fortunes of the team.* **| historical, political** *The industrial revolution was a major historical turning point* (= a turning point in history).

VERB + TURNING POINT **be, mark, prove (to be) | see sth as | reach** *In 1914 the world reached a turning point in its history.*

TURNING POINT + VERB **come** *The turning point came when reinforcements arrived from the south.*

PREP. **at a ~** *The process of disarmament is at a crucial turning point.* **| ~ in**

turning *noun* > See TURN

turn-off *noun*

ADJ. **next** VERB + TURN-OFF **take** *Take the next turn-off.* **| miss, overshoot** *We were chatting and overshot our turn-off.*

PREP. **~ for** *the turn-off for Leeds*

turnout *noun*

1 **number of people who vote in an election**

ADJ. **high | low, poor | electoral, voter** *Voter turnout was high at the last election.*

PHRASES **a decline/fall in turnout, an increase in turnout**

2 **number of people who go to a meeting, match, etc.**

ADJ. **big, good, large | disappointing, poor**

VERB + TURNOUT **attract** *The concert attracted a large turnout.*

turnover *noun*

1 **amount of business a company does**

ADJ. **large | low, small | company, group | aggregate, combined, total** *The combined turnover of both businesses has doubled in the last two years.* **| gross, net | annual, daily, etc. | global, worldwide | market | capital | stock**

VERB + TURNOVER **have | record** *The company recorded a turnover of £50 million last year.* **| boost, increase | reduce**

TURNOVER + VERB **be up | be down** *Turnover was down compared with last year's figures.* **| double, grow, increase, rise** *The firm's UK turnover increased (by) 30% to £10 million.* **| drop, fall, slip** *Turnover fell from £12 million to £11 million.* **| reach sth** *Turnover reached $2 billion in the 12 months to September.* **| exceed sth, top sth** *The company's worldwide turnover exceeds $5 billion.*

TURNOVER + NOUN **figure, growth, rate, tax**

PHRASES **a decline/fall in turnover, an increase/a rise in turnover** > Special page at BUSINESS

2 **rate at which people come and go from a job/place**

ADJ. **fast, high, rapid | low | labour, staff | population** *The inner city has a rapid population turnover.*

VERB + TURNOVER **have**

tussle *noun*

ADJ. **little | legal**

VERB + TUSSLE **have** *Anna and her conscience had a little tussle.* **| be engaged in, be involved in**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He broke his leg in a tussle for the ball.* **| ~ between** *a tussle between the country's parliament and government* **| ~ for** *Five teams are involved in the tussle for promotion.* **| ~ over** *a tussle over the closure of the local hospital* **| ~ with** *We are engaged in a legal tussle with a large pharmaceutical company.*

tutor *noun*

ADJ. **good | experienced | professional | personal, private | senior | assistant | full-time, part-time | college, school, university | course | art, English, etc.**

VERB + TUTOR **act as**

PREP. **~ to** *Roger Ascham, tutor to Queen Elizabeth* > Note at JOB

tutorial *noun*

ADJ. **group, individual**

VERB + TUTORIAL **have** *I've got two tutorials today.* **| prepare for | go to | miss | give (sb)** *He gives one lecture and two tutorials a week.*

TUTORIAL + NOUN **class, group**

PREP. **at/during/in a/the ~ | ~ on** *a tutorial on the rise of the novel*

twang *noun*

ADJ. **slight | nasal | American, Cockney, etc.**

VERB + TWANG **have, speak with** *She had a slight Australian twang.* **| hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *The words came out with an Irish twang to them.*

twig *noun*

ADJ. **dry | bare | dead | birch, willow, etc.**

VERB + TWIG **break (off), snap (off)** *He broke off a twig from a willow tree and used it to shoo the flies away.*

TWIG + VERB **break, snap** *The sharp sound of a twig snapping scared the badger away.*

twilight *noun*

ADJ. **gathering, thickening**

TWILIGHT + NOUN **world** *(figurative) the twilight world of the occult* **| zone** *(figurative) the twilight zone between living and merely existing* **| years** *(figurative) a forgotten man who spent his twilight years alone*

PREP. **at ~, in/into the ~** *She walked away into the thickening twilight.*

PHRASES **in the twilight of your career/life**

twin *noun*

ADJ. **identical | fraternal, non-identical | conjoined, Siamese**

QUANT. **pair** *a pair of identical twins*

VERB + TWIN **expect | give birth to, have**

TWIN + NOUN **boys, girls** *She had twin girls.* **| daughters, sons | brother, sister**

twinge *noun*

ADJ. **sharp | little, slight | sudden**

VERB + TWINGE **experience, feel, get, suffer | give sb** *The letter still gives him a twinge when he thinks of it.*

PREP. **~ of** *a twinge of guilt*

twinkle *noun*

ADJ. **mischievous, wicked**

PHRASES **a twinkle in sb's eye**

twist *noun*

1 **act of twisting sth**

ADJ. **little, slight | quick, sharp | wry**

VERB + TWIST **give sth** *Give the cap another twist?it's not on properly.*

PREP. **~ of** *He finished him off with a quick twist of the knife.* **| ~ to** *a wry twist to her mouth*

2 **change/development**

ADJ. **further, new | final, latest** *the latest twist in the saga of high-level corruption* **| bizarre, curious, dramatic, interesting, ironic, strange, unexpected | distinctive | cruel, vicious** *a cruel twist of fate* **| plot**

VERB + TWIST **give sth** *The writer takes well-known fairy tales and gives them an ironic twist.* **| take** *The scandal has taken a new twist this week.*

PREP. **in a ~, with a ~** *classic French dishes with a twist* (= with a difference) **| ~ in** *a twist in the plot* **| ~ to** *In a bizarre twist to the evening the police came at eleven and arrested our host.*

PHRASES **a twist in the tail** *The story has a twist in the tail?six months later she married the husband of her victim.* **| a twist of fate, twists and turns** *the twists and turns in the economy*

3 **in a road, river, etc.**

ADJ. **sharp**

PREP. **~ in** *a sharp twist in the road*

PHRASES **twists and turns** *the twists and turns of the river*

twist *verb*

ADV. **slightly** *She twisted slightly in her chair to look up at him.* **| gently** *Gently twist off the green stalks.* **| violently** *She fired again and saw the creature twist violently.* **| bitterly, scornfully, wryly** *His mouth twisted bitterly.* **| away, off, together, up** *Her black her was twisted up into a knot on top of her head.*

PREP. **around/round** *I twisted the bandage round his leg.* **| with** *His face was twisted with rage.*

PHRASES **twist and turn** *The road twists and turns along the coast.* **| twist (yourself) free** *He managed to twist himself free.* **| twist sth out of shape** *Her mouth was twisted out of shape by grief.*

twitch *noun*

ADJ. **nervous | slight** *His mouth gave a slight twitch.* **| involuntary | muscle, muscular**

VERB + TWITCH **have** *He has a twitch in his right eye.* **| develop | give**

twitch *verb*

ADV. **convulsively, violently** *The body twitched violently and then lay still.* **| uncontrollably | a little, slightly | nervously** *Her fingers twitched nervously.*

PREP. **with** *His shoulders twitched with suppressed laughter.*

tycoon *nou*n

ADJ. **business, media, newspaper, property, publishing, shipping**

type *noun*

1 **kind/sort**

ADJ. **distinct, well-defined | broad** *Two broad types of approach can be identified.* **| basic, common, conventional, standard, traditional | alternative | main, major, principal | diverse | extreme | personality, physical | hair, skin | blood, cell, tissue | product | habitat, rock, soil, vegetation**

VERB + TYPE **identify | revert to** *The boss came back from holiday all relaxed and smiling, but now he's reverting to type.*

PREP. **in ~** *The recession is similar in type to that of ten years ago.* **| of a ~** *a country inn of a type that has all but vanished* **| ~ of** *There are various types of daffodil(s).*

PHRASES **of its type** *This exercise is the hardest of its type.* **| a range/variety of types**

2 **person**

ADJ. **artistic, careful, City** (= a person who works in finance in the City of London), **creative, entrepreneurial, literary, old-fashioned** *The bar was crowded with City types in suits. He was the old-fashioned type, well-mannered and always in a suit and tie.*

PHRASES **true to type** *True to type, Adam turned up an hour late.* **| (not) your type** *She's not really my type?she's a bit too serious.*

3 **printed letters**

ADJ. **bold, heavy | italic | roman**

VERB + TYPE **print sth in, set sth in** *Key paragraphs of the report are set in italic type.*

PREP. **in … ~** *The important words are in bold type.*

type *verb*

ADV. **correctly | neatly | badly | quickly | furiously** *He was sitting at his desk typing furiously.* **| out, up** *I've written the report and will type it up next week.*

PREP. **into** *She typed the details into the computer.* **| on** *This letter was typed on an electronic typewriter.*

PHRASES **closely typed** *300 proposals and amendments covering 78 closely typed pages*

typhoon *noun*

TYPHOON + VERB **hit sth, strike sth** *The village was hit by a typhoon.* **| damage sth, destroy sth, devastate sth** *The plantation was devastated by a typhoon.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *His home was destroyed in a typhoon.*

typical *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become | consider sth, regard sth as, take sth as** *You must not take this attitude as typical of English people.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | absolutely, altogether, entirely, just** *That's altogether typical of Tom! They're going to be late? Now, isn't that just typical?* **| by no means, not necessarily** *East Anglia is by no means typical of rural Britain.* **| fairly, pretty, quite, rather**

PREP. **of** *Julia is fairly typical of her age group.*

typing *noun*

ADJ. **audio, touch**

VERB + TYPING **do** *Could you do some typing for me?*

TYPING + NOUN **error | course | skills | speed | pool** (= a group of people who share a company's typing work)

typist *nou*n

ADJ. **good | audio, copy, shorthand** > Note at JOB

tyranny *noun*

ADJ. **petty**

VERB + TYRANNY **be freed from, overthrow | impose** *(often figurative) An artist's need for money imposes the tyranny of popular taste.*

PREP. **~ over** *her tyranny over her staff*

tyrant *noun*

ADJ. **cruel, great | petty** *Some of the prison officers were petty tyrants.*

VERB + TYRANT **overthrow**

TYRANT + VERB **rule sth** *The country had long been ruled by tyrants.*

PREP. **under a/the ~** *The kings of Sparta would not serve under the tyrants of Syracuse.*

tyre *noun*

ADJ. **flat, punctured** *I got a flat tyre soon after setting off.* **| blown-out, burst | bald, worn | defective, illegal | spare | front | back, rear | nearside | offside | fat** *tough-looking trucks with fat tyres and reinforced springs* **| pneumatic | crossply, radial | whitewall | bicycle, car, etc.**

QUANT. **set**

VERB + TYRE **change, replace | inflate, pump up | deflate, let down** *Someone let the tyres down overnight as a mean joke.* **| fit, fit sth with** *This car is fitted with radial tyres.* **| blow, burst** *He was going so fast he blew a tyre.* **| patch, repair, retread** *He's patching the bike tyre that got a puncture yesterday.* **| check** *She checked the tyres and oil before setting off.* **| slash** *Vandals had slashed the tyres and broken the side mirror.*

TYRE + VERB **deflate, go flat, get/have a puncture, puncture | blow (out), burst** *A back tyre blew after half an hour tearing along a rocky road.* **| crunch, screech, squeal** *The tyres crunched to a standstill on the gravel. She braked suddenly, her tyres squealing in protest.*

TYRE + NOUN **mark, tracks | pressure | tread**

PHRASES **a crunch/screech/squeal of tyres** *He roared up the drive with a screech of tyres.*

ugly *adj.*

1 **unattractive**

VERBS **be, look**

ADV. **extremely, hideously, incredibly, really, very** *The witch was hideously ugly.* **| almost | pretty, quite, rather**

2 **dangerous/threatening**

VERBS **be, look, sound | get, turn**

ADV. **really, very | pretty, quite** *A fight started and things got pretty ugly.* **| potentially**

ultimatum *noun*

VERB + ULTIMATUM **deliver, give sb, issue, present (sb with), send** *The government denied that it had presented the union with an ultimatum.* **| get, receive | comply with | ignore | withdraw**

ULTIMATUM + VERB **demand sth**

umbilical cord *noun*

VERB + UMBILICAL CORD **clamp, cut, tie**

UMBILICAL CORD + VERB **be (twisted/wound) around sb's neck**

umbrella *noun*

ADJ. **furled, rolled | beach, sun | golf | nuclear, protective** *(both figurative) the American nuclear umbrella over Western Europe*

VERB + UMBRELLA **open, put up, unfurl | let down** *She let down her umbrella and furled it.* **| fold, furl**

UMBRELLA + NOUN **stand | body, group, organization** *(all figurative) an umbrella group including members of opposition parties* **| heading, name, term, title, word** *(all figurative) 'Herb' is an umbrella term covering many types of plant.*

PREP. **under an/the ~** *She was fast asleep under a big beach umbrella. (figurative) The two sectors combined under the umbrella of the Scottish Council.*

unable *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, prove, seem | become | remain | find yourself, leave sb, make sb** *She found herself unable to meet his gaze. The accident left him unable to walk.* **| deem sth** *The road was deemed unable to cope with increased traffic.*

ADV. **completely, quite, totally, utterly, wholly | increasingly | almost, nearly, virtually | apparently, seemingly** *He went on, apparently unable to stop.* **| genuinely | generally | temporarily** *Clare nodded, temporarily unable to speak.* **| still | constitutionally, physically** *He seemed constitutionally unable not to give his opinion on anything and everything.*

PHRASES **unwilling or unable** *He remained silent, unwilling or unable to say what was in his mind.*

unacceptable *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | remain | make sth** *The cost of these proposed changes makes them unacceptable.* **| consider sth, deem sth, find sth, regard sth as, see sth as** *Most people would consider such risks wholly unacceptable.*

ADV. **completely, quite, simply, totally, utterly, wholly | inherently** *There is nothing inherently unacceptable in these proposals.* **| morally, politically, socially** *socially unacceptable behaviour*

PREP. **to** *Such a solution would be quite unacceptable to the majority of people.*

unaffected *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem | remain**

ADV. **altogether, completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | almost, virtually | largely | comparatively, relatively | apparently, seemingly** *She was seemingly unaffected by his presence.*

PREP. **by** *He appeared totally unaffected by this experience.*

unanimous *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **almost, nearly, virtually**

PREP. **about** *Doctors are unanimous about the dangers of this drug.* **| in** *They were unanimous in this decision.* **| on** *The experts are not unanimous on this point.*

unavoidable *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | make sth** *This latest incident makes his dismissal unavoidable.*

ADV. **absolutely, quite, totally, utterly | almost**

unaware *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem | remain**

ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly, wholly | almost, virtually | generally, largely | comparatively | apparently, seemingly | evidently, obviously | blissfully, blithely** *They remained blissfully unaware of his true intentions.*

PREP. **of**

unbalanced *adj.*

1 **rather mad**

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **a little, slightly | mentally** *She became mentally unbalanced after the accident.*

2 **not fair to all ideas or sides of sth**

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **extremely, seriously, very | completely, wholly** *The report is completely unbalanced.* **| slightly, somewhat** *a somewhat unbalanced account of the events*

unbearable *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem | become, get | make sb/sth** *His arrogance made him absolutely unbearable!* **| find sb/sth** *They found the heat unbearable.*

ADV. **absolutely, quite | almost**

unbeatable *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem** *The French team looks unbeatable.* **| become | remain** *United remain unbeatable at the top of the League.*

ADV. **almost, virtually** *He now has an almost unbeatable lead over his rivals.*

unbelievable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | become | find sth** *I find this quite unbelievable.*

ADV. **really | completely, quite, totally | just, simply | almost | pretty**

PREP. **to** *It's simply unbelievable to me.*

unbroken *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **almost, largely, virtually** *a tradition of government involvement which remained virtually unbroken until the 1990s*

uncertain *adj.*

1 **not confident**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become**

ADV. **deeply, very** *I feel deeply uncertain about the future.* **| a little, rather, slightly | strangely**

PREP. **about, as to** *He seemed strangely uncertain as to how to continue.* **| of** *We were rather uncertain of the direction it came from.*

2 **not known exactly**

VERBS **be, look | become | remain, seem**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | increasingly | quite, rather, somewhat | still** *Whether diet is an important factor in this illness is still uncertain.* **| inevitably, inherently** *The world is inherently uncertain.* **| notoriously** *Cost estimates are notoriously uncertain in this business.*

uncertainty *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, great | growing | continuing, lingering | economic, financial, legal, political**

QUANT. **degree, element**

VERB + UNCERTAINTY **cause, create, give rise to, lead to | add (to), fuel, increase** *Her comments will add to the uncertainty of the situation. Her comments will add uncertainty to an already complicated situation.* **| reduce | bring/put an end to, eliminate, remove, resolve | face** *They are facing some uncertainty about their jobs.*

UNCERTAINTY + VERB **surround sth** *the uncertainty surrounding the proposed changes in the law*

PREP. **~ about** *a feeling of uncertainty about his future* **| ~ as to** *There's considerable uncertainty as to whether the government's job creation strategies will work.* **| ~ over** *uncertainty over the safety of the drug*

PHRASES **an area of uncertainty** *One area of uncertainty remains: who will lead the team?* **| a feeling of uncertainty, a period of uncertainty**

unchanged *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look | remain, stay | leave sth**

ADV. **completely, quite, totally | almost, practically, virtually | largely, substantially | basically, essentially, fundamentally** *The school appeared essentially unchanged since my day.* **| relatively**

PREP. **by** *She was the only one of us unchanged by events.*

uncharacteristic *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **very | quite, totally | rather**

PREP. **of** *The houses were totally uncharacteristic of the area.*

uncle *noun*

ADJ. **benevolent, kindly** *The boss smiled at us all like a benevolent uncle.* **| bachelor | maternal, paternal | great** (= the brother of one of your grandparents)

uncomfortable *adj.*

1 **not comfortable**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get | make sth** *Sharp stones on the path made walking barefoot rather uncomfortable.* **| find sth** *I find these chairs incredibly uncomfortable.*

ADV. **downright, extremely, incredibly, most, really, terribly, very | increasingly | a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather | physically**

2 **feeling/causing worry/embarrassment**

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem | become, get** *He started to get a bit uncomfortable as the conversation continued.* **| make sb** *The way he looked at her made her distinctly uncomfortable.* **| find sth**

ADV. **acutely, decidedly, deeply, distinctly, downright, extremely, really, terribly, very | increasingly | a bit, a little, rather, slightly | clearly, obviously, visibly**

PREP. **with** *Planners seem a little uncomfortable with the current government guidelines.*

uncommon *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **very | by no means, far from, not at all** *Such attitudes were not at all uncommon thirty years ago.* **| fairly, quite, rather, relatively**

unconcerned *adj.*

VERBS **act, appear, be, look, seem, sound** *I tried to act unconcerned.*

ADV. **very | completely, quite, totally | relatively | apparently, seemingly**

PREP. **about** *They appeared completely unconcerned about what they had done.* **| by** *He was apparently unconcerned by his failure to gain a university place.*

unconscious *adj.*

1 in a state that is like sleep

VERBS appear, be, lie, look *They found her lying unconscious on the floor.* **| become | remain | batter sb, beat sb, kick sb, knock sb, leave sb, render sb** *He was knocked unconscious by the impact. The attack left her unconscious.*

ADV. deeply | completely | almost | still 2 unconscious of sb/sth not aware of sb/sth

VERBS appear, be, seem

ADV. quite, totally *Parents are often quite unconscious of the ways in which they influence their children.*

3 done without you being aware of it

VERBS be, seem

ADV. deeply | quite, totally, wholly *These impulses are often totally unconscious.* **| largely**

unconsciousness *noun*

ADJ. **deep**

VERB + UNCONSCIOUSNESS **fall/lapse/sink/slip into**

uncontrollable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **completely, totally | almost, virtually** *an almost uncontrollable urge to laugh* **| apparently**

undecided *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound | remain | leave sth** *The question cannot be left undecided.*

ADV. **very | quite | still | as yet** *She is as yet undecided in which direction she wants to make her future career.*

PREP. **about** *He is still undecided about what to do.* **| as to** *They are undecided as to whether to buy a new car.* **| on** *The government remains undecided on this issue.*

underestimate *noun*

ADJ. **gross, serious** *The official figures are a gross underestimate of the true number.*

PREP. **~ of**

underestimate *verb*

ADV. **badly, considerably, greatly, grossly, massively, seriously, substantially** *He realized that he had seriously underestimated their strength.* **| totally | fatally**

VERB + UNDERESTIMATE **tend to**

PHRASES **sth should not be underestimated** *The importance of these feelings should not be underestimated.*

undergraduate *nou*n

ADJ. **first-year, second-year, etc. | college, university | Harvard, Oxford, etc. | Chemistry, History, etc.**

UNDERGRADUATE + NOUN **course, curriculum, degree, studies | student | teaching | level | grant**

underground *noun*

ADJ. London

VERB + UNDERGROUND go on/by, take, travel on/by

UNDERGROUND + NOUN station, train, tunnel | system *bringing the whole underground system to a halt*

PREP. in the ~ *I always seem to get lost in the underground.* **| on the ~** *passengers on the underground*

undergrowth *noun*

ADJ. **deep, dense, tangled, thick**

QUANT. **patch**

VERB + UNDERGROWTH **clear**

PREP. **into the ~** *The snake slithered off into the undergrowth.* **| in the ~** *I noticed someone hiding in the undergrowth.* **| through the ~** *I could hear him crashing through the undergrowth.*

underline *verb*

1 **draw a line under a word**

ADV. **heavily** *The word 'not' was heavily underlined.*

2 **emphasize sth**

ADV. **clearly | just, merely, only, simply** *This disaster merely underlines the need for a consistent foreign policy.* **| further**

VERB + UNDERLINE **serve to | seem to | be intended to** *a move intended to underline US concern over the issue*

PHRASES **underline the fact that …**

undermine *verb*

ADV. **greatly, radically, seriously, severely** *His position within the government has been seriously undermined.* **| completely, totally | somewhat | further | effectively | fatally | subtly | gradually, increasingly, progressively | eventually | constantly**

VERB + UNDERMINE **threaten to | attempt to, seek to, try to | help (to), serve to, tend to | be likely to | be designed to, be intended to** *a terror attack intended to undermine the morale of citizens*

underpants *noun*

ADJ. **men's**

QUANT. **pair**

PREP. **in your ~** *He sat on the examination table in his underpants.* > Special page at CLOTHES

understand *verb*

ADV. **clearly, well | fully, perfectly, quite** *I fully understand the reason for your decision.* **| not really** *Her behaviour wounded him in a way he did not really understand.* **| adequately | correctly, properly** *She realized that she had never properly understood him.* **| easily, readily** *The reasons for this decision are not easily understood.* **| instinctively, intuitively** *She intuitively understood his need to be alone.*

VERB + UNDERSTAND **be able/unable to, can/could** *I can't understand what all the fuss is about.* **| try to | begin to | be easy to | be difficult to, be hard to** *It is difficult to understand why he reacted in that way.* **| help (to), help sb (to)**

PREP. **about** *We understand little about this disease.*

PHRASES **be commonly/generally/popularly understood** *What is generally understood by ‘democracy’?* **| be imperfectly/incompletely/poorly understood** *The effects of these chemicals on the body are still poorly understood.* **| be universally/widely understood**

understandable *adj.*

1 seeming normal and reasonable

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **very | completely, entirely, perfectly, quite, wholly | fairly**

2 easy to understand

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **easily, readily** *Warning notices must be readily understandable.*

PREP. **to** *The instructions must be understandable to the average user.*

understanding *noun*

1 **knowledge of a subject, of how sth works, etc.**

ADJ. **complete, full** *He showed a full understanding of the sequence of events.* **| growing | clear, deep, good, profound, proper, sophisticated, thorough, true** *You need to read more widely to gain a proper understanding of the issue.* **| adequate, basic, broad, general, sufficient | limited** *She has only a limited understanding of what the job involves.* **| conceptual, critical, rational, theoretical | historical, musical, scientific, etc. | instinctive | common** *Some religions have a common understanding of the nature of a divine being.*

QUANT. **level** *The students seem to have a reasonable level of understanding of how genes work.*

VERB + UNDERSTANDING **have | show | reflect** *This change of policy reflects a growing understanding of the extent of the problem.* **| lack | acquire, arrive at, gain | give sb | advance, broaden, deepen, develop, enhance, enrich, improve, increase** *a book that will deepen your understanding of global warming*

PREP. **~ about** *The book aims to give children a balanced understanding of food, farming and the environment.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **a lack of understanding**

2 **intelligence**

ADJ. **human**

VERB + UNDERSTANDING **pass** *a level of cruelty that passes human understanding*

PREP. **beyond (your) ~** *The idea of eternity is beyond our full understanding.*

3 **ability to feel sympathy and trust**

ADJ. **deeper, great | mutual | international**

VERB + UNDERSTANDING **show** *He didn't show much understanding towards her when* *she lost her job.* **| bring (about), develop, lead to** *Greater contact between the two groups should lead to a better mutual understanding.* **| gain in, grow in** *After spending a month living together, they have gained in understanding of each other.* **| foster, promote, work for**

PREP. **~ between** *The association fosters a deeper understanding between prisons and the public.*

4 **informal agreement**

ADJ. **written | verbal | tacit, unspoken** *There is an unspoken understanding that Hugh will be in charge while Jane is away.*

VERB + UNDERSTANDING **have | come to, reach** *They came to an understanding on when final payment was to be made.*

PREP. **~ between** *an understanding between the companies to fight against the proposed tax reform* **| ~ on** *a tacit understanding on the need for a pay rise* **| on the ~** *I thought you gave me the book on the understanding that I could keep it.*

understatement *noun*

ADJ. **gross** *'A little strange' is a gross understatement.*

PHRASES **a bit of/something of an understatement, the understatement of the year** *(informal) To say he wasn't amused must be the understatement of the year.*

undertaking *noun*

1 **piece of work/business**

ADJ. **considerable, large, major, serious | worthwhile | hazardous, risky | joint** *the first joint undertaking of the two societies* **| commercial, financial** *We have to decide if this is a worthwhile commercial undertaking.*

2 **formal promise**

ADJ. **solemn | express | irrevocable | voluntary | verbal, written | contractual | government | public**

VERB + UNDERTAKING **give (sb)** *He gave an undertaking not to leave the country before the trial.* **| seek | obtain | carry out, honour, renege on** *The factory failed to honour its undertaking to stop dumping waste into the local river.* **| sign**

undertone *noun*

ADJ. **sinister | racist, sexual** *The article was full of racist undertones.*

VERB + UNDERTONE **have**

PREP. **in an ~** *‘I don't think she's been told yet,’ he said in an undertone. The couple at the next table were speaking in undertones.*

underwear *noun*

ADJ. **long | skimpy | thermal, warm | lace, lacy | kinky, sexy | ladies', women's | men's | clean, dirty**

QUANT. **change, set** *She packed a fresh set of underwear and her toothbrush.*

PREP. **in your ~** *He was getting cold standing around in his underwear.* > Special page at CLOTHES

underworld *noun*

ADJ. **dark, sinister** *the dark underworld of smuggling* **| criminal**

UNDERWORLD + NOUN **figure**

PREP. **in the … ~** *She was a shady figure in the Dublin underworld.*

undesirable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | make sth | consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as, see sth as**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a situation which is highly undesirable* **| totally | clearly, obviously** *It is clearly undesirable for the issue to be ignored.* **| economically, politically, socially** *It was felt that the ageing of society was socially and economically undesirable.*

undignified *adj*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become**

ADV. **most, very | thoroughly | rather, somewhat**

undone *adj.*

1 not fastened or tied

VERBS be | come *My button's come undone again.* **| get sth** *I can't get this knot undone.*

2 not done

VERBS be | remain | leave sth *We left the washing-up undone and went out for the day.*

undressed *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel** *She felt undressed without her hat.* **|** **get** *He got undressed and ready for bed.*

ADV. **half** *He was half undressed when the doorbell rang.*

unease *noun*

ADJ. **deep, great, growing | certain, some, vague** *She felt a vague unease.* **| general, public**

VERB + UNEASE **feel | express, show** *They expressed their deep unease about the lack of security arrangements.* **| hide** *I smiled to hide my unease.* **| sense** *He sensed a certain unease in her.* **| cause, create**

UNEASE + VERB **grow, rise**

PREP. **~ about/at/over** *Many felt unease about the methods used.*

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of unease, a source of unease** *He looked in vain for the source of his unease.*

uneasy *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get, grow** *We were starting to grow slightly uneasy.* **| remain | make sb**

ADV. **decidedly, deeply, distinctly, extremely, profoundly, very | increasingly | a bit, a little, rather, slightly, somewhat, vaguely | strangely**

PREP. **about** *I felt distinctly uneasy about lending her so much money.*

unemployed *adj.*

VERBS **be, be registered (as) | become | remain | leave sb, make sb** *The closure of the factory left hundreds of men unemployed.*

ADV. **currently | newly | still | temporarily | permanently | involuntarily, voluntarily** *As I was voluntarily unemployed, I wasn't entitled to benefit.*

unemployed *noun* **the unemployed**

ADJ. long-term | rural, urban

PREP. among the ~ *The party's policies were popular among the unemployed.*

PHRASES the plight of the unemployed, the ranks of the unemployed *He graduated with a good degree, only to join the ranks of the unemployed.*

unemployment *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, high, huge, large-scale, mass, massive, serious, severe, widespread | low | rising | falling | long-term, permanent | short-term, temporary | recurrent, seasonal | structural | graduate, school-leaver, youth | rural, urban**

QUANT. **level, rate**

VERB + UNEMPLOYMENT **be faced with, face | cause, create | alleviate, bring down, cut, keep down, reduce | increase | combat, tackle**

UNEMPLOYMENT + VERB **hit sb** *Unemployment has hit unskilled workers in particular.* **| climb, double, increase, rise, soar** *Unemployment climbed above two million.* **| decline, fall | average sth, stand at sth** *Unemployment averaged 15% across the country.* **| reach sth, touch sth** *Unemployment touched 30%.*

UNEMPLOYMENT + NOUN **benefit, money, pay, payments, relief | compensation, cover, insurance | data, figures, levels, numbers, percentage, rate, statistics, total | crisis, problem | blackspot** *This former mining town is now an unemployment blackspot.* **| trap** *The unemployment trap exists when an unemployed person on benefit would be worse off in a low-paid job.*

PREP. **~ among** *Unemployment among graduates is falling steadily.*

PHRASES **a period of unemployment, a rise/an increase/a fall in unemployment**

unexpected *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **most, very** *Help came from a most unexpected quarter.* **| completely, quite, totally, wholly | not entirely** *His death was not entirely unexpected.* **| rather, somewhat** *It happened in rather unexpected circumstances.*

unfair *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | consider sth, regard sth as, think sth** *She thought it most unfair that girls were not allowed to take part.*

ADV. **extremely, grossly, terribly, very** *I thought the decision was grossly unfair.* **| quite, totally, utterly, wholly | a bit, a little, pretty, rather, slightly | blatantly, demonstrably, patently**

PREP. **to** *He was terribly unfair to the younger children.*

unfamiliar *adj.*

1 **not well-known to you**

VERBS **be, feel, look, sound**

ADV. **very | completely, quite, totally | not entirely | slightly**

PREP. **to** *The language was completely unfamiliar to me.*

2 **not having knowledge or experience of sth**

VERBS **appear, be, seem**

ADV. **very | completely, quite | relatively**

PREP. **with** *We were quite unfamiliar with the town.*

unfashionable *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, terribly, very | completely | rather, relatively** *She lived in a rather unfashionable part of London.*

unfit *adj.*

1 **unsuitable for sth/not capable of sth**

VERBS **be, look | become | make sb/sth, render sb/sth** *His conduct made him unfit to act as director of a company.* **| consider sb/sth, declare sb/sth, deem sb/sth, find sb/sth** *The house was declared quite unfit for human habitation.*

ADV. **completely, quite, totally, wholly | medically, mentally, physically**

PREP. **for** *completely unfit for our purposes She was found unfit for work.*

2 **not in good physical health**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become**

ADV. **very | completely, quite | slightly**

unforgettable *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **quite, totally, truly** *It was a truly unforgettable experience.* **| pretty**

unfortunate *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | consider sb/sth**

ADV. **extremely, most, particularly, singularly, very** *It was a most unfortunate choice of expression.* **| a bit, a little, rather, slightly**

unfounded *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove**

ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | not altogether** *These claims were not altogether unfounded.* **| largely | manifestly**

unfriendly *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become**

ADV. **distinctly, extremely, really, very** *a distinctly unfriendly tone of voice* **| rather | environmentally** *the use of environmentally unfriendly products* (= that harm the environment)

PREP. **to** *She was really unfriendly to me.*

unhappiness *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, deep, great | general, widespread | personal**

VERB + UNHAPPINESS **feel | express | cause, lead to** *Bottling up your anger can only lead to unhappiness.*

PREP. **~ about** *He expressed his unhappiness about the arrangements.* **| ~ at** *the great unhappiness she felt at having to leave the town* **| ~ with** *his deep unhappiness with the situation*

unhappy *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, grow** *She grew more unhappy as the years went by.* **| make sb** *It makes me very unhappy to see you so miserable.*

ADV. **deeply, desperately, distinctly, dreadfully, extremely, most, really, terribly, very, wretchedly** *She is deeply unhappy. He described it as 'a most unhappy and distressing case'.* **| entirely** *We felt entirely unhappy with the whole situation.* **| increasingly | a bit, a little, rather | clearly, obviously | equally** *He was equally unhappy with the alternative.* **| personally**

PREP. **about** *He sounded a bit unhappy about the extra work he had to do.* **| at** *She was very unhappy at the idea of staying in London.* **| with** *They were terribly unhappy with the arrangements.*

unheard *adj.*

VERBS **go** *Their protests went unheard.*

ADV. **previously** *a previously unheard tape of their conversations*

unheard-of *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, totally** *At that time, it was completely unheard-of for girls to go to university.* **| by no means | almost, practically, virtually | hitherto, previously** *He was sentenced to a hitherto unheard-of seven life terms in prison.*

unification *noun*

ADJ. **European, German, etc. | economic, monetary, political**

VERB + UNIFICATION **achieve, bring about**

uniform *noun*

ADJ. **full | smart | regulation** *She was wearing the regulation uniform of tunic, hat and tie.* **| standard** *(figurative) They wore the standard uniform of the well-to-do American out of office hours.* **| traditional | dress** *a man in the full dress uniform of the US Marines* **| army, fireman's, military, naval, nurse's, prison, school, etc.**

PREP. **in (a/the) ~** *The limousine was driven by a chauffeur in uniform. A man in a uniform stopped us entering.* **| out of ~** *a soldier out of uniform* > Special page at CLOTHES

uniformity *noun*

ADJ. **broad | great | bland, drab, dull**

VERB + UNIFORMITY **achieve, ensure, impose**

PREP. **~ in** *Government inspections ensure a high degree of uniformity in the standard of service.*

uninhabitable *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, remain, seem | become | make sth, render sth** *houses made uninhabitable by radioactive contamination* **| declare sth** *Fifty homes were declared uninhabitable.*

ADV. **totally | almost, virtually | permanently**

uninhibited *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem** *The loud music made him feel totally uninhibited.* **| become**

ADV. **very | completely, quite, totally, utterly | pretty** *I'm a pretty uninhibited sort of person.*

unintelligible *adj.*

VERBS **be, sound | become**

ADV. **quite, totally | almost, practically, virtually | largely | mutually** *mutually unintelligible languages*

PREP. **to** *Dolphin sounds are unintelligible to humans.*

uninterested *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem, sound**

ADV. **completely, totally | apparently**

PREP. **in** *She was completely uninterested in her sister's career.*

union *noun*

ADJ. **close, tight** *Some of the member states wanted a tighter union rather than the loose confederation that developed.* **| loose | full** *a move towards full European union* **| economic, monetary, political**

VERB + UNION **create, form | dissolve**

UNION + VERB **break up** *The Soviet Union broke up after only a few years of liberalization.*

PREP. **~ between** *currency union between the two countries* **| ~ with** *the union with East Germany* > See TRADE UNION

unique *adj.*

VERBS **be | make sb/sth** *Its magnificent proportions make this palace unique among the buildings of the world.*

ADV. **quite, totally, truly** *The city has an atmosphere which is quite unique.* **| by no means, far from, hardly** *Although such a case is rare, it is by no means unique.* **| almost, virtually | apparently**

PREP. **to** *This monkey is unique to the island.*

unit *noun*

1 **single thing**

ADJ. **large, small | basic, fundamental** *The family is the basic unit of society.* **| discrete, individual, single**

VERB + UNIT **break sth down into, divide sth into** *Large departments were broken down into smaller units.*

2 **fixed amount**

ADJ. **basic, standard | monetary | lexical, linguistic**

UNIT + NOUN **cost, length, weight**

PREP. **~ of** *a unit of currency a unit of length fifty units of electricity*

PHRASES **per unit** *Electricity is ten pence per unit.*

3 **group of people**

ADJ. **cohesive** *The new manager changed a talented collection of individuals into a cohesive unit.* **| baby, casualty, emergency, intensive care, maternity, psychiatric, surgical, etc.** *She works in the maternity unit at the local hospital.* **| army, enemy, military | intelligence | policy | research | family, social** *the role of the family unit in the community*

VERB + UNIT **be attached to** *The cancer research unit is attached to the local university.*

4 **piece of furniture/equipment**

ADJ. **cooking, kitchen, sink, storage | air-conditioning, control, power, processing, shower** *the central processing unit in a computer*

VERB + UNIT **install** *We're having new kitchen units installed.*

united *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **closely, firmly | absolutely, entirely, fully, totally** *The members of the team were absolutely united in their common goal. obstacles to a fully united Europe* **| largely | legally, politically** *a politically united federation*

PREP. **in** *united in their aims*

unity *noun*

ADJ. **complete** *Complete political unity is impossible to achieve.* **| greater | European, German, Irish, etc. | cultural, economic, national, party, political, religious, social** *a government of national unity*

VERB + UNITY **achieve, bring about | preserve | destroy, shatter, weaken | restore** *He restored peace and unity in the country after years of civil war.* **| call for, promote** *The party is calling for greater political and economic unity in Europe.*

PREP. **in ~** *live together in unity* **| ~ among** *The dispute has destroyed unity among the workers.* **| ~ between** *a degree of unity between staff and students*

PHRASES **a sense of unity** *a leader who gave her people a strong sense of unity* **| unity in diversity** *The organization promotes racial tolerance and unity in diversity.*

universal *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain**

ADV. **truly | by no means, far from** *Some of the teachers are technical specialists, but this is far from universal.* **| almost, near, nearly, virtually | pretty | apparently | supposedly** *supposedly universal standards*

PREP. **among** *These practices remain universal among the islanders.* **| in** *a scheme that is universal in scope*

universe *noun*

ADJ. **entire, whole | physical**

VERB + UNIVERSE **create** *Do you believe God created the universe?*

PREP. **in the ~** *Could there be intelligent life elsewhere in the universe?*

PHRASES **the beginning/origin(s) of the universe**

university *noun*

ADJ. **new | ancient | red-brick | local, provincial | research, teaching**

VERB + UNIVERSITY **attend, go to, study at | apply for | enter | finish (at), graduate from, leave**

UNIVERSITY + NOUN **lecturer, professor, staff, teacher | graduate, student, undergraduate | course, degree, education | term, year | vacation | entrance, entry, place** *a university entrance exam There is stiff competition for university places.* **| chair** *His aim was to finish his doctorate and obtain a university chair.* **| department, faculty | buildings, campus, library | administration, authorities | level** *All the staff are educated to university level.* **| days, life, years | town**

PREP. **at (the) ~** *She's at university, studying engineering. She teaches English at the University of Wales.*

unknown *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain** *These sites remain largely unknown to the British public.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly** *His whereabouts were quite unknown during this period.* **| almost, practically, virtually** *This drug was practically unknown in Britain.* **| largely | comparatively, relatively** *She was then still comparatively unknown.* **| as yet, currently, still | hitherto, previously** *a period of democratic development previously unknown in their country* **| apparently | otherwise** *He cites the works of two otherwise unknown authors, the originals of these works having been lost.*

PREP. **to** *Gold was totally unknown to their civilization.*

unknown *noun*

1 place/thing that you know nothing about

ADJ. **great** *What the weather will be like on the day is, as always, the great unknown.*

PREP. **into the ~** *Motherhood was for her a journey into the unknown.*

PHRASES **fear of the unknown**

2 sb who is not well known

ADJ. **complete** *The championship was won by a complete unknown.* **| virtual** *a cast of virtual unknowns*

unlikely *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, sound** *The takeover bid now looks unlikely to succeed.* **| become | remain, seem | make sth | consider sth, think sth** *He thought it unlikely that she would refuse.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, most, very | increasingly | not at all | a bit, pretty, quite, rather, somewhat | apparently | inherently** *A collapse into new forms of fascism is inherently unlikely in any Western democracy.*

unlimited *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become**

ADV. **almost, virtually** *This new technology opens up almost unlimited possibilities.* **| apparently | potentially**

unlucky *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem, sound | become | consider sb/sth, regard sb/sth as, think sb/sth** *The number thirteen is traditionally considered unlucky.*

ADV. **dead, desperately, extremely, very** *She was desperately unlucky to fall as badly as she did.* **| a bit, a little**

PREP. **for** *a date that is unlucky for that family* **| with** *She has been very unlucky with injuries this year.*

unmistakable *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **quite** *The main symptom is a scarlet rash that's quite unmistakable.*

unmoved *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound | remain | leave sb** *Her daughter's accident had left her curiously unmoved.*

ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally | largely, relatively | apparently | curiously**

PREP. **by** *He was quite unmoved by my anger.*

unnatural *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | consider sth, regard sth as**

ADV. **highly, terribly, very** *food produced under highly unnatural conditions* **| quite | almost | a bit, rather**

unnecessary *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, prove, seem | become | make sth, render sth | consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as**

ADV. **completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly** *No, no, that's quite unnecessary.* **| largely | a little, rather, somewhat | strictly**

PREP. **to** *the possession of items strictly unnecessary to survival*

unnoticed *adj.*

VERBS **be, go, lie, pass** *The ticket lay unnoticed in my desk drawer for a week. His remark passed unnoticed.* **| remain**

ADV. **completely, entirely** *There's a good chance my absence will go completely unnoticed.* **| almost, practically, virtually | largely | hitherto, previously** *a hitherto unnoticed detail*

unorthodox *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound | become**

ADV. **highly, very** *a highly unorthodox teaching style* **| a little, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat**

unpaid *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain | leave sth** *customers who leave their bills unpaid till the last minute*

ADV. **virtually** *the virtually unpaid labour of large peasant families*

unpleasant *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste | become, get, turn** *Things started to get unpleasant when their neighbours called in the police.* **| make sth** *He may make life unpleasant for the rest of us.* **| find sb/sth** *I found the atmosphere in there extremely unpleasant.*

ADV. **decidedly, deeply, exceedingly, extremely, highly, most, particularly, very | thoroughly** *a thoroughly unpleasant man* **| not altogether, not entirely** *The overall feeling was a strange mixture of sensations, not altogether unpleasant.* **| fairly, pretty, quite, rather, slightly, somewhat** *His clothes smelled pretty unpleasant.*

PREP. **for** *tests which are unpleasant for patients* **| to** *He was very unpleasant to my friends.*

unpopular *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | remain | make sb/sth** *His advanced views made him unpopular with many of the clergy.*

ADV. **deeply, desperately, extremely, highly, particularly, terribly, very | increasingly | rather, somewhat | generally, widely | politically** *Cuts in government expenditure are politically unpopular.*

PREP. **among** *Highly priced shares are unpopular among investors.* **| with** *He's unpopular with the students.*

unpopularity *noun*

ADJ. **great, growing**

VERB + UNPOPULARITY **increase**

PREP. **~ among** *Her close relationship with the teacher increased her unpopularity among her schoolmates.* **| ~ with** *the great unpopularity of the policy with teachers*

unprecedented *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **entirely, quite, totally | by no means | almost, virtually | supposedly | historically** *a historically unprecedented growth in retirement at a fixed age*

unprovoked *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **completely, totally** *a totally unprovoked attack*

unqualified *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **totally**

PREP. **for** *He is totally unqualified for the job.*

unreal *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become**

ADV. **very | quite, totally, wholly | almost | a little, rather, slightly | somehow** *He seemed somehow unreal, a creature from another world.* **| curiously, oddly, strangely** *She felt curiously unreal, as if she were in the midst of a dream.*

unreasonable *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, seem, sound** *She did not want to appear unreasonable.* **| become, get** *His demands were getting more and more unreasonable.* **| consider sth, find sb/sth, hold sth** (*law*), **judge sth** (*law*), **regard sth as, think sth** *I find her a bit unreasonable at times. This clause in the contract was held unreasonable.*

ADV. **extremely, grossly, very | completely, quite, totally, utterly, wholly | a bit | apparently**

PREP. **about** *He was totally unreasonable about it.*

unrest *noun*

ADJ. **great, serious | violent | widespread** *There was widespread industrial unrest in the north.* **| popular | growing, mounting | fresh, further, renewed** *The murder of a boy by police sparked renewed unrest in the occupied zone.* **| agrarian, civil, ethnic, industrial, labour, political, rural, social | peasant, student**

QUANT. **period, wave** *The increase in fees sparked a new wave of student unrest.*

VERB + UNREST **cause, spark (off), stir up | crush, deal with, put down, quell** *The government's attempts to crush serious popular unrest led to civil war.*

PREP. **during (the) ~** *Many shops were looted during the unrest.* **| ~ over** *growing unrest over pay levels*

unscathed *adj.*

VERBS **be, be left, emerge, escape, get away, remain, survive, walk away** *The children escaped unscathed.*

ADV. **remarkably | completely, entirely, totally** *Amazingly, the driver walked away from the accident completely unscathed.* **| almost, virtually | largely | relatively | apparently, seemingly** *The company came through the crisis apparently unscathed.* **| miraculously**

PREP. **by** *The town centre was left unscathed by the riots.*

unscrupulous *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **completely, quite, thoroughly** *In his desire for power, he has become thoroughly unscrupulous.* **| pretty**

unstable *adj.*

1 **likely to change suddenly**

VERBS **appear, be, seem | become | remain | make sth, render sth** *Prison order is rendered unstable by young inmates serving short sentences.*

ADV. **extremely, highly, very | increasingly | rather, relatively, somewhat | basically, inherently | notoriously** *The building trade is notoriously unstable.* **| economically, politically** *a politically unstable region*

2 **not mentally normal**

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **highly, very | rather | emotionally, mentally** *vulnerable, emotionally unstable individuals*

3 **likely to move or fall**

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get** *The building was beginning to get unstable.* **| make sth**

ADV. **dangerously, extremely, very** *The wall was dangerously unstable.* **| rather, slightly**

unsuitable *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove | make sth** *The huge proportions of the main rooms made the house unsuitable for conversion into flats.* **| consider sth, deem sth, find sth** *Many tasks were considered unsuitable for women.*

ADV. **highly, most, very | completely, entirely, quite, totally, wholly | manifestly, obviously**

unsure *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound** *I felt a bit unsure about him.* **| remain | leave sb, make sb** *His sudden change of heart left Brenda unsure once more.*

ADV. **terribly, very | completely | a bit, a little, rather | obviously, plainly | still**

PREP. **about** *If you're still unsure about what you are supposed to do, speak up!* **| as to** *We were unsure as to what to do next.* **| of** *She was rather unsure of her reception.*

unthinkable *adj.*

VERBS be, seem | make sth | consider sth *This would have been considered unthinkable only a decade ago.*

ADV. absolutely, completely, quite | almost, practically, virtually | hitherto, previously *A hitherto unthinkable question was asked.* **| politically**

PREP. to *This course of action would have been unthinkable to the Russian generals.*

untidy *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | become, get** *I've got more untidy since I stopped going out to work.* **| remain, stay** *I'm afraid the house will have to stay untidy for now.* **| leave sth, make sth** *My son had left the studio very untidy. Books and magazines lying around make the place very untidy.*

ADV. **dreadfully, extremely, very** *Everything was dreadfully untidy.* **| a bit, a little, rather**

unused *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, lie, look, remain, sit, stand, stay** *The church has lain empty and unused since 1994.* **| leave sth** *The meeting rooms are left unused for long periods.*

ADV. **virtually**

unusual *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, look, seem | become | consider sth** *It was considered unusual for a gentleman's son to study medicine.*

ADV. **decidedly, distinctly, extremely, highly, particularly, really, very** *This is a highly unusual case.* **| by no means, hardly, not at all** *It's not at all unusual to feel very tired in the early months of pregnancy.* **| a bit, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, rather, relatively, slightly, somewhat | enough, sufficiently** *The arrival of a taxi was unusual enough; an unknown woman getting out of it was sensational.*

PREP. **for** *It's unusual for a woman to do this job.*

unveil *verb*

ADV. **formally, officially** *The government has officially unveiled its plans for tax reform.*

unwarranted *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem** *The delay did seem unwarranted.*

ADV. **quite, totally, wholly** *a wholly unwarranted smear campaign*

unwell *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound** *He complained of feeling unwell.* **| become | remain | make sb**

ADV. **extremely, really, very | a little, vaguely** *patients who just feel vaguely unwell*

PREP. **with** *You should delay vaccination if you are unwell with a fever.*

upbringing *noun*

ADJ. **conventional** *Mine was a conventional family upbringing.* **| sheltered, strict | Catholic, Jewish, etc., religious | cultural | middle-class, etc.**

VERB + UPBRINGING **have** *He had a normal middle-class upbringing.* **| give sb** *They gave their children a strict Catholic upbringing.*

UPBRINGING + VERB **give sb sth, prepare sb (for sth)** *Her upbringing had given her the social skills to cope with such situations. My upbringing prepared me for anything.*

PHRASES **part of your upbringing** *Part of his upbringing had been not to question his elders.*

update *noun*

ADJ. **monthly, regular, weekly, etc.**

VERB + UPDATE **give (sb), provide (sb with)** *The report gives an update on the currency crisis.* **| get, receive**

PREP. **~ on** *an update on the political crisis* **| ~ to** *We need an update to the mailing list.*

update *verb*

ADV. **constantly, continually, continuously | regularly | annually, monthly, etc. | fully, properly** *The road map has been fully updated.* **| automatically | manually** *updating all the files manually*

VERB + UPDATE **seek to, try to | wish to**

PREP. **on** *Could you update me on how the work is progressing?* **| with** *The files are continuously updated with new information.*

upgrade *verb*

ADV. **significantly, substantially | constantly** *We are constantly upgrading our software to meet customers' needs.*

PREP. **from, to** *customers who want to upgrade from version 4.2 to version 4.5* **| with** *All the machines can be upgraded with the new processors.*

upheaval *noun*

ADJ. **big, enormous, great, major, massive, violent | domestic, economic, emotional, political, social** *The loss of his high-paying job caused enormous domestic upheaval.* **| revolutionary**

VERB + UPHEAVAL **cause, provoke | go through, undergo** *The company underwent a massive upheaval after the takeover.*

PREP. **during/in the ~** *He rose to power during the political upheavals of the 1990s.*

PHRASES **a period of upheaval**

uphold *verb*

ADV. **firmly, resolutely, vigorously | unanimously** *Three judges unanimously upheld the sentence.*

VERB + UPHOLD **have a duty to | be determined to** *We are determined to uphold the law.* **| seek to | promise to | vote to** *The IWC voted to uphold the ban on commercial whaling.* **| fail to**

upkeep *noun*

VERB + UPKEEP **contribute to, pay for** *Our taxes help pay for the upkeep of the city's parks.* **| afford**

PHRASES **responsible/responsibility for the upkeep of** *The local council is responsible for the upkeep of roads.*

uplifting *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | find sth**

ADV. **really, very | suitably** *a suitably uplifting ending for the film* **| morally, spiritually**

upright *adj.*

VERBS **be, sit, stand** *rows of children sitting upright at their desks* **| come, jerk, scramble, shoot, spring, struggle** *Slowly the boat came upright. Polly jerked upright, wild-eyed and blinking.* **| remain, stay** *The flag pole wouldn't stay upright.* **| drag sb/sth, haul sb/sth, heave sb/sth, jerk sb/sth, place sth, prop sth, pull sb/sth** *Pulling himself upright, he squared his shoulders.* **| hold sb/sth, keep sth**

ADV. **fully** *a fully upright posture* **| almost | relatively | rigidly, stiffly** *She held herself rigidly upright.*

PHRASES **sit/stand bolt upright** (= to sit/stand with your back straight) *He was sitting bolt upright on his chair, looking very tense.*

uprising *noun*

ADJ. **successful | failed** *the failed uprising of 1830* **| armed | revolutionary | mass, national, popular | military | peasant | spontaneous**

VERB + UPRISING **provoke, spark (off) | stage | crush, put down, quell, suppress**

PREP. **during/in the ~** *He was killed in the Warsaw uprising.* **| ~ against** *the 1951 uprising against colonial rule*

uproar *noun*

ADJ. **great | mild | emotional**

VERB + UPROAR **cause, provoke**

PREP. **amid (an/the) ~** *The trial proceeded amid uproar.* **| in (an/the) ~** *Financial markets were in uproar after the crash of the rouble. The classroom was in an uproar.* **| ~ over** *There was a great uproar over plans to pull down the old library.*

upset *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, get** *Don't get so upset about it!* **| remain | leave sb, make sb** *The incident had left him visibly angry and upset.*

ADV. **badly, bitterly, deeply, desperately, dreadfully, extremely, genuinely, greatly, particularly, profoundly, really, seriously, terribly, very** *She's obviously deeply upset by his behaviour.* **| thoroughly | a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather | clearly, obviously, visibly**

PREP. **about** *upset about her divorce* **| at** *He was upset at missing all the excitement.* **| by** *upset by the death of their pet* **| with** *I think she may be a bit upset with you.*

upset *noun*

ADJ. **big, major | minor | emotional**

VERB + UPSET **have** *We had our first major upset when Rogers was taken off with a leg injury.* **| cause**

upset *verb*

ADV. **badly, deeply, really, terribly | easily** *She was sensitive and easily upset.*

VERB + UPSET **not mean to, not want to, not wish to** *I'm sorry?I didn't mean to upset you. Keep the volume down?we don't want to upset the neighbours!* **| be likely to** *This decision is likely to upset a lot of people.*

upsurge *noun*

ADJ. **great, massive | sudden**

PREP. **~ in** *an upsurge in violent crime*

uptight *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | get** *Try to laugh at it instead of getting uptight.* **| make sb**

ADV. **really, very | all** *(informal) He gets all uptight if anyone criticizes him!* **| a bit, quite**

PREP. **about** *He's feeling a bit uptight about his exam tomorrow.*

up-to-date *adj.*

1 **modern/most recent**

VERBS **be | bring sth** *We'll have to bring our equipment up-to-date.* **| keep sth**

ADV. **really, very | bang, completely** *Today's holiday parks are bang up-to-date.*

2 **having the most recent information about sth**

VERBS **be, seem | keep** *It is difficult to keep up-to-date with all the developments.* **| bring sb | keep sb**

ADV. **completely, fully**

PREP. **on** *Bring me up-to-date on their progress.* **| with** *We can keep you fully up-to-date with your financial position.*

upturn *noun*

ADJ. **dramatic, sharp | slight | economic**

VERB + UPTURN **be on, take** *Sales are on the upturn. Their fortunes have taken an upturn in recent months.*

UPTURN + VERB **come** *We expect an increase in demand when the economic upturn eventually comes.*

PREP. **~ in** *a sharp upturn in oil prices*

uranium *noun*

ADJ. **natural | enriched** *a tonne of highly enriched uranium* **| depleted | weapons-grade**

VERB + URANIUM **mine | recover**

URANIUM + NOUN **ore, reserves | fuel | mine, miner, mining | enrichment**

Urdu *noun* > Note at LANGUAGE

urge *noun*

ADJ. great, irresistible, overwhelming, powerful, strong, terrible, uncontrollable, violent, wild | sudden *I felt a sudden urge to smash the teapot against the wall.* **| instinctive, natural** *an instinctive urge to tap your feet to the beat of the music* **| primal, primeval, primitive** *the primal urge to reproduce* **| biological, creative, sexual**

VERB + URGE feel, get, have | control, fight (back), resist, suppress *She resisted the urge to kiss him. I suppressed a strong urge to yawn.* **| overcome** *He overcame his urge to run from the room.* **| satisfy**

PREP. ~ for *Leaving him off the guest list satisfied her urge for revenge.*

urge *verb*

ADV. **strongly | constantly, repeatedly** *He has repeatedly urged the government to do something about this.* **| publicly | quietly | unsuccessfully**

urgency *noun*

ADJ. **desperate, extreme, great, utmost** *a matter of the utmost urgency* **| added, new** *The murders have given added urgency to the debate about inner-city crime.*

QUANT. **note** *There was a note of urgency in her voice.*

VERB + URGENCY **give sth, lend sth** *The bomb attack lent a new urgency to the peace talks.* **| increase | stress**

PREP. **with ~** *We need to act with urgency to ensure his safety.* **| ~ about** *Is there any urgency about this?* **| ~ in** *There was an urgency in her movements.*

PHRASES **a lack of urgency** *We waited in the car while he checked his tyres with an irritating lack of urgency.* **| a matter of urgency** *The refugee situation must now be addressed as a matter of urgency.* **| a sense of urgency**

urgent *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem, sound** *Can you come to the phone?it sounds urgent.* **| become, get**

ADV. **extremely, really, very | increasingly** *the increasingly urgent political situation at home* **| quite, rather** *Don't forget that one, it's rather urgent.*

urine *noun*

ADJ. **stale** *I gagged on the stench of stale urine.*

QUANT. **drop, stream**

VERB + URINE **pass | leak** *He said he leaked urine when he coughed.*

URINE + NOUN **sample, specimen | analysis, test, testing | output, production, volume | retention | flow | infection**

PREP. **in (the/your) ~** *sugars in urine*

PHRASES **a smell/stench of urine**

usage *noun*

1 way/amount that sth is used

ADJ. **heavy, high** *high energy usage* | **low** | **normal** *With normal usage, the equipment should last at least five years.* | **drug** *Drug usage by teenagers has increased in recent years.* | **energy** | **water**

VERB + USAGE **increase** | **reduce**

USAGE + VERB **increase** | **fall**

PREP. **~ of** *Usage of computers in schools is increasing.*

2 way that words are used

ADJ. **common, everyday, general, normal, ordinary, popular** *That word is no longer in common usage.* | **current, modern** *a book on current English usage* | **actual** *Actual usage of the word is different from the meaning given in the dictionary.* | **correct** | **American, English, etc.** | **language, linguistic, word** | **colloquial**

VERB + USAGE **come into, enter** *The term 'eco-tourism' entered common usage in the 1990s.*

PREP. **in ~** *The word has a slightly different meaning in popular usage.*

PHRASES **patterns of usage** *Dictionary definitions tend to show stereotypical patterns of usage.*

use *noun*

1 using/being used

ADJ. **considerable, extensive, great, heavy, liberal | full, maximum** *He made full use of the opportunity to travel.* | **excessive** *a style of writing with an excessive use of metaphor* | **increased, increasing | constant, continued, daily, everyday, frequent, regular, repeated, routine** *the daily use of a deodorant* | **wide, widespread** *a campaign to encourage wider use of public transport* | **common, current, general, normal, ordinary** *This software is no longer in common use.* | **limited | occasional | appropriate, careful, clever, correct, effective, efficient, good, judicious, legitimate, optimum, proper, safe, selective** *Holding a lavish party was not the best use of scarce funds. an efficient use of resources an article with a judicious use of examples The layout of the furniture makes optimum use of the space available.* | **indiscriminate, poor | illegal, unauthorized | personal, private | external, internal** *This antiseptic is for external use only.* | **home** *fire extinguishers for home use* | **clinical, commercial, industrial | official | exclusive** *for the exclusive use of club members* | **free** *Guests have free use of the hotel swimming pool.* | **immediate** *Only half the land was fit for immediate use.* | **drug, heroin, etc.** *Drug use in this age group is on the increase.* | **land | language | energy | library**

VERB + USE **make** *We made use of the car while you were away.* | **bring sth (back) into, come into** *a technology which came into use at the end of the last century* | **go out of** *The expression went out of use some time ago.*

PREP. **for ~** *This phone number is only for use in an emergency.* | **in ~** *The phone is in constant use.*

PHRASES **ease of use** *This model has been designed for greater ease of use.* | **for use as** *The record is intended for use as background music.* | **ready for use** *This room is now ready for use.*

2 purpose for which sth is used

ADJ. **different | new**

VERB + USE **have** *This herb has a variety of uses.* | **find, put sth to** *Can you find a use for this old table? Don't throw that box away?I'm sure I could put it to some use.*

PHRASES **a variety of uses**

3 **ability/permission to use sth**

ADJ. **full** *the full use of your mental faculties*

VERB + USE **have** *Since his stroke he hasn't had the use of his left hand.* **| give sb, offer (sb)** *We gave them the use of our house while we were on holiday.* **| deny sb** *They denied us use of the college library.* **| lose | recover, regain** *After a while she regained the use of her fingers.*

PREP. **~ of** *She lost the use of her legs in a car accident.*

4 **how useful sth is**

ADJ. **practical**

VERB + USE **be of** *Could this old coat be of use to you?* **| have** *I have no use for my golf clubs any more.*

PREP. **of ... ~** *It's of no practical use to me.* **| ~ to** *Is it any use to you?*

PHRASES **be no use** *It's no use running?the train has already gone.*

use *verb*

ADV. **carefully, efficiently | sparingly** *This paint is very expensive, so please use it sparingly.* **| indiscriminately | frequently, generally, habitually, normally, regularly, usually** *Do you habitually use display screen equipment as a significant part of your job?* **| occasionally, rarely | up** *The oil had all been used up.*

VERB + USE **be easy to, be simple to** *These garden shears are lightweight and easy to use.* **| be difficult to, be hard to | be ready to | be likely to, tend to** *the factors that make people likely to use heroin Manufacturers tend to use disks made in the US.* **| decide to | intend to, plan to | attempt to, try to | allow sb to, be entitled to, let sb, permit sb to** *Candidates are not allowed to use dictionaries in the exam.* **| forbid sb to | teach sb to**

PREP. **as** *The tennis court is sometimes used as a car park.* **| for** *chemicals that are used for cleaning*

PHRASES **permission to use sth**

used *adj.*

VERBS **be, look** *The board game looked used.*

ADV. **commonly, extensively, frequently, regularly, well, widely** *a widely used technique for assessing the strength of metals* **| little, rarely** *a little-used path through the wood*

useful *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, prove, seem | become | make yourself** *She told Fred to make himself useful.* **| consider sth, find sth** *some leaflets which you might find useful*

ADV. **enormously, especially, exceptionally, extremely, genuinely, highly, more than** (*informal*), **particularly, really, tremendously, very** *making an exceptionally useful contribution to the debate In all departments, Leeds looked a more than useful side* (= they played very well). **| fairly, pretty, quite | equally** *The same information is equally useful when negotiating.* **| generally, universally** *This method has proved the most generally useful.* **| potentially | practically** *The subject is practically useful and will stand you in good stead when looking for a job.* **| undoubtedly** *an undoubtedly useful skill* **| socially** *to provide rewarding and socially useful employment*

PREP. **as** *useful as a short-term measure* **| for** *useful for a variety of purposes useful for people who need a short break* **| in** *She was very useful in dealing with foreign visitors.* **| to** *information which will be useful to new mothers*

usefulness *noun*

ADJ. **limited, some | general | practical | potential**

VERB + USEFULNESS **have | increase | diminish, limit, reduce** *Badly written questions limit the usefulness of questionnaires.* **| assess, evaluate, question | demonstrate, prove | exhaust, outlive** *The advisory group has outlived its usefulness.*

PREP. **of … ~** *The theory is of limited usefulness.* **| ~ for** *the exam's usefulness for ranking students* **| ~ in** *the drug's usefulness in the treatment of cancer* **| ~ to** *The report is of potential usefulness to the government.*

useless *adj.*

1 **of no use**

VERBS **be, feel, prove** *Her efforts to avoid him proved useless.* | **become** | **leave sth, make sth, render sth** *The condition rendered her legs virtually useless.* | **reject sth as** *They rejected the designs as useless.*

ADV. **bloody** (*taboo*) | **absolutely, completely, entirely, quite, totally, utterly, wholly** | **worse than** *A computer program with too many icons is worse than useless.* | **all but, almost, practically, virtually** | **largely** | **fairly, pretty** | **equally** *There are two manuals, both of them equally useless.*

PREP. **as** *A candle is practically useless as a light source.* | **for** *The land is useless for cattle.* | **in** *This drug is useless in the treatment of patients with Aids.* | **to** *The information was useless to him.*

2 **weak/not successful**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **bloody** (*taboo*) | **completely** | **pretty**

PREP. **at** *I'm pretty useless at this job.*

user *noun*

ADJ. **heavy, large** *heavy users of credit The larger users of the service have to pay more.* **| small | daily, regular | current, existing** *Existing users will be able to upgrade their software at a reduced price.* **| first-time, novice** *They offer a short course to first-time users of the software.* **| end** *The company supplies its computers direct to the end user.* **| computer, PC | business, home** *a computer intended for business and home users* **| bus, car, rail, road, transport | wheelchair** *A special entrance is being built for wheelchair users.* **| library | service** *a survey of health service users* **| telephone | electricity, energy | drug, heroin, etc.**

usual *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **very | quite** *Don't worry?it's quite usual to have a few problems at first.* **| fairly | far from** *This kind of behaviour is far from usual in children of this age.*

PREP. **for** *It's usual for the man to propose marriage.*

PHRASES **as per usual** *(informal) Everyone blamed me as per usual.* **| as usual** (= in the same way as what happens most of the time or in most cases) *Steve, as usual, was the last to arrive.* **| business as usual** (= things will continue as normal in spite of a difficult situation) *It's business as usual at the factory, even while investigators sift through the bomb wreckage.* **| in the usual way** *The metal can then be painted in the usual way.*

utility *noun*

1 usefulness

ADJ. **great, high | low | social** *He argued that the arts have great social utility.*

VERB + UTILITY **have**

PREP. **of … ~** *This computer is of low utility for the home user.*

2 service provided for the public

ADJ. **public, state-owned | privatized | electricity, water** *a privatized electricity utility*

utilize *verb*

ADV. **heavily | extensively | fully, to the full** *The new computer system is not being fully utilized yet.* **| effectively, successfully**

PREP. **as** *Concrete had long been utilized as a bonding and covering material.*

U-turn *noun*

1 **movement in a car** VERB + U-TURN **do, execute, make**

2 **sudden change of plan**

ADJ. **complete | dramatic, spectacular | embarrassing, humiliating | government, policy** VERB + U-TURN **do, execute, make, perform** *The government has made a spectacular U-turn on taxes.*

PREP. **~ on** *a U-turn on education policy* **| ~ over** *a government U-turn over plans to cut social security payments*

vacancy *noun*

ADJ. **unfilled | suitable** *The agency will let you know if they have any suitable vacancies.* **| casual, temporary | job, presidential, senate, staff**

VERB + VACANCY **have | create, leave** *Her going on maternity leave will create a temporary vacancy.* **| fill**

VACANCY + VERB **arise, exist, occur** *A vacancy has arisen in our sales department.*

PREP. **~ for** *a vacancy for head chef* **| ~ in** *a vacancy in the catering department*

vacant *adj.*

VERBS **be | become, fall (only used of jobs)** *A seat became vacant and he sat down in it. A job fell vacant in the accounting department.* **| remain | leave sth** *The office of president had been left vacant since her retirement.* **| keep sth** *The job will be kept vacant for a few more weeks.*

vaccination *noun*

ADJ. **flu, measles, rubella, smallpox, etc.**

VERB + VACCINATION **have | give sb**

VACCINATION + NOUN **campaign, programme**

PREP. **~ against** *a vaccination against tetanus*

vaccine *noun*

ADJ. **effective, safe | measles, rubella, etc.** *The polio vaccine has saved millions of lives.* **| live** *a live vaccine containing the polio virus*

QUANT. **dose** *one dose of BCG vaccine*

VERB + VACCINE **give sb | have, receive | develop**

VACCINE + VERB **protect sb** *The vaccine protects babies and children against tuberculosis.* **| prevent sth** *a vaccine to prevent rubella*

PREP. **~ against** *Researchers are trying to develop a vaccine against the disease.* **| ~ for** *a vaccine for meningitis*

vacuum *noun*

ADJ. **perfect | moral, political, spiritual** *The writer criticized the moral vacuum in society.* **| power** *Her resignation left a power vacuum in the government.*

VERB + VACUUM **create, leave, produce** *The machine then creates a vacuum.* **| fill** *Other gases rush in to fill the vacuum.*

vagina *noun*

VERB + VAGINA **enter, penetrate**

PREP. **in/into/inside the/your ~**

vague *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, sound** *'Where did you leave it?' Isobel looked vague.* | **become, get** *She seems to be getting rather vague as she grows older.* | **remain** | **leave sth** *The identity of the city in the novel is deliberately left vague.*

ADV. **extremely, hopelessly, very** *Her directions were hopelessly vague.* | **a bit, fairly, a little, pretty, quite, rather, somewhat** | **enough, sufficiently** *It was a vague enough concept for the liberals to unite around.* | **suitably** | **deliberately, intentionally** *You're being deliberately vague.* | **necessarily** *Since the officers knew little themselves their reassurances were necessarily vague.* | **inherently** *an inherently vague and subjective concept* | **notoriously** *The law is notoriously vague on this point.*

PREP. **about** *I am vague about what happened during the rest of the night.* | **as to** *I was suitably vague as to exactly how I had acquired the money.* | **in** *The statement was vague in its wording.*

valid *adj.*

1 **legally acceptable**

VERBS **be | become | remain, stay | deem sth, hold sth** *The original written contract was held valid.*

ADV. **still** *Is your passport still valid?* **| no longer | legally** *Is the contract legally valid?*

PREP. **for** *Vouchers are only valid for races taking place before 31 December.*

2 **strong and convincing**

VERBS **be, seem | become | remain | accept sth as, consider sth, deem sth, regard sth as** *We accepted several different approaches as valid.*

ADV. **extremely, very | absolutely, completely, perfectly** *This is a perfectly valid question to raise.* **| not entirely | reasonably | equally** *using a different, but equally valid, technique* **| universally** *a universally valid set of moral principles* **| not necessarily | not strictly** *That argument is not strictly valid in this case.* **| still | no longer** *The old assumptions are no longer valid.* **| logically, scientifically, statistically** *a logically valid deduction*

validity *noun*

ADJ. **great | equal** *Don't you think that both views have equal validity?* **| doubtful, dubious, questionable | face** *The theory has the face validity of being consistent with recent findings.* **| legal, scientific** *The legal validity of the claims has been challenged.*

VERB + VALIDITY **have | give sth, lend sth** *His reputation lends a certain validity to the approach that it might not deserve.* **| cast doubt on, challenge, deny, question | accept, confirm, uphold** *The judges upheld the validity of the previous judgement.* **| assess, test** *to assess the scientific validity of new treatments*

PREP. **of … ~** *The results are of doubtful validity.* **| ~ for** *the theory's validity for parent-child relationships*

valley *noun*

ADJ. **broad, deep, high, long, steep, wide | little, narrow, shallow, small | steep | lower, upper | fertile, forested, green, wooded | mountain, river | Rhine, Thames, etc.**

VALLEY + NOUN **bottom, floor, side**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The cottage was in a wooded valley.*

valour *noun*

ADJ. **great** *a soldier famed for his great valour*

VERB + VALOUR **demonstrate, display, show** *He showed valour and skill on the battlefield.*

PREP. **an act/a deed of valour**

valuable *adj.*

1 **worth a lot of money**

VERBS **be, look | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, really, very | quite, rather | commercially** *commercially valuable expertise*

2 **very useful**

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | remain | make sb/sth** *They have skills and qualities which make them highly valuable.* **| consider sth**

ADV. **eminently, enormously, especially, exceedingly, exceptionally, extremely, highly, immensely, most, particularly, really, truly, very | increasingly | quite | equally** *The subject could be equally valuable for scientists.* **| inherently, intrinsically** *The Romantics believed that the life of the imagination was intrinsically valuable.* **| potentially | ecologically, educationally, scientifically, socially** *ecologically valuable species*

PREP. **as** *The survey was valuable as an indicator of local opinion.* **| for** *Good eyesight is a quality which is extremely valuable for a hunting animal.* **| to** *documents that are enormously valuable to historians*

valuation *noun*

ADJ. **high, low | detailed | independent | actuarial | market | land, mortgage, property | share, stock**

VERB + VALUATION **carry out, do, make, prepare**

VALUATION + NOUN **fee, report**

value *noun*

1 **amount of money that sth is worth**

ADJ. **high, low** *the high value of the dollar* **| full, total | real, true | nominal** *a share with a nominal value of £20* **| face** *At yesterday's auction an old coin sold for many times more than its face value of 20 pence.* **| residual** *a residual value of 10% of its original cost* **| resale** *Regular servicing will add to the resale value of your PC.*

VERB + VALUE **place, put, set** *It's hard to put a value on a company with large assets and turnover but low profits.* **| add | increase, raise | double, triple, etc.** *Dramatic developments on the stock market tripled the value of his shares.* **| lower, reduce | hold, keep** *The piano has held its value.* **| calculate, work out**

VALUE + VERB **double, triple, etc. | appreciate, go up, increase | decrease, depreciate, fall, go down**

PREP. **in ~** *The land has dropped in value.* **| to the ~ of** *Jewellery to the value of a million pounds was stolen last night.*

PHRASES **an increase/a rise in value, a drop/fall/reduction in value**

2 **how much sth is worth compared with its price**

ADJ. **excellent, good, great, outstanding | poor**

PHRASES **value for money** *Though a little more expensive, the larger model gives better value for money.*

3 **importance**

ADJ. **enormous, great, high, immense, incalculable, tremendous | doubtful, dubious, limited, low** *His published account of his travels is of dubious value to other explorers.* **| lasting | main, real, true | practical, sentimental, symbolic**

VERB + VALUE **have** *The stolen necklace only had sentimental value for her.* **| attach, place, put, set** *He places a high value on marriage.*

VALUE + VERB **be, lie** *The real value of the book lies in its wonderful characterization.*

PREP. **of ~** *He didn't say anything of value.* **| ~ to** *Pottery fragments are of great value to archaeologists.*

4 values: set of beliefs

ADJ. **dominant** *the dominant values of a society* **| conservative, conventional, traditional | common, shared, universal** *What shared values do you have with your friends?* **| human | aesthetic, cultural, educational, ethical, moral, political, social, spiritual** *We need to be guided by our moral values.* **| family** *The party's election campaign emphasized its belief in family values.* **| middle-class, Victorian, Western | parental** *the rejection of parental values by a child* **| democratic, liberal**

QUANT. **set** *a prevailing set of cultural values*

VERB + VALUE **have, hold** *They hold very middle-class values.* **| cherish, encourage, foster** *Is it the role of schools to foster spiritual values?* **| hold onto, preserve** *a society that has failed to preserve its traditional values*

VALUE + NOUN **system** *a common value system*

value *verb*

1 decide how much sth is worth

ADV. **officially**

PREP. **at** *The company has recently been valued at $6 billion.*

2 think sb/sth is very important

ADV. **greatly, highly, particularly | increasingly | positively | negatively** *Housework is negatively valued as a retreat from a disliked alternative?employment work.* **| rightly** *the fear of losing the independence that they rightly value* **| socially** *one of the most socially valued roles in contemporary society?being a parent*

VERB + VALUE **learn to** *learning to value the ordinary things in life*

PREP. **as** *I value her very highly as a friend.* **| for** *He hated to be valued for his looks alone.*

valueless *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **completely, quite** *Our shares became completely valueless overnight.*

PREP. **as** *Some of the royal forests had become valueless as hunting grounds.*

valve *noun*

ADJ. **safety | non-return, one-way | drain, pressure-relief | fuel, water, etc. | heart, radiator, etc.**

VERB + VALVE **fit** *The plumber will fit some new safety valves.* **| open** *You need special tools to open the valve.* **| close**

van *noun*

1 **vehicle for transporting goods, etc.**

ADJ. **light | transit | camper | delivery, furniture, ice-cream, mail, removal | armoured, police**

VERB + VAN **drive | park | load, unload**

VAN + NOUN **driver**

2 **type of railway carriage**

ADJ. **goods, guard's, luggage**

vandal *noun*

ADJ. **car** *Car vandals caused more than £10,000 worth of damage to vehicles last Saturday.*

VERB + VANDAL **deter, discourage** *The windows are covered with grilles to deter vandals.*

VANDAL + VERB **damage sth, wreck sth**

vandalism *nou*n

ADJ. **mindless, wanton | criminal | environmental**

VERB + VANDALISM **discourage, prevent**

PHRASES **an act of vandalism**

vanish *verb*

1 **disappear suddenly and completely**

ADV. **just, simply** *I turned round and she had simply vanished.* **| abruptly, instantly, promptly, suddenly | quickly, rapidly** *Her feelings of shyness rapidly vanished.* **| mysteriously** *a man who mysteriously vanished from his home last month*

VERB + VANISH **seem to | make sb/sth**

PREP. **from** *All thoughts of romance vanished from his mind.* **| into** *She vanished into the mist.*

PHRASES **vanish from the face of the earth, vanish from sight, vanish into thin air** *At a stroke she could make things vanish into thin air.* **| vanish without trace**

2 **disappear over a period of time**

ADV. **altogether, completely, entirely, totally** *Many of these old cinemas have now vanished altogether.* **| all but, almost, virtually** *country inns of a type that has now all but vanished* **| long since** *The people who built this temple have long since vanished.* **| forever** *Much of the land we loved has vanished forever.*

PREP. **from** *This plant is vanishing from the British countryside.*

vanity *noun*

ADJ. **great | female, human, male, personal**

VERB + VANITY **appeal to, flatter** *My suggestion appealed to her vanity.*

vapour *noun*

ADJ. **water**

QUANT. **cloud** *There was a hissing sound, and clouds of vapour were emitted.*

VERB + VAPOUR **form, turn to** *The particles then form a vapour.* **| emit, give off/out**

VAPOUR + VERB **condense**

variability *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, extreme, great, high, wide** *There is considerable variability in all the test scores.* **| low, slight**

QUANT. **degree**

PREP. **~ among/between** *variability among different health authorities* **| ~ in** *variability in crop yields*

variable *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very, widely** *Polar habitats are harsh and highly variable.* **| infinitely** *These systems are infinitely variable.* **| increasingly | quite, slightly, somewhat**

PREP. **in** *variable in shape*

variation *noun*

ADJ. **considerable, dramatic, enormous, extreme, great, major, marked, significant, striking, substantial, tremendous, wide | minor, slight, small, subtle** *subtle variations of colour and design* **| numerous | endless, infinite | complex | random | systematic | local, regional | climatic, cultural, environmental, ethnic, genetic, geographical, hereditary, language, linguistic | annual, daily, day-to day, seasonal, year-to-year**

VERB + VARIATION **show** *The businesses showed a dramatic variation in how they treated their staff.* **| find, observe** *Considerable variation was found in the terms offered by different banks.* **| analyse**

VARIATION + VERB **occur**

PREP. **~ according to** *variation according to the time of year* **| ~ across** *She is studying language variation across the social range.* **| ~ among** *variation among the students in terms of ability* **| ~ between** *variations between different accents* **| ~ by** *There is little variation by sex or social class in these attitudes.* **| ~ in** *slight variations in pressure* **| ~ with** *temperature variation with altitude* **| ~ within** *There may be striking variations within a species.*

PHRASES **a range of variation, a variation on a theme** *His numerous complaints are all variations on a theme.*

varied *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **enormously, extremely, highly, immensely, richly, tremendously, very, widely, wonderfully** *a richly varied cultural life* **| endlessly, infinitely** *an endlessly varied repertoire of songs* **| increasingly | quite | enough, sufficiently**

PHRASES **many and varied** *The opportunities the job offers are many and varied.*

variety *noun*

1 **not being the same; different kinds of sth**

ADJ. **amazing, astonishing, bewildering, considerable, endless, enormous, exciting, extraordinary, fascinating, good, great, huge, impressive, incredible, infinite, large, remarkable, rich, surprising, tremendous, vast, wide, wonderful** *The market sold a bewildering variety of cheeses. the rich variety of the local bird life*

VERB + VARIETY **add, give, offer** *Dealing with customers adds variety to the job.*

PREP. **of … ~** *a country of great variety* **| ~ in** *There is wide variety in shape and colour.* **| ~ of** *Menus offer a good variety of seafood.*

2 **particular type of sth**

ADJ. **distinctive | common-or-garden, standard | rare, unusual | different** *There are hundreds of different varieties of apple.* **| new, old** *Old varieties of rose can be less resistant to diseases.*

varnish *noun*

ADJ. **clear, colourless, transparent | gloss, glossy | matt** (see also **nail varnish)**

QUANT. **coat** *The table needed two coats of varnish.*

VERB + VARNISH **apply** *Apply the varnish evenly over the whole surface.* **| remove, scrape off, strip off**

VARNISH + VERB **dry | protect sth** *You need a good quality varnish to protect the timber.*

VARNISH + NOUN **remover**

vary *verb*

ADV. **considerably, dramatically, enormously, a great deal, greatly, a lot, markedly, sharply, significantly, substantially, tremendously, widely, wildly | hardly** *The sword hardly varied in form from the 12th to the 15th century.* **| (a) little, slightly, somewhat | constantly, continuously** *the continuously varying intensities of natural light* **| never | inevitably, necessarily** *What can be found will inevitably vary according to the area under study.* **| naturally, obviously** *Personal preference naturally varies.* **| systematically | accordingly** *Dictionaries are produced with specific markets in mind, and their contents vary accordingly.* **| inversely** *The availability of good medical care tends to vary inversely with the need for it.* **| geographically, historically** *Voting behaviour varies geographically.*

VERB + VARY **can, may** *Prices can vary enormously.* **| be likely to, tend to**

PREP. **according to** *The leaf's size varies widely according to the area where it grows.* **| among** *Services offered vary among the main high street banks.* **| between** *The rate of growth varies considerably between different industries. The doses used for surgical anaesthesia vary between 2 and 10mg/kg.* **| by** *Access to this information varies by social class.* **| depending on** *Costs are likely to vary depending on where you live.* **| from … to …** *The situation varies slightly from country to country. Its speed varies from 20 mph to 35 mph.* **| in** *The rooms vary in size.* **| with** *The danger of a heart attack varies with body weight.*

PHRASES **vary over/with time** *studying moral values and how they vary over time*

vase *noun*

ADJ. **flower | china, crystal, cut-glass, glass, porcelain, silver, stone**

VASE + VERB **be filled with sth, contain sth, hold sth | stand** *A silver vase stood on the mantelpiece.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *flowers arranged in a vase* **| ~ of** *a vase of fresh flowers*

vault *noun*

1 **strong, underground room**

ADJ. **secure | bank, museum | treasure**

VERB + VAULT **keep/store sth in**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The jewels were kept in a bank vault.*

2 **room under a church where dead people are buried**

ADJ. **burial, family, royal**

VERB + VAULT **bury sb in** *She is to be buried in the family vault.*

veer *verb*

ADV. **sharply, violently, wildly** *The ship veered round wildly in the rough sea.* **| (to the) left, (to the) right | away, round** *The plane veered away to the left.*

PREP. **between** *(figurative) He veered between calm acceptance and hysterical accusations.* **| from** *(figurative) The play veers from loopy comedy to serious moralizing.* **| off** *The car veered off the road.* **| to** *The path veers sharply to the right.* **| towards** *He veered left towards them.*

vegetable *noun*

ADJ. **green, leafy, root, salad** *The children don't eat enough green vegetables.* **| crisp** *a salad of crisp, raw vegetables* **| cooked, raw | fresh, frozen, tinned | organic | early, seasonal, spring, summer, winter | rotten**

VERB + VEGETABLE **grow** *They grow all their own vegetables.* **| eat, have | boil, cook, overcook, parboil, steam, stir-fry | chop, peel, puree**

VEGETABLE + NOUN **garden, patch, plot | market, stall | rack | crop | produce | dish, soup, stew, stock, terrine | fat, oil | protein | dye | fibre, matter** > Special page at FOOD

vegetarian *noun*

ADJ. strict *They are strict vegetarians.*

VEGETARIAN + NOUN cookery, dish, food, meal | diet | restaurant

PHRASES suitable for vegetarians *All our cheeses are suitable for vegetarians.*

vegetation *noun*

ADJ. **green | dense, lush, luxuriant, thick | scrub, scrubby, sparse** *As we drove towards the desert, the vegetation became sparse.* **| decaying, decomposing, rotten, rotting** *piles of rotting vegetation* **| natural** *Removal of the natural vegetation has resulted in a loss of nutrients in the soil.* **| aquatic, woodland, sub-tropical, tropical**

VERB + VEGETATION **be covered in/with** *The hills are covered in lush green vegetation.*

VEGETATION + VERB **grow**

VEGETATION + NOUN **cover**

vehicle *noun*

1 **used for transporting people or things**

ADJ. **moving, oncoming, passing** *She was blinded by the lights from an oncoming vehicle.* | **parked, stationary** *The bus crashed into a stationary vehicle.* | **unattended** | **stolen** *The thieves escaped in a stolen vehicle.* | **horse-drawn, motor** | **electric, diesel, petrol/petrol-driven** | **wheeled** *The city centre is off-limits to wheeled vehicles.* | **road** | **four-wheel-drive** | **all-terrain, off-road** | **vintage** | **private** | **commercial, delivery, (heavy) goods** | **emergency** | **police** | **armoured, military**

QUANT. **convoy** *The president's car was being followed by a convoy of vehicles.*

VERB + VEHICLE **own** | **hire** *Hire a four-wheel-drive vehicle?there are lots of spots to discover off the beaten track.* | **drive** | **park** | **impound, tow away** *The vehicle was impounded as part of the police investigation.* | **abandon** *Sniffer dogs were brought in to follow the men after they abandoned the vehicle in a ditch.*

VEHICLE + VERB **arrive** *An eyewitness said, 'We saw loads of smoke, and then the emergency vehicles arrived.'* | **break down** | **collide, crash (into sth)** *Two drivers escaped injury when their vehicles collided near Thirsk.* | **run on sth** *vehicles running on lead-free petrol*

VEHICLE + NOUN **emission** *tighter controls on vehicle emissions* | **manufacture**

2 **sth used for communicating ideas/achieving sth**

ADJ. **excellent, ideal, perfect** | **important, main, major**

PREP. **~ for** *The play is a perfect vehicle for her talents.* | **~ of** *The Students' Union is the main vehicle of communication for students in the college.*

veil *noun*

1 **piece of material for covering a woman's head**

ADJ. **bridal** *The bridal veil was fringed with lace.*

VERB + VEIL **wear | lift (back), remove, take off**

VEIL + VERB **cover sth** *A veil covered her face.*

PREP. **behind a/the ~** *I couldn't see her face behind the veil.*

2 **sth that stops you knowing the full truth about sth**

VERB + VEIL **lift** *The government has decided to lift the veil on its plans.* **| draw** *It would be better to draw a veil over what happened next* (= not talk about it).

PREP. **behind/under ~ of** *The work is carried out behind a veil of secrecy.*

vein *noun*

1 tube carrying blood in the body

ADJ. **blue** *A blue vein throbbed in his forehead.* | **broken, thread, varicose** *She uses make-up to hide the thread veins in her cheeks.* | **jugular**

VERB + VEIN **course/run along/through, flow through, pump through, race through, rush through** *He felt the adrenalin coursing through his veins.*

VEIN + VERB **bulge, pulse, stand out, throb** *The veins stood out on her throat and temples.*

2 particular style/quality

ADJ. **rich**

VERB + VEIN **hit, strike** *The team have hit a rich vein of form recently.* | **tap (into)**

PREP. **~ of** *The writer tapped into a rich vein of humour in the play.*

PHRASES **in a different vein, in a lighter/more serious vein** *Fortunately, the rest of the evening continued in a lighter vein.* | **in the same vein/in a similar vein**

velocity *noun*

ADJ. **enormous, high | low | constant, uniform | average, mean | maximum**

VERB + VELOCITY **achieve, attain, reach** *Eventually, the star attained the velocity of light.* **| move with** *to move with a uniform velocity* **| increase, raise**

VELOCITY + VERB **increase, rise | decrease, fall**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *Light travels at a constant velocity.*

velvet *noun*

ADJ. **heavy | rich | faded, worn | crushed**

PREP. **of ~** *curtains of heavy crimson velvet*

vendetta *noun*

ADJ. **personal, political**

VERB + VENDETTA **conduct, pursue, run**

PREP. **~ against** *For years he pursued a vendetta against the Morris family.*

veneer *noun*

ADJ. **thin | false | civilized**

VERB + VENEER **acquire | strip (off), strip sb/sth of** *They have stripped the veneer of jingoism from the play, by showing war in its true horror.*

VENEER + VERB **disguise sth, hide sth, mask sth** *He managed to acquire a thin veneer of knowledge to mask his real ignorance.* **| crack** *For the first time her veneer of politeness began to crack.*

PREP. **behind/below/beneath/under a/the ~** *They're brutal people behind their civilized veneer.* **| ~ of**

vengeance *noun*

ADJ. **terrible**

VERB + VENGEANCE **exact, take, wreak** *She is determined to wreak vengeance on those who killed her cousin.* **| be bent on, demand, seek, swear, vow, want** *He stormed out, eyes blazing, bent on vengeance.*

PREP. **~ against** *They sought vengeance against the countries that had humiliated France in 1814.* **| ~ for** *vengeance for the murder of the princess* **| ~ on** *He silently vowed vengeance on them all.*

venom *noun*

1 **poisonous fluid from a snake, etc.**

ADJ. **deadly | snake, spider, etc.**

VENOM + VERB **inject, spit** *The snake injects the venom immediately after biting its prey.*

VENOM + NOUN **gland**

2 **extreme anger or hatred**

ADJ. **pure, real, undisguised** *a look of pure venom*

VERB + VENOM **spit** *She surveyed him coldly with eyes that spat venom.*

PREP. **with ~** *She said it quickly and with venom.*

venomous *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **highly** *a highly venomous snake* **| actively** *There are two types of mollusc that are actively venomous.*

vent *noun*

ADJ. **air, heating | roof, side**

VERB + VENT **open, close | fit, install**

PREP. **through a/the ~** *Air passes through a vent.*

ventilate *verb*

ADV. **adequately, properly, well** *Make sure that the room is well ventilated.* **|** **badly, poorly**

ventilation *noun*

ADJ. **adequate, good** *Inspectors checked that there was adequate ventilation.* **| inadequate, poor | artificial, mechanical | natural | through** *The windows at the back are blocked up, so there is no through ventilation.*

VERB + VENTILATION **give, provide** *Zips up the sides of the jacket give good ventilation.*

VENTILATION + NOUN **system | brick, duct, grille, hole, opening, pipe, shaft, slit, tube**

venture *noun*

ADJ. **exciting | new | profitable, successful | costly, expensive, unprofitable | ill-fated, unsuccessful | ambitious, bold, brave, high-risk, risky, speculative | collaborative, cooperative, joint | private | non-commercial | business, commercial, financial, publishing, tourism/tourist, trading**

VERB + VENTURE **embark on, undertake** *The directors of the company refused to undertake such a risky venture.* **| establish, set up** *The company has set up a joint venture with a firm in Austria.* **| join (in), join sb in** *His son Mark will be joining him in the new venture.*

VENTURE + NOUN **capital, funds, money**

PREP. **~ by** *a cooperative venture by firms at the science park* > Special page at BUSINESS

venture *verb*

ADV. **cautiously** *She ventured cautiously into the room.* **| rarely, seldom | far, further (afield)** *Some of the men ventured further out to sea.* **| abroad, forth, out, outside** *A few people ventured out into the street.*

VERB + VENTURE **dare (to)** *She would not have dared venture here alone.*

PREP. **away from, beyond, into, out of** *They rarely ventured beyond their local market town.*

venue *noun*

ADJ. **ideal, perfect, popular, prestigious, top** *Europe's top venue for indoor athletics* | **intimate** *With room for only 200 people, this is the most intimate venue the band has played for years.* | **all-seater, 500-seater, etc.** | **outdoor** | **home, neutral** *The match will be played at a neutral venue.* | **tourist** | **cabaret, concert, conference, entertainment, exhibition, performance, rock, sporting/sports**

VERB + VENUE **be, provide** *The Holiday Inn provided the venue for this year's conference.* | **hire** | **play** | **pack (out)** *The musical has been packing out venues around the world.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *The meeting will be held at a venue in the south of the city.* | **in a/the ~** *She has performed in venues around Europe.* | **~ for** *The hall is a popular venue for weddings.*

PHRASES **a change of venue**

verb *noun*

ADJ. **plural, singular | intransitive, transitive | active, passive | irregular, regular | main** *What's the main verb of the sentence?* **| finite | auxiliary, linking, modal | phrasal**

VERB + VERB **use** *In this essay he has used the same verbs over and over again.* **| take** *'Government' can take a singular or plural verb.* **| agree with** *The subject doesn't agree with the verb.* **| conjugate, inflect** *Do you know how to conjugate the verb 'seek'?* **| modify, qualify** *Adverbs modify verbs.*

VERB + VERB **take sth** *Transitive verbs take a direct object.* **| agree with sth, inflect** *Add an ending to make the verb agree with the subject.* **| end in sth**

VERB + NOUN **ending, form, phrase**

PHRASES **a verb of motion/perception**

verdict *noun*

1 **decision in a court of law about whether sb is guilty**

ADJ. **adverse, favourable** *In the case of an adverse verdict, the company could stand to lose millions.* | **guilty, not guilty, not proven** | **majority, unanimous** *a unanimous verdict of not guilty* | **formal** *The jury returned a formal verdict after direction by the judge.* | **jury, trial** | **appeal, inquest** | **accident, accidental death, manslaughter, murder, misadventure, open, suicide** *An open verdict was the only appropriate one, given the very unclear evidence at the inquest.*

VERB + VERDICT **consider** *The judge sent the jury away to consider its verdict.* | **agree (on), arrive at, reach** *They reached a verdict after hours of deliberation.* | **announce, bring in, deliver, enter, read out, give, pass, pronounce, record, return** *The verdict was delivered in front of a packed courtroom. The jury returned a verdict of guilty at the end of the trial. The coroner recorded a verdict of accidental death.* | **accept** | **appeal against, protest against** | **overturn, quash, reverse, set aside** *His family always insisted that the original 'guilty' verdict should be overturned.* | **uphold** *The verdict was upheld at appeal.*

VERDICT + VERB **be in sb's favour**

PREP. **~ against** *We believe that the verdict against him was unfair.* | **~ of** *a verdict of accidental death*

2 **decision/opinion**

ADJ. **final** *The panel will give its final verdict tomorrow.* | **general, overall, unanimous** *The unanimous verdict was that the picnic had been a great success.*

VERB + VERDICT **give**

PREP. **~ on** *What's your verdict on her new book?*

verge *noun*

ADJ. **grass | motorway, roadside**

VERB + VERGE **bring sb/sth to** *(figurative) This action brought the country to the verge of economic collapse.*

PREP. **on the ~** *(figurative) She was on the verge of a nervous breakdown when she finally sought help.*

verification *noun*

ADJ. **empirical, scientific**

VERIFICATION + NOUN **procedures**

PREP. **subject to ~** *The credit card is then accepted, subject to verification of the signature.*

vermin *noun*

VERB + VERMIN **regard sth as** *Farmers regard foxes as vermin.* **| catch, control, deal with, shoot**

versatile *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem**

ADV. **amazingly, extremely, highly, very, wonderfully** *This machine is amazingly versatile.* **| fairly, quite**

verse *noun*

ADJ. **humorous, light, satirical | blank, free, rhyming**

VERB + VERSE **compose, write**

VERSE + NOUN **form | drama**

PREP. **in ~** *a play in verse*

version *noun*

1 **sth based on sth else**

ADJ. **current, latest, new, updated, up-to-date | early, initial, original, preliminary, prototype** *an earlier version of this computer software* | **later, subsequent | definitive, final** *the final version of the architectural plans* | **future** *A future version of the camera is currently being developed.* | **basic, standard | primitive, simplified | amended, enhanced, improved, modified, refined, revamped | advanced, complex, elaborate, sophisticated** *a more advanced version of the initial concept* | **high-performance | customized | de luxe, expensive, luxury | cheap, low-cost | miniature | enlarged | compact, cut-down, portable, scaled-down, small-scale | full-blown, full-length, full-size | French, French-language, etc.** *the Japanese-language version of the software*

VERB + VERSION **develop | bring out, create, come out/up with, introduce, launch, offer, present, produce, release, roll out, unveil** *The company will roll out an enhanced version of its operating system in the new year.*

VERSION + VERB **be out, come out** *The new version comes out in June.* | **be based on sth**

2 **play, film, book, piece of writing, etc.**

ADJ. **draft, rough** *Keep a copy of the rough version of your essay.* | **abridged, condensed, short, simplified | unabridged, unsimplified | expanded | authorized, official** *This is the official version of the painter's biography.* | **unauthorized, unofficial | hardback, paperback | CD-ROM, electronic, interactive | French, French-language, etc. | film, movie, musical, screen, stage, television** *The film version does not live up to the original novel.* | **cover** (= of a song) *The band does a lively cover version of 'Johnny B. Goode'.*

VERB + VERSION **do**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The children read the novel in its abridged version.*

3 **way sth is seen/done by sb**

ADJ. **accurate, faithful | full** *Only one newspaper printed the full version of the* *speech.* **| popular | extreme, radical | watered-down, weak** *Theirs is a watered-down version of socialism.*

VERB + VERSION **give sb** *She agreed to give her version of events to journalists.*

vessel *noun*

1 **ship/boat**

ADJ. **crippled, stranded, stricken, wrecked | seaworthy | sailing, steam | ocean-going, sea-going | fishing | cargo, commercial, container, freight, merchant | naval | escort, patrol, supply, support, survey, transport | passenger | research | foreign**

VERB + VESSEL **operate** *He was accused of operating the vessel while drunk.* | **register** *The vessel was registered in Bermuda.* | **charter | steer | anchor, moor | sink | ram** *The captain of the boat was accused of ramming a patrol vessel.* | **refloat** *A salvage team failed to refloat the vessel.* | **board** *Police boarded and searched the vessel.* | **swamp** *Huge waves swamped the vessel.*

VESSEL + VERB **be afloat** *It was one of the largest vessels afloat.* | **sail** *The damaged vessel sailed on for another 50 miles.* | **be bound for sth** *a French vessel bound for Nigeria* | **enter a port, make port** *The vessel finally made port after thirty days at sea.* | **leave a port | carry sb/sth** *The vessel carried a crew of 130.* | **flood | go/lie/run aground, sink** *The vessel flooded and began to sink.*

PREP. **aboard a/the ~** *They managed to haul the survivors aboard the vessel.* | **alongside a/the ~** *A rescue boat managed to come alongside the crippled vessel.* | **on/on board a/the ~** *A fire broke out on board the vessel.*

2 **container for liquids**

ADJ. **drinking | empty** *It is a scientific fact that empty vessels make the most noise.* | **ritual, sacred** *ancient bronze ritual vessels* | **bronze, glass, pottery, silver, wooden**

VERB + VESSEL **fill**

VESSEL + VERB **contain sth** > See BLOOD VESSEL

vest *noun*

ADJ. **sleeveless | string | thermal | running | bullet-proof**

PREP. **in (your) ~** *standing there in vest and shorts* > Special page at CLOTHES

vestige *noun*

ADJ. **last, remaining** *The government has to remove any last vestiges of corruption.*

VERB + VESTIGE **lose, shed | dispel, remove, strip sb/sth of | preserve, retain** *I'm struggling to retain any vestige of belief in his innocence.* **| show** *He showed no vestige of remorse for his crime.*

PREP. **without a ~** *He looked at her without a vestige of sympathy.* **| ~ of**

vet *noun*

ADJ. **good | qualified | practising | country, local**

VERB + VET **call (out)** *I think we'll have to call the vet out.* **| consult, go to, see, speak to/with, take sth to, talk to/with** *We had to take the dog to the local vet.*

VET + VERB **recommend sth** > Note at JOB

vet *verb*

ADV. **carefully | fully, thoroughly**

PREP. **for** *All goods are carefully vetted for quality before they leave the factory.*

PHRASES **vetting procedure** *We are introducing new security vetting procedures.*

veteran *noun*

1 **sb who has served in the army, navy, etc.**

ADJ. **war | army, navy | retired | disabled, wounded | Vietnam, World War Two, etc.**

PREP. **~ of** *a veteran of World War Two*

2 **sb with long experience of an activity, etc.**

ADJ. **seasoned** *He's the seasoned veteran, who has taken the children to the museum many times.* **| industry**

VETERAN + NOUN **campaigner, leader, politician**

PREP. **~ of** *a veteran of numerous political campaigns*

veto *noun*

ADJ. **effective, virtual | absolute | government, presidential**

VERB + VETO **have | cast, exercise, impose, use** *The board can exercise its veto to prevent the decision.* **| lift** *The agreement became possible when Spain lifted its veto.* **| override, overturn** *The Senate voted to override the president's veto.*

VETO + NOUN **power, rights**

PREP. **~ against** *The nobles had a virtual veto against peasant candidates.* **| ~ on** *The Opposition effectively have a veto on constitutional reform.* **| ~ over** *a veto over all political appointments*

PHRASES **a power/right of veto**

veto *verb*

ADV. **effectively** *The president effectively vetoed this measure.*

VERB + VETO **threaten to**

PHRASES **the power/right to veto sth**

viability *noun*

ADJ. **continued, continuing, future, long-term** *She is very negative about the long-term viability of the project.* **| commercial, economic, financial, political**

VERB + VIABILITY **assess, explore, investigate, test | prove** *Once the railways had proved their viability expansion was rapid.* **| ensure | maintain, preserve, safeguard** *measures to preserve the viability of small businesses* **| improve | doubt, question** *The company has questioned the commercial viability of the mine.* **| threaten, undermine**

viable *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem, sound** *None of the projects proved financially viable.* **| become | remain | make sth** *It is only their investment that makes the programme economically viable.* **| consider sth, regard sth as**

ADV. **extremely, truly | perfectly** *a perfectly viable form of political organization* **| potentially | still | no longer | commercially, economically, financially**

vibrate *verb*

ADV. **gently**

VERB + VIBRATE **seem to**

PREP. **through** *The thuds vibrated through the car.* | **with** *The atmosphere seemed to vibrate with tension.*

vibration *noun*

ADJ. **high-frequency, low-frequency**

VERB + VIBRATION **cause, make, produce | dampen, reduce | detect, feel** *Certain animals can feel vibrations in the sand. Their instruments can detect the slightest vibration.*

VIBRATION + NOUN **frequency | level**

PREP. **~ from** *vibrations from heavy traffic*

vice *noun*

ADJ. **secret**

VERB + VICE **indulge (in)** *He used his inheritance to indulge his vices of drinking and gambling.*

vicinity *noun*

ADJ. **close, immediate, near**

PREP. **in the ~ (of)** *There is no hospital in the immediate vicinity.*

vicious *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, sound | become, get, turn** *The computer wars are going to get vicious over the next few years.*

ADV. **particularly, truly, very** *a particularly vicious and brutal crime* **| increasingly | rather**

victim *noun*

ADJ. **hapless, helpless, innocent, poor, unfortunate, unsuspecting, unwilling** *He defrauded his innocent victims of millions of pounds.* **| easy** *Tourists are easy victims for pickpockets.* **| passive | willing** *In his fantasies, women became passive and sometimes even willing victims.* **| intended, potential** *The intended victims were selected because they seemed vulnerable.* **| child, elderly** *the child victims of the war* **| Aids, cancer, heart attack, plague, stroke | accident, bomb, crash, disaster, earthquake, famine, flood** *The government is sending aid to flood victims.* **| kidnap, murder, rape | sacrificial | fashion** *She's a fashion victim* (= wears the newest fashions even if they do not suit her).

VERB + VICTIM **portray sb as** *In his trial, he tried to portray himself as the victim of an uncaring society.* **| claim** *The train crash claimed its tenth victim yesterday when the driver died in hospital.* **| compensate** *a bill aimed at compensating victims of air pollution* **| blame** *The cut in benefits for the unemployed is a classic case of blaming the victim.*

PREP. **~ of** *They were the victims of a cruel hoax.*

PHRASES **fall victim to sb/sth** *Unfortunately, she fell victim to an unscrupulous landlord.* **| a victim of your/its own success** *The small firm became a victim of its own success when it could not supply all its orders on time.*

victor *noun*

ADJ. **clear, runaway | worthy**

VERB + VICTOR **be, emerge (as)** *The team emerged as worthy victors.*

PREP. **~ over** *The French pair fought back to finish two sets to one victors over the Williams sisters.*

victorious *adj.*

VERBS **be, emerge, prove** *Osborne emerged victorious after the second round of voting.*

ADV. **eventually, ultimately** *Against all the odds, Frederick II was ultimately victorious.*

PREP. **in** *victorious in the election* **| over** *The Reds were victorious over the Whites.*

victory *noun*

ADJ. **famous, glorious, great, historic, impressive, notable, outstanding, remarkable, significant, superb | clear, clear-cut, comfortable, convincing, crushing, easy, emphatic, handsome, landslide, massive, overwhelming, resounding, sweeping** *His party won a landslide victory in the elections.* **| complete, comprehensive, outright, total | narrow | conclusive, decisive** *The army won the decisive victory that changed the course of the war.* **| dramatic, thrilling | shock, stunning, surprise, unexpected | crucial, vital | deserved, well-deserved | hollow, Pyrrhic | election, electoral, military, moral, political**

VERB + VICTORY **clinch, ensure, notch up, pull off, record, score, secure, snatch, win** *They would do whatever lay in their power to ensure victory for themselves. The Hungarians pulled off a surprise victory against the Italian champions.* **| taste** *The England cricket team has tasted victory for the first time this season.* **| end in | roar/romp/storm/sweep to** *Labour swept to victory in the 2001 election.* **| hail sth as | hail** *Union leaders hailed the socialists' victory as a huge step forward.* **| celebrate | claim** *The outcome left both sides claiming victory.* **| gain sb, give sb | deny sb** *The Dutch champions were denied victory in a tough 2?2 draw at Porto.*

VICTORY + NOUN **celebration, parade | speech | dance, salute**

PREP. **~ against** *a victory against Fascism* **| ~ for** *The case was hailed as a victory for the common man.* **| ~ over** *their resounding victory over England*

PHRASES **snatch victory from the jaws of defeat**

video *noun*

1 **system of recording moving pictures and sound**

ADJ. **interactive**

VIDEO + NOUN **camera, equipment, machine, player, recorder, screen | clip, film, footage, image, picture, recording, replay, sequence** *The jury watched video footage of the riots.* **| shoot** *The band are in Iceland doing a video shoot.* **| channel** *I can't find the video channel on this television.* **| game | conferencing | conference, presentation | link** *The speech was broadcast via a video link to thousands standing outside.* **| surveillance**

PREP. **on ~** *The film is already out on video.*

2 **tape/cassette**

ADJ. **hour-long, ten-minute, etc. | blank | pre-recorded** *They sell both blank and pre-recorded videos.* **| amateur, home** *An amateur video of the crash failed to reveal the cause.* | **educational, instructional** *They produce educational videos for learning languages.* **| music, pop, rock | corporate | promo, promotional | training | exercise, fitness | porn/porno/pornographic, sex | police, security**

VERB + VIDEO **make | manufacture, produce | release** *The group's new video will be released next month.* **| capture sb/sth on, catch sb/sth on** *The thief was caught on video as he pocketed watches and rings.* **| rent (out)** *We rent videos out nearly every weekend.* **| watch** *The children can sit for hours watching videos.* **| show (sb)** *Their teacher showed them a video about the Romans.* **| fast-forward, rewind**

VIDEO + NOUN **cassette | library, rental shop, shop | release** *a review of the latest video releases*

PREP. **~ of** *a security video of the attack*

3 (*also* **video recorder**)

VERB + VIDEO **programme, set** *Did you remember to set the video for 'Inspector*

Morse'?

videotape *noun*

VERB + VIDEOTAPE **make | copy (sth) onto, record (sth) onto** *Film can also be copied onto videotape.* **| screen** *The videotape of the attack caused outrage when it was screened on the news.*

PREP. **~ of** *a videotape of the demonstration*

view *noun*

1 **opinion/idea about sth**

ADJ. **general, popular, prevailing, widely held** *The prevailing view is that he has done a good job in difficult circumstances.* | **conflicting, differing, divergent, opposing, polarized** *The debate brings together experts with conflicting views.* | **clear, forthright, strong** *He's a doctor with clear views on how to prevent illness.* | **idealized, optimistic, positive, romantic, rosy** *Her rosy view of life abroad seems rather naive.* | **jaundiced, negative, pessimistic** *After his experience in jail, he has a pretty jaundiced view of the penal system.* | **conventional** *The conventional view is that work is pleasant and rewarding.* | **unorthodox** | **minority** | **political** | **liberal, modern, progressive, radical** | **moderate** | **conservative, reactionary** | **extremist, hard-line** | **stereotyped, stereotypical** | **informed** | **ill-informed, uninformed** | **world** *His world view revolves around a battle between rich and poor.*

VERB + VIEW **have, hold** | **take** *I took the view that an exception should be made in this case.* | **air, convey, expound, express, make known, present, put forward** *The meeting gave everyone the chance to air their views. She picked up the phone and made her views known to her boss.* | **discuss, exchange, share** *At the meeting, we hope people will exchange views freely.* | **canvass, solicit** *He called a meeting to solicit the views of his staff.* | **reflect, represent** *His letter to the management did not reflect the views of his colleagues.* | **adhere to, agree with, endorse** | **confirm, support** | **challenge** *His music challenges the view that modern jazz is inaccessible.*

PREP. **in your ~** *In my view it was a waste of time.* | **~ about** *Teachers generally keep their views about politics hidden.* | **~ on** *Experts hold widely differing views on this subject.*

PHRASES **an exchange of views** *It's good to have a full and frank exchange of views.* | **a point of view** *From a teacher's point of view, activities that can be done with minimal preparation are invaluable.* | **take a dim view of sth** (= have a poor opinion of sth) *My mother takes a pretty dim view of my cooking skills.*

2 **ability to see/be seen from a particular place**

ADJ. **good, grandstand, wonderful** | **poor, terrible** *We had a poor view of the* *stage from where we were sitting.* | **clear, unimpeded, uninterrupted, unobstructed** | **back, front, rear, side** *The picture shows a front view of the car.* | **close, close-up** | **public** *Tensions within the band remained hidden from public view.* | **overall** *(figurative) The staff handbook gives an overall view of the company.*

VERB + VIEW **get, have** *The pillar prevented me getting a clear view of the action.* | **give sb** *The patio gave an unimpeded view across the headland to the sea.* | **block** *A woman in a very large hat was blocking my view of the procession.* | **come into** *A large truck suddenly came into view.* | **disappear from** *They stood waving on the platform, until the train disappeared from view.* | **be hidden from**

PREP. **in ~** *There was nobody in view.* | **on ~** *The carriage was put on view for the public to see.*

PHRASES **in full view (of sth)** *He was shot in full view of a large crowd.*

3 **scenery**

ADJ. **breathtaking, fine, lovely, magnificent, spectacular, splendid, stunning, superb, wonderful** *a room with a breathtaking view across the bay* | **commanding, panoramic** | **mountain, sea, etc.**

VERB + VIEW **afford, boast, enjoy, give, have** *Most rooms enjoy panoramic views of the sea. The large windows give fine views of the surrounding countryside.* | **admire, enjoy** *a place to unwind and enjoy the view*

PREP. **~ across/over** *a view over the valley* | **~ from** *the view from his apartment* | **~ of**

PHRASES **a room with a view**

view *verb*

ADV. **favourably, positively | unfavourably | cautiously, suspiciously** *These results should be viewed cautiously.* **| differently | objectively** *Try to view the situation objectively.* **| privately**

VERB + VIEW **tend to | try to**

PREP. **as** *This behaviour is not viewed as acceptable.* **| from** *trying to view the situation from an American perspective* **| with** *They tend to view foreigners with suspicion.*

PHRASES **generally/widely viewed as sth** *He is widely viewed as a possible prime minister.* **| increasingly viewed as sth, traditionally viewed as sth, a way of viewing sth**

viewer *noun*

ADJ. **television/TV | armchair** *While fewer people are attending football matches, armchair viewers are growing in number.*

VERB + VIEWER **attract, pull (in)** *The evening news is to change its serious image in a bid to attract more viewers.* **| be a hit with** *The new sitcom has been a smash hit with viewers.* **| inform, tell** *The announcer informed viewers that programmes would be running late.* **| entertain | outrage, shock** *a major new drama series that looks set to shock television viewers*

VIEWER + VERB **see sth, watch sth** *BBC viewers saw the prime minister lose his cool on last night's 'Question Time'. It is estimated that four million viewers watched the programme.* **| switch (between) channels, switch off | phone in, write in** *Hundreds of viewers phoned in to complain after the show.*

viewpoint *noun*

ADJ. **alternative, contrasting, different, differing, opposite** *The magazine likes to publish articles with alternative viewpoints.* **| narrow** *I find his viewpoint on this matter very narrow.* **| extreme | personal | ideological, political | commercial | scientific**

VERB + VIEWPOINT **express, present, put forward | adopt, take** *He always takes the opposite viewpoint to the rest of the group.* **| share** *I understand her viewpoint, but do not share it.* **| support** *He quoted recent test results to support his viewpoint.* **| look at/see/view sth from** *Seen from the student's viewpoint, the oral exam can be frightening.* **| see, understand**

PREP. **from the ~ of** *From the viewpoint of teachers, there has been a great increase in work.*

PHRASES **from a purely ... viewpoint** *From a purely commercial viewpoint, the film was a failure.*

vigil *noun*

1 **when you stay awake to look after sb, etc.**

ADJ. **all-night, constant, round-the-clock, 24-hour** *Since the accident, the boy's parents have kept a constant vigil at his bedside.* **| bedside | lonely** *For three nights, the shepherd maintained his lonely vigil.*

VERB + VIGIL **keep, maintain** *He told the gatekeeper to keep vigil.*

PREP. **~ over** *the husband's vigil over his dying wife*

2 **silent political protest; time of prayer**

ADJ. **candlelight/candlelit, night-time, nocturnal** *Protesters held a candlelit vigil against the war.* **| silent** *a silent vigil outside the presidential palace* **| prayer**

VERB + VIGIL **hold, stage | attend**

PREP. **~ for** *a vigil for the murdered politician*

vigilance *noun*

ADJ. **constant, continued, eternal | extra, increased, special** *You should exercise extra vigilance about locking your car properly.*

VERB + VIGILANCE **exercise, maintain | relax** *The birds cannot afford to relax their vigilance against predators.* **| require**

PREP. **~ against** *vigilance against shoplifters* **| ~ on the part of sb** *Guaranteeing the safety of students requires continued vigilance on the part of teachers.*

PHRASES **a need for vigilance**

vigilant *adj.*

VERBS **be, keep, remain, stay | become**

ADV. **especially, extra, extremely, particularly, very | constantly, ever** *The organization is ever vigilant for threats to the habitats of birds.*

PREP. **about** *Be extra vigilant about what you eat or drink.* **| against** *You need to be vigilant against garden pests.*

vigorous *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **extremely, very** *leading a very vigorous campaign to get the chairman removed* **| quite** *taking some quite vigorous exercise* **| enough, sufficiently**

PREP. **in** *The group is not vigorous enough in its opposition to the proposals.*

vigour *noun*

ADJ. **added, increased, increasing | fresh, new, renewed** *He returned to work with a sense of renewed vigour after his holiday.* **| extraordinary, great, tremendous | youthful | creative, intellectual, physical**

VERB + VIGOUR **pursue/tackle sth with** *The government gave assurances that the enquiry would be pursued with vigour.*

PREP. **with ~**

PHRASES **full of vigour** *She was a wonderful, bubbly girl, full of vigour.* **| vim and vigour** *He set to his task with renewed vim and vigour.* **| with equal vigour** *She attacked both political parties with equal vigour.*

villa *noun*

ADJ. **grand, grandiose, handsome, imposing, luxurious, luxury, magnificent, sumptuous | modest | country, suburban | hilltop | private, rented | holiday, self-catering | four-bedroom, two-storey, etc. | Roman, Spanish, etc.**

VERB + VILLA **have, own | rent | live in, stay in**

VILLA + NOUN **holiday**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *staying in his Spanish holiday villa*

village *noun*

ADJ. **big, large | global** *Technology has turned the world into a global village.* **| little, small, tiny | ancient, old | attractive, beautiful, picturesque, pretty | quiet | nearby, neighbouring, surrounding** *The flood affected the town and surrounding villages.* **| outlying, remote, scattered | country, rural | coastal, seaside | deserted | home, native** *She married a man from her home village.* **| agricultural, farming, fishing, holiday, mining**

VILLAGE + NOUN **community, life | church, green, hall, pub, school, shop, street | centre**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *They live in a farming village.* **| outside a/the ~** *Our cottage is just outside the village.*

PHRASES **the centre/middle of the village, the edge/outskirts of the village**

villain *noun*

ADJ. **pantomime** *He wore a black cloak, like a pantomime villain.*

VERB + VILLAIN **cast sb as** *She seems to have cast me as the villain in her latest emotional upheaval.* **| play** *He has played villains in most of his films.* **| catch, nail** *The police still haven't nailed the villain.*

PHRASES **the villain of the piece/story** *He changed his story to make his wife appear the villain of the piece.*

vintage *noun*

ADJ. **classic, fine, superb | rare**

VINTAGE + NOUN **champagne, claret, port, etc.**

viola *nou*n > Special page at MUSIC

violate *verb*

ADV. **flagrantly, shamelessly** *They have flagrantly violated the treaty.* **| systematically | brutally** *The peace of the island community had been brutally violated.*

violation *noun*

ADJ. **blatant, clear, flagrant** *The attack on civilians is a flagrant violation of the peace agreement.* **| grave, gross, major, massive, serious | wholesale, widespread | continued, repeated | human rights | traffic**

VERB + VIOLATION **commit** *The army was accused of committing violations against the accord.* **| be, constitute** *This action constitutes a violation of international law.*

PREP. **in ~ of** *There is plenty of evidence that her actions were in violation of an earlier contract.* **| ~ against** *violations against minimum wage agreements*

violence *noun*

1 **behaviour that hurts other people physically**

ADJ. **considerable, great, excessive, extreme, large-scale, serious | fresh** *There are fears of fresh violence if the strike continues.* **| continuing, escalating, growing | gratuitous, unnecessary** *Letters poured in complaining about the gratuitous violence on the show.* **| mindless, random, uncontrolled | brutal | criminal, unlawful | endemic, institutionalized, widespread** *attempts to rescue the country from endemic violence* **| sporadic** *In spite of sporadic violence, polling was largely orderly.* **| domestic, physical, sexual | drug-related, election-related, etc. | communal, ethnic, inter-communal, inter-ethnic, racial, sectarian | political, revolutionary, terrorist | left-wing, right-wing**

QUANT. **level**

VERB + VIOLENCE **commit, engage in, inflict, perpetrate, resort to, turn to, use** *people who inflict violence on animals violence perpetrated by the army The peasants believed their only choice was to resort to violence. Under no circumstances should police use violence against protesters.* **| suffer** *She had suffered years of violence and abuse.* **| encourage, incite, provoke | denounce, deplore, hate, reject | breed** *Hatred breeds violence.* **| spill over into** *The enthusiasm of the protest spilled over into violence.* **| contain** *UN peacekeepers are struggling to contain the escalating violence.* **| end, quell** *Troops were called in to quell the violence.* **| be capable of** *We are all capable of violence in certain circumstances.*

VIOLENCE + VERB **break out, erupt, flare, occur** *Violence erupted outside the prison last night.* **| mar sth** *The demonstration was marred by violence.* **| escalate, intensify, worsen** *Observers have warned that the violence could escalate into full-scale armed conflict.* **| spread**

PREP. **~ against** *violence against police officers* **| ~ among** *violence among football supporters* **| ~ between** *violence between rival ethnic groups* **| ~ towards** *violence towards ethnic minorities* **| ~ within** *violence within the family*

PHRASES **an act of violence** *Any act of violence against another player must be punished.* **| an end to violence** *The former leader of the terrorist group has called for an end to the violence.* **| an eruption/outbreak of violence** *The police are bracing themselves for an outbreak of violence.* **| fear of violence, a life of**

violence *It was a predictable death for a man who had lived a life of violence.* **| men of violence** *the men of violence who start wars* **| an outburst of violence** *He had a short temper and was prone to outbursts of violence.* **| a threat of violence, an upsurge in violence, a victim of violence** *a refuge for victims of domestic violence* **| violence begets/breeds violence** *We have to make people realize that violence only begets more violence.* **| a wave of violence**

2 physical/emotional force

ADJ. **suppressed**

PREP. **with (a) ~** *He kissed her with suppressed violence.*

violent *adj.*

1 **using physical strength intended to hurt/kill**

VERBS **be | become, get, grow, turn**

ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, particularly, really, terribly, very | increasingly | almost | a bit, fairly, pretty, quite, rather** *She started to get a bit violent.* **| gratuitously** *The film is contrived, sentimental and gratuitously violent.* **| potentially** *dealing with potentially violent incidents* **| physically, sexually**

PREP. **to, towards** *He was violent towards his wife on several occasions.*

2 **very strong**

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, very** *an exceptionally violent storm* **| almost** *He felt a strong, almost violent, dislike for the stranger.* **| fairly, quite**

violin *noun*

ADJ. **muted**

VERB + VIOLIN **tune (up)**

VIOLIN + NOUN **bow, string | family** *The cello is a member of the violin family.* > Special page at MUSIC

virginity *noun*

VERB + VIRGINITY **lose**

virtue *noun*

ADJ. **cardinal, great, special | chief | inherent** *There is no inherent virtue in having read all the latest books.* **| negative, positive** *She has just one, negative virtue?she never tells lies. The brochure makes a positive virtue of the island's isolated position.* **| old-fashioned, traditional** *He understands the traditional virtue of hard work.* **| Christian, ethical, moral | domestic | civic, public | political | easy** *women of easy virtue* (= with low standards of sexual morality)

VERB + VIRTUE **have** *Her book has the cardinal virtue of simplicity.* **| emphasize, extol, preach** *He never stops extolling the virtues of the free market.*

PHRASES **make a virtue of necessity** (= to manage to gain an advantage from sth you have to do and cannot avoid), **a paragon of virtue** *It would have taken a paragon of virtue not to feel jealous.*

virus *noun*

ADJ. **deadly | virulent | Aids, flu, hepatitis, herpes, HIV, measles, etc. | computer**

VERB + VIRUS **be infected with, contract, develop | carry | pass (on), spread, transmit** *An infected person can pass the virus to others.* **| isolate | inactivate**

VIRUS + VERB **attack sb/sth** *The virus attacks a variety of cells in the body.* **| replicate**

VIRUS + NOUN **infection | vaccine**

visa *noun*

ADJ. **entry, exit, transit | student, tourist, travel**

VERB + VISA **get, obtain** *I obtained a visa after hours of waiting at the embassy.* **| extend, renew | give sb, grant (sb), issue, issue sb (with) | deny sb, refuse sb** *She was refused a visa because of her criminal record.* **| need, require** *Do South Africans need a visa to go to France?* **| stamp | check | overstay** *He was arrested for overstaying his visa.*

VISA + VERB **expire** *Her visa expired six months ago.*

VISA + NOUN **regulations, requirements, restrictions | application**

PREP. **on a ~** *She entered the country on a student visa.* **| ~ for** *Do you need a visa for Egypt?*

viscount, viscountess *nou*n > Note at PEER

visibility *noun*

1 how far you can see

ADJ. **clear, good, excellent, high | bad, limited, low, poor, zero**

VERB + VISIBILITY **reduce** *The sand in the air reduced visibility to a hundred yards.*

VISIBILITY + VERB **be down to sth** *Visibility was down to 25 yards.*

PREP. **in … ~** *We set a course in good visibility and calm seas.*

2 obviousness in public life

ADJ. **high | greater, increased, increasing**

VERB + VISIBILITY **increase, raise** *We aim to raise the visibility of ethnic minorities in our organization.*

visible *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain, stay** *The scars remained visible all her life.* **| leave sth, make sth** *We cut the trees down to make the lake visible from the house.*

ADV. **all too, clearly, easily, highly, obviously, particularly, plainly, readily, very** *His relief was all too visible. The election poster was clearly visible from the street. Italy has a highly visible environmental movement.* **| fully, quite** *The sea was now out, leaving the wreck fully visible. Ellie's quite visible embarrassment* **| just** *The mountains were just visible, dusky and black.* **| barely, hardly, scarcely** *The low, flat boats were barely visible.* **| almost | half, partially** *She stood, half visible in the dim light.* **| dimly, faintly** *A figure was dimly visible in the evening gloom.* **| externally | immediately** *Women are advised to wait where they are not immediately visible to approaching traffic.* **| still | no longer**

PREP. **to** *Its contents were visible to all of them.*

PHRASES **visible to the naked eye** *tiny spiders that are hardly visible to the naked eye*

vision *noun*

1 **ability to see**

ADJ. **20/20, excellent, perfect** *The eye test shows she has perfect vision.* | **normal** | **clear** *The rain prevented her having clear vision of the road ahead.* | **blurred, defective, distorted, impaired, poor** | **double, tunnel** *(often figurative)* | **all-round** *The high driving position gives excellent all-round vision.* | **binocular, stereoscopic** | **X-ray** | **distance** *I can read without glasses, but my distance vision is poor.* | **night** | **peripheral** *Use your peripheral vision widely when moving from place to place.*

VERB + VISION **have** | **give (sb)** | **obscure, restrict** | **blur** *The tears blurred her vision.* | **improve**

VISION + VERB **clear** *Her vision cleared and she realized Niall was standing beside her.*

PREP. **across your ~** *A bird shot across her vision.*

PHRASES **your field of vision** *She was aware of shapes moving across her field of vision.* | **your line of vision** *Someone was standing in my line of vision so I couldn't see the screen.*

2 **picture in your imagination**

ADJ. **disturbing, dreadful, ghastly, horrible** | **bleak** | **inner, intuitive, mental, spiritual** | **mystic/mystical, prophetic, religious** *A young girl in the village experienced a prophetic vision.* | **poetic** | **apocalyptic** *an apocalyptic vision of the end of civilization* | **momentary, sudden**

VERB + VISION **experience, have, receive** *I had visions of us getting hopelessly lost.* | **conjure up** *The word 'island' conjures up a vision of a relaxing summer holiday.*

VISION + VERB **fade** *As he approached, the vision faded and there was no one there.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The idea came to her in a vision.* | **~ of**

3 **ability to see/plan for the future**

ADJ. **great | imaginative | alternative | broad, comprehensive, global, wide** *The company needs to develop a global vision.* **| narrow | overall | personal | clear** *The engineers had a clear vision of what they wanted to achieve.* **| common** *They share a common vision for the development of health services.* **| strategic | political | revolutionary | romantic, Utopian**

VERB + VISION **have | develop | convey, expand on/upon, outline, promote** *He outlined his vision for the new economic order.* **| impose** *The new leader set about imposing his vision on the party.* **| share | cloud** *He was determined not to let emotions cloud his vision.*

PREP. **of ~** *a statesman of great vision* **| ~ for** *a vision for the future* **| ~ of** *an alternative vision of society*

PHRASES **breadth of vision** *His plans for the country's future show a remarkable breadth of vision.*

visit *noun*

ADJ. **brief, fleeting, flying, quick, short | lengthy, long | eight-day, hour-long, etc. | long-awaited | regular | constant, frequent** *She enjoyed the frequent visits of her grandchildren.* | **infrequent,** occasional, periodic, rare | **annual, daily, twice-weekly, etc. | forthcoming, impending** *The prime minister has been briefed in preparation for his forthcoming visit to China.* | **exchange, reciprocal, return** *Exchange visits between company and school have kept the project going. They came to visit last week, and we'll pay them a return visit in the autumn.* | **surprise, unannounced, unexpected | unwelcome | casual | formal, ministerial, official, presidential, royal, state | high-profile | trade | private, unofficial | foreign, overseas | personal** *Following her letter of complaint, she received a personal visit from the store manager.* | **domiciliary, home** *You should receive a home visit from your midwife within a month.* | **hospital, prison | initial, preliminary | follow-up | social | neighbourly | educational, study | fact-finding, research | courtesy, goodwill** *While on holiday in Italy, the prime minister paid a courtesy visit to his opposite number in Rome.* | **morale-boosting | inspection, monitoring | on-site, site | school | customer | memorable**

VERB + VISIT **go on, make, pay sb, undertake** *We used to go on school visits to museums and historical buildings. How many doctors are still able to make home visits? Pay us a visit next time you're in town.* | **get, have, receive | look forward to** *I'd been looking forward to my cousin's visit for ages.* | **arrange, organize | postpone | cancel | cut short** *He was forced to cut short a visit to North America.* | **prolong** *He offered her a drink to try to prolong her visit.* | **announce** *We received a letter announcing a visit from government inspectors.* | **be (well) worth** *If you're staying in Rome, Ostia is well worth a visit.*

VISIT + VERB **mark sth, signal sth** *The visit signalled the normalization of relations between the two countries.*

PREP. **during/on a/the ~** *On one of her regular visits home, she told her parents she was engaged.* | **~ from** *We had a visit from somebody collecting for charity.* | **~ to** *a visit to the theatre*

visit *verb*

ADV. **regularly**

VERB + VISIT **come to, go to** *My parents are coming to visit me next week. We've just been to visit my grandparents.* **| decide to, hope to, intend to, plan to, promise to, want to, wish to | be expected to, be likely to** *A million people are expected to visit the museum over the next 12 months.* **| invite sb to, urge sb to**

visitor *noun*

ADJ. **constant, frequent, regular | occasional | seasonal | rare | casual | first-time** *First-time visitors to Spain are often surprised by how late people eat.* **| welcome | surprise, unexpected | uninvited, unwanted, unwelcome | potential, prospective, would-be** *The latest crime figures are likely to put off prospective visitors to the city.* **| foreign, international, overseas | annual, yearly | business, holiday, tourist | museum | home, hospital, prison | health** *The baby's weight is monitored by the health visitor.*

VERB + VISITOR **get, have, receive** *Do you get many visitors?* **| expect** *The house was tidy and I could see he was expecting visitors.* **| entertain** *The front room was used mainly for entertaining visitors.* **| attract, bring (in)** *The festival brings 5,000 visitors to the town every year.* **| interest** *The town has much to interest the visitor.* **| deter** *The lack of facilities in the town may deter the casual visitor.* **| admit** *The college only admits visitors in organized groups.*

VISITOR + VERB **come, flock, turn up** *Visitors flocked to see the show.*

VISITOR + NOUN **attraction | centre** *Pick up a free map of the town from the visitor centre.*

PREP. **~ from** *Visitors from Ireland will find much that reminds them of home.* **| ~ to** *visitors to the museum*

visualize *verb*

ADV. **easily**

VERB + VISUALIZE **be able/unable to, can/could** *I could visualize the scene in the office.* **| try to | be easy to | be difficult to, be hard to** *It is difficult to visualize how the town must have looked years ago.*

PREP. **as** *I visualized him as a typical businessman.*

vital *adj.*

VERBS **be, prove, seem | become | remain | consider sth, regard sth as, see sth as**

ADV. **particularly, really | absolutely | strategically** *the strategically vital industrial zone*

PREP. **for** *fostering team spirit, which is vital for success* **| to** *These nutrients are absolutely vital to good health.*

vitality *noun*

ADJ. **enormous, exceptional, great, remarkable, sheer, tremendous** *You have to admire the sheer vitality of his performance.* **| renewed | continuing | creative, cultural, economic | inner, mental**

VERB + VITALITY **burst with** *He came back from his holiday bursting with vitality and good health.* **| restore**

PHRASES **full of vitality, a lack of vitality**

vitamin *noun*

ADJ. **take** *The doctor told me to take vitamins regularly.*

VERB + VITAMIN **contain** *Most foods contain vitamin E.* **| be rich in** *Fish is rich in vitamins and minerals.* **| enrich sth with, fortify sth with** *breakfast cereals enriched with vitamins*

VITAMIN + NOUN **drops, injections, pills, supplements, tablets | requirements | deficiency** *Vitamin C deficiency can ultimately lead to scurvy.*

vivid *adj.*

1 **very bright**

VERBS **be**

ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, really, very | quite, rather** *She uses quite vivid colours.*

2 **very clear**

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **extraordinarily, extremely, very, wonderfully** *a wonderfully vivid imagination* **| quite | still**

vocabulary *noun*

ADJ. **extensive, large, rich, wide** *English has a rich vocabulary and literature. Try to develop a wide vocabulary.* **| limited, narrow, poor, restricted, small | active, passive | basic, essential, key | formal | business, scientific, specialized, technical**

VERB + VOCABULARY **have | acquire, learn** *Learners of languages acquire vocabulary through practice.* **| build, develop, enlarge, enrich, expand, extend, increase, widen** *This book has been designed to help you expand your vocabulary.* **| enter** *The word 'think tank' entered the vocabulary* (= became part of the language) *in the 1960s.* **| use** *Specialized vocabulary is used in all the major disciplines.*

VOCABULARY + NOUN **item**

PREP. **~ for/of** *the essential vocabulary for tourism*

PHRASES **not in sb's vocabulary** *The word 'failure'is not in his vocabulary* (= for him, failure does not exist).

vocal *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **extremely, highly, very** *a highly vocal opposition group* **| increasingly** *criticized by a small but increasingly vocal minority* **| quite**

PREP. **about** *women who are very vocal about men's failings*

vocation *noun*

ADJ. **real, true | religious**

VERB + VOCATION **find** *She struggled for years to find her true vocation.* **| have | follow, pursue** *He is desperate to pursue his vocation as an artist.* **| miss** *She feels that she missed her vocation by not working with children.*

PREP. **~ for** *She seems to have a vocation for healing.* **| ~ to** *a vocation to the priesthood*

PHRASES **a sense of vocation** *This is a job that demands a sense of vocation.*

vogue *noun*

ADJ. **current | temporary**

VERB + VOGUE **enjoy** *Cycling enjoyed a vogue at the end of the nineteenth century.* **| come (back) into** *Scooters have recently come back into vogue.*

VOGUE + NOUN **word**

PREP. **in ~** *the type of pop song in vogue at that time* **| out of ~** *Disaster movies are currently out of vogue.* **| ~ for** *the current vogue for Japanese food*

voice *noun*

1 **sounds you make when speaking or singing**

ADJ. **beautiful, fine, good, lovely, pleasant, sweet** *She has a beautiful singing voice.* | **big, booming, loud, ringing, sonorous, stentorian** | **light, small, thin, tiny, weak** | **low, soft** | **deep, gravelly, gruff, hoarse, husky** | **falsetto, high, high-pitched, shrill, squeaky** | **clear** | **muffled, muted, strangulated** | **harsh, penetrating, sharp** | **nasal** | **cracked, rasping, slurred** *I could tell from his slurred voice that he'd been drinking.* | **fruity, mellifluous, rich, silky, smooth, velvet, velvety** | **sing-song** | **gentle, kindly, soothing** | **cheerful, hearty** | **friendly, warm** | **flat, matter-of-fact, unemotional** | **calm, cool** | **firm, steady** | **urgent** | **authoritative** | **distinctive** | **raised** | **hushed** | **angry** | **strained, tired** | **plaintive** | **funny, silly** | **disembodied** | **inner** *An inner voice told him that what he had done was wrong.* | **singing** | **alto, baritone, bass, contralto, soprano, tenor, treble**

VERB + VOICE **hear** *I could hear voices in the next room.* | **raise** *She's a teacher who never has to raise her voice to discipline the children.* | **drop, lower** *She dropped her voice to a whisper. You're shouting?please lower your voice.* | **project** *Try to project your voice so that the people at the back of the room can hear you.* | **lose** *She's lost her voice and won't be able to sing tonight.* | **find** *He swallowed nervously as he tried to find his voice.* | **put on** *She put on a silly voice as she imitated her boss.*

VOICE + VERB **go up, rise** *His voice rose in angry protest.* | **die away, drop, fade, tail away/off, trail away/off** *'So he won't come ... ' her voice trailed off in disappointment.* | **be filled/tinged with sth** *Her voice was filled with emotion.* | **deepen, harden, soften, thicken** *His voice suddenly thickened with emotion.* | **echo** *Her voice echoed through the silent house.* | **whisper** *'Be quiet!' a voice whispered in his ear.* | **hiss, purr** | **call (out), cry (out)** *'Who is it?' a female voice called out.* | **scream, shout** *She was dimly aware of voices shouting.* | **boom (out)** | **cut through sth, pierce sth** *His deep voice cut through the silence.* | **break, crack** *His voice broke with emotion. His voice broke* (= became a deep, man's voice) *when he was 14.* | **falter, quaver, shake, tremble, waver** *Her voice shook with fear.* | **drone (on)** *The flat, unemotional voice droned on.*

VOICE + NOUN **recognition** *the computer's voice recognition capability* | **mail** (also **voicemail**), **mailbox, message, traffic** | **synthesizer**

PREP. **in a/your ~** *'Get out!' she shouted in a shrill voice. There was fury in his voice as he answered her.*

PHRASES **at the top of your voice** *I was shouting at the top of my voice but she couldn't hear me.* **| a babble/hum/murmur of voices** *They could hear a loud babble of voices coming from the crowded bar.* **| in good voice** *The home fans were in good voice* (= making a loud noise) *before the match. She was in good voice* (= singing well) *at the concert tonight.* **| keep your voice down** *Please keep your voice down so as not to wake the children.* **| keep your voice level/steady** *He managed to keep his voice steady despite his feelings of panic.* **| tone of voice** *'Do you have to speak to me in that tone of voice?' she said sadly.*

2 **expression of ideas/opinions**

ADJ. **critical, dissenting** *Dissenting voices at the newspaper are very rare.* **| lone** *a lone voice of dissent* **| powerful** *Powerful voices in the Senate are determined to bring down the president.* **| distinctive** *a writer with a highly distinctive voice*

VERB + VOICE **find** *Refugees have been unable to find a voice in politics.* **| add, lend** *Many senior politicians have lent their voices to the campaign.* **| give** *The magazine gave voice to hundreds of oppressed factory workers.* **| listen to**

PREP. **~ of** *to listen to the voice of conscience*

PHRASES **make your voice heard** *a society in which individuals are able to make their voices heard* **| speak with one voice** *The teachers speak with one voice when they demand an end to the cuts.*

void *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | make sth, render sth** *an impediment which rendered the marriage void* **| declare sth**

PHRASES **null and void** *The election was declared null and void.*

void *noun*

ADJ. **great, massive | aching | black**

VERB + VOID **leave | fill** *It seemed that nothing could fill the aching black void left by Rachel's death.*

volatile *adj.*

1 **that can easily change**

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **dangerously, extremely, highly, very** *Edwards was a dangerously volatile character.* **| increasingly | fairly, quite, rather, somewhat | potentially** *a potentially volatile situation* **| notoriously | politically**

2 **that can easily change into a gas**

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **highly, very** *a highly volatile liquid*

volcano *noun*

ADJ. **active, dormant, extinct**

QUANT. **chain**

VOLCANO + VERB **erupt** *An active volcano may erupt at any time.*

volley *noun*

1 **of stones, bullets, etc.**

VERB + VOLLEY **fire, unleash** *The police fired a volley of bullets over the heads of the crowd.*

PREP. **~ of**

2 **in sport**

ADJ. **backhand, cross-court, forehand** (in tennis) **| left-foot, right-foot** (in football) **| stunning, superb** *Williams took the set with a stunning backhand volley down the line.* **| 30-yard, etc.**

VERB + VOLLEY **hit** *She hit a forehand volley into the net.* **| crack/crash/lash home, strike, unleash (all in football)** *Cole lashed home a 20-yard volley.*

PREP. **on the ~** *Figo met the ball on the volley and scored.*

voltage *noun*

ADJ. **high, low | constant | changing, varying | mains, supply** *Most house lighting runs at the full mains voltage of 240 volts.* **| input, output**

VERB + VOLTAGE **increase, step up, turn up | decrease, step down, turn down | produce | apply** *A voltage is then applied across the cell electrodes.*

PREP. **at a ~** *The motor operates at low voltages.*

volume *noun*

1 **amount of space**

ADJ. **total** *the total volume of the containers*

PREP. **by ~** *They sell screws and nails by volume.* | **in ~** *2 litres in volume*

2 **quantity of sth**

ADJ. **sheer** *The sheer volume of fiction produced is staggering.* | **considerable, enormous, great, heavy, high, huge, large, substantial, vast** | **small**

VERB + VOLUME **increase** | **decrease, reduce** | **double/grow//increase/rise in** *Sales have doubled in volume.* | **decrease/fall in**

VOLUME + VERB **double, increase, rise** *Sales volume has doubled since 1999.* | **decrease, fall**

3 **strength of sound that sth makes**

ADJ. **high** | **full, maximum** | **low**

VERB + VOLUME **increase, turn up** | **decrease, turn down** | **grow/increase/rise in** | **decrease/fall in**

VOLUME + NOUN **control** *the volume control on the television*

PREP. **at … ~** *The car stereo was on at full volume.*

4 **book**

ADJ. **bound, leather-bound** *a library full of bound volumes* | **companion** *a companion volume to the one on African wildlife* | **rare** *Only a specialist shop would have this rare volume.* | **bulky, massive, substantial, thick, weighty** | **compact, slim** | **glossy** *a forty-page, glossy volume about the company's products* | **dusty** | **old** | **single** | **separate**

QUANT. **series**

VERB + VOLUME **publish**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Her poems are now available in a single volume.* **| ~ of** *a volume of short stories* **| ~ on** *a volume on ancient history*

PHRASES **run to five, several, etc. volumes** *The encyclopedia is a huge work, running to 20 volumes.*

voluntary *adj.*

VERBS **be | remain**

ADV. **completely, entirely, purely** *The organization is run on a purely voluntary basis.* **| largely**

volunteer *noun*

1 **sb who offers to do sth**

ADJ. **unpaid** *The office is staffed by unpaid volunteers.* | **full-time, part-time** | **committed, dedicated, enthusiastic, willing** | **qualified, trained** | **potential, prospective, would-be** | **conservation, Red Cross**

QUANT. **army, band, group, network, team** *An army of volunteers cooked meals for the children.*

VERB + VOLUNTEER **appeal for, ask for, call for, look for** *The charity is appealing for volunteers to take elderly patients to and from hospital.* | **find, get, recruit** *We can't get any volunteers to help in the gardens.* | **provide** *The local community provided volunteers to repair the road.* | **encourage** | **need, want** | **work as**

VOLUNTEER + VERB **come forward** *Hundreds of volunteers have come forward to offer their help.* | **man sth, staff sth** | **carry sth out** | **provide support, support sb** *The support our volunteers provide cannot be measured in purely practical terms.*

VOLUNTEER + NOUN **staff, worker** | **carer, driver, helper**

PREP. **~ for** *He worked as a volunteer for Oxfam.*

2 **in the armed forces**

ADJ. **army, civilian**

VERB + VOLUNTEER **recruit** | **serve as**

VOLUNTEER + NOUN **army, militia, unit**

volunteer *verb*

ADV. **kindly** *Barbara Forrest has kindly volunteered to lead a guided walk to Bolton Abbey.*

PREP. **as** *We volunteered as witnesses.* **|** **for** *I volunteered for service in the Air Force.*

vomit *verb*

ADV. **violently | promptly** *Corbett leaned against the wall and promptly vomited.* **| up** *He vomited up all that he had eaten for lunch.*

VERB + VOMIT **want to** *The smell made me want to vomit.* **| make sb** *They gave her salty water to make her vomit.*

PHRASES **nausea and vomiting** *The symptoms include headaches, nausea and vomiting.* **| vomiting and diarrhoea**

vote *noun*

1 **choice/decision made by voting**

ADJ. **majority | huge, massive, overwhelming, resounding** *an overwhelming vote in favour of autonomy* **| unanimous | close, knife-edge, narrow | two-thirds, two-to-one, etc. | democratic, direct, free** *Members of Parliament will have a free vote on this bill.* **| transferable** *The single transferable vote system is it since women have had the vote?* **| give sb** *operates.* **| fair | secret | popular** *The law was ratified by popular vote.* **| casting, decisive | crucial | affirmative, favourable, yes | adverse, negative, no | dissenting | protest** *He lost the election because of the protest vote.* **| tactical | floating, swing | absent, expatriate, postal, proxy | invalid, valid | congressional, parliamentary | individual | block** *The union wants the system of block votes to continue.* **| historic**

VERB + VOTE **have, put sth to the, take** *We should put the resolution to the vote. Let's take a vote on the issue.* **| have** *The chairperson always has the casting vote.* **| cast, record** *(formal) You can cast your vote at the local polling station. 50% of the eligible voters recorded their vote.* **| gain, get, obtain, poll, receive, secure, win** *Our candidate polled only 10% of the vote.* **| swing** *factors that could swing the vote against the president* **| count** *Votes are still being counted.*

VOTE + VERB **go to sb/sth** *My vote will go to the party that addresses crime.* **| fall** *The party's vote fell by 6%.* **| increase, rise | double, treble, etc.**

PREP. **by ~** *The bill was passed by a single vote. Members are elected by direct vote.* **| ~ against, ~ for** *a vote for the government* **| ~ in favour (of sth), ~ on** *a vote on the new law*

PHRASES **a vote of confidence/no confidence** *The government received a massive vote of confidence from the electorate.* **| a vote of thanks** *A special vote of thanks went to the organizer, Tim Woodhouse.* > Special page at MEETING

3 **the vote: legal right to vote in elections**

VERB + VOTE **have** *How many years*

vote *verb*

ADV. **overwhelmingly | unanimously** *The committee voted unanimously to accept the plans.* **| narrowly** *The Senate voted narrowly to continue funding the scheme.* **| formally** *The proposals were formally voted upon.* **| tactically | down, in, out** *The proposal was voted down.*

VERB + VOTE **be eligible to, be entitled to** *young people who are eligible to vote for the first time* **| intend to**

PREP. **against** *They voted overwhelmingly against the proposal.* **| for** *They all voted for the new tax.* **| in** *She returned home in order to vote in the elections.* **| in favour of** *The committee voted in favour of the plan.* **| into** *the government that has just been voted into power* **| off** *She was voted off the committee.* **| on/upon** *Parliament is to vote on tobacco advertising tomorrow.* **| onto, out of** *He was voted out of office.* **| (by) … to …** *They voted 15 to 2 to accept the offer.* **| with** *Her party voted with the government.*

PHRASES **the right to vote** *Everyone over 18 has the right to vote.* **| a round of voting** *She was elected on the second round of voting.* **| vote Conservative, Labour, Republican, etc., vote no/yes** *They voted yes to the agreement.*

voter *noun*

ADJ. **eligible, registered** *Only a quarter of registered voters actually voted in the election.* **| proxy | overseas | floating, uncommitted, undecided, wavering | first-time, new | potential | ordinary** *the feelings of ordinary voters* **| Conservative, Labour, etc.**

VERB + VOTER **woo** *attempts to woo undecided voters* **| persuade | convince | urge, warn | influence**

VOTER + VERB **choose sb, favour sb, pick sb, prefer sb** *In this election, voters chose candidates who promised economic security.* **| participate in sth, turn out** *More than two million voters participated in the election.* **| cast their vote | support sth, vote yes (to sth) | reject sth, vote no (to sth) | change/ switch allegiance**

VOTER + NOUN **turnout** *Voter turnout was very low.* **| registration | disillusionment | intimidation** *The Opposition alleged voter intimidation by the army.*

voucher *noun*

ADJ. **credit | discount, money-off | gift, sales, shopping | luncheon | travel | accommodation, hotel | fuel, petrol**

VERB + VOUCHER **give sb, issue (sb with)** *The company issues travel vouchers to all managers.* **| get, receive** *I got a credit voucher for £30.* **| redeem, spend, use**

VOUCHER + VERB **entitle sb to sth** *a voucher entitling you to a half-price meal* **| be worth sth** *a voucher worth £100* **| be redeemable** *a 50p money-off voucher redeemable against any future purchase of the product*

PREP. **~ for** *a voucher for children's glasses*

vow *noun*

ADJ. **formal, solemn | marriage, wedding | monastic, religious | final** *She left the convent before taking her final vows.*

VERB + VOW **make, take** *He made a vow to avenge his father's death.* **| keep** *She kept her vow of silence until she died.* **| break** *Nothing will persuade me to break this vow.* **| exchange** *The couple exchanged vows at the altar.* **| renew**

PREP. **~ of** *a vow of poverty*

vow *verb*

ADV. **quietly, silently** *He silently vowed vengeance on them all.*

PREP. **to** *She vowed to herself that she would not show any emotion.*

PHRASES **vow never to do sth** *I vowed never to drink so much again.*

vowel *noun*

ADJ. **long, short | open | neutral** *This neutral vowel is known as ‘schwa’.* **| weak | broad, flat | final | accented, stressed | unaccented, unstressed**

VERB + VOWEL **begin with, contain, end in/with**

VOWEL + NOUN **sound | system**

voyage *noun*

ADJ. **epic, great, long | arduous, hazardous, nightmare | outward | homeward, return | maiden | ocean, sea | transatlantic, round-the-world**

VERB + VOYAGE **embark on, go on, make, set out on, undertake**

PREP. **during a/the ~** *Lady Franklin kept a journal during the voyage.* **| on a/the ~** *There were mainly scientists on the voyage. The Titanic sank in April 1912 on its maiden voyage from Southampton to New York.* **| ~ from, ~ to**

PHRASES **a voyage of discovery** *(often figurative) Going to college can be a voyage of discovery.*

vulnerability *noun*

ADJ. **extreme, great | economic, financial** *the economic vulnerability of unskilled workers* **| genetic** *evidence of a genetic vulnerability to cancer* **| naked, raw** *the naked vulnerability in his eyes*

VERB + VULNERABILITY **demonstrate, expose, highlight, show (up)** *The earthquake highlighted the vulnerability of elevated highways.* **| decrease, reduce | increase | exploit, take advantage of** *The gang had taken advantage of the immigrants' vulnerability.*

PREP. **~ to** *the extreme vulnerability of old people to crime*

vulnerable *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem** *You must try not to appear vulnerable.* **| become | remain | leave sb/sth, make sb/sth** *The virus attacks the immune system, leaving your body vulnerable to infections.*

ADV. **acutely, especially, extremely, highly, intensely, particularly, very | completely, totally, utterly | increasingly | quite, rather** *She is very sensitive and rather vulnerable.* **| potentially | peculiarly, uniquely** *Hippos are uniquely vulnerable to drought.* **| oddly, strangely** *He smiled, making her suddenly feel oddly vulnerable.* **| somehow | economically, militarily, politically** *The company is in an economically vulnerable position.*

PREP. **to** *These offices are highly vulnerable to terrorist attack.*

vulture *noun*

VULTURE + VERB **circle, hover, soar, wheel** *Vultures circled overhead as the lions fed.* **| gather, wait | swoop | scavenge (sth)**

wade *verb*

ADV. **ashore** *The men waded ashore.* **| out**

PREP. **across, in, into, through** *We waded across the stream.*

PHRASES **wade knee-deep/waist-deep** *Rescuers had to wade waist-deep in flood water.*

waft *verb*

ADV. **gently** *The night air wafted gently over them.* **| around, in, up** *A scent of honey wafted up from the hives.*

PREP. **across, down, from, into, over, through, up** *Spicy smells wafted through the air.*

wag *verb*

ADV. **furiously** *The dog raced ahead, its tail wagging furiously.*

wage *noun* **(**also**wages)**

ADJ. **decent, fair, good, high | inadequate, low, meagre, small** *He busked to supplement his meagre wages.* **| annual, hourly, regular, etc. | gross, pre-tax | after-tax, net | money | real** *If money wages remain constant and price levels rise, real wages fall.* **| basic, standard** *a basic wage of £100 a week plus tips* **| living** *workers fighting for a living wage* **| minimum | average**

VERB + WAGE **pay | earn** *She earns a good wage at the factory.* **| live on** *How can you live on such a low wage?* **| increase, keep up, push up, raise** *Full employment pushed up wages.* **| cut, force down, hold down, keep down | supplement**

WAGE + VERB **increase, rise | decrease, fall**

WAGE + NOUN **earner | labour, workers | claim** *The union submitted a wage claim for a 9% rise.* **| bargaining, negotiations | agreement, settlement | cut, reduction | controls, freeze, restraint** *The government promised greater tax cuts in return for continued wage restraints.* **| explosion, increase, inflation, rise | bill, costs | structure, system | differentials** *wage differentials between large and small firms* **| packet** *He got his first wage packet at fourteen years old.*

PHRASES **a cut/fall in wages, growth in wages, an increase/a rise in wages**

wagon *noun*

1 **vehicle pulled by animals**

ADJ. **covered, open | horse-drawn | hay, supply**

QUANT. **train** *a long train of supply wagons*

VERB + WAGON **drive | pull, draw**

WAGON + VERB **roll** *covered wagons rolling across the prairies*

WAGON + NOUN **train | wheel**

2 **open railway truck**

ADJ. **rail/railway | empty | full | coal, freight, goods**

VERB + WAGON **pull**

wail *noun*

ADJ. **loud | high, high-pitched | banshee | distant** *We could just hear the distant wail of a siren.*

VERB + WAIL **give, let out | hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *With a wail he threw himself on the bed and buried his face in the pillow.* **| ~ of** *She gave a wail of anguish.* > Note at SOUND

wail *verb*

ADV. **almost | helplessly**

VERB + WAIL **begin to | hear sb**

PREP. **for** *wailing for her dead husband* **| with** *She wailed with despair.*

PHRASES **weeping and wailing** *A crowd of women followed the coffin, weeping and wailing.*

waist *noun*

1 **part around the middle of the body**

ADJ. **narrow, neat, slender, slim, small, tiny | 34-inch, etc.**

WAIST + NOUN **height**

PREP. **about/around/round the/your ~** *She wore a broad belt about her waist.*

PHRASES **from the waist down/up** *A large towel covered him from the waist down.* **| stripped to the waist, waist-deep/-high** *Where we were standing, the lake was waist-deep.*

2 **part of a piece of clothing that goes round the waist**

ADJ. **high, low | belted, drawstring, elasticated | tight | 34-inch, etc.** *These jeans have a 32-inch waist.*

WAIST + NOUN **measurement, size | pocket**

waistline *noun*

1 **measurement of the body around the waist**

ADJ. **expanding**

VERB + WAISTLINE **watch** *Low-fat foods are ideal for people who are watching their waistline.*

2 **part of a piece of clothing**

ADJ. **high, low**

wait *noun*

ADJ. **endless, long** *We had a long wait to see the doctor.* **| short | agonizing, anxious, nerve-racking, nervous, worrying | frustrating | boring, tedious**

VERB + WAIT **face, have** *The accused faces an agonizing wait while the jury considers its verdict.*

PREP. **~ for** *a short wait for an ambulance*

PHRASES **be worth the wait** *The dress was so beautiful when it arrived that it was well worth the wait.*

wait *verb*

ADV. long *Have you been waiting long?* **| in vain** *They waited in vain for a response.* **| quietly, silently | patiently, politely** *He waited patiently while she got ready.* **| anxiously, impatiently, nervously, tensely, uneasily** *Their parents waited anxiously for news.* **| breathlessly, expectantly, with bated breath** *I waited with bated breath for what would happen next.* **| about, around**

VERB + WAIT have to, must *You'll have to wait until you're older.* **| can/could hardly, can't/couldn't** *I can hardly wait for my holiday! I can't wait to see their new baby.*

PREP. for *I'm waiting for a bus.* **| till/until** *We'll have to wait until it stops raining.*

PHRASES keep sb waiting *I'm sorry to have kept you waiting.* **| wait a long time** *She had to wait a long time for the right man to come along.* **| wait a minute/moment** *Hey! Wait a minute! I'll come with you!* **| wait and see** *We'll wait and see what the weather's like before we make a decision.*

waiter, waitress *noun*

ADJ. **head** *the head waiter in a large restaurant* **| hotel, restaurant | wine | passing** *She ordered a large vodka and tonic from a passing waiter.* **| hovering** *(literary, disapproving),* **obsequious** *He didn't fancy spending hours in the restaurant, surrounded by hovering waiters.*

VERB + WAITER, WAITRESS **beckon (to), call (over), signal (to), summon (over), wave over** *He casually waved over the waitress and settled the bill.*

WAITER, WAITRESS + VERB **arrive with sth, bring (sb) sth, serve (sb) sth** *A waitress arrived with the wine they had ordered.*

WAITER, WAITRESS + NOUN **service** *Lunch is a buffet meal, while dinner is waiter service.*

PHRASES **catch the waiter/waitress's eye** *I tried to catch the waiter's eye to ask for our bill.* > Note at JOB

wake, waken *verb*

1 **stop being asleep**

ADV. **early, late** *She had woken even earlier than usual.* **| suddenly | up** *I woke up quite late this morning.*

PREP. **from** *She had just woken up from a deep sleep.*

PHRASES **wake (up) to find sth** *Any minute now she'd wake up to find herself at home safe in bed.* **| wake (up) with a start** *She woke with a start from a terrible nightmare.*

2 **make sb stop sleeping**

ADV. **gently** *I woke him gently.* **| up**

VERB + WAKE, WAKEN **be careful not to** *Be careful not to wake the children!*

walk *noun*

1 trip on foot

ADJ. **brief, little, short** *We took a brief walk around the old quarter.* | **good, long, long-distance, marathon** *It's a good* (= fairly long) *walk to the town centre, so I usually cycle. We went for a long walk after breakfast. He's done several long-distance walks for charity.* | **three-minute, five minutes', etc.** *It's a five-minute walk from the lecture theatre to the restaurant. We live just a few minutes' walk from the station.* | **brisk, vigorous** *The doctor advised a brisk walk every day.* | **easy, gentle, leisurely** | **hard, strenuous** | **exhilarating, lovely, pleasant, pretty** | **twenty-minute, two-mile, etc.** | **after-dinner, afternoon, daily, evening, etc.** | **solitary** *She used to enjoy solitary walks along the cliffs.* | **romantic** | **guided** *We went on a guided walk of the city in the afternoon.* | **charity, sponsored** *She's doing a 200-mile sponsored walk in aid of cancer research.* | **circular** | **coastal, country, forest, hill, lakeside, nature, riverside, woodland** | **space, tightrope** *the anniversary of the first space walk*

VERB + WALK **do, go for, go on, have, take** *The book contains circular walks you can do in half a day. We'll go for a walk before lunch. We went on a ten-mile walk along the coast.* | **take sb/sth for** *She takes her dog for a walk every evening.* | **break** *They broke their walk at a pub by the river.* | **continue, resume**

WALK + VERB **take sb/sth** *The walk takes two hours. The walk takes you past a lot of interesting buildings.*

PREP. **on a/the ~** *He met her on one of his Sunday afternoon walks.* | **within (a) ~** *All amenities are within an easy walk of the hotel.* | **~ from, ~ to**

PHRASES **a walk around** *I had a little walk around to calm my nerves.*

2 style of walking

ADJ. **funny, silly** | **jaunty** | **mincing** | **loose-limbed** | **ungainly** | **fast** | **sedate, slow, stately**

VERB + WALK **do, have** *She did a silly walk to amuse her friends. He has a mincing walk, fast with short steps.*

3 a walk: speed of walking

VERB + WALK **slow to | move off at, set off at** *The horses set off at a walk.*

walk *verb*

ADV. **briskly, fast, quickly, swiftly | slowly | calmly, quietly** *I got up and walked calmly out into the early evening.* **| cautiously | barefoot** *She had no sandals and walked barefoot.* **| ahead, away, back, backwards, forward, in, on, out, together** *Jake was walking some way ahead.*

PREP. **along, down, into, out of, to, towards, up, etc.** *She walked cautiously up the drive towards the door.*

PHRASES **go walking** *For our holiday we went walking in the Lake District.*

wall *noun*

ADJ. **high, low | long, short | thick, thin | massive | back, front, side | bare, blank** *to stare at a blank wall* **| exterior, external, outer, outside | inner, inside, interior, internal | adjoining | dividing, partition, party | boundary, perimeter | retaining** *They built a retaining wall around the pond.* **| load-bearing** *If a load-bearing wall is weakened, the building could fall down.* **| pannelled | bathroom, kitchen, etc. | brick, masonry, stone, etc. | city, garden, harbour, sea**

VERB + WALL **build, erect, put up | demolish, destroy, pull down | climb (over), scale** *The burglars must have scaled the side wall.* **| jump down from, jump over | cover, line, paint, paper, plaster** *She covered her walls with pictures of film stars.*

WALL + VERB **stand | enclose sth, surround sth | face sth** *the wall facing the door*

WALL + NOUN **clock, light | cupboard, unit | covering, decoration, hanging, tile**

PREP. **against a/the ~** *She leant against the wall.* **| behind a/the ~** *Nobody can see behind the wall.* **| on a/the ~** *She hung the photos on the wall.* **| ~ along** *the wall along the seafront* **| ~ around/round** *high walls around the prison* **| ~ of** *(figurative) a solid wall of fog*

wallet *noun*

ADJ. **bulging, fat, stuffed** *He pulled a £10 note out of his fat wallet. a wallet stuffed with fifty-pound notes*

VERB + WALLET **get out, pull out, take out | put away**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *He carried a photo of his children in his wallet.*

wallpaper *noun*

ADJ. **faded, peeling | floral, flowery, patterned, striped | flock, textured**

QUANT. **roll** *six rolls of wallpaper*

VERB + WALLPAPER **hang | be covered/hung with | strip (off), take off**

WALLPAPER + NOUN **paste**

waltz *nou*n

ADJ. **slow | Viennese**

VERB + WALTZ **dance, do | play**

WALTZ + NOUN **rhythm, time**

wander *verb*

1 **move slowly around a place /go from place to place**

ADV. **slowly | aimlessly | disconsolately, restlessly | happily | at will, freely** *The cattle are allowed to wander freely.* **| just, simply** *Simply wandering is a pleasure in itself.* **| far, further (afield)** *One day she wandered further afield.* **| about, across, along, around/round, away, back, in, off, out, over** *He just wandered in one day and asked for a job.*

VERB + WANDER **be free to** *Visitors are free to wander through the gardens and woods.* **| allow sb/sth to, let sb/sth** *How could you let him wander off like that?*

PREP. **across, all over, along, among, around, into, out of, round, through, towards** *Don't go wandering all over the house! He wandered into a bar and ordered a drink.*

PHRASES **find sb wandering** *They found him wandering around aimlessly.*

2 **stop concentrating**

ADV. **a little**

VERB + WANDER **begin to** *His attention was beginning to wander.* **| allow sth to, let sth** *Lissa let her mind wander a little.*

PREP. **from, to** *My thoughts wandered from the exam questions to my interview the next day.*

wane *verb*

ADV. **a little, somewhat** *Her popularity was waning somewhat.* **| gradually, rapidly**

VERB + WANE **begin to** *Her initial enthusiasm was clearly beginning to wane.*

PHRASES **wax and wane** (= grow and then decrease) *Public interest in the issue has waxed and waned over the years.*

want *noun*

ADJ. **human**

VERB + WANT **meet, satisfy, see to** *a society that satisfied all human wants*

PREP. **for ~ of** *Refugees are dying for want of proper health care.* **| in ~** *Thousands of children are living in want.*

want *verb*

ADV. **badly, desperately, really | just, only, simply** *I just want you to be happy.* **| genuinely, truly** *If you truly want to help, just do as I say.* **| always** *Thanks for the present?it's just what I've always wanted.*

PHRASES **all you want** *All I want is the truth.* **| exactly/just what you want**

war *noun*

ADJ. **long, short | bloody | all-out, full-scale, total** *Six years of total war had left no citizen untouched.* **| limited | holy, just | civil, global, world | air, guerrilla | atomic, nuclear | cold | economic, trade | price | class**

VERB + WAR **be in, fight in** *My grandfather fought in two world wars.* **| fight, make, wage** *The two countries fought a short but bloody war. The Spartans were persuaded to make war on Athens. The terrorists were charged with waging war against the state.* **| win | lose | declare | go to** *The country went to war in 1914.* **| avert, prevent | be ravaged by**

WAR + VERB **approach, loom, threaten | begin, break out, come, erupt, start | escalate, spread** *talks to prevent the war from escalating* **| continue, drag on, go on, last, progress, rage (on)** *The war raged for nearly two years.* **| come to an end, end**

WAR + NOUN **years** *the shortage of food during the war years* **| hero, veteran | chief, leader | casualty, victim | damage | correspondent** *the war correspondent of a daily newspaper* **| artist, poet | zone | effort** *Every available resource went towards the war effort.* **| record** *Both candidates have distinguished war records.* **| wound | crime, criminal | graves, memorial | aims | damages, reparations | baby, bride, widow | booty | cry, dance | machine** *the Soviet war machine*

PREP. **at ~** *a country at war* **| between the ~s** (= between the First and Second World Wars), **in (a/the) ~** *killed in war He took part in the Vietnam War.* **| ~ against/ with** *the war against the French a war against drug abuse* **| ~ between** *war between Iran and Iraq* **| ~ on** *The US declared war on Japan.* **| ~ with** *a trade war with the United States*

PHRASES **the horrors of war** *The country had just emerged from the horrors of civil war.* **| in a state of war, in time/times of war** *In times of war, troops were billeted in the mill.* **| on a war footing** *The army had been placed on a war footing.* **| the brink of war** *The crisis took Europe to the brink of war.* **| the outbreak of war** *At the outbreak of war, most children were evacuated to the countryside.* **| a theatre of war** *These aircraft are designed to take troops and weapons to any theatre of war in the shortest time possible.* **| a war of attrition**

ward *noun*

ADJ. **open, public | private | hospital | maternity, surgical, etc.**

VERB + WARD **be admitted to** *He was admitted to the casualty ward.* **| be discharged from**

WARD + NOUN **nurse, sister, staff | round** *The doctor was doing her morning ward round.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She spent five days in the maternity ward.* **| on the ~** *How many midwives are on the ward?*

warden *noun*

ADJ. **chief, head | deputy | church, college, prison | park | game** *He is chief game warden of the Masai Mara game reserve in Kenya.* **| traffic | dog** > Note at JOB

wardrobe *noun*

1 **large cupboard for clothes**

ADJ. **built-in, fitted | double | walk-in**

VERB + WARDROBE **open | close**

WARDROBE + NOUN **door**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She hung the dress up in the wardrobe.*

2 **sb's collection of clothes**

ADJ. **new | extensive | autumn, spring, etc.**

VERB + WARDROBE **have | buy** *I want to buy a whole new summer wardrobe.*

ware *noun* **wares**

ADJ. **ceramic, metal, etc. | domestic, household**

VERB + WARE **sell | hawk, peddle, shout, show (off)** *street traders hawking their wares*

warehouse *noun*

ADJ. **30,000 sq ft, etc. | bonded** *The whisky was taken to bonded warehouses at Port Dundee.* **| distribution, retail, wholesale | furniture, goods, grain, whisky, etc. | abandoned, derelict, disused | dockside, riverside**

VERB + WAREHOUSE **burn down**

WAREHOUSE + VERB **burn down**

WAREHOUSE + NOUN **foreman, manager, staff, worker** *He's a warehouse foreman for a removals firm.*

warfare *noun*

ADJ. **open** *Rivalry between football fans developed into open warfare.* **| conventional, modern | biological, chemical, germ, nuclear | class, gang, internecine, tribal | guerrilla, siege, trench | aerial, air, naval, submarine | jungle, mountain | economic, ideological, psychological** *a subtle form of psychological warfare*

VERB + WARFARE **engage in**

PREP. **~ against** *warfare against other tribes* **| ~ between** *warfare between gangs*

warm *adj.*

1 at a fairly high temperature

VERBS **be, feel, look | get, grow** *How can we get warm? She felt her face grow warm at his remarks.* **| keep, stay** *She tries to keep warm by sitting right next to the fire. The bread should stay warm for at least half an hour.* **| keep sb/sth** *These will keep your feet warm.* **| serve sth** *Bake for 15 minutes and serve warm with Greek yogurt.*

ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, particularly, really, very | almost** *It was a mild day, almost warm.* **| just** *Add the soured cream and cook, stirring, until just warm.* **| faintly, pretty, quite, reasonably, relatively, slightly | enough, sufficiently** *Are you sure you'll be warm enough dressed like that?* **| beautifully, blissfully, comfortably, deliciously, pleasantly, wonderfully** *sliding further down into the blissfully warm bed* **| uncomfortably** *The room seemed uncomfortably warm.* **| surprisingly | unseasonably, unusually** *The night air was soft and unseasonably warm.*

PHRASES **nice (and) warm** *Come and have a nice warm drink by the fire. That jacket looks nice and warm.*

2 friendly

VERBS **be, sound | become**

ADV. **exceptionally, extremely, immensely, marvellously, really, very** *an immensely warm and friendly person* **| genuinely | surprisingly**

warm *verb*

ADV. **thoroughly | gently | gradually, slowly | rapidly, soon** *We soon warmed up in front of the fire.* **| suddenly** *His voice suddenly warmed.* **| through, up** *Return the bowl to the heat to warm through.*

warmth *noun*

1 **a fairly high temperature**

ADJ. **comfortable, delicious, enveloping, glowing, pleasant, seductive, welcome** *He moved towards the seductive warmth of the fire.* | **gentle** *the gentle warmth of the autumn sun* | **bodily, body** *This clothing maintains your body warmth.*

VERB + WARMTH **feel** *She could feel the warmth of the child's hand in her own.* | **bask in, enjoy, revel in** *We lay on the beach, basking in the warmth of the hot sun.* | **add** *(figurative) Autumn colours add warmth to a room.*

WARMTH + VERB **spread** *She sat by the fire and felt the warmth spread through her body.*

PREP. **for ~** *They found the children huddled together for warmth.* | **~ from** *warmth from the radiator*

2 **friendliness or kindness**

ADJ. **genuine, real** | **friendly** | **human, personal** *She seems to be a person without human warmth.*

VERB + WARMTH **exude, radiate, show** *a person who radiates warmth and kindness* | **be lacking in, lack**

warn *verb*

ADV. **firmly | clearly | bluntly** *The chancellor bluntly warned the Cabinet to axe public spending or face higher taxes.* **| sternly | softly** *'Don't,' he warned softly.* **| specifically** *We were specifically warned against buying the house.* **| duly** *Having been duly warned that I would get nowhere with my application, I went right ahead and applied anyway.* **| constantly, repeatedly** *My mother constantly warned me not to go into teaching.* **| publicly**

VERB + WARN **had better, have to, must, should** *I must warn you that some of these animals are extremely dangerous. I thought I should warn her about it.* **| try to** *I did try to warn you.* **| fail to** *She claimed doctors had failed to warn her of the risks involved.*

PREP. **about** *No one had warned us about the unbearable heat.* **| against** *We were warned against drinking the local water.* **| of** *The report warns of the dangers of smoking. They warned us of the risks involved.*

PHRASES **be warned** *You will get better?but be warned, it may be a long process.*

warning *noun*

ADJ. **awful, dire, grim, ominous, stark, stern, strong** *There were dire warnings about the dangers of watching too much TV.* **| urgent | adequate, advance, ample, due, early, fair, prior** *I need advance warning of how many people to cater for.* **| clear, direct | coded** *The explosion came 20 minutes after a coded warning to police.* **| initial | final** *The referee fave him a final warning.* **| formal, government, official | salutary, timely, useful** *The team's defeat is a salutary warning before the World Cup.* **| friendly | veiled** *Her words sounded like a veiled warning.* **| audible, visual** *There is an audible warning when a certain speed is exceeded.* **| verbal, written** *His employers have placed him on final written warning.* **| air-raid, bomb, fire, flood, gale, hazard, storm** *There are 39 severe flood warnings on 22 rivers across the country.* **| health, safety** *Every cigarette packet carries a health warning.*

VERB + WARNING **give (sb), issue** *The police have issued a warning about pickpockets.* **| shout (out), sound** *The sirens sound a warning when fighter planes are sighted. The strike sounded a warning to all employers in the industry.* **| reiterate, repeat | be, serve as** *Let this be a warning to you not to trespass on my land again! What happened to him should serve as a warning to all dishonest politicians.* **| get, receive | ignore | heed** *They failed to heed a warning about the dangerous currents in the river.*

WARNING + VERB **come** *The warning came just minutes before the bomb exploded.* **| sound** *On 2 April 1916 air-raid warnings sounded throughout Edinburgh.*

WARNING + NOUN **notice, sign** *Red marks on the skin may be a warning sign for this disease.* **| bell, device, light, signal, system**

PREP. **in ~** *The dog growled in warning as we approached.* **| without ~** *He left his wife without warning.* **| ~ about** *a warning about teaching children to swim* **| ~ against** *a warning against complacency* **| ~ of** *They sent us fair warning of their arrival.* **| ~ to** *The police issued a warning to all drug users in the city.*

PHRASES **a word of warning** *He gave us a word of warning about going out alone at night.*

warrant *noun*

ADJ. **arrest, death, search** *The king refused to sign the death warrant for his old friend.* **| royal**

VERB + WARRANT **authorize, grant, issue, serve, sign** *The commissioner has issued a warrant for her arrest. The police served a warrant on him.* **| get, obtain | execute** *Police who executed a search warrant found a substantial amount of stolen property on the premises.*

WARRANT + NOUN **card**

PHRASES **without a ~** *In certain circumstances, police may enter premises without a warrant.* **| ~ for**

warrant *verb*

ADV. **hardly** *The TV appearance was so brief that it hardly warranted comment.*

VERB + WARRANT **be important/serious/severe enough to** *They do not consider the case serious enough to warrant a government enquiry.*

warranty *noun*

ADJ. **general | specific** *We can not give a specific warranty for the work done on your property.* **| six-month, two-year, year's, etc.**

VERB + WARRANTY **give, provide | come with** *The computer comes with a year's warranty on all parts.*

WARRANTY + VERB **cover sth** *Corrosion is not covered by the warranty.* **| expire, run out**

WARRANTY + NOUN **period | claim**

PREP. **under ~** *Is your car still under warranty?* **| ~ against** *a warranty against storm damage* **| ~ on** *The warranty on my watch ran out just before it broke.*

PHRASES **breach of warranty** *He took legal action against the company for breach of warranty.*

warrior *noun*

ADJ. **formidable, great, mighty, noble | brave, valiant | famous, renowned**

QUANT. **band**

WARRIOR + VERB **fight**

warship *noun*

ADJ. **modern | surface | naval | nuclear**

QUANT. **fleet**

VERB + WARSHIP **build | command | lose** *Germany lost two warships during this attack.*

PREP. **aboard/on/on board a ~** *He is serving on a warship in the Pacific.*

wary *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | become, get, grow | remain | make sb** *The strange look in his eyes made me wary of accepting his offer.*

ADV. **decidedly, deeply, extremely, very | increasingly | a bit, a little, rather, slightly | instinctively | suddenly** *Paula frowned, suddenly wary.*

PREP. **about** *Be wary about these so-called special offers.* **| of** *You should be very wary of people offering cheap tickets.*

PHRASES **keep a wary eye on sb/sth** *(often figurative) The Venetians knew to keep a wary eye on Spanish imperial ambitions.*

wash *noun*

ADJ. **good | quick | car**

VERB + WASH **have** *He had a quick wash and shave.* **| do** *I'm doing a dark wash* (= washing all the dark clothes together). **| could do with, need** *That car could do with a good wash.*

PREP. **in the ~** (= being washed or waiting to be washed) *Your shirt's in the wash.*

wash *verb*

ADV. **carefully, properly, thoroughly | gently** *She gently washed and dressed the wound.* **| quickly**

PHRASES **freshly/newly washed** *the smell of freshly washed hair*

washing machine *noun*

ADJ. **automatic**

VERB + WASHING MACHINE **load | empty, unload | run** *How often do you run your washing machine?*

PREP. **in/into a/the ~**

washing *noun*

1 **cleaning sth with water**

ADJ. **frequent** *shampoo for frequent washing* **| hand** *I have quite a bit of hand washing to do.*

VERB + WASHING **do**

WASHING + NOUN **powder**

2 **clothes**

ADJ. **dirty**

QUANT. **line** *A line of washing fluttered in the breeze.* **| pile** *piles of dirty washing*

VERB + WASHING **hang out, put out** *Have you got any pegs so I can hang the washing out?*

WASHING + NOUN **line**

washing-up *noun* VERB + WASHING-UP **do | leave** *Leave the washing-up?we can do it in the morning.* WASHING-UP + NOUN **bowl | liquid**

wasp *nou*n

WASP + VERB **fly, crawl | sting sb | buzz**

WASP + NOUN **sting**

PHRASES **a wasp's nest**

wastage *noun*

ADJ. **excessive, high | natural** *Voluntary redundancies and natural wastage will cut staff numbers to the required level.* **| muscle** *Patients need exercise to prevent muscle wastage.*

VERB + WASTAGE **avoid, prevent | minimize | cut down on, reduce | increase | allow for** *Buy more paper than you need to allow for wastage.*

waste *noun*

1 missing an opportunity to do/use sth

ADJ. **absolute, complete, total, utter** *The whole thing has been a complete waste of time.* | **colossal, great, tremendous** | **awful, criminal, senseless, shocking, terrible** *a criminal waste of public money* | **needless, unnecessary, useless** | **tragic** *a tragic waste of human life* | **expensive** | **conspicuous**

VERB + WASTE **go to** *If nobody comes all this food will go to waste.* | **cause** | **avoid** *Try to avoid unnecessary waste.* | **cut down on, reduce** | **minimize**

PREP. **~ of** *a waste of energy/resources*

2 unwanted substances/things

ADJ. **dangerous, harmful, hazardous, poisonous, toxic** *a dump containing hazardous waste* | **non-toxic** | **high-level, intermediate-level, low-level** | **recyclable** | **agricultural, commercial, industrial** | **domestic, household, kitchen** *All household waste should be disposed of in strong garbage bags.* | **clinical, hospital, medical** | **nuclear, radioactive** | **chemical** | **plastic** | **organic** | **animal, human** | **garden, plant** | **municipal** | **liquid, solid** | **food, energy**

VERB + WASTE **produce** *Tonnes of waste are produced every year.* | **dispose of, dump, get rid of** *More people are dumping waste illegally.* | **clean up** *the highly expensive task of cleaning up toxic waste* | **burn, incinerate** *an incinerator for burning hospital waste* | **bury, store** | **process, treat** *facilities for processing radioactive waste* | **recycle, reprocess** | **deal with, handle, manage** *the best solutions for managing waste* | **cut down on, reduce** | **eliminate** | **export, import** *Industrialized countries continue to export their waste.*

WASTE + VERB **contaminate sth, pollute sth** *areas contaminated by industrial waste*

WASTE + NOUN **collection** | **burial, disposal, incineration** | **storage** | **processing, recycling, reprocessing, treatment** *a waste reprocessing plant* | **management** | **minimization, reduction** | **bin** | **dump, site, tip** *The river was used for years as an industrial waste dump.* | **outlet, pipe** | **imports** *a ban on waste imports*

3 **wastes: areas of ground not lived in or cultivated**

ADJ. **frozen, icy** *the frozen wastes of Antarctica*

waste *verb*

ADV. **(not) entirely, (not) totally** *In the end her efforts were not entirely wasted.* **| just, simply** *You're just wasting your breath. She never listens.* **| largely**

VERB + WASTE **can't afford to, not want to** *He didn't want to waste valuable time in idle gossip.* **| be/seem a shame to** *It seems a shame to waste this good food.* **| not be going to** *I'm not going to waste any more time on the problem.*

PREP. **on** *Don't waste your money on a hotel room.*

PHRASES **no time to waste** *Hurry up?there's no time to waste!*

watch *noun*

1 **instrument for telling the time**

ADJ. **digital | fob, pocket, wrist** (also **wristwatch**) **| sports**

VERB + WATCH **check, consult, glance at, look at | put back/forward** *We put our watches forward eight hours before landing in Tokyo.* **| set** *Don't forget to set your watch to local time.* **| wind** *Quartz watches don't need winding.* **| have on, wear | put on | take off**

WATCH + VERB **go** *My watch is ten years old and it's still going.* **| stop** *Sorry I'm late? my watch has stopped.* **| be slow, lose sth** *My watch loses a minute each day.* **| be fast, gain sth | say sth** *My watch says three o'clock.*

WATCH + NOUN **face | band** (also **watchband**), **strap**

2 **guard**

ADJ. **careful, close** *I kept a close watch on my bag as I sat on the train.* **| constant, round-the-clock | night**

VERB + WATCH **keep, stand** *Two soldiers were ordered to keep watch for enemy aircraft.* **| put** *The garrison commander had put an extra watch on the prisoners.*

WATCH + NOUN **committee | tower**

PREP. **on ~** *Some of the crew were sleeping, while others were on watch.* **| on the ~ for** *Cats are constantly on the watch for mice or other small mammals.*

watch *verb*

ADV. **carefully, closely, intently** *She watched the man closely to see where he would go.* **| idly | impassively, numbly | anxiously, helplessly, warily** *She watched helplessly as her husband was dragged away.* **| open-mouthed | covertly | in silence, silently | just** *I love just watching the world go by.*

VERB + WATCH **could only** *They could only watch in silence as their possessions were taken away.* **| continue to | pause to, stop to** *They stopped to watch the procession go by.* **| love to | let sb** *He let me watch while he assembled the model.* **| make sb** *The women were made to watch while their children were slaughtered.*

PREP. **for** *We watched for any sign of change in the weather.* **| from** *They watched from an upstairs window.* **| in** *She watched in astonishment as he smashed the machine to pieces.* **| with** *He watched with great interest how she coaxed the animals towards her.*

PHRASES **sit/stand and watch** *She stood and watched them walk off down the road.*

watchdog *noun*

ADJ. **consumer | financial, health, industry, pollution, safety | government, independent, official**

VERB + WATCHDOG **act as, be**

WATCHDOG + NOUN **body, group, organization | role**

PREP. **~ for** *a consumer watchdog for transport* **| ~ on** *the government's official watchdog on nature conservation* **| ~ over** *The committee acts as an independent watchdog over government spending.*

water *noun*

1 **liquid**

ADJ. **boiling, cold, hot, ice-cold, lukewarm, tepid, warm | clean, clear, crystal-clear, pure | dirty | fresh | brackish, salt** *These fish will quickly die in salt water.* **| salty** *Abscesses should be bathed in warm salty water.* **| salted** *Cook the pasta in plenty of boiling salted water.* **| hard, soft | flowing, running** *the fast-flowing water of the river All the rooms have hot and cold running water.* **| river, sea | surface** *The surface water made the road treacherous for drivers.* **| drinking | tap** *Avoid drinking the tap water when you first arrive in the country.* **| bottled, mineral, spring | waste | scarce**

QUANT. **drop**

VERB + WATER **drink | pour | slosh, spill, splash, spray, sprinkle, spurt, squirt** *Don't slosh too much water on the floor when you're having a bath. The burst pipe was spurting water everywhere.* **| filter, purify | contaminate, pollute | turn off/on** *They turned the water off for a few hours to do some work on the pipes.*

WATER + VERB **flow, pour, run | gush, spurt** *Brown water gushed out of the rusty old tap.* **| drip, trickle** *There was water dripping from a hole in the ceiling.* **| lap, slosh, spill, splash, spray, squirt** *Water had got into the boat and was sloshing about under our feet.* **| boil, freeze**

WATER + NOUN **vapour | temperature | pressure | supply | resources | quality | purification, treatment | filter | pollution | shortage | level | table** *Building can be difficult where the water table lies close to the surface.* **| power | company, industry**

PHRASES **water-repellent** *water-repellent leather* **| water-resistant** *a water-resistant watch*

2 **mass of water**

ADJ. **deep, shallow | clear | muddy, murky, stagnant | calm, placid, still** *the calm waters of Lake Como* **| choppy, rough, stormy | dangerous, safe** *At last the boat reached safer waters.* **| flood** *The flood water had caused tremendous damage.* **| rising** *They climbed a tree to escape the rising water.* **| bathing**

WATER + NOUN **sports**

PREP. **by ~** *Many goods were transported by water in the last century.* **| in the ~** *I saw something large floating in the water.* **| on the ~** *The swan landed gracefully on the water.* **| through the ~** *The boat cut effortlessly through the water.* **| under the ~** *An abandoned village lies under the water of the reservoir.*

PHRASES **the water's edge** *She crouched at the water's edge to wash her hands.*

3 **waters: sea**

ADJ. **territorial | coastal | tropical | northern, southern | Antarctic, Arctic | Atlantic, Pacific, etc. | home, foreign, international | Japanese, etc. | uncharted** *The ship had drifted into uncharted waters.*

PREP. **in/into … ~** *The submarine had strayed into Russian waters.*

waterfall *noun*

ADJ. **great, high | impressive, magnificent, spectacular | small**

WATERFALL + VERB **cascade, pour down, tumble** *She watched the magnificent waterfall cascade down the mountainside.*

watershed *noun*

ADJ. **important, major, significant | cultural, historical, political**

VERB + WATERSHED **be, mark, represent | reach**

WATERSHED + VERB **divide sth** *Darwin's theory of evolution was a watershed dividing the old way of thinking from the new.*

PREP. **~ between** *The 19th century marked a watershed between the country's agricultural past and its industrial future.* **| ~ for** *The granting of the vote represented a watershed for the rights of women.* **| ~ in** *With the strike, a historical watershed in the development of the trade union movement was reached.*

wave *noun*

1 on water

ADJ. **big, enormous, giant, great, huge, mountainous | small, tiny | white-capped, white-crested, white-topped | breaking | tidal** *Several villages have been destroyed by a huge tidal wave.*

VERB + WAVE **ride** *Surfers flocked to the beach to ride the waves.*

WAVE + VERB **rise | break, fall** *We watched the waves breaking on the shore.* **| lap** *the gentle sound of waves lapping the sand* **| crash, roar, smash** *I could hear the waves crash against the rocks.*

WAVE + NOUN **energy, power**

PREP. **in the ~s** *children playing in the waves* **| on the ~s** *There were seagulls bobbing on the waves.*

PHRASES **the crash/crashing/lap/lapping of the waves, the crest of a wave** *(often figurative) She is on the crest of a wave at the moment following her Olympic success.*

2 movement of energy

ADJ. **electromagnetic, light, radio, seismic, shock, sound**

VERB + WAVE **emit, generate | deflect**

WAVE + VERB **bounce off sth, travel** *Sound waves bounce off objects in their path.*

3 increase/spread

ADJ. **big, enormous, huge, massive | fresh, new, next, recent | first, second, etc.** *the first wave of immigration in the 1950s* **| crime**

VERB + WAVE **send** *Hearing the tune again sent waves of longing through her.*

WAVE + VERB **sweep (over) sth, wash over/through sb/sth** *With the fall of the Bastille in 1789, a wave of euphoria swept over Europe. A wave of relief washed over him as he saw that the children were safe.*

PREP. **~ of** *a big wave of refugees*

4 **hand movement**

ADJ. **quick | cheery, friendly | farewell, parting**

VERB + WAVE **give (sb), return** *I returned his wave and started to walk towards him.*

PREP. **with a ~ | ~ of** *He dismissed her thanks with a quick wave of the hand.*

wave *verb*

ADV. **gently** *reeds waving gently in the breeze* **| vigorously | cheerfully, cheerily, happily | frantically, wildly** *They stood by the side of the road and waved frantically.* **| vaguely** *He waved a hand vaguely in the air.* **| dismissively | about/ around, aside, back, on, through** *She waved cheerfully and he waved back. The guards waved us on.*

VERB + WAVE **turn and/to** *He turned to wave to his mother.*

PREP. **at** *We waved at the people on the shore.* **| to** *They waved to us as we passed. She waved him to a seat.*

PHRASES **wave (sb) goodbye** *people waving goodbye to their friends and relatives*

wavelength *noun*

ADJ. **long, medium, short | infrared, ultraviolet | visible | acoustic, radio**

VERB + WAVELENGTH **tune in to**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *Radio One has broadcast on this wavelength for years.*

way *noun*

1 **method/style**

ADJ. **convenient, easy, effective, efficient, good, ideal, practical, quick, useful** *The best way to open it is with pliers.* | **appropriate, proper, right | wrong | normal | traditional | obvious | important** *The most important way to stop accidental drownings is by education.* | **subtle** *There is no subtle way to tell someone that you no longer want them.* | **possible** *They've explored every possible way of dealing with the problem.* | **alternative, different | similar | new | old | funny, mysterious, odd, strange** *God works in mysterious ways.* | **hard** *He learned about the dangers of drugs the hard way.* | **friendly | winning** *The team got back to their winning ways with a 2?1 victory.*

QUANT. **number** *There are a number of ways to overcome this problem.*

VERB + WAY **have** *Fate has a way of changing the best of plans.* | **get into, get out of** *The women had got into the way of going up on the deck every evening.* | **explore, look at** *to look at ways of improving language teaching* | **develop, devise, find | change, mend** *Your father is unlikely to change his ways now.* | **be set in** *Grandma is so set in her ways.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Can I help you in any way?*

PHRASES **in a big way** *He then started spending money in a big way.* | **in every way** *They're different in every way.* | **in more ways than one** *They're alike in more ways than one.* | **in its/your own way** *He was attractive in his own way.* | **a kind/ sort of way** *He was a handsome man in a sinister sort of way.* | **(in) one way or another** *Most people are creative in one way or another.* | **a way of life** *the beliefs and practices of the Hindu way of life* | **ways and means** *Newspapers have ways and means of getting hold of secret information.*

2 **route/road**

ADJ. **best, quickest, right, shortest | wrong | own, separate** *(figurative) He's always gone his own way when it comes to design.* | **covered** *We walked along the covered way to the science building.*

VERB + WAY **go** *I'm going your way, so we can walk together.*

(figurative) When we finished school, we all went our separate ways. **| go out of** *(figurative) She went out of her way to help them.* | keep/stay out of *(figurative) Let's keep out of her way while she's in such a bad mood.* **| bar, block, get in, stand in** *A fallen tree blocked the way.*

(figurative) He wanted to go to university and would let nothing stand in his way. | clear, pave, prepare, smooth *(all figurative) The withdrawal of troops should clear the way for a peace settlement.* **| give, make** (= allow sb/sth to go first or take your place) *Give way to traffic already on the roundabout. Make way for the Lord Mayor! Tropical forest is felled to make way for grassland.*

(figurative) The storm gave way to bright sunshine. **| edge, feel, inch, make, push, thread, weave, wend, wind, work** *He edged his way along the wall. The river wound its way through the valley.* **| cut, elbow, fight, force, hack, pick, shoulder** *We picked our way carefully over the jagged rocks.*

(figurative) She fought her way up to the top of the company. **| bluff, talk, trick** *(figurative) She bluffed her way through the exam.* **| lose** *She lost her way in the fog.*

(figurative) This project seems to have lost its way. **| find** *He couldn't find a way through the bracken.*

(figurative) We will eventually find a way out of the crisis. **| ask (sb)** *She asked him the way to the station.* **| tell sb | know** *Do you know the way?* | come *(figurative) Have any interesting articles come your way recently?*

PREP. **along the ~** *We saw a dreadful accident along the way.* **| in the/your ~** *There were several rocks in the way.* **| out of the/your ~** *Could you please get those boxes out of my way?* **| on the/your ~** *We stopped for a snack on the way here.* **| out of the/your ~** *The supermarket is a bit out of my way.* **| ~ across** *The way across the fields is longer but pleasanter.* **| ~ from, ~ out of** *Can you tell me the way out of here?* **| ~ through** *The way through the woods is quicker.* **| ~ to** *the easiest way from my house to yours*

PHRASES **take the easy way out** *He took the easy way out and paid someone to write the article for him.* **| the way back/down/forward/here/home/in/out/over/there/up** *We stopped for a drink on the way home.*

3 **direction/position**

ADJ. **both** *Look both ways before crossing the road.* **| right | wrong** *They've gone the* *wrong way.*

VERB + WAY **go** *Which way did she go?* **| lead, point, show** *He showed us the way.* **| walk** *Walk this way, please.* **| look** *He looked my way, but didn't seem to recognize me.*

PHRASES **the … way round/up** *Try it the other way round. Which way up does this box go?*

4 **distance in space/time**

ADJ. **long | little, short**

VERB + WAY **come, go** *We had to go a long way before we found a telephone box. (figurative) The study of genes has come a long way in recent years.*

PREP. **~ from, ~ to** *It's quite a way from my house to the shops.*

PHRASES **all the way** *This bus doesn't go all the way so you'll have to change.* **| quite a/some way, a … way ahead/away/off** *Your birthday is still some way off.*

weak *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, go | remain | leave sb, make sb** *When the spasm passed, it left him weak and sweating.*

ADV. **decidedly, extremely, fundamentally, particularly, very | a bit, comparatively, fairly, pretty, quite, rather, relatively | curiously** *He complained of feeling curiously weak and faint.* **| surprisingly | dangerously | lamentably | suddenly** *Her legs felt suddenly weak.* **| inherently** *The judge decided the evidence was inherently weak and inconsistent.* **| economically, mentally, militarily, physically, politically**

PREP. **at** *She's rather weak at maths.* **| from** *She was weak from shock.* **| in** *He's weak in English.* **| on** *The essay was a bit weak on detail.* **| with** *He was weak with hunger.*

PHRASES **weak at the knees** *His sudden smile made her go weak at the knees.*

weaken *verb*

ADV. **considerably, greatly, seriously, severely, significantly, substantially | fatally** *The regime was fatally weakened by the unrest and violence.* **| further | slightly, somewhat | gradually, progressively** *Central authority has been progressively weakened since the outbreak of the civil war.* **| permanently**

VERB + WEAKEN **begin to | serve to** *The division of Germany had served to weaken the party.* **| tend to | be designed to** *an unusual move designed to weaken the rebels*

weakness *noun*

1 lack of strength

ADJ. **big, fundamental, great, major, serious, significant | small | physical | structural | personal | muscular | political | apparent, perceived** *exploiting apparent weaknesses in the system* **| inherent | human**

VERB + WEAKNESS **have, suffer from | cause, create | exploit | assess, identify | highlight, point out, reveal | minimize, overcome**

WEAKNESS + VERB **be, lie** *The greatest weakness of the scheme lies in its lack of government support.*

PREP. **~ in** *Service conditions soon revealed the inherent weaknesses in the vehicle's design.*

PHRASES **a moment of weakness** *In a moment of weakness I let him drive my car.* **| a sign of weakness** *He saw compromise as a sign of weakness.* **| strengths and weaknesses** *The appraisal system seeks to assess employees' strengths and weaknesses.*

2 liking for sth/sb

ADJ. **real**

VERB + WEAKNESS **have** *I've got a real weakness for chocolate.* **| develop | overcome**

PREP. **~ for** *He worries a lot about his weight, but can't overcome his weakness for fatty foods.*

wealth *noun*

1 **money, property, etc.**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, untold, vast | growing, increasing | economic, financial, material, mineral, natural** *The country's strong economy was built on its mineral wealth. The region possesses a vast natural wealth, particularly of timber.* **| national, personal, private**

VERB + WEALTH **have, possess | accumulate, acquire, inherit | lose** *He lost his wealth through poor investment.* **| create**

PHRASES **a distribution/redistribution of wealth** *a redistribution of wealth through taxation*

2 **a wealth of: a lot of**

ADJ. **enormous, whole**

VERB + WEALTH **have** *Switzerland has an enormous wealth of beautiful old buildings.*

PREP. **of … ~** *She is a woman of untold wealth.*

wealthy *adj.*

VERBS **be, look | become, grow**

ADV. **enormously, exceedingly, exceptionally, extremely, fabulously, immensely, incredibly, seriously** *(informal)*, **very** *He is now fabulously wealthy.* **| comparatively, fairly, quite, reasonably, relatively**

wean *verb*

ADV. **gradually**

VERB + WEAN **attempt to, try to**

PREP. **(away) from** *trying to wean her away from gambling* **| off** *They have gradually weaned him off the drugs.* **| onto** *weaning a baby onto solid food*

weapon *noun*

ADJ. **deadly, lethal, potent, powerful** *He was charged with assault with a deadly weapon.* **| effective, useful | heavy, light** *The assault forces used heavy weapons, including anti-tank rockets and mortars.* **| automatic | atomic, biological, chemical, nuclear | offensive, strategic, tactical** *She pleaded guilty to carrying an offensive weapon. a ban on the use of tactical nuclear weapons* **| murder | ultimate** *(often figurative) The workers' ultimate weapon was the strike.* **| secret** *(often figurative) The team's secret weapon was their new young defender.*

VERB + WEAPON **be armed with, carry, have | deploy, fire, use | use sth as** *(often figurative) She used humour and wit as weapons against her enemies.* **| aim, point**

WEAPON + NOUN **system | technology** *the illegal transfer of weapons technology to hostile countries*

PREP. **~ against** *(often figurative) This relaxation technique can serve as an effective weapon against stress.*

wear *noun*

1 **use as clothing**

ADJ. **everyday, weekend | summer, winter**

PREP. **in ~** *Silk shirts always feel soft and light in wear.* | **with ~** *New shoes usually get more comfortable with wear.*

PHRASES **years of wear** *This is a quality garment which should give years of wear.*

2 **clothes**

ADJ. **day, evening | designer, fashion | casual, leisure, outdoor | bridal, maternity | children's, men's, women's**

3 **long use**

ADJ. **hard, heavy**

VERB + WEAR **withstand** *This flooring can withstand years of hard wear.*

PREP. **… with ~** *The stairs had become slippery with wear.*

PHRASES **centuries, years, etc. of wear** *The cathedral steps were polished smooth by centuries of wear.*

4 **damage caused by long use**

ADJ. **excessive | engine, tyre, etc.**

VERB + WEAR **show** *The tyres were beginning to show wear.* | **cause | minimize, reduce**

WEAR + NOUN **pattern** *the analysis of wear patterns on prehistoric stone tools* | **guarantee** *The flooring comes with a 20-year wear guarantee.*

PREP. **~ on** *This new oil reduces wear on the engine.*

PHRASES **signs of wear, wear and tear**

wear *verb*

1 have a piece of clothing on

ADV. **proudly** *proudly wearing their uniforms*

VERB + WEAR **tend to** *I tend to wear a jacket to work.* **| refuse to** *She refused to wear prison clothes.* **| forbid sb to | be entitled to** *He is entitled to wear the regimental tie.*

2 last for a long time

ADV. **badly, well** *Those curtains have worn very well.*

weariness *noun*

ADJ. **great | sheer, utter | war**

VERB + WEARINESS **succumb to** *She succumbed to weariness and went to bed.*

WEARINESS + VERB **overtake sb, overwhelm sb**

PREP. **… with ~** *I had slept badly and felt numb with weariness.* **| in ~** *His eyes were half closing in weariness.* **| ~ in** *He detected a note of weariness in her voice.*

weary *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem, sound | become, grow** *I've grown rather weary of all your excuses.*

ADV. **very | almost** *His voice sounded almost weary.* **| a bit, a little, rather** *She looks a little weary.*

PREP. **of** *The people are weary of war.*

weather *noun*

ADJ. **beautiful, excellent, fair, fine, glorious, good, ideal, lovely,** perfect, superb | adverse, **appalling, atrocious, awful, bad, dismal, dreadful, foul, gloomy, grim, inclement, inhospitable, lousy, miserable, nasty, rotten, rough, terrible, vile, wretched | hot, humid, muggy, sultry, warm | mild | bright, clear, sunny | calm | dry | reliable, settled | changeable, fickle, uncertain, unpredictable, unsettled | extreme, fierce, harsh, severe, violent, wild | bitter, cold, freezing, frosty, icy, wintry | cool | cloudy, grey | damp, rainy, wet | foggy | blustery, stormy, windy | unseasonable/ unseasonal, unseasonably/unseasonally …** *a spell of unseasonally wet weather.*

QUANT. **spell**

VERB + WEATHER **brave** *Deciding to brave the weather, he grabbed his umbrella and went out.*

WEATHER + VERB **clear (up), improve, let up, warm up** *We'll go just as soon as this weather lets up.* **| hold out, keep up** *If the weather holds out we could go swimming later.* **| threaten** *Bad weather threatened.* **| break, deteriorate, worsen** *It was warm and sunny until the weekend, but then the weather broke.* **| become sth, get sth, turn sth** *Next day the weather turned cold.* **| remain sth, stay sth | close in, set in** *The weather closed in and the climbers had to take shelter. I wanted to mend the roof before the cold weather set in.* **| allow, permit** *I sat outside as often as the weather allowed. We're having a barbecue next Saturday, weather permitting.* (You cannot say 'weather allowing'.) **| prevent sth** *Stormy weather prevented any play in today's tennis.* **| change**

WEATHER + NOUN **conditions** *The plane crashed into the sea in adverse weather conditions.* **| patterns, system** *the effects of global warming on the world's weather patterns The Atlantic weather systems had been kind.* **| forecast, report | data, records | satellite, station | chart, map**

PHRASES **a change in the weather** *We hadn't bargained for such a dramatic change in the weather.* **| in all weathers** *The lifeboat crews go out in all weathers.* **| the vagaries of the weather** *She packed all kinds of clothes to cope with the vagaries of the English weather.* **| whatever the weather** *He swims in the sea every day, whatever the weather.*

weather *verb*

1 **pass safely through sth**

ADV. **successfully, well** *Their company had weathered the recession well.*

VERB + WEATHER **manage to** *(figurative) The company has managed to weather the storm.*

2 **change in appearance because of the sun/air/wind**

ADV. **badly** *Some of the stone has weathered quite badly.*

weave *verb*

ADV. **specially** *The carpet was specially woven to commemorate the 1,000th anniversary of the cathedral's foundation.* **| skilfully** *(often figurative) Hall skilfully weaves the historical research into a gripping narrative.* **| inextricably, intricately** *(both figurative) The whisky is inextricably woven into Scotland's history, customs and culture.* **| together** *weaving the threads together*

PREP. **from** *a basket woven from strips of willow* **| into** *A pattern is woven into the fabric.*

web *noun*

1 **that a spider makes**

ADJ. **spider/spider's**

VERB + WEB **build, make, spin, weave**

2 **complicated series/network of sth**

ADJ. **complex, complicated, intricate, tangled**

VERB + WEB **create, form, weave** *The mass media forms a web of communications.* **| be drawn into** *More and more people were drawn into his web of deceit.*

PHRASES **a web of deceit/deception, a web of intrigue, a web of relationships**
3 the Web on the Internet

VERB + WEB **access | browse, surf**

WEB + NOUN **page | browser, server | resource, service | network, ring | design, development | publishing | designer, developer, editor, host, master** (also **webmaster**), **user | directory, guide, index | access | tool**

PREP. **on the ~** *I found this survey on the Web.* > Special page at COMPUTER

website *noun*

ADJ. **Internet | official, unofficial** *the official website of Liverpool FC* **| comedy, commercial, company, education/educational, golf, news, personal, travel, etc.**

VERB + WEBSITE **look for, search for | access, browse, check out, log into/onto, look at, visit | search** *I was searching this history website for something about Alexander the Great.* **| bookmark | have | build, create, design, develop, make, set up** *We show you how to make your own website in ten simple steps.* **| launch | upload | host, maintain, run, update**

WEBSITE + VERB **be/go down** *There were so many visitors to the website that it went down.*

WEBSITE + NOUN **address, URL | designer**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *You can find details of all our products on our website.*

PHRASES **a link to a website** *This page includes lots of links to other websites you may find interesting.* > Special page at COMPUTER

wedding *noun*

ADJ. **church, registry office | royal | white**

VERB + WEDDING **attend, come to, go to | arrange | invite sb to | conduct** *The wedding will be conducted by the local vicar.*

WEDDING + VERB **take place** *The royal wedding will take place in June.*

WEDDING + NOUN **day, night | invitation | plans, preparations | date** *We haven't set a wedding date yet.* **| dress, gown | clothes, outfit, suit | band, ring** *She had a plain wedding band on her third finger.* **| finger** *a ring on her wedding finger* **| breakfast, feast | ceremony, service | vows | procession | party, reception | celebrations | speech | cake | gift, present | list** *We were choosing what present to buy from the wedding list they'd sent.* **| group, guests, party | album, photographs, video | anniversary | bells** *(figurative) After going out with her boyfriend for a year, she started talking about wedding bells.*

PREP. **at a/the ~** *I met her at my brother's wedding.*

wedge *verb*

ADV. **firmly, tightly**

PREP. **against, behind, between, into, under** *She wedged a chair firmly under the door handle.*

PHRASES **wedge sth in place/position, wedge sth open/shut** *Someone had wedged the door open with a brick.*

Wednesday *nou*n > Note at DAY

wee *noun*

VERB + WEE **do, have, take | be bursting for, need, want** *Mummy, I need a wee.* **| go for** *I'm going for a wee.*

weed *noun*

ADJ. **annual, perennial | aquatic, pond, water**

VERB + WEED **kill | clear, pull up, remove | control, keep down, keep under control** *Routine maintenance of the garden consists of keeping weeds under control.*

VERB + WEED **grow, spread | push up, spring up** *There were weeds pushing up through the gravel.*

WEED + NOUN **control | killer** (also **weedkiller**) **| growth | seed, seedling**

week *noun*

ADJ. **last, past | previous | coming, following, next | consecutive, successive** *They won 1?0 for the fourth consecutive week.* **| entire, full, whole** *It's the first time for ages I've done a full week's work.* **| working | busy, hard | quiet** *It's been a very quiet week for me.* **| 3-day, 40-hour, etc.** *He earns enough money to work a four-day week.*

VERB + WEEK **spend** *We spent two weeks in France last summer.* **| take**

WEEK + VERB **elapse, go by, pass** *The week passed very slowly.*

PREP. **by the ~** *They're paid by the week.* **| during/in the ~** *I go out most weekends, but rarely during the week.* **| for a ~** *I haven't seen him for weeks.* **| in a ~** *We'll be back in a week.* **| in ~s** *It hasn't rained in weeks.* **| over/under a ~** *It's over a week since she rang me.* **| per ~** *How much do you earn per week?* **| within a/the ~** *I'll have the report finished within the next couple of weeks.*

PHRASES **a day of the week** *Which day of the week was it?*

weekend *noun*

ADJ. **long** *I took Friday off, and spent a long weekend visiting friends.* **| wet** *It will be a wet weekend for much of England and Wales.*

VERB + WEEKEND **spend**

WEEKEND + NOUN **break, trip, visit | home, retreat**

PREP. **at the ~** *What are you doing at the weekend?* **| at ~s** *What do you usually do at weekends?* **| over the ~** *The office is closed over the weekend.*

PHRASES **a weekend away/off**

weep *verb*

ADV. **copiously | loudly | quietly, silently | openly, unashamedly** *The people wept openly when his death was announced.* **| bitterly | inconsolably, uncontrollably** *His grandmother was weeping uncontrollably.* **| almost | a little**

VERB + WEEP **begin to, start to | want to | make sb**

PREP. **at** *He wanted to weep at the unfairness of it all.* **| for** *I felt I could have wept for joy. weeping for someone who has died* **| over** *We had wept over the death of our parents.* **| with** *She almost wept with happiness.*

PHRASES **break down and weep** *Several of the soldiers broke down and wept.* **| weep and wail** *The mourners followed the funeral procession, weeping and wailing.* **| weep buckets** *(informal)* (= weep a lot)

weigh *verb*

1 **consider sth carefully**

ADV. **carefully | up** *The jury weighed up the evidence carefully.*

PREP. **against** *We weighed the cost of advertising against the likely gains from increased business.*

2 **be considered important**

ADV. **heavily, strongly**

PREP. **against** *His untidy appearance weighed against him.* **| in favour of** *This fact weighed heavily in her favour.* **| with** *His evidence weighed strongly with the judge.*

weight *noun*

1 **amount sth weighs**

ADJ. **considerable, enormous, great, heavy, immense | light | gross, net | average, mean | sheer** *(figurative) The sheer weight of visitors is destroying this tourist attraction.*

VERB + WEIGHT **bear, carry, support** *The arch bears the weight of the bridge above.* **| bend/buckle/collapse/crack/sag/shift/sink beneath/under, give way beneath/under** *Many buildings collapsed under the weight of rain-soaked ash and mud. (figurative) He was buckling under the weight of his responsibilities.* **| crush sb beneath/under | creak/groan beneath/under** *She tried to be quiet, but the stairs creaked under her weight.* **| stagger/strain beneath/under** *The boy was staggering beneath the weight of a pile of boxes.*

PREP. **in ~** *It is about 76 kilos in weight.*

2 **weight of sb's body**

ADJ. **low | ideal, right | excess, surplus | target** *I should soon be down to my target weight of 70 kilos.* **| body | birth** *babies with a low birth weight*

VERB + WEIGHT **watch** *I won't have any cake?I have to watch my weight.* **| gain, put on | lose, reduce, shed** *He's lost a lot of weight.* **| keep down | bear, carry, hold, support, stand, take** *I was worried that the branch wouldn't take my weight.* **| put, rest** *The doctor told me not to put my weight on this ankle for a month.* **| shift, transfer** *He nervously shifted his weight from foot to foot.* **| distribute** *Stand with your legs apart and your weight evenly distributed.* **| hurl, throw** *He threw his weight at the door and it burst open.*

WEIGHT + VERB **go up, increase | go down, decrease, drop, fall, plummet, plunge | fluctuate** *People's body weight can fluctuate during the day.*

WEIGHT + NOUN **gain, loss | control | problem**

3 **piece of metal**

ADJ. **heavy, large | light**

VERB + WEIGHT **lift** *She did circuit training and lifted weights to build her fitness.*

WEIGHT + NOUN **lifting, training**

PHRASES **weights and measures**

4 **heavy object**

ADJ. **heavy | dead** *With difficulty she managed to pull his dead weight onto the bed.* **| leaden** (*figurative*) *A leaden weight lay on her heart as she waved him goodbye.*

VERB + WEIGHT **lift** *Heavy weights should be lifted with a straight back.*

5 **importance/influence of sth**

ADJ. **due, sufficient** *Environmental considerations were given due weight in making the decision.* **| insufficient | considerable | sheer** *How can you ignore the sheer weight of medical opinion?* **| economic, financial, intellectual, political** *America's economic weight*

VERB + WEIGHT **attach, give, place** *They attach too much weight to academic achievement.* **| carry** *Her opinion seemed to carry little weight in the company.* **| add, lend** *The new evidence added considerable weight to the prosecution's case. Sir Leon lent his weight to the Tory campaign yesterday.*

PHRASES **put/throw your weight behind sth, weight of numbers** *The rebels were defeated by sheer weight of numbers.*

weighted *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem**

ADV. **equally** *The exam consists of six equally weighted questions.* **| heavily | unfairly**

PREP. **against** *This new legislation is unfairly weighted against the small farmer.* **| in favour of** *The course is heavily weighted in favour of engineering.* **| towards** *measures that are weighted towards small investors*

weird *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, seem, sound** *I started to feel quite weird.*

ADV. **really, very | a bit, a little, pretty, quite, rather** *It all sounds a bit weird to me.*

PHRASES **weird and wonderful** *Some of their clothes were really weird and wonderful.*

welcome *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel | make sb** *They made us very welcome in their home.*

ADV. **doubly, especially, extremely, highly, more than, most, particularly, very** *The 1% rate cut is highly welcome. You would be a most welcome guest.* **| perfectly, quite** *You are perfectly welcome to stay here: I can't offer five-star accommodation, that's all.* **| not at all, not entirely** *He made it plain that Holman's interest in his business affairs was not at all welcome.* **| always** *Visitors are always welcome.*

PREP. **to** *New members are welcome to the club.*

welcome *noun*

ADJ. **big, enthusiastic, friendly, great, rapturous, rousing, special, tumultuous, warm** *The audience gave the band a rousing welcome.* | **broad, general** *The proposals have been given a broad welcome by green campaigners.* | **cautious, guarded, qualified** | **cool, cold, chilly** | **official** | **hero's** *She got a hero's welcome on her return from the Olympics.*

VERB + WELCOME **get, receive** | **extend, give sb** | **await** *A warm welcome awaits you at this family-run hotel.* | **outstay/overstay your** *Sensing that he had outstayed his welcome, he quickly said his goodbyes and left.*

PREP. **in ~** *She held out her arms in welcome.* | **~ from** *The proposal received a cautious welcome from the Opposition.* | **~ to** *A big welcome to our special guest, Sir James Greenan. They received a cold welcome to their new home.*

PHRASES **a smile of welcome, a speech of welcome, words of welcome**

welcome *verb*

1 **greet sb/be pleased sb has come**

ADV. **heartily, warmly** *If you visit our town you will be warmly welcomed.* **| formally, officially | back** *The whole family turned out to welcome him back.*

VERB + WELCOME **be delighted to, be pleased to | prepare to, wait to** *The school is preparing to welcome the new intake of students.*

PREP. **into** *He welcomed us into the club.* **| to** *We are delighted to welcome you to our firm.*

PHRASES **look forward to welcoming sb, welcome sb with open arms** *They welcomed the new volunteers with open arms* (= with enthusiasm).

2 **be pleased about sth and support it**

ADV. **enthusiastically, particularly, greatly, warmly** *Many companies have warmly welcomed these changes in legislation.* **| positively** *We positively welcome applications from all sections of the community.* **| broadly | cautiously** *Foreign bankers and economists cautiously welcomed the minister's initiative.* **| initially**

PHRASES **be generally/universally/widely welcomed** *The proposals have been widely welcomed.*

welfare *noun*

1 **good health and happiness**

ADJ. **animal, child, community, employee, family, personal, student** *people concerned about child welfare*

VERB + WELFARE **improve, promote** *The government's policies will promote the welfare of all citizens.*

2 **money, etc. from the government**

ADJ. **state**

WELFARE + NOUN **state** *the provision of services such as health through the welfare state* **| agency, authorities, department, programme, provision, services, system | officer, worker | clinic, facilities | benefits, payments** *lone parents living on welfare benefits* **| budget, costs, spending | cuts | fraud, scrounger** *The new government promised to clamp down on welfare scroungers.*

PREP. **on ~** *the number of families on welfare*

well *noun*

1 for water

ADJ. **deep, shallow | artesian | holy | wishing**

VERB + WELL **dig, sink**

WELL + VERB **run dry**

2 for oil

ADJ. **oil**

VERB + WELL **drill**

well-being *noun*

ADJ. **general | emotional, mental, physical, psychological, social, spiritual | human, personal | economic, financial, material** VERB + WELL-BEING **contribute to, ensure, foster, promote** *A better water supply would contribute dramatically to the villagers' well-being.* **| threaten**

PHRASES **health and well-being, a sense of well-being** *She was filled with a sense of well-being.*

wet *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look | become, get, turn** *We got soaking wet just going from the car to the house. The weather may turn wet later on in the week.* **| get sth** *Mind you don't get your feet wet.*

ADV. **dripping, extremely, really, soaking, sopping, very** *His clothes were dripping wet.* **| a bit, a little, quite, rather, slightly** *It's still quite wet outside.* **| permanently** *permanently wet conditions*

PREP. **with** *The grass was wet with dew.*

PHRASES **wet through** *We were wet through and cold.*

wet *verb*

ADV. **thoroughly** *Wet your hair thoroughly before applying the shampoo.* **| slightly**

PREP. **with** *Wet the towel slightly with warm water.*

whale *noun*

ADJ. **beached, stranded**

QUANT. **school**

VERB + WHALE **hunt | harpoon**

WHALE + VERB **swim | dive | sing | blow (sth)** *We saw a whale blowing a jet of spray high in the air.* | **breach sth** *Ahead, the whale breached the surface of the water.* | **beach itself, be washed up**

WHALE + NOUN **hunting | meat, oil | stocks** *management and conservation of whale stocks*

wheat *nou*n

ADJ. **ripe | cracked, whole | durum | spring, winter**

QUANT. **ear, grain | bag, sack, sheaf | field**

VERB + WHEAT **grow | sow | cut, harvest | thresh | grind | eat**

WHEAT + VERB **grow**

WHEAT + NOUN **harvest | field | flour, germ**

wheel *noun*

1 **on a bicicyle, car, etc.**

ADJ. **bicycle, car, etc. | spare | front | back, rear | nearside | offside | loose, wobbly | alloy**

WHEEL + VERB **change, replace** *A tyre blew and we had to change the wheel.*

WHEEL + VERB **go round, spin, turn** *The wheels were still going round. (figurative) The political wheel had turned full circle, and he was back in power.* **| skid, slide, slip** *He braked suddenly, causing the front wheels to skid.* **| crunch, scream, shriek** *the sound of wheels crunching over snow* **| come off, fall off | lock** *She braked too hard and the wheels locked.*

WHEEL + NOUN **arch, base, bearings, hub, nut, rim, trim | clamp**

PREP. **on ~s** *A child was pulling along a little dog on wheels.* **| under the ~s** *She fell under the wheels of a bus.*

2 (*also* **steering wheel**)

VERB + WHEEL **grip | turn | take** *I drove the first 200 miles and then Steve took the wheel.*

WHEEL + NOUN **lock**

PREP. **at the ~** *The bus set off again with a fresh driver at the wheel.* **| behind the ~** *I saw the car drive past, but didn't recognize the woman behind the wheel.*

wheelchair *noun*

ADJ. **electric, motorized, powered**

VERB + WHEELCHAIR **use | manoeuvre** *Anthony manoeuvred his wheelchair out from behind his desk.* **| push | be confined to** *He's been confined to a wheelchair since the accident.*

WHEELCHAIR + NOUN **access | user** *better access for wheelchair users* **| athlete**

PREP. **by ~** *In town, she gets about by wheelchair.* **| in a/the ~** *It's hard to get around if you're in a wheelchair.*

PHRASES **accessible by wheelchair, wheelchair accessible facilities/vehicles, etc.**

whereabouts *noun*

ADJ. **current, present | unknown** *The present whereabouts of the manuscript is unknown.* **| exact, precise**

VERB + WHEREABOUTS **know** *She did not say where she was going, and nobody knows her whereabouts.*

whiff *noun*

ADJ. **faint | strong | unmistakable** *(often figurative) detecting the unmistakable whiff of electoral blackmail*

VERB + WHIFF **catch, get, detect** *I caught the whiff of whisky on his breath. (figurative) Journalists caught a whiff of scandal and pursued the actress relentlessly.*

PREP. **~ of** *a whiff of perfume*

PHRASES **at the faintest/first/merest whiff of sth** *(figurative) He always retreated emotionally at the first whiff of conflict.*

while *noun*

ADJ. **brief, little, short | fair, good, long, some** *Things continued quiet for some while.*

VERB + WHILE **take** *I'll mend it for you, but it could take a while.*

PREP. **after a ~** *After a while, I began to get bored with my job.* **| for a/the ~** *They chatted for a while. There's no need to do anything for the while.* **| in a ~** *I'll be back in a while.*

PHRASES **all the while** *The bird hopped across the lawn, keeping a sharp lookout all the while.* **| once in a while** *Everybody makes a mistake once in a while* (= occasionally). **| (for) quite a while** *He kept me waiting for quite a while.* **| a while back** *The problems started a while back.*

whim *noun*

ADJ. **sudden | slightest** *The bird's nest is vulnerable to the slightest whim of the weather.* **| individual, personal | political** *Funding is subject to political whim.*

VERB + WHIM **indulge, pander to, satisfy | be subject to, be vulnerable to, depend on | suffer** *For years she had suffered her husband's whims.*

PREP. **at (sb's) ~** *They seem to be able to change the rules of the game at whim. Slaves could be bought and sold at the whim of their masters.* **| on a ~** *He bought the jacket on a whim, having seen it by chance in a shop window.*

PHRASES **your every whim** *The child's parents pandered to his every whim.*

whimper *noun*

ADJ. **little, small | frightened, pathetic**

VERB + WHIMPER **give** *The animal gave a pathetic little whimper.*

whimper *verb*

ADV. **softly** *The dog whimpered softly.* **| pathetically**

VERB + WHIMPER **begin to, start to | hear sb**

PREP. **with** *The boy was whimpering with pain.*

PHRASES **whimper like a child** *He stirred in her arms, whimpering like a child.*

whine *noun*

ADJ. **high, high-pitched | piercing | nasal**

VERB + WHINE **give, let out | hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *She spoke with a whine.* **| ~ of**

PHRASES **the whine of a bullet/an engine/a motor** > Note at SOUND

whine *verb*

ADV. **faintly, softly** *The engines whined softly in the background.* **| away**

whip *noun*

ADJ. **driving, riding | bull, horse**

VERB + WHIP **crack, flick** *He cracked the whip and the horse leapt forward.*

VERB + WHIP **crack** *A hound yelped briefly as a whip cracked.*

PHRASES **the crack of a whip**

whip *verb*

1 **hit sb/sth with a whip**

ADV. **soundly** *He was taken back to the jail and soundly whipped.*

2 **mix sth until it is light and stiff**

ADV. **gently, lightly** *Lightly whip the egg whites and add them to the mixture.* **| up**

whirl *noun*

ADJ. **mad** *The next few days were a mad whirl of parties.* **| social** *It's easy to get caught up in the social whirl.*

PREP. **in a ~** *His mind was in a whirl as he searched frantically for a solution.*

whisky *noun*

ADJ. **double, large | single, small | stiff | neat, straight** *I'll have my whisky straight, please.* **| excellent, fine, good** *a fine malt whisky* **| cheap | bootleg** (= illegally made) **| blended, Irish** (spelt **whiskey**), **malt, Scotch, single-malt**

QUANT. **dash, drop, nip** *He added a dash of whisky to his coffee.* **| measure, shot, tot** *She poured herself a large tot of whisky.* **| bottle, flask, glass, hip-flask, tumbler**

VERB + WHISKY **drink** *Do you drink whisky?* **| have** *He had a whisky on the rocks.* **| pour (sb) | sip | gulp, swig | down, finish | distil, produce** *the art of distilling whisky*

WHISKY + NOUN **drinker | bottle, decanter | glass, tumbler | chaser** *He ordered a beer with a whisky chaser* (= a small glass of whisky drunk after a beer). **| business, company, distiller, distillery, industry, production, sales**

PHRASES **whisky on the rocks** (= with ice)

whisper *noun*

ADJ. **barely audible, the barest, faint, gentle, hushed, low, mere/the merest, soft | fierce, harsh | audible, loud, stage** *'I knew this would happen,' he said in a stage whisper* (= one that he wanted everyone to hear). **| hoarse, husky, strangled | awed, excited, urgent | confidential, conspiratorial**

PREP. **above a ~** *Their voices were very quiet, hardly above a whisper.* **| in a ~** *They spoke in whispers.*

whisper *verb*

ADV. **softly | hoarsely, huskily, thickly | fiercely, urgently** *'Come on,' he whispered urgently.* **| brokenly, shakily, unsteadily | angrily, bitterly, furiously | confidentially, conspiratorially | excitedly | almost, half | back** *'Yes,' I whispered back.*

VERB + WHISPER **can/could only** *He could only whisper in reply.* **| hear sb** *She heard him whisper her name.*

PREP. **about** *I felt that everyone was whispering about me.* **| against** *'Hush,' he whispered against her hair.* **| through** *'No,' he whispered through gritted teeth.* **| to** *'Let's go,' she whispered to Anne.*

PHRASES **whisper sth in/into sb's ear, whisper sweet nothings** *He held her and whispered sweet nothings in her ear.*

whistle *noun*

1 **small metal/plastic tube that you blow**

ADJ. **dog, factory, police, train | guard's, referee's, etc. | steam | penny, tin**

VERB + WHISTLE **blow (on), sound** *A train sounded its whistle in the distance.*

WHISTLE + VERB **blow, go, sound** *The referee's whistle went just before he shot the goal.*

PHRASES **a blast on a whistle** *He gave a short blast on his whistle.*

2 **clear high-pitched sound**

ADJ. **loud | high, high-pitched, piercing, shrill | low | long | short | silent** *He pursed his lips in a silent whistle.* **| tuneless | wolf | final** (sport) *They scored their only goal just before the final whistle.*

VERB + WHISTLE **give, let out | hear**

PREP. **with a ~** *The train entered the tunnel with a shrill whistle.* **| ~ of** *She gave a low whistle of admiration.* > Note at SOUND

whistle *verb*

ADV. **loudly | softly, under your breath | through your teeth** *Norma looked at the parcel and whistled softly through her teeth.* **| cheerfully | tunelessly**

VERB + WHISTLE **begin to | hear sb**

PREP. **at** *Men whistled at her in the street.* **| in** *James whistled in amazement.* **| to** *William whistled to me from a distance.*

white *adj.*

1 **of the colour of snow or milk**

ADJ. **dead, pure | bright, brilliant | bone, creamy, icy, milky | dirty, off- | plain** > Special page at COLOUR

PHRASES **as white as snow**

2 **very pale because of illness or fear**

VERBS **be, look | go, turn**

ADV. **extremely, very | rather**

PREP. **with** *He turned white with anger.*

PHRASES **as white as a sheet**

white *noun*

ADJ. **egg** *Whisk the egg whites until stiff.*

VERB + WHITE **beat, whip, whisk**

PHRASES **the white of an egg** *Use the whites of two eggs.*

whole *noun*

1 all of sth

VERB + WHOLE **cover, embrace, encompass, involve, span** *The project involved the whole of the university.* | **fill, occupy, take up** *The library takes up the whole of the first floor.* | **permeate, pervade** *Technology permeates the whole of our lives.*

2 complete thing

ADJ. **coherent, cohesive, harmonious, homogeneous, integrated, organized, seamless** *She was struggling to organize her ideas into a coherent whole.* | **single** | **complex** *The author examines each aspect of Roman society, then attempts to summarize the complex whole.* | **meaningful** *At this age, babies do not yet combine sounds into a meaningful whole.* | **organic**

VERB + WHOLE **form, make (up)** *He tried to fit the pieces of evidence together to make a coherent whole.*

PHRASES **as a whole** *Unemployment is higher in the north than in the country as a whole.*

wide *adj.*

1 **covering a large area or range**

VERBS **be, seem | become**

ADV. **enormously, exceptionally, extraordinarily, extremely, remarkably, unusually, very** *a very wide range of clothing* **| increasingly | fairly, quite, reasonably, relatively | sufficiently | surprisingly**

2 **fully open**

VERBS **be | fling sth, open sth, spread sth** *He stood up and flung wide the door to the study. Open your mouth really wide. He spread his hands wide in appeal.*

ADV. **extremely, really, very**

PREP. **with** *Their eyes were wide with fear.*

3 **not close**

VERBS **be | shoot | fall, land**

ADV. **very | just**

PREP. **of** *Her shot fell just wide of the target.*

PHRASES **wide of the mark** *(figurative)* (= not accurate) *Their predictions turned out to be very wide of the mark.*

widen *verb*

ADV. **considerably, greatly** *The gap between rich and poor has widened considerably.* **| slightly | gradually, slowly | quickly, rapidly | suddenly | out** *The road widens out and becomes a dual carriageway.*

PREP. **from, into** *At this point the river widens into an estuary.* **| to** *The trade deficit had widened from £26 billion to £30 billion.*

widespread *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | remain**

ADV. **extremely, remarkably, very | increasingly | fairly, pretty, quite | sufficiently | geographically** *a geographically widespread species*

PREP. **among** *Illiteracy is widespread among the poor.*

widow *noun*

ADJ. **distraught, grieving | elderly, middle-aged, young | rich, wealthy | poor | war**

VERB + WIDOW **become | leave** *He died in March leaving a widow and three children.*

PHRASES **a widow's allowance/pension**

width *noun*

ADJ. **great** *the great width of his shoulders* | **full, overall, total, whole** | **narrow** *The fabric is only available in a narrow width.* | **maximum, minimum**

VERB + WIDTH **have** *The windows have a width of six feet.* | **measure** *Measure the width of each side.* | **increase** | **decrease, narrow (to), reduce** *The snow had narrowed the width of the road to a single track. The road narrows to a width of just four metres.* | **vary in**

WIDTH + VERB **grow, increase** | **decrease** | **vary**

WIDTH + NOUN **measurement** | **fitting** *The boots are available in a choice of width fittings.*

PREP. **across the ~** *The pattern goes across the full width of the material.* | **in ~** *The car is 1.775m in width.*

wife *noun*

ADJ. **new | future** (also **wife-to-be** *informal*) **| ex-, former | deserted | divorced, estranged | dead, late | dependent** *With a dependent wife and children, he can't afford to lose his job.* **| pregnant | dutiful, excellent, faithful, good, loving, loyal, supportive, wonderful | long-suffering** *His long-suffering wife had to put up with his numerous affairs.* **| attractive, beautiful, charming, lovely | unfaithful | jealous | domineering, nagging | battered** *a hostel for battered wives*

VERB + WIFE **meet** *I first met my wife at university.* **| marry | desert, leave, walk out on | batter, beat**

WIFE + VERB **give birth** *His wife has just given birth to a son.*

wig *noun*

ADJ. **blond, curly | powdered**

VERB + WIG **have on, sport, wear** *Do you think she was wearing a wig?* **| put on | remove, take off**

WIG + VERB **perch** *The wig seemed to perch on his head.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Who's that man in the wig?*

wild *adj.*

1 animals/plants

VERBS **be, grow, live** *The flowers grow wild in the mountains. The dogs live wild on the streets.*

ADV. **truly** *This is truly wild and unspoilt countryside.*

2 out of control

VERBS **be, look** *He looked wild and dangerous.* **| go, run** *When the princess appeared, the crowd went wild. They annoy the neighbours because they let their children run wild.* **| drive sb, make sb** *It makes me wild* (= very angry) *to see such waste.*

ADV. **really, very | absolutely | a bit, a little, pretty, rather** *Her hair was rather wild.*

PREP. **with** *The crowd was wild with excitement.*

wilderness *noun*

ADJ. **last | great | barren, desert, desolate | frozen | uncharted | unspoilt | political** *(figurative) the man who brought the party back from the political wilderness*

VERB + WILDERNESS **transform** *They transformed the wilderness into a garden.* **| explore** *They set out to explore the earth's last great wilderness, Antarctica.*

WILDERNESS + NOUN **years** *(figurative) His wilderness years* (= when he was out of politics and the public eye) *in the 1990s were spent in North America.*

PREP. **in the ~** *We were hopelessly lost in the wilderness.*

wildlife *noun*

ADJ. **abundant | endangered, rare | indigenous, local, native | marine, urban, wetland**

VERB + WILDLIFE **preserve, protect, save** *They called on the government to help protect native wildlife.* **| attract, encourage** *The large variety of native plants attracts wildlife to the area.* **| benefit | endanger, threaten** *The increasing use of pesticides threatens the wildlife of the area.* **| damage, harm | disturb** *Do not allow your dog to disturb wildlife.* **| be (a) home for/to, be rich in** *The forest is home to a wealth of wildlife.*

WILDLIFE + NOUN **habitat | area, garden, haven, park, refuge, reserve, sanctuary, site** *The school has its own small wildlife garden.* **| conservation, management, protection | trade** *the illegal wildlife trade* **| artist, cameraman, film-maker, photographer**

PHRASES **a wealth of wildlife**

will power *noun*

ADJ. **sheer | strong**

VERB + WILL POWER **have** *I'm no good at slimming. The trouble is, I've got no will power.* **| take** *It took all his will power to stay in and study.* **| summon** *He tried to summon the will power to get out of bed.* **| need**

PREP. **by ~** *She managed to finish the race by sheer will power.*

will *noun*

1 **power to choose; desire**

ADJ. **indomitable, iron, strong** *her indomitable will to win His unassuming matter concealed an iron will.* | **weak** | **free** | **conscious** | **collective, general, majority, national, popular, public** *Is that the general will, that we keep the present voting arrangements?* | **individual** | **human** | **divine, God's** | **royal** | **political** *The government lacked the political will to reform the tax system.* (see also **goodwill)**

VERB + WILL **have** *She's got a very strong will.* | **lack** | **exercise, exert** | **lose** *She's lost the will to try and change things.* | **break, drain, sap** *Constant rejection has sapped her will.* | **regain** | **impose** *She usually manages to impose her will on the rest of the group.* | **bend to, obey** *They were taught to obey their father's will without question.* | **go against** *My father didn't want me to leave home, and I didn't like to go against his will.*

PREP. **against your ~** *Much against my will, I let him go.* | **at ~** *She believes employers should have the right to hire and fire at will.*

PHRASES **an act of will** *It requires an act of will to make myself go running in the morning.* | **a battle/clash of wills** *The meeting turned out to be a clash of wills.* | **an effort of will** *With a great effort of will he resisted her pleas.* | **of your own free will** *She left of her own free will.* | **the will of God, the will to live** *She gradually regained the will to live.*

2 **legal document**

ADJ. **valid** *Two people must witness your signature or your will will not be valid.* | **living** (= a record of your wishes regarding medical treatment at the end of your life)

VERB + WILL **draw up, make** *His solicitor drew up the will. Have you made your will?* | **sign** | **leave** *She left no will and was unmarried.* | **read** | **alter, change** | **revoke** *Remarriage would revoke all previous wills.* | **forge** | **remember sb in** *She was moved when her neighbour remembered her in his will.* | **administer, execute** | **challenge, contest** *The family decided to contest the will in court.* | **break, overturn, set aside** *They succeeded in getting the will overturned.*

PREP. **by ~** *Some things cannot be given away by will.* | **in a/the ~** *She left me some* *money in her will.* **| under a/the ~** *Under her father's will, she gets £5,000 a year.*

PHRASES **sb's last will and testament**

willing *adj.*

VERBS **appear, be, prove, seem** *They appear willing to talk to us.*

ADV. **more than, only too, really, very** *I'm more than willing to get involved.* **| increasingly | perfectly, quite** *He's quite willing to do the same for you.* **| enough** *He seemed willing enough to listen.* **| apparently | always** *She is always willing to help.* **| no longer**

willingness *noun*

ADJ. **general | genuine | greater, increased | growing, increasing**

VERB + WILLINGNESS **demonstrate, display, indicate, show, signal** *The new government has shown a willingness to listen and learn.* **| announce, confirm, declare, express** *Workers' leaders have expressed their willingness to cooperate.* **| demand, depend on, require** *Marriage counselling depends on both parties' willingness to try to solve problems.*

PREP. **in your ~** *In her willingness to help them, she quite forgot that she wasn't as strong as she had been.*

wilt *verb*

ADV. **visibly**

VERB + WILT **begin to** *Some of the leaves were beginning to wilt.*

PREP. **in** *The plants will wilt in direct sunlight.* **| under** *By half-time, the team was wilting under the pressure.* **| with** *The passengers were visibly wilting with the heat and movement of the bus.*

win *noun*

ADJ. **big, comfortable, convincing, decisive, easy, emphatic, handsome, resounding, runaway | last-gasp, narrow** *An extra-time penalty gave Barcelona a last-gasp win over Chelsea.* **| five-point, nine-wicket, single-shot, two-goal, etc. | hard-earned, hard-fought | deserved, well-earned | excellent, fine, great, impressive | thrilling | improbable, remarkable, shock, unexpected | famous** *People still talk about the famous win against Brazil.* **| away, home | cup final, league, semi-final, etc. | Democrat, Labour, etc.**

VERB + WIN **claim, chalk up, gain, have, notch (up), record, score** *We've had three successive wins in the National League. Torino notched up a 2?1 win at Lazio.* **| cruise to, romp to, sweep to** *Woods romped to a 12-shot win in the Open.* **| deserve, earn | give sb | celebrate**

WIN + VERB **come** *His only big win came in the French Open ten years ago.* **| keep sb, lift sb, put sb, take sb** *Williams's straight-sets win puts her through to the semi-final.*

PREP. **without a ~** *They've gone four games without a win.* **| ~ against/over** *Liverpool gained a thrilling 5?4 win over Glenavon.*

PHRASES **a no-win situation** *She was in a no-win situation, taking the blame for things she did not have the power to change.*

win *verb*

ADV. **comfortably, convincingly, easily, hands down, handsomely, outright** *The French team won hands down.* | **narrowly** *She narrowly won the first race.* | **duly** *He duly won, but was then sidelined by a leg injury.* | **unexpectedly** | **eventually, finally**

VERB + WIN **deserve to** *We didn't deserve to win?we played very badly.* | **hope to** | **be expected to, be tipped to, expect to** *The actress is tipped to win an Oscar for her performance.* | **be likely to** | **be going to** *Who do you think is going to win?* | **manage to** | **fail to** *The far right party failed to win a single seat.* | **help (to), help sb (to)** *qualities which help win business and motivate staff*

PREP. **against** *They stand a good chance of winning against their league rivals.* | **at** *I never win at tennis.* | **by** *She won the race by 40 metres.* | **on** *The match was eventually won on penalties.*

PHRASES **be capable of winning (sth)** *There are a lot of teams capable of winning the title.* | **be confident of winning (sth), a chance of winning (sth), a chance to win sth** *the chance to win the holiday of a lifetime* | **succeed in winning sth** *He succeeded in winning their confidence.*

wince *verb*

ADV. **a little, slightly | inwardly** *He winced inwardly at her harsh tone.* **| visibly**

VERB + WINCE **try not to | make sb | see sb**

PREP. **at** *She switched on the light, wincing at the sudden brightness.* **| in/with** *He winced in pain.*

wind *noun*

ADJ. **fierce, gale-force, high, stiff, strong, terrible** *Rain and high winds are forecast. There was a stiff wind blowing.* | **light, moderate, slight** | **blustery, gusty** | **warm** | **biting, bitter, brisk, chill, cold, icy** *The icy wind cut right through us.* | **howling** | **fair, favourable, good** *They set sail the next morning with a fair wind.* | **adverse** *Adverse winds swept the boat off course.* | **head, tail** *A tail wind made the ride home very relaxing.* | **east, north, etc.**

QUANT. **blast, gust** | **breath** *There wasn't a breath of wind in the still air.*

WIND + VERB **blow, blow up, come, cut through sb/sth, sweep (through) sth** *The wind came from the west. A fierce wind swept through the countryside.* | **howl, moan, roar, whistle** *The wind roared through the tunnel.* | **buffet sth, rattle sth, whip sth (up)** *The wind whipped up the surface of the lake.* | **increase, pick up, rise** | **abate, die down, drop** *Let's wait until the wind drops before setting sail.* | **change** *The wind suddenly changed and began blowing from the north.*

WIND + NOUN **conditions, direction, power, pressure, speed**

PREP. **against the ~** *We were rowing against the wind.* | **in the ~** *a flag flapping in the wind* | **into the ~** *We were sailing into the wind.* | **out of ~** *Let's shelter out of the wind.*

PHRASES **the roar/sound of the wind**

wind *verb*

ADV. **tight/tightly | carefully, neatly**

PREP. **around/round** *He wound the bandage tightly round his ankle.* **| into** *She wound the wool into a ball.*

windfall *noun*

ADJ. **unexpected**

VERB + WINDFALL **get, have** *She had an unexpected windfall of a thousand pounds when a cousin died.*

WINDFALL + NOUN **gains, profits | tax**

window *noun*

1 **in a building, car, etc.**

ADJ. **big, huge, long, tall, wide | narrow, small | panoramic | floor-length, floor-to-ceiling | deep-set | arched, bay, bow, casement, dormer, French, lattice, leaded, picture, rose, sash, skylight, small-paned, stained-glass** *You get to the garden through French windows at the back of the house. The cathedral has a beautiful rose window.* **| plate-glass | double-glazed | barred, curtained, shuttered** *All the windows in the prison are barred.* **| curtainless | open | boarded-up | blank** *No light showed in any of the blank windows of the house.* **| dark | bright, sunny | rain-lashed, rain-streaked | draughty, ill-fitting | dirty, dusty, filthy | clean | steamed-up | balcony, basement, bedroom, kitchen, etc. | back, front, rear, side, top, topmost, upstairs | first-floor, ground-floor, etc. | south-facing, etc. | display, shop | car, carriage, train, etc. | back, driver's, passenger, rear | electric | smoked, tinted** *a limousine with smoked windows*

VERB + WINDOW **gaze out (of), gaze through, look in (through), look out (of), look through, peer out (of), peer (in) through, see out (of), see through, stare out of, stare (in) through** *I found her looking in the window of a department store. It was raining so hard I could scarcely see out the window.* **| lean out of, stick your head out of | knock on, rap on, tap on** *We tapped on the window to get their attention.* **| fling open, force (open), open, throw open** *There was evidence that the window had been forced.* **| roll down, wind down** *I rolled down the window to ask for directions.* **| close, roll up, shut | clean, wash | break, shatter, smash | replace**

WINDOW + VERB **open, wind down** *How does the window open?* **| close, go up | break, shatter, smash | blow out** *All the windows blew out with the force of the blast.* **| flash, gleam, glint, glow, shine** *The windows glinted in the sunlight.* **| steam up** *The windows all steam up when you have a shower.* **| rattle** *The windows rattle when a train goes past.* **| face sth, give a view of sth, look, overlook sth, stare** *a studio with windows looking south towards the park The windows of the house stared bleakly down at her.*

WINDOW + NOUN **frame, ledge, pane, sill | seat** *I always ask for a window seat when I fly.* **| cleaner** *He works as a window cleaner.* **| display | shopping** *I love going window shopping* (= looking at things in the shops without buying anything).

PREP. **at the ~** *He was standing at the window waiting for us.* **| by the ~** *I sat by the window to get some air.* **| in the ~** *an advertisement in the shop window We caught sight of him in the window as we passed. There was a vase of flowers in the window. A bird flew in the open window.* **| out (of) ~** *She gazed out of the window at the falling snow.* **| through ~** *They threw a brick through the window.*

2 **area on a computer screen**

ADJ. **active** *Click on the window to make it active.*

VERB + WINDOW **open | close** *If you close a couple of windows, the screen will be less cluttered.* **| enlarge, minimize, resize, shrink | drag, move | click on** > Special page at COMPUTER

windscreen *noun*

ADJ. **front, rear | car**

VERB + WINDSCREEN **clean, scrape, wipe** *She scraped the windscreen free of ice.* **| break, chip, crack, shatter, smash | fit, put in, replace, take out | clear, demist** *She switched the wipers on to clear the windscreen.*

WINDSCREEN + VERB **mist up | crack, shatter**

WINDSCREEN + NOUN **wiper**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *I came back to find a parking ticket on the windscreen.* **| through a/the ~** *Bright evening sunlight glared through the windscreen.*

wine *noun*

ADJ. **red, rose, white | fizzy, sparkling | dry | sweet | light** *He served a light white wine with the lunch.* **| full-bodied, heady, strong | fruity | sour, vinegary** *a cheap vinegary wine* **| mature, young** *The younger wines will be mature after about three years.* **| new, old** *some new wines from South Africa* **| excellent, expensive, fine, good, great, quality, vintage | cheap, table | house** *The restaurant's house wines are an Australian Chardonnay and a French red.* **| dessert | fortified** *fortified wines such as port and sherry* **| mulled, spiced | chilled** *chilled white wine* **| home-made | dandelion, elderberry, rice, etc.**

QUANT. **drop** *Would you like another drop of wine?* **| glass, bottle**

VERB + WINE **drink** *Do you drink wine?* **| have** *I'll have some wine, please.* **| sip, take a sip of** *She took a sip of her wine.* **| gulp, swig, take a gulp/swig of | pour (sb), top up** *The waiter went round topping up people's wine.* **| make, produce** *The winery has been making wine for a couple of centuries.* **| age, mature** *wine aged in the bottle* **| chill | serve | ply sb with** *They always ply their clients with wine before getting down to business.*

WINE + VERB **flow** *(figurative) The wine flowed freely at the party.* **| go to your head** *The wine had gone to his head and he was starting to talk rubbish.* **| breathe** *Open the wine an hour before the meal to let it breathe.* **| be corked | age, mature**

WINE + NOUN **bottle, glass | list** *The restaurant has an extensive wine list.* **| rack** *I took another bottle from the wine rack.* **| grower, growing | merchant | tasting** *The supermarket holds occasional wine-tasting sessions.*

wing *noun*

1 **of a bird/insect**

ADJ. **left, right | fore, front** *The beetle's fore wings are small and are not used in flight.* **| back, hind | broad, long, narrow, pointed, short, stubby | delicate | leathery, membranous | broken, damaged** *a bird with a broken wing* **| outspread, outstretched | butterfly, chicken, etc.** *the patterns on butterfly wings First, fry the chicken wings in the oil until they begin to brown.*

QUANT. **pair**

VERB + WING **extend, open, spread, stretch, unfold | close, fold | flap, flutter** *It flapped its wings and flew off.* **| clean | clip** *(often figurative) Pete felt he had had his wings clipped when his driving licence was confiscated.* **| grow, sprout** *I wish I could sprout wings and fly away.*

WING + VERB **beat, flap, flutter**

WING + NOUN **tip | feathers**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *It had white markings on its wings.* **| under a/the ~** *The young birds were under the mother bird's wing. (figurative) Simon's uncle had taken him under his wing.*

2 **of a plane**

ADJ. **aircraft | left, port | right, starboard | fixed | folding**

WING + VERB **stick out**

WING + NOUN **tip**

3 **of a building**

ADJ. **north, south, etc. | private | hospital | maternity | maximum security** (= of a prison)

VERB + WING **add, build | demolish, destroy, pull down** *A bomb destroyed the east wing.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *Our rooms were in the west wing.*

4 of a car

ADJ. **nearside, offside | front, rear**

VERB + WING **damage, dent** *The nearside wing was damaged in the accident.* **| mend, repair, replace**

WING + NOUN **mirror**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There was a dent in one wing.*

5 of an organization

ADJ. **left, right | conservative | liberal, progressive, reformist | extreme, radical | revolutionary | moderate | dissident | political | military, paramilitary**

PREP. **on a/the ~** *They're on the left wing of the Labour Party.*

wink *noun*

ADJ. **broad | little | conspiratorial, knowing**

VERB + WINK **direct, give sb, throw sb**

PREP. **with a ~** *'Know what I mean?' he said with a wink.* **| ~ at** *He directed a conspiratorial wink at his son.*

wink *verb*

ADV. **broadly** *He winked broadly at Lucinda.* **| conspiratorially, saucily, wickedly** *She winked saucily at Jack.* **| back**

VERB + WINK **see sb** *I saw him wink at her.*

PREP. **at** *She winked at me, and I winked back.*

winner *noun*

ADJ. **overall** *She didn't win every race, but she was the overall winner.* **| outright** *With three teams finishing on 40 points, there was no outright winner.* **| eventual | joint** *They were joint winners of the cup.* **| lucky** *She was the lucky winner of that week's biggest lottery prize.* **| deserved, worthy | clear, comfortable, convincing, easy, runaway** *She emerged as the clear winner.* **| impressive | big** *There were no big winners in this week's lottery.* **| shock, surprise, unexpected, unlikely | likely, possible, potential** *Barcelona look likely winners of the Spanish League.* **| first-time, three-times, etc.** *Italy, three times winners of the World Cup* **| consistent, frequent, prolific, regular** *She is a regular winner in local road races.* **| award, championship, competition, contest, cup, election, jackpot, league, match, (gold/silver/bronze) medal, prize** (also **prizewinner**), **race, title, tournament, trophy**

VERB + WINNER **emerge as | announce** *The winner of the competition will be announced this afternoon.* **| choose, pick** *The winner will be chosen from the five architects who get through the first round. He's very good at picking winners* (= at guessing who is going to win). **| back** *He backed the winner and won £70.*

WINNER + VERB **receive sth** *The winner will receive a prize of £500.*

PREP. **~ against/over** *France were impressive 3?0 winners over Portugal.*

winter *noun*

ADJ. **last, next, this (coming) | early, late, mid-**(also **midwinter)** *It was impossible to walk the route in midwinter.* **| bad, bitter, cold, hard, harsh, severe, terrible** *one of the worst winters we have ever had* **| bleak, dreary, grey | mild | wet | nuclear**

WINTER + NOUN **conditions, temperature, weather | sun, sunlight, sunshine | cold | frost/frosts, rain/rains, snow | gale, wind | landscape, scene, sky** *the artist's bleak winter scene* **| solstice | term | break, holiday | garden | flower | crop | clothes, clothing, coat | collection, exhibition | Olympics, sports** > Note at SEASON(for more collocates)

wipe *verb*

ADV. **carefully, gently | hastily, quickly | easily** *The plastic surface can be easily wiped.* **| just, simply | away, down, up** *I wiped up the spilt wine.*

VERB + WIPE **pause to, stop to** *He paused to wipe the sweat from his forehead.* **| try to**

PREP. **from** *She gently wiped the tears from her eyes.* **| off** *He wiped the marks off the wall.* **| on** *She wiped her hands on the towel.* **| with** *When you've finished with it, simply wipe it clean with a damp cloth.*

PHRASES **wipe sth clean PHRASAL VERBS wipe sth out**

ADV. **completely, totally | almost, practically, virtually** *The regiment was virtually wiped out in the first battle.* **| effectively** *The disease has been effectively wiped out.*

VERB + WIPE **threaten to** *pollution that threatens to wipe out 100,000 fish*

wiper *noun*

ADJ. **windscreen | rear**

VERB + WIPER **put on, switch on, turn on | switch off, turn off | be fitted with**

WIPER + VERB **be going, be on** *Cars were coming past with their wipers going.*

wire *noun*

1 metal as thin thread

ADJ. **taut, tight | loose, slack | fine, thin | thick | flexible, soft | stiff | rusty | barbed, chicken** (= wire mesh used to make fences), **razor | piano | perimeter | trip** (also **tripwire)** ***The bomb was attached to a tripwire laid across the road.*** **| high (= in a circus)** ***One man rode a bicycle along the high wire as the climax to the act.***

QUANT. **length, piece, strand**

VERB + WIRE **cut** ***They cut the perimeter wire and escaped.*** **| stretch** ***The wire was stretched between two poles.***

WIRE + NOUN **grill, mesh, netting | basket, brush, cage, coat hanger, fence, fencing, frame, rack** ***Cool the cakes on a wire rack.*** **| cutters (also wire-cutters)**

PREP. **behind a/the ~** *Behind the wire, the prisoners were exercising.* **| under a/the ~** *We got in under the wire.*

2 for electricity

ADJ. **electric, electrical, electricity** *Don't place carpets over electrical wires. overhead electricity wires* **| earth, live, neutral** *Don't touch that wire. It's live.* **| overhead | telegraph, telephone | fuse | bare, exposed** *Watch out for bare wires.* **| insulated, plastic-coated, plastic-covered | frayed**

VERB + WIRE **attach, connect** *The wire was attached to a pin in the plug.* **| disconnect** *He disconnected the wire from the clock.* **| run** *The electrician ran a wire from the kitchen to the bedroom.*

WIRE + VERB **go, lead, run, trail** *Where does this wire go? There were wires trailing everywhere.* **| show** *Surely the wires shouldn't show like that?*

PREP. **along a/the ~** *the flow of electrical currents along a wire* **| down a/the ~** *A dry laugh echoed down the telephone wire.*

wire *verb*

ADV. **correctly, properly** *You should check that the socket is correctly wired.* **| in, up** *She was wired up to a heart monitor.*

PREP. **for** *Many homes were wired for lighting only.* **| into, to** *The Christmas tree lights are all wired to one plug.*

wiring *noun*

ADJ. **electric/electrical | dangerous, faulty, loose | mains | house**

VERB + WIRING **renew, replace** *The existing wiring will have to be replaced.* **| take out** *They took out the old wiring.* **| disconnect | check (over), have a look at** *We'd better get an electrician to check the wiring before we start decorating.* **| conceal** *The wiring was concealed behind a false panel.*

WIRING + NOUN **diagram | system**

wisdom *noun*

ADJ. **deep, great, profound | accepted, conventional, established, folk, popular, prevailing, received, traditional** *Conventional wisdom has it that riots only ever happen in cities.* **| street, worldly** *He is too lacking in worldly wisdom to be a politician.* **| accumulated, collective** *the accumulated wisdom of generations* **| ancient** *A bridge between ancient wisdom and modern insight is now being built.* **| innate, inner, instinctive, intuitive | political | divine**

VERB + WISDOM **doubt, have doubts about, question** *Many commentators doubted the political wisdom of introducing a new tax.* **| seek** *Those who seek wisdom at the shrine will find it.* **| impart** *Do you have any wisdom to impart on this subject?* **| prove** *The latest unemployment figures prove the wisdom of the government's policy.*

PHRASES **a fount/source of wisdom** *Consultants are too often seen as the source of all wisdom.* **| in sb's (infinite) wisdom** *(ironic) In their infinite wisdom, the council closed the swimming pool for the school holidays.* **| pearls of wisdom** *students eager to catch pearls of wisdom from the professor's lips* **| the pursuit of wisdom** *She devoted her life to the pursuit of wisdom.* **| wit and wisdom** *He entertained the audience for two hours with his wit and wisdom.* **| with the wisdom of hindsight** *It's easy enough to see what we should have done, with the wisdom of hindsight.* **| words of wisdom** *The former world champion imparted a few words of wisdom to the young runners.*

wise *adj.*

VERBS **be, look, seem | consider sth, judge sth, think sth** *It was not considered wise to move her to another hospital.*

ADV. **extremely, very | always** *It is always wise to write down important points.*

wish *noun*

1 **feeling that you want sth**

ADJ. **dearest, deepest, fervent, greatest, strong | conscious, unconscious | secret | dying, last** *He was denied his dying wish to be reconciled with his son.* **| death** *Freud's theory of the death wish* **| personal | parental** *the child's detention against parental wishes*

VERB + WISH **have | express, make known** *She has expressed a wish to visit the Houses of Parliament.* **| fulfill** *She fulfilled her deepest wish when she flew solo for the first time.* **| get** *She's always wanted to be an actress, and I'm sure she'll get her wish.* **| grant sb | be responsive to, consider, honour, respect, take into account** *It is vital for schools to respect the wishes of parents.* **| carry out, comply with, implement, meet** *We need to update our equipment if we are to meet customers' wishes.* **| obey** *She flew into a rage if the staff didn't obey her wishes.* **| deny sb | disregard, flout, go against, ignore, override, ride roughshod over** *The committee rode roughshod over the wishes of union members.* **| reflect** *The change to the constitution reflects the wishes of the people who voted in the referendum.*

WISH + NOUN **fulfilment | list** *Draw up a wish list, defining the requirements for your ideal home.*

PREP. **against sb's ~s** *Her father will not speak to her, because she married against his wishes.* **| in sb's ~** *In his wish to be as helpful as possible, he was forever asking her what she wanted.* **| in accordance with sb's ~s** *In accordance with his wishes, his ashes were scattered at sea.* **| ~ for** *a wish for peace*

2 **saying secretly to yourself what you want to happen**

VERB + WISH **have, make** *When you see a black cat, you have to make a wish.* **| be allowed, get** *If you're the one who finds the hidden box, you get a wish.* **| grant** *The good fairy granted her three wishes.*

WISH + VERB **come true** *Lo and behold, on Christmas Day their wishes came true.*

3 **(usually wishes) hope that sb will be happy**

ADJ. **best, good** *Give my best wishes to Alison.*

VERB + WISH **give sb, send (sb)**

PREP. **with ~ (at the end of a letter)** *With best wishes for a happy birthday.* **| ~ for** *Every good wish for your future happiness together.*

wish *verb*

ADV. **dearly, desperately, devoutly, fervently, heartily, really, sincerely** *I heartily wished that I had stayed at home. I really wish I could go to America.* **| hard** *If you wish really hard, maybe you'll get what you want.* **| secretly | merely, only, simply** *'Where is he now?' 'I only wish I knew.'*

PREP. **for** *It's no use wishing for the impossible.*

wit *noun*

1 **clever use of words**

ADJ. **great | quick, ready | acerbic, barbed, biting, caustic, dry, sarcastic, sardonic, scathing, sharp, wicked | gentle | dazzling, sparkling**

VERB + WIT **have** *He had a dry wit.*

PHRASES **wit and wisdom** *a book full of the wit and wisdom of his 30 years in politics*

2 **intelligence**

ADJ. **native** *She had to use all her native wit to convince the police.*

VERB + WIT **have** *I hope he's got the wit to take the key with him.*

PHRASES **beyond the wit of man** (= impossible) *It should not be beyond the wit of man to resolve this dispute*

3 **wits: ability to think quickly**

VERB + WIT **gather, recover** *She couldn't seem to gather her wits and tell us what had happened.* **| blunt, dull** *Living alone in the country had dulled his wits.* **| sharpen**

PHRASES **a battle of wits** *The strike developed into a battle of wits between management and workers.* **| have/keep your wits about you** *They do tough interviews so you'll need to have your wits about you.* **| pit your wits against sb** *Celebrity teams pit their wits against each other in this lively quiz show.*

withdraw *verb*

1 **move/move sth away from a place**

ADV. **altogether, completely | immediately, instantly | abruptly, hastily, promptly, quickly, soon** *She hastily withdrew her hand from his.* **| gently | gradually, progressively** *Forces will be progressively withdrawn.* **| eventually | temporarily | unconditionally**

VERB + WITHDRAW **decide to | intend to, wish to | threaten to | be compelled to, be forced to, be obliged to** *He was forced to withdraw from the competition due to injury.* **| persuade sb to**

PREP. **from** *Two thousand troops were withdrawn from the battle zone.* **| in favour of** *He eventually withdrew in favour of Blair, thought to be the more popular candidate.* **| into** *She withdrew into her own world.*

2 **take sth away**

ADV. **immediately | subsequently | eventually | formally** *She formally withdrew her resignation.* **| voluntarily | unconditionally** *Last night he unconditionally withdrew his comments.*

VERB + WITHDRAW **threaten to | agree to | refuse to | advise sb to, persuade sb to, urge sb to**

PREP. **from** *They threatened to withdraw their support from the government.*

withdrawal *noun*

1 **removing/leaving**

ADJ. **imminent | immediate, rapid, sudden | gradual, phased | complete, full, total, unconditional, wholesale | partial | strategic, tactical | voluntary | ignominious** *The UN were faced with an ignominious withdrawal or a long-term military presence.* **| military, troop**

VERB + WITHDRAWAL **call for, demand** *The party is calling for the phased withdrawal of troops from the island.* **| agree to | announce | make** *The police were forced to make a tactical withdrawal.*

PREP. **~ by** *a withdrawal by government troops* **| ~ from** *the army's withdrawal from the occupied territories*

2 **from a bank account**

ADJ. **cash**

VERB + WITHDRAWAL **make**

PREP. **~ from** *She made a withdrawal of £250 from her bank account.*

3 **stopping**

ADJ. **alcohol, drug**

VERB + WITHDRAWAL **suffer**

WITHDRAWAL + NOUN **symptoms**

PREP. **~ from** *She was still suffering withdrawal from nicotine.*

wither *verb*

ADV. **simply** *Their support had simply withered away.* | **away**

PREP. **under** *The grass withered under a scorching sun.*

PHRASES **wither and die** *The business withered and eventually died.*

withhold *verb*

ADV. **deliberately | reasonably, unreasonably** *Consent will not be unreasonably withheld.*

VERB + WITHHOLD **threaten to** *threatening to withhold future financial aid* **| decide to**

PREP. **from** *He was accused of deliberately withholding information from the police.*

withstand *verb*

VERB + WITHSTAND **be able/unable to, can/could | manage to | be built to, be designed to** *The wooden boat was built to withstand just about every weather condition at sea.* **| be robust/strong/tough enough to** *The flooring needs to be tough enough to withstand wear.* **| enable sth to, help sth (to)**

PHRASES **be capable of withstanding sth**

witness *noun*

1 **person who sees sth**

ADJ. **eye** (also **eyewitness)** *An eyewitness account described the plane as a 'fireball'.* **| crucial, key, material, vital** *As the last person to see her alive, he was a material witness in the case.* **| independent | credible, reliable, unimpeachable | unreliable**

VERB + WITNESS **appeal for** *The police are appealing for witnesses.* **| trace** *Police have so far failed to trace any witnesses to the attack.*

WITNESS + VERB **come forward** *Two witnesses came forward with evidence.*

WITNESS + NOUN **account, statement**

PREP. **~ to** *a witness to murder*

2 **in a court of law**

ADJ. **chief, main, principal** *the defence's chief witness* **| hostile | reluctant, unwilling | defence | prosecution, state | expert | character | civilian, police**

VERB + WITNESS **call** *The defence called their first witness.* **| appear as** *She appeared as a character witness.* **| swear in | cross-examine, examine, interrogate, interview, question | hear | discredit | intimidate, threaten** *A judicial enquiry was ordered, but witnesses were threatened and none would testify.* **| suborn** *He was charged with conspiracy to suborn witnesses.*

WITNESS + VERB **take the stand** *The next witness took the stand.* **| give evidence, testify | make a statement, state sth | identify sb** *She was the only witness to identify Peters as the attacker.*

WITNESS + NOUN **box, stand | summons**

PHRASES **a witness for the defence/prosecution**

3 **of a signature**

VERB + WITNESS **act as**

WITNESS + VERB **sign**

PREP. **~ to** *Would you be willing to act as a witness to my signature when I sign my will?*

wobbly *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look | become, go** *When I stood up my legs went all wobbly.*

ADV. **all** *(informal)*, **very | a bit, a little, rather, slightly** *The chair looked a bit wobbly.*

wolf *noun*

ADJ. **lone** *A lone wolf howled under the full moon.* **| marauding, ravening, slavering** *(figurative) She called the media 'ravening wolves'.*

QUANT. **pack**

WOLF + VERB **bark, growl, howl | hunt**

WOLF + NOUN **cub | pack**

woman *noun*

ADJ. **young | middle-aged | elderly, old, older** *The thief tricked his way into an elderly woman's home. Older women often have difficulty conceiving.* **| adult, grown** *The little girl she remembered was now a grown woman.* **| married | single, unattached, unmarried | widowed | divorced | pregnant | childless | business** (also **businesswoman**), **career, professional, working | non-working | attractive, beautiful, good-looking, handsome, pretty | desirable | well-dressed | plain, ugly | motherly | hysterical | decent, good | evil, wicked | battered** *a hostel for battered women* **| the other** *Jean Menckes plays the president's wife and Fiona Handley plays the other woman* (= the one the President is having an affair with).

VERB + WOMAN **depict, portray, present, show** *We want to change the way women are depicted in the media.* **| limit, reduce** *Women are limited to the more poorly paid jobs. Women are reduced to merely playing a passive role.*

PHRASES **the position/role of women** *There were important changes in the position of women in society.* **| a woman of the world** *He saw her as a woman of the world who could offer him advice.* **| women's lib/liberation** *(becoming old-fashioned) The freedom to wear trousers became a symbol of women's liberation.* **| the women's movement, women's rights**

womb *noun*

ADJ. **fertile | barren**

VERB + WOMB **carry sth in** *the nine months for which we are carried in our mothers' wombs* **| emerge from** *The baby's head was starting to emerge from the womb.*

WOMB + NOUN **lining**

PREP. **in the/your ~** *A scan determines the position of the baby in the womb.*

PHRASES **the lining/neck/wall of the womb**

wonder *noun*

1 **feeling of surprise/admiration**

ADJ. **great | childlike, wide-eyed**

VERB + WONDER **feel | express** *There aren't any words to express properly all the wonder that I feel.* **| gaze in, stare in** *She gazed down in wonder at the city spread below her.* **| be filled with, be full of** *The children's faces were full of wonder as they gazed up at the Christmas tree.*

WONDER + NOUN **cure, drug**

PREP. **in ~** *Neville shook his head in wonder at it all* **| with ~** *She held her breath with wonder and delight.* **| ~ at**

PHRASES **a feeling/sense of wonder**

2 **amazing thing/person**

ADJ. **natural** *Iceland is full hot springs, beautifully coloured rocks, and other natural wonders.* **| scientific | constant, perpetual** *It was a constant wonder to me that my father didn't die of exhaustion.* **| nine days, seven-day** *She was determined to prove she was no seven-day wonder whose promise would remain unfulfilled.* **| boy** *(humorous)* (also **wonder boy)** *the new boy wonder of French football* **| one-hit** *(humorous) The band aren't the one-hit wonders some had feared: their second album contains some great rap music.*

PHRASES **do/work wonders (for sb/sth)** *The change of diet has done wonders for my skin. A good night's sleep and a hearty breakfast worked wonders.* **| the wonders of modern science/technology** *Thanks to the wonders of modern science, many common diseases will soon be things of the past.* **| the wonders of the world** *The palace has been described as the eighth wonder of the world.*

wonder *verb*

ADV. **hazily, idly, vaguely** *I wondered vaguely whether Robert could be the murderer.* **| briefly, fleetingly | apprehensively, uneasily** *I wondered uneasily if anything had happened to the children.* **| bleakly, despairingly | irritably | aloud** *'Where's Natasha?' she wondered aloud.* **| just** *'Why do you ask?' 'I just wondered.'* **| often, sometimes** *I sometimes wonder who's crazier, him or me.*

VERB + WONDER **begin to** *I was just beginning to wonder where you were.* **| cannot/ could not help but, can only** *I couldn't help but wonder what he was thinking.* **| make sb** *His obvious hunger made her wonder how long he had been up and about.*

PREP. **about** *We'd wondered about you as a possible team member.*

wonderful *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, smell, sound, taste**

ADV. **most, really | absolutely, perfectly, quite, truly** *The weather was absolutely wonderful.* **| pretty, rather**

PHRASES **weird and wonderful** *coming up with weird and wonderful marketing ideas*

wood *noun*

1 what trees are made of

ADJ. **hard | soft** *Pine is a soft wood.* **| dark** *The pub had dark wood panelling.* **| light, pale | green** *The wood was too green to burn.* **| dead, rotten, rotting** *She pruned the dead wood from the tree.* **| kindling** *There were neat piles of kindling wood against the wall.* **| natural** *varnish that retains the natural wood look* **| seasoned | rough | painted, polished, stained, varnished | carved | solid | laminated | charred | balsa, beech, pine, etc.**

QUANT. **block, piece, plank, strip**

VERB + WOOD **chop, cut, saw | be made from/in/(out) of, carve/make sth from/in/out of** *The cabinet is made of cherry wood. We carve the moulds in wood.* **| paint, polish, stain, varnish** *She stained the wood green.* **| season** *Traditionally wood was seasoned in the open air.* **| burn | gather** *We gathered wood for the fire.*

WOOD + VERB **splinter** *the sound of splintering wood* **| rot** *Over the years, much of the wood in the house had rotted.* **| burn** *Dry wood burns easily.*

WOOD + NOUN **chip | carving | floor, panel, panelling | laminate, veneer | finish** *a wardrobe in a mahogany wood finish* **| fire**

PREP. **in ~** *The chapel has some interesting works in wood and marble.*

2 area covered with trees

ADJ. **deep, dense, thick | dark, shady | broad-leaved, deciduous | beech, birch, oak, etc.**

PREP. **in the ~** *a walk in the woods* **| through the ~** *He wandered through the beech wood.*

wooded *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **densely, heavily, richly, thickly, well** *a thickly wooded area*

woodwork *noun*

ADJ. **exterior, interior | polished**

VERB + WOODWORK **paint, treat, varnish | polish | strip | clean, wash | hit** *He hit the woodwork* (= the wooden frame of the goal) *twice before scoring.*

PREP. **in the ~** *There were cracks in the woodwork.*

wool *noun*

ADJ. **chunky, thick | fine | soft | rough | pure | raw | lamb's, sheep's | knitting | cotton, mineral, steel, wire**

QUANT. **ball, skein**

VERB + WOOL **produce | knit sth in, spin, weave (sth in)** *She's knitting a jumper in pure wool.* **| card, comb**

WOOL + NOUN **merchant, shop, trade**

word processing *noun*

ADJ. **basic, simple**

PHRASES **application, package, product, program, software, system | business, service**

word *noun*

1 **unit of language**

ADJ. **two-letter, three-letter, etc. | monosyllabic, disyllabic | two-syllable, three-syllable, etc. | big, long** *He uses big words to impress people.* **| compound | native | borrowed, loan** *When a new fruit is first imported, its name is usually also imported as a loan word.* **| foreign | content, function | exact, precise, very** *His exact words were, 'There's nothing we can do about it.' Those were her very words.* **| clear, plain | ambiguous | abstract, concrete | everyday** *I find even everyday words difficult to spell.* **| archaic, obsolete | key** *He wrote down a few key words to help him remember what to say.* **| right, wrong** *You can't always find the right word when you're translating.* **| dirty, four-letter, naughty, obscene, rude, taboo** *The play is full of four-letter words. Work is a dirty word to Frank.* (see also **swear word**) **| famous, household, immortal** *His name has become a household word since he first appeared in the series. the immortal words of Neil Armstrong as he stepped onto the moon* **| code** *The police use code words for their major operations.* **| buzz** (also **buzzword**), **vogue** *E-marketing is the current buzzword.* **| spoken, written** *She combines visual images and the spoken word to great effect in her presentations.*

VERB + WORD **have** *Spanish has no word for 'understatement'.* **| say, speak, use, utter** *He uses lots of long words. Every word he utters is treated as sacred text.* **| pronounce** *How is this word pronounced?* **| mispronounce | spell | misspell** *'Necessary' is one of the most commonly misspelt words in English.* **| write | hear, read | mishear, misread** *I misheard the word 'sick' as 'thick'.* **| know, understand | look up** *She looked the word up in the dictionary.* **| find | coin** *The word 'e-commerce' was coined to refer to business done over the Internet.* **| cross out, erase, rub out**

WORD + VERB **mean sth | refer to sth, relate to sth | convey sth, describe sth, express sth** *words describing body parts Words can't express how happy I am.* **| imply sth | denote sth** *Bold words denote chapter headings.* **| carry sth, have sth** *The same word can carry numerous meanings. The word has two meanings.* **| be derived from sth, come/derive from sth** *The word derives from a Norse word meaning 'eye of the wind'.* **| begin (with sth), end (in/with sth)** *What's a word beginning with 'c' that means 'a small wood'?* **| fail sb** *Words fail me* (= I cannot express how I feel).

WORD + NOUN **game**

PREP. **in sb's ~s** *The students had to retell the story in their own words.* **| ~ for** *What's the French word for 'snail'?*

PHRASES **in all senses of the word** *She was a true friend in all senses of the word.* **| in other words** *They're letting me go?in other words, I've been sacked.* **| in so many words** *They told me in so many words* (= directly) *that I was no longer needed.* **| in the true sense of the word** *People who overeat are not addicts in the true sense of the word.* **| in words of one syllable** (= using very simple language) *Could you say that again in words of one syllable?* **| word for word** (= exactly) *He repeated word for word what the boy had said to him.*

2 **sth you say**

ADJ. **quick | quiet** *The manager had a quiet word with Alison, and she gave him no more problems.* **| good, friendly, kind** *He hasn't a good word to say for anybody.* **| bad, unkind | angry, bitter, blunt, choice** *(ironic)*, **cross, cruel, hard, harsh, heated, hurtful, strong | polite** *No polite words of gratitude came.* **| flattering, honeyed | empty, fine** *(ironic)*, **meaningless** *Despite all their fine words, the council have never done anything to improve road safety.* **| weasel** *The government's promises on nurses' pay turned out to be weasel words* (= deliberately unclear). **| bold, brave** *Despite his brave words, I don't believe he can save the factory from closure.* **| wise | well-chosen** *He ruined her self-confidence with a few well-chosen words.* **| cautionary** *A few cautionary words are necessary regarding driving abroad.* **| soft, whispered** *They exchanged whispered words of love.* **| unspoken** *The look in her eyes filled in the unspoken words in her sentence.* **| dying, last** *Her last words were for her children.* **| final, last** *The Chairman always has the last word* (= the final decision) *on financial decisions.* **| fateful** *Seconds after uttering the fateful words 'this is easy', he crashed.* **| prophetic | magic**

VERB + WORD **have** *I've had a few words with John, and he's quite happy for you to stay. She had some harsh words to say about her colleagues.* **| put in, say, speak, utter** *If you run into the boss, put in a good word for me! Before we begin, I'd like to say a few words about who I am. Nobody's uttered a word to me about it.* **| give, say** *Just say the word and I'll go.* **| mumble, mutter | slur** *I knew he'd been drinking because he was slurring his words.* **| spit (out)** *She was so furious, she almost spat the words out: 'You idiot!'* **| bandy, exchange, have** *I usually exchange a few words with my neighbour when I see him. Words were exchanged* (= there was an argument). **| find** *He couldn't find the words to thank her enough.* **| choose, pick** *He chose his words carefully when commenting on her work.* **| quote | distort, twist** *She felt angry at how the journalist had twisted her words.* **| hang on** *The journalists* *hung on his every word as he spoke of his ordeal.* | **eat, take back** *When he told her she would fail, she swore she would make him eat his words.* | **not mince** *He doesn't mince his words when he talks about his ex-boss.* | **not breathe** *Don't breathe a word to anyone about what I've told you!*

WORD + VERB **conjure sth up, evoke sth** *Her words conjured up a strange picture in her mind.* | **burst from sb, come (out), emerge, fall, pour (out), slip (out), spill (out), tumble out** *He was nervous, and his words came out in a rush. His words fell into the silence like stones.* | **stick in your throat** *He wanted to tell her how he felt about her, but the words stuck in his throat.* | **float, hang in the air** *I let my words hang in the air. Maggie was no fool: she must realize I meant it.* | **echo, ring** *Her teacher's words echoed in her ears.* | **fade (away), tail away/off, trail away/off** *His words faded to silence as he saw she didn't believe him.* | **hit/strike home, strike/touch a chord** | **sink in** *She could feel her temper boiling as his words sank in.*

PREP. **in a ~** *'Would you like to help us?' 'In a word* (= briefly), *no.'* | **without a ~** *She left without a word.* | **~ about** *We never heard anyone say an unkind word about her.* | **~ from** *And now a word from our sponsors …* | **~ of** *a word of advice/warning* | **~ with** *Can I have a quick word with you?*

PHRASES **get a word in (edgeways)** *I wanted to tell you that she'd phoned, but you were talking so much I couldn't get a word in edgeways.* | **a man/woman of few words** (= a person who speaks very little), **sb never spoke a truer word/never was a truer word spoken** *You said we were about to make a big mistake, and never was a truer word spoken!* (= you were right), **not a (single) word** *Remember? not a word to* (= don't tell) *Peter about any of this. We didn't say a single word to each other all day.* | **put words into sb's mouth** *He felt after the interview that the police officers had been trying to put words into his mouth in* (= to make him say what they wanted him to say). | **take the words out of sb's mouth** *I was about to say we should cancel the trip, but she took the words right out of my mouth* (= she said it before me). | **a word in sb's ear** *Can I have a word in your ear about tomorrow's presentation?* | **(by) word of mouth** *The restaurant does not advertise, but relies on word of mouth for custom.*

3 promise

ADJ. **solemn** *She gave him her solemn word that she would give up drugs.*

VERB + WORD **give sb** | **be as good as, be true to, keep** *He promised to help and was as good as his word. True to her word, she returned next day.* | **break, go back on** *Once he has made a promise, he never goes back on his word.*

PHRASES **have sb's word for sth** *We only have her word for it that the cheque is in the post.* | **a man/woman of his/her word** *You needn't worry about him not paying you back?he's a man of his word.* | **take sb at their word** *He said I could stay at his house any time, so I took him at his word.* | **take sb's word for sth** *I haven't seen his work, but I'll take his word for it that it's finished.* | **your word against sb's** *If it's your word against the police officer's, the jury are going to believe him.* | **sb's word is their bond, word of honour** *He gave me his word of honour that he wouldn't tell anyone.*

4 **information/news**

VERB + WORD **bring, get, send** *He sent word to his family that his captors were treating him well.* | **get** *We didn't get word of her arrest until the next day.* | **spread**

WORD + VERB **get out** *If word gets out about the affair, he will have to resign.* | **be, have it** *The word is they've split up. Word has it that she's leaving.*

PREP. **~ about** *Health workers spread the word about the benefits of immunization.*

word *verb*

ADV. **carefully, cautiously** *We need to word our question quite carefully.* **| ambiguously, vaguely | broadly | strongly** *He issued a very strongly worded statement denying any involvement in the plot.*

wording *noun*

ADJ. **actual, exact, precise, specific | clear | appropriate | vague | ambiguous** *The wording was deliberately ambiguous.*

VERB + WORDING **alter, change | think about** *We need to think carefully about the wording of the request.*

PREP. **~ of** *What's the exact wording of the clause?*

work *noun*

1 **effort/product of effort**

ADJ. **hard** *It's hard work trying to get him to do a few things for himself. It doesn't require skill?it's a matter of sheer hard work.* | **arduous, back-breaking, challenging, complicated, demanding, difficult, gruelling, intensive, labour-intensive, tiring, tough** *The show is the product of two years' intensive work.* | **rewarding** | **heavy** *They employ a couple of young men to do the heavy work.* | **donkey** *I did the donkey work* (= hard work requiring little skill) *but I hired a professional builder for the tricky bits.* | **light** *She's only allowed to do a little light work because of her bad arm.* | **easy** | **close** *I need to wear glasses for close work.* | **physical** | **delicate** | **dangerous** | **dirty** *Engine maintenance is dirty work. (figurative) The drugs gang used children to do their dirty work for them.* | **humdrum, monotonous, repetitive, tedious** | **fascinating, interesting** | **purposeful** *Many unemployed people welcome the chance to do purposeful work, even if unpaid.* | **valuable** *The research institute needs funds in order to carry on its valuable work.* | **paid, unpaid** | **professional** | **men's, women's** *They think that looking after children is women's work.* | **intellectual, mental** | **creative, imaginative** | **practical** (see also **fieldwork**, **paperwork**) | **investigative** | **undercover** *The scandal was revealed after months of undercover work by journalists.* | **leg** (also **legwork)** *Her job as a market researcher involves a lot of legwork* (= walking around to collect information). | **course** (also **coursework**) | **written** *His written work is the best in the class.* | **individual** | **group** | **project** | **collaborative, joint** *classroom activities involving collaborative work between children The report is the joint work of an economist and a sociologist.* | **remedial** *The poorly designed bridge needs remedial work to make it safe.* | **background, preliminary, preparatory** | **follow-up** | **honest** *He preferred to make his money from honest work rather than from gambling.* | **good, nice** *(informal),* **outstanding, sterling** *Nice work, James! I'm impressed.*

In accepting the award, she mentioned the sterling work of her assistants. | **careful, meticulous, painstaking** | **poor, shoddy, sloppy** | **charitable, humanitarian** | **community, youth** | **ground-breaking, innovative, pioneering** *He did pioneering work on microbes.* | **experimental** | **academic, commercial, educational, environmental, scientific** | **building, construction** | **your own** *Is this all your own work* (= did you do it without help from others)?

QUANT. **bit, piece** *It was an interesting piece of work.*

VERB + WORK **carry out, do, put in** *All the construction work was carried out in 2001. I've got lots of work to do today. She's put in a lot of work on the design.* | **get done, have done** *I think I'd better try and get some work done. We're going to have some building work done on the house.* | **produce** *Work produced on a word processor tends to look more professional.* | **get, have** *We get far too much work at this time of year.* | **take on, undertake** *I've taken on more work than I've got time to do.* | **create, make** *Big football matches make a lot of work for the police.* | **begin, commence, get down to, set about/to, start** *They began work on the project towards the end of the year. Stop talking and get down to work. We set to work on the outside of the house* (= for example, painting it). | **go about** *She went cheerfully about her work.* | **carry on, continue** | **complete, finish** | **halt, hold up, stop** *Work on the project was halted.* | **lose** *They lost the work to a competitor.* | **undo** *The new president spent the first year undoing the work of his predecessor.* | **oversee, supervise** *The assistant* | **set sb to** *She set them to work painting the fence.* | **require** *To carry out accurate market research requires a huge amount of work.* | **hand in** *We're supposed to hand in this work tomorrow.*

WORK + VERB **come** *The work comes in bursts according to the time of year.* | **wait** *That work can wait until tomorrow.* | **go** *How's the work going this morning?* | **involve sth** *What does the work involve?* | **begin, start** | **continue, go on** | **come to a standstill** *Work came to a complete standstill when rumours of redundancies started to circulate.* | **cost** *How much will the work cost?*

WORK + NOUN **ethic** | **rate** *Her boss told her she had to increase her work rate.* | **programme, schedule** | **surface** *Work surfaces should be left clear and clean.*

PREP. **at ~** *He's been hard at work all morning.* | **~ on** *I have to do some work on the engine before it'll be ready to drive.* | **~ with** *She's done a lot of work with disadvantaged children.*

PHRASES **a backlog of work** *It will take a month to clear the backlog of work.* | **keep up the good work** *The hotel manager thanked the staff for their efforts so far and told them to keep up the good work.* | **your life's work** *The art collection was his life's work.* | **make light/short work of sth** (= to do sth quickly and easily) *Mike made short work of fixing the engine.* | **never/not a stroke of work** *She never does a stroke of work.* | **pressure of work** *Pressure of work forced him to cancel his holiday.* | **work in progress** *The showroom has been designed so that people can see work in progress.*

2 **job**

ADJ. **lucrative, well paid** | **badly paid** | **full-time, part-time** | **permanent** |

temporary | regular, steady *He hasn't been in regular work since he left school.* **| casual** *In the college vacations he does casual work in the local hospital.* **| freelance | voluntary | skilled | semi-skilled | unskilled | manual | indoor, outdoor | daily, day-to-day, everyday, routine** *People went about their daily work despite the war. Ambulance crews alternate between emergency and routine work.* **| piece** *It's piece work, so how much you earn depends on how fast you can work.* **| administrative, clerical, office, secretarial | managerial | domestic | social | research | agricultural, farm | building | nice** (*humorous*) *A hundred grand for two days a week? Nice work if you can get it!*

VERB + WORK **have** *He's got a bit of freelance work at the moment.* **| look for** *He got made redundant, so now he's looking for work again.* **| find, get** *Full-time work is hard to find.* **| go to** *I go to work on the bus.* **| go out to** *Some mothers of young children choose not to go out to work.* **| start | finish, knock off** *What time do you finish work?* **| stop** *She stops work at the end of this month.* **| give up** *Just before he was sixty, he decided to give up work.* **| go back to, return to** *She has just returned to work after the birth of her child.* **| coordinate** *Sales reps meet up monthly to coordinate their work.*

WORK + VERB **go** *Work's going well at the moment.* **| start** *What time does work start in the morning?* **| finish**

WORK + NOUN **hours** *Employees must not make personal calls in work hours.* **| place** (also **workplace**) **| area, environment, room** (also **workroom**) **| station** (also **workstation**) **| roster, schedule | experience** *He's doing a month's unpaid work experience with an engineering firm.* **| permit | incentive** *High income tax can undermine work incentives.* **| practice** *An independent report has described some work practices in the industry as old-fashioned.*

PREP. **at ~** *'Where's Diane?' 'She's at work.' We had a party at work.* **| in (your) ~** *With so much unemployment, I'm lucky to be in work. It's important to be happy in your work.* **| off ~** *She's been off work with a bad back since July.* **| out of ~** *He's been out of work since the factory closed.* **| through ~** *I met him through work.*

PHRASES **a line of work** *'What line of work are you in?' 'Computing.'* **| a place of work**

3 **book/music/art**

ADJ. **classic, fine, great | definitive, seminal** *Her book is still considered the definitive work on beetles.* **| influential | erudite, scholarly | ambitious | literary | dramatic | critical | autobiographical, biographical | artistic | art** (also **artwork)** *The artwork in the book is superb.* **| abstract, figurative, graphic | choral, orchestral, piano | collected, complete** *the collected works of Stephen King* **| early | late, mature** *Picasso's mature works*

QUANT. **series | collection, exhibition**

VERB + WORK **compose, produce, write** *Beethoven composed his greatest works towards the end of his life.* **| commission | perform, play | hear, read, see** *Her work can be seen in most of the major European galleries.* **| conduct, direct, edit, produce, publish, put on** *Over the next two years, the theatre is putting on the complete works of Brecht.* **| display, exhibit, show** *The town hall is exhibiting works by local artists.*

WORK + VERB **be called sth, be entitled sth** *a work entitled 'Forward Pass'*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *She's studying the theme of death in the works of Beckett.* **| ~ by** *a work by an unknown eighteenth century writer*

PHRASES **an exhibition of sb's work** *The gallery is staging a special exhibition of Monet's early works.* **| a work of art/fiction/literature** *The building is hated by some and considered a work of art by others. (humorous) They discovered that his CV was a complete work of fiction.* **| a work of genius** *Her latest novel is a work of genius.* > Note at ART

4 *(also* **works) building/repairing**

ADJ. **extensive, major | road** (also **roadworks**) **| maintenance, repair, restoration | demolition**

VERB + WORK **carry out** *We are planning to carry out major works on the site.* **| plan | announce**

WORK + VERB **continue, go on** *The works will continue until the end of July.*

PREP. **at the ~** *A contraflow is in operation at the works near Junction 5.*

5 works: factory

VERB + WORK **open | close (down), shut down**

WORK + VERB **turn sth out** *The works at Bury turned out thousands of television sets* *a week.* **| open | close (down)**

WORK + NOUN **foreman, manager, supervisor | canteen**

PREP. **at the ~** *the night shift at the works*

work *verb*

1 **do a job/task**

ADV. **hard** *He had been working hard all morning.* | **steadily** | **round the clock** *Emergency teams were working round the clock to make the homes secure.* | **full-time, part-time** *A lot of mothers choose to work part-time.* | **efficiently** *I work more efficiently on my own.* | **closely, collaboratively, together** *people who have worked closely together over a period of time* | **alone, independently** | **away** *We worked steadily away all morning.*

VERB + WORK **continue to** | **choose to, prefer to** *I prefer to work as part of a team.* | **motivate sb to** *Employees are motivated to work harder for a whole host of different reasons.* | **enable sb to** *I needed a job which would enable me to work at home.* | **refuse to**

PREP. **as** *He's working as a teacher at the moment.* | **at** *I've spent three hours working at this problem.* | **for** *She works for an oil company.* | **on** *We are working on plans for a new swimming pool.* | **with** *the people you work with*

2 **function; have a result/effect**

ADV. **effectively, efficiently, perfectly, properly, satisfactorily, smoothly, well** *Everything worked very smoothly.* | **independently** *My limbs seemed to be working independently of each other.*

VERB + WORK **seem to PHRASAL VERBS work out**

ADV. **perfectly, well** | **badly**

PREP. **for** *Things worked out well for Janet in the end.*

worker *noun*

ADJ. **good, hard | productive | fast, quick | methodical, steady | slow | core, key | full-time, part-time | permanent | casual** *Casual workers are usually paid by the hour.* **| shift | migrant, seasonal | freelance | self-employed | paid | voluntary, volunteer | low-paid | redundant, unemployed | retired | female, male, woman | black, white | immigrant | fellow | average** *One night in these expensive hotels costs around the average worker's monthly wage.* **| skilled | unskilled | semi-skilled | blue-collar, manual | clerical, office, white-collar | professional | shop-floor | private-sector, public-sector | council, municipal | assembly-line, factory, manufacturing, production | construction | metal | maintenance | railway, transport | agricultural, farm, rural | care, community, health, healthcare, hospital, social, welfare, youth | rescue | aid, relief | charity | field, research | domestic | postal**

VERB + WORKER **employ, have | engage, hire, recruit, take on | dismiss, fire, lay off, make redundant, sack | exploit** *The union accused the firm of exploiting its workers.*

WORKER + VERB **work | run sth, staff sth** *The shop is staffed by one paid worker and three volunteers.* **| lose a job** *400 workers have lost their jobs.* **| demand sth** *Workers demanded fair wages and better working conditions.* **| vote** *The workers voted for industrial action.* **| (be on) strike, walk out** *The workers walked out last month after a failure to agree all the terms for the 110 lay-offs.*

WORKER + NOUN **participation** *worker participation in decision making*

PHRASES **the exploitation of workers, workers' demands, worker's rights** > Note at JOB

workforce *noun*

ADJ. **educated, qualified, skilled, trained** *a highly-skilled workforce* | **flexible, versatile** | **committed, dedicated, motivated** | **local** *A quarter of the local workforce is unemployed.* | **ageing, declining, diminishing** *A declining workforce has to provide for an increasing number of retired people.* | **available, total** *The shipyard has a total workforce of 9,000.* | **entire, whole** *The new management decided to retrain the entire workforce.* | **worldwide** | **large, small** | **reduced** | **2,000-strong, 3,500, etc.** | **temporary** | **British, Japanese, etc.** | **female, male** | **industrial, manufacturing**

VERB + WORKFORCE **employ, have** *The company employs a workforce of nearly 5,000.* | **cut, halve, reduce, slash, slim (down), trim** | **double, expand, increase** | **retrain, train** | **consult (with)** *The management always consults with the workforce before introducing major changes.* | **enter, leave** *The increase in the number of people entering the workforce has increased unemployment figures.*

WORKFORCE + VERB **fall** | **double, increase, rise** | **number sth, stand at sth** *The workforce numbers 500.*

PREP. **among a/the ~** *There is a change in the distribution of skills among the workforce.* | **in a/the ~** *One person in the workforce is always responsible for the same job.*

PHRASES **a member of the workforce**

workings *noun*

ADJ. **inner, internal** *the inner workings of a watch the internal workings of Parliament* **| basic | complex, detailed | financial**

VERB + WORKINGS **analyse, explore, investigate | lay bare, reveal, shed light on** *Their research aims to shed light on the workings of the human mind.* **| know | understand** *It is hard to understand the complex workings of the social security system.* **| explain**

workload *noun*

ADJ. **enormous, heavy, huge | excessive | additional, extra, increased | lighter, reduced | administrative**

VERB + WORKLOAD **have** *She's got an increased workload this year.* **| expand, increase | ease, lighten, reduce** *An assistant one day a week would ease my workload.* **| distribute, share, spread** *We want to try and distribute the workload more evenly.* **| cope with**

WORKLOAD + VERB **expand, increase** *Doctors are having to cope with an ever-expanding workload.*

workman *noun*

ADJ. **good, skilled | council**

QUANT. **gang** *A gang of council workmen has been digging a hole in the road.*

workmanship *noun*

ADJ. **exquisite, fine, good, quality | bad, crude, defective, faulty, poor, shoddy**

VERB + WORKMANSHIP **admire** *I was admiring the exquisite workmanship in the mosaic.* **| criticise**

PREP. **~ on** *He accused the garage of shoddy workmanship on the bodywork.*

PHRASES **the quality/standard of workmanship**

workout *noun*

ADJ. **good | hard, vigorous | light | forty-minute, two-hour, etc. | aerobic**

VERB + WORKOUT **do, have** *When I do a good workout, I feel fine. The team had a hard workout this morning.* **| give sb/sth** *I went for a ride to give my new bike a workout.*

workshop *noun*

1 **room/building**

ADJ. **craft, design, pottery | engineering, locomotive, railway | farm | carpenter's, stonemason's, etc.**

VERB + WORKSHOP **set up** *He set up a workshop for his carving.*

WORKSHOP + VERB **employ sb** *The workshop employs 25 full-time workers.*

PREP. **in a/the ~**

2 **period of discussion/work**

ADJ. **day-long, two-day, weekend, etc. | group | introductory | practical | development, training** *The company holds regular skills development workshops.* **| skills** *Everyone in Personnel has attended a media skills workshop.* **| research | dance, drama, music, poetry, theatre, writing**

QUANT. **series** *The Careers Advisory Service will be running a series of workshops for students.*

VERB + WORKSHOP **do, hold, host, organize, put on, run** *The Institute will host a special two-day workshop on new building materials.* **| attend, go to, participate in, take part in**

WORKSHOP + VERB **cover sth, examine sth, focus on sth, look at sth** *The workshop covered a wide range of issues.* **| aim to, be aimed at sth** *a workshop aimed at brainstorming new marketing ideas*

WORKSHOP + NOUN **discussion, session | member, participant**

PREP. **at a/the ~, during a/the ~** *During the workshop, they each practised their part in the performance.* **| in a/the ~** *In the one-day workshop, she taught us the importance of breathing exercises.* **| ~ on** *I learned these new skills at a workshop on databases.*

PHRASES **a member of a workshop, a participant in a workshop**

world *noun*

1 **the earth/its people**

ADJ. **known** *a medieval map of the known world* | **whole**

VERB + WORLD **create, make** *They believe that God created the world.* | **destroy** *One of these days, humankind will destroy the world.* | **take over** *Fast food outlets seem to be taking over the world.* | **tour, travel** | **see** *As a young man, he wanted to see the world before he settled down.* | **lead** *Sweden leads the world in safety legislation.*

WORLD + NOUN **leader** | **economy** | **recession, slump** | **market** | **trade** | **price** *World oil prices continue to rise.* | **domination** *A handful of Internet companies are battling for world domination.* | **affairs, events** | **attention, opinion** *The bombing alienated world opinion.* | **war** | **champion** *He was easily beaten by the reigning world champion.* | **championships, cup, title** | **class** *The team is world class.* | **beaters** *The Portuguese team looked like world beaters in last night's game.* | **record** *She shattered the world record for the 200 metres.* | **rankings** *He has never before featured in the top ten world rankings.* | **religion** *the major world religions* | **music** (= music that includes influences from different parts of the world) | **tour** *The band are about to embark on a six-month world tour.*

PREP. **across the ~** *Astronomers across the world will be watching the night sky.* | **all around/over/round the ~** *The ceremony was watched live by millions around the world.* | **in the ~** *He felt he was the luckiest man in the whole world.* | **throughout the ~** *People throughout the world will be watching the big match on television.*

PHRASES **the end of the world** *(figurative) It won't be the end of the world if you don't get the job.* | **on a world scale** *Communist parties were formed on a world scale after the Russian Revolution.* | **on the world stage** *The country became an important player on the world stage.* | **a part of the world** *It's an interesting part of the world.* | **the world over** *Scientists the world over have been waiting for this breakthrough.*

2 **part of the earth**

ADJ. **Arab, English-speaking, Western, etc.** *Heads of state from all over the Arab world gathered for the conference.* | **developed, First, industrialized, rich** *First World consumers will have to eat less meat.* | **developing, Third,**

underdeveloped | New, Old *Machismo is a New World phenomenon with roots in Old World cultures.*

PREP. **in the … ~** *In the Western world, there is a different attitude to marriage.*

3 **life/society**

ADJ. **ever-changing | cruel, dog-eat-dog, hard, tough | crazy, mad, topsy-turvy | ancient, medieval, Roman, etc. | contemporary, modern, today's | brave new** *the architects' vision of a brave new world of pristine concrete* **| vanishing** *These tribesmen are proud survivors of a vanishing world.* **| outside, real** *Throughout his time in prison he had no contact with the outside world. In the real world things don't always happen like they do in books.* **| dream, fantasy, imaginary, inner, private** *She enjoys creating imaginary worlds for children. She lives in her own inner world.* **| material, physical | simulated, virtual | spiritual | spirit** *Mediums claim to receive messages from the spirit world.* **| social | animal, insect, natural, plant** *I like living in the country because I'm interested in the natural world.* **| academic, art, business, fashion, industrial, literary, medical, sports | different** *We come from different worlds.* **| sb's own (little)** *She lives in her own little world.* **| whole (wide), wider** *She told him he was her only friend in the whole wide world. The wider world learned of his illness months after he told his family.* **| small** *I'm sure we'll meet again. It's a very small world in this profession.*

VERB + WORLD **change** *Young people always think they are going to change the world.* **| have, inhabit, live in** *Children often have their own private world.* **| look at, perceive, see, view** *different ways of looking at the world* **| come into, enter, escape into** *We come into the world with nothing. He entered the world of politics in 1997. Showbusiness gave him the chance to escape into another world.* **| bring sb into** *She had brought six children into the world.* **| escape from, shut yourself away from, shut out** *He closed his eyes and tried to shut out the world.* **| face** *For the first time since the death of her parents, she felt able to face the world.* **| take on** *He was so happy to leave school, he felt ready to take on the world.* **| tell** *He wanted to tell the world how happy he was.* **| prove to, show** *She was determined to show the world that she was no loser.* **| shake, shock, stun** *The news of the assassination shook the world.*

WORLD + VERB **fall apart** *His world fell apart when his wife died.* **| revolve around sb/sth** *She thinks the world revolves around her and her schedule.* **| owe sb sth** *He seems to think that the world owes him a living.*

WORLD + NOUN **knowledge | view** *Teachers influence the world view of their young* *students.*

PREP. **in the … ~** *He's well known in the fashion world.* **| ~ about/around** *At this age, babies are starting to take an interest in the world around them.* **| ~ of** *In the world of high finance, there is little room for sentiment.*

PHRASES **experience/knowledge/perception of the world, the eyes of the world** *The eyes of the world are on the president.* **| in an ideal/a perfect world** *In an ideal world, I'd like to work just three days a week.* **| in a world of your own** *I tapped on the window to get her attention but she was in a world of her own.* **| the rest of the world** *He just wanted to shut himself away from the rest of the world.* **| watch the world go by** *He likes to sit outside his front door and watch the world go by.* **| the ways of the world** *He's too young to understand the ways of the world.* **| worlds apart** *Although they are twins, they are worlds apart in their attitude to life.*

worm *noun*

WORM + VERB **burrow, crawl** *Worms burrow down through the soil.* **| wriggle, writhe** *The worm was wriggling on the hook.*

WORM + NOUN **cast**

worried *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem | get** *I started to get worried when they didn't arrive home.*

ADV. **deeply, desperately, dreadfully, extremely, frantically, genuinely, particularly, really, seriously, terribly, very | increasingly | a bit, quite, rather, slightly | rightly** *Citizens in inner-city areas are desperately worried and rightly so.*

PREP. **about** *We were really worried about you!*

PHRASES **worried sick** *She was worried sick about her son.*

worry *noun*

ADJ. **big, considerable, great, main, major, real, serious** *Paying the mortgage is a big worry for many people. Her mother's poor health caused her considerable worry. My greatest worry is that he'll do something stupid.* **| slight | constant** *The money side of things has been a constant worry.* **| unnecessary** *She gave her parents unnecessary worry when she forgot to phone them.* **| immediate** *My immediate worry is money.* **| nagging, niggling** *I had a nagging worry that we weren't going to get there.* **| secret** *It was a relief to share my secret worries with him.* **| business, economic, financial, money | health**

VERB + WORRY **have** *That year he had major health worries.* **| be beset by** *She wanted to enjoy her retirement without being beset by financial worries.* **| be frantic/ill/out of your mind/sick with** *I didn't know where he was and I was frantic with worry.* **| express | share | cause (sb), give sb | arouse, prompt** *The earth tremors prompted worries of a second major earthquake.* **| add to, increase** *The fact that she heard nothing from him only increased her worry.* **| forget** *Try and forget your worries for a little while.* **| ease | remove, take out** *Take the worry out of travelling with our holiday insurance offer.*

WORRY + VERB **disappear | prove groundless/unfounded** *Most of Nigel's worries proved groundless.*

PREP. **amid ~** *The pound has fallen to a new low amid worries that the British economy is heading for trouble.* **| with ~** *He was sick with worry about everything.* **| ~ about, ~ over** *They will not have worries over money.* **| ~ to** *His mother's health is an enormous worry to him.*

PHRASES **cause for worry** *There is no immediate cause for worry.* **| free from worry, freedom from worry, have no worries on that account/score** *The staff all work very hard?we've got no worries on that account.* **| the least of your worries** *When he lost his job, the size of his flat was the least of his worries.* **| a source of worry** *Money is a constant source of worry.*

worry *verb*

ADV. **a lot, particularly, really, terribly** *She worries a lot about crime. What really worries me is what we do if there's nobody there.* **| slightly | needlessly, unduly, unnecessarily** *You do worry unnecessarily, you know.* **| not too much** *Don't worry too much about it.* **| constantly**

VERB + WORRY **not let sth, not need to** *Don't let it worry you unduly.* **| begin to | tell sb not to**

PREP. **about** *Don't worry about me, I'll be fine.* **| with** *Don't worry the driver with unnecessary requests.*

PHRASES **enough/nothing to worry about** *Don't bother Harry?he has enough to worry about as it is.* **| stop worrying** *Stop worrying, Dad, we'll be fine.* **| worry yourself sick/to death** *(informal)*

worrying *adj*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **deeply, extremely, particularly, seriously, terribly, very | a bit, rather, slightly**

worse *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *I feel even worse today!* **| become, get, grow** *The problem is getting worse all the time. The pain grew worse.* **| make sth** *Ignoring the problem will make it worse.*

ADV. **considerably, dramatically, far, a good/great deal, infinitely, a lot, (very) much, a sight, significantly** *It's much worse for the parents than it is for the child. Things could be a sight worse than they are.* **| almost** *The area seemed almost worse than the city he had left.* **| a little, rather, slightly, substantially | progressively, steadily** *The problem became progressively worse.* **| even, still** *We've run out of petrol. Worse still, we can't get any more until tomorrow.*

worsen *verb*

ADV. **considerably, dramatically, markedly, significantly** *The problem has worsened considerably in recent months.* **| steadily | rapidly | suddenly**

VERB + WORSEN **continue to** *The economic recession has continued to worsen.*

worship *noun*

ADJ. **daily, regular | evening, morning | Sunday | public | collective | religious | divine | Christian, Hindu, etc. | pagan | ancestor, nature, sun | idol, image | hero** *his hero worship of the national team* **| devil**

VERB + WORSHIP **conduct, lead** *Our worship today is led by the Reverend John Parker.* **| attend**

PREP. **in ~** *the use of music in worship*

PHRASES **an act of worship, forms of worship, freedom of worship** *Under the new regime, all religions enjoy freedom of worship.* **| a place of worship** *Fifteen per cent of the population attend a place of worship.*

worst *noun* **the worst**

VERB + WORST **expect** *It doesn't matter what I say. My mother always expects the worst.* **| fear, suspect | be prepared for, prepare for** *Although all the votes have not yet been counted, the Democrats are preparing for the worst.* **| confirm** *I had not expected to do well in my exams, and the letter confirmed the worst.* **| be spared, escape** *Scotland seemed to have escaped the worst of the recession.* **| do your** *Let them do their worst* (= be as difficult as they can)?*we'll fight them every inch of the way.*

WORST + VERB **be over** *He was still very ill, but the worst seemed to be over.*

PREP. **at (sb/sth's) ~** *At worst, the drug can be fatal. At its worst, bullying is a kind of torture.* **| through the ~** *Her sister helped her through the worst of her illness.*

VERB + WORST **bring out the worst in sb** *Pressure can bring out the worst in people.* **| get the worst of it** *He'd been in a fight and had obviously got the worst of it.* **| the worst that can happen** *Don't worry?the worst that can happen is that you'll get a fine.*

worth *adj.*

VERBS **be | become | make sth | consider sth, think sth** *Most of the candidates were not considered worth interviewing.*

ADV. **really, well** *This book is well worth reading.* **| certainly, definitely | barely, hardly, scarcely** *It's so unimportant it's hardly worth mentioning.* **| almost | potentially | reportedly, reputedly | always** *It's always worth seeing if you can get a cheap, last-minute deal.*

PREP. **to** *This order is potentially worth millions of pounds to the company.*

worth *noun*

ADJ. **real, true | intrinsic, objective** *Study has an intrinsic worth, as well as helping you achieve your goals.* **| individual, own, personal, self | moral | economic, financial, market** *Some experts doubt the economic worth of the project. The insurance company agreed to pay the car's current market worth.* **| net | literary, musical**

VERB + WORTH **have | prove** *The emergency lighting has proved its worth this year.* **| affirm** *Asking for advice from people affirms their personal worth.* **| find out, learn, realize** *I only found out its real worth when I tried to buy another one.* **| appreciate, know** *They don't appreciate her true worth. She knows her own worth.* **| doubt, express doubts about, question | assess, estimate, give sb an estimate of** *Can you give me some estimate of its worth?*

PREP. **of ~** *He never contributed anything of worth to the conversation.* **| ~ to** *This necklace isn't worth anything in money terms, but its worth to me is incalculable.*

PHRASES **at sb/sth's real/true worth** *They don't appreciate her at her real worth.* **| of proven worth** *They are looking for a new sales manager of proven worth.* **| a sense of (your own) worth** *She has no sense of her own worth.*

worthless *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, prove, seem | become | make sth** *These contradictions made his evidence worthless.* **| consider sth, discard sth as, dismiss sth as, regard sth as, reject sth as, see sth as** *The opinion polls were dismissed as worthless.*

ADV. **absolutely, completely, quite, totally, utterly | almost, virtually | largely**

PREP. **to** *The diseased plants are quite worthless to the farmer.*

worthwhile *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | become | make sth** *Their gratitude made it all worthwhile.* **| consider sth, find sth, think sth** *You might find it worthwhile to consult a financial adviser.*

ADV. **extremely, really, very, well | hardly** *The gamble seemed hardly worthwhile.* **| financially, socially** *pursuing socially worthwhile goals*

worthy *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | consider sth, deem sth, judge sth, think sth**

ADV. **most, very, well | entirely, wholly | hardly, scarcely** *The matter is scarcely worthy of the managing director's time.* **| enough** *We thought it was a worthy enough objective.*

PREP. **of** *It's a matter worthy of our attention.*

wound *noun*

ADJ. **bad, deep, serious | flesh** *Despite the large amount of blood, it was only a flesh wound.* **| gaping, open | clean | face, head, leg, etc. | bullet, gunshot, knife, stab | entry, exit** *The exit wound made by the bullet was much larger than the entry wound.* **| old | war** *His old war wounds still ached in certain weathers.*

VERB + WOUND **inflict | receive, suffer | examine, probe | clean, dress**

WOUND + VERB **close | heal** *It was a clean wound, and it healed quickly.*

WOUND + NOUN **care, healing**

PREP. **~ in** *He had deep wounds in his chest.* **| ~ to** *He died of gunshot wounds to the head.*

wound *verb*

1 **injure sb's body**

ADV. **badly, critically, gravely, grievously, seriously, severely | fatally, mortally** *She was fatally wounded in a car crash.* **| slightly**

PREP. **in** *One reporter was wounded in the leg.*

PHRASES **the walking wounded** (= people who have been wounded, but not so badly that they cannot walk)

2 **hurt sb's feelings**

ADV. **deeply** *She was deeply wounded by his remarks.*

woven *adj.*

VERBS **be**

ADV. **closely, densely, finely, tightly** *very fine and closely woven silk* **| coarsely, loosely**

wrangle *noun*

ADJ. **bitter | complex | legal**

VERB + WRANGLE **be involved in, get into, have**

WRANGLE + VERB **ensue | continue, go on** *The legal wrangle continues.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The two countries fell out in a bitter wrangle over imports.* **| ~ between** *The wrangle between the school and the local council has gone on for two years.* **| ~ over, ~ with** *I don't want to get into a wrangle with the committee.*

wrap *verb*

ADV. **firmly, securely, tightly | loosely | carefully | individually** *Each apple was individually wrapped in paper.* **| up**

PREP. **around/round** *He wrapped his arms tightly around her waist.* **| in** *She wrapped the child carefully in a blanket.* **PHRASAL VERBS wrap (sb) up**

ADV. **warm, warmly, well** *Make sure you wrap up warmly if you're going out.*

PREP. **against** *We went outside, well wrapped up against the cold.* **| in** *Christine was wrapped up in one of the blankets.*

wrapper *noun*

ADJ. **chocolate, sweet | Cellophane(R), foil, paper, plastic | sealed | plain | empty**

VERB + WRAPPER **remove, take off, tear off | drop, throw away, throw down** *He dropped a sweet wrapper.*

WRAPPER + VERB **litter sth** *Sweet wrappers littered the floor.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The book arrived in a plain brown wrapper.* **| on a/the ~** *There was a list of ingredients on the wrapper.* **| out of a/the** *She took the chocolate bar out of the foil wrapper.*

wrath *noun*

ADJ. **full, great | divine** *They saw the floods as a sign of divine wrath.*

VERB + WRATH **arouse, bring (down), feel, incur, provoke** *This remark brought the judge's full wrath down on Sergeant Golding. This is the second hotel to feel the wrath of the bombers. He incurred Helen's wrath by arriving late. What had she done to provoke his wrath?* **| fear** *She feared her father's wrath.* **| brave, face, risk** *If the prime minister fails, he will face the wrath of the voters.* **| appease, avoid, escape** *They left gifts for the gods to appease their wrath. He fled the country to escape the king's wrath.* **| turn, vent** *He vented his wrath on his colleagues.*

PREP. **~ at** *his wrath at the insult* **| ~ of** *the wrath of God* **| ~ over** *the government's wrath over the incident*

wreath *noun*

ADJ. **Christmas, festive | holly, laurel, poppy**

VERB + WREATH **lay** *The Queen laid a poppy wreath at the war memorial.* **| send** *He didn't come to the funeral but he sent a wreath.* **| be crowned with, wear**

PREP. **~ of** *She wore a wreath of roses round her head.*

wreck *noun*

1 **of a ship**

VERB + WRECK **discover, find, locate** *Divers were sent down to try and locate the wreck.* **| raise, salvage** *They're going to try and raise the wreck from the sea bed.* **| salvage sth from | escape (from)**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *They are worried about the oil still in the wreck.* **| on a/the ~** *Heavy seas prevented salvage teams from landing on the wreck.* **| ~ of** *the wreck of the Titanic*

2 **of a car/plane**

ADJ. **total | crumpled | blazing, burning** *Explosions ripped through the blazing wreck.*

VERB + WRECK **be trapped in** *Two passengers are still trapped in the wreck.*

3 **of a person/thing**

ADJ. **absolute, complete, total | emotional, nervous** *The interview reduced him to a nervous wreck.* **| gibbering, quivering, shaking, whimpering** *I always turn into a gibbering wreck at interviews.* **| physical**

VERB + WRECK **feel, look** *I hadn't slept for two days, and I felt a complete physical wreck.* **| reduce sb to | escape (from) | salvage sth from**

PREP. **~ of** *They still hoped to salvage something from the wreck of their marriage.*

wreck *verb*

ADV. **completely, totally** *A bomb completely wrecked the building.* **| almost, nearly | effectively**

VERB + WRECK **threaten to** *a crisis that threatens to wreck the peace talks*

wreckage *noun*

ADJ. **mangled, tangled, twisted | blazing, burning, smoking | aircraft**

QUANT. **bit, piece** *Pieces of wreckage have been found up to three miles away.*

VERB + WRECKAGE **scatter, spread** *The crash left wreckage spread over a wide area.* **| be strewn with** *The runway is still strewn with wreckage.* **| sight** *Wreckage has been sighted fifteen miles north of the island.* **| survey** *He surveyed the wreckage of his expensive equipment.* **| search, sift through** *Police are searching the wreckage for clues to the cause of the accident.* **| examine | clear** *The wreckage has now been cleared from the motorway.* **| be buried in, be trapped in** *Several people are still trapped in the wreckage.* **| crawl from | cut sb (free) from, free sb from, pull sb from** *He had to be cut from the wreckage by firemen.* **| find sth among** *The remains of an explosive device were found among the wreckage.* **| recover sth from, rescue/save sb/sth from, salvage sth from** *Another body has been recovered from the wreckage. (figurative) Could nothing be rescued from the wreckage of her dreams?*

WRECKAGE + VERB **be strewn** *Wreckage was strewn over a wide area.*

PREP. **amidst/among/amongst the ~** *Bodies lay among the tangled wreckage.* **| in the ~** *Her body was discovered in the wreckage.* **| ~ from** *A search is going on for wreckage from the blazing aircraft.*

wriggle *verb*

ADV. **uncomfortably** *The children wriggled uncomfortably in their seats.* **| free** *The dog wriggled free of his grasp and ran off.* **| about, away**

PHRASES **wriggle your way** *She wriggled her way under the heavy eiderdown.*

wrinkle *noun*

ADJ. **fine**

VERB + WRINKLE **have | get | prevent** *Is there anything you can do to prevent wrinkles?*

WRINKLE + VERB **appear, form** *Fine wrinkles started to appear round her eyes.*

PREP. **without a ~** *Her skin was still without a wrinkle.*

wrinkled *adj.*

VERBS **be | become**

ADV. **all, deeply, extremely, very** *His face was all wrinkled and old.* **| prematurely**

wrist *noun*

ADJ. **bony, slender, small, thin, tiny | sinewy | limp, weak | broken, injured, sprained**

VERB + WRIST **catch (sb by), clasp (sb by), grab (sb by), grasp (sb by), grip (sb by), seize (sb by), take (sb by)** *'Is it serious?' she asked, clasping the doctor's wrist. I turned to leave but he clasped me by the wrist.* **| bend, twist** *He grabbed her wrist but she twisted it free.* **| encircle, enclose** *Strong fingers encircled her tiny wrists.* **| rub | break, dislocate, fracture, sprain | bandage | bind** *The burglars bound the family's wrists behind their backs.* **| slash, slit** *He slashed his wrists in a suicide attempt.*

WRIST + NOUN **watch** (also **wristwatch**) **| band, strap | action** *The secret of making the ball spin is in the wrist action.* **| joint | injury**

PREP. **around/round the/your ~** *A policeman snapped handcuffs around his wrists.* **| by the ~, on the/your ~** *He wears weights on his wrists when he goes running.*

PHRASES **a flick of the wrist** *She sent the shuttlecock flying over the net with a practised flick of the wrist.*

writ *noun*

ADJ. **High Court, Supreme Court, etc. | legal | libel, personal injury, etc.**

VERB + WRIT **apply for, obtain** *Creditors could obtain a writ for the arrest of their debtors.* **| file, issue, serve** *A writ was filed in the High Court. The solicitor came to serve a writ on him.* **| be served with, receive** *He has been served with a High Court writ.*

PREP. **in a/the ~** *22 defendants are named in the writ.* **| ~ against** *The businessmen have issued a writ against the authority for damages.* **| ~ for** *a writ for damages/libel* **| ~ of** *(technical) a writ of execution/summons*

write *verb*

1 form letters and words on paper

ADV. **clearly, neatly** *Children must learn to write neatly.* | **busily** *She was busily writing in an exercise book.* | **down, out** *I'd better write this down, otherwise I'll forget it.*

VERB + WRITE **learn to** | **teach sb to**

PREP. **on** *He wrote a list on the back of an old envelope.*

2 produce a piece of writing

ADV. **beautifully, well** | **badly** | **clearly** *the ability to write clearly in plain English* | **extensively** *He has written extensively on the subject.* | **anonymously**

VERB + WRITE **commission sb to** *He has been commissioned to write a history of the town.* | **inspire sb to, prompt sb to** *She was inspired to write the poem by a visit to the cathedral.*

PREP. **about** *a journalist who writes about problems in the developing world* | **for** *She writes for 'The Times'.* | **of** *She wrote of her life in Africa.* | **on** *He writes on political issues.*

writer *noun*

ADJ. **celebrated, distinguished, eminent, famous, great, influential, leading, major, prominent, well-known** *one of the greatest writers of all time* | **award-winning** | **best-selling, popular** | **favourite** | **prolific** *a very prolific crime writer* | **creative, fine, good, talented** *one of the best writers in journalism today* | **experienced** | **young** | **aspiring** *a chance for aspiring writers to get their work published* | **academic, freelance, ghost** (also **ghostwriter**), **professional, staff** | **anonymous** | **contemporary, living, modern, recent** | **ancient, classical, Greek, Roman** | **Renaissance, Victorian, etc.** | **sixteenth-century, etc.** | **early, later** *early writers in sociology* | **female, gay, male, woman** *She gives talks about being a black woman writer.* | **Christian, communist, feminist, political, socialist** | **religious, spiritual** | **comedy, fiction, prose, science-fiction** | **film, letter, magazine, music, paperback, screenplay, script, short-story, software, textbook** | **copy, feature, gossip, headline, leader, report** | **cookery, crime, fashion, food, football, golf, science, sports, thriller, travel** | **short-hand** | **the present** *(written) The present writer* (= the person writing) *has no experience in microbiology.*

WRITER + VERB **write sth** *a popular writer who has written over forty books* | **argue sth, describe sth, point sth out, put it** *(written)*, **say sth, suggest sth** *As one twelfth-century writer put it, English wine could be drunk only with closed eyes and through clenched teeth. Is political culture, as some writers have suggested, in a state of collapse?* | **be interested in sth**

PREP. **~ for** *a freelance feature writer for the Guardian* | **~ of** *a writer of children's books* | **~ on** *He is a prominent writer on civil liberties.* | **~ to** *a writer to the letters column*

PHRASES **an association/a group/a guild of writers, a writer's association/group/guild/union, a writer in residence** ***We have decided not to employ a writer in residence after June.*** | **a writer of the day/period/time** ***Unlike many writers of the period, she is not preoccupied with morality.*** | **writer's block** ***He's just released a new album after two years of writer's block.*** **> Note at JOB**

writing *noun*

1 **putting words on paper**

VERB + WRITING **do, practise** *Every morning the children do writing.* **| improve**

WRITING + NOUN **paper | desk**

PHRASES **reading and writing**

2 **activity/job of writing**

ADJ. **effective** *The book aims to teach effective essay writing.* **| creative, descriptive, imaginative | academic, critical, scientific, technical | fiction, essay, letter, novel, prose, report, script | travel**

QUANT. **piece**

VERB + WRITING **teach**

WRITING + NOUN **skills**

PHRASES **a style of writing**

3 **written/printed words**

VERB + WRITING **put sth into** *The arrangement was never put into writing.*

PREP. **in ~** *This agreement has to be confirmed in writing.*

4 **(often writings) books, etc.**

ADJ. **fine, good, great | bad | influential | early, later** *His experiences in India influenced his later writings.* **| ancient, contemporary** *Ancient writings reinforce their claims to the land.* **| published, unpublished | prose | academic, critical, historical, mystical, philosophical, political, religious, sacred, scholarly, scientific** *Christians share some of their sacred writings with the Jews.* **| popular | feminist | modernist | collected, selected** *Ruskin's Collected Writings*

QUANT. **piece | anthology, collection** *an anthology of writing about jazz*

VERB + WRITING **read | publish** *His writings on the history of art were published by Greenway and Settle.* **| influence, inspire**

WRITING + VERB **be about sth, be concerned with sth, deal with sth** *Her early writing was concerned with the French Revolution.* **| include sth, range** *His writings range from ancient to contemporary art, and include a study of Giorgione's paintings.* **| indicate sth, provide sth, reflect sth, show sth, suggest sth** *His writings provide us with a first-hand account of the civil war. Her writings reflect the breadth of her interests.* **| influence sb/sth, inspire sb/sth**

PREP. **in … ~** *You find a greater use of the passive in scientific writing.* | through sb's ~ *Her influence has been greatest through her writings.* **| ~ about** *Her name crops up frequently in writings about the Renaissance.* **| ~ by** *a collection of writings by artists* **| ~ on** *The book is a collection of writings on death by various authors.*

5 **handwriting**

ADJ. **small, tiny | legible, neat | illegible | cursive, joined-up | childish | spidery**

VERB + WRITING **have** *He's got very neat writing.* **| read** *I can't read your writing.* **| recognize** *I didn't recognize the writing.*

PREP. **in sb's ~** *The list was in Elizabeth's writing.* > See HANDWRITING

wrong *adj.*

VERBS **be, seem | go** *Things seemed to be going horribly wrong.* **| get sth** *He got all his sums wrong.* **| find sth** *The doctor could find nothing physically wrong with him.* **| get sb** *Don't get me wrong* (= don't misunderstand me)*?I'm not asking for any favours.* **| prove sb** *She was able to prove him wrong.*

ADV. **all, badly, disastrously, drastically, grossly, hopelessly, horribly, seriously, terribly, tragically** *You've got it all wrong. I never meant to imply that you were responsible.* **| absolutely, completely, entirely, fundamentally, quite, totally, wholly | just, simply** *She's simply wrong for this job.* **| not far** *They weren't far wrong with their estimate of 100,000.* **| not necessarily | clearly, obviously, plainly | morally, physically**

PREP. **about** *You were completely wrong about Maurice. He's not leaving.* **| with** *She was worried that there was something seriously wrong with her.*

wrong *noun*

ADJ. **great, terrible | past | legal, moral | civil, criminal** *There are various kinds of civil wrongs, or torts.*

VERB + WRONG **commit, do (sb), inflict** *If they do wrong, they have to be punished. You are answerable in court for wrongs done to individuals. According to her, her son could do no wrong. He admitted he had done her wrong and asked for forgiveness.* **| compensate (sb) for, make up for, put right, redress, right, undo** *How can we right these wrongs?* **| suffer** *It's the job of the newspapers to expose the wrongs suffered by such people.* **| forgive** *The two communities must learn to forgive past wrongs.* **| acknowledge, apologize for, recognize | see no** *I see no wrong in asking him to share the expenses.* **| expose | avenge, take revenge for**

PREP. **in the ~** *Although he knew he was in the wrong, he wouldn't apologize.*

PHRASES **the difference between right and wrong** *Children have to learn the difference between right and wrong.* **| the rights and wrongs (of sth)** *Whatever the rights and wrongs of the situation, there's not a lot we can do.*

X-ray *noun*

ADJ. **chest, foot, etc. | routine** VERB + X-RAY **have | do, take | examine** X-RAY + VERB **reveal sth, show sth** *The X-ray showed a crack in one rib.* X-RAY + NOUN **equipment, machine, plate | crystallography, diffraction | fluorescence, photography, picture | department, unit | eyes, vision**

PREP. **~ of** *The dentist took an X-ray of my jaw.* **| ~ on** *I had to have an X-ray on my knee.*

PHRASES **the result/results of the X-ray** *The result of the X-ray gave no cause for concern.*

xylophone *nou*n > Special page at MUSIC

yacht *noun*

ADJ. **luxury | private, royal | charter | cruising, racing | motor, sailing, steam**

VERB + YACHT **cruise on, sail** *They are cruising on a large motor yacht.* **| moor, tie up**

YACHT + VERB **sail, set sail**

YACHT + NOUN **race | club | marina**

PREP. **aboard/on/on board a/the ~**

yard *noun* > Note at MEASURE

yardstick *noun*

ADJ. **good, useful | common**

VERB + YARDSTICK **have** *We don't have a common yardstick by which to compare the two cases.* **| apply, use | give sb, provide (sb with), serve as | measure sth against/by**

PREP. **against a ~** *The new test provides a yardstick against which to measure children's learning.* **| by a ~** *By any yardstick, that's a large amount of money.*

yarn *noun*

1 **thread**

ADJ. **fine, thick**

QUANT. **length, piece**

VERB + YARN **knit, spin, weave** *The yarn is woven into a coarse fabric.* **| thread** *The yarn has to be threaded through the needle.* **| dye | use**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *There's a knot in the yarn.*

2 **story**

ADJ. **amusing, good | adventure**

VERB + YARN **spin (sb), tell (sb)** *He tried to spin us some yarn about how he was collecting for the church. It was all lies.*

PREP. **~ about**

yawn *noun*

ADJ. **big, deep, huge | noisy | stifled**

VERB + YAWN **stifle, suppress** *He struggled to stifle a yawn.* **| give** *The little boy gave a huge yawn.* **| conceal** *He tried to conceal his yawn behind his hand.*

PREP. **with a ~**

yawn *verb*

ADV. **hugely, widely** *He sat up and yawned hugely.*

VERB + YAWN **make sb | hear sb**

PREP. **at** *He got fed up of people yawning at him when he talked about his job.*

year *noun*

ADJ. **last, past** *The chart shows our performance over the past year.* | **past, preceding, previous, recent** *The event has not proved popular in past years. They had met once the previous year.* | **current** | **coming, following, future, next** *We have high hopes for the coming year. She died the following year. We aim to do even better in future years.* | **consecutive, successive** *She won the race for the third successive year.* | **alternate** | **intervening** *He soon realized that a lot had changed in the intervening years.* | **early, later** *the early years of the twenty-first century In his later years, he drifted away from politics.* | **new** *We're going skiing early in the new year.* | **final** *final-year university students* | **golden, good, happy, memorable, momentous** *the golden years of motoring* | **profitable** | **bad, hard, lean, poor** | **peak, record** *a peak year for exports* | **calendar** | **leap** | **academic, school** | **financial, fiscal, tax** | **light** *(often figurative) The new range puts us light years ahead of the competition.* | **election** | **sabbatical** *He spent his sabbatical year doing research in Moscow.* | **inter-war, post-war, pre-war, war ~s** *The children spent the war years abroad.* | **formative, tender ~s** *She was born in Spain but spent her formative years in Italy. children of tender years*

VERB + YEAR **spend** *He spent last year trying to get a new job.* | **take** *It took him ten years to qualify as a vet.* | **celebrate** *Next year they celebrate fifty years of marriage.* | **put on** *His wife's death has put years on him* (= made him look/feel much older). | **take off** *Careful make-up and styling can take years off you* (= make you look much younger).

YEAR + VERB **begin, start** | **end, finish** | **elapse, go by, pass** *A year elapsed before I heard from him again. The last year went by in flash.* | **run from/to sth** *The academic year runs from October to June.* | **see sth** *That year saw the explosion of the Internet.*

PREP. **by the ~ …** *The reforms will be fully implemented by the year 2007.* | **during the ~** *during the next academic year* | **for a/the ~** *profit for the current year to 31 December We lived there for ten years.* | **in a ~** *I hope to retire in a year/in a year's time.* | **in a/the ~** *in the next tax year Britain was invaded in the year 1066.* | **in ~s** *It's the first time we've met in years* (= for many years). | **over/under a ~** *We've been friends for over twenty years.* | **per ~** *Over 10,000 people per year are injured in this type of accident.* | **throughout the ~** *The global economy means that all types of fruit and vegetables are available throughout the year.* | **~s between … and … / from … to …** *the boom years from 1993 to 2000* | **~ of** *The book represents three years of hard work. That was in the year of the great flood.*

PHRASES **all year long** *I've been waiting for this moment all year long.* **| all (the) year round** *The city tour runs all the year round.* **| the beginning/end/middle/start of the year, be six, etc. years old** *She's only ten years old.* **| early/late in the year, a time of year** *It's usually much colder at this time of year.* **| the turn of the year** *The team has suffered a loss of form since the turn of the year.*

yearn *verb*

ADV. **secretly | still**

PREP. **after** *He still yearned after her, even after all these years.* **| for** *She yearned for children of her own.*

yearning *noun*

ADJ. **deep, desperate, enormous, great, passionate | romantic**

VERB + YEARNING **feel, have | express**

PREP. **with (a) ~** *He looked at her with yearning.* **| ~ after** *He felt a great yearning after his old job.* **| ~ for** *They had a deep yearning for their homeland.*

yell *verb*

ADV. **loudly | furiously, hysterically | almost | back, out** *She yelled back at me to mind my own business.*

VERB + YELL **hear sb**

PREP. **at** *He yelled at me furiously.* **| for** *yelling for help* **| in** *She yelled in pain as she touched the hot iron.* **| with** *The children were yelling with laughter.*

yellow *adj.*

ADV. **very | rather, slightly** *Her teeth were rather yellow.*

ADJ. **dark, deep, rich, strong | creamy, light, pale, soft** *She wore a pale yellow dress.* **| bright, brilliant, vivid | dirty, dull, sickly | canary, chrome, golden, lemon, primrose, saffron, sunshine** > Special page at COLOUR

yelp *noun*

ADJ. **little, small | sharp | muffled**

VERB + YELP **give, let out | hear**

PREP. **with a ~ | ~ of** *She jumped back with a little yelp of surprise.*

PHRASES **a yelp of pain** > Note at SOUND

yen *nou*n > Note at CURRENCY

yes *noun, exclamation*

ADJ. resounding, unequivocal, unqualified *When the villagers were asked if they wanted the factory to be built, the answer was a resounding yes.* **| simple**

VERB + YES answer, say *In reply to his question, most of them answered yes. Please say yes!* **| vote**

YES + NOUN vote

PREP. with a ~ *He answered with a yes.* **| ~ to** *They voted yes to strike action.*

PHRASES yes or no *I need a simple yes or no.*

yield *noun*

ADJ. **good, high** *This method of cultivation produces higher yield.* **| low, poor** *Yields are quite poor this year.*

VERB + YIELD **produce**

yoga *noun*

ADJ. **gentle | meditative**

VERB + YOGA **do, practise** *She does yoga for an hour a day.* **| take up | go to** *I go to yoga on Thursdays.*

YOGA + NOUN **exercises, movements, positions, technique | class, session** *He attends regular yoga classes.* **| teacher | practice | centre**

yoghurt *noun*

ADJ. **natural, plain | apricot, strawberry, etc. | fat-free, low-fat | live | set, thick**

QUANT. **carton, pot**

YOGHURT + NOUN **carton, pot** > Special page at FOOD

yogurt *noun*

ADJ. **natural, plain | apricot, strawberry, etc. | fat-free, low-fat | live | set, thick**

QUANT. **carton, pot**

YOGURT + NOUN **carton, pot**

young *adj.*

VERBS **be, feel, look, seem** *I felt young again.*

ADV. **extremely, very** *She still looks very young.* **| comparatively, fairly, quite, relatively** *He seemed quite young to have so much responsibility.* **| enough** *She looked young enough to be his daughter.*

youth *noun*

1 **period of your life when you are young**

ADJ. **early | unhappy | lost** *nostalgia for her lost youth* **| misspent** *His lack of qualifications was taken as a sign of a misspent youth.*

VERB + YOUTH **spend** *She spent much of her youth in Hong Kong.* **| idle away, waste** *He wasted his youth in front of a computer screen.*

PREP. **during your ~** *She contracted the disease during her youth.* **| from ~** *from youth to maturity* **| in your ~** *He started going to discos in his early youth.* **| since your ~** *I haven't danced since my youth!* **| throughout your ~** *He played football throughout his youth.*

PHRASES **not in the first flush of youth** *Though no longer in the first flush of youth she's still remarkably energetic.* **| scenes from/of sb's youth**

2 **being young**

ADJ. **extreme** *Her extreme youth was against her.* **| comparative | eternal** *in search of eternal youth*

VERB + YOUTH **have** *You still have your youth?that's the main thing.*

3 **young person**

ADJ. **male | black, white | callow** *He was a callow youth when he joined the newspaper.* **| pimply, spotty** *She's going out with some spotty youth.* **| fresh-faced | gangling**

QUANT. **gang, group**

4 **young people**

ADJ. **modern** *the aspirations of modern youth* **| local | urban | working-class | delinquent, disaffected | unemployed | educated | gilded** *(figurative) a club for the gilded youth* (= rich and spoilt young people) *of London*

YOUTH + NOUN **culture | club, group, movement, organization, subculture, work | leader, worker | employment, unemployment, training | court, crime, custody** *a crackdown on youth crime*

PHRASES **the youth of today**

zeal *noun*

ADJ. **great, true | excessive, fanatical | crusading, missionary, radical, reforming, religious, revolutionary** *a crusading zeal to eradicate drug abuse*

VERB + ZEAL **burn with, have** *He burned with a reforming zeal.* **| demonstrate, show**

PREP. **with ~** *She went about the task with the zeal of an enthusiast.* **| ~ for** *She had a true zeal for journalism.* **| ~ in** *their zeal in the promotion of education*

PHRASES **a lack of zeal**

zest *noun*

ADJ. **great | added, renewed, youthful** *Last month's victory has given him a renewed zest for the game.*

VERB + ZEST **be full of, have** *He is 74 years old but still full of zest.* **| add, give sb/sth** *The love affair added a little zest to her life.* **| lose**

PREP. **with ~** *He campaigned with zest.* **| ~ for** *a zest for battle*

PHRASES **a zest for life**

zip *noun*

VERB + ZIP **close, do up, fasten, pull (up), slide (up) | open, pull (down), slide (down), undo | get caught in** *The fabric got caught in the zip and tore.*

ZIP + VERB **be/get stuck, stick** *The zip on my bag has stuck.* **| break | be open, be undone**

ZIP + NOUN **fastener**

PREP. **by a ~** *The jacket was fastened by a zip at the front.* **| with a ~** *a bag with a zip* **| ~ on** > Special page at CLOTHES

zone *noun*

ADJ. **broad, narrow | marginal, peripheral, transition/transitional, twilight** *a transition zone between tropical and arid vegetations the twilight zone between living and merely existing* **| border, frontier | neutral | battle, combat, military, war | buffer, demilitarized, exclusion, no-fly, no-go** *This area behind the station is a no-go zone for tourists.* **| occupation, occupied, security | autonomous | danger | emergency | disaster** *The region has been declared an ecological disaster zone.* **| safe | safety** *She stood some distance away from him to maintain a safety zone.* **| nuclear-free, smoke-free, traffic-free, weapons-free** *Most of the town centre is a traffic-free zone.* **| earthquake, fault, seismic | climatic, geographical | alpine, arid, coastal, temperate** *the alpine and arid zones of Australia* **| economic, enterprise, fishing, free-trade, industrial** *an industrial zone of factories, warehouses and shipyards* **| euro-**(also **eurozone**) **| northern, southern, etc. | pedestrian | time | erogenous | relegation** *The team finds itself in the relegation zone after a run of poor results.*

VERB + ZONE **control** *The rebels control the southern border zone.* **| create, declare sth, establish, impose, set up** *The area has been declared a closed military zone.* **| enforce** *Fighter planes are being sent to enforce the UN no-fly zone.* **| violate** *An enemy plane was shot down after it violated the exclusion zone.* **| cross into, enter** *We were crossing into a new time zone.* **| leave** *Aid workers were advised to leave the danger zone.* **| divide sth into** *Europe is divided into economic zones.*

ZONE + NOUN **boundary**

PREP. **in a/the ~** *The plant grows only in the temperate zone.* **| into a/the** *We had accidentally strayed into the war zone.* **| out of a/the ~, within a/the ~** *Companies within enterprise zones are given special help.* **| ~ between** *the neutral zone between the two countries*

zoo *noun*

VERB + ZOO **go to, visit | escape from | run** *a badly-run zoo*

ZOO + NOUN **animals | keeper** (also **zookeeper)**

PREP. **at a/the ~** *We saw a baby polar bear at the zoo.* **| in a/the ~** *These lions were born in the zoo.*

zoology *nou*n > Note at SUBJECT

NOTE: SUBJECTS

of study do, read, study ~ do ~ is more commonly used with school subjects (but may also be used with university subjects): *She did maths, physics and chemistry at school.*

study ~ is used with both school and university subjects: *He studied German at school. She went on to study mathematics at university.*

read ~is only used with university subjects and is quite formal: *She was educated privately and at Pembroke College, where she read classics.*

lecture in, teach ~ *He taught music at a school in Edinburgh.*

Other verbs used with *subject* can also be used with particular subjects of study: *Half the students take geography at A level. We offer accounting as a subsidiary course.*

~ degree, a degree/diploma in ~ *a law degree a higher diploma in fine art*

~ class, course, lecture, lesson *The genetics lectures are on a different campus.*

~ department, a/the department of ~ *All enquiries should be made to the Department of Architecture.*

~ graduate, student, undergraduate *Some architecture graduates gain further qualifications in specialist fields.*

~ lecturer, teacher, tutor *He's an English teacher at Highland Road School.*

~ professor, (a) professor of ~ *She's professor of linguistics at the University of Wales.*

the study of ~ *The study of philosophy helps you to think critically.*

in ~ *He got As in history and art.*

NOTE: PROFESSIONALS

be, practise as ~ *to practise as a consulting engineer*

act as ~ *She is acting as architect on this project.*

have ~ *The group does not have an internal auditor.*

need ~ *We need an engineer to design us something better.*

find ~ *It pays to find a good accountant.*

appoint, appoint sb (as), engage, get, instruct ~ *Appoint a solictor to act on your behalf.*

consult (with), get/take advice from, go to, see, speak to, talk to ~ *I demand to speak to my lawyer!*

an advocate, barrister, lawyer, solicitor **acts for/defends/represents sb** *an in-house lawyer acting for a major company*

advise sb/sth ~ *His accountant has advised him to close down his business.*

> See also the note at JOB

NOTE: PLAYING

cards two, three, etc. of ~s *the four of hearts*

jack, queen, king, ace of ~s *the ace of spades*

high, low ~ *a low club*

black, red ~ *You can't put a red five on a red six.*

pick up, take ~ *Why didn't you pick up the king?*

have, hold ~ *He knew his opponents held only spades and diamonds.*

lay/put down, play ~ *She put down a joker.*

lead ~ *You should have led a high spade.*

draw ~ *Use your ace and king to draw the trumps.*

trump ~ *He trumped my ace!*

~ be trumps/wild/high *Spades are trumps. Let's play again. This time twos are wild, aces high.*

~ trick (in games like bridge and whist**)** *We needed to take three more spade tricks.*

on a/the ~ *You can play either a nine or a jack on a ten.*

NOTE: Illegal Drugs

do (informal)**, experiment with, take, try, use ~** *The minister confessed to having experimented with cannabis in her youth.*

be/get high on ~ *They committed the crime while high on drugs.*

be addicted to, be dependent on, be/get hooked on, be on (informal)**~** *He seemed to be on acid most of the time.*

be/come off ~ *He's tried several times to come off cocaine.*

possess ~ *arrested on charges of possessing narcotics*

deal (in), sell, smuggle, supply, traffic (in) ~*The country imposes the death penalty for trafficking in marijuana.*

seize ~ *The heroin seized has an estimated street value of £600 000.*

~ abuse, addiction, consumption, use *Cannabis consumption has increased sharply.*

~ habit, problem *She allegedly has a $500-a-day coke habit.*

~ overdose *Heroin overdose is a major cause of death among heroin users.*

~ addict, user~ dealer, trafficker, smuggler~ production, smuggling, trade, trafficking *The authorities have been accused of active involvement in the narcotics trade.*

addiction to, dependence on, use of ~ *the use of cocaine*

trade in ~ *measures to combat the trade in narcotics*

NOTE: WEIGHTS

and measures ~ of *I always drink gallons of water.*

half a, a quarter of a ~ *half a litre of milk*

a half/quarter hour, inch, mile, ounce, pint, pound *They used to sell corned beef at 2d a quarter pound.*

cubic, square ~ *One litre is equivalent to 1,000 cubic centimetres.*

~ square *The room is about 15 metres square.*

~ broad, deep, high, long, tall, thick, wide *The new dock was 230 m long and 92 m broad.*

~ bigger, cooler, faster, heavier, lighter, slower, etc. *The climate was several degrees warmer than it is now.*

about, approximately, around ~ *1 foot = approx. 0.3 metres*

be, cover, measure, span, stretch (for) ~ used with measures of distance and area *The National Park covers 3,000 acres. The sandy beach stretches for over four miles.*

be, weigh ~ used with measures of weight *She weighed over ten stone.*

be, last, take ~ used with measures of time *It takes approximately 365 and a quarter days for the earth to revolve around the sun.*

in a ~ *How many centilitres are there in a litre?*

in ~s *We were asked to estimate the temperature of the room in degrees.*

to a/the ~ *My car does 10 miles to the litre.*

a, per ~ *They're 99p a dozen. a safety threshold of 50 mg of nitrates per litre*

by the ~ *Apples are sold by the kilogram.*

of ~ *The path will be built to a width of 2 metres.*

~ in area, length, volume, weight, size, etc. *Killer whales are up to ten metres in length.*

~ by ~ *a huge room measuring 50 m by 18 m*

to the nearest ~ *Give your answer to the nearest metre.*

NOTE: JOBS

be, work as ~ *She's a well-known writer. Her father, a trained chef, now works as a bus driver.*

study to be, train as, train to be ~ *She trained as a painter and sculptor.*

start (work) as ~ *He started work as a trainee chef.*

become, qualify as ~ *She qualified as a vet last year.*

employ (sb as), have *The company employs more than 1500 engineers.*

engage (sb as), get, hire (sb as), recruit, take on ~ *They have recruited a new designer.*

appoint, appoint sb (as), make sb ~ are usually used with academic, official or highly responsible jobs: *He was appointed Professor of Law at Yale. At 39 she was made chairman of the board.*

dismiss, fire, sack ~ *The club have sacked their coach.*

> See also the note at PROFESSIONAL

NOTE: RANKS

in the armed forces air force, army, navy ~ *an air force/army sergeant an army/navy captain*

air/field marshal a **naval** captain/commander/lieutenant/officer **have/hold the rank of, serve as ~** *She joined the navy and held the rank of captain. He served as a lieutenant in the marine corps.*

be appointed, become, be made ~ *He was made a colonel at the age of 40. She ought to have been made sergeant by now.*

under ~*383 men under General Miles attacked the camp.*

the rank of ~*She was promoted to the rank of colonel.*

NOTE: ORGANIZATIONS

create, establish, form, found, set up, start ~ *an association created to promote local industry The company was founded in 1981.*

dissolve ~ (often law) *She sought a court order to have the partnership dissolved.*

run ~ *He runs an accountancy firm.*

manage ~ *The executive committee manages the group on a day-to-day basis.*

be/become a member of, join ~ *She became a member of the Society of Arts.*

leave ~ *The country plans to leave the organization.*

NOTE: MONTHS

the month of ~ *The bus service will be offered free of charge to residents for the month of August.*

last, next, that, this ~ the/this coming ~ the following/previous ~ *She'll be 40 this coming September.*

~ (of) last/next/that/this year ~ (of) the/this coming year ~ (of) the following/previous/same year *The construction work began in May of last year.*

early, late, mid-~ *The strike began in late March.*

the beginning, end, middle of ~ *I'm going on holiday at the end of April.*

first/latter/second half of ~ *The first half of January was marked by intense diplomatic activity.*

the period ~ *Throughout the period November to February flocks of 500 or more are regularly present.*

the months/weeks/year to ~ *In the year to June, sales were up 12% on a year ago.*

spend ~ *He spent August abroad.*

~ arrive, come (written) *November came with especially nasty fog.*

~ pass (into ~) (written) *January passed into February with the crime still a mystery.*

a ~ day/morning/night, etc. *a misty December morning*

~ ('s) edition/issue *His article will appear in May's issue of the magazine.*

~ sales *I picked up lots of bargains in the January sales.*

~ coup, demonstration, election, meeting, referendum, revolution, riot, summit, etc. *The party is to boycott the June elections.*

about, around ~ *We will write to you again around August.*

after, before ~ *We expect to take delivery some time after June.*

between ~ and ~ *The hotel is closed between October and April.*

by ~ *The refurbishment should be completed by December.*

come ~ *It's back to school for him come September*

(= when September comes). **during ~** *The museum attracted 2,000 visitors during March.*

for ~ *The congress is planned for February 2003.*

from ~ *The exhibition is open from March to November.*

in ~ *We're getting married in April.*

since ~ *She has played only four games since November.*

throughout ~ *The freezing weather continued throughout January.*

(up) to, until ~ *The show runs until the end of October.*

NOTE: LANGUAGES

excellent, fluent, good, perfect ~ *He speaks fluent Japanese.*

bad, broken, poor~ *I got by with broken Chinese and sign language.*

colloquial, idiomatic, non-standard, pidgin, standard ~ *The inhabitants speak a kind of pidgin Spanish.*

spoken, written ~ *My spoken Polish is better than my written Polish.*

business ~ *She is doing a course in business English.*

original ~ *The fable is translated from the original French.*

know, read, speak, understand, use ~ *I am more comfortable using Spanish, if you don't mind.*

be fluent in ~ *She was fluent in German, Urdu and Swahili.*

do, learn ~ *I did German at school but I've forgotten most of it. I've been learning Arabic for four years.*

improve, practise ~ *I spent a month in Rome to improve my Italian.*

master ~ *I never really mastered Latin.*

translate sth into ~ *He has translated her latest book into Korean.*

~ class, course, lesson *I'm late for my Russian class.*

~ interpreter, speaker, a speaker of ~ *the need for Gujarati interpreters*

a command/knowledge of ~ *He has a poor command of English.*

in ~ *What is ‘apple’ in French?He addressed me in his best Portuguese.*

> See also the note at SUBJECT

NOTE: CRIMES

be guilty of, commit ~ *Two key witnesses at her trial committed perjury.*

accuse sb of, charge sb with ~ *He has been accused of her murder.*

convict sb of, find sb guilty of ~ *She was found guilty of high treason.*

acquit sb of ~ *The engineer responsible for the collapse of the bridge was acquitted of manslaughter.*

admit, confess to, deny ~ *All three men have denied assault. She admitted 33 assault charges.*

plead guilty/not guilty to ~ *He pleaded guilty to a charge of gross indecency.*

investigate (sb for) ~ *She is being investigated for suspected bribery.*

be suspected for/of ~ *He was the least likely to be suspected of her murder.*

be/come under investigation for ~ *She was the second minister to come under investigation for corruption.*

be wanted for ~ be wanted on charges of ~ *He was wanted on charges of espionage.*

solve a case, crime, murder, robbery, theft *The police and the public must work together to solve the murder.*

arrest sb for ~ *Jean was arrested for arson.*

be tried for, stand trial for ~ *to stand trial for extortion*

~ case/trial *The nurse's murder trial continues.*

~ charge *The police agreed to drop the conspiracy charges against him.*

a charge/count of ~ *The jury convicted her on two counts of theft.*

NOTE: WORKS

of art a piece/work of art *Michelangelo's Pietà is a magnificent work of art.*

collect ~ *She collects Jacobean portraits.*

display, exhibit, show ~ *The works will be displayed in the new wing of the museum.*

~ be (put) on display/exhibition/show ~ go on display/exhibition/show *paintings put on show for the first time The photographs are on exhibition until the end of September.*

house ~ *An annexe was built to house the sculptures.*

a series of ~ *a series of paintings by Van Gogh*

a collection/exhibition of ~ *an exhibition of early 20th century French masterpieces*

an art/photographic/photography exhibition *The open art exhibition will allow new artists to exhibit their work.*

by ~ *a sculpture by Barbara Hepworth*

NOTE: SEASONS

have ~ *Perhaps we will have a good summer this year.*

spend summer/winter *I spent the winter indoors.*

~ approach *The days become shorter and temperatures drop as autumn approaches.*

~ arrive, begin, come *Autumn arrived early that year.*

winter **sets in** *The aid must reach the refugees before winter sets in.*

summer/winter **pass, wear on, (come to an) end** *As the summer wore on food became scarce.*

~ months summer/winter **period** spring/summer/winter **time (**also **springtime, etc.)** *The museum is open daily during the summer months. It was springtime and the slopes were ablaze with almond blossoms.*

~ day/morning/night, etc. *It's hard to sleep on hot summer nights.*

during/in (the) ~ *The wood is carpeted with bluebells in spring.*

over the summer/winter *The repairs will be carried out over the summer.*

through/throughout (the) ~ *The meat is salted so it keeps through the winter.*

for (the) ~ *She's gone to Ireland for the summer.*

the ~ of 2001, etc. *The winter of 2001 was especially cold.*

a summer's/winter's day/morning/night, etc. *a lazy summer's day*

all summer/winter long *It rained all summer long.*

the height of summer the depths of winter *He always wore a short-sleeved shirt, even in the depths of winter.*

NOTE: SWIMMING

strokes a **fast, powerful, strong** crawl a **slow** breaststroke **do, swim (the) ~** *a swimmer doing the crawl I can't swim butterfly.*

strike out in/with breaststroke/crawl *She struck out with a strong crawl towards the shore.*

a length of ~ *He did 15 lengths of backstroke every morning.*

In competitions the categories are **backstroke, breaststroke, butterfly,** and **freestyle (**= in which competitors do crawl because it is fastest**). 100 metres, 200 metres, etc. ~ men's, women's ~ compete in ~** *competing in the women's 100 metres freestyle*

in the ~ *He came first in the 200 metres backstroke.*

NOTE: PERFORMING

arts write ~ *He's written a new West End musical.*

do, present, perform, produce, put on, stage ~ *We are proud to present the play 'Rocket to the Moon'. The drama group is doing a show.*

direct ~ *She is directing Verdi's opera 'La Traviata' at La Scala next year.*

act in, appear in, perform in, sing in, star in ~ *He starred in the West End hit musical 'Joseph and the Amazing Technicolour Dreamcoat'.*

rehearse (for) ~ *We had no time to rehearse for the play.*

go to the ballet/opera/theatre *I haven't been to the theatre for ages.*

see ~ *Have you seen that new production of 'Macbeth'?*

~ open *'The Nutcracker' opens in December.*

~ play, run *The show has been playing to packed houses. The show ran for years on Broadway.*

~ close *The musical closes this week after a record number of performances.*

a play/show **folds** *The play folded after poor reviews.*

at the ballet/opera/theatre *We met at the opera.*

in a/the ~ *the characters in the play*

~ by *a comedy by Moli*

ère

NOTE: ARISTOCRATIC

titles first, second, etc. ~ *the 17th Earl of Lauderdale*

be created/made, become ~ *She was made a baroness in 1992.*

succeed (sb) as ~ *He was succeeded as third Baron Northwick by his nephew.*

NOTE: SOUNDS

give a ~ *The dog gave a low growl.*

let out a ~ *He let out a blood-curdling scream.*

hear ~ *We heard the peal of church bells.*

with a ~ *The vase fell to the ground with a great crash.*

~ of *a roar of laughtera snort of derisionthe whine of an engine*

NOTE: MEALS

eat, have, take (formal)**~** *Have you had breakfast?*

grab, snatch ~ *I'm so busy I have to snatch meals when I can.*

ask sb to ~ have/invite/take sb for/to ~ come/go for/to ~ *He wouldn't have asked her to supper if he didn't like her, she reasoned.*

These verbs are often used with **around, out, over** and **round:** *We must have you over for dinner sometime. Let's go out for a meal.*

be out to lunch *He's out to lunch with a client.*

stop for ~ *We stopped for tea at the Ritz.*

join sb for, stay for/to ~ *You're sure you wont stay for tea?*

sit down to, start ~ finish ~ *We had just sat down to breakfast when the phone rang.*

skip ~ *I sometimes skip lunch if we're very busy.*

cook (sb), fix (sb), get ready, make (sb), prepare ~ *She hurried downstairs to fix herself some breakfast.*

have ~ ready *We'll have supper ready for you.*

serve ~ *Lunch is served from noon till 3.*

keep warm, warm up ~ *I'll be home late, so keep my dinner warm.*

provide, provide sb (with) ~ *Dinner is provided in the superb hotel restaurant.*

~ be available *A four course dinner is available by prior arrangement.*

~ be ready *'Breakfast's ready!' shouted Christine.*

~ time *The family was always noisy at meal times.*

at/during/over ~ *Nobody spoke during supper.*

for ~ *What did you have for lunch?*

~ of *a breakfast of pancakes and maple syrup*

NOTE: RELIGIONS

accept, adopt, convert to, embrace, follow, turn to ~ *He converted to Judaism when he got married. people who follow Hinduism*

abandon, reject ~ *He rejected Christianity and became a Buddhist.*

~ spread *Islam spread rapidly through North Africa.*

~ preaches, proclaims, teaches sth *Christianity preaches that sinners can be forgiven.*

a follower of ~ *followers of Sikhism*

the rise/spread of ~ *the rise of Christianity in the first century*

the teachings/tenets of ~ *the basic tenets of Buddhism*

NOTE: HEALTH

practitioners be, practise as ~ *He practises as a clinical psychologist.*

have a dentist, doctor, psychiatrist, psychologist, therapist *Do you have a family doctor?*

need ~ *She took good care of her teeth and never needed a dentist.*

find ~ *What's the best way to find a therapist?*

consult, go to, see, visit ~ *I think you ought to see a psychologist.*

refer sb to ~ *referring patients to a specialist*

~ practise *doctors who practise from home*

~ examine sb/sth, see sb *I had an ear, nose and throat specialist examine my sinuses. The doctor will see you now.*

~ treat sb/sth *He is being treated by the physiotherapist.*

~ advise sb/sth *The optician has advised that I wear contact lenses.*

a dentist, doctor, psychiatrist, specialist **prescribes (sb) sth** *The psychiatrist prescribed anti-depressants.*

> See also the note at JOB

NOTE: CURRENCIES

unit of money in a country change/convert sth into/to ~ *I want to change 100 dollars into euros.*

buy, sell ~ *The bank will sell you one Russian rouble for 4.14 Japanese yen.*

Many of the collocates of MONEY (for example make, spend) can also be used with currencies: *The country spends millions of dollars on overseas aid every year.*

50-, 100-, etc. ~ coin/note *a pound coin*

50-, 100-, etc. dollar bill for a ~ *How many dinars will I get for a dollar?*

in (the) ~ *The contract is denominated in euros. a tax of 30p in the pound*

~ for ~ *The company promises to match any money the charity makes dollar for dollar.*

~'s worth of sth *a million pound's worth of books*

value of a currency compared with others high, rising, strong ~ *Business should benefit from a stronger euro.*

falling, low, weak ~ *The yen gained 10 points against a weak dollar.*

over-valued ~ *Research suggests that the pound is over-valued.*

float ~ *The UK floated sterling in June 1972.*

devalue ~ *The Fiji dollar may have to be devalued.*

defend, prop up, protect, shore up, support ~ *She dismissed suggestions that the central bank would intervene to prop up the euro.*

~ be worth sth *One Saudi Arabian riyal is worth approximately 0.27 US dollars.*

~ strengthen *The peso strengthened on the foreign exchanges.*

~ come under pressure *The pound came under pressure against the dollar.*

~ close, open *The pound closed yesterday at 1.4130 dollars.*

~ be fixed/pegged to *Many emerging countries have their currencies pegged to the dollar.*

~ value *The dollar value of the stock rose to $11.5 billion.*

~ terms *The rise in government spending was equivalent to only 9% in dollar terms.*

~ exchange rate *All prices are based on the South African rand exchange rate.*

~ traveller's cheques *sterling traveller's cheques*

~ equivalent *She was paid the dollar equivalent of £10 000.*

against the ~ *The yen has strengthened against the pound.*

to the ~ *How many dollars are there to the pound?*

depreciation/devaluation/reflation of the ~ *the devaluation of the peso in 1994*

a run on the ~ *The government increased interest rates to avoid a run on the rouble*

(= sudden large buying of the currency). **the value of the ~** *a rise in the value of the euro*

> See also the note at PER CENT

NOTE: DAYS

of the week last, next, that, this (coming) ~ ~ last/next (week) *The concert is this coming Wednesday. Are you free next Thursday? She's arriving on Friday next.*

the ~ before, the previous ~ *I'd been paid the previous Friday.*

the following ~ *She was due to start work the following Monday.*

~ of last/next/that/this week *He arrived on Monday of last week.*

the ~ before last *We came here the Tuesday before last.*

~ week, a week on ~ *I've bought tickets for Thursday week (= for the performance that is seven days after Thursday).*

the first/second/third/last ~ in/of the month *The museum is free on the last Sunday of every month.*

alternate ~s, each, every ~ *The competition is fixed for alternate Wednesdays.*

all day ~ *The restaurant is closed all day Saturday.*

~ afternoon, evening, morning, night, etc. *I'll see you on Friday evening. Saturday lunchtimes are very busy in the restaurant.*

first thing (on) ~ *I'll post it first thing on Monday morning.*

late (on) ~ *The crash occurred late on Tuesday night.*

one ~ (written) *One Saturday morning, without telling anyone of my plan, I boarded a bus and headed out.*

spend ~ *She liked to spend Saturday afternoon shopping.*

see sb ~ (informal) *So I'll see you Monday, then?*

manage ~ (informal) *I could manage (= meet you on) Tuesday, say 11.30?*

open/closed (on) ~ *We're open every day except Sunday.*

~ arrive, come, dawn (written) *Monday dawned still and misty, with a promise of autumn sunshine.*

on (a) ~ *A public meeting is to be held on Wednesday at the town hall.She was born on a Sunday.I like to just relax on Saturdays.*

between ~ and ~ (from) ~ to ~ *The ticket office is open until 5 p.m. Monday to Friday.*

by, no later than ~ *Entries are to arrive no later than Monday, 1 October. A special meeting is arranged for Friday 17 May.*

~'s deadline, election, game, meeting, performance, race, etc. *He was not present at Tuesday's meeting.*

NOTE: POINTS

of the compass due ~ (of) *The village is due north of Paris.*

far ~ *a small village in the far north of Scotland. The reserve is a little further south on the coast.*

down south, up north (informal) *They have moved down south (= to the south of the country).*

journey, way ~ *On our way south we travelled through several small villages.*

road, track ~ *the road west out of the city*

be/lie ~ of *Brighton is south of London.*

come, drive, fly, go, run, travel, walk ~ *From Fort William drive north for a couple of miles.*

set off ~ *The troops set off north.*

carry on, continue, proceed ~ *The road continues west for 10 miles.*

bear, head ~ *Take the N1 motorway heading west from Bern.*

turn ~ *When you reach the top of the hill turn north-east.*

face, look ~ *The kitchen window faces south. The painting depicts the Grand Canal, Venice, looking north from the Rialto Bridge.*

~ bank, coast, shore *the south bank of the river*

~ wind *a bitter east wind*

in the ~ (of) *I live in the north. There are lakes in the north-east of Poland.*

from the ~ (of) *The wind is coming from the west.*

to the ~ (of) *Oxford is to the north-west of London.*

towards the ~ *Towards the north the woods turn into pine forests.*

Which way is ~? *Which way is west?*

NOTE: FLOWERS

grow ~ *Tulips are grown everywhere.*

breed ~ *She breeds orchids in her greenhouse.*

plant, put in ~ *Autumn is the best time to plant peonies.*

dig out/up, take out ~ *Dig up your geraniums before the first frosts.*

spray, water ~ *It's a good idea to spray your roses against greenfly.*

prune roses **deadhead ~** *Don't forget to deadhead the pansies.*

pick (sb) ~ *I picked some daffodils for you.*

smell ~ *He stopped to smell the flowers.*

arrange ~ *She arranged the tulips in a vase.*

bring/give/send/take (sb) ~ *He took her flowers and chocolates.*

~ grow *Daffodils grow wild in the mountains.*

~ be in flower, be/come out, (be in) bloom, come into flower, come out, flower *The spring flowers were just coming out. What time of year do daffodils flower?*

~ smell *Some of these roses smell absolutely wonderful.*

~ close/open (up) *You know it's summer when the first daisies open.*

~ droop, wilt, wither *The petunias were already wilting in the hot sun.*

~ be over *It was April and the snowdrops were long over.*

a bouquet/bunch/garland/posy/spray/vase of ~ *a spray of mixed violets and primroses*

NOTE: FINANCIAL

indicators ~ be down/up *With the share price down at 234p, it might be time to start buying. The CAC index was up 18.84 points.*

~ reach sth, stand at sth *Consumer confidence reached a 30-year high. Second quarter sales stood at £ 18 billion.*

~ be/remain unchanged *The 100 Share Index remained unchanged at 5297.*

~ gain (sth) *The share gained 19 cents to close at 4.38.*

~ suffer (sth) *Profit margins suffered when the company lowered prices to remain competitive.*

~ climb, edge up, go up, increase (~ increase in value for currencies**), jump, rise, rocket, shoot up, skyrocket, soar (**+ *by*, *from*, *to or no preposition***)** *Earnings per share climbed from 3.5p to 5.1p. The pound has increased in value relative to the euro. Profits have shot up by a staggering 25%. Oil prices have skyrocketed.*

~ come/go down, crash, decline, decrease (~ decrease in value for currencies**), dive, drop, fall, plummet, plunge, shrink, slip, slump (**+ *by*, *from*, *to or no preposition***)** *Banana exports crashed nearly 50%. The pound fell to a 14-year low against the dollar. Net income plummeted to USD 3.7 million.*

> See also the note at CURRENCY

OVER 1,000 CLEARLY-DEFINED GRAMMATICAL TERMS

Oxford

DICTIONARY OF English Grammar

BAS AARTS, SYLVIA CHALKER,
AND EDMUND WEINER

The Oxford Dictionary of
English Grammar

SECOND EDITION

BAS AARTS

SYLVIA CHALKER

EDMUND WEINER

Bas Aarts is Professor of English Linguistics at University College London. He has published many books and articles on English grammar, most recently the *Oxford Modern English Grammar*.

The late **Sylvia Chalker** was the author of several grammar books, including *Current English Grammar* and the *Little Oxford Dictionary of English Grammar*. She was also a contributor to the *Oxford Companion to the English Language*.

Edmund Weiner is Deputy Chief Editor of the *Oxford English Dictionary* and co-author (with Andrew Delahunty) of the *Oxford Guide to English Usage*.

SEE WEB LINKS

This is a web-linked dictionary. There is a list of recommended web links in the Appendix, on page 454. To access the websites, go to the dictionary's web page at www.oup.com/uk/reference/resources/englishgrammar, click on **Web links** in the Resources section, and click straight through to the relevant websites.

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP,
United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,
and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of
Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

Original material: © Sylvia Chalker and Edmund Weiner 1994
New and revised material: © Oxford University Press 2014

The moral rights of the authors have been asserted

First edition published 1994
First issued as an Oxford University Press paperback 1994
Reissued, with corrections, in new covers 1998
Second edition published 2014

Impression: 1

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, by licence or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this work in any other form
and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Published in the United States of America by Oxford University Press
198 Madison Avenue, New York, NY 10016, United States of America

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
Data available

ISBN: 978–0–19–965823–7

Printed in Great Britain by
Clays Ltd, St Ives plc

Links to third party websites are provided by Oxford in good faith and for information only. Oxford disclaims any responsibility for the materials contained in any third party website referenced in this work.

Contents

Preface to the First Edition v

Preface to the Second Edition vi

Organization vii

Notational Conventions ix

Abbreviations x

Dictionary 1

References 448

Useful Web Links 454

Preface to the First Edition

Grammar, etymologically speaking, is related to *glamour*. Though few people might claim that grammar is glamorous in the modern sense, there is considerable interest in English grammar today and no shortage of grammar books, ranging from small basic books aimed at children or elementary-level foreign learners, through more advanced manuals to large scholarly works. The trouble is—they may be about the same language, but they do not always speak the same language. The very range of the grammar books on offer presents problems.

There are many ways of describing grammar, and a wealth of terminology. Some of it strikes the layman as jargon (*disjunct*, *matrix*, *pro-form*, *stative*); other words appear ordinary enough but conceal specialized meanings (*comment*, *focus*, *specific*). Worse, the same terms, old or new—*comparison*, *formal*, *pronoun*, *reported speech*, *root*, *stress*—are used by different grammarians with different meanings.

Such difficulties are not entirely avoidable. Any subject of study needs specialist words. Different grammarians are entitled to analyse language in different ways, and fresh viewpoints may call for new terms. But while grammarians sometimes explain what they mean by a new or unusual term, it is rarer for them to point out that they are using an existing term in a different way. This is a cause of real confusion. Another problem is that new terms may in the end turn out simply to be alternatives for an old concept—a synonym in fact (e.g. *progressive*, *continuous*).

We have tried in this dictionary to indicate the range and variety of meanings that may lie behind a single term. The main emphasis is on the terminology of current mainstream grammar, but we have also included a considerable number of entries on the related areas of speech and meaning—more grandly known as phonetics and semantics. Users will also find some terms from Generative Grammar, which has greatly influenced mainstream grammar in recent years—but some of the more theoretical terminology of linguistics and semantics is excluded. We have also on the whole excluded outdated grammatical terminology, apart from a few traditional terms which may be familiar to the general reader.

The authors would like to thank Professor Flor Aarts, of the Katholieke Universiteit, Nijmegen, who read an early draft of the book: his comments, we believe, have led to many improvements, but the authors are alone responsible for any blemishes that remain. We would also like to thank our families for their support, encouragement, and, at times, forbearance.

SC
ESCW

London, Oxford 1993

Preface to the Second Edition

Students of English are faced with an ever-expanding list of terms when studying the grammar of present-day English. The *Oxford Dictionary of English Grammar* offers help by defining current terminology clearly with the help of numerous example sentences and quotations from the scholarly linguistic literature. Where the same terminology is used differently by linguists, these differences are explained, and where different terminology is used in the same way, this is also clearly signalled.

This new edition of the *Oxford Dictionary of English Grammar* differs from the first edition in many ways:

- All entries have been completely revised and updated.
- There are many new entries covering recent terminology, for example from *The Cambridge Grammar of the English Language*.
- There are new short entries on the most important grammars of English published since the beginning of the twentieth century.
- Usage advice is given where appropriate, though it is never prescriptive.
- Advice is sometimes given regarding the use of terminology that most linguists would agree is best avoided.

Readers familiar with the first edition will notice that the entries on English phonetics have been removed. The reason for this is that it is very unusual for phonetics to be covered under the heading of 'grammar', and this terminology is best dealt with elsewhere.

The term 'grammar' is conceived of in this dictionary as encompassing syntax and morphology, and the aim is to cover terminology that is used in the current literature on English grammar. The dictionary also has entries on related fields of study, such as corpus linguistics, historical linguistics, lexicology, (lexical) semantics, sociolinguistics, stylistics, and so on, but only when this terminology is broadly relevant to grammar. Terms from theoretical frameworks are also covered to some extent, especially those from Generative Grammar and Systemic Grammar, though for a fuller treatment the reader is referred to Peter Matthews's *Concise Oxford Dictionary of Linguistics*.

I am grateful to the late Sylvia Chalker and to Edmund Weiner for their excellent work on the first edition of this book, and to Rebecca Lane and Jamie Crowther at OUP for their support during the writing process. Finally, thanks are due to Jill Bowie for her meticulous copy-editing and to Donald Watt for proofreading.

BAS AARTS
University College London

Organization

1. Entries are strictly alphabetical. Thus:

   agent
   agentive
   agentless passive
   agent noun

2. *Cross-references* to other entries are signalled by an asterisk when they occur in running text, e.g.

   Aktionsart
   The lexical expression of *aspect . . .

3. In formal cross-references, the entry referred to is indicated in small capitals, e.g.

   focusing subjunct *See* FOCUSING ADVERB.
   A cross-reference to a phrase listed within an entry is given in a mixture of small capitals (for the entry headword) and italics (for the remainder of the phrase), e.g. COMPLEX *sentence*.

4. When a cross-reference relates to a particular numbered sense in another entry, the number of the relevant sense is indicated, e.g. *base (2) *or* BASE (2).

5. Where a word is not a grammatical term in itself, but forms part of a *phrase* which is dealt with elsewhere, this is indicated, e.g.

   act *See* SPEECH ACT.

6. Where a term is dealt with at the entry for some larger term, this is indicated, e.g.

   formulaic subjunctive *See* SUBJUNCTIVE.

7. Where two or more terms are *synonyms*, the definition appears under the preferred term, usually with a reference to the alternative term, e.g.

   folk etymology
   . . . Also called **popular etymology**.

   and the other term is cross-referenced with an asterisk, e.g.

   popular etymology
   The same as *folk etymology.

8. Where two or more terms are in a *contrastive* relationship, this is stated at the beginning of both entries, e.g.

   abstract . . .
   . . . Contrasted with *concrete.

   concrete . . .
   . . . Contrasted with *abstract.

9. *See (also)* at the end of (part of) an entry indicates that further information will be found at the entry indicated. Sometimes the user is referred to a closely related word, e.g.

   coordinate . . .
   . . . *See also* COORDINATION.

   At other times the reference is to a 'background' concept, e.g.

   discord . . .

. . . *See* AGREEMENT.

10. *Compare* at the end of (part of) an entry indicates that although the entry is complete, it may be useful to read entries for related or overlapping terms, or terms with which this term could be confused, e.g.

    abbreviated . . .
    . . . *Compare* BLOCK LANGUAGE; REDUCED CLAUSE.

    These particular entries show that certain types of language that might reasonably be described as *abbreviated* are in fact given special labels.

11. Words are marked with *word class labels* (*n.* = noun, *adj.* = adjective, *v.* = verb, etc.) only when they can belong to more than one class.
12. Where word class labels are conjoined (e.g. *n. & adj.*), the definition is framed so as to cover both uses, with parentheses surrounding the part of the definition that applies to only one of the two uses, e.g.

    countable
    (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) a noun with singular and plural forms.

    which is equivalent to:

    (*n.*) A noun with singular and plural forms.
    (*adj.*) Designating a noun with singular and plural forms.

13. In certain entries, words and phrases quoted as examples are given *abbreviated dates* indicating their earliest known recorded appearance in English. In these, the number is that of the century and the preceding E, M, L mean ‘early’, ‘mid’, and ‘late’: ‘E19’ means ‘1800–1829’, ‘M19’ means 1830–1869’, and ‘L19’ means ‘1870–1899’. OE means ‘Old English’ (before 1150), ME ‘Middle English’ (1150–1349), and LME ‘late Middle English’ (1350–1469).
14. In many entries, quotations from works on language and linguistics are given in order to illustrate the use of the word being defined. Only the author’s name and the date of the work are cited: fuller details are given in the References section.
15. Meanings are signalled by single inverted commas: e.g. *Wherever you go, you’ll be covered by this insurance* (‘No matter where you go . . . ’).
16. *Derivatives* of a headword are listed at the end of the entry and indicated by a single preceding dot. They are undefined if their meaning is plain once that of the parent word is known, and if they are not found in ‘extended terms’ (special phrasal combinations). For example, at the end of the entry for **syntax** we have:

    • **syntactic**, **syntactically**.

17. *Extended terms* are listed alphabetically at the end of the entry following any derivatives, and indicated by two preceding dots. They are given brief definitions or fuller discussion as appropriate. For example, in the entry for **modifier** we have:

    •• **modifier clause**: a clause that postmodifies a head, e.g. a *relative clause.
    •• **sentence modifier**: a modifier that modifies a complete sentence or clause.

Notational Conventions

*	An asterisk used before a citation of a linguistic form indicates an impossible structure, i.e. a structure that does not conform to the grammatical rules of English. Example: **They likes to read.* In this example the third person plural subject *they* is followed by a verb with a third person singular inflectional ending.
?	A question mark used before a citation of a linguistic form indicates a structure that is of doubtful acceptability. Example: ?*Give it me.*
Ø	This symbol is used to indicate an implicit subject. Example: *I want [Ø to read it].*
arrows	These indicate movement, For example, in *What did you see?* the pronoun *what* functions as the direct object of the verb *see* and has been moved to the beginning of the sentence to form an interrogative structure: 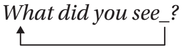 The underscore symbol is explained below.
brackets [. . .]	Brackets are used: (1) to indicate words that together form a constituent phrase, clause, etc. A *labelled bracketing* includes a subscript indicator of the syntactic status of the constituent. Example: $[_{NP}\textit{ Cats}][_{VP}\textit{ eat }[_{NP}\textit{ fish}]]$; (2) to indicate that a lexical item, usually a verb, is followed by a complement which contains a particular word. Example: *have* [*to*] indicates that the verb *have* is followed by a complement that contains the word *to*, e.g. *I have to leave.*
co-indexing	Items that are co-referential can be co-indexed, i.e. bear the same subscript letter, usually an 'i'. Example: *He*$_i$ *shaves himself*$_i$ *twice every day*.
italics	These are used: (1) to cite words, sentences, etc. as linguistic forms; (2) to indicate words, phrases, etc. that require highlighting. For underlined italics, see below.
underlined italics	Within italicized citations of linguistic forms, underlining is used to highlight particular words (or other elements) for attention.
underscore ('_')	This symbol indicates a 'gap' in the clause with which a displaced element is associated. For example, in *What did you see _ ?* the pronoun *what* has been moved to the beginning of the sentence from the position indicated by '_' to form an interrogative structure.

Abbreviations

A/AP (or Adj/AdjP)	adjective/adjective phrase
Adv/AdvP	adverb/adverb phrase
AmE	American English
BrE	British English
CaGEL	*The Cambridge grammar of the English language*, by Rodney Huddleston, Geoffrey K. Pullum, et al. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2002.
CGEL	*A comprehensive grammar of the English language*, by Randolph Quirk, Sidney Greenbaum, Geoffrey Leech, and Jan Svartvik. London: Longman, 1985.
D/DP	determinative/determinative phrase (or determiner/determiner phrase)
det	determinative (or determiner)
DO	Direct Object
IO	Indirect Object
N/NP	noun/noun phrase
OMEG	*Oxford Modern English grammar*, by Bas Aarts. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2011.
P/PP	preposition/prepositional phrase
S	sentence
V/VP	verb/verb phrase

A

A *Adverbial as an *element of *clause structure.

The symbol is used in some modern analyses of clause structure (e.g. CGEL). *See* ADVERBIAL (1).

Compare C; S; O; V.

See also ADJUNCT.

A-bar category *See* X-BAR SYNTAX.

abbreviated Shortened or contracted so that a part stands for the whole.

This term is used to designate language (a clause, phrase, word, etc.) in which words inessential to the message are omitted and the grammar sometimes deviates from standard rules. It is a very general term, since individuals will vary in how severely they abridge, and exactly how they do it when writing diary entries, notes, etc.

Abbreviated sentences of a more predictable kind are a frequent feature of informal writing (e.g. text messages, handwritten notices) and conversation. Here the subject and part of the verb are often omitted.

Having a wonderful time here
See you soon
All news then
Back at 5
More tea? (= Would you like . . . ?, Do you want . . . ?)

Abbreviated language overlaps with *ellipsis, but is less subject to constraints. For example, there is no need for the 'missing words' to be 'recoverable'.

Labels and printed instructions, too, often use abbreviated language; and here not only subjects but objects also are typically omitted, e.g.

Contains natural herb extracts
Avoid getting into the eyes

Other forms of abbreviated language appear in titles and newspaper headlines.

•• **abbreviated clause**: the same as *reduced clause.

•• **abbreviated form**: the same as *contraction (2).
Compare BLOCK LANGUAGE; REDUCED CLAUSE.
See also ABBREVIATION.

abbreviation A shortened form of a *word or *phrase, standing for the whole.

This term is applied in three different ways.

1. A string of letters—often spoken as such—formed from the initial letters of the (main) words of a phrase. Also called *initialism, e.g.

BBC	(British Broadcasting Corporation)
CBI	(Confederation of British Industry)
ERM	(Exchange Rate Mechanism)
OTT	(over the top)
PC	(personal computer)
UK	(United Kingdom)

Sometimes the letters represent syllables of a word:

ID	(identity or identification card)
TB	(tuberculosis)

2. A word (sometimes called a *clipping) standing for the whole, retaining at least one syllable of the original word.

ad	(advertisement) (M19)
demo	(demonstration) (M20)
flu	(influenza) (M19)
pub	(public house) (M19)
phone	(telephone) (L19)
sitcom	(situation comedy) (M20)

Clippings vary in their level of formality; *mike* (microphone) and *wellies* (wellington boots) are at the informal end of the scale. Other abbreviations are acceptable in formal contexts, e.g. *bus* (omnibus), *maths* (US *math*) (mathematics); or their origin may even be virtually forgotten, e.g. *mob* (from Latin *mobile vulgus*).

3. A written convention which is unpronounceable in its shortened form. This includes abbreviations of personal titles, e.g. *Col.*, *Dr*, *Mrs*, *Sgt.*, etc.

Also:

St.	(street)	*etc.*	(etcetera)	*MS*	(manuscript)
Fr.	(French)	*kg*	(kilogram)		
Gk	(Greek)	*rpt*	(repeat)		

There are a few special written conventions for plurals:

pp	(pages)	*MSS* or mss (manuscripts)
ff.	(following pages)	

Written Latin abbreviations are sometimes read out in their English equivalents, but some are only pronounced as letter strings, e.g.

e.g.	(*exempli gratia*) ('for example', /ˌiːˈdʒiː/)
i.e.	(*id est*) ('that is', /ˌaɪ ˈiː/)
cf.	(*confer*) ('compare', /ˌsiː ˈef/)
a.m. and *p.m.*	(*ante meridiem* and *post meridiem*: /ˈeɪ ˌem/, /ˈpiː ˌem/).

Chemical formulae and other symbols can be regarded as a special type of abbreviation:

H_2O	(water)	*Fe*	(iron)	&	(and)
−	(minus)	+	(plus)		

Compare ACRONYM; BLEND; CONTRACTION; INITIALISM.

ability One of the semantic categories used in the classification of *modal verbs.

The term is particularly applied to the *dynamic (2) meaning of *can* and *could*. It contrasts with other meanings of these verbs such as *permission and *possibility.

See also MODAL; MODALITY.

ablative (*n. & adj.*) (In older grammar.) (A case) that expresses meanings such as 'by N', 'with N', or 'from N' (where N = *noun).

This case, occurring and originally named in Latin, is not relevant to English, where such meanings are expressed by *prepositional phrases. The corresponding semantic categories include *agent, *instrument, and *means. The nearest equivalent in English to the **ablative absolute** of Latin (*ablativus absolutus*) is the *absolute clause.

Compare CASE.

absolute

1. (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) the *unmarked *degree (1) in the three-way system of comparing *adjectives and *adverbs (e.g. *kind, soon*), in contrast to the *comparative forms (*kinder, sooner*) and the *superlative forms (*kindest, soonest*). Also called **plain grade** or **positive**.

2. Non-gradable. *See* GRADABLE.

3. Used for *possessive *pronouns that can stand on their own (*mine, yours, his, ours, theirs*), contrasted with *my, your*, etc. which are placed before nouns (the latter being variously analysed as pronouns or as determinatives (1)). Also called **independent possessive pronouns**.

4. (In older usage.) Designating an *adjective or *verb which occurs in certain unusual constructions or syntactic relationships, e.g.

(i) an adjective used without a following noun (e.g. *the poor*);
(ii) a normally transitive verb used intransitively (e.g. *Have you eaten?*); and
(iii) a comparative or superlative form of an adjective used without the specific mention of a relationship (e.g. *I only want the best*).

> 1931 G. O. CURME The absolute comparative is not as common as the absolute superlative . . . *higher* education; a *better*-class cafe.

See also ABSOLUTE CLAUSE.

- **absolutely** (in older usage, as 4(i) above.)

> 1884 *New English Dictionary* In 'the public are informed', 'the young are invited', *public* and *young* are adjectives used absolutely.

absolute clause A *non-finite or *verbless *clause containing its own subject, attached to a sentence from which it is separated by a comma (or commas), and not introduced by a subordinator. Also called **absolute construction**.

A verb, if used, can be an *-ing* or an *-ed/-en* form. Examples:

> The fight to board the train—*the women crushed against the doors, the children desperately clutching their mothers*—repeated itself at this provincial station

> *The platform empty once more*, I settled down for the night

Except for a few set phrases (*weather permitting, present company excepted*) absolute clauses tend to be formal and written. If the subject is a pronoun it must be in the *nominative (i.e. the subjective (1)), not the *accusative (i.e. the objective (1)), case (e.g. *I refusing to go, Nicholas went alone*), so absolute clauses are sometimes called **nominative absolutes**. (This contrasts with the *ablative absolute of Latin grammar, where the comparable noun is in the ablative case.)

See also SMALL CLAUSE.

absolutive case *See* ERGATIVE.

abstract Used mainly of *nouns that denote an action, idea, quality, or state; contrasted with *concrete.

The traditional division of common nouns into abstract and concrete nouns is semantic. It therefore cuts across the more strictly grammatical classification into *uncount and *count nouns. It is unsatisfactory as a way of trying to deal with syntactic differences: the abstract label does fit many uncount nouns (e.g. *Everybody needs advice/fun/luck*; not **an advice/*

**funs/*two lucks*), but abstract nouns also include count nouns (e.g. *We had an idea/another quarrel/better solutions*; not **We had idea/quarrel/better solution*). Other abstract nouns have both count and uncount uses (e.g. *several important discoveries/an important discovery*; *a voyage of discovery*).

●● **abstract case**: *see* CASE.

acceptability Of a language form or an utterance: the quality of being judged by native speakers as normal or possible.

Native speakers may disagree over whether a particular *utterance is grammatically acceptable or not. An individual's judgement of acceptability may be affected by personal, regional, or social background, by perceptions of 'correctness', and so on. For example, judgements differ over the acceptability of:

? You ain't seen nothing yet
? She was realizing there was a problem
? The house was building for three years
? We convinced them to go
? Either Monday, Tuesday, or Wednesday would suit me

Linguists make a distinction between acceptability and *grammaticality, since sentences may be grammatically correct according to the *rules, but unacceptable for some other reason. For example, a properly constructed, grammatically correct sentence could be so long that it becomes unacceptable because it is virtually impossible to understand. In this sense, acceptability is related to actual performance, while grammaticality is a feature of (more idealized) *competence.

Acceptability can extend to *word formation. Thus, although the suffix *-ish*, with the meaning 'somewhat like', 'somewhat', combines with concrete nouns (e.g. *foolish*, *snobbish*, *kittenish*) and adjectives (e.g. *coldish*, *pinkish*), there could be degrees of acceptability as regards words newly formed with this suffix (e.g. ?*yuppyish*, **idiotish*, ?*trendyish*, ?**aquamarinish*).

● **acceptable**.

> 1988 R. QUIRK Characters in Dickens can use *an't* or *ain't* for 'isn't' without any hint that such forms are other than fully acceptable.

accidence (In older grammar.) The part of grammar that deals with the *inflections of words; the way words change to indicate different grammatical roles.

This category traditionally contrasts with *syntax. For example, the differences between:

drive, *drives*, *driving*, *drove*, and *driven*

or between:

driver, *driver's*, *drivers*, and *drivers'*

would come under the heading of accidence in a traditional grammar. In more modern grammar the term has been superseded by *inflection, which, together with *derivation, is dealt with under *morphology.

Apparently *accidence* was an alteration of *accidents* (plural), used around 1600 to mean 'the changes to which words are subject in accordance with the relations in which they are used', translating the Latin neuter plural *accidentia*; although it is possible that the latter was misunderstood as a feminine singular noun and rendered *accidence*.

accusative *See* OBJECTIVE (1).

acquisition *Linguistics.* The process of learning a language.

The term **child language acquisition** is used in descriptions of how children develop the ability to speak a language.

See also LANGUAGE ACQUISITION DEVICE.

acrolect *Sociolinguistics.*

1. A term used to describe varieties of a language in a *creole continuum. Specifically, in a particular community the acrolect is the variety that is nearest to the standard.

Compare BASILECT; HYPERLECT; MESOLECT.

2. More generally, the most prestigious or 'highest' social variety of a language.

The term is sometimes used in connection with mother-tongue English speakers. Thus standard British English spoken with a standard accent may be considered an acrolect (*see also* HYPERLECT). It is also used of varieties of English in regions where English is a second (or third) language.

> 1977 J. T. PLATT I feel that in the case of Singapore English . . . a very distinct non-British English acrolect is gradually emerging.

- **acrolectal**.

acronym *Morphology.*

1. Strictly, a *word formed from (i) the initial letters of other words, or from (ii) a mixture of initials and syllables, e.g.

(i)	*AFAIK*	(=as far as I know)
	NATO	(=North Atlantic Treaty Organization)
	NIMBY	(=not in my back yard)
(ii)	*radar*	(=radio detection and ranging)
	yuppie	(=young urban professional + diminutive ending)

Sometimes included in the general term *abbreviation.

2. More loosely, an *abbreviation pronounced as a string of letters, especially letters that stand for the name of an organization or institution, e.g. *BBC, USA*.

This usage may be due to the fact that the specific term for this type of abbreviation (*initialism) is not widely known.

act *See* SPEECH ACT.

action The process of acting or doing, expressed by a *verb.

Many transitive verbs used in the active *voice are said to 'act upon' their objects, which are given the *semantic role of *patient. However, not all such verbs imply actors, actions, or patients in any meaningful way (e.g. *I heard screams, He contracted hepatitis*).

Traditionally and loosely the term is used of *any* verb, but this is best avoided.

> 1884 New English Dictionary *Action of a verb, verbal action*: The action expressed by a verb; properly of verbs which assert *acting*, but conveniently extended to *the thing asserted by a verb*, whether action, state, or mere existence, as I *strike*, I *stand*, I *live*, I *am*.

See also CASE (1); CASE GRAMMAR; SEMANTIC ROLE.

actional passive *See* PASSIVE.

action verb A *verb (also called an **event verb**) describing a *situation that occurs over a limited period of time which has a beginning and an end, e.g. *arrive, make, listen, walk*. Contrasted with a *state verb.

The terms *action and **event**, used to describe verbs, are popular equivalents for *dynamic (1). (Similarly, **state verb** is popularly substituted for **stative verb**.) The alternative labels are not, however, strictly synonymous, since the main verb in *I am growing old*, as part of a *progressive construction, must be described as dynamic, but less obviously denotes either an action or an event.

Compare DYNAMIC; STATIVE.

active (*adj.*) Of a *verb, *clause, *construction, etc.: designating an exponent of the grammatical *category of *voice whereby the grammatical *subject is the *agent of the action denoted by the verb. Contrasted with *passive.

(*n.*) A construction (verb phrase, clause, sentence) in which the referent of the grammatical *subject typically carries out the action expressed by the verb (i.e. is its *agent). Contrasted with passive.

The term is sometimes applied to the verb itself such that the verbs in the following examples are said to be in the active voice:

The bird *caught* the worm
The sun *rises* in the east

Many verbs, e.g. intransitive verbs, can occur only in the active.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. There are greater restrictions on verbs occurring in the passive than on verbs occurring in the active.

•• **active verb**: (in older usage) the same as *action verb.

See also AGENT; *BY*-PHRASE; DOUBLE PASSIVE; *GET*-PASSIVE; PATIENT; PSEUDO-PASSIVE; SEMANTIC ROLE; SEMI-PASSIVE; VOICE.

activo-passive *See* MEDIOPASSIVE.

actor *See* AGENT.

adj-bar category *See* X-BAR SYNTAX.

adjectival (*n. & adj.*) Loosely, (a *word, *phrase, or *clause) behaving like an *adjective (including single-word adjectives); e.g. in *a damp cloth*, the word *damp* is an adjectival element.

The term is also used for examples like the following:

guide price
the *greenhouse* effect
the man *in the white suit*
an *I'm-all-right-Jack* attitude

Some writers informally use the word *adjectival* to describe all of the italicized strings (or even say that they are adjectives), but this is infelicitous, since *form and *function are being confused: the first two examples involve nouns as *modifiers; the third example involves a *prepositional phrase; and the final example has a clause as modifier.

Note that the terms *adjectival* and **adverbial* are not entirely comparable. *Adverbial* can denote one of the main *elements (1) in clause structure (the others being *subject, *verb, *object, and *complement); it is then a function label. Adjectivals operate at a lower level, often as part of a noun phrase (which itself may function as subject or object). An adjectival may in some instances be the sole realization of a complement (e.g. *You* *look hungry*), but the adjectival as such is not a functional element in clause structure.

● **adjectivally**: in an adjectival manner, as an adjective.

●● **adjectival clause**: the same as *adjective clause (1).

●● **adjectival noun**: (in older usage) an adjective that behaves like a noun, e.g.

the *poor*
the *old*

Compare ABSOLUTE (4).

●● **adjectival passive**: the same as *pseudo-passive and statal *passive.

adjectivalization *Morphology*. The conversion of a member of another *word class into an *adjective; the use of such a word in an adjectival function.

The commonest way of forming an adjective from another part of speech is by adding an *affix (e.g. *wealth/wealthy*; *fool/foolish*; *hope/hopeful*).

A well-known feature of English is the use of *nouns in attributive position to modify other nouns (e.g. *greenhouse effect, holiday camp, wind instrument*). This usage is sometimes called adjectivalization, but it is best avoided; *see* ADJECTIVAL.

adjective A major *word class, traditionally (i.e. *notionally) defined as containing 'describing' words, or 'words that tell us something about a noun'.

In modern grammar adjectives are usually defined in *morphosyntactic terms. Formally, a *central adjective meets four grammatical conditions. It can

(i) be used *attributively in a noun phrase (e.g. *an old man*)
(ii) follow *be* or another *copular verb, and thus occur in *predicative position (e.g. *He looks old*)
(iii) be premodified by *intensifying words such as *very* (e.g. *He's very old*)
(iv) have *comparative and *superlative forms (e.g. *an older person, the oldest person in the group*)

In addition, some adjectives take *un*-as a *prefix, e.g. *unhappy, unusual.*

However, not all adjectives comply with all these criteria. Adjectives with an *absolute (2) meaning (i.e. ungradable adjectives) fail criteria (iii) and (iv) (e.g. **very unique, *more unique than* . . .), whereas adjectives which are restricted to *predicative uses (e.g. *afraid*) or to *attributive uses (e.g. *utter*) fail criteria (i) and (ii) respectively.

Adjectives other than attributive-only adjectives can sometimes be *postpositional:

people *impatient* with the slow progress of the talks

For a few adjectives this position is obligatory:

the president *elect*
the body *politic*
the harbour *proper*

Adjectives used with *indefinite compound pronouns must follow these pronouns:

nothing *special*, someone *silly*

Some adjectives are used with *the* in noun phrases. When referring to people, the meaning is 'people of that sort':

the *great* and the *good*
the *poor*
the *disadvantaged*

but note *the Almighty*. (A few participles can also, exceptionally, have singular meaning, e.g. *the accused, the deceased*.) *See also* ABSOLUTE (4).

Other adjectives prefaced by *the* refer to abstract qualities, e.g.

the *bizarre*, the *grotesque*, the *occult*

In a number of set expressions the 'adjective' takes a plural ending, e.g. *Olympic hopefuls*, though arguably this is a noun converted from an adjective.

Some are used in set phrases:

in *public*
in *short*
for *better* or *worse*

Historically, adjectives were once called **noun adjectives** because they named attributes which could be added to a **noun substantive** (Latin *adjectivus* from *adjicere* 'to add') to describe it in more detail, the two being regarded as varieties of the class **noun** or 'name'.

> 1612 J. BRINSLEY *Q.* How many sorts of Nouns have you? *A.* Two: a Noun Substantive, and a Noun Adjective. A noun adjective is that cannot stand by itself, without the help of another word to be joyned with it to make it plain.

•• **numeral adjective**: *see* NUMERAL.

•• **phrasal adjective/phrasal-prepositional adjective**: terms used in CGEL:

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. We could moreover identify 'phrasal adjectives' (derived from participial forms of phrasal verbs) such as *run down*

('exhausted, depressed') and 'phrasal-prepositional adjectives' such as *fed up* (*with*).

See also DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE; QUALITATIVE ADJECTIVE.

adjective clause

1. Commonly, another name for *relative clause.

1932 C. T. ONIONS Adjective Clauses are introduced by Relative Pronouns.

This term is dated and a misnomer, because it confuses *form and *function. As such it is best avoided.

See also ADJECTIVAL; ADJECTIVALIZATION.

2. An adjective phrase (a *verbless or *small clause without an overt subject in some analyses) functioning as *adverbial.

Keen to take part, he volunteered his services
The crowd, *angry now*, charged at the police

adjective complement A *phrase or *clause that is *licensed by an *adjective.

Adjective complements can be *realized as (i) prepositional phrases or (ii) various kinds of clauses, e.g.

(i) They were innocent *of the crime*
She is brilliant *at chess*

(ii) I am sorry *that you don't like it*
We were not very clear *why we had been asked*
You were mad *to tell them*
I've been busy *answering letters*

Such complementation may be obligatory, e.g.

She is fond *of Swiss cheese* (*She is fond)

or optional, e.g.

I am so glad (*that you got the job*)

adjective order The order in which *adjectives are placed in *attributive position within *noun phrases.

When two or more adjectives premodify a noun, there is usually a 'natural' or a 'preferred' order for them. Thus *your wonderful new cream woollen jumper* is *acceptable, but **your woollen new cream wonderful jumper* is not. It has proved difficult to formulate comprehensive and satisfactory rules to describe the ordering, and there are often alternative possibilities, but in general the order is related to the semantic properties of the adjectives. One ordering principle that has been observed is that adjectives that express inherent characteristics (e.g. *woollen*, *Welsh*) are closer to the noun than those that express subjective judgements (e.g. *wonderful*). Similarly, size adjectives precede age and colour adjectives; thus *a big old yellow bus* is fine, but ?*a yellow big old bus* sounds odd.

adjective pattern *See* PATTERN.

adjective phrase (AP/AdjP) A *phrase with an *adjective as *head. Such phrases can occur in *attributive and *predicative position, and can contain *modifiers and/or *complements, e.g.

Dan is *happy*
Fran seems *very lazy*
You make some *highly dubious* assumptions
She is *very difficult to understand*
That's *simple enough*

Compare ADJECTIVAL; ATTRIBUTIVE; PREDICATIVE.

AdjP An abbreviation for *adjective phrase. Also: **AP**.

adjunct

1. (In older usage and in some modern theoretical frameworks.) Any *word, *phrase, or *clause expanding the clause or phrase of which it forms a part with grammatically optional material.

The term has been variously used for words, phrases, or clauses considered to be of secondary importance from the point of view of meaning, including e.g. vocatives and adjectives modifying nouns.

Adjuncts in this sense are marginal to clause and phrase structure, and therefore omissible. Thus in *Sadly, my neighbour moved two months ago*, both *sadly* and *two months ago* can be omitted, leaving a still grammatical, meaningful sentence.

Adjuncts are not *licensed by a *head in the way that *complements are, and do not have a *semantic role to play in the *proposition expressed.

This usage is also common in some theoretical frameworks (e.g. *X-bar syntax), where adjuncts can operate at phrase level (e.g. *silly* in *a silly person*) as well as at clause level.

In Jespersen's terminology *adjunct* describes the functional role of a *secondary joined to a *primary by *junction.

> 1933b O. JESPERSEN A secondary can be joined to a primary in two essentially different ways, for which we use the terms **Junction** and **Nexus**. As separate names for the secondary in these two functions we shall use the terms **Adjunct** and **Adnex** respectively.

2. Sometimes used to mean the same as *adverbial.

3. (In CGEL and related frameworks.) A particular subclass of *adverbial, contrasted with *conjunct, *disjunct, and *subjunct.

In this categorization, only adverbials functioning as an *element of clause structure (represented as ‘A’) are adjuncts. By this definition, *with gusto* is an adjunct in the first sentence below, but *evidently* in the second is not:

He spoke *with gusto*
Evidently, I was wrong

Adjuncts of this special type often refer to place, time, or process (including ‘manner’, ‘means’, ‘instrument’, and the *agentive *by*-phrase used in passive clauses), and are integrated into clause structure to some degree. Thus, they can, for example, be in the *focus position of a *cleft construction:

It was *with gusto* that he spoke (cf. *It was *evidently* that I was wrong)

Typically, these adjuncts come in end position, after the verb (and object, if any). But other positions are also possible; thus *frequency adjuncts* usually come in mid position, e.g.

They *usually* arrive late

Adjuncts are sometimes divided on functional grounds into *predication adjuncts and *sentence adjuncts.

● **adjunction:** *see* ADJUNCTION.
●● **linking adjunct**: *see* LINKING WORD.
●● **predicative adjunct**: *see* PREDICATIVE.

See also ADNEX; JUNCTION; PRIMARY; SECONDARY; SENTENCE ADJUNCT; VIEWPOINT ADJUNCT.

adjunction A process whereby one element (*affix, *word, *phrase, etc.) is adjoined to another.

●● **Chomsky adjunction:** a special type of adjunction in which a category B is linked to a category A first by making B a sister of A, and then by making A and B taken together daughters of a copy of the original node A:

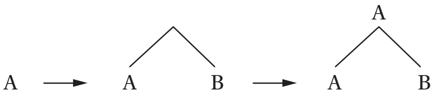

adnex (In Otto Jespersen’s terminology.) The functional role of a *secondary (3) when joined in a clause through **nexus** to a *primary (2), which is typically a verb or some other part of the predication.

1933a O. JESPERSEN *The dog runs*, nexus: *runs* . . . is adnex to *dog*.

> 1933b O. JESPERSEN The adnex may be any word or combination of words which can stand as a predicative . . . e.g. a prepositional group. Could she have believed herself in the way?

The term is not in general use today.

See also ADJUNCT; JUNCTION; PREDICATION ADJUNCT; PRIMARY; SECONDARY; SENTENCE ADJUNCT.

adnominal (*n. & adj.*) (A *word or *phrase) attached to, i.e. *modifying, a *noun. Adnominals can precede or follow the head noun, and with it they form a noun phrase, e.g.

our wonderful new home
a country cottage
my parents' flat
somewhere *to live*
a place *of one's own*

•• **adnominal relative clause**: an ordinary *relative clause, whether *defining or *non-defining (so called because it functions in the same way as other adnominals):

houses *that we've looked at*
Sandringham House, *which we visited*

The label is not common, but is used to distinguish this type of clause from *free relative clauses.

adposition A cover term for *postpositions (2) and *prepositions.

adverb Items belonging to this *word class typically function as the *head of an *adverb phrase which *modifies a *verb (e.g. *spoke quietly*), an adjective (e.g. *really awful*), another adverb (e.g. *very quietly*), or, more rarely, a noun (e.g. *?his almost victory, the events recently*).

Adverbs form a notoriously mixed word class. Traditionally they are divided into various meaning-related categories, such as manner (e.g. *hurriedly*, *sideways*, *thus*), modality (e.g. *perhaps*, *probably*, *certainly*), time (e.g. *later*, *never*, *often*), degree (e.g. *exceedingly*, *very*), and frequency (e.g. *daily*).

Some grammarians have argued that adverbs and adjectives cannot be distinguished as word classes because of their *complementary distribution, and hence belong to a single class, but others have disputed this.

> 2010 J. PAYNE, R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM Complementarity between adjectives and adverbs is often used in support of a further claim, periodically espoused by a variety of linguists from Kuryłowicz (1936) to Baker (2003), that adjectives and adverbs are effectively inflectional variants of a single major

> category . . . [W]e argue not only that complementarity as defined does not hold, but that distribution *per se* is irrelevant to the issue of whether adverbs are inflectionally related to adjectives.

In CaGEL many words traditionally regarded as adverbs are reassigned to the class of prepositions, e.g. *downstairs*, *here*, *inside*, *there*; and other words are reassigned to the class of nouns, e.g. *yesterday*, *today*.

Loosely, in popular grammar, the term *adverb* is often used to cover *adverb phrases and *adverbials in general. More strictly, where the latter terms are used, *adverb* can be restricted to a single word functioning as the head of an adverb phrase.

•• **adverbial of degree, adverb of degree, degree adverb**, **degree adverbial**: *see* DEGREE.

•• **adverbial of manner, adverb of manner, manner adverb, manner adverbial**: *see* MANNER.

See also ADJUNCT; ADVERBIAL; ADVERB PHRASE; CONJUNCT; DISJUNCT; PREDICATION ADJUNCT; SENTENCE ADVERB; SUBJUNCT.

adverb clause *See* ADVERBIAL CLAUSE.

adverbial

1. (*n.*) (In some modern grammar frameworks, e.g. CGEL.) One of the five *elements of *clause structure, symbolized by A, comparable to *subject (S), *verb (V), *object (O), and *complement (C).

Unlike subjects, verbs, and complements, which are usually essential, adverbials are optional elements of clause structure that can be *realized by phrases or by clauses (*adverbial clauses), e.g.

You've done that [$_{\text{AdvP}}$ *very well*]: SVOA
Paul visited [$_{\text{NP}}$ *last night*]: SVA
[$_{\text{clause}}$ *When you've quite finished*], we can begin: ASV
[$_{\text{clause}}$ *Though disappointed*], she said nothing: ASVO

2. (*adj.*) Of or pertaining to an *adverb.

> 1872 R. MORRIS In Elizabethan writers we find the adverbial -*ly* often omitted, as '*grievous* sick', '*miserable* poor'.

• **adverbially**.

•• **adverbial clause**: *see* ADVERBIAL CLAUSE.

•• **adverbial conjunction**: *see* CONJUNCTION.

•• **adverbial group**: a term used in *Systemic Grammar, corresponding to *adverb phrase. *See* GROUP (1); WORD GROUP.

•• **adverbial of means**: *see* MEANS.

•• **adverbial particle**: *see* PARTICLE.

•• **adverbial phrase**: the same as *adverb phrase. This usage is to be avoided since *form and *function terminology are mixed.

adverbial clause Any *clause (*finite, *non-finite, or *verbless) functioning as an *adverbial. (Also called **adverb clause**, but this is to be avoided because two *form (3) labels are used.)

They succeeded *because they persevered*
Don't do it, *unless you're sure*
I'll come *when I'm ready*
Although injured, he struggled on
While travelling, he contracted jaundice
Make it Thursday, *if possible*

In more traditional usage, only the finite clauses (i.e. the italicized portions in the first three examples) would be included here.

Adverbial clauses are often classified on semantic grounds into such categories as clauses of *time, *place, *condition, *concession, *purpose, *reason, *result, *comparison, *manner, and *comment.

In some frameworks (e.g. CaGEL, OMEG) most of the clauses above are regarded as prepositional phrases in which a preposition (*because*, *unless,* etc.) takes a clause as complement.

adverbialization The *derivational process of forming an *adverb from another part of speech.

Adding *-ly* to an adjective is the most obvious example of this process (e.g. *bad/badly*, *pretty/prettily*). Another affix with the same result is *-wise* (e.g. *jobwise*: 'as regards jobs or a job').

adverb particle *See* PARTICLE.

adverb phrase (AdvP) A *phrase headed by an *adverb which typically functions as an *adverbial in *clause structure, e.g.

He speaks *quickly*
We were *often* able to use the pool
The store *happily* exchanged the unwanted gifts

Adverb phrases can also function as *modifiers inside phrases, e.g.

$[_{\mathrm{AdvP}}\ [_{\mathrm{AdvP}}$ *quite*] *miraculously*]
$[_{\mathrm{AdjP}}\ [_{\mathrm{AdvP}}$ *extremely*] *competent*]

affected *Semantics*. Influenced, acted upon: used to describe the typical *semantic role of the *direct object.

The *direct objects in the following are said to have an affected role:

I hugged *Lucy*
Ken hit *his head*

*Goal, *objective (3), and *patient are sometimes used in this way, but distinctions are often made.

In some theories about semantic roles, the subjects of *copular verbs, and even of *intransitive verbs, are said to have an affected role, e.g.

Lucy was in the garden
Her hat lay on the seat beside her

Compare RECIPIENT.

affective The same as *attitudinal and *emotive.

affirmative (form)

1. Of a *sentence or *clause: stating that a *proposition is true. Contrasted with *negative. (Also sometimes applied to verbs that are not negated.)

In some grammars the term *positive is used with the same meaning.

2. The same as *assertive.

Compare POLARITY.

affix *Morphology*. An addition to the *root (or *base (2) form) of a word, or to a *stem, in order to form a new *lexeme or a new form of the same word.

An affix added before the root is a *prefix (e.g. *un*-natural, *over*-weight); one added at the end is a *suffix (natural-*ness*, weight-*less*-*ness*). Affixes can be *derivational (*garden* > *gardener*) or *inflectional (*garden* > *gardens*).

Some non-European languages also have **infixes**. These are additions that are inserted within the base of a word. In English perhaps marginal examples of this phenomenon are the plural -*s* inserted in the middle of some compounds (e.g. *hangers-on*), or in a few cases swearwords inserted within a word (e.g. *abso-bloody-lutely*).

See also DERIVATION; FORMATIVE; INFLECTION; MORPHEME.

- **affixation**: the joining of an affix or affixes to (the root or stem of) a word.

agent A *semantic role label applied to a *phrase that refers to the logical 'instigator' or 'doer' of an action or event denoted by a *verb, particularly a *dynamic (1) verb, i.e. the phrase that refers to the person, or other *animate being, that carries out the action denoted by the verb. (Sometimes called *agentive, e.g. in *Case Grammar.)

Broadly, the term can be used in relation to both *transitive and *intransitive verbs. It is applied to the subject of an active transitive verb and to the **by*-phrase of a corresponding *passive sentence. Thus *the old lady* is the agent both in *The old lady swallowed a fly* (which can be described in terms of actor-action-goal), and in *The fly was swallowed by the old* *lady*. The term can also be applied to the subject of an intransitive verb (e.g. *Little Tommy Tucker* sings for his supper).

The term clearly makes more sense when restricted to a 'doer' who, in a real sense, initiates an action, than when applied to the subject of some 'mental process' verb (e.g. *She didn't like it*) or of a verb of 'being' (e.g. *She was old*). Some analysts therefore restrict the term, and would not apply it to the noun phrase *the old lady* if her action was unintentional and involuntary.

In popular grammar, *agent* contrasts principally with *instrument and *means.

The label *agent* is often used interchangeably with **actor**, though a distinction is sometimes made:

> 1997 R. VAN VALIN & R. J. LAPOLLA The generalized AGENT-type role will be termed **actor** and the generalized PATIENT-type role will be called **undergoer**. Accordingly, in an active sentence in English, the actor is the subject, which, with a certain kind of verb, would be an AGENT, and with another kind of verb would be an EXPERIENCER, and with yet another kind of verb would be a POSSESSOR, and so on.

•• **agent noun**: a noun whose referent is the person, entity, etc. which carries out the action denoted by a verb, and which is formed by adding the suffix *-er* or *-or* to a verb; e.g. *actor*, *instructor*, *manufacturer*, *teacher*, *worker*. Some agent nouns are inanimate (e.g. *computer*, *shocker*), and some have no independent *base (e.g. *author*, *butcher*).

agentive

1. (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) a *noun, *suffix, or *semantic role that indicates an *agent.

In the sentence *This great ceiling was painted by Michelangelo*, *Michelangelo* is the agent and *by Michelangelo* is an agentive phrase.

In the words *doer*, *farmer*, and *lover* there is an agentive suffix, *-er*, which contrasts with the *comparative suffix *-er* in *kinder*, *nicer*.

> 1964 J. VACHEK The comparative suffix *-er* does not imply the change of the word-category of the basic word, while the agentive *-er* necessarily does so.

Verbs in context can be described as agentive or **non-agentive**. An **agentive verb** posits an animate instigator of the action. Contrast:

> The postman banged on the door (agentive verb)
> The door was banging in the wind (non-agentive verb)

2. In *Case Grammar the **agentive case** is defined semantically (together with *objective (3), *dative (2), etc.), and so the subject of an active verb is frequently (though not always) agentive (the agent). This is a specialized use.

1968 C. J. FILLMORE The cases that appear to be needed include: *Agentive* (A), the case of the typically animate perceived instigator of the action identified by the verb.

agentless passive *See* PASSIVE.

agent noun *See* AGENT.

agglutinative *See* ANALYTIC.

aggregate noun A *noun that is 'plural-only' in form (e.g. *outskirts, remains*), or functionally plural-only, though lacking an *-s* (e.g. *people, police*).

A few aggregate nouns can take singular or plural verbs (e.g. *the works is/are in* Birmingham).

Compare COLLECTIVE NOUN; PLURALE TANTUM; SUMMATION PLURAL.

agree Be in *concord; take the same *number, *gender, *person, etc. (as another element in the clause or sentence).

See AGREEMENT.

agreement A *morphosyntactic phenomenon whereby two (or more) elements in a clause or sentence are harmonized in terms of the *shape they take, e.g. with regard to *person, *number, or *gender. Also called **concord**.

In English, the most generally recognized agreement is that between a subject and a verb. As verbs have few *inflections, this mainly affects the third person singular of the *present tense of lexical verbs, where the *-s* ending contrasts with the other persons of the singular, and with the plural (e.g. *He* or *she works*, but *I, we, you, they work*). The verbs *be* and *have* as main verbs, and as auxiliaries in the *progressive, *passive, and *perfect constructions (*I am working, They were telephoned, She has worked*), also agree with their subjects, as does *do* when used as a main or auxiliary verb (e.g. *Tom does his homework at night*; *Does she support your plans?*).

Prescriptivists favour strict grammatical agreement. But **notional concord**, where agreement follows the meaning, is a common feature of English, and acceptable to most grammarians:

Everybody knows this, don't they?
Neither of them approve (more strictly: *approves*)
The committee have decided . . . (*has decided* . . .)
£10 is all I have

A minor type of verb agreement, called **proximity agreement** (or **proximity concord**), is the agreement of a verb with a closely preceding noun, instead of with the noun head that actually functions as subject of the sentence in question. Such agreement may be marginally acceptable when it supports notional concord, but is generally considered ungrammatical:

?No one except my parents care what happens to me
??A parcel of books have arrived for you

Number agreement also normally exists between a subject and a *subject-related predicative complement (e.g. *She is a pilot*; *They are pilots*), and between a direct object and an *object-related predicative complement (e.g. *I consider her a brilliant pilot*, *I consider them brilliant pilots*).

Number and gender agreement affects *pronouns and *determinatives (1), e.g.

He has lost *his* umbrella
There were *many* problems and *much* heartsearching
I borrowed *those books* (**this books*) from the library
She blames *herself* (**himself*)

Aktionsart The lexical expression of *aspect; the expression of various types of *situations (actions, processes, etc.) by *lexical items (often in association with their *dependents) as opposed to by grammatical means (e.g. the *progressive construction). This term is usually spelt with a capital letter, since it is a German noun which literally means 'kind or type of action'. (Also called **lexical aspect** and **situation aspect**.)

alethic (Pronounced /əˈliːθɪk/.) Necessarily and logically true.

The term, taken from *modal logic, comes from the Greek word *alētheia* 'truth', and is concerned with the necessary truth of *propositions. It is sometimes used in the analysis of modal verbs, though most grammarians include this meaning under *epistemic *modality. The distinction between alethic and epistemic modality, when it is made, is that alethic modality is concerned with logical deduction (e.g. *If she's a widow, her husband must have died*), whereas epistemic modality, relates to confident inference (e.g. *They were married over fifty years—she must miss him*).

allograph A particular printed or written form of a letter of the alphabet (or more technically of a *grapheme).

Thus a lower-case ⟨a⟩, a capital ⟨A⟩, an italic ⟨*a*⟩, and a scribbled letter *a* are all allographs of the same grapheme.

Compare GRAPH; MORPHEME (1).

allomorph *Morphology*. An alternant of a *morpheme (1); any form in which a (meaningful) morpheme is actually realized. (Also called **morphemic variant**.)

This label includes both phonologically *conditioned alternants (e.g. plural /s/, /z/, and /ɪz/, as in *cats* /kæts/, *dogs* /dɒgz/, and *horses* /ˈhɔːsɪz/) and grammatical alternants such as *–ed*/*-en* (as in *heated*, *frozen*) for the *past participle *morpheme. We can also talk of a **zero allomorph** in *sheep* (plural), and various irregular allomorphs in *mice*, *geese*, and so on.

• **allomorphic**: of or pertaining to an allomorph.

Compare FORMATIVE; MORPH.

alternant

1. Any of the possible variants of a particular *category, *feature, etc. of the language.

2. *Morphology*. Another word for *allomorph.

• **alternance**, **alternation**: the existence of alternants and the relationship between them.

• **alternate**: vary between alternants.

> 1935 J. R. FIRTH Vowel alternance is also a very important morphological instrument in the strong conjugation of verbs. There are thirty vowel alternances for our babies to learn.

> 1991 P. H. MATTHEWS [D]ifferent inflections mark the same category: thus *e* in *men* and the *–s* in *seas* both mark Plural. We will say that the inflections **alternate**.

alternative conditional-concessive clause (In CGEL.) A type of *conditional clause with an element of *concessive meaning that contains the sequence *whether . . . or (whether) . . .* , e.g.

Whether Sue comes or whether she phones us is immaterial
Whether Liam likes it or not, he will have to attend the meeting

In CaGEL this is a type of **exhaustive conditional**.

See also UNIVERSAL CONDITIONAL-CONCESSIVE CLAUSE; CONDITION; CONDITIONAL.

alternative question *See* QUESTION.

ambient *it* *See* DUMMY.

ambiguity The phenomenon whereby a *word, *phrase, *clause, or *sentence has more than one meaning.

•• **lexical ambiguity**. Ambiguity can be due to a word having more than one meaning; e.g. *I don’t seem to have a chair*. Was the speaker complaining that she had nothing to sit on, or that there was nobody to introduce her at a speaking event?

●● **grammatical ambiguity** (or **structural ambiguity**). This can be caused in many different ways, for example by ellipsis (or uncertainty whether there is ellipsis) within a *noun phrase:

> He was wearing new red socks and boots (Were the boots new and red too?)
>
> They are advertising for teachers of French, German, and Russian (Is this about separate teachers of these three languages, or people capable of teaching all of them?)
>
> Visiting relatives can be tedious (Is the speaker talking about relatives who are making a visit or about making the visit themself?)

Because *prepositional phrases can appear in different kinds of structures, for example as *modifiers in noun phrases or as *adverbials in clause structure, there is often considerable doubt as to what material they relate to. Thus in *These claims have been dismissed as mere bravado* *by the police* the context will make clear that the meaning is ‘dismissed by the police’, but it is also possible to interpret *mere bravado by the police* as a noun phrase.

Similarly, *to*-infinitive clauses, which can have a multiplicity of functions, may be ambiguous:

> Railmen defy union order to stop coal shipments (This means either that the railmen defied the union order, so as to stop the shipments, or they continued the shipments in defiance of an order to stop them.)

Ellipted clauses of comparison are another frequent cause of ambiguity:

> I had better taste in films than friends (Was the speaker’s taste in films better than his taste in friends, or did he have better taste in films than his friends had?)

In complex sentences, ambiguity can arise when not just a phrase, but a whole finite clause is open to more than one interpretation. (Intonation will disambiguate if the sentences are spoken.)

> I didn’t go because it was my birthday (Did the speaker not go at all, or did they go, but for some reason other than it being their birthday?)
>
> He said he wouldn’t lend me the money and I couldn’t go (Did he say that I wouldn’t be given any money and also that I couldn’t go, or could I not go as a consequence of not being lent the money?)
>
> He’ll tell you when they arrive (Does this mean that he will inform you of the time of their arrival, or that he will tell you something after they arrive?)

A further type of ambiguity is caused by the fact that many English words can be interpreted as belonging to more than one word class. Headline English is a rich source of such ambiguity:

> Juvenile court to try shooting defendant (Will there be an attempt to use guns in court, or will the defendant in a shooting case be tried?)
>
> Peking bars escape from 'terror' purge (Was the Chinese government taking measures to prevent (*bar*) someone from escaping, or had the city's drinking venues escaped some harsh new decree?)
>
> American ships head to Libya (Did someone send a head on a ship, or did some ships set out on a journey?)

- **ambiguous**: displaying ambiguity.

ambilingual (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) a person who has complete mastery of two languages.

> 1959 J. C. CATFORD In everyday speech the word 'bilingual' generally refers to a person who has virtually *equal* command of two or more languages. If a special term is required for such persons of equal linguistic skill (which is very difficult to measure) I should prefer to call them 'ambilinguals'. Ambilinguals are relatively rare.

- **ambilingualism**.

Compare BILINGUAL.

amplifier *See* INTENSIFIER.

anacoluthon (Pronounced /ænəkəˈluːθɒn/. Plural **anacoluthons**, **anacolutha**.) Syntactic discontinuity within a *clause or *sentence; a clause or sentence which either breaks off while incomplete, or switches part-way through to a different syntactic structure; *discontinuity of this kind as a general phenomenon.

Informal spoken language often contains anacoluthon, much of which may pass unnoticed by the listener, e.g.

> One of my sisters—her husband's a doctor and he says if you take aspirin your cold will go in a week, but if you do nothing it will take seven days
>
> It's a course which I don't know whether it will be any good
>
> I thought that you were going—well, I hoped that you were going to help
>
> Why don't you—it's only a suggestion—but you could walk

The term was formerly used in rhetoric, but has been adopted into linguistics. In rhetoric, the general phenomenon was called *anacoluthia* and an individual instance *anacoluthon*.

Compare the *rhetorical (1) term **aposiopesis**: the abrupt ending of an utterance or speech, as in this extract:

. . . No, you unnatural hags,
I will have such revenges on you both,
That all the world shall—I will do such things,—
What they are, yet I know not; but they shall be
The terrors of the earth! You think I'll weep;
No, I'll not weep.
Shakespeare, *King Lear*, II, iv, 270–275

- **anacoluthic**, **anacoluthically**.

analogy The replication or imitation of the *inflections, derivatives, and *constructions of existing words in forming the inflections, derivatives, and constructions of other words.

Analogy normally governs the patterns of *word-formation. Recent years have, for example, seen numerous new *verbs with the *prefixes *de-* (e.g. *deselect*) and *dis-* (e.g. *disinvest*) and *nouns beginning with *Euro-* (e.g. *Eurocrat, Eurosceptic, Eurospeak, Eurozone*). Other new nouns have been formed with such well-established *suffixes as *-ism* (e.g. *endism, handicapism*). New verbs almost always inflect regularly (e.g. *faxing, faxes, faxed*), by analogy with regular verbs.

In *historical linguistics, the term *analogy* is used in connection with the tendency for *Irregular forms to become *regular (e.g. *shape*, *shove*: past tense *shaped*, *shoved*, in the 14th century *shoop*, *shofe*; *past participle *shaped*, *shoved*, in the 14th century *shopen*, *shoven*). Interestingly, irregular patterns are sometimes spread by analogy: for example, the historical *past tense form of the verb *dive* is the regular *dived*, but the irregular *dove* arose in British *dialects and American English during the nineteenth century; similarly *scarves*, *hooves*, and even *rooves* have tended to replace the historical and regular *plurals *scarfs*, *hoofs*, and *roofs*.

Analogy probably accounts for the recently developed pronunciation of *covert* (traditionally /ˈkʌvət/) to rhyme with *overt*, and *dissect* (traditionally /dɪˈsekt/) to rhyme with *bisect* (each pair of words has a certain amount of shared meaning).

Over-regularization by analogy is seen in the early efforts at speaking English of both young children and foreign learners, who may well say *He goed*, *mouses*, *sheeps*, and so on.

Compare OVERGENERALIZATION.

analysable Capable of being analysed; particularly used of words that can be broken down into constituent *morphemes. Contrasted with **unanalysable**.

Compare *dis-interest-ed-ness* with *interest*, which cannot be analysed further into morphemes, although *in-* or *inter* are meaningful elements in other words, such as *inborn*, *incurable*, *interfaith*.

analyse Distinguish the grammatical elements of a *word, *phrase, *clause, *sentence, *construction, etc. in a particular context, and how they relate to other such elements.

There are many ways in which words, phrases, clauses, sentences, constructions, etc. can be analysed. A word can be analysed into its *root (or *base) and *affixes (e.g. *dis-interest-ed-ness*). Simple sentences and clauses can be analysed into *subject, *predicator, *predicate, *object, *adverbial, etc. *Complex and *compound sentences are often analysed into different types of clauses, e.g. *coordinate clause, *subordinate clause, *relative clause, and so on.

analysis The process of breaking up *words, *phrases, *clauses, *sentences, *constructions, etc. into their *constituent parts.

See also ANALYSE; COMPONENTIAL ANALYSIS; CONTRASTIVE *analysis*; DISCOURSE *analysis*; DISTRIBUTION; IMMEDIATE CONSTITUENT *analysis*; MULTIPLE *analysis*.

analytic

1. *Morphology*. Designating a language without (or with few) *inflections. (Also called **isolating**.)

In an analytic language, word (or *constituent) order plays an important role in establishing *meaning. In extremely analytic languages most words consist of single *morphemes. Analytic languages contrast with *synthetic (1) languages, which rely heavily on changing the form of words, and **agglutinative** languages, in which words are ‘welded’ together from smaller words or units, each contributing a bit of grammatical meaning.

English, having few inflections, is more analytic than, say, Latin or German, but it has some synthetic characteristics (e.g. *happy/happier/happiest*; *time/times*) and some agglutinative features (e.g. *mis-under-stand-ing*, *in-contest-able*).

By analogy, the contrast between analytic and synthetic is sometimes applied to syntactic features of English. Thus *multi-word verbal *constructions (e.g. perfect *have taken*) and *periphrastic *adjective *comparisons (e.g. *more unusual*, *most unusual*) are analytic, whereas corresponding single-word forms (e.g. *took*; *odder/oddest*) are synthetic.
•• **analytic mood**: the grammatical manifestation of *mood, not by means of verbal inflections, but by means of a construction, specifically the combination of a *modal auxiliary with a *lexical verb, e.g. *will take*, *must go*.

2. *Semantics*. Designating a *proposition that is necessarily true by virtue of the meaning of the words contained in it, without reference to a particular situation or to particular circumstances, in contrast to *synthetic (2).
For example, *Jim is a boy. Therefore, Jim is male* is analytically true.

anaphor

1. A *word or *phrase that refers back to an earlier word or phrase.

In *My cousin said he was coming to see me*, *he* is a personal *pronoun used as an anaphor for *my cousin* (which is its *antecedent). But more usually *he* would be described as a *pro-form substituting for *my cousin*. (Notice that *he* could also refer to some other male individual in this example.)

2. zero anaphor, **null anaphor**: an anaphor that is non-overt; e.g. in *Government-Binding Theory the sentence *I want to leave* is analysed as involving a null anaphor pronoun **PRO** (called 'big PRO'):

I_i want [PRO_i to leave] (The subscript 'i' indicates *co-reference.)

PRO is contrasted with **pro** ('little pro'), which is posited as a null subject in languages that typically drop overt subjects, e.g. Italian, Spanish, and Greek.

anaphora

1. The use of a *word or words as a substitute for a previous linguistic unit when referring back to a person, thing, event, etc., denoted by the latter.

*Pronouns and other *pro-forms are frequently used anaphorically to avoid repetition, e.g.

I called *John* because I wanted to ask *him* something

Sometimes a *noun is repeated, and then the identity of reference is usually shown by a marker of *definiteness (*the*, *that*, etc.) in the later (*anaphoric*) reference. Consider the following nursery rhyme:

Old Mother Hubbard
went to the cupboard
to get her poor dog a bone;
But when *she* got *there*,
the cupboard was bare,
and so *the* poor dog had none.

She and *there* (line 4) refer back to *Old Mother Hubbard* (line 1) and *the cupboard* (line 2). *The cupboard* (line 5) and *the poor dog* (line 6) refer back to *the cupboard* and *her poor dog* in lines 2 and 3.

The term anaphora is sometimes extended to include more indirect reference, e.g.

I've still got a book of nursery rhymes I had as a child, but *the cover* is torn

Obviously *the cover* refers to the cover of the book that was mentioned earlier.

2. Loosely, a *hypernym for both anaphora (1) and *cataphora.

When the term is so used, the two types are then distinguished as **backwards anaphora**, **backward-looking anaphora**, or **unmarked order anaphora** (= (1) above), and **forwards anaphora**, **forward-looking anaphora**, **anticipatory anaphora**, or **marked order anaphora** (=cataphora).

- **anaphoric**: involving anaphora.
- **anaphorically**.

> 1909–49 O. JESPERSEN *The little one* is used anaphorically if it means 'the little flower' or whatever it is that has just been mentioned.

•• **anaphoric ellipsis**: *see* ELLIPSIS.

Compare ANTECEDENT.

***and*-relationship** A *syntagmatic relationship. Contrasted with **or-relationship* (i.e. *paradigmatic relationship).

See also CHAIN; PARADIGM; SAUSSUREAN; SYNTAGMATIC RELATIONSHIP.

Anglo-Saxon The same as *Old English.

animate Denoting a living being.

The term is particularly used in the classification of *nouns. Animate nouns (e.g. *girl*, *tiger*, etc.) refer to persons and animals, in contrast to **inanimate** nouns (e.g. *happiness*, *zoo*), which refer to things, ideas, situations, etc. In English this distinction is almost entirely a matter of meaning, not grammar, although there is a rough correspondence in some *personal and *relative *pronouns: *he*, *she*, and *who* usually have animate *reference, whereas *it* and *which* are mainly used in connection with inanimate referents.

anomalous Not conforming to the *rules of a particular system, grammar, etc.

•• **anomalous finite**: a *finite *verb form which forms the *negative by adding *-n't*, and forms *interrogatives through *inversion.

This category includes all the *modal verbs; all uses of *be*; *do* as an *auxiliary verb; and some uses of *have* (e.g. *I haven't enough money*, but not, for example, forms using **do*-support: *I don't have enough money*).

This is a somewhat dated term for dealing with the characteristic syntactic behaviour of *be*, *do*, and *have*, which, in most frameworks, can be *main verbs or *auxiliary verbs.

Compare DEFECTIVE; IRREGULAR.

answer *See* RESPONSE.

antecedent A unit to which a particular *word or *phrase refers back grammatically.

Typically antecedents are *noun phrases to which *pronouns can refer, e.g. in *My brother telephoned to say that he'd be late* the noun phrase *my brother* is the antecedent of *he* (though *he* could also refer to some other male individual).

Such a grammatical relationship can exist even when the pronoun refers back, not to the identical person or thing, but to a previous linguistic form, e.g.

I've lost *my umbrella* and will have to get a new *one*

Less obviously *do*, *so*, *do so*, *there*, *then*, and a few other *pro-forms can refer back to antecedents which may be verbal, adverbial, or clausal, e.g.

I *cried* more than I'd ever *done* before in my life
You could *buy a yearly season ticket*, but I don't advise *doing so*
'*Petrol prices are going up again*.' 'Who told you *that*?'

Loosely, despite the meaning of the word, the term *antecedent* is sometimes extended to refer to phrases that come later than their pro-forms, e.g.

If you see *her*, will you give *Mary* a message for me?

Compare ANAPHOR; ANAPHORA; CATAPHORA; PRO-FORM.

anterior time A time that precedes some other point in time, referred to by means of *tense, or in another way.

The term is sometimes used to describe the meaning of the *perfect construction. For example, in

(i) You're too late. They *have left*
(ii) This time next week, he *will have forgotten* all about it
(iii) I realized I *had lost* my key

the italicized *perfect constructions indicate a time before points in the present (i), the *future (ii), and the *past (iii). The third type of anterior time, as in (iii), is commonly called **before-past**.

- **anteriority**.

See also PAST; PAST PERFECT; TENSE.

anticipated dislocation *See* DISLOCATION.

anticipation *Psycholinguistics*. A slip of the tongue by which a linguistic element is used earlier than it should be.

This is a term used by some psycholinguists for part of what many people would call a **spoonerism**, e.g.

The cat popped on its drawers (i.e. the cat dropped on its paws)

anticipatory Anticipating the logical *subject (1) or (more rarely) *object, when the latter are *postponed until later in the *sentence or *clause by *extraposition.

In the first sentence below, *it* is an **anticipatory subject** (the grammatical subject), and in the second sentence *it* is an **anticipatory object**:

It is better *to have loved and lost* than never to have loved at all

I take *it that you agree with me*

There is considerable confusion in the usage of the terms available to describe the various functions of the word *it*. For some grammarians, **anticipatory *it*** (used with extraposition) and **preparatory *it*** are identical, but they distinguish this usage from *dummy *it* (or empty *it* or prop *it*), as in e.g. *It is raining*. Others use all or some of these terms differently, or use one of them as an umbrella term.

See also IMPERSONAL; INTRODUCTORY; SUBJECT.

●● **anticipatory anaphora**: *see* ANAPHORA.

antonym *Semantics*. A word opposite in *meaning to another. Contrasted with *synonym.

For example, *good*, *thick*, *few*, and *life* are antonyms of *bad*, *thin*, *many*, and *death*. More accurately we should talk of a word that is opposite in some of its meanings to other words. For example, the antonym of some meanings of *old* is *young*, and of others it is *new*.

Some linguists distinguish different types of opposite meaning, and reserve the term *antonym* for *gradable opposites (e.g. *good/bad*), excluding both *complementary terms (e.g. *life/death*) and relational *converses (e.g. *buy/sell*, *teach/learn*, *husband/wife*).

● **antonymous**: that is an antonym.

● **antonymy**: the relationship of opposite meaning that exists between words (this word is itself the opposite of *synonymy).

Compare BINARY; COMPLEMENTARY; COMPLEMENTARITY.

See also HETERONYM; HOMONYM; HOMOPHONE; HYPONYM; MERONYM; POLYSEME; POLYSEMY; SYNONYM.

AP An abbreviation for *adjective phrase. Also: **AdjP**.

aphaeresis (Pronounced /æˈfɪərəsɪs/. Plural **aphaereses**.)

1. The omission of a sound at the beginning of a word, regarded as a morphological development.

The now unpronounced sounds at the beginning of *gnat*, *knight*, *psyche* are examples of this phenomenon.

2. The omission of letters, or a syllable, at the beginning of a word, as routinely occurs in contractions, e.g.

I'll (= I will), you've (= you have), he'd better (= he had)

or in *clippings, e.g.

(omni)bus, (tele)phone

This phenomenon is now dealt with under *contraction, clipping, and so on. The term is derived from rhetoric via historical linguistics.

Compare APOCOPE.

apocope (Pronounced /əˈpɒkəpɪ/.) The omission of a syllable or syllables at the end of a word. *Compare* APHAERESIS.

This has happened historically with the loss, since *Old English times, of many verb inflections (e.g. OE *we lufodon*, ME *we loveden, we lovede*, ModE *we loved*; OE *sungen*, ModE *sung*). Today it happens as a type of *clipping, e.g. *auto(mobile), des(irable) res(idence), long vac(ation), spag (hetti) bol(ognese), trad(itional).*

Like aphaeresis, apocope is an old term from diachronic linguistics.

apodosis (Pronounced /əˈpɒdəsɪs/. Plural **apodoses**.) The *matrix clause, as opposed to the **if*-clause in a *conditional *construction, e.g.

I would be upset if they found out

I feel that if you tell her now *she'll be upset*

Contrasted with *protasis.

apo koinou (Pronounced /ˈæpəʊ ˈkɔɪnuː/.) A term from the Greek *apo koinou* 'in common' to denote an unusual *construction which consists of two *clauses which have a word or phrase that is syntactically shared.

In *There's a man outside wants to see you, a man* can be regarded as the *postponed *subject of -*'s* (=*is*) and as the subject of *wants*.

The term is not in general use today; such a construction would be called a *blend or treated as deviant. But *see* CONTACT CLAUSE.

apostrophe The sign ⟨'⟩ which is used to indicate (i) the omission of a letter or letters, as in *don't, 'cause,* the *'90s*; and (ii) the modern *genitive *case (2), as in *boy's, men's.*

The apostrophe is rarely used in abbreviations that are no longer felt to be contractions (e.g. *(in)flu(enza)*) or in colloquial abbreviations (e.g. *info(rmation)*). *O'clock* (= *of the clock*) is an obvious exception.

The *possessive apostrophe originally marked the omission of *e* in writing (e.g. *fox's, James's*), and was equally common in the nominative plural, especially of proper names and foreign words (e.g. *folio's* = *folioes*).

It was gradually disused in the latter, and extended to all possessives, even where *e* had not been previously written, as in *man's*, *children's*, *conscience' sake* (though the latter is somewhat dated, and is often replaced by *conscience's*).

In modern English the use of the apostrophe to mark ordinary *plurals (e.g. *potato's*, *ice-cream's*) is generally regarded as illiterate, and is disparagingly referred to as the *greengrocer's apostrophe. It is usually acceptable with the less usual plurals of letters and dates, e.g.

> Mind your *p's* and *q's*
>
> That is what people did in the *1960's/1960s*

The current rules for possessive apostrophes are:

> Add *'s* to a singular word (e.g. *the boy's statement, an hour's time, Doris's husband, her boss's team*)
>
> Also add *'s* to plural words that do not end in *-s* (e.g. *the men's action, the people's will*)
>
> With plural words ending in *-s* only add an apostrophe at the end (e.g. *ladies' shoes, the Lawsons' house*).

Names from ancient times ending in *s* do not necessarily follow these rules (e.g. *Socrates' death*).

It is an error to use the apostrophe with possessive pronouns (e.g. *hers*, *its*, *ours*, *theirs*, *yours*). *It's* means 'it is' or 'it has'. For 'belonging to it', the correct form is *its* (e.g. *The cat hasn't eaten its food*).

appellative

1. (In older grammar.) (*n.*) A common noun used as a *name, particularly when addressing someone, e.g. *Mother, Sir, Doctor*.

In modern grammar, dealt with as a *vocative.

2. (*adj.*) Of a word, especially a *noun: designating a class, not an individual; common, in contrast to *proper.

> 1755 S. JOHNSON As my design was a dictionary, common or appellative, I have omitted all words which have relation to proper names.

applied linguistics *See* LINGUISTICS.

apposition A relationship of two (or more) units, especially *noun phrases, such that the two units are normally grammatically parallel, and have the same referent, e.g.

> *Our longest reigning monarch, Queen Victoria,* reigned from 1837 to 1901
>
> The third edition of *OUP's biggest dictionary, the Oxford English Dictionary,* is being published online

Grammarians vary in how widely they apply the term *apposition*. In the narrowest definition (**full apposition**), both parts are noun phrases which are identical in reference (i.e. in an **equivalence relationship**), and either part could be omitted, as in the examples above, without affecting the grammaticality or the essential meaning of the sentence.

> 2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. Appositive dependents are ones which when substituted for the matrix NP in a declarative clause systematically yield a clause which is an entailment of the original.
> 1. a. *She sang in* [*the opera* *'Carmen'*]. b. *She sang in* *'Carmen'*.
> 2. a. *It was founded in* [*the year* *1850*]. b. *It was founded in* *1850*.
> 3. a. [*The verb* *'use'*] *is transitive.* b. *'Use' is transitive.*

More loosely, apposition may include pairs of units where not all these conditions apply (**partial apposition**). One part may be a clause (an **appositive clause**, see below). Or the relationship may be one of example, not identity, e.g.

> *A monarch, for example a twentieth-century monarch*, may have limited powers

Alternatively, the omission of one part may result in an ungrammatical sentence, e.g.

> *A very important person* is coming—*the Queen* (we could not say **is coming—the Queen*)

Apposition is predominantly *non-restrictive (the second part adds information but is not essential), although *restrictive apposition is possible (e.g. *the author Graham Greene*).

Grammarians also disagree about whether structures such as the following are cases of apposition or not:

> the number thirteen
> my sister Mary
> the expression 'greenhouse effect'
> the city of Oxford
> that fool of a man

•• **appositive clause:** a *finite *clause, often introduced by *that*, which complements (*postmodifies in some models) the content of a *noun (phrase). Also called **appositional clause**. Example:

> They had the idea *that everything would be all right in the end*

This can be paraphrased as follows: *The idea is that everything would be all right in the end*. Here is a similar but non-defining clause:

> They ignored Wendy's very sensible suggestion, *(namely) that the police should be told*

Such clauses are grammatically distinct from *relative clauses. The word *that* is a *conjunction, not a *pronoun, so these clauses have their own *subject (and *object, where applicable), and *which* is never possible. The preceding noun is an abstract noun, such as *belief*, *fact*, *idea*.

The term appositive clause can be extended to non-finite clauses, e.g.

The request *to send money* shocked us
My work, *looking after these old people*, is rewarding

appositional Of or pertaining to *apposition.
•• **appositional clause**: the same as **appositive clause** (*see* APPOSITION).
•• **appositional compound**: a compound which, semantically, is a hyponym of both of its constituent words, e.g. *manservant*, *drummer boy*, *oak tree*.

appositive (*n. & adj.*) (An element) standing in a relation of *apposition to another element.

appositive clause *See* APPOSITION.

appropriacy *Sociolinguistics*. The quality of being suitable for a given social situation.

The concept of appropriacy is linked to those of *formal versus *informal, *register, and so on.
• **appropriate**.

approximate negator *See* SEMI-NEGATIVE.

arbitrary Lacking any physical or principled connection.

Most language use is arbitrary in this sense, however systematic its grammar. There is no inherent reason why a dog should be called *dog* in English, *chien* in French, *Hund* in German, *perro* in Spanish, and *cane* in Italian.

Compare ICONIC; ONOMATOPOEIC.

archaic Of a *word or grammatical structure: no longer in ordinary use, though retained for special purposes.

archaism

1. The use of words or grammar characteristic of an earlier period of the language.

2. An instance of such usage.

Some archaisms survive in special registers, such as legal or religious language; others are fixed locutions, phrases, etc. familiar from literature, proverbs, and so on. Archaisms include:

(i) individual words, e.g.

methinks
perchance
thou/thine/thee/thy
whence
whereat ye

(ii) verbal *inflections, e.g.

goeth
knowest

(iii) some grammatical structures, e.g.

Our Father, *which art* in heaven (= who is)
He who hesitates is lost (= Anyone who)
All that glitters is not gold (= Not everything that . . . is . . .)
We *must away* (= must go/leave/be off)
Would that I could help (= I wish)
So be it
If it please your lordship
He has come but once in *these two years past*

argument *Semantics*. An element that is assigned a *semantic role in a *proposition.

The term is used technically in **predicate calculus** (also called **predicate logic**), as a part of *logical semantics. Generally speaking, an argument is a person, other animate being, or inanimate entity that is (actively) involved in a particular *situation denoted by a *verb.

> 1984 R. HUDDLESTON Semantic predicates may be classified according to the number of arguments they take. Thus ‘love’ (the semantic predicate expressed by **love**) takes two; ‘sleep’ (as in *Ed was sleeping*) takes one; ‘give’ (as in *Ed gave me the key*) takes three.

In mainstream grammar the phenomenon is often dealt with in terms of *intransitive, *transitive, *ditransitive, etc. verbs.

●● **argument structure:** a specification of the number and types of arguments that a *predicate takes.

●● **external argument**: the argument that is outside the *verb phrase (or *predicate (1)) in a clause, i.e. the *subject.

•• **internal argument**: the argument(s) of a verb that is (are) internal to the *verb phrase.

See also VALENCY.

article An umbrella word class label for *the* (**definite article**) and *a*/*an* (**indefinite article**).

The articles are sometimes classified as a distinct *word class. In modern grammar they are regarded as a subclass of *determinatives (1).

Some grammarians, even later ones, wrongly considered the articles to be a special kind of *adjective.

> 1711 J. GREENWOOD There are two *articles*, *a* and *the*. These are really Nouns Adjective, and are used almost after the same Manner as other Adjectives. Therefore I have not made the Article (as some have done) a distinct Part of Speech.

See also DETERMINER; ZERO ARTICLE.

artificial language A specially invented language, usually intended as a means of international communication.

Esperanto is perhaps the best known artificial language, but many others have been invented.

ascriptive Attributing a property to a person or entity. Thus in e.g.

Jim is *rich*
My tea is *cold*

the properties of 'being rich' and 'being cold' are ascribed to an individual named Jim and to a beverage, respectively.

•• **ascriptive *be***: the verb *be* as used in the examples above.

See also IDENTIFY; SPECIFYING *BE*.

aspect A category of grammar used to describe how a *situation, as expressed by a *verb, or by a verb in combination with its *arguments, unfolds over time.

English is often considered to have two aspects: *progressive aspect, as in:

I am/was writing to Robert

which expresses a situation that is regarded as being in progress (or an incomplete situation); and *perfect aspect (sometimes less felicitously called *perfective aspect*), as in the example below which expresses a completed situation in the past:

I have/had written to Robert

The analysis of the perfect *construction as involving aspect is disputed. For one, it is only the *present perfect that can be said to express aspectual meaning in relating a past situation to the present time (by conveying *current relevance). The other perfect constructions (the *past perfect, *perfect infinitive, etc.) merely express *anterior time. Some grammars (e.g. CaGEL) regard the perfect construction as a (secondary) *tense.

See also PHASE (3).

Traditionally, and often to this day in English language teaching contexts, both aspects are treated as part of the tense system in English, and mention is made of tenses such as the **present progressive** (e.g. *We are waiting*), the **present perfect progressive** (e.g. *We have been waiting*), and the **past perfect progressive** (e.g. *We had been waiting*), with the latter two combining two aspects. There is a distinction to be made, however, between tense and aspect. Tense is concerned with how time is encoded in the grammar of English, and is often based on morphological form (e.g. *write*, *writes*, *wrote*); aspect is concerned with the unfolding of a situation, and in English is a matter of syntax, using the verb *be* to form the progressive, and the verb *have* to form the perfect. For this reason combinations like those above are nowadays referred to as constructions (e.g. the *progressive construction*, the *present perfect progressive* construction).

● **aspectual**: of or pertaining to an aspect or aspects.

●● **Aspects Model**, **Aspects Theory**: *see* STANDARD THEORY.

●● **aspectual lexical verb**: *see* ASPECTUALIZER.

●● **lexical aspect:** *see* AKTIONSART.

●● **situation aspect:** *see* AKTIONSART.

aspectualizer A *verb that carries a meaning that pertains to *aspect, e.g. *begin, cease, continue, discontinue, finish, keep, proceed, quit, start, stop.* (Also called **aspectual lexical verb**.)

aspectual lexical verb *See* ASPECTUALIZER.

assertion A *statement, declaration, etc. that something is (believed to be) true.

In general, assertions tend to be made in grammatically *positive (1) *declarative sentences. Nevertheless, *assertion* is a pragmatic rather than a grammatical category, and other syntactic structures can make assertions, e.g.

Isn’t it hot today? (= ‘it is hot today’)
Wrong number! (= ‘you have dialled/I got a wrong number’)
If you believe that, you’ll believe anything (= ‘you cannot possibly believe that’)

See also ASSERTIVE (FORM); CLAUSE TYPE; SPEECH ACT.

assertive (form) A class of forms that tends to be restricted to positive contexts. Some linguists prefer *affirmative (form)):

> 2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. We prefer 'affirmative' as it suggests the two most important features: positive in contrast to negative (an affirmative answer is a positive one) and declarative in contrast to interrogative (to affirm is to state, not to ask).

Certain *determinatives (1), *pronouns, and *adverbs which, by reason of their meaning, are more usual in positive contexts are replaced by a corresponding set of *non-assertive forms (also called **non-affirmative forms** or **negative polarity items**) in *negative, *interrogative, and *conditional contexts. Assertive forms (also called **affirmative forms** or **positive polarity items**) include the *some* series of words (e.g. *some, somebody, someone, something, somewhere*) and adverbs such as *already*, which contrast with the non-assertive *any*-series (e.g. *any, anybody, anyone, anything, anywhere*) and adverbs such as *yet*. Compare, for example:

> I've *already* planted *some* spring bulbs

with:

> I haven't planted *any* bulbs *yet* (negative clause)
> Have you planted *any* bulbs *yet*? (interrogative clause)
> If *anyone* has planted *any* bulbs, let me know (conditional clause)

The demarcation between assertive and non-assertive is not rigid. Although non-assertive forms are often impossible in positive statements (e.g. **I've already planted any*), assertive forms may be possible in negative and interrogative clauses, where they suggest a markedly positive meaning (e.g. *Have you planted some bulbs already*?). Non-assertive forms occasionally occur in positive statements (e.g. *Any small bulbs would be suitable*).

●● **assertive context/territory**: a term applied to the whole *predication (1) in positive clauses, an area where assertive forms may be expected.

Similarly, the predication of negative clauses, interrogatives, and conditionals is a **non-assertive context/territory**.

Compare NEGATIVE.

● **assertiveness**: the fact of being assertive.

asyndetic Not connected by *conjunctions. Contrasted with *syndetic.

The term is particularly applied to the *coordination of *words, phrases, *clauses, etc. without an overt *coordinator, as in:

> I like cheese, bread, olives, pastries
> Sad, white, frightened, her face was the picture of misery

Such coordination is less usual than coordination with a conjunction, and is therefore stylistically marked.

Compare PARATAXIS.
See also ASYNDETON.

asyndeton (Chiefly used as a *rhetorical (1) term.) The omission of a *conjunction, e.g.

I came, I saw, I conquered

See also ASYNDETIC; COORDINATION.

atelic *Semantics*. A *verb, *construction, *situation, etc. which does not express an inherent end point or goal, e.g.

It is raining
The children are watching TV

Compare CONCLUSIVE; DURATIVE; IMPERFECTIVE (2); PERFECTIVE (2); PUNCTUAL.
See also TELIC.

attachment rule A 'rule', sometimes called the **subject-attachment rule**, which stipulates that the unexpressed *subject of a *subordinate clause has the same referent as the subject of an associated *superordinate clause. In the following example it's the people referred to by the *phrase *the monks* in the *matrix clause who are selling fruit, and who are making use of a network of salespeople:

Making use of a network of salespeople, the monks were selling fruit between one province and another

There are exceptions to the rule where it need not apply, but failure to observe it often results in absurd *misrelated constructions or *hanging participles.

See also CONTROL.

attitudinal *Semantics*. Relating to attitude, or conveying an attitude.

As a category of meaning, **attitudinal meaning** is contrasted with *cognitive or *referential meaning. Comparable terms sometimes used are *affective and *emotive.

A speaker or writer's choice of words may be affected by his or her attitude to the listeners or readers addressed. Thus **attitudinal varieties** of language (e.g. formal, informal, neutral, casual, slangy) contrast with regional or social varieties (determined largely by the speaker's origins), and with varieties affected by the 'field of discourse' (such as the journalistic, the literary, and so on). Attitudinal meaning is also conveyed by intonation in spoken English.

Compare COMMUNICATIVE; CONNOTATIVE; EMOTIVE; INTERPERSONAL; PROPOSITIONAL MEANING; REFERENTIAL MEANING.

Many individual words are neutral as regards attitudinal meaning, but some are not. Compare *offspring, child, kiddy*, and *terrorist, insurgent, guerilla, freedom fighter*.

•• **attitudinal disjunct**: the same as content *disjunct.

•• **attitudinal past**: the *past (2) tense used to express a speaker's attitude, usually a tentative one, rather than to refer to past time, e.g.

Did you want something?
I was hoping you could help

•• **attitudinal prefix**: a *prefix that primarily describes an attitude, e.g. *anti*-social, *pro*-American.

attraction The same as proximity *agreement.

attribute

1. An *adjective phrase or *noun phrase typically preceding a noun in a noun phrase, and describing or expressing a characteristic of the noun; e.g. *new* in *the new library* or *power* in *power struggle*. *Compare* MODIFIER.

2. An adjective phrase or noun phrase functioning as *complement of a verb, and ascribing a property to the subject (**subject attribute**) or object (**object attribute**); e.g. *capable* in *She seems capable*, or *a capable person* in *We find her a capable person*. Other grammatical labels used for this function are *subject-related predicative complement and *object-related predicative complement.

The second meaning is less general than the first, and also potentially confusing, although etymologically, the sense is 'a word or phrase denoting an attribute of a person or thing', however that may be expressed within a sentence.

See ATTRIBUTIVE; PREDICATIVE.

attributive

1. Designating (the position taken by) a *noun phrase, *adjective phrase, etc. functioning as an *attribute (1); contrasted with *predicative.

Some adjectives can only occur in attributive position (e.g. *former, inner, mere, lone, main, indoor, utter*). Nouns used attributively cannot normally be transferred to predicative use (**the effect is greenhouse, *this holiday is bank*), though a small number of predicative uses of nouns may be the historical result of such a transfer (e.g. *She is frightfully county*; *So Regency, my dear*).

Attributive adjectives are sometimes classified in more detail according to *meaning. Subclasses include *intensifying adjectives (e.g. *pure invention, utter madness, total stranger*), *restrictive adjectives (also called *limiting or *limiter adjectives; e.g. *a certain person, the main trouble*), and adjectives related to nouns (*the criminal code, medical students*).

2. (In *Systemic Grammar.) Designating any relationship in which an attribute is ascribed to an entity.

This may be a quality (e.g. *sensible* in *She is sensible*), a circumstance (e.g. *in the garden* in *She is in the garden*), or a possession (e.g. *a lovely garden* in *She has a lovely garden*).

- **attributively**.

autonomous syntax The view propounded in *Generative Grammar (2) that syntax is independent of other *levels of grammar, and that semantic (logical), phonetic, etc. representations are derived from syntactic representations. This view was disputed by proponents of *Generative Semantics, and by many other linguists working in non-generative frameworks.

autosemantic *Semantics.* (*n. & adj.*) (A *word or *phrase) that has meaning outside a context or in isolation.

> 1962 S. ULLMAN Full words are ‘autosemantic’, meaningful in themselves, whereas articles, prepositions, . . . and the like are ‘synsemantic’, meaningful only when they occur in the company of other words.

Since most lexicographers manage to ascribe meanings to all words, and not merely to ‘full’ words, and even many full words change meaning according to context, the term is obviously somewhat relative.

Compare FULL *word*.

auxiliary (*n. & adj.*) (A *verb) principally used in combination with one or more other verbs, including a *main (lexical) verb, to form *constructions that indicate *tense, *aspect, *voice, etc., such as the *progressive construction, *perfect construction, and *passive construction. In older grammar called **helping verb**.

The verbs used for this purpose in English include *be*, *do*, and *have*, and the *modal auxiliary verbs (also called the **modals**).

An auxiliary cannot function as the only verb in a complete sentence. Apparent exceptions to this principle are examples of ellipsis or substitution (e.g. *He won’t do it, will he*?). Auxiliaries thus contrast functionally with *main verbs.

On formal grounds an auxiliary can be defined as a member of a class that is grammatically distinct from other verbs by conforming to the *NICE properties. For example, auxiliaries form *interrogative clauses by *inversion of the subject and the verb (e.g. *Are you ready?*, *Can you help?*; but not **Want you to help?*), and negative clauses simply by adding *-n't* (e.g. *They aren't*, *We mustn't*, *She doesn't*; but not **She wantn't*). Auxiliary verbs thus contrast with *lexical verbs (full verbs), which form interrogatives and negatives with the auxiliary *do* (*dummy *do*).

The verbs *be*, *do*, and *have* can be used both as auxiliaries and as main verbs. *Do* and *have* as main verbs typically use **do*-support for interrogatives and negatives (e.g. *Did you do the washing? I don't have a car*), unlike *be*.

In some grammatical models the terms auxiliary and main are reserved for the functional role of verbs in sentence structure, and other terms are used for the formal classifications.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. We shall find good grounds for distinguishing 'auxiliary' and 'main', as functional terms, from the terms which define classes of word. Of these, there are three: modal verbs . . . always function as auxiliaries; full verbs . . . always function as main verbs; and primary verbs . . . can function either as auxiliaries or as main verbs.

In CaGEL the verb *be* is always an auxiliary:

> 2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. It follows from our syntactic definition that *be* is an auxiliary verb not only in examples like *She is working* or *He was killed* but also in its copula use, as in *They are cheap* (cf. *They are not cheap* and *Are they cheap?*).

See also SEMI-AUXILIARY.

***a*-word** A *word beginning with the syllable *a* and belonging to a class of words (some more like adjectives, others more like adverbs) that mainly function *predicatively.

Grammarians have variously classified *a*-words as *adjectives and as *adverbs, but few, even among the adjective-like ones, can be used in *attributive position, e.g.

> The children were *afraid/alone/ashamed/awake*

but not:

> *An *afraid/alone/ashamed/awake* child was crying

Some of the more adjective-like words can be used attributively when they are *modified, e.g.

> You see before you a *very ashamed* person

and some can be modified by *much* (which typically goes with verbs), e.g.

> I am *very much afraid* that . . .

The more adverb-like *a*-words can follow verbs of motion, e.g.

They’ve gone *abroad/aground/away*

Some *a*-words can be classed as *adverbs and as *prepositions, e.g. *aboard*, *above*, *across*, *along*, *around*, etc., as in:

We hurried *along* (adverb)
We hurried *along* the road (preposition)

(However, some grammarians would argue that both instances of *along* are prepositions in these examples.) There are also some words beginning with *a*- which are prepositions only (e.g. *amid*, *among*), but prepositions are usually excluded from the *a*-word category.

B

back-formation *Morphology*. The formation of a new *word by the removal of (real or apparent) *affixes, etc. from an existing word; a word that is an instance of this.

A back-formation is revealed by the fact that the date of its first use is later than that of the word it was derived from. The majority of back-formations in English are verbs. Examples:

burgle (L19)	from *burglar* (M16)
caretake (L19)	from *caretaker* (M19)
housekeep (M19)	from *housekeeping* (M16)
liaise (E20)	from *liaison* (M17)
reminisce (E19)	from *reminiscence* (L16)
scavenge (M17)	from *scavenger* (M16, from earlier *scavager*)
shoplift (E19)	from *shoplifting* (L17)

backshift (*n.*) The changing of a *present tense form of a *verb to a *past tense form in a *subordinate clause under the influence of a past tense in the *superordinate clause, e.g.

> I didn't apply for the job, although I *was* female and *had* the right degree

Here logically present tenses would be possible, and would make more sense, since the speaker's sex hasn't changed and she still has a degree.

When using the past tense of a reporting verb (e.g. *say*, *think*, *remark*) it is common to shift the tense of the words spoken or thought into past tenses too. Thus:

> 'I am sorry I haven't asked them yet, but I will.'

may (with backshift) become:

> Mark said he *was* sorry he *hadn't* asked them yet, but he *would*.

Analogously, a past tense ('*I asked them*') can be backshifted to a *past perfect (*He said he had asked them*).

However, backshift (sometimes known as the **sequence of tense rule**) is not automatic. Importantly, if the time frame of the speaker is the same as that of the speaker whose words are being reported, the tenses do not need to change:

He said he won't } be around in the year 2050.
He said he wouldn't } be around in the year 2050.

(*v.*) Change (a tense) in this way.

1985 R. QUIRK et al. The past subjunctive . . . or hypothetical past . . . is backshifted to hypothetical past perfective if there is a change in time reference.

Compare FREE INDIRECT SPEECH.

backwards anaphora *See* ANAPHORA.

bahuvrihi *Morphology.*

1. Of a *compound *noun: having the meaning 'a person or thing possessing a certain characteristic'. Also called *exocentric compound and **possessive compound**.

The term is derived from a Sanskrit word, formed from *bahu* 'much' and *vrihi* 'rice', and literally means 'having much rice'. In English grammar it is usually applied to compounds with a non-literal meaning that cannot be deduced from the literal meaning of the separate parts. It is particularly used of somewhat pejorative words, in which some unflattering attribute stands for the person alleged to possess it. English compounds of this type include:

blockhead (M16)
butterfingers (M19)
egghead (E20)
fathead (M19)
highbrow (L19)
hunchback (E18)
lazybones (L16)
loudmouth (M20)
paleface (E15)
scatterbrain (L18)

2. The term is sometimes used in a wider sense to include other compounds in which the head element cannot be equated with the whole. For example, just as an *egghead* or a *scatterbrain* is a person, not a kind of head or brain, so a *hardback* is not a type of back, but a book with this characteristic.

●● **extended bahuvrihi compound**: a bahuvrihi compound in which a suffix is added to the second part, e.g.

egg-headed, military-industrial.

Compare ENDOCENTRIC; EXOCENTRIC.

bare coordinate (In CaGEL.) The part of a *coordination structure preceding the *coordinator, e.g. *homes and offices*.

bare existential clause *See* EXISTENTIAL.

bare infinitive The *infinitive form of a *verb without a preceding *particle (2) *to*.

Bare infinitives are thus identical with the *base (1) form of the verb. They are used after:

(i) the core *modal verbs, e.g. *I must go, he will return*, and can occur with *marginal modals, e.g. *You needn't bother*
(ii) *dummy *do* in questions and negatives, e.g. *Does he know? They didn't say*
(iii) verbs of perception, e.g. *We saw/heard them go, I felt it bite me* (these verbs can also be followed by *-ing* forms)
(iv) the verbs *make* and *let*, e.g. *Make/let them wait*
(v) a few fixed expressions, e.g. *make do, make believe, (live and) let live, let go*

and in various other patterns, e.g. *I'd rather try than do nothing*.

Some of the listed verbs listed require a **to-infinitive* when used in the *passive construction, e.g.

> We were made to wait

A bare infinitive is rarely interchangeable with a *to*-infinitive, although the verb *help* is unusual in this regard because both the bare infinitive and the *to*-infinitive are often possible, e.g.

> Please help me (to) do the washing-up

However, the version with *to* is more common in British English, and there is a subtle difference in meaning between these variants according to some grammarians.

•• **bare infinitive clause:** a *clause whose verb phrase contains as its *head a bare infinitive form of a lexical verb, i.e. without a preceding *particle (2) *to*, e.g.

> They made us *drink warm orange juice*

(In some analyses the postverbal NP is part of the bare infinitive clause.)

bar level category *See* X-BAR SYNTAX.

base *Morphology*.

1. (Of a *verb.) The basic or uninflected form. Also called **base form**.

Go, like, and *sing* are bases or base forms, in contrast to *went, likes, sang*, which are not.

The base form of a verb is used:

(i) *non-finitely:

as an *infinitive (e.g. *You must go*);

(ii) *finitely:

as an *imperative (e.g. *Listen!*, *Be quiet*, *Have a biscuit*)

as a *present tense form for all persons other than the third person singular (e.g. *I always listen* as opposed to *He always listens*; the verb *be* is an exception to this.)

as the so-called present *subjunctive (*They insisted that he listen*).

2. An element in word structure to which a process (e.g. affixation) can apply. Also called **base morpheme**.

Usually the base is an element to which one or more *affixes can be attached; e.g. *sing* + *-s* = *sings*, *great* + *-er* = *greater*, *great* + *-ly* = *greatly*; *walk* + *-ed* = *walked*. *Fearless* consists of a base *fear* + a suffix *-less*; *indiscreet* consists of the negative *prefix *in-* + the base *discreet*.

Various problems arise, however, in the analysis of some less simple words, which sometimes do not consist merely of a core with one or more affixes attached to it. For example, *unanswerable* consists of the negative prefix *un-*, the *root *answer*, and the *suffix *-able*. But we do not have a word **unanswer*; we can only attach *un-* to *answerable*. So what is the status of the latter form?

A related problem is that we can sometimes analyse a word as containing an affix, but what remains when the affix is removed is not recognizable as a core word. *Gratuitous* apparently has the *adjective suffix *-ous* (compare *pompous*, *monstrous*, *outrageous*), just as *gratuity* has a noun suffix *-y*, but we do not recognize *gratuit-* as a word.

Some frameworks (e.g. CGEL) reserve the term base for units of these two types (*answerable* in the context of *unanswerable*, and the incomplete form *gratuit-*). They then refer to units such as *answer*, *sing*, *great* (core words to which additions can be made as in 1 above) as *stems or *roots. Thus *base* may be less ‘basic’ than root or stem.

This is, however, an area where terminology is confused, as the quotations below demonstrate.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. To capture what is common to *pole*, *desire*, *jeal-* and *pi-* [as in *depolarization*, *desirous*, *jealous* and *pious*], therefore, we obviously cannot use ‘word’ and we shall speak instead of STEM. We can then say that stems *desire* and *jeal-* combine with the affix *–ous* to yield the adjectives. But a further distinction is necessary, as this is inadequate when we want to describe *depolarization*, since if we said that the affixes *de-, -ar, -ize,* and *–ation* are combined with the stem this might imply that *de-* can combine with *pole* or

polar, to yield the words **depole*, **depolar*. In fact, it is with the verb *polarize* or the deverbal noun *polarization* that *de-* can combine. We need to distinguish a unit that may be neither STEM nor WORD but of which we can say that it is with this unit that a particular affix is combined. We shall call this unit the BASE.

[I]n some linguistic descriptions the minimal unit in morphology and word formation is called 'morpheme', with the further distinctions 'inflectional morpheme' (*eg* plural *-s*), 'free morpheme' or 'minimal free form' (*eg*: *pole*), 'bound morpheme' (*eg*: *un-*, *jeal-*), with the latter necessarily further subdivided between 'affixal morpheme' (*eg*: *un-*) and 'stem morpheme' (or 'root' or 'lexical morpheme', eg: *jeal-*). What we are calling BASE might in this framework be termed 'base morpheme'. It should be noted that linguists differ in their terminology for these distinctions, some reversing our use of STEM and BASE, others using 'root' for what in this book is called 'stem'.

2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. The two main morphological categories that figure in the structure of words are **bases** and **affixes**. In English bases are characteristically **free** while affixes are normally **bound**. An alternative for 'base' is 'stem' (though the latter is also used in other senses); and 'root' is commonly used for a simple base. We allow the term 'base' to apply to words as well as to parts of words in order to achieve greater generality.

●● **base component:** *see* CATEGORY.

●● **compound base**: a base made up of two simple bases.

●● **derivative base**: a base with an affix.

2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. *Gentleman* is therefore a *compound base,* but *gentlemanly* and *ungentlemanly* are derivative bases; *gentle* and *man* are simple bases. Compound and derivative bases are defined by their internal structure, and simple bases by their lack of any such structure.

●● **lexical base**:

2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. [O]ne that is not part of a larger base formed by a process of lexical word-formation.

Basic English A variety of the English language, comprising a select vocabulary of 850 words, invented by C. K. Ogden, of Cambridge, and intended for use as a medium of international communication.

The word *basic* was an acronym for *British American Scientific International Commercial (English)*. Ogden's book, *Basic English*, was published in 1931, and the idea enjoyed some vogue. But the language produced tended to be unnatural and un-English, an artificial language rather than simplified English.

Basic English is not to be confused with the computer language called BASIC, or Basic, an acronym for *Beginners' All-purpose Symbolic Instruction Code*.

basilect *Sociolinguistics.*

1. A term used to describe varieties of a language in a *creole continuum. Specifically, in a particular community the basilect is the variety that is furthest away from the standard language.

Compare ACROLECT; HYPERLECT; MESOLECT.

2. More generally, the least prestigious variety of a language. The term can be used to describe the dialects of people speaking English as their mother-tongue, and can also be applied in communities where English is used as a second or third language.

• **basilectal**: of, pertaining to, or characteristic of a basilect.

basis of comparison *See* COMPARISON.

BBC English *Standard English, as supposedly spoken by professional broadcasters working for the British Broadcasting Corporation.

In its early days the BBC encouraged a standard non-regional 'educated' accent among its broadcasters. The policy was established by the first managing director, John Reith, who sought 'a style or quality of English that would not be laughed at in any part of the country', and was implemented by the Advisory Committee on Spoken English, established by Reith in 1926 and succeeded, during the Second World War, by the BBC Pronunciation Unit. BBC policy has been considerably modified since the 1950s, and 'BBC English' is now only one of the accents heard from newsreaders, announcers, and other programme presenters.

See also KING'S ENGLISH.

before-past *See* ANTERIOR TIME; PAST PERFECT.

beneficiary *Semantics.* (*n. & adj.*) (Indicating) the *semantic role assigned to a *noun (or noun phrase) referring to a person or animal that is intended to benefit from the action expressed by the verb. Also called **benefactive**. Contrasted with *recipient.

In an inflected language such as Latin, beneficiary could describe the meaning of the *dative (2) case. In English the meaning of 'intended recipient' is often indicated by a *for*-phrase. In the following examples *her*, *you*, *the poor dog*, and *himself* carry beneficiary meaning:

I bought her a present
I bought this for you

She got the poor dog a bone
He found himself a job

Some grammarians call objects that allow a prepositional construction with *for* **beneficiary objects**. Thus they distinguish between *her* in *I gave her a present* (recipient role) and *her* in *I bought her a present* (beneficiary role).

Compare DATIVE (2).

bilingual
(*adj.*)
1. Able to speak two languages fluently.
2. Spoken or written in two languages (e.g. *a bilingual dictionary*).
(*n.*) A person who speaks two languages fluently.
• **bilingualism**, (rarely) **bilinguality**.
Compare AMBILINGUAL.

binary Designating, or relating to, a pair of *features in a language which are mutually exclusive, or the opposition between them.

Binary (dichotomous) contrasts are a notable feature of the *lexicon, which contains many pairs of words of opposite meaning. The phenomenon is often dealt with under *antonymy. Antonyms, however, include, or may be restricted to, *gradable pairs (e.g. *good/bad*, *high/low*), whereas binary opposition, strictly speaking, characterizes pairs with an ungradable, all-or-nothing contrast (sometimes called *complementaries), such as *alive/dead*, *married/single*, *human/non-human* (contrast the gradable *inhuman*). *Converse relations (e.g. *buy/sell*, *husband/wife*) can also be considered binary.

In theoretical linguistics syntactic, semantic, and phonological binary contrasts are recognized. Nouns, for example, can be characterized as [± animate] and [± abstract], and clauses can be considered as [± finite] (where in each case '±' stands for '+ or −'). The system has considerable limitations, since by no means all of the lexicon or syntax lends itself to this kind of either/or analysis.

Compare COMPONENTIAL ANALYSIS.

•• **binary noun**: the same as *summation plural. *See also* PLURALE TANTUM.

binding *See* BOUND; GOVERNMENT-BINDING THEORY.

binomial A phrase containing two parallel units joined by a conjunction, in which the order is relatively fixed. Sometimes called **irreversible binomial**. Examples:

blood and thunder
heaven and hell
highways and byways
knife and fork
ladies and gentlemen
one and all
thick and thin

Compare FIXED PHRASE; IDIOM.

blend A *word, *phrase, or *construction which is formed by merging parts of linguistic elements, units, etc.

1. *Morphology*. Examples of **lexical blends** (also called **blend words**, **word blends**) are:

bit (= binary + digit) (M20)
brunch (= breakfast + lunch) (L19)
camcorder (= camera + recorder) (L20)
fantabulous (= fantastic + fabulous) (M20)
smog (= smoke + fog) (E20)
televangelist (= television + evangelist) (L20)
motel (= motor + hotel) (E20)

Note that while most blends are formed by joining a pair of words at the point where they have one or more letters or sounds in common (e.g. motor + hotel > motel), a few are not formed in this way (e.g. *brunch, camcorder*).

2. *Syntax*. **Syntactic blends** include such structures as:

I would have liked to have done it (*I would have liked to do it* + *I would like to have done it*)
Neither claim impressed us, nor seemed genuine (*Neither claim impressed us or seemed genuine* + *The claims neither impressed us nor seemed genuine*)
I do not dare refuse (*I dare* (modal) *not refuse* + *I do not dare* (lexical verb) *to refuse*)

This is a general term covering various types of structures, which could be regarded as merely stylistically awkward, or as grammatically dubious or *anacoluthic. A dated term for a particular type of blend is *apo koinou.

- **blending**: the process by which a blend is formed.

Compare CONTAMINATION; GRADIENCE.

block language A type of language that differs from canonical linguistic structures in being reduced or compacted in various ways, so as to convey a message economically. It is used especially in notices and newspaper headlines.

Block language often consists of single *noun phrases (e.g. *No exit*, *Essex's snappy reply to a negative image*), or displays an abbreviated *clause structure with *articles, *auxiliary verbs, or other minor words omitted, e.g.

Tanks met by rain of stones
19 dockers dismissed unfairly
Jailed racing driver's bail request rejected

Bloomfieldian (*n.*) An adherent of the work of the American linguist Leonard Bloomfield (1887–1949).

(*adj.*) Of, pertaining to, or characteristic of Bloomfield or his work.

Bloomfield's *Language* (1933) became an influential textbook, particularly in the United States. The approach is associated with *structural linguistics and with theories of behaviourist psychology.

> 1990 R. H. ROBINS 'Bloomfieldian linguistics' can reasonably be treated as a unity; and because, during this period (1933–1957), linguistics as an autonomous discipline became more firmly established and more widely represented in universities in the United States than elsewhere, Bloomfieldian influences were felt over the whole learned world in linguistic studies.

*Generative Grammar (2) was in part a reaction against Bloomfieldian linguistics in the 1950s and 1960s.

See also POST-BLOOMFIELDIAN; STRUCTURALISM.

borrow Take (and often adapt) (a *word, structure, etc.) from another language.

borrowing The process of taking over a *word (or sometimes structure) from a foreign language; a word so borrowed (also called a *loanword).

The term is somewhat misleading, since 'borrowed' words usually become a permanent, not a temporary, part of the borrowing language. Many borrowings are modified to bring them into line with the phonological rules of their new language.

As has often been remarked, the richness of the English *vocabulary is in large part due to borrowing from many other languages of the world, sometimes in such a way as to allow fine *denotative, *connotative, or *stylistic distinctions between semantically related or nearly synonymous words to emerge.

Loanwords attain different degrees of assimilation into the language. Some are totally assimilated to the native word-stock, and are phonetically and orthographically integrated (e.g. *butter*, *fail*, *gas*, *umbrella*). Others are fully part of the English vocabulary, but retain traces of their foreign origin in their pronunciation, spelling, or inflection (e.g. *addendum*, *phenomenon, genre, faux pas*). A third group may be well assimilated in their form, but remain semantically tied to a foreign context (e.g. *matador, rajah, sampan, samurai, tundra*). Finally, there is a category of words (into which all loanwords must initially fall) which have not yet achieved general currency but occur in very limited contexts, such as during an English-speaker's stay in a foreign country, in news and current affairs, or in travel writing, books on foreign cuisine, anthropological works, etc. Examples would vary from one person's vocabulary to another's, but might include *aficionado, intifada, peshmerga, tiramisu,* and *Waldsterben*.

Surprisingly few words have been borrowed into English from the neighbouring Celtic languages (Welsh, Gaelic, and Irish). *Bannock* and *crag* are among the few early borrowings from Old British; *coracle* and *flannel* came from Welsh later; *clan, slogan,* and *whisky* from Gaelic; and *banshee, galore,* and *shamrock* from Irish.

Borrowing from Latin has been constant from the very earliest times, and has always included quite central vocabulary items, such as *cheese, kiln, pillow,* and *tile*, borrowed before Old English was recorded. Later Latin loans tended to originate in a learned context, but many have since become general (e.g. *focus, inflate, orbit*). Many Latin loanwords have entered the language, virtually unchanged, through the intermediary of French (e.g. *condition, oracle, superior*), and in the same way, many borrowings from ancient Greek have come through Latin (e.g. *abyss, cemetery, history*), although some are direct loans (e.g. *acme, kudos, rhizome*).

The Scandinavian settlement in late Old English times had a marked effect on the English vocabulary: Danish- and English-speaking communities lived side by side for some time, so that penetration was deep and all-pervasive. Even form words, such as *they, them, their, though,* and *near*, were borrowed. Nearly all early Scandinavian loanwords are central items such as *cast, egg, law, take*.

French has contributed more than any other language to the English vocabulary, starting with the earliest post-Conquest loanwords (e.g. *castle, prison, war*). Borrowing at all levels of vocabulary was especially heavy during the later Middle Ages, greatly affecting the core vocabulary (e.g. *age, blue, chase, front, people, search,* and so on); more recent borrowing has been mostly at the learned and cultured level (e.g. *avant-garde, surrealism*).

Other important European sources of loanwords have been Dutch (e.g. *brandy, deck, hoist*), Low German (e.g. *hawker, smuggle*), Italian (e.g. *motto, semolina*), and Spanish (*alligator, mosquito*).

Loanwords from outside Europe tended, in the earlier period of exploration, to come through other languages such as Dutch and Portuguese.

As English-speaking settlements emerged, first in North America and then in other parts of the world, and as Britain imposed its political and commercial domination during the nineteenth century, direct borrowings came from a large number of other languages, e.g. *sheikh* (Arabic), *boomerang, kangaroo* (Australian Aboriginal), *lychee* (Chinese), *taboo* (Tongan), *moccasin*, *skunk* (Algonquian), *judo*, *tycoon* (Japanese), *caddy*, *rattan* (Malay), *thug* (Hindi), *bungalow* (Gujarati), etc.

Owing to migration, ease of travel, mass communication, and similar factors, words of foreign origin abound in present-day English speech and writing, particularly in the fields of cookery, the arts, and politics. It is difficult to predict whether any given word will become part of the vocabulary in the long term.

bound

1. *Morphology*. Of a *morpheme, *root, etc.: not *free; normally occurring only in combination with another (bound or free) form.

Bound morphemes (or **bound forms**) include *inflections such as *-s*, *-ing*, *–ed*, and *affixes such as *de-*, *dis-*, *un-*, and *-ly*.

See also BASE.

2. Of a *clause: *subordinate.

In some grammatical theory, a **bound clause** is roughly the same as a *subordinate clause or *dependent clause, although the latter terms are much more common.

3. In theoretical grammar, **binding** is concerned with the relationship of *anaphors, *pronouns, and *referring expressions to their antecedents, or to their referents in the outside world. *See* GOVERNMENT-BINDING THEORY.

bounded Of the referent of a *noun: capable of being conceived of as a separate unit.

> 1984 R. HUDDLESTON In *another cake*, ***cake*** has a bounded or **individuated** interpretation: it is conceived of or perceived as a unit, a discrete entity; in *so much cake* it has an unbounded or **mass** interpretation: we are simply concerned with the substance as such rather than some bounded unit consisting of that substance.

• **boundedness**.

This terminology is not very general, but is intended to address the problem that many *count nouns (e.g. *difficulty*) can also be interpreted as *mass nouns.

> 1984 R. HUDDLESTON An uncountable noun . . . cannot sustain an individuated interpretation; the converse, however, does not hold. As the examples with *cake* . . . show, particular instances of countable nouns can receive mass interpretations. It is precisely for this reason that I have treated countability

> and boundedness as distinct concepts. Such a treatment differs from that commonly found in grammars of English, where a single contrast of mass noun versus count noun is recognised.

When nouns are divided into either *count or *uncount (usually the same as *mass), it is common to describe nouns that belong to both categories in terms of overlap, or in terms of *conversion.

bracketing A method for visualizing the internal structure of *sentences, *clauses, *phrases, etc. using pairs of (square) brackets. When *form labels are appended (in subscript form) to the left-most bracket of each pair, we speak of **labelled bracketings**.

As an example we might contrast the alternative analyses assigned by different grammars to the sentence *He believes the calculations to be wrong* using labelled bracketings:

He believes $[_{\text{NP}}$ the calculations]$[_{\text{clause}}$ to be wrong]
He believes $[_{\text{clause}}$ the calculations to be wrong]

In the first analysis the verb *believe* takes a *noun phrase and a *clause as its *complements, whereas in the second analysis there is only one complement in the form of a clause.

Labelled bracketings can also be used to visualize structural *ambiguities. Thus *He saw the people on the ship* is ambiguous between a reading in which the people referred to were on the ship when they were seen, and a reading in which the speaker was on the ship when he made his observation:

He saw $[_{\text{NP}}$ the people $[_{\text{PP}}$ on the ship]]
He saw $[_{\text{NP}}$ the people] $[_{\text{PP}}$ on the ship]

For complicated sentences which involve many instances of brackets within brackets the representations can become difficult to read. For such cases *tree diagrams are often preferred.

Compare BRANCHING.

branching (*n. & adj.*) This term refers to the connections between a unit (*clause, *phrase, etc.) and its *constituent parts, which are represented by lines ('branches', like the branches of a tree) within a *tree diagram. For example, the following representation of a *verb phrase (2) is a branching structure in which the lines that run from VP to V and NP are branches:

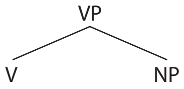

The word sometimes occurs with *prefixes, e.g. **left-branching, right-branching**, and **mid-branching** (also called **medial branching** or *nesting). The structure above is a right-branching structure in which the *head precedes its *complement. Initial *subordinate clauses (*When I came home it was dark*) are left-branching, whereas final subordinate clauses are right-branching (*It was dark when I came home*).

Briticism A *word or *phrase that is of distinctively (modern) British origin, particularly in contrast to a different American equivalent.

British English (BrE) The *variety of English used in Great Britain, as contrasted with varieties used in other English-speaking areas.

broad negative A *word which is *negative in import and in its grammatical effect, or a word that is mainly used in a negative context.

The term is not in general use. It includes not only *adverbs that are normally classified as *semi-negative (such as *barely*, *hardly*, *scarcely*, *seldom*, *rarely*, etc.), but also words such as *bother* and *necessarily* which normally appear in negative contexts and which some grammarians call *non-assertive items.

Compare SEMI-NEGATIVE.

by-form A collateral and sometimes less frequent form of a *word.

This is an old-fashioned term from *philology. It is generally used for a word form which has essentially the same origin as a related word, but a distinct pronunciation and spelling, and which has had significant currency among speakers and writers of *Standard English. Examples in the *Oxford English Dictionary* include:

chaw (LME) besides *chew* (OE)
clift (LME) besides *cliff* (OE)
commonality (LME) besides *commonalty* (ME)
harrow (as in *the Harrowing of Hell*) (ME) besides *harry* (OE)

The by-form may be regarded as a subcategory of *doublet.

Compare HETERONYM (2).

***by*-phrase** In a *passive *construction: an optional *prepositional phrase introduced by the *preposition *by* which takes as *complement a *noun phrase that typically carries the *semantic role of *agent; e.g.

The fire stations in the centre were closed *by the mayor* last year

See also ACTIVE; VOICE.

C

C *Complement as an *element in *clause structure.

calque (*n.*) The same as *loan translation.

(*v.*) Form (a *word or expression) as a loan translation (on a foreign word or expression).

> 1958 A. S. C. ROSS M[oder]n E[nglish] *That goes without saying* is a translation-loan of (better, is calqued on) M[oder]n French *cela va sans dire*.

Cambridge Grammar of English A pedagogical *grammar published in 2006, written by Ronald Carter and Michael McCarthy.

Cambridge Grammar of the English Language, The (CaGEL) A large reference *grammar published in 2002 by Cambridge University Press, written by a team of linguists whose principal authors are Rodney Huddleston and Geoffrey K. Pullum. Along with *A *Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language* this is a standard modern reference grammar of English.

canonical

1. Representing a typical exemplar or *realization of a *category. For example, canonical *nouns denote people, places, or entities, and the canonical realization of a *direct object in English is a *noun phrase.

2. Representing a typical *pattern of *formal or *functional elements. For example, [*determinative (1) + noun] represents a basic canonical noun phrase pattern, and *subject–*predicator–*object represents a canonical *clause pattern.

3. The same as *kernel.

See also ELEMENT.

cardinal number A *word denoting quantity (*one, two, three,* etc.), in contrast to an *ordinal number (*first, second, third,* etc.). Also called **cardinal numeral**.

See also NUMBER; NUMERAL.

case

1. An *inflection of *nouns (or noun phrases), including *pronouns, the *realization of which is *conditioned by grammatical function.

Unlike Latin, which has six cases, English distinguishes only between the overtly marked *subjective, *objective, and *genitive cases.

English pronouns in particular show distinctions between subjective case, objective case, and genitive case; e.g.

I, me, my/mine
you, you, your/yours
he, him, his/his
she, her, her/hers
we, us, our/ours
they, them, their/theirs
who, whom, whose/whose

The genitive case inflection (*boy's*, *boys'*) is strictly speaking not added to a word, but to a noun phrase, which may not even end in a noun; e.g.

[the King of Spain]'s daughter
[the man opposite]'s car

Some grammars prefer to use the classical terminology:

> 2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. The classical terms 'nominative' and 'accusative' are quite opaque, and some modern grammars have replaced them by the more transparent 'subjective' and 'objective' respectively. The view taken here, however, is that the correlation between case and syntactic function is so complex that these new terms run the risk of creating confusion, and we have therefore preferred to retain the traditional terms—which also have the advantage that they are much more widely used in the grammars of other languages.

•• **absolutive case**: *See* ERGATIVE.

•• **plain case** (also called **common case**): an unmarked case carried by non-pronominal nouns. For example, the nouns *cats* and *milk* in the sentence *Cats like milk* are in the plain case.

2. Spelt with a capital 'c' (**Case**), this term refers to the various conceptions of this notion in *Government-Binding Theory, e.g. **abstract Case**, **inherent Case**, **structural Case**.

3. (In *Case Grammar.) The *semantic role of a noun or noun phrase in relation to other words in the *clause or *sentence.

Case Grammar A model of grammar developed in the late 1960s by the American linguist Charles Fillmore (b. 1929), which pays special attention to cases, understood as *semantic roles. The theory, along with other developments in *Generative Grammar (2), grew to some extent out of a dissatisfaction with the earlier *Standard Theory.

In this framework, case is not a *morphosyntactic *category (as in traditional grammar; *see* CASE (1)) but a category of *meaning. Thus, in *The burglars broke the door down* the grammatical *subject is an *agent, but in *The knife cut the bread easily* it is an *instrument. By contrast, in *The neighbours heard nothing* the subject is a *dative (2), whereas in *The whole place was a mess* it is a *locative (2).

The original six cases recognized were *agentive (2), *instrument (1), *dative (2), *factitive (2), *locative (2), and *objective (3). Subsequent adaptations and revisions introduced the *experiencer case (formerly dative), *result (formerly factitive), *source, *goal (2), and *patient, among others.

Case Grammar made a major contribution to the study of the relationships between grammar and meaning, but has no active practitioners.

> 1986 F. J. NEWMEYER Despite the lack of success of case grammar itself, most generative syntacticians would agree today that any adequate theory must include a characterization of semantic cases (or, as they are more commonly termed, 'thematic roles') and relate them to other aspects of syntactic patterning.

See also SEMANTIC ROLE.

catachresis (Plural **catachreses**.) The (perceived) erroneous use of a term applied to a concept.

> 1926 H. W. FOWLER Wrong application of a term, use of words in senses that do not belong to them.

An old-fashioned term, originally rhetorical. Examples given by Fowler were the 'popular' use of *chronic* = 'severe', *asset* = 'advantage', *conservative* (as in *conservative estimate*) = 'low', *annex* = 'win', and *mutual* = 'common'.

> 1589 G. PUTTENHAM Catachresis, or the Figure of abuse . . . if for lacke of naturall and proper terme or worde we take another, neither naturall nor proper and do vntruly applie it to the thing which we would seeme to expresse.

• **catachrestic**, **catachrestically**.

cataphora The use of a *pronoun or other *pro-form to point forward to a later *word, *phrase, or *clause; an example of this process. Sometimes called **forwards anaphora**, but usually contrasted with *anaphora (1).

Examples:

What I want to say is *this*: please drive carefully.
If you see *him*, will you ask Bob to telephone me?

Here is *the news*. In the House of Commons, the Government had an overwhelming majority . . .

- **cataphoric**: of or involving cataphora.

●● **cataphoric ellipsis**: *See* ELLIPSIS.

category A group of items that share a set of characteristics; a class.

This is a very general term, used in different ways by different grammarians. In most analyses *nouns, *verbs, *adverbs, etc. (i.e. the *word classes) and their associated *phrases are regarded as linguistic categories, but there is somewhat less agreement as to whether notions such as *subject, *predicate, *tense, *agreement, *aspect, *mood, *gender, and *person should also be regarded as such.

> 1968 J. LYONS [T]here is very little consistency or uniformity in the use of the term 'category' in modern treatments of grammatical theory.

Linguistic categorization is heavily influenced by the Aristotelian conception of categories, which regards them as sharply delimited, and not allowing for *gradience.

- **categorical** (or **categorial**): relating to categories.

●● **categorial component**: in early *Generative Grammar (2) this component (also called **base component**) is the set of *phrase structure rules (also called **categorial rules**) that is instrumental in forming basic (*kernel) grammatical structures.

catenative (*n. & adj.*) (A *verb) that can form a chain with one or more subsequent verbs, e.g.

want to *go*
hate to *tell* you
begin walking
go shopping

The *construction may involve a *direct object, e.g.

She *wanted* them to *go*
He *made* us *laugh*
I *watched* him *paint/painting* the door

Chance juxtapositions are not catenative constructions. Contrast:

We stopped to talk to the old man ('in order to talk')
You only helped me to satisfy your own conscience ('in order to satisfy')

with

We *stopped talking* to the old man (catenative)
You *helped* me to *answer* one question (catenative)

The grammatical analysis of sentences like those above is controversial.

2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. The term 'catenative' reflects the fact that this construction is recursive (repeatable), so that we can have a chain, or concatenation, of verbs followed by non-finite complements, as in *She intends to try to persuade him to help her redecorate her flat*. The term 'catenative' is applied to the non-finite complement, and also to the verb that licenses it.

•• **catenative complement**: (in CaGEL) a *function (1) label assigned to a *non-finite clause which is *licensed by a catenative verb. In the examples below, the highlighted clauses function as catenative *complements:

They believe the event *to be fictitious*
She seems *to enjoy food*

•• **catenative verb**: a verb that takes a *catenative complement.

See also CATENATIVE-AUXILIARY ANALYSIS; COMPLEX CATENATIVE CONSTRUCTION; DEPENDENT-AUXILIARY ANALYSIS.

catenative-auxiliary analysis (In CaGEL.) In this analysis (preferred by the authors of CaGEL) *auxiliary verbs are not regarded as being *dependent on a *main verb, as in the traditional *dependent-auxiliary analysis in which auxiliaries are seen as 'helping verbs', but as *catenative verbs that take their own *complements, namely *catenative *complements.

See also DEPENDENT-AUXILIARY ANALYSIS; LEXICAL VERB; MAIN VERB; VERB.

causal *See* CAUSATIVE.

causative (*n. & adj.*) *Semantics*. (a word, especially a verb) expressing cause, causation, or reason. (Also called **causal**.)

The term is particularly used in connection with *verbs. In classic semantic theory, the verb *kill* is a causative verb, meaning 'cause to die'. Other causatives include verbs of motion such as *place* or *put*, i.e. 'cause (something) to be (in a place)', and more general verbs that express the notion of 'result', e.g. *elect*, as in *They have elected my brother as chairman*.

Other causative verbs include *get* and *have*, as in *Get your hair cut* or *We've had the house painted*.

The term is also applied to other linguistic units, e.g. *clauses:

Because you're not ready, we have to leave without you
I won't be able to send you the transcript *since you didn't send me your CV*

The string *because of* can be described as a causative (complex) *preposition in *We left because of the rain*, and in *She died of a fever*, the *prepositional phrase *of a fever* carries causative meaning.

• **causatively**.

Compare CONATIVE.

See also ADVERBIAL CLAUSE; CAUSE.

cause The event, circumstance, condition, reason, etc. which gives rise to a particular *situation, considered as one of the semantic categories used in the classification of *verbs, *phrases, *clauses (especially *adverbial clauses), etc.

See also CAUSATIVE.

causer A *semantic role associated with an entity (person, animal, etc.) that brings about an event, *situation, etc., e.g.

The builders damaged the wooden floor

central

1. Of, at, or forming, the centre.

•• central determiner: (in CGEL) defined positionally as a *determiner (2) that follows a *predeterminer (such as *all*, *both*, *such*), if present, and precedes a *postdeterminer (such as a number), if present.

Among the most frequent central determiners are *a/an* and *the*, *possessives (*my*, *your*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our*, *their*), and *demonstratives (*this*, *these*, *that*, *those*); e.g.

such *a* nuisance
all *our* yesterdays
my two left feet
both *those* two criminals

2. Conforming to all or most of the (morphosyntactic) criteria that define a particular *word class, *phrase, *function (1), etc. The same as *prototypical.

•• central adjective: an *adjective that conforms to all or most of the *morphosyntactic criteria that define the class of adjectives, e.g. occurring in *attributive and/or *predicative positions, being *gradable, and taking the prefix *un-*. Contrasts with *marginal adjective.

•• central coordinator: *see* COORDINATOR.

•• central modal: a *modal verb that conforms to all or most of the *morphosyntactic criteria that define the class of modal verbs, e.g. conforming to the *NICE properties, having no *third person singular *–s* *inflection, and having no *non-finite form. Also called **core modal**. Contrasts with *marginal modal.

•• central noun: a *noun that conforms to all or most of the *morphosyntactic criteria that define the class of nouns, e.g. the ability to be preceded by *the*, taking a plural *–s* inflection. Contrasts with *marginal noun.

•• **central passive**: a *passive construction that has a regular *active counterpart, in contrast to a *semi-passive or *pseudo-passive construction.
•• **central preposition**: a *preposition that conforms to all or most of the *morphosyntactic criteria that define the class of prepositions. Contrasts with *marginal preposition.
•• **central verb**: a *verb that conforms to all or most of the *morphosyntactic criteria that define the class of verbs, e.g. taking a present or past *tense inflection. Contrasts with *defective verb.

3. central meaning: *See* MEANING.
• **centrality**: the fact or quality of being central in one of the above senses.

centre-embedding *See* EMBEDDING.

chain (Designating) a relationship between two linguistic units in a linear sequence.
•• **chain and choice**: the *syntagmatic and *paradigmatic relationships that exist between linguistic units.

The contrast between chain and choice can be applied at various levels of linguistic analysis. Thus, if we take the words *bat, cat, fat, hat,* etc., the letters *b, c, f,* and *h* are in a chain relationship with *-at,* but in a choice relationship with each other.

At a higher level, if we wish to add one word to complete the sentence *The cat . . . on the mat,* the chain relationship requires a *verb, but the choice is wide (*is, jumped, lay, lies, sat, slept,* etc.).

Compare AND RELATIONSHIP; COLLIGATION; *OR* RELATIONSHIP; PARADIGM (2); PARADIGMATIC; SYNTAGM.

See also CATENATIVE.

choice *See* CHAIN; SYNTAGM; SYNTAGMATIC RELATIONSHIP.

Chomsky adjunction *See* ADJUNCTION.

Chomskyan (*adj.*) Of, pertaining to, or characteristic of (the theories of) the American linguist Noam Chomsky (b. 1928).

(*n.*) An adherent of Chomsky's theories.

Chomsky's *Syntactic Structures* (1957) and *Aspects of the Theory of Syntax* (1965) introduced *Generative Grammar (2) and gave a radically new direction to linguistics. Over time he continued to develop his theories and published extensively on phonology (his best-known contribution being *The Sound Pattern of English* in 1968, with M. Halle), on language and the human mind, and also, critically, on American foreign policy and politics. His latest thinking on linguistics forms part of the *Minimalist Program.

See also GENERALIZED PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; GENERATIVE; GENERATIVE GRAMMAR (2); GOVERNMENT-BINDING THEORY; GRAMMAR; HEAD-DRIVEN PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; PRINCIPLES AND PARAMETERS THEORY; STANDARD THEORY; TRANSFORMATIONAL GRAMMAR.

circumfix(ation) *See* PARASYNTHESIS.

circumstance The state of affairs surrounding and affecting a *situation (action, event, etc.).

The term is sometimes invoked in its general sense in a detailed analysis of *subordinate clauses of *cause or reason. Thus the following sentences may be characterized as showing a relationship of circumstance (before the comma) and consequence (after the comma), rather than (or in addition to) cause/reason plus consequence:

Since you're so clever, why don't you do it yourself?
Seeing it's so late, we'd better take a taxi

• **circumstantial** (*n. & adj.*): (an element) expressing circumstance.

citation form A *word or other linguistic unit (e.g. a *lexeme) that is being cited in, and for the purpose of, discussion.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. *It* . . . can only very rarely receive stress, for example when it is used as a citation form: *Is this word IT?* [looking at a manuscript]

class A group of linguistic items with shared characteristics; a *category.

See OPEN; CLOSED (1); WORD CLASS.

•• **class noun**: (less generally) the same as *count noun.

•• **dual class membership**: *see* DUAL (2).

class dialect *See* DIALECT.

classical plural *See* FOREIGN PLURAL.

classifier

1. An *affix which shows the subclass to which a *word belongs.

The term is not in general use in English grammar, but is sometimes applied to *affixes, e.g. *un-* meaning 'not', 'the opposite of' (e.g. *unkind, unintentional*); *de-*, *dis-* and *un-* (reversing an action, e.g. *decontaminate, disconnect, untie*); *-let,* 'small' (e.g. *piglet*). The term is more useful with reference to a language such as Chinese, which has a system for marking semantic classes. *Noun classifiers in such languages may indicate shape ('long', 'thin', 'sticklike'), size and colour, whether the referent is *animate, etc.

2. A word (typically in *attributive position) which has the role of identifying the class or kind of the following noun; in contrast to an *epithet.

Classifiers include both *adjectives (also called *classifying adjectives) and nouns, e.g.

a *medieval* castle, a *thatched* cottage, a *country* house

See also CLASSIFYING.

classifying Designating the use of *a/an* or the *zero article to indicate membership of a class.

In describing the meaning and usage of the *articles many grammars contrast *specific and *generic (in addition to the better-known distinction between *definite and *indefinite). However, although *the* + a singular count *noun can clearly have generic meaning and refer to a class as a whole, as in *The black rhino is in danger of extinction*, the indefinite article cannot have this meaning (**A* black rhino is in danger of extinction). Some grammars therefore prefer the label *classifying*, rather than *generic*, for the use of *a/an* or the zero article with various non-specific meanings:

A black rhino can be very dangerous
We cannot afford *a new car*
More people should train as *engineers*

•• **classifying adjective**: a term used in some analyses to describe a subgroup of *adjectives:

> 1990 COLLINS COBUILD ENGLISH GRAMMAR **Classifying adjective**, an adjective used to identify something as being of a particular type; EG *Indian*, *wooden*, *mental*. They do not have comparatives or superlatives. Compare with qualitative adjective.

•• **classifying genitive**: a genitive which classifies the head *noun, rather than indicating 'possession'. (Also called *descriptive genitive.) Examples:

a women's college
child's play
a moment's thought
a stone's throw

clausal negation *See* NEGATION.

clause A unit of grammar which typically involves a *subject–*predicate (1) relationship, and which operates at a level lower than a *sentence, but higher than a *phrase.

In traditional grammar, a clause has its own *subject and a *finite *verb, and is part of a larger sentence. Thus *We left when the film finished* consists of a *main clause (*We left*) and a *subordinate clause *(when the film finished*).

Some modern grammar uses the *clause, rather than the sentence, as the basis of structural analysis, so that in some instances clause and sentence are coterminous. Under this view, the example above *We left when the film finished* is a *main clause which contains a subordinate clause (*when the film finished*), though usage differs (*see* MAIN CLAUSE).

We should distinguish *non-finite and *verbless clauses, such that the following example, even though it contains only one finite verb (italicized), has four clauses (bracketed):

> [My father *travels* by bus [to get to work on time], [leaving home at 5.00 a.m.], and [usually returning after 10.00 p.m.]]

A clause-based analysis allows a functional analysis into five elements of English clause structure: *subject, *verb, *object, *complement, and *adverbial, with the verb element as the most essential, and the *adverbial optional and the most mobile.

• **clausal**: of or relating to a clause.

•• **clause complex**: (in *Systemic Grammar) a *compound or *complex sentence, viewed as a 'composite' of clauses.

See also ADVERBIAL CLAUSE; COMPLEMENT CLAUSE; FREE RELATIVE CLAUSE; NOMINAL CLAUSE; RELATIVE CLAUSE; *THAT*-CLAUSE; *WH*-CLAUSE.

clause fragment *See* NON-SENTENCE.

clause type (Also called **sentence type**.) This refers to one of the ways in which *clauses can be categorized syntactically. Typically four types are distinguished: *declarative, *exclamative, *imperative, and *interrogative.

The classification applies to *main clauses and *subordinate clauses (except for imperatives, which cannot occur as subordinate clauses).

Each of the clause types has a typical use. Thus, declaratives are typically used to make *statements; exclamatives are typically used to utter *exclamations; interrogatives are typically used to ask *questions; and imperatives are typically used to issue *directives.

When a particular clause type is used in a non-typical way (e.g. a declarative used as a question), we speak of indirect *speech acts.

Considerable confusion is caused when statement, question, exclamation, and directive are used as both syntactic and semantic categories, which is why some grammarians are careful to use declarative, exclamative, imperative, and interrogative as syntactic categories, and statement, question, exclamation, and directive as categories of *usage.

Compare MINOR SENTENCE.

See also MOOD.

cleft construction A *sentence or *clause formed from another by dividing the latter into two clauses, each with its own *finite *verb, so as to place emphasis on a particular component (the *focus) in the original sentence. The formulaic structure of cleft constructions is as follows:

It + form of the verb *be* + *FOCUS + *relative clause (*who(m)/that/Ø/which*. . .)

For example, the following sentence:

Bob always plays golf on Sundays

can be reworded as any of the following cleft sentences (with the focused element in small caps):

It is BOB who always plays golf on Sundays (i.e., not his brother)
It is GOLF (that) Bob always plays on Sundays (not tennis)
It is ON SUNDAYS that Bob always plays golf (not Mondays)

In these sentences the focus comes after the verb *be* in the *main clause (the first clause), and the relative clause contains information which is assumed to be 'known', and is therefore less important. A *verb phrase cannot be the focus of a cleft sentence.

Another type of structure, sometimes included under cleft, is more carefully distinguished as the **pseudo-cleft construction** (also called ***wh*-cleft**). It contains a *free relative clause, introduced by a **wh*-relative item (usually *what*), as *subject. Formulaically pseudo-clefts can be represented as follows:

What (or *where/when*) + . . . + form of the verb *be* + FOCUS

The focus comes at the very end. It identifies what the *wh*-clause specifies as needing identification, e.g.

What they like is A LONG LUNCH

Unlike the cleft sentence, the pseudo-cleft can have a verb phrase in the focus position, e.g.

What Bob does on Sundays is (TO) PLAY GOLF

In a **reverse pseudo-cleft** construction the order of the clauses is inverted:

A LONG LUNCH is what they like

- **clefting, pseudo-clefting**

See also INFORMATION STRUCTURE.

cline A continuum, a series of gradations between linguistic elements, *constructions, etc.

A term applied in various areas of grammar where there are no clear-cut contrasts.

See also GRADIENCE.

clipping *Morphology*. The formation of a new *lexical item by shortening an existing one; an example of this. A type of *abbreviation. Examples:

omnibus > bus
influenza > flu
examination > exam
telephone > phone

Compare REDUCTION.

clitic *Morphology*. (*n. & adj.*) (A form) pronounced with very little emphasis, usually shortened, and typically phonologically attached to a host word.

There is some debate in the literature as to whether clitics are *words or *affixes.

> 2012 A. SPENCER & A. R. LUÍS English, then, has elements which behave phonologically like affixes because they have to be attached to some host, but which don't behave morphologically like affixes given that they attach to words of any category. Furthermore, they have the function and meaning of words and may even correspond to a full word form, but they don't have the autonomy of words.

The term is abstracted from the words denoting the two main kinds of clitic: *enclitic (dependent on a preceding word) and *proclitic (attached to, or dependent on, a following word).

Enclitics include abbreviated *verbs, as in *He's here, I'm leaving*. Although the *articles (*a/an, the*) are arguably proclitics, and so is *do* when reduced to a consonant only in *d'you know?*, the term proclitic is little used with reference to English grammar.

closed

1. Of a *word class: to which new words are rarely or never added; in contrast to *open (1).

The closed classes—also called **closed systems**—in English are the *pronouns, *determinatives (1) (which include the *articles), *modal verbs, *prepositions, and *conjunctions. Very occasionally a new word may be added to a closed class: thus *plus* (once only a preposition and a *noun) began to be used colloquially as a conjunction in the mid-twentieth century, e.g. *He's handsome plus he's rich*. But, on the whole, closed classes do not allow newcomers, even though sometimes it may be desirable.
For example, it would be useful for English to possess a singular unisex

pronoun. However, none of the many words suggested has become part of ordinary usage.

Contrast **minor** and **major word class** (*See* MAJOR).

2. Of a conditional clause or sentence: *See* CONDITION; CONDITIONAL.

closed interrogative *See* INTERROGATIVE.

closed question *See* QUESTION.

code

1. *Sociolinguistics*. (A general term for) a language, *dialect, or speech *variety. *Code* can also mean any of two or more distinct languages (in a situation where more than one is available to a speaker). For example, a *bilingual Welsh/English speaker can be said to have two codes. The term is particularly favoured by those wishing to avoid the possibly pejorative overtones of the word *dialect*. Thus a person who frequently changes from, say, a regional variety of English to *Standard English is said to be operating with two codes.

A sociological theory put forward in the early 1970s contrasted an **elaborated code** and a **restricted code**. Speakers of the former, it was claimed, used more complicated *sentence structures and a larger *vocabulary, and conveyed meaning more explicitly than people operating with a restricted code. The two codes were said to characterize middle-class and working-class speech. The theory aroused both interest and argument.

●● **code-switching**: this occurs when a speaker changes from one language code to another, according to where they are, who they are talking to, which *speech community they identify with, and so on.

2. The ‘C’ in the acronym NICE refers to code. *See* NICE PROPERTIES.

cognate

1. (*n. & adj.*) (A *word or language) related in form to another word or language by virtue of the fact that both are derived by direct descent from the same source.

Latin *mater*, German *Mutter*, and English *mother* are cognate words or cognates. French, Italian, and Spanish are cognate languages: they are all derived from Latin.

2. cognate object: an *object related in form and meaning to the *verb it *complements, e.g.

fight the good *fight*
sing a *song* of sixpence
smile a shy *smile*

cognitive *Semantics*. Of *meaning: relating objectively to facts, and to the denotations of *words outside of a particular *context of utterance, in contrast to *attitudinal meaning.

The analysis of different types of meaning is far from simple, and different semanticists make different distinctions. Cognitive meaning is similar to *descriptive (3) or *referential meaning, in contrast to *interpersonal meaning.

Compare DENOTATIVE; IDEATIONAL.

See also COMMUNICATIVE MEANING; CONATIVE; CONNOTATION; DESCRIPTIVE; EMOTIVE; ILLOCUTIONARY MEANING; INTERPERSONAL MEANING; REFERENTIAL MEANING.

•• **Cognitive Grammar:** see COGNITIVE GRAMMAR.

•• **Cognitive Linguistics:** see COGNITIVE LINGUISTICS.

Cognitive Grammar A term coined by R. Langacker, referring to the study of grammar using the insights and methodology of *Cognitive Linguistics.

Cognitive Linguistics A cover term for a number of different *usage-driven and meaning-driven linguistic frameworks in which language is viewed as being part of general human cognition, rather than being autonomous, as in *Chomskyan linguistics.

coherence The set of relationships within a *text that link sentences by *meaning. The term contrasts with *cohesion.

Coherence often depends on (shared) knowledge, implication, or inference. The following mini dialogue shows coherence:

A: You weren’t at the meeting yesterday.
B: My daughter’s ill.

A’s statement can be understood as a *question, and B’s statement can be understood as an explanation. But if B had replied with a rather different statement, e.g. ‘Marmalade is a kind of jam’, the conversation would lack coherence.

cohesion

1. The set of relationships within a *text that link *sentences through grammar or *lexis. The term contrasts with *coherence. In the following dialogue *there* grammatically substitutes for *at the meeting*, and the pronoun *it* refers to *the meeting*.

A: You weren’t at the meeting yesterday.
B: No, I’m sorry I wasn’t *there*. How did *it* go?

> 1976 M. A. K. HALLIDAY & R. HASAN Cohesion occurs where the INTERPRETATION of some element in the discourse is dependent on that of another. The one PRESUPPOSES the other, in the sense that it cannot be effectively decoded except by recourse to it. When this happens, a relation of cohesion is set up, and the two elements, the presupposing and the presupposed, are thereby at least potentially integrated into a text.

See also COHESIVE.

2. The 'uninterruptability' of *words.

It is a defining characteristic of words in English that normally no elements can be inserted within them. There are some exceptions. Thus an expletive can be inserted into some words, e.g. *abso-bloody-lutely*.

Compare TMESIS.

cohesive Having the property of grammatically linking different parts of a *text or *utterance.

For example, when *pronouns and other *words are used to refer backwards or forwards to other words, *phrases, etc. in a text, they are sometimes described as **cohesive devices**.

- **cohesively**
- **cohesiveness**: another name for *cohesion.

Compare ANAPHORA; CATAPHORA.

co-hyponym *See* HYPONYM.

coinage *See* NEOLOGISM; NONCE; WORD FORMATION.

collective Short for *collective noun.

collective noun

1. A *noun that refers to a group of individual people or animals, and which in the *singular can take either a singular or *plural *verb. Examples include *army, audience, committee, family, herd, majority, parliament, team*.

The choice of singular or plural verb—and corresponding *pronouns and *determinatives (1)—depends on whether the group is considered as a single unit or as a collection of individuals, e.g.

> The audience, *which was* a large one, *was* in *its* place by 7 p.m.
>
> The audience, *who were* all waving *their* arms above *their* heads, *were* clearly enjoying *themselves*

Notice that even when followed by a plural verb, such nouns still take a singular determinative; e.g.

> This family are all accomplished musicians

The use of a plural verb with a grammatically singular noun of this type is more common in British English than in American English.

2. Loosely (notionally defined), any noun referring to a group—including nouns that can only (in the sense used) take a plural verb: *cattle, clergy, people, police*.

See AGGREGATE; GROUP NOUN; PLURALE TANTUM.

colligation A grouping of *words that occur in the same type of syntactic *constructions, in contrast to a grouping of words that are regularly in an individual (semantic) relationship with each other, which is called a *collocation. The term was introduced by the British linguist J. R. Firth.

As an example, *verbs of perception such as *hear, notice, see,* and *watch* enter into *colligation* with an *object (shown in italics below), and either the *bare infinitive or the *-*ing* form of a verb (underlined below), e.g.

We heard *the visitors* leave/leaving
They noticed *him* walk away/walking away
She heard *Pavarotti* sing/singing
I saw *it* fall/falling

The term is far less general than the contrasting term *collocation*.

- **colligate** (cause to) be in colligation (with another word).

Compare CONSTRUCTION; CO-OCCURRENCE; PATTERN.

See also CHAIN; SYNTAGMATIC.

Collins Cobuild English Grammar A grammar written by the late John Sinclair and associates using data from the Collins Cobuild Corpus.

See also NEO-FIRTHIAN.

collocable Of a *word or *phrase: typically able to *collocate with another word or phrase.

> 1961 Y. OLSSON Although '*have* a look' and '*take* a look' are both collocable with *at*, '*have* a look' is alone in collocating with *for*.

- **collocability**.

collocate (*v.*) (Pronounced /ˈkɒləkeɪt/.) (Cause to) co-occur with (another *word) so as to form a *collocation.

> 1951 J. R. FIRTH In the language of Lear's limericks . . . *person* is collocated with *old* and *young*.

(*n.*) (Pronounced /ˈkɒləkət/.) A word that collocates with another.

All words are to some extent restricted in their usage by virtue of both their *word class and their *meaning. But many are much more restricted, and can occur only with one other word or with a limited set of other words, or be used only in a particular type of structure. For example, the *prepositions that are used with certain *nouns, *adjectives, and *verbs are often fixed; e.g.

account for
adherence to
by chance
consist of
inconsistent with
long for
on foot
rely on
similar to
under the auspices of

Here we can say that *adherence* collocates with *to*, and *account* collocates with *for*, and that *adherence* and *to*, and *account* and *for* are collocates.

collocation The habitual juxtaposition of two or more particular *words (such that these words are then said to be *collocated); an instance of such a juxtaposition.

The technical sense in linguistics was introduced by the British linguist J. R. Firth, although the word had been loosely applied in linguistic contexts previously.

Collocation is a type of *syntagmatic relationship typically between individual elements (words, *phrases) that consistently occur together, e.g. *smoked salmon*, *comb my hair*. Two kinds should be distinguished:

•• **grammatical collocation**: a type of *construction where a *verb, *adjective, etc. must be followed by a particular *preposition (e.g. *account for*, *afraid of*), or a *noun must be followed by a particular form of the verb (e.g. *the foresight to do it*, rather than **the foresight of doing it*).

•• **lexical collocation**: a type of construction in which particular nouns, adjectives, verbs, *adverbs, etc. form predictable connections with other words. For example, we can say *cancel an engagement* ('call off an appointment') or *break off an engagement* ('call off a marriage'), but not normally **withdraw/*revoke/*discontinue an engagement*. This is a **collocational restriction**. Compare also such collocations as *take advantage of*.

Special cases of collocation (e.g. *come a cropper*, *kith and kin*), in which the elements are mutually predictable, can be analysed as *idioms or *fixed phrases.

• **collocational**: relating to collocations, e.g. **collocational differences** (between American and British English), **collocational possibilities**, **collocational range**.

Compare SEMANTIC RESTRICTION.

colloquial Belonging or proper to ordinary conversation; not formal or literary. *Compare* INFORMAL.

In ordinary everyday language, especially between speakers who know each other well, a casual style of speech is both frequent and appropriate. *Are you doing anything tomorrow evening?* as a preliminary to an invitation is probably more suitable than *Have you an engagement for tomorrow evening?* Colloquial speech is not substandard, nor is it the same as *slang.

Compare REGISTER.

• **colloquialism**: a colloquial *word or *phrase; the use of such words or phrases.

• **colloquially**: in the language of ordinary conversation.

colon *See* PUNCTUATION.

combination A (loose) *syntagmatic relationship between *words, or other language units, as opposed to a *paradigmatic or contrastive relationship; an instance of this.

For example, at word *level, a combination can denote a frequently occurring sequence of two (or occasionally more) words. At word level some usage restricts the term to a sequence that functions virtually as a single word (e.g. *oak tree*, *prime minister*), usually in contrast to a *collocation, which may be discontinuous and *phrasal (e.g. *advantage* was *taken of* him). In other usage the terms are virtually interchangeable.

Compare COMPOUND; CONSTRUCTION.

combinatorial Able to combine with other linguistic units.

> 1968 J. LYONS In general, any formal unit can be defined (i) as being distinct from all other elements which contrast with it, and (ii) as having certain combinatorial properties.

combinatory Relating to a *combination, or combinations; *collocational.

•• **combinatory coordination**: *coordination in which the coordinated units have a joint meaning, in contrast to *segregatory coordination.

Henry and Margaret met is an example of combinatory coordination, since the only possible interpretation is that they met each other. The sentence cannot be segregated into two coordinated *clauses: **Henry met and Margaret met.*

combining form A *bound (1) form used in conjunction with another linguistic element in the formation of a *word, especially a *neoclassical compound.

The term is usually used in a narrower sense than bound *morpheme to refer to forms that contribute to the particular sense of words, e.g.

arch- (‘chief’, ‘pre-eminent’):	*archduke, arch-enemy*
geo- (‘earth’):	*geography, geology*

-(o)cracy ('rule'): *meritocracy, theocracy*
-(o)logy ('study of'): *archaeology, zoology*

Combining forms contrast with *prefixes and *suffixes that adjust the sense of a *base (2) (e.g. *un-*, *ex-*) or change the *word class of the base (e.g. *-ation*, *-ize*).

•• **initial/final combining form:** *See* NEOCLASSICAL COMPOUND.

comitative Having the meaning 'in company with' or 'together with'.

The term is primarily useful in the description of languages that have a particular *case (1) for this meaning, but it is sometimes applied to English phrases on the *pattern *with* + animate *noun. In *I went there with my cousin*, *with my cousin* has a comitative sense.

comma *See* PUNCTUATION.

command *See* DIRECTIVE; IMPERATIVE.

comment *Semantics*. That part of a *sentence which says something about the *topic.

Also called *focus or *rheme by some linguists. The comment often coincides with the *predicate (1).

Compare TOPIC.

comment adjunct (In some models.) A subcategory of *adjunct (*adverbial), sometimes called *disjunct, including items such as *frankly, no doubt*, expressing an observation, etc. on what is said in the containing clause.

The category also overlaps with *comment clause (e.g. *to be frank*).

See also MODAL ADJUNCT.

comment clause A parenthetical *clause, often only containing a *subject and verb, which is loosely connected syntactically with the rest of the *sentence, and functions pragmatically to offer a comment, viewpoint, etc. on what is being said.

Comment clauses may be *finite or *non-finite, and include many clichés and conversation *fillers (2), e.g.

(as) you know
I think/suppose
you see
to be frank
they say
generally speaking
as I said
so it seems

See also DISCOURSE MARKER.

common General, *unmarked; in which a (usual) distinction is not made.

•• **common case**: *see* CASE (1).

•• **common core**: the basic grammar and *vocabulary shared by all varieties of the English language (a rather vaguely delimited concept).

•• **common gender** (occasionally called **common sex**): the characteristic shared by many *animate nouns which make no distinction of *gender (examples are *baby*, *person*, *horse*, *sheep*). Occasionally the term refers more narrowly to *nouns which denote *animate beings when sex is irrelevant, and which can be referred to using *it* or *which* (e.g. *A baby cannot feed itself*). *See also* GENDER; FEMININE; MASCULINE. *Compare* DUAL GENDER.

•• **Common Germanic**: *See* GERMANIC.

•• **common noun**: a noun which is not the name of any particular person, place, thing, etc.; contrasted with *proper noun. Common nouns are further classified grammatically into *count and *uncount nouns, and semantically into *abstract and *concrete nouns.

communicative

1. Of or pertaining to communication.

•• **communicative competence**: a practical kind of social competence which denotes a speaker's ability to understand the implications of utterances, to appreciate what type of language use is appropriate in different situations, etc.; in contrast to the notion of *grammatical competence developed in *Generative Grammar (2).

•• **communicative dynamism**: variation in the importance or prominence of different parts of an *utterance in conveying information. The concept was developed in the *Prague School.

Compare COMMENT; GIVEN; INFORMATION STRUCTURE; NEW; RHEME; THEME; TOPIC.

•• **communicative meaning** (or **function**): the *illocutionary meaning of an utterance, whatever its *form. Thus an *interrogative clause may have the communicative function of an *exclamation (e.g. *Isn't it a lovely day?*).

See also ATTITUDINAL; CONATIVE; CONNOTATION; DENOTATIVE; DESCRIPTIVE; EXPRESSIVE; INTERPERSONAL; PROPOSITIONAL MEANING; REFERENTIAL MEANING; SPEECH ACT.

2. Of a teaching method, etc.: that emphasizes *functions (2) and *meaning, rather than grammatical forms alone.

Communicative teaching methods have led in some quarters to learners developing fluency in talking ('communication') at the expense of grammatical accuracy, but this was not the intention of the early proponents of the approach, and there has been a shift of emphasis back towards grammar.

Communicative Grammar of English, A A book written by Geoffrey Leech and Jan Svartvik, first published in 1975, which seeks to describe English grammar from the point of view of how the patterns of English can be used to achieve certain communicative aims.

comparative

1. (*adj.*) Of a *gradable *adjective or *adverb (or a *construction containing one): expressing a higher degree of the quality or attribute denoted by the *absolute (1) form, whether through *inflection (essentially, by the addition of *-er* to the absolute form) or *periphrasis (by the use of *more*), e.g.

better, happier, sooner, more beneficial, more energetically

●● **comparative degree**: the middle degree of *comparison, between absolute and *superlative.

●● **comparative element**: (in CGEL) the unit in a *matrix clause which expresses the standard of *comparison, e.g.

It was *colder/more exhilarating* than we expected

(*n.*) (An adjective or adverb that is in) the comparative degree.

2. *Linguistics.* The term **comparative linguistics** usually refers to a branch of linguistics that is concerned with the historical similarities and differences between languages or varieties of languages. This discipline made great advances in the nineteenth century. Related terms are **comparative grammar, (comparative) philology**, and *historical linguistics.

The term can also refer to the study and comparison of two (modern) languages, but this is often distinguished as *contrastive linguistics.

comparative clause A *clause expressing a *comparison.

There is considerable variation in the labelling of different kinds of clauses and sentences that express the notion of comparison. Narrowly, the term *comparative clause* can be applied to a clause following a comparative form (underlined in the examples below; called the *comparative element in CGEL), e.g.:

It was colder *than we expected*
It was more expensive/less expensive *than last year*

Usually clauses expressing *equivalence, beginning with *as* (and following *as* or *so* + a positive *adjective or *adverb), are included, e.g.

It was (not) as cold *as it was last year*

In popular grammar, a comparative clause is a type of *subordinate clause; in more formal models, it is a clause that *postmodifies a preceding adjective or adverb.

Comparative clauses are *elliptical, sometimes with nothing but the *conjunction and one *word remaining, e.g.

It's not as cold *as* (it was) *yesterday*
You know them better *than I* (do)

Interestingly, not only do some comparative clauses lack a *subject, but in some no subject can be inserted, e.g.

It was much more expensive *than was anticipated*

In CaGEL *than* and *as* in the second part of the comparative *construction are not part of the comparative clause.

See also COMPARE.

comparative element *See* COMPARATIVE CLAUSE.

comparative grammar *See* COMPARATIVE.

comparative philology *See* COMPARATIVE.

compare Form the *comparative and *superlative degrees of (an *adjective or *adverb).

Compare GRADABLE.
See also COMPARATIVE CLAUSE; COMPARISON.

comparison

1. The act or instance of comparing one thing with another. This very general term can be used to cover any grammatical means of comparing things.

In *comparative clauses introduced by *than* or *as*, whatever is represented by the *adjective, *adverb etc. that functions as the comparative element is sometimes called the **standard of comparison**, and the **basis of comparison** is whoever or whatever is being compared in the comparative clause. Thus in

Pete is happier than Paul

the standard of comparison is happiness, and the basis of comparison is Paul.

Comparison may include expressions of 'sufficiency' or 'excess', e.g.

They did not arrive *early enough* to help
They arrived *too late* to help

•• **comparison of equality/inequality**: the former is exemplified by *Jack is as competent as Greg*; the latter by *Jack is less competent than Greg*.
•• **scalar/non-scalar comparison**: with the former the comparison is on a scale (*hot–hotter–hottest*), but with the latter this is not the case (e.g. *This book's cover is the same as that one's*).

2. The action of forming the comparative (or comparative and *superlative) form of an adjective or adverb.

The three **degrees of comparison** are *absolute (1), *comparative, and *superlative.

comparison clause A *clause containing some kind of *comparison.

This label may include *comparative clauses, and also clauses introduced by *as if/as though*:

He looked as if/as though he'd seen a ghost.

Alternatively, it may exclude comparative clauses, and be used in contrast with them. (Clauses introduced by *as if* and *as though* are also often analysed as clauses of *manner.)

competence *Linguistics*. The internalized knowledge of the *rules of a language that native speakers possess; contrasted with their actual **performance**.

The distinction between competence and performance is due to Noam Chomsky, and forms an important part of *Generative Grammar (2). Native speakers' competence enables them to generate an infinite number of grammatical sentences, make *grammaticality judgements, detect *ambiguities, etc. By contrast, performance, what a speaker actually says (i.e. the use they make of their competence), may at times be *ungrammatical or confused—and is also subject to constraints, such as *utterance length, that do not affect idealized competence.

Compare COMMUNICATIVE COMPETENCE; LANGUE.

complement

1. A *constituent (*phrase, *clause, etc.) that is *licensed by a *head, e.g. a *verb, *noun, or *adjective.

The complements of verbs include phrases and clauses, e.g.

She bought *a new laptop*
We think *that the rain will stop by 4 p.m.*

In most models the *subject is not regarded as a complement of the verb; CaGEL is an exception.

The constituents following nouns that are related to verbs are often analysed as complements, e.g.

They were annoyed by her refusal *to answer* (cf. She refused to answer)
His allegation *that she will resign by Friday* is unfounded (cf. He alleged that . . .)

But other kinds of abstract nouns can also take complements, e.g.

His reluctance *to write a reference for me* (cf. He is reluctant . . .)
The fact *that the story was made up* didn't bother me

The italicized clause in the second example is often regarded as *appositive, and analysed as a complement in some models but as a *postmodifier in others.

The label *complement* can be useful when a noun is incomplete by itself (compare *They deplored her lack of remorse* and **They deplored her lack*).

Complements of adjectives include *prepositional phrases and clauses, e.g.

fond *of chocolate*
I'm sorry *that you are ill*
We're sad *to hear your news*

Complements of *prepositions (also called *objects of prepositions) are usually *noun phrases or prepositional phrases, e.g.

in *the bag*
over *the moon*
out of *order*

In some frameworks (e.g. CaGEL and OMEG), words that are traditionally regarded as subordinating *conjunctions are analysed as prepositions that take clausal complements, e.g.

We watched the film after *she left*
He wore a thick coat although *it was hot*

Predicative complements are *adjective phrases, noun phrases, etc. which ascribe a property to the referent of another phrase. These are labelled in more detail as:

(i) **subject complement** (in CGEL, abbreviated C_S), **subjective predicative complement** (in CaGEL, abbreviated PC^S), **subject-related predicative complement** (in OMEG), e.g.

She is *a lawyer*
All my students seem *very clever*

Typically complements of this type 'complete' the verb *be* or another *linking verb.

(ii) **object complement** (in CGEL, abbreviated C_o), **objective predicative complement** (in CaGEL, abbreviated PC^o), **object-related predicative complement** (in OMEG), e.g.

They called me *a fool*
I consider tranquillizers *dangerous*

A **predicative oblique** (a term used in CaGEL) is an object-related *predicative phrase that occurs after a preposition, typically *as*, e.g.

We regarded them as *interlopers*

The entire *as*-phrase is then called a **marked predicative complement**. In CGEL the term **prepositional object complement** is used for the NP alone.
●● **complement clause**: a clause that functions as complement (called a *catenative complement in CaGEL), e.g. We wanted *to help him*.
●● **core complement**: (in CaGEL) typically a *noun phrase directly licensed by a verb. Compare *non-core complement* below.
●● **external complement**: the *subject (in frameworks that regard the subject as a complement of the verb).
●● **internal complement**: the complements of a verb that are part of the *verb phrase (2) in a clause or sentence, e.g. the *direct object, *indirect object, etc.
●● **non-core complement**: (in CaGEL) typically a prepositional phrase which contains a noun phrase that is indirectly licensed by a verb. Compare *core complement* above. *See also* OBLIQUE.

2. More narrowly, one of the five *elements of clause structure, along with subject, verb, object, and adverbial.

complementarity *Semantics*. A relationship of oppositeness between pairs of *words, such that to deny one is normally to assert the other, and vice versa; e.g. *dead/alive*.
See also COMPLEMENTARY.

complementary (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) a *word which, with another word, forms a pair of mutually exclusive opposites.

Such complementaries (sometimes considered a type of *antonym) are usually ungradable either-or terms, e.g. *alive/dead, married/single*.
See also BINARY; CONTRADICTORY.

complementary distribution *Morphology* and *syntax*. Two forms are in complementary distribution if they have a different shape in a particular morphological or syntactic environment, and can hence be said to represent the same item at some *level of representation; e.g. *a* and *an* placed before nouns.

> 2003 I. PLAG The idea of complementary distribution is used not only in science, but also in everyday reasoning. For example, in the famous novel *The Strange Case of Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde*, both men are the surface realizations of one underlying schizophrenic personality, with one realization appearing by night, the other by daylight. Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde are complementarily distributed: in morphological terms they could be said to be allomorphs of the same morpheme.

complementation

1. The *licensing of a *complement by a *verb, *noun, *adjective, etc. that functions as a *head.

For most linguists this is a syntactic concept, but note the semantic perspective in the quotation below.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. We reserve the term complementation (as distinct from *complement*) for the function of a part of a phrase or clause which follows a word, and completes the specification of a meaning relationship which that word implies.

●● **complementation pattern**: a particular grammatical structure that a verb (or noun, adjective) licenses, e.g. verb + *indirect object + *direct object.

●● **complex intransitive complementation**: *See* COMPLEX INTRANSITIVE.

●● **complex transitive complementation**: *See* COMPLEX TRANSITIVE.

●● **ditransitive complementation**: *See* DITRANSITIVE.

●● **intensive complementation**: *See* INTENSIVE.

2. The same as *complementary distribution (a rare use).

> 1948 E. A. NIDA The forms *I* and *me* generally occur in complementation: *I* occurs in preverbal subject position, *me* in postverbal object position and after prepositions.

complementizer A word that introduces a clause (regarded in *Generative Grammar (2) as a **complementizer phrases**) which functions as *complement to a verb or some other *head. The items *that*, *whether*, *if* (in interrogative clauses), and *for* belong to this class.

The term is particularly used in Generative Grammar (2). It is narrower in meaning than *subordinating conjunction or *subordinator.

> 1994 L. HAEGEMAN Complementizers such as *whether, if, that* and *for* introduce a sentence (IP): C selects an IP-complement. The choice of the type of IP is determined by the choice of C. The complementizers *that* and *if* select

a finite clause as their complement; *for* selects an infinitival clause and *whether* selects either type.

complementizer phrase (CP) A *phrase which has a *complementizer as its *head. *See* COMPLEMENTIZER; FUNCTIONAL CATEGORY; HEAD.

complete sentence A *sentence that does not lack any of its major components, such as *subject, *predicate, etc.; one that is not *elliptical.
Compare KERNEL.

complex (*adj.*) Consisting of two or more parts; often in contrast to either *simple or *compound.
•• **complex catenative construction**: *See* COMPLEX CATENATIVE CONSTRUCTION.
•• **complex conjunction**: a two- or three-word *conjunction (e.g. *in that, providing that, as soon as*).
•• **complex infinitive**: *see* INFINITIVE.
•• **complex intransitive**: *see* COMPLEX INTRANSITIVE.
•• **complex preposition**: a two- or three-word *preposition (e.g. *out of, because of, prior to, on behalf of*), in contrast to an ordinary one-word preposition (e.g. *from, before*). *See also* COMPOUND PREPOSITION.
•• **complex sentence**: a *sentence containing at least one *subordinate clause, in addition to one or more *matrix clauses, e.g. *When you've quite finished, we can begin*. *Compare* COMPOUND SENTENCE.
•• **complex stem**: *See* STEM.
•• **complex transitive**: *see* COMPLEX TRANSITIVE.
•• **complex verb phrase**: a *verb phrase (1) which, in addition to a *main verb, includes one or a combination of *modal, *perfect, *progressive, and *passive auxiliaries (e.g. *can leave, will have forgotten, must have been being investigated*), but excludes any *complements.
•• **complex word**: generally, a word consisting of at least two parts, usually a *base and one or more *bound morphemes. Thus *impolite* and *rudeness* contrast both with unanalysable words, long or short, e.g. *dog, hippopotamus,* and with *compound words. However, there is very considerable variation in the way different linguists deal with morphology, and usage of terminology is correspondingly fluid. The word *blackboard,* for example, which is a *compound in many definitions, is classed as a complex word in another model, and even as a compound *stem.
(*n.*) **clause complex**: *See* CLAUSE.

complex catenative construction (In CaGEL.) Typically a *construction in which a *catenative verb is followed by a *noun phrase (called the **intervening NP**) which functions as *direct object, and which is understood as the semantic *subject of a following *non-finite clause which itself functions as a *catenative complement, e.g.

Our boss [wants] [us] [to cycle to work]
I didn't [intend] [the report] [to be published online]

Also regarded as complex catenative constructions are cases where the intervening NP belongs in the *subordinate clause and can take a *genitive case, e.g.

He was [longing] [for *the meeting* to end]
The University would not [authorize] [*his teaching* the students in the park]

complex intransitive A term used to describe a *verb which *licenses a *subject-related predicative *complement—hence **complex intransitive complementation**—or a *pattern or *clause in which a verb licenses a subject-related predicative complement, the latter in the form of a *noun phrase, *adjective phrase, etc, e.g.

Jake is very excited to be here

Also called *intensive.

Compare COMPLEMENTATION; COMPLEX TRANSITIVE; DITRANSITIVE; INTRANSITIVE; MONOTRANSITIVE; TRANSITIVE.

complex transitive A term used to describe a *verb which *licenses a *direct object and an *object-related predicative *complement—hence **complex transitive complementation**—or a *pattern or *clause in which a verb licenses an object (underlined below) and an object-related predicative complement, the latter in the form of a *noun phrase, *adjective phrase, etc. (italicized below), e.g.

They made him *leader*
Let's paint the town *red*

In the complex transitive pattern, the object noun phrase may or may not be directly 'acted upon' (i.e. carry the *semantic role of *patient). However, the object, and what follows it, are in a semantic (but not grammatical) subject-*predicate relationship (indicated by underlining below), e.g.

They painted the house blue
We watched him leave
I knew him to be a crook
They made him pay
I saw him arrested

There are considerable differences of analysis here: in some frameworks the verbs in these constructions are would be considered ordinary *transitive or *catenative verbs followed by a *direct object and a *complement clause. In other frameworks the underlined strings are clauses.

Compare COMPLEMENTATION; COMPLEX INTRANSITIVE; DITRANSITIVE; INTRANSITIVE; MONOTRANSITIVE; TRANSITIVE.

component

1. Any one of the major parts of the theory of *Generative Grammar.

Different sets of components have been proposed at different times, for example a **categorial component** (*see* CATEGORY), a set of *transformational *rules (the **transformational component**), a **phonological component**, and a **semantic component**. In more recent theory the term **module** is preferred.

See also TRANSFORMATIONAL GRAMMAR.

2. *Semantics*. A small unit of *meaning (*see* *feature (2)) that forms part of the total meaning of a *word, and that can be shared by other words.

See COMPONENTIAL ANALYSIS.

componential analysis The analysis of linguistic elements, especially *lexical items, into syntactic, semantic, and/or phonological *features (2).

Frequently cited classic examples concern terms for people and animals that can be shown to have, or lack, certain features, and these are often indicated using a *binary notation of plus ('+') or minus ('−') signs. Thus *stallion* or *boar* can be represented as [+male] [+adult] [−human], etc. The combination '±' is also used to indicate that a feature may or may not apply. Thus clauses can be analysed as being [±tensed]. However, the validity of the technique has been criticized.

See also SEMANTIC.

composition

1. An older term for *compounding.

1926 H. W. FOWLER Composition—How words are fused into compounds.

2. The way in which language is composed of units which incorporate other units.

> 1968 J. LYONS The relationship between the five units of grammatical description . . . is one of *composition*. If we call the sentence the 'highest' unit and the morpheme the 'lowest', we can arrange all five units on a scale of *rank* (sentence, clause, phrase, word, morpheme), saying that units of higher rank are composed of units of lower rank.

compound (*n.*) A *word formed by combining two or more words (*bases (2) or *lexemes); a compound word.

(*adj.*) Formed by combining two or more units; especially consisting of two or more parts of equal value—hence, e.g. **compound sentence**: a sentence containing two or more *coordinated *main clauses.

Compare COMPLEX *sentence*; SIMPLE (2) *sentence*; and *see* COMPOUND-COMPLEX SENTENCE.

Among compound words, **compound *nouns** and **compound *adjectives** are particularly common, e.g. *bookcase, handlebar, laptop, mind set, windscreen, fact-finding, home-made, south-facing, tax-free*.

Some *adverbs (e.g. *somehow, hereby*) are also described as compound, in contrast to simple adverbs (e.g. *just, only*).

In general, compound words contrast with simple words, and with words formed by *derivation or *inflection. At a more technical level, terminology is by no means agreed, and even the distinction between compound and complex may be blurred.

• **compounding**: the *word formation (2) process of forming compound words by joining at least two independent words (bases, lexemes) together; contrasted with the other main type of word formation, derivation (and sometimes *conversion). Also sometimes called *composition.

•• **compound base**: *See* BASE (2).

•• **compound lexeme**: *See* LEXEME.

•• **compound preposition**: The term is used to refer to *complex prepositions, i.e. *multi-word sequences that behave like simple prepositions, e.g. *in front of, on account of*, but can also be used to describe examples like *into, throughout*. *See also* COMPLEX preposition.

•• **compound stem**: *See* STEM.

•• **compound stress**: In general, compounds have the stress on the first element, whereas *phrases have the stress on the second element; compare ˈ*blackboard* (compound) with *black* ˈ*board* (phrase). However, this generalization is not without exceptions.

•• **compound subject**, **compound object**: now more usually called **coordinated subject**, **coordinated object**.

•• **compound tense**: *See* PRIMARY; TENSE.

•• **compound verb**: an older term for multi-word verb.

(*v.*) Combine (words, bases) so as to form a compound word.

compound-complex sentence A sentence containing at least two *coordinated *clauses (making it compound), as well as at least one *subordinate clause (making it complex). For example:

> [$_{\text{main}}$ He told me [$_{\text{subordinate}}$ that Fran would fly to Italy]] but [$_{\text{main}}$ he told Pete something else]

Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language, A **(CGEL)** A large reference *grammar published by Longman in 1985, written by Randolph Quirk, the late Sidney Greenbaum, Geoffrey Leech, and Jan Svartvik. An update of *A *Grammar of Contemporary English*. Along with *The *Cambridge Grammar of the English Language* this is a standard modern reference grammar of English. A shorter version with a pedagogical focus was published as *A Student's Grammar of the English Language* in 1990. Various other grammars have adopted the CGEL grammatical framework, e.g. *A *Communicative Grammar of English* and the **Longman Grammar of Spoken and Written English*.

computational linguistics *See* LINGUISTICS.

conation (As a meaning expressed in language.) 'Trying'.

This term is sometimes applied to a *verb *construction such as *manage (to do), fail (in doing)*.

The term is derived from Latin *conari* 'to try'.

conative (*n. & adj.*) *Semantics*. (Designating) language which aims to persuade.

A term used occasionally in theories of *meaning to refer to the use of language which causes or persuades others to do what the speaker wants. **Conative meaning** thus overlaps with the *instrumental (2) function.

The term is derived from Latin *conari* ('to try').

Compare DIRECTIVE.

See also ATTITUDINAL; COMMUNICATIVE; CONATION; CONNOTATION; EMOTIVE; EXPRESSIVE; INTERPERSONAL; PROPOSITIONAL MEANING; REFERENTIAL MEANING.

concession The act, or an instance, of conceding, admitting.

Concession is one of the meaning categories used in the analysis of *adverbial clauses, e.g.

I love cheese, *although I know it contains a lot of fat*

See also CONCESSIVE.

concessive Expressing *concession.

A **concessive *clause** (or **clause of concession**) is usually introduced by a concessive *subordinator, e.g. *although, (even) though, whereas, while,* and, in Scotland, *even although*. These clauses are sometimes classified together with clauses of *contrast, and sometimes distinguished. They include *finite, *non-finite, and *verbless clauses; e.g.

Although he was angry
Although feeling angry } he did not raise his voice
Although angry

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. Concessive clauses indicate that the situation in the matrix clause is contrary to expectation in the light of what is said in the concessive clause.

Concessive *prepositions include *despite*, *in spite of*, *for* (obligatorily followed by *all*), *notwithstanding*, e.g.

For all his protestations, nobody believed him

There are also **concessive *adverbs**, including *anyhow*, *anyway*, *however*, *nevertheless*, *still*, *though*, *yet*, e.g.

He was angry; he did not raise his voice, though

conclusive *Semantics*. Of a *dynamic (1) *verb, or its *meaning: implying a resulting change of state, progress towards some goal, or possibly some single action, or transitional action, or event leading to a definite end. Contrasted with **non-conclusive**.

The term is not in popular use.

Compare ATELIC; DURATIVE; PERFECTIVE; PUNCTUAL; TELIC.

concord The same as *agreement.

concrete Of a *noun: denoting a physical object: a person, an animal, or an observable, touchable thing; contrasted with *abstract.

Compare COUNT.

condition A circumstance, situation, action, etc. upon the fulfilment of which another circumstance, situation, action, etc. obtains.

Condition is one of the meaning categories used in the analysis of *conditional clauses. A distinction is often made between **factual conditions** and **counterfactual conditions**.

In a factual condition (also called a **neutral**, **open**, or **real condition**) the condition may or may not be fulfilled, e.g.

If it rains tomorrow, we won't go
If Bob's there already, he will have heard the news

A *counterfactual condition (also called a **closed**, **hypothetical**, **rejected**, **remote,** or **unreal condition**) implies that the speaker does not think that the condition is, will be, or has been fulfilled, and therefore the fulfilment of the *main clause *proposition is either in doubt or will not obtain, e.g.

If he made a bit more effort, he might get somewhere

Most conditional clauses posit a **direct condition**, which means that there is a logical (causal) link between the conditional clause and main clause. An **indirect condition** occurs when there is a logical gap between the two parts of a conditional *construction. For example, the stated outcome in the following examples does not depend on the fulfilment of the **if*-clause:

You look tired, if you don't mind my saying so
If you're going in July, it will be raining

See RHETORICAL.

See also ALTERNATIVE CONDITIONAL-CONCESSIVE CLAUSE; UNIVERSAL CONDITIONAL-CONCESSIVE CLAUSE.

conditional (*adj.*) (Used for) expressing a *condition.

(*n.*) A *sentence containing a conditional *clause.

●● **conditional clause**: a clause introduced by a **conditional *conjunction/ *subordinator**, the commonest of which are *if* and *unless*, e.g.

We can't implement this plan *if she is abroad*

If and *unless* can also introduce *non-finite and *verbless clauses, e.g.

If *in doubt*, say nothing, *unless advised otherwise*

Other conditional conjunctions include *on condition (that), providing that, provided (that).*

●● **conditional sentence** (also called **conditional *construction**): a combination of a *main clause and conditional clause. The **if*-clause is called the *protasis, and the main clause is the *apodosis. CaGEL's analysis is different:

> 2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. Traditional grammar takes *if* to be a subordinating conjunction, not a preposition, and many modern works follow this analysis; *if* is therefore commonly regarded as forming part of the protasis. We are using 'conditional adjunct' for the constituent including *if*, and protasis just for the subordinate clause . . . Note also that we use 'conditional construction' rather than 'conditional clause', because the latter could be understood as applying to either the subordinate clause or the superordinate one.

Simplified grammar books for foreign learners often classify conditional constructions into three types according to the tense forms used:

(i) **first conditional** (also called the ***will*-condition**): involves a present tense verb form in the conditional clause, and *will* in the main clause, e.g.
If I *see* them, I *will* tell them

(ii) **second conditional** (also called the ***would*-condition**): involves a past tense verb form in the conditional clause, and *would* in the main clause, e.g. If I *saw* them, I *would* tell them

(iii) **third conditional** (also called the ***would have*-condition**): involves a past perfect in the conditional clause, and *would have* in the main clause, e.g. If I *had seen* them, I *would have told them*

These are ordered in terms of the degree of likelihood that the condition can be fulfilled. This analysis is, however, a misleading oversimplification, as many other combinations are possible, e.g.

If you listen, you learn things
If you had paid attention, you would know

The former, which involves two *present tenses, is sometimes called the **present condition**.

•• **conditional tense**: Traditional grammarians often label *should/would* + *infinitive (e.g. *Should you wish to purchase the item, call us*) and *should/would* + *perfect infinitive (*Should you have done so already, please ignore this message*) as conditional *tenses. But this analysis is out of favour today. This term is also applied to the modal *past forms of *verbs, as in *If he ate it, he would be very ill* (cf. second conditional above), and to the *were* *subjunctive, as in *If he were to come, we would have a party*.

See also ALTERNATIVE CONDITIONAL-CONCESSIVE CLAUSE; CONDITION; UNIVERSAL CONDITIONAL-CONCESSIVE CLAUSE.

conditioning The phenomenon whereby a *modification is brought about in a unit (*word, *phrase, etc.) by virtue of the (grammatical) context. For example, the *indefinite article takes the form *an* when it precedes a word that begins with a vowel, and *pronouns change their *case (1) *inflection depending on their grammatical *function (1) (cf. *I saw him*; *He saw me*).

When a *variant is not modified in this way it is said to be **unconditioned**.

• **conditioned**.

See also FREE VARIATION; VARIANT.

congruence *Linguistics*. Correspondence between different *levels of linguistic analysis, e.g. the levels of syntax and semantics.

There are many consistent relationships between *form and *meaning. For example, many abstract *nouns are *non-count. However, there are also cases where a direct correspondence is absent. Thus in the following example in many analyses the italicized noun phrase is regarded as the grammatical *direct object of the *verb *expect*, even though semantically it is the *agent of the verb *open*:

I expect *the caretaker* to open the door by 9 a.m.

• **congruent**: exhibiting congruence.

conjoin (*v.*) Join (two or more, usually equal, units); *coordinate.

For grammarians who use this term, **conjoining** roughly corresponds to *coordination. **Conjoined clauses** result in *compound sentences.

(*n.*) (In CGEL.) An item (*word, *phrase, or *clause) coordinated with another, e.g.

boys and *girls*
by hook or *by crook*
We laughed and *we cried*

conjoint (In CGEL.) A *coordinated structure, containing two or more *conjoins. The parts (*conjoins*) are thus distinguished from the whole (*conjoint*).

conjugate Provide the different *inflectional forms of a *verb in a *paradigm.

This traditional term is not now considered applicable to English. It is more commonly used in connection with *inflected languages like Latin or French that have forms varying in accordance with *person and *number to a much greater extent than in English.

See also CONJUGATION.

Compare DECLINE; DECLENSION.

conjugation

1. A connected scheme of all the *inflectional forms of a *verb; a division of the verbs of a language according to the general differences of inflection.

2. The class into which verbs are put according to the exact forms of inflectional variation, usually called first, second, etc. conjugation. Also called **conjugational class** or **verbal inflection class**.

> 1841 R. G. LATHAM The Praeterite Tense of the Weak Verbs is formed by the addition of *d* or *t* . . . The Verbs of the Weak Conjugation fall into Three Classes.

Neither sense is in current use for English grammar.

See also CONJUGATE; PARADIGM.

Compare DECLINE; DECLENSION.

conjugational class *See* CONJUGATION.

conjunct

1. An *adverbial with a joining (or connective) *function (2), often that of joining a *clause or *sentence to an earlier clause or sentence. Popularly called *connector.

Conjuncts have a variety of meanings, including (i) listing, (ii) reinforcement, (iii) *result, and (iv) *concession, e.g.

(i) *First of all*, I'd like to thank all those people who sent in comments.
(ii) *Moreover* (or *Above all*), I owe a debt of gratitude to my parents.
(iii) I would like, *therefore*, to close this meeting.
(iv) I must, *nevertheless*, point out that it will affect your credit rating.

In some analyses of *adverbials (e.g. CGEL) conjuncts contrast with *adjuncts, *disjuncts, and (sometimes) *subjuncts. In analyses that do not use these labels, or make different distinctions, conjuncts (roughly as defined here) are called **structural conjunctives**, or **conjunctive/connective/discourse/linking adjuncts** (or **adverb(ial)s**).

2. Another word for a *conjoin, i.e. a unit joined to another by a *coordinator.

conjunction

1. A *word used to join words, *phrases, *clauses, or *sentences.

The conjunction is one of the generally recognized *word classes (parts of speech). Two main types are generally distinguished:

Coordinating conjunctions (also called *coordinators) join units of 'equal' status:

free *and* easy
poor *but* honest
speak now *or* forever hold your peace

Subordinating conjunctions (also called *subordinators) introduce *subordinate clauses, e.g. *although, because, if, since, when,* etc.

Conjunctions consisting of two or more words are called *complex conjunctions (e.g. *as if, as soon as, assuming (that), but that, in case, in that*). Those that formally resemble other *word classes are sometimes labelled accordingly, e.g.

adverbial conjunctions: *immediately, now* (e.g. *Immediately I hear, I'll let you know*)

verbal conjunctions: *assuming* (*that*), *granted* (*that*)

nominal conjunctions: *every time, the moment* (e.g. *The moment he comes, I'll let you know*)

2. Joining together, juxtaposition.

This is a very general term, but is sometimes narrowed down and contrasted with *disjunction.

1976 R. HUDDLESTON The term ‘conjoining’ will sometimes be found in place of coordination; coordination with *and* and *or* are often distinguished as ‘conjunction’ and ‘disjunction’ respectively (with ‘conjunction’ here used in the logician’s sense, rather than the traditional grammarian’s, for whom it denotes a class of words).

conjunction group (In *Systemic Grammar.) A *word *group consisting of a *conjunction and *modifier(s), e.g. *and so*, *even if*, *not until*.

conjunctive

1. (*n. & adj.*) (A *word or *phrase) functioning in the same way as a *conjunction or *conjunct, or having some other similar function.

•• **conjunctive adjunct**: the same as *conjunct. *See also* sense **3.** below.

2. The same as *subjunctive, but mostly used to describe classical languages such as Latin and Greek.

3. In *Systemic Grammar the term refers to a *cohesive word that operates at the textual level.

2014 M. A. K. HALLIDAY & C. MATTHIESSEN [C]onjunctive Adjuncts are textual—they set up a contextualizing relationship obtaining between the clause as a message and some other (typically preceding) portion of text.

connective (*n. & adj.*) (A *word or other linguistic device) serving to link linguistic units.

*Conjunctions and/or *conjuncts are classed as connectives. *Linking (or *copular) *verbs are also sometimes included.

• **connectivity**.

•• **connective adjunct**: *see* CONJUNCT.

•• **connective device**: a linguistic means of binding a *text together; a term covering *coherence and *cohesion.

Compare COORDINATION.

connector The same as *conjunct.

connotation *Semantics*. An additional meaning that a *word (or other linguistic unit) evokes by virtue of personal or cultural associations, in contrast to its *denotation.

Connotation is peripheral compared with ‘dictionary meaning’, and is considerably dependent on subjective judgement. For example, the connotations of *police* for some people may be ‘reliable’, ‘helpful’, ‘protectors of law and order’, ‘the front line against crime’, etc. For others, the connotations may be ‘harassment’, ‘breathalysers’, ‘arrests’, ‘water cannon’, etc.

• **connotational**, **connotative**: pertaining to, or involving, connotation. Connotative meaning is related to *attitudinal meaning.

See also ATTITUDINAL; COMMUNICATIVE; CONATIVE; DESCRIPTIVE; EMOTIVE; INTERPERSONAL MEANING; PROPOSITIONAL MEANING; REFERENTIAL MEANING.

consecutive Expressing consequence or *result.
•• **consecutive clause**: (an older name for) a result *clause.

constative *See* PERFORMATIVE.

constituent A linguistic unit that forms part of a larger structure.

A very general term, which can cover *morphemes (1), *words, *phrases, and *clauses as parts of larger units.

See also IMMEDIATE CONSTITUENT.

• **constituency**: the relationship of a linguistic unit to another unit of which it forms a part.
•• **constituent order**: the order in which *constituents are arranged in *sentences and clauses. This term is to be preferred to *word order.
•• **constituent command (c-command)**: In *Government-Binding Theory this is a technical term to designate a dominance relationship between units in a sentence, related to the traditional notion of *government.

construct (In older grammar.) (*v.*) Combine *words, *phrases, and/or *clauses, etc. grammatically into a larger structure; form into a *construction. For instance, *rely* is constructed with a *prepositional phrase. the *head of which is *on*.

(*n.*) A rare term variously used for *collocation or *construction.

construction

1. A conventional pairing of a particular syntactic structure or *pattern with a *meaning. The term is not always defined precisely, and different concatenations of linguistic elements can be said to qualify as constructions:

*noun + noun (e.g. *wind energy*)
*determinative (1) + noun (e.g. *the street*)
*subject + *verb + *direct object (e.g. *I heard her voice*)
*preposition + *noun phrase + preposition (e.g. *by means of*)
verb + noun phrase + **to*-infinitive (e.g. (*They) want me to come*)
It + *be* + noun phrase + *who/that*- *clause (e.g. *It was the milkman who rang the doorbell*)

In some theories, e.g. *Generative Grammar (2), the notion of construction is discarded.

1995 N. CHOMSKY The notion of grammatical construction [can be] eliminated, and with it, construction-particular rules. Constructions such as verb phrase, relative clause, and passive remain only as taxonomic artifacts, collections of phenomena explained through the interaction of the principles of UG, with the values of parameters fixed.

See also CONSTRUCTION GRAMMAR; SYNTAGM.

2. The process of creating constructions as defined in (1).

1755 S. JOHNSON *Construction* . . . the putting of words, duly chosen, together in such a manner as is proper to convey a complete sense.

• **constructional**.

•• **constructional relation**: *See* RELATION.

Construction Grammar A cover term for a number of linguistic frameworks in which *constructions, defined as conventionalized pairings of structures with meanings, are *primitive. By contrast, practitioners of *Chomskyan linguistics and some other theoretical frameworks regard constructions as epiphenomenal (*See* CONSTRUCTION).

2006 A. GOLDBERG What makes a theory that allows constructions to exist ‘a construction-based theory’ is the idea that the network of constructions captures our grammatical knowledge of language *in toto,* i.e. **it’s constructions all the way down**. [emphasis in original]

construe (In traditional grammar.)

1. The same as the verb *construct.

1902 *New English Dictionary* All the verbs and adjectives which are or have been construed with *of*.

2. Analyse the syntax of (a sentence).
Neither meaning is common in modern grammar.

contact clause A term introduced in Jespersen (1909–49) to denote a *relative clause joined to a *noun without any connecting word.

1970 B. M. H. STRANG Contact-clauses are ancient structures of independent origin, not just relatives with pronouns left out . . . At the beginning of II [the period 1570–1770] . . . they were still extensively used where the ‘relative’ had subject function, as in Shakespeare’s *I see a man here needs not liue by shifts*. This is ambiguous . . . There was good reason for confining the structure to object relations, where there is no ambiguity (as in Defoe, *the same trade she had followed in Ireland*): since the 18c this limitation has been customary.

1. Normally: a defining *clause in which the relative *pronoun, if it were overt, would function as *object of the *verb, or of a deferred *preposition.

the woman *I love* > the woman *whom I love*
a crisis *we could have done without* > a crisis *that we could have done without*
a problem *you know about* > a problem *which you know about*

Similar contact clauses are possible in which the relative word can also express time, cause, or manner:

The moment *I saw it*, I knew it was mine > The moment *that/when I saw it . . .*
The reason *I asked* was that I needed to know > The reason *that/why I asked . . .*
This is the way *you should do it* > This is the way *that you should do it*

But when the relative word expresses place, the use is possibly non-standard, e.g.

?This is the exact place *Latimer and Ridley were burnt* > This is the exact place *where . . .*

2. More rarely, a relative clause in which the relative pronoun, if it were overt, would function as the *subject; e.g.

Who was it *said 'Inside every fat man there's a thin one trying to get out'*? > Who was it *who said . . .*
There's someone at the door *says you know him* > There's someone at the door *who says . . .*
There's a guy *works down the chip shop swears he's Elvis* (pop song) > There's a guy *who works down the chip shop who swears . . .*

Compare APO KOINOU.

contamination The process by which two more or less synonymous linguistic *forms are blended by accident or through confusion, so as to produce a new form.

The process occurs in speech owing to hesitation between two semantically similar forms. Examples of such words that appear to have arisen spontaneously (though they would now be used, if at all, self-consciously) include *insinuendo* and *portentious*.

The term was first used in English by the translator of Herman Paul's works on language.

> 1988 V. ADAMS We should perhaps distinguish . . . between the contamination which arises because words are imperfectly known, or unfamiliar, and that resulting from 'slips of the tongue'. The dialectal examples appear to represent the former; it is the latter kind of contamination which Paul is defining.

Compare BLEND.

contemporary English *See* MODERN ENGLISH.

content clause A term introduced by Otto Jespersen which is used in a number of recent grammars of English, e.g. CaGEL and OMEG, to denote certain types of finite *subordinate clauses which are often syntactically similar to *main clauses.

Content clauses introduced by *that* are *declarative content clauses which can function in various ways, e.g. as *subject or *direct object:

That he can have simply disappeared is unbelievable
I don't believe (*that*) *the police made a thorough search*

The following examples involve *interrogative and *exclamative content clauses:

I really don't see *what you mean*
She knows *what a good teacher you are*

In other frameworks (e.g. CGEL) content clauses are analysed as *nominal clauses.

content disjunct An *adverbial that comments on the content of a *proposition, in contrast to a *style disjunct. Also called **attitudinal disjunct**. Example:

Regrettably, nobody bothered to tell them

content word A word with a statable meaning, as listed in a dictionary. Also called **lexical word** or *full word; contrasted with *grammatical word (1).

Content words include most *open (1) class words—*nouns, *verbs, *adjectives, and *adverbs. The distinction between content and grammatical words is blurred, rather than rigid.

See also GRADIENCE.

context

1. The same as *co-text.

2. When reference is made only, or predominantly, to the non-linguistic *situation in which an *utterance is made (who is addressing whom, whether formally or informally, why, for what purpose, when, where, etc.), we speak of the **context of situation** (also called **situational context** or *extralinguistic context). This can be an important factor in interpreting the full *meaning of utterances, as opposed to only the *truth-conditional meaning. Although some 'texts' are complete in themselves, others rely heavily on the extralinguistic situation for the interpretation of *pronouns, *adverbials (e.g. *here, there, now, then, yesterday*), and *tenses. The term context of situation was first used widely in English by the social anthropologist Bronislaw Malinowski.

• **contextual**. *Compare* TEXTUAL.
See also CONTEXT-FREE; CONTEXT-SENSITIVE.

context-free (In *Generative Grammar.) Applicable in any *context.

A **context-free rule** is one that is theoretically applicable in all linguistic contexts, with no exclusions or *variants. A **context-free grammar** is a grammar containing rules only of this simple type.

See also CONTEXT-SENSITIVE.

context-sensitive (In *Generative Grammar.) Applicable only in certain specified *contexts. Also called **context-dependent**.

Context-sensitive contrasts with *context-free. Rules for the formation of English *noun *plurals need to be context-sensitive, so that plurals with *–es* and such *irregular forms as *men, teeth,* etc. are accurately generated.

contingency A *situation (event, state of affairs, etc.) dependent on another situation.

This term is used in some analyses of the meaning of *adverbials as an umbrella term for *cause, *condition, *concession, *purpose, *reason, and *result.

•• **clause of contingency** (or **contingent clause**): a *clause that expresses contingency.

continuative

1. A label applied to one of the uses of the *present perfect. (see *continuative* PRESENT PERFECT)

2. The term is sometimes used to describe elements of a small group of linguistic items that are used to extend a conversation, e.g. *oh, well, right.*

•• **continuative relative clause**: *See* RELATIVE.
Compare RESTRICTIVE; *sentential* RELATIVE. *clause*

continuous (tense) The same as *progressive (*tense). A term used in the domain of English Language Teaching.

•• **present continuous (tense)**: the same as present progressive (tense).
•• **past continuous (tense)**: the same as past progressive (tense).

contract Shorten (a *word, syllable, etc.) by omitting or combining some elements.

> 1884 *New English Dictionary Ain't* . . . A contracted form of *are not*.., used also for *am not,* in the popular dialect of London and elsewhere.

•• **contracted form**: the same as *contraction (2).

contraction

1. The action of shortening a *word, syllable, etc. by omitting and combining elements.

2. A shortened form of a word that can be attached to another word (usually as an *enclitic); the two words together. Also called **abbreviated form**, **contracted form**, or **short form**.

Thus both *'m* and *I'm* are described as contractions. Other contractions in English are:

's (= is/has)
'd (= had/would)
're (= are)
'll (= will)
've (= have)
n't (= not)

Compare CLIPPING; REDUCTION.

contradictory (*n. & adj.*) *Semantics*. The term is applied to *propositions: they are said to be contradictory when they cannot both be true or both be false at the same time, e.g. *My father is older than my mother* and *My father is younger than my mother*.

Two words that are opposite in meaning to another are called contradictories, e.g. *life/death* and *male/female*, though the more usual label is *complementary.

contrafactive Designating either a *verb followed by a *complement clause which expresses a *proposition that is contrary to fact, or a proposition that is contrary to fact. Thus in:

I wish (that) I knew the answer
I'll pretend (that) I know

the verbs *wish* and *pretend* are **contrafactive verbs** (or **contrafactives**), and the propositions following them are **contrafactive propositions**.

Compare COUNTERFACTUAL; FACTIVE; FACTUAL.

contrastive

1. Of *clauses, *conjunctions, *conjuncts, etc.: expressing a discrepancy or contrast, typically between what is expressed in a *main clause and an associated *subordinate clause, or between what is expressed in a particular *sentence and a preceding one.

•• **contrastive clauses** (also called **clauses of contrast**; sometimes classified with *concessive clauses): these are introduced by **contrastive conjunctions** such as *whereas, while, whilst*, e.g.

I adore jazz, *whereas* my husband prefers classical music

•• **contrastive conjuncts**: these are *conjuncts that express a contrast, such as *alternatively, by contrast, however, rather, more accurately*, e.g.

The Germans won four medals. *By contrast*, the Russians won twenty-six.

2. contrastive analysis, **contrastive grammar**, **contrastive linguistics**: the comparative study of two or more languages, especially from the point of view of translation or foreign language teaching.

Contrastive analysis is *synchronic.

Compare COMPARATIVE LINGUISTICS; HISTORICAL LINGUISTICS.

- **contrastivity**.

control In *Generative Grammar (2) the unexpressed *subject in the bracketed *subordinate clause of the first example below (indicated by 'Ø') is said to be **controlled** by the subject of the *matrix clause (**subject control**). (The subscript 'i' indicates *co-reference.) In the second example we have **object control**, and in the final example we have **arbitrary control**, i.e. there is no controller present in the linguistic *context. This kind of linkage is regulated by a component of the grammar called **Control Theory**.

I_i tried [$Ø_i$ to leave]
I_i persuaded $Dawn_i$ [$Ø_i$ to leave]
[$Ø_i$ To see Rome in the spring] is a wonderful experience

See also ATTACHMENT RULE.

conversational implicature *See* IMPLICATURE.

conversational maxims The same as the *maxims of conversation.

See COOPERATIVE PRINCIPLE, THE.

Conversational Principle, the The same as the *Cooperative Principle.

converse (*n. & adj.*) *Semantics*. (Designating) one of a pair of relationally opposite *words.

Converses are a particular type of *antonym; e.g. *buy/sell, husband/wife, learn/teach*.

Compare BINARY; COMPLEMENTARY.

conversion A *word formation (2) process by which a word belonging to one *word class is assigned to another word class without the addition of an *affix. (Also called **reclassification** or **functional shift**.) Sometimes regarded as part of *derivation.

Words produced by conversion are mainly *nouns, *verbs, and *adjectives. Conversion is a very old process in English, as the date range of the examples given below shows:

Nouns from verbs: *a bounce* (E16), *a meet* (M19), *a retread* (E20), *a swim* (M16; M18 in current sense)

Verbs from nouns: *to fingerprint* (E20), *to highlight* (M20), *to holiday* (M19), *to mob* (M17), *to necklace* (E18; L20 in current sense)
Adjectives from nouns: *average* (L18), *chief* (ME), *commonplace* (E17), *cream* (M19), *damp* (L16; E18 in current sense), *game* (plucky; E18)

An unusual recent conversion is the use of *plus*, already a *preposition and noun, as a colloquial *conjunction:

10% bonus offer until 31st December, *plus* you'll get a mystery present

Minor types of conversion include conversions of *closed (1) class words (e.g. *the ins and outs*, *the whys and wherefores*); of *affixes (e.g. *So you've got an ology*, *isms and wasms*); and arguably even of whole phrases (e.g. *his prolier-than-thou protestations*).

A distinction is sometimes made between **full conversion**, as here, and **partial conversion**. In the latter a word takes on only some of the characteristics of the new word class. Uses of adjectives in *constructions like *the poor*, *the handicapped* are cited as examples of partial conversion, since they do not permit marking for *plural or *countability (**six poors*, **a handicapped*; but compare *Olympic hopefuls*). However, this analysis is disputed by other grammarians, who prefer to treat such *usage as involving either an adjective functioning as the *head of a *noun phrase, or a noun phrase with an *empty (2) *head.

co-occur Of linguistic units: that are positioned together, though not necessarily adjacent.

This term and *co-occurrence were introduced by the American linguist Zellig Harris (1951).

Compare COLLIGATION.

co-occurrence The *syntagmatic occurrence of two or more linguistic units in juxtaposition (or close proximity), as *licensed by the *rules of grammar and/or the rules of the *lexicon.

For example, a verb like *devour* must be followed by a *direct object: we can say *I devoured a sweet*, but not **I devoured*. Similarly, the grammar of English stipulates that the *perfect auxiliary *have* must occur with a *past participle:

have done, have seen

and not with a *simple past (3) verb form:

*have did, *have saw

Such limitations are called **co-occurrence restrictions**, **co-occurrence relations**, or **co-occurrence rules**.

Compare COLLIGATION; SELECTIONAL RESTRICTION.

Cooperative Principle, the *Pragmatics*. An unspoken code of communicative behaviour guaranteeing that speakers are truthful, informative, relevant, and lucid, especially in conversation. (Also called **the Conversational Principle**.)

The concept derives from influential work by the philosopher H. P. Grice (1913–88). He suggested that, in general, speakers cooperate by adhering to four **maxims of conversation**: the **Maxim of Quality**, the **Maxim of Quantity**, the **Maxim of Relevance**, and the **Maxim of Manner**. Of course, speakers sometimes lie or deliberately mislead, but the Cooperative Principle is so strong that people usually try to make sense of what they hear.

See also IMPLICATURE; RELEVANCE THEORY.

coordinate (*v.*) (Pronounced /kəʊˈɔːdɪneɪt/.) Join (linguistic units of equal status), commonly by means of a *coordinator.

- **coordinating correlative**: *See* CORRELATIVE.

(*adj.*) (Pronounced /kəʊˈɔːdɪnət/.) Of a linguistic unit: joined to another of equal status, as in **coordinate clause**; contrasted with *subordinate.

(*n.*) (Pronounced /kəʊˈɔːdɪnət/.) One of the constituent parts of a coordination structure. The same as *conjoin.

See also COORDINATION.

coordinating conjunction *See* COORDINATOR.

coordination The joining together of two or more units, called *conjoins, at the same hierarchical syntactic level, usually by means of a *coordinator. Also called **conjoining**.

The units so joined may be anything from single *words (e.g. *knife and fork*, *poor but honest*, *double or quits*) to *clauses (as in *compound sentences).

Some grammarians include under the term coordination structures that lack a coordinator (which could be supplied), called *asyndetic coordination (e.g. *juice, tea, coffee, milk*). The more usual type of coordination, with a conjunction, is then termed *syndetic coordination. When several coordinators are used, we speak of **polysyndetic coordination** (e.g. *juice and tea and coffee and milk*).

See also COMBINATORY COORDINATION; CONJUNCTION; MULTIPLE COORDINATION; PSEUDO-COORDINATION; SEGREGATORY COORDINATION; SUBORDINATION.

coordinator Also called **coordinating conjunction**. The main (or *central) coordinators are *and*, *but*, and *or*. Other items share certain characteristics with *subordinators and *conjuncts, but differ in other ways.

See also MARGINAL COORDINATOR.

copula A *verb that links a *subject with a subject-related predicative *complement, especially the verb *be*. Often used interchangeably with *linking verb or **copular verb**.

• **copular**, **copulative**: functioning as a copula.
•• **copular verb**: a verb that functions as a copula.
•• **copulative compound**: *see* DVANDVA.

core *See* COMMON CORE.

co-refer Of *words: have shared or identical *reference.

> 1980 E. K. BROWN & J. E. MILLER The sentence [i.e. *John thinks that he is intelligent*] has two possible readings . . . depending on whether *John* and *he* are used to refer to the same individual, or co-refer, or refer to different individuals.

See also CO-REFERENCE.

co-reference A relationship between two linguistic units such that they *co-refer, i.e. denote the same *referent in the extralinguistic context.

With co-reference, often indicated by subscript *indices, two expressions refer to the same person or thing in the world, e.g.

> *Simon*$_i$ said that *he*$_i$ would help

(though note that in this example, *he* can also refer to some other male individual).

Co-reference is often achieved through the use of *pro-forms, but is to be distinguished from *substitution. In the latter the pro-form stands for another *word, *phrase, etc., e.g.

> I bought a new laptop, and Leo *did so* too (i.e. and Leo *bought a new laptop* too)

Co-reference may have effects on *sentence grammar. For example, a sentence containing a *reflexive or *reciprocal pronoun as *direct object, i.e. a direct object which is co-referential with the subject of the sentence, cannot be *passivized:

> We could hardly see each other in the fog ~ *Each other could hardly be seen in the fog

Co-reference is one of the phenomena dealt with under the heading of *binding in *Government-Binding Theory.

• **co-referential**, **co-referentiality**.

core modal The same as *central modal.

corpus (Plural corpuses, corpora.**)** A collection of authentic spoken and/or written *texts.

The study of the English language has been transformed in recent decades by the collection of large quantities of authentic texts in corpora on which grammatical, pragmatic, lexicographic, historical, etc. analyses can be based.

•• **corpus-based**: Research that is corpus-based is deductive in outlook in that it uses (annotated) corpora to test hypotheses about language.

•• **corpus-driven**: Research that is corpus-driven is inductive in outlook and takes unannotated corpus data as the starting point for investigation.

•• **corpus linguistics**: a methodological approach to the study of language by means of corpora, now usually in computerized form.

See also NEO-FIRTHIAN; SURVEY OF ENGLISH USAGE, THE.

'correct' grammar *See* CORRECTNESS.

correctness Grammatical *acceptability according to the *rules.

Traditionally, grammar was thought to be concerned with *prescriptive rules stating what is, and is not, 'correct' usage. Present-day linguists try to provide a *descriptive outlook on grammar, and tend to avoid the term *correctness*. However, this attitude is arguably somewhat disingenuous, since even the most permissive description must be based on some decisions about what to include.

Compare ACCEPTABILITY; GRAMMATICAL.

correlative (*n.*) (One of) a pair of elements that join two similar parts of a *phrase, *clause, or *sentence.

(*adj.*) That is a correlative; made up of, or joined by, correlatives.

•• **coordinating correlatives**: these include:

both . . . and
either . . . or
neither . . . nor
not only . . . but also

•• **subordinating correlatives**: these include:

hardly . . . when
if . . . then
so/such . . . that
less/more . . . than

correspondence A systematic syntactic relationship between two structures, which is matched by a *meaning relationship.

A correspondence of this kind exists between an *active sentence containing a *direct object (e.g. *Everyone watched the eclipse*) and its *passive counterpart with the former object now the *subject (e.g. *The eclipse was watched by everyone*).

cosubordination A term used to describe a *subordinate clause which is *dependent in some sense (e.g. it cannot stand on its own), but not *embedded. The italicized clause in the following example instantiates the phenomenon:

If Leigh likes the food, he can come for lunch next week

See also GRADIENCE; SUBORDINATION.

co-text The larger *text in which another (portion of) text appears without reference to the circumstances, location, *situation, etc. in which the larger text is used, i.e. without reference to the *context of situation.

count Designating a *noun that can be used with numerical values.
•• **count noun** (also called *countable noun): contrasts with *uncount, **uncountable**, or **non-count noun**.

Count nouns usually have different *singular and *plural forms (*book/books*, *child/children*), and when used in the singular must be preceded by a *determinative (1): *a/this/that book*; not * *I bought book*.

In the plural, count nouns have the potential for combining with certain determinatives (1), some of them exclusive to the plural, e.g. *few*, *many*, *these*.

The binary division of *common nouns into count and uncount poses a few problems: some nouns belong to both categories, whereas others do not neatly fit either category.

See MASS; PLURAL.

countable (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) a *noun with *singular and *plural forms. *See also* COUNT.

A term introduced by Otto Jespersen.
• **countability**.

counterfactual Of a *conditional *construction: relating to an unreal or hypothetical situation (i.e. one contrary to fact), in contrast to a real condition. Thus

If Henry had been on that plane, he would have been killed

is counterfactual, since the person referred to as Henry was not on the plane and was not killed.

Compare CONTRAFACTIVE.
See also FACTUAL.

counter-intuitive Contrary to what would be expected intuitively.

A term sometimes used in (grammatical) analysis. For example, it is counter-intuitive to suppose that *active clauses are derived from *passive ones, or that *affirmative clauses are derived from *negative ones.

The term was introduced in by Noam Chomsky.

courtesy subjunct *See* SUBJUNCT.

covert subjunctive *See* SUBJUNCTIVE.

creativity The ability of the native speakers of a language to produce and to understand an infinite number of *sentences of their language, many of which they have never produced or heard before.

creole *Sociolinguistics*. A *pidgin that has become a mother tongue.

Though definitions vary, a creole is typically the first language of a speech community, and so has greater lexical and syntactic complexity than a pidgin.

> 2008 J. SIEGEL Like any other vernacular language, a creole has a full lexicon and a complex set of grammatical rules, and is not at all restricted in use, having a complete range of informal functions.

As with any language, there are usually several varieties, but they can generally be distinguished according to their closeness to the language on which they are based. *See* ACROLECT; BASILECT; HYPERLECT; MESOLECT.

Most creoles have developed from contact between a European language (especially English, French, or Portuguese) and another (often African) language. But the process of *creolization is not straightforward, and most English-based creoles and pidgins contain certain words of Portuguese origin, such as West African *palava* 'trouble' from Portuguese *palavra* 'word'.

English-based creoles are found in the Caribbean—the most widely spoken being Jamaican Creole—and in other ex-colonial territories.

creolize Make into a creole.

• **creolization**.

> 1980 R. A. HUDSON There is no research evidence of changes which have happened during creolisation which cannot be matched by changes to a pidgin without native speakers.

•• **creolized language**: a *creole.

cumulative exponence *See* EXPONENCE.

current *See* LINKING VERB.

current relevance A concept often invoked in explaining the *meaning of the present *perfect in contrast to the *past tense.

For example, *My employer has raised my salary* might be uttered in preference to *My employer raised my salary* in a situation in which the rise in salary has only just become known. Similarly, *My grandmother has lived in Oxford all her life* means that she is still alive and living in Oxford. (Compare: *She lived in Oxford all her life*.) The concept, however, is not easy to pin down, and certainly past tenses can also have present effects or results (e.g. *I crashed the car yesterday—so I can't drive over to see you today*).

D

dangling modifier The same as *hanging participle.

dangling participle The same as *hanging participle.

dative (*n. & adj.*)

1. (Designating) a *case (1) *inflection carried by *nouns and *pronouns (*noun phrases) that function as *indirect object, or express a *recipient role in some languages. English does not have a dative case inflection.

2. (In *Case Grammar.) (Expressing) the *semantic role taken by the noun (or noun phrase) referring to the person or other *animate being ‘affected’ by the action expressed by the *verb. The *referent may be the grammatical *subject or *object of traditional grammar. For example, in Case Grammar, *Tom* is a dative in both the following sentences:

Tom was attacked by the dog
We forced Tom to listen

In some formulations of Case Grammar it is said that in a phrase such as *Tom's chin,* Tom has a dative role (because the chin ‘belongs to’ Tom). The dative case was later renamed *experiencer. The dative of Case Grammar is not equivalent to the semantic role carried by an indirect object, which is *recipient or *beneficiary.
•• **ethic(al) dative** (or **dative of advantage**): a dative that refers to a person or entity that has an interest in the meaning expressed by a verb.

de-adjectival Of a *word: derived from an *adjective.

De-adjectival *nouns are common, e.g. *falsehood* (ME) from *false, kindness* (ME) from *kind, subsidiarity* (M20) from *subsidiary.*

declaration

1. An *utterance that makes a *statement.

2. An utterance which by the mere virtue of being said brings about a result (also called *performative). This is a specialist term from *speech act theory for a particular type of *illocutionary act, e.g. *I declare the meeting closed; You’re fired.* *Verbs in such utterances are called *performative verbs.

See also ILLOCUTION.

declarative

(*n.*)

1. A *clause type with an unmarked *word order in which the *subject precedes the *verb, typically used for making *statements. Declarative is a formal syntactic category, whereas statement is a category of *usage (though in some frameworks it is the other way round). Clauses that are declarative in form can be used not only to make (pragmatic) statements, but also to ask *questions (*You understand what you're doing?*) or to give orders (*You will report back to me tomorrow*). These are examples of indirect *speech acts.

2. (*n.*) (In *speech act theory.) A verb that makes a *declaration (2).

(*adj.*)

1. Of a clause: that is formally a declarative.

●● **declarative mood**: an alternative term for *indicative mood.

●● **declarative question**: *see* INTERROGATIVE; QUESTION.

Compare EXCLAMATIVE; IMPERATIVE; INTERROGATIVE.

See also DECLARATION.

2. Of or pertaining to a *declaration (2), or to the verb used in making one.

1990 D. VANDERVEKEN The primitive declarative verb is 'declare', which names the illocutionary force of declaration. 'Declare' . . . also has an assertive use, but in its declarative use it exemplifies the characteristic features of the set in that the speaker purely and simply makes something the case by declaring it is so.

declarative clause A clause that is formally a *declarative.

See also CLAUSE TYPE.

declarative question *See* INTERROGATIVE; QUESTION.

declension

1. The *variation (2) of the form of a *noun, *pronoun, or *adjective to show different *cases (1), such as *nominative, *accusative, and *dative, in the *singular and *plural.

2. The class into which such words are put according to the exact forms of this variation, usually called first, second, etc. declension. Also called **declensional class** or **nominal inflection class.**

The term is applicable to a language such as Latin, where nouns, pronouns, and adjectives are declined in this way, but not to English, where only six words (five *personal pronouns and *who*) show any case distinctions.

See also DECLINE.

Compare CONJUGATE; CONJUGATION; PARAGIGM.

declensional class *See* DECLENSION.

decline *Inflect a *word (typically a *noun) through different *case (1) forms; supply the case forms of an element in the form of a *paradigm.

See also DECLENSION.

Compare CONJUGATE; CONJUGATION.

deep structure In earlier versions of *Generative Grammar (2) the deep structure of a *sentence is an (abstract) representation of its syntactic *structure, reflecting its *meaning (to various degrees, as the theory developed). It can be transformed into a *surface structure. In some cases the deep and surface structures are identical; in other cases one or more *transformations are applied.

Deep structures can be used to explain the way in which sentences are interpreted. A classic example from the early theory was an *ambiguous sentence such as *Visiting aunts can be boring*, which was said to have two different deep structures depending on whether it means ‘going to visit one’s aunts can be boring’ or ‘aunts who visit (or when visiting) can be boring’. Each of these two interpretations was supposed to have its own syntactic representation in deep structure. Similarly, two sentences with identical surface structures such as *John is eager to please* and *John is easy to please* have different deep structures. Conversely, an *active and *passive pair of sentences, with different surface structures, were said to have the same deep structure, e.g.

The dog bit the man
The man was bitten by the dog

Later versions of Generative Grammar (2) used the related, but not identical, concepts of **D-Structure** and **S-Structure**. In the current *Minimalist Program the levels of deep and surface structure have been abandoned.

More loosely, deep and surface structure are often used as terms in a simple binary opposition, with the deep structure representing meaning, and the surface structure being the actual sentence we see.

defective Of a *noun, *verb, etc.: incomplete, lacking a complete set of forms.

The *modal verbs in English can be described as being defective: they have only one form each (or at most two, if the pairs *will/would, can/could*, etc. are treated as belonging to the same *lexeme), since they lack *third person *singular and *non-finite forms.

Another defective verb is *beware*, which is used only as an *imperative, or as a *to*-infinitive:

Beware of the dog
I warned him to beware of the dog

See also PERIPHRASIS.

deferred preposition *See* STRANDED PREPOSITION.

defining Of *modification or a *modifier: that identifies or restricts the meaning of the modified *head. Also called **restrictive**, **integrated**. Contrasted with *non-defining (or *non-restrictive).

Various kinds of linguistic unit, including *adjectives and different kinds of *postmodification, can have a defining or restrictive function. For example, in *my blind friend*, the adjective may well be understood to identify uniquely one particular friend. But in *my blind mother*, the adjective is non-defining, because it merely adds some information about my mother. Similarly, in the examples below the *non-finite clause and the *prepositional phrase define the man in question:

The man *wearing a military uniform* is my uncle
The man *with all the gold braid* is my uncle

By contrast, the postmodification in the following examples is non-defining:

The British troops, *wearing bright red uniforms*, were an easy target
The Duke, *resplendent in his uniform*, led his army to victory

The terms defining and non-defining are, however, primarily applied to *finite *relative clauses.

●● **defining relative clause** (also called **identifying relative clause**, **integrated relative clause**, **restrictive relative clause**): a finite clause that postmodifies a *noun and restricts its meaning:

News is not what a person *who doesn't care much about anything* wants to read
All the news *that's fit to print*
There are only two posh papers on a Sunday—the one *you're reading* and this one

A defining relative clause is typically not separated from the noun it modifies by a comma, and may sometimes, as in the third example, be a *contact clause.

Compare ADNOMINAL, APPOSITIVE CLAUSE.

definite Of a linguistic form: having, or indicating, identifiable particular or exclusive *reference. Contrasted with *indefinite.

● **definiteness**.

●● **definite article**: the *determinative (1) *the*, which is typically used in a *noun phrase whose *referent has either just been mentioned (or is implied), or is assumed to be familiar or uniquely identifiable in some way.

I had to call a taxi. *The* driver couldn't find *the* house
The sun is out at last
I heard it on *the* radio

See also INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

*Determinatives (1) other than *the* can also make a noun phrase definite, e.g. *demonstrative *this* and *that*. All these items can collectively be labelled **definite determinatives** or **definite identifiers**. *Proper nouns are inherently definite (at least in context), and so are the *personal pronouns (*he*, *she*, etc.), in contrast to indefinite *somebody*, *something*.

Compare SPECIFIC.

•• **definite frequency**: *see* INDEFINITE.

•• **past definite** and **past indefinite**: these labels, as applied to *tense, are rarely used in English grammar, but in fact the simple *past tense does usually imply some definite point or period in the past, whereas some uses of the *present perfect have a more indefinite meaning.

I have spoken to my bank manager. In fact, I *spoke* to him again yesterday

degree

1. Each of the three points on the scale by which gradable *adjectives and *adverbs are compared; this scale as a feature of an adjective or adverb.

The three degrees are *absolute (1), *comparative, and *superlative:

great, greater, greatest
good, better, best
soon, sooner, soonest

Compare GRADABLE.

2. Indicating greater or lesser intensity, as one category of adverb meaning.

•• **adverb of degree**, **adverbial of degree, degree adverb**, **degree adverbial**: (usually) an adverb or *adverbial that expresses a *meaning indicating greater or lesser intensity, e.g. *much*, *quite*, *so*, *too*, *very*.

Degree is one of the traditional semantic categories into which *adverbs are divided, in contrast to *manner, *time (1), and *place, though not all grammarians use the term. Some modern grammarians prefer to use *intensifier more or less as a *synonym. Others make subtle distinctions between degree adverb, intensifier, and *emphasizer, sometimes differentiating them, sometimes making either degree adverb(ial) or intensifier the superordinate term.

See also DEGREE OF MODALITY.

degree of modality Term referring to the extent to which a *statement, *clause, etc., is **modalized**, i.e. displays *modal meaning. Factual statements (*Today is Friday*) are **unmodalized**, whereas clauses with a clearly identifiable modal meaning (typically expressed by modal verbs) display a high degree of modality.

See also KIND OF MODALITY; STRENGTH OF MODALITY.

deictic (*n. & adj.*) (A word) designating the semantic property of 'pointing', expressed lexically or grammatically, i.e. having the function of relating a *sentence or *utterance to its *extralinguistic *context (*time* (1), place, etc.).

The four *demonstratives are the prime deictic elements in English, with *this* and *these* pointing to what is *proximal in space or time, and *that* and *those* pointing to what is *distal in space or time. Other words commonly included in this category are *here, there, now, then, today, yesterday, tomorrow*, and the *personal pronouns (*I, we, you*, etc.). Tense is also a deictic category.

See also DEIXIS.

deixis The phenomenon of *lexical items or grammatical *constructions 'pointing' to *extralinguistic circumstances such as *time (1) and *place in relation to an *utterance, or the features of the language collectively that do this.

> 1977 J. LYONS The term 'deixis' . . . is now used in linguistics to refer to the function of personal and demonstrative pronouns, of tense and of a variety of other grammatical and lexical features which relate utterances to the spatiotemporal co-ordinates of the act of utterance.

See also DEICTIC.

deletion The process by which a *constituent in a particular *structure is omitted. Also called *ellipsis.

An example of this would be the deletion (or, perhaps better, omission) of the subject in *imperative clauses, e.g. *Wait here*!

•• **verb phrase deletion**: the deletion of a *verb phrase (2) under identity with a previous instance of it, e.g.

> All the children *enjoyed the outing*, and the parents too

delexical Of a *lexical item: having little or no (*referential) *meaning.

English sometimes uses a *verb + *object construction where a plain *intransitive verb could also be used. For example, instead of saying *I looked*, you can say *I had a look*; instead of *I'll think about it*, you can say *I'll give it some thought*. Verbs used in this way include *do, have, give, make*, and *take*, and when so used they retain little of their usual meaning. The main meaning is carried instead by the object *noun phrase. For this reason such verbs are often called *light verbs.

Compare GRAMMATICAL WORD.

delicacy The *scale determining the degree of detail in a grammatical analysis.

Delicacy is one of the three (or four) scales (*see* SCALE-AND-CATEGORY GRAMMAR) of *Systemic Grammar. At the primary degree of delicacy, clauses can be classified as free (roughly, *main or *superordinate) or *bound (2) (roughly, *subordinate). At the next degree of delicacy, they can be classified to show how distant they are from the *main clause, i.e. whether they are immediately *subordinate, or subordinate to another subordinate clause.

Compare DEPTH; EXPONENCE; RANK.

demonstrative (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) any of a set of *pronouns and *determinatives (1) when used to refer to people, *situations, entities, etc. that are in a particular spatial or temporal relationship with the speaker or writer.

•• **demonstrative adjective**: the traditional label for a *demonstrative determinative. A misnomer.

•• **demonstrative determinative**: any of the determinatives (1) *this*, *these*, *that*, and *those*, expressing either *proximal or *distal meaning, e.g.

We really need to repair *this* leak very soon
Those teachers know nothing about history

•• **demonstrative pronoun**: any of the pronouns *this*, *these*, *that*, and *those*, expressing either proximal or distal meaning, e.g.

This doesn't suit me, but I really like *those*
That was exciting!

In some models *this*, *these*, *that*, and *those* are regarded as belonging to either the pronoun class or to the determinative (1) class in all their uses.

denominal Of a *word: derived from a *noun.

Denominal nouns (nouns derived from other nouns) include many words formed by adding a *suffix to a noun: *booklet* (M19), *childhood* (OE), *gangster* (L19), *lectureship* (M17), *lioness* (ME), *mileage* (M18), *spoonful* (ME), *teenager* (M20), *villager* (L16).

Denominal *adjectives include words with pseudo-*participles, such as *red-eyed* (M17), along with words formed from a noun + suffix, e.g. *childish* (OE), *hopeless* (M16), *friendly* (OE).

Denominal *verbs include those formed with *prefixes and suffixes such as *be-* and *-ize*, e.g. *behead* (OE), *dynamize* (M19).

An older term for this was **denominative**.

denotation *Semantics.*

1. The primary (often literal) meaning of a *word, in contrast to its *connotation.

Denotation relates to generally definable 'dictionary' meanings. Thus the denotation of *(the) police* is 'the civil force of a state that is responsible for maintaining public order'.

• **denotative.**

•• **denotative.** meaning (or **denotational meaning**): this is also called *cognitive, *descriptive, or *referential meaning.

See also ATTITUDINAL MEANING; COMMUNICATIVE MEANING; CONATIVE; EMOTIVE; ILLOCUTIONARY MEANING; INTERPERSONAL MEANING.

Compare REFERENCE; SENSE.

2. The relationship between a word (or other linguistic unit) and its *referent(s), e.g. the relationship between the word *horse* and the set of all horses, or the totality of characteristics that apply to a particular entity (in the case of horses, all characteristics that define that animal). Similar to *extension.

deontic *Semantics*. Of or relating to the notions of *obligation, *permission, prohibition, etc., as applied to the uses and meanings of *modal verbs. Deontic modality is sometimes called **intrinsic modality**, or treated under the broad heading of *root modality, with the latter defined as any type of modality except *epistemic modality. Examples:

You *must* obey your parents
You *may* go now
You *shouldn't* mislead me

In the analysis of modal meaning and use, deontic modality is usually contrasted with epistemic modality. But some analysts make a three-way contrast, the third term being *alethic. Alternatively, the three-way contrast is between deontic, epistemic, and *dynamic (2) modality.

dependency The phenomenon of a linguistic entity being *dependent on another.

•• **dependency relation**: a relation between units where one unit is described as dependent on the other.

•• **dependency grammar**: a grammar or theoretical model that describes dependency relations, e.g. *Word Grammar, *valency grammar.

dependent (*n. & adj.*) (A linguistic unit) that is *subordinate to some other linguistic unit. Contrasted with *independent.

•• **dependent-auxiliary analysis**: a term used in CaGEL to refer to an analysis (not preferred by the authors of that book) of *auxiliary verbs as being dependent on a *main verb, much as in the traditional analysis in which auxiliaries are seen as 'helping verbs'. Contrasted with the *catenative-auxiliary analysis which the authors advocate.

•• **dependent element, phrase, clause**, etc.: any unit other than the *head within a *phrase, e.g. a *modifying phrase inside another phrase (*the dead rat*); a subordinate clause functioning as *complement of a verb (*I think that it's too late for coffee*), etc.
•• **dependent genitive**: *see* GENITIVE.
Compare EMBEDDED.
See also LEXICAL VERB; VERB.

depictive *See* RESULT.

depth In *Systemic Grammar, a scale (*see* SCALE-AND-CATEGORY GRAMMAR) measuring the degree of complexity of the analysis. Depth is sometimes handled as part of the scale of *delicacy.

derivation

1. *Morphology*. The *word formation (2) process of forming a new *lexeme by adding an *affix to an existing lexeme; contrasted with *compounding (and sometimes *conversion). *See also* INFLECTION. Examples:

alleviation (from *alleviate*)
interference (from *interfere*)
sub-editor (from *editor*)
unhelpful (from *helpful*)

Derivation produces a new lexeme (e.g. *driver* from *drive*), whereas an inflectional suffix produces another form of the same word (e.g. *driven, driving, drives*).

2. (In *Generative Grammar (2).) The process by which a *structure of one kind is formed (or *derived*) from another structure through the application of the appropriate *rules. As an example, in early theory a *passive sentence was said to be derived from an *active one (*see* TRANSFORMATION). In later theory both active and passive sentences are derived from more abstract representations.
• **derivational:** pertaining to, used in, or due to derivation.
•• **derivational suffix**: *see* SUFFIX.
See also: DERIVATIVE.

derivative *Morphology*.

1. (*n. & adj.*). (A *lexeme) formed from another lexeme by a process of *derivation.

2. (*adj.*) Of an *affix: used in derivation.
• **derivatively**.
•• **derivative base**: *see* BASE.

derive *Morphology.*

1. Of a *word etc.: descend from an earlier word in the same or another language.

Thus the *noun *denim* is derived from 17th-century *serge denim*, from French *serge de Nîmes* ('serge made in the town of Nîmes'); *atonement* derives from the *prepositional phrase *at one* + the suffix *-ment*.

2. Form a *lexeme from another lexeme by a process of *derivation (1).

3. (In *Generative Grammar (2).) obtain one *structure from another by applying certain *rules, *transformations, etc.; *see* DERIVATION (2).

descriptive

1. Of a *word, *phrase, etc.: ascribing a property to an entity.

•• **descriptive adjective**: an *adjective that ascribes a property to the *noun it *modifies, in contrast to a *limiting adjective (1). The latter is an old-fashioned term, since modern grammarians assign most so-called 'limiting adjectives' to a separate class of *determinatives (1).

•• **descriptive genitive**: a *genitive construction in which the genitive phrase has a describing function (also called *classifying genitive). Thus, in *a master's degree, a doll's house, ladies' shoes*, the genitive does not indicate 'possession', but rather describes the noun it modifies (cf. *a doctoral degree, a miniature house*).

•• **descriptive relative clause**: another term for *non-defining or *non-restrictive *relative clause.

•• **descriptive rule**: *see* RULE.

2. Describing the *structure and *usage of a language, usually at a particular point in time, avoiding comparisons with other languages or other historical periods, and free from social valuations. Contrasted with *prescriptive.

•• **descriptive linguistics**: a branch of linguistics that is concerned with describing the structure of a particular language at a particular time, in contrast with *historical or *comparative linguistics. Many modern grammarians aim to describe language as it is used in **descriptive grammars**, and avoid laying down idealized, unrealistic *rules, in contrast to the more *prescriptive aims of usage books.

See also DESCRIPTIVISM; LINGUISTICS; SYNCHRONIC LINGUISTICS.

3. *Semantics.* (In some classifications of *meaning.) **Descriptive meaning** is similar to *denotative, *cognitive, or *referential meaning. Contrasted with *attitudinal and *interpersonal meaning.

Compare IDEATIONAL.

See also COMMUNICATIVE MEANING; CONATIVE; CONNOTATION; EMOTIVE; ILLOCUTIONARY MEANING.

descriptivism An approach to (grammatical) linguistic analysis, characterized by a concern with describing a language objectively. The term is often applied to the American *structuralist school, which preceded *Generative Grammar (2), but also to modern grammatical frameworks.

- **descriptivist**.

descriptor A *word or expression used to describe or identify, often in combination with a *proper noun.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. Proper nouns often combine with descriptive words which we will call descriptors, and which also begin with a capital letter, to make composite names like *Senator Morse*, *Dallas Road*.

desententialization *See* SUBORDINATION.

destination *See* SOURCE (2).

determination The function of specifying what kind of *reference a *noun phrase has; as opposed to a function such as *modification.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. Determination. This term may be used for the function of words and (sometimes) phrases which, in general, determine what *kind of reference* a noun phrase has: for example, whether it is definite (like *the*) or indefinite (like *a/an*), partitive (like *some*) or universal (like *all*).

determinative

1. (*n.*) (in CaGEL.) A member of a mainly *closed class of *words that typically precede *nouns (or, strictly speaking, *noun phrase *heads) and limit their *meaning in some way. Determinatives in this sense mainly function as *determiners (1) in noun phrase structure. In CGEL the nomenclature is reversed: the word class label is determiner, whereas the function label is determinative. *See* DETERMINER (2).

Most determinatives are restricted by *number-related meaning as to the category of noun they can occur with, e.g.

> *many/few* apples (*count plural)

but

> *much/little* food (*uncount)

Determinatives can be classified from the point of view of meaning into a large number of categories such as *demonstrative (*this*, *that*), *degree (*few*, *little*), *existential (*any*, *some*), *free relative (*which*, *whatever*), and *interrogative (*which*, *what*). There is disagreement about how to analyse certain elements such as *my*, *your*, and *his* when these are placed before nouns. In some frameworks they are regarded as determinatives, in other frameworks as *pronouns.

Some grammars favour a twofold classification: one model groups all determinatives and *numbers as either *identifiers or *quantifiers (with *definite and *indefinite cutting across these groupings); another divides them, very differently, into general and *specific determinatives. The multiplicity of labels resulting from these different approaches can be confusing.

2. (*n. & adj.*) (In CGEL.) (A word or *phrase) performing the *function (1) of *determination, typically inside noun phrases.

•• **determinative element**: (in CGEL) an element with a determinative function.

See also DETERMINER.

determinative phrase (DP) (In CaGEL.) A *phrase headed by a *determinative (1) (conceived of as a *word class). For example, in the noun phrase *almost all people* the word *all* is a determinative which is *premodified by *almost*. These two words together form a DP inside the NP.

Compare DETERMINER phrase.

See also DETERMINER.

determiner

1. (In CaGEL.) A *function (1) label used for a *word or *phrase performing the function of *determination, typically inside *noun phrases.

2. (In CGEL.) A member of a mainly *closed class of words that typically precede nouns (or, strictly speaking, noun phrase *heads) and limit their *meaning in some way. Determiners mainly function as *determinatives (2) in noun phrase structure. In CaGEL the nomenclature is reversed:
the word class label is determinative, whereas the function label is determiner. *See* DETERMINATIVE (1).

CGEL distinguishes:

*predeterminers, e.g. *all*, *both*, *half*; *double*, *twice*, etc.; *one-third*, etc.; *such*, *what*

*central determiners, e.g. *a*, *an*, *the*, *this*, etc.; *my*, *our*, etc.; *every*, *each*, *no*, etc. *See also* CENTRAL (1).

*postdeterminers, e.g. *few*, *many*, *much*, *little*, and the *cardinal and *ordinal numbers.

The class is not entirely closed, given that, for example, numbers belong to an open-ended set.

Determiners in this sense are sometimes called *limiting adjectives in traditional grammar. However, not only do they differ from the class of adjectives with regard to the kinds of meaning they convey, but they also differ *distributionally: they must normally precede ordinary adjectives in noun phrase structure, and there cannot normally be more than one determiner in a noun phrase (e.g. **the my book*).

3. In some models determiner is used both as a *form (1) and *function (1) label.

See also DETERMINER PHRASE; DETERMINATIVE.

determiner phrase (DP) (In *Generative Grammar (2).) A *phrase headed by a *determiner (2) (conceived of as a *word class). Phrases traditionally analysed as *noun phrases are regarded as DPs in this framework. Thus the phrase *the computer* is a DP headed by *the*, not a noun phrase headed by *computer*.

Compare DETERMINATIVE PHRASE.

See also DETERMINATIVE.

deverbal (*n. & adj.*) (A *word) derived from a *verb.

Examples of deverbal nouns:

dismissal (E19), *driver* (LME), *payee* (M18), *shrinkage* (E19), *starvation* (L18)

Examples of deverbal *adjectives:

arguable (E17), *clingy* (E18), *innovative* (E17), *tiresome* (E16)

A less usual, probably obsolescent, term is **deverbative**.

Compare GERUND; GERUNDIAL NOUN.

deviant Differing from what is 'normal' or expected. The term is used by some linguists as an alternative way of saying that a particular *structure or *usage is (perceived to be) of dubious *acceptability, or (in more *prescriptive works) incorrect.

Deviant sentences are often marked with a question mark (?), and sometimes with an asterisk (*), though the latter is usually reserved for clearly *ungrammatical structures, e.g.

?Looking out of the window, a fire-engine screamed past

?Having lived abroad so long, my outlook has changed (*see* HANGING PARTICIPLE)

*Lived abroad having long so, changed outlook my has

- **deviance**.

Compare GRAMMATICAL; ILL-FORMED.

diachronic *Linguistics*. Concerned with the historical development of (a) language; contrasted with *synchronic.

The study of the changes in pronunciation, grammar, *vocabulary, etc. between an old(er) version of a language and its present-day incarnation is referred to as **diachronic phonology, diachronic syntax**, etc., or, more generally, as **diachronic linguistics** (also called *historical linguistics).

The term is often attributed to Ferdinand de Saussure (1857–1913), who used it in his *Cours de linguistique générale* (1916).

Diachronistic has also been used.

Compare COMPARATIVE (2).

See also SAUSSUREAN.

• **diachronically**.

•• **diachrony** (somewhat rare): the diachronic method or treatment.

dialect A *variety of a language that is distinct from other varieties in grammar, *vocabulary, and accent.

Dialects may be regional, or based on class differences (they are then usually called **social dialects** or **class dialects**), or a mixture of the two. Although dialects are usually recognizable from a speaker's accent, the term also implies differences of grammar. The following examples show grammatical differences from the structures typical of the *standard variety:

I likes it (cf. standard *I like it*)
I ain't done it (cf. standard *I haven't done it*)
I didn't have no breakfast (cf. standard *I didn't have breakfast*)
It needs washed (cf. standard *It needs to be washed*)
We got off of the train (cf. standard *We got off the train*)
Look at them cows (cf. standard *Look at those cows*)

Vocabulary may also differ across dialects, e.g. *while* meaning 'until' (*Wait while the lights are green* was allegedly a level-crossing notice in northern Britain confusing to southerners); *learn* meaning 'teach' (as in the book title *Lern yerself Scouse*); *happen* meaning 'perhaps'.

For some the term dialect implies deviation from some standard educated norm, but linguists regard the standard variety as just another dialect. When it comes to global varieties of English, the term dialect is not used; instead *variety is preferred, or terms such as American English or Indian English.

Compare STANDARD ENGLISH.

• **dialectal**: of or pertaining to dialect or a dialect.

•• **dialect geography**: another term for *dialectology.

dialectology The study of *dialects, particularly regional ones.

dictionary meaning *See* MEANING.

dictionary word *See* LEXEME; WORD.

diglossia *Sociolinguistics*. A term coined by Charles Ferguson in 1959 to describe a situation in which two or more varieties of the same language are used by the same speakers under different conditions.

The term is particularly appropriate when applied to those languages that have distinct 'high' and 'low' varieties, for example, Arabic, which has a 'classical' form and several colloquial forms. It has recently been suggested that a weakened notion could be applied to English, where there are not only many 'high' and 'low' *vocabulary equivalents (e.g. *purchase*/*buy*; *larceny*/*theft*; *sufficient*/*enough*), but where such a concept could account for some alternatives in grammatical usage, for example *whom* versus *who*.

- **diglossic**.

Compare ACROLECT; CODE-SWITCHING.

dimensions of modality A term used in CaGEL to refer collectively to *degree of modality, *kind of modality, and *strength of modality.

diminutive (*adj.*) Of a derivative *word: denoting a member that is small in size (literally or metaphorically) of the class, *category, etc. which the base word denotes. Of a *suffix: forming diminutive words.

(*n.*) A diminutive word or suffix.

Some diminutives are stylistically neutral (e.g. *manikin*, *piglet*), but many are used as a mark of informality (e.g. *bunny*, *comfy*, *sweetie*), to show affection (e.g. *auntie*), or to belittle (e.g. *starlet*). Proper names often have diminutive forms: e.g. *Bessie*, *Betsy*, *Betty*, *Lizzie*, and *Lilibet* (for *Elizabeth*), *Dick* (for *Richard*), *Jimmy* (for *James*), and *Teddy* (for *Edward*).

Compare HYPOCORISTIC.

direct condition *See* CONDITION.

directive

1. (*n. & adj.*) (A clause) issuing a command or order. In modern grammatical analyses that distinguish *structure and *usage, the noun *directive* is used as a usage label indicating the function of a *clause as issuing a command or order. Contrasted with the syntactic label *imperative.

Because directives (in the sense understood by the layperson) are often expressed syntactically by imperative clauses (e.g. *Speak up! Leave me alone! Stop teasing the cat!*), the terms are often used interchangeably. However, what is in meaning effectively a directive, command, or order can be expressed grammatically in other ways, e.g. by a *declarative or *interrogative clause: *You will do as I say*; *Could you make less noise?* Conversely, imperative clauses can have other pragmatic functions, such as requests (e.g. *Please give generously*) or invitations (*Have some more coffee*). It is for this reason that many grammarians insist on distinguishing structure and usage, using different terminology for the two domains.

2. (In some theories, with a wider meaning.) (Pertaining to) an *utterance which suggests, requests, or warns that a course of action should be carried out.

direct object (DO, O^d, or O_d) A *noun phrase or *clause which is *licensed by a *transitive verb and normally occurs after the *verb, typically carrying the *semantic role of *patient. When a *pronoun is used, it appears in the *objective (1) case. Examples:

Rachel ate *some of those vegetables* (noun phrase)
The police cautioned *him* (pronoun)
He said *that he was not coming* (finite clause)
They wanted *to go to Sweden* (non-finite clause)

Generally the DO of an *active declarative clause can become the *subject of a *passive clause, but there are restrictions on this:

Some of those vegetables were eaten by Rachel
He was cautioned by the police
?That he was not coming was said by him
*To go to Sweden was wanted by them

The direct object is often simply called the *object, unless there is likelihood of confusion with the *indirect object. When an indirect object is present, it is normally placed before the DO (e.g. *They sent us some leaflets*).

Typically the DO is 'affected' or 'acted upon' by the action denoted by the verb, but this is not always the case, as the examples below show:

We've bought *a flat*
We really wanted *a house*
I hope we haven't made *a mistake*

For this reason direct objects are best defined using syntactic rather than semantic criteria.

See also COGNATE OBJECT.

direct question *See* DIRECT SPEECH.

direct speech The reporting of speech by repeating the actual *words used, without making any grammatical changes; an example of this, e.g.

'Is there anybody there?' said the listener

This contrasts with the *indirect speech exemplified in the following:

The listener asked whether there was anybody there

See also FREE DIRECT SPEECH; REPORTED SPEECH.

discontinuity The splitting of a *construction by the insertion of a *word, *phrase, etc., or a particular instance of this.

Examples (not all uncontroversial) might include:

Have you *finished*? (verb phrase)
Look the word *up* (phrasal verb)
That's a *hard* act *to follow* (modification)
There's *a man* outside *who wants to see you* (noun phrase and its modifying relative clause)
The time has come, the Walrus said, *to talk of many things* (noun phrase and its modification)

Discontinuity is very common in sentences containing *comparative clauses, e.g.

I spend *more money* on clothes *than I can really afford*

• **discontinuous**: (of a construction) split into parts by the insertion of a word, phrase, etc.

discord Lack of concord. *See* AGREEMENT.

discourse A connected stretch of language (especially spoken language), usually bigger than a *sentence, and particularly viewed as interaction between speakers, or between a writer and reader(s).

> 1991 M. HOEY Discourse . . . is used in two ways . . . Firstly it refers to all aspects of language organization . . . (whether structural or not) that operate above the level of grammar. Then, more specifically, it refers to the level of description that concerns itself with the structure . . . of (spoken) interaction.

Some users confine the term to spoken language, contrasting discourse with written text.

•• **discourse adjunct**: the same as *conjunct.

•• **discourse analysis**: the analysis of how spoken and/or written stretches of language are structured.

This can include looking at grammatical and semantic connections *between* sentences, just as syntax is the study of such connections *within* a sentence. In this respect discourse analysis is much the same as *text linguistics. But more usually discourse analysis is particularly concerned with sociolinguistic aspects of language, such as the organization of 'turn-taking' in conversation.

> 1991 M. McCARTHY Discourse analysis is concerned with the study of the relationship between language and the contexts in which it is used. It grew out of the work in different disciplines, in the 1960s and early 1970s, including linguistics, semiotics, psychology, anthropology and sociology. Discourse

analysts study language in use; written texts of all kinds, and spoken data, from conversation to highly institutionalised forms of talk.

•• **discourse marker**: *see* DISCOURSE MARKER.

Compare COHERENCE; COHESION.

See also FIELD OF DISCOURSE.

discourse adjunct The same as *conjunct.

discourse marker A *word, *phrase, or *clause that is used to guide, change, terminate, etc. the flow of a conversation or other type of verbal interaction. Also called **pragmatic marker**, **pragmatic particle**, or *filler (2).

The term is somewhat specialized, and not easily defined, but the label generally includes words that are not part of the syntactic structure of a clause or *sentence, e.g. *ah, oh, well, you see, I mean*

See also COMMENT CLAUSE.

discovery procedure *See* LEVEL; STRUCTURALISM.

discrete Separate, not on a *cline or continuum.

In the Aristotelian tradition the *word classes are regarded as discrete and sharply bounded, but in recent decades, especially in *Cognitive Linguistics, it has been claimed that many boundaries between linguistic categories are fuzzy.

Compare GRADIENCE; PROTOTYPE.

disjunct An *adverbial that has a more detached role in *clause or *sentence structure than other adverbials, and functions as a *sentence adverbial.

Disjuncts contrast in some grammars (e.g. CGEL and related frameworks) with *adjuncts (3), *conjuncts (1), and *subjuncts. In other grammars they are called *sentence adjuncts or **sentence modifiers**.

Disjuncts can express the speaker's or writer's attitude to, or observations about, the content of a sentence (*content disjuncts, also called **attitudinal disjuncts**), e.g.

> *Tragically*, the rescue party arrived too late ('it is tragic that the rescue party arrived too late')

or they can signal the speaker's or writer's comments on the way in which an utterance is articulated (*style disjuncts), as in:

> *Honestly*, nobody could have done any better ('if I'm honest . . . ')
> *To be blunt*, the whole thing was hopeless ('if I'm blunt . . . ')

disjunction *Semantics*. Choice between two possibilities, or an instance of this, typically signalled by the word *or*.

See DISJUNCTIVE

Compare CONJUNCTION (2).

disjunctive (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) a *word (especially the *conjunction *or*) or a *construction that expresses alternatives.

The terms disjunctive and disjunction are taken from logic. Further distinctions can be made. In **exclusive disjunction** the choice is 'one-or-the-other-but-not-both', e.g.

(Either) the train is late, or it's been cancelled
He died in (either) 1940 or 1941

With **inclusive disjunction** both alternatives are possible, e.g.

(Either) the train is late—or my watch is fast (perhaps both)
They certainly visited us in 1939 or 1940 (maybe both)

With **disjunctive interrogatives**, the presence of *either* allows the possibility that both alternatives are true: *Did you visit (either) Edinburgh or Glasgow?* But where only one of the alternatives can be true, the word *either* is not possible in a question:

*Have you either passed or failed?
*Is their eldest child either a boy or a girl?

dislocation The displacement of (typically) a *noun phrase to *clause-initial or clause-final *position, combined with the use of a *pro-form that is *co-referential with the displaced noun phrase.

• **dislocate**.

•• **right dislocation**: dislocation in which the pro-form comes first, and the noun phrase is therefore dislocated to the right in the linear sequence of a clause, e.g.

He's a good cricketer, *your young son*

This is also called **postponed identification**.

•• **left dislocation**: dislocation in which the noun phrase is moved to the left, and a pro-form is added, e.g.

Your young son, he's a good cricketer

This is also called **anticipated dislocation**.

Dislocation is particularly a feature of informal spoken English.

Compare BRANCHING.

See also NUCLEUS.

distal Indicating that an entity, person, etc. is (far) away (from the speaker). Contrasted with *proximal; the same as **non-proximal**.

This label is applied to the *deictic words *that* and *those*.

distribution Every *word or *phrase is limited in some way with regard to the syntactic *contexts in which it can occur, and the set of such contexts is its distribution. For example, the distribution of the *articles *a* and *an* is restricted to use with *singular *count *nouns (e.g. *a knife*, but not **a knives* or **a cutlery*).

In traditional grammar, the *word classes are often defined in *notional terms (e.g. 'a noun is a naming word'). In practice the assignment of a word to a particular *word class depends much more on its possible distribution in the structure of a *clause. The distribution of two units may overlap, giving **overlapping distribution**, or the two may be mutually exclusive (for example, *a* or *an* cannot occur with *the*).

- **distribute**.
- **distributional**: of or involving (syntactic) distribution. Hence **distributional analysis**, distributional *equivalence.
- **distributionally**.

Compare COMPLEMENTARY DISTRIBUTION.
See also SLOT-AND-FILLER.

distributive (*n. & adj.*) (A *word or *phrase) that relates to individual members of a class separately, not jointly.

Words like *each* and *every* are **distributive words**. Phrases like *once a week* and *three times per year* are **distributive expressions**.

Distributive plural concord is common in expressions such as *The children all had such eager faces* (where clearly each child had only one face), but a **distributive singular** is often possible, e.g. *They all had such an eager expression*.

ditransitive (*n. & adj.*) (A verb) that *licenses two *objects (2), namely a *direct object and an *indirect object; hence **ditransitive complementation**, or a *pattern or *clause in which a verb licenses a direct object and an indirect object. Also called **double transitive (verb)**. Examples:

I gave my mother flowers
They told me lies

The following example is not considered to involve a ditransitive verb in recent models, but instead contains a verb that takes a direct object and a further *complement in the form of a *prepositional phrase:

I gave flowers to my mother

Ditransitive complementation is sometimes said to include indirect objects followed by various types of clause, e.g.

She told me (that) she was delighted
I hadn't asked her what she wanted
She urged me to take a holiday

However, it should be noted that grammarians disagree over how to describe verb complementation, and not everyone would agree with the analysis of the examples above as involving a ditransitive pattern.

Compare COMPLEMENTATION; COMPLEX INTRANSITIVE; COMPLEX TRANSITIVE; INTRANSITIVE; MONOTRANSITIVE; TRANSITIVE.

***do*-insertion** *See* *DO*-SUPPORT.

domain

1. *Sociolinguistics*. The situation or sphere of activity to which an utterance relates, with regard to the way it affects the use of language.

> 1982 G. LEECH et al. *Domain*. This has to do with how language varies according to the activity in which it plays a part . . . We can thus refer to the domains of chemistry, law, religion, and so on.

As will be seen from this quotation, there is a certain overlap and blurring between 'societal' domains (e.g. home, church) and academic or professional domains (e.g. chemistry, journalism, law).

Domain is sometimes said (as it is by these authors) to be a part of *register, but a distinction can be made between domain as the sphere in which language is used, and register as the kind of language used, which partly depends on the subject matter.

Compare GENRE.

2. The same as (semantic) *field.

> 1968 J. LYONS In recent years, there has been a good deal of work devoted to the investigation of lexical systems . . . with particular reference to such *fields* (or *domains*) as kinship, colour, flora and fauna, weights and measures, military ranks, [etc.].

dominate (In *Generative Grammar (2).) One *node dominates another if it is placed higher up in a *tree diagram in a direct (but not necessarily uninterrupted) line to the other, lower node.

> 1994 L. HAEGEMAN Node A dominates node B if and only if A is higher up in the tree than B and if you can trace a line from A to B going only downwards

- **dominance**.

do*-support** The use of a form of the *auxiliary verb *do* as a *dummy verb (hence **dummy *do) in *interrogative clauses, *negative clauses, *emphatic clauses, *tag questions, etc. Also called ***do*-insertion**. Examples:

Do you understand?
He *doesn't* understand
You're wrong, he *does* understand!

He *doesn't* understand, *does* he?

The term comes from *Generative Grammar (2).

See also NICE PROPERTIES.

double accusative (In older grammar.) A structure which contains a *direct object and an *indirect object. In recent grammar this is called a *ditransitive structure.

double-barrelled question A *question in which the same *interrogative *word is repeated, as in *Who is who?*

This is an older term, not in general use.

double genitive *See* GENITIVE.

double marking The use of a redundant grammatical *feature (1) where a grammatical concept is already expressed.

The term is often used of structures such as *I would have liked to have seen it*, where the second *perfect construction is unnecessary if the intended meaning is 'I would have liked to see it' or 'I would like to have seen it'.

Compare BLEND.

double negative The occurrence of two *negative words in a single *clause or *sentence.

It is usually incorrect in *Standard English to negate a clause more than once, e.g.

*I never said nothing
*I haven't got none

In these cases the first negative could be omitted, or the second replaced by a *non-assertive form (e.g. *anything*, *any*). But the argument, from logic, that 'two negatives make a positive' is unjustified, as many English *dialects and other languages do have mutually reinforcing multiple negation, as did earlier forms of English.

Occasionally a double negative occurs quite legitimately in a single clause where in a sense the two negatives do cancel each other out, e.g.

You can't not worry about it (= 'you have to worry')
Surely nobody has no friends (= 'everybody has some friends')

Notice that these sentences take positive *tags (3):

You can't not worry, *can you*?
Nobody has no friends, *do they*?

The following is not a double negative, because two clauses are involved:

I wouldn't be surprised if the Jacksons didn't come

This is potentially confusing: it can mean that the speaker expects the Jacksons not to come (in which case both negatives are justified), or it can mean ‘I wouldn't be surprised if they came’. However, the following example is unambiguous: *I didn’t ask him not to go*.

double passive A *clause containing two *passive constructions, the second involving an *infinitive, as in:

*Receipts are not proposed to be issued
Certificates are expected to be despatched next week

*Usage books sometimes warn against all such structures, but their acceptability in fact varies. *Verbs like *expect* in the second example, which are also possible in the pattern verb + *object + passive infinitive (e.g. *We expect certificates to be despatched*), seem grammatical when they occur in the double passive construction. Verbs that do not fit this pattern with a single passive (e.g. **We propose receipts to be issued*) do not happily take a double passive either.

doublet Either of a pair of *words that have developed from the same original word, but are now somewhat different in form, and can be used in different senses.

Examples of doublets that have arisen from a single parent form within English are:

human (M16), *humane* (LME)
metal (ME), *mettle* (M16)
mood (in grammar) (M16), *mode* (LME)
patron (ME), *pattern* (M16)
shade (OE), *shadow* (OE)

Examples of doublets that arose through borrowing from other languages at different times:

faction (L15), *fashion* (ME)
hostel (ME), *hotel* (M17)
ration (M16), *reason* (ME)

See BY-FORM.
Compare HETERONYM (2).

double transitive The same as *ditransitive.

downtoner *See* INTENSIFIER.

D-Structure *See* DEEP STRUCTURE.

dual (*n. & adj.*) (A form) expressing two or a pair, in contrast to *singular and *plural.

In some languages dual is an important *category, and there are *inflected dual forms of *nouns, *verbs, etc. In English *both*, and to a lesser extent *either* and *neither*, are the only *grammatical words (1) indicating **dual number**.

●● **dual class membership**: the property of being a member of two classes; said e.g. of nouns that can be both *count and *uncount (e.g. a *cake*, some *cake*).

●● **dual gender (term)**: (a word) that can apply equally to a male or a female individual (e.g. *parent*, *guest*); contrasted with single-*gender terms such as *father*, *hostess*. *See also* GENDER; MASCULINE; FEMININE.

Compare BINARY; PLURALE TANTUM.

dummy Dummy elements (also called *empty elements) are *words which have no intrinsic meaning, but play a role in the grammatical structure of a *clause, *construction, etc.

●● **dummy *do***: a dummy *verb used to form *interrogative, *emphatic, and *negative clauses:

What *does* Liam want? He *didn't* say

●● **dummy *it***: a dummy *pronoun used especially as the *subject in sentences about the weather and time. Also called **ambient *it***, **empty it*, **formal *it***, **prop *it***, or **unspecified *it***. Examples:

It is five o'clock, and *it* is snowing again

A similarly vague *it* also appears in various idiomatic phrases:

We've made *it*
Beat *it*
Well, that's *it*—let's go

In the following example, which involves *extraposition, *it* is referred to as *anticipatory *it*:

It is clear that the weather won't improve before the end of the week

Compare REFERENTIAL *IT*.

The word *there* in *existential sentences (called existential *there*) is also regarded as a dummy word, and then sometimes called the **dummy pronoun** *there*.

See also *DO*-SUPPORT; INTRODUCTORY *IT*.

duration Length or span of time, considered as part of the *meaning of a *word.

The term is particularly used in relation to *verbs, *prepositions, and *adverbs in various types of *constructions.

Prepositions and adverbs that are part of *phrases, *clauses, etc. expressing duration include *since, for, from, to*; e.g.

I've been here *for a month*

*Progressive constructions are usually said to imply a temporary state or limited duration, e.g.

I am living in a hostel

durative Of a *situation expressed by a *verb: taking place over a period of time; contrasted with *punctual.

The term is particularly used in relation to *dynamic (1) verbs that describe activities and processes (often of limited duration), which are used especially in *progressive constructions:

It is snowing
She's driving home
I'm cleaning the carpet

Compare ATELIC; CONCLUSIVE; TELIC.

●● **durative aspect**: the same as progressive aspect.

dvandva (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) a *compound consisting of two elements, neither of which is equivalent to the whole, and which could otherwise be syntactically joined by *and*. Also called **copulative compound**.

Examples are very rare in English, except in place names such as *Alsace-Lorraine, Schleswig-Holstein, Bosnia-Herzegovina*, and company names such as *Alcatel-Lucent, Colgate-Palmolive*.

The term is from the Sanskrit, representing a reduplication of the word for 'two'.

dynamic Having a meaning that implies action or change.

1. Of (chiefly verbal) meaning: relating to actions, events, happenings, and processes; e.g.

We *bought* a new car
War *erupted* in 1939
They never *play* our tune
I *worked* hard all my life

Verbal meaning can be seen as either dynamic or *stative. It is common practice to describe *verbs that can be used in *progressive constructions as **dynamic verbs**, in contrast to **stative verbs**, which typically cannot. However, it is more accurate to speak of dynamic and stative *meaning*, since many so-called stative verbs can be used dynamically with a shift in meaning. Compare the following pairs:

I *have* two sisters. We'*re having* a party

They *are* hard-working. You *are being* so silly
They *look* alike. My prospects *are looking* good

Compare ACTION VERB.

Less generally, the terms dynamic and stative are applied to other *word classes. *Nouns and *adjectives, for example, are characteristically stative, referring to stable things, or expressing stable qualities, but they may denote temporary, dynamic properties when used in a *progressive construction:

He is being *foolish*
You are being *a nuisance*

*Adverbs, particularly *manner adverbs, often express dynamic meaning in combination with a dynamic verb:

He behaves *foolishly*

2. dynamic modal: In some analyses of the category of *modal verbs, dynamic is added as a third category of meaning, contrasting with *deontic and *epistemic meaning. Dynamic modals express meanings such as 'ability', 'volition', and 'predisposition', as well as 'circumstantial' meanings. Such modals are said to be typically *subject-oriented, rather than *speaker-oriented. Examples:

Nadine *can* read a novel in an evening ('ability' attributed to Nadine)
My cat *will* lie in front of the fire for hours ('volition' attributed to my cat)
There *must* be a solution to this problem ('circumstantial necessity')

Contrast:

You *can't* borrow my pen (deontic)
You *can't* be serious (epistemic)

Unlike modals with deontic or epistemic meaning, the *past tense forms of dynamic modals can refer to past time:

She *could* already read and write when she was four ('ability' in the past)
Even as a small child, she *would* sit reading for hours ('volition' in the past)

E

Early Modern English A phase in the history of the English language lasting from approximately 1500 to 1700.

echo utterance An *utterance that repeats all or part of what the previous speaker has said.

Echo utterances can take various forms, but function either as *questions:

A: He's a strange man. B: *He's strange*?
A: Yes, he collects beetles. B: *What does he collect?*

or as *exclamations:

A: Beetles. And then he sings to them. B: *He does what?*
A: He sings to them. B: *He sings to them!* You're joking.

***-ed* clause** A *non-finite *clause whose *verb phrase contains a *past participle as its *head. Also called **past participle clause** or **past-participial clause**. Examples:

Jane had *her tonsils removed*
Disgraced by his conduct, the banker lost his knighthood

Notice that the first example contains its own *subject, whereas the second example does not.

In CaGEL the italicized clause in the following example is also an *-ed* clause:

I have *eaten all the sandwiches*

Compare BARE INFINITIVE CLAUSE; -ING CLAUSE; PARTICIPLE CLAUSE; TO-INFINITIVE CLAUSE.

***-ed* form** (A way of referring to) either the *past (2) tense form of any *verb, or the past tense and *past participle forms of a verb. The former use includes both *regular past tenses, which are actually marked by *-ed* (e.g. *looked*), and *irregular ones, which are not (e.g. *rang, saw, wrote*).

See also -EN FORM; -ED CLAUSE; PARTICIPLE CLAUSE.

Compare PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE.

editorial *we* The use of *we* by a single writer, perhaps to avoid the more egocentric-sounding *I*.

Compare ROYAL WE.

***-ed* participle** *See* -ED CLAUSE; PAST PARTICIPLE.

effected object The same as *result object.

effective (In *Systemic Grammar.) Of a *verb (or a *clause containing such a verb): describing goal-directed action; contrasted with *descriptive (3).

An effective clause may be *active or *passive, and must either contain an *agent or imply one, e.g.

The intruders smashed the door down
The door was smashed down (by the intruders)

elaborated code *See* CODE.

elaboration *See* EXPANSION.

element

1. Any of the units used in the *functional (1) *analysis of *clauses.

According to a widely used analysis, there are five possible functional units, namely *subject, *verb, *object, *complement, and *adverbial (abbreviated as S, V, O, C, and A), although to avoid mixing *form and *function labels it might be more appropriate to use P (= *predicator) instead of V. Examples are shown in the following table:

SV	Time / will tell
SVO	Not many people / know / that
SVC	The Lake District / is / beautiful
SVA	A funny thing / happened / on the way to the forum
SVOO	The world / doesn't owe / you / a living
SVOC	They / were painting / the town / red
SVOA	I / will forget / my own name / in a minute

In *Systemic Grammar predicator replaces verb (as suggested above), object is included within complement, *adjunct replaces adverbial, and there is a fifth Z element used for nominal groups whose status is indeterminate between subject and complement. Indeterminate status is assigned, for example, to titles, e.g.

A Tale of Two Cities

and elements in which subject and object are said to be fused, e.g.

Jack persuaded *Fiona* to come

2. (More generally.) Any functional part of a larger structural whole.

*Affixes, for example, are elements in *word structure; and a *phrase consists of an essential element, the *head, along with *determiners (1), *modifiers, and so on.

See also DUMMY; *WH*-ELEMENT.

ellipsis Omission from speech or writing of a *word or words that can be recovered by the hearer or reader from contextual cues.

Words are often omitted from informal speech where they can be recovered from the situation (*exophoric ellipsis):

(Are you) coming?
(Is there) anything I can do to help?

In more *formal speech and writing, words are often grammatically recoverable from the text (*anaphoric ellipsis or *cataphoric ellipsis), and in many cases it is normal to omit words in order to avoid repetition:

We're as anxious to help as you are (anxious to help)

Unless you particularly want to (buy tickets in advance), there's no need to buy tickets in advance

A: Tom's written to *The Times*.
B: Why (has he written to *The Times*)?
A: I don't know (why he has written to *The Times*). He's always writing letters and (he is always) complaining about something.

There are, however, grammatical constraints as to what can be omitted. Thus a *co-referential subject can be omitted in a *coordinated *clause:

I telephoned my aunt and _ told her the news

but cannot always be omitted when the link is between *main (matrix) and *subordinate clauses:

*I told my aunt the news when _ telephoned her

though compare:

I told my aunt the news when _ telephoning her

Strictly, ellipsis exists only when the missing words are exactly recoverable. But the term is normally extended to include such sentences as:

He wrote a better letter than I could have (written)

and often to looser examples of omission, such as:

You remember that man (who/whom/that) I introduced to you?

- **elliptical**: characterized by, or exhibiting, ellipsis.

  Compare RECOVERABILITY; REDUNDANCY; REFERENCE; SUBSTITUTION.
  See also GAPPING.

ellipt Omit (an element) by *ellipsis.

> 1990 S. GREENBAUM & R. QUIRK In medial ellipsis medial elements are ellipted: Jill owns a Volvo and Fred (owns) a BMW.

embed Include (a linguistic unit) within another. *See also* EMBEDDING.

- **embedded**.

> 1975 T. F. MITCHELL Sometimes the embedded sentence is more apparent than others. The subject-verb-object pattern of *he'd done it* in *John thought he'd done it* seems immediately to mark it as sentential.

●● **embedded question**: *see* INDIRECT QUESTION.

embedding The inclusion of a linguistic unit within another linguistic unit. Embedding contrasts with *conjoining, much as *subordination contrasts with *coordination. As an example, in the following sentence the *comparative clause is embedded in an *adjective phrase:

She was [$_{AP}$ gloomier *than she normally was*]

When a unit is embedded in a unit of the same type we speak of **self-embedding** (also called **centre-embedding**). Thus in the next example the *prepositional phrases *of the ship from Hong Kong* and *from Hong Kong* are embedded in higher prepositional phrases:

[$_{PP}$ on the deck [$_{PP}$ of the ship [$_{PP}$ from Hong Kong]]]

In some analyses the notion of embedding seems to be applied only to *subordinate clauses contained in higher clauses, and typically functioning as *subject, *complement, etc., e.g.

That she was gloomy was characteristic
They did not believe *that they were doomed*

It is not immediately obvious whether in *Ed liked it, whereas Max thought it appalling* (an example discussed by R. Huddleston) the subordinate clause *whereas Max thought it appalling* is embedded in the sentence as a whole. In accordance with the definition of embedding above as 'the inclusion of a linguistic unit in another linguistic unit', we *do* seem to have a case of embedding here. However, a subordinate clause like this, which is not a *constituent of a higher clause, is not embedded according to Huddleston:

> 1984 R. HUDDLESTON The suggestion is that in [*Ed liked it, whereas Max thought it appalling*] the subordinate clause is an immediate constituent of the sentence, and in that case it is not embedded . . .

Theoretically the process of embedding can lead to sentences or phrases of indefinite length.

See also INDIRECT QUESTION; RECURSION.

Compare NESTING; PUSHDOWN.

emotive *Semantics*. Arousing feeling, emotion.

In theories of *meaning, *emotive* refers to the kinds of meaning subjectively attached to expressions by particular users (both individuals and communities). It is roughly equivalent to *attitudinal meaning in some of its uses, and contrasts with *cognitive and *referential meaning.

Any words relating to the emotions can be labelled emotive. For example, some grammarians label verbs like *dread, hate, loathe, love,* etc. as **emotive verbs** or **verbs of emotion**.

Various grammatical devices can be used to produce **emotive effects**, such as *exclamations, the use of *do* in *imperatives (e.g. *Do listen!*), stress (e.g. *I AM listening*; *That WAS stupid*), the use of *emphasizers (e.g. *Really!*; That was very risky *indeed*), or the use of non-*correlative *so* and *such* (e.g. *So* risky; *Such* a stupid thing to do).

See also COMMUNICATIVE; CONATIVE; CONNOTATION; DENOTATIVE; DESCRIPTIVE; EXPRESSIVE; INTERPERSONAL; PROPOSITIONAL MEANING; PSYCHOLOGICAL VERB.

emotive *should* The same as *putative *should*.

emphasis Special importance or prominence attached to a certain part of a *sentence, *phrase, *word, etc.

The term is used in its general sense. Emphasis is often achieved by marked *focus; by unusual stress (for example, on an *auxiliary verb, as in *I did call you!*); by grammatical devices such as *cleft or *pseudo-cleft sentences, or by the use of *do* in *declaratives or *imperatives (e.g. *I do apologize, Do be sensible*).

emphasizer

1. An *adverb that adds to the expressive force of the *clause, or part of the clause, to which it applies, e.g. *really* in *I really think you might have telephoned*.

Only some grammatical models subdivide adverbs with this level of semantic detail. CGEL has emphasizers as a subcategory of *subjunct.

Also called **emphasizing adverb**.

2. In some grammatical models, a sub species of *intensifying adjective that has a heightening, reinforcing effect (generally only in *attributive use), e.g. *pure* nonsense, a *real* idiot.

Also called **emphasizing adjective**.

emphatic Imparting or expressing emphasis.
•• **emphatic pronoun**: a *reflexive pronoun when used for emphasis, e.g. *himself* in *He admitted himself that the whole thing had been a mistake.*

empty

1. Having no (lexical) meaning; *dummy.
•• **empty *it***: the same as *dummy *it*, though *see also* ANTICIPATORY.
•• **empty word**: the same as *grammatical word (1).

2. Not phonetically realized.

In some versions of *Generative Grammar (2) units that have been *moved leave behind a *trace which is inaudible, and such elements are regarded as examples of **empty categories**, e.g.

[The government]$_i$ was toppled t_i (where 't' indicates a trace left behind by the moved subject, and the subscript 'i' indicates *co-reference)

Compare ZERO.

empty category *See* EMPTY (2).

enclitic *Morphology*. (*n. & adj.*) (A form) pronounced with very little emphasis, usually shortened, and attached to a preceding host word. Contrasted with *proclitic.

Common **enclitic forms** include *-n't*, parts of the *verbs *be* and *have* (e.g. *they're*, *he's* = 'is' or 'has', *we've*), *'ll*, and *'s* meaning *us* (as in *Let's go*).

Compare CLITIC and *see* CONTRACTION (2).

end (Situated or occurring in) the last part of a *phrase, *clause, *sentence, etc.
•• **end position**: the same as *final position.

See also FRONT; INITIAL; MEDIAL; POSITION.

end-focus A term used in CGEL to refer to the placing of the most important information in a *sentence or *clause (the *focus) at the end.

Since it is customary to introduce *given information at the beginning of a sentence, and to impart *new information towards the end, end-focus is an *unmarked characteristic of *information structure. This is referred to as the **principle of end-focus**.

In writing, the end of a clause or sentence will normally be taken to be the focus, unless there is some unusual punctuation or other sign (e.g. italics or capital letters); and marked *word order may be used to maintain this focus. In speech, the focus is realized by nuclear pitch, which typically falls on the last stressed syllable, e.g.

Write to the li'BRARian

(There may of course be more than one nuclear pitch in a sentence if it is a long one.) The focus can be moved without changing the word order by moving the nucleus, e.g.

'WRITE to the librarian

Compare END-WEIGHT.

See also CLEFT; GIVEN; INFORMATION STRUCTURE; MARKED; NEW; PSEUDO-CLEFT; RHEME; THEME.

ending An informal label to denote the final part of a *word.

In English the term applies to *inflectional *suffixes such as those used in the *plural forms of *nouns (e.g. *cats*), in the various forms of *verbs (e.g. *looks*, *looked*), and in the *comparative and *superlative forms of certain *adjectives and *adverbs (e.g. *longer*, *longest*, *sooner*, *soonest*). It also applies to *derivational *suffixes (*-ness, -ity*, etc.).

endocentric

1. Of a *structure: syntactically a *projection (1) of the word which is its *head. Also called *headed. Contrasted with *exocentric.

The following *phrases, with their heads italicized, are all endocentric:

too *dreadful* to contemplate	(adjective phrase)
rather more *surprisingly*	(adverb phrase)
she who must be obeyed	(noun phrase)

1933 L. BLOOMFIELD The forms *John* and *poor John* have, on the whole, the same functions. Accordingly, we say that the English character-substance construction (as in *poor John*, *fresh milk*, and the like) is an *endocentric* construction.

2. Of a *compound: grammatically and semantically equivalent to one of its parts.

Many compounds belong to the same *word class as their head word and preserve the latter's basic meaning, e.g.

fire alarm (alarm giving warning of fire) *girlfriend* (friend who is a girl)	nouns
duty-free (free from duty) *rock hard* (hard as a rock)	adjectives

1933 L. BLOOMFIELD Since a *blackbird* is a kind of a *bird*, and a *door-knob* a kind of a *knob*, we may say that these compounds have the same function as their head members; they are endocentric.

endophora *Reference within a text. Contrasted with *exophora.

This is a general term, covering both *anaphora and *cataphora.

- **endophoric**: e.g. **endophoric reference**, which is the same as endophora.

> 1976 M. A. K. HALLIDAY & R. HASAN We shall find it useful in the discussion to have a special term for situational reference. This we are referring to as exophora, or exophoric reference; and we could contrast it with endophoric as a general name for reference within the text . . . As a general rule, therefore, reference items may be exophoric or endophoric; and if endophoric they may be anaphoric or cataphoric.

end-weight A term used in CGEL to refer to the tendency of longer (i.e. heavier) units of information to come at the end of a *sentence or *clause. A fuller term also used in CGEL is the **principle of end-weight**.

Since *new information may need more detailed explanation than *given information, end-weight often goes hand-in-hand with *end-focus, e.g.

> The bread industry and nutritionists alike have been trying to get the message across *that a healthy balanced diet should include sufficient bread*

The 'weighty' part of the message here comes naturally at the end. Notice how the word *across* is positioned immediately after *message*, and not at the end of the sentence. Grammatically it could be positioned there, but the sentence would then be harder to process.

See also INFORMATION STRUCTURE.

***-en* form** (A way of referring to) the *past participle of any *verb, including *regular verbs.

The name is based on the fact that many *irregular verbs take this ending in their *past participle (e.g. *broken*, *chosen*, *driven*, *forgotten*, *taken*), but the label includes all past participles (e.g. *looked, hated, brought, kept, set, known, gone, drunk*).

Because it is restricted, unlike *-ed*, to the participle, it is a useful shorthand way of distinguishing past participles from *past tense forms.

See also -ED FORM; PARTICIPLE; PAST PARTICIPLE.

English The West Germanic language that first developed in England and southern Scotland, and is now spoken throughout the British Isles and in the United States, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, and the West Indies, as well as by significant communities in southern Africa, south and south-east Asia, and elsewhere.

See also BASIC ENGLISH; BBC ENGLISH; MIDDLE ENGLISH; MODERN ENGLISH; NUCLEAR ENGLISH; OLD ENGLISH; STANDARD ENGLISH.

English Grammar, An A book by Etsko Kruisinga and P. A. Erades, based on Kruisinga's **Handbook of Present-Day English*.

English Grammar: A Function-Based Introduction A functional-typological grammar in two volumes, written by the American linguist Talmy Givón in 1993.

English Transformational Grammar A description of (parts of) the grammar of English by R. A. Jacobs and P. S. Rosenbaum using early *Generative Grammar (2) as a framework, published in 1968.

enhancement *See* EXPANSION.

entail *Semantics*. Of a *sentence: to necessitate the truth of (another sentence).

• **entailment**: a relationship between two sentences such that if the first is true, the second must also be true. For example, sentence (1) entails sentence (2):

(1) I am an only child
(2) I have no brothers or sisters

In this particular case, sentence (2) also entails sentence (1). But such **mutual entailment** does not always obtain. For example, (1) entails (3):

(3) I have no brothers

However, as I may have any number of sisters, (3) does not entail (1).

Compare IMPLICATION; PRESUPPOSITION.

epicene Denoting an *animate entity of either sex without a change of *gender.

An outdated term, more usually replaced by expressions like **sex-neutral** or *dual gender.

epistemic Of *modality: concerned with likelihood, or the degree of certainty or knowledge about something. Contrasted with *deontic and *dynamic (2) modality.

Out of context, sentences containing *modal verbs are sometimes *ambiguous. The modality of *You must love your mother* is epistemic if the meaning is 'I deduce, from some information or observations, that you love her'. It is deontic if the meaning is 'You are obliged to love her'. Similarly, the modality of *Tom may keep the money* is epistemic if the meaning is 'He is quite likely to keep it', but deontic if it is 'He is allowed to keep it'.

Epistemic modality is sometimes called **extrinsic modality**.

Compare ALETHIC.

epithet An *adjective that indicates a quality ascribed to the *noun it *modifies. Contrasted with *classifier.

Epithets include 'objective' adjectives (e.g. *green*, *rectangular*) and 'subjective' adjectives (*amazing*, *stupid*). Some can be either (*old*, *expensive*). This term seems to be the same as *qualitative in other models.

equational Another *word for *equative (particularly as applied to the verb *be*).

equative Denoting that one thing is equal to, or the same as, another.

The verb *be* is the primary equative *verb (or verb with an **equative function**). Such verbs are more usually described as **copular** or **copulative** (*see* COPULA).

There is also a small group of *adverbial expressions with equative meaning, such as *equally*, *likewise*, *in the same way*.

The term is sometimes used in the analysis of degrees of *comparison, where the *as X as* comparison can be described as equative. But this relationship is also often described as *equivalence.

• **equatively**.

equivalence A term referring to 'sameness' or equality from different linguistic points of view.

1. Equality from the point of view of meaning.

Comparisons taking the form *as X as* (e.g. *She is as generous as her mother*) are **comparisons of equivalence**. These are contrasted with **comparisons of non-equivalence** expressed by using *more X* (or a comparative form ending in *-er*) *than* or *less X than* (e.g. *She is more/less generous than her mother*).

Equivalence of *reference is a feature of strict *apposition, and may or may not be overtly signalled, e.g.

> *The Young Pretender*, that is to say *Charles Edward Stuart*, or *Bonnie Prince Charlie*, as he is more familiarly known . . .

2. 'Sameness' from the point of view of *function (1).

Hence **functional equivalence**: having an identical or comparable function in a particular *context. In the phrases *the university press* and *this ancient press*, the *noun (phrase) *university* and the *adjective (phrase) *ancient* are functionally equivalent, since both are *modifiers.

Linguistic units that are formally different may be equivalent in function. For instance, in the examples below, the italicized strings are functionally equivalent, since they are all *adverbials:

> I saw the postman *in the park* (prepositional phrase)
> I lost my keys *when I got out of my car* (clause)

He ran down the hill *very quickly* (*adverb phrase)

3. 'Sameness' from the point of view of *distribution. Thus two units that are **distributionally equivalent** have the same syntactic distribution.

equivalent (*adj.*) Used to describe a linguistic unit that is semantically, functionally, or grammatically the same as another unit.

(*n.*) A linguistic unit that is semantically, functionally, or grammatically equivalent to another unit. Such a unit is sometimes described as being *X-equivalent*, where 'X' specifies a word class label.

> 1932 C. T. ONIONS A word or group of words which replaces a Noun, an Adjective, or an Adverb is called an Equivalent (Noun-equivalent, Adjective-equivalent, or Adverb-equivalent).

In more recent modern grammar this kind of label is often replaced by such terms as *nominal, nominal *group, *noun phrase, *nominal clause, and so on.

See also NOUN-EQUIVALENT.

ergative

1. This term (derived from the Greek word *ergon* 'work') is applied in languages such as Abkhaz, Eskimo, and Basque (**ergative languages**) to the *case (1) form used for the *subject of a *transitive *verb, with an **absolutive case** being used for the *direct object or for the subject of an *intransitive verb.

2. Designating a particular kind of *verb or *construction with which the same *noun (phrase) can be used as subject when the verb is intransitive, and as direct object when the verb is transitive; designating the relationship between these two uses. Compare:

My shirt has torn ~ I've torn my shirt
The door opened ~ Someone opened the door
The meat is cooking ~ I'm cooking the meat

> 1968 J. LYONS The term that is generally employed by linguists for the syntactic relationship that holds between [The stone moved] and [John moved the stone] is 'ergative': the subject of an intransitive verb 'becomes' the object of a corresponding transitive verb, and a new *ergative* subject is introduced as the 'agent' (or 'cause') of the action referred to.

Some linguists caution against this use of the term.

- **ergativity**.

erlebte Rede (German.) The same as *free indirect speech.

Essentials of English Grammar A short book by Otto Jespersen published in 1933 ‘embodying the principles explained in *The Philosophy of Grammar* and partly carried out in the seven volumes of my *Modern English Grammar*’.

eternal truths *See* PRESENT.

ethic(al) dative *See* DATIVE.

etymology

1. The historically verifiable sources of the formation of a *word and the development of its *meaning; an account of these.

2. The branch of linguistic science concerned with etymologies (in sense 1).

> 2009 P. DURKIN Etymology is the investigation of word histories. It has traditionally been concerned most especially with those word histories in which the facts are not certain, and where a hypothesis has to be constructed to account either for a word’s origin or for a stage in its history.

• **etymological**: of, pertaining to, based upon, etc., etymology.

• **etymologically**.

> 1926 H. W. FOWLER *Saxonism* is a name for the attempt to raise the proportion borne by the originally & etymologically English words in our speech to those that come from alien sources.

•• **etymological fallacy**: the belief that the true meaning of a word is determined or implied by its provenance; for example, the idea that *awful* really means ‘full of awe’, ‘awe-inspiring’.

> 2009 P. DURKIN The etymological fallacy is the idea that knowing about a word’s origin, and particularly its original meaning, gives us the key to understanding its present-day use. Very frequently, this is combined with an assertion about how a word ought to be used today: certain uses are privileged as ‘etymological’ and hence ‘valid’, while others are regarded as ‘unetymological’, and hence ‘invalid’ (or at least ‘less valid’).

Compare FOLK ETYMOLOGY.

etymon (Plural **etyma**.) The *word that gives rise to a derivative or a borrowed or later form.

euphemism

1. A circumlocutionary (often vague) expression substituted for another which is thought to be crude, offensive, painful, or unpleasant (e.g. *facilities* or *bathroom* for ‘lavatory’, *pass away* for ‘die’, *let go* for ‘dismiss’).

2. The avoidance of unpleasant *words by means of such expressions.

> 1947 E. PARTRIDGE Euphemism may be obtained by using an extremely vague phrase, as in *commit a nuisance*.

- **euphemistic**.

eventive Of a *noun (phrase): designating an event. Contrasted with *stative.

This is not a generally used term, but it is possible to describe some nouns—often *deverbal nouns—as eventive:

> The *examination* is next week (*compare*: They will examine the candidates next week)
> You must do some *work* (*compare*: You must work)
> Can I give you some *advice*? (*compare*: Can I advise you?)

In the first example we have an **eventive *subject**; in the second and third examples there is an **eventive *object**.

See also EVENT VERB.

event verb The same as *action verb.

exclamation

1. (In non-specialized usage.) A *word, *phrase, or *clause expressing some kind of emotion. In this sense the term is used to cover any word or group of words expressing anger, pleasure, surprise, etc. Some of these may lack normal *sentence structure, e.g. *Marvellous!, You poor thing!, How kind of you!, What a scorcher!, Woe is me!* Sometimes single word *interjections are included, e.g. *Alas!*

Compare EXCLAMATIVE.

2. (In modern grammatical analyses that distinguish *structure and *usage.) A usage label indicating the *function (2) of a *clause as expressing some kind of emotion. Contrasted with the syntactic label *exclamative. In this kind of analysis, an exclamation can be realized by various forms, e.g. by an exclamative clause (*What a nice apartment you have!*) or by an *interrogative clause (e.g. *What does he think he looks like?*, perhaps meaning ‘How very oddly he is dressed’). This definition is roughly the opposite of that in 3.

Compare DIRECTIVE; QUESTION; SPEECH ACT; STATEMENT.

3. (In some popular grammatical models.) A *formal (1) and more limited *category, restricted to clauses beginning with *how* or *what* (but without the subject-auxiliary *inversion typical of interrogatives):

> How difficult it all is!
> What a muddle we are in!

Nowadays the label that is preferred for this type of clause is exclamative clause.

exclamative (*n. & adj.*) (A clause or sentence) denoting an exclamation (1).

As a syntactic *clause type an **exclamative clause** is typically used as an *exclamation (2). Thus, exclamative is a formal syntactic category, whereas *exclamation (2) is a category of *usage. Such clauses typically have the **wh*-word *what* inside a *noun phrase in clause-initial *position, or *how* used with an *adjective or as an *adverb at the beginning of a clause, but without the subject-auxiliary *inversion typical of *interrogatives, e.g.

What a silly game these politicians are playing!
How wonderful he is!
How we sniggered at his ideas!

Compare DECLARATIVE; IMPERATIVE; INTERROGATIVE.

exclamatory Expressing or containing an *exclamation (1).

The term is used as a structure label to describe an *exclamative clause or as a *usage label to describe an *exclamation (2), either of which may be called an **exclamatory clause**. Grammarians who are careful to distinguish *structure from usage tend to confine the term to the semantic use, i.e. as the adjective corresponding to *exclamation (2).

●● **exclamatory question**: (usually) a *sentence or *clause that is *interrogative in form, but used as an *exclamation (2), e.g. *Isn't it a lovely day!*

exclusive

1. Serving to exclude an option; indicating that someone or something is excluded. Contrasted with *inclusive (1).

(i) Commonly describing the use of the first person plural pronoun *we* when the addressee is excluded, as in *We'll call for you tomorrow*.

(ii) Applied to the meaning of the word *or* in contexts indicating that one alternative rules out the other. Thus, *Are you going to have tea or coffee?* would often be interpreted as exclusive: you are expected to have one, but not both. On the other hand, *Do you take milk or sugar?* will normally have an *inclusive meaning: you can have both.
See also DISJUNCTIVE.

(iii) Applied to other elements of language which indicate exclusivity in some way. Thus, some adverbs serve to exclude all but what is specified, e.g. *alone, exclusively, merely, solely*.

2. Denoting a linguistic element whose use excludes the use of another element. Many *determinatives (1) are mutually exclusive (cf. **a the mistake*).

exhaustive conditional *See* UNIVERSAL CONDITIONAL-CONCESSIVE CLAUSE.

existential (*n. & adj.*) (A grammatically *marked *structure) typically used to express a *proposition that someone or something exists.

An **existential *construction** (also called a ***there*-existential**) typically conforms to the following pattern:

there + (*auxiliary/*raising verb) + *be* + *notional *subject

The unstressed *pronoun *there* is a *dummy subject called **existential *there***. Here are some examples:

There is an emergency
There must be a God
There seems to be no solution

These are called **bare existential** *clauses, which do not have a non-existential counterpart (cf. **An emergency is*).

An **extended existential** clause contains additional material (called the **extension**), such as a *locative (1) or *temporal phrase, a *relative clause, a **to-infinitive*, or an **-ing* clause:

There is a mouse in the loft
There was a fire last week
There has been nothing in the papers about this
Can there be life on other planets?
There's one student who brings her dog to class
There is a great deal of work to do
There was a fox running down the street

Some extended existentials have a non-existential counterpart: *A fox was running down the street.*

Existential constructions play a role in *information structuring in that *new information is placed later in the containing clause, such that it follows *given information.

There-existentials also occur with verbs other than *be*. This is called the *presentational construction.

There *comes* a time in everyone's life when you leave your parents' house
Once upon a time there *lived* a beautiful princess

●● ***have*-existential**: (in CGEL) a *sentence or clause containing the verb *have* which corresponds semantically to a *there*-existential. Thus the following examples:

I have a hole in my pocket
My pocket has a hole in it

correspond to:

There is a hole in my pocket

Similarly:

You have visitors waiting to see you

corresponds to:

There are visitors waiting to see you
Visitors are waiting to see you

existential *there* *See* EXISTENTIAL.

exocentric

1. Of a structure: without a *head. Also called **non-headed** or **unheaded**. Contrasted with *endocentric.

Some *phrases are regarded as being always exocentric in some frameworks, e.g. *prepositional phrases. *See* HEAD (1); HEADED.

2. Of a *compound: not *headed; not grammatically and/or not semantically equivalent to either of its parts.

One kind of exocentric compound is the *bahuvrihi type, which is of the same *word class as one of the members of the compound, but exhibits a significant shift of *meaning (e.g. *fathead* and *head* are both *nouns, but a *fathead* is not a kind of head). Other kinds have neither grammatical nor semantic equivalence, e.g. *pullover* (a *noun made up of a *verb + *particle (1)/*preposition), *outcome* (a noun made up of a particle/preposition + verb), *commonplace* (an *adjective made up of an adjective + noun).

> 2001 V. ADAMS The term **exocentric** describes expressions in which no part seems to be of the same kind as the whole or to be central to it. The noun *change-over* is exocentric, and so are 'verb-complement' noun compounds like *stop-gap*, along with adjective + noun and noun + noun compounds like *air-head*, *paperback*, *lowlife*.

exophora Situational *reference; a linguistic unit that derives (part of) its meaning from the *extralinguistic situation. Contrasted with *endophora.

The understanding of language in general requires a certain degree of knowledge of the world, but some language is particularly dependent for its intelligibility on the hearer's knowledge of the extralinguistic situation. For example, *There she is!* taken out of context conveys little meaning: *there* could refer to all sorts of places, and *she* can refer to a female person or animal, but it needn't.

- **exophoric**: of the nature of, or pertaining to, exophora (e.g. **exophoric ellipsis**, **exophoric reference**; the latter is the same as exophora).

expanded coordinate In CaGEL, the part of a *coordination structure that is introduced by a *coordinator, e.g.

homes *and offices*

expansion (In *Systemic Grammar.) One of the two major logico-semantic categories held to explain the relationship between *clauses, the other being *projection.

experiencer *Semantics*. A *semantic role label applied to a *phrase that refers to the *animate entity that experiences an action, event, state, etc. expressed by a *verb.

The term comes from *Case Grammar, in which it replaces the earlier term *dative (2). A verb of involuntary perception such as *hear* or *see* can be said to have an experiencer *subject (e.g. *I heard/saw a bird*), in contrast to verbs such as *listen* or *look*, which have *agent(ive) subjects. The subjects of other verbs of perception sometimes have an experiencer role (e.g. *I smell burning*), and sometimes an *agentive role (e.g. *Smell this meat—is it all right?*).

•• **experiencer verb**: *see* PSYCHOLOGICAL VERB.

experiential

1. Involving, or based on, experience.

2. In *Systemic Grammar, language has three *metafunctions: *ideational, *interpersonal, and *textual. The ideational part is further analysed into two parts. One is the **experiential**, meaning 'based on experience', which contrasts with a **logical** component, meaning 'based on certain general logical relationships'.

experiential present perfect *See* PRESENT PERFECT.

expletive (*n. & adj.*) (A *word or *phrase) that serves to 'fill out' an *utterance (from late Latin *expletivus* meaning 'serving to fill out', from *ex-* 'out', and *plere* 'fill'); especially applied to a swearword.

Some expletives are *formulaic expressions of a particular type which may be grammatically *irregular in some way. For example *Damn you!* appears to be *imperative in form, but an imperative *verb is not normally followed by *you*.

•• **expletive *it***: another term for *anticipatory *it*, ambient *it*, *dummy *it*, *introductory *it*, etc.

The term indicates that this *it* fills a syntactic space.

explicit performative *See* PERFORMATIVE.

exponence

1. The relationship between an (abstract) grammatical *feature (2), unit, *structure, etc. and an actual instance, or **exponent**, of it. Also called

simple exponence. An example is the *realization of the *past tense in English by the *inflectional ending *-ed*.

> 1964 R. H. ROBINS All categories are part of the descriptive apparatus or frame set up by the linguist to deal with the particular language, and the relation between them and the material of utterance (or, *mutatis mutandis*, of writing) is one of class and category to exponent or manifestation.

•• **extended exponence**: the phenomenon whereby a particular grammatical feature, unit, structure, etc. is realized by more than one *formative, or other kind of element. Thus in English the *perfect is realized by a form of the *auxiliary verb *have* in combination with a *past participle.
•• **multiple exponence** (also called **cumulative exponence**): the phenomenon whereby a particular formative, or other kind of element, realizes more than one grammatical feature, unit, structure, etc.

2. In *Systemic Grammar, exponence is one of three (or four) scales (*see* SCALE-AND-CATEGORY GRAMMAR), along with *rank, *delicacy, and possibly *depth.

exponent *See* EXPONENCE.

expressive

(*adj.*) *Semantics*. Designating a type of feeling-based *meaning.

Expressive meaning corresponds to some extent with *attitudinal, *emotive, and *interpersonal meaning.

See also COGNITIVE; COMMUNICATIVE MEANING; CONATIVE; CONNOTATION; DENOTATIVE; DESCRIPTIVE; ILLOCUTIONARY MEANING; REFERENTIAL MEANING.

(*n.*) A kind of *speech act, e.g. a wish, congratulation.

extended bahuvrihi *See* BAHUVRIHI.

extended existential construction *See* EXISTENTIAL.

extended exponence *See* EXPONENCE.

Extended Standard Theory *See* STANDARD THEORY.

extension

1. *Semantics*. The *referent or range of *referents covered by a particular term.

The word is taken over from logic, and contrasts with **intension**. The extension of the word *horse* would include all animals to which the word is applied. The intension of the word *horse* would cover those features and characteristics that distinguish this animal from others.

See also CONNOTATION; DENOTATION.

2. (In *Systemic Grammar.) A type of relationship between *clauses whereby one clause expands another in various kinds of ways.

Extension can be embodied in a *coordinate or a *subordinate clause. Extension adds something new to the other clause, if only by simple addition. For example, the 'extending' clause might begin (*both* . . .) *and*, (*neither* . . .) *nor*, *but*, *while*, *whereas*, and so on. Or the extension might add by *variation (2) (e.g. *but not*, *except* (*that*), *rather than*), or perhaps by an alternative (e.g. (*either* . . .) *or*). *Apposition is also included under this heading.

- **extensional**.

See also EXISTENTIAL.

extensive

1. Of a grammatical *complement: construed as referring to someone or something other than the *referent of the grammatical *subject. Contrasted with *intensive. Thus in *Otto likes Greg*, the referent of the *direct object is not the same as the referent of the *subject.

2. In *Systemic Grammar, where the *direct object of traditional grammar is analysed as part of *complementation, the direct object may be termed the **extensive complement** to distinguish it from an *intensive complement. An **extensive verb** is therefore typically a *transitive verb taking one or two objects and an **extensive clause** is one containing such a verb and its complement(s), e.g. *They are playing our tune*.

external argument *See* ARGUMENT.

extralinguistic Referring to anything in the world outside language, but which is relevant to the *utterance.

The term is applied to the situation (sometimes called the **situational context** or **extralinguistic context**) in which language operates. Extralinguistic features of utterances often include shared knowledge, without which they might make little sense. For example, the meaning of *pronouns often depends on the situation: *Did he take them? Are they there yet? Isn't that lovely?* Extralinguistic features can also include body language, tone of voice, etc., which are called *paralinguistic features in other analyses.

Compare EXOPHORIC; METALINGUISTIC.

extraposed object *See* EXTRAPOSITION.

extraposed subject *See* EXTRAPOSITION.

extraposition The *postponement or *movement (1) of a unit, typically a *clause, to the right, involving the use of a substitute item in the position where the unit in question originated.

Extraposition is frequently found with clauses that function as *subject. In such cases the subject is moved to a *position after the *verb, and *anticipatory *it* is substituted in subject position, e.g.

It's no use *crying over spilt milk* (*compare*: Crying over spilt milk is no use)
It's disappointing *that you can't stay longer* (*compare*: That you can't stay longer is disappointing)

This displacement often takes place to satisfy the principles of *end-focus and/or *end-weight.

Some examples of 'extraposition' have no corresponding non-extraposed equivalents. In such cases extraposition is obligatory, e.g.

It seems *that they're not coming after all* (*That they're not coming after all seems)

An **extraposed subject** (exemplified above) is also called a **postponed subject**. Extraposition of *objects also occurs, and sometimes this is obligatory in the same way, e.g.

I consider *it* a shame *that you never replied to my plea*
You owe *it* to me *to explain yourself* (*You owe to explain yourself to me)

Extraposition is not to be confused with *postposition.
● **extrapose**: displace a linguistic unit by extraposition.
●● **extraposition from NP**: a process whereby a *modifying phrase, clause, etc. is moved to the right from inside a *noun phrase. In the following example the *prepositional phrase has been extraposed to the right out of its containing noun phrase:

[$_{\text{NP}}$ *Many reports* _] *were written* [$_{\text{PP}}$ *on the political situation in Scotland*]

The symbol '_' indicates where the PP was moved from.

extrinsic modality *See* EPISTEMIC MODALITY.

F

factitive

1. *Semantics.* Of a linguistic element, usually a *verb: expressing the notion of making something, or causing a result.

In a broad sense this term can apply to any *transitive verb with the *meaning of creating a result, e.g. the classic *kill* (if X kills Y, the result is that Y is dead). Other factitive verbs have meanings like *create, make, produce* (e.g. *make a cake*), which are usually termed *causative in more popular grammar.

The term is also sometimes used of *complex transitive verbs that have a *resultative meaning (as in e.g. *They painted the town red, They made him president*).

2. (In *Case Grammar.) Describing the *case (3) of the *noun phrase which refers to the thing made or created. In *I've been making cakes, cakes* is in the factitive case, in contrast to the same phrase in *They've eaten the cakes,* where *the cakes* is in the *objective (3) case. In later Case Grammar, this is the *result case.

See also RESULT.

factive *Semantics.*

1. (*n. & adj.*) (A *verb or a following **that*-clause) relating to the *assertion of a fact.

A verb that asserts the truth of a following *clause is a **factive verb** (or **factive**), e.g.

I *know* that you were overcharged
I *regret* that you were overcharged

These verbs contrast with **non-factive** verbs which leave the *proposition open:

I *believe* that he was overcharged

and *contrafactive verbs:

He *pretends* that he was overcharged
I *wish* that he had been overcharged

The proposition that follows a factive verb is a **factive predicate** (or a **factive**). Factive predicates can also depend on other parts of speech, not only verbs, e.g.

It is a pity that he was overcharged
I am sorry that he was overcharged

2. (In older usage.) The same as *factitive (1).

• **factivity**: the quality of being factive.

See also FACTUAL.

factual

1. Of a *clause: referring to actual events, results, *states, etc., e.g.

I met her last year
I arrived late, so I unfortunately missed dinner (factual result)
Were you late? (a factual *question, as it requires a factual answer)

This type of clause contrasts with **non-factual** clauses, as in:

I arrived early *so that I wouldn't miss dinner* (i.e. purpose, intention).

*Imperatives, *subjunctives, and the *infinitive are said to be non-factual *moods.

Both factual and non-factual *predications (1) contrast with *counterfactual predications, where the truth is the reverse of what is said in the predication, as in:

I wish I knew	(i.e. I don't know)
If only I had arrived earlier!	(i.e. I did not arrive early)

Open (or real) *conditions are sometimes described as factual (*If you come at six . . .*), in contrast to remote (or unreal, hypothetical, remote) ones (*If you came at six . . .*), which are variously described as *counterfactual or non-factual.

•• **factual condition**: *see* CONDITION.

2. Of a *verb: when followed by a **that*-clause containing a verb in the *indicative mood.

Factual verbs, in this formal, syntactic definition, include both *public verbs of speaking and *private verbs of thinking. Although these verbs may be generally described as referring to fact, the term is used with a rather wider meaning than the more semantically defined *factive (1), and the predication may not be factual as in sense (1). Thus factual verbs may include *allege*, *argue*, *bet*, *claim*, *pretend*, *realize*, *suspect*, and other verbs that would hardly be described as factive. Factual verbs contrast with *suasive verbs.

• **factuality**: the quality of being factual.

false cognate *See* FALSE FRIEND.

false friend A *word that has the same or a similar form in two (or more) languages, but different meanings in each.

This term is used in contrastive analysis and foreign language teaching. For example, the French adjective *sympathique* (like Italian *simpatico*) often means 'nice', 'pleasant', or 'likeable' and is therefore a false friend to English *sympathetic*. In the same way French *actuel* means 'present', not 'actual'.

Sometimes also called **false cognate** and **faux ami**.

feature

1. A distinctive characteristic of some part of the language. For example, hesitations, false starts, and the like are features of spoken language. ●● **extralinguistic feature:** a feature that is not purely linguistic, e.g. different types of body language, such as facial expressions, shrugs, and nods.

2. The atomic syntactic, semantic, and/or phonological attributes that linguistic units (e.g. *lexical items or *clauses) can be broken into, using a procedure called *componential analysis. The features are often *binary, i.e. specified as '+' or '−'. Semantic features allow us to analyse the word *bachelor* as [+ male] [+ adult] [+ human] [− married]. However, such **feature analysis** does not work equally well in all areas of the lexicon.

See also MORPHOSYNTACTIC.

feminine (*n. & adj.*) (A *noun etc.) of the grammatical *gender that mainly denotes female persons or animals. Contrasted with *masculine and *neuter.

In some languages grammatical gender distinctions of masculine and feminine (and sometimes also neuter) apply to all *nouns and related *words. In English, however, grammatical gender distinctions are found only in *third person singular personal *pronouns, where the feminine forms (*she, her, herself, hers*) contrast with the masculine ones (*he, him*, etc.) and the non-personal forms (*it, its*, etc.).

The *suffix -*ess* (e.g. in *lioness, hostess*) is a feminine marker in nouns, but its use has decreased: many people who might previously have used the word *actress* now prefer to use *actor* to refer to both male and female actors.

Some male-female pairs of words are *morphologically related (e.g. *hero/heroine, widow/widower*), but many are not (e.g. *boy/girl, duck/drake*).

Compare COMMON; DUAL.

FG *See* FUNCTIONAL GRAMMAR.

field *Semantics*. A range or system of *referents that have some aspect of *meaning in common. Sometimes called *domain.

The theory of semantic fields asserts that the meaning of a *word depends partly on the other words it is related to in meaning. All such words together constitute a **semantic field** (or **lexical field**). In different languages the same field is often apportioned differently, with dissimilar sets of terms used for that field. Classic examples are the fields of colour and kinship. It is well known that languages divide the colour spectrum differently, but in English the meaning of, for example, *blue* is limited by the existence of *green* and *purple*, and the latter is itself further limited by the existence of, say, *mauve*. Similarly, the meanings of *brother*, *cousin*, and so on form a network of connected family terms.

field of discourse *Sociolinguistics*. The subject matter being talked or written about.

In some cases different subject matter may involve few differences other than those of *vocabulary. But some fields of *discourse are characterized by their own distinctive grammatical styles, e.g. legal language, football commentaries, advertisements, sermons.

Compare REGISTER.

filled pause The use of a hesitation noise.

Hesitation noises, inadequately represented as *eh*, *er*, *erm*, etc., are a common feature of speech; they are used to give the speaker time to think, or to prevent another speaker from taking over.

filler

1. A *word or words that can fill a particular functional *slot in a *slot-and-filler analysis of *clause structure.

Identifying functional slots, and the linguistic items that fill them, is one way of analysing clauses and *sentences. Thus *Jill/lives/on the hill* contains three slots, which are identifiable as *subject/*predicator/*adverbial. The fillers in this particular case are, formally, a *noun phrase, a *verb (phrase), and a *prepositional phrase, but these slots could be filled by other elements without changing the nature of the slots. For example, we could replace the prepositional phrase with an *adverb phrase: *Jill lives frugally*.

2. A word or larger formulaic expression, usually outside the syntax of its adjoining or containing clause, that serves to fill what might otherwise be an unwanted pause in conversation; e.g. *oh*, *well*, *you know*. Also called **pragmatic particle**.

Compare DISCOURSE MARKER.

final Designating, or occurring in, a *position at the end of a containing linguistic unit (e.g. a *phrase or *clause).
•• **final clause:** a *subordinate clause that expresses an intention or *purpose, and is typically introduced by *in order that, so that, so as to*, etc.
See also PURPOSE.
•• **final position** (also called *end position): this is often contrasted with *initial (or *front) and *medial (or *mid) position, and the concept is used particularly in relation to *ellipsis, and to the placing of *adverbials. For any particular unit functioning as adverbial, the term does not necessarily mean 'at the very end of its containing clause', but rather 'after the *verb (and *object)'. Thus *immediately* and *without question* are both in final position in *The money was repaid immediately without question*.

final combining form *See* NEOCLASSICAL COMPOUND.

finite Carrying *tense. Contrasted with *non-finite.

*Verbs that carry tense, and by extension the *verb phrases (1/2), *clauses, and *sentences that contain them, can be described as finite.

The *third person singular *present tense *-s* form (e.g. *looks*, *sees*) is always finite, as is the *past (2) form (e.g. *looked*, *saw*), whereas the *present participle in *-ing* (e.g. *looking*, *seeing*) and the *past participle in *-ed/-en* (e.g. *looked*, *seen*) are *non-finite. The *base form (e.g. *look*, *see*) can be either. It is finite as a present tense form (e.g. *I see the coastline*), but non-finite as an *infinitive (e.g. *I can see the coastline*).

There is disagreement as to whether the base form in the *imperative (e.g. *Stay here!*) and the *subjunctive (e.g. *The boss insists that she stay late*) is finite or non-finite, though most accounts opt for the former view.

Although we speak of finite verb phrases, it is in fact only the first verb in a finite verb phrase that is finite, e.g.

We *have* been wondering
It *may* be being changed

In some recent work in linguistics the idea that verb forms are finite or non-finite has been abandoned. Instead, finiteness is regarded as a property of higher-order units such as clauses.

> 2007 I. NIKOLAEVA The development of syntactic theory starting from the 1960s led to an obvious departure from traditional assumptions. Finiteness was reanalysed as something more abstract, essentially a clausal category that is only secondarily reflected in the form of the verb.

• **finitely**.
• **finiteness**: the fact or quality of being finite.
•• **finite passive construction**: *see* PASSIVE.

finite state grammar A theoretical model of grammar discussed by the American linguist Noam Chomsky in his book *Syntactic Structures* (1957).

The model was a deliberately over-simple one that could not account for many features of real language. It was introduced in order to show the need for more elaborate theories.

Compare GENERATIVE GRAMMAR (2); PHRASE (1); TRANSFORMATIONAL.

first conditional *See* CONDITIONAL.

first language *See* LANGUAGE.

first person (Denoting, or used in conjunction with a *word referring to) the speaker or writer, in contrast to the addressee(s), or others.

First person *pronouns are *I*, *me*, *myself*, *my*, *mine* in the *singular; and *we*, *us*, *ourselves*, *our*, *ours* in the *plural. (Some of these items are regarded in some models as *determinatives (1) when they are placed before *nouns.)

Uniquely among English verbs, *be* has a distinct first person singular form in the *present tense, namely *am*.

Compare SECOND PERSON; THIRD PERSON.

Firthian (*adj.*) Of, pertaining to, or characteristic of the British linguist John Rupert Firth (1890–1960).

(*n.*) A person who subscribes to Firth's theories.

J. R. Firth, Professor of General Linguistics in the University of London (1944–56), was influential in the development of linguistics in Britain. Characteristic of his approach is the concept of **polysystemicism** (i.e. that language is not one system, but a set of systems). *Systemic Grammar is a development of his ideas.

• **Firthianism**.

> 1975 T. F. MITCHELL There appear to be three salient features of Firthianism . . . : (1) insistence on the centrality of meaning in all its aspects (2) adoption of a basic inductive approach to language study (3) recognition of the priority of syntagmatic analysis.

See also NEO-FIRTHIAN; SYSTEMIC GRAMMAR.

fixed Not subject to variation.

•• **fixed phrase**: a *phrase of which few if any variants are *acceptable (also called **set expression**).

In some phrases no change either of an individual *word or of the word order is likely. Examples of fixed phrases are:

knife and fork	(*fork and knife)
pay attention to	(*pay attention towards/for/at)
heir apparent	(*apparent heir)

from bad to worse	(*from good to better)
beneath contempt	(*below/under/underneath contempt)
no good, no different	(*no bad, no similar)
for the time being	(*for the time that is)
to and fro	(*to and from)
as it were	

Compare COLLOCATE; FORMULA.

•• **fixed word order**: a characteristic of some languages, whereby a change in the word order (strictly speaking: *constituent order) can change the *meaning of (a part of) a sentence.

English is, relatively speaking, a fixed word order language, since the order *subject-*verb-*object is typical, and a change can significantly affect the meaning. Compare, for instance, *The child chased the goose* with *The goose chased the child*.

See FREE WORD ORDER.

flection The same as *inflection. (Now old-fashioned.)
• **flectional**, **flectionless**.

focus (*n.*) The most important or contrastive part of a *sentence or *clause in terms of its information content or prominence.

In analysing a sentence in terms of the structure of its information content or 'message' (as opposed to its syntactic structure), it is common to divide it into two, applying such terms as *given and *new, *topic and *comment, and *theme and *rheme to the two parts. Focus is another label for the second term in such pairs, used as such in e.g. CGEL:

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. There is commonly a one-to-one relation between 'given' in contrast to 'new' information on the one hand, and theme in contrast to focus on the other.

The pairs given/new, topic/comment, theme/rheme, etc. are sometimes treated as more or less synonymous, and indeed in many cases the topic or theme will be something 'given' or already known, while the second part of the sentence, the comment or rheme, will present new information. The term focus is not, however, quite the same as rheme. The former often refers to the end portion of the rheme (cf. *end-focus), rather than the entire rheme, and in speaking it roughly correlates with the final nuclear stress, as in the following example:

The phone's still out of ORder

The focus can be shifted to a point earlier in the sentence if the information at the end of the sentence is predictable. This is called **marked focus**, e.g.

The PHONE is ringing (i.e. not the doorbell)

In fact, the focus can be marked on any part of a sentence, by shifting the main sentence stress:

You should phone YOUR mother	(i.e. not mine)
You should PHONE your mother	(i.e. not text her)
You SHOULD phone your mother	(i.e. it's your duty)
YOU should phone your mother	(i.e. don't expect someone else to)

When written (without capitals or other marking) this sentence would normally be interpreted as having the focus at the end (i.e. as coextensive with *mother*), so special devices must be used to mark the focus at a different place.

See also CLEFT; INFORMATION STRUCTURE; MARKED; PSEUDO-CLEFT.

(*v.*) Make the focus of something, or (use to) place the focus on something.

focusing adjunct *See* FOCUSING ADVERB.

focusing adverb An *adverb that focuses on a particular part of a *sentence, *clause, *phrase, etc. Also called **focusing adjunct** and **focusing subjunct**.

Typical focusing adverbs are *even*, *exactly*, *merely*, *only*, e.g.

Even in old age, she was immensely active
I *merely asked* them the time
Only you would say a thing like that

The classification of adverbs is notoriously difficult, and there is considerable variety in the way it is done.

See also DEGREE; INTENSIFYING ADVERB; SUBJUNCT.

focusing subjunct *See* FOCUSING ADVERB.

folk etymology A popular modification of the form of a *word, in order to render it apparently meaningful. (Also called **popular etymology**.)

Welsh rarebit, an alteration of *Welsh rabbit*, is an example of folk etymology. It seems to be based on the belief that nobody could describe melted cheese on toast as 'rabbit'. But *Welsh rabbit* is correct: an ironical name that grew up in the days when only the better-off would be likely to eat much meat. Other examples of folk etymology are the more familiar-sounding *sparrow grass* (for *asparagus*) and *forlorn hope*, now meaning 'a faint remaining hope', but based on the Dutch *verloren hoop*, actually meaning 'lost troop' (i.e. a storming party, etc.). The *cock-* of *cockroach*, the *-wing* of *lapwing*, and the *-house* of *penthouse* all result from the attempt to make at least a part of an arbitrary word into a meaningful element (their earlier forms being *cacarootch*, *lappewinke*, and *pentice*).

force *See* ILLOCUTIONARY.

foreign plural A *plural form of a *noun that retains the *inflection of the foreign *word of which it is a *borrowing.

Many nouns taken from foreign languages retain their foreign plurals. This applies particularly to Greek and Latin loanwords, many of which retain **classical plurals**, e.g.

crisis, crises
phenomenon, phenomena
larva, larvae
erratum, errata

Some have alternative anglicized plurals:

candelabrums/candelabra
formulas/formulae
corpuses/corpora

And some have both types of plural, but with different *meanings (e.g. *appendixes/appendices*).

Because of its exceptional divergence in form from all other patterns of English plural formation, the Latin and Greek -*a* plural has shown a tendency to be reinterpreted as a non-*count form, or as a *singular with its own -*s* plural. This tendency has progressed furthest in *agenda*, and has met with varying degrees of acceptance in *candelabra*, *criteria*, *data*, *media*, and *phenomena*.

Examples of foreign plurals from other languages include *bureaux/bureaus* (French), and *cherubim/cherubs*, *kibbutzim/kibbutzes* (Hebrew).

form The *shape or external characteristics of a linguistic unit; contrasted with its *meaning or *function.

1. One of the ways in which a *word can be spelt, pronounced, or inflected.

For example, all *lexical verbs have *inflectional forms (represented by a *lexeme), as do many *nouns. Thus *see* has five forms: *see*, *sees*, *seeing*, *saw*, *seen*, and many nouns have a *plural form ending in the *suffix -*s* and a *genitive form ending in -*'s*. *See also* INFLECTION.

2. Part of the internal structure of a word; the same as *morpheme (2).

Words can be made up of *free (1) forms and *bound (1) forms (or morphemes). Sometimes a bound form indicates which *word class a particular item belongs to. For example, the suffix -*ness* normally indicates that the word in which it occurs is a noun. However, the word class of many items cannot be identified in this way, and it needs instead to be identified by the *function (1) these items perform in the containing *sentence or *clause. *See* DISTRIBUTION; FORM CLASS.

3. The syntactic identity of a linguistic unit as belonging to a particular type of *phrase, clause, etc., based on its internal *structure, and on the way it behaves syntactically in a sentence. Thus in *The film ended late* we identify *the film* as a *noun phrase, because it is a string of words whose *head is a noun, and because it occurs in a typical noun phrase *position in the sentence.

Units identified in this way can be analysed further. For example, phrases can be analysed into their formal *constituent parts. Thus, a noun phrase may consist of a single noun (e.g. *people*), but often contains a *determinative (1) and/or an *adjective phrase (e.g. *the most interesting people*) and sometimes *postmodification (*the most interesting people that I ever met*).

Form contrasts with function (1) here. 'Noun phrase' is a form category, but a noun phrase can function in various ways, for example as *subject, *direct object, prepositional *complement, or *adverbial.

formal

1. Relating to *form (3) as opposed to *function (1). Contrasted with *functional.

*Noun, *noun phrase, *verb phrase, etc. are form(al) categories, defined largely by their structural composition, irrespective of their *meaning or function in a sentence.

2. Relating to form as opposed to meaning.

Traditional grammar often defines linguistic units in *notional terms, e.g. 'A noun is the name of a person, place, or thing'. Modern grammar, seeking more formal criteria, prefers to define word classes largely by their syntactic *distribution.

3. Of language used in particular situations: characterized by a relatively impersonal, reserved attitude, and adherence to conventional social mores. Contrasted with *informal.

Formal speech and writing is characterized by the use of more complicated grammatical structures (e.g. a higher level of *subordination), by more unusual or foreign *vocabulary, and by the avoidance of contracted forms (such as *can't* and *won't*) and *colloquialisms. Thus *Patrons are requested to refrain from smoking* is more formal than *Please don't smoke* in several respects. Formal and informal are, however, at the ends of a *cline, and often language is not marked as either.

4. formal *it*: (a traditional, and now disused, label for) *dummy *it* or *anticipatory *it*.

- **formality**.

See also IMPERSONAL.

formal semantics A kind of *logical semantics.

formation The same as *word formation.

formative

1. (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) the smallest meaningful physical element used in the formation of *words. The same as *morpheme (2).

Like morpheme, the term formative can be used in a physical sense. Formatives are divided into **lexical formatives**, used in the formation of derived words (e.g. *-ful* as in *hurtful*, *spoonful*), and **inflectional formatives** (e.g. *-ing* as in *hurting*, *laughing*).

2. (Now mostly not in use.) A physical form of an abstract morpheme. The same as *allomorph.

In this use, formative is not synonymous with *morpheme (1), but denotes one of the variants of such an abstract morpheme. Thus the three regular *plural endings of English (/s/, /z/, and /ɪz/) are all formatives of the single 'plural morpheme'.

form class Generally, another term for *word class.

formula (Plural **formulae**, **formulas**.) An instance of stereotyped language that usually allows few or no changes in *form (1), and may not conform to current grammatical *usage.

Common formulae include:

Thank you!
How do you do? (*How does your mother do?)
See you!
No way!
You don't say!
Many happy returns!
Please God
Yours sincerely

This category overlaps with *fixed phrase and with *fossilized.

- **formulaic**: that is a formula, that uses formulae.

See also NON-SENTENCE.
Compare IDIOM.

formulaic subjunctive *See* SUBJUNCTIVE.

form word *See* GRAMMATICAL WORD (1).

forwards anaphora The same as *cataphora.
See also ANAPHOR; ANAPHORA.

fossilized Having a structure that is no longer *productive.

Fossilized *structures in English are exemplified in:

Handsome is as handsome does	(*Good is as good acts)
Come what may	(*Occur what will)
Long may it last	(*Short may it last)
How come . . . ?	(*How happen . . . ?)

Fossilized *phrases include *fore and aft*, *kith and kin*, *to and fro*.

Fossilized *word-formation processes include such items as the *plural *-en*, still present in *children*, *brethren*, *oxen*, but not available, except as a joke, for new *words.

This category overlaps with *archaism, *fixed phrase, and *formula.

Compare IDIOM.

free

1. Designating a linguistic form that can be used in isolation.

●● **free form**, **free morpheme**: the smallest linguistic unit that can stand alone; contrasted with a *bound form. *See* MINIMUM FREE FORM.

2. Of *word order (more accurately: *constituent order) in a particular language: an order that can be varied without alteration to the basic meaning of the *sentence.

Free word order tends to be a characteristic of highly inflected languages like Latin, in which *inflections are the primary indicators of the relationships between the constituent parts of sentences, rather than word order. English, by contrast, has a fairly *fixed word order.

free direct speech *See* FREE INDIRECT SPEECH

free indirect speech Free indirect speech is a form of *indirect speech that retains the *sentence *structure of *direct speech (e.g. subject-auxiliary *inversion in *interrogatives) and usually lacks a reporting *verb, but is signalled by *backshifted verbs and by changes in *pronouns and in *time and *place references. It is popular in fiction and narrative writing for reporting both speech and thoughts. Called ***erlebte Rede*** in German.

Free direct speech is marked by an absence of *quotation marks, and also by *present (2) tenses that contrast with the *past (2) tenses of the rest of the narrative.

In the following extract the conversation is reported in a mixture of the author's free indirect speech (shown in italics) and the old man's free direct speech:

> As our conversation continued the old man became whiter and whiter. The dust clung to his hat, his face, his moustache, his eyelashes and his hands. He did not complain. *Who was doing all the killing?*
>
> —Oh, the guerillas of course. If the guerillas see you and do not know you they kill you.

And what about the army?
—The army are all right, if you greet them and have papers.
Was there enough food?
—There is enough food, but there is no business. (P. MARNHAM *So Far From God*, 1985, p.148.)

Compare DIRECT SPEECH; INDIRECT SPEECH.

free relative clause A type of *relative clause which, like many relative clauses, begins with a **wh*-word (variously referred to as a **free relative pronoun** or **fused relative pronoun**) but, unlike *canonical relative clauses, has no overt *antecedent. Instead, such clauses contain the antecedent within themselves, or, to put it differently, 'the *wh*-element is merged with its antecedent' (CGEL).

A free relative clause can refer to things or people, as well as to abstract ideas. Examples:

You can say *what you like*	(= You can say [[that which] you like])
Whoever told you this was wrong	(= [[The person who] told you this] was wrong)

Free relative clauses are often formally analysed as *noun phrases, because they occur in typical NP positions and can display *agreement with a following *verb; hence the alternative label **nominal relative clause** (CGEL). The terms **fused relative construction** (CaGEL) and **independent relative clause** are also found.

free relative construction *See* FREE RELATIVE CLAUSE.

free relative pronoun *See* FREE RELATIVE CLAUSE.

free variation The possibility of substituting an element for another without a change in *meaning.

Free variation occurs in the spelling of some *words (e.g. *realize/realise, judgement/judgment, jail/gaol*) and in the shape of some grammatical forms of words (e.g. *hewed/hewn, leaned/leant*).

Free variation in the use of different words is normally labelled *synonymy.

See also CONDITIONING; VARIANT.

frequency

1. The term is used in its everyday sense to group together semantically related adverbs, such as *always, usually, often, sometimes, never*. These are popularly called **frequency adverbs/adjuncts**.

Rate of occurrence.

See also INDEFINITE.

2. *Linguistics*. The rate at which a particular *word in a language is used.

How commonly or rarely words are used is of special practical interest to lexicographers and educationists. With modern technology it is possible to obtain word frequencies from vast collections of texts (*corpora), in order to confirm or disprove estimates of the frequency of use of particular words. The word of highest frequency in English, according to several different corpora, is *the*.

frequentative (*n. & adj.*) (An *inflection, *verb, etc.) expressing frequent repetition, or intensity of action.

In some languages there are special ways of forming frequentatives from ordinary verbs, e.g. in Latin, *rogito* ,'I ask repeatedly', formed on *rogo*, 'I ask'. In English the *suffixes *-er* and *-le* have been used to produce a number of verbs of this kind, e.g. *flitter* from *flit* and *crackle* from *crack*; but this is not a regularly *productive system.

The term is also used to describe other ways of expressing repeated verbal action, and is sometimes synonymous with *iterative (1).

front (*adj.*) Of the *position of a *constituent: at, or relatively close to, the beginning of a *sentence, *clause, etc.

(*v.*) Place (a constituent) at the beginning of a sentence, clause, etc. *See* FRONTING.

•• **front position**: this is referred to especially in the description of *adverbials.

See also END; FINAL; INITIAL; MEDIAL.

fronted Of a *constituent: placed at the beginning of a *sentence, *clause, etc. *See also* FRONTING.

fronted preposition A *preposition heading a *prepositional phrase placed at the beginning of a *clause in certain types of structures, for example *interrogative clauses, as in *On which shelf will you store the jam pots?* (where *on* heads the prepositional phrase *on which shelf*).

Compare STRANDING.

fronting The placing of a *constituent at the beginning of a *sentence, *clause, etc., often to achieve a certain effect.

English sentences typically begin with a *subject, but other functional elements—*object, predicative *complement, *adverbial, and even part of the *predicate—can be placed at the beginning, typically for *information structuring reasons, for instance in order to mark the *topic/*theme. Examples:

Loud music I do not like	(fronted object)
Horrible I call it	(fronted object-related predicative *complement)

After half an hour, we walked out (fronted *adverbial)
And *paint the town red* we did (fronted *verb phrase (2))

Compare TOPICALIZATION.

FSP *See* FUNCTIONAL SENTENCE PERSPECTIVE.

full

1. Complete; conforming in every respect to a description or definition.

●● **full apposition**: *see* APPOSITION.

●● **full conversion**: designating complete and permanent *conversion from one *word class to another.

●● **full sentence/clause**: a *sentence or *clause which conforms to the standard *rules of grammar, which is not characterized by *ellipsis, and normally contains a *subject and a (*finite) *verb. This term is contrasted with a *minor, *non-finite, or *verbless sentence/clause, which may be incomplete in one or more respects.

See also COMPLETE; KERNAL.

2. full stop: (in BrE) the punctuation mark <.> used at the end of a sentence or abbreviation. Also called **full point** (BrE) and **period** (AmE).

3. full verb: another term for *lexical verb. *Compare* MAIN VERB.

4. full word: another term for *content word.

function

1. The syntactic role that a linguistic unit plays within a 'higher' unit, such as a *phrase, *clause, or *sentence; distinguished from its *form.

The five *elements of clause structure, namely *subject, *verb, *object, *complement, and *adverbial, are grammatical functions. In addition, we distinguish *predicator as the function carried by the *main verb in a clause, and *predicate as the function assigned to the portion of a clause excluding the subject.

Within phrases, certain types of units can function as *modifiers, more specifically as *premodifiers or *postmodifiers.

There is no one-to-one correspondence between functions and their possible formal *realizations. Thus the functions of subject and *direct object are often realized by a *noun phrase, but can also be realized by a clause, e.g.

That the summer will be hot is by no means certain
I believe *that the summer will be hot*

2. The pragmatic (or *discourse) role of a clause.

Clauses may be classified in terms of their pragmatic (or discourse) functions. Thus the typical pragmatic functions of the *declarative, *interrogative, *exclamative, and *imperative *clause types are to make a *statement, ask a *question, utter an *exclamation, and issue a *directive. Deviations from these typical functions are called indirect *speech acts.

See also CLAUSE TYPE; COMMUNICATIVE *function*.

3. One of the social roles for which language is used.

This sense is similar to sense 2, but it is much more general. It has been suggested that there exists a limited set of primary speech functions such as offer, command, statement, and question; and that these cover all, or most, of the purposes for which language is used.

In the teaching of English (or any other modern language) to foreign learners, the concept of function has been extended to apply to a wide variety of social uses, such as making suggestions, complaining, and sympathizing.

functional As regards function; of, in, etc. function.

●● **functional category**: *see* FUNCTIONAL CATEGORY.
●● **functional conversion**: the same as *conversion.
●● **functional equivalence**: *see* EQUIVALENCE.
●● **functional head**: *see* HEAD.
●● **functional phrase**: *see* PHRASE.
●● **functional shift**: the same as *conversion.

functional category A *category that has predominantly grammatical importance in *phrase or *clause structure. Contrasted with *lexical category.

*Grammatical words (1) are functional categories. For example, in later *Generative Grammar (2) clauses are said to be *headed by an abstract functional category ‘I’ (= *inflection), which functions as the head of an inflection phrase (IP), and *complementizers are said to function as the head of **complementizer phrases** (CPs).

Functional Grammar (FG) A theory of grammar developed by the late Simon Dik and his associates since 1978 in which functional notions are of chief importance at various levels of representation.

> 1997 S. DIK & K. HENGEVELD In the functional paradigm . . . a language is in the first place conceptualized as an instrument of social interaction among human beings, used with the intention of establishing communicative relationships.

Functional Discourse Grammar (FDG) is a development of FG, but differs from it in a number of ways, so that it is now considered a separate theory.

Compare SYSTEMIC GRAMMAR.

Functional Sentence Perspective (FSP) A theory of linguistic analysis developed by the *Prague School, concerned with the amount of information conveyed by different parts of a *sentence or *utterance. The theory of *theme and *rheme derives from this theory.

See also COMMUNICATIVE *dynamism*.

function word *See* GRAMMATICAL WORD (1).

functor The same as *grammatical word (1). (A rare term.)

fused determiner-head construction *See* FUSION.

fused-head construction *See* FUSION.

fused modifier-head construction *See* FUSION.

fused participle A term coined by H. W. Fowler in the early twentieth century to denote a *structure which involves the *-*ing* form of a *verb (often called a *gerund) preceded by a *noun phrase without a *genitive -*'s* marker, or by an *accusative *pronoun, e.g.

Were you surprised at *my father arriving* early?
Forgive *me asking*, but . . .

Fowler considered the following genitival versions to be more 'correct':

Were you surprised at *my father's arriving* early?
Forgive *my asking*, but . . .

It should be noted that the 'fused participle' form is common in spoken, and even written, English.

See also GERUND.

fused predeterminer-head construction *See* FUSION.

fused relative construction *See* FREE RELATIVE CLAUSE.

fused relative pronoun *See* FREE RELATIVE CLAUSE.

fusion

1. The merging of linguistic elements, *functions (1), or *meanings in one form.

English *verb *inflections are an example of fusion. Thus the -*s* ending (e.g. *looks*, *puts*) signifies '*third person' + '*singular' + '*present'. This is referred to as fused (or multiple) *exponence.

- **fusional**: exhibiting or causing fusion.

> 1980 E. K. BROWN & J. E. MILLER We can . . . have rules of the form: MAN + pl → *men*. We call rules like this 'fusional'. Fusional rules have two morphemes on the left-hand side of the rule matched to a single morph on the right-hand side.

2. (In CaGEL): the phenomenon whereby in a particular *noun phrase two *functions (1) are combined: *determiner (1) + *head, *modifier + head, or *predeterminer (1) + head. These are called **fused-head constructions**.

In a **fused determiner-head construction** the functions of determiner and head are combined in one item. Here are examples of **simple, partitive**, and **special** fused determiner-head constructions:

> I asked you to buy some apples, but did you buy *any*? (simple: missing head is retrievable as *apples*)
> *Some* of their children are at university (partitive: 'some children from among their children')
> *That* is unacceptable (special: missing head is not retrievable)

The **fused modifier-head construction** combines a modifier and head, e.g. *The rich should be taxed more*; and the **fused predeterminer-head construction** combines a *predeterminer (1) and a head, e.g. *Mike eats half the amount I do for breakfast, but Jan eats double.*

• **fused**
•• **fused relative construction**: the same as *free relative clause.
•• **fused relative pronoun**: the same as *free relative pronoun

futurate The use of a particular *tense or *construction not normally used for that purpose to refer to *future (1) time.

Thus the **present futurate** is a *present (2) tense used to refer to future time, often with a time *adjunct (e.g. *Next week he flies to Kuwait*). The **past futurate** is a *past (2) tense used to refer to future *situations, viewed from a past moment in time, i.e. a *future in the past (e.g. *He left Rome in July 1989, but only a month later he would return*). The **present progressive futurate** is a present *progressive construction used to refer to future time (e.g. *Tomorrow we are having pasta*), while the **past progressive futurate** refers to the future from a past viewpoint, again using a progressive construction (e.g. *They were visiting us next week, but they've cancelled*).

future (*n. & adj.*)

1. (As a general concept.) (Designating) an *indefinite period of time yet to unfold after the present moment.

2. (As a linguistic concept.) (Designating) the term may refer to a *tense (the 'future tense') which traditionally refers to an *inflection on a *verb encoding *reference to a *situation in time that is yet to take place. In traditional grammar, and in some recent work, tenses formed with *shall* and *will* are called future tenses. More specifically, the combination *shall*/*will* + bare infinitive is called the **simple future tense** (sometimes **future simple**, e.g. *Greg will send you a text message later*), and *shall*/*will* + *be* + V-*ing* is called the **future continuous tense** or the **future progressive tense** (e.g. *They will be travelling by train*). Other tenses include the **future perfect tense** (e.g. *He will have seen your report*), the **past future perfect tense** (*She would have told you*), etc.

For some linguists the definition of tense as involving a verbal inflection entails that English has only a *present tense and *past tense, but no future tense, since there is no unique verbal inflection that encodes future time. In such frameworks it is argued that English can employ various different *constructions, each with its own meaning, to talk about future time, including the following:

the *will*/*shall* + *bare infinitive construction	e.g.	We will close at 5 p.m.; We shall see
the *will*/*shall* + progressive construction	e.g.	Jack will be teaching the new students
the *be going to* construction	e.g.	It is going to rain
the present *futurate construction	e.g.	His plane arrives at 8.33 a.m. If the plane is late . . . When he arrives . . .
the present progressive futurate construction	e.g.	I am seeing Robert tomorrow
the (simple) past futurate construction	e.g.	He left Rome in July 1989, but only a month he later he *would* return
the past progressive futurate construction	e.g.	They *were visiting* us next week, but they've cancelled.

See FUTURATE; FUTURE IN THE PAST; TENSE; TIME.

future in the past A *construction (*tense in some frameworks) in which a future *situation is viewed from a time in the *past (1).

Traditionally this label is given to a certain type of construction containing the *model verb *would*, e.g.

> They did not realize at the time that by 1914 the two countries *would* be at war

The construction (or tense) exemplified above is also called the past *futurate.

Other structures can also be used to describe what is seen as a future situation when viewed from a past perspective, e.g.

> We *were* bitterly *to regret* our decision
>
> I *was going* to tell you (when you interrupted me)

The latter is referred to as a **past progressive futurate**.

See also FUTURE; FUTURATE.

future perfect A *construction (*tense in some frameworks) formed by *shall*/*will* + *have* + a *past participle, expressing a **past in the future**.

In the traditional labelling of the tenses the **future perfect simple** is exemplified by:

I *will have wasted* the whole morning if they don't come soon

and the **future perfect continuous/progressive** by:

I *will have been waiting* three hours by one o'clock

A **future perfect passive** is also possible:

The best things *will have been sold* by the time you get there

In recent treatments of these constructions they are not regarded as separate tenses.

See also PAST PARTICIPLE; PERFECT.

fuzzy boundary *See* GRADIENCE.

fuzzy grammar *See* GRADIENCE.

G

gap A syntactic position in *clause structure associated with a *fronted *constituent, or other type of *antecedent. For example, in *What did he tell you _?* the underscore marks the position with which the **wh*-phrase *what* is associated. In some frameworks, e.g. *Generative Grammar (2), this association is treated in terms of *movement.

gapping A phenomenon caused by *medial *ellipsis (in contrast to the more usual *initial or *final ellipsis) in the second (or later) part of a *coordination, e.g.

I play golf and my brothers _ tennis
I will go by train and my friend _ by car

gender

1. A grammatical *category used for the classification of *nouns, *pronouns, and related words, partly according to natural distinctions of sex (or absence of sex).

> 1958 C. HOCKETT Genders are classes of nouns reflected in the behavior of associated words.

This quotation brings out that the gender of a noun in a particular grammatical configuration may be reflected on other items that are also part of the *structure in question, e.g. *adjectives. See 2 below.

See also GRAMMATICAL.

2. The property of belonging to one of such classes.

In some languages gender is an important grammatical property of nouns and related words, marked by distinct forms. In French, for example, all nouns are either *masculine (*son livre*, masculine = ‘his book’ or ‘her book’) or *feminine (*sa plume*, feminine = ‘his pen’ or ‘her pen’). In these languages natural gender is usually, though not entirely, marked by the matching grammatical gender. In some languages (e.g. Latin, German, and Old English) there is a third gender, **neuter**, which typically marks nouns denoting inanimate objects (although many such nouns may belong to the other two genders, and some neuter nouns may refer to animate beings, e.g. *das Mädchen* ‘the-NEUTER girl’ in German).

In Modern English overt grammatical gender hardly exists, except in *third person singular pronouns:

he/him/his/himself	(masculine)
she/her/hers/herself	(feminine)
it/its/itself	(often called *non-personal, rather than neuter)

Even here there can be some mismatch between natural and grammatical gender. Inanimate countries, ships, cars, etc. are sometimes referred to by masculine or feminine pronouns, a baby may be *it*, and animals may be referred to by *personal or non-personal pronouns.

Natural gender distinctions are made covertly in many words referring to males and females. Pairs of words occasionally show a *derivational relationship (e.g. *hero/heroine, widow/widower*), but many male and female noun pairs show no *morphological connection (e.g. *brother/sister, duck/drake*).

Compare COMMON, DUAL.

general determiner *See* INDEFINITE ARTICLE; SPECIFIC.

Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar (GPSG) A linguistic theory of grammar originating in the 1970s and offering a radical alternative to *Generative Grammar (2).

It does not recognize *transformations, but uses 'metarules' and other devices that result in generalized rules which were not possible in earlier *Phrase Structure Grammar.

See also CHOMSKYAN; GENERATIVE; GOVERNMENT-BINDING THEORY; GRAMMAR; HEAD-DRIVEN PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; MINIMALIST PROGRAM; PRINCIPLES AND PARAMETERS THEORY; STANDARD THEORY; TRANSFORMATIONAL GRAMMAR.

generate (In *Generative Grammar (2) and derived frameworks.) Produce (grammatical *structures) by the application of *rules that can be formulated precisely.

Most grammars that have ever been written 'generate' *sentences in the sense that the grammaticality of both existing and potential sentences can be tested against the rules. The term in a stronger sense is derived from one of its uses in mathematics, and was introduced into grammatical theory by the American linguist Noam Chomsky in *Syntactic Structures* (1957).

> 2001 T. WASOW How can we give a finite description of something infinite? Inspired by earlier work in mathematical logic and the foundations of computer science, Chomsky answered this question by proposing that we think of grammars as devices that put pieces of sentences together according to precise

rules, thereby ‘generating’ well-formed sentences. If some of the grammar rules can apply to their own outputs (in technical jargon, if some rules are *recursive), then it is possible for finite grammars to generate infinite languages.

• **generation**.

generative (In *Generative Grammar (2) and related frameworks.) Able to *generate grammatical structures.

• **generativist**: a person who employs the methods of *Generative Grammar (1/2).

See also GENERATE.

Generative Grammar

1. A grammar that incorporates a set of *rules capable of producing (generating) an infinite number of *grammatical (and only grammatical) sentences of a language. This is a general sense of the term, often written with lower-case initials.

2. A theory of grammar that was first introduced by the American linguist Noam Chomsky in *Syntactic Structures* (1957). It has been developed and changed by Chomsky and others in diverging ways. It has also been challenged, but its influence on linguistic thought has been, and remains, considerable.

> 1986 N. CHOMSKY The concerns of traditional and generative grammar are, in a certain sense, complementary: a good traditional or pedagogical grammar provides a full list of exceptions (irregular verbs, etc.), paradigms and examples of regular constructions, and observations at various levels of detail and generality about the form and meaning of expressions . . . Generative grammar, in contrast, is concerned primarily with the intelligence of the reader, the principles and procedures brought to bear to attain full knowledge of a language.

The term is sometimes used as a synonym of *Transformational Grammar (or **Transformational-Generative Grammar**), but generative grammar does not necessarily contain transformational rules.

See MONOSTRATAL.

See also CHOMSKYAN; GENERALIZED PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; GENERATIVE; GENERATIVE SEMANTICS; GOVERNMENT-BINDING THEORY; GRAMMAR; HEAD-DRIVEN PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; MINIMALIST PROGRAM; PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; PRINCIPLES AND PARAMETERS THEORY; STANDARD THEORY; TRANSFORM; TRANSFORMATION.

Generative Semantics A theory of grammar, associated with George Lakoff, James McCawley, John Robert Ross, and others, which was developed during the late 1960s as an alternative to the standard *generative model.

Despite its name, it is not a theory of semantics, but a grammatical model in which semantics plays an important role.

> 1991 J. LYONS The term 'generative semantics' refers to an alternative version of transformational-generative grammar—one which differs from the standard version of *Aspects* [*of the Theory of Syntax*] in that the rules of the semantic component are said to be 'generative', rather than 'interpretive'.

See also CHOMSKYAN; GENERALIZED PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; GENERATIVE; GOVERNMENT-BINDING THEORY; GRAMMAR; HEAD-DRIVEN PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; MINIMALIST PROGRAM; PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; PRINCIPLES AND PARAMETERS THEORY; STANDARD THEORY; TRANSFORM; TRANSFORMATION; TRANSFORMATIONAL; TRANSFORMATIONAL GRAMMAR.

generic Relating or *referring to a whole class or *category; in contrast to *specific.

In describing the uses of the *articles, a useful distinction is drawn between the notions generic and specific which cuts across the distinction between *definite and *indefinite. In English, *the* + a *singular *count *noun can have definite and generic *meaning, as in

The dodo is extinct
Who invented *the wheel*?

The in combination with certain *adjectives is also used with generic (and plural) meaning:

The dead are venerated in many societies
The Chinese play a prominent role in current world affairs.

Some kinds of indefinite meaning are often labelled generic, as in

Unexploded bombs are dangerous	(plural *count)
An unexploded bomb is dangerous	(singular count)
Danger lurks everywhere!	(*uncount)

But *see* CLASSIFYING.

Some *personal pronouns are used with the generic meaning of 'people in general' or 'mankind':

One never can tell
Man seems to think *he* rules the planet
You can lead a horse to water
We still have many diseases to conquer

genitive (*n. and adj.*) (Designating) the *case *inflection typically carried by *nouns (noun phrases), including *pronouns, when they express *possession, close association, or a range of other *meanings. (Also called the **Saxon genitive**.)

The genitive is marked by the addition of *-'s* to regular *singular nouns and to *plurals that lack *s* (e.g. *the boy's mother*, *the children's mother*). An *apostrophe (') only, which has no spoken realization, is added to regular plurals (e.g. *the boys' mother*).

Some grammarians argue that, although it is a relic of the earlier English case system, the genitive should no longer be described in terms of case in modern English. On this view, the English genitive is not comparable to the *inflected genitive case of Latin, but is a type of *enclitic, as evidenced by the fact that the *-'s* ending can be added to a noun phrase, e.g.

[the Prince of Wales]'s speech

[the people in the flat below]'s radio

[someone else]'s problem

This phenomenon is sometimes called the **group genitive** or **group possessive**.

'Possession' is the most central meaning expressed by the genitive form, and for this reason the distinct genitive forms of the personal pronouns are called *possessive pronouns. However, other meanings are also possible, for example 'descriptive' meaning (e.g. *a women's college*, *London's West End*), 'measure' meaning (e.g. *a day's work*), and 'partitive' meaning (e.g. *the car's windscreen*; i.e. the windscreen is part of the car). The genitive seen in *See you at David's* or *I got it at the chemist's* is sometimes called the **local genitive**.

Meaning, rather than *surface syntax, distinguishes the **subjective genitive** and **objective genitive**. Thus the genitive has *subjective (2) meaning in *the architect's design of the tower* (compare *The architect designed the tower*), whereas it has *objective (2) meaning in *the enemy's defeat by the army* (compare *The army defeated the enemy*).

When a possessive or similar relationship can be expressed by a postmodifying *of*-phrase (e.g. *the mother of the boys*), the term **of*-genitive is often used.

• **genitival**: belonging to the genitive case, *construction, etc.

•• **dependent genitive**: a pronoun or noun phrase in the genitive case that *modifies the head noun inside a noun phrase, e.g. *Millie's cat*, *his job*, *the Mayor of London's policies*. *See also* SUBJECT.

●● **double genitive** (also called **post-genitive** or **oblique genitive construction**): a structure consisting of a noun + *of* + a genitive noun or pronoun, as in:

some books of Jane's
that cousin of yours

This structure might appear to express 'possession' twice, but in fact it has the advantage that it can combine *indefinite and *definite meaning, whereas the single genitive can only have definite meaning (e.g. *Jane's books*, *your cousin*).

●● **independent genitive**: a genitive apparently standing alone as a noun phrase because the head has been *ellipted, e.g. *Tom's* in *John's results were better than Tom's*.

A comparable possessive pronoun (e.g. *mine*, *yours*, etc.) is sometimes called an **independent possessive pronoun**.

●● **partitive genitive**: *see* PARTITIVE.

See also OBJECTIVE, *OF*-GENITIVE; SUBJECTIVE.

genre The type of text that a piece of writing or spoken *discourse belongs to from the point of view of its purpose, setting, and conventions of language use.

Compare DOMAIN; REGISTER.

Germanic (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) a family of related Indo-European languages that includes Danish, Dutch, English, German, Icelandic, Norwegian, and Swedish, or their presumed ancestor (**Common Germanic**).

Germanic affix *See* LEVEL ORDERING (HYPOTHESIS).

gerund Traditionally the gerund is the *-*ing* form of a *verb when used in a *noun-like way, as in *The* *playing* *of ball games is prohibited*, in contrast to the same form used as a *participle, e.g. *Everyone was* *playing* *ball games*. Sometimes called **verbal noun**. Both the term gerund, from Latin grammar, and the term verbal noun are out of favour among some modern grammarians.

The noun-like and verb-like properties of the *-ing* form are on a *cline. Consider the following examples:

He is *smoking* twenty cigarettes a day
The *smoking* of cigarettes is forbidden here
My *smoking* twenty cigarettes a day annoys them

In the first example *smoking* is clearly a verb, by virtue of licensing a *direct object (*twenty cigarettes*). In the second example *smoking* is a noun because it is preceded by the *definite article, and because it takes a *prepositional phrase as its *complement (*of cigarettes*). In the third example *smoking* is noun-like in being preceded by the *pronoun *my* (analysed in some grammars as a *determiner (2)), and in functioning as the *head of the phrase *my smoking twenty cigarettes a day*, which occurs in a noun phrase position as the *subject of the sentence. However, it is verb-like in taking a direct object, and in retaining verbal meaning.

When a word in *-ing* derived from a verb inflects for *plural and lacks verbal meaning, it is considered to be a noun (e.g. *these delightful drawings*).

Confusingly, different grammarians use the label gerund differently, and regard the gerund variously as a verb or as a noun, or as both at the same time, as the quotations below show. For this reason the term is perhaps best avoided.

> 1999 L. HAEGEMAN and J. GUÉRON Verbs may also end in *-ing*; this form is referred to as the present participle or the gerund.

> 2002 D. MILLER The gerund is of the category N and behaves syntactically as a noun. It is, however, a verbal noun (in traditional terms), that is, it has the internal composition of a VP. As such it is generally derived by zero-derivation or conversion.

> 2003 R. HUDSON English gerunds are indeed just what the traditional grammarians said: single words which are both verbs and nouns.

•• **gerund-participle:** a term used in CaGEL to denote the *present participle.

See also GRADIENCE; -*ING* CLAUSE; -*ING* FORM; PARTICIPLE; PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

gerundial noun (In CaGEL.) An alternative label for *gerund, i.e. a *noun that ends in *-ing*, e.g.

the *sinking* of the ships
their careless *shouting* of slogans

gerundive In Latin grammar, a gerundive (*n.*) is a form of a *verb which behaves like an *adjective, with the meaning ‘that should or must be done’. There is no grammatical equivalent in English, and the term is rarely used. When it is used, it is used as an adjective, and means ‘relating to the *gerund’, as in e.g. **gerundive clause**. In the latter sense we also find **gerundial** and **gerundival**.

gerund-participial clause *See* -*ING* CLAUSE.

gerund-participle *See* GERUND.

***get*-passive** A *passive construction formed by the *verb *get* (rather than *be*) + a *past participle.

The *get*-passive is sometimes considered informal, and its use has, for this reason, been discouraged. It can, however, be a useful way of making clear that the meaning of the construction as a whole involves an action or event, rather than a *state. Contrast:

They got married
The chair got broken

with the ambiguous

They were married
The chair was broken

The latter examples are *ambiguous because they can refer to the process of being married or broken, but also to the state of being married or broken. As *get* has a more *dynamic (1) meaning, the *get*-passive is often used for actions we do to ourselves (e.g. *get dressed*). When the action denoted by the verb is carried out by someone else a *get*-passive can imply that the *referent of the *subject was in some way responsible for what happened, or at any rate that there was a cause. Compare:

He got picked up by the police
She got involved in an argument
*The car got found abandoned

with

He was picked up by the police
She was involved in an argument
The car was found abandoned

given (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) information that is already known or familiar in a text or discourse setting, either because it has been mentioned in the *context, or through general or shared knowledge, and is therefore less important from an *information structure point of view; contrasted with *new information.

In speech, given information usually receives little prominence, while the important, new part of the message receives full prominence.

Given and new may correlate with the syntactic distinctions *subject and *predicate, as in *I'm at the end of my tether*, where *I* is given in the *situation, and is also the grammatical subject, and *(a)m at the end of my tether* is new, and also the predicate. However, the concepts in these pairs are not in a one-to-one relationship. For example, if we are already talking about Tom, then in *Tom's at the end of his tether*, *Tom* would be given. But if this were an answer to *Who did you say was at the end of his tether?* then *Tom* would be new and the rest given.

The terms given and new are often used interchangeably with *theme and *rheme; *focus; *topic and *comment, etc., but distinctions are sometimes made, e.g. in CGEL:

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. In contrast to 'given' and 'new', which are *contextually* established and to that extent 'extralinguistic', 'theme' and 'focus' are linguistically defined, in terms of position and prosody respectively.

A somewhat different distinction is made in *Systemic Grammar:

> 2014 M. A. K. HALLIDAY & C. MATTHIESSEN The Theme is what I, the speaker, choose to take as my point of departure. The Given is what you, the listener, already know about or have accessible to you. Theme + Rheme is speaker-oriented, whereas Given + New is listener-oriented.

Glossematics A variety of *structuralism introduced by the Danish scholar Louis Hjelmslev (1899–1965) in the 1930s and 1940s, concerned especially with developing an abstract theory of the *distribution of minimal forms (called *glossemes), and their mutual relationships.

glosseme In *Glossematics, any feature in a language (e.g. of *form, order, etc.) that carries *meaning, and cannot be analysed into smaller meaningful units.

The term has not acquired general currency.

goal *Semantics.*

1. (In some specialized models of grammar.) The *semantic role carried by the affected entity in a *proposition.

In this usage, the term contrasts with *actor or *agent. Thus *dog* is the goal in both of the following:

Man bites dog
The dog was bitten by the man

The term may even include something that results from an action (*factitive or *result in other analyses), as in:

I've built *a path*
A path has been made

It is not normally used of mental processes.

See EXPERIENCER; SENSER.

2. A semantic role assigned to an *argument which denotes an entity that is the target of the action denoted by a *verb, or the place to which something or someone moves, e.g.

We sent *the auditors* our accounts

In one model of *Case Grammar, goal and *patient were introduced with two contrasting semantic roles. Examples given included *I cut my foot with a rock* (*my foot* = goal) and *I cut my foot on a rock* (*my foot* = patient).

Goal, as a semantic role, is used in its more everyday sense in relation to verbs of movement (e.g. *We reached the harbour*), and as such contrasts with *source.

3. Used in semantic analyses of directional *prepositions and *adverbials.

Thus in *I always walk to the station* and *He threw the book at me*, the *prepositional phrases *to the station* and *at me* can be analysed as goal.

In a more formal *componential analysis of spatial prepositions, goal can be one of the basic components of meaning.

God's Truth (Designating) an extreme view of grammar which assumes that the 'rules' of grammar have an objective existence in the language, and that all good grammarians will therefore discover the same facts and propound the same descriptions.

Invented by Fred W. Householder (1913–1994) in 1952.

Compare HOCUS-POCUS.

govern (In traditional grammar.) Especially of *verbs and *prepositions: license a unit of a particular kind, typically a *noun phrase, and, if this NP is headed by a *pronoun, the *case (1) of the pronoun, where relevant.

The term is used in Latin and other inflected languages of *verbs and *prepositions which require the use of a particular case in a dependent noun or pronoun. Thus in *ab initio* 'from the beginning' *ab* requires the *ablative case (realized by the ending *-o* in this noun), whereas in *ad infinitum*, literally 'to infinity', *ad* requires the *accusative case (realized by *-um*).

The term is also used in relation to verbs that license a *prepositional phrase with a particular preposition as its *head, as in these examples:

They *deprived* him *of* his property
They *plied* him *with* drink

The term has been used more recently (e.g. in *Generative Grammar (2)) to refer to similar *dependencies in syntax. For example, in *Jack built this house*, the verb *build* can be said to govern the noun phrase *this house*.

See also GOVERNMENT.

government (In traditional grammar, but also in recent *Generative Grammar (2).) The property of an element (typically a *head) controlling or determining some other element (*phrase, *clause, etc.). Usually contrasted with *concord.

See also GOVERNMENT-BINDING THEORY.

Government-Binding Theory (GB Theory) A version of *Generative Grammar (2), developed primarily by Noam Chomsky and associates since the early 1980s. Chomsky himself preferred the label *Principles and Parameters Theory.

The term *government (along with the verb *govern) is taken over from traditional grammar, where, for example, a verbal *head is said to control or determine ('govern') its *object, e.g. by assigning *accusative *case to it (*saw her/*saw she*). The concept is formalized in GB Theory, and extended to embrace other elements of language.

Binding is a term taken from formal logic. In Government-Binding Theory, binding is particularly concerned with the relationship of *anaphors, *pronouns, and *referential expressions to their (grammatical) *antecedents, or directly to their *referents in the outside world. To give a simple example: in both *When Tom arrived, he unpacked the case* and *When he arrived, Tom unpacked the case* the people referred to as *Tom* and *he* may (though need not) be one and the same person, with the pronoun 'bound' to *Tom*. By contrast, in *He arrived and Tom unpacked the case* two people are involved, and the pronoun is not bound.

See also CHOMSKYAN; HEAD-DRIVEN PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; MINIMALIST PROGRAM; STANDARD THEORY; TRANSFORMATIONAL GRAMMAR.

gradable Capable of being ranked on a scale.

The term is used in describing *sense relationships between *words, and is particularly applied to *adjectives and *adverbs.

Gradable adjectives and adverbs can take degrees of *comparison, e.g.

high, higher, highest
good, better, best
soon, sooner, soonest

and can be *intensified, e.g.

very difficult, too quickly

They contrast with **non-gradable** or **ungradable** words, e.g.

*more supreme
*very impossible
?less unique
?too occasionally
*less perfectly

Some *determinatives (1) and *pronouns are also gradable, e.g.

few, fewer, fewest
many/much, more, most
little, less, least

• **gradability**.

Compare ANTONYM.

gradience The phenomenon of categorial indeterminacy between linguistic elements on a graduated continuum (or *cline).

According to Aristotle the membership of elements in a particular *category is determined by those elements conforming to a set of defining characteristics. Categories have sharp boundaries, and their members are all equal. This so-called scholastic or classical view of categorization has been very influential in linguistics, especially in theoretical work.

More recently in *Cognitive Linguistics and related fields, the view has been taken that the boundaries between grammatical categories are not always clear-cut. *Word classes, for example, are viewed as having **fuzzy boundaries**.

Within categories there are elements that meet all the criteria for membership of a particular class. For example, some adjectives can occur in *attributive and *predicative position, have *comparative and *superlative forms, and so on. (*See* *central adjective.) Others are less adjective-like (e.g. *mere*), or share characteristics with other word classes such as *prepositions. For example, the word *exploding* in *the exploding bomb* displays both verbal and adjectival properties, and *near* displays prepositional and adjectival properties in the exhortation *sit nearer the table*. We can therefore posit gradience between the word classes of verbs and adjectives, as well as between prepositions and adjectives. Gradience within categories has been called **subsective gradience** (SG), and gradience between categories has been called **intersective gradience** (IG).

> 2007 B. AARTS SG involves a single particular class of linguistic elements, or a particular construction-type, whereas IG involves two classes of elements or construction-types. SG allows for a particular element x from category α to be closer to the prototype of α than some other element y from the same category, and recognizes a core and periphery within the form classes of language. By contrast, IG involves two categories α and β, and obtains where there exists a set γ of elements characterized by a subset of α-like properties and a subset of β-like properties.

When we have gradience between *constructions, for instance between *coordination and *subordination, we can speak of **constructional gradience**. For example, whereas the *conjunctions *and* and *or* are *coordinators, and *if* and *because* are *subordinators, other elements share some of the characteristics of coordinators and subordinators. Thus *but*, unlike *and* and *or*, cannot coordinate more than two clauses; and *for* and *so that*, unlike true subordinators, cannot be preceded by another conjunction.

Gradience is also found in semantics (e.g. *cup . . . mug, blue . . . green*) and in *grammaticality/*acceptability judgements.

•• **gradient**: (*n.*) a cline; (*adj.*) displaying gradience (e.g. *a gradient phenomenon*).

Compare CLINE.

See also DISCRETE; PROTOTYPE.

grammar

1. The system of a language, traditionally encompassing *syntax and *morphology. In some cases (e.g. the work of Jespersen), a description of the sounds of a language is also included.

2. A book containing a description of the *rules of grammar.

3. An individual's application of the rules, as in *This student's grammar is excellent.*

• **grammarian**.

There are a number of terms which refer to the different ways in which grammar can be studied:

•• **descriptive grammar**: an approach which came to fruition in the twentieth century, and is based on linguistic research into actual *usage. It thus aims to describe, rather than prescribe.

•• **pedagogical grammar** (or **teaching grammar**): a term used to refer to a grammar for (foreign) learners.

•• **reference grammar**: a term which may be restricted to referring to 'a large comprehensive descriptive work of grammar' (e.g. CGEL, CaGEL), but can be extended to include a shorter book intended primarily for reference purposes (e.g. OMEG).

•• **theoretical grammar**: an approach to syntax which is based on models of the grammatical knowledge possessed by all language users, and is mostly concerned with the notion of language in general rather than with individual languages.

•• **traditional grammar**: a term which can cover many periods, but is frequently used to mean the grammar of the eighteenth, nineteenth, and early twentieth centuries, which was often based on, or in the tradition of, Latin grammar.

Compare COMPARATIVE (2); DESCRIPTIVE (2); GENERALIZED PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; GENERATIVE GRAMMAR (2); GOVERNMENT-BINDING THEORY; HEAD-DRIVEN PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; PRESCRIPTIVE; STRUCTURALISM; SYSTEMIC GRAMMAR; TRANSFORMATIONAL GRAMMAR; WORD GRAMMAR.

Grammar of Contemporary English, A **(GCE)** A large reference *grammar (2) published by Longman in 1972, written by Randolph Quirk, the late Sidney Greenbaum, Geoffrey Leech, and Jan Svartvik. An updated version was published in 1985 as *A *Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*. A shorter version with a pedagogical focus was published as *A University Grammar of English* in 1973.

Grammar of Late Modern English, A A traditional *grammar (2) published between 1904 and 1929, written by the Dutch linguist Hendrik Poutsma (1856–1936).

Grammar of Spoken English, on a Strictly Phonetic Basis, A
A pedagogical *grammar (2) of English which focuses on spoken language, written by H. E. Palmer and published in 1924.

Grammar of the English Language in Three Volumes, A
A *grammar (2) by George O. Curme published in the US between 1931 (volume 3) and 1935 (volume 2). Volume 1 on the history of the language was never published.

> 2006 A. LINN This is truly a *Great Tradition* grammar for America, embracing American as well as British literary language, and, in a way that is still quite novel in the early 1930s, 'considerable attention has been given also to colloquial speech, which in its place is as good English as the literary language is in its place'.

A shorter work by Curme entitled *English Grammar* was published in 1947.

grammatical

1. Relating to *grammar (1), determined by grammar.

In this sense, grammatical is a term relating to *form rather than to meaning, as in the terms grammatical *category, grammatical *collocation, and grammatical *hierarchy.

Grammatical *agreement contrasts with *notional agreement; grammatical *gender with natural gender; grammatical *subject with logical subject (or *psychological subject); *grammatical word (1) with *content word; grammatical *meaning with lexical meaning; and grammatical *morpheme (1) with **lexical morpheme** (*see* ROOT).

●● **grammatical ambiguity**: *see* **ambiguity**.
●● **grammatical competence**: *see* COMPETENCE.
●● **grammatical function**: the same as *function (1).
●● **grammatical meaning**: *see* SEMANTIC; SENSE.
●● **grammatical relation**: the same as (grammatical) *function (1).

•• **grammatical rule**: *see* RULE.
•• **grammatical subject**: *see* SUBJECT (2).
•• **grammatical word**: *see* GRAMMATICAL WORD.

2. Conforming to the (innate) *rules of grammar, particularly the syntactic rules; in contrast to *ungrammatical.

Popularly, *sentences and other *utterances are regarded as grammatical when they obey the rules of the *standard language or, more narrowly, the *prescriptive rules of *usage books, and *ungrammatical if they do not. Hence *I never said nothing to nobody* or *He were right angry*, though *acceptable in some *dialects, might be judged ungrammatical by some speakers of the standard dialect. But then so might *It's me*, or *It is essential that he checks in at Terminal 2*, which others would find acceptable.

'Grammatical' is not synonymous with 'meaningful': a sentence may be grammatical even though it is nonsensical (e.g. *'Twas brillig, and the slithy toves Did gyre and gimble in the wabe*, from Lewis Carroll's poem *Jabberwocky*). Conversely, a sentence may be meaningful but ungrammatical (e.g. *Broked he the window?*). A sentence may also be grammatical despite not being acceptable, because it is (say) too long to be comprehensible. 'Grammatical' in this sense does not entail any social value judgements.

• **grammaticality**, **grammatically**.

Compare ACCEPTABILITY; ILL-FORMED; WELL-FORMED.

grammaticalization A term, thought to have been coined by Antoine Meillet (1866–1936), which refers to the *diachronic phenomenon whereby certain items in languages acquire grammatical *functions (1).

> 2003 P. HOPPER & E. TRAUGOTT As a term referring to a research framework, 'grammaticalization' refers to that part of the study of language change that is concerned with such questions as how lexical items and constructions come in certain linguistic contexts to serve grammatical functions or how grammatical items develop new grammatical functions.

A typical example is the development of *be* +*going* +*to* into an *auxiliary-like item *be going to*.

• **grammaticalize**.

grammatical word

1. A *word that primarily has grammatical (1) importance, rather than lexical *meaning. Also called **empty word**, **form word**, **function word**, **functor**, **structural word**, or **structure word**.

In some traditional grammar, *word classes (parts of speech) are divided into grammatical words and *content words (or *lexical words). Grammatical words are mainly *closed (1) class words that glue the content words together: *auxiliary verbs, *determinatives (1), *conjunctions, *prepositions, etc. The distinction is a debatable one, since all grammatical words normally carry some meaning.

Compare EMPTY; MINOR; ORTHOGRAPHIC WORD; STRONG; WORD.

See also FUNCTIONAL CATEGORY.

2. A word considered from the point of view of the particular grammatical role it plays in a given syntactic structure. Also called **morphosyntactic word**. For example, the word *deleted* is the *past tense form of the verb *delete* in the following example:

He *deleted* the picture from his camera

but its *past participle form in

g

The picture has been *deleted*

The grammatical context is said to *condition the shape of grammatical words.

Compare WORD FORM.

3. (In CaGEL.) A word that conforms to the *rules of *word formation. Contrasted with **ungrammatical word**.

grammaticized preposition *See* PREPOSITION.

graph The smallest discrete unit of writing, especially a letter.

The term also includes marks of *punctuation.

The term overlaps with *allograph, which does not, however, include punctuation marks.

grapheme The smallest meaningful contrastive unit in the writing system.

The grapheme is to writing what the *morpheme (1) is to *morphology, or the phoneme to phonology. A grapheme is an idealized abstraction which can be physically written or printed in various different ways. Thus the concept of the fifth letter of the alphabet is a grapheme: each of the actual ways in which the letter may be written or printed ('E', 'e', '*e*', '*e*') is an *allograph.

- **graphemic**: of or pertaining to graphemes.
- **graphemically**.

graphemics The study and analysis of *graphemes.

graphology The (study of the) writing system of a language.

The term is formed by analogy with *morphology, phonology, etc. Graphology is concerned with *graphemes, the smallest abstract units of the writing system. It has nothing to do with the better-known meaning, namely the study of an individual's handwriting as a guide to character.

Great Tradition, the This phrase, coined by the Dutch linguist Flor Aarts, refers to the European tradition of English *grammar (2) writing.

> 1986 F. AARTS Ever since 1586 Dutch grammarians have been playing an interesting role in the history of English grammar. However, their reputation is chiefly based on a number of grammars written in the present [20th] century. These form part of what is sometimes referred to as 'The Great Tradition' . . . a series of traditional grammars of English, written in England, Germany, the Scandinavian countries and the Netherlands.

greengrocer's apostrophe The use of an *apostrophe in an ordinary *plural, where it is incorrect; e.g. *Potato's 75p per kilo.*

group A level of structure between *clause and *word.

This term is particularly used by M. A. K. Halliday and his associates in *Systemic Grammar. The main groups functioning as elements in clause structure are *nominal groups, *verbal groups, and *adverbial groups (NG, VG, AG). In *The children were singing happily*:

> *the children* = NG; *were singing* = VG; *happily* = AG

The term group often, as here, corresponds to *phrase in other analyses. It does not always do so, however, and Halliday himself uses both the terms *preposition group (roughly the *complex preposition of other analyses) and *prepositional phrase.

> 1985 M. A. K. HALLIDAY A phrase is different from a group in that, whereas a group is an expansion of a word, a phrase is a contraction of a clause.

See also WORD GROUP.

group genitive *See* GENITIVE.

group noun A *noun referring to a group of people, animals, or things, with particular grammatical characteristics.

This is usually synonymous with *collective noun, i.e. it can be followed by a *singular or *plural *verb form, as in *The committee has/have acted properly*.

group possessive *See* GENITIVE.

H

habitual Of a *tense or *construction: denoting a *situation that occurs regularly or repeatedly.

The term is often applied to a particular use of the *present simple and the *past simple *tenses. Thus *I always catch the 8.15 train* or *He rides his bicycle every day* are examples of the habitual present, in contrast to the *stative meaning expressed by an example like *The house belongs to his son*, or the *instantaneous present of an example like *I apologize*.

The habitual past (e.g. *He caught the same train for thirty years*) contrasts with the past used for a single event (e.g. *I caught the train just as it began to move*) or a past *state (e.g. *The house belonged to her parents*).

The habitual reading in examples like those above often comes about as a result of the use of certain *adverbials, e.g. *always, never*.

Hallidayan Designating the kind of linguistics (especially grammar) developed by the British linguist Michael A. K. Halliday (b. 1925).

Halliday's first grammatical model, developed in the 1960s, was called *Scale-and-Category Grammar, in which three scales (*rank, *exponence, and *delicacy) interacted with four *categories (*unit, *class, *structure, and *system). As the theory developed, increasing importance was attached to the category of system—and the term *Systemic Grammar (or **Systemic-Functional Grammar**) was used for later models.

Handbook of English Grammar, A A pedagogical *grammar published in a number of editions from 1945, written by the Dutch linguist Reinard Zandvoort (1894–1990).

Handbook of Present-Day English, A A traditional *grammar published between 1909 and 1932, written by the Dutch linguist Etsko Kruisinga (1875–1944).

hanging participle A *participle (*clause) that is not related grammatically to an intended *noun phrase of which it would be the *modifier; also called **dangling participle**, **unattached participle**, **unrelated participle**, or **dangling modifier**.

A participle clause often does not contain a *subject, but grammatically, if it is placed near its *superordinate clause, its subject is ‘understood’ to be *co-referential with the subject of that superordinate clause. Failure to observe this ‘rule’ results in a hanging participle, or often, more accurately, a *misrelated participle. When this happens, the participle clause is apparently grammatically attached to the subject, though according to the intended meaning, it is associated with a different *referent (which may not actually be mentioned in the *main clause). For example:

> *Speaking to her on the phone the other day*, her praise for her colleagues was unstinting (*Daily Telegraph*)

The meaning here is clear enough, but strictly grammatically speaking it is impossible to ‘recover’ the subject of the participle clause from its immediate *context. With regard to the following example the question arises of what is shrouded:

> *Shrouded by leaves in summer*, the coming of winter for a deciduous tree reveals the true shape of its woody skeleton (G. Durrell *The Amateur Naturalist*, 1982, p. 105)

The same rule (that the participle clause should be related to the subject) also applies when the clause is introduced by a *conjunction or *preposition. The rule is not followed in this example:

> Every afternoon, *instead of dozing listlessly in their beds*, or *staring vacantly out of a window*, there is organized entertainment (*Daily Telegraph*)

The hanging participle is generally condemned as *ungrammatical, rather than as a mere error of style. But it has long been widely used, most famously by Shakespeare:

> *Sleeping in mine orchard*, a serpent stung me (*Hamlet*, I.5)

The rule does not extend to participles that refer to the speaker’s or writer’s comments (e.g. *Strictly speaking*, *Monday is not the first day of the week*), nor to apparent participles that are accepted as *prepositions or conjunctions (e.g. *following*, *provided* (*that* . . .).

Compare MISRELATED.

hapax legomenon A *word that is used once in a *discourse, *text, or collection of texts, etc. Also simply called **hapax**. From the Greek, meaning ‘said only once’.

head

1. The *word which is the principal and typically *obligatory element inside *phrases, *clauses, etc., and which designates what the whole expression is a ‘kind of’. For example, the *noun *day* designates that the noun phrase *the hot day* is a kind of day, and is hence its head.

Further examples: in the noun phrase *the ankle-deep propaganda which I waded through*, the head is the noun *propaganda*. Similarly, in the *adjective phrase *very misleading indeed* and the *adverb phrase *somewhat superficially* the heads are *misleading* and *superficially*, respectively.

2. (Less commonly.) The word which is the obligatory member of certain kinds of phrase, and which, standing alone, could perform the same grammatical *function (1) as the whole phrase of which it is part. For example, *Indian tigers are dangerous* > *Tigers are dangerous*. Note that certain kinds of phrases, such as *verb phrases and *prepositional phrases, are problematic as far as their headedness in this sense is concerned; compare *I saw her on the train* > **I saw her on*.

> 2007 P. H. MATTHEWS If *girls* determines the syntactic properties of an ‘NP’ *tall girls*, and *tall* those of an ‘AP’ *very tall*, are those of ‘VPs’ and ‘PPs’ determined similarly, by a head verb or head preposition?

In *Generative Grammar (2) verb phrases and prepositional phrases are also said to have heads.

●● **functional head:** a head that does not belong to one of the major lexical *word classes, but to a *functional category. For example, in later models of *Generative Grammar (2), the clause *that he no longer works there* in the sentence *I think that he no longer works there* is regarded as a **Complementizer Phrase** (CP) which is headed by a functional category, namely the *complementizer *that*.

●● **null head:** a head without an overt realization. For example, in some frameworks, but not others, the phrase *the rich* would be regarded as a noun phrase with a noun as a non-overt null head.

●● **semantic head:** the element in a phrase, clause, etc. that is the most prominent from the point of view of *meaning, but does not function syntactically as head. For example, *dog* in the phrase *a monster of a dog* is analysed by some syntacticians as a semantic head (after all, a monster of a dog is a kind of dog, not a kind of monster), as contrasted with *monster*, which would be the syntactic head of this phrase.

head clause *See* MAIN CLAUSE.

Head-Driven Phrase Structure Grammar (HPSG) A *monostratal (non-derivational) theory of *Phrase Structure Grammar developed from *Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar in the 1990s by Carl Pollard and Ivan Sag. The model makes uses of universal principles, *rules, and schemata, and the *lexicon plays an important role.

See also CHOMSKYAN; GENERALIZED PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; GENERATIVE; GENERATIVE GRAMMAR (2); GOVERNMENT-BINDING THEORY; GRAMMAR; MINIMALIST PROGRAM; PRINCIPLES AND PARAMETERS THEORY; STANDARD THEORY; TRANSFORMATIONAL GRAMMAR.

headed Of a *phrase or *clause: possessing a *head. Also called *endocentric.

Headed phrases contrast with *exocentric phrases, also called **non-headed** or **unheaded** phrases. Compare the italicized phrases in the examples below:

I was *very pleased*
I was *in London*

In the first example the *adjective phrase is headed by the adjective *pleased*, whereas in the second example the italicized *prepositional phrase is regarded as being non-headed in some frameworks. *See* HEAD (2). But this contrast is not made in *Generative Grammar, where all phrases must be properly headed. *See* HEAD (1).

The term is also applied to *compounds. *See* BAHUVRIHI; DVANDVA.

headlinese The grammar of newspaper headlines.

Newspaper headlines often employ grammatical conventions that differ from the norm. *Articles and other minor *words are often omitted (e.g. *Man hit by gunman 'critical'*); *present tenses are used for past events (e.g. *Designer weeps in court*); **to*-infinitives refer to *future time (e.g. *UN to search for solution*); *nouns are heavily stacked in noun phrases (e.g. *Romcom movie star death mystery*); and so on.

Compare BLOCK LANGUAGE.

headword

1. The same as *head (1).

2. *Lexicography*. The word which stands at the head of a dictionary entry and which is defined within that entry.

helping verb A somewhat dated term for *auxiliary verb.

See also CATENATIVE-AUXILIARY ANALYSIS; DEPENDENT-AUXILIARY ANALYSIS.

hesitation noise A sound (or sounds) not classified as a *word, but used by speakers to keep conversation going.

Hesitation noises are somewhat inadequately indicated by such items as *er, erm, uh, um,* etc.

See also DISCOURSE MARKER; FILLER.

heterograph A *word that has a different spelling and meaning from another, but the same pronunciation, e.g. *to* (*preposition or *infinitival particle) vs *two* (*numeral).

heteronym

1. A *word having a different *meaning and pronunciation from another word, but which is identical in spelling. Examples:

alternate (verb) vs *alternate* (adjective)
bass ('type of fish') vs *bass* ('deep male voice')
lead ('cause to go') vs *lead* ('type of metal')

The term heteronym emphasizes difference.

See also ANTONYM; HETEROGRAPH; HETEROPHONE; HOMOGRAPH; HOMONYM; HOMOPHONE; HYPONYM; MERONYM; POLYSEME; POLYSEMY; SYNONYM.

2. Each of a set of morphologically different words that all have the same meaning, but are used by speakers of different *dialects or in different localities. Contrasted with *by-form, *doublet.

Such words would be synonyms if they were used in the same dialect (and may become so if one dialect—for example, *Standard English—adopts more than one of them). Examples are the numerous truce terms used by schoolchildren, each of which is characteristic of different areas of England (e.g. *pax, fainites, barley*), or the varying local terms for rubber-soled canvas shoes (e.g. *plimsolls, gym shoes, sandshoes, daps, gollies*).

3. A word that has a semantic relationship (e.g. of *antonymy, or as a translation equivalent) with another word, but is unrelated to it in form. Contrasted with *paronym.

Examples are *husband* : *wife, debtor* : *creditor* (in contrast to *widow* : *widower, mortgagor* : *mortgagee*).

Heteronym (from Greek *heteros* 'other' + *-onym* as in *synonym*, etc.) is a fairly uncommon word, and it is not clear which use prevails. Sense (2) is favoured by Continental dialectologists.

- **heteronymy**.

heterophone A *word that sounds different from another, but is spelt the same.

Since a certain similarity is the reason for considering two words together as some sort of pair (e.g. *lead* 'cause a person, animal, etc. to accompany' and *lead* 'metal', or *row* 'a line' and *row* 'a quarrel'), an alternative term would be *homograph. The term might, however, be usefully used of two forms of the same *lexeme, where both spelling and meaning are the same but the pronunciation is different, e.g. the *verb *read* /riːd/ and its *past tense and *past participle forms *read*, pronounced /red/.

See also HOMOPHONE.

hiatus (Chiefly in *historical linguistics.) A break between two vowels coming together in different syllables, as in: *cooperate, Goyaesque, guffawing, realign*.

hierarchy A system of *ranks (or classes) in which each rank includes the one below it.

The term is used in its everyday sense, and can be applied to various types of grammatical classification. Hierarchy is evident in the analysis of sentences into *subject and *predicate (1), or into *clauses, *phrases, and *words, or of words into *morphemes (1).

The concept can also be used in semantics where a series such as *furniture, chair, armchair, wing armchair* illustrates a hierarchy from the general to the particular. *See also* HYPERNYM; HYPONYM.

• **hierarchical**, **hierarchically**.

high frequency *See* FREQUENCY (2).

historical linguistics The study of language change; the same as *diachronic linguistics.

See also COMPARATIVE LINGUISTICS.

historic present The *present simple tense (or sometimes the *present progressive) when used to refer to *past (1) *time. (Also called the **narrative present**.) For example:

> Yesterday I'm walking down the road and this woman comes up to me and she says . . .

The device is often used to make a narrative more vivid and immediate.

hocus-pocus An attitude to grammar that implies that grammarians must impose their own rules on language.

The term was coined by Fred W. Householder (1913–1994) in 1952 to denote a view of the linguist's work at one extreme, in contrast to the *God's Truth view of language.

hollow clause (In CaGEL.) A *non-finite clause in which a postverbal element is missing but is recoverable from the *context. For example, in *Kids are easy [to please _]* we interpret the direct object *gap following the verb *please* as being related to *kids*.

holonym *See* MERONYM.

holophrase A single *word used instead of a *phrase, or to express a combination of ideas.

See also HOLOPHRASIS.

holophrasis The expression of a whole *phrase, or combination of ideas, by one *word.

- **holophrastic**.

The concept originated in nineteenth-century philology. Today it is especially applied to an early stage of child language acquisition.

> 2011 J. M. MEISEL At around age 1:9, however, one can typically observe a spurt in the increase of the productive vocabulary from approximately fifty to over a hundred words within a short period of time; the receptive lexicon already contains significantly more items. For several months, the children remain in the holophrastic phase, that is, they use one-word utterances which, however, do not simply refer to individual objects but can normally denote complex events and actions; they thus serve similar functions as propositions in adult language.

homograph A *word that is spelt the same as another (Greek *homos* 'same') but has a different meaning and origin, and may be pronounced in the same way or differently.

Examples are:

lead ('cause to go') : *lead* ('type of metal')
routed ('defeated') : *routed* ('sent by a route')
row (as a noun: 'line'; as a verb: 'propel a boat') : *row* (as a noun and verb: 'quarrel')
slaver ('slave-trader') : *slaver* ('dribbling saliva')
slough ('swamp') : *slough* ('cast off skin')
sow ('bury seed') : *sow* ('female pig')
wound (as a noun: 'injury'; as a verb: 'cause an injury to a person, etc.') : *wound* (past form of the verb *wind*)

If in fact homographs are also pronounced the same way, the more usual term is *homonym.

See also HOMOPHONE.

- **homographic**, **homography**.

homomorph A *word that is identical to another in (written and spoken) form and shares the same meaning, but belongs to a different *word class.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. There is no standard term for words which also share the same morphological form (eg: *red* as a noun and *red* as an adjective, *meeting* as a noun and *meeting* as a verb), but it seems appropriate to adopt the term homomorph for this purpose.

- **homomorphy**: the property of being a homomorph or homomorphs.

Compare HOMONYM.

homonym A *word that has the same pronunciation and spelling as another, but is etymologically unrelated to it, and thus has a different *meaning. Examples are:

bill ('statement of charges') : *bill* ('beak')
fair ('just') : *fair* ('sale', 'entertainment')
pole ('long slender rounded piece of wood or metal') : *pole* ('each of the two points in the celestial sphere about which the stars appear to revolve')
pulse ('throbbing') : *pulse* ('edible seeds')
row (as a noun: 'line') : *row* (as a verb: 'propel a boat')
soil ('earth') : *soil* ('make dirty')

All homonyms are also *homophones.

Traditionally, homonyms of this type are treated as separate words and are given distinct entries in a dictionary (e.g. 'pole 1' and 'pole 2'), whereas more closely related meanings are treated as offshoots of the same word when this is historically justified (so 'each of the two terminals of an electric cell or battery, etc.' comes under 'pole 2'). *See* POLYSEMY.

Popularly, homonyms may or may not include pairs whose two words have the same meaning but do not belong to the same grammatical category (e.g. *red* as a *noun and as an *adjective). *See* HOMOMORPH.

• **homonymic**, **homonymous**, **homonymy**.

See also ANTONYM; HETEROGRAPH; HETERONYM; HETEROPHONE; HOMOGRAPH; HOMOPHONE; HYPONYM; MERONYM; POLYSEME; POLYSEMY; SYNONYM.

homophone A word that is pronounced in the same way as another but has a different *meaning (or *derivation). The spelling may or may not be the same.

> 2009 D. MINKOVA & R. STOCKWELL The term *homophony*, useful as it is, bundles together words of the type *chair* (to sit on) – *chair* (of a department) and *corn* (on the cob) – *corn* (on toe). Yet if you look these up in the *OED*, you will find the two meanings of *chair* under one single entry, while there are two separate entries for *corn*. The term *homophony* is thus used to cover two historically distinct types of semantic identity: ***homonymy*** and ***polysemy***. . . . [A]ll homonyms are by definition also homophones.

Examples are:

bank : *bank* (of a river; 'financial institution')
feat : *feet*
hole : *whole*
no : *know*
none : *nun*
pupil : *pupil* (of the eye; 'student')
stare : *stair*

Some English pairs are homophones in some accents, but not in others. For example:

saw : *sore*
pore : *pour*
wine : *whine*

- **homophonic**, **homophonous**, **homophony**.

Compare HETERONYM.

homophoric Of *reference: self-specifying.

Textual reference may be *anaphoric or *cataphoric. Extralinguistic reference, by contrast, is *exophoric. The term homophoric particularly describes the kind of reference that can only be to one particular person or thing in a situation. Thus use of *the doorbell* in a typical domestic situation where there is only one doorbell is homophoric in *That's the doorbell!*

hybrid

1. (*n. & adj.*) *Morphology*. (A *word) formed from words or *morphemes (1) derived from different languages.

Many *affixes in common use in English *word formation are ultimately of Latin or Greek origin (e.g. *a-*, *anti-*, *co-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *non-*, *post-*, *syn-*; *-al*, *-ation*, *-ic*, *-ist*, *-ive*, *-ize*), but they are so well established that they combine easily with words of *Old English, or any other, origin. Examples are:

anticlockwise
eatable
disbelieve
jingoism
interweave
starvation
refill
talkative

There is a certain resistance to mixing elements of different origins, such that there is a preference for combining a foreign *stem with a foreign affix. For example, *rational* forms *rationality* rather than ?*rationalness*, *cannibalize* forms *cannibalization* rather than **cannibalizement*, and *centralize* forms *decentralize* rather than **uncentralize*. Quite a number of hybrids, generally involving longer *combining forms, were criticized when they were first introduced into English, for example *appendicitis* (Latin *appendic-* + Greek *-itis*), *speedometer* (English *speed* + Greek -(*o*)*meter*), and *television* (Greek *tele-* + Latin/French *vision*).

2. *Syntax*. Of a construction: a syntactic *blend.

hybrid speech The same as *free indirect speech.

hypercorrection (An example of) the use of a particular (form of a) *word, *phrase, etc. by a speaker or writer who is under the impression that this conforms to 'correct' (more prestigious) usage. (Also called **hypercorrectness**.)

Typical instances of hypercorrection involve the use of *pronouns:

That's a matter for John and *I* to decide (*me* would be expected after *for*)

She mentioned some people *whom* she thought were cheating her (here the *wh*-word is the subject of the subordinate clause after *thought*, so should be in the form *who*)

Other examples involve the use of *subjunctive *were*:

Even if his claim *were* true in 1950, it isn't now (his claim was a matter of fact, so the subjunctive is inappropriate)

We didn't know if she *were* old enough (her age was a matter of fact)

A final example involves the naming of the letter *h* as /heɪʧ/ instead of /eɪʧ/, i.e. with the hypercorrect addition of /h/.

- **hypercorrect**: designating (use in this way of) a non-standard form.

1968 W. LABOV The lower middle class shows the sharpest shift towards *r*-pronunciation in formal styles, going even beyond the highest social group in this respect. This 'hypercorrect' behavior, or 'going one better', is quite characteristic of second-ranking groups in many communities.

hyperlect A *variety of language associated with the upper strata of society.

The term is intended to cover marked grammatical usage, as well as marked accent.

1989 J. HONEY I will call any such special variety of language, associated not with the most highly educated but with those who are socially the most highly privileged, a hyperlect, remembering that this term can cover not just their accent (which in the case of contemporary Britain I have called 'marked RP' [Received Pronunciation]) but may also refer to the complete range of accent, grammar, vocabulary, and idiom which constitute a social dialect.

Compare ACROLECT; BASILECT; MESOLECT.

hypernym *Semantics*. The *superordinate term in a set of related words; contrasted with *hyponym.

Animal is a hypernym of *tiger* and *kangaroo*.

See also SUPERORDINATE.

hyperurbanism The same as *hypercorrection.

hyphen (*n.*) The sign ⟨-⟩ used to join *words semantically or syntactically (as in *sister-in-law, good-natured*), to indicate the division of a word at the end of a line, or to indicate a missing or implied element (as in *over- and underpayment*).

(*v.*) Join by a hyphen, write with a hyphen. (Also **hyphenate**.)

There is considerable variation and inconsistency in the use of hyphens in words and compounds. For example, one finds *coal field*, *coal-field*, and *coalfield*.

Basically hyphens are meant to aid comprehension. One useful convention is to separate with a hyphen vowels that could otherwise be run together in a word, as in *co-occur*, but this is by no means universally followed, even though such forms as *cooccur* are rather opaque. Another useful convention is to hyphenate words that would not normally be hyphenated in order to avoid *ambiguity. Thus, a *spare room-heater* is not the same as a *spare-room heater*. Similarly, hyphens are useful for showing a close connection between words that might otherwise be understood as separate and equal (compare *a black bearded pilot* with *a black-bearded pilot*), and are employed when a sequence of words is, unusually, used in attributive position before a noun:

> Black-bearded, lazy-voiced, dressed for the weather in a great plaid lumber-jacket, the pilot roused my envy for his here-I-am, this-is-what-I-have, take-me-or-leave-me style. (J. RABAN *Hunting Mr Heartbreak*, 1990)

- **hyphenated**, **hyphenation**.

hypocoristic (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) a pet form of a *word; (that is or has the nature of) a pet name; e.g. *auntie*.

Compare DIMINUTIVE.

***hyponym** *Semantics*. A *word with a more specific *meaning than, and therefore implying or able to be replaced by, another term, typically a more general or superordinate one, called the *hypernym.

Tiger and *kangaroo* are both hyponyms of *animal*; *knives* and *forks* of *cutlery*; *diamond* and *ruby* of *gemstone*; and so on. Words that are hyponyms of the same superordinate term are *co-hyponyms*.

- **hyponymy**.

See also ANTONYM; HETERONYM; HOMONYM; HOMOPHONE; MERONYM; POLYSEME; POLYSEMY; SYNONYM.

hypotactic *See* HYPOTAXIS.

hypotaxis The *subordination of one linguistic unit to another in a relationship of inequality; contrasted with *parataxis.

- **hypotactic**: exhibiting, or in a relationship of, hypotaxis.

The relationship of a *subordinate clause to a *main clause (or *matrix clause) is hypotactic:

I'll believe it, when I see it (main + subordinate)
Although he received an email confirmation, he will check the flight details (subordinate + main)

However, the term is generally used with a much wider application than subordination. It extends to other types of *dependency or *embedding, involving not only clauses, but also single *words or *phrases. Consider the *noun phrase *a light green shirt*, which is *ambiguous. Under one reading *light* is hypotactic to *green*, i.e. the colour of the shirt is light-green. Under the second reading the two *adjectives are in a paratactic relationship, and could be overtly *coordinated, i.e. *the shirt is green and light* (in weight).

hypothetical condition *See* CONDITION.

hypothetical past *See* PAST.

I

ICECUP *See* SURVEY OF ENGLISH USAGE, THE.

icon A linguistic form which has a characteristic in common with the entity it signifies.

The term is derived from its more general use in *semiotics, where it means 'non-arbitrary sign'. In languages which use hieroglyphic or ideographic writing systems some of the symbols are arguably icons.

In a language such as English, *onomatopoeic words can be described as icons, although the form of such words is in fact conventional, and different from that of foreign-language equivalents. For example, English *cock-a-doodle-do* contrasts with French *cocorico*, German *kikeriki,* and Dutch *kukeleku*.

It has also been argued that various sound combinations are iconic, and that they exhibit **secondary iconicity** or **weak iconicity**. For example, the initial sequence *sn-* occurs in a number of words with unpleasant meanings, many of which are connected with the nose or mouth, e.g. *snap, snarl, sneer, sneeze, snicker, sniff, sniffle, snigger, snivel, snog, snore, snort, snot, snout, snub, snuff, snuffle*. Other words with disagreeable connotations are *sneak, snide, snob, snook, snoop, snooty*.

- **iconic**: having the nature of, or resembling, an icon.
- **iconicity**: the fact or quality of being an icon.

ideational

1. *Semantics*. Concerned with objective meaning.

2. In *Systemic Grammar, the ideational function of a *clause is the way it represents factual reality, or experience, and this is contrasted both with its *textual (2) function (how the text is organized as a message) and its *interpersonal (2) (social) function. The ideational function of a clause is said to contain an *experiential component, which is concerned with 'processes, participants, and circumstances', and a **logical** component, i.e. 'language as the expression of certain very general logical relations'.

'Ideational' is thus to some extent comparable with the labels *cognitive, *descriptive, or *referential in other analyses.

identification *See* IDENTIFY.

identifier A general semantic term that is sometimes used to refer to a particular class of *determinative (1) or *pronoun whose function is to single out an entity or individual; contrasted with *quantifier.

Definite identifiers include *the*, the demonstratives (*this*, *that*, etc.), possessives (e.g. *my*, *your*), and some pronouns (e.g. *it*, *he*, *she*, *they*). Indefinite identifiers include *a*, *an*, and *one*.

See also: IDENTIFY.

identify To single out an entity, individual, etc. uniquely.

This term and the related words **identified**, **identification**, *identifier, and especially **identifying** are used much in their everyday sense in grammar. Thus the *demonstratives (*this*, *that*, etc.) often have an identifying function, e.g. *This is my sister*.

The terms are also used in distinguishing different kinds of *complements. For example, in:

> Henry's second wife was *a beautiful young woman*

or indeed in:

> Ann Boleyn was *a beautiful young woman*

the complement is *ascriptive (also called *descriptive (1)), but *non-identifying. The verb is called *ascriptive *be*. By contrast

> His second wife was *Ann Boleyn*

is an identifying (also called *specifying) structure, in which *Ann Boleyn* is the identifier and *his second wife* is identified. The verb *be* in this construction is called **identifying *be*** or *specifying *be*.

Similarly, the second term in an *apposition may or may not have an identifying role. Compare:

> His second wife, Ann Boleyn, was beheaded (**identifying apposition**)
> His second wife, a beautiful young woman, was beheaded (**non-identifying apposition**)

• **identifiability**: the property of being identifiable in a particular (discourse) setting.

• **identifiable**.

•• **identifying relative clause**: the same as *defining or *restrictive relative clause.

Compare DEFINITE; DEICTIC; DEIXIS; EQUATIVE.

identifying *be* The same as *specifying *be*.

See also IDENTIFY.

Compare ASCRIPTIVE BE.

ideogram A written character symbolizing a *word or *phrase without indicating its pronunciation.

Ideograms are rather marginal to the English writing system, but include numerals and graphic symbols such as £ $ % & + −.

• **ideogrammatic**, **ideogrammic** (neither in frequent use).

Compare ABBREVIATION.

ideograph The same as *ideogram.

• **ideographic**, **ideography**.

idiolect *Linguistics* The speech (habits) of an individual person.

Speakers differ in their knowledge and use of the grammar and *vocabulary of their language, so that in some ways everyone's idiolect is different.

The term is modelled on the word *dialect, using the prefix *idio-* 'own, personal, distinct'.

• **idiolectal**, **idiolectally**.

idiom

1. A string of (more or less) fixed *words having a meaning that is not deducible from the meanings of the individual words, e.g.

over the moon
under the weather
by the skin of one's teeth
up to one's eyes in work
for crying out loud
kick the bucket
paint the town red
throw a wobbly
give in
take up
fish out of water
had better
might as well
how goes it?

Some of these phrases allow no alteration, except when used facetiously (**over the stars*, **kick the pail*); others allow some changes (*up to my/his/her/their*, etc. *eyes in work*).

Older meanings of 'idiom' in English include (i) the form of speech that is peculiar to a nation or to a limited area, and (ii) the specific character or property of a language, or the manner of expression that is natural, or peculiar, to it ('the idiom of the English tongue').

In some cases there is no very clear distinction between idiom, *collocation, and *fixed phrase.

2. A *phrase that is fairly fixed (not necessarily with opaque meaning) but which shows, or appears to show, some grammatical irregularity, e.g.

these sort of people
come to think of it

It is not unusual to find phrases such as *by car, on foot, in prison* (i.e. consisting of a preposition + a normally countable noun, but without an article) described as idioms.

• **idiomatic**: marked by the use of idioms; peculiar to the usage of a particular language.

• **idiomaticity**.

> 1973 R. QUIRK & S. GREENBAUM Like phrasal verbs, prepositional verbs vary in their idiomaticity. Highly idiomatic combinations include *go into*.., 'investigate', *come by*.., 'obtain'.

***if*-clause** A *subordinate clause introduced by *if*.

The term is particularly applied to certain *interrogative clauses (e.g. *I don't know if she likes fish*), and to clauses introduced by *if* expressing *condition, but also covers clauses where *if* is interpreted as expressing *concessive meaning (e.g. *He's friendly, if a little bit lazy*), etc. Used loosely, the term can cover other subordinate clauses of condition (introduced by *unless, provided that, on condition that,* etc.).

ill-formed *Linguistics* Structurally *deviant.

The term is particularly used in *Generative Grammar (2), and describes any structure that cannot be generated by the rules. It contrasts with *well-formed.

• **ill-formedness**.

Compare ANOMALOUS; GRAMMATICAL; UNGRAMMATICAL.

illocution The communicative function (2), or force, of a verbal *utterance, e.g. stating, inquiring, requesting, commanding, inviting; hence **illocutionary force**.

> 1955 J. L. AUSTIN I shall refer to the doctrine of the different types of function of language . . . as the doctrine of 'illocutionary forces'.

The terminology derives from J. L. Austin's theory of *speech acts, where it contrasts with *locution and *perlocution. It is central to discussions of the social and *interpersonal meaning of language behaviour, and has gained wider currency than the other two terms.

•• **illocutionary act**: the act of asking, stating, inquiring, requesting, commanding, inviting, etc.

•• **illocutionary meaning** (or *communicative meaning): the meaning that an utterance has in a particular context. For example, in a situation in which a speaker says *I'm thirsty* the illocutionary meaning may be directing an addressee to provide a drink, rather than stating a fact.

•• **primary/secondary illocutionary force**:

> 2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. Strictly speaking, a natural utterance of [*I promise to return the key tomorrow*] would be both a statement and a promise, though the promise is of course more important, more salient that the statement. We will speak of the promise force as **primary** and the statement as **secondary**.

See also PERFORMATIVE.

illocutionary force *See* ILLOCUTION.

immediate constituent One of the parts (*constituents) into which a linguistic unit is immediately divisible. Sometimes abbreviated as IC (analysis).

The immediate constituents of a *compound sentence or *complex sentence may be *clauses, and each clause in turn may contain a *noun phrase and a *verb phrase, or alternatively, a *subject and a *predicate, as immediate constituents. In the sentence *The cost includes air travel by scheduled services* we can say that the immediate constituents are *The cost* and *includes travel by scheduled air services*, and we can further break the predicate down into *includes* and *travel by scheduled air services*. The strings *travel by* and *scheduled air* are not constituents. This type of analysis can continue until the ultimate constituents are reached, e.g. *service* + *-s* in *services*.

Immediate constituent analysis was an important practice in *structuralism.

imperative (*n. & adj.*)

1. (Designating) a *clause type typically used for issuing *directives, syntactically characterized by a missing subject—hence **imperative clause**, e.g. *Drop that gun!*

Imperative is a formal syntactic *category, whereas directive is a category of usage. Clauses that are imperative in form can also be used to express a wish (*Enjoy yourself*) or a condition (*Come nearer and I'll scream*), or to convey an apology (*Forgive me*). These are examples of indirect *speech acts. An imperative clause can include *do* for emphasis (e.g. *Do listen!*, *Do be quick*) or *don't* for a negative (*Don't forget*, *Don't be silly*). As was noted above, in imperative clauses the subject is typically omitted (though *you* is then 'understood'), but it can be overtly expressed as well (*You listen to me, Don't you do that again*).

Compare DECLARATIVE; EXCLAMATIVE; INTERROGATIVE.

2. (In traditional grammar.) (Designating) the *base (1) form of a verb, regarded as an *inflectional form (the **imperative mood**; *see* MOOD), when used to express a request, command, order, exhortation, etc. (e.g. *Listen! Have fun! Be sensible!*).

- **imperatival**: pertaining to the imperative (mood).
- **imperatively**: as or in the manner of an imperative.

Compare INDICATIVE; SUBJUNCTIVE.

3. (Designating) a structure with *let's* where a subject cannot normally be inserted, as in *Let's go, Don't let's worry, Let's not forget that . . .* For some speakers a subject is permitted, as in *Let's you and I go to the movies.*

Compare JUSSIVE.

imperfect (*n. & adj.*) (In traditional grammar.) (A *tense) denoting a past *situation that is ongoing, in progress, and not complete.

This term was derived from the classification of tenses in Latin grammar, and has been applied particularly in English to the **past imperfect** (e.g. *They were waiting*). It is now largely superseded by the terms past *progressive or past *continuous.

Contrast IMPERFECTIVE; PERFECT; PERFECTIVE.

See also ASPECT.

imperfective

1. (*adj.*) *Semantics*. Signalling imperfective meaning, i.e. viewing a *situation as it unfolds internally. In English the *progressive construction is said to signal imperfective meaning, namely 'ongoingness', e.g. *They were watching television*.

> 2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G.K. PULLUM et al. With imperfective aspectuality, the situation is not presented in its totality; it is viewed from within, with focus on some feature of the internal temporal structure or some subinterval of time within the whole.

2. (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) the grammatical *aspect that specifies how a particular situation unfolds internally. Not to be confused with *imperfect.

Some linguists prefer to reserve this sense to languages that make extensive use of imperfective aspect, e.g. the Slavic languages.

Compare PERFECT; PERFECTIVE.

3. (*n. & adj.*) The same as *progressive.

impersonal Of a *construction: involving a *dummy subject, typically *it* (called **impersonal *it***).

The term is particularly applied to *verbs such as *rain* or *snow* (**impersonal verbs**) which express a *situation that is not attributable to an identifiable subject (e.g. *It is snowing*).

More widely, it is applied to other structures which have *it* as subject:

It seems that he is asleep (cf. *That he is asleep seems)
It appears that nobody knew (cf. *That nobody knew appears)
It is unacceptable that you left early (cf. That you left early is unacceptable)

In some frameworks (e.g. CaGEL) constructions involving *extraposition, as in the third example above, are not regarded as having impersonal *it* as subject, by virtue of the fact that the extraposed subject can appear in its 'original' position.

It is usually classified as a *personal pronoun, but when used with an impersonal verb or in other constructions (e.g. extraposition), different labels are also used: e.g. *anticipatory *it*, *ambient *it*, *dummy *it*, *formal (4) *it*, *introductory *it*, **non-referential *it*, preparatory *it*,** *prop *it*, and **unspecified *it***.

Compare ANIMATE; GENERIC; NON-PERSONAL.

implication *Semantics*. What is implied by an *utterance; the act of implying.

Linguists contrast implication with *entailment. Entailment is semantic: if a *proposition A entails a proposition B, then if A is true, B is also true. For example, *Jim has three brothers* entails that *Jim has three siblings*. Implication is a less clear-cut relationship, based on a mixture of logic and shared knowledge. In normal circumstances an utterance will often be understood to convey information that is not directly encoded in the words. For example, in *I brought Jim a birthday present yesterday* there is an implication that yesterday was Jim's birthday, but I could add, without contradiction, *but yesterday wasn't Jim's birthday*. Implications are cancellable. Entailments are not.

implicature A pragmatic *implication of an *utterance, i.e. an implication that arises in a particular situation but is typically not explicitly mentioned in the actual words that are uttered. Also called **conversational implicature**.

The term is taken from the philosopher H. P. Grice (1913–88), who developed the *cooperative principle. On the basis that a speaker and listener are cooperating, and aiming to be relevant, a speaker can imply a meaning implicitly, confident that the listener will understand. Thus a possible conversational implicature of *Are you watching this programme?* might be 'This programme bores me. Can we turn the television off?'

Compare PRESUPPOSITION.

See also RELEVANCE THEORY.

inanimate *See* ANIMATE.

inclusion *Semantics*. The same as *hyponomy.

inclusive

1. Designating the first *person *plural *pronoun *we* when it includes both speaker and addressee(s). Contrasted with *exclusive (1). For example:

Why don't *we* all go together? You'd enjoy it.

2. inclusive disjunction: *see* DISJUNCTIVE.

incomplete predication *See* VERB.

incomplete sentence (In traditional grammar.) A sentence lacking one or more elements that would normally be present in a *canonical structure; an *elliptical sentence.

> 1968 J. LYONS 'Incomplete' or 'elliptical' sentences . . . One must distinguish between contextual completeness and grammatical completeness.

Thus an *elliptical sentence may be incomplete in the sense that a *word or words have been omitted, but may in fact be grammatically complete, since the missing words can be readily supplied with no further context, e.g.

(Is there) anything I can do to help?

An *utterance such as *Whatever I can* may be regarded as elliptical if it follows *What are you going to do to help?*, but would be unacceptable if it followed *Are you going to help?*

Sentences may be regarded as incomplete for a variety of reasons. For sentences that are unfinished by the speaker, *see* ANACOLUTHON. For sentences that are grammatically incomplete, but complete in context, *see* ELLIPSIS. For sentences that are not full sentences according to the rules of sentence structure, *see* MINOR SENTENCE.

See also NON-SENTENCE; SMALL CLAUSE; VERBLESS CLAUSE.

indefinite Of a *word, *phrase, *construction, etc.: not having or indicating any particular identifiable *reference. Contrasted with *definite.

The word is used as part of the terms *indefinite article and *indefinite pronoun, but can also be used to describe certain other linguistic elements, as in the examples described below.

(i) Adverbs and adverbials of **indefinite frequency**, such as

generally, usually, always, repeatedly, occasionally

contrast with *adverbs and *adverbials of **definite frequency**, such as

daily, fortnightly

(ii) The *present perfect construction can refer to an indefinite time:

Have you ever read *Beowulf*?

in contrast to a *clause with a simple *past tense form which characteristically implies a definite (even if unstated) time:

I read *Beowulf* when I was 16

(iii) An **indefinite noun phrase** has an indefinite *pronoun as *head, or contains an indefinite *determinative (1) + noun:

Anyone with any sense would have realized
Some people have all the luck

(iv) Most *quantifiers are indefinite (e.g. *some*, *much*, etc.), and can be described as indefinite quantifiers by contrast with cardinal numbers, which state definite quantities.

●● **indefinite article**: *see* INDEFINITE ARTICLE.
●● **indefinite pronoun**: *see* INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

indefinite article A *word class label that is used for *a*/*an*, in addition to (or instead of) the label *determinative (1). *See also* ARTICLE.

Although *a* and *an* are indefinite in meaning, *reference may be general (any person or thing of that class or kind) or more particular (an actual example of the class or kind):

We don’t expect letters—but send us *a postcard* (general: send us any postcard)
I’ve still got *a card* my grandfather sent from Kabul (specific: a particular card and no other)

Some grammarians distinguish these meanings by labelling the first meaning *classifying or *generic, and the second *specific.

But many popular models ignore the distinction, often using terms like general or specific quite differently. One model includes the indefinite article, whatever its meaning, among **general determiners**, which are said to be ‘general’, ‘indefinite’, and ‘without identifying meaning’. These are contrasted with **specific determiners**, which include *the* but not *a*/*an*.

Another model places *a*/*an* in a class of **(indefinite) identifiers**, but treats *the* as a **definite identifier**.

indefinite partitive *See* PARTITIVE.

indefinite pronoun A *pronoun lacking the *definiteness (identifiability) of *reference inherent in *personal, *reflexive, *possessive, and *demonstrative pronouns, expressing a range of meanings; e.g. *any*, *either*, *enough*, *few*, *neither*, *none*, *some*. Indefinite pronouns include *compound pronouns (e.g. *anything*, *everybody*, *somebody*, *something*).

The pronoun *one* is often indefinite in reference, as in:

one of these days
I don't have a car—I'd like *one*
One should drink in moderation

Corresponding *determinatives (1) (*any*, *every*, *some*, etc.) also have indefinite reference.

independent Of a linguistic element (*word, *phrase, *clause, etc.): that can stand on its own, in contrast to a *dependent element.

•• **independent clause**: this is often synonymous with *main clause in contrast to *subordinate clause. However, a distinction must sometimes be made. For example, in

The more I think about it, the more I like the idea

neither clause is independent, though both are arguably main clauses. On the other hand, where two main clauses are *coordinated, with some ellipsis, as in

The plan is brilliant and the whole thing [is] excellent

some would argue that both clauses are independent, whereas others would argue that the second clause is not.

Compare MATRIX.

•• **independent genitive**: *see* GENITIVE.

•• **independent pronoun**: *see* ABSOLUTE (3).

•• **independent relative clause**: the same as *free relative clause.

indeterminacy The quality of not being clearly delimited and/or defined.

Clear-cut grammatical *categories, *rules, etc. are not always attainable, since the system of grammar is arguably subject to *gradience. The same considerations apply to the notions of 'correct' and 'incorrect' usage, since there are areas where native speakers disagree as to what is grammatically *acceptable. Indeterminacy is therefore a feature of grammar and usage.

Grammarians also speak of indeterminacy in cases where two different grammatical analyses of a particular structure are plausible.

- **indeterminate**.

See also MULTIPLE ANALYSIS.

index (Plural **indices**.) In the following examples the subscript letters are referred to as indices. Identical letters indicate *co-reference:

Wayne$_i$ likes himself$_i$ too much

In the next example, the subscript ‘i/j’ indicates that *she* may refer to the same person as Frederica, though this pronoun can also refer to some other female individual.

Frederica said that she$_{i/j}$ will arrive a little bit late

indicative (*n. & adj.*) (In traditional analyses. (A *verb form or *mood) that expresses factuality. Contrasted in particular with the *subjunctive.

Traditional grammar follows Latin and similar models in making a threefold mood distinction: indicative, *imperative, and subjunctive. However, the paucity of verb *inflections makes such an analysis less appropriate for Modern English than for, say, Old English.

Compare DECLARATIVE; STATEMENT.

indicator *See* MARKER (2).

indirect condition *See* CONDITION.

indirect object (IO, O^i, or O$_i$) A *noun phrase which is *licensed by a *ditransitive *verb and which typically occurs after the verb and before the *direct object, and carries the *semantic role of *recipient or *goal. When a *pronoun is used, it appears in the *accusative case. Examples:

I gave *the publisher* three manuscripts
They told *her* a lie
He never gives *me* nice presents

Although the indirect object usually precedes the direct object, there can be exceptions, e.g.

Give *me* it/?Give it *me*

The IO of an *active declarative clause can become the subject of a *passive clause:

The publisher was given three manuscripts (by me)
She was told a lie (by them)

I am never given nice presents (by him)

In traditional grammar, many phrases that express a recipient or goal are regarded as indirect objects, whatever their position, like the prepositional phrases headed by *for* and *to* in the following example:

They bought a new bicycle *for her*, and gave it *to her*

Many modern grammars (e.g. CaGEL, OMEG) do not classify such prepositional phrases as indirect objects.

There are also different analyses when only the recipient of a potentially ditransitive verb is expressed. For example, in *He told his parents*, the noun phrase *his parents* can be analysed either as an indirect object with the direct object implied (compare *He told his parents the news*), or as a direct object (compare *He informed his parents*).

Compare BENEFICIARY.

indirect question In grammars that do not make a systematic distinction between *interrogatives and *questions, and use the latter as a syntactic label: a question as reported in *indirect speech.

Indirect questions do not display subject–auxiliary *inversion, i.e. they are characterized by the use of an unmarked subject–verb *word order. Thus the reported version of

What do you want?
[direct object + auxiliary + subject + verb]

becomes

I asked him [what he wanted]
[direct object + subject + verb]

Indirect yes–no questions are introduced by *if* or *whether*, e.g.

I asked him *whether he will write an article for the newspaper*

Since indirect questions in the description above are defined syntactically, rather than from the point of view of usage, they are best referred to as **subordinate interrogative clauses** (or **subordinate interrogatives**).

We can then use the notion of **embedded question** to refer to a question conveyed by a subordinate interrogative.

2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM Subordinate interrogatives, like main clause interrogatives, normally express questions, but because they are embedded there is no illocutionary force associated with them . . . Subordinate interrogatives are used in reporting inquiries, as in *They asked where she was born*, but have numerous other uses too, as in *They know where she was born* or *It depends where she was born*. We refer to the questions they express as **embedded questions**, avoiding the traditional term ‘indirect question’.

See also QUESTION.

indirect speech A way of reporting what someone has said, using an introductory reporting *verb and a *subordinate clause. Contrasted with *direct speech.

In indirect speech the actual words of the original speaker are usually changed, in that *pronouns, time and place *adverbials, and *tenses are adjusted to the viewpoint of the person reporting what was said (*see also* BACKSHIFT). Thus the first Duke of Wellington's advice to a new member of Parliament *Don't quote Latin, say what you have to say and then sit down* would in indirect speech become *He advised the member not to quote Latin, (but) to say what he had to say and then (to) sit down*.

The term indirect speech is often loosely used to cover the reporting of thoughts, using an introductory verb of thinking and a *that*-clause.

In general, indirect speech and *reported speech are synonymous and interchangeable, but some people make a distinction. *See* REPORTED SPEECH (2).

Compare FREE INDIRECT SPEECH.

•• **indirect speech act**: *see* SPEECH ACT.

Indo-European (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) the family of cognate languages (including English) spoken over the greater part of Europe and extending into Asia as far as northern India, or the hypothetical common ancestor of these languages (**Proto-Indo-European**).

infinite The same as *non-finite. (Now old-fashioned.)

infinitival Of, or belonging to, the *infinitive.

•• **infinitival clause**: *see* NON-FINITE CLAUSE.

•• **infinitival particle**: the element *to* used before an infinitive. Also called **infinitival marker *to***, or simply **infinitival *to***.

The *to* of the *to*-infinitive is historically a *preposition, but synchronically it is not, as is shown by the fact that prepositions, including *to*, cannot be followed by an infinitive, but require the *-*ing* form of a *verb; e.g.

> They resorted to rudeness, and to *attacking* him physically

not:

> *They resorted to rudeness, and to *attack* him physically

Infinitival *to* does not share the characteristics of any other *word class. It therefore has a label of its own.

See SYNCATEGOREMATIC.

infinitive (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) the unmarked *non-finite *base (1) form of a *verb, when used without a direct link to *time, *person, or *number.

In English when the infinitive is preceded by the *infinitival *particle *to* we speak of a *to-infinitive (clause):

I wanted *to help*
To err is human

When the verb is used without *to* we speak of a *bare infinitive (clause):

Don't *apologize*
You can't *take* it with you

Some other *non-finite *verb phrases are sometimes analysed as **complex infinitives**:

To have made a mistake is understandable (perfect infinitive)
It was upsetting *to be questioned* (passive infinitive)
I expected you *to be waiting* for me (progressive infinitive)

Other even more complex infinitives are also possible, e.g. (*to*) *have been doing,* (*to*) *have been done,* (*to*) *be being done,* (*to*) *have been being done* (rare).

Compare SPLIT INFINITIVE.

infinitive clause *See* NON-FINITE CLAUSE.

infix *See* AFFIX; TMESIS.

inflect *Morphology*. Change the form of a word by adding *inflections in order to indicate grammatical differences of *tense, *number, *gender, *case (1), etc.

Modern English is a relatively uninflected language. *Lexical verbs inflect for:

third *person singular in the *present simple *tense (*looks, sees*)
the *past simple (*looked, saw*)
the present *participle (*looking, seeing*)
the past participle (*looked, seen*)

*Nouns inflect for:

plural (*girls*)
possessive (*girl's, girls'*)

Some *adjectives and *adverbs inflect for:

the comparative (*nicer, hotter, sooner*)
the superlative (*nicest, hottest, soonest*)

Inflection does not change the *word class to which a word belongs, in contrast to *derivation, which may do so.

inflection

1. The phenomenon whereby the form of a *word is changed according to its grammatical use (e.g. whether it is used as a *plural form, *past tense form, *case (1) form, etc.). *See also* INFLECT. Contrasted with *word formation (2).

2. An *inflected form of a word (also called *inflectional form), or a *suffix or other element that is used to inflect a word.

> 1874 H. SWEET Old English is the period of full inflections . . . Middle English of levelled inflections . . . and Modern English of lost inflections.

• **inflectional**: pertaining to, or characterized by, inflection.
•• **inflectional class**: a *conjugation is a verbal inflectional class, whereas a *declension is a *nominal inflectional class.
•• **inflectional form**: *see* INFLECTIONAL FORM.
•• **inflectional formative**: *see* FORMATIVE (1).
•• **inflectional suffix**: *see* SUFFIX.
•• **inflection phrase (IP)**: *see* FUNCTIONAL CATEGORY; PHRASE.

The spelling *inflexion* is now considered old-fashioned.

inflectional form The *morphosyntactic *realization of a *lexical item as determined by its syntactic position. Also called *grammatical word (2).

For example, if we wish to use the *lexeme *window* in the position indicated by '_' in the frame *those _ need to be cleaned* it must take a *plural -*s* *inflection. We refer to the item *windows* as the plural inflectional form of the *lexeme *window*.

See also SHAPE.

inflection phrase (IP) *See* FUNCTIONAL CATEGORY; PHRASE.

informal Of spoken or written style: characterized by a simpler grammatical structure and more familiar *vocabulary than *formal (3) style.

The attitude of speakers (or writers) to their audience is often reflected in different levels of formality, with formal and informal style as two extremes, and a wide range of stylistically less *marked language in between.

Compare ATTITUDINAL; COLLOQUIAL.

See also USAGE.

information content *Linguistics*. The amount of information carried by a linguistic unit in a particular context.

The notion of information content is related to statistical probability. If a unit is totally predictable in a particular context then, according to information theory, it is informationally redundant and its information content is nil. This is true of the *particle (2) *to* in most contexts (e.g. *What are you going . . . do?*).

See also DUMMY.

Compare INFORMATION STRUCTURE; REDUNDANCY.

information packaging *See* INFORMATION STRUCTURE.

information question *See* QUESTION.

information structure The way in which the *constituents of a *clause or *sentence are (re)arranged so that a particular part of the 'message' receives greatest attention. Also called **information packaging**.

The term is a general one, concerned with such contrasts as *given and *new, *theme and *rheme, *topic and *comment.

See also CLEFT; EXISTENTIAL; INVERSION; PASSIVIZATION; PROPOSITION.

***-ing* clause** A *non-finite *clause whose *verb phrase (1) contains a *verb ending in *-ing* as its *head. Also called **present participle clause**, ***-ing* participle clause**, and **gerund-participial clause**. Examples:

The boss hates *him always complaining about everything*
I love *working late*

Notice that the first example contains its own *subject, whereas the second example does not.

Compare BARE INFINITIVE CLAUSE; CONTENT CLAUSE; *-ED* CLAUSE; PARTICIPLE CLAUSE; *TO*-INFINITIVE CLAUSE.

***-ing* form** A *verb form ending in *-ing*.

In traditional grammar, a distinction is made between the *gerund, regarded as a **verbal noun**, e.g.

Seeing is *believing*
Nelly's *reading* of this passage is not valid

and the present *participle, used in various *constructions in *finite and *non-finite clauses, e.g.

We'*re visiting* them tomorrow
Seeing them in that condition, I was greatly upset

See also *-ING* CLAUSE; PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE; PROGRESSIVE.

***-ing* participle** *See* *-ING* FORM; PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

***-ing* participle clause** *See* *-ING* CLAUSE.

inherent Of an *adjective: that directly characterizes the *referent of the *noun it is connected with; contrasted with **non-inherent**.

The meaning of many adjectives is not affected by their *position in a *sentence, so that *rich* means the same in *attributive position (e.g. *She's a rich woman*) as it does in *predicative position (e.g. *That woman is rich*). These are inherent adjectives.

By contrast, non-inherent adjectives do not directly characterize the referent of the noun they modify. For example, *John is a heavy sleeper* does not entail that John is heavy. Other examples of non-inherent adjectives occur in the following examples:

> an *old* friend, *pure* invention, a *complete* idiot, a *real* genius, a *generative* linguist

Non-inherent adjectives mostly only occur in attributive position.

Compare INTENSIFYING.

initial Designating or occurring in a *position at the beginning of a linguistic unit, e.g. a *phrase or *clause.

The term **initial position** (or *front position) is used in analysing various kinds of linguistic phenomena, such as the positioning of *adverbials. Since *final (or end) position in clause structure is *unmarked for adverbials, initial position is *marked. Contrast *I'm leaving tomorrow* with *Tomorrow, I'm leaving*, where *tomorrow* is marked as *topic. A manner *adjunct (3) may become a *disjunct when placed in initial position. Contrast *He spoke frankly* with *Frankly, we didn't believe him.* Initial position contrasts with final position and *medial (mid) position.

See also MOVEMENT; TOPICALIZATION.

initial combining form *See* NEOCLASSICAL COMPOUND.

initialism The use of the initial letters of a *name or expression as an abbreviation for it, each letter being pronounced separately, as in BBC, KO, RSPCA, RSVP. A type of *abbreviation.

Compare ACRONYM (2).

instantaneous Of the simple present (2) *tense: referring to a brief action beginning and ending more or less at the moment of speech; contrasted with the *habitual, *state, and *timeless uses of that tense.

This is a rather restricted use of the simple present tense. It occurs in some sports commentaries (e.g. *Wilkins takes the ball . . .*), in demonstrations (e.g. *I now add the gelatine to the hot water*), and in *performatives (e.g. *I apologize*).

Compare PUNCTUAL.

institutionalized Established as a norm.

The term is used in a fairly general way. It can be applied to (i) a distinct and acceptable variety of English such as Singaporean English or Indian English; (ii) a set expression which appears in some way to deviate from the norm (e.g. *heir apparent* rather than **apparent heir*); and (iii) a structure that is deemed unacceptable by many people (e.g. a *hanging participle), but which is prevalent, and acceptable in certain contexts.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. In formal scientific writing, the [hanging participle] construction has become institutionalized where the implied subject is to be identified with the *I*, *we*, and *you* of the writer(s) or reader(s):
>
> *When treating patients with language retardation and deviation of language development*, the therapy consists, in part, of discussions of the patient's problems with parents and teachers, with subsequent language teaching carried out by them.

instrumental

1. (*n. & adj.*) (A *noun, *phrase, *case (3), or *semantic role) that indicates the implement, or other inanimate thing, used in performing the action denoted by a *verb. Also called **instrument**.

*Old English had a few traces of an instrumental case (1), besides the four other cases marked by *inflection.

The word is now particularly used in classifying the meaning of *adverbials. Instrumental *prepositional phrases used adverbially typically begin with *with*:

> They attacked the police *with bricks*

Instrumental contrasts with *agentive:

> The officers were attacked *by the mob* with bricks

In *Case Grammar, the instrumental is extended to cover *noun phrases with a semantic role of this sort, even though syntactically they are *subjects or *objects:

> *A brick* injured the woman
> They used *riot shields* to protect themselves

2. *Semantics*. Describing the function (2) of language whereby the speaker gets the listener to do something.

Thus *directives and requests can be said to have an instrumental function. It is similar to the *conative function.

- **instrumentally**.

integrated affix *See* LEVEL ORDERING (HYPOTHESIS).

integrated relative clause *See* RESTRICTIVE.

intensifier An *adverbial that scales another element upwards (**amplifier**) or downwards (**downtoner**) in degrees of intensity.

In the very detailed classification presented in CGEL, intensifiers are described as a subcategory of *subjuncts, along with *emphasizers, *focusing adverbs, and others. Intensifiers are exemplified in the following:

We *thoroughly* disapprove and are *bitterly* disappointed
We *completely* agree with your assessment
I *hardly* know them
We were *kind of* wondering

intensify Of a *word: have a heightening (amplifying) or lowering (downtoning) effect on the meaning of a *word, *phrase, etc.

- **intensification**: the result of having a heightening or lowering intensifying effect; the fact of being intensified.
- **intensifying**: having a heightening or lowering effect. The term is applied to *adjectives and *adverbs. We thus have **intensifying adverbs** (usually called *intensifiers) and **intensifying adjectives** (including *emphasizers). The latter are exemplified in the following:

pure joy, *complete* nonsense, a *firm* commitment, *utter* rubbish, *great* hopes

Compare ATTRIBUTIVE.

intension *See* EXTENSION (1).

intensive Of an element, *phrase, etc.: in a *predicative (2) relationship with another element, phrase, etc. Contrasted with *extensive.

The term can be applied to the relationship between a *subject and a subject-related predicative *complement, and to that between an *object and an object-related predicative complement, as well as to the identity existing between the two terms of an *apposition:

He seems *worried*
You've got *me worried*
the Queen's daughter, the Princess Royal

●● **intensive complement**: a complement of a *linking verb.
●● **intensive verb**: an alternative term for a linking verb.

See also COPULA; COPULAR. *verb*

interjection A minor *word class whose members are outside normal clause structure, having no syntactic connection with other words, and generally having emotive or *interpersonal meanings. Examples are *aha, alas, eh?, mm, oops, sh!*

Compare EXCLAMATION.

internal argument *See* ARGUMENT.

internal complement *See* COMPLEMENT.

interpersonal

1. *Pragmatics.* Concerned with (verbal) exchanges between people; or, more specifically, concerned with the kinds of meaning(s) that may arise between people in particular circumstances—hence **interpersonal meaning**. This kind of meaning relates to its function as a connection between speaker and listener, or writer and reader. It is concerned with social exchanges, the use of language to influence behaviour, and so on. It thus shares features with *attitudinal meaning. It is sometimes called **social meaning** or *situational meaning.

See also COMMUNICATIVE; CONATIVE; CONNOTATION; EXPRESSIVE; PROPOSITIONAL MEANING; REFERENTIAL MEANING.

2. In *Systemic Grammar, interpersonal meaning is contrasted with *ideational (2) meaning and *textual (2) meaning.

See also METAFUNCTION.

interpretive semantics A type of *semantics, associated especially with Noam Chomsky and Ray Jackendoff, in which the meaning of sentences is interpreted from syntactic structure (as represented in *tree diagrams).

interrogative (*n. & adj.*) (A *word or *clause) typically used in formulating a *question.

As a *clause type, **interrogative clauses** are characterized by a *word order in which subject–auxiliary *inversion obtains (in *main clauses), and they are typically used to ask questions. Thus, interrogative is a formal syntactic category, whereas question is a category of usage, though the terms are, confusingly, often used interchangeably.

•• **open interrogative clauses**: interrogative clauses characterized by the use of a **wh*-word and by subject–auxiliary inversion (unless the *wh*-word functions as subject, e.g. *Who arrived late?*). Sometimes called ***wh*-interrogatives**. They can have an unlimited set of possible answers, e.g.

What do you eat for breakfast?

•• **closed interrogative clauses** (also called **yes/no interrogatives**, a term that was probably introduced in the form 'yes-or-no question' in Jespersen (1924)): interrogative clauses characterized by subject-auxiliary inversion, which elicit 'yes' or 'no' as possible answers, e.g.

Do you like swimming in the sea?

There are of course different ways of replying to this question, for example by saying *It depends on the weather* or *Sometimes*, but these count as *responses, not as answers.

A special type of closed interrogative clauses is **alternative interrogative clauses**. These also have a limited set of answers, but not 'yes' or 'no'; e.g.

Are you happy or sad?

Interrogative clauses can also be used as *statements (e.g. *Haven't we all made mistakes at some stage?*), as *directives (e.g. *Could you please make less noise?*), or as *exclamations (e.g. *Isn't it a lovely day!*). These are examples of indirect *speech acts.

•• **interrogative tag**: *see* TAG.

•• **interrogative word**: a member of a small set of words which typically beginning with *wh-* and are used to introduce open interrogative clauses. Such words can be *adverbs (*how, why, when, where, wherever*, e.g. *Why did she leave?*), *determinatives (1) (*which, what*; used before nouns, e.g. *Which film did you see?*), or *pronouns (*what, who, whose, which*, e.g. *Who opened the door?*).

Compare RELATIVE PRONOUN; *WH*-WORD.

See also CLAUSE TYPE; DECLARATIVE; EXCLAMATIVE; IMPERATIVE.

intersective gradience *See* GRADIENCE.

intervening NP *See* COMPLEX CATENATIVE CONSTRUCTION.

intransitive A term used to describe a *verb which does not *license any *complements, (hence **intransitive complementation**), or a *pattern or *clause in which the verb does not license any complements, e.g.

Henrietta smirked

• **intransitively**, **intransitivity**.

Compare COMPLEMENTATION; COMPLEX INTRANSITIVE; COMPLEX TRANSITIVE; DITRANSITIVE; MONOTRANSITIVE; TRANSITIVE.

intrinsic modality Another term for *deontic modality.

introductory *it*

1. Another term for ambient *it*, *dummy *it*, *empty *it*, or *prop *it*.

2. Another term to describe *anticipatory or preparatory *it*.

Like all these terms, 'introductory *it*' is used by different people to cover (or exclude) different uses of the word *it*.

Compare IMPERSONAL.

invariable (*n. & adj.*) (A *word) that does not vary in form (e.g. by *inflection); contrasting with *variable (1). Also called **invariant**.

The term is applied to words that have a single (uninflected) form (e.g. *but*, *for*, *over*, *sheep*, *politics*) in contrast to words that inflect.

inversion The reversal of an *unmarked *word order (or, more accurately, *constituent order).

The term is particularly used in relation to *subjects and *auxiliary verbs (hence **subject–auxiliary inversion**). The unmarked word order subject (+ auxiliary) + *lexical verb in e.g.

I am listening
I have a complaint
He understands

is changed to auxiliary + subject (+ verb) for yes/no *interrogatives (if necessary, *do* is added), e.g.

Are you listening?
Have you any complaints?
Do you have any complaints?
Does he understand?

Similar inversion occurs if a negative or near-negative adjunct is *fronted:

Never *have I* seen such a ghastly sight
Hardly *did I* realize how lucky I was

Inversion of subject and main verb, with no additional auxiliary, occurs in certain structures involving the fronting of an adverbial and the placing of a subject in end position, e.g.

Here *comes the bride*

Inversion of this type typically occurs for *information structuring reasons, e.g. in order to mark a *topic/*theme.

irrealis Of a *verb, form, etc.: expressing unreality, non-factuality, extreme unlikelihood, potentiality, etc. Contrasted with **realis**.

Irrealis relates to other areas of grammar, such as *tense and *mood. For example, counterfactual *conditional clauses, which contain a past tense form (e.g. *If I lived to be a hundred . . .*), and so-called *subjunctive moods (e.g. *If I were you . . .*) describe what is extremely unlikely or totally impossible.

•• **irrealis *were***: a term used in CaGEL for *were* as a specialized non-tensed relic mood form occurring with first and third person singular subjects: *If I were you . . .*; *If she were here . . .* Despite not carrying tense, it is regarded as a *primary (2) verb form.

> 2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. In its normal use, i.e. in modal remoteness constructions, irrealis *were* does not refer to past time, and there is no synchronic reason to analyse it as a past tense form.

> 2005 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. We include the irrealis forms among the primary forms, because there is a negative irrealis form, and also because of the close relation with preterite *was* and *wasn't*.

See also CONDITIONAL; COUNTERFACTUAL; MODALITY; MOOD.

irregular Of a linguistic form or structure: not following the rules for its *class, *paradigm, etc. Contrasted with *regular.

The term is particularly applied to *verbs that do not follow the general pattern of adding the verbal *inflectional ending *-ed* to form the *past (2) tense and the *past participle (called **irregular verbs** or *strong verbs). Thus, compare the regular verb *walk/walked/walked* with irregular *see/saw/seen* and *put/put/put*. Among *nouns, common irregular *plurals include *men*, *women*, *children*, *mice*, *teeth*, and a number of *foreign plurals.

Irregular degrees of *comparison include *good/better/best*; *bad/worse/worst*; *little/less/least*; *much/more/most*.

• **irregularly**.

•• **irregular lexeme**: a *lexeme which displays unpredictable inflectional forms, e.g. in the plural (cf. *ox/oxen*) or past tense (*sing/sang*).

•• **irregular sentence**: *see* MINOR SENTENCE.

See also DEFECTIVE; REGULAR LEXEME; STRONG; SUPPLETION.

Compare ANOMALOUS.

isolating The same as *analytic.

it *See* ANTICIPATORY *it*; DUMMY; EMPTY; EXPLETIVE; IMPERSONAL; INTRODUCTORY *it*; REFERENTIAL *it*.

iteration The same as *recursion.

iterative (*n. & adj.*)

1. (An expression, *construction, etc.) denoting repetition.

The term is used to describe the meaning of verbal constructions, as in

> I've been walking to work for the past three weeks

where the sense is a series of repeated actions. A possible alternative term here is *habitual.

Iterative meaning is also suggested by some types of *coordination, as in

I wrote and wrote—but they didn’t reply
They were running up and down the stairs

2. (A word) formed by repetition.

1961 F. G. CASSIDY In Standard English one finds three kinds of iteratives: the simple ones like *hush-hush* . . . ; those with vowel gradation like *ding-dong* . . . ; and the rhyming ones like *handy-dandy*.

In some cases, the meaning of such expressions is also iterative in sense (1), as in *knock-knock*, *tick-tock*. This type of *compound word is also called *reduplicative.

3. The same as *frequentative.

J

junction (In the work of Otto Jespersen.) The action of combining a *secondary to a *primary, forming a single *phrase containing *words of different *ranks (1). By contrast we have **nexus** when elements combine in *clauses, typically with a *verb.

> 1924 O. JESPERSEN If . . . we compare the combination of *a furiously barking dog* . . . with *the dog barks furiously* . . . there is a fundamental difference between them which calls for separate terms for the two kinds of combination: we shall call the former kind *junction*, and the latter *nexus*.

> 1933b O. JESPERSEN A junction is like a picture, a nexus is like a drama or process.

The term is virtually limited to the writings of Jespersen.

See also ADJUNCT; ADNEX.

jussive (*n. & adj.*) (A type of *verb or *clause) that expresses a command.

Jussives include not only *imperatives, as narrowly defined, but also related non-imperative clauses, including some in the *subjunctive mood:

Be sensible
You be quiet
Everybody listen
Let’s forget it
Heaven help us
It is important that he keep this a secret

The term jussive is, however, used to some extent as a syntactic label, and in this use would not include commands expressed as straight declaratives, e.g. *You will do what I say*. In popular grammars, where the term is not used, such structures would be dealt with under an expanded imperative label and under the subjunctive.

See also CLAUSE TYPE; DECLARATIVE; EXCLAMATIVE; IMPERATIVE; INTERROGATIVE.

K

kernel Of a *phrase, *clause, etc.: formally elementary and *unmarked. Also called **canonical**.

> 1984 R. HUDDLESTON A form which is maximally basic, one which does not belong to a marked term in any system, is called a *kernel* form.

The term is derived from early *Generative Grammar (2), where the application of certain obligatory *phrase structure rules produced a set of basic structures called **kernel sentences** (or **kernel clauses**, as some grammarians prefer to call them). These are syntactically unmarked *declarative clauses, not 'optionally transformed' (e.g. by *negation, *inversion, *passivization, etc.), and *complete in themselves (i.e. not *ellipted, *coordinated, *subordinated, etc.).

kind of modality Any of the various different types of *modality that can be distinguished in language, e.g. *alethic, *deontic, *dynamic, and *epistemic.

See also DEGREE OF MODALITY; STRENGTH OF MODALITY.

King's English, the The English of the court as a model to emulate.

> D. CRYSTAL 2004 This term [was] first recorded in Thomas Wilson's *Arte of Rhetorique* in 1553, where he talks of 'counterfeiting the king's English' (p 291). It had become the Queen's English in Thomas Nashe's satirical pamphlet *Strange Newes* (1592). And responsibility varied between king and queen thereafter, along with their court, which, according to Swift, was 'the Standard of Propriety and Correctness of Speech'.

See also BBC ENGLISH; STANDARD ENGLISH.

L

labelled bracketing *See* BRACKETING.

LAD *See* LANGUAGE ACQUISITION DEVICE.

language

1. (In the most general sense.) A uniquely human, mentally encoded attribute principally used for written or spoken communication. When uttered by a speaker, language consists of a stream of sounds which conveys a meaning that can be decoded by a hearer.

2. A variety of this used by a particular community or nation, e.g. *the English language, the languages of the British Isles, Indo-European languages, Romance languages*.

More specifically called a **natural language** in contrast to an *artificial language or a **computer language**.

●● **first language**: the earliest language that an individual learns to speak (also called **mother tongue**), and of which he or she is a **native speaker**.

3. The style of an utterance or text; hence e.g. *bad language, graphic language, literary language, poetic language*. *See also* BLOCK LANGUAGE.

4. The *variety of language used in a particular profession or in a specialized context, e.g. *the language of advertising, legal language, religious language, scientific language.*

The language of an individual is an *idiolect; that of a region or community is a *dialect; the individual's idealized knowledge of language is his or her *competence (contrasted with **performance**); the idealized abstract concept of the language shared by a particular group of people is called *langue (contrasted with **parole**); the study of language may be over a period of time (*diachronic) or at one particular time (*synchronic).

language acquisition device (In *Generative Grammar (2).) The innate, highly abstract module of the mind that enables humans to learn *language (1). Abbreviated LAD.

The LAD forms a part of Chomsky's theory, introduced in *Aspects of the Theory of Syntax* (1965). Children do not learn language merely by repeating what they hear around them. Using the LAD they construct a grammar of their native language, and are then able to produce new utterances. The evidence for the LAD is the so-called **poverty of the stimulus**, i.e. the observation that what a child hears in its immediate environment is insufficient to learn a language, because this stimulus is corrupted in various ways (by hesitations, false starts, and so on). Chomsky's theory is controversial and has been revised considerably in recent years.

See GOVERNMENT-BINDING THEORY; MINIMALIST PROGRAM; STANDARD THEORY.

langue Language as a system. Contrasted with **parole**.

The terms langue and parole were introduced by the Swiss linguist Ferdinand de Saussure (*see* SAUSSUREAN) in order to separate two of the meanings of the word *language*. What exactly he meant has been the subject of argument, but, roughly speaking, langue is the language system of a particular language community, whereas parole is language behaviour, i.e. the way in which members of that community actually use the system.

Compare COMPETENCE.

Late Modern English A phase in the history of the English language variously described as extending from 1700 up to 1900, or from 1700 to the present. Some linguists prefer a start date of 1775 (the publication of Johnson's *Dictionary of the English Language*), 1776 (American Independence), or 1800.

Latinate affix *See* LEVEL ORDERING (HYPOTHESIS).

learned plural An older and possibly obsolete term for *foreign *plural.

left-branching *See* BRANCHING.

left dislocation *See* DISLOCATION.

level Each of the areas into which a language can be analysed, characterized by a distinct property which is the object of analysis (e.g. *form (3), *function (1), *meaning).

A very general term for the different areas of language analysis, some of which are also described under such terms as *hierarchy or *rank. At least three levels are generally recognized—grammar, phonology, and semantics—but some models of grammar recognize more. Different grammatical models relate the levels to each other in different ways. In *structuralism,

analysis proceeds from the lowest level, phonetics and phonology, to progressively higher levels dealing with *morphemes, *words, *phrases, *clauses, etc. using **discovery procedures**. In other analyses, the different levels are not considered to be so clearly separable.
●● **level ordering**: see LEVEL ORDERING (HYPOTHESIS).

level of style A term referring to the *formal (3) and *informal uses of both written and spoken language.

level of usage *See* FORMAL; INFORMAL; LEVEL OF STYLE.

level ordering (hypothesis) *Morphology & Phonology*. The idea that certain *derivational and *inflectional *affixes are cyclically added to a *root or *base (2) at different levels or **strata**.

In English so-called Level I affixes (also called **Latinate affixes**, **non-neutral affixes**, or **integrated affixes**), which have a phonological effect when they are added (e.g. ˈ*general* – *geneˈrality*), are appended before Level II affixes (also called **Germanic affixes** or **neutral affixes**), which do not have a phonological effect (e.g. ˈ*happy* – ˈ*happiness*).

l

> 2003 I. PLAG According to the so-called **level-ordering hypothesis**, affixes can easily combine with affixes on the same level, but if they combine with an affix from another level, the level 1 affix is always closer to the base than the level 2 affix. For example, level 1 suffix *-(i)an* may appear inside level 2 *-ism* but not vice versa (cf. *Mongol-ian-ism*, but **Mongol-ism-ian*). Level-ordering thus rules out many unattested combinations of affixes on principled grounds.

The hypothesis is not exceptionless, and has been criticized.

lexeme A *word in the abstract sense; an individual, distinct item of *lexis, of which a number of actual *forms (1) may exist for use in different *morphosyntactic roles. Also called **dictionary word**. This term is contrasted with the notion ‘word’ as an uninterruptable sequence of letters with spaces on either side (an *orthographic word).

The five **word-forms** *see*, *sees*, *seeing*, *saw*, and *seen* are different incarnations of the same word when we talk about lexemes.

Identical forms with unrelated meanings are treated as separate lexemes, just as they are treated as different *vocabulary items in a dictionary. Thus *see* (the area under the authority of a bishop or archbishop) is a different lexeme from *see* (discern with the eyes). *Compare* HOMONYM.

Identical forms with different meanings, which in fact have a common origin, are similarly treated. Thus *polysemous words—such as *love* with the meaning 'passion' and *love* with the meaning 'nil' (as in tennis; the relationship in this case being through the phrase *for love*, 'without stakes', 'for nothing')—are also usually considered different lexemes, even though lexicographers may treat them under one headword in a dictionary. This is a disputable area, because although some 'words' are clearly distinguishable into several 'senses' (e.g. *crane*, 'bird'; *crane*, 'lifting device'), others can be subdivided with varying degrees of refinement (e.g. *company*, *high*, *office*, *thing*), and the assignment of any particular schema of subdivisions to separate lexemes would be open to challenge.

The term lexeme is sometimes extended to include a sequence of words that constitute a single semantic item: e.g. *out of*, or *put off* ('postpone'). *See* MULTI-WORD LEXICAL ITEM; MULTI-WORD VERB; PHRASAL-PREPOSITIONAL VERB; PHRASAL VERB; PREPOSITIONAL VERB.

The term is occasionally used in roughly the sense of *morpheme, *root, or *stem, but this is not now usual.

> 1958 C. F. HOCKETT The lexemes in the two-word sequence *twenty-eighth* are *twenty*, *eight* and *-th*.

• **lexemic**: of or relating to lexemes.
• **lexemics**: the study of lexemes.
•• **compound lexeme**: a *compound word whose meaning can sometimes not be deduced from its parts (also called **word lexeme**), or a similar combination of words; e.g. *greenhouse*, *bucket shop*.
•• **lexeme formation**: *see* WORD FORMATION.

See also LEXICAL ITEM; WORD.

lexical Relating to, or pertaining to, *words as units of the *vocabulary. The term is extensively used in a fairly general sense, as in **lexical factor**, **lexical recurrence** (the repetition of a word), **lexical structure** (morphology), and so on. It is also used in more specific ways (see below).
• **lexically**: as regards vocabulary.
•• **lexical ambiguity**: *see* AMBIGUITY.
•• **lexical base**: the same as *base (2).
•• **lexical blend**: *see* BLEND (1).
•• **lexical category**: a *category whose members belong to one of the major *word classes *noun, *verb, *adjective, etc.; contrasted with *functional category.
•• **lexical entry**: *see* LEXICON.
•• **lexical field**: *see* FIELD.
•• **lexical formative**: *see* FORMATIVE (1).
•• **lexical item**: *see* LEXICAL ITEM.
•• **lexical meaning**: *see* MEANING.
•• **lexical modality**: *see* LEXICAL MODALITY.

●● **lexical morpheme**: *see* ROOT.
●● **lexical verb**: *see* LEXICAL VERB.
●● **lexical word formation**: *see* WORD FORMATION (2).

Lexical-Functional Grammar A theory of grammar with two levels (**c-structure** and **f-structure**), developed since the 1980s by Joan Bresnan and associates, which—as its name implies—attaches more importance to the *lexicon and grammatical *functions (1) than to purely syntactic *rules, in contrast to *Generative Grammar (2).

lexical item The same as *lexeme, or a variant on it; an item listed in the *lexicon. (Sometimes also called **lexical unit**.)

Although the terms lexical item and lexeme are often used interchangeably, distinctions can be made.

The former may be preferred as the more general term, with the latter reserved for the unit which has a group of *variants (e.g. *see*, *saw*, *seen*, etc.).

> 1984 R. D. HUDDLESTON A lexical item . . . may contain more than one lexeme or word: these are idioms such as *bury the hatchet* 'renounce a quarrel'.

As the quotation above suggests, the label lexical item may be preferred for a *word, word combination, or *phrase whose *meaning is not deducible from the meaning of its parts: e.g. *greenhouse*, *bucket shop* (normally regarded as *compounds); *bury the hatchet*, *show a clean pair of heels* (normally regarded as *idioms).

The term lexical item can also be used to denote a word *form (1), such as an *irregular *inflectional form (of a lexeme) that would be expected to have a separate dictionary entry. For example, in addition to listing *buy*, a dictionary might have an entry '*bought*, see *buy*'. *Bought* would then be a separate lexical item.

lexicalize Realize as a *word or *lexical item (something that was previously, or could conceivably be, realized in an alternative way).

A notion or practice previously expressed by a syntactic phrase may be lexicalized for convenience and conciseness: e.g. *tailgating* (M20) for 'driving too closely behind the vehicle in front', or *doorstepping* (M20, UK) for 'canvassing support by going from door to door'.

● **lexicalization**.

lexical modality *Modal meaning expressed by *lexical items other than modal *auxiliary verbs (also called **lexical modals**), e.g. *probably* (adverb), *likely* (adjective), *wish* (verb).

•• **lexical modal verb**: a *lexical verb that expresses modal meaning. *See* MODAL LEXICAL VERB.

lexical verb A *verb that expresses a particular lexical *meaning, as listed in a dictionary, and can stand alone in a *clause. (Also called **full verb**.) Contrasted with *auxiliary verb and *main verb.

Lexical verbs constitute the majority of verbs. Formally they use auxiliary verbs in the formation of *interrogative and *negative structures (e.g. *Do you understand?*, *I didn't forget*; not **Understand you?*, **I forgot not*), as well as for *emphasis (*I DID forget*) and *code (*I forgot, and so did John*). *see* NICE PROPERTIES.

The terms lexical verb and *main verb are often used interchangeably, though they can be distinguished. *See* MAIN VERB.

lexical word The same as *content word.

lexicography The art and practice of dictionary making.

lexicology The study of the *lexis.

lexicon The complete set of *vocabulary items in a language, especially considered as part of a theoretical description.

In theoretical frameworks the lexicon is a special component consisting of **lexical entries** which may contain not only semantic information about each item, but also much more complete phonological and syntactic information than ordinary dictionaries would offer. There is a lively debate about the question of how much information should be contained in the lexicon.

•• **mental lexicon**: the store of words in the mind. How it is organized is the topic of current research.

> 2012 J. AITCHISON The human word-store is often referred to as the 'mental dictionary' or, perhaps more commonly, as the *mental lexicon*, to use the Greek word for 'dictionary'. There is, however, relatively little similarity between the words in our minds and words in book dictionaries, even though the information will sometimes overlap.

See also LEXIS.

lexis The stock of *words in a language; the *level of language consisting of *vocabulary. Contrasted with *grammar (1) (or *syntax).

See also LEXICON.

licensing The grammatical selection of a particular type of unit (*noun phrase, **that*-clause, etc.) by an appropriate lexical *head (*verb, *noun, *adjective, etc.).

For example, the adjective *fond* licenses a *prepositional phrase headed by *of*, and the verb *devour* licenses a noun phrase functioning as *direct object.

- **license**

Compare COMPLEMENTATION; GOVERNMENT; SUBORDINATION.

ligature A written or (especially) printed character combining two letters in one, e.g. ⟨æ⟩, ⟨œ⟩.

light verb A *verb with a very general *meaning which combines with specific complements to express a more complex verbal meaning that can also be expressed by a single verb, e.g. *take a picture* > *photograph*, *give a smirk* > *smirk*.

limiter A name for a type of focusing *adverb with a *restrictive meaning, e.g. *just*, *only*, *merely*, *simply* as in *I just/only/merely/simply said it was expensive.*

limiter adjective Another name for *restrictive adjective (which is the more usual term).

See also ATTRIBUTIVE.

limiting adjective

1. (In traditional grammar.) Another name for *determinative (1).

The term was used to distinguish this class of words from *adjectives proper, which were more fully called *descriptive adjectives. However, syntactically, determinatives and adjectives behave very differently, and hence this label is a misnomer.

2. The same as *restrictive adjective.

See also ATTRIBUTIVE.

linguist A student of, or expert in, *linguistics.

This is nearly as old (E17) as the lay meaning ‘someone fluent in several languages’ (L16). To make a clearer distinction, the term **linguistician** (L19) has been suggested as the term for the student of linguistics, but it is not used by those involved in the profession.

linguistic

1. Relating to *linguistics, e.g. *linguistic analysis*, *linguistic theories*.

2. Relating to *language (1), e.g. *linguistic complexity*, *linguistic phenomena*, *linguistic properties*, *linguistic rules*, *linguistic unit*. *Linguistic*

knowledge is a speaker's knowledge of (typically) their native language, contrasted with *non-linguistic knowledge (i.e. encyclopaedic knowledge of the world).
●● **linguistic determinism**, **linguistic relativity**: *see* SAPIR-WHORF HYPOTHESIS, THE.

linguistic determinism *See* SAPIR-WHORF HYPOTHESIS, THE.

linguistic relativity *See* SAPIR-WHORF HYPOTHESIS, THE.

linguistics The scientific study of *language (1).

Linguistics as an academic subject has burgeoned in recent decades. Surveys of the whole field are sometimes called **general linguistics**, while more specialized areas have specific labels.
●● **applied linguistics**: the practical application of linguistic studies to certain areas, especially the teaching of foreign languages.
●● **computational linguistics**: linguistics that uses computers in the gathering, analysis, and manipulation of linguistic data (including speech synthesis, machine translation, and aspects of artificial intelligence). *See also* **corpus**.
●● **corpus linguistics**: *see* CORPUS.
●● **descriptive linguistics**: *see* DESCRIPTIVE (2).
●● **structural linguistics**: *see* STRUCTURALISM.
●● **taxonomic linguistics**: language study concerned particularly with classification; often used as a pejorative synonym for structural linguistics (*see* STRUCTURALISM) or *descriptive linguistics.
●● **theoretical linguistics**: the study of a language or languages using a theoretical model, such as *Generative Grammar (2).

See also COMPARATIVE; CONTRASTIVE; DIACHRONIC; HISTORICAL; PSYCHOLINGUISTICS; SOCIOLINGUISTICS; SYNCHRONIC; TEXT LINGUISTICS.

linker Another term for *coordinator.

Not a very widely used term, because it is too general.

linking adjunct/adverb/adverbial *See* CONJUNCT; LINKING WORD.

linking verb A *verb that syntactically and semantically joins the remainder of the *predicate, particularly a *noun phrase, or *adjective phrase, etc., functioning as subject-related predicative *complement, to the subject. Often used interchangeably with **copula** or **copular verb**.

The prime linking verb is *be*. But other verbs are used in a similar way, e.g.

She's *become* a courier
He's *looking* much better
It *seemed* good at the time
Will it *turn* cold?

Linking verbs are sometimes divided into verbs of **current meaning**, e.g.

It *is/looks/remains* a mystery

and verbs of **resulting meaning**, e.g.

It *became/proved* difficult

linking word (An umbrella term for) any *word that joins two linguistic units.

Linking words include:

(i) *coordinators (e.g. *and*, *but*)
(ii) *subordinating conjunctions (e.g. *that*, *whether*)
(iii) *conjuncts (e.g. *however*, *in addition*, *moreover*, *meanwhile*, *nevertheless*), sometimes called **linking adjuncts** or **linking adverb(ial)s**.

link verb The same as *linking verb.

loan-shift A change in the meaning of a *word resulting from the influence of a corresponding word in a foreign language.

Examples are *arrive*, which has borrowed the sense 'achieve success' (L19) from French *arriver*, and *suspicion*, which has similarly borrowed the meaning 'slight trace or suggestion (of)' (E19) from French *soupçon*.

loan translation An expression adopted by one language from another in a more or less literally translated form; a *calque.

One of the earliest examples is *gospel* (OE *godspell*, from *god* 'good' + *spell* 'news', translating Greek *euaggelion*). The expression *lose face* is a loan translation of Chinese *tiu lien*.

loanword A word adopted or borrowed, usually with little modification, from another language.

Loanword is itself a loan translation of German *Lehnwort*.

See BORROWING.

local genitive *See* GENITIVE.

locative (*n. & adj.*)

1. (A *word, *phrase, etc.) expressing location.

Phrases that function as *adverbials of *place can be described as **locative phrases**, or as having a **locative role**.

2. *Semantics*. (In *Case Grammar.) (Designating) one of the original six *cases (3) (*semantic roles) proposed. Some *noun phrases which function as *subject or *object are classified as locatives, e.g. in:

London can be very lonely
We pounded *the pavements*
Hyde Park was the venue for the concert

locution *Semantics* An *utterance, an act of speaking.

This is a term in Speech Act Theory (*see* SPEECH ACT), and refers to the physical act of speaking, with no reference to the intention of the speaker (*illocution) or the resulting effect (*perlocution).

1955 J. L. AUSTIN *Locution*. He said to me 'Shoot her!' meaning by 'shoot' shoot and referring by 'her' to her.

Illocution: He urged (or advised, ordered, etc.) me to shoot her.

Perlocution: He persuaded me to shoot her.

•• **locutionary act**.

1955 J. L. AUSTIN The act of 'saying something' in this full normal sense I call . . . the performance of a locutionary act.

logical component *See* IDEATIONAL.

logical gap *See* CONDITION.

logical semantics The study of *meaning based on logic. Also called **formal semantics**.

See also MODEL-THEORETIC SEMANTICS; TRUTH-CONDITIONAL SEMANTICS.

logical subject *See* SUBJECT.

long-distance dependency *See* UNBOUNDED DEPENDENCY.

Longman Grammar of Spoken and Written English A large *corpus-based reference *grammar (2) published in 1999 by Longman, focusing on the spoken and written forms of English, and authored by Douglas Biber, the late Stig Johansson, Geoffrey Leech, Susan Conrad, and Edward Finegan. Its descriptive outlook is largely based on *A *Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*. A shorter version with a pedagogical focus was published as the *Longman Student Grammar of Spoken and Written English* in 2002.

long passive *See* PASSIVE.

low frequency *See* FREQUENCY (2).

lumping *See* WORD CLASS.

M

main clause A *clause that is not *subordinate to any other. Also called **principal clause** or **head clause**.

Main clauses are traditionally contrasted with *subordinate clauses. In *I thought that he would approve the plans*, the main clause is the whole *sentence, in which the subordinate clause *that he would approve the plans* functions as a *complement of the *verb *think*. We say that the subordinate clause is *embedded in the *verb phrase (2), and hence also in the main clause. Here the overall sentence is also a *matrix clause (1).

In *Although the paper is poorly written, it contains some excellent ideas*, the subordinate clause *although the paper is poorly written* is not a complement of a verb (or any other *head), and is analysed as an *adverbial clause (of *concession) in many frameworks. There is some disagreement as to which clause is the main clause here. In traditional accounts it is *it contains some excellent ideas*, but in recent models (e.g. CGEL, CaGEL), the main clause is the whole sentence. Whereas CGEL uses the label *matrix clause (2) for *it contains some excellent ideas*, in CaGEL this is also a main clause:

> 2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. Note that in [*Although the paper is poorly written, it contains some excellent ideas*] *it contains some excellent ideas* is a clause contained within a larger construction (the clause that forms the whole sentence), but it has the function of head, and hence is a main clause, not a subordinate clause.

It is important to be aware of the fact that in CaGEL *although* is analysed as a *preposition which takes a subordinate clause as its complement; hence the entire string *although the paper is poorly written* is a prepositional phrase.

A main clause is often defined as a clause that can stand alone as a complete sentence, but the important criterion for a main clause is that it is not in a subordinate relationship to a higher clause. The coordinated clauses of a *compound sentence, such as *I was ten and I got the scholarship*, are also main clauses.

Compare EMBEDDING; INDEPENDENT; MATRIX CLAUSE (1); SUPERORDINATE.

main verb A *verb that can stand alone in a *clause, and functions as the *head of a *verb phrase (1). Contrasted with *auxiliary verb and *lexical verb.

Main verbs use auxiliary verbs in the formation of *interrogative and *negative structures (e.g. *Do you understand?*, *I didn't forget*; not **Understand you?*, **I forgot not*), as well as for *emphasis (*I DID forget*) and *code (*I forgot, and so did John*). *See* NICE PROPERTIES.

Main verb is basically a *function (1) label, contrasting with the functional sense of auxiliary verb. A main verb can be the only verb in a verb phrase, unlike an auxiliary verb (though note that in special constructions, e.g. *tags, auxiliaries may occur on their own). This means that if there is only one word in a verb phrase, it is the main verb, e.g.

I *know* nothing about it
What *is* the matter?

If there is more than one word in an unellipted verb phrase, the final item is the main verb (and the other verbs are auxiliaries), e.g.

Have you been *waiting* long?
It may have been *forgotten*

As the main verb function is often realized by a *lexical verb (or **full verb**), the terms main verb and lexical verb are sometimes used as synonyms.

> 1990 COLLINS COBUILD ENGLISH GRAMMAR **Main verb** all verbs which are not auxiliaries. Also called **lexical verb**.

This definition ignores the fact that *primary verbs (sometimes classified as auxiliaries, but never as lexical verbs) can function as main verbs in some models.

CaGEL contrasts what it calls the *catenative-auxiliary analysis in which 'there is no contrast between auxiliary verbs and main verbs', which it prefers, with the dependent-auxiliary analysis, which it does not:

> 2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. Core auxiliaries are contrasted with **main verbs** [in the *dependent-auxiliary analysis], so that *is writing* forms a syntactic unit in which the verb *writing* is the head and the core auxiliary *is* is the dependent. As indicated by the term, core auxiliaries are never heads in the dependent-auxiliary analysis.

major Being or belonging to a group, *category, etc. that is more important, prominent, *prototypical, or frequent in occurrence than another. Contrasted with *minor.

This term is often used somewhat loosely, and not as a technical term.
•• **major word class**: one of the traditional *word classes, i.e. *noun, *verb, *adjective, *adverb, and *preposition. The **minor word classes**

(*conjunctions, *determinatives (1), *interjections, etc.) are considered to express little meaning in themselves.

Compare CLOSED (1); CONTENT WORD; GRAMMATICAL WORD (1); OPEN (1).

major sentence/clause type

1. A *structure containing at least a *subject and a *finite *verb, possibly including *imperative clauses, even though with imperatives the subject is optional (see 2).

Sentences as defined here are also called *full (3) sentences or *complete sentences. In this type of analysis, sentences that fall outside these sets of structures are variously classified as *minor, *irregular, or fragmentary.

2. (More specifically.) One of the major *clause types, namely *declarative, *interrogative, *imperative, or *exclamative.

Major Syntactic Structures of English, The A description of English grammar written by the late Robert Stockwell, the late Paul Schachter, and Barbara Hall Partee, based on the Extended *Standard Theory of the late 1960s to early 1970s, and on Fillmore's *Case Grammar.

See also GENERATIVE GRAMMAR (2).

mandative subjunctive (clause) *See* SUBJUNCTIVE.

manner A semantic category used to describe the *meaning expressed by *adverbs or *adverbials that answer the question 'how?'.

Adverbs are traditionally classified by meaning, a fairly standard basic division being into adverbs of *place (answering the question 'where?'), *time (2) ('when?'), manner ('how?') and *degree ('to what extent?').

Single-word **manner adverbs** are often *derived from *adjectives by adding -*ly* (e.g. *brightly*, *stupidly*, *quietly*), and are felt to be *central or *prototypical adverbs. In more detailed semantic analyses of adverbials the label **manner adverbial** is more narrowly applied: such adverbials are then classified as a subclass of some larger grouping of adverbials, such as *process *adjuncts.

Some manner adverbials also occur as style *disjuncts, e.g.

Seriously, do you mean that?

Clauses of manner usually imply a *comparison:

He looked *as if he had seen a ghost*
He speaks *just as/like his father always did*

Such clauses are therefore sometimes subsumed under comparison.

marginal Of a linguistic feature or unit: not *central (2), not *prototypical, less important, less prominent, infrequent.

Sometimes applied to any of the metaphorical meanings of a *word, in contrast to the basic or central meaning.

●● **marginal adjective**: an *adjective that does not conform to one or more of the *morphosyntactic properties of adjectives, e.g. *utter*, which can only be used *attributively.

●● **marginal coordinator**: not one of the central *coordinators *and*, *or*, or *but*; e.g. *for*, *nor*, *so* (= 'therefore'), and others.

●● **marginal modal (verb)**: *see* MARGINAL MODAL (VERB).

●● **marginal noun**: a *noun that does not conform to one or more of the morphosyntactic properties of nouns, e.g. *news*, which does not have a *singular form, or *information*, which does not have a *plural form.

●● **marginal preposition**: a *preposition that shares one or more characteristics with other *word classes. For example, many marginal prepositions share certain features with *verbs or adjectives:

He's remarkable, *considering* his age
Given the provocation, the outcome was understandable
That must be *worth* a fortune
It was well written, *bar a* few trivial mistakes

Among the marginal prepositions are *less*, *minus*, *plus*, and *times*:

What's five *times* six?
He arrived *minus* a ticket.

●● **marginal subordinator**: a word, *phrase, or clause that can be followed by a *subordinate clause, but resembles another word class or sentence element:

Immediately he began his speech, the crowd erupted with anger
The moment (that) you said so, I remembered

●● **marginal verb**: *see* DEFECTIVE.

See also GRADIENCE; QUASI-.

marginal modal (verb) (*n. & adj.*) (A *verb) that is, formally, partly like a *modal verb and partly like a *lexical verb. Also called **semi-modal (auxiliary)**.

The verbs *dare* and *need* are marginal modals when they take a *bare infinitive as *complement in *negative and *inverted structures, and no *third person *singular *-s*, e.g.

I daren't *ask Pete anything*
Need I *say more?*
I don't think he need *take any action*

They are *lexical verbs when they take a **to*-infinitive clause as complement, and a third person singular *-s* ending (when appropriate), or **do*-support, as in:

> She *needs to leave early*
> *Did* she dare *to challenge her boss?*

Also often classed in this category are *ought [to]* and *used [to]*, though the latter is sometimes regarded as expressing *aspectual meaning.

Ought [to] and *used [to]* are formally *past in tense, and *used [to]* is confined to past meaning.

marked Of a linguistic *feature (2): distinguished in some way from the *unmarked, more basic or central form to which it is related.

The concept was originated by the Russian linguist Nikolay Trubetzkoy (1890–1938) in relation to phonology.

●● **marked focus**: *see* FOCUS.
●● **marked order anaphora**: *see* ANAPHORA.
●● **marked predicative complement**: *see* COMPLEMENT.
See also MARKEDNESS.

markedness The condition, quality, or state of being *marked.

The concept of markedness can be applied in many areas of language. Thus a simple *declarative sentence (e.g. *I love Lucy*) is *unmarked in terms of its *constituent order (*subject - *predicator - *direct object), whereas *I don't love Lucy* is marked for *negation, and *Do you love Lucy?* is marked in having an *interrogative clause structure. Similarly, *Lucy I love* has a marked constituent order involving *topicalization.

With *nouns, *verbs, *adjectives, and other words that can be *inflected, the uninflected forms are said to be unmarked (e.g. *look*, *table*, *nice*), whereas the inflected forms (*looked*, *looking*, *looks*, *tables*, *nicer*, *nicest*) are marked for *past, *participle, *present, *plural, *comparative, *superlative, and so on. Similarly, the *active voice is unmarked, the *passive marked.

Markedness also applies in semantics, where *features (2) used in *componential analysis can be described in this way. Thus, *horse* is unmarked for sex, whereas *stallion* and *mare* are marked. Other words exhibit formal marking, e.g. *host* versus *hostess* (marked for 'female'), *widow* versus *widower* (marked for 'male'). In a neutral context the unmarked term in a pair is used. Thus of the pair *old* versus *young*, *old* is the unmarked term (e.g. *How old is the baby?*).

● **marking**: causing something to be marked (*see also* DOUBLE MARKING).
See also CLAUSE TYPE; CONSTITUENT ORDER.

marker

1. A *function (1) label used for certain *grammatical words (1). Thus in *She said that her flat is for sale* the word *that* is *formally a *subordinator, and functions as a marker.

2. *Sociolinguistics*. A linguistic *feature (1) that characterizes a group of people in terms of provenance, gender, class, etc., for example the use of a particular vowel in a local variety of a language.

> 2011 M. MEYERHOFF Speakers show some subconscious awareness of markers, and this is made evident in the fact that they consistently use more of one variant in formal styles of speech and more of another variant in informal styles of speech. *Indicators*, on the other hand, show no evidence that speakers are even subconsciously aware of them, and speakers consistently favour one variant over another regardless of who they are talking to or where.

masculine (*n. & adj.*) (A *noun etc.) of the grammatical *gender that mainly denotes male persons and animals. Contrasted with *feminine and neuter.

In some languages grammatical gender distinctions of masculine and feminine (and sometimes also neuter) apply to all nouns and related *words. In English, however, grammatical gender distinctions are found only in *third person *singular personal *pronouns, where the feminine forms (*she*, *her*, *herself*, *hers*) contrast with the masculine ones (*he, him*, etc.) and the non-personal ones (*it*, *its*, etc.).

Compare COMMON; DUAL.

mass noun

1. An *uncount *noun (or **uncountable noun** or **non-count noun**).

In general, this is another synonym for one of the two main classes of *common nouns, the other being *count (or **countable**).

Many English nouns seem to belong to both classes:

beer, a beer
cloth, a cloth
ice, an ice
iron, an iron
paper, a paper
war, a war

One solution is to consider the words in such pairs to be two separate dictionary entries, but when the two meanings are close it seems preferable to talk of a single *lexeme with both mass and count usage. Hence terms like **mass usage**, **mass meaning**, and **mass interpretation** are sometimes introduced.

The term appears to have originated with Jespersen, who used 'mass-word' in his 1909–49 grammar.

2. (More narrowly.) A particular type of uncount noun:

> 1990 COLLINS COBUILD ENGLISH GRAMMAR **Mass noun** (in this grammar), a noun which is usually an uncount noun, but which can be used as a count noun when it refers to quantities or types of something; EG . . . two sugars . . . cough medicines.

This definition gives a very distinct meaning to the term mass, since it specifically includes many words that are used as countables. It excludes, however, some other nouns that can be uncount nouns when they refer to a thing in general, and count nouns when they refer to a particular instance of it. Examples of words that *Cobuild* classifies as both uncount and count (but *not* mass) are *victory* and *conflict*.

Compare BOUNDED; SINGULAR.

material process *See* PROCESS.

matrix clause

1. A *clause which contains an *embedded clause within it.

> 2005 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM Subordinate clauses characteristically function as dependent within some larger construction. The next higher clause in the structure is called the **matrix clause**.

A matrix clause may, but need not be, a *main clause.

2. (In CGEL) A *superordinate clause minus its *subordinate clause.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. For example, we have referred to the situation described in the matrix clause as contingent on that of the subordinate clause . . . :
>
> *I'll lend you some money* if you don't have any money on you.
>
> The matrix clause *I'll lend you some money* conveys an offer that is consequent on the fulfilment of the condition expressed in the subordinate clause *if you don't have any money on you.*

In CGEL, which uses the term main clause for the entire superordinate clause (*see* MAIN CLAUSE), matrix clause is thus used to distinguish the part from the whole:

[$_{\text{main clause}}$ [$_{\text{matrix clause}}$ I was ten] [$_{\text{subordinate clause}}$ when I got my scholarship]]
[$_{\text{main clause}}$ [$_{\text{matrix clause}}$ Nobody had expected] [$_{\text{subordinate clause}}$ that I would get one]]

In other frameworks (e.g. CaGEL, OMEG) the string marked as matrix clause in the second example is not a *constituent.

3. The same as *main clause (unusual).

maxims of conversation *See* COOPERATIVE PRINCIPLE.

meaning What is signified by a *word, *phrase, *clause, or longer *text. The same as *sense.

Many different types of meaning are distinguished, and different classifications are made:

Objective, factual, verifiable meaning is considered as *denotation, or as *cognitive, *descriptive (2), *ideational, *propositional, or *referential meaning.

Subjective, emotional, personal meaning is labelled *connotation, or *affective, *attitudinal, *emotive, or *expressive meaning.

Meaning as particularly involving social interaction is variously labelled *interpersonal, *situational, or *social meaning.

Meaning as derived from the context of the surrounding text is sometimes called *textual meaning. *Compare* CONTEXTUAL.

The meaning of words as given in the dictionary is called **lexical meaning** (sometimes also **dictionary meaning** or **central meaning**).

The meaning inherent in *grammar (1) (for example, the meaning of the *tenses, the relationship of *subject and *object, and the difference between *declarative and *interrogative) is called **grammatical meaning** or **structural meaning**.

Compare SPEECH ACT.

See also SEMANTIC; SEMANTICS.

means A term used in the semantic analysis of *adverbials to refer to the way that something is done or the method used to do it.

Adverbials of means (or more specifically *adjuncts of means) are usually contrasted with adverbials expressing an *agent or *instrument. Compare the first pair of sentences below, in which the italicized strings express means, with the second pair:

We came *by train*
They got in *by breaking a window*

It was stolen *by a cat burglar* (agent)
They got in *with a key* (instrument)

medial Designating or occurring in the middle of a linguistic unit (a *clause, *phrase, etc.); hence **medial position** (also called *mid-position).

The term is used in analysing *ellipsis (*see also* GAPPING), but particularly in describing the position of *adverbs (or *adverbials) in a clause. It contrasts with *initial (or *front) and *final (or *end) position. Broadly, it indicates the position between the *subject and the *verb:

The train *soon* gathered speed
I *hardly* think so

However, when there is a sequence of verbs, several positions can be called medial. A common medial position is after the first *auxiliary verb:

I have *definitely* been cheated

but other medial positions may be possible:

He *definitely* had intended to go (**initial medial**, i.e. between subject and *operator)
They must have *frequently* been investigated (**medial medial**, i.e. positioned within a sequence of auxiliaries)
It could have been *intentionally* overlooked (**end medial**, i.e. after one or more auxiliaries, but immediately before the *main verb)

This classification is found in CGEL.

• **medially**.

medial-branching *See* BRANCHING.

mediopassive A *construction (also called **middle (intransitive)**, **activo-passive**, or **passival**; though *see also* PASSIVAL) which has the structure of an *active clause, but whose *subject is interpreted in the same way as the subject in a *passive construction. That is, the subject has the *semantic role of *patient. Examples:

This book reads well
This cheese melts easily

An *adverbial of *manner is typically present.

See also MIDDLE VERB.

medium The means by which something is communicated, e.g. the spoken medium versus the written (or graphic) medium.

mental lexicon *See* LEXICON.

mental process *See* PROCESS.

mental verb *See* PSYCHOLOGICAL VERB.

meronym A *word that denotes an entity that is part of another entity.

2010 M. L. MURPHY An additional relation that has been named is the part-whole or ‘has a’ relation, **meronymy**. Like inclusion, this is an asymmetrical relation, so we say that *finger* is a **meronym** of *hand* and *hand* is the **holonym** of *finger*.

See also ANTONYM; HETERONYM; HOMONYM; HOMOPHONE; HYPONYM; POLYSEME; POLYSEMY; SYNONYM.

mesolect *Sociolinguistics*. A term used to describe varieties of a language in a *creole continuum. Specifically, in a particular community the mesolect is the variety (or a group of varieties) that is positioned between the *acrolect and *basilect.

metafunction (In *Systemic Grammar.) Each of the three fundamental *functions (2) that are posited for language, namely the two main kinds, the *ideational (2) metafunction ('language as reflection') and the *interpersonal (2) metafunction ('language as action'), plus a third, the *textual (2) metafunction, which is said to 'breathe relevance' into the other two.
• **metafunctional**.

metalanguage A (form of) language used to discuss language.
Many of the terms used in this book are examples of metalanguage.
• **metalinguistic**, **metalinguistics**.

metanalysis Reinterpretation of the division between *words or syntactic units, e.g. *adder* from OE *nǣddre* by the analysis in ME of *a naddre* as *an addre*. The term was coined by Otto Jespersen.
• **metanalyse**: alter by metanalysis.

metonym A *word or expression which is used as a substitute for another word or expression with which it is in a close semantic relationship: e.g. *Whitehall* for 'the British civil service', *the Turf* for 'the racing world', *per head* for 'per person'.
• **metonymic**, **metonymy**.

mid The same as *medial.

mid-branching *See* BRANCHING.

middle (construction) **See* MEDIOPASSIVE; MIDDLE VERB.

Middle English The form of English used in Britain between circa 1150 and circa 1450; the stage in the development of the English language intermediate between *Old English and *Modern English. Abbreviated ME.

middle verb One of a small group of seemingly *transitive *verbs whose subject is not an *agent, and which do not normally occur in the *passive or *progressive.
The term is not in very general use, but is a way of classifying verbs such as *have* (in its *possessive meaning: *We have a house* does not have a

passive version **A house is had by us*), *consist (of), lack, possess, resemble,* and some other verbs in certain of their meanings. Examples:

Blue suits you/*You are suited by blue
This jumper does not fit me/*I am not fitted by this jumper
Four times five equals twenty/*Twenty is equalled by four times five

The term is adapted from Greek grammar, which has a middle *voice distinct from both the *active and passive voice.

See also MEDIOPASSIVE.

middle voice *See* MEDIOPASSIVE; MIDDLE VERB; VOICE.

mid-position (*n.* & *adj.*) (Occupying, or typically occupying) the *position between *subject and *verb.

Used chiefly with reference to the placing of an *adverb (*adverbial), the term is a popular alternative to *medial position. For example, *frequency (1) adverbs (e.g. *always, often, sometimes, never*) can be described as usually taking mid-position, e.g.

We *always* watch the news

For this reason they are sometimes called **mid-position adverbs**, although they can in fact appear in other positions. *Modal adverbs can also appear in this position.

minimal That is, or is characterized by, a distinction based on only a single *feature (2). For example, the *articles *a* and *the* are distinguished only by the feature [±definite].

- **minimality**.

•• **minimal free form**: *see* MINIMUM FREE FORM.

Minimalist Program (MP) A programme of research (not a theory) that has developed from various versions of *Generative Grammar (2) since the mid-1990s.

See also CHOMSKYAN; GENERALIZED PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; GENERATIVE; GOVERNMENT-BINDING THEORY; GRAMMAR; HEAD-DRIVEN PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; PRINCIPLES AND PARAMETERS THEORY; STANDARD THEORY; TRANSFORMATIONAL GRAMMAR.

minimum free form The smallest linguistic unit that can function on its own as a complete utterance. (Also called **minimal free form**.) Contrasted with *bound forms.

In a now classic definition, the American linguist Leonard Bloomfield, in 1926, defined the word as a minimum free form. This definition is open to criticism, as Bloomfield himself realized, since it would exclude *a*, *the*, *my*, and similar forms that are generally considered to be *words, but which do not function alone. The definition largely holds, however.

There is a second objection, namely that in certain circumstances even *bound (1) forms can be used alone, e.g.

'Did you say disinterested or uninterested?'
'Dis'

But this can easily be discounted on the grounds that any speech segment, even a single sound, can be used alone as a citation form.

Compare MORPHEME.

minor Being or belonging to a group, *category, etc. that is less important, prominent, *prototypical, or frequent in occurrence than another. Contrasted with *major.

This term is often used somewhat loosely, and not as a technical term.
●● **minor word class**: *see* MAJOR.

minor sentence/clause A *sentence or *clause that does not conform to the *standard *rules of grammar in one or more respects, but is nonetheless *acceptable. Contrasted with a *regular or *full sentence/clause.

Various classifications and terms are used in the analysis of structures that do not conform to the main rules of grammar. Some grammarians use terms such as **irregular sentence** or *non-sentence.

Minor sentences/clauses occur with some frequency, and often follow their own patterns. They may include **wh*-interrogatives lacking a *verb and/or *subject:

How about a drink?
Why not forget it?

The term may also include *subordinate clauses which lack a *matrix clause (often with *exclamatory *meaning):

That you should be so lucky!
To think you were there all the time!
As if you didn't know!

Consider also:

Out with it!
The quicker the better
Not to be taken internally

Terms like minor sentence and *irregular sentence can also be extended to include sentences involving *ellipsis, *block language, *formulae, *interjections, and perhaps even the optative *subjunctive.

misrelated Not attached grammatically to the *word or *phrase intended by the meaning; either joined to the wrong word or phrase, or completely unattached.

Although misrelated and other terms such as **dangling**, *hanging, and **unattached** are most commonly applied to *participles, *verbless structures can also be misrelated. In the following example the italicized *noun phrase refers back to someone mentioned in the previous *discourse, and it refers forward to *he* in this sentence. However, grammatically it is entirely unconnected to anything in the sentence.

> *A rock-climber of some note*, there is a story, never denied, of how he tackled the treacherous Aonach Eagach ridge in Glencoe by moonlight, dressed in a dinner jacket.

In the next example the italicized *adjective phrase refers back to someone previously mentioned, i.e. the person whose parentage is mentioned. However, grammatically the phrase is misrelated to the noun phrase *the question*. Incidentally, the sentence also contains a hanging participle, namely *walking*:

> Now *nine years old*, one day out walking . . . the question of her parentage arose.

mobile Of a linguistic unit: capable of being moved to a different *position, or positions, in a *clause or *sentence.

This concept is of some importance in differentiating units according to the way they function. For example, *adverbials (*adjuncts) tend to be much more mobile than other clause constituents:

> It will be winter *soon*
> It will *soon* be winter
> *Soon* it will be winter

• **mobility**.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. The adverbial nature of the particle in . . . phrasal verbs . . . is generally shown by its mobility, its ability to follow the noun phrase: . . . They turned *down* the suggestion. They turned the suggestion *down*.

See also MOVEMENT.

modal

1. (*adj.*) Relating to, or expressing, *modality.

•• **modal adjective**: an *adjective that expresses *modal *meaning, e.g. *necessary, possible, probable*.

•• **modal adverb** (or **modal adverbial, modal adjunct**): an *adverb, *adverbial, or *adjunct that expresses modal meaning, such as a speaker's judgement about a *proposition, e.g. *arguably*, *possibly*, *probably*, *maybe*, *surely*, *apparently*.
•• **modal auxiliary**, **modal operator**: the same as *modal verb.
•• **modal idiom**: an expression consisting of several *words which in combination carry a modal meaning that is not predictable from its parts, e.g. *had better/best*, *would rather/sooner/as soon*. They syntactically behave like modal verbs to a degree: for example, they have no *third person *singular forms or *non-finite forms, and they take a *bare infinitive clause as *complement. Also included here (at least in some models) are *have got (to)* and *be (to)*. The first elements of these latter combinations behave like *auxiliaries (cf. *Have we got to do this?*), and can take a third person singular form (cf. *She has got to comply with the law*). They take a **to*-infinitive clause as complement.
•• **modal lexical verb** (or **lexical modal verb**): a *lexical verb that expresses modal meaning, e.g. *decree*, *demand*, *insist*, and (in some frameworks, e.g. OMEG) *have (to)*, *be going (to)*.
•• **modal noun**: a *noun that expresses modal meaning, e.g. *necessity*, *possibility*, *probability*, *requirement*, *request*, *resolution*.

•• **modal past**: *see* PAST (2).
•• **modal past perfect**: *see* PAST PERFECT.
•• **modal preterite (clause)**: *see* PAST (2).
•• **modal remoteness**: *see* PAST (2).
•• **modal verb**: *see* MODAL VERB.

2. (*n.*) An abbreviation for *modal verb.

3. (*adj.*) (Less often.) Relating to or expressing *mood.

modality The semantic concept of modality is concerned with the expression of notions such as possibility, probability, necessity, likelihood, obligation, permission, and intention, typically by *modal auxiliary verbs, but also by other linguistic means (e.g. modal *adjectives, *adverbs, and *nouns). Contrasted with the grammatical notion of *mood.

Different kinds of modality are distinguished. The main types are *epistemic modality (concerning a speaker's judgement) and *deontic modality (concerned with *obligation). A third type, *dynamic (2) modality, involves the use of certain modal verbs (especially *can/could* and *will/would*) to express subject-related meanings such as 'volition' and 'ability', or more 'circumstantial' meanings. Compare:

You *can't* be serious (epistemic modality: conclusion)
Can I say something, please? (deontic modality: permission)
She *can* read Arabic (dynamic modality: ability)

See also ALETHIC; DEGREE OF MODALITY; KIND OF MODALITY; ROOT; STRENGTH OF MODALITY.

modal verb Any of a subgroup of *auxiliary verbs that express *modality. The main (*central, or **core**) modals are:

can/could	shall/should
may/might	will/would
must	

The core modal verbs share some distinct grammatical characteristics:

(i) They share with other auxiliaries the *NICE properties of *negation, *inversion, *code, and *emphasis.
(ii) Despite the fact that they are always *finite, they have no *-s* forms. Nor do they have *infinitive or *participle forms.
(iii) They are followed by a *bare infinitive (except in 'code' structures; *see* NICE properties).

There are also several verbs of disputed status that share some of their characteristics. Some grammars distinguish a set of *marginal modal verbs. Thus CGEL has *dare*, *need* (both used as auxiliaries), *ought (to)*, and *used (to)*. OMEG excludes from this list *used (to)*, which is regarded as *aspectual. CGEL treats *have (to)* as a *semi-auxiliary verb. In OMEG the latter is treated as a *modal lexical verb.

The meanings of the modals are often differentiated into *epistemic, *deontic, and *dynamic (2).

See also MOOD.

model An abstract representation or theory of the grammatical system or semantics of a language. Various models are proposed by linguists working in different schools of linguistics.

model-theoretic semantics A type of *truth-conditional semantics developed by Richard Montague (1930–1971; hence also **Montague Grammar**) in which the meaning of sentences is based on models of states of affairs in the world.

See also LOGICAL SEMANTICS; TRUTH-CONDITIONAL SEMANTICS.

Modern English The form of English used in Britain and other parts of the world since about 1450. Abbreviated ModE, MnE.

It is frequently divided into *Early Modern English (before 1700) and *Late(r) Modern English. The form of the language contemporaneous with the analyst may be called Present English, *Present-Day English (PDE), or Contemporary English.

Modern English Grammar on Historical Principles, A A traditional *grammar (2) published between 1909 and 1949, written by the Danish linguist Otto Jespersen (1860–1943). This work is widely regarded as one of the first grammars to describe modern English systematically and in a reasoned, sophisticated manner. It is characterized by a large number of literary examples.

modification

1. The phenomenon, or an instance, of a dependent *word, *phrase, etc. changing (i.e. affecting) the meaning of a *head, or other linguistic unit, in a relationship of *hypotaxis.

Modification is a general term. *Nouns are typically modified by *adjectives (strictly speaking, *adjective phrases, e.g. *lovely weather*), *prepositional phrases (e.g. *the food in the fridge*), or *relative clauses (e.g. *the house that was demolished*); adjectives and *adverbs are modified by adverbs (strictly speaking, *adverb phrases, e.g. *much warmer*, *very warmly*); and so on.

The term is particularly used in describing *phrase structure, where it can be subdivided into *premodification and *postmodification, as in the following examples of modified *noun phrases:

the *second* part
travels *with my father*
expensive hotels *in Paris*

•• **stacked modification** (or **stacking**): the occurrence of more than one *modifier for a particular head, e.g. *big brown bag*. In some models (e.g. *X-bar syntax), the adjective *big* in this example modifies *brown bag*, rather than *big* and *brown* severally modifying *bag*.

Compare RECURSION.

•• **submodification**: *see* SUBMODIFICATION

See also QUALIFIER (1).

2. (In *Systemic Grammar.) The same as premodification.

In this model, words following the *head in a noun *group (i.e. noun phrase) are generally treated as qualification.

See also QUALIFIER (3).

3. *Morphology*. A change within a *word. Examples are:

man → men
get → got

Compare SUPPLETION.

modifier

1. A dependent *word, *phrase, *clause, etc. that affects the *meaning of another element, typically a *head, in a relationship of *modification. For example, in traditional grammar, an *adverb (or *adverbial) in *clause structure is said to be a modifier of the *verb—hence the name 'adverbial'.

A modifier in phrase structure can be a *premodifier or a *postmodifier.

•• **modifier clause**: a clause that postmodifies a head, e.g. a *relative clause.

•• **sentence modifier**: a modifier that modifies a complete *sentence or clause.

2. (In *Systemic Grammar.) A word or string of words that precedes the head in a noun group. Contrasted with *qualifier.

modify Of a *word or similar element: affect the *meaning of (a *head or principal element).

See also MODIFICATION; MODIFIER.

modulation A *paralinguistic feature conveying some attitude not necessarily implicit in the actual *words spoken.

> 1977 J. LYONS By the modulation of an utterance is meant the superimposing upon the utterance of a particular attitudinal colouring, indicative of the speaker's involvement in what he is saying and his desire to impress or convince the hearer.

Compare ATTITUDINAL.

module *See* COMPONENT.

monolingual

(*adj.*)

1. Speaking only one language.

2. Written in one language.

(*n.*) A person who speaks only one language.

monomorphemic Of a *word: consisting of a single *morpheme (1), e.g. *able, no, interest.*

monostratal Of a theory: having only one *level of representation. Also called **non-derivational**.

*Head-Driven Phrase Structure Grammar is an example of a monostratal theory.

Contrasted with **multistratal** theories that have two or more levels of representation which are derived from each other using rules. Classical *Generative Grammar (2) is a multistratal or *derivational theory.

See also CHOMSKYAN; GENERALIZED PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; GENERATIVE; GENERATIVE SEMANTICS; GOVERNMENT-BINDING THEORY; GRAMMAR; MINIMALIST PROGRAM; PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; PRINCIPLES AND PARAMETERS THEORY; STANDARD THEORY; TRANSFORM; TRANSFORMATION; TRANSFORMATIONAL.

monotransitive A term used to describe a *verb which *licenses only one *object (2), namely a *direct object (hence **monotransitive complementation**), or a *pattern or *clause in which a verb licenses only one object; e.g.

We *avoided* the traffic
She *raises* lots of money
They *thought* that she would be late

In CGEL the term is extended to cover *prepositional verbs (e.g. I *refer to* your letter of 4th June) and *phrasal-prepositional verbs (e.g. I won't *put up with* this sort of treatment).

Compare COMPLEX INTRANSITIVE; COMPLEX TRANSITIVE; DITRANSITIVE; INTRANSITIVE; TRANSITIVE.

Montague Grammar *See* MODEL-THEORETIC SEMANTICS.

mood

1. One of the formal grammatical *categories into which *verb forms are classified, indicating whether the *clause in which the verb occurs expresses a fact, command, hypothesis, etc. Contrasted with the semantic notion of *modality.

Traditional grammar recognizes the *indicative, *imperative, and *subjunctive moods. In modern frameworks the latter is often no longer regarded as a mood.

2. A distinction of *meaning expressed by any one of the *clause types. According to this definition, *interrogative joins *declarative and *imperative as a mood category.

Mood is an alteration, apparently in the 16th century, of the earlier *mode*, a borrowing of Latin *modus* 'manner', which was also used in this grammatical sense. The alteration may have been due to the influence of the unrelated word *mood* 'frame of mind', which has an evident semantic affinity with it.

- **analytic mood**: *see* ANALYTIC.

mood adjunct *See* MODAL *adjunct*.

morph

1. Any of the actual forms of an abstract *morpheme (1); the same as *allomorph.

2. The actual (physical) realization of an (abstract) morpheme when that morpheme only has one realization. For example, the *present participle morpheme is always the morph *-ing*.

morpheme

1. The smallest meaningful unit of grammar.

According to a basically syntactic definition, the morpheme is an abstraction (comparable to *lexeme). Thus 'the *plural morpheme' is realized in regular *nouns by phonologically *conditioned *allomorphs (/-s/, /-z/, and /ɪz/), but also has such realizations as the change of vowel in *men* (from *man*) and *mice* (from *mouse*), and *zero as in *sheep*. Similarly, we can posit a *past participle morpheme, which has various allomorphs (*-ed*, *-en*, etc.), and a *negative morpheme (a *prefix), again with different realizations (e.g. *in-*, *im-*, *il-*, *un-*, as in *intolerable*, *impossible*, *illegible*, *unassailable*).

2. The smallest unit in *word formation and morphology.

In a more phonological approach, the morpheme is the smallest meaningful part into which a word can be broken down. Thus, *stems, *roots, and *affixes are seen as morphemes, some of them *bound and some *free. According to this definition *looked* and *fallen* each consist of a free morpheme and a bound morpheme (*look* + *-ed*, *fall* + *-en*). But whereas in a syntactic definition *-ed* and *-en* are *variants (i.e. allomorphs) of the same (abstract) past participle morpheme, in a phonological definition *-ed* and *-en* are different morphemes.

Compare BASE.

m

morphemic Of or pertaining to a *morpheme.
• **morphemically**: as regards morphemes.
•• **morphemic alternant**: the same as *allomorph; *see* ALTERNANT (2).
•• **morphemic variant**: the same as *allomorph.

morphemics The study and analysis of language in terms of its *morphemes (1).

morphology The study of the internal structure of *words.

Traditionally regarded as part of *grammar, morphology contrasts with *syntax, the latter being concerned with the *rules that govern the way words are put together in *sentences. Morphology itself covers *inflection and *word formation (2). The latter in turn covers *derivation and *compounding (and sometimes *conversion).
• **morphological**, **morphologically**.
•• **morphological structure**: *see* STRUCTURE.

morphosyntactic Combining morphological and syntactic properties.

Morphosyntactic properties (or **morphosyntactic features**) are the properties of a linguistic unit that have effects on both morphology and syntax. Thus *tense, *person, *number, etc. are morphosyntactic grammatical concepts.

*Plural *number, for example, morphologically requires *-s* in a *regular *noun (e.g. *cats*, *readers*) to be followed, syntactically, by a plural *verb form (e.g. *The cats are hungry*, not **The cats is hungry*).

• **morphosyntactically**, **morphosyntax**.

•• **morphosyntactic word**: *see* GRAMMATICAL WORD (2).

movement

1. In an informal sense, the displacement of a *phrase, *clause etc. to a *position other than its *canonical position. For example, in *Lamp bulbs they don't sell _*, the *noun phrase *lamp bulbs* can be said to have been moved from the *direct object position indicated by the underscore (_) to a clause-initial position. This type of displacement is known as *topicalization.

2. In the framework of *Generative Grammar (2), there are various kinds of formalized displacements such as *dislocation, **NP-movement**, as in (i), and ***wh*-movement**, as in (ii):

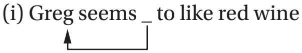

(i) Greg seems _ to like red wine

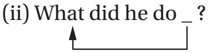

(ii) What did he do _ ?

See also TRACE.

multal Implying a largish number or amount, in contrast to *paucal.

In some detailed classifications of *pronouns and *determinatives (1), the label multal is given to a subset of *quantifiers (1): *many, much, more, most.*

multilingual

(*adj.*)

1. Speaking several languages.

2. Written in several languages.

(*n.*) A person who speaks several languages.

• **multilingualism**.

multiple (Used as a very general term.) Having, displaying, etc. several instances of a linguistic *feature (1/2).

•• **multiple analysis**: an analysis of a linguistic unit or string that can be made in two or more ways, when a clear-cut, right or wrong description is elusive. One classic problem concerns certain structures with the pattern *verb + *preposition + *noun phrase. Whereas the analysis of *I waited at the bus stop* is uncontroversial as *subject + verb (or *predicator) + *adverbial, the superficially similar *I relied on my family* can be analysed in two ways, namely as subject + verb (*rely on*) + *direct object (cf. *Whom did you rely on?*), or as subject + verb (*rely*) + *complement (in the shape of a *prepositional phrase; cf. *On whom did you rely?*). Also called **reanalysis** or **restructuring**.

•• **multiple apposition**: *apposition involving three or more terms, rather than the usual two.

•• **multiple coordination**: *coordination having more than two coordinated units.

•• **multiple exponence**: *see* EXPONENCE.

•• **multiple meaning**: *see* HOMONYMY; POLYSEMY.

•• **multiple negation**: a unit or structure in which three or more *negatives are combined. *Compare* DOUBLE NEGATIVE.

•• **multiple postmodification**: *postmodification involving more than one separate *postmodifier, e.g. *the lady over there by the river.*

•• **multiple premodification**: *premodification involving more than one distinct *premodifier. This can be a sequence of *adjective phrases, or a premodifier modified by another. In *poor quality leather*, *poor* premodifies *quality*, and the two together premodify *leather*. (Contrast *beautiful black leather*, where the premodifiers are simply in sequence.) *See also* STACKING.

•• **multiple sentence**: a *sentence that is a *complex, *compound, or *compound-complex sentence; the same as *clause complex in another analysis.

•• **multiple subordination**: the presence of more than one *subordinate clause within a sentence.

multiple exponence *See* EXPONENCE.

multiplier A *determinative (1) with a 'multiplying' meaning, such as *twice the price, three times that amount.*

multistratal *See* MONOSTRATAL.

multi-word lexical item A *lexical item composed of more than one *word.

Compare MULTI-WORD VERB; MULTI-WORD VERB CONSTRUCTION.

multi-word subordinator *See* SUBORDINATOR.

multi-word verb A label used to describe a *verb that *licenses one or more further units in the shape of a *prepositional phrase or *particle, with or without an *object *noun phrase. In some analyses the verb and the items it licenses taken together are regarded as single verbs, and are listed as such in a dictionary (e.g. *look* NP *up*, *rely on* NP, *put up with* NP, *give way to* NP).

This is an umbrella term that covers *phrasal verbs, *prepositional verbs, and *phrasal-prepositional verbs.

multi-word verb construction An *idiomatic *verbal (1) *construction which contains a *verb that *licenses one or more units, similar to a *multi-word verb.

Examples:

break even, make clear, stand still, cut NP short (verb + (NP) + adjective)
let go, give NP to understand (verb + (NP) + verb)
put paid to, make do with (verb + verb + preposition)

mutual entailment *See* ENTAILMENT.

N

name *See* PROPER NOUN.

narrative present The same as *historic present.

nationality word A *noun referring to a member of a nation or ethnic group, or a related *adjective.

Grammatically these words are to some extent treated like *proper nouns, being spelt with an initial capital, but at the same time, like *common nouns, they are *countable, and can have *specific and *generic reference. The commonest type has the *singular noun identical to the adjective, and forms the *plural (both *specific and *generic) with *-s*:

Italian (*adj.*); an Italian; Italians; the Italians
(Similarly: Greek, Pakistani)

Those with an adjective in *-sh* or *-ch* fall into two main types:

Danish; a Dane; Danes; the Danes
French; a Frenchman/Frenchwoman; Frenchmen/Frenchwomen; the French

Those formed with *-ese* (and *Swiss*) are invariable in all uses:

Chinese (*adj.*); a Chinese; Chinese; the Chinese

These patterns have numerous minor irregularities and *variations (e.g. a *Briton, Britons*; *a Spaniard, Spaniards, the Spanish*).

native speaker *See first* LANGUAGE.

natural gender *See* GENDER.

natural language *See* LANGUAGE.

N-bar (N′) category *See* X-BAR SYNTAX.

near negative The same as *semi-negative.

necessity A semantic term used in the description of *modality, expressed typically by certain *modal verbs, and by some other elements (e.g. *nouns, *adjectives, *adverbs). We can distinguish *deontic, *epistemic, and *dynamic (2) necessity, e.g.

You *must* do your best (deontic; i.e. 'I oblige you to do your best')
It *must* be cold in the loft in winter (epistemic; i.e. 'on the basis of what I know, I assume that it is cold in the loft in winter')
We *have to* do it, whether we like it or not (dynamic; i.e. 'the circumstances are such that we must do it')
It is *necessary* to close the windows at night (dynamic)

Contrast: POSSIBILITY.

negate Make (usually, a *clause or *sentence) *negative in meaning.

negation The grammatical means by which the truth of an *assertive (or *positive (1)) *sentence or *clause is denied.

Typically an English sentence or clause is negated by adding *not* or *-n't* to the *primary verb, or to the first (or only) *auxiliary verb. This is called **clausal negation**.

This *is not* difficult
He *couldn't* have been there

In the absence of an appropriate *verb to which *not* or *n't* can be added in the positive sentence, *dummy *do* is introduced:

The bell rang > The bell *didn't* ring (not **The bell rang not/rangn't*)

Generally the **scope of the negation** extends from the negative word to the end of the clause; hence the difference in *meaning between such pairs as:

I did*n't* ask you to go; I asked you *not* to go
They are*n't* still here; They still are*n't* here

*Modal verbs behave differently with regard to the scope of negation. For example, the meaning of *deontic *must* ('obligation') is outside the scope of *not* in the following examples:

You must not leave the platform (i.e. 'you are *obliged not* to leave the platform'; not: 'you are *not obliged* to leave the platform')

Compare this with the meaning of *deontic *may* ('permission'), which is inside the scope of negation:

Those youngsters may not enter the premises (i.e. 'those youngsters are *not permitted* to enter the premises'; not: 'those youngsters are *permitted not* to enter the premises')

Sentences can also be negated through the use of other negative words:

There is *nothing* to do (*Compare*: There isn't anything to do)
It's *no* trouble (*Compare*: It isn't any trouble)
Nobody told me (*Compare*: They didn't tell me/I wasn't told)

A negative *affix makes a word negative, but not the whole sentence:

He looked worried and *uncertain*
Perhaps they will sign a *non-aggression* pact

This is called **subclausal negation**.

●● **transferred negation**: the positioning of a negative in the *main clause, when logically it belongs in the associated *subordinate clause. This is often found with verbs of opinion and perception, e.g.

I *don't* think you understand (= I think you *don't* understand)
It *doesn't* look as if they're coming now (= It looks as if they are *not* coming)

See also DOUBLE NEGATIVE; MULTIPLE *negation*; NON-ASSERTIVE; SEMI-NEGATIVE.

negative (*n.* & *adj.*) (An *affix, *word, *clause, etc.) that expresses *negation.

negative particle A term sometimes used for the word *not.*

negative polarity item *See* ASSERTIVE.

negator A word expressing *negation, particularly the word *not*, but also e.g. *never*.

neoclassical compound *Morphology.* A *compound consisting of two *combining forms, namely an **initial combining form** and a **final combining form**, both derived from classical languages (i.e. Greek or Latin). Examples include *biology* (*bio-logy*), *monolithic* (*mono-lithic*), *endoscope* (*endo-scope*), and *telephone* (*tele-phone*). Sometimes a vowel needs to be inserted, as with *psychology* (*psych-o-logy*).
See also: COMPOUND.

neo-Firthian
(*adj.*)

1. Of, pertaining to, or characteristic of a group of linguists who continued some of the principles developed by the British linguist J. R. Firth, especially M. A. K. Halliday and his associates.

2. A term used in *corpus linguistics to refer to an approach to the use of corpora that opposes the annotation of textual databases (e.g. by *tagging or *parsing the text).

> 2012 T. MCENERY and A. HARDIE Opposition to annotation is typically associated with neo-Firthian corpus linguistics and the corpus-driven approach.

See also CORPUS-BASED; CORPUS-DRIVEN; FIRTHIAN.

(*n.*) A person belonging to the neo-Firthian group of linguists.

See also FIRTHIAN.

neogrammarian An adherent of (the views of) a loosely knit group of German scholars in the late nineteenth century who believed that sound laws (patterns of sound change which affect languages over time) must be entirely *regular and without exceptions.

It soon became apparent that this theory was overstated, but a modified version of the principle is an important tenet of *comparative and *historical linguistics. The name is a translation of the German term *Junggrammatiker*.

neologism (The coining or use of) a new *word or expression.

Neologisms have various sources. They may be the result of:

*abbreviation (e.g. HIV)
*back-formation (e.g. *ovate* from *ovation*)
*blending (e.g. *camcorder* from *camera* + *recorder*)
*borrowing (e.g. *karaoke* from Japanese)
*clipping (e.g. *cred* from *credibility*)
*compounding (e.g. *power dressing*)
*conversion (e.g. *to doorstep*, verb from noun)
*derivation (e.g. *fattism* from *fat* + *-ism*)

The term is also sometimes extended to include old words which are given new meanings (e.g. *wicked* 'marvellous').

Compare NONCE; NON-WORD.

nest (*v.*) Place (a *clause or phrase) within a larger structure (of the same kind).

See EMBEDDING; NESTING.

nesting

1. A kind of *embedding which involves the inclusion of a linguistic unit (*clause, *phrase) within another unit (of the same kind).

The views of the man in the street is a *noun phrase whose *head (*views*) is *postmodified by a *prepositional phrase (*of the man in the street*). In turn, *the man in the street* is also a noun phrase whose head (*man*) is postmodified by a prepositional phrase (*in the street*):

$[_{\mathrm{NP}}$ the views [of $[_{\mathrm{NP}}$ the man [in $[_{\mathrm{NP}}$ the street]]]]]

In this way similarly constructed clauses or phrases are 'nested' inside each other. Nesting can be almost infinitely *recursive, as in this blurb for an article:

> Why the pedestrian hates the cabby who hates the biker who hates the cyclist who hates the man who drives the coach that drives the lorry driver mad

2. (In CGEL.) Embedding in *mid (medial) position.

1985 R. QUIRK et al. Initial clauses are said to be LEFT-BRANCHING, medial clauses NESTING, and final clauses RIGHT-BRANCHING. Examples of these three arrangements:

INITIAL: *When you're ready*, we'll go to my parents' place.

MEDIAL: We'll go, *when you're ready*, to my parents' place.

FINAL: We'll go to my parents' place, *when you're ready*.

. . . Nesting (medial branching) causes the most awkwardness, if the nested clause is long and is itself complex.

See also RECURSION.

neuter *See* GENDER.

neutral affix *See* LEVEL ORDERING (HYPOTHESIS).

neutralization In general terms, the phenomenon whereby two distinct *forms (1) are blurred. More specifically, the disappearance, in a particular *context, of a grammatical distinction that is made in normal circumstances.

Contrasts of *tense and *aspect may undergo neutralization in certain circumstances. Those in the following three different statements:

She has gone
She had gone
She went

are neutralized after a *past reporting *verb: *They said she had gone.*

The lack of a distinction between the *subject and *object forms of the pronoun *you* is also a neutralization. More loosely (and controversially), so is the perceived double function of the *noun phrase in a *structure such as *We want Henry to go*, where *Henry* is, in some accounts, both the object of *want* and the subject of *go*. However, note that only an *accusative *pronoun is possible in such cases: *We want him to go.*

new (*n.* & *adj.*) (Designating) information that is not already known in a *text or *discourse setting, and is therefore the important information in an *utterance. Contrasted with *given.

See also COMMENT; FOCUS; RHEME; THEME; TOPIC.

nexus *See* ADNEX; JUNCTION.

NICE properties A term which uses an *acronym to encapsulate the four grammatical characteristics of English *auxiliary verbs that distinguish them from *lexical verbs.

Negation: auxiliaries can be directly *negated by *not* or by adding *-n't* to the *verb form, e.g. *will not, don't, cannot.*

Inversion: auxiliaries invert with the *subject in *interrogative clauses, e.g. *May I go now?*

Code: auxiliaries can be used on their own to avoid repetition of the *verb phrase (2), e.g. *I will be flying to Thailand tomorrow, and so will Jane.*

Emphasis: auxiliaries can be stressed, e.g. *We WILL help you; I DO remember.*

node Any point in a *tree diagram from which branches lead off. The term is particularly used in *Generative Grammar (2).

•• **mother node**: *See* TREE DIAGRAM.

nominal

(*adj.*) Of (the function of) a *word, *phrase, or (in some models) *clause: *noun-like. Strictly speaking we should say 'noun-phrase-like' because the type of item in question distributes and functions like a noun phrase. *See* NOMINAL CLAUSE.

(*n.*)

1. A word or phrase that *distributes and functions like a noun phrase.

•• **nominal conjunction**: *see* CONJUNCTION.

•• **nominal group**: a term used in *Systemic Grammar that corresponds to *noun phrase in other models. It is preferred to noun phrase in that framework because of the distinction between the make-up of a *group and a *phrase (2). *See also* GROUP; WORD GROUP.

•• **nominal inflection class**: *see* DECLENSION.

2. In some versions of *Generative Grammar (2), *phrase structure grammar, and descriptive grammar (e.g. CaGEL): a *constituent of a noun phrase that is larger than a *head, but smaller than a phrase; i.e. an N-bar (N′) category.

See X-BAR SYNTAX.

nominal clause

1. A *clause that syntactically distributes and functions like a *noun phrase. (Also called **noun clause**.)

In some frameworks (e.g. CGEL) nominal clauses can be **that*- clauses, *interrogative clauses, *exclamative clauses, *free relative clauses, **to*-infinitive clauses, or *-*ing* clauses. They typically function as *subject, *direct object, or *complement in sentence/clause structure:

What happened next remains a mystery (subject)

To err is human (subject)
He alleges *(that) he doesn't remember a thing* (object)
The question is *how we should proceed* (complement)
All I did was *laugh* (complement)
It depends on *what happens next* (complement of a preposition)
He's talking about *facing the music* (complement of a preposition)

The analysis of the sentences above is controversial, and not all grammarians would analyse them as involving nominal clauses. Thus in CaGEL and OMEG many of the clauses above involve *content clauses.

2. (In some frameworks.) As for sense 1, but restricted in some way, e.g. to mean *free relative clause.

In these descriptions, different labels are used for the other nominal clauses (in sense 1), e.g. *complement clause, **that*-clause, *interrogative clause, and so on.

Compare FREE RELATIVE CLAUSE.

nominal inflection class *See* DECLENSION.

nominalize Form a *noun (or noun phrase) from an item belonging to another *word class, or from a *clause. Examples:

drive > driver
buy > buyer
accurate > accuracy
kind > kindness
examine > examinee
shrink > shrinkage
She is determined to succeed > her determination to succeed
She explained the problem > her explanation of the problem

The process often involves the use of a **nominalizing *affix**.

• **nominalizable**.

•• **nominalization**: a noun or noun phrase derived from, or corresponding to, a word from another class or a clause; the process by which such a phrase is derived.

nominal relative clause *See* FREE RELATIVE CLAUSE.

nominative *See* SUBJECTIVE (1).

nominative absolute *See* ABSOLUTE.

non-affirmative (form) *See* ASSERTIVE.

non-agentive *See* AGENTIVE, PASSIVE.

non-assertive (form) A class of forms that typically occur in *comparative/*superlative, *conditional, *interrogative, and *negative *contexts. Also called **non-affirmative form** or **negative polarity item**. Contrasted with *assertive (form).

In addition to the *any*-series of *words (e.g. *any*, *anybody*, *anyone*, *anything*, *anywhere*), which contrast with the corresponding words in the *some*-series (e.g. *some*, *somebody*, *someone*, *something*, *somewhere*), other predominantly non-assertive words include *either, ever*, and *yet*:

Jane didn't know *either* (compare: Jane knew too)
Have you *ever* had a winter holiday? (compare: I always have a winter holiday)
Haven't you finished *yet*? (compare: I have already finished)

●● **non-assertive context/territory**: *see* ASSERTIVE (FORM).

non-attributive The same as *predicative.

nonce (*adj.*) Of a *word, form(ation), etc.: deliberately coined for one occasion.

1. (As originally used.)

1907 *New English Dictionary Nonce-word*, the term used in this Dictionary to describe a word which is apparently used only for the nonce.

The implication of the original use was that the word in question has only been used once (or very few times) by a single author, or possibly once each by more than one author independently for a particular purpose.

Compare HAPAX LEGOMENON.

2. The term is now frequently used of a word that has become common, having been coined for a particular occasion or purpose. Quite a number of words can be traced back to their originators, although (as has been the case with Shakespeare) some authors have been credited with originating a word when they were merely the earliest known user, and have lost this distinction when subsequent research has unearthed an earlier example. But some coinages are reliably documented: T. H. Huxley invented *agnostic*; Jeremy Bentham gave us *international*; Horace Walpole coined *serendipity*; and more recently, Dr. M. Gell-Mann gave the name *quark* to the subatomic particle.

3. The term is sometimes loosely used for jocular-sounding words that seem unlikely to last long (perhaps because a word that is generally adopted does not seem like a word for one occasion, or by association with 'nonsense').

1986 S. MORT On the matter of durability, this book can be judged only by the reader of the 1990s. Of course, some words are probably nonce.

Examples of this kind of word might be *jocumentary*, *nepotocracy*, *oldcomer*, *trendicrat*.

(*n.*) A nonce-word.

> 1986 S. MORT Private Eye, master of the nonce, again demonstrates this kind of innovation.

Derived from the phrase *for the nonce* 'for the particular purpose; for the occasion, for the time being'. This is a Middle English *metanalysis of the phrase *for than anes* 'for the one (thing, occasion, etc.)'.

Compare NEOLOGISM; NON-WORD.

non-conclusive *See* CONCLUSIVE.

non-count Usually the same as *uncount.

See also MASS.

non-defining Of *modification or of a *modifier: giving additional, circumstantial information about the *head. Also called **non-restrictive**, **non-identifying**, **supplementary**. *See also* DEFINING; IDENTIFY; RESTRICTIVE.

•• **non-defining relative clause** (also called **non-restrictive relative clause**, **non-identifying relative clause**, **supplementary relative clause**): a *relative clause that gives additional information about the head with which it is associated, but is not a defining relative clause because the noun phrase of which it is a part is already defined and its *referent is identifiable.

A non-defining relative clause is usually separated from the rest of the sentence in which it occurs by a comma or commas, and if it is omitted, the *sentence will still make complete sense, e.g.

> My mother, *who now lives alone*, does *The Guardian* crossword every day

Contrast:

> A woman *I know* does six crosswords a day

Without the defining relative clause *I know*, this last example does not convey the intended sense.

Compare sentential RELATIVE CLAUSE.

non-derivational *See* MONOSTRATAL.

non-equivalence *See* EQUIVALENCE.

non-factive *See* FACTIVE.

non-factual *See* FACTUAL (1).

non-finite (*n. & adj.*) (A *verb form or a *clause) that is not marked for *tense; contrasting with *finite.

The term covers the *infinitive forms of verbs (the **to*-infinitive and *bare infinitive), the **-ing* form, and the *past participle form, as well as the associated *clauses containing these forms. Thus, a **non-finite clause** is a clause that contains one or more non-finite verbs, e.g.

To expect a refund is unreasonable
All he ever does is *complain*
Having said that, I still hope he gets his degree
If consulted, I will advise against it

A non-finite clause can perform various functions, such as *subject (as in the first example above), *complement (1) (as in the second example), or *adverbial (as in the third and fourth examples).

In some frameworks, (non-)finiteness is not defined with reference to tense. Thus in CaGEL, the italicized clause in the third example above is non-finite, but it nevertheless carries tense (namely the secondary *perfect tense).

A non-finite clause can have its own subject (notice the *objective (1) *case):

For him to expect a refund is unreasonable

- **non-finitely**

•• **non-finite passive construction**: *see* PASSIVE.

Compare BARE INFINITIVE *clause*; -*ED* CLAUSE; HANGING PARTICIPLE; -*ING* CLAUSE; PARTICIPLE CLAUSE; *TO*-INFINITIVE *clause*.

n

non-gradable *See* GRADABLE.

non-headed The opposite of *headed; the same as *exocentric.

non-identifying The same as *non-defining.
See also IDENTIFY.

non-inherent *See* INHERENT.

non-linguistic The same as *extralinguistic.

non-neutral affix *See* LEVEL ORDERING (HYPOTHESIS).

non-past (*n. & adj.*) (A *verb form, *clause, etc.) marked for the *present (2) (*tense).

Morphologically, English has only two tenses, called the present tense (e.g. *look(s), come(s), can*) and the *past (2) tense (e.g. *looked, came, could*). The label ‘present’ indicates one of the typical uses of that tense, namely that it can refer to present *time (1), but fails to cover its other regular *meanings. Thus the present tense can be used to indicate futurity (e.g. *If you come tomorrow, we'll watch a movie*), timeless *reference (e.g. *Ice melts when you heat it*), and so on. *See* PRESENT (2). For this reason, some linguists prefer the term non-past for this tense, claiming that it is better thought of as *unmarked for time rather than marked for the present.

Compare MARKED.

non-perfective *See* PERFECT.

non-personal Of the *meaning of a *noun or *pronoun: *referring to something not regarded as having human personality, including *inanimate things, abstract entities, and animals.

Non-personal nouns include all nouns other than those referring to people, but the usage with regard to pronouns is not always straightforward. Pronouns normally referring to people (e.g. *he/him, she/her, who/whom*) are sometimes used of animals, and even things (e.g. *this ship and all who sail in her*), while *it* and *which* can refer to people (e.g. *A child needs its mother*; *Which of my cousins do you mean?*).

Non-personal is therefore a useful semantic label when there is some apparent mismatch. It should also be noted that, of the so-called *personal pronouns, *it* is usually non-personal in meaning, while *they* and *them* can have personal or non-personal reference.

Compare IMPERSONAL.

See also GENDER.

non-plural Not *plural.

A useful term to describe the use of the demonstratives *this* and *that,* which can be used with both singular *count nouns (*this apple*) and *uncount nouns (*that food*). Unfortunately, most grammars inaccurately and confusingly use the term *singular.

Compare NON-SINGULAR.

non-predicative The same as *attributive.

non-progressive *See* PROGRESSIVE.

non-propositional meaning *See* PROPOSITION.

non-proximal *See* PROXIMAL.

non-referential *it* *See* DUMMY; IMPERSONAL.

non-restrictive The same as *non-defining.

The term usually refers to *relative clauses, but can be applied more widely:

1966 G. N. LEECH Proper nouns do occasionally combine with modifiers of non-restrictive force: 'fair Helen' . . . ; 'beautiful Britain'.

See DEFINING.

non-scalar comparison A *comparison made between entities in a *comparative clause where the comparison is absolute and not on a scale (i.e. not gradable), e.g. *His face looked the same as his brother's does.* Compare the *scalar comparison *This room is hotter than the kitchen was when we baked a cake.*

See also COMPARATIVE CLAUSE; SCALAR COMPARISON.

non-sentence A string of *words (in written or spoken language) that functions as a complete expression, but lacks a *regular *clause *structure.

Similar terms, often not very precisely defined, include *minor sentence/clause and **clause fragment**.

Non-sentences include *formulae and *interjections. Examples:

You and your headaches!
Whatever next?
Nice one, Norman!
No way!
You fool
No taxation without representation
Of all the daft things to do!

Compare FULL (3); KERNEL.

non-singular A term to describe the use of those *determinatives (1) and *pronouns that can be used with both *plural *count *nouns (*all apples*) and *uncount nouns (*all food*).

The determinative and pronoun system of English is quite complicated. Some items relate only to *count *singular (e.g. *a, each, one*); some only to *uncount (e.g. *much*); and some only to *plural (e.g. *few, many, several, these*). There are also some words that overlap two categories: *non-plural words (e.g. *this, that*) can be used for both count singular and uncount; non-singular words (e.g. *all, enough, most*) are used for both plural and uncount.

non-specific *See* SPECIFIC.

non-standard *See* STANDARD.

non-tensed verb form A form of a *verb that does not carry *tense, e.g. a **to*-infinitive, *bare infinitive, *-*en* form, or *-*ing* form.

See also FINITE; NON-FINITE.

non-word

1. A *word that is not recorded or not established.

This may be interchangeable with *nonce word, but tends to be restricted to inventions that could be unintentional errors rather than deliberate coinages:

> 1963 *PUNCH* The aesthetically displeasing non-word 'annoyment'.

2. A string of letters (or sounds) that is not an English word.

normative The same as *prescriptive.

Normative grammars or **normative rules** prescribe what is correct (*see* CORRECTNESS), rather than describing language as it is used. The term has largely been replaced by 'prescriptive' as a pejorative label applied to outdated or misconceived *rules.

notional Based on *meaning, e.g. *semantic roles.

1. Older traditional grammar, which defines the *word classes in terms of meaning (e.g. 'A verb is a doing word') rather than by making reference to *syntax and *distribution, is sometimes called **notional grammar**. 'Notional' in this sense contrasts with *grammatical (1) or *formal (2), and today has somewhat pejorative overtones, suggesting a lack of precision and rigour.

•• **notional subject:** a term used to contrast a grammatically defined *subject with a subject defined in terms of *semantic roles. For example, in the following *existential construction the grammatical subject is *there*, whereas the notional subject ('doer', 'agent') is *two men*:

> There were two men shouting in the street (*compare*: Two men were shouting in the street)

2. In the teaching of English as a foreign language, the term notional was applied in the 1970s to syllabuses aimed at developing *communicative competence. D. A. Wilkins's *Notional Syllabuses* (1976) advocated pedagogical programmes based primarily on semantic criteria, in contrast to the older type of grammatical or 'situational' courses, although this did not exclude 'adequate learning of the grammatical system'. Suggested **notional categories** covered three areas: semantico-grammatical categories (e.g. *time and *space), *modal meaning, and *functions (3) (e.g. how to express disapproval, persuasion, or agreement). Notional in this sense still contrasts with *formal, but is a positive term with the senses 'meaningful' and 'communicative'.

In later developments in foreign language teaching, the term notional tended to be restricted to members of the first category (general concepts of time and space, etc.) which were explicitly contrasted with functions, such as agreement or suasion.

• **notionally**.

notional concord *See* AGREEMENT; GRAMMATICAL.

noun A *word that belongs to a *word class whose members can function as the *head of a *noun phrase, can inflect for *plural, and can be preceded by *determinatives (1) and *adjectives. Some nouns end in identifiable nominal *suffixes, e.g. *-ness, -hood*.

In traditional grammar, a noun is defined *notionally as 'the name of a person, place, or thing'. However, this definition works only partly. Thus *abstract nouns like *criticism* or *tolerance* are hardly things, and it is syntax, not *meaning, that determines that *think* is a *verb in one sentence (*I must think*) and a noun in another (*I'll have a think*). Modern grammarians therefore prefer more formal, syntactic definitions (*see* DISTRIBUTION).

Nouns are divided on syntactic and semantic grounds into *proper nouns and *common nouns. The latter are further divided into *count and *uncount (or *non-count). The division into *abstract and *concrete is notional, and cuts across that between count and uncount.

There is disagreement among different grammatical frameworks as to whether *pronouns belong to the class of nouns or not. In CaGEL pronouns are regarded as nouns, but in CGEL they form a separate word class (though they function as the heads of noun phrases).

• **nominal**: *see* NOMINAL.

•• **noun adjective**: *see* ADJECTIVE.

•• **noun substantive**: *see* ADJECTIVE.

See also NOUN-EQUIVALENT; SUBSTANTIVE.

nounal Of or pertaining to a *noun; *nominal. (Obsolescent.)

noun clause The same as *nominal clause (1).

noun-equivalent A *word or words functioning like a *noun.

This is a somewhat dated term, covering not only *noun phrases but also *nominal clauses.

See also EQUIVALENT.

noun modifier

1. A *noun in *attributive position. (Also called **noun premodifier**.). Examples are *book review*, *sun hat*, *toffee apple*. Such sequences are not always easy to distinguish from *compounds.

2. A word *modifying a noun.

1958 W. N. FRANCIS The most common noun modifier is the adjective.

noun pattern *See* PATTERN.

noun phrase (NP) A group of *words which has a *noun (or *pronoun) as *head and performs a particular *function (1) in a *clause, such as *subject or *direct object, e.g.

The results were faked

The head of a noun phrase can be accompanied by an assortment of *dependents, including *determiner (1), *premodifiers, and *postmodifiers; e.g.

the name
an odd name
the name of the game
the name that he gave

Compare NOMINAL GROUP.

A noun phrase can also consist of a bare noun (*singular or *plural):

Statistics can be flawed

NP An abbreviation for *noun phrase.

NP-movement *See* MOVEMENT.

nuclear English A proposed simplified form of English, intended to be used as an international language.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. Following earlier attempts (such as 'Basic English') that were largely lexical, a proposal has also recently been made for constructing a simplified form of English (termed 'Nuclear English') that would contain a subset of the features of natural English; for example, modal auxiliaries such as *can* and *may* would be replaced by such paraphrases as *be able to* and *be allowed to*. The simplified form would be intelligible to speakers of any major national variety and could be expanded for specific purposes, for example for international maritime communication.

nucleus (In CaGEL.) A grammatical *function (1) label applied to the combination of *subject + *predicate (1).

Elements that are *dislocated are moved to the left or right of the nucleus, e.g.

Your young son [$_{\text{nucleus}}$ he's a good cricketer]
[$_{\text{nucleus}}$ He's a good cricketer] *your young son*

See also DISLOCATION; LEFT DISLOCATION; PRENUCLEUS; RIGHT DISLOCATION.

null anaphor *See* ANAPHOR.

null head *See* HEAD.

number

1. A grammatical (1) *category used in the analysis of *word classes which have contrasts of *singular and *plural.

Number contrasts in English are seen in *nouns (e.g. *boy*, *boys*), *pronouns (*she*, *they*; *myself*, *ourselves*), *determinatives (1) (*this*, *these*), and *verbs (*says*, *say*; *was*, *were*).

Compare NUMERAL.

See also AGREEMENT; COLLECTIVE; COUNT; DUAL; UNCOUNT.

2. A *numeral.

numeral (*n. & adj.*) (A *word) denoting a number (as commonly understood, e.g. *one*, *two*, *three*).

Because the term *number is also used in a specialized way to refer to a grammatical category, numeral is often the preferred term for referring to the series *1/one*, *2/two*, *3/three*, *4/four*, etc. and *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, etc. *See* CARDINAL; ORDINAL.

In traditional grammar, numerals (numbers) have been treated as a subclass of *adjectives (called **numeral adjectives**) or divided between adjectives and *pronouns. Modern grammar prefers to treat numerals as *determinatives (1), *postdeterminers, or (pro)nouns, depending on their syntactic position.

numerative (*n. & adj.*) (A *word) relating to numeration, denoting an amount or quantity.

This is used as a wider term than *numeral (*cardinal and *ordinal) to include terms for *indefinite quantity, e.g.

(a) few, (a) little, several

It also includes words related to ordinal numerals by reason of their ‘ordering’ function, e.g.

next, last, preceding, subsequent

In many grammars these two groups of terms belong to different word classes, e.g. *determinative (1) versus *adjective.

Compare QUANTIFIER.

See also ORDINATIVE; QUANTIFICATION; QUANTIFIER; QUANTITATIVE; QUANTITY.

O

O Object as an *element of clause structure.

object (*n.*)

1. The *direct object.

2. (In modern analyses.) One of the five elements in *sentence structure, along with *subject, *verb, *complement, and *adverbial.

In this use, both the *direct object (DO) and *indirect object (IO) are often represented simply as 'O'. Thus *She* + *gave* + *the poor dog* + *nothing* would be represented as SVOO.

•• **anticipatory object**: *see* ANTICIPATORY.
•• **object case**: *see* OBJECT CASE; OBJECTIVE (1).
•• **object complement**: *see* COMPLEMENT.
•• **object of result**: *see* RESULT.

3. object of a preposition (also called *prepositional complement; **prepositional object**): a *phrase *licensed (*governed) by a *preposition, e.g.

in *the box*
look at *the sky*

object attribute *See* ATTRIBUTE.

object case The *case taken by *pronouns when in (grammatical) *object position, e.g. after a *verb or *preposition. (Also called *objective (1) case or *accusative case.)

The distinct object case forms for pronouns in modern English can be listed as follows:

me, her, him, us, them, whom

Notice that the label 'object case' can be problematic when describing a sentence like *I want them to sing for me*. This is because in many, though not all, analyses the pronoun *them* is regarded as the *subject of the subordinate clause *them to sing for me*. For this reason some grammarians prefer the labels **nominative**, **accusative**, etc. when talking about case. *See* SUBJECT CASE.

See also SUBJECTIVE.

object complement *See* COMPLEMENT.

objective

1. Designating the *case *inflection typically carried by *pronouns when they function as the *object of a *verb or *preposition. (Also called **object case** or **accusative case**.)

The difference between the pronouns *I, she, he, we, they, who* (called **subjective pronouns**, **subject pronouns**, or **nominative pronouns**) and *me, her, him, us, them, whom* (called **objective pronouns**, **object pronouns**, or **accusative pronouns**) can be described in terms of case.

See also GENITIVE; SUBJECTIVE (1).

2. Relating to, or referring to, an object.

In an **objective genitive** the reference is to a 'deep' object, rather than to the object of the actual *sentence or *clause. Thus the *genitive has objective meaning in:

> Caesar's assassination by Brutus (cf. Brutus assassinated Caesar)

See also GENITIVE; SUBJECTIVE (2).

•• **objective predicative complement**: *see* COMPLEMENT.

3. (*n. & adj.*) (In *Case Grammar.) (Designating) one of six original *cases (3).

This case is sometimes also called *affected or *patient.

objective predicative complement *See* COMPLEMENT.

object of result *See* RESULT.

object-raising *See* RAISING.

object-related predicative complement *See* COMPLEMENT.

object territory The position after a *verb, typically occupied by a *noun phrase. Contrasted with *subject territory.

As an example, in the following (*hypercorrect) sentence the *relative pronoun is felt to be in the object territory of *think*, but in actual fact functions as the *subject of the following *subordinate clause, and should hence take the form *who*:

> They're looking for two men *whom* they think can help them with their inquiries

The term was coined partly to explain the common tendency to use object pronouns where subject pronouns are preferred by purists, e.g.

> You were quicker than *me*
> That's *him*

objoid *See* QUASI-.

obligation One of the main meanings of *deontic modality, along with *permission.

This covers the laying of a duty on someone (possibly oneself), e.g. *You must try harder, I must go now*.

obligatory Of a *word or structure: compulsory in a particular *context. Contrasted with *optional.

Various structures can be analysed in terms of the presence of obligatory elements, or the application of obligatory *rules or processes. For example, many *transitive verbs obligatorily take certain types of *complements, e.g. a *direct object (e.g. *He's making dinner*, but not **He's making*) or a locative complement (e.g. *He put the food on the table*, but not **He put the food*). Similarly, in non-subordinate *interrogative clauses, subject-auxiliary *inversion is obligatory (*What can they do?*, not**What they can do?*).

In earlier *Generative Grammar (2), some *rules that were needed to produce acceptable *surface structures were regarded as obligatory, while others were optional.

•• **obligatory predication adjunct**: *see* PREDICATION ADJUNCT.

oblique

1. Designating a *case other than the *subjective (1) case.

In *inflected languages, all cases (other than subjective or *vocative) of inflected *nouns, *pronouns, and *adjectives are covered by this umbrella term. In English the term is occasionally applied to the *accusative forms of pronouns that show case distinctions.

•• **oblique genitive construction**: *see* GENITIVE.

2. (*n. & adj.*) (Designating a) unit in a *clause that does not function as *subject or *object.

3. (*n.* & *adj.*) (By extension.) (Designating) a unit, typically a *noun phrase, that does not directly follow a particular *verb, but functions as the object of a *preposition following that verb, as in *I rely on my neighbours*, where *my neighbours* can be described as being an **oblique (object)** of *rely*. Similarly, in *The court regards these decisions as unlawful* the *adjective phrase *unlawful* is an oblique. It is called a **predicative oblique** in CaGEL, since the phrase ascribes a property to the referent of the noun phrase *these decisions*.

See also COMPLEMENT.

oblique genitive construction *See* GENITIVE.

occurrence *See* PRIVILEGE OF OCCURRENCE.

***of*-construction**

1. A structure which conforms to the *pattern *noun + *of* + noun phrase.

This is a wider term than **of*-genitive. It is often equivalent in meaning to, and interchangeable with, a *genitive construction (e.g. *the West End of London, London's West End*), but this is not always so, and *of*-constructions are sometimes preferred or essential: *the end of the road, a book of verse, an object of ridicule, a man of honour*.

2. A structure which conforms to the pattern *of* + noun phrase. Also called **of*-phrase.

The term is sometimes used to distinguish a part of an *of*-construction from the whole, as when *indefinite *pronouns such as *all* or *many* are said to be able to 'take the partitive *of*-construction'.

The terms *of*-construction and *of*-phrase are both used somewhat loosely.

See also GENITIVE; *OF*-GENITIVE.

***of*-genitive** A *genitive *construction which contains the pattern *of* + *noun phrase, corresponding closely in meaning and function to a genitive noun phrase.

For example,

George V was the grandfather *of Queen Elizabeth II*

is roughly equivalent to

George V was *Queen Elizabeth II's* grandfather

Similarly:

the mother *of my friend* = *my friend's* mother
the Lower East Side *of New York City* = *New York City's* Lower East Side
the arrest *of the student* = *the student's* arrest
the message *of the sermon* = *the sermon's* message

See also GENITIVE; *OF*-CONSTRUCTION.

***of*-phrase** *See* GENITIVE; *OF*-CONSTRUCTION; *OF*-GENITIVE.

***of*-pronoun** A *pronoun that can be followed by a *partitive *of*-phrase. For example:

few (of those people)
much (of the time)
some (of our problems)

-oid *See quasi-*.

Old English (OE) The form of English used in Britain from circa 450 to circa 1150; the earliest stage in the development of the English language. Also called **Anglo-Saxon**.

Although Anglo-Saxon rule came to an end with the Norman Conquest of 1066, a written form of Old English continued in use until the twelfth century.

The Old English dialects were highly *inflected. *Nouns had grammatical *gender and four *cases, *singular and *plural; *adjectives agreed with nouns; and verbs inflected for *person and *number. Most of the core *vocabulary of Present-Day English is of OE origin, e.g. *man, woman, child, be, go, come, sit, stand, young, old,* as are the remaining inflections. Without study, Old English is largely incomprehensible to modern English speakers.

Compare LATE MODERN ENGLISH; MIDDLE ENGLISH; MODERN ENGLISH.

old information *See* GIVEN.

omission of words *See* ELLIPSIS.

one-place predicate *See* PREDICATE.

onomatopoeia (The formation of) a *word denoting a sound made by an animal, object, etc.; the use of such a word. Examples:

choo-choo cuckoo cock-a-doodle-doo hiss
neigh miaow tick-tock

The term is sometimes extended to cover combinations in which a sound is felt to be appropriate to some aspect of *meaning, although these combinations do not necessarily denote sounds or sources of sound. Thus *sl-*, which often occurs in words with unpleasant *connotations, is sometimes cited as an example of such **secondary onomatopoeia** (e.g. *slag, slang, slattern, slaver, sleazy, slime, slop, sluggard, slurp, slut*). Other terms for onomatopoeia are **phonaesthesia** and *sound symbolism.

• **onomatopoeic**

Compare ICON.

opaque Not obvious in structure or meaning; not able to be extrapolated from *surface structure.

Contrasted with *transparent.

open

1. Of a *word class: capable of acquiring a theoretically unlimited number of new members. Also called *major word class. Contrasted with *closed (1).

The main open classes are *nouns, *lexical verbs, *adverbs, and *adjectives. Items belonging to these classes are sometimes called **open-class items**.

See also INTERJECTION; NUMERAL.

2. Of a conditional clause or sentence: *see* CONDITION.

See also CONDITIONAL.

open condition *See* CONDITION.

open interrogative clause *See* INTERROGATIVE.

operator (In some models, e.g. CGEL.) The first or only *auxiliary verb, including the *modal verbs and *do* as a *dummy verb, in *finite clauses. The verbs *be* and *have* used as *main verbs without **do*-support are also included.

This item 'operates' *inversion (in *interrogative clauses) and the addition of *not/-n't* (for *negation):

They *could* have been imagining things
Could they have been imagining things?
They *couldn't* have been imagining things
He knows something
Does he know something?
He *doesn't* know anything

The verbs *be* and *have* used as main verbs can also be *operators (when there is no *do*-support):

Are you ready?
I *haven't* any money
Have you any idea what you have just done?

(Note that in CaGEL *be* and *have* used in these structures are regarded as auxiliaries, not as main verbs.)

Have and *do* are not operators but main verbs when they take *do*-support:

Do you *have* any idea what you have just done?
He *doesn't have* a clue
I *didn't do* the housework
Did you *do* the dishes?

Compare NICE PROPERTIES.

optative subjunctive The same as formulaic *subjunctive.

Optimality Theory A theory of language developed by A. Prince, P. Smolensky, and associates in the 1990s in which optimal phonological, morphological, and syntactic representations are generated through a list of ordered constraints.

> 2004 A. PRINCE and P. SMOLENSKY The basic idea we will explore is that Universal Grammar (UG) consists largely of a set of constraints on representational well-formedness, out of which individual grammars are constructed.

See also GENERATIVE GRAMMAR (2).

optional Not *obligatory. The term is used to describe a *word, *phrase, etc. that can be omitted leaving a grammatical structure.

Of the five *elements of clause structure, an *adverbial is always optional (though some grammars, e.g. CGEL, allow for obligatory *predication adjuncts, e.g. *The police are here*.). *Subjects are obligatory in *finite *clause structures (**Is raining*), with the exception of *imperatives (e.g. *Go! You go!*) if these are regarded as finite. Missing subjects in *coordinated clauses are explained as being examples of *ellipsis.

• **optionality**, **optionally**.

•• **optional predication adjunct**: *see* PREDICATION ADJUNCT.

oral Using or pertaining to speech, as opposed to writing.

Oral competence, for example, may be contrasted with writing competence.

order of adjectives *See* ADJECTIVE ORDER.

order of words *See* WORD ORDER.

ordinal number A *word defining *position in a series (*first, second, third, fourth*, etc.). Contrasted with *cardinal number (*one, two, three, four*, etc.). Also called **ordinal numeral**.

> 1892a H. SWEET Most of the ordinal numerals are derivatives of the cardinal ones.

See also NUMBER; NUMERAL.

ordinative (*n. & adj.*) (A *numeral or *adjective) that indicates *position in an order.

This is a wider term than *ORDINAL (*number), including *words such as *next, last, preceding*.

See also NUMERATIVE.

Compare QUANTITATIVE.

***or*-relationship** A *paradigmatic relationship. Contrasted with *_and_-relationship (i.e. *syntagmatic relationship).

See also CHAIN; CHOICE; PARADIGM; SAUSSUREAN; SYNTAGMATIC; SYNTAGMATIC RELATIONSHIP.

orthographic Of, or pertaining to, spelling.
•• **orthographic word**: a *word as written or printed, i.e. with spaces on either side. This is the way that the concept of word is commonly understood, although there is variability with *compounds. There are also sometimes problems with the use of the *apostrophe. An advertisement some years ago said:

> Four little words that can cost a tobacconist £400. THEY'RE FOR MY MUM.

For many people *they're* is two words, but it is a single orthographic word, so the advertisement is correct by the definition given here.

Compare LEXEME.

orthography (The study or science of) how *words are spelt. Contrasted with *graphology.

> 1873 J. EARLE When we use the word 'orthography', we do not mean a mode of spelling which is true to the pronunciation, but one which is conventionally correct.

Spelling being largely standardized, a word normally has only one recognized orthographic form, but in a few cases there are acceptable *variants, e.g.

cipher/cypher
hallo/hello
mateyness/matiness
standardise/standardize

And there are also distinct British and American spellings:

centre/center
colour/color
sceptical/skeptical
travelling/traveling

overcorrection The same as *hypercorrection.

overgeneralize Apply a grammatical *rule, principle, etc. to inappropriate cases.

The term is particularly used in the domain of first language acquisition. Thus a child who overgeneralizes the *plural *-s* *inflection or the *past tense *-ed* inflection might say *mans, mouses, sheeps,* or *bringed, runned,* etc.
• **overgeneralization**.

overlapping distribution *See* DISTRIBUTION.

Oxford comma *See* PUNCTUATION.

Oxford English Grammar A *corpus-based reference *grammar published in 1996, written by Sidney Greenbaum. Updated by Edmund Weiner as the *Oxford Reference Grammar* in 2000.

***Oxford Modern English Grammar* (OMEG)** A *corpus-based reference *grammar published in 2011, written by Bas Aarts.

P

paradigm (Pronounced /ˈpærədaɪm/.) *Morphology*. An arrangement of the *inflectional forms of a *lexeme, according to one or more grammatical features (e.g. *case, *person, *number, *tense).

For example, *see, sees, seeing, saw, seen* constitute a verbal paradigm for the lexeme *see*.

Paradigms can be conceptualized as a series of 'slots' for the various forms of a lexeme:

> 2001 G.T. STUMP The PARADIGM of a lexeme L is a set of CELLS; each such cell is the pairing <Y, σ> of an inflected form Y of the lexeme L with a complete set σ of morphosyntactic properties for L.

The term comes ultimately from Greek *paradeigma* 'pattern, example', and is used in language teaching for a set of forms of a particular lexeme as a model for all other words which inflect in the same way. For example, for the Latin first *declension noun *puella* 'girl', we have the following paradigm for the singular:

nominative	*puella*
vocative	*puella*
accusative	*puellam*
genitive	*puellae*
dative	*puellae*
ablative	*puella*

This model can then be used to decline any other first declension noun. The term is mostly used for the description of languages which have richer inflectional systems than English.

- **paradigmatic**: forming, belonging to, or relating to a paradigm or paradigms. *See also* PARADIGMATIC RELATIONSHIP; SYNTAGMATIC RELATIONSHIP.
- **paradigmatically**.

See also CHAIN; CONJUGATION; DECLENSION.

paradigmatic relationship A relationship between two or more linguistic units that form a *paradigm or paradigms. Also called **or*-relationship.

Paradigmatic (choice) relationships are contrasted with *syntagmatic (*chain) relationships. The terminology is that of Ferdinand de Saussure (1857–1913).

The English article system and pronoun system are examples of paradigms. We can say *a book* or *the book*, but not **a the book*. Similarly, we can grammatically substitute one pronoun for another in the subject position of *I told the truth* (e.g. *you/he/she/we/they/somebody*, etc.), but we cannot choose more than one pronoun, unless they are coordinated (e.g. *You and I told the truth*).

See also CONJUGATION; DECLENSION; SAUSSUREAN; SYNTAGM; SYNTAGMATIC RELATIONSHIP.

paragraph (*n.*) A distinct section of a piece of writing, beginning on a new, and often indented, line.

(*v.*) Arrange in such sections.

Although the way a text is set out on the page may be an important factor in its intelligibility, the paragraph as such has no grammatical status comparable to that of a *phrase, *clause, or *sentence.

Compare DISCOURSE.

paralanguage The *paralinguistic features of spoken language.

Somewhat rare.

paralinguistic Of or pertaining to the non-verbal features of spoken language.

The term is used in a variety of ways to include or exclude certain non-verbal features of spoken communication. In analysis of non-verbal vocal phenomena, paralinguistic features are often contrasted with more measurable prosodic ones, such as intonation and stress. Paralinguistic features can thus include tone of voice, and the distinctive characteristics of an individual's voice.

Non-vocal features accompanying spoken communication, such as eye movements, nodding, or other forms of body language, are also frequently classified as paralinguistic.

There is some overlap between this term and *extralinguistic.

- **paralinguistics**: the study of paralinguistic features.

paraphrase (*n.*) A sentence or longer piece of text that expresses the same meaning as another sentence or piece of text using a different wording. However, the meaning of the ‘original’ and of the paraphrase are seldom exactly the same, because paraphrases often change some types of meaning in certain ways. For example, they may change the emphasis on certain units and/or the way information is structured (e.g. what the *topic is, what the *focus is), while looser paraphrases can change the level of formality, social implications, and so on.

(*v.*) Make or constitute a paraphrase of (a sentence, piece of text).

parasynthesis *Morphology*.

1. Derivation from a *compound or syntactic sequence.

An example is the formation of *red-faced* from *red face* + *-ed*.

2. The simultaneous addition of two *affixes. Also called **circumfixation**.

> 2003 I. PLAG [S]ome complex words with more than one affix seem to have come into being through the **simultaneous** attachment of two affixes. A case in point is *decaffeinate*, for which, at the time of creation, neither *caffeinate* was available as a base word (for the prefixation of *de-*), nor **decaffein* (as the basis for *-ate* suffixation). Such forms are called **parasynthetic** formations, and the process of simultaneous multiple affixation is called **parasynthesis**.

- **parasynthetic**: formed (by derivation) from a compound or syntactic sequence of two or more elements; or formed by the simultaneous addition of two affixes.

paratactic *See* PARATAXIS.

parataxis A relationship of grammatical equality between two linguistic units. Contrasted with *hypotaxis.

Parataxis (literally ‘side-by-side arrangement’) is a very general term covering various kinds of juxtaposition of units of equal status, including the *coordination of two (or more) equal words, phrases, or clauses, with or without coordinating *conjunctions, e.g.

a bus and a cab
poor but happy and optimistic
mad, bad, dangerous

Some grammarians specifically use the term for *asyndetic coordination, contrasting it with *syndetic coordination.

Others extend the term to include juxtapositions of two equal units which would not be regarded as coordination (since no conjunctions could be inserted), for example certain phrases that are contrasted with each other, *apposition, clausal linkage in *tags, or the relationship between a reporting verb and a direct quotation, e.g.

the more, the merrier
Oxford, city of dreaming spires
It's a lovely day, isn't it?
They shouted 'Go home'

The last example is certainly controversial, because many grammarians would consider *Go home* to be the *direct object of the verb *shout*, in which case this particular relationship would be hypotactic.

- **paratactic**: exhibiting parataxis.

parenthesis (Plural **parentheses**.)

1. A *word, *phrase, *clause, etc., that is inserted into a sentence as an aside, explanation, or afterthought. In writing, a parenthesis is usually marked off by brackets, dashes, or commas, e.g.

My colleagues suggested (can you believe it?) that we have a meeting every day

Tim—I haven't seen him since Sunday—doesn't want to come to dinner tonight

2. (In plural.) A pair of brackets—usually round ones, '(. . .)'—used for marking a parenthesis.

- **parenthetical**.

Compare ANACOLUTHON; COMMENT CLAUSE; SUPPLEMENT.

parole *See* LANGUE.

paronym A word derived from the same *base (2) as another, and used in a related meaning; a word formed from a foreign word with only a slight change of form (especially one used as a translation equivalent of the foreign word). Contrasted with *heteronym (3).

Examples: *wise*: *wisdom*; *preface*: Latin *praefatio* (as contrasted with *foreword*).

- **paronymous**.
- **paronymy**: the use of morphologically related words in related senses.

parse

1. Describe (a word in context) grammatically, stating for example its *inflection or relation to the rest of its containing *phrase, *clause, or *sentence.

2. Analyse a linguistic unit (sentence, clause, phrase, etc.) into its *constituent parts, and describe these grammatically.

3. (In *corpus linguistics.) Grammatically analyse a (portion of) text using an automated computational process. *Compare* TAG.

partial apposition *See* APPOSITION.

partial conversion *See* CONVERSION.

participant

1. *Linguistics*. A role that can be assigned to an individual involved in a text, discourse, etc.

Whether written or spoken, every text involves at least two people: the speaker/writer and the addressee (the listener or reader). This is true whether the participants are mentioned (*I am asking you a favour*) or not (*Keep off the grass!*). The relationship of the people involved in a text is a **participant relation** or **participant relationship**.

2. *Semantics*. The same as *case (3) or *semantic role.

The case or semantic role of a noun phrase can be called its **participant role**. For example, an *agent is an **agentive participant**; an indirect object is typically a **recipient participant**; and so on.

participial Of the nature of, of or pertaining to, a *participle.

●● **participial adjective**: *see* PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE.

●● **participial clause**: the same as *participle clause.

●● **participial conjunction**: a *conjunction that is a participle in form, e.g.

> You can borrow it *providing/provided (that)* you return it in good condition

●● **participial preposition**: a *preposition that is a participle in form, e.g.

> *Following* the disclosures, the chairman resigned

participial adjective An *adjective that has the same form as the *participle of the verb to which it is related, i.e. one formed with the *suffix *-ing* or *-ed/-en*. Also called **verbal adjective**. Examples:

> They are *loving* parents
> *exciting* times
> His thoughts were *alarming*

Participial adjectives are typically *gradable, e.g.

> *very* loving parents (*Compare*: They are loving every minute of it; verb + object)
> *very* exciting times
> *very* alarming thoughts

However, the attributively used participles of some verbs are best analysed as being verbal. For example, *an escaped prisoner* is ‘a prisoner who has escaped’, *a changing culture* is ‘a culture that is changing’, and *a knitted jumper* is ‘a jumper that has been knitted’. Such participles cannot be modified by *very*:

*a *very* escaped prisoner
*a *very* changing culture
*a *very* knitted jumper

However, modification by an *adverb is possible in many cases:

a *recently* escaped prisoner
a *rapidly* changing culture
a *deftly* knitted jumper

In some contexts the status of a participle-like form is *ambiguous. Thus *I was annoyed* can be interpreted verbally (e.g. *I was annoyed by their behaviour*) or as an adjective (e.g. *I was very annoyed*), or perhaps even as both (*I was very annoyed by their behaviour*).

Participial adjectives also include words that are formed with a regular -*ed* or -*ing* ending, but lack a corresponding verb, e.g.

booted and *spurred*
honeyed words
talented musicians
unexpected pleasure
wooded slopes
unconvincing narrative

*Parasynthetic adjectives like the following are especially frequent: *able-bodied, half-hearted, one-legged, three-cornered, two-faced, white-haired.* This type (which also lack a corresponding verb) is sometimes called a **pseudo-participle**.

Some -*ing* forms in attributive position are noun-like, e.g. *dining room, planning permission*. *See* -ING FORM.

participle A *non-finite form of the *verb which in *regular verbs ends in either -*ing* or -*ed* (-*en* for *irregular verbs).

Two participles are distinguished, traditionally labelled *present participle (e.g. *being, doing, drinking, looking*; also called **gerund participle** or ***-ing* participle**) and *past participle (e.g. *been, done, drunk, looked*). Neither name is accurate, since both participles are used in the formation of a variety of complex constructions (tenses), and can be used in combination with one or more auxiliaries to refer to *past, *present, or *future *time (e.g. *What had they been doing? This must be drunk soon*). Preferred terms are *-*ing* form (which also includes the *gerund) and *-*ed* form/*-*en* form.

Compare FUSED PARTICIPLE.

participle clause A *non-finite *clause with an *-*ing* form or *-*ed* form (*-*en* form for *irregular verbs) as its principal verbal component. (Also called **participial clause**.) Examples:

Looking to neither right nor left, he marched out
Treated like that, I would have collapsed
Having been warned before, he did not do it again

A participle clause can sometimes be introduced by a *conjunction:

If treated like that, I would have collapsed.

A participle clause that contains its own subject is a type of *absolute clause.

See also BARE INFINITIVE CLAUSE; CONTENT CLAUSE; -*ED* CLAUSE; HANGING PARTICIPLE; *TO*-INFINITIVE clause.

particle

1. A neutral term to denote a word that combines with a *verb to form a *multi-word verb. Also called **adverb(ial) particle**.

Most particles are high-frequency short words which are regarded as adverbs, or as prepositions in some analyses:

She looked *up* the word/She looked the word *up*

In many grammars *look up* is treated as a *phrasal verb (2).

Contrast the example above with the following:

She looked up the road/Up the road she looked/*She looked the road up

Here most linguists would agree that *up* is a preposition that functions as the *head of the *prepositional phrase *up the road*. *See also* PREPOSITIONAL VERB.

2. The word *to* when used before an *infinitive. Sometimes called the *infinitival particle *to*.

To is generally a *preposition (as in *ten to six, go to Oxford*), and is sometimes regarded as an *adverb (e.g. *Brandy might bring him to*). Historically the word *to* before an infinitive is a preposition, but its grammar is different from that of the preposition *to*—most notably in that the latter, if followed by a verb, requires this verb to be an *-*ing* form, and does not permit the infinitive. Contrast:

We look forward *to* your visit
We look forward *to* seeing you } *to* = preposition

We hope *to* see you soon
*We look forward *to* see you soon } *to* = infinitival particle

3. pragmatic particle: *see* FILLER (2).

4. (Obsolete.) A member of a set of words including adverbs, prepositions, and *conjunctions.

Membership of this set varied according to different writers. It was often reckoned to include *articles, sometimes *determinatives (1), and sometimes even *affixes and *interjections.

See also NEGATIVE PARTICLE.

partition *See* PARTITIVE.

partitive (*n. & adj.*) (Denoting) (a word that is the first element in) a *phrase or *construction that expresses the relationship of a part to the whole (a **partition**), and that has the schematic form ‘X of Y’. In this pattern X is a **partitive noun** (or **partitive**, or **unit noun**), e.g. *piece, bit, sort,* whereas Y is called the **partitive oblique** or **partitive genitive** (see also below).

The partitive construction often refers to a quantity or amount (**quantity partitive**):

a *piece* of paper
two *pieces* of paper
a *bit* of a problem
an *item* of clothing

but can also indicate quality (**quality partitive**):

a *sort* of clown
a different *kind* of cheese
that *type* of person

Some words that are part of the second part of the construction (e.g. *grass, bread, sheep, dirt*) combine with a specific partitive noun:

a blade of grass
a *flock* of sheep
a *loaf* of bread
a *speck* of dirt

Partitives are useful because they provide a means of individuating *uncount nouns:

three *slices* of bacon (*three bacons)
an interesting *piece* of information (*an interesting information)

When the second noun in a similar structure is *plural, the first noun denotes not a part, but a collection of items, individuals, animals, etc.:

a *bunch* of flowers
a *clump* of trees
a *crowd* of people
a *flock* of sheep

Some of these nouns are in fact *collective nouns, and are so classified in some grammatical models. Partitives can also denote containers:

a *packet* of cigarettes
a *sack* of potatoes
a *teaspoon(ful)* of sugar

Pronouns with *indefinite meaning in partitive constructions are sometimes labelled **indefinite partitives**. This set includes *many*, *few*, *some*, etc.

● **partitively**.

●● **partitive fused-head**: *see* FUSION.

●● **partitive genitive**: this can refer either to the *of*-phrase in the partitive construction, as above, or to a *genitive that indicates that of which something is part, rather than a possession, e.g. *the baby's eyes*, *the earth's surface*.

part of speech *See* WORD CLASS.

passival A now disused *progressive construction which is interpreted in the same way as a *passive construction by virtue of its subject carrying the *semantic role of *patient. Perhaps the chiefly American English *I'm hurting* (i.e. 'something is hurting me') can be viewed as a relic (or modern reincarnation) of this construction.

> 1998 D. DENISON Before it became possible to combine the progressive with the passive . . . , certain verbs could be used in the active progressive in a sense which corresponded to a passive. Visser uses the label **passival** for this notionally but not formally passive construction.

See also MEDIOPASSIVE; MIDDLE VERB.

passive (*adj.*) Of a *verb, *clause, *construction, etc.: designating an exponent of the grammatical category of *voice whereby the grammatical *subject 'undergoes', 'experiences', or 'receives' the action denoted by the verb. Contrasted with *active.

(*n.*) A construction (*verb phrase, clause, or sentence) in which the referent of the grammatical subject typically 'undergoes', 'experiences', or 'receives' the action of the verb (i.e. is its *patient). Contrasted with active.

The term is sometimes applied to the *past participle form of *lexical verbs in such constructions.

In formal terms, a passive construction contains a form of the **passive auxiliary *be*** (or *get*: see *GET*-PASSIVE) combined with a past participle, as in:

> The window *was shattered* by my neighbour's son

The *agent is mentioned in the **by*-phrase. Passive constructions with a *by*-phrase are sometimes called **long passives**. Contrast the example above with its active counterpart:

My neighbour's son shattered the window

In some cases, mention of an agent is unlikely or impossible:

Churchill was born in 1874

A passive construction with no overtly expressed agent is called an **agentless passive**, **non-agentive passive**, or **short passive**. The agent is often omitted because it is unimportant or unknown, e.g.

Rome was not built in a day

Alternatively, the identity of the agent is deliberately concealed, sometimes for *rhetorical (1) reasons, e.g.

This church has been described as the most beautiful of its kind in Britain

The examples above involve **finite passive constructions**. The italicized clause in the following example exemplifies a **non-finite passive construction**:

He wanted *to be elected to the post*

In the *catenative-auxiliary analysis, the following examples also involve non-finite passive constructions, functioning as *complements of *modal verbs:

Dinner will *be served* by the catering staff
Trespassers may *be prosecuted* by the police
Mistakes cannot *be rectified* by the company

The active counterparts of these sentences are as follows:

The catering staff will serve dinner
The police may prosecute trespassers
The company cannot rectify mistakes

It is typically constructions headed by transitive verbs that take passive forms, since the grammatical subject of a passive construction corresponds to the object of a transitive verb in an active construction. However, not all active structures have a passive counterpart:

Blue suits you/*You are suited by blue
Those people lack confidence/*Confidence is lacked by those people

There are also passive constructions which do not have active counterparts, e.g.

They are said to be very intelligent/*People say them to be very intelligent

Some passive sentences are ambiguous. Thus *The opera house was finished in 1980*, out of context, is most likely to have an actional meaning referring to the building activity, namely 'the building work was completed in 1980’. This is called an **actional passive**. But it could also have a statal meaning, i.e. ‘the building was in a finished state in 1980’. This is called a **statal passive**. In an actional passive the string *be* + past participle clearly forms a passive construction, whereas in a statal passive *be* is a *copular verb and the *-ed/-en* form is an adjective. The statal passive is sometimes called *pseudo-passive or **adjectival passive**.

• **passively**, **passivity**.

•• **prepositional passive**: This label is applied to the passive counterparts of constructions involving *prepositional verbs, *phrasal-prepositional verbs, and other similar constructions, e.g. *He was looked after by his grandmother*; *Such behaviour will not be put up with*; *This bed was slept in by Shakespeare*.

See also ACTIVE; AGENT; *BY*-PHRASE; DOUBLE PASSIVE; *GET*-PASSIVE; MEDIOPASSIVE; MIDDLE VERB; PASSIVAL; PATIENT; PSEUDO-PASSIVE; QUASI-; SEMANTIC ROLE; SEMI-PASSIVE; STATIVE; TRANSFORMATION; VOICE.

passive auxiliary *be* *See* PASSIVE.

passive infinitive *See* INFINITIVE.

passive participle *See* PASSIVE; PAST PARTICIPLE; VOICE.

passivize Convert into the *passive; be subject to conversion into the passive.

> 1984 F. R. PALMER We can passivize the main clause with PERSUADE, but not with WANT:
>
> *The doctor was persuaded to examine John*
> **The doctor was wanted to examine John*

• **passivizable**, **passivization**.
This group of terms was coined by Noam Chomsky.

past (*n. & adj.*)

1. (Occurring in) the past, as in the expression *past *situation*, for example. Contrasted with *present (1).

2. (A *tense or *inflectional form of a verb) typically expressing *anteriority. The grammatical label **past tense** is typically used of a *verb form that refers to a situation that took place in the past. However, this association can be misleading. While the past tense typically refers to past time, it can also be used hypothetically. To put it differently, it can denote **modal remoteness** (hence the alternative labels **hypothetical past**, **modal past**, and **modal preterite**), i.e. mark unreality, non-factuality, and so on:

> If I *had* my way, I would abolish this organization
> I wish I *knew*

The clause in which a modal past occurs is sometimes called a **modal preterite clause**.

The past tense can also be used for **social distancing** (the *attitudinal past):

Could you lend me some money?
I *wanted* to ask you something

With no further label, the phrase *past of a verb* designates the tense (the past tense), or the morphologically marked form which in regular verbs always ends in *-ed*, and which is normally listed second when verb forms are given (e.g. *complete, completed, completed*; *paint, painted, painted*). *Irregular verbs often display a vowel modification (e.g. *sing, sang, sung*), but not always (e.g. *put, put, put*).

In some frameworks the *perfect is regarded as a (secondary) past tense. *see* PRIMARY *tense*.

•• **past continuous (tense)**: *see* PAST PROGRESSIVE; PROGRESSIVE.
•• **past definite**: *see* DEFINITE.
•• **past futurate**: *see* FUTURATE.
•• **past imperfect**: *see* IMPERFECT.
•• **past-in-the-future**: *see* FUTURE PERFECT; PAST PARTICIPLE.
•• **past-in-the-past**: *see* PAST PERFECT.
•• **past participle**: *see* PAST PARTICIPLE.
•• **past perfect (tense)**: *see* PAST PERFECT.
•• **past progressive (tense)**: *see* PROGRESSIVE.
•• **past simple tense, simple past tense**, or **simple preterite**: this refers to a past tense form of a verb used on its own, e.g. *They bought a new house*.

See also BACKSHIFT; CONDITION; FUTURATE; FUTURE IN THE PAST; NON-PAST; PERFECT; PRESENT PERFECT; PRIMARY *tense*.

past participial clause *See -ED* CLAUSE.

past participle The form of a *verb which is used in *passive and *perfect *constructions, and sometimes in front of *nouns.

Examples:

I have *looked* everywhere to find my keys
The pancakes were *eaten* by my kids
lost property

In *regular verbs the past participle ends in the same *-ed* inflection as the *past tense, and is called the *-*ed* form (or ***-ed* participle**) by some grammarians; others prefer the label *-*en* form (based on the distinctive ending of certain *irregular verbs such as *spoken, driven*), so as to distinguish it more clearly from the past tense *inflection.

The past participle is the third form listed when verb forms are given in dictionaries (e.g. *create, created, created*; *see, saw, seen*).

Some grammarians refer to the participle in the passive construction as the **passive participle**, even though inflectionally it is indistinguishable from the past participle.

In combination with the perfect auxiliary *have*, the past participle can signify *perfective meaning or completion (*I have finished the essay*), but is not restricted to past time; for example, *You'll have forgotten my message by this time next year* exemplifies a **past-in-the-future** (*see* FUTURE PERFECT).

●● **past participle clause**: *see -ED* CLAUSE.

●● **past participle construction**: *see -ED* CLAUSE.

Compare -ED CLAUSE; PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE; PARTICIPLE.

past perfect A *construction (*tense in some frameworks) formed with *had* (or *'d*) + a *past participle. Also called **before-past**, **pluperfect**, **past-in-the-past**, and **preterite perfect**.

With no further label, 'past perfect' refers to a simple active construction, e.g. *I had forgotten about the concert when Clare arrived to pick me up.*

Past perfect progressive and **past perfect passive** constructions (tenses), and combinations of the two, also occur:

We *had been wondering* about that, when the letter arrived
The matter *had been overlooked*
It *had been being compiled* by hand

In general, the past perfect refers to a time earlier than some other past reference time. But like other so-called *past (2) tenses, the past perfect in a subordinate clause may signify hypothetical or counterfactual meaning (something contrary to fact), called the **modal past perfect**:

If you *had told* me before now, I could have helped
If you *had been coming* tomorrow, you would have met my mother

The past perfect may also stress *perfectiveness or completion, as in *They waited until I had finished.*

Compare ASPECT.

See also BACKSHIFT; MODAL REMOTENESS; PAST; PLUPLUPERFECT.

past perfect passive *See* PAST PERFECT.

past perfect progressive *See* PAST PERFECT.

past progressive The *construction (*tense in some frameworks) formed with a past form of the verb *be* + an *-ing* form.

Examples:

It *was raining*
We *were waiting*
They *were being* interrogated

The last example involves a **past progressive passive** (or **past continous passive**).

See also PROGRESSIVE.

past simple tense The *past (2) tense form of a verb used on its own, as in *We watched a film last night*. Also called **simple past (tense)** and **simple preterite**.

See PAST (2); SIMPLE (3).

past subjunctive *See* SUBJUNCTIVE; TENSE.

past tense *See* PAST.

path A *semantic role that denotes the trajectory along which an entity travels.

> 2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. In the central case where the theme moves, as in [*She ran from the post office via the railway station to the bus-stop*], the starting-point is the **source** (*the post office*), the endpoint is the **goal** (*the bus-stop*), and the intermediate point is the **path** (*the railway station*).

patient A *semantic role assigned to an *argument which denotes an entity that is acted upon, or affected in some way by the action expressed by the verb. Also called **undergoer**, and often not distinguished from *theme (2).

In some frameworks, patient is equated with *affected.

pattern A (regular) syntactic configuration or *construction in which elements of language (*words, *phrases, *clauses, etc.) combine to form larger units.

At the syntactic level, clause structure can functionally be analysed in terms of a comparatively small set of patterns that are determined by the type of verb involved in the containing clause, as follows: *subject–*verb (SV; with an *intransitive verb), subject–verb–*object (SVO; with a *transitive verb), subject–verb–*complement (SVC; with a *linking verb), subject–verb–object–object (SVOO; with a *ditransitive verb), and subject–verb–object–complement (SVOC; with a *complex transitive verb).

Where only the verb's internal complements are concerned, we speak of *complementation patterns. Individual verbs can be said to be part of complementation patterns. For example, both *want* and *wish* can be followed by (an object +) a *to*-infinitive: *I want (you) to go, I wish (you) to* *go*. But only *wish* can be used in the pattern verb + *that*-clause. So we can say *I wish that you would go*, but not **I want that you* (*would*) *go*. Thus *want* and *wish* occur in different complementation patterns.

In a similar way we can speak of **noun patterns**, such that some nouns can be followed by clauses (e.g. *a determination to succeed, the fact that the earth is round*), by prepositional phrases (e.g. *love of money*), etc.; of **adjective patterns** (e.g. *keen to help, thoughtful of you, sorry (that) I spoke*); and so on.

Compare COLLIGATION; CONSTRUCTION; CO-OCCURRENCE.

paucal Implying a small number or amount. Contrasted with *multal.

In some detailed classifications of *pronouns and *determinatives (1), the label paucal is given to a subset of words with a *quantifying meaning: *a few, certain, fewer, fewest, a little, less, least*. The term is specifically used when describing languages that have a *number system with more categories than *singular and *plural.

P-bar (P′) category *See* X-BAR SYNTAX.

PDE An abbreviation for *Present-Day English.

pedagogical grammar *See* GRAMMAR.

perception verb One of a set of *verbs denoting the use of one of the physical senses. Also called **perceptual verb** or **verb of perception**. Grammatically, perception verbs typically occur in two *patterns:

I heard him sing
I heard him singing

Other verbs that fit both these patterns are *feel, listen (to), look (at), notice, observe, perceive, see,* and *watch*. Although it is not a perception verb, *have* also fits the pattern. Some other verbs occur in one or the other of these patterns, but not both.

perfect (*n. & adj.*) (A *construction, or a *tense in some models) that indicates that a *situation took place before some stated or implied time, implemented by a form of the perfect auxiliary *have* plus a *past participle, e.g.

He *has/had won*
I will *have finished* by next week
Having said that, . . .

The *present perfect indicates *current relevance.

Some linguists prefer to refer to this construction as **perfect aspect** (or, less felicitously, *perfective aspect) rather than tense. Perfect aspect contrasts with *progressive aspect.

Linguists who recognise **perfect tenses** often, though not always, contrast them with *progressive tenses and *simple tenses.

Contrast IMPERFECT; IMPERFECTIVE; PERFECTIVE.

See also ASPECT; FUTURE PERFECT; PAST; PAST PERFECT; PRESENT; PRESENT PERFECT; PRIMARY *tense*.

perfect auxiliary A form of the *verb *have* which is followed by a *past participle and used in the *perfect construction, e.g.

I *have* seen that film already
They believe a young girl to *have* cracked the secret code (*see* PERFECT INFINITIVE)
She will *have* been seen by the consultant

perfect infinitive A *perfect construction formed by an *infinitive form of the perfect *auxiliary *have* followed by a *past participle, e.g.

She seems to *have forgotten* what he said earlier
To *have shouted* at the children was unforgivable
You can't *have been* serious about that

See also ASPECT; PRESENT PERFECT; PRIMARY *tense*; TENSE.

perfective

1. (*adj.*) *Semantics*. Signalling perfective meaning, i.e. viewing a *situation as complete, without reference to its internal parts, e.g. *They watched television*.

> 2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. With perfective aspectuality, the situation is presented in its totality, as a complete whole; it is viewed, as it were, from the outside, without reference to any temporal structure or segmentation.

2. (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) the grammatical *aspect that expresses a complete *situation without reference to its internal parts. Some linguists prefer to reserve this sense to languages that make extensive use of perfective aspect, e.g. the Slavic languages. Often infelicitously used interchangeably with *perfect aspect (see 3 below).

3. (In e.g. CGEL.) The same as *perfect.

- **perfectiveness.**

Compare IMPERFECT; IMPERFECTIVE.

perfect progressive *See* TENSE.

performance *See* COMPETENCE.

performative (*n. & adj.*) (Designating or belonging to) an *utterance that constitutes an action in itself.

The term is used in *Speech Act Theory (first developed by the philosopher J. L. Austin) to describe utterances or written statements that ‘do’ something (i.e. perform an action of some kind), e.g.

> I advise you to reconsider
> I promise to pay the bearer on demand the sum of five pounds
> I name this ship *The Dolphin*

Performative utterances can be divided into **explicit performatives**, where the *verb specifies which action is being performed, as in the examples above, and **implicit performatives** (or **primary performatives**), where the action (e.g. promising) is merely implicit (e.g. *The bank will pay the bearer* . . .).

Performative utterances were originally contrasted with **constative statements**, which state that something is or is not the case, and which therefore, unlike performatives, have a truth-value (*see* TRUTH-CONDITIONAL SEMANTICS). Austin later realized that in a sense every utterance carries out some sort of action, and as a result is underlyingly performative. For example, when I say *It is hot today*, the underlying action is one of ‘making a statement’.

In ordinary grammatical usage the term is often restricted to verbs that explicitly perform an action, e.g. *advise, apologize, beg, confess, promise, swear, warn* (**performative verbs**). The term includes verbs that in a more detailed analysis of speech acts are covered by the term **declaration** (as in *I name this ship* . . . , *I declare the meeting closed*). It is usually said that such verbs are performatives only when used in the *first person of the *present tense, and that in other contexts such verbs are merely reporting a performative act (e.g. *She advised him to reconsider*). But this may be an overly narrow definition of what constitutes a performative utterance.

Austin first used the term *performatory* (in 1949), but later substituted *performative* (in 1955).

Compare ILLOCUTION; PERLOCUTION.

period (In AmE.) The same as *full stop.

periphrasis The use of separate words to express a grammatical relationship that is also expressed by *inflection in other contexts.

Periphrasis is a common feature of *adjective and *adverb *comparison, where periphrastic phrases with *more* and *most* are an obligatory alternative to forms ending in *-er* and *-est* for longer adjectives and for most adverbs (*more beautiful, most oddly*). A choice between inflection and periphrasis is possible with some two-syllable adjectives, e.g. *It gets lovelier/more lovely every day*.

The term is sometimes applied to the formation of certain English *tenses, such as the *perfect tense, which is not expressed using a single inflected form, but through a combination of the perfect auxiliary *have* with a *past participle form of a verb. In other frameworks this combination would be called the perfect construction, rather than a tense.

• **periphrastic**.

See also ANALYTIC (1).

perlocution The (intended or unintended) effect that a particular *speech act may have on a hearer. Contrasted with *locution and *illocution.

• **perlocutionary**: designating an act of this kind.

> 1977 J. LYONS By the illocutionary force of an utterance is to be understood its status as a promise, a threat, a request, a statement, an exhortation, etc. By its perlocutionary effect is meant its effect upon the beliefs, attitudes or behaviour of the addressee and, in certain cases, its consequential effect upon some state-of-affairs within the control of the addressee . . . It is the intended perlocutionary effect that has generally been confused with illocutionary force.

•• **perlocutionary act**: a speech act that functions as a perlocution.

permanent *See* TEMPORARY.

permission One of the main meanings of *deontic modality, along with *obligation. Example:

Can/may I go now?

person A grammatical category used, together with *number, in the classification of *pronouns (*my/mine*, *your/yours*, etc.), related *determinatives (1), and *verb forms, according to whether they indicate the speaker, the addressee, or a third party; one of the three distinctions within this category.

A threefold contrast between *first person, *second person, and *third person is made, and is particularly distinct in the *personal pronouns. *Be* is unique among English verbs in having three distinctive person forms in the *present tense (*am*, *is*, *are*) and two in the *past tense (*was*, *were*). Other verbs have a distinctive form only for the third person *singular of the present tense (e.g. *has, does, wants*, etc., as opposed to *have, do, want*, etc.).

• **personal**: denoting one of the three persons.

Compare IMPERSONAL; NON-PERSONAL.

personal pronoun A *pronoun belonging to a set that shows contrasts of *person, *gender, *number, and *case (though not every personal pronoun shows all these distinctions).

The personal pronouns are:

1st person:	*I/me*; *we/us*
2nd person:	*you*
3rd person:	*he/him*, *she/her*, *it*; *they/them*

*Reflexive pronouns (*myself*, *ourselves*, etc.) and *possessive pronouns (*mine*, *ours*, etc.) are also included.

Pre-nominal possessives (*my*, *our*, etc.) are sometimes analysed as pronouns, but more often as *determiners (2), or (infelicitously) as both. *Reciprocal pronouns (*each other*, *one another*) do not have different person forms, and are therefore not regarded as personal pronouns.

phase

1. In some modern terminology phase is preferred to *aspect or *tense in describing the meaning of the *perfect construction.

> 1987 F. PALMER Phase is best seen as the marker of a complex set of time relations. Though there are several possibilities, all of them share the characteristic that what is involved is a period of time that began before, but continued right up to, a point of time which may itself be present or past according to the tense used.

2. (In *Systemic Grammar.) A particular kind of semantic relationship between verbs in a sequence.

phatic *Sociolinguistics*. Of speech: used to convey general sociability, rather than any real meaning. Observations about the weather (*Nice day, isn't it?*) are often phatic.

The term is loosely derived from the anthropologist Bronislaw Malinowski's coinage *phatic communion* understood as 'speech communication used to establish social relationships' (1923), in which *phatic* has the etymological sense 'of, or pertaining to, speech'.

phenomenon *See* SENSER.

philology The science of language.

This is a traditional term, used particularly for the study of *historical linguistic change and comparison between languages. Terms favoured today include *comparative linguistics and *contrastive linguistics. In the wider sense it has been superseded by *linguistics, though not in many continental European universities (e.g. in Germany and Spain).

• **philological**, **philologically**, **philologist**.

> 1935 J. R. FIRTH The evolutionary and comparative method had been used by philologists in the eighteenth century. Comparative Philology was, in fact, the first science to employ this method.

phrasal Consisting of, or pertaining to, a *phrase.

• **phrasally**.

•• **phrasal adjective/phrasal-prepositional adjective**: *see* ADJECTIVE.

phrasal auxiliary verb A two- or three-part *verb based on an *auxiliary and having some of the same grammatical characteristics, e.g.

be able to	be about to
be going to	have to

The term is an alternative to the more usual *semi-auxiliary, although possibly not exactly synonymous.

In some models the sequences above are not regarded as verbs. For example, in OMEG *have (to)* and *be going (to)* are analysed as *modal lexical verbs which license a **to*-infinitive as complement.

See also MARGINAL MODAL.

phrasal-prepositional adjective *See* ADJECTIVE.

phrasal-prepositional verb A *multi-word *verb consisting of a *lexical verb, an adverb, and a preposition (with the latter two sometimes labelled differently, e.g. as *particles, depending on the analytic framework). Also called **three-part verb or three-part word**. Examples:

We're *looking forward to* the holidays
You shouldn't *put up with* that sort of treatment

Some phrasal-prepositional verbs take a direct object, e.g. *it* in the example below:

I *put* it *down to* his ill-health

In other frameworks (e.g. OMEG) a 'phrasal-prepositional verb' is simply either an intransitive verb that *licenses an intransitive PP (prepositional phrase) and a transitive PP as *complements, or a transitive verb that licenses an NP (noun phrase), an intransitive PP, and a transitive PP as complements:

We're *looking* [PP forward] [PP to the holidays] You shouldn't *put* [PP up] [PP with that sort of treatment]	(intransitive verb with an intransitive PP and a transitive PP as complements)
I *put* [NP it] [PP down] [PP to his ill-health]	(transitive verb with an NP, an intransitive PP,and a transitive PP as complements)

Compare MULTI-WORD VERB; PHRASAL VERB; PREPOSITIONAL VERB.

phrasal verb

1. A *multi-word *verb consisting of a verb plus one or more *particles and operating syntactically as a single unit. (Also called **compound verb**, **verb-particle construction**.)

Thus defined, phrasal verb is an umbrella term for different kinds of multi-word verb. Some analysts make metaphorical (or idiomatic) meaning a criterion for phrasal verbs, excluding combinations which have a transparent literal meaning. However, it is not always easy to draw the line. For example, *get in* seems literal when the implied object is a vehicle (e.g. *I got in and drove off*); but is it literal or metaphorical when the meaning is 'into one's own home' (e.g. *I usually get in by 7 p.m.*) or 'into Parliament' (e.g. *He got in by a tiny majority*)?

2. (In CGEL and related frameworks.) A multi-word verb consisting of a *lexical verb and a *particle (also labelled *adverb or adverb particle), regarded as operating syntactically and semantically as a unit. Contrasted with *prepositional verb and *phrasal-prepositional verb.

Phrasal verbs can be intransitive:

The plane *took off*
I don't know—I *give up*!

or transitive, where the particle (adverb) can follow the object:

Take off your coat/*Take* your coat/it *off*
I've *given up* chocolate/I've *given* chocolate/it *up*

In other frameworks (e.g. OMEG) a 'phrasal verb' is simply either an intransitive verb that *licenses an intransitive PP (prepositional phrase) as its *complement, or a transitive verb that licenses an NP (noun phrase) and an intransitive PP as its complements:

The plane took [$_{PP}$ off] I don't know—I give [$_{PP}$ up]	intransitive verb with an intransitive PP as complement
Take [$_{NP}$ your coat / it] [$_{PP}$ off] / Take off [$_{PP}$ your coat] I've given [$_{NP}$ chocolate / it] [$_{PP}$ up] / I've given [$_{PP}$ up] [$_{NP}$ chocolate]	transitive verb with an NP and an intransitive PP as complements

Compare MULTI-WORD VERB; PHRASAL-PREPOSITIONAL VERB; PREPOSITIONAL VERB.

phrase

1. A linguistic unit at a level between the *word and the *clause.

In modern grammar various kinds of phrase are recognized. The most central types are *noun phrase, *verb phrase, *adjective phrase, *adverb phrase, and *prepositional phrase. In theoretical frameworks we also find *determiner phrase and *determinative phrase (both abbreviated as DP), and a further range of phrases headed by *functional categories: **inflection phrase (IP), complementizer phrase (CP), tense phrase (TP)**, and so on. The latter are called **functional phrases**. Phrases must be properly headed, i.e. *endocentric, such that a phrase XP has X as its *head. Thus noun phrases are headed by nouns, verb phrases are headed by verbs, and so on.

●● **phrase marker**: *see* TREE DIAGRAM.

●● **phrase structure grammar**: *See* PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR.

2. In *Systemic Grammar, phrases are distinguished from *groups. A group is a *head word expanded with *modification, whereas a phrase is a reduced clause. Thus *a small town in Germany* is a *nominal group (not a noun phrase, as in other models) which is an expansion of *town*, but *in Germany* is a *prepositional phrase, because it can be expanded into a clause, namely *which is in Germany*.

See also FIXED PHRASE.

phrase structure grammar (PSG) A cover term for *generative, *monostratal theoretical approaches to *grammar that make use of abstract representations of the structure, meaning, and phonology of sentences. *Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar and *Head-Driven Phrase Structure Grammar are examples of phrase structure grammar.

See also CHOMSKYAN; GENERATIVE GRAMMAR (2); GOVERNMENT-BINDING THEORY; GRAMMAR; MINIMALIST PROGRAM; PRINCIPLES AND PARAMETERS THEORY; STANDARD THEORY; TRANSFORMATIONAL GRAMMAR.

p

phrase structure rule Originating in *Generative Grammar (2), these are the *rules that compose *phrases and *clauses. As an example, the following rule specifies that a *verb phrase (2) consists of a verb which may optionally be followed by one or two noun phrases.

VP → V (NP) (NP)

Also called **rewrite rule**.

phrase-word *Morphology*. A *word formed from a *phrase.

This is a term occasionally used to label a variety of *lexical items derived from phrases, especially phrases used attributively, e.g.

his *down-to-earth* manner
a *couldn't-care-less* attitude
a *once-in-a-lifetime* offer
the *carrot-and-stick* method

It may also include words derived from phrases by affixation (e.g. *up-to-dateness*) and *phrasal verbs.

pidgin A grammatically simplified form of a language, with a restricted *vocabulary taken from several languages, which is no one's and which is used as a means of communication between people not sharing a common language.

Pidgins based on various European languages developed in the heyday of colonial expansion. English-based pidgins evolved particularly on Pacific and Atlantic trade routes. A pidgin that gains a wider currency may develop into a kind of *lingua franca* for a region. A pidgin that becomes a mother tongue is called a *creole.

The term derives from **pidgin English**, the name of a trade jargon used from the 17th century onwards between the British and Chinese. It is believed to be an alteration of *business*.

pied piping The placing of a *head and its associated *complement (typically a *preposition and its *complement) at the beginning of a clause, instead of *stranding the head without its complement at the end of the clause, e.g.

To whom are you talking? (Cf. Who are you talking *to*?)
Here's the book *about which* I was telling you. (Cf. Here's the book which I was telling you *about*)

The term originates in *Generative Grammar (2), and is humorously based on the story of the Pied Piper, who, by playing a pipe, lured rats from the German town of Hamelin.

place A semantic category used especially in the classification of certain *phrases that answer the question ‘where?’, for example *prepositional phrases (e.g. *in the garden, by the lake*) and *adverb phrases (e.g. *here, there*; though note that some grammars, e.g. CaGEL, regard the latter as *prepositional phrases).

This is one of the traditional categories of meaning that is still used today, along with *time and *manner. An alternative label is *space.

plain case A case that is not *accusative, *genitive, or *nominative.

plain form (In CaGEL.) The *base form of a *verb when it is not a *plain present tense, e.g. in *infinitives. For example, in *He likes to eat pretzels* the verb *eat* is in the plain form. By contrast, in *They like to eat pretzels* the verb *like* is in the plain present tense.

Compare PLAIN PRESENT.

plain grade *See* ABSOLUTE (1).

plain present (In CaGEL.) A present *tense *verb form which occurs in the shape of the *plain form (or *base form) of a verb. For example, in *We hope to see you soon* the verb *hope* is a plain present tense form.

Compare PLAIN FORM.

pleonasm The use of more words than are needed to convey a particular meaning, e.g. *see with one’s eyes, at this moment in time.*

- **pleonastic**.

> 1898 H. SWEET The pleonastic genitive, as in *he is a friend of my brother’s.*

The construction described in this quotation would now be called the *double genitive.

p

pluperfect The same as *past perfect.

See also PLUPLUPERFECT.

plupluperfect (*n. & adj.*) (Designating or consisting of) a *verb phrase (1) that contains an additional, superfluous *auxiliary, and is used as an alternative to the *past perfect.

This is heard colloquially and is occasionally written, but is regarded as non-standard. The construction in full is *had have* + *past participle, but it is commonly used in shortened form:

> If we*’d have found* an unsafe microwave oven, we would have named it (advertisement in the *Daily Telegraph*, 9 December 1989)

> We all take TV for granted, but if it *hadn't have been* for the pioneers at Alexandra Palace it might never have happened (speaker quoted in the *Daily Telegraph*, 13 December 1992)

The term was coined by I. H. Watson (1985).

> 1985 I. H. WATSON Please comment—however briefly—on the proliferation of the use of the plupluperfect tense (I cannot think what else to call it). An example is: 'If he had have gone . . . '

plural (*n. & adj.*)

1. (A *word or form) denoting more than one instance of a particular entity. Contrasted with *singular.

The term is one of several covered by the more general term *number. In English, plural applies to certain *nouns, *pronouns, *determinatives (1), and *verbs. In general, *count nouns have distinct plural forms, which in regular nouns end in -*s* or -*es*. Nouns with irregular plurals include some of *Old English origin (e.g. *feet*, *children*), *zero plurals (e.g. *sheep*, *deer*), and some *foreign plurals (e.g. *crises*, *errata*).

A few nouns are **plural only** (*see* PLURALE TANTUM). Many of these end in -*s* (e.g. *premises*, *scissors*), though some are unmarked (e.g. *cattle*, *people*).

Some *etymologically plural words are now increasingly used as singulars: e.g. *The data is corrupted*, rather than *The data are corrupted*.

With certain grammatical categories, the plural versus singular contrast leads to constraints. For example, some determinatives (1) are restricted to use with plural nouns (e.g. *few*, *several*) or singular nouns (e.g. *a*, *every*); and when a (pro)noun as head of a noun phrase functioning as subject is plural, there must be *agreement between it and the verb (cf. *She is in Chicago*/*They are in Chicago*; *The door was shut*/*The doors were shut*).

2. (A noun) ending in -*s*/-*es*. (Also called **plural in form**.)

Some grammarians, and many dictionaries, label nouns ending in -*s*/-*es* 'plural' or 'plural in form', even those which are never plural in syntax (e.g. *news*, *measles*, *physics*).

Compare COLLECTIVE NOUN.

plurale tantum (Pronounced /plʊəˈreɪlɪ ˈtæntəm/. Plural **pluralia tantum**.) A noun used only as a plural.

This is sometimes defined as a noun which at least in a particular sense is used only in the plural. Theoretically this would include words such as *people* or *police*. Usually, however, it is exemplified by words with the plural ending -*s*. They are of three types:

(i) words for tools, articles of clothing, etc. that consist of two parts: *secateurs*, *trousers*, *binoculars*;
(ii) words that are never singular: *clothes*, *riches*, *thanks*;
(iii) words that with a particular meaning are always plural, though there may be a singular form with a different meaning: *arms* = weapons, *regards* = best wishes.

Some grammarians label type (i) **binary nouns** or *summation plurals, reserving plurale tantum (or *aggregate noun or, more simply, a term such as **plural-only**) for (ii) and (iii).

Compare SINGULARE TANTUM.

pluralize Make (a word) *plural; (of a word etc.) become plural, take a plural form.
• **pluralization**.

polarity A phenomenon whereby two opposites of *positive and *negative exist.

The term is particularly applied to the difference between positive and negative *clauses, and is sometimes extended to cover more general oppositions (e.g. *good* vs *bad*, *up* vs *down*).

Non-negative (positive) clauses display **positive polarity** (e.g. *I left work late last night*), whereas negative clauses display **negative polarity** (*I didn't leave work late last night*).
•• **negative**/*see* ASSERTIVE.
•• **reversed polarity**: this occurs when a *tag added to a positive clause is negative (*They won the match, didn't they?*) or when a tag added to a negative clause is positive (*They didn't win the match, did they?*); hence **reversed polarity tag** (*see* TAG).

See also ASSERTIVE.

polyseme *Semantics*. A *word that has multiple meanings, i.e. displays *polysemy.

Many English words have several meanings which are all uses of the same word that have grown apart over time, e.g.

draw 'cause to move in a certain direction', 'produce a picture', 'finish a game with an equal score'

flat 'apartment', 'note lowered by a semitone', 'piece of stage scenery'

plain 'unmistakable', 'unsophisticated', 'not good-looking'

Theoretically, a polyseme, with meanings which are all ultimately related, is distinguished from a set of *homonyms, which are different words with distinct meanings which have all come to have the same form, e.g.

pile (i) 'heap', (ii) 'beam driven into ground', (iii) 'soft surface of fabric'

In practice it is very difficult for a person who is not a historical linguist to tell whether a word with several meanings is a case of polysemy or homonymy, or a mixture of both; and in some cases evidence is lacking by which even scholars could decide.

See also POLYSEMY.

polysemy The phenomenon of possessing multiple meanings. Also called **polysemia**.

> 2009 D. MINKOVA & R. STOCKWELL *Polysemy* refers to a single word with several different meanings. The differentiation from one into several meanings is most commonly a consequence of the change, usually over long time spans, from concrete to abstract meaning—i.e. increasingly figurative use of language.

• **polysemantic**, **polysemic**, **polysemous**: having several or multiple meanings.

See also ANTONYM; HETERONYM; HOMONYM; HOMOPHONE; HYPONYM; MERONYM; POLYSEME; SYNONYM.

polysyndetic coordination A *coordination structure that contains two or more *coordinators, e.g.

sand *and* sea *and* wind

See also ASYNDETIC; SYNDETIC.

polysystemicism *See* FIRTHIAN.

popular etymology The same as *folk etymology.

> 1926 H. W. FOWLER It is true . . . that *-yard* [in *halyard*] is no better than a popular etymology corruption.

portmanteau word The same as a morphological *blend (1).

The term originates with Lewis Carroll's explanation in *Through the Looking-Glass* (1872) of the invented word *slithy* as a combination of 'lithe' and 'slimy': 'It's like a portmanteau—there are two meanings packed up into one word.'

position Any of the syntactic locations within a larger linguistic structure (e.g. a *phrase or *clause) in which a particular element can appear.

For example, we can say that *interrogative words are typically placed in clause-initial position, e.g.

What did they decide?

• **positional**: of, pertaining to, or determined by position.
• **positionally**.

Compare WORD ORDER.
See also FINAL; INITIAL; MEDIAL.

positive (*n. & adj.*)

1. (A *word, *clause, or *sentence) that has no *negative marker. (Sometimes called *affirmative or *assertive.)

•• **positive clause:** a non-negative clause, i.e. a clause that does not contain *negation at the clausal level and typically takes a negative *tag question, e.g. *We bought some fish and chips, didn't we?* In *They were unlucky* we have negation, but it is subclausal, as is evidenced by the negative tag: *They were unlucky, weren't they?*

•• **positive polarity (item)**: *see* ASSERTIVE.

See also POLARITY.

2. The same as *absolute (1).

positive polarity (item) *See* ASSERTIVE.

possessive (*n. & adj.*) (A *word or *case) that indicates possession or ownership.

The possessive case of *nouns is also called the *genitive case, e.g. *boy's, boys', Mary's, the Smiths'*.

*Pronouns in the genitive case include the independent items *mine, yours, hers, his, ours*, etc., corresponding to *my*, *your*, etc. that occur before the *head in noun phrases. Some grammars include the latter items in the class of determiner (2); others regard them as **possessive pronouns**. More traditional grammars wrongly classify them as possessive *adjectives.

The basic meaning of the *verb *have* is sometimes described as possessive (as in *We have a house*) in contrast to its other meanings, especially the *dynamic (1) ones such as *have a bath, have dinner, have an operation, have a holiday, have fun*.

•• **possessive compound**: *see* BAHUVRIHI.

See also APOSTROPHE.

possibility A semantic term used in the description of *modality, expressed typically by certain *modal verbs, and by some other elements (e.g. *nouns, *adjectives, *adverbs). We can distinguish *deontic, *epistemic, and *dynamic (2) possibility, e.g.

You *may* take a holiday later this month (deontic; i.e. 'I give you permission to take a holiday later this month')
It *may* rain later today (epistemic; i.e. 'it is possible that it will rain later today')
It *can* get hot in August (dynamic; i.e. 'it is possible for it to get hot in August')
There is a *possibility* that you will have to change your holiday plans (dynamic)

Compare NECESSITY.

Post-Bloomfieldian (*adj.*) Of, pertaining to, or characteristic of, a group of linguists who based their work on principles developed by the American linguist Leonard Bloomfield.

1993 P. H. MATTHEWS I will describe this school as 'Post-Bloomfieldian'. Many commentators have preferred to say 'Bloomfieldian', and, provided we remember that Bloomfield could have had no direct influence on its development from 1947 onwards, I have no wish to quarrel over labels.

(*n.*) A person belonging to the Post-Bloomfieldian group of linguists.

Compare BLOOMFIELDIAN.

post-creole Designating a community whose speech has developed beyond the *creole stage.

Coined by D. Decamp (1968).

postdeterminer (In CGEL.) A *determiner (2) that must follow any *predeterminer (2) or central determiner (2) in a noun phrase.

post-genitive *See* GENITIVE.

post-head adjunct (In OMEG.) A phrasal *adjunct that is positioned after a *head, e.g. *president elect, very happy indeed, quickly enough*. Also called **postmodifier**.

See also MODIFICATION; MODIFIER; POSTMODIFICATION; PRE-HEAD ADJUNCT.

postmodification The phenomenon of a dependent *phrase, *clause, etc. restricting the meaning of a preceding *head word through *modification, e.g. by ascribing a property to it. Contrasted with *premodification.

Postmodification can occur in all kinds of structures, and may take the form of phrases or clauses, e.g.

the house *on the heath* (noun postmodification by a *prepositional phrase)
That is the way *that we do things* (noun postmodification by a *relative clause)

Is that warm *enough*? (adjective postmodification by an *adverb phrase)
He speaks too quietly *for me to hear* (adverb postmodification by a *non-finite clause)

The functional label **postmodifier** is used for the italicized phrases in the examples above.

• **postmodify**.

See also MODIFIER; PREMODIFIER.

postmodifier A *modifier that follows its *head in *phrase structure, e.g. *the dog on the sofa*.

See also MODIFICATION; POSTMODIFICATION; PREMODIFICATION; PREMODIFIER.

postpone Place (a *word, *phrase, etc.) in a position further to the right in a *clause. *see* POSTPONEMENT.

•• **postponed identification**: *see* DISLOCATION.

Compare POSTPOSE.

See also CLEFT; EXTRAPOSITION; PSEUDO-CLEFT.

postponement The placing of a *word, *phrase, *clause, etc. in a position further to the right in a containing structure (typically a clause).

Postponement may occur to achieve the stylistic effect of giving *end-focus to a particular part of a message. Grammatical devices for postponement include *discontinuity, in which part of a noun phrase is postponed:

Everyone was delighted *except the chairman*

and *extraposition, which involves the displacement of a clause:

It is hardly surprising *that he did not like the architect's original plans*

In some models, *passive structures are treated as involving the postponement of an *agentive *subject to the end:

The building was opened *by the Prince*

Compare CLEFT; POSTPOSE; POSTPOSITION; PSEUDO-CLEFT.

postpose Place a *word, *phrase, etc. after the word that is being modified. *See also* POSTPOSITION.

Although *postposition is distinguished from *postponement, there is occasionally confusion between the two notions.

postposition

1. The positioning of a *word, *phrase, etc. after the word that it modifies. Any such word can be said to be **postposed** or **in postposition**:

I am a man *more sinned against than sinning*
the astronomer *royal*

2. A *word class whose members follow (rather than precede) their *complements. Contrasted with *preposition.

In some languages (e.g. Japanese) the kinds of meaning and function that prepositions have in English are exhibited by words that follow their complements, and these are appropriately called postpositions (e.g. the equivalent of *the bath in*, rather than *in the bath*). Such a class of words does not exist in English, though some words, e.g. *ago* (as in *a month ago*), *notwithstanding* (as in *his efforts notwithstanding*), and *enclitics (*-n't*, *-'s*) are sometimes so described.

A preposition does not become a postposition just because in some non-basic structure it apparently follows its *object or complement (e.g. *What are you looking at?*).

• **postpositional**: (*n. & adj.*) (an element) that is positioned after the word modified by it.

postpositive Characterized by *postposition; (of position) immediately following, *postposed.

Postpositive and *postposed* are virtually synonymous, but the former is the preferred term, to contrast with *attributive and *predicative in describing the position of *adjectives. Postpositive position is obligatory for adjectives modifying indefinite *pronouns and *adverbs (e.g. *nobody special*, *somewhere quiet*), in certain set expressions (e.g. *heir apparent*, *the body politic*), and with some adjectives with particular meanings (e.g. *the members present*, *the parents involved*).

• **postpositively**.

1961 R. B. LONG Superlatives in *most* [e.g. *innermost, uppermost,* etc.] are now felt as compounds in which a modifying auxiliary pronoun has been united, postpositively, with a basic-form adjective head.

poverty of stimulus *See* LANGUAGE ACQUISITION DEVICE.

PP An abbreviation for *prepositional phrase or *preposition phrase.

pragmatic Of or pertaining to *pragmatics.

• **pragmatically**.

•• **pragmatic marker**: *see* DISCOURSE MARKER.

•• **pragmatic particle**: the same as *filler (2).

pragmatics The branch of *linguistics dealing with language in use. Contrasted with *syntax and *semantics.

The term is defined in a variety of ways, but it is often used in connection with the communicative functions of language, in contrast to syntactic or semantic analysis. Thus *I've borrowed this book from the library* in different contexts may have the pragmatic implication *so I don't want to watch TV*, or *so I don't want to go out*, or even *I wasn't going to buy it*.

See also ILLOCUTION; RELEVANCE THEORY.

Prague School, the The name of a group of linguists belonging to the Linguistic Circle of Prague, founded in 1926, and others whom it has influenced, used with reference to the linguistic theories and methods initiated by them.

The effects of this school on the analysis of English have been considerable. It has been influential in the development of distinctive *feature analysis in phonology, and in the analysis of the *communicative dynamism of sentences, which is concerned with the differing amount of information that each *constituent contributes to the overall information content of a sentence.

- **Praguian**: of or pertaining to the Prague School.

See also COMMENT; FUNCTIONAL SENTENCE PERSPECTIVE; GIVEN; INFORMATION STRUCTURE; NEW; RHEME; THEME; TOPIC.

precise recoverability *See* RECOVERABILITY.

predeterminer

1. (In CaGEL.) A *function (1) label that is used to refer to an element that *modifies an entire noun phrase. Also called **predeterminer modifier**. Examples:

all the boats
both the governments

The form label used in CaGEL for the italicized items is *determinative (1).

2. (In CGEL.) A *form label used to refer to any *determiner (2) that precedes a *central (1) determiner in a noun phrase. The italicized items in the examples above also serve to illustrate this use of the term.

predicand (In CaGEL.) The (referent of the) *phrase of which something is *predicated.

For example, in *They appear uneasy*, the property of being uneasy is predicated of (the referent of) *they*, which is therefore the predicand.

predicate (*n.*) (Pronounced /ˈpredɪkət/.)

1. A *function label that refers to that part of a *sentence or *clause which is not the *subject. Formally the predicate is typically *realized as a *verb phrase (2). Examples:

subject	**predicate**
All good things	must come to an end
Attack	is the best form of defence
Familiarity	breeds contempt

The subject is not necessarily what the sentence is about, and the predicate is not always 'what is predicated about' the subject. For example, the grammatical subject in *It is raining* is empty of meaning, and 'is raining' is not predicated of this word.

Modern grammarians analyse predicate structure in various ways: for example, into components such as *verb, *object, *complement, and *adverbial, and into elements of *information structure such as *new (versus *given) or *comment (versus *topic). Grammatical distinctions are also made between the *operator and the rest of the *predication (2). In CaGEL the predicate is the *head of the clause. *Compare* PREDICATOR.

In some older grammar, *predicate* is used, rather than **predicative* (1), to describe an *adjective, *noun, or *pronoun when such a word is 'predicated of the subject', i.e. is used in predicative (1) position. For example:

He became mad (*mad* = predicate adjective)
Croesus was king (*king* = predicate noun)
I am he (*he* = predicate pronoun)

In modern terminology a constituent *licensed by a *linking verb is said to function as predicative *complement.

2. *Semantics*. In *logical semantics, specifically in **predicate calculus** (or **predicate logic**), the term refers to an entity (grammatically a verb, noun, adjective, etc.) that takes a number of *arguments.

Thus *fond* is an adjectival predicate which takes one argument, namely a PP-complement (a **one-place predicate**), whereas *devour* is a verbal predicate which takes two arguments, namely a subject and an object (a **two-place predicate**). The verb *tell* is a **three-place predicate**, and in *rain*, *snow*, etc. we arguably have **zero-place predicates**.

Grammarians who pursue this line of analysis may make this clear by using the term **syntactic predicate** when they are referring to a constituent of syntax (i.e. a predicate in sense 1).

See also ARGUMENT.

(*v.*) (Pronounced /ˈpredɪkeɪt/.) Assert (something) about a linguistic unit, typically the subject of a sentence.

predicate calculus *See* PREDICATE.

predicate logic *See* PREDICATE.

predication

1. What is predicated.

The term may be used as a rough synonym of *predicate (1), but predication is often used more theoretically to suggest the *proposition expressed by the actual words of the predicate.

2. (Specifically, in some models, e.g. CGEL.) A *predicate (1) minus its *operator.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. Simple sentences are traditionally divided into two major parts, a subject and a predicate . . . A more important division, in accounting for the relation between different sentence types, is that between OPERATOR and PREDICATION as two subdivisions of the predicate.

This analysis serves to emphasize that the operator and the rest of the predicate have distinct characteristics. For example, the operator is separated from the rest of the predicate in *interrogative clauses (e.g. *Are your parents flying home tomorrow?*); an operator can allow coordination of two predications (e.g. *I must* [*phone the airport*]*and* [*check flight times*]); and an operator can stand for a completely ellipted predication (e.g. *Yes, you should* . . .).

●● **predication adjunct**: *see* PREDICATION ADJUNCT.

●● **verb of incomplete predication**: an older term for a *linking verb.

predication adjunct An *adjunct that applies to only part of a *sentence, namely the *predication (2) (or *predicate (1)). Also called **VP-adjunct**. Example:

> Beth ran down the street fast (*fast* applies to the way Beth ran down the street)

Compare SENTENCE ADJUNCT.

●● **obligatory predication adjunct**: (in CGEL) an adjunct *licensed by a verb, e.g.

> They live *in Hong Kong*
> We are *here*

In other frameworks the italicized phrases are by definition *complements, precisely because they are obligatory.

●● **optional predication adjunct**: (in CGEL) an adjunct that is not licensed by a verb, e.g.

> They ran down the hill *recklessly*

predicative

1. Of a syntactic *position: occurring after a *linking verb. Contrasted with *attributive.

The term is particularly used in the classification of *adjectives. Most adjectives (or adjective phrases) can be used in both attributive and predicative positions (e.g. *a fine day, the day was fine*; *an expensive restaurant, the restaurant looks expensive*). But some adjectives are used in only one of these positions.

Among predicative-only adjectives are a group beginning with *a-* (e.g. *afraid, alone*: *see A*-WORD), and those that usually or always require *complementation by a *prepositional phrase (e.g. *answerable, conducive, devoid, loath*).

Predicative adjectives (as heads of adjective phrases) can also occur as *postmodifiers, e.g.

> anybody *aware* of these facts (i.e. 'anybody who is aware of these facts')
>
> people *impatient* with the slow progress (i.e. 'people who are impatient with the slow progress')

2. Of a phrase: ascribing a property to someone or something. Less commonly: occurring in the *predicate or *predication.

• **predicatively**: used of a *constituent occurring in predicative position, or used in such a way as to ascribe a property to someone or something.

•• **predicative adjunct**: an adjunct that predicates a property of the referent of one of the *constituents in the clause with which the adjunct is associated. For example, in *Unhappy at being insulted**, Harry left the meeting* the property of being 'unhappy at being insulted' is ascribed to the person referred to as Harry.

•• **predicative complement**: *see* COMPLEMENT.

•• **predicative object complement**: *see* COMPLEMENT.

•• **predicative oblique**: *see* COMPLEMENT.

predicator

1. A function label used for the verb as the *head of a *verb phrase (2).

Most of the *functional constituents of clause structure (*subject, *object, *complement, *adverbial) are terminologically clearly distinguished from the *forms that these functional constituents may take. For example, an adverbial can be *realized by an *adverb phrase (e.g. *very quickly*), a *prepositional phrase (e.g. *under the table*), or a *noun phrase (e.g. *last night*). The function of predicator can only be realized by a verb. For example, the predicator in *He opened the bottle* is *open*.

Not all grammarians make use of this term:

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. It is unfortunate that traditionally the word *verb* does service both for a clause element, and for the class of word which occurs as a constituent of that element. For example in the former sense *must put* in [*You must put all the toys upstairs immediately*] is a verb, and in the latter sense, *must* and *put* are verbs individually . . . The term 'predicator' has been sometimes used to replace 'verb' in the sense of 'verb element', but for lack of a familiar alternative, we shall continue to use 'verb' in both senses, distinguishing between verbs as elements and verbs as words where there is some risk of confusion.

2. (In some models.) The *verb phrase (1) (verbal group) minus the *operator.

For example, in *I would have thought so*, the predicator is *have thought*. This analysis emphasizes the fact that the operator carries *tense, and is *finite, while the predicator is concerned with other meanings such as 'secondary' time (in relation to that of the operator), *voice, and whatever 'process' (e.g. action, mental activity) is predicated of the subject.

prediction The assertion that an event or other *situation will happen in the future.

One of the meanings used in the classification of *epistemic modality, and particularly uses of the verb *will*.

predictive Relating to prediction.
●● **predictive conditional**: the commonest type of *conditional sentence, in which there is a causal link of the type 'If X, then Y', e.g. *If you drive like that, you'll have an accident*.

prefix *Morphology* (*n.*). An *affix added before a *word or *base (2) to form a new word. Contrasted with *suffix and infix (*see* AFFIX).

Prefixes are primarily semantic in their effect, changing the meaning of the base. Common prefixes include:

counter-productive (M20)
*dis*connect (L18)
*hyper*active (M19)
*mini*skirt (M20)
non-event (M20)
*sub*zero (M20)
*un*natural (LME)
*de*frost (L19)
*fore*warn (ME)
*inter*national (L18)
*mal*function (E20)
*re*build (L15)
*under*nourished (E20)

(*v.*) Place before a word or base, especially so as to form a new word.

• **prefixation**.

> 1991 P. H. MATTHEWS Processes of affixation may then be divided into **prefixation**, **suffixation** or **infixation** . . . In English the commonest processes are those of suffixation . . . Examples of prefixation are found, however, in the Negative formations of *happy* → *un* + *happy* . . . or of *order* → *dis* + *order*.

See also DERIVATION; WORD FORMATION.

pre-head Of an *element, *phrase, etc.: positioned before the *head. For example, in the noun phrase *crazy horses* the word *crazy* is a pre-head element, namely an adjective phrase that functions as a *premodifier.

pre-head adjunct (In OMEG.) A phrasal *adjunct that is positioned before a *head, e.g. *tall building*. Also called *premodifier.

See also MODIFICATION; MODIFIER; POST-HEAD ADJUNCT; POSTMODIFICATION.

premodification The phenomenon of a dependent *phrase, *clause, etc. restricting the meaning of a following *head word through *modification, e.g. by ascribing a property to it. Contrasted with *postmodification.

Premodification can occur in all kinds of structures, and can take the form of phrases or clauses, e.g.

the *derelict* house (noun premodification by an *adjective phrase)
an *eat-as-much-as-you-like* restaurant (noun premodification by a clause)
the article is *too* long (adjective premodification by an *adverb phrase)
she drives *very* fast (adverb premodification by an adverb phrase)

The functional label *premodifier is used for the italicized phrases in the examples above.

See also MODIFIER; POSTMODIFIER.

premodifier A *modifier that precedes its *head in phrase structure, e.g. *the sleepy dog.*

See also MODIFICATION; POSTMODIFICATION; POSTMODIFIER; PREMODIFICATION.

prenucleus (In CaGEL.) A grammatical function (1) label applied to a unit which is positioned to the left of the *nucleus of a clause, the latter being conceived of as a *subject + *predicate (1), e.g.

(I don’t know) [[$_{\text{prenucleus}}$ *what*][$_{\text{nucleus}}$ they said _]]
[[$_{\text{prenucleus}}$ *Your young son* [$_{\text{nucleus}}$ he’s a good cricketer]]

In the first example the string *what they said* is an *interrogative clause with the fronted **wh*-element *what* functioning as the *direct object of *said* (as shown by the 'gap' inside the nucleus, indicated by '_'). In the second example *Your young son* is a left *dislocated noun phrase.

•• **prenucleus position**: the position before the nucleus of a clause.

The label **postnucleus (position)** for a unit placed to the right of the nucleus (e.g. right dislocated elements) does not appear to be in use.

See also DISLOCATION.

preparatory *it* *See* ANTICIPATORY; DUMMY; IMPERSONAL.

prepose Place a linguistic unit (*phrase, *clause, etc.) before another, or to an earlier *position in a containing unit.

(This type of compound element can be called a *phrase-word in *attributive position.)

•• **VP preposing**: the *movement of a *verb phrase (2) constituent to the beginning of a clause, e.g.

> She said she would eat the buns, *and* [$_{\text{VP}}$ *eat the buns*] *she did* _ !

In this example the VP of the second coordinated clause has been preposed (or *fronted (2)), and is associated with the *gap after the auxiliary verb *do* (indicated by '_').

See also DISLOCATION; FRONTING; GAP; MOVEMENT; TOPICALIZATION.

preposition A word that belongs to a *word class whose members can function as the *head of a *prepositional phrase. Prepositions generally precede the constituent which they *license, typically a *noun phrase, and often relate two linguistic units to each other (frequently in a spatial sense), e.g. *(the smile) on your face.*

Most prepositions are simple, i.e. they are predominantly short words (e.g. *at, by, down, for, from, in, to, through, up*). There are also some longer prepositions (e.g. *alongside, into, throughout*) which can be described as *compound prepositions, and some grammars also recognize a class of *complex prepositions consisting of combinations of two or three words that function in the same way as simple prepositions (e.g. *according to, regardless of, in front of, by means of, in addition to*).

There was at one time considerable prejudice against so-called *stranded prepositions, as in

> What did you do that *for*?
> The problem is difficult to talk *about*
> It's not to be sneezed *at*

This prejudice goes back to Latin grammar, in which the characteristic placing of the preposition is indicated by its name *praepositio*, from *praeponere* which means ‘put before’. Rewording is possible in some contexts (e.g. *the word to which it belongs*), but stranded prepositions are sometimes unavoidable without major rewriting.

Prepositions bear resemblances to (some would say ‘overlap with’) other word classes, such as *adverbs, *particles, and *adjectives. For example, *since* is regarded in some grammars as a preposition (*since the war*), an adverb (*I haven’t seen them since*), or a conjunction (*since the war ended*), and *near* behaves like an adjective in having comparative and superlative forms (*nearer* the window).

●● **grammaticized preposition**: (in CaGEL) this term refers to prepositions that acquire a meaning in particular contexts or combinations; for example, the verb *rely* is combined with the preposition *on* to yield the meaning ‘be dependent on’. Such prepositions are contrasted with those that have a clear lexical content, such as *by* or *through* in their spatial senses (*on the bed, through the glass*).

●● **specified preposition**: in CaGEL this term refers to a preposition that is selected by a verb. For example, the verb *look* selects the preposition *at* in *He looked at the stars*.

See also MARGINAL PREPOSITION; PIED PIPING; POSTPOSITION (2).

prepositional Of, pertaining to, or expressed by a *preposition; formed with a preposition; serving as, or having the function of, a preposition.

prepositional adjective (In CGEL.) An *adjective that *licenses a *prepositional phrase as complement.

Examples:

I am not *averse* to his proposals
He is *fond* of opera
My camera is *inferior* to yours

prepositional adverb A lexical item that resembles both an *adverb and a *preposition in particular syntactic configurations.

Thus, the word *down* in *I fell* down is labelled a prepositional adverb by some grammarians. In other frameworks this item is classified as an *adverb, *particle, or *intransitive preposition.

> 1961 R. B. LONG Words which normally take nounal completers in some or most of their uses, and which are clearly not classifiable as verbs, can conveniently be grouped together as prepositional adverbs.

1971 D. BOLINGER For the particles that oscillate between preposition and adverb I use the term *prepositional adverb.*

prepositional complement A *phrase, *clause, etc. *licensed by a preposition. (Also called **prepositional object** or **object of a preposition**.)

A prepositional complement is typically a *noun phrase, but can be realized by other phrase types or by a clause:

in *the end* (NP)
before *the war* (NP)
from *under the table* (PP)
in *short* (AdjP)
for *sure* (AdjP)
after *he sent the letter* (*finite clause)
afraid of *being killed* (*non-finite clause)

The terms prepositional complement, object of a preposition, etc. are often used interchangeably, but some grammarians reserve the term prepositional object for complements that follow a *prepositional verb, e.g.

Listen to *this*
We depend on *his generosity*

prepositional object *See* PREPOSITIONAL COMPLEMENT.

prepositional object complement *see* COMPLEMENT.

prepositional passive *See* PASSIVE.

prepositional phrase (PP) A *phrase which takes a preposition as its *head. Also called **preposition phrase**.

Prepositional phrases can perform various functions, e.g. *subject (*Under the bed is a dusty spot*), *adverbial (e.g. *Our dog chased a squirrel in the garden*), and *postmodifier in noun phrases (e.g. *the clock on the wall*).

Compare PREPOSITION GROUP.

prepositional verb A *verb that *licenses a *prepositional phrase headed by a specific *preposition as its *complement, and sometimes also an *object.

In some grammars and dictionaries the [verb + preposition] combination is regarded as a verb in two parts, hence the label *two-part verb.

The preposition generally comes before its complement: *I am looking after the children/looking after them*, not **I am looking the children after/looking them after*. But within certain structures the complement of the preposition may be displaced: *He cannot be relied on _ ; They need looking after _.*

Prepositional verbs can be *transitive or *intransitive, e.g.

transitive	intransitive
blame NP (on NP)	look (after NP)
do justice (to NP)	rely (on NP)

Compare MULTI-WORD VERB; PHRASAL-PREPOSITIONAL VERB; PHRASAL VERB; THREE-PART VERB.

See also PREPOSITION.

preposition group (In *Systemic Grammar.) A structure consisting of a *preposition with *modification, e.g.

immediately after
right in front of

Such a *group is said to function like a preposition. It is not to be confused with a *prepositional phrase, though it can form part of one: *immediately after lunch.*

See also WORD GROUP.

preposition phrase The same as *prepositional phrase.

prescriptive Concerned with, or laying down, rules of usage. Contrasted with *descriptive.

The term is generally used pejoratively by many linguists, who then also hold up to ridicule the inappropriateness of misconceived Latin-based rules (for example ‘Don’t end a sentence with a preposition’; ‘Say *It’s I*, not *It’s me*’; ‘Never split an infinitive’).

In reality most descriptive statements about language are also based on some value-judgement of what is acceptable and normal, however objectively descriptive they try to be.

• **prescriptivism**: the practice or advocacy of prescriptive grammar.
• **prescriptivist**.
•• **prescriptive rule**: *see* RULE.

present (*n. & adj.*)

1. (Occurring in) the time now existing. Contrasted with *past (1).

2. (A *tense or *inflectional form of a *verb) typically relating to the present time. The grammatical label **present tense** is typically used of a *verb form that refers to a *situation taking place in the present.

As applied to *tense the term can be misleading. Although the present tense is often used to refer to some sort of present time, for example to report an instantaneous event (e.g. in a sports commentary: *The keeper drops the ball*), a state (e.g. *The house is in a wooded area*), or a habit (e.g. *He reads the New York Times online*), the present tense is perhaps more accurately described as being *unmarked for time. Thus the present tense can be used for 'general', 'eternal', or 'timeless' truths (e.g. *The earth goes round the sun*), or to talk about the past, as with the *historic present (e.g. *This car comes racing down the road . . .*). It can even be used with reference to a future event that is certain, scheduled, or taken for granted (e.g. *We are leaving tomorrow*; *When you come next week, we will arrange everything*), referred to as the present *futurate.
●● **present continuous (tense)**: *see* PROGRESSIVE.
●● **present progressive (tense)**: *see* PROGRESSIVE.
●● **present simple tense, simple present tense**: the present tense form of a verb, used on its own, that is identical to the *base (1) form of the verb (except in the case of *be*), and adds -*s* for the third person singular, e.g. *He sings in the shower every day*.

See also NON-PAST; PAST; PRESENT PERFECT; PRIMARY *tense*.

presentational construction A *construction in which *existential *there* is followed by a verb of 'appearance', 'emergence', 'existence', etc. (such as *appear, emerge, escape, follow, grow, develop, sprout, loom, stand*). Examples:

There appeared six falcons above the house
There emerged three problems in the course of the day

Also called **presentative**.

See also EXISTENTIAL; INFORMATION STRUCTURE.

presentative *See* PRESENTATIONAL CONSTRUCTION.

present condition *See* CONDITIONAL.

present continuous The same as present *progressive.

Present-Day English (PDE) The English of the 20th and 21st centuries.

Compare MODERN ENGLISH.

present futurate *See* FUTURATE.

present participle The -*ing* form of a *verb. Also called ***-ing* participle** (*see* -*ING* FORM) and **gerund participle** (*see* GERUND).

This *participle is used in the formation of *progressive constructions, e.g.

We were *listening* (active)
The plane is *being* de-iced (passive)

It can also be used in other constructions. Among them are the following:

I love [*singing* in the shower] (the bracketed clause functions as *direct object)

[*Growing* up in London] isn't easy (the bracketed clause functions as *subject)

[*Having* seen the play twice already] I don't think I want to see it again (the bracketed clause functions as *adverbial)

The term is also applied to items that resemble both *adjectives and verbs. For example, in *running water* and *rising standards*, the underlined words resemble adjectives in being placed in *attributive position, but their form and meaning are definitely verb-like (cf. *quickly running water*, *rapidly rising standards*, which contain a modifying adverb). Examples such as these must be distinguished from fully adjectival *-ing* forms, e.g.

a very *interesting* book

Some modern grammars consider the various uses of participles to be on a *cline, and for this reason prefer the neutral umbrella term *-*ing* form.

See also GERUND GRADIENCE; -*ING* CLAUSE; PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE.

present participle clause *See* -*ING* CLAUSE.

present perfect A *construction formed by a *present tense form of the *perfect auxiliary *have* + a *past participle, regarded by some grammarians as an *aspect, but by others as a (*secondary) *tense.

The present perfect generally refers to a *situation that took place in the past, but is related in some way to the present. This is called *current relevance. Examples:

I *have known* her since she was twenty
James *has come* (i.e. he is here now)
She's *written* literally dozens of novels

Contrast the simple *past (2):

My father *knew* Lloyd George
James *came* (but perhaps is no longer here)
Ivy Compton-Burnett *wrote* 19 novels in a uniquely bizarre uncompromising style

American English often uses a simple past (e.g. *Did James come yet?*) where British English still prefers the present perfect (e.g. *Has James come yet?*).

> 2009 J. ELSNESS As regards today's relationship between AmE and BrE, we have seen that my corpus showed the present perfect to be more frequent in the latter variety.

In the following examples we have the **present perfect progressive** (tense) and **present perfect passive** (tense):

It'*s been raining* for two days now
He *has been working* hard today/recently
She *has been told*

We distinguish a number of different uses of the present perfect:

●● **continuative present perfect**: a use of the present perfect which expresses that a situation began in the past and continues up to the moment of speaking, and possibly beyond, e.g. *We have lived in Devon since 2005.* This perfect construction is typically combined with a temporal specification indicating continuation.

●● **experiential present perfect**: a use of the present perfect which indicates that a situation obtained one or more times in a period leading up to the present, e.g. *I have eaten raw fish before.*

●● **present perfect of result**: a present perfect used to express the result of a past situation, e.g. *We have constructed a new bridge over the river.*

●● **present perfect of the recent past**: a present perfect used to express the actuality of a recent past event, e.g. *The President has released previously classified documents*. Also called the **hot news present perfect**.

See also PAST; PAST PERFECT; PERFECT; PRESENT; PRIMARY *tense*; TENSE.

present perfect of result *See* PRESENT PERFECT.

present perfect of the recent past *See* PRESENT PERFECT.

present perfect passive (tense) *See* PRESENT PERFECT.

present perfect progressive (tense) *See* PRESENT PERFECT.

present progressive (tense) *See* PROGRESSIVE.

present progressive passive (tense) *See* TENSE.

present simple tense The present *tense form of a *verb, used on its own, that is identical in shape to the *base (1) form of the verb (except in the case of *be*), and adds -*s* for the third *person singular. Also called **simple present (tense)**. For example:

I *know*, and he *knows* too

See PRESENT (2); SIMPLE (3).

present subjunctive *See* SUBJUNCTIVE.

present tense *See* PRESENT (2).

presupposition *Semantics*. An assumption underlying a *statement, *utterance, etc.

The term is taken from philosophy and logic, and is used in various ways. Thus a *sentence such as *Did you pass your driving test?* presupposes that there exists such a thing as a driving test and that the addressee took one, and a question such as *When will you stop smoking?* presupposes that the addressee smokes.

Presupposition is sometimes contrasted with *entailment, which is a logical notion. Thus *I passed my test* entails *I passed something*. Notice that *I didn't pass the test* may presuppose or imply that I tried and failed, but it does not entail this: *I didn't pass the test, because in fact I didn't take it*.

See also IMPLICATURE.

preterite (American English **preterit**). (*n. & adj.*) The same as *past (2) tense. Used, for example, in CaGEL.

primary

1. (In some frameworks, e.g. CGEL.) Applied to *verbs: designating one of three verbs which can either be a *main verb or an *auxiliary verb, namely *be*, *do*, and *have*.

Verbs are traditionally divided into main verbs and auxiliaries. But since *be*, *do*, and *have* can function as both, it can be useful to make further distinctions. Primary is used as a label for these verbs, however they are functioning.

> 1985 QUIRK et al. Semantically, the primary verbs as auxiliaries share an association with the basic grammatical verb categories of tense, aspect, and voice . . . In this they are broadly distinguished from the modal verbs, which are associated mainly with the expression of modal meanings such as possibility, obligation, and volition.

2. (In CaGEL.) Applied to verb forms: a **primary verb form** is principally a form *inflected for *tense. However, in CaGEL *irrealis *were* is also a primary verb form, despite the fact that it is said not to carry tense.

> 2005 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM We include the irrealis forms among the primary forms, because there is a negative irrealis form, and also because of the close relation with preterite *was* and *wasn't*. This is why we distinguish the two major subsets of inflectional forms as ‘primary’ vs ‘secondary’ rather

than by the more transparent (and more usual) terms 'tensed' and 'non-tensed'.

Primary verb forms are contrasted with **secondary verb forms**, those which are not inflected for tense, i.e. *infinitives and *participles.

See also PAST; PAST PERFECT; PERFECT; PRESENT; PRESENT PERFECT; PRIMARY *tense*.

3. (In CaGEL.) Applied to the grammatical system of tense: **primary tense** designates a tense expressed by verbal inflections, e.g. the *present tense *-s* ending or the *past tense *-ed* ending, and is hence the same as *simple (3) tense. In contrast, a **secondary tense** is marked periphrastically (e.g. the *perfect construction, which combines the perfect auxiliary *have* with a past participle, as in *Having eaten a big breakfast, Greg skipped lunch*).

> 2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. The primary tense system is more highly grammaticalised than the secondary one. One obvious reflection of this is that it is marked inflectionally rather than analytically. The perfect marker ***have*** is a member of the small closed class of auxiliary verbs, so that the perfect can properly be regarded as a grammatical category, but analytic marking of this kind represents a lesser degree of grammaticalisation than inflection.

In this system, **compound tenses** combine a primary and a secondary tense, e.g. the *present perfect or the *past perfect.

See also PAST; PERFECT; PRESENT; PRESENT PERFECT; SIMPLE; TENSE.

4. (*n. & adj.*) (In some older grammar, chiefly Jespersen's.) (Designating the *rank of) a linguistic unit that is at a first level 'down' in a *phrase, group, etc. Contrasted with *secondary and *tertiary.

> 1924 O. JESPERSEN We may, of course, have two or more coordinate adjuncts to the same primary: thus in *a nice young lady*, the words *a, nice*, and *young* equally define *lady*.

See also HEAD.

primary performative *See* PERFORMATIVE.

primary tense *See* PRIMARY (3).

primary verb *See* PRIMARY (1).

primitive *Linguistics* (*n. & adj.*). (A term, *construction, etc.) that is regarded as basic and 'given', and not derived from another, but this term is not strictly defined.

> 1968 J. LYONS When the linguist sets out to describe the grammar of a language on the basis of a recorded corpus of material, he starts with a more

primitive notion than that of either the word or the sentence (by 'primitive' is meant 'undefined within the theory', 'pre-theoretical'). This more primitive notion is that of the *utterance*.

principal clause *See* MAIN CLAUSE.

principal parts Chiefly used in the description of Latin. For English, this term refers to the three forms of a *verb given in a dictionary from which all its other forms can be derived. These are the *base form, the *past form, and the *past participle form, e.g.

blow, blew, blown
come, came, come
hurt, hurt, hurt
like, liked, liked
swim, swam, swum

The only verbs outside this pattern are *have* (where we have *has* in the *third person *singular, rather than **haves*) and *be* (where we have *am/are/is*).

principle of end-focus *See* END-FOCUS.

principle of end-weight *See* END-WEIGHT.

Principle of Relevance *See* RELEVANCE THEORY.

Principles and Parameters Theory (P&P Theory) A development of *Generative Grammar (2) from the 1980s onwards, also referred to as *Government-Binding Theory.

> 1995 N. CHOMSKY Principles-and-parameters (P&P) theory is not a precisely articulated theoretical system, but rather a particular approach to classical problems of the study of language, guided by certain leading ideas that had been taking shape since the origins of modern generative grammar some 40 years ago. These ideas crystallized into a distinctive approach to the topic by about 1980.

See also CHOMSKYAN; GOVERNMENT-BINDING THEORY; GRAMMAR; HEAD-DRIVEN PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; MINIMALIST PROGRAM; PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; STANDARD THEORY.

private verb A *verb that expresses an intellectual state, and typically *licenses a *that*-clause. Contrasted with *public verb.

The majority of verbs introducing *that*-clauses are sometimes loosely described as **reporting verbs**. More technically, many are classified as *factual verbs and divided into two groups: those which involve a public statement, and those which refer to private thinking only, e.g. *believe, know, realize, understand*.

See also PSYCHOLOGICAL VERB.

privilege of occurrence The (functional) slot(s) in which a *word or *phrase can be used in a *construction.

Members of the same *word class, in a general way, share the same privileges of occurrence, and this is in fact one of the tests used in assigning a word to a particular class. Thus *along, back, down*, and *out* can all replace *round* in the sentence *I hurried round*, and can for that reason be assigned to the same word class (an *adverb for some, a *preposition for others).

> 1933 L. BLOOMFIELD The lexical form in any actual utterance, as a concrete linguistic form, is always accompanied by some grammatical form: it appears in some function, and these privileges of occurrence make up, collectively, the grammatical function of the *lexical* form.

Compare CO-OCCURRENCE.

PRO/pro *See* ANAPHOR.

process

1. A continuous action, or series of actions, events, changes, *situations, stages, etc.

The word is used in its everyday sense in the classification of the *word classes on semantic grounds.

•• **process adverbs** (or **process adverbials**): a category of *adverbs (*adverbials) that includes adverbs of manner, means, and instrument, e.g.

We went *quickly* (manner)
We travelled *by car* (means)
He walks *with a stick* (instrument)

•• **process verbs**: *dynamic (1) *verbs that indicate changing states, such as *deteriorate, grow, melt*, e.g.

The evenings are *drawing out*

2. In *Systemic Grammar, the concept of process occupies an important place in the interpretation of the clause as a ‘representation of experience’.

> 1985 M. A. K. HALLIDAY A process consists potentially of three components:
> (i) the process itself;
> (ii) participants in the process;
> (iii) circumstances associated with the process.

The process itself is normally realized through a verb, the participants through *nominal groups (*noun phrases), and the circumstances through an adverbial.

proclitic *Morphology* (*n. & adj.*). (A form) pronounced with very little emphasis, usually shortened, and phonologically attached to a following host word. Contrasted with *enclitic.

This phenomenon is much rarer in English than the enclitic. Arguably, the articles (*a/an, the*) are proclitics; likewise *do* and *it* when reduced to a single consonant sound (e.g. *D'you know?, 'Twas* the night before Christmas).

productive Describing a linguistic process that is still in use, in contrast to **unproductive**.

Many kinds of affixation are highly productive in forming new words. For example, dozens of new words are formed with *anti-*, *Euro-*, *dis-*, *un-*, *-ee*, *-ness* and so on, but few with *-dom* or *-hood*.

pro-form A *word, or word combination, that can substitute for another.

*Pronouns, as the name implies, are commonly used as pro-forms for *nouns and *noun phrases, e.g.

> They bought a villa in the south of France, and they are doing *it* up now

Pro-forms can also be words such as *here*, *there*, and *then*, e.g.

> All her life she dreamt of Paris, but she never got *there*

Word combinations involving *do* (e.g. *do it*, *do so*, *do that*) can replace a *predicate (1), and are called **pro-VPs**:

> They said they would cancel the order, and the next day they *did/did so/did it* [i.e. cancel the order]

Also possible are *so* and *not* as pro-forms replacing **that*-clauses functioning as *direct object, e.g.

> Are there any survivors? I hope *so* [i.e. I hope that there are survivors]/I fear *not* [i.e. I fear that there aren't any survivors]

A pro-form may relate to its antecedent in two grammatically different ways. Contrast:

> I went to the library for a book yesterday, but they didn't have *it* (a relationship of *co-reference)
>
> I went to the library for a book yesterday, but didn't borrow *one* (*substitution for a noun phrase)

- **proformation**: substitution by pro-forms for other words or linguistic units.

See also SUBSTITUTE.

progressive (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) an *aspectual *construction (*tense in some frameworks) formed with the **progressive auxiliary *be*** and the *-ing* *participle form of a *verb. (Also called the **continuous (tense)**.)
For example:

We *are eating* our breakfast
They *were teasing* you

Most linguists classify the progressive as an aspect rather than a tense because, rather than grammatically encoding *time, the construction expresses how a situation unfolds over time—namely as being in progress, and therefore often of limited duration.

We can speak of various different **progressive constructions** (tenses), as in the examples below:

I *am staying* with friends until the 30th of May (**present progressive**, sometimes called **present continuous**)
I *was wondering* what to do when this job cropped up (**past progressive**, sometimes called **past continuous**)
We *will have been waiting* for two hours by then (**future perfect progressive**, sometimes called **future perfect continuous**)
The laptop *is being repaired* (**passive progressive**, sometimes called **passive continuous**)

The progressive construction can be used to refer to arrangements in the near future, e.g.

I *am lunching* with Margaret tomorrow

This is an example of the **present progressive futurate** (*see* FUTURATE).

Compare IMPERFECT; IMPERFECTIVE; PERFECT; PERFECTIVE.

p

progressive auxiliary *be* *See* PROGRESSIVE.

progressive futurate *See* FUTURATE.

projection

1. In phrase structure this term refers to the various hierarchical levels that *phrases are made up of.

In descriptive frameworks, the levels are the *head (i.e. a *noun, *verb, etc.) and the phrase itself (i.e. *noun phrase, *verb phrase, etc.). In *Generative Grammar, further levels are distinguished. *See* X-BAR SYNTAX.

2. (In *Systemic Grammar.) A type of relationship between *clauses. Contrasted with *expansion.

Projection is largely concerned with the reporting of speaking and thinking ‘events’ (dealt with under *direct speech and *indirect speech in traditional grammar). However, the term also embraces *rankshifted remarks and thoughts of the kind we find in *appositional clauses or in examples like the following:

The question *whether the old man would survive* did not arise

It also includes *nominal clauses:

That he was seriously ill was not disputed

pronominal Of, pertaining to, or of the nature of, a *pronoun.

- **pronominalization**: the phenomenon, or process, of replacing a *noun phrase by a pronoun.
- **pronominalize**: turn into a pronoun.

•• **pronominal adverb**: (in some traditional grammar) a term used for *adverbs of vague general meaning that share with pronouns the property of referring back to some other phrase (e.g. *here*, *then*, *there*). This category overlaps with the more general modern notion of *pro-form.

pronoun A member of a *closed class of *words that function as the *head of a phrase that can perform functions typically carried out by *noun phrases (*subject, *direct object, etc.). For this reason pronouns are often regarded as nouns (e.g. in CaGEL, OMEG). However, other grammars stress that pronouns:

(i) show distinctions of *case (*he/him*), *person (first, second, third), and *gender (*he/she*);
(ii) typically do not have *inflectional *plurals (with *one* being an exception);
(iii) are very limited with regard to the *dependents they take;
(iv) function as the head of phrases that do not have independent *reference.

For these reasons a grammar like CGEL treats pronouns as constituting a separate *word class.

The class of pronouns can be subdivided in various ways. A commonly accepted subdivision recognizes *demonstrative pronouns, *indefinite pronouns, *interrogative pronouns, *personal pronouns, *possessive pronouns, *reciprocal pronouns, *reflexive pronouns, and *relative pronouns.

Traditional grammars define pronouns as words that can replace or stand in for a noun. But this is problematic. Compare the following examples:

We have lots of *cats*, but it's a problem because my husband hates *them*
I asked *my neighbour* if *he* would cut our grass

In the first example *them* seems to replace a noun (*cats*), but in fact, as the second example shows, pronouns really replace noun *phrases*, and are for that reason perhaps best called **pro-NPs**.

There are further problems with saying that pronouns replace nouns. One is that it is hardly true to say that the first person pronoun *I* replaces a noun. Another problem is that pronouns often replace larger units such as *clauses, as in *Why did you ask that?*

Many pronouns have the same form as *determinatives (1)—e.g. *this, that*—but note that pronouns occur independently. Thus, *this* is a pronoun in *I like this*, but a determinative in *I like this story*. Some grammarians claim that items like *this* and *that*, which seem to belong to two classes for the reason just given, in fact nevertheless belong to one or the other class in both examples, such that in the examples cited *this* is either a pronoun or a determinative.

•• **dummy pronoun**: *see* DUMMY.

pro-NP *See* PRONOUN.

proper name *See* PROPER NOUN.

proper noun A *noun referring to a unique person, place, animal, etc. Contrasted with *common noun. (Also called **proper name**.)

The traditional distinction between common and proper nouns is both grammatical and semantic. Proper nouns do not freely allow *determinatives (1) or *number contrasts (e.g. **my Himalaya, *that Atlantic, *some Asias*), and *article usage tends to be invariant (e.g. *the Chilterns, the (River) Thames, Oxford*, not **Chilterns, *Thames, *the Oxford*).

However, the categories are not watertight. Thus, because more than one referent can share the same name, names can in some circumstances be treated like common nouns (e.g. *a Mr. Jones, the Smiths*). Nationality words and names of days of the week are also borderline (e.g. *three Scots, an Australian, three Mondays in succession*).

The terms proper noun and (proper) name are often used interchangeably. But a distinction is sometimes made between **names**, which can include phrase-like units (e.g. *the United States, New York, the Daily Telegraph, the South Downs, A Midsummer Night's Dream*), and proper nouns, which are then single words (e.g. *Dorchester, Elizabeth, England*).

prop *it* *See* DUMMY.

proportional clause One of two joined parallel *clauses involving some kind of *comparison.

As well as covering such fairly standard sentences as *As he got older, (so) he worried less*, this label also covers the more unusual pattern exemplified by the following:

The more he thought, the less he spoke
The more, the merrier

proposition *Semantics*. The specification of a *situation or state of affairs by a *declarative *sentence (or *clause) which can be said to be true or false.

• **propositional**: having the nature of a statement or *assertion about something.

•• **propositional meaning** (also called **propositional content**): the component of the *meaning expressed by a sentence, *utterance, etc. that can be said to be true or false.

> 1988 R. HUDDLESTON [P]ropositional meaning is arguably the most central part of meaning—and very often the part which can be most precisely and rigorously described, by specifying the conditions under which a sentence could be used to express a true proposition.

The latter term is often used to explain how two different sentences logically mean the same. For example, *He is hard to persuade* and *It is hard to persuade him* can be said to have the same propositional meaning. By contrast **non-propositional meaning** refers to the kinds of meanings that are ‘superimposed’, for instance when a sentence is uttered in a sarcastic tone of voice, or when a particular constituent of a clause is highlighted (e.g. by *topicalization). *see* INFORMATION STRUCTURE.

The terms, taken from logic, are used in a number of ways.

> 1977 J. LYONS The term ‘proposition’, like ‘fact’, has been the subject of considerable philosophical controversy . . . Further difficulties are caused by the use of ‘proposition’ in relation to ‘sentence’ and ‘statement’: some writers identify propositions with (declarative) sentences, others identify them with statements, and others with the meaning of (declarative) sentences; and there is little consistency in the way in which ‘statement’ is defined.

See also ATTITUDINAL; COMMUNICATIVE; CONATIVE; CONNOTATION; DENOTATIVE; DESCRIPTIVE; EMOTIVE; ILLOCUTION; INTERPERSONAL; REFERENTIAL MEANING.

pro-predicate, pro-predication The use of a *pro-form to stand for a *predicate or *predication.

prop word (In some traditional grammar.) The *pronoun *one* used as a *substitution *pro-form.

The pronoun *one* (plural *ones*) can be used to substitute for part or all of a *noun phrase:

> Do you have any blue leather handbags? Yes, we have some nice *ones* [i.e. blue leather handbags]. I could also show you a smart red *one* [i.e. leather handbag].

Other words or phrases (e.g. *another*, *the same*) can also substitute in similar ways.

The fact that the pro-form *one* can refer back to a unit that is bigger than a noun but smaller than a noun phrase is one of the motivations for the bar level category in *X-bar syntax.

The term was coined by Henry Sweet (1892b), and was much used by Jespersen.

prospective Referring to the *future (1).

A term used in some traditional grammar in the discussion of time clauses with future meaning.

protasis (Pronounced /ˈprɒtəsɪs/. Plural **protases**.) The clause expressing the *condition in a *conditional construction (typically introduced by *if*), e.g.

> *If we sweep the room* it will be full of dust

Contrasted with *apodosis.

• **protatic** (pronounced /prəˈtætɪk/) (not common).

prototype (Originally in philosophy and psychology) the most typical exemplar(s) of a *category in terms of the defining features of that category. A prototype should not be identified with a *particular* member of a category:

> 1978 E. ROSCH By prototypes of categories we have generally meant the clearest cases of category membership defined operationally by people's judgments of goodness of membership in the category . . . To speak of a *prototype* at all is simply a convenient grammatical fiction; what is really referred to are judgments of degree of prototypicality. Only in some artificial categories is there by definition a literal single prototype . . . For natural-language categories, to speak of a single entity that is the prototype is either a gross misunderstanding of the empirical data or a covert theory of mental representation . . . Prototypes do not constitute a theory of representation of categories.

• **prototypical**.

•• **prototype theory**: the view held by many linguists, especially practitioners of *Cognitive Linguistics, that categories (linguistic or otherwise) cannot be defined by making reference to a set of defining criteria, as in the Aristotelian model. Instead, categories are viewed as having more or less prototypical members, as overlapping, and as having **fuzzy boundaries**.

See also GRADIENCE.

pro-verb The *verb *do* (*it/so/that*) used as a *pro-form, or as a *substitution item.

pro-VP *See* PRO-FORM.

proximal Indicating things that are near (to the speaker). Contrasted with *distal.

This label is sometimes applied to the *deictic words *this* and *these*.

proximity agreement, proximity concord *See* AGREEMENT.

pseudo-cleft *See* CLEFT.

pseudo-coordination An apparent *coordination of two units where the relationship between them is not one of equality, unlike in canonical coordination.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. When they precede *and*, members of a small class of verbs or predications have an idiomatic function which is similar to the function of catenative constructions . . . and which will be termed *pseudo-coordinations*.

Examples of this (which tend to be colloquial) include *try and come*, *went and complained*. Other pseudo-coordinations are found with *adjectives, e.g. *nice and warm*, and the very colloquial *good and proper*.

pseudo-participle *See* PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE.

pseudo-passive A *pattern (*be* + a *verb form in *-ed/-en*) that resembles a *passive construction, but does not have an *active counterpart and does not permit an *agent. Also called **adjectival passive** and **statal passive**. Example:

> My homework is finished

Here there is no active version (cf. *I finish my homework) and a **by-phrase* cannot be added (cf. **My homework is finished by me*). In this example *finished* refers to a *state.

Some passive sentences are *ambiguous, especially in the *past tense, e.g.

> The job was finished at two o'clock

If the meaning is 'By the time I arrived at two o'clock it was already finished' this example can be regarded as a pseudo-passive, with a statal interpretation. This contrasts with a *dynamic (1) central passive construction where an agent is supplied, and where the verb can be part of a *progressive construction:

> The job was finished at two o'clock by Bill

The job was being finished at two o'clock by the painters

Compare PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE.
See also PATIENT; SEMI-PASSIVE; VOICE.

pseudo-subjunctive A *hypercorrect use of the *were*-*subjunctive, where an indicative is acceptable, e.g. *He tried to drop in sometimes on his way to his constituency if he were alone.*

psycholinguistics The study of the cognitive aspects of language learning, production, processing, etc.
• **psycholinguist**, **psycholinguistic**.

psychological predicate *See* PSYCHOLOGICAL VERB.

psychological subject An older term for the *topic or *theme of a *clause, i.e. the 'subject-matter' or what the clause is about; contrasted with grammatical *subject and logical subject.

psychological verb A *verb that expresses a psychological state. Also called **experiencer verb**, **mental verb**, **psychological predicate**, **psych verb;** and **verb of psychological state**.

There are two types of psychological verb: those that have an *experiencer as *subject and a *stimulus as *object (e.g. *I felt the cold*); and those that have a stimulus as subject and experiencer as object (e.g. *The cold overpowered me*).

See also EMOTIVE.

psych verb *See* PSYCHOLOGICAL VERB.

public verb A *verb whose meaning includes or implies the idea of 'speaking', often *licensing a **that*-clause expressing a *factual proposition. Contrasted with *private verb.

Examples include *affirm, announce, boast, confirm, declare.*

punctual Of a *situation expressed by a *verb: having no duration, taking place momentarily; contrasted with *durative; e.g.

The bomb exploded
He swallowed the grape

Punctual situations can be repeated:

Someone knocked at the door

Compare ATELIC; CONCLUSIVE; TELIC.

punctuation The practice or system of inserting various marks in written texts in order to aid interpretation; the division of written or printed matter into *sentences, *clauses, etc. by means of such marks.

Earlier punctuation reflected spoken delivery, marking especially the pauses where breath would be taken. Since the eighteenth century it has been based on grammatical structure, marking sentences, clauses, and some types of *phrases. Broadly speaking, it has the function either of linking items (e.g. *three potatoes, two carrots, and an onion*) or of separating them (e.g. *I don't know. Ask someone else*).

In a series of *adjectives, a comma is often used when the meanings are not linked (e.g. *a small, neat room*), but is not used when they are (e.g. *a silly little boy*). In some styles but not in others, a comma is used before a *coordinating conjunction in a list of three or more items, as exemplified by the second comma in *the flat, the landlord, and the tenant*. This is called the **serial comma** or (because it is part of the house style of Oxford University Press) the **Oxford comma**.

Various marks (brackets, dashes, and commas) are used to separate off passages that interrupt the main structure of the sentence (e.g. *This tile—despite its fresh colours—is more than two hundred years old*). *See* PARENTHESIS.

Punctuation in the shape of a hyphen or comma is also used to avoid grammatical or semantic *ambiguity (e.g. *a natural-gas producer* vs *a natural gas-producer*; *The quarrel over, the friendship was resumed* vs *The quarrel over the friendship was resumed*).

Grammatically complete units can be separated off by lighter punctuation than the normal full stop, either to link parallel statements (semicolon: e.g. *I wasn't going to leave*; *I'd only just arrived*)* or to lead from one thought to the next (colon: e.g. *I wasn't going to leave*: *I stood my ground*).

The *apostrophe can be said to have a quasi-morphological role in distinguishing the 'possessive' (*singular and *plural) from the plural in most nouns (e.g. *girl's*, *girls'*, versus *girls*).

purpose The motive, or the intention behind an action.

The term is used in its usual sense, particularly in the semantic description of *adverbials and *conjunctions, e.g.

They only do it *to annoy me* (*infinitival clause of purpose)

Similarly: *in order (not) (to), so as (not) (to)*.

A finite *adverbial clause of purpose, introduced by *so (that)* or *in order that*, normally requires a *modal verb, e.g.

They shredded the evidence so that no one *would* discover the truth

Contrast:

> They shredded the evidence so that no one discovered the truth ('result' rather than 'purpose')

Negative purpose is suggested by *lest* and *in case*.

pushdown (*n. & adj.*) (In CGEL.) (Designating) a type of *embedding in which a linguistic *constituent that is part of one *clause operates indirectly as part of another, e.g.

> What do you think happened? [i.e. *What* do you think?/*What* happened?]

•• **pushdown element**: In the sentence *Which panel is he a member of?,* the phrase *which panel* is a pushdown element: it has a function in a lower constituent, namely the *complement of the preposition *of,* and has been moved out of its containing *prepositional phrase (cf. *He is a member of which panel?*). In this particular case we can also apply the more specific label **pushdown *wh*-element**.

•• **pushdown relative clause**: exemplified by the clause *who he hoped were still alive* in the following example: *He was searching for his parents who he hoped were still alive* [i.e. *He was searching for his parents who he hoped who were still alive*].

putative *should* (In CGEL.) The *modal verb *should*, particularly as used in a *subordinate clause to refer tentatively to a possible *situation, rather than to assert a situation as fact; chiefly in British English.

The term is particularly applied to the use of *should* in subordinate clauses where it does not express *obligation, but emphasizes an emotional reaction to a possible or presumed fact. This is also called **emotive *should***, and is exemplified in the following:

> It is a pity/sad *that you should think that they are incompetent*

In this example it is not certain that that the addressee holds the view referred to. Contrast this with the *factive (1) subordinate clause in the following:

> It is a pity *that you think that they are incompetent*

Putative *should* also occurs in subordinate clauses as an alternative to the *subjunctive after expressions of suggesting, advising, etc. (In CGEL it is then called the ***should* mandative**; see SUBJUNCTIVE.):

> They insisted that I (should) stay the whole week

•• **putative *should* clause**: a **that*-clause containing putative *should*.

Q

qualification *See* QUALIFIER.

qualifier

1. A *word (or group of words) that attributes a quality to another word, or that *modifies another word or phrase in some way.

This term (together with *qualify (1), **qualification**) is sometimes used with much the same meaning as *modifier (and the related *modify, *modification). But in much modern grammar *modifier* etc. are the preferred terms.

2. In some traditional grammar, distinctions were made between the two terms. *Qualify* etc. were largely reserved for words, especially *adjectives, that assign qualities to a *noun. *Modify* etc. were used for the way *adverbs affect *verbs. In this kind of usage, adjectives could be labelled qualifiers, whereas all or most of today's *determinatives (1) were regarded as *quantifiers.

> 1933b O. JESPERSEN *Little* is sometimes a qualifier (*a little girl*), sometimes a quantifier (*a little bread*).

3. In *Systemic Grammar, *qualifier* is contrasted with *modifier*, as in traditional grammar (see 2 above), but in a completely different way. Here *qualifier* and *qualification* describe the function of whatever follows the head in a nominal group, thus being virtually synonymous with *postmodifier and *postmodification in other models. The terms *modifier* etc. can then be used to describe modification before the head—called *premodification in other models.

qualify

1. Attribute a quality to another *word.

> 1892b H. SWEET Thus *very* in *a very strong man* qualifies the attribute-word *strong*.

The term was at one time particularly used of the way *adjectives affect *nouns, although usage could be wider, as in the quotation.

In many present-day grammatical models, the terms *qualify* etc. are often replaced by *modify* etc.

See QUALIFIER (1), (2).

2. In *Systemic Grammar, *qualify* is used to describe the effect that words following the *headword in a noun group (*noun phrase) have on that head. Such words do not, of course, have to be adjectives, but can include *relative clauses and *prepositional phrases, so in this area *qualify* has an extended meaning (i.e. it is equivalent to *postmodify in other models).

> 1972 M. L. SAMUELS *Son* is usually either modified by *my/his/her*, etc. or qualified by an *of*-group, whereas *sun* is normally preceded by the definite article.

See also QUALIFIER (3).

qualitative adjective An *adjective that is *gradable and describes a quality, in contrast to a *classifying adjective. Roughly equivalent to *epithet.

> 1990 *Collins Cobuild English Grammar* Adjectives that identify a quality that someone or something has, such as 'sad', 'pretty', 'small', 'happy', 'healthy', 'wealthy' and 'wise', are called qualitative adjectives.

The division of adjectives into qualitative and classifying is just one of the many ways in which adjectives can be categorized.

Compare ATTRIBUTIVE; GRADABLE.

quality partitive A *partitive indicating categorization by quality or kind, e.g.

a *sort* of menu
two *kinds* of pudding

These are distinguished from the more usual **quantity partitives**, e.g. a *piece* of cake, a *lot* of food

q

quantification The semantic property (of a *word, *phrase, etc.) of specifying an amount, number, or quantity.

See also QUANTIFIER; QUANTIFY; QUANTITATIVE; QUANTITY.

quantifier

1. A semantic label that can be applied to words from different *word classes (*determinative, *adjective, *adverb, etc.) which express an amount, number, or quantity.

The term normally refers to *indefinite quantity, and covers such quantifying or *quantitative words as *much, many, (a) few, (a) little, several, enough, lots (of)*, etc. It is sometimes extended to include indefinite *pronouns such as *everyone, somebody, nothing*, etc., and sometimes also to *open (1) class words such as *heaps (of), lashings (of),* *piles (of)*, etc. It can also be extended to include *nouns of definite quantity, i.e. the *cardinal numbers.

2. (In one grammatical model.) A *partitive *phrase including the word *of*.

> 1990 *Collins Cobuild English Grammar* **Quantifier**, a phrase ending in 'of' which allows you to refer to a quantity of something without being precise about the exact amount; e.g. *some of, a lot of, a little bit of.*

Compare IDENTIFIER.
See also QUANTIFICATION; QUANTITATIVE; QUANTITY.

quantify Indicate quantity. *See* QUANTIFICATION; QUANTIFIER; QUANTITATIVE; QUANTITY.

quantitative

1. Relating to *quantity or amount as part of a *word's meaning. *See* QUANTIFIER (1); QUANTITY.

2. (*n. & adj.*) (A word) belonging to a class consisting of (indefinite) *quantifiers (e.g. *(a) few*, *several*), definite *cardinal numbers (e.g. *one*, *two*, *three*), and measurement terms such as *a couple of, half.*

In this classification, quantitative contrasts with *ordinative, and both are subclasses of *numerative.

See also QUANTIFICATION; QUANTIFIER; QUANTITY.

quantity Number or amount.

For number and amount as semantic categories, *see* PARTITIVE and QUANTIFIER (1).

•• **quantity partitive**: *see* QUALITY PARTITIVE.

quasi- Appended to a descriptive label to indicate that the latter does not apply in every single respect to a particular item.

For example, CaGEL describes the *verb *be* in such examples as *They are to send in their passports immediately* as **quasi-modal *be***:

> 2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM et al. The label 'quasi-modal' indicates that in spite of its one modal property (and its modal meaning) this ***be*** doesn't in fact qualify grammatically for inclusion in that class.

The *prefix *semi-* and the *suffix *-oid* have similar meanings. As a further example, in some models of *valency grammar the postverbal noun phrase in the following example is said to function as an **objoid**, i.e. it functions like an *object but cannot be *passivized:

> Those shoes suit you (cf. *You are suited by those shoes)

See also GRADIENCE; MARGINAL.

Queen's English, the *See* KING'S ENGLISH, THE.

question (In modern grammatical analyses that distinguish *structure and *usage.) A usage label indicating the function of a *clause as seeking information.

Typically, *interrogative clauses (which are syntactically defined) are used to ask *questions, but other types of clauses can be used in this way as well (e.g. *declarative *You've already spent all that money?*, which is sometimes called a **declarative question**). Regrettably, not all grammars make a distinction between interrogatives and questions, using the latter (and sometimes the former) as both a *form label and a usage label.

Distinctions can be made between different types of question:

(i) A **closed question** (also called **yes-no question** is a clause (interrogative or otherwise) that is used to ask a question with *yes* or *no* as an answer (e.g. interrogative *Is Greg here?*, declarative *You are Peter?*).

(ii) An **open question** (also called ***wh-* question** or **information question**) is a clause (interrogative or otherwise) that is used to ask a question that potentially has an unlimited set of answers (e.g. interrogative *Who ate the last bun?*, declarative *You said WHAT?*). Open questions (in interrogative form) tend to be spoken with a falling intonation.

(iii) An **alternative question** is a subtype of closed question which names possible answers but does not leave the matter open. An alternative question can display subject–auxiliary *inversion, as in *Would you like coffee or tea? Are you happy or sad? Did you laugh or cry?*, or begin with a **wh*-word, as in *Which would you like—coffee, tea, or wine?* An alternative question implies that one, and only one, of the options is possible.

So-called *exclamatory questions and *rhetorical questions are in fact interrogative in form only, and are not used to ask genuine questions:

Isn't it a lovely day! (= It is a lovely day)
What's that got to do with you? (= That has nothing to do with you)
Who am I to complain? (= It is not for me to complain)

Compare ECHO UTTERANCE; TAG.
See also CLAUSE TYPE; INDIRECT QUESTION; SPEECH ACT.

question mark A *punctuation mark ⟨?⟩ chiefly used to show that the preceding *word, *phrase, *clause, or *sentence is used to ask a *question.

question tag *See* TAG.

question word *See* *WH*-WORD.

quotation mark A *punctuation mark ⟨‘ ’⟩ or ⟨“ ”⟩ used as one of a pair to mark the beginning and end of a form, word, *phrase, or longer stretch of text that is being quoted by the writer from another context.

R

radical *Morphology* (*n. & adj.*) (Of, belonging to, connected with, or based on) the *root of a *word.

The term has a long history, but words such as *base, *root, and *stem (along with *morpheme and *minimum free form) are more usual today.

raise Move (a *noun phrase) from a position in an embedded *clause to a position in a higher clause. *See* RAISING.

raised object *See* RAISING.

raised subject *See* RAISING.

raising The displacement of a *noun phrase from a position within an *embedded clause to a position in a higher clause.

There are two kinds of raising: **subject-to-subject raising** (or simply **subject raising**; abbreviated as SSR) and **subject-to-object raising** (or simply **object raising**; abbreviated as SOR).

With SSR we have a grammatical *subject that carries a *semantic role that is associated with a *verb in a lower clause. Thus in

Henriette seems [_ to like Paul]

the subject of the *matrix clause (*Henriette*) is said to have been raised out of the bracketed clause (from the position indicated by '_'), and its semantic role, that of *experiencer, is linked with the verb *like*, not with the verb *seem* (the meaning is 'It seems that Henriette likes Paul'). The displaced subject is called a **raised subject**, and the verb *seem* is called a **raising verb** (other examples are *appear*, *continue*, *happen*, *prove*).

With SOR we have a grammatical *object that carries a *semantic role that is associated with a verb in a lower clause. Thus in

Jill believes Henriette [_ to like Paul]

the object of the matrix clause (*Henriette*) is said to have been raised out of the bracketed clause (from the position indicated by '_'), and its semantic role, that of experiencer, is linked with the verb *like*, not the verb *believe* (the meaning is 'Jill believes that Henriette likes Paul').

In early *Generative Grammar (2) these displacements were effected by transformations called **subject-to-subject raising** and **subject-to-object raising**, or simply raising to cover both types. In recent treatments (e.g. CaGEL, OMEG) the term raising is still used, but it does not always imply that movement has taken place.

raising verb *See* RAISING.

rank A *level of linguistic analysis.

1. In Jespersen's grammar, the term rank is used as a way of classifying units at different levels of analysis in a *phrase or *clause.

> 1933b O. JESPERSEN Take the three words *terribly cold weather*. They are evidently not on the same footing, *weather* being, grammatically, most important, to which the two others are subordinate, and of these again *cold* is more important than *terribly*. We have thus three ranks: 'weather' is Primary, 'cold' Secondary, and 'terribly' Tertiary in this combination.

2. In the *Systemic Grammar framework, grammar is seen as a system of levels or ranks, going from the 'highest' rank of *sentence, through *clause, *phrase (or *group), and *word down to *morpheme, each smaller unit being included in the larger one.

> 2014 M. A. K. HALLIDAY & C. MATTHIESSEN There is a **scale of rank** in the grammar of every language. That of English (which is typical of many) can be represented as:
> clause
> phrase/group
> word
> morpheme

rankshift (*n.*) A downward shift of a linguistic unit into a lower rank.

> 2014 M. A. K. HALLIDAY & C. MATTHIESSEN There is the potential for **rank shift**, whereby a unit of one rank may be downranked (downgraded) to function in the structure of a unit of its own rank or of a rank below.

For example, in *a street with no name* the prepositional phrase *with no name* functions as a *postmodifier in the larger noun phrase, and as such is a rankshifted phrase.

(*v.*) Assign an inferior rank to (a unit in a grammatical structure).

real condition The same as open *condition.

realis *See* IRREALIS.

reality phase *See* PHASE.

realization The overt manifestation of an abstract linguistic unit in a particular context.

Realization is applicable at all *levels of analysis. For example, in *cats and dogs* the abstract *plural *morpheme (1) is realized by /s/ and /z/. On another level, a *lexeme can have several realizations (or be realized in several ways), e.g. as *break*, *breaks*, *breaking*, *broke*, *broken*. And at *clause level we can say that the grammatical *function (1), of *subject is typically realized by a *noun phrase.

realize Cause, or be, the *realization of.

> 1980 E. K. BROWN & J. E. MILLER There is no very satisfactory way to identify part of the word *wrote* as realizing the lexeme WRITE and some other part of the word as realizing the syntactic description 'past tense': rather, the whole form *wrote*, as a unity, realizes the description 'WRITE + past'.

reanalysis *See* MULTIPLE ANALYSIS.

reason *See* CAUSE.

recipient *Semantics* (*n. & adj.*) (Indicating). the *semantic role assigned to a *noun (or *noun phrase) referring to an animate entity that is intended to 'receive' something through an action expressed by a *verb.

The role of the recipient is typically grammatically *realized by the *indirect object in a *clause, e.g.

> I bought *my cousin* a present
> I gave *him* your letter

A distinction is sometimes made between an intended (or **benefactive**) recipient (e.g. *I bought a present for him*) and an actual recipient (e.g. *I gave the letter to him*). *See* BENEFICIARY.

Semantically it is possible for the grammatical *subject of some verbs to be assigned a recipient role, as in *I heard a noise*, though this role may alternatively be described as *experiencer.

Compare DATIVE; GOAL (2).

reciprocal Expressing mutuality between two or more people, or between groups of people.

The term is mainly applied to the *pronouns *each other* and *one another* (**reciprocal pronouns**) when they are *licensed by certain *verbs. There is no real difference in usage between them, despite the existence of a prescriptive rule that *one another* should be used when the *reference is to more than two entities. Examples:

> The French and the German leaders haven't always liked each other

The children in Yellow Class all like one another

Occasionally the term is extended to cover other *words, such as the verbs *meet* (e.g. *James and Marilyn met*, which can be regarded as combining *James met Marilyn* and *Marilyn met James*) or *exchange* (e.g. *Ann and Frank exchanged addresses*, where Ann gave her address to Frank, and Frank gave his address to Ann).

reclassification The same as *conversion.

recover Deduce (information) not made explicit so as to make sense of an *utterance.

For example, in *We want the citizens to vote in the elections* the *subject of the *subordinate clause *to vote in the elections* can be recovered from the *main clause.

See also RECOVERABILITY.

recoverability The phenomenon whereby information can be deduced or retrieved by a hearer or reader from the *context.

The fact that certain information is recoverable enables us to make sense of otherwise incomplete *utterances, for example when *ellipsis occurs or when *pro-forms are used.

In **precise recoverability** the exact words that have been ellipted are recoverable from the surrounding context, just as the exact *referents of any pro-forms used are. Take the following example:

The doctor said she would call, but didn't

Here the pro-form (pronoun) *she* can be linked to *the doctor*, and we can recover the ellipted words *she* and *call* in the second clause from the first clause.

A distinction can be made between **structural recoverability**, which relies (as in the example above) on our knowledge of grammar, and **situational recoverability**, when we recover what is missing from some *extralinguistic context. For example, when a speaker says *Look, she's found it*, the referents of *she* and *it* will be recoverable by the hearer from the *situation.

- **recoverable**

Compare UNDERSTOOD.

recurrence Repeated or frequent occurrence, repetition.

This term is used in its everyday sense in discussing the meaning of some *verbs and *adverbials.

1985 R. QUIRK et al. Here, the type of recurrence in which we are interested depends both on the semantics of the verb and also on its aspect. Compare:

She *usually* smiles. [recurrent activity; eg ‘When she sees me . . .’]
She is *usually* smiling. [continuous activity; eg ‘Whenever one sees her . . .’]

recursion The phenomenon whereby a particular type of linguistic unit or structure is contained within a unit or structure of the same type.

> 2003 I. A. SAG, T. WASOW, & E. BENDER [W]e use the term recursion whenever rules permit a constituent to occur within a larger constituent of the same type.

In the following example, each PP (*prepositional phrase), except for the highest (leftmost) one, is contained in another PP:

The ring was [$_{\text{PP}}$ *in a bag* [$_{\text{PP}}$ *in a box* [$_{\text{PP}}$ *at the back* [$_{\text{PP}}$ *of a drawer* [$_{\text{PP}}$ *in a chest* [$_{\text{PP}}$ *in the corner* [$_{\text{PP}}$ *of the room*]]]]]]]

*Relative clauses can also be used recursively:

> 1975 F. R. PALMER The structure of language involves ‘recursion’ of the kind illustrated by ‘This is the house that Jack built’, ‘This is the mouse that lived in the house that Jack built’ and so on—if necessary *ad infinitum*.

• **recursive**, **recursively**, **recursiveness**.
Compare EMBEDDING; NESTING.
See also MODIFICATION (1).

reduce Abbreviate (a *phrase, *clause, or other linguistic form) by omitting some elements.

The concept of grammatical **reduction** embraces both *ellipsis and *substitution. Thus in reply to

You should write to your fund manager

a reduced response could be

I have (ellipsis of *written to my fund manager*)

or

I’ve done so (with the substitute *pro-form *do so* replacing *written to my fund manager*)

•• **reduced clause**: a shortened clause, particularly a *non-finite or *verbless clause with a *postmodifying function that can be interpreted as a *relative clause with its *relative pronoun and finite *verb omitted, e.g.

Anyone *scared of heights* is advised not to attempt to climb this tower
(= Anyone *who is scared of heights* . . .)

redundancy The superfluity of a linguistic *feature (1), unit, structure, etc. due to its predictability within a containing structure.

Redundancy is to some extent a normal and necessary feature of linguistic communication, and explains why a ‘message’ can be understood even if there is some ‘interference’, for example, in spoken delivery owing to noise, or in written language owing to the occasional misspelling or the erroneous omission of a *word.

A degree of redundancy is also built into syntax. For example, in *The sun rises* there are two markers of *singular, where one might be sufficient (as indeed it is in the simple past, *The sun rose*). On the other hand, there is a counter-tendency to avoid redundancy by *reducing the use of easily *recoverable features. There are, however, grammatical limits on the avoidance of redundancy. *See* ELLIPSIS.

The concept originated in theories of information transfer and telecommunication.

- **redundant**: exhibiting, or characterized by, redundancy.

reduplicate Form (a *word, *phrase, etc.) by repetition of an element; repeat (an element) so as to form a word, phrase, etc.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. It is curious that analogous reduplicated phrases are virtually restricted to informal use: *for months and months, for years and years.*

- **reduplication**.

See also REDUPLICATIVE.

reduplicative (*n. & adj.*) (A *compound *word) having two identical or very similar parts, often rhyming. (Sometimes called *iterative.)

Most reduplicatives are fairly informal, e.g.

goody-goody (M19)
happy-clappy (L20)
harum-scarum (L17)
hugger-mugger (E16)
wishy-washy (E18)

reference The relationship between an expression and what is spoken of (i.e. an entity in the world).

For example, in *Jay is a good teacher*, the *noun phrase *Jay* refers to a person with that name in the real world. It is a *referring expression. *See also* REFERENT.

Alternatively, this term can refer to the relationship between one linguistic expression and another. We can then speak of **anaphoric reference** (backward reference) and **cataphoric reference** (forward reference) within a text or discourse, which are typically brought about by means of *pro-forms:

Henry says *he* is coming (anaphoric)
Before *she* leaves, I must write to Martha (cataphoric)

A distinction must be made between reference and *substitution, although there is some overlap. *Co-referential items share the same *referent in the real world, whereas with substitution, as with *ellipsis, there is a relationship between linguistic entities. Contrast:

Is that your paper? May I borrow *it?* (reference)
Is that a cappuccino? I didn't get *one* today (substitution)

In logic and linguistics, the term reference is further used in more technical ways. Sometimes it contrasts with other kinds of meaning (*see* REFERENTIAL MEANING), and sometimes with *sense.

> 1977 J. LYONS Expressions may differ in sense, but have the same reference; and 'synonymous' means "having the same sense", not "having the same reference". A rather better example than Frege's [i.e. of the Morning Star and the Evening Star, both being the planet Venus] is Husserl's, 'the victor at Jena' and 'the loser at Waterloo' . . . , both of which expressions may be used to refer to Napoleon.

See also ANAPHORA; CATAPHORA; CO-REFERENCE; SENSE; UNIQUE REFERENCE.

reference grammar *See* GRAMMAR.

referent The person, entity, etc. in the real world, or in an imagined world, that is identified by a linguistic expression, typically a *noun phrase.

The noun phrases *the victor at Jena* and *the loser at Waterloo* are *referring expressions; Napoleon is the referent.

referential *it* The pronoun *it* as used to refer to an entity, e.g.

Where is my coat? Ah, there *it* is over there.

Also called **referring *it***.

Compare DUMMY IT.

referential meaning *Semantics*. That aspect of *meaning that can be expressed in terms of *referents; objective, *cognitive, *denotative meaning.

Referential meaning can be contrasted with *emotive, *connotational, and *interpersonal meaning.

See also ATTITUDINAL MEANING; COMMUNICATIVE MEANING; CONATIVE; DESCRIPTIVE; ILLOCUTIONARY MEANING; PROPOSITIONAL MEANING.

referring expression An expression (typically a *noun phrase) used to identify a person, object, place, event, etc. Also called ***r-expression***.

See also REFERENT.

reflexive (*n. & adj.*)

1. (Designating) a *pronoun ending in *-self* or *-selves* (e.g. *myself, themselves*) that refers back *anaphorically to the *subject of the same *clause, as in *She likes herself too much.*

Such pronouns are not usually considered *acceptable as subject in *main clauses in standard English (e.g. **Myself isn't interested in contributing to the fund*; **James and myself intend to help*), but can be used as *emphatic reinforcement (e.g. *I myself believe that he's telling the truth, despite what the others say*).

In clauses such as *He believes himself to be a genius* there is a disagreement as to whether the reflexive is the *direct object of the main clause or the subject of the *subordinate clause. The former analysis is probably more common.

2. (A *verb, or a structure containing a verb) taking a reflexive pronoun as *direct object. English has very few verbs that require such an object. Some examples are:

absent oneself, demean oneself (usually), perjure oneself, pride oneself

Other verbs may be understood reflexively, but a reflexive pronoun as object is optional:

He washed, shaved, and dressed

- **reflexivity**: the property of being reflexive.
- **reflexivization**: the action of making reflexive; the process of becoming reflexive.
- **reflexivize**: make reflexive.

reformulation A rewording or restatement in different *words.

The expression of the second term in an *apposition (e.g. *The mayor, Mr John Morrison, will not be attending*) could be regarded as an instance of reformulation, perhaps in order to explain the first term more accurately.

•• **reformulatory conjunct**: a *conjunct that introduces a reformulation, e.g.

The city of dreaming spires, *in other words* Oxford
The Press, *that is to say* Oxford University Press

register A variety of language used in particular circumstances. This term is used somewhat differently by different linguists.

In one use it refers to a *variety of language, *text, etc. related to a level of formality, anywhere on a scale from the extremely *formal or ceremonial to the *colloquial or slangy, as manifested in syntax, *vocabulary, and, possibly, pronunciation.

It can also refer to (the linguistic characteristics of) a variety of language, text, etc. related to a particular *field of discourse, subject, or occupation: e.g. advertising language or the language of the law.

Compare DOMAIN; GENRE.

regular Of a linguistic form or structure: following the rules for its *class, *paradigm, etc. Contrasted with *irregular.

For example, a **regular verb** has a *past tense and *past participle formed by adding *-ed* to the *base (2) (or *-d* if the base ends in *-e*): e.g. *look/looked/looked, race/raced/raced*.

Similarly, regular *noun *plurals are formed by adding *-s* (or *-es*) to a *nominal (1) *base, as in *book/books, box/boxes*.

•• **regular lexeme**: a *lexeme whose *inflectional forms follow a regular *pattern (e.g. *walk/walked/walked, hand/hands*), as opposed to *irregular lexemes that display irregular inflectional forms (*sing/sang/sung, child/children*). *See also* DEFECTIVE.

•• **regular sentence/clause**: a *sentence or *clause that conforms to the standard rules of grammar; an *unmarked sentence/clause. *See also* FULL (3), and *compare* KERNEL; MINOR SENTENCE/CLAUSE.

reinforcement The strengthening of the meaning of a *word, *phrase, etc.

Reinforcement is used in its everyday sense to describe the way some expressions are used to emphasize meaning. This may be through the use of *conjuncts or by repetition:

> It was expensive; *furthermore/what's more/in addition* I thought it was ugly
> It's *much much* too early to decide

rejected condition The same as hypothetical *condition.

> 1947 E. PARTRIDGE Rejected Condition, as in 'If wishes were horses, beggars would ride'.

relation This is a very general and loosely used term describing a connection (*syntagmatic, *paradigmatic, *semantic, etc.) between units at any *level. (Also called **relationship**.)

Thus we can speak of a **constructional relation** (or a **structural relation**) between *clauses in the same sentence; of a *dependency relation between a *subordinate clause and another clause; of relations of *apposition; of the relationship between different functional elements in a clause, e.g. a subject-*predicate relationship; of *transformational relations between different structures; and so on.

> 1968 J. LYONS The most characteristic feature of modern linguistics—one which it shares with a number of other sciences—is ‘structuralism’ (to use the label which is commonly applied, often pejoratively). Briefly, this means that each language is regarded as a *system of relations* (more precisely, a system of interrelated systems), the elements of which—sounds, words, etc.—have no validity independently of the relations of equivalence and contrast which hold between them.

• **relational**: *see* RELATIONAL.
•• **relation word**: the same as **relational word** (*see* RELATIONAL).

relational (*adj.*) Indicating *relation(s) or relationship(s).

This label is used of both syntactic and semantic connections.

In a general sense, many terms in linguistics express relational notions. Consider, for example, the term *head. For an element to function as head it must be the head *of something*, namely a *phrase, *clause, etc.

More specifically, in syntax, *prepositions and *conjunctions are sometimes classified as **relational words** (also: **relation words**, **relator words**), whose function is to indicate the connection(s) between *constituents.

In the discussion of *texts, the term describes ways in which *sentences and other elements are connected in grammatical, semantic, and pragmatic ways.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. But irrespective of the various purposes and general intentions of a text, there are a few relationships within texts that constantly recur, which involve particular connective devices . . . They can be seen as basic relational structures.

•• **relational adjective**: an *adjective that is derived from a *noun and has little semantic content other than that expressed by the related noun, e.g. *prepositional* (compare *preposition phrase* and *prepositional phrase*), *Parisian* (compare *Paris metro* and *Parisian metro*).
•• **relational noun** (also called **relator noun**): a noun that expresses a kinship relationship (e.g. *father, sister*) or, more generally, any noun that can express a relationship (e.g. *director* (of a company), *manager* (of a club)).
•• **relational verb**: a *verb that indicates a ‘relation’ of some sort, such as ‘existence’ (expressed by a *linking verb; e.g. *Lara is here*) or ‘possession’ (expressed by *have, belong, lack*, etc.; e.g. *Fran has three bicycles*). In *Systemic Grammar, such verbs are contrasted with verbs of material and mental processes.

(*n.*) (The less usual, and probably outdated, term for) a relational word.

> 1969 E. A. NIDA Relationals are any units which function primarily as markers of relationships between other terms e.g. *at, by, because, and, or*.

Relational Grammar A theory of grammar developed as an offshoot of *Generative Grammar (2) from the mid-1970s onwards by David Perlmutter and Paul Postal, in which *clauses are analysed as networks of functional relationships (*subject, *object, etc.) rather than in terms of *constituents.

relationship *See* RELATION.

relative (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) a *pronoun (**relative pronoun**) that introduces a **relative clause** which establishes a link with an *antecedent *head whose reference is *modified.

The **relative pronouns** are *who*, *whom*, *whose*, *which*, and the (invariable) *that*, although the latter is excluded from the class in some grammars (e.g. CaGEL, OMEG).

Relative clauses are of two main kinds (sometimes subsumed under the label *adnominal):

(i) *defining, in which any relative pronoun can be used, or sometimes none at all (also called **restrictive**; *see* CONTACT CLAUSE):

the woman *who/whom/that I love*
the woman *I love*

(ii) *non-defining, where a *wh*-pronoun must normally be used (also called **non-restrictive**):

Algernon, *whom I greatly admire*, has really put himself out

A third type of relative clause (though treated as non-defining in some models) is the **sentential relative clause**, which refers back to the whole or to a part of a previous clause. It is usually introduced by *which*:

The hotel is very expensive. Which is a pity.

Relative determinatives are relative words that function as determiner (1) in *noun phrases, namely *which(ever)*, *what(ever)*, and *whose*, e.g.

I devoured [[$_{\text{NP}}$ *what* food] they provided]
You can eat [[$_{\text{NP}}$ *whatever* snacks] you like]
This is the boy [$_{\text{NP}}$ *whose* bike] was stolen

Note that the first two examples involve a *free relative clause, and that some grammars (e.g. CaGEL, OMEG) exclude *whose* as a determinative, since it takes *genitive *case (1), and is hence a relative pronoun.

When and *where* can be used as **relative adverbs**:

I remember very well the region *where I was born*

•• **continuative relative clause**: a non-defining relative clause that continues a narrative, e.g.

Bob had told Edwin, who passed the news to Henry, who came and told me

●● **free relative clause**: *see* FREE RELATIVE CLAUSE.
●● **relative construction**: in CaGEL this encompasses not only relative clauses, but also what the grammar calls the **fused relative construction** (*see* FREE RELATIVE CLAUSE).

See also FREE RELATIVE CLAUSE.

Compare APPOSITIVE CLAUSE; REDUCED *clause*.

relativity *See* SAPIR–WHORF HYPOTHESIS, THE.

relativized element In CaGEL, in the most typical cases, the relativized element is a **wh*-element in a *relative clause that is linked to an *antecedent *head, e.g. *which* in *The kettle, which is damaged, should not be used.*

relator

1. Syntactically, a *word or *phrase that serves to relate one part of a *sentence to another, e.g. a *conjunction or *preposition. The same as *relational word.

2. Semantically, a word or phrase that contextualizes an *utterance with regard to time and place.

Place and time relators may include words such as *here, downstairs, now* (commonly labelled *adverbs); *noun phrases (e.g. *last night*); *prepositional phrases (e.g. *to the lighthouse, before the flood*); and *adjectives (e.g. *previous, later*).

See also RELATIONAL.

relevance *See* CURRENT RELEVANCE.

Relevance Theory A theory of *pragmatics developed by Dan Sperber and Deirdre Wilson from the 1980s onwards. The theory gives prominence to the **Principle of Relevance**, developed from one of Grice's maxims of conversation.

See also COOPERATIVE PRINCIPLE; IMPLICATURE.

remote condition *See* CONDITION.

replacive (*n. & adj.*)

1. *Morphology*. (A linguistic element) that replaces, or substitutes for, something else.

The term is particularly used in the label **replacive morph** or **replacive morpheme** to explain in morphemic terms the formation of *irregular forms, such as *men* from *man* or *sang*/*sung* from *sing*, which fall outside the regular rules for the formation of *noun *plurals or *past *verb forms by the addition of *inflections.

> 1974 P. H. MATTHEWS *Men*, for example, would be said to consist of the regular allomorph *man* of the morpheme MAN plus a 'replacive morph' ('replace *a* with *e*' or '*a* → *e*') which was assigned as yet another allomorph of plural. The plural morpheme would thus be regarded as a class of morphs with [z] (in *seas*), [s] (in *masts*), zero (in *sheep*) . . . and '*a* → *e*' among its members . . . This was nonsense, of course. A process of replacement is no more a 'morph' than zero is a 'morph'.

2. *Semantics.* (A unit) that introduces a *statement replacing, or reformulating, a previous statement.

●● **replacive conjunct**: this is one among the many semantic categories applied to *conjuncts; examples include *alternatively*, *rather*, *on the other hand*.

reported command *See* REPORTED SPEECH.

reported speech

1. The same as *indirect speech.

When we report speech we can use an introductory reporting *verb (e.g. *say*, *tell*: He *says* that . . . , She *told* us that . . .). This is the usual meaning of the term; it contrasts with *direct speech.

A **reported statement** reports a statement someone made, e.g. *He said that the trains are not running today* reports someone saying *The trains are not running today*; whereas a **reported command** reports a command, e.g. *He told me to leave the job until tomorrow* reports on someone saying *Leave the job until tomorrow*.

2. (More generally.) Any of the ways in which a speaker or writer reports what someone else has said.

In this sense, reported speech includes both *direct speech and *indirect speech.

reported statement *See* REPORTED SPEECH.

reporting verb *See* PRIVATE VERB.

response What is said by way of reply to a *question. For example, in response to

> What did you buy?

we can say:

> I'm not sure
> Mind your own business
> Why do you ask?

None of these is an **answer**, narrowly conceived in some frameworks as a response in a form dictated by the type of question asked. Thus the question above (syntactically an open *interrogative) elicits a *noun phrase referring to a (concrete) entity as answer, e.g. *lasagne, a book on gardening*, etc.

restricted code *See* CODE.

restriction *See* COLLOCATION; CO-OCCURRENCE; SELECTIONAL RESTRICTION; SEMANTIC RESTRICTION.

restrictive The same as *defining. Contrasted with *non-defining, *non-restrictive.

The term is particularly applied to *relative clauses, but has wider applications.

> 1990 S. GREENBAUM & R. QUIRK Modification can be restrictive or non-restrictive. That is, the head can be viewed as a member of a class which can be linguistically identified only through the modification that has been supplied (*restrictive*). Or the head can be viewed as unique or as a member of a class that has been independently identified . . . ; any modification given to such a head is additional information which is not essential for identifying the head, and we call it *nonrestrictive*.

•• **restrictive adjective**: a member of a subcategory of *attributive *adjectives, semantically defined as restricting or limiting the meaning of the following noun (also called **limiter adjective**, **limiting adjective**), e.g.

a *particular* individual
the *specific* issue

r

The term is potentially ambiguous, because most adjectives can be used in both restrictive and non-restrictive modification.

restructuring *See* MULTIPLE ANALYSIS.

result *Semantics*. (Expressing) the outcome of an action, event, etc. The concept of result is very general, so that many language elements can be described as relating to it, and consequently usage of this term is very wide-ranging.

Result is one of the categories used in the semantic description of *subordinators and *subordinate clauses. A subordinator introducing a **result clause** is variously described as a **subordinator of result** or a **resultive/resultative subordinator/conjunction**. Examples are *so, so . . . (that), such . . . (that)*:

It was a very hot day, *so* I went for a swim
It was *so* hot (*that*) I nearly fainted
It was *such* a hot day (*that*) I nearly fainted

Result clauses are often contrasted with clauses expressing *purpose.

A grammatical *object that comes into existence only as a result of the action expressed by a *verb is sometimes called a **result object** (or **object of result**; also **effected object**), e.g.

They built *their own house*

A *conjunct with resultative meaning is called a **resultive conjunct**, e.g. *consequently*, *hence*.

An *infinitive with this meaning can be called an **infinitive of result**, e.g.

He arrived *to find the place on fire*

*Adverbials are sometimes said to have **resultative meaning**, e.g.

I want everyone *here* by ten (= Everyone should be back here by ten)

Some *linking verbs are described as **resulting verbs** or **verbs of resulting meaning**, and their associated subject-related predicative *complements (*president*, *powerful* in the examples below) are variously described as **resulting attributes**, or as showing **resultant/resulting states**, e.g.

He *became* president/powerful

Similarly, object-related predicative complements can express a result, e.g.

We painted the ceiling *pink* (i.e. the ceiling became pink as a result of our painting it)

Contrast the example above with the following example in which the object-related predicative complement expresses **depictive** meaning:

We ate the fish *raw* (i.e. the fish was raw when we ate it)

• **resultant**, **resultative (resultive)**, **resulting**: expressing, indicating, or relating to result.

Compare FACTITIVE.

retrospective Expressive of looking back in time.

*Verbs such as *forget*, *regret*, *remember* are sometimes singled out as **retrospective verbs**, or verbs with **retrospective meaning**, when they are followed by an *-*ing* form:

I'll never forget hearing Sutherland
I remember wondering how she did it
I regret saying that

But in fact 'looking back' is part of the meaning of many verbs when followed by an -*ing* form, in contrast to a 'forward-looking' (and hence often *modal) meaning in other verbs when a **to*-infinitive follows. Contrast *I enjoy meeting people* with *I want to meet them*.

reversed polarity (tag) *See* POLARITY; TAG.

reverse pseudo-cleft *See* CLEFT.

Revised Extended Standard Theory *See* STANDARD THEORY.

rewrite rule (In *Generative Grammar (2).) A *rule that takes the form 'rewrite X as Y', e.g.

> NP → det N (where NP=*noun phrase, det=determinative (1), and N=*noun)

See also PHRASE STRUCTURE RULE.

r-expression *See* REFERRING EXPRESSION.

rhematic *See* RHEME.

rheme The second part of the structure of a *clause, in which information is given about the *theme.

The linguistic use of the terms theme and rheme comes from the *Prague School of linguists. Rheme, however, was previously used in logic.

> 1959 J. FIRBAS Those sentence elements which convey something that is known, or may be inferred, from the verbal or from the situational context . . . are to be regarded as the communicative basis, as the theme of the sentence. On the other hand, those sentence elements which convey the new piece of information are to be regarded as the communicative nucleus, as the rheme of the sentence.

> 1975 M. A. K. HALLIDAY As a message structure . . . a clause consists of a Theme accompanied by a Rheme; and the structure is expressed by the order—whatever is chosen as the Theme is put first.

It should be noted that in the first definition of theme ('something that is known, or may be inferred') the theme can be communicatively rather unimportant, corresponding to what is *given (in a given and *new analysis). The second definition is somewhat different: the theme is important, and is put first to attract the reader's or listener's attention, although even here the rheme is more important. This is more like the *topic and *comment analysis, with the topic being what the sentence is about.

Some grammarians use the term *focus rather than rheme, and so contrast theme and focus (e.g. CGEL). Theme and rheme (and some of these other terms) may coincide with the traditional syntactic binary division into *subject and *predicate, but the former are concerned with *information structure, rather than syntax.

- **rhematic**: of or pertaining to a rheme.

rhetorical

1. Pertaining to the classical study of **rhetoric**, i.e. the art of speaking well, or of persuading others of a point of view.

2. Spoken or written for effect.

When applied to a *conditional clause, rhetorical means 'not to be taken literally'. A **rhetorical conditional clause** may look like an open condition, but is actually strongly assertive, e.g.

If he wins, I'll eat my hat (= he will not win)
She's sixty, if she's a day (= she is at least sixty)

- **rhetorical question**: *see* QUESTION.

right-branching *See* BRANCHING.

right dislocation *See* DISLOCATION.

Role and Reference Grammar (RRG) A theory of functional grammar developed by William Foley and Robert Van Valin in the 1980s that stresses the importance of meaning and language use, and denies the existence of *autonomous syntax.

> 1993 R. VAN VALIN [W]hat distinguishes the RRG conception is the conviction that grammatical structure can only be understood with reference to its semantic and communicative functions. Syntax is not autonomous.

root

1. *Morphology*. A core element which remains when all *affixes have been removed from a complex *word. (Also called **simple base**, and sometimes called *radical.)

In discussions on word structure, terms such as *base, *morpheme (1), root, and *stem are used in different ways, often confusingly. The root of a word is commonly a morpheme which cannot be further analysed, and which underlies related derivatives of the word. Thus *go* is the root of *goes*, *going*, *goer*, etc., and also of *undergo*. (In this definition, root may be contrasted with base: *undergo* is a base for *undergoes*, *undergoing*, etc.)

A root in this sense may be less than a complete word. For example, *-duce* (as in *conduce*, *deduce*, *reduce*) or *jeal-* (as in *jealous*) are roots or **root morphemes**. (But such a form has also been described as a **lexical morpheme**, a **stem morpheme**, a stem, or a base.)

Compare BASE; STEM.

2. (In *historical linguistics.) An element, either a word (a **root word**) or a root in sense 1, that is the ancestor of a more recent word. For example, Latin *magister* is the root of both *master* and *magistrate*; Latin *moneta* is the root of both *money* and *mint*.

3. The topmost *node in a *tree diagram.

root modality Any kind of *modality that is not *epistemic modality.

royal *we* The use of *we* by a king or queen to mean ‘I’.

An example is Queen Victoria’s ‘We are not amused’. The style is now restricted to formal documents.

Compare EDITORIAL WE.

rule A principle regulating or determining the form or *position of *morphemes (1) in a word, *constituents in a *clause or *sentence, etc., or a regular *relation between units of grammar.

It is perhaps worth pointing out that a term such as **grammatical rule** (or **rule of grammar**) is used with two somewhat different meanings, which are often conflated in people’s minds. In an ideal world, a **descriptive rule**, describing objectively how some feature of grammar works, would be the same as a **prescriptive rule** for a language user or for a foreign language learner. In reality, some prescriptive rules are based on misunderstanding, while other such rules, though useful guidelines, are oversimplifications, and are inaccurate if taken to be a complete description.

In *Generative Grammar (2), rules are viewed as predictive, often in a rather abstract or mathematical form, and are meant to be capable of generating an infinite number of grammatical structures.

See also CATEGORY; CO-OCCURRENCE RULES; REWRITE RULE; TRANSFORMATIONAL *rule*.

S

S

1. Subject as an *element in *clause structure.
2. Sentence (in a *tree diagram or *rewrite rule).

Sapir-Whorf hypothesis, the A theory developed by the American anthropologists and linguists Edward Sapir (1884–1939) and Benjamin Lee Whorf (1897–1941), which holds that a people's language conditions the way they view the world (**linguistic determinism**), and that different perceptual distinctions are made by different languages (**linguistic relativity**).

> *ante* 1941 B. L. WHORF Concepts of 'time' and 'matter' are not given in substantially the same form by experience to all men but depend upon the nature of the language or languages through the use of which they have been developed. They do not depend so much upon ANY ONE SYSTEM (e.g. tense, or nouns) within the grammar as upon the ways of analyzing and reporting experience which have become fixed in the language as integrated 'fashions of speaking' and which cut across the typical grammatical classifications, so that such a 'fashion' may include lexical, morphological, syntactic, and otherwise systemically diverse means coordinated in a certain frame of consistency.

Whorf illustrated his theory particularly through Hopi, an Amerindian language, which, for example, has no *tense *system (1). But this does not mean that Hopi speakers cannot talk about time, and the fact that he could explain Hopi concepts in English militates against the theory in its extremer forms. Similarly, it is often said that various *words in one language cannot be translated into another, but even though there may not be a 'one for one' equivalent, a word can always be explained in some other way, for instance by a *phrase. It has also been pointed out that language users are not totally naive: English speakers who talk of the sunrise and sunset are not flat-earthers.

Saussurean (*adj.*) Of, pertaining to, or characteristic of the Swiss linguist Ferdinand de Saussure (1857–1913) or his theories.

(*n.*) An adherent of de Saussure's theories.

De Saussure was influential particularly because of his conception of language as a *system (1) of interrelated parts that mutually affect each other. His notion of *langue contrasted with **parole**, and the distinctions *paradigmatic vs *syntagmatic and *diachronic vs *synchronic, underlie much of modern linguistics. His *Cours de linguistique générale* (1916) is based on lecture notes taken by his students and compiled after his death.

Saxon genitive *See* GENITIVE.

scalar comparison A *comparison (1) made between entities in a *comparative clause where the comparison is on a scale, i.e. *gradable:, e.g. *My sister is taller than my brother.*

See also COMPARATIVE CLAUSE; NON-SCALAR COMPARISON.

Scale-and-Category Grammar An early version of *Systemic Grammar, as developed by M. A. K. Halliday.

Scale-and-Category Grammar is so called because language is analysed as an interrelationship between four categories (units, *classes, *structures, and *systems (2)) and three (or four) scales (*rank, *delicacy, *exponence, and possibly depth).

> 1985 G. D. MORLEY Scale-and-category grammar seeks to account for any stretch of language as it actually occurs, in either written or spoken form . . . By contrast with transformational grammar, however, scale-and-category is designed to analyse structures as they appear rather than to generate them.

See CATEGORY.

scope The range or span over which a particular linguistic item meaningfully extends its grammatical or semantic influence.

Some words affect the meaning of their containing *clause or *sentence. An inverted auxiliary (see INVERSION) or a **wh*-word at the beginning of a clause usually marks the whole clause as *interrogative. Similarly, a *negative word often negates everything that follows it, and may therefore necessitate *non-assertive forms, e.g.

Nobody seemed to know *anything* about *anyone*

*Adverbials vary greatly in their scope. Some apply to the entire sentence that follows:

Frankly, I don't want to talk to him

others only to part of the predication:

I dread having to talk *frankly* to him

others to just one word:

Telling him the truth is going to be *incredibly* difficult

●● **scope of negation**: *see* NEGATION.

secondary (*n. & adj.*) (In some older grammar, mainly Jespersen's.) (Designating the *rank of) a linguistic unit that is at a second level 'down' in a *phrase, *group, etc. Contrasted with *primary (3) and *tertiary.

For example, in the *noun phrase *terribly cold weather*, *cold* is a secondary: it is modified by the tertiary *terribly*, with which in combination it *modifies the *head noun *weather*.

The analysis of *verbs as secondaries in this model is controversial, since verbs are analysed in modern grammar as the most essential element in *clause structure.

> 1933b O. JESPERSEN If we compare the two expressions *this furiously barking dog* and *this dog barks furiously* . . . the verb *bark* is found in two different forms, *barking* and *barks*; but in both forms it must be said to be subordinated to *dog* and superior in rank to *furiously*; thus both *barking* and *barks* are here secondaries.

●● **secondary iconicity**: *see* ICONICITY.
●● **secondary onomatopoeia**: *see* ONOMATOPOEIA.
●● **secondary predicate**: *see* SECONDARY PREDICATE.
●● **secondary tense**: *see* PRIMARY (3).
●● **secondary verb form**: *see* PRIMARY (1).

secondary predicate A *phrase which is predicated of a *constituent (typically a *subject or *direct object) that is assigned a *semantic role by the *main verb, e.g.

> He left the company *angry with his boss* (subject-related secondary predicate)
> He likes eating his eggs *raw* (object-related secondary predicate)

See also SMALL CLAUSE; VERBLESS CLAUSE.

secondary tense *See* PRIMARY (3).

secondary verb form *See* PRIMARY (1).

second conditional *See* CONDITIONAL.

second person (Denoting, or used in conjunction with a *word indicating) the *person addressed (*singular or *plural), in contrast to the speaker or writer and any other person.

The second person *pronoun in modern standard English, for *singular and *plural, *subject and *object, is *you*. The related *reflexives are *yourself*, *yourselves*, and the *possessives are *your* and *yours*.

The lack of a singular/plural distinction for the second person (except in the reflexive form) is a noteworthy feature of *Standard English; in many non-*standard forms of English this has been remedied by the creation of forms such as *yous(e)* (L19), *yez* or *yiz* (E19), *you-all* (E19), *y'all* (E20).

segregatory coordination Coordination in which the two *conjoins could be separated and still make sense. Contrasted with *combinatory coordination.

Henry and Margaret had dinner is an example of segregatory coordination, since we can reasonably say *Henry had dinner* and *Margaret had dinner*.

selectional restriction A limitation on the company particular *lexical items can keep with other lexical items.

As propounded in early *Generative Grammar (2), selectional restrictions (also called **selectional rules/features**) were said to relate to the *context in which a *word could appear. Such selectional restrictions were contrasted with what were called *subcategorization *features. However, the latter were strictly syntactic, and would stipulate, for example, that the *transitive verb *discover* *licenses a *noun phrase functioning as *object (1) (hence the deviance of **John discovered*), whereas selectional restrictions were partly based on semantic criteria, e. g. the fact that the verb *find* normally requires an *animate *subject.

Chomsky's famous sentence *Colorless green ideas sleep furiously*, presented as an example of 'failure to observe a selectional rule', is clearly *deviant in a different way from both **John discovered* and from 'clearcut cases of violation of purely syntactic rules, for example *sincerity frighten may boy the*'.

In later literature, selectional restrictions are sometimes called *semantic restrictions. They are also sometimes equated with *co-occurrence restrictions, though the latter tend to be more narrowly based on syntax. Since many restrictions are partly syntactic and partly semantic, there is considerable overlap and looseness in the use of the different terms for describing restrictions.

self-embedding *See* EMBEDDING.

semantic Relating to *meaning.

> 1988 W. A. LADUSAW The principal descriptive goal of semantic theory is an account of the semantic structure of a language, the properties and relations which hold of the expressions of a language in virtue of what they mean. On analogy with syntactic theory, it is an account of part of the native speaker's

> linguistic competence, namely, that knowledge underlying 'semantic competence'. As such, it presumes an account of the syntax of a language and predicts judgements of semantic relations between its expressions based upon proposals about what they mean. Chief among the relations to be accounted for are paraphrase (or semantic equivalence) and semantic consequence (or entailment).

Terms such as **semantic interpretation** and **semantic representation** belong to various theories of *Generative Grammar (1), (2). In early versions the **semantic component** had a technical status along with the syntactic and phonological components.

Lexical meaning, i.e. the kind of meaning conveyed by *lexical items, is sometimes contrasted with **grammatical meaning**, i.e. the kind of meaning conveyed by particular *grammatical words or *structures.

●● **semantic change**: *see* SEMANTIC SHIFT.

●● **semantic feature**: one of a set of meaning components (*features (2)) into which a word can be analysed. The term is part of the vocabulary of *componential analysis, where [-male] and [-adult] could be semantic features of the word *girl*. Note that semantic features are inherent in the word, in contrast to semantic restrictions (see below), which require a semantic feature to be present in another word.

●● **semantic field**: *see* FIELD.

●● **semantic restriction**: a limitation on which lexical items can combine with a particular word, based on the latter's meaning. Semantic restrictions (also called *selectional features/restrictions/rules) are part of the framework of *Generative Grammar (2). But the concept is of general relevance. For example, **The student congregated* is *deviant because an inherent feature of the *verb *congregate* requires a *noun denoting a collection of people as *subject. Note that this requirement is different from a strictly grammatical *rule, such as the *concord rule, which requires both subject and verb to be *plural, e.g. *They are/*is congregating*. Other verbs may restrict the kind of subject or *object they allow in different ways, perhaps to [+human] or [+animate] (e.g. **The cupboard laughed*), and some *adjectives can only be paired with a *concrete noun (cf. **an oblong suggestion*). Semantic restrictions may of course be broken in poetry or other imaginative literature, where special effects are partly due to violations of rules, as in Dylan Thomas's *a grief ago*.

●● **semantic role**: *see* SEMANTIC ROLE.

●● **semantic shift**: *see* SEMANTIC SHIFT.

●● **semantic structure**: *see* STRUCTURE.

●● **semantic subject**: *see* NOTIONAL.

Compare COLLOCATIONAL RESTRICTION.

Semantic Approach to English Grammar, A As its title suggests, this grammar, written by the British linguist R. M. W. Dixon in 2005, takes semantics as the starting point in the study of English grammar.

semantic role The particular role played by an *argument of a *predicate (2). Sometimes called *case (1), *participant role, or, in *Generative Grammar (2), **thematic role** or **theta (Θ)-role**.

Different frameworks use different sets of roles, but most will include a subset of the following: *agent, *beneficiary, *causer, *dative (2), *experiencer, *factitive (2), *goal (2), *instrumental, *locative, *objective (1), *path, *patient, *recipient, *source, *stimulus, *theme.

See also CASE GRAMMAR.

semantics The study of *meaning in language.

The term is a borrowing of the French term *la sémantique* (M. Bréal 1883). An older word (now disused) with much the same meaning was **semasiology**.

> 1912 E. WEEKLEY The convenient name semantics has been applied of late to the science of meanings, as distinguished from phonetics, the science of sound.

> 1964 E. A. NIDA While semantics deals with the relationship of symbols to referents, syntactics is concerned with the relationship of symbol to symbol.

Traditionally there is a division between syntax and *word meaning, which is shown by the separation of information about language into grammar books and dictionaries. Semantics goes beyond 'word meaning' in viewing words as part of a structured *system (1) of interrelationships in *clauses and *texts.

Later versions of *Generative Grammar (2) gave rise to *Generative Semantics and *interpretive semantics. Another theory is *logical semantics, including *truth-conditional semantics and *model-theoretic semantics.

Compare PRAGMATICS.

See also FIELD; MEANING.

semantic shift A change in the *meaning of a word taking place over time. (Also called **semantic change**.)

There is a general tendency for *words to develop new meanings and to relinquish other meanings over time. This type of change does not occur in isolation, but in relation to other words whose meanings are also changing. *Meat* once meant 'food in general', while *flesh* had a wider coverage than at present, taking in both living flesh and dead flesh as food. Individually considered, each of these words has contracted its field of *reference, and when we consider them as a set it becomes clear that a certain reclassification has taken place. *Collide*, once used mainly of pairs of trains and ships in motion, has expanded its scope as a result of technological change. With this semantic shift the *verb has acquired a more general meaning, and can be used for almost any objects whose paths might cross (e.g. pedestrians, motor vehicles, aircraft, sub-atomic particles, etc.), and also for the meeting of a moving object with a static one (e.g. a car colliding with a tree).

semantic subject *See* NOTIONAL.

semasiology *See* SEMANTICS.

sememe

1. The unit of *meaning carried by a *morpheme (1).

For example, the *suffix *-ess* in *duchess*, *hostess*, *lioness* expresses the meaning 'female, feminine'.

2. A minimal unit of meaning.

An example is the grammatical meaning 'past' or 'plural', which can be realized in different ways.

> 1974 P. H. MATTHEWS In Bloomfield's formulation [d]/[t] would be one 'morpheme' (one phonetic form being a 'phonetic modification' of the other), and [n]/[ən] would be a different 'morpheme'; they are related only in that both could be associated with the same 'sememe' or unit of meaning. But the notion of 'sememe' is decidedly problematic (particularly for a concept such as that of the 'Past Participle').

The term was coined by the Swedish linguist A. Noreen (1904).

semi- *See* QUASI-.

semi-auxiliary (verb) (In CGEL.) A string of *words consisting of two or three parts beginning with *be* or *have*, such as *be able to*, *be about to*, *be apt to*, *be due to*, *be going to*, *be likely to*, *be supposed to*, *have to*, etc., often listed as such in dictionaries.

A number of these combinations, which share characteristics with *auxiliaries, cause disagreements of analysis among grammarians. Thus in alternative accounts *likely* in *be likely to* is regarded as a *modal adjective which *licenses a **to*-infinitive *clause as *complement, *have* in *have to* is regarded as a *modal lexical verb, and *be going (to)* is analysed as an *idiomatic combination.

This category seems very similar to, but not quite the same as, *phrasal auxiliary verb.

See also AUXILIARY; MARGINAL MODAL; MODAL; MODAL LEXICAL VERB; MODAL VERB.

semicolon *See* PUNCTUATION.

semi-modal The same as *marginal modal.

See also SEMI-AUXILIARY.

semi-negative (*n. & adj.*) (A word) that is *negative in import, and grammatically often has the same effect as a negative word. Also called **near negative** and **approximate negator**.

A number of semi-negative *adverbs, e.g. *barely*, *hardly*, *little*, *scarcely*, and the *determinatives (1) *little* and *few* syntactically behave like negative words. For example, they can take positive *tags:

It's *barely/scarcely* possible, *is it?*
Few people know this, *do they?*

Similarly, *fronted semi-negative adverbs, as in the first two examples below, require subject-auxiliary *inversion in the same way that 'true' negatives do, as in the last two examples:

Hardly had they arrived when the lights went out
Only then [i.e. 'not before'] did we realize our mistake

Nowhere have I seen such incompetence
Never did I expect to see this day arrive

Compare BROAD NEGATIVE.

semiology The study of linguistic *signs and symbols.

The same as *semiotics. The term was coined (as French *sémiologie*) by Ferdinand de Saussure (1916).

semiotic (*adj.*) Relating to the use of *signs as a form of communication.

(*n.*) The same as *semiotics, which is now the usual term.

> 1973 R. JAKOBSON The subject matter of semiotic is the communication of any messages whatever, whereas the field of linguistics is confined to the communication of verbal messages.

semiotics The study of *signs in language.

Semiotics is sometimes restricted to non-linguistic communication, including possibly body language and the kinds of visual signs and symbols that 'translate' into *words, e.g. traffic signs and signals, company logos, and such old established signs as a barber's pole or the three balls of a pawnbroker's sign. However, semiotics may also include language: see the quotation at *semiotic.

S

semi-passive (In CGEL.) A *passive construction which has both *verbal and *adjectival properties.

Semi-passives are like true passives in having *active counterparts, e.g.

I *was impressed* by his fluency (*compare* His fluency impressed me)

However, the *past participles are like adjectives in a number of ways. For example, they can be *coordinated with *central (2) adjectives:

The whole family were *upset* and *angry*

Also, the 'participle' can be modified by *adverbs such as *more, most, quite*, etc.:

They were *quite worried* about Tom's disappearance

And finally the verb *be* can be replaced by *copular verbs such as *look, seem*, etc.:

Sarah didn't seem *interested* in his explanation

Compare CENTRAL *passive*; PSEUDO-PASSIVE; *stata*/PASSIVE.

sense *Semantics*. Meaning.

This term is used in a wide variety of ways, just like *meaning and *reference. In semantic theory it is used to describe *lexical meaning, which is derived partly from the meaning of other *words (**sense relations**), in contrast to the relationship of a word to the outside world, which is reference. In an example of Husserl's the phrases *the victor at Jena* and *the loser at Waterloo* have a different sense, but the same reference (namely Napoleon). See the citation by Lyons in the entry for reference.

Compare DENOTATION.

senser A *semantic role label applied to a *phrase that refers to the *experiencer of an action, mental process, etc. denoted by a *verb, typically a *perception verb or *psychological verb, e.g.

I don't like your attitude (*I* = senser; *your attitude* = the phenomenon being 'sensed')

It upsets me that you won't even try (*It* + *that you won't even try* = phenomenon; *me* = senser)

This is not a very generally used term, and experiencer is probably more common.

sentence The largest unit of analysis in *grammar (1). Sentences usually have a *subject and *predicate, and (when they are written) begin with a capital letter and end with a full stop.

Traditional definitions of the sentence are often formulated in *notional terms, e.g. 'a set of words expressing a complete thought', but this is too vague to be useful. However, attempts at rigorous structural definitions (as above) are not entirely satisfactory either.

One reason is that not all sentences have a subject and predicate. For example, *imperatives usually lack an expressed subject. At the same time more than one 'grammatically complete sentence' can be run together in writing with only one full stop, so that grammatical and orthographic sentences may not correspond (e.g. *I came, I saw, I conquered*). As for spoken language, it is often impossible to say where one sentence ends and another begins.

Another problem affects the definition of the sentence as 'the largest unit of analysis in grammar', since *pro-forms, *conjuncts, and *cohesive devices such as *reference and *substitution often operate over stretches of discourse larger than the sentence.

We also have to recognize the theoretical possibility of a sentence containing an infinite number of *clauses (*see* RECURSION). For this reason modern grammarians often prefer to analyse syntactic structure in terms of clauses. Sentences are categorized in modern grammar, as in traditional grammar, into *simple (2), *compound, and *complex on the basis of the number and type of clauses they contain.

Compare ABBREVIATED; CLAUSE; FULL (3); FUNCTION.

●● **sentence adjunct**: *see* SENTENCE ADJUNCT.
●● **sentence adverb**: *see* SENTENCE ADVERB.
●● **sentence adverbial**: *see* SENTENCE ADVERBIAL.

sentence adjunct An *adjunct (1) that has *scope over ('applies to' or 'relates to') a complete *sentence or *clause, rather than only a part of it, often expressing a *modal meaning. Also called **sentence modifier** and **S-adjunct**. Sentence adjuncts are typically *adverbs, and usually occur in *initial position, but can be placed elsewhere in the containing sentence:

S

Perhaps we need to get an engineer to come out
We will *in any case* contact you when you return
Probably you will be able to visit the US later this year
Surely that is obvious from what I have said so far

See also PREDICATION ADJUNCT; SENTENCE ADVERBIAL (1).

sentence adverb An *adverb that functions as a *sentence adjunct or *sentence adverbial (1).

> 1932 C. T. ONIONS *Else, only* (= 'but'), *so, accordingly, hence, also, too, likewise, moreover*, though some of them frequently come at the beginning of a sentence, are not Conjunctions at all, but Adverbs. They qualify the sentence as a whole rather than any particular part of it, and may therefore be called Sentence Adverbs. Other Adverbs which may be used thus are *truly, certainly*,

assuredly, verily, undoubtedly: e.g. 'This is certainly false' (= 'It is certain that this is false').

sentence adverbial

1. An *adverbial (1) that relates to an entire *sentence or *clause.

Compare PREDICATION ADJUNCT.

See also SENTENCE ADJUNCT; SENTENCE ADVERB.

2. Another term for *disjunct only.

Sentence and its Parts, The: A Grammar of Contemporary English A *grammar (2) written by the American linguist R. B. Long in 1961 in which *grammar* is understood 'in the broad sense of the term, including word formation, phonology, spelling, and punctuation. The central interest is grammar in the narrow sense: syntax, of which inflection is here regarded as a division.'

sentence element *See* ELEMENT.

sentence structure *See* STRUCTURE.

sentence type *See* CLAUSE TYPE.

sentential Being or pertaining to a *sentence.
●● **sentential relative clause**: *see* RELATIVE.

separability The possibility of dividing a linguistic unit (*word, *phrase, etc.) by inserting an intervening element.

This is often said to be a feature of *phrasal verbs (1) in some analyses:

We *looked up* *our friends*
We *looked* *our friends* *up*

Compare DISCONTINUITY.

sequence of tense rule *See* BACKSHIFT.

sequent Of (the *tense of) a *verb (combination) that is used after a reporting verb in the *past tense.

Some of the tense distinctions normally available are *neutralized after a verb such as *said* or *thought*, with the result that the following (or sequent) verb has fewer options. For example, a sequent *past perfect may represent a *present perfect, a past perfect, or a *simple past in the 'original' utterance:

The neighbours said he had left
(i.e. the neighbours originally said *'He has left',* or *'He had left (before we got here)',* or *'He left (ten minutes ago)'*)
See also BACKSHIFT.

serial comma *See* PUNCTUATION.

set expression *See* FIXED.

SEU *See* SURVEY OF ENGLISH USAGE, THE.

sex-neutral *See* EPICENE.

***-s* form** The third *person *singular form of *lexical verbs in the *present tense, e.g.

looks, sees, wishes

On nouns, the *-s* ending indicates *plurality.

***shall/will* future** *See* SIMPLE (3).

shape The *realization of a particular *lexical item in writing or speech. Contrasted with *inflectional form.

> 2005 R. HUDDLESTON & G. K. PULLUM By shape we mean spelling or pronunciation: spelling if we're talking about written English, pronunciation if we're talking about spoken English. The preterite and past participle are different inflectional forms but they have the same shape *walked*. Similarly for the plain present and plain form, which share the shape *walk.*

shift (*n.*)

1. A change of *meaning. *See* SEMANTIC SHIFT.
2. A change from one grammatical *category to another.

> 1962 B. M. H. STRANG A form may have inherent rank as morpheme, word, phrase or clause, but may in special circumstances be shifted to any other rank.

See also BACKSHIFT; CONVERSION; RANKSHIFT.
(*v.*) Change phonetically, semantically, or grammatically.

short form The same as *contraction (2); a contracted form.

Short Introduction to English Grammar, A Intended as a college textbook, this grammar was written by the American linguist James Sledd in 1959. It is divided into three parts, namely the grammar itself, a glossary, and an exposition on style.

short passive *See* PASSIVE.

***should*-mandative** *See* SUBJUNCTIVE.

sign *Semantics, Semiotics*. That which conventionally stands for, or signifies, some other thing, of which linguistic units such as *words are examples, but not the only examples.

The word *sign* and related terms are used in specialized ways in linguistic discussions:

> 1977 J. LYONS The meaning of linguistic expressions is commonly described in terms of the notion of signification; that is to say, words and other expressions are held to be signs which, in some sense, signify, or stand for, other things. What these other things are . . . has long been a matter of controversy. It is convenient to have a neutral technical term for whatever it is that a sign stands for: and we will use the Latin term significatum, as a number of authors have done, for this purpose.

De Saussure (1916) observed that the notion of sign generally designates only the acoustic impression, but proposed to keep the word for the combination of this and the associated concept, replacing 'concept' with *signifié* and acoustic impression with *signifiant*. Other words for *signifié* are *significatum* and *signified*; and for *signifiant* we have *significans* and *signifier*.

The study of signs is called *semiotics.

simple

1. Of a word: not *compound or *complex.

Steam may be described as a simple *word in contrast to *steamboat* (a compound) or *steaminess* (a complex word).

●● **simple fused head**: *see* FUSION.

●● **simple preposition**: a single-word *preposition (e.g. *from*, *before*), in contrast to a *complex preposition (e.g. *out of*, *in front of*).

2. Of a *sentence: consisting of a single *clause (typically independent and *finite) containing a single *verb (phrase), e.g.

> Britain's role in Europe is important

Simple sentences contrast with *compound and *complex sentences.

However, in some analyses, a sentence containing another clause may still be simple, provided that the sentence does not have a clause functioning as *subject, *direct object, *complement, or *adverbial. By this definition a sentence containing a *postmodifying *relative clause is still a simple sentence, e.g.

This presents [$_{\text{NP}}$ a choice [$_{\text{Rel.Cl.}}$ which affects every aspect of your life and future]]

The relative clause is part of a *noun phrase (which functions as direct object), so this sentence has a simple subject–verb–direct object structure.

3. Of a *tense: implemented (i.e. formed) by a verb used on its own (in sentences that are not negated).

English has two simple tenses: the *past simple (also called **simple past** or **simple preterite**, e.g. *ran*) and the *present simple (also called simple present, e.g. *run*, *runs*). *See* PAST (2); PRESENT (2).

In traditional grammar, the *shall/will* *future (e.g. *I will cook some dinner now*) is sometimes called the **simple future (tense)**, but in modern grammar this construction is not usually analysed as a tense. *See* FUTURE (2).

See also TENSE; PRIMARY *tense*.

4. Of a *verb phrase (1): consisting of a single verb form without ellipsis, e.g.:

‘*Look*!’ he *said*. ‘She *blushed*.’

simple fused head *See* FUSION.

simple future (tense) *See* FUTURE (2); SIMPLE (3).

simple past (tense) *See* PAST (2); SIMPLE (3).

simple present (tense) *See* PRESENT (2); SIMPLE (3).

singular (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) a *word or form that denotes, or refers to, a single entity (person, thing, etc.).

Singular contrasts mainly with *plural in the description of *nouns, *pronouns, and *verb forms, e.g.

The girl is/looks confident (singular)

versus

The girls are/look confident (plural)

*Uncount nouns are sometimes described as singular because they take singular *verbs. But this is misleading, since singular count nouns and uncount nouns do not share the same set of *determinatives (1) (e.g. *a/one roll* but *some/much bread*).

Invariable nouns of plural meaning which lack an *-s* ending but take a plural verb (e.g. *police*) are sometimes described as singular nouns. *See* COLLECTIVE NOUN.

Compare NON-SINGULAR; PLURALE TANTUM; SINGULARE TANTUM.

singulare tantum (Pronounced /sɪŋg(j)ʊˈlɑːreɪ ˈtæntəm/. Plural **singularia tantum**.) A word which has only a *singular form.

A little used term which is sometimes applied to *mass nouns (or *uncount nouns).

Compare PLURALE TANTUM.

situation

1. The extra-linguistic *context of language.

2. *Semantics.* A cover term for actions, events, states, processes, etc.

> 1976 B. COMRIE In discussing aspect, it is often necessary to refer to the differences between states, events, processes, etc. . . . However, while ordinary nontechnical language provides, with a limited amount of systematisation, a metalanguage for these various subdivisions, it does not provide any general term to subsume them all. In the present work the term ‘situation’ is used as this general cover-term, i.e. a situation may be either a state, or an event, or a process.

See also CONTEXT *of situation*.

situational Relating to, or determined by, the *situation.

●● **situational context**: *see* EXTRALINGUISTIC.
●● **situational meaning**: *see* INTERPERSONAL.
●● **situational recoverability**: *see* RECOVERABILITY.

slang *Words, *phrases, and uses that are regarded as very *informal, and are often restricted to special *contexts, or are peculiar to a specified profession, class, etc. (e.g. **racing slang**, **schoolboy slang**).

slot A position within a *structure that can be filled by a *filler (1).

> 1973 R. QUIRK & S. GREENBAUM Existential *there* . . . may be regarded as an empty ‘slot-filler’.

See also SLOT-AND-FILLER.

slot-and-filler Designating a method of analysing *sentence or *clause structure in which various functional *slots are first identified, and the *words and *phrases that can fill them (*fillers) are then further analysed. For example, in the following sentence there are three slots:

I resist everything except temptation

These are: *subject (*I*), *predicator (*resist*), and *direct object (*everything except temptation*).

The system underlies present-day analysis into clause *elements. It also links up to some extent with the *distributional (rather than *notional) methods used in defining the *word classes. Thus the subject slot can be filled by a wide variety of *noun phrases (e.g. *you*, *the neighbours*, etc.), but all would contain a noun or *pronoun as head. Similarly, anything that can fill the second slot must be a *verb. However, the third slot could be filled by a clause: *I resist buying too many chocolates*.

Compare IMMEDIATE CONSTITUENT.

small clause (In *Government-Binding Theory.) A structure which resembles a *clause because it contains a *subject + *predicate (1), but which does not contain any *verbs. For example:

We think [*the scheme* *preposterous*]
I considered [*the proposal* *a brilliant idea*]

In many grammars such structures are not analysed as clauses. Instead, the *noun phrases *the scheme* and *the proposal* in the examples above function as *direct object, and the *adjective phrase *preposterous* and the noun phrase *a brilliant idea* function as object-related predicative *complement.

In some cases the small clause lacks a subject:

We stumbled out of the tunnel, [*Ø completely disoriented*]

Here the non-overt subject of the bracketed clause (indicated by 'Ø') is interpreted as *co-referential with the subject of the higher clause (*we*).

See also ADJECTIVE CLAUSE; COMPLEMENT.

social dialect *See* DIALECT.

social distancing The explanation given for a use of the *past tense which is attributable neither to the event being in the past nor to hypothetical meaning.

Past tenses are sometimes used where a *present tense could just as well be used, e.g.

Did you want to see me?
I *was* wondering whether you could spare me a minute?
We *were* hoping you would help
I *wouldn't* have thought so

Sometimes politeness is the motivation: it may be easier for the addressee to say 'no' to a request with a past tense verb than to a blunter request (e.g. *We are hoping you will help*); but at other times the 'distancing' may sound over-formal or cold.

social meaning The same as *interpersonal meaning.

sociolinguistics The study of language in a social setting.

Sociolinguistics is concerned with the interrelationship between language and region, language and national identity, language and peer group pressure, language and the age, sex, and social class of the user, and so on.

• **sociolinguist**, **sociolinguistic**.

> 1978 W. LABOV The sociolinguistic behaviour of women is quite different from that of men because they respond to the commonly held normative values in a different way.

solecism A mistake of grammar or *idiom; a blunder in the manner of speaking or writing.

This is a general term. Grammarians are more likely to speak of error, incorrect usage, *hypercorrection, etc.

• **solecistic**.

sound symbolism A (fancied) representative relationship between the sounds making up a *word and its *meaning.

Various kinds of sound and meaning correlations are said to exist; specialized terms include *iconicity and *onomatopoeia.

Usage is inconsistent. Sound symbolism can be used as a cover term for all such phenomena, but in the literature the term often seems to exclude obvious onomatopoeia such as *cuckoo* and *cock-a-doodle-doo*.

source

1. A *semantic role (or *case (3)) assigned to an *argument of a *verb, which denotes the place, location, etc. from which somebody or something originates. Often contrasted with *goal. Example:

He comes from London

> 1975 D. C. BENNETT Three directional cases are posited: ‘source’, ‘path’ and ‘goal’ . . . A sentence such as *We went from Waterloo Bridge along the Embankment to Westminster* is considered to contain three directional expressions in its semantic representation: a source expression, a path expression and a goal expression. The source expression, realized in surface structure as *from Waterloo Bridge*, specifies the starting-point of the change of position described by the sentence.

See also PATH.

2. A general label used in classifying the meaning of *adverbials and *prepositions of *space.

3. In a model of communication, the source is the sender of a ‘message’. The person who receives (or is meant to receive) the message is the **destination**.

space The three-dimensional expanse in which physical objects exist; place; used in describing the meaning of *adverb phrases, *prepositional phrases, etc., and including both position and direction, e.g. *abroad, beneath, downstairs, in the bathroom, outside.*

• **spatial**.

Compare TEMPORAL; TIME.

speaker-oriented A term used in the description of *deontic and *epistemic *modal verbs to indicate that the 'source' of the modal meaning (typically 'obligation', 'permission', etc.) is the speaker, as opposed to the *referent of the *subject of the verb.

Thus if I say *You must submit this document by Wednesday* the source of the obligation is me, as the speaker. By contrast, if I say *Lars can speak six languages* it is the referent of the subject of the sentence (Lars) who has the ability to speak six languages. In this last example the modal verb expresses *dynamic (2) modality.

Compare SUBJECT-ORIENTED.

See also MODALITY.

special fused head *See* FUSION.

specific Referring to a particular individual, entity, etc. and no other.

In discussions of meaning, the notion is used especially in relation to *article usage. A distinction is made between *classifying (or *generic) meaning and specific meaning, which cuts across that between *definite and *indefinite meaning. Thus specific meaning may be either definite or indefinite, e.g.

I met *an interesting man* on holiday (specific indefinite)

This man told me that he's a war veteran (specific definite)

In another model, the notion *specific* is contrasted with *general*, but the distinction that is being made is very different. All *determinatives (1) are either specific or general: thus *the* in all its uses, *demonstratives (*this, those*, etc.), and *possessives (*my*, *your*, etc.) are specific, whereas *a*/*an* (whatever the meaning) is general. Thus specific includes definite, and general equates roughly with indefinite.

Note that, since the word *specific* is in everyday use—and indeed is sometimes glossed in dictionaries as 'definite'—it is often used loosely, and the necessary distinction is frequently ignored or confused in popular grammar books.

•• **specific determiner**: *see* INDEFINITE.

specified preposition *See* PREPOSITION.

specifier (Spec) A label used in *X-bar syntax for functional elements inside *phrases that express certain types of ‘specifying’ meaning, e.g. *definiteness, *possession, proximity/remoteness, *intensification, etc.

For example, *the* in *the cinema* functions as specifier, as does *very* in *very bright*, and *right* in *right up my street*. Note that in other frameworks *noun phrase specifiers are called *determiners (1) or *determinatives (2), and specifiers in other types of phrases are simply analysed as *modifiers.

specifying *be* The verb *be* when it is used in a *clause whose subject-related predicative *complement identifies someone or something, e.g.

> The man on the bus is my neighbour

Also called **identifying *be***.

See also ASCRIPTIVE *BE*; IDENTIFY.

speech *See* DIRECT SPEECH; INDIRECT SPEECH; REPORTED SPEECH.

speech act A social or *interpersonal act that takes place when an utterance is made.

The **theory of speech acts** (also known as **Speech Act Theory**) was popularized by J. R. Searle in his book *Speech Acts* (1969), in which he expounded and expanded the theories of the philosopher J. L. Austin. The theory propounds various important distinctions: one between *performative utterances, which are used to perform some kind of action (e.g. *I name this ship the Star of the Seas*), and **constative utterances**, which contain *propositions that are either true or false; and further distinctions between *locutions, *illocutions, and *perlocutions, and the associated *locutionary, *illocutionary, and *perlocutionary acts.

●● **indirect speech act**: a speech act in which there is a mismatch between a particular linguistic form (e.g. *declarative clause, *interrogative clause) and the typical use that is made of that form. For example, when I say *Can you close the door?* I'm not asking you a *question, but making a request.

See also CLAUSE TYPES.

speech community *Sociolinguistics*. Any social or geographical group sharing roughly the same language.

split infinitive A **to*-infinitive with one or more words separating *to* from the actual infinitive, regarded as incorrect usage. The stock example is from the television series *Star Trek*:

> Space, the final frontier. These are the voyages of the starship *Enterprise*. Its continuing mission: to explore strange new worlds, to seek out new life and new civilizations, *to boldly go* where no man has gone before.

The *prescriptive grammarians' objection to the split infinitive is based on the fact that in Latin the infinitive is a single indivisible *word.

On most occasions, and to most people, the split infinitive is perfectly acceptable. However, avoidance may at times be wise, since a split infinitive can be stylistically awkward, and may distract a *prescriptively minded reader from the message that a writer is trying to convey. But avoidance also has its pitfalls, since the word(s) that 'split' the infinitive, when moved, may become associated with another part of the sentence, causing its meaning to change. Avoidance can thus also result in stylistic awkwardness.

A split infinitive may be the best option in the following example:

> According to the oil company it is essential to drill on National Trust land *to fully exploit* a new deeper oilfield which has been found at the farm

Substituting *fully to exploit* may associate *fully* with *to drill on National Trust land*, while substituting *to exploit fully* separates the *verb from its *direct object. In the next example *really to unite* would be of dubious acceptability, whereas **to unite really the country* and**to unite the country really* are ungrammatical:

> He has promised to be the first president *to really unite* the country

splitting *See* WORD CLASS.

S-Structure *See* SURFACE STRUCTURE.

stacked modification *See* MODIFICATION.

standard (*n. & adj.*) (Of, pertaining to, or designating) the most prestigious *variety of a language (or, occasionally, its pronunciation).

See also STANDARD ENGLISH.

Standard English The *variety of English employed by educated speakers, e.g. those in the professions, the media, academia, etc.; the English described in dictionaries, *grammars (2), and usage guides.

The label Standard English:

(i) primarily refers to a system of grammar and *lexis, and thus to a variety which can be spoken in a range of different accents—Northern, Scottish, American, etc.;
(ii) can be applied to written and spoken English;
(iii) refers to an English norm used (with relatively minor regional variations) worldwide.

Standard English enjoys greater prestige than non-standard varieties, and dialects. Although non-standard varieties are popularly often felt to be the province of the less educated, linguists insist that Standard English owes its position to political and social causes, and that other varieties are not linguistically substandard.

> 2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G.K. PULLUM et al. Perhaps the most subtle concept we have to rely on is the one that picks out the particular variety of Present-day English we describe, which we call Standard English. Briefly . . . , we are describing the kind of English that is widely accepted in the countries of the world where English is the language of government, education, broadcasting, news publishing, entertainment, and other public discourse.

In addition to the basic 'common core' standard, many national standards are recognized, including American English (AmE) and British English (BrE), which have few grammatical differences, but do have an appreciable degree of lexical divergence.

standard of comparison *See* COMPARISON.

Standard Theory The model of *Generative Grammar (2) presented by Noam Chomsky in his book *Aspects of the Theory of Syntax* (1965). (Also called **Aspects Theory**, the **Aspects Model**, or the **Standard Model**.)

This model introduced the concepts of *deep structure and *surface structure, and also posited differences between a speaker's *competence and *performance. It has since been developed and radically changed by Chomsky and his associates. Later models include the **Extended Standard Theory**, **Revised Extended Standard Theory**, *Government-Binding Theory, and *Principles and Parameters Theory. The most recent model is the *Minimalist Program. *Generative Semantics is a radically different offshoot.

statal passive *See* PASSIVE.

state (Expressing) a relatively permanent or unalterable *situation. Contrasted with *action, event, happening, etc.

This term is applied to *verbs or verb combinations. For example, all the following describe states:

They *have lived* here for twenty years (*see* PERFECT)
They *own* their own house
It *has* four bedrooms
The garden *is* huge
They really *like* it

By contrast, the following examples describe actions or events (whether single or repeated):

We *have* just *bought* a flat
They *have moved* ten times in fifteen years
They *are buying* a house

•• **state verb**: (a popular term for) *stative verb (a verb describing a state, such as *be* or *like* in the examples above).

The distinction between state verbs and *action verbs expresses broadly the same contrast as the opposition *stative vs *dynamic (1). Theoretically, therefore, state verbs are not used in the *progressive. In practice, however, some state/stative verbs are used with dynamic meaning (*We're having a party*; *You're being difficult*). Notice also that some state verbs may denote a brief temporary state (*I think I'll go to bed*), but this is in contrast to a temporary action (*I'm thinking about it*).

statement

1. (In non-specialized usage.) A *sentence or *utterance that states or declares.

2. (In modern grammatical analyses that distinguish *structure and *usage.) A usage label indicating the *function (2) of a *clause as stating or declaring something. Contrasted with the syntactic label *declarative.

> 1984 R. HUDDLESTON Precisely because they are semantic categories, the criteria that distinguish statement, question and directive from each other are of a quite different nature from those that distinguish the syntactic clause type categories. In performing the illocutionary act of stating, I express some proposition and commit myself to its truth: I tell my addressee(s) that such and such is the case. Statements, in the 'product' sense, are assessable as true or false; questions and directives are not.

Compare DIRECTIVE; EXCLAMATIVE; QUESTION.

static The same as *stative.

stative Expressing a *state or condition. Contrasted with *dynamic (1).

The term is mainly used, like dynamic, in the classification of *verbs, but can also be applied to other *word classes.

> 1990 S. GREENBAUM & R. QUIRK A stative adjective such as *tall* cannot be used with the progressive aspect or with the imperative: **He's being tall*, **Be tall*.

•• **stative passive**: *see* PASSIVE.

stem *Morphology*. An element in *word structure.

The terms stem, *base, and *root are sometimes used interchangeably, and sometimes in contrasting (and conflicting) ways.

Some linguists use the term stem for the primitive minimal unit of morphology, in preference to *base (see e.g. CGEL for this usage). Such a stem may be *free (1) (as in *selfish*) or *bound (1) (as in *jealous*). More complicated words are then analysed in terms of stems and bases. On this model, *pole* is the stem of *polar*, *polarize*, and *depolarize*; but in the context of *depolarize* (where no such word as **depolar* exists, and the word is formed by adding the *prefix *de-* to *polarize*), *polarize* is not a primitive stem, but a base. For other linguists, the two terms are reversed.

Other linguists avoid the term base in favour of terms such as **compound stem** and **complex stem**. Thus *self-conscious*, consisting of two **simple stems** (*self* + *conscious*), can be described as a *compound stem. If *un-* is added, we have *unselfconscious*, which in turn is a *complex stem for *unselfconsciousness*.

In Latin and Greek grammar, and in *historical linguistics, the stem is the part of the word to which *inflectional endings are attached, and is usually an extension (by means of a **thematic vowel** or a formative *suffix) of the root. For example, OE *lufode* 'loved' has the root *luf-* but the stem *lufo-*, where the root is extended by a thematic vowel *-o-* (= Latin *-a-* in *amabam*).

Compare BASE; ROOT.

stimulus A *semantic role that denotes what is being experienced. For example, in *The difficulty of the assignment surprised me* the *subject carries the role of stimulus.

See also EXPERIENCER.

strand Cause (a *word, *phrase, etc.) to become grammatically isolated, typically at the end of a *clause. The term is mostly used in *participle form (i.e. **stranded**).

*Ellipsis frequently leaves an *operator stranded, e.g.

She promised to telephone us last night, but she *didn't*

Similarly, a *subject may be stranded in a *comparison, e.g.

You play the flute so much better than George

Stranded prepositions do not immediately precede their *complement, and are also called **deferred prepositions**, e.g.

Which shelf did you put it *on*? (*compare*: On which shelf did you put it? *See* PIED PIPING)

What were you thinking *of*?

- **stranding**.

stranded preposition *See* STRAND.

Stratificational Grammar A model of grammar, developed in the 1960s by the American linguist Sydney M. Lamb, in which the various *levels of analysis are known as **strata**.

stratum *See* LEVEL ORDERING (HYPOTHESIS).

strength of modality This refers to the level of commitment that a speaker has to the *proposition which is being expressed. For example, *He must be crazy* expresses a high degree of commitment ('epistemic necessity'), whereas *He may be crazy* expresses a much weaker level of commitment ('epistemic possibility').

See also DEGREE OF MODALITY; KIND OF MODALITY.

strict subcategorization *See* SUBCATEGORIZATION.

string A sequence of linguistic elements and/or symbols.

The term is particularly used in *Generative Grammar (2). For example, a **terminal string** is the ultimate series of *lexical items in a *tree diagram after various *rules have been applied.

The term was introduced into linguistics from mathematics and computing, probably by Chomsky (1955a).

strong (In *historical linguistics and some traditional grammar.) Of a *verb or its *conjugation: forming the *past tense and *past participle through a change in vowel (e.g. *swim*, *swam*, *swum*) and without the *suffix *-(e)d/-t* (though often with the suffix *-(e)n* for the *past participle). Contrasted with **weak verbs**, which do not display a vowel change.

The distinction between strong verbs and weak verbs has been obscured since *Old English times by sound changes which, in some originally weak verbs, have introduced a variation in vowel between *present tense forms and *past tense/participle forms, or have caused the disappearance of the suffix, or both, e.g.

keep, kept (OE cep-an, cep-te)
spread, spread (OE spræd-an, spræd-de)
feed, fed (OE fed-an, fed-de)

Hence English verbs are more helpfully divided into *regular and *irregular verbs.

The terms strong and weak are a translation of the German *stark* and *schwach*, introduced by Jakob Grimm. A 'strong' verb had no need of the 'help' of a suffix to express tense.

structural Relating to (the analysis of) the component parts of (a) language, or its organization.

All grammarians take a structural approach to language, since the object of grammatical description is to reveal the *rules and systematic relationships that apply to linguistic structures.

The term is, however, associated (particularly in Europe) with the work of Ferdinand de Saussure (1857–1913; *see* SAUSSUREAN; STRUCTURALISM), and (more narrowly) with the American linguistic school of Leonard Bloomfield and his followers, which flourished in the 1930s, 40s, and 50s. A characteristic of the *Bloomfieldian approach was to emphasize the formal, rather than the semantic, features of language, so that the term structural often carries this sense.

> 1952 C. C. FRIES One of the basic assumptions of our approach here to the grammatical analysis of sentences is that all the structural signals in English are strictly formal matters that can be described in physical terms of forms, correlations of these forms, and arrangements of order.

●● **structural ambiguity**: *see* AMBIGUITY.
●● **structural conjunctive**: *see* CONJUNCT.
●● **structural linguistics**: *see* STRUCTURALISM.
●● **structural recoverability**: *see* RECOVERABILITY.
●● **structural semantics**: a theory of semantics which studies the meanings of *lexical items, and their relationships within sentences.
●● **structural/structure word**: the same as *grammatical word (1).

structuralism An approach to linguistics (or in some cases a theory) in which language is considered primarily as a system of *structures. (Also called **structural linguistics**.)

Narrowly, structuralism is taken to mean the theories and methods associated with the American linguist Leonard Bloomfield (1887–1949) and his followers, which emphasized form rather than meaning. Great attention was paid to what were held to be scientific **discovery procedures** by which the elements of any language at different *levels could be revealed without reference to meaning. It is this narrow structuralism that was attacked by *generative grammarians, though their debt to it was greater than is sometimes admitted.

In the European tradition, structuralism is altogether older and broader. De Saussure is generally regarded as the father of modern structural linguistics, even though some of his principles can be found in earlier writers.

> 1977 J. LYONS What must be emphasized . . . is that there is, in principle, no conflict between generative grammar and Saussurean structuralism . . .

> Saussurean structuralists, unlike many of the post-Bloomfieldians, (for whom 'structural semantics' would have been almost a contradiction in terms), never held the view that semantics should be excluded from linguistics proper.

The terms structuralism and structural linguistics are broadly synonymous. Where they are differentiated today, the former tends to be confined to the Bloomfieldian type of sentence analysis, whereas the latter may then refer to a more general type of approach to linguistic structure.

- **structuralist**: (of, or characteristic of) an adherent of structuralism.

> 1970 J. LYONS Examples . . . were used by Boas to support the view that every language has its own unique grammatical structure and that it is the task of the linguist to discover for each language the categories of description appropriate to it. This view may be called 'structuralist' (in one of the main senses of a rather fashionable term).

See also SAUSSUREAN.

structure The relationships between the elements and *constituent parts of a language, and their arrangement, determining its character and organization.

The term is used in a very general way (though often more formally than the related term *construction). The analysis of **clause structure** (or **sentence structure**) is essential to any grammar.

> 2002 R. HUDDLESTON & G. PULLUM et al. To describe the sentences that belong to English we have to provide a general account of their structure that makes their form follow from **general** statements, not about particular sentences but about sentences of English quite generally. We need to bring together the principles that sentences all conform to, so that we can use those principles to appreciate the structure of new sentences as they are encountered, and see how new ones can be constructed.

See also CLAUSE.

In grammar it is equally possible to talk of **morphological structure** (e.g. in *word formation), **semantic structure** (e.g. in *lexical fields), and *information structure (the arrangement of *given and *new information, etc.).

Structure can be distinguished from *system.

> 1964 R. H. ROBINS *Structure* and *system*, and their derivatives, are often used almost interchangeably, but it is useful to employ *structure* . . . specifically with reference to groupings of syntagmatically related elements, and *system* with reference to classes of paradigmatically related elements.

In *Systemic Grammar, structure is one of the four *categories (together with *unit, *class, and *system (2)) that contrast with scales (*see* SCALE-AND-CATEGORY GRAMMAR).

●● **structure word**: the same as *grammatical word (1).

Compare DEEP STRUCTURE; SURFACE STRUCTURE.

Structure of English, The Written by the American *structuralist linguist C. C. Fries, this work is often regarded as the first *corpus-based grammar of English.

> 1952 C. C. FRIES In the meantime, however, beginning in 1946, it became possible to obtain an entirely different kind of evidence. Instead of the letters collected and studied for the *American English Grammar* I procured the means and the opportunity to record mechanically many conversations of speakers of Standard English in this North Central community of the United States. Altogether these mechanically recorded conversations amounted to something over 250,000 running words.

style *See* STYLISTICS.

style disjunct A *disjunct that is employed by a speaker to comment on the style and/or form of the statement to which it is attached, in contrast to a *content disjunct; e.g.

Seriously, I don't want to get involved
Quite simply: she lied
Generally speaking, little foreign aid reaches its destination

stylistics The study of the various (literary) *features (1) that characterize a particular piece of writing, and how an interpretation of those features can lead to an understanding of the *text in question, and situate it in a wider (literary, social, etc.) context.

suasive verb A *verb whose *complement expresses a change of some kind which the *referent of the verb's *subject wishes to bring about, e.g. verbs that have a *directive meaning, or express 'suggestion', 'intention', etc. Examples include *agree, command, decree, desire, ensure, insist, intend, order, prefer, propose, recommend, rule, urge*. They are typically followed by a **that*-clause containing *putative *should* or a mandative *subjunctive.

In CGEL suasive verbs contrast both semantically and syntactically with *factual verbs. Unlike factual verbs, which take an *indicative verb form in the *subordinate clause, suasive verbs permit a choice, e.g.

She demanded that { he returned the money
he should return the money
he return the money }

See also PUTATIVE SHOULD; SUBJUNCTIVE.

subcategorization The syntactic phenomenon whereby certain lexical *heads create subcategories by virtue of the *complements they take. Also called **strict subcategorization**.

For example, *verbs that take a *direct object are contained in a subcategory of *monotransitive verbs, and verbs that take an *indirect object and a direct object belong to a subcategory of *ditransitive verbs. •• **subcategorization frame**: a notation that indicates the subcategorization properties of an element, e.g. [–, NP] for the transitive verb *devour*, and [–, NP NP] for the ditransitive verb *give*. The symbol '–' indicates where the subcategorized element appears.

subclausal negation *See* NEGATION.

subject The *constituent in a *sentence or clause that typically comes first, and of which the rest of the sentence is predicated. It often, though by no means always, performs the *semantic role of *agent, and specifies the *topic of the sentence.

The division of a sentence (or clause) into two parts, subject and *predicate, is a long established one, and derived originally from logic and philosophy. Latin *subjectum* translates Aristotle's *to hupokeimenon*, which primarily means 'the material of which things are made'; hence 'the subject of an attribute or of a predicate'.

In modern grammatical analyses the subject is one of the five possible major formal constituents (or *elements (1)) of clause structure, abbreviated as S. The predicate is then analysed into V (*verb), O (*object), C (*complement), and A (*adverbial), though not all of these are always present. In a *declarative clause the subject normally precedes the verb, which must *agree with it in *number and *person, though agreement is not always visible.

A **grammatical subject** is normally obligatory in English clause structure, even when no semantic role is assigned to the subject position. In such cases a *dummy subject is introduced (e.g. *It is raining*; *There is no water*). *See also* ANTICIPATORY *subject*.

Subjects are, however, usually missing from *imperative sentences (e.g. *Listen!*), and may be *ellipted in an informal context (e.g. *See you soon*).

Although the grammatical subject is typically a *noun phrase, it can also be *realized by a clause or even by a *prepositional phrase, e.g.

That you could do such a thing really shocks me
After nine o'clock would be more convenient

As noted above the subject is often defined as the 'doer' or agent of the verbal action, but this definition often fails. Thus in the first example below we have a meaningless dummy subject, and in the second (*passive) sentence the subject carries a non-agentive semantic role:

It is cold in this room
The match has been cancelled

For this reason the syntactic way of defining the term is now the norm.

In traditional grammar the label subject was sometimes qualified. Thus in addition to a grammatical subject there might be a **logical subject** (= *notional subject), particularly in passive sentences. Thus in *The building was designed by my favourite architect* the grammatical subject is *the building*, but the logical subject (i.e. the agent) was said to be *my favourite architect*.

Traditional grammar also uses the notion of *psychological subject, roughly equivalent to the present-day *theme or *topic, e.g.

That question I cannot answer

In this example the italicized noun phrase is grammatically the *direct object of the verb *answer*.

●● **displaced subject**: (in CaGEL) the notional subject in an *existential construction, e.g. *There is a cinema in the centre of town.*

●● **subject-attachment rule**: *see* ATTACHMENT RULE.

●● **subject attribute**: *see* ATTRIBUTE.

●● **subject-auxiliary inversion**: *see* INVERSION.

●● **subject case**: *see* SUBJECTIVE (1).

●● **subject complement**: *see* COMPLEMENT.

●● **subject-determiner**: (in CaGEL) an element that combines the functions of subject and *determiner (1), e.g. *Bill's* in *Bill's review of the book*, which can be contrasted with *Bill reviewed the book*.

●● **subject-operator inversion**: inversion of a subject and *auxiliary verb. *See* INVERSION.

●● **subject-oriented**: *see* SUBJECT-ORIENTED.

●● **subject–predicate relation**: *see* PREDICATE (1).

●● **subject-raising**: *see* RAISING.

●● **subject-related predicative complement**: *see* COMPLEMENT.

•• **subject territory**: the position of the grammatical subject before the verb. Contrasted with *object territory.
•• **subject-to-object raising (SOR)**: *see* RAISING.
•• **subject-to-subject raising (SSR)**: *see* RAISING.
•• **subject-verb inversion**: *see* INVERSION.

subjective

1. Designating the *case *inflection typically carried by *pronouns when they function as the *subject of a sentence or clause. (Also called **subject case** or **nominative case**.)

Only six distinct subjective pronouns (or **subject pronouns, nominative pronouns**) occur in modern English: *I, she, he, we, they*, and *who*. The difference between these and *me, her, him, us, them, whom* (called **objective pronouns**, **object pronouns**, or **accusative pronouns**) can be described in terms of case.

See also CASE; GENITIVE; OBJECTIVE (1).

2. Relating to, or referring to, the subject.

In a subjective *genitive the reference is to a 'deep' subject, rather than to the subject of the actual sentence or clause. Thus the genitive has subjective meaning in

> the Government's abolition of tax (cf. The Government is abolishing tax)

See also GENITIVE; OBJECTIVE (2).

•• **subjective predicative complement**: *see* COMPLEMENT.

subject-oriented A term used in the description of *dynamic (2) *modal verbs to indicate that the 'source' of the modal meaning (typically 'volition' or 'ability') is the *referent of the *subject of the sentence, as opposed to the speaker.

Thus if I say *The director will definitely let you know by the weekend* the intentional meaning imparted by the modal verb *will* originates with the person referred to as *the director*, whereas when I say *You may enter the room* the source of the 'permission' is the speaker.

Compare SPEAKER-ORIENTED.

See also DEONTIC; DYNAMIC (2); EPISTEMIC; MODALITY.

subjunct

1. (In CGEL.) A subclass of *adverbial, contrasting with *adjunct, *conjunct, and *disjunct.

This category was introduced in Quirk et al. (1985).

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. We apply the term SUBJUNCTS to adverbials which have, to a greater or lesser degree, a subordinate role . . . in comparison with other clause elements.

In the authors' 1972 *Grammar of Contemporary English* such adverbials were part of the adjunct class.

In CGEL, subjuncts are distinguished syntactically from adjuncts in several ways, perhaps most obviously by the fact that whereas adjuncts function as adverbial in clause structure, on a level with other clause *elements, subjuncts do not. In the following examples, contrast *financially*, which functions as an adjunct within clause structure in the first sentence, with *technically* (meaning 'from a technical point of view'), which functions as a subjunct (more specifically a **viewpoint subjunct**) in the second sentence:

> He helped them *financially* (cf. It was financially that he helped them./How did he help them? Financially.)
>
> *Technically*, he helped them (cf. *It was technically that he helped them/*How did he help them? Technically.)

In general, subjuncts either have 'wide orientation' outside the core clause structure, by expressing a 'viewpoint' (e.g. *Politically, the idea is suicidal*) or by functioning as a 'courtesy' marker (*Kindly be seated*), or they have 'narrow orientation' by being linked to a single word or phrase (e.g. *really odd, hardly possible, too dreadful*).

•• **focusing subjunct**: *see* FOCUSING ADVERB.

See also EMPHASIZER; INTENSIFIER.

2. (In Jespersen's terminology.) A word or group of words of the third *rank (1) of importance in a *phrase or clause.

> 1909–49 O. JESPERSEN The adjunct in *perfect simplicity* is a shifted subjunct of the adjective contained in the substantive *simplicity*, cf. *perfectly simple*.

subjunctive (*n. & adj.*) Traditionally: (a *verb form or *mood) expressing hypothesis or non-factuality. Contrasted particularly with the *indicative. Also called **conjunctive**, especially in grammars describing ancient languages.

The **present subjunctive** form of a verb is *finite, and identical with the *base (1) form of the verb. Formally, it is exactly the same as the present tense indicative form, except for the *third person singular, which lacks -*s*, and for the verb *be*, whose present subjunctive form is *be*. Functionally, it can refer both to the present and to the past. The present subjunctive can be used in three different ways, described below.

First, the **mandative subjunctive** (or **subjunctive mandative**) is used in *subordinate clauses following an expression of command, necessity, suggestion, or possibility, e.g.

> I recommended that he *write* and apologize
>
> She requested that she not *be* disturbed

Notice that the negative element *not* is positioned before the verb in the second example.

It is possible to have *should* in the subordinate clause:

I insisted that he *should* attend the meeting

This is called the ***should*-mandative** in CaGEL, and *putative *should* in CGEL.

Secondly, the present subjunctive can be used, rather formally, in subordinate clauses of *condition and *concession, but not with past reference, e.g.

If that *be* the case, our position is indefensible

Thirdly, the **formulaic** or **optative subjunctive** is used in independent clauses, mainly in set expressions, e.g.

God *save* the Queen

Some such clauses have an unusual *word order, e.g.

Perish the thought!
Come hell or high water

The so-called **past subjunctive** (also called the ***were*-subjunctive** or *irrealis *were*) is used in clauses of hypothetical condition. It differs from the past indicative form of *be* only in the first and third person singular, where *were* is used, though *was* is increasingly found here too. The reference is to present (or future) time, e.g.

If I *were* you, I'd own up (*compare*: If I *was* you . . .)
If only my grandfather *were* alive today (*compare*: If only my grandfather *was* . . .)
If she *were* to come tomorrow . . . (*compare*: If she *was* to . . .)

The uses of ordinary indicative forms to express non-factuality, such as the use of a *past tense to refer to a present or future situation (e.g. *If you came tomorrow* . . . ; *see* PAST (2)), have been described as subjunctive uses—perhaps because in translation such a usage might need a subjunctive form in another language. Modern grammar considers this to be quite unjustified, and restricts the use of the term subjunctive as described above.

However, since Modern English (unlike, say, French or Spanish) has few distinct verb forms that differentiate subjunctive verb forms from indicative verb forms, the status of the subjunctive as a verbal *inflection has been challenged. Indeed, many modern frameworks prefer to speak of **subjunctive constructions** or **subjunctive clauses**. These labels then apply to the entire clause in which the 'subjunctive verb' appears.

The disappearance of the subjunctive has long been forecast:

1860 G. P. MARSH The subjunctive is evidently passing out of use, and there is good reason to suppose that it will soon become obsolete altogether.

But it survives, and indeed has been seen to be on the increase, especially the mandative subjunctive in British English in recent years, possibly under American influence.

•• **covert subjunctive**: a term used in CaGel to describe a construction in which an indicative verb form is used where a 'subjunctive' verb form might be expected, given the meaning of the *governing verb, e.g. *They insist that he eats his dinner* (cf. *They insist that he eat his dinner*).

See also PUTATIVE SHOULD.

submodification *Modification of a *modifier, as in *a very unusual result*, where *very* is a *submodifier of *unusual*. Compare this with *a large unusual house*, where both *large* and *unusual* directly modify *house*.

See also QUALIFIER (1).

submodifier A *word (e.g. an *adverb) which is used to *modify the meaning of another word (e.g. an *adjective or adverb) that itself functions as a *modifier, e.g.

a *very* unusual result
a *quite* extraordinarily confusing letter

Such words are called *subjuncts in CGEL, though note that subjunct is a much wider notion.

See also SUBMODIFICATION.

subordinate (*adj.*) (Pronounced /səˈbɔːdɪnət/.) Grammatically *dependent. Contrasted variously with *coordinate, *independent, and *superordinate.

•• **subordinate clause**: a *clause that is dependent on, or forms part of, another clause, *phrase, or sentence element. Subordinate clauses can be classified in different ways, e.g. as being *finite, *non-finite, or *verbless, e.g.

They think *that the swimming pool is open today* (finite **that*-clause)
They want *to eat pizza tonight* (non-finite **to*-infinitive clause)
With *you here*, things will be easier (verbless)

Traditional grammar recognized three types of subordinate clause:

(i) *adverbial clauses, e.g. I was surprised, *because it was so unexpected*
(ii) *nominal clauses, e.g. It was odd *that he didn't telephone*
This includes *nominal relative clauses, e.g. I was surprised by *what you said*
(iii) *relative clauses, e.g. The news (*that*) *you gave us* is very odd

In more recent frameworks (e.g. CaGEL, OMEG) three kinds of finite subordinate clause are recognized, namely *content clauses, *relative clauses, and *comparative clauses. Non-finite clauses are classified into **to*-infinitive clauses, *bare infinitive clauses, *-*ed* clauses, and *-*ing* clauses.

Another kind of clause that is sometimes classified as subordinate is the *comment clause, e.g.

> We will, *I think*, see a lot more of him soon

●● **subordinate interrogative**: *see* INDIRECT QUESTION.

(*v.*) (Pronounced /səˈbɔːdɪneɪt/.) Make grammatically subordinate, usually by means of a *subordinator.

●● **subordinating conjunction**: *see* *SUBORDINATING. CONJUNCTION.

●● **subordinating correlative**: *see* CORRELATIVE.

subordinating conjunction The same as *subordinator.

See also CONJUNCTION.

subordination The joining of a unit, e.g. a *subordinate clause, to a higher linguistic unit, such that the former is *dependent on the latter.

Clausal subordination is often indicated formally by a *subordinator, though with some types of clauses there may be no formal marker of subordination, e.g.

> I thought (*that*) *I had told you*
> *Having inspected the policy*, I'm writing to inform you that you are covered for accidental damage

Subordination can also be signalled by *inversion:

> *Had we known about the civil unrest*, we would never have travelled there

It can also be indicated by the absence of major clause *elements, such as the *subject in the italicized clause in the following example:

> I would like *to move to Paris*

This is sometimes referred to as **desententialization**.

S

Independent **wh*-clauses and subordinate *wh*-clauses are syntactically distinguishable through *constituent order, in that the former instantiate inversion, while the latter do not:

> What *did he* buy?
> I asked him what *he bought*.

Non-finite and *verbless subordinate clauses can be introduced by a subordinator, *zero, or a *preposition, e.g.

> I was keen *for Karl to send us the money*
> *Standing on deck*, Alice waved at me
> *On hearing this*, she rushed to the bank
> *With the money under her belt*, she felt better

In approaches to linguistics in which syntax does not play a prominent role subordination is often defined without reference to grammar:

> 1985 S. THOMPSON '[S]ubordinate clause' is not a grammatical category at all. That is, there does not seem to be a single function or even a group of functions that we can think of this 'category' as having been designed, as it were, to serve. So the term 'subordination' seems to be at best a negative term which lumps together all deviations from some 'main clause' norm, which means that it treats as unified a set of facts which we think is not a single phenomenon. For these reasons, we have found it more fruitful to tease it apart into its component parts and try to determine what are the discourse motivations that underlie each of these components.

> 2003 S. CRISTOFARO Subordination will be regarded as a particular way to construe the cognitive relation between two events, such that one of them (which will be called the dependent event) lacks an autonomous profile, and is construed in the perspective of the other event (which will be called the main event).

See also COMPLEMENTIZER; MULTIPLE SUBORDINATION.

subordinator A *conjunction introducing a *subordinate clause. Also called **subordinating conjunction**.

Most subordinators are single-word conjunctions, e.g. *although, because, before, for, if, since, that, whereas, whether*; but there are also multi-word subordinators, e.g. *in order that, provided (that), as long as, in case*.

Note that in recent frameworks (e.g. CaGEL, OMEG), many of these words are regarded as *prepositions, except for interrogative *if, for, that,* and *whether*.

•• **subordinator of result**: *see* RESULT.

See also MARGINAL SUBORDINATOR.

subsective gradience *See* GRADIENCE.

substance *See* FORM (4).

substandard *See* STANDARD.

substantive (In older grammar: now disused.)

1. (*n. & adj.*) (A word) denoting a substance.

•• **(noun) substantive**: a noun.

See also ADJECTIVE.

2. (by extension) noun-like.

> 1824 L. MURRAY Some writers are of the opinion, that the pronouns should be classed into substantive and adjective pronouns.

3. Expressing existence.

● **substantival**.

●● **substantive verb** (or **verb substantive**): the *verb *be*.

substitute (*n. & adj.*) (A *word, *phrase, etc.) that is used to replace a *constituent. Also called *pro-form or **substitute form/word**.

This is a grammatical concept, related to *ellipsis, and has nothing to do with the notion of *synonym.

(*v.*) Use (a word, phrase, etc.) as a replacement (for a constituent).

● **substitutability**:

> 1968 J. LYONS The notion of distribution, which is based on substitutability, is simply not applicable to sentences.

● **substitutable**.

See also SUBSTITUTION.

substitution The use of *pro-forms to replace a *constituent. *See also* SUBSTITUTE.

Substitution differs from *co-reference. With substitution, pro-forms replace other words, e.g.

> I like *your golf umbrella*. Where can I get *one* like it?

With co-reference, the pro-form refers to the same *referent, e.g.

> I like *your golf umbrella*. May I borrow *it*?

Substitution can also be involved in replacing units other than *noun phrases, such as *verb phrases (2) and *clauses, e.g.

> If you *contribute £20*, I'll *do so* too/I'll *do the same*

In this example the pro-forms *do so* and *do the same* replace *contribute £20* (which is analysed as a verb phrase in many models).

suffix *Morphology*. (*n.*) An *affix added at the end of a word or *base (2) to form a new *word. Contrasted with *prefix and infix (*see* AFFIX).

Suffixes, unlike prefixes, usually have a grammatical effect on the word or base to which they are added. They are broadly of two kinds:

inflectional suffix: a suffix used to form an *inflectional form of a word, e.g.

look + -s/-ed
kind + -er/-est

derivational suffix: a suffix used to form a new *lexeme from a base, e.g.

nouns:	book*let* (M19)	kind*ness* (ME)	play*er* (OE)	
adjectives:	connect*ive* (M17)	care*less* (OE)	hope*ful* (ME)	manage*able* (L16)
verbs:	idol*ize* (L16)	wide*n* (E17)		
adverbs:	pretti*ly* (LME)			

(*v.*) Add as a suffix.

● **suffixation**: the adding of a suffix.

See also DERIVATION; INFLECTION.

summation plural A type of *noun which exists only in the *plural, and denotes a tool, instrument, article of dress, etc. that consists of two equal parts joined together, e.g. *binoculars, culottes, leggings, pliers, secateurs.* Also called **binary noun**.

See also PLURALE TANTUM.

superlative (*adj.*) Of a *gradable *adjective or *adverb, whether *inflected (essentially, by the addition of -*est* to the *positive form) or *periphrastic (by the use of *most*): expressing the highest degree of the quality or attribute expressed by the positive degree word. Examples are *best, happiest, soonest, most beneficial, most energetically*.

●● **superlative degree**: the highest degree of *comparison, above positive and *comparative.

(*n.*) (An adjective or adverb that is in) the superlative degree.

superordinate (*n. & adj.*) (A linguistic unit) operating at some higher *level of analysis than another, which is *subordinate to it.

The term is particularly applied to *clauses. In popular grammar, clauses are either *main clauses or subordinate clauses.

But in other analyses, a main clause is said to ‘contain’, or *embed, one or more subordinate clauses, and is therefore superordinate to them.

An advantage of introducing this term is that in some *complex sentences a clause that is subordinate to a particular clause may at the same time be superordinate to another. For example, in *I think that you know that I love you*, the clause *that you know that I love you* is subordinate, because it functions as *complement of the *verb *think*. However, it is superordinate to *that I love you*, which functions as complement of the verb *know*. *See also* MATRIX CLAUSE (1).

In semantics the term is applied to a *word which has a more general meaning than, and is therefore implied by, or able to replace, other more specific terms: a *hypernym. Thus *animal* is superordinate to (is a superordinate of) *tiger* and *kangaroo*.

See also SUPERORDINATION.

Compare HYPONYM.

superordination *Semantics*. The relationship of being *superordinate to another linguistic unit from the point of view of meaning. Contrasted with *hyponomy.

The term is used in describing the hierarchical structure of some sets of *lexical items:

> 1977 J. LYONS Let us say, then, that 'cow' is a hyponym of 'animal' . . . and so on . . . The obvious Greek-based correlative term for the converse relation, 'hyperonymy' . . . is unfortunately too similar in form to 'hyponymy' and likely to cause confusion. We will use instead superordination, which, unlike 'subordination', is not widely employed as a technical term in linguistics with a conflicting sense.

supplement A term used in CaGEL for *parenthetical strings that are not integrated in *clause structure, including what are called *non-restrictive *relative clauses in other frameworks, as well as certain *adjuncts and *disjuncts.

supplementary relative clause *See* NON-RESTRICTIVE.

supplementive clause A *non-finite or *verbless clause that does not contain a *subordinator, e.g.

> *Working with the local police*, Janet tried to discover who had stolen her car

This term is not widely used.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. Adverbial participle and verbless clauses without a subordinator are SUPPLEMENTIVE CLAUSES . . . The formal inexplicitness of supplementive clauses allows considerable flexibility in what we may wish them to convey.

suppletion The occurrence of an unrelated form so as to supply a gap in a *conjugation, *declension, etc. Obvious examples are *went* as the *past tense of *go*, *was* and *were* as the past forms of *be*, and *good/better/best*.

- **suppletive**: designating a form used in suppletion.

surface structure

1. (In *Generative Grammar (2).) A representation of the syntactic structure of a *sentence after the application of *transformations has taken place. Later reconceptualized as **S-Structure**. *Compare* DEEP STRUCTURE.

2. Loosely, the structure of a sentence as it is spoken or written.

Survey of English Usage (SEU) An English language research unit founded by Randolph Quirk at University College London (UCL) in 1959.

At the SEU, Quirk was among the first linguists in the world to develop a *corpus for the English language (the 'Quirk Corpus') which contains a million words of written and transcribed spoken texts. In the early years the material was grammatically analysed manually. Technological advances over the last few decades have revolutionized corpus compilation and analysis. As a result more recent corpora at the SEU, including the British component of the *International Corpus of English* (ICE-GB) and the *Diachronic Corpus of Present-Day Spoken English* (DCPSE), have been electronically *tagged and *parsed (3). These corpora can be investigated by researchers using the dedicated corpus exploration software ICECUP (International Corpus of English Corpus Utility Program).

Recent work at the SEU includes a number of Knowledge Transfer projects, specifically the development of apps for smartphones and tablets, and a web-based platform for the teaching and learning of English in schools. (See www.ucl.ac.uk/english-usage.)

switching *See* CODE-*switching.*

syllepsis (Plural **syllepses**.) The use of a *word, *phrase, etc. in two or more different ways with different *senses in the same *construction, from the point of view of either meaning or grammar. Also called **zeugma**. Example:

She caught the train and a bad cold

Here *catch the train* has a more literal sense than *catch a cold*.

Syllepsis is grammatical when a particular *inflectional form is used in connection with two *constituents, but can only agree with one of them, e.g.

Neither John nor I *agree* (*John* requires *agrees*)

The term is little used in modern grammar.

Compare AGREEMENT.

syncategorematic Not belonging to a syntactic *category; in a category of its own. The *infinitival particle *to* is often said to be syncategorematic.

synchronic Concerned with (the analysis of) a linguistic phenomenon, or phenomena, at a particular point in time (especially the present). Contrasted with *diachronic.

Synchronic linguistics can theoretically be concerned with (a) language at any point in time, but the term is often shorthand for the study of (a) language here and now.

The term is often attributed to Ferdinand de Saussure in his posthumously published work *Cours de linguistique générale* (1916).

Although the importance of distinguishing synchronic and *diachronic observations has seemed obvious to many for decades, more recently the distinction between synchrony and diachrony has been challenged.

> 1994 A. MCMAHON [I]t seems that synchrony and diachrony, or the present and the past, cannot in practice be as separate as Saussure's dictum assumes, either in language or elsewhere.

- **synchronically**.
- **synchrony**: synchronic method or treatment. *Compare* DESCRIPTIVE (1). *See also* ETYMOLOGY; SAUSSUREAN.

syncretism The realization of two or more *grammatical words (2) in a single form.

The term was originally used in *historical linguistics to refer to the merger of *inflectional categories by the transfer of the functions of one category to the form used for another. Thus in early *Middle English the functions of the *dative case of *nouns (marking the *indirect object, the *complement of certain *prepositions, etc.) were transferred to the *accusative; this had already occurred in preliterary times with several *personal pronouns (e.g. *me* = 'me', 'to me', *us* = 'us', 'to us', etc.). Thus, *bedd* ('bed') and *lif* ('life'), used as *objects of a *verb, were distinct in *Old English from the forms used after prepositions, such as *on bedde* ('in bed') and *on life* (cf. Modern English *alive*)—a distinction that had disappeared by 1500. In *Early Modern English the functions of the *subjective form of the *second person pronoun (*ye*) were transferred to the *objective form (*you*), but this did not occur with any other personal pronouns.

The term is now used in *synchronic descriptions.

> 1991 P. H. MATTHEWS In *He came* and *He has come* we distinguish a Past Tense *came* and a Past Participle *come* . . . In *He tried* and *He has tried* the first '*tried*' must again be Past Tense and the second again the Past Participle; for TRY (as for most English verbs) the two forms are identical both in spelling and in phonetics. The term **syncretism** (in origin a term in diachronic linguistics) is often applied synchronically to this situation.

syndetic Of *coordination: indicated by means of a coordinating *conjunction, e.g.

shirts *and* trousers bicycles *or* cars

When more than one coordinator is used, we speak of *polysyndetic coordination, e.g.

wine *and* cheese *and* biscuits

Syndetic coordination is contrasted with less common *asyndetic coordination, when no coordinators are used, e.g.

students, teachers, parents, siblings

synonym A *word or *phrase that means the same, or almost the same, as another in the same language. Contrasted with *antonym.

Strictly speaking there are few, if any, 'true' synonyms, that is, words that have exactly the same *sense and are completely and always interchangeable. But some pairs of words, for example the verbs *close* and *shut*, are sufficiently alike to rank as synonyms, even though one cannot always be substituted for the other, as the following examples make clear:

I'm going to close my bank account
The meeting closed with a vote of thanks
Once he starts talking, you can't shut him up

In discussions of the meaning of linguistic units longer than a word, synonymy tends to refer to the identity of *denotational or *referential meaning, even though the emphasis or the *attitudinal meaning may be different.

- **synonymous**: in a relationship of synonymy with another word.
- **synonymy**: the property of having (almost) the same meaning.

See also ANTONYM; HETERONYM; HOMONYM; HOMOPHONE; MERONYM; POLYSEME; POLYSEMY.

Synopsis of English Syntax, A A grammar written by the American linguist Eugene Nida in 1960, based on his 1943 doctoral dissertation. '[T]he general orientation of the approach adopted in this *Synopsis* is toward the constructions in terms of immediate constituents, rather than the string of units which comprise the total frame.'

synsemantic *Semantics*. (*n. & adj.*) (A *word or *phrase) that has meaning only in a context.

See AUTOSEMANTIC.

syntactic Of or relating to *syntax.

In grammar generally, often no special need is felt to use this adjective. A **syntactic class** is usually called a *word class or simply a *class; a **syntactic function** can simply be referred to as a function; and so on.

- **syntactically**.

•• **syntactic blend**: *see* BLEND.

•• **syntactic predicate**: *see* PREDICATE (2).

***Syntactic Phenomena of English, The*.** A work written by the late James McCawley in two volumes in 1988 (with a second edition in one volume in 1998). McCawley's descriptive framework is idiosyncratic, and shows signs of his earlier *Generative Semantics allegiance, but is highly insightful and original.

syntactics The same as *syntax, particularly when contrasted with *pragmatics and *semantics as a subdivision of *semiotics; the formal relationship of symbols to each other.

> 1964 E. A. NIDA While semantics deals with the relationship of symbols to referents, syntactics is concerned with the relationship of symbol to symbol; for the meaning of expressions is not to be found merely in adding up symbols, but also in determining their arrangements, including order and hierarchical structuring. For example, the constituents *black* and *bird*, when occurring in juxtaposition, may have two quite different meanings.

syntagm (Pronounced /ˈsɪntæm/.) (Also **syntagma**, pronounced /sɪn ˈtægmə/.) (A set of linguistic forms in) a linear syntactic relationship. Sometimes also called *construction (1). Contrasted with a *paradigm.

> 1959 W. BASKIN [translating F. de Saussure, coiner of the term] In discourse . . . words acquire relations based on the linear nature of language because they are chained together . . . The elements are arranged in sequence on the chain of speaking. Combinations supported by linearity are *syntagms*. The syntagm is always composed of two or more consecutive units.

Syntagms operate at all *levels of linguistic analysis. Thus *constituents of *words, *phrases, *clauses, etc. can form syntagms with each other. For example, *morphemes (1) can join into syntagms to produce words (e.g. *book* + *ish* = *bookish*), and phrases in a chain relationship can form clauses (e.g. *the dog* + *barked* = *the dog barked*).

See also SYNTAX.

syntagmatic relationship A relationship between two or more linguistic units that form a *syntagm or syntagms. Also called ***and*-relationship**.

Syntagmatic (*chain) relationships are contrasted with *paradigmatic (choice) relationships. The terminology is that of Ferdinand de Saussure (1857–1913).

Thus in *All power corrupts*, *all* + *power* + *corrupts* are in a syntagmatic relationship with each other. The units can be analysed in terms of syntactic *form, as *determinative (1) + *noun + *verb, or in terms of *function (1), as *subject + *predicate (1).

Words that could grammatically substitute for each of the three words in the example are in a paradigmatic relationship with that particular word: thus *some*, *no*, *more*, etc. can replace *all*; a great many nouns can replace *power* (e.g. *control*, *strength*, *weakness*, *conversation*, *art*); and an indefinite number of *intransitive verbs can replace *corrupts*, as indeed can other tenses of that verb (e.g. *corrupted*).

- **syntagmatically**: in the manner of a syntagm.

> 1961 Y. OLSSON Both collocation and colligation operate syntagmatically, that is, along the line one-after-another.

See also CONJUGATION; DECLENSION; PARADIGM; SAUSSUREAN.

syntax The study of the structure of *sentences through the arrangement of *words into *phrases, phrases into *clauses, and clauses into sentences, and the codified *rules explaining this system.

The word derives from the Greek *syn-* ('together') and *tassein* ('arrange').

Traditionally syntax is regarded as part of *grammar, along with *morphology (the study of the structure of *words).

- **syntactic**, **syntactically**.

synthetic

1. *Morphology*. Designating a language in which a *word usually contains more than one *morpheme (2). Contrasted with *analytic (1).

English is an example, though not an extreme one, of a synthetic language.

Synthetic is used here in its etymological sense 'put together'. It does not mean 'artificial'.

2. *Semantics*. Designating a *proposition that is true (or false) by virtue of extralinguistic facts or circumstances, in contrast to an *analytic (2) one.

system

1. (Generally.) A network of parts in an orderly arrangement; a regular set of relationships.

With reference to this definition the English language is a system, consisting of morphological, syntactic, phonological, and semantic systems, which in turn contain other systems.

2. (Specifically.) A group of terms or *categories, particularly in a closed, *paradigmatic relationship.

> 1953 R. H. ROBINS Professor J. R. Firth has recently suggested that the terms 'Structure' and 'System' be kept apart in the technical vocabulary of linguistic description. 'Structure' might be used to refer to unidimensional, linear abstractions at various levels from utterances or parts of utterances . . . When . . .

> categories have been devised by means of which the utterances of the language can be successfully described and analysed, closed systems are formed of these categories.

In *Scale-and-Category Grammar, the notion of system has a special place as one of the three (or four) categories that contrast with scales in the organization of the grammar.

> 1985 G. D. MORLEY The fourth category, system, accounts for the range of choices (classes) which are available within a unit, and any given range of possible options is known as a set of 'terms'. Thus, for example, the relations between the terms from the system of mood . . . may be set out as follows.

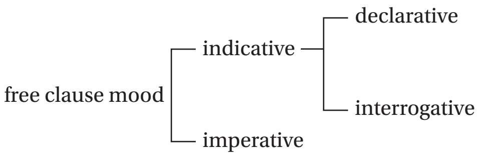

The notion of system also plays a role in *Systemic Grammar.

In some modern grammars the term is used to describe the *closed word classes, e.g. the *article system or the *pronoun system. *See* CLOSED (1). Other systems included in these grammars are simple versus non-simple sentences (which in turn have the subsystems *complex, *compound, and *compound-complex), *clause type, *number, *person, and *voice.

Systemic-Functional Grammar *See* SYSTEMIC GRAMMAR.

Systemic Grammar A theory of grammar and language use developed by M. A. K. Halliday, which is a development of *Scale-and-Category Grammar. Also called **Systemic-Functional Grammar**.

Scale-and-Category Grammar, like early *Generative Grammar (2), was much concerned with syntax and structure, but as the theory developed, the meaning and social functions of language became increasingly important.

> 1985 G. D. MORLEY During the latter half of the 1960s Halliday's work became increasingly influenced by ideas on the functional nature of language . . . and a multifunctional semantic dimension was not merely added to systemic theory but became central to it . . . At the time of this reorientation, the theory became known as systemic functional grammar, or systemic grammar for short. (Many linguists, indeed, now use the name 'systemic grammar' in referring to all work in the Hallidayan mould since 1961.)

> 2014 M. A. K. HALLIDAY & C. MATTHIESSEN Giving priority to the view 'from above' means that the organizing principle adopted is that of **system**: the grammar is seen as a network of interrelated meaningful choices. In other words, the dominant axis is the paradigmatic one: the fundamental components of the grammar are sets of mutually defining contrastive features . . . Explaining something consists not of stating how it is structured but in showing how it is related to other things: its pattern of systemic relationships, or **agnateness** (**agnation** . . .).

Confusingly, this theory is sometimes also called Functional Grammar, but is to be distinguished from Simon Dik's *Functional Grammar.

See also FIRTHIAN; NEO-FIRTHIAN.

T

tag (*n.*)

1. A string of *words with an *interrogative structure (*auxiliary verb + *pronoun), which is usually added to a *declarative clause, and whose form is syntactically related to the clause to which it is added. (Also called **interrogative tag**, **tag question**, or **question tag**.)

In the most usual cases, a *negative tag is added to a *positive statement, and a positive tag is added to a negative one. In other words, the *polarity is reversed (hence **reversed polarity tag**):

It's been cold this week, *hasn't it?*
You're not really going to walk all the way, *are you?*
You usually drive, *don't you?*

Said with a falling tone on the tag, the whole sentence is more like an *exclamation, assuming the listener's agreement. With a rising tone the tag becomes a *question inviting a *response. Less usual are positive statements followed by positive tags (often with an overtone of criticism):

So that's what you think, *is it?*

Question tags can also be added to imperatives and exclamations:

Keep in touch, *won't you?*
Oh, stop complaining, *will you!*
What a wonderful thing to do, *wasn't it!*

Some grammarians include short comments, answers, or fragments, sometimes added by another speaker, when these too consist of a *subject *noun phrase or *pronoun and an auxiliary verb relating to the verb of the previous utterance. For example:

It costs £1000. *Does it?*/*It doesn't!*/*So does the small one.*
That's not cheap. *Nor are the other ones.*
Shall I tell him? Yes, *do.*
Tell him to take it back, *why don't you*?
Or suppose I call them, *shall I*?

> 1990 J. ALGEO There are at least five uses of tag questions, some of them characteristically British, showing a progressive decline in politeness and in the degree to which they draw the addressed person into the conversation.

Algeo's five types of tag question are:

(i) You haven't still got that map I lent you, have you? (informational)
(ii) But we wouldn't be able to use it to find the post office, would we? (confirmatory)
(iii) Took you a while to realize that, didn't it? (punctuational: i.e. similar in function to an exclamation mark)
(iv) Well, I haven't seen it before, have I? (peremptory: i.e. fending off an unwelcome remark)
(v) You didn't exactly give me a chance to show you it, did you? (aggressive: i.e. expressing a hostile reaction)

Sometimes the term tag is used more generally to denote a short *phrase or *clause added on to an already complete utterance. This use includes, for instance, a noun phrase referring back to another phrase for emphasis, or to add an *exclamatory comment, e.g.

They use some confusing terms, *some really confusing terms*
He's won another prize, *clever man!*

In another type, perhaps more colloquial, the noun phrase occurs with a verb, e.g.

They baffle you, *do those long words*
That was the week, *that was*

Compare DISLOCATION.

2. A phrase such as *etc.*, *et cetera, and so on*, used to avoid further listing.

3. (In *corpus linguistics.) a *word class label assigned to a *lexical item that appears in an electronic *text, either manually or automatically using a computer, e.g. 'N' is a tag for noun, 'V' for verb, etc.

(*v.*) Assign a word class label to lexical items in electronic texts

Compare PARSE (3).

tag question *See* TAG.

tautology The saying of the same thing over again in different words (particularly regarded as a fault in style).

Language necessarily contains some *redundancy, and many speakers and writers repeat themselves for emphasis. Tautology, by contrast, is usually an unnecessary, and probably unconscious, repetition, as in *an unmarried young bachelor, one after the other in succession*, or *They shut and closed the door*.

taxis (Plural **taxes**.) Order or arrangement of words.

An outdated term; but *see* HYPOTAXIS and PARATAXIS.

taxonomic linguistics *See* LINGUISTICS.

telic *Semantics*. Of a *verb, *construction, *situation, etc.: expressing an inherent end point or goal, e.g.

> I am redecorating the kitchen
>
> *Compare* CONCLUSIVE; DURATIVE; PUNCTUAL.
> *See also* ATELIC.

temporal Relating to *time (1). The term is particularly used in relation to the meaning of *adverbials (*in July, during the summer*).

Temporal meaning is often contrasted with *spatial meaning (e.g. *in a box, under the stairs*).

Compare TENSE; TIME.

•• **temporal noun**: a noun such as *February, summer, Sunday, today, yesterday*.

temporary Relating to an activity, attribute, *situation, etc. that lasts for a limited time. Contrasted with **permanent**.

The term temporary is particularly used in relation to verbal meaning. Thus *progressive aspect is often said to convey temporary meaning (e.g. *She's working in a bank*) in contrast to more permanent meaning (e.g. *She works in a bank*).

Similarly, temporary and permanent qualities often, though not necessarily, correlate with the *predicative and *attributive uses of adjectives. Contrast:

> Those people are not *involved* (temporarily, on this occasion)
> It's a long *involved* story (an inherent quality)
>
> *Compare* DURATION (2); IMPERFECTIVE; PERFECTIVE.

tense Traditionally, tense is defined as a grammatical system which is used by languages to encode (or *grammaticalize) the *time (1) at which a *situation denoted by a *verb is viewed as taking place. Typically tense is realized through*inflectional endings on verbs.

Some linguists define tense semantically:

> 2012 I. DEPRAETERE & C. LANGFORD The criterion we use to define tense is meaning-based: a tense locates a situation in time.

In discussing tense, labels such as *present (2) tense, *past (2) tense, and *future tense are misleading, since the relationship between tense and time is often not one-to-one. Present and past tenses can be used in some circumstances to refer to future time (e.g. *If he comes tomorrow . . .*; *If he came tomorrow . . .*); present tenses can refer to the past (as in newspaper headlines, e.g. *Minister resigns*, and in colloquial narrative, e.g. *So she comes up to me and says . . .*; *see* HISTORIC PRESENT); and so on.

Some linguists define tense narrowly by form, which gives English only two tenses: the present tense, which in *lexical verbs is the same as the *base (1) form of a verb (except for the *-s* ending in the *third person singular); and the past tense, which in regular lexical verbs has the *-ed* inflection.

In terms of meaning, the present tense is then defined as the *unmarked tense, which is timeless in the sense that it can embrace any time that does not exclude the speaker's time (hence its use for general truths), and any time that the speaker does not want to distance himself or herself from. The past tense is then defined as being *marked, to express separation from the speaker's 'now', to indicate the hypothetical nature of a statement (*modal remoteness), or to convey *social distancing.

•• **compound tense**: In some frameworks (especially English Language Teaching), *verb phrase (1) combinations that incorporate features of *aspect, *mood, and *voice are treated as part of the tense system, giving such compound tenses as **past subjunctive tense** (e.g. *If I were you . . .*), **present progressive passive tense** (*Are you being served*?), **present perfect progressive tense** (*Fran has been cycling a lot recently*), and so on.

In CaGEL the term compound tense is used to describe constructions in which different kinds of tenses are combined, e.g. the *present perfect construction, which combines a *primary (3) tense with a secondary tense.

•• **tense phrase (TP)**: *see* PHRASE.

See also FINITE; FUTURATE; FUTURE; NON-FINITE; PRIMARY (3) *tense*; TENSED.

tensed Of a *verb form, *verb phrase, or *clause: having *tense, i.e. carrying a tense *inflection.

The *present and *past tense forms of the verb *sing* (*sing*, *sings*, *sang*) are tensed, whereas the *base (1) form, *-ing* form, and **-ed/-en* form (*sing*, *singing*, *sung*) are **non-tensed**.

The notion tensed is often equated with *finite, but in some frameworks they are not the same. Thus in CaGEL a clause can be tensed but non-finite. For example, in *I'm pleased to have met you* the underlined *subordinate **to*-infinitive clause carries a tense, namely the *perfect tense (*see* PRIMARY (3) *tense*). For grammarians who do not regard the perfect as a tense, the subordinate clause in this example is both non-tensed and non-finite.

tentativeness The quality of being said provisionally or experimentally; one of the meanings conveyed by *modal verbs, or by the use of the *attitudinal *past (2) tense and modal past tense, e.g.

I *might* be able to help
I *was* hoping you would come tomorrow
If you *came* at 6 p.m., you'd be able to have dinner with us

terminal Occurring at or forming the end of something; final.

Especially used in the terminology of *Generative Grammar (2), e.g. •• **terminal element**, **terminal symbol**: any of the elements or symbols occurring in the terminal *string of a *tree diagram.

territory Used with a qualifying word to indicate the part of a sentence influenced by what the qualifying word refers to, as in **assertive territory**, **non-assertive territory** (*see* ASSERTIVE), *subject territory, and *object territory.

See also SCOPE.

tertiary (*n. & adj.*) (In some older grammar, especially Jespersen's.) (Designating the *rank of) a linguistic unit that is at a third level 'down' in a *phrase, *group, etc. Contrasted with *primary (3) and *secondary.

Thus in *terribly cold weather*, *terribly* is a tertiary: it modifies the adjective *cold*. In turn *terribly cold* modifies the *head noun *weather*.

text A piece of written or spoken language.

This is intended to be a neutral term for any stretch of language, including transcribed spoken language, viewed not so much as a grammatical entity, but as in some way a semantic or pragmatic unit.

Compare UTTERANCE.

text linguistics The study of 'communicative' *texts, rather than grammatical *sentences, as the basis for language analysis.

Text linguistics is sometimes rather similar to *discourse analysis: the aim being to observe *coherence and *cohesion over a unit larger than a sentence, though perhaps with less emphasis on inter-speaker dynamics.

textual

1. Of meaning: as structured in the *text itself.

2. In *Systemic Grammar, meaning can be analysed into three types: the *ideational (2), the *interpersonal (2), and the textual. Textual meaning is concerned with the '*clause as message', the way this is structured into *theme (1) and *rheme, and the relationship of the clause to its context.

See also METAFUNCTION.

***that*-clause** A clause beginning with *that*, or where *that* could be inserted, e.g.

That you believe such nonsense amazes me
I'm sorry *(that) you believe such nonsense*

Such clauses are analysed as *nominal clauses in many frameworks (e.g. CGEL), or as *content clauses (e.g. CaGEL, OMEG).

Although some *relative clauses begin with *that* (e.g. *What's all this nonsense that you're repeating*), they are not included in this category. Appositive clauses beginning with *that* may or may not be included: *The idea that you believe this distresses me.* (*See* APPOSITION.)

See also ZERO.

thematic Of, pertaining to, constituting, or designating the *theme (1).

• **thematically**.

•• **thematic role**: *see* SEMANTIC ROLE

See also INFORMATION STRUCTURE; RHEME.

thematic role Used in *Generative Grammar (2): the same as *semantic role. Also called **theta role** and **Θ-role**.

theme

1. The initial part of a *clause which establishes its subject matter or viewpoint, followed by the *rheme.

• **thematization**.

• **thematize**: convert (an element, *phrase, etc.) into the theme of a clause.

The theme and rheme analysis is a way of looking at the *information structure of a clause, not at functional grammatical elements. Various grammatical devices are available in English to thematize different elements of a clause. One is the use of the *passive to thematize the *direct object of an *active clause:

Trespassers will be prosecuted
Mistakes cannot afterwards be rectified

Compare also:

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. *-ing* clauses with thematization: He's worth listening *to*.

In this example the object of the preposition *to* (cf. *It's worth listening to him*) has been turned into the theme.

Thematizing is also called *fronting or *topicalization.

See also TOPIC.

2. A *semantic role assigned to a *noun phrase that refers to an entity that is moved as a result of an action or event denoted by the *verb in a clause. Often not distinguished from *patient.

theoretical grammar *See* GENERATIVE GRAMMAR (2); GRAMMAR.

theoretical linguistics *See* GENERATIVE GRAMMAR (2); LINGUISTICS.

***there*-existential** *See* EXISTENTIAL.

theta role *See* THEMATIC ROLE.

third conditional *See* CONDITIONAL.

third person (Denoting, or used in conjunction with a word indicating) the *person or people spoken about, in contrast to the speaker or addressee.

The third person *pronouns are *he, him, himself, his*; *she, her, herself, hers*; *they, them, themselves, their, theirs*; *it, itself, its*.

The third person *singular form of the *present tense of *lexical verbs is marked in writing by *-s* or *-es* (e.g. *writes, has, does, wants, fixes*).

Compare FIRST PERSON; SECOND PERSON.

three-part verb A *multi-word verb with two *particles (or *prepositions, depending on the analysis). (Also called **three-part word**.)

This is another way of describing a *phrasal-prepositional verb, e.g. *look down on* (= despise), *put up with* (= endure).

three-place predicate *See* PREDICATE.

time

1. In a general and everyday sense: the continuation of the existence of people, objects, *situations, etc. from the *past (1) into the *present (1) and *future (1).

For the relationship between time and tense, *see* TENSE.

2. Designating a *word, *phrase, or *clause relating to time; *temporal.

Thus in *The contractors will repair the drains next week* the *noun phrase *next week* functions as a time *adjunct. Time adjuncts are often subdivided into such categories as *duration and *frequency.

•• **time clause** (also called **temporal clause**): a *clause relating to time, and introduced by a temporal (time) *conjunction (*when, while, after, until, since, as long as*, and *once*), e.g.

After we receive the money, we will send out the orders

Note, however, that in some frameworks (e.g. CaGEL and OMEG) *after* is a preposition. Some time clauses are *non-finite or *verbless, e.g.

While smoking in bed, he had fallen asleep

While in Amsterdam he visited many museums

3. time phase: *see* PHASE.

timeless Not concerned with, or not limited by, time.

Some uses of the *present tense (e.g. *Water freezes at 0° Celsius*) are described as expressing timeless propositions.

tmesis *Morphology*. The separation of the parts of a *word by an intervening element or elements.

This is not a very productive operation in English, and is largely confined to the insertion of swearwords for greater emphasis, as in *I can't find it any-blooming-where*.

The phenomenon is now usually described by using the term **infix**. *See* AFFIX.

***to*-infinitive** The *infinitive form of a *verb preceded by the *infinitival *particle *to*. Contrasted with the *bare infinitive.

The *to*-infinitive can be used:

after *catenative verbs: I want *to know*
in *subject position: *To know all* is to forgive all
in *direct object position: He loves *to eat salmon*
in *predicative position: To know all is *to forgive all*
as an *adverbial clause: Pull tab *to open*
as a *postmodifier: a book *to read*, nothing *to do*
as an adjective *complement: nice *to know*, hard *to imagine*

Strictly speaking, these are all ***to*-infinitive clauses**, i.e. clauses whose *verb phrase (1/2) contains as its *head a *lexical verb preceded by the infinitival particle *to*.

Compare BARE INFINITIVE; CLAUSE; CONTENT CLAUSE; -*ED* CLAUSE; -*ING* CLAUSE.

See also INFINITIVE.

topic That part of a sentence about which something is said. Contrasted with *comment.

The topic and comment distinction, like *theme (1) and *rheme, or *given and *new, is a way of analysing the *information structure of a sentence.

> 1958 C. F. HOCKETT The speaker announces a topic and then says something about it . . . In English and the familiar languages of Europe, topics are usually also subjects and comments are predicates.

However, although the topic frequently coincides with the *subject, and the comment with the *predicate (1), as in *The land / will be sold to the government*, the topic can be some other grammatical element, as in the following examples:

At Layhams Farm, it is now proposed to construct a ski slope (*adverbial as topic)

Recreational it may be, but no development could be more inappropriate (subject-related predicative *complement as topic)

More building we do not want in this village (*direct object as topic)

Putting the topic (or theme) at the front is variously described as *topicalization, *thematization, and *fronting.

topicalization

1. The process whereby a phrase or other element is made the *topic of a sentence.

2. Displacing a unit to the beginning of a clause from its *canonical position such that it achieves *topic prominence, e.g. *Fish I don't eat _*.
● **topicalize**.

trace In *Government-Binding Theory, and later developments of that theory, constituents that have been moved (*see* MOVEMENT) are said to leave behind a mark, called a trace, indicated by the letter 't'. Thus the sentences *Will was called by his brother* and *What did the cat eat?* involve **NP-movement** and ***wh*-movement**, respectively, both of which leave behind a trace:

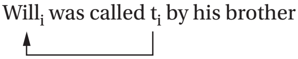

Will$_i$ was called t$_i$ by his brother

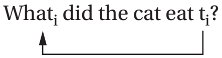

What$_i$ did the cat eat t$_i$?

The subscript letter 'i' indicates *co-reference.

traditional grammar *See* GRAMMAR.

traditional orthography Standard spelling.

The term (abbreviated *t.o.*) is used by spelling reformers who would like to introduce simpler and 'more logical' spelling.

transferred negation *See* NEGATION.

transform (*n.*) (A representation of) a structure derived by the application of a *transformation. Also, occasionally, the same as *transformation.

1962 B. M. H. STRANG It is sometimes assumed that all positive and affirmative sentences have negative and interrogative transforms. This is not quite true.

(*v.*) (Cause to) change into a different, but related, structure.

See also GENERATIVE; GENERATIVE GRAMMAR (2); TRANSFORMATION; TRANSFORMATIONAL; TRANSFORMATIONAL GRAMMAR.

transformation A *rule-governed operation in older *Generative Grammar (2) that converts one structure into another, for example an *active sentence into a *passive one.

> 1955b N. CHOMSKY A sentence *X* is related to a sentence *Y* if, under some transformation set up for the language, *X* is a transform of *Y* or *Y* is a transform of *X*.

See also GENERATIVE; GENERATIVE GRAMMAR (2); TRANSFORM; TRANSFORMATIONAL; TRANSFORMATIONAL GRAMMAR.

transformational Of or pertaining to a *transform or *transformation.

In the early theory of *Generative Grammar (2) (also known as **Transformational-Generative Grammar**), **transformational rules** operated on abstract structures, and explained the systematic relationships between various types of structures.

Typical transformations produced *passive constructions from *active constructions, *interrogatives from *declaratives, and so on, and showed the regular grammatical relationships between such pairs.

An important claim for transformational *rules was that they could disambiguate structures that a purely surface grammar (using e.g. *immediate constituent analysis) cannot. Thus two superficially identical structures, such as

> They need helping
> They like helping

could be shown to be derived by different rules from two different underlying abstract bases (which very roughly mean ‘they need + for someone to help them’ and ‘they like + when they help other people’).

In a later development of the theory transformations were constrained in various ways, and in even later versions they were replaced by principles and parameters (*see* PRINCIPLES AND PARAMETERS THEORY).

• **transformationalism**, **transformationalist**.

•• **transformational component**: *see* COMPONENT.

See also GENERATIVE; TRANSFORMATIONAL GRAMMAR.

Transformational Grammar (TG) A theory of grammar in which *transformational *rules play an essential part. Such rules were first introduced by the American linguist Noam Chomsky in his book *Syntactic Structures* (1957) (although he had already treated the subject in his doctoral dissertation of 1955). Because this book also introduced the idea that the rules of a grammar should generate grammatical sentences, this type of grammar (contrasted with *structuralism and other and more traditional grammatical models) is also known as **Transformational-Generative Grammar** (TGG) and *Generative Grammar (2).

TG recognizes two levels of analysis, namely *deep structure and *surface structure, which are related by transformational rules. In later models these two levels are interpreted somewhat differently as **D-Structure** and **S-Structure**, and then dropped altogether.

See also CHOMSKYAN; GENERALIZED PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; GENERATIVE; GENERATIVE SEMANTICS; GOVERNMENT-BINDING THEORY; GRAMMAR; HEAD-DRIVEN PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; MINIMALIST PROGRAM; MONOSTRATAL; PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR; PRINCIPLES AND PARAMETERS THEORY; STANDARD THEORY; TRANSFORM; TRANSFORMATION.

transitional Of a word or words: indicating a change from one state, place, etc. to another.

This is not a widely used grammatical term, but is sometimes applied to *adverbials that semantically bridge a gap from the subject matter of one statement to that of another, e.g. *meanwhile, in the meantime, incidentally*.

It is also applied to the meaning of a verbal form that indicates little or no duration, with a change of state about to result (e.g. *The bus was stopping*). *See also* ATELIC; TELIC.

transitive A term used to describe a *verb (or *preposition; see below) which *licenses one or more *complements (hence **transitive complementation**), or a *pattern or *clause in which a verb licenses one or more complements. The term derives from Latin *transire*, 'go across'.

Transitive verbs can be grammatically divided into three main types:

(i) *monotransitive, with one object, e.g. *I bought a new suit*
(ii) *complex transitive, with an object and an object-related predicative complement, e.g. *I found the story unreadable, I consider her a loyal friend*
(iii) *ditransitive, with an *indirect object and a direct object, e.g. *I've bought myself a new suit*

Some verbs are virtually always transitive (e.g. *bury, devour, deny, distract*), while others are almost always intransitive (e.g. *arrive, come, digress*). However, some can be said to be transitive or intransitive in different contexts, e.g. *I was cooking* (*breakfast*). Alternatively, we can say that in its 'intransitive use' a verb like *cook* takes an implicit direct object. In other cases, the presence or absence of a direct object signals a change in meaning. Compare the following pairs of sentences:

He lodged in Cambridge; He lodged a complaint
They walked for hours on end; He walks the dog every evening

She made towards the river; He made a cake

Some normally intransitive verbs have transitive uses in which they take a *cognate object, e.g. *I dreamed a lovely dream.*

Transitive complementation is to be distinguished from *intransitive complementation, and from complementation involving *copular verbs; *see* COMPLEX INTRANSITIVE.

• **transitively**, **transitivity**.

•• **transitive preposition**: a preposition that takes a *complement in the shape of a *noun phrase or *clause, e.g.

[$_{PP}$ in *the park*] (noun phrase complement)
We'll tell you [$_{PP}$ after *we look at the details*] (clausal complement)

See also COMPLEMENTATION; COMPLEX INTRANSITIVE; COMPLEX TRANSITIVE; DITRANSITIVE; INTRANSITIVE; MONOTRANSITIVE.

transparent Obvious in structure or meaning; that can be extrapolated from *surface structure; that can be extrapolated from every occurrence of the phenomenon. Contrasted with *opaque.

1977 P. DOWNING A compound may be highly transparent semantically when it is coined.

tree diagram A graphical representation of the syntactic structure of a clause or other linguistic unit. Also called **phrase marker**, or simply tree.

Tree diagrams originated in *Generative Grammar (2), but are not tied to any particular theory of grammar. Here is an example of a tree diagram representing the simple sentence *The busker sang a Beatles tune*:

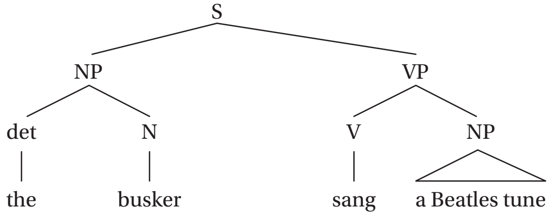

S=*sentence; NP=*noun phrase; VP=*verb phrase (2); det=*determinative (1); N=*noun; V=*verb

The **root** of the tree is at the top, i.e. S (for sentence). The other points from which lines branch off are called *nodes. The hierarchical relationships between the nodes are usually discussed using kinship terminology. Thus we say that the subject NP is the **mother node** for det and N, which are each other's **sisters**. We also observe that S *dominates NP and VP, and that VP immediately dominates both V and NP. Where the internal structure of a particular node is not at issue, triangles are used, as with the NP *a Beatles tune*. Grammatical *function (1) labels are not normally shown in trees, because functions can be read off the tree (they are said to be **configurationally defined**). Thus a *subject is defined as the first NP under S ([NP, S]); a *direct object is defined as the first NP under VP ([NP, VP]); and so on.

The way in which trees are drawn depends on the theoretical framework adopted by a particular author. In the simple tree above, the direct object NP is a daughter of VP and sister of V, the reason for this being the close bond between the verb and the direct object (the former *licenses the latter). In other frameworks (e.g. CGEL) the direct object is not part of the VP.

trigraph Three letters representing one speech sound as in *manoeuvre*, where the *oeu* is pronounced /uː/.

truth condition *See* TRUTH-CONDITIONAL SEMANTICS.

truth-conditional semantics A type of *logical semantics in which the meaning of a sentence is characterized by enumerating the set of conditions under which it is said to be true without reference to the *context of situation.

See also LOGICAL SEMANTICS; MODEL-THEORETIC SEMANTICS.

two-part verb A label that is sometimes used to describe a *multi-word verb consisting of two parts, e.g. a *phrasal or *prepositional verb. Also called **two-part word**.

two-place predicate *See* PREDICATE.

typological linguistics A branch of linguistics that deals with the way in which languages can be shown to share (structural, morphological, etc.) *features, and how those features can be used to arrive at a typology of languages.

> 1990 W. CROFT The broadest and most unassuming linguistic definition of ‘typology’ refers to a classification of structural types across languages. In this second definition, a language is taken to belong to a single type, and a typology of languages is a definition of the types and an enumeration or classification of the languages into those types. We will refer to this definition of typology as **typological classification**.

typology *See* TYPOLOGICAL LINGUISTICS.

U

ultimate constituent *See* IMMEDIATE CONSTITUENT.

unacceptable *See* ACCEPTABLE.

unanalysable *See* ANALYSABLE.

unattached participle *See* HANGING PARTICIPLE.

unbounded dependency A link between two *positions in a sentence that crosses one or more *clause-boundaries, e.g.

[What [do you think [that Graham believes [his sister likes _]]]]?

Here the **wh*-word *what* (the direct object of the verb *like*) is linked with the position marked by '_' across several clause boundaries.

Also called **long-distance dependency**.

•• **unbounded dependency word**: used in CaGEL as a cover term for **wh*-exclamative, *wh*-interrogative, and *wh*-relative words.

unconditioned *See* CONDITIONING; VARIANT.

uncount Designating a *noun that has no *plural form, and cannot be used with numerical values. Contrasted with *count. (Also called **uncountable**, **non-count**.)

Grammatically, uncount nouns are distinguished by the fact that they can be used without an *article or *determinative (1), and with certain determinatives that are exclusive to them (e.g. *much*). Uncount nouns often refer in a rather general way to substances and abstract qualities, processes, and states (e.g. *china*, *petrol*, *poverty*, *rain*, *welfare*), rather than to discrete units. But the uncount versus count distinction is grammatical, not semantic, and a number of English uncount nouns (e.g. *information*, *luggage*, *news*, *traffic*) have countable equivalents in other languages.

Uncount is generally synonymous with *mass*; but *see* MASS NOUN for a distinction that is sometimes made.

uncountable (*n. & adj.*) (A noun that is) *uncount.

See UNCOUNT.

undergoer *See* PATIENT.

underlying Designating (abstract) *deep structure grammatical or semantic *features posited to explain various relationships or meanings in the actual language (i.e. the *surface structure realization).

In *Generative Grammar (2), concepts such as **underlying form/structure/phrase-marker/string** are part of the apparatus of the theory. Underlying structures are used, among other things, to explain why we sometimes have to interpret similar structures in different ways, while two very different structures may be understood to mean the same thing.

Underlying structures are often said to contain elements not present in the 'surface' language. For example, in early *Transformational Grammar the underlying structure of an imperative sentence like *Sit down* was posited to be *You will sit down*. From this underlying structure the surface structure *Sit down* was derived by the application of transformational rules that deleted *you* and *will*.

In a less technical way (without involving transformational rules) various structures may be explained in terms of some underlying structure. Thus a *prepositional phrase functioning as a *postmodifier to a *noun, as in *the man in the iron mask*, could be said to be underlyingly clausal (i.e. *who was in the iron mask*). Or a *genitive may be labelled *subjective (2) or *objective (2) on the basis of its meaning, e.g.

the hair of the dog (subjective: *the dog* has hair)
love of money (objective: someone loves *money*)

The concept of underlying structure can be seen as a more abstract extension of the *concept understood of traditional grammar.

• **underlyingly**.

understood Of a *word or words: deducible.

The term *'you' understood* is sometimes used to describe the *subject that is missing from most *imperatives, but clearly implicit, as shown by the fact that it can be inserted, or added in a *tag, e.g.

(You) do as you're told
(You) be quiet
Don't (you) forget
Sit down, won't you

Understood is not entirely synonymous with *recoverable. The latter is usually applied to words that could, with little or no change of form, be inserted in the *text. *Understood* may relate more abstractly to *underlying meaning. Thus a *non-finite *clause following a *catenative verb has an

understood subject that is usually the same as the subject of the catenative, e.g.

They tried to telephone us

but occasionally different, as in the informal *We said not to worry*. In neither of these cases could we insert the understood words (cf. **They tried they to telephone us*, **We said they not to worry*).

See also UNDERLYING.

unfulfilled condition The same as unreal *condition.

ungradable *See* GRADABLE.

ungrammatical Not conforming to the rules of some grammatical system; syntactically *deviant. Contrasted with *grammatical.

More generally, grammaticality is judged in relation to what is considered a *standard, but standards vary. *I never said nothing to nobody* is ungrammatical in *Standard English, but conforms to the rules of its own *dialect.

For many linguists grammaticality is a phenomenon that is subject to *gradience, as are grammaticality judgements.

•• **ungrammatical word**: *see* GRAMMATICAL.

Compare ACCEPTABILITY; ILL-FORMED; WELL-FORMED.

unheaded The same as *exocentric.

uninflected *See* INFLECTED.

unique Pertaining to something of which there is only one.

• **uniqueness**.

•• **unique reference**: a concept invoked to explain the use of the *definite article (*the*) in various contexts where, although the *referent may not have been mentioned before, its uniqueness (or *identifiability) can be assumed. Sometimes the referent really is unique (e.g. *the Earth*); more often it is unique in the context of a particular place or time (e.g. *the Pope, the Queen, the Head of Department*), or even in some much smaller situational context (e.g. *I'm going to the post office,* Please *shut the windows*).

Uniqueness may also be due to other factors. Thus the phrase *the day after tomorrow* can refer to only one particular day at the time it is uttered, and the phrase *the best man* in *May the best man win* can refer to only one man.

u

unit A general term to denote a discrete building block of linguistic analysis at any *level, e.g. a *word, *phrase, or *clause. Also called **linguistic unit**.

unit noun A unit *noun is a *word that allows us to break up an *uncountable noun into *countable parts, e.g.

> *a pat* of butter
> two *pieces* of toast

The same as a *partitive noun.

universal (*n. & adj.*) (A grammatical *feature (1)) that is common to all natural languages.

Features of English which seem basic to grammar, such as *tense distinctions and *prepositions, are non-existent in some languages. **Language universals**, i.e. grammatical characteristics which feature in all languages, tend to be rather general: e.g. all languages have *nouns and *verbs, have ways of talking about *time (1) and *place, and distinguish speaker and addressee.

universal conditional-concessive clause (In CGEL.) A type of *conditional clause with an element of *concessive meaning that signifies a condition that offers an unlimited choice, regardless of the circumstances, e.g.

> *Whatever you do*, don't tell him that you are not a plumber (i.e. 'no matter what you do . . .')

Other items that occur in such clauses are *whoever*, *whichever*, *wherever*, and *however*. In CaGEL this is a type of **exhaustive conditional**.

See also ALTERNATIVE CONDITIONAL-CONCESSIVE CLAUSE; CONDITION; CONDITIONAL.

unmarked Of a linguistic *feature or structure: that is more basic, *central, or usual than the *marked form to which it is related.

> 1985 R. QUIRK et al. 'Measure' adjectives . . . have two terms for the opposite ranges of the scale (*old/young, deep/shallow, tall/short*), but use the upper range as the 'unmarked' term in measure expressions.

For example, normal unmarked questions about age and height are:

> How *old* is the baby?
> How *tall* is your little girl?

•• **unmarked order anaphora**: *see* ANAPHORA.

See also MARKEDNESS.

unmodalized *See* DEGREE OF MODALITY.

unproductive *See* PRODUCTIVE.

unreal condition *See* CONDITION.

unrelated participle *See* HANGING PARTICIPLE.

unspecified *it* *See* DUMMY; IMPERSONAL.

untensed *See* TENSED.

usage Established and customary ways of using language.

Usage is a somewhat wider and somewhat vaguer term than *grammar or *syntax. In one sense, usage is what people generally say and write, how they actually use their language. Ideally therefore, *usage* should (i) include grammar and (ii) be objective and *descriptive, rather than *prescriptive.

In practice, usage guides deal cursorily with consensual core grammar, and pay most attention to areas of disputed usage, giving guidance that veers towards prescription (which is doubtless what most users of such books want). Grammatical usages discussed include such matters as *If I were* versus *If I was*, or *used not to* versus *didn't use to*. Other areas are *word formation and spelling (e.g. *blamable* versus *blameable*), pronunciation (*haRASSment* versus *HArassment*), and *vocabulary (*flout* versus *flaunt*; *disinterested* versus *uninterested*; and the meaning of *decimate*).

Questions of usage are complicated by the fact that accepted usage may vary from one *speech community to another, according to different national, regional, or social *varieties, and such factors as who is writing or speaking to whom about what.

Many dictionaries employ **usage labels** to indicate whether particular senses, *words, or *phrases are *formal (3), *informal, British, American, dialectal, dated, *slang, offensive, *euphemistic, and so on.

A distinction is sometimes made between usage in the sense of what is grammatically and linguistically correct and *acceptable (and of avoiding what is disputed), and **use**, i.e. what is appropriate to communication between people in an actual *situation (1).

use *See* USAGE.

utterance An uninterrupted sequence of spoken language.

This is intended to be a neutral term pertaining to language use, unlike the grammatically defined terms *clause and *sentence. It is sometimes contrasted with *text, and sometimes included in it.

See also ECHO UTTERANCE; SPEECH ACT.

V

V Verb as an *element (1) in *clause structure.

valency (A specification of) the number and type of *arguments that a particular *predicate (typically a *verb) *licenses.

> 2008 T. HERBST & S. SCHÜLLER The fundamental idea of valency theory, which developed out of Tesnière's model of dependency theory, is that the structure of a sentence is largely determined by the verb.

See also ARGUMENT.

value judgement A judgement attributing merit or demerit to an action, event, *situation, etc.

This is one of many meaning categories assigned to *disjuncts. Thus in *Foolishly, Greg didn't ask for a receipt,* the *adverb *foolishly* expresses the speaker's judgement on what happened (in this case that it was foolish of Greg not to ask for a receipt). It does not describe the manner of asking.

Compare VIEWPOINT ADJUNCT.

variable

1. (*n. & adj.*) (A *word) having more than one form (or *variant). Contrasted with *invariable.

Variable words include *count *nouns (with *singular and *plural forms); *verbs (with *third person singular *present tense, *present participle, *past, and (in some verbs) *past participle forms; e.g. *know, knows, knowing, knew, known*); and some *gradable *adjectives and *adverbs (with *comparative and *superlative forms; e.g. *fine, finer, finest*; *soon, sooner, soonest*).

2. A word with variable *reference, i.e. a word whose meaning is largely dependent on *context.

For example, although personal *pronouns convey meanings such as 'singular' (e.g. *he, it*) or 'plural' (e.g. *we, they*), 'masculine' (e.g. *him*) or feminine (*her*), their *referents are largely conditioned by the *context. Thus the word *he* can refer in a particular context to any male person, but this is not part of the dictionary meaning of the word. And, indeed, *he* is not necessarily confined to male persons (outside politically correct circles).

> 1984 R. HUDDLESTON *He* is used by many speakers as a 'variable' ranging over a set containing both males and females (normally human) as in . . . *If any student wishes to take part in the seminar, he should consult his tutor*. The semantic distinction male vs female is here neutralised, and the fact that *he* is used makes it the semantically unmarked member of the pair *he/she*. As we noted earlier, *they* has long been used as an alternative to *he* in this sense.

3. An element that substitutes for one or more others. For example, we can talk about 'XP'—where 'X' denotes the *word class categories N, V, A, or P (*noun, *verb, *adjective, *preposition)—to designate NP, VP, AP, or PP.

4. Any factor that contributes to differences between language *varieties, e.g. regional or social variables.

variant (*n. & adj.*) (Designating) one of the forms in which a *variable element can appear.

Such forms may be determined by the *context in which they appear. For example, the *indefinite article appears as *an* when it is placed before a *word that begins with a vowel. As such its shape is *conditioned by the following word. **Unconditioned** variants are not determined in this way; for example, the two variants of the *past participle of *show* are *showed* and *shown*.

See also FREE VARIATION; INVARIABLE.

variation

1. (The existence of) differences between *varieties of English.

Often used with a distinguishing word, such as *regional* or *stylistic*.

2. The existence of alternative linguistic forms within a single variety of English.

See also CONDITIONING; FREE VARIATION; VARIANT.

variety A distinct form of a language, as used for example by a particular (national or regional) group, or in a particular context.

The terms variety and *variation are especially used in the analysis of different kinds of English. Thus we can talk of regional and social varieties (or variation); varieties according to the *field of discourse; varieties consistent with spoken or written mediums; and 'stylistic' varieties, due to different degrees of *formality, the attitude of the speaker, and so on.

Compare ATTITUDINAL.

V-bar category (V′ category) *See* X-BAR SYNTAX.

verb

1. A member of a major *word class which is normally essential to *clause structure (though *see* SMALL CLAUSE) and which can show (sometimes in combination with other syntactic elements) contrasts of *tense, *aspect, *mood, *voice, *number, and *person.

In traditional grammar, the verb is sometimes defined notionally as a 'doing' word, but modern grammar prefers a *distributional (i.e. *morphosyntactic) definition of the kind given above.

Verbs are usually subdivided first into:

(i) *lexical (or *full, or *main) verbs
(ii) *auxiliary verbs

Lexical verbs are further classified syntactically, depending on whether any accompanying elements are obligatory or permissible. The major types include *transitive, *intransitive, and *linking verbs (or *copular verbs). Auxiliary verbs are sometimes divided into *primary and *modal verbs, though other classifications are also possible, e.g. by distinguishing the *aspectual auxiliaries *be* and *have*, *dummy *do*, and *passive *be*.

In some recent accounts (e.g. CaGEL, OMEG) auxiliary verbs are regarded as main verbs. *Compare* CATENATIVE-AUXILIARY ANALYSIS; DEPENDENT-AUXILIARY ANALYSIS.

•• **verb group**: a sequence of verbs that contains a lexical verb in addition to one or more auxiliaries. The same as *verb phrase (1). The term is used in *Systemic Grammar; *see* GROUP; WORD GROUP.

•• **verb of psychological state**: *see* PSYCHOLOGICAL VERB.

•• **verb of resulting meaning**: *see* RESULT.

See also COPULA; LEXICAL VERB; LINKING VERB; MAIN VERB; MULTI-WORD VERB; PHRASAL VERB; PHRASAL-PREPOSITIONAL VERB; PREPOSITIONAL VERB; RAISING; REGULAR; TWO-PART VERB.

2. A major, and usually essential, *element of clause structure.

In the representation of the functional elements of clause structure, V stands for *verb phrase (1). Thus both *I bought oranges* and *I have been buying oranges* are SVO sentences. The verb element (V) is the only element that must always be filled by items that belong to the same word class, namely verb.

•• **verb of incomplete predication**: (an old-fashioned term for) a *linking verb (or a *copular verb), especially the verb *be*, so-called because such a verb is 'incomplete' without a *complement.

See PREDICATOR.

verbal

1. Of, relating to, or derived from a *verb.

•• **verbal adjective**: *see* PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE.

●● **verbal conjunction**: *see* CONJUNCTION.

●● **verbal group**: (in *Systemic Grammar) the same as *verb phrase (1).

●● **verbal noun**: *see* GERUND; *-ING* FORM.

2. Relating to words, particularly when spoken, as in *verbal ability*, *verbal abuse*. *Compare* ORAL.

Linguists usually try to avoid using this sense of the word *verbal*, particularly when *oral* is more accurate (e.g. *oral communication*).

verbal idiom

1. An *idiom based on a *verb, e.g. *hit the road* ('leave'), *kick the bucket* ('die').

2. Used in CaGEL for *phrasal verbs and *phrasal-prepositional verbs, though not for *prepositional verbs.

verbal inflection class *See* CONJUGATION.

verbless Of a *sentence or *clause: lacking a *verb.

Verbless clauses are not usually recognized as such in traditional grammar, where they are more likely to be regarded as *phrases. They have some of the semantic and structural features of clauses. For example, some are introduced by a *conjunction, e.g.

> *When in Rome*, do as the Romans do
>
> Come early *if possible*

Others have a *subject preceded by *with* or *without*:

> *With the exam behind her*, she felt able to enjoy the holiday (Compare *The exam being behind her . . .*)
>
> *Without you here*, I don't know what I'd do (Compare *If you were not here . . .*)

Other examples have neither a conjunction nor a subject, but a paraphrase suggests a clausal, rather than a phrasal, interpretation, e.g.

> *Unhappy at the result*, she decided to try again (compare *Because she was unhappy . . .*)

Notice the existence of a subject–*predicate (1) relation in (the paraphrases of) all these examples.

●● **verbless sentence**: any type of *minor sentence lacking a verb. *Compare* SMALL CLAUSE.

verb of emotion *See* PSYCHOLOGICAL VERB.

verb of psychological state *See* PSYCHOLOGICAL VERB.

verb-particle construction *See* MULTI-WORD VERB; PHRASAL-PREPOSITIONAL VERB; PHRASAL VERB; PREPOSITIONAL VERB.

verb phrase (VP)

1. A *phrase consisting either of a single-word *verb on its own, or of a group of verbs which functions in the same way as a single-word verb. Called **verb(al) group** in *Systemic Grammar. Examples:

went
will go
will have gone
must be forgotten
must have been forgotten
must have been being forgotten
having been forgotten

> 1987 F. R. PALMER Sequences of verb forms such as *has been running, may have run, keeps wanting to run* will all be referred to as 'verb phrases'. . . . One way of treating a form such as *has taken* is to say that it is the perfect form of the verb lexeme TAKE. That assigns to the two-word sequence the same kind of grammatical status as that of single words in another language (*eg* Latin *amavi* 'I have loved').

A verb phrase can be *finite or *non-finite. In a finite verb phrase, the first word is the only word that is finite, i.e. carries *tense. The last word in both finite and non-finite verb phrases is a *main verb. If a finite verb phrase consists of a single word, then it must be a main verb that carries tense (e.g. *goes*, *went*).

See also COMPLEX VERB PHRASE.

2. (In theoretical grammar and recent descriptive grammars such as CaGEL and OMEG.) A sequence of words normally containing a *lexical verb together with any *complements and *adjuncts, but excluding the *subject. (In *Generative Grammar (2) *auxiliary verbs are also excluded from VP because they are placed under 'Aux', or an equivalent node.) In this sense, verb phrase is the formal counterpart of *predicate (1), and forms, with the constituent that is its subject (if there is one), a clause or sentence.

See also TREE DIAGRAM.

viewpoint adjunct A subcategory of *adjunct (3), typically in the shape of an *adverb phrase, that qualifies the contents of a *clause from a particular point of view, e.g.

Morally, the tax had much to commend it, but *politically* it was madness

This kind of adjunct can be expanded:

Morally speaking . . . , but politically speaking . . .
From a moral point of view . . . , but from a political point of view . . .

In classifications that distinguish adjuncts from *subjuncts, the label used is **viewpoint subjunct**.

viewpoint subjunct *See* SUBJUNCT; VIEWPOINT ADJUNCT.

vocabulary The entire set of *words (1) in a language.

In most approaches to grammar, vocabulary as such does not feature very prominently. Such frameworks tend to focus on syntax and morphology, leaving word meanings to the dictionary. However, in recent decades there has emerged an interest in the study of the (mental) *lexicon, and there is an increasing interest in the interrelationship between the lexicon and the components of grammar.

In applied linguistics, *vocabulary* is used in its everyday sense as a set of words. There are many books for foreign learners that are devoted to learning vocabulary, and most general coursebooks have chapters or sections on vocabulary.

With regard to *lexicography, many modern dictionaries (especially learners' dictionaries such as the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*) provide a considerable amount of grammatical information, for example by marking verbs as *transitive or *intransitive, or by specifying in which patterns they can be used.

●● **vocabulary size**: It is not easy to say how many words there are in the English language, partly because the notion of word is difficult to define, and partly because of problematic issues such as whether to include obsolete or dialect words, slang, words in recognized *varieties of English (e.g. Indian English, New Zealand English), and so on. A typical desk dictionary may define about 100,000 vocabulary items, while the *Oxford English Dictionary* lists more than 600,000.

As for how many words an individual English-speaking adult knows or uses, estimates vary greatly. Figures published in 1940 reporting on tests conducted with American college students claimed they know around 150,000 items, while tests published in 1978 claimed a figure of no fewer than 250,000. Both figures have been challenged on various grounds, not least because it is not clear what it means to 'know' a word. However, the figure is likely to be many tens of thousands.

Recent computer surveys tell us that around 1,000 common words account for over 70 per cent of everyday speech and writing.

vocative (*n. & adj.*) (An optional element in *clause structure) denoting a person or entity addressed.

In *inflected languages (e.g. Latin) the vocative is a *case (1) form taken by a *noun phrase denoting an addressee. In English the vocative is not marked by *inflection, but by intonation. Vocatives can include *proper nouns (e.g. *Mary, Grandpa*) and titles (e.g. *Sir, Mr President, Doctor, Waiter, Nurse*), as well as *epithets and general nouns, both polite and otherwise (e.g. *darling, chums, bastard, friends, liar, mate*). Some of these can be expanded (e.g. *Mary dearest, my dear friends, you silly fool*).

Inanimate entities can also be addressed, but this tends to be in fairly formal or literary contexts, and involves a degree of personification, e.g.

> I vow to thee, my country . . .
> Come, friendly bombs, and fall on Slough! (from the poem *Slough* by John Betjeman)

voice A grammatical *category which provides two different ways of presenting a particular *situation, namely as *active or *passive.

In many frameworks active and passive *clauses are viewed as *constructions, so that the notion voice is applicable to *verb phrases, *clauses, and *sentences. The concepts active and passive are linked to meaning in that the *subject of an active clause is typically the *actor, or 'doer' of the action expressed by the verb, as in *The bird caught the worm*, whereas the *object typically 'undergoes' the action expressed by the verb. In a passive construction these roles are reversed: now the subject is 'acted upon', and the agent appears in a **by*-phrase, as in *The caught by the bird.*

Some languages (e.g. Greek) also have a **middle voice**, which includes verbs of *reflexive meaning.

See also AGENT; PATIENT; SEMANTIC ROLE.

volition A semantic notion that denotes 'willingness', as expressed typically by *verbs (*want, desire*, etc.).

The *modal verbs *shall* and *will* carry little meaning other than indicating 'futurity', although often an element of 'intention', 'promise', or other shade of volition is blended in, e.g.

> We *shall* do all we can to help
> I *will* not forget

Along with 'ability', the notion of 'volition' is an exponent of *dynamic (2) modality, which is said to be typically *subject-oriented, in contrast to *deontic and *epistemic modality, which express *speaker-oriented meanings (e.g. 'permission').

• **volitional**.

Compare PREDICTION.

VP Abbreviation for *verb phrase.

•• **VP-adjunct**: *see* PREDICATION ADJUNCT.

VP-preposing *See* PREPOSE.

W

weak iconicity *See* ICONICITY.

weak verb *See* STRONG.

well-formed In harmony with (or generated by) the *rules of a particular linguistic system, especially grammar; thus often taken to mean *grammatical. Contrasted with *ill-formed.

In earlier *Generative Grammar (2), a **well-formed utterance** is one generated according to the rules of syntax, semantics, and phonology. It is a wider term than grammatical, which often has a more strictly syntactic sense.

In later work Chomsky denies that the notion plays a role in linguistic theory.

> 1994 (2000) N. CHOMSKY The class of expressions generated by the (I-)language L should not be confused with a category of well-formed sentences, a notion that has no known place in the theory of language, though informal exposition has sometimes obscured the point, leading to much confusion and wasted effort.

• **well-formedness**.

Compare ACCEPTABILITY; GRAMMATICAL.

***were*-subjunctive** *See* SUBJUNCTIVE.

wh A symbol representing the *exclamative, *interrogative, or *relative quality of **wh*-words. Probably introduced by the American linguist Noam Chomsky.

Wh is often prefixed to another word, indicating the quality (exclamative, interrogative, relative, etc.) of the item which it combines with:

•• ***wh*-clause**: a neutral term for *exclamative, *interrogative, and *relative clauses that involve *wh*-words. *See also* MOVEMENT.

•• ***wh*-cleft**: *see* CLEFT CONSTRUCTION.

•• ***wh*-element**: *see* *WH*-ELEMENT.

•• ***wh*-interrogative (clause)**: *see* INTERROGATIVE.

●● ***wh*-item**: *see* WH-ELEMENT.
●● ***wh*-movement**: *see* MOVEMENT; TRACE.
●● ***wh*-phrase**: *see* MOVEMENT; WH-ELEMENT.
●● ***wh*-question**: *see* MOVEMENT; QUESTION; WH-ELEMENT.
●● ***wh*-relative**: a *relative pronoun that begins with *wh-*.
●● ***wh*-word**: *see* WH-WORD.
See also MOVEMENT.

***wh*-element** A single **wh*-word, or a phrase containing such a word. Also called ***wh*-form**, ***wh*-item**, ***wh*-phrase**.

In the sentence *What happened?* the *wh*-element is the word *what*. But often the *wh*-element is longer, e.g.

Which pictures do you like best?
Tell me *what kind of pasta* you bought

See also MOVEMENT; *WH*.

Whorfian Designating, or characteristic of, the theories of B. L. Whorf.
●● **Whorfian hypothesis**: the same as the *Sapir-Whorf hypothesis.

***wh*-word** One of a small class of *interrogative or *relative *words most of which begin with *wh-*.

The main *wh*-words are *what, which, who, whom, whose*; *when, where, why*, and *how*.

Wh-words are sometimes intensified by adding *ever*, often written as a separate word (always after *why*), e.g.

Who ever would have guessed?
Why ever didn't you say?

This usage is grammatically distinct from the similar-looking compounds *whatever, whoever*, etc. (e.g. *Whatever you do, don't tell him the truth*). *See* FREE RELATIVE CLAUSE; UNIVERSAL CONDITIONAL-CONCESSIVE CLAUSE.

The *wh-* spelling does not correctly represent any present or past pronunciation. In modern pronunciation the sound is /w/. An older (but never, since *Old English times, universal) pronunciation, still current in Scottish and Irish English, and in the United States and Canada, is /hw/. In Old English the spelling *hw-* was used, but the letters were reversed in *Middle English by analogy with *ch-*, *ph-*, *sh-*, and *th-*.

See also MOVEMENT; WH; *WH*-ELEMENT.

***will*-condition** *See* CONDITIONAL.

wishing The verbal expression of a wish.

Wishing is sometimes singled out in grammatical description because the *verb of a *subordinate clause after an expression of wishing must be in the *past (2) tense, and as such is used to express *modal remoteness, e.g.

I wish I *knew*/*had* known what to say
If only I *knew*/*had* known

Such expressions when referring to *present (1) or *past (1) time denote what is contrary to fact; for example, *I wish I knew*/*had known* implies *I don't*/*didn't know*. With reference to the *future (1), wishing implies something that may be unlikely, but is not necessarily impossible. For example:

I wish you would come tomorrow

does not rule out your coming, though my remark is more diffident than *I hope you come*/*will come tomorrow*.

See PAST (2); SUBJUNCTIVE.

word

1. A meaningful unit of speech which is normally not interruptable, and which, when written or printed, has spaces on either side (also called **orthographic word**).

Native speakers intuitively recognize words as distinct meaningful grammatical units of language. It is words whose meanings and very existence are catalogued in dictionaries, and which combine to form larger units such as *phrases, *clauses, and *sentences.

Grammarians recognize smaller meaningful units in the grammatical hierarchy, such as *morphemes, but words have distinct characteristics. As has been noted, they are normally uninterruptable, and they are cohesive in the sense that their parts cannot be rearranged in the way that words in a sentence often can. Contrast *unhappiness* (in which no reordering is possible; e.g. **nesshappiun*) with *This sentence can be rearranged*, which can be changed to *Can this sentence be rearranged?*

Another characteristic of words, which would probably seem obvious to native speakers, is enshrined in Bloomfield's definition of them as 'minimal free forms', i.e. the smallest units that can reasonably constitute a complete utterance, as in

Do you accept? *Yes/Maybe/Naturally*

However, some words fail this test, e.g. *a/an* and *the*.

The characteristic of being 'complete in itself' is supported by the writing convention that separates one word from another, but there are problems with this. Opinions vary as to whether certain *compounds are in fact one word or two (e.g. *half way*, *half-way*, *halfway*), and whether such forms as *don't* and *I'll* are single words or not.

2. A word, as listed in a dictionary, together with all its variants. Distinguished from sense (1) as *lexeme. Also called **dictionary word**.

Although this is a more abstract sense of the notion word, it is a common meaning; thus e.g. *see*, *sees*, *seeing*, *saw*, *seen* are all part of the same 'word' *see*.

•• **grammatical word**: *see* GRAMMATICAL WORD.

word blend *See* BLEND.

word class A category of *words that syntactically *distribute in the same way, and predominantly share the same *morphosyntactic characteristics.

The classification of words into word classes (sometimes called **form classes**) is much the same as the more traditional classification of words into **parts of speech**, but the former favours more rigorous *distributional definitions and disfavours *notional ones.

There is no single correct way of analysing words into word classes. Generally recognized are *nouns, *verbs, *adjectives, *adverbs, *conjunctions (*coordinators and *subordinators), *prepositions, and *interjections. In recent times the set of word classes has expanded to include items such as *complementizer, *determinative (1), and *determiner (2).

Grammarians disagree about the boundaries between the word classes (*see* GRADIENCE), and it is not always clear whether to **lump** subcategories together or to **split** them. For example, in some grammars (e.g. CaGEL) *pronouns are classed as nouns, whereas in other frameworks (e.g. CGEL) they are treated as a separate word class.

In some recent theoretical frameworks, word classes are regarded as *feature complexes (*see* PHRASE STRUCTURE GRAMMAR) or as constructions (*see* *CONSTRUCTION GRAMMAR).

Compare MAJOR WORD CLASS.

word complex *See* WORD GROUP.

word ending *See* SUFFIX.

word form

1. The form that a particular *word can assume in speech or writing. *Compare* GRAMMATICAL WORD (2).

2. Any variant of a *lexeme. (Also called **form of a word**.)

The term is used as a way of avoiding the ambiguity of *word*. For example, *see, sees, seeing, saw*, and *seen* are word forms of (or forms of) the lexeme *see*.

word formation

1. The subdiscipline of linguistics covered by *morphology, including *inflection, *derivation, and *compounding.

2. (More narrowly.) The formation of *lexemes through *derivation and *compounding (and sometimes *conversion). Also called **lexical word formation**.

In this model, inflection is handled as part of syntax.

3. (More narrowly still.) Derivation only.

Word Grammar (WG) A grammatical theory, developed by the British linguist Richard (Dick) Hudson since the 1980s, in which the notion of *dependency is central. It claims that the *word—rather than, say, the *phrase or *clause, or *levels of structure—is the most important element in language.

> 1990 R. HUDSON a. WG is *lexicalist* because the word is central—hence the name of the theory. Grammars make no reference to any unit larger than the word (except for the unit 'word-string', which as we shall see is used only in coordinate structures and is very different from the 'phrase' and 'clause' of other theories). b. WG is *wholist* because no distinction is recognized between the grammar 'proper' and the lexicon. The grammar includes facts at all levels of generality, all of which are handled in the same way.

> 2010 R. HUDSON Word Grammar is a theory of language structure based on the assumption that language, and indeed the whole of knowledge, is a network, and that virtually all of knowledge is learned. It combines the psychological insights of cognitive linguistics with the rigour of more formal theories.

word group (In *Systemic Grammar.) A *head (1) together with other words that may complement or modify it. Also called **word complex**.

Word groups occupy a special place in Systemic Grammar, because a *group (1) is syntactically defined as the expansion of a head, and is distinguished from a *phrase (2), which is viewed as a reduced *clause. Word groups therefore have a distinct *rank (2) in this kind of grammar. The groups recognized are *nominal group, *verb(al) group, and *adverbial group (corresponding to *noun phrase, *verb phrase, and *adverb phrase in other models), plus *conjunction group (e.g. *even if*, *if only*) and *preposition group (e.g. *right behind*, *in front of*). The latter is distinguished from *prepositional phrase.

> 2014 M. A. K. HALLIDAY & C. MATTHIESSEN A **phrase** is different from a group in that, whereas a group is an expansion of a word, a phrase is a contraction of a clause. Starting from opposite ends, the two achieve roughly

the same status on a rank scale, as units that lie somewhere between the rank of a clause and that of a word.

word order The order in which *words (more precisely, *constituents; see below) are arranged in *sentences and *clauses.

In *inflected (varieties of) languages, such as *Old English or Latin, word order may be comparatively free, because the function of a word (or *phrase) is often indicated by an *inflectional form. Modern English, having few inflections, has a much more fixed word order. The basic (*unmarked) order of the main clause *elements in English is SVO (subject–verb–object).

In grammatical models in which words are grouped into phrases, clauses, etc., it is more accurate to speak of constituent order.

Compare ADJECTIVE ORDER; INFORMATION STRUCTURE.

***would* condition** *See* CONDITIONAL.

***would have*-condition** *See* CONDITIONAL.

X

X-bar syntax A model of *syntax, introduced by the American linguist Noam Chomsky into *Generative Grammar (2), that treats all *phrases as having the same skeletal hierarchical structure, as shown in the following *tree diagram:

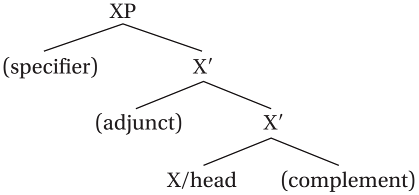

XP stands for a *phrase headed by X (the obligatory *head), where X stands for *N(oun), *V(erb), *A(djective), or *P(reposition), and sometimes *Adv(erb). In this representation X′ (read ‘X bar’) is called a **bar level category**, i.e. a category that is intermediate between XP and X. Optional *adjuncts are linked by *adjunction to the left of the lower X′ in the tree above (e.g. [$_{V'}$ *quickly* [$_{V'}$ *opened the door*]), but they can also be adjoined to the right ([$_{V'}$ [$_{V'}$ *opened the door*] *quickly*]). The adjunct and the lower X′ are sisters (i.e. they share the same *node immediately above them). The *specifier position is occupied by various kinds of elements in different phrases, for example by *determinatives (1) in *noun phrases (e.g. *these lectures*), intensifying adverbs in *adjective phrases (e.g. *very kind*), etc. *Complements, if present, are sisters of the head X. The various levels inside phrases are regarded as *projections of the head.

Y

yes-no interrogative/question *See* INTERROGATIVE; QUESTION.

Z

Z element *See* ELEMENT.

zero An abstraction, often symbolized by ‘ø’, representing the absence of any *realization, where there could theoretically be, or in comparable grammatical contexts there is, a morphological or syntactic realization.

The concept of *zero* is used as a way of making *rules more comprehensive and consistent than they would otherwise be.

It is not generally used in relation to *elliptical structures, where the symbol [‸] is sometimes preferred.

•• **zero allomorph**: *see* ALLOMORPH.

•• **zero anaphor**: *see* ANAPHOR.

•• **zero article**: a unit posited before an *uncountable *noun or a *plural *count noun when either is used with an *indefinite meaning, e.g. ø *food*, ø *vegetables*.

•• **zero genitive**: the realization of the *genitive *inflection without an additional *s* in *words that already end in *-s*. This is the usual genitive with regular plural nouns, as in *the athletes' achievements*, where the form is identical in pronunciation with the ordinary plural form (*athletes*), and differs only in having an *apostrophe added to the written form. The zero genitive also occurs with some *singular words, particularly foreign names ending in /z/, e.g. *Aristophanes' plays*. By contrast, *irregular plurals not ending in *-s* show a contrast of form between the plural *common *case (e.g. *men*) and the plural genitive (e.g. *the men's achievement*), just like their singular forms (e.g. common case *man*; genitive *man's*).

•• **zero-place predicate**: *see* PREDICATE.

•• **zero plural**: a plural form of a count noun that is not distinct from the singular. Some count nouns have no distinct plural form (e.g. *sheep, cod, deer*). Other nouns for animals can have zero plurals or *regular plurals (e.g. *fish/fishes, pheasant/pheasants*).

•• **zero relative pronoun**: a phonetically unrealized *relative pronoun in a relative clause, e.g.

The books ø I bought yesterday
The girl ø I was talking to

Such relative clauses are called *contact clauses.

●● **zero *that*-clause**: a *clause which could be introduced by *that,* but from which it is absent, e.g.

> He said Ø he was sorry (= that he was sorry)

The use of *zero* in synchronic linguistics was introduced in Bloomfield (1926).

zeugma *See* SYLLEPSIS.

References

Aarts, B. (2007). *Syntactic gradience: the nature of grammatical indeterminacy*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Aarts, B. (2011). *Oxford Modern English grammar*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Aarts, F. (1986). 'English grammars and the Dutch contribution: 1891–1985' in Leitner, G. *The English reference grammar: language and linguistics, writers and readers*, 363–386. Tübingen: Max Niemeyer.

Adams, V. (1988). *An introduction to Modern English word-formation*. London: Longman.

Adams, V. (2001). *Complex words in English*. Harlow: Pearson Longman.

Aitchison, J. (2012). *Words in the mind* (edn. 4). Oxford: Wiley-Blackwell.

Algeo, J. (1990). 'It's a myth, innit? Politeness and the English tag question' in Ricks, C. & Michaels, L. *The state of the language*, 443–450. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press.

Austin, J. L. (1955). Lectures published in: *How to do things with words* (1962). Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Baker, M. (2003). *Lexical categories: verbs, nouns and adjectives*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Baskin, W. (1959). Translation of F. de Saussure's *Course in general linguistics*. New York: The Philosophical Library, Inc.

Bennett, D. C. (1975). *Spatial and temporal uses of English prepositions: an essay in stratificational semantics*. London: Longman.

Biber, D., Conrad, S., & Leech, G. (2002). *Longman student grammar of spoken and written English*. Harlow: Pearson Education.

Biber, D., Johansson, S., Leech, G., Conrad, S. & Finegan, E. (1999). *Longman grammar of spoken and written English*. London and New York: Longman.

Bloomfield, L. (1926). 'A set of postulates for the science of language' in Hockett, C. F., ed. *Leonard Bloomfield anthology* (1970), 128–138. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.

Bloomfield, L. (1933). *Language*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston.

Bolinger, D. (1971). *The phrasal verb in English*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

Bolton, W. F. (1975). *The English language*. Sphere History of Literature in the English Language, volume 10. London: Sphere Books.

Brinsley, J. (1612). *The posing of the parts*. London: Thomas Man.

Brown, E. K. & Miller, J. E. (1980). *Syntax: a linguistic introduction to sentence structure*. London: Hutchinson.

Carter, R. & McCarthy, M. (2006). *Cambridge grammar of English.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Cassidy, F. G. (1961). *Jamaica talk: three hundred years of the English language in Jamaica*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Catford, J. C. (1959). 'The teaching of English as a foreign language' in Quirk, R. & Smith, A. H., eds. *The teaching of English*, 164–189. London: Secker and Warburg.

Chalker, S. (1984). *Current English grammar*. London and Basingstoke: Macmillan.

Chalker, S. (1995). *Little Oxford dictionary of English grammar*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Chomsky, N. (1955a). *The logical structure of linguistic theory* (microfilm, Massachusetts Institute of Technology).

Chomsky, N. (1955b). *Transformational analysis* (Ph.D. dissertation, University of Pennsylvania).

Chomsky, N. (1957). *Syntactic structures*. The Hague: Mouton.

Chomsky, N. (1965). *Aspects of the theory of syntax*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

Chomsky, N. (1986). *Knowledge of language: its nature, origin and use*. New York: Praeger.

Chomsky, N. (1994). 'Naturalism and dualism in the study of language and mind' in *International Journal of Philosophical Studies* 2: 181–200. (Reprinted in Chomsky, N. (2000). *New horizons in the study of language and mind*, 75–105. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.)

Chomsky, N. (1995). *The minimalist program*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

Chomsky, N. & Halle, M. (1968). *The sound pattern of English*. New York: Harper and Row.

Collins Cobuild English grammar (1990). London: Collins.

Comrie, B. (1976). *Aspect*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Comrie, B. (1985). *Tense*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Cristofaro, S. (2003). *Subordination*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Croft, W. (1990). *Typology and universals*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Crystal, D. (2004). *The stories of English*. London: Penguin.

Curme, G. O. (1931/1935) *A grammar of the English language in three volumes* (2 vols.). Boston and London: Heath.

Curme, G. O. (1931). *Syntax, a grammar of the English language*, volume 3. Boston: Heath.

Curme, G. O. (1947). *English grammar*. New York: Barnes and Noble.

Decamp, D. (1968). 'The field of Creole language studies' in *Latin American Research Review* 3:35–46.

Depraetere, I. & Langford, C. (2012). *Advanced English grammar*. London: Continuum.

de Saussure, F. (1916). *Cours de linguistique générale*. Paris: Lausanne.

de Saussure, F. (1959). See Baskin (1959).

Dik, S. (with Hengeveld, K.) (1997). *The theory of functional grammar. Part 1: The structure of the clause* (edn. 2). Berlin and New York: Mouton de Gruyter.

Dixon, R. M. W. (2005). *A semantic approach to English grammar* (edn. 2). Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Downing, P. (1977). 'On the creation and use of English compound nouns' in *Language* 53: 810–842.

Durkin, P. (2009). *The Oxford guide to etymology*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Earle, J. (1873). *The philology of the English tongue* (edn. 2, revised). Oxford: Clarendon Press.

Elsness, J. (2009). 'The present perfect and the preterite' in Rohdenburg, G. & Schlüter, J. *One language, two grammars: differences between British and American English*, 228–245. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Fillmore, C. J. (1968). 'The case for case' in Bach, E. & Harms, R. T., eds. *Universals in linguistic theory*, 1–90. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston.

Firth, J. R. (1935). 'The technique of semantics' (*Transactions of the Philological Society*) in Firth, J. R. (1957), *Papers in linguistics 1934–1951*, 7–33. London: Oxford University Press.

Firth, J. R. (1951). 'Modes of meaning' (*Essays and Studies*) in Firth, J. R. (1957), *Papers in linguistics 1934–1951*, 190–215. London: Oxford University Press.

Fowler, H. W. (1926). *Modern English usage*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

Francis, W. N. (1958). *The structure of American English*. New York: Ronald Press Co.

Fries, C. C. (1940). *American English grammar*. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts.

Fries, C. C. (1952). *The structure of English: an introduction to the construction of English sentences*. New York: Harcourt, Brace and Company; London: Longmans, Green and Company, 1957.

Givón, T. (1993). *English grammar: a function-based introduction* (2 volumes). Amsterdam and Philadelphia: John Benjamins.

Goldberg, A. (2006). *Constructions at work: the nature of generalization in language*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Greenbaum, S. (1996). *Oxford English grammar*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Greenbaum, S. (2000) (ed. E. S. C. Weiner). *Oxford reference grammar*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Greenbaum, S. & Quirk, R. (1990). *A student's grammar of the English language*. London: Longman.

Greenwood, J. (1711). *An essay towards a practical English grammar*. London: Keeble, Lawrence, Bowyer, Bonwick and Halsey.

Haegeman, L. (1994). *Introduction to Government and Binding Theory* (edn. 2). Oxford: Blackwell.

Haegeman, L. & Guéron, J. (1999). *English grammar: a generative perspective*. Oxford: Blackwell Publishers.

Halliday, M. A. K. (1985). *An introduction to functional grammar*. London: Edward Arnold.

Halliday, M. A. K. & Hasan, R. (1976). *Cohesion in English*. London: Longman.

Halliday, M. A. K. & Matthiessen, C. (2014). *An introduction to functional grammar* (edn. 4). Abingdon: Routledge.

Harris, Z. S. (1951). *Methods in structural linguistics*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

Herbst, T. & Schüller, S. (2008). *Introduction to syntactic analysis: a valency approach*. Tübingen: Gunter Narr.

Hockett, C. F. (1958). *A course in modern linguistics*. New York: Macmillan.

Hoey, M. (1991). *Patterns of lexis in text*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Honey, J. (1989). *Does accent matter?* London: Faber and Faber.

Hopper, P. J. & Traugott, E. C. (2003). *Grammaticalization* (edn. 2). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Householder, F. W. (1952). Review of Z. S. Harris, *Methods in structural linguistics*, in *International Journal of Applied Linguistics* 18:260–268.

Huddleston, R. D. (1976). *An introduction to English transformational syntax*. London: Longman.

Huddleston, R. D. (1984). *Introduction to the grammar of English*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Huddleston, R. D. (1988). *English grammar: an outline*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Huddleston, R. & Pullum, G. (2005). *A student's introduction to English grammar*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Huddleston, R. & Pullum, G. et al. (2002). *The Cambridge grammar of the English language*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Hudson, R. A. (1980). *Sociolinguistics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Hudson, R. A. (1990). *English word grammar*. Oxford: Blackwell.

Hudson, R. A. (2003). 'Gerunds without phrase structure' in *Natural Language and Linguistic Theory* 21. 3: 579–615.

Hudson, R. A. (2010). *An introduction to Word Grammar*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Jacobs, R. A. & Rosenbaum, P. S. (1968). *English transformational grammar*. Waltham, MA: Blaisdell Publishing Company.

Jakobson, R. (1973). *Main trends in the science of language*. London: Allen and Unwin.

Jespersen, O. (1909–49). *A modern English grammar on historical principles* (7 volumes). Copenhagen: Ejnar Munksgaard; Heidelberg: Carl Winters Universitätsbuchhandlung; London: George Allen and Unwin.

Jespersen, O. (1924). *The philosophy of grammar*. London: George Allen and Unwin.

Jespersen, O. (1933a). *The system of grammar*. London: George Allen and Unwin.

Jespersen, O. (1933b). *Essentials of English grammar*. London: George Allen and Unwin.

Johnson, S. (1755). *A dictionary of the English language*. London: Longman.

Kruisinga, E. (1909–32). *A handbook of present-day English* (4 volumes).

Utrecht: Kemink en zoon; Groningen: P. Noordhoff.

Kruisinga, E. & Erades, P. A. (1941). *An English grammar*. Groningen: P. Noordhoff.

Kuryłowicz, J. (1936). 'Dérivation lexicale et dérivation sémantique'. Contribution à la théorie des parties de discours. In *Bulletin de la Société de Linguistique de Paris* 27:79–92.

Labov, W. (1968). *The study of nonstandard English* (revised edn., 1978). Urbana: National Council of Teachers of English.

Ladusaw, W. A. (1988). 'Semantic theory' in Newmeyer, F. J., ed. *Linguistics: the Cambridge survey* I. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Latham, R. G. (1841). *The English language* (edn. 3). London: Taylor, Walton, and Maberley.

Leech, G. N. (1966). *English in advertising*. London: Longmans.

Leech, G. N. & Svartvik, J. (1975). *A communicative grammar of English.* London: Longman (3rd edn. 2003).

Leech, G. N., Deuchar, M., & Hoogenraad, R. (1982). *English grammar for today*. London and Basingstoke: Macmillan Press in conjunction with the English Association.

Linn, A. (2006). 'English grammar writing' in Aarts, B. & McMahon, A., eds. *The handbook of English linguistics*, 72–92. Malden, MA and Oxford: Blackwell.

Long, R. B. (1961). *The sentence and its parts: a grammar of contemporary English*. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.

Lyons, J. (1968). *Introduction to theoretical linguistics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Lyons, J. (1970). *Chomsky*. London: Fontana/Collins.

Lyons, J. (1977). *Semantics* (2 volumes). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Lyons, J. (1991). *Chomsky* (edn. 3). London: Fontana.

McArthur, T. (1992) (ed.). *The Oxford companion to the English language*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

McCarthy, M. (1991). *Discourse analysis and language teachers*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

McCawley, J. (1998). *The syntactic phenomena of English* (edn. 2). Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

McEnery, T. & Hardie, A. (2012). *Corpus linguistics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

McMahon, A. (1994). *Understanding language change.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Malinowski, B. (1923). 'The problem of meaning in primitive languages' in Ogden, C. K. & Richards, I. A. *The meaning of meaning*, 451–510. London: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trubner and Co. Ltd.

Marsh, G. P. (1860). *Lectures on the English language*. London: John Murray.

Matthews, P. H. (1974). *Morphology*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Matthews, P. H. (1991). *Morphology* (edn. 2). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Matthews, P. H. (1993). *Grammatical theory in the United States from Bloomfield to Chomsky*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Matthews, P. H. (2007). *Syntactic relations: a critical survey*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Matthews, P. H. (2014). *The concise Oxford dictionary of linguistics* (edn. 3). Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Meisel, J. M. (2011). *First and second language acquisition*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Meyerhoff, M. (2011). *Introducing sociolinguistics* (edn. 2). Abingdon: Routledge.

Miller, D. G. (2002). *Nonfinite structures in theory and change*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Minkova, D. & Stockwell, R. (2009). *English words: history and structure* (edn. 2). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Mitchell, T. F. (1975). 'Syntax (and associated matters)' in Bolton (1975), 135–213.

Morley, G. D. (1985). *An introduction to systemic grammar*. London and Basingstoke: Macmillan.

Morris, R. (1872). *Historical outlines of English accidence*. London: Macmillan.

Mort, S. (1986). *Longman Guardian new words*. Harlow: Longman.

Murphy, M. L. (2010). *Lexical meaning*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Murray, L. (1824). *English grammar* (edn. 38). London: Longman, Hurst, Rees, Orme, Brown and Green.

New English dictionary (1884–1928). (*Oxford English dictionary*, edn. 1). Oxford: Clarendon Press.

Newmeyer, F. J. (1986). *Linguistic theory in America* (edn. 2). San Diego, Calif.: Academic Press.

Nida, E. A. (1948). 'The analysis of grammatical constituents' in *Language* 24: 168–177.

Nida, E. A. (1960). *A synopsis of English syntax*. Norman, OK: Summer Institute of Linguistics of the University of Oklahoma.

Nida, E. A. (1964). *Toward a science of translating*. Leiden: E. J. Brill.

Nida, E. A. (1969). 'Science of translation' in *Language* 45: 483–498.

Nikolaeva, I. (2007). 'Introduction' in Nikolaeva, I., ed. *Finiteness: theoretical and empirical foundations*, 1–19. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Noreen, A. (1904). *Vårt språk, Nysvensk grammatik i utförlig framställning*. Lund: C. W. K. Gleerup.

Olsson, Y. (1961). *On the syntax of the English verb*. Gothenburg Studies in English 12. Göteborg: Acta Universitatis Gothoburgensis.

Onions, C. T. (1932). *An advanced English syntax* (edn. 6). London: Routledge and Kegan Paul.

Palmer, F. R. (1975). 'Language and languages' in Bolton (1975).

Palmer, F. R. (1984). *Grammar* (new edn.). Harmondsworth: Penguin.

Palmer, F. R. (1987). *The English verb* (edn. 2). London: Longman.

Palmer, H. E. (1924). *A grammar of spoken English, on a strictly phonetic basis*. Cambridge: Heffer.

Partridge, E. (1947). *Usage and abusage* (UK edn.). London: Hamish Hamilton.

Payne, J., Huddleston, R. & Pullum, G. K. (2010). 'The distribution and category status of adjectives and adverbs' in *Word Structure* 3.1: 31–81.

Plag, I. (2003). *Word-formation in English*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Platt, J. T. (1977). 'The sub-varieties of Singapore English: their sociolectal and functional status' in Crewe, W. ed. *The English language in Singapore*. Singapore: Eastern Universities Press.

Poutsma, H. (1904–29). *A grammar of late modern English* (5 volumes). Groningen: P. Noordhoff.

Prince, A. and Smolensky, P. (2004). *Optimality theory: constraint interaction in generative grammar*. Malden, MA: Wiley-Blackwell.

Puttenham, G. (1589). *The arte of English poesie* (ed. Arber, 1869). London: Edward Arber.

Quirk, R. (1988). Introduction in Greenbaum, S. & Whitcut, J., eds. *Longman guide to English usage*, iii–xii. Harlow: Longman.

Quirk, R. & Greenbaum, S. (1973). *A university grammar of English*. London: Longman.

Quirk, R., Greenbaum, S., Leech, G., & Svartvik, J. (1972). *A grammar of contemporary English*. London: Longman.

Quirk, R., Greenbaum, S., Leech, G., & Svartvik, J. (1985). *A comprehensive grammar of the English language*. London and New York: Longman.

Robins, R. H. (1953). 'Formal divisions in Sundanese' in *Transactions of the Philological Society*, 52 (1): 109–141.

Robins, R. H. (1964). *General linguistics: an introductory survey*. London: Longmans.

Robins, R. H. (1990). *A short history of linguistics* (edn. 3). London: Longman.

Rosch, E. (1978). 'Principles of categorization' in Rosch, E. & Loyd, B., eds. *Cognition and categorization*, 27–48.

Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

Ross, A. S. C. (1958). *Etymology: with especial reference to English*. London: Andre Deutsch.

Sag, I. A., Wasow, T., & Bender, E. (2003). *Syntactic theory: a formal introduction* (edn. 2). Stanford: CSLI Publications.

Samuels, M. L. (1972). *Linguistic evolution with special reference to English*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Siegel, J. (2008). *The emergence of pidgin and creole languages*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Spencer, A. & Luís, A. R. (2012). *Clitics: an introduction*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Stockwell, R., Schachter, P., & Partee, B. H. (1973). *The major syntactic structures of English*. New York and London: Holt, Rinehart and Winston.

Strang, B. M. H. (1962). *Modern English structure*. London: Edward Arnold. (3rd edn. 1968).

Strang, B. M. H. (1970). *A history of English*. London: Methuen.

Stump, G. T. (2001). *Inflectional morphology: a theory of paradigm structure*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Sweet, H. (1874). *A history of English sounds*. London: English Dialect Society.

Sweet, H. (1892a). *A short historical English grammar*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

Sweet, H. (1892b). *A new English grammar*, Part 1. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

Sweet, H. (1898). *A new English grammar*, Part 2. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

Thompson, S. (1985). ' "Subordination" in formal and informal discourse' in Schiffrin, D., ed. *Meaning, form, and use in context: linguistic applications*. Proceedings of the 1984 Georgetown University Roundtable on Linguistics, 85–94. Washington DC: Georgetown University Press.

Ullman, S. (1962). *Semantics*. Oxford: Blackwell.

Vachek, J. (1964). 'Notes on the phonematic value of the Modern English [ŋ]-sound' in Abercrombie, D. et al., eds. *In honour of Daniel Jones: Papers contributed on the occasion of his eightieth birthday*, 191–205. London: Longmans.

Vanderveken, D. (1990). *Meaning and speech acts*, volume 1. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Van Valin, R. (1993). 'A synopsis of Role and Reference Grammar' in Van Valin, R., ed. *Advances in Role and Reference Grammar*, 1–164. Amsterdam and Philadelphia: John Benjamins.

Van Valin, R. & LaPolla, R. J. (1997). *Syntax: structure, meaning and function*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Wasow, T. (2001). 'Generative grammar' in Aronoff, M. & Rees-Miller, J., eds. *The handbook of linguistics*, 295–318. Malden, MA and Oxford: Blackwell.

Watson, I. H. (1985). Letter to the editor. In *English Today* 1.4: 3.

Weekley, E. (1912). *The romance of words*. London: John Murray.

Weiner, E. S. C. & Delahunty, A. (1994). *The Oxford guide to English usage*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Whorf, B. L. (*ante* 1941). 'The relation of habitual thought and behavior to language' in Carroll, J. B., ed. *Language, thought and reality: selected writings of Benjamin Lee Whorf* (1956), 134–159. Cambridge: MIT Press.

Wilkins, D. A. (1976). *Notional syllabuses*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Zandvoort, R. W. (1945). *A handbook of English grammar*. Groningen: Wolters-Noordhoff.

Useful Web Links

SEE WEB LINKS

This is a web-linked dictionary. To access the websites, go to the dictionary's web page at www.oup.com/uk/reference/resources/englishgrammar, click on Web links in the Resources section, and click straight through to the relevant websites.

EAW: English for Academic Writing

- An app for mobile devices (Apple and Android phones and tablets) which offers guidance for improving your academic writing.

The Electronic World Atlas of Varieties of English

- A database on grammatical variation in a wide range of different varieties of English, compiled at the University of Freiburg, Germany.

ESP: English Spelling and Punctuation

- An app for mobile devices (Apple and Android phones and tablets) which offers a complete approach to improving your spelling and punctuation.

Glossary of Linguistic Terms

- A glossary of linguistics produced by SIL International.

Glottopedia

- A freely editable encyclopaedia of linguistics.

iGE: the interactive Grammar of English

- A grammar app for mobile devices (Apple and Android phones and tablets), developed at University College London.

The Internet Grammar of English

- An online course in English grammar written by linguists at University College London.

Lexicon of Linguistics

- A glossary of linguistics compiled at Utrecht University.

Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English Online

- An online dictionary covering British and American English.

Macmillan Dictionary Online

- An online dictionary with an option to select British or American English.

Merriam Webster Online

- An online dictionary of American English.

Oxford Advanced American Dictionary Online

- An online dictionary of American English.

Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary Online

- An online dictionary covering British and American English.

Oxford Dictionaries Online

- An online dictionary with an option to select British & World English or American English.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR REFERENCE BOOK

Grammar and Error Correction Guide and Phrasal Verb Book

Jacqueline Melvin

Chapter one

- To Be or Not to Be
- Adjectives Associated With The Senses
- Present Simple V. Present Continuous

Chapter two

- Third Person Singular V. Third Person Plural
- Subject before Verb in the Affirmative
- Double Subject Error
- Omission of subject
- Pronouns and Possessive Pronouns
- Imperative
- When not to use a subject pronoun
- Subject before Verb in Questions
- Omission of Auxiliary Verb in Questions
- Subject and Object Pronoun Confusion
- Subject Question Error

Like v. Would like

Infinitive Of Purpose

Chapter three

Adverbs of Frequency

Adjective or Adverb

Adverbs Of Manner

Adverbs Of Place

Adverbs Of Time

Adverbs Of Degree

Chapter four

To Have or Not To Have

Errors When Forming Past Simple Negatives

Past Simple Versus Past Progressive

Non Existent Plural Adjectives

Plural nouns standard and irregular

Article Errors

Wrong Usage

The Genitive/Possessive

Comparison Errors

Chapter five

Used to- Be used to- Get used to

Be Used To Versus Get Used To

Think and Hope Errors

Countable or Uncountable

Too - Too Much - Too Many

Fewer versus Less

Enough Errors

Enough + Noun versus Adjective + Enough

Both- Either- Neither

Reflexive Errors

Each Other Versus One Another

Chapter six

Errors when using Modal Auxiliary Verbs

May versus Can and Could

Shall and May

Should

Chapter seven

Supposed to - Meant to - Should

Chapter eight

The Perfect Errors

Present Perfect (1)

A time in your life before now

Present Perfect (2)

Past to present

Present Perfect (3)

Before now or right now

Present Perfect Continuous (1)

In Progress From Past To Present

Present Perfect Continuous (2)

Until Recently

Past Perfect Errors

Past Perfect Continuous (1)

Past Perfect Continuous (2)

Chapter nine

Conditional Errors

First Conditional

Second Conditional Errors

Third Conditional Errors

The Mixed Conditional

Wish Errors

Even though versus Even if

Any longer versus Anymore and No longer

Anymore Versus Any more

Chapter ten

No Future In English

To Be Going To + Infinitive

Will Versus Going To

Common Errors when using ‘will’

The Future Continuous

The Future Perfect

Future Perfect Continuous

Reported Errors

Direct and indirect object errors

Chapter eleven

Preposition Errors

Verbs With More Than One Preposition

Chapter twelve

Wrong Verb Usage

Wrong Adjective/Adverb Usage

Feeling Errors

Verbs Of Feeling

Miscellaneous Errors

Chapter thirteen

Wrong Usage of ‘Spend’

Non Personalized Usage

Chapter fourteen

Infinitive or Gerund

Using Connectors

Terms Of Confusion

Expressing Your Opinion

Chapter fifteen

Phrasal Verbs

Answers

Answers

Answers

Answers

Answers

Answers

Answers

Answers

Answers

Verb + Particle

Answers

The Nightmare Of “Get”

Answers

The Nightmare Of Make And Do

Chapter sixteen

How To Increase Your Vocabulary

Summary of The Main Tenses

© Copyright 2014

All rights reserved. No portion of this book may be reproduced - mechanically, electronically, or by any other means, including photocopying without the permission of the author.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE FOR ESL STUDENTS

Introduction

This book is a three in one - grammar reference guide, error correction and phrasal verb book. It deals with the most common problematic areas amongst students of English as a Second Language. It starts off with basic errors common when using the present simple, past simple, present continuous and past continuous structures and gives a clear in depth explanation on how they are used. It then moves on to more complex tenses.

Good clear examples and explanations are illustrated throughout the book. It looks at the present perfect with ‘for’ and ‘since’ as well as clarifying when to use the present perfect when referring to a moment before the present. It also explains clearly the use of the present perfect continuous with ‘for’ and ‘since’ and how to use it for an action in progress which recently finished. Clear distinction has been made on when and how to use the past perfect and the past perfect continuous. In addition, all the conditionals are clearly explained. There is a guide on how to use the prepositions, when and how to use ‘reported speech’. Learn how to use adjectives and adverbs correctly. How and when do we use transitive and intransitive verbs? You will find everything you need to know all in one book. Detailed explanations are given on how to use *all* the future forms. If the modal auxiliary verbs are causing you confusion, then this is the book for you. Are you unsure about how to use 'connectors?' Are the phrasal verbs driving you mad?

A section of the book is dedicated to some of the most commonly used phrasal verbs in the English language. Test your phrasal verb knowledge - in context. Answers are given. ... All this and much more ....

Please note: This book is based on standard British English.

ABOUT THE AUTHOR

Jacqueline Melvin has been a teacher of English as a foreign language for over 18 years. Born in the North East of Scotland, she has spent most of her adult life abroad, teaching students of various nationalities how to speak English effectively.

Throughout her teaching career she has gained enormous insight into the most common errors made by students learning English as a second language. This book has been put together to clarify the correct usage of the tense system.

CHAPTER ONE

TO BE OR NOT TO BE

1

I have 32 ✗

I am 32. ✓

Many languages use the verb ‘have’ to express age. In English we use the auxiliary verb ‘be’.

We don’t say: ‘I am 32 years’.
We say: ‘I’m 32’ or ‘I am 32 years old’.

I have cold. ✗

I am cold. ✓

I am cold = I feel cold

I have thirsty. ✗

I am thirsty. ✓

I am thirsty = I need something to drink.

You have wrong. ✗

You are wrong. ✓

In English we frequently use the auxiliary verb ‘be’ with adjectives.

Example:

It is cold today.

It was hot yesterday.

She is sad today.

Adjectives Associated With The Senses

2.

It is common to use the verbs associated with the senses with adjectives. Those verbs are as follows:

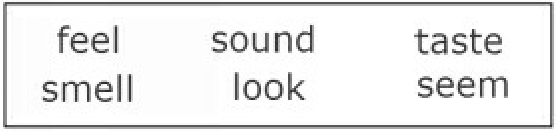

feel	sound	taste
smell	look	seem

Example:

I feel terrible today (something you feel inside)

You sound tired (this is my opinion - I detect tiredness in your voice)

She didn’t sound Italian (again, this is my opinion going by her voice)

You look fabulous today (this is my opinion when I look at you)

He doesn’t look very happy today (again my opinion. What my eyes tell me)

This milk tastes funny.

*The adjective ‘funny’ has two meanings. It means something that makes you laugh or something strange. In the above example it means ‘strange’.

Adjective + verb

We normally use an infinitive after an adjective.

Example:

It was really great to see you again.

For adjectives followed by a preposition, then we use the gerund.

Example:

He is fed up with cleaning every day.

She is tired of working so many hours.

PRESENT SIMPLE V. PRESENT CONTINUOUS

3.

Hans is German.

He’s coming from Berlin. ✗

He comes from Berlin. ✓

He’s coming from Berlin = an action in progress at the time of speaking.

He comes from Berlin = an actual fact

Q) When do we use the present simple?

A) When we speak about habits, facts/general truths and timetables .It is called ‘simple’ as its basic form consists of one word only.

Example:

I have a shower every morning. (Habit)

I live in London. (Fact)

The train leaves at 7pm. This is a fixed timetable where the present simple is used to indicate a future event.

We can also say: We leave for Berlin tomorrow at 7pm, as the speaker sees this as a fixed event similar to a timetable.

Normally we use state verbs for a fact. Some state verbs are as follows:

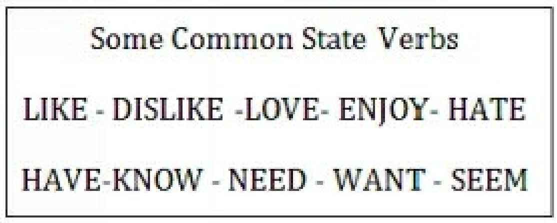

Some Common State Verbs

LIKE - DISLIKE -LOVE- ENJOY- HATE

HAVE-KNOW - NEED - WANT - SEEM

Of course some action verbs used for habits can also be seen as a state or a general truth.

Example:

I play tennis. (State/fact/general truth)

I play tennis every week. (Habit)

We can never use state verbs for habit.

I know John (State/fact/general truth)

I know John every week cannot be said.

We can also use the present simple tense when narrating a story; even if the story is in the past.

We also use the present simple with the zero conditional, which means something which is always true.

Example:

If you drop an egg, it breaks. (Every time)

If we get up early, we always go jogging. (Every time we get up early)

Q) When do we use the present continuous?

A) We use the present continuous to speak about actions in progress at the moment of speaking

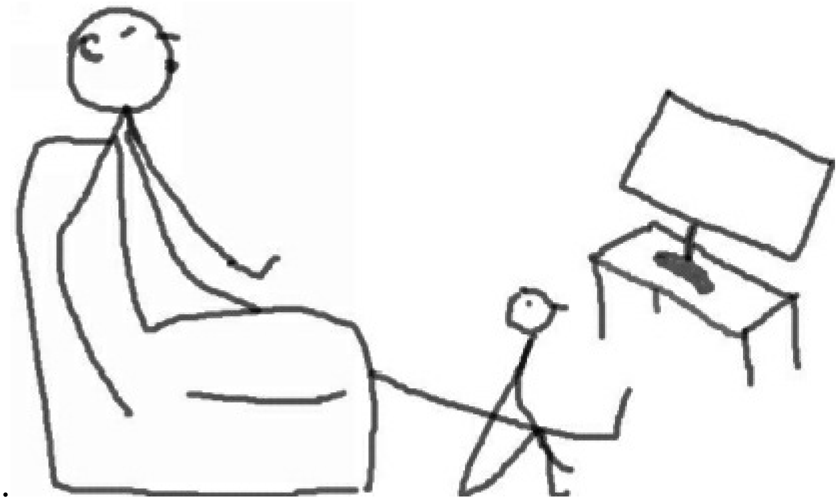

The boy and his father are watching TV

The Affirmative (long form)

I am watching the movie.

You are watching the movie.

He, she, it is watching the movie.

We are watching the movie.

They are watching the movie.

The Question

Am I watching the movie?

Are you watching the movie?

Is he, she, it watching the movie?

Are we watching the movie?

Are they watching the movie?

The negative

I am not watching the movie.

You are not watching the movie.

He, she, it is not watching the movie.

We are not watching the movie.

They are not watching the movie.

Affirmative (short forms)

I’m watching the movie.

You’re watching the movie.

He’s watching the movie.

She’s watching the movie.

It’s watching the movie. (The dog)

We’re watching the movie.

They’re watching the movie.

The negative (short form)

I’m not watching the movie.

You’re not watching the movie.

He’s not watching the movie.

She’s not watching the movie.

It’s not watching the movie.

We’re not watching the movie.

They’re not watching the movie.

There is a variant to the above.

We can abbreviate the negative ‘not’ instead of the auxiliary with the only exception of first person.

Compare:

You aren’t watching the movie.

He isn’t watching the movie.

She isn’t watching the movie.
It isn’t watching the movie.
We aren’t watching the movie.
You aren’t watching the movie.

There is no contraction (short form) with the question form. The only exception is in third person singular when using a question word.

Example:
Where is he going? Where’s he going?
What is she doing? What’s she doing?

Chapter two

Third Person Singular V. Third Person Plural

1.

He live in Paris. ✗

He lives in Paris. ✓

Unfortunately many ‘non native’ speakers of English continue to omit the ‘s’ when using third person singular. We only need to remember the‘s’ when using the present simple affirmative. One of the least tolerable errors in the English language is ‘subject and verb’ disagreement. Not only is it incorrect but it sounds bad.

Other examples of third person singular and third person plural errors are as follows:

People lives. ✗

People live. ✓

A person lives or people live. We say ‘one person’, but ‘two people’.

Everyone have. ✗

Everyone has. ✓

Everyone = each single person. It does not refer to a group but separate individuals, therefore falls into the category of ‘third person’ singular.

One of my students have gone to England. ✗

One of my students has gone to England. ✓

This error is due to incorrect verb conjugation. The verb should be conjugated with ‘one of’ and not ‘students’.

Other examples which take on the verb in third person singular are:

No-one/nobody has someone/somebody has anyone/anybody has

SUBJECT BEFORE VERB IN THE AFFIRMATIVE

2.

Arrived John at the station. ✗

John arrived at the station. ✓

Extremely common for non native speakers to forget that in English the subject comes before the verb in affirmations.

Double Subject Error

3.

My brother hespeaks English . ✗

My brother speaks English. ✓

My country it is very beautiful. ✗

My country is beautiful. ✓

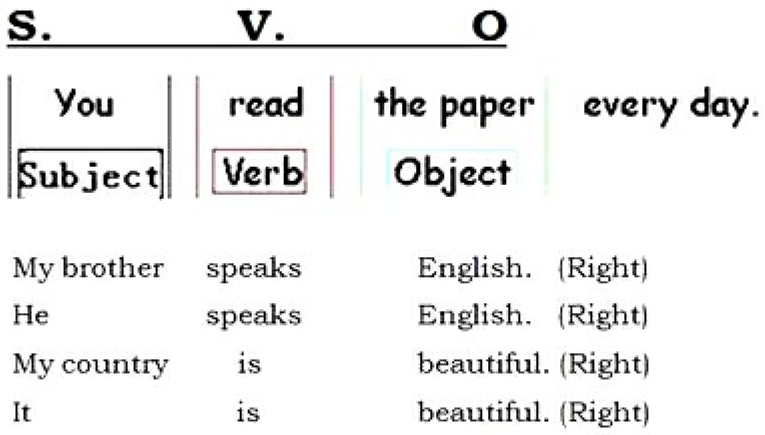

S. V. O

You	read	the paper	every day.
Subject	Verb	Object	

My brother	speaks	English.	(Right)
He	speaks	English.	(Right)
My country	is	beautiful.	(Right)
It	is	beautiful.	(Right)

This my car cost me a lot of money. ✗

My car cost a lot of money. ✓

These are classical errors. In the above examples, the speaker has used two subjects instead of only one.

OMISSION OF SUBJECT

4.

I think is going to rain. ✗

I think it is going to rain. ✓

In the first example, there is no subject before ‘is’. We always need a subject before the verb. When we talk about the weather, time, speed, distance or things, we use the subject ‘it’.

Here is another example of this kind of error:

Is alright to meet at 4 instead of at 5? ✗

Is it alright to meet at 4 instead of at 5? ✓

In the first example (the one which is incorrect) we do not know ‘what’ is alright. There is no subject. In the second example, we have ‘it’ as the subject so this sentence is correct.

PRONOUNS AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

5.

Pronouns designate the person we are speaking about/referring to. The subject pronouns – I, you, he, she, it, we, you (pl) and they, can be substituted with pronouns, nouns or possessive pronouns.

He is ready or John is ready. The subject pronoun 'he', substitutes the noun 'John.'

The book is on the table – it is on the table. The book is a noun therefore the (subject pronoun) of the sentence. Instead of repeating the noun 'book' we can substitute it with 'it'.

Sentence patterns:

A sentence always consists of at least two parts, – a subject and a predicate (verb).

There are long sentences and there are short ones. A sentence, whether short or long, expresses a complete idea.

A complete sentence must consist of an independent clause – that is, a subject and verb that make a complete thought. Independent clauses are called independent because they make sense when they stand on their own.

Example:
I refuse.
The wind blows.
Electricity costs.
Dogs bark.
Bees sting.
Cats meow.

We cannot say for example ‘I go’ as this has no meaning on its own. It does not express a complete idea. It is a dependent clause – (fragmented). The listener expects to hear more information from the speaker.
I go (where?) I go to the cinema every week.

Compound subject (two subjects related to the same verb):
James and his colleagues collaborate.

We can make the sentences above longer by adding more information.

I refuse to eat that awful food. (Here we state ‘what’ I refuse to do).

The wind blows (where? when? why?) in the north. (Here we state ‘where’ the wind blows).

The wind blows at night. (Here we state ‘when’ it blows)

Electricity costs a lot. (Here we state ‘how much’ it costs)

Dogs bark when they are hungry, happy or angry. (Here we state ‘why or when’ they bark)

Bees sting people. (Here we state ‘who’ they sting)

Cats meow when they want attention or when they want to eat. (Here we state ‘when’ they meow)

They meow because they want attention. (Here we state ‘why’ they meow.

James and his colleagues collaborate on the project. (Here we state ‘what’ they collaborate on).

We can elaborate more on a sentence and add adjectives for description.

Good friends are loyal people.

Adjective ‘good’ + subject (noun) ‘friends’ + verb ‘be’ (are) + adjective ‘loyal’ + noun ‘people’.

In the above sentence we have used adjectives to describe the noun.

“What kind of friends?” Good friends.

“What kind of people?” Loyal people.

We can make sentences even longer by adding more information.

Electricity costs a lot during the day in most countries.

Here we have added the answer to three questions. How much? When? and Where?

How much? A lot – When? During the day – Where? In most countries.

We can give more details and add an adjective ***and*** *an adverb. As mentioned before, the adjective describes the noun whereas adverbs describe the verb.*

Solar powered electricity rarely costs much during the day.

Here we use solar *and* powered – two adjectives to describe the noun ‘electricity’, ‘What kind of electricity?’ we ask. We used ‘rarely’ which is an adverb of frequency, to describe the verb ‘cost’ and we also used * ‘much’ (another adverb) to describe the verb ‘cost’.

**(Be careful with 'much' as it has many functions other than that of an adverb).*

For more on adverbs of frequency and the position they take in a sentence please go to Chapter three - Adverbs of Frequency.

So, to create sentences we must ask ourselves questions - Why? When? Where? How? etc...

When we use the possessive pronouns - My, your, his, her, its, their, your and our, they refer to whom something belongs.

Example:
His car or John's car. NOT the car of John.
Her book or Mary's book.
Compound subject (two subjects related to the same verb).
Michael and Paul's cars are in the garage **or** their cars are in the garage.
(See more on the possessives in Chapter four 'the genitive/possessive)
So, when forming sentences in English, always ask yourself questions.

Take a look at the variations below for relatively simple sentence constructions.

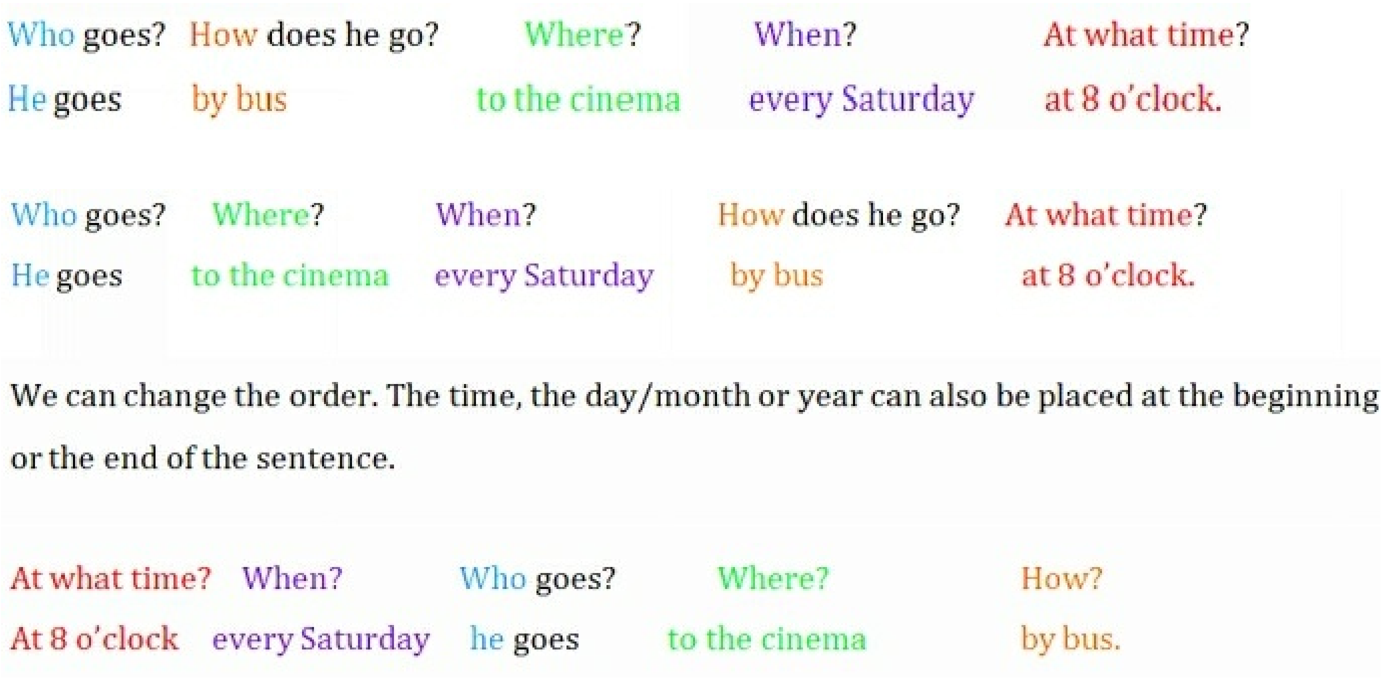

Who goes?	How does he go?	Where?	When?	At what time?
He goes	by bus	to the cinema	every Saturday	at 8 o'clock.

Who goes?	Where?	When?	How does he go?	At what time?
He goes	to the cinema	every Saturday	by bus	at 8 o'clock.

We can change the order. The time, the day/month or year can also be placed at the beginning or the end of the sentence.

At what time?	When?	Who goes?	Where?	How?
At 8 o'clock	every Saturday	he goes	to the cinema	by bus.

IMPERATIVE

WHEN NOT TO USE A SUBJECT PRONOUN

6.

Open you the window. ✗

Open the window. ✓

When we use the imperative, there is no subject. We use the infinitive without 'to'.

Other examples:

Stand up

Sit down

Turn off the light before you leave

Go to bed

Q) How do we form the negative when we use the imperative?

A) You just put don't before the infinitive.

Example:

Don't open the window.

Don't turn off the light before you go out.

Q) When do we use the imperative?

A) We use the imperative to give orders/commands, exclamations and general instructions.

Help! (Exclamation)

The following example can be seen on the label of a jumper.

Washing instructions

Wash all woollen garments in lukewarm water.

Do not smoke in the airport.

Do not leave your luggage unattended.

(No contractions in formal announcements or on notices)

Subject before Verb in Questions

7.

Where does work Mary? ✗

Where does Mary work? ✓

It's important to remember that the subject comes after the auxiliary verb when forming a question.

Example:

Do you speak English?

Do is the auxiliary verb - you is the subject, and speak is the infinitive. This type of question requires no question word and begins with the auxiliary. With this kind of question, you usually answer with what is known as the 'short answer' - that is, Yes I do/No I don't. Questions which start with a question word have a full answer.

Example:

A) Where do you live?

B) I live in London.

OMISSION OF AUXILIARY VERB IN QUESTIONS

8.

He likes me? ✗

Does he like me? ✓

You understand? ✗

Do you understand? ✓

You speak English? ✗

Do you speak English? ✓

Many learners of English forget to use an auxiliary verb when forming questions thus rendering the intended ‘question’ an ‘affirmation.’

If the question begins with a question word, then remember QASI, that is, question word, auxiliary verb, subject and infinitive of the verb.

If the question has no question word and begins with an auxiliary, then remember ASI, that is, auxiliary verb, subject and infinitive of the verb.

When there is no verb in the question, we use the auxiliary verb be instead of do or does

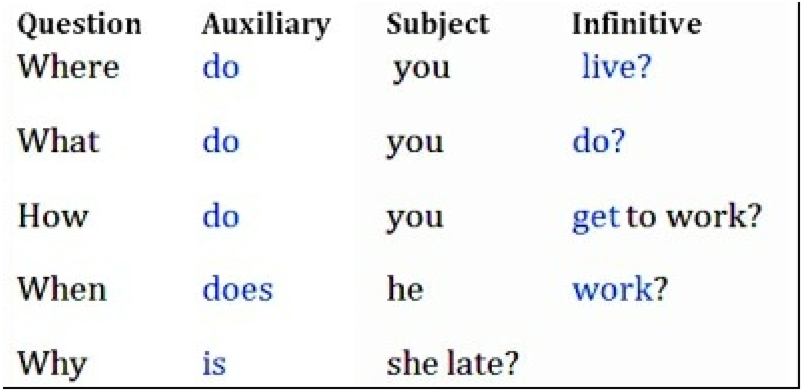

Question	**Auxiliary**	**Subject**	**Infinitive**
Where	do	you	live?
What	do	you	do?
How	do	you	get to work?
When	does	he	work?
Why	is	she late?	

It is important to remember that we do not use ‘do’ or ‘does’ with ‘be’. This is because two auxiliary verbs cannot be used together. When using ‘be’, we invert the subject with the verb when we want to ask a question.

Q) How do we make the negative of be?

A) Just add ‘not’ after the verb.

See the following chart.

TO BE
OR NOT
TO BE

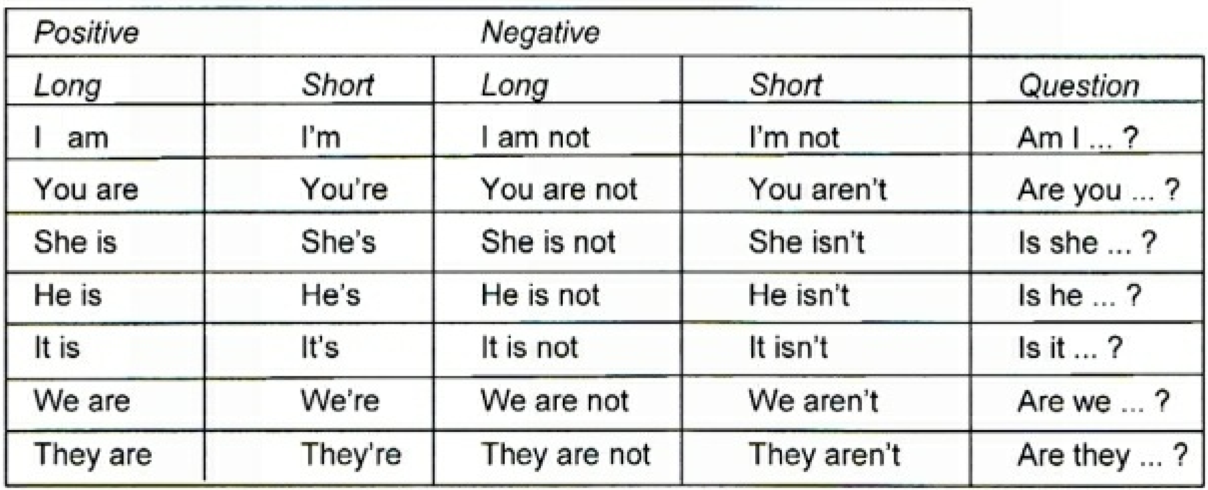

Positive		*Negative*		
Long	*Short*	*Long*	*Short*	*Question*
I am	I'm	I am not	I'm not	Am I ... ?
You are	You're	You are not	You aren't	Are you ... ?
She is	She's	She is not	She isn't	Is she ... ?
He is	He's	He is not	He isn't	Is he ... ?
It is	It's	It is not	It isn't	Is it ... ?
We are	We're	We are not	We aren't	Are we ... ?
They are	They're	They are not	They aren't	Are they ... ?

The auxiliary verb ‘be’ is used in the absence of other verbs in the present and past simple tenses. ‘Understand’ is a verb so that is why we need ‘do’ and ‘does’ to help the verb to become a question. The same applies to ‘speak’. It is a verb so we need to use ‘do’ to form the question or ‘does’ to form the question in third person singular. The same applies to all the verbs in English apart from the verb ‘be’. As already mentioned, we use ‘do not’ when forming the negative, or ‘does not’ when forming the negative in third person, contracted to ‘don’t’ and ‘doesn’t’ in spoken language or informal written English.

Example:

I do not understand. Contracted - I don’t understand.

In third person:

Example:

My father does not understand me. Contracted - My father doesn’t understand me.

SUBJECT AND OBJECT PRONOUN CONFUSION

9.

I saw she. ✗

I saw her.✓

It is important to remember that the subject pronoun comes before the verb and the object pronoun comes after *it*.

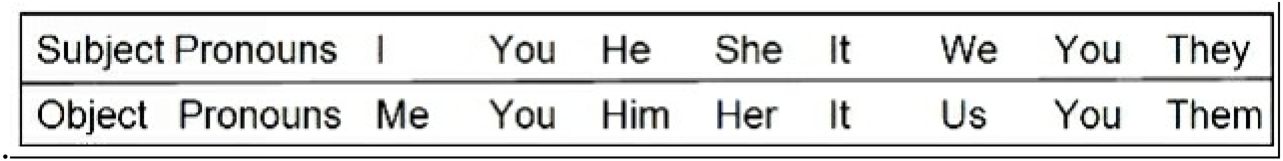

Subject Pronouns	I	You	He	She	It	We	You	They
Object Pronouns	Me	You	Him	Her	It	Us	You	Them

I saw you and Jane last night or I saw you (pl).

He saw you and me or he saw us.

Subject Question Error

10.

Q) Are there any other types of questions in English?

A) Yes, there is the 'subject question', where the subject is in the question. In fact it is common for students who are learning English as a second language to make the following type of error.

What did happen last night? ✗

What happened last night? ✓

This is a different type of question from the normal ones. The subject is already in the question so we do not use an auxiliary verb. When we use a subject question in the past simple tense, the verb needs to be used in the past tense too. This is because the auxiliary verb 'did', the past tense of 'do', is absent.

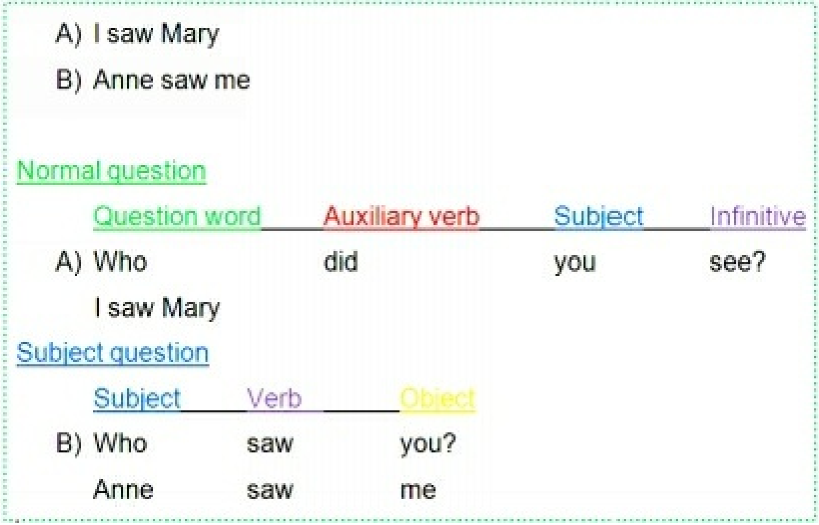

A) I saw Mary
B) Anne saw me

Normal question

	Question word	Auxiliary verb	Subject	Infinitive
A)	Who	did	you	see?
	I saw Mary			

Subject question

	Subject	Verb	Object
B)	Who	saw	you?
	Anne	saw	me

Like v. Would like

11.

Do you like to see my photographs? ✗

Would you like to see my photographs?✓

The intended meaning of the speaker was to ask the polite form of 'Do you want?'

'Would like' + infinite is a kinder way of asking this question.

This first sentence is incorrect. We expect the speaker to say 'when' Remember that 'like + infinitive' means only on a specific occasion.

Example:

I like to look at my photograph album before I go to bed. (On this occasion)

I like looking at my photographs (generally, we do not need to state 'when')

Q. How do we make the negative and affirmative of 'would like?'

A. To form the negative we add 'not' between 'would' and 'like'.

Examples:

I would like to go to New York this summer. Contracted: I'd like to go ...

I would not like to live in a hot country. Contracted: I wouldn't like to live ...

INFINITIVE OF PURPOSE

12.

I went to the supermarket for to buy some bread. ✗

I went to the supermarket to buy bread. ✓

In English we use what is known as the ‘infinitive of purpose’. This states the reason we do something or go somewhere. ‘Why did you go to the supermarket?’ We do not put the preposition ‘for’ before the infinitive. We use ‘for’ with a noun.

More examples are:

A) Why are you going to London?

B) To see the Queen.

A) Why did you switch on the TV?

B) To watch the news.

We can also say, ‘because I wanted to watch the news but this phrase is rather long. We tend to cut out ‘because I wanted to’ and simply say, ‘to watch the news’. Sometimes we cannot use the infinitive of purpose;

Example:

A) Why did you eat the biscuits?

B) Because I was hungry.

This is because there is no verb to put into the infinitive. ‘Hungry’ is an adjective. Adjectives are often preceded by the verb ‘to be’, as previously mentioned.

CHAPTER THREE

ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

1.

We go usually to the cinema on Sundays. ✗

We usually go to the cinema on Sundays. ✓

The adverbs of frequency come before the main verb but always after the auxiliary verb ‘be’. They are used mainly with the present simple tense.

Compare:

I am never late for work.

I always have lunch at one ‘o’ clock.

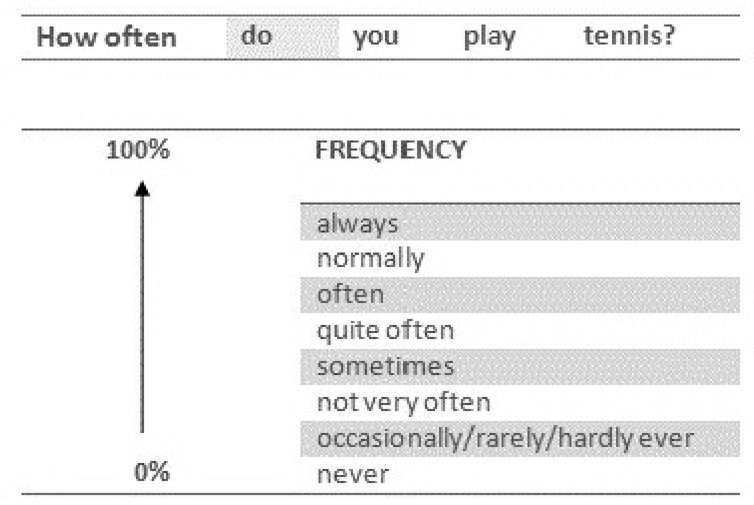

How often	do	you	play	tennis?

100%	FREQUENCY
	always
	normally
	often
	quite often
	sometimes
	not very often
	occasionally/rarely/hardly ever
0%	never

I hardly ever have breakfast. = I rarely have breakfast

He is never on time = He is always late

ADJECTIVE OR ADVERB

2.

I speak a good English. ✗

I speak good English. ✓

I speak English good. ✗

I speak English well. ✓

It is incorrect to say ‘a good English’ as the noun ‘English’ is not quantifiable. ‘I speak English good’ is also incorrect as we need to use an adverb when describing a verb. ‘Good’ is an adjective used to describe a noun. ‘Well’ is the adverb derived from ‘good’ and describes how you speak English.

Here are some more common errors of the same type:

I did good in the English exam. ✗

I did well in the English exam.✓

I work hardly. ✗

I work hard.✓

He drives fastly. ✗

He drives fast. ✓

Many adverbs end in ‘ly’ but as you can see, there are some irregular ones which need to be memorized. ‘Fast’ is one of them. The adjective and the adverb are the same. A Ferrari is a fast car. He drives fast. ‘Hard’ is another irregular adverb. If we say ‘I work hardly’, it could impede understanding. The listener may think you mean ‘I hardly work’ which has the opposite meaning. ‘Hardly (ever)’ is a frequency adverb and means very rarely.

It is important to note that the verbs of the senses, ‘feel, taste, look, sound, smell and also seem, are described by an adjective and not an adverb. Remember, English is full of exceptions to the general rule.

Examples:

You look good.

Yes, I’ve had my hair cut.

She sounds English. (an opinion going by her voice)

She isn't English, she's Italian.(a fact)

You look good✓

You look well.✓

In the two examples given above, both are right. Not only is 'well' an adverb, but it is also an adjective. Its opposite adjective is 'ill', while the opposite of 'good' is 'bad'.

When we say, 'You look good,' we are referring to the person's physical appearance. If on the other hand we say, 'You look well', we are referring to the health or wellbeing of the person.

Other examples of adjective/adverb being the same are:

I get up early every day. (Adverb of time)

He is an early bird. (Adjective)

*an early bird is an idiomatic expression in English which we use to describe a person who is always up bright and early in the morning.

He is always late. (Adverb of time)

I want to watch the late night movie before I go to bed. (Adjective)

Late and early are opposite adjective/adverbs.
When learning new adjectives, adverbs and verbs, it is always a good idea to learn their opposites. Write them down in a context so as to remember them and revise them whenever possible.

Learners of English often get confused between ‘late’ and ‘lately’.
Late, as mentioned before, is both an adjective and an adverb. Lately, on the other hand is only an adverb (of time) and means ‘recently’.

Example:
He’s always late for work. (Never on time)
I have been working a lot lately. (In this recent period of time)

Sorry for the late. ✗

Sorry I’m late. ✓

We use ‘to be’ late. ‘

Idiomatic expression with ‘early’.

Early to bed, early to rise

makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise.

This means that if you go to bed early, you get enough sleep to wake up early in the morning and have enough hours in the day to work and make money. So you stay in good health and have wealth (money) to buy what you need for your life.

The early bird catches the worm.

This means that the person who is up early in the morning, is the one who makes money. If you stay in bed all morning you do not earn any money and could fall into poverty.

ADVERBS OF MANNER

3.

There are different categories of adverbs in English. They typically express manner, time, place, frequency, level of certainty, to which degree etc. Adverbs of manner tell us how something happens or how someone does something. Adverbs of manner are very often formed from adjectives by addling – ly:

Example:

She is a *beautiful* singer. She sings beautifully.

Beautiful is an adjective. It describes the noun – singer.

Beautifully is an adverb. It describes the *verb* 'sing'.

How does she sing? She sings beautifully.

He is a *slow* walker. ('Slow' is the adjective which describes the noun 'walker') He walks slowly. How does he walk? Slowly

They are *enthusiastic* students. They work enthusiastically. How do they work? Enthusiastically

The boy is a *careful* driver. He drives carefully. How does the boy drive? Carefully

The children are *happy* when they are playing. They play happily. How do the children play? They play happily.

Some more adverbs formed from the adjective with – ly endings.

bad/badly
quick/quickly
light/lightly
heavy/heavily
logic/logically
terrible/terribly

serious/seriously
automatic/automatically

ADVERBS OF PLACE

4.

These adverbs tell us where things are. They tell us about the location of the action (verb). They can refer to a direction: up, down, across, north, south, east, west. They can also refer to distance: far away, near, nearby. They also tell us the relation of one object to another: behind, inside, outside, next to, between, over, above, below, under, underneath. through, round, back etc.

Example:

The house is situated north of the city. Where is the house situated? North – so north tells us where.

The book is underneath the newspaper. Where is the book. Underneath – tells us where the book is.

The man is behind the boy. Behind identifies the location of the man in relation to the boy.

Here, there, everywhere, somewhere and anywhere are also adverbs of place.

Example:

I put my book (where) there. Where did I put my book? I put my book there.

I looked everywhere for my book. Where did I look? Everywhere – so this is an adverb of place. I looked in every place I could think of.

Is there anywhere to sit down? Yes, you can sit down over there.

John is outside in the garden. Where is he? (outside)

Adverbs of place can also have words which end in – ward or wards. This indicates movement: homeward, backward, forward, onwards – are some examples.

We headed eastwards. This indicates movement and the direction.

You should always go forward in life.

ADVERBS OF TIME

5.

Adverbs of time tell us when something happens. Late and early, as mentioned previously, are two commonly used adverbs of time.

Here are some more examples:

I'm going to the cinema tomorrow. When are you going? Tomorrow

She left yesterday. When did she leave? Yesterday

We are eating now. When are we eating? Now

ADVERBS OF DEGREE

6.

Adverbs of degree can be placed before an adjective, verb or other adverb.

He undoubtedly stole the money. (Strong degree of certainty)

He is definitely coming to the party. He promised me. (Certainty)

Example:

It's absolutely freezing outside. (Strong degree of intensity)

She is extremely sorry for her bad behaviour. (Strong degree of intensity)

I really love reading good books. (Strong degree of intensity)

She's completely mad. (Strong degree of intensity)

I quite like Indian food. (Medium degree of intensity)

My camera was pretty expensive. (Medium degree of intensity)

It's fairly cold outside. (Medium degree of intensity)

slightly, a bit,

Nota bene: we only use 'strong' degree of intensity adverbs with extreme adjectives; for normal adjectives we use low/medium degrees of intensity.

Examples of the most common ones:

small (normal) – tiny (extreme)

big (normal) – enormous (extreme)

cold (normal) – freezing (extreme)

hot (normal) – boiling (extreme)

sad (normal) – devastated (extreme)

happy (normal) – delighted (extreme)

CHAPTER FOUR

TO HAVE OR NOT TO HAVE

1.

Another frequent error is to make the verb ‘have’ become the negative in the present simple tense. We need to always remember that the present simple negative is ‘do not’ (don’t) or in third person singular, ‘does not’ (doesn’t) as already mentioned above.

I haven’t a dog. ✗
I don’t have a dog. ✓

I don’t have a dog. ‘Have’ is an auxiliary verb as well as a verb. If we say, ‘I haven’t a dog’, we are using ‘have’ as an auxiliary and not as a verb, and so in this case, the verb is absent. We can also say ‘I haven’t got a dog’. In this case, ‘got’ is the verb and ‘have’ is the auxiliary verb but the question changes.

Compare:

Have you got a dog?

Yes I have/no I haven't.

Do you have a dog?

Yes I do/no I don't.

We can never use 'have got' interchangeably with 'have' when 'have' is used as a collocation:

Example:

I have a shower every morning.

I've got a shower.

Both are correct but have different meanings.

In the first example, you get in the shower and wash yourself.

In the second example, you own/possess a shower.

Other examples of verb collocation are:

Have a bath - I have a bath before I go to bed - I've got a bath (I own one)

Note the following collocations with 'have'.

Have breakfast

Have lunch

Have dinner

Have a coffee

Have a snack

Have a picnic

Have a good time

Have a drink

Have a holiday

There are often problems when using the past simple negative and question forms.

I hadn’t a car. ✗

I didn’t have a car. ✓

Just as in the present simple negative, we need an auxiliary verb when using the past simple negative. In the example above, that is, the one which is wrong, ‘have’ is again used as an auxiliary verb, so in this case the verb is absent.

Had you a car when you lived in London? ✗

Did you have a car when you lived in London? ✓

Again, in the first example, the one which is wrong, ‘have’ or rather its past tense ‘had’, has been used as an auxiliary verb so once again the verb is absent.

ERRORS WHEN FORMING PAST SIMPLE NEGATIVES

2.

I didn’t went to work yesterday. ✗

I didn’t go to work yesterday.✓

When we use the ‘past simple negative’ or the ‘past simple question’, the ‘do’ and the ‘does’ which we use in the present simple, become ‘did’ for the question, and ‘did not’ + infinitive of verb, for the negative or ‘ didn’t + infinitive’ when contracted. However, we must remember to use the past tense of the verb in affirmative sentences.

Example:

I didn’t go to school today.

I went to school today.

I didn’t understand the teacher.

I understood the teacher.

I didn’t speak English to him.

I spoke English to him.

PAST SIMPLE VERSUS PAST PROGRESSIVE

3.

I cleaned my house when the doorbell rang. ✗

I was cleaning the house when the door bell rang. ✓

The action of cleaning was in progress and was interrupted by a past event. Some languages, such as Hungarian and Polish, do not have the past progressive tense hence this common error.

Take a look at the example illustrated below:

Why didn't you answer the phone yesterday?

I was sleeping when you called.

You called when the sleeping was in progress.

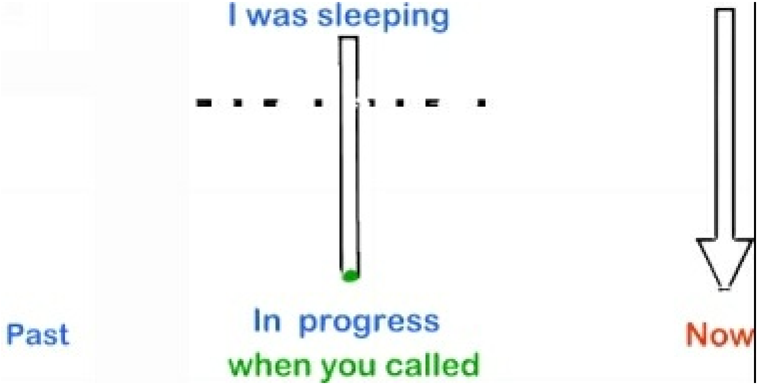
I was sleeping
Past
In progress
when you called
Now

To form the question, just invert the subject with the verb.

Example:

Were you sleeping when I called?

To make it negative just add 'not' between the auxiliary verb 'be' and the gerund.

Example:

I was not sleeping when you called. Contracted: I wasn't sleeping ...

Non Existent Plural Adjectives

4.

Roses are reds. ✗

Roses are red. ✓

A ten years old boy. ✗

A ten year old boy. ✓

In many languages, especially languages deriving from Latin, adjectives become plural when they are used to describe plural nouns. However in English, adjectives are never plural.

Other examples:

A blue pen

Two blue pens

As you can see, the plural form always goes on the noun and never on the adjective.

PLURAL NOUNS STANDARD AND IRREGULAR

5.

The normal procedure to make nouns plural is to add an ‘s’ at the end of the noun.

Example:

One boy/two boys

One girl/two girls

One pen/two pens

One pencil/two pencils

If the noun ends in ‘s’ or ‘x’ or ‘z’ or ‘e’ or with a cluster of consonants, such as, ‘sh’, ‘ch’, or ‘tch’ as in ‘watch’, we add ‘es’ to render them plural.

Example:

One watch/two watches

One witch/two witches

One prize/two prizes

One price/two prices

One box/two boxes

One bus/two buses

One kiss/two kisses

When the noun ends in a ‘Y’ and is preceded by a consonant we change the ‘Y’ into ‘I’ and add ‘es’

Example:

One country	two countries
One city	two cities
One gallery	two galleries
One baby	two babies
One lady	two ladies
One reality	two realities
One fly	two flies
One butterfly	two butterflies

There are some nouns which are irregular. These need to be memorized.
Here are the most common ones:

One man	two men
One woman	two women
One person	two people
One mouse	two mice
One goose	two geese
One child	two children
One tooth	two teeth
One foot	two feet

With some nouns which end in ‘fe’ we add ‘ves’. Below is a list of the most common ones.

One life	two lives
One wife	two wives
One loaf	two loaves

One leaf	two leaves
One knife	two knives
One thief	two thieves

We also have some nouns which remain the same in singular and plural.

Example:

One fish	two fish
One sheep	two sheep

Remember! Uncountable nouns cannot be made plural

Example

Rice - butter - milk

To quantify them we need to use a unit of measure, such as, one kilogram of rice.

A bottle of milk or a litre of milk.

There are also nouns that maintain their Latin or Greek form in the plural.

The plural of index is indices (indexes is acceptable)

The plural of appendix is appendices (appendixes is acceptable)

The plural of fungus is fungi

The plural of criterion is criteria

The plural of nucleus is nuclei

The plural of syllabus is syllabi

The plural of focus is foci

The plural of cactus is cacti (cactuses is acceptable)

The plural of thesis is theses

The plural of crisis is crises (the pronunciation changes. We put the stress on the first syllable of the singular ‘crisis’ and on the second syllable of the plural ‘crises’.

The plural of phenomenon is phenomena

ARTICLE ERRORS

6.

Are you teacher? ✗

Are you a teacher?✓

In some languages you don't need the article for this question. In English we use the indefinite articles 'a' and 'an' enquire about someone's profession in general.

Examples:

Are you an Engineer?

Are you a doctor?

We need to use the definite article 'the', if we specify.

Are you the Engineer from the Gas Company?'

We use 'the' because we are defining which Engineer.

I went to the bed at 8pm. ✗

I went to bed at 8pm. ✓

We don’t use the definite article ‘the’ as ‘go to bed’ is general. We only use it when we want to specify a particular bed.

Example:

I slept in the spare bed last night.

Here we specify ‘which’ bed.

Be careful with the indefinite articles “A” and “An”

It is a honour to meet you ✗

It is an honour to meet you ✓

We normally use the indefinite article “a” before consonants, and the indefinite article “an” before vowels, that is, the letters A E I O U.

Since the “H” in the word “honour” is silent, then we need to use the indefinite article “an” because the vowel sound that follows has the “O” sound - an (h) onour. It is important to pay attention to the initial sound of the word.

Other examples are:

An hour

An honourable gentleman

An honest man

An unbelievable experience

A university   this has the ‘j’ sound

A European citizen   this has the ‘j’ sound

A one off chance of a life time   this has the ‘w’ sound

WRONG USAGE

7.

I had breakfast with cereal and milk. ✗

I had cereal and milk for breakfast ✓

The first sentence, the one which is incorrect, is a common error. It implies that you and the cereal and milk had breakfast together. You can have breakfast with your husband, or your wife, or your family but not with cereal and milk.

What did you have for breakfast?

Subject	Verb	Object
I	had	milk and coffee (for breakfast)

Another similar error is:

I go to work with my car. ✗

I go to work by car. ✓

In the first sentence, it implies that you and your car go to work together. You can go to work with a person, but when you speak about the means of transport that you use to get there, you need to say; by car, by bus, by train, or on foot.

We were in two at the restaurant last night. ✗

There were two of us at the restaurant last night. ✓

This is a common error with students who speak languages deriving from Latin. Once again, this is a case of ‘mother tongue interference’.

My sister has got my same eyes. ✗

My sister has got the same eyes as me. ✓

THE GENITIVE/POSSESSIVE

8.

I met the sister of John. ✗

I met John’s sister.✓

If we use the possessive we need to be careful about where we put the apostrophe.

Example:

The boy’s ball = the ball belongs to one boy.

The boys’ ball = the ball belongs to more than one boy.

It is important to remember that some irregular nouns have no ‘s’ in the plural.

Example:

The children’s toys.

The noun, 'children' is already plural (the plural of 'child') so the apostrophe comes before the 's'.

Other examples are:

The men's cars (the cars of more than one man)
The women's friends (the friends of more than one woman)

We use the possessive with people and not things. We cannot say 'the table's legs'. In this case, we need to say, 'the legs of the table'.
We can also use more than one 'possessive'.
Example:

My sister's boyfriend's brother.
This means: The brother of the boyfriend of my sister.
We can also make it longer by saying; my sister's boyfriend's brother's friend.
This means: The friend of the brother of the boyfriend of my sister.

Nowadays journalists have started using the possessive when they speak about countries.
Example:

Italy’s capital

China’s president

This has become acceptable so as to avoid ‘wordiness’, which means the use of ‘too many’ words. English is not a ‘wordy’ language. It is more concise than many other languages, which means ‘less’ is better

When writing news articles, journalists tend to reduce the number of words they use.

However the rule for objects/things has not changed. We must say ‘the door of the house’ and not the ‘house’s door.

We can also use an adjective form to describe something.

An adjective form is a noun which takes on the function of an adjective. Since adjectives are never plural, we must never add an ‘s’.

Example:

The bedroom door

The bathroom floor

A red floor

A hard floor or

A kitchen floor

So ‘kitchen’, which is really a noun, takes on the function of an adjective by describing the noun.

Note: English is full of exceptions to the general rule. We can say the following:

A day’s work

A week’s holiday

Six month’s leave (from my job)

This applies also to other measures of time.

We do not need to repeat the nouns if the meaning is clear.

John’s car is bigger than Paul’s. (Paul’s car)

We ate at Gino’s yesterday. (Gino’s restaurant)

Whose pen is this? It’s Tom’s. (Tom’s pen)

I had dinner at Grandma’s. (Grandma’s house)

I had a coffee at Jane’s today. (Jane’s house)

Comparison Errors

9.

Anne's house is more big of mine. ✗

Jane's house is bigger than mine. ✓

With one syllable adjectives we add 'er' and double the final consonant if preceded by one vowel: Example:

Big - bigger

Thin - thinner

Fat - fatter

Slim - slimmer

The final consonant is not doubled if it is preceded by two vowels or another consonant.

Example:

Weak - weaker

Strong - stronger

Large - larger

Small - smaller

If the adjective ends in an ‘e’ then you only need to add ‘r’, as in the case of ‘large’.

With the comparatives we use ‘than’ and not ‘of’. With the longer adjectives we use ‘more’ before the adjective.

Example:

A Rolex watch is more expensive than a Swatch watch.

My house is less big than yours. ✗

My house is smaller than yours. ✓

My house is not as big as yours. ✓

Your house is less small than mine. ✗

Your house is not as small as mine. ✓

When forming the comparative we do not use ‘more’ or its opposite ‘less’, with one syllable adjectives

Be careful with adjectives which end in 'Y'.

Noisy- busy- early- lazy

Although they sound as though they have two syllables, the 'Y' does not count as a syllable.

We remove the 'Y' when forming the comparative, and add 'ier'.

We can use 'not as + adjective + as' to compare two things or two people. This means that A is less than B.

Example:

The houses in Madrid are not as expensive as the ones in London.

The houses in London are not as cheap as the ones in Madrid

We use 'not as cheap as' because 'less cheap' is not used in English. We use 'as + adjective+ as' to say that 'A + B' are the same.

Example:

The houses in Madrid are as expensive as the ones in London. (= they are both the same).

It is also common to hear many learners of English uttering the following:

The country is safer respect to the city. ✗

The country is safer than the city. ✓

CHAPTER FIVE

USED TO- BE USED TO- GET USED TO

1.

I, in the past got up early when I lived in London. ✗

I used to get up early when I lived in London. ✓

When we speak about past habit or past fact, we use, ‘used to’ + infinitive.

Many learners of English think that the past simple is the past tense of the present simple. It isn’t.

We use ‘used to + infinitive’, for past habits or general truths and facts.

Example:

I get up early every day. (Present simple for habitual actions)

I used to get up late every day.(Habitual actions in the past).

Q) How do we make the question and negative of ‘used to?’

A) The same way we do for the past simple. That is, by using ‘did’ for the question and ‘did not’ for the negative.

Example:

Did you use to live in Manchester?

I didn’t use to like coffee. (Now I like it)

She didn’t use to go to the gym every day. (Now she goes)

Be careful to remove the ‘d’ from ‘used to’ when forming questions and negatives as the auxiliary verb ‘did’ takes the past tense. The pronunciation stays the same, with the ‘d’ or without it.

BE USED TO VERSUS GET USED TO

2.

Some students get confused when using ‘used to’ - ‘be used to’ - and - ‘get used to’.

We have looked at ‘used to + infinitive’ so now let us look at the other two.

When we use ‘to be used to + gerund of the verb’ it means that you are accustomed to something.

Example:

I am used to getting up at 7 every morning. It is something I am accustomed to now (in this period of my life). There is no past reference.

Q) How do we form the negative of ‘to be used to + gerund?’

A) After the auxiliary verb ‘be’, as always, add ‘not’.

Example:

I am not used to living in the city. All the noise and confusion irritates me.

Contracted - I'm not used to living in the city.

To form the question we invert the subject with the auxiliary verb 'be'.

Example:

Are you used to driving in the city?

Q) When do we use 'to get used to + gerund?'

A) It is used different from 'to be used to'. The 'get' means 'become'.

Example:

I am getting used to living in the city = I am becoming accustomed to this life.

Often we use to get used to + gerund' with 'could' and 'cannot'.

Example:

I can't get used to working so many hours. I am so tired. (I am finding it impossible to become accustomed to this).

I could quite easily get used to doing nothing all day. (This is something that I could find easy to do). Here 'could' is used hypothetically.

THINK AND HOPE ERRORS

3.

I think not/ I think yes ✗

I think so/ I don’t think so ✓

I hope yes/ I hope no.✗

I hope so/ I hope not. ✓

When somebody asks you a question, for example:

Is John at home?

‘I think so or I don’t think so’.

The same applies to the verb ‘hope’. Here are a couple of examples:

Is it raining?

‘I don’t know but I hope not.’

‘Have we won?’

‘I don’t know but I hope so.’

I’m agree/I’m not agree. ✗

I agree/ I don’t agree or I disagree. ✓

Since ‘agree’ is a verb, it follows the same rules as all the other verbs.

My family is composed of four people. ✗

In my family there are four people. ✓

There are four people in my family. ✓

There are four of us in my family. ✓

It is more common in English to use ‘composed’ when we talk about music.

Countable or Uncountable

4.

There is two people in the room. ✗
There are two people in the room. ✓

As mentioned earlier, ’people’ is a countable noun. It is the irregular plural of ‘person’. In some other languages it is uncountable - hence this common error. It can fool you because it does not have the usual ‘s’ ending, which renders regular nouns plural. Many learners of English forget it is plural. The noun ‘person’ also has another plural which is regular. That is, ‘persons’, but this is only used in very formal English, such as on formal notices.

Your hair is very nice today?
Yes, I washed them last night. ✗
Yes, I washed it last night. ✓

This is another common error. Some nouns which are ‘uncountable’ in English, are ‘countable’ in other languages, hence this repeated error.

Note: Single hairs become countable. If there are two hairs on your jacket you can say ‘hairs’. The hair on your head is seen as a collective noun.

The teacher gave us many homeworks. ✗

The teacher gave us a lot of homework. ✓

Homework is another ‘uncountable noun’ so it cannot be made plural.

Can I have an information please? ✗

Can I have some information please? ✓

Here are some more examples of uncountable nouns which students get wrong.

The furnitures in my living room are old. ✗

The furniture in my living room is old. ✓

We can say a piece of furniture or an item of furniture.

Their behaviours are not good ✗

Their behaviour is not good ✓

Behaviour is uncountable

I am looking for an accommodation. ✗

I am looking for accommodation. ✓

We bought new camping equipments. ✗

We bought new camping equipment.✓

Again, ‘accommodation’ and ‘equipment’ are both uncountable.

Can I have an advice please? ✗

Can I have some advice please? ✓

This is another error common to many. We can also say ‘a piece of advice’.

The police is looking into the matter ✗

The police are looking into the matter. ✓

The noun ‘police’ is uncountable. To make it countable we must say;

A police officer is going to look into the matter (look into = investigate)

Internet has given us an easier access to information ✗

Internet has given us easier access to information ✓

Access is an uncountable noun

My luggages haven’t arrived. ✗

My luggage hasn’t arrived. ✓

The noun ‘luggage’ is the collective name for suitcases and bags. We can also say ‘baggage’, which is a synonym of luggage.

The news are good. ✗

The news is good. ✓

Even though ‘news’ ends in an ‘s’, it is uncountable. We need this ‘s’ because without it, ‘news’ would become ‘new’ which is an adjective.

The following nouns can be countable or uncountable.

My family is on holiday.

My family are on holiday.

The team is playing well.
The team are playing well.

If the family or the team are seen as individual members, then third person plural of the verb is used. If, on the other hand, the speaker sees them as a group, then third person singular is used.

Too - Too Much - Too Many

5.

It is too much big. ✗

It is too big. ✓

We use ‘too + adjective’ to mean ‘in excess’ (more than needed).

We use ‘too much’ with ‘uncountable nouns’ and ‘too many’ with ‘countable nouns’ to indicate more than what is necessary/in .excess.

Fewer versus Less

6.

I have fewer money than he has. ✗

I have less money than he has. ✓

I have less friends than Jill has. ✗

I have fewer friends than Jill has. ✓

We use ‘less’ with uncountable nouns and ‘fewer’ with countable nouns.

Other examples are:

On Sundays there is usually less traffic.

There are fewer cars today.

Nowadays fewer people read books.

Enough Errors

Enough + Noun versus Adjective + Enough

7.

These shoes are not enough big ✗

These shoes are not big enough ✓

It is important to remember that ‘enough’ comes ‘before’ the noun but ‘after’ the adjective.

Example:

I haven’t got enough money to go out.

He wasn’t old enough to vote.

Both- Either- Neither

8.

Both of them can’t come. ✗

Neither of them can come. ✓

Person A can’t come and Person B can’t come.

Neither A nor B can come.

Neither of them can come.

Both of the letters didn’t arrive. ✗

Neither of the letters arrived. ✓

Letter A didn’t arrive and Letter B didn’t arrive.

Neither A nor B arrived.

Neither of the letters arrived.

Neither of them arrived.

Note: We do not use ‘both’ for negatives. Both = A + B.

Neither means not A and not B

She can neither read or write. ✗

She can neither read nor write. ✓

He can’t sing or dance. ✗

He can neither sing nor dance. ✓

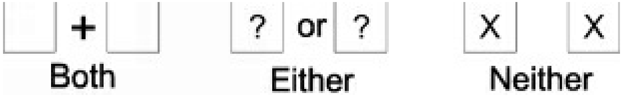

Here are some examples:

Both John and Mark play football (John and also Mark)

Both of them play football (John and Mark)

Either John or Mark plays football (or John or Mark)

Either of them plays football (or John or Mark)

Neither John nor Mark plays football. (Not John and not Mark

Neither of them plays football. (Not John and not Mark)

Reflexive Errors

9

I saw me on TV. ✗

I saw myself on TV. ✓

Reflexive pronouns: when the subject and the object of the verb are the same.

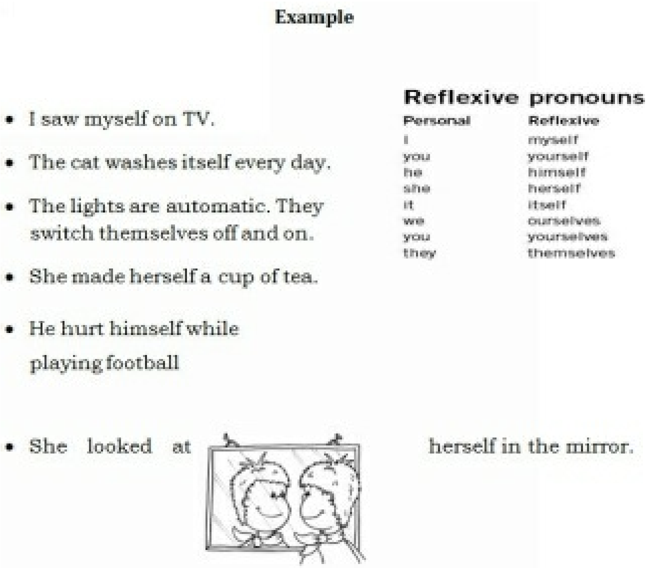

Example

- I saw myself on TV.
- The cat washes itself every day.
- The lights are automatic. They switch themselves off and on.
- She made herself a cup of tea.
- He hurt himself while playing football
- She looked at herself in the mirror.

Reflexive pronouns

Personal	Reflexive
I	myself
you	yourself
he	himself
she	herself
it	itself
we	ourselves
you	yourselves
they	themselves

On Sunday evenings I relax myself in front of the TV. ✗

On Sunday evenings I relax in front of the TV. ✓

We do not use reflexive pronouns with the verb ‘relax’. Neither do we use them with ‘concentrate’.

I concentrate myself when I am working. ✗

I concentrate when I am working. ✓

Each Other Versus One Another

10.

We phone ourselves every day. ✗

We phone each other every day. ✓

We phone ourselves is incorrect because it means that person A phones person A.
We phone each other every day means:
Person A phones person B every day and Person B phones person A every day.
These two sentences become one. They phone each other every day.
We use ‘one another’ to speak about the relationship between two or more people and two or more groups. ‘Each other’, on the other hand, is only used between two people or two groups.
Example:

They love each other. A loves B and B loves A.

They love one another. A loves B and B loves A but it also refers to more than two people. It depends on the context. A loves B and C and D etc, and the love is reciprocal between them all.

A good example comes from one of the Ten Commandments, which says; Love one another = every person should love every other person. ‘Love each other’, only refers to two people or two groups, although nowadays it seems that people are beginning to use them interchangeably, resulting in breaking all the grammar rules. I, personally, would never use ‘each other’ for more than two people or two groups.

CHAPTER SIX

ERRORS WHEN USING MODAL AUXILIARY VERBS

1.

A modal auxiliary verb is a verb modifier. It changes the meaning and/or the mood of the speaker. The following mistakes are frequent with all the modal auxiliary verbs.

Do you can go? ✗

Can you go? ✓

He cans swim well. ✗

He can swims well. ✗

He can swim well. ✓

She can to speak five languages. ✗

She can speak five languages. ✓

He will can go tomorrow ✗

He can go tomorrow. ✓

He will be able to go tomorrow ✓

All modal auxiliary verbs are followed by the infinitive without ‘to’. A modal auxiliary verb has the function of modifying the meaning of the verb. They can never be used with other auxiliary verbs. There is no ‘s’ in third person either

MAY VERSUS CAN AND COULD

2.

Permission

Can I open the window please?

Could I open the window please?

May I open the window please?

In the above example, can, could and may are all used to request ‘permission’.

Can is the least formal.

Could is formal.

May is the most formal of the three.

We also use ‘can’ for ability

Example:

I can speak three languages. (I have this ability)

He can swim very well. (He has this ability)

‘Could’ is also used for ability but as the past tense of ‘can’

Example:

He could speak three languages when he was four years old. (Past ability)

She couldn’t ski until she was a teenager. (Past ability)

SHALL AND MAY

3.

We use ‘shall’ in first person or third person plural to make a suggestion.

Example:

Shall we go?

Shall I help you?

Please note: When 'shall' is used to make a suggestion or an offer, we only use it in the first person singular or third person plural as seen in the above examples.
We also use 'shall' when writing contracts to indicate obligation. It is used as a politer form of 'must'.

We use 'may' and 'might' to express a 50/50 degree of possibility
Example:

I might go to the cinema this evening. (I haven't decided yet)
I may go to bed early this evening. (I am still thinking about it)
May is regarded as more formal

SHOULD

4.

Should is used for recommendation, polite obligation, advice and also to express expectation or deduction.

Example:

Should for advice or recommendation

You should get a good map of London before you go. (I recommend this)

You shouldn’t smoke so much. (My advice)

Should for polite requests or obligations

Guests should vacate the hotel room by 10am on the morning of departure. (Polite obligation) = Guests are requested to vacate the hotel room by 10am on the morning of departure. (Polite obligation)

Guests should pay for their drinks upon departure. (Polite obligation)

Guests shouldn’t play loud music in their rooms at night. (Polite obligation)

In the above examples, ‘should’ is used as a politer form of ‘must’. We do not use ‘must’ in this context as it could appear to be ‘too strong’ and could seem a little ‘offensive’.

Should for Expectation

She should be here by now. (This is what we expect or believe to happen)

However, if we use the negative of ‘should be’ (should not be) it implies prohibition or mistake.

Example:

She shouldn’t be here = maybe she made a mistake and came at the wrong time or on the wrong day. It also implies mild prohibition. It all depends on the context.

CHAPTER SEVEN

SUPPOSED TO - MEANT TO - SHOULD

1.

We can also use ‘to be supposed to + infinitive’ in place of ‘should’ for something we expect to happen.

Example:

She is supposed to be here by now. (expected or required of her).

We can also say:

She is meant to be here by now. This also implies something that is expected or required.

Other Examples:

He is meant to be here at ten.

He should be here at ten.

He is supposed to be here at ten (these examples have almost the same meaning). There is such a subtle difference that they can all be used interchangeably when expressing expectation or requirement.

In the negative form we normally do not use a future time expression like we do in the affirmative.

He isn’t meant to be here. (Now)

He shouldn’t be here. (Now)

He isn’t supposed to be here. (Now)

All three of the examples above imply that he was obligated not to be here, or he came by mistake, or there was no requirement for him to be there.

Not supposed to be also implies prohibition.

Example:

You are not supposed to drink and drive. (It is against the law)

You are not supposed to sell alcohol to anyone under the age of 18. (It is forbidden)

To be supposed to + infinitive, is also used for general beliefs

Example:

He is supposed to be one of the best lawyers in town. (This is a general belief, what we have heard people say about him)

Eating too much chocolate is supposed to make you fat, but I am still as thin as ever. (General belief, what people say)

To be + meant + infinitive is used also for fate or destiny or anything mystical.
What is meant to be is meant to be = we cannot change destiny.

To mean to

We use 'mean + infinitive' without 'be' for a future intention when it is used in the present simple tense, or 'meant to + infinitive' without 'be' to express a past intention.
Example:
I mean to phone her one of these days. (My intention)
I meant to phone you = it was my intention but I did not phone, I probably forgot.
I didn't mean to hurt you = it was not my intention; I didn't do it on purpose.
Compare:
I was supposed to phone you (but I forgot) = this was expected of me or it was believed, or it could also mean a mild obligation to do so.

Past tense

He was meant to be here at ten. (He is late or maybe he isn't coming. We expected him to be here or there was some kind of obligation or requirement for him to come)

He should have been here at ten. (Again, something we expected or an obligation on his part)

I was supposed to go to the doctor yesterday. (I didn't go; it was my intention or it was expected of me or a mild obligation)

Should have + past participle has another meaning. It is also used for past recommendation and advice.

Example:

You should have taken an aspirin if you had such a bad headache yesterday. (My advice for something that did not happen in the past)

CHAPTER EIGHT

THE PERFECT ERRORS

PRESENT PERFECT (1)

A TIME IN YOUR LIFE BEFORE NOW

1.

I have seen Titanic on TV last night. ✗

I saw Titanic on TV last night. ✓

I've been to Prague when I was a little boy. ✗

I went to Prague when I was a little boy. ✓

If we use a 'past time expression', we must use the 'past simple tense'. We use the 'past simple tense' for anything that finished in the past. 'I have seen Titanic', is correct if we do not use a ‘past time expression’. This is the ‘present perfect simple tense’. It is quite difficult for learners of English to grasp it. When we say ‘I have seen Titanic’, we are giving general information about something that happened anytime ‘before now’. The focus is on the fact that ‘I saw Titanic’ and not on ‘when’ I saw it.

If the focus moves to ‘when’, then we cannot use the ‘present perfect’ anymore because the attention shifts to ‘the time’.

The same applies to the second example:

I’ve been to Prague. (In my life)

I went to Prague when I was a little boy. (We say ‘when’)

There are other uses of the ‘present perfect tense’ which we will take a look at soon.

In this book I will refer to this version of the ‘present perfect’ as ‘present perfect one’ which refers to something that happened before now with no reference to time. It is important to note the structure of the ‘present perfect simple tense’. We use ‘have’ not as a verb but as an ‘auxiliary verb’. We looked at the use of ‘have’ as a verb in the ‘present simple’ and ‘past simple tenses’. With the ‘present perfect’, ‘have’ is an ‘auxiliary verb’ with the verb in its ‘past participle form’.

To form the question, we invert the ‘subject’ with the ‘auxiliary’, just as we do with its sister auxiliary ‘be’.

I have been - Have I been?

He has been - Has he been?

She has gone - Has she gone?

We usually contract ‘have’ when it is used as an auxiliary.

Example:

I’ve been.

I haven’t been.

She’s been

She hasn’t been

When used as an auxiliary verb ‘have’ cannot be contracted in the question form if the question begins with the auxiliary.

Example:

Have you been to New York?

Has she been to France?

Compare:

Where've you been?

Where's she been?

What've they done?

Why's he gone?

In the negative questions the contraction is on 'not'

Example:

Why haven't you eaten?

Why've you not eaten? *

Which of these books haven't you read?

When 'have' is used as a 'full verb' it should not be contracted. 'I've a cat' is incorrect. We say; 'I have a cat' or 'I've got a cat'. In the latter case 'got' is the verb.

Please note that many native speakers contract ‘have’ when it is used as a full verb and preceded with ‘no’.

Example:

I’ve no money left. I’ve got no money left is the best option.

It is also very common to hear native speakers say, ‘I haven’t a clue’ or ‘I’ve no idea’. Here they go against all the grammar rules and contract ‘have’ where it shouldn’t be contracted. These two examples I’ve given, are extremely widespread so ‘sound’ correct. However, they would not be tolerated in formal written English.

Please note that ‘have got’ is not the ‘present perfect’. It may look like the ‘present perfect’ but has got nothing to do with it. It can only be used in the ‘present tense’. It is used interchangeably with ‘have’, to indicate possession.

In formal written English, it is better to use ‘have’. In the spoken language, ‘have got’ is more commonly used.

I’ve got a car - Have you got a car? - I haven’t got a car

I have a car - Do I have a car? - I don’t have a car

As you can see, the ‘have’ in ‘have got’ is an auxiliary verb so with the question and negative we need to use that same auxiliary.

In the second example, that is where ‘have’ is used without ‘got’, ‘have’ is a full verb so we need the ‘do’ and ‘don’t’ to form questions and negatives. Native speakers use ‘have got’ more frequently than ‘have’, probably because it is much easier to say. There is less mouth movement involved. It just rolls off the tongue. Many say ‘avgot’, as you hardly even need to open your mouth to say this.

Please note: If we say; ‘she has just got married’, then this is the present perfect tense, something which happened before this present moment, but do not confuse it with ‘have got’. To get married = to become married.

Present Perfect (2)

Past to present

2.

It is three weeks that I am here. ✗

I've been here for three weeks. ✓

It's many years I don't do English lessons. ✗

I haven't done English for many years. ✓

This is another error which is due to 'mother tongue' interference, when the speaker translates literally from his or her own language. In English we use the 'present perfect simple' with 'for' and 'since' when we speak about something that started in the past and is true also now. ‘I have been here for three weeks’, (the duration) or ‘since’ (the exact point in time) e.g. 1st June. There are the three uses of the ‘present perfect simple tense’. In chapter eight we took a look at the first use of this tense (which we called ‘present perfect’ one). We can refer to this one as ‘present perfect two’. Here is a good way to remember how to use this tense.

I came to London in 2010 (past simple sentence)

I still live in London (present simple meaning a present fact)

Sentence A + sentence B = sentence C.

I have lived in London since 2010.

So we are joining a ‘past event’ with a ‘present one’ to get a ‘past to present situation’, which was true in the past and is still true now.

Another example is:

(A) I bought my car three years ago

(B) I have my car now. A + B = C)

(C)I have had my car for three years.

We use the auxiliary verb ‘have’ and take the verb from sentence (B) and put it into the ‘past participle’ then add ‘for’ or ‘since’.

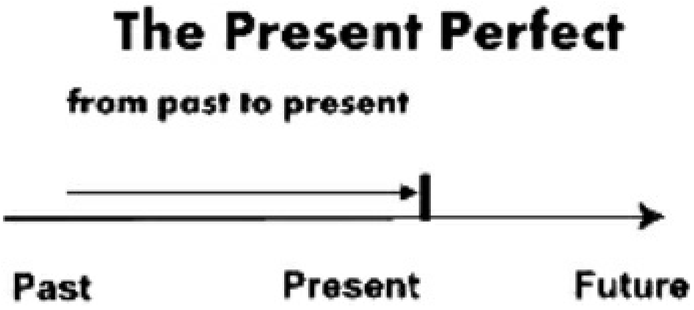
The Present Perfect
from past to present
Past
Present
Future

I met John two years ago. (Past)

I know John now. (Present)

I have known John for two years.

Remember that the past and the present join together to become one tense only - ‘the present perfect’.

Remember we need to use ‘for’ or ‘since’ with present perfect 2. The ‘for’ and ‘since’ join the past situation to a present one. We can also use ‘all my life’ or ‘all week’, ‘all day’ etc.

Present Perfect (3)

Before now or right now

3.

I lost my key. ✗

I've lost my key. ✓

Why is the first sentence wrong? We are expecting the speaker to say 'when'.

We can say 'I lost my key' but only if maybe someone asks you a question in the past simple tense.

Example:

Why are you late?

I lost my key.

Otherwise if there is no question or no indication to the past, we say: 'I've lost my key'.

This version of the present perfect is used differently to that of present perfect one which we looked at earlier.

Present perfect one = in my life. It could be twenty years ago. We are not interested ‘when’. But when we use ‘Present perfect three’, we refer to ‘now’ or ‘just before now’. As in ‘present perfect one’, we have no interest in ‘when’ the event or fact or action occurred. The only difference is that ‘present perfect three’ can only mean not long ago.

Let’s take a look at some examples;

Would you like a coffee?

No, thanks, I’ve had one.

This refers to not long ago. We don’t say ‘when’ because the ‘time’ is of no importance whatsoever, but we understand that the person had the coffee not so long ago.

Are you hungry?

No, I’ve had lunch.

We understand that it is before now but not long ago.

He’s taken the dog to the park.

Here we understand that he went to the park a short while ago.

Remember, with ‘present perfect one, two and three’, the time is never expressed. When the time becomes more important than the fact or the event, we need to use the ‘past simple’.

Compare:

I’ve had lunch.

(Present perfect three, meaning not long ago)

I had lunch an hour ago.

(Past simple referring to exactly ‘when’)

It is incorrect to say: ‘I’ve had lunch an hour ago’.

Compare:

I’ve bought a new pair of shoes.

(Right now, before now or not long ago)

I bought a new pair of shoes yesterday.

(The ‘time’ is important to the speaker)

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS (1)

In Progress From Past To Present

4.

It is raining from this morning. ✗

It has been raining since this morning. ✓

The present continuous tense has no reference to anytime before this moment. In some languages this tense is used when referring to something in progress in the past which is still in progress at the present moment. We use the present perfect continuous with ‘for’ and ‘since’ when we refer to an action in progress which started in ‘the past’ and continues ‘until the present’ and possibly progresses into ‘the future’. The pictures which follow illustrate the correct use of the ‘present perfect continuous’ when it is used with ‘for’ and ‘since’.

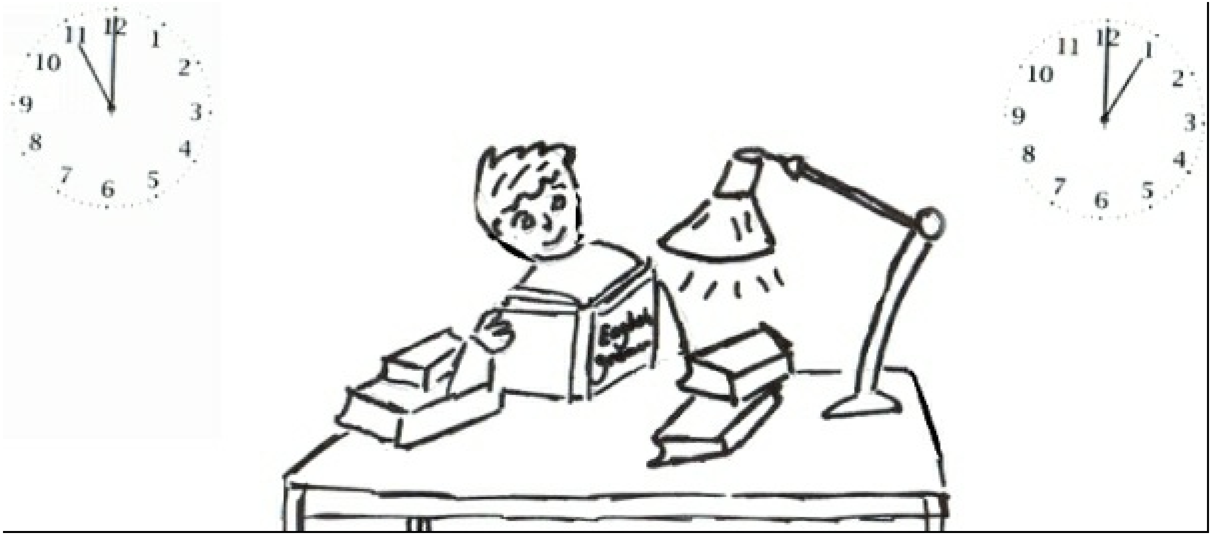

Q. What is the boy doing?

A. He is studying.

Q. What time did he begin to study? Look at the clock on the left of the boy.

A. He began to study at 11 o’ clock.

Q. What time is it now? Look at the clock on the right of the boy.

A. It's 1 o'clock

Q. How long has he been studying?

A. He's been studying for two hours or he has been studying since 11o'clock.

It is important to remember that we need to use action verbs or motion verbs, as they are sometimes referred to, with the present perfect continuous; e.g. run, walk, talk, etc. Unlike state verbs, these verbs are progressive.

The girl is holding an umbrella because it is raining.

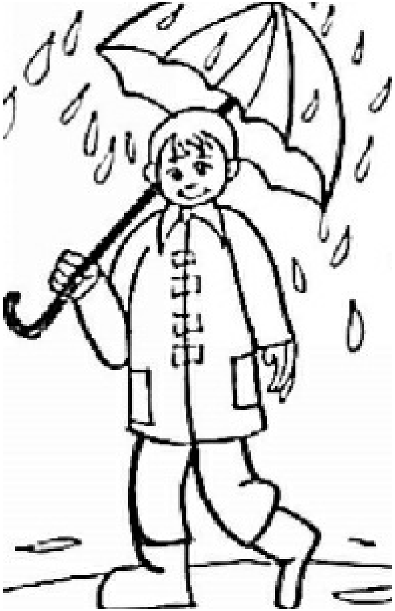

It's raining at the moment. It started to rain at 9 o'clock this morning.

It is now 11o'clock. How long has it been raining?

It has been raining for 2 hours 'or' It has been raining since 9 o'clock

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS (2)

UNTIL RECENTLY

5.

We can also use the present perfect continuous without ‘for’ and ‘since’. However the meaning changes to ‘until recently’ as opposed to ‘until now’.

My neighbours are angry because my dog has been barking.
The dog is not barking now. It was barking until a short time ago and now the consequence is that the neighbours are not happy.
For this use of the ‘present perfect continuous’, the question changes.
We do not use ‘how long’.

‘Why are the neighbours angry?’ (A present result of something which was in progress until recently)

They are angry because ‘the dog has been barking’. (The barking was in progress until not long ago).

‘What have you been doing?’ Your face is all red

I’ve been running. (The red face is a consequence of something which was in progress until recently). I am not running now. I was probably running until a few minutes ago.

PAST PERFECT ERRORS

6.

When she got to the airport, she forgot her passport ✗

When she got to the airport, she had forgotten her passport. ✓

She arrived in the airport in a moment in the past. Before this past moment she forgot to take. The moment she forgot to take her passport happened in an earlier moment.

She didn't taste pasta before she went to Italy. ✗

She had never tasted pasta before she went to Italy. ✓

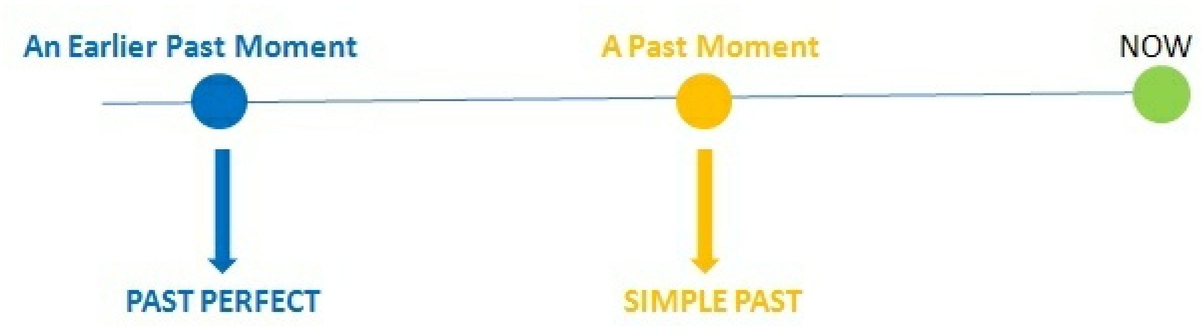
An Earlier Past Moment
A Past Moment
NOW
PAST PERFECT
SIMPLE PAST

Forming the past perfect simple:

We use the past tense of the auxiliary ‘have’, that is, ‘had’ + ‘the past participle’ of the verb; the third column of the verb list.

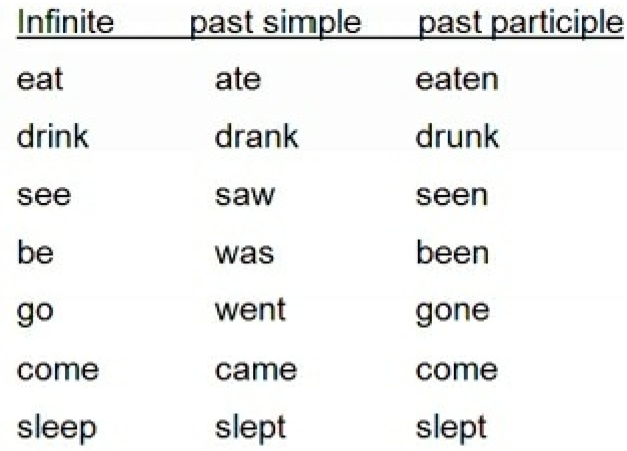

Infinite	past simple	past participle
eat	ate	eaten
drink	drank	drunk
see	saw	seen
be	was	been
go	went	gone
come	came	come
sleep	slept	slept

Past Perfect Continuous (1)

7.

He was waiting for 20 minutes when I arrived. ✗

He had been waiting for 20 minutes when I arrived. ✓

We can say: ‘He was waiting when I arrived’, without indicating any time duration before that moment. The past continuous cannot be used to refer to time duration before a specific moment in the past, as seen in Chapter 4.3. To indicate a progressive duration of time in the past which was followed by a past action or event, we need to use the past perfect continuous with ‘for’ or ‘since’.

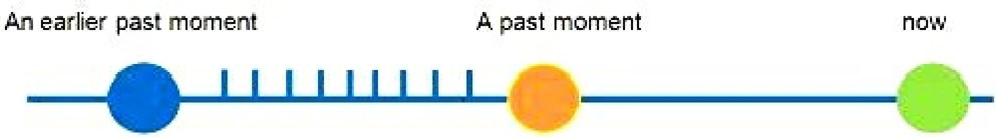

He started to wait at 10.30 .... I arrived at 10.50

It is ‘NOW’ and I say: When I arrived he had been waiting for 20 minutes.

We can also say: he had been waiting since 10.30. We use ‘since’ to indicate the precise moment the action in progress began. We do not say: he had been waiting from 10.30. It is important to use ‘for’ or ‘since’, or all day, all night, all week, all year etc.
We use the past perfect continuous with verbs which express an action in progress until a moment in the past (when used with ‘for’ and ‘since’).

So ‘what is the difference between the past perfect continuous and the past perfect?’
With the past perfect, we use non progressive verbs.
When I switched on the TV, the film had ended. There is no progression here. The film ended before you switched on the TV. It did not end and then end and then end again in continuation.
When I arrived at the train station, the train had left. There was no train when I arrived. It left before I arrived. Once again, there is no progression here. The train did not leave and then leave and then leave continuously over a period of time. It left before you arrived and the leaving ended there.
When I phoned her, she had been studying for three hours. Here there is progression. The studying progressed over a period of three hours and then I phoned.

PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS (2)

8.

We can also use the past perfect continuous without 'for' and 'since', just like we do with the present perfect continuous.

Compare:

When I arrived, she had been sleeping. (She wasn't sleeping when I arrived. The sleeping was in progress until a short time before I arrived). Usually there is something to indicate the action which was in progress and recently finished. Maybe her eyes looked tired, or maybe she told me.

When I arrived, she had been sleeping for two hours. (In this example with 'for', it can mean two things. The sleeping stopped when I arrived, or maybe it continued.

Chapter Nine

Conditional Errors

First Conditional

1.

If I will see him, I will tell him.✗

If I see him, I will tell him. ✓

We use the 'if' clause + the present simple tense.

This clause is the condition

We use the future simple tense, 'will + infinitive'

to indicate the result of the condition

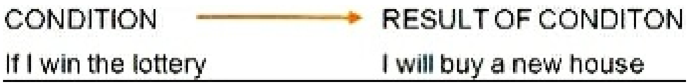

CONDITION →	RESULT OF CONDITON
If I win the lottery	I will buy a new house

Q) When do I use the first conditional?

A) You use the first conditional to speak about a possible situation in the future.

If I win the lottery, I will buy a new house.

I think I have a possibility to win because perhaps I have bought many lottery tickets.

Q) How do I make the negative of the first conditional?

A) Just put the negative of the present simple on the 'if' clause and the negative of 'will' on the result of the condition clause.

Example:

If I don't go, I won't see him.

If I don't go, I won't see him.

If he doesn't arrive soon, we won't have time to catch the 9.30 train.

We use the same structure with:

When -as soon as - before - after - in case - until - unless

Example:

I'll see him, when I go to the airport.

I'll call you, as soon as I arrive.

I'll text you before I leave.

After she goes, I'll start cooking.

I'll take my phone in case I need to call you.

= You never know, I may need to call you.

I won't know until I see him.

I won't take an umbrella unless it rains

= I'll take an umbrella only if it rains.

Q) Can we use other auxiliary verbs with the first conditional?

A) Yes, we can. We can use the following modal auxiliary verbs although the degree of possibility varies according to which one we use. A modal auxiliary modifies the meaning of the verb.

Modals are a nightmare for learners of English. This is because they are never 'black' and 'white'. Their meanings come in many 'shades of grey.'

Here is a list of the options:

must - can - could - may - might - should

Let's take a look at some examples:

I will go if he calls me. 'Will' expresses a certainty

I must go if he calls me. ‘Must’ expresses a personal obligation from the speaker (in this example)

I can go if he calls me. ‘Can’ expresses either permission from a third party or the fact that you are free from other commitments.

I might go if he calls me. ‘Might’ expresses a 50/50 possibility. You haven’t decided yet.

I may go if he calls me. ‘May’ is similar to might, the possibility is slightly less. It is also more formal than ‘might’.

I should go if he calls me. I feel a mild obligation.

You should go if he calls you. Someone is recommending that you go or giving you his/her personal opinion.

Q. How do I form the negative and questions?

A. The same as with all auxiliaries. For the question we invert the subject with the modal auxiliary. For the negative we add ‘not’.

Example:

Should I go, if he calls me?

You shouldn’t go if he calls you?

I might not go if he calls me. (We do not contract ‘might’ in the negative).

In the question ‘might’ is not very common. Might I go? (Nowadays it is rarely used. In old English it was more common).

We use ‘may’ to ask questions but only for permission.

May I go if he calls me? (I am asking permission)

Must I go if he calls me? (This denotes the idea that you really do not want to go)

Second Conditional Errors

2.

If I would go to London, I would visit Trafalgar Square. ✗

If I went to London, I would visit Trafalgar Square. ✓

After the ‘if’ clause (the condition) we use the past simple

We use ‘would + infinitive’ for the result of the condition.

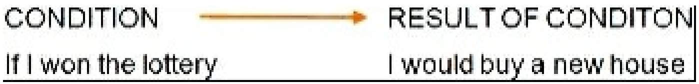

CONDITION →	RESULT OF CONDITON
If I won the lottery	I would buy a new house

Q) When do we use the second conditional?

A) We use the second conditional to speak about a hypothetical situation.

If I won the lottery, I would buy a new house.

I am dreaming of winning the lottery, I probably haven’t even bought a lottery ticket.

More examples:

If I had a phone, I would phone you every day.

= I don’t have a phone so I cannot phone you every day.

If we had a camera, we could take photographs.

= We don’t have a camera so we can’t take photographs.

Q) How do we make the second conditional negative?

A) Just put the negative of the past simple after the ‘if’ clause and the negative of ‘would’ on the result of the condition clause.

Example:

If I didn’t live in London, I wouldn’t speak English so well.

Q) How do I form the question?

A) Invert ‘would’ with the subject and put a question word before ‘would’.

Example:

What would you do if you won the lottery?

Where would you go if you won the lottery?

If you could have dinner with a famous person, who would you choose?

Third Conditional Errors

3.

If I would have been there, I would have helped you. ✗

If I had been there, I would have helped you. ✓

There are often errors in forming the third conditional. In the first example, that is, the one which is wrong, there is double use of ‘would’. A good way to remember how to use the third conditional, is to remember that after the ‘if’ clause, that is, the condition, we use the past perfect, and on the result of condition clause, ‘would have + past participle’ of the verb.

The third conditional is used for something which did not happen in the past.

Example:

I saw you yesterday but you didn’t see me.

If I had seen you I would have said hello.

Q) How do we form the negative?

A) By putting ‘not’ after the auxiliary verb ‘had’ and ‘not’ after the modal auxiliary ‘would’.

Example:

I was late for work yesterday because I overslept. (= sleep too much)

If I hadn’t overslept, I wouldn’t have been late for work.

To form the question we invert ‘would’ with the subject and add a question word where necessary.

Example:

Would you have come to the party if you had known about it?

What would you have done, if you had been me?

Where would you have gone, if you hadn't come here?

THE MIXED CONDITIONAL

4.

A very commonly used conditional that many grammar books tend to overlook is the 'mixed conditional. It is a cross between the third conditional and the second.

Example:

If I had studied more (the condition is in the past) I would be a doctor (the result of the condition is in the present.

Other examples:

I wasn't born in Italy (past)

I am not Italian (present)

If I had been born in Italy, I would be Italian (now)

He lost his job. (past)

He is unemployed. (present)

If he hadn’t lost his job, he wouldn’t be unemployed (now).

WISH ERRORS

5.

I wish I have more money ✗

I wish I had more money ✓

How to use “wish” (hypothetical)

For a present wish, we use the past simple

Example:

It is Monday today. I am not happy because I have to go to work.

You say: I wish it weren’t Monday. I wish I didn’t have to go to work.

We can also say I wish it wasn’t Monday but we normally use “were” in all persons. It is a more elegant way of speaking.

It is raining outside and you would prefer it to be sunny.

You say: I wish it weren’t/wasn’t raining. I wish it were/was sunny.

John is fat. He wants to be thin:

You say: He wishes he weren’t/wasn’t fat. He wishes he were/was thin.

You can’t speak English but you would love to be able to speak the language.

You say: I wish I could speak English.

When we use “can”, we move it back a tense and it becomes “could”.

We can also say: I can’t speak English but I wish I could.

For past wishes we go back a tense from the past simple to the past perfect.

You overslept this morning. You forgot to set the alarm clock. Now you are late for work.

You say: I wish I hadn’t forgotten to set the alarm clock last night.

You left your keys on the kitchen table and went out. Now you are locked out of the house.

You say: I wish I hadn’t left my keys in the house.

Your wife is very disappointed because you forgot it was her birthday yesterday. This makes you sad.

You say: I wish I had remembered it was her birthday yesterday.

We can also say: I forgot her birthday. I wish I hadn’t.

Your friend bought some shoes yesterday. Now she regrets buying them. She doesn’t like them. She bought them on impulse.

She says: I wish I hadn’t bought these shoes. I wish I had kept my money.

We can also say: I bought these shoes. I wish I hadn’t.

When someone does something that really annoys us we use “would”.

Your son is always leaving his clothes lying around the bedroom floor. This really irritates you.

You say: I wish he wouldn’t leave his clothes lying around. I wish he would pick them up and put them away.

We can also say: He never puts his clothes away. I wish he would.

Your friend is always late when she has to meet you. This is very annoying for you.

You say: I wish she would arrive on time. I wish she weren’t/wasn’t late all the time.

We can also use ‘if only’ also in the same way we use ‘wish’.

Example:

I hate living in a cold climate. It would be my dream to live in a hot country.

If only I lived in a hot country.

I’ve got no money. I dream of being rich.

If only I were/was rich.

I can’t ski and we are going on a skiing holiday next week.

If only I could ski.

EVEN THOUGH VERSUS EVEN IF

6.

Many people get confused between whether to use "even though" or "even if" Even some native speakers get them wrong. Let's take a look at the following examples which clarify the exact meaning.

Even though it rained, we still went out.

Even if it rains, we will still go out.

In example number one, this is a fact. It rained and despite this fact, we went out.

In example number two, this is a hypothetical situation. We are thinking of a possibility.

More examples are as follows:

Even though I work a lot, I still never seem to have enough money to pay everything. A real situation. (Despite the fact)

Even if I worked hard, I would still never have enough money to pay everything. An unreal situation. (Whether or not I worked hard, I would not have enough money

ANY LONGER VERSUS ANYMORE AND NO LONGER

7.

It is very important to use these correctly. The position of each one in a sentence differs. Let’s take a look at some examples in order to clarify.

I don’t work for that company any longer.

I don’t eat meat anymore.

I no longer work for that company.

I no longer eat meat.

As you can see, when we use any longer or any more, we need to use ‘don’t’ or ‘doesn’t’ in third person. It is important that any longer and any more are positioned at the end of the sentence.

When we use no longer, it comes between the subject and the verb.

It is completely wrong to say: He doesn’t work there no more. This is a typical slang expression and is wrong because a double negative had been used. A double negative automatically becomes a positive therefore making the meaning the exact opposite to what was intended.

ANYMORE VERSUS ANY MORE

8.

What is the difference? Some people use them interchangeably but there is a difference.

I don’t live there anymore = I used to live there. Now I don’t

I don’t want any more pasta. I am full. I have eaten enough = no more pasta thanks.

CHAPTER TEN

NO FUTURE IN ENGLISH

1.

Grammatically speaking, there are no future tenses in the English language. There are only future aspects, that is, ways of seeing the future. It all depends on how the speaker sees the situation which determines his or her choice of structure.

We can use the present simple for the future *only* when we are referring to timetables or a fixed event.

Example:

The train *leaves* at 11am tomorrow morning.

The party *begins* at 8pm.

The biggest nightmare for learners of English is when to use *'will'* + infinitive' of the verb. It is used in several different ways.

We use it when we predict something or we have reason to believe it.

Example:

She'll be late. (We predict this, we have reason to believe it because she is nearly always late or maybe we know that there is a lot of traffic today).

We also use *'will + infinitive'* when we make promises.

Example:

I'll definitely come to the party. You have my word.

"I'll wash the dishes later", promised the girl to her mother.

Will + infinitive is also used for a future fact

Example:

The Queen will be in Paris tomorrow.

We can use it when we decide to do something at the moment of speaking (unplanned decisions).

Example:

Person A: "There's no milk left".

Person B: "I'll get some when I'm out then",

Person A: "The TV isn't working so you won't be able to watch the football match",

Person B. "I'll just read a book instead then".

We can also use ‘will + infinitive’ when we offer to do something.

Example:

Imagine you see your neighbour coming out of the supermarket carrying two very heavy shopping bags. You offer to help her carry them.

You say: “I’ll help you, give me one of the bags and I’ll carry it for you”,

If your wife sees a diamond ring in the jeweller’s store, you may offer to buy her it.

You say: “I’ll buy you it?”

We can also use ‘shall’ in the question when making offers.

Example:

Shall I carry that bag for you?

Will I carry that bag for you?

It is also used for refusal in the negative

Wife to husband: “She won’t do her homework”. (That is, their daughter)

This means that she totally refuses.

In some languages the present simple is used for refusal.

As you can see there are several differences in the use of ‘will + infinite.’

I wouldn’t advise you to go crazy trying to remember them all. Just read graded readers for students learning English. The more you see ‘will + infinitive’ used in different contexts, the more you will begin to use it naturally. Read, read and read. Read newspaper articles on the internet and see how many times you see this tense being used. Try to understand how it is being used.

TO BE GOING TO + INFINITIVE

2.

When we use ‘to be going to + infinite’ we are expressing something we intend to do.

Something we already know we want to do.

Some languages express this by using ‘want’.

English speaking children always use it when they speak about what they want to be when they grow up.

Example:

When I grow up, I’m going to be a police officer.

In this moment, that is what I intend to be.

I’m going to wash my hair tonight. I have already decided that this is what I want to do tonight.

The structure is very similar to the present continuous, only we have the infinitive after ‘going to’.

She's going to make a cake for me tomorrow. This is her planned intention.

We can also use 'to be going to' + infinitive when something is sure to happen. We have the evidence in front of us.

Example:

Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain (we can see this)

Look at that woman's belly. She's going to have a baby. (This is evident)

Hurry up! We're going to be late. (This is also evident)

WILL VERSUS GOING TO

3.

To be going to + infinitive and 'will + infinitive' have similar meanings when used for prediction.

Example:

The weather forecast says that it is going to rain tomorrow.

The weather forecast says that it will rain tomorrow.

The two tenses have separate meanings but overlap when we speak about prediction.

Manchester United is going to win.

Manchester United will win.

When we use verbs such as, think, hope, or expect, it is more common to use 'will + infinitive'.

Example:

I hope she'll come.

We can also say: 'I hope she's going to come'.

COMMON ERRORS WHEN USING 'WILL'

4.

I will go on holiday tomorrow. ✗

I am going on holiday tomorrow. ✓

Many learners of English as a second language overuse 'will'. Normally if someone goes on holiday tomorrow, it is already planned. We use the 'present continuous' for a future arrangement. In chapter 1.3 we looked at the 'present continuous' used to express an action in progress at the moment of speaking.

We also use the 'present continuous' to express 'future arrangements'. That is, arrangements which have already been made; usually 'human arrangements'. If you are going on holiday tomorrow, it is implied that you have booked your flight or your train ticket. To book your flight you need to make arrangements beforehand with the airline company. You may also have booked a room in a hotel.

Example:

I am staying in the Ritz (this could mean now, or the future, when you arrive at your destination.

I am flying to London next week. (Already arranged with the flight company)

She's coming to visit me at Christmas. (You have both arranged this - arranged = organised to do something or go somewhere)

We aren't having lunch tomorrow with my parents. (Here the arrangement is to not have lunch with them)

We cannot use the present continuous as follows:

I'm reading a book tomorrow. ✘

I'm sleeping tomorrow. ✘

There is no arrangement here. If there is no arrangement (with other human beings) and it is your intention to do something, then we use 'to be going to + infinitive'

Example:

I'm going to read a book tomorrow.

I'm going to sleep tomorrow.

He isn't going to write.

The most common verbs used with the present continuous for a future arrangement are: meet - play - come - go -see - fly -stay -have

I'm having a party on Saturday. (I've invited all the guests so it is already arranged)

I'm seeing the dentist tomorrow. (I've made an appointment so it is already arranged)

This tense is referred to as the 'diary tense'. This is because usually it refers to things we have already programmed so are written in our diaries.

Take a look at the diary below.

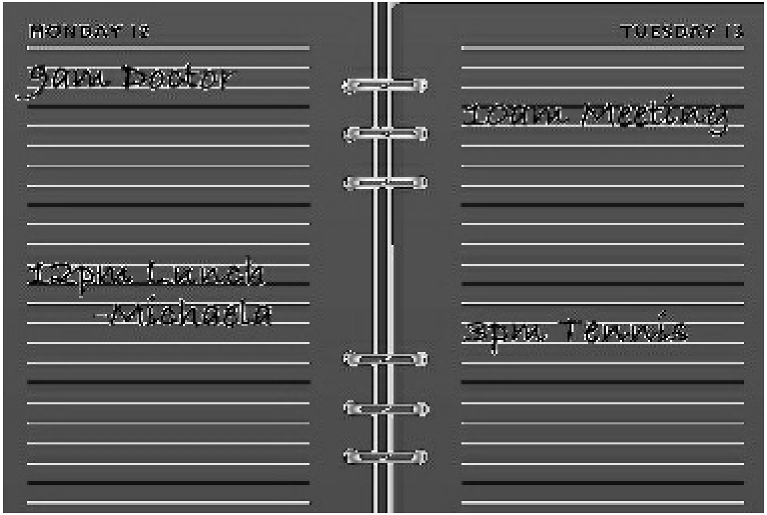
MONDAY 12
9am Doctor
12pm Lunch
-Michaela
TUESDAY 13
10am Meeting
3pm Tennis

I'm seeing the dentist on Monday morning.

I'm having lunch with Michaela at 12.

On Tuesday at 10 am I am attending a meeting.

In the afternoon I am playing tennis.

The Future Continuous

5.

The future continuous is used in three different ways.

To say that something will be in progress from a certain moment in the future.

To predict that something will be in progress at a certain moment in the future.

To predict that something will be in progress in this moment.

Example:

A. The captain on the aeroplane. “This is your captain speaking; the plane will be landing in ten minutes time”. This means that it will begin to land progressively starting from ten minutes from now.

B. In the department store. “Will customers please make their way to the cash desk as the store will be closing in five minutes”. This means that in five minutes time, the store will begin to close.

C. A letter from a friend. “Dear Jill, I have my flight ticket. I will be arriving in Milan on Saturday. In this example, your friend Jill sees the future beginning from Saturday. She sees the future starting from that moment. She can also say, “I’m arriving on Saturday”, but this means that she sees the future from this moment and not from Saturday.

A. “Don’t phone Paul between 7 and 8 pm tonight. He’ll be having dinner”. We predict that this will be in progress between these two times.

B. By the year 2025, people will be marrying less than ever before. This is also a future prediction. We predict this to be in progress at a certain point in the future.

C. By the time we arrive home, they’ll be sleeping. Again we predict this action to be in progress at that future point when we arrive home; we have reason to believe this.

A. “Don’t phone John now, he’ll be sleeping”. We predict this to be in progress now.

Let’s compare the present continuous tense for this moment with the future continuous tense for this moment.

“Don’t phone her now, she’s eating”. In this example we know for sure.

“Don’t phone her now, she’ll be eating”. In this example it is a prediction. We believe this to be the case. Remember, we need to use action verbs with all of the ‘continuous’ tenses.

THE FUTURE PERFECT

6.

Will have + past participle of the verb

We use the future perfect to say that something will be completed by a certain moment in the future.

Example:

I came to London in June 2010

It is now May 2014

I say: “When it gets to June, I will have been in London for four years”.

You married your wife 10 years ago in the month of February.

It is now the month of January 10 years later.

You say: “It’s impossible to believe that by next month we will have been married for 10 years”.

We also used the future perfect for a present prediction of something we believe happened in the past.

Example:

You are reading an instruction manual for your new computer. You are now reading page 24. It says:

“You will have seen on page 18 how to set up the computer” This is a present prediction of something that is believed to have happened in the past.

Another example:

Your mother had a dental appointment at 10.30. It is now 11.30. You say to your father.

She’ll have left the dentist’s by now.

FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS

7.

This is used similarly to the future perfect but can only be used with action verbs, that is, verbs which can be in progress.

‘Will have been + gerund’

It is used for completed future facts.

Example:

You moved into your present house twenty years ago at Christmas.

It is almost Christmas now, twenty years later.

You say:

“We will have been living in this house for twenty years by Christmas”.

You arranged to meet your friend at 10 o’clock. It is now 11 o’clock.

You are very late. You say: By the time I get there, she’ll have been waiting for over an hour.

REPORTED ERRORS

8.

She said me she was late for the appointment yesterday. ✗

She told me she was late for the appointment yesterday. ✓

She said she was late for the appointment yesterday. ✓

When we tell other people what someone else told us, we use what is called 'reported speech'.

The most common 'reporting verbs' are say and tell: When we use 'tell' we need the direct object.

Example:

He told me - you - him - her - it - us - them.

We can change the direct object and use a person’s name.

‘He told Mark’ or he told him, but never both.

Although the basic grammar rule is to go back a tense when you report to another person what someone says to you, in standard English it is common to keep the present simple the present simple for a fact that is still true, the past simple the past simple and the past continuous the past continuous.

Example:

Present simple tense: Direct speech: I live in Germany.

Reported Speech: He said he lives in Germany (still true)

He said he lived in Germany or he told me he lives/ lived.

Past simple tense: Direct speech: ‘I went to the supermarket this morning.

Reported speech: With the past tense, most people leave the verb in the past:

She said she went to the supermarket this morning, although the general rule is to move it back a tense to the past perfect tense. She said she had been to the supermarket this morning or she told me she had been to the supermarket this morning IS THE GENERAL RULE although not used as much in spoken English as it is indeed quite clumsy.

Present continuous: Direct speech: I am writing a letter to my friend.

If she is writing the letter at the exact moment you report to another person, we must say:

She said she is writing a letter to her friend. (NOW)

She said she was writing a letter to her friend. (IN THAT MOMENT IN THE PAST)

She told me she is writing a letter or she told me she was writing a letter.

Past continuous: Direct speech. I was sleeping when you called.

Reported speech: She said she was sleeping when you called, is more frequently used than she said she had been sleeping. Grammar Rules are Grammar rules but in real life things are different.

Present perfect: Direct speech. I've been to Paris four times.

Reported Speech: She said she has been to Paris four times or the general rule she had been to Paris four times (before she met Tom) This is more natural.

She told them she has been/ had been to Paris four times.

Past perfect: Direct speech. When I switched on the TV, the film had ended.

Reported speech remains the same. There is no going back a tense as there is no other tense beyond the past perfect.

He said the film had ended when he switched on the TV.

He told me the film had ended when he switched on the TV.

Past perfect continuous: Direct speech: When she finally arrived, I had been waiting for over two hours.

Reported speech remains the same as there is no tense beyond the past perfect continuous.

He said he had been waiting for over two hours when she finally arrived or he told me he had been waiting for over two hours when she finally arrived.

Future simple tense: Direct speech: I will call you tomorrow.

Reported speech - ‘will’ goes back a tense and becomes ‘would’. He said he would call me tomorrow or he told me he would call me tomorrow.

‘Can’: Direct speech: I can swim.

Reported speech: - ‘can’ moves back a tense and becomes ‘could’. She said she could swim or she told me she could swim.

‘Must’: Direct speech: I must go.

Reported speech - she said she had to go or she told me she had to go. ‘Must’ takes the same past tense as ‘have to’.

If we use the modal auxiliary verbs - should, would, could, may and might, then direct speech and reported speech are the same.

Example:

Direct speech: You should take an aspirin.

Reported speech: She said I should take an aspirin. She told me I should take an aspirin.

Direct speech: I would phone him if I had his number.

Reported speech: She said she would phone him if had his number. She told me she would phone him if she had his number.

Direct speech: I could stay another day if you want.

Reported speech: She said she could stay another day if I wanted or she told me she could stay another day if I wanted.

Direct speech: I might/may be late.

Reported speech: She said she might/may be late or she told me she might/may be late.

I told you to don’t do it. ✗

I told you not to do it. ✓

He said to not speak. ✗

He said I wasn’t to speak. ✓

Here is another example of a ‘reporting error’. Often students use ‘do not’ when they want to use a negative after a reporting verb.

Here are some examples of ‘tell’ and ‘say’ in the negative, when they are used as reporting verbs.

Direct speech: Don’t go. (Imperative)

Reported speech: I told him not to go or he said I wasn’t to go.

DIRECT AND INDIRECT OBJECT ERRORS

9.

Paul gave to Mary a present. ✗

Paul gave Mary a present. ✓

Paul gave a present to Mary. ✓

There are some verbs in English which take two objects: The direct object and the indirect object. These are known as transitive verbs. The direct object relates to the verb, and the indirect object relates to the person who receives or benefits from the action as a result. The most common ones are:

Give something to someone. Give someone (something).

He gave Mary a pen.

He gave a pen to Mary.

Some examples of transitive verbs are as follows:

She teaches the students mathematics.

She teaches mathematics to the students.

He offered to give Jill a lift to the station.

He offered Jilly a lift to the station.

He asked me to help him.

Note: When no direct object follows a verb, the verb is intransitive.

Example:

She sneezed.

He coughed.

They ate.

The dog slept.

Note: Some action verbs can be both transitive and intransitive. It depends on what follows them.

Example:

She eats before going to work. (No direct object - intransitive)

She eats bread and cheese before going to work. (Direct object-bread and cheese) - transitive.

CHAPTER ELEVEN

PREPOSITION ERRORS

1.

I went in London last year. ✗

I went to London last year. ✓

This preposition error is common among ‘Non native’ speakers of English. When we use a ‘motion’ verb, we use the preposition of movement ‘to’. It is correct to say: ‘I went to London last year’. The only exception to the rule in English is ‘go home’, otherwise we need the ‘to.’

Example:

Walk to school

Run to the shops

Move to the left

Turn to the right

Swim to the shore

Drive to the country

Cycle to work

These are some examples of 'motion' verbs. The preposition of movement 'to' expresses going from A to B. That is, from the departure point to the destination.

Of course we can use other prepositions of movement depending on what we wish to say.

Example:

Walk across the road

Run along the road

Cycle round the park

Drive over the bridge

Swim up and down the pool

I arrived to the airport late. ✗

I arrived at the airport late. ✓

Remember, we use 'to' with 'motion' verbs. 'Arrive' is a 'static' verb so we need to use the preposition 'at', which indicates no movements.

Another example is with the verb 'be', which is another 'static' verb, and also 'stay'.

I was to the cinema last night. ✗

I was at the cinema last night. ✓

I stayed to home last night. ✗

I stayed at home last night. ✓

Of course we can also use other prepositions with static verbs, again, depending on what we mean: Example:

I stayed in bed yesterday because I didn't feel very well.

his is the key of my room. ✗

This is the key to my room. ✓

I saw it on the newspaper. ✗

I read it in the newspaper. ✓

I saw it in the TV. ✗

I saw it on the TV. ✓

I listened the radio last night ✗

I listened to the radio last night. ✓

I have one question for you. ✗

I have a question to ask you. ✓

I'll explain you the problem. ✗

I'll explain the problem to you.✓

You explain (something) to (someone). This is another transitive verb which takes both a direct and indirect object. The prepositions in English are a nightmare for learners of the language. The only way to familiarise yourself with them is to have as much exposure to the English language as you possibly can.

I'll answer to the phone. ✗

I'll answer the phone. ✓

I asked to him to buy some bread. ✗

I asked him to buy some bread. ✓

We do not use 'to' after the verbs 'ask' and 'answer'.

Variations with 'ask'.

We can also use ‘for’ after ‘ask’ but only if we are using a noun as opposed to a verb.

Example:

They asked me for a lift. (‘for’ + noun)

They asked me to give them a lift.

*a lift = to accompany someone to a place in your car.

More examples:

He answered my email right away.

The doorbell rang and they answered the door.

I will do my homework during the weekend. ✗

I will do my homework at the weekend. ✓

I will do my homework over the weekend. ✓

It is extremely uncommon to hear a native speaker say ‘during’ the weekend.

The Nile is the longest river of the world. ✗

The Nile is the longest river in the world. ✓

A common mistake is to use ‘of’ instead of ‘in’. We speak about countries and things in the world, not of the world.

We had a lot of difficulty to learn English. ✗

We had a lot of difficulty in learning English. ✓

We say, ‘to have difficulty in + gerund’. It is essential to remember that when a verb is followed by a preposition, the verb becomes the gerund.

I’ll wait you. ✗

I’ll wait for you. ✓

As opposed to some other languages, we use ‘wait for’ (something) or (someone). More examples:

Wait for me. I’ll be back.

We waited half an hour for the bus.

She is going to marry with a lawyer. ✗

She is going to marry a lawyer. ✓

Tell me of your holiday.✗

Tell me about your holiday.✓

There's two people in the room. ✗

There are two people in the room ✓

My brother is good in English. ✗

My brother is good at English. ✓

We use 'to be good at' (something) and 'to be bad at' (something).

Remember! Whenever there is a verb + preposition, the verb takes the gerund.

Example:

My brother is good at speaking English.

It depends from what he wants. ✗

It depends on what he wants. ✓

VERBS WITH MORE THAN ONE PREPOSITION

2.

Shout to

Shout at

Both are possible but the meaning changes. When you 'shout to' someone, you raise your voice as you call them to attract his/her attention.

If, on the other hand, you 'shout at' someone, you raise your voice because you are angry with him/her.

Throw to

Throw at

If you throw something to someone, such as a ball, you intend for them to catch it.

Example:

She threw the ball to the dog. He caught it and ran away with it.

If you throw something at someone, you want to hit them with it. This could be because you are angry with them, or maybe you do it with playful intentions.

Example:

She was so angry with her husband that she threw a plate at him. Luckily it missed him. (It didn't hit him).

Wave to

Wave at

He waved at me = he was saying hello or goodbye.

He waved to me = he was trying to attract my attention.

We can also say, 'he waved goodbye' without a preposition.

Point to

Point at

You can point 'to' or 'at' a person. You can also point 'to' or 'at' an object.

If I 'point to', I am indicating the location.

Look at the stars she said, pointing to the sky (in the direction of the sky)

If I 'point at' someone, it could be seen as rude and often accusatory.

Example:

You're the one who stole my bag. She shouted, pointing at the thief. (he was directly in front of her)

The thief ran away and she pointed to him to indicate him to the police officer who was passing by in that moment. (Indicating the direction)

If you are arguing with someone, they may point their finger at you in anger whilst they are shouting at you. (They are directly in front of you.

He pointed a gun at her head and said, ‘don’t move or I’ll shoot’.

If he pointed a gun to her head, it would be in the direction and not almost touching. (Similar to towards)

He pointed at his watch and said ‘I must go, it’s very late’.

CHAPTER TWELVE

WRONG VERB USAGE

1.

I lost the bus. ✗

I missed the bus. ✓

I lost the bus, grammatically is not wrong. It is the usage that is wrong. If you have a toy bus in your pocket, then it is possible to lose it.

Here the intended meaning is that you arrived too late and the bus had already gone. You didn't manage to get on it. We use 'miss' when you arrive too late. Look at the two sentences below. Both are correct but the meaning changes.

I missed the football match.

I lost the football match.

In the first example, you arrived too late.

In the second example, you were one of the players and you lost the game. That is, you did not win.

The verb ‘miss’ has another meaning as well. You can miss a person. That is, when you feel the absence of that person.

Example:

I really missed you when I was on holiday.

Did you miss me? (Did you feel my absence?)

WRONG ADJECTIVE/ADVERB USAGE

2.

Have you heard the last news? ✗

Have you heard the latest news? ✓

The ‘last news’ means ‘the final one’ but we need to add ‘which’ last news, (the last news on TV is at midnight), otherwise it is a hanging sentence. A hanging sentence means an incomplete sentence or phrase.

The ‘latest’ means the ‘most recent’.

Example:

He bought the latest mobile phone (the most recent on the market)

He bought the last mobile phone (The last one in the shop, there was only one left)

I have an important problem to solve. ✗

I have a serious problem to solve. ✓

We do not use the adjective ‘important’ to describe a problem.

He arrived soon.

He arrived early.

Many students get confused between ‘soon’ and ‘early’.

Early is an adjective. It is the opposite of ‘late’.

Soon, on the other hand, is an adverb of time.

When we say ‘I arrived early’, it means before the expected/due time. We use ‘soon’ for a future time frame. It isn’t used in the past.

If we say, I will see you soon, it means ‘in a short time’, (the near future)

FEELING ERRORS

VERBS OF FEELING

3.

I like watch ✗

I like to watch ✓

I like watching ✓

There are some verbs in English which cause some confusion. Take for example 'like + gerund', or 'like + infinitive'. Both are possible but there is a subtle shift in meaning. If you say 'I like cleaning', this means that 'cleaning' makes you happy. If, on the other hand, we say 'I like to clean', we specify 'when'. I like to clean on Saturday mornings'. This does not mean that cleaning makes you happy. It just means that for you it is a good idea to clean on Saturday morning, and then you are free for the rest of the day or weekend. Another example:

‘I like reading’ = ‘reading gives me pleasure’. ‘I like to read before going to sleep’ = reading is relaxing for me in this moment. The same rule applies to the verb ‘love’. ‘I love shopping’ (in general) or ‘I love to shop’ when I have money. As you can see, there is a difference in meaning.

Another verb which has the same rule is ‘hate’. ‘I hate working’ = the action of working makes me very unhappy. ‘I hate to work’ when I am tired’ = only when I am tired. These verbs are known as ‘verbs of feelings’ in English.

I enjoy to play tennis. ✗

I enjoy playing tennis.✓

Note: With ‘enjoy’ or ‘don’t mind’ (other verbs of feeling) we can only use the gerund.

MISCELLANEOUS ERRORS

4.

Negative on the wrong verb

I think she doesn’t believe me. ✗

I don’t think she believes me. ✓

In English we put the negative on the main verb. That is, the verb closest to the subject.

Wrong position of ‘again’

I sent again my CV.✗

I sent my CV again. ✓

Double negative error

I didn’t do nothing. ✗
I didn’t do anything. ✓

This error is common among both ‘native’ and ‘non native’ speakers of English. Two negatives make a positive, so if we say, ‘I didn’t do nothing’, it means the opposite to what is intended, that is, ‘I did everything.’

Mother tongue interference error

I forgot my book at home. ✗
I forgot to bring my book. ✓
I left my book at home. ✓

The actual crisis is due to inflation ✗
The current crisis is due to inflation ✓

Actual is a false friend. That is a word which looks similar to words in other languages but has a different meaning. ‘Actual’ means ‘true’. ‘current’ means ‘present, now’.

We had a bath in the hotel pool ✗

We had a swim in the hotel pool ✓

When you have a bath, you wash yourself in the bath at home in the bathroom. You can either have a bath or have a shower.

Wrong verb error

Did you attend college? ✗

Did you go to college/school/university? ✓

We use ‘attend’ for a course.

The gym’s members are 120. ✗

There are 120 members in the gym ✓

The gym has 120 members. ✓

To smoke is bad for your health. ✗

Smoking is bad for your health. ✓

When the subject is a verb, we use the gerund.

My parents stay well together. ✗

My parents get on well. ✓

When people have a good relationship, we say ‘they get on’ or ‘they get on well’. The adverb ‘well’ adds emphasis, meaning ‘they have a very good relationship’.

This is one of many ‘phrasal verbs’ which cannot be translated literally.

It is so nice a house. ✗

That house is so nice. ✓

We use ‘so’ before an adjective

We use ‘such a’ before a noun or before an adjective + noun.

Example:

My room is such a mess.

This means that my room is terribly untidy.

She is such a sweetie.

This means she is a very sweet person.

It was so hot today that we had to stay indoors.

This means it was very hot.

It was such a hot day today that we stayed indoors.

This means that it was a really hot day.

I and my sister. ✗

My sister and me. ✗

My sister and I. ✓

Me and my sister. ✓

When we speak about ourselves first, we use ‘I’. When we speak about ourselves after we speak about another person we use the object pronoun ‘me’.

CHAPTER THIRTEEN

WRONG USAGE OF ‘SPEND’

1.

He has spent two hours to fix his car. ✗

He has spent two hours fixing his car ✓

When we use ‘spend time’ + another verb, the verb that follows is the gerund.

Example:

Spend time doing something.

I spend a lot of time reading.

Spend money on something.

Example:

He spends a lot of money on his car.

Other wrong usages of the verb ‘spend’ are as follows:

I spent 100 euro for my phone. ✗

My phone cost (me) 100 euro. ✓

I spent an hour to get to work this morning. ✗

It took me an hour to get to work this morning. ✓

Other examples

It takes me 10 minutes to get dressed.

It takes you a long time to wake up.

It takes him (my father) a few minutes to have breakfast.

It takes her (my mother) 20 minutes to walk to work.

It takes it (the cat) two seconds to climb the tree.

It takes us (me and my flatmate) half an hour to clean the kitchen.

It takes them (the children) ages to finish their homework.

This is the most common way to speak about the amount of time you employ doing something.

There is also a variation:

You took a long time to get here. (Past tense)

He took ages to fix the door.

She takes hours to get ready in the morning.

We took our time because we left too early. (We did not hurry)

They took hours to finish the job.

This is not so common when using the future tense:

It is more common to say:

It'll take us ages to get to the airport so it's best if we leave early.

Here we use 'will + infinitive' because we predict this, maybe because we live very far from the airport or maybe because we think there will be a lot of traffic.

NON PERSONALIZED USAGE

2.

It takes 2 hours to get from Rome to London by plane.

It takes 6 hours to get from London to Glasgow by train.

It takes about an hour to get to the city centre by bus.

This is when the time is pre-established by some kind of program.

Notice we do not use the direct object anymore. This is general and not personalized.

Someone else is in control of the time employed.

The shelf was too high so I couldn’t arrive to it. ✗

The shelf was too high so I couldn’t reach it. ✓

You can never use the preposition ‘to’ with arrive since it is not a motion verb.

In the correct example above, ‘reach’ implies extending with some effort to get to something.

You stretch out your arm to try to get to the shelf.

There is confusion between whether to use ‘arrive’ or ‘reach’.

You can arrive at a destination and you can reach a destination.

In the example above they have the same basic meaning, that is, ‘to get to’.

However, ‘reach’ implies that there was some kind of effort made to get to the destination whereas ‘arrive’ implies no effort being made.

There is also the fact that ‘reach’ is transitive when referring to a destination and therefore always requires a ‘direct object’.

Compare:

The boys arrived. (Intransitive)

The boys reached (what or where) the station, the top of the mountain. (Transitive)

Reach is used in many idioms and metaphors.

Example:

Reach a conclusion

Reach a verdict

Reach an agreement

Reach a decision

Reach boiling point = when you can no longer control your emotions because you are so angry.

Reach a goal in life = after an effort was made, you finally got there. You achieved what you wanted to achieve.

CHAPTER FOURTEEN

INFINITIVE OR GERUND

1.

Many non native speakers continue to get confused as to whether or not they should use the gerund or the infinitive after certain verbs.

Here is a list of the most common verbs we use with the infinitive when another verb follows.

Verb + infinitive

Agree to go

Appear to go

Attempt to do (something)

Choose to go

Decide to go

Desire to go

Expect to go

Force (someone) to do (something)

Hope to go

Manage to go

Need to go

Plan to go

Refuse to go

Seem to go

Want to go

Would like to go

Wish to go

Verb + gerund

Verbs of feeling (as mentioned earlier)

Love going

Like going

Enjoy going (See chapter 12.3)

Mind going - in the pub (Do you mind watching my seat for me while I go to the bathroom) =

I hope this is not a problem for you.

I don’t mind cleaning = for me it is not a problem. .

Fancy going (Do you fancy going to a party at the weekend = are you in the mood to go or do you desire to go)

Feel like going (I don’t feel like going = I don’t have the desire to go, I’m not in the mood to go) I don’t feel like going to work tomorrow. I’m really tired.

I can’t stand going to work (I strongly dislike)

Verbs which take the gerund *and* the infinitive

Like

Love

Hate

Prefer - I prefer going out at weekends to staying at home. I prefer to go out at weekends. (same meaning)

Start - I’ve started to go to the gym twice a week or I’ve started going. (Same meaning)

Miss - I really miss having a car. (I don’t have a car now and I feel the absence of it strongly).

With the verbs ‘remember, forget, try and stop, we can use both the infinitive and the gerund but the meaning changes.

Here are some examples in context to enable you to see the meaning clearly. Out of context the meanings cannot be grasped.

I remembered to close the window = I didn't forget

Remember + gerund (To recall in your mind)

Person A: You left the window open when you went out.

Person B: No I didn't. I remember closing it. (This I clearly recall)

Boy to mother: That film on TV is a repeat. I remember seeing it a few months ago.

Mother to son: Yes, I remember seeing it as well. They are always putting repeats on TV these days. Turn it over and see what's on the other channel.

Husband to wife: Did you remember to iron my shirt? I need it to wear to work tomorrow.

Wife to husband: Oh sorry, I forgot to iron it. I'll iron it after dinner.

I always remember to send birthday cards to my friends every year. (I never forget)

I forgot to close the window = (I didn't remember ... this didn't happen)

I forget closing the window = (I don't remember this fact even though it happened)

Person A: I've been trying to call you all day but the line has always been engaged. (Attempt to do something)

Person B: Try phoning me on the landline the next time. I sometimes switch my mobile phone off when I'm working. (Try + gerund = the solution to the problem)

Patient to doctor: I've been having terrible headaches recently. They come and go all the time.

Doctor to patient: Try taking a pain reliever the next time and lie down in a dark room. (The solution to the problem)

Patient to doctor: I can't seem to get to sleep at night.

Doctor to patient: Have you tried counting sheep? (Solution to problem)

I stopped drinking = (I don't drink anymore)

I stopped to drink = (I interrupted what I was doing to drink something)

Reported Verbs

Pay attention to the negatives

Ask (someone) to do (something) He asked me to help him.

Tell (someone) to do (something) He told me not to answer the phone.

Demand to go - He demanded to speak to the manager.

Offer to go - He offered to take me to the airport.

Persuade (someone) to do (something) He persuaded me to marry him.

She persuaded him not to go to the football match and to stay at home with her.

Promise (someone) to do (something) He promised to buy me a diamond ring.

Promise to do (something) for (someone) He promised to help me clean the windows.

Teach (someone) to do (something) He taught me (how) to speak English well.

Threaten to do (something) He threatened to report me to the police if I didn't give him back the money I had stolen from him.

Reported Verbs which take the gerund

Admit doing (something) He admitting cheating in the exam.

Avoid doing (something) He always tries to avoid doing his homework.

Consider doing (something) He is considering moving to London.

Delay doing (something). He delayed paying his phone bill.

Deny doing (something) He denied stealing the money.

Detest doing = to strongly dislike. She detests living in that horrible area.

Imagine doing (something). Imagine winning the lottery. It would be great.

Insist on doing (something) He insisted on giving me a lift to the station so I accepted. At least I didn't have to go up to the bus stop and wait for the bus.

Keep doing = continue - Keep talking (don't stop)

Mention doing - She mentioned meeting him for a coffee.

Practice doing - She practices speaking English whenever she gets the chance.

Recommend doing - I recommend going to mountains in the summer. It really is too hot to stay in Rome.

Resist doing - She resisted eating the whole bar of chocolate.

Suggest doing - They suggested staying at that five star hotel.

Verbs which take the infinitive *without* ‘to’

Let (someone) go

Please let me go to the party mum, said the girl. = Please give me the permission.

Make (someone) go Force someone to do something or go somewhere

Example:

My mother makes me study

Verbs of the senses take the infinitive without ‘to’ + the gerund with a slight difference in meaning.

He heard me shout

He heard me shouting

I saw her stand by the fire

I saw her standing by the fire

I felt him touch my arm

I felt him touching my arm

With the gerund the action is prolonged.

I heard the dog bark. Woof

I heard the dog barking. Woof, woof, woof, woof !!!

I heard the man scream for help. Help !!!

I heard the man screaming for help, Help, help, helpppp !!!

I saw him shoot. Bang.

I saw him shooting. Bang! Bang! Bang! Bang!

USING CONNECTORS

2.

Below you will see a list of the most common connectors.

Sentence Connectors are a great way of improving your English. Why? Because we use them to express relationships between ideas and to combine sentences.

When we begin learning a language, we speak in very basic sentences, a bit like children.

Example: “It was raining. I took an umbrella.”

As we learn more words and more complex sentence structures, we are able to start using sentence connectors to make more sophisticated sentences.

Example:

It was raining so I took an umbrella.

I took an umbrella because it was raining.

It was raining. I didn't take an umbrella

Although it was raining, I didn't take an umbrella.

Even though it was raining, I didn't take an umbrella.

In spite of it raining, I didn't take an umbrella.

In spite of the fact it was raining, I didn't take an umbrella.

The English language school offers discounted English language courses. There's also a library where you can study and borrow books.

The word also comes before the verb. If the verb is a form of to be, also is placed after the verb.

MOREOVER

The English language school offers discounted English language courses. Moreover, there's a library where you can study and borrow books.

ADDITIONALLY

The English language school offers discounted courses in English. Additionally, there’s a library where you can study and borrow books.

IN ADDITION

The English language school offers discounted English language courses. In addition, there’s a library where you can study and borrow books.

FURTHERMORE

The English language school offers discounted English language courses. Furthermore, there’s a library where you can study and borrow books.

WHAT’S MORE

The English language school offers discounted English language courses. What’s more, there’s a library where you can study and borrow books.

PROVIDED THAT

You can use my car provided that you are careful not to crash it.

AS THOUGH

She looks after her dog as though it were a baby.

AS IF (THE SAME AS “AS THOUGH”)

SO THAT

I didn’t go out this week so that I could study.

AS WELL AS

As well as French, I can speak Russian

NOT ONLY ... BUT ... ALSO

Not only can I speak French, but I can also speak Russian

HOWEVER

My new flat is really nice. However, it is very expensive.

IN CONTRAST

House prices have gone up this year. In contrast, car prices have gone down

NEVERTHELESS

I was so tired after working all day. Nevertheless, I still went out with my friends as usual.

NONETHELESS

I spent all week in bed ill. Nonetheless, I’m still alive.

YET

I've told my son time and time again not to leave the kitchen in such a mess yet he still keeps doing it.

ON THE OTHER HAND

Italy is such a beautiful country and the people are very nice. On the other hand, the tax system is so complicated.

BY COMPARISON

Living in the country is so peaceful. By comparison, life in the city is chaotic.

ON THE CONTRARY

I don’t hate living in the city. On the contrary, I am happy to be in the midst of the confusion.

INSTEAD

I don't think I will have any pasta tonight. I'll have some rice instead.

WHEREAS

John is such a calm person, whereas his brother is so aggressive.

AS A RESULT

I’ve been working a lot lately. As a result, I’ve been able to buy that new car I’ve always wanted.

AS A CONSEQUENCE

She didn’t study at all this year. As a consequence, she’s failed all her exams

THEREFORE

There’s going to be a terrible storm tonight, therefore it is best to stay at home and keep all your windows closed.

Remember to start using them, it will greatly increase your conversation skills and you will feel more confident when talking to a native speaker.

Terms Of Confusion

3.

The following words and expressions cause a lot of confusion. When used in the spoken language we understand them by the context. However it is important to know how to use them in the written language.

Altogether/All together

How much is it going to cost to renovate the house? Well, we have to pay the electrician, the plumber, the builder and the floor layer so altogether I think it will cost in the region of £30,000. = all in all, the total, complete/completely.

Altogether there are three people working on the project at the moment. = in total.
My family meet once a year at Christmas time. It is the only time of year when we are all together.

The team are all working together on the new project *or* they are working all together.

Already/All ready
Already = before now
I've already been to London so this year I would like to visit another European capital.
Are we all ready to go out? = are we all prepared.

Alright/All right

We use “alright” in the same way as we use “okay”

Example:

Mother to son: “You still haven’t tidied your room. You said you would do it today”.

Son to mother: “Alright, I’ll go and tidy it now”.

Son to mother: “Is it alright if I invite some friends round to watch the football tomorrow night?”

Mother to son: “Alright, as long as you clean your room”.

ALL RIGHT

This can be used as an alternative to “alright”, but “all right” also has another use.

It also means “ALL is RIGHT = EVERYTHING is RIGHT

Compare:

“How are you?” “I’m alright”. I’m okay.

“Did the teacher mark your homework?” Yes, my answers were *all right* = none of them were wrong. I got full marks.

The mountain rescue team worked hard all night in their search for the missing skiers. When they found them they were *all* right = all of them were safe and unharmed.

Among/Between

We use "between" when we speak about two people or two things. "Among" is used for more than two people or two things or for groups of people or things.

Example:

There are two pens on the table. "Which one would you like?" You can choose between the two of them. You can have either the blue one or the black one.

My husband has another woman. He's going to have to choose between me and her.

I spotted my neighbour among the crowd at the football match.

Boy to mother: "I can't find my jeans. Have you seen them anywhere?"

Mother to boy: "You'll find them among the dirty washing in the laundry bin.

Allowed/aloud

Although they have the same pronunciation, they have different meanings.

Example:

You are not allowed to wear short skirts inside the Vatican. (This is an obligation)

She spoke aloud and woke the baby (In a raised voice)

EXPRESSING YOUR OPINION

4.

There are many ways to express your opinion in English. Below I have included several of them.

In my opinion .....

In my view .....

In my experience .....

From my point of view .....

As I see it .....

Personally I believe .....

Personally I think .....

As far as I’m concerned .....

As far as I know .....

As far as I understand .....

As far as I can see .....

I tend to think that .....

I might/may be wrong but .....

I’d say that.....

I’d suggest that .....

If I’m not mistaken .....

I could be wrong but .....

What I mean is .....

I’m of mixed opinions .....

I have no opinion on the matter .....

CHAPTER FIFTEEN

PHRASAL VERBS

Phrasal verbs are made up of verb + prep/particle. Some phrasal verbs have a particle and a preposition. These are known as multi word verbs. One example is:

Slow down please. You're going too fast. I can't keep up with you.

Verb –keep +particle up + preposition with.

The plane took off an hour late. ('off' changes the meaning of the verb but is not linking words or expressing direction, location, time or possession, which it would if it were acting as a preposition. That is why words like this are referred to as particles in phrasal verbs.)

The particle is similar to a preposition but it is used more like an adverb and gives more meaning to the verb. It usually comes after the main verb.

Some of the most common particles are:

on, off, in, into, out, up, down, away, back, through, over, etc. As you can see they resemble the preposition. In fact they are identical to look at.

An example of a preposition and a particle.

I took the documents up to the order department.

Here I am using the verb ‘take’ and the ‘preposition ‘up’. Up implies movement. I went up to the order department on a floor above the one where I work. This is the literal meaning of ‘take up’.

My large table takes up too much room. I need to buy a smaller one. This is a phrasal verb and ‘up’ is known as the particle as it adds a different meaning to what the preposition would.

If I am holding my cat. I can put it down. ‘Put + preposition as I make a movement to put the cat down on the floor. This is the *literal* meaning of ‘Put down’. There are many other hidden idiomatic meanings in phrasal verbs. If the vet puts my cat down – he gives it an injection and it never wakes up again. Vets put animals down when they are too sick to continue living.

Now do the following exercises and test your knowledge. The answers are at the end of each exercise. Most of the phrasal verbs used with the verb «BE». are inseparable.

The following phrasal verbs must be used with the verb «BE».

1. Hi Johnny, what a coincidence you phoning me. I was just **........ ....** call you. [An intention to do something in the immediate future]

There is one preposition that fits the following sentences .2/4

2 The police are **........** a man who robbed a bank yesterday in Suffolk. [Searching for]

3 She keeps following me everywhere I'm sure she is **........** me. [To be attracted to a person of the opposite sex. You desire to be their boyfriend or girlfriend].

4 He is being so nice to me these days. He's definitely **........**something. [To want something from someone]

The same preposition applies to sentences 5/7

5 After months of dieting I am now **........ ....** 8 stone. That's 3 stone I've lost in weight. [7stone] (my weight is down)

6 I am **........ ....** my last cigarette. I'm going out to get some more. I won't be long. (I've only got one left)

7 I have been diagnosed with osteoporosis although I keep fit and eat healthily. I guess it's

all **........ ....** genetics and childhood diet. (It all depends on)

8 I can't go to work today because I am **........ ....** flu and fever. (I have flu and fever)

9 On the phone: "Can I speak to Molly please?" "I'm afraid she's not **.........** Who's calling?" (She isn't at home)

10 Person A: I wasn't **........** last night. I went to the cinema with a friend. (I wasn't at home).

11 I'm really **........** the colour purple these days. I have a purple bag, purple shoes, a purple jacket and I've painted my room purple. (I like it very much)

There is one preposition that fits the following three examples:

12 The worst is .... he said. Now we can breathe a sigh of relief. (Ended/finished)

13 Every time I see Paul and Kate they are all .... each other. It's very embarrassing to be in their company. (When two people, boyfriend and girlfriend continuously hug, touch and kiss each other)

14 It is all .... between us, he told his girlfriend as she sat on the sofa crying. Then, to make matters worse, he told her he didn't love her anymore and that he had found a new girlfriend. (Finished)

There are two prepositions, which are the same for sentences 15/17

15 Sorry but the canteen is .... coffee at the moment. "Would you like a cup of tea

instead?” (There is no coffee left – it is finished)

16 Customer to shop assistant at the sales: “have you got these shoes in size 39?” “Sorry you’re .... luck. We sold the last pair about an hour ago.”(It is unlucky for you)

17 I got home at 3 o’ clock this morning and my poor mother was .... her mind with worry.

18/22 require the same preposition

18 My grandfather was high .... in the Canadian government before he retired.

19 The price of gas is .... again. (Higher in price)

8.20 Something is .... I’ve got a strange feeling in my stomach. (Something strange is happening)

21 John’s not .... yet. He’s still sleeping. (Awake and out of bed)

22 I ’m .... against a lot of competition these days. (I’m facing)

23 The flat above mine is .... sale. I wonder how much they are asking for it. (On the market – more frequently used for buildings and cars)

The same two prepositions are necessary for sentences 24 – up to the first two prepositions of 29

24 “I’m leaving the planning .... you” said my boss. (For you to decide)

25 “I am going to see what the children are ....” They’ve been so quiet for the past

twenty minutes. (Implies they may be doing something that is wrong such as devising or scheming something)

26 “What are you ....?” “Nothing much!. I’m just relaxing on the sofa at the moment”. (“What are you doing?”)

27 “Is that book you bought good?” “Yes, it isn’t half. It’s great. I’m already .... Chapter 18.” (Reached)

28 “We’ll have to sack him. He isn’t .... the job.” (Capable)

29 “What are you .... on Saturday night? If you’re free you could come to the theatre with us. “(What are you doing) Great! I’m .... it. (I will be happy to go)

30 “What’s .... you today? You’re very quiet?” (“What’s the matter?”)

ANSWERS

1. Hi Johnny, what a coincidence you phoning me. I was just ***about to*** *call you. An intention to do something in the immediate future] Insep.*

2 The police are ***after*** *a man who robbed a bank yesterday in Suffolk. [Searching for] Insep*

3 She keeps following me everywhere I'm sure she is ***after*** *me. [To be attracted to a person of the opposite sex. You desire to be their boyfriend or girlfriend]. To be after (someone) or (something)*

4 He is being so nice to me these days. He's definitely ***after*** *something. [To want something from someone] To be after (someone) or (something*

5 After months of dieting I am now ***down to*** *8 stone. That's 3 stone I've lost in weight. [7stone]*

6 I am ***down to*** *my last cigarette. I'm going out to get some more but I won't be long.*

7 I have been diagnosed with osteoporosis although I keep fit and eat healthily. I guess it's all ***down to*** *genetics and childhood diet. (It all depends on)*

8 I can't go to work today because I am ***down with*** *flu and fever.*

9 On the phone: Can I speak to Molly please? I'm afraid she's not ***in****. Who's calling? (She is not in the house)*

10 Person A: I wasn't ***in*** *last night. I went to the cinema with a friend.*

11 I'm really ***into*** *the colour purple these days. I have a purple bag, purple shoes, a purple jacket and I've painted my room purple.(I like it very much)*

12 The worst is ***over*** *he said. Now we can breathe a sigh of relief. (Ended/finished)*

13 Every time I see Paul and Kate they are all ***over*** *each other. It's very embarrassing to be in their company. (When two people, boyfriend and girlfriend continuously hug, touch and kiss each other)*

14 It is all ***over*** *between us, he told his girlfriend as she sat on the sofa crying. Then, to make matters worse, he told her he didn't love her anymore and that he had found a new girlfriend. (Finished)*

15 Sorry but the canteen is ***out of*** *coffee at the moment. Would you like a cup of tea instead? (There is no coffee left – it is finished)*

16 Customer to shop assistant at the sales: "have you got these shoes in size 39?" "Sorry you're ***out of*** *luck. We sold the last pair about an hour ago."*

17 I got home at 3 o' clock this morning and my poor mother was ***out of*** *her mind with worry.*

18 My grandfather was high ***up*** *in the Canadian government before he retired.*

19 The price of gas is ***up*** *again. (Higher in price)*

20 Something is ***up****. I've got a strange feeling in my stomach. (Something strange is happening)*

21 John's not ***up*** *yet. He's still sleeping. (Awake and out of bed)*

22 I 'm ***up*** *against a lot of competition these days. (I am facing)*

23 The flat above mine is ***up for*** *sale. I wonder how much they are asking for it. (On the market – more frequently used for buildings and cars)*

24 "I'm leaving the planning ***up to*** *you" said my boss. (For you to decide)*

25 "I am going to see what the children are ***up to****" They've been so quiet for the past twenty minutes. (Implies they may be doing something that is wrong such as devising or scheming something)*

26 "What are you ***up to****?" "Nothing much!. I'm just relaxing on the sofa at the moment".*

("What are you doing?")

27 "Is that book you bought good?" "Yes, it isn't half. It's great. I'm already ***up to*** *Chapter 18." (Reached)*

28 "We'll have to sack him. He isn't ***up to*** *the job." (Capable)*

29 "What are you ***up to*** *on Saturday night? If you're free you could come to the theatre with us. "(What are you doing) Great! I'm* ***up for*** *it. (I will be happy to go)*

30 "What's ***up with*** *you today? You're very quiet?" ("What's the matter?*")

Phrasal Verbs with “break”

1. My car broke .... on the motorway today. (Stopped functioning - or something mechanical or electrical). I had to call a mechanic to come and fix it.
2. She broke .... when she was told her cat had died. (Become emotionally upset and cry a lot with sadness).
3. Have you heard the news? Sally and John have broken .... (End a relationship).
4. Burglars broke .... my house last night and stole all my jewellery. (Force entry with intention to steal)
5. The police caught one of the burglars but after a struggle he managed to break......... (Free himself from someone’s grasp)
6. The burglar was put in prison but he managed to break .... (Escape by forcefully breaking a window or door or any other escape routes).
7. Peace talks broke .... after days of trying to negotiate. (Failure to reach an agreement)
8. The company broke .... this year. (Complete with no loss or gain).
9. I can’t go to the party tonight. My face has broken .... spots. I look terrible. (To

appear suddenly from nowhere. Usually marks or spots or a rash on the skin).

10. An epidemic of flu has broken .... (Begin suddenly)

ANSWERS

1. My car broke ***down*** *on the motorway today. (Stopped functioning - or something mechanical or electrical). I had to call a mechanic to come and fix it.*

2. She broke ***down.*** *when she was told her cat had died. (Become emotionally upset and cry a lot with sadness).*

3. Have you heard the news? Sally and John have broken ***up*** *(End a relationship).*

4. Burglars broke ***into*** *my house last night and stole all my jewellery. (Force entry with intention to steal)*

5. The police caught one of the burglars but after a struggle he managed to break ***away*** *(Free himself from someone's grasp)*

6. The burglar was put in prison but he managed to break ***out*** *(Escape by forcefully breaking a window or door or any other escape routes).*

7. Peace talks broke ***down*** *after days of trying to negotiate. (Failure to reach an agreement)*

8. The company broke ***even*** *this year. (Complete with no loss or gain).*

9. I can't go to the party tonight. My face has broken ***out in*** *spots. I look terrible. (To appear suddenly from nowhere. Usually marks or spots or a rash on the skin).*

10. An epidemic of flu has broken ***out*** *(Begin suddenly)*

Phrasal Verbs with “come”

1. I came .... that old watch of mine when I was cleaning out the drawers. (Find unexpectedly)

2. She comes .... as a really confident person but when you get to know her, she’s really quite shy. (Gives the impression by the way she acts).

3. To get to my house you have to come .... that old bridge. (The literal sense - move from one end to another)

4. John has been spending a lot lately. He must have come .... quite a bit of money. (To acquire, usually by inheritance)

5. Great news! The new business deal has come .... (To turn out to be successful)

6. I’m finding it difficult to come .... new ideas. (To produce in the mind)

7. In the process we’ve come .... several political and legal problems. (Meet obstacles)

8. I don’t feel very well today. I think I’ve come .... the flu.(The beginning of an illness)

9. Your father doesn’t want you to have a dog, but give him a day or two and I’m sure he’ll

come .... (Change your mind and agree to something after a bit of persuasion)

10. I couldn’t remember her name but after a few minutes it came .... me. (Return to mind, recall in your memory)

ANSWERS

1. I came ***across*** *that old watch of mine when I was cleaning out the drawers. (Find unexpectedly)*

2. She comes ***across*** *as a really confident person but when you get to know her, she's really quite shy. (Gives the impression by the way she acts).*

3. To get to my house you have to come ***across*** *that old bridge. (The literal sense, move from one end to another)*

4. John has been spending a lot lately. He must have come ***into*** *quite a bit of money. (To acquire, usually by inheritance)*

5. Great news! The new business deal has come ***off*** *(To turn out to be successful)*

6. I'm finding it difficult to come ***up with*** *new ideas. (To produce in the mind)*

7. In the process we've come ***up against*** *several political and legal problems. (Meet obstacles)*

8. I don't feel very well today. I think I've come ***down with*** *the flu. (The beginning of an* *illness)*

9. Your father doesn't want you to have a dog, but give him a day or two and I'm sure he'll come ***round*** *(Change your mind and agree to something after a bit of persuasion)*

10. I couldn't remember her name but after a few minutes it came ***back to*** *me. (Return to mind, recall in your memory)*

Phrasal Verbs with “get”

1. He got .... the car and drove off. (Enter the car)

2. He parked the car, got .... of it and locked the door. (Exit the car)

3. When the bus or train arrives, the passengers all get .... (Enter) and when it reaches their destination they get .... (Exit a train, a bus, a lorry or any other large vehicle)

4. I can’t seem to get .... the death of my cat. I feel sadder as the days go by. (Recover from an emotional shock or from an illness)

5. I can’t get .... the way she spoke to me. She has got no manners whatsoever.(To find something very hard to believe)

6. My husband and I are soul mates. We get .... like a house on fire. (Have a really good relationship)

7. How are you getting .... in your new job? Great thanks. I really love it. (To manage or deal with a situation)

8. The police tried to catch the bank robbers but they managed to get .... (Escape, usually involving some degree of difficulty)

9. The criminal got .... the crime. There wasn’t enough evidence to convict him.

Now he is as free as a bird. (To succeed in avoiding punishment)

10. How can I get .... this mess I am in. (Free yourself from)

11. I still haven’t got .... fixing the broken shutter. I’m going to have to try to find the time this weekend. (To do something that you have intended to do for a very long time)

12. What time did you get .... last night? Really late. The party went on until the early hours of the morning. (To return to a place where you were previously. Usually your own home)

13. I want to get rid .... that old mattress. It is taking up valuable space. (Remove/throw out)

14. I can’t get .... Sally. The line has been busy all morning. (Connect by telephone)

15. It is difficult to get .... him. He never listens to a word you say. (Make someone understand)

16. After winning the semi finals, we managed to get .... the finals. It was really hard work but worth the effort. (To go forward to the next stage after successfully completing the previous stage)

ANSWERS

1. He got ***in*** *the car and drove off.*

2. He parked the car, got ***out*** *of it and locked the door.*

3. When the bus or train arrives, the passengers all get ***on*** *and when it reaches their destination they get* ***off.***

4. I can't seem to get ***over*** *the death of my cat. I feel sadder as the days go by.*

5. I can't get ***over*** *the way she spoke to me. She has got no manners whatsoever.*

6. My husband and I are soul mates. We get ***on*** *like a house on fire.*

7. How are you getting ***on*** *in your new job? Great thanks. I really love it.*

8. The police tried to catch the bank robbers but they managed to get ***away.***

9. The criminal got ***away with*** *the crime. There wasn't enough evidence to convict him. Now he is as free as a bird.*

10. How can I get ***out of*** *this mess I am in.*

11. I still haven't got ***around to*** *fixing the broken shutter. I'm going to have to try to find* *the time this weekend.*

12. What time did you get ***back*** *last night? Really late. The party went on until the early hours of the morning.*

13. I want to get rid ***of*** *that old mattress. It is taking up valuable space.*

14. I can't get ***through to*** *Sally. The line has been busy all morning.*

15. It is difficult to get ***through to*** *him. He never listens to a word you say.*

16. After winning the semi finals, we managed to get ***through to*** *the finals. It was really hard work but worth the effort.*

Phrasal Verbs with “Give”

1. He’s a generous man. He gives **……..** half of his salary to charity.
2. In Britain and other countries, it is the custom for the father of the bride to give his daughter **……..** upon reaching the altar. (Present the bride to the groom)
3. Can you give me **……..** that book I lent you? (Return something to someone)
4. Person A: Guess how much money I made this month? Person B: 1000 dollars? Person A: No, try again. Person B: 1500 dollars? Person A: No. Person B: 2000 dollars? Person A: No, do you give **……..** ? Person B: Yes, tell me then how much you made? (Stop trying/surrender)
5. The floor gave **……..** after the flood. (Collapse)

The following seven sentences are all examples of the same multi –word verb. There are five examples in different contexts so as to illustrate clearly the meaning as this is a tricky one to put into practice for most non natives.

6. Never give …….. …….. the pressures of life. Remember; a winner never quits and a quitter never wins. (Surrender)

7. If anyone tries to overpower you, do not give …….. …….. their idle threats.

8. If you are on a diet, you should never give …….. …….. temptation. Never go to the supermarket on an empty stomach or you could find yourself reaching for those forbidden fatty foods.

9. In these days of internet trolls, never give …….. …….. cyber blackmailing. (Succumb/surrender)

10. In this day and age, young girls give in to boys too easily. That is why many of them end up pregnant. My advice to all those young girls is: never ever give …….. …….. him . If the boy loves you he will respect you. After all you want someone who loves you for the person you are and not someone who wants to enjoy himself for a night or two.

11. After a lot of persuasion, they finally gave …….. and signed the contract. (Agree to do something after having originally opposed to it).

12. Teacher to student: Can you give …….. these books to the rest of the class please? (Distribute)

13. When I am on the bus, I rarely see anyone give …….. their seats to the elderly.

14. The doctor has told me to give …….. smoking because of my terrible cough. (Stop for

good - ‘for good’ = forever)

15. After searching for hours on end, the mountain rescue team finally gave. **………** all hope of finding the missing skiers. (Abandon all hope)

16. I’ve decided to give **………** acting altogether. I need a break from it all.

17. Yesterday a drunk driver gave himself **………** to the police just hours after he had crashed into a wall and injuring a passerby. (Stop hiding and admit to the authorities that what you did).

ANSWERS

*1. He's a generous man. He gives **away** half of his salary to charity.*

*2. In Britain and other countries, it is the custom for the father of the bride to give his daughter **away** upon reaching the altar. (Present the bride to the groom)*

*3. Can you give me **back** that book I lent you? (Return something to someone)*

*4. Person A: Guess how much money I made this month? Person B: 1000 dollars? Person A: No, try again. Person B: 1500 dollars? Person A: No. Person B: 2000 dollars? Person A: No, do you give .**in**? Person B: Yes, tell me then how much you made? (Stop trying/surrender)*

*5. The floor gave **in** after the flood. (Collapse)*

*6. Never give **in to** the pressures of life. Remember; a winner never quits and a quitter never wins. (Surrender)*

*7. If anyone tries to overpower you, do not give **in to** their idle threats.*

8. If you are on a diet, you should never give ***in to*** *temptation. Never go to the supermarket on an empty stomach or you could find yourself reaching for those forbidden fatty foods.*

9. In these days of internet trolls, never give ***in to*** *cyber blackmailing. (Succumb/surrender)*

10. In this day and age, young girls give ***in to*** *boys too easily. That is why many of them end up pregnant. My advice to all those young girls is: never ever give* ***in****. (GIVE IN TO SOMEONE) If the boy loves you he will respect you. After all you want someone who loves you for the person you are and not someone who wants to enjoy himself for a night or two.*

11. After a lot of persuasion, they finally gave ***in*** *and signed the contract. (Agree to do something after having originally opposed to it).*

12. Teacher to student: Can you give ***out*** *these books to the rest of the class please? (Distribute)*

13. When I am on the bus, I rarely see anyone give ***up*** *their seats to the elderly.*

14. The doctor has told me to give ***up*** *smoking because of my terrible cough. (Stop for good - 'for good' = forever)*

*15. After searching for hours on end, the mountain rescue team finally gave .**up** all hope of finding the missing skiers. (Abandon all hope)*

*16. I've decided to give **up** acting altogether. I need a break from it all.*

*17. Yesterday a drunk driver gave himself **up** to the police just hours after he had crashed into a wall and injuring a passerby. (Stop hiding and admit to the authorities that what you did).*

Phrasal Verbs with “look”

1. The police are looking .... the death of a young man found last night. (Investigate)

2. Can you look John’s phone number .... for me please? (Find information in a book or a list or a timetable)

3. I am looking .... seeing my family again after six months of living abroad. (To feel pleased and excited about something that is going to happen)

4. Look .... ! There’s a car coming. You’ll get run over if you’re not careful. (Attention, be careful)

5. Can you look .... my cat when I go on holiday? (Take care of it)

6. My neighbours are real snobs. They look .... us. (They see us as inferior).

7. The crowd looked .... as the firemen tried to put out the fire. (Observe as spectators without taking part/without participating)

8. He carefully looked .... the contract before signing it. (Examine)

9. She really looks .... her boss. He has taught her many things. (Admire and respect)

10. Person A: Have you still got those old photographs you took of me when we were on holiday in Spain years ago? Person B:I don’t remember exactly where I put them but I’ll look them .... for you. (Search among things and find)

ANSWERS

1. The police are looking ***into*** *the death of a young man found last night. (Investigate)*

2. Can you look John's phone number ***up*** *for me please? (Find information in a book or a list or a timetable)*

3. I am looking ***forward to*** *seeing my family again after six months of living abroad. (To feel pleased and excited about something that is going to happen)*

4. Look ***out****! There's a car coming. You'll get run over if you're not careful. (Attention, be careful)*

5. Can you look ***after*** *my cat when I go on holiday? (Take care of it)*

6. My neighbours are real snobs. They look ***down on*** *us. (They see us as inferior).*

7. The crowd looked ***on*** *as the firemen tried to put out the fire. (Observe as spectators without taking part/without participating)*

8. He carefully looked ***over*** *the contract before signing it. (Examine)*

9. She really looks ***up to*** *her boss. He has taught her many things. (Admire and respect)*

10. Person A: Have you still got those old photographs you took of me when we were on holiday in Spain years ago? Person B: I don't remember exactly where I put them but I'll look them ***out*** *for you. (Search among things in a bid to find)*

Phrasal Verbs with “Pick and Put”

1. Can you pick the children ……. from school tomorrow? (Go and collect/get them and accompany them home)
2. You’ve dropped your pen, do you want me to pick it …….?
3. I’ve picked ……. the flu, have you got an aspirin?
4. Mother to son: Can you pick ……. those clothes? You’re always leaving them on the floor. Son to mother: I’m fed up, you’re always picking ……. me.
5. This mobile phone can’t seem to pick ……. 4G. (Receive a signal)
6. Can you put the cat ……. before going to the shops?
7. A. I’ll give you a lift to the airport. B. Don’t worry, I’ll get a taxi, don’t put yourself ……. (Inconvenience yourself)
8. The firemen arrived in time to put ……. the fire. (Extinguish)
9. Don’t worry about booking a hotel, I’ll put you ……. when you come to Rome. (Give hospitality to = provide food and accommodation for somebody in your home)
10. He left his wife because he couldn’t put ……. ……. her any longer. (Tolerate) *idiomatic*

11. They want to move to a bigger house so they've put their house ……. for sale.

12. He works a lot. Sometimes he puts ……. twelve hours a day at the office. (Give your time to)

13. We've got too much work to do today so we'll have to put the meeting ……. until tomorrow. (Postpone = change to a later date)

14. Don't talk about spiders while I am eating or you will put me ……. my food.

15. I've been saving hard this year. I've put ……. enough money to buy a car. (Saved)

16. Caller to receptionist: Good morning. Could you put me ……. to the manager please. (To connect by telephone)

17. My son has put me ……. so much in this period because of his drug addiction. (Cause someone to experience pain and stress)

18. Customer to shop assistant: I haven't got enough money with me today so could you put this blouse ……. and I will pick it ……. tomorrow. (Reserve something for a customer to collect later)

19. Stop leaving all those books lying around. Can you put them …….?

20. She's always putting him ……., especially in front of friends. (Make someone feel inferior)

21. I am so sad because we had to get our cat put …….. She was very ill. (When the vet

injects the animal so it can slip away peacefully into nature, if it is suffering too much in this life).

22. Put the cat ……. on the floor before he scratches you. (Literal meaning)

23. Her husband has been put ……. for life. Seemingly he was involved in the armed robbery at the bank last month. (Put in prison) - Informal English.

24. He's putting it ……. that I stole the money, but it isn't true (Spread news).

25. You've put ……. a lot of weight since I last saw you. You used to be much thinner. (Gain weight, become fatter)

26. Mother to child: Stop pretending to cry. I know you are putting it ……. . (This means "to act").

27. Telephone conversation: Hello, could I speak to John please? John's mother: Hang on and I'll put him ……. (Connect to another phone)

28. Put ……. your coat today. It's very cold outside. (Wear)

29. The Beatles really knew how to put ……. an excellent performance. They drove their fans wild with excitement.

30. Many orders were placed when the latest *I phone* was put ……. the market

ANSWERS

1 ***Pick*** *the children* ***up*** *OR* ***pick up*** *the children. This phrasal verb can be divided or kept together. It means to go and collect someone, usually by car and take them to their destination.*

2. Do you want me to ***pick*** *it* ***up****?* ***Pick*** *the pencil* ***up*** *Or* ***pick up*** *the pencil. You can split this phrasal verb or keep it together. When something falls onto the floor, you* ***pick*** *it* ***up****.*

3. I've ***picked up*** *the flu. This means you have caught the flu. Once again we can either divided the phrasal verb from its particle or keep them together. It is more common to keep the verb and particle together though.*

4. Can you ***pick up*** *those clothes or can you* ***pick*** *those clothes* ***up****. You're always* ***picking on*** *me. You cannot separate the verb from its particle. To* ***pick on*** *somebody = to deliberately choose someone to harass all the time or to blame for everything.*

5. A mobile phone ***picks up*** *a signal when it receives it. A radio picks up signals. Usually it is not common to spit the verb from its particle in this context.* ***Pick*** *a signal* ***up*** *is* *rarely heard.*

6. ***Put*** *the* ***cat*** *out = put it outside the house. This must be divided. It makes no sense in this context if we say “put out the cat”.*
7. *Don’t* ***put*** *yourself* ***out =*** *I do not want you to inconvenience yourself on my behalf. (To put (someone) out, in this context the verb and the particle have to be split.*
8. ***Put out*** *the fire OR* ***put*** *the fire* ***out****.*
9. *I’ll* ***put*** *you* ***up.*** *The verb has to be divided. We cannot say* ***“put up*** *a person”*
10. *He couldn’t* ***put up with*** *her any longer. He could no longer tolerate her. The particles* ***cannot*** *be separated in this context.*
11. *They’ve* ***put*** *their house* ***up*** *for sale = to put it on the market. This verb cannot be separated from its particle.*
12. *He* ***puts in*** *twelve hours a day. This cannot be separated.*
13. ***Put*** *the meeting* ***off*** *or put off the meeting. More common to divide the verb from its particle. (put something off)*
14. *You’ll* ***put*** *me* ***off*** *my food. The verb has to be separated from the particle.* ***Put*** *(somebody)* ***off*** *(something).*
15. *I’ve* ***put*** *enough money* ***away/aside*** *OR I’ve put away/aside enough money. The verb*

can be separated from its particle and it can also stay connected to its particle in this context. This means to save money for something.

16. *Could you* ***put*** *me* ***through*** *to the manager please? This means that you will be connected to another phone. In this case the secretary connects you from her phone to the manager's phone. (Put (somebody) through to (someone). We* ***cannot say*** *"****put through*** *the manager".*

17. *My son has* ***put*** *me* ***through*** *so much. (To put (somebody) through (something). We need to separate the verb from its particle, otherwise it makes no sense.*

18. *Could you put this blouse aside for me. (Keep it for me until I return later with the money to pay for it). We need to separate the verb from its particle. Put (something) aside for (someone).*

19. *Stop leaving all those books lying around. Can you* ***put*** *them* ***away****? Put the books in their correct place. This verb has to be separated from its particle. Put (something) away.*

20. *She's always* ***putting*** *him* ***down****. (Put (somebody)* ***down.*** *This verb must be separated from its particle.*

21. *To get the cat* ***put down*** *Or the vet* ***put*** *the cat* ***down****.*

22**.** ***Put*** *the cat* ***down*** *on the floor. Here the verb needs to be separated from its particle*

*.**Put** (something or someone) **down.** Place down on the floor or the table or any other surface.*

*23. Her husband has been **put down** for life. Cannot be divided or meaning changes. (Sent to prison)*

*24. He's **putting** it **around** that I stole the money. (Put (something) around. Needs to be split from the particle. (Spread news or gossip)*

*25. You've **put on** a lot of weight Or you've **put** a lot of weight **on**. Here we can use both ways. We can split the verb and the particle or we can keep them together without any change to the meaning..*

*26. I know you are **putting** it **on**. The verb needs to be separated from its particle. To put (something) on = to pretend/act.*

*27. Hang on and I'll **put** him **on**. This is different from I'll **put** him **through**. I'll **put** him **on** means that you will pass the phone to him. **Put** him **through**, on the other hand means to connect to another phone in another room, usually in the work place. We need to keep the verb separate from its particle in this context.*

*28**.** **Put on** your coat or **put** your coat **on.** This is the literal sense of the meaning.*

*29**.** **Put on** (a performance)**.***

30. ***Put on*** *(the market) Made available for purchase*

Phrasal Verbs with “Run”

1. I ran .... an old friend of mine yesterday while I was out shopping. It was a great surprise to see her again. We hadn’t seen each other since we were at school together. (Meet unexpectedly)
2. Oh gosh, we’ve run .... coffee again. Could you get some when you go out? (Finish, not have any left)
3. He ran .... a lot of debt on his credit card. He is so irresponsible. He spends more than he earns.
4. Her husband ran .... his secretary. (When a married person leaves their husband or wife and goes to live with their lover).
5. He’s still very upset after running .... the cat. He didn’t see it in the dark. (Hit with your car or another vehicle and injure or kill)
6. Okay, can I just run .... the main points again? (Quickly explain)
7. She’s always running her mother in law .... (Speak badly of, criticise)
8. He always runs .... his mother whenever he’s in trouble. (Go to for help)

9. Those new cars run .... electricity but they are so expensive to buy. (Use as a source of power in order to function)

10. The company ran .... some problems initially but now things have taken a turn for the better. (Encounter problems, difficulties, usually unexpectedly)

ANSWERS

1. I ran into an old friend of mine yesterday while I was out shopping. It was a great surprise to see her again. We hadn't seen each other since we were at school together.

2. Oh gosh, we've run out of coffee again. Could you get some when you go out?

3. He ran up a lot of debt on his credit card. He is so irresponsible. He spends more than he earns.

4. Her husband ran away with his secretary.

5. He's still very upset after running over the cat. He didn't see it in the dark.

6. Okay, can I just run through the main points again?

7. She's always running her mother in law down

8. He always runs to his mother whenever he's in trouble.

9. Those new cars run on electricity but they are so expensive to buy.

10. The company ran up against some problems initially but now things have taken a turn for the better.

Phrasal Verbs with “Take”

1... I’m thinking of taking .... a new hobby. (Begin a sport, hobby or pastime)

2... I’m going to buy a smaller table. This one is too big. It takes .... too much room. (Occupy space or time)

3... He has really taken .... her. He’s always buying her present. (Have a liking for)

4... My new trousers are too long for me. I’m going to have to take them .... (Shorten them)

5... My skirt is too short. Tonight I’m going to take .... the hem. (Make longer)

6... I’ve taken .... an insurance policy on my house. I decided on third party insurance for fire, theft and flooding. (Obtain by filling out the necessary forms and agreeing to the conditions)

7... I’ve taken .... a bank loan to buy a car. (Obtain by filling out the necessary forms and agreeing to the conditions)

8... The company has been taken .... by a Spanish telecommunications company. (Take control)

9... You’ve just missed the plane. It took .... a few minutes ago. (Left the ground)

10.. Take .... your jacket. It’s hot in here. (Remove)

11.. He takes .... his father. The two of them love playing tennis. (Be similar in character as a relative)

12 .. My new mobile phone doesn’t work. I’m going to take it .... tomorrow and ask for a refund. (Return something to the shop where you bought it)

13 .. Business has really taken .... this year. Last year profits were low so hopefully we’ll make up for the loss this year. (Become successful)

14.. I’m really tired. I’m going to take a day .... tomorrow. (Not go to work or school for a day or more)

15.. I can’t do that translation for you. It will take .... too much of my time. (Occupy)

16.. Why don’t you apply for a job at the new phone company. They are taking .... new staff. (Recruit/employ)

17.. I’ve taken .... too much work. How will I ever find the time to finish it all? (Accept to do it)

18.. She’s a very kind person. She always takes .... stray dogs that she finds in the street. (Give a home to)

ANSWERS

1... I'm thinking of taking up a new hobby. (Begin a sport, hobby or pastime)

2... I'm going to buy a smaller table. This one is too big. It takes up too much room. (Occupy space or time)

3... He has really taken to her. He's always buying her present. (Have a liking for)

4... My new trousers are too long for me. I'm going to have to take them up (Shorten them)

5... My skirt is too short. Tonight I'm going to take down the hem. (Make longer)

6... I've taken out an insurance policy on my house. I decided on third party insurance for fire, theft and flooding. (Obtain by filling out the necessary forms and agreeing to the conditions)

7... I've taken out a bank loan to buy a car. (Obtain by filling out the necessary forms and agreeing to the conditions)

8... The company has been taken over by a Spanish telecommunications company. (Take control)

9... You’ve just missed the plane. It took off a few minutes ago. (Left the ground)

10.. Take off your jacket. It’s hot in here. (Remove)

11.. He takes after his father. The two of them love playing tennis. (Be similar in character as a relative)

12 .. My new mobile phone doesn’t work. I’m going to take it back tomorrow and ask for a refund. (Return something to the shop where you bought it)

13 .. Business has really taken off this year. Last year profits were low so hopefully we’ll make up for the loss this year. (Become successful)

14.. I’m really tired. I’m going to take a day off tomorrow. (Not go to work or school for a day or more)

15.. I can’t do that translation for you. It will take up too much of my time. (Occupy)

16.. Why don’t you apply for a job at the new phone company. They are taking on new staff. (Recruit/employ)

17.. I’ve taken on too much work. How will I ever find the time to finish it all? (Accept to do it)

18.. She’s a very kind person. She always takes in stray dogs that she finds in the street. (Give a home to)

VERB + PARTICLE

Put the correct particle in the gaps

1. I never remember a word unless I write it …………… (Pen to paper)
2. Can you make up your mind now or do you need time to think it ……………? (Reflect)
3. He's late again. I wonder what excuse he'll come …………… …………… this time. (Think up)
4. When I think …………… my grandmother I remember the stories she used to tell me. (Recall to your memory)
5. I need some space in my wardrobe so I'll have to throw …………… some of my old clothes. (Free yourself from by putting into the rubbish bin)
6. She won her first contest while she was still at school and went …………… to win the Olympic medal when she was 20. (Progressed to become)
7. I've torn all my old letters …………… and put them in the bin.

8. I don’t think that new fashion will catch …………… It looks so silly. (Become fashionable)

9. A: Did you get the job? B: No, they turned me …………… (Refusal)

10. She lived …………… …………… her reputation for being a model student and passed all her exams with distinction.

11. Shall I stop now or would you like me to carry ……………? (Continue)

12. This weekend I’m going to get …………… …………… a few friends and go sailing. (Meet)

13. Don’t forget to ask the shop assistant …………… a receipt.

14. When’s their next album coming …………… ?

15. I can’t hear the radio, can you turn it …………… ? (Increase the volume)

16. I’m finding it difficult to come …… ……. new ideas. (Think of)

17. I was disappointed with the film - it didn’t …………… ……….… ………… my expectations. (Meet my expectations)

18. Has the latest edition of Newsweek ………….. …………… yet? (Be in circulation)

19. A: do you think this jacket suits me? B: I can’t tell unless you try it …………

20. She ……………… ……………… playing the piano until the early hours of the morning.

21. I’m sure I ………… his address ……………. on a piece of paper, but I can’t find it.

22. I’m ……………… ………….. getting a new car.(Have the idea in mind)

23. I’ll have to …………… …………… their invitation because I’m busy on Saturday. (Refuse)

24. I’m a bit nervous about …………… my boss ……………. a day off next week.

25. A: Has he said yes? B: Not yet, but he’s…………….it ……………..

ANSWERS

1. I never remember a word unless I write it ***down.***

2. Can you make up your mind now or do you need time to think it ***over****?*

3. He's late again. I wonder what excuse he'll come ***up with*** *this time.*

4. When I think ***about*** *my grandmother I remember the stories she used to tell me.*

5. I need some space in my wardrobe so I'll have to throw ***out*** *some of my old clothes.*

6. She won her first contest while she was still at school and went ***on*** *to win the Olympic medal when she was 20.*

7. I've torn all my old letters ***up*** *and put them in the bin.*

8. I don't think that new fashion will catch ***on.*** *It looks so silly.*

9. A: Did you get the job? B: No, they turned me ***down***

10. She lived ***up to*** *her reputation for being a model student and passed all her exams with distinction.*

11. Shall I stop now or would you like me to carry ***on****?*

*12. This weekend I'm going to get **together with** a few friends and go sailing.*

*13. Don't forget to ask the shop assistant **for** a receipt.*

*14. When's their next album coming **out**?*

*15. I can't hear the radio, can you **turn** it **up**?*

*16. I'm finding it difficult to come **up with** new ideas*

*17. I was disappointed with the film - it didn't **live up to** my expectations.*

*18. Has the latest edition of Newsweek **come out** yet?*

*19. A: do you think this jacket suits me? B: I can't tell unless you try it **on.***

*20. She **insists on** playing the piano until the early hours of the morning.*

*21. I'm sure I **wrote** his address **down** on a piece of paper, but I can't find it.*

*22. I'm **thinking of** getting a new car.*

*23. I'll have to **turn down** their invitation because I'm busy on Saturday.*

*24. I'm a bit nervous about **asking** my boss **for** a day off next week.*

*25. A: Has he said yes? B: Not yet, but he's **thinking** it **over.***

THE NIGHTMARE OF “GET”

The verb “get” is a nightmare for every learner of the English language because of the many meanings it has.

Look at the exercise below and decide on the meaning of “get”.

Fetch - obtain - understand - answer the phone - receive - hit - be - catch (hear and understand) - earn - buy - win - secure - arrive/reach - to cause (someone or something to do something) - open the door - succeed in obtaining

1. I get so many emails every day. I don’t have the time to reply to most of them.
2. I got top marks in my exams. I’m going out to celebrate this evening.

3. Excuse me. How do you get to the station from here?
4. I sold my car last week and I got a really good price for it.
5. Could you get me a glass of water when you go to the kitchen?
6. We managed to get an excellent deal.
7. He didn’t laugh at the joke because he didn’t get it.
8. I didn’t get the job because I didn’t have the right qualifications.
9. How much do you get per month in your new job?
10. Did you get these shoes from the new shoe shop in Piccadilly Circus?
11. She got a medal for coming in first in the swimming competition.
12. I can’t get the children *to go* to bed early. They always make such a fuss.
13. I finally got the computer *to work* again after it had crashed.
14. Can you get the phone please? My hands are wet.
15. I just don’t get it. He said he would definitely come. It’s unlike him not to show up.
16. Can you get the door? If it’s John, tell him to come in.
17. Sorry, I didn’t get your name?
18. I got really sick while I was on holiday but now I’m feeling a lot better.
19. He got arrested for robbing a bank.
20. The bullet got him in the head.

ANSWERS

1. I get so many emails every day. I don’t have the time to reply to most of them. **RECEIVE**
2. I got top marks in my exams. I’m going out to celebrate this evening. **OBTAINED**
3. Excuse me. How do you get to the station from here? **REACH/ARRIVE**
4. I sold my car last week and I got a really good price for it. **OBTAINED**
5. Could you get me a glass of water when you go to the kitchen? **FETCH**
6. We managed to get an excellent deal. **SECURE**
7. He didn’t laugh at the joke because he didn’t get it. **UNDERSTAND**
8. I didn’t get the job because I didn’t have the right qualifications. **SUCCEED IN OBTAINING**
9. How much do you get per month in your new job? **EARN**
10. Did you get these shoes from the new shoe shop in Piccadilly Circus? **BUY**
11. She got a medal for coming in first in the swimming competition. **WON/WAS**

AWARDED

12.I can’t get the children to go to bed early. They always make such a fuss. **CAUSE THEM TO GO**

13. I finally got the computer to work again after it had crashed. **CAUSED IT TO WORK**

14. Can you get the phone please? My hands are wet. **ANSWER THE PHONE**

15. I just don’t get it. He said he would definitely come. It’s unlike him not to show up**. UNDERSTAND**

16. Can you get the door? If it’s John, tell him to come in. **OPEN THE DOOR**

17. Sorry, I didn’t get your name? **CATCH/HEAR/UNDERSTAND**

18. I got really sick while I was on holiday but now I’m feeling a lot better. **BECAME**

19. He got arrested for robbing a bank. **(BE) WAS**

20. The bullet got him in the head. **HIT**

The Nightmare Of Make And Do

1.

I did a mistake in my homework. ✗

I made a mistake in my homework. ✓

There is a lot of confusion with the verbs **‘make’** and **‘do’.** In some languages there is only one verb used for everything.

Collocations with ‘make’

Make a mistake (I made many mistakes in my English exam).

Make your bed after you get up in the morning

Make peace (After years of fighting, they decided to make peace)

Make a cake (My mother is going to make a chocolate cake tonight)

Make breakfast/lunch/dinner or a cup of coffee or tea

Make friends (I made friends with my new neighbours)

Make a choice

Make a comment

Make a noise (the neighbours make so much noise)

Make a speech (he made an excellent speech at his brother's wedding)

Make a plan (have you made any plans for the summer yet?)

Make arrangements (I have made arrangements with the estate agency to sell my house)

Make a suggestion

Make a statement

Make a reservation (He phoned the restaurant and made a reservation for four) or He booked a table for four or He asked the waiter to reserve a table for four

Make a promise (I made a promise not to tell anyone)

Make a mess (my husband makes such a mess of the kitchen when he is cooking)

Make an impression (on someone) He really made a good impression at the job interview yesterday

Make an excuse (He phoned his boss and made an excuse because he was too tired to go to work)

Make an offer (I’m going to make you an offer you can’t refuse)

Make an exception (This time I will make an exception and accept you even though you don’t have any previous experience)

Make sense (This doesn’t make any sense to me. I find it hard to comprehend)

Make up your mind (this means to decide). Example: Have you made up your mind where you are going on holiday this year = Have you decided where … I haven’t made up my mind where I want to go. He hasn’t made up his mind yet.

Make a decision (to do something) I find it difficult to make decisions. I am a very indecisive person

Make sure (make sure you turn off the gas before you go out)

Make a profit/a loss (the company made a profit last year, but his year they have made a loss)

Make a complaint (The soup was cold so they called the waiter and made a complaint)

Make a fortune (I’m making a fortune in my new job. The salary is very high)

Make a discovery. (Christopher Columbus made an amazing discovery when he discovered America)

Make a difference. (It will make a big difference to the house if we paint all the rooms white)

Collocations with ‘do’

Do your homework.

Do the dishes.

Do the washing up. (Same meaning as ‘do the dishes’)

Do well in an exam.

Do badly in an exam.

Do someone a favour.

Do the cooking. (Cook for the family or for yourself)

Do the ironing. (Iron your clothes)

Do the dusting. (Dust the furniture)

Do the housework. (Do all that is needed to keep the house clean and tidy)

Do the shopping. (Buy what you need at the shops)

Do your hair. (Style your hair)

Do your face. (Put on makeup)

Do business.

Collocations with take

Take a break

Take a walk

Take a taxi

Take the bus into town

Take medicine

Take an exam

Take notes

Take (someone's) temperature

Take a chance

Take a look

Take a seat

CHAPTER SIXTEEN

HOW TO INCREASE YOUR VOCABULARY

Vocabulary building is an excellent way to increase your vocabulary. It is a good idea to write down the different forms of the base word. The verb, the adjective, the noun, the adverb and also if there is a suffix or prefix which could be added. A suffix is added to the end of the word. A prefix is added to the beginning and they change the meaning.

Add new words to your vocabulary building table as you learn them. Write sentences with the words in context to remember them.

Below are some lists of some frequently used words in English.

Verb	**Adjective**	**Noun**	**Adverb**
Accept	Acceptable	acceptance	acceptably
	Unacceptable		
	unacceptably		
Achieve	Achievable	Achievement/Achiever	
		Achievability	
Acquire	Acquirable /Acquired	Acquirement/Acquirer	
		Acquisition	
Advertise		Ad/Advert/Advertisement	
		Advertiser	

Verb	Adjective	Noun	Adverb
Agree	Agreeable	Agreement	Agreeable
Disagree	Disagreeable	Disagreement	
			Disagreeably
Amaze	Amazed/Amazing	Amazement	Amazingly
Appear		Appearance	
Disappear		Disappearance	
Reappear		Reappearance	
Argue	Arguable	Argument	Arguably

Verb	Adjective	Noun	Adverb
Arrange	Arranged	Arrangement	
Assign	Assigned/Assignable	Assignment	
			Assignably
		Assigner	
Assist	Assisted	Assistant	
Attach	Attached	Attachment	
Detach	Detached	Detachment	
Behave	Behavioural	Behaviour	

Verb	Adjective	Noun	Adverb
Cover	Coverable	Cover/Covering	
Uncover	Uncovering		
Discover	Discovered/Discoverable	Discovery	
		Discoverer	
Develop	Developable	Development	
Differ	Different	Difference	Differently
Direct	Directed	Director/Direction	Directly
Redirect	Redirected	Redirection	

Verb	**Adjective**	**Noun**	**Adverb**
Disappoint	Disappointed	Disappointment	Disappointingly
Educate	Educated	Education/Educator	
Employ	Employed/Employable	Employment	
	Unemployed	Unemployment	
	Unemployable		
Elect	Elected	Election	
Enjoy	Enjoyable	Enjoyment	Enjoyably
Free	Free	Freedom	Freely
Govern	Governable	Government	

Grow	Growth	Grower (Cultivator)	Growingly
Imagine	Imaginable	Imagination	Imaginably
Improve	Improved/Improvable	Improvement	
Interest	Interested/Interesting	Interest	Interestingly
Disinterest	Disinterested	Disinterest	Uninterestingly
	Uninterested		
Lead	Leading	Leader/Leadership	Leadingly
Manage	Managed/Manageable	Manager/Management	
			Manageably
Mismanage	Mismanaged	Mismanagement	
Move	Moveable	Movement	
Pay	Payable/Paid	Payment	
Perform	Performable	Performer/Performance	
Photograph	Photographable	Photograph/Photographer	
	Photogenic		

Verb	**Adjective**	**Noun**	**Adverb**
	Polite	Politeness	Politely
	Impolite	Impoliteness	Impolitely
	Possible	Possibility	Possibly
	Impossible	Impossibility	Impossibly
Pronounce	Pronounceable	Pronunciation	
Mispronounce		*Mispronunciation*	
Purchase	Purchasable/Purchasing	Purchase	

Verb	Adjective	Noun	Adverb
Rely (on)	Reliable	Reliance/Reliability	Reliably
	Unreliable	Unreliability	Unreliably
Respect	Respected/Respectable Respectful	Respect	Respectably
Disrespect	Disrespectful	Disrespect	Disrespectfully
	Responsible	Responsibility	

Verb	Adjective	Noun	Adverb
Satisfy	Satisfied/Satisfying	Satisfaction	Satisfyingly
Dissatisfy	Unsatisfied/Unsatisfying Dissatisfy/Dissatisfying	Dissatisfaction	
Signify	Significant	Significance	Significantly
	Insignificant	Insignificance	Insignificantly

SUMMARY OF THE MAIN TENSES

1. The Present Simple

Used to express habits, facts and timetables

Structure: Subject + base verb + object

Question: Use ‘do’ or ‘does’ for questions in third person singular

Negative: Use ‘do not’ (don’t) or ‘does not’ (doesn’t) in third person singular

Example:

I go to work every day

I don’t go out every evening

Do I have breakfast every morning?

The sun rises in the east (‘s’ on base verb in third person singular)

It doesn’t rise in the west

Does it rise in the east?

The train leaves at 9.30 tomorrow morning.

It doesn’t leave from platform 12.

Does the train for Milan leave at 9 tomorrow?

With the verb ‘be’

Affirmative: I am French

Question: Am I French?

Negative: I am not French

2. The Past Simple

Used to express finished actions. Normally used with a past time expression.

Structure: Subject + verb in the simple past

Example:

Affirmative: I went to the park yesterday.

Question: Did he wake up early yesterday morning?

Negative: I didn’t go to the supermarket this morning.

3. The Present Continuous

Used for something in progress at the moment of speaking - for something which is happening in this period and also for expressing future arrangements - with certain verbs.

Example:

In this moment

Affirmative: John is sleeping at the moment. He can’t come to the phone.

Question: Is John sleeping?

Negative: Jack isn’t talking. He’s watching a movie.

In this period

Affirmative: The managers are working on the new project.

Question: Are you still reading that book?

Negative: We aren’t working on the project anymore.

Future arrangement

Affirmative: We’re flying to Spain tomorrow

Question: Are you meeting Tom for lunch on Wednesday?

Negative: I’m not having the party on Saturday anymore.

4. The Past Continuous

Used for something in progress at a certain moment in the past - usually interrupted by a past action.

Structure: Subject + be + gerund - (I, he, she, it was) (you, they, we were)

Example:

Affirmative: I was reading a book when she called.

Question: Were you cooking when I arrived?

Negative: I wasn’t sleeping when the phone rang

5. The Present Perfect

Used for something which began in the past and is still true now, when used with ‘for’ and ‘since.

Structure: subject + auxiliary verb ‘have’ + past participle of the verb. Use ‘has’ for third person singular - he, she, it.

Example:

Affirmative: I have lived in Italy for many years.

Affirmative third person: She has been in this room since 8 o’ clock.

Question: Have you been here since this morning?

Negative: We haven’t been in London for three weeks. We’ve been there for two weeks.

Used for something that happened before now but not time related (very recently - even one minute ago).
Affirmative: I have lost my pen
Question: Have you seen my pen anywhere?
Negative: I haven't seen your pen

Used for something that happened in your life before now (It could be a minute ago or twenty years ago, we are not interested in the time)
Affirmative: I have been to London (could be last week or twenty years ago. It is irrelevant.
Question: Have you (ever) tried Indian food? (in your life)
Negative: She hasn't flown before or she has never flown before

6. The Present Perfect Continuous

Used for something in progress from past to present when used with 'for' and 'since'
Structure: Subject + auxiliary verb 'have' or 'has' in third person + been + gerund
Example:
Affirmative: I've been writing for over an hour. (I started over an hour ago and I am still writing)

Question: How long have you been writing for?

Negative: I haven’t been living in Spain for three years. I’ve been living there for two.

Used for something in progress until very recently

Affirmative: I’ve been working a lot (that is why I am tired)

Question: Have you been shopping? (action in progress before now - present evidence - the person is carrying shopping bags)

He hasn’t been sleeping a lot lately.

7. The Past Perfect

The past perfect expresses the idea that something occurred before another action in the past. It can also show that something happened before a specific time in the past.

Structure - past tense of auxiliary verb ‘have’ (had) + past participle of the verb. We normally use it with ‘before’ or ‘when’ or ‘because’ or ‘until that moment, day, week etc. or ‘by the time.’

Example:

Affirmative: When I switched on the TV, the film had ended (before I switched on the TV)

I was sad to leave the house I had lived in for so many years.

I was sad when I left the house I had lived in for so many years.

Until this morning I had never been on a plane.

Question: Had you ever been on a tractor before starting work on the farm?

Negative: I had never eaten parmesan cheese before going to Italy.

I had never been on a rollercoaster before I went to the amusement park yesterday.

8. The Past Perfect Continuous

Used to express something in progress until a moment in the past (when used with ‘for’ or ‘since’ or prior to a past moment without the use of ‘for’ and ‘since’.

Structure: subject + past tense of auxiliary verb ‘have’ (had) + been + gerund

Example:

Affirmative: When I arrived at the bus stop, the other people who were standing in the queue, had been waiting for nearly an hour.

Question: How long had they been waiting when you arrived at the bus stop?

Negative: They hadn’t been waiting for very long when the bus finally arrived.

When used without ‘for’ and ‘since’.

Affirmative: When I looked out the window this morning, I saw that it had been raining (in progress until before I looked out. Usually there is some kind of evidence - the wet ground outside)

When I arrived, she had been cooking. (Before I arrived this was in progress - the present evidence is the lovely smell of cooking, or all the cooked food on the table).
Question: Had she really been waiting for over an hour when the bus finally arrived?

9. Will

Structure: 'will + infinitive - negative - will not /won't - question - invert subject with 'will'

Use:

Future facts:

Example:

The Queen will be in Rome tomorrow.

Promises:

I'll definitely be there on time.

Offers:

I'll help you with that heavy suitcase.

Refusal:

She won't do her homework.

Predictions:

She’ll be late (she always is)

A spontaneous decision

I’ll wash the dishes in the morning

10. To Be Going to + Infinitive

Structure: Be + going to + infinitive

Use:

A planned decision made beforehand or a prediction

Example:

I am going to wash my hair after dinner

She isn’t going to join the gym

It is going to rain tomorrow (prediction)

11. The Future Continuous

Structure: will + be + gerund

Use:

Something that will be in progress at a certain moment in the future (a fact).

A present or future prediction that will be in progress now or at a certain moment in the future.

Example:

Don’t phone her now. She’ll be sleeping (present prediction)

I’ll be flying to London between 10 and 12 tomorrow so don’t phone me until after that.(fact)

People will be marrying less by the year 2020. (a future prediction)

12. The Future Perfect

Structure: subject + will + auxiliary verb ‘have’ + past participle

Use:

To express a completed action in the future

Example:

By October we will have lived in the house for twenty years.(fact)

She won’t have been there for long by the time you get there (prediction)

To express something we predict happened before now

Instruction manual - page 20 - You will have read on page 10 that .....

13. Future Perfect Continuous

Structure: subject + will + auxiliary verb ‘have’ + been + gerund

Similar to the future perfect but expresses continuity.

Example:

She’ll have been waiting for nearly an hour by the time we arrive (prediction)

I’ll have been working for this company for ten years this November (an action in continuation which will be completed at a point in the future)

Note from the author

This is the end of the book. I really hope it has been a help to you and I thank you so much for purchasing it.

The New York Times

MANUAL OF Style and Usage

The Official Style Guide
Used by the Writers and Editors
of the World's Most Authoritative
News Organization

2015
Edition

Allan M. Siegal and William G. Connolly

Revised and Updated by
Philip B. Corbett, Jill Taylor, Patrick LaForge and Susan Wessling

The New York Times

MANUAL OF STYLE AND USAGE

2015 EDITION

The Official Style Guide Used by
the Writers and Editors of the World's
Most Authoritative News Organization

Allan M. Siegal AND William G. Connolly

Revised and updated by

PHILIP B. CORBETT, JILL TAYLOR,
PATRICK LaFORGE and SUSAN WESSLING

THREE RIVERS PRESS • NEW YORK

2015 Three Rivers Press Ebook Original Copyright © 2015 by The New York Times Company All rights reserved.
Published in the United States by Three Rivers Press, an imprint of the Crown Publishing Group, a division of Penguin Random House LLC, New York.

www.crownpublishing.com

Three Rivers Press and the Tugboat design are registered trademarks of Penguin Random House LLC.

This is a revised edition of a work originally published in hardcover by Times Books, New York, in 1999.

Cover based on a design by Mimi Park.

eISBN 978-1-10190322-3

v3.1

Contents

Cover
Title Page
Copyright
Preface to the Revised Edition

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Preface to the Revised Edition

The New York Times Manual of Style and Usage has guided thousands of Times journalists in our quest to produce clear and powerful prose. When we have stumbled, it is often because we strayed from the stylebook's counsel.

But you have no doubt noticed some changes in journalism and publishing since the last major revision, by Allan M. Siegal and William G. Connolly, appeared in 1999. That edition, for example, gave little advice about the web (or the World Wide Web, as we called it then). It was silent about blogs and linking and social media. Even its routine references to "print" and "pages" and "the paper" seem a bit dated now.

An online version, accessible only to Times employees, has been updated ad hoc since 1999. But with the chance to produce a new e-book version for general readers, my colleagues and I decided it was time for a more systematic look.

We've added scores of new entries, deleted many outdated ones and revised hundreds more. But we found no need for a fundamental change in course, and overall the Siegal-Connolly guidance remains firmly in place. Despite all the upheaval in the world of communications, we realized that the basic goals of Times writing had not changed.

We are journalists — not scholars or poets, entertainers or advocates. In The Times, our goal is clear, precise, literate prose that effectively conveys important information to busy readers. Those readers should not be misled by error, distracted by sloppiness or annoyed by pedantry, polemic, slang, jargon or heedless incivility. In fact, the only time they should notice our writing at all is if, occasionally, they pause to admire it.

The tone we seek in The Times is thoughtful and civil. There should always be room for humor, personality and surprise. But at its heart journalism is a serious undertaking, and we go about it seriously. Our language should reflect that.

It should also reflect widely accepted usage among educated English speakers. We do not seek to be in the vanguard by adopting the newest usage or the latest buzzwords. But we must also guard against a reflexive traditionalism that would make The Times seem fusty or out of touch. Language changes, and we should carefully and judiciously reckon with those changes. Above all, the guidelines in this book should be applied thoughtfully, with room for wise exceptions. An earlier version of the manual put it this way: “The rules should encourage thinking, not discourage it. A single rule might suffice: ‘The rule of common sense will prevail at all times.’ ”

The most obvious changes in this revised edition involve web and technology terms. Based on current usage, *e-mail* has become *email*, the *World Wide Web* is just *the web*, and a *Web site* is now a *website*. We have deleted a few quaintly outdated terms like *diskette* and added guidance on linking, social media and other digital topics.

Other changes reflect our broader sense of shifts in usage or on social issues. It no longer seemed necessary to caution writers against such outdated words as *authoress* or *mongoloid*; who would think to use them? On the other hand, we updated the entry on *illegal immigrant*, and added guidance on *same-sex marriage* and *L.G.B.T.* With a growing global audience, we now advise more frequent inclusion of Celsius temperatures, and allow currency symbols in some cases for euros, yen and pounds.

Based on errors we have seen repeatedly in our years of editing, we added new warnings about sources of frequent missteps: *eponymous*; *anniversary*; *forbid* and *prohibit*; *may* and *might*. In a trickier exercise, we have dropped objections to a few words that were once viewed as overly colloquial but struck us as fully acceptable now: *ad* for *advertisement*; *host* and *debut* as verbs.

We also changed some rules that created confusion or inconsistency, especially on deadline. For example, we now spell out numbers under 10 in almost all cases, even if they appear in a series with numbers over 10. And we always capitalize what comes after a colon if it is a complete sentence.

Beyond usage rules, The Times’s stylebook offers guidance on broader issues of journalistic standards — for example, in the entries on *anonymity* and on *obscenity, vulgarity, profanity*. Those fundamental standards have not changed, but we have updated the entries to offer writers and editors more help in applying our standards to a shifting landscape.

• • •

We are grateful to Allan Siegal and Bill Connolly, who even in retirement have generously, and gently, offered advice on our revisions. Our colleague Walt Baranger has provided invaluable technical support and suggestions. Of course, the revolution in communication of recent years has not stopped or even slowed.

The file of possible revisions for next time will start filling up immediately. Please send suggestions to stylebook@nytimes.com.

Philip B. Corbett
New York, 2015

A

a, an, the. Use the article *a* before a word beginning with a consonant sound, including the aspirate *h*: *a car*; *a hotel*; *a historical*. Also use it before words like *union, euphonious* and *unit*. Use *an* before a word beginning with a vowel sound: *onion*; *uncle*; *honor*. The choice of article before an abbreviation, a numeral or a symbol depends upon the likely pronunciation: *an N.Y.U. student*; *a C.I.A. officer*; *an 11-year-old girl*.

Avoid the journalese practice of dropping *A* or *The* at the beginning of a sentence. If several consecutive sentences or paragraphs begin with the same article, recast some to break the monotony.

An article should appear before each parallel noun in a series or a pair: *The ambulance carried a nurse, a paramedic and a doctor*; *The hero and the heroine received medals*. Make an exception if the nouns convey a single idea: *a bow and arrow*; *a hook and eye*.

In the title of a literary, artistic or musical work – in English or a foreign language – omit the opening word *a*, *an* or *the* when it follows another article: *An "Old Curiosity Shop" character*. If the opening article in a title is necessary information, rephrase the surrounding sentence to avoid direct juxtaposition with a second article.

If a foreign-language expression begins with an article and appears in an English-language passage, translate the article: *at the Arc de Triomphe*. But if the article forms part of a title, uppercase it, untranslated: *Le Monde*; *La Scala*.

Also see the.

A.A. for Alcoholics Anonymous.

AAA (without periods). The former American Automobile Association has adopted the initials as its full official name.

A.&P. for the Great Atlantic and Pacific Tea Company, the supermarket chain. In a headline, insert a thin space after the ampersand, to balance the appearance of the preceding period.

AARP, an association of middle-aged and older Americans, was the American Association of Retired Persons until 1999. The newer name, written without periods, is officially considered neither an abbreviation nor an acronym.

A.B. or **B.A**. for Bachelor of Arts. Also: *a bachelor's degree*.

A.B.A. It can stand for the *American Bankers Association*, the *American Bar Association* or the *American Booksellers Association*. In headlines, abbreviate only when the context is unmistakable.

abbreviations. Commonly used abbreviations are listed separately. In general, spell out the names of government bureaus and agencies, well-known organizations, companies, etc., on first reference. In later references, use short forms like *the agency* or *the company* when possible because handfuls of initials make for mottled typography and choppy prose. Here is an example of what *not* to do: *The U.A.W. and the U.M.W. supported the complaints made by the W.H.O., Unicef and the F.A.O., but A.F.L.-C.I.O. leaders did not*.

When abbreviations are highly familiar, though, long or cumbersome expressions may be shortened even on first reference, and especially afterward. Examples include *A.F.L.-C.I.O*., *C.I.A*. and *F.B.I*. If the article deals centrally with such an organization, the full name should appear somewhere in the copy.

Abbreviations may be used more freely in headlines. A title that would be spelled out in copy may be shortened with a surname in a headline: *Gen. Barany*; *Gov. Lamb*; *Rep. Berenich* (but not *Sen*., even in a headline). Place designations and company terms may also be abbreviated in headlines: *Fifth Ave*. (or *5th Ave*.); *Fordham Rd*.; *Patchin Pl*.; *Brooklyn Hts*.; *Acme Co*.; *News Corp*. And *Department* may be abbreviated in a headline as part of a name (*State Dept*.).

Even freer use of abbreviations is permitted in charts, listings and tables to conserve space. All standard abbreviations may be used, as well as coined contractions, so long as they are understandable. In all types of copy, avoid unfamiliar or specialized short forms like *R.W.D.S.U.* (Retail, Wholesale & Department Store Union).

Ordinarily use periods in abbreviations when the letters stand for separate words: *F.C.C.*; *N.R.A*. Use no spaces after the periods within an abbreviation. (But use thin spaces between personal initials, even those forming part of a company or organizational name: *J. C. Penney*.)

In an acronym — an abbreviation pronounced as a word — omit periods. Ordinarily uppercase such an expression if it is up to four letters long: *NATO*; *CUNY*; *AIDS*; *SALT*. Acronyms of five or more letters are upper-and-lowercased: *Unicef*; *Unesco*; *Alcoa*; *Awacs*. (Lowercased exceptions exist, and the dictionary is the guide: *modem*; *radar*; *sonar*.)

Omit periods in certain technology terms for which the full expression is unfamiliar or rarely used: *USB*, *PDF, URL, DSL, DVR, LED*. If the term is central to an article, include a full reference and brief explanation at some point. Abbreviations popular in online and texting slang should be used only rarely, for special effect, and should be rendered as readers most often see them: *BTW, FYI, LOL, OMG*, *tl;dr*, *etc.*

If a corporation adopts a former abbreviation or other cluster of letters as its full name, without periods, follow that style: *the AT&T Corporation*; *the ITT Corporation*.

When letters within a single word are extracted for use as an abbreviation, they are capitalized without periods: *DDT*; *TV*; *TB*. (By contrast, *V.D.* requires the periods because it stands for two words.)

For consistency in references to broadcasting services, networks and stations, omit periods in all their abbreviations, and in call letters (*CBS, CNN, PBS, NPR, WNBC, KPFA*).

Also see acronyms; company and corporation names; department; state abbreviations; subway lines; television networks.

ABC for the former American Broadcasting Companies, now a subsidiary of the Walt Disney Company. ABC operates the *ABC Television Network. ABC News* and

ABC Sports are divisions of the network, which also owns and operates 10 television stations, among them *WABC-TV*. Any of these names, as well as ABC, may be used in a first reference. (Do not attribute an ABC News production to ABC Television.) *ABC* may stand alone in later references and should stand alone when several networks are mentioned together: *ABC, CBS, CNN and NBC will televise the news conference*.

A B C's (the alphabet or the basics). Use thin spaces between the letters.

able-bodied.

ABM for antiballistic missile.

abortion. The political and emotional heat surrounding abortion gives rise to a range of polemical language. For the sake of neutrality, avoid *pro-life* and *pro-choice* except in quotations from others. Impartial terms include *abortion rights advocate* and *anti-abortion campaigner* (or, in either case, *campaign, group* or *rally*). *Anti-abortion* is an undisputed modifier, but *pro-abortion* raises objections when applied to people who say they do not advocate *having* abortions. *Abortionist* carries overtones of stealth and illegality. In copy about abortion, *woman* and *fetus* are more neutral terms than *mother* (for a pregnant woman) and *baby* (for a fetus).

absence. See lack.

absolutely necessary. A redundancy.

Abstract Expressionism. Capitalize when referring to the postwar American art movement. Recognized Abstract Expressionists include Willem de Kooning, Robert Motherwell, Jackson Pollock and Mark Rothko. See arts terminology.

A.C. for an athletic club after first reference and in headlines: *the Downtown Athletic Club*; *Downtown A.C.*

academic degrees and titles. See separate entries, and Dr. and Prof.

academic departments. Lowercase *history department, English literature department, etc.* (school, college or university). That wording is preferred, but style also permits *department of natural history*; *department of English literature*.

Académie Française, the. Equally acceptable, in most contexts: *the French Academy*.

academy. Lowercase in later references to the French Academy and the National Academy of Sciences. For the United States Military, Naval, Coast Guard and Air Force Academies, on later references make it *the Air Force Academy* or *the academy*.

Academy Award(s); *the award(s)*; *the Oscar(s)*. Articles dealing centrally with the awards should mention that they are presented by the Academy of Motion Picture Arts and Sciences. In brief or passing references, *Oscar* can stand alone, without explanation. Also see Emmy Award(s); Grammy Award(s); Tony Award(s).

a cappella.

accent marks are used for French, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese and German words and names. For simplicity, use the marks uniformly with uppercase and lowercase letters, despite conventions that treat certain uppercase accents as optional. Do not use accents in words or names from other languages (Slavic and Scandinavian ones, for example), which are less familiar to most American writers, editors and readers; such marks would be prone to error.

Some foreign words that enter the English language keep their accent marks (*protégé*, *résumé*); others lose them (*cafe*, *facade*). The dictionary governs spellings, except for those shown in this manual.

In the name of a United States resident, use or omit accents as the bearer does; when in doubt, omit them. (Exception: Use accents in Spanish names of Puerto Rico residents.)

Times style calls for six marks:

Accent Marks

é	The *acute accent* on an *e* in French signifies an “ay” sound (*communiqué*). In Spanish or Portuguese it denotes an irregularly placed syllable stress (*Lázaro*; *simpático*).
à	The *grave accent* alters various vowel sounds in French (*frère*; *voilà*) and occasionally in Portuguese. In Italian it marks an irregularly placed syllable stress (*Pietà*; *tiramisù*). In Italian and French it sometimes

	distinguishes between similar-looking words (*où* and *ou*; *la* and *là*).
ô	The *circumflex*, in French, may modify vowel sounds (*Rhône*) or signify the evolutionary disappearance of an *s* that existed in Latin (*hôtel*). In Portuguese the circumflex usually marks syllable stress (*Antônio*).
ç	The *cedilla* beneath a *c*, in French or Portuguese, produces the soft sound of *s* in front of certain vowels that would otherwise dictate a hard *k* sound (*garçon*; *français*).
ñ	The *tilde*, in Spanish, produces a *y* sound after *n* (*mañana*). In Portuguese it denotes a nasal vowel sound (*São Paulo*).
ü	The *umlaut* modifies vowel sounds in German (*Götterdämmerung; Düsseldorf*). Some news wires replace the umlaut with an *e* after the affected vowel. Normally undo that spelling, but check before altering a personal name; some Germans use the *e* form. In the Latin languages, the umlaut is known as a *dieresis*. It denotes separated pronunciation of two adjacent vowels (*naïve; Citroën; Noël*), or signals pronunciation of a normally silent final consonant (*Saint-Saëns; Perrier-Jouët*).

Two Spanish punctuation marks — ¿ and ¡ — are available for special effects. But ordinarily punctuate Spanish questions and exclamations in English style.

access. Use it only as a noun; as a verb it is technical jargon. Conversational substitutes abound: *look up, retrieve, find, connect*, *enter* and even *gain access*.

accommodate.

accouterment.

accused. Just as an *accused* stockbroker is a stockbroker, an *accused* forger is some type of forger. Avoid any construction that implies guilt on the part of someone merely *accused, charged* or *suspected*. Also see allegedly.

Achilles' heel (not *Achilles heel* or *Achilles's*). The exceptional style is customary for the possessive of a classical name.

acknowledgment.

acre. An *acre* equals 43,560 square feet or 4,840 square yards or 4,047 square meters. The metric *hectare* equals 10,000 square meters or 2.47 acres. In copy, generally convert hectares into acres; if the hectare figure is a round number, round the acres as well.

acronyms. An acronym is a word formed from the first letter (or letters) of each word in a series: *NATO* from North Atlantic Treaty Organization; *radar* from radio detection and ranging. (Unless pronounced as a word, an abbreviation is not an acronym.) When an acronym serves as a proper name and exceeds four letters, capitalize only the first letter: *Unesco; Unicef*. Also see abbreviations and company and corporation names.

across from. Often *opposite* is smoother: *The shop was across from the school*. In that sentence, *across* seems to need an object. Make it *The shop was across 50th Street from the school*, or *The shop was opposite the school*.

acting. Uppercase only when it modifies an uppercased title: *Acting Attorney General Hilary B. Miel; the acting attorney general; the acting secretary of state; the acting secretary; the acting chairwoman of the committee*. Generally move a long title after the name, to avoid this awkwardness: *Acting Secretary of Health, Education and Welfare Hilary B. Miel*.

actor, actress. While *actor* can refer to a woman as well as to a man, *actress* remains widely used and seems exempt from most objections to grafted feminine endings. See men and women.

acts, amendments, bills and laws. Capitalize the name of an act or law when using the full title or a commonly known shorter form: *Sherman Antitrust Act; Social Security Act; Taft-Hartley Act; Multiple Dwelling Law; etc.* But lowercase *act* when it stands alone or in a general description: *the antitrust act; the housing act*.

A draft measure is *a bill* until it is enacted; then it becomes *an act* or *a law*. Lowercase the names of bills and proposed constitutional amendments not yet enacted into law (*housing bill; food stamp bill*) except for proper names occurring in the description (*Baranek-Lamm bill*).

A ratified amendment to the United States Constitution is capitalized in a reference to its formal title (including the number): *the Fifth Amendment; the 18th Amendment*. But lowercase an informal title (*the income tax amendment*), except words that are capitalized in their own right (*the Prohibition amendment*).

Act Up. Upper-and-lowercase the name of the protest group concerned with AIDS issues. (It is not an advocacy group.) Its full name is the AIDS Coalition to Unleash Power.

acute accent. See accent marks.

A.D. for anno Domini. Since it means *in the year of the Lord* (or *of our Lord*), place the abbreviation ahead of the numerals: *The town was founded in A.D. 73*. In a reference to a century, though, the number comes first: *fourth century A.D.*

B.C., for *before Christ*, always follows the date: *founded in 128 B.C.* or *The town dates from the second century B.C.*

adage. The word means an old saying. So *old adage* is redundant.

addresses. For the names of streets, avenues, etc., in ordinary copy, spell out and capitalize ordinal numbers: *First* through *Ninth*. Also spell out and capitalize *Avenue*, *Street, West, East*, etc.: *First Avenue; Fifth Avenue; Park Avenue; East Ninth Street*. Use figures for *10th* and above: *10th Avenue; West 14th Street; 42nd Street; West 113th Street*. When an address includes a compass point, abbreviate it without periods: *818 C Street SE; 1627 I Street NW.*

Use the plural (*Streets* or *Avenues*) when *and* appears in a location: *between 43rd and 44th Streets*. But use the singular in a *to* phrase: *along Fifth Avenue, from 43rd to 44th Street*. For “decades” of numbered streets, use figures: *the 60s; the East 60s; the West 80s; the 130s; etc.*

Avenue, Street, Road and the like may be abbreviated with a name (*Ave.*; *St.*; *Rd.*) in headlines, charts, maps, lists and tables, but not in ordinary copy. In headlines, figures may also be used for the ordinal numbers through *9th* in the designations of streets and avenues. But avoid *1st*.

Use figures for all building numbers: *1 Fifth Avenue; 510 Broadway; 893 12th Avenue*. When numbers exceed three digits, omit commas: *1135 11th Avenue*. Omit *No*. before a building number except in a phrase like *at 510 Broadway, but not at No. 512*.

House numbers in Queens often take hyphens: *107-71 111th Street*.

When mentioning an address on a major thoroughfare in New York City, ordinarily specify the nearest cross street. In an address on a cross street, the nearest avenue may be specified when useful. If a street or avenue has both a commemorative name and an original one, use the better-known address in routine references: *West 43rd Street*, not *Adolph S. Ochs Street*. When a special context warrants the newer name, also provide a graceful translation: *the block of West 43rd Street known as Adolph S. Ochs Street*.

Generally give specific addresses for places in the New York metropolitan area. But in writing about a person whose family might face harassment or harm, consider a general neighborhood reference instead. If an exact address seems newsworthy because of a crime or other visible event, carefully consider the potential for harm before publishing it.

Foreign addresses may be punctuated and capitalized in the local style (*3, rue Scribe*, etc.), but a simple reference to a foreign street should be capitalized in American style: *the Rue de l'Odéon*. Also, for the French municipal districts: *Ninth Arrondissement; 10th Arrondissement*.

Also see Avenue of the Americas and ZIP code.

Adelphi University (in Garden City, N.Y.).

adjutant. An officer overseeing administration in a military unit. The expression denotes an assignment, not a rank. So it is not abbreviated and is separated from the name by a comma.

adjutant general. The officer (often a colonel or a general) in charge of administration in a major military headquarters. In most American states, the term is also applied to the commander of the National Guard. The plural is *adjutants general*. The term denotes an assignment, not a rank, so it is not abbreviated and is separated from the name by a comma.

Adm. *Lynn A. Karitsa; Admiral Karitsa; the admiral.*

administration. Lowercase in all governmental references, federal, state or local, foreign or domestic: *the Cordeiro administration; the administration*. But uppercase when it is part of an agency name: *Social Security Administration*.

administrative law judge. Lowercase it after the name: *Stacy N. Lamm, administrative law judge*. In later references: *Judge Lamm; the judge*. In the federal system, this title has replaced hearing examiner. But many states have *hearing examiners* and *hearing officers*.

Administrator *Lee D. Barany* (for the head of a governmental agency who bears that title); *Administrator Barany; the administrator; Mr*. (or *Ms*., *Mrs*. or *Miss*) *Barany*.

Admiral of the Fleet *Morgan T. Kuzu; Admiral Kuzu; the admiral of the fleet*. In foreign navies that have the rank, it is often honorary or ceremonial. Note, too, that the title differs from *Fleet Admiral*.

admissible.

adoption. Adoptive status, as child or parent, should be mentioned only when it is pertinent and when its pertinence is made clear. In this context, avoid terms like *natural parents* and *real parents*, which seem to downgrade adoptive status. Use *biological parents* or *birth parents* instead.

Adrenalin, adrenaline. Use *adrenaline* (or a synonym, *epinephrine*) in references to the hormone produced by the adrenal gland, or in idioms: *A good fight made their adrenaline flow*. Uppercase the trademark *Adrenalin* in references to a synthetic or chemically extracted product.

adult. An *adult* novel or movie is one intended for grown-ups. It need not be pornographic. Avoid *adult* as a euphemism for sex-related. Also see porn.

adverb placement. In fluid writing, an adverb used with a compound verb should normally be placed between parts of the verb (the way *normally* is, a few words back in this sentence, and the way *usually* is, in the next example): *He will usually take the opposing side*. A similar rule applies when a verb like *is* links a noun to its modifier: *Refundable fares are often expensive* (not *often are expensive*). Also see split infinitives, a different matter.

adverse (opposed or unfavorable); **averse** (unwilling or reluctant). Example: *Ms. Lamm was averse to going to court because she thought the ruling would be adverse*.

adviser.

advocate. As a verb, it should take a direct object: *She advocates mandatory recycling laws*. Not *She advocates for mandatory recycling laws* or, worse, *She advocates against mandatory recycling laws*. In noun constructions, do not use *anti-*, as in *anti-sweatshop advocates* and *anti-abortion advocates*.

aesthetic (not *esthetic*).

affect, effect. The verb *affect* means influence or change (*Her attitude affected the outcome*), stir emotions (*His departure affected the staff*), enjoy using (*He affected cowboy boots, spurs and a fedora*) or feign (*She affects an unlikely expertise*). The verb *effect* means accomplish or carry out (*They effected changes in the rules*).

The noun used more often is *effect*, meaning a result or a consequence (*One effect of the protest was new legislation*). The rarely used noun *affect* means an emotional response or feeling.

affirmative action is defined by the United States Commission on Civil Rights as "active efforts that take race, sex and national origin into account for the purpose of remedying discrimination" in fields like employment, education and government contracting. Society remains divided on many aspects of such programs, and news articles should detail the provisions in question when reporting on the argument. Do not use partisan terms like *reverse discrimination* except in quoting the debaters. Note that in 1978 the Supreme Court outlawed the use of numerical quotas in any such program with government backing. Permissible techniques include goals and timetables, as well as preferences for women or minority candidates. Also see preferences; quotas; set-asides.

afflicted. Generally use less emotional language in citing disabilities. *She has cancer*, not *She is afflicted with cancer*. Also see disability, disabled; stricken; suffer; victim.

affordable (as a description of housing) often occurs in government jargon and is imprecise. It is more useful to give the price range or the qualifying income.

Afghan, afghani. The people of Afghanistan are *Afghan*. The currency is the *afghani*.

aficionado(s).

A.F.L.-C.I.O. for the American Federation of Labor and Congress of Industrial Organizations, the umbrella organization of the labor movement. Use the abbreviation for almost all first references, and usually the full name can be omitted altogether (especially in a short article). For later references, an expression like *the federation* can serve in place of a spattering of initials.

African-American, black. Try to determine and use the term preferred by the group or person being described. When no preference is known, the writer should choose. But use *black* when the reference is not only to people of African descent but also to those whose more immediate roots are in the Caribbean or South America. Use more specific terms — *Nigerian-American; Jamaican-American* — when they are appropriate. Also see ethnicity and historically black.

African Methodist Episcopal Church. See A.M.E.

African Methodist Episcopal Zion Church. See A.M.E. Zion.

Afro(-). In most contexts, use *African* rather than the prefix *Afro*. Thus, in references to international or intercontinental relations: *African and Asian* or *African-Asian*, not *Afro-Asian; African-Chinese*, not *Afro-Chinese*. In direct quotations or in the names of organizations and publications, *Afro-American* is acceptable. *Afro-Cuban* is an established description of a musical style. *Afrocentric* and *Afrocentrism* refer to cultural and educational programs that focus on African heritage. And *Afro* is a hairstyle. Also see African-American, black and ethnicity.

after(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *after* are one word: afterbeat, afterbirth, afterburner, afterdeck, after-dinner (adj.), aftereffect, after-hours, afterlife, aftermarket, aftermath, after-shave, aftershock, aftertaste, after-theater (adj.), afterthought, afterworld.

after is less stilted than *following*, and preferred, in this construction: *He went home after the game*.

afterward (not *afterwards*).

Agence France-Presse. In news copy, it is *Agence France-Presse*, without *the* or *L'*. Ordinarily no translation or explanation is necessary. In later references, it is *the agency*. In direct quotations, *A.F.P.* may be used. In datelines: *BEIJING (Agence*

France-Presse) – etc. Use this credit on undatelined articles:

By Agence France-Presse

agent (intelligence). Experts confine the term to someone, usually a foreigner, who has been recruited or suborned to work on behalf of an intelligence service. Use *officer* instead for the service's staff employees, even those working under cover abroad. An *officer* recruits *agents*.

ages and eras of history. Capitalize *Stone Age, Bronze Age, Iron Age, Dark Ages, Middle Ages, Age of Discovery, Christian Era, Renaissance, Mesozoic Era, Triassic Period*, *etc.*

ages of people and animals should be given in figures: *Terry M. Daan*, *25; a 7-year-old boy; 3-month-old daughter; 4½-year-old son; a race for 2-year-olds*. Omit *years old* if the context is clear. Specify ages only when they are useful or relevant.

In giving ages of inanimate objects or other things, spell out through nine and use figures for 10 or above: a *two-year fight; a house eight and a half years old; a 10-month vacation; a wine 20 years old*. Use numerals for decades of age: *people in their 60s*. (Exception: *in their teens*.)

aggravate. It means make worse, not anger or irritate.

aging.

A.I.D. See U.S.A.I.D.

Aida. Use quotation marks for the title, not for the name of the character; neither includes a dieresis (*ï*).

aide(s)-de-camp. The term for a personal assistant sounds archaic except in military contexts.

AIDS for acquired immune deficiency syndrome. Also see H.I.V.

AIDS advocate. The term is illogical; no one advocates AIDS. Make it *advocate for AIDS research* or *advocate for AIDS patients*, or otherwise specify the cause.

AIDS victim. See afflicted; stricken; suffer; victim.

air(-). Some compounds formed with *air* are one word, some are hyphenated and some are two words: airbag, air ball, air base, airborne, air brake, airbrush, airbus, air-condition, air-conditioned, air-conditioner, air-conditioning, air-cooled, aircrew, airdrop, air express, airfield, airfoil, airframe, airfreight, air gun, air lane, airlift (n., v., adj.), airline, airmail (n., v., adj.), airman, airplane, air raid (n.), air-raid (adj.), air rifle, air shaft, airship, airsick, airspace, airspeed, airstrike, airstrip, airtight, airwaves, airworthy. Also see Air Force.

air base, Air Force base. The United States uses *air base* for overseas bases and *Air Force base* for bases in the United States and its possessions. See military bases.

Air Chief Marshal *Alex L. Miel; the air chief marshal*. Like other titles in the air forces of countries with British-influenced systems, this one cannot properly be shortened.

aircraft names are printed in roman type without quotation marks: *Air Force One* (the president's plane); *the Spirit of St. Louis; Boeing 787 Dreamliner; MD-11; F-15 Eagle; F-22 Raptor; MIG-35*. The standard source for names and model numbers is Jane's All the World's Aircraft. Use a hyphen before the numeral, but not before a letter: *747B; F-117; MD-95-30ER*. An exception: *Airbus A320; Airbus A380*. In first references, the model number or name of a well-known aircraft can appear without the name of its manufacturer or designer: *DC-10; MIG-29*. Historic aircraft sometimes use Roman numerals: *SPAD S.XIII; Fokker F.XXXVI*.

Air Force. Capitalize in *United States Air Force, Royal Air Force, etc.* It is *the Air Force* in later references to the United States service, and *Air Force* for United States Air Force Academy sports teams. But lowercase later references to any foreign air force; many of them do not formally use *air force* as part of their names.

In historical references, use whichever name applied at the time: The United States Air Force was established in 1947. It succeeded the Army Air Corps, which existed from 1926 until 1947, and the Army Air Forces, which existed from 1941 to 1947. (From 1941 to 1947 the Air Corps was a subordinate element of the Army Air Forces.)

Air Force bases are not the same as *air bases*: the United States uses *Air Force base* for operations in the United States and its possessions and *air base* for overseas bases. See military bases.

Air Force Academy; *the academy*.

Air Force base, air base. The United States uses *Air Force base* for bases in the United States and its possessions and *air base* for overseas bases. See military bases.

Air Force One (the president's plane).

Air Force ranks (United States), in descending order, and their abbreviations:

COMMISSIONED OFFICERS

Gen. *Stacy T. Milori; General Milori; the general*. (A general wears four stars.)
Lt. Gen. *Dana L. Cordeiro; General Cordeiro; the general*. (A lieutenant general wears three stars.)
Maj. Gen. *Lindsay M. Karitsa; General Karitsa; the general*. (A major general wears two stars.)
Brig. Gen. *Lee A. Agnello; General Agnello; the general*. (A brigadier general wears one star.)
Col. *Merrill H. Kuzu; Colonel Kuzu; the colonel*.
Lt. Col. *Lee R. Agneau; Colonel Agneau; the colonel*.
Maj. *Stacy D. Miel; Major Miel; the major*.
Capt. *Hilary L. Daan; Captain Daan; the captain*.
First Lt. *Theo D. Barany; Lieutenant Barany; the lieutenant*.
Second Lt. *Alex C. Lam; Lieutenant Lam; the lieutenant*.

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS
(Enlisted supervisors.)

chief master sergeant of the Air Force. Do not use this title before a name, do not capitalize it and do not abbreviate it. Make it *Hollis M. Bildots, the chief master sergeant of the Air Force*. In later references: *Chief Master Sergeant Bildots; the chief master sergeant*. The title is held by only one person at a time, the highest-ranking enlisted member of the Air Force. It usually requires explanation.
Chief Master Sgt. *Lauren T. Kikondoo; Chief Master Sergeant Kikondoo; the chief*

master sergeant.
Senior Master Sgt. *Lee S. Miel; Sergeant Miel; the sergeant*.
Master Sgt. *Dana L. Cordeiro; Sergeant Cordeiro; the sergeant*.
Tech. Sgt. *Dana D. Kuzu; Sergeant Kuzu; the sergeant*.
Staff Sgt. *Ashley C. Lam; Sergeant Lam; the sergeant*.
Sgt. *Terry A. Agnello; Sergeant Agnello; the sergeant*.

OTHER ENLISTED PERSONNEL

Senior Airman *Hilary M. Arniotis; Airman Arniotis; the airman* (male or female).
Airman First Class *Chris T. Berenich; Airman Berenich; the airman* (male or female).
Airman *Alex H. Cordero; Airman Cordero; the airman* (male or female).

Also see retired.

Air Force Two (the vice president's plane).

airline(s). That is the usual spelling, but follow each line's own style in a proper name: *American Airlines; Delta Air Lines*.

Airman *Alex H. Cordero; Airman Cordero; the airman* (for a man or a woman). Also: *Airman First Class Alex H. Cordero; Airman Cordero*.

Air National Guard.

airplane names. Use without quotation marks. Also see aircraft names.

Air Vice Marshal *Robin S. Berenich; the air vice marshal*. Like other titles in the air forces of countries with British-influenced systems, this one cannot properly be shortened.

a.k.a., for *also known as*.

AK-47 for the ubiquitous 7.62-millimeter military rifle. Also see bullet; cartridge; handguns; rifles; shell; shotguns.

akvavit. Use *aquavit* instead.

Alabama. Abbreviate it as *Ala*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

à la carte.

à la mode.

Alaska. Do not abbreviate after the names of cities, towns and boroughs, even in datelines.

Alberta (Canadian province). Do not abbreviate after the names of cities and towns, even in datelines.

alcoholic beverages. When alcohol figures significantly in an article – about its marketing, profitability or taxation, for example, or about traffic laws or health effects – draw distinctions among beverages: *beer*, which is fermented from grain, using yeast; *wine*, which is fermented from fruit, usually grapes; and *spirits* or *liquors*, which are made by distillation. Alcohol content differs by beverage, and is expressed in *proof*. In the American system, the proof equals twice the alcohol percentage; a *100-proof* liquor is *50 percent* alcohol. Also see whiskey, whisky and wines and spirits.

Alcoholics Anonymous (A.A.). A related but separate organization, *Al-Anon*, provides help to the families of alcoholics.

Al Fatah, the Palestinian guerrilla organization. Omit *Al* when the name is preceded by *a* or *the*: *a Fatah leader*. In headlines: *Fatah*.

alfresco.

alibi. Use the word with care. Colloquially it suggests not merely an excuse but an excuse contrived to evade responsibility. In law, it means a claim to have been elsewhere when a crime was committed.

Alice Tully Hall (at Lincoln Center).

alien. Avoid this term for a foreigner or an immigrant. See illegal immigrant.

Allah is the Muslim name for God. Lowercase *he, him, his, thee, thou, who* and *whom* in references to the deity of any faith.

all-American (n. and adj.).

all-around (adj.). Not *all-round*. Also see round.

Allegany is the spelling for a county in New York; a town, an Indian reservation and a state park in Cattaraugus County, N.Y.; a county in Maryland; a town in Coos County, Ore.; and a township in Potter County, Pa. Also see Alleghany and Allegheny.

allegedly. *Alleged* and *allegedly* are police-blotter jargon, best rephrased into conversational English: *accused of, charged with* or *suspected of*. If legal concerns leave no choice, apply the modifier to the offense, not the suspect: *alleged theft*, not *alleged thief*. Do not confuse *allegedly* with this more suitable modifier, for a phrase that is *not* an accusation: *She was defeated by three ostensibly neutral referees*. Also see accused.

Alleghany is the spelling for a town in Sierra County, Calif.; a county in North Carolina; a township in Davidson County, N.C.; a township in Ransom County, N.D.; a town in Loudon County, Tenn.; and both a county in Virginia and a town within it. Also see Allegany and Allegheny.

Allegheny is the spelling for a town in Madison County, N.C.; a college, a county, a national forest and six townships in Pennsylvania; rivers in New York and Pennsylvania; tunnels in Pennsylvania, Virginia and West Virginia; and the mountain range in Maryland, Pennsylvania, Virginia and West Virginia. The plural for the mountains is *Alleghenies*, an exception to the rule that, for example, makes *Germanys* the plural of *Germany*. Also see Allegany and Alleghany.

allies. Do not capitalize *allies* or *allied* except in proper names or in references to World War I and World War II alliances.

allot, allotted, allotting.

all right (never *alright*).

all-time. Applied to sports, weather and other records, the adjective is imprecise, superfluous and a cliché.

allude, refer. *Allude* means speak of something without direct mention; *refer* means mention it directly.

almanacs. Use their titles without quotation marks; capitalize the principal words.

along with is not the grammatical equivalent of *and. Along with six others, she was cited for contempt* is properly singular. But: *She and six others were cited for contempt*.

alphabetical (not *alphabetic*).

alphabetizing names and titles. When dealing with *Mc* or *Mac*, alphabetize as if all the letters were lowercase: *Mabley, MacAdam, Maynard*, *McNeil*. In a listing, if family names are printed before given names, place *Jr.* or *Sr.* or *III* or *3rd* last: *BERENICH, Lauren Jr.*, not *BERENICH Jr., Lauren*.

In listing titles (of literary or artistic works, for example), alphabetize by the first principal word: "Les Misérables" under *M* and "A Tale of Two Cities" under *T*.

alphanumeric (not *alphanumerical*). Consisting of letters and numbers.

Al Qaeda. But drop the *Al*, which means "the," when using the phrase as a modifer: *a top Qaeda leader, a Qaeda attack*. Or rewrite: *an attack by Al Qaeda*.

also-ran (n.).

alternate, alternative. As an adjective, *alternate* can mean every second one: *Our club meets on alternate Wednesdays* (not *alternative*). As adjectives, both *alternate* and *alternative* can refer to a choice between two things or among more than two: *We have to choose an alternate* (or *alternative*) *route*. As a noun, *alternative*, long restricted to choices between only two options, has come to mean one among several: *There are six alternatives*.

aluminum (not *aluminium*, except in proper names).

alumna (fem.), **alumnae** (fem. pl.), **alumnus** (masc.), **alumni** (masc. pl., or a mixed group). For general references, and for passages about mixed groups, *graduate(s)* is conveniently neutral.

a.m. (time). Lowercase: *10:30 a.m. Tuesday*. Avoid this redundancy: *10:30 a.m. Tuesday morning*. Also: *10 a.m.*, not *10:00 a.m*. In a headline, uppercase both letters.

Also see time.

A.M.A. for the American Medical Association.

Ambassador *Morgan E. Lamb; Morgan E. Lamb, ambassador to France; the ambassador; Mr.* (or *Ms.*, *Mrs.* or *Miss*) *Lamb*. The title may be applied to the head of an embassy or to a bearer of the personal rank whose assignment is outside an embassy — the chief representative to an international organization, for example (*ambassador to the United Nations*), or a diplomat on a special mission. Lowercase *ambassadorial* in all contexts. Also see chief delegate; chief representative; delegate; high commissioner; representative; titles.

Ambassador at Large *Hollis T. Agneau* (no hyphens); *Ambassador Agneau; the ambassador at large; the ambassador.*

ambassador to Britain, not *Great Britain*. Another title, *ambassador to the Court of St. James's*, may also be used, but reserve it for contexts that warrant a ceremonial flavor.

ambience. The adjective is *ambient*.

A.M.E. for the African Methodist Episcopal Church, an independent black Protestant denomination formed in 1821 in reaction to racial barriers in the Methodist Episcopal Church. The name should usually be abbreviated even in first references, but in any article dealing centrally with the church, spell it out at some point. When using the abbreviation, make the context clear with a phrase like *A.M.E. congregation*, *A.M.E. minister, etc.* Also see A.M.E. Zion.

amendments, legislative. See acts, amendments, bills and laws.

amendments to the Constitution. Capitalize when referring to a specific one: *the Fifth Amendment*. Spell out ordinals through the ninth and use figures for 10th and above: *First Amendment; 14th Amendment*. Lowercase general descriptions of amendments, except for proper names occurring within them: *income tax amendment; Prohibition amendment*. Also see acts, amendments, bills and laws.

America. The terms *America, American(s)* and *Americas* refer not only to the United States but to all of North America and South America. They may be used in any of their senses, including references to just the United States, if the context is clear.

The countries of the Western Hemisphere are collectively *the Americas*.

(-)American. Hyphenate *Italian-American, Japanese-American, Irish-American, Polish-American, Asian-American* and similar phrases denoting foreign heritage. Though some idioms (like *Korean grocery* and *Irish Catholic*) seem entrenched in the language, many members of such groups demand the addition of *-American* to acknowledge their full membership in this society. Usage does not call for the hyphen in religious references like *Jewish American* or in *French Canadian, English Canadian* or *Latin American*. Also see African-American, black; Asian-American; ethnicity; Hispanic.

American Baptist Churches in the U.S.A. This group of Northern Baptists split from the Southern Baptists in 1845 over the issue of whether slaveholders could be missionaries.

American Federation of Labor and Congress of Industrial Organizations. See A.F.L.-C.I.O.

American Federation of State, County and Municipal Employees. Do not abbreviate. *District Council 37* is the local council that represents most municipal employees in New York City.

American Indian(s) may be used interchangeably with *Native American(s)* to refer to most native people of North America. In later references and headlines, when the context is clear: *Indian(s)*. When writing about specific individuals or groups, choose the identification they prefer (*Cherokees, Navajos, Oneidas*). But do not use the term *American Indian(s)* for those not historically referred to by that name (Native Alaskans, Hawaiians and Pacific Islanders). Note that *Indian Country* is a federal designation that refers to any land under tribal jurisdiction, not just reservations. See Native American(s); Indian Country.

American Revolution, the. Also: *the Revolutionary War; the Revolution*.

America's Cup (yachting), **Americas Cup** (golf).

Amex in later references and in headlines for *American Express*, if the context is unmistakable.

A.M.E. Zion for the African Methodist Episcopal Zion Church, a Protestant denomination formed in 1821 by black Methodist Episcopal churches in the New York area. The name should usually be abbreviated even in first references, but in any article dealing centrally with the church, spell it out at some point. When the abbreviation is used, make the context clear with phrases like *A.M.E. Zion congregation*, *A.M.E. Zion minister*, *etc.* Also see A.M.E.

amicus curiae (friend of the court) is the legal term for an outside party who submits a brief to advise or influence the judge or judges on the issues in a case. In later references, if the technical term is necessary and the context clear, *amicus* may stand alone. (The plural, even more daunting to readers, is *amici curiae*.) Lay terms, like *supporting brief*, are usually preferable. On occasion, *"friend of the court"* may also be useful, in quotation marks and without hyphens.

amid (not *amidst*).

amidships.

Amish. They are members of a Christian sect that separated from the Mennonites in the 17th century. They refuse military service, favor plain dress and shun modern technology.

amnesty, clemency, pardon. A *pardon* is a release from punishment or forgiveness of an offense, granted to an individual. An *amnesty* is a general pardon, usually for political offenses, granted to a group. *Clemency* is leniency or mercy shown by someone in power, who does not necessarily forgive the offense. Also see parole, probation.

among (not *amongst*).

among, between. In general, *between* applies to two things, and *among* to more than two. But *between* is correct in reference to more than two when the items are related individually as well as severally: *Trade between the United States, Canada and Mexico has grown under Nafta*. Each country trades with each of the others, rather than with all simultaneously. When more than two things are related in a purely collective and vague way, use *among*.

amount applies to quantities in mass or bulk but not to things that can be counted. *The hermit had a great amount of money*, but *the hermit had a great number* (not *amount*) *of $100 bills; the cook prepared a large amount of rice in a small number of bowls*.

amp, ampere, Ampère. For the electric current measurement, use the more common *amp*; plural is *amps*. But the French physicist was André-Marie Ampère.

ampersand (&). Use the ampersand (&) or *and* in the name of a company, law firm or other entity, according to the company's practice. For consistency, substitute the ampersand for unorthodox internal punctuation, like plus signs (+) or equal signs (=) used by some firms (*Wieden & Kennedy*, not *Wieden + Kennedy*).

Do not otherwise substitute *&* for *and* in copy, in tables or in headlines. Also see company and corporation names.

Amtrak is a synonym for *the National Railroad Passenger Corporation*. Use the shorter term in all references.

Amvets for the group formerly known as American Veterans of World War II, Korea and Vietnam.

an. See a, an, the.

analog, analogue. *Analog*, an adjective, denotes a system of recording or measuring data in an unbroken stream, the way sound is captured on a long-playing record, for example, or the way time is shown by the movement of clock hands. (Most often, such a system is contrasted with *digital* recording or measurement.) *Analogue*, a noun, means a counterpart or an equivalent.

anchor is the preferred term for the chief reporter on a news broadcast. *Anchorman* and *anchorwoman* are acceptable, especially in direct quotations. Do not use *anchorperson*.

and. Use the ampersand (&) instead in company and firm names composed of personal names (*Brown & Williamson*) and in phrases like *& Company*, *& Brothers*, *etc.* See ampersand and company and corporation names.

Do not use *and* to link unrelated matters. *The senator, a Democrat and an avid golfer, was born in Idaho* suggests a relationship between party membership and golf. Make it *who is an avid golfer*.

and/or is stilted. Except in a quotation, phrase it *apples or oranges, or both*.

anemia, anemic.

anesthetic.

Angeleno(s) for a person or people of Los Angeles. Not *Los Angeleno(s)*.

Angkor for the Khmer ruins in Cambodia. *Angkor Wat* is a temple within the complex.

Anglican Church may be used in later references to the Church of England, but *the church* is almost always enough.

Anglican Communion. It comprises the Church of England and Episcopal churches that are informally related to that church in doctrine and ritual. The association includes not only independent churches in Britain but also the Anglican Church of Canada, the Episcopal Church in the United States and others elsewhere. The administrative arm is the Anglican Consultative Council. Every 10 years the bishops of the Anglican Communion gather for the Lambeth Conference. Also see Church of England and Episcopal Church.

Anglo (n. and adj.) originated in the Southwest as a term for a non-Hispanic white American. While its use is spreading, the word remains most suitable for articles about people in the Southwest and the West, or articles reflecting their points of view. Also see Latino.

Anglo(-). *Anglo-Catholic; Anglo-Saxon*. But: *Anglophile; Anglophobe*. In compound modifiers referring to two countries, ordinarily use *English-* or *British-*: *British-French trade; English-Irish cultural rivalry* (not *Anglo-French* or *Anglo-Irish*).

angstrom, a length measurement in the sciences. It is lowercased, though it is named for the physicist Anders Jonas Angstrom.

animals. Call an animal *it*, not *he* or *she*, unless its sex has been mentioned or it has been personalized with a name: *The dog was lost; it howled. Marmaduke was lost; he howled. The dog, which was lost, howled. Adelaide, who was lost, howled. The bull tossed his horns*. Use figures for ages of animals: *a race for 3-year-olds*.

Annapolis (the site and informal name of the United States Naval Academy, in Maryland).

anniversary. Note that “year” is represented in the word’s Latin roots. Thus, make it *10th anniversary*, not the redundant *10-year anniversary*, and avoid constructions like *six-month anniversary*.

anonymity is a last resort, for situations in which The Times could not otherwise publish information it considers newsworthy and reliable. Reporters should not offer a news source anonymity without first pressing to use a name or other helpful identification.

If concealment proves necessary, writers should tell readers as much as possible — without violating the promise of confidentiality — to help them assess the source’s credibility. In particular, how does the source know the information? And does he or she have a stake in the issue?

In some cases it may also be valuable to explain why the source will not speak for attribution. Does she fear for her job or her safety? Does his company forbid workers to speak to reporters? Is the information classified? But be wary of rote phrases that convey little information and suggest an autopilot approach to attribution. It provides little insight merely to say that a source “was not authorized” to speak, or sought anonymity because the topic was “sensitive.”

Blind attribution — *sources said*, for example — is more a tease than a signpost. Trail markers should be as detailed as possible. *United States diplomat* is better than *Western diplomat*, which is better than *diplomat*. Still better is *a United States diplomat who took part in the meeting*. And *a lawyer who has read the brief* or *an executive close to the XYZ Company* is far better than *a person familiar with the case*, a phrase so vague that it could even mean the reporter.

Readers value signs of candor: *The report was provided by a Senate staff member working to defeat the bill.*

Any description must be truthful and not misleading. Do not write *State Department officials* when quoting a single person. And do not write *another official* when citing someone who was named in the previous paragraph. Also avoid ludicrous evasions like *a senior official aboard Secretary Lamm’s plane*. Something like *reporters traveling with Secretary Lamm were told* may actually take the reader closer to the source.

Anonymity should not shield a press officer whose job is to be publicly accountable. And, given the requirements of newsworthiness, it should not be invoked for a trivial comment: *"The party ended after midnight," said a doorman who demanded anonymity*. (If the doorman simply refused to give his name, that is a less grandiose matter, and the article should just say so.)

Anonymity should not be used as a cloak for personal attacks. The vivid language of direct quotation confers an unfair advantage on an unnamed speaker, and turns of phrase are valueless to a reader who cannot assess the source. If pejorative personal remarks are truly newsworthy and cannot be attributed by name, consider paraphrasing.

antagonist, protagonist. An *antagonist* is an adversary, competitor or opponent. One person can have many antagonists. A *protagonist* is the central character in a drama or novel. One drama or novel can have only one protagonist.

Antarctic (n., adj.). *Antarctic Circle; Antarctic continent; Antarctica*.

ante(-). Except before a proper name, compounds beginning with *ante* are not hyphenated: *antebellum; antechamber; antedate; antediluvian; anteroom*. But use a hyphen if the second part of the term is capitalized: *ante-Victorian*.

antecedents. See pronouns and antecedents.

antelope(s).

antennas (not *antennae*).

anthems. Use quotation marks around their titles: *"The Star-Spangled Banner."* Lowercase *the national anthem*. Also see songs.

anti(-). Hyphenate compounds beginning with *anti* if they would otherwise be hard to understand (*anti-abortion, anti-bias, anti-rejection, anti-vice*), if the second element begins with the letter *i* (*anti-inflation, anti-intellectual*) or if the second element is capitalized (*anti-American*, *anti-Communist, anti-Semite*). An exception: *Antichrist*. Other *anti* words are solid: *antiaircraft, antibiotic, antibody, anticancer,* *anticlimax, antidrug, antifreeze, antimagnetic, antimissile, antislavery*, *antismoking, antisocial*, *antiterror*, *antitrust*, *antiwar*.

anticipate. It means foresee and prepare, not merely expect.

Anti-Defamation League (a division of B'nai B'rith).

antitrust division (of the Justice Department).

anxious means uneasy or worried. Avoid the less precise sense, as a synonym for *eager*.

any(-). Most compounds formed with *any* are one word: anybody (pron.), anyhow, any more (something additional), anymore (adv.), anyone (pron.), any way (in any manner), anyway (in any event), anywhere.

But if the emphasis is on singling out an individual in a group, use two words: *Any one of them may win*.

anybody, anyone, everybody, everyone, no one, someone. Each of these pronouns is singular and requires *he* or *she* (never *they*) on further reference: *Has anybody lost his ticket?* To avoid assuming maleness or femaleness in a general reference, rephrase: *Has everyone bought a ticket?* Often a plural construction will serve: *Have people all bought tickets?* As a last resort, the awkward *his or her* is tolerable; a plural pronoun with a singular antecedent is not.

anywhere. This word is often superfluous, as in *The roadster's top speed is anywhere between 100 and 120 miles an hour*.

apogee. It is the highest altitude of an orbiting object in relation to Earth. The word also has the general meaning of highest or farthest point. Its opposite is *perigee*, the lowest or nearest point.

apostle(s). Capitalize in proper names (*the Apostle Thomas; the Apostles' Creed*), but generally lowercase (*the apostles of Jesus; an apostle*). An exception: *the Twelve Apostles*.

apostolic delegate. *Bishop* (or *Archbishop*) *Lee S. Agneau; the apostolic delegate; the delegate*. An apostolic delegate is a Roman Catholic diplomat designated by the pope as his envoy to the church in a foreign country with which the Vatican does not have formal diplomatic relations. He is not a papal nuncio (or a nuncio), an envoy accredited to a foreign government with which the Vatican has a treaty.

apostrophe. Use it to create the possessive form of a noun (*man's*) and to denote a contraction or omission of letters or numerals (*it's* for *it is*; *'94* for *1994*).

Also use the apostrophe for plurals formed from single letters: *A's and B's; p's and q's*.

Form the singular possessive with *'s* (*boy's coat*) and the plural with *s'* (*girls' coats; reporters' computers*).

For a plural that does not end in *s* (*women; children*), the possessive is formed with *'s*: *women's; children's*.

Sometimes a singular idea is expressed in words that are technically plural; in such a case, use the plural form of the possessive: *United States*'; *General Motors'*. Never *United States's*, *etc.*

Almost all singular words ending in *s* require a second *s* as well as the apostrophe to form the possessive: *James's; Chris's; The Times's*. But omit the *s* after the apostrophe when a word ends in two sibilant sounds (the *ch, j, s, sh, ts or z* sounds) separated only by a vowel sound: *Kansas' Governor; Texas' population; Moses' behalf.* The possessive *s* is also traditionally dropped in some idioms in which the word after the possessive begins with *s*: *for conscience' sake; for appearance' sake; for goodness' sake*.

When a name ends with a sibilant letter that is silent, keep the possessive *s*: *Arkansas's; Duplessis's; Malraux's*. By custom, however, the possessive of an ancient classical name is formed with an apostrophe only: *Achilles' heel; Euripides' dramas*.

The apostrophe is used in expressions like *60 days' notice* and *20 years' imprisonment*. But: *60-day notice; a 20-year sentence; a sentence of 20 years*.

Also: *a year's worth; five days' worth; money's worth; a million dollars' worth; a penny's worth*. But, with the currency symbol: *$5 million worth*.

The expression *months pregnant* does not take an apostrophe; it is similar to *years old*.

Apostrophes are omitted in names of many organizations: *Citizens Union; Doctors Hospital; Teachers College; etc.* But if the word is plural before the addition of an s, keep the apostrophe: *Children's Court*. Also: *Ladies' Home Journal*.

The apostrophe is used in abbreviations and contractions like *O.K.'d*.

Also see possessives.

app(s) is acceptable in all references to applications, software and programs, particularly for mobile devices. If the term is central to an article, include a full reference and brief explanation at some point. See software.

appall.

apparent. Do not confuse the adjective with the related adverb, which needs to be positioned precisely. People do not die of *apparent heart attacks* and they are not shot in *apparent robbery attempts*. Only real heart attacks and robbery attempts are dangerous. But someone can die *apparently of a heart attack*, and someone can be shot *apparently in a robbery attempt*.

apparent temperature. See heat index.

Appellate Division.

apposition is a useful device in which one word or phrase is placed beside another to define or explain it. In the sentence *Her husband, Chris, was late*, the first term (*her husband*) is explained by the second (*Chris*). The word or phrase in apposition ordinarily appears between commas (or, sparingly, between dashes); eliminating the commas around *Chris* would suggest that the wife has more than one husband. The two expressions in apposition should serve identical grammatical functions; they mean the same thing. Thus *He said he was Chris Lamb, the stage name of the soap opera star* is faulty because *he* could be *Chris Lamb*, but *he* could not be *the stage name*. In editing, test such a construction this way: Mentally delete the first expression of the pair, and see if the remaining sentence makes sense: *He said he was the stage name of the soap opera star*. A possible repair: *He called himself Chris Lamb, using the stage name of the soap opera star*.

appraise, apprise. *Appraise* means evaluate: *Have the house appraised for the insurance company. Apprise* means notify or inform.

April. Do not abbreviate except, when necessary, in tables or charts.

aquavit (not *akvavit*).

Arab Emirates. See United Arab Emirates.

Arabic numerals. Uppercase *A*. Also see Roman numerals.

Arabic terms in place names include *Ain* (spring), *Bab* (gate), *Bahr* (sea, lake and sometimes river), *Bir* (well), *Birket* (pond), *Burj* (tower), *Dahr* (mountaintop), *Dar* (abode of), *Deir* (monastery), *Jebel* (mountain), *Jisr* (bridge), *Kafr* (hamlet), *Khan* (caravansary), *Marj* (meadow), *Nahr* (river), *Naqb* (pass), *Qasr* or *Kasr* (castle), *Ras* (promontory, cape), *Suq* (market); *Tell* (hill) and *Wadi* (dry riverbed, ravine).

In Egyptian usage, the standard Arabic *j* is pronounced as a hard *g*. Thus *Burg, Gebel*, *Gisr* and *Marg* appear in Egyptian place names instead of *Burj, Jebel, Jisr* and *Marj*.

French transliterations have become standard for North African names; thus *Djebel* and *Ouadi* instead of *Jebel* and *Wadi*.

But see geographic names for the order in which references should be consulted on spelling.

Arabist.

Arab names and titles. Arab names are usually Arabic words governed by grammatical rules. Many names incorporate the definite article *al*. But the vowel may take the form of *a*, *e* or *u*, or disappear entirely as a result of elision. The *l* may appear as *d*, *dh*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *sh*, *t*, *th* or *z*. The article may be joined with the previous or the next word, or both. Except where other usage has become established (*Abdel Nasser; Abdullah*), use *al* hyphenated with the next word: *al-Sabah; al-Azhar*. Many Arabs drop the definite article from their names in English: *Ismail Fahmy*, not *al-Fahmy*. Omit the article in a personal name after the first reference: *Anwar el-Sadat; Mr. Sadat*. (But capitalize the article in a publication title and omit the hyphen: *Al Ahram*.)

Compound names should be left intact. The commonest are composed with the word *Abd* (Worshiper of): *Abdullah* (Worshiper of God); *Abdel Nasser* (Worshiper of the Victorious One); *Abdur Rahman* (Worshiper of the Merciful One).

Another compound is completed by *al-Din* (the Religion), which may appear in forms like *ed-Din, ed-dine, uddin*, etc.: *Kamal ed-Din* (the Perfection of the Religion); *Nureddin* (the Light of the Religion); *Allah-ud-Din* or *Aladdin* (the God of the Religion).

Allah or *ullah* (God) completes compound names like *Jad-Allah* (God giveth), *Nasrullah* (the Victory of God). *Abu* (Father of) and *ibn*, *bin* or *ben* (Son of) combine in names like *Abubakr, Abul Zalaf, Ibn Saud*. Do not capitalize *ibn* when it is preceded by a first or a middle name.

A Muslim Arab has at least three names — the given name, the father's given name and the grandfather's given name. The permanent family name, if there is one, follows. Use whichever family name the subject seems to prefer. Otherwise, in later references, use *Mr.* or the official title before the last name and treat it as a family name. When in doubt, repeat the full name in later references.

The Arab titles *Pasha* and *Bey*, both of Turkish origin, have been abolished. Royal titles, as in English, are used with the first name: *Prince Sultan ibn Abdel Aziz; Prince Sultan. Sheikh* is the title of the rulers of the Persian Gulf principalities: *Sheikh Abdullah al-Salem al-Sabah; Sheikh Abdullah*. The title and the first name alone are enough in first references to rulers (kings, imams, emirs and sheikhs) unless the full name is needed to distinguish between people with the same title and the same first name.

arboretums (not *arboreta*).

Arc de Triomphe, the (in Paris); *the arch*. In direct quotations, *the Arch of Triumph* is acceptable.

arch(-). Except before a proper name, the prefix forms solid compounds: archangel, archbishop, archdiocese, archduke, archenemy, archfiend, archrival.

Though the prefix usually means chief or principal, it sometimes connotes extremism, warranting caution with phrases like *archconservative*, *archradical, archliberal, arch-Protestant* and *arch-Republican*. Also see ultra(-).

archaeology. Also: *archaeological; archaeologist*.

Archbishop *Dale B. Lam of Hartford; Archbishop Lam; the archbishop*. Or: *the archbishop of Hartford, Dale B. Lam. The Most Rev.* is used before the name of the Anglican prelate who is the archbishop of Canterbury. Also see bishop; Canterbury, archbishop of; Most Rev., Rt. Rev.; Rev.; Very Rev.

archetype.

architecture. Styles and schools are listed separately. Also see arts terminology.

arctic (n., adj.). Capitalize in geographic expressions: *Arctic Circle; Arctic Ocean; Arctic Current; Arctic zone; the Arctic; etc.* Lowercase in general references: *arctic cold; arctic fox; etc.* Also: *arctics* (overshoes).

area codes. See telephone numbers.

Argentine(s) (n. and adj.) for the people of Argentina. Not *Argentinian*.

Arizona. Abbreviate as *Ariz*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

Arizonan(s).

ark. Lowercase this term for the cabinet that houses the Torah scrolls in a synagogue. Also: *ark of the covenant*, for the biblical chest that held the stone tablets inscribed with the Ten Commandments.

Arkansas. Abbreviate as *Ark*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

Arlington National Cemetery.

Armed Forces Day. The United States observes it on the third Saturday in May; dates differ in other countries.

Army. Capitalize in *United States Army*, *British Army*, *etc.* It is *the Army* in later references to the United States Army, but lowercase for foreign armies. Also use *Army* for United States Military Academy sports teams.

Army corps. A United States Army corps (the parent unit of a division) is designated by Roman numerals: *II Corps*.

Army ranks, in descending order, and their abbreviations:

COMMISSIONED OFFICERS

Gen. *Stacy D. Milori; General Milori; the general*. (A general wears four stars.)
Lt. Gen. *Dana L. Cordeiro; General Cordeiro; the general*. (A lieutenant general wears three stars.)
Maj. Gen. *Lindsay M. Karitsa; General Karitsa; the general*. (A major general wears two stars.)
Brig. Gen. *Lee B. Cordeiro; General Cordeiro; the general*. (A brigadier general wears one star.)
Col. *Merrill C. Kuzu; Colonel Kuzu; the colonel.*
Lt. Col. *Lee L. Agneau; Colonel Agneau; the colonel.*
Maj. *Stacy M. Miel; Major Miel; the major.*
Capt. *Hilary C. Daan; Captain Daan; the captain*.
First Lt. *Hilary F. Kuzu; Lieutenant Kuzu; the lieutenant*.
Second Lt. *Alex S. Karitsa; Lieutenant Karitsa; the lieutenant*.

WARRANT OFFICERS

Chief Warrant Officer *Chris W. Arniotis; Mr.* (or *Ms., Miss* or *Mrs.*) *Arniotis; the chief warrant officer*.
Warrant Officer *Terry O. Daan; Mr.* (or *Ms., Miss* or *Mrs.*) *Daan; the warrant officer*.

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS

(Enlisted supervisors.)

sergeant major of the Army. Do not use the five-word title before a name; do not capitalize it and do not abbreviate it. Make it *Lindsay M. Bildots, the sergeant major of the Army; Sergeant Major Bildots; the sergeant major*. (This title is held only by the Army’s top enlisted member; it usually requires explanation.)
Command Sgt. Maj. *Tracy C. Arniotis; Sergeant Major Arniotis; the sergeant major*. (This title is held by the top enlisted member of a major headquarters within the Army.)

Sgt. Maj. *Stacy S. Kuzu; Sergeant Major Kuzu; the sergeant(s) major.*
First Sgt. *Lauren F. Daan; Sergeant Daan; the sergeant.*
Master Sgt. *Tracy M. Berenich; Sergeant Berenich; the sergeant.*
Sgt. First Class *Pat F. Karitsa; Sergeant Karitsa; the sergeant.*
Staff Sgt. *Ashley S. Lam; Sergeant Lam; the sergeant.*
Sgt. *Terry P. Agnello; Sergeant Agnello; the sergeant.*
Cpl. *Stacy L. Milori; Corporal Milori; the corporal.*

OTHER ENLISTED PERSONNEL

Specialist *Leslie M. Berenich; Specialist Berenich; the specialist.*
Pfc. *Chris F. Agneau; Private Agneau; the private.*
Pvt. *Alex V. Cordero; Private Cordero; the private.*

Also see retired.

Army Sgt. Maj. Do not use this abbreviation for *sergeant major of the Army*. And because the five-word title is cumbersome, use it after the name, not before: *Lindsay M. Bildots, the sergeant major of the Army* (with an explanation that the bearer is the sole holder of the Army's highest enlisted rank). In later references: *Sergeant Major Bildots; the sergeant major.*

aromatherapy.

arrondissements (French municipal districts). See addresses.

art. Styles and schools are listed separately. Also see arts terminology.

Art Deco (architecture, interior design and decorative arts). Capitalize in reference to the 1920s and 1930s style, sometimes called *style moderne* or *jazz modern*. Also see arts terminology.

article (news report). In writing about news reports that are mainly text, ordinarily use the more precise term *article* rather than *story*, except for effect: *How Nellie Bly got the story*. A work of fiction is a *story*. But note that *report* or *story* is acceptable when referring to digital journalism that includes video, photography, graphics and other multimedia, in addition to or instead of articles. Use quotation marks for the titles of magazine and newspaper articles, and capitalize the principal words.

articles (parts of speech). See a, an, the and the.

Art Nouveau (architecture, interior design and decorative arts). Capitalize when referring to the decorative style with its roots in the 1890s and the early 20th century. Also see arts terminology.

Arts and Crafts (architecture, interior design and decorative arts). Capitalize only in reference to the design movement that began in late-19th-century England. It encompasses the styles known as Prairie, Mission and Craftsman, among others. Also see arts terminology.

arts locations. In an arts review, the name of a well-known museum, gallery, theater or concert hall may be shortened to its conversational form in first and later references, provided the full name appears somewhere in the review, or in a fact box. Examples: *the Modern* or *MoMA* (for the Museum of Modern Art); *the Corcoran* (for the Corcoran Gallery of Art, in Washington); *the Met* or *the Metropolitan* (for the Metropolitan Museum of Art or the Metropolitan Opera, depending on context); *the Brooks Atkinson* (for the Brooks Atkinson Theater).

arts terminology. When dealing with art, architecture, music or literature, capitalize the name of a specific historical movement, group or style: *the Impressionism of Monet*. Lowercase such a term in a more generalized sense: *Chris Miel's paintings are impressionistic in manner*. The prefix *neo* or *post* is lowercased unless specifically adopted by a group or movement as part of its name: the *Post-Impressionism of Seurat*, but *Leslie Cordeiro works in a neo-Dada manner*. In architecture, scholars disagree significantly on the limits and definitions of many styles. In the 20th century, for example, a building designed in a loosely classical vein, like the old Pennsylvania Station in New York, is likely to be called *Classical, neo-Classical, classical revival* or *romantic classical*. In such cases, it is best to use a phrase like *a 20th-century building in the classical style*. Individual styles and movements are listed separately. Also see dance and music.

as. See as if and like.

Ascap for the American Society of Composers, Authors and Publishers.

Ascension. Capitalize when the reference is to Jesus.

Asean for the Association of Southeast Asian Nations. Its members are Brunei, Cambodia, Indonesia, Laos, Malaysia, Myanmar, the Philippines, Singapore, Thailand and Vietnam.

Ashkenazi is the term for a Jew who settled in middle or northern Europe after the Diaspora, or that Jew's descendant. The plural is *Ashkenazim*, and the adjective is *Ashkenazic*. Also see Jew(s) and Sephardi.

Asian-American, applied to a citizen of the United States, is preferred over *Asian*. But whenever possible, use a more specific description: *Korean-American; Vietnamese-American*. Also see -American and ethnicity.

Asian, Asiatic. Use *Asian(s)* when referring to people. *Asiatic*, in this sense, is now generally considered disparaging.

as if. Use the phrase, instead of *like*, when what follows is a clause with its own verb: *He pedaled as if his life depended on it*. See like.

As if is shorter and more logical than its generally accepted synonym, *as though*. The logic is clear if you insert the words that are implied: *It looks as* [it would look] *if the Yankees won*.

as many. Avoid this mannerism: *twice in as many days; third in as many days*. The wording is untidy because the phrase *as many* requires a cardinal number for completion (*as many as two; as many as three*). Make it *twice in two days* and *third in three days*. With a cardinal number (*five times in as many days*), the phrase is more grammatical, but still journalese.

as much as. Write *as much as if not more than;* do not omit the second *as*. For greater readability, complete the first thought before beginning the second: *He travels as much as a correspondent, if not more*.

Asperger's syndrome.

assassin, assassinate, assassination. Generally reserve these terms for a fatal surprise attack on a prominent person, or for the attacker in such a crime. The terms are not synonyms for *kill, killer, murder* or *murderer* (a usage that sometimes occurs in overliteral translation from other languages). Also see execute, execution.

assault weapons are semiautomatic pistols, rifles or shotguns with special features like large-capacity magazines, pistol grips or folding or telescoping stocks. They were originally designed as automatic weapons for military or police use. Those sold to civilians are modified to allow only semiautomatic fire. Also see caliber; cartridge; handguns; rifles; shotguns.

assembly. Capitalize in *United Nations General Assembly; the State Assembly; etc.* In later references: *the Assembly*. But it is *state assembly, state assemblies, an assembly*, etc., when the reference is not specific.

Assembly districts. Capitalize in specific references: *First Assembly District; 11th Assembly District*.

assemblyman, assemblywoman. *Assemblyman Pat W. Agneau; Assemblywoman Pat Y. Agneau; Assemblyman* (or *Assemblywoman*) *Agneau; the assemblyman* (or *assemblywoman*); *Mr.* (or *Mrs., Miss* or *Ms. Agneau*). Also: *an assemblyman; an assemblywoman; assemblymen; assemblywomen*. Also see men and women and titles.

assistant bishop. See bishop.

Assistant Chief *Tracy M. Anyell* (in police and fire departments); *Chief Anyell; the chief.*

Assistant District Attorney *Robin T. Milori; Assistant District Attorney Milori; the assistant district attorney*.

Associated Press, The. It is *The Associated Press* in news articles. The abbreviation is *A.P.* or *The A.P.*, except in some credit lines and in datelines: *RECIFE, Brazil (AP) — etc*. Use this credit on undatelined A.P. articles:

By The Associated Press

Associate Justice *Ashley R. Berenich* (of the United States Supreme Court); *the associate justice; Associate Justice Berenich* (or *Justice Berenich*); *the justice*.

association. Capitalize when part of the name of an organization, but not when standing alone. Also capitalize in *Association football* (British).

Association of the Bar of the City of New York. Use its informal name, *the City*

Bar Association, in virtually all references.

as such. In this construction, *such* is a pronoun, requiring a noun for its antecedent. Thus: *She is an editor; as such, she assigns reporters*. But not *He works for The Times; as such, he covers medicine*.

astronaut. The Russian term is *cosmonaut*, but confine that to quotations and untranslated texts.

astronomical unit. This unit of length used in astronomy is the mean radius of the Earth's orbit around the sun. It is approximately 93 million miles.

AstroTurf is a trademark for synthetic grass.

as well as. Unlike *and*, this phrase joins two items without creating a plural. The phrase introduces what is essentially a parenthetical aside, so the verb still agrees with the original subject: *Alex as well as Lee was late*. The verb is singular because *Alex* remains the sole subject.

as yet. When the phrase modifies a verb, it should usually be shortened to *yet*: *The tax rate has not been set yet*. When modifying an adjective, *as yet* can be useful (*as yet undecided*), but idiom prefers the whole cluster after a noun, not before: *The sheriff denounced the killer, as yet unidentified* (not *the as-yet-unidentified killer*, with or without hyphens).

AT&T Inc. was the American Telephone and Telegraph Company until 1994.

at-bat(s). As a noun, the baseball term is hyphenated, though *times at bat* will often be smoother in copy: *Cordero scored five runs in 12 at-bats*. Or: *in 12 times at bat*. See baseball.

Athabasca (not *Athabaska*) for the town, lake, mountain and river in Canada.

Atlantic. The actual shoreline of the Atlantic Ocean is *the Atlantic coast;* the region of the United States lying along the shoreline is *the Atlantic Coast* or *the Atlantic Seaboard*. It is the *coast* in all subsequent references. Also: *North Atlantic; South Atlantic; Atlantic Coast States*.

Atlantic alliance. See NATO.

Atlantic, The. The magazine no longer uses “Monthly” in its title.

at large. Do not hyphenate *ambassador at large*, *delegate at large* or similar titles. But hyphenate the phrase when its rather awkward use as a preceding modifier is unavoidable: *The state will be filling three at-large seats*.

A.T.M. for *automated* (not *automatic*) *teller machine. A.T.M. machine* is redundant.

atmosphere (unit of pressure).

atomic age.

attaché. *Col. Lynn T. Agnello, the military attaché; the attaché*.

attempt (v.) is often stilted; *try* is more conversational.

attorney. Ordinarily use *lawyer* instead; it is less pretentious. And it is more precise: in many situations, an attorney (someone authorized to act for another) need not be a lawyer.

Attorney General *Chris T. Baranek; the attorney general*. The plural is *attorneys general*.

attribution. See anonymity.

Aug. for *August* before numerals (*Aug. 16*), or in charts and tables.

auger, augur. An *auger* is a tool for boring holes. An *augur* is a fortuneteller or prophet. As a verb, *augur* means foretell. And an *augury* is a sign of things to come.

author, co-author. Use both words as nouns only, not as verbs.

autobahn(s).

automatic weapons. See assault weapons and handguns.

autumn (also *fall*).

auxiliary bishop. See bishop.

avant-garde (n. and adj.); *avant-gardism; avant-gardist*.

Ave. may be used after an avenue name, but only in headlines, charts and maps.

Avenue of the Americas (Manhattan). In headlines, *Ave. of Americas*. The older name, *Sixth Avenue*, remains idiomatic and may be used for special effect. In a difficult headline, *6th Ave*. is acceptable, provided the article subtly connects the two names. *The Sixth Avenue subway* is also acceptable, especially when juxtaposed with expressions like *the Eighth Avenue subway*.

avenues. See addresses.

average. See mean, median, average.

averse (unwilling or reluctant), **adverse** (opposed or unfavorable). Example: *Ms. Lamm was averse to going to court because she thought the ruling would be adverse*.

Avery Fisher Hall (at Lincoln Center).

avoid, evade. *Avoid* is the more neutral term, in a context like taxes or punishment. *Evade* carries a suggestion of deceit or irresponsibility. Tax *avoidance* is ordinarily legal; tax *evasion* is not.

Awacs (n. or adj., sing. or pl.) is an acronym for *airborne warning and control system*. There is no such word as *Awac*.

awe-struck.

a while, awhile. *They plan to stay for a while; They plan to stay awhile*.

AWOL for *absent without leave*.

ax.

Axis (the German-Italian-Japanese alliance of World War II).

ayes and nays.

B

B.A. or **A.B.** for Bachelor of Arts. Also: *a bachelor's degree*.

baby boom refers to the population surge after World War II, between 1946 and 1964. Generational references like *baby boomer, Generation X, Gen X, Generation Y* and *millennial* are informal and prone to stereotype. Use them carefully.

babysit, babysitting, babysitter. The idiom is *he babysits for Leslie*, not *he babysits Leslie*.

baccalaureate.

bachelor's degree. But: *Bachelor of Arts; Bachelor of Science; etc.* Also: A.B. (where used) or *B.A.*; *B.S.*; *etc.*

back(-), (-)back. Most but not all compounds formed with *back* as a prefix are one word: backache, backboard, backbone, backbreaking, backdate, back door (n.), backdoor (adj.), backdrop, backfield, backfire, background, backhand, backhoe, backlog, backpack, backpedal, backrest, back room (n.), back-room (adj.), back seat (n.), back-seat (adj.), backslide, backstage, back stairs (n.), backstairs (adj.), backstop, backstretch, backstroke, backswing, back talk, backtrack, backup (n. and adj.), back up (v.), backwoods, backyard.

Compounds formed with *back* as a suffix are one word: comeback, fastback, flareback, halfback, hatchback, piggyback (adj. and v.), rollback, setback, throwback.

back of, in back of. *Behind* is more efficient: *the tree behind the barn*.

backward (not *backwards*).

bacteria is plural; the singular is *bacterium*. Also see genus and species and E. coli.

bad, badly. After a verb like *be, appear, look, feel, seem, smell* or *taste*, the word most often wanted is the adjective *bad*, not the adverb *badly*. (Example: *The soup tastes bad*.) That is because the verbs listed above are "linking" verbs – those that connect one part of a sentence to another. Linking verbs call for adjectives where other verbs would demand adverbs. Thus someone who smells *bad* should bathe; someone who smells *badly* should see a doctor.

bad-mouth (v.) is slang, and the vividness has been recycled out of it.

Baghdad.

Baha'i. A *Baha'i* is an adherent of *the Baha'i faith*, which emphasizes brotherhood and social equality.

Bahamas, the. Lowercase *the*, even in datelines.

Bahrain (not *Bahrein*). The nation is formed of a group of islands in the Persian Gulf.

bail. A defendant may be *freed on bail* or, for example, *freed on $10,000 bail*. But if the defendant fails to produce cash or a bond in the amount determined by a judge, the defendant is *held with bail set at $100,000*. Avoid the legalese *held in bail*.

bait (torment or entice), **bate** (reduce or lower, as in *abate*). Also see bated breath.

Baja California, the Mexican peninsula, is divided into two states: *Baja California* in the north (not *Baja California Norte*) and *Baja California Sur* in the south.

baked alaska.

ball(-). Some compounds formed with *ball* are hyphenated, some are solid and some are two words: ball bearing, ball boy, ball carrier (sports), ball club, ball field, ballflower (architecture), ballgame, ball joint, ballpark, ballplayer, ballpoint, ballroom.

Ballet Russe, Ballets Russes. The spelling will depend on the troupe mentioned, its leader and the year cited: the *Ballets Russes* (1909 to 1929), the groundbreaking company founded by Serge Diaghilev; the *Ballets Russes de Monte Carlo*, founded in 1932 by René Blum and Wassily G. Voskresensky (also known as Col. W. de Basil), which changed its name to *Ballet Russe de Monte Carlo* in 1934; the *Ballet Russe de Monte Carlo*, a successor led by Léonide Massine starting in 1938 and later by Sergei Denham; and the *Original Ballet Russe*, led by Col. W. de Basil from 1939 to 1948.

Band-Aid is a trademark for an adhesive bandage.

bandanna(s).

bandoleer.

Bangladeshi(s). The citizens of Bangladesh. But use Bengali(s) for the ethnic group in Bangladesh or in the Indian state of West Bengal.

Banjul (in Gambia).

bankruptcy, a legal state of insolvency, can be voluntary (requested by the insolvent person or business) or involuntary (requested by the creditors). If a company is fighting an involuntary request, do not describe it as bankrupt until a judge has approved the petition. A person or business in debt may seek help under different chapters of the bankruptcy law. Individuals usually file under *Chapter 7* or *Chapter 13*. Chapter 7 allows for a quicker settlement of the debt while Chapter 13 leads to the gradual payment of some or all of the debt. *Chapter 11* is used mostly by businesses seeking protection from creditors' lawsuits while they reorganize their finances; such businesses are not yet bankrupt. A business that files under Chapter 11 may be forced into Chapter 7, which normally leads to liquidation.

Bank Street College of Education (in New York City).

banned, barred. Ordinarily, people can be *barred*, but only actions and things are *banned*. (An exception, under the apartheid system in South Africa, was the *banning* of politically suspect people, a set of restrictions on their contacts with others.)

bar(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *bar* are solid: barbell, bar chart, bar code, bar graph, barkeep, barkeeper, barroom, bartender.

bar association. See City Bar Association.

Barbados. Its people are *Barbadians*. Informally, many on the island call themselves *Bajans*.

barbecue (n. and v.).

Bard, in references to Shakespeare, is trite. Resist it.

Bard College (in Annandale-on-Hudson, N.Y.).

bar mitzvah (for a boy), **bat mitzvah** (for a girl). The noun applies both to the ceremony and to the young person honored by it.

Barnes & Noble (the bookstore chain).

Barneys New York is the retailer. *Barney's Inc.* is its parent company. Only the parent uses the apostrophe.

baron is the lowest rank of British nobility. *Lord* is the customary title for a British baron, in all references and never with a given name: *Lord Lamb*. In some other countries, *Baron* is used before a name. Also see peers.

baroness. This is the lowest rank for a woman in the British peerage. A woman who holds it in her own right is *Lady Lamb* in all references or may choose to be *Baroness Lamb* on first reference and *Lady Lamb* thereafter; the wife of a baron is always *Lady Lamb*. No given name is used in either case. In some other countries, *Baroness* is used more widely. Also see peers.

baronet (British rank). The holder is not a peer. See Sir.

baroque (art, architecture and music). Capitalize in references to the style of painting, sculpture and architecture developed in Europe in the 17th century. Also capitalize in references to music composed between 1600 and 1750, beginning with Monteverdi and ending with Bach and Handel. Lowercased, *baroque* refers to any style with a tendency to dramatic, abundant and elaborate detail. See arts terminology.

barrio. It is a Hispanic neighborhood or district. Avoid any assumption that it is necessarily poor, rundown or crime-ridden.

BART, for Bay Area Rapid Transit, San Francisco's mass transit system.

Baruch College (part of the City University of New York).

baseball. Give scores in figures, but spell out all other numbers under 10: *Bildots pitched seven innings and scored two runs in the Mets' 3-2 victory*.

The best-known professional organization is *Major League Baseball*. But: *major leagues; minor leagues; major-league* (adj). Major League Baseball organizes the *World Series* (*the Series*). The best-known youth organization is *Little League Baseball*, which organizes the *Little League World Series*.

The names of pitches are single words: *changeup; curveball; spitball*. The names of positions other than *shortstop*, *pitcher* and *catcher* are two words: *first baseman; left fielder*.

Hyphenate the noun *at-bat(s)*, but often *three times at bat* will be smoother in copy. Also: *R.B.I.* (never *R.B.I.'s*). Avoid tired words and phrases like *all-time, autumn classic, frame, nightcap, Pale Hose, winless*, *etc.*

Basel (in Switzerland).

bases. See military bases.

basis is often a symptom of bureaucratese. *The revenues were counted on a day-to-day* (or *week-to-week*) *basis*. Make it *The revenues were counted day to day*.

basketball. Use figures for points and scores: *He scored 8 points in two minutes. They won*, *99-98*. Do not use *trey* for 3-point goals or *deuce* for 2-point baskets. The best-known professional leagues are the *National Basketball Association* and the *Women's National Basketball Association*.

bas-relief.

basset (the dog).

Bastille, the.

bated breath (not *baited*) is held because of excitement, fear or other emotion. The word is related to *abated*.

bath(-), (-)bath. Most but not all compounds formed with *bath* as a prefix are one word: bathhouse, bathmat, bathrobe, bathroom, bath salts, bath towel, bathtub.

Compounds formed with *bath* as a suffix are two words: acid bath, blood bath, bubble bath, sponge bath.

bathyscaph (a deep-sea diving craft).

Batswana (sing. and pl.). The people of Botswana. The adjective is *Botswana*.

battalion. Capitalize in names: *Third Battalion; 10th Battalion*. For conventions that govern battalion names, see regiment.

battle(-). Some compounds formed with *battle* are hyphenated, some are solid and some are two words: battle-ax, battle cry, battle fatigue, battlefield, battlefront, battleground, battle(s) royal, battle-scarred, battleship, battle station(s).

battles. Capitalize names that have become known in history: *the Battle of Lexington; the Battle of Waterloo; the Battle of Ypres; the Battle of Britain*. But: *the attack on Fort Sumter; the Normandy campaign; the battle for Split*.

Bavarian cream (the dessert).

Bay Area (the San Francisco region).

Bayreuth (in Germany).

BBC for the British Broadcasting Corporation. Spell out the name unless the context is clear.

B.C. As an abbreviation for *before Christ*, it follows the year or the century: *The town was founded in 73 B.C.*; *the town dates from the second century B.C.* But *A.D.*, for *anno Domini*, or *in the year of the* [or *our*] *Lord*, is placed before the year (*in A.D. 73*) and after the century (*in the second century A.D.*).

Beaux-Arts (art and architecture). Capitalize when referring to the École des Beaux-Arts in Paris, which had a significant effect on American architecture and art, and when referring to the style itself. See arts terminology.

bed(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *bed* are solid: bed-and-breakfast, bedchamber, bedclothes, bedfast, bedfellow, bed jacket, bed linen, bedpost, bed rest, bedridden, bedroll, bedroom, bedsheet, bedside, bedspread, bedspring, bedtime.

before is more conversational than *prior to*, and shorter.

beg the question does not mean pose the issue or avoid the issue. To *beg the question* is to assume the truth of the proposition one is trying to prove. The phrase is so often used loosely that it is likely to be misunderstood.

Beijing. But some terms retain the earlier form, including *Peking University*. See Chinese names.

Beirut (in Lebanon).

Bekaa Valley (in Lebanon).

Belarus. The adjective is *Belarussian*.

Belize. Its capital is Belmopan.

Bellerose (in Queens and Long Island).

Bellmawr, Belmar. *Bellmawr*, N.J., is in Camden County. *Belmar*, N.J., is in Monmouth County.

Bellmore (in Nassau County, N.Y.).

bellwether. Its original meaning was a sheep (that is, *wether*) that wore a bell and led the flock. By extension, the term means a trend indicator.

bemused is not a synonym for aloof, cocky or amused. It means stupefied or muddled.

benefited, benefiting.

Bengali(s). An ethnic group in Bangladesh and India. Also see Bangladeshi(s).

Benghazi (in Libya).

Ben-Gurion International Airport in Israel serves Jerusalem and Tel Aviv.

Benzedrine (a trademark for an amphetamine).

Bergdorf Goodman.

Bering Sea.

Berlin is the capital of Germany. From the end of World War II until 1990 the city was divided into American, British, French and Soviet sectors. The Soviet sector, *East Berlin*, was the capital of East Germany. The three other sectors, together forming *West Berlin*, were part of West Germany.

Berlin Wall; *the wall* (the one that stood from 1961 to 1989).

Bermuda shorts.

Bermuda Triangle. It is an area in the Atlantic bounded by Bermuda, Puerto Rico and Florida in which many ships are said to have disappeared mysteriously.

Bern (in Switzerland).

beset (v.) is stilted and is best replaced by conversational synonyms like *harass* or *trouble*.

besiege.

best(-). Compounds formed with *best* are usually hyphenated when they precede the nouns they modify: *best-dressed; best-informed; best-liked; best man; best-paid; best-selling*. In general, the hyphens are omitted when the compound adjectives follow the nouns they modify: *A survey found newspaper readers best informed*. Also see best-seller list.

best-seller list. Make it *the New York Times best-seller list* when the newspaper's name is a modifier or *The New York Times's best-seller list* when the newspaper's name is a noun. But the books are *best sellers*.

bettor for one who wagers.

between. In a range of prices or quantities, this phrasing is wordy: *The project will cost between $1.2 million and $1.6 million*. Use the more graceful "to" construction: *The project will cost $1.2 million to $1.6 million*. See among, between.

Bhopal (in India).

Bhutan. Its residents are *Bhutanese*.

bi(-). Compounds formed with *bi* are not hyphenated: biannual, bicameral, bicentennial, bicultural, bidirectional, biennial, bifocal, bilateral, bilingual, bimonthly, bipartisan, biplane, bisexual, bistate, bivalve, biweekly. Also see: biannual, biennial; bimonthly; biweekly; semiannual, semiyearly; semimonthly; semiweekly.

biannual, biennial. *Biannual* means twice a year, as do *semiannual* and *semiyearly. Biennial* means every two years. For comprehension, when possible write *twice a year* or *every two years*.

Bible, biblical. Capitalize *Bible* (but not *biblical*) if the reference is to the Old Testament or the New Testament. But: *The style manual is their bible*. Also see gospel(s) and Scripture(s).

Bible Belt for regions, especially in the South, where evangelical fervor is strong. Take care to avoid a disparaging tone.

BID for business improvement district, but only when the context is clear.

bid (v.). Use the word freely in the context of auctions or business contracting. But resist it in headlines as a synonym for *urge* or *request*; that usage sounds archaic. In the sense of greeting or saying goodbye, the past tense is *bade*. In bridge games and in business uses, the past tense is *bid*.

big. Use it as an adjective. The colloquial use as an adverb (*they won big*) is hackneyed, as is the related slang *they failed big time*.

Big Bang theory.

Big Board. See New York Stock Exchange.

Big Three (or *Four, Five*, etc.). Construe as a plural. Numerals may be used in headlines: *Big 3*.

big time. When it is used as a noun, it is two words: *That novel put her in the big time*. When it is an adjective that precedes what it modifies, it is hyphenated: *He was a big-time gambler*. Used as an adverb, it is two words (*He regretted his decision big time*), but it is also slang and a cliché.

billion. A billion is 1,000 million. See dollars and cents; numbers; numbers, round.

Bill of Rights. The first 10 amendments to the Constitution. Do not shorten it to *the bill* in later references. Also capitalize for the Bill of Rights enacted in Britain in 1689.

bills, legislative. See acts, amendments, bills and laws.

bimonthly means every two months; *semimonthly* means twice a month. For comprehension, use *every two months* or *twice a month*.

biological parents. Use this term, not *natural parents*, when it is necessary to distinguish between birth parents and adoptive ones. But adoptive status should not be mentioned unless it is relevant and its relevance is clear to the reader.

bipolar disorder is a serious mental illness; do not use the term in casual descriptions of someone's changing moods.

bird's-eye (adj.). But the brand of frozen food is *Birds Eye*.

birth(-). Some compounds formed with *birth* are solid and some are two words: birth canal, birth certificate, birth control, birthday, birth defect, birthmark, birthplace, birthrate, birthright, birthstone.

bisexual. Do not use the slang shorthand *bi*.

bishop. Lowercase the title except when it directly precedes a name. Here is a guide to the use of the title in various churches:

EPISCOPAL

The Episcopal Church is headed by *the presiding bishop*. In first references: *Presiding Bishop Ashley B. Lamb of the Episcopal Church*. In later references: *Presiding Bishop Lamb; the presiding bishop; Bishop Lamb; the bishop*.

Bishops head dioceses and hold other posts. *Suffragan bishops* assist bishops of dioceses. *Bishops coadjutor* are suffragans with the right of succession. *Assistant bishops* (usually retired bishops) perform duties for bishops of dioceses but are not formally installed.

Omit *the Rt. Rev*. before the names of bishops. In first references, use the titles given in the previous paragraph: *Bishop Ashley B. Lamb of New York; Suffragan Bishop Ashley B. Lamb of New York*. Also: *the bishop of New York, Ashley B. Lamb* (or *the suffragan bishop of*, etc.). In later references, use simply *Bishop Lamb* or *the bishop*.

LUTHERAN

Lutherans in the United States rarely use the term *bishop*. When they do, this is the style for a first reference: *the Rev. Ashley B. Lamb, bishop of Missouri*. In later references: *Bishop Lamb; the bishop*.

METHODIST

In the United Methodist Church, the style for a first reference is *Bishop Ashley B. Lamb of Massachusetts*. Later references: *Bishop Lamb; the bishop*.

MORMON

Mormon bishops head wards: *Bishop Ashley B. Lamb of the Manhattan Ward; Bishop Lamb; the bishop*.

ORTHODOX

The style of the Eastern Orthodox Church is similar to the first-and later-reference style for other churches. But often a high-ranking clergy member adopts an ecclesiastical name and uses that name alone after the title in a first reference: *Archbishop Makarios* (*Makarios* means *Blessed*). For other titles used by the church, see metropolitan and patriarch. Also see Eastern Orthodoxy.

ROMAN CATHOLIC

Roman Catholic *archbishops* normally head archdioceses. *Bishops* normally head dioceses. *Auxiliary bishops* assist archbishops or bishops. Omit *the Most Rev*. before the name in almost all cases: *Archbishop Ashley B. Lamb of Hartford; Bishop Ashley B. Lamb of Harford; Auxiliary Bishop Ashley B. Lamb of Hartford; etc.* Also: *the bishop of Hartford, Ashley B. Lamb* (or *the archbishop of*, or *the auxiliary bishop of*, etc.). In later references: *Archbishop Lamb, the archbishop; Bishop Lamb, the bishop; Auxiliary Bishop* (or *Bishop*) *Lamb, the auxiliary bishop* or *the bishop*. Superiors general of certain Catholic orders use *the Most Rev*. before their names.

Often, as in New York, the archbishop of a large archdiocese also holds the higher rank of *cardinal*; that title supersedes *archbishop*.

Also see archbishop; Canon; cardinal; deacon; dean; Most Rev., Rt. Rev.; Rev.; superior general; Very Rev.

bit. In computing, a *bit* (short for *bi*nary di*git*) is an electrical pulse representing a 0 or a 1, a single basic unit of information, the smallest unit a computer can handle. Clusters of bits form bytes. Also see byte; gigabyte; kilobyte; megabyte; terabyte.

bitter, bitters. *Bitter* is an ale, often ordered by the pint. *Bitters* is used as a medicine and as a flavoring in cocktails.

bivouac, bivouacking.

biweekly means every two weeks. *Semiweekly* means twice a week, but a few authorities accept *biweekly* in that meaning, too. For clarity, use *every two weeks* or *twice a week* instead.

black. See African-American, black; ethnicity; historically black.

black(-). Compounds formed with *black* are sometimes hyphenated, sometimes solid and sometimes two words: blackball, black box, blackjack, blacklist, blackmail, blackout, black tie (n. and adv.), black-tie (adj.), blacktop.

Black Muslim. Do not use this term for a member of the Nation of Islam, the black nationalist group founded by Elijah Muhammad in the 1920s. Most black Americans who are Muslim follow traditional Islam or are members of theological splinter groups. They are *black Muslims* but not *Black Muslims*.

blackout. In the sense of a curb on news reporting, it ordinarily refers to a rule that binds labor negotiators, trial participants or legislators, not journalists. The distinction should be made clear so readers will not infer that reporters or editors are conspiring to withhold information. Usually a paraphrase is clearer (*an agreement not to speak with reporters*, for example).

blame (v.). Use this construction: *The rescuers blamed the weather for the wreck*. Do not use *blame on*: *The rescuers blamed the wreck on the weather*. Though dictionaries accept both usages, the more traditional has logic on its side: Blame the cause, never the effect.

blast off (v.), **blastoff** (n.). Use only in references to rocketry.

Bleecker Street (in Greenwich Village).

blind. Apply the word only to those who have no sight. Others may have *limited sight* or be *partly blind*. Do not use euphemisms like *visually challenged*. Also see disability, disabled.

blitz, blitzkrieg. But capitalize in specific references to the aerial assault on London in World War II.

blizzard. A storm is not a blizzard unless it meets the specifications set by the National Weather Service: winds of at least 35 miles an hour and considerable falling or blowing snow that reduces visibility to less than a quarter-mile.

bloc, block. A *bloc* is a group of people (or nations) with a common interest who are working together. A *block* is any number of people or things treated as a unit.

blockfront.

blog, blogger, blogging. *Blogs* are websites or sections of websites that may contain opinion, news and other information, typically displayed with the most recent material first. An individual entry on a blog is a *post*. Do not refer to individual posts or comments as blogs. *Blogger* is acceptable for a blog contributor; avoid disparaging uses. Also: *live-blog, live-blogged, live-blogging*. But note that *live-* is often unnecessary.

blond, blonde. Use the noun *blond* for boys and men, and the noun *blonde* for girls and women. Use the adjective *blond* for people of both sexes, and for inanimate things.

Bloomberg News is a subsidiary of Bloomberg L.P., which provides news and financial information in many forms to traders, investors, newspapers and other subscribers. In datelined articles, put the name in parentheses: *CHICAGO (Bloomberg News) – etc*. Use this credit on undatelined articles:

By Bloomberg News

Bloomingdale's.

blowout (n.), **blow out** (v.).

Blu-ray for the video and data disk technology. The full trademark is *Blu-ray Disc*.

BMT for Brooklyn-Manhattan Transit, once a separate subway company in New York that became part of the city system in 1940. While the abbreviation survives in local idiom, it is confusing to newcomers and visitors. Except in direct quotations or historical contexts, make it simply *the N train* (or *line*); *the R train*.

B'nai B'rith, Bnai Zion. Note that one of these Jewish organizations uses no apostrophes. Do not use *the* before either name. The Anti-Defamation League is a division of B'nai B'rith.

board. Capitalize only when part of a name. Do not abbreviate, even in headlines.

board chairman (chairwoman). Lowercase the terms, and do not use as a false title (*the board chairwoman, Toby S. Kuzu*, not *board chairwoman Toby S. Kuzu*). Usually *chairman* (or *chairwoman*) *of the XYZ Company* can stand without *board*. Do not use *chairlady* or *chairperson*. In a general reference, *head of the board* is suitable for both sexes. Also see men and women.

board of directors can usually be shortened to *the board* or *the directors*.

Board of Regents (for a governmental body); *the Regents; the board*. But lowercase for a body within a single college, university or other institution.

boardwalk (in Coney Island, Atlantic City, etc.).

boast. Unless there is a real notion of taking pride, the verb, as a substitute for *have*, is an example of overreaching: *The school boasts three new computer rooms*.

boat(-). Many but not all compounds formed with *boat* are one word: boathook, boathouse, boatload, boatman, boat race.

bocce (the bowling game).

bogey. It is a noun meaning one over par in golf and a verb for making that score: *He scored a bogey; He bogeyed the third hole*. The plural is *bogeys*. Also see bogy.

Bogotá (in Colombia).

bogy. A bugbear or a goblin or an evil spirit. The plural is *bogies*. Also see bogey.

Bombay. See Mumbai.

bona fide. Without a hyphen, even as a preceding modifier.

bondholder.

bond ratings. See debt ratings.

booby trap (n.), **booby-trap** (v.).

book(-), (-)book. Most but not all compounds formed with *book* as a prefix are one word: book bag, bookbinder, bookcase, book club, book dealer, bookend, book jacket, bookkeeper, book learning, bookmaker, bookmark, bookmobile, bookseller, bookshelf, bookshop, bookstore, bookworm.

Most but not all compounds formed with *book* as a suffix are one word: bankbook, checkbook, guidebook, notebook, pocket book (a small book), pocketbook (a billfold, purse or handbag), reference book, schoolbook, storybook (n. and adj.), stylebook, textbook. Also: *e-book*.

Book of Common Prayer.

books. Use their titles in quotation marks in news copy and capitalize the principal words (as defined in the entry on capitalization). But omit quotation marks for the titles of standard reference works like dictionaries, encyclopedias and gazetteers. When an article deals substantially with a book, name the publisher and give the publication date, but not necessarily in the first few paragraphs.

boost, booster. Suitable uses include these: *boost* (n. or v.) *over a wall; civic booster; morale booster; booster rocket*. But avoid journalese like *boost wages, boost taxes, boost a bill's chances*.

Border collie.

Border terrier.

"Boris Godunov" (the opera).

born again. The phrase applies to an evangelical Christian who has experienced an adult or adolescent conversion. As a modifier before a noun: *born-again*.

born, borne. Except in references to birth, use *borne* as the past participle of *bear*: a load, a cost and a grudge are *borne*, but a child is *born. Born* is used only in the passive voice and only when the focus is on the offspring: *Ashley was born in Ashtabula*. When the focus is on the mother, add an *e* (*Theo has borne three daughters*), even in the passive voice (*Three children were borne by Stacy*).

Borough of Manhattan Community College (part of the City University of New York).

Borough President *Stacy T. Lam of Queens; the borough president*. Never *the president*.

borscht. Also: *borscht belt* and *borscht circuit*, for the Catskill resort hotels and their nightclub entertainment in their heyday.

Börse (the German exchange). In most contexts, the English phrase is more comfortable.

Bosnia and Herzegovina. Use the country's full name in datelines and formal contexts; in later references, normally just *Bosnia, Bosnian* and *Bosnians*. The country has two parts — the *Serbian Republic* (not to be confused with *Serbia*) and the *Muslim-Croat Federation*. It is often necessary to append an ethnic identification to the adjective *Bosnian*: *Bosnian Croat; Bosnian Serb* (as in *a Bosnian Serb militia*). But in a clear context, *Muslim* can stand alone.

Bosporus, the (not *Bosporus Strait*).

both means the two taken together. Do not use it in constructions like this: *Both towns are the same size;* make it *The two*, *etc.* Also see either (... or).

Botswana. Its people are *Batswana* (sing. and pl.). The adjective is *Botswana*.

Boulevard. Spell out and capitalize after a name in a news article: *Bruckner Boulevard*. The abbreviation may be used with a name (*Bruckner Blvd*.) in headlines, tables, charts and maps.

(-)bound. This suffix forms solid compounds except when it follows a proper name or produces an unaccustomed coinage: Africa-bound, deskbound, eastbound, fame-bound, housebound, musclebound, northbound, snowbound, southbound, vacationbound.

Bourse (French exchange). But the English phrase is usually more comfortable for American readers.

boutonniere.

bowl games. Capitalize their names: *Rose Bowl, Cotton Bowl, Orange Bowl*, *etc.* The National Football League designates its championship, the *Super Bowl*, with Roman numerals; the 2013 game, for example, was *Super Bowl XLVII*. Also see sports sponsorship.

box(-). Some compounds formed with *box* are one word, some are two words. Many compound adjectives formed with *box* are hyphenated: boxcar, boxholder, box kite, boxlike, box lunch, box office (n.), box-office (adj.), box score, box seat, box spring (n.), box-spring (adj.), box supper, boxwood.

boxing. Classes are *heavyweight, middleweight* and *lightweight*, but *junior welterweight*. Spell out the number of rounds below 10 and use figures for the time within a round: *2:03 of the sixth round*. Also use figures for the knockdown count: *a count of 8*.

boy. Reserve it for references to the very young, in the same contexts where *girl* would be appropriate. Also see men and women.

boyfriend, girlfriend. While some traditionalists still view them as informal, these terms are now widely accepted for people of any age. *Companion* and *partner* are also acceptable. When possible, follow the preference of those involved. Also see lover.

Boy Scouts; *the Scouts; a scout*. The national organization is the *Boy Scouts of America*.

bra is preferred to *brassiere* in all references.

brackets may be used — sparingly — in verbatim texts and excerpts to explain an obscure name, expression or measurement, since the editor is not free to provide clues by altering the surrounding passages. For example: *The bomber crashed 40 kilometers [about 25 miles] from the Chinese border*. Or: *Then I went to see Barany [Attorney General Lauren A. Barany of New Hampshire]*. Note that the clarifying information about Barany has been concentrated in a single place — tidier than separate intrusions before and after the surname.

In a news article, such interruptions of a quotation divert attention to the editing process and should be a last resort. In their place, it is usually possible to use a partial quotation and paraphrase the cryptic term, or to adjust the surrounding phrasing for clarity: *"Then I went to see Barany," he said, a reference to Attorney General Lauren A. Barany of New Hampshire*.

The position of punctuation before or after brackets is the same as with parentheses.

Brahmin(s) for the priestly Hindu caste and for general references to aristocracy: *a Boston Brahmin*.

branded. In the sense of labeled, the word is used without *as*: *He branded the charge false* (not *as false*).

brand names may be used when they convey useful information or add color. If used, they should be capitalized. Also see trademark, service mark.

brand-new.

Brasília (the capital of Brazil).

Brazil nut.

breach, breech. A *breach* is a breaking or violation (*breach of promise; breach of the peace; a breach in a dike*). The overworked allusion to Shakespeare's "Henry V" is "Once more *unto* the breach" (not *into*). Also see more honored in the breach.

A *breech* is the lower or back part of something (*breechcloth, breeches buoy*). *Breeches* (colloquially, *britches*) are trousers that extend just below the knee. And a *breech birth* is a feet-first delivery.

bread(-). Compounds formed with *bread* can be one word, two words or, in the case of compound adjectives, hyphenated: bread and butter (n., in the sense of livelihood), bread-and-butter (adj.), breadbasket, breadboard, breadbox, bread crumbs, breadfruit, bread line, breadstick, breadwinner.

break(-). Compounds formed with *break* can be one word, two words or hyphenated: breakaway (adj.), break away (v.), breakdown (n.), break down (v.), break-even (adj.), break even (v.), breakin (adj. and n.), break in (v.), breakneck, breakoff (n.), break off (v.), breakout (n.), break out (v.), breakthrough (n.), break through (v.), breakup (n.), break up (v.), breakwater.

breaststroke.

bribe(-). Compounds formed with *bribe* are one word: bribegiver, bribegiving, bribetaker, bribetaking.

Brick Township (in New Jersey).

bridal, bridle. *Bridal* refers to brides and weddings. *Bridle* refers to a horse's harness and, figuratively, to various kinds of restraints and controls.

bride. Beware of expressions like *his bride*, which imply an unequal marriage partnership. And use *wife* after the wedding bells stop ringing. Better still, call both spouses by their names. Also see men and women and wife.

bridge. Capitalize *North, East, South, West*. Lowercase *spades, hearts, diamonds, clubs* and *no-trump*, which is both singular and plural: *one no-trump; three no-trump*.

Also lowercase names of cards and spell them out when they appear singly: *ace, king, queen, jack, ten, nine, eight, seven, six, five, four, three* (never *trey*), *two* (or *deuce*). Use initials and numerals hyphenated, for two or more cards in combination: *He led into South's A-9 combination* (not *ace-nine*). Use lowercase *x* as a symbol substituted for a numeral: *His holding in diamonds might have been K-x-x*.

Use numerals for all points above *one* in counting the value of a hand: *His hand was worth only 3 points; He had a 3-point hand; He had only one point*. Also use numerals for all match points or international match points except *one*. In scoring, use numerals for all points except a fraction that is not combined with a whole number: *370 points; 379½ points; 2½ points; one-half point; half a point*. The acronym *imp(s)* is acceptable in first and later references to international match points: *The Bildots team won the match by 67 imps*.

In giving the distribution or division of a bridge hand or suit, always use numerals with hyphens: *He had a 5-3-3-2 hand; They hoped the suit would be divided 3-1*.

In the bridge column, courtesy titles are not used before surnames in later references. But use them in news articles when bridge players are mentioned, except in passages where actual play is being reported.

Bridgeport, University of (in Connecticut).

Brig. *Lauren W. Karitsa* (in British or other foreign armed forces); *Brigadier Karitsa; the brigadier*.

Brig. Gen. *Lee P. Cordeiro; General Cordeiro; the general.*

bring, take. Use *bring* to mean movement toward the speaker or writer; *take* means movement away from the speaker or writer (in fact, any movement that is not toward the speaker or writer). So the Canadian prime minister cannot be *bringing* a group of industrialists to a conference in Detroit, except in an article written from Detroit. Since datelines do not govern headlines, *bring* in a Times headline usually refers to movement toward New York, or toward the United States.

Britain (not *Great Britain*). But when a locating word is required after the name of a city or a town (in a dateline or an article), use *England, Scotland, Wales* or *Northern Ireland*. Also see datelines.

British, Briton(s). The people of Britain; this group includes the English, the Scottish, the Welsh and in some general contexts the Northern Irish. Use the more specific terms when they apply. Generally avoid the colloquial *Brit(s)*.

British Columbia (Canadian province). Do not abbreviate after the names of cities and towns, even in datelines.

British Commonwealth is the former term for what is now the Commonwealth.

British titles are listed separately.

broadband (n. and adj.), for high-capacity communication links, especially those on the Internet.

broadsheet (n. and adj.), for a standard-size newspaper, but only in a clear publishing context.

broccoli rabe (not *raab* or *rape*).

brokerage. Use the word to mean a broker's line of work – that is, serving as an intermediary. But use *brokerage firm*, in full, to mean an organization in that business.

Bronx Community College (part of the City University of New York).

Bronx, the. The article, always lowercase, is part of the name except in mailing addresses, headlines, charts and maps.

Bronx-Whitestone Bridge. In a casual reference, *Whitestone Bridge* can stand alone.

Bronx Zoo. Use the informal name in virtually all references. In a detailed article, it may be useful to mention the official name, *the Bronx Zoo Wildlife Conservation Park*. It is operated on city property by the Wildlife Conservation Society.

Bronze Age.

Brookings Institution.

Brooklyn-Battery Tunnel. Though it was renamed the Hugh L. Carey Tunnel in 2012, the old name remains in popular use and is acceptable in all references. Mention both names when appropriate, especially when the tunnel figures more than casually in an article.

Brooklyn Botanic Garden. But: *the New York Botanical Garden* (in the Bronx).

Brooklyn College (part of the City University of New York).

Brooklyn Heights; *the Heights*. In first references, use no article before *Brooklyn*. In headlines: *Brooklyn Hts.*

Brooklyn Navy Yard. The former military installation is now a small-business development center.

Brooklyn Public Library. It is independent of the New York Public Library.

Brothers. Spell out *Brothers* (or *Brother*) in a company or similar name. Also: *Dana Karitsa & Brothers* (never *and*, in this construction). The abbreviation *Bros.* or *Bro.* may be used in a company name in a headline, table or chart. See company and corporation names.

brownstone. It is a house with a facade of brown sandstone. Not all townhouses or rowhouses are brownstones.

Bruges (in Belgium), rather than the Flemish name, *Brugge*.

Brünnhilde.

brush fire.

brussels sprouts.

B.S. for Bachelor of Science. Also: *a bachelor's degree*.

B.T.U. for British thermal unit. *A B.T.U.* is the amount of heat needed to increase the temperature of a pound of water by one degree Fahrenheit.

Budget Message. The president's and, if it is formally so called, a governor's or mayor's.

buffalo(es).

bug (electronic). A *bug* is a listening device concealed to pick up sounds in a room or other area. A *tap* is a device connected to a telephone to capture conversations from the line. Do not use quotation marks around either expression or its related verb forms.

building names. Capitalize the names of governmental buildings, churches, office buildings, hotels, specially designated rooms, etc.: *the Capitol* (state or national); *Criminal Courts Building; Empire State Building; First Presbyterian Church; Grand Central Terminal; Inter-Continental Hotel; Oak Room; Ohio State Penitentiary; etc.*

buildup (n. and adj.), **build up** (v.).

bulimia.

bullet. It is the projectile that leaves the barrel of a rifle, a handgun or a machine gun. The ammunition supplied for such a weapon, or loaded into it, is not a bullet but a *cartridge* (also known as a *round*). A cartridge consists of the bullet plus casing, an explosive charge (powder) and a primer, the small explosive that ignites the charge. The casing remains after the bullet has been fired. Also see shell.

bullpen.

bull's-eye (when the reference is not to the eye of a bull).

Bundestag (the German legislature). Except in unusually detailed references to the system or passages conveying local color, *Parliament* is a more accessible term for nonspecialized readers.

bungalow. A small one-story house, often with an attic.

Bunsen burner.

bureau. Capitalize in names of government or private agencies (*Bureau of Indian Affairs*), but not in references to news bureaus (*the Washington bureau of The New York Times*).

bureaucrat means a functionary, but usually also a faceless and rigid one. Use it with care, or use a neutral synonym.

burgeoning. The word's loose use, to mean booming or spreading, has gained acceptance (to the point of being a cliché). But careful writers and knowing readers still use it only to mean budding.

burglary. See larceny, burglary, robbery, theft and mugging.

Burkina Faso is the former Upper Volta. The capital is Ouagadougou.

Burma. See Myanmar.

Burmese (n. and adj., sing. and pl.). The people of Myanmar, formerly Burma. The country name may also be used as an adjective, but the more familiar *Burmese* aids comprehension. Refer to the language as *Burmese*.

Burmese names. When used in full on first reference, a Burmese name includes a courtesy title that is considered essential: *U* for a man, *Daw* for a married woman, *Mah* for an unmarried woman, *Maung* or *Ko* for a young man or a boy. Thus an article should normally refer to a Burmese man, on first reference, as *U;* for example, *U Soe Myint*. When possible, use a governmental or professional title instead (*President, Gen*. or *Dr*., for example) and drop the *U*. In a later reference, a Burmese man without such a title should be called *Mr*.: *Mr. Soe Myint. A* woman without a title should be *Ms*., *Mrs*. or *Miss* in later references. Burmese can have either one name (*U Nu; U Lwin*) or two (*U Kyaw Soe; Dr. Hla Han*); if two, use both names in later references: *Mr. Kyaw Soe; Dr. Hla Han*.

bus, bused, buses, busing (all v.) for transporting by bus. The expression *forced busing* is polemical; use *court-ordered busing*.

bushel. It is equal to four pecks or eight gallons. The United States bushel is equal to 35.24 liters; the British imperial bushel, 36.37 liters.

business directories and guides. Use their titles without quotation marks;

capitalize principal words.

businessman, businesswoman. But: *business owner; small-business man; small-business woman. Businesspeople* is acceptable, but not *businessperson;* in a general reference use a phrase like *business manager* or *business executive*. Also see compound words and men and women.

bust, for arrest, is slang, and usually out of place in news articles.

buyback (n. and adj.), **buy back** (v.).

buyout (n. and adj.), **buy out** (v.).

by(-). Except before a vowel, compounds formed with *by* are one word: by-election, bylaw, byline, bypass (n. and v.), bypath, byplay, byproduct, byroad, bystander, byway, byword.

bylines. In the news pages, bylines are centered, with the name in bold capitals:

By HILARY J. McMIEL

If two writers merit equal credit, use one of these styles:

By HILARY J. McMIEL
and LESLIE P. DANN Jr.

By HILARY J. McMIEL and LESLIE P. DANN Jr.

When more than two reporters share credit:

This article is by ***Lee Cordero, Hilary J. McMiel*** *and* ***Leslie P. Dann Jr***.

Also see credit lines; datelines; signatures.

byte. It is composed of a string of bits, or electrical pulses, usually eight to ten per byte. Also see bit; gigabyte; kilobyte; megabyte; terabyte.

byzantine. Capitalize in reference to the Byzantine Empire, the Eastern Orthodox Church or the architectural style of the Byzantine Empire. Lowercase in general references to deviousness or complexity.

C

cabala. See kabbalah.

cabdriver. Also: *cabby; cabbies*. But: *gypsy-cab driver*.

cabinet is lowercase, even for a national or state government: *the cabinet; President Miel's cabinet; a cabinet minister*.

cabinet titles, United States and foreign, are capitalized only when they precede names: *Secretary of Labor Terry J. Karitsa; Finance Minister Ashley C. Lamb; the secretary; the minister; a secretary; a minister; the secretaries; the ministers*. Also see titles.

caddie (golf), **caddy** (tea), **Caddy** (the car, colloquially).

Cadet *Dale P. Lamm; Cadet Lamm; the cadet* (for students at the Air Force and Coast Guard academies and West Point).

cafe. No accent except in a proper name or a foreign phrase.

Cairene(s) (the people of Cairo).

cairn terrier.

caliber measures the internal diameter of a firearm barrel. For rifles and pistols, the caliber is usually rendered in millimeters or hundredths of an inch. For naval guns and artillery, some calibers are stated in inches. Use figures in giving the calibers of weapons and ammunition: *.22 rifle* (or *.22-caliber rifle*); *7.2-inch gun; 11-inch cannon*. Most sporting rifles are between .22 and .458 caliber. Some common ones are .222 Remington, .243 Winchester, 7×57-millimeter Mauser, .30 Carbine, .30-30, .30-06, .308 Winchester, .35 Remington and .375 H&H Magnum. The most common calibers for military rifles are 5.56 millimeter (the M-16) and 7.62 millimeter (the AK-47 and the M-14).

Some common handgun calibers are .22, .22 Magnum, .25, .32 Colt, .32 Special, 9 millimeter, .357 Magnum, .38 Special, .40 Smith & Wesson, .44 Magnum and .45 Colt. *Millimeter* may be abbreviated (as mm) in headlines, tables and charts. Also see bullet; cartridge; handguns; Magnum; rifles; shell; shotguns.

California. Abbreviate as *Calif.* after the names of cities, towns and counties.

Caltech in later references to the California Institute of Technology.

Cambodia, Cambodian(s). The language may also be called *Khmer*, and the predominant ethnic group is Khmer.

Cambodian names. Cambodians' names assume a variety of forms. If it is known without doubt that part of a name is a surname, or is used alone by Cambodians, that part may stand alone in later references: *Prince Norodom Ranariddh; Prince Ranariddh*. In a headline: *Ranariddh*. In most cases, though, for consistency and certainty, repeat full names: *Sam Rainsy; Mr. Sam Rainsy*. Or *Gen. Ke Kim Yan*, with the title abbreviated in all references because the name is unchanged. (But if his title were, say, *Maj. Gen*., it could later be shortened to *General*, spelled out.)

Cameroon (not *Cameroons* or *Cameroun*).

camp(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *camp* are one word: camp chair, campfire, campground, campsite, campstool.

Camp David (the presidential retreat near Thurmont, Md.).

Canada. Use province or territory names (spelled out) instead of the country name after the names of cities and towns, but only if a locater is necessary. (Often it is unnecessary; see state abbreviations.) When the names of provinces or territories stand alone in articles, *Canada* is often unneeded.

Canada goose (not *Canadian* goose).

Canadian provinces and territories are listed separately. Do not abbreviate their names after the names of cities and towns, even in datelines.

canal. Lowercase in later references to the *Panama Canal*, the *Suez Canal* and others.

Canal Zone, in historical references to the strip of land on both sides of the Panama Canal when it was controlled by the United States.

Canard Enchaîné, Le (the French weekly newspaper of satire and investigative reports).

cancel, canceled, canceling, cancellation.

Cancún (in Mexico).

candelabrum (sing.), **candelabra** (pl.).

candle(-). Compounds formed with *candle* are one word: candleholder, candlelight, candlepower, candlestick.

canine. Use the word as an adjective meaning *of dogs*. Used as a noun meaning *dog*, for the sake of variation, it is trite.

cannon, canon. A *cannon* is a piece of artillery, or a gun mounted on a plane; the plural is *cannons.* A *canon* is a body of literature or church laws, an Episcopal clergy member or a basic principle.

Canon *Hilary V. Lamm; Canon Lamm; the canon.* A *canon* is an Episcopal clergy member connected with a cathedral or assigned to a bishop.

Cantabrigian(s). The people of Cambridge, England, or students and graduates of the University of Cambridge. But phrases using *of Cambridge* are usually less stodgy.

cantaloupe.

Canterbury, archbishop of. *The Most Rev. Morgan C. Barany, archbishop of Canterbury; Archbishop Barany; the archbishop of Canterbury; the archbishop*. Also see Most Rev., Rt. Rev.

canto(s).

Canton (in China) is now known as *Guangzhou*. See Chinese names.

canvas (cloth), **canvass** (to survey, poll or solicit).

capability. *Ability* and *capacity* are shorter, less stilted and almost always preferred.

Cape Canaveral (in Florida) is the home of the *John F. Kennedy Space Center*. The related installation at Houston is the *Lyndon B. Johnson Space Center*.

Cape Town (in South Africa).

Cap Haitien.

capital (city), **capitol** (building). Always lowercase *capital* (meaning principal city). Capitalize *Capitol*, meaning a specific national or state building. Lowercase general and plural references to such buildings: *the country needed a capitol; three state capitols won architecture awards*. Also: *Capitol Hill*.

capitalization. Styles for capitalization are given in separate listings. A word, phrase or abbreviation listed without discussion should normally be capitalized or lowercased as shown.

In cap-and-lowercase headlines, capitalize all nouns, pronouns and verbs, and all other words of four or more letters. Handle shorter words as follows:

Headline Capitalization

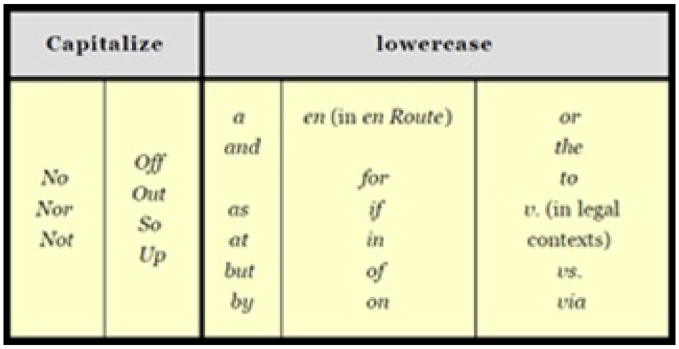

Capitalize		lowercase		
No *Nor* *Not*	*Off* *Out* *So* *Up*	*a* *and* *as* *at* *but* *by*	*en* (in *en Route*) *for* *if* *in* *of* *on*	*or* *the* *to* *v.* (in legal contexts) *vs.* *via*

Handle infinitives this way: *to Be; to Do; to Go*.

In print, uppercase the first word of any line in a main headline, or in a bank inside the paper. V-shaped banks (inverted pyramids) on Page A1 are different: Treat them as if they were one continuous line, so the first word of the second or third line should be lowercased if it is in the lowercase list above. Uppercase any word directly after a dash in a bank. Uppercase any word directly after a colon in a headline. And always uppercase the last word of a headline or a bank.

Some of the “little” headline prepositions occasionally turn into adverbs, modifying the preceding word; in those situations, they are capitalized: *Mayor Drops In; Meeting Drones On*. Sometimes even as a preposition, such a word will attach to the preceding verb, and should be uppercased: *Cared For by His Mother; Attended To in an Emergency Room*. But idioms like *Call on, Call for* and *Wait on*, when followed by objects, do not fall into that category, and the prepositions remain lowercase: *Mayor Calls on President to Yield; Senator Calls for Decision*. A few expressions can occur in both forms: *They Waited on Tables* but *Customers Were Waited On in Turn*.

When the preposition *for* takes the place of a verb meaning *supports* or *advocates*, capitalize it: *Mayor For Health Insurance Plan*.

In general, capitalize both parts of a hyphenated compound in a headline: *Cease-Fire; Able-Bodied; Sit-In; Make-Believe; One-Fifth*. When a hyphen is used with a prefix of two or three letters merely to separate doubled vowels or to clarify pronunciation, lowercase after the hyphen: *Co-op; Re-entry; Pre-empt*. But: *Re-Sign; Co-Author*. With a prefix of four letters or more, capitalize after the hyphen: *Anti-Intellectual; Post-Mortem*. In sums of money: *$7 Million; $34 Billion*.

For the treatment of large decorative letters that begin articles, see initial letters.

Capt. *Hilary P. Daan; Captain Daan; the captain*. This applies to military, maritime, fire and police captains.

captions. A caption should normally explain what readers cannot see for themselves in the picture (*President Karitsa appealing for the education bill at a teachers’ conference in Washington on Wednesday*) and should omit the obvious (*licking an ice cream cone* or *shaking hands*). Captions about fresh news may be written in the present tense (*Firefighters carry an injured crew member from the wreckage of the cargo plane*). But if the caption includes a past time element, the verb must change to a participle (*carrying*) or to the past tense (*carried an injured crew member on Wednesday*). A caption recalling history or old news can use only the participle form or the past tense.

If space requires the omission of “little words” like *a* or *the*, drop the leftmost ones first (*After third inning, the Yankees changed pitchers*). Once the reader’s mental ear has heard *the* or *a*, it strains to hear all such words, and senses awkwardness if they are missing. Similarly, a caption may begin with a sentence fragment (*Spectators at the Capitol on Wednesday*). But once a complete sentence has appeared, the ear demands full sentences until the end.

Because captions may be read hastily and punctuation overlooked, caption writers should avoid parenthetical clauses that flash backward and forward in time: *Secretary Yagyonak, who was killed in the crash, boarding the aircraft on Wednesday*. Instead follow the sequence, first to last: *Secretary Yagyonak boarding the aircraft on Wednesday before his death in the crash*.

The same guidelines apply to online slide shows. But slide show captions should go beyond mere description to tell a story. If the slide show accompanies an article, the caption writer may incorporate elements of the article into the captions, adapting as needed to create a smooth narrative.

Caraqueño(s) (the people of Caracas).

carat. The unit of weight used for gemstones. It equals about 200 milligrams. Not to be confused with a *karat*, the measure of the fineness of gold. Pure gold is 24 karats. And a *caret* was a mark (^) used by writers and editors in the days before cursors.

cardinal (Roman Catholic). *Cardinal Dale T. Cordeiro; Cardinal Cordeiro; the cardinal*. Use a given name on first reference, even for the cardinal who is archbishop of New York. Church authorities no longer place *Cardinal* between given name and surname. Capitalize in the official name of a group: *the College of Cardinals*.

CARE may be used in all references to the Cooperative for Assistance and Relief Everywhere. Reserve the full name for articles dealing with the agency in detail.

care(-). Most compounds formed with *care* are one word: carefree, caretaker, careworn.

career. Through headline compression, the phrase *of his career* has mutated into *her* *sixth career victory* and *his second career knockout*. Invest two short words in the more graceful *sixth victory of her career*, *etc.*

cargo(es).

Caribbean can stand alone to mean the sea. It can also refer to the area and its people. See West Indian.

carmaker.

Carnegie Institute (in Pittsburgh), **Carnegie Institution** (in Washington).

Carolina. *N. Carolina* and *S. Carolina* may be used in headlines when necessary (and more readily in the sports pages) to avoid the ambiguity of *Carolina* alone.

carousel.

car pool (n. and adj.), **car-pool** (v.), **car-pooling** (n. and v.).

Cartier (not *Cartier's*) is the jeweler.

cartridge. It is the ammunition for a rifle, a handgun or a machine gun. The cartridge (also called a *round*) includes the bullet, the projectile that leaves the barrel when the weapon is fired. The other components are the explosive charge (powder), the primer (a small explosive that ignites the charge) and the casing, which remains after the bullet has been fired. *Magnum* is the term for a cartridge that has more striking power than others of the same size. Also see caliber and shell.

case(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *case* are one word: casebook, case history, case law, caseload, casework, caseworker.

casket. Use *coffin* instead.

cast(-). Some compounds formed with *cast* are one word, some are two and a few are hyphenated: castaway (n.), cast iron (n.), cast-iron (adj.), castoff (n. and adj.).

caster (a furniture wheel), **castor** (an oil-producing bean).

catalog, cataloged, cataloging.

catchment area is jargon for the district served by a social service or health agency. Except in direct quotations, use a conversational term like *district* or *service area*.

cater-corner, cater-cornered (not *catty-corner*).

Cathedral Church of St. John the Divine.

Catholic does not necessarily mean Roman Catholic. If there is room for doubt, use *Roman Catholic* in repeated references.

Catskill Mountains; *the Catskills*. But as an adjective: *Catskill* (without the s). And the town is *Catskill*, N.Y.

cause célèbre.

cave-in (n.).

CB radio for citizens' band radio.

CBS. The parent company is *the CBS Corporation* (it is no longer part of Viacom Inc.; the two companies merged in 1999 but split again in 2005). The network division is *CBS Television*, which includes *CBS Entertainment, CBS News* and *CBS Sports*. Other major divisions include *CBS Radio* and the *CBS Television Stations Group*, the local stations owned by the company. The major division names, as well as *CBS* alone, may be used in first references. (Do not attribute a *CBS News* production to *CBS-TV*.) *CBS*, standing alone, may be best when several networks are mentioned together: *ABC, CBS, CNN and NBC will televise the news conference*.

CD for compact disc, the audio recording medium. Because music is published in many formats, do not use *CD* as a synonym for *album, release* or *recording*. Also: *C.D.* for certificate of deposit, provided the context is clear.

C.D.C. for the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. As an abbreviation, treat it as a singular; otherwise, the name is plural. In later references, a more conversational substitute like *the agency* may be preferable.

CD-ROM for compact disc read-only memory, the computer storage medium.

C.D.T., C.S.T. for Central Daylight Time and Central Standard Time. See time.

cease-fire (n. and adj.).

cedilla. See accent marks.

celebrant, celebrator. In careful usage, a *celebrant* officiates at a religious rite, typically a Mass. A merrymaker is a *celebrator*.

cellphone, when necessary, to distinguish from a landline.

Celsius, centigrade. The temperature scale used in the metric system. In it, zero represents the freezing point of water, and 100 degrees is the boiling point at sea level. To convert to Fahrenheit, multiply by 9, divide by 5 and add 32. The preferred term is *Celsius*, for the name of the system's inventor, a Swede; *centigrade* (lowercased) is used less often. The abbreviation for either name is C, so a temperature in this scale is written *20° C* (without a period). Also see Fahrenheit; Kelvin; temperatures.

cement. Use *concrete* instead to mean the material that forms blocks, walls and roads. One ingredient is *cement*, the binding agent that is mixed with water, sand and gravel.

census. Lowercase except in specific references to the United States Census Bureau: *the 2010 census; census tracts; a Census Bureau geographer*.

Centenary College (in Hackettstown, N.J.).

center (v.). Do not write *center around* because the verb means gather at a point. Logic calls for *center on, center in* or *revolve around*.

center(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *center* are one word: centerboard, center field, centerfold, centerpiece.

Centereach (in Suffolk County, N.Y.).

Centerport (in Suffolk County, N.Y.).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Though the former *Centers for*

Disease Control (note the plural *Centers*) has changed its name, it still uses the abbreviation *C.D.C.*

centigrade. See Celsius, centigrade.

Central African Republic. Its capital is Bangui.

Central Conference of American Rabbis (a Reform group).

Central Daylight Time, Central Standard Time (C.D.T., C.S.T.). See time.

Central Intelligence Agency (C.I.A.); *the agency*. It is headed by *the director of the Central Intelligence Agency* (formerly the director of central intelligence). Also see agent.

Central Park Zoo. Use the informal name in virtually all references. In a detailed article, it may be useful to mention the official name, *the Central Park Wildlife Center*. It is operated on city property by the Wildlife Conservation Society.

Centre Street (in Manhattan).

cents. See dollars and cents.

centuries. Lowercase and spell out through the ninth: *the eighth century, the 12th century*. Hyphenate the adjectival form: *18th-century poet*. Also, in almost all contexts, *the 1700s*, not *seventeen-hundreds;* and *mid-ninth century, mid-16th century, mid-1890s*. Understandings differ on when a century begins and ends; see years, decades, centuries.

cesarean section, C-section.

chador. The traditional shawl or cloak of Muslim women. The plural is *chadors*. Other Muslim garments include the *hijab*, a head scarf that does not cover the face (in general, *head scarf*, two words, will suffice); the *niqab*, a head scarf that covers the face and leaves an opening for the eyes; the *abaya*, a robelike garment that covers the whole body except the head, face, feet and hands; and the *burqa*, which covers the entire body except for a semitransparent panel over the eyes.

chair. As a noun, it can mean an endowed professorship (*the Anyell Chair in*

Philosophy) or a position in an orchestra (*first-chair players*). Do not use it to mean *chairman* or *chairwoman*. Avoid it as a verb meaning *lead a committee;* try *lead, head* or *preside over* instead. Similarly, avoid *co-chair* (n. and v.).

chairman, chairwoman. Also: *board chairwoman* and *chairman of the board*, although *board* is usually redundant with these titles; make it *chairwoman of the XYZ Company*. Do not use *chairlady* or *chairperson*. Also see chair and men and women.

chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff. Lowercase *chairman*, and use a comma to separate the expression from a name: *the chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, Gen*. (or *Adm*.) *Alex L. Barany; Gen*. (or *Adm*.) *Alex L. Barany, chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff; General* (or *Admiral*) *Barany; the chairman*. In later references, *the Joint Chiefs* and *the chiefs*.

chaise longue (not *lounge*).

challenged. Do not use this euphemism for disabilities (*he is hearing-challenged*). Write instead that *he cannot hear* or that *she is partly blind*. Also see afflicted; blind; cripple, crippled; deformed; handicapped; impaired; victim.

Chamber of Deputies; *the Chamber*.

Champagne, champagne. See wines and spirits.

Champs-Élysées.

chancellor. For the head of a government, a governmental agency or a school system, make it *Chancellor Lee P. Milori; Chancellor Milori; the chancellor; Mr*. (or *Miss, Mrs., Ms*. or *Dr*.) *Milori*. In New York City the title is *schools chancellor*, also capitalized when it precedes the name. For nongovernmental chancellors (in universities, for example), lowercase, and separate the title from the name with a comma.

channels (television). Make it *Channel 2; Channel 13; etc.* Also: *WCBS-TV; WNET; etc.* For consistency in the news columns, avoid individual variations like *Thirteen/WNET*.

chaperone (not *chaperon*). Also *chaperoned; chaperoning*.

chapter numbers. Capitalize them as proper names: *Chapter 16; Chapter 2*. In tables and charts, abbreviations may be used: *Ch. 16; Ch. 2*. See numbered expressions.

characters (in books, plays, etc.). Use no quotation marks: *He played Hotspur*.

charge. Use the preposition *with*. (But after *accuse*, use *of*.) In an account of an arrest or a criminal proceeding, *charge* ideally means the formal allegation submitted to a court by a prosecutor or (in the case of an indictment for a serious crime) by a grand jury. At a minimum, *charge* may refer to the official allegation lodged by the police at the time of booking. But the informal, usually imprecise account given at the scene of a crime is not a charge. Thus: *The police accused Mr. Kuzu of having thrown a brick through the supermarket window and having threatened the manager with a pistol*.

chargé(s) d'affaires.

Charleston, Charles Town, Charlestown. *Charleston* is West Virginia's capital (in Kanawha County) and a South Carolina seaport. *Charles Town* is the seat of Jefferson County, W.Va. *Charlestown* is part of Boston.

charter. Capitalize when using the word with a specific city's name: *the Los Angeles City Charter; the city charter; the charter; a charter*. An exception: When the reference is to New York City's, uppercase *City Charter* standing alone. Also see United Nations Charter.

Chase Bank is a division of JPMorgan Chase & Company. *Chase* remains a brand name for many of the company's retail services (Manhattan is no longer part of the name). *J. P. Morgan* is the name for its wholesale businesses.

chassis (sing. and pl.).

chateau(s). But in a French name or phrase: *Château Lafite Rothschild; the Rue des Châteaux*.

Château-Thierry (the World War I battle site in France).

Chechnya. Its people are *Chechens*.

cheese(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *cheese* are one word:

cheeseburger, cheesecake, cheesecloth, cheese spread.

chef-owner is restaurant industry jargon. Make it *chef and owner*.

chemical elements and formulas. Do not capitalize the name of an element, even when using its mass number: *carbon 14; strontium 90; uranium 235*. Chemical formulas are set this way: H_2O; CO_2.

Chennai, formerly Madras. Gracefully remind readers of the former name of the Indian city when necessary.

chess. Algebraic notation is used to report game scores and to describe moves in articles and columns. The abbreviations are *K* (king), *Q* (queen), *R* (rook), *B* (bishop) and *N* (knight). The pawn is not designated by name in algebraic notation: *14 Nb3*, *29 Qd7;* but *1 e4*, *29 gh*.

The names of the pieces are spelled out, lowercase, in general references: *The queen was trapped; Lamm freed his bishop on his 23rd move*.

Openings and major variations are capitalized: *King's Indian Defense; Dragon Variation; Exchange Variation of the Ruy Lopez*. Black and White are capitalized as nouns but not as adjectives: *With 8 e4*, *White seized the initiative*. But: *The white pieces were cramped*. The words *kingside* and *queenside* are lowercased as nouns or adjectives.

In articles and columns, black and white moves are not separated by punctuation: *5 c3 c5 6 Bc4 Nd7.* A black move standing alone or at the start of a sequence is preceded by an ellipsis: *3 ... c7*.

Punctuation marks connoting criticism — like *!*, *?* or *!?* — are permissible in analyses but not in game scores. In game scores, *check* and *en passant* are omitted. *Mate* is lowercase and not separated from the move: *42 Qg8mate*.

The slash mark is used to denote pawn promotion: *44 e8/Q*. If more than one piece of the same type can move to a square, the rank number or file letter of the origination square is added: *41 R1d4*, *27 ... Nec6*.

Chevron Corporation.

Chicano (n. and adj.) refers to Mexican-Americans and their culture, but only some prefer the term, chiefly in the Southwest, while others object to it. Apply it with care, only to those who choose it. The feminine noun is *Chicana*. Also see ethnicity; Hispanic; Latino; Puerto Rico, Puerto Rican.

chickenpox.

Chief *Merrill H. Arniotis* (for police and fire ranks); *Chief Arniotis; the chief.*

chief delegate (diplomatic). Lowercase and use the preposition *to*: *Lynn B. Agneau, chief United States delegate to the Conference on the Law of the Sea; Ms. Agneau; the chief delegate*. Confine *delegate* and *chief delegate* to members of temporary or provisional delegations, like those at the annual General Assembly of the United Nations. For permanent bodies, use chief representative, representative and, when appropriate, ambassador.

chief executive officer can usually be trimmed to *chief executive*. Informally the abbreviation is nonetheless *C.E.O.*

Chief Judge *Robin T. Anyell* (of the Court of Appeals in New York State, and of the state itself); *Judge Anyell; the chief judge*.

Chief Justice *Dana L. Milori; Chief Justice Milori; the chief justice*. It is *chief justice of the United States*, not *of the Supreme Court*.

chief master sergeant of the Air Force. Lowercase the full title and use a comma to separate it from the name, without abbreviation: *Lindsay E. Bildots, the chief master sergeant of the Air Force; Sergeant Bildots; the sergeant*. The title is held by only one person at a time, the highest-ranking enlisted member of the Air Force. It ordinarily requires explanation.

chief of staff. Lowercase, and use a comma to separate the title from the name: *Gen. Chris R. Lam, chief of staff; the chief of staff; the White House chief of staff, Pat L. Kuzu*.

Chief Petty Officer *Lindsay T. Milori; Chief Milori; the chief petty officer*.

Chief Rabbi *Hilary I. Bildots of Britain* (or any country where the title is used); *Hilary Bildots, chief rabbi of Britain; the chief rabbi; Rabbi Bildots; the rabbi*. In Israel, Sephardic and Ashkenazic Jews have separate chief rabbis. Follow the same styles for *grand rabbi* in countries where that title is used.

chief representative (diplomatic). Lowercase and use the preposition *at*: *Merrill T. Lamb, chief United States representative at the World Health Organization; Dr. Lamb; the chief representative*. Confine *representative* and *chief representative* to assignments to permanent bodies, like the United Nations. (But do not ordinarily use *permanent representative*, a diplomatic jargon term that overstates the tenure.) For temporary or periodic meetings, use chief delegate, delegate and, when appropriate, ambassador.

Chief Warrant Officer *Chris A. Arniotis; Mr. Arniotis; the chief warrant officer*.

chile(s) for a pepper or peppers (*chile pepper* is redundant). But the hearty and usually meaty dish flavored with chiles is *chili con carne*, or simply *chili*.

China. Standing alone, it means the mainland nation. Use the formal name, *the People's Republic of China*, in texts and direct quotations only. Also see Communist China and Taiwan.

Chinese (n., sing. and pl.; also adj.). The people are always *Chinese;* never use the disparaging *Chinamen* or *Chinaman*, except in an inescapable direct quotation.

Chinese names. A personal name ordinarily consists of the family name followed by a given name (*Zhu Rongji*, for example; in later references, *Mr. Zhu* or *Prime Minister Zhu*).

English spellings of mainland Chinese words and names are governed by the official system known as Pinyin (the term means "transcription"). Many of the Roman letters approximate their accustomed English sounds. The exceptions most jarring to non-Chinese-speaking readers are *q* (which sounds like *ch*, as in cheek) and *x* (which sounds like *sy, so* that the province name *Xinjiang* is pronounced *syinjyang*). When either letter occurs in a name newly prominent in the news, supply the pronunciation. (See pronunciation keys.)

Women do not ordinarily take their husbands' names. The usual title with a woman's surname is *Ms*., unless she has a professional, military or specialized title.

When an English "conventional form" is recognized for a Chinese place name, use it: *Hong Kong, Inner Mongolia, Tibet* and *Yangtze River*, for example. (See geographic names.)

For names in Hong Kong and in areas outside Beijing's influence (notably in Taiwan), non-Pinyin preferences should be followed. A usual style is based on the older system known as *Wade-Giles* (with its apostrophes omitted): *Tung Chee-hwa; Chiang Pin-kung*.

Some Chinese, most often in Hong Kong, in Taiwan or overseas, westernize their names: *Martin Lee; Elsie Leung*.

Names of historic figures keep traditional spellings: *Confucius; Sun Yat-sen* (but this group does not include *Mao Zedong* or *Zhou Enlai*). Also use familiar spellings for menu items like *General Tso's chicken*. And when reporting on an art exhibition, follow the style used in the catalog. Also see dynasties.

chip (not *microchip*).

chitchat.

chock-full.

choice is a partisan term in the context of abortions. See abortion.

chord (music and mathematics), **cord** (vocal, spinal and electrical).

chow chow (a dog), **chowchow** (pickled vegetables).

Christ. See Jesus.

Christian Church (Disciples of Christ). The parenthetical phrase is part of the official name that must be used in a first reference. In later references: *the Disciples*. The Churches of Christ and the United Church of Christ are separate denominations.

Christian Era.

Christian Methodist Episcopal Church. In later references: *C.M.E.*

Christian Science. The denomination is formally *the Church of Christ, Scientist*.

Members belong to branch churches (for example, *the Fourth Church of Christ, Scientist*) and may also hold membership in the *First Church of Christ, Scientist*, which is in Boston and is known as the Mother Church.

Do not use *the Rev.*; the church has no clergy. Members are elected for designated terms to fill the posts of *first reader* and *second reader* in local congregations and the Mother Church. There is also a president of the denomination. The church supports *lecturers*, who speak about Christian Science throughout the world.

Christmas. Also *Christmas Day*. Never abbreviate to *Xmas* or any other form.

church. Capitalize the word in the name of an institution (*the Roman Catholic Church; the Episcopal Church*) or a building or congregation (*the First Presbyterian Church; the Church of SS. Peter and Paul*). But: *a Roman Catholic church; an Episcopal church*. In all later references, to building or organization: *the church*.

church and state. Do not capitalize when used in this sense: *conflict between church and state; church-state issue*.

churches and other religious organizations are listed separately.

Churches of Christ. This Protestant denomination broke away from the Christian Church (Disciples of Christ) early in the 20th century.

Church of Christ, Scientist. See Christian Science.

Church of England. This episcopal church is the established church of England, automatically headed by the country's reigning monarch. Its primate is the archbishop of Canterbury. *The Anglican Church* may be used in first references. In later ones, *the church* is usually enough. Also see Anglican Communion; Canterbury, archbishop of; Episcopal.

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. In first and later references it may be called by its less formal name, *the Mormon Church,* so long as the full title appears at least once in any major article about it. See Mormon Church.

Church of the Brethren.

Church of the Holy Sepulcher (in Jerusalem).

chute, chutist. They may be used in headlines for *parachute* and *parachutist*.

C.I.A. for the Central Intelligence Agency. It is headed by *the director of the Central Intelligence Agency* (formerly the director of central intelligence). Also see agent.

cigarette.

Cincinnati.

cineaste for a film enthusiast.

cinéma vérité for realistic documentary techniques in film.

Cineplex is a trademark. The generic term for a multiscreen theater is *multiplex*.

circumflex. See accent marks.

city. Capitalize when the word is an integral part of an official name or of a regularly used nickname: *New York City; the City of New York* (the corporate name in legal matters); *Kansas City; Mexico City* (not the official *Mexico, D.F.*); *Windy City; City of Light*. Also capitalize when *City* is appended to a place name to avoid ambiguity: *Panama City*, for example. (In an unambiguous context, use *Panama* alone as the city or country name.)

Lowercase *city* in all first and later references like these: *the city; city government*. In forms like *city of Boston*, lowercase except in the rare legal contexts calling for a corporate name: *The chief defendant was the City of Boston*. When the word stands alone, lowercase even in that situation: *The city sued the state*. If there is a possibility of confusion between city and state, use *New York City* or *New York State*. When necessary in context, capitalize *City* (or *State*) with the name of an agency or with an official title (*the City Planning Commission; City Comptroller Terry N. Cordero*).

In a headline, do not use *City* standing alone to mean New York, except with an overline or section heading that makes the location clear.

City Bar Association should be used in virtually all references for the Association of the Bar of the City of New York.

City Charter (New York City's); *the charter*. Also see charter.

City College (in New York). It is a four-year college of the City University of New York. Its nickname, *C.C.N.Y.*, though unofficial, may be used for special effect.

City Council; *the Columbia City Council; the Council*. In references to New York City, *the City Council* can stand alone.

city names. For guidance on appending state abbreviations, see datelines and state abbreviations.

City of London for the financial district. In later references, when the context is clear, *the City*.

City University of New York. It consists of two-year and four-year colleges and graduate and professional programs. Individual institutions or campuses like City College are units of the City University. *CUNY* is acceptable in later references and in headlines. The system's website provides information about the City University and its campuses.

Also see State University of New York and University of the State of New York.

citywide.

Civil Service. But: *civil servant*.

Civil War, for the one in the United States (1861-65). Use *the War Between the States* in direct quotations or texts only. Also: *the Spanish Civil War* (and others); *the civil war*.

(-)clad. Most but not all compounds formed with *clad* are hyphenated: copper-clad, half-clad, ironclad, snow-clad, steel-clad.

claim is not a neutral synonym for *say*. It means assert a right or contend something that may be open to question.

Clarkson College (in Omaha), **Clarkson University** (in Potsdam, N.Y.).

class(-). Some compounds formed with *class* are hyphenated, some are one word and some are two: class-action (adj.), class action (n.), class book, class day, classmate, classroom.

Also: *class of 1993* (or *’93*).

Class A, Class B. Capitalize such designations (of stocks, for example) as proper nouns. Also see numbered expressions.

classical (architecture). Capitalize when referring generally to Greek and Roman architecture. For more recent buildings that are classical in spirit, it is best to use more specific descriptions: *a building with arches and pediments in the classical style*. Also see arts terminology and neo-Classical.

classical, classicism (music). Capitalize *Classical* and *Classicism* when referring to the style of music centered in Vienna roughly from 1770 to 1840, notably the works of Haydn, Mozart and Beethoven. The lowercased terms refer less specifically to music of the European tradition. See arts terminology.

clean(-). Some compounds formed with *clean* are one word and some are hyphenated: clean-cut, cleanshaven, cleanup (n.).

clear(-). Some compounds formed with *clear* are one word and some are hyphenated: clear-cut, cleareyed, clearheaded, clear-minded, clearsighted.

clemency, amnesty, pardon. *Clemency* is leniency or mercy shown by someone in power. An *amnesty* is a general pardon, usually for political offenses, granted to a group. A *pardon* is a release from punishment or forgiveness of an offense, granted to an individual.

clergy. Like *army*, the noun is collective, referring not to individuals but to the group. For individuals, use *clergymen, clergywomen, clergy members* or *members of the clergy*. References to *three clergy* or *many clergy*, or to *training clergy*, are jargon.

clerical titles are listed separately.

cliché. Also (adj.): *clichéd*.

climactic (relating to a climax), **climatic** (relating to the climate).

climax. Use it as a noun. As a verb (*The program climaxed with fireworks*), it is journalese.

clock time. See time.

clockwise, counterclockwise.

close-up (n., adj.). But the adverb is two words: *Seen close up, the mountain is purple*.

closing, closure, cloture. In references to shutdowns (of airports, businesses, streets, etc.), use *closing(s)* rather than the stilted *closure(s)*. And use *cloture* (not *closure*) for the parliamentary procedure that cuts off debate in the United States Senate.

club(-). Some compounds formed with *club* are one word and some are two words: club car, club chair, clubhouse, clubman, club owner, clubroom, club sandwich, club soda, clubwoman.

club officers. Do not capitalize their titles.

clumber spaniel.

Cmdr. *Alex J. Miel; Commander Miel; the commander*.

CNN for Cable News Network.

co(-). Some compounds formed with *co* are one word and some are hyphenated: co-author (n. only), co-chairman, co-chairwoman, co-defendant, coed, coeducation, coequal, coexist, coexistence, cohabitation, commingle, co-op, cooperate, cooperation, cooperative (n. and adj.), coordinate, coordination, co-maker, co-owner, co-pilot, co-signer, co-star, co-worker.

Most verbs coined with *co-* (like *co-author* and *co-write*) sound contrived and should be avoided (with a phrase, for example, like *Ms. Karitsa wrote the book with Mr. Dann*). But *co-produce* and *co-sign* are acceptable.

Co. for Company, but only after a name in a headline, a table or a chart. See company and corporation names.

coalition. A *coalition* is a group of groups, often joined together for a limited purpose despite differing interests. Use caution in accepting the claim of an advocacy group that it is a true coalition, with broad support. If that is not established, resist the term.

coast. Lowercase when referring to an actual shoreline: *Atlantic coast; Pacific coast; east coast; west coast; etc.* Capitalize when referring to specific regions of the United States: *Atlantic Coast; Pacific Coast; Gulf Coast; West Coast; East Coast*. Do not capitalize in references to more local areas: *the New Jersey coast* (but: *the Jersey Shore*). Do not use *the Coast* (or *on Coast*) to mean the West Coast.

Coast Guard Academy for the United States Coast Guard Academy in New London, Conn.

Coast Guard, Coast Guardsman. Avoid incongruity by using substitute terms for women who are members: *Coast Guard members; Coast Guard women;* or *Coast Guard men and women*.

Coast Guard ranks, in descending order, and their abbreviations:

COMMISSIONED OFFICERS

Adm. *Lynn L. Karitsa; Admiral Karitsa; the admiral*. (An admiral wears four stars.)
Vice Adm. *Alex M. Barany; Admiral Barany; the admiral*. (A vice admiral wears three stars.)
Rear Adm. *Dale A. Agnello; Admiral Agnello; the admiral*. (A rear admiral may wear one or two stars.)
Capt. *Hilary C. Daan; Captain Daan; the captain*.
Cmdr. *Lauren P. Miel; Commander Miel; the commander*.
Lt. Cmdr. *Morgan A. Bildots; Commander Bildots; the commander*.
Lt. *Lee T. Kikondoo; Lieutenant Kikondoo; the lieutenant*.
Lt. j.g. *Stacy R. Milori; Lieutenant Milori; the lieutenant*
Ensign *Chris L. Arniotis; Ensign Arniotis; the ensign*.

WARRANT OFFICERS

Chief Warrant Officer *Leslie C. Anyell; Mr.* (or *Ms., Miss* or *Mrs.*) *Anyell; the chief warrant officer*.
Warrant Officer *Terry M. Daan; Mr.* (or *Ms., Miss* or *Mrs.*) *Daan; the warrant officer*.

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS
(Enlisted supervisors.)

master chief petty officer of the Coast Guard. Do not use this title before a name, and do not abbreviate or capitalize it. Make it *Theo H. Lam, the master chief petty officer of the Coast Guard*. Then explain that it is the highest enlisted rank in the service. In later references: *Master Chief Lam*.
Master Chief Petty Officer *Hilary R. Baranek; Master Chief Baranek; the master chief.*
Senior Chief Petty Officer *Lauren S. Cordeiro; Chief Cordeiro; the chief.*
Chief Petty Officer *Lindsay T. Milori; Chief Milori; the chief.*
Petty Officer First Class *Merrill M. Yagyonak; Petty Officer Yagyonak; the petty officer.*
Petty Officer Second Class *Tracy A. Karitsa; Petty Officer Karitsa; the petty officer.*
Petty Officer Third Class *Dale H. Miel; Petty Officer Miel; the petty officer.*

OTHER ENLISTED PERSONNEL

Seaman *Lindsay D. Daan; Seaman Daan; the seaman* (male or female).
Seaman Apprentice *Alex H. Kuzu; Seaman Kuzu; the seaman* (male or female).
Seaman Recruit *Chris R. Lam; Seaman Lam; the seaman* (male or female).

Also see retired.

Cobleskill (with only one *b*) is in Schoharie County, N.Y.

coca, coco, cocoa, coconut. *Coca* is the tropical plant that yields cocaine. *Coco* is a palm tree, and its fruit is a *coconut*. The chocolate drink is *cocoa*, made from *cacao* beans.

Coca-Cola, Coke are trademarks.

co-chair. Use *co-chairman* or *co-chairwoman* instead. For a general reference, try *co-leader*.

c.o.d. for cash on delivery or collect on delivery.

code of conduct. The phrase has a specialized meaning in the United States military. It is the name of a document that governs the behavior of troops in the face of the enemy or in captivity. For other sets of rules (about dating, for example), use *code of behavior* or another paraphrase.

codes. Lowercase *penal code, building code*, *etc.* Capitalize titles like *Code of Civil Procedure, Code Napoléon*.

coed. As a noun meaning woman in a coeducational school, the term is dated and often considered belittling. But the adjective *coed*, standing for *coeducational* (as in *coed schools*), can be useful in headlines, if only as a last resort. See men and women.

Coeur d'Alene (in Idaho).

coffee(-). Compounds formed with *coffee* are sometimes one word and sometimes two words: coffee break, coffeecake, coffeehouse, coffee maker, coffee mill, coffeepot, coffee shop, coffee table.

But: *kaffeeklatsch*, not *coffee klatch*.

coffin. Use this word instead of the euphemistic *casket*.

Cognac, cognac. See wines and spirits.

cognoscenti. It is plural, meaning experts. The singular, rarely seen, is *cognoscente*.

Cohoes (in Albany County, N.Y.).

cohort. In informed usage, a *cohort* is not an individual but a group with some common bond. A *cohort of elk breeders* meets the test. *A vandal and two of his cohorts* does not.

Col. *Merrill N. Kuzu; Colonel Kuzu; the colonel*.

Cold War. But note the punctuation when the modifier is attached to a prefix: *post-Cold War economies; pre-Cold War relationships*.

collectible.

College Board, the. A national organization of schools and colleges, the board sponsors college admission tests and other programs. The best-known exams are the *reasoning test* and the *subject tests* (in more than 20 fields). SAT, a trademark used by the board, is no longer considered an abbreviation and does not stand for any test name. Articles may refer to these tests:

- The *SAT reasoning test*, also known as the *SAT I*, consisting of verbal and mathematical sections. Informally: *the SAT, the SATs, the SAT I's*. Also, when the context is clear: *College Boards* or *College Board exams*.
- The *SAT subject tests*, known as *SAT II*, which measure proficiency in individual subjects. Informally: *the SAT II's*. Also informally: *SAT Spanish test* or *College Board Spanish test, etc.*

The board's preliminary tests, for high school students, may be cited informally as *the Preliminary SAT exams*. The official name, too technical for the news columns, is *PSAT/NMSQT* (officially not an abbreviation, but derived from *Preliminary SAT and National Merit Scholarship Qualifying Test*).

The board's formal name, virtually never needed in articles, is *the College Entrance Examination Board*.

college names. Verify them carefully; websites are often the most current source. It is, for instance, *Iona College*, but the *College of New Rochelle*. For consistency, lowercase *the* in a college name, regardless of individual styles. Omit *College* or *University* freely in a mention of a well-known institution: *She graduated from Purdue*. (It is rarely necessary to make a distinction when the undergraduate college bears the same name as its university: *He is a Harvard sophomore*.)

College of Cardinals.

College of New Jersey. It was formerly Trenton State College. Before 1896, Princeton University was known as the College of New Jersey, but the two institutions are not related.

College of Staten Island (part of the City University of New York).

College of St. Elizabeth (in Convent Station, N.J.).

collide, collision. Only two objects in motion can collide. If the phrase *collided* *with* seems to fix blame, avoid it by using this construction: *a truck and a bus collided*.

colloquialisms. Words bearing the label *colloquial* (or its equivalent, *informal*), in the dictionary or in this manual, occur naturally in speech and in writing that emulates the casualness of speech. Expressions like *kids, hole up, trendy, pricey* and *for kicks* are examples. They should be confined to features and light contexts (often in style, sports and the arts), and used without quotation marks or other signs of self-consciousness. The effect can curdle, though, if the phrases chosen are trite (like *flap*, meaning a fuss). Also see slang.

colon. For the placement of a colon alongside other punctuation, see parentheses and quotation marks.

The colon can introduce a word, a phrase, a sentence, a passage, a list or a tabulation. For its use in introductions to verbatim material, see texts and excerpts. The colon is also used for clock times (*10:30 a.m.*) and, in sports, for the times of races (*2:55; 4:10:23*).

As punctuation within a sentence, the colon can be effective: *Thursday is the dead center of the year, or as near dead center as you can get: 182 days gone by, 182 to come.*

For consistency, capitalize what follows a colon if it is a complete sentence. And in headlines, uppercase any word directly after a colon.

While a comma introduces a direct quotation of one sentence that remains within the paragraph, use a colon to introduce longer quotations.

colonial (architecture). Capitalize in reference to structures built when America was a colony; for more recent buildings, its preferred use is as a modifier: *colonial style*. Also see Georgian.

Colonie (in Albany County, N.Y.).

color. See people of color.

Colorado. Abbreviate as *Colo*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

colorblind.

colored. In most United States racial contexts, the term is offensive, except in a proper name like *National Association for the Advancement of Colored People*. In South Africa, however, *colored* (n. and adj.) and *coloreds* are the accepted terms for people of racially mixed ancestry; in that sense, lowercase and use the American spelling, not *coloured*.

Columbia-Presbyterian Medical Center is now part of NewYork-Presbyterian Hospital.

Columbia University. In many casual references, *Columbia* can stand alone, for the university or for its undergraduate college.

Columbus Day, the second Monday in October, is a federal holiday.

columns. Uppercase principal words in their titles, usually without quotation marks: *Metropolitan Diary; Sports of The Times*. As an exception, use quotation marks if a column title cannot be easily recognized as such, or reads awkwardly with the surrounding words.

combat, combated, combating.

comedian is suitable for a man or a woman. Do not use *comedienne*. See men and women.

Comédie-Française.

comma. For the placement of a comma alongside other punctuation, see parentheses and quotation marks.

In general, do not use a comma before *and* or *or* in a series: *The snow stalled cars, buses and trains*. But use a comma in sentences like this to avoid confusion: *A martini is made of gin and dry vermouth, and a chilled glass is essential*.

If commas appear within the items of a series, separate the items themselves with semicolons. In that case, keep even the final semicolon, before the *and*. See semicolon.

Commas should be used in compound sentences before conjunctions like *and, but* and *for*: *They left early, and their mother said they would arrive before lunch; The track was* *slow, but the betting was fast; They were impatient, for their test scores were due any day*. When the clauses are exceptionally short, however, the comma may be omitted: *Nero fiddled and Rome burned*. Also: *The comma is small but mighty*.

Use commas to enclose a nonrestrictive clause (that is, a clause providing incidental extra information):

The house, which was 100 years old, was still in good condition. A restrictive clause, providing necessary identification, does not go between commas: *The second book that she wrote was a best seller*. Do not use the comma after an identifying noun used in this way: *The painter van Gogh had a hard struggle*. The absence of commas in *His brother Alex was best man* means that the bridegroom has more than one brother. If there is only one brother, *Alex* should be surrounded by commas. Thus a monogamous society must be well supplied with commas: *Her husband, Leslie, was absent*.

Between adjectives in a series or a pair, use a comma if the adjectives convey equal significance — that is, if they could comfortably be connected by *and*: *a tired, disillusioned politician; quick, easy solutions*. But: *a gray iron cot; a wiry old carpenter* (no comma because the phrases *iron cot* and *old carpenter* are bound together more closely than the rest of each expression).

Use the comma to introduce a quotation of one sentence or less: *He said, "I shall return."* For quotations of more than one sentence use the colon. A comma may also introduce a paraphrase similar in form to a quotation but without quotation marks: *The question is, How high will prices rise? He said, Yes, he would accept the job*. But: *He said yes. She said no*.

Do not use a comma after *that* in this construction: *He said that for more than a year and a half, the problem had been ignored; She pledged that whatever the cost, she would close the deal*. (The material directly after *that* is not parenthetical; it is introduced by *that*, just as the rest of the sentence is.)

In general, use the comma for figures in thousands (*1,250 miles; $12,416.22*). But do not use it in designations of years (in dates), street numbers, box numbers, room numbers or telephone numbers.

In financial copy, precise use of the comma is often needed to avoid confusion:

The stock advanced 3 points, to 21. The comma makes it clear that the range of advance was not between 3 and 21, but upward from 18.

Do not use a comma before an *of* indicating place or position: *Morgan S. Lam of Brooklyn; President Dana J. Kikondoo of Tanzania*. (Exception, to avoid royal overtones when a given name stands alone: *Survivors include her son, Howard, of Lenox, Mass.*) In ages, heights, distances, time, etc., expressed in the following form, the comma is omitted: *4 years 9 months 21 days; 6 feet 3 inches tall; 2 hours 15 minutes 10 seconds*.

Commas are not used in names like these: *Lauren B. Cordero Jr.* (or *Sr.*); *Stacy R. Karitsa IV*.

Commas are used when constructions like this are unavoidable: *the Salem, Ore., public schools; a Columbus, Ohio, newspaper*. But it is smoother to write *the public schools of Salem, Ore*. For a clarifying insertion in a proper name, use parentheses: *The Columbus (Ohio) Citizen; Centerville (Ill.) General Hospital*. Here, too, a phrase after the name – *in Ohio; in Illinois* – is preferred.

In a date with the day omitted, use no comma: *He said he left Boston in April 1975 and never returned*. But when giving both day and year, use a comma between them. And in that case, a comma or other punctuation mark must always follow the year. Do not use this construction: *He said that May 5, 1999 was not a happy day*.

Commack (in Suffolk County, N.Y.).

commandant of the Marine Corps. Do not use as a title before a name. Make it *Gen. Hollis P. Cordero, the commandant of the Marine Corps*.

commander. Use the term instead of *commanding general* when it is otherwise made clear that the bearer is a general: *Maj. Gen. Hollis T. Cordeiro, commander of the First Infantry Division*. Also use it instead of *commanding officer*, since invariably a unit commander or police commander is an officer. Also see Cmdr.

commander in chief. Lowercase, without hyphens, and use a comma to separate the title from a name.

commanding general, commanding officer. Though used officially, the phrases are redundant when referring to someone who is clearly identified as a general or an officer. Use *commander* by itself: *Maj. Gen. Hollis F. Cordeiro, commander of the First Infantry Division*. Also: *the division commander; the precinct commander*. Also see Cmdr.

Command Sgt. Maj. *Tracy N. Arniotis; Sergeant Major Arniotis; the command sergeant major* or *the sergeant major*. The title designates the senior enlisted member of a major command.

commission. Capitalize only when part of a name. Do not abbreviate, even in headlines.

Commissioner *Stacy S. Lam; the commissioner*. Also use this form for titles like *police commissioner* and, in New York City, *parks commissioner* (note the plural).

commitment.

committee. Capitalize only when part of a name. Do not abbreviate, even in headlines. See congressional committees and subcommittees.

common(-). Some compounds formed with *common* are one word and some are two. Most compound adjectives are hyphenated: common law (n.), common-law (adj.), commonplace, common sense (n.), common-sense (adj.), commonweal, commonwealth.

Common Market. A predecessor to the European Union.

Commonwealth, formerly the British Commonwealth. It is an association of sovereign states joined in recognizing the British monarch as head of the Commonwealth, though not in all cases as the head of their states. The current membership is listed in the World Fact Book maintained by the Central Intelligence Agency on the web for public use.

Commonwealth of Independent States. It was established in 1991 to coordinate relations between former Soviet republics and to oversee the dissolution of the Soviet Union. The members were Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova, Russia, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, Ukraine and Uzbekistan. In later references: *the organization*, to avoid confusion with the Commonwealth.

communiqué.

communism. Capitalize only when referring to the Communist Party movement. Lowercase in references to the philosophy: *The residents of Brook Farm sought to achieve communism*.

Communist. Capitalize as a noun for a member of the Communist Party and as an adjective referring to the party. Lowercase in references to the philosophy.

Communist China. The name of the country is simply China. *Communist China* is acceptable to make a special point — a contrast, for example — or in a quotation. The official name, *the People's Republic of China*, is used only in texts and quotations.

Communist Party.

community. Apply this word cautiously to ethnic, racial or interest groups (*the black community, the gay community*). It implies a unanimity that may or may not exist. (It is, however, a proper term for a neighborhood.) Also avoid overly broad descriptions in terms like *the real estate community* and *the health care community*.

compact disc. Also see disc, disk.

companion is a suitable term for an unmarried partner of the same or the opposite sex. In the case of a gay couple, resist *longtime companion*, originally a euphemism and now a parodied cliché; substitute, for example, *companion of 27 years*. Also see lover, partner and boyfriend, girlfriend.

company (military). *Company A; Company H; Headquarters Company; the company*. (For clarity, avoid the reversed *A Company, H Company*, etc.) Company nicknames, using the words of the phonetic alphabet (*Charlie Company* or *Hotel Company*, for instance), should be confined to quotations or feature contexts. They will often require graceful explanation for readers unfamiliar with military usage.

company and corporation names. Generally render a name as the company does; consult the company website. But avoid fanciful use of punctuation or other nonalphabetic characters, which seem more like marketing logos than ordinary names: *Yahoo*, not *Yahoo!*.

If a company's common rendering differs from the version in its formal incorporation documents, generally use the name more familiar to readers: *Walmart*, not *Wal-Mart*.

If a company consistently uses initials as its name, follow that style and omit periods, even if the term was originally an abbreviation: *IBM, UPS, AT&T, HP*. Include a reference to the full, original name if necessary for clarity or in historical contexts.

When a company name calls for unconventional capitalization, heed any preference that requires up to three capitals in a word: *eBay* (but *EBay* for the first word in a sentence or headline). If the capitals exceed three, upper-and-lowercase the name except for proper nouns that appear within it. Thus: *PepsiCo Inc., GlaxoSmithKline*. Capitalize the first letter when a company renders its name all lowercase; all-lowercase names are distracting and hard to read.

In articles, normally spell out *Company, Corporation, Industries, Brothers, Associates*, etc., when they are part of a name (an exception: *Warner Bros.*). Generally use the full name on first reference, but for major corporations that are widely familiar (*Microsoft, General Motors, General Electric*), the terms *Company, Corporation*, etc., may be omitted even from first references.

Omit *Inc.* or an equivalent foreign abbreviation (*Ltd., S.A., S.p.A., G.m.b.H., N.V.*, etc.) in the name of any company that incorporates another company term (*Company, Corporation, Industries*, etc.). When using *Inc.* or an equivalent foreign abbreviation, do not surround it with commas (*Time Warner Inc. is declaring a dividend*).

Headlines, charts and listings may freely use the abbreviations *Bros., Co.* and *Corp.* in the names of companies. Even in ordinary news copy, listings or enumerations of companies may omit *Company, Corporation, etc.*

Use the ampersand (&) or *and* in the name of a company, law firm or other entity, according to the company's practice. For consistency, however, substitute the ampersand for unorthodox internal punctuation, like plus signs (+) or equal signs (=) used by some firms (*Wieden & Kennedy*, not *Wieden + Kennedy*).

Also see organization names.

company officers. Do not capitalize their titles: *She was elected president of the company; They complained to the treasurer, Dale T. Kikondoo*.

compare. Use *compare to* when the intent is to liken things: *The book compared the quarterback's role to the job of a company's vice president for operations*. When the intent is to compare and contrast, or just to contrast, use *compare with: They compared Terry's forecasting with Dana's, and found Dana more accurate*.

comparisons. Avoid phrases like *times larger* or *times taller;* they rarely say what the writer means. Something *three times larger* is actually *four times as large*, since each of the "times" is added to the original dimension or amount. Make it *seven times as large* or *three times as tall*. As for quantities that are *five times smaller*, they cannot exist. *One time smaller* amounts to subtracting 100 percent, and winding up with zero. Make it *one-fifth as much*, or *one-fifth as large*.

complementary, complimentary. Use *complementary* and its forms to describe things that fit together to form a whole: *Her math skills complemented his writing; they were complementary*. Use *complimentary* to mean flattering. *Complimentary* is also used in sales literature to mean free, but journalism favors the unpretentious word: *free*.

compound words are generally listed in the entries for individual prefixes and suffixes. For those not shown in this manual, consult the dictionary. (See spelling.) In general, a compound that would be hard to decipher at a glance should be hyphenated rather than solid. To avoid incongruity, a compound noun that is ordinarily solid should be separated when the first part is modified by an adjective: *businessman*, for example, becomes *small-business man; sailmaker* becomes *racing-sail maker; schoolteacher* becomes *public-school teacher*.

When a compound modifier is formed by an adjective before a noun, it is usually hyphenated: *They wore well-tailored gray suits*. But omit the hyphen when the phrase follows what it modifies: *The suits were well tailored*. More examples appear in the entries for ill(-) and well(-). Also see hyphen.

comprise means *consist of*. The whole comprises the parts: *The alliance comprises 35 organizations*. Not: *Thirty-five organizations comprise the alliance*. And do not write *comprised of*. Also see including.

comptroller. Reserve this term for a government official who bears the title officially. The federal government has a *comptroller general* and a *comptroller of the currency*. New York State and New York City each have a *comptroller*. Capitalize the title before a name (*Comptroller Lindsay T. Daan*), but lowercase elsewhere. Use *controller* for the financial officer of a business.

computer programs. See software and app.

concentration camps. Given the sensitivity of this topic, take extra care in historical references to the Nazi concentration camps of World War II. For camps in countries occupied by Nazi Germany, avoid ambiguous or misleading phrases like "Polish concentration camp" or "Polish death camp," which could give the mistaken impression that the camps were run by Poland.

concert halls. See arts locations.

concerto. Capitalize in a title: *Mozart's Piano Concerto in E flat (K. 271); Mozart's "Coronation" Concerto*. But: *the concerto*. Also: *concertos* (pl.), but *concerti grossi*. See music.

concrete. See cement.

Condé Nast.

conditional tenses. When a sentence expresses the dependence of one event on another, convey the two ideas in verb tenses that work together — always matched, never mixed:

- *If Governor Agnello runs, Mr. Karitsa will be on her ticket*. (An *if* clause in the present tense; a *then* clause in the future tense.)
- *If Mr. Karitsa refused the job, Dr. Arniotis would get it*. (An *if* clause in the past tense; a *then* clause in the conditional tense.)
- *If Dr. Arniotis had wanted the job, he would have said so*. (An *if* clause in the past perfect tense; a *then* clause in the conditional perfect.)

condo, condominium. *Condo* is useful in headlines and in articles as a later reference to a condominium.

Con Ed for the Consolidated Edison Company. Also: *Con Edison*.

Confederate States of America, the official name of the Confederacy. Also see Civil War.

Conference Board (a business-sponsored nonprofit research organization).

confidant (n., masc.), **confidante** (n., fem.).

confined. People with illnesses or disabilities do not necessarily consider themselves *confined* to their beds, homes or wheelchairs; the term may exaggerate their limitations. Write instead that they *use wheelchairs* or are *housebound* or *bedridden*. When possible, be specific about the causes: *He has used a wheelchair since losing his legs in Vietnam; She cannot leave home for fear of catching an infection*. Also see disability, disabled.

confrere.

Congo. Be careful to distinguish between the two African countries with similar names. For the larger country, with Kinshasa as its capital, use *Democratic Republic of Congo* as the dateline. In text, generally use the full name, *the Democratic Republic of Congo*, as the first reference. Subsequent references can be shortened to *Congo* (no "the") as long as there is no risk of confusion.

The country to the west, with Brazzaville as its capital, is *Republic of Congo* in datelines and *the Republic of Congo* in other references. Generally do not shorten this name.

In both cases, include a reference to the capital if possible for further clarity.

Congo River (not *the Zaire*).

Congregationalism is a form of Protestant church structure that vests ultimate authority in local congregations or their representatives. Denominations so organized include the Southern Baptist Convention and the United Church of Christ. This form of organization contrasts with the episcopal system used by some other denominations, including the United Methodist Church. Capitalize *Congregational* in the name of an individual church or in a reference to the denomination descended from the New England settlers, now part of the United Church of Christ.

congressional, lowercase, except in proper names (*Congressional Quarterly*, for example) and references to specific voting districts (*17th Congressional District*).

congressional committees and subcommittees. Capitalize committee names: *Ways and Means Committee; Appropriations Committee*. But: *the committee*. Also capitalize the formal name of a subcommittee, if it is terse enough to use in an article: *Senate Permanent Subcommittee on Investigations*. And: *the subcommittee*. Many names, though, are long or complex and should be paraphrased, in lowercase: *the House ethics committee* (in place of the formal *House Committee on Standards of Official Conduct*). If the paraphrase includes the formal name of a parent committee, capitalize the parent's name: the *House Foreign Affairs subcommittee on aid to Ruritania*.

congressman, congresswoman. The titles traditionally apply to members of the House, not the Senate: *Congresswoman Lauren E. Cordero; Congresswoman Cordero; the congresswoman*. The preferred title, though, is *representative*.

Connecticut. Abbreviate as *Conn*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

Connecticut College (in New London).

conscience(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *conscience* are two words: conscienceless, conscience money, conscience-stricken.

Also: *for conscience' sake*.

(-)conscious. Most but not all compounds formed with *conscious* are hyphenated: air-conscious, class-conscious, clothes-conscious, music-conscious, self-conscious (and *un-self-conscious*), style-conscious, unconscious.

consensus (not the redundant *consensus of opinion* and not *general consensus*).

conservative. Capitalize as noun or adjective in the name of a political party or movement, or in reference to members of that group: *Four Conservatives voted with the prime minister*.

Conservative Judaism. It is a branch of the religion that retains traditional ritual (Hebrew-language worship, for example) but with moderate adaptation to modern life. Its houses of worship are *synagogues*, not temples. Also see Orthodox Judaism and Reform, Reformed.

Conservative Party.

consist of usually introduces a full list: *His team consists of 11 Ph.D.'s; The meal consists of 10 courses*. Use *includes* to introduce a partial listing: *His team includes two shortstops*. Also see comprise.

Consolidated Edison Company (Con Ed or Con Edison).

Constable *Hilary T. Lamm; Constable Lamm; the constable*.

constitution. Capitalize when referring to the specific constitution of a nation or a state, but lowercase *a constitution* in general references. Also: *constitutional; unconstitutional*.

constitutional amendments. Capitalize formal titles of amendments to the United States Constitution (which include the numbers): *Fifth Amendment; 15th Amendment*. But lowercase informal titles (*the income tax amendment*) except for words that are capitalized in their own right: *the Prohibition amendment*. Also see acts, amendments, bills and laws.

Consul *Robin E. Dann; Consul Dann; the consul*. Similarly capitalize *consul general* in front of a name only. (The plural is *consuls general*.)

consulate (or **consulate general**). Lowercase when standing alone. But: *the United States Consulate; the French Consulate General*. (The plural is *consulates general*.)

Consultation on Church Union. An organization working for the merger of several major denominations in the United States.

Consumer Price Index; *the price index; the index*. It is a measure of the retail prices of a specific list of goods and services. Do not describe it as a *cost-of-living index* because it does not take account of income taxes and some other factors in the cost of living.

Consumer Product Safety Commission.

contact is acceptable as a verb to mean *get in touch*, but more specific alternatives may be preferable: *write, call, consult, meet, email*.

container port, container ship.

continent. Lowercase after a name: *African continent; North American continent; European continent*. Capitalize *the Continent* or *Continental* only when it means Europe.

Continental Divide, the Rocky Mountain ridge that separates rivers flowing east from those flowing west. In later references: *the divide*.

continental shelf, continental slope. The *continental shelf* is the gradually sloping submerged surface between a continent's coast and the *continental slope*, which descends more steeply to the ocean bottom.

continual (over and over again), **continuous** (unbroken).

contractions. In straightforward news copy, spell out expressions like *is not, has not, have not, do not, are not, will not*, *etc.* Contractions are acceptable in quotations, in texts and transcripts, in light or humorous copy and in headlines and subheadings of all kinds.

contretemps. It is an embarrassing mishap, not the confusion that follows.

control, controlled, controlling.

controller. Use *controller* for the financial officer of a business. But use *comptroller* for a government official with that formal title. Also see comptroller.

controversial. This completely acceptable word becomes an unfair shortcut when attached to the name of a person, program or institution without elaboration: It places the subject under a sinister cloud without stating any case. At a minimum the issue should be specified soon after the word appears. Once that is done, the need for the adjective will often — though not always — evaporate.

conventions (political). See national conventions.

convince, persuade. *Convince* should be followed by an *of* phrase or a *that* clause: *She convinced the teacher of her ability; She convinced her sister that it was too late*. But *convince* cannot be followed by a *to* phrase; in such a case, *persuade* is required: *He persuaded his sister to take the day off*. (*Persuade* is more versatile than *convince*, and can be followed by any of the three constructions.)

coolly.

co-op. The preferred first (and later) reference for a cooperative. In cap-and-lowercase headlines, it is *Co-op*.

Cooper-Hewitt National Design Museum. This name may be used in most first references. On later references: *the Cooper-Hewitt* or *the National Design Museum*. The formal name is *Cooper-Hewitt, National Design Museum, Smithsonian Institution* (with two commas).

Coordinated Universal Time. Use this term, which has replaced *Greenwich Mean Time*, for the world standard. It is the equivalent of the old system but corrected by atomic clocks to take account of the earth's rotation. The abbreviation, chosen as a compromise that would favor neither English nor French, is *U.T.C.* See time.

Copiague (in Suffolk County, N.Y.).

Copper Age.

copter, for helicopter.

Coptic Church. The principal Christian church in Egypt. It has its own patriarch. See Eastern Orthodoxy.

copy(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *copy* are one word: copybook, copycat, copy desk, copy-edit (v.), copy editor, copyright, copywriter.

copy (in art). See fake, forgery, copy.

copyright, patent. A *copyright* is legal ownership vested in the author of an original work (fiction, nonfiction, music, drama, art or photography, for example), giving the owner the sole right to reproduce, distribute, display or publish it. Copyright protects the form of expression, but not the ideas and facts themselves. A *patent* is legal ownership vested in the inventor of a process or device, who is given the exclusive right to produce, sell or use it. Copyrights and patents are granted for limited periods. In news copy (but not necessarily in credit lines), omit the copyright symbol (©).

Also see trademark, service mark.

cord (vocal, spinal and electrical), **chord** (music and mathematics).

co-respondent means the “third party” accused of adultery in a divorce case. Not, it is hoped, *correspondent*.

Corn Belt.

Corp. Spell out *Corporation* in company and similar names in news articles. It may be abbreviated to *Corp*. in headlines, charts and tables when used with the name of a company. See company and corporation names.

corporal. See Cpl.

Corporation for Public Broadcasting. It receives federal money for distribution to individual stations and to National Public Radio and the Public Broadcasting Service. Also see NPR and PBS.

corporations. See company and corporation names.

corps (military). Capitalize only when part of a name: *Adjutant General’s Corps; Army Corps of Engineers; Artillery Corps; Signal Corps; the corps*. Also see Marine Corps. For numbered corps (units larger than divisions), use Roman numerals: *X Corps*.

Corpus Christi (in Texas).

corralled.

corrections. Because its voice is loud and far-reaching, The Times recognizes an ethical responsibility to correct all its factual errors, large and small (even misspellings of names), promptly and in a prominent reserved space in the paper. A correction serves all readers, not just those who were injured or who complained, so it must be self-explanatory, tersely recalling the context and the background while repairing the error.

A complaint from any source should be relayed to a responsible editor and investigated quickly. If a correction is warranted, it should follow immediately. In the rare case of a delay longer than a month, the correction should include an explanation (saying, for example, how recently the error was discovered, or why the checking took so long). If the justification is lame or lacking, the correction should acknowledge a reporting or editing lapse.

The correction should appear, of course, in any regional editions that carried the error. If the error, or the entire faulty article, appeared in only some copies, the correction should say so. When the correction refers to an error in a preprinted section of the current day's paper, it gives a page number.

Seldom should a correction try to place blame or deflect it outside The Times; the effort might appear defensive or insincere. But when an error has occurred under the byline or credit of a blameless staff member or news agency, the correction may cite an editing error or a transmission error. And if The Times has been misinformed by an institution or a reference work that should have been authoritative, the error may be attributed: ... *included an erroneous profit figure from the company's annual report*. Note, though, that the attribution is light-handed, and given in passing (not, for example, *Because of erroneous information from the Karitsa Company* ...).

For clarity, the first sentence of a correction should characterize the error without repeating the faulty information (*misstated the 1998 profit of the Karitsa Company's heavy equipment group*). At the end, after supplying the facts, the correction may usefully remind readers of the specific error (*It was $480 million, not $480 billion*).

For the handling of more general lapses (those of fairness, balance and perspective), see editors' notes.

correspondent. It is not the word for the "third party" accused of adultery in a divorce suit; that is *co-respondent*.

Corsica. Use *Corsica* rather than *France* after the names of Corsican cities and towns. See datelines.

cortege.

Cortes (the Spanish legislature). Except in unusually detailed references to the system or passages conveying local color, *Parliament* is a more accessible term for nonspecialized readers.

Cortland, Cortlandt, Courtlandt. *Cortland* is the city and county in upstate New York; *Cortlandt* is the town in Westchester County, N.Y.; *Courtlandt Avenue* is in the Bronx.

cosmonaut. Use *astronaut* instead except in untranslated texts or direct quotations.

cost, when used as a verb, requires a direct object (*The error cost her $500*) or an adverb (*The mistake cost him dearly*). When used with only an indirect object (*The snub will cost her*), the word is slang or dialect.

cost of living. Hyphenate only when the term precedes what it modifies: *The union negotiated a cost-of-living adjustment*. Economists define the cost of living as the sum needed to pay taxes and buy needed goods and services. It differs from the Consumer Price Index.

Cotton Belt.

councilman, councilwoman. *Councilman* (or *Councilwoman*) *Lee E. Baranek; Councilman* (or *Councilwoman*) *Baranek; the councilman; the councilwoman*. Also: *the councilman* (or *councilwoman*) *at large*. For a group of both men and women, use *council members*. Also see men and women and titles.

Council of Churches of the City of New York. It represents Protestant and Eastern Orthodox congregations.

Council of Economic Advisers. The council advises the president on economic matters and helps prepare the president’s annual economic report to Congress.

councilor (council member), **counselor** (adviser or embassy official).

count. In non-British rankings of nobility, this title is the equivalent of earl. Use it in first and later references (never *Lord*). When the title is territorial, capitalize the first reference as a full name: *the Count of Paris; the count*. Some Europeans have modified protocol and use the title with given name and surname; individual preferences should be honored. Also see peers.

counter(-). It forms solid compounds: counterargument, counterattack, counterbalance, countercharge, counterclaim, counterclockwise, counterculture, counterespionage, counterintelligence, counterintuitive, counterirritant, countermand, countermeasure, counteroffensive, counteroffer, counterpart, counterplot, counterpoint, counterproductive, counterproposal, counterpunch, counterrevolution, countersign, countersink, counterspy.

Countess *Lamb; Lady Lamb; the countess*. In Britain, the woman bearing this title is the counterpart of an earl, or she is the wife of an earl. In some other countries, she is the equivalent of a count, or the wife of a count. (A count is the non-British equivalent of an earl.) Use no given name. If the title is territorial, treat it as a capitalized full name on first reference: *the Countess of Dannford; Lady Dannford*. Also see peers.

countries. See geographic names.

country(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *country* are one word: country club, countryman, countryside, countrywide, countrywoman.

county. Capitalize when part of a name: *Kings County; Union County*. But: *the county; the county government*. For plurals: *Kings and Union Counties*.

County Clerk *Pat T. Agnello; the county clerk*.

County Executive *Morgan R. Cordeiro; the county executive*.

County Legislature; *the Legislature*.

coup de grâce.

coup d’état. *Coup* can usually stand alone when the context is clear.

couple may be either singular or plural. Used in reference to two distinct but associated people, *couple* should be construed as a plural: *The couple were married in 1952. The couple argued constantly; they* [not *it*] *even threw punches*. When the idea is one entity rather than two people, *couple* may be treated as a singular: *Each couple was asked to give $10; The couple was the richest on the block*. In general, *couple* causes fewer problems when treated as a plural.

Used colloquially, to mean a handful or a few, *couple* should always be followed by *of* (*a couple of pomegranates*, never *a couple pomegranates*).

court cases. Use their names in roman type without quotation marks, and abbreviate *versus* as *v*. Example: *Yagyonak v. the City of New York*. (In all other contexts, the abbreviation is *vs*.) In a quotation or a text, use quotation marks around a citation that would otherwise be hard to recognize: *"This is what 'Nixon' tells us," the judge said*. Give docket numbers when reporting appellate decisions in important cases (*Burlington Industries Inc. v. Ellerth, No. 97-569*) and identify all the judges if the decision is by a panel. In cap-and-lowercase headlines, lowercase *v.*

court decisions. In reporting the decision of a panel (in the federal appellate courts, for example), always name the judges and say how each voted. Lawyers and scholars cannot evaluate the opinion without this information.

courtesy titles. Use *Mr., Ms., Mrs*. or *Miss* with surnames in the news columns for second and later references to people who do not bear specialized titles, like Dr., Gen. or Gov. Exceptions are few, and are set out in this entry.

First name, middle initial (if any) and surname normally appear on first reference, without a courtesy title. For a woman, later references are to *Ms. Milori*, unless the woman asks to be known as *Mrs*. or *Miss*.

In general, government officials may be *Mr., Ms., Mrs*. or *Miss* after being introduced by their main titles: *Gov. Toby K. Lamm; Governor Lamm; Ms. Lamm*. But judges and uniformed personnel (military, police, fire) keep specialized titles in all references. Religious titles vary by denomination and are listed separately.

Some people younger than 18 should receive courtesy titles, and some should not: Their role in the news is the guide. A teenager who achieves distinction in a normally adult field (scientific discovery, for example, or musical competition) might well merit *Ms., Miss* or *Mr*. But in a schoolroom setting, *Robin* would seem more natural. If a title seems inappropriate, call the subject *Robin* or *Robin Agnello* in all references; do not use fusty phrases like *the Agnello boy* or *the Cordero girl* or *the Lamm youth*.

Use a courtesy title in a headline for special effect only, or if the surname would be misleading and a full name will not fit: *Mrs. Obama*.

Omit courtesy titles with most names in sports articles (even on the front page), though titles are sometimes appropriate for names occurring in purely political, civic or business roles: *Ms. Barany threw out the first ball*. In other articles, omit a courtesy title for a sports figure mentioned in an athletic role, but use the title when the name appears in other connections. In an athlete's obituary, omit the title in passages covering the sport, but use the title in those passages recounting other phases of the subject's life — a later business career, for example. Copy about chess or bridge should follow the sports style.

For historic figures no longer living, generally omit courtesy titles to avoid a jarring note in historical contexts: *Lincoln, Picasso, Hitler, Kennedy*. But consider exceptions for consistency in close juxtapositions; for example, in discussing two former presidents, it is acceptable to refer to *Mr. Clinton and Mr. Reagan*, even though one is now dead.

Omit a courtesy title with a coined or fanciful stage name to avoid appearing overliteral. *Meat Loaf* and *Sting*, for example, keep their full names, without title, in all references.

Foreign equivalents of the courtesy titles — *M., Mme., Mlle.*; *Herr, Frau, Fräulein; Señor, Señora, Señorita; Signor, Signora, Signorina; etc.* — should be used only for special effect (as they appear in this paragraph: some abbreviated, some spelled out). The foreign titles may also be used when they occur in an English-language passage that is being quoted. But if they occur in a translated quotation, translate them, too.

The Times Magazine, T and the Book Review, edited in the more literary style of a weekend periodical, omit all courtesy titles.

courthouse. Exception: *United States Court House* at Foley Square.

Courtlandt Avenue (in the Bronx). Also see Cortland, Cortlandt, Courtlandt.

court(s)-martial.

Court of St. James's, St. James's Palace. The United States ambassador to Britain may also be called the *United States ambassador to the Court of St. James's*, but only in contexts that warrant the ceremonial flavor.

courtroom.

courts. Capitalize the names of courts: *Appellate Division; County Court; Court of Appeals; Court of Claims; Court of Criminal Jurisdiction; International Court of Justice* (the *World Court*); *Supreme Court; Surrogate's Court; etc.*

Later references to a court or to its presiding officer are lowercased: *the court*. Also lowercase these and similar terms: *administrator, appellant, coroner's jury, master, receiver, referee in bankruptcy*.

In the federal system, the appellate courts below the Supreme Court are *the United States Courts of Appeals*. An individual one is the *United States Court of Appeals for the Fifth Circuit*, not *the Fifth Circuit Court of Appeals*. (New York and Connecticut are in the Second Circuit; New Jersey is in the Third Circuit.) At the next lower level are the United States District Courts. A single one may be referred to as the *United States District Court* or the *Federal District Court*. In New York, it is usually important to distinguish between the court for *the Southern District* (in Manhattan, also covering the Bronx and Westchester County) and *the Eastern District* (in Brooklyn, also covering Queens, Staten Island and Long Island).

Note that in the New York State system, the Supreme Court is not the highest court. The higher ones are the Appellate Division of the State Supreme Court and ultimately the Court of Appeals. Any article about the Appellate Division should name the affected judicial department: for example, *the First Judicial Department* (or *First Department*) covers Manhattan and the Bronx.

The use of Judge and Justice varies among courts, even within federal and state systems. See those entries, as well as Associate Justice; Chief Judge; Chief Justice; Magistrate Judge.

Also see Supreme Court and World Court.

cover-up (n. and adj.), **cover up** (v.).

C.P.A. for certified public accountant.

Cpl. *Stacy K. Milori; Corporal Milori; the corporal.*

C.P.U. for a computer's central processing unit.

crab(-). Most compounds formed with *crab* are two words: crab apple, crab grass, crab meat.

crack(-). Most compounds formed with *crack* are one word: crackbrained, crackdown, crackpot, crackup (n.), crack up (v.).

crackerjack is slang for *excellent* or *outstanding. Cracker Jack* is the trademark for glazed popcorn.

craft. As a verb, *craft* may convey a whiff of hype or public relations propaganda. Be wary of its use in a way that sounds precious or promotional, like *handcrafted, painstakingly crafted*, *etc.*

crèche.

credit lines (for articles). The Times's credit style assumes that bylined articles are The Times's own, unless otherwise attributed in a credit line. Thus bylined articles written by staff, stringers or contributors for The Times require no credit line. Copy without a byline, if written locally, is also assumed to be The Times's own, and requires no credit.

But if the copy carries a dateline without a byline, readers must be told what news organization provided the reporting from a remote site.

Thus credit lines for articles in the news columns are used or omitted as follows:

COPY BY TIMES WRITERS OR CONTRIBUTORS

Bylined copy, with or without a dateline: No credit line.

Unbylined, nondatelined copy: No credit line.

Unbylined copy, with dateline:

By The New York Times

COPY FROM NEWS AGENCIES

Datelined copy, on Page 1 and inside the paper (see datelines):

TUSCALOOSA, Ala. (AP) –

ABIDJAN, Ivory Coast (Agence France-Presse) –

In an exceptional case, the copy may appear with a byline:

By THEO T. KARITSA
TUSCALOOSA, Ala. (Reuters) –

Nondatelined copy:

By Agence France-Presse
By The Associated Press
By Bloomberg News
By Dow Jones
By Reuters

credit lines (for photos and illustrations). Ordinarily The Times credits the creator or the supplier, or both, for every published photo, map and illustration. (As an exception, credit may be omitted for thumbnail photos and illustrations, especially those used in indexes, billboards and tables of contents.) Above all, a credit should convey meaning: If the phrasing merely satisfies the supplier or the lawyers without clearly telling the reader who did what, rewrite it, improvising a style if necessary.

The Times acquires images in a wide variety of circumstances; consult a photo editor for the proper wording and format. Some of the most common configurations follow:

The main style for a staff-produced map or chart:

The New York Times

The main style for a staff photo, or for a staff map or chart reflecting special effort:

Toby H. Dann/The New York Times

For a freelancer on assignment:

Toby H. Dann for The New York Times

For an unassigned freelance:

Toby H. Dann

For a news agency, outside organization or press pool:

Associated Press
Reuters
CNN
Pool photo
Agence France-Presse
New York City Ballet

For multiple photos or illustrations:

Photographs by Toby H. Dann/The New York Times
Illustrations by D. R. Cordero/The New York Times

For a Times map or chart, embellished by an individual illustrator, whether staff or freelance:

The New York Times; illustration by L. T. Dann

For grouped photos:

Top left, A. T. Agnello/The New York Times; top right, Associated Press; center, Amnesty International; bottom right, General Motors

For a photo produced by one organization and transmitted by another:

White House, via Associated Press
CNN, via Associated Press
Pool photo, via Associated Press

crematory, crematories. Preferable to *crematorium(s)*. Do not use *crematoria*.

crepe de Chine.

crepe(s), for the food. But: *crêpes suzette*.

crescendo. A crescendo is not a peak of intensity but a gradual increase in force, intensity or loudness. It is the trip to the peak.

crew, like *army* or *navy*, is a collective noun. It refers not to individuals but to all the members of a group. In references to individuals, use *crewmen, crew members* or *members of the crew*. References to *three crew* or to *selecting crew* are jargon.

Criminal Courts Building.

cripple, crippled. Do not use these words when mentioning disabilities (*she is a cripple; he was crippled by polio*). Instead: *She lost the use of her legs to polio; He has been unable to walk since an automobile accident in 1992*. Also see afflicted; challenged; deformed; disability, disabled; handicapped; impaired.

crisscross.

criterion (sing.), **criteria** (pl.).

criticize can be a partisan term when followed by a *for* phrase: *She criticized the president for breaking his promises*. That phrasing assumes that the president really broke them. Make it *accused the president of breaking his promises*.

Croatia (the country), **Croat(s)** (n., the people), **Croatian** (adj.).

crocus(es).

cross(-). Most compounds formed with *cross* are one word, some are hyphenated and some are two words: crossbar (sports), crossbones, crossbow, crossbred, crosscheck, cross-country, crosscurrent, cross-examination, cross-examine, cross-examiner, crossfire, cross hair(s), crosshatch, cross-index, cross-legged, crossover (n.), cross-purpose, cross-question (n. and v.), cross-reference (n. and v.), crossroad, cross section, crosstown, crosswalk, crossword puzzle.

Cross Bay-Veterans' Memorial Bridge (over Beach Channel, in Queens).

Croton-on-Hudson (in Westchester County, N.Y.).

crowdsourcing, with no hyphen, for the practice of soliciting ideas or information from a large group or online community. Be sparing in the use of the verb form, *crowdsource*, and of related formations like *crowdfunding*, which have a flavor of jargon.

crunch. As a noun meaning *showdown* or *crisis, crunch* is slang.

crystallize.

C-Span, for the Cable-Satellite Public Affairs Network and its primary television channel. Also: *C-Span 2*, its second channel.

CT scan for computed or computerized tomography scan.

Cubism (art). Capitalize in reference to the style of painting and sculpture created by Picasso and Braque from 1907 onward. See arts terminology.

cuff links.

cul-de-sac(s).

cult, in a religious context, suggests that a group holds bizarre views and manipulates its members. Unless that is established, consider a more neutral term, like *sect*.

Cultural Revolution. Capitalize references to the one in China that lasted from 1966 to 1976. But: *a new cultural revolution; a cultural revolution*.

(-)culture. Most but not all compounds formed with *culture* are one word: counterculture, subculture, tissue culture.

Cummings, E. E. (not e. e. *cummings*). Except in his poetry, he used conventional capitalization.

CUNY is acceptable on later references and in headlines for the City University of

New York.

cup. A measuring cup holds eight fluid ounces or 16 tablespoons.

cupful(s).

Curaçao.

currencies. Amounts in American dollars should use the dollar symbol: *$20 billion; $10*. For euros, yen and British pounds, spell out the names on first reference in an article: *100 billion euros*. If there are additional references to amounts, the appropriate symbol may be used as long as the reference is clear: *€20 billion; ¥100 million; £10,000*. Also provide a dollar equivalent at least once, at the latest exchange rate. When a foreign sum is given in round numbers, round the conversion as well, especially if the details are immaterial. Do not use symbols for any other currencies; spell out the names, including for foreign dollars: *100 Canadian dollars*. See dollars and cents; money.

curriculums (not *curricula*).

curriculum vitae is too lofty for news copy. Use *résumé* instead.

Custom House.

Cutchogue (in Suffolk County, N.Y.).

cutlines. See captions.

Cuyahoga is the name of a county and a river in Ohio. *Cuyahoga Falls* is an Ohio city.

cyber(-). It is a prefix, not a word, forming solid compounds except with a proper name: *cyberrevolution, cybervoting, cyber-Shakespeare* (in jest, presumably). Ration these coinages.

cyberspace (the realm of computer networks). Avoid overuse; the term can seem dated.

cyclone. It is an area of low atmospheric pressure and spiraling winds, but the term is used in parts of the United States for a tornado and in the Indian Ocean region for a hurricane. Specify the meaning, or rephrase the passage. See hurricane and tornado.

Cypriot(s). The people of Cyprus.

czar, czarist. Use these spellings rather than the less familiar *tsar*. Also: *czarina*. Capitalize the title before a Russian royal name only: *Czar Nicholas; the czar*. Lowercase *czarist(s)*. Also lowercase figurative references, like *baseball czar, drug czar, economic czar*, etc., but those terms are overworked.

Czechoslovakia divided in 1993 into the Czech Republic and Slovakia. The adjective was *Czechoslovak*, not *Czechoslovakian*.

Czech Republic. Formerly the western part of Czechoslovakia. The capital is Prague. Also see Slovakia.

D

D.A. for district attorney, but only in a quotation or a text, or for special effect.

dachshund(s).

Dacron is a trademark.

dad. Reserve this colloquialism for lighter contexts, and lowercase except when it substitutes for a proper name: *I'll bet Dad was quite a hit in his senior class show; Tracy's dad was in it, too*. Also see father.

Dada. Capitalize in reference to the art movement that emerged in Europe and New York during World War I. Members of this movement are *Dadaists*. See arts terminology.

Dakota. *N. Dakota* and *S. Dakota* may be used in headlines when necessary (somewhat more readily in the sports pages) to avoid the ambiguity of *Dakota* alone.

Dalai Lama. Because the holder uses no other name, uppercase the title as if it were a full name.

Dalles, The (in Oregon). An exception to the usual preference for lowercasing *the*.

Dame *Ashley Anyell; Dame Ashley* (but never *the dame*). The honor is comparable to a knighthood, and the bearer is not a peer. A dame who marries retains her title unless her husband holds a higher rank: *Dr. Hilary J. Cordero and Dame Ashley Anyell de Cordero*.

damn it. The expression is two words, but like other profanity it should not be used routinely. See obscenity, vulgarity, profanity.

dance. Capitalize in a title: *Schubert's German Dances; "Dance of the Hours"*; *"Danse Macabre."* But lowercase in a generic sense: *Balanchine's dances; a modern dance*. Similarly, lowercase individual dance styles, except when used in a title: *a Chopin waltz, Chopin's Waltz in A flat; a gavotte, the "Ascot Gavotte" from "My Fair Lady."* See arts terminology and music.

Danzig. Use *Gdansk*, the Polish spelling, rather than this German one, except in historical contexts.

D.A.R. for the Daughters of the American Revolution.

Dardanelles, the (not *Dardanelles Strait*).

Dar es Salaam (the capital of Tanzania).

dark(-). Some compounds formed with *dark* are one word, some are hyphenated and some are two words: dark-eyed, dark-haired, dark horse (n.), dark-horse (adj.), darkroom (photography), dark-skinned.

dash. The dash is often misused for the comma: *Pat – who was badly hurt last year – was pronounced fit on Sunday*. And it is often overused. A sentence with more than two dashes is confusing because a reader cannot distinguish between the asides and the main narrative.

Dashes properly surround a series punctuated by commas: *The governor will face many problems — unemployment, declining revenue and rising costs — in the election year.* Here, too, the dash is needed for clarity: *The costs – taxes and lawyers' fees – were higher than expected*.

Also use the dash to mark an abrupt change in continuity of expression: *"The balance of payments is – but you know all that."* A sudden cutoff of conversation or Q. and A. dialogue should be marked by a two-em dash (double length):

"Your Honor," she said, "please let me finish my --"

"Overruled!" the judge shot back.

(A quotation that trails off indecisively is treated differently. See quotations.)

The dash may also precede *namely, viz., i.e.* and similar words or abbreviations. Do not use a dash alongside a comma, a semicolon or a colon.

Because columns in print are usually narrow, with few words to a line, the dash should be surrounded by spaces; they provide openings for the computer to distribute spacing evenly when justifying the type.

The dash used in news copy is one em wide. Do not use the shorter en dash (–), except as a minus sign. And in headlines (other than banks), avoid both dashes because they are ungainly in large type; usually the meaning can be conveyed with a colon, a semicolon or parentheses. See headlines.

data is acceptable as a singular term for information: *The data was persuasive*. In its traditional sense, meaning a collection of facts and figures, the noun can still be plural: *They tabulate the data, which arrive from bookstores nationwide*. (In this sense, the singular is *datum*, a word both stilted and deservedly obscure.)

databank.

database.

date line for the place on the globe where a new day begins. But: *dateline*, at the top of a news article.

datelines. Generally the news sections use datelines specifying a location (though no longer a date) for articles originating outside New York City. Also see dateline integrity.

This is the usual form of a news dateline:

KIGALI, Rwanda —

In feature sections and on many columns, the "shoulder" style may be used (flush right, without a date; capitals and small capitals for city name only):

Port of Spain, Trinidad and Tobago

For a news agency article:

EDMONTON, Alberta (Reuters) —
DIXVILLE NOTCH, N.H. (AP) —

The name of a military base or (most sparingly) an aircraft, ship or train may serve as a dateline, if that was the origin of the reporting. In shipboard datelines, use a locating phrase (but not an imprecise one, like *at Sea*):

ABOARD U.S.S. HARRY S. TRUMAN, off South Korea –

With some exceptions (see below), a domestic dateline includes the state (abbreviated as shown in this manual's separate state listings), a Canadian dateline the province (spelled out) and any other foreign dateline the country. But some distinctive national regions abroad are customarily named in place of the country; examples include Sicily, Sardinia, Corsica, Scotland, Wales and Tasmania.

When the names of the city and the state or country are identical or nearly so (*Panama*, *San Salvador*), use only one, except in the cases noted on the lists that follow. *UNITED NATIONS* appears in datelines without further identification.

Domestic and foreign place names that should stand alone in datelines are listed here. In an article, however, writers and editors should feel free to omit the state or country after *any* place name that is identifiable in context, especially in a series of names when others stand alone.

UNITED STATES

ALBANY
ALBUQUERQUE
ANCHORAGE
ATLANTA
ATLANTIC CITY
BALTIMORE
BOSTON
BUFFALO
CHICAGO
CINCINNATI
CLEVELAND
COLORADO SPRINGS
DALLAS
DENVER
DES MOINES
DETROIT

EL PASO
FORT WORTH
HARTFORD
HOLLYWOOD
HONOLULU
HOUSTON
INDIANAPOLIS
IOWA CITY
JERSEY CITY
LAS VEGAS
LOS ANGELES
MEMPHIS
MIAMI
MIAMI BEACH
MILWAUKEE
MINNEAPOLIS
NASHVILLE
NEWARK
NEW HAVEN
NEW ORLEANS
OKLAHOMA CITY
OMAHA
PHILADELPHIA
PHOENIX
PITTSBURGH
ROCHESTER
SACRAMENTO
SALT LAKE CITY
SAN ANTONIO
SAN DIEGO
SAN FRANCISCO
SEATTLE
ST. LOUIS
ST. PAUL
SYRACUSE
TRENTON
TUCSON

VIRGINIA BEACH
WASHINGTON
WHITE PLAINS
YONKERS

KANSAS CITY datelines always specify a state (*Kan*. or *Mo*.).

FOREIGN

ALGIERS
AMSTERDAM
ATHENS
BAGHDAD
BANGKOK
BEIJING
BERLIN
BRASÍLIA
BRUSSELS
BUDAPEST
CAIRO
BUENOS AIRES
COPENHAGEN
CAPE TOWN
DJIBOUTI
DUBLIN
EDINBURGH
FRANKFURT
GENEVA
GIBRALTAR
GLASGOW
GUATEMALA CITY
THE HAGUE
HAVANA
HONG KONG
ISTANBUL
JERUSALEM
JOHANNESBURG
KUWAIT
LISBON

LONDON
LUXEMBOURG
MACAU
MADRID
MANILA
MEXICO CITY
MILAN
MONACO
MONTREAL
MOSCOW
MUNICH
NEW DELHI
OTTAWA
OSLO
PARIS
PANAMA
PRAGUE
QUEBEC
RIO DE JANEIRO
ROME
SAN MARINO
SAN SALVADOR
SHANGHAI
SINGAPORE
STOCKHOLM
TEHRAN
TEL AVIV
TOKYO
TORONTO
TUNIS
VATICAN CITY
VENICE
VIENNA
WARSAW
ZURICH

Also see bylines and credit lines.

dateline integrity. Because believable firsthand news gathering is The Times's hallmark, datelines must scrupulously specify where the reporter was when doing the bulk of the reporting or gathering the most significant information.

The dateline should not be chosen simply to showcase the most exotic locale a reporter visited, or to highlight a single anecdote, but must indicate the site of the main reporting.

With instantaneous worldwide communication, writers are able to reflect events occurring anywhere. But the reader is owed an accounting of the source for any detailed reference to events remote from the dateline: credit to news agencies, for example, or to telephone interviews, or witnesses' reports on the Internet.

Though datelines no longer include dates, it should be clear to the reader when the reporting was done. In most spot news articles, the time element in the lead suffices. Use days of the week for time elements referring to the current week. Other time elements, like *last week, last month* or *next week*, may be used in relation to the publication date. If confusion could arise, use specific dates or the name of the month. Also see time elements in leads.

Articles without a time element in the lead should still make clear, preferably early in the article, when the events took place and the reporting was done — for example, with a phrase like *residents said in interviews last week*. (In the case of a "timeless" feature, however, it is not always necessary to specify when the reporter was at the scene.)

If an article refers to events that took place after the reporter left the datelined location, special care must be taken to avoid misleading the reader.

When the subsequent events require a new lead or significant recasting of the story, the dateline should be removed; the reporter's earlier presence on the scene can be indicated in the article as appropriate.

If the later events are included in passing or as a secondary element, the dateline may be retained. However, some explanation is necessary to prevent confusion and to preserve the integrity of the dateline. Normally that explanation is provided in an italic note, indicating tersely when the reporter was at the datelined location and noting that later information has been added.

Background information or other clarifying material, added by the reporter or an editor after the reporter has left the datelined location, does not require explanation unless it refers to later events. Similarly, secondary information added from news agencies or other sources should simply be attributed to the source. It does not require further explanation, as long as it does not involve developments that occurred after the reporter left the scene.

Roundups should follow a rule of reason. If they are written in New York with information from a variety of sources, they should be undatelined and the sources should be specified. A roundup on a Midwestern or a national subject written by a reporter in Chicago would properly carry a Chicago dateline; one that had nothing to do with Chicago but was written by a reporter who just happened to be there should be undatelined.

Occasionally an article about an event in one city may be more effectively written from another, perhaps because it requires the expertise of a specialized reporter remote from the scene. If the writer's locale is visibly relevant — Rome, for example, for an article about a pope's travels elsewhere — the locale may serve as a dateline. Otherwise the article should omit a dateline. In either case, the writer must verify that the event occurred as planned, and specify how the facts were learned.

datelines, unfamiliar. An obscure dateline should be explained high in the article. A deft phrase will usually do: ... *in Indian towns like this one in northern Argentina*.

dates. Use a numeral for the day when it follows the name of the month: *April 1, 1996*. In the rare case of a day that precedes the month (usually in a quotation), use this form: *the 6th of January*. An exception: *the Fourth of July*.

When day, month and year are given together, use a comma after the day, and use a comma or some other punctuation after the year: *He said he left New Jersey on April 16, 1995, to return to Burkina Faso*. When month and year are given without a day, use no comma after the month, and punctuation can usually be omitted after the year: *He said he left New Jersey in April 1995 to sail the Gulf of Kutch*.

Also see months and years, decades, centuries.

day(-). Most compounds formed with *day* are one word, some are hyphenated and some are two words: daybed, daybreak, day care, daydream, daylight, daylong, day room, day school, day student, daytime, day-to-day (adj.), daywork.

Day 1. Capitalize, and use a figure.

day care is not hyphenated, even as a modifier: *day care center*.

Day-Glo is a trademark for fluorescent paints or for the agent that produces their brilliant colors.

daylight time. Lowercase the expression standing alone: *9 a.m., daylight time*. But *Eastern Daylight Time* (and *Central, Mountain* or *Pacific*). Abbreviations: *E.D.T., C.D.T., M.D.T., P.D.T.* Also note the full expression: *daylight saving time*, not *savings*. By act of Congress, the legislatures in states that span time zones may choose to observe daylight time or not. For those that do, the law sets the changeover times as 2 a.m. on the second Sunday in March, when clocks are set forward one hour, and 2 a.m. on the first Sunday in November, when they are set back an hour. Also see time.

days. See dates.

D.C. for District of Columbia. Omit *D.C.* after the city name except when there is a likelihood of confusion with Washington State. Also see district.

D.D. for Doctor of Divinity, an honorary degree that does not justify the use of *the Rev. Dr. or Dr.* with names. Also see Dr.

D-Day. The *D*, an unavoidable redundancy, stands for *Day*. The expression, popularly identified with the Normandy landing on June 6, 1944, is used by military planners to lay out the timetable for any operation before its exact date is chosen. Similarly: *H-Hour*, the *H* standing for *Hour*.

D.D.S. for Doctor of Dental Surgery.

DDT for the insecticide. The full name, ludicrously long, need almost never be used.

de(-). Ordinarily close up compounds formed with *de* unless the prefix is directly followed by an *e* or an uppercase letter: deactivate, debrief, decaffeinated, declassified, de-emphasize, de-escalate, dehumanize, deinstitutionalize, demilitarize, de-Stalinization, detoxify, devaluation.

But hyphenate *de* compounds that would otherwise be hard to read: *de-ice*.

deacon. Deacons are members of one of the three orders of Christian ministry. (Priests or ministers constitute another order and bishops the third.) In the Roman Catholic and Episcopal churches, the diaconate is one stage through which a candidate for the priesthood passes on the way to ordination, and it requires the completion of a course of study. There are also "permanent" and "perpetual" deacons for whom the diaconate is a final position, usually part-time and unpaid. These deacons are able to perform most functions of priests, including the distribution of holy communion, but may not consecrate the elements of bread and wine. In other churches, deacons usually oversee the charitable activities of a congregation, and the post does not require special theological training.

The Episcopal form of address is *the Rev. Ashley B. Daan, deacon of, etc.* In later references, it is *Mr., Mrs., Miss, Ms., Dr.* or *the deacon*, but not *Deacon Daan*. For deacons of the Roman Catholic and other churches, use this form: *Ashley B. Daan, a deacon of,* etc., with later references as in the Episcopal style.

dead(-). Some compounds formed with *dead* are one word, some are hyphenated and some are two words: deadbeat, deadbolt, dead center, dead end (n.), dead-end (adj.), dead heat, deadline, deadlock, deadpan, dead weight, deadwood.

deaf. The term normally indicates someone who cannot hear at all, though some with limited hearing may consider themselves deaf. If possible, cite the extent of the hearing loss. Do not use *deaf-mute*. See disability, disabled; dumb; impaired; mute.

dean. In the Episcopal Church, it is the title for the dean of a cathedral and sometimes for the head of a seminary: *the Very Rev. Lauren M. Barany, dean of the Cathedral of St. John the Divine; Dean Barany; the dean*. Also: *Lauren M. Barany, dean of Harvard College* (or *dean of students*); *Professor Barany* (or *Mr., Dr., Miss, Mrs.* or *Ms. Barany); the dean*. Also see archbishop; bishop; canon; deacon; Most Rev., Rt. Rev.

death(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *death* are two words: deathbed, death camp, death chamber, death house, death knell, death penalty, death rate, death row, death squad, deathtrap, death watch.

death camps. See concentration camps.

debt ratings. The two most widely followed companies that judge the investment risk of long-term debt securities are Moody's Investors Service Inc. and Standard & Poor's Rating Service.

Moody's uses nine broad ratings: *Aaa, Aa, A*, *Baa, Ba, B*, *Caa, Ca* and *C*. Bonds rated *Aaa* are judged to be of the best quality and those rated *C* are regarded as extremely poor. Moody's adds numerical modifiers (1, 2 and 3) to indicate whether a bond is in the upper, middle or lower part of the range: *Aa2; Baa3*.

S.&P. has 10 main grades: *AAA, AA, A*, *BBB, BB, B*, *CCC, CC, C* and *D*. It often uses a plus or minus sign on grades from AA through CCC: *AA–*; *B+*. For a minus symbol, use the en dash (–).

debutante.

Dec. for *December* before numerals (*Dec. 17*), or in charts and tables.

decades should usually be given in numerals: *the 1990s; the mid-1970s; the '90s; the mid-90s*. But when a decade begins a sentence, it must be spelled out (*Nineteen-eighties solutions are no longer adequate*); often that is reason enough to recast the sentence. Decade nicknames are spelled out and capitalized: *Gay Nineties; Roaring Twenties*. Also see plurals and years, decades, centuries.

decimals. Use figures for all numbers that contain decimals: *3.4 inches of rain; 22.25 inches of snow*. If the figure is entirely a decimal, use a zero before the point: *0.3 inch*. An exception: *.22-caliber rifle*. Also see fractions and numbers.

Be wary of false precision in using decimals. Taking a statistic beyond the decimal point is misleading if one or more numbers in the calculation are estimates or rounded with many zeros. For example, when a company reports that its net income rose to $685 million from $545 million, describing the increase as 25.7 percent implies a precision that cannot be genuine because both original numbers are approximations.

decimate originally meant kill every 10th member of a group. But dictionaries agree that it has come to mean destroy or kill a large part of something. Because the notion of one-tenth remains, do not couple *decimate* with other fractions or percentages: *The bomb decimated a quarter of the division*.

decisions. In the United States (in contrast with Britain), they are *made*, not *taken*.

décor.

decry is stilted and archaic-sounding. Substitute verbs include *deplore* and *denounce*.

deductible.

deejay. Use *D.J.* instead for disc jockey.

deep(-), (-)deep. Most but not all compounds formed with *deep* as a prefix are hyphenated: deep-rooted, deep-sea (adj.), deep-seated, deepwater (adj.).

Compounds formed with *deep* as a suffix are hyphenated: ankle-deep, waist-deep.

Deep South.

de facto.

defense. Do not use as a verb, even in sports contexts.

defensible (not *defendable*).

defining moment is a journalistic cliché.

definitions. To avoid seeming to patronize the reader who already knows, place a definition or explanation ahead of the term being defined when possible: *the 20th-century composers Ashley Lamb and Lauren Milori* or *the buildings, land and machinery that make up a company's fixed assets* (rather than *Ashley Lamb and Lauren Milori, 20th-century composers*, or *a company's fixed assets – its buildings, land and machinery*). The explanations slip by unnoticed because they occur before the reader realizes what term is being defined.

deformed. Use more specific, less disparaging terms in referring to disabilities. Also see cripple, crippled; disability, disabled; handicapped; impaired.

defuse, diffuse. Similar pronunciation may lead to spelling confusion: The verb for removing danger is *defuse* — that is, *remove a fuse. Diffuse* can be an adjective meaning *spread out* or, in the case of a speech, *wordy;* it can also be a verb meaning *spread*.

degrees. Many academic degrees are listed separately. Also see temperature.

deity. Capitalize terms like *God, Holy Ghost* (or *Holy Spirit*), *Son of Man, the Supreme Being* (but: *a god; gods; a supreme being*). In references to God, Jesus or Allah, in keeping with current practice even in most church publications, lowercase personal pronouns (*he, him, his, thee, thou, thine*) as well as the relative pronouns (*who, whom, whose*, etc.).

déjà vu. In precise writing, the term refers to the *illusion* of reliving an event that has in fact not occurred before. The looser use, to mean re-experiencing a real event, is trite.

DeKalb Avenue for the thoroughfare in Brooklyn and Queens.

Delancey Street (in New York City).

Delaware. Abbreviate as *Del*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

delegate (diplomatic). Lowercase and use the preposition *to*: *Lynn B. Agneau, United States delegate to the Conference on the Law of the Sea; Ms. Agneau; the delegate*. Confine *delegate* and *chief delegate* to members of temporary or provisional delegations, like those at the annual General Assembly of the United Nations. For permanent bodies, use chief representative, representative and, when appropriate, ambassador.

delegate at large. No hyphens.

demagogy.

démarche. It means a diplomatic maneuver, but consider a more conversational synonym.

demi(-). Compounds formed with *demi* are one word: demigod, demimonde, demitasse.

Democrat (n.), **Democratic** (adj.), for the party and its members. Do not use *Democrat* as a modifier (*the Democrat party*); that construction is used by opponents to disparage the party.

Democratic national chairman (or *state* or *county chairman* or *chairwoman*). *Lindsay Kuzu, Democratic national* (or *state* or *county*) *chairman; the national* (or *state* or *county*) *chairwoman*.

Democratic National Committee (or *State* or *County Committee*); *the national* (or *state* or *county*) *committee; the committee*.

Democratic National Convention (or *State Convention*); *the national* (or *state*) *convention; the convention*.

Democratic Party.

Democratic Republic of Congo, the. Be careful to distinguish this country from the neighboring one with a similar name. For details, see Congo.

denouement.

department. Capitalize it in the name of a government agency, national, state or municipal: *State Department; Conservation Department; Police Department*. For most federal departments, the briefer form *State Department* is preferred to *Department of State*. Except in quotations, do not use a single word like *State* or *Justice* as shorthand to mean *State Department* or *Justice Department*.

Do not capitalize the names of academic or commercial departments: *physics department; English department; customer service department*.

The abbreviation (*Dept*.) may be used in charts and tables, but not in news articles. It may also be used in headlines, but only in a governmental proper name: *Justice Dept*.; *State Dept*.; *Conservation Dept*.; *Police Dept*.; *Fire Dept*.; *etc.*

depose. The legal term means testify under oath or question under oath. Usually those phrases are more comfortable for readers. But *deposition*, for a sworn statement, is clear enough.

depression. A *depression* is a period of decreased business activity, falling prices and widespread unemployment. It is longer and more severe than a recession. Capitalize the word when it refers to the Depression of the 1930s, which is also called *the Great Depression*.

Dept. See department.

Deputy Chief *Leslie M. Agnello; Chief Agnello; the chief.*

deputy. Capitalize only when it is part of a title preceding a name: *Deputy Prime Minister Merrill D. Lamb; the deputy prime minister*. Because most Americans think of *deputy* as a synonym for *assistant*, it is usually best to avoid the term in the foreign sense of *member of Parliament*. Also see titles.

Deputy Inspector *Pat T. Daan; Inspector Daan; the inspector*.

de rigueur. Both *u*'s are de rigueur.

desegregation, integration. The words are not synonymous. *Desegregation* means ending the separation of racial or ethnic groups. *Integration* means bringing them into full, equal association.

desert, dessert. *Desert* is the term for a barren region, or for something deserved: *They got their just deserts. Dessert* is the last course of a meal.

desiccate (dry out).

design, as a verb, suggests the shaping of physical things. For intangibles like laws and policies, more precise substitutes include *intend, devise* and *plan*: *The law is intended to reduce trade deficits*.

-designate. *Ambassador-designate Ashley T. Lamb; Secretary-designate Dana U. Agnello*. But other phrasing is less awkward: *Ashley T. Lamb, the ambassador-designate; Dana U. Agnello, who was nominated as an ambassador last month*. In cap-and-lowercase headlines, capitalize *Designate*.

Detective *Hilary P. Kuzu; Detective Kuzu; the detective*. (In the New York City Police Department, detectives are usually assigned to detective squads or bureaus, not to individual precincts.)

détente, a diplomatic term, is serviceable in both articles and headlines, but also stuffy. *Easing of tension* or an equivalent phrase may be more conversational. Also see rapprochement.

determine usually implies the truth of what is being reported: *The police determined that the wounds were self-inflicted*. Neutral terms include *said* and *concluded*.

"Deutschlandlied" ("Song of Germany"), the German national anthem. The title "Deutschland Über Alles" was dropped after World War II.

devil. Capitalize it in references to Satan, but lowercase *devils* and *a devil*.

devout. An overused word, in clichés like *devout Catholic*. Without knowing the writer's criteria, the reader cannot tell whether this means simply churchgoing or something less, or more.

Dexedrine is a trademark.

Dhahran (in Saudi Arabia).

Dhaka (formerly *Dacca*) is the capital of Bangladesh.

diabetes. When possible, differentiate between *Type 1* diabetes (also known as *insulin-dependent diabetes*) and *Type 2* (also known as *non-insulin-dependent diabetes*). Type 1 diabetes is also called juvenile diabetes, but because it is found in many adults, that name is misleading. A major research and fund-raising organization is, however, the *Juvenile Diabetes Foundation*.

diagnose. The disease, not the patient, is diagnosed. Do not write: *She was diagnosed with cancer*. But also avoid stilted constructions like this: *She was given a diagnosis of cancer*. Consider simpler alternatives: *She learned she had cancer; Tests showed she had cancer; Her doctor told her she had cancer*.

dial (v.) still means enter a telephone number.

dialect. The writer should consult an editor, and both should hesitate, before trying to render dialect in direct quotations. The results are likely to be subjective (since they depend on the home region of speaker and listener) and will strike at least some readers as patronizing. After all, national leaders and corporate executives have been known to say “gonna” and “hadda” and perhaps “y’all.” Even writers with the keenest ears and most thorough notes must satisfy themselves that readers will understand why a class or group is being tarred selectively with quirks. Usually the decision should be that word order and turns of phrase paint a clearer picture than eccentric spelling. A classic Times article captured the Lower East Side of Manhattan when it quoted an onlooker, spelling intact, about the inevitable hot dog vendor at a political campaign appearance: *“Sure. For Rockefeller he gives discounts.”*

diarrhea.

diaspora. Capitalize in references to the epoch in which the Jews were dispersed after the Babylonian exile, or to the body of people who were dispersed then. Lowercase in other references to scattering of national or ethnic groups.

dictionaries. Set their names in roman type, without quotation marks; capitalize the principal words. See spelling.

die-hard (n. and adj.).

dieresis. See accent marks.

diesel.

Diet. It is the Japanese legislature. But except in unusually detailed references to the system or passages conveying local color, *Parliament* is a more accessible term for nonspecialized readers.

dietitian (not *dietician*).

different. To satisfy the most exacting readers, use *different* with *from*, in front of a noun: *Newspaper writing is different from poetry*. When *different* unavoidably figures in a comparison with a full clause (including its own verb), *different than* is accepted by many authorities: *Newspaper writing is different than it was 25 years ago*. But if a graceful change can convert the phrasing to allow *different from*, it should be made: *Newspaper writing is different from what it was 25 years ago*.

The adjective is unneeded in a construction like this: *She acted for three different reasons*.

diffuse, defuse. Similar pronunciation may lead to spelling confusion: *Diffuse* can be an adjective meaning *spread out* or, in the case of a speech, *wordy;* it can also be a verb meaning *spread*. The verb for removing danger is *defuse* — literally, remove a fuse.

dilemma does not mean simply a problem; it means a choice between disagreeable alternatives.

dilettante(s).

DiMaggio Highway. This commemorative name for the West Side Highway, in Manhattan, should be used only for special effect.

dimensions, measurements, weights and proportion. When they consist of two or more elements, or when a decimal is used, state them in figures, even those below 10: *2 by 4; 7 feet 3 inches by 10 feet 5 inches* (no commas); *5 feet 10 inches tall; 6-foot-5; 6 years 5 months 13 days old; 8 pounds 3 ounces; 5 parts gin 1 part vermouth; 2 to 1; odds of 4 to 3; 8-to-1 shot; 50-50*. Also: *2½ by 4; 15½-foot tree*. But: *a two-by-four* (for the piece of lumber).

When giving a single dimension or measurement below 10, spell it out, even when it includes an ordinary fraction: *three and a quarter miles long; six feet tall; eight-pound baby; etc.* In most contexts, a spelled fraction should be expressed in the conversational form *three and a half*, not *three and one-half*.

But with a decimal: *6.5-inch snowfall*.

Diners Club, a trademark, has no apostrophe.

diphtheria.

director. Do not capitalize: *Tracy J. Bildots, director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation; Stacy W. Daan, a director of General Motors*. Also see titles.

Director General *Ashley B. Karitsa; Director General Karitsa; the director general*. No hyphens in this or similar titles, like *secretary general*.

disability, disabled. Mention disabilities only when their pertinence will be clear to the reader. It is acceptable to speak of someone's physical or mental *disability*, but more specific descriptions are preferred: *She cannot walk because of multiple sclerosis*. When possible, treat *disabled* as an adjective or a verb. As a noun (*the disabled*) it may seem to equate widely diverse people and undervalue the productive parts of their lives. Also see cripple, crippled; handicapped; impaired.

disburse (lay out money), **disperse** (scatter or spread out).

disc, disk. Use *disc* in references to phonograph records (*disc jockey, discography*), optical and laser-based devices (*compact disc*), farm implements (*disc harrow*) and brakes (*disc brake*). Use *disk* in references to the magnetic storage devices used with computers (*hard disk*) and to the fiber and cartilage between the vertebrae (*slipped disk*).

discharge. See fire, firing.

discreet, discrete. *Discreet* means prudent, or trustworthy with secrets. *Discrete* means separate or standing alone.

disinterested, uninterested. *Disinterested* means unbiased or impartial; *uninterested* means bored or indifferent.

disk. See disc, disk.

dismiss. See fire, firing.

dispatch. See article.

distances. Many common units of distance used in the English-speaking countries, as well as many metric units, are listed separately. Also see metric system.

district. Capitalize in a name: *Second Election District; 10th Assembly District; 17th Congressional District; District of Columbia*. The abbreviation (*Dist.*) may be used in charts and tables, but not in articles or headlines. *The District*, standing alone as a synonym for the District of Columbia, conveys an undesired insider flavor for readers outside Washington. Reserve it for special contexts warranting that tone. See D.C.

Also lowercase in expressions like *garment district, flower district* and *Flatiron district*.

District Attorney *Lynn R. Berenich; District Attorney Berenich; the district attorney; Ms. Berenich*. The plural is *district attorneys*. Also see D.A. and titles.

District of Columbia. See D.C.

dived (not *dove*) is the past tense of *dive*.

Divine Liturgy.

division (corporate or governmental). Lowercase: *Chevrolet division of General Motors; antitrust division of the Justice Department*.

division (military). Spell out numerical designations through the ninth and then use figures: *Fifth Division; 34th Division; the division*. In later references, the name of an infantry division may be informally shortened by dropping the word *infantry*: *First Division* instead of *First Infantry Division*. But never, for a division, simply *the First Infantry;* that wording signifies a regiment, now ordinarily defunct but commemorated in the naming of separate battalions (*Fifth Battalion, First Infantry*). See regiment.

divorcé(e). The term conveys a whiff of censure. Write instead — and only when pertinent — that a man or woman has been divorced or that a previous marriage ended in divorce. Also see men and women.

D.J. (not *deejay*), for disc jockey.

D.M.D. for Doctor of Dental Medicine. Also see Dr.

DNA may stand alone in most references for *deoxyribonucleic acid*, the material in a cell nucleus that contains the genetic code.

Dobbs Ferry (in Westchester County, N.Y.).

dock(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *dock* are one word: dock hand, dockmaster, dockside, dockyard.

doctor. See Dr.

doctorates (earned and honorary). See Dr.

dollars and cents. Sums of dollars and cents are usually given in figures: *5 cents; 25 cents; $10; $12.25; $10,629*. But: *$1 million; $3.6 million; $895 million; $1.53 billion; etc.* Also: *$3 million to $6 million* (not *$3 to $6 million*); *$300,000 to $1 million*. In the simple adjective form, do not use a hyphen: *$2.5 million investment*. But hyphens must be used in longer modifiers, like these: *a $10-to-11-billion increase; a $2-million-a-year job*.

When it is desirable to leave sums in the millions or billions unrounded, they are expressed in the ordinary way: *$1,913,658* or *$5,937,600,823*.

Although those forms should be followed in general, it is sometimes appropriate to spell out indefinite and round sums: *a million-dollar budget; a million and a half dollars; half a million; a hundred dollars, more or less; etc.*

With money, in any currency, the rule of spelling below 10 does not apply: *4 cents; $4*. The cent symbol (*3¢*; *26¢*) may be used in headlines, financial quotations and tables or charts, but *cent* or *cents* should be spelled out in news articles: *9 cents apiece; 26 cents a dozen; 1-cent tax*. (But: *He said he would not give them one cent*.)

Use apostrophes in expressions like *a million dollars' worth* and *a penny's worth* (they are possessive because they mean, in effect, the worth *of a penny*). But drop the apostrophe when using the currency symbol: *$5 million worth*.

All these guides apply to sums of money both in articles and in headlines. But in headlines it is usually better to round an uneven sum that appears in the article (*$1.9 Million*, rather than *$1,913,658*) unless the exactness is important. The dollar sign may be omitted as a last resort to save a good headline that would not fit otherwise: *4.9-Billion Budget*. (Note the hyphen, which is used in the modifier form when the dollar sign is omitted.)

Also see money; numbers; currencies.

Dolley Madison was the wife of James. *Dolly Madison* is an ice cream and a bakery.

Dom Pérignon.

door(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *door* are one word: doorbell, doorjamb, doorkeeper, door key, doorknob, doorman, doormat, door prize, doorsill, doorstep, door-to-door (adj.), door to door (adv.), doorway.

dos and don'ts. Use no apostrophes to form the plurals of "words as words" – that is, words being discussed as objects, apart from what they ordinarily symbolize. Also: *ifs, ands or buts; yeses and noes; ayes and nays*.

Dostoyevsky, Fyodor. But in most references, *Dostoyevsky* will do.

dot-com is a business colloquialism for an Internet company.

double(-). Some compounds formed with *double* are one word, some are hyphenated and some are two words: double agent, double-barreled, double-blind, double boiler, double-breasted, double-check, double cross (n.), double-cross (v.), double-dealing, double dipping, double-dyed, double-edged, double entendre, double-faced, double fault (n.), double-fault (v.), doubleheader, double jeopardy, double-jointed, double-park, double-quick, double standard, double talk.

doughnut (not *donut*).

Dowager *Marchioness of Bute; the Lady Bute; the marchioness*. Capitalize the first reference as if it were a full name. A dowager peeress in Britain is the earliest surviving widow of a holder of the title. A more recent widow uses her given name before the title: *Alice Marchioness of Bute; Lady Bute; the marchioness*. Also see peers.

Dow Jones & Company. It publishes The Wall Street Journal and other publications, mostly business-related. It also operates Dow Jones Newswires, Dow Jones Interactive Publishing (including a publications archive) and other business news ventures. It compiles the *Dow Jones industrial average*, the *Dow Jones transportation average*, the *Dow Jones utility average* and the *Dow Jones composite average*, among other indexes. In later references and in headlines, the industrial average may be referred to as *the Dow*. In datelines: *RECIFE, Brazil (Dow Jones) – etc*. Use this credit line on undatelined articles:

By Dow Jones

down(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *down* are one word: downbeat, downcast, downdraft, downfall, downgrade, downhearted, downhill, download, down payment, downpour, downright, downspout, downstage, downstairs, downstream, downswing, down-to-earth, downtown, downtrodden, downturn, downwind. But resist downplay.

Down East (n., adj. and adv.). In, to or into New England, especially coastal Maine. The term alludes to *downwind* sailing, since the prevailing coastal wind is from the southwest.

downplay. An ungainly leftover from the age of penny-a-word telegram economies. Make it *play down*.

Down syndrome (not *Down's*). Also see disability, disabled; retardation, retarded.

Downtown Brooklyn.

Dr. should be used in all references for physicians, dentists and veterinarians whose practice is their primary current occupation, or who work in a closely related field, like medical writing, research or pharmaceutical manufacturing: *Dr. Alex E. Baranek; Dr. Baranek; the doctor*. (Those who practice only incidentally, or not at all, should be called Mr., Ms., Miss or Mrs.)

Anyone else with an earned doctorate, like a Ph.D. degree, may get the title, but only if it is germane to the holder's primary current occupation (academic, for example, or laboratory research). Reporters should confirm the degree holder's preference. For a Ph.D., the title should appear only in second and later references.

Do not use the title for someone whose doctorate is honorary.

draconian. Lowercase, except in references to ancient Greece.

draft (not *draught*), for a current of air. Also: *draft beer; draft horse; draftsman*.

dramatic means *like a drama, theatrical, filled with conflict and emotion*. So there cannot be, for example, *a dramatic change in wheat yields*.

Drew University (in Madison, N.J.).

drop-kick (n., v., adj.), **drop-kicking**.

drunk. *He was drunk* (when the adjective follows the noun). But *a drunken driver; drunken driving*.

Druse, not *Druze*, for members of the religious sect who live mainly in the mountains of Syria, Lebanon and Israel.

dry dock (n.), **dry-dock** (v.).

dub. In the sense of naming or labeling (*They dubbed it the Curriculum Outreach Plan, or COP*), the overfancy word is best left for knighthood ceremonies.

duchess. Capitalize the first reference as a full name: *the Duchess of Lambsford; the duchess*. No given name, and never *Lady*. Also see peers.

dueling, duelist, with a single *l*.

due to. Careful writers avoid this phrase unless *due* functions as an adjective, with a specific noun to modify: *The shutdown was due to snow* (with *shutdown* as the modified noun). But not *The schools were closed due to snow;* make it *because of* snow instead. As a test, mentally ask each time: "*What* was due to an illness [or an emergency, etc.]?" If the sentence offers no single noun to answer the *what* question, use *because of*. At the start of a sentence (notably the infamous *Because of an editing error*), the needed phrase is nearly always *because of*.

duke. Capitalize the first reference as a full name: *the Duke of Lambsford; the duke*. No given name, and never *Lord*. Also see peers.

Duma (the lower house of the Russian legislature). Except in unusually detailed references to the system or in passages conveying local color, *Parliament* is a more accessible term for nonspecialized readers.

dumb has become a term of disparagement. Do not use it for someone who cannot speak. Instead use *mute*, or say the person *cannot speak*, preferably specifying why. Also see deaf and disability, disabled.

dumbfound, dumbfounded.

Dumpster is a trademark for a trash hauling bin.

du Pont, duPont, DuPont. The full, formal name of the company is *E. I. du Pont de Nemours & Company*. In later references, *the DuPont Company*, or just *DuPont*. In any article that deals with the company only peripherally, the shorter forms may be used even on first reference. The trademark for its products is *DuPont*. The company was founded by Éleuthère Irénée du Pont. Many of his descendants spell their name *duPont*. In either form, the particle *du* in the personal name should be lowercased except when it begins a sentence or a headline. Also see personal names and nicknames.

Dupont Circle (in Washington).

Düsseldorf.

Dutch, Dutchman(men) and **Dutchwoman(women)** for the people of the Netherlands. Also *Netherlander(s)*, but never *Hollander(s)*. The adjectives are *Dutch* and *Netherlands*.

Dutchess County (in New York), with a *t*.

DVD for a digital versatile disc, a digital videodisc or the technology.

dwarf(s) (n.). Use this as the usual term for people with a genetic condition resulting in unusually short stature. *Midget*, once used to describe dwarfs of otherwise normal proportions, is now widely considered offensive and should be avoided. *Little people*, while preferred by many, suggests euphemism and may be confusing in many contexts.

dynasties. *The Ming dynasty; the dynasty*. In China, the dynasties include *Shang, Zhou, Han, Tang, Song, Yuan, Ming* and *Qing*. Also see Chinese names.

Reserve *dynasty* to mean a significant period (a few generations, surely more than two) in which control of a government or region remained in the same family. Looser uses, to mean any family-run company, are trite.

E

each other, one another. Two people look at *each other;* more than two look at *one another*. In the possessive: *each other's books*, never *each others'*.

Earl *Lamb; Lord Lamb; the earl*. Never use a given name. When the title is territorial, capitalize the first reference as if it were a full name: *the Earl of Lambsford; Lord Lambsford; the earl*. In non-British systems, the equivalent title is *count*, used in first and later references. Also see peers.

earned-income tax credit.

earth, moon, sun. Generally lowercase *earth;* capitalize when used as the proper name of the planet. Lowercase *moon* and *sun* in all references.

earthquakes. Seismologists now usually express the intensity of an earthquake in *moment magnitude*, a measure of how much of the earth moved at the moment of the shock, and how far. (Older magnitude scales, including the Richter and the Mercalli, now mostly disused, reflected local effect but not necessarily the overall severity of a quake.) Early reports of an earthquake should refer to a *preliminary magnitude*, based on the best available estimates: *The quake had a preliminary magnitude of 6.5*. For most large earthquakes, seismologists revise the early estimate and produce a more precise figure, which can be described simply as the *magnitude*. Do not use the term *Richter scale*.

The moment magnitude scale is logarithmic: An earthquake with a magnitude of 6 releases 32 times as much energy as a magnitude 5 quake, and about 1,000 times as much as a magnitude 4 quake.

It is imprecise to compare quakes measured on different scales. The San Francisco earthquake of 1906, for example, was 8.3 on the Richter scale, but is calculated at 7.9 on the moment magnitude scale.

The word for a shock is *temblor*, not *tremblor*.

earth satellites. Designate them with Arabic numerals and without quotation marks: *GOES 7; DFH 3; Sputnik 5; etc.* Also see rockets.

east. Capitalize when referring to the region of the United States, to Asia, to the Communist bloc during the Cold War or to a more local region so known: *East Texas*. Lowercase as a point of the compass.

East Bank, West Bank (of the Jordan River). Capitalize so long as the terms have political significance. Do not hyphenate the words as modifiers when they are capitalized.

East Berlin, West Berlin. See Berlin.

Eastchester, East Chester. *Eastchester*, N.Y., is in Westchester County. *Eastchester* and *Eastchester Bay* are neighborhoods in the Bronx. *East Chester*, N.Y., is in Orange County.

east coast. Capitalize when referring to the region of the United States lying along the shoreline of the Atlantic Ocean; lowercase when referring to the actual shoreline.

East End (of London or Long Island).

eastern. Capitalize when referring to the eastern region of the United States, to Asia or to the countries that supported Communism in the ideological division of the world: *Eastern Europe*. But: *eastern New York; eastern France; eastern half; etc.*

Easterner. Capitalize when referring to a native or resident of the Eastern United States.

Eastern Daylight Time, Eastern Standard Time (E.D.T., E.S.T.). See time.

Eastern Hemisphere; *the hemisphere*.

Eastern Orthodoxy. A branch of Christianity that came into being after the Great Schism of 1054, it consists of 11 national churches and four patriarchates, which cover broader regions. The Ecumenical Patriarchate of Constantinople has jurisdiction over the Greek Orthodox Archdiocese of America. In the United States there is no single Orthodox church; rather there are several dozen separate ethnic churches, including the Orthodox Church in America and the Greek Orthodox Archdiocese. The nine largest cooperate through the Standing Conference of Canonical Bishops. Also see Eastern Rite.

Eastern Rite (Roman Catholicism). It is a group of ethnic churches that accept the ecclesiastical authority of the Roman pope but follow an Eastern liturgy. Some have patriarchs. They operate with considerable independence, but any major decision, like a change in canon law, requires papal approval. Examples include the Ukrainian Catholic Church, the Syrian Catholic Church, the Greek Catholic Church and the Melkite Church. Also See Eastern Orthodoxy.

Eastern Seaboard, the region of the United States lying along the Atlantic coast. Also: *the Atlantic Seaboard*.

Eastern Shore. The area in Maryland and Virginia that is east of Chesapeake Bay.

East Germany. See Germany.

East Hampton, Easthampton. It is *East Hampton* in Suffolk County, N.Y., and in Connecticut. (Spellings for nearby Suffolk towns differ: *Bridgehampton, Southampton, Westhampton*.) But: *Easthampton*, in Massachusetts.

East Meadow (in Nassau County, N.Y.).

Eastport (in Suffolk County, N.Y.).

East Side. Capitalize it as a regularly used designation for a section of a city. In London: *East End*.

East Texas.

easygoing.

éclat.

E. coli is the abbreviation commonly used in place of *Escherichia coli*, the species name for bacteria that contaminate food and water. In the biologists' designation

E. coli O157:H7, the character preceding the numerals is a letter O, not a zero. Also see genus and species.

ecology, ecological. These words refer to the interdependence between living organisms and the environment. They are not synonymous with *environment* and *environmental*, which refer to conditions and influences that affect an organism.

e-commerce, for electronic marketing and ordering on the Internet. In a headline: *E-Commerce;* at the start of a sentence: *E-commerce*.

Economic Message. The president's and, if it is formally so called, a governor's or mayor's.

Ecstasy. Uppercase the nickname of the hallucinogenic drug known scientifically as MDMA.

Ecuadorean(s).

ecumenical council. See First Vatican Council and Second Vatican Council.

ecumenical patriarch. See Eastern Orthodoxy.

edgy. Use the adjective to mean tense or nervous, but avoid the meaning of *far out* or *on the edge;* that sense gained cliché status almost overnight.

edition(s), issue. *Issue* and *edition*, for print newspapers, are not interchangeable. An *issue* means all the copies printed on a given day. There may be several *editions* of one *issue*. When referring to the full run of one day's paper use *the Nov. 5 issue* or simply *The New York Times of Nov. 5*. In citing only part of a day's run, use terms like *first edition, last edition, early editions, late editions* or if necessary *some copies of the first edition of Nov. 5*.

With the prevalence of digital publication, references to editions and issues are often unnecessary: *The change was first reported on Friday by The Boston Globe*.

editorial, news, opinion. In references to newspapers, reserve *news* for the factual reporting and analysis by the news staff; reserve *editorial* for the opinion sections and their staffs. The distinction cannot be applied, though, to magazines, which use *editorial staff* and *editorial content* to mean everything that is not advertising, nor to many digital publications. When there is risk of confusion, use the term *opinion*, or *opinion section*, to differentiate this material from *news*.

editor in chief. No hyphens.

editors' notes acknowledge (and rectify, when possible) lapses of fairness, balance or perspective – faults more subtle or less concrete than factual errors, though often as grave and sometimes graver. Examples might include The Times's failure to seek a comment from someone denounced or accused in its columns, or the omission of one party's argument in a controversy, resulting from haste in fitting the article into too small a space. Or the editors may have discovered that a freelancer, assigned to review a book, failed to divulge a conflict of interest.

The possessive is always plural: *editors' note*. A note is published only after consultation with senior masthead editors to ensure that it is as fair to the staff as to readers and to the people mentioned. The purpose is to restore perspective while assuring readers that The Times's slip did not typify its standards or policy.

The note begins by recalling the date, placement and content of the faulty article, in a sentence or two. In another few phrases, it then summarizes the passage that created the problem. It goes on to state the fault, preferably in a terse way that sheds light on The Times's journalistic practice without preaching: *In fairness, the company should have been asked for its response to the accusation*. If possible, the note then supplies what was lacking earlier: *On Monday the company denied that its prices were out of line, citing the unusual cost of its raw materials*.

Another example: *Ms. Agnello's own book was reviewed unfavorably last year by the author she was reviewing. The Times has a policy against assigning a review in those circumstances. Ms. Agnello says she was unaware of it*.

E.D.T., E.S.T. for Eastern Daylight Time and Eastern Standard Time. See time.

E. E. Cummings (not *e. e. cummings*). Except in his poetry, he used conventional capitalization.

E.E.O.C. for the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission.

effect. See affect, effect.

e.g., representing two Latin words, *exempli gratia*, means *for example*. Not to be confused with *i.e.*

egg roll.

Eglin Air Force Base (not *Elgin*), in Florida.

Egypt in all references to the Arab Republic of Egypt.

Eid al-Adha, the Islamic Feast of Sacrifice, is celebrated 70 days after Ramadan, the holy month of daytime fasting.

Eid al-Fitr is the Islamic festival celebrated at the end of Ramadan, the holy month of daytime fasting.

E.I. du Pont de Nemours & Company. See du Pont, duPont, Du Pont.

1800s, 19th century. In almost all contexts, use numerals for centuries after the ninth. Also: *mid-1800s; mid-19th century*. When unavoidable, at the start of a sentence or for special effect: *eighteen-hundreds*. Also see years, decades, centuries.

either (... or). When *either* is the subject, the verb is singular: *Either of the cars is available*. When *either* and *or* link singular terms, the verb is singular: *Either the car or the truck is available*. When *either* and *or* link a singular term and a plural one, put the plural term second and use a plural verb: *Either the car or the trucks are available*. If the mixture of terms and verbs gets awkward, recast the sentence: *The car is available, and so are the trucks*.

In an *either/or* construction, the terms that follow the two words should be parallel in form and purpose: *The chef bakes either pies or cakes daily* (not *either bakes pies or cakes*). The same principle applies to *neither/nor* and *both/and*.

élan.

elderly. Use this vague term with care. Some readers of any age may object to the label. More specific phrases are preferable: *people in their 70s, people over 80*. For general references, consider *older adults* or, sparingly, *seniors*. In writing about medicine or social policy, try to specify whose definition is being used. Also see senior; senior citizen.

-elect. *President-elect Lauren F. Cordero; Vice President-elect Dale C. Agneau; Morgan D. Baranek, the governor-elect; the senator-elect*. In cap-and-lowercase headlines, *Elect* is also capitalized.

Election Day. But: *election night*.

election district. See district.

Electoral College. But: *electoral vote(s)*.

electrical, electronic. A light bulb and a motor are *electrical*. A television set and a computer are *electronic;* the term denotes a controlled flow of electrons through a vacuum, a gas or a semiconductor.

elements. See chemical elements and formulas.

11th hour. But: *11th-hour* (modifier preceding a noun).

elite, elitism, elitist. No accents.

Elizabeth Marine Terminal. The shipping depot in New Jersey is *the Elizabeth Marine Terminal*, not *Port Elizabeth*. Its formal name, *the Elizabeth Port Authority Marine Terminal*, should be reserved for articles that deal centrally with its structure.

ellipsis. The symbol for an omission should appear rarely in the news columns because it diverts attention to the editing process. (See quotations.) But ellipses are used freely in verbatim texts and excerpts.

The ellipsis consists of three periods. To prevent a line break from occurring between them, use the ellipsis symbol rather than typing them individually. Use an ordinary space before and after the three dots. If an omission falls at the end of a sentence, place the regular period right after the last word, followed by a space, then the ellipsis: *All the news that's fit. …*

To mark the omission of one or more whole paragraphs, use the symbol the same way, at the end of the last paragraph before the deleted material.

Ellis Island.

“El Malei Rahamim” (“Lord Full of Mercy”), a Jewish memorial prayer.

Elmsford (in Westchester County, N.Y.).

El Niño, La Niña. *El Niño* is the periodic climate phenomenon in which tropical Pacific Ocean waters become unusually warm. It causes changes in global weather patterns, including increased rainfall in some areas and drought in others. South Americans applied the name (the Child, an allusion to the Christ Child) because the change occurs around Christmas.

La Niña is the periodic phenomenon in which tropical Pacific Ocean waters become unusually cold. This causes changes in global weather patterns, including temperatures colder than normal in some regions and warmer than normal in others. The nickname, Little Girl, was coined to contrast with *El Niño* (as was another, less used nickname, *El Viejo* – the Old Man).

For euphony, omit *El* or *La* when any such term directly follows *a* or *the*.

El Salvador. The capital is *San Salvador* and the people are *Salvadorans*.

Élysée Palace, the.

email (no hyphen) is acceptable in all references, as a verb, noun or modifier. But: *e-books* and *e-commerce;* avoid a profusion of such formations.

Emancipation. Uppercase in references to the freeing of the slaves in the United States.

embarrassment.

embassy. Lowercase when standing alone. But: *the United States Embassy; the French Embassy; the Argentine and Chilean Embassies; the United States Embassies in Argentina and Chile*.

emcee. Use *M.C.* instead for *master of ceremonies*.

emergency medical workers is acceptable in all references to ambulance crews. It is the preferred term to use when it is unclear whether those in a given situation are emergency medical technicians or paramedics, who have more advanced training. Avoid the jargon *first responder*, except in quotations.

emeritus. It should be *Dr. Dana T. Arniotis, professor emeritus of physics*. Or *emeritus professor of physics*, a smoother phrase because it keeps *professor of* intact. But never *professor of physics emeritus*. Dictionaries accept *emeritus* for both men and women, but *emerita* may be used for a woman who prefers it.

emigrate, immigrate. *Emigrate* refers to departure from a homeland; *immigrate* refers to arrival in a new country. Either word can be followed by *from* or *to*, depending on the context: When focusing on life or conditions in the old country, write, *She emigrated from Sweden* or *She emigrated to Canada*. When focusing on life or conditions in the new country, write, *She immigrated from Sweden* or *She immigrated to Canada*.

The related words *emigrant* and *immigrant* are both acceptable, though *emigrant* is rare. An *emigrant* leaves a homeland; an *immigrant* arrives in a new country. Again, the use in a phrase depends on the context. If the focus is on the old country, write, *She is an emigrant from Sweden* or *She is an emigrant to Canada*. But if the focus is on the new country, write, *She is an immigrant from Sweden* or *She is an immigrant to Canada*.

Also see illegal immigrant.

émigré (masc. and fem.). The word connotes departure from a homeland for political reasons.

eminent, imminent. *Eminent* means prominent. *Imminent* means impending. (*Immanent*, a theological term rarely seen in news copy, refers to the presence of God in the universe.)

emir. See Arab names and titles.

emirates. See United Arab Emirates.

Emmy Award(s); *the award(s); the Emmy(s)*. Articles dealing centrally with the awards should mention that they are presented by the Academy of Television Arts and Sciences.

empanel. Spell it *impanel* instead.

Emperor *Akihito; the emperor.*

Empire State (New York State's nickname).

emporiums (not *emporia*).

Empress *Michiko; the empress.*

empty-handed.

enamored. Use preposition *of* or *with*.

encyclical. In the Roman Catholic Church, an encyclical is a formal communication from the pope to the bishops. Encyclicals usually deal with doctrine.

encyclopedia. Exception: *Encyclopaedia Britannica*, but only when its full title is used. Use encyclopedia titles without quotation marks; capitalize the principal words.

ended, ending. Use *ended* for the past, *ending* for the future: *the weather for the period ended last Tuesday; the weather for the period ending next Friday*.

energy, power. In careful writing about electricity, *power* is the combined quantity and force of electricity, measured in *watts; energy* is power measured over time as it is used, moved or stored. Energy is usually measured in *kilowatt-hours*, which are the basis for metering and billing electric utility customers. See kilowatts, kilowatt-hours.

Use *energy* if there is [a] definite time span: *Scientists reported that the energy saved each year will eliminate the need for 3,000 tons of coal; The bomb released enough energy in one second to light New York City for a year; The new solar panel produces enough power to run a large water pump; Power consumption doubled when the factory expanded.*

enforce. But: *reinforce*.

England. Use this name, not Britain, after the names of cities and towns when a locating term is needed. Also see United Kingdom.

English, Englishman(men) and **Englishwoman(women)** for the people of England, but not for the people of the rest of the United Kingdom. See British, Briton(s).

enlisted military ranks are listed separately. Also see military ranks.

enormity, enormousness. *Enormity* refers to horror or great wickedness; *enormousness* refers to size: *the enormity of the crime; the enormousness of the national debt*.

Ensign *Chris J. Kikondoo; Ensign Kikondoo; the ensign*.

ensure, insure. *Ensure* means guarantee or make safe: *The hit ensured a Yankee victory. Insure* means buy or issue insurance: *She insured her camera against theft*.

entr'acte.

entree.

entrepôt.

enumeration. When spelling out ordinal numbers before the items in a list or series, write *first, second, third*, etc., not *firstly, secondly*, *etc.*

When introducing a series of items that begin with bullets (•), use a complete sentence, sparing readers the need to glance backward repeatedly to complete the thought (*The bill also includes these provisions*: ...).

envelop (v.), **envelope** (n.).

environment, environmental. These words refer to the conditions and influences that affect an organism. They are not synonymous with *ecology* and *ecological*, which refer to the interdependence between the organism and the environment.

E.P.A. for the Environmental Protection Agency (federal).

épée.

epic (adj.) means heroic and majestic, or legendary in importance. Bestow such hyperbole sparingly.

epilepsy, epileptic. A person with epilepsy should preferably be described that way. Use *epileptic* as an adjective (*an epileptic seizure*). Some people with the condition object to being called *epileptics*, believing that the label submerges their identity in a single aspect of their lives. Also see disability, disabled.

episcopal. Capitalize the adjective in references to the Episcopal Church and its members and clergy: *an Episcopal minister*. Use *Episcopalian(s)* for its members, as a noun only. The lowercase term *episcopal* refers in general to bishops, of any faith: *episcopal rank*, *etc.* For that meaning, it is often clearer to rephrase: *A meeting of bishops*, *etc.* Also see Anglican Communion.

Episcopal Church, rather than Protestant Episcopal Church, is acceptable in virtually all references. (The longer version remains technically correct and is sometimes used.) Use this style for a local church: *Trinity Episcopal Church*. Also: *an Episcopal church; Episcopal churches*. Never *Episcopalian church*. Also see Anglican Communion.

Episcopalian(s) is a noun only, for members of the Episcopal Church.

epithet, expletive. An *epithet* is a word or phrase of description, often but not always disparaging (*bean counter*, for example, for an accountant). An *expletive* is a swearword or obscenity. In rare cases, when it is necessary to show that such a word has been excised from a quotation, a text or a transcript, insert *[expletive]* in brackets; it is redundant to add *deleted*. For a discussion of ethnic, racial, religious and sexual epithets, see slurs. Also see obscenity, vulgarity, profanity.

eponymous. In precise, traditional usage, an *eponym* is someone who gives a name to something else, and *eponymous* describes the giver of the name, not the receiver. A restaurateur named Terry Lamb could be described as *the eponymous owner of Terry Lamb's Restaurant*, but the establishment is not *Mr. Lamb's eponymous restaurant*. Also see namesake.

equaled, equaling.

Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (E.E.O.C.).

equally as. Do not use the words together; one will do.

Equator. But: *equatorial*.

eras. See ages and eras of history.

Ericson, Leif (the explorer). But verify the spellings used for places bearing his name; they vary.

Erisa for the Employee Retirement Income Security Act, the federal law that regulates employee benefit plans. It is not a headline term, and nearly always needs explanation.

Eskimo(s) is the most recognizable term for the native people in Alaska and Canada. Many of those people, though, especially in Canada, now prefer *Inuit*, which may be used in articles about specific groups who choose it, so long as the connection of the two terms is made clear.

ESP for extrasensory perception.

ESPN for the cable television service.

(-)esque. Familiar compounds with *esque* as a suffix are not hyphenated: Chaplinesque; humoresque; Kafkaesque; picturesque; Romanesque; statuesque.

Do not ordinarily hyphenate unfamiliar terms or those coined for effect (*Armaniesque; divaesque; Hiltonesque*), but ration such uses to avoid triteness.

estates. Use the names of houses and estates without quotation marks: *Blair House; the Elms*.

esthetic. Use *aesthetic* instead.

etc. for et cetera. It rarely serves much purpose in news writing, except for special effect.

ethics can be singular or plural. Use a singular verb when the word refers to an art or science: *Ethics is a branch of philosophy*. But use a plural verb in reference to practices: *Her ethics are beyond reproach*.

ethnic. Use the word freely as an adjective (*ethnic group*), but not as a noun except in direct quotations. The political coinage (*white ethnics*) is condescending.

ethnicity should be mentioned only when it is pertinent and its pertinence is clear to the reader. The ethnicity of a candidate is pertinent if she uses it to appeal for votes. The ethnicity of a person sought by the police may be an essential part of a physical description. But the ethnicity of a person convicted of a crime is not pertinent unless the case has ethnic overtones that are worth describing in the coverage.

ethnic slurs. See slurs.

étude.

Eucharist. In the Roman Catholic and Anglican (Episcopal) traditions, *eucharist* is a synonym for holy communion. The adjective is *eucharistic*. Uppercase either term when it is used as the name of a religious service; lowercase when designating the sacrament that is part of the service.

euphemisms are devices to conceal harsh or unattractive truths. They rarely belong in the newspaper. In news copy (other than direct quotations and texts), people *die;* they do not *expire* or *pass on*.

Euratom for the European Atomic Energy Community. See European Union.

euro(s). See currencies.

Eurocurrency, Eurodollar. *Eurocurrency* is money held in banks outside its country of origin. *Eurodollars* are United States dollars held in banks outside the United States, especially in Europe. These and similar coinages should be used only when their meaning is clear. Not to be confused with euros.

European Community. See European Union.

European Economic Community (former organization). See European Union.

European Free Trade Association; *the association*. Do not use the unfamiliar acronym *EFTA* except in a direct quotation or a text.

European Monetary Union. See European Union.

European Union. Established in 1991, it is the umbrella organization intended to integrate the trade practices, fiscal and monetary policies and military programs of its member countries. The membership list is online.

Three older bodies exist within the union: the *European Community* (previously called the European Economic Community, or informally the Common Market), the *European Atomic Energy Community* (or Euratom) and the *European Coal and Steel Community*. An arm of the European Union is the *European Monetary Union*.

E.U. is acceptable in headlines.

eurozone (one word) for the European nations that use the euro.

evade, avoid. *Evade* carries a suggestion of deceit or irresponsibility. *Avoid* is the more neutral term, in a context like taxes or punishment. Tax *avoidance* is ordinarily legal; tax *evasion* is not.

evangelical. The preferred term for conservative Protestants of many denominations who describe themselves as born again. Only a small minority of evangelicals would describe themselves as fundamentalist, so the terms are not synonymous. And to some readers, *fundamentalist* can carry a pejorative suggestion of rigidity or primitivism.

Evangelical Lutheran Church in America.

evangelist. In lowercase, it is a term for a preacher of the Christian Gospel, a revivalist. When capitalized, singular or plural, it is used only in references to Matthew, Mark, Luke and John, the Evangelists who wrote the Gospels.

even(-). Some compounds formed with *even* are one word, some are two words and some are hyphenated: even break, evenhanded, even money (n.), even-money (adj.), even-steven.

ever(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *ever* are one word: ever-faithful, evergreen, everlasting, ever-present, ever-ready.

every(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *every* are one word: everybody, everyday (adj.), everyone (pron.), everything (pron.), everywhere.

But in some instances: *every one*. See everyone, every one.

everybody, everyone. Always singular. Also see anybody, anyone, everybody, everyone, no one, someone and everyone, every one.

everyone, every one. The one-word form is a pronoun meaning all the people, or everybody: *Everyone came to the séance*. The two words (a modifier and a noun) mean each one of a group: *Every one of her predictions came true; Every one of the defendants was heard*. Note that *everyone* (like *everybody*) is singular: *He wanted everyone to become a veterinarian*. Not: *to become veterinarians*. See anybody, anyone, everybody, everyone, no one, someone.

ex(-). Use the hyphen when *ex-* means former: *ex-champion; ex-president; ex-tennis player*. In articles, *former* is generally preferred, but *Ex-* is almost always used in headlines (and the word after the hyphen is capitalized). Do not hyphenate Latin phrases like *ex officio*, even in modifier form (*ex officio chairman*), or expressions like *ex cathedra, ex dividend, ex parte, ex post facto*.

excerpts are *from* documents, speeches, etc., not *of* them. Principles of editing verbatim documents appear in texts and excerpts.

exchanges. Many major stock and commodity exchanges are listed separately.

exclamation point. For the placement of an exclamation point alongside other punctuation, see parentheses and quotation marks.

In news writing, the exclamation point is rarely needed except in quotations of shouted or deeply emotional phrases: *"Watch out!" the pedestrians called. "Hang him!" the crowd shouted. "That is a monstrous lie!" he roared*. When overused, the exclamation point loses impact, as advertising demonstrates continually.

execute, execution. *Execute* means put to death under a criminal sentence. Except for special effect, do not use it as a synonym for *kill, murder* or *assassinate*. Also see assassin, assassinate, assassination.

executive branch (of the United States government). Also: *legislative branch; judicial branch*.

Executive Mansion.

executive order (by a president of the United States). But capitalize when citing one by number: *Executive Order 39*.

exhilarate.

exit numbers. Capitalize them as proper names: *Exit 127; Exit 16*. See numbered expressions.

exorbitant.

Export-Import Bank; *the bank. Ex-Im Bank* may also be used in quotations, and in headlines when the context is clear.

exposé (n.).

Expressionism (art, literature, music). Capitalize only in reference to the painting, sculpture and literary movements that emerged in Germany and Austria in the early 1900s. See abstract expressionism and arts terminology.

Express Mail is a service mark of the United States Postal Service.

expressway. Capitalize in names: *Long Island Expressway*. But: *the expressway*.

extra(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *extra* are one word: extra-base hit, extracurricular, extra-fine, extrajudicial, extra-large, extramarital, extramural, extraordinary, extrasensory, extraterrestrial, extraterritorial.

eyewitness. In general *witness* is preferred.

E-ZPass is a trademark for the cashless toll collection system.

F

F.A.A. for the Federal Aviation Administration.

facade. No cedilla beneath the *c*.

facilities. It is an acceptable general term for buildings, plants, recreational equipment and the like. The singular *facility*, applied to an individual place, is bureaucratic and should be replaced by specifics when possible: *base, building, factory, laboratory, office, pier, plant, warehouse, etc.*

facsimile. When the reference is to the conventional *fax* process, use that word instead, in all references.

fact-finding (adj.).

faculty, like *army* and *clergy*, is collective, referring not to individuals but to the group. For individuals, use *faculty members* or *members of the faculty*. References to *three faculty* or to *hiring faculty* are jargon.

fade(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *fade* are hyphenated: fade away (v.), fadeaway (n.), fade-in (n.), fade in (v.), fade-out (n.), fade out (v.).

Fahrenheit. The temperature scale commonly used in the United States. In it, the freezing point of water is 32 degrees and the boiling point is 212 degrees. In general, ordinary references to temperature do not specify the scale. (See temperature.) In the special cases that require mention of the scale, use the style *86 degrees Fahrenheit* or (usually in tables) *48°F*, without a space before or after the degree symbol and without a period after the *F*. To convert a Celsius or centigrade temperature to Fahrenheit, multiply by 9, divide by 5 and add 32. Also see Celsius, centigrade and Kelvin.

Fairfield University (in Fairfield, Conn.).

Fair Lawn (in New Jersey).

Fairleigh Dickinson University (in Madison and Teaneck, N.J.).

fairness and impartiality. The news report takes no sides and plays no favorites in what it covers or what it omits.

Conflict does not automatically dominate the news. An article about an initiative (by government, business or any institution) should normally report the development before setting out critics' objections or focusing on its vulnerability, and the headline should reflect that priority.

The Times forgoes innuendo: An accusation that would not be acceptable if made outright cannot be implied through sly juxtaposition, the equivalent of a cocked eyebrow.

Writers and editors should guard against word choices that undermine neutrality. If one politician is *firm* or *resolute*, an opponent should not be *rigid* or *dogmatic*. If one country in a conflict has a *leadership* while the other has a *regime*, impartiality suffers. Negative overtones, in coverage of a figure in the news, are easily detected and repaired. But worshipful overtones can be a more insidious form of partiality, giving their subject an advantage over rivals.

Divisive issues like religion, politics, abortion and race relations call for extra sensitivity to neutrality in language. For an example, see abortion.

Special care must be taken when partisan information comes from news sources who are identified incompletely or not at all. They should not be permitted the appearance or the reality of hiding behind The Times when attacking others. See anonymity.

And when, despite all efforts, The Times slips from neutrality, it is prompt and thorough in rectifying errors or lapses of fairness. See corrections and editors' notes.

fake, forgery, copy (art). A *fake* or *forgery* is made with the intent to deceive. A *copy* can be a study or a work in homage to another artist. Also see replica.

fall (autumn).

false titles. Do not make titles out of mere descriptions, as in *harpsichordist Dale S. Yagyonak*. If in doubt, try the "good morning" test. If it is not possible to imagine saying, for example, "Good morning, Harpsichordist Yagyonak," the title is false.

A limited exception applies to sports articles: team names and positions (*third baseman, Yankee catcher*) may be used in front of names. Also see titles.

Faneuil Hall (in Boston), the 18th-century meeting place, now a market and office building.

Fannie Mae is acceptable in all references for the Federal National Mortgage Association.

fantasy (music). In titles that include the word without quotation marks, use the English spelling: *Schubert's Fantasy* [not *Fantasia*] *in C for Violin and Piano (Op. 159)*. See music.

F.A.O., sparingly, for the Food and Agriculture Organization (not *Agricultural*).

F. A. O. Schwarz (the toy store), with thin spaces between the personal initials.

far(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *far* are hyphenated: far-fetched, far-flung, far-off, far-ranging, far-reaching, farseeing, farsighted (all adj.). Also: *faraway* (adj.), but *far away* (adv.).

Far East. Do not use this Western-centric term except for special effect. Ordinarily, use a more specific regional name: *East Asia, Southeast Asia, South Asia*.

farm(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *farm* are one word: farm club (sports), farmhand, farmhouse, farmland, farm out, farm team, farmyard.

Far North.

farther, further. Use *farther* for distance, *further* to mean additional or continued.

Far West, for the region of the United States.

Far West Side (of Manhattan).

FASB may be used sparingly, in financial contexts, for the Financial Accounting Standards Board. No periods because it is an acronym pronounced FASS-bee.

Fascism, fascist. Capitalize in historical references to the Italian Fascist movement and party or to their members. But: *The senator said his rival was a fascist* (or *had fascist tendencies*).

fast breeder reactor. Sometimes called a *fast reactor* or a *breeder reactor*, it produces more nuclear fuel than it consumes.

Fatah. See Al Fatah.

father. Lowercase except when it substitutes for a proper name: *Ask Father to lend you the spatula*. Also see dad.

Father (clerical title) is used in later references to Roman Catholic and Orthodox priests, and to Episcopal priests who choose that style: *The Rev. Morgan J. Lamm; Father Lamm*.

Father's Day.

fatwa (a decree by an Islamic religious leader).

fauvism (art). Capitalize when referring to the exuberant, bright-colored paintings of Matisse and other French artists in the early 20th century. Lowercase when referring generically to a style employing splashy, bright color. See arts terminology.

faux, meaning artificial or imitation, has a place in art and design writing. Elsewhere it is pretentious.

faux pas.

fax (adj., n. and v.). It is short for *facsimile*, but the short form is preferred in references to the office equipment and its technology.

F.B.I. for the Federal Bureau of Investigation.

F.C.C. for the Federal Communications Commission.

F.D.A. for the Food and Drug Administration, sparingly and in headlines.

F.D.I.C. for the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.

featherbedding is the labor practice of requiring more workers than necessary to do a job. Applied to a specific workplace or dispute, the term is partisan: What the management calls featherbedding the union may call a necessity for productivity or safety. (For bedclothes, the spelling is *feather bedding*.)

Feb. for February before numerals (*Feb. 12*), or in charts and tables.

Fed, the, in later references to the Federal Reserve Board and in headlines.

federal (architecture and decorative arts). Capitalize when referring to the buildings and furniture built in the United States after the establishment of the federal government and through the early 19th century, and characterized by adaptations of classical forms. Modern buildings of a similar design should be labeled *federal style*. See arts terminology.

federal (governmental). Capitalize when part of a proper name (*Federal Reserve Board; Federal Bureau of Investigation*) but lowercase in other uses: *federal courts; federal troops; federal agents*.

Federal Building, capitalized, may be used alone when it is part of the name of a specific building and the identity is clear. Otherwise, on first reference, use a name like *the Jacob K. Javits Federal Building*.

federal courts. See courts.

Federal Election Commission; *the commission*. The abbreviation, *F.E.C.*, is not recognizable enough for headlines and should generally occur only in direct quotations.

Federal Emergency Management Agency. In later references, *the agency* or *FEMA*.

Federal Energy Regulatory Commission. In later references, *the commission* or *the agency*. The acronym *FERC* may occur in direct quotations.

Federal Hall National Memorial. This building, at Wall and Nassau Streets in

New York City, is the former Subtreasury Building.

Federal Highway Administration. Do not abbreviate. Use *the administration* or *the agency* instead.

Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation has officially been renamed Freddie Mac.

Federal Housing Administration. In later references, sparingly, the *F.H.A*.

Federal Reserve Board. In later references, *the Federal Reserve; the Reserve; the board; the Fed*. Also, *the Federal Reserve System; the Federal Reserve Bank of New York* (or *Boston*, etc.); *the system; the bank*.

Federal Trade Commission. In later references, sparingly, *the F.T.C*.

Federation of Jewish Philanthropies. The New York regional organization is now part of the merged UJA-Federation of New York.

fellow (adj.). Do not hyphenate: *fellow American, fellow citizen, fellow traveler, fellow worker, etc.*

fellowships and scholarships. *Nieman fellow; White House fellow; a fellow of the university; the Nieman fellowship*.

Also: *Fulbright scholar; Rhodes scholar; Rhodes scholarship*.

FEMA in later references to the Federal Emergency Management Agency.

female, male. In references to people, the nouns *woman, man, girl* and *boy* are most natural. If a construction unavoidably warrants *male* and *female*, use them as adjectives, not nouns. Avoid affixing *male* and *female* to occupational titles (*male nurse, female judge*) in ways that imply that they "normally" belong to only one sex. Preferably write, for example, *women on the faculty* or *men on the faculty*. Also see men and women.

feminism, feminist. See men and women.

feng shui is the traditional Chinese practice of finding auspicious locations for buildings, cities and graves.

Ferris wheel.

fete. No accent except in a proper name or a foreign phrase (*Salle des Fêtes*). As an English noun or verb, though, *fete* usually sounds contrived and old-fashioned.

fewer, less. Use *fewer* for people or things that can be counted one by one: *Fewer than 100 taxidermists attended*. If the number is one, write *one vote fewer*, not *one fewer votes* or *one fewer vote*. Use *less* for things that cannot be counted: *Most shoppers are buying less sugar*. Also use *less* with a number that describes a quantity considered as a single bulk amount: *The police recovered less than $1,500; It happened less than five years ago; The recipe calls for less than two cups of sugar*.

few who. The construction *one of the few who* requires a plural verb: *She is one of the few editors who parse perfectly*. (It is equivalent to *Of the few editors who parse perfectly, she is one*.)

F.H.A. for the Federal Housing Administration, sparingly.

fiancé (masc.), **fiancée** (fem.).

Fiberglas is a trademark. But *fiberglass* is a generic term.

fictional devices. The Times's reporting sets out to be truthful in every detail. No reader should find cause to suspect that the paper would knowingly alter facts. For that reason, The Times refrains outright from assigning fictional names, ages, places or dates, and it strictly limits the use of other concealment devices.

If compassion or the unavoidable conditions of reporting require shielding an identity, the preferred method is to omit the name and explain the omission. (That situation might arise, for example, in an interview conducted inside a hospital or a school governed by privacy rules.) If a complex narrative must distinguish among several shielded identities, it may be necessary to use given names with last initials or, less desirable, given names alone (*Hilary K.*; *Ashley M.*; *Terry*). Descriptions may serve instead (*the lawyer; the Morristown psychotherapist*). As a rare last resort, if genuine given names would be too revealing, real single initials (*Dr. D; Ms. L*) may be used after consultation with senior editors. The article must gracefully indicate the device and the reason. Also see anonymity.

fief means land or domain. So *fiefdom* is redundant.

Field Marshal *Viscount Montgomery of Alamein; Viscount Montgomery; Lord Montgomery; Field Marshal Montgomery*. It is never *Marshal Montgomery*.

Fifth Amendment. Avoid expressions, like *took the Fifth Amendment*, that imply a scheme to escape justice. Neutral phrases include *invoked her Fifth Amendment right* or *cited his Fifth Amendment right against self-incrimination*.

figuratively. Do not use *literally* when *figuratively* is meant: *The Democratic leaders are literally walking a tightrope*.

figures. See numbers and numbers, round.

file name (not *filename*).

filet, fillet. Use *filet* if the term is French: *filet mignon*. But make it *fillet* if the term is English: *fillet of sole*.

Filipino(s). The people of the Philippines, male and female. The adjective is *Filipino* or *Philippine*.

Filipino names. Do not use accent marks, even in the names that are Spanish in origin.

filmmaker.

films. Put their titles in quotation marks, with principal words capitalized.

final (sports). A one-game or one-match championship is a *final*. A championship series can be called *finals*.

finalize. Though the dictionary blesses it, *finalize* has a bureaucratic sound.

“Finnegans Wake.” No apostrophe; James Joyce omitted it from the title of his novel for the sake of a wordplay.

Finra, sparingly, for the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Wall Street’s self-regulatory group.

fire (v.), **firing** (n.). These terms, once colloquial for the removal of an employee, are now standard English. But use them only for a dismissal resulting from employer dissatisfaction or from a dispute over job performance. *Discharge, dismiss* and *dismissal*, while less abrupt-sounding, should also be confined to that sense. None of the terms apply to a resignation under criticism or departure by mutual consent. Nor do they apply to employees' removal as a cost-cutting measure, or to reduction of a work force; the terms in that case are *lay off* (v.) and *layoff* (n.).

fire(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *fire* are one word: fire alarm, firearm, fireball, firebase, fireboat, firebomb (n. and v.), firebomber, firebombing, firebrand, firebreak, firebug, fire chief, fire company, firecracker, fire door, fire drill, fire engine, fire escape, fire extinguisher, firefight, firefighter, firefly, firehouse, fire hydrant, firelight, fire marshal, fireplace, fireplug, firepower, fireproof, fire sale, firestorm, firetrap, fire truck, firewall, fire warden, firewood, fireworks.

Fire Department; *the department*. In headlines, *Fire Dept.* is acceptable. Also see New York Fire Department.

Firefighter *Merrill E. Anyell; Firefighter Anyell; the firefighter*. This is the rank in the New York Fire Department. Also see fireman, firewoman.

fireman, firewoman. *Firefighter* is preferred in virtually all references.

firewall. One word, for the physical kind or the computer security system. Be careful of overuse as a metaphor.

firm (n.). Technically, a firm is an unincorporated partnership or business. But idiom permits the term for *member firms* of securities exchanges, even if incorporated, and for professional groupings of lawyers, architects, accountants, *etc.* Also see company and corporation names.

first, firstly. Use *first*, not *firstly*, in enumerations.

first(-). Some compounds formed with *first* are one word, some are hyphenated and some are two words: first aid (n.), first-aid (adj.), first base, first baseman, firstborn, first-class (adj.), first floor (n.), first-floor (adj.), first grader, firsthand (adj., adv.), at first hand, first-rate (adj.), first strike (n.), first-strike (adj.).

first come first served. Hyphenate when the phrase is used as a modifier before a noun: *the first-come-first-served tradition*. Otherwise, omit all punctuation: *the principle of first come first served*.

first in first out. Hyphenate when the phrase is used as a modifier before a noun: *the first-in-first-out system*. Otherwise, omit all punctuation: *the principle of first in first out*. Also, in later references, but only in unmistakable business contexts, *FIFO*.

first lady. Lowercase, and always standing alone or separated from the name by a comma: *the first lady, Leigh C. Lamm*. The term applies to the wife of a president, a prime minister, a governor or a mayor in her public role as a spouse, but use her name instead when her independent activities make news.

First Lt. *Hilary N. Kuzu; Lieutenant Kuzu; the lieutenant*.

First Sgt. *Lauren U. Daan; Sergeant Daan; the sergeant*.

First Vatican Council. An assembly of the bishops of the Roman Catholic Church that was held in 1869-70. In later references, use *Vatican I*. Follow the same style for the Second Vatican Council, held 1962-65. It is *Vatican II*.

fiscal year. The term means the 12-month period used by a company or a government for its bookkeeping. Write *the 1998 fiscal year*, not *fiscal 1998*. The federal government's fiscal year begins on Oct. 1, so the period between Oct. 1, 1998, and Sept. 30, 1999, was *the 1999 fiscal year*. If a company's fiscal year does not correspond to the calendar year, say when it begins or ends: *The division was profitable in the 1998 fiscal year, which ended June 30*. If the fiscal and calendar years coincide, make it simply *The division was profitable in 1997*.

Fishers Island (in New York). But it is *Fisher Island* in Florida.

fit is widely accepted as past tense and past participle in most uses, though some traditionalists still prefer *fitted. Fitted* is most natural as a modifier in expressions like *fitted sheets*.

fit to a T.

fjord (not *fiord*).

flack, flak. Both words are slang. *Flack* is a noun for a press agent and a verb for drumming up publicity. *Flak*, a cliché derived from the German for antiaircraft fire, means criticism.

flag(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *flag* are one word: flagman, flagpole, flagship, flagstaff, flagstone, flag stop, flag-waving, flagwoman.

But: *American-flag ship* in reference to a ship of American registry.

flag-draped coffin. A journalese cliché. (Even *the coffin was draped with a flag* is an improvement.) In a picture caption the phrase also commits the sin of telling readers something they can see for themselves.

flap. As a noun to mean fuss or controversy, *flap* is colloquial and trite.

flaunt, flout. *Flaunt* means show off; *flout* means defy or show contempt.

fleet. Capitalize only when part of a title: *Atlantic Fleet; British Grand Fleet*. Also: *Sixth Fleet*.

fleur(s)-de-lis.

flier can mean a pilot, a fast train or a leaflet. Not *flyer*.

Flight Lt. *Stacy H. Barany* (British and other air forces); *Flight Lieutenant Barany; the flight lieutenant*.

flight numbers. Capitalize them as proper names: *Flight 9; Flight 111*.

floor leader should be lowercased, and separated from the name by a comma: *Representative Lee H. Milori, the Democratic floor leader;* or *the floor leader, Lee H. Milori*.

Florida. Abbreviate as *Fla*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

Floridian(s).

flounder, founder. *Flounder* means stumble or flail; *founder* means sink or collapse.

flout, flaunt. *Flout* means defy or show contempt; *flaunt* means show off.

Floyd Bennett Field (in Brooklyn) was New York City's first airport. Now a Coast Guard air station and part of a national park.

Flushing Meadows-Corona Park (in Queens).

flyer. See flier.

focused.

foe means enemy. Despite its usefulness in headlines, it is an exaggeration for most political campaigns. Use *rival* or *opponent* instead.

(-)fold. With this suffix, spell out any numeral that can be written as a solid word: *twofold; threefold; twentyfold; hundredfold; thousandfold; millionfold*. When the numeral cannot be written solid, use figures followed by a hyphen: *22-fold; 106-fold; 200-fold; 3,000-fold*. Any numeral above nine may be used in a headline: *10-fold; 100-fold; etc. Twofold* means multiplied by two. See manifold, manyfold.

Folies-Bergère.

folk(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *folk* are two words: folk dance (n.), folk-dance (adj.), folklore, folk medicine, folk music, folk-rock, folk singer, folk song.

folks will have a place in the occasional feature article about homespun America. Otherwise it strikes a false note in the news columns and often sounds condescending.

follow(-). Compounds formed with *follow* are hyphenated: follow-through (n.), follow-up (n. and adj.).

following is almost always more cumbersome than *after* in this construction: *He went home after the game*. And as an adjective: *She left the next day*, rather than the more stilted *following day*.

Fond du Lac (in Wisconsin).

fondle. It means caress or stroke in a tender way. The word is not suitable for descriptions of rape, assault or unwelcome advances. *Grab, grope* or *touch* may be more appropriate.

Food and Agriculture Organization (F.A.O.), not *Agricultural*.

Food and Drug Administration. In later references, sparingly, and in headlines, *F.D.A*.

fool(-). Compounds formed with *fool* are one word: foolhardy, foolproof, foolscap.

foot(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *foot* are one word: foot brake, footbridge, foot-candle, footgear, foothill, foothold, footlights, footlocker, footloose, footman, footnote, footpad, footpath, foot-pound, footprint, footrace, footrest, foot soldier, footsore, footstep, footstool, footwear, footwork.

foot-and-mouth disease (not *hoof-and-mouth disease*).

football. Give points, scores and yards in figures: *Milori ran for only 3 yards; Lam scored* 9 *points in the second quarter; Columbia won*, *13-6*. Spell out the numbers of downs.

The best-known professional organization is the *National Football League;* its annual championship, the *Super Bowl*, is designated by Roman numerals. The 2013 game was *Super Bowl XLVII*.

Avoid *grid, gridder, pigskin* and similarly tired terms.

forbear, forebear. *Forbear* means refrain. *Forebear* means an ancestor. (*Forebearer* is not a word.)

forbid, prohibit. Use *to* with *forbid* and *from* with *prohibit*: *forbid them to attend; prohibit them from attending*.

fore(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *fore* are one word: forebode, forecourt, forefather, forefront, forehand, foreknowledge, foremast, foreordain, forepaw, foreplay, forerun, foresee, foreshadow, foreshorten, foreshow, foresight, forestall, foretaste, foretell, fore-topmast, fore-topsail, forewarn. Also see forbear, forebear; foreman, forewoman; foreword; forgo, forego.

forego. See forgo, forego.

foreign currencies. See currencies.

Foreign Legion. Capitalize only in reference to the French force. On later references: *the legion*.

Foreign Minister (or *Secretary*) *Morgan I. Yagyonak; the foreign minister* (or *foreign secretary*); *the minister* (or *secretary*). Also see titles.

Foreign Ministry (for a specific one). In later references, *the ministry*.

foreign names. Within The Times, all departments should consult the copy desk about individual spellings and usage adopted on the advice of correspondents or at the request of foreign personalities. If a Russian or other foreign cultural figure performs or records often in the West and is the subject of extensive advertising or promotion, use the artist's preferred spelling. The goal is to avoid inconsistency between highly visible publicity materials and the news columns. More general guides to personal and place names may be found on these websites operated by the Central Intelligence Agency for public use:

World Factbook

Chiefs of State and Cabinet Members of Foreign Governments

This stylebook is the authority, however, for the use or omission of accent marks, and for the handling of names covered by these specific entries: accent marks; Arab names and titles; Burmese names; Cambodian names; Chinese names; Filipino names; geographic names; Japanese names; Korean names; Laotian names; Malaysian names; Russian names; Spanish names; Thai names; Vietnamese names.

Foreign Service. Capitalize when referring to the career diplomatic service of the United States; otherwise lowercase: *She was formerly general director of the Foreign Service; He was in the British foreign service.*

foreign words. Follow English capitalization style in the foreign title of a literary or artistic work, or the proper name of an organization. (For the single exception, see songs.) German nouns are always uppercased in German phrases, but lowercase them when they occur in English phrases: *The professor sighed, her weltschmerz showing*. (Usually, though, English synonyms are less pretentious and thus preferred.) Also see accent marks; capitalization; italics; titles.

foreman, forewoman. Do not use *forelady* or *foreperson*. Also see men and women.

foreword. It is the introduction to a book (the *word* be*fore* Chapter 1). Do not confuse with forward.

forgery (in art). See fake, forgery, copy.

forgo, forego. *Forgo* means refrain. *Forego*, which is relatively rare, means precede. Thus: *foregone conclusion*, an outcome determined be*fore*hand.

formal wear.

former. It is the preferred modifier before a title (*former commissioner*), though *Ex-* is useful in headlines (with an uppercase letter after the hyphen).

Avoid uses of *former* that force the reader to glance back: *Ms. Agnello and Mr. Dann waged hard campaigns, and the former prevailed*. Rephrase and name names.

Formica is a trademark.

formulas (not *formulae*). Also see chemical elements and formulas.

forswear.

fort. Spell out in news copy and capitalize as part of a name: *Fort Hamilton*. The abbreviation (*Ft.*) may be used with the name in a headline, a chart, a list or a map.

fortnight. Use *two weeks* instead.

fortuitous means happening by chance. It does not mean fortunate.

49er(s). There is no apostrophe in the name of the football team. And a person who went to California in search of gold in 1849 was a *forty-niner*.

forward (not *forwards*) means up front or toward the front. Do not confuse with foreword.

founder, flounder. *Founder* means sink or collapse; *flounder* means stumble or flail awkwardly.

founding fathers. Lowercase the expression. And unless referring narrowly to the authors of the Constitution, seek a phrase (like *founders* or *colonists*) that un-self-consciously encompasses both sexes.

401(k) for a retirement savings plan financed by employee contributions, often with employer matching funds. It takes its name from the section of the Internal Revenue Code that authorized it. Plural: *401(k)'s*.

Fourth Estate. Capitalize when the reference is to the public press.

Fourth of July. Also: *Independence Day*.

fowl (sing. and pl.).

Fox for Fox Broadcasting Company, a network owned by 21st Century Fox, which was a division of News Corporation until its split in 2013.

fracking, hydrofracking. Both are acceptable shortened terms for the drilling process also known as hydraulic fracturing. In extended references, also include the full term and a brief explanation.

fractions. When fractions appear by themselves in ordinary copy, follow these spelling styles: *one-half inch* (not *½ inch*); *one-half an inch; half an inch* (preferred); *two-tenths; one-twentieth; one twenty-first; one-thirtieth; one thirty-second; 21 thirty-seconds; one-hundredth; two-hundredths; two one-hundredths; 20 one-hundredths; twenty-hundredths; 21-hundredths; one-103rd; twentyfive 103rds; nine-thousandths; nine one-thousandths; nine-1,009ths; 63 one-thousandths*.

In these examples the numerator and the denominator are connected by a hyphen when neither includes a hyphen: *one-twentieth*. But it is *one twenty-third* when an element does include a hyphen. Also note that numerals are used to render fractions like *103rd*, which would be cumbersome if spelled out. Finally, spell out the first element in *twentyfive 103rds* to avoid a confusing pileup of numerals.

Use numerals wherever the fraction appears with a full number in ages, pairs of dimensions, etc.: *3½-year-old; 3½ by 2½* (or *3.5 by 2.5*). In other cases, follow the rule for spelling out below 10: *He reigned for six and a half years* (smoother in this case than *one-half*). *His reign lasted 31½ years*. See decimals and numbers.

framers (of the Constitution). Lowercase.

frame-up (n.).

Franco-. In references to France, use the more conversational *French-American, French-German, etc.*

François.

francophone. In general, use *French-speaking* instead.

Frankfurt (in Germany).

Franklin D. Roosevelt Drive. In headlines and in later references: *F.D.R. Drive; the drive*.

fraternal societies. Capitalize their names: *Knights of Columbus; Masons; Odd Fellows; etc.* Lowercase the titles of officers, and separate them from the name with a comma: *the grand ruler, Tracy B. Miel; Merrill C. Yagyonak, the exalted ruler; the sachem*.

Frau, Fräulein. See courtesy titles.

Fraunces Tavern.

freakish (adj.). It is a *freakish storm*, not a *freak storm*.

Freddie Mac is the official name of the federally chartered, publicly held company formerly known as the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation.

free(-). Some compounds formed with *free* are one word, some are hyphenated and some are two words: free agent, freebooter, free fall, free-for-all (n. and adj.), free-form (adj.), free hand (n.), freehand (adj.), freehanded (adj.), freelance (n., v. and adj.), freelancer, freeload (v.), freeloader, freeloading (n. and adj.), free port, free-spoken, free-standing, freestyle (swimming; n. and adj.), freethinker, freethinking (n. and adj.), free throw (basketball), free trade, freeway, freewheel (v.), freewheeler, freewheeling (n. and adj.), free will (n.), freewill (adj.).

free means without cost. *For free* is colloquial; avoid it.

freedom fighter is a polemical term. Confine it to direct quotations.

free rein (not *reign*) refers to unrestricted authority, like the unchecked movement of a horse with a loosely held rein.

free state, slave state. Lowercase, in references to the situation before the Civil War.

free world is the language of opinion, even in a historical reference to the Cold War. Confine it to the editorial pages and direct quotations.

French(-). Do not hyphenate a compound with *French* except when forming an adjective: French bread, French cuff, French door, French dressing, French-fried potatoes, French fries, French pastry, French roll, French toast, French window.

French, Frenchman(men), Frenchwoman(women).

frère.

freshman. For the class and a member of that class, man or woman. If an exceptional context warrants avoiding *man*, use *first-year student(s)*. But not *freshwoman(women)* or *freshperson(s)*.

friend. Do not use as a verb, as in *friended*, except for special effect when writing about social media. Better: *He became her friend on Facebook; They added her as a friend; She sent him a friend request*.

friend of the court (legal term). See amicus curiae.

Friends. See Quakers.

Frigidaire is a trademark.

Frisbee is a trademark.

front-runner, front-running. Hyphenate both expressions. And use them with caution because they can influence an election by creating a bandwagon effect. They can also return to embarrass the writer and the newspaper if used so early in the process that a candidate's popularity is little tested. If the label is warranted, the ranking should generally be attributed.

F.T.C. for the Federal Trade Commission, sparingly and in headlines.

Führer.

Fujiyama, Mount Fuji. But not *Mount Fujiyama*.

fulfill, fulfilled.

full time (n. and adv.), **full-time** (adj.).

fulsome means not just abundant but offensively excessive.

fun, as an adjective, remains colloquial.

fundamentalist. As a religious term, the word should be used with care because of its connotations of rigidity. In Christian contexts, it is best applied only to those who so define themselves. Many conservative Protestants prefer to be called evangelical. In references to Islam and other non-Christian religions, equate *fundamentalism* to doctrinal conservatism only; do not assume or imply a link to militancy or terrorism.

fund-raiser, fund-raising.

funeral director may be used interchangeably with *undertaker*. Do not use *mortician*.

further. See farther, further.

fused participles. See participles as nouns.

futurism (art). Capitalize in reference to the movement begun in 1909 in Italy. Lowercase in general references to forward-looking art. See arts terminology.

G

gag order, gag rule. Though lawyers consider the terms merely factual, their effect in the news columns is pejorative. Except in direct quotations or texts, paraphrase them. And remind readers that a rule of silence ordinarily binds the negotiators, trial participants or legislators, not the journalists who cover them. Also see blackout.

gaiety, gaily.

Galápagos Islands.

gale. Use this term if the wind meets the National Weather Service's specifications for a gale — 39 to 54 miles an hour. Also see hurricane and storms.

galleries. See arts locations.

gallon. A gallon equals four quarts. A United States standard gallon is roughly 3.8 liters. A British imperial gallon is roughly 4.5 liters.

Gambia (not *the Gambia*). Its capital is Banjul and its people are *Gambians*.

gambit. In careful usage, a gambit is an *opening maneuver* (in chess, for example, a sacrifice) to gain a strategic advantage. Do not use the word merely to mean tactic.

gaming. As a synonym for *gambling*, this is a euphemism and best avoided.

gamut, gantlet, gauntlet. A *gamut* is a scale of notes, or any complete range; someone can *run the gamut* literally or figuratively. A *gantlet* is a flogging ordeal in which an offender runs between lines of tormentors bearing sticks. A *gauntlet* is a long glove, the kind duelists wore; it can be *thrown down* to issue a challenge, or *taken up* to accept one. (Some authorities, but not this one, accept *gauntlet* to mean the ordeal also.)

gamy, gamier, gamiest.

gantlet. See gamut, gantlet, gauntlet.

G.A.O. in headlines, sparingly, for the Government Accountability Office, an auditing arm of Congress. Its name was changed in July 2004 from *General Accounting Office*.

garçon.

Garden State (New Jersey's nickname).

Gardiners Island (in Suffolk County, N.Y.).

garnish, garnishee. Both are properly used as verbs in the sense of putting a lien on property or wages to satisfy a debt. But *garnishee* is more common (despite objections by lawyers), perhaps because the more usual meaning of *garnish* is adorn or decorate. As a noun, *garnishee* means the person served with a legal *garnishment*.

gasification, gasify. But: *liquefaction; liquefy*.

Gaspé Peninsula.

(-)gate. The use of *gate* as a suffix in the news columns (*Irangate, Travelgate*), equating current controversies with the 1973-74 Watergate scandal, carries polemical overtones. Watergate culminated in President Nixon's resignation in the face of a House committee vote to seek impeachment on charges that included obstruction of justice and abuse of authority. If a writer considers a more recent episode comparable, the case should be made straightforwardly.

Gateway National Recreation Area (bordering lower New York Bay).

GATT for the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade.

Gatwick Airport (near London).

gauge.

gauntlet. See gamut, gantlet, gauntlet.

gay (adj.) is preferred to *homosexual* in most contexts. Generally confine *homosexual* to specific references to sexual activity or clinical orientation. *Gay* may refer to homosexual men or more generally to homosexual men and women. In specific references to women, *lesbian* is preferred. When the distinction is useful, write *gay men and lesbians*. As a noun, the plural *gays* is acceptable, but avoid the singular *gay*. Also see L.G.B.T.; same-sex marriage, gay marriage; sexual orientation.

gay rights. Advocates for gay issues are concerned that the term may invite resentment by implying "special rights" that are denied other citizens; the advocates prefer phrases like *equal rights* or *civil rights for gay people*. But the shorter phrase is in wide use and often indispensable for confined headlines. When it occurs, define the issues precisely.

Gdansk. Use this Polish name, not the German *Danzig*, except in historical references.

G.E.D. See high school equivalency diploma.

gefilte fish.

gelatin (not *gelatine*).

Gen. *Stacy J. Milori; General Milori; the general*.

gender, sex. In general, *gender* is the grammatical classification of words as masculine, feminine or neuter and *sex* is a characteristic of living things. Use *sex* in unambiguous phrases like *sex discrimination* and *single-sex schools*. But *gender* has taken on new meaning in social and political contexts. Use *gender*, for example, in idioms like *gender gap*, and in references arising from its use in legislation or other legal documents. Use it, too, when necessary to avoid confusion with physical sex or to avert double meanings. In other words, *gender* is not to be, well, confused with *sex*.

General Assembly for the United Nations and for the lower house in some state legislatures; *the Assembly*.

Generalissimo *Hilary T. Cordero; General Cordero; the generalissimo* or *the general*. (The title now occurs mostly in historical references.)

general staff. *The French General Staff; the general staff; a general staff.* Capitalize in formal references to the headquarters organization at the top of the country's armed forces or army. Lowercase for the general staff of a subordinate command, like a brigade, a division, a corps or a field army.

Generation X. The term for people born in the 1960s and 1970s. Also: *Gen X; Gen Xer(s)*. All of the terms tend to evoke stereotypes, and the short forms are slang as well. Also see baby boom.

Genet, Jean, for the 20th-century French playwright. But *Genêt* for the 18th-century French diplomat known as Citizen Genêt.

gentleman. Except in jesting or teasing contexts, *gentleman* is obsolete for *man*, just as *lady* is obsolete for *woman*.

genus and species. A biological species is a group of individuals capable of interbreeding and producing fertile offspring. The name of a species is always preceded by the name of the genus, the larger category of which it is a division. Capitalize only the genus name and use roman type: Homo sapiens.

In later references, names may be abbreviated in some contexts: E. coli for Escherichia coli. If a subspecies name is used, it must be accompanied by genus and species names: Homo sapiens neanderthalensis.

The more comprehensive taxonomic classifications of plants and animals are, in ascending order, family, order, class, phylum and kingdom. Capitalize the names of all such classifications except kingdom: *the phylum Protozoa*. But nouns and adjectives derived from such classifications are not capitalized: *protozoan* (n. and adj.).

geographic names. For quick reference, some place names are listed separately in this manual. In general, the first authority for the spelling of domestic place names not listed here is the United States Postal Service's National Five-Digit ZIP Code and Post Office Directory. But do not use the Postal Service's two-letter abbreviations for state names; the preferred abbreviation is shown in this manual under each state's full name. For names not given here or in the Post Office Directory, consult the Geographic Names Information System maintained by the United States Geological Survey and the Board on Geographic Names.

The first authority for the spelling of foreign place names not listed here is the latest edition of Webster's New World College Dictionary. For names that do not appear here or in the dictionary, consult the current edition of the National Geographic Atlas of the World. For names found in none of those three places, consult the Geonet Names Server maintained by the National Imagery and Mapping Agency.

When alternative spellings exist for foreign place names, use what geographers call the "conventional form" for English. Thus, for example, use *Munich*, not *München*, and *Moscow*, not *Moskva*. Retain accent marks in French, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese and German names only. If an umlaut (*ö*) is omitted as a result of this rule, do not follow the practice of some languages in adding an *e* after the affected vowel.

Abbreviate *Saint* and *Sainte* as *St*. and *Ste*. when they occur in place names, domestic or foreign. But spell out *Fort* and *Mount* as part of a name. The abbreviations *Ft*. and *Mt*. may be used in headlines, charts, tables or maps.

Also see Arabic terms in place names.

Georgia. Abbreviate the name of the state as *Ga*. after the names of cities, towns and counties. Do not abbreviate the name of the former Soviet republic.

Georgian (architecture). Capitalize when referring to the simple, straightforward style of buildings, usually of brick, built in the era that began with the reign of King George I; Georgian is a more precise term for what is generally called Colonial. In reference to a recent building, a modifier like *Georgian style* or *Georgian design* is preferred. See arts terminology.

Germany. The capital is Berlin. From 1945 to 1990, the country was divided into West Germany (officially the Federal Republic of Germany) and East Germany (officially the German Democratic Republic). The plural is Germanys.

gerunds. See participles as nouns.

get, got, gotten. In American English, *gotten* is the usual participle, rather than *got*, as in *She had gotten the mail each morning*. But: *I've got a headache* and *I've got to get going*, *etc.* Except in a handful of idioms, like *get going, get lost* and *get sick*, do not substitute *get* for *is* or *are*. Write *the class is tested weekly*, not *the class gets tested weekly*.

ghetto(s). In its current sense, *ghetto* means a poor neighborhood inhabited by members of a minority, usually black. Do not assume that all sections of a predominantly black area — Harlem, for instance, or the South Side of Chicago — are slums or places where only poor people live. Also see inner city.

G.I. The colloquial term, derived from *government issue*, for American soldiers. The plural is *G.I.s*. No longer official, if it ever was, *G.I.* remains useful in headlines. It can stand for American troops in general, but not for members of the Air Force, the Marines or the Navy.

gibe means jeer or taunt. *Jibe*, colloquially, means conform; in sailing, it means shift.

G.I. Bill of Rights for the post-World War II laws that once financed both college education and home mortgages for veterans and now provide them with educational assistance. In later references, *the G.I. Bill* or a paraphrase, but not *the bill* because there have been many bills over the years.

giga(-). Compounds formed with *giga*, which means one billion, are not hyphenated, except in rare use before a vowel: gigabyte; gigacycle; giga-electron; gigaton; gigawatt.

Hyphenate terms coined for effect (*giga-ego; giga-mansion*), but ration that use to avoid triteness.

gigabyte. About a billion bytes of information, or a thousand megabytes. In technical contexts, it is abbreviated *GB*: *a 500GB hard disk*. See bit; byte; kilobyte; megabyte; terabyte.

gigahertz is a unit of frequency equal to a billion hertz, or cycles per second. It is often used as a measure of frequency or of a computer's speed. The abbreviation (for technical contexts only) is *GHz*: *a 3 GHz computer*.

gild the lily is an accepted phrase for overembellishment, but writers who wish to delight the exacting reader will use Shakespeare's actual words, from "King John": "To gild refined gold, *to paint the lily.*"

gilt-edged.

Ginnie Mae for the Government National Mortgage Association, the government agency that buys pools of mortgages from lenders and sells securities to the public.

girl. Reserve *girl* for references to the very young; use it only in contexts where *boy* would be appropriate. It is a *saleswoman*, not a *salesgirl*, and a *college student*, not a *college girl*. Also see coed and men and women.

girlfriend, boyfriend. While some traditionalists still view them as informal, these terms are now widely accepted for people of any age. *Companion* and *partner* are also acceptable. When possible, follow the preference of those involved. Also see lover.

Girl Scouts; *the Scouts; a girl scout*. The national organization is *Girl Scouts of the U.S.A.*

giveaway (n.).

gladiolus (sing.), **gladioli** (pl.).

glamour, glamorize, glamorous.

Glens Falls (in New York).

glitzy is trite, except in passages making light of the term or its tone. Possible substitutes include *dazzling, pretentious, sparkling, ornate* and *gaudy. Glitz*, more trite still, is a back-formation from a cliché.

G.M.A.T. for the Graduate Management Admissions Test.

G.N.M.A. or *Ginnie Mae* for the Government National Mortgage Association.

goal(-) Some but not all sports compounds formed with *goal* are one word: goalkeeper, goal line, goal mouth, goal post, goaltending.

gobbledygook.

God (Supreme Being). Lowercase *he, him, his, thee, thou, who* and *whom* when the reference is to God, Jesus, the Holy Ghost (or the Holy Spirit) or Allah.

god(-). Compounds formed with *god* are one word; those formed with *God* are hyphenated: godchild, goddaughter, goddess, godfather, God-fearing, God-forsaken, God-given, godless, godlike, godmother, godsend, godson, godspeed.

goddamn, goddamned, goddamn it. The expressions are lowercased. Like other profanity they should not be used without a compelling reason. See obscenity, vulgarity, profanity.

(-)goer. Compounds formed with *goer* are one word: churchgoer, moviegoer, operagoer, playgoer, theatergoer.

Golan Heights; *the heights.*

golf. Spell out the number of holes, tees and strokes below 10: *He took six strokes on the ninth hole; She fell behind on the 10th hole*. But use numerals for scores: *He shot a 6*. Also: *72-hole tournament; 2-foot putt; 95 yards; par 4; par-4 hole; two-over-par 6; on the green in 2*. The totals of out and in play are given this way: *36; 36-72*. Handicap totals: *83-10-73*. Clubs are described as an *8-iron*, a *2-wood*, *etc.*

Competition is held at *medal play* (lowest score wins) and *match play* (direct elimination). Some tournaments combine the two, with qualifying medal play preceding match play. The Grand Slam of golf consists of the Masters, the United States Open, the British Open and the P.G.A. Championship.

Birdie, bogey and *par* may be used as nouns or verbs. *Hole in one* takes no hyphens.

gonzo, slang for *madcap*, is, for many readers, obscure.

goodbye(s).

Good Friday.

good night (farewell).

good will. But hyphenate when it directly precedes a noun: *a good-will offering*.

Google. Uppercase this trademarked term. As a verb meaning to search online, it is colloquial and should be avoided except in quotations.

G.O.P. may be used as a synonym for the Republican Party in headlines and direct quotations, but in articles it should be used only to achieve a special (*Grand Old Party*) effect.

Gore-Tex is a trademark for laminated weatherproof fabrics.

gospel(s). Capitalize when referring to any of the four books of the Bible so named or when using the word in the sense of the Christian message: *He preached the Gospel*. Lowercase in other references: *She is a famous gospel singer; He swore he was telling the gospel truth*.

gothic (art, architecture and literature). Capitalize in references to the Goths, the medieval period (*Late Gothic* art), the style of architecture and the genre of literature, but not in references to printing: *gothic type*. Also lowercase in general references to gothic images like dark and stormy nights and castles. See arts terminology.

Gothic novel.

Götterdämmerung (twilight of the gods). Use quotation marks when the reference is to Wagner's opera so named.

gourmet has been drained of meaning by commercial overuse, especially as an adjective (*gourmet cat food*). Words like *epicure, food lover* and *judge of fine cooking* now serve better.

governance is a stuffy way to say things like *management* or *control* or *governing*.

government. Lowercase, as noun or adjective, except in proper names: *United States government; Pakistani government; Colorado government; government bonds; government agents*. But: *Government Printing Office*.

Government Accountability Office (formerly the *General Accounting Office*), an auditing arm of Congress. In headlines, sparingly: *G.A.O*.

governmental. Lowercase unless it is a part of a name.

Gov. *Lauren J. Daan; Governor Daan; the governor*. Also see Gov. Thomas E. Dewey Thruway and titles.

Governor-elect *Tracy J. Lam; Governor-elect Lam; the governor-elect*. But in cap-and-lowercase headlines: *Gov.-Elect Lam*.

Governor General *Chris L. Agneau; Governor General Agneau; the governor general*. No abbreviation and no hyphen, in references to the British crown's symbolic representative in a Commonwealth country. Plural: *governors general*.

Governors Island (in New York).

Gov. Thomas E. Dewey Thruway. Normally use *New York State Thruway* or *New York Thruway*, reserving the full name for articles that deal centrally with its operation or history. In later references: *the Thruway*. It is operated by the New York State Thruway Authority.

goy (sing.), **goyim** (pl.). These Yiddish words meaning non-Jew(s), while often used lightly, amount to ethnic slurs.

GPS for Global Positioning System. Note that the term refers to the satellite system and its components. The portable device that provides a user's location is a *GPS unit, GPS device* or *GPS receiver*.

grader. Do not hyphenate in reference to school classes: *first grader; sixth grader; 10th grader; etc.* But: *third-grade pupil*.

graduate (v.). A person may *graduate from* a school or *be graduated from* it. But never: *They graduated high school*.

Graduate Management Admissions Test (G.M.A.T.).

graffiti is acceptable as a singular in all references. Seen in a museum or gallery, graffiti can be art. But in writing about streets and public spaces, avoid *graffiti artist(s)*, a phrase that strikes some readers as condoning vandalism.

gram. Convert grams to ounces by multiplying the number of grams by 0.035: *The gold-bearing rock weighed 56 grams, about 2 ounces*. But when *gram* is used in nutritional measurements, do not convert: *Each cookie has 10 grams of fat*. See metric system.

Grammy Award(s); *the award(s); the Grammy(s)*. Articles dealing centrally with the awards should mention that they are presented by the National Academy of Recording Arts and Sciences.

Grand Central Terminal. But the subway stop is *Grand Central Station*.

grande dame (sing.), **grandes dames** (pl.).

grandmother. Describe a woman as a *grandmother* (or *mother*) only when her family status is pertinent and its pertinence is clear to the reader. The best test is whether, if the subject were a man, *grandfather* would be used. Also see men and women.

Grand Rabbi. See Chief Rabbi.

Grand Slam. Uppercase in references to the four major tournaments in golf (the Masters, the United States Open, the British Open and the P.G.A. Championship) and the four in tennis (the Australian Open, the French Open, Wimbledon and the United States Open).

Grand Teton National Park.

Grants Pass (in Oregon).

graphic. In general contexts and in articles about publishing, use the term as a modifier only: *graphic design; graphic designer* (and *graphics editor*, but not *graphics designer*). As a singular noun (a *graphic tracing wheat prices*), the word still has a flavor of publishing jargon; when feasible, consider alternatives like *chart* and *diagram*. The plural, though, is standard English in all contexts, in the sense of design: *a magazine distinguished by innovative graphics*.

Interactive graphic refers to an online feature that requires the user to navigate or enter data or otherwise interact with it. Do not use the term simply as a synonym for any online chart, diagram or map.

grave accent. See accent marks.

gray. But: *greyhound*.

great(-). Hyphenate all relationship words beginning with *great*: great-aunt, great-grandchild, great-granddaughter, great-grandfather, great-great-grandfather, great-grandmother, great-grandparent, great-grandson, great-nephew, great-niece, great-uncle.

Great Britain. Shorten it to Britain in ordinary news copy.

Great Lakes; *the lakes*. They are Lakes Superior, Michigan, Huron, Erie and Ontario.

Great Salt Lake (in Utah).

Great South Bay (in New York).

Greek Catholic Church. A Roman Catholic church of the Eastern Rite.

Greek Orthodox Archdiocese of America.

Greek Orthodox Church. It is the established church of Greece and, like the Russian Orthodox Church, is one of the autonomous Eastern Orthodox churches. See Eastern Orthodoxy; metropolitan; patriarch.

Greek Revival (architecture). Capitalize when referring to the simple and austere building style. See arts terminology.

Green Berets. It is the informal name of the Special Forces, the Army's antiguerrilla troops. Mention both names when the units figure more than casually in an article. Also see Special Operations.

greenmail is the purchase of a large block of a company's stock in the hope that the management, fearing a takeover, will pay a premium to buy it back. When the word is used, explain it.

Greenwich Mean Time has been replaced as the world standard by Coordinated Universal Time. Use that term instead. Also see time.

Greenwich Village. In later references, *the Village*. Do not use quotation marks, even when *Village* stands alone in a headline. If the context is not clear, use a more specific place name, like *Washington Square*.

Green-Wood Cemetery (in Brooklyn).

gross domestic product. It is the total value of the goods and services produced in a country in a specified period. It has replaced the gross national product — which includes the output of citizens who are working abroad — as the United States government's principal measure of the country's output. In later references (sparingly) and in headlines: G.D.P.

groundbreaking.

Group Capt. *Ashley B. Kikondoo* (in British and British-influenced foreign air forces); *Group Captain Kikondoo; the group captain*.

Group of 7 for the conference of industrialized nations. In direct quotations, but not ordinarily in headlines: *G-7*. In some contexts, when Russia is included: *Group of 8*. Also: G-20. (But do not abbreviate *Group of 30*, a private nonprofit organization.)

grow (v.) can be used without a direct object in many contexts: *flowers grow; unemployment grows; businesses and governments grow*. With a direct object, *grow* sounds natural in references to living things: *grow flowers; grow wheat; grow a beard; grow antlers*. The newer usage of *grow* to mean expand (*grow the business; grow revenue*) is business jargon, best resisted.

grown-up (n. and adj.).

grueling.

G-7. See Group of 7.

Guadalupe, Guadeloupe. *Guadalupe* is a common place name in Central and South America. But in the West Indies, the name is *Guadeloupe*.

Guangzhou (in China) was formerly known as Canton. See Chinese names.

Guantánamo, Guantánamo Bay (in Cuba). In direct quotations or in feature contexts involving the United States naval base there, the nickname *Gitmo* may be used.

guarantee, not *guaranty*, except in proper names.

Guatemala City, the capital of Guatemala. Omit the country name after the city name. Also see datelines.

gubernatorial. Though favored by political insiders, the adjective is stilted. When possible, choose more conversational phrasing: *the campaign for governor; the election of a governor*.

guest. Do not use as a verb except in direct quotations.

guide(-). Some compounds formed with *guide* are one word and some are two words: guidebook, guide dog, guideline, guidepost, guide rail.

Guinea, Guinea-Bissau. *Guinea* is a former French colony on the west coast of Africa. Its capital is Conakry and its people are *Guineans. Guinea-Bissau*, much smaller and to Guinea's northwest, is a former Portuguese colony. Its capital is Bissau. Its people can be called Guineans only when the context distinguishes them from the people of Guinea.

gulf coast. Capitalize when referring to the region of the United States lying along the Gulf of Mexico; lowercase when referring to the actual shoreline.

Gulf Stream for the ocean current. But: *the Gulfstream Aerospace Corporation* makes *Gulfstream* aircraft.

gulf war. Lowercase, and reserve the term for use after first references to the Persian Gulf war of 1991, in which the United States and allied countries supported Kuwait after an invasion by Iraq.

gun may be used loosely in reference to any firearm. See handguns; rifles; shotguns.

gun(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *gun* are one word: gunboat, gun dog, gunfight, gunfire, gunman, gunner, gunplay, gunpoint, gunpowder, gunrunner, gunship, gunshot, gun-shy, gunsmith.

Gunnery Sgt. *Lindsay K. Kuzu; Sergeant Kuzu; the sergeant*.

Gutenberg, Johann.

Guyana. Its capital is Georgetown and its people are Guyanese.

Gypsy, Gypsies, in references to the ethnic group also known as *Romany* or *Roma*, a term many prefer. Also, lowercased: *gypsy cab; gypsy-cab driver; gypsy moth*.

H

habitué (masc. and fem.).

hacker originally referred to any skilled manipulator of software. It now connotes mischievous, malicious or illegal manipulation.

Hades. But lowercase *hell*.

haftara, a reading from the Prophets during a Jewish Sabbath or festival service, supplementing the reading from the Torah. Despite a frequent assumption, the term is derived not from *Torah* (hence the spelling difference) but from the Hebrew for *dismissal*. Plural: *haftarot*.

Hagatna, formerly Agana, is the capital of Guam.

Haggadah. The Passover text recited at a Seder. Plural: *Haggadot*.

Hague, The. An exception to the usual preference for lowercasing *the*.

hair(-), (-)haired. Most but not all compounds formed with *hair* as a prefix are one word: hairball, hairbreadth, hairbrush, haircut, hairdo, hairdresser, hairdressing, hairless, hairline, hairpiece, hair shirt, hairsplitting, hairstyle, hair trigger (n.), hair-trigger (adj.).

As a suffix, *haired* is usually hyphenated: brown-haired, fair-haired, longhaired, red-haired, *etc.*

Also: *harebrained*, not *hairbrained*.

hajj, hajji. *Hajj* is the pilgrimage to Mecca that every Muslim is obliged to make. A *hajji* is a Muslim who has made that pilgrimage.

Halakha. The part of the Talmud devoted to unwritten laws that are based on an oral interpretation of Jewish Scriptures.

half(-). Most compound adjectives that use *half* as a prefix are hyphenated, but some are solid: half-afraid, half-baked, half-cocked, half-done, half-dozen, half-full (adj. only), halfhearted, half-hourly (adj., adv.), halfway.

Compound nouns that use *half* as a prefix can be solid, hyphenated or open: half-and-half (the drink), halfback, half brother, half dollar, half dozen (n.), half gainer (diving), half-holiday, half-hour (n. and adj.), half-life, half-moon, half nelson (wrestling), half note (music), half pay, halfpenny, half shell, half sister, half size, half sole, half time (n., except sports), halftime (n., sports), halftone, halftrack, half-truth. When in doubt, consult the dictionary.

Also: *cut in two; break in two* (not *in half*, unless the measurement is exact).

half-mast, half-staff. As a sign of mourning, flags on ships and at naval installations ashore are flown at *half-mast;* flags elsewhere ashore are flown at *half-staff.*

hall(-). Compounds formed with *hall* are one word: hallmark, hallway.

Halloween.

halo(s).

Hamas (the militant Islamic movement in the Middle East).

Hamtramck (in Michigan).

hand(-), (-)hand. Most but not all compounds formed with *hand* as a prefix are one word: handbag, handball, handbill, handbook, handcuff, handful(s), hand grenade, handgun, hand-held, handmade, hand-me-down, handoff, handout (n.), handrail, handsaw, handshake, hands-off, hands-on, handspring, handstand, hand-to-hand, hand-to-mouth, handwriting.

As a suffix, *hand* is sometimes hyphenated and sometimes solid: beforehand, left-hand (adj.), longhand (writing), right-hand (adj.), shorthand.

handguns. A *handgun* or *pistol* is a weapon that can be held and fired with one hand. It may be a *semiautomatic*, with the ammunition stored in a magazine or clip, usually in the handle; a *revolver*, with the ammunition stored in a cylinder that turns with each shot to align a fresh cartridge; a *derringer*, with a round in each of two barrels; or a *single-shot pistol*. The discharge of a handgun is called a shot. Also see bullet; caliber; cartridge; rifles; shotguns.

handicapped. Use more specific terms for disabilities when possible. Many people with disabilities believe that the broad term exaggerates their limitations — because, for example, a person in a wheelchair is not *handicapped* if the workplace provides ramps. Also see challenged; cripple, crippled; disability, disabled; impaired.

hangar (an airplane shed); **hanger** (a clothes hook or the like).

hanged, hung. A person is *hanged;* a picture is *hung*.

hansom cab. A *hansom cab* is a covered, two-wheeled carriage with a driver's seat above and behind the cab. The carriages commonly seen in New York are *victorias*, which have four wheels and a driver's seat in front.

Hanukkah (Festival of Lights).

Hapsburg (not *Habsburg*).

hara-kiri.

harass.

hard(-). Some compounds formed with *hard* are solid, some hyphenated and some two words: hardball, hard-bitten, hard-boiled, hard core (n.), hard-core (adj.), hardcover, hard-earned, hard hat (the noun for the headgear, and, in slang, its wearer), hard-hat (adj.), hardhearted, hard landing, hard-line (adj.), hard-liner, hard pressed, hard rock, hard-wired, hardwood, hard-working.

harebrained.

hark, hark back, harken, hearken. Both *hark* and *hearken* mean listen attentively. *Harken* is a variant spelling of *hearken. Hark back* means return to an earlier point.

Harper's Magazine.

Harrods (the London department store). Without an apostrophe.

Harry S. Truman. Use a period after the initial, though he had no legal middle name.

Hart Island (in Long Island Sound, part of the Bronx).

Hartsdale (in Westchester County, N.Y.).

Harvard Business School may be used in most references rather than the full name, *the Harvard Graduate School of Business Administration*. Use *B school* in direct quotations only, or for feature effect.

Harvard University. In most casual references, *Harvard* can stand alone, for the university or for its undergraduate college.

Hasbrouck Heights (in Bergen County, N.J.).

hashtag refers to a key word or phrase preceded by a # symbol to enable easy search on Twitter and other online services. Use hashtags sparingly within articles. Capitalize proper names within them and do not put them in quotation marks: *#BarackObama*, *#debate*.

Hasid (n., sing.), **Hasidim** (n., pl.), **Hasidic** (adj.). Use *Hasidism* for the beliefs of the Jewish sect.

hassle. In the sense of struggle or bother, *hassle* is colloquial.

Hastings-on-Hudson (in Westchester County, N.Y.).

hatrack.

haves, have-nots (n.).

Havre de Grace (in Maryland).

Hawaii. Do not abbreviate after the names of cities, towns and counties, even in datelines.

Hawaiian. In referring to people, reserve *Hawaiian* for members of the ethnic group. Use *Hawaii resident* or a similar construction to refer to all residents of the state.

hay(-). Nearly all compounds formed with *hay* are one word: hay fever, hayfield, hayloft, haymaker, hayrick, hayride, haystack, haywire.

H-bomb may be used for hydrogen bomb in later references and in conversational contexts. In cap-and-lowercase headlines: *H-Bomb*.

HDTV for high-definition television in later references, sparingly, and in headlines.

he, him, his, thee, thou, who, whom. Lowercase, even in references to God, Jesus, the Holy Ghost (or the Holy Spirit) or Allah.

he or she may be used as a last resort to avoid an unwanted assumption of maleness or femaleness in a general reference. (Also *him or her* and *his or hers*.) But preferred solutions are those that spare the reader all traces of a writer's struggle. Try the plural construction: *A doctor always bills his patients*, for example, may be changed to *Doctors always bill their patients*. Or rewrite the sentence so that no pronoun is required: *The doctor always bills the patient*. Also see anybody, anyone, everybody, everyone, no one, someone; man, mankind; men and women.

head (n.). A specific organizational title is preferred (*president, chairman, chairwoman, director*), because the vagueness suggests superficial reporting.

head(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *head* are one word: headache, headband, headboard, head cold, headdress, headfirst, headgear, headhunter, headlight, headlong, head-on, headphone, headrest, headroom, headset, head start, headstone, headstrong, head-to-head, headwaiter, headwaters, headway, headwear, headwind. Also see headmaster, headmistress.

headlines should ideally be written in the standard English of a simple sentence. As a test of the reader's comfort, it should be possible to convert a headline into a straightforward sentence merely by restoring the "little words" that have been omitted for copy fitting. On the print front page and news section fronts, each line of a head should express a self-contained idea, grammatically independent of the other lines. But even in feature sections, line breaks should occur at natural breathing points. Variations in screen display make such precision difficult online, but headline writers should still strive to fill out lines to avoid awkward breaks, short lines and widows (a single word on a separate line). Keep in mind that digital headlines often appear divorced from images and other context; be sure that the words alone convey the news.

On the home page and elsewhere online, the headline is often supplemented with a summary that expands on facts central to the news while striving to avoid repetition or tangential details. It consists of one or two short, complete sentences with normal capitalization and punctuation. A summary never appears alone, and thus may refer back to the headline, but it should not thwart the headline's ability to stand alone. Names and locations in a summary should be treated as first references: *Mayor Stacy K. Bildots; a factory in Edison, N.J.* Summaries almost always use the past tense, without a time element, unless referring to continuing or future developments: *President Obama will use the speech on Tuesday to argue for a change in the tax code*.

When reporting an accident, a crime or a disaster with a range of estimates of dead and injured, the headline should use the conservative figure. (As an exception, if experience suggests that an earthquake or a typhoon, for example, is likely to do vast damage because of its location, a general prediction like "hundreds" may be appropriate for the headline.) This rule should not affect the rounding of other kinds of numbers and decimals (see numbers).

Headlines on fresh news almost always use the present tense: *Men Walk on Moon*. If the headline relates a current action to an earlier one, drop back only one level in time, to the past tense: *Governor Signs Bill She Opposed* (not the past perfect *Had Opposed*). When recalling history or newly disclosing a past development, also use the past tense: *Miel Left Millions to College*.

To save space, the verb *to be* (in forms like *is, are, was*, etc.) can be omitted, but only from the first phrase of a headline or a bank, as shown here by the brackets: *State [ ] Facing Deficit, Governor Asserts*. But never *Governor Asserts State [] Facing Deficit*, because the omission from a later phrase creates distorted English. And if any "little words" (verbs or articles) must be omitted for space, drop the leftmost ones first. Once the mind's ear has "heard" an a or a *the*, it finds later omissions dissonant.

A print edition bank may begin with a verb, omitting a subject, but only if the implied subject is identical with the actual one in the headline above.

Thus:

Cordeiro Plans China Trip

Will Argue for Human Rights

But not:

Cordeiro Plans China Trip

Will Ask Him for Trade Deal

Short, active verbs work best. Avoid archaic-sounding ones like *beset, decry* and *score* (in the sense of denounce). Even the graying ones, like *bid* (meaning request), should be a last resort.

In headings of all kinds (including those for charts and lists), use single quotation marks instead of doubles. In general, use a semicolon between headline clauses, even if the second shares a subject with the first: *Governor to Run Again; Pledges a 'Clean, Tough Fight.'* In a multiple-line head, the semicolon should normally fall at the end of a line.

Except in desperation, do not use a comma to mean *and* in a phrase like *Taxes, Wages Expected to Rise*. Do not use a question mark to mean *maybe* or to suggest tentativeness (*Governor to Run Again?*) or to coyly attract web traffic instead of conveying the news (*What Time Is the Super Bowl?*). In a special case, usually for humor, the first part of a headline may end with a period. In that case, for balance, another period should appear at the end:

A Wall Fell on Their Cars. Then Bad Luck Set In.

(The rule does not apply to exclamation points and question marks; if they appear in midheadline, they do not create a need for punctuation at the end.)

Resist using dashes because they are ungainly in headline type; usually the meaning can be conveyed with a colon, a semicolon or parentheses. The objection applies equally to the half-width en dash (–) except when it is used, properly, as a minus sign. But make an exception for the cone-shaped banks on Page 1; they customarily use full-length dashes rather than semicolons between clauses or ideas.

Note that the international print edition uses a different style in headlines, normally capitalizing only the first word, proper names and any word that directly follows a colon.

Additional headline conventions apply to obituaries. Also see capitalization.

headmaster, headmistress. Lowercase and separate the title from the name with a comma: *Merrill V. Barany, the headmaster; the headmistress*. In a general reference: *the head of the school*.

headquarters. Treat it as a plural noun in ordinary uses: *Procter & Gamble's headquarters are in Cincinnati*. But use a singular verb in this kind of military construction: *Headquarters wants the battalion to move out*. Capitalize this way: *First Army Headquarters; the headquarters*. Do not use *headquarter* as a verb: *The company is headquartered in Philadelphia*.

headwind, tailwind.

health care is not hyphenated, even when it serves as a modifier: *health care plan*.

hearing examiner. See administrative law judge.

heart(-), (-)hearted. Most but not all compounds formed with *heart* as a prefix or a suffix are one word: heartache, heartbeat, heartbreak, heartbroken, heartburn, heartfelt, heartland, heartless, heart-rending, heartsick, heart-to-heart, heartwarming, halfhearted, hardhearted, lionhearted, softhearted.

heart condition. Every heart has some kind of condition. Write *heart ailment, disease*, etc., instead.

heat(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *heat* are two words: heat exhaustion, heat lightning, heat pipe, heatproof, heat pump, heat sink, heatstroke, heat wave.

Heathrow Airport (near London).

heat index. It is a measurement devised by the National Weather Service to express the combined effect of high temperature and high humidity on human comfort, health and safety. The index, sometimes called the *apparent temperature*, is expressed in degrees Fahrenheit, representing the sensation caused when a given air temperature interacts with a given level of relative humidity. For example, if the air temperature is 95 and the relative humidity is 55 percent, the heat index, as read from the Weather Service chart, is 110. The system replaced the *discomfort index* and the *temperature-humidity index*. In articles about heat waves, the index is a useful indicator of how harmful the weather may be. The Weather Service considers heat indexes of less than 80 comfortable. It regards those greater than 100 as hazardous and those greater than 110 as dangerous.

heaven. Lowercase except in this sense: *I thank Heaven*.

hectare. An area equal to 10,000 square meters or 2.47 acres. Unless there is a special reason to use hectare figures, convert them to acres. And rounded figures should be rendered as rounded translations. See metric system.

Heights, the. Capitalize in later references to Brooklyn Heights or Washington Heights. In headlines: *Brooklyn Hts.*; *Washington Hts.*

hell. Lowercase, but *Hades* is uppercase. As profanity and slang, *hell* should be resisted. See obscenity, vulgarity, profanity.

Hell Gate (the narrow channel in the East River).

helmeted. *Helmeted police* and *helmeted troops* are journalese clichés. If it needs to be said, say *soldiers in helmets, etc.*

help (v.). Use the construction *help wondering*, as in *He cannot help wondering*. Not *He cannot help but wonder*.

helter-skelter.

hemisphere. Capitalize in references to the divisions of the earth: *Northern Hemisphere*, *etc.* But: *the hemisphere*.

Henry, O. The pen name of the short-story writer William Sydney Porter was *O. Henry* (not *O'Henry*).

her. In reference to countries or ships, use *it* or *its* instead.

Herakleion. Use *Iraklion* instead for the city in Crete.

herculean.

here(-). Compounds formed with *here* are one word: hereabout(s), hereafter, hereby.

The following, all too pompous for most newspaper writing, are also solid: herein, hereinafter, hereto, heretofore, hereunder, herewith.

heretofore, hitherto. Both words mean *until now*. Do not confuse them with *theretofore*, meaning *until then*. All three words have their place, but it is in an old-fashioned legal brief. News writing calls for the simple phrases.

Her Majesty and similar designations should be used only in texts and quotations, or for special effect.

Herr. See courtesy titles.

herself, himself, myself. Reflexive pronouns serve to add emphasis (*She fixed it herself*) or to turn the action back to the subject (*He makes himself hard to find*). Do not substitute them for ordinary objects: *The meeting was between myself and the plumbers*. Make it *me and the plumbers*.

Hezbollah is a Shiite Muslim militant group based in Lebanon and fighting with Iranian backing against the Israeli military. The name means Party of God.

HIAS may be used, without *the*, in later references to the *Hebrew Immigrant Aid Society*.

hide(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *hide* are one word: hide-and-seek (n.), hideaway (n.), hidebound, hide-out (n.).

high(-). Some compounds formed with *high* are one word, some are hyphenated and some are two words: highball (drink), high beam, highchair, high fidelity, highflier, high frequency (n.), high-frequency (adj.), high-grade (adj.), highhanded, high jinks, high jump, high-level (adj.), highlight (n. and v.), high-minded, high-powered (adj.), high-rise (adj.), highroad, high-tech, high-tension, hightop (shoe), highway, highwayman.

High Bridge, for the structure connecting Manhattan and the Bronx, and for the neighborhood at its Bronx end. But the park associated with it is *Highbridge Park*.

highbrow (n. and adj.) is colloquial and sometimes disparaging. Use it with care.

high commission. In diplomatic relations within the Commonwealth, high commissions take the place of embassies. Lowercase *high commission* when it stands alone. But: *the Nigerian High Commission*.

High Commissioner *Leslie T. Anyell; Leslie T. Anyell, high commissioner to Nigeria; High Commissioner Anyell; the high commissioner; Mr.* (or *Ms., Mrs.* or *Miss*) Anyell. In diplomatic relations within the Commonwealth, high commissioners take the place of ambassadors.

High Court. It is the name of a British court, among others. Do not use it as a variation for Supreme Court. Even in a narrow headline, *Justices* will do.

High Holy Days (Jewish; preferred to *High Holidays*): Rosh Hashana and Yom Kippur. Also see Jewish holy days.

high jinks (not *hijinks*).

High Line, the (not High Line Park), for the public park built along unused elevated freight tracks on the West Side of Manhattan.

high Mass. It is *sung* or *celebrated*, not *said*. Also see Mass.

high school equivalency diploma is the preferred term for the credential available to people who do not complete high school but pass a test on high school subjects. In precise usage, *G.E.D.* refers not to the diploma, but to the test, known as the

General Educational Development exam (a trademarked term).

high tea is often misused to suggest something elegant; that is *afternoon tea*. In Britain *high tea* is a hearty working-class supper.

highway. Capitalize in names: *Sunrise Highway*. But: *the highway*. See Interstate System and route.

hijack (v. only). Use *hijacking* for the noun and the modifier, even in headlines.

hike. Do not use *hike* as a synonym for *increase*, whether noun or verb.

Hill. In references to Capitol Hill, *the Hill* is Washington jargon. Use it only to convey an insider flavor.

himself. See herself, himself, myself.

Hindi (language), **Hindu** (religion).

hip-hop.

hippie(s).

hippopotamus(es).

His Holiness should not be used for the pope except in direct quotations and texts or for special effect.

His Majesty and similar designations should be used only in direct quotations and texts or for special effect.

Hispanic (n. and adj.) means descended from a Spanish-speaking land or culture. It may apply to many groups of Americans — to Puerto Ricans, for example, or Texans of Mexican origin — as well as to immigrants from Latin America or Spain.

In precise usage, it does not denote a race; the Census Bureau, for example, specifies that Hispanics can be of any race. But in casual use and in many contexts like political polling, it is common to treat Hispanic as a category parallel to white, black or Asian. Take care to avoid confusion over how the descriptions are being used.

Perhaps because of the *ic* ending, some writers prefer to avoid *Hispanic* as a noun (*Hispanics* or *a Hispanic*). But avoidance of the noun should not take conspicuous forms – wooden phrases, for example, like *Hispanic people* or *Hispanic residents*. If *Hispanic* occurs in a series of ethnic designations, all should be modifiers (*black, Hispanic and Asian-American neighborhoods*) or none should.

The alternative Latino is increasingly popular. When writing about specific people or groups, choose the term they prefer. And when a more specific identification is available – *Cuban, Puerto Rican, Mexican-American* – use it. Take care with *Spanish-speaking* and *Spanish-surnamed* because Hispanics do not necessarily speak the language and some have other kinds of names. Also see Chicano; ethnicity; Puerto Rico, Puerto Rican.

historically black. It is a specialized term, referring to colleges and universities that were founded for blacks. Do not use it to mean merely that a college is predominantly black.

historic, historical. *Historic* means important in history. Use it with caution for a current event, because history's verdict is rarely predictable by journalists, and the word suggests hyperbole. *Historical* means *about* history or *concerned with* history: *a historical novel; a historical exhibition*. Because the *h* is pronounced, precede either word with *a*, not *an*.

hit(-). Standing alone: *hit or miss; hit and run*. But when preceding the words they modify: *hit-or-miss; hit-and-run*. And in headlines, when necessary: *hit-run*.

hitherto. See heretofore, hitherto.

Hitler. Ordinarily omit his first name. But if it is used, spell it *Adolf*, not *Adolph*.

H.I.V. for the human immunodeficiency virus. It is not *the AIDS virus*, but rather *the virus that causes AIDS;* the medical condition is defined not by infection but by a variety of physical effects that may ensue. A person who has the virus is *H.I.V. positive* or *infected with H.I.V.* Note that *H.I.V. virus* is redundant. Also see AIDS.

H.M.O. for health maintenance organization in later references and in headlines.

hoard (a reserve, or to reserve), **horde** (a throng).

Hobson's choice means a "take it or leave it" offer: no choice at all.

Ho Chi Minh City (in Vietnam) is the former Saigon, renamed after the Communist takeover in 1975. It is often helpful to note that the old name remains in popular use.

hockey. Scores are given in figures: *The Rangers won*, *3-0*. Numbers of goals below 10 and of periods are spelled out: *He scored three goals in the second period*. But: *The score at the end of the second period was 3-1*. The best-known professional organization is the *National Hockey League*, and its annual championship is the *Stanley Cup finals*.

hocus-pocus.

hodgepodge.

Ho-Ho-Kus (in New Jersey).

hoi polloi is Greek for *the many*, meaning the masses (and not, as sometimes supposed, for *the elite*). Do not precede the phrase with a redundant *the*. And unless the intent is unmistakably ironic, avoid the expression as patronizing.

(-)holder. Most but not all compounds formed with holder are one word: boxholder, householder, jobholder, leaseholder, officeholder, potholder, shareholder, stockholder.

But: *preferred-stock holder*.

holdup (n. and adj.). A *holdup* man or woman *holds up* a victim during a *holdup*.

hole in one.

holiday references. Resist the journalese mannerism that draws holidays irrelevantly into articles about events that occur on or near them. Do not characterize a Dec. 24 assault as a *Christmas Eve shooting* or a Feb. 14 accident as a *Valentine's Day crash*. Forgo chestnuts (so to speak) like *'tis the season, deck the halls, all the trimmin's* and *ring in the new*.

holidays are listed separately.

Holland. Use only in historical references (in art, for example) to the western region of what is now the Netherlands, or in references to North Holland and South Holland, provinces created from that region in 1840.

holocaust. Uppercase in references to the Nazis' mass destruction of Jews during World War II. Lowercase *holocaust* in a more general reference to a firestorm. Resist applying the word casually to other massacres; there is a danger of hyperbole and of offending readers by trivializing the place of genocide in history.

holy communion. The Christian sacrament, celebrated by a minister, a priest or a bishop. The elements of bread and wine (or grape juice) are consecrated by the celebrant and then distributed or administered to the congregation. Uppercase the term when it refers to a religious service that incorporates the sacrament. Lowercase for the sacrament itself.

Holy Father should not be used in reference to the pope except in quotations and texts, or for special effect.

holy grail. Capitalize only in a reference to the cup or plate that was lost, according to medieval legend, after Jesus used it at the Last Supper. Lowercase the phrase in general references to a long and arduous search or to the object of such a search, but ration them; they are overused.

Holy See (the Roman see of the Roman Catholic Church).

Holy Week (the week before Easter).

home(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *home* are solid: homebound, homecoming, homeless, homemade, homeowner, home plate, homeroom, home rule, home run, homesick, homespun, homestretch, hometown, homework. Also see homemaker.

home, hone. A detection device (radar, for example) *homes in* on a signal source, behaving like a *homing* pigeon. *Hone*, an unrelated word, means *sharpen;* it is not used with *in*.

homemaker and *housewife* are dated terms and should be avoided except for special effect. Also see men and women.

home page, the introductory screen of a website.

home port (n. and adj.). Do not use as a verb.

hometown. Do not write *his hometown of Peoria*. Make it *his hometown, Peoria*.

Homo sapiens. See genus and species.

homosexuality. See bisexual; gay; lesbian; sexual orientation.

Hon., for the Honorable. Use it in direct quotations or texts only, followed by a full name: *the Hon. Lauren P. Lamb*.

hone. See home, hone.

Hong Kong.

honorarium(s).

honored in the breach. See more honored in the breach.

honorifics. See courtesy titles.

hoof-and-mouth disease. Make it *foot-and-mouth disease*.

hoof, hooves.

hoopla.

Hoosick Falls (in Rensselaer County, N.Y.).

hopefully. In the sense of *let us hope — Hopefully, Congress will pass the law* — this adverb is accepted by grammarians but still irritates some traditionalists. When a graceful alternative exists, avoid the construction. But also avoid wooden alternatives like *it is hoped* or *one hopes*.

horror-struck.

hors d'oeuvre(s).

horse(-). Some compounds formed with *horse* are one word, some are hyphenated and some are two words: horse-and-buggy (adj.), horseback, horsecar, horse chestnut, horseflesh, horsefly, horsehair, horsehide, horselaugh, horseman, horse opera, horseplay, horseplayer, horsepower, horse race, horse racing, horseradish, horse sense, horseshoe, horse trade (n.), horse-trade (v.), horse trader, horse trading, horsewoman.

horsepower (sing. and pl.) as a measure of engine power is increasingly being supplanted outside the United States by *kilowatts*, in part because of hybrid and electric vehicles. Avoid using *horsepower* except in relation to the output power of motors and engines. One horsepower equals 746 watts.

horse racing. Use figures for times of races: *2:39*. Use fractions rather than decimals: *1:12 4/5*.

The first time prices are mentioned in an article, the type of bet should be specified. *He paid $4.60 for $2 to win. He returned $18.40, $9.60, $5.40 for $2 across the board*. Exact odds should be used. If the odds are 35 cents to the dollar, the horse is 7 to 20 (or 7-20) rather than 1 to 3. If the payoff is $4.10 for $2, the odds are 21 to 20, not even money. Exception: If the price is comparatively high, the odds may be rounded. Thus a horse paying $38.20 for $2 may be listed as 18 to 1 rather than 181-10.

Thoroughbred horses run in *stakes* (sing. and pl.), harness horses in a *stake* (sing.) or *stakes* (pl.).

Harness races are *trotted* or *paced*, not *run*. The words *break* and *broke* should be used with care in harness articles. *He broke from the No. 4 post* could mean either that the horse started from that post or that he broke his stride.

For a horse mentioned in an article by name, use the pronoun *he* or *she*, not *it*. Gelded horses are *he*.

horsy, horsier, horsiest.

host, hostess. As a noun, *host* can refer to a man or a woman, but the widely used *hostess* seems free of the usual objections to grafted feminine endings.

Hostos Community College (part of the City University of New York).

hot-blooded.

hot dog (n.), **hot-dog stand**. But the slang verb meaning *show off* is spelled *hotdog* (and thus *hotdogger; hotdogging*).

hotline.

hour(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *hour* are one word: hourglass, hour hand, hourlong.

hours. See time.

house(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *house* are one word: house arrest, houseboat, housebound, housebroken, housecleaning, housecoat, housedress, housefly, household, househusband, housekeeper, housemaid, houseman, housemate, housemother, house organ, house party, houseplant, housetop, housewares, housewarming, housework. Also see housewife.

House of Commons; *the Commons.*

House of Lords; *the Lords.*

House of Representatives (United States); *the House.*

houses and estates. Capitalize but do not use quotation marks around their names: *Blair House.*

house-sit, house-sitting, house sitter.

housewife and *homemaker* are dated terms and should be avoided except for special effect. Also see men and women.

HUD for the Department of Housing and Urban Development.

Hugh L. Carey Tunnel. See Brooklyn-Battery Tunnel.

Humvee (derived from H.M.M.W.V., or high mobility multipurpose wheeled vehicle) is the nickname of the military vehicle that succeeded the jeep. The civilian version is called a *Hummer*.

(-)hundreds (of years). In almost all contexts, use the numerals (*1900s*, for example) rather than the words (*nineteen-hundreds*). See years, decades, centuries.

Hunter College (part of the City University of New York).

Hunters Point (in Queens).

Hunts Point (in the Bronx).

huppah (the Jewish wedding canopy).

hurly-burly.

hurricane. Do not call a storm a hurricane unless it meets the National Weather Service's hurricane specifications. The major requirement is winds near the center of the storm that reach or exceed 74 miles an hour.

The National Hurricane Center classifies hurricanes according to their intensity.

Use the hurricanes' assigned names sparingly, for necessary identification. But do not personalize the weather with pronouns like *his* or *her*, and do not attribute human traits to it (never, for example, *Bonnie behaved capriciously* or *Charlie showed his temper*). Also see gale; storms; tropical storm.

Hyde Park (in Dutchess County, N.Y., and in London).

hymns. Use quotation marks around their titles, with principal words capitalized.

hyphen. Compounds formed with and without hyphens are listed separately or in entries for individual prefixes and suffixes.

Use the hyphen in constructions like *three-mile hike* and *30-car train* and to avoid confusion in words like *re-form* (meaning form again). See re(-).

Do not use hyphens in compound modifiers when the meaning is clear without them: *sales tax bill; foreign aid plan; C minor concerto*. But: *pay-as-you-go plan* and *earned-income tax credit*. Comparative modifiers using *more* or *less* do not need hyphens except on the rare occasions when the meaning is ambiguous without one. Hyphens inserted hastily or automatically can be misleading, since the first word may relate at least as much to the third word as to the second. For example: *airport departure lounge; fast breeder reactor; national health insurance*. Also use no hyphen in these forms: *navy blue skirt; dark green paint*.

In some compounds, the hyphen should be used to avoid ambiguity or absurdity: *unfair-practices charge*, not *unfair practices charge*. Note the separation of an otherwise solid compound in *small-business man* (not *small businessman*) and *parochial-school teacher* (not *parochial schoolteacher*). See compound words.

Never use a hyphen after an adverb ending in *ly*: *a newly married couple; an elegantly furnished house; a perfectly explicit instruction*. But an adjective ending in *ly* may take the hyphen if it is useful: *gravelly-voiced; grizzly-maned*.

The special case of compound modifiers that precede nouns is demonstrated in the entries on ill(-) and well(-). An example: *He wore a well-tailored gray suit*. But omit the hyphen when the words follow the noun they modify: *The suit was well tailored*.

Some other compound modifiers, typically those beginning with nouns, keep their hyphens regardless of position in a sentence: *They are health-conscious; The purchase was tax-free; The party describes itself as family-oriented; Stylebook editors are awe-inspiring*.

Use no hyphens in a title consisting of a principal noun with modifiers: *commander in chief; lieutenant general; attorney general; director general; editor in chief; delegate at large; secretary general*. (See separate listings.) But use the hyphen in a title that joins two equal nouns: *secretary-treasurer*.

When a modifier consisting of two or more words is bound together by quotation marks, the hyphen is redundant; thus *poison-pill defense* and *"poison pill" defense* are both acceptable, but *"poison-pill" defense* is not. A long phrase serving as a contrived modifier is best set off by quotation marks rather than hyphens: *her "fed up with business as usual" theme*.

Use the suspensive hyphen, rather than repeat the second part of a modifier, in cases like this: *On successive days there were three-, five-and nine-inch snowfalls*.

Some house numbers in Queens take the hyphen: *107-71 111th Street*.

Use the hyphen in a compound denoting national origin: *Italian-American; Japanese-American*. But *French Canadian* and *Jewish American*, for example, take no hyphen because both phrases denote current group membership rather than origin.

For a minus sign, use the en dash (–) rather than a hyphen.

Also see word division.

I

I- for Interstate in highway numbers: *I-95*. See Interstate System.

I. for Island in names. The abbreviation may be used in headlines and maps (*Easter I.*), but not in articles. Do not use it in references to Coney Island, which is a neighborhood though it was once an island, and do not use *Long I.* or *Staten I.* Plural: *Is.* (*Canary Is.*).

IBM.

ICBM for intercontinental ballistic missile.

ice(-). Some compounds formed with *ice* are one word, some are two and a few are hyphenated: ice bag, iceberg, iceboat, icebound, icebreaker, icecap, ice-cold, ice cream, ice field, ice floe, icehouse, iceman, ice milk, ice pack, ice pick, ice skate (n.), ice-skate (v.), ice storm, ice water.

ice age.

iced tea (not *ice tea*).

IC4A, in first or later references to the Intercollegiate Association of Amateur Athletes of America, but the full name should appear in major articles.

ID for identification, without periods because the letters do not stand for separate words.

Idaho. Do not abbreviate, even after the names of cities, towns and counties.

idée fixe (an obsession).

i.e., for the Latin *id est*, means *that is*. It rarely has a place in news writing, but when it does, do not confuse it with *e.g.*

if. For the verbs and tenses to use in *if* clauses, see conditional tenses and subjunctive. Also see whether.

ifs, ands or buts. No apostrophes.

I.L.A. for the International Longshoremen's Association.

ill(-). Hyphenate a compound formed with *ill* only when it serves as an adjective before a noun: ill-advised, ill-conceived, ill-considered, ill-defined, ill-equipped, ill-fated, ill-gotten, ill-humored, ill-looking, ill-mannered, ill-natured, ill-prepared, ill-spent, ill-starred, ill-suited, ill-tempered, ill-timed, ill-treated, ill-used.

The hyphen is not used when the words follow the nouns they modify: *The plan was ill timed*.

illegal immigrant may be used to describe someone who enters, lives in or works in the United States without proper legal authorization. But be aware that in the debate over immigration, some people view it as loaded or offensive. Without taking sides or resorting to euphemism, consider alternatives when appropriate to explain the specific circumstances of the person in question, or to focus on actions: *who crossed the border illegally; who overstayed a visa; who is not authorized to work in this country*.

Unauthorized is also an acceptable description, though it has a bureaucratic tone. *Undocumented* is the term preferred by many immigrants and their advocates, but it has a flavor of euphemism and should be used with caution outside quotations. *Illegal immigration*, because it describes the issue rather than an individual, is less likely than *illegal immigrant* to be seen as troubling.

Take particular care in describing people whose immigration status is complex or subject to change — for example, young people brought to this country as children, many of whom are eligible for temporary reprieves from deportation under federal policies adopted in 2012.

Do not use *illegal* as a noun, and avoid the sinister-sounding *alien*.

illegitimate. Do not refer to a child of unmarried parents as *illegitimate*, and avoid the stodgy *born out of wedlock*. If the parents' marital status is pertinent and the pertinence is clear to the reader, simply report that the parents are not married or that the child is the son or daughter of a single mother or father.

Illinois. Abbreviate as *Ill.* after the names of cities, towns and counties.

ill will, good will. But hyphenate them when they directly precede nouns: *a good-will offering*.

imam. See Arab names and titles.

I.M.F. for the International Monetary Fund. Also: *the monetary fund; the fund*.

immigrate, emigrate. See emigrate, immigrate.

imminent, eminent. *Imminent* means impending. *Eminent* means prominent or outstanding. (*Immanent*, a theological term rarely seen in news copy, refers to the presence of God in the universe.)

impact. As a verb, it means *strike with force* (the way a meteorite strikes Earth, for example). Do not use it to mean *affect* or *have an effect;* in that sense, it is technical jargon.

impaired. In references to people with disabilities, it usually means a correctable or less than total loss of a function or ability. Someone with less than 100 percent hearing may be described as *hearing-impaired*. Also see blind; challenged; deaf; disability, disabled; handicapped.

impala (sing. and pl.).

impanel.

imperial gallon. An imperial gallon, the standard British gallon, is equal to about 4.5 liters or 1.2 United States gallons.

implement. Used as a verb, *implement* is pompously bureaucratic (as is *implementation*). Use conversational phrases like *carry out, put in effect, fulfill, accomplish* or *do*.

imply, infer. A speaker or writer or a set of facts *implies* things (that is, gives hints). A hearer or reader *infers* things (that is, draws conclusions). Preserve the distinction.

important(ly). Avoid this construction: *He is tall. More importantly, he is young*. Make it *more important*. The phrase includes an implied *what is* (*What is more important, he is young*). Thus *important* is an adjective modifying *what*.

impostor.

impressionism (art). Capitalize when referring to the movement in painting, initiated by Monet and others in the 1860s. Lowercase in more general references to art of a generalized and unfocused manner. See arts terminology.

Impressionism (music). Capitalize in reference to the movement, mainly French, that developed in the late 19th and early 20th centuries in opposition to Romanticism. Debussy was its main exponent. See arts terminology.

in. When it precedes a noun and means fashionable or faddish, *in* should carry quotation marks: *Bell-bottom pants were the "in" thing to wear in the early 1920s*. But: *Bell-bottoms are in again*. The same would be true of *out*, meaning outmoded, but it almost never precedes the noun: *Tail fins are definitely out*.

in(-), (-)in. Generally the prefix *in-* forms solid compounds: inboard, inbound, incoming, indoor, infield, infighting, inpatient (n. and adj.).

But: in-group (n.), in-house (adj., though jargon), in house (adv., and more jargon), in-law, daughter-in-law, father-in-law.

The suffix *-in* forms hyphenated compounds: break-in, cave-in, sit-in (all n. only).

Latin terms that have entered English in fields like law and medicine are never solid or hyphenated: *in absentia, in camera, in extremis, in loco parentis, in toto, in utero, in vitro*. (Often it is possible, though, to improve readability by using English instead.)

in as many. Avoid this journalese mannerism: *This was the second case in as many weeks*. As many as *second*? No. Make it *the second case in two weeks*.

inasmuch as.

Inauguration Day. Also: *Inaugural Address*. Uppercase only when the terms apply to the president of the United States.

inbox, outbox. No hyphens.

Inc. or an equivalent foreign abbreviation (*Ltd., S.A., S.p.A., G.m.b.H., N.V.*, etc.) should be omitted when a name includes some other company term (*Company, Corporation, Industries*, etc.). Similarly omit the terms in casual references: *She admires IBM for its marketing strategy*. When *Inc*. is used, omit surrounding commas (*Time Warner Inc*.).

incident. The word is acceptable in reference to any happening or occurrence, but it can sometimes seem to trivialize events that have serious consequences. When possible, use a more specific word: *accident, crash, bombing, shooting*.

including. A phrase introduced by *including* can be logical only when a positive expression or quantity is doing the "including": *Tenured professors, including Dr. Agneau, may lose their jobs*. If the subject is negative, use *not even* instead: *No one, not even Dr. Agneau, will lose a job*. If the emphasis is on smallness of numbers, *not even* will again be closer to the desired meaning: *Few public officials, not even the Democratic leaders, support the legislation*. Or: *Few public officials, even among the Democratic leaders, support the legislation*. Also see comprise.

income. In discussing a company's earnings, do not use *income* alone. Make it *income before taxes* or *net income*.

incommunicado.

incredible, incredulous. *Incredible* means unbelievable. *Incredulous* means unbelieving.

IND for the Independent Subway System, once a separate New York City operation. Except in quotations or historical contexts, make it simply *the A train* (or *line*); *the D train*.

Independence Day is the holiday celebrated on July 4. Informally, *the Fourth of July*.

in depth. The smoother way to use the phrase is after a noun: *a survey in depth*. As a preceding modifier (*in-depth study*), it is both cumbersome and devalued by overuse in publicity releases.

indexes (not *indices*).

Indian. See American Indian(s).

Indiana. Abbreviate as *Ind.* after the names of cities, towns and counties.

Indian Country is a federal designation that refers to any land under tribal jurisdiction, not just official reservations. When the term is used, explain it at some point in the story. See American Indian(s); Native American(s).

indirection is what Harold Ross of The New Yorker called the quirk of sidling into facts as if the reader already knew them. An example is this sentence, in a profile of a college athlete: *The 19-year-old also plays the piccolo*. The reader pauses to wonder whether the 19-year-old is the athlete or someone else. Journalese indirection probably appears most often in situations like this: After a lead reporting a Democratic senator's re-election, the second paragraph begins *Lynn N. Karitsa thanked his supporters at a rowdy celebration*. The reader must guess that Mr. Karitsa is the senator. Better to write *The senator, Lynn N. Karitsa ...*

indispensable.

individual is stilted as a synonym for *person*. Reserve it for contexts in which a person is being distinguished from a group: *Companies will be taxed, but not individuals*.

Indochina consists of Cambodia, Laos and Vietnam.

Indonesian names. Often an Indonesian, like Suharto, has only one name. On first reference, if the subject has a title, it should be used: *President Suharto*, or before he was president, *General Suharto*. But if he had no title, the style would be *Mr. Suharto* in all references.

Generally, the consonant combination *dj* should be changed to *j* (as in the place name *Jakarta*, not *Djakarta*) and the vowel combination *oe* should be changed to *u* (*Suharto*, not *Soeharto*).

industrial age.

Industrial Revolution. The one that began in England in the 18th century.

inequity (unfairness), **iniquity** (evil or wickedness).

infer, imply. A hearer or reader *infers* things — that is, draws conclusions. A speaker or writer or a set of facts *implies* things — that is, gives hints. Preserve the distinction.

inflation. Adjusting for inflation is crucial in providing accurate comparisons for dollar figures across time; failing to do so can be seriously misleading. In particular, avoid describing a sum of money as a *record* or the *largest ever* unless the superlative is true after inflation is taken into account. So, for example, a baseball player's new contract should not be described as the largest ever unless that is true after adjusting for inflation. Other common examples include government budget figures, box-office totals, legal settlements and merger deals.

When appropriate, use a less sweeping description like *one of the largest ever* or *the largest in two decades*.

This is not statistical quibbling. It is simply not accurate to say that $1,000 in 2013 dollars is worth more than, for example, $900 in 1960 dollars; the opposite is true ($1,000 in 2013 is equivalent to about $127 in 1960 dollars). The Bureau of Labor Statistics' online inflation calculator provides easy comparisons.

information age.

infrared.

ingénue.

initial letters. When a decorative initial letter is used at the beginning of a line (ascending or descending), uppercase the rest of the word. If the initial occurs in a personal name, the title of an artistic or literary work, or a publication name, set the entire name in capitals. If the first word is a title (*Sir, Dr., Gen*., etc.), uppercase the entire name. And if the line begins with a one-letter word, follow the initial with an en space, and set the next word in capitals:

I REMEMBER the night the storm broke.

A NIGHT like few others.

initials in names. Although full first names with middle initials (if any) are preferred in most copy, two or more initials may be used if that is the preference of the person mentioned: *L. P. Arniotis*, with a thin space between initials. In American usage, a single initial (*L. Arniotis*) is not usually proper, but that style may be used in lists and charts. Also, in a pen name or a well-established stage name: *B. Traven*.

Except for unusual effect, do not use famous initials (*J.F.K., L.B.J., F.D.R.*, etc.) as a substitute for a name, even in a headline.

Also see personal names and nicknames.

initiate is usually a stilted way of saying *open, start* or *begin*.

in line, on line. Few besides New Yorkers speak of standing *on line*. Follow the usage of the rest of the English-speaking world: *in line*.

inner city. Used in references to poor or blighted urban areas and their residents, the phrase is euphemistic and often inaccurate. (Some "inner" areas of cities are privileged, even wealthy, and some "outer" ones are poor.) Whether the desired meaning is *poor* or *minority* or *black*, specific and direct language is better.

innocent, not guilty. In the American system, a defendant is presumed innocent and therefore never needs to prove innocence; it is guilt that must be proven, by the state. So a defendant's plea (or a successful one's verdict) is *not guilty* rather than *innocent*. The journalistic practice of writing *innocent* arose from a fear of omitting *not* in typesetting. But the distinction is worth preserving, even at the cost of an extra moment to check the copy.

innuendo.

inoculate.

input. In the sense of offering opinions, the word has a flavor of jargon. Consider alternatives: *comment, opinion, reaction*.

inquire.

insane asylum. Except in direct quotations, replace this outmoded term with *mental hospital*.

insignia is both singular and plural. An alternative singular, *insigne*, is stilted; an alternative plural is *insignias*.

insist. It means declare firmly or persistently, often in the face of disbelief. The word should be used with care because it can suggest that the writer does not believe the speaker.

insofar as.

Inspector *Alex J. Cordero; Inspector Cordero; the inspector*.

install, installment.

instill, instilling.

Institute for Advanced Study (in Princeton, N.J.). *Study* is singular, and the institute is not part of Princeton University.

insure, ensure. *Insure* means buy or issue insurance: *She insured her camera against theft. Ensure* means guarantee or make safe: *The hit ensured a Yankee victory*.

integration. See desegregation, integration.

intelligence. See agent.

inter(-). Do not hyphenate compounds formed with *inter* except when it precedes a proper noun: interaction, inter-American, intercity, intercollegiate, intercontinental, interdenominational, interdisciplinary, interfaith, interlocking, intermarriage, international, interoffice, interracial, interstate.

Interboro Parkway (connecting Brooklyn and Queens) is now *Jackie Robinson Parkway*.

Intercollegiate Association of Amateur Athletes of America. The abbreviation *IC4A* may be used in first references, but the full name should appear in major articles.

interface. To avoid jargon, confine the term (n. and v.) to its technical meaning: a bridge of equipment or software, or both, allowing dissimilar devices or programs to communicate. By extension, *interface* (or *user interface*) also refers to the symbols and movements on a computer screen that translate abstract program structures into understandable human terms (folders, push buttons, recycling bins, hourglasses and the like).

Intermediate School. In first references (except anecdotal or colloquial ones), use *Intermediate School 201* (without *No*. before the numeral). In most later references: *I.S. 201*.

intern (n. and v.).

International Brotherhood of Teamsters. See Teamster.

International Court of Justice (at The Hague); *the World Court; the court*.

international date line (not *dateline*), for the place on the globe where the day begins.

International Labor Organization (I.L.O.). The membership of this United Nations body consists of labor delegates, management delegates and governmental delegates.

International Monetary Fund; *the monetary fund; the fund*. In headlines: *I.M.F.*

International New York Times, The. This name replaced The International Herald Tribune in 2013. For consistency, uppercase *The* even though it does not appear in the nameplate. See newspaper names.

International style (architecture). Capitalize when referring to the austere 20th-century style of steel and glass. See arts terminology.

Internet, the. The term (uppercase) refers to the global system of computer networks that includes the World Wide Web as a subset. Use *the web* when referring to the collection of websites, multimedia and services most familiar to readers and users. Also see web, the; World Wide Web.

Internet addresses. See web address.

Interstate System (of highways). When the name of the system is required, use this shortened version instead of the full name, the *National System of Interstate and Defense Highways*. In later references: *the Interstate; the Interstate proposal*. A highway may be referred to as *Interstate 95*, *Route 95* or *Route I-95*. In headlines: *Rte. 95; I-95; Rte. I-95*.

into the breach. The cliché, drawn from Shakespeare's "Henry V," is "Once more *unto* the breach."

intra(-). Do not hyphenate compounds formed with *intra*: intramural, intrastate, intrauterine, intravenous.

Intracoastal Waterway.

Inuit (sing. and pl.) is the ethnic designation now preferred, especially in Canada, by many of the native people known to outsiders as *Eskimo(s)*. Because *Eskimo* is more widely recognizable, it should remain the primary reference, but *Inuit* may be applied to specific groups who choose it, so long as the connection of the terms is made clear.

invalid (n.). Describing a person as an *invalid* is vague and undervalues the person's remaining abilities. Be as specific as possible: *He finds it painful to walk more than a few steps* or *She is unable to get out of bed*. See disability, disabled.

i.o.u.

Iowa. Do not abbreviate, even after the names of cities, towns and counties.

iPad, iPhone, iPod. But uppercase as the first word of a sentence or headline.

I.Q. for intelligence quotient.

Iraklion (not *Herakleion*) for the city in Crete.

iris(es).

Ironbound, the. A neighborhood in the eastern corner of Newark that took its name in the late 1800s from the railroad tracks that then surrounded it.

ironclad.

Iron Curtain. Uppercase in references to the Soviet bloc's isolation during the Cold War, but use the expression only when polemical phrasing is appropriate, or in quotations. Lowercase in general references to *an iron curtain*.

irony, in precise usage, is a restrained form of sarcasm in which the intent of a phrase differs from its literal meaning, often for rhetorical effect (*His brilliant plan nearly bankrupted the company*). The looser use of *irony* and *ironically*, to mean an incongruous turn of events, is trite. Not every coincidence, curiosity, oddity and paradox is an irony, even loosely. Also see paradox.

I.R.S. for the Internal Revenue Service.

IRT for Interborough Rapid Transit, an independent subway line in New York acquired by the city in 1940. Except in direct quotations or historical contexts, make it simply *the No. 6 train* (or *line*); *the 4 train*.

I.S. for Intermediate School in most later references: *I.S. 109*. In first references (except anecdotal or colloquial ones), spell out *Intermediate School 109* (without *No*. before the numeral).

Is. for Islands in proper names. The abbreviation may be used in maps and headlines (*Canary Is.*). The singular is *I.* (*Easter I.*).

(-)ish. Compounds formed with *ish* as a suffix are not hyphenated unless they include a number: amateurish; bluish; boyish; bullish; 40-ish; kittenish; prudish; sweetish.

Do not ordinarily hyphenate unfamiliar *ish* words or those coined for effect (*Clintonish; downtownish*), but ration their use to avoid cuteness.

Islam can mean not only the Muslim religion but also Muslims generally and the areas of the world where their religion is predominant. Islam's deity is Allah, and

Muhammad is the religion's prophet. The adjective is *Islamic*.

Islamist (n., adj.) refers to a proponent of government according to the tenets of Islam. Avoid implying that it is synonymous with *extremist* or *terrorist*. Take care not to confuse *Islamist* with the adjective *Islamic*, which simply means related to Islam.

Island, the, for Long Island, in later references.

isotopes. See chemical elements and formulas.

issue, edition(s). Do not interchange. See edition(s), issue.

it. In references to countries and ships, use the pronouns *it* and *its*, not *she* and *her*.

Italianate. Capitalize the architectural term, which has several meanings, most of them vaguely related to the idea of Italian villas. In the United States the style is characterized mostly by rounded window tops, often with elaborate cornices above them and atop the building itself. Many 19th-century brownstones in New York are considered Italianate. See arts terminology.

italic. Both *italic* and *roman* are lowercase in references to typefaces.

italics. News copy uses italics most sparingly, a convention rooted in the era of metal type, when they were usually inaccessible. Now, however, italics are available – for a quotation, for example, to convey the speaker's emphasis – but The Times's own writing should preferably express emphasis through word order and word choice. Do not use italics for genus and species names, or for publication names or cultural titles; see the separate style entries for those.

Also do not use italics for citations of court cases, but in a quotation or a verbatim text, substitute quotation marks around any occurrence that would otherwise be ambiguous ("*'Nixon' offers us a valuable example*," *the judge said*).

While the news sections do not italicize foreign words, an exception is made for The Times Magazine and the Book Review, reflecting the more literary flavor of a weekly periodical. In those sections, use italics for words that are indisputably foreign – either absent from the English dictionary or included but labeled foreign. Commonly borrowed expressions like *haute cuisine* and *haute couture, gulag,* *glasnost* and *perestroika* remain in roman type, as do foreign proper names. If in doubt, assume that a word is too familiar in English to be treated as foreign. And a lengthy foreign sentence (a quotation, ordinarily) is not italicized.

Italo-. Avoid, in adjectival references to Italy. Use *Italian-American, Italian-French, etc.*

Itar-Tass is the official name of the Russian government's press agency, but *Tass* is an acceptable first reference. *Itar* stands for Information Telegraph Agency of Russia. Tass was formed from the initials of the Russian words meaning Telegraph Agency of the Soviet Union.

its, it's. Beware of the confusion that may result from haste: *Its* is the possessive form of *it* (meaning *of it*). The contraction *it's* means *it is* (or, less often, *it has*).

IUD for intrauterine device (contraceptive).

Ivory Coast (not *Côte d'Ivoire*). The people are *Ivorian(s).*

Ivy League. Its members are Brown, Columbia, Cornell, Dartmouth, Harvard, the University of Pennsylvania (not Pennsylvania State), Princeton and Yale.

J

Jackie Robinson Parkway (the former *Interboro Parkway*, connecting Brooklyn and Queens).

jack-in-the-box(es); *jack-in-the-pulpit(s); jack(s)-of-all-trades; jack-o'-lantern(s).*

Jacob K. Javits Convention Center. In later references, and even in first references when terseness counts, *the Javits Convention Center* is acceptable.

jailer.

Jan. for January before numerals (*Jan. 10*) or in charts and tables.

Jane's. The reference books are *Jane's All the World's Aircraft, Jane's Fighting Ships, Jane's Intermodal Transportation, Jane's Space Directory, Jane's Weapon Systems*. All without quotation marks.

Jap. As a term for *Japanese*, it is pejorative. Resist its use even in references to World War II attitudes.

Japanese names. Use them in the customary Western fashion, with the surname after the given name: *Finance Minister Kiichi Miyazawa; Mr. Miyazawa*.

Java man (anthropological), not *Java Man*.

J. C. Penney Company. Use a thin space between initials.

jeep. Lowercase when referring to the military vehicle of World War II and later vintage; capitalize when referring to the civilian vehicle so trademarked.

Jehovah's Witnesses are members of a Christian denomination that holds the Bible to be literally true in every detail. They are notable for their door-to-door missionary work.

Jell-O is a trademark.

jerry-built means cheaply or shoddily made. Do not confuse with *jury-rigged*, which means intended for temporary or emergency use.

Jersey, as a short form for *New Jersey*, should be a last resort, in copy and in headlines; some New Jerseyans find it disparaging. The same is true of *Jerseyan(s)*. A few idioms are exceptions: *Jersey Shore; North Jersey; South Jersey*.

Jersey City State College changed its name in 1998 to *New Jersey City University*.

Jersey Shore; *the shore*. But: *the New Jersey coast*.

Jesus. As a historical name, it is undisputed and therefore preferred. But in direct or indirect quotations and explicit references to Christianity, *Christ* is also appropriate. Lowercase *he, him, his, who, whom*, etc., in references to Jesus, God or the Holy Ghost (or Holy Spirit).

Jet Ski is a trademark for a motorized water scooter.

Jew(s). Use the word, unvarnished, in references to people of Jewish heritage or religion. Phrases like *member of the Jewish faith* strike some Jews as unwarranted euphemisms. Do not use *Jewess*.

In citing Eastern European Jewish ancestry, do not assign nationalities unless families claim them. For centuries, many Jews felt themselves excluded from the nations in which they lived, and built a society apart. So it is often more appropriate to write (when it is relevant) that a Jew is *the daughter of immigrants from Ukraine*, for example, than to call her *the daughter of Ukrainian immigrants*.

Also see Conservative Judaism; Orthodox Judaism; Reform, Reformed; Reconstructionist Judaism.

Jewish holy days are observed, variously, for one or two days. The strictly Orthodox begin the observances somewhat before sundown and end them about an hour after sundown. So it is inexact to write *from sundown until sundown;* instead, for accuracy and simplicity, write (for example) *from Wednesday evening* *until Thursday evening*. The Sabbath begins on *Friday evening*. Also see High Holy Days.

J.F.K. or simply *Kennedy* in headlines and in later references to John F. Kennedy International Airport. Use *Kennedy International Airport* or *Kennedy Airport* in most first references. (But do not use *J.F.K.* to mean the former president, even in a headline, except for special effect.)

j.g. for junior grade: *Lt. j.g. Chris T. Yagyonak; Lieutenant Yagyonak; the lieutenant*.

J.H.S. for Junior High School in most later references: *J.H.S. 131*. In first references (except anecdotal or colloquial ones), spell out *Junior High School 131* (without *No*. before the numeral).

jibe. Colloquially, it means conform. In sailing, it means shift. *Gibe* means jeer or taunt.

jihad. It is a holy war carried out by Muslims against the enemies of Islam.

Joe DiMaggio Highway. This commemorative name for the West Side Highway, in Manhattan, should be used only for special effect.

John F. Kennedy International Airport is the official name, but *Kennedy International Airport* or *Kennedy Airport* should be used in most first references. The single word *Kennedy* or the initials *J.F.K.* will do for most later references and for headlines when the aviation context is clear.

John Jay College of Criminal Justice (part of the City University of New York).

Johns Hopkins University (in Baltimore).

Johnson Space Center is an acceptable first reference to the Lyndon B. Johnson Space Center at Houston. In later references: *the space center*. Also see Cape Canaveral.

Joint Chiefs of Staff; *the Joint Chiefs; the chiefs*. Also see chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff.

joint meeting, joint session. When the two houses of Congress convene together to conduct official business — to hear the State of the Union address, say, or to count electoral votes — they are holding a *joint session*. But when they gather to hear a distinguished speaker, it is a *joint meeting* held while Congress is in recess.

journal names. See publication names.

JPMorgan Chase & Company was formed by a merger of the Chase Manhattan Corporation with J. P. Morgan & Company. *J. P. Morgan* remains a brand name for the company's wholesale banking businesses. *Chase* remains the name for many of its retail services.

Jr., Sr. See Junior, Senior.

Juárez (in Mexico).

Judaism. See Conservative Judaism; Orthodox Judaism; Reform, Reformed; Reconstructionist Judaism.

Judge *Tracy T. Anyell; Judge Anyell; the judge*. Do not use *Mr., Mrs., Miss, Ms.*, etc., in later references. These courts use *judge*:

- All federal courts except the Supreme Court.
- The Criminal, Civil and Family Courts in New York City.
- State courts in Connecticut, New Jersey and most other states. But in New York, only the Courts of Appeals and Claims. (In the New York State Supreme Court and its Appellate Division, the title is Justice.)

Also see courts.

judgment.

judicial branch (of the United States government). Also: *executive branch; legislative branch*.

Juilliard School. Its name was shortened in 1969 from *Juilliard School of Music*. Also, at the school: *the Juilliard Theater*.

jukebox.

July. Do not abbreviate except, when necessary, in tables or charts.

jumbo jet. An extra-large airliner like the 747.

June. Do not abbreviate except, when necessary, in tables or charts.

junior for the class and a member of that class. See Junior, Senior.

Junior High School. In first references (except anecdotal or colloquial ones), use *Junior High School 131* (without *No.* before the numeral). In most later references: *J.H.S. 131*.

Junior, Senior. Use *Jr.* and *Sr.* (without commas) in names: *Lee Berenich Jr.* (or *Sr.*). In bylines:

By LEE E. BERENICH Jr.

Also: *Lee E. Berenich IV* or *Lee E. Berenich 4th*, depending on individual preference. If the preference is not known, use Roman numerals.

In a listing with surnames printed before given names, *Jr.* (or *Sr.*, or *IV*, etc.) comes last: *BERENICH, Lee E. Jr.*, not *BERENICH Jr., Lee E.*

junkie(s). Whether in reference to an addiction or in some other context (*political junkie, news junkie*) the word remains slang and is a cliché.

jury-rigged means intended for temporary or emergency use. Do not confuse with *jerry-built*, which means cheaply or shoddily made.

Justice *Lindsay M. Karitsa; Justice Karitsa; the justice* (or *the judge*). For a member of the United States Supreme Court, it is *the justice* or *the associate justice*. Do not use *Mr., Mrs., Miss, Ms.*, etc., in later references. Do not use *Mr. Justice* (or *Ms. Justice*, etc.) except in quotations, in texts or for special effect. *Justice* is also the title for the New York State Supreme Court and for its Appellate Division. Also see Judge.

juvenile diabetes. See diabetes.

juvenile offenders and suspects. The name of a child under arrest for a crime, or charged with one, should not be published before consultation with the standards editor or the editor in charge of the news desk. Factors in the decision may include the severity of the crime and whether the child is likely to be tried as a juvenile or as an adult. In the case of a child who has not yet been formally charged, or who is 12 or younger and therefore likely, if charged, to be tried as a juvenile, the presumption will normally be not to use the name. The same presumption does not apply to suspects or offenders 13 or older facing serious criminal charges like murder, who are more likely to be tried as adults. But every case should be decided on its own merits; the only hard and fast rule is the requirement for consultation.

K

Kaaba is the sacred shrine at Mecca toward which Muslims turn when they pray.

kabbalah (not *cabala*) for the Jewish mystical movement based on symbolic interpretation of the Scriptures.

Kaddish, the Jewish prayer for the dead, is recited in Aramaic, not Hebrew.

kaffeeklatsch (not *coffee klatch*).

Kansas. Abbreviate as *Kan*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

karat. A *karat* is a measure of the fineness of gold. Pure gold is 24 karats, and one karat is equal to one twenty-fourth part of pure gold. Thus an object made of 18-karat gold contains 18 parts pure gold and 6 parts alloy. Not to be confused with *carat*, a unit of weight used for gemstones, which equals 200 milligrams. An *18-karat* gold ring might have a *1-carat* diamond. And of course a *caret* was a mark (^) used by writers and editors before they had cursors.

Kashmir, Vale of.

Katmandu (in Nepal).

Katonah (in Westchester County, N.Y.).

Kazakhstan (the former Kazakh Soviet Socialist Republic).

Kean University (in Union, N.J.).

Kearny (in New Jersey). But: *Kearney, Neb.*

keen(-). Compounds formed with *keen* are hyphenated: keen-edged, keen-eyed, keen-sighted, keen-witted.

(-)keeper. Compounds formed with *keeper* as a suffix are generally one word: barkeeper, beekeeper, bookkeeper, gatekeeper, goalkeeper, groundskeeper, hotelkeeper, housekeeper, innkeeper, peacekeeper, scorekeeper, shopkeeper, storekeeper, timekeeper, tollgate keeper.

keeshond (the dog). The plural is *keeshonden*.

Kelvin. An international standard scale for temperature. Uppercase the system name, but lowercase the term for the unit, a *kelvin*. Do not use the redundant *degree(s) kelvin*. Like Celsius, the Kelvin scale reckons the difference between the freezing and boiling points of water as 100 units. But while Celsius places 0 at the freezing point, Kelvin begins its scale at absolute zero — the total absence of heat. The freezing point of water (0 degrees Celsius) is 273.15 kelvin and the boiling point is 373.15 kelvin. The abbreviation, ordinarily confined to tables, is uppercased, without a degree symbol: *373.15 K*. Also see Celsius, centigrade; Fahrenheit; temperatures.

Kennedy International Airport or *Kennedy Airport* should generally be used in first references rather than the official name, *John F. Kennedy International Airport*. Use *Kennedy* alone or *J.F.K.* in most later references and in headlines when the aviation context is clear.

Kentucky. Abbreviate it as *Ky.* after the names of cities, towns and counties.

ketchup (not *catchup* or *catsup*).

key (adj. and n.). In a phrase like *key provisions* or *key role*, the modifier is tolerable, though clichéd because of its usefulness in narrow headlines. And the provisions may be *a key* or *the key* to the passage of a bill. But resist this use of *key* as an adjective (without a *the*) after the noun: *The lobbyists were key*. More established synonyms include *crucial* and *central*.

key(-). Many compounds formed with *key* are one word, but some are two: keyboard, key club, keyhole, Key lime pie, key money, keynote, keypad, key punch, key ring, keystone, keystroke, Key West.

K.G.B., in historical references, for the Soviet secret police and intelligence apparatus. Its Russian initials stood for Committee for State Security. The name was used only from 1954 to 1991; for other periods, verify which of many successive names applied.

Khmer Rouge (usually plural).

kibbutz for the Israeli collective settlement. The plural is *kibbutzim*. Also: *kibbutznik* for a member.

kickoff (n.).

kidnap, kidnapped, kidnapping, kidnapper. Use *kidnapping* (never *kidnap*, even in headlines) for the noun and the modifier, to avoid a headlinese flavor.

kid(s). As a synonym for *child* or *children*, it is colloquial and should be reserved for lighter contexts.

kill (n.). One meaning of this noun is stream. Thus it is redundant, for example, to write *the Schuylkill River*. It is *the Schuylkill*.

Kill Van Kull (the strait between Staten Island and Bayonne, N.J.).

kilobyte. A *kilobyte* is about a thousand bytes (1,024, to be exact). In technical contexts, abbreviate it as *KB*: *an 800KB data file*. Also see bit; byte; gigabyte; megabyte; terabyte.

kilogram. One thousand grams, or roughly 2.2 pounds. See metric system.

kilohertz is a unit of frequency equal to a thousand hertz, or cycles per second. It is often used as a measure of radio or sound frequency. The abbreviation (for technical contexts only) is *kHz*: *a 37.5 kHz sound wave*.

kilometer. A unit of length equal to 1,000 meters or approximately 3,281 feet. It is roughly equal to 0.6 of a mile or five-eighths of a mile. See metric system.

kiloton. A *kiloton* is a unit used to measure the power of nuclear explosions. It is equal to the explosive force of one thousand tons of TNT. Also see megaton.

kilowatt, kilowatt-hour(s). Take care not to confuse these separate but related units of measure.

A *kilowatt* (abbreviated kW) is 1,000 watts. It is a widely used measure of mechanical or electrical power that is doing something (such as turning a motor) or being transferred from one place to another (such as over a power line).

A *kilowatt-hour* (kW-h) is a standard unit of energy used, among other things, by electric utilities for metering and billing. It is the equivalent of one kilowatt of electricity delivered for one hour. For factories and larger buildings, use the larger *megawatt-hour*. Use watt-hours when a definite time span is a factor: *The dam produces an average of 4.2 million megawatt-hours of electricity a year*. But: *Con Edison expects Yankee Stadium to use about nine megawatts of electricity during peak times*. Comparatives can lend a sense of scale: *Citi Field uses as much as 11 megawatts, or a shade less than the Goldman Sachs tower near ground zero*.

kimono(s).

kin is a collective plural meaning *relatives;* one person is a *kinsman* or a *kinswoman*.

kind, kinds. It is *that kind* and *those kinds*.

kindergartner.

kind of. Avoid this construction: *She bought that kind of a kumquat*. Omit the *a*.

King *Henry VIII; the king; Henry VIII;* and sometimes *Henry*. Capitalize *His Majesty*, but use it only in direct quotations or for special effect.

King James Version (of the Bible).

King, Martin Luther Jr. (the Rev. Dr.). See Martin Luther King's Birthday.

Kingsborough Community College (part of the City University of New York).

Kings Point (in Nassau County, N.Y.).

kipa, the Hebrew word for *skullcap*, is increasingly used by American Jews in place of the Yiddish *yarmulke*. In print, *skullcap* is often preferable because it is universally understood.

Kitty Litter is a trademark; the generic term is *cat litter* or *cat box filler*.

Klansman(men), Klanswoman(women) for members of the Ku Klux Klan.

Kleenex is a trademark for facial tissues.

Kmart.

knee(-). Some but not all compounds formed with *knee* are hyphenated: knee breeches, kneecap, knee-deep, knee-high, kneehole, kneejerk (adj.), kneejerk (n.), kneepad.

Knesset. It is the Israeli legislature. But except in unusually detailed references to the system or passages conveying local color, *Parliament* is a more accessible term for nonspecialized readers.

knight (British rank). The holder is not a peer. See Sir.

knockdown (n.), **knock down** (v.).

knockout (n.), **knock out** (v).

knot. A knot is a unit of speed equal to one nautical mile (1.15 statute miles or 6,076 feet or 1,852 meters) per hour. So it is redundant to use *per hour* after knots, as in *10 knots per hour*.

know-how. It is colloquial, and a trite way to say *skill*.

knowledgeable.

known as. The phrase makes quotation marks redundant in a construction like *The practice is known as "greenmail."*

Kodak is a trademark for cameras, film and related products.

Kolkata, formerly Calcutta. Gracefully remind readers of the former name of the Indian city when necessary.

kopeck(s).

Koran. Spell it *Quran* instead.

Korean names. Most Koreans follow the Chinese practice of putting the family name first. The given name is in two parts, but is treated as a unit, not as separate "first" and "middle" names. In general, connect the two parts with a hyphen, with the second part lowercase: *President Roh Moo-hyun, President Roh* or *Mr. Roh; Secretary General Ban Ki-moon, Mr. Ban*.

The official style of the North Korean government is to separate the parts, with no hyphen, and some individual Koreans use that style. But for consistency, use the hyphenated form routinely, for both North and South Koreans.

Some Koreans in the West put the family name last, and some separate the given name (for example, the golfer *Se Ri Pak; Pak* is the family name). In such cases, follow the individual's preference.

Korean War (1950-53). In texts or quotations, *Korean conflict* is acceptable.

Kosciuszko Bridge (between Brooklyn and Queens, over the Newtown Creek).

kosher. Lowercase the term in its literal sense (meaning permissible under Jewish dietary law) or its slang one (meaning legitimate, in any field). Also: *glatt kosher* (stringently kosher by Hasidic standards), and *kashrut* (n., the system of dietary law).

Krazy Glue is a trademark.

Ku Klux Klan; *the Klan; the K.K.K.* A local unit is called a *Klan* or a *klavern*, and a member is a *Klansman* or *Klanswoman*.

Kuomintang (Chinese Nationalist), not *the Kuomintang Party. Tang* means party.

Kurile Islands.

Kwanzaa is a seven-day cultural festival celebrated by some black Americans. It begins on Dec. 26 and is based on African harvest customs.

L

labeled. Avoid the “as” construction: *She labeled the charge as false*. Make it simply *She labeled the charge false*.

“La Bohème.”

Labor Day, the first Monday in September, is a federal holiday.

Labour Party for the political party in Britain. (The party in New Zealand is also the *Labour Party*, but note that Australia’s is the *Labor Party*.)

lack. Use the word to mean a shortage of something that is needed or desirable, not merely *absence*. Thus: *The skiers were frustrated by a lack of snow*. But: *The absence* [not *lack*] *of rain makes the island a perfect vacation spot*.

Ladies’ Home Journal.

Ladies Professional Golf Association. No apostrophe. The abbreviation *L.P.G.A.* can be used in a first reference.

Lady. This title applies to the wives of British knights and baronets (who are not peers) and of barons, viscounts, earls and marquesses (who are). It also applies to women below the rank of duchess who are peeresses in their own right: *the Countess of Lambsford; Lady Lambsford*. For any of those ranks, the title is never followed by a given name: *Lady Dann*, not *Lady Hilary Dann*.

But the title is also applied to the daughters of earls, marquesses and dukes, and in those cases it precedes a given name: *Lady Mary Lamb; Lady Mary*. (Never, in such a case, *Lady Lamb*.)

When applied to the wife of the younger son of a marquess or a duke, the title is followed by the husband’s given name: *Lady Douglas Anyell-Dann*. In later references, it is *Lady Douglas*, never *Lady Anyell-Dann*.

If a peeress in her own right or a peer's daughter marries, her title does not attach to her husband. If she outranks him, she keeps her title: *the Countess of Lambsford* (a peeress) *and her husband, Lt. Col. Edward Walter Cordero*. And *Lady Pamela Dann* (a peer's daughter) *and her husband, Michael Dann*.

For widows and divorced women, use this form: *Nancy Viscountess Anyell* or *Anne Lady Dann Cordero*. In later references it is *Lady Anyell* and *Lady Dann Cordero* (never *Lady Nancy Anyell* or *Lady Anne Dann Cordero*).

To distinguish between women of the same name, use any of these forms: *Lady (Elizabeth) Anyell* or *Lady Anyell, the former Elizabeth Dann* or *Lady Anyell, wife of Sir John Anyell* (never *Lady Elizabeth Anyell*, except for the daughter of an earl, a marquess or a duke).

If someone with a title is primarily known for achievements in another field — a pop star, business leader or politician, for example — the title should generally be avoided unless specifically relevant to the context. Use an ordinary courtesy title instead.

lady. Except in wry contexts, *lady* is obsolete for *woman*, just as *gentleman* is obsolete for *man*. See first lady and men and women.

La Guardia Airport.

LaGuardia Community College (part of the City University of New York).

laissez-faire.

lambaste. When used to mean criticize or denounce, this colloquial verb is overworked and usually hyperbole.

lamb's-wool (adj.).

Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory (at Columbia University).

Lance Cpl. *Dana F. Kuzu; Lance Corporal Kuzu; the lance corporal.*

Lancet, The. Though it is published in Britain, do not call it *the British medical journal* because there is a publication called The British Medical Journal. Use a phrase like *the London-based medical publication*.

land(-), (-)land. Most compounds formed with *land* as a prefix are one word, but there are numerous exceptions: land bank, land contract, landfall, landfill, land grant (n.), land-grant (adj.), landholder, landline, landlocked, landlord, landmark, land mine, landowner, land-poor, landscape, landslide, landward.

Compounds formed with *land* as a suffix are solid: cropland, dreamland, farmland, grassland, highland, inland, lowland, parkland, tideland, wonderland, woodland.

landmark. Use it as a noun; as a verb, it is jargon. Thus: *The theater was declared a landmark*, not *landmarked*.

Land Rover is no longer hyphenated.

Laotian names. Because of differences in ethnic backgrounds, Laotians' names assume a variety of forms. When possible, verify individual preferences. Most often a Laotian uses the first element of the name in later references: *Prince Souvanna Phouma; Prince Souvanna*. In a headline: *Souvanna*. In case of doubt, however, use the full name for all references: *President Khamtai Siphandon; Gen. Khamtai Siphandon*, with the title abbreviated in all references because the name is unchanged. (But if his title were, say, *Maj. Gen*., it could later be shortened to *General*, spelled out.)

laptop (adj. and n.).

larceny, burglary, robbery, theft. *Larceny* is the wrongful taking of property (the equivalent, in nonlegal terms, of *theft* or *stealing*). Legal definitions of *burglary* vary among localities, but it must involve entering a building (not necessarily breaking and entering) and remaining unlawfully with the intent to commit a crime. *Robbery*, in its legal sense, is a larceny carried out through the use or threat of violence; it must be committed in the presence of the victim. In a broader sense, *rob* means plunder or rifle or loot. Thus, a safe may be *robbed*, as a person is *robbed*. The contents of the safe, or the wallet and watch of the victim, are *stolen*. Also see mugging.

largess (not *largesse*).

lasso(s).

last in first out. Hyphenate when the phrase serves as a modifier before a noun: *the last-in-first-out system of accounting*. Otherwise, omit all the punctuation: *the principle of last in first out*.

late (meaning dead). In general, use *the late* only with the name of a person who has recently died (*recent* being a synonym for *late*). For example, it is not needed in *the late Lyndon B. Johnson*. Avoid this redundancy: *She is the widow of the late Toby B. Karitsa*. And do not fall into this error: *Only the late Senator Miel opposed the bill*. He was almost certainly alive at the time.

Latino (n. and adj.) is generally interchangeable with *Hispanic*, referring to people descended from a Spanish-speaking land or culture. The feminine form is *Latina*. When writing about specific people or groups, choose the term they prefer. *Latino*, referring broadly to people of Latin America, is often used to include Portuguese-speaking Brazilians as well. When a more specific description is available — *Cuban, Puerto Rican, Mexican-American* — use it. Take care with descriptions like *Spanish-speaking* and *Spanish-surnamed* because Hispanic Americans do not necessarily speak the language, and some have other kinds of names. See Hispanic; Chicano; ethnicity; Puerto Rico, Puerto Rican.

latitude and longitude. Use these forms: *49 degrees north latitude; 24 degrees west longitude; 10 degrees 30 minutes south latitude*. Also: *prime meridian; Greenwich meridian; 17th parallel*.

latter. Avoid uses of *latter* that force the reader to glance back: *Both Mr. Miel and Ms. Agneau fought hard, but the latter prevailed*. Rephrase and name names.

Latter-day Saints. See Mormon Church.

laughingstock.

launch (n., v., adj.) In references to programs, candidacies, careers and other undertakings (but not military campaigns), the verb is overworked. Simpler alternatives include *open, begin* and *start*.

laureate. Also: *Nobel laureate; poet laureate; J. J. Anyell, the poet laureate.*

law(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *law* are one word: law-abiding, lawbook, lawbreaker, lawmaker, lawman, lawsuit.

lawman is fine for western movies and other contexts that might also call for *passel* and *victuals*. Elsewhere use *law officer* or, better yet, an actual title.

laws. See acts, amendments, bills and laws.

lawsuits. The filing of a suit does not mean the plaintiff has a case, and the amount of the damage claim often bears no relationship to what a judge or a jury will eventually decide. Often a large dollar figure is used as a means of seizing headlines. Treat the content of the suit as merely one side in an argument, and seek a comment from the defendant. Ordinarily omit the amount of the claim from the headline and the lead; deal with it lower in the article, where the basis can be promptly put in perspective. An exception may be made if the plaintiff demonstrates that damages have been reasonably computed, or if the article deals with the hyperbole surrounding such figures.

lay(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *lay* are one word: layaway (n.), layman, lay off (v.), layoff (n.), lay out (v.), layout (n.), layover (n.), layup (sports), laywoman.

lay, lie. Use *lay* to mean put down, or place. And it requires a direct object, the thing that is put or placed. Hens *lay* eggs. Bricklayers *lay* bricks. Healers *lay* hands upon the infirm. In every case, *lay* has an object – eggs, bricks, hands. In other tenses, *lay* takes these forms: *Hens laid eggs last week; Hens are laying eggs faster than ever; Hens had laid eggs before the sun rose.*

Lie means recline, or occupy a location. It does not take an object because the subject can accomplish those things alone. The idle rich *lie* on beaches. The restless *lie* awake. The faithful *lie* down in green pastures. Governors Island *lies* off Manhattan. Sleeping dogs just *lie*. The rich, the restless, the faithful, the island and the dogs need no help – no object to complete their actions. They simply lie there. And in other tenses, *lie* takes these forms: *The rich are lying on the beach despite the shaky economy; The rich had lain on the beach before moving to the slopes.*

Confusion arises because the past tense of *lie* also happens to be *lay*, playing a different role: *The idle rich lay on the beach on Saturday*.

lay off (v.), **layoff** (n. and adj.). Use these terms for removals of employees to reduce a work force or cut costs, not for dismissals over job performance. See fire, firing.

lazy susan.

leach, leech. *Leach* is a verb for what liquids do when they percolate through a material. *Leech* is a noun for a bloodsucker, or a verb for the act of clinging like one.

leader. Resist phrases that anoint people to speak for others who have not had a chance to choose. Phrases like *black leader* and *spokesman for the Hispanic community* imply wide or universal agreement among people who may hold varied views. Except in unavoidable quotations, use more specific terms: *black ministers; pastor of the XYZ Baptist Church; Hispanic politicians; officers of Asian-American community groups*.

leak. In news reporting, a *leak* is an intentional disclosure by someone who chooses to remain anonymous. Some leaks are unsolicited; others are induced by diligent reporters. Some may serve a worthy purpose, others a selfish or underhanded one. When the source's motives can be gathered, they should be indicated in the article as fully as possible. Do not attribute a disclosure to a leak without knowing the exact circumstances; that can be unfair to a reporter in another organization whose enterprise tracked down the information. Also see attribution.

leatherneck. A synonym for a Marine, but only in a direct quotation or in a feature context calling for a colorful effect.

leave alone, let alone. *Leave alone* means leave in solitude. *Let alone* means refrain from disturbing.

lectern, podium. A speaker stands *at* or *behind* a lectern and *on* a podium.

lectures. See speeches and lectures.

LED for light-emitting diode.

leech, leach. *Leech* is a noun for a bloodsucker, or a verb for the act of clinging like one. *Leach* is a verb for what liquids do when they percolate through a material.

left, leftist, left wing. Lowercase *left* unless the political divisions in a country are formally designated as *the Left, the Left Wing*, etc., or the word appears in a party name. Lowercase *leftist* unless the reference is to such a division or party, or to a member of it. Lowercase *left wing* or *left-wing* (adj.) unless the reference is to such a division or party.

left(-). Most compounds formed with *left* are either hyphenated or two words: left brain, left field, left fielder, left guard, left hand (n.), left-hand (adj.), left-handed, left-hander, leftover (n.), left wing (n.), left-wing (adj.).

Left Bank (the district in Paris).

legation. Lowercase when standing alone. But: *the Israeli Legation; the United States Legation*.

legendary is usually hyperbole. Use it with restraint.

Leghorn. Use *Livorno* instead for the city in Italy.

legislation. When bills or regulations figure significantly in the news, the process should always be explained, and the copy should answer the question that naturally arises: What happens next? What steps remain? And what is the best estimate of the political outlook?

legislative bodies. Capitalize *Congress, Senate, House of Representatives* (or *House*), *Parliament, Legislature, Assembly*, etc., in any specific reference to a legislative body so named. *Parliament* should ordinarily be used in place of equivalent foreign terms like *Knesset* (Israel), *Diet* (Japan) and *Cortes* (Spain). Also: *parliaments; a parliament*.

legislative branch (of the United States government). Also: *executive branch; judicial branch*.

legislature. Capitalize it when the reference is to one body officially so designated, or to a small number of bodies specifically identified: *the State Legislature; the Legislature; the California Legislature; the Wisconsin and Rhode Island Legislatures; the two Legislatures*. But: *many legislatures; several state legislatures; etc.* Also: *legislator(s); state legislator(s); California legislator (s)*.

Lehman College (part of the City University of New York).

Leif Ericson (the explorer). But verify the spellings used in place names that commemorate him; they vary.

lend. See loan.

Lent, Lenten.

lesbian (adj and n.). Lowercase except in the names of organizations. *Lesbian women* is redundant. See sexual orientation.

lèse-majesté.

(-)less. Ordinarily close up compounds formed with *less* (even coined or jesting ones) unless the suffix directly follows an *l*: carless, computerless, dial-less, pitiless, rail-less, shell-less, tail-less, valueless, worthless.

lessen is a stilted word rarely found outside journalism. *Decrease* and *reduce* are more conversational.

less, fewer. See fewer, less.

less than. The phrase is useful in many contexts but is sometimes partisan. It tends to play down an amount: *less than $10,000*. And *nearly $10,000* tends to play it up. A more neutral approach is *about $10,000*.

letup (n.).

letter(-). Compounds formed with *letter* can be one word, two words or hyphenated: letter bomb, letter carrier, letterhead, letterman (sports), letter opener, letter-perfect, letterpress, letter-quality.

level is stilted and rarely necessary in a passage like *on an informal level*. Make it *informally*.

levelheaded.

Levi's is a trademark.

levy, as a noun for *tax*, is archaic, and at first glance in a headline, looks distractingly like a surname.

L.G.B.T. Except in quotations and organization names, seek alternatives to this cumbersome abbreviation for lesbian, gay, bisexual and transgender. (Take care, however, not to inadvertently exclude relevant information; for example, if antidiscrimination legislation specifically applies to bisexual and transgender people, avoid suggesting that it affects only gay people.) Note that some groups use G.B.L.T. instead. Do not use other, less familiar variations that include additional categories.

L.I. Avoid this abbreviation for Long Island, except as a last resort in New York-edition print headlines. In datelines, the names of Long Island cities and towns should be followed by *N.Y.*, which should also be used in articles unless the context is otherwise clear. If necessary, mention deftly that the community is on Long Island.

liable suggests not just a probability but an unpleasant one. Write *Jaywalkers are liable to be arrested*. But: *The weather is likely to improve*.

liaison.

liberal. Do not capitalize as a noun or an adjective except in referring to a political party or movement so named, or to its members.

liberal-minded.

Liberal Party.

Liberty Island. Until 1956 it was Bedloes Island.

Library for the Performing Arts (a branch of the New York Public Library, at Lincoln Center).

libretto(s).

Liège (in Belgium). But the adjectives are *Liégeois* (masc.) and *Liégeoise* (fem.).

lie, lay. See lay, lie.

lieutenant governor. *Lt. Gov. Merrill S. Anyell; Lieutenant Governor Anyell; the lieutenant governor.*

life(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *life* are one word: lifeblood, lifeboat, life buoy, life cycle, life expectancy, life force, lifeguard, life insurance, life jacket, lifeless, lifelike, lifeline, lifelong, life net, life preserver, life raft, lifesaver, lifesaving, life science, life sentence, life-size, life span, lifestyle, lifetime, life vest, lifework.

lifestyle is shopworn in references to the values and consumption patterns of the well-to-do. And avoid phrases like *gay lifestyle*, which imply that all gay men and lesbians live the same way.

lighted, lit. Both are acceptable for the past tense and past participle of light.

light(-), (-)light. Most but not all compounds formed with *light* as a prefix are one word: light-footed, lightheaded, lighthearted, lighthouse, light opera, light pen, lightproof, lightship, lightweight (n., chiefly sports), light-year.

Compounds formed with *light* as a suffix are solid: firelight, flashlight, gaslight, highlight, lamplight, limelight, searchlight, sidelight, sunlight.

light-year. A unit of length (not of time) equal to the distance traveled by light in one year at the rate of 186,000 miles per second. That distance is approximately 5,878 billion miles.

likable.

like. The word plays many grammatical roles. The one that raises a usage issue is its sense as a preposition meaning *similar to*. In that guise it can introduce only a noun or a pronoun: *He deals cards like a riverboat gambler*. If in doubt about the fitness of a construction with *like*, mentally test a substitute preposition (*with*, for example): *He deals cards with a riverboat gambler*. If the resulting sentence is coherent, *like* is properly used.

But when *like* is used to introduce a full clause — consisting of subject and verb — it stops being a preposition and becomes a conjunction. Traditional usage, preferred by The Times, does not accept that construction: *He is competitive, like his father was*. Make it *as his father was*, or simply *like his father*. If the *as* construction (although correct) sounds stiff or awkward, try *the way* instead: *He is competitive, the way his father was*.

In other cases, if *like* fails the preposition test, *as if* may be needed: *She pedaled as if* [not *like*] *her life depended on it*.

When *like* is used correctly as a preposition, it faces another test. The items linked by *like* must be parallel, and therefore comparable. Do not write *Like Houston, August in New York is humid*. That sentence compares August to Houston, not what its author meant. Make it *Like Houston, New York is humid in August*.

In introducing an example or examples, *like* and *such as* are equally acceptable: *Impressionist painters like Monet and Degas; expenses such as rent and utilities*.

like(-), (-)like. Compounds with *like* as a prefix are hyphenated: like-minded, like-natured.

But words with *like* as a mere first syllable are solid: likeness, likewise.

Compounds with *like* as a suffix are solid unless the main element ends in *l* or is a proper noun, or unless the resulting word would be hard to read: *businesslike, childlike, jewel-like, Reagan-like, shell-like, helicopter-like. Christlike* is an exception.

likely can be an adjective (*a likely story*) or an adverb. But when it is an adverb, idiom requires coupling it with *most, quite, rather* or *very*. This construction is dialect: *She will likely go*. This construction is proper if a bit stilted: *She will most likely go*. This one is preferable: *She is likely to go*. Also see liable.

lily of the valley.

Limburger (cheese).

linage (number of lines), **lineage** (descent).

Lincoln Center for the Performing Arts is the full name, but *Lincoln Center* will do in virtually all first references. Thereafter: *the center*.

Lincoln's Birthday, Feb. 12, is observed as a legal holiday in some states, including New York, New Jersey and Connecticut. Other states have designated the third Monday of February as *Presidents' Day*, to honor both Washington and Lincoln. The federal holiday on that day is officially *Washington's Birthday*.

line(-), (-)line. Compounds formed with *line* as a prefix are generally, but not always, solid: linebacker and lineman (football players), line judge and linesman (sports officials), line drawing, line drive, lineup (n.).

Compounds formed with *line* as a suffix are usually solid: airline (though in some proper names it may be *air line*), bread line, coastline, deadline, shoreline, sideline, skyline, streamline, waistline.

link is acceptable in reference to a hyperlink on the web. If an article refers to material of interest to readers, such as a website, document, image or video, provide an embedded link as a convenience. Readers also value links to background information and other useful content. When crediting a competitor, providing a link is mandatory. Test that all links are operational. While readers understand that The Times does not edit or control material found through external links, be mindful of our taste standards and generally avoid linking to strongly offensive material. Consult the standards editor or the news desk if there are questions. Generally avoid linking directly to the site of a specific seller for products including books, unless the website itself is the topic. Use highlighted tips (which appear when the user hovers over the linked text), especially if linking to material more elaborate than a simple document or website: *YouTube video of the speech.*; *Text of the speech (PDF).*

For most references to websites in print, it is not necessary to give the full web address if the link is easily found through online search. Omit prefixes like *http://* that are automatically supplied by software; in most cases, *www.* can also be omitted. Use normal punctuation after an address (a period, for example, if it ends a sentence). Do not add hyphens or other characters that might prevent the address from working online, and use a discretionary break in long addresses in print. When available, use short forms: *nytimes.com/world*.

lion’s share is a cliché. It means not simply the largest share but the whole thing or almost all of it.

LIPA for the Long Island Power Authority, but sparingly, and only when the context is clear.

liquefaction, liquefy. The letter before the *f* is an *e*. But: *gasification, gasify*.

liquor. See alcoholic beverages and whiskey, whisky.

L.I.R.R. See Long Island Rail Road.

Listserv is a trademark for software that manages an Internet mailing list. In most cases, a generic phrase like *email list* is preferable.

liter. This metric unit is equal to the volume occupied by one kilogram of water under standard conditions; it is equal to one cubic decimeter or roughly 1.06 United States liquid quarts or 0.91 dry quart. See metric system.

literally. Do not use it when *figuratively* is meant: *The Democratic leaders are literally walking a tightrope*. And when *literally* is used correctly, it is often unneeded.

Litt.D. or **D.Litt**. for Doctor of Literature.

littérateur.

Little League. The official youth baseball organization. Its championship is the Little League World Series.

living room (n.), **living-room** (adj.).

Livorno (not *Leghorn*) for the city in Italy.

L.L.B. for Bachelor of Laws.

L.L.D. for Doctor of Laws.

Lloyd’s (insurance exchange), **Lloyds** (bankers).

Lloyd’s Register of Shipping.

L.N.G. for liquid (or *liquefied*) natural gas.

(-)load. Compounds formed with *load* are solid: busload, carload, shipload, truckload.

loan. Do not use *loan* as a verb. Use *lend* and, in the past tense, *lent* rather than *loaned*.

loath (adj.), **loathe** (v.). *Loath* means unwilling or reluctant. *Loathe* means hate.

localities and regions. Capitalize the names of specific localities and regions: *City of London* (financial district); *Left Bank; East Side; Midwest; Corn Belt*. Many such designations are listed separately and alphabetically.

located is often an excess word: *The feed store is located on Bortnicker Road*.

lock(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *lock* are one word: lockbox, lockjaw, locknut, lockout (n.), lock out (v.), locksmith, lock step, lockup (n.), lock up (v.).

logrolling.

Londonderry (in Northern Ireland).

Long Island. See L.I.

Long Island Power Authority. In later references and in headlines, LIPA, but sparingly, and only when the context is clear.

Long Island Rail Road; *the railroad. L.I.R.R*. is acceptable in headlines.

longitude. See latitude and longitude.

long(-), (-)long. Most compounds formed with *long* as a prefix are one word, but some are hyphenated and a few are two words: longboat, long division, long-drawn-out (adj.), longhair (colloq.), longhaired, longhand, longhorn (cattle), long house, long jump (n., sports), long-jump (v., sports), long-lived, long-playing, long-range (adj.), long-run (adj.), longshoreman, long shot, longstanding, long-suffering, longtime (adj.), long wave (n.), long-wave (adj.), long-winded.

As a suffix, *long* forms a solid compound when it attaches to a one-syllable word ending in a consonant. The compound is hyphenated if the suffix directly follows a vowel or a word of more than one syllable: daylong, decade-long, hourlong, minute-long, mile-long, monthslong, second-long, weeklong, yearlong.

Shorten expressions like *two-hour-long meeting. Two-hour meeting* says it all.

longshoreman. A *longshoreman* is a waterfront laborer. A *stevedore* can be either the laborer or the cargo loading company.

long ton. See ton.

Loop, the (the area in downtown Chicago).

Lord. This British title applies to barons, viscounts, earls and marquesses. Use it in all references to a baron (*Lord Lamb*), and in second and later references to the others. In those cases, the title is never followed by a given name. But the title also designates the younger sons of marquesses and dukes, for whom it is used this way: *Lord Charles Dann; Lord Charles;* but never *Lord Dann*.

If someone with a title is primarily known for achievements in another field — a pop star, business leader or politician, for example — the title should generally be avoided unless specifically relevant to the context. Use an ordinary courtesy title instead: *Mr. Lloyd Webber*, not *Lord Lloyd Webber*, on second reference to the composer Andrew Lloyd Webber. Also see peers.

Lord & Taylor.

Los Angeles, never *L.A.* except in direct quotations, not even in headlines. The people are *Angelenos*, not *Los Angelenos*.

Lotos Club.

Louisiana. Abbreviate as *La.* after the names of cities, towns and parishes (the equivalent of counties).

Louisianian(s).

lover is a suitable term for a partner in a literary or historic liaison, or in a secret or illicit affair. In writing about ordinary relationships, generally use the less flamboyant *companion*, *partner*, *boyfriend or girlfriend*.

low(-). Some compounds formed with *low* are one word, some are hyphenated and a few are two words. Some examples: lowball, low beam, low blow, lowbrow, low-cost, low frequency (n.), low-frequency (adj.), low-grade, low-key, lowland, low-level, low-pitched, low-pressure, low-priced, low-rise (adj.), low-tech, low-tension, low tide, low-water mark.

Low Countries, the. Belgium, the Netherlands and Luxembourg. But: *the Lowcountry* for the coastal area of South Carolina.

Lower California. See Baja California.

lowercase. It is one word, noun, verb and adjective.

Lower East Side (of Manhattan).

Lower Manhattan.

low Mass. It is *said* or *celebrated*, not *sung*. See Mass.

LP for long-playing record.

L.P.G. for liquid (or *liquefied*) petroleum gas.

L.P.G.A. for the Ladies Professional Golf Association. No apostrophe.

Lt. *Dale A. Kikondoo* (military, fire or police); *Lieutenant Kikondoo; the lieutenant*. Also, for a lieutenant, junior grade, in the Coast Guard and the Navy: *Lt. j.g. Dale A. Kikondoo*.

Lt. Cmdr. *Morgan F. Bildots; Commander Bildots; the commander.*

Lt. Col. *Lee J. Agneau; Colonel Agneau; the colonel.*

Lt. Gen. *Dana B. Cordeiro; General Cordeiro; the general.*

Lt. Gov. *Ashley T. Lamb; Lieutenant Governor Lamb* (or *Mr., Ms., Miss* or *Mrs. Lamb*); *the lieutenant governor.*

Lucite is a trademark for a clear plastic.

Lunar New Year (the Asian festival).

lunchroom.

Lutheran Church-Missouri Synod.

Luxembourg for the country, its capital, the Paris gardens and the museum.

Luxembourger(s). The people of Luxembourg.

lychee is a Chinese evergreen tree or its fruit. The common term *lychee nut* is technically inaccurate.

Lycra is a trademark for spandex, the elastic fabric.

Lyndon B. Johnson Space Center is the full name of the complex at Houston. But *Johnson Space Center* will do in virtually every first reference. Thereafter: *the space center*. Also see Cape Canaveral.

Lyon (in France).

M

M. (for Monsieur). See courtesy titles.

M.A. for Master of Arts. Also: *a master's degree*.

M.A.C., in later references, for the Municipal Assistance Corporation (in New York).

Mac, Mc. When a name with either prefix occurs in an all-uppercase context of any kind, including a headline, lowercase the *c* or *ac;* if lowercase type is unavailable, use small capitals: *MacARTHUR, McCLELLAN.* Alphabetize such names as if all the letters were lowercase: *Mabley, MacAdam, Maynard, McNeil.*

Macau.

Macdougal Street (Greenwich Village), **MacDougal Street** (Brooklyn). Also, in Greenwich Village: *Macdougal Alley*.

Mace is a brand name for a stinging spray used to stun an attacker. Do not use *Mace* as a verb.

Macedonia. The name should stand alone to mean the country, formerly a republic in Yugoslavia. (International organizations use a longer variation in deference to Greece, which calls its northern district by the short name.) Macedonia is also a district in Bulgaria; when either district is in the news, use a phrase of explanation. Also: *Macedonian(s)*, as a noun for the people, and as an adjective.

machine gun (n.), **machine-gun** (adj. and v.). Also: *submachine gun*.

Mach 1, Mach 2, etc., for the speed of sound, twice the speed of sound, *etc.*

macro(-). Compounds formed with *macro* are solid: macrobiology, macroclimate, macrocosm, macroeconomics, macroscopic.

Macy's.

mad(-). Compounds formed with *mad* are one word: madcap, madman, madwoman.

Madagascar. Its capital is Antananarivo and its people are *Malagasy*.

Madam, not *Madame*, in *Madam Speaker, Madam President*, *etc.* (Also, lowercase, for the keeper of a brothel.)

"Madama Butterfly" (the Puccini opera).

Madison, Dolley, was the wife of James. *Dolly Madison* is an ice cream and a bakery.

madras (fabric).

magazine names. See publication names.

Magistrate Judge *Lynn H. Agnello; Judge Agnello; the judge*. If there is a risk of confusion with a district judge, in later references make it *Magistrate Judge Agnello* or *the magistrate judge*.

Magna Carta (not *the Magna Carta*).

magnitude. See earthquakes.

Magnum designates a firearm that uses cartridges with an enhanced explosive charge, or the cartridges themselves.

Lowercase *magnum* to mean a double-size wine bottle, which holds 1.5 liters.

mah-jongg.

Maine. Abbreviate as *Me.* after the names of cities, towns and counties.

maintain means, among other things, *defend by argument*. It is not always a neutral form of attribution. *He maintains that he is 45* hints that there is reason to think he is, say, 50.

maître d'hôtel. The plural is *maîtres d'hôtel*. But *headwaiter(s)* is often less pretentious. Confine the truncated *maître d'* to direct quotations and light contexts.

Maj. *Stacy P. Miel; Major Miel; the major*.

Maj. Gen. *Lindsay R. Karitsa; General Karitsa; the general*.

major-domo(s).

Majorca. Use it (not *Mallorca* and not *Spain*) in datelines: *PALMA, Majorca*.

majority. A majority is more than half. Write about *a majority*, not *the majority*, unless the reference is to an organized faction.

majority leader. Lowercased, and separated from the name by a comma: *Senator Lauren H. Baranek, the majority leader;* or *the majority leader, Lauren H. Baranek*.

make(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *make* are one word: make-believe, makeover (n.), make over (v.), makeshift, makeup (n. and adj.), make-work.

(-)maker. Most compounds formed with *maker* as a suffix are solid: automaker, bookmaker, carmaker, dressmaker, filmmaker, homemaker, moviemaker, peacemaker, sailmaker, shoemaker, troublemaker, winemaker.

But some other combinations, not so well established, should remain separate words: carpet maker, decision maker, policy maker, steel maker.

Malagasy (sing. and pl., n. and adj.). The people of Madagascar.

Malay, Malayan, Malaysian. *Malay* (n. or adj.) refers to a member of an ethnic group, Polynesian in background, found on the Malay Peninsula, or to the language of that group. *Malayan* (n. or adj.) refers to any inhabitant of that peninsula or of Malaya, the territory centering on the peninsula, which became part of Malaysia in 1962. *Malaysian* (n. or adj.) refers to any inhabitant of Malaysia.

Malaysian names. Because of differences in ethnic backgrounds, Malaysian names take a variety of forms. Always check to see which part of the name is used with a courtesy title in later references. *Prime Minister Mahathir bin Mohamad*, for example, is *Mr. Mahathir*. But *Foreign Minister Abdullah Ahmad Badawi* is *Mr. Badawi*.

male, female. In references to people, the nouns *woman, man, girl* and *boy* are most conversational. If a construction unavoidably warrants *male* and *female*, use them as adjectives, not nouns. Avoid affixing *male* and *female* to occupational titles (*male nurse; female judge*) in ways that imply they "normally" belong to only one sex. Preferably say, for example, *women on the faculty* or *men on the faculty*. See men and women.

Mallorca (in Spain). See Majorca.

maneuver.

manhattan (the cocktail).

man-hour. It is an established business term, but phrases like *an hour of work* or *a payroll hour* better reflect the shared roles of the sexes.

manic, manically.

manifold, manyfold. *Manifold* means many-featured; *manyfold* means multiplied many times.

Manitoba (Canadian province). Do not abbreviate after the names of cities and towns, even in datelines.

man-made. The synonyms *artificial, manufactured* and *synthetic* better reflect the shared roles of the sexes.

man, mankind. Expressions built on *man* or *mankind* strike many readers as a slight to the role of women through history. In a few cases, those expressions may result unavoidably from idiom or a literary allusion. But the writer and editor should weigh the graceful alternatives: *humanity*, perhaps, or *human race* or *people*. And phrases like *common man* and *man in the street* can often be replaced by *ordinary people* or *the average person*. The dual goal should be to reflect the equality of the sexes and to avoid any awkwardness that would alert a reader to the effort involved. See he or she.

man (v.), **manned, manning**. To reflect the equal roles of the sexes, generally speak of *staffing* a project or department instead.

manner born. The quotation, from "Hamlet," is *to the manner born*, not *the manor*.

mano a mano. Literally (in Spanish), *hand to hand*, in the sense of one-on-one confrontation.

man-of-war, men-of-war (warships).

manpower. To reflect the equal roles of the sexes, generally use terms like *labor, personnel* and *staffing* instead.

mansion is a subjective and sometimes disputed designation for a large house. The reader is better served by specifics: *30-room house; 45-acre estate*. But the term is acceptable in phrases like *Executive Mansion*, for the White House, and *Governor's Mansion*.

mantel (shelf), **mantle** (cloak).

many(-). Most compounds formed with *many* are hyphenated: many-hued, many-sided. Also see manifold, manyfold.

Mao Zedong. No longer spelled *Mao Tse-tung*. Also: *Chairman Mao*, and in many historical references just *Mao*, without a courtesy title. Also see Chinese names.

Marble Collegiate Reformed Church (in Manhattan).

March. Do not abbreviate except, when necessary, in tables or charts.

marchioness. Capitalize the first reference as a full name: *the Marchioness of Lambsford; Lady Lambsford; the marchioness*. Use the non-English equivalents *marquise* and *marchesa* where appropriate. Also see peers.

Mardi Gras.

margin means, among other things, the difference between two values. So a candidate who wins an election with 8,000 votes when the loser got 5,000 has a *margin* of 3,000. That candidate did not win *by an 8-5 margin* or *with a margin of 8,000 to 5,000.*

Mariana Islands. But: *the Marianas*.

marijuana.

Marine(s). Capitalize *Marine(s)* in all references to the United States Marine Corps or its members: *He enlisted in the Marines; a Marine landing; three Marines; a company of Marines*. Lowercase *the corps* by itself as a second reference. Also lowercase *marine* and *marines* in referring to forces of other nations.

Marine Corps ranks, in descending order, and their abbreviations:

COMMISSIONED OFFICERS

Gen. *Stacy T. Milori; General Milori; the general*. (A general wears four stars.)
Lt. Gen. *Dana A. Cordeiro; General Cordeiro; the general*. (A lieutenant general wears three stars.)
Maj. Gen. *Lindsay L. Karitsa; General Karitsa; the general*. (A major general wears two stars.)
Brig. Gen. *Lee C. Cordeiro; General Cordeiro; the general*. (A brigadier general wears one star.)
Col. *Merrill T. Kuzu; Colonel Kuzu; the colonel.*
Lt. Col. *Lee M. Agneau; Colonel Agneau; the colonel.*
Maj. *Stacy H. Miel; Major Miel; the major.*
Capt. *Hilary D. Daan; Captain Daan; the captain*.
First Lt. *Theo R. Kuzu; Lieutenant Kuzu; the lieutenant*.
Second Lt. *Alex T. Karitsa; Lieutenant Karitsa; the lieutenant*.

WARRANT OFFICERS

Chief Warrant Officer *Chris L. Arniotis; Mr.* (or *Ms., Miss* or *Mrs.*) *Arniotis; the chief warrant officer.*
Warrant Officer *Terry M. Daan; Mr.* (or *Ms., Miss* or *Mrs.*) *Daan; the warrant officer.*

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS

(Enlisted supervisors.)

Sgt. Maj. *Stacy D. Kuzu; Sergeant Major Kuzu; the sergeant(s) major.*
Master Gunnery Sgt. *Pat R. Agneau; Sergeant Agneau; the sergeant.*
Master Sgt. *Tracy D. Berenich; Sergeant Berenich;* the sergeant.
First Sgt. *Lauren S. Daan; Sergeant Daan; the sergeant.*
Gunnery Sgt. *Lindsay P. Kuzu; Sergeant Kuzu; the sergeant.*
Staff Sgt. *Ashley R. Lam; Sergeant Lam; the sergeant.*
Sgt. *Terry D. Agnello; Sergeant Agnello; the sergeant.*
Cpl. *Stacy H. Milori; Corporal Milori; the corporal.*

OTHER ENLISTED PERSONNEL

Lance Cpl. *Dana A. Lamb; Lance Corporal Lamb; the lance corporal.*
Pfc. *Chris D. Agneau; Private Agneau; the private.*
Pvt. *Alex A. Cordero; Private Cordero; the private.*

Also see retired.

marital status should be mentioned only when it is pertinent and its pertinence is clear to the reader. Also see married.

mark (v.). Resist the journalese use of *mark* to mean signify and, even more, to mean *is* or *are*. Write *The election is the third in seven years for Ruritania*, not *The election marks the third time Ruritania has voted in seven years.*

Maronite Church. A Roman Catholic church of the Eastern Rite.

marquess. Capitalize the first reference as a full name: *the Marquess of Lambsford; Lord Lambsford; the marquess*. (Use the non-English equivalents *marquis* and *marchese* where appropriate.) And: *Marquess of Queensberry rules*. Also see peers.

Marrakesh for the city in Morocco.

married. *Got* is superfluous: *he married; she married*. Beware of phrases like *has a wife* that imply inequality in the relationship. Also see men and women.

Marseille (in France).

marshal (n. and v.). Also: *marshaled; marshaling*.

Marshall Plan. The program to help European nations recover economically after World War II was officially known as the *European Recovery Program*. It was proposed in 1947 by George C. Marshall, the secretary of state.

Marshal of the Royal Air Force. This rank, the highest in the British air force, cannot properly be shortened, and *R.A.F. Marshal* is incorrect. But holders of the rank usually have other usable titles: *Marshal of the Royal Air Force Viscount Kuzu of Gerolstein; Viscount Kuzu; Lord Kuzu*.

martini (the cocktail).

Martin Luther King's Birthday is the preferred reference to the federal holiday observed on the third Monday in January. In a detailed article, save the full name of *the Rev. Dr. Martin Luther King Jr.* for a later mention.

Maryland. Abbreviate as *Md*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

Mason-Dixon line. This short form is preferred to *Mason and Dixon's line*.

Mass (religious). Capitalize this and other formally named prayer services: *Divine Liturgy; the Eucharist; the Divine Eucharist; Friday Prayer* (Islam). But: *funeral Mass; high Mass; low Mass; nuptial Mass; requiem Mass*. High Mass is *sung;* low Mass is *said*. Masses are not held and do not take place; they may be *offered, celebrated, said* or *sung*.

Mass MoCA is the informal name of the Massachusetts Museum of Contemporary Art, in North Adams, Mass. See arts locations.

Massachusetts. Abbreviate as *Mass*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

massive. This overworked adjective is best reserved for references to physical bulk. A building or a mountain may be *massive*, but use a fresher description for a budget or a fire.

Master Chief Petty Officer *Hilary Y. Baranek; Master Chief Baranek; the master chief*.

masterful, masterly. *Masterful* means domineering or overpowering. *Masterly* means skillful.

Master Gunnery Sgt. *Pat S. Agneau; Sergeant Agneau; the sergeant.*

master's degree. But: *Master of Arts; Master of Science; etc.* Also: *M.A.*; *M.S.*; *etc.*

Master Sgt. *Tracy N. Berenich; Sergeant Berenich; the sergeant.*

Matamoras (Pa.), **Matamoros** (Mexico).

Matawan (N.J.), **Matewan** (W.Va.), **Mattawan** (Mich.), **Matteawan** (N.Y.).

matériel for military arms and equipment.

matter-of-fact (adj.), **matter-of-course** (adj.). But: *as a matter of fact*; *as a matter of course.*

matzo(s).

Mawlid, the birthday of Muhammad.

May. Do not abbreviate, even before numerals or in charts and tables.

may, might. One function of *might* is as the past tense of *may*. For example: *He may go to the game later;* but after a past-tense verb: *He said he might go to the game later*. In other uses, however, the words convey different nuances, with *might* suggesting a higher degree of doubt: *His ankle is improving, so he may be able to play on Sunday; He might play on Sunday, but his injury will probably prevent it.*

Maya, Mayan. In precise usage, *Maya* (noun and adjective) refers to the Mesoamerican civilization, its people and their culture, and *Mayan* (noun and adjective) refers to their language, written and spoken. Thus: *Maya empire, Maya pyramid, Maya ritual, Maya warrior, Mayan glyphs.*

Mayagüez for the city in Puerto Rico.

Mayor *Lauren V. Barany; Mayor Barany; the mayor; Mr.* (or *Ms.* or *Mrs.* or *Miss*) *Barany*. Also: *Mayor Lauren V. Barany of Detroit; the mayors of Chicago and St. Louis; three former mayors*. But not *Detroit Mayor Lauren Barany;* the city name is not part of the title.

mayoral (adj.), **mayoralty** (n.).

Mays Landing (in Atlantic County, N.J.).

Mazatlán (in Mexico).

M.C. (not *emcee*) for *master of ceremonies*.

M.D. for *Doctor of Medicine*. See Dr.

M.D.T., M.S.T. for *Mountain Daylight Time* and *Mountain Standard Time*. See time.

meager.

mean(-). With the exception of *mean time*, the astronomical term, compounds formed with *mean* are one word: meanspirited, meantime, meanwhile.

mean, median, average. In statistics, a *mean* is an average; a *median* is the figure that ranks midway in a list in ascending or descending order. For example, in a discussion of wages for 51 workers, the *mean* or *average* is the total of their pay divided by 51. The *median* is a wage that is higher than 25 of the wages and lower than the remaining 25. In a list with an even number of items — 50, say, instead of 51 — the median is the average of the two middle numbers. So if the 25th number in a listing is 200 and the 26th is 220, the median is 210.

meanwhile is too abrupt a transitional phrase when an article moves to reporting another event. The actual relationship of events should be expressed in a few words. And *In another development* is similarly skimpy.

measures. Many weights and measures are listed separately. See metric system.

Medal of Honor; *the medal*. Not the *Congressional* Medal of Honor, though it is presented by the president "in the name of the Congress."

medals. Capitalize *Medal of Honor, Bronze Star, Purple Heart, Victoria Cross, etc.* But: *Olympic medal; gold medal*. Note that military decorations are not *won;* they are *earned, received* or *awarded*.

meddle, mettle. *Meddle*, the verb, means interfere. *Mettle*, the noun, means courage or excellence of character.

medevac, for medical evacuation (n. and adj.). As a verb: *medevac; medevacked; medevacking*.

Medgar Evers College (part of the City University of New York).

media. In collective references to communication outlets and platforms, generally treat it as singular: *The news media is a favorite target of politicians; Social media is playing a crucial role in the uprising*. Avoid referring to news outlets simply as *the media;* that broad term could include movies, television, entertainment, *etc.* In referring to artistic techniques or materials, treat *media* as plural (in this sense, the singular is *medium*): *Many different media were on display in the student exhibition*.

median. See mean, median, average.

Medicaid is a federal and state program that helps pay for health care for poor, elderly, blind and disabled patients and for poor families with children.

medical examiner. Lowercase the term, and separate it from the name with a comma: *The medical examiner, Toby Y. Anyell; Dr. Anyell* (or *Mr., Ms., Mrs. or Miss*, if the medical examiner is not a physician); *the medical examiner*. In many jurisdictions, the equivalent position is *coroner*.

Medicare is a federal health insurance program for people 65 or older and for disabled people.

medieval.

mega(-). Compounds formed with *mega*, which means one million, are not hyphenated, except in rare use before a vowel: megabucks (slang), megabyte, megacycle, mega-electron, megaton, megawatt.

Hyphenate terms coined for effect (*mega-merger; mega-series*), but ration that use to avoid triteness.

megabyte. A *megabyte* is about a thousand kilobytes, or a million bytes (actually 1,024 kilobytes, or 1,048,576 bytes). In technical contexts, it may be abbreviated

MB: *a 20MB file*. Also see bit; byte; gigabyte; kilobyte; terabyte.

megahertz is a unit of frequency equal to a million hertz, or cycles per second. It is often used as a measure of radio frequency or of a computer's speed. The abbreviation (for technical contexts only) is *MHz*: *a 500 MHz computer*.

megaton. A megaton is the unit used to measure the power of a nuclear explosion. It is equal to the explosive force of a million tons of TNT. Also see kiloton.

megawatt, megawatt-hour(s). See kilowatt, kilowatt-hour(s).

melee. It means a noisy, confused fight involving a number of people. A riot is not a melee.

Melkite Church. A Roman Catholic church of the Eastern Rite.

member of Parliament. Always a lowercase *m*. The *P* is uppercased for a legislative body so named, or when *Parliament* substitutes for an equivalent foreign proper name. The abbreviation, seen occasionally in a quotation or a headline, is *M.P.*

memento(s).

memorabilia. It is plural; the Latin singular, never absorbed into English, is *memorabile*.

memorandums (not *memoranda*). The short form *memo* is also acceptable in all references.

Memorial Day is observed in the United States on the last Monday in May.

ménage. Also: *ménage à trois*.

men and women. Times writing treats the sexes equally. It reflects a society that no longer assigns roles or occupations to men only or women only. Thus the copy shuns stereotypes and assumptions. Thoughtful writing is also un-self-conscious: It sidesteps offense without calling attention to the pitfalls. It may, for example, cite *spokesmen* and *spokeswomen*, but will refer to a mixed group as *press officers* rather than use the ostentatiously desexed *spokespersons.* A company installs a *four-member management team*, not *four-man* but also not *four-person*. When referring impersonally to *anyone* or *someone*, the writer will find a construction that does not rely on *his* or *her* but also resists the conspicuously plural *they*. Example: *The conductor asked whether anyone had lost a ticket* – not *his ticket* or *her ticket*, and not *their ticket*. (See anybody, anyone, everybody, everyone, no one, someone.) Seemingly innocent words can sound belittling. Do not, for example, label a woman a *grandmother* unless the pertinence is obvious and an equivalent phrase would be used for a man in the identical context. Avoid reflexive descriptions of a woman's appearance or attire, as well as old-fashioned descriptions like *attractive, blond, glamorous* or *dapper;* supply meaningful specifics instead, for women and men equally.

Test the relevance of marital or parental status in a sentence by mentally substituting a person of the opposite sex. And use *divorced man* or *divorced woman* in place of the lifted-eyebrow *divorcé(e)*. Call a new Congress member *a 44-year-old Staten Islander* rather than *a 44-year-old housewife* or a *blond mother of three*. When a woman's activities make news, omit mention of her husband unless his identity is pertinent (as in a broad profile) or its omission would raise a genuine question.

A phrase like *Hollis M. Cordero and his wife, Lynn*, assigns the woman unthinkingly to second rank. Instead write *Hollis and Lynn Cordero* and, equally often, *Lynn and Hollis Cordero*. In place of *he has a wife and two children*, write that *Mr. Cordero is married and has two children*. In a profile or obituary, *Secretary Anyell was born in Bethlehem, Pa., where her father was a steelworker* calls for some acknowledgment of her mother.

For occupational terms, resist modifiers that imply a "norm" of maleness or femaleness: Use *nurse*, not *male nurse;* also *judges*, not *women judges* and not *female judges*. When making a point of sex distinctions in a line of work, employ *man* and *woman* as nouns rather than modifiers: Instead of *the rise of female managers in corporate ranks*, write *the rise of women in the ranks of corporate managers*. Resort to *male* or *female* to modify a job title only when unavoidable, and when the equivalent would be used for someone of the opposite sex in the same context.

In general references, use a neutral job title like *letter carrier* rather than *mailman*, and *police officer* rather than *policeman* or *policewoman*. Avoid most terms with grafted feminine endings; many suggest a secondary status: *comedienne, executrix, sculptress*. While *actress, hostess* and *waitress* remain widely accepted, *actor, host* and *waiter* suit both sexes, as does *server*. (Do not use *waitron, waitperson* or *waitstaff*.)

Headmaster or *headmistress* is acceptable for an educator who uses the title, but write *head of the school* for the general term.

Sexual equality is no longer exotic, and its advocacy does not necessarily warrant the label *feminist* or *feminism;* apply the term only to those who choose it, and deftly indicate what they mean it to signify. Avoid the outdated *women's liberation*, except in a historical reference.

Use parallel courtesy titles for women and for men in all contexts, though women have a choice of title.

Also see actor, actress; assemblyman, assemblywoman; boy; businessman, businesswoman; chairman, chairwoman; coed; comedian; congressman, congresswoman; councilman, councilwoman; courtesy titles; divorcé(e); female, male; foreman, forewoman; gender, sex; girl; grandmother; headmaster, headmistress; he or she; homemaker; housewife; lady; person; postmaster; waiter, waitress; widow, widower.

Mennonites are members of an evangelical Christian sect opposed to military service and in favor of plain dress. Also see Amish.

men's wear.

mental hospital is the preferred replacement for the outmoded *insane asylum*.

mental retardation. See retardation, retarded.

Mercedes-Benz. In later references, *Mercedes*. The plural, barely pronounceable but logical enough, is *Mercedeses* or, a bit more pronounceably, *Mercedes-Benzes*. The possessive is *Mercedes's* or *Mercedes-Benz's* – and yes, for the plural, *Mercedeses' and Mercedes-Benzes'*.

merchant marine. Lowercase *United States merchant marine*, for the fleet of ships, though not for the people who staff them. A member of the merchant marine is *a merchant seaman* or *a merchant mariner*, not a merchant marine.

Merrimack (the Confederate warship that fought the Monitor in the first battle between ironclads).

Met may be used to mean the *Metropolitan Opera* or the *Metropolitan Museum of Art* in later references and in headlines, provided that the music or art context is clear. Also: *the Metropolitan*. In a review, either short form may also serve as a first reference if the full name appears somewhere in the copy or in a fact box.

metaphor is not a synonym for *symbol* or *example. A* metaphor is a figure of speech in which a word or phrase usually applied to one thing is used for another. *A sea of troubles* is a metaphor, and so are the ever-popular *level playing field, sacrificial lamb* and *can of worms*. In software design, a metaphor is the expression of an abstract set of commands in borrowed physical terms: *the desktop*, for example, as a means of organizing files in personal computers.

meter. The basic unit of length in the metric system, equal to 39.37 inches, or roughly 1.1 yards. See metric system.

Methodist Church. The Methodist Church merged with the Evangelical United Brethren Church in 1968 to form *the United Methodist Church*.

metric system. Many measurements are listed separately. Ordinarily convert measurements from the metric system to the American one. Delete the original measure unless it is truly useful, in which case use commas or another graceful device to set off the conversion: *The race was 100 kilometers, about 62 miles*. Conversions of rounded or even numbers should also be rounded: *125 grams, about four ounces* (not *125 grams, or 4.4125 ounces*).

metric ton. A *metric ton* is equal to 1,000 kilograms, or 2,204.62 pounds. (Outside the United States, it is often spelled *tonne*.) The *short ton*, the unit most commonly used in the United States (and called simply a *ton*), equals 2,000 pounds avoirdupois, or 907.20 kilograms. The *long ton*, used in Britain, equals 2,240 pounds, or 1,016.06 kilograms. See metric system.

MetroCard, for the electronic fare collection system in New York City.

Metro-North Railroad; *Metro-North; the railroad*.

metropolitan (church title). This is a title given in the Eastern Orthodox churches to bishops of the rank just below patriarch. It is capitalized only when it directly precedes a name. Also see Eastern Orthodoxy and patriarch.

Metropolitan Transportation Authority. In later references: *the authority*. In headlines: *M.T.A*. Its units are New York City Transit, which operates subways and buses; the Long Island Rail Road; the Metropolitan Suburban Bus Authority, known as Long Island Bus; the Metro-North Railroad; and M.T.A. Bridges and Tunnels (also known as the Triborough Bridge and Tunnel Authority).

M-14, M-16. These are the designations of the 7.62-millimeter and 5.56-millimeter rifles used by the United States military. They are capable of automatic and semiautomatic fire. Also, from earlier eras: *M-1 rifle; M-1 carbine*. Also see bullet; cartridge; handguns; rifles; shell; shotguns.

Michigan. Abbreviate as *Mich*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

micro(-). The prefix forms solid compounds unless the second element begins with an *o* or, presumably in jest, a capital: microbar, microbrewery, micro-Cadillac, microcomputer, microclimate, microdot, microeconomics, micromanage, micro-organism.

microchip. Use *chip* instead.

mid(-). Except before a proper noun or a number, compounds formed with *mid* are one word: midafternoon, midair, mid-America, midchannel, midcontinent, midday, Mideast, midfield, midland, midlife, midmorning, midnight, midpoint, midocean, midsection, midship, midsize, midstream, midsummer, Midtown (Manhattan's), midtown, midway, midweek, Midwest, midwife.

Also: mid-1960, mid-1960s, mid-60s, mid-ninth century, mid-16th century. Also see Middle East and Middle West.

middle(-). Some compounds formed with *middle* are one word, some are hyphenated and some are two words: middle age (n.), middle-aged (adj.), Middle Ages, middlebrow, middle class (n.), middle-class (adj.), middleman, middle-of-the-road (adj.), middle school, middle-sized, middleweight. Also see Middle America; Middle Atlantic States; Middle East, Mideast; Middle West, Middle Western, Midwest, Midwestern.

middle age is generally considered to mean roughly 40 to 65. But when citing a finding or study, specify its definition.

Middle Ages.

Middle America for the middle class of the United States, especially in references to its values, but not for the central part of the country, which is *the Midwest* (preferred) or *the Middle West*.

Middle Atlantic States, Mid-Atlantic States.

Middle East, Mideast. Use *Middle East* in news articles. Either term may be used in headlines. Do not use *Near East*. The Middle East comprises Egypt, Iran, Iraq, Israel, Jordan, Lebanon, Libya, Saudi Arabia, Syria, Yemen and the Persian Gulf emirates.

Middle West, Middle Western, Midwest, Midwestern. All forms may be used, though Midwest is preferred. Also: *Middle Western states; Midwestern states*.

midget. See dwarf(s).

midnight technically ends a day; the new one starts at 12:01 a.m. A reference to a strike deadline, a cease-fire, etc., should be clear and explicit about the day in question. Also see time.

Midshipman *Stacy K. Lamm; Midshipman Lamm; the midshipman* (for a man or woman enrolled at the United States Naval Academy).

Midtown Manhattan. Also, when the context is clear: *Midtown*.

MIG for the fighter plane. With a model number: *MIG-21*.

mike, not *mic*, for informal references to a microphone.

mile, when not otherwise explained, usually means the *statute mile*, equal to 5,280 feet or about 1,609 meters. A *nautical mile* is about 6,076 feet or 1,852 meters. A *kilometer* (1,000 meters) is about 3,281 feet, roughly 0.6 of a statute mile (about five-eighths of a statute mile). Translations of round or approximate numbers, for distance, should also be rounded. Also see knot and metric system.

militant is often an opinionated description, not a neutral one; weigh it with care for the news columns. (Its literal meaning is *at war*, or *ready and willing to fight*.)

The related noun is *militancy*, not *militance*.

Military Academy (United States); *the academy; West Point*.

military bases. Follow this style for United States Air Force, Army, Marine Corps and Navy bases: *Edwards Air Force Base; the Air Force base; the base;* or, in this case, *the air base*. In the case of Navy bases, *Naval* is usually the word in the formal name: *Guam Naval Base; Mayport Naval Station*. In later references, use *naval station, Navy station, naval base* or *Navy base*.

The Air Force uses *Air Force base* within the United States and its possessions only; it uses *air base* elsewhere: *Andrews Air Force Base*, in Maryland; *Andersen Air Force Base*, on Guam; *Aviano Air Base*, in Italy. (For installations without landing operations, *Air Force station* and *air station* are used similarly.)

For the handling of articles filed from bases, see dateline integrity.

military operations. Capitalize their names, without quotation marks: *Operation Desert Shield*. Some of the names are propagandistic; these should be used only when necessary to identify an action in the news, usually once in an article.

military ranks. See separate entries and Air Force ranks; Army ranks; Coast Guard ranks; Marine Corps ranks; Navy ranks.

Military Sealift Command; *the command*.

militate, mitigate. *Militate* against something means exert weight or effect against it: *High taxes militate against relocating the plant. Mitigate*, which means ease or soften, is never the word to use with *against*: *Tax reductions mitigated the financial pressure*.

militia. Lowercase when standing alone; capitalize when part of a name: *Naval Militia*.

mill(-), (-)mill. Most compounds formed with *mill* as a prefix are one word: millowner, millpond; millrace, millstone, millstream, millwork.

Most but not all compounds formed with *mill* as a suffix are two words: coffee mill, diploma mill, flour mill, gristmill, paper mill, pepper mill, sawmill, textile mill, windmill.

millennium(s).

milli(-). Compounds formed with *milli*, which means one-thousandth, are not hyphenated: millibar; milligram; millimeter.

millimeter. One-thousandth of a meter, or approximately 0.04 inch. The symbol *mm* should not be used in ordinary copy (with weapon caliber, for example), but it may be used in charts, lists and tables. See caliber and metric system.

million. See dollars and cents and numbers, round.

(-)minded. Hyphenate compounds formed with *minded*: fair-minded, high-minded, money-minded, open-minded.

mind-set.

minefield.

minesweeper.

mini(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *mini* are one word: minibike, minibus, minicomputer, mini-series, miniskirt, minivan.

minister (church position). *Minister* is a suitable description (not ordinarily a title, therefore lowercase) for most Protestant clergy members. For example: *the Rev. Lynn A. Miel, minister of.* ... Or: *Dr. Miel had served as minister there for 23 years*. Episcopalians' preference must be verified; some prefer *priest*. Most Lutherans and some Baptists prefer *pastor*. Lutherans are also *the Rev.* in first references, but usually use *Pastor* before the name in later references: *Pastor Miel*. For an exception, see pastor. Also see Father; rector; Rev.

Minister of Justice (or other department) *Robin P. Agnello; Justice Minister Robin P. Agnello; Justice Minister Agnello; the justice minister* or *the minister of justice; the minister*. Also: *minister without portfolio*.

Minnesota. Abbreviate as *Minn*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

minority. Whether used as a noun or as an adjective, the word means *group* by definition. Its use to mean individuals (*she hired three minorities*) is personnel jargon.

Make it *minority applicants* or *minority candidates*. And *minority group(s)* is often redundant. *Members of minorities*, while accurate, may be wooden; in any event, specific ethnic identifications, when relevant, are more useful. Also see African-American, black; Asian-American; ethnicity; Hispanic; Latino; Native American.

minority leader. Lowercase the term and separate it from the name with a comma: *Senator Stacy O. Daan, the minority leader;* or *the minority leader, Stacy O. Daan*.

minuscule (not *miniscule*).

mishap. Tempting though it may be for the confines of a headline, *mishap* means only a slight accident with negligible consequences.

mishmash.

Miss. See courtesy titles.

missiles are listed separately by their abbreviations.

mission (diplomatic office). Lowercase when standing alone. But: *the United States Mission; the Zambian Mission*.

Mississippi. Abbreviate as *Miss*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

Missouri. Abbreviate as *Mo*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

M.I.T. for the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. The short form is acceptable on first reference, but in any article dealing centrally with the institute, spell it out at some point.

Mitchel Field (former airfield, now an exhibition site and shopping complex, in Uniondale, N.Y.).

mitigate. See militate, mitigate.

Mitzi E. Newhouse Theater (at Lincoln Center).

mix-up (n.).

Mlle. See courtesy titles.

mm for millimeter in charts and tables, but not in ordinary copy: *a 105-millimeter gun; 35-millimeter film*. See millimeter and metric system.

Mme. See courtesy titles.

mockingbird.

moderator (church title). Capitalize only when it is used before a name.

modern (art and architecture). Lowercase when referring generally to the 20th century; for clarity, the word *contemporary* may often be preferable. In art, *Modern* movements include *Dadaism, Surrealism* and *Cubism*. In architecture, the term *Modernist* identifies architecture from 1920 to 1970. See arts terminology.

Moët & Chandon, the Champagne. But often just *Moët*.

Mohammed. See Muhammad.

mold.

mom. Reserve this colloquialism for lighter contexts, and lowercase except when it substitutes for a proper name: *I'll bet Mom was quite a hit in her senior class show; Tracy's mom was in it, too*. Also see mother.

MoMA for the Museum of Modern Art in New York. See arts locations.

money. For round sums of dollars in the millions or billions, the style is *$2 million; $1.65 billion; $110 million contract*. In upper-and-lowercase headlines, capitalize *Million, Billion* and *Trillion*. See currencies; dollars and cents; numbers; numbers, round.

moneyed (not *monied*), meaning wealthy.

moneys. As a plural of *money*, the word is stilted. Use *money* instead, or *funds*. Do not use *monies*.

(-)monger. Compounds formed with *monger* are one word: fishmonger, rumormonger, scandalmonger, warmonger.

Monmouth University (in West Long Branch, N.J.).

monsignor is an honorary title conferred on some Roman Catholic priests by the pope. Abbreviate it in first references only, and capitalize it only before a name: *Msgr. Tracy X. Berenich; Monsignor Berenich; the monsignor*. In some countries, the title is used in later references to bishops and archbishops (*Bishop Tracy X. Berenich; Monsignor Berenich*). When possible, confine the title to the more familiar American usage; if necessary paraphrase a quotation to avoid the foreign one.

Montana. Abbreviate as *Mont*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

Mont Blanc (the mountain), **Montblanc** (the pen maker).

Montclair State University (in New Jersey).

Montenegro (the country). **Montenegrin(s)**, as a noun for the people, and as an adjective.

Monterey (Calif.), **Monterrey** (Mexico). **monthlong**.

months. Abbreviate the names of months from August through February in news copy when they are followed by numerals: *Aug. 1; Sept. 2; Oct. 3; Nov. 4; Dec. 5; Jan*. 6; *Feb. 7*. Do not abbreviate *March, April, May, June* and *July* except as a last resort in a chart or table. Also see dates and years, decades, centuries.

months pregnant. No apostrophe: the construction is similar to *years old*.

Moody's Investors Service Inc. Also see debt ratings.

moon is lowercase in all references.

Moonies, for members of the Rev. Sun Myung Moon's Unification Church, is disparaging. Avoid it.

moonlight. Use no quotation marks when the expression is used to mean work at an additional job. Also: *moonlighter; moonlighting*. And: *a moonlit night* (despite the general preference for *lighted*).

moose. The plural is also *moose*.

Moravian Church in America.

more honored in the breach. The passage *more honored in the breach than the observance*, from “Hamlet,” refers to a custom that is more *honorably* ignored than followed – not one that is more *often* ignored.

more importantly. Avoid this construction: *He is tall. More importantly, he is young*. Make it *more important*. The phrase includes an implied *what is* (*What is more important, he is young*). Thus *important* is an adjective modifying *what*.

more than. The phrase is useful in many contexts but is sometimes opinionated. *More than $100,000* may seem to suggest that the sum is too large. *About $100,000* is more neutral. *More than* is also imprecise. *More than $100,000* can mean $101,000 or $500,000. Specifics are preferred. Also see over, more than.

Mormon Church. This informal name for the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints may be used in first and later references so long as the full title appears in any article that deals centrally with the church. Members of the church are *Mormons*.

The church is headed by a *president*. It also uses the titles *apostle, high priest, seventy, elder, deacon, teacher* and *priest. A seventy* (a member of a group of men called a *Seventy*) oversees missionary work and other church activities in a specific part of the world. The term *elder* is appropriate in later references to all except *deacon, teacher* and *priest*. Thus: *President Stacy F. Lamb; Elder Lamb; the president of the church. Mr*. and *Dr*. are also appropriate.

The church has *stakes*, which are the equivalent of dioceses; a stake is headed by a *stake president*. There are also *wards*, which are local congregations. A ward is headed by a *bishop*.

mortician. Except in direct quotations or in the name of a business or organization, use *funeral director* or *undertaker* instead.

Moslem. Use *Muslim* instead in references to Islam. Also see Black Muslim; Islam; Nation of Islam.

mosquito(es).

Most Rev., Rt. Rev. Omit these terms before the names of archbishops and bishops in almost all cases. But use *the Most Rev.* before the name of the Anglican prelate who is the archbishop of Canterbury and the names of the superiors general of certain Roman Catholic orders. See Archbishop; bishop; Canterbury, archbishop of; superior general; Rev.; Very Rev.

mother(-). Some compounds formed with *mother* are one word, some are hyphenated and some are two words: motherboard, motherhood, mother(s)-in-law, motherland, mother lode, mother-of-pearl, mother tongue.

mother. Describe a woman as a *mother* (or *grandmother*) only when her family status is pertinent and its pertinence is clear to the reader. *Mother* is appropriate where, if the subject were a man, *father* would be used. Lowercase the word except when it substitutes for a proper name: *Ask Mother to lend you her raincoat*. See men and women and mom.

mother (religious). Capitalize the term when it serves as a title before the name of a religious superior: *Mother Robin Agneau, Mother Robin* or *Mother Agneau*, depending on her preference. Use the title only for superiors who prefer it; some wish to be known as *Sister*. Except in quotations, do not use *a mother* or *the mother* alone in this sense. But: *the superior; the mother superior*. Also see nun and sister (religious).

Mothers Against Drunk Driving. Its acronym, *MADD*, is rarely recognizable enough for a headline. Note that the phrasing differs from that of *Students Against Driving Drunk*.

Mother's Day.

motion pictures. Use quotation marks for their titles, and capitalize principal words.

motor(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *motor* are one word: motorbike, motorboat, motorcar, motorcycle, motor home, motorist, motorman, motor pool, motor scooter, motor vehicle.

Mount. Capitalize the word as part of a name and spell it out: *Mount Vernon*. The abbreviation (*Mt. Vernon*) may be used in headlines, charts, tables and maps.

Mountain Daylight Time, Mountain Standard Time (M.D.T., M.S.T.). See time.

Mount Fuji, Fujiyama. But not *Mount Fujiyama*.

movements (music). Capitalize the names of movements: *the Scherzo; the Andante; etc.* Lowercase if the movement is referred to by its place in the sequence: *the second movement; the finale*.

movements in the arts. See arts terminology.

moviemaker.

M.P. for member of Parliament or military police.

m.p.h. for miles per hour or miles an hour. Spell out the first time: *a speed limit of 55 miles per hour; a 45-mile-an-hour wind*. In cap-and-lowercase headlines, capitalize: *M.P.H.*

Mr. See courtesy titles.

M.R.I. for magnetic resonance imaging.

Mrs. See courtesy titles.

Ms. (courtesy title). Use this title in second and later references to a woman unless she prefers *Miss* or *Mrs*. or instead uses a professional, royal, noble, military or religious title. In a direct quotation translated from a foreign language, use the closest English equivalent of the woman's preferred title, or *Ms*. if no preference is known. See courtesy titles.

M.S. for Master of Science degree. Also: *a master's degree*.

Msgr. *Alex J. Agnello; Monsignor Agnello; the monsignor*.

M.T.A. See Metropolitan Transportation Authority.

mugging is a lay expression rather than a legal term for a defined crime. It may be described as an assault in a public place, usually with the intent to rob. Because the term is imprecise, a detailed description of the crime and the legal charges will probably help readers. See larceny, burglary, robbery, theft.

mug shot is police slang.

Muhammad. Use this spelling for the name of the prophet of the Muslim religion and for people who bear his name, except when an individual's preference is known to differ.

multi(-). Compounds formed with *multi* are one word unless another *i* follows immediately or the result would be hard to read: multicolored, multicultural, multidimensional, multiethnic, multifaceted, multifold, multiform, multi-institutional, multilateral, multilevel, multi-line, multimedia, multimillionaire, multinational, multipurpose, multiracial, multispeed, multitasking.

Mumbai, formerly Bombay. Gracefully remind readers of the former name of the Indian city when necessary.

murder, homicide, killing. Reserve *murder* for a crime that has been so labeled by the authorities in a warrant, a charge or a conviction. A *murder* is the killing of one person by one or more others under conditions specified by law — in a vicious manner, for example, or during another crime. A *homicide* is any killing of one person by another, but *killing* is the simpler word: Preferably use it until a legal finding has been made. (Also see slay, slayer, slaying.) Someone arrested in a death is not a *murder suspect* unless murder charges have been filed.

In articles about crime statistics, *murder rate* is an acceptable informal reference. But when counting actual deaths, use *homicides*. The *homicide rate* is a ratio of killings to population: *The national homicide rate rose to 55 per 100,000 population, from 52; The city had a homicide rate of 1 per 1,350 residents*.

Muscle Shoals (in Alabama).

museums. See arts locations.

music. Abbreviation, capitalization and punctuation styles appear in separate listings for various types of composition.

Uppercase the instrumentation when it is integrated into a commonly used title: *Bach's Orchestral Suite No. 1 (BWV 1066); Schubert's Piano Trio in E flat (D. 929)*. If the instrumentation is appended and merely adds identification, lowercase it: *Mozart's Sinfonia Concertante in E flat for violin and viola (K. 634).*

When the title includes a nickname, use quotation marks around that part only: *Beethoven's "Eroica" Symphony*. If the literary or fanciful name incorporates the full title, place all of it in quotation marks: *"Symphonie Fantastique"*; *"Rhapsody in Blue."* In later references without the full title, lowercase *concerto, trio, quartet, symphony, suite*, *etc.*

Generally follow American capitalization rules for titles of foreign-language works (*"Così Fan Tutte,"* not *"Così fan tutte"*). But European style is widely used, and acceptable, for the names of arias and classical songs. See songs.

In specifying the key of a work, lowercase *flat, sharp, major* and *minor*. A key is assumed to be major unless labeled minor, so *major* is often omitted (*Minuet in G*). Idiom may warrant an exception if the key precedes the title: *the D major Concerto*.

If a work is mentioned more than in passing, generally cite the opus or catalog number. After a title, abbreviate *Opus* as *Op.* A few composers, notably Bach, Mozart and Schubert, are given specialized catalog citations (and abbreviations) in place of *opus*. See opus and symphony.

Muslim. Use this spelling, not *Moslem*, in references to Islam. Also see Black Muslim; Islam; Nation of Islam.

mustache (not *moustache*).

mute may be used in reference to someone who cannot speak. Do not use *dumb*. Also see deaf and disability, disabled.

mutual. In careful writing, the adjective means reciprocal; it describes two people or things acting upon each other: *mutual admiration*. Except in a few established idioms, like *mutual friend* or *mutual fund*, it does not mean merely shared.

Myanmar, formerly Burma. The main city is *Yangon*, formerly Rangoon. Gracefully remind readers of the former names when necessary. Naypyidaw is now the capital. For the people, *Burmese* (n. and adj.) remains in informal use, and aids comprehension in headlines. The language is *Burmese*.

My Lai (in Vietnam), the site of the massacre by United States troops in 1968.

Mylar is a trademark for sheet polyester.

myself. See herself, himself, myself.

N

N.A.A.C.P. for the National Association for the Advancement of Colored People. But it is *NAACP* (without periods) in the official name of a formerly affiliated civil rights organization: the *NAACP Legal Defense and Educational Fund Inc.* (known familiarly as the *Inc Fund*, pronounced *ink*).

Nacogdoches (in Texas).

Nafta in later references and in headlines, for the North American Free Trade Agreement. It took effect in the United States, Canada and Mexico in 1994.

Nags Head (in North Carolina).

naïf, naïve, naïveté.

names. See personal names and nicknames.

namesake properly describes the receiver of a shared name, not the giver. A grandchild may be the *namesake* of her grandmother, but not the other way around. Also see eponymous.

names with numbers. Make it *Lee T. Berenich IV* or *Lee T. Berenich 4th*, depending on the bearer's preference. If no preference is known, use Roman numerals. In a listing, if family names are printed before given names, the *IV* or *4th* comes last: *BERENICH, Lee T. IV*, not *BERENICH IV, Lee T.* Also see Junior, Senior and personal names and nicknames.

nanosecond. One billionth of a second. As a term meaning a very short time, it has become a cliché.

naphtha. The formula includes both *h*'s.

napoleon (the pastry).

Napoleon Bonaparte. But in most cases *Napoleon* will do. Use an accent in *Code Napoléon*.

NASA for the National Aeronautics and Space Administration.

Nascar for the National Association for Stock Car Auto Racing.

Nasdaq.

nation, national. Lowercase unless it is part of a formal name or title.

national. Use the less bureaucratic *citizen* instead, when that is the intended meaning.

National Academy of Sciences. See National Research Council.

national anthem(s). Lowercase the expression. Use quotation marks for titles, with principal words capitalized. Also see songs.

National Baptist Convention of America. The smaller of two black Baptist groups that split in 1915.

National Baptist Convention, U.S.A. Inc. The larger of two black Baptist groups that split in 1915.

National Capitol (the building).

national chairman (chairwoman). *Lindsay R. Kuzu, Democratic national chairman; the national chairwoman*. The same styles apply to state and county chairman and chairwoman.

national committee. *The Republican National Committee; the national committee; the committee*. The same styles apply to state and county committees.

National Conference of Catholic Bishops.

national conventions. *The Republican National Convention; the national convention; the convention*. The same styles apply to state and county conventions.

National Council of Churches will serve in all references for *the National Council of the Churches of Christ in the United States of America*.

National Geographic Society (publisher of National Geographic).

National Governors Association.

National Guard; *the Guard*.

National Institutes of Health. Note the plural. In later references, sparingly: *N.I.H.*

nationalist. Capitalize only in references to a political party or movement so named, or to its members.

Nationalist China. The former informal designation of Taiwan.

nationality. See ethnicity.

National Labor Relations Board. In later references, *the N.L.R.B.*; *the board*.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. In later references, *NOAA*. It is the parent agency of the National Weather Service.

National Organization for Women (NOW), not *of Women*.

National Park Service.

National Public Radio. See NPR.

National Research Council. The council, which issues hundreds of reports annually on scientific, medical and technological issues, is the operating arm of the National Academy of Sciences and the National Academy of Engineering.

National Review (without *the*) is the magazine.

National Security Council; *the council*. The abbreviation, *N.S.C.*, may be used sparingly in headlines when the context is clear.

National Weather Service; *the Weather Service; the service.*

Nation of Islam. It is a black nationalist group founded by Elijah Muhammad in the 1920s. Do not use *Black Muslims* to describe its followers. Most black Americans who are Muslim follow traditional Islam or are members of theological splinter groups. They are *black Muslims*, not *Black Muslims.*

nationwide.

native(s). References to *the natives* often give offense. An exception is the term *Alaska Native(s)*, used by the Aleuts, Eskimos and Indians of Alaska to describe themselves. Exceptions may be made for similar uses by other ethnic groups. And phrases like *native land* and *native of Chicago* are fully acceptable. Also see American Indian(s).

Native American(s) may be used interchangeably with *American Indian(s)* to refer to most native people of North America. When writing about specific individuals or groups, choose the identification they prefer (*Eskimos, Aleuts, Navajos*). Be aware that some government programs use a broader definition for *Native Americans(s)* that includes those not historically referred to as *Indians* (Native Alaskans, Hawaiians and Pacific Islanders). See American Indian(s); Indian Country.

Nativity. Capitalize when the reference is to the birth of Jesus.

NATO for the North Atlantic Treaty Organization. Also: *the Atlantic alliance; the alliance*. The phrases are preferred to repeated uses of *NATO*, which is typographically intrusive. *Atlantic alliance* may also be used occasionally to streamline a lead sentence provided the full name is given soon afterward. The current membership list is available from NATO.

natural causes. Scientists take the term *death from natural causes* to mean a death brought about by the simultaneous failure of several organs in a person of advanced age. To others, the term has come to mean a death that does not result from murder, suicide or an accident. That interpretation is acceptable if the context is clear.

natural parents. Use *biological parents* instead, to avoid a suggestion that adoptive parenthood is unnatural. (Mention adoptive status only when it is pertinent and its pertinence is clear to the reader.)

Natural Resources Defense Council (not *National* Resources).

Naugahyde is a trademark for plastic-coated fabric.

nauseate, nauseated, nauseous. *Nauseate* means sicken, and *nauseated* means sickened. Use *nauseous* to mean sickening only: People feel *nauseated*, not *nauseous*.

nautical mile. A *nautical mile* equals about 6,076 feet, or 1,852 meters. The term *mile*, without a modifier, usually means the *statute mile*, equal to 5,280 feet or about 1,609 meters. A *kilometer* (1,000 meters) is about 3,281 feet, roughly 0.6 of a statute mile (about five-eighths of a statute mile). In translating round or approximate distances, use round numbers. Also see knot and metric system.

Navajo(s). The people and their language.

Naval Academy (United States); *the academy; Annapolis*.

Naval Militia (United States). *The New York Naval Militia; the militia*. It is a reserve force for the Navy, under state command in peacetime.

naval station. Capitalize only in full names: *Mayport Naval Station; the naval station; the station*. But: *the Navy station*. See military bases.

Navy. Capitalize in *United States Navy, British Navy, French Navy*, *etc.* It is *the Navy* in later references to that of the United States, but lowercase such references to any foreign navy. It is also *Navy* in references to United States Naval Academy sports teams.

navy blue.

Navy ranks, in descending order, with their abbreviations:

> COMMISSIONED OFFICERS
>
> **Adm.** *Lynn L. Karitsa; Admiral Karitsa; the admiral*. (An admiral wears four stars.)
> **Vice Adm.** *Alex H. Barany; Admiral Barany; the admiral*. (A vice admiral wears

three stars.)

Rear Adm. *Dale R. Agnello; Admiral Agnello; the admiral*. (A rear admiral may wear one or two stars.)

Capt. *Hilary M. Daan; Captain Daan; the captain*.

Cmdr. *Lauren A. Miel; Commander Miel; the commander*.

Lt. Cmdr. *Morgan T. Bildots; Commander Bildots; the commander*.

Lt. *Lee D. Kikondoo; Lieutenant Kikondoo; the lieutenant*.

Lt. j.g. *Stacy M. Milori; Lieutenant Milori; the lieutenant*.

Ensign *Chris R. Arniotis; Ensign Arniotis; the ensign*.

WARRANT OFFICERS

Chief Warrant Officer *Theo H. Lam; Mr.* (or *Ms., Miss* or *Mrs.*) *Lam; the chief warrant officer*.

Warrant Officer *Terry A. Daan; Mr.* (or *Ms., Miss* or *Mrs.*) *Daan; the warrant officer*.

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS

(Enlisted supervisors.)

master chief petty officer of the Navy. Do not use this title before a name, and do not abbreviate or capitalize it. Make it *Hollis S. Yagyonak, the master chief petty officer of the Navy*. Then explain that it is the highest enlisted rank in the service. In later references: *Master Chief Yagyonak*.

Master Chief Petty Officer *Hilary T. Baranek; Master Chief Baranek; the master chief*.

Senior Chief Petty Officer *Lauren C. Cordeiro; Mr. Cordeiro; Chief Cordeiro; the chief*.

Chief Petty Officer *Lindsay T. Milori; Ms. Milori; Chief Milori; the chief*.

Petty Officer First Class *Merrill R. Yagyonak; Petty Officer Yagyonak; the petty officer*.

Petty Officer Second Class *Tracy A. Karitsa; Petty Officer Karitsa; the petty officer*.

Petty Officer Third Class *Dale M. Miel; Petty Officer Miel; the petty officer*.

OTHER ENLISTED PERSONNEL

Seaman *Lindsay A. Daan; Seaman Daan; the seaman* (male or female).

Seaman Apprentice *Alex T. Kuzu; Seaman Kuzu; the seaman* (male or female).
Seaman Recruit *Chris M. Lam; Seaman Lam; the seaman* (male or female).

Also see retired.

Navy SEALs is the informal name for the Sea-Air-Land units, the Navy's specialists in unconventional warfare. As a modifier, use *SEAL*: *a SEAL unit*. When feasible, vary the references to avoid relying repeatedly on the acronym throughout an article. The plural *SEALs* is acceptable to refer to the forces as a whole or to a group of members: *the SEALs, a team of Navy SEALs*. But when possible, avoid using the acronym to refer to individual members: *a member of the SEALs* and *three members of a Navy SEAL team* are preferable to *a SEAL* and *three Navy SEALs*. Also see Special Operations.

Nazi, Nazism.

N.B.A. for the National Basketball Association.

NBC for the National Broadcasting Company, part of NBCUniversal. Divisions of NBC include *NBC Entertainment, NBC News, NBC Sports, CNBC* and *WNBC-TV. NBC* or any division name may be used in a first reference, depending on the context, and *NBC* may stand alone in later references. *NBC* may be best, standing alone, when networks are grouped: *ABC, CBS, CNN and NBC will televise the news conference*. (Do not attribute an *NBC News* production to *NBC-TV*.) *MSNBC*, once a joint venture of NBC and the Microsoft Corporation, is now solely owned by NBCUniversal.

N.C.A.A. for the National Collegiate Athletic Association.

N. Carolina. The abbreviation may be used as a last resort in headlines (although more freely in the sports pages) and in charts and tables.

NCLR for the Latino organization also known as the National Council of La Raza.

NCO for noncommissioned officer (colloquially a *noncom*). Also: *NCOs*. No periods because the letters do not represent separate words.

N. Dakota. The abbreviation may be used as a last resort in headlines (although more freely in the sports pages) and in charts and tables.

Ndjamena (the capital of Chad).

near(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *near* are separate words: near at hand, nearby (adj. and adv.), near collision, near disaster, near escape, near miss, near riot, nearsighted.

Near East. Do not use this term. See Middle East.

nearly. This modifier tends to magnify an amount: *nearly $10,000*. And *less than $10,000* tends to minimize the sum. A more neutral approach is *about $10,000*.

Nebraska. Abbreviate as *Neb*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

Neediest Cases. It is *The New York Times Neediest Cases Fund* for the annual charitable campaign. (Historical references may recall it as the *Hundred Neediest Cases*.) Do not call it *the Neediest Fund*. Capitalize *Neediest Cases* standing alone.

Negro(es) is acceptable only in the name of an organization or in unmistakable historical contexts. In current contexts, use *black* or *African-American*. See African-American, black and ethnicity.

Neiman Marcus, the retail chain, no longer uses a hyphen in its name.

neither, neither ... nor. When *neither* is the subject, the verb is singular: *Neither of the cars is available*. When *neither* and *nor* link singular terms, the verb is singular: *Neither the car nor the truck is available*. When *neither* and *nor* link a singular term and a plural one, put the plural term second and use a plural verb: *Neither the car nor the trucks are available*. If the mixture of terms and verbs gets awkward, recast the sentence: *The car is not available, and neither are the trucks*.

In any *neither/nor* construction, the terms that follow the two words should be parallel in form and purpose: *The chef bakes neither pies nor cakes daily* (not *neither bakes pies nor cakes*). The same principle applies to *either/or* and *both/and*.

neo-Classical (architecture). Use the term *neo-Classical* when referring to an early revival of Greek or Roman style. In reference to 20th-century buildings of similar type, use *neo-Classical style*. See arts terminology.

Neo-Classicism (music). Capitalize when referring to the movement that originated in the first quarter of the 20th century, using Baroque and Classical forms with 20th-century harmonies and rhythms. See arts terminology.

neo-Gothic (architecture). The term can be used for buildings constructed during the revival of Gothic style, beginning in the 19th century. *Neo-Gothic* is sometimes referred to as *Gothic Revival*. There is no firm distinction between what can be called neo-Gothic and what came later, and it may be clearer to refer to 19th-century Gothic buildings with the sort of phrase that would be used with a 20th-century example: *an 1880 church in the Gothic style*. See arts terminology.

nerve-racking (not *wracking*).

net (v.). Do not use *net* as a verb to mean *earn a profit*.

Netherlands, the. Lowercase *the* in datelines and articles. Confine Holland to historical references (in art, for example). The people are *Dutch*.

net income, also called *profit* or *earnings*, is what a company has left after it has paid its taxes and other expenses. In reference to a company, do not use *income* alone. Make it *income before taxes* or *net income*.

Net, the. This form may be used after a first reference to the Internet, or in a headline when the context is clear.

Nevada. Abbreviate as *Nev.* after the names of cities, towns and counties.

new(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *new* are one word: newborn, newcomer, newfangled, newfound, new-mown, new town.

Newark Liberty International Airport. *Liberty* was added to the name in 2002.

New Brunswick (the New Jersey city and the Canadian province). Do not abbreviate the province name after the names of cities and towns, even in datelines.

Newburgh (in New York). But: *seafood Newburg, etc.*

Newfoundland (Canadian province). Do not abbreviate after the names of cities and towns, even in datelines.

New Hampshire. Abbreviate as *N.H.* after the names of cities, towns and counties.

New Jersey. Abbreviate as *N.J.* after the names of cities, towns and counties. Avoid *Jersey* as a headline expression for the state, except in a few idioms (like *Jersey Shore* and *South Jersey*) shown in this manual.

New Jersey City University (formerly Jersey City State College).

New Jersey Institute of Technology (in Newark).

New Jersey townships. Do not use *township* unless it is needed to differentiate between areas with similar names – Chatham and Chatham Township, for instance, or Princeton and Princeton Township – or unless local idiom favors it, as in Brick Township.

New Jersey Transit operates commuter buses and trains. Do not abbreviate, except in headlines: *N.J. Transit*.

New Left. Also see left, leftist, left wing.

New Mexico. Abbreviate as *N.M.* after the names of cities, towns and counties.

New Paltz (in Ulster County, N.Y.).

news(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *news* are one word: news agency, newscast, newsdealer, news gathering, newsletter, newsmagazine, newsmaker, newsman, newswoman, newspaperman, newspaperwoman, newsprint, newsreel, newsroom, newsstand, newsworthy, news writer, news writing.

New School, the (formerly *the New School University*). Its components include *the New School for Social Research*.

news, editorial. Preserve the distinction. See editorial, news.

New South Wales (in Australia). Do not abbreviate, even after the names of cities and towns.

newspaperman, newspaperwoman. Also: *newsman; newswoman*. And *newspeople*, but not the contrived-sounding *newsperson*.

newspaper names. Use them in roman type, without quotation marks. For consistency, capitalize the article in every name commonly written or spoken with an article: *The Washington Post; The Wall Street Journal; La Prensa; Al Ahram* (but: *Newsday, Politico* and *USA Today*). Also capitalize in later references: *The Journal*. But lowercase *the* when a name serves as a modifier: *the New York Times best-seller list; the Times article; the Daily News reporter*. (In such a case, *the* actually belongs to the following noun — *reporter*, for example.) Use or omit hyphens in names according to their style: *The Sarasota Herald-Tribune*, in Florida. See publication names.

Take care not to use *newspaper* broadly in reference to a news organization with multiple platforms. If a reference specifically involves a print publication, do not append *newspaper* to the title (*The Guardian newspaper*); the device is both unnatural and outdated. If the mode of publication is pertinent, convey it subtly: *An article in the print edition of The Guardian; an interactive timeline on The Guardian's website*.

Names in languages widely understood by Western readers should remain in the original languages: *Le Monde*, not *The World*. So should other well-known names, like *Izvestia*. But: *People's Daily*, in Beijing. Use *The Times of London* on first reference to differentiate that news organization from The New York Times; also *The Sunday Times, in London*. Do not say *The London Times*.

Major daily newspapers published in the New York metropolitan area include these:

The Asbury Park Press
The Daily News (and *The Sunday News*)
The Hartford Courant
The Journal News
The Journal of Commerce
The New Haven Register
The New York Post
The New York Times
Newsday
The Record
The Star-Ledger

The Staten Island Advance
The Wall Street Journal

If a location is not evident, provide it conversationally: *The Record, of northern New Jersey; The Gainesville Sun, in Florida*. In a listing, or when space is scarce, a locater may be inserted in parentheses: *The Ironton (Ohio) Tribune*. But in a phrase other than a name, use commas: *a Columbus, Ohio, newspaper*.

Also see capitalization; columns; New York Times, The; publication names.

news sources. See sources.

New Testament.

New World (Western Hemisphere).

New Year's Day, New Year's Eve. Also: *New Year* (the holiday, not the 12-month period), *Chinese New Year; Jewish New Year; Lunar New Year; Vietnamese New Year; etc.*

New York. Abbreviate as *N.Y.* after the names of cities, towns and counties.

New York Aquarium. This informal name is acceptable in virtually all references. Occasionally, in an especially detailed article, it may be useful to mention the official name, *the Aquarium for Wildlife Conservation*. The aquarium, in Coney Island, is operated on city property by the Wildlife Conservation Society.

New York Board of Rabbis. It represents Orthodox, Conservative, Reform and Reconstructionist rabbis in New York City, Westchester County, New Jersey and Connecticut.

New York Botanical Garden (in the Bronx). Not *Gardens*. Also: *the Queens Botanical Garden; the Staten Island Botanical Garden*. But: *the Brooklyn Botanic Garden*.

New York City. But: *the city; the city government*. See city.

New York City Technical College (part of the City University of New York).

New York City Transit; *the transit agency*. Do not abbreviate. A unit of the Metropolitan Transportation Authority, it was formerly known as the Transit

Authority.

New York Downtown Hospital.

New York Fire Department; *the Fire Department; the department*. When the local context is clear, *the Fire Department* should generally stand alone in a first reference. In headlines, *Fire Dept*. is acceptable. Do not use *F.D.N.Y*. except in direct quotations.

The *fire commissioner*, a civilian, is the highest authority; the *chief of department* is the top uniformed officer. There is no single *fire chief;* senior officers with *chief* in their titles should be identified by bureau or department: *Chief of Safety Toby A. Bildots; Chief Bildots; the chief of safety*. The department also has several grades within the rank of *chief;* the full designation should be included on first reference: *Deputy Assistant Chief Ashley M. Barany; Chief Barany; the chief*.

Fire stations in New York are informally called *firehouses;* the typical one has both an *engine company* and a *ladder company*. Each borough also has one *rescue company*. Several *squad companies, marine companies* (fireboat units) and *hazardous materials teams* are stationed around the city. (The insider term *Hazmat*, for *hazardous materials*, is too obscure for news articles.) When appropriate, mention the number of the company: *Engine Company 231 in Brooklyn; Ladder Company 17 in the Bronx*. Note that the ladder company and the engine company in the same firehouse are likely to have different numbers.

The rank and file in the department are *firefighters* (not *firemen* or *firewomen*).

The department also includes the *Emergency Medical Service*, though its ambulances are not stationed in firehouses. Generally confine *E.M.S*. to direct quotations, provided the context is clear.

NewYork Historical Society. Note the hyphen.

New York Hospital-Cornell Medical Center is now part of New York-Presbyterian Hospital.

New York Police Department; *the Police Department; the department*. When the local context is clear, *the Police Department* should generally stand alone in a first reference. In headlines, *Police Dept*. is acceptable. Do not use *N.Y.P.D*. except in direct quotations.

The *police commissioner*, a civilian, is the highest authority; the top uniformed officer is the *chief of department*. There is no single *police chief;* identify anyone with the title *chief* by bureau or department: *Chief of Patrol Robin L. Milori; Chief Milori; the chief of patrol*.

The department is divided into *precincts, bureaus, divisions* and *units*, with sometimes overlapping responsibilities, so use caution in specifying a member's assignment. Most detectives, for example, are part of bureaus and are assigned to squads, not to precincts, though they may work in a precinct house: *Detective Toby T. Kuzu of the 77th Precinct detective squad*, not just *77th Precinct*. Also see police officer.

New York Power Authority.

NewYork-Presbyterian Hospital was formed in 1997 by the merger of New York Hospital and Presbyterian Hospital. It includes these locations:

- NewYork-Presbyterian/Weill Cornell hospital is at 68th Street and York Avenue. The formal name is NewYork-Presbyterian Hospital/Weill Cornell Medical Center.
- NewYork-Presbyterian/Columbia hospital is at Broadway and 168th Street. The formal name is NewYork-Presbyterian Hospital/Columbia University Medical Center.
- NewYork-Presbyterian/Allen hospital is at Broadway and 220th Street. The formal name is NewYork-Presbyterian Hospital/Allen Pavilion.
- NewYork-Presbyterian/Westchester hospital is in White Plains. The formal name is NewYork-Presbyterian Hospital/Westchester Division.

The formal names shown above should rarely appear in print, except in an article that centers on the structure or management of the institution. Note that *NewYork-Presbyterian* is a necessary part of all the names, and *NewYork* is spelled as a single word.

New York School (art). Capitalize when referring to the abstract expressionist artists who emerged in New York as an influential group in the 1940s and 1950s. See arts terminology.

New York State Thruway Authority. It operates the New York State Thruway (formally *the Gov. Thomas E. Dewey Thruway*). In later references: *the Thruway; the Thruway Authority; the authority*.

New York Stock Exchange; *the New York Exchange; the exchange; the Big Board*. In tables and charts only: *N.Y.S.E*.

New York Times Company Foundation, The; *the Times Company Foundation; the foundation. A* private organization supported solely by the Times Company, it administers The New York Times Neediest Cases Fund and The New York Times College Scholarship Program.

New York Times polls. When the newspaper conducts an opinion survey in partnership, the overall designation for the project is *The New York Times/CBS News Poll*. In later references, *the Times/CBS News Poll* (with *the* lowercased) and *the poll*. Some contexts may also call for phrases like *a New York Times/CBS News poll* (lowercased for an individual survey, as opposed to the enterprise) or *a recent New York Times/CBS News poll*.

Occasionally The Times will work with a different partner or without a partner; the editor in charge of polling will so specify.

For statistical terms used in writing about surveys, see opinion polls.

New York Times, The. Use the name in roman type, without quotation marks. Uppercase *The* in the full names of the news organization, its newspaper and digital publications, and the parent company: *The New York Times; The New York Times Company*. In later references, it is *The Times*, but *the Times Company* and *the company*.

When the name serves as a modifier, lowercase *the*, which actually attaches to the following noun: *the Times reporter; the Times editorial*. Note the possessive: *The Times's coverage*.

The Times Company's corporate website is the preferred source for executives' titles and names (including initials and spelling), and for the names of affiliated companies, but the writer must verify that the listings remain current. In reporting business transactions and legal developments, distinguish between the company and the news operation.

If an officer holds more than one title, use the one(s) most pertinent to the news: *chairman of The New York Times Company*, for example, or *publisher of The New York Times*, or *president and chief executive of the Times Company*.

Lowercase titles like *executive editor, editorial page editor, national editor* and *vice president for circulation*. Also *editorial board* and *board of directors*. (Usually, in the latter sense, *board* can stand alone, and *director* should replace the wordier *member of the board of directors*.)

Reserve *editorial* and *editorial staff*, etc., for references to the opinion sections. Use phrases like *news content* and *news staff* for the rest of the journalistic operation.

Do not confuse an *issue* (the full day's print output) with an *edition* (a segment of the day's circulation in print or otherwise) or a *copy* (a single printed newspaper). Often all three words are unnecessary: *an article in The Times on Tuesday*.

Capitalize *Page 1; Page A1; Section 8*. Also: *Section 8*, *Page 1*. Lowercase *front page* and *home page*.

Names of Times editions and services are capitalized as shown:

the New York edition
the national edition
the Washington edition
the New England edition
NYTimes.com (as a name; in a web address, use *nytimes.com*)
The New York Times News Service (a unit of *The New York Times News Services*, which also comprises other syndication and information businesses)
TimesDigest
The New York Times Index (bound volumes of abstracts)
The New York Times Large Print Weekly; the Large Print Weekly

FEATURES AND DEPARTMENTS

the editorial page, or the opinion pages
the New York Times best-seller list; the Times best-seller list
the obituary page(s)

the Op-Ed page (but op-ed, for that of any other publication)
the sports pages (in editions that do not carry a separate section)
Also see columns and New York Times polls.

WEEKDAY SECTIONS

The Arts (but *the Arts section*)
Business Day
the Dining section
Home
International
National
New York
Science Times
SportsMonday (and *SportsTuesday, etc., or the Sports section*)
Thursday Styles
Weekend

SUNDAY SECTIONS

the Arts & Leisure section
the main news section (or *Section 1*)
the Metropolitan section
The New York Times Book Review; The Times Book Review; the Book Review
The New York Times Magazine; The Times Magazine; the magazine
the Real Estate section
Sunday Business
Sunday Styles
the Travel section
the Sunday Review
T: The New York Times Style Magazine (and informally, or in later references, *T magazine* or just *T*). (The expression *Part 2 of The Times Magazine* is no longer in use.)

Consult the New York Times website for the names of blogs and other online features: *Bits*, *ArtsBeat*, *City Room.* Avoid appending *blog* to the names of these features (*the City Room blog*).

Times buildings or offices may be identified in any of these ways:

> *The New York Times Building; the Times Building*
> *TheTimesCenter*
> *TheTimesCenter Stage*
> *TheTimesCenter Hall*
> *The New York Times's plant in College Point, Queens*
> *the New York Times plant in College Point, Queens*
> *The Times's Queens plant, at College Point*
> *the Washington bureau* (similarly, any other bureau)

Also see Neediest Cases.

New York Waterway (the ferry operator).

New York Zoological Society is the former name of the Wildlife Conservation Society.

New Zealand. Do not abbreviate after the names of cities and towns, even in datelines.

N.F.L. for the National Football League.

nicknames. See personal names and nicknames.

Nigerien(s). The people of Niger. The adjective is *Nigerien*. Because the term is unfamiliar to many readers, use it sparingly and only when the context is clear. (Do not confuse with Nigeria and Nigerians, for the larger country and its people.)

night(-). Some compounds formed with *night* are one word and some are two words: night blindness, nightcap, nightclothes, nightclub, nightdress, nightfall, nightgown, night life, night light, nightlong, nightmare, night owl, night school, night stand, nightstick, nighttime, night watch, night watchman.

N.I.H. for the National Institutes of Health.

1900s, 20th century. In almost all contexts, use numerals for centuries after the ninth. Also: *mid-1900s; mid-20th century*. When unavoidable, at the start of a sentence or for special effect: *nineteen-hundreds*. Also see years, decades, centuries.

92nd Street Y (in Manhattan). *The 92nd Street Y.M.-Y.W.H.A.* is always known by the short form of its name.

Niño, El. See El Niño, La Niña.

nisei refers to the children of Japanese immigrants, not to all Japanese-Americans.

nitrate, nitrite. They are different salts. Verify the names of compounds when they occur.

nitty-gritty is slang, and overworked.

N.L.R.B. for the National Labor Relations Board.

No. for number. Note the capitalization: *Haste is the No. 1 reason for errors*. Do not use *No*. before the numerical designations of schools, fire companies, lodges and similar units: *Public School 4* (or *P.S. 4*); *Ladder Company 16; Engine Company 4*. Also see streets and avenues.

NOAA, for the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. It is the parent agency of the National Weather Service.

Nobel Prize. Capitalize in references to the five prizes established under the will of Alfred Nobel, and capitalize the category names: *Nobel Peace Prize; Nobel Prize in Chemistry; Nobel Prize in Literature; Nobel Prize in Physics; Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine*. Informally, especially in a lead, *Nobel Prize in Medicine* or *Nobel Prize in Physiology* is acceptable, whichever applies; the full name should appear somewhere in an article dealing centrally with the prize.

The Bank of Sweden Prize in Economic Sciences in Memory of Alfred Nobel is not, strictly speaking, a Nobel Prize. It can be called the *Nobel Memorial Prize in Economic Science* or the *Nobel in economic science*.

NoLIta, for the neighborhood north of Little Italy in Manhattan.

nolo contendere means “I do not wish to contend,” and, by extension, no contest. The criminal defendant who uses that plea is not admitting guilt, but declining to offer a defense. The defendant may then be judged guilty and punished: The effect is the same as with a plea of guilty and a conviction. But the defendant is not prevented from denying the same charge in another proceeding.

no man's land. It is an established idiom, but when the masculine viewpoint is inopportune, *buffer zone* or *neutral zone* may be useful.

non(-). Close up compounds formed with *non* unless the prefix is directly followed by an uppercase letter: *nonaggression, non-Arab*. If an unfamiliar or baffling word results, rephrase or make an exception: *non-use*.

Also: *non sequitur* (because it is two Latin words, not a compound; also never hyphenated).

none. Despite a widespread assumption that it stands for *not one*, the word has been construed as a plural (*not any*) in most contexts for centuries. H. W. Fowler's Dictionary of Modern English Usage (1926) endorsed the plural use. Make *none* plural except when emphasizing the idea of *not one* or *no one* – and then consider using those phrases instead.

nonetheless.

no-nonsense (adj.).

nonplused does not mean fazed, or unfazed. It means bewildered to the point of speechlessness.

nonprofit (n., adj.) is more graceful and natural than *not-for-profit*.

no one is singular. The pronouns that refer to it are *he* and *she*, never *they*. See anybody, anyone, everybody, everyone, no one, someone.

Nordstrom (the retailer).

nor'easter. An East Coast storm with winds that come from the northeast; avoid overuse.

north. Capitalize in references to that region of the United States and to specific regions so known: *North Texas*. Capitalize in later references to any country with *North* in its name: North Korea; the North. Also: *Far North*. Lowercase *north* as a point of the compass.

North American Free Trade Agreement. In headlines and in later references, *Nafta*. It took effect in the United States, Canada and Mexico in 1994.

North Atlantic Council (the highest authority of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization); *the council*. Also see NATO.

North Atlantic Treaty Organization. See NATO.

North Carolina. Abbreviate as *N.C.* after the names of cities, towns and counties. As a last resort, and somewhat more readily in the sports pages, use *N. Carolina* in a headline.

North Dakota. Abbreviate as *N.D.* after the names of cities, towns and counties. As a last resort, and somewhat more readily in the sports pages, use *N. Dakota* in a headline.

northeast. Capitalize when referring to the geographic region of the United States; lowercase as a point of the compass.

northern. Capitalize when referring to the North (the region of the United States) and to recognized areas (*Northern California*). But: *northern Ohio; northern part of South* (or *North*) *Korea; northern half of Wyoming; etc.* Also see north.

Northerner. Capitalize when referring to someone from the American North or from a country with *North* in its name, like North Korea.

Northern Hemisphere; *the hemisphere*.

North Jersey. This is an exception to the rule that requires *northern New Jersey, eastern Indiana*, *etc.* It is exempt, too, from the inhabitants' usual preference for *New* in front of *Jersey*. Similarly: *South Jersey*.

North Pole. But: *the pole; polar*.

North Shore, South Shore (of Long Island).

North Side. Capitalize when regularly used to designate a section of a city.

North Slope (of Alaska).

North Texas.

North Vietnam, North Vietnamese. The terms apply only to the period from 1954 to the reunification of Vietnam in 1975.

northwest. Capitalize when referring to the geographic region of the United States; lowercase as a point of the compass.

Northwest Territories (in Canada). Do not abbreviate after the names of cities and towns, even in datelines.

not-for-profit. Use the more natural *nonprofit* instead.

not guilty, innocent. In the American system, a defendant is presumed innocent and therefore never needs to prove innocence; it is guilt that must be proven, by the state. So a defendant's plea (and a successful one's verdict) is *not guilty* rather than *innocent*. The journalistic practice of writing *innocent* arose from a fear of omitting *not* in typesetting. But the distinction is worth preserving, even at the cost of an extra moment to check the copy.

not only ... but also. Constructions of this type require a balance. The words that follow the first and second parts must be parallel in form (two adjectives, for example, serving comparable purposes): *It would be not only unwieldy but also unworkable*. Note how the symmetry is lost when words are misplaced: *It would not only be unwieldy but also unworkable*.

The *also* in the construction is generally preferred, but may be omitted if something else furnishes the balance or if the second part of the sentence describes an action more sweeping than the first: *She not only invited them to dinner but even paid for the taxi; They not only went but took all their friends*.

Other constructions that require parallel phrasing are *either X or Y, neither X nor Y* and *both X and Y*.

notoriety means more than just fame. Use it only to mean *unfavorable repute*.

Notre Dame, Notre-Dame. It is the *University of Notre Dame*, not *Notre Dame University*, in Indiana. The phrase *Notre-Dame* (meaning Our Lady) is ordinarily hyphenated in the names of French towns, streets and churches (including the

Cathedral of Notre-Dame, in Paris), but French Canadian usage varies; verify each case. The modifier *Notre* does not take an accent mark, unlike *nôtre*, the pronoun meaning *ours*.

notwithstanding.

Nov. for *November* before numerals (*Nov. 11*), or in charts and tables.

Nova Scotia (Canadian province). Do not abbreviate after the names of cities and towns, even in datelines.

NOW for the National Organization for Women (not *of* Women). A separate but affiliated organization is the *NOW Legal Defense and Education Fund* (not the *National Organization for Women Legal Defense and Education Fund*).

now. Use the word as an adverb (*the film is playing now*) or a noun (*by now, the film must be over*). Dictionaries accept it in compound modifiers also (*the now famous comedian; the now defunct magazine*), but that usage produces unpolished phrasing with the sound of overliteral translation. Replace it with phrases like this: *the comedian, now famous; the magazine, now defunct*.

NPR is a nonprofit radio network that acquires, distributes and produces programs for public stations. It no longer refers to itself as National Public Radio, but a brief description like "the public radio network" may be useful in some cases.

Nuclear Regulatory Commission. In later references and in headlines: *N.R.C.*

nucleus (sing.), **nuclei** (pl.).

numbered expressions. A designation consisting of a noun and a numeral is capitalized as a proper name: *Page A1; Act II, Scene 3; Apartment 3B; Column 40; Day 1; Door 12; Flight 424; Gate 27*; *Phase 2; Room 235; Row 3; Seat 12C; Section 30*. Also see chapter numbers and page numbers.

number of subject and verb. After a *neither-nor* construction, if the subjects are both singular, use a singular verb: *Neither Dana nor Dale was happy*. If the subjects are both plural, use a plural verb: *Neither the Yankees nor the Mets were hitting*. If one subject is singular and the other plural, use the number of the one nearer the verb:

Neither the man nor his horses were ever seen again.

A verb that merely connects two elements in a sentence takes the number of the preceding noun or pronoun, which is the subject: *Her specialty was singing and dancing and playing the violin*. The verb most often used this way is *to be*. Others that can serve as connectors include *appear, become, feel, look, seem, smell* and *taste*. When the subject is the pronoun *what*, the writer must decide whether to construe it as *the thing that* (singular) or *the things that* (plural). Once the decision is made, all affected verbs must conform: *What was remarkable was the errors made on both sides; What were most in demand were language ability and a degree in Russian studies*.

When a verb is far removed from its subject, especially if another noun intervenes, mistakes like this may occur: *The value of Argentina's exports to the United States are 183 million pesos*. The verb should be singular because its subject (*value*) is singular.

Misidentification of the subject also causes trouble: *Terry Cordeiro is one of those people who goes in for striking colors*. The verb should be *go*, since the subject is *who*, which refers to the plural *people*. Test such constructions by reversing them: *Of those people who go in for striking colors, Terry Cordeiro is one*.

Sums of money are usually treated as singular because the focus is on the sum, not on individual bills or coins: *Ten dollars buys less now than five did then*. Similarly: *Five pounds of rice feeds a family of four for a week* (because the pounds are not counted one by one). Use the plural when the focus is on individual items: *Three hundred parcels of food were shipped*.

Total of or *number of* (and a few similar expressions, like *series of*) may take either a plural or a singular verb. In general, when the expression follows *a*, it is plural: *A total of 102 people were injured; A number of people were injured*. When the expression follows *the*, it is usually singular: *The total of all department budgets is $187 million; The number of passengers injured was later found to be 12*.

If *couple* conveys the idea of two people, treat it as a plural: *The couple were married*. But: *Each couple was asked to give $10*.

numbers. In general, spell out the first nine cardinal and ordinal numbers in ordinary copy: *He walked nine miles; There were eight applicants; He was the sixth; The game ended in the fifth inning*. Use figures for numbers above nine: *The table was set* *for 10; There were 50 in the audience; He owns 63 horses; The game finally ended in the 15th inning*. These rules apply even within a single series of numbers: *We counted six pigs, eight cows and 12 sheep*.

The rule of spelling out below 10 does not apply to these cases:

- Ages of people and animals.
- Building numbers: *1 Fifth Avenue*. See addresses.
- Figures in headlines, charts and tables.
- Figures in some financial contexts: *The stock advanced 3 points*.
- Figures that include decimals: *3.4 inches of snow*. See decimals.
- Results of voting. See votes.
- Percentages. See percent, percentage.
- Sums of money. See money.
- Times of day. See time.
- Days of the month. See dates.
- Latitude and longitude.
- Degrees of temperature. See temperature.
- Dimensions, measurements, weights and proportion when they consist of two or more elements. See dimensions, measurements, weights and proportions.
- Numbered expressions: *Page 1; Section 3; Chapter V; Article 6; Room* 9.
- Sports points, scores and times. Also see baseball; basketball; boxing; football; golf; hockey; horse racing; swimming; tennis.
- Mentions of the Twelve Apostles and the Ten Commandments.

Round numbers are sometimes rendered in numerals and sometimes in words. In the thousands, it is almost always numerals: *5,000; 2,300th*. But spelling out is sometimes appropriate: *They planned to enlist a million workers; He said his opponent was a hundred percent wrong*.

In the millions, this is the usual form: *four million*, *10 millionth*. The adjectival form: *four-million-year span; 12-million-year span*. In the case of dollar and sterling sums: *$10 million; £25 million*. When a range is given, repeat the word: *$5 billion to $15 billion* (not *$5 to $15 billion*, except in this modifier form, with hyphens: *$5-to-15-billion program*). Do not hyphenate the simple modifier form: *$10 million loan*.

The rules for spelling and numerals also apply to adjectival forms: *four-mile hike; 11-*

mile race; three-day trip; 40-hour week; five-ton truck; 9,000-ton ship; two-million-member union; 10-million-vote margin; 3.5-inch snow.

In ordinary news copy, spell any number that begins a sentence: *Five hundred delegates attended*.

In ordinary copy, use *to* between numerals in giving the results of voting and rulings by a court with more than one judge: *a vote of 51 to 3; voted 51 to 3; a 51-to-3 vote; ruled 5 to 4; a 5-to-4 ruling*. But the *to* can be dropped in headlines: *a 5-4 vote*.

When paired numbers denote a range, do not use a comma: *Fees will rise by $3 to $20*. Insert a comma when the numbers do not represent a range: *Fees will rise by $3, to $20*. When reporting a rise or a fall, give the *to* figure first (in spite of logic), to prevent misreading as a range: *In a week, the stock rose to $25 from $17.75*. And: *The price fell to $850 from $998*.

In headlines, figures may be used for all cardinal and ordinal numbers, but *1* and *1st* are typographically inelegant and should be a last resort. *One Hurt* is preferred to *1 Hurt* (better yet: *Man Hurt* or *Woman Hurt*). *First Prize* is more readable than *1st Prize*. In an idiom, make it *First Aid* and *Safety First*, not *1st Aid* and *Safety 1st*. But use *1-Cent Tax* (or *1¢ Tax*), *1 percent* and similar constructions.

When using figures, express ordinal numbers this way: *2nd; 3rd; 4th; 11th; 21st; 33rd; 124th*.

To aid comprehension, long numbers may be rounded. Those in which the first omitted digit is *5* or higher are rounded upward; those in which the first omitted digit is *4* or lower are rounded downward. In general, round off figures in the millions to one decimal place (*3.5 million*), those in the billions to two places (*4.56 billion*) and those in the trillions to three (*4.765 trillion*). When highly similar numbers are compared or contrasted, it may be necessary to retain more decimal places.

Use caution, because rounded numbers can be misleading. In an article about a record-breaking $1.95 million contract, for example, a reference to a $2 million deal might be unfair. And any calculation of a percentage change should be based on unrounded numbers because the distortion from rounding can be significant. If, for instance, a company reports that its earnings rose to $1.86 million from

$1.23 million, the unrounded numbers yield a change of 51.2 percent. But if the percentage is calculated on rounded figures ($1.9 million and $1.2 million), the change comes to 58.3 percent.

In rounding numbers that are subject to dispute or numbers that may change – estimates of surpluses or budget deficits, for example, and early estimates of damage or deaths in a disaster – use the more conservative figure. But if experience suggests that an earthquake or other disaster is likely to do vast damage because of its location, a general prediction like “hundreds” may be appropriate.

Also see numbers, round.

numbers in names. Make it *Lee T. Berenich IV* or *Lee T. Berenich 4th*, depending on the bearer’s preference. If the preference is not known, use Roman numerals. Popes and monarchs use Roman numerals. In a listing, if family names are printed before given names, the number comes last: *BERENICH, Lee T. IV*, not *BERENICH IV, Lee T.* Also: *Jr.* and *Sr.* (without commas) for Junior and Senior in names: *Lee T. Berenich Jr.* (or *Sr.*). Also see Junior, Senior and personal names and nicknames.

numbers, round. Round numbers in the thousands are usually expressed in figures: *She ordered 5,000 cases of beer*. But spelling out is sometimes appropriate: *He said he knew a thousand better ways*.

Round numbers in the millions and billions generally follow the rule of spelling out below 10: *three million people; 16 million people*. But, with a decimal: *3.5 million people*. Hyphenate the adjectival form: *three-million-year span; 16-million-year span*. The spelling rule does not apply in the case of money: *$3 million; $13-million-a-year job; $1.5 billion; £7 billion; 6 million francs; 4.5 million francs*. Spelling is appropriate in a figure of speech: *I wish I had a million dollars*. And: *He got a million dollars’ worth of free publicity*. (Note the apostrophe.)

In expressing a range of values, repeat *million* or *billion*, as follows: *60 million to 75 million; $5.5 billion to $8 billion*. The repetition is not necessary in this modifier form, with hyphens: *a $5-to-15-billion program*. But do not hyphenate the simple modifier form: *the $10 million loan*.

Here are further examples of the style for round numbers that are not sums of money:

one million tons or (preferably) *a million tons*
two and a half million tons
two million to three million tons (not *two to three million*)
two million to 11 million tons
1.5 million tons
1.75 million tons
1.5 million to three million tons
300,000 to one million
555 billion gallons

In general, do not use *quadrillion, quintillion*, etc., because they are hard to grasp. Instead, express the number in millions or billions (*billion* being used in the American sense of 1,000 million). The following table shows how very large numbers may be expressed. In each case, the zeros follow the numeral 1.

15 zeros: a million billion (instead of a *quadrillion*)
16 zeros: 10 million billion

17 zeros: 100 million billion

18 zeros: a billion billion (instead of a *quintillion*)

numbskull.

nun. The term (not a title) designates a woman in an organized religious community, most often in the Roman Catholic Church but also in the Anglican (Episcopal) and Orthodox denominations and in Buddhism. Christian nuns generally take vows of poverty, chastity and obedience. See mother and sister (religious).

Nunavut (in Canada) is a territory, with more limited autonomy and powers than a province. It was created in 1999 from part of the Northwest Territories and is populated largely by Inuit people. Use *Nunavut* after the names of cities and towns. The name, pronounced NOO-na-voot, means “our land.”

nuncio. See papal nuncio and apostolic delegate.

nursemaid.

nurseryman.

N.Y.S.E. See New York Stock Exchange.

N.Y.U. for New York University.

NYU Langone Medical Center (no longer the New York University Medical Center). Note that the name has no periods and no “the.” The center’s major components are *the New York University School of Medicine, Tisch Hospital, the Rusk Institute of Rehabilitation Medicine* and *the Hospital for Joint Diseases*.

O

O, oh. The interjection or exclamation *O* is now found mostly in quotations from poetry, in classical references and in religious texts. It is always capitalized, whether at the beginning of a sentence or elsewhere: *For thee, O Lord*. But the modern *oh* is capitalized only at the start of a sentence: *Oh, what a shame! But oh, how glad we were!* Such a construction usually requires an exclamation point.

O.A.S. for the Organization of American States.

obbligato(s).

obituaries. An obituary ordinarily begins with the subject's name, claim to fame or reputation, day and place of death, and age. That is the preferred sequence, but the elements need not all appear in the lead; secondary facts should be deferred to avoid clutter. The statement of a subject's accomplishment should fit the prominence or brevity of the obituary.

Not all obituaries require a hard-news lead. A feature approach can be effective in introducing an obituary about someone who has a compelling life story but is not famous, but this treatment should be used sparingly, in consultation with an obituaries editor.

The cause of death should be given no earlier than the second paragraph, and it should always be attributed. Strive for independent confirmation of the death; do not rely on other news reports for confirmation or cause except as a last resort.

For The Times's purposes, "old age" is not considered a cause of death; neither is "natural causes." But for the very elderly (late 80s and older), it is usually not necessary to specify a cause. If a cause cannot be established, regardless of the subject's age, write, for example: *His death was announced (or confirmed) by his wife, Leslie Lamm. She did not specify the cause.*

It is not necessary to say that the subject died in a hospital, and the information need not be in the lead. But if the subject was very prominent, it is often advisable to mention not just that he or she died in a hospital, but also to name the hospital.

While the subject's city or town of residence is worth noting, it need not be mentioned high in the obituary, unless the subject died at home. In that case, write, for example, *Mr. Lamm died at his home in Manhattan*.

If a crime or indiscretion was the subject's main claim to fame, it should of course figure in the lead. But an early indiscretion should be kept in proportion — subordinated or omitted, depending on its ultimate significance in a life. The discovery of a lone article in the newspaper file should not skew the summation of a lifetime.

The more biographical background the obituary can give, the better. Details like education and military service should be given when relevant or interesting, and when space permits. If possible, give the subject's full birth name, including middle name if known; use the original surname of a woman who uses a married name and the real name of someone who changed his or her name for professional reasons. If possible, give the names and occupations of the subject's parents, as well as his or her place and date of birth.

Survivors should be listed at the end of a routine obituary. But a fuller one, if artfully constructed, will attend to the basics earlier and end with an anecdote or an otherwise memorable paragraph. (In such cases, however, the list of survivors should appear no higher than the last third of the obituary.) A strong kicker is always desirable, but sometimes none presents itself. In such cases, a list of survivors may be the best choice.

Ordinarily the named survivors include parents, siblings, spouse or companion and children. Give the numbers of grandchildren and great-grandchildren, but to conserve space do not list their names, unless one or more of them are so well known that most readers would recognize them. Try to determine what last name sisters or daughters use. Do not list survivors' home towns. A subject may be survived by a *wife* or *husband;* leave *widow* and *widower* for later articles.

If a survivor's name is likely to be familiar to many readers, include a brief identification: *Mr. Manley is survived by his wife, Joan, and a son, Dana, of Chicago,* *who is president of XYZ University.*

For the purposes of a Times obituary, cousins, nephews, nieces, aunts, uncles and in-laws are not considered survivors. But there can be exceptions. If the survivors regard a more distant relative or even a friend as a member of the subject's immediate household, mention the relationship. If survivors disagree about whom to include, refer the question to the news desk, which will weigh the demands of accuracy, news value and compassion. Never write *There are no survivors*, a statement that can cause anguish to anyone overlooked. Instead use *No immediate family members survive*.

Every obituary headline should include the subject's age, directly to the right of the name or of an occupational noun (meaning that the age never begins a line). *John P. Manley, 88, Architect* is fine; so is *Architect, 88*. But *Architect of Churches, 88* is not, because of the momentary incongruity of the notion (even if implausible) that the churches were 88.

In print, the main headline on each obituary page should say *Dies* or *Dead*. Other headlines may omit the word, but if they do, *Dies* or *Dead* is the *implied* verb of the main clause (the clause that begins with the subject's name). Thus a semicolon must come before any other verb occurring in the headline: *John P. Manley, 88; Held Many Titles*. The semicolon may fall anywhere in a single-line head, but should occur at the end of a line in a multiple-line one. Online, each obituary must have *Dies* or *Dead* in the headline.

objet(s) d'art.

obscenity, vulgarity, profanity. The Times writes unblushingly about sexual behavior, science, health, crime and similar subjects, opening its report to any newsworthy detail, provided the approach is dignified and the vocabulary clinical rather than coarse. In these situations, writers and editors avoid evasiveness and euphemism, which would be a disservice to readers who need to understand issues.

But The Times very rarely publishes obscene words, and it maintains a steep threshold for vulgar ones. In part the concern is for the news report's welcome in classrooms and on breakfast tables in diverse communities nationwide. But there is a larger concern. The Times differentiates itself by taking a stand for civility in public discourse, sometimes at an acknowledged cost in the vividness of an article or two, and sometimes at the price of submitting to gibes.

The responsibility for maintaining The Times's tone and avoiding obscenity and vulgarity begins with the writer. But if the writer and the original editor perceive a compelling argument for an exception, a discussion with the news desk or the standards editor is mandatory.

If the precise nature of an obscenity, vulgarity or other offensive expression is essential to the reader's understanding of a newsworthy event — not merely to convey color or emotion — editors should consider using the term or a close paraphrase; readers should not be left uninformed or baffled about the nature of a significant controversy. In such cases, a single reference is generally enough to provide the information. (A similar standard applies to reporting of strongly offensive racial or other slurs.)

If, for example, a high-ranking government official uses a strong vulgarity to address a political rival in a public setting, readers may need to know the exact words to assess the behavior. By contrast, to convey a profile subject's penchant for vulgar language, a general description will invariably suffice. The argument that reproducing a vulgar expression is necessary to convey atmosphere or intensity of feeling is not compelling.

The use of strong vulgarity in the name of a website, business, book or movie does not compel The Times to repeat it. Such blunt efforts to grab attention, while increasingly common, need not dictate The Times's standards. If necessary, describe or paraphrase the name.

Do not use initial letters followed by dashes or asterisks as a thin disguise for a vulgarism. Instead, in most cases, offer a general description: *a vulgar expression; a crude epithet; a vulgar sexual term*. If more specificity is needed for comprehension, use a straightforward description or paraphrase: *He used a crude term in place of "stuff"*; *She uttered a vulgar equivalent for "nonsense"*; *He used an offensive term for female genitalia*. Avoid overly coy hints like *It rhymes with....*

Finally, editors may permit *[expletive]* or *[epithet]* in a quotation. (Note that the two terms are not synonymous; see epithet, expletive. And omit *deleted* because it is obvious.)

Profanity in its milder forms (*hells, damns* and, far less acceptable, religious oaths) may be approved by editors in a wider range of circumstances. But the reason should still be clear and the rationing stringent. While any single *hell* or *damn* may seem trivial, The Times's thoughtful, civil tone will be diminished if the report is peppered with such language.

Standards are the same for articles online and in print. Language used by subjects in videos, however, may require special consideration, since tools like paraphrasing are unavailable. Beeping may be used where *[expletive]* would be allowed in a written quotation. In rare cases — for example, video of soldiers under fire — editors may opt to retain a strong vulgarism, judging that beeping or other devices would be inappropriate to the situation. Such exceptions should be discussed with the news desk or a masthead editor. Consider an advisory note to viewers if a video includes particularly offensive or upsetting material.

Links are sometimes permissible to material elsewhere online that includes language The Times itself would avoid; readers understand that other publications have different standards. But editors should be judicious, carefully weighing the importance of the linked material and the level of offensiveness. Consider an advisory note to readers about the nature of the linked material. Links to strongly offensive material, including pornography or racist screeds, should be avoided even if the material figures in a news article. See link.

observer(s). Attentive readers have come to suspect *observer(s)* of being a mask for *reporter(s)*. So when *reporter* is not meant, use a more specific and convincing phrase. When reporter *is* meant, say so outright. (The term is suitable, though, in official designations like *election observers* and *truce observers*.)

Occupational Safety and Health Administration. In headlines and in later references, *OSHA*.

o'clock. In cap-and-lowercase headlines and titles, make it *O'Clock*.

Oct. for October before numerals (*Oct. 12*) or in charts and tables.

octet (music). See quartet and trio.

octopus. The plural is *octopuses*.

odd(-), (-)odd. Most compounds formed with *odd* as a prefix are hyphenated, but a few are two words: odd-looking, odd lot (n.), odd-lot (adj.), odd-numbered.

Compounds formed with *odd* as a suffix to a number are hyphenated: 20-odd, 200-odd.

O.E.C.D. for the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development.

oenophile.

of. Generally, phrases connected by *of* sound most natural when they are intact. *The company completed the conversion to electricity of its heating system* is not nearly so smooth as *The company completed the conversion of its heating system to electricity*. Also: *died of a heart attack on Thursday*, not *died on Thursday of a heart attack*.

Omit *of* after a modifier that is followed by *a* or *an*: *so big of a deal* is regional dialect and should be changed to *so big a deal*. And write *so sweet an apple*, not *so sweet of an apple*.

off(-), (-)off. Most compounds formed with *off* as a prefix are hyphenated, but some are solid and some are two words: offbeat, off-center, off-color (adj., before a noun), offhand, off-key (adj., before a noun), off key (adj., after a noun, and adv.) off-limits (adj., before a noun), off limits (adj., after a noun), off-line (adj.), off-putting, off-road, off-season (n., adj. and adv.), offset, offshoot, offshore, offside, offspring, offstage, off-the-shelf, off-track.

Compounds formed with *off* as a suffix are sometimes solid, sometimes hyphenated and sometimes two words: blastoff (n.), blast off (v.), cutoff, playoff, runoff, sell-off, send-off, standoff, stop-off, takeoff (all n.). Also see lay off, layoff; Off Broadway, Off Off Broadway.

off again on again. Hyphenate when the phrase precedes a noun: *the off-again-on-again decision*. Otherwise, omit all punctuation: *the plan was off again on again*.

Off Broadway, Off Off Broadway. When *Off* helps to form an adjective or a noun in these terms, it is capitalized: *He is directing an Off Broadway* (or *Off Off Broadway*) *play; A survey showed that Off Broadway* (or *Off Off Broadway*) *was flourishing*. But when *off* helps to form an adverb, it is lowercased: *The play was produced off Broadway; The play was produced off Off Broadway*.

office(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *office* are one word: officeholder, office hours, officeseeker.

Also: *office boy* and *office girl*, but not in references to adults.

Office of Management and Budget; *the budget office*. And very rarely, mainly in quotations: *O.M.B.*

officer. See police officer.

off limits. Hyphenate the phrase when it precedes the noun it modifies, but not otherwise: *an off-limits club near the naval base; the bar was also off limits*.

oh. See O, oh.

O. Henry (not *O'Henry*) for the pen name of the short-story writer William Sydney Porter.

Ohio. Do not abbreviate, even after the names of cities, towns and counties.

oil(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *oil* are two words: oil burner, oil can, oilcloth, oil color, oil field, oil painting, oil shale, oilskin, oil slick, oilstove, oil well.

Also: *oilman*, but general references are to *oil executive* or *oil producer*.

O.K., not *okay*. Reserve the term (adv., adj. and interj.) for features or informal contexts. Do not use *O.K.* as a verb except in a direct quotation. (*O.K.'s; O.K.'d; O.K.'ing*).

Oklahoma. Abbreviate as *Okla.* after the names of cities, towns and counties.

old(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *old* are hyphenated: old age, old-boy (adj.), old-fashioned, old-school (adj.), Old South, old-timer, Old World.

Old City. The walled part of Jerusalem.

old master(s), lowercased, for the great artists before the 18th century.

Old Testament.

Old World.

Olympic Games; *the Games*.

on again off again. Hyphenate when the phrase precedes a noun: *the on-again-off-again decision*. Otherwise, omit all punctuation: *the plan was on again off again*.

one(-). Some compounds formed with *one* are one word, some are hyphenated and some are two words: one-liner, one-on-one (adj., before a noun), one on one (adv.), one-piece (adj.), oneself, one-shot, one-sided, one-to-one (adj., before a noun), one to one (adv.), one-way. See fractions and onetime, onetime.

one another, each other. Two people look at *each other;* more than two look at *one another*.

one of the. *One of the reasons for her resignation* is wordy. Make it *a reason* (or *one reason*) *for her resignation*. And note the plural verb in a construction like *She is one of the people who love the Yankees*. The test is to reverse the sentence: *Of the people who love the Yankees, she is one*. The subject is *people*, not *one*.

one person one vote. Hyphenate when the phrase serves as a modifier before a noun: *the one-person-one-vote rule*. Otherwise, omit all punctuation: *the principle of one person one vote*. Avoid *one man one vote*.

onetime, onetime. *Onetime* means former, or at some time in the past. *Onetime* means just once.

ongoing is bureaucratic. Delete it, or substitute one of its many synonyms: *continuing, developing, proceeding, etc.*

on hold, applied to a delay in anything except a telephone call, is trite.

on line, in line. Few besides New Yorkers stand or wait *on line*. In most of the English-speaking world, people stand *in line*. Use that wording.

online. Make it a solid compound in all references to electronic connections. By extension, the spelling also applies to places like factories (*The plant went online in*

August), but that use is usually jargon.

only. Place it next to the word it modifies. *Only she tasted the rutabaga* means that no one else did. *She tasted only the rutabaga* means that she tasted nothing else. *She only tasted the rutabaga* means that she did not devour the rutabaga; she merely nibbled at it.

Idiom demands some exceptions. *It can only get worse*, for example, is smoother and more conversational than *It can get only worse*. And in the compressed language of headlines, the meaning of *only* will probably be unclear if *the* or *a* or *an* has been omitted alongside it (*Court Finds Dann Only Conspirator*). Replace *only* with a word like *mere, sole, lone* or *alone*. Also see not only ... but also.

onstage (adj. and adv.).

Ontario (Canadian province). Do not abbreviate after the names of cities and towns, even in datelines.

Op Art. Capitalize when referring to the movement in abstract painting, begun in the 1960s, that was characterized by optical illusion or confusion. See arts terminology.

OPEC for the Organization of the Petroleum Exporting Countries. Also, less often mentioned: *Oapec*, for the Organization of Arab Petroleum Exporting Countries.

Op-Ed. Uppercase for The Times's, lowercase for others'. In all cases, *page* is lowercase.

open(-). Some compounds formed with *open* are one word, some are hyphenated and a few are two words: open admissions, open air (n.), open-air (adj.), open-and-shut, open-door (adj.), open-ended, open-eyed, open-faced, open-field (adj.), openhanded, openheart surgery, openhearted, open house, open-minded, open shop, open stock, openwork.

operas. Capitalize opera titles and use quotation marks: *"Aida" is an opera by Verdi*. Do not use quotation marks around the names of characters: *Aida, Carmen, Violetta, Mimì, etc.* Also: *opéra bouffe; Opéra-Comique; operagoer*.

opera singer. More specific identification is preferred when available: *tenor; soprano; baritone; etc.*

operations. See military operations.

ophthalmologist, ophthalmology. Like eyeglass lenses, the *h*'s and *l*'s in each word come in pairs.

opinion polls. In general, consult with the polling department to ensure the proper use of polls. Articles about the findings of a public opinion poll should name the person or group who conducted it, name the sponsor and, if necessary, explain the sponsor's interest in the subject of the poll. The article should also give the number of people surveyed, the dates of the survey and the procedures used (whether interviews were conducted by mail, by telephone or in person). If the poll studied some group other than the general population — registered voters, say, or married adults — the report should say how the respondents were chosen.

The article should give the probable margin of sampling error for a sample of the size used in the poll, and to aid comprehension it should be explained in a sentence like this: *The margin of sampling error for a sample of this size is plus or minus five percentage points, so differences of less than that amount are statistically insignificant*. Both the poll's findings and the margin of error should be rounded to the nearest whole percentage point because results rendered to the tenth of a point suggest an impossible degree of precision.

The terms *opinion poll, poll, survey, opinion sample* and *cross section* should be limited to scientific soundings of opinion. They should not be applied to roundups of comment or interviews of people in the street. Indeed, extensive articles of that kind should include a cautionary note that the interviews are not a scientific sampling and that only limited conclusions can be drawn from them.

Also see New York Times polls.

opposition (political). Lowercase, even when referring to a formally designated political faction in a foreign country: *The Conservative opposition was divided; The opposition party failed again*.

Opus (music). In a title, abbreviate and capitalize *Opus* and enclose the reference in parentheses: *Chopin's Rondo in E flat (Op. 16)*. But: *His Opus 16 is moving*. A few composers are given specialized catalog designations in place of *opus*. For Mozart, use the Köchel listing (*K. 145*), for Schubert the Deutsch listing (*D. 93*) and for Bach the Bach Werke Verzeichnis number (*BWV 71*). See music.

oral, verbal. Use *oral* to mean spoken. *Verbal* applies to spoken or written words.

oratory means skill or eloquence in public speaking, not merely *statements, speeches* or *talks*. Also see rhetoric.

orbit can be used as a verb with or without a direct object: *The United States orbited a weather satellite; The satellite orbited*.

order of magnitude. In mathematics, an *order of magnitude* means multiplication by 10; several *orders of magnitude* means a quantity multiplied by hundreds or thousands. As a way of saying something has increased a great deal, it has become a cliché.

Oregon. Abbreviate as *Ore*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

organdy.

organization names. Generally render a name as the organization does; consult the group's website. But as in company names, avoid fanciful use of punctuation or other nonalphabetic characters, and limit the use of capitals. See company and corporation names.

Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development. In headlines and in later references: *O.E.C.D*.

Organization of American States, *the organization*. In headlines and, sparingly, in later references: *O.A.S*.

Organization of the Petroleum Exporting Countries. In headlines and in later references, *OPEC*. Also, less often mentioned: the Organization of Arab Petroleum Exporting Countries, or *Oapec* (pronounced WAH-peck).

Orient, Oriental. The words are capitalized in references to Asia, but are outdated in geographical references; generally use *Asian* or another, more specific term. (See

Asian-American.) Also: *Oriental rug*.

ORT, Women's American. In later references, *ORT*, without *the*. (*ORT* stands for *Organization for Rehabilitation Through Training*.)

orthodontics, not *orthodontia*, for the branch of dentistry that specializes in repairing irregularities of the teeth. And *orthodontic treatment* for its work.

Orthodox Judaism. Its houses of worship are synagogues, not temples. *Ultra-Orthodox* may be used, but with care, in general reference to strictly observant Jews such as the Hasidim.

OSHA for the Occupational Safety and Health Administration.

Oswego, Owego. *Oswego* is in Oswego County, N.Y. *Owego* is in Tioga County, N.Y.

OTB for the Off-Track Betting Corporation.

out(-), (-)out. Most but not all compounds formed with *out* as a prefix are one word: out-and-out, outback, outbid, outboard, outbound, outbuilding, outclass, outclimb, outcry, outdated, outdistance, outdo, outdoor, outfield, outflank, outfox, outgoing, outgrow, outguess, outhouse, outmaneuver, out-of-date, out-of-doors (adj.), out-of-pocket, out-of-the-way, outpatient, outrigger, outrun, outscore, outspoken, outtake(s).

Most but not all compounds formed with *out* as a suffix are one word: dropout, fade-out, fallout, hide-out, pullout, timeout, walkout (all n. only).

outage is jargon and a euphemism for *failure, shutdown* or *cutoff* (of electricity or water, for example). Use the simpler words.

outbox, inbox. No hyphens.

outer boroughs. Except in quotations, avoid using this Manhattan-centric term. Use phrases like *other boroughs* or *boroughs outside Manhattan*, or simply name the boroughs in question.

outgoing. For clarity, the modifier is best reserved for a personality trait, meaning genial. In the sense of leaving office, use *departing* instead.

Oval Office (in the White House).

over, more than. Both constructions are acceptable in estimates, regardless of whether the object is countable; *over half of voters; over 25 years; more than a million votes; more than 60 percent*. But note that context and idiom often dictate which term is used: *more than one opinion; people over 65; just over a year*.

over(-), (-)over. Most but not all compounds formed with *over* as a prefix are one word: overabundant, overact, overarching, overbearing, overcharge, overcompensate, overcrowd, overdose, overdraft, overdrive, overexcitable, overexpand, overextend, overindulgence, overproduction, overprompt, overreach, overreact, overripe, oversensitive, over-the-counter (adj. only), over the counter (adv.), overtime.

Most but not all compounds formed with *over* as a suffix are one word: carry-over, changeover, hangover, holdover, layover, makeover (all n.); make over (v.); takeover (n.); take over (v.); turnover (n.); turn over (v.); walkover. Also see over all, overall, overalls and roll over, rollover.

over age, overage, overage. *Over age* means too old. When it precedes what it modifies, hyphenate it: *overage applicants*. Use *overage* to mean excess or surplus.

over all, overall, overalls. Use *overall* as an adjective: *overall policy*. But use two words in phrases like these: *Over all, the Democrats made gains; The Senate's political coloration will be little changed over all*. The bibbed trousers with tool pockets are *overalls*.

overture. Capitalize in a title: *Beethoven's "Egmont" Overture*. But: *a Beethoven overture*. Also capitalize when the overture is designated by its source: *the Overture to* (not *of*) *"La Gazza Ladra," by Rossini*.

oxford. The cloth and the shoes.

oxford blue. The color. (But someone who has, say, rowed for the university is an Oxford Blue.)

oxford gray.

Oxonian(s). The people of Oxford, England, or students and graduates of Oxford University. But phrases using *of Oxford* are usually less stodgy.

P

pablum. Capitalized, *Pablum* is a trademark for infant cereal. Lowercased, *pablum* means anything oversimplified or bland.

Pacific. The actual shoreline of the Pacific Ocean is *the Pacific coast;* the region of the United States lying along the shoreline is *the Pacific Coast* or *the West Coast*. Also: *Pacific Coast States; Pacific States; Pacific Northwest; North Pacific; South Pacific*.

Pacific Daylight Time, Pacific Standard Time (P.D.T., P.S.T.). See time.

page numbers. Capitalize them as proper names: *Page A1; Page A14; Page B1; Page 112; Pages A18-20*. Also: *A Page 1 article*, but *the third page* and *the front page*. In charts, diagrams and tables, abbreviations may be used: *P. 5; Pp. 19*, *20 and 21; Pp. 19-21*. Also: *321 pp*. See numbered expressions.

paintings. Use quotation marks for their titles and capitalize the principal words.

palate (part of the mouth), **palette** (an artist's paint board), **pallet** (a stacking platform).

Palestine Liberation Organization (P.L.O.). Not *Palestinian*.

Palisade, Palisades. *The Palisades* (overlooking the Hudson River); *Palisades* (New York); *Palisades Interstate Parkway; Palisades Park* (New Jersey); *Palisade Avenue* (in the Bronx and several places in New Jersey); *Pacific Palisades* (California).

pallbearer.

Pan(-). It is generally hyphenated: Pan-African; Pan-American (in the general sense); Pan-German; Pan-Slavic; Pan-American Games; Pan-American Highway.

But: *the Pan American Union*.

paneled.

pantsuit.

papal. Lowercase unless it is part of a name or title.

papal nuncio. *Bishop* (or *Archbishop*) *Lee E. Lamm; the papal nuncio; the nuncio*. A nuncio is a Roman Catholic diplomat accredited by the pope to a foreign government with which the Vatican has diplomatic relations. An apostolic delegate is the papal envoy to the church or the hierarchy in a country without a treaty.

paparazzi. The singular, pretentious in English writing, is *paparazzo*.

paper(-). Some compounds formed with *paper* are one word, some are hyphenated and some are two words: paperback, paperbacked, paperbound, paper carrier, paper clip, paper cutter, paperhanger, paperweight, paperwork.

papier-mâché.

paradox means a statement that seems contradictory or impossible but may in fact be true: *Water, water everywhere, nor any drop to drink*. Also see irony.

paragraph numbers. Capitalize them as proper names: *Paragraph 3; Paragraph 16*. But: *the third paragraph*. See numbered expressions.

parallel (latitude). See latitude and longitude.

paralleled, paralleling.

pardon, amnesty, clemency. A *pardon* is a release from punishment or forgiveness of an offense, granted to an individual. An *amnesty* is a general pardon, usually for political offenses, granted to a group. *Clemency* is leniency or mercy shown by someone in power.

parentheses. In general, parentheses enclose an explanation or clarifying material: *The painting sold for £100 ($164)*. Or: *Cardinal Agneau cited an encyclical*, *"Pacem in Terris" ("Peace on Earth").*

Do not use parentheses, though, if the inserted clarification is in a direct quotation, or in a verbatim text, transcript or excerpts. In that case, use brackets.

Use parentheses in testimony when describing an action that is not part of the dialogue: *Q. Will you kindly point out the figures. (Handing the witness a list.)*

For special effect, a nickname may appear in parentheses within a full name: *Leslie (Lamb Chops) Arniotis*. But in general resist that device because of its melodramatic gangster-film overtones. See personal names and nicknames.

In a terse list or table of proper names, locations may be clarified this way: *The Sarasota (Fla.) Herald-Tribune, The Spartanburg (S.C.) Herald-Journal and The Wilmington (N.C.) Morning Star*. But in ordinary copy, fluid phrasing is preferred: *The Wilmington Morning Star, in North Carolina*. Use commas instead of parentheses when the phrase being interrupted is not a proper name: *a Springfield, Mass., hospital*. Smoother: *a hospital in Springfield, Mass*. Also see comma and newspaper names.

PUNCTUATION WITH PARENTHESES

A period (or question mark or exclamation point) may occur inside or outside a closing parenthesis, depending on the surrounding structure.

If the passage in parentheses falls entirely within another sentence, put the sentence-ending punctuation *outside* the parentheses: *She did not identify the college (it could have been Bowdoin)*.

When parentheses surround an entire sentence or series of sentences, the sentence-ending punctuation goes *inside* the closing parenthesis: *She did not specify the college. (It was Claremont. Her audience knew that.)*

A comma, a colon or a semicolon never directly precedes an opening or closing parenthesis: *What the agency needs, the mayor said (as he had said before), is $14 million. She cried for help (with no one listening); it was too late. Here is what she shouted (according to witnesses): "I'm falling!"*

Either a dash or parentheses, but not both together, can signify an aside, or an abrupt change in the direction of a sentence.

parenthetical attribution. When attribution is inserted in midsentence, it must be truly parenthetical – that is, set off by commas at both ends. Otherwise ambiguity or error results: *In Idaho the Forest Service announced that two hikers were missing*. (The announcing could have taken place anywhere, but *in Idaho* is meant to tell where the hikers are missing.) The phrase *the Forest Service announced* is known as a parenthesis, and it does not modify what follows or govern the tense of the verb later in the sentence. Surround it with punctuation: *In Idaho, the Forest Service announced, two hikers are missing*.

Another example: *While the building was being renovated, the contractor said that the document had been found in a closet*. It should read: *While the building was being renovated, the contractor said, the document was found in a closet*.

Overlooking a parenthesis may result in ambiguity: *In 1973 the witness testified he never saw the defendant*. Note the difference commas can make: *In 1973, the witness testified, he never saw the defendant*.

parenting. The term can sometimes suggest social service jargon; consider alternatives like *raising children, parenthood* or *being a parent*.

parimutuels (n.), **parimutuel** (adj.).

parkway. Capitalize in names: *Northern State Parkway; Garden State Parkway; Taconic State Parkway*. But: *the parkway*.

parley is a stilted word rarely seen except in headlines. Use conversational alternatives like *talks, meeting* or *conference* instead.

Parliament. Capitalize when referring to a legislature so named or when substituting the term for an equivalent foreign proper name. Also: *member of Parliament*. See legislative bodies.

parliamentarian. An expert on parliamentary procedure. Do not use to mean a member of a parliament.

parliamentary.

parole, probation. *Parole* is a release, on the condition of good behavior, before a prisoner's sentence is complete. It is granted by a parole board, which can revoke it. *Probation* is the suspension of the sentence of a person who has been convicted but not yet jailed. It is granted by a judge on the condition of good behavior. Also see amnesty, clemency, pardon.

partially. To mean *in part*, use the shorter and simpler *partly*.

participles as nouns. Beware of a present participle (the *ing* form of a verb) when it directly follows a noun or a pronoun. Look twice at the meaning of the phrase, because the participle often plays the role of a noun in such a sentence. And when that happens, the previous word should be possessive (*his, her, their, Ms. Lamm's*). Some examples:

The teachers complained about the principal's missing the meeting. (It was the *missing* they complained about, not the principal. Thus the possessive.)

The doctors advise against pregnant women's drinking. (Their advice is against *drinking*, not against women: so it is not *against pregnant women drinking*.)

Sometimes a sentence works either way: *Terry watched the biplane landing* and *Terry watched the biplane's landing* mean roughly the same thing. And sometimes the change to a possessive is awkward, and the sentence is best rephrased slightly. Thus:

- To be avoided: *The police tried to prevent him jumping*.
- Corrected but stilted: *The police tried to prevent his jumping*.
- Corrected and tidier: *The police tried to prevent him from jumping*.

Participles that play the noun role are known as *gerunds*. When preceded by a noun that ought to be possessive but is not, a gerund is known as a *fused participle*.

To test whether a verb is behaving as a gerund, mentally substitute a noun for it: the principal's *absence;* pregnant women's *health habits;* prevent his *leap*. In each case, the substituted noun fits, meaning that the participle needs to follow a possessive.

particles. For the use of *de, du, di, da, le, la, van, von, ter*, etc., see personal names and nicknames.

partner (n.). It is a suitable term for an unmarried companion of the same sex or the opposite one. But if the context allows misreading to mean a business partnership, use companion instead. Also see lover and boyfriend, girlfriend.

partner (v.). Despite the contrived sound of many nouns forced into service as verbs, *partner* is an established ballet term: *He partnered her in the pas de deux*. And *they partnered in "Giselle."* For business and civic alliances, though, use phrases like *teamed up* or *formed a partnership*.

part time (n. and adv.), **part-time** (adj.).

partway.

party (political). Capitalize in names: *Republican Party; Democratic Party; Conservative Party; Liberal Party; Labor Party; etc.* But: *the party; the parties*. Ordinarily translate the names of foreign political parties. (For an exception, see Quebecer, Québécois.)

party (social event). A party may be *given, held, organized* or *sponsored*. But avoid the colloquial *thrown;* it is trite. Also resist *party* as a verb except in light or joking contexts (*they partied all night and ached all day*).

party labels, for members of Congress or state legislatures are given this way: *Senator Lee A. Daan, Republican of New York; Representative Terry E. Bildots, Democrat of Utah; Assemblyman Hilary C. Agnello, Democrat of Buffalo*. Also: *a Utah Democrat*. If a legislator has been elected with the support of two parties: *State Senator Pat J. Miel, Conservative-Republican of Rochester*. For a district in the New York metropolitan area, specify the section or county: *Representative Lindsay R. Baranek, Democrat of Brooklyn* (or *Newark* or *the South Bronx*, etc.).

After a legislator has been mentioned by name, do not use *the Missouri Democrat* as a disconnected form of later reference; instead, relate the identity to the name explicitly (*Ms. Lamm, a Missouri Democrat, added* ...). See indirection.

passé.

passenger-mile.

passer(s)-by.

Passover.

pastor. This term designates the position of a Roman Catholic priest who leads a parish or of a Lutheran or Baptist minister who leads a congregation. In a first reference, it follows the name.

For a Catholic, it is used this way: *the Rev. Lynn A. Miel, pastor of SS. Peter and Paul Roman Catholic Church; Father Miel; the pastor* or *the priest*.

For a Lutheran, it is *the Rev. Morgan E. Karitsa, pastor of Immanuel Lutheran Church;* then ordinarily *Pastor Karitsa; the pastor;* or *the minister*. (Some Baptists and other Protestants also use that style.) If a Lutheran minister does not have a congregation, serving instead as a seminarian or a denominational executive, later references are to *Mr., Ms., Miss* or *Mrs.*, or to *Dr.*, for a minister with an earned doctorate.

For other churches, use *pastor* the way *minister* or *priest* is used: *the Rev. Hilary T. Dann, pastor of*, etc., or *He had been their pastor*. But the Episcopal Church uses *rector*. Also see Father; minister; Rev.

Patchin Place (in Greenwich Village), not *Patchen*.

Patchogue (in Suffolk County, N.Y.).

pâté. Also: *pâté de foie gras*. But *pâte* (without the final accent) is the word for pastry or pasta: *pâte à choux; pâte brisée*.

patent. See copyright, patent.

Paterson (N.J.), **Patterson** (N.Y.).

PATH for Port Authority Trans-Hudson, the railroad that connects New Jersey and Manhattan under the Hudson River.

patriarch. In Eastern Orthodox churches and the Ethiopian Orthodox Church, this title is given to some high-ranking bishops. Capitalize it only before a name. (Sometimes an Orthodox prelate is known by a first name only.) Also see Eastern Orthodoxy and metropolitan.

Patriots' Day.

patrolled, patrolling.

patrolman. For those law enforcement agencies that still use the title: *Patrolman Lee T. Lam; Patrolman Lam; the patrolman; the police officer*. Few agencies use the title *Patrolwoman*. But note that in many law enforcement agencies, the title is now *Patrol Officer*. In New York City, the rank is Police Officer. Also see New York Police Department.

pawn(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *pawn* are one word: pawnbroker, pawnshop, pawn ticket.

pay(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *pay* are one word: pay-as-you-go (n. and adj.), paycheck, payday, payload, paymaster, pay off (v.), payoff (n.), payout, pay phone, payroll.

PBS for the Public Broadcasting Service. It does not produce programs and is not a network. It is a nonprofit membership organization of public television stations, for which it distributes programming and provides other support. The members include WNET, Channel 13, in New York.

PC, for personal computer. The plural is *PCs*. See plurals.

PDF, in all references, for the portable document format created by Adobe Systems. Use the full name only if it is relevant; *document* is often sufficient. When linking to a document that uses the format, include (*PDF*) in the tooltip with the link, not in body text.

P.D.T., P.S.T. for Pacific Daylight Time and Pacific Standard Time. See time.

peace(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *peace* are one word: peace conference, Peace Corps, peacekeeper, peacekeeping, peacelike, peacemaker, peacemaking, peacetime.

peasant carries differing overtones in various parts of the world. In Asia and parts of rural Europe, subsistence farmers and farm laborers apply the label to themselves matter-of-factly and sometimes with pride; Chinese speak of "rich peasants" and "poor peasants." In articles about industrialized societies, though, the word suggests primitiveness and sounds disparaging; phrases like *poor farmer* or *farm laborer* are preferable.

peccadillo(es).

pedal (what bicyclists and pianists do), **peddle** (what shopkeepers do).

peers. A peer is a member of one of the five degrees of British nobility: baron; viscount; earl; marquess; duke. (A baronet or a knight, called Sir, is not a peer.) A peer's son or daughter bears a courtesy title but is not a peer. For example: *the Duke of Marlborough*, a peer; *the Marquess of Blandford*, his son; *the Earl of Sunderland*, his grandson.

To distinguish between peers of the same name, use the full title or territorial designation (capitalized as a full name): *Viscount Alexander of Hillsborough* and *Earl Alexander of Tunis; Viscount Alexander* and *Earl Alexander*. When the names are not juxtaposed, each may be called *Lord Alexander* in later references.

If someone with a title is primarily known for achievements in another field — a pop star, business leader or politician, for example — the title should generally be avoided unless specifically relevant to the context. Use an ordinary courtesy title instead: *Mr. Lloyd Webber*, not *Lord Lloyd Webber*, on second reference to the composer Andrew Lloyd Webber.

A peer who renounces an inherited title (to serve in the House of Commons, for example) will be known by the family name: *Tony Benn* (formerly Viscount Stansgate); *Mr. Benn*.

Some Britons are designated life peers, with the title *baron* or *baroness*. A life peer sits in the House of Lords, but the title is not inheritable. An example was Baroness Spencer-Churchill, the widow of Sir Winston Churchill.

Pekingese (the dog).

Peking man (anthropological); not changed to *Beijing*.

Peking University.

PEN is an international association of editors and writers devoted to defending freedom of expression. The name is an acronym for *poets, playwrights, essayists, editors and novelists*. The PEN American Center is one of 130 national groups that compose International PEN.

penal code.

pence. See currencies.

pendant (n.), **pendent** (adj.).

Pennsylvania. Abbreviate as *Pa*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

Pennsylvania Station (in New York and in Newark); *Penn Station; the station*.

pennywhistle.

Pentecostal churches are Protestant denominations. Many stress visible manifestations of the Holy Spirit, like speaking in tongues or healing. Note the spelling: not *Pentacostal*.

people, person. Use *people* as the plural of *person*. Allow *persons* in letters to the editor, in untranslated texts, in direct quotations and in a few established idioms like *displaced persons* and *missing persons bureau*.

people of color. Except in direct quotations, the expression is too self-conscious for the news columns. Substitute a term like *minorities* or, better, refer to specific ethnic groups — *black and Hispanic authors*, for example. Also see ethnicity.

people's democracy, people's republic. Because these expressions convey political judgments, use the shorter forms of country names instead: *China*, for example, rather than *People's Republic of China*. In lowercase contexts, avoid the phrases except in direct quotations or in citing countries' official characterizations of themselves.

percent, percentage. *Percent* is one word. The preceding number is always expressed in figures (except when it begins a sentence): *80 percent; 8 percent; one-half of 1 percent; four-fifths of 1 percent; 0.5 percent*. But: *five percentage points; 12 percentage points*. The symbol % may be used with a figure in headlines, tables and charts: *5% Raise; 93%*. Do not use the abbreviation *pct*.

Do not confuse *percent* and *percentage point*: If an interest rate rises to 11 percent from 10 percent, the increase is one *percentage point*, but 10 *percent*. Similarly, a decline in rates to 7.5 percent from 10 percent is a drop of two and a half *percentage* *points*, but 25 *percent*. Ordinarily spell out the number of *percentage points*, up to nine.

No drop or decline can exceed 100 percent: once 100 percent is gone, nothing remains to fall.

Be wary of false precision in calculating percentages. Taking a percentage beyond the decimal point is misleading if one number in the calculation is an estimate or padded with many zeros. For example, when a company reports that its net income rose to $685 million from $545 million, describing the increase as 25.7 percent implies a precision that cannot be realized because both of the original numbers are approximations.

Note how the change in income is expressed in the previous sentence: Despite the apparent illogic, give the "to" figure before the "from" figure, to prevent hasty misreading of the difference as a range (that is, as *an increase somewhere between $545 million and $685 million*).

Successive percentage changes cannot simply be added together to determine an overall change. For example, a three-year labor contract that specifies annual pay increases of 3 percent, 3 percent and 4 percent will produce a cumulative increase (that is, a compounded one) greater than 10 percent. If the original base pay is $100 a week, the first increase will be $3, creating a base of $103. The second increase will be $3.09 (3 percent of $103), bringing the base to $106.09. The last increase will be $4.24 (4 percent of $106.09), bringing the base to $110.33 and the cumulative change to 10.3 percent.

perigee. The lowest altitude of an orbiting space vehicle or other object in relation to the Earth. *Perigee* also has the general meaning of the lowest or nearest point. Its opposite is *apogee*, the highest or farthest point.

period. The best thing about a period is that it ends a sentence. A period can often mean two readable sentences instead of a single cumbersome one, especially in a lead paragraph.

Uses of the period are shown in entries throughout this manual. See especially abbreviations. For the placement of a period alongside other punctuation, see parentheses and quotation marks.

Do not use a period after a sum of money in dollars without cents (*$50*, not *$50.*), except at the end of a sentence, and do not use a period with parentheses in a sequence designation like (*1*) or (*a*).

periodical names. See publication names.

periodontics (not *periodontia*), for the branch of dentistry that specializes in the bone and tissue around the teeth. And *periodontal treatment* for the work performed by periodontists.

perk, once considered informal, is acceptable as a shortened form of *perquisite*.

permanent representative. That is the official phrase for a delegation chief at an international organization or conference, but it defies conversational usage because "permanent" representatives inevitably prove impermanent. Use delegate and chief delegate instead (with the preposition *to*), for those attending temporary or periodic meetings. Use representative and chief representative (with the preposition *at*) for those assigned to permanent bodies. Also use ambassador when a delegate or representative holds that personal rank.

permissible.

persecution (oppression), **prosecution** (legal effort toward a criminal conviction).

Persia is the former name of Iran. Use it only in historical or biblical references.

Persian lamb, Persian rug.

(-)person. Find conversational substitutes for self-conscious coinages like *assemblyperson, chairperson, councilperson, foreperson, newsperson* and *salesperson*. See assemblyman, assemblywoman; businessman, businesswoman; chairman, chairwoman; congressman, congresswoman; councilman, councilwoman; men and women.

personal names and nicknames. The normal first reference is a first name, middle initial and surname, with a title if warranted (but not *Ms., Miss, Mrs.* or *Mr.*, until later references). If a name serves unavoidably as a modifier, fluid style favors omitting the middle initial and, when possible without confusion, omitting *Jr., Sr.*, etc.: *the Leslie Anyell faction*. And in a breezy conversational passage, a reference to well-known personalities should not bog down in middle initials or *Jr.* or *Sr.*

Use a nickname as the principal reference if a well-known figure wishes to be identified that way (*Jimmy Durante; Bill Clinton*). In such a case, the nickname takes no quotation marks or parentheses. But if the nickname is provided only as a background or occasional reference, find a graceful way to introduce it: *Mr. Lamm was known to his classmates as Dutch*. Resist this form: *Leigh (Dutch) Lamm*.

An exception may be made for organized-crime figures, whose nicknames are customarily shown this way: *Leslie (Racko) Lamm*. Note that this style means the bearer is popularly called *Racko Lamm*. If the surname is not spoken as part of the nickname, do not use the parenthetical style, which would be misleading. In other words, if Toby Agneau is known simply as Toby the Nose, do not write *Toby (the Nose) Agneau*. And since the style clearly implies unsavory ties, use these nicknames only when such ties are well established.

Except for unusual effect, do not use famous initials (*J.F.K., L.B.J., F.D.R.*, etc.) as a substitute for a name, even in a headline. Do not use abbreviations for given names (*Wm*. or *Thos*., for example), even if the bearers do.

The particles *de, du, di, da, le, la, van, von, ter*, etc., when used, are usually lowercased in foreign names (*Charles de Gaulle*) and capitalized in the names of United States citizens (*Martin Van Buren*). But follow individual preferences. (See du Pont, duPont, DuPont.) A lowercase particle remains lowercase when it appears in midsentence without a first name or title: *the de Gaulle legend*. Capitalize the particle when it begins a sentence or a headline.

Use *Jr.* and *Sr.* (without commas) for Junior and Senior in names: *Lee C. Berenich Jr.* (or *Sr.*). In bylines:

By LEE C. BERENICH Jr.

Also: *Lee C. Berenich IV* or *Lee C. Berenich 4th*, depending on individual preference. If the preference is not known, use Roman numerals.

In a listing with surnames printed first, the *Jr.* (or *Sr.*, or *IV*, etc.) comes last: *BERENICH, Lee C. Jr.*, not *BERENICH Jr., Lee C.*

Titles and ranks used with personal names are listed separately. Also see courtesy titles and initials in names.

persona non grata. If the expression is used, a translation is unnecessary and probably intrusive. But it is usually possible to substitute the less stuffy *declared unwelcome*.

personnel.

person, people. See people, person.

persuade, convince. *Convince* should be followed by an *of* phrase or a *that* clause: *She convinced the teacher of her ability; She convinced her sister that it was too late*. But *convince* cannot be followed by a *to* phrase; in such a case, *persuade* is required: *He persuaded his sister to take the day off*. (*Persuade* is more versatile than *convince* and can be followed by any of the three constructions.)

Pesach (the Hebrew for Passover). Use the English, except for special effect.

petit larceny, petty larceny. Use petit in direct quotations only; otherwise, make it *petty larceny*.

Petty Officer. *Petty Officer First Class* (or *Second* or *Third Class*) *Merrill S. Yagyonak; Petty Officer Yagyonak; the petty officer*. Also (capitalized only before a name): *Chief Petty Officer; Master Chief Petty Officer; Senior Chief Petty Officer*.

Pfc. *Chris R. Agneau; Private Agneau; the private*.

P.G.A. for the Professional Golfers Association (which uses no apostrophe in its name).

pharmacopoeia.

phases (numbered). Capitalize the names of phases in a program or course of action and use Arabic numerals: *Phase 1; Phase 2*.

Ph.D. for Doctor of Philosophy. Also see Dr.

phenomenon (sing.), **phenomena** (pl. only).

Philippine (adj.), **Philippine Islands** (pl.), **the Philippines** (n. for the country, always singular). Also see Filipino(s) and Filipino names.

Phnom Penh (the capital of Cambodia).

phony (adj. and n.). It is colloquial. These synonyms, among many others, are standard English: *counterfeit, fake, false, forged, forgery, fraud* and *sham*.

physician assistant, not *physician's assistant*, for a person licensed to practice medicine under the supervision of a physician.

pick(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *pick* are one word: pick-me-up, pickpocket, pickup (n. and adj.), pick up (v.).

picket (n. and v.). *Picketer* is also acceptable as a noun.

picnic, picnicking.

pièce de résistance.

piecemeal.

pied(s)-à-terre.

Pietà, without quotation marks, for an image or sculpture of the grieving Mary with the body of Jesus. Also see sculptures.

Pikes Peak.

pilsner, as the generic term for the type of beer.

PIN for personal identification number. Thus *PIN number* is redundant.

pinch-hitter, pinch-runner.

Ping-Pong is a trademark. The generic term is *table tennis*.

pinstripe(s).

pint. A pint equals 16 ounces, or half a quart.

pistols. See handguns.

Pittsburg (Kan. and Calif.), **Pittsburgh** (Pa.).

pixelated. Note the spelling of this word, which refers to the blurred or blocky appearance of digital images whose smallest components — pixels — are enlarged. (And note that a similarly spelled word, *pixilated*, refers to enchantment by fairies. Preserve the distinction.)

pizazz.

Place. Spell out and capitalize in ordinary text when part of a name: *Agnello Place*. The abbreviation (*Agnello Pl.*) may be used in headlines, charts, tables and maps.

place-kick (n., v., adj.), **place-kicker**.

place names. See geographic names.

plainclothes. *Plainclothes officer*, but *officer in plain clothes*.

plaque.

plaster of paris.

Plattsburgh (in New York).

play(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *play* are one word: playback, playbill (and *Playbill*, magazine title), playbook, playboy, play-by-play (adj.), playgoer, playground, playhouse, playmaker, playmate, playoff (n.), playpen, playroom, playwright.

plays and revues. In news and review copy, use quotation marks for their titles and capitalize the principal words.

P.L.C. for public limited company. See company and corporation names.

plea bargain (n.), **plea-bargain** (v.), **plea bargaining** (n.), **plea-bargaining** (adj.). The verb takes no direct object: *The lawyer advised her client to plea-bargain*. But never *The lawyer plea-bargained the case*.

plead. The past tense is *pleaded*, not *plead* or *pled*.

plebeian.

plethora means not just a lot but an excess, too much or too many.

Plexiglas is a trademark, but *plexiglass* is not.

P.L.O. for the Palestine Liberation Organization (not *Palestinian*).

plow (not *plough*).

ploy. Use this word with caution; it often suggests deviousness.

plurals. Form the plurals of most common nouns by adding *s*: *hammers; saws; pencils; pens*. Form the plural of a word ending in a soft *ch* by adding *es*: *churches*. But after a hard *ch*, add only *s*: *monarchs*.

For some words ending in *f*, simply add *s*: *briefs; goofs; reefs; roofs*. But other words ending in *f* have irregular plurals, with *ves*: *hooves; leaves; lives; shelves*. The dictionary is the best guide.

When a word ends in *is*, change the *is* to *es*: *oases; parentheses; theses;* and *basis* becomes *bases*.

Words ending in *o*, directly after a vowel, take the *s*: *folios; radios*. Words ending in o, directly after a consonant, usually take *es*: *echoes; embargoes; mosquitoes; noes; potatoes*. But *pianos* is an exception.

Form the plural of words ending in *s, sh, ss, x* or *z* by adding *es*: *gases; dishes; dresses; boxes; buzzes*.

Common nouns ending in *y* preceded by a vowel take only the *s*: *alloys; attorneys; days*. But if *y* is preceded by a consonant or by *qu*, change the *y* to *i* and add *es*: *armies; ladies; skies; soliloquies*.

The plurals of most proper names are formed by adding *s*: *Cadillacs; Harolds; Websters*. But if the name ends in *s* or *z*, form the plural by adding *es*: *Borderses; Charleses; Mercedeses; Rodriguezes*. In forming the plurals of proper names ending in *y*, ordinarily keep the *y*: *Harrys; Kennedys; Kansas Citys*. There are some exceptions, like *Alleghenies, Rockies* and *Sicilies*.

Some words are the same in the plural as in the singular: *chassis; corps; deer; sheep; swine; fowl; etc.* The collective plural of *fish* is the same as the singular, but *fishes* may be used in referring to different species: *Many fishes, including trout and bass, are native to North America*.

Nouns derived from foreign languages form plurals in different ways. Some use the original, foreign plurals: *alumnae; alumni; data; media; phenomena*. But form the plurals of others simply by adding *s*: *curriculums; formulas; memorandums; stadiums*. For a word not in this manual, consult the dictionary.

Use apostrophes for plurals formed from single letters: *He received A's and B's on his report card. Mind your p's and q's*.

But do not use apostrophes for plurals of abbreviations, or for plurals formed from figures: *M.D.s, TVs, PCs, DVDs; 1990s*, *747s, size 7s*. For all-cap headlines, use a small-cap *S* to avoid confusion in these cases.

Also omit apostrophes in plurals of shortened words like *co-ops* or *condos*, and plurals of "words as words" (that is, words that are themselves under discussion): *ifs, ands or buts; dos and don'ts*.

Form the plurals of most compound terms by adding *s* to the more important element: *adjutants general; commanders in chief; courts-martial; daughters-in-law; delegates at large; deputy attorneys general; lieutenant colonels; major generals; passers-by; postmasters general; rights of way; sergeants major*. When compounds are written as one word, the plurals are formed in the normal way: *breakthroughs; cupfuls; handfuls; tablespoonfuls*.

Some words that are plural in form have singular meanings: *measles; news*. They take singular verbs. But others – *scissors*, for example – take plural verbs. And still others (*ethics, politics*) can be singular or plural. Use a singular verb when these words refer to an art or science: *Ethics is a branch of philosophy, while politics is the study of government*. But use a plural verb in reference to practices: *Her ethics are beyond reproach, but his politics are contemptible*.

plus. Do not use *plus* as a substitute for *and*: *He was an experienced gandy dancer, plus* *a smooth talker.* Use plus as a preposition (*five plus one*), as a noun (*Her knowledge of hematite was a plus*) or as an adjective (*a plus factor*). Because *plus* is not a conjunction, use a singular verb in a sentence like *Five plus two is seven*.

p.m. (time). Lowercase: *10:30 p.m. Tuesday*. In a headline, uppercase both letters. Avoid this redundancy: *10:30 p.m. last night*. Also: *10 p.m*., never *10:00*. See time.

pocket(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *pocket* are two words: pocket book (a small book), pocketbook (a purse), pocketknife, pocket money, pocket-size, pocket veto.

podium, lectern. A speaker stands *on* a podium and *at* or *behind* a lectern.

poetry. In news articles, use quotation marks around a poem title, with the principal words capitalized. Omit quotation marks from the title when the poem or a section is reproduced bodily. Normally, verse incorporated in an article is set in full-size italics, without quotation marks, and indented on both sides. A very short verse passage may be treated as an ordinary quotation, with slashes (/) to denote line breaks. A free-standing poem is ordinarily in roman type, or as specified by a page designer. The copyright owner should be consulted on the wording of a credit, either in agate type at the bottom or in an italic introduction.

Point. Spell out and capitalize when it is part of a name: *Montauk Point*. The abbreviation (*Montauk Pt*.) may be used in headlines, charts, maps and tables.

point. See period.

point-blank.

pointillism (art). Capitalize in reference to the art of Seurat and others who applied dots individually to cover a surface so that when viewed from a distance, the dots blend to appear as a representation of an object or scene. Lowercase in more general references to the technique itself: *Toby Kikondoo paints in a pointillistic style*. See arts terminology and Post-Impressionism.

points of the compass. Spell out *north, northeast, north-northeast, etc.* Abbreviations (without periods) may be used in addresses (*I Street NW*), in yachting articles and in charts, tables and maps: *N; NE; NNE*. See latitude and longitude.

pole vault (n.), **pole-vault** (v.), **pole-vaulter**.

police. Use the word the way *army* is used – as a collective term for an organization, not for individuals. Make it plural, and precede it with *the*: *The police say* (not *police say*) *crime rates are down* and *Seven police officers* (not *seven police*) *were injured*.

Police Commissioner *Lauren B. Miel; Commissioner Miel; the commissioner*.

Police Department; *the department*. In headlines, *Police Dept*. is acceptable. Also see New York Police Department.

Police Headquarters; *headquarters*.

policeman, policewoman. *Police officer* is preferred in most references.

Police Officer *Merrill E. Anyell; Officer Anyell; the police officer; the officer*. This is the rank in the New York Police Department. In references to the police elsewhere, use their official designations. Also see patrolman.

police ranks are listed separately. Capitalize a title only when it precedes a name.

police stations. Lowercase, even when referring to a specific station: *47th Street station* or *station house*. Use precinct to mean a command, not a building.

policyholder.

Polish National Catholic Church of America.

politic (v.), **politicked, politicking**.

political correctness (or *politically correct*) is a term of ironic disparagement, connoting excesses committed in the name of sensitivity. In impartial news copy, avoid applying the label, though it can be used in discussion of the term itself.

political parties. Capitalize *Party* in names: *Democratic Party; Republican Party; Communist Party; Labor Party; etc.* Also capitalize designations of members: *Democrats; Republicans; Communists; Laborites*.

politics can be singular or plural. Use a singular verb when the word refers to an art or science: *Politics is the study of government*. But use a plural verb in reference to practices: *His politics are contemptible*.

polls. See New York Times polls and opinion polls.

pollster. Use this word, rather than *poll taker*.

pompom, pom-pom, pompon. *Pompoms* are decorative fabric balls or clusters of streamers waved by cheerleaders. *Pompoms* are rapid-firing automatic cannons. *Pompons* are flowers — chrysanthemums, for example — with small round heads.

pontiff, pontifical. Lowercase unless the word is part of a name or title. And most of the time, a repeated reference to *the pope* will be more conversational than variation for its own sake. See titles.

Pop Art. Capitalize in reference to the style and movement dating from the late 1950s and 1960s. In general, capitalize *Pop* in reference to fine art, and lowercase *pop* in references to more general aspects of mass culture. See arts terminology.

pope. Capitalize the title when it precedes a name: *Pope Francis; the pope; a pope; popes*. See titles.

Popsicle is a trademark.

pore (study intently), **pour** (spill from a container).

porn is slang and should generally be avoided in serious news contexts. It may be used in narrow headlines when other alternatives, like *sex*, would be misleading or too vague. Do not use the dated *porno* or *smut*. Do not use *adult* in this context.

Port-au-Prince (the capital of Haiti).

Port Authority of New York and New Jersey; *the Port Authority; the authority*. Its operations include the three major airports in the New York metropolitan area; Teterboro Airport; port, marine and helicopter terminals; buses and bus terminals; bridges and tunnels; and the PATH train. It also owned the World Trade Center.

Port Chester (in New York).

Port Elizabeth (in New Jersey). Use Elizabeth Marine Terminal instead.

portland cement.

Port of Spain (the capital of Trinidad and Tobago).

Portuguese (sing. and pl.).

posh words. Unless the aim is to caricature a gushing style, avoid trite or dated words like *chichi, glitz, glitzy, posh, swank, swanky* and *tony*. Substitute concrete detail.

possessives. Ordinarily form a possessive by adding *'s* to a singular noun (*the boy's boots; the girl's coat*), even if the noun already ends in an *s* (*The Times's article*). If the word ends in two sibilant sounds (*ch, j, s, sh, x* or *z*) separated only by a vowel sound, drop the *s* after the apostrophe (*Kansas' climate; Texas' population*). But keep the *s* after the apostrophe when a name ends in a silent sibilant letter (*Arkansas's; Malraux's*).

Omit the *s* after the apostrophe in certain common expressions that consist of a possessive followed by a word starting with *s* (*for appearance' sake; for goodness' sake*) and when a singular idea is expressed in words that are technically plural (*General Motors' trucks; the United States' laws*). By custom, the possessive of an ancient classical name also omits the final *s* (*Achilles' heel; Euripides' dramas*).

For most plural words, the possessive form is *s'* (*girls' coats; boys' boots*). But for a plural word that does not end in *s* (*women; children*), the possessive is formed by adding *'s* (*women's; children's*). And when a plural is formed with *es* (on a proper name and a common noun equally), the apostrophe follows that ending: *the Joneses' house; the buses' routes; the Mercedeses' doors*.

Proper names that are possessive in form often omit the apostrophe (*Doctors Hospital; Teachers College*); the owners' preferences can often be checked on websites. But if the basic word is an irregular plural, keep the apostrophe when forming a possessive (*Children's Court; Ladies' Home Journal*).

A "double possessive" occurs when ownership is shown twice – first by *of* and then by *'s* or the equivalent: *a friend of hers; a student of Mr. Dann's*. While sometimes unnecessary, the construction is proper. Note, for example, the difference between *a picture of Matisse* and *a picture of Matisse's*.

Also see apostrophe; participles as nouns; plurals; possessives with proper nouns.

possessives with proper nouns. When an expression (typically a proper name) is fully specific, modifying it with a possessive sounds redundant, because the purpose of a possessive is to answer the question "Which one?" Thus avoid *Paris's Eiffel Tower*, because there is only one Eiffel Tower; make it, if necessary, *the Eiffel Tower, in Paris*. Similarly: *Mark Zuckerberg of Facebook*, not *Facebook's Mark Zuckerberg*. Usage sanctions a few exceptions. In sportswriting, a team name may be used this way: *the Yankees' Mickey Mantle*. In the arts, an author or composer may be credited possessively: *Verdi's "Aida"*; *Hardy's "Jude the Obscure."* Finally, this rare situation is entirely logical: *Zubin Mehta's New York Philharmonic was different from Kurt Masur's*.

post(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *post* are one word: post-bellum (adj.), postclassic, post-Columbian, postcard, postdate, postdoctoral, postgraduate, posthaste, postindustrial, postman, postmark, postmaster, postmaster(s) general, postmodern, post-mortem, postnasal, postnuptial, post office, postpaid, post road, postscript, post time, postwar (but *post-Cold War*, when the phrase precedes a noun).

Postal Service, capitalized, may be used in first references to the United States Postal Service. In later references, *the service* or *the post office*.

Post-Impressionism (art). Capitalize in reference to the diverse styles (also known as Neo-Impressionism) initiated by Seurat, van Gogh, Cézanne and others emerging from Impressionism. See arts terminology.

Post-it is a trademark for removable memo stickers and other office products.

postmaster. Whether a woman or a man, the Postal Service says, the person in charge of a post office is a *postmaster*.

postmodern (architecture). In the absence of agreement on what constitutes postmodernism, use the term lowercased, and with caution. In general, it describes two movements in late 20th-century architecture: buildings that make eclectic use of past historical styles, and those inspired by contemporary French philosophy. See arts terminology.

potter's field.

poundcake.

pounds (British). See currencies.

pour (spill from a container), **pore** (study intently).

power(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *power* are two words: powerboat, power brake, power broker, power dive (n.), power-dive (v.), powerhouse, power mower, power pack, power plant, power play, power station, power structure.

Prairie States.

prayer services. Uppercase the designations of formally named services: *Divine Eucharist; Divine Liturgy; Eucharist; Friday Prayer* (Islam); *high Mass; Holy Communion; Mass; etc.*

pre(-). Ordinarily close up compounds formed with *pre* unless the prefix is directly followed by an *e* or an uppercase letter: preadolescent, preamplifier, precancerous, pre-Columbian, preconcert, precondition, preconvention, predate, predecease, predestination, predetermined, pre-election, pre-eminent, pre-empt, pre-emptive, pre-emptory (not to be confused with peremptory, meaning arbitrary), pre-existing, prefabricated, preflight, pregame, preheat, prehistoric, prejudge, premarital, pre-med, prenatal, prenuptial, prepackage, prepaid, prerelease, pre-Roman, preschool, preshrink, pretax, pretest, pretrial, preview, prewar.

When *pre-* attaches to a compound, hyphens are usually necessary for clarity: *pre-cold-war alliances; preschool-age children*.

precede is newsroom jargon for the introductory paragraph, usually in italics, explaining the source of an article, a text or a transcript. See bylines and texts and excerpts.

precinct. Spell out numbers through *ninth*, and capitalize: *Fourth Precinct*. But: *40th Precinct*. Also: *the Central Park Precinct*. Use *precinct* to mean the command or its territory; use *police station* or *station house*, or just *station*, to mean the building. Also see New York Police Department.

precipitate (adj., sudden), **precipitous** (steep). A memory aid: The *a* in *precipitate* stands for *action;* the *s* in *precipitous* stands for *steep*.

predominant (adj.), **predominantly** (adv.), **predominate** (v., never adj.).

pre-existing is a long way of saying *existing*.

preferences, in the vocabulary of affirmative action programs, are advantages allotted to one class of candidate (minority applicants or women, for example), among those equally qualified, for benefits like employment, education or government contracts. As a way of rectifying discrimination, preferences are legal, but limited by law. Articles dealing with the debate over such programs should detail the provisions and avoid polemical terms like *reverse discrimination*. Also see affirmative action; quotas; set-asides.

prefixes and suffixes. See separate listings for various prefixes, suffixes and other combining words. Avoid prefix pileups like *nonbipartisan*.

pregnant. Use no apostrophe in an expression like *three months pregnant;* it is a short form of *pregnant for three months*, not a possessive.

prelude (music). Capitalize in a title: *Chopin's Prelude in C sharp minor*. Also: *the Prelude to the third act of "Die Meistersinger."*

pre-med for the course leading to medical school and for the student taking it.

premier. Normally use *prime minister* instead for the first minister of a national government. But use *premier* in the context of China and *chancellor* in the context of Germany and Austria. Also use *premier* for the heads of some nonsovereign governments, including those of the Canadian provinces, the Australian states, associated states in the Caribbean, etc.: *Premier Tracy B. Kikondoo; Premier Kikondoo; the premier*. And in a headline, *Premier* may substitute for *Prime Minister*.

premier, premiere. *Premier* means first in rank or importance, or earliest. *Premiere* means first performance or showing. As a verb (*the show premiered* or *the orchestra premiered the piece*), the word is jargon, to be avoided.

preposition pileups. Ordinarily use prepositions one at a time, each immediately before a noun or a pronoun. When prepositions are doubled, they create cumbersome phrases: *It was priced at below market value* and *It was owned by between 50 and 100 people*. In the first case, delete *at*. In the second (and in most cases involving *between* with numbers), use this construction instead: *by 50 to 100 people*.

prepositions, missing. Avoid constructions like these, which are dialect at best: *wait tables, babysit a toddler* and *graduate college*. They should be *wait on tables, babysit for a toddler* and *graduate from college*.

prerecorded. Normally *recorded* alone does the job.

Presbyterian Church (U.S.A.).

prescribe (order or command), **proscribe** (forbid).

presently. Use it to mean *soon*. The alternative meaning, *now*, is out of favor with many precise writers, and for that meaning, *now* is more direct in any case.

presidency, presidential. Always lowercase.

president. It is *President Lamm* (without a given name) in a first reference to the current president of the United States. In later references: *President Lamm; the president; Mr.* (or *Ms., Miss* or *Mrs.*) *Lamm*. In first references to presidents of other countries, use given names and ordinarily middle initials. For other presidents — of companies, associations, clubs, universities and organizations — lowercase the title and separate it from the name (before or after) with a comma. See titles.

President-elect *Stacy E. Kikondoo; President-elect Kikondoo; the president-elect*. In cap-and-lowercase headlines, capitalize *-Elect*.

president pro tem (of the Senate). Do not use this title capitalized before a name. Make it *Tracy M. Baranek, the president pro tem*.

Presidents' Day is the popular name for *Washington's Birthday*, the federal holiday celebrated on the third Monday of February. The name reflects the decision by some states to use the holiday to honor both Washington and Lincoln. Other states (among them New York, New Jersey and Connecticut) have designated Feb. 12, *Lincoln's Birthday*, as a separate holiday.

press secretary. Always lowercase and always separated from the name by a comma: *Chris T. Kuzu, the White House press secretary*.

preventive (n. and adj.). *Not preventative* except in a quotation.

price fixing (n.), **price-fixing** (adj.).

priest. It is a position, not a title, so it is always lowercased and separated from the name by a comma. The term applies to Roman Catholic and Orthodox clergymen and to some men and women in the Episcopal clergy who choose it in place of *minister*.

prima facie (adj.), never hyphenated.

Primary Day.

primate. It is a religious position, not a title, therefore lowercased and always separated from the name by a comma. A *primate* is a bishop (possibly an archbishop, possibly a cardinal) who heads an original see of a rite or church — the first diocese organized in a nation.

Prime Minister *Robin E. Cordeiro; Prime Minister Cordeiro; the prime minister*. Normally use this title instead of *premier* for the first minister of a national government. (Exceptions: Use *premier* in the context of China and *chancellor* in the context of Germany and Austria.) Also use *prime minister* if the first minister is formally called something like *chairman of the Council of Ministers*. Accept *premier* for such an official if it occurs in an untranslated direct quotation or a text. It may also substitute for *Prime Minister* in a headline. Otherwise *premier* is the title to use for the heads of some nonsovereign governments, including those of the Canadian provinces.

Prince *Ashley; the prince*. Also capitalize with a territorial phrase: *the Prince of Wales*.

Prince Edward Island (Canadian province). Do not abbreviate after the names of cities and towns, even in datelines.

Princes Bay (a section of Staten Island).

Princess *Ashley; the princess*. For a princess with a territorial title, or the wife of a prince with one, capitalize as a full name: *the Princess of Wales; the princess*. Never use a given name in those cases. But upon being widowed or divorced, she may be awarded the right to append it to her former title: *Diana, Princess of Wales; the princess;* and on occasion just *Diana*.

Princeton Theological Seminary, in Princeton, N.J., is an institution of the Presbyterian Church and not part of Princeton University.

Princeton University. In many casual references, *Princeton* can stand alone, for the university or for its undergraduate college. Note that the Institute for Advanced Study and the Princeton Theological Seminary, although in Princeton, N.J., are not part of the university.

principal (head of school; chief or main thing; sum drawing interest). When it is used as a title, lowercase it and put it after the name: *Pat U. Agneau, principal of*, etc.; *the principal*.

principle (doctrine or precept).

prior to is stilted. Use *before*.

private (military). See Pvt.

private first class. See Pfc.

prix fixe. No accent, and never *fixed*. Also never hyphenated. The phrase means *set price*, or the meal that is sold complete for a set price.

prizefight.

pro(-). Latin terms are two words (even when they precede what they modify): pro bono, pro forma, pro rata, pro tem. Terms that mean “in favor” are hyphenated: pro-Arab, pro-French, pro-slavery. Other compounds using *pro* are solid: proactive, prorate, prorated. Except in quotations, do not use the polemical terms *pro-choice* and *pro-life*. See abortion.

probation. See parole, probation.

probe (n. and v.). Do not use as a synonym for *inquiry, investigation* or *investigate;* the effect is journalese.

Procter & Gamble Company. In later references, sparingly: *P.&G.*

products and purposes. When the name of a company or organization does not indicate what it makes or does, the article should. What does the National Manufacturing Company manufacture? What is the purpose of a group of analysts that puts out a report on oil prices? Who are its clients or sponsors? Does it have any regular connection with the oil industry? What do the Friends of Amity hope to accomplish? How and for whom?

Prof. *Ashley T. Berenich; Professor Berenich; the professor*. Also: *Ashley T. Berenich, professor of history* (or *chairwoman of the history department* or *distinguished professor of history*). And if the professor holds a special chair: *Ashley T. Berenich, the Terry B. Yagyonak professor of history*. Also see emeritus.

profanity. See obscenity, vulgarity, profanity.

Professional Golfers Association (P.G.A.), without an apostrophe.

program is a specialized term in architecture. It refers to the set of functions, spaces and other requirements to be accommodated by an architect: *The program called for a 60-story residential tower surrounded by 10 stories of retail outlets and a small park*.

programmed, programmer, programming.

programs (computer). See software and app.

prohibit, forbid. Use *from* with *prohibit* and *to* with *forbid*: *prohibit from attending; forbid them to attend*.

Prohibition. Capitalize in references to the period (1920-33) when alcoholic beverages were outlawed in the United States under the 18th Amendment and the Volstead Act. The 18th Amendment may be referred to informally as the *Prohibition amendment*.

prone means lying face down; **supine** means lying face up.

pronouns and antecedents. In precise writing, a pronoun (*he, she, it, they, them*, etc.) refers back to a specific noun, and only one (the antecedent). Thus avoid writing *The Berenich plan has enraged her critics* because *Berenich* is used here as a modifier, not a pure noun, and *her* is left without an antecedent. Make it *Ms. Berenich's plan has enraged her critics*. (As a last resort, a tightly confined headline may have to settle for *Berenich Plan Enrages Her Critics*.)

Also rework a sentence like *Chris told Dana that he had a strange foible*, because *he* could refer to either Chris or Dana.

pronouns for countries and ships. Use *it* and *its* in references to countries, ships and boats. In such contexts, *she, her* and *hers* evoke dated stereotypes of the roles of women and men.

pronunciation keys. When an unfamiliar and hard-to-pronounce term appears prominently in the news, provide a pronunciation guide at a graceful point early in the article, with uppercasing to denote the stressed syllable: *Moesha (pronounced moe-EE-shah); Skaneateles (pronounced skinny-AT-las).*

(-)proof. Compounds with *proof* as a suffix are usually solid: blastproof, bulletproof, childproof, fireproof, foolproof, rustproof, waterproof, weatherproof. But hyphenate a coined or unusual term: recession-proof, Democrat-proof.

Also: *60-proof liquor.*

propeller.

prophecy (n.), **prophesy** (v.).

proscribe (forbid), **prescribe** (order or command).

prosecutor. When the title is official, as in New Jersey, capitalize it before a name: *Prosecutor Ashley N. Daan; Prosecutor Daan*. But: *the prosecutor; a prosecutor; prosecutors*.

Prospect Park Zoo. Use this informal name in virtually all references. Occasionally, in a detailed article about the zoo, it may be useful to mention the official name, *the Prospect Park Wildlife Center*. It is operated on city property by the Wildlife Conservation Society.

protagonist, antagonist. A *protagonist* is the central character in a drama or novel. One drama or novel can have only one protagonist. An *antagonist* is an adversary, competitor or opponent. One person can have many antagonists.

protégé (masc.), **protégée** (fem.).

prototype means the *first of a kind* — the original model, not a copy.

proved, proven. In general, *proved* is preferred: *The prosecutor had proved the defendant's guilt*. But as an adjective before a noun, *proven* is better: *a proven remedy; proven oil reserves*.

provided. Use *provided*, not *providing*, in the sense of *if*: *He will make the trip, provided he gets a week off*.

proviso(s).

provost marshal(s).

P.S. for Public School in most later references: *P.S. 105*. In first references (except anecdotal or colloquial ones), spell out *Public School 105* (without *No*. before the numeral).

p's and q's. Use the apostrophe in this phrase.

P.S.A.T. is no longer an abbreviation for preliminary college entrance tests. See College Board.

P.S.C. for the Public Service Commission.

pseudo(-). Dictionaries tend to solidify almost all compounds formed with *pseudo*. But to avoid awkwardness use a hyphen between vowels: pseudoclassic; pseudo-intellectual; pseudo-official; pseudoscience; pseudosophisticated.

psych, psyched. The verbs are slang and best confined to quotations.

PTA. The National Congress of Parents and Teachers is informally called *the National PTA* (no periods). There is no *National Parent-Teachers Association*.

PT boat for motor torpedo boat.

publication names. Use them in roman type, without quotation marks. For consistency, capitalize the article in every magazine or journal name commonly written or spoken with an article: *The Atlantic; The Nation; The New Republic; The New Yorker; L'Express; Der Spiegel; The Journal of the American Medical Association* (but: *Politico; Forbes; Fortune; National Review; New York; Time; Reader's Digest; Stern; Vanity Fair*). Also capitalize in later references: *The Journal*. But lowercase *the* when a periodical's name serves as a modifier: *the New Republic article; the Journal editorial; the New Yorker writer*. (In such a case, *the* actually attaches to the following noun — *writer*, for example.) Append the word *magazine*, lowercased, if it is needed for clarity or euphony, in reference to either print or digital editions: *Time magazine; New York magazine*. But: *Harper's Magazine*.

Use roman type and quotation marks for periodical article names and capitalize the principal words: *"10 Days to a Healthier Diet."* Also see capitalization and column names.

Public Broadcasting Service. See PBS.

Public School. In first references (except anecdotal or colloquial ones), use *Public School 105* (without *No*. before the numeral). In most later references: *P.S. 105*.

Puerto Rico. Use *P.R*. after the names of cities and towns.

Puerto Rico, Puerto Rican. Puerto Rico is a commonwealth of the United States; do not describe it as a territory, possession or colony. Puerto Ricans are not immigrants or foreign-born. *Puerto Rican* describes ethnic or cultural heritage, not nationality; the nationality of Puerto Ricans is American. Puerto Ricans are United States citizens with a special status: they do not pay federal taxes or vote in presidential elections, but they send one nonvoting representative to Congress. Also see ethnicity.

Pulitzer Prize(s). Capitalize the two-word expression but not the names of categories: *Pulitzer Prize for international reporting; Pulitzer Prize for biography; etc.* Entries are submitted by news organizations or members of the public, and finalists are chosen by panels of *nominating judges*. The winners are selected by *the Pulitzer Prize Board* (*the board*). Articles dealing centrally with the prizes should mention that they are administered by Columbia University.

punctuation is discussed in these separate entries: brackets; colon; comma; dash;

ellipsis; exclamation point; hyphen; parentheses; period; question mark; quotation marks; semicolon.

puns have a place in the newspaper, but as a trace element rather than a staple. A pun should be a surprise encounter, evoking a sly smile rather than a groan and flattering the intelligence of a reader who gets the joke. Plays on personal names never qualify: No one will be flattered to read, say, that a pitcher named Butcher *carved up* the opposing team. The successful pun pivots on a word that fits effortlessly into two contexts, as in this example from an opinion piece in the arts pages: *Elected Bodies With Hardly a Cultured Bone*. The more obvious kind of wordplay (*Rubber Industry Bounces Back*) should be tested on a trusted colleague the way mine shaft air is tested on a canary. When no song bursts forth, start rewriting.

Punxsutawney (Pa.). It is so spelled. And *groundhog* is so spelled. And *overexposed publicity stunt* is so spelled.

Purim, the Jewish feast celebrating deliverance from a massacre planned by Haman (in the biblical Book of Esther), falls in late winter or early spring.

purport means seem (often questionably) or intend: *The letter purports to be signed by Washington. She purports to be leaving for China*. But never *the purported letter* or *the purported mobster;* this verb cannot be used in the passive voice. Grammatically, *purport* behaves in sentences the way *seem* does: if one word will not fit in a construction, neither will the other.

push(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *push* are one word: push button (n.), push-button (adj.), pushcart, pushover, pushpin, push-up (n.), push up (v.).

putout (n.).

putsch. Lowercase except in the name of a specific uprising that has become known in history: *the Beer Hall Putsch* (Hitler's, in 1923).

Pvt. *Alex D. Cordero; Private Cordero; the private*.

PX for post exchange.

Q

Q. and A. in ordinary text. See testimony.

QE2 may be used in later references to the ocean liner Queen Elizabeth 2. The queen on the throne is *Elizabeth II*.

Q-Tips is a trademark for cotton swabs.

Quai d'Orsay. The riverfront street on the Left Bank of the Seine and, by extension, the French Foreign Ministry headquarters there.

Quakers. This informal term is fully acceptable for members of the Religious Society of Friends. In the Eastern United States, most Quakers belong to *monthly meetings*. These are the equivalent of local congregations; they hold monthly business meetings in addition to Sunday worship services. Members of monthly meetings in a local area are organized into *quarterly meetings;* there are also *yearly meetings*, roughly comparable to other churches' dioceses. In a reference to a specific body, capitalize *Monthly Meeting, Quarterly Meeting, Yearly Meeting* (example: *the Philadelphia Yearly Meeting*).

In the East, most Quakers attend "unprogrammed" services, sitting in silence until a worshiper is moved to speak. In the Midwest and elsewhere, most Quakers belong to churches rather than monthly meetings and hold "programmed" services, with clergy members, music and other elements of traditional Protestant worship. The *Friends General Conference* and the *Friends United Meeting* are respectively the principal national organizations of unprogrammed and programmed Quakers.

quart. A quart equals 32 ounces or two pints or a quarter of a gallon. It is slightly less than a liter.

quarter(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *quarter* are one word:

quarterback, quarterdeck, quarterfinal, quarterfinalist, quarter horse, quarter-hour (n. and adj.), quarterly, quartermaster, quarter note, quarterstretch.

quartet. Capitalize in the title of a musical work: *Brahms's String Quartet No. 3 in B flat (Op. 67); Beethoven's "Ghost" Quartet*. Capitalize in the name of an ensemble: *the Budapest String Quartet*. But: *a new quartet*. See music.

Do not use *quartet* in copy or headlines as a nonmusical synonym for *four* (*Quartet of New Plays Opens on Broadway*).

quarto(s).

quasi(-). *Quasi* is a separate word when used with a noun: *quasi comfort; quasi contract; quasi scholar*. But hyphenate when using it with an adjective: *quasi-judicial; quasi-stellar*.

Quebec (Canadian province). Do not abbreviate after the names of cities and towns, even in datelines.

Quebecer(s), Québécois. In general, use *Quebecer(s)* in news articles, but *Québécois* (sing. and pl.) may be used in references to the French Canadian culture of Quebec: *a Québécois novelist* or *"Above all," the separatist leader said, "I am proud to be a Québécois."* Also: *Parti Québécois*, an exception to the general practice of translating the names of political parties.

Queen *Elizabeth* or *Queen Elizabeth II*. Also, *the queen* and sometimes *Elizabeth*. Capitalize *Her Majesty*, but use it only in direct quotations or for special effect.

queen mother. On first reference, capitalize as a full name: *Queen Elizabeth the Queen Mother* (her official designation, without a comma). In later references: *the queen mother* or *the queen*.

Queensboro Bridge is acceptable in all references. When appropriate, include a reference to the longer official name adopted in 2011: *the Ed Koch Queensboro Bridge*.

Queensborough Community College (part of the City University of New York).

Queens Botanical Garden (not *Gardens*).

Queens College is part of the City University of New York. But *Queen's College* is part of the University of Oxford and *Queens' College* is part of the University of Cambridge.

Queens Library. It is independent of the New York Public Library.

Queens-Midtown Tunnel.

Queens Zoo. Use the informal name in virtually all references. Occasionally, in a detailed article, it may be useful to mention the official name, *the Queens Wildlife Center*. It is operated on city property by the Wildlife Conservation Society.

queer, in the sense of homosexual, should be treated as an offensive slur, but with a limited exception. Some gay men and lesbians have rehabilitated the term as an ironic badge of pride. In that sense, it may be used when the viewpoint is unmistakable. The term is acceptable in references to the emerging academic field of *queer studies*.

questionnaire.

question mark. For the placement of a question mark alongside other punctuation, see parentheses and quotation marks.

A question mark denotes a direct query: *What problems face the country?* Indirect questions and requests cast in the form of questions do not require the mark: *They asked if he could attend. Will you please register at the desk. May I take your beret*.

Do not use the question mark as headline shorthand for speculation: *Court Seat Next for Karitsa?* Readers rely on the news columns to answer or discuss questions rather than dangle them.

queue. In the sense of waiting in line, the word, mainly British, should usually be replaced by an American synonym.

quick(-). Some compounds formed with *quick* are one word and some are hyphenated: quick-fire (adj.), quick-freeze, quicklime, quicksand, quicksilver, quickstep, quick-tempered, quick-witted.

quincentenary, noun or adjective, refers to a 500th anniversary. If an alternative is required, use *quincentennial*. Or say *500th anniversary*.

Quinnipiac University (in Hamden, Conn.) was formerly Quinnipiac College.

quintet (music). See quartet and trio.

quip. As a verb of attribution, *quip* is usually a small slight to the reader's intelligence. If a quoted remark is truly funny, the reader will notice. If the remark is less than amusing, the label makes it worse.

quotas, as a technique in government-backed programs of affirmative action, were outlawed by the Supreme Court in 1978. Articles about a debate over any such program to rectify discrimination should specify the provisions explicitly; if the argument includes an assertion that it includes quotas (numerical minimums, maximums or percentages), the contention must be attributed. Also see affirmative action; preferences; set-asides.

quotation marks. Use double marks in news copy for direct quotation of speech or writing. A quotation within a quotation takes single marks: *"I do not know the meaning of 'collegial,' " he said. "Please tell me."* If the inner quotation enclosed yet another quotation, that third level would require another set of double marks. But a newspaper, edited for rapid comprehension, should rarely exceed two levels of nested quotations. When a single and a double quotation mark fall side by side, separate them with a fixed unit of space, to prevent a line break from occurring between them.

Picture captions and news summary entries use the same marks as news copy. So do the large initial letters that begin articles in many feature sections.

In a headline, a bank, a subheading, a chart heading, a caption overline or a "blurb" floating in a news article, use the single mark: *Governor Regrets 'Partisan Squabbling.'*

If an expression in a foreign language carries quotation marks, so should any parenthetical translation: *the papal blessing "Urbi et Orbi" ("To the City and to the World").*

When a direct quotation is longer than one paragraph, begin each paragraph with quotation marks, but use closing marks after the last paragraph only. In such a case, place attribution ahead of the entire quotation or within the first paragraph only. See quotations.

Do not use quotation marks to enclose dialogue labeled with *Q.* and *A.* or passages in which each paragraph begins with the speaker's name or a label like *The Judge* and *The Witness*. Verbatim texts and excerpts (including transcripts) and testimony do not take quotation marks, except for any direct quotations within the textual material.

In general, do not use quotation marks around slang or jargon words; the marks convey condescension. If the terms are used, the context should be justification enough. But use the marks with words or phrases that are used in an ironic or opposite sense: *That sad day was the only "happy" one he could recall.*

PUNCTUATION WITH QUOTATION MARKS

Periods and commas, in American usage, always go inside the closing quotation marks, regardless of grammatical logic. If inner and outer quotations are closing side by side, the period or comma precedes all the marks: *"While you're there," he said, "buy me a copy of 'Treasure Island.' "*

Colons and semicolons go outside all closing quotation marks, whether single or double: *He defined "zymurgy": the branch of chemistry that deals with fermentation*.

Question marks and exclamation points may come before or after quotation marks, depending on whether the symbol applies to the entire sentence or just to the quoted material: *The crowd shouted, "Long live the king!" Just imagine: he was afraid of "elephants without trunks"! She shouted, "What are we waiting for?" Have you read "The Color Purple"? "Did I say, 'I don't agree with you'?" "She asked, 'Do you agree with me?' "*

Also see references to quotation marks in these separate entries: anthems; dictionaries; music; opera; paintings; plays and revues; poetry; publication names.

quotations. Readers have a right to assume that *every word* between quotation marks is what the speaker or writer said. The Times does not "clean up" quotations. If a subject's grammar or taste is unsuitable, quotation marks should be removed and the awkward passage paraphrased. Unless the writer has detailed notes or a recording, it is usually wise to paraphrase long comments, since they may turn up worded differently on television or in other publications. “Approximate” quotations can undermine readers’ trust in The Times.

The writer should, of course, omit extraneous syllables like “um” and may judiciously delete false starts. If any further omission is necessary, close the quotation, insert new attribution and begin another quotation. (The Times does adjust spelling, punctuation, capitalization and abbreviations within a quotation for consistent style.) In every case, writer and editor must both be satisfied that the intent of the speaker has been preserved. Except in verbatim texts and excerpts, do not add material in brackets or use ellipses (...) to clarify or abridge the quoted material; those devices divert attention to the editing process. See brackets and ellipsis.

In a pure question-and-answer format, where paraphrase is not an option, slight additional adjustments may be required for comprehension or because of space constraints. For example, a full name may be added for clarity, or a tangential sentence omitted. Such editing should be minimal and should never alter the substance or tone of the original quotations. In those cases, a note should inform readers that the interview has been edited and condensed.

When two people are quoted in a row, the second quotation should begin a new paragraph, preceded by the identification of the speaker, to make it immediately clear that the voice has changed. If a quotation begins with a sentence fragment, do not go on to quote one or more full sentences. Instead, close the quotation at the end of the fragment and introduce the full sentences as a separate, further quotation, preferably as a new paragraph: *The president said the ceremony represented “the beginning of the difficult task of administering clemency.”*

“Instead of signing these decisions in a routine way,” he continued, “I want to underline my commitment to an evenhanded policy of clemency.”

If a quotation consists of several sentences, the attribution should either precede the quotation or follow the first sentence; if the first sentence is long, the attribution may be inserted between phrases (at a natural breathing point). In other words, a quotation should not go beyond a phrase or a brief sentence before the reader learns who is speaking.

A long quotation should not hang from a stubby or abrupt introduction, like *He* *said*, at the beginning of the paragraph. Instead, the attribution should be expanded and run into the preceding paragraph, or should be moved down to follow the first phrase or sentence of the quotation.

When attribution introduces a quoted sentence fragment or a single quoted sentence, use a comma before the quotation marks; if the quotation is longer than one sentence, introduce it with a colon.

An abrupt interruption in dialogue or Q. and A. should be marked by a two-em dash (twice the length of a normal dash):

"Your Honor," she said, "please let me finish my —"

"Overruled!" the judge shot back.

A quotation that trails off inaudibly or indecisively should end with a period and then an ellipsis: *"I wonder," the philosopher mused. "What if, right at this moment, on another planet.... "*

Also see attribution; dialect; parenthetical attribution; quotation marks.

quote. While standard as a verb, it is colloquial as a noun. Ordinarily use *quotation* as the noun.

Quran. The sacred book of Islam. Muslims believe that its text comprises the words of Allah dictated to the Prophet Muhammad through the Angel Gabriel.

R

Rabbi *Merrill J. Baranek; Rabbi Baranek; the rabbi*. (Do not use *Mr., Ms., Mrs*. or *Miss*.) The title may be moved after a name to replace the ponderous *spiritual leader*: *Merrill J. Baranek, rabbi of Congregation Beth Shalom*. Or: *Rabbi Merrill J. Baranek of Congregation Beth Shalom*. The Yiddish equivalent, *rebbe*, may be used for special effect in an article about a Yiddish-speaking sect or community (for example, *the Lubavitcher rebbe*). Also see Chief Rabbi.

Rabbinical Assembly. A Conservative group.

Rabbinical Council of America. An Orthodox group.

race should be cited only when it is pertinent and its pertinence is clear to the reader. The race of a victim of a hate crime or the subject of a police search is clearly germane, an essential part of the person's description. But the race of a person convicted of a crime is not pertinent unless the case has racial overtones; if it does, the overtones should be explained. Also see African-American, black; (-)American; American Indian(s); Asian-American; Hispanic.

race(-). Compounds formed with *race* are one word: racecourse, racegoer, racehorse, racetrack, raceway. But it is *Race Course* in some proper names.

racial slurs. See slurs.

rack, wrack. *Rack* means stretch, strain or torture. *Wrack*, which is archaic, means wreck, ruin or destroy; substitute a modern synonym. Something that strains the nerves is *nerve-racking*.

racket (not *racquet*) for the equipment in tennis, badminton and similar games. But the game is *racquetball*.

radiation, radioactivity. *Radioactivity* is the decomposition of an unstable atomic nucleus into a more stable state. The excess particles and electromagnetic byproducts are given off as *radiation*.

radio(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *radio* are one word: radioactive, radioactivity, radio astronomy, radiobiology, radio control, radiogram, radioisotope, radioman, radiophone, radiotelephone, radio telescope, radiotherapy.

radio stations. The style is *WQXR* or, if the context requires it, *radio station WNYC* or *WQXR-FM*. When citing a program that readers may wish to hear, give the frequency: *WNYC-AM (820)*. Also see channels.

R.A.F. for the Royal Air Force.

railroads. Principal railroads in the United States and Canada are listed separately.

rain(-). Some compounds formed with *rain* are one word, some are two and a few are hyphenated: rainbow, rain check, raincoat, raindrop, rainfall, rain forest, rain gauge, rainmaker, rainproof, rain-soaked, rainstorm, rainwater, rainwear.

raise. Use this word, not *rise*, for an increase in pay: *He received a $50 raise*. But *$50 pay raise* is redundant.

raison d'être.

RAM for random access memory.

Ramadan, the ninth month of the Islamic calendar, a period of daytime fasting.

Ramapo College (in Mahwah, N.J.).

Randalls Island (at the confluence of the East and Harlem Rivers).

RAND Corporation.

rank and file. But hyphenate the modifier: *rank-and-file* opinion.

rap. Performers are *rappers*, not *rap singers*.

rape. Though some states, notably New Jersey and Connecticut, have adopted *sexual assault* as the common term for felony sexual offenses, use *rape* to mean forced intercourse, or intercourse with a child below the age of consent. Avoid *criminal attack, criminal assault* and other euphemisms. Do not write that a rape victim was “uninjured” or “otherwise uninjured”; those phrases slight the gravity of the crime.

Most often The Times shields the identity of a sex crime complainant, but rare circumstances may warrant an exception. *Every* decision to divulge such an identity or to withhold it should be discussed with a masthead editor or with the head of the news desk.

rapid-fire (adj.).

rapprochement. A diplomatic term for warming of relations, it often seems overelegant. A more conversational word is *reconciliation*. Also see détente.

rarefy, rarefied. The letter before the *f* is an *e*.

(-)rate. Most but not all compounds formed with *rate* are two words: birthrate, cut-rate (adj.), death rate, first-rate (adj.), insurance rate, interest rate, tax rate.

ratios. Follow the general rule for numbers: Spell out numbers nine or below, and use figures for numbers 10 and above.

re(-). Ordinarily close up compounds formed with *re* unless the prefix is directly followed by an *e* or an uppercase letter: realign, reappear, reapportion, reappraise, rearm, reborn, rebroadcast, re-Christianize, reconstruct, redeploy, redistrict, re-educate, re-elect, re-election, re-enter, re-entry, refinance, refit, regroup, reimburse, reinforce, remake, reopen, reorder, rerun, resale, reunion, reusable, reuse (n. and v.).

But when two *re* words with differing meanings are spelled identically, hyphenate the less familiar one to avoid ambiguity. Thus: *recover* (retrieve or get well), but *recover* (cover again); *reform* (change for the better), but *re-form* (form again). Similarly, *recreation/recreation* (but always *recreate*, not *recreate*), *redress/redress, relay/re-lay, release/release, repose/re-pose, repress/repress, resent/re-sent, reserve/reserve, resign/re-sign, resort/re-sort, resound/resound, restore/restore* and *restrain/restrain*. Often, rephrasing is a better solution than a cumbersome word like *redress* or *resound*.

Reader's Digest (without *the*). It is published by the Reader's Digest Association.

ready. Though a recognized verb, the word can be stilted and artificial in a headline (*Congress Readies Energy Plan*). More natural synonyms include *shape* and *prepare*.

ready(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *ready* are hyphenated: ready-made (n. and adj.), ready-mix (adj.), ready room, ready-to-wear (n. and adj.).

real time (n.), **real-time** (adj.).

Realtor, a trademark, designates an affiliate of the National Association of Realtors. The preferred generic terms are *real estate agent* and *real estate broker*.

Rear Adm. *Dale N. Agnello; Admiral Agnello; the admiral.*

rear guard (n.), **rear-guard** (adj.).

reason (n). Both *because* and *why* are built into the meaning of *reason*. So avoid *the reason is because* and *the reason why*. Write *The reason is that the mayor got more votes* and *She found out the reason the mayor won*. Usually a phrase like *reason why the decision was made* can be shortened to *reason for the decision*.

rebut, refute. *Rebut*, a neutral word, means reply and take issue. *Refute* goes further, and often beyond what a writer intends: It means disprove, and successfully. Unless that is the intention, use *rebut, dispute, deny* or *reject*.

recherché (adj.).

reconnaissance.

Reconstruction. Capitalize in references to the reorganization of the Southern states of the United States after the Civil War. The period is usually given as 1867-77.

Reconstructionist Judaism. This young movement in Judaism stresses intellectual searching to adjust to modern times rather than close interpretations of traditional observances and teachings. Also see Conservative Judaism; Orthodox Judaism; Reform, Reformed.

record(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *record* are two words: record-breaking, record changer, record-holder (a person), record player.

record, new. This phrase is redundant: *He set a new record in the high jump*. But this is acceptable: *The new record exceeded the old by two inches*.

Some careful writers also avoid *all-time record*, believing that "all time" includes the unknowable future. Whether or not that is true, the phrase is needlessly breathless.

rector is the position of an Episcopal clergy member in charge of a parish: *the Rev. Chris Lamb, rector of*, *etc.* Also see minister and pastor.

Red. Capitalize in references to Communism, but use only in historical contexts.

redneck, for an ignorant rustic, is slang and pejorative.

refer. See allude, refer.

reference is business jargon when used as a verb: *She referenced the new transmission standards*. More natural substitutes include *cite*, *mention* and *refer to*. But *cross-reference* (n. and v.) is conversational English.

reference works. Capitalize the principal words in titles of almanacs, dictionaries, encyclopedias and similar reference works, without quotation marks.

referendums (not *referenda*).

reform suggests not just change but improvement. *Change* or *overhaul* can be more neutral synonyms in the news columns.

Reform, Reformed (religion). *Reform* (never *Reformed*) denotes the branch of Judaism that emphasizes ethics and observes modernized rituals. Its organizations include *the New York Federation of Reform Synagogues*. Many of its congregations refer to their houses of worship as *temples*, though *synagogue* is also correct; preferences should be verified.

Reformed denotes Protestant churches of the Dutch and Calvinist traditions, like the Reformed Church in America and the Presbyterian Church (U.S.A.).

Reformed Church in America, a Protestant body.

refute, rebut. The words are not interchangeable. See rebut, refute.

Regents, Board of. It is *the Regents* or *the board* in later references to any state board so named, including New York's, and in all references to the Regents examinations.

regime, as an alternative to *government* or *leadership*, can imply at least faint disapproval. Use it with caution.

regiment (military). Do not abbreviate: *Fifth Regiment; Second Armored Cavalry Regiment; 13th Regiment; the regiment*. For the United States Army, use *Regiment* in a unit name if the regiment is free-standing — that is, headed by a regimental commander; typically this applies to cavalry units. More usually, the battalions that formerly made up a regiment have become components of divisions and brigades. Those battalions keep their inherited numbers for the sake of tradition. In such cases, the word *regiment* is omitted: *First Battalion*, *21st Infantry*. A list of major army units is available online.

National Guard armories often bear traditional names: *Seventh Regiment Armory; 69th Regiment Armory*.

regional names. Uppercase the names of recognized regions: *East Texas; North Jersey; West Bank; New England; Middle Atlantic States; Gulf Coast States; Mountain States; Pacific States; etc.*

Regular Army (of the United States).

reign, rein. *Reign* (n. and v.) refers to a monarch's exercise of power. *Rein* (also n. and v.) refers to a horse's bridle strap and, figuratively, to anything that restrains free movement. Also: *free rein*.

relative (not *relation*), for a family member.

relativity theories. Do not capitalize the designation of either Einstein theory — the *special theory of relativity* or *the general theory of relativity*.

religion. Churches, religions and clerical titles are listed separately. The religion of a person in the news should be mentioned only when it is pertinent and its pertinence is clear to the reader.

religious (n.). As a term for a member or members of a religious order, it has a specialized flavor and is best confined to religion columns and similar copy.

religious slurs. See slurs.

relinquish. While the word is valid, it is also stodgy. Relaxed writing uses *give up* or *yield* instead.

Renaissance. Capitalize when referring to the movement and the period that followed the medieval period. Lowercase in its general meaning: *a renaissance of poetry*.

renminbi is the formal name of China's currency. *Yuan*, often used as shorthand, actually describes a unit of currency and can be used in Chinese to refer to foreign currencies as well.

In passing references, the Chinese terms can often be avoided altogether. Simply refer to China's currency, and give quantities in dollar equivalents. When the name is necessary, use *renminbi*: *China's currency, the renminbi, is increasingly used as a reserve currency around the world*.

Generally confine *yuan* to quotations or to articles with multiple references to different quantities of renminbi. *"I made only 1,000 yuan a year, but my daughter makes 10,000 and her daughter makes 100,000," said Ms. Zhang*. Such cases may require a brief explanation that yuan is a shorthand reference to China's currency.

rent regulation is acceptable in references to *rent stabilization laws*, which limit rent increases and give tenants certain rights, or to *rent control laws*, which predate rent stabilization, apply to fewer apartments and are more favorable to tenants.

Reorganized Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints is the largest of several groups that split from the Mormons. Do not use *Mormon* in reference to this church or its members. In this name *Latter Day* is two words, without a hyphen.

repellent (n. and adj.), not *repellant*.

repertoire is acceptable for the body of musical or theatrical works that a person or troupe can perform. Used more broadly to mean a set of skills or strategies in fields outside the arts, *repertoire* can be a cliché; avoid overuse.

In writing about the arts, *repertory* may be preferable in some contexts, as in references to a company that presents several works, often alternately, in the course of a season (*the New York Repertory Orchestra; the city's repertory theater*).

replica. Strictly speaking, a *replica* is an exact copy or reproduction by the maker of the original, usually a copy of a work of art. Less strictly speaking, *replica* has also come to mean any close reproduction, not necessarily by the original maker. But *a spun sugar replica of Notre-Dame* is absurd. Use *model, copy, imitation* or another more general word. Also see fake, forgery, copy.

reports. An article about the significant findings of a commission or study group should normally include a link or tell readers how to find a copy.

Representative *Lauren J. Miel, Democrat of Utah; the representative* (for members of Congress and state legislatures). Do not abbreviate, except in headlines, charts or tables: *Rep. Miel*. When necessary for clarity, use *State Representative* or *United States Representative* in a first reference. Also see district.

representative (diplomatic). Lowercase and use the preposition *at*: *Dana E. Cordero, United States representative at the World Health Organization; Dr. Cordero; the representative*. Confine *representative* and *chief representative* to assignments to permanent bodies, like the United Nations. (But do not ordinarily use *permanent representative*, a bit of diplomatic jargon that overstates the tenure.) For temporary or periodic meetings, use chief delegate, delegate and, when appropriate, ambassador.

representative at large. No hyphens. Lowercase except when used as a title before a name: *Representative at Large Lynn U. Bildots; the representative at large*.

Representative-elect *Hilary H. Arniotis; Representative-elect Arniotis; the representative-elect*. In cap-and-lowercase headlines: *Rep.-Elect Arniotis*.

Republic. Capitalize *Republic* when it is used alone to mean the United States.

Republic of Congo, the. Be careful to distinguish this country from the neighboring one with a similar name. For details, see Congo.

Republican national chairman (or chairwoman), or state or county chairman or chairwoman. *Merrill Y. Barany, Republican national* (or *state* or *county*) *chairman; the national* (or *state* or *county*) *chairwoman*.

Republican National Committee (or *State* or *County Committee*); *the national* (or *state* or *county*) *committee; the committee*.

Republican National Convention (or *State* or *County Convention*); *the national* (or *state*) *convention; the convention*.

Republican Party. Also see G.O.P.

Reserve(s). Capitalize *Air Force Reserve, Army Reserve, Navy Reserve, etc.* Also: *the Reserve; the Reserves; Reserve officer*. But: *a reservist; the reserves* (meaning people rather than organizations).

resin, rosin. Use *resin* for the organic or synthetic substance used in varnishes, lacquers, inks and plastics. Use *rosin* for the turpentine derivative that is rubbed on violin bows and on athletes' hands to prevent slipping.

respectively is often superfluous, and it can force a reader to retrace steps to grasp a sentence. Omit it when possible.

rest(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *rest* are two words: rest cure, rest home, rest house, rest period, restroom, rest stop.

restaurateur (not *restauranteur*).

restructure. As a verb, although bureaucratic-sounding, the term is unavoidable in the sense of altering the terms of public or corporate debt. In other meanings, more natural replacements include *overhaul, rebuild, recast, reconstruct, reorganize, revamp* or *revise*.

result. Since virtually everything has more than one result, make it *as a result*, rather than *as the result*.

résumé.

Resurrection. Capitalize when the reference is to Jesus or to the rising of the dead at the Last Judgment.

retail (n.). Use the noun to mean a type of sale (*He bought it at retail*). But as a short form of *the retail business*, the term is jargon (*This is a good year for retail*). Make it *retailing*.

retardation, retarded. These terms, along with *mental retardation*, are now widely viewed as offensive and are avoided by many experts (the official manual of the American Psychiatric Association has adopted "intellectual development disorder" as the formal diagnosis). Unless quoting or citing a specific legal reference, generally use alternatives like *intellectual disability, developmental disability, low I.Q., etc.*

reticent. It means silent or taciturn. For hesitancy to act, use *reluctant* instead.

retired. Do not abbreviate or capitalize in denoting military status: *Col. Morgan E. Lamm, retired*. Often, retirement status may be noted more gracefully, not necessarily in the first reference: *Colonel Lamm, who retired from the Army in 1989, became president of the company two years ago*. Unless they choose otherwise, retired generals and admirals keep their military titles in place of civilian ones. On request, other retired senior officers (colonels, majors and their naval counterparts, for example) may also keep military titles.

Reuters (not *Reuter*) is the news agency. In datelines: *CARACAS, Venezuela (Reuters) – etc.* Use this credit line on undatelined Reuters articles:

By Reuters

Rev. *The Rev. Lee A. Bildots*. For most Protestants the later reference is *Mr., Ms., Mrs.* or *Miss*. For Roman Catholics, Orthodox Christians and those Episcopalians who prefer it, use *Father* in later references: *Father Bildots*. Lutheran ministers, in later references, are normally called *Pastor*: *Pastor Bildots*. (For an exception, see pastor.) Never use *the Rev.* (or just *Reverend*) with a surname alone, as in *Reverend Bildots is coming to dinner*.

Do not omit *the* in front of *Rev.*, except in a headline. And whenever *Rev.* is used, even in a headline, it must be followed by a given name or initials: *Rev. Lee A.*

Bildots. Also see minister and rector.

Rev. Dr. *The Rev. Dr. Stacy T. Miel; Dr. Miel*. Ordinarily use *Dr.* to reflect an earned doctorate only. Doctor of Divinity (D.D.) is not an earned degree.

reveille (meaning the signal or the assembly) is lowercased.

reverse discrimination is a pejorative term for programs that seek to rectify discrimination; it should be confined to quotations from opponents or descriptions of their view. Also see affirmative action; preferences; quotas; set-asides.

Revolutionary War (the American one). Also: *the American Revolution; the Revolution*.

revolver. See handguns.

rhapsody. Capitalize it in a title: *Brahms's Rhapsody in E flat (Op. 119)*. Use quotation marks if it is part of a title affixed by the composer and goes beyond a mere description: *Gershwin's "Rhapsody in Blue."*

rhetoric is the art of using language persuasively or effectively. Do not use it as a fancy synonym for *speech* or *talk*. Also, be wary of its use in a pejorative sense, to mean *bombast* or *blather*. Also see oratory.

rhinoceros(es).

Rhode Island. Abbreviate as *R.I.* after the names of cities, towns and counties.

Rhone for the river in Switzerland and France. But in a foreign name or phrase: *Côtes du Rhône*.

rial, riyal. The *rial* is the currency of Iran, Yemen and Oman; the *riyal* is the currency of Saudi Arabia.

Richter scale. A means of measuring earthquake magnitudes now rarely used by seismologists. See earthquakes.

RICO, sparingly, in later references to the Racketeer Influenced and Corrupt

Organizations Act, the federal statute enacted in 1970 as a way to combat organized crime.

Rider University (in Lawrenceville, N.J.).

riffle (to leaf through or shuffle).

riffraff.

rifles are weapons fired from the shoulder using two hands. Spiral grooves (called *rifling*) are cut into the interior of a rifle barrel. The grooves make bullets spin as they move along the barrel, and the spinning creates a stability that increases accuracy. *Cartridges* (also called *rounds*) are the ammunition for rifles. Part of the cartridge is the *bullet*, the projectile (usually lead) that is discharged when the cartridge explodes. The casing, another part of the cartridge, remains behind. Automatic rifles keep shooting as long as their triggers are depressed. Semiautomatic rifles fire one round each time the trigger is pulled. The discharge of a rifle is called a *shot*. Also see caliber; cartridge; handguns; shotguns.

right(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *right* are hyphenated: right field, right-hand (adj.), right-handed, right-hander, right-minded, right(s) of way, right wing (n.), right-wing (adj.).

Right Bank (of the Seine, in Paris).

right, rightist, right wing. Lowercase *right* unless the political divisions in a country are formally designated as *the Right, the Right Wing*, etc., or the word appears in a party name. Lowercase *rightist* unless the reference is to such a division or party, or to a member of it. Lowercase *right wing* or *right-wing* (adj.) unless the reference is to such a division or party.

right-to-work laws. Be cautious in using this term, which can be tendentious. Take care to explain precisely the rules at issue.

Rikers Island (in New York).

Ringling Brothers and Barnum & Bailey is the full name of the circus. In later references: *Ringling Brothers*. Since 1996 its parent company has been known as Feld Entertainment Inc.

Rio Grande (not *Rio Grande River*).

riot is a powerful word that can inflame a community during or after a disturbance. Reserve the term for a wild or violent outbreak, usually one involving deaths, major injuries or heavy property damage.

rip-off (n.), **rip off** (v.). In references to theft or cheating, these words are slang, rarely suitable for news copy.

rise. Use *raise* instead for an increase in pay.

Road. Spell it out and capitalize it in articles as part of a name: *Fordham Road*. The abbreviation (*Fordham Rd.*) may be used in headlines, charts, tables and maps.

robbery. See larceny, burglary, robbery, theft and mugging.

Robert F. Kennedy Bridge. When appropriate, include a reference to its former name, the *Triborough Bridge*.

Robert's Rules of Order (not *Roberts'*); no quotation marks.

Rockaways, the. The term is acceptable shorthand for the Rockaway Peninsula in Queens. Its neighborhoods include Far Rockaway, Rockaway Beach and Rockaway Park. Distinguish it from East Rockaway, in Nassau County, and Rockaway, N.J.

Rockefeller Center, Rockefeller Plaza. The complex of buildings is *Rockefeller Center;* the central square, which figures in the addresses of several buildings, is *Rockefeller Plaza*.

Rockefeller University (in New York City).

rockets. Use Arabic numerals in designations: *Titan 4*.

rock 'n' roll. Use this spelling or simply *rock* (not *rock-and-roll*). Also: *folk-rock*.

Rockville Centre (an exception to the *Center* spelling usually preferred), in Nassau County, N.Y.

rococo (art, music, architecture and decorative arts). Capitalize in reference to the

18th-century style derived from baroque but characterized by lighter, more decorative forms. Lowercase *rococo* as an adjective meaning florid. See arts terminology.

roll call (n.), **roll-call** (adj.).

Rollerblade is a trademark for in-line skates. Use *in-line skating* (and *skater*, etc.) rather than suffixes on the trademark.

roller coaster.

roll over (v.), **rollover** (n. and adj.).

ROM for read-only memory.

roman. Lowercase when the reference is to upright typefaces. But capitalize *Roman alphabet* (the set of letters originated by the Romans) and Roman numerals (or *Arabic numerals*).

roman à clef, a novel based on real characters with identities veiled.

Roman Catholic Church. In first references, it is *the Roman Catholic Church*, not *the Catholic Church*. Also: *a Roman Catholic; a Roman Catholic church*. In later references: *the Catholic Church* (the institution); *the Catholic church* (a building); *a Catholic church; a Catholic; the church* (always lowercase). Use *Roman* in later references too if the context is ambiguous.

Romania (not *Rumania*). The capital is Bucharest and the people are *Romanians*.

Roman numerals are used in the names of popes, monarchs, Army corps, annual Super Bowl games and people who prefer the numerals (*Lee H. Berenich IV*). See numbers in names.

The numeral system uses seven letters, shown here with their Arabic number equivalents: *I (1); V (5); X (10); L (50); C (100); D (500)* and *M (1,000)*. When a letter follows one of equal or greater value, it is added; thus *CX* equals *110*. When a smaller number immediately precedes a larger one, the smaller value is subtracted from the larger; thus *IV* equals *4*. A bar printed above a letter multiplies its value by 1,000.

Romanticism (music, art and literature). Capitalize when referring to the movements that were the dominant force from the early 19th century through the early 20th century. In music, Chopin, Liszt, Schumann, Berlioz and Wagner are considered the principal composers of *Romanticism;* the creations of the last decades of the period and the music of composers like Mahler and Richard Strauss are often called *Late Romanticism* and *Post-Romanticism*. See arts terminology.

Ronald Reagan National Airport (in Washington). In later references, and in headlines when the context is clear: *Reagan National Airport* or *National Airport*.

room(-), (-)room. Most but not all compounds formed with *room* as a prefix are two words: room and board, room clerk, roomful, roommate, room temperature.

Most but not all compounds formed with *room* as a suffix are one word: bedroom, classroom, dining room, family room, living room, reading room, schoolroom, stateroom, stockroom, storeroom, workroom.

room names. Capitalize the names of specially designated rooms: *Oak Room; Oval Office; Pump Room*. Also: *Room 235*. See building names.

Roosevelt Island in New York City was formerly Welfare Island and, before that, Blackwells Island. It is part of Manhattan.

Rosh Hashana, the Jewish New Year. Rosh Hashana and Yom Kippur are Judaism's *High Holy Days* (preferred, rather than *High Holidays*).

rosin. See resin, rosin.

R.O.T.C. for the Reserve Officers Training Corps.

round is used without an apostrophe in expressions like *round-the-clock negotiations, round-the-world voyage, the year round*. Do not use hyphens in adverbial phrases: *He sailed round the world in a dinghy*.

round(-). Some compounds formed with *round* are one word, some are two words and some are hyphenated: roundabout, round-bottomed, roundhouse, round robin (n.), round-robin (adj.), round-the-clock (adj.), round trip (n.), round-trip (adj.), roundup (n.), round up (v.).

round numbers. See numbers, round.

round table (n.), **round-table** (adj.).

Route. Capitalize in the names of roads: *Route 22*. The abbreviation may be used in headlines, charts, tables and maps: *Rte. 22*. Also: *Route 9W; Rte. 9W*. Also see Interstate System.

Rowan University (in Glassboro, N.J., formerly Glassboro State College).

rowhouse, or townhouse. It is usually a narrow building that shares common walls with those on both sides. Only those with facades of reddish-brown sandstone are *brownstones*.

row to hoe. The idiom is *a hard* (or *long* or *tough*) *row to hoe* (not *road*).

Royal Caribbean Cruises.

r.p.m. for revolutions per minute.

Rte. The abbreviation for *Route* may be used with a number in headlines, charts, tables and maps: *Rte. 22; Rte. 9W; etc.*

Rt. Rev., Most Rev. Omit these terms before the names of almost all Episcopal and Roman Catholic bishops and archbishops. But *the Most Rev.* is used with the name of the Anglican prelate who is the archbishop of Canterbury, and with the names of the superiors general of certain Catholic orders. Also see Archbishop; bishop; Canterbury, archbishop of; Rev.; superior general; Very Rev.

rubber stamp (n.), **rubber-stamp** (v. and adj.).

ruble.

run(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *run* are one word: runaround (n.), runaway (n. and adj.), rundown (n.), rundown (adj.), runoff (n.), run-of-the-mill, run-through, runway.

runner(s)-up.

running mate.

Russian names. Names that have become well known in English should keep their familiar forms: *Peter the Great*, not *Pyotr; Tchaikovsky*, not *Chaikovsky; Khrushchev*, not *Khrushchyov; Rachmaninoff*, not *Rahkmaninov*. (Another exception: *czar*, not *tsar*.)

Women's names in Slavic languages have feminine endings: the ballerina *Maya Plisetskaya*, for example, not *Plisetsky*, and Lyudmila Putina, the former wife of President Vladimir V. Putin.

Generally Russian surnames with the *sky* ending (*Zhirinovsky*) are so spelled, unlike similar-sounding names in Polish, which end with *ski* (*Jaruzelski*). Russian surnames will end with *ov* or *ev* (*Fyodorov* or *Lebedev*), not *off* or *eff*. But follow the spelling preferences of émigré Russians: *Nicholas Kalashnikoff*, for example, not *Nikolai Kalashnikov*.

[1] Use *e* after consonants.

[2] Use *ye* after vowels and after the "soft sign," and in the initial position.

[3] Use *yo* in certain special cases. See the next paragraph.

And if a Russian cultural figure appears or records often in the West and is extensively publicized or advertised, use the artist's preferred spelling. The goal is to avoid inconsistency between highly visible publicity materials and the news columns.

Typically names are rendered erratically when they enter English through other languages – those of athletes, for example, at a meet in Germany or France. Check any Russian name obtained from a non-Russian source. When time permits, consult a Russian-speaking editor or reporter.

Use this system for converting Russian names into Roman characters: Where an exact equivalent exists for a single Cyrillic character, use it. (This means, for example, *ks* rather than *x* in a name like Aleksandr or Aleksei.) For other letters and symbols, use phonetic renderings: *zh*, as in Zhukov; *kh*, as in Khodorkovsky; *ts*, as in Trotsky; *ch*, as in Chernyshevsky; *sh*, as in Shostakovich; *shch*, as in the middle of Khrushchev; *ya*, as in Yalta. Choose the most economical spelling to produce the desired English sound: the *u* in Yuri, for example, rather than a French-influenced *ou*. And *ch* rather than a German-influenced *tsch*.

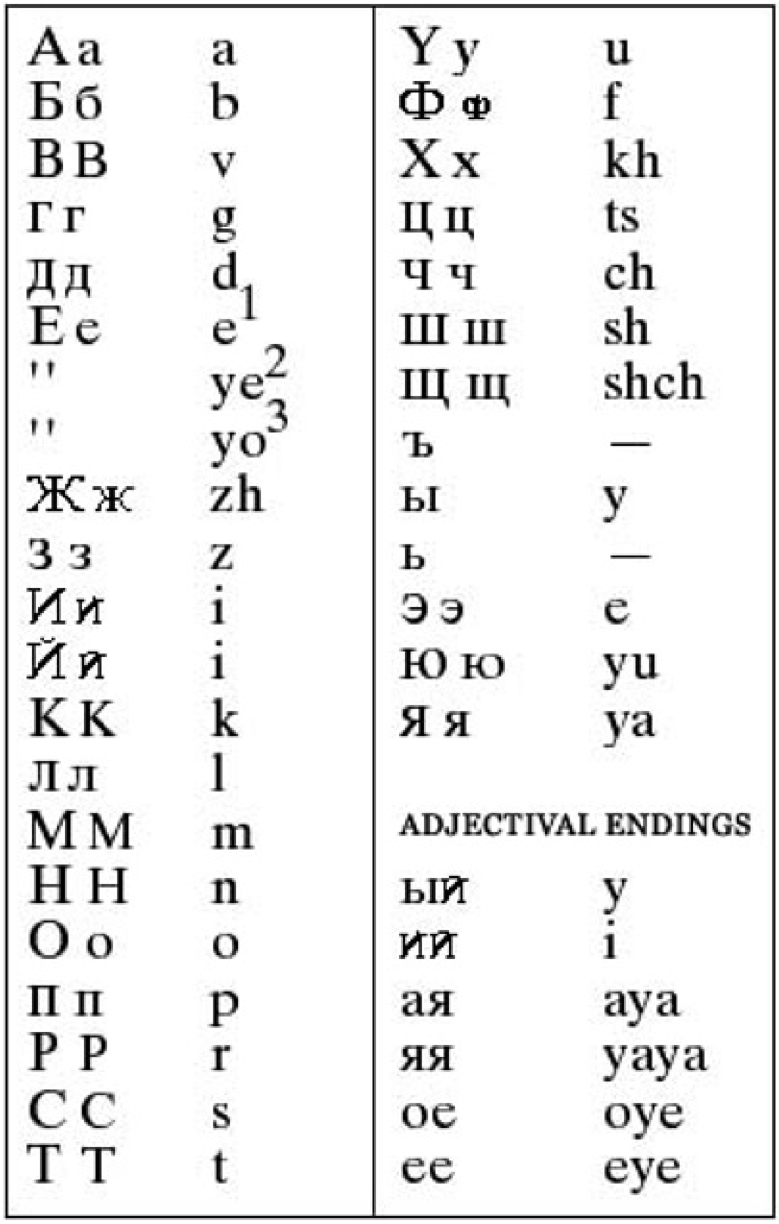

Аа	a	Уу	u
Бб	b	Фф	f
ВВ	v	Хх	kh
Гг	g	Цц	ts
Дд	d	Чч	ch
Ее	e[1]	Шш	sh
''	ye[2]	Щщ	shch
''	yo[3]	ъ	—
Жж	zh	ы	y
Зз	z	ь	—
Ии	i	Ээ	e
Йй	i	Юю	yu
КК	k	Яя	ya
Лл	l		
ММ	m	ADJECTIVAL ENDINGS	
НН	n	ый	y
Оо	o	ий	i
Пп	p	ая	aya
РР	r	яя	yaya
СС	s	ое	oye
ТТ	t	ее	eye

Russian uses two forms of *e* with three sounds: *ye*, as in Yevgeny; *yo*, as in Pyotr; *eh*, as in Edda. In written Russian, *ye* and *yo* look the same; only the pronunciation is different. Where the pronunciation is known to be *yo*, use it. Example: *Semyon* (spelled *Semen* in Russian). If in doubt, use *ye* or *e*.

Since the breakup of the Soviet Union, some countries with Cyrillic alphabets (Ukraine and Bulgaria, for example) have departed from the Russian conversion system. Their spellings of personal and place names should be followed.

Russian(s). Apply the term to people of Russia only, even in historical references to the Soviet period. The broader term, embracing all nationalities that made up the Soviet Union, is *Soviets*.

Russian Orthodox Church. It was once the established church of Russia and is, like the Greek Orthodox Church, one of the autonomous Eastern Orthodox churches. See Eastern Orthodoxy; metropolitan; patriarch.

Russian Revolution. Also: *the Bolshevik Revolution; the revolution. October Revolution*, while also correct, may be confusing because calendar changes have since moved its anniversary into November.

Russo-. In references to Russia, use the more conversational *Russian-Chinese, Russian-American*, *etc.*

Rutgers University, the New Jersey state university, has campuses in Camden, Newark and New Brunswick.

S

SA for Sturmabteilung, the Nazi storm troopers. No periods because the letters are drawn from a single word.

Sabbath. Also see Jewish holy days.

SAC for the Strategic Air Command.

saccharin (n.), **saccharine** (adj.).

sacrilegious does not contain the word *religious*.

safe(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *safe* are one word: safe-conduct (n.), safecracker, safe-deposit (adj.), safeguard (n. and v.), safe house, safekeeping.

safe deposit box (not *safety deposit*).

safe sex is acceptable shorthand, though often a more specific term may be more useful.

SAG-Aftra for the union formed by the merger of the Screen Actors Guild and the American Federation of Television and Radio Artists.

saga. It is a long story of adventure or heroism, not just any story.

Sahara means desert, so *Sahara Desert* is redundant. Make it *the Sahara*. Also: *the sub-Saharan region. Sub-Sahara* is not the name of a place; use it only in the adjectival form.

Sahel. This term, absorbed into the French language from Arabic, refers to a coastal or border strip and designates the belt of African countries immediately south of the Sahara. Except in a quotation, it is best replaced by a more familiar phrase, like *the sub-Saharan region*. Also see Sahara.

Saigon, Vietnam, was renamed *Ho Chi Minh City* after the Communist takeover in 1975. The old name remains in popular use.

sail(-). Compounds formed with *sail* are one word: sailboat, sailcloth, sailfish, sailmaker, sailplane.

Saint Laurent, Yves.

Saint, Sainte. See St., Ste.

Saks Fifth Avenue.

salable.

Sallie Mae for the Student Loan Marketing Association, the government-chartered company that makes low-cost student loans available through private lenders.

Salonika. Use *Thessaloniki*, the modern name for Greece's second-largest city.

saloonkeeper.

SALT is acceptable in later references to the *strategic arms limitation treaties*: *SALT I*, signed in 1972, and *SALT II*, signed in 1979. *SALT treaty* is redundant, and *SALT agreement* only slightly less so.

Saltaire (on Fire Island, in Suffolk County, N.Y.).

Salvadoran(s). The people of El Salvador.

salvo(s).

same-sex marriage, gay marriage. Both terms are acceptable, though *same-sex marriage* is sometimes preferred to make clear that the expression covers both gay men and lesbians. Normally use *wife* or *husband* for people who are legally married. (*Spouse* is also accurate for either partner in any legal marriage, but do not use it simply to avoid *husband* and *wife* for same-sex couples.)

SAM for surface-to-air missile. Also: *SAM-2; SAM-6; etc.*

sanction. As a noun, *sanction* can mean either approval or penalty, so the context must make the meaning clear. As a verb, *sanction* should be used only to mean approve or permit. A newer usage, to mean penalize (*they sanctioned the company for breaking an embargo*), is jargon.

S.&L. for savings and loan association, but sparingly. Also: *S.&L.'s*. Except in direct quotations, do not use *thrift* as a synonym for savings and loan association.

S-and-M, for sadism and masochism, or sadomasochism. *S-M* is also acceptable, in a clear context.

Sands Point (in Nassau County, N.Y.).

sanitarium(s) (not *sanatorium*), for rest home(s) or resort(s).

Santa Ana wind. The hot, dry wind that blows from the north, northeast or east into Southern California.

São Paulo (in Brazil).

Sarajevo is the capital of Bosnia and Herzegovina.

Sardinia. Use the name instead of *Italy* after the name of a city or town, in a dateline or when a locating phrase is needed.

Saskatchewan (Canadian province). Do not abbreviate after the names of cities and towns, even in datelines.

SAT is a trademark but no longer an abbreviation for the name of a college entrance examination. See College Board.

Satan. Also capitalize *Devil* if Satan is meant. Lowercase *a devil* and *devils*.

satellites. See earth satellites.

saturnalian.

sauté, sautéed, sautéing.

savings. Do not use it as a singular noun: *The cuts produced a savings of $50,000.* Delete *a* or make it *saving*. Also: *daylight saving time*.

savings and loan associations are not banks. They collect deposits from consumers and make mortgage loans. After the first reference and in headlines, *S.&L.* and *S.&L.'s* are acceptable, but sparingly. Do not use *thrift* as a synonym for savings and loan association.

Savior in references to Jesus or to God. Lowercase for other meanings.

saw (v.) is a journalese mannerism in this kind of sentence: *The scandal saw 33 officers arrested; The day saw 11 people injured*. Neither scandals nor days can see.

scaloppine.

scam. The term is slang, for fraud or swindle.

scant means not just small but inadequate.

Scarborough (in Westchester County, N.Y.).

scarf, scarves.

S. Carolina. The abbreviation may be used as a last resort in headlines (although more freely in the sports pages) and in charts and tables.

scenario. As a synonym for *chain of events*, *plan* or *situation*, it can seem overly fancy; consider alternatives.

scheme. The British use the term to mean plan or project (*highway construction scheme*). But in American usage, *scheme* connotes a devious plot.

schizophrenia is a mental illness often characterized by episodic disorientation, delusions and hallucinations. It is not characterized by a split personality, and the word *schizophrenic* does not mean two-faced, of two minds or self-contradictory.

schnauzer (the dog).

Scholastic Assessment Tests. See College Board.

school(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *school* are one word: school age (n.), school-age (adj.), school board, schoolbook, schoolboy, school bus, schoolchildren, school day, school district, schoolgirl, schoolhouse, schoolmate, schoolroom, school ship, schoolteacher, schoolwork, schoolyard, school year.

school colors. Capitalize when referring to a school or a school athletic team by its colors: *the Blue and White; the Crimson; etc.* Also: *The Crimson strategy paid off*. But: *Columbia's colors are blue and white*.

school names. Use *Public School 4* (not *No. 4*), *P.S. 4; Intermediate School 9*, *I.S. 9; Junior High School 113*, *J.H.S. 113*. Capitalize full names: *Cordeiro High School; Milori Junior High School*.

Schools Chancellor *Lee H. Milori* (in the New York City system); *Chancellor Milori; the chancellor; Mr.* (or *Ms., Miss, Mrs.* or *Dr.*) *Milori*. Elsewhere, *Chancellor* may be capitalized as a governmental title before a name, but it is lowercased for nongovernmental officials and separated from the name by a comma.

schools in the arts. See arts terminology.

Schubert (the composer), **Shubert** (the theatrical organization and its founders).

Schuylkill, the. Do not use *River* after the name; *kill* means stream.

Schwarz, F. A. O. (the toy store), with thin spaces between the personal initials.

score (v.). *Score*, when used as a verb to mean *criticize* or *denounce*, is stilted and sounds archaic.

scoreboard, scorecard.

Scot(s), Scotsman(men), Scotswoman(women) for the people of Scotland. The preferred adjective is *Scottish* except in special cases where *Scotch* is established, as in *Scotch whisky. Scot* and *Scots* are also acceptable as adjectives, but for consistency are best restricted to quotations.

scotch plaid, but *a Scottish tartan*.

Scotch tape is a trademark.

Scotch whisky. *Scotch* can stand alone when the context is clear.

scot-free.

Scottie (not *Scotty*), for the Scottish terrier (when the context is clear).

screen(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *screen* are two words: screen door, screen pass (football), screenplay, screen test, screenwriter.

Scripture(s). Capitalize the noun in singular and plural when referring to books of the Old and New Testaments. Lowercase the adjective *scriptural*. Give scriptural citations as follows: *II Corinthians 4:3; Mark 9*. Typical citations might read: *He took as his text II Corinthians 4:3; He read from Psalm 4; He quoted Isaiah 12*. But in some contexts a reference to a psalm may be better this way: *the Sixth Psalm; the 23rd Psalm*. Lowercase *a psalm*.

sculpt (v.), **sculpture** (n. or v.).

sculptures. Capitalize the principal words in their names. And use quotation marks, except for generic titles like *Pietà*.

S. Dakota. The abbreviation may be used as a last resort in headlines (although more freely in the sports pages) and in charts and tables.

sea(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *sea* are one word: seabed, seaboard, sea breeze, sea change, seacoast, seafarer, seafood, seagoer, seagoing, sea gull, sea lane, sea level, sea lion, seaman, seaplane, seaport, seascape, seashell, seashore, seasick, sea wall, seaway, seaweed.

SEALs (Navy units). See Navy SEALs.

Seaman *Lindsay J. Daan* (of the Navy); *Seaman Daan; the seaman*. Also: *Seaman Apprentice Daan; Seaman Recruit Daan*.

seasons. Do not capitalize *spring, summer, autumn, fall* or *winter*.

seatbelt.

S.E.C. for the Securities and Exchange Commission.

second, secondly. In enumerating causes, factors, etc., use *second*, not *secondly*. The phrase is a short form of *what is second*.

second(-). Compounds formed with *second* are usually two words or hyphenated: second base, second baseman, second best (n.), second-best (adj.), second-class (adj.), second cousin, second-degree (adj.), second grader, second growth (n.), second-guess, secondhand (adj. and adv.), second hand (on a clock), second mortgage, second nature, second-rate (adj. and adv.), second sight, second-string, second thought, second wind.

Second Lt. *Alex E. Karitsa; Lieutenant Karitsa; the lieutenant*.

Second Vatican Council. It was an assembly of the bishops of the Roman Catholic Church (1962-65). In later references, use *Vatican II*. Follow the same style for the First Vatican Council (1869-70) and *Vatican I*.

Secretary of Labor (or *Foreign Secretary*, etc.) *Tracy B. Lam; Secretary Lam; the secretary; the secretary of labor* (but: *secretary of the Treasury*). When used as a nongovernmental title, it is separated from the name by a comma: *Tracy B. Lam, secretary of the company* (or *club*, etc.). See titles.

Secretary General *Dana P. Kikondoo* (of the United Nations, for example); *Secretary General Kikondoo; the secretary general*. No hyphen in this or similar titles, like *director general*.

secretary-treasurer. Hyphenate the kind of title that joins two nouns of equal importance (but not *secretary general*, etc.).

Securities and Exchange Commission; *the commission; the S.E.C.*

Securities Investor Protection Corporation. It is a nonprofit corporation that insures the securities and cash in investors' brokerage accounts. In later references, and in headlines when the context is clear: *SIPC*, without periods because it is pronounced as a word, SIP-ick.

Security Council (United Nations); *the Council*. But: *the National Security Council; the council*.

Seder. The ritual Passover supper, at which Jews recite from the Haggadah to retell the story of the Exodus. Use the plural *Seders* rather than the Hebrew *Sedarim*.

Seeing Eye is a trademark for guide dogs trained by Seeing Eye Inc. of Morristown, N.J.

seesaw.

self. Do not use the word as a headline synonym for *himself* or *herself*, as in *Man Kills Self*.

self(-). In general, terms with the prefix *self* are hyphenated: self-adulation, self-conscious (also: *unself-conscious*), self-governing, self-made, self-respect, self-service.

But: *selfhood, selfless, selfsame, selfward*. Avoid the redundant *self-confessed. Confessed* should stand alone. Also see self-styled.

(-)self. The *self* words – *herself, himself* and *myself* – are used for emphasis (*She will do it herself*) and to turn the action in a sentence back on the subject (*He composed himself quickly*). Do not use these words as substitutes for *her, him* and *me* in sentences like *He gave the book to my brother and myself*. Make it *me*.

self-styled. The modifier is journalese. Use a more conversational expression, like *professed*, or *who calls herself a psychic*.

semi(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *semi* are one word: semiautomatic, semiclassical, semiconductor, semidarkness, semifinal(s), semifinalist, semi-invalid, semiofficial, semiprecious, semiprivate, semiprofessional, semisweet. Hyphenate unfamiliar or coined compounds. Also see semiannual, semiyearly; semimonthly; semiweekly.

semiannual, semiyearly. These words mean twice a year, as does *biannual. Biennial* means every two years. For comprehension, avoid the prefix forms when possible and use *twice a year*.

semicolon. For the placement of a semicolon alongside other punctuation, see parentheses and quotation marks.

The semicolon can mark a division in a sentence made up of statements that are closely related but require a separation more emphatic than a comma: *The* *contestants were ready; the timekeeper was not. The assignment was hard; still, he carried it out*. When the separation is even more emphatic, or reflects cause and effect, a colon may be used.

If three or more items form a series in a sentence and any item includes a comma, use semicolons between items: *Those present were Ashley T. Miel, a banker; Hilary F. Cordeiro, a lawyer; Lauren J. Baranek, a tax consultant; and Lindsay Lamb, a principal stockholder*. Retain the semicolon even before the final *and*.

Use semicolons in the tops of headlines, in single-line banks and in "panel" banks (multiple lines, uniformly indented). In cone-shaped banks, most often used on the front page, a dash replaces the semicolon. A semicolon may appear anywhere in a single-line head, but in a multiple-line head the logical break in phrasing, marked by a semicolon, should occur at the end of a line.

semimonthly means twice a month. Every two months is *bimonthly*. To minimize confusion, avoid the prefix forms whenever possible and use *twice a month* or *every two months*.

semiweekly means twice a week. Every two weeks is *biweekly* (which can also, but rarely, mean twice a week). To minimize confusion, avoid the prefix forms whenever possible. Use *twice a week* or *every two weeks*.

Senate. Capitalize specific references, domestic and foreign.

Senator *Dale B. Cordero, Republican of Arizona; Senator Cordero; the senator*. Do not abbreviate, even in headlines. When necessary for clarity, use *State Senator* or *United States Senator* on first reference. See titles.

Senator-elect *Chris P. Agneau; the senator-elect*. In cap-and-lowercase headlines: *Senator-Elect*.

senatorial.

send-off (n.), **send off** (v.).

Senhor, Senhora, Senhorita (Portuguese). See courtesy titles.

senior for the class or a member of the class, or, sparingly, for an older adult. Also see elderly; senior citizen.

Senior, Junior. Use *Jr.* and *Sr.* (without commas) for Junior and Senior in names: *Lee D. Berenich Jr.* (or *Sr.*). In bylines:

By LEE D. BERENICH Jr.

Also: *Lee D. Berenich IV* or *Lee D. Berenich 4th*, depending on individual preference. If the preference is not known, use Roman numerals.

In a listing, if family names are printed before given names, the expression *Jr.* (or *Sr.*, or *IV*, etc.) comes last: *BERENICH, Lee D. Jr.*, not *BERENICH Jr., Lee D.*

Senior Airman *Hilary D. Agnello; Airman Agnello; the airman*.

Senior Chief Petty Officer *Lauren Z. Cordeiro; Chief Cordeiro; the chief.*

senior citizen. It is a euphemism, to be avoided except in quotations or organization names. Also see elderly; senior.

Senior Master Sgt. *Lee F. Miel; Sergeant Miel; the sergeant*.

Señor, Señora, Señorita. See courtesy titles.

sensitive. In precise usage, it means easily hurt or having keen sensibilities. In the sense of secret, important or diplomatically fragile, it is overused.

separate.

Sephardi is the term for a Jew who lived in Spain or Portugal before the Inquisition, or that Jew's descendant. The plural is *Sephardim*, and the adjective is *Sephardic*. Also see Ashkenazi and Jew(s).

Sept. for *September* before numerals (*Sept. 17*), or in charts and tables.

Sept. 11 for the 2001 terrorist strike on the United States. *9/11* is acceptable in headlines and other special display type, quotations and organizational names, as well as in ordinary copy in idiomatic references like *pre-9/11* and *post-9/11*.

Three hijacked planes were flown into the Pentagon, 1 World Trade Center (north tower) and 2 World Trade Center (south tower). The trade center buildings can be called the *twin towers*, sparingly; their former site in Lower Manhattan is sometimes called *ground zero*. A fourth hijacked plane crashed in Shanksville, Pa.

Use *attacks* to refer to all of the assaults on that day, but *attack* for the individual strikes.

septet (music). See quartet and trio.

sepulcher (not *sepulchre*). Example: *Church of the Holy Sepulcher*.

sequence of tenses. In a newspaper, the prime verb in a sentence is generally in the past tense because newspapers tend to report recent history. For precision, the other verbs in a sentence should relate logically to the tense of that governing verb. This helps the reader keep track of the chronology. Consider, for example, the difference between *They dined when the countess arrived* and *They had dined when the countess arrived*.

With such a governing verb, events in the immediate past should ordinarily be reported in the past tense. *She said she was ecstatic* means she was ecstatic when she spoke. Not *She said she is ecstatic*.

Events more distant in the past are generally reported in the past perfect tense. *He said he had been delirious* means that he was delirious at some time before he spoke.

Events in the future are ordinarily reported in the conditional tense. *She said she would be cooperative* means that she promised to be cooperative at some point after she spoke.

When the sentence specifies a time element, the special tenses are unneeded: *She said she was ebullient on Wednesday*. Her ebullience preceded the speaking, but *on Wednesday* makes that clear. Sentences may also be simplified when they describe a continuing, eternal truth: *He said that the earth is round*. Use *is* because the earth is forever round.

To choose tenses, first identify the governing verb; in each example above, it is *said*. The governing verb appears at the beginning of the sentence; if it moves, it ceases to govern.

Ms. Lamm has a sprained ankle, Dr. Baranek said, and cannot play means that Ms. Lamm had the sprained ankle when Dr. Baranek spoke. *Said* is not the governing verb, but merely part of a parenthetical phrase; thus *has* and *cannot* are correct. If the sentence began with *Dr. Baranek said*, etc., the verbs would change to *had* and *could not*.

Ms. Lamm had a sprained ankle, Dr. Baranek said, and could not play. Here the meaning is that Ms. Lamm was injured at some time before Dr. Baranek spoke.

Similar rules apply to headlines, though the starting point is usually different because the governing verb is most often in the present tense. See headlines.

Also see conditional tenses and subjunctive.

Also see may, might.

Serbia. Use *Serb(s)* as the noun for its people, and *Serbian* as the adjective. Distinguish Serbia from the *Serbian Republic*, one of the two political entities that make up Bosnia and Herzegovina; its people are *Bosnian Serbs*.

serenade. Capitalize in a title: *Beethoven's Serenade for Flute, Violin and Viola (Op. 25)*. But: *a Mozart serenade*.

sergeant. *Sgt. Dale L. Kuzu; Sergeant Kuzu; the sergeant*. Also see Sgt. Maj. and sergeant major of the Army.

sergeant(s)-at-arms.

sergeant first class. *Sgt. First Class Leslie T. Karitsa; Sergeant Karitsa; the sergeant*.

sergeant major. *Sgt. Maj. Lindsay N. Daan; Sergeant Major Daan; the sergeant major*. The plural is *sergeants major*.

sergeant major of the Army. Lowercase the full title and use it after the name, without abbreviation: *Lindsay E. Bildots, the sergeant major of the Army; Sergeant Major Bildots; the sergeant major*. The title is held by only one person at a time, the highest-ranking enlisted member of the Army. It usually requires explanation.

serialism (music). Do not capitalize the name of this composing technique, which originated in the first quarter of the 20th century and is also called "the 12-tone system." See arts terminology.

Sermon on the Mount. Also: *the Beatitudes*.

serviceable.

serviceman, servicewoman.

service mark. See trademark, service mark.

set(-). Compounds formed with *set* can be one word, hyphenated or two words: setback (n.), set piece (n.), set-piece (adj.), setscrew, set shot, set-to (n.), setup (n.).

set-asides are funds or contracts reserved for minority bidders or women. The verb is *set aside*. Also see affirmative action.

Seton Hall University (in South Orange, N.J.).

7-Eleven, the name of the convenience store chain, is a trademark.

1700s, 18th century. In almost all contexts, use numerals for centuries after the ninth. Also: *mid-1800s; mid-19th century*. When unavoidable, at the start of a sentence or for special effect: *seventeen-hundreds*. Also see years, decades, centuries.

Seventh-day Adventists.

7Up is a trademark for the soft drink.

severe thunderstorm. The National Weather Service classifies a thunderstorm as severe when it produces damaging winds of at least 58 miles an hour or hail at least three quarters of an inch in diameter or a tornado.

Sèvres.

sewage is waste matter; *sewerage* is the drainage system that removes it.

sex. See gender, sex.

sex changes. See transgender.

sex crimes. See rape.

sex worker. Avoid this vague and euphemistic term, except on the rare occasions when a blanket term is needed to encompass a range of activities. Ordinarily *prostitute* is preferable. But be sensitive to the fact that in many situations prostitution is linked to human trafficking and violence. Whenever possible, describe the circumstances more precisely.

sextet (music). See quartet and trio.

sexual assault. See rape.

sexual orientation, never *sexual preference*, which carries the disputed implication that sexuality is a matter of choice. Cite a person's sexual orientation only when it is pertinent and its pertinence is clear to the reader. Also see bisexual; gay; lesbian; straight.

sexual preference. Use sexual orientation instead.

sexual slurs. See slurs.

Sgt. *Terry F. Agnello; Sergeant Agnello; the sergeant*.

Sgt. First Class *Pat C. Karitsa; Sergeant Karitsa; the sergeant*.

Sgt. Maj. *Stacy A. Kuzu; Sergeant Major Kuzu; the sergeant major*. The plural is *sergeants major*. Also, for the senior enlisted member of a uniformed service: *the sergeant major of the Army; the sergeant major of the Air Force*.

shake-up (n.), **shake up** (v.).

Shakespearean.

shantung (cloth).

shape-up (n.), **shape up** (v.).

shareholder, share owner.

Shariah, the legal code of Islam based on the Quran.

shar-pei (the dog).

Shavuot, the Jewish Feast of Weeks. It occurs in the spring.

she. In references to countries or ships, except for special literary effect, use *it* instead.

sheepdog.

Sheetrock is a trademark for wallboard.

sheikh, sheikhdom. Also see Arab names and titles.

shell. In weaponry, it is the ammunition for a shotgun, a naval gun or an artillery piece. The shell of a big gun is the projectile that leaves the barrel when the gun is fired. The shell may contain high explosives, shrapnel or chemicals. A shotgun shell consists of a casing, a primer, powder and some sort of projectile – multiple pellets or slugs. When a shotgun is fired, only the projectile leaves the barrel; the shell remains behind. Also see bullet and cartridge.

shell shock (n.), **shellshocked** (adj.).

Shemini Atzeret, a Jewish festival, follows the seventh day of Sukkot and is observed with a service for the dead and a prayer for autumn rain.

sherbet (not *sherbert*).

Sheriff *Terry P. Yagyonak; Sheriff Yagyonak; the sheriff.*

Sherman Antitrust Act; *the antitrust act.*

Shetland (the wool and the pony).

shh.

Shiite Muslims are members of the Shia branch of Islam, which regards Ali, the son-in-law of Muhammad, as Muhammad's legitimate successor. Also see Sunni Muslims.

shine, shined, shone. When *shine* has an object, the past tense is *shined*: *He shined the light at the boat*. But when it has no object, the past tense is *shone*: *The sun shone all weekend*.

ship(-), (-)ship. Most but not all compounds formed with *ship* as a prefix are solid: shipboard, shipbuilding, ship canal, shipmate, shipowner, ship-rigged, shipwreck.

Most but not all compounds formed with *ship* as a suffix are solid: fire ship, flagship, friendship, lightship, slave ship, steamship, tight ship, transship.

ship lines are listed separately.

ships. Use their names without quotation marks. Refer to them as *it* and *its* – not *she* and *her* – except for literary effect.

shish kebab.

shofar. The ram's horn, sounded as a trumpet at Jewish High Holy Day services. Plural: *shofars*.

shootdown (n.). Use *shooting down* instead as the noun form. In a narrow headline: *downing*. The verb form, entirely acceptable, is *shoot down*.

shooter is recognized by dictionaries, but in criminal contexts it has a flavor of police jargon. *Gunman*, when accurate, is more conversational. (*Sharpshooter*, curiously, does not have the problem.)

shop(-), (-)shop. Most but not all compounds formed with *shop* as a prefix are one word: shopkeeper, shoplifter, shop steward, shoptalk, shopworn.

Compounds formed with *shop* as a suffix are usually one word: barbershop, bookshop, machine shop, pawnshop, repair shop, sweatshop, toyshop.

short(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *short* are one word: shortchange, short circuit (n.), short-circuit (v.), shortcut (n.), shortfall, shorthand, short-lived, shortsighted, shortstop, short-tempered, shortwave (n. and adj.).

short ton. See ton.

shotguns are weapons that are fired from the shoulder using two hands. The inner surfaces of their barrels are smooth. *Shells* are the ammunition for shotguns. A shotgun shell consists of a casing, a primer, powder and some sort of projectile — pellets or a slug. Only the projectile is discharged when the shotgun is fired. The discharge of a shotgun is called a *blast*. Shotgun sizes are usually given in gauges: 10 gauge, 12 gauge, 16, 20 and 28 gauge (the bigger the number, the smaller the shotgun). The one exception is the .410 bore shotgun, which is of limited use. Also see caliber; handguns; rifles.

shot-put, shot-putter, shot-putting.

show(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *show* are one word: showboat, show business, showcase, showdown, showman, show-off (n.), showroom.

Shubert (the theatrical organization and its founders), **Schubert** (the composer).

shut(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *shut* are one word: shutdown (n.), shut-in (n.), shutout (n.).

S.I. Avoid this abbreviation for Staten Island, except as a last resort in New York-edition print headlines. Do not use *Staten I*. When necessary, insert a reference to Staten Island after the name of a locale there: *Tottenville, Staten Island*.

Sichuan (not *Szechwan* or *Szechuan*), for the province in China. Its capital is Chengdu. Also use *Sichuan* in a reference to the cuisine, but not necessarily in the name of a restaurant. See Chinese names.

Sicily. Use this name instead of *Italy* after the names of Sicilian cities and towns in datelines or when a locater is needed.

sick(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *sick* are two words: sick bay, sickbed, sick call, sick leave, sick list, sickout, sickroom.

side(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *side* are one word: side arm (weapon), sidearm (style of pitching), sideboard, sideburns, sidelight, sideline, sidelong, sidesaddle, sideshow, sidestep, sidestroke, sideswipe, sidewalk, sideways.

Sierra Nevada; *the Sierra* (not *Sierra Nevada Mountains* or *the Sierras*).

sightseeing, sightseer.

Signal Corps (United States Army); *the corps*.

signaled.

signatory. Except in quotations or texts, use a simpler word, *signer*, for a person or a country that has subscribed to a treaty or other agreement.

signature, signing. Use *signing* for the act or ceremony of endorsing a treaty or document. Reserve *signature* for the name written at the end of a document.

Signor, Signora, Signorina. See courtesy titles.

Simhat Torah is the Jewish autumn festival celebrating the end of the yearlong cycle of Torah readings. The name means Rejoicing in the Law.

Sinai (not *the Sinai*) for the peninsula in northeast Egypt. But: *the Sinai Desert; the Sinai Peninsula*.

singles, as in *singles bar* and *singles scene*, has no apostrophe.

Sino(-). In references to China, use the more conversational *Chinese-American, Chinese-Russian*, *etc.* But: *Sinologist*.

SIPC for the Securities Investor Protection Corporation, which insures the securities and cash in investors' brokerage accounts. No periods, because the term is pronounced SIP-ick.

Sir *Leslie Agneau; Sir Leslie*. In headlines: *Agneau*. In the British system, the title designates baronets and knights; they are not peers. (When it is relevant, specify whether Sir Leslie is a knight or a baronet.) *Sir* is always followed by a given name, without a middle initial.

If someone with a title is primarily known for achievements in another field — a pop star, business leader or politician, for example — the title should generally be avoided unless specifically relevant to the context. Use an ordinary courtesy title instead: *Mr. McCartney*, not *Sir Paul*, on second reference to the former Beatle.

sister (religious). A title for a woman in a religious order (a nun) in the Roman Catholic, Anglican (Episcopal) and Orthodox Churches. Do not abbreviate *sister*, and except in quotations, use it only with a name: *Sister Robin Agneau* and *Sister Robin* or *Sister Agneau*, according to her preference. Lowercase *nun*. Also see mother (religious) and nun.

sit-down (n. and adj.), **sit down** (v.).

sit-in (n.), **sit in** (v.).

situated is often an excess word, as in *The town is situated in Klopstock County*.

situp (n.), **sit up** (v.).

Sixth Avenue (in Manhattan). See Avenue of the Americas.

sizable.

(-)size. Most but not all compounds formed with *size* are hyphenated: king-size, life-size, medium-size, midsize, outsize, pint-size.

Ordinarily use *-size*, not *-sized*, for the suffix.

sizes. Express in numerals: *size 8 dress; size 44 long; 11½B shoes; 15½ collar*.

skeptical.

ski, skied, skier, skiing, ski jumping.

skillful.

skin-dive (v.), **skin diving** (n.).

sky boxes, for the luxurious suites in sports stadiums.

slang. Words bearing this label, in the dictionary or in this manual, are highly informal, usually flippant and often coined as a badge of membership in an in-group (for example, teenagers, the military, the underworld or the police). When used unmistakably for special effect – *perp*, say, to evoke the flavor of byplay in a feature about a police station – they are welcome, without quotation marks or other signs of self-consciousness. But often, reliance on slang can create the embarrassing spectacle of a grown-up who tries to pass for an adolescent. Some slang expressions will evolve into standard English. Others show up so relentlessly that they vault overnight from the novel to the hackneyed.

slash, in the sense of budget cutting, can be a partisan word. One politician's *slashes* are another politician's prudent *trims*.

slate, as a verb meaning *plan* or *schedule* (*The vote was slated for Thursday*), is journalese and trite.

slave state, free state. Lowercase in references to the situation before the Civil War.

slay, slayer, slaying. Archaic, almost biblical, the words are best replaced by more modern synonyms (usually *kill*, etc.). If an exception is warranted, *slay* remains a verb only; even in headlines, the noun and the adjective are *slaying*. Also see murder, homicide, killing.

slew, as a noun meaning a lot, is colloquial, too informal for news reporting.

slide shows. See captions.

Slovakia. Its capital is Bratislava.

Slovenia (the country), **Slovene(s)** as a noun for the people, and as an adjective.

slowdown (n.), **slow down** (v.).

slurs (ethnic, racial, religious and sexual). The epithets of bigotry ordinarily have no place in the newspaper. Even in ironic or self-mocking quotations about a speaker's own group (in rap lyrics, for example), their use erodes the worthy inhibition against brutality in public discourse. If an exception is essential to readers' understanding of a highly newsworthy crime, conflict or personality, the decision should first be discussed thoroughly by senior editors. For one limited exception, see queer.

Also see obscenity, vulgarity, profanity.

small-business man, small-business woman. Also: *business owner; small-business owner; businesspeople; small-business people*.

smartphone.

Smithsonian Institution (not *Institute*).

smoke screen.

Smokey Bear (not *Smokey the Bear*).

smolder.

Smyrna. Use *Izmir* in all but historical references to the Turkish seaport.

smut. Avoid this dated term. Also see porn.

sneak, sneaked, sneaking. Never *snuck*.

snow(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *snow* are one word: snowball, snowbank, snow-blind, snow blower, snowboard, snowbound, snowcapped, snowdrift, snowfall, snow fence, snowflake, snowman, snowmobile, snowpack, snowplow, snowshoe, snowstorm, snowsuit, snow tire.

Snow Belt.

so-called (adj.), **so called** (adv.). With this phrase, quotation marks are redundant: *the so-called "poison-pill defense."*

soccer is what the rest of the world calls *football*. Its international championship every four years is the World Cup.

socialism, socialist. Capitalize if the reference is to a political party or movement that professes socialism, or to its members. Lowercase in a general sense: *He said the plan smacked of socialism*.

Social Security. Also: *the Social Security Act*.

Society of Friends. See Quakers.

software. Capitalize the principal words in program names, and use no quotation marks if a name is simple and descriptive. But use the marks for a fanciful name that is more like a book title: *"Where in the World Is Carmen Sandiego?"* When the title consists of a common word, the context should make the meaning clear, perhaps by identifying the manufacturer or appending a release number: *Microsoft Word*. See app(s).

Soho, SoHo. *Soho* is the district in central London. *SoHo* (from *So*uth of *Ho*uston Street) is in Manhattan.

solo(s).

somber.

some(-). Compounds formed with *some* are one word: somebody, someday (adv.), someone, sometimes (adv.). But: *30-some years*.

someone. Always singular. See anybody, anyone, everybody, everyone, no one, someone.

somewhere is often superfluous, as in this sentence: *He is somewhere between 55 and 60.*

sonata. Capitalize in a title: *Beethoven's "Moonlight" Sonata; Beethoven's Sonata in E flat*, *"Les Adieux."*

songs. Use quotation marks with the titles of songs, popular or classical, including national anthems. If the title is in English, capitalize all the principal words: *"Get Me to the Church on Time."* If the title of a classical song (or aria) is in French, Spanish or Italian, generally capitalize only the first word: *"Nuit d'étoiles"*; *"Il bacio."* If the title is in German, capitalize the first word and all the nouns: *"An den Frühling."*

sophomore for the class or a member of the class.

S O S (with thin spaces between letters). The Morse code distress call, now rarely used. The spoken equivalent is *mayday*.

Sotheby's Inc. (a subsidiary of Sotheby's Holdings Inc.).

sound bite can be a cliché and can be partisan, suggesting that a comment is empty or meaningless. Use it with care.

soundtrack. But: *sound truck*.

source documents. See reports.

sources. Standing by itself, the word is too vague to serve as attribution in a news article: *a source said* or *sources said* means no more than *somebody said*. And *informed* or *reliable*, as a modifier, is no improvement. See attribution.

sous-chef (a chef's assistant).

south. Capitalize in all references to the region of the United States and in first references to other specific regions: *South Texas*. Capitalize in later references to a country with *South* in its name, like South Korea. Lowercase *south* as a point of the compass.

Southampton, in Suffolk County, N.Y. (Spellings for nearby towns differ: *East Hampton; Bridgehampton; Westhampton*.)

South Carolina. Abbreviate as *S.C.* after the names of cities, towns and counties. As a last resort, and somewhat more readily in the sports pages, use *S. Carolina* in a headline.

South Dakota. Abbreviate as *S.D.* after the names of cities, towns and counties. As a last resort, and somewhat more readily in the sports pages, use *S. Dakota* in a headline.

southeast. Capitalize when referring to that geographic region of the United States; lowercase as a point of the compass.

Southeast Asia comprises Cambodia, Indonesia, Laos, Malaysia, Myanmar, the Philippines, Singapore, Thailand and Vietnam.

southern. Capitalize when used in reference to the South, the geographic region of the United States, or to recognized areas (*Southern California*). But: *southern Utah; southern Italy; southern part of North Korea; southern half; etc.* Also see south.

Southern Baptist Convention. Now the largest Baptist group in the United States, it split from an even larger group in 1845 over the issue of whether a slaveholder could be a missionary.

Southerner. Capitalize when referring to someone from the American South or from a country with *South* in its name, like South Korea.

Southern Connecticut State University (in New Haven).

Southern Hemisphere; *the hemisphere*.

Southern Tier. Capitalize in reference to the row of counties in New York State that are directly north of Pennsylvania.

South Jersey. An exception to the rule that requires *southern New Jersey, southern Ohio, southern France*, *etc.* And an exception to the preference for keeping the *New* in front of *Jersey*. Also: *North Jersey*.

South Pole. But: *the pole; polar*.

South Shore, North Shore (of Long Island).

South Side. Capitalize when regularly used to designate a section of a city.

South Texas.

South Vietnam, South Vietnamese. The terms apply only to the period from 1954 to the reunification of Vietnam in 1975.

southwest. Capitalize when referring to the region of the United States; lowercase as a point of the compass.

Soviet, Soviets, Soviet Union. In historical references, use *Soviet Union* for the name of the country (which dissolved in 1991), *Soviet* as an adjective and *Soviets* as a noun for the people or, informally, for the country. Also, in rare formal contexts: *Union of Soviet Socialist Republics* and *U.S.S.R*.

space(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *space* are one word: space age, space bar, spacecraft, spaceflight, spaceman, space platform, spaceport, spaceship, space shuttle, space station, spacesuit, spacewalk.

space vehicles. Use their names without quotation marks, and with Arabic numerals: *Enterprise; Apollo 13; Titan 4*.

span. It is the part of a bridge between piers or supports. Do not use the word, even in a headline, to mean *bridge*.

spandex is a generic term for elasticized fabric. One well-known brand is Lycra.

Spanish-American War.

Spanish Civil War; *the civil war*.

Spanish names usually consist of the father's family name followed by the mother's family name. Thus in a later reference *José Molina Valente* ordinarily becomes *Mr. Molina*, not *Mr. Valente*. But some people choose to keep both family names in repeated references. Names may include *y* (for *and*): *José Molina y Valente*. A married woman may use her own family name in the middle position: *Isabel Martínez de Perón*, the widow of *Juan Perón*.

In the name of a United States resident, use or omit accents as the bearer does; when in doubt, omit them. (Exception: Use accents in Spanish names of Puerto Rico residents.) See accent marks.

spark, as a verb meaning *incite*, is journalese.

spartan. Lowercase except in references to ancient Greece.

speaker of the Assembly, speaker of the House. Capitalize *Speaker* when it serves as a title before a name, without the separation of a comma. Elsewhere it is always lowercase, but the context must make the term recognizable as a title.

speakeasy.

spearfishing.

Special Forces. Capitalize in reference to the Army's unconventional-warfare units. Their nickname, *the Green Berets*, may stand alone in casual references. Also see Special Operations.

Specialist *Leslie M. Berenich* (Army rank); *Specialist Berenich; the specialist*.

Special Operations. Capitalize in a reference to the unified military command that trains and equips unconventional-warfare units for three branches of the armed forces. The troops are the Army's Special Forces, Rangers and Special Operations Airborne Regiment; the Navy SEALs and Special Boat Units; and the Air Force Combat Controllers and Pararescue units. The Marines train their own guerrilla unit, known as Marine Force Recon.

species. See genus and species.

specter.

speeches and lectures. When citing a literary or fanciful title composed by the author, use quotation marks and capitalize the principal words (*"Our Fellow Savages of the Sandwich Islands," by Mark Twain*).

But when the title is purely descriptive, omit quotation marks, and capitalize only the words that have become a catchphrase: *Lincoln's Gettysburg Address; Roosevelt's Four Freedoms speech* (which was actually his State of the Union address to Congress on Jan. 6, 1941).

speechwriter.

speed(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *speed* are one word: speedboat, speed bump, speed demon, speed trap, speedup (n.), speedway.

spell-check, n. and v.

spelling. Words listed in this manual without explanation should be spelled and capitalized or lowercased as shown. For words not listed, spelling is governed by the latest edition of Webster's New World College Dictionary (John Wiley & Sons). If that dictionary shows more than one spelling of a word, use the one that is given with a full definition. If a word appears neither in this manual nor in the New World, consult the latest printing of Webster's Third New International Dictionary (G.&C. Merriam Company), but only for spelling, not for usage.

This manual is also the first authority for the spelling of place names. Different reference sources – one group for foreign names and one for domestic – govern place names not shown here. See geographic names.

spell out, in the sense of explaining or detailing, is overused. Try *detail, enumerate, explain, list* or *specify. Spell out in detail* is redundant. In the sense of rendering letter by letter, preferably use *spell*.

spilled (not *spilt*).

spinoff (n. and adj.), **spin off** (v.). In a *spinoff*, a company transforms a division or a subsidiary into a separate entity and distributes the shares to holders of the original corporation's stock. A sale is not a spinoff.

spiral (n. and v.) can suggest movement in any direction, not automatically upward or downward. It does not add much in references to things like *costs, prices* and *wages*.

spit. Use the word as both present and past tense (rather than *spat*).

spit and image (not *spitting image*) is the idiom for an exact likeness.

split infinitives are accepted by grammarians but irritate many readers. When a graceful alternative exists, avoid the construction: *To show the difference clearly* is better than *to clearly show the difference*. (Do not use the artificial *clearly to show the difference*.) When the split is unavoidable, accept it: *He was obliged to more than double the price*. Note, however, that compound verbs are an unrelated issue: They should usually be separated (as this one was) when used with an adverb. See adverb placement.

split-up (n.), **split up** (v.).

spokesman, spokeswoman. But not *spokesperson* or *spokespeople;* in a general reference, use a term like *press officer*. See men and women.

sport (v.) does not mean merely wear; it means wear ostentatiously or flamboyantly: *Even at a dinner for pinstriped Wall Street bankers, the senator sported an iridescent flamingo necktie*.

sports(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *sports* are one word: sports car, sportscast, sports editor, sportsman, sports medicine, sports page, sportswear, sportswoman, sportswriter.

sports sponsorship. If an event has an established name that does not publicize a commercial sponsor, use that name: *the Fiesta Bowl*. But when the sponsor's identity is part of an event's only name, use it: *the Buick Open*. Also use the official name of an arena (*Continental Airlines Arena*), but remind the reader of recent name changes: *formerly Brendan Byrne Arena*.

spring, springtime.

sputnik. Lowercase except in the name of a specific satellite: *Sputnik 5*. Use Arabic numerals.

Spuyten Duyvil (the strait between Manhattan and the Bronx).

squad (police). Lowercase: *sex crime squad; safe, loft and truck squad; etc.*

Squadron Leader *Lee M. Agneau* (British military and others); *Squadron Leader Agneau; the squadron leader*.

Square. Spell out and capitalize in articles as part of a name: *Washington Square*. The abbreviation (*Washington Sq.*) may be used in headlines, charts, tables and maps.

Sr., Jr. See Senior, Junior.

SS. for Saints, as in the names of churches: *the Church of SS. Peter and Paul*.

SS for Schutzstaffel, the Nazi special police. No periods because the letters are drawn from a single word.

S.S., for steamship, is an appropriate designation for only a relative handful of very old vessels. Except in datelines, write *the liner Queen Elizabeth 2* or *the tanker Exxon Valdez*. In a shipboard dateline, use a locating phrase (but not an imprecise one, like *at Sea*): *ABOARD QUEEN ELIZABETH 2, off Bermuda – etc.*

St. for Street, but only in headlines and charts, maps and tables.

St., ***Ste.*** Abbreviate *Saint* and *Sainte* in almost all place names. In references to the saints themselves, generally use *St.* with men's and women's names alike: *St. Agnes; St. George*. The feminine *Ste.* occurs in place names and occasionally in the name of a building or a church. The plural abbreviation is *SS.*, as in *SS. Peter and Paul*.

stable(-). Compounds formed with *stable* are one word: stableboy, stablehand, stableman, stablemate.

stadiums (not *stadia*). Capitalize the names of stadiums, playing fields and indoor sports arenas: *Shea Stadium; Yankee Stadium; the Yale Bowl; Franklin Field; Madison Square Garden* (*the Garden*). Also see sports sponsorship.

staff, staffer. Like *army*, the noun *staff* is collective, referring not to individuals but to the group. For individuals, use *staff members*. References to *three staff* or *many staff*, or to *training staff*, are jargon. Confine *staffer(s)* to informal contexts.

Staff Sgt. *Ashley K. Lam; Sergeant Lam; the sergeant*.

stage(-), (-)stage. Most but not all compounds beginning with *stage* are two words: stage door, stage fright, stagehand, stage-manage, stage manager, stage-struck, stage whisper.

And when *stage* is a suffix: center stage, offstage, onstage.

stage names. Generally use only letters of the alphabet in rendering performers' names, and use conventional capitalization. Fanciful use of punctuation marks, dollar signs or other characters is distracting and may look like an error.

stalactites hang from cave roofs like icicles; **stalagmites** rise from cave floors. A handy reminder: The *c* in one word stands for *ceiling;* the *g* in the other stands for *ground*.

stanch, staunch. Use *stanch* to mean stop a flow — of blood, for example. Use *staunch* to mean steadfast or resolute.

stand(-). Compounds formed with *stand* can be one word or hyphenated: stand-alone, standby (n. and adj.), standee, standin (n.), standoff (n.), standout (n. and adj.), standstill.

Standard & Poor's. In later references: *S.&P.* Also see debt ratings.

standard-bearer.

standard time. Lowercase the expression standing alone: 9 *a.m., standard time*. But *Eastern Standard Time* (and *Central, Mountain* or *Pacific*). Abbreviations: *E.S.T.*; *C.S.T.*; *M.S.T.*; *P.S.T.* Also see time.

Star-Ledger, The. The newspaper's office is still in Newark, but *Newark* is no longer part of the name.

"Star-Spangled Banner, The." Use quotation marks for the titles of anthems, as with other songs. See songs.

Start is acceptable on later references to the *strategic arms reduction treaties*: *Start I*, signed in 1991, and *Start II*, signed in 1993. *Start treaty* is redundant, and *Start agreement* only slightly less so.

state. Capitalize *New York State, Washington State* and formal references to any state government: *The State of Ohio brought the suit*. Lowercase *state* in references to a geographic area (*They drove through the state of Illinois*) and when it stands alone (*The state sued the city*). Capitalize when *State* appears with the name of an official agency or with an official title that is capitalized: *the State Education Department; State Treasurer Pat Y. Berenich*. Use *State* in references to New York and Washington when necessary to distinguish them from the cities, but omit *State* if the context is unmistakable: *The governors of California and New York have similar powers. Nebraska's population is smaller than Washington's*. Lowercase in the general sense: *affairs of state*.

Do not use *State* in a headline, standing alone, to mean New York State except in a locally distributed section or under a label that makes the meaning clear.

state abbreviations. The full list is below. Use no spaces between initials like *N.H.* Do not abbreviate *Alaska, Hawaii, Idaho, Iowa, Ohio* and *Utah*. (Do not ordinarily use the Postal Service's two-letter abbreviations; some are hard to tell apart on quick reading.) For a list of cities that do not routinely require state names, see datelines. But in articles, omit state names even more freely, so long as no ambiguity results. In particular, when a sentence mentions a series of cities and some carry no state abbreviations, the states should be omitted for all, if clarity permits.

Do not use a state abbreviation after a geographic name that does not designate a specific locality: *Martha's Vineyard, in Massachusetts*, not *Martha's Vineyard, Mass*. (Or use the name of a town on the island: *Edgartown, Mass*.) Other such expressions include *Cape Cod, Nantucket* and *Block Island*.

Abbreviations like *N. Dakota, S. Dakota, N. Carolina, S. Carolina* and *W. Virginia* may be used in headlines when unavoidable (especially for sports teams) and in tables or charts. Abbreviations may also be used to avoid ambiguity in online headlines, which must often stand alone. (Examples: *N.Y. Judge Resigns; N.J. Seeks Federal Aid; Calif. Court Upholds Ruling; Conn. Governor Signs Bill; Mass. Law Is Overturned*.)

The abbreviations to be used for the states, after the names of cities, town and counties, are as follows:

States & Territories

Alabama	Ala.
Arizona	Ariz.
Arkansas	Ark.
California	Calif.
Colorado	Colo.
Connecticut	Conn.
Delaware	Del.
District of Columbia	D.C.
Florida	Fla.
Georgia	Ga.
Illinois	Ill.
Indiana	Ind.
Kansas	Kan.
Kentucky	Ky.
Louisiana	La.

Maine	Me.
Maryland	Md.
Massachusetts	Mass.
Michigan	Mich.
Minnesota	Minn.
Mississippi	Miss.
Missouri	Mo.
Montana	Mont.
Nebraska	Neb.
Nevada	Nev.
New Hampshire	N.H.
New Jersey	N.J.
New Mexico	N.M.
New York	N.Y.
North Carolina	N.C.
North Dakota	N.D.
Oklahoma	Okla.
Oregon	Ore.
Pennsylvania	Pa.
Puerto Rico	P.R.
Rhode Island	R.I.
South Carolina	S.C.
South Dakota	S.D.
Tennessee	Tenn.
Texas	Tex.
Vermont	Vt.
Virginia	Va.
Virgin Islands	V.I.
Washington	Wash.
West Virginia	W.Va.

Wisconsin	Wis.
Wyoming	Wyo.

State Assembly; *the Assembly*.

State Capitol (the building); *the Capitol*.

state chairman or **chairwoman** of a political party. *Merrill N. Milori, Democratic state chairwoman; the state chairwoman; the chairwoman*.

State Commission of Investigation. The abbreviation, *S.C.I.*, is rarely familiar enough for headlines.

state groupings. Capitalize designations *like New England States, Middle Atlantic States, Middle Western States, Southern States, Gulf Coast States, Mountain States, Pacific States*, etc., when referring to complete groupings.

Statehouse. Capitalize in specific references. In New Jersey it is the *State House*.

Staten Island. See S.I.

Staten Island Botanical Garden.

State of the State Message. For a governor's written report, if it is formally so called. But a related speech is the *State of the State address*.

State of the Union Message. For the president's written report to Congress. But the related speech is the *State of the Union address*.

State Senate; *the Senate*.

states' rights.

State University of New York. A system of more than 60 two-year and four-year colleges and graduate programs supported by the state. The acronym *SUNY* is acceptable on later references and in headlines. The system's website provides information about SUNY and its campuses. The campuses' formal names (*State University of New York College at Brockport*, for example) are often cumbersome. In most cases, a more familiar name (*SUNY College at Brockport*, for example, or *Stony Brook University*) can be used, with a graceful notation elsewhere that the school is part of the State University system.

The State University has its own board and should not be confused with the University of the State of New York. Also see City University of New York.

statewide.

stationary (unmoving), **stationery** (office supplies).

station house.

statute mile. See mile.

staunch, stanch. Use *staunch* as an adjective to mean steadfast or resolute. Use *stanch* as a verb to mean stop the flow of a liquid — blood, for instance.

St. Bernard (the dog).

St. Catharines (in Ontario).

stealth. Lowercase this term, without quotation marks, for the technology that makes airplanes harder to detect by radar. Though the word is often coupled with a model number, it is not part of the name. See aircraft names.

steam(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *steam* are one word: steam bath, steamboat, steam boiler, steam engine, steamfitter, steam heat, steamroller, steam room, steamship, steam shovel, steam table.

step(-). Nearly all compounds formed with *step* are one word: stepbrother, stepchild, stepdaughter, stepfather, stepladder, stepmother, stepsister, stepson, step-up (adj. and n.).

steppingstone.

stereotypes. Avoid sweeping characterizations of ethnic, racial or religious groups, or of the sexes and sexual orientations. And take care to detect stereotypes that are indirect, sometimes known as code words. References to *qualified minority* applicants will fall on some ears as an implication that unqualified is the norm. Calling a black man *articulate* or *well dressed* will strike some readers as a suggestion that these qualities are exceptional. Other readers may find similar overtones in the observation that an Asian-American speaks unaccented English, that religious people are *devout* or that a woman is *decisive*. The best protection is for writers and editors to satisfy themselves that descriptions are relevant, and preferably to demonstrate how. Also see ethnicity.

sterling. See currencies.

stevedore. A *stevedore* can be either a waterfront cargo loading company or the company's laborer. *Longshoreman* is another word for the laborer.

Stevens Institute of Technology (in Hoboken, N.J.).

St.-Germain-des-Prés (not *Près*), the Left Bank church and neighborhood in Paris.

St. James's Palace. Also see ambassador to Britain and Court of St. James's.

St. John the Divine, Cathedral Church.

St. Luke's-Roosevelt Hospital, in New York. It has two main centers, at 114th Street and Amsterdam Avenue (formerly St. Luke's Hospital) and at 59th Street and 10th Avenue (formerly Roosevelt Hospital). When either figures in the news, specify the location.

St. Mark's Church in-the-Bowery. The full name has just two hyphens. On later reference, make it *St. Mark's* or *St. Mark's in-the-Bowery*.

St. Marks Place (in Manhattan).

stock(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *stock* are one word: stockbroker, stock car, stock certificate, stockholder, stockman, stock market, stockpot, stockroom, stock split, stock-still, stockyard.

stock prices are reported in dollars and cents (or other currencies, when appropriate), rounded to two decimal places.

stone. As a unit of weight used in Britain, it is equal to 14 pounds.

Stone Age.

stop(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *stop* are one word: stopgap, stoplight, stop-off (n.), stopover (n.), stoppage, stopwatch.

store(-), (-)store. Most compounds formed with *store* as a prefix are one word: storefront, storehouse, storekeeper, storeroom.

Most but not all compounds formed with *store* as a suffix are two words: bookstore, cigar store, department store, drugstore, grocery store.

storms. The National Weather Service defines a storm as having winds of 55 to 74 miles an hour – between gale force and hurricane force. When the service issues a *storm warning*, it foresees sustained winds of those speeds. The word *storm*, though, need not be restricted by this definition: *dust storm, hailstorm, ice storm, rainstorm, snowstorm, thunderstorm, windstorm*, *etc.* Also see blizzard; cyclone; gale; hurricane; severe thunderstorm; tornado; typhoon.

story. The preferred word for a news report that is mainly text is *article. Story* is acceptable to refer more broadly to coverage that includes elements like video or multimedia presentations.

St. Peter's University (in Jersey City).

straight, meaning heterosexual, is classed as slang by some dictionaries and standard by others. Avoid any use that conveys an in-group flavor. But use the term freely (adj. only) in phrases drawing a contrast with gay: *The film attracted gay and straight audiences alike*.

strait (passage) is almost always singular: *Bering Strait; Strait of Gibraltar; Strait of Malacca*. An exception is the *Straits of Florida*, though some authorities make that singular, too.

straitjacket (n. and v.).

strait-laced.

strangle. It means not merely choke, but choke to death. Also: *stranglehold*.

strapped, meaning short of cash, is colloquial and trite. And *cash-strapped* is redundant.

stratagem, with two *a's*, unlike *strategy*.

strategic arms agreements. See SALT and Start.

stratum, strata. In nonscientific contexts, *layer(s)* is less stodgy.

streetcar.

street-length (adj.).

streets and avenues. In routine references to streets, avenues, etc., spell out and capitalize ordinal numbers through *Ninth*. Also spell out and capitalize *Avenue, Street, West, East*, etc.: *First Avenue; Fifth Avenue; Park Avenue; East Ninth Street*. Use figures for *10th* and above: *10th Avenue; West 14th Street; 42nd Street; West 113th Street*.

Use the plural (*Streets* or *Avenues*) when *and* occurs in a location: *between 43rd and 44th Streets*. But use the singular in a *to* phrase: *along Fifth Avenue, from 43rd to 44th Street*.

Also see addresses.

stricken. In mentioning the onset of an illness, avoid terms that overstate the patient's disability. Make it *she contracted tuberculosis*, not the dramatic *she was stricken with tuberculosis*. Also see afflicted; suffer; victim.

strikebreaker.

strikeout (n. and adj.), **strike out** (v.).

strongman, for a dictator or dominant political figure. Otherwise: *strong man*.

structure. As a verb, although bureaucratic-sounding, the term is unavoidable in the sense of setting the terms of public or corporate debt. In other meanings, conversational replacements include *arrange, build, construct* and *organize*.

Students Against Driving Drunk. Its acronym, *SADD*, will rarely be familiar enough for a headline. Note that the phrasing differs from that of *Mothers Against Drunk Driving*.

styles and schools in the arts are listed separately. See arts terminology.

Styrofoam is a trademark of the Dow Chemical Company for a polystyrene used in insulation and boat construction. It is not used in cups or food containers; for those, write *plastic foam*.

sub(-). Except before a proper noun or in Latin expressions that have migrated into English, compounds formed with *sub* are one word: subassembly, subatomic, subbasement, subcommittee, subcompact, subcontinent, subculture, subdivision, subfloor, subfreezing, sublet, submachine gun, subnormal, subplot, sub rosa (never hyphenated), sub-Saharan, subsoil, substandard, subtext, subtitle, subtotal, subzero.

subcommittees. See congressional committees and subcommittees.

subject-verb agreement. See number of subject and verb.

subjunctive. Use this form of verb to express a wishful notion or a proposition contrary to fact:

- *The mayor wishes the commissioner were retiring this year* (not *was retiring*, because the commissioner is staying on).
- *If the commissioner were rich, she could retire* (not *was rich*, because she needs the salary).
- *If the bill were passed, taxes could go down* (not *was passed*, because it is still just a hope).

Do not use the subjunctive form (even with a tantalizing *if* in the sentence) when the intent is merely to convert an *is* idea to the past tense:

- *The mayor asked if the commissioner was rich* (the past version of *asks if she is rich*).
- *Secretary Kuzu asked if the bill was going to pass this year* (simply the past version of *asks if it is*).
- But: *If the bill were going to pass, Secretary Kuzu would know by now* (not *was going to pass*, but *were*, because the hypothesis is untrue: The bill is unlikely to pass).

One cue to use the subjunctive is the phrase *as though* or (preferred) *as if*. Either phrase signifies that what follows is contrary to fact: *Secretary Kuzu acts as if she were* (not *was*) *in the White House. The actor looked as if he were sick*.

subpoena, subpoenaed.

sub-Saharan. Use this adjectival form: *sub-Saharan region*. There is no place called the sub-Sahara. Also see Sahara and Sahel.

subway lines. New York City once had three systems: the BMT (Brooklyn-Manhattan Transit), the IND (Independent Subway System) and the IRT (Interborough Rapid Transit). While the abbreviations survive in local idiom, they are confusing to visitors and newcomers. Except in direct quotations, use *the A train* (or *line*), *the N train, the No. 6 train, the No. 4 line*.

such. It is used as an adjective (*such men exist*) and as an adverb to indicate degree (*such big pears*).

such as and *like* are equally acceptable to introduce an example or examples: *Impressionist painters like Monet and Degas; expenses such as rent and utilities*.

Sudan (not *the Sudan*).

suffer. Avoid this pitying term in references to people with disabilities. Make it *he has AIDS*, not *he suffers from AIDS*. Also see afflicted; stricken; victim.

suffixes and prefixes, with the words they form, are listed separately.

suffocate. Its primary meaning is not merely stop breathing, but do so fatally.

suffragan bishop. See bishop.

suffragette. Use *suffragist* instead. The *-ette* ending is often considered belittling.

suite (music). Capitalize in a title: *Bach's Suite No. 1 for Orchestra; Ravel's "Daphnis et Chloé" Suite No. 2*.

sukkah. The tabernacle, or hut, that symbolizes the Jewish autumn harvest festival of Sukkot.

Sukkot, the Jewish Feast of Tabernacles, celebrates the autumn harvest.

sulfate, sulfite. They are different salts. Verify compounds' names when they occur.

sulfur, not *sulphur*, in all its lowercase forms. Use *Sulphur* in proper names only. Also: *sulfa*, a class of antibacterial drug.

summaries, online. See headlines.

summer, summertime. But: *summer time* for the British equivalent of daylight time.

summit is used as a modifier in phrases like *summit meeting* or *summit conference*, but preferably only when the participants are top leaders of powerful countries. As a noun, *summit* may designate the level or format of a meeting (*the issue will go to the summit*) but is jargon when used as a synonym for *meeting* (*they held a summit*). Resist devices like *minisummit*.

sun is lowercase in all references.

Sun Belt.

Sunni Muslims, one of the two major branches of Islam, accept the first four caliphs as the rightful successors to Muhammad. Also see Shiite Muslims.

SUNY, on later reference or in headlines, for the State University of New York.

super(-). Most compounds formed with *super* are one word, except before a proper name: superabundant, superagency, supercarrier, supercharge, supereloquent, Superfund (the fund devoted to cleaning up toxic waste), superheated, superhighway, superhuman, superindifference, superman, supermarket, supernatural, superpowers, superrefined, super-Republican, supersaturated, supersonic, superstar, superstate, superstructure, supertanker.

Do not use *super* by itself unless it appears in a name (*Super Bowl*, for instance) or in direct quotations or texts.

Super Bowl is two words, capitalized, and takes Roman numerals: *Super Bowl*

XLVII.

Superintendent of Schools *Dale K. Arniotis; Superintendent Arniotis; the superintendent of schools* or *the superintendent*.

superior general (religious). *The Very Rev.* (or, in certain orders, *the Most Rev.*) *Lindsay X. Baranek, superior general of the Jesuit order* (or *of the Society of Jesus*); *the superior general; Father Baranek*. Plural: *superiors general*. Also see Archbishop; bishop; Most Rev., Rt. Rev.; Rev.; Very Rev.

supersede, without a c.

supine means lying face up; *prone* means lying face down.

Supreme Court of the United States; *United States Supreme Court; the Supreme Court*. In later references: *the court*. Avoid *High Court;* in a narrow headline, *Justices* will serve. In reporting decisions, include case names and docket numbers (*Burlington Industries Inc. v. Ellerth, No. 97-569*). Note that the title is *chief justice of the United States*, not *of the Supreme Court*. Also see Associate Justice and Chief Justice.

Surgeon General *Tracy R. Lamm; the surgeon general*. The full title is *surgeon general of the Public Health Service*, not *surgeon general of the United States*. Plural: *surgeons general*.

Suriname, Surinamese (sing. and pl.). Suriname was formerly Surinam and, before that, Dutch Guiana. The adjective is *Surinamese* or *Suriname*. The capital is Paramaribo.

Surrealism. Capitalize in reference to the movement in art and literature that developed in Europe in the late 1910s and early 1920s. Lowercase *surreal* to mean merely bizarre or grotesque. See arts terminology.

Surrogate *Hilary H. Kikondoo; Surrogate Kikondoo; Judge Kikondoo; the surrogate*.

Surrogate's Court, Surrogates' Courts.

suspect. Fairness calls for *suspect* in referring to people accused of crimes; that reflects the presumption of innocence. But when no one has yet been accused, *suspect* is the wrong word for the person sought or involved. Use *robber, rapist* or a similarly specific term.

suspected. If a *suspected* architect is an architect, then a *suspected* rustler is a rustler. In other words, avoid constructions implying that someone merely *accused* or *charged* has been convicted. Make it *suspected of rustling*. Also see allegedly.

swath (n., a cleared strip, like a mower's), **swathe** (v., to wrap or bind).

sweatshirt, sweatsuit, sweatpants.

swimming. Times of races are given in figures: *57.6 seconds; 0:57.6*. Competitions involve four strokes: breaststroke, backstroke, freestyle and the butterfly. A race with all four strokes is called a *medley*.

Swiss, standing alone, is the travel brand name used by Swiss International Air Lines, which absorbed routes formerly flown by the bankrupt Swissair.

syllabus(es) (not *syllabi*).

symbolism (art and literature). Capitalize in reference to the European movement of the late 19th and early 20th centuries. Lowercase in more general references. See arts terminology.

symphonies. Capitalize the designation of a symphony without a nickname or a special title, and use no quotation marks: *Brahms's Symphony No. 1*, or *Brahms's First Symphony*. A literary or fanciful title goes in quotation marks: *Beethoven's "Eroica" Symphony; Berlioz's "Symphonie Fantastique."* Capitalize the name of a movement: *the Scherzo; the Andante*. Lowercase if the movement is merely numbered or located: *the third movement; the finale*. When a work is mentioned more than in passing, the opus or other catalog number follows, in parentheses: *Tchaikovsky's Symphony No. 4 in F minor (Op. 36)*. See music and opus.

Synod of Bishops (Roman Catholic).

Syrian Catholic Church. A Roman Catholic church of the Eastern Rite.

Szechwan. Use *Sichuan* instead for the province in China. See Chinese names.

T

Tabasco is the name of a Mexican state and a trademark for hot sauce.

table (v.). Do not use *table* as a verb. Its meanings conflict in British and American English. In the United States, it means *set aside* (or *shelve*) a topic on the agenda. In Britain and at the United Nations, it means *bring up for discussion*.

tableau(s).

table d'hôte.

tablespoonful(s). A tablespoonful is equal to three teaspoonfuls.

taekwondo, one word, for the Korean martial-arts discipline.

Taft-Hartley Act.

tailor-made (adj., before a noun).

tailwind, headwind.

Taipei (the capital of Taiwan).

Taiwan should be used in datelines after city and town names; the island's capital is Taipei. Either name can serve, in headlines and articles, as a synonym for the entity that calls itself the Republic of China. Because the governments in Beijing and Taipei both claim to speak for all of China, phrasing (except in quotations) should remain neutral on the island's status. While many of Taiwan's people are Chinese (émigrés from the mainland, or descendants of émigrés), the people native to the island are *Taiwanese*.

Tajik(s) for the people of Tajikistan.

take, bring. Use *bring* to mean movement toward the speaker or writer; *take* means movement away from the speaker or writer (in fact, any movement that is not toward the speaker or writer). So the Canadian prime minister cannot be *bringing* a group of industrialists to a conference in Detroit, except in an article written from Detroit. Since datelines do not govern headlines, *bring* in a Times headline usually refers to movement toward New York, or toward the United States.

takeaway. Outside quotations, consider alternatives to this business jargon for the major points gleaned from a report, speech or meeting. In a restaurant context, use *takeout*.

takeoff, takeover (n. and adj.). But as verbs: *take off* and *take over*.

Taliban. The movement of militant Sunni Muslims in Afghanistan. Ordinarily use the term as a plural: *The Taliban are seeking allies abroad*.

Talmud. The overall term (literally, *study*) for the body of Jewish oral law and tradition. It consists of the *Mishna*, which is the written version of the oral tradition, and the *Gemara*, which is commentaries on the Mishna by later scholars.

tanks (military). Use Arabic numerals in designations: *M-60; M-60s*.

tape (v.), **tape-record** (v.), **tape recording** (n.) Also: *videotape* (n. and v.).

tapping (of a telephone). Distinguish it from *bugging*. See bug.

taps, the name of the bugle call, is lowercase and takes no quotation marks. It is construed as a singular.

Tass is acceptable in all references to the Russian government's press agency, officially known as Itar-Tass. *Itar* stands for Information Telegraph Agency of Russia. *Tass* was formed from the Russian initials for Telegraph Agency of the Soviet Union.

TB for tuberculosis.

Tbilisi (formerly Tiflis) is the capital of Georgia, the country on the Black Sea.

tchotchke(s), the Yiddish for *knickknack(s)* or *trinket(s)*, is also colloquial English, to be used sparingly.

tea(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *tea* are two words: tea bag, tea biscuit, tea cart, teacup, tea dance, teahouse, teakettle, tea party, teapot, tearoom, tea set, teaspoon, tea table, tea taster, teatime, tea tray, tea wagon. See teaspoonful(s).

Teachers College (at Columbia University).

team(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *team* are one word: teammate, team play, team teaching, teamwork.

Teamster. Ordinarily use *Teamsters union* in first references to the International Brotherhood of Teamsters (formally, the International Brotherhood of Teamsters, Chauffeurs, Warehousemen and Helpers of America). Also: *the Teamsters*. An individual union member is a *Teamster*, but lowercase *teamster* as a job title.

tear gas (n.), **tear-gas** (v).

teaspoonful(s). A teaspoonful is one-third of a tablespoonful.

Technicolor is a trademark for color motion picture film and processes. Dictionaries accept a lowercase variation in the general sense of *varicolored* or *brightly colored*, but use those expressions instead, or *multicolored*.

technicality. Be cautious about using this term in a legal context, where it can seem tendentious.

Tech. Sgt. *Dana J. Kuzu; Sergeant Kuzu; the sergeant*.

teenage, teenager. Without a hyphen. Before a noun, use *teenage* (not *teenaged*, except in a quotation): *teenage daughter*. And do not use *teen* as a separate word, even in headlines, unless the reference is to a span of dates or ages (*inventions during the teens and 20s; sons in their teens;* but not *teen smoking*).

Tehran (the capital of Iran).

telecommuter, telecommuting.

telephone calls, telephone messages. Calls are *returned*. Messages are *answered* or *responded to*, but not *returned*.

telephone numbers. For United States, Canadian and similar numbers, including toll-free numbers, use hyphens after the area code and the exchange: *920-448-0050*. When a business renders its number in words, provide a translation for callers with all-number keypads: *1-800-NYTIMES (1-800-698-4637)*. If a number is toll-free, say so; if it is "pay per call" (a "900" number), give the price: *75 cents a minute*, for example.

For calls from the United States to other countries, give the international access code, *011*, followed by the country code, the city code (if any) and the number. Group the numerals with periods or hyphens according to local practice: *011-999-00-555-0123*.

teleprompter is a generic term for a prompting device in a television studio; *prompter* is a briefer synonym. (A company called TelePrompTer stopped making the devices in 1963 and was absorbed by Westinghouse Broadcasting in 1981.)

televangelist has a disparaging tone. Use a neutral term like *religious broadcaster*.

television networks. Omit periods in abbreviations for networks and network subsidiaries, for consistency with the appearance of station call letters, which often adjoin them in news articles. See ABC; BBC; CBS; CNN; NBC; PBS. Also see channels.

television programs. In news articles, use quotation marks around their titles and capitalize the principal words: *"Issues and Answers"*; *NBC's "Tonight" show; "The CBS Evening News." Show* applies to entertainment, but *program* or *broadcast* is preferred for news and public affairs except in the expression *talk show*.

television ratings. In audience estimates for television programs, a *rating point* is 1 percent of the number of households that can be reached by a given station or network. The Nielsen Company adjusts the basic audience figure annually. In 2012, it put the number of homes in the broadcast television audience at 114.1 million, so one rating point — for a show sent over the air — was equal to 1,141,000 households. For cable, however, the number of households in the potential audience differs from one service or network to another, and so does the size of a cable rating point. A *share* is the percentage of the sets in use in a station's or network's audience that were tuned to a given program.

None of the ratings estimates include viewing of programming on the Internet. As television viewership fractures into tenths of percentage points, rating points are increasingly being replaced by actual viewership estimates.

telltale.

temblor (not *tremblor*) for earthquakes.

temperatures. Fahrenheit readings are the norm for casual or passing references, and in weather stories aimed largely at American readers. But if a story referring to temperatures is likely to be of interest to international readers, provide a Celsius equivalent at least once. Examples might include news of a European heat wave or reports on climate change and other scientific topics. Use an online conversion tool to avoid arithmetic errors, but do not give a converted figure that is more precise than the original: For 75 degrees Fahrenheit, the equivalent is 24 degrees Celsius, not 23.89 degrees Celsius.

Use figures for a thermometer reading: *The temperature was 9 at midnight; His temperature was 101.9*. If conversion to Celsius is warranted, specify the two scales: *Temperatures in Moscow overnight dropped to minus 20 Fahrenheit* (*minus 29 Celsius*). Use figures for a "decade" of degrees: *The temperature stayed in the 90s for three hours*. But spell out a number of degrees (as distinct from a thermometer reading) below 10: *The temperature dropped nine degrees overnight*.

Avoid the degree symbol and the abbreviations F and C in articles. In headlines and tables or charts, use the minus sign, the degree mark and the abbreviations as needed: *–10°*; *30°F; 12°C*. (The minus sign is an en dash, half as wide as a normal dash.)

Do not write *He had a temperature*. Everyone alive always has a temperature. Make it either *He had a high temperature* or *He had a fever*. Better: *His temperature was 104*.

Also see Celsius, centigrade; Fahrenheit; heat index; Kelvin.

tempo(s) (not *tempi*).

Ten Commandments (the Decalogue). Do not abbreviate or use figures: *First Commandment; Third Commandment*. Also *Tenth Commandment* (an exception to the style of using figures above *ninth*).

tendinitis (not *tendonitis*).

Tennessee. Abbreviate as *Tenn*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

tennis. Give a result this way, using the scores of the sets that made up the match: *Ashley Karitsa won by 7-5, 3-6, 6-4*. (The winner of two sets out of three or three sets out of five wins the match.)

The score of a set (7-5, for example) represents the numbers of games won by the sides. To win a set, the side must normally take six games and hold a two-game lead. If the score of a set is 6-6, the winner is usually determined in an additional game, a *tiebreaker*.

A side's score in an individual game ordinarily progresses from *love* (meaning zero) to *15*, then *30* and *40*, which represent one, two and three points respectively. At least four points are needed to win a game. If each side has three points, the score is *deuce*, and one side must then score two consecutive points to win. The side that scores the point after deuce has the *advantage*.

Players hitting the ball back and forth are *rallying*, not *volleying. Volley* means hit the ball before it strikes the ground. The Grand Slam of tennis comprises the Australian Open, the French Open, Wimbledon and the United States Open.

tenpins. Also: *ninepins*. When referring to the game, use a singular verb; when referring to the pins, use a plural.

tenses. See sequence of tenses; conditional tenses; subjunctive.

terabyte. A *terabyte* is about a thousand gigabytes, a million megabytes or a trillion bytes. In technical contexts, it may be abbreviated *TB*: *a 500TB disk drive*. Also see bit; byte; gigabyte; kilobyte.

terror-. Compounds formed with *terror* are hyphenated: terror-ridden, terror-stricken, terror-struck.

testimony. Extensive passages of legal or legislative testimony printed verbatim in the body of a news article should be separately paragraphed, in normal body type, full column width, and without quotation marks. Use the attribution labels *Q.* and *A.* (punctuated with periods), but replace them with names entirely in capitals when the speakers are first identified, or when the speaker changes. Page designers will specify the typography for the names, depending on the length of the passage. Use parentheses when describing an action that is not part of the dialogue: *Q. Will you kindly point out the figures. (Handing the witness a list.)* Also see texts and excerpts. And for the punctuation of a sentence that trails off or is interrupted abruptly, see quotations.

Tet (the Lunar New Year).

tête-à-tête.

Texas. Abbreviate as *Tex.* after the names of cities, towns and counties.

Texas A&M University.

text is acceptable as a noun and a verb in references to digital messaging services. Also see abbreviations.

texts and excerpts. A verbatim text or transcript, or an extract, begins with an italic introduction explaining the material's nature and source. The introduction specifies any excerpting (and attributes it, unless it is by The Times), and credits the translation, if any, specifying the original language. If the full document is available online, there should be an embedded link.

If a speech text was issued before the event, the introduction should refer to a *prepared text* or to one *prepared for delivery;* the headline may say simply *text*. After the event, *prepared* is deleted, and ideally an actual transcript replaces the text.

Transcript denotes a literal rendering of speech. It is *a* transcript, not *the*, because punctuation and paragraphing vary according to the ear of the listener; the introduction should therefore credit the transcribing. *Text* (always *the*) denotes reproduction of a written document. *Excerpts* (always *from*, never *of*) may apply to written or spoken material. (Those distinctions govern headlines as well as introductions.) *Excerpts from the text* is redundant; delete the last two words.

A formal introduction (for a document in current news) normally begins *Following is a transcript of* or *Following is the text of* or *Following are excerpts from*. But if the material is chosen more for flavor than for content, or is drawn from history as a refresher, introduce it with a narrative lead instead, and use a feature headline, possibly a vivid phrase from the document. A one-sentence introduction ends with a colon. A longer introduction may end with a period.

When excerpts are used, editors should select one or a few substantial, coherent sections rather than a larger number of short bites too fragmented to convey the tone of the whole.

Self-contained texts, transcripts and excerpts are not enclosed in quotation marks. Spelling, punctuation and indentions in a verbatim document (though not grammar or word usage) should conform to The Times's style unless literal reproduction is necessary to convey the significance or to suggest the flavor of the original copy, such as a mobile text message or social media update.

If the text of a judge's opinion uses italics to designate court cases, substitute quotation marks in any instance that might otherwise be cryptic: *as we learn from "Bush v. Gore,"* or *the lesson that "Citizens United" teaches us*. In a transcript of a speech, paragraphing should be adjusted for ease of reading.

(Exception: In a long or complex text, occupying at least a full page in the newspaper, the document's own style may be retained literally, to simplify production.)

For the punctuation of an abrupt interruption in a transcript, or of a comment that trails off, see quotations. For the treatment of Q. and A. labels, see testimony.

In verbatim documents — though usually not in news articles — ellipses are used to signal omissions, whether by the newspaper or by the supplier: three dots within a sentence, or three dots after the period at the end of a sentence or paragraph. Explanations by The Times or the supplier, when the intrusion is unavoidable, are set off by square brackets: *The bomber crashed 40 kilometers [about 25 miles] from the Chinese border*.

Ideally, in a long text, typographical color is provided by the document's own headings. Consult a page designer on the choice of faces and sizes to reflect the relative importance of text sections. If the original document includes numbered or lettered paragraphs, the labels may be detached, enclosed in brackets and boldfaced as headings for eye relief:

[III]

> He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures.

[IV]

> He has affected to render the military independent of and superior to the civil power.

[V]

> He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution and unacknowledged by our laws, giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation.

[A]

> For protecting them by a mock trial from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these states.

[1]

> For imposing taxes on us without our consent.

[a]

> For depriving us in many cases of the benefits of trial by jury.

In excerpts, if a heading is omitted in the midst of a lettered or numbered sequence, avoid a jarring effect by deleting the letters or numbers of all parallel headings in that sequence.

text, transcript. A *text* is a reproduction of a written document. A *transcript* is a rendition of a spoken statement or exchange. For the many conventions that govern the printing of verbatim material, see texts and excerpts.

T, fit to a (not *fit to a tee*).

T formation.

Thai names. Nearly every Thai uses a given name followed by a surname. But in later references, the given name is used with the courtesy title: *Foreign Minister Surin Pitsuwan; Mr. Surin*.

Thanksgiving, Thanksgiving Day. The fourth Thursday in November.

that (conj.). After a verb like *said, disclosed* or *announced*, it is often possible to omit *that* for conciseness: *He said he felt peaked*. But if the words after *said* or any other verb can be mistaken for its direct object, the reader may be momentarily led down a false trail, and *that* must be retained: *The mayor disclosed that her plan for the rhubarb festival would cost $3 million*.

When a time element follows the verb, *that* is always needed to make quickly clear whether the time element applies to the material before or after it: *The governor announced on Tuesday that he would organize a knackwurst fiesta*.

Often a sentence with two parallel clauses requires the expression *and that* in the second part; in such a case, keep *that* in the first part also, for balance: *The mayor said that she might run again and that if she did, her brother would be her campaign manager*.

that, which. Use *that*, not *which*, in a restrictive clause – a clause necessary to the reader's understanding of the sentence: *The town that the pitcher calls home is tiny Hawley, Pa*. (The sentence serves no purpose without *that the pitcher calls home*.) Note that there are no commas around the clause. In a nonrestrictive clause – one providing added information, not essential to understand the sentence – use *which*, preceded by a comma: *Hawley, Pa., which the pitcher calls home, is tiny*. (The sentence is understandable without *which the pitcher calls home*.)

that, who. Use *who* or *whom* to refer to people. Use *that* or *which* to refer to objects and plants. As for animals, use *who* if the animal's sex is known or if it has been personalized with a name. Otherwise, use *that* or *which*.

the. Capitalize uniformly in the names of newspapers, journals and magazines: *The New York Times, The Times; The Daily News, The News*. But lowercase *the* when using a publication title as a modifier (*the Daily News reporter*), because in such a case, *the* is grammatically attached to the noun (*reporter*). Some publication names do not include *the*, even in conversation: *Newsday; National Review; Reader's Digest; Congressional Quarterly*.

Lowercase *the* in names of organizations, companies, schools, restaurants, hotels, *etc.* And the country is *the Netherlands*, though its capital is *The Hague*. Also see a, an, the.

theater, theatergoer. Capitalize *Theater* in names: *the Shubert Theater*. For a consistent appearance in the news columns, where numerous theater names occur side by side daily, use the *er* spelling of *theater* uniformly. Also see arts locations.

The Dalles (in Oregon). An exception to the usual preference for lowercasing *the*.

thee, thou, he, him, his, who, whom. Do not capitalize, even in references to God, Jesus, the Holy Ghost (or the Holy Spirit) or Allah.

theft. See larceny, burglary, robbery, theft; also see mugging.

The Hague, an exception to the usual preference for lowercasing *the*.

their, theirs, them, they. These pronouns are plural. Do not apply them to singular antecedents (like *anyone* or *someone*) even when the aim is to avoid assuming maleness or femaleness; other solutions exist. See anybody, anyone, everybody, everyone, no one, someone.

then. Use the word as an adverb (*they were married then*) or a noun (*by then, the game was over*). Dictionaries accept it as an adjective also (*her then husband; then-President Carter; Mr. Carter, the then president*), but that usage produces clumsy phrasing with the sound of overliteral translation from a foreign language. Replace it with phrases using *then* as an adverb: *Mr. Carter, then the president; Leslie T. Lamb, who was then her husband*.

thereby. A musty word, redolent of old lawbooks. Try *that way* or *in that way* instead.

theretofore. See heretofore, hitherto.

thermos (n. and adj.) for a vacuum bottle or flask. The term is no longer a trademark.

thesauruses (not *thesauri*).

Thessaloniki (not Salonika) for Greece's second-largest city.

third(-). Compounds formed with *third* can be one word, hyphenated or two words: third base, third baseman, third-class (adj.), third degree (n.), third-degree (adj.), third dimension, third grader, thirdhand (adj. and adv.), third rail. Also see third world.

third, thirdly. Use *third*, not *thirdly*, in enumerations. The phrase is a short form of *what is third*.

third world. Lowercase, without quotation marks. The phrase was coined in 1952 to denote countries outside the Western and Soviet political spheres. It has come to mean the economically underdeveloped or emerging nations. Do not use it as a term of disparagement for primitive conditions.

Thirty Years' War.

Thomas Edison State College (in Trenton).

thoroughgoing.

thrash (flog or flail), **thresh** (remove grain husks). In the idioms for grappling with a problem, use the spellings *thrash out* and *thrash over*.

thrift. Use this jargon word as a last resort, in headlines only and as an adjective only, in reference to savings and loan associations and their regulators (*thrift agency*). Do not use *thrifts* or *thrift units* in this context.

Throgs Neck (the bridge and the neighborhood).

throw. Coined as a witty synonym for *give a party*, the colloquial *throw a party* has grown trite. Use *give*.

Thruway. This spelling may be used in names of roads. In New York, it is officially the *Gov. Thomas E. Dewey Thruway* (formerly the New York State

Thruway), operated by the New York State Thruway Authority. *Dewey Thruway* or *New York Thruway* can serve as a first reference. In later references: *the Thruway*.

thunder(-). Compounds formed with *thunder* are one word: thunderbolt, thunderclap, thundercloud, thunderhead, thundershower, thunderstorm, thunderstruck. Also see severe thunderstorm.

thus (adv.), not *thusly*.

ticket. Use it as a noun only. As a verb (*ticketing a double-parked car* or *stadium ticketing*) it has a bureaucratic sound.

tidal wave is restricted in scientific terminology to a sea wave that is due chiefly to the effects of lunar gravity. For the wave induced by an earthquake or submarine landslide, *tsunami* is the correct scientific term. Because it is relatively obscure, *tsunami* should be explained.

tidelands. The area between the high-tide and low-tide marks.

tiebreaker.

tie-up (n.), **tie up** (v.).

Tiffany & Company.

tightrope.

'til. Do not use except in quoting a written or printed source. But *till* is largely interchangeable with *until*.

tilde. See accent marks.

time. Use numerals in giving clock time: *10:30 a.m.*; *10:30*. Do not use *half-past 10* except in a direct quotation. Also avoid the redundant *10:30 a.m. Thursday morning* and *Monday afternoon at 2 p.m*.

Midnight refers to the end of one day, not the beginning of the next. References to midnight should elaborate on which day is meant: *The strike deadline is midnight Tuesday, and labor talks are expected to continue late into the evening on Tuesday*. Avoid

12 a.m. and *12 p.m*., which are confusing. Use *noon* and *midnight* instead.

Styles and abbreviations for the principal time zones in the United States are:

Continental U.S. Time Zones

Eastern Standard Time, *E.S.T.*	*Eastern Daylight Time,* *E.D.T.*
Central Standard Time, *C.S.T.*	*Central Daylight Time,* *C.D.T.*
Mountain Standard Time, *M.S.T.*	*Mountain Daylight Time,* *M.D.T.*
Pacific Standard Time, *P.S.T.*	*Pacific Daylight Time,* *P.D.T.*

Include the time zone when it is pertinent: *10 a.m. Wednesday, Central Standard Time* (or just *Central time*). Use *summer time* for the British equivalent of daylight time.

By act of Congress, the legislatures in states that straddle time zones may choose to observe daylight time or not. For those that do, the law sets the changeover times as 2 a.m. on the second Sunday in March, when clocks are set forward one hour, and 2 a.m. on the first Sunday in November, when they are set back an hour.

Greenwich Mean Time (G.M.T.) has been replaced as the world standard by *Coordinated Universal Time*, which is the equivalent but is corrected by atomic clocks to take account of the earth's rotation. The abbreviation for Coordinated Universal Time, chosen as a compromise that would favor neither English nor French, is U.T.C.

Clock times outside the Eastern zone may be translated parenthetically, but only if the conversion is truly useful to readers or if the news event is momentous: *The shooting erupted in the Middle East at 10 a.m. (3 a.m. Friday, Eastern Standard Time). Eastern time* is an acceptable short form of Eastern Standard or Daylight Time, but *New York time* is too parochial. In translations, name the day rather than write *yesterday, today* or *tomorrow*.

An event is dated by the zone where it occurs. If, for example, an earthquake strikes California at 11 p.m. on May 1 (when it is already May 2 in New York), later articles should give May 1 as the date of the quake.

In giving elapsed times of voyages, races, etc., do not use commas: *4 days 16 hours 13 minutes*. Also see dates and years, decades, centuries.

time(-), (-)time. Most but not all compounds formed with *time* as a prefix are two words: time bomb, timecard, time clock, time-honored (adj.), timekeeper, timeless, time limit, time lock, timeout, time sheet, time warp, time zone.

Most but not all compounds formed with *time* as a suffix are one word: all-time (adj.), daytime, drive time, full time (adv.), full-time (adj.), lifetime, longtime, nighttime, overtime, part time (adv.), part-time (adj.), real time. Also see onetime, onetime.

Time & Life Building.

time elements in leads. The lead of a news article is most often in the past tense. In that kind of lead, the main clause must include a time element – typically the day of the week. Example: *President Dann signed the fisheries employment bill on Tuesday, hailing "a new and lasting era of opportunity on both coasts."* (But not: *Signing the fisheries employment bill on Tuesday, President Dann hailed*, etc.; the time element should not be sidelined in a parenthetical or secondary clause.) Routinely eliminating *on* from such expressions can create an undesired staccato effect.

Avoid *yesterday, today* and *tomorrow* as time elements in articles and captions, though of course they are acceptable in quotations and figurative expressions. Another limited exception is the case of headlines or online summaries that refer to imminent events, where *today* or *tomorrow* is more immediately comprehensible than the day of the week: *Obama to Meet Putin Today*.

In fluid writing, the best place for the time element is after the verb – immediately after, if the verb has no direct object: *The dean of Cordero University announced on Tuesday that undergraduates would be required to perform four hours of community service a week*. But if there is a direct object, the object should immediately follow the verb, and the time element should ideally follow both: *Mayor Leslie T. Baranek ordered the police on Tuesday to arrest jaywalkers*.

When the direct object is long or cumbersome, the time element must come before the verb, though smoothness will usually suffer: *Mayor Leslie T. Baranek on Tuesday ordered the police, already complaining of overwork and threatening a slowdown, to arrest jaywalkers*.

Occasionally, if the news is not quite fresh or a direct object is impossibly long, the lead may be written without a time element. In that case, the verb must change to *has ordered* (the present perfect tense). And of course the timing of the action should be specified early in the article.

times less, times more. Writers who speak of *three times more* or *three times faster* often mean "multiplied by 3," but precise readers are likely to understand the meaning as "multiplied by 4": the original quantity or speed, plus three *more times*. For clarity, avoid *times more, times faster, times bigger*, *etc.* Write *four times as much* (or *as fast*, etc.). And do not write *times less* or *times smaller* (or things like *times as thin* or *times as short*). A quantity can *decrease* only one time before disappearing, and then there is nothing left to decrease further. Make it *one-third as much* (or *as tall*, or *as fast*).

TimesDigest (formerly TimesFax).

titleholder.

titles. Personal titles of all sorts – academic, business, foreign, governmental, military, religious, *etc.* – are listed separately, with abbreviation styles. Lowercase titles except when they directly precede names, and place long titles after names: *Lee P. Milori, minister of internal affairs*. Only official titles – not mere descriptions – should be affixed to names. Do not, for example, write *pianist Lynn C. Arniotis* or *political scientist Tracy F. Baranek*. But in a reference to someone well known, a descriptive phrase preceded by *the* is acceptable: *the sociologist Merrill H. Cordero*. In identifying officials of cities, states or countries, do not make the place name part of the title: *Mayor Stacy K. Bildots of Chicago*, not *Chicago Mayor Stacy K. Bildots*. As an exception, for clarity, *city* and *state* are acceptable in titles: *State Senator Morgan R. Daan; City Comptroller Pat C. Berenich*. (Standing without a name, expressions like *the French president* or *the California governor* are proper.) Also see floor leader; majority leader; minority leader.

By tradition, sports positions are a limited exception. Uppercased, an elective or appointive sports title (with a team name) may precede a proper name: *Giants Coach Chris Miel; Red Sox Manager Pat Agneau*. Team names and lowercased playing positions may also precede names: *Mets outfielder Terry Lamb; Nets forward Chris Cordeiro*. But do not string other kinds of phrases together as titles; avoid, for example, *suspended Braves pitcher Leigh Dann*.

In the titles of books, plays, speeches, etc., capitalize the principal words (as defined in the entry on capitalization): *"Dust Tracks on a Road"*; *The World Almanac; "A Taste of Honey"*; *"American Prospects and Foreign Trade"*; *etc.* For specific styles, see almanacs; articles; books; concerto; courtesy titles; dictionaries; encyclopedia; newspaper names; operas; paintings; plays and revues; poetry; publication names; sculptures; sonata; songs; speeches and lectures; symphonies.

TNT for trinitrotoluene, the explosive, and for Turner Network Television.

tobacco(s).

to-do (n.).

toe the line, toe the mark (not *tow*). The allusion is to the starting position in a footrace.

toll(-). Some compounds formed with *toll* are one word and some are two words: tollbooth, toll bridge, toll call, toll collector, tollgate, tollhouse cookie, tollkeeper, toll road.

Tolstoy.

Tomb of the Unknowns, in Arlington National Cemetery, was formerly the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier.

Toms River (in New Jersey).

ton. This unit of weight in the United States and some other countries, called a *short ton*, is equal to 2,000 pounds. The *long ton*, used in Britain, is equal to 2,240 pounds. The *metric ton* is equal to 1,000 kilograms, or 2,204.62 pounds. See metric system.

Tony Award(s); *the award(s); the Tony(s).* Articles dealing centrally with the awards should mention their formal name, the *Antoinette Perry Awards*, and note that they are presented by the American Theater Wing.

top(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *top* are one word: topcoat, top dollar, top-drawer, top-flight, Top 40 (n. and adj.), top hat, top-heavy, topknot, topless, top-level, topmast, topmost, topsail, top secret, topsoil.

topsy-turvy.

Torah refers to the Five Books of Moses, the first five books of the Bible, inscribed on a scroll (a Torah) kept in the ark of a synagogue. *Torah* in a generic sense refers to all of Jewish learning. Thus: *The rabbi is a renowned Torah scholar*.

torch. Use it as a noun. As a verb it is slang.

tornado(es). A violent whirlwind. Since 2007, the National Weather Service has used the enhanced Fujita scale of intensity to classify tornadoes.

The maritime equivalent of the tornado is the *waterspout*. Cyclone is too ambiguous for routine use.

tortuous, torturous. *Tortuous* means winding or twisting: *a tortuous road to legislation*. *Torturous* means tormenting or anguishing: *a torturous ordeal*.

Tory (sing.), **Tories** (pl.). The terms are acceptable in later references and in headlines for the Conservative Party or its members in Britain, and in some other countries; local usage should be verified.

totaled, totaling.

touch(-). Many compounds formed with *touch* are one word and many are hyphenated: touch and go (but: *a touch-and-go situation*), touchback, touchdown, touch-me-not (n.), touch-typing.

Tourette's syndrome (the neurological disorder).

tout (v.). In the sense of recommend or acclaim, the expression is colloquial and hackneyed.

toward (not *towards*).

towboat.

towheaded means pale blond.

townhouse. A *townhouse* or *rowhouse* is ordinarily a two-story or three-story dwelling that shares walls with the adjacent homes. Not every townhouse is a brownstone.

toxin, toxic. A toxin is a poison produced by a plant or an animal. Do not use the noun to mean any other kind of poison (mineral, for example). The adjective *toxic* applies more broadly, to any poison, and may be useful in a headline about a substance that is not a toxin: *Toxic Spill*, for example.

Toys "R" Us Inc. In headlines, use single quotation marks: *'R.'*

tractor-trailer.

trademark, service mark. Trademarks and service marks should be capitalized in news articles and treated as modifiers when idiom permits: *She bought a Nikon camera* but not *He swigged a 7Up brand soft drink*. Though generic terms – *bandage*, for example, instead of *Band-Aid* – are sometimes preferable, brand names can add to precision and enrich detail. They are uppercased as a caution to readers who might inadvertently adopt a name owned by someone else. A *trademark* is a name, symbol or slogan (*Coca-Cola; Coke; Kodak; Mercedes-Benz;* etc.) used by a manufacturer or dealer to distinguish its products from those of competitors. A *service mark* is a name, symbol or slogan (*Blue Cross; Century 21; Planned Parenthood;* etc.) used by the supplier of a service to distinguish it from the offerings of competitors. In news articles, do not use registration symbols (® and ™).

To verify ownership, consult the International Trademark Association's checklist.

Trademarks that do not appear on the Trademark Checklist may be in the database of the United States Patent and Trademark Office.

The checklist is faster and easier to use. But the Trademark Office database has many more listings. In using it, choose "Combined Marks Search," an option that checks both exact and approximate spellings.

traffic (v.), **traffics**. But: *trafficked; trafficking*. Also: *trafficker*.

tragedy. A *tragedy* is a calamitous or disastrous event. Do not use it for a relatively minor incident, even if sad.

tranquil, tranquilize, tranquilizer, tranquilizing. But: *tranquillity*.

Tranquillity, Sea of.

trans(-). Except before a proper noun, compounds formed with *trans* are one word: trans-Atlantic, transcontinental, transgender, transmigrate, transoceanic, trans-Pacific, transship, transshipment, trans-Siberian.

transcripts. See texts and excerpts.

transgender (adj.) is an overall term for people whose current identity differs from their sex at birth, whether or not they have changed their biological characteristics. Cite a person's transgender status only when it is pertinent and its pertinence is clear to the reader. Unless a former name is newsworthy or pertinent, use the name and pronouns (*he, his, she, her, hers*) preferred by the transgender person. If no preference is known, use the pronouns consistent with the way the subject lives publicly.

Transgender is generally preferable to the older *transsexual*. Do not use the offensive slang *tranny*.

transpire. In careful writing, *transpire* means leak out or become known, not simply happen.

transvestite is outdated and often viewed as offensive. Use *cross-dresser* instead to describe someone of either sex who sometimes dresses in clothing associated with the opposite sex. Note that cross-dressing does not necessarily indicate that someone is gay or transgender.

trapshooting (n.). But: *skeet shooting*.

trash. As a verb meaning destroy or denounce, *trash* is slang — both coarse and trite.

traveled, traveler, traveling.

traveler's check (not *cheque*); *traveler's* is always singular.

Treasury is an exception to the usual rule governing capitalization in references to federal departments. Capitalize the word even in a title that does not directly precede the name, and in references to the securities issued by the department: *Tracy Q. Coredeiro, secretary of the Treasury; Treasury bills; Treasury notes*.

treated and released. Take care not to omit a preposition if using this police-blotter jargon. A person cannot be *treated and released at* or *treated and released from* a particular hospital; the patient is *treated at the hospital and released*. If the context is clear, it may be sufficient to say simply that the person was treated there.

treaties, pacts and plans. Capitalize specific names: *Treaty of Ghent; Treaty of Versailles; Pact of Paris; Warsaw Pact*. But: *nine-power treaty; United States-Canadian trade treaty*. Capitalize *Monroe Doctrine, Marshall Plan* and similar designations that acquire official or semiofficial stature. Also see Nafta; SALT; Start.

tremblor. Do not use; an earthquake is a *temblor*.

tri(-). Compounds formed with *tri* are one word: triangular, triathlon, tricentennial, tricolor, trifecta, trifocals, trilateral, trilingual, trimester, trimonthly, tripartite, tristate, triweekly. Also see trimonthly, triweekly and tristate area, tristate region.

Triangle shirtwaist factory fire in Manhattan in 1911, which left 146 people dead. In this common description, do not uppercase "shirtwaist" or "factory"; the business affected was formally the *Triangle Waist Company*.

TriBeCa (triangle below Canal Street) for the Manhattan area south of Greenwich Village, between Broadway and the Hudson River. But: *the Tribeca Film Festival*.

trickle down, in reference to an economic policy, is a polemical term, not for use outside direct quotations.

trigger. As a verb, the word is journalese, except in contexts like alarms and weaponry. Consider alternatives like *incite* and *set off*.

trillion is used in the American sense of one million million. Also see dollars and cents; numbers; numbers, round.

trimonthly, triweekly. *Trimonthly* means every three months, and *triweekly* means every three weeks (though some authorities also accept it to mean three times a week). For comprehension, avoid the form when possible and use *every three months* or *every three weeks* or *three times a week*.

Trinity College (in Hartford).

trio. Capitalize in the title of a musical work: *Mozart's Piano Trio in B flat (K. 254); Beethoven's "Archduke" Trio*. Also capitalize *trio* in the name of an ensemble: *Vienna Trio*. Do not use *trio* in copy or headlines as a nonmusical synonym for *three* (*Trio Held in Bank Robbery*). See music.

Triple Crown (horse racing). It is the feat of winning the Kentucky Derby, the Preakness and the Belmont Stakes in a single year; also, informally, the overall name for the three races.

tristate area, tristate region. In a newspaper with nationwide readership, do not use the terms in first references to New York, New Jersey and Connecticut. Instead, name the states. And in later references, *the states* will usually serve.

Trooping the Color (British ceremony). Not *Trooping of the Color*.

troop(s). In its singular form, *troop* means a group of people, often military: *a cavalry troop*. In conjunction with a small number, the plural form means several groups of people: *three Girl Scout troops*. But when the plural appears with a large number, it is understood to mean individuals. *The president sent 3,000 troops to Afghanistan* is fine. *Four troops were injured* is not. And whatever the number, the modifier is always singular: *troop movements*.

tropical storms have maximum sustained winds of 39 to 73 miles an hour. Use the assigned names of these storms sparingly, for necessary identification. But do not personalize them with pronouns like *his* or *her*, and do not attribute human traits to them. Also see hurricane.

Truman, Harry S. He used the period, though he had no legal middle name.

tryout (n.), **try out** (v.).

tsar. Use the more familiar *czar*. See czar, czarist.

Tsinghua University in China.

T-shirt.

tsunami (sea wave). See tidal wave.

tugboat.

tug(s) of war.

tune up (v.), **tuneup** (n.).

turbid, turgid. *Turbid* means muddy, cloudy or confused. *Turgid* means swollen, distended or bombastic.

turboprop may be used, as adjective or noun, in reference to a plane with propellers driven by turbine engines.

turn(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *turn* are one word: turnabout (n.), turnaround, turnbuckle, turncoat, turndown (n.), turnkey (n.), turnoff, turn-on, turnout (n.), turnover (n.), turnpike, turnstile, turntable.

turnpike. Capitalize in names: *New Jersey Turnpike; Pennsylvania Turnpike*. But: *the turnpike*.

Tuskegee University (formerly Tuskegee Institute).

Tutankhamen was the Egyptian king, now popularly known as *King Tut*.

TV for television. Like all abbreviations, it should be used sparingly in articles, to avoid speckling the column of type. The plural, in a reference to sets, is *TVs*.

T.V.A. for the Tennessee Valley Authority.

tweet (n.,v.), lowercase, referring to a message or other content on Twitter. In serious news contexts, the word can seem jarring or overly informal, especially for readers who do not use Twitter. Generally reserve it for special effect or for articles dealing extensively with social media. Alternatives include *said on Twitter, posted on Twitter, shared, replied, updated*. For example: *The White House posted a response on Twitter*, not *The White House tweeted a response*. Follow the same guidelines for *retweet* (n., v.), for the resharing of content on Twitter. Avoid overly cute coinages: *tweeters, tweeps, twagedy*. Avoid abbreviations that are unfamiliar to nonusers: *RT* for retweet, *MT* for modified tweet, *DM* for direct message, *HT* for hat tip, *OH* for overheard. When quoting from Twitter for effect, do not edit the text for style. Online, include a link to the tweet or an embedded version. Also see hashtag; Twitter.

Twelve Apostles. An exception to the rule of using figures for numbers above nine.

“21” Club (not *Twenty-One Club*), for the restaurant.

21-gun salute. The ritual often performed at a military funeral is not a 21-gun salute. That honor, fired by cannons, is reserved for a few national holidays and for salutes to a national flag, the sovereign or head of state of a foreign country, a member of a reigning royal family or a president, former president or president-elect of the United States. Lesser dignitaries receive similar honors but with fewer volleys. Graveside ceremonies for military people typically involve three rifle volleys fired by an honor guard.

twister. Avoid this colloquial synonym for *tornado*.

Twitter is a trademark of the social media service, which allows users to post tweets. Do not use it as a verb. Also see tweet.

two-by-four. So spelled and punctuated in a reference to the piece of lumber, despite the usual style for dimensions.

tying.

type(-), (-)type. Most but not all compounds formed with *type* as a prefix are one word: typecast, typeface, type foundry, typescript, typesetter, typewriter.

Most but not all compounds formed with *type* as a suffix are one word: antitype, blood type, stereotype, tintype.

Avoid the use of *type* to form compound modifiers (*theater-type seating; soda-type drinks*). Write *theater seating* or *drinks like soda*.

typhoon. The term is used in the western Pacific region to describe a violent storm of the type called a hurricane in the United States. It is often helpful to explain the similarity. Also see cyclone and hurricane.

tyro(s).

Tyrol (not *the Tyrol* and not *Tirol*).

U

U. for University may be used in headlines when the context is clear (*U. of Michigan; Boston U.*) and in tables or charts. Do not use *U.* for padding with a name that is otherwise unmistakable (*Princeton U.*).

U.A.W. for the United Automobile Workers.

U.F.O.(s) for unidentified flying object(s).

UJA-Federation of New York is the local affiliate of United Jewish Communities, a national organization formed in 1999 through the merger of the United Israel Appeal, the Council of Jewish Federations and the United Jewish Appeal. In later references: *UJA-Federation* (without *the*).

Ukraine, Ukrainian (not *the Ukraine*).

ukulele.

Ulan Bator (in Mongolia).

ultra(-). Ordinarily close up compounds formed with *ultra* unless the prefix directly precedes an *a* or an uppercase letter: ultra-atomic, ultra-German, ultrahigh frequency, ultramodern, ultranationalistic, ultrasonic, Ultrasuede (a trademark), ultraviolet.

In applying *ultra* to a person or a belief, beware of a pejorative suggestion of excess. *Ultraconservative*, for example, can seem to mean *too* conservative, though *ultra-Orthodox* is acceptable in general references to strictly observant Jews such as the Hasidim.

umlaut. See accent marks.

un(-). Nearly all compounds formed with *un* are one word except when the prefix occurs before an uppercase letter: unaffected, un-American, unbiased, uncalled-for, undo, unforgettable, unheard-of, unneeded, un-self-conscious, unselfish, unsolved, untraveled, unused, unwed.

U.N. for the United Nations, but only in direct quotations, headlines, tables and charts, and when unavoidable in picture captions.

U.N.AIDS (no spaces) for the United Nations program on H.I.V. and AIDS. Use the abbreviation sparingly; *the AIDS program* or *the program* is preferable after the full title has appeared in the article.

uncharted terrain, uncharted waters (meaning unmapped territory), not *unchartered*.

unctuous.

under(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *under* are one word: underachieve, underbid, underbrush, undercharge, underclothes, underconsumption, undercount, undercover (adj.), under cover (adv.), underdeveloped, underdog, underdone, underemployed, underestimate, undergraduate, underground, underhand, underripe, undersheriff, understudy, under-the-counter (adj.), underway, underworld, underwrite.

Also see Under Secretary and undertaker.

under age, underage. Use *under age* to mean too young and *underage* to mean shortfall. Also: *underage drinking*.

Under Secretary *of State* (and other agencies) *Toby C. Dann; Under Secretary Dann; the under secretary*. The same styles apply, in international organizations, to *under secretaries general*.

undertaker may be used interchangeably with *funeral director*. Do not use *mortician*.

undocumented. See illegal immigrant.

Unesco for the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.

unflappable. This British-flavored colloquialism for imperturbable is overused.

unheard-of. A rare exception, this modifier keeps its hyphen even when it follows the noun. In a headline, uppercase the O.

Uniate. Do not use the term, which is sometimes applied to Eastern Rite churches in union with the Roman Catholic Church. The word is often regarded as offensive.

Unicef for the United Nations Children's Fund, even though *international* and *emergency* were long ago dropped from the name.

Unification Church is appropriate in all references to the Holy Spirit Association for the Unification of World Christianity, which was founded by the Rev. Sun Myung Moon. Do not use the disparaging *Moonie(s)*.

Uniform Code of Military Justice. The first word refers to standardization among the armed forces.

union names may be shortened in later references or in headlines: *the United Brotherhood of Carpenters and Joiners of America, the Brotherhood of Carpenters, the carpenters' union; the United Mine Workers of America, the United Mine Workers, the Mine Workers, the miners' union*. Capitalize references to individual union members (*two Mine Workers, a Teamster*), but lowercase the terms when they serve as job titles. Also see Teamster.

Union of American Hebrew Congregations. A Reform group.

Union of Orthodox Jewish Congregations. Commonly known as the *Orthodox Union*, it represents about 850 Orthodox synagogues in the United States, Canada and Israel.

Union of Soviet Socialist Republics is the full version of the former country name. But *Soviet Union* served in nearly all references, and (for historical ones) still does. In headlines: *U.S.S.R.*

Union Theological Seminary. In later references: *Union* or *Union Seminary* or *the seminary*, but never *Union Theological*.

unique means having no equal, unparalleled. Do not modify the word with a term like *very* or *rather* or *almost;* either something is unique or it is not. On the rare occasion when an innovation fits the description, carefully specify the aspect that does.

Unitarian Universalist Association. *Unitarian(s)* is acceptable in headlines and in later references to individual members or churches. So is the somewhat rarer *Universalist(s)*, but the longer combined form is always accurate. The denomination is theologically diverse and would not call itself Christian, though a significant minority of Unitarian Universalists think of themselves as Christian.

United Arab Emirates. It is a country incorporating seven emirates: Abu Dhabi, Dubai, Sharjah, Ajman, Al Fujayrah, Umm al Qaywayn and Ras al Khaymah. A member emirate is not a country or a nation. The country name, unlike *United States*, is treated as a plural.

United Automobile Workers; *the U.A.W.* Formally, the United Automobile, Aerospace and Agricultural Implement Workers of America.

United Church of Christ. A merger of the Evangelical and Reformed Church and the Congregational Christian Churches. Although the name *Congregational* is technically incorrect, it is still used by many individual churches.

United Jewish Communities was formed in 1999 through the merger of the United Israel Appeal, the Council of Jewish Federations and the United Jewish Appeal. Its affiliate in the metropolitan area is UJA-Federation of New York (singular and with a hyphen).

United Kingdom. This formal name, a shortened version of *United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland*, is not ordinarily used except in quotations, or in contexts requiring emphasis on Northern Ireland's status. Otherwise use Britain.

United Methodist Church. It is a denomination formed in 1968 by the merger of the Methodist Church and the Evangelical United Brethren Church.

United Nations Charter; *the Charter*. Also: *Chapter IV, Article 9.*

United Nations Economic and Social Council; *the Council*. Its acronym, *Ecosoc*, is too obscure for articles or headlines. Do not confuse the Council with Unesco.

United Nations General Assembly; *the Assembly*.

United Nations Secretariat; *the Secretariat*.

United Nations Security Council; *the Security Council; the Council*.

United Negro College Fund. Informally, it advertises itself as *the College Fund*.

United Press International; *U.P.I.* Always without *the*.

United States. Do not abbreviate, except in quotations, highway designations, texts and organization names that officially include the abbreviation, and in headlines, charts, tables or maps. Use a singular verb with the country name, but form the possessive as if it were plural: *United States'*.

United States Air Force; *the Air Force*. But lowercase *air force* in later references to a foreign air force. Also see Air Force ranks.

United States Army; *the Army*. But lowercase *army* in later references to a foreign army. Also see Army ranks.

United States Attorney *Lindsay V. Arniotis; the United States attorney*. Also: *the United States attorney for the Southern District* (or *Eastern District*) *of New York*.

United States Catholic Conference.

United States Coast Guard; *the Coast Guard*. Also see Coast Guard ranks.

United States Conference of Catholic Bishops.

United States Marine Corps; *the Marine Corps; the Marines; the corps*. Also see Marine Corps ranks.

United States Navy; *the Navy*. But lowercase *navy* in later references to a foreign navy. Also see Navy ranks.

United States Postal Service. It may be called *the Postal Service* in all references, and in later references *the service* or *the post office*.

United Synagogue of Conservative Judaism. It represents about 800 Conservative congregations.

units of measure are usually lowercase if metric, even if named after a person: *watts, volts, kelvin* and *ohms*. But: *degrees Celsius* (note that *Fahrenheit* is also capitalized). Prefixes such as *milli-*, *kilo-* and *mega-* can be added: *milliwatt* (one thousandth of a watt), *megaohm* (one million ohms), *kilojoule* (1,000 joules).

When converting between measurement systems, do not introduce a level of precision that was not in the original value: 70 degrees Fahrenheit is 21 degrees Celsius, not the calculated 21.111111 degrees. But 70.0 degrees Fahrenheit is 21.1 degrees Celsius, because of the zero after the decimal point.

Except for special effect, do not use imperial measurements or arcane traditional measurements like fathoms, leagues, bushels, rods and stones; convert to American or metric. But write *seven-furlong horse race* rather than the pedantic *0.875 miles*.

university. Carefully verify the placement in names; websites are often the best source. It is, for instance, *Indiana University*, not the *University of Indiana;* it is the *University of Notre Dame*, not *Notre Dame University*. For consistency in the news columns, lowercase *the* in a university name, regardless of individual styles. Omit *College* or *University* freely in a mention of a well-known institution: *She graduated from Purdue*.

University of Connecticut (in Storrs).

University of Medicine and Dentistry of New Jersey (in Newark).

University of the State of New York. It consists of all public and private elementary, secondary and higher educational institutions, libraries, museums and all other institutions chartered and overseen by the Board of Regents. The president of the University of the State of New York is the state commissioner of education. Do not confuse this legal entity with one of its components, the State University of New York.

unlike. *Unlike* can be used as a preposition meaning *different from*. The items contrasted by *unlike* must be parallel, and therefore comparable. Do not write *Unlike Miami, winter is cold in New York*. That sentence contrasts winter with

Miami, not what its author meant. Make it *Unlike Miami, New York is cold in winter*.

As a preposition, *unlike* requires a noun or a pronoun as its object. Revise any construction (*unlike in recent years*, for example) that omits an object.

unprecedented means for the first time. Do not modify the word with a term like *very, rather* or *almost;* either something is unprecedented or (far more likely) it is not. Use the term rarely, and only after verifying the history. Then carefully specify the aspect that qualifies.

up. As a verb, *up* is colloquial. Accept it in idioms like *up the ante*, but avoid *up the price of sugar* and the like.

up(-), (-)up. Compounds with *up* as a prefix are sometimes hyphenated and sometimes solid: up-and-coming (adj.), up-and-down (adj.), upbeat, updraft, upgrade, uphill, upload, upscale, upstage, upstairs, upstate, up-tempo, up-to-date (adj.), uptown, upward (not *upwards*).

But: avoid the telegraphic *upcoming*.

Compounds with *up* as a suffix are usually not hyphenated: backup, blowup, breakup, buildup, close-up (n. and adj), close up (adv.), cover-up (n. and adj.), flare-up, grown-up, holdup, hookup, letup, makeup (n. and adj.), pickup, pinup, push-up, runner(s)-up, setup (n.), situp (n.), stand-up, tie-up, tossup, wake-up, walk-up (n. and adj.), warm-up, windup, wrap-up.

upcoming is a staccato holdover from the age of penny-a-word telegram economies. Use straightforward alternatives like *coming, planned* and *scheduled*, if indeed a modifier is needed.

upper(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *upper* are one word: uppercase (adj, n. and v.), upper class, upperclassman, uppercut, upper hand, uppermost.

Upper East Side, Upper West Side (of Manhattan).

Upper Manhattan.

URL, for uniform resource locator. Ordinarily write *web address* instead. See web address.

U.S. for United States, but only in headlines, summaries, tables and charts, and when unavoidable in picture captions. If an organization's name officially includes the abbreviation, use it: *the U.S. Chamber of Commerce*. Also, in highway designations: *U.S. 40*.

usage, use. *Usage* refers to habitual or preferred practice in fields like grammar, law, etiquette and diplomacy. *Use* is the less stilted term for employment or consumption: *the use of energy; gasoline use; automobile use; drug use*.

U.S.A.I.D. for the United States Agency for International Development. *The Agency for International Development* is acceptable in first reference if the context is clear. Use the initials sparingly; *the aid agency* or *the agency* is preferable after a version of the full title has appeared.

US Airways (formerly USAir).

USA Today. See newspaper names.

user-friendly. It can be reader-tiresome.

U.S.O. for United Service Organizations Inc.

U.S.S. for a United States ship in government service: *the U.S.S. Harry S. Truman*. In articles, however, the vessel type, spelled out, is preferred: *the aircraft carrier Harry S. Truman*. In datelines: *ABOARD U.S.S. HARRY S. TRUMAN, off California* (or a similar locating phrase).

U.S.S.R. (mainly in headlines) or *Soviet Union* in historical references to the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics.

Utah. Do not abbreviate after the names of cities, towns and counties, even in datelines.

U.T.C. is the abbreviation for Coordinated Universal Time.

utilize is a fancy word for *use*. Use *use*.

utopia. Uppercase the name of the place in Sir Thomas More's book, but lowercase *a utopia; a utopian enterprise; a utopian* (for a believer in a utopia);

utopianism.

V

v., vs. for versus. Reserve *v.* for the names of court cases and proceedings. In cap-and-lowercase headlines, lowercase both abbreviations. Also see versus.

V.A. for the Department of Veterans Affairs, formerly the Veterans Administration. See Veterans Affairs, Department of.

Vale of Kashmir.

Valium is a trademark.

Valley. Capitalize when part of a name: *Mississippi Valley*. But: *the valley*.

van (the particle). See personal names and nicknames.

Van Cortlandt Park (in the Bronx).

variations (music). Capitalize in a title: *Brahms's Variations on a Theme by Haydn; Elgar's "Enigma Variations."* Also see music.

Vaseline is a trademark for petroleum jelly.

Vatican I, Vatican II. Use these terms in later references to the First Vatican Council (1869-70) and the Second Vatican Council (1962-65).

VC (without periods) for Vietcong.

VCR for videocassette recorder.

V-E Day, the Allied designation for the date of victory in Europe in World War II (May 8, 1945).

veejay. See V.J.

V8, for the vegetable juice (a trademark) and the engine.

Velcro is a trademark for fabric fasteners made of tiny hooks and loops.

vendor.

venue. When possible, use a more specific term: *club, theater, arena, stadium. Venues* is acceptable as a plural in reference to different types of settings: *None of the Olympic venues were ready. Venue* is appropriate in the legal expression *change of venue*.

verbal, oral. Use *oral* to convey the idea of spoken words. *Verbal* is less precise; it applies to words used in any manner — spoken, written or printed.

verdict. In legal matters, reserve *verdict* for decisions in criminal cases. For a civil suit, use *award, decision* or *judgment*.

vérité (French for *truth*) is a short form of cinéma vérité, or an allusion to it.

vermilion.

Vermont. Abbreviate as *Vt.* after the names of cities, towns and counties.

Verrazano is the preferred spelling of the name of the explorer: *Giovanni da Verrazano*.

Verrazano-Narrows Bridge.

verse style. See poetry.

versus. Spell out in ordinary contexts: *It was cowboy versus steer, and the steer won*. The abbreviation *vs.* may be used in most headlines, and for special effect in articles. But in legal contexts use *v.* for the names of court cases. In cap-and-lowercase headlines, lowercase the abbreviations.

Very Rev. The expression is used in the Episcopal Church before the name of a dean of a cathedral or, in some instances, the head of a seminary: *the Very Rev. Lynn J. Cordero, dean of the Cathedral Church of St. John the Divine; Dean Cordero; the dean*. In the Roman Catholic Church it is *the Very Rev. Lindsay Q. Baranek, superior* *general of the Jesuit order* (or *of the Society of Jesus*); *the superior general; Father Baranek*. See Archbishop; bishop; Most Rev., Rt. Rev.; Rev.; superior general.

vest pocket (n.), **vest-pocket** (adj.).

vet. Do not use for *veteran* except in an organization name like Amvets.

Veterans Affairs, Department of. This federal department succeeded the Veterans Administration in 1989. It operates hospitals and clinics and guarantees mortgages for qualified veterans. In most later references, *the department;* in headlines, *V.A.*

Veterans Day, Nov. 11, is a federal holiday. Use no apostrophe in the name.

Viagra is a trademark.

Vice Adm. *Alex T. Barany; Admiral Barany; the admiral*.

Vice Consul *Ashley C. Kikondoo; Vice Consul Kikondoo; the vice consul*.

vice president. A government official is *Vice President Ashley N. Cordeiro* on first reference; in later references, *Vice President Cordeiro; the vice president; Mr.* (or *Ms.*, or *Miss* or *Mrs.*) *Cordeiro*. When serving as a nongovernmental title, *vice president* is lowercase, always separated from the name by a comma. The bearers are officers *of* their organizations and *for* specialized duties (regardless of the organizations' usage): *Morgan J. Baranek, a vice president of the Bildots Corporation; Dale E. Lamm, vice president for operations*. See titles.

Vice President-elect *Lauren D. Karitsa; Vice President-elect Karitsa; the vice president-elect*. In cap-and-lowercase headlines: *Vice President-Elect*.

vice-presidential, vice presidency. Lowercase.

vice versa.

vichyssoise.

victim. Applied to people with serious illnesses or disabilities, the term conveys an undesired tone of pity, and slights the aspects of their lives that may be unimpaired. Make it *she has multiple sclerosis*, not *she is a victim of multiple sclerosis*.

Also see afflicted; stricken; suffer.

victorias are the four-wheeled carriages commonly seen in New York. *Hansoms* are covered, two-wheeled carriages with the drivers' seats above and behind the cabs.

Victrola (a trademark). It will usually be found only in historical references, but it is still a trademark and still capitalized.

video(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *video* are one word: video (n. and adj.), videocassette, videoconference (n.), videodisc, video game, videophone, videotape (n. and v.), videotex (not *videotext*, for online data retrieval services).

Vietcong (sing. and pl.). The pro-Hanoi guerrilla movement in South Vietnam during the war of 1954 to 1975, or a member or members of that movement. Also, colloquially, *VC*.

Vietnamese names. A Vietnamese name usually consists of the family name followed by two given names. But Western practice, accepted by the Vietnamese, treats the last part of the name in later references as if it were a surname. So a Vietnamese man named *Nguyen Van Hai* would later be referred to as *Mr. Hai* and in headlines as *Hai*. A woman named *Ngo Phuong Lan* would be *Ms*. (or *Miss* or *Mrs*.) *Lan*, and in a headline, *Lan*. If Mr. Hai's wife figured in the news in that role only, she might properly be called *Mrs. Nguyen Van Hai*, and in later references *Mrs. Hai*.

An exception was Ho Chi Minh, who used his assumed name in Chinese fashion; in later references, he was *Mr. Ho*.

Vietnam War (not *Vietnamese War*).

Village. Capitalize the word when it stands alone to mean Greenwich Village. If the context in a headline is not clear, find a different reference (*Washington Sq*.; *Bleecker St*.; etc.).

vilify.

V.I.P.

Virginia. Abbreviate as *Va*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

Virgin Islands. Abbreviate as *V.I.* after the names of cities and towns in news articles or datelines: *CHARLOTTE AMALIE, V.I.* —. The name of the individual island (St. Thomas, in this case) should be omitted from the dateline but mentioned in the article when it is useful.

Virgin Mary; *the Virgin*.

virtuoso(s).

vis-à-vis.

viscount. Capitalize the first reference as a full name: *Viscount Lamb of Kent; Lord Lamb; the viscount*. Also see peers.

viscountess. Capitalize the first reference as a full name: *Viscountess Lamb of Kent; Lady Lamb; the viscountess*. Also see peers.

visitation. Except in religious or supernatural contexts (*visitations of angels*), the word is a pompous synonym for *visit* or *visiting*. Use the simpler word: *visiting rights; visiting privileges*.

vitamin A (or *B* or *E*, etc.). Also: *vitamin A2; vitamin B12; etc.*

Vivian Beaumont Theater (at Lincoln Center).

V.J. (not *veejay*) for a presenter of music videos. But use *V.J.* only when a colloquial flavor is in order.

V-J Day, the Allied designation for the date of victory over Japan in World War II.

voice mail. Also: *a voice mail message*, but not *a voice mail*.

Voice of America. Capitalize, without quotation marks.

voilà.

Volkswagen A.G., the German company, can often be referred to simply as *Volkswagen* or, in later references, *VW*. Its subsidiary in the United States is *Volkswagen of America Inc*. In headlines and in colloquial references, *VW* may be used when the context is clear.

von (the particle). See personal names and nicknames.

Voodoo. Capitalize in references to the religion, which has many followers in the West Indies and elsewhere. Some followers and scholars prefer other spellings, such as Vodou, in part to distinguish from the use of "voodoo" in a disparaging sense. In extended references to the religion, consider noting the various spellings. Be aware that use of "voodoo" to mean nonsense or superstition may give offense, and consider alternatives. (In that sense, as a noun or adjective, the word is lowercase.)

votes. In articles, use numerals for pairs of vote figures or the division of judges in a court decision: *The vote was 51 to 3; The justices ruled 9 to 5 in his favor*. Also: *a 51-to-3 vote; a 9-to-5 ruling*. In such constructions, spell out *to*, but a hyphen may replace it in a headline: *9-5 Decision*. Except when figures are paired, ordinarily spell out nine and below: *She had a majority of nine; He received six votes, four of them invalid*. (But for consistency, in a series that also includes a figure above nine: *She had a majority of 11 votes*, *4 of them invalid*. And: *The vote was 51 to 3*, *with 3 abstentions*.)

voting district. See district.

vulgarity. See obscenity, vulgarity, profanity.

W

WAC for the Women's Army Corps, but only in historical references; it no longer exists. A member of the corps was a *Wac*.

WAF for Women in the Air Force, but only in historical references; the designation is no longer used. A member of the group was a *Waf*.

Wailing Wall (in Jerusalem). It is now the Western Wall.

wait on. Use *wait in line*, not *on*, which is regional dialect. Also avoid *wait on*, another dialect phrase (from a different region), meaning *await;* make it *wait for* or *await*. (But servers *wait on tables* — never *wait tables*.)

waiter, waitress. *Waiter* and *server* can apply to a woman or a man. While most words with grafted feminine endings (*executrix; aviatrix; poetess*) have virtually disappeared, *waitress* remains in wide use and seems exempt from most objections. Do not use self-conscious coinages like *waitperson, waitron* or *waitstaff*.

wake-up call, except in an instruction to a hotel front desk, is a cliché.

Waldorf Astoria. The company no longer uses a hyphen in the name.

walk(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *walk* are hyphenated: walk-in (adj.), Walkman (a trademark), walk-on (n. and adj.), walkout (n.), walkover (n.), walk-through, walk-up (n. and adj.), walkway.

Walmart in all references to the retailer and to individual stores. In earnings stories or other formal references to the corporation, call it *Walmart Stores*, even though the company officially preserves the hyphen in its corporation documents.

wannabe is slang.

war(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *war* are one word: war chest, war crime, warfare, war game, warhead, war horse, warlike, warlord, warpath, warplane, warship, wartime.

War Between the States. Use only for special effect; otherwise it is *the Civil War*.

Wards Island (in New York City).

War of 1812.

Warrant Officer *Terry B. Daan; Mr.* (or *Ms., Miss or Mrs.*) *Daan; the warrant officer*.

warranty, warrantee. A *warranty* is a guarantee or assurance. A *warrantee* is the person who gets one.

wash(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *wash* are one word: washable, wash-and-wear, washbowl, washcloth, washed-out (adj.), washout (n.), washroom.

Washington. Abbreviate the state name as *Wash.* after the names of cities, towns and counties. When *Washington State* is needed for clarity, uppercase *State*. And when there is likelihood of confusion in references to the national capital, include *D.C.* Also see district.

Washington Arch (not the *Washington Square Arch*) is the monument in Washington Square.

Washington Heights; *the Heights*. In first references, do not use *the* before *Washington*. In headlines, charts, tables and maps: *Washington Hts*.

Washington's Birthday is the official name of the federal holiday observed on the third Monday in February. Because some states use the holiday to honor both Washington and Lincoln, it is popularly known as *Presidents' Day*. But other states (including New York, New Jersey and Connecticut) have designated Feb. 12, *Lincoln's Birthday*, as a separate holiday.

WASP, for white Anglo-Saxon Protestant, is usually disparaging to a segment of the population wrongly thought to be impervious to slurs.

water(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *water* are one word: water bed, watercolor, water-cooled, water cooler, watercress, waterfall, waterfront, waterline, waterlogged, water main, watermark, watermelon, water meter, water mill, water pipe, waterproof, water-repellent, water-resistant, watershed, waterside, water ski (n.), water-ski (v.), waterspout, water table, watertight, waterway, waterworks.

waterspout. The maritime equivalent of the tornado.

watt, watt-hour(s). See kilowatt, kilowatt-hour(s).

wavelength(s).

Waves for Women Accepted for Volunteer Emergency Service, a term once used by the Navy but now discontinued. A *Wave* was a member of that group.

W.C.T.U. for the National Women's Christian Temperance Union.

weapons. Terms for many types of weapon, from pistols and rifles to missiles, appear in separate listings.

weapons plant (not *weapon plant*) is the idiom.

(-)wear. Most but not all compounds formed with *wear* are one word: children's wear, eyewear, footwear, formal wear, headwear, men's wear, rainwear, sportswear, swimwear, women's wear.

weather. See blizzard; cyclone; gale; heat index; hurricane; northeaster; severe thunderstorm; storm; tornado; typhoon; wind chill.

Weather Service. Capitalize in later references to the *National Weather Service*.

web, the. This form (lowercase) is acceptable in all references to the World Wide Web. Also see Internet, the.

web address is preferred in most references to a *URL*, or uniform resource locator, for the code that helps a computer or other device to locate content on *the web*. Also see link.

webcam.

website, lowercase, one word. It may often be shortened to *site* or replaced with a more precise term: *blog, gallery, page*.

week(-). Compounds formed with *week* are one word: weekday, weekend, weekender, weeklong, weekly, weeknight.

weeks. Capitalize officially designated weeks: *Parsnip Week; Mildew Week; etc.*

weight lifter, weight lifting.

weights and measures. Many common units of weight and measure used in the English-speaking countries, as well as many metric units, are listed separately. Also see metric system.

Weill Cornell Medical College is acceptable in all references. The formal name is the Joan and Sanford I. Weill Medical College and Graduate School of Medical Sciences of Cornell University.

Weimaraner (the dog).

weird.

well(-). Nearly all modifiers formed with *well* are hyphenated when they occur before nouns: well-advised, well-behaved, well-bred, well-done, well-founded, well-groomed, well-intentioned, well-known, well-mannered, well-nigh, well-read, well-rounded, well-spoken, well-thought-of, well-timed, well-to-do, well-worn.

Thus: *He is a well-read man*. But omit the hyphen when the words follow the noun they modify: *He is well read*.

Also: well-being, wellhead, well-wisher.

welsh, meaning renege on an obligation, is slang and an ethnic slur (even if often unrecognized by the user).

Wesleyan University (in Middletown, Conn.).

west. Capitalize when referring to the region of the United States, to Europe and the Americas, to the group of nations that opposed the Communists or to a specific region so named: *West Texas*. Lowercase as a point of the compass.

West Bank, East Bank (of the Jordan River). Because its status is evolving, do not treat the West Bank as a sovereign territory or as an official part of Israel or Jordan; use the territory name in a dateline after the name of a city or town.

West Berlin, East Berlin. See Berlin.

Westchester (N.Y.), **West Chester** (Pa.).

west coast. Capitalize when referring to the region of the United States along the Pacific, but lowercase when referring to the actual shoreline. Do not use *Coast* standing alone as a reference to the West Coast.

West End (of London).

western. Capitalize when referring to the region of the United States, to Europe and the Americas or to the group of nations that opposed the Communists. But: *western Ohio; western France; western half; etc.* And: *western movie; a television western*.

Westerner, for a person of the Western United States or, in an Asian context, of Europe or the Americas. But: *westernize(d)*.

Western Front, the battlefront in World War I.

Western Hemisphere; *the hemisphere*.

Western Wall is the name that replaced Wailing Wall, in Jerusalem. The change was intended to symbolize modern Israel's emergence from despair.

West Germany. See Germany.

Westhampton (in Suffolk County, N.Y.). Spellings for nearby towns differ: *East Hampton; Bridgehampton; Southampton*.

West Indian. This term applies to people from the former British colonies in the Caribbean. It does not refer to people from Cuba, Puerto Rico or Central or South America.

West Indies. Do not abbreviate after the names of cities and towns, even in datelines. In most datelines, provided an island is specified, *West Indies* may be omitted.

West Side. Capitalize when the term regularly designates a section of a city. But in London it is the *West End*.

West Side Highway (in Manhattan). Its commemorative name, *Joe DiMaggio Highway*, should be used only for special effect.

West Texas.

West Virginia. Abbreviate as *W.Va*. (without a space) after the names of cities, towns and counties. As a last resort, and somewhat more readily in the sports pages, use *W. Virginia* in a headline.

wharf (sing.), **wharves** (pl.).

Wharton School (of the University of Pennsylvania). It is no longer the Wharton School of Finance and Commerce.

wheelchair. People *use wheelchairs* or *are in wheelchairs*. Do not write *confined to a wheelchair*, a phrase that may exaggerate the user's immobility. When possible, say why the person uses a chair: *He has used a wheelchair since he lost both legs in an accident*.

whence means *from where*. So *from whence* is redundant.

whereabouts. Construe it as a singular: *Her whereabouts was unknown*.

whether. Often *or not* is redundant after *whether*, but not always. The phrase may ordinarily be omitted in these cases:

- When the *whether* clause is the object of a verb: *She wonders whether the teacher will attend*. (The clause is the object of *wonders*.)
- When the clause is the object of a preposition: *The teacher will base his decision on whether the car has been repaired*. (The clause is the object of *on*.)
- When the clause is the subject of the sentence: *Whether the car will be ready depends on the mechanic*. (The clause is the subject of *depends*.)

But when a *whether* clause modifies a verb, *or not* is needed: *They will play on Thursday whether or not it rains*. (The clause modifies *play*.)

Some sentences require a choice between *whether* and *if*. Often both are correct: *Leslie wonders whether* (or *if*) *she should take algebra*. But when the sentence explicitly describes a choice, *whether* is preferred: *Toby wonders whether she should take chemistry or physics*. (The clue is *or*.) Sometimes an *if* sentence, although correct, is ambiguous while *whether* would be unmistakable. *Tell Leslie if she should take algebra* could mean talk to her regardless of your recommendation. But it could also mean *If Leslie should take algebra, tell her* — that is, talk to her only if your recommendation is yes.

which, that. In introducing clauses, the words are not interchangeable. See that, which.

whimsy, whimsies.

whip (legislative title). Lowercase: *Merrill J. Lam, the Republican whip in the House*.

whiskey, whisky. Use *whiskey* (and *whiskeys*) as a general term for liquors distilled from a mash of grain, and in specific references to the Irish and American versions. Use *whisky* (and *whiskies*) in specific references to Scotch and Canadian varieties. Also see alcoholic beverages.

white. Lowercase this racial designation and all others derived from skin color (*black, brown, yellow, red*). Use racial designations only when they are pertinent and their pertinence is clear to the reader.

white(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *white* are hyphenated: whiteboard, whitecap, white-collar (adj.), white-faced, whitefish, white-haired, white-hot, white paper, white room, white sale, white sauce, white-shoe (adj.), whitewall, whitewash.

wholehearted.

W.H.O. for the World Health Organization.

who, whom. Many dictionaries have relaxed the distinction between these words, abandoning *whom* unless it directly follows a preposition. But in deference to a grammar-conscious readership and a large classroom circulation, The Times observes the traditional standard:

Use *who* in the sense of *he, she* or *they*: *Pat L. Milori, who was appointed to fill the vacancy, resigned*. (*He* was appointed.) Use *whom* in the sense of *him, her* or *them*: *Pat L. Milori, whom the board recommended, finally got the job*. (The board recommended *him*.) The same test applies to *whoever* and *whomever*: *Whoever wins will collect $64*. (*He* or *she* wins.) *Whomever you ask will provide directions*. (You ask *her* or *him*.)

Sometimes *whoever* or *whomever* will occur, confusingly, in a clause that is part of a larger sentence. In that case, disregard the overall sentence, and choose the pronoun according to its function inside the clause: *Give the book to whoever answers the door*. (*He* or *she* answers.) *Hand the package to whomever you see first*. (You see *her* or *him*.)

Do not be distracted by a verb that occurs in a parenthetical phrase between the pronoun and its verb, in a construction like this: *Pat L. Milori, who the police said was the mastermind, was arrested on Friday*. Mentally remove *the police said*, and the need for *who* becomes clear. But in this sentence, *whom* is correct: *Pat L. Milori, whom the police described as the mastermind, was arrested on Friday*. (They described *him* or *her*.)

Occasionally the traditional use of *whom* may sound stilted, especially in large type: *Whom Should They Blame?* Do not simply substitute *who;* instead, rephrase the passage: *Who Gets the Blame?* or *Whose Fault Is It?*

wide(-), (-)wide. Compounds with *wide* as a prefix are almost always hyphenated when they precede the nouns they modify (and are two words otherwise): wide-angle, wide-awake, wide-brimmed, wide-eyed, wide-open, wide-screen; widespread.

As a simple adjective or as part of a noun, *wide* is usually a separate word: a wide angle, a wide receiver.

Compounds with *wide* as a suffix are solid: boroughwide, citywide, continentwide, countrywide, industrywide, nationwide, statewide, worldwide. But: *World Wide Web*.

wide-body (n. and adj.) for large planes like the DC-10, L-1011, 767, 777, A330, A340 and A380.

widow, widower. Identify a woman by her marital status only when it is clear that a man would be so identified in the same context. And cite marital status only when it is pertinent. Also see men and women and obituaries.

wife. Use the word only in ways that *husband* would be used. In particular, avoid *his wife* in contexts that imply an unequal relationship. See men and women.

Wiffle is a trademark for plastic balls and bats. But *whiffle ball* is a generic term for the equipment and the game played with it.

Wi-Fi is the trademark for several technical specifications related to short-range wireless computer networks.

Wildlife Conservation Society. Formerly called the New York Zoological Society, it operates the Bronx Zoo, the Central Park Zoo, the Prospect Park Zoo, the Queens Zoo and the New York Aquarium, all on city property. It is based at the Bronx Zoo.

Wilkes-Barre (in Pennsylvania).

William Paterson University (in Wayne, N.J.).

Williamsburg for the New York bridge, the Brooklyn neighborhood and the Virginia city (*Colonial Williamsburg*). But: *the Dime Savings Bank of Williamsburgh*.

wind chill is a measurement devised by the National Weather Service to describe the combined effects of sustained winds and low air temperatures on exposed skin. It is expressed in degrees Fahrenheit. For example, if the air temperature is minus 20 and the wind speed is 10 miles an hour, the wind chill, according to the Weather Service chart, is minus 46. (In those conditions, the human body loses heat as fast as it would if the temperature were 46 below and there were no wind.) Wind chill begins to become dangerous around minus 25, the point at which exposed flesh may freeze in a minute.

windfall. A windfall is not just any gain or stroke of good luck but a sudden or unexpected one.

wind up (v.), **windup** (n. and adj.).

wine(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *wine* are one word: wine cellar, wine-colored, wine cooler, wineglass, winegrower, winemaker, wineskin, wine steward.

wines and spirits. When a wine is named for the town or region that produces it, uppercase the name, as noun or adjective: *Beaujolais; Bordeaux; Burgundy; Champagne; Chianti; Mosel; Rhine wine; Rioja; Sauternes; etc.* The same is true of a distilled liquor, or brandy: *Armagnac; Cognac*. When using such a term loosely or generically, lowercase it: *Wall Street is enjoying a season of caviar and champagne; The couple received champagne glasses; The senator favors a sip of cognac*. Avoid using a regional name in specific references to a wine or spirit produced elsewhere, but when using such a name is unavoidable, lowercase it: *a California burgundy; Russian cognac; an Australian champagne*. (It is preferable and more precise to write *Russian brandy* or *an Australian sparkling wine*.) An exception: Uppercase a name used as a brand or trademark, regardless of where the wine is produced: *Gallo Hearty Burgundy*.

Lowercase *sherry* and *port* because they are not place names although derived from them.

Lowercase varietal names (the names of grape types) serving as wine designations, unless they are part of an official controlled appellation: *cabernet sauvignon; pinot noir; chardonnay; gewürztraminer; merlot; Brunello di Montalcino; Barbera d'Asti*. An exception is *Müller-Thurgau*, a German varietal named for its developer. Consult a wine guide to distinguish between varietal and regional names.

Also see alcoholic beverages.

Wing Cmdr. *Dana L. Lamb* (in British and other foreign air forces); *Wing Commander Lamb; the wing commander*.

wingspan, wingspread.

winter, wintertime. The adjective is *wintry*.

wiretapping. Do not confuse with bugging. See bug.

Wisconsin. Abbreviate as *Wis.* after the names of cities, towns and counties.

(-)wise. Use this suffix with care. It forms standard compounds like *clockwise, lengthwise, otherwise, penny-wise* and *slantwise*. It is also commonly accepted in *streetwise* and in *weather-wise*, meaning informed about weather: *He was a weather-wise old mariner*. But avoid coinages that seem to parody Madison Avenue: *Weatherwise, it was a terrible day*.

within, without. Ordinarily use *in* rather than the pretentious *within*, in sentences like this: *Ms. Karitsa had no enemies within the party*. And *without* is often unclear or unconversational: *Ms. Kikondoo's critics within and without the industry were seldom silent*. Make it *in and out of the industry* or *inside and outside the industry*. The fancier phrase may be justified (very sparingly), though, when the two words act as adverbs, without an object: *They defended the country from enemies within and without*.

witness protection program is acceptable in nearly all references to the federal Witness Security Program, and to similar state programs.

woebegone.

women and men. See men and women.

women's wear.

Woodbridge, Wood-Ridge (N.J.). Woodbridge is in Middlesex County. Wood-Ridge is in Bergen County.

Woods Hole (in Massachusetts).

woolen, woolly.

word division. When a word must be divided at the end of a line of type in print, use the breaks shown in the latest printing of Webster's New World College Dictionary, which are generally programmed into The Times's computers. Under deadline pressure, editors are not expected to verify word breaks, but they should know a few principles.

Because its print columns are narrow, unlike those of books, The Times permits a break before or after a two-letter syllable, provided it is pronounceable (*in-tend*, *want-ed*, but not *hop-ed*). In the American system, pronunciation governs division (*photog-raphy*, for example), while the British system relies on word origins (*photo-*

graphy). For some words spelled identically, division depends on the sense (*produce* for the verb, *produce* for the noun meaning fruits and vegetables). Such words are called homographs, and The Times's computers are ordinarily programmed to keep them intact rather than risk error.

Editors should be alert to names that the computer may mishandle, especially in foreign news and the arts. Consonant combinations like *gn* in French or Italian, *sz* and *cz* in Polish and *kh, zh* and *shch* in Russian should not be broken and usually belong at the start of a syllable. When it is necessary to override the computer, insert a "discretionary hyphen" symbol (shown here as "··") at the preferred break point: *Ti··khon*. Used at the start of a word, the symbol will prevent any break.

wordplays. See puns.

work(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *work* are one word: workaday, workaholic, workbench, work camp, workday, work ethic, workfare, work force, workhorse, workhouse, workload, workman (or workingman), workmanlike, workmanship, workout (n.), workplace, work-release (adj.), workshop, workstation, work-study (adj.), workweek.

workers' compensation. Always a plural possessive for the insurance system, formerly known as workmen's compensation.

World Airways.

World Bank may be used in most references to the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development; the official name should appear somewhere in any article dealing centrally with the institution. In later references: *the bank*.

world-class. But do not hyphenate when it follows what it modifies: *The boat was world class*.

World Council of Churches. An organization of Protestant and Orthodox churches, including most major ones. Its members are denominations, not countries. Its headquarters are in Geneva, and its chief executive is a general secretary (not secretary general). The highest policy-making body is the general assembly, which meets every six or seven years. Interim policy is set by the central committee, which has more than 100 members and meets at intervals of about 18 months.

World Court may be used in most first and later references to the International Court of Justice, in The Hague. Also, in later references: *the court*. The formal name should appear somewhere in any article dealing centrally with the court.

World Cup. The most prominent event bearing this name is the international soccer championship.

World Financial Center (in Manhattan).

World Series. In later references: *the Series*. Also: *Little League World Series*.

worldview.

World War I, World War II. *First World War* and *Second World War* may also be used, but the Roman numeral forms are preferred. Also: *a world war; a third world war; the world wars*.

worldwide. But: *World Wide Web*.

World Wide Web, for historical references to the global library of documents and multimedia files shared over the Internet. In most references: *the web*. Also see link; website; web addresses. Note that in all other contexts, *worldwide* is a solid word.

worshiped, worshiper, worshiping.

worth. Use the apostrophe in expressions like *a year's worth, five days' worth, money's worth, million dollars' worth*. But with the currency symbol: *$5 million worth*.

wrack. See rack, wrack.

W. Virginia. The abbreviation may be used as a last resort in headlines (although more freely in the sports pages) and in charts and tables.

www. See link.

Wyoming. Abbreviate as *Wyo*. after the names of cities, towns and counties.

X

Xerox is a trademark for a photocopying process. Do not use it as a verb or as a generic term for a photocopy.

Xinhua. Use the Chinese name, but generally include a phrase explaining that this is the official Chinese news agency. Articles focused on the agency can also note that the name means “New China.”

Xmas. Do not use; spell out *Christmas*.

X-rated. In headlines: *X-Rated*.

X-ray (n., adj., v.). In headlines: *X-Ray*.

Y

Yale University. In many casual references, *Yale* can stand alone, for the university or for its undergraduate college.

Yangon, formerly Rangoon, is the main city of Myanmar, formerly Burma.

Yangtze River.

yard(-), (-)yard. Most but not all compounds formed with *yard* as a prefix are one word: yardage, yardarm, yard goods, yardmaster, yard sale, yardstick.

Compounds formed with *yard* as a suffix are one word: backyard, barnyard, churchyard, graveyard, lumberyard, schoolyard, shipyard, steelyard. An exception: *front yard*.

yarmulke. Yiddish for *skullcap*. Because American Jews increasingly use the Hebrew term *kipa* instead of *yarmulke, skullcap* is often preferable in print.

year(-). Most but not all compounds formed with *year* are one word: yearbook, year-end, yearling, yearlong (adj.), year-round (adj.).

years, decades, centuries. Use numerals for specific years (*1492; 1995; mid-1997*) and decades and centuries (*the 1990s; the 1800s; the mid-1700s*). Use an apostrophe when reducing a year or decade to two digits: *the class of '93; the '60s* (but drop the apostrophe in *mid-60s*). First references in articles should usually give all four digits (*1990; the 1980s*), but the shorter forms (*'90* or *'90s* or *mid-90s*) are acceptable in later references and in headlines. Nicknames of decades should be spelled out and capitalized: *the Gay Nineties; the Roaring Twenties*.

Give spans of years this way: *1861-65; 1880-95; 1895-1900; 1903-4* (not *1903-04*).

Spell out and lowercase the numbers of centuries from first through ninth: *the first* *century; the eighth century*. Use numerals from 10th on: *the 12th century; the 19th century*. Hyphenate the modifier form: *eighth-century ruins; 17th-century house*.

If, rarely, a year or a decade must begin a sentence, spell and capitalize the numbers: *Nineteen sixty-seven was not his lucky year; Nineteen-eighties answers are no longer valid*. More often, in such a case, the sentence can be rephrased: *The answers of the 1960s* ... or *The year 1967 was not* ...

Omit commas when a year is used with a month alone: *the January 1995 issue of Gristle, the magazine of meat cutting*. But punctuation is essential before and after the year when it follows a specific date: *the March 5*, *1994*, *proclamation*.

Technically a century begins with the "01" year — 1901, 2001, *etc.* — because there was no year 0. But in the popular consciousness, "turn of the century" means 1900, 2000, *etc.* That informal style is acceptable in references to celebrations, observances and social or cultural turning points. Articles dealing centrally with the calendar should mention the literal interpretation, but without belittling popular usage.

Also see dates and months.

yen. See currencies.

Yerevan, formerly Erivan, is the capital of Armenia.

yeses and noes.

Y.M.C.A., Y.M.H.A., Y.W.C.A., Y.W.H.A. But the *92nd Street Y* in Manhattan (actually a Y.M.-Y.W.H.A.) is always known by the short form of its name.

yogurt.

yoke (n. and v.), never *yolk*, for a tight or burdensome bond. The allusion is to a shoulder harness, of an ox team or a bucket carrier.

Yoknapatawpha County.

Yom Kippur, the Day of Atonement. Yom Kippur and Rosh Hashana are the High Holy Days (preferred, rather than *High Holidays*) of Judaism.

York College (part of the City University of New York).

Young Turk(s). Uppercase only in a reference to insurgents in a political group or other organization.

yuan. See renminbi.

Yucatán (in Mexico).

Yugoslavia. Use only in historical references. The final incarnation of Yugoslavia, comprising the republics of Serbia and Montenegro, was dissolved when Montenegro declared its independence in 2006.

The other republics that had formed the Yugoslav federation became independent nations in the 1990s: *Bosnia and Herzegovina* (1992); *Croatia* (1991); *Macedonia* (1992, generally recognized in 1995); and *Slovenia* (1991).

Yukon Territory (of Canada). Do not abbreviate after the names of cities and towns, even in datelines. In later references: *the Yukon*.

Yule, Yuletide. They are trite. Just write *Christmas*.

yuppie. The term, derived from *y*oung *u*rban *p*rofessional, is colloquial and dated.

Z

zeitgeist. When it appears in an English phrase, lowercase the German noun meaning “spirit of the age.” Still better, resist it, as pretentious.

zero(s).

zigzag (adj., n., v.).

zine. The colloquial term for a small magazine (usually amateur and often online) takes no apostrophe.

ZIP code. The first word is all uppercase, the second all lowercase. Do not use a comma between the name of the state and the ZIP code. When giving the nine-digit version, use a hyphen after the first five digits: *New York, N.Y. 10036-3959*.

The Chicago Manual of Style

16

SIXTEENTH EDITION

The Essential Guide for
Writers, Editors, and Publishers

The Chicago Manual of Style

The Chicago Manual of Style

SIXTEENTH EDITION

The University of Chicago Press
CHICAGO AND LONDON

The University of Chicago Press, Chicago 60637
The University of Chicago Press, Ltd., London
© 2010 by The University of Chicago
All rights reserved. Published 2010.
First edition published 1906. Sixteenth edition 2010.
Printed in the United States of America

18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 1 2 3 4 5

ISBN-13: 978-0-226-10420-1 (cloth)
ISBN-10: 0-226-10420-6 (cloth)

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
The Chicago manual of style.—16th ed.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references and indexes.
ISBN-13: 978-0-226-10420-1 (cloth : alk. paper)
ISBN-10: 0-226-10420-6 (cloth : alk. paper)
1. Printing—Style manuals.
2. Authorship—Style manuals.
Z253.U69 2010
808′.027′0973—dc22 2009053612

∞ This paper meets the requirements of ANSI/NISO Z39.48-1992 (Permanence of Paper).

Contents

Preface xi
Acknowledgments xv

PART ONE: THE PUBLISHING PROCESS

1 ***Books and Journals*** 3
Overview 4
The Parts of a Book 4
The Parts of a Journal 35
Considerations for Web-Based Publications 48

2 ***Manuscript Preparation, Manuscript Editing, and Proofreading*** 53
Overview and Process Outline 54
Manuscript Preparation Guidelines for Authors 57
Manuscript Editing 70
Proofreading 93

3 ***Illustrations and Tables*** 111
Overview 112
Illustrations 112
Tables 133

4 ***Rights, Permissions, and Copyright Administration*** 155
BY WILLIAM S. STRONG
Overview 156
Copyright Law and the Licensing of Rights 156
The Publishing Agreement 171
Subsidiary Rights and Permissions 179
The Author's Responsibilities 184

PART TWO: STYLE AND USAGE

5 ***Grammar and Usage*** 201

BY BRYAN A. GARNER

Grammar 203
Word Usage 261

6 ***Punctuation*** 305

Overview 306
Punctuation in Relation to Surrounding Text 306
Periods 310
Commas 311
Semicolons 325
Colons 326
Question Marks 328
Exclamation Points 330
Hyphens and Dashes 331
Parentheses 336
Brackets and Braces 338
Slashes 339
Quotation Marks 341
Apostrophes 342
Multiple Punctuation Marks 343
Lists and Outline Style 344

7 ***Spelling, Distinctive Treatment of Words, and Compounds*** 349

Overview 350
Plurals 351
Possessives 353
Contractions and Interjections 358
Word Division 358
A and *An*, *O* and *Oh* 362
Ligatures 362
Italics, Capitals, and Quotation Marks 363
Compounds and Hyphenation 372

8 ***Names and Terms*** 385

Overview 387
Personal Names 387
Titles and Offices 393
Epithets, Kinship Names, and Personifications 400
Ethnic, Socioeconomic, and Other Groups 401

Names of Places 403
Words Derived from Proper Names 410
Names of Organizations 412
Historical and Cultural Terms 418
Calendar and Time Designations 425
Religious Names and Terms 426
Military Terms 433
Names of Ships and Other Vehicles 436
Scientific Terminology 437
Brand Names and Trademarks 446
Titles of Works 447
Signs and Mottoes 461

9 ***Numbers*** 463
Overview 464
Numerals versus Words 464
Plurals and Punctuation of Numbers 481
Inclusive Numbers 482
Roman Numerals 484

10 ***Abbreviations*** 487
Overview 488
Names and Titles 492
Geographical Terms 498
Designations of Time 502
Scholarly Abbreviations 504
Biblical Abbreviations 510
Technology and Science 514
Business and Commerce 527

11 ***Foreign Languages*** 531
Overview 532
Titles and Other Proper Names 532
Languages Using the Latin Alphabet 534
Languages Usually Transliterated (or Romanized) 558
Classical Greek 570
Old English and Middle English 574
American Sign Language 575

12 ***Mathematics in Type*** 579
Overview 580
Style of Mathematical Expressions 580
Preparation and Editing of Paper Manuscripts 609

13 ***Quotations and Dialogue*** 619
Overview 620
Permissible Changes to Quotations 621
Quotations in Relation to Text 623
Quotation Marks 630
Ellipses 637
Interpolations and Clarifications 641
Citing Sources in Text 643
Foreign-Language Quotations 647

PART THREE: DOCUMENTATION

14 ***Documentation I: Notes and Bibliography*** 653
Source Citations: An Overview 655
Notes and Bibliography: Basic Format, with Examples and Variations 660
Notes 665
Bibliographies 684
Books 693
Periodicals 728
Interviews and Personal Communications 744
Unpublished and Informally Published Material 746
Special Types of References 755
Audiovisual Materials 764
Legal and Public Documents 769

15 ***Documentation II: Author-Date References*** 785
Overview 786
Author-Date References: Basic Format, with Examples and Variations 787
Reference Lists and Text Citations 792
Author-Date References: Special Cases 800

16 ***Indexes*** 811
Overview 812
Components of an Index 814
General Principles of Indexing 823

Indexing Proper Names and Variants 824
Indexing Titles of Publications and Other Works 828
Alphabetizing 831
Punctuating Indexes: A Summary 843
The Mechanics of Indexing 845
Editing an Index Compiled by Someone Else 855
Typographical Considerations for Indexes 856
Examples of Indexes 858

Appendix A: Production and Digital Technology 861

Overview 862
Markup 864
Design 870
The Electronic Workflow 877
Options for Presenting Content 882
Print Technologies 884

Appendix B: Glossary 891

Bibliography 907
Index 925

Preface

This, the sixteenth edition of *The Chicago Manual of Style*, marks the first edition to be prepared and published simultaneously in print and online. As opportunities for publishing have grown dramatically in an era of electronic publication and distribution, the guiding principles for this edition have been twofold: to recognize the continuing evolution in the way authors, editors, and publishers do their work, on the one hand, and to maintain a focus on those aspects of the process that are independent of the medium of publication, on the other.

In service of the former principle, this edition assumes that all publishers might benefit from an extended discussion of the organizational and proofreading requirements of electronic publications (chapters 1 and 2). More attention has also been given to the role of software for manuscript editors—for example, with the addition of a manuscript cleanup checklist intended to benefit authors and editors alike. Complementing chapters 1 and 2 is an overview (in appendix A) of production technologies and in particular the role of electronic markup in a publishing workflow. Coverage of copyright and permissions (chapter 4) includes new information on fair use and electronic rights, including a discussion of the NIH Public Access Policy for journal articles, and the treatment of bias-free language in chapter 5 has been significantly expanded. The chapters on documentation (14 and 15) offer updated information on citing electronic sources, including many more examples, and an updated glossary (appendix B) includes more terms related to electronic publishing.

Also new to this edition is an introduction to Unicode (in chapter 11), a widely adopted computing standard that defines many of the letters and symbols required by the world's writing systems. Unicode identifiers and descriptions are included alongside special characters in the chapters on foreign languages and math and elsewhere to aid authors, editors, and publishers in the positive identification and proper implementation of these characters. More generally, an effort has been made to acknowledge organizations that publish their standards and guidelines online—in an era when this has become routine. For example, we defer not only to the website of the Unicode Consortium for more information on the tens of thousands of characters defined by that organization thus far but also to the romanization tables published online by the Library of Congress for guidelines on transliteration. And, though we continue to present guidance on abbreviating country names in general contexts—including our new preference for US over U.S.—we also direct readers to the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) for the latest two- and three-letter country codes for the 250-odd areas of the world for which these have been defined.

With an eye to facilitating navigation and streamlining our recommendations, a few organizational changes have been made. Part titles organize the body of the manual into three sections: on the *process* of writing, editing, and publishing; on matters of *style and usage*; and on *documentation* (including indexing). Titles of individual paragraphs have been expanded to become more meaningful, and many smaller paragraphs that treated different aspects of the same issue have been combined. To facilitate finding related discussions and for faster navigation online, more cross-references have been added. To recognize the overlapping roles of authors, editors, and proofreaders, the discussion of manuscript preparation and editing has been combined with that of proofreading into a single chapter, as have the discussions on illustrations and tables, which are typically prepared and edited separately from the text. In response to overwhelming reader input, our hyphenation guidelines (chapter 7) are now presented as a four-part table. And, in a significant departure from previous editions, Chicago now recommends a uniform stylistic treatment for the main elements of a citation—authors' names, titles of works, and so forth—in both its systems of documentation. The differences between the notes and bibliography system (chapter 14) and the author-date system (chapter 15) are now a simple matter of arrangement of elements, eliminating the need for repetitive examples.

Though most of the fundamental principles of the manual remain in place, a few changes were once again in order. In response mainly to comments from our readers (on our Q&A page and on e-mail lists for editors), this edition has moved toward recommending a single rule for a given stylistic matter rather than presenting multiple options. We now recommend, for example, a single approach to ellipses—a three- or four-dot method (chapter 13, where we also explain the European preference for bracketed ellipses). And we have eliminated most of the exceptions to the rules for forming the possessive of proper names (chapter 7) as well as those for implementing headline-style capitalization (chapter 8). We have come to understand that even in the case of somewhat arbitrary rules, writers and editors tend to look to this manual for the most efficient, logical, and defensible solution to a given editorial problem. On the other hand, none of our recommendations are meant to foreclose breaking or bending rules to fit a particular case, something we continue to do ourselves. Once again, we have looked to what has become a maxim (from the first edition of the manual in 1906): "Rules and regulations such as these, in the nature of the case, cannot be endowed with the fixity of rock-ribbed law. They are meant for the average case, and must be applied with a certain degree of elasticity."

This edition marks an evolution of more than forty years, starting with the landmark twelfth edition, published in 1969. As part of this evolution, and as with the fifteenth edition, Chicago consulted a broad range of scholars and professionals in the fields of publishing and academics throughout the revision process. We also continued to benefit from the many helpful comments and suggestions sent to us by our readers, many of whom come from fields outside of scholarly publishing. Their input, in particular, helped us to keep in mind those principles of writing and editing that remain true regardless of the medium or field of publication.

On behalf of the University of Chicago Press
Russell David Harper
Spring 2010

Acknowledgments

An undertaking such as the publication of *The Chicago Manual of Style,* which strives to codify the best practices of an institution and an industry, must be an effort of many hands and many voices if it is to succeed. This edition has benefited from the carefully crafted recommendations—some broad, some minute, all essential—of a legion of publishing professionals. At the same time, it was equally essential that those recommendations be compared, vetted, and applied in a consistent manner and with a clear vision, a challenging task performed in exemplary fashion by this edition's principal reviser, Russell David Harper.

A preliminary outline as well as the entire penultimate draft of the manuscript was read and commented on by an advisory board representing various communities of readers:

David Bevington, Department of English, University of Chicago
William Germano, The Cooper Union for the Advancement of Science and Art
John Hevelin, Publications Consultant
Alex Holzman, Temple University Press
Beth Luey, Editorial Consultant
Evan Owens, Portico
Margaret Perkins, *New England Journal of Medicine*
Nancy Perry, Bedford/St. Martin's
Oona Schmid, American Anthropological Association
Sem Sutter, University of Chicago Library
Robert Wald, Department of Physics, University of Chicago

We would like to thank the many experts who contributed to our coverage of languages: T. David Brent, Erik Carlson, Wendy Doniger, Teresa Fagan, Ariela Finkelstein, Victor Friedman, Kathleen Hansell, Wadad Kadi, Elsi Kaiser, Kathryn Krug, John Lipski, Line Mikkelsen, Carol Neidle, Christina von Nolcken, Eizaburo Okuizumi, David Pharies, Thomas Shannon, Malynne Sternstein, Anna Szabolcsi, Ivey Pittle Wallace, and Yuan Zhou. We are indebted to Brian Albrecht, Dean Blobaum, Michael Brehm, Deborah Bruner, Anthony Crouch, Keir Graf, Rich Hendel, Todd Pollak, and Deb Wong for their formative input on coverage of production for both print and electronic publications; to Diana Gillooly, Michael Koplow, Diane Lang, and Sharon Jennings for their advice on mathematics; and to Leslie Keros and Carol Anne Meyer for their guidance on documentation. We are also grateful to Perry Cartwright and Lolly Gasaway for their review of copyright and permissions material; to Molly Balikov, Michael Brondoli, Jean Eckenfels, Fred Kameny, Randy Petilos, and Angela Yokoe for their insights on a variety of particular style matters; and to others, too many to name individually, who responded to queries and informal polls about specific sections of the manual. We also owe a particular debt to Bryan A. Garner and William S. Strong for their authorship of whole chapters.

Within the University of Chicago Press, special thanks go to Mary E. Laur and David Morrow, who oversaw the revision process, reviewed the many incarnations of the manuscript, and kept the print and online editions on track for simultaneous publication; to Susan Allan, Carol Kasper, Sylvia Mendoza, John Muenning, Carol Fisher Saller, Anita Samen, and Jill Shimabukuro for their essential role in shaping the manuscript; to Rossen Angelov, Eric Gamazon, Ellen Gibson, Debra D. Hebda, and Courtney Turlington for their leadership in developing the online edition; to Paul Schellinger, who sponsored the project; and to Garrett Kiely, who fostered the environment of collegiality and professionalism within which this effort took place. Many other staff members contributed their knowledge and skills at various stages of the process: Laura Andersen, Matt Avery, Kira Bennett, Erik Carlson, Lindsay Dawson, Erin C. DeWitt, Katherine M. Frentzel, Mary Gehl, Ruth Goring, Sandra Hazel, David Jiambalvo, Dustin Kilgore, Kailee R. Kremer, Ryan Li, Renaldo Migaldi, David O'Connor, Patricia O'Shea, Mark Reschke, Christopher Rhodes, Maia Rigas, Christina Samuell, Joel Score, Ed Scott, Rhonda Smith, Isaac Tobin, Maia Wright, and Aiping Zhang. On behalf of the press, Christine Gever proofread the book, and Margie Towery prepared the index.

On a final note, this edition is in many ways most indebted to Catharine Seybold (1915–2008) and Bruce Young (1917–2004), who compiled the landmark twelfth edition of this manual as well as the thirteenth, to John Grossman, who compiled the fourteenth edition, and to Margaret Mahan, who was responsible for the fifteenth. It is to their high standard for what has come to be known as "Chicago style" that we have looked in preparing this, the sixteenth edition of the manual.

The University of Chicago Press Staff
Spring 2010

Part One: The Publishing Process

1 *Books and Journals*

- **Overview** 1.1
- **The Parts of a Book** 1.3
  - *Introduction* 1.3
  - *Page Numbers* 1.5
  - *Running Heads* 1.9
  - *Front Matter* 1.16
    - [TITLE PAGES 1.16
    - [COPYRIGHT PAGE 1.19
    - [DEDICATION AND EPIGRAPH 1.35
    - [TABLE OF CONTENTS AND LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS OR TABLES 1.37
    - [FOREWORD, PREFACE AND ACKNOWLEDGMENTS, AND INTRODUCTION 1.39
    - [OTHER FRONT MATTER 1.43
  - *Text* 1.45
    - [TEXT DIVISIONS 1.46
    - [TEXT SUBDIVISIONS 1.53
  - *Back Matter* 1.57
  - *Covers and Jackets* 1.66
- **The Parts of a Journal** 1.72
  - *Introduction* 1.72
  - *Page Numbers and Running Heads* 1.75
  - *Covers and Home Pages* 1.78
  - *Front Matter* 1.81
  - *Articles and Other Components* 1.87
  - *Tables and Illustrations* 1.99
  - *Documentation* 1.101
  - *Index* 1.103
  - *Version Control and Material Not Available in Print* 1.105
  - *Design and Style* 1.108
- **Considerations for Web-Based Publications** 1.111

Overview

1.1 ***Books and journals as the core of scholarly publishing.*** Printed-and-bound books and journals and their electronic counterparts constitute the core of scholarly publishing. Book-length works in particular—in their breadth and variety, not to mention their long history—provide an overview of the anatomy of a scholarly work that, in conjunction with the discussion of journals (see 1.72–110), can be usefully applied to other types of published works.

1.2 ***Electronic publishing.*** Electronic publication of scholarly books and journals in various formats is increasingly common. Most journals at Chicago have implemented a simultaneous print and electronic publishing model (see 1.72)—a model that has become the industry standard. For books, if print has remained the most common format, publishers are increasingly gravitating toward a simultaneous print and electronic model. In general, electronic books tend to emulate the organization and structure of their printed-and-bound counterparts, whether they are offered as page images or in an e-book format, proprietary or not—and whether or not they incorporate hyperlinks, search engines, and other features that are unique to the electronic environment. In fact, the industry-wide goal for e-book versions of printed monographs has been one of approximating on-screen the experience of reading the printed book. The discussion on the parts of a book—though it assumes electronic publication is an option for any scholarly book—therefore includes special considerations for electronic book formats only where these might differ from those for print. But see 1.111–17.

The Parts of a Book

Introduction

1.3 ***Rectos and versos.*** Publishers refer to the trimmed sheets of paper that you turn in a printed-and-bound book as leaves, and a page is one side of a leaf. The front of the leaf, the side that lies to the right in an open book, is called the recto. The back of the leaf, the side that lies to the left when the leaf is turned, is the verso. Rectos are always odd-numbered, versos always even-numbered. In an electronic book, the distinction between rectos and versos can be represented or simulated but need not be.

1.4 ***Outline of divisions and parts of a book.*** Books are traditionally organized into three major divisions: the front matter (also called preliminary matter, or prelims), the text, and the back matter (or end matter). The front matter presents information about a book's title, publisher, and copyright; it acknowledges debts to the work of others; it provides a way to navigate the structure of the book; and it introduces the book and sets its tone. The text proper comprises the narrative—including arguments, data, illustrations, and so forth—often divided into chapters and other meaningful sections. The back matter presents sources or source notes, appendixes, and other types of documentation supporting the text but outside its central focus or narrative. This section discusses the parts of a book according to a standard outline of these divisions and their components, starting with the list below. Few books contain all these elements, and some books have components not on the list. Books published electronically may depart especially from the order or presentation of elements. The list that follows presents the traditional arrangement, using lowercase roman numerals for pages in the front matter and arabic numerals for all the rest, including the back matter. Indications of recto (right-hand page) or verso (left-hand page) may be applicable only to printed-and-bound books; starting pages that cannot be assigned at manuscript stage are simply indicated as recto, the right-hand page being the traditional choice. Every page is counted in the page sequence, even those on which no number actually appears, such as the title and half-title pages, copyright page, and blank pages (see 1.5–8).

FRONT MATTER	
Book half title	i
Series title, frontispiece, or blank	ii
Title page	iii
Copyright page	iv
Dedication	v
Epigraph	v or vi
(Table of) Contents	v or vii
(List of) Illustrations	recto or verso
(List of) Tables	recto or verso
Foreword	recto
Preface	recto
Acknowledgments (if not part of preface)	recto
Introduction (if not part of text)	recto
Abbreviations (if not in back matter)	recto or verso
Chronology (if not in back matter)	recto

TEXT	
First text page (introduction or chapter 1)	1
or	
Second half title or first part title	1
Blank	2
First text page	3

BACK MATTER	
Acknowledgments (if not in front matter)	recto
Appendix (or first, if more than one)	recto
Second and subsequent appendixes	recto or verso
Chronology (if not in front matter)	recto
Abbreviations (if not in front matter)	recto
Notes	recto
Glossary	recto
Bibliography or References	recto
(List of) Contributors	recto
Illustration Credits (if not in captions or elsewhere)	recto
Index(es)	recto

Page Numbers

1.5 ***Pages and folios.*** Modern books are paginated consecutively, and all pages except endpapers (see 1.68) are counted in the pagination whether or not the numbers appear. The page number, or folio, is most commonly found at the top of the page, flush left verso, flush right recto. The folio may also be printed at the bottom of the page, and in that location it is called a drop folio. Drop folios usually appear either centered on each page or flush left verso and flush right recto. A page number that does not appear is sometimes referred to as a blind folio. *Not* paginated are pages that are inserted into printed books after pages have been made up—for example, color illustrations or photo galleries printed on a different type of paper (see 1.38).

1.6 ***Roman numerals for front matter.*** The front matter of a book is paginated with lowercase roman numerals (see 1.4). This traditional practice prevents renumbering the remainder of a book when, for example, a dedication page or additional acknowledgments are added at the last moment. By convention, no folio appears on blank pages or on "display" pages (i.e., such stand-alone pages as those for the half title, title, copyright, dedication, and epigraph), and a drop folio (or no folio) is used on the opening page of each succeeding section of the front matter (e.g., table of contents, foreword, preface).

1.7 ***Arabic numbers for text and back matter.*** The text, or the central part of a book, begins with arabic page 1. If the text is introduced by a second half title or opens with a part title, the half title or part title counts as page 1, its verso counts as page 2, and the first arabic number to appear is the drop folio 3 on the first page of text (see 1.45, 1.48). (Some publishers ignore the second half title in paginating their books, counting the first page of text as p. 1.) Page numbers generally do not appear on part titles, but if text appears on a part-title page (see 1.47), a drop folio may be used. Arabic numbering continues for the back matter. As in the front matter, the opening page of each chapter in the text and each section in the back matter carries either a drop folio or no page number. On pages containing only illustrations or tables, page numbers are usually omitted, except in the case of a long sequence of figures or tables.

1.8 ***Separate versus consecutive pagination across more than one volume.*** Publishers weighing pagination schemes for works that run to more than one volume should consider the index and the projected number of volumes. If an index to two volumes is to appear at the end of volume 2, consecutive pagination saves index entries from having to refer to volume as well as page number. In rare cases where back matter, such as an index, must be added to volume 1 later in the production process, lowercase roman folios may be used; these should continue the sequence from the front matter in that volume (including a final blank page)—if, for example, the last page of the front matter is xii, the back matter would start with page xiii. Multivolume works that run into the thousands of pages are usually paginated separately to avoid unwieldy page numbers. Index entries and other references to such works must include volume as well as page number. In either scenario—consecutive or separate pagination across volumes—the front matter in each volume begins anew with page i.

Running Heads

1.9 ***Running heads defined.*** Running heads—the headings at the tops of pages—function, like page numbers, as signposts. Especially useful in scholarly books and textbooks, they are sometimes omitted for practical or aesthetic reasons—in a novel or a book of poems, for example. Running heads are sometimes placed at the bottom of the page, where they are referred to as running feet, or, more rarely, in the left- and right-hand margins. In endnotes and other places where the information conveyed by these signposts is essential to readers, placement at the tops of pages is preferred. In this manual, *running head* is used for this element wherever it appears. For preparation of running-head copy, see 2.73.

1.10 ***Running heads for front matter.*** Running heads are never used on display pages (half title, title, copyright, dedication, epigraph) or on the first page of the table of contents, preface, and so forth (see also 1.15). Any element that runs more than one page usually carries running heads. Each element in the front matter normally carries the same running head on verso and recto pages.

VERSO	*RECTO*
Contents	Contents
Preface	Preface

1.11 ***Running heads for text.*** Chapter openings and other display pages carry no running heads (see also 1.15). The choice of running heads for other text pages is governed chiefly by the structure and nature of the book. Among acceptable arrangements are the following:

VERSO	*RECTO*
Part title	Chapter title
Chapter number	Chapter title
Chapter title	Subhead
Chapter title	Chapter subtitle
Chapter title	Chapter title
Subhead	Subhead
Chapter author	Chapter title

See also 2.73. Chicago generally advises against putting the book title on the verso (partly to minimize complications from a last-minute change to a title)—though the practice of doing so has persisted, especially for works of fiction. In electronic books, verso and recto running heads, when they are not the same, are sometimes combined and separated by a colon or a slash or other device.

1.12 ***Subheads as running heads.*** When subheads in the text are used as running heads on recto pages and more than one subhead falls on a single page, the *last* one on the page is used as the running head. When subheads are used as running heads on versos, however, the *first* subhead on the page is used as the running head. (The principle is the same as for dictionary running heads.)

1.13 ***Running heads for back matter.*** Running heads for back matter follow the same pattern as those for front matter and text (but see 1.14). If there is an appendix, Appendix (or Appendix 1 or Appendix A, etc.) appears verso, the appendix title recto. If there is more than one index, it is essential that the running heads so indicate (Index of Names, Index of Subjects, etc.).

1.14 ***Running heads for endnotes.*** The running heads for a section of notes in the back of the book should give the inclusive page numbers or (much less useful for readers but more expedient for the publisher) the chapter where the relevant note references are found in the text. If chapter numbers are used, it is essential that the verso running heads in the text also give chapter numbers. Thus, two facing running heads might read:

VERSO	*RECTO*
Notes to Pages 2–10	Notes to Pages 11–25
or	
Notes to Chapter One	Notes to Chapter Two

For a fuller explanation, see 14.42.

1.15 ***Omission of running heads.*** Besides display pages in the front matter (see 1.10), running heads are omitted on part titles, chapter openings, and any page containing only an illustration or a table. (For the omission of page numbers, see 1.7.) Pages that include lines of text in addition to an illustration or table should include running heads. Running heads may also be included in long sequences of illustrations or tables to keep readers oriented.

Front Matter

TITLE PAGES

1.16 ***Half title.*** The half title (p. i in a printed book, no folio) normally consists only of the main title (less any subtitle) and is usually counted as the very first page in a printed-and-bound book. All other information—including author name, publisher, and edition—is omitted.

1.17 *Series title or frontispiece.* The verso following the half-title page (p. ii in a printed book) is usually blank. But if the book is part of a series, it may include the title and volume number of the series, the name of the general editor of the series, and sometimes the titles of previously published books in the series. (A series title may appear on the title page instead.) If the book is the published proceedings of a symposium, the title of the symposium and the date it was held and other relevant details may appear on page ii. Some publishers list an author's previous publications on page ii; Chicago generally lists these on the copyright page and on the jacket or cover (see 1.20). Alternatively, page ii might carry an illustration, called a frontispiece. If the frontispiece is printed on a different stock from the text, and thus is inserted separately, it will not constitute page ii, though it will still appear opposite the title page, which is normally page iii (see 1.18). Page ii might also be used for a title page across pages ii and iii.

1.18 *Title page.* The title page (p. iii or sometimes pp. ii and iii) presents the full title of the book; the subtitle, if any; the name of the author, editor, or translator; and the name and location of the publisher. If the type size or style of the subtitle differs from that of the main title, no colon or other mark of punctuation is needed to separate them. In a new edition of a work previously published, the number of the edition (e.g., Third Edition) should also appear on the title page, usually following the title (see also 1.25, 1.26). The author's name, or authors' names (see also 1.62), may appear below or above the title. Given first names should not be shortened to initials unless the author's name is widely known in such a form (e.g., P. D. James, J. M. Coetzee), or unless the author prefers initials (see 14.73). Chicago does not print academic degrees or affiliations after an author's name on the title page (though exceptions have been made for MD in medical publications). Editors or translators should be listed in the form "Edited by" or "Translated by." The publisher's full name (imprint) should be given on the title page and is usually followed by the name of the city (or cities) where the principal offices are located. The publisher's logo may also appear there. The year of publication is best omitted from the title page, particularly if it conflicts with copyright information on page iv (see 1.22).

COPYRIGHT PAGE

1.19 ***Components of a copyright page.*** The Copyright Act of 1989 does not require that published works carry a copyright notice in order to secure copyright protection; nevertheless, most publishers continue to carry the notice to discourage infringement. The copyright notice is just one of several items typically included on the copyright page (p. iv). The University of Chicago Press includes the following:

- Biographical note on author
- Publisher's address
- Copyright notice—including, if applicable, copyright dates of previous editions and indication of copyright renewal or other changes, and followed by the statement "All rights reserved"
- Publication date, including publishing history
- Country of printing
- Impression line, indicating number and year of current printing
- International Standard Book Number (ISBN)
- International Standard Serial Number (ISSN), if applicable
- For translations, indication of original-language title, publisher, and copyright
- Acknowledgments, permissions, and other credits, including acknowledgment of grants, if applicable and space permitting
- Cataloging-in-Publication (CIP) data
- Paper durability statement

For an example, see figure 1.1. These items are discussed in more detail in the paragraphs that follow.

1.20 ***Biographical note.*** A brief note on the author or authors (including any editors, compilers, and translators) lists previous publications and, if relevant, academic affiliation. The details, if not the wording, must be consistent with any related information on the jacket or cover. Though such a note typically appears at the top of the copyright page, it may appear instead on a separate page, either in the front matter or the back matter, according to the publisher's preference.

1.21 ***Publisher's address.*** The address of the publisher—and sometimes the addresses of overseas agents—is typically, though not always, given on the copyright page. An address may be abbreviated, consisting, for example, only of a city and perhaps a postal code. A publisher's URL (uniform resource locator) may also be included.

1.22 ***Copyright notice.*** The usual notice consists of three parts: the symbol ©, the first year the book is published, and the name of the copyright owner (see fig. 1.1). This may be followed by the phrase "All rights reserved" and a statement of publication date or publishing history (see 4.40, 1.25). The year of publication should correspond to the copyright date. If a book is physically available near the end of a year but not formally published until the beginning of the next, the later date is preferred as both copy-

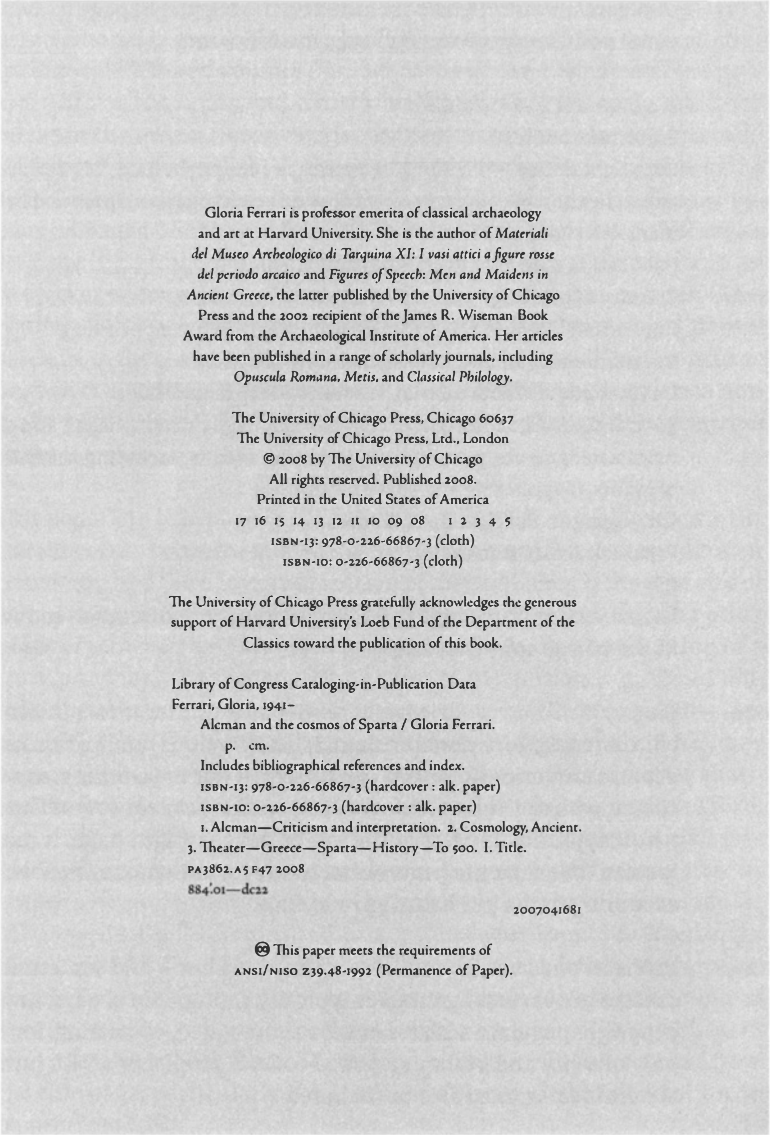

Gloria Ferrari is professor emerita of classical archaeology
and art at Harvard University. She is the author of *Materiali
del Museo Archeologico di Tarquina XI: I vasi attici a figure rosse
del periodo arcaico* and *Figures of Speech: Men and Maidens in
Ancient Greece*, the latter published by the University of Chicago
Press and the 2002 recipient of the James R. Wiseman Book
Award from the Archaeological Institute of America. Her articles
have been published in a range of scholarly journals, including
Opuscula Romana, *Metis*, and *Classical Philology*.

The University of Chicago Press, Chicago 60637
The University of Chicago Press, Ltd., London
© 2008 by The University of Chicago
All rights reserved. Published 2008.
Printed in the United States of America
17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 09 08 1 2 3 4 5
ISBN-13: 978-0-226-66867-3 (cloth)
ISBN-10: 0-226-66867-3 (cloth)

The University of Chicago Press gratefully acknowledges the generous
support of Harvard University's Loeb Fund of the Department of the
Classics toward the publication of this book.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Ferrari, Gloria, 1941–
Alcman and the cosmos of Sparta / Gloria Ferrari.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN-13: 978-0-226-66867-3 (hardcover : alk. paper)
ISBN-10: 0-226-66867-3 (hardcover : alk. paper)
1. Alcman—Criticism and interpretation. 2. Cosmology, Ancient.
3. Theater—Greece—Sparta—History—To 500. I. Title.
PA3862.A5 F47 2008
884'.01—dc22
2007041681

♾ This paper meets the requirements of
ANSI/NISO Z39.48-1992 (Permanence of Paper).

FIGURE 1.1. A typical copyright page, including biographical note, copyright notice, impression date and number (denoting 2008 for the first impression), International Standard Book Number (ISBN), publisher's acknowledgment of a subvention, Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication (CIP) data, and paper durability statement. See 1.19.

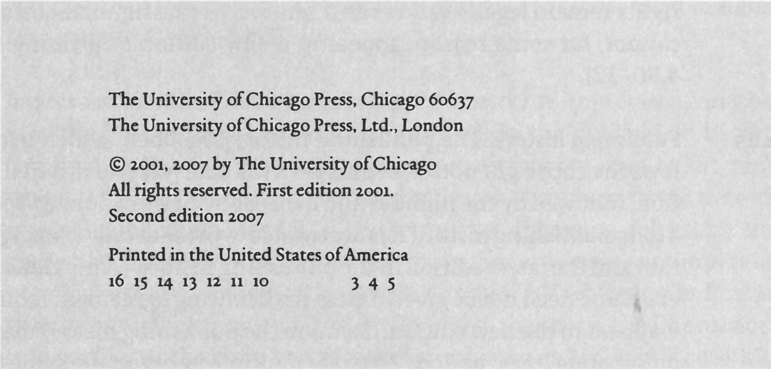

The University of Chicago Press, Chicago 60637
The University of Chicago Press, Ltd., London

© 2001, 2007 by The University of Chicago
All rights reserved. First edition 2001.
Second edition 2007

Printed in the United States of America
16 15 14 13 12 11 10 3 4 5

FIGURE 1.2. Copyright notice of a second edition (2007), with impression line indicating that this edition was reprinted for the third time in 2010. See 1.23.

right and publication date. Books published by the University of Chicago Press are usually copyrighted in the name of the university ("© 2010 by The University of Chicago"). Some authors, however, prefer to copyright their works in their own names ("© 2006 by Alison A. Author"), a preference discussed in 4.41. For information on copyright notices for journals, see 1.97; for a full discussion, see 4.38–45.

1.23 ***Copyright dates of previous editions.*** Each new edition of a book (as distinct from a new impression, or reprinting, but including an electronic edition of a printed book) is copyrighted, and the copyright dates of at least the most recent previous editions should appear in the copyright notice (see fig. 1.2). If the new edition is so extensive a revision that it virtually constitutes a new publication, previous copyright dates may be omitted. See also 1.25, 4.40.

1.24 ***Copyright renewal or other changes.*** The date of copyright renewal or a change in the name of the copyright owner is sometimes reflected in the copyright notice if the work is reprinted. Copyright renewal is shown in the following manner (note the second period; see 1.25):

© 1943 by Miriam Obermerker. © renewed 1971 by Miriam Obermerker.

To indicate a change in copyright ownership (e.g., if copyright is assigned to the author or someone else after the initial copyright has been registered and printed in the first impression), the name of the new copyright owner is substituted for that of the previous owner. The copyright date remains the same unless the copyright has been renewed. Copyrights remain legally valid even if renewal or reassignment information cannot, for some reason, appear in a new edition or printing (see also 4.30–32).

1.25 ***Publishing history.*** The publishing history of a book, which usually follows the copyright notice, begins with the date (year) of original publication, followed by the number and date of any new edition. In books with a long publishing history, it is acceptable to present only the original edition and the latest edition in the publishing history. (A previous publisher's name need not be given unless the licensing agreement requires that it appear in the new edition.) Items in the publishing history may appear on separate lines; periods separate multiple items on the same line. In a departure from former usage, Chicago now recommends a final period at the end of a line with two or more items separated by periods.

First edition published 1906. Sixteenth edition 2010.

Revised edition originally published 1985
University of Chicago Press edition 2002

If a book is reprinted, the number and date of the current impression may be indicated in the publishing history (e.g., Fifth Printing, 2010), but Chicago usually indicates these separately, in an impression line (see 1.28).

1.26 ***What constitutes a new edition?*** *Edition* (as opposed to *impression*, or *printing*) is used in at least two senses. (1) A new edition may be defined as one in which a substantial change has been made in one or more of the essential elements of the work (e.g., text, notes, appendixes, or illustrations). As a general rule, at least 20 percent of a new edition should consist of new or revised material. A work that is republished with a new preface or afterword but is otherwise unchanged except for corrections of typographical errors is better described as a new impression or a reissue; the title page may include such words as "With a New Preface." (2) *Edition* may be used to designate a reissue in a different format—for example, a paperback, deluxe, or illustrated version, or an electronic edition of a printed work—or under the imprint of a different publisher. A new edition is best designated on the title page: Second Edition, Third Edition, and so forth. Such phrases as "revised and expanded" are redundant on the title page, since the nature and extent of the revision are normally described in the prefatory material or on the cover.

1.27 ***Country of printing.*** The country in which a book is printed is traditionally identified inside the work. In addition, if a book is printed in a country other than the country of publication, the jacket or cover must so state: for example, "Printed in China."

1.28 ***Impression number.*** Each new printing of a book, or impression, may be identified by a line of numerals running below the publishing history (see fig. 1.1). The first group of numerals, reading from right to left, represents the last two digits of succeeding years starting with the date of original publication (see 1.22). The second set, following at least an em space (see A.22) and reading from left to right, represents the numbers of possible new impressions. The lowest number in each group indicates the present impression and date. In figure 1.1, therefore, the impression is identified as the first, and the year of printing as 2008; in figure 1.2, the numbers indicate a third printing in 2010. This method is expedient for printed books, as printers need only delete the lowest number(s) rather than generate new text. Impression lines work to the advantage of readers and publishers both—a new impression not only reflects the sales record of a book but also signals that corrections may have been made. (Note that impression lines for print-on-demand titles are typically changed not with each new order but only to signal that corrections have been made.)

1.29 ***Indication of original-language edition for translations.*** If a book is a translation from another language, the original title, publisher, and copyright information should be recorded on the copyright page (see fig. 1.3).

1.30 ***Acknowledgments, permissions, and other credits.*** The copyright page, if space permits, may include acknowledgments of previously published parts of a book, illustration credits, and permission to quote from copyrighted material (fig. 1.4), unless such acknowledgments appear elsewhere in the book—as in an acknowledgments section (see 2.43) or in source notes (see 14.49).

> The illustration on the title page is a detail from a photograph of Nietzsche in Basel, ca. 1876. Photo Stiftung Weimarer Klassik. GSA 101/17.

For more on illustration credits, see 3.28–36. For a full discussion of permissions, see chapter 4.

1.31 ***Acknowledgment of grants.*** Publishers should acknowledge grants of financial assistance toward publication on the copyright page. Acknowledgments requiring more space or greater prominence may appear elsewhere, in a separate section in the front or back matter. Wording should be as requested (or at least approved) by the grantors (see fig. 1.1). Finan-

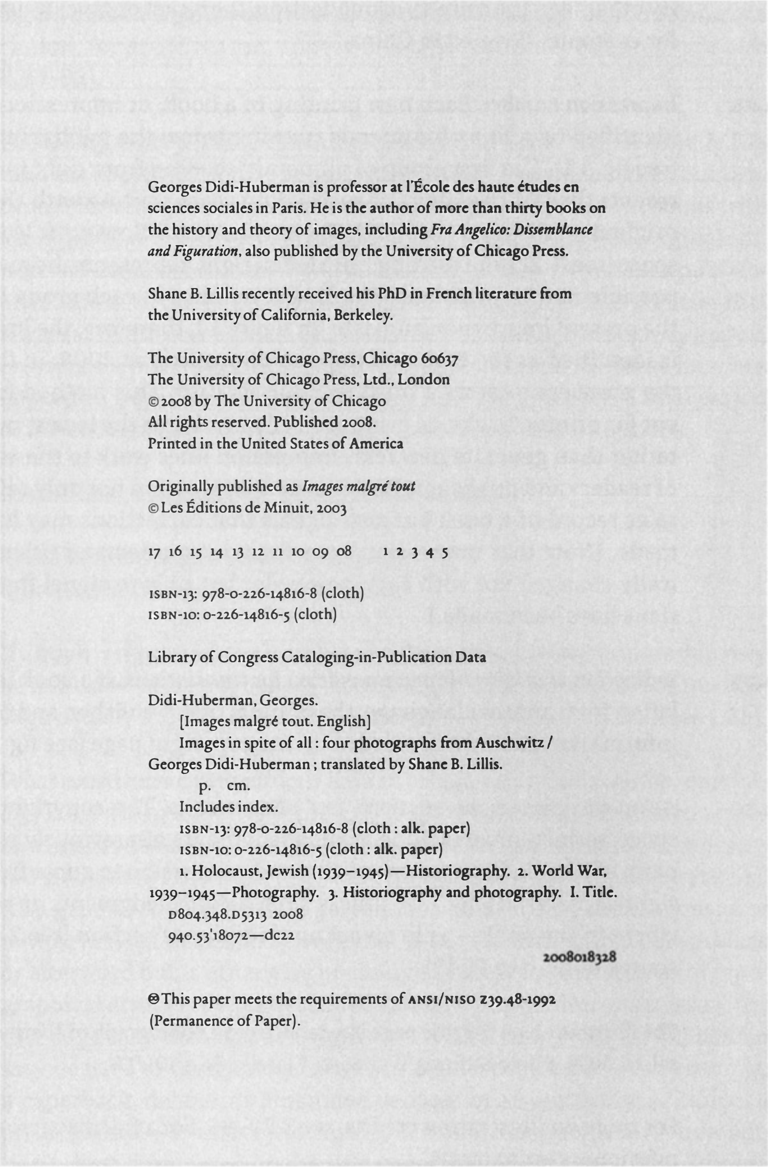

Georges Didi-Huberman is professor at l'École des haute études en sciences sociales in Paris. He is the author of more than thirty books on the history and theory of images, including *Fra Angelico: Dissemblance and Figuration*, also published by the University of Chicago Press.

Shane B. Lillis recently received his PhD in French literature from the University of California, Berkeley.

The University of Chicago Press, Chicago 60637
The University of Chicago Press, Ltd., London
© 2008 by The University of Chicago
All rights reserved. Published 2008.
Printed in the United States of America

Originally published as *Images malgré tout*
© Les Éditions de Minuit, 2003

17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 09 08   1 2 3 4 5

ISBN-13: 978-0-226-14816-8 (cloth)
ISBN-10: 0-226-14816-5 (cloth)

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Didi-Huberman, Georges.
[Images malgré tout. English]
Images in spite of all : four photographs from Auschwitz /
Georges Didi-Huberman ; translated by Shane B. Lillis.
p. cm.
Includes index.
ISBN-13: 978-0-226-14816-8 (cloth : alk. paper)
ISBN-10: 0-226-14816-5 (cloth : alk. paper)
1. Holocaust, Jewish (1939–1945)—Historiography. 2. World War, 1939–1945—Photography. 3. Historiography and photography. I. Title.
D804.348.D5313 2008
940.53'18072—dc22
2008018328

∞ This paper meets the requirements of ANSI/NISO Z39.48-1992 (Permanence of Paper).

FIGURE 1.3. The copyright page of a translation, including title and copyright of the original edition (as required by contract with the original publisher), and biographical notes on both author (Georges Didi-Huberman) and translator (Shane B. Lillis). See 1.29.

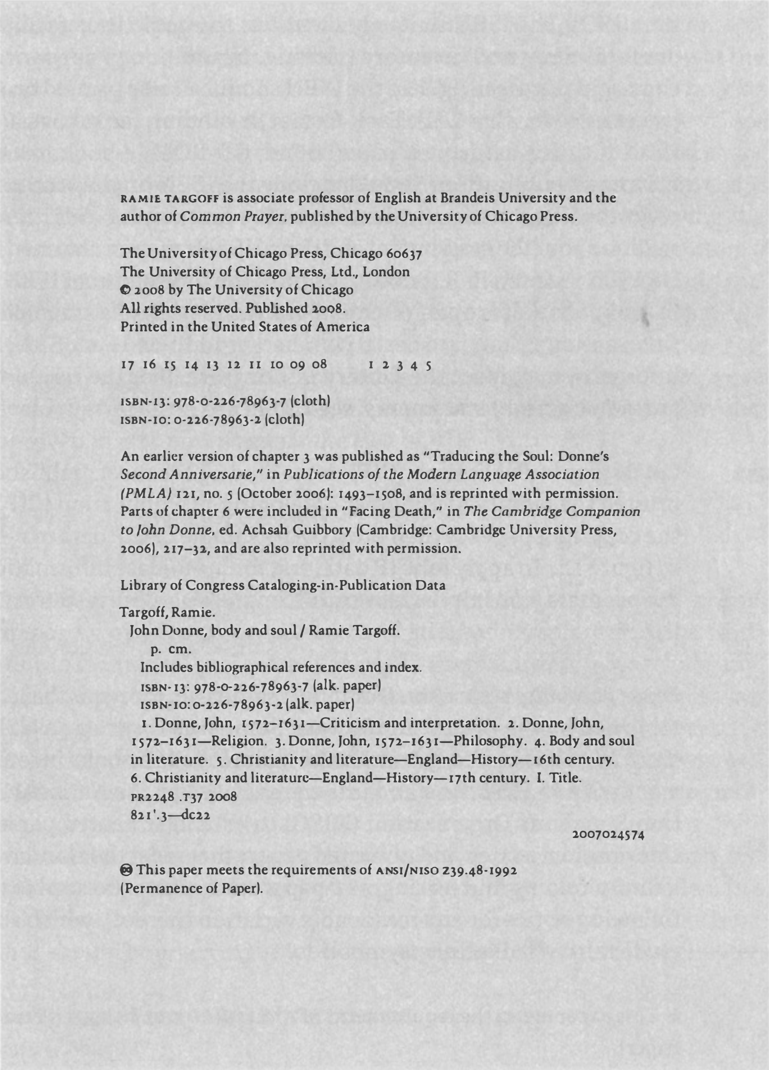

RAMIE TARGOFF is associate professor of English at Brandeis University and the author of *Common Prayer*, published by the University of Chicago Press.

The University of Chicago Press, Chicago 60637
The University of Chicago Press, Ltd., London
© 2008 by The University of Chicago
All rights reserved. Published 2008.
Printed in the United States of America

17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 09 08 1 2 3 4 5

ISBN-13: 978-0-226-78963-7 (cloth)
ISBN-10: 0-226-78963-2 (cloth)

An earlier version of chapter 3 was published as "Traducing the Soul: Donne's *Second Anniversarie*," in *Publications of the Modern Language Association (PMLA)* 121, no. 5 (October 2006): 1493–1508, and is reprinted with permission. Parts of chapter 6 were included in "Facing Death," in *The Cambridge Companion to John Donne*, ed. Achsah Guibbory (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2006), 217–32, and are also reprinted with permission.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Targoff, Ramie.
John Donne, body and soul / Ramie Targoff.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN-13: 978-0-226-78963-7 (alk. paper)
ISBN-10: 0-226-78963-2 (alk. paper)
1. Donne, John, 1572–1631—Criticism and interpretation. 2. Donne, John, 1572–1631—Religion. 3. Donne, John, 1572–1631—Philosophy. 4. Body and soul in literature. 5. Christianity and literature—England—History—16th century. 6. Christianity and literature—England—History—17th century. I. Title.
PR2248 .T37 2008
821'.3—dc22
2007024574

♾ This paper meets the requirements of ANSI/NISO Z39.48-1992 (Permanence of Paper).

FIGURE 1.4. A copyright page acknowledging earlier publication of certain chapters. See 1.30.

cial assistance made to authors is usually mentioned as part of the author's acknowledgments (see 1.40, 1.41).

1.32 ***International Standard Book Number (ISBN).*** An ISBN is assigned to each book by its publisher under a system set up in the late 1960s by the R. R. Bowker Company and the International Organization for Standardization (ISO). The ISBN uniquely identifies the book, thus facilitating order fulfillment and inventory tracking. In addition to appearing on the copyright page (see fig. 1.1), the ISBN should also be printed on the book jacket or cover (see 1.71). Each format or binding must have a separate ISBN (i.e., for hardcover, paperbound, CD-ROM, e-book format, etc.). Electronic publications should include the ISBN on the screen that displays the title or its equivalent, or on the first display. Additional information about the assignment and use of ISBNs may be obtained from the US ISBN Agency, R. R. Bowker, or from the International ISBN Agency. Some books that are part of a monograph series may be assigned an ISSN (International Standard Serial Number) in addition to an ISBN; for more information, contact the Library of Congress. (For the use of ISSNs in journal copyright statements, see 1.97.)

1.33 *Cataloging-in-Publication (CIP) data.* Since 1971 most publishers have printed the Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication (CIP) data on the copyright pages of their books. An example of CIP data may be found in figure 1.1. To apply for CIP data, and for up-to-date information about the program, consult the Library of Congress's online resources for publishers.

1.34 *Paper durability statement.* Durability standards for paper have been established by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI), which since 1984 has issued statements to be included in books meeting these standards. In 1992 the standards were revised by the National Information Standards Organization (NISO) to extend to coated paper. Under this revision, coated and uncoated papers that meet the standards for alkalinity, folding and tearing, and paper stock are authorized to carry the following notice (or any reasonable variation thereof), which should include the circled infinity symbol:

> ♾ This paper meets the requirements of ANSI/NISO Z39.48-1992 (Permanence of Paper).

DEDICATION AND EPIGRAPH

1.35 *Dedication.* Choice of dedication—including whether to include one or not—is up to the author. It may be suggested, however, that the word *dedicated* is superfluous. Editors of contributed volumes do not customarily include a dedication unless it is jointly offered by all contributors. Nor do translators generally offer their own dedication unless it is made clear that the dedication is not that of the original author. The dedication usually appears by itself, preferably on page v.

1.36 ***Epigraph and epigraph source.*** An author may wish to include an epigraph—a quotation that is pertinent but not integral to the text—at the beginning of the book. If there is no dedication, the epigraph may be placed on page v (see 1.4); otherwise, it is usually placed on page vi, opposite the table of contents. Epigraphs are also occasionally used at chapter openings and, more rarely, at the beginnings of sections within chapters. The source of an epigraph is usually given on a line following the quotation, sometimes preceded by a dash (see 13.34). Only the author's name (in the case of a well-known author, only the last name) and, usually, the title of the work need appear; beyond this, it is customary not to annotate book epigraphs. If a footnote or an endnote to a chapter epigraph is required, the reference number should follow the source, or, to avoid the intrusion of a number, the supplementary documentation may be given in an unnumbered note (see 14.47).

TABLE OF CONTENTS AND LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS OR TABLES

1.37 ***Table of contents.*** The table of contents for a printed work usually begins on page v or, if page v carries a dedication or an epigraph, page vii. It should include all preliminary material that follows it but exclude anything that precedes it. It should list the title and beginning page number of each section of the book: front matter, text divisions, and back matter, including the index (see fig. 1.5). If the book is divided into parts as well as chapters, the part titles appear in the contents, but their page numbers are omitted, unless the parts include separate introductions. Subheads within chapters are usually omitted from the table of contents, but if they provide valuable signposts for readers, they may be included. In a volume consisting of chapters by different authors, the name of each author should be given in the table of contents with the title of the chapter:

The Supreme Court as Republican Schoolmaster
Ralph Lerner 127
or
Self-Incrimination and the New Privacy, *Robert B. McKay* 193

In a book containing illustrations that are printed together in a gallery or galleries (see 3.6), it is seldom necessary to list them separately in a list of illustrations. Their location may be noted at the end of the table of contents; for example, "Illustrations follow pages 130 and 288."

1.38 ***List of illustrations or tables.*** In a book with very few illustrations or tables or one with very many, all tied closely to the text, it is not essential to list

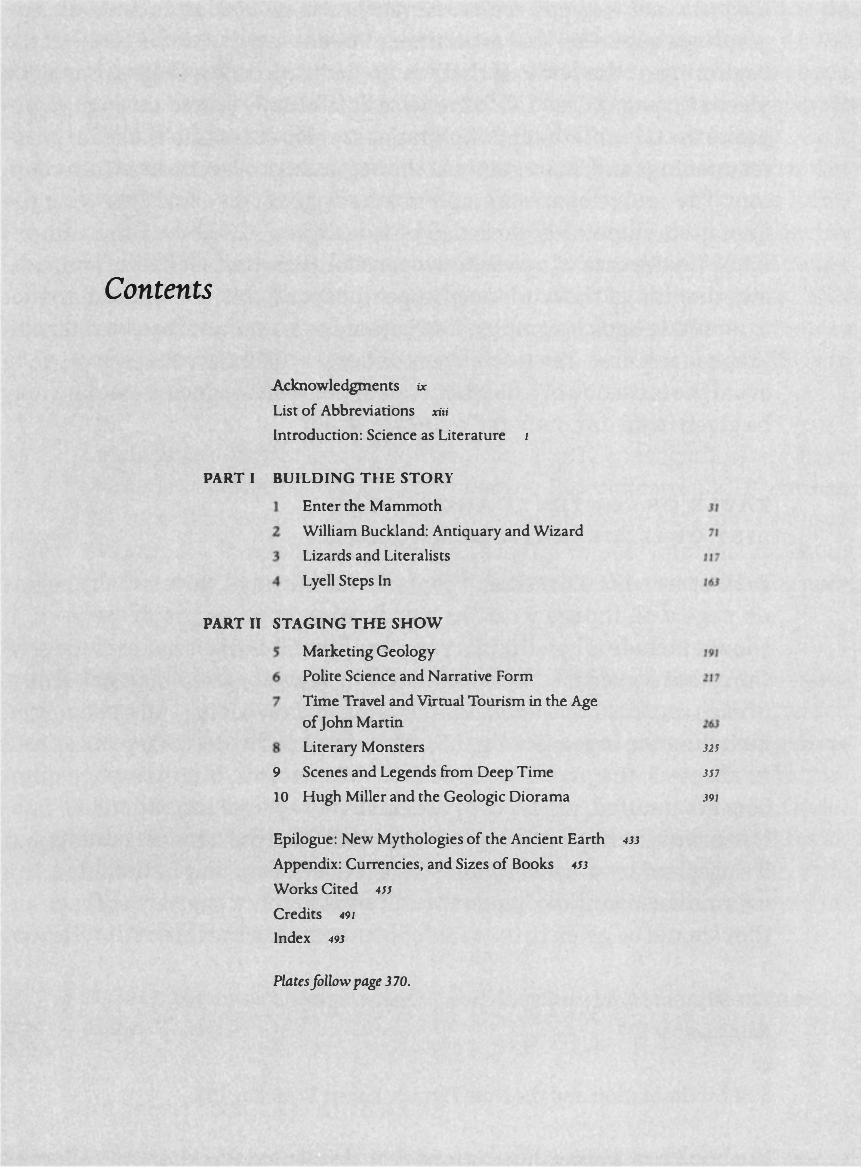

Contents

Acknowledgments *ix*
List of Abbreviations *xiii*
Introduction: Science as Literature *1*

PART I BUILDING THE STORY

1 Enter the Mammoth *31*
2 William Buckland: Antiquary and Wizard *71*
3 Lizards and Literalists *117*
4 Lyell Steps In *163*

PART II STAGING THE SHOW

5 Marketing Geology *191*
6 Polite Science and Narrative Form *217*
7 Time Travel and Virtual Tourism in the Age of John Martin *263*
8 Literary Monsters *325*
9 Scenes and Legends from Deep Time *357*
10 Hugh Miller and the Geologic Diorama *391*

Epilogue: New Mythologies of the Ancient Earth *433*
Appendix: Currencies, and Sizes of Books *453*
Works Cited *455*
Credits *491*
Index *493*

Plates follow page 370.

FIGURE 1.5. Table of contents showing front matter, introduction, parts, chapters, back matter, and location of photo gallery. See 1.37.

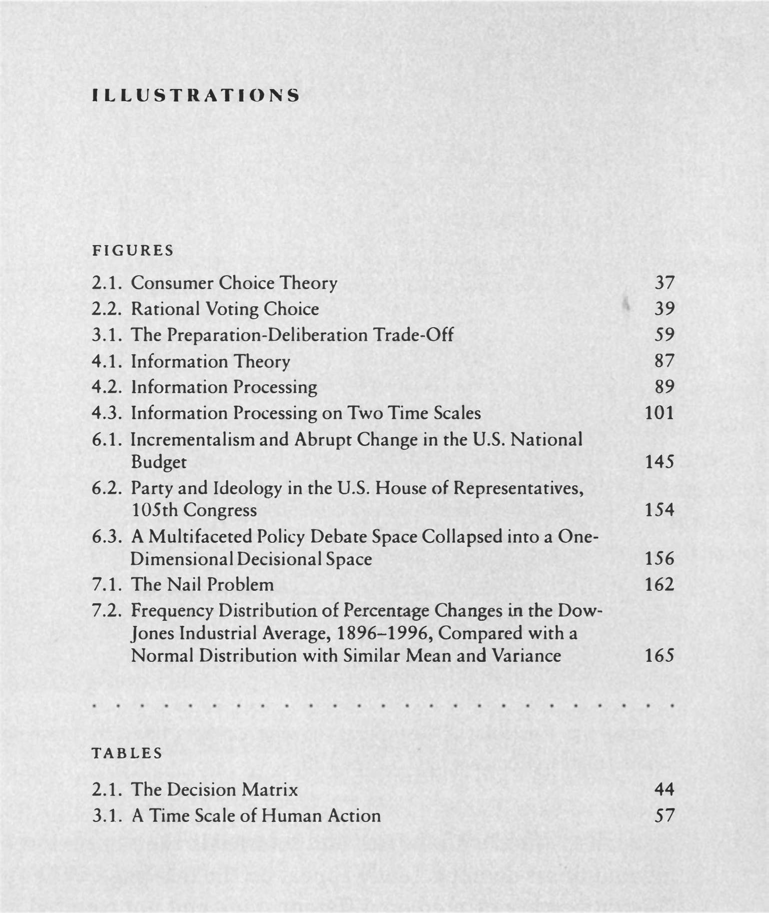

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURES

2.1. Consumer Choice Theory 37
2.2. Rational Voting Choice 39
3.1. The Preparation-Deliberation Trade-Off 59
4.1. Information Theory 87
4.2. Information Processing 89
4.3. Information Processing on Two Time Scales 101
6.1. Incrementalism and Abrupt Change in the U.S. National Budget 145
6.2. Party and Ideology in the U.S. House of Representatives, 105th Congress 154
6.3. A Multifaceted Policy Debate Space Collapsed into a One-Dimensional Decisional Space 156
7.1. The Nail Problem 162
7.2. Frequency Distribution of Percentage Changes in the Dow-Jones Industrial Average, 1896–1996, Compared with a Normal Distribution with Similar Mean and Variance 165

. . . .

TABLES

2.1. The Decision Matrix 44
3.1. A Time Scale of Human Action 57

FIGURE 1.6. Partial list of illustrations, with subheads. If the book contained no tables, the subhead "Figures" would be omitted. If it contained many tables, these would probably be listed on a new page under the heading "Tables." How best to list illustrations of various sorts depends as much on space as on logic. See 1.38.

them in the front matter. Multiauthor books, proceedings of symposia, and the like commonly do not carry lists of illustrations or tables. Where a list is appropriate (see 3.37), the list of illustrations (usually titled Illustrations but entered in the table of contents as List of Illustrations to avoid ambiguity) should match the table of contents in type size and general style. In books containing various kinds of illustrations, the list may be divided into sections headed, for example, Figures, Tables (see fig. 1.6), or Plates, Drawings, Maps. Page numbers are given for all illus-

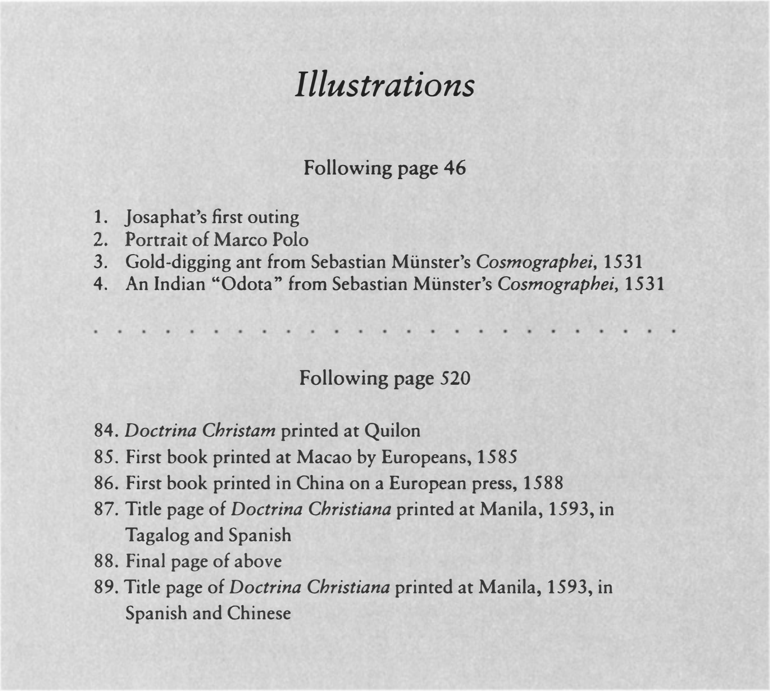

Illustrations

Following page 46

1. Josaphat's first outing
2. Portrait of Marco Polo
3. Gold-digging ant from Sebastian Münster's *Cosmographei*, 1531
4. An Indian "Odota" from Sebastian Münster's *Cosmographei*, 1531

. . . .

Following page 520

84. *Doctrina Christam* printed at Quilon
85. First book printed at Macao by Europeans, 1585
86. First book printed in China on a European press, 1588
87. Title page of *Doctrina Christiana* printed at Manila, 1593, in Tagalog and Spanish
88. Final page of above
89. Title page of *Doctrina Christiana* printed at Manila, 1593, in Spanish and Chinese

FIGURE 1.7. Partial list of illustrations showing numbers, titles, and placement of unpaginated plates. (Compare fig. 1.5.) See 1.38.

trations printed with the text and counted in the pagination, even when the numbers do not actually appear on the text page. When pages of illustrations are printed on different stock and not counted in the pagination, their location is indicated by "Facing page 000" or "Following page 000" in the list of illustrations (see fig. 1.7) or, more commonly, in the table of contents (fig. 1.5). A frontispiece, because of its prominent position at the front of the book, is not assigned a page number; its location is simply given as frontispiece. Titles given in lists of illustrations and tables may be shortened or otherwise adjusted (see 3.39). For treatment of titles, see 8.155–65.

FOREWORD, PREFACE AND ACKNOWLEDGMENTS, AND INTRODUCTION

1.39 *Foreword.* The term *foreword* should be reserved for prefatory remarks by someone other than the author—including those of an editor or compiler, especially if a work already includes an author's preface (see 1.40).

The publisher may choose to mention the foreword on the title page (e.g., "With a Foreword by Conor Cruise O'Brien"). A foreword, which is set in the same size and style of type as the text, normally runs only a few pages, and its author's name usually appears at the end, often flush right, with a line space (or less) between it and the text. The title or affiliation of the author of a foreword may appear under the name, often in smaller type. If a place and date are included, these are sometimes set across from the author's name, flush left. If a foreword runs to a substantial length, with or without a title of its own, its author's name may be given at the beginning instead of at the end. See also 1.42.

1.40 ***Preface and acknowledgments.*** The author's own statement about a work is usually called a preface. It is set in the same size and style of type as the text and includes reasons for undertaking the work, method of research (if this has some bearing on readers' understanding of the text), brief acknowledgments (but see 1.41), and sometimes permissions granted for the use of previously published material. A preface need not be signed; if there might be some doubt about who wrote it, however, or if an author wishes to sign the preface (sometimes just with initials), the signature normally appears at the end (see 1.39). When a new preface is written for a new edition or for a reprinting of a book long out of print, it should precede the original preface. The original preface is then usually retitled Preface to the First Edition, and the new preface may be titled Preface to the Second Edition, Preface to the Paperback Edition, Preface 2010, or whatever fits. In a book containing both an editor's preface and an author's preface, the editor's preface, which may be titled as such or retitled Editor's Foreword, comes first and should bear the editor's name at its conclusion.

1.41 ***Separate acknowledgments.*** If the author's acknowledgments are long, they may be put in a separate section following the preface; if a preface consists only of acknowledgments, its title should be changed to Acknowledgments. Acknowledgments are occasionally put at the back of a book, preceding the other back matter. Acknowledgments that apply to all volumes of a multivolume work may be presented only in the first. See also 4.98–99.

1.42 ***Introduction belonging to front matter.*** Most introductions belong not in the front matter but at the beginning of the text, paginated with arabic numerals (see 1.46). Material about the book—its origins, for example—rather than about the subject matter should be included in the preface or in the acknowledgments (see 1.40). A substantial introduction by someone other than the author is usually included in the front matter, following the acknowledgments, but if it is not more than three to five pages, it may more appropriately be called a foreword (see 1.39) and placed before the preface.

OTHER FRONT MATTER

1.43 ***List of abbreviations.*** Not every work that includes abbreviations needs a separate list of abbreviations with the terms or names they stand for. If many are used, or if a few are used frequently, a list is useful (see fig. 1.8); its location should always be given in the table of contents. If abbreviations are used in the text or footnotes, the list may appear in the front matter. If they are used only in the back matter, the list should appear before the first element in which abbreviations are used, whether the appendixes, the endnotes, or the bibliography. A list of abbreviations is generally not a substitute for using the full form of a term at its first occurrence in the text (see 10.3). In the list, alphabetize terms by the abbreviation, not by the spelled-out form. See also 14.55.

1.44 ***Publisher's, translator's, and editor's notes.*** Notes on the text are usually treated typographically in the same way as a preface or foreword. A publisher's note—used rarely and only to state something that cannot be included elsewhere—should either precede or immediately follow the table of contents. A translator's note, like a foreword, should precede any element, such as a preface, that is by the original author. An explanation of an editor's method or a discussion of variant texts, often necessary in scholarly editions, may appear either in the front matter (usually as the last item there) or in the back matter (as an appendix or in place of one). Brief remarks about editorial method, however—such as noting that spelling and capitalization have been modernized—are often better incorporated into an editor's preface, if there is one.

Text

1.45 ***Determining page 1.*** The first page of the first chapter or the introduction (see 1.46) is usually counted as arabic page 1. Where the front matter is extensive, however, a second half title, identical to the one on page i, may be added before the text. The second half title should be counted as page 1, the first of the pages to be counted with an arabic page number (though the page number does not appear). The page following the second half title (its verso) is usually blank, though it may contain an illustration or an epigraph. A second half title is also useful when the book design specifies a double-page spread for chapter openings; in such a

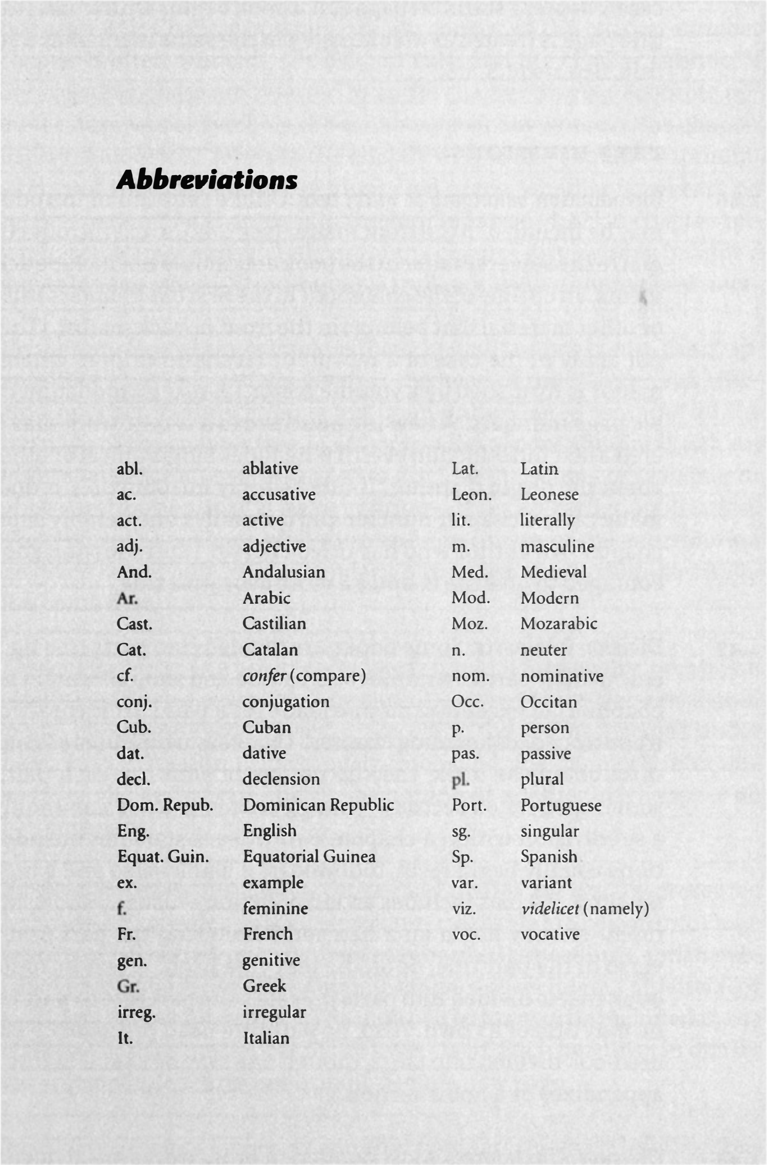

Abbreviations

abl.	ablative	Lat.	Latin
ac.	accusative	Leon.	Leonese
act.	active	lit.	literally
adj.	adjective	m.	masculine
And.	Andalusian	Med.	Medieval
Ar.	Arabic	Mod.	Modern
Cast.	Castilian	Moz.	Mozarabic
Cat.	Catalan	n.	neuter
cf.	*confer* (compare)	nom.	nominative
conj.	conjugation	Occ.	Occitan
Cub.	Cuban	p.	person
dat.	dative	pas.	passive
decl.	declension	pl.	plural
Dom. Repub.	Dominican Republic	Port.	Portuguese
Eng.	English	sg.	singular
Equat. Guin.	Equatorial Guinea	Sp.	Spanish
ex.	example	var.	variant
f.	feminine	viz.	*videlicet* (namely)
Fr.	French	voc.	vocative
gen.	genitive		
Gr.	Greek		
irreg.	irregular		
It.	Italian		

FIGURE 1.8. A list of abbreviations. See 1.43.

case, chapter 1 starts on page 2. If a book begins with a part title, the part title page is treated as arabic page 1 in the same manner as a second half title. See also 1.3, 1.5.

TEXT DIVISIONS

1.46 *Introduction belonging to main text.* Unlike the kind of introduction that may be included in the front matter (see 1.42), a text introduction is integral to the subject matter of the book and should not include acknowledgments, an outline of the contents ("In the first two chapters I discuss . . ."), or other material that belongs in the front or back matter. (This rule may not apply in the case of a reprint or facsimile edition, where the front matter is furnished by a volume editor.) A text introduction carries arabic page numbers. A new introduction to a classic work may be considered a text introduction even if it includes biographical or other material about the original author. If titled simply Introduction, it does not normally carry a chapter number and is usually considerably shorter than a chapter. An author who has titled chapter 1 Introduction should be encouraged to give the chapter a more evocative title.

1.47 *Division into parts.* Some books are divided into parts (see fig. 1.5). Each part usually carries a number and a title and should contain at least two chapters (an exception may be made for a part that includes only an introductory or concluding chapter). Chapters are numbered consecutively throughout the book; they do not begin with 1 in each part. Parts are sometimes called sections, though *section* is more commonly used for a subdivision within a chapter. Part titles that do not include introductions usually begin recto, followed by a blank verso and a recto chapter opening. If a part includes an introduction—usually short, titled or untitled—it may begin on a new recto following the part title, or on the verso of the part title, or on the part title itself. A text introduction to a book that is divided into parts precedes the part title to part 1 and needs no part title of its own. Also, no part title need precede the back matter of a book divided into parts, though one may be useful before a series of appendixes or a notes section.

1.48 *Division into chapters.* Most nonfiction prose works are divided into numbered chapters of a more or less consistent length. Authors should aim for short, descriptive titles, which tend to give readers a better overview of a book's contents than longer, more whimsical titles. Each chapter normally starts on a new page, verso or recto, and its opening page should carry a drop folio (see 1.3, 1.5)—or sometimes no folio—and no running head (see 1.9–15). (Recto openers may facilitate the production of individual chapter offprints.) The first chapter ordinarily begins on a recto (but see 1.45). Chapter openers usually consist of the chapter number (*chapter* is often omitted), the chapter title, and the chapter subtitle, if any; together, these are referred to as the chapter display. Footnote reference numbers or symbols should not appear anywhere in the chapter display. A note that refers to the chapter as a whole should be unnumbered and should precede the numbered notes, whether it appears on the first page of the chapter or in the endnotes (see 14.47). A chapter epigraph, sometimes considered part of the chapter display, may include a note reference, though traditionalists will prefer an unnumbered note.

1.49 ***Division into chapters by multiple authors.*** In multiauthor books, the chapter author's name is usually given at the head of the chapter. An affiliation or other identification is put in an unnumbered footnote on the first page of the chapter (see 14.50) or in a list of contributors (1.62). An unnumbered footnote is also used to disclose the source of a chapter or other contribution that is being reprinted from an earlier publication. When both the author's affiliation and the source of the contribution are given in the note, it is customary, but not essential, that the affiliation come first.

1.50 ***Divisions for poetry.*** In a book of previously unpublished poetry, each poem usually begins on a new page. Any part titles provided by the poet should appear on separate pages (rectos) preceding the poems grouped under them. In a collection of previously published poems, more than one poem, or the end of one and the beginning of another, may appear on the same page.

1.51 ***Divisions for letters and diaries.*** Letters and diaries are usually presented in chronological order, so they are seldom amenable to division into chapters or parts. For diary entries, dates may be used as headings, and in published correspondence the names of senders or recipients of letters (or both) may serve as headings. The date of a letter may be included in the heading if it does not appear in the letter itself. Such headings in diaries and correspondence do not usually begin a new page.

1.52 ***Concluding elements.*** Epilogues and afterwords are relatively brief sections that sometimes end a text. They bear no chapter numbers. Conclusions tend to be more extensive and may assume the significance and proportions of final chapters, with or without a chapter number. In such concluding sections, the author may make some final statement about the subject presented, the implications of the study, or questions inviting further investigation. Epilogues, afterwords, and conclusions may begin either recto or verso unless the book is divided into parts, in which case they must begin recto so that they do not appear to belong to the final part only. Typographically they are usually treated like forewords or prefaces.

TEXT SUBDIVISIONS

1.53 ***Subheads—general principles.*** Subheads within a chapter should be short and meaningful and, like chapter titles, parallel in structure and tone. It is rarely imperative that a subhead begin a new page. The first sentence of text following a subhead should not refer syntactically to the subhead; words should be repeated where necessary. For example:

SECONDARY SPONGIOSA
The secondary spongiosa, a vaulted structure . . .
not
SECONDARY SPONGIOSA
This vaulted structure . . .

1.54 ***Subhead levels and placement.*** Many works require only one level of subhead throughout the text. Some, particularly scientific or technical works, require further subdivision. Where more than one level is used, the subheads are sometimes referred to as the A-level subhead (the first-level heading after the chapter title), B-level, C-level, and so on (or A-head, B-head, C-head, etc.). Only the most complicated works need more than three levels. The number of subhead levels required may vary from chapter to chapter. A lower-level subhead may follow an upper-level subhead with no intervening text, but when a section of text is subdivided, there should ordinarily be at least two subsections. A single subhead in a chapter or a single B-level subhead under an A-level subhead may be viewed as illogical and asymmetrical. (There are cases, however, when a single subdivision is needed—e.g., for a notes section at the end of a chapter.) Subheads are generally set on a line separate from the following text, the levels differentiated by type style and placement. The lowest level, however, may be run in at the beginning of a paragraph, usually set in italics and followed by a period. It is then referred to as a run-in subhead (or run-in sidehead). Run-in heads are usually capitalized sentence-style (see 8.156).

1.55 ***Numbered subheads.*** Unless sections in a chapter are cited in cross-references elsewhere in the text, numbers are usually unnecessary with subheads. In general, subheads are more useful to a reader than section numbers alone. In scientific and technical works, however, the numbering of sections, subsections, and sometimes sub-subsections provides easy reference. There are various ways to number sections. The most common is double numeration or multiple numeration. In this system, sections are numbered within chapters, subsections within sections, and subsubsections within subsections. The number of each division is preceded by the numbers of all higher divisions, and all division numbers are separated by periods, colons, or hyphens. Thus, for example, the numbers 4.8 and 4.12 signify, respectively, the eighth section and the twelfth section of chapter 4.[1] The series 4.12.3 signifies the third subsection in the twelfth section of chapter 4, and so on. The system employed by this manual is chapter number followed by paragraph number for easy cross-referencing. The multiple-numeration system may also be used for illustrations, tables, and mathematical equations (see, respectively, 3.11, 3.51, and 12.24–25).

1.56 ***Ornamental or typographic breaks in text.*** Where a break stronger than a paragraph but not as strong as a subhead is required, a set of asterisks or a type ornament, or simply a blank line, may be inserted between paragraphs. Using a blank line has the disadvantage that it may be missed if the break falls at the bottom of a page. This quandary can be solved by differentiating the first few words of each paragraph that follows a break—for example, by using small capitals.

Back Matter

1.57 ***Appendixes.*** An appendix may include explanations and elaborations that are not essential parts of the text but are helpful to a reader seeking further clarification, texts of documents, long lists, survey questionnaires, or sometimes even charts or tables. The appendix should not, however, be a repository for odds and ends that the author could not work into the text. Relevant information that is too unwieldy or expensive to produce in print may be suitable for presentation on the publisher's website and under its aegis (a practice more common with online journals, including some University of Chicago Press journals). Appendixes usually follow the last book chapter, though an appendix may be included at the end of a chapter (introduced by an A-level subhead) if what it contains is essential to understanding the chapter. In multiauthor books and in books from which offprints of individual chapters will be required, any appendix must follow the chapter it pertains to. When two or more appendixes are required, they should be designated by either numbers

---

[1] Multiple numeration using periods should not be confused with decimal fractions. Paragraph or section 4.9 may be followed by 4.10—quite unlike the decimal fraction system.

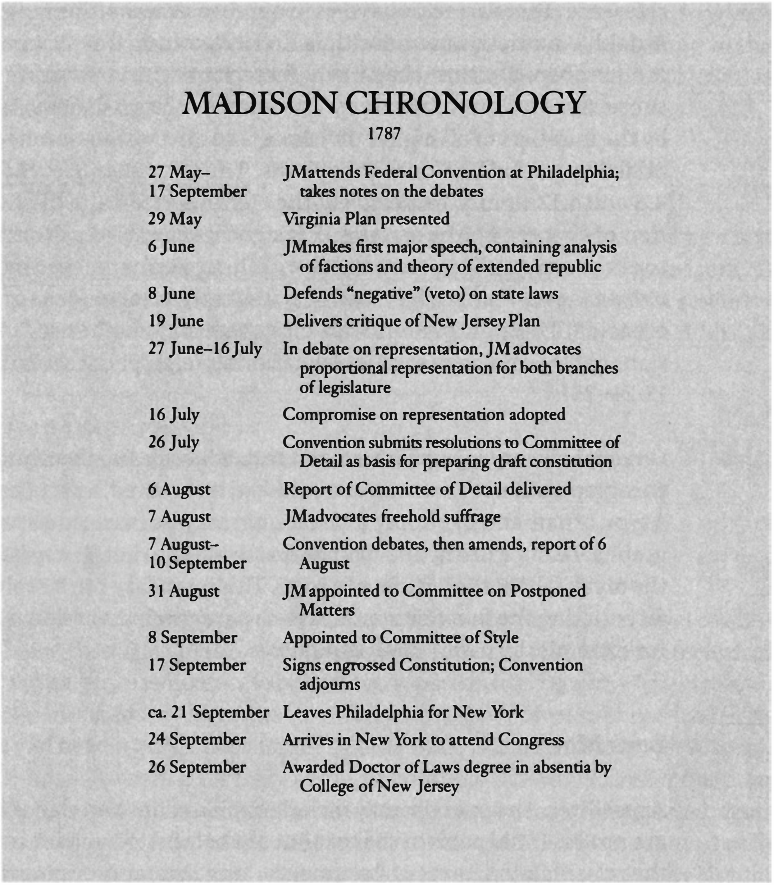

MADISON CHRONOLOGY

1787

27 May– 17 September	JM attends Federal Convention at Philadelphia; takes notes on the debates
29 May	Virginia Plan presented
6 June	JM makes first major speech, containing analysis of factions and theory of extended republic
8 June	Defends "negative" (veto) on state laws
19 June	Delivers critique of New Jersey Plan
27 June–16 July	In debate on representation, JM advocates proportional representation for both branches of legislature
16 July	Compromise on representation adopted
26 July	Convention submits resolutions to Committee of Detail as basis for preparing draft constitution
6 August	Report of Committee of Detail delivered
7 August	JM advocates freehold suffrage
7 August– 10 September	Convention debates, then amends, report of 6 August
31 August	JM appointed to Committee on Postponed Matters
8 September	Appointed to Committee of Style
17 September	Signs engrossed Constitution; Convention adjourns
ca. 21 September	Leaves Philadelphia for New York
24 September	Arrives in New York to attend Congress
26 September	Awarded Doctor of Laws degree in absentia by College of New Jersey

FIGURE 1.9. Opening page of a chronology. See 1.58. For date style, see 6.45.

(Appendix 1, Appendix 2, etc.) or letters (Appendix A, Appendix B, etc.), and each should be given a title as well. Appendixes may be set either in the same type size as the text proper or in smaller type.

1.58 *Chronology.* A chronological list of events may be useful in certain works. It may appear in the back matter under its own heading, but if it is essential to readers, it is better placed in the front matter, immediately before the text. For an example, see figure 1.9.

1.59 *Endnotes.* Endnotes, simply headed Notes, follow any appendix material and precede the bibliography or reference list (if there is one). The notes to each chapter are introduced by a subhead indicating the chapter number and sometimes the chapter title. The running heads to the endnotes should identify the text pages the notes apply to (see 1.14). Endnotes are normally set smaller than the text but larger than footnotes. Notes may have to be placed at the ends of chapters in multiauthor books (see 14.38). For unnumbered notes and notes keyed to line or page numbers, see 14.47, 14.48. For endnotes versus footnotes, see 14.38–43.

1.60 *Glossary.* A glossary is a useful tool in a book containing many foreign words or unfamiliar terms. Words to be defined should be arranged in alphabetical order, each on a separate line and followed by its definition (see, for example, the list of key terms in appendix B). A glossary usually precedes a bibliography or reference list.

1.61 ***Bibliography or reference list.*** Bibliographies (except for bibliographical essays) and reference lists are normally set smaller than the text and in flush-and-hang style. For a discussion of the various kinds of bibliographies, see 14.59; for reference lists, see 15.10. For a full discussion and examples, see chapters 14 and 15.

1.62 ***List of contributors.*** A list of contributors may be appropriate for a work by many authors in which only the volume editor's name appears on the title page. The list (usually headed Contributors) may appear in the front matter of a printed book, but the preferred location is in the back matter, immediately before the index. Names are arranged alphabetically by last name but not inverted ("Koren D. Writer," not "Writer, Koren D."). Brief biographical notes and academic affiliations may accompany the names. See figure 1.10. A work by only a handful of authors whose names appear on the title page does not require a list of contributors if biographical data can be included on the copyright page or elsewhere in the book (see 1.20, 1.49, 14.49).

1.63 ***Index.*** The index, or the first of several indexes, begins on a recto; subsequent indexes begin verso or recto. In a book with both name and subject indexes, the name index should precede the subject index. Indexes in printed books are normally set two columns to a page and in smaller type than the text. For a full discussion of indexes and indexing, see chapter 16.

1.64 ***Colophon.*** The last page of a specially designed and produced book occasionally contains a colophon—an inscription including the facts of production. For an example, see the last page of the print edition of this manual. For another meaning of colophon, see 1.66.

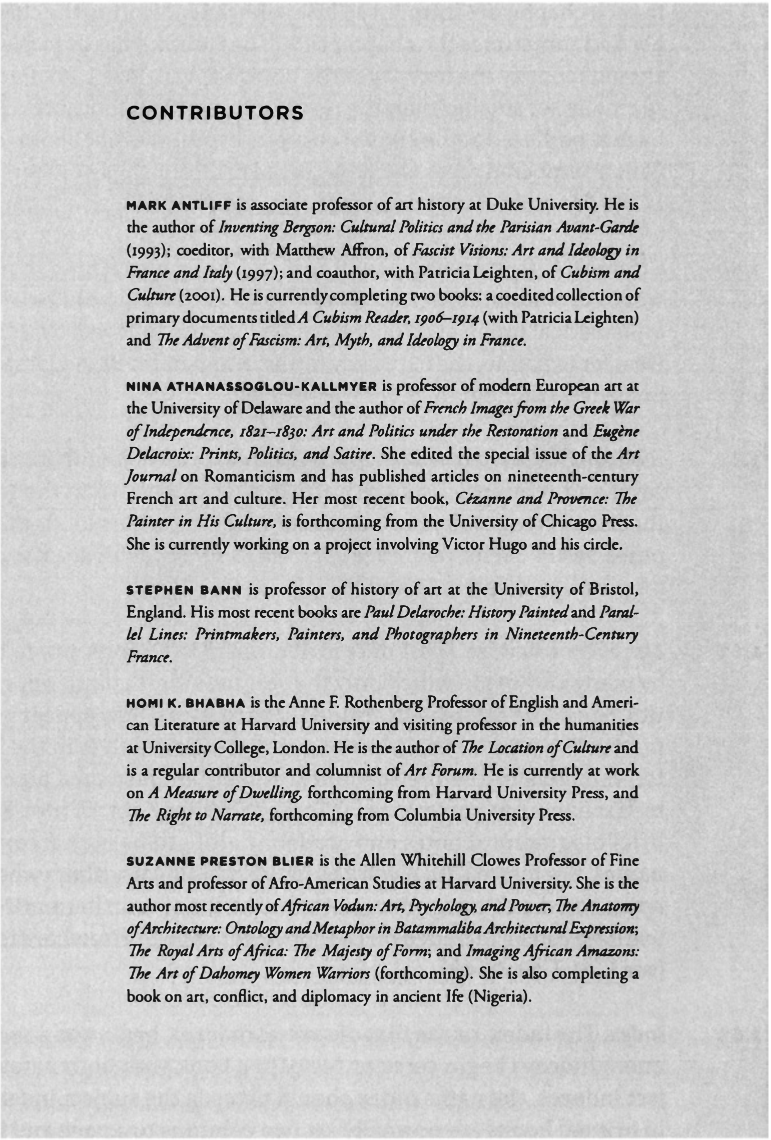

CONTRIBUTORS

MARK ANTLIFF is associate professor of art history at Duke University. He is the author of *Inventing Bergson: Cultural Politics and the Parisian Avant-Garde* (1993); coeditor, with Matthew Affron, of *Fascist Visions: Art and Ideology in France and Italy* (1997); and coauthor, with Patricia Leighten, of *Cubism and Culture* (2001). He is currently completing two books: a coedited collection of primary documents titled *A Cubism Reader, 1906–1914* (with Patricia Leighten) and *The Advent of Fascism: Art, Myth, and Ideology in France.*

NINA ATHANASSOGLOU-KALLMYER is professor of modern European art at the University of Delaware and the author of *French Images from the Greek War of Independence, 1821–1830: Art and Politics under the Restoration* and *Eugène Delacroix: Prints, Politics, and Satire.* She edited the special issue of the *Art Journal* on Romanticism and has published articles on nineteenth-century French art and culture. Her most recent book, *Cézanne and Provence: The Painter in His Culture,* is forthcoming from the University of Chicago Press. She is currently working on a project involving Victor Hugo and his circle.

STEPHEN BANN is professor of history of art at the University of Bristol, England. His most recent books are *Paul Delaroche: History Painted* and *Parallel Lines: Printmakers, Painters, and Photographers in Nineteenth-Century France.*

HOMI K. BHABHA is the Anne F. Rothenberg Professor of English and American Literature at Harvard University and visiting professor in the humanities at University College, London. He is the author of *The Location of Culture* and is a regular contributor and columnist of *Art Forum.* He is currently at work on *A Measure of Dwelling,* forthcoming from Harvard University Press, and *The Right to Narrate,* forthcoming from Columbia University Press.

SUZANNE PRESTON BLIER is the Allen Whitehill Clowes Professor of Fine Arts and professor of Afro-American Studies at Harvard University. She is the author most recently of *African Vodun: Art, Psychology, and Power*; *The Anatomy of Architecture: Ontology and Metaphor in Batammaliba Architectural Expression*; *The Royal Arts of Africa: The Majesty of Form*; and *Imaging African Amazons: The Art of Dahomey Women Warriors* (forthcoming). She is also completing a book on art, conflict, and diplomacy in ancient Ife (Nigeria).

FIGURE 1.10. Partial list of contributors to an edited collection. See 1.62.

1.65 ***Errata.*** An errata sheet should never be supplied to correct simple typographical errors (which may be corrected in a later printing, if there is one) or to insert additions to, or revisions of, the printed text (which should wait for a subsequent edition of the book). It should be used only in extreme cases where errors severe enough to cause misunderstanding are detected too late to correct in the normal way but before the finished book is distributed. If the corrected material can be pasted over the incorrect material, it should be printed on adhesive paper. A bound-in errata page may be justified when all or part of a book is photographically reproduced from an earlier publication. It may be placed either at the end of the front matter or at the end of the book and should be listed in the table of contents. Publishers may also choose to post significant errata online; for electronic projects, links to and from any documentation of corrections should be provided. The following form may be adapted to suit the particulars:

Errata

PAGE	*FOR*	*READ*
37, line 5	Peter W. Smith	John Q. Jones
182, line 15	is subject to	is not subject to
195, line 8	figure 3	figure 15
23, 214	Transpose captions of plates 2 and 51.	

Covers and Jackets

1.66 ***Clothbound covers.*** The traditional clothbound hardcover book—so-called for the integument of cloth stretched over a laminated cardboard cover—may include a paper dust jacket (see 1.69). Underneath the jacket, on the cloth itself, the spine is generally imprinted with the author's (or editor's) full name, or the last name only if space is tight; the title of the book (and any edition number); and the publisher's name. The subtitle is usually omitted. The publisher's name is often shortened or replaced by an emblem or device known as a colophon or logo. (For another meaning of colophon, see 1.64.) Considering a book as it stands upright on a shelf, spine copy on American publications is most commonly printed vertically (and read from the top down), but when space allows (as with longer books with wider spines), it may be printed horizontally (for easier reading on the shelf). The front cover may be blank, but it sometimes bears stamped or printed material, such as the title and author's name or the publisher's colophon or some other decoration. The back cover is usually blank, though a product code may be necessary for books with no jacket (see 1.71). For credit lines, see 1.70, 3.28–36.

1.67 *Paperback covers.* The spine of paperback covers (and other flexible covers) usually carries the author's or editor's name, the publisher's name or colophon or both, and the title. The front cover carries the author's or editor's name, the title and (usually) the subtitle, and sometimes the name of a translator, a contributor of a foreword, an edition number, or the like. The back cover usually carries promotional copy, such as a description of the book or quotations from reviews or signed blurbs, a brief biographical statement about the author, the series title if the book is part of a series, and, sometimes, information about the publisher. (Some paperbacks include gatefolds, also called French flaps—extensions to the front and back covers that are folded into the book just like the dust jacket to a hardcover book; see 1.69.)

1.68 *Endpapers.* An endpaper is one of two folded sheets of paper appearing at the beginning and end of a hardcover book (or, more rarely, a book with a sturdy paperback or other flexible binding). Half of each sheet is glued against the inside of the cover, one to the front and one to the back; the base of each is then glued, at the fold (near the spine), to the first and last page of the book. Endpapers help secure a book within its covers. The free half of each sheet is called a flyleaf. Endpapers, sometimes colored, are usually of a heavier stock than the book pages, and they sometimes feature printed text or illustrations.

1.69 *Dust jackets.* Hardcover books are often protected by a coated paper jacket (or dust jacket). In addition to the three parts to be found on the book cover itself, the jacket also has flaps that tuck inside the front and back covers. The front and spine carry the same kind of material as the front and spine of paperback covers (see 1.67). The material included on the back of a paperback cover is begun on the front flap of the hardcover jacket and completed on the back flap. The back panel is sometimes used to promote other books by the publisher.

1.70 *Credit lines for cover art.* If a credit line is required for artwork included on a jacket or cover, it normally appears on the back flap of the jacket or the back cover of a paperback or other book without a jacket. Credit for artwork on a paperback cover or on the actual cover (as opposed to the jacket) of a hardcover book may also appear inside the book, usually on the copyright page, since the cover is a permanent part of the bound book. See 3.28–36 for styling of credit lines.

1.71 ***ISBN and bar codes on covers.*** In addition to the International Standard Book Number (ISBN; see 1.32), book covers need to include product and price codes (bar codes). These should appear at the foot of the back cover or dust jacket or any other protective case or wrapper. A detailed overview of the process and related resources can be found at the website of the US ISBN Agency, R. R. Bowker, or the International ISBN Agency.

The Parts of a Journal

Introduction

1.72 ***Print and electronic formats for journals.*** The majority of scholarly journals are produced either in print and electronic versions or as electronic-only journals, though many print-only journals persist, mainly in nonscientific fields. Electronically published journals usually contain all the material included in any printed counterpart except, in some cases, advertising. Electronic journals typically present the material in one of two ways (and often both): (1) as searchable page images suitable for printing by the end user and corresponding to the pages of the journal's print issues (i.e., as a PDF); or (2) as full-text HTML versions suitable for viewing in a web browser and containing features and supplementary materials not available in the print edition. (For definitions of *PDF*, *HTML*, and related terms, see appendix B.)

1.73 ***Noting differences between print and electronic versions.*** Although a printed article should include all elements that are essential to understanding, interpreting, and documenting the text, many journals publish special materials electronically that are not available in the print version. These features may include very large tables, supplemental reading lists, audiovisual components, large data sets that can be exported to third-party software for analysis, or color versions of figures published in black and white in the printed journal; some of this material may constitute the basis of an online-only appendix. In addition, some journals release unedited "in press" versions of manuscripts that have been accepted for publication (see 1.106). With the exception of these "preprints," electronic-only articles, appendixes, and other features must be listed in the print version (either in the table of contents or on the first page of the applicable article), and differences between the print and electronic versions must be made apparent in the latter. See also 3.26.

1.74 ***Unique identifiers for electronic journals.*** Print journals are usually identified by volume and date. Electronic journals and their components must be further identified by means of stable and unique identifiers. Articles in Chicago's electronic journals are identified in three ways: (1) by page ranges for their published articles, either print pages or e-pages; (2) by the inclusion of numbers that can be found in the Copyright Clearance Center code, which includes the ISSN and other information, including an article number (see 1.97; electronic journals are also assigned an eISSN, distinct from any counterpart for print); and (3) by Digital Object Identifiers (DOIs). The DOI is a unique, persistent identification string assigned to journals and their components—including articles, images, and other "objects"—and can be used as the basis of a persistent URL. See also 14.6.

Page Numbers and Running Heads

1.75 ***Volume as organizing principle.*** A volume of a journal usually comprises the issues published in a calendar year, though some journals (such as *Modern Philology*) prefer the academic year beginning in the autumn. For a journal published quarterly, a volume has four issues; for one published monthly, twelve issues. Some journals, however, publish two or more volumes in one year, depending on the frequency and length of issues.

1.76 ***Page numbers for journals.*** Page numbers in a printed journal usually start with 1 in the volume's first issue and run continuously to the end of the volume. An issue always begins on a right-hand page (recto) and ends on a left-hand page (verso); thus the last page of an issue is an even number and the first page an odd one. If issue 1 ends with page 264, then issue 2 starts on page 265. Electronic versions of printed journals should use the printed pagination scheme, indicating page ranges for full-text versions of articles that are not presented as page images. (Articles published electronically ahead of print may need to employ "dummy folios"—e.g., 000–000—until the print issue has been paginated.) For articles that are published only in electronic form but can be printed as pages formatted to look like those in the print journal, a separate page-numbering system is used (such as E1, E2, etc.), again running continuously to the end of the volume.

1.77 ***Running heads or running feet in journals.*** Running heads or feet bear the name of the journal (either spelled out or in abbreviated form); the author's surname or, for more than one author, a shortened version of the author list (such as Aldrich et al.); the title of the article, usually shortened, or the name of the journal section (such as Brief Reports). Arrangement of these pieces of information across rectos and versos varies among journals. Full-text, scrollable electronic articles will not have running heads per se; printable page images, however, generally reproduce the format of articles in a printed-and-bound journal.

Covers and Home Pages

1.78 *Covers for printed journals.* A printed journal is usually bound in soft covers, like a paperback, and each issue generally uses the same overall design and color scheme. A journal's spine contains the name of the journal, the volume and issue numbers, and the date, month, or season and year of publication. It may also note the beginning and ending page numbers of that issue. Each of the remaining four sides of the cover also contains important information, as follows:

- *Cover* 1, the front cover, displays the name of the journal; the volume and issue numbers; the date, month, or season and the year of the issue; the publisher's name; and sometimes the table of contents or an illustration. The title of a special issue, along with the name(s) of the editor(s) of the special issue, appears on cover 1. The front cover may be offered as an image on the home page of the online version for each issue.
- *Cover* 2, the inside front cover, usually contains the masthead with the names of the editor(s) and staff, the editorial board, the journal's International Standard Serial Number (ISSN), its dates or frequency of publication, subscription information, addresses for business and editorial correspondence, and the copyright line for the entire issue (see also 1.97). Cover 2 may also include information about postage; a statement about paper durability; a statement about copying beyond fair use; information about obtaining microfilm copies of back issues; mention of a submission fee, if that is part of the journal's practice; information about indexing of the journal's articles; a statement about advertising policy; and a caption for any illustration that appears on cover 1. It may also list the URL of the electronic version. If the journal is sponsored by a scholarly society or other organization, cover 2 may supply the name and address of the society and the names of officers. Occasionally on cover 2 but more often in the front or back matter of each issue (see 1.81–86), there may be a statement of editorial policy for the journal indicating what kind of articles the journal publishes as well as information for contributors about how and in what form to submit a manuscript.
- *Cover* 3, the inside back cover, is often given over to advertising, or it may be used for information for contributors. If the table of contents begins on the back cover, it may be completed on cover 3.

- *Cover* 4, the back cover, carries the bar code for the journal issue in the lower right-hand corner. It may also carry the table of contents or titles of articles scheduled to appear in a forthcoming issue, or advertising. (If there is advertising on cover 4, the bar code may be put on cover 2 or cover 3.) If the table of contents begins on cover 1, it may be completed on cover 4.

1.79 *Home pages for electronic journals.* The home page for an electronic journal—in addition to identifying such essential information as the volume number and date of the current issue—generally features a table of contents for navigating the articles in that issue and navigational aids for getting to other issues and to information about the journal. Chicago also includes links to full citation information with each article, which consists of author name(s), article title, page range, volume and issue number, and the DOI for the article. Links to information typically included on the covers of printed journals—such as a statement of copyright, frequency of publication, and ISSN—should also be provided on the front page of each issue and with each full-text presentation of individual articles (see also 1.81–86).

1.80 *Maintaining the context of electronic articles.* Information may be lost when articles are uncoupled from the electronic issues of a journal. Editors of electronic journals should seek to preserve the historical context by maintaining, in connection with each article, information that might affect interpretation of its contents or its selection for publication. Information such as the names of the editors and editorial board, any sponsors or advertisers in the journal, and the information for contributors—as they existed at the time of the article's publication—are as relevant as the date of publication in assessing the import of a work.

Front Matter

1.81 *Front matter in printed journals.* Many of the elements discussed in 1.78 can equally occur in the front matter, or preliminary ("prelim") pages. Some journals, because they have a large staff and a large number of editors on their advisory board, have space on cover 2 only for the masthead and advisory board editors; the other items then appear in the front matter.

1.82 *Front matter and home pages for electronic journals.* Most journal home pages include hypertext links to all materials typically found in the front matter of a printed journal. Journal home pages may also provide (or provide links to) some or all of the following resources:

- A fuller description of the journal and its policies
- Information about the history of the journal and, if applicable, the sponsoring society
- More extensive information about preparation and submission of electronic text, tables, math, art, and other files (e.g., video files or large data sets)
- Links to other home pages (e.g., the publisher's home page, the sponsoring society's home page, other relevant societies' home pages, and databases or other online resources associated with the journal or the field)
- Individual and institutional subscription forms
- Lists of institutional subscribers
- Site license agreement and registration forms
- Links to tables of contents for all issues of the journal or for those currently available online
- Lists of articles scheduled for upcoming issues, or links to articles published electronically ahead of upcoming issues
- A link to a journal-specific or broader search engine
- Society meeting abstracts and information about upcoming meetings
- Society membership information and application forms
- Information about special services for subscribers (e.g., tables of contents distributed by e-mail before publication in print)
- Mail-to links for questions about manuscript submission and review, subscriptions, back issues, advertising, copyright and permissions, books and new media for review, passwords and other technical issues, and other topics

These resources typically are not associated with a particular issue of the journal but are simply updated as needed.

1.83 ***Journal table of contents.*** The table of contents, usually headed Contents, appears in the front matter or on the cover(s) of the print issue (see 1.78) and is typically the main feature of a journal's home page. The table of contents should include the title of the journal (or, for a special issue, the title of a special issue and the names of its editors); the date, month, or season and the year of publication; the volume and issue numbers; and the titles of the articles in the issue along with the authors' names and, for the print issue, the page number on which each article begins. It may contain section titles, such as Reviews, or subheads for specific content areas. Additional items listed may include review articles, book reviews, book notes, commentaries, editorials, or other substantive items, and should include a list of articles published in electronic form only (e-articles) or direct readers to the journal's website for a list of those articles. See figure 1.11. The electronic table of contents, in addition to providing links to each format of each item in the list, will include links to any abstracts, which can usually be viewed without a subscription. Some journals

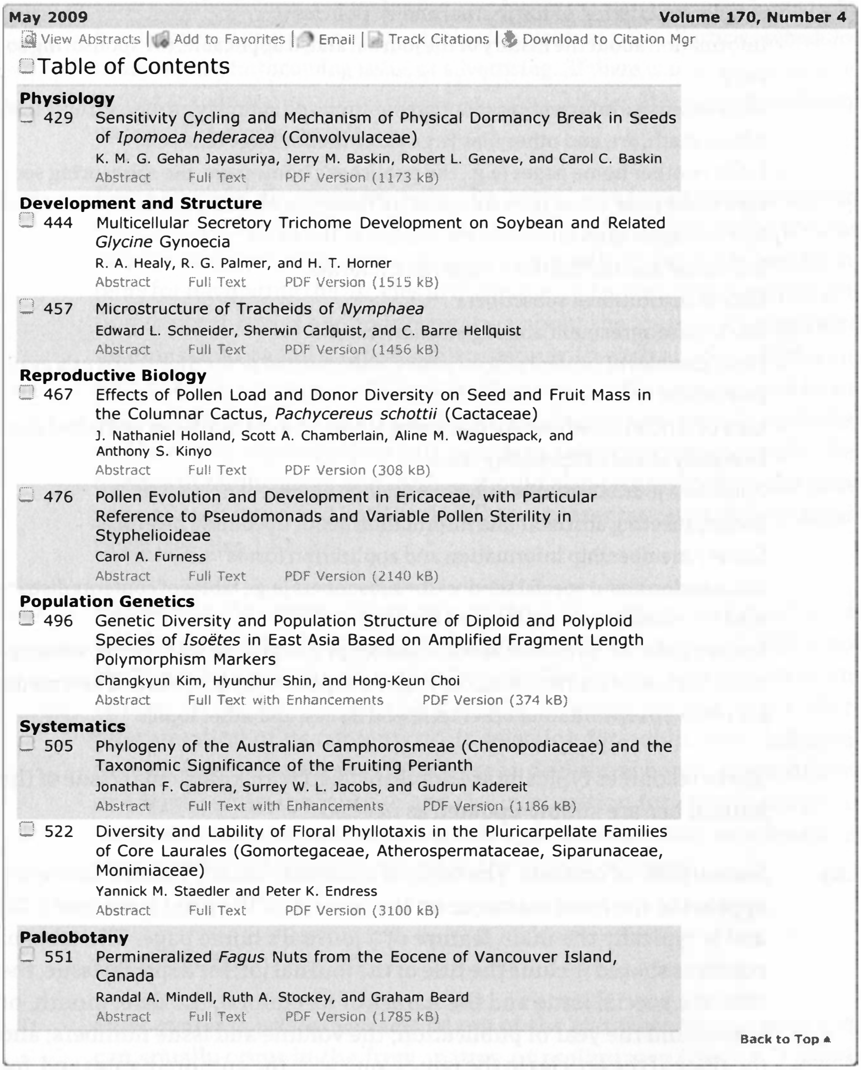
View Abstracts | Add to Favorites | Email | Track Citations | Download to Citation Mgr
Back to Top ▲

May 2009 **Volume 170, Number 4**

☐ Table of Contents

Physiology

☐ 429 Sensitivity Cycling and Mechanism of Physical Dormancy Break in Seeds of *Ipomoea hederacea* (Convolvulaceae)
K. M. G. Gehan Jayasuriya, Jerry M. Baskin, Robert L. Geneve, and Carol C. Baskin
Abstract Full Text PDF Version (1173 kB)

Development and Structure

☐ 444 Multicellular Secretory Trichome Development on Soybean and Related *Glycine* Gynoecia
R. A. Healy, R. G. Palmer, and H. T. Horner
Abstract Full Text PDF Version (1515 kB)

☐ 457 Microstructure of Tracheids of *Nymphaea*
Edward L. Schneider, Sherwin Carlquist, and C. Barre Hellquist
Abstract Full Text PDF Version (1456 kB)

Reproductive Biology

☐ 467 Effects of Pollen Load and Donor Diversity on Seed and Fruit Mass in the Columnar Cactus, *Pachycereus schottii* (Cactaceae)
J. Nathaniel Holland, Scott A. Chamberlain, Aline M. Waguespack, and Anthony S. Kinyo
Abstract Full Text PDF Version (308 kB)

☐ 476 Pollen Evolution and Development in Ericaceae, with Particular Reference to Pseudomonads and Variable Pollen Sterility in Styphelioideae
Carol A. Furness
Abstract Full Text PDF Version (2140 kB)

Population Genetics

☐ 496 Genetic Diversity and Population Structure of Diploid and Polyploid Species of *Isoëtes* in East Asia Based on Amplified Fragment Length Polymorphism Markers
Changkyun Kim, Hyunchur Shin, and Hong-Keun Choi
Abstract Full Text with Enhancements PDF Version (374 kB)

Systematics

☐ 505 Phylogeny of the Australian Camphorosmeae (Chenopodiaceae) and the Taxonomic Significance of the Fruiting Perianth
Jonathan F. Cabrera, Surrey W. L. Jacobs, and Gudrun Kadereit
Abstract Full Text with Enhancements PDF Version (1186 kB)

☐ 522 Diversity and Lability of Floral Phyllotaxis in the Pluricarpellate Families of Core Laurales (Gomortegaceae, Atherospermataceae, Siparunaceae, Monimiaceae)
Yannick M. Staedler and Peter K. Endress
Abstract Full Text PDF Version (3100 kB)

Paleobotany

☐ 551 Permineralized *Fagus* Nuts from the Eocene of Vancouver Island, Canada
Randal A. Mindell, Ruth A. Stockey, and Graham Beard
Abstract Full Text PDF Version (1785 kB)

FIGURE 1.11. Table of contents for an issue of an online scholarly journal. Note that the page numbers, as in most scholarly journals, are sequential throughout a volume. See 1.83.

also include options for downloading and customizing citations to individual articles for use in citation management software (see also 14.13).

1.84 ***Information for contributors.*** Information for potential contributors can vary in length from a sentence to several pages. Some journals also include a statement of editorial policy. These components—when they do not appear on cover 2 or cover 3 in a printed journal (see 1.78)—may appear in an issue's front or back matter. In many cases, the print journal will contain a brief version of these components and point the potential author to the electronic version for more details.

1.85 ***Acknowledgments, announcements, and calls for papers.*** Acknowledgments of reviewers, announcements of awards or conferences, and calls for papers are published periodically, and may appear in the preliminary pages or at the end of a journal issue. If the issue is a supplement or special issue on a single topic, perhaps representing the proceedings of a conference or symposium, the print issue may begin with a title page that contains the title of the supplement, the name(s) of any guest editor(s), information about the source of the articles (perhaps a conference or symposium), and sponsorship information, if any.

1.86 ***Journals errata.*** Journals periodically publish errata, which, in print issues, may appear in the front or the back matter. Electronic journals should provide two-way links from errata to the articles that contain the errors; in other words, the articles themselves should be updated to link to or otherwise indicate the relevant errata. The entries in the issue table of contents for the original articles should also contain links to the errata. Small errors in online articles that are corrected after the original publication date (e.g., broken images and typographical errors) are best accompanied by a note indicating the nature of the changes and when they were made. See also 1.105.

Articles and Other Components

1.87 ***Majors and minors.*** Items published in a journal are often described as being majors or minors. The majors, principally the articles, are so named because these items have been traditionally set in the major (or regular) type size and style of the printed journal. Special kinds of articles—such as review essays, survey articles, or articles grouped as a symposium—are typically treated as majors. Minors, often set in smaller type, are items such as brief reports, letters to the editor, book reviews, book notes, announcements, calls for papers, errata, and notes on contributors.

1.88 ***Article title, authorship, and other first-page information.*** An article should include—on the first page or, in the full-text version, at or near the top of the article—the title of the article, the author's or authors' name(s), and the copyright line for the particular article (see 1.97). Depending on the journal or on the needs of a given article, the first page may also include the affiliation of each author (and any relevant financial interests or potential conflicts of interest), an address for correspondence and reprints, dates of submission and acceptance of the article (most commonly in scientific journals), an abstract, an acknowledgment note, and sometimes an editor's note. Of course, the first page will also include any footnotes that are referenced on that page and, depending on the length of the other information, the beginning of the text. A general section heading such as Articles, Review Essay, or Symposium or a specific heading such as Medical Microbiology may appear above the article title.

1.89 ***Hyperlinks within electronic articles.*** Full-text electronic journal articles typically contain links to other elements within the document (perhaps illustrations, tables, and the reference list, notes, or bibliography) and often to outside resources such as field-specific indexes or databases. Articles are also typically accompanied by other linked items, including an article-specific list (or menu) that allows readers to move directly to other sections or elements of the article and a standard menu that allows them to move to the issue's table of contents, to the previous or next article in the issue, to the journal's home page, to a search page, or elsewhere. The display may also include thumbnail versions of the article's tables and illustrations (see 1.99–100).

1.90 ***Article abstracts.*** Many journals—particularly in the sciences but also in the social sciences—include abstracts. These summaries, sometimes as much as a few hundred words but usually somewhat shorter, appear at the beginning of an article and are generally offered without cost to subscribers and nonsubscribers alike by online journals and third-party hosts and search engines. (Some abstracts are supplemented by targeted keywords intended to increase visibility to search engines.) The content of an abstract is extremely important because it can influence decisions made by researchers and other potential readers. Some journals have strict guidelines for what an abstract must include and how it should be structured—especially those that publish the results of original research. Abstracts are not typically required for letters, reviews, and other minors.

1.91 ***Article subheads.*** An article, like a chapter in a book, may be divided into sections and subsections headed by subheads, sub-subheads, and so on (see 1.53–56). The number of subhead levels required may vary from article to article.

1.92 ***Book review and book notes sections.*** Many journals include a book review section. Such sections, usually headed Reviews or Book Reviews, vary greatly in length from journal to journal. Within a section, each review carries a heading that lists information about the book being reviewed. The heading includes the author's name, the title of the book, place and date of publication, publisher's name, number of pages (including front matter), and price. If the book is part of a series, the series name may be given. Some journals include reviews of other journals and of other media. The name of the reviewer usually appears at the end of the review but occasionally follows the heading. Book notes use the same form of headings as book reviews, but the text is much shorter and reviewers may be listed by their initials. Some journals also publish a list of books or other materials received for review from publishers.

1.93 ***Journal announcements.*** Announcements include such items as notices of future conferences and symposia; calls for papers, award nominations, or research subjects; and employment opportunities.

1.94 ***Journal contributors.*** Some journals have a special section with information about the contributors to the issue, such as their affiliations and publications or fields of study. The names must be checked against the authors' names on the first page of every article and in the table of contents to be sure they are spelled correctly (see also 2.29–31).

1.95 ***Letters to the editor.*** Letters to the editor are usually treated as a minor. In some scientific journals, on the other hand, letters appear as a regular, prominent feature, often with replies, and may contain equations, tables, and figures.

1.96 ***Journal editorials.*** An editorial is not a regular feature in most academic journals but appears on a particular occasion. When there is a change of some sort—a new editor, modifications in editorial policy or style, features added or dropped, or graphic redesign of the journal (see 1.110)—an editorial announces and explains the change. A journal may provide an annual editorial summing up the year's activity. Some journals publish invited editorials, written by someone who is neither the journal's editor in chief nor a member of its editorial board, that comment on a particular article or group of articles. A special issue usually includes an introduction by the special issue's editor(s). The heading Editorial or Introduction is used, and the editor's name appears at the end of the piece.

1.97 ***Journal copyright lines.*** In addition to the copyright line that appears on cover 2, each substantive article or element in the journal normally carries its own copyright line. This usually appears at the bottom of the first page of the article, below any footnotes on that page, or, for electronic articles, at the head of the article or some other prominent location. It contains three basic parts: (1) information on the current issue, including the name of the journal, the volume number, the date, month, or season and year of publication, and the inclusive page numbers of the article; (2) the actual copyright notice, containing the copyright symbol, the year, and the name of the copyright owner (usually either the publisher or the sponsoring society); and (3) a series of numbers (the Copyright Clearance Center code) containing the journal's unique identification number (its International Standard Serial Number, or ISSN), the year, the volume and issue numbers, the article number (assigned by the publisher), and the per copy fee for photocopying, payable through the Copyright Clearance Center (CCC; see below). Chicago also includes a fourth element—the article's DOI (see 14.6).

The Journal of Modern History 78 (March 2006): 1–36
© 2006 by The University of Chicago. All rights reserved.
0022-2801/2006/7801-0001$10.00
doi:10.1086/499793

Most but not all US journals use the CCC, which provides systems through which copyright owners can license the reproduction and distribution of materials in both print and electronic form. Its relations with equivalent agencies in other countries enable the CCC to collect fees for uses in those countries. Note that fees apply only to copyrighted material and not to articles in the public domain. See also 4.55–58, 4.91.

1.98 *Publication history for electronic-first articles.* For all articles that are published electronically before they are published in print, the date of electronic publication should appear as part of the article's history, in both the print and the electronic versions, on the first page or otherwise near the head of the article. This date is also part of the context for interpretation of the article; in the sciences, especially, what is known—or at least what has been reported—can change rapidly.

Tables and Illustrations

1.99 *Tables in journal articles.* Tables in electronic articles can be presented in multiple formats—for example, as an image of the typeset table, as a searchable hypertext version with links, or as a machine-readable version that allows readers to download the data and either repeat the analyses used in the article or use the data, perhaps in combination with data from other sources, for their own analyses. Table footnote citations can be linked to the table footnotes themselves; this is especially useful for navigation in very large tables. Links also allow readers to move freely from text to tables and back again, as well as from one table to another. Very large tables may be published in electronic form only; if there is also a print version of the article, both versions should make this difference explicit (see 1.73). For a full discussion of tables, see 3.46–85. See also A.33.

1.100 ***Illustrations in journal articles.*** An electronic article might display the same illustrations available in the print version of the article, though they may be presented in the text as thumbnail versions linked to larger, higher-resolution images. These images may contain additional navigational aids like the ones described for tables (see 1.99). Moreover, a greater range of illustrations can be offered in electronic journals, which can include more illustrations than would be practical in print. Color can be used freely, without the costs associated with color printing (although color accuracy can vary considerably between display devices). High-resolution images can allow readers to see more detail, and electronic illustrations may include an audio component. Videos and animations can go beyond conventional illustrations to allow readers to view movement and understand processes. For a full discussion of illustrations, see 3.3–45; see also A.32.

Documentation

1.101 ***Notes or author-date citations in journals.*** One of the fundamental identifying marks of a journal is its documentation style—either notes (sometimes accompanied by a bibliography) or author-date citations. Notes still prevail in many humanities journals. Author-date citations—used mostly by journals in science and the social sciences—consist of parenthetical text citations keyed to a reference list, which appears at the end of the article. Notes may be footnotes or endnotes; if the latter, they appear at the end of the article, with the heading Notes. For a discussion of different styles of documentation, see chapters 14 and 15.

1.102 ***Links to citations and to outside resources.*** In full-text electronic articles, text citations typically link to references, notes, or items in a bibliography, as the case may be, allowing readers to move from the text citation to the cited item and back to the text. Reference lists and bibliographies may also contain links to resources outside the article—for example, to cited articles or to an outside index or database (see 1.104).

Index

1.103 *Indexes to printed volumes.* At the end of a volume, most journals publish an index to the articles and other pieces published in that volume. The index appears in the volume's last issue. Names of authors, titles of articles, and titles and authors of books reviewed are indexed. In the sciences, subject indexes are sometimes included (but see 1.104).

1.104 *Electronic indexes and indexed searches.* Some electronic journals, especially in the sciences, have dispensed with subject indexes; in some fields, journal subject indexes have been almost completely superseded by large online databases (such as the National Library of Medicine's bibliographic database of journal articles, PubMed) that allow readers to search an entire field of indexed journals, perhaps using terms from a standard list of keywords, rather than searching individually at each journal's or each journal publisher's website. In some fields, more readers may reach an article by this means than by subscribing to the journal (though they will typically need to have a subscription to gain access to the full article). A subject index may nonetheless appear as part of a larger collection in something like PubMed, or journals may offer it individually.

Version Control and Material Not Available in Print

1.105 *Corrections to journal articles.* For many of its journals, Chicago considers the electronic version of an article to be the version of record; the print version, which should contain all elements that are essential to the article, may nevertheless include only a subset of the material available electronically. Whenever the electronic version is considered the version of record, it is extremely important not to make undocumented changes to the file after the electronic publication date. Note that release of electronic articles before they are published in print means that errors may turn up well before the print issue has been assembled; consequently, a print issue may include an erratum that concerns an article in the same issue. In this case, the erratum should state that the article is in the current issue and should specify the date of electronic publication. See also 1.86. For more information on best practices related to version control for journal articles, consult *Journal Article Versions (JAV): Recommendations of the NISO/ALPSP JAV Technical Working Group*, published by the National Information Standards Organization and available from its website (bibliog. 2.7).

1.106 *Preprints.* Manuscripts are sometimes released before publication: authors themselves may circulate drafts within a research community, or they may circulate versions submitted to a journal. They may post drafts on a preprint server—as is standard practice in the physics community—or on their own web pages. Some journals post accepted but not yet edited articles on their websites. Preprints are not to be confused with final, edited electronic articles published in advance of the print issue (see 1.105). See also 1.73, 4.64.

1.107 *Material not available in print.* In addition to preprints (see 1.106), electronic journals often publish material not available in print or not applicable to print (e.g., audiovisual components, large data sets). It is essential that publishers provide this content in a way that ensures its ongoing availability and accessibility; any electronic-only material published under the imprimatur of a journal is every bit as much a part of the scholarly record as a printed-and-bound volume. To this end, the role of publishers and third-party archival services is crucial because, unlike the case with printed journals, libraries may not physically own a copy of the material or the journals it supplements. By implementing standard practices for document structure and markup and for the inclusion and identification of supplemental media such as video and audio files, publishers can help to ensure the permanence and accessibility of their material in libraries and other archives even as software evolves and archives grow and migrate. Publishers should remain abreast of the latest standards for archival practices by consulting such groups as the International Organization for Standardization and the Digital Library Federation.

Design and Style

1.108 *Journal design.* A journal's design features—physical, visual, and editorial—are determined when the journal is founded. At that time, a designer creates a design for the cover and the overall look of a journal and specifications for all of its regular features. Because the designer designs not for a specific text but for categories of text—article title, author's name, text, heads, subheads, and such—the design of a journal should be simple and flexible as well as being visually pleasing and easy to read. It is then the job of the manuscript editor and production personnel to fit the items for a particular issue into the overall design.

1.109 *Editorial style.* A journal's editorial style (see 2.46) governs such things as when to use numerals or percent signs, how to treat abbreviations or special terms, and how tables are typically organized. Consistency of design and style contributes to a journal's identity; readers know what to expect, and the substantive contribution of each article stands out more sharply when typographical distractions are at a minimum.

1.110 *Redesign.* A long-running journal may occasionally be redesigned typographically. More rarely in print but commonly in electronic journals—where the pace of software development will drive new possibilities or require adjustments to formats—the editors may introduce minor alterations in style to accommodate changing needs. Once established, however, a new design or style must be adhered to as carefully as the one it replaces.

Considerations for Web-Based Publications

1.111 ***Suitability for the web.*** A web-based publication is any publication designed to be consulted online through a web browser or similar application. Any book or journal article may be published on the web, and many scholarly journals, in particular, offer full-text HTML versions of their articles (see 1.72). Because of their relative brevity and because they are often consulted without reference to a particular issue, journal articles have adapted well to this model. Reference works such as manuals, encyclopedias, and dictionaries are, to an even greater degree, designed in any medium to be consulted in a piecemeal fashion, making them particularly suitable for publishing on the web. This section highlights some basic organizational differences between print and web-based publications.

1.112 ***Functional features.*** As even a casual user of the Internet knows, web-based publications involve much more than content. Any discussion of the parts of a web-based publication must also consider the functional features it will have—search engines, note-taking capability, user-controlled display options, and so forth. The process of determining, designing, and implementing such features, while driven largely by technical expertise, must also be guided by editorial sensibilities. This type of work represents a significant departure from traditional editorial duties, but it is nonetheless essential that functional features be developed with a clear understanding of the content and how the user will interact with that content. Editors involved in any work being developed as a web-based publication may therefore reasonably be asked to play a role in the development of the publication's functional features.

1.113 ***Navigation as the primary organizing principle for web-based publications.*** A web-based reference work must take into account the fact that readers will typically consult smaller pieces of content and will expect to be able to click through many parts of a work in a very short period of time. Books and journals designed for the web also need to take this reality into account. Nonetheless, not every publication needs to be modeled on the perfect online dictionary—in which any term within a definition is hyperlinked to the entry for that term and so on, providing endless pathways through a significant subset of a single written language. Some readers will want the option merely to browse. At the very least, cross-references, by being hyperlinked, will become more useful in any online publication, and most web publications will need to augment or even replace standard tables of contents with a search engine—one that may need to accommodate complex queries. Furthermore, any web-based work that allows full-text searching will benefit from context-sensitive keyword indexing (see 16.8). Readers will also want to know where they've been and perhaps where other readers have been (or where the majority have chosen to land). They may want to take notes that they can return to later—through a search or other means. They may want to send comments to the author or publisher, and they may want to read and comment on the comments of others. Finally, readers of web publications may expect links to related resources. All these items will need to be made accessible through a clear and consistent navigational hierarchy.

1.114 ***Hyperlinks.*** In a web-based publication, cross-references become one of the primary ways in which a reader can expect to move quickly from one part of a work to another. There is no cost to following a hyperlink, provided there is a means of stepping or linking back and forth between the hyperlink and the item it points to. But if there are too many links, or if they do not tend to lead to strongly related content—or, worse, if they fail—a publication risks irritating its readers. Beyond cross-references and hyperlinked tables of contents and indexes or other navigational items, a link can of course be made to point to almost anything. Words might be linked to their definitions—either in a glossary or through a third-party dictionary. Authors' names might contain mail-to links or lead to their networking pages or to lists of their other works. URLs or other identifiers can be embedded in any piece of content. All of these must be maintained and updated, however, often at significant cost. Internal cross-references are the most stable type of hyperlink because they need only be tested against and updated along with the work itself—a process that can be at least partly automated. Most other types of text-based links need to be weighed for their utility and persistence. On the other hand, some links can be generated programmatically—for example, links to related titles or related subjects generated by matching author, title, or subject metadata against an evolving database each time a user calls up a specific piece of content (see also A.10).

1.115 ***"Front matter" for web-based publications.*** Readers of web-based publications will want to be able to navigate primarily to the core content of the publication (and the content that it generates) rather than to ancillary elements such as prefaces, copyright information, or information about the publication or its authors. Online, these elements can be demoted from their usual position in the front of a printed-and-bound book and made accessible through a link at the edge of the screen or the base of a document, from which they can be consulted if need be. Copyright information, however, should usually be included with each subdocument, and help and related documentation should also be available from any part of a publication. Much of the usual taxonomy for printed works—from copyright page to table of contents to preface, foreword, and introduction—will benefit from a different set of categories (e.g., "about us" links, site maps, help menus and other tools, search engines, and the other elements mentioned in 1.113). The table of contents, however, especially in works that can be read in larger chunks—such as an online journal or this manual—may be a significant driver in the top-level navigation of a web-based publication.

1.116 ***Folios, running heads, and other "print" elements.*** One of the primary advantages of a traditional printed-and-bound book or journal is the presence of page numbers. Page numbers allow students and researchers to make precise citations to the works they consult, allowing readers in turn to retrace their steps. Web-based publications should keep this in mind when designing and organizing content. Dictionaries and encyclopedias have a de facto organizing principle: readers cite material *sub verbo*—or "under the word"—that is, by entry or entry title (14.247). But other types of publications broken into scrollable sections or articles (including encyclopedias with longer articles)—though they may be designed for convenient navigation online—do not necessarily include page numbers to which readers can refer when documenting a specific quotation or idea. Publishers are encouraged to incorporate stable page numbers—as in PDF versions of a journal article—or to otherwise number the elements in their web-based publications (e.g., through paragraph or section numbers) whenever possible. Running heads, on the other hand, almost always have an analogous presence in the basic navigational elements of a web-based publication. Readers require clear indications not only of "where" they are within a publication at any moment (not to mention an indication of the size and scope of each of its elements) but also where they have been and where they might go—for example, to a related portion of the alphabet in a dictionary or, in any type of work, to a section with related content (or, for that matter, to another publication with related content).

1.117 ***Indexes, notes, and other "back matter."*** Any web-based project can benefit from keyword-enhanced searches, cross-references to related content, and other navigational cues. Web-based works that have a printed counterpart complete with index, on the other hand, should take advantage of the intellectual labor that went into choosing and arranging the index entries and marry it to the linking capabilities of an electronic work. An index prepared with human input—whether it is "embedded" and shows up only in the results of keyword searches (see 16.7) or is prepared as a separate list according to the guidelines in chapter 16—is an asset in any electronic work, whether or not it has a printed counterpart. Note references are hyperlinked to the text in electronic works, solving the problem of footnotes versus endnotes that arises in printed books (see 14.38–43). Other traditional back matter—such as appendixes and bibliographies—may benefit in web-based works from electronic enhancements (e.g., downloadable data sets) or links out to other resources (e.g., through a database such as CrossRef; see 14.6).

2 Manuscript Preparation, Manuscript Editing, and Proofreading

Overview and Process Outline 2.1

Manuscript Preparation Guidelines for Authors 2.3

- *Basic Submission Requirements* 2.3
- *Formatting* 2.7
- *Illustrations and Tables* 2.23
- *Cross-Checking* 2.29
- *Naming and Saving the Electronic Files* 2.33
- *Preparing a Manuscript for a Multiauthor Book or Journal* 2.38
- *Compiling a Manuscript from Previously Published Material* 2.40

Manuscript Editing 2.45

- *Principles of Manuscript Editing* 2.45
- *Editing Specific Parts of a Manuscript* 2.54
- *Communicating with Authors* 2.65
- *Preparing a Final Manuscript for Production* 2.70
- *The Mechanics of Electronic Editing* 2.75
- *The Mechanics of Editing on Paper* 2.87

Proofreading 2.97

- *Introduction* 2.97
- *Stages of Proof* 2.100
- *How to Proofread and What to Look For* 2.107
- *How to Mark Proofs* 2.116
- *Double-Checking and Assigning Responsibility for Errors* 2.130
- *Proofing and Testing Electronic Publications* 2.133

Overview and Process Outline

2.1 *Overview—authors, manuscript editors, and proofreaders.* This chapter is divided into three parts. The first part (2.3–44) is addressed primarily to authors, conceived broadly to include compilers, translators, volume editors, editors of journals, and contributors to journals or books. It provides guidelines for preparing manuscripts that have been accepted for publication. As in the discussion of parts in chapter 1, the book-length work is used as the primary model, though considerations for journals are included where applicable. Scholarly journals and periodicals tend to have very specific requirements for manuscript preparation; those writing for such publications will need to consult the specific publication's instructions for authors. The second part of the chapter (2.45–96) gives a detailed look at what happens to a manuscript once it has been submitted to a publisher. Specifically, the role of manuscript editors (also called copyeditors) is discussed. The third part (2.97–136) deals with proofreading—essentially, the steps authors and publishers must take to ensure that their publications are ready to be presented to the public.

2.2 *Process outline—from approved manuscript to published work.* The following outline highlights the basic steps of the publication process from approved manuscript to published work. These steps are broadly modeled on a typical manuscript editing and proofreading schedule for a book-length work; the procedures for journals will vary. For a more detailed look at manuscript preparation, editing, and proofreading, see the discussions in the remainder of this chapter. For sample timetables for producing a book and a journal, see figures 2.1 and 2.2. For an overview of production procedures, including design, see appendix A.

1. **Manuscript submission.** In addition to the final, unedited manuscript, the author submits to the publisher all artwork and any necessary permissions to reproduce illustrations or previously published material or to cite unpublished data or personal communications. See 2.3–6.
2. **Manuscript editing.** The manuscript editor makes changes to the manuscript (and, where necessary, queries the author) and demarcates or checks the order and structure of the elements (e.g., illustrations, headings, text extracts). See 2.54–64, 2.66.
3. **Author review.** The author reviews the edited manuscript and answers any queries. All remaining changes and adjustments to the manuscript need to be indicated by the author at this stage. See 2.85.
4. **Final manuscript.** The manuscript editor produces a final manuscript, incorporating the results of the author's review of the edited manuscript and,

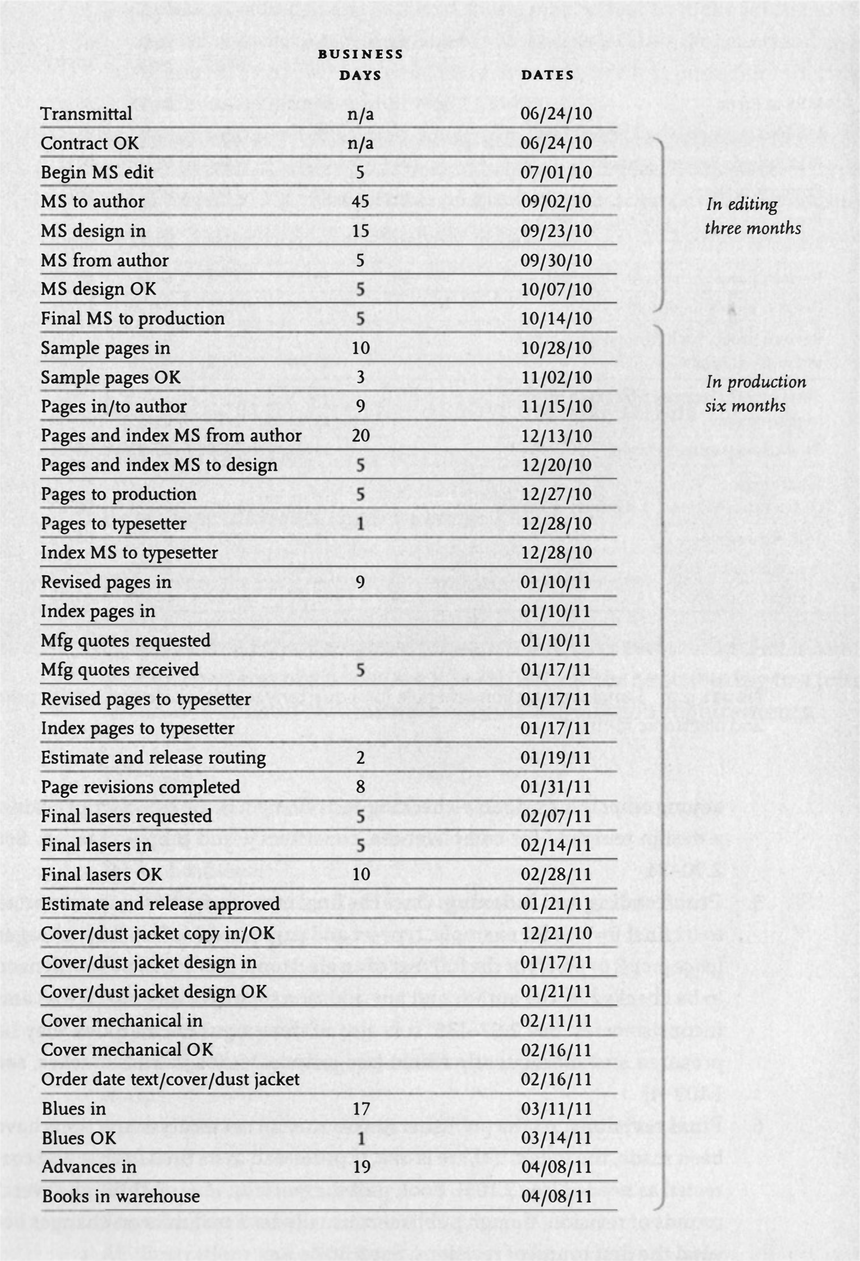

	BUSINESS DAYS	DATES	
Transmittal	n/a	06/24/10	
Contract OK	n/a	06/24/10	*In editing three months*
Begin MS edit	5	07/01/10	
MS to author	45	09/02/10	
MS design in	15	09/23/10	
MS from author	5	09/30/10	
MS design OK	5	10/07/10	
Final MS to production	5	10/14/10	*In production six months*
Sample pages in	10	10/28/10	
Sample pages OK	3	11/02/10	
Pages in/to author	9	11/15/10	
Pages and index MS from author	20	12/13/10	
Pages and index MS to design	5	12/20/10	
Pages to production	5	12/27/10	
Pages to typesetter	1	12/28/10	
Index MS to typesetter		12/28/10	
Revised pages in	9	01/10/11	
Index pages in		01/10/11	
Mfg quotes requested		01/10/11	
Mfg quotes received	5	01/17/11	
Revised pages to typesetter		01/17/11	
Index pages to typesetter		01/17/11	
Estimate and release routing	2	01/19/11	
Page revisions completed	8	01/31/11	
Final lasers requested	5	02/07/11	
Final lasers in	5	02/14/11	
Final lasers OK	10	02/28/11	
Estimate and release approved		01/21/11	
Cover/dust jacket copy in/OK		12/21/10	
Cover/dust jacket design in		01/17/11	
Cover/dust jacket design OK		01/21/11	
Cover mechanical in		02/11/11	
Cover mechanical OK		02/16/11	
Order date text/cover/dust jacket		02/16/11	
Blues in	17	03/11/11	
Blues OK	1	03/14/11	
Advances in	19	04/08/11	
Books in warehouse		04/08/11	

FIGURE 2.1. Sample design and production schedule for a printed book.

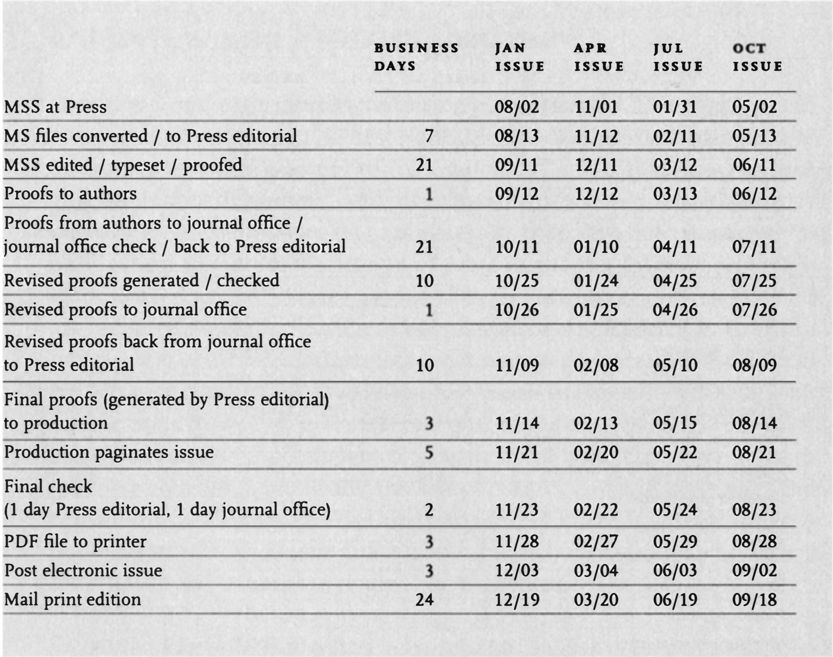

	BUSINESS DAYS	JAN ISSUE	APR ISSUE	JUL ISSUE	OCT ISSUE
MSS at Press		08/02	11/01	01/31	05/02
MS files converted / to Press editorial	7	08/13	11/12	02/11	05/13
MSS edited / typeset / proofed	21	09/11	12/11	03/12	06/11
Proofs to authors	1	09/12	12/12	03/13	06/12
Proofs from authors to journal office / journal office check / back to Press editorial	21	10/11	01/10	04/11	07/11
Revised proofs generated / checked	10	10/25	01/24	04/25	07/25
Revised proofs to journal office	1	10/26	01/25	04/26	07/26
Revised proofs back from journal office to Press editorial	10	11/09	02/08	05/10	08/09
Final proofs (generated by Press editorial) to production	3	11/14	02/13	05/15	08/14
Production paginates issue	5	11/21	02/20	05/22	08/21
Final check (1 day Press editorial, 1 day journal office)	2	11/23	02/22	05/24	08/23
PDF file to printer	3	11/28	02/27	05/29	08/28
Post electronic issue	3	12/03	03/04	06/03	09/02
Mail print edition	24	12/19	03/20	06/19	09/18

FIGURE 2.2. Sample production schedule for a quarterly journal published in both print and electronic forms.

among other things, double-checking each element in the manuscript against a design template for completeness, consistency, and proper markup. See 2.70–74.

5. **Proofreading and indexing.** Once the final manuscript has been converted to its final form—for example, typeset and paginated book or journal pages (*page proofs* or *proof*) or the full text of an electronic publication—it will need to be checked by the author and any additional proofreaders for errors and inconsistencies. See 2.97–136. It is also at this stage that an index may be prepared and subsequently edited (see chapter 16; for journal indexes, see 1.103–4).
6. **Final revisions.** As the publisher makes sure all necessary corrections have been made, the index, if there is one, is proofread in its final format and corrected as needed (see 2.103). Book pages, especially, may go through several rounds of revision, though publishers usually set firm limits on changes beyond the first round of revisions. See 2.102.
7. **Prepress or final review.** For a printed-and-bound book, publishers usually review the typesetter's final files—either as an inexpensive printout or onscreen—before ink is committed to paper. Once the job is on the press, an

initial set of folded and gathered sheets may be sent from the printer to the publisher for review before the job is finished (see 2.104). For electronic publications, a final version must be reviewed before it is posted or otherwise made available to the public (see 2.133–36).

8. **Publication.** In the stages leading up to publication it is critically important to make all possible efforts to eliminate any errors or inconsistencies (typographical or otherwise) or other problems. The occasional error in a published work is inevitable, but even minor errors reflect badly on publishers and authors alike.

Manuscript Preparation Guidelines for Authors

Basic Submission Requirements

2.3 ***Elements to be furnished.*** Before manuscript editing begins (see 2.45–96), an author should plan to provide the publisher with any of the elements in the list that follows that are to be included in the work. This list is modeled on the parts of a book (see 1.3–71). An author contributing to a journal should consult the journal's specific submission requirements.

- Title page
- Dedication
- Epigraph
- Table of contents
- List of illustrations
- List of tables
- Preface
- Acknowledgments
- Any other front matter
- All text matter, including introduction and part titles
- Notes
- Appendixes
- Glossary
- Bibliography or reference list
- Any other back matter
- All illustrations and all tables
- Illustration captions
- A list of special characters used in the manuscript
- An abstract (required for some books)

- All permissions, in writing, that may be required to reproduce illustrations or previously published material or to cite unpublished data or personal communications (see chapter 4)

All elements should be final and up to date—including any URLs cited in the work (see 14.4–13). The publisher usually furnishes the half-title page (see 1.16), the copyright page (see 1.19–34), and copy for the running heads (see 1.9–15, 2.73).

2.4 ***Submitting electronic manuscripts.*** Publishers usually require the latest version of the electronic file(s) for the work, and authors are advised to make a secure backup of this final manuscript and to avoid making any further changes to it. Many publishers also require hard copy as a safeguard against any glitches in the electronic files—especially for book-length works. (Some publishers will want a PDF version—the electronic equivalent of hard copy—instead.) To ensure that the hard copy is identical to the electronic files, any last-minute changes made to the electronic files must be reflected in the hard copy—either by means of a new printout or marked by hand (see also 2.5). Authors are advised to include a cover letter specifying the author's name, the title of the work, the electronic file names, and the software used. Any material (such as artwork) that cannot be included in electronic form must be noted and described. Conversely, any material that cannot be printed out (such as videos, animations, or large data files that might be included in an electronic journal or web-based publication) must also be noted and described; for all such material, the software used, the number of items, their type(s), and the individual file names must be specified. For any additional instructions, authors should check with their publishers. For advice on manuscript formatting, see 2.7–22. For advice on preparing index manuscripts, see chapter 16. For paper-only manuscripts, see 2.6. For manuscripts consisting largely of previously published material, see 2.40.

2.5 ***Later changes—version control.*** Once an author has submitted a final manuscript to the publisher, the publisher is responsible for maintaining the version of record. An author who needs to make further changes after submitting the files must therefore alert the publisher immediately. Minor changes can usually be indicated later, on the edited document that the manuscript editor will send to the author for review (see 2.85). For major changes, the author may need to send a revised manuscript to the publisher *before* editing begins. For journals, major changes are rarely permitted after an article has been accepted; schedules do not allow for them. Peer-reviewed articles that require major changes may also require additional review.

2.6 ***Submitting paper-only manuscripts.*** In the increasingly rare case of the typewritten manuscript, authors are typically required to submit two paper copies of the manuscript; they should keep a third copy for themselves. All copy must be vertically double-spaced (double line spacing) to leave sufficient room for pencil-editing marks. It is essential, moreover, that everything in a paper-only manuscript be legible. Anything added in handwriting before the manuscript is submitted to the publisher must be clearly written, in upper- and lowercase letters, directly above the line or in the margin. Avoid writing on the backs of pages in case the publisher photocopies the manuscript. Any correction longer than a short phrase should be provided as a separate document and inserted in the manuscript following the page to which it pertains—clearly labeled in both places to show where it should be inserted. Finally, to facilitate photocopying, use good-quality paper in a standard size—8½ × 11 inches or A4 (210 × 297 mm). See also 2.40.

Formatting

2.7 ***Publishers' manuscript-preparation guidelines.*** Many publishers have specific requirements or preferences regarding choice of software and typeface, as well as formats for submitting illustrations and tables along with your manuscript. These should be followed to the letter. Consistency and simplicity in all matters is essential: authors should know that their manuscripts will almost always be converted into another software environment for publication and that, therefore, the consistency and accuracy of the content (i.e., the words themselves) are more important than the style of presentation. A simple presentation is always preferable to an elaborately formatted manuscript. Authors who want a more explicit idea of what publishers look for in the format and structure of a manuscript would do well to consider the steps in a manuscript editor's typical cleanup routine (see 2.77).

2.8 ***Line spacing.*** Though authors may prefer to use minimal line spacing on the screen, publishers have customarily required that any printout be double-spaced—including all extracts, notes, bibliography, and other material. The extra line spacing is crucial for manuscripts edited with pencil on paper, and some publishers will choose to edit the paper copy and update the electronic files based on this edited copy. (Authors concerned about saving paper are encouraged to consult with their publishers about line-spacing requirements.) Avoid extra space or blank lines between paragraphs. If such a break is intended to appear in the printed version, indicate this explicitly with three asterisks set on a line by themselves (see also 1.56).

2.9 *Word spacing—one space or two?* Like most publishers, Chicago advises leaving a single character space, not two spaces, between sentences and after colons used within a sentence (but see 14.121), and this recommendation applies to both the manuscript and the published work.

2.10 *Justification and margins.* To avoid the appearance of inconsistent spacing between words and sentences, all text in a manuscript should be presented flush left (ragged right)—that is, lines should not be "justified" to the right margin. To leave enough room for handwritten queries, margins of at least one inch should appear on all four sides of the hard copy.

2.11 *Spaces, tabs, and hard returns within paragraphs.* A well-structured electronic document will never include more than one consecutive character space. To indent the first line of a paragraph or items in a vertical list, use the Tab key or your software's paragraph indention features rather than the space bar. (Also eliminate any extra character space or tab after the final punctuation at the end of a paragraph; the hard return should follow the punctuation immediately.) To achieve hanging indention for runover lines (as in a bibliography or index), use your software's indent features—not hard returns and tabs or spaces (see 2.22). A tab or a hard return (i.e., a paragraph break, generally made with the Enter key) should never appear within a paragraph. For prose extracts, see 2.18; for poetry, see 2.19.

2.12 *Hyphenation.* The hyphenation function on your word processor should be turned off. The only hyphens that should appear in the manuscript are hyphens that would appear regardless of where they appeared on the page (e.g., in compound forms). Do not worry if such hyphens happen to fall at the end of a line or if the right-hand margin is extremely ragged. By the same token, do not attempt to manually break excessively long words (e.g., long URLs) with a hyphen. See also 2.93.

2.13 *Dashes.* For an em dash—one that indicates a break in a sentence like this—either use the em dash character on your word processor or type two hyphens (leave no space on either side). For the long dash (three-em dash) in bibliographies, use three consecutive em dashes or six unspaced hyphens. (For more on the em dash, see 6.82–89, 6.90–91.) Ensuring proper use of the en dash—a shorter dash that has special significance in certain types of compounds and in number ranges—is usually considered the manuscript editor's responsibility; authors can generally avoid the en dash and use hyphens instead. (For more on the en dash, see 6.78–81.)

2.14 ***Italics, underline, and boldface.*** Though underlining will generally be construed by publishers to mean italics, italics should be used instead wherever italics are intended. (In an electronically redlined manuscript, underlining may denote editorial changes; see 2.81 and fig. 2.4.) An author who in fact intends underlining rather than italics to appear in certain instances in the published work must make these instances clear in a letter to the publisher (or a note to the manuscript editor). Use boldface only for words that must appear thus in the published version.

2.15 ***Special characters.*** As far as your software allows, use the character that you intend rather than any keyboard substitute. For example, if you want a prime symbol, use the prime symbol from your word processor's list of special characters rather than an apostrophe. Since the advent of the Unicode standard for character encoding (see 11.2), many software environments include a wide array of special characters without the need for special fonts or other add-ons. Nonetheless, if you run up against a character that is not available to you, enclose a descriptive shorthand in angle brackets; for example, *<bhook>aci* might indicate that the publisher should render the Hausa word *ɓaci*. In either case, include a list of special characters used in your manuscript. See tables 11.1 and 11.2, which list some special characters and their names. If you plan to use a special font that may not support Unicode, consult your publisher first. For some caveats related to quotation marks and apostrophes, see 6.112, 6.114.

2.16 ***Chapter and other titles.*** Titles for chapters and other parts of a manuscript usually begin on a new page. Use upper- and lowercase letters rather than full capitals. The titles should match the entries in the table of contents. "Chapter 1," "Chapter 2," and so on should appear above the titles to numbered chapters.

2.17 ***Subheads.*** Set subheads on a new line, flush left. Each level of subhead must be distinguished by type size and style, such as larger boldface for first-level subheads versus smaller italics for second-level heads. (A word processor's style palette can be useful in managing subhead levels.) Use upper- and lowercase letters rather than full capitals (see 8.157). Except for run-in heads, which are usually italicized and given initial capitals for the first word and proper names only (sentence style; see 8.156), subheads are almost never followed by a period. See also 1.54.

2.18 ***Prose extracts.*** Prose extracts (also known as block quotations) should have double line spacing and be indented from the left margin using your word processor's indent feature. The first line should not have an additional paragraph indent. If there is more than one paragraph within the extract, new paragraphs should have an additional first-line paragraph indent, which can be created using the Tab key or your software's paragraph indention feature. Use hard returns (i.e., the Enter key) only at the end of the extract and after any paragraphs within the extract. See also 13.20–22. For ellipses, see 13.48–56.

2.19 ***Poetry extracts.*** Poetry extracts should be double-spaced and indented, *not* centered (even if they are to appear centered in the printed version). Let runover lines wrap to the next line normally; do not use the Tab key to indent them. Use a hard return only at the end of each full line of poetry. Only if certain new lines of a poem are to receive deeper indention than others should you use the Tab key, at the beginning of the indented line. You must clearly distinguish between runover lines and indented lines of poetry. If there are either runover or double-indented lines, or if there is any unusual spacing or indention in your hard copy, append a photocopy of the original printed poem. For ellipses, see 13.55. Indicate a stanza break with an extra hard return. The source, if given after the extract, should appear in parentheses on a separate line, aligned vertically with the beginning of the first line of the poem. (In the printed version, the source may appear flush right.) See also 13.23–27.

2.20 ***Footnotes and endnotes.*** To take advantage of automatic renumbering, create notes that are linked to the text by using the footnote or endnote function on your word processor. For the printout, they must be double-spaced throughout. Unless your publisher requests otherwise, in the manuscript they may appear either as footnotes or as chapter or book endnotes (starting over at 1 for each chapter), regardless of how they are to appear in the published version. Avoid appending note references to chapter titles (see 1.48). Notes to tables should be numbered separately (see 2.28). For note form, see 14.19–55. For some caveats regarding source citation software, see 14.13.

2.21 ***Glossaries and lists of abbreviations.*** Each entry in a glossary or list of abbreviations should begin on a new line, capitalized only if the term is capitalized in the text. Separate each term from the definition that follows with a period, a colon, or an em dash. In a glossary, begin the definition with a capital letter, as if it were a new sentence; in a list of abbreviations, the expanded term should be capitalized or lowercased as it would be in text. Glossary entries need closing punctuation unless all definitions consist of incomplete sentences. Any term or abbreviation that is consistently italicized in the text (not just on first use) should also be italicized in the glossary or list of abbreviations. (Abbreviations of consistently italicized terms should generally themselves be italicized; see also

14.55.) Entries should be double-spaced and may be formatted in flush-and-hang style (see 2.22) or with ordinary first-line paragraph indents. Avoid multiple columns. (For an example of a glossary, see appendix B.) See also 1.43 and 1.60.

2.22 ***Bibliographies and reference lists.*** Although a bibliography or reference list will often appear in flush-and-hang (or hanging-indention) style in the published version (like the bibliography in this manual), you may either use the hanging-indention function on your word processor or format each entry like a normal paragraph with a first-line indent. Never use the Tab key to indent runover lines. As with all parts of your manuscript, use double line spacing. For capitalization, use of italics, and other matters of bibliographic style, see chapter 14. For some caveats regarding source citation software, see 14.13.

Illustrations and Tables

2.23 ***Separate files for illustrations, captions, and tables.*** Publishers usually prefer separate files for illustrations. Many publishers also prefer tables in separate files, but those created in the same application as the rest of your manuscript may not need to be; consult your publisher. The approximate placement of illustrations or tables submitted as separate files should be called out in the text, keeping in mind that the exact locations of figures in a manuscript will be determined during typesetting (see 2.27). Captions for all illustrations (as distinct from a list of illustrations following the table of contents; see 1.38) should be furnished in a separate file. For manuscripts of journal articles, consult the specific journal's instructions for authors. For a more detailed overview of illustrations and tables, see chapter 3.

2.24 ***Prints of artwork versus scans.*** Text figures that are to be reproduced by scanning a hard-copy original—such as paintings, maps, and photographic prints—should be furnished in whatever form the publisher requests. Publishers often prefer to do their own scans. Glossy prints must be clearly labeled, usually on the back of the print or on a self-sticking label, in a manner that does not impair their quality (see 3.16). For further discussion, see 3.15–20.

2.25 ***Numbering illustrations.*** Illustrations may be consecutively numbered, or, in scientific and technical books, heavily illustrated books, and books with chapters by different authors, double numeration may be used. In double numeration, provide the chapter number, followed by a period, followed by the figure number (e.g., fig. 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, . . . , 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, . . . , etc.). In the event a figure is dropped or added, double numeration will help simplify the work needed to renumber not just the illustrations but any applicable cross-references, especially in a heavily illustrated book. Illustrations are enumerated separately from tables. Plates to be grouped in a gallery are numbered separately from figures interspersed in the text (see 3.14). Even if numbers are not to appear with the illustrations in the published version, working numbers should be assigned for identification and should accompany the captions (see 3.13). For more details, see 3.8–14.

2.26 ***Numbering tables.*** Tables may be numbered consecutively throughout a book or, in a book with many tables or with chapters by different authors, double numeration may be used (e.g., table 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, . . . , 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, . . . , etc.). In a book with many tables, double numeration can simplify the task of renumbering in the event a table is dropped or added. Tables are enumerated separately from illustrations. Very simple tabular material (e.g., a two-column list) may be presented, unnumbered, along with the text. See also 3.51.

2.27 ***Text references and callouts to tables and illustrations.*** A *text reference* is addressed to the reader ("see table 5," or "fig. 3.2") and will appear in the published version. A *callout* is an instruction, which will not appear in the published work, telling where a table or an illustration is to appear. In the manuscript, a callout should be enclosed in angle brackets or some other delimiter and placed on a separate line following the paragraph in which the table or illustration is first referred to ("<table 5 here>"; "<fig. 3.2 here>") or, if a later location is preferable, where the table or illustration is to appear. Tables and such illustrations as graphs and diagrams require both a text reference and a placement callout, unless they are to be grouped in a section separate from the regular text. Photographs and maps—at least in printed books—do not always need to be referred to in the text but do need a placement callout if they are to appear with the text (see 3.8–14).

2.28 ***Table notes and source notes.*** Source notes appear at the foot of the table before any other notes. They are preceded by the word "Source" followed by a colon. Other notes to the table as a whole follow any source note and may be preceded by the word "Note" followed by a colon. Specific notes follow any other notes and must carry their own numbering (preferably letters; see 3.77), keyed to parts of the table. They must never be numbered along with the notes to the text. For a fuller discussion of notes to tables, see 3.74–78.

Cross-Checking

2.29 ***Items to cross-check.*** Before submitting a manuscript for publication, an author must cross-check all of its parts to avoid discrepancies. The following list includes major items to check:

- All titles and subtitles (introduction, parts, chapters, etc.) against table of contents
- Subheads against table of contents (if subheads are included there; see 1.37)
- Illustrations against their captions, text references, and callouts
- Illustration captions against list of illustrations
- Tables against their text references and callouts
- Table titles against list of tables
- All cross-references (see also 2.32)
- In an electronic work, all hyperlinks
- Notes against their text references
- Notes against bibliography
- Parenthetical text citations against reference list
- Abbreviations against list of abbreviations
- In a multiauthor work, authors' names in table of contents against chapter headings and list of contributors

2.30 ***Checking quotations.*** All quoted matter should be checked against the original source, for both content and citation, before a manuscript is submitted for publication. This authorial task is crucial because manuscript editors will not have access to all the sources that the author has used.

2.31 ***Checking URLs.*** Any URLs cited in a manuscript—including any mentioned in the text—need to be checked before a manuscript is submitted for publication. Those that no longer point to the intended source should be updated. By a similar token, authors should consider not including any URLs that seem potentially unstable or subject to change. See also 14.4–13.

2.32 ***Checking cross-references.*** All cross-references, whether to a chapter, a section, an appendix, or even a sentence of text, should be verified before a manuscript is submitted for publication. A chapter number or title may have been changed, or a passage deleted, after the original reference to it. Cross-references are best made to chapter or section numbers, which can be entered at the manuscript stage. (Keep in mind that references to whole chapters are often gratuitous and unhelpful; it's best to avoid peppering a manuscript with "see chapter 2 above" and "see chapter 4 below.") References to page numbers are generally discouraged because the pagination of a published work will not correspond to that of the manuscript, and the correct number will have to be supplied later in the process (usually by the author). Where absolutely necessary, use three bullets (e.g., "see p. • • •") to signal the need to supply the final page number.

Naming and Saving the Electronic Files

2.33 *Creating separate files.* For book-length projects, publishers may prefer to get separate electronic files for each of the various elements—front matter through table of contents, preface, chapters, appendixes, and so on (some of which will include embedded notes). It is recognized, however, that some authors will prefer to work in one file. Nonetheless, appropriately named separate files—especially for complex works—can help publishers get a sense of a book's component parts. Illustrations, which publishers handle separately from the text, should always be in separate files; tables created in an author's word-processing software may not need to be; see 2.23. Many journals specify that all elements of an article manuscript, including tables but excluding other illustrations, should be stored in a single file. Always consult your publisher's manuscript preparation guidelines before submitting a final manuscript.

2.34 *Naming files.* For books with more than a few parts, it may be helpful to choose file names that will line up in book order in an alphanumerically sorted directory. The names "chapter 01, Code as Consciousness," "chapter 02, Unmediated Scripts," and "chapter 03, Electricity as Messenger" will not only stay ordered together in a directory sorted alphanumerically by name (some operating systems will require the zeros to properly order more than nine numbered elements) but will also indicate the name or subject of each chapter—an additional organizational cue. File names should correspond more or less to the parts of the manuscript as listed in the table of contents. A complete list of all submitted files, including lists of illustrations or tables and any electronic-only elements, should accompany the manuscript. (In the hard copy the various divisions should be arranged in the order specified in the table of contents, which is not necessarily the order of the electronic directory.) Files for color illustrations may include the word *color* in their names, especially if black-and-white prints have also been submitted.

2.35 *Numbering manuscript pages.* Each page of a manuscript, whether electronic or hard copy, must be numbered. Manuscripts submitted as multiple files need not be numbered consecutively from page 1 through to the end of the book. Instead, to ensure that no two pages in the manuscript are numbered the same, descriptive page headers can be added next to the page numbers in each file (e.g., "Introduction: 1," "Introduction: 2," etc.; "chapter 1: 1," "chapter 1: 2," etc.). Arabic numerals may be used for the front matter even though these pages may take on roman numerals in the published work. The manuscript editor will indicate the appropriate roman numerals for the book designer (see 2.72). Manuscripts submitted as one file, on the other hand, can be numbered consecutively across the book starting with page 1. In a paper-only manuscript, pages added after the initial numbering may be numbered with *a* or *b* (e.g., 55, 55a, 55b).

2.36 ***Embedded comments and revision marks.*** Authors should delete any comments embedded in their electronic manuscripts *before* submitting them for publication. This includes any text formatted as "hidden" and any comments generated using the commenting feature in a word processor. Any outstanding queries should be addressed in a cover letter. Moreover, it is crucial that any revision marks (or "tracked changes") be removed before the manuscript is submitted—and that the final manuscript represent the very latest version. (Manuscript editors should always check for hidden text, comments, and revision marks and alert the author or publisher about any potential problems.)

2.37 ***Backing up the final manuscript.*** In addition to saving a separate electronic copy of each crucial stage of work on their manuscripts, authors are advised to save a backup copy of the version sent to the publisher for editing and publication. Prudence dictates keeping at least two copies for yourself (e.g., on a computer hard drive and on a disk or portable hard drive) and, if practical, uploading another copy to a trusted Internet storage vendor.

Preparing a Manuscript for a Multiauthor Book or Journal

2.38 ***Volume editor's manuscript preparation responsibilities.*** The specific responsibilities of the volume editor, contributors, and publisher (including manuscript editor) must be determined before a multiauthor manuscript is submitted. If there is more than one volume editor, the responsibilities of each must be spelled out. After ensuring that the contributors furnish their papers in a uniform style agreed to by all parties, the volume editor is usually responsible for the following:

- Getting manuscripts, including illustrations, from all contributors in a form acceptable to the publisher well before the date for submitting the volume

- Getting written permission from copyright owners to reproduce material in copyrighted works published elsewhere, illustrations taken from another work, and the like (see chapter 4)
- Editing each contribution for sense and checking references and other documentation for uniformity of style, then sending edited manuscripts to the contributors for their approval before the volume is submitted to the publisher (an activity distinct from the manuscript editing that will be done later by the publisher)
- Providing a list of contributors with their affiliations and brief biographical notes to be included in the volume
- Providing a title page, table of contents, and any necessary prefatory material
- Sending the complete manuscript to the publisher in a form acceptable for publication (having first made sure that the manuscript includes only the latest version of each contributor's chapter)
- Adhering to the publisher's schedule, ensuring that contributors do likewise, keeping track of the contributors' whereabouts at all stages of publication, and assuming the responsibilities of any contributor who cannot fulfill them

Most if not all of these responsibilities also apply to journal editors.

2.39 ***Additional responsibilities of the volume editor.*** Depending on the arrangement with the publisher, the volume editor may also be responsible for the following:

- Sending a publishing agreement (provided by the publisher) to each contributor and returning the agreements, fully executed, to the publisher (see 4.53)
- Checking the edited manuscript and responding to all queries, or distributing the edited manuscript to the contributors and checking it after their review to ensure that all queries have been answered
- Proofreading the final version of the volume or delegating proofreading to the contributors and then checking their corrections
- Preparing the index

Compiling a Manuscript from Previously Published Material

2.40 ***Preparing previously published material.*** Manuscripts for an anthology or other work comprising previously published material are said to have been *compiled*. If the compiler retypes or scans the original source (i.e., using character-recognition software), the resulting text should be incorporated into a manuscript that follows the formatting requirements outlined in paragraphs 2.7–22. Such manuscripts must be proofread word for word against the original material *before* the final manuscript is submitted to the publisher for editing; in addition, publishers may request copies of the originals. If the original material is submitted on paper only, make sure the material is entirely legible (publishers may prefer legible single-sided photocopies to pages from the original source). Unless there is ample space to insert corrections above the printed lines, any corrections should be written in the margins (see 2.116–29). See also 4.101.

2.41 *Permissible changes to published material.* The compiler of previously published material may make the following changes to the published material without editorial comment: notes may be renumbered; cross-references to parts of the original work that are no longer relevant may be deleted; obvious typographical errors and inadvertent grammatical slips may be silently corrected. See also 13.7–8. If wholesale changes have been made—for example, in spelling or capitalization conventions or notes style—the compiler should note such changes in a preface or elsewhere. For deletions indicated by ellipsis points, see 13.48–56.

2.42 *Footnotes or endnotes in previously published material.* Footnotes that appear as such in the original pages may be presented as footnotes or endnotes in the published version. If a compiler's or volume editor's notes are being added along with the original footnotes or endnotes, the new notes should be intermingled with but distinguished from the original notes (see 14.46); if the original material is being submitted to the publisher on paper only, it may be preferable to produce a separate electronic document for the notes.

2.43 *Source notes for previously published material.* Each selection of previously published material should be accompanied by either a headnote (a brief introduction preceding the selection) or, more commonly, an unnumbered footnote on the first page of text, giving the source (see 14.49), the name of the copyright owner if the selection is in copyright (see chapter 4, esp. 4.2–49), and the original title if it has been changed. If a selection has previously appeared in various places and different versions, the source note need not give the entire publishing history but must state which version is being reprinted.

2.44 *Reproducing previously published illustrations.* Compilers should contact their publisher about how to obtain illustrations from previously published material in a format suitable for printing. Photocopies of illustrations are not acceptable for reproduction. The compiler should procure glossy prints or the original publisher's scans. If these are unavailable, it may be possible to reproduce an illustration from the original publication; consult your publisher.

Manuscript Editing

Principles of Manuscript Editing

2.45 ***Manuscript editing as opposed to developmental editing.*** Manuscript editing, also called copyediting or line editing, requires attention to every word and mark of punctuation in a manuscript, a thorough knowledge of the style to be followed, and the ability to make quick, logical, and defensible decisions. It is undertaken by the publisher when a manuscript has been accepted for publication. It may include both mechanical editing (see 2.46) and substantive editing (see 2.47). It is distinct from developmental editing (not discussed in this manual), which more directly shapes the content of a work, the way material should be presented, the need for more or less documentation and how it should be handled, and so on. Since editing of this kind may involve total rewriting or reorganization of a work, it should be done—if needed—*before* manuscript editing begins. For more on developmental editing, consult Scott Norton's *Developmental Editing: A Handbook for Freelancers, Authors, and Publishers* (bibliog. 2.1).

2.46 ***Mechanical editing.*** Mechanical editing involves the consistent application of a particular style to a written work—including text and documentation and any tables and illustrations. The central focus of part 2 in this manual, *style* is used here to refer to rules related to capitalization, spelling, hyphenation, and abbreviations; punctuation, including ellipsis points, parentheses, and quotation marks; and the way numbers are treated. Mechanical editing also includes attention to grammar, syntax, and usage. The rules set forth in a style manual like this one may be supplemented by a publisher's house style or the style of a particular discipline. Journal editors in particular follow a journal's established style, augmented by additional resources specific to the subject area. Books in a series or multivolume works should all follow one style consistently, as should separately authored chapters in a multiauthor book. The style of any work, as well as occasional deviations from it, must be determined by author, editor, and publisher before editing begins. For substantive editing, see 2.47, 2.48. See also 2.52.

2.47 ***Substantive editing.*** Substantive editing deals with the organization and presentation of content. It involves rewriting to improve style or to eliminate ambiguity, reorganizing or tightening, recasting tables, and other remedial activities. (It should not be confused with developmental editing, a more drastic process; see 2.45.) In general, no substantive editing should be undertaken without agreement between publisher and editor, especially for book-length works; if major substantive work is needed, the author should be consulted and perhaps invited to approve a sample before the editing proceeds. A journal's manuscript editors, however, working on rigid schedules, may need to do substantive editing without prior consultation with authors if problems of organization, presentation, and verbal expression have not been addressed at earlier stages.

2.48 ***Discretion in substantive editing.*** A light editorial hand is nearly always more effective than a heavy one. An experienced editor will recognize and not tamper with unusual figures of speech or idiomatic usage and will know when to make an editorial change and when simply to suggest it, whether to delete a repetition or an unnecessary recapitulation or simply to point it out to the author, and how to suggest tactfully that an expression may be inappropriate. An author's own style should be respected, whether flamboyant or pedestrian. All manuscript editors should be aware of any requirements of house style that are essential to the publisher—for example, those covering bias-free language (see 5.221–30). For communicating with the author and querying, see 2.65–69.

2.49 ***Estimating editing time.*** Estimates for how long the job of manuscript editing should take—a figure generally determined by the publisher and agreed to by the manuscript editor—usually start with the length of the manuscript. Because of inevitable variations in typefaces and margins and other formatting characteristics from one manuscript to another, the length is best determined by a word count rather than a page count (though a word count can be derived from a page count for paper-only manuscripts). A 100,000-word book manuscript, edited by an experienced editor, might take seventy-five to one hundred hours of work before being sent to the author, plus ten to twenty additional hours after the author's review. This rough estimate may need to be adjusted to take into account any complexities in the text or documentation, the presence and characteristics of any tables and illustrations, and the degree of electronic formatting and markup that an editor will need to remove or impose (see 2.77). If in doubt, edit a small sample to serve as the basis of an estimate. An additional factor is of course the publication schedule, which will determine how many days are available for the editing stage. Also pertinent is information about the author's availability to review the edited manuscript, amenability to being edited, propensity to revise, and so forth.

2.50 ***Stages of editing.*** Editors usually go through a manuscript three times—once to do the initial editing, easily the longest stage; a second time to review, refine, and sometimes correct the editing; and a third time after the author's review (see 2.69). Editors working on electronic manuscripts may also be required to perform an initial, systematic cleanup (see 2.77)—though a publisher's manuscript editing or production department may perform such a cleanup before turning a manuscript over to an editor. Careful editors begin the initial editing stage—sometimes in conjunction with the electronic cleanup—by looking through the entire document to assess the nature and scope of the work that will be required, to identify any matters that should be clarified with the author before editing begins, and to reduce the number of surprises that could cause delays if discovered later in the process. Some edit each element in a work (text, notes, tables, bibliography, etc.) separately to help attain consistency; others edit the apparatus, or a part of it, along with the text. Whatever the procedure, all elements must be compared to ensure that the notes match their text references and correspond in turn to the entries in the bibliography or reference list, the tables correspond to any discussion of them in the text, and so on.

2.51 ***Choosing a dictionary and other reference works.*** A good dictionary is essential. Chicago recommends *Webster's Third New International Dictionary* and the latest edition of its chief abridgment, *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*; both are available in print and online (see bibliog. 3.1). Editors also need reference works that furnish reliable spellings and identifications of persons, places, historical events, technical terminology, and the like. If a system of documentation other than Chicago is to be used, the applicable style manual should be at hand (see bibliog. 1.1). For some basic reference works, see section 4 of the bibliography. For a complete discussion of names and terms, see chapter 8.

2.52 ***Keeping a style sheet.*** To ensure consistency, for each manuscript the editor must keep an alphabetical list of words or terms to be capitalized, italicized, hyphenated, spelled, or otherwise treated in any way unique to the manuscript. Changes that are made simply for consistency with house style need not be noted on the style sheet. It is enough to note, for example, "In all other respects, Chicago style is followed." (For paper-only manuscripts it is useful to add the page number of the first occurrence of each item.) Special punctuation, unusual diacritics, and other items should also be noted on the style sheet. Not only the author but also the publisher may need to refer to the style sheet at various stages of editing and production. See figure 2.3.

2.53 ***Fact-checking.*** In book publishing, the author is finally responsible for the accuracy of a work; most book publishers do not perform fact-checking in any systematic way or expect it of their manuscript editors unless spe-

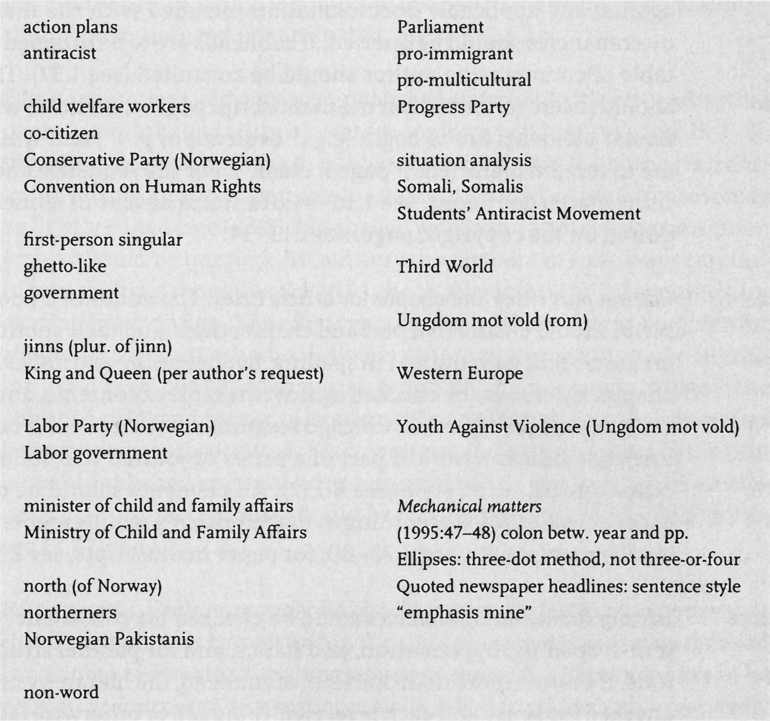

action plans
antiracist

child welfare workers
co-citizen
Conservative Party (Norwegian)
Convention on Human Rights

first-person singular
ghetto-like
government

jinns (plur. of jinn)
King and Queen (per author's request)

Labor Party (Norwegian)
Labor government

minister of child and family affairs
Ministry of Child and Family Affairs

north (of Norway)
northerners
Norwegian Pakistanis

non-word

Parliament
pro-immigrant
pro-multicultural
Progress Party

situation analysis
Somali, Somalis
Students' Antiracist Movement

Third World

Ungdom mot vold (rom)

Western Europe

Youth Against Violence (Ungdom mot vold)

Mechanical matters
(1995:47–48) colon betw. year and pp.
Ellipses: three-dot method, not three-or-four
Quoted newspaper headlines: sentence style
"emphasis mine"

FIGURE 2.3. Manuscript editor's style sheet. When prepared for a pencil-edited manuscript, the style sheet usually indicates the page number for the first appearance of each item.

cifically agreed upon up front. Nonetheless, obvious errors, including errors in mathematical calculations, should always be pointed out to the author, and questionable proper names, bibliographic references, and the like should be checked and any apparent irregularities queried. Editors need to be systematic about what they fact-check to avoid being distracted from the work at hand. It will sometimes be efficient to point out and correct obvious errors of fact that can be easily double-checked against reliable sources. For anything beyond that, however, fact-checking should be limited to what is needed to form an effective and judicious query to the author (see 2.66).

Editing Specific Parts of a Manuscript

2.54 ***Editing front matter.*** An editor should check any half title, title page, table of contents, and list of illustrations against the text and captions and against any applicable documentation included with the manuscript; discrepancies should be queried. If subheads are to be dropped from the table of contents, the author should be consulted (see 1.37). The editor should insert comments on the manuscript pages to indicate where particular elements are to begin (e.g., "dedication, p. v") and which pages are to remain blank (e.g., "page ii blank"). For the sequence and form of front matter for books, see 1.16–44; for items always or sometimes required on the copyright page, see 1.19–34.

2.55 ***Editing part titles and chapter or article titles.*** The editor of a book manuscript should ensure that part and chapter titles, and their subtitles if any, are consistent with the text in spelling, hyphenation, and italics. Part and chapter titles must be checked against the table of contents, and any discrepancy must be queried. Chicago recommends that all titles be in headline style unless a work is part of a series or journal that follows some other capitalization style (see 8.157). All elements should be tagged or otherwise identified according to the publisher's requirements (for electronic manuscripts, see 2.78–80; for paper manuscripts, see 2.96).

2.56 ***Editing subheads.*** Subheads should be checked for consistency with the text in spelling, hyphenation, and italics, and for parallel structure and tone. If there is more than one level of subhead, the hierarchy needs to be checked for sense and each level clearly tagged or otherwise labeled (for electronic manuscripts, see 2.78–80; for paper manuscripts, see 2.96). If there are more than three levels of subhead, determine whether the lowest level can be eliminated. For electronic manuscripts, it may be wise to tag the different subhead levels based on the author's typographic distinctions at the outset, lest these distinctions be eliminated by any cleanup routine (see 2.77). If subheads are to appear in the table of contents, they must be cross-checked for consistency. Chicago recommends that all subheads be in headline style unless a work is part of a series or journal that follows some other capitalization style (see 8.157). But if an author has consistently used sentence style for subheads (see 8.156), that style should not be altered without consultation with the author and publisher, since it may be more appropriate in a particular work. Where subheads consist of full sentences, sentence-style capitalization is preferable.

2.57 ***Editing cross-references.*** All references to tables, figures, appendixes, bibliographies, or other parts of a work should be checked by the manuscript editor. If the author, for example, mentions a statistic for 2008 and refers readers to table 4, which gives statistics only through 2007, the editor must point out the discrepancy. Place-names on a map that illustrate the text must be spelled as in the text. Cross-references to specific pages—

the numbering of which is subject to change in the published version—should be minimized or eliminated. See also 2.32.

2.58 ***Editing quotations and previously published material.*** Aside from adjusting quotation marks and ellipsis points to conform to house style (see 13.7–8), the editor must do nothing to quoted material unless the author is translating it from another language (or modernizing it), in which case it may be lightly edited (see 13.78). Misspelled words and apparent transcription errors should be queried. An author who appears to have been careless in transcribing should be asked to check all quotations for accuracy, including punctuation. The editor should ensure that sources are given for all quoted material, whether following the quotation or in a note. In editing previously published material, especially if it has been abridged, the editor should read for sense to ensure that nothing is out of order or has been inadvertently omitted. Discrepancies should be queried. If the previously published material has been provided on paper only, any ambiguous end-of-line hyphens should be clarified (see 2.93). For field notes, see 13.47. See also 2.40.

2.59 ***Editing notes.*** Each note must be checked against the text to ensure that its text reference is correct and in the right place and that any terms used in the note are treated the same way as in the text. When notes are to be printed as footnotes, the author may be asked to shorten an excessively long note or to incorporate some of the note into the text. Lists, tables, and figures should be placed not in footnotes but in the text or in an appendix. Manuscript editors may sometimes request an additional note to accommodate a needed source or citation. More frequently, in consultation with the author, they will combine notes or delete unneeded ones. See 14.51–55. An editor working on paper must take special care in renumbering notes. Editors working on-screen may need to make sure that citations in the notes are free of any underlying codes generated by the author in creating or organizing them (see 14.13).

2.60 ***Editing note citations, bibliographies, and reference lists.*** Citations in notes, bibliographies, and reference lists must be carefully checked for documentation style (chapters 14 and 15; but see 2.61). Further, every subsequent reference to a work previously cited in the text or in a note must be given in the same form as the first reference or in the same shortened form (see 14.24–31). In a work containing a bibliography as well as notes, each citation in the notes should be checked against the bibliography and any discrepancy resolved or, if necessary, queried in both contexts so that the author can easily compare them (see 2.66). A bibliography need not include every work cited in the notes and may properly include some entries that are not cited. If a reference list is used, the editor will have checked all text citations against the list while editing the text and will have queried or resolved discrepancies. Bibliographies and reference lists should be checked for alphabetical order and, where applicable, for chronological order. For bibliographies, see 14.56–67; for reference lists and text citations, see 15.10–30. Many editors find it helpful to edit the bibliography or reference list before the text and notes. Editors working on-screen may need to make sure that the source citations and related text are free of any underlying codes generated by the author in creating or organizing them (see 14.13).

2.61 *Flexibility in citation style.* Imposing house style on notes prepared in another style can be immensely time-consuming and, if the existing form is consistent and clear to the reader, is often unnecessary. This is especially true of books, many of which are intended to stand alone. Before making sweeping changes, the manuscript editor should consult with the author or the publisher or both. In journal editing, on the other hand, such flexibility is generally not acceptable. This has become more true in the era of electronic publication; because citations may be linked to an outside database, absolute consistency of format is essential.

2.62 *Editing tables.* Tables are usually best edited together, as a group, to ensure consistent style and presentation. Tables should also be checked for consistent numbering and correspondence with the text—including text references and placement callouts (see 2.27). For specific guidelines on editing tables, see 3.79–85.

2.63 *Checking illustrations and their placement and editing captions.* Wording on a diagram or chart should conform to the spelling and capitalization used in the caption or the text. (If the wording on the illustration cannot be changed, it is sometimes acceptable to adjust the spelling in the caption or text.) Captions must conform to the style of the text. Source information should be edited in consultation with the publisher and in conformance with any letters of permission. (If permissions are outstanding, the publisher, not the editor, should take up the matter with the author.) Illustrations may be added, dropped, or renumbered during editing; therefore, it is essential to make a final check of all illustrations against their text references and callouts and against the captions and list of illustrations to be sure that they match and that the illustrations show what they say they do. For details on preparing illustrations and captions, see 3.33–45. For checking credits, see 3.28–36.

2.64 ***Editing indexes.*** The schedule for editing an index—which, if it depends on page number locators rather than paragraph numbers, is almost never prepared before book or journal pages have been composed—must usually correspond to the schedule for reviewing corrections to proofs. For a more detailed discussion, including an index-editing checklist, see 16.132–34.

Communicating with Authors

2.65 ***Establishing early contact with authors.*** Editors of book-length works are urged to contact their authors early on, after an initial review of the manuscript. This is especially important if an editor has questions or plans to make significant changes that, in the event the author proves not to be amenable, might take time and effort to undo. Likewise, to expedite production, a journal's manuscript editors may notify authors of systematic changes early in the game. Most authors are content to submit to a house style; those who are not may be willing to compromise. Unless usage is determined by journal or series style, the author's wishes should generally be respected. For a manuscript that requires extensive changes, it may be wise, if the schedule allows, to send a sample of the editing for the author's approval before proceeding (see 2.47).

2.66 ***Writing author comments and queries.*** Editors may generally impose a consistent style and correct errors without further comment—assuming these changes are apparent on the edited manuscript. Corrections to less obvious problems may warrant a comment. Comments should be concise, and they should avoid sounding casual, pedantic, condescending, or indignant; often, a simple "OK?" is enough. Comments that are not answerable by a yes or a no may be more specific: "Do you mean X or Y?" Examples of instances in which an editor might comment or query include the following:

- To note, on an electronic manuscript, that a particular global change has been corrected silently after the first instance
- To point out a discrepancy, as between two spellings in a name, or between a source cited differently in the notes than in the bibliography
- To point out an apparent omission, such as a missing quotation mark or a missing source citation
- To point out a possible error in a quotation
- To point out repetition (e.g., "Repetition intentional?" or "Rephrased to avoid repetition; OK?")

- To ask for verification, as of a name or term whose spelling cannot be easily verified
- To ask for clarification where the text is ambiguous or garbled
- To point to the sources an editor has consulted in correcting errors of fact (but see 2.53)

For the mechanics of entering queries on a manuscript, see 2.83 (for electronic manuscripts) and 2.89 (for paper manuscripts).

2.67 *Writing a cover letter to the author.* The letter sent to the author with the edited manuscript, or sometimes separately, should include some or all of the following items (unless already communicated):

- An explanation of the nature and scope of the editing—for example, adjustment of spelling and punctuation to conform to house style, occasional rephrasing for clarity or to eliminate inadvertent repetition, and so forth
- If the editing has been shown, an indication of how this has been done—that is, with change-tracking (redlining) software (see 2.81) or with pencil and paper—and brief instructions for interpreting the marks
- Instructions as to how the author should respond to queries, veto any unwanted editing, and make any further adjustments to the edited manuscript (see 2.84, 2.88)
- A warning that the author's review of the edited manuscript constitutes the last opportunity to make any substantive changes, additions, or deletions and that quoted matter and citations should be checked if necessary
- A reminder to review the editing carefully, since even editors are fallible, and the correction of any errors missed in editing and not caught until proofs may be deemed "author's alterations" and charged to the author (see 2.132)
- A reminder to retain a copy of the reviewed and corrected manuscript (to refer to at the proofreading stage)
- The deadline for return of the edited copy
- A brief discussion about the index, if any—whether the author is to prepare it, whether instructions are needed (see chapter 16), or whether a freelance indexer is to be engaged at the author's expense
- A request for confirmation of the author's contact information for the rest of the publishing process

2.68 *Sending the edited manuscript to the author.* An electronically edited book manuscript—because of its length and, often, its complexity—may be sent to the author as hard copy (or, alternatively, as a PDF that the author is asked to print out). The author reads and marks this printout as necessary, then returns it to the editor, who incorporates the author's marks into the electronic manuscript. The author may instead review the electronic manuscript (using the same software that the editor has used)—a procedure that saves printing and shipping costs. An editor working with an author in this manner needs to have procedures in place for making sure the author does not make any undocumented changes—inadvertently or otherwise. A pencil-edited manuscript should be photocopied before being sent to the author; likewise, authors are advised to photocopy paper manuscripts with their handwritten comments before sending them back to the editor. Any manuscript that has been pencil edited—as well as electronically edited printouts that have been marked up by hand—is one of a kind; if lost, the work must be done over.

2.69 *Checking the author's final changes.* When the manuscript comes back from the author, the editor goes through it once again to see what the author has done, checking that all queries have been answered and editing any new material. Except for style adjustments, the author's version should prevail; if that version is unacceptable for any reason, a compromise should be sought. As a part of this process, the editor updates the electronic files or, if a manuscript is to be updated or typeset from a pencil-edited paper copy, clarifies or retypes the new material and crosses out the queries.

Preparing a Final Manuscript for Production

2.70 *Ensuring correct markup.* From the standpoint of production, a manuscript consists of two levels of information: content and structure. The content generally includes all the text and any figures that are to appear in the published book or article. The structure describes the manuscript's component parts—such as heads and subheads, text, extracts, footnote reference numbers and footnotes, illustrations and tables, and so forth. These parts are identified on the manuscript by electronic or handwritten codes or instructions (for electronic manuscripts, see 2.78–80; for paper manuscripts, see 2.96). When a manuscript is typeset—that is, when book or article pages or full-text HTML is produced from the manuscript—each identified element is formatted or displayed according to specifications in a design template (which are often encoded into an electronic style sheet). The design specifies the typeface, type size, color, and line spacing for each element in the text and any tables, as well as sizing and placement parameters for figures. Final manuscripts must therefore be reviewed to make sure markup has been consistently and correctly applied and that it corresponds to the elements in the design template. For a fuller discussion of markup and design, see appendix A.

2.71 ***Type specifications and hand markup.*** In the rare event that no designer's layout or list of specifications is available, an editor may need to mark up the hard copy with appropriate type specifications at the first occurrence of the element they apply to. For example, in the margin next to the first block of regular text, "text: 10/12 Times Roman × 26" (meaning 10-point type with 12-point leading, each line 26 picas wide); and next to the first extract, "extract: 9/11 Times Roman; indent 2 pi from left." As long as all extracts have been coded "ext," all first-level subheads "A," and so forth, markup can be kept to a minimum. For more on hand markup, see 2.87–96.

2.72 ***Ensuring correct pagination.*** Editors should indicate on the manuscript where roman page numbers end and arabic numbers begin—whether or not the number will actually appear (i.e., whether the folio is to be "expressed" or "blind"; see 1.45). Furthermore, if there is a part title and the first chapter begins on page 3, "arabic p. 3" should be specified at the chapter opening. The editor should also specify whether subsequent elements are to begin on a recto or on a verso (see 1.4). Repagination of typeset, printed books is expensive; the editor should check that all elements—in the front matter, the text, and the back matter—are in their correct order and that the order is reflected in the table of contents. For journals, see 1.76.

2.73 ***Preparing running heads.*** The editor usually provides a list of copy for running heads (or feet) (see 1.9–15). The list must clearly indicate which heads are to appear on versos (left-hand pages) and which on rectos (right-hand pages). To fit on a single line, usually containing the page number as well, a chapter or article title may have to be shortened for a running head but must include the key terms in the title. (In some cases, the keywords will be in the chapter subtitle.) The author's approval may be needed; if possible, the editor should send the running-head copy to the author along with the edited manuscript. In shortened foreign-language titles, no word may be omitted that governs the case ending of another word in the running head. Running-head copy normally accompanies the manuscript to the typesetter and should be included with the other electronic files. If the running heads are to reflect the content of particular pages (rather than chapters or sections), the exact copy must be determined after (or as) the pages are typeset. For example, running heads to notes that include page ranges can be determined only from the typeset pages (see 1.14). These are typically indicated by the publisher on the first proofreading copy.

2.74 ***A production checklist.*** Manuscripts that are ready to be typeset are usually accompanied by a checklist of vital statistics that includes information about the project and how it is to be produced. Such a checklist, especially necessary for one-of-a-kind book-length works, might consist of the following information:

- Name of author(s) and title of work
- A list of component parts of the project: electronic files, printout, illustrations, and so forth
- An indication of the software used to prepare the final manuscript and a list of file names
- An indication of how the electronic files have been coded for typesetting, a list of codes, and any special instructions, including a list of any special characters or fonts
- A list of any material that is still to come
- An indication of how notes are to be set—for example, as footnotes or chapter endnotes or endnotes to the book
- A list of elements to be included in the front matter, the text, and the end matter, and an indication of which elements must start recto (see 1.4)
- For book-length manuscripts, an indication of how many paper sets of proofs should be produced, if any

The Mechanics of Electronic Editing

2.75 ***Making backup copies.*** It is best to back up a manuscript in stages by saving separate copies of each significant version. The author's original, unedited copy should be archived (i.e., saved without further changes), as should every significant stage of the editing process. Some editors make daily backups and weekly sequential backups—so that an earlier stage of the editing can be consulted if necessary. Each major stage should be saved with a different name (e.g., by appending A, B, C, etc., or something more descriptive, to the file names) and in a different directory (or folder), and care should be taken to avoid saving over—or inadvertently working on—an earlier version of a file. During editing, open documents should be saved frequently. Finally, it may be wise, as an extra precaution, to send backup copies to an offsite server.

2.76 ***Preparing to make a clean, unedited copy.*** Some publishers provide manuscript editors with a cleaned-up version of the author's electronic file(s)—converted (if necessary), formatted (including, in some cases, electronic markup), and ready to edit, usually in a specific word-processing program or specialized text-editing environment. (Publishers may instead give editors hard copy only, updating the electronic files from the pencil-edited copy as part of the production process; for paper editing, see 2.87–96.) Many editors, however, are required to clean up and format the author's electronic files themselves. All editors working on electronic files should have more than a passing familiarity with the software they are required to use. Even standard, "out of the box" word-processing programs have become powerful text editors; at the very least, it is important to learn about macros (short for *macroinstructions*) and to become thoroughly versed in search-and-replace options (including the use of pattern matching or "wildcards"), which, used properly and with care, can save many steps. A good place to begin is with a software's "help" documentation. More advanced users will customize their software—sometimes with the help of sets of macros written especially for editors by third-party companies.

2.77 *Cleaning up electronic files.* Before editing the manuscript, the editor must be certain that the files represent the author's latest version (the presence of embedded revision marks may be a sign that this is not the case; see 2.36). The next step is to get the electronic files ready to edit—if the publisher has not done this already. The following checklist suggests a set of steps that can be adapted as necessary to become part of an editor's detailed electronic manuscript cleanup routine. Not all manuscripts will require each step, and the suggested order need not be adhered to. Moreover, though many editors will want to automate at least some of these steps and perform them up front, most of the checklist can also be accomplished manually—that is, considered case by case, as part of the first read-through (see 2.50). Indeed, some of these steps will not lend themselves to wholesale transformation without first weighing the exceptions. (The value of performing this checklist up front is that any exceptions not considered can be fixed later, in the first read-through. Nonetheless, beware of unintended consequences, and always review—and be prepared to undo—any global change before saving a permanent version of a file.) Finally, this checklist should be modified as needed to accord not only with the requirements of a specific manuscript but also with those of the publisher. In general, automatic redlining should be turned *off* during these steps (see 2.81).

1. Convert files for use in the editing software required by the publisher, if necessary.
2. If necessary, change the language settings of the manuscript and any subdocuments (e.g., from British English to American English, or vice versa). This will ensure, among other things, that the main dictionary gives appropriate suggestions.
3. For book-length works, which may arrive as a directory (or folder) of separate

files for each chapter and other components, assembling the text into a single electronic file can save a significant amount of time. (Care must be taken to produce a complete manuscript, in the proper order and with no inadvertent deletions; always double-check the beginning and ending of each component and any notes thereto both when combining multiple files and when breaking a single file into smaller components.) Another option is to use macros that work across multiple files in a single directory.

4. Scroll through the whole manuscript (with the editing software set to display formatting and any markup—including marks for such "invisible" elements as spaces and hard returns), looking for and fixing any obvious conversion errors (e.g., with special characters) and formatting problems (e.g., hard returns in the middle of a paragraph), with reference to the original manuscript as necessary.
5. Identify any graphic elements and tables and handle appropriately—for example, moving figures or tables to separate files (see 2.23, 2.27).
6. Apply tags or other codes, as required, to any elements that are easy to identify at the outset (such as chapter titles, subheads, epigraphs, text extracts, poetry and stanza breaks, intentional instances of extra line space that may require an ornament or other device, etc.) but whose visual cues may be lost as the text is formatted. See also 2.78–80.
7. Delete or fix extraneous spaces and tabs, including instances of two or more consecutive spaces (between sentences or anywhere else) or spaces or tabs at the ends of paragraphs. Multiple spaces used to create first-line paragraph and other indents should be replaced either with tabs or with software-defined indents (be consistent).
8. Change instances of multiple hard returns to single hard returns.
9. Change underlining to italics. Some underlining, however, may be intended to represent true underscore—in, for example, a collection that transcribes handwritten letters; this should be preserved, with a note to the publisher explaining the exception. See also 6.2.
10. Fix quotation marks and apostrophes; make sure that apostrophes at the beginning of words are correct (e.g., ’em *not* ‘em for "them"). But first determine, as applicable, that left and right single quotation marks have not been used by the author to stand in for breathing marks or other orthographic devices in transliterated languages (see chapter 11). See also 6.112, 6.114.
11. Fix commas and periods relative to quotation marks (see table 6.1).
12. Regularize em dashes and ellipses. For proper use of em dashes, see 6.82–89. For ellipses, see 13.48–56.
13. Replace hyphens between numerals with en dashes as appropriate. If you are using a macro to do this, it may be more efficient to let the macro run and to fix or add any exceptions during the first editing pass. For proper use of en dashes, see 6.78–81.
14. Convert footnotes to endnotes, or vice versa.

15. Delete any optional or conditional hyphens (i.e., software-dependent hyphens that allow words to break across the end of a line whether or not the hyphenation feature is turned on). Most word processors will allow you to search for these.
16. Find any lowercase els used as ones and any ohs (capital or lowercase) used as zeros—or vice versa—and fix. This can be done by using pattern matching to search for two-character combinations containing either an el or an oh next to an expression that will find any numeral.
17. Fix any other global inconsistencies that might be amenable to pattern-matching strategies. For example, in a bibliography in which two- or three-letter initials in names have been closed up, you can search for and evaluate capital letter combinations and replace as necessary with the same combination plus a space (e.g., changing E.B. White to E. B. White).
18. Adjust line spacing, font, and margins as desired.

As a final step—assuming these steps have been applied before editing—save a backup copy of the resulting clean, unedited manuscript.

2.78 ***Generic markup for electronic manuscripts.*** Each element of a manuscript—chapter display, subheads, text, prose extracts, poetry, notes, captions, and so forth—must be identified using consistent markup. A common way of doing this is with generic codes modeled on the descriptive identifiers used on pencil-edited manuscripts (see 2.96). Generic codes should be enclosed in angle brackets (< >), curly brackets ({ }), or some other delimiters such that they can be systematically identified and replaced for publication by formal typesetting codes. (This generic application of delimiters must not be mistaken for the tags used in formal markup languages such as XML.) Except for codes meant to be replaced with a character or string of characters, they are usually applied at the beginning and end of each element to which they apply. Publishers differ not only in what codes they recommend but also in what elements they code. Some require that every element be coded, including body text; others regard body text as a default. Most do not require codes for character-level formatting (e.g., italics, small capitals, boldface) because a word-processing software's built-in formatting codes can be manipulated as necessary. Editors may need to invent codes for unusual elements. Consistency and accuracy are crucial. Moreover, editors must supply a complete list of codes with the manuscript. Some sample codes are as follows:

<cn> . . . </cn>	chapter number
<ct> . . . </ct>	chapter title
<a> . . . 	first-level subhead (A-head)
 . . . 	second-level subhead (B-head)

<ext> . . . </ext>	block quotation (prose extract)
<po> . . . </po>	poetry extract
<note-a> . . . </note-a>	first-level subhead in endnotes section
<tdotb>	t with dot below (i.e., when the Unicode character for ṭ is not available in the font being used to prepare the manuscript; see 11.2)
<! . . . !>	instruction to the typesetter—for example, to consult hard copy or page image for proper alignment or other formatting

The end tags—those that include a forward slash (/) and that indicate the end of a coded element—may be unnecessary for elements that consist of an entire paragraph. Consult the publisher's or typesetter's requirements. (For using a word processor's built-in styles, see 2.79; for formal markup languages such as XML, see 2.80.)

2.79 ***Software-generated styles.*** Many word-processing programs allow users to apply named styles to the elements in a manuscript instead of, or in addition to, generic codes. Each style carries a unique name (included with the software or defined by the user) and is applied either at the paragraph level or at the character level, usually from a menu. (A "paragraph" is any string of text that follows a hard return and ends with a hard return.) Each paragraph style should have a descriptive name (e.g., "Chapter number," "Chapter title," "First-level subhead," "Second-level subhead," "Body text," "Extract"). On the other hand, it is usually unnecessary to define styles at the character level: a word processor's built-in formatting options for italics, boldface, and so forth can be used instead. Type size, line spacing, and other formatting options can be defined for each paragraph style as desired; it is helpful to be able to distinguish visually, for example, between different levels of subheads. On the other hand, accuracy and consistency in applying styles is more important than any formatting because the styles will eventually be mapped to a design template for the published work. If there are any text elements that do not lend themselves easily to styles, it may be necessary to combine styles and generic codes with instructions or messages to the typesetter. A list of styles and any generic codes should always accompany the manuscript.

2.80 ***Formal markup languages.*** Some manuscripts, especially those that will be published in electronic as well as printed form, may be written or edited in or converted to a formal markup language such as XML (extensible markup language). In this type of markup, each element, including the document as a whole, is identified by a pair of opening and closing tags according to the rules of the particular markup language. Tags are "nested"; for example, the body of the document, enclosed between an opening and a closing "body" tag, will include all sections and subsections of the document, with each of those parts also enclosed between an opening and a closing tag that identify the element and its place in the hierarchy. The names of larger elements are typically used to indicate what the elements are rather than how they are to be presented; this practice streamlines subsequent presentation of the document in various forms. Smaller portions of text may be marked according to how they are to be presented (e.g., in italic type), though it is often better to mark such text instead according to the intent of the presentation (e.g., emphasis). If editing takes place after conversion to a formal markup language, the editor can help to ensure that the tags have been applied correctly, usually with the help of tools designed to identify certain types of errors. For an extended discussion of formal markup languages, including XML, see appendix A.

2.81 ***Tracking and showing changes (redlining).*** To show their work and thus facilitate the author's review, many editors use the change-tracking feature available in some word processors and in some more specialized text-editing environments to produce what is sometimes referred to as a redlined version (a name that invokes, in another medium, the editor's red pencil). Depending on the software and a user's or publisher's preferences, material that has been changed—added, deleted, moved, reformatted—may appear in a variety of ways (see fig. 2.4). Added material, for example, may appear in red, underlined or double-underlined, shaded, or boldface—or some consistent combination thereof. Deleted material may appear in a different color and be struck through, singly or doubly. (Care must be taken, however, that all editing marks remain legible on a black-and-white printout.) The editor may use a word processor's commenting function to make queries to the author (see 2.83). Whether all the editing, mechanical as well as substantive, is shown depends on a number of factors, including the editor's and publisher's preferences. Some editors, for example, will prefer to alert the author to global changes (such as capitalization of a certain term) the first time each such change is made and to show only changes the author must approve individually. Certain adjustments should almost never be shown—for example, changes to margins or global changes to directional or "smart" quotation marks. In general, most of the things listed on the cleanup checklist (see 2.77) may be done silently. If an element such as a bibliography has been heavily edited, the editor may send a clean version of that element for the author to approve, as well as a version showing the edits for reference. If changes are not shown, the editor must let the author know what has been done to the manuscript (see 2.67).

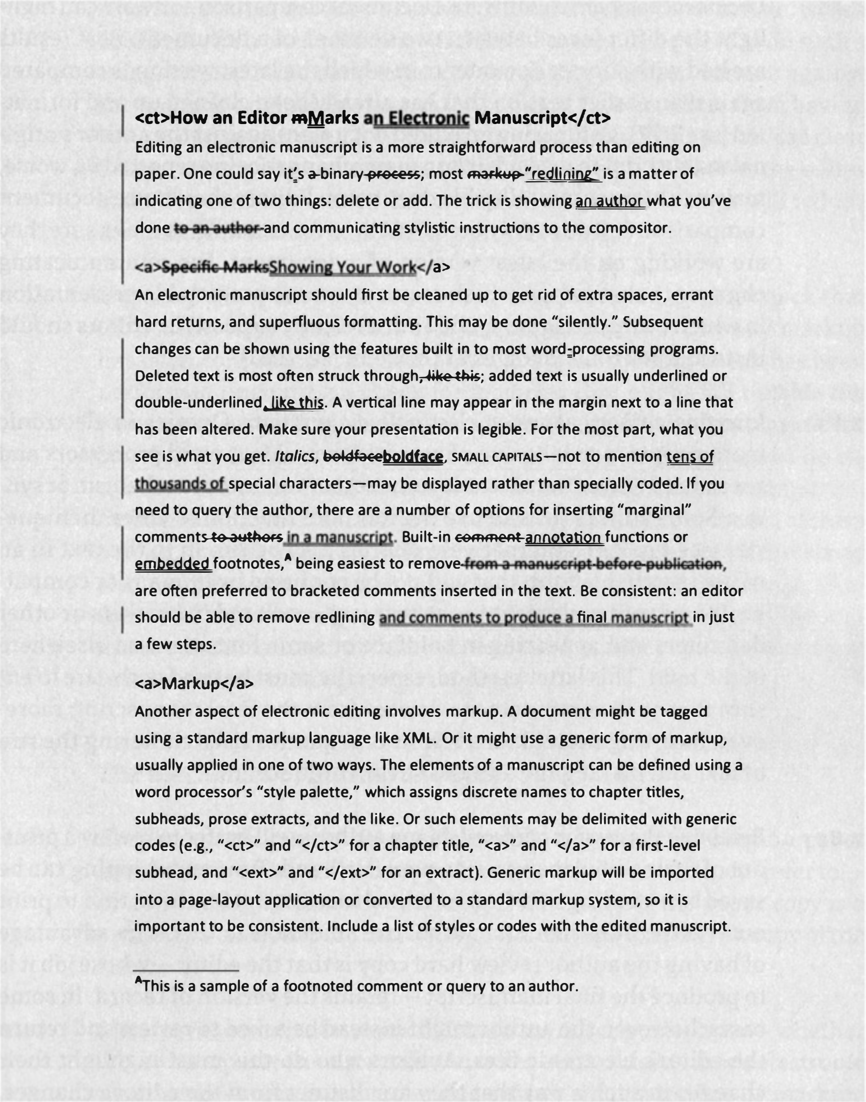

<ct>How an Editor ~~m~~Marks an Electronic Manuscript</ct>

Editing an electronic manuscript is a more straightforward process than editing on paper. One could say it's ~~a~~ binary ~~process~~; most ~~markup~~ "redlining" is a matter of indicating one of two things: delete or add. The trick is showing an author what you've done ~~to an author~~ and communicating stylistic instructions to the compositor.

<a>~~Specific Marks~~Showing Your Work

An electronic manuscript should first be cleaned up to get rid of extra spaces, errant hard returns, and superfluous formatting. This may be done "silently." Subsequent changes can be shown using the features built in to most word-processing programs. Deleted text is most often struck through~~, like this~~; added text is usually underlined or double-underlined, like this. A vertical line may appear in the margin next to a line that has been altered. Make sure your presentation is legible. For the most part, what you see is what you get. *Italics*, ~~boldface~~**boldface**, SMALL CAPITALS—not to mention tens of thousands of special characters—may be displayed rather than specially coded. If you need to query the author, there are a number of options for inserting "marginal" comments ~~to authors~~ in a manuscript. Built-in ~~comment~~ annotation functions or embedded footnotes,[A] being easiest to remove ~~from a manuscript before publication~~, are often preferred to bracketed comments inserted in the text. Be consistent: an editor should be able to remove redlining and comments to produce a final manuscript in just a few steps.

<a>Markup

Another aspect of electronic editing involves markup. A document might be tagged using a standard markup language like XML. Or it might use a generic form of markup, usually applied in one of two ways. The elements of a manuscript can be defined using a word processor's "style palette," which assigns discrete names to chapter titles, subheads, prose extracts, and the like. Or such elements may be delimited with generic codes (e.g., "<ct>" and "</ct>" for a chapter title, "<a>" and "" for a first-level subhead, and "<ext>" and "</ext>" for an extract). Generic markup will be imported into a page-layout application or converted to a standard markup system, so it is important to be consistent. Include a list of styles or codes with the edited manuscript.

[A] This is a sample of a footnoted comment or query to an author.

FIGURE 2.4. A manuscript page illustrating the principles of on-screen revision marks (redlining) and author queries. See 2.81.

2.82 *Document comparison software.* Document comparison software can highlight the differences between two versions of a document. Best results are had with shorter documents in which the latest version is compared against an earlier version that has already been cleaned up and formatted (see 2.77). Comparing an edited document against the author's original manuscript may result in too many changes being reported or, worse, may result in an unintelligible document. Editors should use document comparison software only occasionally—for example, to make sure they are working on the latest version of a document. For communicating changes to the author, which requires a more predictable presentation in which every change is spelled out as clearly as possible, editors should instead track their changes as they edit (see 2.81).

2.83 *Inserting author queries on electronic manuscripts.* Queries in electronic manuscripts may take one of several forms. Most word processors and specialized text editors include some sort of comment mechanism or syntax. Some editors instead use the footnote function to enter their queries (see fig. 2.4). Alternatively, queries may be run in to the text in an easily searchable form that will not be confused by humans or computers for any other element in the text (e.g., enclosed in brackets or other delimiters and appearing in boldface or some font not used elsewhere in the text). This latter method, especially, must be used with care to ensure that such comments are deleted from the final manuscript; moreover, inserting more than a few in-text queries risks cluttering the run of text and making the author's review arduous.

2.84 *Retaining the version of record.* Many authors will prefer to review a printout of their edited manuscript, pencil in hand. Time and shipping can be saved by e-mailing a PDF of the edited manuscript for the author to print out—if the publisher and author are amenable to this. One advantage of having the author review hard copy is that the editor—whose job it is to produce the final manuscript—retains the version of record. In some cases, however, the author might instead be asked to review and return the editor's electronic files. Authors who do this must highlight their changes in such a way that they are distinct from the editor's changes, and editors will want to consider password-protecting the edited manuscript from silent alteration. See also 2.68.

2.85 *The author's review of the edited manuscript.* Authors should mark their changes (or, if necessary, stets; see 2.127) in a bright color, fully legible, in upper- and lowercase. If the author adds more than a sentence or two, the new material may be furnished either as a printout or in electronic form with a hard copy, but the printout or file must contain only the new material; it must never be a revised form of the chapter or article, which could require a total reediting. (If a recalcitrant author were to do such a thing, an electronic comparison of the author's revised version against the author's original final manuscript might save an editor from having to do a total reedit; see 2.82.) The editor should make this procedure clear to the author when sending the edited manuscript. Moreover, the editor should remind the author that a careful review at this stage will reduce the number of errors later, during proofreading.

2.86 ***Preparing a final electronic manuscript.*** Editors should double-check that all changes have been made and all queries resolved; that any markup has been consistently applied; and that a final spelling check has been performed (including a check for mistakes that might fall outside the purview of a spelling checker—e.g., *it's* for *its*, *led* for *lead*, *breath* for *breathe*). In addition, all changes tracked in the document must be resolved—either accepted or rejected—in the final electronic manuscript. Before sending the final manuscript to be typeset, editors should archive at least one electronic copy. For proofreading purposes, publishers may also require a printout matching the final electronic manuscript. (Authors will sometimes be asked to proofread against the copy of the redlined, edited manuscript that they reviewed earlier to ensure that their revisions made it into the typeset copy.)

The Mechanics of Editing on Paper

2.87 ***Keeping a clean copy of paper manuscripts.*** An editor working on paper should always keep a clean copy of the unedited manuscript to refer to—or as a backup in case any reediting is necessary. If the paper copy is a printout of an electronic manuscript, it is enough to archive a copy of the latter.

2.88 ***Marking manuscripts on paper.*** Editing a manuscript on paper—whether it is to be typeset from scratch or used to update the author's electronic manuscript—requires a technique that is similar to that of marking corrections on proofs (see 2.116–29). To allow for the more extensive changes typical of the editing stage, however, paper manuscripts are usually double-spaced so that editing can appear above the word or words it pertains to, rather than in the margin. (Manuscripts that consist of photocopies of tightly spaced previously published material are edited in the manner of page proofs.) All editorial changes should be made in a color that will reproduce clearly if the edited manuscript is photocopied or faxed, and the author should be asked to respond to the editing in a

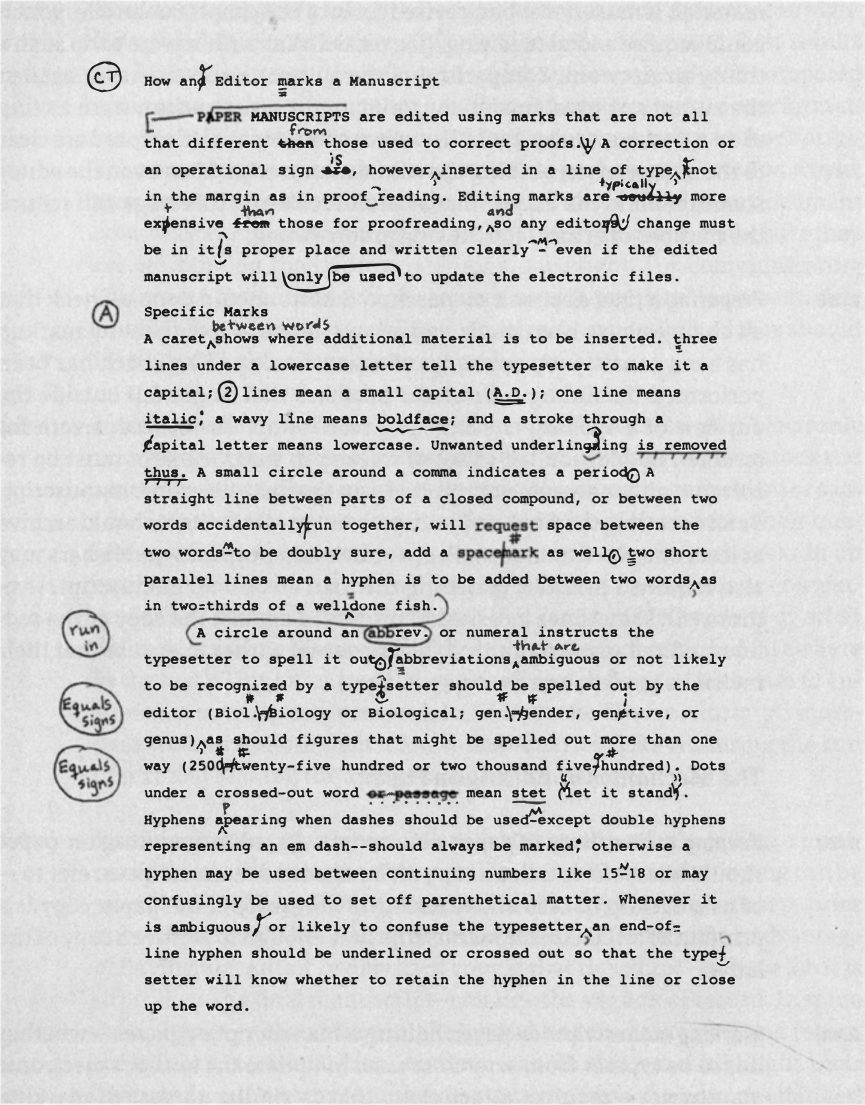

CT
A
run in
Equals signs
Equals signs

How and Editor marks a Manuscript

PAPER MANUSCRIPTS are edited using marks that are not all that different ~~than~~ from those used to correct proofs. A correction or an operational sign ~~are~~ is, however, inserted in a line of type, not in the margin as in proof reading. Editing marks are ~~usually~~ typically more expensive ~~from~~ than those for proofreading, and so any editors' change must be in it's proper place and written clearly - even if the edited manuscript will only be used to update the electronic files.

Specific Marks

A caret between words shows where additional material is to be inserted. three lines under a lowercase letter tell the typesetter to make it a capital; ② lines mean a small capital (A.D.); one line means italic; a wavy line means boldface; and a stroke through a Capital letter means lowercase. Unwanted underlinging is removed thus. A small circle around a comma indicates a period, A straight line between parts of a closed compound, or between two words accidentallyrun together, will request space between the two words - to be doubly sure, add a spacemark as well, two short parallel lines mean a hyphen is to be added between two words as in two=thirds of a welldone fish.

A circle around an abbrev. or numeral instructs the typesetter to spell it out, abbreviations that are ambiguous or not likely to be recognized by a type-setter should be spelled out by the editor (Biol.=Biology or Biological; gen.=gender, genetive, or genus) as should figures that might be spelled out more than one way (2500=twenty-five hundred or two thousand five hundred). Dots under a crossed-out word ~~or passage~~ mean stet (let it stand). Hyphens apearing when dashes should be used-except double hyphens representing an em dash--should always be marked; otherwise a hyphen may be used between continuing numbers like 15-18 or may confusingly be used to set off parenthetical matter. Whenever it is ambiguous, or likely to confuse the typesetter an end-of-line hyphen should be underlined or crossed out so that the type-setter will know whether to retain the hyphen in the line or close up the word.

FIGURE 2.5. An example of a hand-marked manuscript page.

color distinct from that used by the editor. For marking queries, see 2.89. For a sample of a correctly marked manuscript, see figure 2.5.

2.89 ***Marking author queries on paper manuscripts.*** In manuscripts edited on paper, queries are best written in the margin. When the author has responded, they can simply be crossed out. Chicago discourages the use of gummed slips for queries: they cannot be easily photocopied, and they may have to be detached in the process of updating the electronic files or (for paper-only manuscripts) typesetting the final pages (and thus may no longer be in place when the pencil-edited manuscript is sent back to the author with the proofs). For more extensive queries that require more space than the margin affords, a separate sheet, keyed by letter or symbol to a specific place in the manuscript, may be prepared.

2.90 *Three uses for circling.* Circling has three meanings on a manuscript. (1) Circling a number or an abbreviation in the text means that the element is to be spelled out. If a number can be spelled out in different ways, or if an abbreviation could possibly be misconstrued, the editor should write out the form required. (2) Circling a comma or a colon means that a period is to replace the comma or colon; when a period is inserted by hand, it should be circled so it will not be missed by whoever is updating or typesetting the manuscript. (3) Circling a marginal comment shows that the comment is not to be set in type (or incorporated into the manuscript) but is either a query to the author or an instruction for typesetting or updating the manuscript.

2.91 *Inserting, deleting, and substituting.* A regular caret (∧), used to indicate an insertion point for added text but also used to indicate subscripts (and, similarly, to indicate an added comma), should be carefully distinguished from an inverted caret (∨), used to mark superscripts, apostrophes, and the like. But, in general, do not use a caret to indicate added text that is being substituted for deleted text; simply cross out the deleted text and write the text to be substituted above it. See fig. 2.5.

2.92 *Adding, deleting, or transposing punctuation.* Special attention should be paid to punctuation when words are transposed or deleted; the new position of commas, periods, and the like must be clearly shown. Likewise, any punctuation at the beginning or end of text marked for transposition must be clearly marked for deletion or inclusion, as the case may be. More generally, any added or changed punctuation should be clearly marked—for example, by circling an added period, placing a caret over an added comma, or placing an inverted caret under added quotation marks. If necessary, write (and circle) "colon," "exclamation point," or whatever applies, either in the margin or close to the punctuation change.

2.93 *Marking dashes and hyphens.* Two hyphens with no space between or on either side clearly signal em dashes and need not be marked on a paper-only manuscript. Actual em dashes, which may be mistaken for en dashes in some typefaces, should be marked. Two- or three-em dashes, even if consistently typed, should also be marked, as should en dashes, which might be mistaken for hyphens. Alternatively, a global instruction may be issued—for example, "all hyphens between inclusive numbers are to be set as en dashes." End-of-line hyphens should be marked to distinguish between soft (i.e., conditional, or "optional") and hard hyphens. Soft hyphens are those hyphens that are invoked only to break a word at the end of a line; hard hyphens are permanent (such as those in *cul-de-sac*) and must remain no matter where the hyphenated word or term appears. See also 2.12.

2.94 ***Capitalizing, lowercasing, and marking for italics or boldface.*** To indicate that a lowercase letter should be capitalized, triple underline it; to make it a small capital, double underline it. To lowercase a capital letter, run a slanted line through it. To mark for italics, underscore the word(s) to be italicized with a straight line; for boldface, make the underscoring wavy. For manuscripts that are to be typeset from scratch, there is usually no need to underline words that appear in italics in the manuscript, as long as the typesetter is instructed to italicize them. (Italics in some fonts are difficult to distinguish at a glance; underlining may reduce the incidence of missed italics.) If an author has used both underlining and italics, special instructions are needed (see 2.14). For mathematical copy, see 12.61–67.

2.95 ***Marking paragraph indention, flush left or right, and vertical spacing.*** Use a three-sided rectangular mark to indicate that text or other elements should be moved to the left (⊏) or to the right (⊐). A line may be drawn from the open side of the mark to the element to be moved (see fig. 2.5). To indicate paragraph indention, use the symbol ¶. To mark vertical space, use a rectangular mark that "points" up (⊓) or down (⊔); adjust the width to accommodate the element. To indicate a blank line, write "one-line #" and circle it. (In typographic usage the sign # means space, not number.)

2.96 ***Marking, or coding, elements on a paper manuscript.*** Indications of elements on a paper manuscript—chapter number and title, subheads, prose extracts, poetry, and so forth—are circled and placed at the beginning of the element or in the margin next to it. For example, a circled "A" may be used to indicate a first-level subhead (see fig. 2.5). For these and other elements that need coding, and for examples of codes, see 2.78. See also 2.90.

Proofreading

Introduction

2.97 ***What is proofreading?*** Proofreading is the process of reading a text and scrutinizing all its components to find errors and mark them for correction. Each major stage of a manuscript intended for publication—especially the final version the author submits to the publisher and, later, the copyedited version of the same—is generally proofread. Proofreading here, however, applies to the review of the manuscript *after* it has been converted to its final form—for example, the typeset and (usually) paginated pages of a printed book or journal article (referred to as proofs or proof), or the full-text format of an electronic book or journal article—but *before* publication. Also subject to a proofreading stage are covers and jackets or other packaging and electronic components such as navigational aids that frame an electronic publication. For an illustration of how the stages described in this chapter fit into the overall publishing process for books and journals, see the outline at 2.2. For proofreading electronic publications, see 2.133–36.

2.98 ***Who should proofread?*** For the majority of publications, authors are considered the primary proofreaders, and it is they who bear final responsibility for any errors in the published work. To help mitigate this responsibility, a professional proofreader may be hired by either the author or the publisher. Moreover, the manuscript editor and book designer and other publishing personnel generally ensure that the author's corrections (and those of any other proofreader) are successfully incorporated into the work before it gets published and that all related materials (promotional copy, website apparatus, etc.) are free of errors and inconsistencies.

2.99 ***Proofreading schedule.*** Since many people are involved in the production of a book, a few days' delay in returning proofs to the publisher or typesetter can cause a major delay in publication. When the time scheduled for proofreading appears to conflict with the demands of accuracy, or if any other problem arises that might affect the schedule, the proofreader should immediately confer with the publisher. For journals, where there is little room for delays of any kind, proofreading deadlines are generally nonnegotiable. See also 2.2.

Stages of Proof

2.100 *Keeping a record of each proofreading stage.* A record must be kept by the publisher of when each stage of proof has been corrected and by whom. For printed books, the best record for the first proofreading stage is a master set—usually the laser printout read and marked for corrections by the author and marked with additional corrections by the publisher and any others who have read or reviewed the master set or copies thereof. (Some publishers send a duplicate set of page proofs to the author and then transfer the author's corrections to the master set.) At the next stage, revised proofs are usually reviewed by the publisher, who retains the master set and a record of each additional round of corrections until the work has been published. For electronic publications, the author and other proofreaders should each be required to sign off before a corrected version is delivered for further review. Likewise, for covers and jackets or other packaging, each person assigned to proofread should be required to sign off on the proofreading copy before a corrected version is routed for further review.

2.101 *First proofs and "galley" proofs.* The author and sometimes a designated proofreader read the first proofreading copy (*first proofs* or *first pages*), usually against the edited manuscript (see 2.107). For books, an index may be prepared from this first set of page proofs, either by the author or by a professional indexer (see chapter 16). For some complex book-length works, first proofs are issued in the form of "galleys." Strictly speaking, the term *galley proofs* is an anachronism, dating from the era when printers would arrange type into "galleys" from which long, narrow prints were prepared to proofread or edit type before the arduous task of composing it, by hand, into the form of book pages. Today, if a complex project presents a danger of extensive corrections at the page-proof stage, a publisher might request galley proofs (loosely paginated and with or without such elements as illustrations in place), since corrections to galleys will not entail having to redo page references in an index. These galleys are generated from the same electronic files as first proofs would be. (As an alternative to the galley stage, publishers might choose to undertake a proofreading of the final electronic manuscript.) The index is prepared not from the galleys, since pagination is not final, but from the "first" proofs that are issued at the next stage.

2.102 *Revised proofs.* After corrections to the first proofs have been made, the revisions must be checked to be sure all corrections have been made accurately. For print publications, this usually involves comparing a set of *revised proofs* for all pages against the first set (now known as "foul" proofs).

These revised proofs should also be checked for any other differences between them and the first proofs and to make sure hyphenation errors or other page makeup problems have not been introduced. If the typesetter has circled or bracketed or otherwise indicated any changes to page makeup resulting from the corrections, the proofreader can check revised proofs more efficiently. Any corrections that have resulted in repagination may require adjustment to page references in the index. To maintain a proper record, nothing must be marked on the foul proofs at this stage; any further corrections must be marked only on the revised set. Any additional rounds of revision should be kept to a minimum.

2.103 ***Index proofs.*** Most indexes are prepared from the paginated first set of proofs (unless they reference paragraph numbers rather than page numbers, in which case they can be prepared from the final manuscript). Indexes must be proofread quickly, in the same time that the revisions to the first proofs are being checked. For the sake of efficiency, editors rather than authors usually proofread indexes. For a full discussion of indexes, see chapter 16.

2.104 ***Prepress and press proofs.*** For works that will be printed and bound, publishers usually review prepress proofs. Prepress proofs present an inexpensive image of what will come off the printing press—generated either from negative film or, more commonly, from electronic files. (The final typesetter's files—usually PDF—can generally be considered equivalent to prepress proofs.) These proofs—a "now or never" opportunity to look at what will be published, *before* ink is committed to paper—are normally checked for completeness of contents; page sequence; margins; location, sizing, position, and cropping (if any) of illustrations; and, for contact proofs made from film, any spots or smudges. For reasons of press schedule and expense, publishers will generally allow only the correction of grave errors at this stage, such as an incorrect title or a misspelled author's name. One additional look—at actual press sheets, folded and gathered into the proper page sequence (and called F&Gs)—is sometimes also granted book and journal publishers. (Press sheets that include full-color illustrations are occasionally sent to the publisher to approve before the entire work is printed.) By the time the publisher sees a complete set of F&Gs, copies of the work are off the press and may be in the bindery. Since any correction at this stage would involve reprinting an entire signature, the publisher may prefer to turn a blind eye. See also 1.65.

2.105 ***Book cover and jacket proofs.*** Jackets and covers are the most viewed part of any printed book. Whereas most publishers (and authors) will live, if not happily, with the inevitable typo inside a book, an error on the cover is liable to halt the presses. Proofs of die copy—author's name, title, publisher's imprint, and any other matter to be stamped on the spine or cover of a hardbound book—should therefore be checked with extreme care. Likewise, proofs of jacket copy and paperback cover copy should be read and checked word for word (if not letter by letter), with special attention paid as follows:

- Anything on the cover should be consistent with the interior of the work in content and style. For example, the author's name and the title of the work—everywhere they appear, including cover, spine, and jacket flaps—must match those on the title page of the book (though the subtitle may be omitted from the cover or jacket). An author's full name is sometimes shortened in the running text of flap copy.
- Biographical material on the author should be checked against any biographical material inside the book, though the wording need not be identical.
- If the work is part of a series or a multivolume set, the series title or volume number must match its counterpart inside the book.
- The price (if it is to appear), the ISBN, and any necessary credit line for a photograph of the author or for artwork used on the cover or jacket must be verified.

Jacket and cover proofs and each stage of revisions thereto should be reviewed by everyone involved in the production of the book—including authors, editors, designers, and marketing personnel.

2.106 ***Journal cover proofs.*** Although the elements that appear on the covers of academic journals vary considerably, the following suggestions should apply to most journals. The front cover (called cover 1) must be checked carefully to ensure that elements that change with each issue, such as the volume and issue numbers and the month, date, or season of publication, are accurate and up to date. The spine must be similarly checked. If the contents of the issue are listed on cover 1, they must be checked against the interior to be sure that authors' names and article titles match exactly and, for journals that publish various types of articles, that articles have been listed in the correct section of the journal. If inclusive page numbers appear on the spine, these must be verified. The inside of the front cover (cover 2) often includes subscription prices and information on how to subscribe, names of editors and members of the editorial board, or copyright information; all such information must be checked. Covers 3 (inside of back cover) and 4 (back cover) may contain advertisements, instructions to authors on submitting articles, or a list of articles to appear in future issues. They all must be verified by the proofreader.

How to Proofread and What to Look For

2.107 ***Proofreading against copy.*** In proofreading parlance, *copy* refers to the edited manuscript. Proofs should be checked against the version of the manuscript that contains the author's final changes and responses to queries (see 2.69). In the event that the page proofs were typeset from a paper-only manuscript, the proofreader must read word for word against the edited manuscript, noting all punctuation, paragraphing, capitalization, italics, and so forth and ensuring that any handwritten editing has been correctly interpreted by the typesetter. Likewise, any element in an otherwise electronic manuscript that has been set from edited hard copy (e.g., math or tables) should be proofread carefully against the hard copy. Whether type has been set from electronic files or from paper, the proofreader must mark only the proofs, never the manuscript, which is now known as "dead" (or "foul") copy. To assign responsibility for error correctly (see 2.131), the manuscript as earlier approved by the author must be kept intact. For checking revised proofs, see 2.102.

2.108 ***Proofreading for spelling errors.*** The proofreader should remain alert for the kind of errors that are typically missed by computerized systems for checking spelling—from common typos such as *it's* where *its* is meant or *out* where *our* is meant, to more subtle errors like *lead* for *led* or *breath* for *breathe*—as well as other misspellings. (See also 2.86.) The manuscript editor's style sheet (see 2.52) may be a useful reference. Note that a change to the spelling of a particular term should never be indicated globally; instead, each change must be marked throughout the manuscript.

2.109 ***Checking word breaks.*** End-of-line hyphenation should be checked, especially in proper names and foreign terms. The first set of proofs is usually the first time that words have been divided, conditionally, at the ends of lines. Chicago recommends the word breaks given in *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary* (see bibliog. 3.1). (There are electronic dictionaries, including *Webster's*, that can be used in conjunction with automated typesetting systems.) For words or names not listed in a dictionary, a liberal approach is advisable, since formal usage varies widely and any change requested may entail further breaks or create tight or loose lines (lines with too little or too much space between words). Such problems may be avoided if a list of nondictionary words and their preferred hyphenation (or an editor's style sheet if it includes this information) is submitted to the typesetter along with the manuscript. When it is a question of an intelligible but nonstandard word break for a line that would otherwise be too loose or too tight, the nonstandard break (such as the hyphenation of an already hyphenated term) may be preferred. No more than three succeeding lines should end in a hyphen (see 7.43). See also 2.12, 7.31–43. For dividing URLs at the ends of lines, see 7.42.

2.110 *Checking typeface and font.* Each element in proofs—for example, chapter numbers and titles, subheads, text, extracts, figure captions—should be checked to ensure that it is presented in a consistent typeface and style in accordance with the design for the publication. Heads and subheads, in particular, should be checked for the typographic style assigned to their level (see 2.17, 2.56), and all set-off material (excerpts, poetry, equations, etc.) should be checked for font, size, and indention. All material in italics, boldface, small capitals, or any font different from that of the surrounding text should be looked at to be sure the new font starts and stops as intended. Note that the conversion of electronic manuscript files into typeset pages or full-text electronic presentations can result in unexpected errors, such as the dropping or transmutation of a special character throughout the work or the inadvertent incorporation of a comment or other "invisible" electronic material into the text. For a systematic error, it may be preferable to indicate a single, or "global," instruction for making the change—to avoid cluttering the proofs with corrections of each instance. When a systemic problem is identified—especially one on proofs for a printed work that will affect pagination across more than a few pages and therefore the index—the publisher should be alerted immediately in case new first proofs are needed.

2.111 *Checking and proofreading page numbers and running heads.* Page numbers and running heads must be checked to ensure that they are present where they are supposed to be and absent where they are not (see 1.5–8, 1.9–15, 2.73), that the correct page number appears following a blank page, and that the typesetter has followed instructions as to what should appear on a recto, a verso, or a double-page spread. Running heads must be both proofread and checked for placement. For running heads to endnotes, the page numbers may need to be verified or supplied by checking the text pages the notes pertain to (see 1.14).

2.112 *Checking and proofreading illustrations and tables.* The proofreader must verify that all illustrations appear in the right location in the text, in the right size, right side up, not "flopped" (turned over left to right, resulting in a mirror image) or distorted, and with their own captions. Captions should be read as carefully as the text. Tables must be proofread both for content and for alignment. Where an illustration or a table occupies a full page, no running head or page number should appear; but if several full pages of illustrations or tables appear in sequence, the proofreader may request that page numbers, and sometimes running heads as well, be added to better orient readers (see 1.15). For a table presented as a two-page broadside, the proofreader should make sure it falls on facing pages (i.e., verso and recto; see also 3.85). If there are lists of illustrations and tables, all captions and titles should be checked against the lists, and page numbers must be verified or added.

2.113 ***Checking overall appearance.*** For printed works, each page or, better, each pair of facing pages should be checked for length (see 2.114), vertical spacing, position of running heads and page numbers, and so forth. Conformity to the design specifications must be verified. Such apparent impairments as fuzzy type, incomplete letters, and blocks of type that appear lighter or darker than the surrounding text may be due to poor photocopying or a faulty printout. If in doubt, the proofreader may query "Type OK?" or "Too dark?" Four or more consecutive lines that end with a hyphen or the same word should be pointed out and, if possible, appropriate adjustments indicated. A page should not begin with the last line of a paragraph unless it is full measure. (A page can, however, end with the first line of a new paragraph.) Nor should the last word in any paragraph be broken—that is, hyphenated, with the last part of the word beginning a new line. To correct any of these occurrences, page length may be adjusted. (A short last line of a paragraph carried over to the top of a page is sometimes referred to as a "widow"; when the first line of a paragraph appears at the bottom of a page, it is sometimes called an "orphan.")

2.114 ***Checking facing pages for text alignment.*** Although facing pages of text must align, it is usually acceptable for both pages to run a line long or short to avoid widows (see 2.113) or to accommodate corrections. For example, if a correction on page 68 requires an added line, the typesetter may be asked to add space above a subhead on page 69 so that the two pages wind up the same length. Type can sometimes be rerun more loosely or more tightly to add (*save*) or eliminate (*lose*) a line.

2.115 ***Proofreading for sense.*** The proofreader must query—or correct, if possible—illogical, garbled, repeated, or missing text. Any rewriting, however, must be limited to the correction of fact or of gross syntactical error, since all source checking and substantive and stylistic changes should have been done at the editing stage. Changes that would alter page makeup across more than a couple of pages in printed works should be avoided, since repagination not only is expensive but, for books, can affect the index.

How to Mark Proofs

2.116 *Proofreaders' marks.* The marks explained in the following paragraphs and illustrated in figures 2.6 and 2.7 are commonly understood by typesetters and other publishing and printing personnel working in English. Moreover, these marks and conventions form the basis of online proofreading tools (though paper remains the gold standard for proofreading—especially for book-length works). Other instructions provided by printers and publishers are unlikely to differ substantially from what is given here. Note that all verbal instructions to the typesetter are best circled (see 2.118).

2.117 *Where to mark proofs.* Corrections to proofs must always be written in the margin, left or right, next to the line concerned. A mark must also be placed in the text—a caret for an addition, a line through a letter or word to be deleted or replaced—to indicate where a correction is to be made. Never should a correction be written between the lines, where it could be missed. If a line requires two or more corrections, these should be marked in the margin in the order in which they occur, separated by vertical lines (see fig. 2.7). A guideline or an arrow should be used only when a correction cannot be written next to the line in which it occurs.

2.118 *Circling comments and instructions.* As with queries and instructions handwritten on a paper manuscript (see 2.90), verbal instructions written on proofs—such as "see attached typescript" or "ital" or "rom"—should be circled. Such circling indicates that these are instructions and that the words and abbreviations themselves should not be incorporated into the actual work.

2.119 *Communicating extensive changes.* Wherever the marks required to fix a line or two threaten to become byzantine, cross out the whole passage and rewrite it correctly in the margin. If there is not enough room in the margin, make a separate document and include it with the proofs; the insertion point should be indicated in both places. To avoid repagination of print works, every effort must be made to match the word count of new material to that of the old. For material to be transposed from one page to another, circle or otherwise mark the passage and make a note in the margin; clearly mark the new location and make a note in that margin as well. Most types of global changes should be marked individually to ensure that each change is made correctly (see also 2.110).

2.120 *Making marks legible.* All corrections must be written clearly (such that they can be spotted at a glance) in upper- and lowercase letters. Red proof

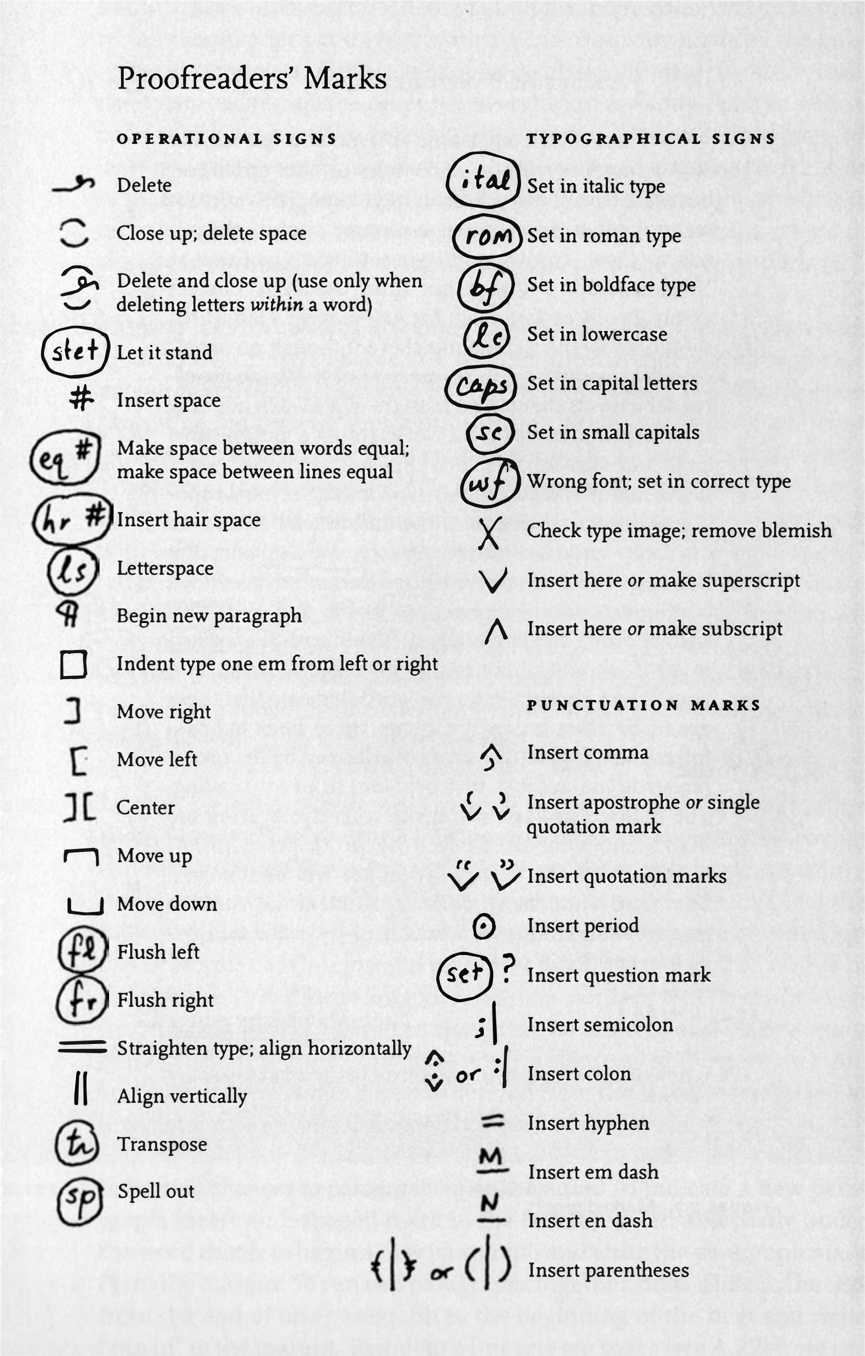

Proofreaders' Marks

OPERATIONAL SIGNS

- Delete
- Close up; delete space
- Delete and close up (use only when deleting letters *within* a word)
- Let it stand
- Insert space
- Make space between words equal; make space between lines equal
- Insert hair space
- Letterspace
- Begin new paragraph
- Indent type one em from left or right
- Move right
- Move left
- Center
- Move up
- Move down
- Flush left
- Flush right
- Straighten type; align horizontally
- Align vertically
- Transpose
- Spell out

TYPOGRAPHICAL SIGNS

- Set in italic type
- Set in roman type
- Set in boldface type
- Set in lowercase
- Set in capital letters
- Set in small capitals
- Wrong font; set in correct type
- Check type image; remove blemish
- Insert here *or* make superscript
- Insert here *or* make subscript

PUNCTUATION MARKS

- Insert comma
- Insert apostrophe *or* single quotation mark
- Insert quotation marks
- Insert period
- Insert question mark
- Insert semicolon
- Insert colon
- Insert hyphen
- Insert em dash
- Insert en dash
- Insert parentheses

FIGURE 2.6. Proofreaders' marks.

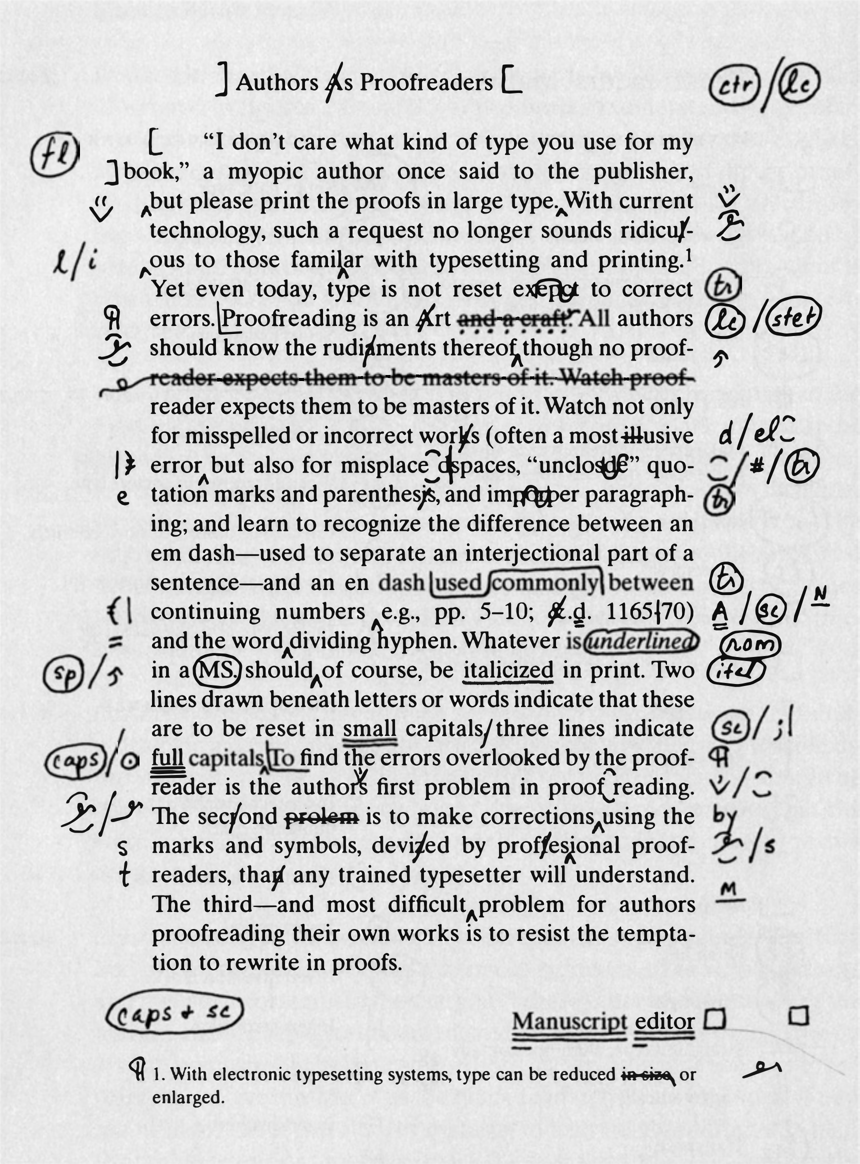

Authors As Proofreaders

"I don't care what kind of type you use for my book," a myopic author once said to the publisher, but please print the proofs in large type. With current technology, such a request no longer sounds ridiculous to those familar with typesetting and printing.1 Yet even today, type is not reset exepct to correct errors. Proofreading is an Art ~~and a craft~~. All authors should know the rudiments thereof though no proof~~reader expects them to be masters of it. Watch proof~~reader expects them to be masters of it. Watch not only for misspelled or incorrect works (often a most ~~il~~lusive error but also for misplace dspaces, "unclosde" quotation marks and parenthesis, and improper paragraphing; and learn to recognize the difference between an em dash—used to separate an interjectional part of a sentence—and an en dash used commonly between continuing numbers e.g., pp. 5–10; a.d. 1165-70) and the word dividing hyphen. Whatever is underlined in a MS should of course, be italicized in print. Two lines drawn beneath letters or words indicate that these are to be reset in small capitals three lines indicate full capitals To find the errors overlooked by the proofreader is the authors first problem in proof reading. The second ~~prolem~~ is to make corrections using the marks and symbols, devized by proffesional proofreaders, thay any trained typesetter will understand. The third—and most difficult problem for authors proofreading their own works is to resist the temptation to rewrite in proofs.

Manuscript editor

1. With electronic typesetting systems, type can be reduced ~~in size~~ or enlarged.

FIGURE 2.7. Marked proofs.

markings are often preferred for visibility, but any color will do as long as the proofreader's corrections are distinct from any made by the publisher or typesetter. Either a pen or a pencil may be used; in either case, the proofreader must be prepared to eradicate unwanted marks. Messy corrections may lead to further errors; indistinct corrections may be overlooked. If a small number of late-stage, hand-marked corrections to proofs must be transmitted to the typesetter electronically, the marks must be dark enough to scan or fax clearly, and they must not extend to the edges of the paper lest they be incomplete on the recipient's copy.

2.121 ***Marking copy for deletion.*** To remove a letter, a word, or more, draw a diagonal line through a letter or a straight line through a word or phrase and write the delete mark (see fig. 2.6) in the margin. No part of the text should be obliterated, and a punctuation mark that is to be removed should be circled rather than crossed through, so that it is still visible. The form of the delete mark in the margin need not be exactly as shown in figure 2.6, but it should be made in such a way as not to be confused with a *d*, an *e*, or an *l*. The mark for "delete and close up" should be used when a letter or a hyphen is deleted from within a word, or, in the case of longer deletions, when the material that remains is to be joined with no intervening space. The delete mark is used only when something is to be removed. When something is to be substituted for the deleted matter, only the substitution is written in the margin next to the line or lines that have been struck through (see fig. 2.7).

2.122 ***Adding or deleting space between letters or words.*** All words in the same line should be separated by the same amount of space, though the spacing will vary from line to line in justified setting. When word spaces within a line are unequal, insert carets in the problem areas of the text and write the equal-space mark (eq #) in the margin. To delete space between letters or words, use the close-up mark (see fig. 2.6) in the text as well as in the margin. To call for more space between words or letters, insert a vertical line in the text where the space is to be inserted and make a space mark (#) in the margin. The space mark is also used to show where more vertical space (or *leading*, a term derived from the lead that was used in hot-metal typesetting) is needed between lines. See also 2.95.

2.123 ***Indicating changes to paragraphing or indention.*** To indicate a new paragraph, insert an L-shaped mark in the text to the left and partly under the word that is to begin a new paragraph and write the paragraph mark (¶) in the margin. To run two paragraphs together, draw a line in the text from the end of one paragraph to the beginning of the next and write "run in" in the margin. To indent a line one em space (see A.22) from the left or right margin, draw a small square (□) to the left of the material to be indented and repeat the square in the margin. To indent two or more ems, draw a rectangle divided into two or more squares. To repeat the indention for more than one consecutive line, draw a line down from the square to the level of the baseline of the last affected line.

2.124 *Indicating adjustments to position or alignment (justification).* If a line of type, a title, an item in a table, or any other text appears too far to the left or right, use the marks for moving type right (⊐) or left (⊏). If text that is supposed to be centered appears not to be, use both marks (⊐⊏)—one on each side—to indicate centering. Use the marks for moving type up (⊓) or down (⊔) when something appears vertically out of place. All these marks must be inserted in the text as well as in the margin. To indicate that an indented line of type should start flush left (at the left-hand margin), insert a move-left (⊏) mark at the left of the first word in that line and write "fl" (flush left) in the margin, circled (see fig. 2.7). To indicate that an element should appear flush right—or that a line of type should be justified at the right margin—do the same thing but with the move-right (⊐) mark and marginal "fr" (flush right) or "justify." Finally, to indicate inaccurate alignment in tabular matter, use the mark for vertical alignment (||) or horizontal alignment (=), as the case may be. To apply any of these marks to more than one consecutive line, make the mark long enough to encompass each affected line.

2.125 *Marking items to be transposed.* To move letters, words, or phrases from one place to another, circumscribe them in a way that precisely demarcates the items (including any punctuation) to be interchanged and write and circle "tr" (transpose) in the margin (see fig. 2.7). For transposition of larger chunks of text or other elements, it may be best to draw a bracket or other mark around each item and include a circled instruction in the margin.

2.126 *Marking items to be spelled out.* When an abbreviation or numeral is to be spelled out, circle the item and write the spell-out mark (circled "sp") in the margin. If there is any ambiguity about the spelling, write the full word in the margin. See also 2.90.

2.127 *Using "stet" to revert corrections or deletions.* To undelete or restore something that has earlier been marked for deletion or correction, place a row of dots in the text under the material that is to remain, cross out the marginal mark or correction, and write "stet" ("let it stand")—or to avoid any ambiguity, "stet as set"—in the margin, circled.

2.128 ***Marking changes to capitalization and font.*** Mark changes to capitalization and font as follows, and remember to circle all marginal instructions (see 2.118 and figs. 2.6 and 2.7):

- To lowercase a capital letter, draw a slash through the letter and write "lc" in the margin.
- To capitalize a lowercase letter, draw three lines under it and write "cap" in the margin.
- For small capital letters, draw two lines under the letters or words and write "sc" in the margin.
- For italics, draw a single line under the letter or words and write "ital" in the margin.
- To remove italics, circle the italicized letter or words and write "rom" in the margin.
- For boldface, draw a wavy line under the letter or words and write "bf" in the margin.
- To remove boldface, circle the boldface letter or words and write "not bf" in the margin.

2.129 ***Indicating changes to punctuation and accents.*** To change a punctuation mark, circle it and write the correct mark in the margin. To add a mark, insert a caret and write the mark in the margin. Lest they be missed or misinterpreted, all punctuation marks in the margin should be clarified thus: a comma should have a caret over it; an apostrophe or a quotation mark should have an inverted caret under it; a parenthesis should have two short horizontal lines through it; a period should be circled; semicolons and colons should be followed by a short vertical line; question marks and exclamation points should be accompanied by the circled word "set"; and hyphens, en dashes, and em dashes should be differentiated by their appropriate symbols (see fig. 2.6). If an accent or a diacritical mark is missing or incorrect, the entire letter should be crossed out in the text and written in the margin with its correct accent; never must the accent alone appear in the margin. For clarity, the name of any unusual accent or diacritical mark (e.g., "breve") should also be written and circled in the margin (see 11.2).

Double-Checking and Assigning Responsibility for Errors

2.130 ***Double-checking proofs.*** In addition to the tasks outlined in 2.107–15, the proofreader must perform the following checks, according to the needs of the particular work:

- Check article or chapter titles and, if necessary, subheads or other heads against the table of contents to ensure consistent wording, and verify or add beginning page numbers in the table of contents. Query—or delete, if necessary—any item listed in the table of contents that does not appear in the work.
- If footnotes are used, ensure that each footnote appears, or at least begins, on the page that includes its superscripted reference number or symbol.
- Complete any cross-references (see 2.32).
- For a book, check the half title and the title page to be sure the title is correct and the author's or volume editor's name is spelled right; verify that the information on the copyright page is accurate and complete.
- For a journal, check the covers, spine, and any front or back matter copy that is unique to the particular journal; with the previous year's volume at hand, check the elements that change with each issue, such as volume and issue numbers and date, month, or season of publication; ensure that the inclusive page numbers that appear on the spine are accurate; check front and back matter for any elements that may have changed, such as subscription prices or names of editors and members of the editorial board; ensure that copyright lines are included and accurate on all individual articles or other elements of the journal that carry them.

For additional checking required for electronic works, see 2.133–36.

2.131 *Assigning responsibility for errors on proofs.* The proofreader may be asked to distinguish between errors introduced by the typesetting process and errors that were left uncorrected in the manuscript or those that were introduced during editorial cleanup after the author has reviewed the editing. In such cases, corrections should be accompanied by abbreviations determined by the publisher or typesetter, such as PE (printer's error—the customary term for what is generally a typesetter's error), AA (author's alteration), EA (editor's alteration), and DA (designer's alteration). All such indications should be circled to prevent their being incorporated into the corrected proofs.

2.132 *Author's alterations (AAs) versus editor's alterations (EAs).* For books, a publisher's contract may allow an author to make, without penalty, alterations in proofs in terms of a percentage of the initial cost of the typesetting. Since the cost of corrections is far higher relative to the cost of the original typesetting, an AA allowance of (for example) 5 percent does not mean that 5 percent of the proofs may be altered. An author may be asked to pay the cost of AAs beyond the AA allowance stipulated in the contract. Page numbers added to cross-references in proofs are usually considered AAs. Corrections of errors uncaught or even introduced in editing are considered AAs if the author reviewed and approved the edited manuscript. Correction of an error introduced into the manuscript by the publisher after the author's review—made by the manuscript editor, for example, in entering the author's final adjustments—is an EA and not chargeable to the author. Supplying page numbers in lists of tables and illustrations and in running heads to notes constitutes an EA. For articles, consult the journal publisher.

Proofing and Testing Electronic Publications

2.133 ***Checklist for proofing electronic publications.*** Every element in an electronic publication must be proofread, checked, and tested in its final form—*before* it gets published. No element should be overlooked. In addition to many of the tasks outlined in 2.107–15 and 2.130, a thorough check will include some or all of the following steps:

1. Look carefully at the layout to make sure that no elements are missing, that all elements are presented as intended, and that no markup added for another purpose (e.g., for a print version) adversely affects the electronic version.
2. Confirm that all special characters have been converted correctly (see 2.110; see also 11.2). Characters that have been treated as bitmapped images must be checked for correctness, legibility, and proper appearance (see also A.34).
3. Verify that all hypertext links and other clickable features work—including links and features within the work and those that lead to other sites or resources. For web publications, a site map (i.e., a list or chart of all navigable pages) may facilitate this process.
4. Make sure that any illustrations or other nontext features of the work are present and function and appear as desired.
5. For a work that will be published in print and online, make sure that the forms either match exactly—if that is the intent—or vary as intended, and that such variation is noted explicitly in both versions (see 1.73).
6. Proofread any recent changes for spelling and sense.

Although initial checking and testing will have been done during the editing stage, the person (or persons) responsible for proofreading electronic copy must look at every element of the publication systematically—preferably according to a larger checklist that will have been created during the development stages of the project.

2.134 ***Testing web-based publications.*** In addition to comprising well-edited, accurate, error-free information, a web-based publication (see 1.111) must function as intended—usually across a variety of platforms. This functionality must be tested at several stages in the development of a project—not just at the end and not only by a team of editors or proofreaders. By the time the content for a web-based publication has been finalized, the interface will usually have gone through several stages of editorial review to scrutinize basic design elements and navigational structure and to edit ancillary items such as error messages, label text (as on buttons), and metadata (see A.10). Some publications will also benefit from a beta test stage in which potential users are invited to report errors and suggest changes before the official release date. More specific testing routines should adhere to use-case documents (see 2.135). Testing after the release date will include editorial oversight of any new content generated by the publication such as readers' comments. At all stages, procedures should be in place for regression testing—that is, testing that safeguards against unforeseen errors caused by the correction of other errors or by the introduction of new features or content or other changes. For online journals and other periodical publications, it is not necessary to repeat all of these testing stages on the recurring design elements and features every time new content is added, but the new content itself should be checked before publication as described in 2.133.

2.135 ***Documentation for testing.*** Thorough testing of a web-based publication should involve checking it against various documents that describe its intended functionality, behavior, and navigation. Several types of documents are typically created as part of a publication's development process. *Feature definition documents*, for example, provide detailed descriptions of how the various features of the website will function. Feature definition for a search engine would specify how search results are ordered and displayed on the page, how users are able to limit the search to certain kinds of results, how terms with diacritics are handled, and so forth. *Use-case documents* provide a more complete description of a feature's behavior, specifying exactly how the feature will respond to the user's every mouse click and keystroke. *Wire frames* or *design mockups* provide visual representations of the page's design and layout, and *user interface specifications* may provide additional guidelines. Finally, *test-case documents* provide step-by-step instructions on exactly how a given feature or page will be tested.

2.136 ***Communicating changes to web-based publications.*** Just as manuscript editors redline changes and keep a style sheet for a book manuscript and proofreaders use a specific set of marks to communicate changes, those involved in producing a web-based publication will need to follow a system for tracking and implementing changes and stylistic decisions. Whereas such matters for a printed book are traditionally recorded on a series of printouts, a web-based project generally benefits from the use of a centralized database. Procedures for using such a system should be developed (and fully documented) with the input of the web developers, designers, editors, proofreaders, and testers who will use it. In any single project, the entries in such a database—in conjunction with the documentation for testing described in 2.135—can serve as a contract between editors and the production team to ensure that changes get implemented properly and elements function as they should. Responsibility, revision dates, and other information should be complemented by checklists for testers that follow the same guidelines. Editorial oversight of the project database is crucial, and to allow for this oversight, every change, no matter how trivial, must be documented. Finally, changes made after the initial development stage should generally be subject not only to editorial oversight but also to authorization.

3 *Illustrations and Tables*

Overview 3.1

Illustrations 3.3

- *Types of Illustrations and Their Parts* 3.3
- *Placement and Numbering of Illustrations* 3.8
- *Preparation of Artwork* 3.15
- *Captions* 3.21
- *Credit Lines* 3.28
- *Lists of Illustrations* 3.37
- *Charts* 3.40

Tables 3.46

- *Introduction* 3.46
- *The Parts of a Table* 3.49
- *Cell Alignment and Formatting* 3.68
- *Notes to Tables* 3.74
- *Editing Tables* 3.79

Overview

3.1 ***Illustrations defined.*** Illustrations, also called figures, consist of artwork—which is to say, anything that is represented by means of an image rather than by the letters and other orthographic symbols that make up the text of a book or an article. Illustrations, then, include paintings, photographs, line drawings, maps, charts, and examples from musical scores. This list is sometimes extended to include audio and video files presented as enhancements to electronic publications. For a full discussion of illustrations—including guidelines on preparation, placement, numbering, and captioning, with examples drawn from University of Chicago Press publications—see 3.3–45.

3.2 ***Tables defined.*** A table is a more or less complex list presented as an array of vertical columns and horizontal rows. Like illustrations, tables are presented separately from the run of text. Tables are also related to illustrations in that both can be said to constitute a visual representation of data. Because they consist of alphanumeric text, however, tables are usually typeset along with the text rather than produced separately as artwork (but see A.33). For a full discussion of tables—including guidelines on preparation, placement, numbering, and editing, with examples drawn from University of Chicago Press publications—see 3.46–85.

Illustrations

Types of Illustrations and Their Parts

3.3 ***Continuous tone versus halftone.*** Continuous-tone art is any image such as a painting or a photograph that contains gradations of shading from light to dark—in black and white (grayscale) or color (see fig. 3.1). In order to duplicate continuous-tone images in offset printing, which uses one ink color (black) for black and white and four for color (cyan, magenta, yellow, and black—abbreviated CMYK), a halftone reproduction must be produced (see fig. 3.2). (Color images intended for the screen are rendered in RGB—red, green, and blue—mode.) A halftone breaks the image into an equally spaced array of dots that vary in size to create the illusion of continuous tone from dark to light. For black-and-white halftone reproduction, authors should submit glossy prints of original art. For illustrations to be reproduced in color, which involves a four-color process, color transparencies are usually preferred. Authors submitting digital photo-

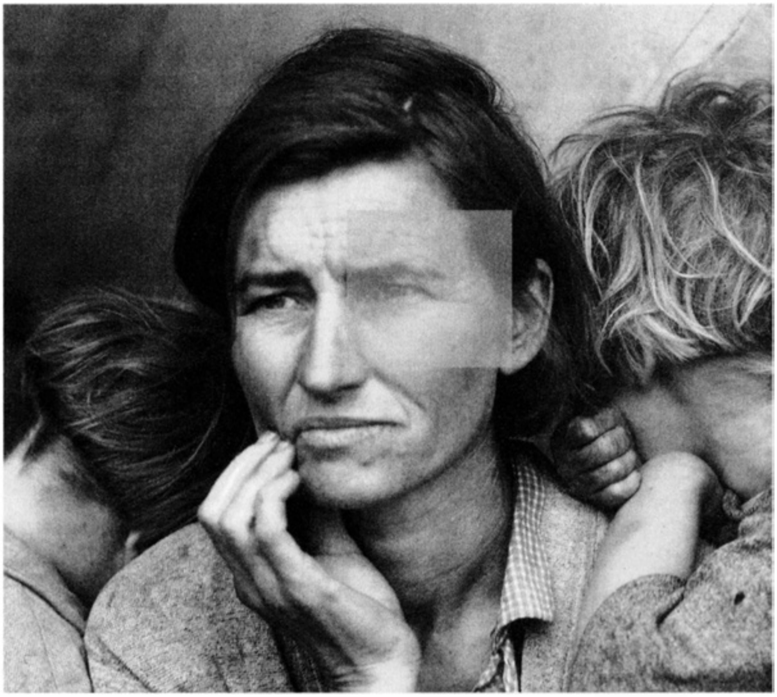

Migrant Mother, by Dorothea Lange, 1936.

FIGURE 3.1.
Above, a halftone image of an original photo.

FIGURE 3.2.
Right, detail of figure 3.1 showing the halftone dot pattern. See 3.3.

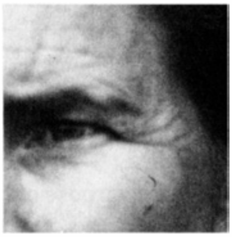

graphs or scans should consult their publisher's guidelines for preparing electronic artwork. (Chicago offers such guidelines on its books and journals websites.)

3.4 ***Line art.*** Artwork containing only black on a white background, with no gray screens (i.e., shading)—such as a pen-and-ink drawing—is traditionally known as line art (or, less commonly, line copy). See figures 3.3 and 3.4. Line art may be published in black and white or in color. For the

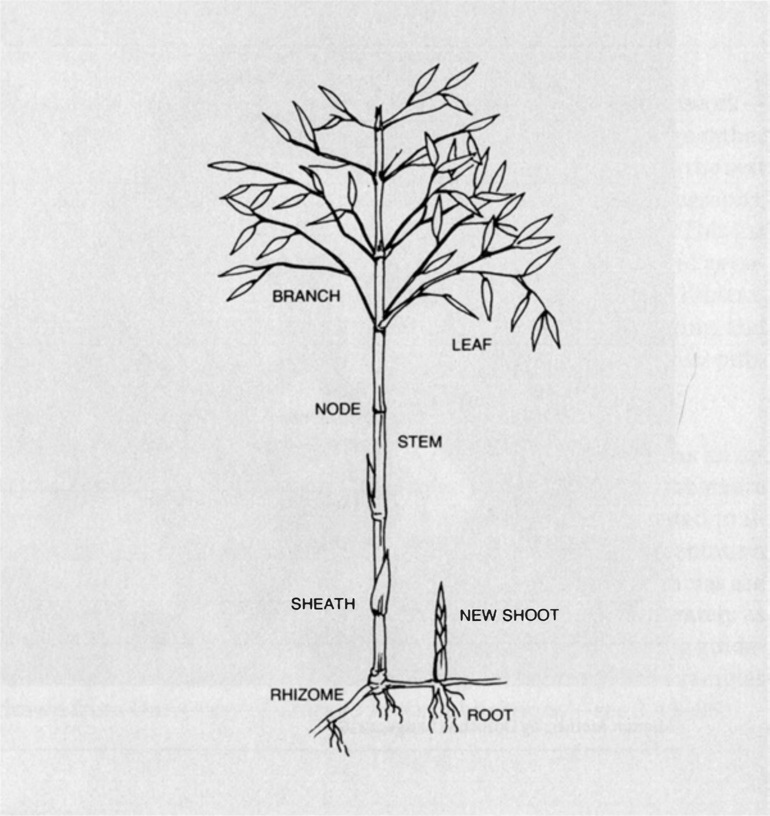

FIGURE 3.3. A line drawing with descriptive labels (see 3.4, 3.7). The surrounding text of the work from which this unnumbered and uncaptioned figure was drawn identifies the plant as a *Sinarundinaria* stem.

purpose of reproduction or presentation in both printed and electronic works, charts may also be treated as line art, though strictly speaking they are often typeset using specialized software applications, even if the result is output as an image. (For more on charts, see 3.40–45.) Musical examples may be treated as line art and scanned if they are not typeset from scratch for publication—generally by specialists. See figure 3.5. Publishers can often reproduce computer-generated line art without having to remake it as long as it has been properly prepared; authors should obtain guidelines from the publisher. For the use of shading in line art, see 3.19. For more on the conventions related to musical notation, see 7.66–71.

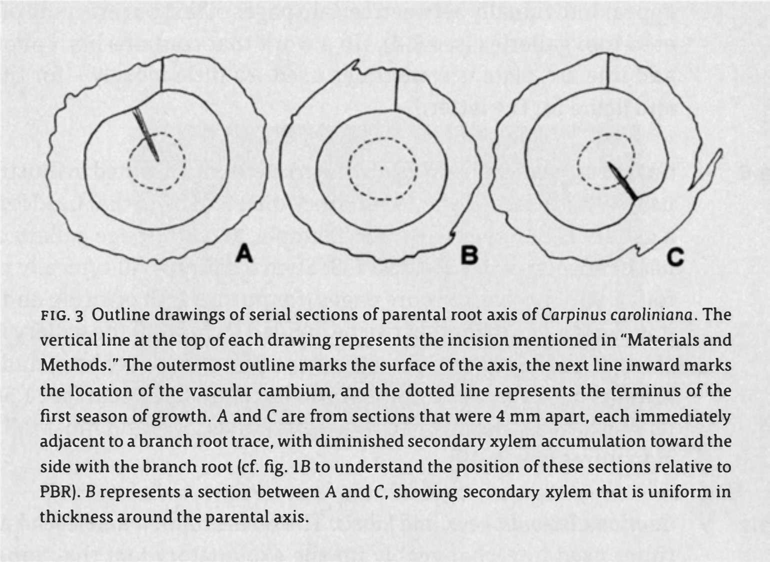

FIG. 3 Outline drawings of serial sections of parental root axis of *Carpinus caroliniana*. The vertical line at the top of each drawing represents the incision mentioned in "Materials and Methods." The outermost outline marks the surface of the axis, the next line inward marks the location of the vascular cambium, and the dotted line represents the terminus of the first season of growth. *A* and *C* are from sections that were 4 mm apart, each immediately adjacent to a branch root trace, with diminished secondary xylem accumulation toward the side with the branch root (cf. fig. 1*B* to understand the position of these sections relative to PBR). *B* represents a section between A and C, showing secondary xylem that is uniform in thickness around the parental axis.

FIGURE 3.4. A line drawing, including figure number and caption (see 3.4, 3.8-14, 3.21-27). The drawing's three parts, labeled with capital letters, are discussed in the caption (see 3.7).

EXAMPLE 7.6 *Daliso e Delmita*, act 2, "Nel lasciarti, oh Dio! mi sento," mm. 86–97

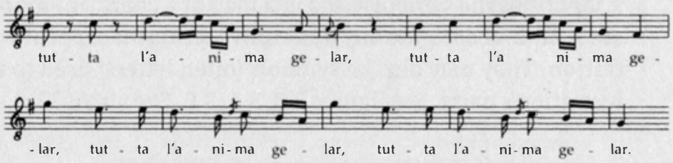
tut - ta l'a - ni - ma ge - lar, tut - ta l'a - ni - ma ge -
- lar, tut - ta l'a - ni - ma ge - lar, tut - ta l'a - ni - ma ge - lar.

FIGURE 3.5. Musical examples carry their captions above the illustration rather than below. Such examples can be reproduced photographically (e.g., from a published score) or typeset by specialists (see 3.4).

3.5 ***Text figures and plates.*** Illustrations—whether halftones or line art—that are interspersed in the text are referred to as text figures. (Occasionally, a special type of illustration, such as a map or a musical example, will be referred to in a work by type rather than by the generic term *figure*. See fig. 3.5.) The term *plate*, strictly speaking, refers to a full-page illustration that is printed separately, typically on coated paper; plates can appear individually between certain pages of text but are more often gathered into galleries (see 3.6). (In a work that contains both photographs and line art, *plate* is sometimes used—a little loosely—for the former and *figure* for the latter.)

3.6 ***Galleries.*** A gallery is a section of a printed work devoted to illustrations—usually halftones. If printed on stock different from that used for the text, a gallery is not paginated; for example, an eight-page gallery could appear between pages 134 and 135. Such a gallery will typically consist of four, eight, twelve, or more pages (for purposes of printing and binding, it is always a number that can be divided by four). If the gallery is printed along with the text, on the same paper, its pages may be included in the numbering, even if the numbers do not actually appear (see 1.38). A gallery always begins on a recto (a right-hand page) and must fall between signatures (see A.49).

3.7 ***Captions, legends, keys, and labels.*** The terms *caption* and *legend* are sometimes used interchangeably for the explanatory text that appears with an illustration—usually immediately below but sometimes above or to the side. (In a distinction rarely made today, the term *caption* once referred strictly to a phrasal title or a headline, whereas *legend* referred to the full-sentence explanation immediately following the caption. This manual uses *caption* to refer to both.) A *key* (also sometimes called a legend) appears within the illustration itself and not as part of the caption; it identifies the symbols used in a map or a chart. For more on captions, see 3.21–27. *Labels* are any descriptive terms that appear within an illustration. They may also be symbols (often letters) used to indicate an illustration's parts. See figures 3.3, 3.4, 3.6. See also 3.12, 3.43.

Placement and Numbering of Illustrations

3.8 ***Placement of illustrations relative to text.*** Unless they are presented separately (as in a gallery; see 3.6, 3.14), each illustration should appear as soon as possible after the first text reference to it. In an electronic work, a captioned thumbnail image linked to its larger counterpart(s) may appear after the paragraph in which the image is first referenced. In printed works, to accommodate page makeup, the image may precede the reference only if it appears on the same page or same two-page spread as the reference or if the text is too short to permit placing all figures and tables after their references. If illustrations or thumbnail images are interspersed in the text, the author or (if the author has not done so) the editor must provide callouts that indicate in the manuscript the preferred

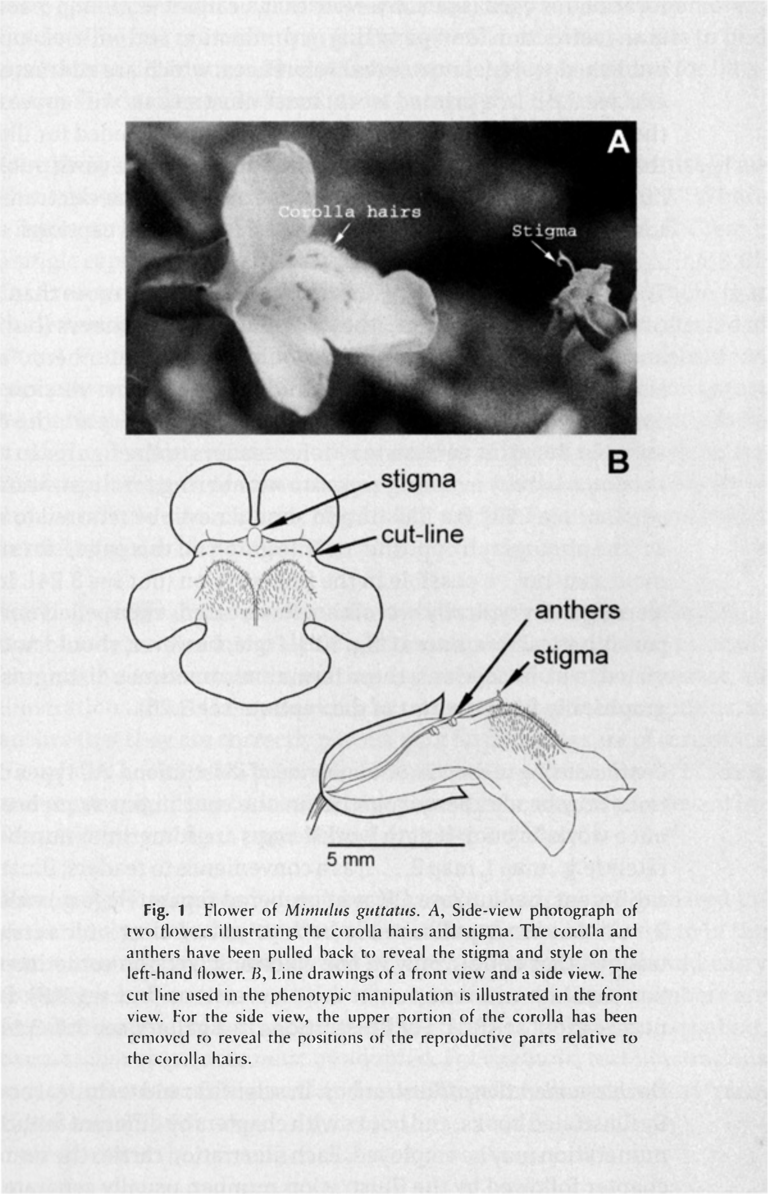

Fig. 1 Flower of *Mimulus guttatus*. *A*, Side-view photograph of two flowers illustrating the corolla hairs and stigma. The corolla and anthers have been pulled back to reveal the stigma and style on the left-hand flower. *B*, Line drawings of a front view and a side view. The cut line used in the phenotypic manipulation is illustrated in the front view. For the side view, the upper portion of the corolla has been removed to reveal the positions of the reproductive parts relative to the corolla hairs.

FIGURE 3.6. A figure consisting of a photograph and a line drawing, each with descriptive labels and identified by the letters *A* and *B*, respectively (see 3.12, 3.7).

location for each (see 2.27). Note that a callout (e.g., “fig. 5 about here”) is an instruction for typesetting or production and will not appear in the published work (compare text references, which are addressed to readers; see 3.9). In a printed work, most illustrations will appear at either the top or the bottom of a page. No callouts are needed for illustrations that are to appear together in a printed gallery. In a work published online, callouts may be obviated or superseded by the electronic markup for text references and their associated figures and captions.

3.9 ***Text references to numbered illustrations.*** If there are more than a handful of illustrations in a work, they normally bear numbers (but see 3.13), and all text references to them should be by the numbers: “as figure 1 shows . . . ,” “compare figures 4 and 5.” If an online version of a work contains figures not available in a printed counterpart, the text references in the print version may refer readers to the figures in the online version (thereby avoiding separate numbering for illustrations in each version; see 1.73). An illustration should never be referred to in the text as “the photograph opposite” or “the graph on this page,” for such placement may not be possible in the final version (but see 3.24). In text, the word *figure* is typically set roman, lowercased, and spelled out except in parenthetical references (“fig. 10”). *Plate*, however, should not be abbreviated to *pl*. In captions, these terms are sometimes distinguished typographically from the rest of the caption (see 3.23).

3.10 ***Continuous versus separate numbering of illustrations.*** All types of illustrations may be numbered together in one continuous sequence throughout a work. In book-length works, maps are sometimes numbered separately (e.g., map 1, map 2, . . .) as a convenience to readers; illustrations in a different medium are always numbered separately (e.g., video 1, video 2, . . .). In a work published in both print and electronic versions, illustrations that appear only in the electronic version sometimes necessitate separate enumeration in the two versions (but see 3.9). For double numeration, see 3.11. For illustrations in a gallery, see 3.6, 3.14.

3.11 ***Double numeration of illustrations.*** In scientific and technical books, heavily illustrated books, and books with chapters by different authors, double numeration may be employed. Each illustration carries the number of the chapter followed by the illustration number, usually separated by a period. Thus, for example, figure 9.6 is the sixth figure in chapter 9. Should a chapter contain only one illustration, a double number would still be used (e.g., figure 10.1). Appendix figures may be numbered A.1, A.2, and so on, or, if there are several appendixes and each bears a letter, A.1, A.2, B.1, B.2, and so on. At the editing stage, double numeration makes it easier to handle multiple illustrations and, should any be added or removed, involves far less renumbering. It also makes it easier for readers to find a particular illustration. This manual uses double numeration for illustrations and tables as well as for text paragraphs. See also 1.55.

3.12 ***Identifying the parts of an illustration.*** Chicago recommends the use of arabic numerals for illustrations of all kinds: "figure 12," "fig. 10.7." Where a figure consists of several parts, the parts may carry letters (*A*, *B*, *C*, etc.); a single caption, keying the letters to the parts, suffices (see figs. 3.4, 3.6). Text references may then refer, for example, to "fig. 10.7C" (note that the letters are usually italicized—with the number and when referred to alone). Parts may also be described according to their relative positions on a printed page (see fig. 3.7; see also 3.24); the relative positions must be maintained in an electronic version if the same description is to be used. (In the rare and undesirable event that a figure has to be added at a late stage to a work destined for print, when it is no longer feasible to renumber all the other figures, "fig. 10.7A" might refer to a figure inserted between figures 10.7 and 10.8.)

3.13 ***Working numbers for unnumbered illustrations.*** In some works, where illustrations are neither integral to the text nor specifically referred to, numbers are unnecessary. In the editing and production stages, however, all illustrations should carry working numbers, as should their captions, to ensure that they are correctly placed. As a further measure of insurance for printed books, after page proofs have been approved, copies of scans and prints might also be labeled with page numbers or other relevant information (e.g., "fig. 1, page 47, top" or "plate 3, gallery").

3.14 ***Numbering illustrations in a gallery.*** When illustrations are gathered together in a gallery, they need not be numbered unless referred to in the text, although in the editing and production stages they should carry working numbers to ensure the correct order (see 3.13). If numbers are required and the work also contains illustrations interspersed in the text, two number sequences must be adopted. For example, text illustrations may be referred to as "figure 1" and so on and gallery illustrations as "plate 1" and so on.

Preparation of Artwork

3.15 ***Submitting artwork to the publisher.*** Authors preparing illustrations electronically must consult their publishers before submitting the files. Most publishers require hard copies along with artwork submitted in elec-

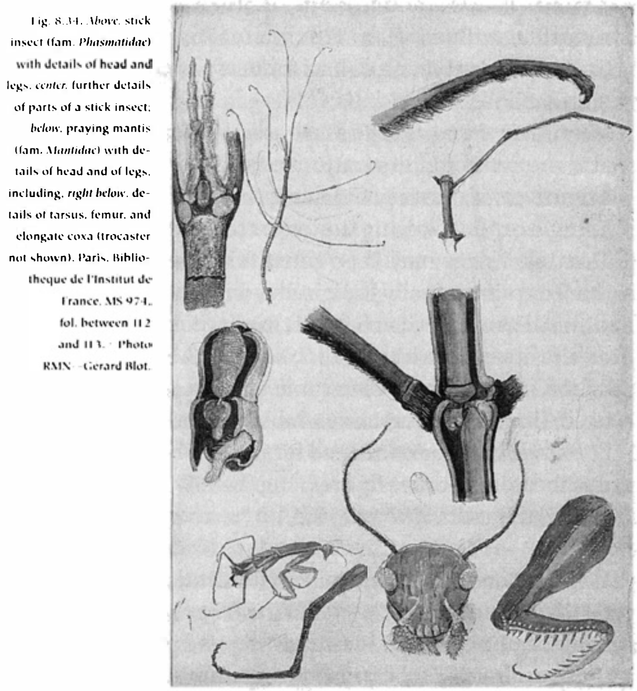

Fig. 8.34. *Above*, stick insect (fam. *Phasmatidae*) with details of head and legs; *center*, further details of parts of a stick insect; *below*, praying mantis (fam. *Mantidae*) with details of head and of legs, including, *right below*, details of tarsus, femur, and elongate coxa (trocaster not shown). Paris, Bibliotheque de l'Institut de France, MS 974, fol. between 112 and 113. · Photo RMN – Gerard Blot.

FIGURE 3.7. The relative position of each part in this composite figure is identified in the caption (see 3.24).

tronic form. (A still image may be required for an audiovisual file submitted as an enhancement to an electronic work.) A list of the software programs used to create the digital artwork should also be furnished, and the publisher should be made aware of any special fonts used in the construction of drawings, diagrams, maps, and so forth; the publisher may need the author to supply these fonts. See also 2.4, 2.33. Any author-supplied scans must be made in accordance with the publisher's guidelines, preferably by a professional graphic arts service; Chicago offers such guidelines on its books and journals websites. (Publishers usually prefer to scan illustrations themselves, to ensure consistent quality and to facilitate subsequent stages in the publication process.) For color art intended for print, transparencies are usually preferred. (Authors should check their contracts to ensure that color illustrations are permitted.)

Images obtained from the Internet—barring the unlikely scenario that they have been optimized for print—are usually not acceptable.

3.16 *Identifying artwork for the publisher.* Artwork submitted in electronic form should be saved in separate files with descriptive names that accurately identify each file; these names should be included on the corresponding hard copies along with the numbers that correspond to the figure callouts in the manuscript. Original artwork submitted as hard copy (e.g., photographic prints) must be clearly identified by the author or, failing that, by the publisher, in a manner that does not harm the original. Each item should be numbered on the back in pencil, very gently, making sure no mark is visible on the other side. If the paper does not accept lead pencil, a self-sticking label should be used. To be avoided are ballpoint pens, grease pencils, felt-tip markers, staples, or paper clips. For numbering, see 3.8–14; for captions, see 3.21–27.

3.17 *Author's inventory of artwork.* Along with artwork, the author should supply a complete list of illustrations, noting any that are to appear in color, any duplicates or extras, and any that are still to come. (Note, however, that for both books and journals, it is always expected and often mandatory that all illustrations be supplied at the time a manuscript is submitted; see 2.3.) If the work is to be published in print and electronic versions that will vary in the number of illustrations or in the use of color, that information must be noted in the inventory.

3.18 *Publisher's inventory of artwork.* As soon as the illustrations arrive from the author, publishers should check each one against the author's inventory (see 3.17). If an illustration is damaged or otherwise may not be reproducible, a better copy will need to be requested. (Missing illustrations will also need to be tracked down.) Each illustration should also be checked to be sure that it is properly numbered and labeled and that it corresponds correctly to each caption. (Authors should supply captions as a separate file; see 2.23.) If the author has not already done so, a photocopy should be made of each illustration furnished as a print, including all numbering and other information. (Publishers should beware, however, of using such photocopies to prepare or check caption or credit information unless the copies reproduce the original with total clarity. For these purposes, originals or high-resolution digital prints are best.) Finally, publishers should check for any necessary permissions (see 4.69–91, 4.92–101).

3.19 *Cropping and scaling and shading.* To make suggestions for reframing, or cropping, an image—that is, cutting it down to remove extraneous parts—authors should mark a printout or photocopy, or on an original print, use a tissue overlay to avoid damaging it. For images that need to be scaled, finished dimensions must be computed from the dimensions of the original. Authors need to be aware of this especially when preparing line art that contains labels or a key. The relations between font size, line weight (thickness, measured in points), and final printed size should be considered when drawings are created to ensure legibility. By scaling the image to its intended size and printing it out (or by using a photocopying machine), it is possible to get an idea of what the printed version will look like. Avoid hairline rules, which may disappear when printed. Likewise, avoid shading, which may print out poorly when reduced; use stripes, spots, and other black-and-white fill patterns in charts to distinguish areas from plain black or white. Many publishers, however, allow shading within line art submitted electronically in specific formats; consult your publisher's manuscript submission guidelines before preparing final art. See also 3.40–45.

3.20 ***Artwork to be redrawn by the publisher.*** Authors submitting line art (e.g., a line drawing or a chart) that the publisher has agreed to redraw should clearly mark any labels (words or symbols) to be altered or added on a photocopy or, if there are more than a few, in a separate document, keyed to the illustration. Where possible, wording, abbreviations, and symbols should be consistent with those used in the text. By a similar token, capitalization should be reserved for those terms that would be capitalized in running text. All names on a map that is to be redrawn should be prepared as a separate list, in which countries, provinces, cities, rivers, and so forth are divided into separate groups, each group arranged alphabetically.

Captions

3.21 ***Syntax, punctuation, and capitalization.*** A caption—the explanatory material that appears outside (usually below) an illustration—is distinct from a key and from a label, which appear within an illustration (see 3.7; see also 3.43). A caption may consist of a word or two, an incomplete or a complete sentence, several sentences, or a combination. No punctuation is needed after a caption consisting solely of an incomplete sentence. If one or more full sentences follow it, each (including the opening phrase) has closing punctuation. In a work in which most captions consist of full sentences, incomplete ones may be followed by a period for consistency. Captions should be capitalized in sentence style (see 8.156), but formal titles of works included in captions should be capitalized in headline style (see 3.22).

Wartime visit to Australia, winter 1940

The White Garden, reduced to its bare bones in early spring. The box hedges, which are still cut by hand, have to be carefully kept in scale with the small and complex garden as well as in keeping with the plants inside the "boxes."

3.22 ***Formal titles in captions.*** Titles of works should be presented according to the rules set forth in chapter 8 (see 8.154–95), whether standing alone or incorporated into a caption. Accordingly, most titles in English will appear in headline style (see 8.157), and many titles—including those for paintings, drawings, photographs, statues, and books—will be italicized; others will appear in roman type, enclosed in quotation marks (see 8.161). For foreign titles, see 11.3–8. Generic titles, however (as in the last example below), are not usually capitalized.

Frontispiece of *Christian Prayers and Meditations* (London: John Daye, 1569), showing Queen Elizabeth at prayer in her private chapel. Reproduced by permission of the Archbishop of Canterbury and the Trustees of the Lambeth Palace Library.

The head of Venus—a detail from Botticelli's *Birth of Venus*.

Francis Bedford, *Stratford on Avon Church from the Avon*, 1860s. Albumen print of collodion negative, 18.8 × 28.0 cm. Rochester, International Museum of Photography at George Eastman House.

Friedrich Overbeck and Peter Cornelius, double portrait, pencil drawing, 1812. Formerly in the Collection Lehnsen, Scarsdale, New York.

3.23 ***Separating illustration numbers from captions.*** Illustration numbers should be distinct from the captions they introduce. A period after the number usually suffices. If the number is distinguished typographically—for example, by boldface—the period may not be necessary. Extra space may be added between the number and the caption to ensure legibility, as in the second example. Whether *figure* is spelled out or abbreviated as *fig.* may be specified by journal style or, for books, may be up to the designer or editor or both.

Figure 3. Detailed stratigraphy and geochronology of the Dubawnt Supergroup.

PLATE 5 Palace of the Governors, Santa Fe, New Mexico. Undated photograph, circa 1900.

The word *figure* or *plate* is occasionally omitted—for example, in a book whose illustrations consist of a long series of continuously numbered photographs.

3.24 ***Using locators in captions.*** Italicize such terms as *top, bottom, left, right, above, below, left to right, clockwise from left,* or *inset* to identify elements within a single illustration or parts of a composite or, in print publications, an illustration that does not appear on the same page as the caption. If the term precedes the element it identifies, it should be followed by a comma or, if a list follows, a colon. When it appears in midsentence or follows the element, it may appear in parentheses. See figure 3.7.

Fig. 4. *Above left*, William Livingston; *above right*, Henry Brockholst Livingston; *below left*, John Jay; *below right*, Sarah Livingston Jay

Left to right: Madeleine K. Albright, Dennis Ross, Ehud Barak, and Yasir Arafat

Overleaf: The tall trees of the valley, planted by Russell Page, are reflected among the water lilies, *Nymphaea*, and pickerelweed, *Pontederia cordata*.

Figure 2. Schematic block diagram showing upper plate (*top*) and lower plate (*bottom*) of the Battle Lake thrust-tear fault system.

If the various parts of a figure have been assigned letters, these are used in a similar way, usually italicized (see also 3.12). Likewise, descriptive terms used to identify parts of a figure are usually italicized.

Figure 3. DNA sequence from a small region within the PC gene, showing the G→T transition at nucleotide 2229. The partial sequence of intron 13 is also shown. *A*, wild-type sequence; *B*, sequence from a PC-deficient Micmac homozygous for the mutation.

Figure 2. Duration of hospital stay for 22 patients colonized or infected with extended-spectrum β-lactamase-producing *Escherichia coli* isolates belonging to clonally related groups A (*gray bars*) and B (*white bars*). The black point represents the date when the microorganism was isolated, and the asterisk indicates stay in the geriatric care hospital.

In the last example, the letters identify the study groups and not parts of the figure and are therefore not italicized.

3.25 ***Identifying symbols or patterns used in figures.*** When symbols or patterns are used in a map or chart, they must be identified either in a key within the figure or in the caption. See figures 3.8, 3.9.

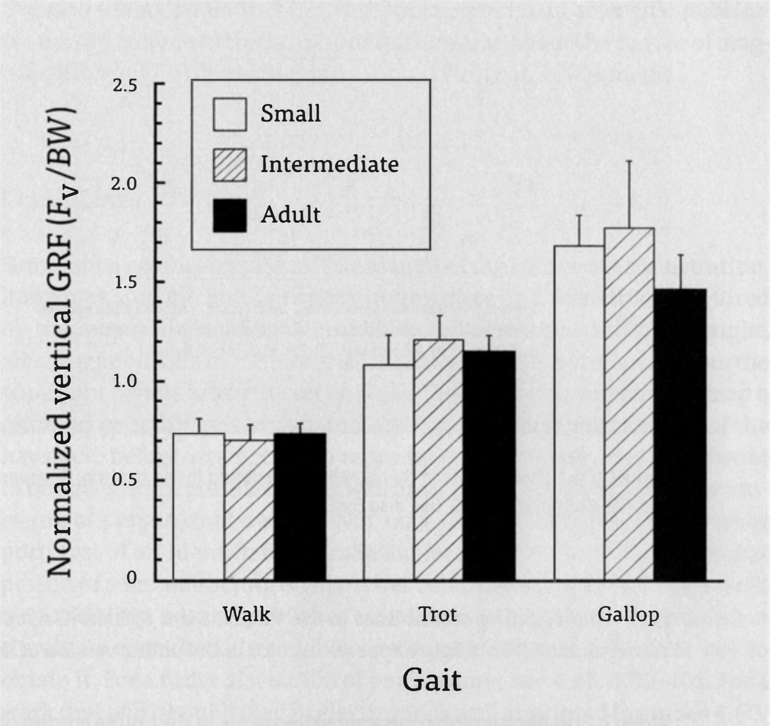

Figure 4. Normalized peak vertical forelimb GRFs versus gait. Normalized peak vertical forelimb GRFs for different gaits in the small, intermediate, and adult groups. Peak vertical forces (*F_V*) were normalized by dividing the forces by the body weight (*BW*) of the goat. Error bars represent ±1 sd.

FIGURE 3.8. A bar chart (also called a bar graph) with a key to the three types of bars (see 3.25). The caption includes the standard deviation (sd) for the T-shaped error bars. See also 3.40–45.

Fig. 9.4. Photosynthetic light response. Data are presented from shade-grown (■) and open-grown (□) culms of the current year.

or

Fig. 9.4. Photosynthetic light response. Data are presented from shade-grown (*solid squares*) and open-grown (*open squares*) culms of the current year.

3.26 ***Identifying electronic enhancements in captions.*** The caption to an illustration published both in print and online should add in the print version an indication of any electronic enhancement—such as color or video—available in the online version.

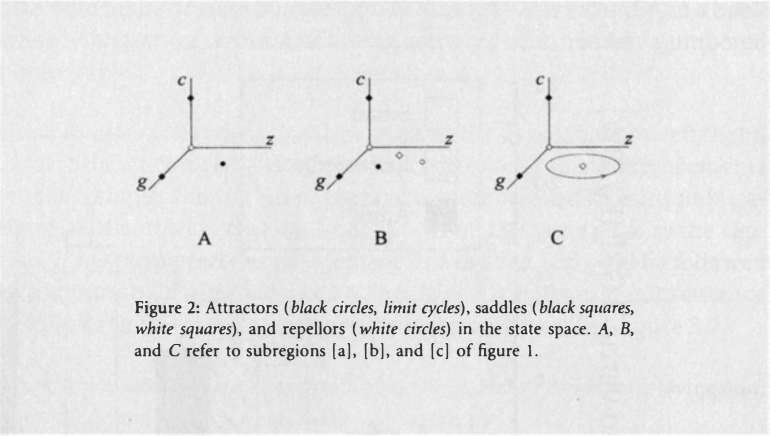

Figure 2: Attractors (*black circles, limit cycles*), saddles (*black squares, white squares*), and repellors (*white circles*) in the state space. *A*, *B*, and *C* refer to subregions [a], [b], and [c] of figure 1.

FIGURE 3.9. The symbols in this graph are identified in the caption. Compare figure 3.8 and the examples in 3.25. See also 3.40–45.

Fig. 3. Highlighting orbital lines in the Virtual Solar System (Gazit et al. 2005; Yair et al. 2001). This figure appears in color in the online version of this article.

Video 1. Still photograph from a video (available in the online edition of the *American Naturalist*) depicting a juvenile gorilla sniffing, tasting, and discarding *Nauclea* fruits. Apes are often very choosy about the fruits they eat, which can result in many discarded food items at "magnet" resources that have been handled or tested by previous visitors. Video by Thomas Breuer (Max Planck Institute and Wildlife Conservation Society).

The online version should generally specify which features are available only online—for example, in a list of an online journal article's contents, under a subheading "Enhancements" or "Online-Only Supplements." See also 1.73.

3.27 ***Including original dimensions in captions.*** When a caption provides the dimensions of an original work of art, these follow the work's medium and are listed in order of height, width, and (if applicable) depth. This information need appear only if relevant to the text, unless the rights holder requests that it be included (see 3.31).

Oil on canvas, 45 × 38 cm

Bronze, 49 × 22 × 16 in.

See also the example in 3.22. Photomicrographs, in scientific publications, may include in their captions information about the degree of magnification (e.g., original magnification, ×400; *bar*, 100 μm).

Credit Lines

3.28 *Sources and permissions.* A brief statement of the source of an illustration, known as a credit line, is usually appropriate and sometimes required by the owner of the illustration. Illustrative material under copyright, whether published or unpublished, usually requires permission from the copyright owner before it can be reproduced. You cannot simply snap a photo of your favorite Monet and use it to illustrate your history of the haystack; before attempting to reproduce the painting, you must write to obtain written permission, as well as a print of the work, from the museum, or person, that owns it. Nor may you use a photograph or other portrayal of an identifiable human subject without the consent of that person or someone acting on his or her behalf. Although it is the author's responsibility, not the publisher's, to obtain permissions, the publisher should be consulted about what needs permission and the best way to obtain it. For a fuller discussion of permissions, see 4.83, 4.92–101. For a work that will be published in electronic as well as printed form, see 4.60.

3.29 *Placement of credit lines.* A credit line usually appears at the end of a caption, sometimes in parentheses or in different type (or both). A photographer's name occasionally appears in small type parallel to the bottom or side of a photograph.

> Fig. 37. The myth that all children love dinosaurs is contradicted by this nineteenth-century scene of a visit to the monsters at Crystal Palace. (Cartoon by John Leech. "Punch's Almanac for 1855," *Punch* 28 [1855]: 8. Photo courtesy of the Newberry Library, Chicago.)

If most or all of the illustrations in a work are from a single source, that fact may be stated in a note or, in the case of a book, in the preface or acknowledgments or on the copyright page. In a heavily illustrated book, all credits are sometimes listed together in the back matter (see 1.4) or, more rarely, in the front matter—sometimes as part of a list of illustrations (see 3.37). Note, however, that some permissions grantors stipulate placement of the credit with the illustration itself; others may charge a higher fee if the credit appears elsewhere.

3.30 *Crediting author as source of illustration.* Although illustrations created by the author do not need credit lines, such wording as "Photo by author" may be appropriate if other illustrations in the same work require credit. In works with more than one author, such wording may include the name of a particular author.

3.31 *Crediting material that requires permission.* Unless fair use applies (see 4.77–87), an illustration reproduced from a published work under copyright always requires formal permission. In addition to author, title, publication details, and (occasionally) copyright date, the credit line should include any page or figure number. If the work being credited is listed in the bibliography or reference list, only a shortened form need appear in the credit line (see third example). For material acquired from a commercial agency, see 3.35. For proper citation style, see chapters 14 and 15.

Reproduced by permission from Mark Girouard, *Life in the English Country House: A Social and Architectural History* (New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1978), 162.

Reproduced by permission from George B. Schaller et al., *The Giant Pandas of Wolong* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1985), 52. © 1985 by the University of Chicago.

Reprinted by permission from Duncan (1999, fig. 2).

Some permissions grantors request specific language in the credit line. In a work with many illustrations, such language in one or two credit lines may conflict with consistent usage in the rest. Editorial discretion should then be exercised; in giving full credit to the source, an editor may follow the spirit rather than the letter. (Where the grantor is intractable, it may be simpler to use the language requested.)

3.32 *Crediting commissioned material.* Work commissioned by the author—such as maps, photographs, drawings, or charts—is usually produced under a "work made for hire" contract (see 4.9–12). Even if no credit is required under such an arrangement, professional courtesy dictates mentioning the creator (unless the illustration is legibly signed and the signature reproduced).

Map by Kevin Hand   Photograph by Ted Lacey   Drawing by Barbara Smith

3.33 *Crediting material obtained free of charge.* For material that the author has obtained free and without restrictions on its use, the credit line may use the word *courtesy*.

Photograph courtesy of Ford Motor Company

Mies at the groundbreaking ceremony of the National Gallery, September 1965. Courtesy of Reinhard Friedrich.

3.34 ***Crediting material in the public domain.*** Illustrations from works in the public domain (see 4.19–32) may be reproduced without permission. For readers' information, however, a credit line is appropriate.

Illustration by Joseph Pennell for Henry James, *English Hours* (Boston, 1905), facing p. 82.

Reprinted from John D. Shortridge, *Italian Harpsichord-Building in the 16th and 17th Centuries*, US National Museum Bulletin 225 (Washington, DC, 1960).

3.35 ***Crediting agency material.*** Photographs of prints, drawings, paintings, and the like obtained from a commercial agency usually require a credit line.

Woodcut from Historical Pictures Service, Chicago
Photograph from Wide World Photos

3.36 ***Crediting adapted material.*** An author creating an illustration adjusted from, or using data from, another source should credit that source for reasons of professional courtesy and readers' information.

Figure 1.2. Weight increase of captive pandas during the first years of life. (Data from New York Zoological Park; National Zoological Park; Giron 1980.)

Adapted from Pauly (2001, fig. 5.5).

Lists of Illustrations

3.37 ***When to include a list of illustrations.*** For book-length printed works, the criterion for when to include a list of illustrations is whether the illustrations are of intrinsic interest apart from the text they illustrate. A book on Roman architecture, illustrated by photographs of ancient buildings, would benefit from a list. Electronic works as a matter of course, on the other hand, will often include a list as an aid to navigation. In a printed work, a list of illustrations, if included, usually follows the table of contents. A list of illustrations may occasionally double as a list of credits if these do not appear with the illustrations themselves (see 3.29). For guidelines and examples, see 1.38 and figures 1.6, 1.7.

3.38 *Listing illustrations from a gallery.* Illustrations that are to appear in printed galleries are not always listed separately. For example, in a book containing interspersed line art and two photo galleries, a line reading "Photographs follow pages 228 and 332" might be inserted after the detailed list of figures. If all the illustrations were in galleries, that line could appear at the end of the table of contents (see fig. 1.5). (All illustrations, including those in galleries, should be listed if integral to the text.)

3.39 *Shortening captions for a list of illustrations.* In the list of illustrations, long captions should be shortened to a single line (or two at the most). The number at the end of each of the two entry examples indicates the page on which the illustration would be found.

[*Caption*] Fig. 18. The White Garden, reduced to its bare bones in early spring. The box hedges, which are still cut by hand, have to be carefully kept in scale with the small and complex garden as well as in keeping with the plants inside the "boxes."

[*Entry in list*] 18. The White Garden in early spring 43

[*Caption*] Plate 21. The tall trees of the valley, planted by Russell Page, are reflected among the water lilies, *Nymphaea*, and pickerelweed, *Pontederia cordata*.

[*Entry in list*] 21. Page's tall trees reflected among water lilies 75

Charts

3.40 *What is a chart?* A chart, also called a graph, is a device that presents data in a simple, comprehensible form—often along a set of *x* and *y* axes. A chart is considered line art and should be numbered and labeled as a figure (fig. 1, fig. 2, etc.). It should be used only if it summarizes the data more effectively than mere words can. While integral to the text, it should, like a table, make sense on its own terms. For guidance in chart design, consult Edward R. Tufte, *The Visual Display of Quantitative Information* (bibliog. 2.2). Charts intended for black-and-white reproduction should not be produced in color. For an example of a typical chart, see figure 3.8. Figure 3.9—essentially a three-part graph—is a less typical example.

3.41 *Consistency among charts.* Where two or more charts are used within a work, especially if they deal with comparable material, they should follow a consistent style in graphics and typography. Whatever graphic device is used, elements of the same kind must always be represented in the same way. Different visual effects should be used only to distinguish one element from another, never just for variety.

3.42 ***Axes and curves in graphs.*** Both the *x* (horizontal) and the *y* (vertical) axes should be labeled (as in fig. 3.8); the axes serve a function similar to that of column heads and stubs in a table (see 3.49). The label on the *y* axis is read from the bottom up. Curves are usually presented in graphically distinct forms—for example, one may be a continuous line, another a broken line. The elements in a bar chart or a pie chart that correspond to curves—the bars or the wedges—are also usually distinct. Black-and-white fill elements should be used rather than shading unless the publisher allows shading in specially prepared electronic files (see 3.19). All such elements should be labeled or else identified in a key or in the caption (see 3.7, 3.25).

3.43 ***Chart titles and labels.*** The title of a chart appears as part of the caption, immediately following the figure number, and is capitalized sentence-style (see 8.156). See 3.7; compare 3.52. Labels, the descriptive items within a chart, are normally lowercased (with the exception of proper nouns or other terms that would be capitalized in running text); if phrases, they may be capitalized sentence-style. Labels may be explained or discussed in a caption as needed (as in fig. 3.9).

3.44 ***Abbreviations in labels.*** Abbreviations and symbols may be used in labels as long as they are easily recognizable or explained in a key or in the caption. A form such as "US$millions" may be more appropriate for nonspecialized (or non-English-speaking) readers than "US$M," but the shorter form is acceptable if readers will find it clear and it is used consistently. Numbers and abbreviations are covered in chapters 9 and 10.

3.45 ***Genealogical and pedigree charts.*** Some charts show relationships between elements in a way that cannot be conveniently arranged along axes or into rows and columns. Charts that show family or genetic structure, in particular, may require a different visual arrangement that highlights multiple relationships. A genealogical chart (often called a table and treated as such in previous editions of this manual), for example, attempts to show important relationships within a family or several families by means of branching and connecting lines. Figure 3.10, for instance, illustrates the complicated connection of Constantine the Great to Hilderic, King of the Vandals. These charts require careful planning to illustrate relationships with minimal crossing of lines or extraneous data and, for a printed work, to remain within a reproducible shape and size. Similar to the genealogi-

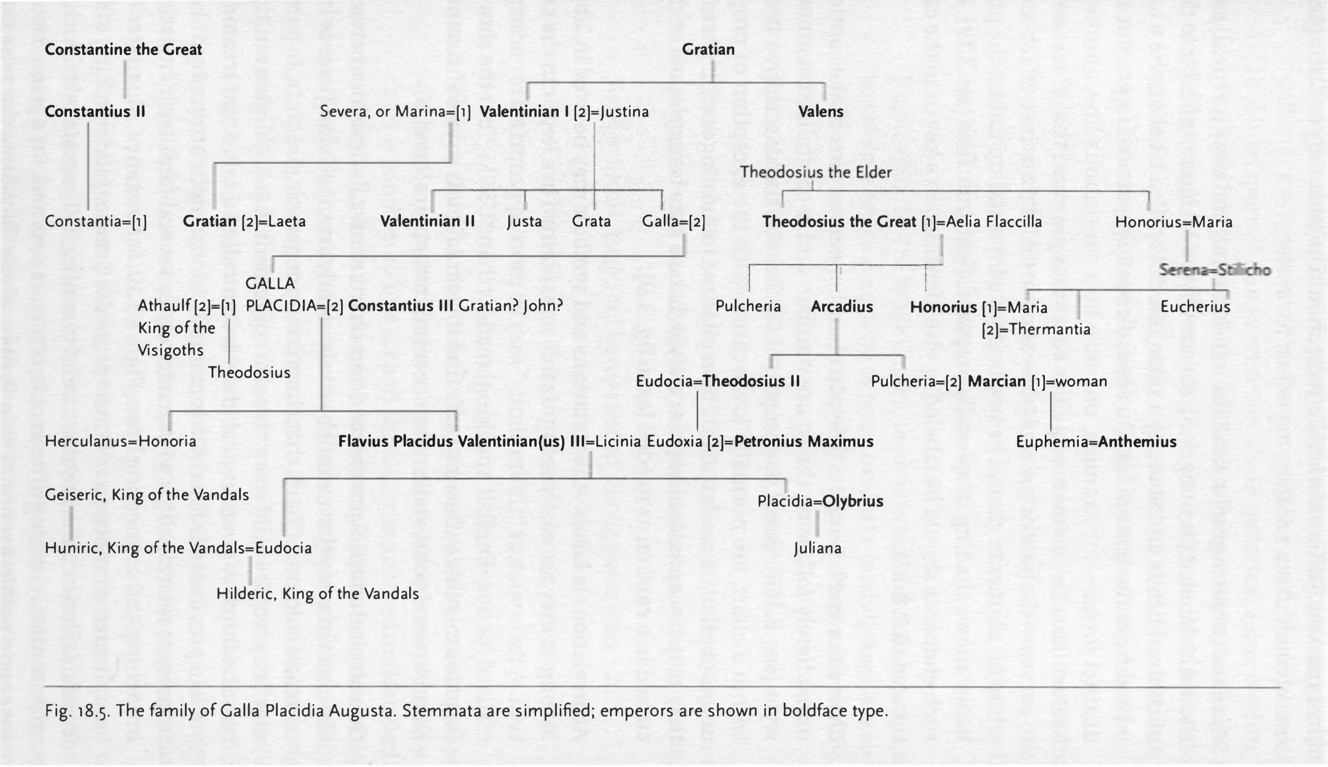
Constantine the Great
Gratian
Constantius II
Severa, or Marina=[1] **Valentinian I** [2]=Justina
Valens
Theodosius the Elder
Constantia=[1]
Gratian [2]=Laeta
Valentinian II
Justa
Grata
Galla=[2]
Theodosius the Great [1]=Aelia Flaccilla
Honorius=Maria
Serena=Stilicho
GALLA
Athaulf [2]=[1] PLACIDIA=[2] **Constantius III** Gratian? John?
King of the
Visigoths
Theodosius
Pulcheria
Arcadius
Honorius [1]=Maria
[2]=Thermantia
Eucherius
Eudocia=**Theodosius II**
Pulcheria=[2] **Marcian** [1]=woman
Herculanus=Honoria
Flavius Placidus Valentinian(us) III=Licinia Eudoxia [2]=**Petronius Maximus**
Euphemia=**Anthemius**
Geiseric, King of the Vandals
Placidia=**Olybrius**
Huniric, King of the Vandals=Eudocia
Juliana
Hilderic, King of the Vandals

Fig. 18.5. The family of Galla Placidia Augusta. Stemmata are simplified; emperors are shown in boldface type.

FIGURE 3.10. A genealogical chart (see 3.45).

cal chart is the pedigree chart, used mainly in genealogical works. These fan-shaped diagrams illustrate the ancestry of a given person, typically detailing the two parents, four grandparents, eight great-grandparents, and sixteen great-great-grandparents. They may also show several generations of offspring from a single pair of ancestors and can be used to trace the inheritance of a trait or disorder. These special types of charts should be checked carefully for sense, consistency, and correlation to the surrounding text.

Tables

Introduction

3.46 ***Table preparation.*** This section describes and illustrates the basic elements of a table and accepted ways of editing, arranging, and typesetting these elements. No one table in this chapter should be taken as a prototype; all merely illustrate workable patterns and may be adapted according to the data and the potential users of the tables. Though most tables can be created using the table editor in a word processor, they are nonetheless expensive (i.e., time-consuming) both to typeset and to correct in proofs and should therefore be designed and constructed with care. It is wise to consult the publisher on the appropriate number, size, and physical form of any tables to be included in a work. A table should be as simple as the material allows and understandable on its own; even a reader unfamiliar with the material presented should be able to make general sense of a table. The text may highlight the main points in a table and summarize its message but should not duplicate the details. For excellent advice on table preparation, consult the *Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association* (bibliog. 1.1). For specific instructions on preparing electronic table files, consult your publisher. Chicago offers instructions for table preparation on its journals website.

3.47 ***Use of tables.*** A table offers an excellent means of presenting a large number of individual, similar facts so that they are easy to scan and compare. A simple table can give information that would require several paragraphs to present textually, and it can do so more clearly. An electronic table allows presentation of even more data, well beyond what may be practical in print. Tables are most appropriate for scientific, statistical, financial, and other technical material. In certain contexts—if, for example, exact values are not essential to an author's argument—a graph or a bar chart (see 3.40), or plain text, may more effectively present the data.

3.48 *Consistency among tables.* Because a prime virtue of tables is easy comparison, consistency in style is indispensable both within one table and among several. A consistent style for titles, column heads, abbreviations, and the like should be selected and followed for all tables in a single work. Similarly, choices related to line spacing, indention, fonts, rules, and other distinguishing features must be made uniformly for all tables in a work. Certain tables, however, may require rules or other devices not needed in other tables in the same work.

The Parts of a Table

3.49 *Table structure and use.* A table normally consists of rows and columns, which are analogous to the horizontal (x) and vertical (y) axes of a graph, respectively. The data in most tables include two sets of variables. One set of variables is defined in the top row of a table, in the column headings (see 3.54); the other set is defined along the far left-hand column of the table by the stub headings (see 3.57). If the data consist of dependent and independent variables, the independent variables are usually presented in the stub column, though this choice is sometimes limited by the physical dimensions of the table (see 3.84). The intersection between a row defined by a stub head and a column defined by a column head is a cell (sometimes called a data cell). See figure 3.11.

3.50 *Horizontal and vertical rules.* To produce a clear, professional-looking table, rules should be used sparingly. Many tables will require just three rules, all of them horizontal—one at the very top of the table, below the title and above the column heads; one just below the column heads; and one at the bottom of the table, along the bottom of the last row, above any notes to the table. Additional horizontal rules may be required to separate spanner heads from column heads (see 3.55) or to enclose cut-in heads (see 3.56). A rule above a row of totals is traditional but not essential (unless required by a journal or series style). See also 3.61. The double rule traditionally used between title and column heads, still used by some journals, is seen less than it once was. Vertical rules should be used sparingly—for example, when a table is doubled up (see 3.84) or as an aid to comprehension in an especially long or complex table (such as the ten-page hyphenation guide at the end of chapter 7 of this manual; see 7.85).

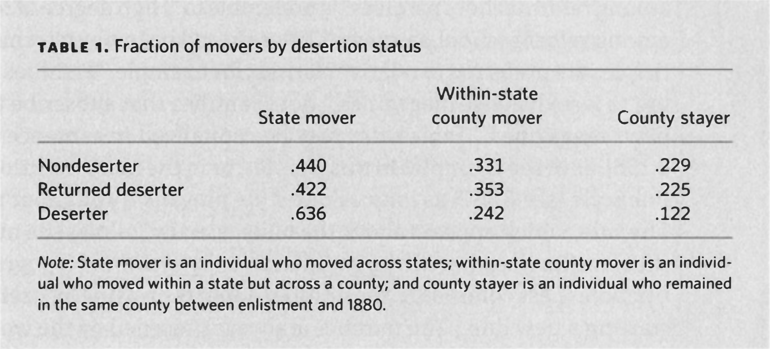

TABLE 1. Fraction of movers by desertion status

	State mover	Within-state county mover	County stayer
Nondeserter	.440	.331	.229
Returned deserter	.422	.353	.225
Deserter	.636	.242	.122

Note: State mover is an individual who moved across states; within-state county mover is an individual who moved within a state but across a county; and county stayer is an individual who remained in the same county between enlistment and 1880.

FIGURE 3.11. A four-column table with three column headings (*top row*), three stub headings (*far left-hand column*), and nine data cells (see 3.49).

3.51 ***Numbering tables.*** Tables should be numbered separately from any illustrations (table 1, table 2, etc.). In a book with many tables, or with chapters by different authors, double numeration by chapter is often used, as it is for illustrations (table 1.1, table 1.2, . . . , table 2.2, table 2.3, . . . , etc.; see 3.11). For table titles, see 3.52. Every table should be cited in the text by the number, either directly or parenthetically.

The first column of table 2 displays the results of a model predicting the age trajectory of health, controlling for differences by cohort and excluding all other predictors.

Ethnographic observation brought to light four analytically distinct but empirically interrelated types of worker response to the new regimes (see table 5.3).

Note that the word *table* is lowercased in text references. Table numbers follow the order in which the tables are to appear in the text, and first mentions should follow that order as well. (But where context demands a reference to a table in a subsequent chapter of a book, such wording as “A different set of variables is presented in chapter 5, table 10” may be appropriate.) Each table, even in a closely related set, should be given its own number (tables 14, 15, and 16, *rather than* tables 14A–C). A simple list or other tabular matter that requires only two columns can usually be presented in the run of text and left unnumbered and untitled (see, e.g., the two-column list at 1.4 in this manual).

3.52 ***Table titles.*** Titles should be as succinct as possible and should not suggest any interpretation of the data. For example, a title such as “Recidivism among reform school parolees" is preferable to "High degree of recidivism among reform school parolees." Titles should be in noun form, and participles are preferred to relative clauses: for example, "Families subscribing to weekly news magazines," not "Families that subscribe to weekly news magazines." Table titles may be capitalized in sentence style (see 8.156), as in the examples in this chapter, or in the more traditional headline style (see 8.157) as long as one style prevails throughout the work. The title, which appears above the table, usually follows the number on the same line, separated by punctuation or by space and typographic distinction. (Less commonly, the number appears on a line by itself, the title starting a new line.) The number is always preceded by the word *table*.

Table 6. Ratios of parental income coefficients to SAT score coefficients

Table 12 Fertilizer treatment effects on *Lythrum salicaria* and *Penthorum sedoides*

3.53 *Parenthetical information in table titles.* Important explanatory or statistical information is often included in parentheses in a title. Such material should be set in sentence style even if the main title is in headline style. More detailed information should go in a note to the table (see 3.76, 3.77).

Federal employees in the Progressive Era (total plus selected agencies)
Scan statistics S_L of varying lengths L for sib-pair data (broad diagnosis)
Gender as a factor in successful business transactions ($N = 4{,}400$)

For the significance of *N* used in statistical tables, see 3.83.

3.54 *Column heads.* Space being at a premium, column heads should be as brief as possible and are best capitalized sentence-style (as in all examples in this chapter). As long as their meaning is clear to readers, abbreviations may be used as needed. The first column (the stub) does not always require a head (see 3.57). In a work that includes a number of tables, column heads should be treated consistently. Like table titles, a column head may require an indication of the unit of measurement used or some other clarification of the data in the column. Such material, which may consist of a symbol or an abbreviation ($, %, km, *n*, and so on), should follow the column head in parentheses. See figure 3.12. Parentheses may also be used in column heads when some of the data in the cells are in parentheses. For example, a column head might read "Children with positive results, % (no. positive/no. tested)" and a cell under this head could contain "27.3 (6/22)." If columns must be numbered for text reference, use arabic numerals in parentheses, centered immediately below the column head, above the rule separating the head from the column (see also 3.84).

TABLE 2. Real-world magnitudes of the relationship between tort reform and death rates

Tort reform	Annual death rates (%)	Number of deaths in 2000	Deaths across all years
Cap on noneconomic damages	−3.54	−333	−5,242
Higher evidence standard for punitive damages	−2.57	−982	−11,798
Product liability reform	−3.83	−1,267	−16,841
Prejudgment interest reform	−4.88	−647	−9,060
Collateral source reform			
Offset awards	+4.71	+938	+14,160
Admit evidence	+2.43	+294	+4,468
Net effect		−1,998	−24,314

Note: Values presented are average changes. These computations are based on the coefficients from the primary regression (table 3) and the average annual populations and average annual death rates in the states that had each reform. The sums of the individual reforms differ by one from the net effects owing to rounding.

FIGURE 3.12. A four-column table with two levels of stub headings (*first column*). Note the parenthetical indication in the second column head, specifying percentages for the values in that column (see 3.54).

3.55 ***Spanner heads.*** When a table demands column heads of two or more levels—when related columns require both a collective head and individual heads—spanner heads, or spanners (sometimes called decked heads), are used. A horizontal rule, called a spanner rule (or straddle), appears between the spanner and the column heads to show which columns the spanner applies to (see fig. 3.13). For ease of reading, spanner heads should seldom exceed two levels.

3.56 ***Cut-in heads.*** Cut-in heads, spanning all columns but the first, may be used as subheads within a table. They usually appear between horizontal rules (see fig. 3.14), though extra vertical space above each head may be used instead. An exceptionally long table with one or more cut-in heads may be a candidate for division into two or more tables.

3.57 ***Stub entries.*** The left-hand column of a table, known as the stub, is usually a vertical listing of categories about which information is given in the following columns. If all the entries are of like kind, the stub usually carries a column head (e.g., "Tort reform" in fig. 3.12); even a general head such as "Characteristic" or "Variable" or "Year" aids readers. If the entries are self-explanatory (as in figs. 3.11 and 3.14), a head may be

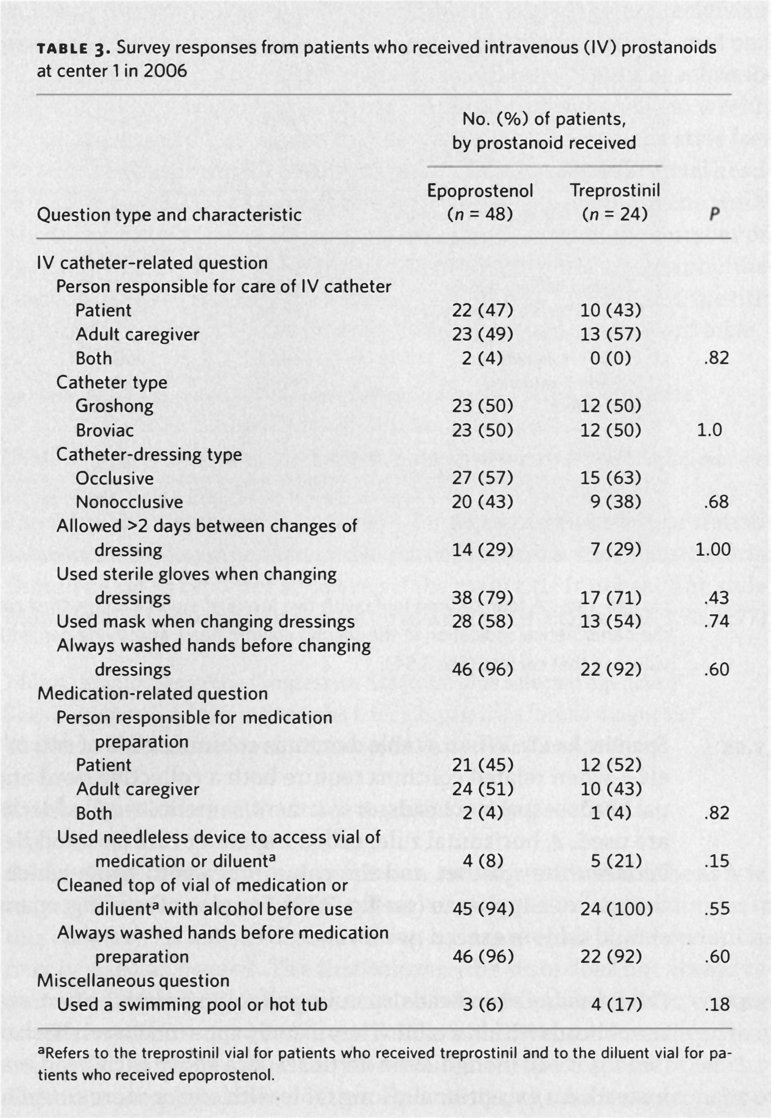

TABLE 3. Survey responses from patients who received intravenous (IV) prostanoids at center 1 in 2006

Question type and characteristic	No. (%) of patients, by prostanoid received		*P*
	Epoprostenol (*n* = 48)	Treprostinil (*n* = 24)	
IV catheter-related question			
Person responsible for care of IV catheter			
Patient	22 (47)	10 (43)	
Adult caregiver	23 (49)	13 (57)	
Both	2 (4)	0 (0)	.82
Catheter type			
Groshong	23 (50)	12 (50)	
Broviac	23 (50)	12 (50)	1.0
Catheter-dressing type			
Occlusive	27 (57)	15 (63)	
Nonocclusive	20 (43)	9 (38)	.68
Allowed >2 days between changes of dressing	14 (29)	7 (29)	1.00
Used sterile gloves when changing dressings	38 (79)	17 (71)	.43
Used mask when changing dressings	28 (58)	13 (54)	.74
Always washed hands before changing dressings	46 (96)	22 (92)	.60
Medication-related question			
Person responsible for medication preparation			
Patient	21 (45)	12 (52)	
Adult caregiver	24 (51)	10 (43)	
Both	2 (4)	1 (4)	.82
Used needleless device to access vial of medication or diluent[a]	4 (8)	5 (21)	.15
Cleaned top of vial of medication or diluent[a] with alcohol before use	45 (94)	24 (100)	.55
Always washed hands before medication preparation	46 (96)	22 (92)	.60
Miscellaneous question			
Used a swimming pool or hot tub	3 (6)	4 (17)	.18

[a] Refers to the treprostinil vial for patients who received treprostinil and to the diluent vial for patients who received epoprostenol.

FIGURE 3.13. A four-column table with a spanner head across the second and third columns, separated from the column heads by a horizontal rule (see 3.55). Note the three levels of stub headings (see 3.58). Note also that the spanner head specifies two units for each column—number and, in parentheses, percentage (see 3.54).

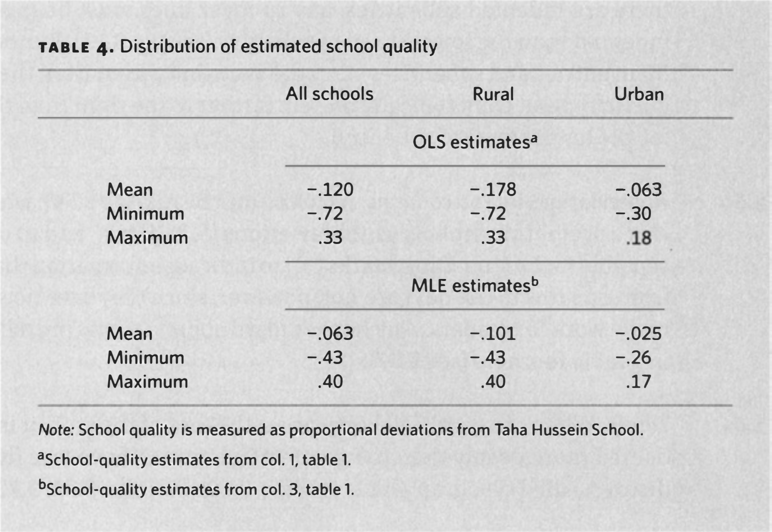

TABLE 4. Distribution of estimated school quality

	All schools	Rural	Urban
		OLS estimates[a]	
Mean	−.120	−.178	−.063
Minimum	−.72	−.72	−.30
Maximum	.33	.33	.18
		MLE estimates[b]	
Mean	−.063	−.101	−.025
Minimum	−.43	−.43	−.26
Maximum	.40	.40	.17

Note: School quality is measured as proportional deviations from Taha Hussein School.

[a] School-quality estimates from col. 1, table 1.

[b] School-quality estimates from col. 3, table 1.

FIGURE 3.14. A four-column table with two cut-in heads ("OLS estimates" and "MLE estimates") across three columns, separated by horizontal rules (see 3.56); a general note (see 3.76); and two lettered footnotes (see 3.77).

omitted from the stub; a head may also be omitted if the entries are too unlike (as in fig. 3.16). If the stub entries are words, they are capitalized sentence-style. Unless they are questions, they carry no end punctuation. They should be consistent in syntax: Authors, Publishers, Printers (*not* Authors, Publishing concerns, Operates printshop).

3.58 ***Stub entries with subheads.*** Items in the stub may form a straight sequential list (e.g., all the states in the Union listed alphabetically) or a classified list (e.g., the states listed by geographic region, with a subhead above each region). The first word in a subentry as well as in a main entry is capitalized, to avoid confusion with runover lines. Subentries are further distinguished from main entries by being indented (as in fig. 3.12), or italics may be used for the main entries and roman for the subentries. A combination of italics and indention may also be used, especially if subsubentries are required. There is generally no need for colons following main entries, but a particular journal style may require them. See also 3.59.

3.59 ***Runover lines in stub columns.*** If there are no subentries, runover lines in stub entries should be indented (typically by one em in typeset copy). Only if there is extra space between rows should runovers be set flush left. If there are indented subentries, any runover lines must be more deeply indented than the lowest level of subentry (see fig. 3.12). Runovers from main entries and subentries carry the same indention from the left margin (in typeset copy, typically one em farther to the right than the indent for the lowest level of subentry).

3.60 ***Abbreviations in stub columns.*** As in column heads (see 3.54), where space is at a premium, symbols or abbreviations ($, %, km, *n*, and so on) are acceptable in the stub. Ditto marks (" ") to indicate information that repeats from one row to the next are not, however, since they save no space and make work for readers. Any nonstandard abbreviations must be defined in a table footnote (see 3.77).

3.61 ***Totals.*** When the word *Total* appears at the foot of the stub, it is often indented more deeply than the greatest indention above (see fig. 3.21) or distinguished typographically (see fig. 3.15). See also 3.72, 3.73.

3.62 ***Using leaders with stub entries.*** Leaders—several spaced periods following a stub entry—are sometimes used in a table where the connection between the stub entries and the rows they apply to would otherwise be unclear. Some journals routinely use leaders in stubs (see fig. 3.16); books use them more rarely. Another practice—used routinely by some journals—is to apply shading to every other row.

3.63 ***Table body and cells.*** Strictly speaking, the table body includes all rows, columns, and heads. Nonetheless, it is often convenient to consider the body of a table as consisting of the points of intersection between the stub entries and the column headings—the real substance of the table. These intersections are called cells (or data cells). The fifth cell in the fourth column of the table in figure 3.12, for example, contains the datum "+14,160." Though cells are usually occupied by data, they may be empty (see 3.65).

3.64 ***Column data.*** Whenever possible, columns should carry the same kinds of information. For instance, amounts of money should appear in one column, percentages in another, and information expressed in words in another (though two types of data can share the same column, as in the table in fig. 3.13; see 3.67). No column should contain identical information in all the cells; such information is better handled in a footnote.

3.65 ***Empty cells.*** If a column head does not apply to one of the entries in the stub, the cell should either be left blank or, better, filled in by an em dash

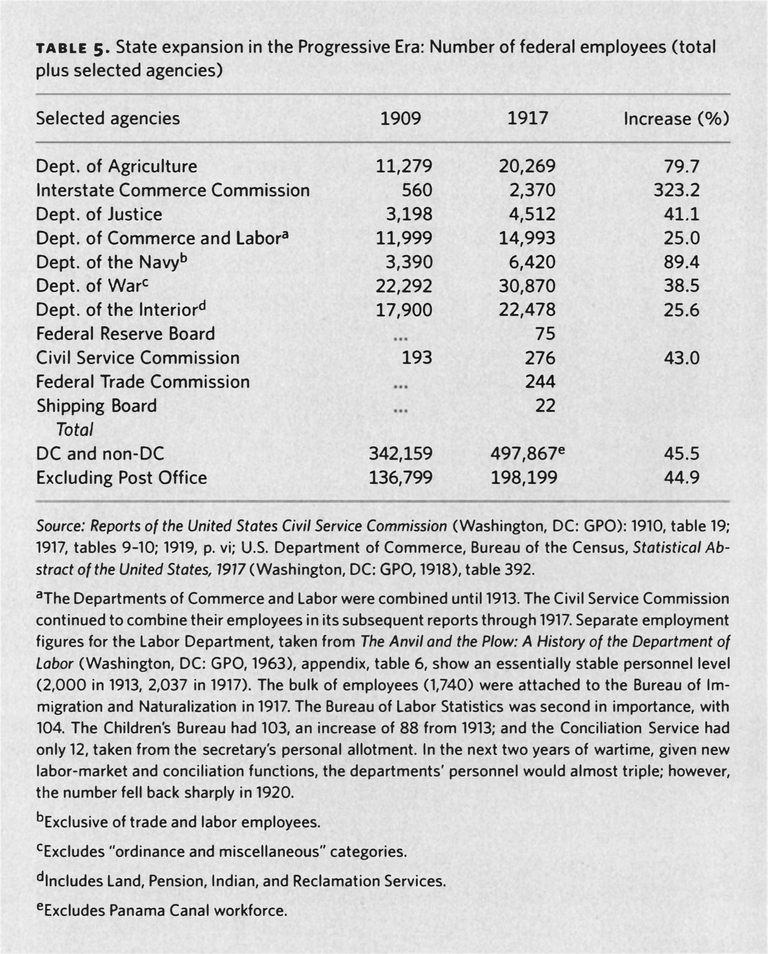

TABLE 5. State expansion in the Progressive Era: Number of federal employees (total plus selected agencies)

Selected agencies	1909	1917	Increase (%)
Dept. of Agriculture	11,279	20,269	79.7
Interstate Commerce Commission	560	2,370	323.2
Dept. of Justice	3,198	4,512	41.1
Dept. of Commerce and Labor[a]	11,999	14,993	25.0
Dept. of the Navy[b]	3,390	6,420	89.4
Dept. of War[c]	22,292	30,870	38.5
Dept. of the Interior[d]	17,900	22,478	25.6
Federal Reserve Board	...	75	
Civil Service Commission	193	276	43.0
Federal Trade Commission	...	244	
Shipping Board	...	22	
Total			
DC and non-DC	342,159	497,867[e]	45.5
Excluding Post Office	136,799	198,199	44.9

Source: Reports of the United States Civil Service Commission (Washington, DC: GPO): 1910, table 19; 1917, tables 9–10; 1919, p. vi; U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of the Census, *Statistical Abstract of the United States, 1917* (Washington, DC: GPO, 1918), table 392.

[a] The Departments of Commerce and Labor were combined until 1913. The Civil Service Commission continued to combine their employees in its subsequent reports through 1917. Separate employment figures for the Labor Department, taken from *The Anvil and the Plow: A History of the Department of Labor* (Washington, DC: GPO, 1963), appendix, table 6, show an essentially stable personnel level (2,000 in 1913, 2,037 in 1917). The bulk of employees (1,740) were attached to the Bureau of Immigration and Naturalization in 1917. The Bureau of Labor Statistics was second in importance, with 104. The Children's Bureau had 103, an increase of 88 from 1913; and the Conciliation Service had only 12, taken from the secretary's personal allotment. In the next two years of wartime, given new labor-market and conciliation functions, the departments' personnel would almost triple; however, the number fell back sharply in 1920.

[b] Exclusive of trade and labor employees.

[c] Excludes "ordinance and miscellaneous" categories.

[d] Includes Land, Pension, Indian, and Reclamation Services.

[e] Excludes Panama Canal workforce.

FIGURE 3.15. Four-column table with *Total* appearing in italics, to distinguish it from the stub entries above and below. Compare figure 3.21. See also 3.61. Also note the use of ellipsis dots for cells with no data; cells for which data is not applicable are blank. See 3.65.

or three unspaced ellipsis dots. If a distinction is needed between "not applicable" and "no data available," a blank cell may be used for the former and an em dash or ellipsis dots for "no data" (see fig. 3.15). If this distinction is not clear from the text, a note may be added to the table. (Alternatively, the abbreviations *n/a* and *n.d.* may be used, with definitions given in a note.) A zero means literally that the quantity in a cell is zero (see figs. 3.13, 3.16).

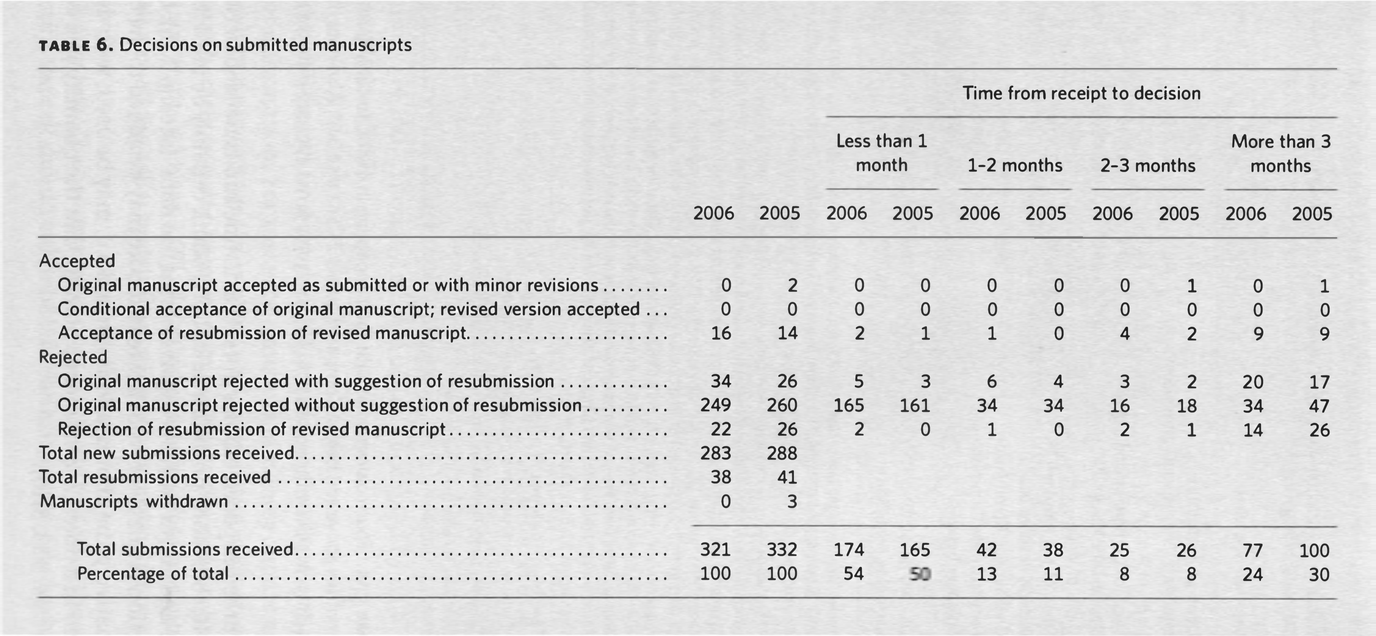

TABLE 6. Decisions on submitted manuscripts

			Time from receipt to decision							
			Less than 1 month		1-2 months		2-3 months		More than 3 months	
	2006	2005	2006	2005	2006	2005	2006	2005	2006	2005
Accepted										
Original manuscript accepted as submitted or with minor revisions	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
Conditional acceptance of original manuscript; revised version accepted	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Acceptance of resubmission of revised manuscript	16	14	2	1	1	0	4	2	9	9
Rejected										
Original manuscript rejected with suggestion of resubmission	34	26	5	3	6	4	3	2	20	17
Original manuscript rejected without suggestion of resubmission	249	260	165	161	34	34	16	18	34	47
Rejection of resubmission of revised manuscript	22	26	2	0	1	0	2	1	14	26
Total new submissions received	283	288								
Total resubmissions received	38	41								
Manuscripts withdrawn	0	3								
Total submissions received	321	332	174	165	42	38	25	26	77	100
Percentage of total	100	100	54	50	13	11	8	8	24	30

FIGURE 3.16. An eleven-column table with three levels of column heads, separated by spanner rules (see 3.55), and with leader dots from stub entries (see 3.62). Note also the two rows of totals; the rule above these rows is common but by no means required (see 3.61).

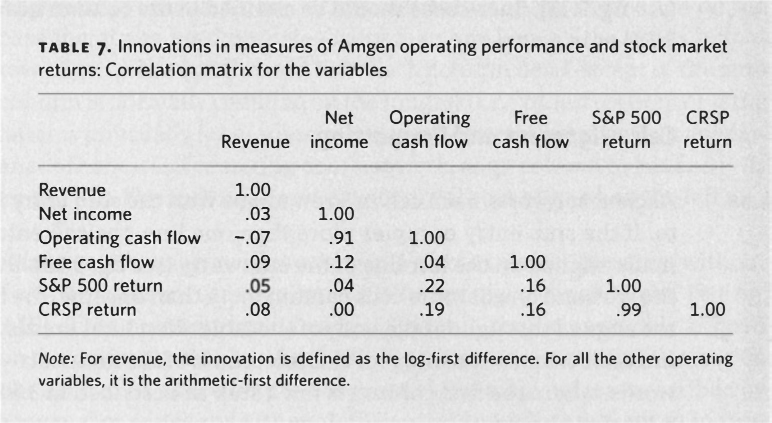

TABLE 7. Innovations in measures of Amgen operating performance and stock market returns: Correlation matrix for the variables

	Revenue	Net income	Operating cash flow	Free cash flow	S&P 500 return	CRSP return
Revenue	1.00					
Net income	.03	1.00				
Operating cash flow	−.07	.91	1.00			
Free cash flow	.09	.12	.04	1.00		
S&P 500 return	.05	.04	.22	.16	1.00	
CRSP return	.08	.00	.19	.16	.99	1.00

Note: For revenue, the innovation is defined as the log-first difference. For all the other operating variables, it is the arithmetic-first difference.

FIGURE 3.17. A seven-column matrix, in which the six column heads are identical to the six stub entries. Those cells that repeat order-independent relationships from other cells are left blank. See 3.66.

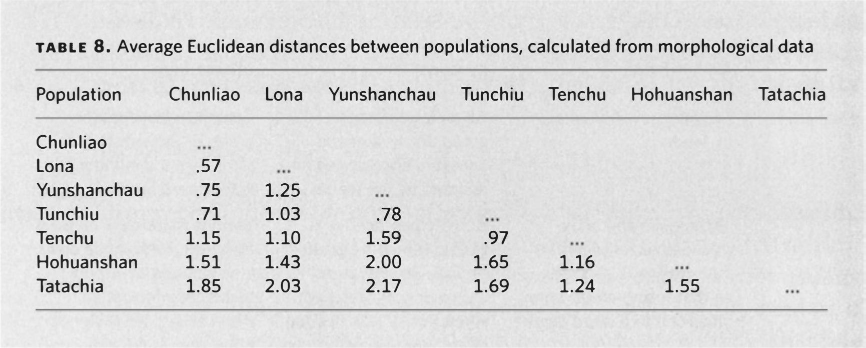

TABLE 8. Average Euclidean distances between populations, calculated from morphological data

Population	Chunliao	Lona	Yunshanchau	Tunchiu	Tenchu	Hohuanshan	Tatachia
Chunliao	...						
Lona	.57	...					
Yunshanchau	.75	1.25	...				
Tunchiu	.71	1.03	.78	...			
Tenchu	1.15	1.10	1.59	.97	...		
Hohuanshan	1.51	1.43	2.00	1.65	1.16	...	
Tatachia	1.85	2.03	2.17	1.69	1.24	1.55	...

FIGURE 3.18. An eight-column matrix. The intersections of like columns and stub entries are marked with ellipsis dots. See 3.66.

3.66 ***Matrixes.*** A matrix is a tabular structure designed to show reciprocal relationships within a group of individuals, concepts, or whatever. In a matrix, the stub entries are identical to the column heads; therefore, the cells present two identical sets of intersections. The cells that would contain repeated data may be left blank if the relational order is not significant (see fig. 3.17); in some matrixes, the intersection of matching heads may be left blank or marked with an em dash or ellipsis dots (as in fig. 3.18).

3.67 ***Presenting multiple values in a single cell.*** To allow for fewer columns, a single cell may contain two values, with one appearing in parentheses (see fig. 3.13). Such cases should be clarified in the column heading (see 3.54) or in a note.

Cell Alignment and Formatting

3.68 *Alignment of rows.* Each cell in a row aligns with the stub entry it applies to. If the stub entry occupies more than one line, the cell entry is normally aligned on the last line of the stub entry (see fig. 3.13). But if both the stub and one or more cells contain more than one line, the first lines are aligned throughout the body of the table. First lines are also aligned in a table where the content of each column is of the same sort—in other words, where the first column is not a stub as described in 3.57 (see fig. 3.19). See also 3.69.

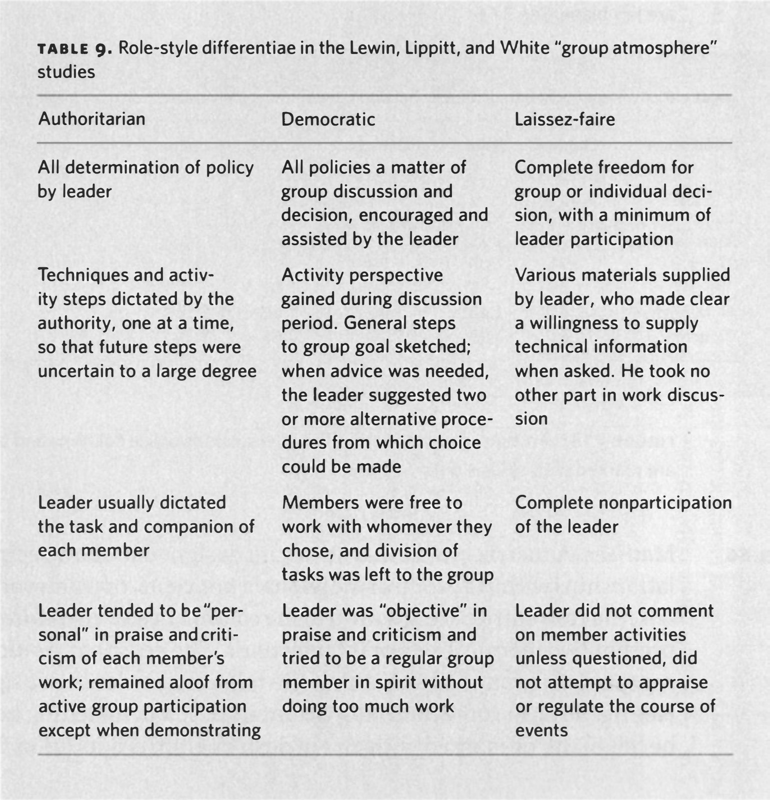

TABLE 9. Role-style differentiae in the Lewin, Lippitt, and White "group atmosphere" studies

Authoritarian	Democratic	Laissez-faire
All determination of policy by leader	All policies a matter of group discussion and decision, encouraged and assisted by the leader	Complete freedom for group or individual decision, with a minimum of leader participation
Techniques and activity steps dictated by the authority, one at a time, so that future steps were uncertain to a large degree	Activity perspective gained during discussion period. General steps to group goal sketched; when advice was needed, the leader suggested two or more alternative procedures from which choice could be made	Various materials supplied by leader, who made clear a willingness to supply technical information when asked. He took no other part in work discussion
Leader usually dictated the task and companion of each member	Members were free to work with whomever they chose, and division of tasks was left to the group	Complete nonparticipation of the leader
Leader tended to be "personal" in praise and criticism of each member's work; remained aloof from active group participation except when demonstrating	Leader was "objective" in praise and criticism and tried to be a regular group member in spirit without doing too much work	Leader did not comment on member activities unless questioned, did not attempt to appraise or regulate the course of events

FIGURE 3.19. Three-column table with no stub headings (see 3.57, 3.68).

3.69 ***Alignment of column heads.*** Column heads that share a row align on the baseline; if any head occupies more than one line, all the heads in that row align on the last (lowest) line. Each column head except in the stub column is normally centered on the longest (i.e., widest) cell entry. If the latter is unusually long, adjustment may be necessary to give an appearance of balance. If centering does not work, align column heads and cells on the left. The stub head and entries are always aligned on the left.

3.70 ***Alignment of numbers within columns.*** Within a column, numbers without decimal points are usually aligned on the last digit, "ranged right" (see fig. 3.16). If the numbers include decimal points, they are typically aligned on the decimal point (see fig. 3.13). For quantities less than 1.0, zeros do not need to be added before the decimal in a table unless prescribed by a journal or series style (though they would usually be required in running text). See also 9.19. Where spaces rather than commas are used to separate groups of digits (see 9.20), alignment is made on the implicit comma. In all these arrangements, the column of numerals as a whole is usually centered within the column on the longest (i.e., widest) numeral. A column including different kinds of numbers is best aligned on the ones that occur most frequently (as in the table in fig. 3.20, in which most of the values are aligned on the decimal point, but the values for *N* are centered; see also 3.83). Ellipses and em dashes are centered (see fig. 3.15).

3.71 ***Alignment of columns consisting of words.*** When a column consists of words, phrases, or sentences, appearance governs left-right alignment. If no runover lines are required, entries may be centered. Longer entries usually look better if they begin flush left. Runover lines may be indented or, if enough space is left between entries, aligned flush left with the first line (as in fig. 3.19).

3.72 ***Format for totals, averages, and means.*** Extra vertical space or short rules sometimes appear above totals at the foot of columns but may equally well be omitted. No rules, however, should appear above averages or means. Consistency must be maintained and, where applicable, journal or series style followed. The word *Total* in the stub is often indented. Subtotals are similarly treated. See figure 3.21. See also 3.61, 3.73.

3.73 ***When to use totals.*** Totals and subtotals may be included or not, according to how useful they are to the presentation. When the percentages in a column are based on different *n*'s, a final percentage based on the total *N* may be informative and, if so, should be included (see 3.83). Note that rounding often causes a percentage total to be slightly more or less than

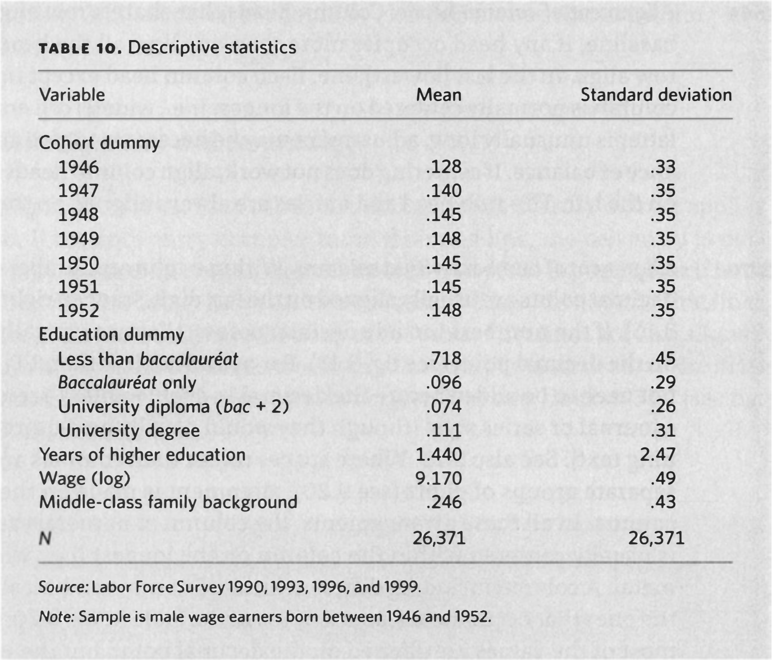

TABLE 10. Descriptive statistics

Variable	Mean	Standard deviation
Cohort dummy		
1946	.128	.33
1947	.140	.35
1948	.145	.35
1949	.148	.35
1950	.145	.35
1951	.145	.35
1952	.148	.35
Education dummy		
Less than *baccalauréat*	.718	.45
Baccalauréat only	.096	.29
University diploma (*bac* + 2)	.074	.26
University degree	.111	.31
Years of higher education	1.440	2.47
Wage (log)	9.170	.49
Middle-class family background	.246	.43
N	26,371	26,371

Source: Labor Force Survey 1990, 1993, 1996, and 1999.

Note: Sample is male wage earners born between 1946 and 1952.

FIGURE 3.20. Three-column table in which values are aligned on the decimal point except for *N* values (*last row*); see 3.70.

100. In such cases the actual value (e.g., 99% or 101%) should be given—if it is given at all—and a footnote should explain the apparent discrepancy. See also 3.61, 3.72.

Notes to Tables

3.74 ***Order and placement of notes to tables.*** Footnotes to a table are of four general kinds and, where two or more kinds are needed, should appear in this order: (1) source notes, (2) other notes applying to the whole table, (3) notes applying to specific parts of the table, and (4) notes on significance levels. Table footnotes always appear immediately below the table they belong to and must be numbered separately from the text notes. But if a multipage table contains no general notes and any specific notes pertain only to a single page, these notes may appear at the foot of the printed pages they apply to. In an electronic version that includes hypertext links, all footnotes are usually grouped at the bottom of the table.

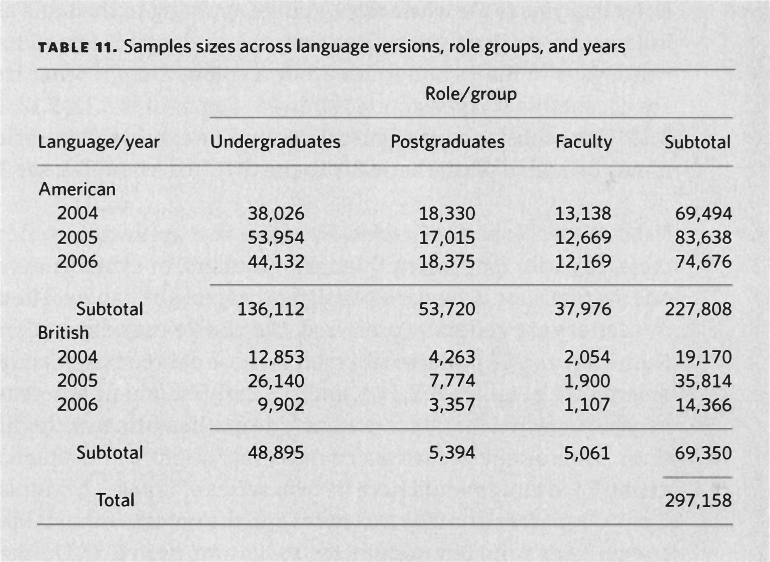

TABLE 11. Samples sizes across language versions, role groups, and years

	Role/group			
Language/year	Undergraduates	Postgraduates	Faculty	Subtotal
American				
2004	38,026	18,330	13,138	69,494
2005	53,954	17,015	12,669	83,638
2006	44,132	18,375	12,169	74,676
Subtotal	136,112	53,720	37,976	227,808
British				
2004	12,853	4,263	2,054	19,170
2005	26,140	7,774	1,900	35,814
2006	9,902	3,357	1,107	14,366
Subtotal	48,895	5,394	5,061	69,350
Total				297,158

FIGURE 3.21. Five-column table with subtotals and total (see 3.61, 3.72).

3.75 ***Acknowledging data in source notes to tables.*** If data for a table are not the author's own but are taken from another source or other sources, professional courtesy requires that full acknowledgment be made in an unnumbered footnote. The note is introduced by *Source* or *Sources*, in italics and followed by a colon (see fig. 3.20), though other treatments are acceptable if consistently followed.

Sources: Data from Richard H. Adams Jr., "Remittances, Investment, and Rural Asset Accumulation in Pakistan," *Economic Development and Cultural Change* 47, no. 1 (1998): 155–73; David Bevan, Paul Collier, and Jan Gunning, *Peasants and Government: An Economic Analysis* (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1989), 125–28.

If the sources are listed in the bibliography or reference list, a shortened form may be used:

Sources: Data from Adams (1998); Bevan, Collier, and Gunning (1989).

Unless fair use applies (see 4.77–87), a table reproduced without change from a published work under copyright requires formal permission. Credit should be given in a source note. See 3.31 for more information about styling credit lines, including examples. For more on source citations, see chapters 14 and 15.

3.76 ***Notes applying to the whole table.*** A note applying to the table as a whole follows any source note, is also unnumbered, and is introduced by the word *Note*, in italics and followed by a colon, though other treatments are acceptable if consistently followed. See figures 3.11, 3.12, 3.14, 3.17, 3.20. If the substance of a general note can be expressed as a brief phrase, it may be added parenthetically to the title (for examples, see 3.53).

3.77 ***Notes to specific parts of a table.*** For notes that apply to specific parts of a table, superior (superscript) letters, numbers, or symbols may be used; one system should be used consistently across all tables. Though superior letters are generally preferred, the choice may depend on context. Numerals may be preferred for tables whose data consist mainly of words or letters (e.g., tables 11.3, 11.4, and 11.5 in this manual), whereas symbols may be preferred for tables that include mathematical or chemical equations, where superior letters or numerals might be mistaken for exponents. Each table should have its own series of notes—beginning with *a*, 1, or *—separate from the text notes and the notes to other tables. The sequence runs from left to right, top to bottom, as in text. Unlike note reference numbers in text, however, the same letter, number, or symbol is used on two or more elements if the corresponding note applies to them. (A footnote reference attached to a column head is assumed to apply to the items in the column below it; a reference attached to a stub head applies to that row.) The superior letter, number, or symbol is repeated at the foot of the table at the beginning of the corresponding note and is followed neither by a period nor, usually, by a space. See figures 3.13, 3.14, 3.24. Where symbols are used, the sequence is as follows:

1. * (asterisk; but do not use if p values occur in the table; see 3.78)
2. † (dagger)
3. ‡ (double dagger)
4. § (section mark)
5. || (parallels)
6. # (number sign, or pound)

When more symbols are needed, these may be doubled and tripled in the same sequence:

*, †, ‡, etc., **, ††, ‡‡, etc., ***, †††, ‡‡‡, and so on.

3.78 ***Notes on significance levels.*** If a table contains notes on significance levels (also called probability notes), asterisks may be used as reference marks. If two or three standard significance levels are noted, a single asterisk is

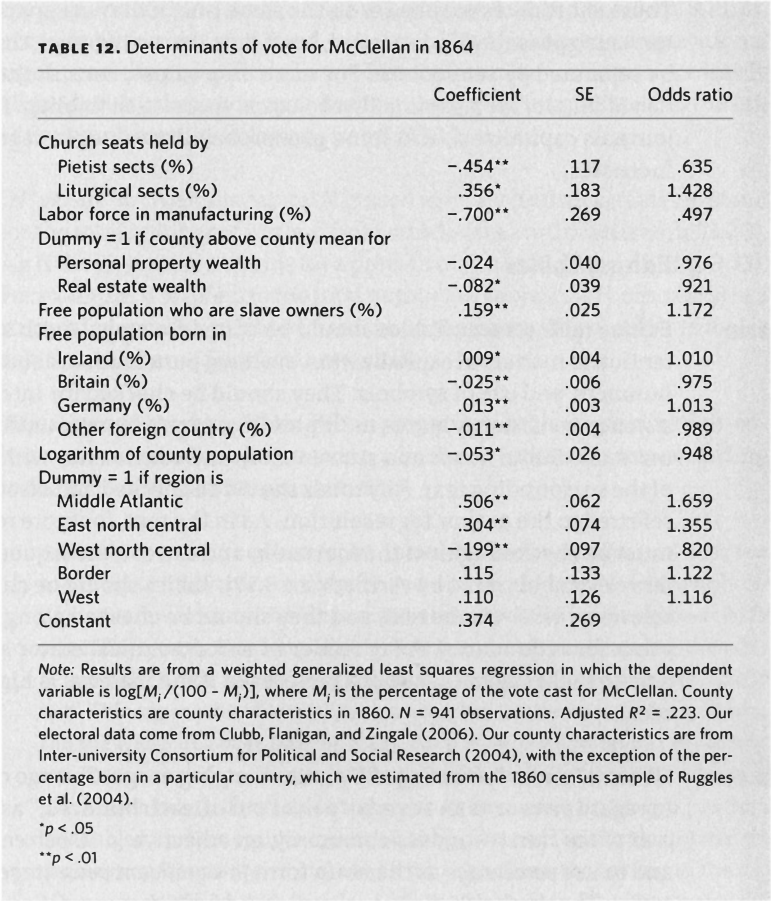

TABLE 12. Determinants of vote for McClellan in 1864

	Coefficient	SE	Odds ratio
Church seats held by			
Pietist sects (%)	−.454**	.117	.635
Liturgical sects (%)	.356*	.183	1.428
Labor force in manufacturing (%)	−.700**	.269	.497
Dummy = 1 if county above county mean for			
Personal property wealth	−.024	.040	.976
Real estate wealth	−.082*	.039	.921
Free population who are slave owners (%)	.159**	.025	1.172
Free population born in			
Ireland (%)	.009*	.004	1.010
Britain (%)	−.025**	.006	.975
Germany (%)	.013**	.003	1.013
Other foreign country (%)	−.011**	.004	.989
Logarithm of county population	−.053*	.026	.948
Dummy = 1 if region is			
Middle Atlantic	.506**	.062	1.659
East north central	.304**	.074	1.355
West north central	−.199**	.097	.820
Border	.115	.133	1.122
West	.110	.126	1.116
Constant	.374	.269	

Note: Results are from a weighted generalized least squares regression in which the dependent variable is $\log[M_i/(100 - M_i)]$, where M_i is the percentage of the vote cast for McClellan. County characteristics are county characteristics in 1860. N = 941 observations. Adjusted R^2 = .223. Our electoral data come from Clubb, Flanigan, and Zingale (2006). Our county characteristics are from Inter-university Consortium for Political and Social Research (2004), with the exception of the percentage born in a particular country, which we estimated from the 1860 census sample of Ruggles et al. (2004).

*$p < .05$

**$p < .01$

FIGURE 3.22. Four-column table with notes on significance, or probability, levels (p), following a general note (see 3.78).

used for the least significant level, two for the next higher, and three for the third. If values other than these three are given, however, footnote letters are preferable to asterisks, to avoid misleading the reader. In the note, the letter p (probability) is usually lowercase and in italics. Zeros are generally omitted before the decimal point. Probability notes follow all other notes (see fig. 3.22).

*$p < .05$

**$p < .01$

***$p < .001$

These short notes may be set on the same line; if they are spaced, no intervening punctuation is needed, but if they are run together, they should be separated by semicolons. For more on *p* values, consult the *Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association* (bibliog. 1.1). Some journals capitalize *p*, and some give probability values in regular table footnotes.

Editing Tables

3.79 ***Editing table content.*** Tables should be edited for style—with special attention to matters of capitalization, spelling, punctuation, abbreviations, numbers, and use of symbols. They should be checked for internal consistency, consistency across multiple tables (e.g., to ensure uniform treatment of column heads and stub entries), and consistency with the style of the surrounding text. Any totals should be checked and discrepancies referred to the author for resolution. As in the text, footnote references must be checked against the footnotes, and the correct sequence of letters or symbols must be verified (see 3.77). Tables should be checked for relevance vis-à-vis the text, and they should be checked alongside each other for redundancy. A lay reader or a nontechnical editor should be able to make logical sense of a table, even if the material is highly technical.

3.80 ***"Percent" versus "percentage."*** Despite changing usage, Chicago continues to regard *percent* as an adverb ("per, or out of, each hundred," as in *10 percent of the class*)—or, less commonly, an adjective (*a 10 percent raise*)—and to use *percentage* as the noun form (*a significant percentage of her income*). The symbol %, however, may stand for either word. See also 3.82.

3.81 ***Number ranges.*** Anyone preparing or editing a table must ensure that number ranges do not overlap, that there are no gaps between them, and that they are as precise as the data require. It must be clear whether "up to" or "up to and including" is meant. Dollar amounts, for example, might be given as "less than $5, $5–$9, $10–$14, and $15–$19" (not "$1–$5, $5–10," etc.). If greater precision is needed, they might be given as "$1.00–$4.99, $5.00–$9.99," and so forth. The symbols < and > must be used only to mean less than and more than. In a table including age ranges, >60 means "more than 60 years old" (*not* "60 and up," which would be represented by ≥60).

3.82 ***Signs and symbols in tables.*** In a column consisting exclusively of, for example, dollar amounts or percentages, the signs should be omitted from the cells and included in the column head (see 3.54 and figs. 3.12, 3.13) or, occasionally, in the stub head (see fig. 3.22). Mathematical operational signs preceding quantities in a column of numbers are not necessarily aligned with other such signs but should appear immediately to the left of the numbers they belong to (see fig. 3.12).

3.83 ***"N" versus "n."*** An italic capital *N* is used in many statistical tables to stand for the total number of a group from which data are drawn (see fig. 3.20). An italic lowercase *n* stands for a portion of the total group (see fig. 3.13). For example, if *N* refers to the total number of subjects (of both sexes) in a study, a lowercase *n* might be used when specifying the number of males and the number of females in the study.

3.84 ***Adjusting and checking tables.*** When preparing a table for publication, editors and compositors may need to adjust or check its format according to the following general guidelines:

1. *Adjusting long tables and wide tables.* Tables that are long and narrow with few columns but many rows, on the one hand, and very wide tables with many columns but few rows, on the other, may not work well—if at all—especially in print. The remedy for a long, skinny table is to double it up, running the table in two halves, side by side, with the column heads repeated over the second half. This approach can also allow a narrow but not necessarily long table to run the width of a page (see fig. 3.23). For a wide, shallow table, the remedy is to turn it around, making column heads of the stub items and stub items of the column heads; if the table turns out to be too narrow that way, it can then be doubled up. Some tables may need to be presented broadside (rotated 90 degrees counterclockwise and read left to right from the bottom to the top of a page); see figure 3.16. See also 3.49. For long tables, the editor may need

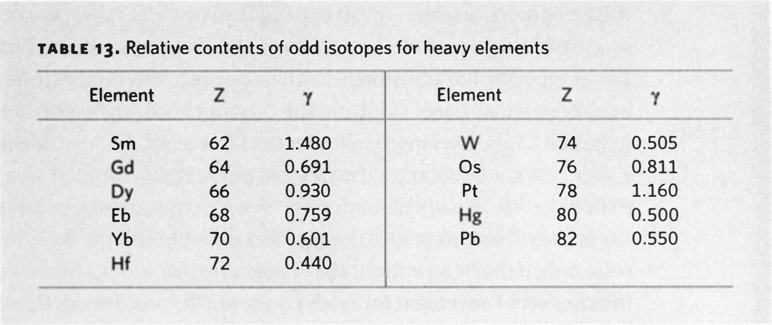

TABLE 13. Relative contents of odd isotopes for heavy elements

Element	Z	γ	Element	Z	γ
Sm	62	1.480	W	74	0.505
Gd	64	0.691	Os	76	0.811
Dy	66	0.930	Pt	78	1.160
Eb	68	0.759	Hg	80	0.500
Yb	70	0.601	Pb	82	0.550
Hf	72	0.440			

FIGURE 3.23. Three-column table doubled into two columns (see 3.84).

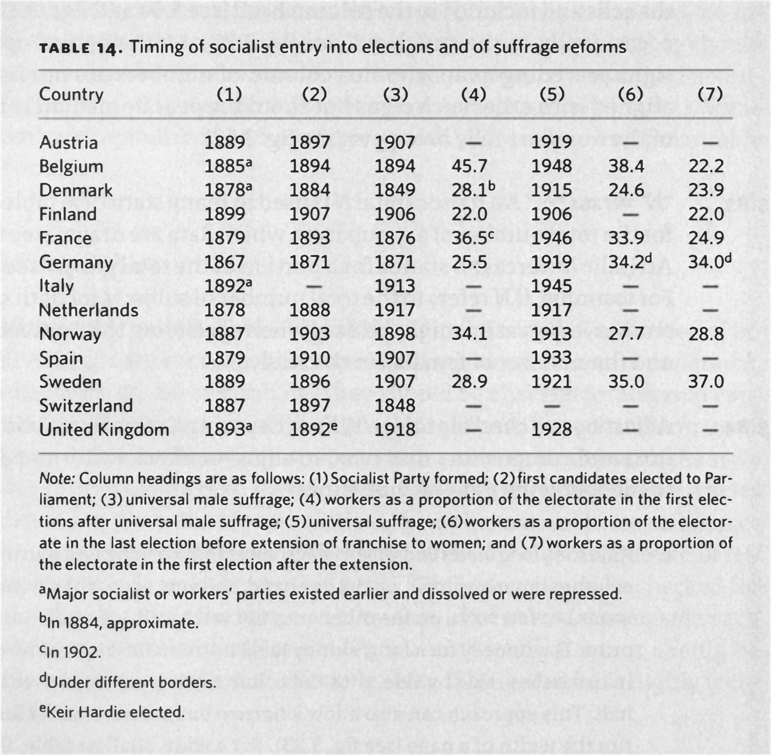

TABLE 14. Timing of socialist entry into elections and of suffrage reforms

Country	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
Austria	1889	1897	1907	—	1919	—	—
Belgium	1885[a]	1894	1894	45.7	1948	38.4	22.2
Denmark	1878[a]	1884	1849	28.1[b]	1915	24.6	23.9
Finland	1899	1907	1906	22.0	1906	—	22.0
France	1879	1893	1876	36.5[c]	1946	33.9	24.9
Germany	1867	1871	1871	25.5	1919	34.2[d]	34.0[d]
Italy	1892[a]	—	1913	—	1945	—	—
Netherlands	1878	1888	1917	—	1917	—	—
Norway	1887	1903	1898	34.1	1913	27.7	28.8
Spain	1879	1910	1907	—	1933	—	—
Sweden	1889	1896	1907	28.9	1921	35.0	37.0
Switzerland	1887	1897	1848	—	—	—	—
United Kingdom	1893[a]	1892[e]	1918	—	1928	—	—

Note: Column headings are as follows: (1) Socialist Party formed; (2) first candidates elected to Parliament; (3) universal male suffrage; (4) workers as a proportion of the electorate in the first elections after universal male suffrage; (5) universal suffrage; (6) workers as a proportion of the electorate in the last election before extension of franchise to women; and (7) workers as a proportion of the electorate in the first election after the extension.

[a] Major socialist or workers' parties existed earlier and dissolved or were repressed.

[b] In 1884, approximate.

[c] In 1902.

[d] Under different borders.

[e] Keir Hardie elected.

FIGURE 3.24. Eight-column table with numbers replacing column heads to reduce width. The heads are defined in a general note to the table. Notes to specific parts of the table are indicated by superior (superscript) letters. See 3.84, 3.77.

to specify whether and where "continued" lines and repeated column heads are allowed (see 3.85) and where footnotes should appear (see 3.77).

2. *Adjusting oversize tables—other options.* If an oversize table cannot be accommodated in a printed work by the remedies suggested above, further editorial or typographic adjustments will be needed. Wording may be shortened or abbreviations used. Omitting the running head when a table takes a full page (see 1.15) allows more space for the table itself. A wide table may extend a little into the left margin if on a verso or the right margin if on a recto or, if it looks better, equally on both sides. For a particularly large table, the publisher may decide to reduce the type size or to publish the table in electronic form only, if that is an option. To reduce excessive width, two other measures (neither very convenient for readers) are worth considering: (1) numbers are used for column heads, and the text of the heads is relegated to footnotes, as

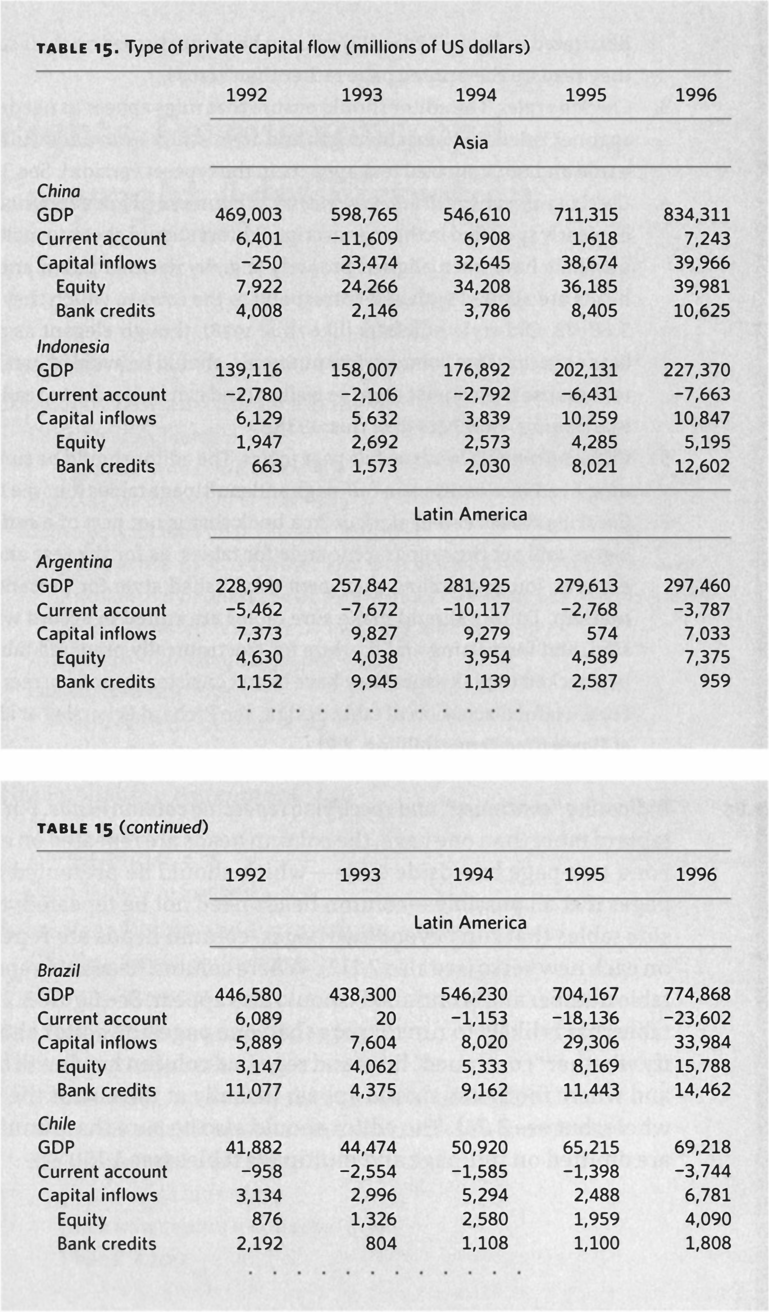

TABLE 15. Type of private capital flow (millions of US dollars)

	1992	1993	1994	1995	1996
			Asia		
China					
GDP	469,003	598,765	546,610	711,315	834,311
Current account	6,401	−11,609	6,908	1,618	7,243
Capital inflows	−250	23,474	32,645	38,674	39,966
Equity	7,922	24,266	34,208	36,185	39,981
Bank credits	4,008	2,146	3,786	8,405	10,625
Indonesia					
GDP	139,116	158,007	176,892	202,131	227,370
Current account	−2,780	−2,106	−2,792	−6,431	−7,663
Capital inflows	6,129	5,632	3,839	10,259	10,847
Equity	1,947	2,692	2,573	4,285	5,195
Bank credits	663	1,573	2,030	8,021	12,602
			Latin America		
Argentina					
GDP	228,990	257,842	281,925	279,613	297,460
Current account	−5,462	−7,672	−10,117	−2,768	−3,787
Capital inflows	7,373	9,827	9,279	574	7,033
Equity	4,630	4,038	3,954	4,589	7,375
Bank credits	1,152	9,945	1,139	2,587	959

. . . .

TABLE 15 *(continued)*

	1992	1993	1994	1995	1996
			Latin America		
Brazil					
GDP	446,580	438,300	546,230	704,167	774,868
Current account	6,089	20	−1,153	−18,136	−23,602
Capital inflows	5,889	7,604	8,020	29,306	33,984
Equity	3,147	4,062	5,333	8,169	15,788
Bank credits	11,077	4,375	9,162	11,443	14,462
Chile					
GDP	41,882	44,474	50,920	65,215	69,218
Current account	−958	−2,554	−1,585	−1,398	−3,744
Capital inflows	3,134	2,996	5,294	2,488	6,781
Equity	876	1,326	2,580	1,959	4,090
Bank credits	2,192	804	1,108	1,100	1,808

. . . .

FIGURE 3.25. Six-column table with repeated column heads and "continued" indication following a page break (see 3.85).

illustrated in figure 3.24; or (2) column heads are turned on their sides so that they read up the printed page rather than across.

3. *Checking rules.* The editor should ensure that rules appear as needed and that spanner rules are the right length and are distinct from underlining (so that a rule and not italicized text appears in the typeset version). See 3.50, 3.55.
4. *Checking alignment of numbers and text.* Alignment of rows and columns must be clearly specified in the manuscript. Editors should check to make sure that numbers have been aligned properly (e.g., by decimal point) and that stub heads are aligned with and correspond to the rows to which they apply. See 3.68–73. Old-style numbers (like this: 1938), though elegant as page numbers or in text that contains few numerals, should be avoided in tabular matter because they do not align as well as (and can be harder to read than) regular "lining" numbers (like this: 1938).
5. *Checking running heads on full-page tables.* The editor should be sure that running heads are omitted on full-page and multipage tables (but see 1.15, 2.112).
6. *Checking typefaces and markup.* In a book that is not part of a series, the designer will set the typographic style for tables, as for the text and other elements. Journals follow their own established style for presentation and markup. Editors should make sure tables are edited in accord with the design, and formatting and markup for electronically prepared tables should be checked to make sure they have been consistently and correctly applied. For a useful discussion of table design, see Richard Eckersley et al., *Glossary of Typesetting Terms* (bibliog. 2.7).

3.85 ***Indicating "continued" and specifying repeating column heads.*** For a vertical table of more than one page, the column heads are repeated on each page. For a two-page broadside table—which should be presented on facing pages if at all possible—column heads need not be repeated; for broadside tables that run beyond two pages, column heads are repeated only on each new verso (see also 2.112). Where column heads are repeated, the table number and "continued" should also appear. See figure 3.25. For any table that is likely to run to more than one page, the editor should specify whether "continued" lines and repeated column heads will be needed and where footnotes should appear (usually at the end of the table as a whole; but see 3.74). The editor should also be sure that running heads are omitted on full-page and multipage tables (see 1.15).

4 Rights, Permissions, and Copyright Administration

WILLIAM S. STRONG

Overview 4.1

Copyright Law and the Licensing of Rights 4.2

Varieties of Authorship 4.7

[WORKS MADE FOR HIRE 4.9

Rights of the Copyright Owner 4.13

Copyright and the Public Domain 4.19

[DURATION OF COPYRIGHT FOR WORKS CREATED AFTER 1977 4.22

[DURATION OF COPYRIGHT FOR WORKS CREATED BEFORE 1978 4.25

[RENEWING COPYRIGHT IN PRE-1978 WORKS 4.30

Assigning or Licensing Copyright 4.33

Copyright Notice 4.38

[CONTENT OF NOTICE 4.40

Deposit and Registration 4.46

The Publishing Agreement 4.50

New Books 4.51

Journal Articles 4.55

Contributions to Symposia 4.59

Subsidiary Rights and Permissions 4.60

Handling Subsidiary Rights 4.60

Granting Permission 4.66

The Author's Responsibilities 4.68

Obtaining Permissions 4.69

[FAIR USE: QUOTING WITHOUT PERMISSION 4.77

[LIBRARY AND EDUCATIONAL COPYING AS FAIR USE 4.88

Requesting Permission 4.92

[ILLUSTRATIONS 4.94

[ACKNOWLEDGING SOURCES 4.98

[FEES 4.100

Overview

4.1 ***The scope of this chapter.*** The foundation on which the entire publishing industry rests is the law of copyright, and a basic knowledge of it is essential for both authors and editors. This chapter gives readers that basic knowledge: how copyright is acquired, how it is owned, what it protects, what rights it comprises, how long it lasts, how it is transferred from one person to another. Once that foundation is laid, the key elements of publishing contracts are discussed, as well as the licensing of rights (what publishers call the "rights and permissions" function). The treatment of rights and permissions includes some guidelines for "fair use." While every effort is made here to be accurate, copyright law is both wide and intricate, and this chapter makes no claim to be exhaustive. Also, this chapter should not be considered legal advice or substitute for a consultation with a knowledgeable attorney in any particular circumstance. (For more detailed treatment of specific issues, see the works listed in sec. 2.2 of the bibliography.)

Copyright Law and the Licensing of Rights

4.2 ***Relevant law.*** For most publishing purposes the relevant law is the Copyright Act of 1976 (Public Law 94-553), which took effect on January 1, 1978, and the various amendments enacted since then. The 1976 act was a sweeping revision, superseding previous federal law and eliminating (though not retroactively) the body of state law known as common-law copyright. It did not, however, make old learning obsolete. Because prior law continues to govern most pre-1978 works in one way or another, anyone involved with publishing should understand both the old and the new regimes. Both will affect publishing for decades to come. Note that the law discussed in this chapter is that of the United States. The United States and most other countries are members of the Berne Convention, the oldest international copyright treaty. While the Berne Convention and certain other treaties have fostered significant uniformity around the world, anyone dealing with foreign copyrights should bear in mind that, conventions aside, the laws of other countries may contain significant differences from US law.

4.3 ***How copyright comes into being.*** Whenever a book or article, poem or lecture, database or drama comes into the world, it is automatically covered by copyright so long as it is "fixed" in some "tangible" form and embodies original expression. The term *tangible* applies to more than paper and traditional media; it includes things such as electronic memory. A copyrightable work is "fixed" as long as it is stored in some manner that is not purely transitory. Thus an e-mail message that is stored in the sender's computer is fixed and copyrightable, but an extemporaneous lecture that is broadcast without being recorded is not.

4.4 ***Registration and notice not required.*** Although it is advisable to register works with the United States Copyright Office, registration is not a prerequisite to legal protection. The practical reasons for registering are discussed in 4.49. Copyright notice is no longer required but is recommended.

4.5 ***Original expression.*** Copyright protects the original expression contained in a work. The term *expression* means the words, sounds, or images that an author uses to express an idea or convey information. Copyright protects the expression but not the underlying conceptual or factual material. *Originality* for copyright purposes has a very low threshold. Only a modicum of creativity is required; the law protects such minimal intellectual effort as the selection and arrangement of entries in a guide to prices of used automobiles. What counts is not quality or novelty but only that the work be original with the author and not copied, consciously or unconsciously, from some other source. When a work includes material that is not original, only the original material is protected. Thus, copyright in a new, annotated edition of an eighteenth-century book will cover only the annotations.

4.6 ***Author the original owner.*** Whoever is the author (a term not synonymous with *creator*, as will be seen) controls copyright at the outset and automatically possesses certain rights in the work. How these rights are owned, transferred, and administered is the focus of this chapter.

Varieties of Authorship

4.7 ***Individual and joint authors.*** In popular (or "trade") publishing and in the humanities, the typical author is likely to be an individual. In scientific, technical, and medical publishing, especially in the realm of journals, a work will more likely than not involve the efforts of more than one author. Such works are typically joint works. As defined by the statute, a joint work is "a work prepared by two or more authors with the intention that their contributions be merged into inseparable or interdependent parts of a unitary whole."

4.8 ***Collective works.*** Works in which the independent contributions of two or more authors are combined are considered collective rather than joint works. Copyright in a collective work as such, which covers the selection and arrangement of materials, belongs to the compiler or editor and is separate from the copyright in each of the various components. Typical examples of collective works are newspapers, anthologies, journal issues, and the proceedings of academic conferences (see 4.59).

WORKS MADE FOR HIRE

4.9 ***Employer as author.*** Another type of authorship is work made for hire. The law regards the employer or other controlling party as the "author" of any such work and hence as the initial owner of the copyright. Some works are considered made for hire by definition; some can be treated as such by agreement.

4.10 ***The three categories of work made for hire.*** Present law defines much more stringently than pre-1978 law the conditions that must be met for a work to be considered made for hire. First, the work may be prepared within the scope of a person's employment. Common examples of this type of work made for hire include the editorial column in a scholarly journal, a story in a newspaper or weekly magazine, or the entry for "aardvark" written by a person on an encyclopedia's paid staff. Second, someone *not* on the payroll will in certain instances be treated as an "employee" in determining authorship if that person is acting as the agent of another party. Determining agency is a difficult and somewhat ad hoc task, and involves considerations such as the control of one party over the other party's hours, assignments, and tools used in creating the work. The third type of work made for hire is the specially ordered or commissioned work that both hiring party and creator agree *in writing* to treat as such. This sort of arrangement is available for only a few narrowly defined types of work:

- contributions to collective works, such as a book review commissioned for a journal
- contributions to motion pictures or sound recordings
- translations
- instructional texts
- tests
- atlases
- compilations of existing materials such as anthologies
- "supplementary works" such as forewords, bibliographies, indexes, appendixes, textual notes, illustrations, and answer material for tests

A work that qualifies for such treatment will not be considered made for hire unless the written agreement between the commissioning party and the creative party expressly says so. The written agreement can be signed retroactively, although the safer practice is to obtain the parties' signatures before the work is created.

4.11 ***Ineligible works.*** It bears emphasizing that many kinds of works that could conceivably be commissioned do not qualify as works made for hire no matter what agreement may be made between writer and publisher. Monographs and novels, for example, are not eligible because they are not in any of the specific categories listed above. Thus, copyright in such a work remains with the writer unless expressly assigned. Although for most purposes an assignment of copyright from the author is indistinguishable in practical effect from a work-for-hire agreement, they have different implications for copyright duration (see 4.23) and termination (see 4.37).

4.12 ***Joint authorship.*** Although the law is not entirely clear on this point, it appears that any work that is partially made for hire will be treated as made for hire for copyright duration (see 4.22–24) and certain other purposes, even though a joint coauthor might be independent and not writing "for hire."

Rights of the Copyright Owner

4.13 ***Rights of reproduction, distribution, and display.*** The author of a work possesses, at the beginning, a bundle of rights that collectively make up copyright. They belong originally to the author, who can sell, rent, give away, will, or transfer them in some other way, individually or as a package, to whomever the author wishes. When a work is to be published, the author normally transfers some or all of these rights to the publisher, by formal agreement. Two of these rights are basic from the publisher's point of view: the right to make copies of the work (traditionally by printing and now often by digital reproduction) and the right to distribute such copies to the public—in sum, to publish the work. In the case of online publishing, reproduction and distribution blend into the act of transmitting the work on demand to the reader's computer. A third right—the right of public display—applies to online exploitation of works. A work is publicly displayed when made viewable online; if the user downloads or prints out the material concerned, a distribution of a copy also occurs.

4.14 *Derivative work and performance rights.* A fourth and very important right is the right to make what the law terms derivative works—that is, works based on or derived from the original work, such as translations, abridgments, dramatizations, or other adaptations. A revised edition of a published work is generally noticeably different enough from the prior edition to qualify as a derivative work with a separate copyright (see 4.27). The fifth basic copyright right, the right of public performance, has only limited relevance for literary works as such; it applies, for example, when a poet gives a public reading of a poem. However, it has great significance for other works, such as motion pictures, that may spring from literary works.

4.15 *Moral rights—integrity of copyright management information.* In addition to the foregoing rights, the law gives the creators of certain works of fine art a so-called moral right against mutilation and misattribution. A dozen or more states have enacted legislation to roughly the same effect as the federal law but generally broader. This moral right, however, whether federal or state, has little effect on publishers (except perhaps while in possession of original artwork) and will not be dealt with further here. Authors may also be able under common law to prevent the attribution to them of things that they did not write. In addition, federal law protects the integrity of "copyright management information." This information, for publications, consists of the following:

- the title and other information identifying the work, including the content of the copyright notice
- the name of, and other identifying information about, the author
- the name of, and other identifying information about, the copyright owner, including the content of the copyright notice
- terms and conditions for use of the work
- identifying numbers or symbols referring to such information or links to such information

Specifically, the law prevents intentional removal or alteration of copyright management information, or intentional use of false copyright management information, if done with intent to induce, enable, facilitate, or conceal infringement. This prohibition has seen little exercise in the courts and is likely to be of less use to publishers than to industries that deal frequently with counterfeit goods.

4.16 *Trademark protection of titles and other elements.* Copying only the title of a work likely would not be considered a copyright infringement. But a title may be entitled to trademark protection under federal or state law or both. Book titles are harder to protect as trademarks than journal or lecture titles, because of judicial and administrative reluctance to give trademark protection to names that are used on only one specific product. Nevertheless, it is fair to say that some book titles are clearly protectable; *Gone with the Wind* and *Winnie-the-Pooh* are titles that cannot be used without permission, at least so long as the books remain under copyright. And active franchising such as has occurred with both of those books will enable the trademark to survive long after that, although not in such a way as to prevent reproduction of the book itself, title and all. The same principles would apply to the names of characters or imaginary locales used in a work.

4.17 ***Basic versus subsidiary rights.*** Whoever controls the copyright in a work, whether author or publisher, may not only exercise those rights directly but also empower or authorize others to exercise them. If, for example, the author of a book has transferred the whole bundle of rights to a publishing house, the publishing house will itself exercise the basic rights of reproducing and distributing (i.e., publishing) the book. It will also be responsible for administering subsidiary rights. These rights (discussed in 4.60) usually involve exploiting markets in which the publishing house is not active. For example, foreign-language, book-club, and motion-picture rights involve specialized markets and require special expertise. For this reason, subsidiary rights are likely to be exercised by third parties under license from the publisher, although, if the publisher is part of a large media conglomerate, licensing is often intramural. Part of the publisher's responsibility to the author should be to see that subsidiary rights are exploited as effectively as possible. Licensing subsidiary rights also includes granting what the publishing industry calls permissions, a term that refers to such things as the licensing of photocopying for classroom use and allowing others to quote or reproduce small portions of the book in a new work.

4.18 ***Author retention of subsidiary rights.*** Authors of "trade" books—fiction, biography, cookbooks, and other books for the general reader—are more likely than scholarly authors to be represented by agents and more likely to retain some or all subsidiary rights. In such cases, subsidiary rights are licensed directly by the author (through his or her agent) to foreign publishers, motion-picture producers, and the like. Typically, however, permissions are still handled by the publisher rather than the agent or author.

Copyright and the Public Domain

4.19 *Copyright duration before 1978.* Until January 1, 1978, a dual system of copyright existed in the United States. Common-law copyright, created by the individual states, protected works from the time of their creation until publication, however long that might be. A personal letter written in the eighteenth century but never published was protected as effectively as a 1977 doctoral thesis in the making. In neither case could the document be copied and distributed (that is, published) without the express permission of either the creator of the work or the creator's legal heirs. Statutory, or federal, copyright protected works at the moment of publication and for twenty-eight years thereafter, provided that a proper copyright notice appeared in the published work. Thereafter, copyright in the work could be renewed for another twenty-eight years if the original copyright claim had been registered with the United States Copyright Office (a division of the Library of Congress) and if a renewal claim was filed by the appropriate person(s) during the final year of the first term of copyright. Thus in the normal course of things federal copyright in a work was intended to last for a total of fifty-six years from the date of publication, after which time the work went into the public domain—that is, it became public property and could be reproduced freely. See 4.20–21, 4.45. Works created by employees of the US government in the course of their official duties are in the public domain.

4.20 *Lengthening of copyright duration in 1978.* To enter the public domain is of course the ultimate fate of all copyrighted works. However, the elaborate system described in 4.19 was replaced as of 1978 by a unitary federal copyright of substantially greater length. Subsequent amendments have lengthened the term yet further and eliminated a number of formalities that used to be required. All these changes have made entering the public domain almost theoretical for works currently being created. As will be discussed below, other changes to the law have given many older works, particularly those of foreign origin, an unexpected reprieve (see 4.28).

4.21 *Uses of public-domain works.* Once in the public domain, a work is free for all to use. The use may be direct and simple; for example, Mark Twain's novels have now lost their copyrights and may be republished free of royalty. Or the public-domain works may be the compost from which new works, adaptations or other derivative works, spring in due course. Such new works are entitled to copyright, but their copyright is limited to the new material they contain. Determining whether a work is in the public domain requires attention to complex rules. These are discussed at 4.25–29 and 4.38–45. The rules are also set out in tabular form at the website of the University of Chicago Press.

DURATION OF COPYRIGHT FOR WORKS CREATED AFTER 1977

4.22 ***"Life plus seventy."*** Enacted in 1976 and effective on January 1, 1978, the present copyright law did away with the dual system of federal/common-law copyright. Present law is both simpler and more complex regarding copyright duration. It is simpler in that now one unified, federal system protects all works fixed in tangible form from the moment so fixed. It is more complex in that terms of protection differ depending on authorship, and in that works existing before 1978 are subject to a variety of special rules. The paradigmatic copyright term, under the new law, is "life plus seventy"—that is, life of the author plus seventy years. (In the case of joint authors, the seventy years are added to the life of the last author to die.) As will be seen below, however, there are many exceptions to this rule.

4.23 ***Works made for hire.*** Since the owner of the copyright in a work made for hire is not the actual creator of the work (often, indeed, the copyright owner is a corporate entity), the law specifies a fixed term of years for the duration of copyright. This term is 95 years from the date of publication or 120 years from the date of creation, whichever is the shorter.

4.24 ***Anonymous and pseudonymous works.*** The regular rule for duration of copyright cannot be applied if an author publishes anonymously or under a pseudonym. The law prescribes the same fixed term of copyright for these works as for works made for hire—95 years from the date of publication or 120 years from creation, whichever is the shorter. If after publication, however, such an author's name is revealed and recorded in the documents of the Copyright Office, the regular "life plus seventy" rule takes over, unless, of course, the work is made for hire.

DURATION OF COPYRIGHT FOR WORKS CREATED BEFORE 1978

4.25 ***Pre-1978 unpublished works.*** For unpublished works that were still under common-law copyright when the new law went into effect, there is a transitional rule. Such works are given the same copyright terms as post-1977 works, but in recognition of the fact that their authors might have died so long ago as to make life-plus-seventy meaningless, Congress added two provisos. First, such works were granted protection at least until December 31, 2002. Second, any such work that was ultimately published before December 31, 2002, is protected at least until December 31, 2047. Thus, these late-published works have a copyright term of not less than seventy years from the date the new law went into effect.

4.26 *Pre-1978 published US works.* Works published before January 1, 1923, are now in the public domain. Works published during the years 1923 through 1963 are still under copyright if their copyrights were properly renewed in the twenty-eighth year after first publication. (The safest way to determine this is to commission a search of the Copyright Office records through a copyright attorney or a reputable search firm.) The renewal term for such works is now sixty-seven years rather than twenty-eight. Works published from 1964 through 1977 will be protected without fail for ninety-five years from first publication, because renewal for such works is automatic. All the above assumes that these works were at all times published with proper copyright notice. For a discussion of copyright notice, see 4.38–45.

4.27 *New copyright for new editions.* When deciding whether a work may be republished without permission, bear in mind that each time a work is materially revised a new copyright comes into being, covering the new or revised material. Thus a seminal treatise published in 1920 is now in the public domain, but the author's revision published in 1934 may not be. One is free to republish the 1920 version, but that may be an empty privilege.

4.28 *Pre-1978 published foreign works.* The rules just described do not apply to foreign works. Such works are generally protected in their own countries for the life of the author plus fifty or seventy years, depending on the country concerned. In the United States, a pre-1978 foreign work automatically receives the same term of copyright as a pre-1978 US work, but without regard to whether proper copyright notice ever appeared on it or whether copyright was renewed in the twenty-eighth year after publication. This is so because, effective January 1, 1996, Congress restored to copyright all foreign works that had forfeited copyright as a result of noncompliance with US notice and renewal requirements but that were still protected in their home country. Copyrights restored in this manner are subject to certain protections given to those who produced copies or derivative works before December 8, 1994, relying on the apparent forfeiture of copyright. Two points should be noted here, however. First, an anomalous decision in the Ninth Circuit Court of Appeals has held that foreign works published abroad prior to 1923 may still be eligible for copyright protection in the United States, if no effort was made at the time to comply with US copyright law. This is out of sync with the rest of US copyright jurisprudence, but it remains the law in California and other states in the Ninth Circuit. Second, it should be noted that the US copyright term for foreign works, even after restoration, does not synchronize with the protection of those works outside the United States. If a French author of a work published in 1922 lived until 1970, the work would now be in the public domain in the United States but would remain under copyright in France until 2040. If the same author had published another work in 1923, that work would retain copyright in the United States until 2018, still twenty-two years less than in France. Publishers who wish to reissue or otherwise make use of foreign public-domain works need to be aware that foreign markets may be foreclosed to them.

4.29 ***Definition of "foreign."*** For purposes of the special restoration rules discussed in 4.28, a work is a foreign work if it was first published outside the United States. The only substantial exception is for works published in the United States within thirty days after foreign publication, as used to be done by some US publishers to get Berne Convention treatment "by the back door" before the United States became a member of Berne. Such works are not eligible for copyright restoration.

RENEWING COPYRIGHT IN PRE-1978 WORKS

4.30 ***Benefits of renewal.*** Although renewal is now automatic, the law gives certain benefits to those who take the trouble to file actively for renewal. Filing for renewal fixes the ownership of the second-term copyright on the date of filing; automatic renewal fixes ownership in whoever could have renewed on the *last day* of the first term. A renewal that has been actively obtained constitutes prima facie evidence of copyright and its ownership; the evidentiary value of an automatically renewed copyright is discretionary with the courts. Finally, and most important, if the renewal is allowed to happen automatically, existing derivative works can continue to be exploited for the second term of copyright, whereas active renewal gives the renewal-term owner—unless he or she signed a derivative work license explicitly covering the renewal term—the right to relicense derivative-work rights.

4.31 ***Renewal by the author.*** The author, if living, is the person entitled to file for renewal. Publishers who have obtained renewal-term rights from authors should continue to file for renewal on the author's behalf as they have traditionally done.

4.32 *Renewal if the author is deceased.* Whether renewal occurs by filing or automatically, if the author is not alive the law allocates the copyright to his or her surviving spouse, children, or other heirs according to complex rules that will not be parsed here.

Assigning or Licensing Copyright

4.33 *Subdividing a copyright.* Copyright is often referred to as a "bundle" of rights. The basic components, as noted above, are the right to reproduce the work, the right to distribute copies of a work to the public, the right to make derivative works, and the rights to perform and display a work publicly. Each of these rights may be separately licensed or assigned. Furthermore, each of them may be carved up into smaller rights along lines of geography, time, or medium. Thus, for example, the right to publish a treatise may be carved up so that Publisher A gets North American rights while Publisher B gets United Kingdom rights. A French translation license may be given to Librairie C for a ten-year fixed term. Or Publisher A may receive print rights while D-DISC gets CD-ROM rights and E-NET gets online publication rights. There is theoretically no end to the ways of subdividing a copyright, other than the limits of human ingenuity and the marketplace.

4.34 *Exclusive versus nonexclusive licenses.* Licenses may be exclusive or nonexclusive. Typically, anyone making a substantial investment will insist on exclusive rights, whereas persons making ephemeral use at low marginal cost—a typical case being classroom photocopying—need no more than nonexclusive rights. An exclusive licensee is treated in general like an owner of copyright and has standing to sue any infringer of that right. A nonexclusive licensee is more like the holder of a personal privilege than the holder of a property interest, and cannot sue infringers or even, without the permission of the licensor, transfer the license to someone else. While most authorities believe that, by contrast, an exclusive licensee has the power to assign and sublicense the right concerned, a federal court opinion in mid-2002 cast doubt on that presumption. As a precaution, anyone drafting an exclusive license should expressly state that the license may be assigned and sublicensed at the discretion of the licensee.

4.35 *Goals of the parties to a license.* Many issues in license negotiation are common to all contracts: payment terms, duration, allocation of risk, remedies for default, and so on. But in drafting a copyright license the parties need to be very careful to define clearly the scope of the license, taking into account possible evolution of technologies and markets. The goal of a licensor is to define the licensed right narrowly so as to preserve flexibility for future licensing. The licensee also wants flexibility and so seeks to define the licensed right broadly. Both sides, though, have a common interest in seeing that the license is clear and understandable. Drafting a license demands and deserves care and skill, as well as good communication between lawyers and their clients.

4.36 *Payment.* A license and the obligation to pay for that license are usually treated as reciprocal obligations, not mutually dependent ones. Thus the failure of a licensee to pay royalties does not automatically terminate the license and turn the licensee into an infringer. It gives the licensor a claim for contract damages, not a copyright infringement claim. Shrewd licensors will whenever possible reverse this presumption in their contracts, and shrewd licensees will usually resist.

4.37 *Termination of transfers.* Apart from contractual rights, the statute itself gives individual authors the right to terminate licenses and assignments of copyright under certain conditions. The law specifically grants authors the right to terminate any post-1977 copyright arrangement after thirty-five years, and a roughly comparable termination right applies to licenses signed before 1978. The mechanics of termination, including the determination of who has the right to terminate, are extraordinarily complicated and are of importance to only the most lucrative of copyrights, so no more will be said here. The termination right does not apply to agreements stipulating that a work is made for hire. See 4.10.

Copyright Notice

4.38 *Changes to the rules.* No aspect of copyright has caused more grief than the rules of copyright notice. These rules have been responsible for most forfeitures of copyright. Largely a trap for the unwary, they were softened somewhat in 1978 and removed almost entirely in 1989. They were not without purpose or utility, but the rules prevented the United States from joining the Berne Convention, and in the end this and other disadvantages outweighed their utility.

4.39 *Three different regimes.* Congress could not easily dispense with the rules retroactively, however, and the resulting 1989 legislation means that we now operate simultaneously under three doctrines: (1) for works first published on or after March 1, 1989, no copyright notice is required; (2) for works first published in the United States between January 1, 1978, and February 28, 1989, copyright notice must have been used on all copies published before March 1, 1989, with the proviso that certain steps could be taken to redeem deficient notice (see 4.45); and (3) for US works first published before January 1, 1978, the copyright was almost certainly forfeited if the notice was not affixed to all copies; few excuses were or are available. (As noted above, foreign works have been retroactively exempted from these rules.) Notwithstanding the liberality of the new law, continued use of notice is strongly advised to deprive infringers of any possible defense of ignorance. The rules in 4.40–45 should therefore still be followed.

CONTENT OF NOTICE

4.40 ***Three elements of the notice.*** Under present law, as under the old law, the notice consists of three parts: (1) either the symbol © (preferred because it also suits the requirements of the Universal Copyright Convention), or the word *copyright*, or the abbreviation *copr.*; (2) the year of first publication; and (3) the name of the copyright owner. Many publishers also add the phrase "all rights reserved," and there is no harm in doing so, but the putative advantages of it (which were limited to Latin America) have all but vanished. The year of first publication is not needed for greeting cards, postcards, stationery, and certain other works not germane to the publishing industry. Where a work is in its renewal term of copyright, it is customary, but not required, to include the year of renewal as well as the year of first publication. See also 1.19–34.

4.41 ***Name used in the notice.*** The name used in the notice should be the name of the author unless the author has assigned all rights to the publisher. However, it is not uncommon to see the publisher's name in the notice even when it does not own all rights. Conversely, authors sometimes insist on notice in their names even when they have assigned all rights—and publishers often acquiesce, thereby giving up something that has no value except to the ego of the author. Such vagaries are regrettable but harmless, except where they mislead those seeking permission to use the copyrighted material.

4.42 ***Placement of notice.*** The copyright notice should be placed so as to give reasonable notice to the consumer. The old law was very specific about its location: for books, on either the title page or the page immediately following, and for journals and magazines, on the title page, the first page of text, or the front cover. Present law simply states that the notice should be so placed as "to give reasonable notice of the claim of copyright," but most publishers continue to place it in the traditional locations required by the old law. See also 1.78, 1.88, 1.97.

4.43 ***United States government materials.*** When a work consists "preponderantly" of materials created by the federal government, this must be stated in the notice. This may be done either positively (e.g., "Copyright is claimed only in the introduction, notes, appendixes, and index of the present work") or negatively (e.g., "Copyright is not claimed in 'Forest Management,' a publication of the United States government reprinted in the present volume"). Works produced by state or local governments or by foreign governments are not per se in the public domain and are not subject to this notice provision.

4.44 ***Notice on derivative works.*** The new copyright in a derivative work entitles its publisher to use a new copyright notice with the current year date, and nothing requires that such notice delineate what is and is not covered by the copyright. This sometimes has the unfortunate by-product (not always unintended, let it be said) of making users think that the scope of copyright extends to the public-domain material. However, the better practice, at least where the derivative work is a revised edition, is to include the publication years of various editions. See 1.23.

4.45 ***Correcting mistakes.*** Under pre-1978 law, no mechanism was available to cure the effects of a defective notice: copyright was forfeited and that was that, unless the omission of notice was accidental and occurred in a very small number of copies. For publication between January 1, 1978, and March 1, 1989 (when the notice requirement was finally dropped altogether), a more lenient regime prevailed. A mistake in the owner's name, or a mistake by no more than a year in the date element of the notice, was largely excused. Any more serious mistake was treated as an omission of notice. Any omission of one or more of the necessary three elements would be excused if the omission was from a "relatively small" number of copies. If more extensive omission occurred, the copyright owner could still save the copyright from forfeiture by registering it (see 4.46–49) within five years after the defective publication and making a "reasonable effort" to add the notice to all copies distributed to the public after the omission was discovered. Very few cases have discussed what a "reasonable effort" is, and their explanations, being somewhat ad hoc, give limited guidance to anyone trying to determine whether a work in this category is still protected by copyright.

Deposit and Registration

4.46 ***Deposit requirements.*** The law requires copyright owners to send copies of their published works to the Copyright Office for deposit and use in the

Library of Congress. The copies must be sent within three months of publication. Although failure to make the required deposit does not forfeit the copyright, the copyright owner is subject to a fine for noncompliance if a specific request from the Library of Congress is ignored. For printed works, the deposit of two copies of the "best edition" is required. If, for example, clothbound and paperback editions of a book are published simultaneously, the publisher should submit two copies of the cloth edition. If the work is a very expensive or limited edition, one may apply to the Library of Congress for permission to submit only one copy. Databases published only online are exempt. When sending deposit copies to the Copyright Office, publishers usually have the copyright registered as well. In the case of printed materials, the deposit copies also serve the requirements for registration. In the case of electronic publications, the submission of certain "identifying material" will suffice.

4.47 *Registration forms and fees.* To register a work the author or other claimant must fill out the appropriate application, either in paper form or online. The Copyright Office offers online registration through its eCO service, using an interactive application form. For paper registration there are several forms, tailored to different types of works. Form TX is used for books and other works in the broad category called literary works, other than periodicals. For all periodicals, including but not limited to newspapers, magazines, newsletters, journals, and even annuals, use form SE. As an alternative, one may use form CO for any type of work; this form can be filled out electronically, printed out, and submitted by mail. The Copyright Office offers all these forms and intelligible explanations of its registration rules, including its complex deposit requirements, on its website. The fees for registration vary depending on which process one uses, but by far the least expensive is online registration. For a group of works, one fee covers the entire group. Group registration is available for multiple photographs or multiple contributions to periodicals by a single author, and for certain serial publications. Publishers with large lists tend to keep funds on deposit at the Copyright Office and to charge their registration fees against their deposit accounts.

4.48 *Need for accuracy and candor.* It is important to answer all questions on the application accurately. Copyright owners have been sanctioned by courts for misleading the Copyright Office by (for example) failing to disclose that a work is based on preexisting materials. Statements on the application do not need to be exhaustive, but they must be correct and not evasive. However, in contrast to patent applications, there is no requirement for disclosure of adverse claims or any other information not specifically called for on the form.

4.49 ***Benefits of registration.*** Registration is not necessary to *obtain* a copyright (which exists in the work from the moment it is fixed in tangible form; see 4.3) or to ensure its validity. However, the prudent course is to register copyright because of the added protection registration affords. In cases of infringement, registration is a prerequisite to bringing suit unless the work was written by a non-US author and first published abroad. Registering at the time of publication avoids a scramble to register later if infringement is discovered. Moreover, if registration has been made within three months of publication, or before an infringement begins, the copyright owner, instead of going through the difficulties of proving actual damages, can sue for "statutory damages" (in effect, an award of damages based on equity rather than on proof of loss) and, most significantly, is eligible to be reimbursed for attorney's fees. Publishers fearing prepublication piracy of books in development should also consider the "preregistration" procedure at the website of the United States Copyright Office.

The Publishing Agreement

4.50 ***Basic rights.*** No publishing house may legally publish a copyrighted work unless it first acquires the basic rights to copy the work and distribute it to the public. Although in theory a publisher could proceed with no more than a nonexclusive license of these rights—and this is done in rare circumstances—for obvious reasons publishers generally insist on exclusive rights. In most instances these rights are acquired from the author by means of a contract called the publishing agreement.

New Books

4.51 ***Basic book-contract provisions.*** In book publishing the publisher typically draws up the contract for a new book, to be signed by both the publisher and the author or, in the case of a joint work, by all authors. In this contract the publisher and author agree to certain things. The publisher undertakes to publish the book after acceptance of the manuscript and to pay the author for the rights conveyed. Usually, publishers pay book authors a stipulated royalty out of the proceeds, but in some cases a publisher will instead pay a lump-sum fee. The author, in addition to granting rights to the publisher, typically guarantees that the work is original and has never before been published and that it does not violate copyright or libel anyone or otherwise expose the publisher to legal liability.

The author usually agrees to correct and return proofs and to cooperate in future revisions of the work. Book-publishing agreements are generally fairly lengthy and detailed documents and include many other points of agreement. Among the common areas of negotiation are royalty schedules; royalty advances and (for certain types of books, such as textbooks) expense allowances; the standards for acceptance of the manuscript; the period following acceptance within which the publisher must issue the work; what rights, beyond North American print rights, are granted to the publisher; what share of royalties the author receives for revised editions to which he or she does not contribute; how rights revert to the author if the book goes out of print; and on what terms the author may audit the publisher's financial records to ensure full payment of royalties due. Typically, publishing agreements prohibit the author from publishing works that compete with the work under contract.

4.52 *Option clauses.* In former years publishing agreements often contained legally binding options on the author's next book. These are almost a thing of the past. Some publishers insist on a right of first refusal or a right to match outstanding offers on the author's next book, but such provisions are becoming rare.

4.53 *Edited works.* The agreement just described is intended for books with one or a few authors. Another type of book, common in scholarly but not in trade publishing, is one in which the chapters are contributed by various authors, chosen and guided by an editor who is an authority in the relevant field. The editor, by selecting and arranging the contributions included in the work, adds another layer of authorship. As author of the collective work, the book as a whole, he or she should sign an agreement similar to the standard author agreement described above. In dealing with the chapter contributors, a publisher may in some circumstances use an agreement of the same type, especially if the contributors are to receive royalty shares. All such agreements, though, need to be modified to reflect the particular allocation of responsibilities between editor and contributors. Alternatively, in appropriate circumstances, publishers can use simpler forms (such as that in fig. 4.1), closer in style to journal author forms (see fig. 4.2). Finally, it is possible to use work-made-for-hire agreements for all these persons, although that is the least common solution. For symposia, see 4.59.

4.54 *Other contracts.* In scholarly publishing, in addition to contracts with the authors of new books, several other types of agreement are in use for special kinds of works. Two of the common ones cover contributions to scholarly journals (see 4.55–58 and fig. 4.2) and to symposia (see 4.59 and fig. 4.1).

Journal Articles

4.55 *Transfers of rights.* Contributors to a journal possess at the beginning exactly the same rights in their work as authors of books. Consequently, when an article has been accepted for publication in a scholarly journal, the publisher usually asks the author to sign a formal transfer of rights in the contribution. In the absence of a written copyright transfer agreement, all that the publisher acquires is the privilege of printing the contribution in the context of that journal. Contributors frequently do not know this and do not understand that without broad rights the publisher cannot license anthology, database, classroom photocopying, or other uses that spread the author's message. Explaining this will often overcome the author's reluctance to sign the transfer. In the agreement currently in use at the University of Chicago Press, the publisher returns to the contributor the right to reprint the article in other scholarly works (see fig. 4.2). Such a provision is fair to both sides and is to be encouraged.

4.56 *Less than full rights.* Some journal publishers, when an author refuses to transfer copyright in toto, ask instead for a license more closely tailored to their specific needs. Care must be taken in such cases to ensure that the contract covers all the subsidiary rights that the publisher may want to exercise or sublicense and that the publisher's rights are exclusive where they need to be. This is especially important for electronic database rights. The right to publish an article in a journal does not carry with it ipso facto the right to include that article in an electronic database. Journal publishers who wish to put their publications up on their own websites, or license them to database publishers, need to ensure that their contracts give them that right. In general, the trend toward narrowing or customization of licenses from journal authors to their publishers imposes on publishers a need to keep careful records of what rights they have obtained in each article, so they do not grant subsidiary rights that they do not in fact control.

4.57 *New alternative licensing arrangements.* Quite early in the evolution of the software industry a movement emerged of people anxious to eliminate copyright control over software and replace it with a system geared toward sharing and free distribution. More recently this ethos, combined with antipathy to the publishing industry in some circles, has led to efforts to restrict the licenses given to publishers of scholarly journals (see

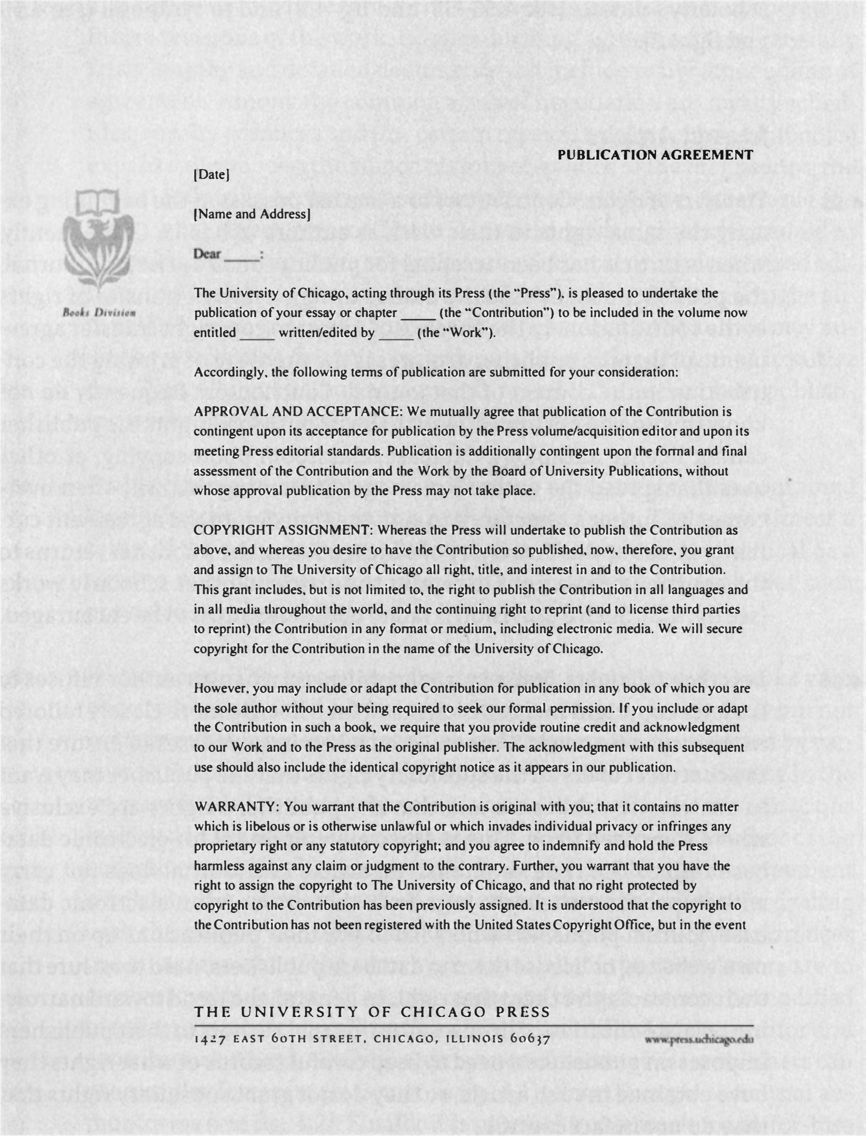

PUBLICATION AGREEMENT

[Date]

[Name and Address]

Books Division

Dear _____:

The University of Chicago, acting through its Press (the "Press"), is pleased to undertake the publication of your essay or chapter _____ (the "Contribution") to be included in the volume now entitled _____ written/edited by _____ (the "Work").

Accordingly, the following terms of publication are submitted for your consideration:

APPROVAL AND ACCEPTANCE: We mutually agree that publication of the Contribution is contingent upon its acceptance for publication by the Press volume/acquisition editor and upon its meeting Press editorial standards. Publication is additionally contingent upon the formal and final assessment of the Contribution and the Work by the Board of University Publications, without whose approval publication by the Press may not take place.

COPYRIGHT ASSIGNMENT: Whereas the Press will undertake to publish the Contribution as above, and whereas you desire to have the Contribution so published, now, therefore, you grant and assign to The University of Chicago all right, title, and interest in and to the Contribution. This grant includes, but is not limited to, the right to publish the Contribution in all languages and in all media throughout the world, and the continuing right to reprint (and to license third parties to reprint) the Contribution in any format or medium, including electronic media. We will secure copyright for the Contribution in the name of the University of Chicago.

However, you may include or adapt the Contribution for publication in any book of which you are the sole author without your being required to seek our formal permission. If you include or adapt the Contribution in such a book, we require that you provide routine credit and acknowledgment to our Work and to the Press as the original publisher. The acknowledgment with this subsequent use should also include the identical copyright notice as it appears in our publication.

WARRANTY: You warrant that the Contribution is original with you; that it contains no matter which is libelous or is otherwise unlawful or which invades individual privacy or infringes any proprietary right or any statutory copyright; and you agree to indemnify and hold the Press harmless against any claim or judgment to the contrary. Further, you warrant that you have the right to assign the copyright to The University of Chicago, and that no right protected by copyright to the Contribution has been previously assigned. It is understood that the copyright to the Contribution has not been registered with the United States Copyright Office, but in the event

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO PRESS

1427 EAST 60TH STREET, CHICAGO, ILLINOIS 60637 www.press.uchicago.edu

FIGURE 4.1. Agreement, or consent, for publication of an article or a chapter commissioned as a contribution to a collective work, such as a symposium. Different forms of agreement are required for "works made for hire," such as translations, forewords, or indexes.

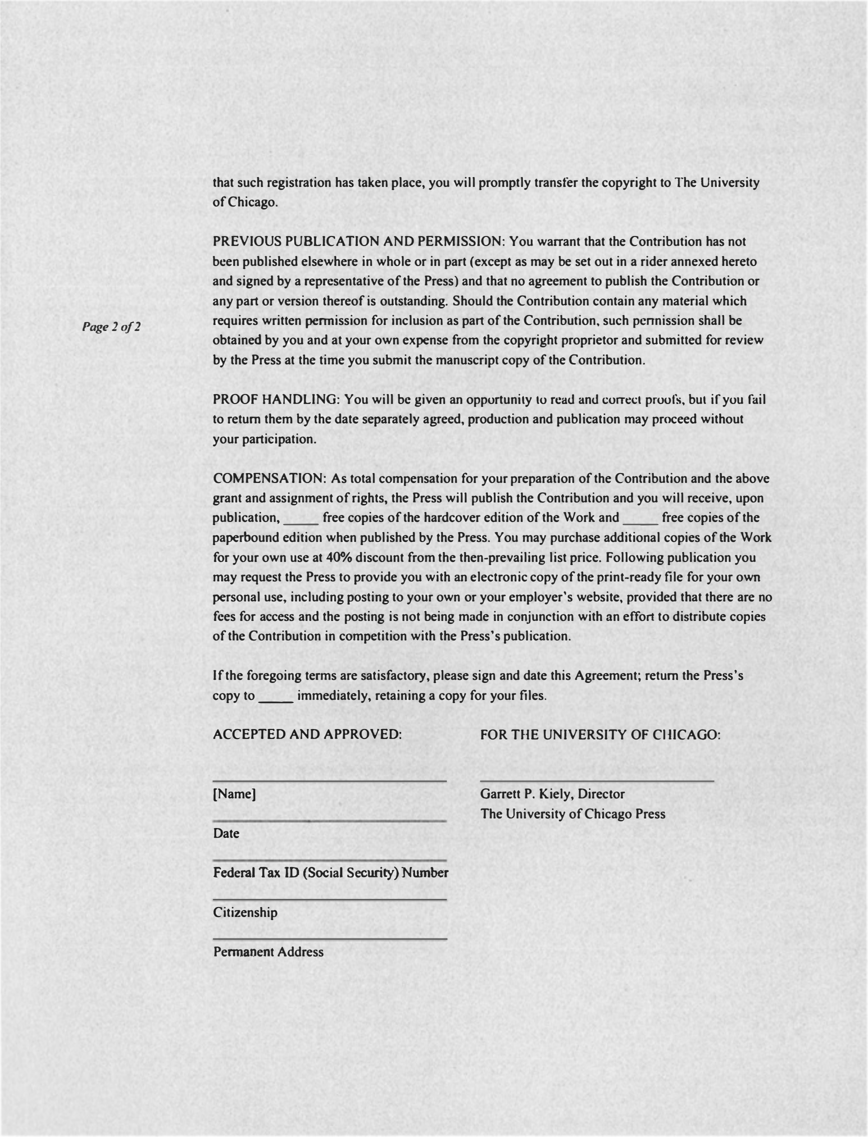

Page 2 of 2

that such registration has taken place, you will promptly transfer the copyright to The University of Chicago.

PREVIOUS PUBLICATION AND PERMISSION: You warrant that the Contribution has not been published elsewhere in whole or in part (except as may be set out in a rider annexed hereto and signed by a representative of the Press) and that no agreement to publish the Contribution or any part or version thereof is outstanding. Should the Contribution contain any material which requires written permission for inclusion as part of the Contribution, such permission shall be obtained by you and at your own expense from the copyright proprietor and submitted for review by the Press at the time you submit the manuscript copy of the Contribution.

PROOF HANDLING: You will be given an opportunity to read and correct proofs, but if you fail to return them by the date separately agreed, production and publication may proceed without your participation.

COMPENSATION: As total compensation for your preparation of the Contribution and the above grant and assignment of rights, the Press will publish the Contribution and you will receive, upon publication, _____ free copies of the hardcover edition of the Work and _____ free copies of the paperbound edition when published by the Press. You may purchase additional copies of the Work for your own use at 40% discount from the then-prevailing list price. Following publication you may request the Press to provide you with an electronic copy of the print-ready file for your own personal use, including posting to your own or your employer's website, provided that there are no fees for access and the posting is not being made in conjunction with an effort to distribute copies of the Contribution in competition with the Press's publication.

If the foregoing terms are satisfactory, please sign and date this Agreement; return the Press's copy to _____ immediately, retaining a copy for your files.

ACCEPTED AND APPROVED:	FOR THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO:
[Name]	Garrett P. Kiely, Director The University of Chicago Press
Date	
Federal Tax ID (Social Security) Number	
Citizenship	
Permanent Address	

FIGURE 4.1. *(continued)*

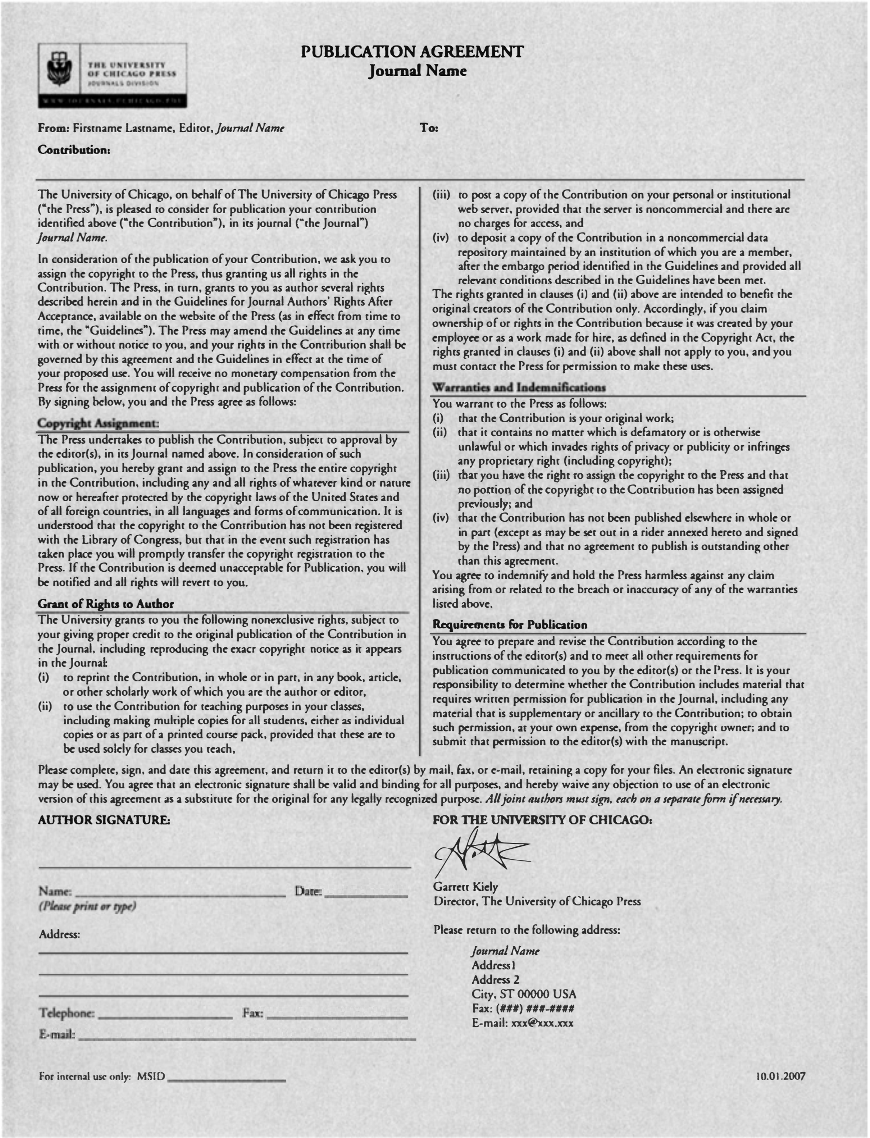

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO PRESS
JOURNALS DIVISION

PUBLICATION AGREEMENT
Journal Name

From: Firstname Lastname, Editor, *Journal Name*

To:

Contribution:

The University of Chicago, on behalf of The University of Chicago Press ("the Press"), is pleased to consider for publication your contribution identified above ("the Contribution"), in its journal ("the Journal") *Journal Name*.

In consideration of the publication of your Contribution, we ask you to assign the copyright to the Press, thus granting us all rights in the Contribution. The Press, in turn, grants to you as author several rights described herein and in the Guidelines for Journal Authors' Rights After Acceptance, available on the website of the Press (as in effect from time to time, the "Guidelines"). The Press may amend the Guidelines at any time with or without notice to you, and your rights in the Contribution shall be governed by this agreement and the Guidelines in effect at the time of your proposed use. You will receive no monetary compensation from the Press for the assignment of copyright and publication of the Contribution. By signing below, you and the Press agree as follows:

Copyright Assignment:

The Press undertakes to publish the Contribution, subject to approval by the editor(s), in its Journal named above. In consideration of such publication, you hereby grant and assign to the Press the entire copyright in the Contribution, including any and all rights of whatever kind or nature now or hereafter protected by the copyright laws of the United States and of all foreign countries, in all languages and forms of communication. It is understood that the copyright to the Contribution has not been registered with the Library of Congress, but that in the event such registration has taken place you will promptly transfer the copyright registration to the Press. If the Contribution is deemed unacceptable for Publication, you will be notified and all rights will revert to you.

Grant of Rights to Author

The University grants to you the following nonexclusive rights, subject to your giving proper credit to the original publication of the Contribution in the Journal, including reproducing the exacr copyright notice as it appears in the Journal:

(i) to reprint the Contribution, in whole or in part, in any book, article, or other scholarly work of which you are the author or editor,
(ii) to use the Contribution for teaching purposes in your classes, including making multiple copies for all students, either as individual copies or as part of a printed course pack, provided that these are to be used solely for classes you teach,
(iii) to post a copy of the Contribution on your personal or institutional web server, provided that the server is noncommercial and there are no charges for access, and
(iv) to deposit a copy of the Contribution in a noncommercial data repository maintained by an institution of which you are a member, after the embargo period identified in the Guidelines and provided all relevant conditions described in the Guidelines have been met.

The rights granted in clauses (i) and (ii) above are intended to benefit the original creators of the Contribution only. Accordingly, if you claim ownership of or rights in the Contribution because it was created by your employee or as a work made for hire, as defined in the Copyright Act, the rights granted in clauses (i) and (ii) above shall not apply to you, and you must contact the Press for permission to make these uses.

Warranties and Indemnifications

You warrant to the Press as follows:

(i) that the Contribution is your original work;
(ii) that it contains no matter which is defamatory or is otherwise unlawful or which invades rights of privacy or publicity or infringes any proprietary right (including copyright);
(iii) that you have the right to assign the copyright to the Press and that no portion of the copyright to the Contribution has been assigned previously; and
(iv) that the Contribution has not been published elsewhere in whole or in part (except as may be set out in a rider annexed hereto and signed by the Press) and that no agreement to publish is outstanding other than this agreement.

You agree to indemnify and hold the Press harmless against any claim arising from or related to the breach or inaccuracy of any of the warranties listed above.

Requirements for Publication

You agree to prepare and revise the Contribution according to the instructions of the editor(s) and to meet all other requirements for publication communicated to you by the editor(s) or the Press. It is your responsibility to determine whether the Contribution includes material that requires written permission for publication in the Journal, including any material that is supplementary or ancillary to the Contribution; to obtain such permission, at your own expense, from the copyright owner; and to submit that permission to the editor(s) with the manuscript.

Please complete, sign, and date this agreement, and return it to the editor(s) by mail, fax, or e-mail, retaining a copy for your files. An electronic signature may be used. You agree that an electronic signature shall be valid and binding for all purposes, and hereby waive any objection to use of an electronic version of this agreement as a substitute for the original for any legally recognized purpose. *All joint authors must sign, each on a separate form if necessary.*

AUTHOR SIGNATURE:

____

Name: ______________________ Date: __________
(Please print or type)

Address:
____
____
____

Telephone: ______________ Fax: ______________
E-mail: ______________________________

FOR THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO:

Garrett Kiely
Director, The University of Chicago Press

Please return to the following address:

Journal Name
Address1
Address 2
City, ST 00000 USA
Fax: (###) ###-####
E-mail: xxx@xxx.xxx

For internal use only: MSID ______________

10.01.2007

FIGURE 4.2. Agreement for publication of a journal article, currently in use by the University of Chicago Press. Here the author transfers all copyright rights to the publisher of the journal, and the publisher transfers back to the author the right to reprint the article in other scholarly contexts.

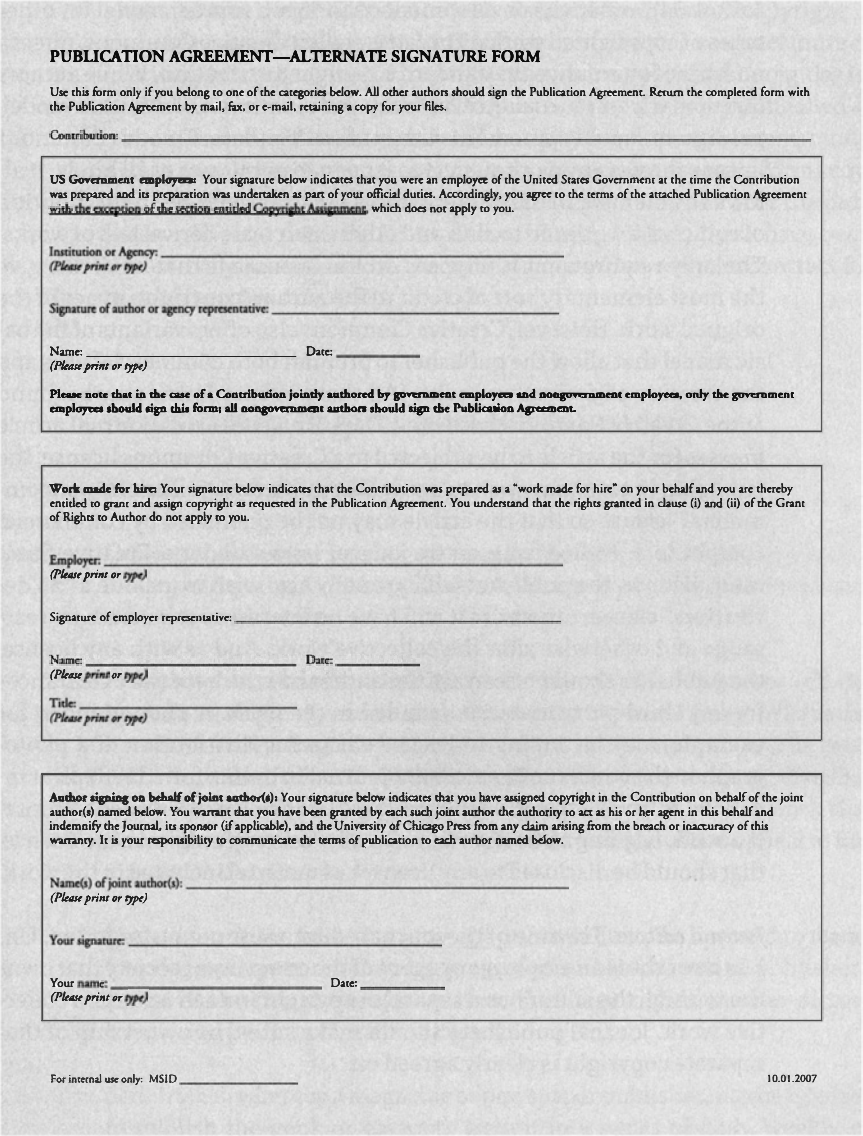

PUBLICATION AGREEMENT—ALTERNATE SIGNATURE FORM

Use this form only if you belong to one of the categories below. All other authors should sign the Publication Agreement. Return the completed form with the Publication Agreement by mail, fax, or e-mail, retaining a copy for your files.

Contribution: ______________________________

US Government employees: Your signature below indicates that you were an employee of the United States Government at the time the Contribution was prepared and its preparation was undertaken as part of your official duties. Accordingly, you agree to the terms of the attached Publication Agreement with the exception of the section entitled Copyright Assignment, which does not apply to you.

Institution or Agency: ______________________________
(Please print or type)

Signature of author or agency representative: ______________________________

Name: ______________________________ Date: __________
(Please print or type)

Please note that in the case of a Contribution jointly authored by government employees and nongovernment employees, only the government employees should sign this form; all nongovernment authors should sign the Publication Agreement.

Work made for hire: Your signature below indicates that the Contribution was prepared as a "work made for hire" on your behalf and you are thereby entitled to grant and assign copyright as requested in the Publication Agreement. You understand that the rights granted in clause (i) and (ii) of the Grant of Rights to Author do not apply to you.

Employer: ______________________________
(Please print or type)

Signature of employer representative: ______________________________

Name: ______________________________ Date: __________
(Please print or type)

Title: ______________________________
(Please print or type)

Author signing on behalf of joint author(s): Your signature below indicates that you have assigned copyright in the Contribution on behalf of the joint author(s) named below. You warrant that you have been granted by each such joint author the authority to act as his or her agent in this behalf and indemnify the Journal, its sponsor (if applicable), and the University of Chicago Press from any claim arising from the breach or inaccuracy of this warranty. It is your responsibility to communicate the terms of publication to each author named below.

Name(s) of joint author(s): ______________________________
(Please print or type)

Your signature: ______________________________

Your name: ______________________________ Date: __________
(Please print or type)

For internal use only: MSID ____________ 10.01.2007

FIGURE 4.2. *(continued)*

4.63, 4.64), and to the development of an "open source" model for other types of copyrighted works. The latter, called Creative Commons, offers a number of alternatives to standard copyright distribution. While authors (particularly of journal articles) may show enthusiasm for this model, publishers should approach it with caution. The basic Creative Commons license throws any work subject to it open to public use of all kinds. It allows any member of the public to carry out unlimited free redistribution of copies of a work and to alter and otherwise create derivatives of works. The only requirement it imposes on the licensee is that he or she give the most elementary sort of credit to the author/copyright owner of the original work. However, Creative Commons also offers variants of the basic model that allow the publisher to prohibit both commercial uses and the creation of derivative works. (All these license forms may be found at the Creative Commons website.) Thus, if an author of a journal article presses for the article to be subjected to a Creative Commons license, the publisher in turn may wish to insist that the license include a "noncommercial" clause so that the article may not be published by commercial competitors. In licensing entire journal issues under a Creative Commons license, the publisher will normally also wish to include a "no derivatives" clause; otherwise it will have no control over how others rearrange and otherwise alter the collective work. And as with any license, the publisher should be certain the author has the necessary clearances for any third-party material included in the work. A photographer, for example, may be willing to license electronic distribution of a photograph in the context of a particular journal in online form but balk at inclusion in an electronic version subject to a Creative Commons license. If a work is going to be distributed under a Creative Commons license, that should be disclosed to any licensor of material included in the work.

4.58 *Journal editors.* The role of the journal editor must not be forgotten. Unless he or she is an employee or agent of the company or society that owns the journal, the editor has a separate copyright in each issue as a collective work. Journal publishers should make sure that ownership of that separate copyright is clearly agreed on.

Contributions to Symposia

4.59 *Symposium proceedings.* Symposium proceedings, made up of papers by different authors, are sometimes published as special issues of journals and sometimes as stand-alone books. The editor of the proceedings, in either case, has a separate status as author because the proceedings, as a whole, are a collective work. If the proceedings are being published as a journal issue, the publisher needs to make clear who owns copyright in the editor's work and to secure from every contributor a contract more or less identical to that used for authors of articles published in regular issues of the journal concerned. If the proceedings are being published as a book, the editor should sign a standard book author agreement, modified as appropriate, and the contributors should sign separate forms covering their own papers (see fig. 4.1). Either the volume editor or the publisher will send these forms to all contributors. When these have been signed, they are returned to the publisher and filed with the contract for the volume. See also 4.53.

Subsidiary Rights and Permissions

Handling Subsidiary Rights

4.60 ***Categories.*** Subsidiary rights are usually thought of as including the following categories, some applicable to all types of published works and others to books only:

Foreign rights, whereby a foreign publisher may be licensed to sell the book in its original version in that publisher's own territory. Where the license is for the English-language version, the licensor should be careful to limit the license to the print medium, because electronic distribution cannot easily, if at all, be limited geographically. (And a work that the original publisher makes available online will be of less appeal to foreign print distributors.)

Translation rights, whereby a foreign publisher may be licensed to translate the work into another language and to have standard publisher's rights in the translation (other than live-stage rights, motion-picture rights, and perhaps electronic rights).

Serial rights, whereby a magazine or newspaper publisher may be licensed to publish the book or excerpts from it in a series of daily, weekly, or monthly installments. *First serial rights* refers to publication before the work has come out in book form, *second serial rights* to publication afterward.

Paperback rights, whereby a publisher is licensed to produce and sell a paperback version of the book. So-called quality, or trade, paperbacks are normally sold in bookstores, like clothbound books. Mass-market paperbacks are typically marketed through newsstands and supermarkets, although many now find their way into bookstores. Where the publisher of the paperback is the original publisher, paperback rights are not subsidiary but primary, usually with their own royalty scale. Some books are published only in paper, with no previously published clothbound version; these are called original paperbacks.

Book-club rights, whereby a book club is given the right to distribute the book to its members for less than the regular trade price. Copies generally are sold to the book club in bulk at a steep discount.

Reprint rights, whereby another publisher is licensed to reprint the work, in whole or in part, in an anthology or some other collection or (usually if the work has gone out of print in English) in a cheap reprint edition. This category also includes licensing document-delivery companies to reproduce chapters of works on demand.

Live-stage rights, whereby a theatrical producer is given the right to produce a play or musical based on the work.

Motion-picture rights, whereby a movie producer or studio is given the right to make a motion picture based on the work. This applies primarily to works of fiction, but motion-picture producers will often license rights to biographies and other nonfiction works so as to avoid possible infringement claims.

Audio rights, whereby the work is licensed for recording on compact disc, for audio delivery over the Internet, or the like.

Electronic rights, whereby the work, or portions of it, is licensed for distribution online, in CD-ROM format, or via other electronic means. However, if the publisher itself intends to issue the work in e-book or other electronic form, electronic rights should be considered not subsidiary rights but part of the publisher's basic publication right and subject to a primary royalty. Publishers should normally assign new ISBNs for the electronic versions of their works, just as they have always done when (for example) issuing a hardcover work in paperback form (see 1.32). Publishers should bear in mind that electronic versions may sometimes be considered derivative works rather than mere copies of the print version. The addition of substantial hyperlinks, video data, and the like may create a derivative work. If the publisher is for any reason not acquiring general derivative work rights in the contract, it should make sure to obtain the right to enhance the electronic version of the work with such features. The publisher should also be sure to obtain the right to license electronic educational use (see 4.61, 4.90).

Rights for scholarly use, whereby the publisher grants others permission to quote text or copy charts and other illustrations from the original.

Rights for educational use, whereby teachers are permitted to make copies of the work for their classes or to include excerpts from the work in course-specific anthologies ("course packs"). Until recently, photocopying was the standard medium for classroom use, but electronic reproduction is becoming more common and blurring some of the boundaries of subsidiary rights. Educational use may also include such things as inclusion in electronic reserves in libraries or distribution over campus intranets.

Subsidiary rights in the context of journals also include microform (including microfilm and microfiche) and the right to make summaries of articles in so-called abstract form. Reproduction by document-delivery houses and licensing of electronic database rights are particularly relevant to journals.

4.61 ***Electronic-rights licensing.*** The term *electronic rights* covers a wide range of possibilities, and the number is constantly growing. Among the users of electronic rights are aggregators, who make available online a large number of publications in a given field or fields; research services, both current and archival, that permit access to databases of publications, often by subscription; and services that allow users to purchase or "borrow" electronic copies of works. The decision whether to license some or all of such uses is both an economic and a strategic one. For the most part, electronic delivery services are too new for publishers to predict with any certainty what income may flow from them. Rather, the economic issue is whether the availability of a work through these services may "cannibalize" the publisher's projected print sales. The strategic issue is even harder to quantify, involving the need to be on the cutting edge of publishing or, at least, not to be seen as a laggard in such matters. In entering into electronic-rights licenses, the publisher should satisfy itself that the delivery mechanism of the particular licensee has safeguards against excessive downloading—or that such downloading is something the publisher can tolerate. The publisher should also ensure that no electronic license lasts more than a few years, for the pace of change is such that all these issues need to be revisited frequently.

4.62 ***Authors' electronic use of their own works.*** Where books are concerned, the author seldom retains any right of electronic publication. In scholarly journals, on the other hand, the right of authors to make electronic use of their own works has become contentious. For example, publishers that have traditionally allowed their authors to make unlimited photocopies for their own students now face an analogous demand: that authors be permitted to post their works on campus websites. If the website is accessible only by password and only to members of the university, the risk of lost revenue is probably modest and probably less important than retaining the goodwill of the author. More problematic is the demand, increasingly frequent, that the author be permitted to post the article on his or her personal website, or on an open-access university website or other "institutional repository." While such dissemination may not necessarily affect sales of the journal as such, it is likely to diminish licensing revenues. The fact that licensing revenue helps support the publication of important scholarly work seems to have escaped general notice.

4.63 ***University licenses.*** Several universities have adopted policies under which they presumptively receive nonexclusive licenses of journal articles written by their faculty, with the right to post those articles on the Internet and to make and license "noncommercial" uses. (Commonly, faculty are permitted but not encouraged to opt out of this arrangement on a case-by-case basis.) Where this arrangement applies, a faculty author is supposed to present his or her publisher with an addendum to the publisher's standard contract, listing rights granted to the university. There are various forms of addenda in circulation; all are problematic. One, for example, contains the following provision:

> Notwithstanding any terms in the Publication Agreement to the contrary, AUTHOR and PUBLISHER agree that in addition to any rights under copyright retained by Author in the Publication Agreement, Author retains: (i) the rights to reproduce, to distribute, to publicly perform, and to publicly display the Article in any medium for noncommercial purposes; (ii) the right to prepare derivative works from the Article; and (iii) the right to authorize others to make any noncommercial use of the Article so long as Author receives credit as author and the journal in which the Article has been published is cited as the source of first publication of the Article. For example, Author may make and distribute copies in the course of teaching and research and may post the Article on personal or institutional websites and in other open-access digital repositories.

Among its faults, this language (i) does not make clear what the author can, and cannot, do with derivative works that he or she creates; (ii) does not make clear whether what the author can distribute, display, and otherwise use is the author's own manuscript or the finished, published work; and (iii) does not prevent the author from licensing the article to a competing journal, if the latter is "noncommercial" (a word that has no commonly accepted legal meaning). Another problem is that only the publisher as copyright owner has the ability to police compliance with whatever "noncommercial" licenses the author or university may give—yet the publisher has no control over the licensing activity. Publishers would be well advised to develop their own addenda to use when presented with author requests for nonexclusive rights. Such addenda might give the author and his or her employer unlimited rights to use the article internally, the right to post manuscript versions of the article on the author's website, and the right to post a PDF or similar file of the final published version on the author's website after a decent interval of time.

4.64 ***The NIH Public Access Policy.*** In a similar vein to the university policies addressed in the previous paragraph, a "Public Access Policy" has been adopted by the National Institutes of Health pursuant to congressional mandate. This policy requires submission, for posting on the National Library of Medicine's PubMed Central, of the final manuscripts of all peer-reviewed articles derived from NIH-funded research. Manuscripts are to be submitted upon final acceptance for publication—that is, after the entire peer review and editorial process is complete and the article is ready for publication. This policy, unlike the university policies discussed above, is not subject to any opt-out and cannot be altered by any addendum. (Publishers may, however, choose to substitute their own published versions of articles for such manuscripts.) Authors' contracts with their publishers must stipulate a time, no later than twelve months after the official date of publication, when their articles will be posted for public access. If publishers believe that licensing revenue will be directly affected once an article is available at no cost from PubMed Central, they will wish to push for the maximum delay (i.e., twelve months) on public posting.

4.65 ***Economic considerations.*** The list above by no means exhausts the various forms of subsidiary rights the publisher may handle, but it includes the major ones. Depending on the administrative structure of the publishing house and the importance and marketability of the work involved, various persons or departments may handle different aspects of subsidiary rights work—a special rights and permissions department, the sales or marketing department, the acquiring editor, or even the chief executive officer. When the publisher sells or licenses rights to others, money is paid, either in a lump sum or as a royalty, and these proceeds are normally split between the publisher and the author according to whatever terms are specified in the publishing contract. In a typical book-publishing agreement the author receives at least 50 percent of such income. Some publishers have tried to avoid paying the author so much by licensing at an artificially low royalty to a sister company or other affiliate, but such "sweetheart" arrangements are suspect and of doubtful legality. In general, licenses between related companies should be handled in the same way as those between unrelated companies unless the author agrees otherwise in advance.

Granting Permission

4.66 *Handling permission requests.* A publisher with a relatively large backlist of books and journals, such as the University of Chicago Press, may receive dozens of communications every day from people seeking to license material from its list. Some requests are for standard subsidiary rights licenses, as described above. Others are for permission to reproduce snippets of prose or verse, or an illustration or two, from a book or journal. Most publishers have a "rights and permissions" staff to handle these requests. Rights and permissions can be a major source of income but also a major item of expense. Strategies for streamlining the permissions function are discussed later in this chapter.

4.67 *The rights file.* One prerequisite to an efficient and legally safe rights and permissions program is a complete and accurate record of what rights the publisher has. This is especially sensitive where third-party materials such as illustrations are embedded in the material to be licensed. The publisher's rights file should also record any other conditions that might restrict the publisher's ability to license, such as a requirement that the author's approval be obtained.

The Author's Responsibilities

4.68 *Author's warranties.* In signing a contract with a publisher an author warrants (guarantees) that the work is original, that the author owns it, that no part of it has been previously published, and that no other agreement to publish it or part of it is outstanding. The author should also warrant that the work does not libel anyone or infringe any person's right of privacy. If the work contains scientific formulas or practical advice, the author should also be asked to warrant that no instructions in the work will, if accurately followed, cause injury to anyone. Some publishers ask for a further warranty that any statement of fact in the work is indeed accurate.

Obtaining Permissions

4.69 *General principles.* Budget permitting, an author may wish to commission illustrations on a work-made-for-hire basis, using forms supplied by the publisher. With this exception, an author must obtain permission to use any copyrighted material created by others, unless the intended use is a "fair use" (see 4.77–87). Technically, permission need not be in writing, but it would be most unwise to rely on oral permission. No permission is required to quote from works of the United States government or works for which copyright has expired. See 4.25–29 for guidelines to determine whether copyright for old material has expired. Bear in mind that although the original text of a classic reprinted in a modern edition may be in the public domain, recent translations and abridgments, as well as editorial introductions, notes, and other apparatus, are protected by copyright. But whether permission is needed or not, the author should always, as a matter of good practice (and to avoid any possible charge of plagiarism), credit any sources used. See 4.98.

4.70 *Author's role in obtaining permissions.* Publishing agreements place on the author the responsibility to request any permission needed for the use of material owned by others. In the course of writing a book or article, the author should keep a record of all copyright owners whose permission may be necessary before the work is published. For a book containing many illustrations, long prose passages, or poetry, obtaining permissions may take weeks, even months. For example, the author may find that an American publisher holds rights only for distribution in the United States and that European and British Commonwealth rights are held by a British publisher. The author, wishing worldwide distribution for the book (world rights), must then write to the British publisher requesting permission to reprint, mentioning (if true) that permission has already been obtained from the US publisher. If the author of copyrighted material has died, or if the copyright owner has gone out of business, a voluminous correspondence may ensue before anyone authorized to grant permission can be found (see 4.75). The author should therefore begin requesting permissions as soon as a manuscript is accepted for publication. Most publishers wisely decline to start setting type for a book until all the author's permissions are in hand.[1]

4.71 *Author's own work.* The author should remember that permission is sometimes needed to reuse or even to revise his or her own work. If the author has already allowed a chapter or other significant part to appear in print elsewhere—as a journal article, for example—then written permission to reprint it, or to update or revise it, will need to be secured from the copyright owner of the other publication, unless the author secured the right of reuse in the contract with that earlier publisher. The law does not require that the prior publication be credited in the new publication, but it is a common courtesy to give credit on the copyright page of the book, in a footnote on the first page of the reprinted material, or in a special list of acknowledgments. And if the first publisher owns copyright in the material, it may make credit a condition of permission to reprint. Also, if the first publisher owns copyright, the new publisher will need to flag its files so that subsequent permissions requests for that material are referred to the original copyright owner.

4.72 *Fees and record keeping.* Most publishing agreements stipulate that any fees to be paid will be the author's responsibility. (Textbooks are a rare exception; see 4.100.) When all permissions have been received, the author should send them, or copies of them, to the publisher, who will note and comply with any special provisions they contain. The publisher will file all permissions with the publishing contract, where they may be consulted in the event of future editions or of requests for permission to reprint from the work. The copyeditor will check the permissions against the manuscript to be sure all necessary credits have been given. See 1.30, 2.43, 4.98, 14.49.

4.73 *Permissions beyond the immediate use.* Many publishers, when giving permission to reprint material they control, will withhold the right to sublicense that material. In such a case the publisher of the later work will not be able to give third parties free and clear permission to use material in which content from the earlier work is embedded; they will have to go back to the original source. Some publishers will also limit their licenses to a single edition, sometimes even with a maximum print run stipulated, or to a specific time period such as five or seven years. Where this is so, the publisher receiving the permission will have to go back to the source for new permission, usually for an additional fee, for any new edition, paperback reprint, serialization, or whatever. Alternatively, the publisher granting permission can stipulate up front what fees are to be paid for further uses and permit the new publisher to secure such permission automatically on payment of the agreed-on fee.

---

[1] It is possible to engage professional help in obtaining permissions for a large project. Specialists in this work are listed under "Consultants" in the annual publication *LMP* (*Literary Market Place*; see bibliog. 2.8). Note also that the allocation of responsibility described here may not apply in some cases, such as large-market college textbooks, for which the publisher may take on the permissions paperwork. See 4.100.

4.74 *Unpublished works.* Getting permission for unpublished material presents an entirely different problem. Instead of a publishing corporation or licensing agent, one must deal with the author or author's heirs, who may not be easily identified or found. If the writer is dead, it may be especially difficult to determine who controls the copyrights.

4.75 *The missing copyright owner.* The problem presented by unpublished works whose authors are dead is, in a larger sense, just an example of the problem of the missing copyright owner. Another typical example is the publisher that has gone out of business or at least is no longer doing business under a given imprint. This problem has come to be known as the "orphan works" problem and has been the subject of proposed legislation. The draft bills suggest practices that a publisher would do well to follow in dealing with an orphan work. The most important thing is to conduct a reasonable (and well-documented) effort to locate the copyright owner. The elements of a bona fide search will vary with the circumstances but would probably include a search of the Copyright Office records, an Internet search, and queries to both private and public databases that might reasonably be expected to contain information as to the owner of the copyright. If such efforts yield no results, there is still some risk in going forward. Technically, use of the work might still be ruled an infringement of copyright should a copyright owner surface, but it is unlikely that any court would do more than require the payment of a reasonable permissions fee. Anyone proceeding with publication under these conditions should certainly be prepared to offer and pay a reasonable fee on receiving any objection from the rediscovered owner.

4.76 *Noncopyright restrictions on archives.* Authors who wish to include unpublished material in their works should be aware that private restrictions, unrelated to copyright, may limit its use. The keeper of a collection, usually a librarian or an archivist, is the best source of such information, including what permissions must be sought and from whom. Bear in mind that copyright in a manuscript is different from ownership of the actual paper. Most often a library or collector will own the physical object itself but not the right to reproduce it. Thus there may be two permissions required: one for access to the material and one for the right to copy. It is important not to mistake one for the other.

FAIR USE: QUOTING WITHOUT PERMISSION

4.77 ***Overview of the legal doctrine.*** The doctrine of fair use was originally developed by courts as an equitable limit on the absolute rights of copyright. Although incorporated into the new copyright law, the doctrine still does not attempt to define the exact limits of the fair use of copyrighted work. It does state, however, that in determining whether the use made of a work in any particular case is fair, the factors to be considered must include the following:

1. The purpose and character of the use, including whether such use is of a commercial nature or is for nonprofit educational purposes
2. The nature of the copyrighted work
3. The amount and substantiality of the portion used in relation to the copyrighted work as a whole
4. The effect of the use on the potential market for, or value of, the copyrighted work

Essentially, the doctrine excuses copying that would otherwise be infringement. For example, it allows authors to quote from other authors' work or to reproduce small amounts of graphic or pictorial material for purposes of review or criticism or to illustrate or buttress their own points. Authors invoking fair use should transcribe accurately and give credit to their sources. They should not quote out of context, making the author of the quoted passage seem to be saying something opposite to, or different from, what was intended.

4.78 ***Validity of "rules of thumb."*** Although the law lays out no boundaries or ironclad formulas for fair use, some publishers have their own rules of thumb. Such rules, of course, have no legal force: courts, not publishers, adjudicate fair use. The rules exist in part to give an overworked permissions department, which often cannot tell whether a proposed use of a quotation is actually fair, something to use as a yardstick. See also 4.87.

4.79 ***A few general rules.*** Fair use is use that is fair—simply that. Uses that are tangential in purpose to the original, and uses that transform the copied material by changing its context or the way it is perceived, will always be judged more leniently than those that merely parallel or parrot the original. For example, substantial quotation of the original is acceptable in the context of a critique but may well not be acceptable if one is simply using the first author's words to reiterate the same argument or embellish one's own prose. Use of any literary work in its entirety—a poem, an essay, a chapter of a book—is hardly ever acceptable. Use of less than the whole will be judged by whether the second author appears to be taking a free ride on the first author's labor. As a general rule, one should never quote more than a few contiguous paragraphs of prose or lines of poetry at a time or let the quotations, even if scattered, begin to overshadow the quoter's own material. Quotations or graphic reproductions should not be so substantial that they substitute for, or diminish the value of, the copyright owner's own publication. Proportion is more important than the absolute length of a quotation: quoting five hundred words from an essay of five thousand is likely to be riskier than quoting that amount from a work of fifty thousand. But an even smaller percentage can be an infringement if it constitutes the heart of the work being quoted.

4.80 ***Epigraphs and interior monologues.*** Quotation in the form of an epigraph does not fit neatly into any of the usual fair-use categories but is probably fair use by virtue of scholarly and artistic tradition. The same can be said of limited quotation of song lyrics, poetry, and the like in the context of an interior monologue or fictional narrative. Of course, this would not excuse the publication of a collection of epigraphs or lyrics without permission of the various authors being quoted.

4.81 ***Unpublished works.*** Where the work to be quoted has never been published, the same considerations apply. But if the author or the author's spouse or children are still living, some consideration should be given to their interest in controlling when the work is disclosed to the public.

4.82 ***Paraphrasing.*** Bear in mind that although fair use will protect verbatim copying, unfair use will not be excused by paraphrasing. Traditional copyright doctrine treats extensive paraphrase as merely disguised copying. Thus, fair-use analysis will be the same for both. Paraphrase of small quantities of material, on the other hand, may not constitute copying at all, so that fair-use analysis would never come into play.

4.83 ***Pictorial and graphic materials.*** With respect to pictorial and graphic materials, there is little legal precedent to navigate by. At the level of intuition, it seems that a monograph on Picasso should be free to reproduce details from his paintings in order, for example, to illustrate the critic's discussion of Picasso's brushwork. Reproducing the entire image in black and white may also be reasonably necessary to illustrate the author's analysis of Picasso's techniques of composition. Reproducing "thumbnail sketches" of images has been held to be a fair use since they are so small and of such poor resolution that they cannot reduce the commercial value of the original. However, justification wears thin when a painting is reproduced in vivid color occupying a full page; the result begins to compete with large-scale reproductions of artwork that have no scholarly purpose. Likewise, reproduction on the cover would in almost all cases count as commercial rather than scholarly use and therefore be unjustified. As for photographs, using them merely as illustrations would require permission, but use as described above in a scholarly treatment of photography might not.

4.84 *Charts, tables, and graphs.* Reproduction of charts, tables, and graphs presents a difficult judgment call. An aggressive approach would justify copying a single item on the ground that one chart is the pictorial equivalent of a few sentences. A more conservative approach would argue that a graph is a picture worth a thousand words and that reproducing it without permission is taking a free ride on the first author's work. This latter approach has the flaw of being too absolute in practice, for it is difficult under this rationale to imagine *any* fair use of such an image. Where the item in question represents a small portion of the original work and a small portion of the second work, the harm seems minimal, outweighed by the benefits of open communication. Certainly, reproduction of a single graph, table, or chart that simply presents data in a straightforward relationship, in contrast to reproduction of a graph or chart embellished with pictorial elements, should ordinarily be considered fair use. Indeed, some graphs that merely present facts with little or no expressive input—the equivalent, in two dimensions, of a mere list—may even be beyond the protection of copyright.

4.85 *Importance of attribution.* With all reuse of others' materials, it is important to identify the original as the source. This not only bolsters the claim of fair use but also helps avoid any accusation of plagiarism. Nothing elaborate is required; a standard footnote will suffice, or (in the case of a graph or table, for example) a simple legend that says "Source: [author, title, and date of earlier work]." Note that such a legend is not always clear: Does it mean that the data are taken from the original but reformatted by the second author or that the graph or table has itself been copied? If the latter, it is preferable to say "Reprinted from [author, title, and date of earlier work]" rather than merely "Source." See also 3.28–36, 3.75, 14.49.

4.86 *Unnecessary permissions.* Given the ad hoc nature of fair use and the absence of rules and guidelines, many publishers tend to seek permission if they have the slightest doubt whether a particular use is fair. This is unfortunate. The right of fair use is valuable to scholarship, and it should not be allowed to decay because scholars fail to employ it boldly. Furthermore, excessive permissions processing tends to slow down the gestation of worthwhile writings. Even if permission is sought and denied, that should not necessarily be treated as the end of the matter. The US Supreme Court has held that requesting permission should not be regarded as an admission that permission is needed. In other words, where permission is denied, or granted but for an unreasonable price, there is an opportunity for a second look.

4.87 ***Chicago's fair-use guidelines.*** To reduce the expense of responding to permissions requests, and to reduce the friction in scholarly publishing that permissions handling can create, the University of Chicago Press posts guidelines on its website for what it considers to be fair use of excerpts from its own publications. These guidelines are intended to be generous and fair to all parties. They are beginning to be adopted by other publishers.

LIBRARY AND EDUCATIONAL COPYING AS FAIR USE

4.88 ***The Copyright Act.*** Fair use has been much in dispute as applied to photocopying for classroom and library use. The Copyright Act contains specific guidelines for library photocopying, and the legislative history of the act includes specific, though not official, guidelines for classroom photocopying.

4.89 ***Library photocopying.*** The new law does attempt to define minimum fair-use limitations on machine copying by libraries, in a long section with many exemptions and caveats too complex to discuss here. In general, it allows libraries to make single copies of copyrighted works, provided each copy bears the original copyright notice and provided the copies are made for one of the purposes specifically defined in the statute, including the following:

1. If the copy is made for a library's own use because the library's own copy of the work is damaged or missing and a replacement cannot be obtained at a fair price
2. If the copy is made for a patron's use and is limited to an article or a small part of a larger work—or the whole of a larger work if a printed copy cannot be obtained at a fair price—and only if the copy is intended for use by the patron in "private study, scholarship, or research"

The law specifically forbids "systematic" copying by libraries. Presumably this includes but is not limited to (1) making copies of books or periodicals as a substitute for buying them and (2) making copies for patrons indiscriminately without regard to the patrons' identities or intended use of the material.

4.90 *Educational photocopying.* The Copyright Act does not include similar guidelines for educational photocopying. But a congressional report published at the time the law was being written includes privately negotiated guidelines, implicitly approved by Congress, for fair use of copyrighted material. These guidelines are available at the website of the United States Copyright Office. "Brevity" and "spontaneity" are the guiding principles; the latter reflects the premise that photocopying for classroom use should be done only when there is too little time to obtain permission. Multiple copies should not exceed the number of students in the class. They should not substitute for anthologies or regular school purchases. The same items should not be copied from year to year or semester to semester, but once only and at the instance of a particular teacher for immediate use in the classroom. Workbooks and other consumable materials should not be copied, and the students should not be charged more than the actual copying cost. Any copy must include the copyright notice used in the original. As for the widespread practice of making customized anthologies ("course packs") for individual teachers' classes, cases subsequent to the guidelines make clear that this is an infringement if express permission is not received from the copyright owners of the materials included in them. More recently, the legality of posting digital copies of published materials on campus intranets for so-called e-reserve purposes has been the subject of hotly contested litigation.

4.91 *Digitizing and automating the permissions process.* The technologies of photocopying and electronic reproduction present a major institutional challenge to publishers. The volume of license requests under these headings exceeds the ability of traditional techniques to process them. Publishers have customarily processed such requests by hand, case by case, evaluating each request on its own merits and often tailoring a fee to the specific circumstances. Whether this approach can or should survive is an open question. The Internet—the very electronic technology that publishers have often regarded as a threat—provides a powerful tool for handling requests rapidly and with little or no staff involvement. A properly designed website, coupled with the adoption of standard, publicly quoted fees, can create a highly efficient marketplace for copying, to the benefit of both the publisher and its customers. Authors seeking permission for use of other authors' work can obtain that permission immediately and can realistically budget for permissions fees in advance. The marketplace can be even more efficient when a royalty-rights organization such as the

Copyright Clearance Center (see 1.97) enables users to obtain online permissions from multiple publishers through a single website. Whether these services become the standard, or inspire publishers to move their own rights and permissions work to the web, remains to be seen.

Requesting Permission

4.92 ***Information required.*** Would-be users can help reduce delay and miscommunication by submitting their requests for permission in the best possible form. All requests for permission to reprint should be sent to the copyright holder in writing and in duplicate. The request should contain the following explicit information:

1. The title of the original work and exact identification, with page numbers, of what is to be reprinted. Identification should include, in the case of a table or figure, its number and the page it appears on (e.g., fig. 6 on p. 43); in the case of a poem, the title and the page on which the poem appears; in the case of a prose passage, the opening and closing phrases in addition to the page numbers (e.g., "from 'The military genius of Frederick the Great' on p. 110 through 'until the onset of World War I' on p. 112"). The requester should be sure to cite the original source of the material, not any subsequent reprinting of it.
2. Information about the publication in which the author wishes to reproduce the material: title, approximate number of printed pages, form of publication (clothbound book, paperback book, journal, electronic journal), publisher, probable date of publication, approximate print run, and list price (if available).
3. The kind of rights requested. The most limited rights a user ought to accept are "nonexclusive world rights in the English language, for one edition." The best opening gambit would be "nonexclusive world rights in all languages and for all editions in print and other media, including the right to grant customary permissions requests but only where the licensed material is incorporated in [the requester's work]." The request for "the rights to grant customary permissions" would, if granted, greatly simplify the downstream licensing of the new work. Unfortunately, such a right is not implicit in any nonexclusive license (see 4.34) and is seldom granted, and licensees of works in which earlier material is used end up needing to get multiple layers of permission.

Submitting a request in this form does not guarantee that the copyright owner will sign and return it—the owner may well have its own standard form that it returns to the requester—but it at least helps both parties by clearly defining what is under discussion. It is up to the copyright owner to state clearly what fee is demanded for the proposed use and what special conditions apply to the grant. When agreement on all terms is reached, the requester and the copyright owner should both retain copies of the final agreement, and a third copy (with original signature, if the process has been done on paper rather than electronically) should go to the publisher.

4.93 *Sample permissions letters.* The University of Chicago Press supplies authors or editors of books requiring many permissions with a model request letter (fig. 4.3) but suggests that they write on their own personal or (when appropriate) institutional letterhead. Every publisher would be well advised to adopt some variation of this practice, for authors typically are rudderless at sea without it.

ILLUSTRATIONS

4.94 *Rights holders.* Permission to reproduce pictorial works—as opposed to charts, graphs, or the like, which are usually created by the same author(s) as the text—will sometimes, but not reliably, be available from the publisher. A publisher who has used the pictorial work to illustrate text that someone is seeking to reprint may very well not have the right to sublicense use of the illustration. Even a publisher of, say, a collection of the artist's work may not have rights to the individual images. In such a case the permission seeker must deal with the owner of the object or the artist or both. Copyright ownership of artworks sold before 1978 is not always easy to determine, because before 1978 the law generally, but not always, assumed that so long as an original artwork remained unpublished, its copyright passed from hand to hand with ownership of the object itself. For post-1977 works, copyright belongs to the artist unless the artist has explicitly assigned it to someone else. But even for such works, the person seeking permission to reproduce the artwork in a book or journal may, as a practical matter, need to deal with a museum that expects a fee for the privilege of allowing reproduction. Where the museum can deny permission to photograph the object, such a fee is the tariff one pays for physical access if nothing else. Where the museum is licensing its own reproduction or photograph of the work, it has less justification, for the law denies copyright to photographs that merely reproduce another two-dimensional image. Be that as it may, authors and publishers are generally loath to antagonize museums by challenging their positions.

4.95 *Stock agencies and image archives.* The only kind of pictorial work for which permissions are easily granted is photographs, at least where one is dealing with a stock agency or other commercial image archive.

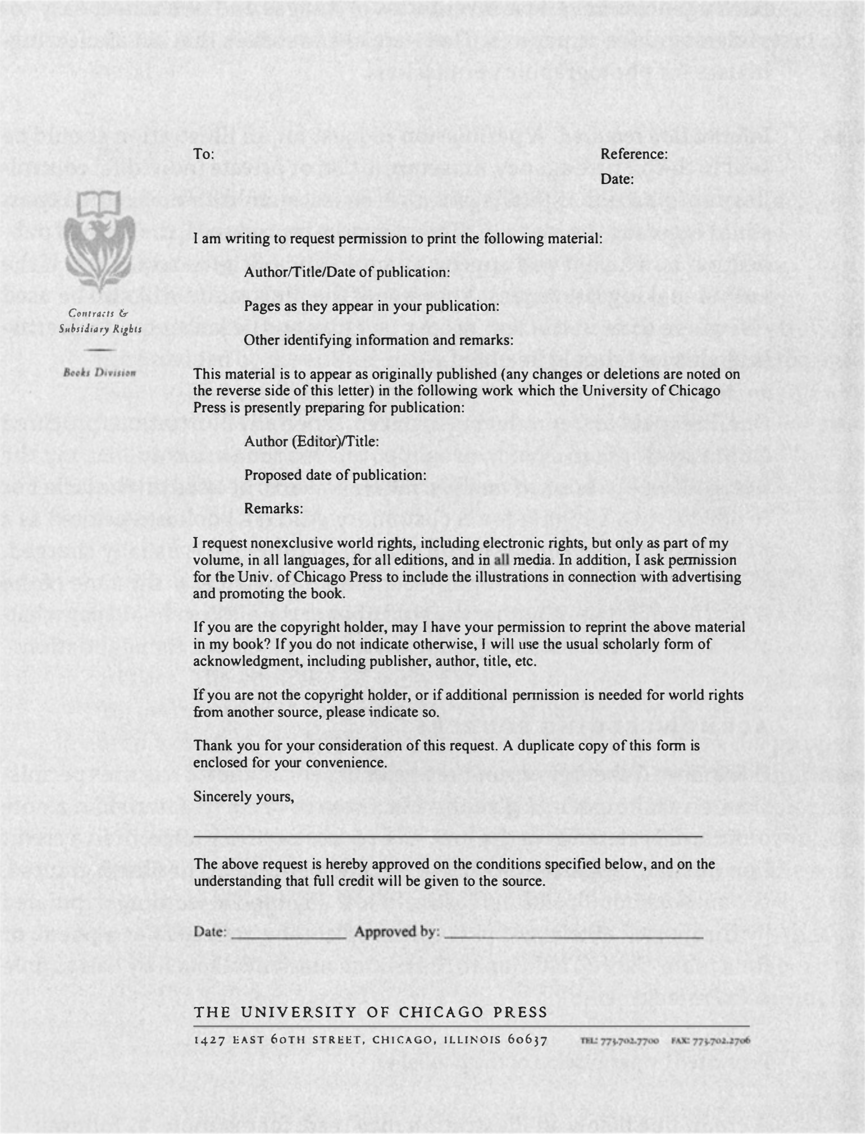

To: Reference:

Date:

Contracts & Subsidiary Rights

Books Division

I am writing to request permission to print the following material:

Author/Title/Date of publication:

Pages as they appear in your publication:

Other identifying information and remarks:

This material is to appear as originally published (any changes or deletions are noted on the reverse side of this letter) in the following work which the University of Chicago Press is presently preparing for publication:

Author (Editor)/Title:

Proposed date of publication:

Remarks:

I request nonexclusive world rights, including electronic rights, but only as part of my volume, in all languages, for all editions, and in all media. In addition, I ask permission for the Univ. of Chicago Press to include the illustrations in connection with advertising and promoting the book.

If you are the copyright holder, may I have your permission to reprint the above material in my book? If you do not indicate otherwise, I will use the usual scholarly form of acknowledgment, including publisher, author, title, etc.

If you are not the copyright holder, or if additional permission is needed for world rights from another source, please indicate so.

Thank you for your consideration of this request. A duplicate copy of this form is enclosed for your convenience.

Sincerely yours,

____

The above request is hereby approved on the conditions specified below, and on the understanding that full credit will be given to the source.

Date: ____________ Approved by: ____________

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO PRESS

1427 EAST 60TH STREET, CHICAGO, ILLINOIS 60637 TEL: 773.702.7700 FAX: 773.702.2706

FIGURE 4.3. Suggestions for a letter seeking permission to reprint material in a scholarly book. Some of the information about the proposed book may be lacking when the author begins to request permissions, but as much information as possible should be supplied. Note that spaces are left so that the person addressed can use the letter itself for granting or denying the request or for referring the author elsewhere.

Such agencies have vast inventories of images and published, easy-to-understand fee structures. There are also websites that act as clearinghouses for photographic permissions.

4.96 *Information required.* A permission request for an illustration should be sent to the picture agency, museum, artist, or private individual controlling reproduction rights. Again, the request should be as specific as possible regarding the identity of what is to be reproduced, the form of publication in which it will appear, and the kind of rights requested. If the author making the request knows that the illustration will also be used elsewhere than in the text proper (such as on the jacket or in advertising), this fact should be noted.

4.97 *Fees.* Fees paid for reproducing material, especially illustrations procured from a stock-photo agency, usually cover one-time use only—in, say, the first edition of a book. If an illustration is also to be used on the jacket or in advertising, a higher fee is customary. And if a book is reprinted as a paperback or goes into a second edition, another fee is usually charged. Ideally such a fee should be agreed upon in advance, at the time of the initial permission. Whether the publisher or the author should pay whatever additional fee is charged for cover use is a matter for negotiation.

ACKNOWLEDGING SOURCES

4.98 *Credit lines.* Whether or not the use of others' material requires permission, an author should give the exact source of such material: in a note or internal reference in the text, in a source note to a table, or in a credit line under an illustration. Where formal permission has been granted, the author should, within reason, follow any special wording stipulated by the grantor. For a text passage complete in itself, such as a poem, or for a table, the full citation to the source may be followed by this simple acknowledgment:

Reprinted by permission of the publisher.

A credit line below an illustration may read, for example, as follows:

Courtesy of the Newberry Library, Chicago, Illinois.

For examples of various kinds of credit lines, see 3.28–36, 3.75, 14.49.

4.99 *Acknowledgments sections.* In a work that needs many permissions, acknowledgments are often grouped in a special acknowledgments section at the front or back of the work (see 1.41). Some citation of the source should still, however, be made on the page containing the relevant material.

FEES

4.100 ***Responsibility for payment.*** As noted above, publishing agreements generally make the author responsible for any fees charged for use of others' material. A publisher may agree to pay the fees and to deduct them from the author's royalties or—in rare instances—to split the fees with the author. If it appears that a book would be enhanced by illustrations not provided by the author, many publishing agreements enable the publisher to find the illustrations and (with the author's consent) charge any fees involved to the author's royalty account. One exception to these generalizations is school and college textbooks, where it is common for the publisher to provide a certain amount of its own funds to pay for illustrations.

4.101 ***Anthologies.*** A book made up entirely of other authors' copyrighted materials—stories, essays, poems, documents, selections from larger works—depends for its existence on permissions from the various copyright owners. The compiler of such a volume therefore should begin seeking permissions as soon as a contract for publication of the volume has been executed or a letter of intent has been received from the prospective publisher. Informal inquiries to copyright owners may be initiated before that time, but no sensible publisher of material to be anthologized is likely to grant permission for its use or to set fees without knowing the details of eventual publication. Once those details are known, the compiler must act quickly. Permission for a selection may be refused, or the fee charged may be so high that the compiler is forced to drop that selection and substitute another. And until all permissions have been received and all fees agreed on, the table of contents cannot be considered final.

Part Two: Style and Usage

5

Grammar and Usage

BRYAN A. GARNER

Grammar 5.1
  - *Introduction* 5.1
  - *Nouns* 5.4
    - [DEFINITIONS 5.4
    - [PROPERTIES OF NOUNS 5.11
    - [CASE 5.16
    - [APPOSITIVES 5.21
    - [FUNCTIONAL VARIATION 5.22
  - *Pronouns* 5.26
    - [DEFINITION AND USES 5.26
    - [PROPERTIES OF PRONOUNS 5.30
    - [CLASSES OF PRONOUNS 5.37
    - [PERSONAL PRONOUNS 5.38
    - [POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS 5.47
    - [DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS 5.51
    - [INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS 5.52
    - [RELATIVE PRONOUNS 5.54
    - [OTHER TYPES OF PRONOUNS 5.64
  - *Adjectives* 5.66
    - [DEFINITIONS 5.66
    - [ARTICLES AS LIMITING ADJECTIVES 5.68
    - [POSITION OF ADJECTIVES 5.78
    - [DEGREES OF ADJECTIVES 5.83
    - [SPECIAL TYPES OF ADJECTIVES 5.89
    - [FUNCTIONAL VARIATION 5.92
  - *Verbs* 5.95
    - [DEFINITIONS 5.95
    - [INFINITIVES 5.104
    - [PARTICIPLES AND GERUNDS 5.108
    - [PROPERTIES OF VERBS 5.114
    - [CONJUGATION OF VERBS 5.134
    - [AUXILIARY VERBS 5.142
    - ["BE"-VERBS 5.151

Adverbs 5.153
    [DEFINITION AND FORMATION 5.153
    [SIMPLE VERSUS COMPOUND ADVERBS 5.157
    [ADVERBIAL DEGREES 5.159
    [POSITION OF ADVERBS 5.165
Prepositions 5.169
    [DEFINITION AND TYPES 5.169
    [PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES 5.173
    [OTHER PREPOSITIONAL ISSUES 5.180
    [LIMITING PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES 5.183
    [PREPOSITIONAL IDIOMS 5.189
Conjunctions 5.192
Interjections 5.208
Parallel Structure 5.212
Word Usage 5.216
Introduction 5.216
Glossary of Problematic Words and Phrases 5.220
Bias-Free Language 5.221

Grammar

Introduction

5.1 ***Grammar defined.*** Grammar consists of the rules governing how words are put together into sentences. These rules, which native speakers of a language learn largely by osmosis, govern most constructions in a given language. The small minority of constructions that lie outside these rules fall mostly into the category of idiom and usage.

5.2 ***Schools of grammatical thought.*** There are many schools of grammatical thought—and differing vocabularies for describing grammar. Grammatical theories have been in great flux in recent years. And the more we learn the less we seem to know: "An entirely adequate description of English grammar is still a distant target and at present seemingly an unreachable one, the complications being what they are."[1] In fact, the more detailed the grammar (it can run to many large volumes), the less likely it is to be of any use to most writers and speakers.

5.3 ***Parts of speech.*** As traditionally understood, grammar is both a science and an art. Often it has focused—as it does here—on parts of speech and their syntax. Each part of speech performs a particular function in a sentence or phrase. Traditional grammar has held that there are eight parts of speech: nouns, pronouns, adjectives, verbs, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections.[2] Somewhat surprisingly, modern grammarians cannot agree on precisely how many parts of speech there are in English. At least one grammarian says there are as few as three.[3] Another insists that there are "about fifteen," noting that "the precise number is still being debated."[4] This section deals with the traditional eight; each part of speech is treated below. The purpose here is to sketch some of the main lines of English grammar using traditional grammatical terms.

---

1. Robert W. Burchfield, *Unlocking the English Language* (New York: Hill and Wang, 1991), 22.
2. See Robert L. Allen, *English Grammars and English Grammar* (New York: Scribner, 1972), 7.
3. Ernest W. Gray, *A Brief Grammar of Modern Written English* (Cleveland: World, 1967), 70.
4. R. L. Trask, *Language: The Basics* (London: Routledge, 1995), 37.

Nouns

DEFINITIONS

5.4 *Nouns generally.* A noun is a word that names something, whether abstract (intangible) or concrete (tangible). It may be a common noun (the name of a generic class or type of person, place, thing, process, activity, or condition) or a proper noun (the formal name of a specific person, place, or thing).

5.5 *Common nouns.* A common noun is the generic name of one item in a class or group {a chemical} {a river} {a pineapple}.[5] It is not capitalized unless it begins a sentence or appears in a title. Common nouns are often broken down into three subcategories: concrete nouns, abstract nouns, and collective nouns. A concrete noun denotes something solid or real, something perceptible to the physical senses {a building} {the wind} {honey}. An abstract noun denotes something you cannot see, feel, taste, hear, or smell {joy} {expectation} {neurosis}. A collective noun—which can be viewed as a concrete noun but is often separately categorized—refers to a group or collection of people or things {a crowd of people} {a flock of birds} {a committee}.

5.6 *Proper nouns.* A proper noun is the specific name of a person, place, or thing {John Doe} {Moscow} {the Hope Diamond}, or the title of a work {*Citizen Kane*}. A proper noun is always capitalized, regardless of how it is used. A common noun may become a proper noun {Old Hickory} {the Big Easy}, and sometimes a proper noun may be used figuratively and informally, as if it were a common noun {like Moriarty, he is a Napoleon of crime} (*Napoleon* here connoting an ingenious mastermind who is ambitious beyond limits). Proper nouns may be compounded when used as a unit to name something {the Waldorf-Astoria Hotel} {*Saturday Evening Post*}. Over time, some proper nouns (called eponyms) have developed common-noun counterparts, such as *sandwich* (from the Earl of Sandwich) and *china* (from China, where fine porcelain was produced).

5.7 *Count nouns.* A count noun has singular and plural forms and expresses enumerable things {dictionary-dictionaries} {hoof-hooves} {newspaper-newspapers}. As the subject of a sentence, a singular count noun takes a singular verb {the jar is full}; a plural count noun takes a plural verb {the jars are full}.

---

[5] The examples in this chapter are presented in curly brackets to save space.

5.8 ***Mass nouns.*** A mass noun (sometimes called a noncount noun) is one that denotes something uncountable, either because it is abstract {cowardice} {evidence} or because it refers to an indeterminate aggregation of people or things {the faculty} {the bourgeoisie}; the latter type is also called a collective noun. As the subject of a sentence, a mass noun usually takes a singular verb {the litigation is varied}. But in a collective sense, it may take either a singular or a plural verb form {the ruling majority is unlikely to share power} {the majority are nonmembers}. A singular verb emphasizes the group; a plural verb emphasizes the individual members.

5.9 ***Mass noun followed by a prepositional phrase.*** Mass nouns are sometimes followed by a prepositional phrase, such as *number of* plus a plural noun. The article that precedes the mass noun signals whether the mass noun or the number of the noun in the prepositional phrase controls the number of the verb. If a definite article (*the*) precedes, the mass noun controls, and typically a singular verb is used {the quantity of pizzas ordered this year has increased}. If an indefinite article (*a* or *an*) precedes, then the number of the noun in the prepositional phrase controls {a small percentage of the test takers have failed the exam}.

5.10 ***Noun-equivalents and substantives.*** A noun-equivalent is a phrase or clause that serves the function of a noun in a sentence {*To serve your country* is honorable} {Bring *whomever you like*}. Nouns and noun-equivalents collectively are called substantives.

PROPERTIES OF NOUNS

5.11 ***Noun properties.*** Nouns have properties of case and number. Some grammarians also consider gender and person properties of nouns.

5.12 ***Noun case.*** In English, only nouns and pronouns have case. Case denotes the relationship between a noun (or pronoun) and other words in a sentence. Grammarians disagree about the number of cases English nouns possess. Those who consider inflection (word form) the defining characteristic tend to say that there are two: common, which is the uninflected form, and genitive (or possessive), which is formed by adding *'s* or just an apostrophe. But others argue that it's useful to distinguish how the common-case noun is being used in the sentence, whether it is playing a nominative role {the doctor is in} or an objective role {go see the doctor}. Except with personal pronouns (*who/whom*, *she/her*, etc.), this distinction makes no practical difference in word use. See also 5.16–20.

5.13 ***Noun number.*** Number shows whether one object or more than one object is referred to, as with *clock* (singular) and *clocks* (plural). For a discussion of plurals, see 7.5–14.

5.14 ***Noun gender.*** English nouns have no true gender as that property is understood in many other languages. For example, whether a noun refers to a masculine or feminine person or thing does not determine the form of the accompanying article as it does in French, German, Spanish, and other languages. Still, some English words—almost exclusively nouns denoting a person or an animal—are inherently masculine {uncle} {rooster} {lad} or feminine {aunt} {hen} {lass} and take the gender-appropriate pronouns. But by far, most English nouns are common in gender and may refer to either sex {relative} {chicken} {child}. Many words that once were considered strictly masculine—especially words associated with jobs and professions—have been accepted as common in gender over time {author} {executor} {proprietor}. Similarly, many forms made feminine by the addition of a suffix {aviatrix} have been abandoned. See 5.221–30.

5.15 ***Noun person.*** A few grammarians attribute the property of person to nouns, distinguishing first person {I, Dan Walls, do swear that . . .}, second person {you, the professor, are key}, and third person {she, the arbiter, decides}. While those examples all use nouns in apposition to pronouns, that fact is not closely relevant to the question whether nouns have the property of person in the traditional grammatical sense.

CASE

5.16 ***Function of case.*** Case denotes the relationship between a noun or pronoun and other words in a sentence.

5.17 ***Common case, nominative function.*** The nominative (sometimes called the "subjective") function denotes the person, place, or thing about which an assertion is made in a clause, as in *the governor delivered a speech* (*governor* being the subject) or *the shops are crowded because the holiday season has begun* (*shops* and *season* being the subjects of their respective clauses). A noun in a nominative function controls the verb and usually precedes it {the troops retreated in winter} (*troops* is the subject), but it can appear anywhere in the sentence {high up in the tree sat a leopard} (*leopard* is the subject). A noun or pronoun that follows a *be*-verb and refers to the same thing as the subject is called a predicate nominative {my show dogs are Australian shepherds} (*Australian shepherds* is a predicate nominative). Generally, a sentence's predicate is the part that contains a verb and makes an assertion about the subject.

5.18 ***Common case, objective function.*** The objective (sometimes called the "accusative") function denotes either (1) the person or thing acted on by a transitive verb in the active voice {the balloon carried a pilot and a passenger} (*pilot* and *passenger* are objective) or (2) the person or thing related to another element by a connective, such as a preposition {place the slide under the microscope} (*under* is a preposition, *microscope* is objective). A noun in an objective function usually follows the verb {the queen consulted the prime minister} (*queen* is nominative and *prime minister* is objective). But with an inverted construction, the objective can appear elsewhere in the sentence {everything else was returned; the medicine the villain withheld} (*medicine* is objective and *villain* is nominative). A noun in the objective case is never the subject of the following verb and usually does not control the number of the verb (but see 5.9).

5.19 ***Genitive case.*** The genitive case denotes (1) ownership, possession, or occupancy {the architect's drawing board} {Arnie's room}; (2) a relationship {the philanthropist's secretary}; (3) agency {the company's representative}; (4) description {a summer's day}; (5) the role of a subject {the boy's application} (the boy applied); (6) the role of an object {the prisoner's release} (someone released the prisoner); or (7) an idiomatic shorthand form of an *of*-phrase (e.g., *one hour's delay* is equal to *a delay of one hour*). The genitive case is also called the possessive case, but *possessive* is a misleadingly narrow term, given the seven different functions of this case. The genitive is formed in different ways, depending on the noun or nouns and their usage in a sentence. The genitive of a singular noun is formed by adding *'s* {driver's seat} {engineer's opinion}. The genitive of a plural noun that ends in *-s* or *-es* is formed by adding an apostrophe {parents' house} {foxes' den}. The genitive of an irregular plural noun is formed by adding *'s* {women's rights} {mice's cage}. The genitive of a compound noun is formed by adding the appropriate ending to the last word in the compound {parents-in-law's message}. See also 7.15–28.

5.20 ***The "of"-genitive.*** The preposition *of* may precede a noun or proper name to express relationship, agency, or possession. The choice between a genitive ending and an *of* construction depends mostly on style. Compare *the perils of Penelope* with *the saucer of the chef.* Some nouns can readily take either the genitive form or the *of*-genitive {the theater's name} {the name of the theater}, but others sound right only in the *of*-genitive. Compare *everything's end* with *the end of everything*. The *of*-genitive is also useful when a double genitive is called for {an idea of Hill's} {an employee of my grandfather's business}.

APPOSITIVES

5.21 *Appositives defined; use.* An appositive noun or noun phrase is one that immediately follows another noun or noun phrase in order to define or further identify it {George Washington, our first president, was born in Virginia} (*our first president* is an appositive of the proper noun *George Washington*). Commas frame an appositive noun or noun phrase unless it is restrictive—for example, compare *Robert Burns, the poet, wrote many songs about women named Mary* (*poet* is a nonrestrictive appositive noun) with *the poet Robert Burns wrote many songs about women named Mary* (*Robert Burns* restricts *poet* by precisely identifying which poet). A restrictive appositive cannot be removed from a sentence without obscuring the identity of the word or phrase that the appositive relates to. See also 6.22.

FUNCTIONAL VARIATION

5.22 *Nouns as adjectives.* Words that are ordinarily nouns sometimes function as other parts of speech, such as adjectives or verbs. A noun-to-adjective shift takes place when a noun modifies another noun {the morning newspaper} {a state legislature} {a varsity sport} (*morning*, *state*, and *varsity* function as adjectives). These are also termed *attributive nouns*. Occasionally the use of a noun as an adjective can produce an ambiguity. For example, the phrase *fast results* can be read as meaning either "rapid results" or (less probably but possibly) "the outcome of a fast." Sometimes the noun and its adjectival form can be used interchangeably—for example, *prostate cancer* and *prostatic cancer* both refer to cancer of the prostate gland. But sometimes the use of the noun instead of the adjective may alter the meaning—for instance, *a study group* is not necessarily *a studious group*. A preposition may be needed to indicate a noun's relationship to other sentence elements. But if the noun functions as an adjective, the preposition must be omitted; at times this can result in a vague phrase—for example, *voter awareness* (awareness *of* voters or *by* them?). Context might suggest what preposition is implied, but a reader may have to deduce the writer's meaning.

5.23 *Nouns as verbs.* It is (and always has been) fairly common in English for nouns to pass into use as verbs. For example, in 1220 the noun *husband* meant one who tilled and cultivated the earth {the husband has worked hard to produce this crop}. It became a verb meaning to till, cultivate, and tend crops around 1420 {you must husband your land thoughtfully}. New noun-to-verb transitions often occur in dialect or jargon. For example, the noun *mainstream* is used as a verb in clauses such as *more school districts are mainstreaming pupils with special needs*. In formal prose, such recently transformed words should be used cautiously if at all.

5.24 ***Adverbial functions.*** Words that are ordinarily nouns occasionally function as adverbs {we rode single file} {Sam walked home}. This shift usually happens when a preposition is omitted {we rode in a single file} {Sam walked to his home}.

5.25 ***Other functional shifts.*** Words that ordinarily function as other parts of speech, as well as various types of phrases, may function as nouns. Aside from the obvious instance of pronouns (see 5.26), these include adjectives such as *poor* {the poor are always with us} (see 5.92), adverbs such as *here* and *now* {we cannot avoid the here and now}, participles (gerunds) such as *swimming* {swimming in that lake can be dangerous} (see 5.110), infinitives such as *to discover* {to discover the truth is our goal} (see 5.105), phrases indicating monetary amounts {six million dollars went toward restoring the arena}, and clauses such as *what the people want* {what the people want is justice}. Such functional shifts are normal and acceptable.

Pronouns

DEFINITION AND USES

5.26 ***Pronouns defined.*** A pronoun is a word used as a substitute for a noun or, sometimes, another pronoun. It is used in one of two ways: (1) A pronoun may substitute for an expressed noun or pronoun, especially to avoid needless repetition. For example, most of the nouns in the sentence *The father told the father's daughter that the father wanted the father's daughter to do some chores* can be replaced with pronouns: *The father told his daughter that he wanted her to do some chores*. (2) A pronoun may also stand in the place of an understood noun. For example, if the person addressed has been identified elsewhere, the question *Susan, are you bringing your boots?* can be more simply stated as *Are you bringing your boots?* And in the sentence *It is too hot*, the indefinite *it* is understood to mean the temperature (of something).

5.27 ***Antecedents of pronouns.*** A pronoun typically refers to an antecedent—that is, an earlier noun, pronoun, phrase, or clause in the same sentence or, if the reference is unambiguous, in a previous sentence. An antecedent may be explicit or implicit, but it must be clear. Miscues and ambiguity commonly arise from (1) a missing antecedent (as in *the clown's act with his dog made it a pleasure to watch*, where *it* is intended to refer to the circus, not explicitly mentioned in context); (2) multiple possible antecedents (as in *Scott visited Eric after his discharge from the army*, where it is unclear who was discharged—Eric or Scott); and (3) multiple pronouns and antecedents in the same sentence (e.g., *when the bottle is empty or the baby stops drinking, it must be sterilized with hot water because if it drinks from a dirty bottle it could become ill*—where one hopes that the hot-water sterilization is for the bottle).

5.28 ***Pronouns without antecedents.*** Some pronouns do not require antecedents. The first-person pronoun *I* stands for the speaker, so it almost never has an antecedent. Similarly, the second-person pronoun *you* usually needs no antecedent {Are you leaving?}, although one is sometimes supplied in direct address {Katrina, do you need something?}. Expletives (some of which are pronouns) have no antecedents {it's time to go} {this is a fine mess}. And the relative pronoun *what* and the interrogative pronouns *who*, *which*, and *what* never take an antecedent {Who cares what I think?}. In colloquial usage, *they* often appears without an antecedent {they say that she's a good golfer}, but vigilant listeners and readers often demand to know who "they" are.

5.29 ***Adjective as antecedent.*** A pronoun normally requires a noun or another pronoun as its antecedent. And because possessives function as adjectives, some writers have argued that possessives should not serve as antecedents of pronouns used in the nominative or objective case. But compare *Mr. Blain's background qualified him for the job* with *Mr. Blain had a background that qualified him for the job*. Not only is the identity of "him" perfectly clear in either construction, but the possessive in the first—a usage blessed by respected authorities—makes for a more economical sentence.

PROPERTIES OF PRONOUNS

5.30 ***Four properties of pronouns.*** A pronoun has four properties: number, person, gender, and case. (See 5.11–15.) A pronoun must agree with its antecedent in number, person, and gender. A few special uses of pronouns should be noted.

5.31 ***Pronoun number and antecedent.*** A pronoun's number is guided by that of its antecedent noun or nouns {a book and its cover} {the dogs and their owner}. A collective noun takes a singular pronoun if the members are treated as a unit {the audience showed its appreciation} but a plural if they act individually {the audience rushed back to their seats}. A singular noun that is modified by two or more adjectives to denote different varieties, uses, or aspects of the object may take a plural pronoun {British and American writing differ in more ways than just their spelling} (where *writing* may be thought of as an understood noun after *British*). Two or more singular nouns or pronouns that are joined by *and* are taken jointly and referred to by a plural pronoun {the boy and girl left their bicycles outside}.

5.32 ***Exceptions regarding pronoun number.*** There are several refinements to the rules stated just above: (1) When two or more singular antecedents denote the same thing and are connected by *and*, the pronoun referring to the antecedents is singular {a lawyer and role model received her richly deserved recognition today}. (2) When two or more singular antecedents are connected by *and* and modified by *each*, *every*, or *no*, the pronoun referring to the antecedents is singular {every college and every university encourages its students to succeed}. (3) When two or more singular antecedents are connected by *or*, *nor*, *either–or*, or *neither–nor*, they are treated separately and referred to by a singular pronoun {neither the orange nor the peach smells as sweet as it should}. (4) When two or more antecedents of different numbers are connected by *or* or *nor*, the pronoun's number agrees with that of the nearest (usually the last) antecedent; if possible, cast the sentence so that the plural antecedent comes last {neither the singer nor the dancers have asked for their paychecks}. (5) When two or more antecedents of different numbers are connected by *and*, they are usually referred to by a plural pronoun regardless of the nouns' order {the horses and the mule kicked over their water trough}.

5.33 ***Pronoun with multiple antecedents.*** When a pronoun's antecedents differ from the pronoun in person, and the antecedents are connected by *and*, *or*, or *nor*, the pronoun must take the person of only one antecedent. The first person is preferred to the second, and the second person to the third. For example, in *you or I should get to work on our experiment* the antecedents are in the second and first person. The following pronoun *our* is in the first person, as is the antecedent *I*. In *you and she can settle your dispute*, the antecedents are in the second and third person, so the following pronoun *your* takes the second person. If the pronoun refers to only one of the connected nouns or pronouns, it takes the person of that noun {you and Marian have discussed her trip report}.

5.34 ***Antecedents of different genders.*** If the antecedents are of different genders and are joined by *and*, a plural pronoun is normally used to refer to them {the sister and brother are visiting their aunt}. But if a pronoun refers to only one of the antecedent nouns connected by *and*, the pronoun's gender is that of the noun referred to {the uncle and niece rode in his car}. A special problem arises when the antecedent nouns are singular, are of different genders or an indeterminate gender, and are joined by *or* or *nor*. Using *he*, *his*, and *him* as a common-sex pronoun is now widely considered sexist, and picking the gender of the nearest antecedent may be misleading (e.g., *some boy or girl left her lunch box on the bus*). A good writer can usually recast the sentence to eliminate the need for any personal pronoun at all {some child left a lunch box on the bus}. See 5.41, 5.221–30.

5.35 ***Pronoun case.*** A pronoun that is the subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case {they went to town}. A personal pronoun in the genitive case is governed by the gender of the possessor {President George W. Bush invited his advisers to Crawford}. A pronoun that functions as the object of a verb or preposition is in the objective case {they gave her a farewell party} {they gave it to him}. A pronoun put after an intransitive verb or participle agrees in case with the preceding noun or pronoun referring to the same thing {it is I} (see 5.43, 5.44).

5.36 ***Nominative case misused for objective.*** The objective case governs personal pronouns used as direct objects of verbs {call me tomorrow}, indirect objects of verbs {write me a letter}, or objects of prepositions {makes sense to me}. One of the most persistent slips in English is to misuse the nominative case of a personal pronoun in a compound object:

WRONG: The test would be simple for you and I.
RIGHT: The test would be simple for you and me.
WRONG: Read this and tell Laura or I what you think.
RIGHT: Read this and tell Laura or me what you think.

The error arises in compounds so exclusively that the foolproof way to check for it is to read the sentence with the personal pronoun alone: no one would mistake "The test would be simple for I" or "Read this and tell I what you think" for correct grammar.

CLASSES OF PRONOUNS

5.37 ***Six classes of pronouns.*** There are six classes of pronouns:

personal—*I*, *you*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *we*, and *they*
demonstrative—*that*, *this*
interrogative—*what*, *which*, and *who*

relative—*that*, *what*, *which*, and *who*
indefinite—for example, *another*, *any*, *each*, *either*, and *none*
adjective—for example, *any*, *each*, *that*, *this*, *what*, and *which*

Many pronouns, except personal pronouns, may function as more than one type—for instance, *that* may be a demonstrative, relative, or adjective pronoun—depending on its use in a particular sentence.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

5.38 ***Form of personal pronoun.*** A personal pronoun shows by its form whether it is referring to the speaker, the person or thing spoken to, or the person or thing spoken of. It also displays number, gender, and case by form. As with nouns, the first person is the speaker or speakers {I need some tea} {we heard the news}. The first-person singular pronoun *I* is always capitalized no matter where it appears in the sentence {if possible, I will send you an answer today}. All other pronouns are capitalized only at the beginning of a sentence, unless they are part of an honorific title {Her Majesty, the Queen of England}. The second person shows who is spoken to {you should write that essay tonight}. And the third person shows who or what is spoken of {she is at work} {it is in the glove compartment}.

5.39 ***Changes in form.*** Personal pronouns change form ("decline") according to person, number, and case. Apart from the second person, all personal pronouns show number by taking a singular or plural form. Although the second-person pronoun *you* is both singular and plural, it always takes a plural verb, even if only a single person or thing is addressed.

SINGULAR PRONOUNS

	Nominative	*Objective*	*Genitive*
First Person	I	me	my, mine
Second Person	you	you	your, yours
Third Person	he, she, it	him, her, it	his, her, hers, its

PLURAL PRONOUNS

	Nominative	*Objective*	*Genitive*
First Person	we	us	our, ours
Second Person	you	you	your, yours
Third Person	they	them	their, theirs

5.40 ***Agreement of pronoun with noun.*** A personal pronoun agrees with the noun for which it stands in both gender and number {John writes, and he will soon write well} {Sheila was there, but she couldn't hear what was said}.

5.41 ***Pronoun and gender.*** Only the third-person singular pronouns directly express gender. In the nominative and objective cases, the pronoun takes the antecedent noun's gender {the president is not in her office today; she's at a seminar}. In the genitive case, the pronoun always takes the gender of the possessor, not of the person or thing possessed {the woman loves her husband} {Thomas is visiting his sister} {the kitten disobeyed its mother}. Some nouns may acquire gender through personification, a figure of speech that refers to a nonliving thing as if it were a person. Pronouns enhance personification when a feminine or masculine pronoun is used as if the antecedent represented a female or male person (as was traditionally done, for example, when a ship or other vessel was referred to with the pronoun *she* or *her*).

5.42 ***Personal pronoun case.*** Some special rules apply to personal pronouns. (1) If a pronoun is the subject of a clause, it must be in the nominative case {she owns a tan briefcase} {Delia would like to travel, but she can't afford to}. (2) If a pronoun is the object of a verb or of a preposition, it must be in the objective case {the rustic setting soothed him} {that's a matter between him and her}. (3) If a prepositional phrase contains more than one personal-pronoun object, then all the objects must be in the objective case {Will you send an invitation to him and me?}. (4) If a pronoun is the subject of an infinitive, it must be in the objective case {Does Tina want me to leave?}.

5.43 ***Pronoun case after linking verb.*** Strictly speaking, a pronoun serving as the complement of a *be*-verb or other linking verb should be in the nominative case {it was she who asked for a meeting}. In formal writing, some fastidious readers will consider the objective case to be incorrect in every instance. But in many sentences, the nominative pronoun sounds pedantic or eccentric to the modern ear {Was that he on the phone?}.

5.44 ***Pronoun case after "than" or "as . . . as."*** The case of a pronoun following this kind of comparative structure, typically at the end of a sentence, depends on who or what is being compared. In *my sister looks more like our father than I* [or *me*], for example, if the point is whether the sister or the speaker looks more like their father, the pronoun should be nominative because it is the subject of an understood verb: *my sister looks more like our father than I do*. But if the point is whether the sister looks more like the father or the speaker, the pronoun should be objective because it is the object of a preposition in an understood sentence: *my sister looks more like our father than she looks like me*. Whatever the writer's intent, the reader can't be certain about the meaning. It would be better to reword the sentence and avoid the elliptical construction.

5.45 ***Special uses of personal pronouns.*** Some personal pronouns have special uses. (1) *He*, *him*, and *his* have traditionally been used as pronouns of indeterminate gender equally applicable to a male or female person {if the finder returns my watch, he will receive a reward}. Because these pronouns are also masculine-specific, they have long been regarded as sexist when used generically, and their indeterminate-gender use is declining. (See 5.34, 5.221–30.) (2) *It* eliminates gender even if the noun's sex could be identified. Using *it* does not mean that the noun has no sex—only that the sex is unknown or unimportant {the baby is smiling at its mother} {the mockingbird is building its nest}. (3) *We*, *you*, and *they* can be used indefinitely—that is, without antecedents—in the sense of "persons," "one," or "people in general." *We* is sometimes used by an individual who is speaking for a group {the magazine's editor wrote, "In our last issue, we covered the archaeological survey of Peru"}. This latter use is called the editorial *we*. *You* can apply indefinitely to any person or all persons {if you read this book, you will learn how to influence people} (*you* is indefinite—anyone who reads the book will learn). The same is true of *they* {they say that Stonehenge may have been a primitive calendar} (*they* are unidentified and, perhaps, unimportant). This use of *they*, however, is objectionable in scholarly writing: it unjustifiably avoids specificity. (4) *It* also has several uses as an indefinite pronoun: (a) *it* may refer to a phrase, clause, sentence, or implied thought {he said that the website is down, but I don't believe it} (without the pronoun *it*, the clause might be rewritten *I don't believe what he said*); (b) *it* can be the subject of a verb (usually a *be*-verb) without an antecedent noun {it was too far}, or an introductory word or expletive for a phrase or clause that follows the verb {it is possible that Dody is on vacation}; (c) *it* can be the grammatical subject in an expression about time, weather, or distance and the like {it is almost midnight} {it is beginning to snow}; and (d) *it* may be an expletive that anticipates the true grammatical subject or object {I find it hard to accept this situation}.

5.46 ***The singular "they."*** A singular antecedent requires a singular referent pronoun. Because *he* is no longer accepted as a generic pronoun referring to a person of either sex, it has become common in speech and in informal writing to substitute the third-person plural pronouns *they*, *them*, *their*, and *themselves*, and the nonstandard singular *themself*. While this usage is accepted in casual contexts, it is still considered ungrammatical in formal writing. Avoiding the plural form by alternating masculine and feminine pronouns is awkward and only emphasizes the inherent problem of not having a generic third-person pronoun. Employing an artificial form such as *s/he* is distracting at best, and most readers find it ridiculous. There are several better ways to avoid the problem. For example, use the traditional, formal *he or she, him or her, his or her, himself or herself*. Stylistically, this device is usually awkward or even stilted, but if used sparingly it can be functional. For other techniques, see 5.225.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

5.47 ***Possessive pronouns.*** The possessive pronouns, *my*, *our*, *your*, *his*, *her*, *its*, and *their*, are used as limiting adjectives to qualify nouns {my dictionary} {your cabin} {his diploma}. Each has a corresponding absolute (also called independent) form that can stand alone without a noun: *mine*, *ours*, *yours*, *his*, *hers*, *its*, and *theirs*. The independent form does not require an explicit object: the thing possessed may be either an antecedent or something understood {this dictionary is mine} {this cabin of yours} {Where is hers?}. An independent possessive pronoun can also stand alone and be treated as a noun: it can be the subject or object of a verb {hers is on the table} {pass me yours} or the object of a preposition {put your coat with theirs}. When it is used with the preposition *of*, a double possessive is produced: *that letter of Sheila's* becomes *that letter of hers*. Such a construction is unobjectionable. Note that none of the possessive personal pronouns are spelled with an apostrophe.

5.48 ***Compound personal pronouns; -self forms.*** Several personal pronouns form compounds by taking the suffix *-self* or *-selves*. These are *my–myself*; *our–ourselves*; *your–yourself*; *your–yourselves*; *him–himself*; *her–herself*; *it–itself*; and *them–themselves*. The indefinite pronoun *one* forms the compound pronoun *oneself*. All these compound personal pronouns are the same in both the nominative and the objective case. They have no possessive forms. They are used for two purposes: (1) for emphasis (in which case they are termed intensive pronouns) {I saw Queen Beatrice herself} {I'll do it myself} and (2) to refer to the subject of the verb (in which case they are termed reflexive pronouns) {he saved himself the trouble of asking} {we support ourselves}.

5.49 ***Reflexive and intensive pronouns.*** Both reflexive and intensive personal pronouns are *-self* forms, but the distinction between them is useful and important. A reflexive pronoun reflects the action described by the verb by renaming the subject as either an object or an indirect object {she gave herself a pat on the back}. It is similar in appearance to an intensive pronoun but differs in function. An intensive pronoun is used in apposition to its referent to add emphasis {I myself have won several writing awards}. Intensive pronouns lend force to a sentence. And unlike reflexive pronouns, they are in the nominative case. Compare the intensive pronoun in *I burned the papers myself* (in which the object of *burned* is *papers*) with the reflexive pronoun in *I burned myself* (in which the object of *burned* is *myself*). Constructions in which the *-self* form does not serve either of those functions are common but nonstandard, whether it is serving as subject or as object:

WRONG: The staff and myself thank you for your contribution.
RIGHT: The staff and I thank you for your contribution.
WRONG: Deliver the equipment to my partner or myself.
RIGHT: Deliver the equipment to my partner or me.

5.50 ***Possessive pronouns versus contractions.*** The possessive forms of personal pronouns are *my, mine, our, ours, your, yours, his, her, hers, its, their, theirs*. None of them takes an apostrophe. Nor does the possessive form of *who* (*whose*). These exceptions aside, the apostrophe is a universal signal of the possessive in English, so it is a natural tendency (and a common error) to insert an apostrophe in the forms that end in *-s* (or the sibilant *-se*). Aggravating that tendency is the fact that some possessive personal pronouns have homophones that are contractions—forms that are also signaled by apostrophes. The pronouns that don't sound like legitimate contractions seldom present problems, even if they do end in *-s* (*hers, yours, ours*). But several do require special attention, specifically *its* (the possessive of *it*) and *it's* ("it is"); *your* (the possessive of *you*) and *you're* ("you are"); *whose* (the possessive of *who*) and *who's* ("who is"); and the three homophones *their* (the possessive of *they*), *there* ("in that place" or "in that way"), and *they're* ("they are").

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

5.51 ***Demonstrative pronouns defined.*** A demonstrative pronoun (or, as it is sometimes called, a deictic pronoun) is one that points directly to its antecedent: *this* and *that* for singular antecedents {this is your desk} {that is my office}, and *these* and *those* for plural antecedents {these have just arrived} {those need to be answered}. *This* and *these* point to objects that are close by in space, time, or thought, while *that* and *those* point to objects that are comparatively remote in space, time, or thought. The antecedent of a demonstrative pronoun can be a noun, phrase, clause, sentence, or implied thought, as long as the antecedent is clear. *Kind* and *sort*, each referring to "one class," are often used with an adjectival *this* or *that* {this kind of magazine} {that sort of school}. The plural forms *kinds* and *sorts* should be used with the plural demonstratives {these kinds of magazines} {those sorts of schools}.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

5.52 ***Interrogative pronouns defined.*** An interrogative pronoun asks a question. The three interrogatives are *who*, *what*, and *which*. Only one, *who*, declines: *who* (nominative), *whom* (objective), *whose* (possessive) {Who starred in *Casablanca*?} {To whom am I speaking?} {Whose cologne smells so strong?}. In the nominative case, *who* is used in two ways: (1) as the subject of a verb {Who washed the dishes today?} and (2) as a predicate nominative after a linking verb {It was who?}. In the objective case, *whom* is used two ways: (1) as the object of a verb {Whom did you see?} and (2) as the object of a preposition {For whom is this building named?}.

5.53 ***Referent of interrogative pronouns.*** To refer to a person, either *who* or *which* can be used. But they are not interchangeable. *Who* is universal or general: it asks for any one or more persons among all persons. The answer may potentially include any person, living or dead, present or absent {Who wants to see that movie?} {Who were your greatest inspirations?}. *Who* also asks for a particular person's identity {Who is that person standing near the samovar?}. *Which* is usually selective or limited; it asks for a particular member of a group, and the answer is limited to the group addressed or referred to {Which explorers visited China in the sixteenth century?}. To refer to a person, animal, or thing, either *which* or *what* may be used {Which one of you did this?} {What kind of bird is that?}. When applied to a person, animal, or thing, *what* asks about character, occupation, qualities, and the like {What do you think of our governor?}. When applied to a thing, *what* often asks for one or more items in a category {What is your quest?} {What is your favorite color?}.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

5.54 ***Relative pronouns defined.*** A relative pronoun is one that introduces a dependent (or relative) clause and relates it to the independent clause. Relative pronouns in common use are *who*, *which*, *what*, and *that*. *Who* is the only relative pronoun that declines: *who* (nominative), *whom* (objective), *whose* (possessive) {the woman who presented the award} {a source whom he declined to name} {the writer whose book was a best seller}. *Who*, which normally refers to a person, can be used in the first, second, or third person. *Which* normally refers to an animal or a thing. *What* generally refers to a nonliving thing. *Which* and *what* are used only in the second and third persons. *That* refers to a person, animal, or thing, and can be used in the first, second, or third person. See also 5.61.

5.55 ***Case with relative pronouns.*** A personal pronoun does not govern the case of a relative pronoun. Hence, an objective pronoun such as *me* may be the antecedent of the nominative pronoun *who*, although a construction formed in this way sounds increasingly archaic or (to the nonliterary) incorrect {she was referring to me, who never graduated from college}. When a construction is technically correct but sounds awkward or artificial {I, who am wronged, have a grievance}, the best course may be to use "preventive grammar" and find a different construction {I have a grievance, for I have been wronged} {having been wronged, I have a grievance}.

5.56 ***Positional nuances with relative pronouns.*** A relative pronoun is in the nominative case when no subject comes between it and the verb {the professor who lectured was brilliant}. When a subject comes between the relative pronoun and the verb, the relative is governed by the following verb or by some other word in its own clause {he whom I called is no longer there} {she, whom I believed to be very bright, failed her exams} {it was John who they thought was in the bleachers}.

5.57 ***Antecedent of relative pronoun.*** Usually a relative pronoun's antecedent is a noun or pronoun in the independent clause on which the relative clause depends. For clarity it should immediately precede the pronoun {the diadem that I told you about is in this gallery}. The antecedent may also be a noun phrase or a clause, but the result can sometimes be ambiguous: in *the bedroom of the villa, which was painted pink*, does *which* refer to the bedroom or to the villa?

5.58 ***Omitted antecedent of relative pronoun.*** If no antecedent noun is expressed, *what* can be used to mean *that which* {Is this what you were looking for?}. But if there is an antecedent, use a different relative pronoun: *who* {Where is the man who spoke?}, *that* (if the relative clause is restrictive, i.e., essential to the sentence's basic meaning) {Where are the hunters that Jones told us about?}, or *which* (if the relative clause is nonrestrictive, i.e., could be deleted without affecting the sentence's basic meaning) {the sun, which is shining brightly, feels warm on my face}. See also 6.22.

5.59 ***Relative pronoun after "one."*** A relative pronoun takes its number from its antecedent. That's easy enough when the antecedent is simply *one* {this is one that everybody likes}. But if *one* is part of a noun phrase with a plural noun such as *one of the few* or *one of those*, the relative pronoun's antecedent is usually not *one* but the noun in the genitive construction {one of the few countries that cultivate farm-raised fish as a staple} {she is one of those people who are famous just for being famous}. Always read carefully, though; in some constructions like these the antecedent is still *one* {he is the one among them who is trustworthy}.

5.60 ***Possessive forms of relative pronouns.*** The forms *of whom* and *of which* are possessives {the child, the mother of whom we talked about, is in kindergarten} {this foal, the sire of which Belle owns, will be trained as a hunter-jumper}. (These forms have an old-fashioned sound and can often be rephrased more naturally {the child whose mother we talked about is in kindergarten}.)

5.61 ***"Whose" and "of which."*** The relatives *who* and *which* can both take *whose* as a possessive form (*whose* substitutes for *of which*) {a movie the conclusion of which is unforgettable} {a movie whose conclusion is unforgettable}. Some writers object to using *whose* as a replacement for *of which*, especially when the subject is not human, but the usage is centuries old and widely accepted as preventing unnecessary awkwardness. Compare *the company whose stock rose faster* with *the company the stock of which rose faster*. Either form is acceptable, but the possessive *whose* lends greater smoothness.

5.62 ***Compound relative pronouns.*** *Who*, *whom*, *what*, and *which* form compound relative pronouns by adding the suffix *-ever*. The compound relatives *whoever*, *whomever*, *whichever*, and *whatever* apply universally to any or all persons or things {whatever you do, let me know} {whoever needs to write a report about this book may borrow it}.

5.63 ***"Who" versus "whom."*** *Who* and *whoever* are the nominative forms, used as subjects {Whoever said that?} or predicate nominatives {It was who?}. *Whom* and *whomever* are the objective forms, used as the object of a verb {You called whom?} or a preposition {To whom are you referring?}. Three problems arise with determining the correct case. First, because the words are so often found in the inverted syntax of an interrogative sentence, their true function in the sentence can be hard to see unless one sorts the words into standard subject–verb–object syntax. In this example, sorting the syntax into "I should say who is calling" makes the case easier to determine:

WRONG: Whom should I say is calling?
RIGHT: Who should I say is calling?

Second, determining the proper case can be confusing when the pronoun serves a function (say, nominative) in a clause that itself serves a different function (say, objective) in the main sentence. It is the pronoun's function in its clause that determines its case. In the first example below, the entire clause *whoever will listen* is the object of the preposition *to*. But in the clause itself, *whoever* serves as the subject, and that function determines its case. Similarly, in the second sentence *whomever* is the object of *choose* in the clause, so it must be in the objective case even though the clause itself serves as the subject of the sentence.

WRONG: I'll talk to whomever will listen.
RIGHT: I'll talk to whoever will listen.
WRONG: Whoever you choose will suit me.
RIGHT: Whomever you choose will suit me.

As the second example above shows, a further distraction can arise when the *who* clause contains a nested clause, typically of attribution or identification (here, *you choose*).

OTHER TYPES OF PRONOUNS

5.64 ***Indefinite pronouns.*** An indefinite pronoun is one that generally or indefinitely represents an object, usually one that has already been identified or doesn't need specific identification. The most common are *another, any, both, each, either, neither, none, one, other, some,* and *such*. There are also compound indefinite pronouns, such as *anybody, anything, anyone, everybody, everyone, everything, nobody, no one, oneself, somebody,* and *someone*. *Each, either,* and *neither* are also called distributive pronouns because they separate the objects referred to from others referred to nearby. Indefinite pronouns have number. When an indefinite pronoun is the subject of a verb, it is usually singular {everyone is enjoying the dinner} {everybody takes notes during the first week}. But sometimes an indefinite pronoun carries a plural sense {nobody could describe the music; they hadn't been listening to it} {everyone understood the risk, but they were lured by promises of big returns}. The forms of indefinite pronouns are not affected by gender or person, and the nominative and objective forms are the same. To form the possessive, the indefinite pronoun may take *'s* {that is no one's fault} {Is this anyone's jacket?} or the adverb *else* plus *'s* {don't interfere with anybody else's business} {no one else's cups were broken}.

5.65 ***Adjective pronouns.*** An adjective pronoun (also called a pronominal adjective) functions as a noun modifier. It must agree in number with the noun to which it belongs {all people} {these sorts of favors} {those kinds of indulgences}. All pronouns other than nonpossessive personal pronouns, *who,* and *none* may serve as adjectives {those windows} {some coyotes}. The adjective *no* is used instead of *none* {no one astronaut} {no other paradise}.

Adjectives

DEFINITIONS

5.66 *Adjectives defined.* An adjective is a word that modifies a noun or pronoun; it is often called a "describing word." An adjective tells you what sort, how many, how large or small, whose, and so on. An adjective may add a new idea to a noun or pronoun by describing it more definitely or fully {red wagon} {human error}. Or it may be limiting {three pigs} {this time}. Most adjectives derive from nouns, as *plentiful* derives from *plenty* or as *stylish* derives from *style*; some derive from verbs, roots, or other adjectives. Usually a suffix creates the adjective. Among the suffixes that often distinguish adjectives are *-able* {manageable}, *-al* {mystical}, *-ary* {elementary}, *-ed* {hammered}, *-en* {wooden}, *-esque* {statuesque}, *-ful* {harmful}, *-ible* {inaccessible}, *-ic* {artistic}, *-ish* {foolish}, *-ive* {demonstrative}, *-less* {helpless}, *-like* {childlike}, *-ly* {ghostly}, *-ous* {perilous}, *-some* {lonesome}, and *-y* {sunny}. But many adjectives do not have distinctive endings and are recognizable only by their function {old} {tall} {brilliant}.

5.67 *Proper adjectives.* A proper adjective is one that, being or deriving from a proper name, always begins with a capital letter {a New York minute} {a Cuban cigar} {a Canadian dollar}. (But see 8.60.) The proper name used attributively is still capitalized, but it does not cause the noun it modifies to be capitalized. A place-name containing a comma—such as *Toronto, Ontario,* or *New Delhi, India*—should generally not be used as an adjective because a second comma may be deemed obligatory {we met in a Toronto, Ontario, restaurant} (the comma after *Ontario* being somewhat awkward). Compare the readability of *a New Delhi, India, marketplace* with that of *a New Delhi marketplace* or *a marketplace in New Delhi, India* (substituting a prepositional phrase for the proper adjective).

ARTICLES AS LIMITING ADJECTIVES

5.68 *Articles defined.* An article is a limiting adjective that precedes a noun or noun phrase and determines the noun or phrase's use to indicate something definite (*the*) or indefinite (*a* or *an*). An article might stand alone or be used with other adjectives {a road} {a brick road} {the yellow brick road}.

5.69 *Definite article.* A definite article points to a definite object that (1) is so well understood that it does not need description (e.g., *the package is here* is a shortened form of *the package that you expected is here*); (2) is a thing that is about to be described {the sights of Chicago}; or (3) is important {the grand prize}. The definite article belongs to nouns in the singular {the star} or the plural number {the stars}.

5.70 ***Indefinite article.*** An indefinite article points to nonspecific objects, things, or persons that are not distinguished from the other members of a class. The thing may be singular {a student at Princeton}, or uncountable {a multitude}, or generalized {an idea inspired by Milton's *Paradise Lost*}.

5.71 ***Indefinite article in specific reference.*** In a few usages, the indefinite article provides a specific reference {I saw a great movie last night} and the definite article a generic reference {the Scots are talking about independence} (generalizing by nationality).

5.72 ***Choosing "a" or "an."*** With the indefinite article, the choice of *a* or *an* depends on the sound of the word it precedes. *A* comes before words with a consonant sound, including /y/, /h/, and /w/, no matter how the word is spelled {a eulogy} {a historic occasion} {a Ouachita tribe member}. *An* comes before words with a vowel sound {an LSAT exam room} {an *X-Files* episode} {an hour ago}. See 5.220, under *a; an*. See also 7.44, 10.9.

5.73 ***Articles with coordinate nouns.*** With a series of coordinate nouns, an article may appear before each noun but is not necessary {the rose bush and hedge need trimming}. If the things named make up a single idea, an article need not be repeated {in the highest degree of dressage, the horse and rider appear to be one entity}. And if the named things are covered by one plural noun, the definite article should not be repeated {in the first and second years of college}.

5.74 ***Effect of article on meaning.*** Because articles have a demonstrative value, the meaning of a phrase may shift depending on the article used. For example, *an officer and gentleman escorted Princess Plum to her car* suggests (though ambiguously) that the escort was one man with two descriptive characteristics. But *an officer and a friend escorted Princess Plum to her car* suggests that two people acted as escorts. Similarly, *Do you like the red and blue cloth?* suggests that the cloth contains both red and blue threads. But *Do you like the red and the blue cloth?* suggests that two different fabrics are being discussed. The clearest way to express the idea that the cloth contains both red and blue is to hyphenate the phrase as a compound modifier: *red-and-blue cloth*; and with two kinds of cloth, clarity requires either repeating the word *cloth* (*the red cloth and the blue cloth*) or using *cloth* with the first adjective rather than the second (*the red cloth and the blue*).

5.75 ***Zero article.*** Some usages call for a zero article, an article implicitly present, usually before a mass or plural noun {although both new and washed bottles are stacked nearby, cider is poured into new bottles only} (*the* is implicit before *new bottles*). The zero article usually occurs in idiomatic references to time, illness, transportation, personal routines, and meals {by sunset} {has cancer} {travel by train} {go to bed} {make breakfast}.

5.76 ***Omitted article.*** The absence of an article may alter a sentence's meaning—for example, the meaning of *the news brought us little comfort* (we weren't comforted) changes if *a* is inserted before *little*: *the news brought us a little comfort* (we felt somewhat comforted).

5.77 ***Article as pronoun substitute.*** An article may sometimes substitute for a pronoun. For example, the blanks in *a patient who develops the described rash on ___ hands should inform ___ doctor* may be filled in with the pronoun phrase *his or her* or the article *the*.

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES

5.78 ***Basic rules.*** An adjective that modifies a noun, noun phrase, or pronoun usually precedes it {perfect storm} {spectacular view} {a good bowl of soup}. An adjective may follow the noun if (1) special emphasis is needed {reasons innumerable} {captains courageous}; (2) it occurs in this position in standard usage {court-martial} {notary public}; (3) it is a predicate adjective following a linking verb {I am ready}; or (4) the pronoun is of a type usually followed by the adjective {anything good} {everything yellow} {nothing important} {something wicked}. Some adjectives are always in the predicate and never appear before what they modify {the city is asleep} {the door was ajar}. Others appear uniformly before the nouns they modify {utter nonsense} {a mere child}. Phrasal adjectives may precede or follow what they modify. See 5.91.

5.79 ***After possessive pronoun.*** When a noun phrase includes a possessive noun, as in *children's shoes* or *the company's president*, the adjective follows the possessive {children's athletic shoes} {the company's former president} (unless they're athletic children or it's a former company).

5.80 ***Adjective modifying pronoun.*** When modifying a pronoun, an adjective usually follows the pronoun {the searchers found him unconscious} {some like it hot}, sometimes as a predicate adjective {it was insensitive} {Who was so jealous?}.

5.81 ***Predicate adjective.*** A predicate adjective is an adjective that follows a linking verb (see 5.99) but modifies the subject {the child is afraid} {the night became colder} {this tastes delicious} {I feel bad}. If an adjective in the predicate modifies a noun or pronoun in the predicate, it is not a predicate adjective. For example, in *the train will be late* the adjective *late* modifies the subject *train*. But in *the train will be here at a late hour* the adjective *late* modifies the noun *hour*, not the subject *train*. So even though it occurs in the predicate, it is not known as a *predicate adjective*, which by definition follows a linking verb.

5.82 ***Dates as adjectives.*** Dates are often used as descriptive adjectives, more often today than in years past. If a month-year or month-day date is used as an adjective, no hyphen or comma is needed {October 31 festivities} {December 2003 financial statement}. If a full month-day-year date is used, then a comma is considered necessary both before and after the year {the May 18, 2002, commencement ceremonies}. But this construction is awkward because the adjective (which is forward looking) contains two commas (which are backward looking); the construction is therefore best avoided {commencement ceremonies on May 18, 2002}.

DEGREES OF ADJECTIVES

5.83 ***Three adjectival degrees.*** An adjective has three degrees: the positive or absolute {hard}, the comparative {harder}, and the superlative {hardest}. A positive adjective simply expresses an object's quality without reference to any other thing {a big balloon} {bad news}.

5.84 ***Comparative adjectives.*** A comparative adjective expresses the relationship between a specified quality shared by two things, often specifying which has more or less of that quality {a cheaper ticket} {a happier ending}. The suffix *-er* usually signals the comparative form of a common adjective having one or two syllables {light-lighter} {merry-merrier}. An adjective with three or more syllables takes *more* instead of a suffix to form the comparative {intelligent-more intelligent} {purposeful-more purposeful}. Some adjectives with two syllables take the *-er* suffix {lazy-lazier} {narrow-narrower}, but most two-syllable adjectives take *more* {more hostile} {more careless}. Two-syllable adjectives ending in *-er*, *-le*, *-ow*, *-ure*, or *-y* can typically use either the *-er* suffix or *more*.

5.85 ***Superlative adjectives.*** A superlative adjective expresses the relationship between at least three things and denotes an extreme of intensity or amount in a particular shared quality {the biggest house on the block} {the bitterest pill of all}. The suffix *-est* usually signals the superlative form of a common adjective having one or two syllables {lighter-lightest}. An adjective with three or more syllables takes *most* instead of a suffix to form the superlative {quarrelsome-most quarrelsome} {humorous-most humorous}. Some adjectives with two syllables take the *-est* suffix {holy-holiest} {noble-noblest}, but most two-syllable adjectives take *most* {most fruitful} {most reckless}.

5.86 *Forming comparatives and superlatives.* There are a few rules for forming a short regular adjective's comparative and superlative forms. (1) If the adjective is a monosyllable ending in a single vowel followed by a single consonant, the final consonant is doubled before the suffix is attached {red-redder-reddest}. (2) If the adjective ends in a silent *-e*, the *-e* is dropped before the suffix is added {polite-politer-politest}. (3) Participles used as adjectives require *more* or *most* before the participle; no suffix is added to form the comparative or the superlative {this teleplay is more boring than the first one} {I am most tired on Fridays}. (4) A few one-syllable adjectives—such as *real*, *right*, and *wrong*—can take only *more* and *most*. Even then, these combinations occur only in informal speech. (5) *Eager*, *proper*, and *somber*, unlike many two-syllable adjectives, also take only *more* and *most*; none can take a suffix. (6) Two-syllable adjectives to which the negative prefix *un-* has been added can usually either take a suffix or take *more* or *most*, even if the total number of syllables is three {unhappiest} {most unhappy}. (7) Many adjectives are irregular—there is no rule that guides their comparative and superlative forms {good-better-best} {less-lesser-least}. A good dictionary will show the forms of an irregular adjective.

5.87 *Equal and unequal comparisons.* A higher degree of comparison is signaled by a suffix (*-er* or *-est*), or by *more* or *most*. (See 5.84, 5.85.) A lower degree is shown by *less* (comparative) or *least* (superlative) {cold-less cold} {less cold-least cold}. Equivalence is shown by the use of the *as . . . as* construction {this is as old as that} and sometimes by *so* {that test was not so hard as the last one}.

5.88 *Uncomparable adjectives.* An adjective that, by definition, describes an absolute state or condition—such as *entire*, *impossible*, *pregnant*, *unique*—is called uncomparable. It cannot take a comparative suffix and cannot be coupled with the comparative terms *more*, *most*, *less*, or *least*. Nor can it be intensified by words like *very*, *largely*, or *quite*. But on the rare occasion when a particular emphasis is needed, a good writer may depart from this rule and use a phrase like *more perfect*, as the framers of the United

States Constitution did in composing its preamble {We the People of the United States, in order to form a more perfect Union . . .}.

SPECIAL TYPES OF ADJECTIVES

5.89 ***Participial adjectives.*** A participial adjective is simply a verb's participle that modifies a noun or pronoun. It can be a present participle (verb ending in *-ing*) {the dining room} {a walking stick} {a rising star} or a past participle (usually a verb ending in *-ed*) {an endangered species} {a completed assignment} {a proven need}. Some past-participial forms have only this adjectival function, the past-participial verb having taken a different form {a shaven face} {a graven image}. A past participle functioning as an adjective may be modified with an adverb such as *quite* {quite surprised}, *barely* {barely concealed}, or *little* {little known}, or an adverbial phrase such as *very much* {very much distrusted}. If the past participle has gained a strong adjectival quality, *very* will do the job alone without the quantitative *much* {very tired} {very drunk}. But if the participial form seems more like a verb, *very* needs *much* to help do the job {very much appreciated} {very much delayed}. A few past participles (such as *bored*, *interested*, *pleased*, *satisfied*) are in the middle of the spectrum between those having mostly adjectival qualities and those having mostly verbal qualities. With these few, the quantitative *much* is normally omitted. See also 5.108, 5.139.

5.90 ***Coordinate adjectives.*** A coordinate adjective is one that appears in a sequence with one or more related adjectives to modify the same noun. Coordinate adjectives should be separated by commas or by *and* {skilled, experienced chess player} {nurturing and loving parent}. But if one adjective modifies the noun and another adjective modifies the idea expressed by the combination of the first adjective and the noun, the adjectives are not considered coordinate and should not be separated by a comma. For example, *a lethargic soccer player* describes a soccer player who is lethargic. Likewise, phrases such as *red brick house* and *wrinkled canvas jacket* are unpunctuated because the adjectives are not coordinate: they have no logical connection in sense (a red house could be made of many different materials; so could a wrinkled jacket). The most useful test is this: if *and* would fit between the two adjectives, a comma is necessary.

5.91 ***Phrasal adjectives.*** A phrasal adjective (also called a compound modifier) is a phrase that functions as a unit to modify a noun. A phrasal adjective follows these basic rules: (1) Generally, if it is placed before a noun, you should hyphenate the phrase to avoid misdirecting the reader {dog-eat-dog competition}. There may be a considerable difference between the hyphenated and the unhyphenated forms. For example, compare *small animal hospital* with *small-animal hospital*. (2) If a compound noun is an element of a phrasal adjective, the entire compound noun must be hyphenated to clarify the relationship among the words {time-clock-punching employees}. (3) If more than one phrasal adjective modifies a single noun, hyphenation becomes especially important {nineteenth-century song-and-dance numbers} {state-inspected assisted-living facility}. (4) If two phrasal adjectives end in a common element, the ending element should appear only with the second phrase, and a suspension hyphen should follow the unattached words to show that they are related to the ending element {middle- and upper-class operagoers}. But if two phrasal adjectives *begin* with a common element, a hyphen is usually inappropriate, and the element should be repeated {left-handed and left-brained executives}. (5) If the phrasal adjective denotes an amount or a duration, plurals should be dropped. For instance, *pregnancy lasts nine months* but is *a nine-month pregnancy*, and a shop *open twenty-four hours a day* requires *a twenty-four-hour-a-day schedule*. The plural is retained only for fractions {a two-thirds majority}. (6) If a phrasal adjective becomes awkward, the sentence should probably be recast. For example, *The news about the lower-than-expected third-quarter earnings disappointed investors* could become *The news about the third-quarter earnings, which were lower than expected, disappointed investors*. Or perhaps this: *Investors were disappointed by the third-quarter earnings, which were lower than expected*. There are exceptions for hyphenating phrasal adjectives: (1) If the phrasal adjective follows a verb, it is usually unhyphenated—for example, compare *a well-trained athlete* with *an athlete who is well trained*. (2) When a proper name begins a phrasal adjective, the name is not hyphenated {the Monty Python school of comedy}. (3) A two-word phrasal adjective that begins with an adverb ending in *-ly* is not hyphenated {a sharply worded reprimand} (but *a not-so-sharply-worded reprimand*). For a full discussion of hyphenation—including treatment of compound noun forms and other parts of speech—see 7.77–85.

FUNCTIONAL VARIATION

5.92 ***Adjectives as nouns.*** Adjective-to-noun transitions are relatively common in English. Some adjectives are well established as nouns and are perfectly suitable for most contexts. For example, *a postmortem examination* is often called *a postmortem*; *collectible objects* are *collectibles*; and *French people* are *the French*. Any but the most established of these, however, should be used only after careful consideration. If there's an alternative, it will almost certainly be better. For example, there is probably no good reason to use the adjective *collaborative* as a noun (i.e., a shortened form of *collaborative enterprise*) when the perfectly good *collaboration* is available. See also 5.22–25.

5.93 ***Adjectives as verbs.*** Adjective-to-verb transitions occur in English only once in a while, usually as jargon or slang {the cargo tanks were *inerted* by introducing carbon dioxide into them} {it would be silly to *low-key* the credit for this achievement}. They are not acceptable in formal prose.

5.94 ***Other parts of speech functioning as adjectives.*** Words that ordinarily function as other parts of speech, but sometimes as adjectives, include nouns (see 5.22), pronouns (see 5.47), and verbs (see 5.105).

Verbs

DEFINITIONS

5.95 ***Verbs generally.*** A verb denotes the performance or occurrence of an action or the existence of a condition or a state of being, such as an emotion. Action verbs include *walk*, *shout*, *taste*, and *fly*. Nonaction verbs include *imagine*, *exist*, and *dread*. The verb is the most essential part of speech—the only one that can express a thought by itself (with the subject understood) {Run!} {Enjoy!} {Think!}.

5.96 ***Transitive and intransitive verbs.*** Depending on its relationship with objects, a verb is classified as transitive or intransitive. A transitive verb requires an object to express a complete thought; the verb indicates what action the subject exerts on the object. For example, *the cyclist hit a curb* states what the subject *cyclist* did to the object *curb*. An intransitive verb does not require an object to express a complete thought {the rescuer jumped}, although it may be followed by a prepositional phrase serving an adverbial function {the rescuer jumped to the ground}. Many verbs may be either transitive or intransitive, the different usages often distinguishable by their meanings. For example, when used transitively, as in *the king's heir will succeed him*, *succeed* means "to follow and take the place of"; when used intransitively, as in *the chemist will succeed in identifying the toxin*, it means "to accomplish a task." With other verbs, no such distinction is possible. For example, in *I will walk; you ride*, *ride* is intransitive. In *I will walk; you ride your bike*, *ride* is transitive, but its meaning is unchanged. A verb that is normally used transitively may sometimes be used intransitively to emphasize the verb and leave the object undefined or unknown {the patient is eating poorly} (*how well* the patient eats is more important than *what* the patient eats).

5.97 *Ergative verbs.* Some verbs, called ergative verbs, can be used transitively or intransitively with a noun that becomes the object when the verb's use is transitive and the subject when the verb's use is intransitive. For example, with the noun *door* and the verb *open*, one can say *I opened the door* (transitive) or *the door opened* (intransitive). Many words undergo ergative shifts. For example, the verb *ship* was once exclusively transitive {the company shipped the books on January 16}, but in commercial usage it is now often intransitive {the books shipped on January 16}. Likewise, *grow* (generally an intransitive verb) was transitive only in horticultural contexts {the family grew several types of crops}, but commercial usage now makes it transitive in many other contexts {how to grow your business}. Careful writers and editors employ such usages cautiously if at all, preferring well-established idioms.

5.98 *Regular and irregular verbs.* The past-tense and past-participle forms of most English words are formed by appending *-ed* to the basic form {draft-drafted-drafted}. If the verb ends in *-e*, only a *-d* is appended, and sometimes a final consonant is doubled. These verbs are classified as regular, or weak (the latter is a term used in philology to classify forms of conjugation). But a few common verbs have maintained forms derived mostly from Old English roots {begin-began-begun} {bet-bet-bet} {bind-bound-bound} {bite-bit-bitten}. These verbs are called irregular, or strong. The various inflections of strong verbs defy simple classifications, but many past-tense and past-participle forms (1) change by changing the vowel sound of the base verb (as *begin*); (2) keep the same form as the base verb (as *bet*); (3) share an irregular form (as *bind*); or (4) change endings (as *bite*). The verb *be* is highly irregular, with eight forms {*be, am, are, is, was, were, been, being*}. Because no system of useful classification is possible for irregular verbs, a reliable memory and a general dictionary are essential tools for using the correct forms consistently. Further complicating the spelling of irregular verbs is the fact that the form may vary according to the sense of the word. When used to mean "to offer a price," for example, *bid* keeps the same form in the past tense and past participle, but when it means "to offer a greeting" it forms *bade* and *bidden*. The form may also depend on whether the verb is being used literally {wove a rug} or figuratively {weaved in traffic}. Finally, a few verbs that are considered regular have an alternative past tense and past participle that is formed by adding *-t* to the simple verb form {dream-dreamed} {dream-dreamt}. When these alternatives are available, American English tends to prefer the forms in *-ed* (e.g., *dreamed, learned, spelled*), while British English tends to prefer the forms in *-t* (*dreamt, learnt, spelt*).

5.99 ***Linking verbs.*** A linking verb (also called a copula or connecting verb) is one that links the subject to an equivalent word in the sentence—a predicate pronoun, predicate noun, or predicate adjective. The linking verb itself does not take an object. There are two kinds of linking verbs: *be*-verbs and intransitive verbs that are used in a weakened sense, such as *seem*, *smell*, *appear*, *feel*, and *look*. When used as a link, the weakened intransitive verb often has a figurative sense akin to that of *became*, as in *he fell heir to a large fortune* (he didn't physically fall on or into anything) or *the river ran dry* (a waterless river doesn't run—it just dries up). See 5.167.

5.100 ***Phrasal verbs.*** A phrasal verb is usually a verb plus a preposition (or particle) {settle down} {get up}. A phrasal verb is not hyphenated, even though its equivalent noun or phrasal adjective might be—compare *to flare up* with *a flare-up*, and compare *to step up the pace* with *a stepped-up pace*. Three rules apply: (1) if the phrasal verb has a sense distinct from the component words, use the entire phrase—for example, *hold up* means "to rob" or "to delay," and *get rid of* and *do away with* mean "to eliminate"; (2) avoid the phrasal verb if the verb alone conveys essentially the same meaning—for example, *rest up* is essentially equivalent to *rest*; and (3) don't compress the phrase into a one-word verb, especially if it has a corresponding one-word noun form—for example, one *burns out* and suffers *burnout*.

5.101 ***Principal and auxiliary verbs.*** Depending on its uses, a verb is classified as principal or auxiliary (also termed modal). A principal verb is one that can stand alone to express an act or state {he jogs} {I dreamed about Xanadu}. If combined with another verb, it expresses the combination's leading thought {a tiger may roar}. An auxiliary verb is used with a principal verb to form a verb phrase that indicates mood, tense, or voice {You must study for the exam!} {I will go to the store} {the show was interrupted}. The most commonly used auxiliaries are *be*, *can*, *do*, *have*, *may*, *must*, *ought*, *shall*, and *will*. For more on auxiliary verbs, see 5.142–50.

5.102 ***Verb phrases.*** The combination of an auxiliary verb with a principal verb is a verb phrase, such as *could happen*, *must go*, or *will be leaving*. When a verb phrase is modified by an adverb, the modifier typically goes directly after the first auxiliary verb, as in *could certainly happen*, *must always go*, and *will soon be leaving*. The idea that verb phrases should not be "split" in this way is quite mistaken (see 5.168). A verb phrase is negated by placing the negative adverb *not* after the first auxiliary {we have not called him}. In an interrogative sentence, the first auxiliary begins the sentence and is followed by the subject {Must I repeat that?} {Do you want more?}.

An interrogative can be negated by placing *not* after the subject {Do you not want more?}; contractions are often more natural but may paradoxically serve as positive intensifiers {Don't you want more?} {Isn't the sunset beautiful?}. Most negative forms can be contracted {we do not-we don't} {I will not-I won't} {he has not-he hasn't} {she does not-she doesn't}, but *I am not* is contracted to *I'm not* (never *I amn't*). The corresponding interrogative form is *Aren't I?* Sometimes the negative is emphasized if the auxiliary is contracted with the pronoun and the negative is left standing alone {he is not-he isn't-he's not} {we are not-we aren't-we're not} {they have not-they haven't-they've not}.

5.103 ***Contractions.*** Most types of writing benefit from the use of contractions. If used thoughtfully, contractions in prose sound natural and relaxed and make reading more enjoyable. *Be*-verbs and most of the auxiliary verbs are contracted when followed by *not*: *are–aren't*; *was–wasn't*; *cannot–can't*; *could not–couldn't*; *do not–don't*; and so on. A few, such as *ought not–oughtn't*, look or sound awkward and are best avoided. Pronouns can be contracted with auxiliaries, forms of *have*, and some *be*-verbs. Think before using one of the less common contractions, which often don't work well in prose, except perhaps in dialogue or quotations. Some examples are *I'd've* (I would have), *she'd've* (she would have) *it'd* (it would), *should've* (should have), *there're* (there are), *who're* (who are), and *would've* (would have). Also, some contracted forms can have more than one meaning. For instance, *there's* may be *there is* or *there has*, and *I'd* may be *I had* or *I would*. The particular meaning may not always be clear from the context.

INFINITIVES

5.104 ***Infinitives defined.*** An infinitive verb, also called the verb's root or stem, is a verb that in its principal uninflected form may be preceded by *to* {to dance} {to dive}. In the active voice, *to* is generally dropped when the infinitive follows an auxiliary verb {you must flee} and can be dropped after several principal verbs, such as *bid*, *dare*, *feel*, *hear*, *help*, *let*, *make*, *need*, and *see* {You dare say that to me!}. But when the infinitive follows one of these verbs in the passive voice, *to* should be retained {he cannot be heard to deny it} {they cannot be made to listen}. The *to* should also be retained after *ought* (see 5.148).

5.105 ***Uses of the infinitive.*** The infinitive has great versatility. It is sometimes called a verbal noun because it can function as a verb or a noun. The infinitive also has limited uses as an adjective or an adverb. As a verb, it can take (1) a subject {we wanted the lesson to end}; (2) an object {to throw the javelin}; (3) a predicate complement {to race home}; or (4) an adverbial modifier {to think quickly}. As a noun, the infinitive can perform as (1) the subject of a finite verb {to fly is a lofty goal} or (2) the object of a transitive verb or participle {I want to hire a new assistant}. An infinitive may be governed by a verb {cease to do evil}, noun {we all have a talent to be improved}, adjective {she is eager to learn}, or pronoun {give it to them to do}.

5.106 ***Split infinitive.*** Although from about 1850 to 1925 many grammarians stated otherwise, it is now widely acknowledged that adverbs sometimes justifiably separate an infinitive's *to* from its principal verb {they expect to more than double their income next year}. See also 5.168.

5.107 ***Dangling infinitive.*** An infinitive phrase can be used, often loosely, to modify a verb—in which case there must be an express or implied logical subject in the sentence. If there is none, then the sentence may be confusing. For example, in *to repair your car properly, it must be sent to a mechanic*, the infinitive *repair* does not have a logical subject; the infinitive phrase *to repair your car* is left dangling. But if the sentence is rewritten as *to repair your car properly, you must take it to a mechanic*, the logical subject is *you*.

PARTICIPLES AND GERUNDS

5.108 ***Forming participles.*** A participle is a nonfinite verb that is not limited by person, number, or mood, but does have tense. Two participles are formed from the verb stem: the present participle invariably ends in *-ing*, and the past participle usually ends in *-ed*. The present participle denotes the verb's action as in progress or incomplete at the time expressed by the sentence's principal verb {watching intently for a mouse, the cat settled in to wait} {hearing his name, Jon turned to answer}. The past participle denotes the verb's action as completed {planted in the spring} {written last year}.

5.109 ***Participial phrases.*** A participial phrase is made up of a participle plus any closely associated word or words, such as modifiers or complements. It can be used (1) as an adjective to modify a noun or pronoun {nailed to the roof, the slate stopped the leaks} or (2) as an adverb to modify the predicate, or any adverb or adjective in the predicate {she succeeded, persevering despite discouragement} {she pointed to the chef drooping behind the counter}. For more on participial adjectives, see 5.89, 5.112.

5.110 ***Gerunds.*** A gerund is a present participle used as a noun. It is not limited by person, number, or mood, but does have tense. Being a noun, the gerund can be used as (1) the subject of a verb {complaining about it won't help}; (2) the object of a verb {I don't like your cooking}; (3) a predicate nominative or complement {his favorite hobby is sleeping}; or (4) the object of a preposition {reduce erosion by terracing the fields}. In some sentences, a gerund may substitute for an infinitive. Compare the infinitive *to lie* used as a noun in *to lie is wrong* with the gerund *lying* in *lying is wrong*.

5.111 *Distinguishing between participles and gerunds.* Because participles and gerunds are both derived from verbs, the difference between them depends on their function. A participle is used as a modifier {the running water} or as part of a verb phrase {the meter is running}. A gerund is used as a noun {running is great exercise}.

5.112 *Dangling participles.* Both participles and gerunds are subject to dangling. A participle that has no syntactical relationship with the nearest subject is called a *dangling participle* or a *dangler*. Often, the sentence is illogical, ambiguous, or even incoherent {frequently used in early America, experts suggest that shaming is an effective punishment} (*used* does not modify the closest noun, *experts*; it modifies *shaming*); {being a thoughtful mother, I believe Meg gives her children good advice} (the writer at first seems to be attesting to his or her own thoughtfulness rather than Meg's). Recasting the sentence so that the misplaced modifier is associated with the correct noun is a serviceable cure {experts suggest that shaming, often used in early America, is an effective punishment}. But rewording to avoid the participle or gerund may be preferable {I believe that because Meg is a thoughtful mother, she gives her children good advice}. A careful writer will likewise avoid using *it* or *there* as the subject of the independent clause after a participial phrase, for this produces a dangler without a logical subject {reviewing the suggestions, it is clear that no consensus exists} (a possible revision: *our review of the suggestions shows that no consensus exists*). See also 5.171.

5.113 *Dangling gerunds.* When the participle in a dangling gerund is the object of a preposition, it functions as a noun rather than as a modifier. For example, *after finishing the research, the screenplay was easy to write* (who did the research and who wrote the screenplay?). The best way to correct a dangling gerund is to give the sentence its proper subject. The example above could be revised as *after finishing the research, Pooks found the screenplay easy to write*. Dangling gerunds can result in improbable statements. Consider *while driving to San Antonio, my map was lost*. The map was not the driver. Clarifying the subject makes the sentence work {while driving to San Antonio, I lost my map}. Of course a gerund phrase as object of a preposition can function perfectly well, without dangling, in a sentence whose sense allows it {after dining with royalty, the next item on my to-do list is picnicking on the Eiffel Tower}.

PROPERTIES OF VERBS

5.114 ***Five properties of verbs.*** A verb has five properties: voice, mood, tense, person, and number.

5.115 ***Active and passive voice.*** Voice shows whether the subject acts (active voice) or is acted on (passive voice)—that is, whether the subject performs or receives the action of the verb. Only transitive verbs are said to have voice. The clause *the judge levied a $50 fine* is in the active voice because the subject *judge* is acting. But *the tree's branch was broken by the storm* is in the passive voice because the subject *branch* does not break itself—it is acted on by the object *storm*. The passive voice is always formed by joining an inflected form of *be* (or, in colloquial usage, *get*) with the verb's past participle. Compare *the ox pulls the cart* (active voice) with *the cart is pulled by the ox* (passive voice). A passive-voice verb in a modifying phrase often has an implied *be*-verb: in *the advice given by the novelist*, the implied (or understood) words *that was* come before *given*; so the passive construction is *was given*. Although the *be*-verb is sometimes implied, the past participle must always be expressed. Sometimes the agent isn't named {his tires were slashed}. As a matter of style, passive voice {the matter will be given careful consideration} is typically, though not always, inferior to active voice {we will consider the matter carefully}. The choice between active and passive voice may depend on which point of view is desired. For instance, *the mouse was caught by the cat* describes the mouse's experience, whereas *the cat caught the mouse* describes the cat's.

5.116 ***Progressive conjugation and voice.*** If an inflected form of *be* is joined with another verb's present participle, a progressive conjugation is produced {the ox is pulling the cart}. The progressive conjugation is in the active voice because the subject is performing the action, not being acted on.

5.117 ***Mood.*** Mood (or mode) indicates the manner in which the verb expresses an action or state of being. The three moods are indicative, imperative, and subjunctive.

5.118 ***Indicative mood.*** The indicative mood is the most common in English. It is used to express facts and opinions and to ask questions {amethysts cost very little} {the botanist lives in a garden cottage} {Does that bush produce yellow roses?}.

5.119 ***Imperative mood.*** The imperative mood expresses commands {Go away!}, direct requests {bring the tray in here}, and, sometimes, permission {Come in!}. The subject of the verb, *you*, is understood although the sentence might include a direct address {give me the magazine} {Cindy, take good care of yourself} (*Cindy* is a direct address, not the subject). Use the imperative mood cautiously: in some contexts it could be too blunt or unintentionally rude. You can soften the imperative by using words such as *please* {please stop at the store}. If that isn't satisfactory, recast the sentence in the indicative {Will you stop at the store please?}.

5.120 ***Subjunctive mood.*** Although the subjunctive mood is not often used in American English, it is useful when you want to express an action or state not as a reality but as a mental conception. Typically the subjunctive expresses an action or state as doubtful, imagined, desired, conditional, hypothetical, or otherwise contrary to fact. In addition to the hypothetical {if I were you}, the subjunctive mood can be used to signal wishes {if I were a rich man}, conjectures {oh, were it so}, demands {the landlord insists that the dog go}, and suggestions {I recommend that she take a vacation}. And despite its decline, the subjunctive mood persists in stock expressions such as *perish the thought*, *heaven help us*, or *be that as it may*.

5.121 ***Indicative instead of subjunctive.*** Although the subjunctive mood is often signaled by *if*, not every *if* takes a subjunctive verb. When the action or state might be true but the writer does not know, the indicative is called for instead of the subjunctive {if I am right about this, please call} {if Napoleon was in fact poisoned with arsenic, historians will need to reevaluate his associates}.

5.122 ***Tenses generally.*** Tense shows the time in which an act, state, or condition occurs or occurred. The three major divisions of time are present, past, and future. (Some modern grammarians hold that English has no future tense; see 5.125.) Each division of time includes a perfect tense that indicates a comparatively more remote time: present perfect, past perfect, and future perfect.

5.123 ***Present tense.*** The present tense is the infinitive verb's stem, also called the present indicative {walk} {drink}. It primarily denotes acts, conditions, or states that occur in the present {the dog howls} {the air is cold} {the water runs}. It is also used (1) to express a habitual action or general truth {cats prowl nightly} {polluted water is a health threat}; (2) to refer to timeless facts, such as memorable persons and to works of the past that are still extant or enduring {Julius Caesar describes his strategies in *The Gallic War*} {the Pompeiian mosaics are exquisite}; and (3) to narrate a fictional work's plot {the scene takes place aboard the *Titanic*}. This third point is important for those who write about literature. Characters in books, plays, and films *do* things—not *did* them. If you want to distinguish between present action and past action in literature, the present perfect tense is helpful {Hamlet, who has spoken with his father's ghost, reveals what he has learned to no one but Horatio}. See 5.126.

5.124 ***Past tense.*** The past tense is formed by inflection (see 5.98); the basic inflected form is called the past indicative {walked} {drank}. It denotes an act, state, or condition that occurred or existed at some explicit or implicit point in the past {the auction ended yesterday} {we returned the shawl}.

5.125 ***Future tense.*** The future tense is formed by using *will* with the verb's stem form {will walk} {will drink}. It refers to an expected act, state, or condition {the artist will design a wall mural} {the restaurant will open soon}. *Shall* may be used instead of *will*, but in American English it typically appears only in first-person questions involving choice {Shall we go?} and in legal commands {the debtor shall pay within 30 days}. In most contexts, *will* is preferred. Incidentally, most linguists are now convinced that, technically speaking, English has no future tense at all—that *will* is simply a modal verb that should be treated with all the others.[6] Yet the future tense remains a part of traditional grammar and is discussed here in the familiar way.

5.126 ***Present perfect tense.*** The present perfect tense is formed by using *have* or *has* with the principal verb's past participle {have walked} {has drunk}. It denotes an act, state, or condition that is now completed or continues up to the present {I have put away the clothes} {it has been a long day}. The present perfect is distinguished from the past tense because it refers to (1) a time in the indefinite past {I have played golf there before} or (2) a past action that comes up to and touches the present {I have played cards for the last eighteen hours}. The past tense, by contrast, indicates a more specific or a more remote time in the past.

5.127 ***Past perfect tense.*** The past perfect (or pluperfect) tense is formed by using *had* with the principal verb's past participle {had walked} {had drunk}. It refers to an act, state, or condition that was completed before another specified or implicit past time or past action {the engineer had driven the train to the roundhouse before we arrived} {by the time we stopped to check the map, the rain had begun falling} {the movie had ended already}.

5.128 ***Future perfect tense.*** The future perfect tense is formed by using *will have* with the verb's past participle {will have walked} {will have drunk}. It refers to an act, state, or condition that is expected to be completed before some other future act or time {the entomologist will have collected sixty more specimens before the semester ends} {the court will have adjourned by five o'clock}. *Shall* can also form the future perfect, but usually only for the first person, and it is not preferred {I shall have finished by tomorrow} {we shall have written before we embark}.

---

[6] Trask, *Language*, 60.

5.129 ***Person.*** A verb's person shows whether the act, state, or condition is that of (1) the person speaking (first person, *I* or *we*); (2) the person spoken to (second person, *you*); or (3) the person spoken of (third person, *he*, *she*, *it*, or *they*).

5.130 ***Number.*** The number of a verb must agree with the number of the noun or pronoun used with it. In other words, the verb must be singular or plural. Only the third-person present-indicative singular changes form to indicate number and person {you sketch, they sketch, *but* she sketches}. The second-person verb is always plural in form, whether one person or more than one person is spoken to {you are a wonderful person} {you are wonderful people}.

5.131 ***Agreement in person and number.*** A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number. When a verb has two or more subjects connected by *and*, it agrees with them jointly and is plural {Socrates and Plato were wise}. When a verb has two or more singular subjects connected by *or* or *nor*, it is singular {Jill or Jan is prepared to speak} {neither Bob nor John has learned his lesson}. When the subject is a collective noun conveying the idea of unity or multitude, the verb is singular {the nation is powerful}. When the subject is a collective noun conveying the idea of plurality, the verb is plural {the faculty were divided in their sentiments}.

5.132 ***False attraction to predicate nominative.*** A plural predicate nominative after a singular subject may mislead a writer by suggesting a plural verb. When this occurs, the simple correction of changing the number of the verb may make the sentence awkward, and the better approach then is to rework the sentence:

WRONG: My downfall are sweets.
RIGHT: My downfall is sweets.
BETTER: Sweets are my downfall.

5.133 ***Misleading connectives: "as well as," "along with," "together with," and so forth.*** Adding to a singular subject by using phrasal connectives such as *along with*, *as well as*, *in addition to*, *together with*, and the like does not make the subject plural. This type of distraction can be doubly misleading because the intervening material seems to create a compound subject, and the modifying prepositional phrase may itself contain one or more plural objects. If the singular verb sounds awkward in such a sentence, it may be better to use the conjunction *and* instead:

WRONG: The bride as well as her bridesmaids were dressed in mauve.
RIGHT: The bride as well as her bridesmaids was dressed in mauve.
BETTER: The bride and her bridesmaids were dressed in mauve.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS

5.134 ***Conjugation defined.*** Conjugation means changing (inflecting) a verb's form to reflect voice, mood, tense, person, and number. A verb has seven conjugated parts: the present indicative, the present participle, the present subjunctive, the past indicative, the past participle, the past subjunctive, and the imperative. The rules for conjugation of all verbs except auxiliaries are explained in the following sections.

5.135 ***Verb stem (present indicative).*** The present indicative is the verb stem for all persons, singular and plural, in the present tense—except for the third-person singular, which adds an *-s* to the stem {takes} {strolls} {says}. If the verb ends in *-o*, an *-es* is added {goes} {does}. If the verb ends in a consonant followed by *-y*, the *-y* is changed to *-i* and then an *-es* is added {identify-identifies} {carry-carries}.

5.136 ***Forming present participles.*** The present participle is formed by adding *-ing* to the stem of the verb {reaping} {wandering}. If the stem ends in *-ie*, the *-ie* usually changes to *-y* before the *-ing* is added {die-dying} {tie-tying}. If the stem ends in a silent *-e*, that *-e* is usually dropped before the *-ing* is added {giving} {leaving}. There are two exceptions to this rule. The silent *-e* is retained when (a) the word ends with *-oe* {toe-toeing} {hoe-hoeing} {shoe-shoeing} or (b) the verb has a participle that would resemble another word but for the distinguishing *-e* (e.g., *dyeing* means something different from *dying*, and *singeing* means something different from *singing*). Regular and irregular verbs both form the present participle in the same way. The present participle is the same for all persons and numbers.

5.137 ***Present subjunctive.*** Apart from a few set phrases (e.g., *so be it*, *be they*, *she need not*), in present-day English the present subjunctive typically appears in the form *if I [he, she, it] were* {if I were king} {if she were any different}. That is, the present subjunctive ordinarily uses a past-tense verb (e.g., *were*) to connote uncertainty, impossibility, or unreality. Compare *if I am threatened, I will quit* (indicative) with *if I were threatened, I would* *quit* (subjunctive), or *if the canary sings, I smile* (indicative) with *if the canary sang* [or *should sing*, or *were to sing*], *I would smile* (subjunctive). See also 5.120.

5.138 ***Past indicative.*** The past indicative of a regular verb is formed by adding *-ed* to its base form {like-liked} {spill-spilled}. In words of more than one syllable, the final consonant is doubled if it is part of the syllable that is stressed both before and after the inflection {prefer-preferred} but not otherwise {travel-traveled}. In British English there is no such distinction: all such consonants are doubled. Irregular verbs form the past tense in various ways {give-gave} {stride-strode} {read-read}. A good dictionary will show an irregular verb's past indicative form.

5.139 ***Forming past participles.*** With regular verbs, the past participle is formed in the same way as the past indicative—that is, the past-indicative and past-participial forms are always identical {stated-stated} {pulled-pulled}. For irregular verbs, the forms are sometimes the same {paid-paid} {sat-sat} and sometimes different {forsook-forsaken} {shrank-shrunk}. A good dictionary will show the past participles.

5.140 ***Past subjunctive.*** The past subjunctive typically appears in the form *if I* [*he, she, it*] *had been* {if I had gone} {if he had been there}. That is, the past subjunctive ordinarily uses a past-perfect verb (e.g., *had been*) to connote uncertainty or impossibility. Compare *if it arrived, it was not properly filed* (indicative) with *if it had arrived, it could have changed the course of history* (subjunctive).

5.141 ***Imperative.*** The imperative is the verb's stem used to make a command, a request, an exclamation, or the like {Come here!} {Give me a clue.} {Help!}.

AUXILIARY VERBS

5.142 ***Auxiliary verbs defined.*** An auxiliary verb (sometimes termed a modal or helping verb) is a highly irregular verb that is used with other verbs to form voice, tense, and mood. The main ones are explained in the following sections. See also 5.101.

5.143 ***"Can."*** This verb uses only its stem form in the present indicative {I can} {it can} {they can}. In the past indicative, *can* becomes *could* for all persons {he could see better with glasses}. *Can* does not have an infinitive form (*to be able to* is substituted) or a present or past participle. When it denotes ability, capacity, or permission, *can* is always followed by an explicit or implicit principal verb {you can carry this trunk}. When used in the sense of permission, *can* is colloquial for *may* {Can I go to the movies?}. *Can* also connotes an actual possibility {spring storms can be severe} {days can pass before a decision is announced}.

5.144 ***"Do."*** This verb has two forms in the present indicative: *does* for the third-person singular and *do* for all other persons. In the past indicative, the only form for all persons is *did*. The past participle is *done*. As an auxiliary verb, *do* is used only in the present and past indicative {Did you speak?} {we do plan some charity work}. When the verb in an imperative statement is coupled with *not*, *do* also appears {Do not touch!} {Don't be an idiot!}. When denoting performance, *do* can also act as a principal verb {he does well in school} {they do good work}. *Do* can sometimes substitute for another verb as a means of avoiding repetition {Marion dances well, and so do you} {he caught fewer mistakes than you did}.

5.145 ***"Have."*** This verb has two forms in the present indicative: *has* for the third-person singular and *have* for all other persons. In the past indicative, the only form for all persons is *had*; the past participle is also *had*. When the present or past indicative of the auxiliary *have* precedes the past participle of any verb, that verb's present-perfect or past-perfect indicative mood is formed {I have looked everywhere} {he had looked for a better rate}. When denoting possession, *have* can also be a sentence's principal verb {she has a car and a boat} {you have a mosquito on your neck}. When *have got* precedes *to* plus an infinitive, it means *must* {I have got to pass this test!}. *Had* plus *to* and an infinitive expresses the past form of *must* {I had to leave yesterday afternoon}.

5.146 ***"May" and "might."*** *May* denotes permission {you may go to the movies}. In its negative form, *may not* is sometimes displaced by the more intensive *must not*. Compare *you may not climb that tree* with *you must not climb that tree*. *May* sometimes connotes an uncertain possibility {you may find that assignment too difficult} and often becomes *might* {you might find that assignment too difficult}. This verb has only its stem form in the present indicative {I may} {it may} {they may}. In the past indicative, *may* often becomes *might*, especially to connote uncertainty {the jeweler might have forgotten to call}. *May* does not have an infinitive form, or a present or past participle. As an auxiliary, *may*, denoting wishfulness or purpose, forms a subjunctive equivalent {may you always be happy} {give so that others may live}.

5.147 ***"Must."*** *Must* denotes a necessity that arises from someone's will {we must obey the rules} or from circumstances {you must ask what the next step is}. *Must* also connotes a logical conclusion {that must be the right answer} {that must be the house we're looking for} {it must have been Donna who phoned}. This verb does not vary its form in either the present or past indicative. It does not have an infinitive form (*to have to* is substituted) or a present or past participle. Denoting obligation, necessity, or inference, *must* is always used with an express or implied infinitive {we must finish this design} {everyone must eat} {the movie must be over by now}.

5.148 *"Ought." Ought* denotes what is reasonably expected of a person or circumstances {they ought to fix the fence} {they left at dawn, so they ought to be here soon}. It is more emphatic than *should*. This verb does not vary its form in either the present or past indicative. It has no infinitive form, or present or past participle. Denoting a duty or obligation, *ought* is always used with an infinitive, even in the negative {we ought to invite some friends} {the driver ought not to have ignored the signal}. *To* is occasionally omitted after *not* {you ought not worry}, but the better usage is to include it {you ought not to worry}. See also 5.104.

5.149 *"Shall" and "should." Shall* uses only its stem form in the present indicative. It is a relatively rare word in present-day American English, except in first-person jocular uses {Shall we dance?} {Shall I fetch you some coffee?}. The past indicative form, *should*, is used for all persons and always with a principal verb {they should be at home} {Should you read that newspaper?} (note that these verbs do not actually function as past indicatives). *Should* does not have an infinitive form, or a present or past participle. *Should* often carries a sense of duty, compulsion, or expectation {I should review those financial-planning tips} {you should clean the garage today} {it should be ready by now}; sometimes it carries a sense of inference {the package should have been delivered today}; and sometimes it conveys the speaker's attitude {How should I know?} {you shouldn't have to deal with that}.

5.150 *"Will" and "would."* In its auxiliary uses, *will* has several senses. This verb uses only its stem form in the present indicative {she will} {they will}. In the past indicative, the only form for all persons is *would* {we would go fishing on Saturdays} {She would say that!}. *Would* sometimes expresses a condition {I would slide down the hill if you lent me your sled}. *Will* often carries a sense of the future {she will be at her desk tomorrow} or, in the past form *would*, expresses a conditional statement {I would recognize the house if I saw it again}.

"BE"-VERBS

5.151 *Forms of "be"-verbs.* The verb *be* has eight forms (*be*, *is*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *been*, *being*, and *am*) and has several special uses. First, it is sometimes a sentence's principal verb meaning "exist" {I think, therefore I am}. Second, it is more often used as an auxiliary verb {I was born in Lubbock}. When joined with a verb's present participle, it denotes continuing or progressive action {the train is coming} {the passenger was waiting}. When joined with a past participle, the verb becomes passive {a signal was given} {an earring was dropped} (see 5.115). Often this type of construction can be advantageously changed to active voice {he gave the signal} {she dropped her earring}. Third, *be* is the most common linking verb that connects the subject with something affirmed of the subject {truth is beauty} {we are the champions}. Occasionally a *be*-verb is used as part of an adjective {a rock star wannabe [want to be]} {a would-be hero} or noun {a has-been}.

5.152 ***Conjugation of "be"-verbs.*** *Be* is conjugated differently from other verbs. (1) The stem is not used in the present indicative form. Instead, *be* has three forms: for the first-person singular, *am*; for the third-person singular, *is*; and for all other persons, *are*. (2) The present participle is formed by adding *-ing* to the root *be* {being}. It is the same for all persons, but the present perfect requires also using *am*, *is*, or *are* {I am being} {it is being} {you are being}. (3) The past indicative has two forms: the first- and third-person singular use *was*; all other persons use *were* {she was} {we were}. (4) The past participle for all persons is *been* {I have been} {they have been}. (5) The imperative is the verb's stem {Be yourself!}.

Adverbs

DEFINITION AND FORMATION

5.153 ***Adverbs defined.*** An adverb is a word that qualifies, limits, describes, or modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb {she studied constantly} (*constantly* qualifies the verb *studied*); {the juggler's act was really unusual} (*really* qualifies the adjective *unusual*); {the cyclist pedaled very swiftly} (*very* qualifies the adverb *swiftly*). An adverb may also qualify a preposition, a conjunction, or a clause {the birds flew right over the lake} (*right* qualifies the preposition *over*); {this is exactly where I found it} (*exactly* qualifies the conjunction *where*); {apparently you forgot to check your references} (*apparently* qualifies the rest of the clause). Finally, grammarians have traditionally used the term *adverb* as a catch-all category to sweep in words that aren't readily put into categories (such as the infinitival *to* [see 5.104] and the particle in a phrasal verb [see 5.100]).

5.154 ***Adverbs with suffixes.*** Many adjectives have corresponding adverbs distinguished by the suffix *-ly* or, after most words ending in *-ic*, *-ally* {slow-

slowly} {careful-carefully} {public-publicly} {pedantic-pedantically}. Most adjectives ending in *-y* preceded by a consonant change the *-y* to *-i* when the suffix is added, but some do not {happy-happily} {shy-shyly}. A few adjectives ending in *-e* drop the vowel {true-truly} {whole-wholly}. If an adjective ends in *-le* and it is sounded as part of a syllable, it is replaced with *-ly* {terrible-terribly} {simple-simply}. An adjective that ends in a double *-l* takes only a *-y* suffix {dull-dully}. Many adjectives ending in *-le* or *-ly* do not make appealing adverbs {juvenile-juvenilely} {silly-sillily}. If an *-ly* adverb looks clumsy (e.g., *ghastlily* or *uglily*), either rephrase the sentence or use a phrase (e.g., *in a ghastly manner* or *in an ugly way*). Adverbial suffixes are sometimes added to phrases {replied matter-of-factly}. Some terms are compounded with nouns to form adverbs {he rides cowboy-style}; a few nouns form adverbs by taking the ending *-ways* {side-sideways}, *-ward* {sky-skyward}, or *-wise* {clock-clockwise}.

5.155 ***Adverbs without suffixes.*** Many adverbs do not have an identifying suffix (e.g., *almost, never, here, now, just, seldom, late, near, too*). And not every word ending in *-ly* is an adverb—some are adjectives (e.g., *lovely, curly*).

5.156 ***Adverbs distinguished from adjectives.*** Unlike an adjective, an adverb doesn't modify a noun or pronoun {we made an early start and arrived at the airport early} (the first *early* is an adjective modifying the noun *start*; the second is an adverb modifying *arrived*). Some adverbs are identical to prepositions (e.g., *up* or *off*) but are distinguishable because they are not attached to a following noun {he ran up a large bill} {let's cast off}. These prepositional adverbs (sometimes called particles or particle adverbs) are typically parts of phrasal verbs. See 5.100.

SIMPLE VERSUS COMPOUND ADVERBS

5.157 ***Simple and flat adverbs.*** A simple adverb is a single word that qualifies a single part of speech {hardly} {now} {deep}. A flat or bare adverb is one that has an *-ly* form but whose adjectival form may work equally well or even better, especially when used with an imperative in an informal context {drive slow} {hold on tight} {tell me quick}. Some flat adverbs are always used in their adjectival form {work fast} because the *-ly* has become obsolete (although it may linger in other words—e.g., *steadfast* and *steadfastly*). And the flat adverb may have a different meaning from the *-ly* adverb. Compare *I am working hard* with *I am hardly working*.

5.158 ***Phrasal and compound adverbs.*** A phrasal adverb consists of two or more words that function together as an adverb {in the meantime} {for a while} {here and there}. A compound adverb appears to be a single word but is a compound of several words {notwithstanding} {heretofore} {thereupon}. Compound adverbs should be used cautiously and sparingly because they make the tone stuffy.

ADVERBIAL DEGREES

5.159 ***Three adverbial degrees.*** Like adjectives (see 5.83), adverbs have three degrees: the positive, the comparative, and the superlative. A positive adverb simply expresses a quality without reference to any other thing {the nurse spoke softly} {the choir sang merrily}.

5.160 ***Comparative forms.*** Most one-syllable adverbs that do not end in *-ly* form the comparative by taking the suffix *-er* {sooner} {harder}. Multisyllable adverbs usually form the comparative with *more* or *less* {the Shakespearean villain fenced more ineptly than the hero} {the patient is walking less painfully today}. But there are exceptions for adverbs that end in *-ly* if the *-ly* is not a suffix {early-earlier}. A comparative adverb compares the quality of a specified action or condition shared by two things {Bitey worked longer than Arachne} {Rachel studied more industriously than Edith}.

5.161 ***Superlative forms.*** Most one-syllable adverbs that do not end in *-ly* form the superlative by taking the suffix *-est* {soonest} {hardest}. Multisyllable adverbs usually form the superlative with *most* or *least* {everyone's eyesight was acute, but I could see most acutely} {of all the people making choices, he chose least wisely}. But there are exceptions for adverbs that end in *-ly* if the *-ly* is not a suffix {early-earliest}. A superlative adverb compares the quality of a specified action or condition shared by at least three things {Sullie bowled fastest of all the cricketers} {of the three doctoral candidates, Rebecca defended her dissertation the most adamantly}. In a loose sense, the superlative is sometimes used for emphasis rather than comparison {the pianist played most skillfully}.

5.162 ***Irregular adverbs.*** A few adverbs have irregular comparative and superlative forms {badly-worse-worst} {little-less-least}. A good dictionary is the best resource for finding an irregular adverb's forms of comparison.

5.163 ***Uncomparable adverbs.*** Many adverbs are uncomparable. Some, by definition, are absolute and cannot be compared {eternally} {never} {singly} {uniquely} {universally}. Most adverbs indicating time {now} {then}, position {on}, number {first} {finally}, or place {here} are also uncomparable.

5.164 ***Intensifiers.*** An adverb can be intensified with words like *very* and *quite* {the very fashionably dressed actor} {everyone ate quite heartily}.

POSITION OF ADVERBS

5.165 ***Placement of adverbs.*** The adverb should generally be placed as near as possible to the word it is intended to modify. For example, in *the marathoners submitted their applications to compete immediately*, what does *immediately* modify—*compete* or *submitted*? Placing the adverb with the word it modifies makes the meaning clear—for instance, *the marathoners immediately submitted their applications to compete*. A misplaced adverb can completely change a sentence's meaning. For example, *we nearly lost all our camping equipment* states that the equipment was saved; *we lost nearly all our camping equipment* states that almost everything was lost.

5.166 ***Adverbs modifying intransitive verbs.*** If the adverb qualifies an intransitive verb, it should immediately follow the verb {the students sighed gloomily when homework was assigned} {the owl perched precariously on a thin branch}. Some exceptions are *always, never, often, generally, rarely*, and *seldom*, which may precede the verb {mountaineers seldom succeed in climbing K2}.

5.167 ***Adverbs and linking verbs.*** Adverbs do not generally modify linking verbs (see 5.99), such as *be*-verbs, *appear, seem, become, look, smell, taste, hear*, and *feel*. These verbs connect a descriptive word with the clause's subject; the descriptive word applies to the subject, not the verb {he seems modest}. To determine whether a verb is a linking verb, the writer must consider whether the descriptive word describes the action or condition, or the subject. For example, *the sculptor feels badly* literally describes the act of feeling or touching as not done well. But *the sculptor feels bad* describes the sculptor as unwell or perhaps experiencing guilt.

5.168 ***Adverb within a verb phrase.*** When an adverb qualifies a verb phrase, the natural place for the adverb is between the auxiliary verb and the principal verb {the administration has consistently repudiated this view} {the reports will soon generate controversy} {public opinion is sharply divided}. (See 5.102.) Some adverbs may follow the principal verb {you must go quietly} {Are you asking rhetorically?}. There is no rule against adverbial modifiers between the parts of a verb phrase. In fact, it's typically preferable to put them there {the heckler was abruptly expelled} {the bus had been seriously damaged in the crash}. And sometimes it is perfectly appropriate to split an infinitive verb with an adverb to add emphasis or to produce a natural sound. (See 5.106.) A verb's infinitive or *to* form is split when an intervening word immediately follows *to* {to bravely assert}. If the adverb bears the emphasis in a phrase {to boldly go} {to strongly favor}, then leave the split infinitive alone. But if moving the adverb to the end of the phrase doesn't suggest a different meaning or impair the sound, then it's an acceptable way to avoid splitting the verb. Recasting a sentence just to eliminate a split infinitive or avoid splitting the infinitive can alter its nuance or meaning—for instance, *it's best to always get up early* (*always* modifies *get up*) is not quite the same as *it's always best to get up early* (*always* modifies *best*). Moreover, sometimes "fixing" a split infinitive makes the sentence sound unnatural, as in *it's best to get up early always*.

Prepositions

DEFINITION AND TYPES

5.169 ***Prepositions defined.*** A preposition is a word or phrase that links an object and an antecedent to show the relationship between them. A preposition's object is usually a noun, or else a pronoun in the objective case {between me and them}, but an adjective, adverb, verb, or phrase may follow instead. Usually a preposition comes before its object, but there are exceptions. For example, the preposition can end a clause, especially a relative clause, or sentence {this isn't the pen that Steve writes with}. And a preposition used with the relative pronoun *that* (or with *that* understood) always follows the object {this is the moment [that] I've been waiting for}. It also frequently, but not always, follows the relative pronouns *which* {Which alternative is your decision based on?} {this is the alternative on which my decision is based} and *whom* {there is a banker [whom] I must speak with} {I can't tell you to whom you should apply}.

5.170 ***Simple and compound prepositions.*** Many prepositions are relatively straightforward. A simple preposition consists of a single monosyllabic word—for example, *as*, *at*, *by*, *down*, *for*, *from*, *in*, *like*, *of*, *off*, *on*, *plus*, *since*, *through*, *to*, *toward*, *up*, and *with*. A compound preposition has two or more syllables; it may be made up of two or more words {into} {outside} {upon}. Some examples are *about*, *above*, *across*, *after*, *against*, *alongside*, *around*, *before*, *below*, *beneath*, *between*, *despite*, *except*, *inside*, *onto*, *opposite*, *throughout*, *underneath*, *until*, and *without*.

5.171 ***Participial prepositions.*** A participial preposition is a participial form that functions as a preposition (or sometimes as a subordinating conjunction). Examples include *assuming*, *barring*, *concerning*, *considering*, *during*, *notwithstanding*, *owing to*, *provided*, *regarding*, *respecting*, and *speaking*.

Unlike other participles, these words do not create danglers when they have no subject {considering the road conditions, the trip went quickly} {regarding Watergate, he had nothing to say}. See 5.112.

5.172 *Phrasal prepositions.* A phrasal preposition (sometimes called a complex preposition) is two or more separate words used as a prepositional unit. These include *according to, because of, by means of, by reason of, by way of, contrary to, for the sake of, in accordance with, in addition to, in apposition with, in case of, in consideration of, in front of, in regard to, in respect to, in spite of, instead of, on account of, out of, with reference to, with regard to,* and *with respect to*. Many of these phrasal prepositions are symptoms of officialese, bureaucratese, or other types of verbose style. If a one-word preposition will do in context, use it. For example, if *about* will serve as well as *with regard to* or *in connection with*, a judicious editor will inevitably prefer to use the simpler expression.

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

5.173 *Prepositional phrases defined.* A prepositional phrase consists of a preposition, its object, and any words that modify the object. A prepositional phrase can be used as a noun {for James to change his mind would be a miracle}, an adverb (also called an adverbial phrase) {we strolled through the glade}, or an adjective (also called an adjectival phrase) {the cathedrals of Paris}.

5.174 *Prepositional function.* Prepositions signal many kinds of relationships. For example, a preposition may express a spatial relationship {to} {from} {out of} {into}, time {at} {for} {throughout} {until}, cause {because of} {on account of}, means {like} {with} {by}, possession {without} {of}, exceptions {but for} {besides} {except}, support {with} {for}, opposition {against}, or concession {despite} {for all} {notwithstanding}.

5.175 *Placement of prepositional phrases.* A prepositional phrase with an adverbial or adjectival function should be as close as possible to the word it modifies to avoid awkwardness, ambiguity, or unintended meanings {Is a person with blond hair named Sandy here?} {the woman with the Popular Front circulates petitions}. If a prepositional phrase equally modifies all the elements of a compound construction, the phrase follows the last element in the compound {the date, the place, and the budget for the wedding have been decided}. Note that if a prepositional phrase with plural objects follows the singular subject of a sentence, the predicate must still be singular—compare the predicate in *the man and two daughters have* *arrived* with that in *the man with two daughters has arrived* and in *the man has arrived with his two daughters*.

5.176 ***Ending a sentence with a preposition.*** The traditional caveat of yesteryear against ending sentences with prepositions is, for most writers, an unnecessary and pedantic restriction. As Winston Churchill famously said, "That is the type of arrant pedantry up with which I shall not put." A sentence that ends in a preposition may sound more natural than a sentence carefully constructed to avoid a final preposition. Compare, for example, *this is the case I told you about* with *this is the case about which I told you*. The "rule" prohibiting terminal prepositions was an ill-founded superstition. Today many grammarians use the dismissive term *pied-piping* for this phenomenon.

5.177 ***Clashing prepositions.*** If a phrasal verb {give in} precedes a prepositional phrase using the same term {in every argument}, the adverb will clash with the preposition {he gives in in every argument}. Recast the sentence when possible to avoid such repetition—for example, *rather than continue arguing, he always gives in*, or *in every argument, he gives in* (see also 6.44). For more on phrasal verbs, see 5.100.

5.178 ***Elliptical prepositional phrases.*** Sometimes a prepositional phrase is elliptical—that is, an independent expression without an antecedent. Often such a phrase starts a clause and can be detached from the statement without affecting the meaning. Elliptical prepositional phrases include *for example*, *for instance*, *in a word*, *in any event*, *in the last analysis*, and *in the long run* {in any event, call me when you arrive}.

5.179 ***Effect of prepositional phrase on pronoun.*** A pronoun that appears in a prepositional phrase is usually in the objective case (see 5.18). There are exceptions. *Than* may function either as a conjunction {he's taller than I [am]} or as a preposition {he's taller than me}. Traditional grammarians prefer the nominative *than I* [*am*] over the objective *than me*, even though the latter represents common usage. In formal prose, treat *than* as a conjunction requiring a nominative pronoun {she is a more careful researcher than he}.

OTHER PREPOSITIONAL ISSUES

5.180 ***Prepositions and functional variation.*** Some words that function as prepositions may also function as other parts of speech. The distinguishing feature of a preposition is that it always has an object. A word such as *above*, *behind*, *below*, *by*, *down*, *in*, *off*, *on*, or *up* can be used as either an adverb or a preposition. When used as a preposition, it takes an object {let's slide down the hill}. When used as an adverb, it does not {we sat down}. (Sometimes such a term may appear to have an object {I looked up his biography}. To test, detach the apparent prepositional phrase and see if it makes sense; *up his biography* does not and therefore *up* is an adverb here.) Likewise, some conjunctions may serve as prepositions (e.g., *than* and *but*). Such a conjunction points to an explicit or implied separate action. Compare the prepositional *but* in *everyone but Fuzzy traveled abroad last summer* (*but* is used to mean "except") with the conjunctive *but* in *I like the cut but not the color* (*but* joins a clause containing an implied separate action: *I don't like the color*).

5.181 ***Use and misuse of "like."*** *Like* is probably the least understood preposition. Its traditional function is adjectival, not adverbial, so that *like* is governed by a noun or a noun phrase {teens often see themselves as star-crossed lovers like Romeo and Juliet}. As a preposition, *like* is followed by a noun or pronoun in the objective case {the person in that old portrait looks like me}. Increasingly (but loosely) today in ordinary speech, *like* displaces *as* or *as if* as a conjunction to connect clauses. For example, in *it happened just like I said it would happen*, *like* should read *as*; and in *you're looking around like you've misplaced something*, *like* should read *as if*. Because *as* and *as if* are conjunctions, they are followed by nouns in the nominative case {Do you work too hard, as I do?}. Although *like* as a conjunction has been considered nonstandard since the seventeenth century, today it is common in dialectal and colloquial usage {he ran like he was really scared}. Consider context and tone when deciding whether to impose standard English, as in the examples above.

5.182 ***Use and misuse of "only."*** *Only* functions as an adjective, an adverb, and a conjunction, and it can modify any part of speech. It is probably poorly placed in sentences more often than any other word. *Only* emphasizes the word or phrase that immediately follows it. When *only* appears too early in the sentence, it has a deemphasizing effect; it can also alter the meaning of the sentence or produce ambiguity. Compare *I bought only tomatoes at the market* (I bought nothing else) with *I bought tomatoes only at the market* (I bought nothing other than tomatoes or I didn't buy tomatoes from any other place?). In idiomatic spoken English, *only* is placed before the verb, regardless of what it modifies: *I only bought tomatoes at the market*. This may be acceptable in speech because the speaker can use intonation to make the meaning clear. But since in writing there is no guidance from intonation, rigorous placement of *only* is preferable to aid the reader's comprehension.

LIMITING PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

5.183 ***Avoiding overuse of prepositions.*** Prepositions can easily be overused. Stylistically, a good ratio to strive for is one preposition for every ten to fifteen words. There are five editorial methods that can reduce the number of prepositions in a sentence.

5.184 ***Cutting prepositional phrases.*** If the surrounding prose's context permits, a prepositional phrase can be eliminated—for instance, within a passage focused on a particular recipe, *the most important ingredient in this recipe* could be reduced to *the most important ingredient*.

5.185 ***Cutting unnecessary prepositions.*** Many nouns ending in *-ance*, *-ence*, *-ity*, *-ment*, *-sion*, or *-tion* are formed from a verb {qualification-qualify} {performance-perform}. Such nouns are sometimes called nominalizations or buried verbs, and they often require additional words, especially prepositions (that is, *during her performance of the concerto* is essentially equivalent to *while she performed the concerto*, but it is somewhat more abstract and requires the preposition *of*). Using the noun's verb form may eliminate one or two prepositions. For example, *our efforts toward maximization of profits failed* might be edited down to *our efforts to maximize profits failed*.

5.186 ***Replacing prepositional phrases with adverbs.*** A strong adverb may replace a weaker prepositional phrase. For example, *the cyclist pedaled with fury* is weak compared with *the cyclist pedaled furiously*.

5.187 ***Replacing prepositional phrases with genitives.*** A genitive may replace a prepositional phrase, especially an *of*-genitive. For example, *I was dismayed by the complexity of the street map* essentially equals *the street map's complexity dismayed me*. See 5.19.

5.188 ***Using active voice to eliminate prepositions.*** Changing from passive voice to active almost always eliminates a preposition—that is, whenever the actor appears in a *by*-phrase. For example, *the ship was sailed by an experienced crew* equals *an experienced crew sailed the ship*.

PREPOSITIONAL IDIOMS

5.189 ***Idiomatic uses of prepositions.*** Among the most persistent word-choice issues are those concerning prepositions. Which prepositions go with which words? You *fill* A *with* B but *instill* B *into* A; you *replace* A *with* B but *substitute* B *for* A; you *prefix* A *to* B but *preface* B *with* A; you *force* A *into* B but *enforce* B *on* A; finally, A *implies* B, so you *infer* B *from* A. And that's only the beginning of it.

5.190 ***Shifts in prepositional idiom.*** Prepositional idioms often give nonnative speakers of English nightmares, and even native speakers of English need to double-check them at times. The language occasionally shifts. There may be a difference between traditional literary usage (*oblivious of*) and prevailing contemporary usage (*oblivious to*). Sometimes the writer may choose one or the other preposition for reasons of euphony. (Is it better, in a given context, to *ruminate on*, *about*, or *over* a specified problem?) Sometimes, too, the denotative and connotative differences can be striking: it's one thing to be *smitten with* another and quite a different thing to be *smitten by* another.

5.191 ***List of words and the prepositions construed with them.*** The list below contains the words that most often give writers trouble. Note that some of the words included here—such as verbs that can be used transitively {the tire abutted the curb} or words that can be used without further qualification {she refused to acquiesce} {his words were considered blasphemy}—do not always take prepositions.

abide (vb.): with ("stay"); by ("obey"); *none* (transitive)
abound (vb.): in, with [resources]
absolve (vb.): from [guilt]; of [obligation]
abut (vb.): on, against [land]; *none* (transitive)
accompanied (adj.): by (not *with*) [something *or* someone else]
accord (vb.): in *or* with [an opinion]; to [a person]
acquiesce (vb.): in [a decision]; to [pressure]
acquit (vb.): of (not *from*) [a charge]; *none* (transitive)
adept (vb.): at [an activity]; in [an art]
admit (vb.) ("acknowledge"): *none* (not *to*) (transitive)
admit (vb.) ("let in"): to, into
admit (vb.) ("allow"): of
anxious (adj.): about, over (preferably not *to*) [a concern]
badger (vb.): into [doing something]; about [a situation]
ban (vb.): from [a place]
ban (n.): on [a thing; an activity]; from [a place]
based (adj.): on (preferably not *upon*) [a premise]; in [a place; a field of study]; at [a place]
becoming (adj.): on, to [a person]; of [an office or position]
bestow (vb.): on (preferably not *upon*) [an honoree]
binding (adj.): on (preferably not *upon*) [a person]
blasphemy (n.): against [a religious tenet]

center (vb.): on, upon (not *around*) [a primary issue]
chafe (vb.): at [doing something]; under [an irritating authority]
coerce (vb.): into [doing something]
cohesion (n.): between [things; groups]
collude (vb.): with [a person to defraud another]
commiserate (vb.): with [a person]
compare (vb.): with (literal comparison); to (poetic or metaphorical comparison)
comply (vb.): with (not *to*) [a rule; an order]
confide (vb.): to, in [a person]
congruence (n.): with [a standard]
connive (vb.): at [a bad act]; with [another person]
consider (vb.): *none* (transitive); as [one of several possible aspects (*not* as a substitute for "to be")]; for [a position]
consist (vb.): of [components (said of concrete things)]; in [qualities (said of abstract things)]
contemporary (adj.): with [another event]
contemporary (n.): of [another person]
contiguous (adj.): with, to [another place]
contingent (adj.): on (preferably not *upon*)
contrast (vb.): to, with [a person or thing]
conversant (adj.): with, in [a field of study]
convict (vb.): of, for (not *in*)
depend (vb.): on (preferably not *upon*)
differ (vb.): from [a thing or quality]; with [a person]; about, over, on [an issue]
different (adj.): from (but when a dependent clause follows *different*, the conjunction *than* is a defensible substitute for *from what*: "movies today are different than they were in the fifties")
dissent (n. & vb.): from, against (preferably not *to* or *with*)
dissimilar (adj.): to (not *from*)
dissociate (vb.): from
enamored (adj.): of (not *with*)
equivalent (adj.): to, in (preferably not *with*)
excerpt (n.): from (not *of*)
forbid (vb.): to (formal); from (informal)
foreclose (vb.): on [mortgaged property]
hale (vb.): to, into [a place]; before [a magistrate]
hegemony (n.): over [rivals]; in [a region]
identical (adj.): with (preferred by purists), to [something else]
impatience (n.): with [a person]; with, at, about [a situation]
impose (vb.): on (preferably not *upon*) [a person]
inaugurate (vb.): as [an officer]; into [an office]
inculcate (vb.): into, in [a person]
independent (adj.): of (not *from*) [something else]

infringe (vb.): *none* (transitive); on (preferably not *upon*) [a right]
inhere (vb.): in (not *within*) [a person; a thing]
inquire (vb.): into [situations]; of [people]; after [people]
instill (vb.): in, into (not *with*) [a person]
juxtapose (vb.): to (not *with*)
mastery (n.): of [a skill or knowledge]; over [people]
militate (vb.): against [a harsher outcome]
mitigate (vb.): *none* (transitive)
oblivious (adj.): of (preferred), to [a danger; an opportunity]
off (prep. & adv.): *none* (not *of*)
predilection (n.): for [a preferred thing]
predominate (vb.) (not transitive): in, on, over [a field; rivals]
preferable (adj.): to (not *than*); over [an alternative]
pretext (n.): for [a true intention]
reconcile (vb.): with [a person]; to [a situation]
reticent (adj.): about [speaking; a topic]
sanction (n.): for [misbehavior]; of [a sponsoring body]; to [a person; an event]
shiver (vb.): from [cold]; at [something frightening]
stigmatize (vb.): *none* (transitive); as [dishonorable]
subscribe (vb.): to [a periodical or an opinion]; for [stock]
trade (vb.): for ("swap"); in ("sell"); with ("do business with"); at ("patronize"); in [certain goods]; on ("buy and sell at")
trust (n.): in [faith]; for ("beneficial trust")
undaunted (adj.): in [a task]; by [obstacles]
unequal (adj.): to [a challenge]; in [attributes]
used (adj.): to ("accustomed"); for ("applied to")
vexed (adj.): with [someone]; about, at [something]

Conjunctions

5.192 ***Conjunctions defined.*** A conjunction connects sentences, clauses, or words within a clause {My daughter graduated from college in December. And my son will graduate from high school in May.} (*and* connects two sentences); {I said hello, but no one answered} (*but* connects two clauses); {we're making progress slowly but surely} (*but* joins two adverbs within an adverbial clause). Conjunctions connect pronouns in the same case {he and she are colleagues} {the teacher encouraged her and me}.

5.193 ***Simple versus compound conjunctions.*** A conjunction may be simple, a single word such as *and*, *but*, *if*, *or*, or *through*. Most are derived from prepositions. Compound conjunctions are single words formed by combining two or more words. Most are relatively modern formations and include words such as *although, because, nevertheless, notwithstanding,* and *unless*. Phrasal conjunctions are connectives made up of two or more separate words. Examples include *as though, inasmuch as, in case that, provided that, so that,* and *supposing that*.

5.194 ***Coordinating conjunctions.*** The two main classes of conjunctions are *coordinating* and *subordinating*. Coordinating conjunctions join words or groups of words of equal grammatical rank, such as two nouns, two verbs, two phrases, or two clauses {Are you speaking to him or to me?} {the results are disappointing but not discouraging}. Coordinating conjunctions are further broken down into *copulative, adversative, disjunctive,* and *final*. A coordinating conjunction may be either a single word or a correlative conjunction. For subordinating conjunctions, see 5.200, 5.201.

5.195 ***Correlative conjunctions.*** Correlative conjunctions are conjunctions used in pairs, often to join successive clauses that depend on each other to form a complete thought. Some examples of correlative conjunctions are *as–as*; *if–then*; *either–or, neither–nor*; *both–and*; *where–there*; *so–as*; and *not only–but also*. Correlative conjunctions must frame structurally identical or matching sentence parts {an attempt both to win the gold medal and to set a new record}; in other words, each member of the pair should immediately precede the same part of speech {they not only read the book but also saw the movie} {if the first claim is true, then the second claim must be false}.

5.196 ***Copulative conjunctions.*** Copulative or additive coordinating conjunctions denote addition. The second element states an additional fact that is related to the first element. The conjunctions include *and, also, moreover,* and *no less than* {one associate received a raise, and the other was promoted} {the jockeys' postrace party was no less exciting than the race itself}.

5.197 ***Adversative conjunctions.*** Adversative or contrasting coordinating conjunctions denote contrasts or comparisons. The second element usually qualifies the first element in some way. The conjunctions include *but, still, yet,* and *nevertheless* {the message is sad but inspiring} {she's earned her doctorate, yet she's still not satisfied with herself}.

5.198 ***Disjunctive conjunctions.*** Disjunctive or separative coordinating conjunctions denote separation or alternatives. Only one of the statements joined by the conjunction may be true; both may be false. The conjunctions include *either, or, else, but, nor, neither, otherwise,* and *other* {that bird is either a heron or a crane} {you can wear the blue coat or the green one}.

5.199 *Final conjunctions.* Final or illative coordinating conjunctions denote inferences or consequences. The second element gives a reason for the first element's statement, or it shows what has been or ought to be done in view of the first element's content. The conjunctions include *consequently, for, hence, so, thus, therefore, as a consequence, as a result, so that,* and *so then* {he had betrayed the king; therefore he was banished} {it's time to leave, so let's go}.

5.200 *Subordinating conjunctions.* A subordinating conjunction connects clauses of unequal grammatical rank. The conjunction introduces a clause that is dependent on the independent clause {follow this road until you reach the highway} {that squirrel is friendly because people feed it} {Marcus promised that he would help}. A pure subordinating conjunction has no antecedent and is not a pronoun or an adverb {take a message if someone calls}.

5.201 *Special uses of subordinating conjunctions.* Subordinating conjunctions or conjunctive phrases often denote the following relationships: (1) Comparison or degree—for example, *than* (if it follows comparative adverbs or adjectives, or if it follows *else, rather, other,* or *otherwise*), *as, else, otherwise, rather, as much as, as far as,* and *as well as* {Is a raven less clever than a magpie?} {these amateur musicians play as well as professionals} {it's not true as far as I can discover}. (2) Time—for instance, *since, until, as long as, before, after, when, as,* and *while* {while we waited, it began to snow} {the tire went flat as we were turning the corner} {we'll start the game as soon as everyone understands the rules} {the audience returned to the auditorium after the concert's resumption was announced}. (3) Condition or assumption—for example, *if, though, unless, except, without,* and *once* {once we agree on a design, we can begin remodeling the house} {your thesis must be presented next week unless you have a good reason to postpone it} {I'll go on this business trip if I can fly first class}. (4) Reason or concession—for example, *as, inasmuch as, why, because, for, since, though, although,* and *albeit* {since you won't share the information, I can't help you} {Sir John decided to purchase the painting although it was very expensive} {she deserves credit because it was her idea}. (5) Purpose or result—for instance, *that, so that, in order that,* and *such that* {we dug up the yard so that a new water garden could be laid out} {he sang so loudly that he became hoarse}. (6) Place—such as *where* {I found a great restaurant where I didn't expect one to be}. (7) Manner—for example, *as if* and *as though* {he swaggers around the office as if he were an executive}. (8) Appositions—for instance, *and, or, what,* and *that* {the buffalo, or American bison, was once nearly extinct}. (9) Indirect questions—for instance, *whether, why,* and *when* {he could not say whether we were going the right way}.

5.202 ***Adverbs as conjunctions.*** Many adverbs are used as conjunctions to connect a dependent clause to an independent clause {Robin arrived after we had eaten dinner}. Such an adverb may appear to modify the verb in the clause it introduces, but its primary function is to connect the two clauses. Adverbs functioning as conjunctions typically denote time {Jay returned before we could find the vitamin E} or place {I know the river where the largest trout can be caught}.

5.203 ***Relative pronouns as conjunctions.*** In addition to its pronoun function, a relative pronoun serves a conjunctive function. In fact, relative pronouns may be treated as a special class of subordinating conjunctions when they join sentences. A conjunctive relative pronoun is one that has an antecedent in the independent clause {bring me the suitcase that is upstairs} (*that* refers to *suitcase*).

5.204 ***Expletive conjunctions.*** An expletive conjunction is a conjunction that connects two thoughts that are not expressed in the same sentence. The conjunction refers back to a preceding sentence and often, but not always, begins the sentence {but then the professor pointed out the flaws in their reasoning} {survival is thus the most important motivation}.

5.205 ***Disguised conjunctions.*** So-called disguised conjunctions are participles that have long been used as subordinating conjunctions; examples are *barring*, *considering*, *regarding*, *speaking*, *supposing*, and *provided*. Unlike a verb, a disguised conjunction does not have a subject {we traveled swiftly, considering the poor road conditions} (*considering* as a disguised conjunction), {the committee is considering a budget increase} (*considering* as a verb).

5.206 ***Beginning a sentence with a conjunction.*** There is a widespread belief—one with no historical or grammatical foundation—that it is an error to begin a sentence with a conjunction such as *and*, *but*, or *so*. In fact, a substantial percentage (often as many as 10 percent) of the sentences in first-rate writing begin with conjunctions. It has been so for centuries, and even the most conservative grammarians have followed this practice. Charles Allen Lloyd's 1938 words fairly sum up the situation as it stands even today:

> Next to the groundless notion that it is incorrect to end an English sentence with a preposition, perhaps the most wide-spread of the many false beliefs about the use of our language is the equally groundless notion that it is incorrect to begin one with "but" or "and." As in the case of the superstition about the prepositional

ending, no textbook supports it, but apparently about half of our teachers of English go out of their way to handicap their pupils by inculcating it. One cannot help wondering whether those who teach such a monstrous doctrine ever read any English themselves.[7]

Still, *but* as an adversative conjunction can occasionally be unclear at the beginning of a sentence. Evaluate the contrasting force of the *but* in question, and see whether the needed word is really *and*; if *and* can be substituted, then *but* is almost certainly the wrong word. Consider this example: *He went to school this morning. But he left his lunch box on the kitchen table*. Between those sentences is an elliptical idea, since the two actions are in no way contradictory. What is implied is something like this: *He went to school, intending to have lunch there, but he left his lunch behind.* Because *and* would have made sense in the passage as originally stated, *but* is not the right word—the idea for the contrastive *but* should be explicit. To sum up, then, *but* is a perfectly proper word to open a sentence, but only if the idea it introduces truly contrasts with what precedes. For that matter, *but* is often an effective word for introducing a paragraph that develops an idea contrary to the one preceding it.

5.207 *Beginning a sentence with "however." However* has been used as a conjunction since the fourteenth century. Like other conjunctions, it can be used at the beginning of a sentence. But *however* is more ponderous and has less impact than the simple *but*. *However* is more effectively used within a sentence to emphasize the word or phrase that precedes it {The job seemed exciting at first. Soon, however, it turned out to be exceedingly dull.}.

Interjections

5.208 *Interjections defined.* An interjection or exclamation is a word, phrase, or clause that denotes strong feeling {Never again!} {You don't say!}. An interjection has little or no grammatical function in a sentence; it is used absolutely {Really, I can't understand why you put up with the situation.} {Oh no, how am I going to fix the damage?} {Hey, it's my turn next!}. It is frequently allowed to stand as a sentence by itself: {Oh! I've lost my wallet!} {Ouch! I think my ankle is sprained!} {Get out!} {Whoa!}. Introductory words like *well* and *why* may also act as interjections when they are meaningless utterances {Well, I tried my best.} {Why, I would never do that!}. The punctuation offsetting the interjections distinguishes them (see 6.39, 6.37). Compare the different meanings of *Well, I didn't know him* with *I didn't know him well*, and *Why, here you are!* with *I have no idea why you are here* and *Why? I have no idea*.

---

[7] Charles Allen Lloyd, *We Who Speak English: And Our Ignorance of Our Mother Tongue* (New York: Thomas Y. Crowell, 1938), 19.

5.209 ***Interjections as informal and colloquial.*** Interjections are natural in speech {your order should be shipped, oh, in eight to ten days} and frequently used in poetry and dialogue. But an interjection may impede the flow of some types of prose when an informal and colloquial tone is inappropriate {because our business case was, ahem, poorly presented, our budget will not be increased this year}.

5.210 ***Interjections and functional variation.*** Because interjections are usually grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence, most parts of speech may be used as interjections. A word that is classified as some other part of speech but used with the force of an interjection is called an exclamatory noun, exclamatory adjective, and so forth. Some examples are *Good!* (adjective); *Idiot!* (noun); *Help!* (verb); *Indeed!* (adverb); *Dear me!* (pronoun); *If only!* (conjunction); *How wonderful!* (adverb).

5.211 ***Words that are exclusively interjections.*** Some interjections are used only as such. Words like *ouch*, *whew*, *ugh*, *psst*, and *oops* are not used as any other parts of speech.

Parallel Structure

5.212 ***Parallel structure generally.*** Parallel constructions—series of like sentence elements—are common in good writing. Compound structures may link words {win, lose, or draw}, phrases {government of the people, by the people, for the people}, dependent clauses {that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness}, or sentences {I came; I saw; I conquered}. Every element of a parallel series must be a functional match of the others (word, phrase, clause, sentence) and serve the same grammatical function in the sentence (e.g., noun, verb, adjective, adverb). When linked items are not like items, the syntax of the sentence breaks down:

WRONG: She did volunteer work in the community kitchen, the homeless shelter, and taught free ESL classes offered by her church.

RIGHT: She did volunteer work in the community kitchen and the homeless shelter, and taught free ESL classes offered by her church.

WRONG: The candidate is a former county judge, state senator, and served two terms as attorney general.

RIGHT: The candidate is a former county judge, state senator, and two-term attorney general.

The examples illustrate how the syntax breaks down when a series is not parallel. In the second one, for example, the subject, verb, and modifier (*The candidate is a former*) fit with the noun phrases *county judge* and *state senator*, but the third item in the series renders nonsense: "The candidate is a former served two terms as attorney general." The first two elements in the series are nouns, while the third is a separate predicate. The corrected version makes each item in the series a noun phrase.

5.213 ***Prepositions and parallel structure.*** In a parallel series of prepositional phrases, repeat the preposition with every element unless they all use the same preposition. A common error occurs when a writer lets two or more of the phrases share a single preposition but inserts a different one with another element:

WRONG: I looked for my lost keys in the sock drawer, the laundry hamper, the restroom, and under the bed.

RIGHT: I looked for my lost keys in the sock drawer, in the laundry hamper, in the restroom, and under the bed.

If the series had not included *under the bed*, the preposition could have been used once to apply to all the objects:

RIGHT: I looked for my lost keys in the sock drawer, the laundry hamper, and the restroom.

5.214 ***Paired joining terms and parallel structure.*** Correlative conjunctions such as *either–or*, *neither–nor*, *both–and*, and *not only–but also* and some adverb pairs such as *where–there*, *as–so*, and *if–then* must join grammatically parallel sentence elements. It is a common error to put the first correlative term in the wrong position.

WRONG: I'd like to either go into business for myself or else to write freelance travel articles.

RIGHT: I'd like either to go into business for myself or else to write freelance travel articles.

WRONG: Our guests not only ate all the turkey and dressing but both pumpkin pies, too.

RIGHT: Our guests ate not only all the turkey and dressing but both pumpkin pies, too.

The verb *ate*, when placed after the first correlative, grammatically attaches to *all the turkey* but not to *both pies, too*. When moved outside the two phrases containing its direct objects, it attaches to both.

5.215 ***Auxiliary verbs and parallel structure.*** If an auxiliary verb appears before a series of verb phrases, it must apply to all of them. A common error is to include one phrase that takes a different auxiliary verb:

WRONG: The proposed procedure would streamline the application process, speed up admission decisions, and has proved to save money when implemented by other schools.

RIGHT: The proposed procedure would streamline the application process, speed up admission decisions, and save money.

RIGHT: The proposed procedure would streamline the application process and speed up admission decisions. It has proved to save money when implemented by other schools.

The auxiliary verb *would* in that example renders the nonsensical *would has proved* when parsed with the third element of the predicate series. The first solution resolves that grammatical conflict, while the second breaks out the third element into a separate sentence—which also avoids shifting from future tense to past tense in midsentence.

Word Usage

Introduction

5.216 ***Grammar versus usage.*** The great mass of linguistic issues that writers and editors wrestle with don't really concern grammar at all—they concern usage: the collective habits of a language's native speakers. It is an arbitrary fact, but ultimately an important one, that *corollary* means one thing and *correlation* something else. And it seems to be an irresistible law of language that two words so similar in sound will inevitably be confounded by otherwise literate users of language. Some confusions, such as the one just cited, are relatively new. Others, such as *lay* versus *lie* and *infer* versus *imply*, are much older.

5.217 *Standard Written English.* In any age, careful users of language will make distinctions; careless users of language will blur them. The words someone uses and the way they go together tell us something about the education and background of that person. We know whether people speak educated English and write what is commonly referred to as Standard Written English.

5.218 *Dialect.* Of course, some writers and speakers prefer to use dialect, and use it to good effect. Will Rogers is a good example. He had power as a speaker of dialect, as when he said: "Liberty don't work near as good in practice as it does in speeches." And fiction writers often use dialect in dialogue. They may even decide to put the narrator's voice in dialect. Such decisions fall outside the scope of this manual.

5.219 *Focus on tradition.* In the short space of this section, only the basics of Standard Written English can be covered. Because no language stands still—because the standards of good usage change, however slowly—no guide could ever be written to the satisfaction of all professional editors. What is intended here is a guide that steers writers and editors toward the unimpeachable uses of language—hence it takes a fairly traditional view of usage. For the writer or editor of most prose intended for a general audience, the goal is to stay within the mainstream of literate language as it stands today.

Glossary of Problematic Words and Phrases

5.220 *Good usage versus common usage.* Although Chicago recommends *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*, there are several other first-rate American desktop dictionaries on the market. The best dictionary makers are signaled by the imprints Merriam-Webster, Webster's New World, American Heritage, Oxford University Press, and Random House. But one must use care and judgment in consulting *any* dictionary. The mere presence of a word in the dictionary's pages does not mean that the word is in all respects fit for print. The dictionary merely describes how speakers of English use the language; despite occasional usage notes, lexicographers generally disclaim any intent to guide writers and editors on the thorny points of English usage—apart from collecting evidence of what others do. So *infer* is recorded as meaning, in one of its senses, *imply*; *irregardless* may mean *regardless*; *restauranteur* may mean *restaurateur*; and on and on. That is why, in the publishing world, it is generally necessary to consult a style or usage guide in addition to a dictionary. While common usage can excuse many slipshod expressions, the standards of good usage make demands on writers and editors. Even so, good usage should make only *reasonable* demands without setting outlandishly high standards. The purpose of the following glossary is to set out the reasonable demands of good usage as it stands today.

a; an. Use the indefinite article *a* before any word beginning with a consonant sound {a utopian dream}. Use *an* before any word beginning with a vowel sound {an officer} {an honorary degree}. The word *historical* and its variations cause missteps, but since the *h* in these words is pronounced, it takes an *a* {an hour-long talk at a historical society}. Likewise, an initialism (whose letters are sounded out) may be paired with one article while an acronym (which is pronounced as a word) beginning with the same letter is paired with the other {an HTML website for a HUD program}. See 5.72.

ability; capability; capacity. *Ability* refers to a person's physical or mental skill or power to achieve something {the ability to ride a bicycle}. *Capability* refers more generally to power or ability {she has the capability to play soccer professionally} or to the quality of being able to use or be used in a certain way {a jet with long-distance-flight capability}. *Capacity* refers especially to a vessel's ability to hold or contain something {a high-capacity fuel tank}. Used figuratively, *capacity* refers to a person's physical or mental power to learn {an astounding capacity for mathematics}.

abjure; adjure. To *abjure* is to deny or renounce under oath {the defendant abjured the charge of murder} or to declare one's permanent abandonment of a place {abjure the realm}. To *adjure* is to require someone to do something as if under oath {I adjure you to keep this secret} or to urge earnestly {the executive committee adjured all the members to approve the plan}.

about; approximately. When idiomatically possible, use the adverb *about* instead of *approximately*. In the sciences, however, *approximately* is preferred {approximately thirty coding-sequence differences were identified}. Avoid coupling either word with other words of approximation, such as *guess* or *estimate*.

abstruse. See **obtuse**.

access, vb. The use of nouns as verbs has long been one of the most common ways that word-usage changes happen in English. Today, few people quibble with using *contact*, *debut*, and *host*, for example, as verbs. *Access* can be safely used as a verb when referring to computing {access a computer} {access the Internet} {access a database}. Outside the digital world, though, it is still best avoided.

accord; accordance. The first word means "agreement" {we are in accord on the treaty's meaning}; the second word means "conformity" {the book was printed in accordance with modern industry standards}.

accuse; charge. A person is *accused of* or *charged with* a misdeed. *Accused* is less formal than *charged* (which suggests official action). Compare *Jill accused Jack of eating her chocolate bar* with *Maynard was charged with theft*.

actual fact, in. Redundant. Try *actually* instead, or simply omit.

addicted; dependent. One is physically *addicted* to something but psychologically *dependent* on something.

adduce; deduce; induce. To *adduce* is to give as a reason, offer as a proof, or cite as an example {as evidence of reliability, she adduced her four years of steady volunteer work as a nurse's aide}. *Deduce* and *induce* are opposite processes. To *deduce* is to reason from general principles to specific conclusions, or to draw a specific conclusion from general bases {from these clues about who committed the crime, one deduces that the butler did it}. To *induce* is to form a general principle based on specific observations {after years of studying ravens, the researchers induced a few of their social habits}.

adequate; sufficient; enough. *Adequate* refers to the suitability of something in a particular circumstance {an adequate explanation}. *Sufficient* refers to an amount that is enough to meet a need (always with an abstract concept, a mass noun, or a plural) {sufficient water} {sufficient information} {sufficient cause} {sufficient resources}. *Enough*, the best word for everyday purposes, modifies both count nouns {enough people} and mass nouns {enough oil}.

adherence; adhesion. With a few exceptions, the first term is figurative, the second literal. Your *adherence* to the transportation code requires the *adhesion* of an inspection sticker to your windshield.

adjure. See ***abjure***.

administrator. See ***executor***.

admission; admittance. *Admission* is figurative, suggesting particularly the rights and privileges granted upon entry {the student won admission to a first-rate university}. *Admittance* is purely physical {no admittance beyond this point}.

adverse; averse. *Adverse* means either "strongly opposed" or "unfortunate" and typically refers to things, not people {adverse relations between nations} {an adverse wind blew the ship off course}. *Averse* means "feeling negatively about" and refers to people {averse to asking for directions}.

affect; effect. *Affect*, almost always a verb, means "to influence, have an effect on" {the adverse publicity affected the election}. (The noun *affect* has a specialized meaning in psychology: manifestation of emotion or mood. Consult your dictionary.) *Effect*, usually a noun, means "outcome, result" {the candidate's attempted explanations had no effect}. But it may also be a verb meaning "to make happen, produce" {the goal had been to effect a major change in campus politics}.

affirmative, in the; in the negative. These are slightly pompous ways of saying *yes* and *no*. They result in part because people are unsure how to punctuate *yes* and *no*. The ordinary way is this: *he said yes* (without quotation marks around *yes*, and without a capital); *she said no* (ditto).

afflict. See ***inflict***.

affront. See ***effrontery***.

after having [+ past participle]. Though common, this phrasing is redundant. Try instead *after* [+ present participle]: change *after having passed the audition, she*

. . . to *after passing the audition, she* . . . Or this: *having passed the audition, she* . . . See 5.108.

afterward, adv.; afterword, n. The first means "later"; the second means "an epilogue." On *afterward(s)*, see ***toward***.

aged (four) years old. Redundant. Write *aged four years, four years old*, or *four years of age*.

aggravate. Traditionally, *aggravate* means "to intensify (something bad)" {aggravate an injury} {an aggravated crime}. If the sense is "to bother," use *annoy* or *irritate*.

aid; aide. *Aid* can be a verb (= to help) or a noun (= assistance or a means of assistance) {audiovisual aids}. *Aide* is a noun (= helper), as in "teacher's aide," and always denotes a person, not an object.

alibi. Avoid this as a synonym for *excuse*. The traditional sense is "the defense of having been elsewhere when a crime was committed."

all (of). Delete the *of* whenever possible {all the houses} {all my children}. The only common exceptions occur when *all of* precedes a nonpossessive pronoun {all of us} and when it precedes a genitive {all of North Carolina's players}.

alleged. Traditional usage applies this participial adjective to things, especially acts {alleged burglary}, not to the actors accused of doing them {alleged burglar}. That distinction is still observed by some publications, but it has largely been abandoned. Although *allegedly* /e-LEJ-ed-lee/ has four syllables, *alleged* has only two: /e-LEJD/.

all ready. See ***already***.

all right. Two words. Avoid *alright*.

all together. See ***altogether***.

allude; elude; illude. To *allude* is to refer to something indirectly {allude to a problem}. It's often loosely used where *refer* or *quote* would be better—that is, where there is a direct mention or quotation. To *elude* is to avoid capture {elude the hunters}. To *illude* (quite rare) is to deceive {your imagination might illude you}.

allusion; reference. An *allusion* is an indirect or casual mention or suggestion of something {the cockroach in this story is an allusion to Kafka}. A *reference* is a direct or formal mention {the references in this scholarly article have been meticulously documented}.

alongside. This term, meaning "at the side of," should not be followed by *of*.

a lot. Two words, not one.

already; all ready. The first refers to time {the movie has already started}; the second refers to degree of preparation {Are the actors all ready?}.

alright. See ***all right***.

altar, n.; alter, vb. An *altar* is a table or similar object used for sacramental purposes. To *alter* is to change.

alternate, adj. & n.; alternative, adj. & n. *Alternate* implies (1) substitute for another {we took the alternate route} or (2) taking turns with another {her alternate chaired the meeting}. *Alternative* implies a choice between two or more things {I prefer the second alternative}.

altogether; all together. *Altogether* means "wholly" or "entirely" {that story is altogether false}. *All together* refers to a unity of time or place {the family will be all together at Thanksgiving}.

amend; emend. The first is the general term, meaning "to change or add to" {the city amended its charter to abolish at-large council districts}. The second means "to correct [text]" {for the second printing, the author emended several typos}. The noun corresponding to *amend* is *amendment*; the one corresponding to *emend* is *emendation*.

amiable; amicable. Both mean "friendly," but *amiable* refers to people {an amiable waiter} and *amicable* to relationships {an amicable divorce}.

amid. See ***between***.

among. See ***between***.

amount; number. *Amount* is used with mass nouns {a decrease in the amount of pollution}, *number* with count nouns {a growing number of dissidents}.

an. See ***a***.

and. Popular belief to the contrary, this conjunction usefully begins sentences, typically outperforming *moreover*, *additionally*, *in addition*, *further*, and *furthermore*. See 5.206.

and/or. Avoid this Janus-faced term. It can often be replaced by *and* or *or* with no loss in meaning. Where it seems needed {take a sleeping pill and/or a warm drink}, try *or . . . or both* {take a sleeping pill or a warm drink or both}. But think of other possibilities {take a sleeping pill with a warm drink}.[8]

anecdotal. This adjective corresponds to *anecdote*, but in one sense the words have opposite connotations. An anecdote is a story that is thought (but not known) to be true. But *anecdotal evidence* is suspect because it has not been objectively verified.

anticipate. Avoid this word as a loose synonym for *expect*. Strictly, it means "to foresee, take care of in advance, or forestall."

anxious. Avoid it as a synonym for *eager*. The standard sense is "worried, distressed."

anyone; any one. The one-word *anyone* is a singular indefinite pronoun {anyone would know that}. The two-word phrase *any one* is a more emphatic form of *any*, referring to a single person or thing in a group {Do you recognize any one of those boys?} {I don't know any one of those stories}.

anyplace. See ***anywhere***.

anywhere; any place. The first is preferred for an indefinite location {my keys could be anywhere}. But *any place* (two words) is narrower when you mean "any location" {they couldn't find any place to sit down and rest}. Avoid the one-word *anyplace*.

appertain. See ***pertain***.

---

[8] See Bryan A. Garner, *Legal Writing in Plain English* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2001), 112–13.

appraise; apprise. To *appraise* is to put a value on something {the jeweler appraised the necklace}. To *apprise* is to inform or notify someone {keep me apprised of any developments}.

appreciate. Three senses: (1) to understand fully; (2) to increase in value; (3) to be grateful for (something). Sense 3 often results in verbose constructions; instead of *I would appreciate it if you would let me know*, use *I would appreciate your letting me know* or, more simply, *please let me know*.

apprise. See **appraise**.

approve; endorse. *Approve* implies positive thought or a positive attitude rather than action apart from consent. *Endorse* implies both a positive attitude and active support.

approve (of). *Approve* alone connotes official sanction {the finance committee approved the proposed budget}. *Approve of* suggests favor {she approved of her sister's new hairstyle}.

approximately. See **about**.

apt; likely. Both mean "fit, suitable," but *apt* is used for general tendencies or habits {the quarterback is apt to drop the football}. *Likely* expresses probability {because he didn't study, it's likely that he'll do poorly on the exam}. Although *likely* is traditional as a synonym of *probable*, many writers and editors object to its use as a synonym of *probably*.

area. Often a nearly meaningless filler word, as in *the area of partnering skills*. Try deleting *the area of*. In the sciences, however, its more literal meaning is often important and should be retained.

as far as. Avoid the nonstandard substitution of *as far as* for *as for*—that is, avoid using *as far as* without the completing verb *is concerned* or *goes*. Even with the verb, though, this is usually a wordy construction. Compare *as far as change is concerned, it's welcome* with *as for change, it's welcome*.

as is. In reference to an acquisition, *as is* is framed in quotation marks and refers to the acceptance of something without guarantees or representations of quality {purchased "as is"}. The phrase *on an "as is" basis* is verbose.

as of yet. See **as yet**.

as per. This phrase, though common in the commercial world, has long been considered nonstandard. Instead of *as per your request*, write *as you requested* or (less good) *per your request*.

assault; battery. These are popularly given the same meaning. But in law *assault* refers to a threat that causes someone to reasonably fear physical violence, and *battery* refers to a violent or repugnant intentional physical contact with another person. An assault doesn't involve touching; a battery does.

assemblage; assembly. An *assemblage* is an informal collection of people or things. An *assembly* is a group of people organized for a purpose.

assent; consent. The meanings are similar, but *assent* connotes enthusiasm, while *consent* connotes mere allowance.

as such. This pronominal phrase is now often loosely used as a synonym for *therefore*, but in well-honed writing the *such* always requires an antecedent {diamond-studded water bottles are a luxury and, as such, have a limited market}.

assumption; presumption. An *assumption* is not drawn from evidence; typically, it is a hypothesis {your assumption can be tested by looking at the public records}. A *presumption* implies a basis in evidence; if uncontradicted, a *presumption* may support a decision {the legal presumption of innocence}.

assure. See ***ensure***.

as to. This two-word preposition is best used only to begin a sentence that could begin with *on the question of* or *with regard to* {as to those checks, she didn't know where they came from}. Otherwise, use *about* or some other preposition.

as yet; as of yet. Stilted and redundant. Use *yet*, *still*, *so far*, or some other equivalent.

attain; obtain. To *attain* something is to accomplish it through effort (e.g., a goal) or endurance (e.g., an age); to *obtain* something is to gain possession of it. So in best usage you *attain* a degree and *obtain* a diploma. It can be a fine distinction, and in common usage the words are often treated as synonyms.

at the present time; at this time; at present. These are turgid substitutes for *now*, *today*, *currently*, or even *nowadays* (a word of perfectly good literary standing). Of the phrasal versions, *at present* is least suggestive of bureaucratese.

at the time that; at the time when. Use the plain and simple *when* instead.

auger; augur. The spellings of these words can be tricky because they are pronounced the same (/AW-ger/). The tool for boring is an *auger*. *Augur* means "a seer" (noun) or "to foretell" (verb).

avenge, vb.; revenge, vb. & n. *Avenge* connotes an exaction for a wrong {historically, family grudges were privately avenged}. The corresponding noun is *vengeance*. *Revenge* connotes the infliction of harm on another out of anger or resentment {the team is determined to revenge its humiliating loss in last year's championship game}. *Revenge* is much more commonly a noun {they didn't want justice—they wanted revenge}.

averse. See ***adverse***.

avocation; vocation. An *avocation* is a hobby {stamp collecting is my weekend avocation}. A *vocation* is one's profession or, especially in a religious sense, one's calling {she had a true vocation and became a nun}.

awhile; a while. The one-word version is adverbial {let's stop here awhile}. The two-word version is a noun phrase that follows the preposition *for* or *in* {she worked for a while before beginning graduate studies}.

backward(s). See ***toward***.

bale; bail. *Bale*, a noun or verb, means "a bundle" or "to form into a bundle," as of hay or cotton. *Bail* is most often a verb (= to drain by scooping, as in getting water out of a boat using a pail); it is also a noun or verb meaning "security" or "to post security" (to get out of jail pending further proceedings). *Bail* is used informally as well to mean "to leave quickly" or "to escape" {the couple bailed from the party}.

based on. This phrase has two legitimate and two illegitimate uses. It may unimpeachably have verbal force (*base* being a transitive verb, as in *they based their position on military precedent*) or, in a passive sense, adjectival force (*based* being read as a past-participial adjective, as in *a sophisticated thriller based on a John le Carré novel*). Two uses, however, are traditionally considered slipshod. *Based on* should not have adverbial force {rates are adjusted annually, based on the 91-day Treasury bill} or prepositional force (as a dangling participle) {based on this information, we decided to stay}. Try other constructions {rates are adjusted annually on the basis of the 91-day Treasury bill} {with this information, we decided to stay}.

basis. Much overworked, this word most properly means "foundation." It often appears in the phrase *on a . . . basis* or some similar construction. When possible, substitute adverbs (*personally*, not *on a personal basis*) or simply state the time (*daily*, not *on a daily basis*). The plural is *bases* {the legislative bases are complicated}.

battery. See ***assault***.

begging the question. This phrase denotes a logical fallacy of assuming as true what has yet to be proved—or adducing as proof for some proposition something that's every bit as much in need of proof as the first proposition. For example, someone might try to "prove" the validity of a certain religion by quoting from that religion's holy text. But the phrase gets misused in many ways—as (erroneously) meaning "raising a question," "inviting an obvious question," "evading a question," and "ignoring a question."

behalf. *In behalf of* means "in the interest or for the benefit of" {the decision is in behalf of the patient}. *On behalf of* means "acting as agent or representative of" {on behalf of Mr. Scott, I would like to express heartfelt thanks}.

bemused. This word means "bewildered" or "distracted." It is not a synonym of "amused."

beneficence; benevolence. *Beneficence* is the attribute of being disposed to do or capable of doing good {the priest's beneficence was plainly evident}. It applies most often to people. *Benevolence* is the act of performing a good deed {the villagers thanked him for his benevolence}. The first term denotes a quality, the second conduct.

between; among; amid. *Between* indicates one-to-one relationships {between you and me}. *Among* indicates undefined or collective relationships {honor among thieves}. *Between* has long been recognized as being perfectly appropriate for more than two objects if multiple one-to-one relationships are understood from the context {trade between members of the European Union}. *Amid* is used with mass nouns {amid talk of war}, *among* with plurals of count nouns {among the children}. Avoid *amidst* and *amongst*.

bi-; semi-. Generally, *bi-* means "two" (*biweekly* means "every two weeks"), while *semi-* means "half" (*semiweekly* means "twice a week"). Because these prefixes are often confounded, writers should be explicit about the meaning.

biannual; semiannual; biennial. *Biannual* and *semiannual* both mean "twice a year" {these roses bloom biannually}. But *biennial* means "once every two years" or "every other year" {the state legislature meets biennially}. To avoid confusion, write *semiannual* instead of *biannual*, and consider writing *once every two years* instead of *biennial*.

billion; trillion. The meanings vary in different countries. In the United States, a *billion* is 1,000,000,000 (a thousand millions). A *trillion* is a thousand times that (a million millions). In French-speaking Canada, Germany, and many other non-English-speaking regions—according to a system that was also until recently preferred by Great Britain—a *billion* is a million millions; by extension, a *trillion* is a million million millions. Writers encountering these terms need to be aware of the historical and geographic distinctions. See also 9.8.

blatant; flagrant. An act that is *blatant* is plain for all to see {a blatant error}. One that is *flagrant* is done brazenly as well as openly {a flagrant insult}.

bombastic. A *bombastic* person is pompous in speech or writing. The word has nothing to do with temper.

born; borne. *Born* is used only as an adjective {a born ruler} or in the fixed passive-voice verb *to be born* {the child was born into poverty}. *Borne* is the past participle of *bear* {this donkey has borne many heavy loads} {she has borne three children}. It is also used to form compound terms in the sciences {foodborne} {vector-borne}.

breach, n. & vb.; breech, n. A *breach* is a gap in or violation of something {a breach of contract}. To *breach* is to break, break open, or break through {breach the castle walls}. *Breech* refers to the lower or back part of something, especially the buttocks {a breech birth} or a firearm {the rifle's breech}.

bring; take. The distinction may seem obvious, but the error is common. The simple question is, where is the action directed? If it's toward you, use *bring* {bring home the bacon}. If it's away from you, use *take* {take out the trash}. You *take* (not *bring*) your car to the mechanic.

but. Popular belief to the contrary, this conjunction usefully begins contrasting sentences, typically better than *however*. See 5.206.

by means of. Often verbose. Use *by* or *with* if either one suffices.

by reason of. Use *because* or *because of* unless *by reason of* is part of an established phrase {by reason of insanity}.

can; could. *Can* means "to be able to" and expresses certainty {I can be there in five minutes}. *Could* is better for a sense of uncertainty or a conditional statement {Could you stop at the cleaners today?} {if you send a deposit, we could hold your reservation}. See 5.143.

can; may. *Can* most traditionally applies to physical or mental ability {she can do calculations in her head} {the dog can leap over a six-foot fence}. In colloquial English, *can* also expresses a request for permission {Can I go to the movies?}, but this usage is not recommended in formal writing. *May* suggests possibility {the class may have a pop quiz tomorrow} or permission {you may borrow my car}. A denial of permission is properly phrased formally with *may not* {you may not borrow my credit card} or with *cannot* or *can't* {you can't use the computer tonight}. See 5.143, 5.146.

capability. See ***ability***.

capacity. See ***ability***.

capital; capitol. A *capital* is a seat of government (usually a city) {Austin is the capital of Texas}. A *capitol* is a building in which a legislature meets {the legislature opened its new session in the capitol today}.

carat; karat; caret. *Carat* measures the weight of a gemstone; *karat* measures the purity of gold. To remember the difference, think of "24K." *Caret* is a mark on a manuscript indicating where matter is to be inserted.

career; careen. The word *career*'s career as a verb meaning "to go full speed" may be about over. Its duties have been assumed by *careen* ("to tip to one side while moving"), even though nothing in that verb's definition denotes high speed. Still, careful writers recognize the distinction.

caret. See ***carat***.

case. In its abstract sense, this word is often a sign of verbal inflation. For example, *in case* means *if*; *in most cases* means *usually*; *in every case* means *always*. The word is justifiably used in law (in which a *case* is a lawsuit or judicial opinion) and in medicine (in which the word refers to an instance of a disease or disorder).

cause célèbre. This word most strictly denotes a legal case, especially a prosecution, that draws great public interest. By extension it refers to a notorious person or event. It does not properly denote a person's pet cause.

censer; censor, n.; sensor. The correct spellings can be elusive. A *censer* is either a person who carries a container of burning incense or the container itself. A *censor* is a person who suppresses objectionable subject matter. A *sensor* is a mechanical or electronic detector.

censor, vb.; censure, vb. To *censor* is to review and cut out objectionable material—that is, to suppress {soldiers' letters are often censored in wartime}. To *censure* is to criticize strongly or disapprove, or to officially reprimand {the House of Representatives censured the president for the invasion} {In some countries the government *censors* the press. In the United States the press often *censures* the government.}.

center around. Although this illogical phrasing does have apologists, careful writers tend to use either *center on* or *revolve around*.

certainty; certitude. If you are absolutely sure about something, you display both *certainty* (firm conviction) and *certitude* (assurance of being certain). That fact you are sure about, however, is a *certainty* but not a *certitude*—the latter is a trait applied to people only.

chair; chairman; chairwoman; chairperson. *Chair* is widely regarded as the best gender-neutral choice. Since the mid-seventeenth century, *chair* has referred to an office of authority. See 5.221–30.

charge. See ***accuse***.

childish; childlike. *Childlike* is used positively to connote innocence, mildness, and freshness {a childlike smile}. *Childish* is pejorative; it connotes immaturity and unreasonableness {childish ranting}.

circumstances. Both *in the circumstances* and *under the circumstances* are acceptable, but *under* is now much more common.

cite, n.; site. As a noun, *cite* is colloquial for *citation*, which refers to a source of information {a cite to *Encyclopaedia Britannica*}. A *site* is a place or location {building site} {grave site} {website}. Cf. ***sight; site***.

citizen; subject. In a governmental sense, these are near-synonyms that should be distinguished. A *citizen* owes allegiance to a nation whose sovereignty is a collective function of the people {a citizen of Germany}. A *subject* owes allegiance to an individual sovereign {a subject of the queen}.

class. This word denotes a category or group of things {the class of woodwind instruments}, never one type {an oboe is a type of woodwind} or one kind of thing {a snare drum is one kind of percussion instrument}.

classic; classical. *Classic* means "important, authoritative" {*The Naked Night* is one of Bergman's classic films}. *Classical* applies to the traditional "classics" of literature, music, and such (and sometimes to specific periods and movements) {classical Greek} {a classical composer} or to the definitive or earliest-characterized form {classical EEC syndrome}.

clean; cleanse. Although various cleaning agents are called *cleansers*, *clean* displaced *cleanse* long ago in most of the word's literal senses. *Cleanse* retains the Old English root meaning "purify": its use today usually refers to spiritual purification.

cleave. This verb was originally two different words, and that difference is reflected in the opposite meanings that *cleave* has: (1) to cut apart {to cleave meat} and (2) to cling together {standing in the rain, his clothes cleaving to his body}. The conjugations are (1) *cleave*, *cleft* (or *clove*), *cloven*, and (2) *cleave*, *cleaved*, *cleaved*.

clench; clinch. *Clench* connotes a physical action {he clenched his hand into a fist}. *Clinch* generally has figurative uses {she clinched the victory with her final putt}.

climactic; climatic. *Climactic* is the adjective corresponding to *climax* {during the movie's climactic scene, the projector broke}. *Climatic* corresponds to *climate* {the climatic conditions of northern New Mexico}.

clinch. See ***clench***.

close proximity, in. Redundant. Write either *close* or *in proximity*.

cohabit; cohabitate. *Cohabit* is the traditional verb. *Cohabitate*, a back-formation from *cohabitation*, is best avoided.

collaborate; corroborate. To *collaborate* means to cooperate on some undertaking; the participants are *collaborators*. To *corroborate* something means to back up its reliability with proof or evidence.

collegial; collegiate. *Collegial* answers to *colleague*; *collegiate* answers to *college*.

commendable; commendatory. What is done for a worthy cause is *commendable* {commendable dedication to helping the poor}. What expresses praise is *commendatory* {commendatory plaque}.

common; mutual. What is *common* is shared by two or more people {borne by different mothers but having a common father}. What is *mutual* is reciprocal or directly exchanged by and toward each other {mutual obligations}. Strictly, *friend in common* is better than *mutual friend* in reference to a third person who is a friend of two others.

commonweal; commonwealth. The *commonweal* is the public welfare. Traditionally, a commonwealth was a state established by public compact or by the consent of the people to promote the general good ("commonweal"), and where the people reserved supreme authority. In the United States, the word is synonymous with *state*, four of which are still called commonwealths: Kentucky, Massachusetts, Pennsylvania, and Virginia.

compare. To *compare with* is to discern both similarities and differences between things. To *compare to* is to note primarily similarities between things.

compelled; impelled. If you are *compelled* to do something, you have no choice in the matter {Nixon was compelled by the unanimous Supreme Court decision to turn over the tapes}. If you are *impelled* to do something, you may not like it, but you are convinced that it must be done {the voter disliked some candidates but was impelled by the income-tax issue to vote a straight party ticket}.

compendious; voluminous. These are not synonyms, as many apparently believe. *Compendious* means "concise, abridged." *Voluminous*, literally "occupying many volumes," most commonly means "vast" or "extremely lengthy."

complacent; complaisant; compliant. To be *complacent* is to be content with oneself and one's life—with the suggestion that one may be smug and unprepared for future trouble. To be *complaisant* is to be easygoing and eager to please. To be *compliant* is to be amenable to orders or to a regimen.

compliment; complement. A *compliment* is a flattering or praising remark {a compliment on your skill}. A *complement* is something that completes or brings to perfection {the lace tablecloth was a complement to the antique silver}. The words are also verbs: to *compliment* is to praise, while to *complement* is to supplement adequately or to complete.

comprise; compose. Use these with care. To *comprise* is "to be made up of, to include" {the whole comprises the parts}. To *compose* is "to make up, to form the substance of something" {the parts compose the whole}. The phrase *comprised of*, though increasingly common, is poor usage. Instead, use *composed of*, *consisting of*, or *made up of*.

concept; conception. Both words may refer to an abstract thought, but *conception* also means "the act of forming an abstract thought." Avoid using either word as a high-sounding equivalent of *idea*, *design*, *thought*, or *program*.

condole, vb.; console, vb. These are closely related but not identical. To *condole with* is to express sympathy to {community leaders condoled with the victims' families}. The corresponding noun is *condolence* {they expressed their condolences at the funeral}. To *console* is to comfort {the players consoled their humiliated coach}. The corresponding noun is *consolation* {their kind words were little consolation}.

confidant; confidante; confident. A *confidant* is a close companion, someone (male or female) you confide in. *Confidante* is a fading alternative spelling of *confidant* (used only in reference to a female confidant). *Confident* is the adjective meaning "having faith, being certain."

congruous; congruent. Both terms mean "in harmony, in agreement." The first is seen most often in its negative form, *incongruous*. The second is used in math to describe triangles that are identical in their angles as well as in the length of their sides; in psychology it refers to the consistency and appropriateness of a person's words and behavior.

connote; denote. To *connote* (in reference to language) is to convey an additional meaning, especially an emotive nuance {the new gerund *parenting* and all that it connotes}. To *denote* (again in reference to language) is to specify the literal meaning of something {the phrase "freezing point" denotes 32 degrees Fahrenheit or 0 degrees Celsius}. Both words have figurative uses {all the joy that parenthood connotes} {a smile may not denote happiness}.

consent. See ***assent***.

consequent; subsequent. The first denotes causation; the second does not. A *consequent* event always happens after the event that caused it, as does a *subsequent* event. But a *subsequent* event is not necessarily a consequence of the first event.

consider. Add *as* only when you mean "to examine or discuss for [a particular purpose]" {handshaking considered as a means of spreading disease}. Otherwise, omit *as* {we consider him qualified}.

consist. There are two distinct phrases: *consist of* and *consist in*. The first applies to the physical components that make up a tangible thing {the computer-system package consists of software, the CPU, the monitor, and a printer}. The second refers to the essence of a thing, especially in abstract terms {moral government consists in rewarding the righteous and punishing the wicked}.

console. See ***condole***.

contact, vb. If you mean *write* or *call* or *e-mail*, say so. But *contact* is undeniably a brief way of referring to communication without specifying the means.

contagious; infectious. A *contagious* disease spreads by direct contact with an infected person or animal {rabies is a contagious disease}. An *infectious* disease is spread by germs on a contaminated object or element, such as earth or water {tetanus is infectious but not contagious}. In nonliteral usage the terms are synonymous {his pessimism is contagious} {her smile is infectious}.

contemporary; contemporaneous. Both express coinciding time, but *contemporary* usually applies to people, and *contemporaneous* applies to things or actions. Because *contemporary* has the additional sense "modern," it is unsuitable for contexts involving multiple times. That is, a reference to *Roman, Byzantine, and contemporary belief systems* is ambiguous; change *contemporary* to *modern*.

contemptuous; contemptible. If you are *contemptuous* you are feeling contempt for someone or something. If you are *contemptible*, others will have that attitude toward you.

content; contents. *Content* applies to the information or ideas contained in a written or oral presentation {the lecture's content was offensive to some who were present}. *Contents* usually denotes physical ingredients {the package's contents were difficult to discern by x-ray}. If the usage suggests many items, material or nonmaterial, *contents* is correct {table of contents} {the investigative report's contents}.

continual; continuous. What is *continual* is intermittent or frequently repeated. What is *continuous* never stops—it remains constant or uninterrupted.

contravene; controvert. To *contravene* is to conflict with or violate {the higher speed limit contravenes our policy of encouraging fuel conservation}. To *controvert* is to challenge or contradict {the testimony controverts the witness's prior statement}.

convince. See ***persuade***.

copyright, vb. The verb is conjugated *copyright–copyrighted–copyrighted*. Note the spelling, which has nothing to do with *write*. (*Copywriting* is a term used in marketing.)

corollary; correlation. A *corollary* is either (1) a subsidiary proposition that follows from a proven mathematical proposition, often without requiring additional evidence to support it, or (2) a natural or incidental result of some action or occurrence. A *correlation* is a positive connection between things or phenomena. If used in the context of physics or statistics, it denotes the degree to which the observed interactions and variances are not attributable to chance alone.

corporal; corporeal. What is *corporal* relates in some way to the body {corporal punishment}; what is *corporeal* has a body {not our spiritual but our corporeal existence}.

corps; core. A *corps* is a body of like workers {Marine Corps} {press corps} but is often misspelled like its homonym, *core*.

correlation. See ***corollary***.

could. See ***can***.

couldn't care less. This is the standard phrasing. Avoid the illogical form *could care less*.

councillor; counselor. A *councillor* is one who sits on a council {city councillor}. A *counselor* is a person who gives advice {personal counselor}.

couple of. Using *couple* as an adjective is poor phrasing. Add *of* {we watched a couple of movies}.

court-martial. This is two words joined by a hyphen, whether the phrase functions as a noun or as a verb. Because *martial* acts as an adjective meaning "military," the plural of the noun is *courts-martial*.

credible; credulous. *Credible* means "believable"; *credulous* means "gullible." The most common error involving cognate forms of these words is in the malapropism "strains credulity." If that cliché must be used, it should read "strains credibility."

crevice; crevasse. Size matters. A crack in the sidewalk is a *crevice* (accent on the first syllable); a fissure in a glacier or a dam is a *crevasse* (accent on the second syllable).

criminal. See ***unlawful***.

criteria. This is the plural form of *criterion* ("a standard for judging"): one *criterion*, two *criteria*.

damp, vb.; dampen. Both words convey the sense "to moisten." *Damp* also means "to reduce with moisture" {damp the fire} or "to diminish vibration or oscillation of [a wire or voltage]" {damp the voltage}. In a figurative sense, *dampen* means "to depress, curtail" {dampen one's hopes}.

data. Though originally this word was a plural of *datum*, it is now commonly treated as a mass noun and coupled with a singular verb. In formal writing (and always in the sciences), use *data* as a plural.

deadly; deathly. *Deadly* means "capable of causing death" {deadly snake venom}. *Deathly* means "deathlike" {deathly silence}.

decide whether; decide if. See ***determine whether***.

decimate. This word literally means "to kill every tenth person," a means of repression that goes back to Roman times. But the word has come to mean "to inflict heavy damage," and that use is accepted. Avoid *decimate* when (1) you are referring to complete destruction or (2) a percentage other than 10 percent is specified. That is, don't say that a city was "completely decimated," and don't say that some natural disaster "decimated 23 percent of the city's population."

deduce. See ***adduce***.

defamation; libel; slander. *Defamation* is the communication of a falsehood that damages someone's reputation. If it is recorded, especially in writing, it is *libel*; otherwise it is *slander*.

definite; definitive. *Definite* means "clear, exact" {a definite yes}. *Definitive* means "conclusive, final, most authoritative" {a definitive treatise}.

delegate. See ***relegate***.

deliberate; deliberative. As an adjective, *deliberate* means either "carefully thought out" {a deliberate response} or "slow and steady" {deliberate progress}. *Deliberative* means "of or characterized by debate"; the word most often applies to an assembly {deliberative body} or a process.

denote. See ***connote***.

denounce; renounce. To *denounce* is either to criticize harshly or to accuse. To *renounce* is either to relinquish or to reject.

dependent. See ***addicted***.

deprecate. In general, to *deprecate* is to disapprove. But in the phrase *self-deprecating*—which began as a mistaken form of *self-depreciating* but is now standard—the sense of *deprecate* is "to belittle." In the computer-software world, *deprecate* serves as a warning: a *deprecated* feature or function is one that will be phased out of future release of software, so users should quickly begin looking for alternatives.

derisive; derisory. What is *derisive* ridicules {derisive laughter}. What is *derisory* invites or deserves ridicule {that derisory "banana" hat}.

deserts; desserts. The first are deserved {your just deserts}, the second eaten {the many desserts on the menu}.

despite; in spite of. For brevity, prefer *despite*.

determine whether; determine if. The first phrasing is irreproachable style; the second is acceptable as a colloquialism. The same is true of *decide whether* versus *decide if*. See also ***if; whether***.

different. The phrasing *different from* is generally preferable to *different than* {this company is different from that one}, but sometimes the adverbial phrase *differently than* is all but required {she described the scene differently than he did}.

differ from; differ with. *Differ from* is the usual construction denoting a contrast {the two species differ from each other in subtle ways}. *Differ with* regards differences of opinion {the state's senators differ with each other on many issues}.

disburse; disperse. To *disburse* is to distribute money. To *disperse* can be (1) to distribute other things or (2) to break up, as an unruly crowd.

disc. See ***disk***.

discomfort; discomfit. *Discomfort* is a noun meaning "ill at ease." It can also be used as a verb meaning "to put ill at ease." But doing so often invites confusion with *discomfit*, which originally meant "to defeat utterly." Today it means "to thwart or confuse" {the ploy discomfited the opponent}. The distinction has become a fine one, since a *discomfited* person is also uncomfortable. *Discomfiture* is the corresponding noun.

discreet; discrete. *Discreet* means "circumspect, judicious" {a discreet silence}. *Discrete* means "separate, distinct, unconnected" {six discrete parts}.

discriminating, adj.; discriminatory. The word *discrimination* can be used in either a negative or a positive sense, and these adjectives reflect that ambivalence. *Discriminatory* means "reflecting a biased treatment" {discriminatory employment policy}. *Discriminating* means "analytical, discerning, tasteful" {a discriminating palate}.

disinterested. This word should be reserved for the sense "not having a financial personal interest at stake, impartial." Avoid it as a replacement for *uninterested* (which means "unconcerned, bored").

disk; disc. *Disk* is the usual spelling {floppy disk}. But *disc* is preferred in a few specialized applications {compact disc} {disc brakes} {disc harrow}.

disorganized; unorganized. Both mean "not organized," but *disorganized* suggests a group in disarray, either thrown into confusion or inherently unable to work together {the disorganized 1968 Democratic National Convention in Chicago}.

disperse. See ***disburse***.

distinctive; distinguished; distinguishable. A *distinctive* feature is something that makes a person (or place or thing) easy to distinguish (pick out) from others. But it does not necessarily make that person *distinguished* (exalted) {the distinguished professor wears a distinctive red bow tie}. It does, however, make the person *distinguishable*, a term that does not carry the positive connotation of *distinguished*.

dive, vb. The preferred conjugation is *dive–dived–dived*. The form *dove*, though common in certain regions and possibly on the rise, has not traditionally been considered good form.

doctrinal; doctrinaire. *Doctrinal* means "of, relating to, or constituting a doctrine"; it is neutral in connotation {doctrinal differences}. *Doctrinaire* shares the pejorative sense of *dogmatic*, suggesting that the person described is stubborn and narrow-minded {a doctrinaire ideologue}.

doubtless, adv. Use this form—not *doubtlessly*.

doubt that; doubt whether; doubt if. *Doubt that* conveys a negative sense of skepticism or questioning {I doubt that you'll ever get your money back}. *Doubt whether* also conveys a sense of skepticism {the official says that he doubts whether the company could survive}. *Doubt if* is a casual phrasing for *doubt that*.

drag. Conjugated *drag–dragged–dragged*. The past form *drug* is dialectal.

dream. Either *dreamed* (more typical in American English) or *dreamt* (more typical in British English) is acceptable for the past-tense and past-participial forms.

drink, vb. Correctly conjugated *drink–drank–drunk* {they had not drunk any fruit juice that day}.

drown, vb. Conjugated *drown–drowned–drowned*.

drunk, adj.; drunken. *Drunk* describes a current state of intoxication {drunk driver}. (By contrast, a *drunk*—like a *drunkard*—is someone who is habitually intoxicated.) *Drunken* describes either a trait of habitual intoxication {drunken sot} or intoxicated people's behavior {a drunken brawl}.

due to. In strict traditional usage, *due to* should be interchangeable with *attributable to* {the erratic driving was due to some prescription drugs that the driver had taken}. When used adverbially, *due to* is often considered inferior to *because of* or *owing to*. So in the sentence *due to the parents' negligence, the entire family suffered*, the better phrasing would be *because of* [or *owing to*] *the parents' negligence, the entire family suffered*.

due to the fact that. Use *because* instead.

dumb. This word means either "stupid" or "unable to speak." In the second sense, *mute* is clearer for most modern readers.

dying; dyeing. *Dying* is the present participle of *die* ("to cease living"); *dyeing* is the present participle of *dye* ("to color with a liquid").

each other; one another. Traditionalists use *each other* when two things or people are involved, *one another* when more than two are involved.

eatable. See ***edible***.

economic; economical. *Economic* means "of or relating to large-scale finances" {federal economic policy}. *Economical* means "thrifty; financially efficient" {an economical purchase}.

edible; eatable. What is *edible* is fit for human consumption {edible flowers}. What is *eatable* is at least minimally palatable {the cake is slightly burned but still eatable}.

effect. See ***affect***.

effete. Traditionally, it has meant "decadent, worn out, sterile." Today it is often used to mean either "snobbish" or "effeminate." Because of its ambiguity, the word is best avoided altogether.

effrontery; affront. *Effrontery* is an act of shameless impudence or audacity. An *affront* is a deliberate insult.

e.g. See ***i.e.***

elemental; elementary. Something that is *elemental* is an essential constituent {elemental ingredients} or a power of nature {elemental force}. Something that is *elementary* is basic, introductory, or easy {an elementary math problem}.

elicit; illicit. *Elicit* ("to draw out [an answer, information, etc.]") is a verb {to elicit responses}; *illicit* ("illegal") is an adjective {an illicit scheme}. Writers often mistakenly use *illicit* when they mean *elicit*.

elude. See ***allude***.

emend. See ***amend***.

emigrate. See ***immigrate***.

empathy; sympathy. *Empathy* is putting oneself in someone else's shoes to understand that person's situation. *Sympathy* is compassion and sorrow one feels for another.

endemic. See ***epidemic***.

endorse. See ***approve***.

enervate; innervate. These words are antonyms. To *enervate* is to weaken or drain of energy. To *innervate* is to stimulate or provide with energy.

enormity; enormousness. *Enormity* means "monstrousness, moral outrageousness, atrociousness" {the enormity of the Khmer Rouge's killings}. *Enormousness* means "abnormally great size" {the enormousness of Alaska}.

enough. See ***adequate***.

ensure; insure; assure. *Ensure* is the general term meaning to make sure something will (or won't) happen. In best usage, *insure* is reserved for underwriting financial risk. So we *ensure* that we can get time off for a vacation and *insure* our car against an accident on the trip. We *ensure* events and *insure* things. But we *assure* people that their concerns are being addressed.

enthused, adj. Use *enthusiastic* instead.

enumerable; innumerable. What's *enumerable* is countable. What's *innumerable* can't be counted, at least not practically {innumerable stars in the sky}.

envy. See ***jealousy***.

epidemic; endemic; pandemic. An *epidemic* disease breaks out, spreads through a limited area (such as a state), and then subsides {an epidemic outbreak of measles}. (The word is frequently used as a noun {a measles epidemic}.) An *endemic* disease is perennially present within a region or population {malaria is endemic in parts of Africa}. (Note that *endemic* describes a disease and not a region: it is incorrect to say *this region is endemic for* [a disease].) A *pandemic* disease is prevalent over a large area, such as a nation or continent, or the entire world {the 1918–19 flu pandemic}.

equally as. This is typically faulty phrasing. Delete *as*.

et al. This is the abbreviated form of *et alii* ("and others")—the *others* being people, not things. Since *al.* is an abbreviation, the period is required. Cf. ***etc.***

etc. This is the abbreviated form of *et cetera* ("and other things"); it should never be used in reference to people. *Etc.* implies that a list of things is too extensive to recite (and indeed it should be used only after at least two items, never just one). But often writers seem to run out of thoughts and tack on *etc.* for no real purpose. Also, two redundancies often appear with this abbreviation: (1) *and etc.*, which is poor style because *et* means "and," and (2) *etc.* at the end of a list that begins with *e.g.*, which properly introduces a short list of examples. Cf. ***et al.***; see also 6.20.

event. The phrase *in the event that* is a long and formal way of saying *if*.

eventuality. This term often needlessly displaces more specific everyday words such as *event*, *result*, and *possibility*.

every day, adv.; everyday, adj. The first is adverbial, the second adjectival. One may wear one's *everyday* clothes *every day*.

every one; everyone. The two-word version is an emphatic way of saying "each" {every one of them was there}; the second is a pronoun equivalent to *everybody* {everyone was there}.

evoke; invoke. To *evoke* something is to bring it out {evoke laughter} or bring to mind {evoke childhood memories}. *Invoke* has a number of senses, including to assert (something) as authority {invoke martial law}, to appeal (to someone or a higher power) for help {invoke an ally to intervene}, or to conjure up {invoke spirits of the past}.

exceptional; exceptionable. What is *exceptional* is uncommon, superior, rare, or extraordinary {an exceptional talent}. What is *exceptionable* is objectionable or offensive {an exceptionable slur}.

executor; administrator. In a will, a person designates an *executor* to distribute the estate after death. When a person dies without a will or without specifying an executor, the court will appoint an *administrator* to do the same. The feminine forms *administratrix* and *executrix* are unnecessary and should be avoided.

explicit; implicit. If something is *explicit* it is deliberately spelled out, as in the writing of a contract or the text of a statute. If it is *implicit* it is not specifically stated but either is suggested in the wording or is necessary to effectuate the purpose. Avoid *implicit* to mean "complete, unmitigated."

fact that, the. This much-maligned phrase is not always avoidable. But hunt for a substitute before deciding to use it. Sometimes *that* alone suffices.

farther; further. The traditional distinction is to use *farther* for a physical distance {we drove farther north to see the autumn foliage} and *further* for a figurative distance {let's examine this further} {look no further}.

fax, n. & vb. Derived from *facsimile transmission*, the foreshortened *fax* is almost universally preferred for convenience. The plural is *faxes*. Note that the word is governed by the same rules of capitalization as other common nouns. FAX is incorrect: the word is not an acronym.

faze; phase, vb. To *faze* is to disturb or disconcert {Jones isn't fazed by insults}. To *phase* (usually *phase in* or *phase out*) is to schedule or perform a plan, task, or the like in stages {phase in new procedures} {phase out the product lines that don't sell}.

feel. This verb is weak when used as a substitute for *think* or *believe*.

feel bad. Invariably, the needed phrase is *feel bad* (not *badly*). See 5.167.

fewer. See ***less***.

fictional; fictitious; fictive. *Fictional* (from *fiction* as a literary genre) means "of, relating to, or characteristic of imagination" {a fictional story}. *Fictitious* means "imaginary; counterfeit; false" {a fictitious name}. *Fictive* means "possessing the talent for imaginative creation" {fictive gift}; it can also be a synonym for *fictional* but in that sense is a needless variant. Also, anthropologists apply *fictive* to relationships in which people are treated as family members despite having no bond of blood or marriage {fictive kin}.

finalize. Meaning "to make final or bring to an end," this word has often been associated with inflated jargon. Although its compactness may recommend it in some contexts, use *finish* when possible.

first. In enumerations, use *first*, *second*, *third*, and so on. Avoid the *-ly* forms.

fit. This verb is undergoing a shift. It has traditionally been conjugated *fit–fitted–fitted*, but today *fit–fit–fit* is prevalent in American English {when she tried on the dress, it fit quite well}. In the passive voice, however, *fitted* is still normal {the horse was fitted with a new harness}.

flair. See ***flare***.

flammable; inflammable. *Flammable* was invented as an alternative to the synonymous word *inflammable*, which some people misunderstood—dangerously—as meaning "not combustible." Today *flammable* is the standard term.

flare; flair. A *flare* is an unsteady and glaring light {an emergency flare} or a sudden outburst {a flare-up of fighting}. A *flair* is an outstanding talent {a flair for mathematics} or originality and stylishness {performed with flair}.

flaunt; flout. *Flaunt*, meaning "to show off ostentatiously" {they flaunted their wealth}, should not be confused with *flout*, meaning "to treat with disdain or contempt" {flouting the rules}.

flounder; founder. Keep the figurative meanings of these terms straight by remembering their literal meanings. To *flounder* is to struggle awkwardly, as though walking through deep mud {the professor glared while the unprepared student floundered around for an answer}. To *founder* is to sink or fall to the ground {without any editorial expertise, the publisher soon foundered}.

following. Avoid this word as an equivalent of *after*. Consider: *Following the presentation, there was a question-and-answer session*. *After* is both simpler and clearer. But *following* is unobjectionable in meaning "next" {the following example illustrates the point}.

forbear, vb.; forebear, n. The terms are unrelated, but the spellings are frequently confused. To *forbear* is to refrain {he wanted to speak but decided to forbear}. (The conjugation is *forbear–forbore–forborne*.) A *forebear* is an ancestor {the house was built by Murray's distant forebears}.

forego; forgo. To *forego* is to go before {the foregoing paragraph}. (The word appears most commonly in the phrase *foregone conclusion*.) To *forgo*, by contrast, is to do without or renounce {they decided to forgo that opportunity}.

foreword; preface. A *foreword* (not *forward*) is a brief essay of endorsement that is written by someone other than the book's author. An introductory essay about the book written by the book's author is called a *preface* and is usually shorter and more personal than the book's introduction, which gives an overview of the book's content. See 1.39, 1.40, 1.42, 1.46.

forgo. See ***forego***.

former; latter. In the best usage, these words apply only to pairs. The *former* is the first of two, the *latter* the second of two.

fortuitous; fortunate. *Fortuitous* means "by chance," whether the fortune is good or bad {the rotten tree could have fallen at any time; it was just fortuitous that the victims drove by when they did}. *Fortunate* means "by good fortune" {we were fortunate to win the raffle}.

forward(s). See ***toward***.

founder. See ***flounder***.

fulsome, adj. This word does not preferably mean "very full" but "too much, excessive to the point of being repulsive." Its slipshod use arises most often in the phrase *fulsome praise*, which suggests the opposite of what the writer probably intends.

further. See ***farther***.

future, in the near. Use *soon* or *shortly* instead.

gantlet; gauntlet. See ***run the gantlet***.

gentleman. This word is a vulgarism when used as a synonym for *man* {two gentlemen were in the car} (better to use *men* there). When used in reference to a cultured, refined man, it is susceptible to some of the same objections as those leveled against *lady*. Use it cautiously. Cf. ***lady***.

get. Though shunned by many writers as too casual, *get* often sounds more natural than *obtain* or *procure* {get a job}. It can also substitute for a stuffy *be-*

come {get hurt}. The verb is conjugated *get–got–gotten* in American English, *get–got–got* in British English.

gibe, n.; jibe, vb. A *gibe* is a biting insult or taunt; *gibes* are figuratively thrown at their target {the angry crowd hurled gibes as the suspect was led into the courthouse}. *Jibe* means to fit, usually with negation {the verdict didn't jibe with the judge's own view of the facts}.

gild. See ***guild***.

go. This verb is conjugated *go–went–gone*. *Went* appears as a past participle only in dialect.

gourmet; gourmand. Both are aficionados of good food and drink. But a *gourmet* knows and appreciates the fine points of food and drink, whereas a *gourmand* is a glutton.

grateful; gratified. To be *grateful* is to be thankful or appreciative. To be *gratified* is to be pleased, satisfied, or indulged.

grisly; grizzly. What is *grisly* is gruesome or horrible {grisly details}. What is *grizzly* is grayish {grizzly hair} or bearish {the North American grizzly bear}.

guild, n.; gild, vb. A *guild* is an organization of persons with a common interest or profession {a guild of fine carpenters}. To *gild* is to put a thin layer of gold on something {gild a picture frame}.

half (of). Delete the *of* whenever possible {half the furniture}.

handful. If *handful* applies to a mass noun, use a singular verb {a handful of trouble is ahead}. But if *handful* applies to a plural count noun, use a plural verb {there are only a handful of walnut trees lining Main Street}.

hangar; hanger. One finds *hangars* at an airport {airplane hangars}. Everywhere else, one finds *hangers* {clothes hangers} {picture hangers}.

hanged; hung. *Hanged* is used as the past participle of *hang* only in its transitive form when referring to the killing (just or unjust) of a human being by suspending the person by the neck {criminals were hanged at Tyburn Hill}. But if death is not intended or likely, or if the person is suspended by a body part other than the neck, *hung* is correct {he was hung upside down as a cruel prank}. In most senses, of course, *hung* is the past form of *hang* {Mark hung up his clothes}. All inanimate objects, such as pictures and Christmas stockings, are hung.

hanger. See ***hangar***.

harass; embarrass. The first word has one -*r*-; the second has two. The pronunciation of *harass* also causes confusion. The dominant American pronunciation stresses the second syllable, while British English stresses the first.

harebrained. So spelled (after the timid, easily startled animal)—not *hairbrained*.

healthy; healthful. Traditionally, a living thing that is *healthy* enjoys good health; something that is *healthful* promotes health {a healthful diet will keep you healthy}. But gradually *healthy* is taking over both senses.

help (to). Omit the *to* when possible {talking will help resolve the problem}.

he or she. To avoid sexist language, many writers use this alternative phrasing (in place of the generic *he*). Use it sparingly—preferably after exhausting all the less obtrusive methods of achieving gender neutrality. In any event, *he or she* is much preferable to *he/she*, *s/he*, *(s)he*, and the like. See also 5.46.

historic; historical. The shorter word refers to what is momentous in history {January 16, 1991, was a historic day in Kuwait}. *Historical*, meanwhile, refers simply to anything that pertains to or occurred in history.

hoard; horde. A *hoard* is a supply, usually secret and often valuable. *Hoard* is also a verb meaning "to amass" such a cache. A *horde* was originally a tribe of Asian nomads; today a *horde* is a large crowd.

hoi polloi. The *hoi polloi* are the common people, not the elite. This term is a plural. Although *hoi* is Greek for "the," the phrase is commonly rendered "the hoi polloi" and has been at least since it was used by John Dryden in 1668.

holocaust. When capitalized, this word refers to the Nazi genocide of European Jews in World War II. When not capitalized, it refers (literally or figuratively) to extensive devastation caused by fire, or to the systematic and malicious killings of human beings on a vast scale.

home in. This phrase is frequently misrendered *hone in*. (*Hone* means "to sharpen.") *Home in* refers to what homing pigeons do; the meaning is "to come closer and closer to a target."

homicide. See ***murder***.

hopefully. The old meaning of the word ("in a hopeful manner") seems unsustainable; the newer meaning ("I hope" or "it is to be hoped") seems here to stay. But many careful writers deplore the new meaning.

horde. See ***hoard***.

hung. See ***hanged***.

I; me. When you need the first-person singular, use it. It's not immodest to use it; it's superstitious not to.

idyllic. An *idyll* is a short pastoral poem, and by extension *idyllic* means charming or picturesque. It is not synonymous with *ideal* (perfect).

i.e.; e.g. The first is the abbreviation for *id est* ("that is"); the second is the abbreviation for *exempli gratia* ("for example"). The English equivalents are preferable in formal prose; Chicago style is to use these two-character abbreviations only within parentheses or in notes. Always put a comma after either of them.

if; whether. While *if* is conditional, *whether* introduces an alternative, often in the context of an indirect question. Use *whether* in two circumstances: (1) to introduce a noun clause {he asked whether his tie was straight} (the answer is either *yes* or *no*), and (2) when using *if* would produce ambiguity. In the sentence *He asked if his tie was straight*, the literal meaning is "whenever his tie was straight, he asked"; the popular meaning "he wanted someone to tell him whether his tie needed straightening" may not be understood by all readers. More tellingly, *call me to let me know if you can come* means that you should call only if you're coming; *call to let me know whether you can come* means that you should call regardless of your answer. Avoid substituting *if* for *whether* unless your tone is intentionally informal or you are quoting someone. See also ***determine whether***.

illegal. See ***unlawful***.

illegible; unreadable. Handwriting or printing that is *illegible* is not clear enough to be read {illegible scrawls}. Writing that is *unreadable* is so poorly composed as to be either incomprehensible or intolerably dull.

illicit. See ***elicit***; ***unlawful***.

illude. See ***allude***.

immigrate; emigrate. To *immigrate* is to enter a country to live, leaving a past home. To *emigrate* is to leave one country to live in another one. The cognate forms also demand attention. Someone who moves from Ireland to the United States is an *immigrant* here and an *emigrant* there. An *emigré* is also an *emigrant*, but especially one in political exile.

impact. Resist using this word as a verb. Try *affect* or *influence* instead. Besides being hyperbolic, *impact* used as a verb is widely considered a solecism (though it is gaining ground).

impeachment. *Impeachment* is the legislative equivalent of an indictment, not a conviction. In the US federal system, the House of Representatives votes on impeachment and the Senate votes on removal from office.

impelled. See ***compelled***.

implicit. See ***explicit***.

imply; infer. The writer or speaker *implies* (hints, suggests); the reader or listener *infers* (deduces). Writers and speakers often use *infer* as if it were synonymous with *imply*, but careful writers always distinguish between the two words.

in actual fact. See ***actual fact, in***.

inasmuch as. *Because* or *since* is almost always a better choice.

in behalf of. See ***behalf***.

in connection with. This is a vague, fuzzy phrase {she explained the financial consequences in connection with the transaction} {a liking for everything in connection with golf} {Phipson was compensated in connection with its report}. Try replacing the phrase with *of*, *related to*, or *associated with* {she explained the financial consequences of the transaction}, *about* {a liking for everything about golf}, or *for* {Phipson was compensated for its report}.

incredible; incredulous. *Incredible* properly means "unbelievable." Colloquially, it is used to mean "astonishing (in a good way)" {it was an incredible trip}. *Incredulous* means "disbelieving, skeptical" {people are incredulous about the rising gas costs}.

inculcate; indoctrinate. One *inculcates* values *into* a child but *indoctrinates* the child *with* values. That is, *inculcate* always takes the preposition *into* and a value or values as its object {inculcate courage into soldiers}. *Indoctrinate* takes a person as its object {indoctrinate children with the habit of telling the truth}.

indicate. Often vague. When possible, use a more direct verb such as *state*, *comment*, *show*, *suggest*, or *say*.

individual. Use this word to distinguish a single person from a group. When possible, use *person* or a more specific term such as *adult, child, man,* or *woman*.

indoctrinate. See ***inculcate***.

induce. See ***adduce***.

in excess of. Try replacing this verbose phrase with *more than* or *over*.

infectious. See ***contagious***.

infer. See ***imply***.

inference. Use the verb *draw*, not *make*, with *inference* {they drew the wrong inferences}. Otherwise, readers may confuse *inference* with *implication*.

inflammable. See ***flammable***.

inflict; afflict. Events, illnesses, punishments, and the like are *inflicted on* living things or entities {an abuser inflicts cruelty}. The sufferers are *afflicted with* or *by* disease or troubles {agricultural communities afflicted with drought}.

ingenious; ingenuous. These words are similar in form but not in meaning. *Ingenious* describes what is intelligent, clever, and original {an ingenious invention}. *Ingenuous* describes what is candid, naive, and without dissimulation {a hurtful but ingenuous observation}.

innate; inherent. An *innate* characteristic is one that a living thing has from birth; it should be distinguished, then, from a talent or disposition that one acquires from training or experience. An *inherent* characteristic is also part of a thing's nature, but life is not implied; a rock, for example, has an inherent hardness.

innervate. See ***enervate***.

innocent; not guilty. If you are *innocent*, you are without blame. If you are *not guilty*, you have been exonerated by a jury. Newspapers avoid the "not guilty" phrase, though, because the consequences of accidentally leaving off the "not" could be serious.

innumerable. See ***enumerable***.

in order to; in order for. Often these expressions can be reduced to *to* and *for*. When that is so, and rhythm and euphony are preserved or even heightened, use *to* or *for*.

in proximity. See ***close proximity, in***.

in regard to. This is the phrase, not *in regards to*. Try a single-word substitute instead: *about, regarding, concerning*.

insidious; invidious. What is *insidious* involves deceit and treachery {an insidious conspiracy}; what is *invidious* involves malice but not necessarily deceit {invidious discrimination}.

in spite of. See ***despite***.

insure. See ***ensure***.

intense; intensive. *Intense* is preferred in reference to colors, emotions, and personal efforts. *Intensive* describes concentration of attention and resources and is more often used to refer to work or study methods {labor-intensive} {intensive care}.

interpretive; interpretative. Although *interpretative* was considered the preferred form through the mid-twentieth century, it has largely fallen into disuse. Today *interpretive* is the standard term.

in the affirmative. See ***affirmative, in the***.

in the event that. See ***event***.

in the near future. See ***future***.

in the negative. See ***affirmative, in the***.

inveigh; inveigle. To *inveigh* is to protest, usually against something {picketers inveighed against annexation}. To *inveigle* is to cajole or ensnare {inveigle into attending the party}.

invidious. See **insidious**.

irregardless. An error. Use *regardless* (or possibly *irrespective*).

it is I; it is me. Both are correct and acceptable. The first phrase is strictly grammatical (and stuffy); the second is idiomatic (and relaxed), and it is often contracted to *it's me*. In the third-person constructions, however, a greater stringency holds sway in good English {this is he} {it isn't she who has caused such misery}.

its; it's. *Its* is the possessive form of *it*; *it's* is the contraction for *it is* {it's a sad dog that scratches its fleas}.

jealousy; envy. *Jealousy* connotes feelings of resentment toward another, particularly in matters relating to an intimate relationship. *Envy* refers to covetousness of another's advantages, possessions, or abilities.

jibe. See ***gibe***.

karat. See ***carat***.

lady. When used as a synonym for *woman*—indeed when used anywhere but in the phrase *ladies and gentlemen*—this word will be considered objectionable by some readers who think that it refers to a patronizing stereotype. This is especially true when it is used for unprestigious jobs {cleaning lady} or as an adjective {lady lawyer}. Some will insist on using it to describe a refined woman. If they've consulted this entry, they've been forewarned. Cf. ***gentleman***.

latter. See ***former***.

laudable; laudatory. *Laudable* means "praiseworthy" {a laudable effort}. *Laudatory* means "expressing praise" {laudatory phone calls}.

lay; lie. *Lay* is a transitive verb—that is, it demands a direct object {lay your pencils down}. It is inflected *lay–laid–laid* {I laid the book there yesterday} {these rumors have been laid to rest}. (The children's prayer *Now I lay me down to sleep* is a good mnemonic device for the transitive *lay*.) *Lie* is an intransitive verb—that is, it never takes a direct object {lie down and rest}. It is inflected *lie–lay–lain* {she lay down and rested} {he hasn't yet lain down}.

leach; leech. To *leach* is to percolate or to separate out solids in solution by percolation. A *leech* is a bloodsucker (both literal and figurative).

lease; let. Many Americans seem to think that *let* is colloquial and of modern origin. In fact, the word is three hundred years older than *lease* and just as proper. One distinction between the two words is that either the owner or the tenant can be said to *lease* property, but only the owner can be said to *let* it.

led. This is the correct spelling of the past tense and past participle of the verb *lead*. It is often misspelled *lead*, maybe in part because of the pronunciation of the noun *lead* (the metal) or the past tense and past participle *read*, which rhyme with *led*.

lend, vb.; loan, vb. & n. *Lend* is the correct term for letting someone use something with the understanding that it (or its equivalent) will be returned. The verb *loan* is standard only when money is the subject of the transaction. *Loan* is the noun corresponding to both *lend* and *loan*, vb. The past-tense and past-participial form of *lend* is *lent*.

less; fewer. Reserve *less* for amounts or mass nouns—for example, *less salt, dirt, water*. Reserve *fewer* for countable things—for example, *fewer people, calories, suggestions*. One easy guideline is to use *less* with singular nouns {less money} and *fewer* with plural nouns {fewer dollars}.

let. See **lease**.

libel. See **defamation**.

lie. See **lay**.

life-and-death; life-or-death. The problem of logic aside (life and death being mutually exclusive), the first phrase is the standard idiom {a life-and-death decision}.

like; as. The use of *like* as a conjunction (as in the old jingle "like a cigarette should") has long been a contentious issue. Purists insist that *as* must introduce a clause and *like* must always be a preposition coupled with a noun {cool like springwater}. The fall of that old rule has been predicted for five decades, but today *like* as a conjunction is still not standard. See also 5.181.

likely. See **apt**.

literally. This word means "actually; without exaggeration." It should not be used loosely as an intensifier, as in *they were literally glued to their seats* (unless glue had in fact been applied).

loan. See **lend**.

loathe, vb.; loath, adj. To *loathe* something is to detest it or to regard it with disgust {I loathe tabloid television}. Someone who is *loath* is reluctant {Tracy seems loath to admit mistakes}.

lose; loose, vb.; loosen. To *lose* something is to be deprived of it. To *loose* something is to release it from fastenings or restraints. To *loosen* is to make less tight or to ease a restraint. *Loose* conveys the idea of complete release, whereas *loosen* refers to only a partial release.

luxuriant; luxurious. The two terms are fairly often confused. What is *luxuriant* is lush and grows abundantly {a luxuriant head of hair}. What is *luxurious* is lavish and extravagant {a luxurious resort}.

malevolent; maleficent. *Malevolent* means "evil in mind" {with malevolent intent}. *Maleficent* means "evil in deed" {a maleficent bully}.

malodorous. See **odious**.

maltreatment. See **mistreatment**.

manslaughter. See **murder**.

mantle; mantel. A *mantle* is a long, loose garment like a cloak. A *mantel* is a wood or stone structure around a fireplace.

masterful; masterly. *Masterful* describes a person who is dominating and imperious. *Masterly* describes a person who has mastered a craft, trade, or profession; the word often means "authoritative" {a masterly analysis}. Because *masterly* does not readily make an adverb (*masterlily* being extremely awkward [see 5.154]), try *in a masterly way*.

may; can. See ***can***.

may; might. *May* expresses what is possible, is factual, or could be factual {I may have turned off the stove, but I can't recall doing it}. *Might* suggests something that is uncertain, hypothetical, or contrary to fact {I might have won the marathon if I had entered}. See 5.146.

me. See **I**.

media; mediums. In scientific contexts and in reference to mass communications, the plural of *medium* is *media* {some bacteria flourish in several types of media} {the media are now issuing reports}. But if *medium* refers to a spiritualist, the plural is *mediums* {several mediums have held séances here}.

memoranda; memorandums. Although both plural forms are correct, *memoranda* is more common. *Memoranda* is sometimes misused as if it were singular.

minuscule. Something that is minuscule is "very small." Probably because of the spelling of the modern word *mini* (and the prefix of the same spelling, which is recorded only from 1936), it is often misspelled *miniscule* (which is treated as a variant in some dictionaries). In printing, *minuscules* and *majuscules* are lowercase and capital letters, respectively.

mistreatment; maltreatment. *Mistreatment* is the more general term. *Maltreatment* denotes a harsh form of *mistreatment*, involving abuse by rough or cruel handling.

mitigate; militate. *Mitigate*, like its synonym *extenuate*, means "to lessen or soften"; so *mitigating circumstances* lessen the seriousness of a crime. *Militate*, by contrast, means "to have a marked effect on" and is usually followed by *against* {his nearsightedness militated against his ambition to become a commercial pilot}.

moot; mute. *Mute* means silent {he remained mute}. *Moot* traditionally meant debatable, so that a *moot point* was an arguable one, but today a *moot point*, in American English, is one that has no practical significance because it is hypothetical. The shift in meaning resulted from American legal usage.

much; very. *Much* generally intensifies past-participial adjectives {much obliged} {much encouraged} and some comparatives {much more} {much worse} {much too soon}. *Very* intensifies adverbs and most adjectives {very carefully} {very bad}, including past-participial adjectives that have more adjectival than verbal force {very bored}. See 5.89.

murder; manslaughter; homicide. All three words denote the killing of one person by another. *Murder* and *manslaughter* are both unlawful killings, but *murder* is done maliciously and intentionally. *Homicide* includes killings that are not unlawful, such as by a police officer acting properly in the line of duty. *Homicide* also refers to a person who kills another.

mutual. See ***common***.

myself. Avoid using *myself* as a pronoun in place of *I* or *me*. Use it reflexively {I did myself a favor} or emphatically {I myself have tried to get through that tome!}. See also 5.48.

naturalist; naturist. *Naturalist* most often denotes a person who studies natural history, especially a field biologist or an amateur who observes and photographs, sketches, or writes about nature. *Naturist* denotes a nature worshiper or a nudist.

nauseous; nauseated. Whatever is *nauseous* induces a feeling of nausea—it makes us feel sick to our stomachs. To feel sick is to be *nauseated*. The use of *nauseous* to mean *nauseated* may be too common to be called error anymore, but strictly speaking it is poor usage. Because of the ambiguity in *nauseous*, the wisest course may be to stick to the participial adjectives *nauseated* and *nauseating*.

necessary; necessitous. *Necessary* means "required under the circumstances" {the necessary arrangements}. *Necessitous* means "impoverished" {living in necessitous circumstances}.

no. See ***affirmative, in the***.

noisome. This word has nothing to do with *noise*. It means noxious, offensive, foul-smelling {a noisome factory}.

none. This word may take either a singular or a plural verb. A guideline: if it is followed by a singular noun, treat it as a singular {none of the building was painted}; if by a plural noun, treat it as a plural {none of the guests were here when I arrived}. But for special emphasis, it is quite proper (though possibly stilted) to use a singular verb when a plural noun follows {none of the edits was accepted}.

notable; noticeable; noteworthy. *Notable* ("readily noticed") applies both to physical things and to qualities {notable sense of humor}. *Noticeable* means "detectable with the physical senses" {a noticeable limp}. *Noteworthy* means "remarkable" {a noteworthy act of kindness}.

notwithstanding. One word. Less formal alternatives include *despite*, *although*, and *in spite of*. The word *notwithstanding* may precede or follow a noun {notwithstanding her bad health, she decided to run for office} {her bad health notwithstanding, she decided to run for office}.

number. See ***amount***.

numerous. This is typically a bloated word for *many*.

observance; observation. *Observance* means "obedience to a rule or custom" {the family's observance of Passover}. *Observation* means either "a study of something" or "a remark based on such a study" {a keen observation about the defense strategy}. Each term is sometimes used when the other would be the better word.

obtain. See ***attain***.

obtuse; abstruse. *Obtuse* describes a person who can't understand; *abstruse* describes an idea that is hard to understand. A person who is *obtuse* is dull and, by extension, dull-witted. What is *abstruse* is incomprehensible or nearly so.

odious; odorous; odoriferous; malodorous. *Odious* means hateful {odious Jim Crow laws}. It is not related to the other terms, but it is sometimes misused as if it were. *Odorous* means detectable by smell, for better or worse. *Odoriferous* means essentially the same thing, although it has meant "fragrant" as often as it has meant "foul." *Malodorous* means smelling quite bad. The mistaken form *odiferous* is often used as a jocular equivalent of *smelly*—but most dictionaries don't record it.

odoriferous. See ***odious***.

off. Never put *of* after this word {we got off the bus}.

officious. A person who is *officious* is aggressively nosy and meddlesome. The word has nothing to do with an *officer* and should not be confused with *official*.

on; upon. Prefer *on* to *upon* unless introducing an event or condition {put that on the shelf, please} {upon the job's completion, you'll get paid}. For more about *on*, see ***onto***.

on behalf of. See ***behalf***.

one another. See ***each other***.

oneself. One word—not *one's self*.

onto; on to; on. When is *on* a preposition and when is it an adverb? The sense of the sentence should tell, but the distinction can be subtle. *Onto* implies a movement, so it has an adverbial flavor even though it is a preposition {the gymnast jumped *onto* the bars}. When *on* is part of the verbal phrase, it is an adverb and *to* is the preposition {the gymnast held *on to* the bars}. One trick is to mentally say "up" before *on*: if the sentence still makes sense, then *onto* is probably the right choice. Alone, *on* does not imply motion {the gymnast is good *on* the parallel bars}.

oppress; repress. *Oppress*, meaning "to persecute or tyrannize," is more negative than *repress*, meaning "to restrain or subordinate."

oral. See ***verbal***.

oration. See ***peroration***.

ordinance; ordnance. An *ordinance* is a municipal regulation or an authoritative decree. *Ordnance* is military armament, especially artillery but also weapons and ammunition generally.

orient; orientate. To *orient* is to get one's bearings or point another in the right direction (literally to find east) {it took the new employee a few days to get oriented to the firm's suite}. Unless used in the sense "to face or turn to the east," *orientate* is a poor variation to be avoided. It is a back-formation from the noun *orientation*, analogous to the illegitimate *interpretate* for *interpret*.

ought; should. Both express a sense of duty, but *ought* is stronger. Unlike *should*, *ought* requires a fully expressed infinitive, even in the negative {you ought not to see the movie}. See 5.148, 5.149.

outside. In spatial references, no *of* is necessary—or desirable—after this word unless it is used as a noun {outside the shop} {the outside of the building}. But *outside of* is acceptable as a colloquialism meaning "except for" or "aside from."

over. As an equivalent of *more than*, this word is perfectly good idiomatic English.

overly. Avoid this word, which is widely considered poor usage. Try *over-* as a prefix or *unduly*.

pair. This is a singular form, despite the inherent sense of twoness. The plural is *pairs* {three pairs of shoes}.

pandemic. See ***epidemic***.

parameters. Though it may sound elegant or scientific, this word is usually just pretentious when it is used in nontechnical contexts. Stick to *boundaries*, *limits*, *guidelines*, *grounds*, *elements*, or some other word.

partake in; partake of. To *partake in* is to participate in {the new student refused to partake in class discussions}. To *partake of* is either to get a part of {partake of the banquet} or to have a quality, at least to some extent {this assault partakes of revenge}.

partly; partially. Both words convey the sense "to some extent; in part" {partly disposed of}. *Partly* is preferred in that sense. But *partially* has the additional senses of "incompletely" {partially cooked} and "unfairly; in a way that shows bias toward one side" {he treats his friends partially}.

pastime. This word combines *pass* (not *past*) and *time*, and is spelled with a single *t*.

peaceable; peaceful. A *peaceable* person or nation is inclined to avoid strife {peaceable kingdom}. A *peaceful* person, place, or event is serene, tranquil, and calm {a peaceful day free from demands}.

peak; peek; pique. These three sometimes get switched through writerly blunders. A *peak* is an apex, a *peek* is a quick or illicit glance, and a fit of *pique* is an episode of peevishness and wounded vanity. To *pique* is to annoy or arouse: an article *piques* (not *peaks*) one's interest.

pendant, n.; pendent, adj. A *pendant* is an item of dangling jewelry, especially one worn around the neck. What is *pendent* is hanging or suspended.

penultimate. This word means "the next to last." Many people have started misusing it as a fancy equivalent of *ultimate*.

people; persons. The traditional view is that *persons* is used for smaller numbers {three persons} and *people* with larger ones {millions of people}. But today most people use *people* even for small groups {only three people were there}.

period of time; time period. Avoid these phrases. Try *period* or *time* instead.

peroration; oration. A *peroration*, strictly speaking, is the conclusion of an *oration* (speech). Careful writers avoid using *peroration* to refer to a rousing speech or text.

perpetuate; perpetrate. To *perpetuate* something is to sustain it or prolong it indefinitely {perpetuate the species}. To *perpetrate* is to commit or perform (an act) {perpetrate a crime}.

personally. Three points. First, use this word only when an actor does something that would normally be done through an agent {the president personally signed this invitation} or to limit other considerations {Jean was affected by the decision but was not personally involved in it}. Second, *personally* is redundant when combined with an activity that requires the actor's presence (*personally shook hands* should be simply *shook hands*). Third, *personally* shouldn't appear with *I* when stating an opinion; it weakens the statement and doesn't reduce the speaker's liability for the opinion. The only exception arises if a person is required to advance someone else's view but holds a different personal opinion {in the chamber I voted to lower taxes because of the constituencies I represented; but I personally believed that taxes should have been increased}.

persons. See ***people***.

persuade; convince. *Persuade* is associated with actions {persuade him to buy a suit}. *Convince* is associated with beliefs or understandings {she convinced the auditor of her honesty}. The phrase *persuade to* [*do*] has traditionally been considered better than *convince to* [*do*]. But either verb will take a *that*-clause {the committee was persuaded that an all-night session was necessary} {my three-year-old is convinced that Santa Claus exists}.

pertain; appertain. *Pertain to*, the more common term, means "to relate to" {the clause pertains to assignment of risk}. *Appertain to* means "to belong to by right" {Fifth Amendment rights appertaining to the defendant}.

phase. See ***faze***.

phenomenon. This is a singular form. The plural is *phenomena*.

pique. See ***peak***.

pitiable; pitiful. To be *pitiable* is to be worthy of pity. To be *pitiful* is to be contemptible.

pleaded; pled. The first is the standard past-tense and past-participial form {he pleaded guilty} {they have pleaded with their families}. Avoid *pled*.

pore. To *pore over* something written is to read it intently. Some writers mistakenly substitute *pour*.

practicable; possible; practical. These terms differ in shading. What is *practicable* is capable of being done; it's feasible. What is *possible* might be capable of happening or being done, but there is some doubt. What is *practical* is fit for actual use.

precipitate, adj.; precipitous. What is *precipitate* occurs suddenly or rashly; the term describes demands, actions, or movements. What is *precipitous* is dangerously steep; this term describes cliffs and inclines.

precondition. Try *condition* or *prerequisite* instead.

predominant; predominate. Like *dominant*, *predominant* is an adjective {a predominant point of view}. Like *dominate*, *predominate* is a verb {a point of view that predominates throughout the state}. Using *predominate* as an adjective is common but loose usage—and the adverb *predominately* (for the correct *predominantly*) is likely to make the literary person's teeth hurt.

preface. See ***foreword***.

prejudice, vb. Although *prejudice* is a perfectly normal English noun to denote an all-too-common trait, the verb is a legalism. For a plain-English equivalent, use *harm* or *hurt*.

preliminary to. Make it *before*, *in preparing for*, or some other natural phrasing.

prescribe. See ***proscribe***.

presently. This word is ambiguous. Write *now* or *soon*, whichever you really mean.

presumption. See ***assumption***.

preventive. Although the corrupt form *preventative* (with the superfluous syllable in the middle) is fairly common, the strictly correct form is *preventive*.

previous to. Make it *before*.

principle; principal. A *principle* is a natural, moral, or legal rule {the principle of free speech}. The corresponding adjective is *principled* {a principled decision}. A *principal* is a person of high authority or prominence {a school principal} or a loan amount requiring repayment {principal and interest}. A *principal* role is a primary one.

prior to. Make it *before* or *until*.

process of, in the. You can almost always delete this phrase without affecting the meaning.

propaganda. This is a singular noun {propaganda was everywhere}. The plural is *propagandas*.

prophesy; prophecy. *Prophesy* is the verb {the doomsayers prophesied widespread blackouts for Y2K}. *Prophecy* is the noun {their prophecies did not materialize}. *Prophesize* is an erroneous form sometimes encountered.

proscribe; prescribe. To *proscribe* something is to prohibit it {legislation that proscribes drinking while driving}. To *prescribe* is to appoint or dictate (a rule or course of action) {Henry VIII prescribed the order of succession to include three of his children} or to specify a medical remedy {the doctor prescribed anti-inflammatory pills and certain exercises}.

protuberance. So spelled. Perhaps because *protrude* means "to stick out," writers want to spell *protuberance* (something that bulges out) with an extra r (after the *t*). But the words are from different roots.

proved; proven. *Proved* is the preferred past-participial form of *prove* {it was proved to be true}. Use *proven* as an adjective {a proven success}.

proximity. See ***close proximity, in***.

purposely; purposefully. What is done *purposely* is done intentionally, or "on purpose." What is done *purposefully* is done with a certain goal in mind. An action may be done *purposely* without any particular interest in a specific result—that is, not *purposefully*.

question whether; question of whether; question as to whether. The first phrasing is the best, the second is next best, and the third is to be avoided. See ***as to***.

quick(ly). *Quickly* is the general adverb. But *quick* is properly used as an adverb in the idiomatic phrases *get rich quick* and *come quick*. See 5.157.

quote; quotation. Traditionally a verb, *quote* is often used as an equivalent of *quotation* in speech and informal writing. Also, there is a tendency for writers (especially journalists) to think of *quotes* as contemporary remarks usable in their writing and of *quotations* as being wisdom of the ages expressed pithily.

rack. See ***wrack***.

reason why. Although some object to the supposed redundancy of this phrase, it is centuries old and perfectly acceptable English. And *reason that* is not always an adequate substitute.

reek. See ***wreak***.

refrain; restrain. To *refrain* is to restrain yourself (to *refrain from* or stop doing something); it is typically an act of self-discipline. Other people *restrain* you {if you don't refrain from the disorderly conduct, the police will restrain you}.

regrettable; regretful. What is *regrettable* is unfortunate or deplorable. A person who is *regretful* feels regret or sorrow for something done or lost. The adverb *regrettably*, not *regretfully*, is the synonym of *unfortunately*.

rein; reign. A *rein* (usu. plural) controls a horse; it is the right word in idioms such as "take the reins," "give free rein," and, as a verb, "rein in." A *reign* is a state of or term of dominion, especially that of a monarch but by extension dominance in some field. This is the right word in idioms such as "reign of terror" and, as a verb, "reign supreme."

relegate; delegate. To *relegate* is to assign a lesser position {the officer was relegated to desk duty pending an investigation} or to hand over for decision or execution {the application was relegated to the human services committee}. To *delegate* is to authorize another to act on one's behalf {Congress delegated environmental regulation to the EPA}.

renounce. See ***denounce***.

repellent; repulsive. *Repellent* and *repulsive* both denote the character of driving others away. But *repulsive* has strong negative connotations of being truly disgusting.

repetitive; repetitious. Both mean "occurring over and over." But whereas *repetitive* is fairly neutral in connotation, *repetitious* has taken on the nuance of tediousness.

repulsive. See ***repellent***.

restive; restful. *Restive* has two senses: (1) "impatient, stubborn" and (2) "restless, agitated." *Restful* means "conducive to rest."

restrain. See ***refrain***.

reticent. This word should not be used as a synonym for *reluctant*. It means "inclined to be silent; reserved; taciturn" {when asked about the incident, the congressional representative became uncharacteristically reticent}.

revenge. See ***avenge***.

rob; steal. Both verbs mean "to wrongfully take [something from another person]." But *rob* also includes a threat or act of harming, usually but not always to the person being robbed.

run the gantlet; throw down the gauntlet. These are the traditional idioms, a *gantlet* being a path between two lines of tormentors and a *gauntlet* being a knight's glove. The first idiom refers to a means of punishment, the second to a dare (which the challenger accepts by picking up the gauntlet). Purists object to the frequently seen *run the gauntlet*.

sacrilegious. This is the correct spelling, though there is a tendency by some to switch the *i* and *e* on either side of the *l*. In fact, the word is related to *sacrilege*, not *religion* and *religious*.

seasonal; seasonable. *Seasonal* means either "dependent on a season" {snow skiing is a seasonal hobby} or "relating to the seasons or a season" {the seasonal aisle stays stocked most of the year, starting with Valentine's Day gifts in January}. *Seasonable* means "timely" {seasonable motions for continuance} or "fitting the season" {it was unseasonably cold for July}.

self-deprecating. See ***deprecate***.

semi-. See ***bi-***.

semiannual. See ***biannual***.

sensor. See ***censor***.

sensual; sensuous. What is *sensual* involves indulgence of the senses—especially sexual gratification. What is *sensuous* usually applies to aesthetic enjoyment; only hack writers imbue the word with salacious connotations.

sewer; sewage; sewerage. *Sewer* denotes wastewater pipes; *sewage* denotes the matter carried through those pipes. *Sewerage* is the better term for the sewer system as a whole, including treatment plants and other facilities, and for the function of the disposal of sewage and wastewater in general.

shine. When this verb is intransitive, it means "to give or make light"; the past tense is *shone* {the stars shone dimly}. When it is transitive, it means "to cause to shine"; the past tense is *shined* {the caterer shined the silver}.

sight; site. A *sight* may be something worth seeing {the sights of London} or a device to aid the eye {the sight of a gun}, among other things. A *site* is a place, whether physical {a mall will be built on this site} or electronic {website}. The figurative expression meaning "to focus on a goal" is *to set one's sights*. Cf. ***cite***.

since. This word may relate either to time {since last winter} or to causation {since I'm a golfer, I know what "double bogey" means}. Some writers erroneously believe that the word relates exclusively to time. But the causal *since* was a part of the English language before Chaucer wrote in the fourteenth century, and it is useful as a slightly milder way of expressing causation than *because*. But where there is any possibility of confusion with the temporal sense, use *because*.

site. See ***cite***; ***sight***.

slander. See ***defamation***.

slew; slough; slue. *Slew* is an informal word equivalent to *many* or *lots* {you have a slew of cattle}. It is sometimes misspelled *slough* (a legitimate noun meaning "a grimy swamp" and pronounced to rhyme with *now*) or *slue* (a legitimate verb meaning "to swing around"). The phrase *slough of despond* (from Bunyan's *Pilgrim's Progress* [1678]) means a state of depression. This is etymologically different from *slough* (/sləf/), meaning "to discard" {slough off dry skin}.

slow. This word, like *slowly*, may be an adverb. Generally, prefer *slowly* {go slowly}. But when used after the verb in a pithy statement, especially an injunction, *slow* often appears in colloquial usage {Go slow!} {take it slow}. See 5.157.

slue. See ***slew***.

sneak. This verb is conjugated *sneak–sneaked–sneaked*. Reserve *snuck* for dialect and tongue-in-cheek usages.

spit. If used to mean "to expectorate," the verb is inflected *spit–spat–spat* {he spat a curse}. But if used to mean "to skewer," it's *spit–spitted–spitted* {the hens have been spitted for broiling}.

stanch. See ***staunch***.

stationary; stationery. *Stationary* describes a state of immobility or of staying in one place {if it's stationary, paint it}. *Stationery* denotes writing materials {love letters written on perfumed stationery}. To remember the two, try associating the *-er* in *stationery* with the *-er* in *paper*; or remember that a *stationer* is someone who sells the stuff.

staunch; stanch. *Staunch* is an adjective meaning "ardent and faithful" {a staunch Red Sox supporter}. *Stanch* is a verb meaning "to stop the flow"; it is almost always used in regard to bleeding, literally or metaphorically {after New Hampshire the campaign was hemorrhaging; only a big win in South Carolina could stanch the bleeding}.

steal. See ***rob***.

strait; straight. A *strait* (often pl.) is (1) literally, a narrow channel between two large bodies of water {Strait of Magellan} or (2) figuratively, a difficult position {dire straits} {straitened circumstances}. This is the word used in compound terms with the sense of constriction {straitlaced} {straitjacket}. *Straight* is most often an adjective meaning unbent, steady, sober, candid, honest, or heterosexual.

strategy; tactics. A *strategy* is a long-term plan for achieving a goal. *Tactics* are shorter-term plans for achieving an immediate but limited success. A strategy might involve several tactics.

subsequent. See ***consequent***.

subsequently. Try *later*.

subsequent to. Make it *after*.

such. This word, when used to replace *this* or *that*—as in "such building was later condemned"—is symptomatic of legalese. *Such* is actually no more precise than *the*, *this*, *that*, *these*, or *those*. It is perfectly acceptable, however, to use *such* with a mass noun or plural noun when the meaning is "of that type" or "of this kind" {such impudence galled the rest of the family} {such vitriolic exchanges became commonplace in the following years}.

sufficient. See ***adequate***.

supersede. This word derives from *sedeo*, the Latin word for "to sit, to be established," not *cedo*, meaning "to yield." Hence the spelling variation from words such as *concede*, *recede*, and *secede*.

sympathy. See ***empathy***.

systematic; systemic. *Systematic* means "according to a plan or system, methodical, or arranged in a system." *Systemic* is limited in use to physiological systems {a systemic disease affecting several organs} or, by extension, other systems that may be likened to the body {systemic problems within the corporate hierarchy}.

tactics. See ***strategy***.

take. See ***bring***.

tantalizing; titillating. A *tantalizing* thing torments us because we want it badly and it is always just out of reach. A *titillating* thing tickles us pleasantly, literally or figuratively.

thankfully. This word traditionally means "appreciatively; gratefully." It is not in good use as a substitute for *thank goodness* or *fortunately*. Cf. ***hopefully***.

that; which. These are both relative pronouns (see 5.54–63). In polished American prose, *that* is used restrictively to narrow a category or identify a particular item being talked about {any building that is taller must be outside the state}; *which* is used nonrestrictively—not to narrow a class or identify a particular item but to add something about an item already identified {alongside the officer trotted a toy poodle, which is hardly a typical police dog}. *Which* should be used restrictively only when it is preceded by a preposition {the situation in which we find ourselves}. Otherwise, it is almost always preceded by a comma, a parenthesis, or a dash. In British English, writers and editors seldom observe the distinction between the two words. See also 6.22.

there; their; they're. *There* denotes a place or direction {stay there}. *Their* is the possessive pronoun {all their good wishes}. *They're* is a contraction of *they are* {they're calling now}.

therefore; therefor. The words have different senses. *Therefore*, the common word, means "as a consequence; for that reason" {the evidence of guilt was slight; therefore, the jury acquitted the defendant}. *Therefor*, a legalism, means "in return for" or "for it" {he brought the unworn shirt back to the store and received a refund therefor}.

thus. This is the adverb—not *thusly*.

till. This is a perfectly good preposition and conjunction {open till 10 p.m.}. It is not a contraction of *until* and should not be written *'til*.

timbre; timber. *Timbre* is a musical term meaning tonal quality. *Timber* is the correct spelling in all other uses.

time period. See ***period of time***.

titillating. See ***tantalizing***.

tolerance; toleration. *Tolerance* is the habitual quality of being *tolerant*; *toleration* is a particular instance of being *tolerant*.

torpid. See ***turbid***.

tortious; tortuous; torturous. What is *tortious* relates to torts (civil wrongs) or to acts that give rise to legal claims for torts {tortious interference with a contract}. What is *tortuous* is full of twists and turns {a tortuous path through the woods}. What is *torturous* involves torture or severe discomfort {a torturous exam}.

toward; towards. The preferred form is without the *-s* in American English, with it in British English. The same is true for other directional words, such as *upward, downward, forward,* and *backward,* as well as *afterward*. The use of *afterwards* and *backwards* as adverbs is neither rare nor incorrect. But for the sake of consistency, it is better to stay with the simpler form.

transcript; transcription. A *transcript* is a written record, as of a trial or a radio program. *Transcription* is the act or process of creating a transcript.

trillion. See ***billion***.

triumphal; triumphant. Things are *triumphal* {a triumphal arch}, but only people feel *triumphant* {a triumphant Caesar returned to Rome}.

turbid; turgid; torpid. *Turbid* water is thick and opaque from churned-up mud {a turbid pond}; by extension *turbid* means "unclear, confused, or disturbed" {a turbid argument}. *Turgid* means "swollen," and by extension "pompous and bombastic" {turgid prose}. *Torpid* means "idle and lazy" {a torpid economy}.

unique. Reserve this word for the sense "one of a kind." Avoid it in the sense "special, unusual." Phrases such as *very unique, more unique, somewhat unique,* and so on—in which a degree is attributed to *unique*—are poor usage. See also 5.88.

unlawful; illegal; illicit; criminal. This list is in ascending order of negative connotation. An *unlawful* act may even be morally innocent (for example, letting a parking meter expire). But an *illegal* act is something society formally condemns, and an *illicit* act calls to mind moral degeneracy {illicit drug use}. Unlike *criminal,* the first three terms can apply to civil wrongs.

unorganized. See ***disorganized***.

unreadable. See ***illegible***.

upon. See ***on***.

use; usage; utilize. *Use* is usually the best choice for simplicity. *Usage* refers to a customary practice. *Utilize* is usually an overblown alternative of *use*, but it is occasionally the better choice when the distinct sense is "to use to best effect."

venal; venial. A person who is *venal* is mercenary or open to bribery {a venal government official}; a thing that is *venal* is purchasable {venal livestock}. What is *venial* is pardonable or excusable {a venial offense} {a venial error}.

verbal; oral. If something is put into words, it is *verbal*. Technically, *verbal* covers both written and spoken utterance. But if you wish to specify that something was conveyed through speech, use *oral*.

very. See ***much***.

vocation. See ***avocation***.

voluminous. See ***compendious***.

whether. Generally, use *whether* alone—not with the words *or not* tacked on {they didn't know whether to go}. The *or not* is necessary only when you mean to convey the idea of "regardless of whether" {we'll finish on time whether or not it rains}. See also ***if; whether***.

which. See ***that***.

while. *While* may substitute for *although* or *whereas*, especially if a conversational tone is desired {while many readers may disagree, the scientific community has overwhelmingly adopted the conclusions here presented}. Yet because *while* can denote either time or contrast, the word is occasionally ambiguous; when a real ambiguity exists, *although* or *whereas* is the better choice.

who; whom. Here are the traditional rules. *Who* is a nominative pronoun used as (1) the subject of a finite verb {it was Jim who bought the coffee today} or (2) a predicate nominative when it follows a linking verb {that's who}. *Whom* is an objective pronoun that may appear as (1) the object of a verb {I learned nothing about the man whom I saw} or (2) the object of a preposition {the woman to whom I owe my life}. Today there are two countervailing trends: first, there's a decided tendency to use *who* colloquially in most contexts; second, among those insecure about their grammar, there's a tendency to overcorrect oneself and use *whom* when *who* would be correct. Writers and editors of formal prose often resist the first of these; everyone should resist the second. See also 5.63.

whoever; whomever. Avoid the second unless you are certain of your grammar {give this book to whoever wants it} {I cook for whomever I love}. If you are uncertain why these examples are correct, use *anyone who* or (as in the second example) *anyone*.

who's; whose. The first is a contraction {Who's on first?}, the second a possessive {Whose life is it, anyway?}. Unlike *who* and *whom*, *whose* may refer to things as well as people {the Commerce Department, whose bailiwick includes intellectual property}. See 5.61.

whosever; whoever's. The first is correct (though increasingly rare) in formal writing {whosever bag that is, it needs to be moved out of the way}; the second is acceptable in casual usage {whoever's dog got into our garbage can, he or she should clean up the mess}.

wrack; rack. To *wrack* is to severely or completely destroy {a storm-wracked ship}. (*Wrack* is also a noun denoting wreckage {the storm's wrack}.) To *rack* is to torture by means of stretching with an instrument {rack the prisoner until he confesses} or to stretch beyond capacity {to rack one's brain}.

wreak; reek. *Wreak* means "to force (something) on" in the sense of causing damage or revenge; the past tense is *wreaked*, not *wrought*. (The latter is an archaic form of the past tense and past participle of *work*.) *Reek* can be a verb meaning "to stink" or a noun meaning "stench."

wrong; wrongful. These terms are not interchangeable. *Wrong* has two senses: (1) "immoral, unlawful" {it's wrong to bully smaller children} and (2) "improper, incorrect, unsatisfactory" {the math answers are wrong}. *Wrongful* likewise has two senses: (1) "unjust, unfair" {wrongful conduct} and (2) "unsanctioned by law; having no legal right" {it was a wrongful demand on the estate}.

yes. See ***affirmative, in the***.

your; you're. *Your* is the possessive form of *you*. *You're* is the contraction for *you are*.

Bias-Free Language

5.221 *Maintaining credibility.* Discussions of bias-free language—language that is neither sexist nor suggestive of other conscious or subconscious prejudices—have a way of descending quickly into politics. But there is a way to avoid the political quagmire: if we focus solely on maintaining credibility with a wide readership, the argument for eliminating bias from published works becomes much simpler. Biased language that is not central to the meaning of a work distracts readers, and in their eyes the work is less credible. Few texts warrant the deliberate display of linguistic biases. Nor is it ideal, however, to call attention to the supposed absence of linguistic biases, since this will also distract readers and weaken credibility.

5.222 *Gender bias.* Consider the issue of gender-neutral language. On the one hand, it is unacceptable to a great many reasonable readers to use the generic masculine pronoun (*he* in reference to no one in particular). On the other hand, it is unacceptable to a great many readers (often different readers) either to resort to nontraditional gimmicks to avoid the generic masculine (by using *he/she* or *s/he*, for example) or to use *they* as a kind of singular pronoun. Either way, credibility is lost with some readers.

5.223 *Other biases.* The same is true of other types of biases, such as slighting allusions or stereotypes based on characteristics such as race, ethnicity, disability, religion, sexual orientation, or birth or family status. Careful writers avoid language that reasonable readers might find offensive or distracting—unless the biased language is central to the meaning of the writing.

5.224 *Bias and the editor's responsibility.* A careful editor points out to authors any biased terms or approaches in the work (knowing, of course, that the bias may have been unintentional), suggests alternatives, and ensures that any biased language that is retained is retained by choice. Although some publishers prefer to avoid certain terms or specific usages in all cases, Chicago's editors do not maintain a list of words or usages considered unacceptable. Rather, they adhere to the reasoning presented here and apply it to individual cases. They consult guides to avoiding bias in writing (see bibliography) and work with authors to use the most appropriate language. What you should strive for—if you want readers to focus on your ideas and not on the political subtext—is a style that doesn't even hint at the issue. So unless you're involved in a debate about, for example, sexism, you'll probably want a style, on the one hand, that no reasonable person could call sexist and, on the other hand, that never suggests you're contorting your language to be nonsexist.

5.225 ***Nine techniques for achieving gender neutrality.*** There are many ways to achieve gender-neutral language, but it takes some thought and often some hard work. Nine methods are suggested below because no single method will work for every writer. And one method won't neatly resolve every gender-bias problem. Some of them—for example, repeating the noun or using "he or she"—will irritate readers if overused. All of them risk changing the intended meaning: though slight changes in meaning are inevitable, additional rewording may be necessary.

1. Omit the pronoun: *the programmer should update the records when data is transferred to her by the head office* becomes *the programmer should update the records when data is transferred by the head office*.
2. Repeat the noun: *a writer should be careful not to needlessly antagonize readers, because her credibility will suffer* becomes *a writer should be careful not to needlessly antagonize readers, because the writer's credibility will suffer*.
3. Use a plural antecedent: *a contestant must conduct himself with dignity at all times* becomes *contestants must conduct themselves with dignity at all times*.
4. Use an article instead of a personal pronoun: *a student accused of cheating must actively waive his right to have his guidance counselor present* becomes *a student accused of cheating must actively waive the right to have a guidance counselor present*.
5. Use the neutral singular pronoun *one*: *an actor in New York is likely to earn more than he is in Paducah* becomes *an actor in New York is likely to earn more than one in Paducah*.
6. Use the relative pronoun *who* (works best when it replaces a personal pronoun that follows *if*): *employers presume that if an applicant can't write well, he won't be a good employee* becomes *employers presume that an applicant who can't write well won't be a good employee*.
7. Use the imperative mood: *a lifeguard must keep a close watch over children while he is monitoring the pool* becomes *keep a close watch over children while monitoring the pool*.
8. Use *he or she* (sparingly): *if a complainant is not satisfied with the board's decision, then he can ask for a rehearing* becomes *if a complainant is not satisfied with the board's decision, then he or she can ask for a rehearing*.
9. Revise the clause: *a person who decides not to admit he lied will be considered honest until someone exposes his lie* becomes *a person who denies lying will be considered honest until the lie is exposed*.

5.226 ***Sex-specific labels as adjectives.*** When gender is relevant, it's acceptable to use the noun *woman* as a modifier {woman judge}. In recent decades, *woman* has been rapidly replacing *lady* in such constructions. The adjective *female* is also often used unobjectionably. In isolated contexts it may strike some readers as being dismissive or derogatory (perhaps because it's a biological term used for animals as well as humans), but when parallel references to both sexes are required, the adjectives *male* and *female* are typically the most serviceable choices {the police force has 834 male and 635 female officers}.

5.227 ***Gender-neutral singular pronouns.*** The only gender-neutral third-person singular personal pronoun in English is *it*, which doesn't refer to humans (with very limited exceptions). Clumsy artifices such as *s/he* and *(wo)man* or artificial genderless pronouns have been tried—for many years—with no success. They won't succeed. And those who use them invite credibility problems. Indefinite pronouns such as *anybody* and *someone* don't always satisfy the need for a gender-neutral alternative because they are traditionally regarded as singular antecedents that call for a third-person singular pronoun. Many people substitute the plural *they* and *their* for the singular *he* or *she*. Although *they* and *their* have become common in informal usage, neither is considered acceptable in formal writing, so unless you are given guidelines to the contrary, do not use them in a singular sense.

5.228 ***Problematic suffixes.*** The trend in American English is toward eliminating sex-specific suffixes. Words with feminine suffixes such as *-ess* and *-ette* are easily replaced with the suffix-free forms, which are increasingly accepted as applying to both men and women. For example, *author* and *testator* are preferable to *authoress* and *testatrix*. Compounds with *-man* are more problematic. The word *person* rarely functions well in such a compound; *chairperson* and *anchorperson* sound more pompous and wooden than the simpler (and correct) *chair* or *anchor*. Unless a word is established (such as *salesperson*, which dates from 1901), don't automatically substitute *-person* for *-man*. English has many alternatives that are not necessarily newly coined, including *police officer* (first recorded in 1797), *firefighter* (1903), and *mail carrier* (1788).

5.229 ***Necessary gender-specific language.*** It isn't always necessary or desirable to use gender-neutral terms and phrasings. If you're writing about something that clearly concerns only one sex (e.g., *women's studies*; *men's golf championship*) or an inherently single-sex institution (e.g., a sorority; a Masonic lodge), trying to use gender-neutral language may lead to absurd prose {be solicitous of a pregnant friend's comfort; he or she will need your support}.

5.230 ***Avoiding other biased language.*** Comments that betray a writer's conscious or unconscious biases or ignorance may cause readers to lose respect for the writer and interpret the writer's words in ways that were never intended. In general, emphasize the person, not a characteristic. A characteristic is a label. It should preferably be used as an adjective, not as a noun. Instead of referring to someone as, for instance, *a Catholic* or *a deaf-mute*, put the person first by writing *a Catholic man* or *he is Catholic*, and *a deaf-and-mute child* or *the child is deaf and mute*. Avoid irrelevant references to personal characteristics such as sex, race, ethnicity, disability, age, religion, sexual orientation, or social standing. Such pointless references may affect a reader's perception of you or the person you are writing about or both. They may also invoke a reader's biases and cloud your meaning. When it is important to mention a characteristic because it will help the reader develop a picture of the person you are writing about, use care. For instance, in the sentence *Shirley Chisholm was probably the finest African American woman member of the House of Representatives that New York has ever had*, the phrase *African American woman* may imply to some readers that Chisholm was a great representative "for a woman" but may be surpassed by many or all men, that she stands out only among African American members of Congress, or that it is unusual for a woman or an African American to hold high office. But in *Shirley Chisholm was the first African American woman to be elected to Congress and one of New York's all-time best representatives*, the purpose of the phrase *African American woman* is not likely to be misunderstood.

6 *Punctuation*

Overview 6.1

Punctuation in Relation to Surrounding Text 6.2

- *Punctuation in Relation to Closing Quotation Marks* 6.9

Periods 6.12

Commas 6.16

- *Series and the Serial Comma* 6.18
- *Commas with Relative Clauses* 6.22
- *Commas with Appositives* 6.23
- *Commas with Parenthetical and Descriptive Phrases* 6.24
- *Commas with Independent Clauses* 6.28
- *Commas with Dependent Clauses* 6.30
- *Commas with Two or More Adjectives Preceding a Noun* 6.33
- *Commas with Introductory Words and Phrases* 6.35
- *Other Uses of the Comma* 6.40

Semicolons 6.54

Colons 6.59

Question Marks 6.66

Exclamation Points 6.71

Hyphens and Dashes 6.75

- *Hyphens* 6.76
- *En Dashes* 6.78
- *Em Dashes* 6.82
- *2-Em and 3-Em Dashes* 6.90

Parentheses 6.92

Brackets and Braces 6.97

Slashes 6.103

Quotation Marks 6.111

Apostrophes 6.113

Multiple Punctuation Marks 6.116

Lists and Outline Style 6.121

Overview

6.1 ***The role of punctuation and the scope of this chapter.*** Punctuation should be governed by its function, which in ordinary text is to promote ease of reading by clarifying relationships within and between sentences. This function, although it allows for a degree of subjectivity, should in turn be governed by the consistent application of some basic principles lest the subjective element obscure meaning. The principles set forth in this chapter are based on a logical application of traditional American practice. For the special punctuation requirements of mathematics, foreign languages, source citations, bibliographies, indexes, and so on, see the appropriate chapters in this manual and consult the index.

Punctuation in Relation to Surrounding Text

6.2 ***Punctuation and italics.*** All punctuation marks should appear in the same font—roman or italic—as the main or surrounding text, except for punctuation that belongs to a title in a different font (usually italics). So, for example, the word *and*, which in this sentence is in italics, is followed by a comma in roman type; the comma, strictly speaking, does not belong to *and*, which is italicized because it is a word used as a word (see 7.58). Of course, it may be difficult to tell whether a comma is in italics or not (to say nothing of periods); for other marks it will be more evident. Readers of the online edition of this manual can look at the underlying source coding, and all those who prepare manuscripts in electronic environments will need to pay attention to this level of detail (see 2.77). In the first four examples that follow, the punctuation marks next to italic text belong with the surrounding sentence and are therefore presented in roman. In the last two examples, the two punctuation marks that belong with the italic titles—the exclamation mark following "Help" and the comma following "Eats"—are in italics (the comma following "Leaves" is in roman).

For light amusement he turns to the *Principia Mathematica*!

How can they be sure that the temperature was in fact *rising*?

The letters *a*, *b*, and *c* are often invoked as being fundamental.

I had yet to consider the central thesis of Malthus's *Essay*: the imperfectibility of humankind.

but

The Beatles' *Help!* was released long before the heyday of the music video.

I love *Eats, Shoots & Leaves*, but I would have preferred to see "and" in the title rather than the ampersand—which would allow for a serial comma after "Shoots."

For parentheses and brackets, see 6.5; for quotation marks, see 6.6. For a different approach, see 6.4.

6.3 ***Punctuation and boldface or color.*** The choice of boldface (or, by extension, type in a different color), unlike that of italics (see 6.2), is more often an aesthetic than a purely logical decision. Punctuation marks following boldface or color should be dealt with case by case, depending on how the boldface is used. In the first example, the period following "line spacing" belongs with the boldface glossary term and is therefore set in bold; the period following "leading" is part of the surrounding sentence and is therefore *not* set in bold. In the middle two examples, the punctuation next to the boldface terms belongs with them, like the first period in the first example. In the final example, the question mark belongs to the surrounding sentence and not to the boldface word.

line spacing. See **leading**.
Figure 6. Title page from an apocryphal *Second Poetics*.
For sale: three ten-year-old CPUs and five refurbished monitors.
Will the installation remain stalled until I choose **I accept**?

6.4 ***Punctuation and font—aesthetic considerations.*** According to a more traditional system, periods, commas, colons, and semicolons should appear in the same font as the word, letter, character, or symbol immediately preceding them if different from that of the main or surrounding text. In the third and fourth examples in 6.2, the commas following *a* and *b* and the colon following the Malthus title would be italic, as would the comma following the book title (*Eats, Shoots & Leaves*) in the last example. A question mark or exclamation point, however, would appear in the same font as the immediately preceding word only if it belonged to that word, as in the title *Help!* in 6.2. This system, once preferred by Chicago and still preferred by some as more aesthetically pleasing, should be reserved—if it must be used—for publications destined for print only. In electronic publications, where typeface may be determined by content as well as appearance (e.g., a book title might be tagged as such, separate from any surrounding punctuation), the more logical system described in 6.2 should be preferred.

6.5 ***Parentheses and brackets in relation to surrounding text.*** Parentheses and brackets should appear in the same font—roman or italic—as the surrounding text, not in that of the material they enclose. This system, though it may occasionally cause typefitting problems when a slanting italic letter touches a nonslanting roman parenthesis or bracket, has two main virtues: it is easy to use, and it has long been practiced. For printed works, a thin space or hair space may need to be added between overlapping characters. For electronic works, where type display will vary depending on hardware and software, no such adjustments should normally be made.

The Asian long-horned beetle (*Anoplophora glabripennis*) attacks maples.
The letter stated that my check had been "recieved [*sic*] with thanks."

When a phrase in parentheses or brackets appears on a line by itself, however, the parentheses or brackets are usually in the same font as the phrase.

6.6 ***Quotation marks in relation to surrounding text.*** Like parentheses and brackets (see 6.5), quotation marks should appear in the same font—roman or italic—as the surrounding text, which may or may not match that of the material they enclose. In the second example, the quotation marks, as part of the italicized title, are in italics.

The approach to the runway was, they reported, "*extremely dangerous*" (italics in original).
I just finished reading *Sennacherib's "Palace without Rival" at Nineveh*, by John Malcolm Russell.

As with parentheses and brackets, when a sentence or phrase in quotation marks appears on a line by itself, the quotation marks are usually in the same font as the sentence or phrase. See also 13.60.

6.7 ***Punctuation and space—one space or two?*** In typeset matter, one space, not two, should be used between two sentences—whether the first ends in a period, a question mark, an exclamation point, or a closing quotation mark or parenthesis. By the same token, one space, not two, should follow a colon. When a particular design layout calls for more space between two elements—for example, between a figure number and a caption—the design should specify the exact amount of space (e.g., em space).

6.8 ***Punctuation with URLs and e-mail addresses.*** Sentences that include an e-mail address or a uniform resource identifier such as a URL should be punctuated normally. Though angle brackets or other "wrappers" are standard in some applications, these are generally unnecessary in nor-

TABLE 6.1. Punctuation relative to closing quotation marks and parentheses or brackets

Closing mark	Double or single quotation marks*	Parentheses or brackets†
Period	Inside	Inside or outside; see 6.13
Comma	Inside	Outside
Semicolon	Outside	Outside
Colon	Outside	Outside
Question mark or exclamation point	Inside or outside; see 6.10	Inside or outside; see 6.70, 6.74
Em dash	Inside or outside; see 6.84	Outside

*See also 6.9, 6.70, 6.74. †See also 6.53, 6.96, 6.99, 6.101.

mal prose (see 6.102). Readers of print sources should assume that any punctuation at the end of an e-mail address or URL belongs to the sentence. URLs as hypertext should point to the URL, ignoring the surrounding punctuation (some applications do this automatically). For dividing e-mail addresses and URLs at the end of a line, see 7.42.

Chicago's Q&A forum, which can be found at http://www.chicagomanualofstyle .org, has attracted much constructive comment.
Write to me at grammar88@parsed-out.edu.

Punctuation in Relation to Closing Quotation Marks

6.9 ***Periods and commas in relation to closing quotation marks.*** Periods and commas precede closing quotation marks, whether double or single. (An apostrophe at the end of a word should never be confused with a closing single quotation mark; see 6.115.) This is a traditional style, in use well before the first edition of this manual (1906). For an exception, see 7.75. See also table 6.1.

Growing up, we always preferred to "bear those ills we have."
"Thus conscience does make cowards of us all," she replied.

In an alternative system, sometimes called British style (as described in *The Oxford Style Manual*; see bibliog. 1.1), single quotation marks are used, and only those punctuation points that appeared in the original material should be included within the quotation marks; all others follow the closing quotation marks. (Exceptions to the rule are widespread: periods, for example, are routinely placed inside any quotation that begins with a capital letter and forms a grammatically complete sentence.) Double quotation marks are reserved for quotations within quotations. This system or a variation may be appropriate in some works of textual criticism. See also 7.50, 7.55, 13.7–8, 13.28–29.

6.10 ***Other punctuation in relation to closing quotation marks.*** Colons and semicolons—unlike periods and commas—follow closing quotation marks; question marks and exclamation points follow closing quotation marks unless they belong within the quoted matter. (This rule applies the logic that is often absent from the US style described in 6.9.) See also table 6.1.

Take, for example, the first line of "To a Skylark": "Hail to thee, blithe spirit!"
I was invited to recite the lyrics to "Sympathy for the Devil"; instead I read from the Op-Ed page of the *New York Times*.
Which of Shakespeare's characters said, "All the world's a stage"?
but
"Timber!"
"What's the rush?" she wondered.

6.11 ***Single quotation marks next to double quotation marks.*** When single quotation marks nested within double quotation marks appear next to each other, no space need be added between the two except as a typographical nicety subject to the publisher's requirements. For example, most typesetters will use a thin space between the two marks to enhance readability (as in the print edition of this manual). In online works, a nonbreaking space should be used (as in the online edition of this manual). See also 13.28. In the example that follows, note that the period precedes the single quotation mark (see also 6.9).

"Admit it," she said. "You haven't read 'The Simple Art of Murder.' "

Periods

6.12 ***Use of the period.*** A period marks the end of a declarative or an imperative sentence. Between sentences, it is followed by a single space (see 2.9, 6.7). A period may also follow a word or phrase standing alone, as in the third example. For the many other uses of the period, consult the index.

The two faced each other in silence.
Wait here.
My answer? Never.

6.13 ***Periods in relation to parentheses and brackets.*** When an entire independent sentence is enclosed in parentheses or square brackets, the period belongs inside the closing parenthesis or bracket. When matter in parentheses or brackets, even a grammatically complete sentence, is included within another sentence, the period belongs outside (but see also 6.96). Avoid enclosing more than one complete sentence within another sentence. For the location of a period with quotation marks, see 6.9.

Fiorelli insisted on rewriting the paragraph. (His newfound ability to type was both a blessing and a curse.)
Farnsworth had left an angry message for Isadora on the mantel (she noticed it while glancing in the mirror).
"All the evidence pointed to the second location [the Lászlós' studio]."

6.14 ***When to omit a period.*** No period should follow display lines (chapter titles, subheads, and similar headings), running heads, column heads in tables, phrases used as captions (but see 3.21), datelines in correspondence, signatures, or addresses. (Likewise, a comma is sometimes omitted for aesthetic reasons at the ends of lines set in large display type; see 8.163.) A run-in subhead at the beginning of a paragraph, however, is followed by a period (see 1.54). When an expression that ends in a period (e.g., an abbreviation) falls at the end of a sentence, no additional period follows (see 6.117). For use or omission of the period in outline style, see 6.121–26. For punctuation with URLs and e-mail addresses, see 6.8.

6.15 ***Periods in ellipses and suspension points.*** For the use of an ellipsis (a series of periods) to indicate an omission in quoted material, see 13.48–56. For the use of suspension points to indicate interruptions or breaks in thought in foreign-language material, see 11.10, 11.35, 11.54, 11.81, 11.122.

Commas

6.16 ***Use of the comma.*** The comma, aside from its technical uses in mathematical, bibliographical, and other contexts, indicates the smallest break in sentence structure. Especially in spoken contexts, it usually denotes a slight pause. In formal prose, however, logical considerations come first. Effective use of the comma involves good judgment, with ease of reading the end in view.

6.17 ***Commas in pairs.*** Whenever a comma is used to set off an element (such as "1928" or "Minnesota" in the first two examples below), a second comma is required if the phrase or sentence continues beyond the element being set off. This principle applies to many of the uses for commas described in this section. An exception is made for commas within the title of a work (third example).

June 5, 1928, lives on in the memories of only a handful of us.
Sledding in Duluth, Minnesota, is facilitated by that city's hills and frigid winters.
but
Look Homeward, Angel was not the working title of the manuscript.

Series and the Serial Comma

6.18 *Serial commas.* Items in a series are normally separated by commas (but see 6.58). When a conjunction joins the last two elements in a series of three or more, a comma—known as the serial or series comma or the Oxford comma—should appear before the conjunction. Chicago strongly recommends this widely practiced usage, blessed by Fowler and other authorities (see bibliog. 1.2), since it prevents ambiguity. If the last element consists of a pair joined by *and*, the pair should still be preceded by a serial comma and the first *and* (see the last two examples below).

She took a photograph of her parents, the president, and the vice president.
Before heading out the door, she took note of the typical outlines of sweet gum, ginkgo, and elm leaves.
I want no ifs, ands, or buts.
Paul put the kettle on, Don fetched the teapot, and I made tea.
Their wartime rations included cabbage, turnips, and bread and butter.
John was singing, Jean was playing guitar, and Alan was running errands and furnishing food.

Note that the phrase *as well as* is not equivalent to *and*.

The team fielded one Mazda, two Corvettes, and three Bugattis, as well as a battered Plymouth Belvedere.
not
The team fielded one Mazda, two Corvettes, three Bugattis, as well as a battered Plymouth Belvedere.

In a series whose elements are all joined by conjunctions, no commas are needed unless the elements are long and delimiters would be helpful.

Would you prefer Mendelssohn or Schumann or Liszt?

You can turn left at the second fountain and right when you reach the temple, or turn left at the third fountain and left again at the statue of Venus, or just ask a local person how to get there.

6.19 ***Using semicolons instead of commas in a series.*** When elements in a series include internal punctuation, or when they are very long and complex, they may need to be separated by semicolons rather than by commas (see 6.58). For a simple list, however—even if it is introduced with a colon—commas are preferred.

6.20 ***Commas with "etc." and "et al."*** Traditional use dictates that the abbreviation *etc.* (*et cetera*, literally "and others of the same kind") is preceded and (unless it ends a sentence) followed by a comma when it is the final item in a series. Such equivalents as *and so forth* and *and the like* are usually treated the same way. (In formal prose, *etc.* should be avoided, though it is usually acceptable in lists and tables, in notes, and within parentheses.) See also 5.220 under *etc.*

Proper technique (with attention paid to posture, wrist position, distance from the keyboard, etc., in the later performances) is not in and of itself sufficient to explain Rubinstein's endurance.

The philosopher's population studies, classic textbooks, stray notes, and so forth, were found in the attic.

The abbreviation *et al.* (*et alia* [neut.], *et alii* [masc.], or *et aliae* [fem.], literally "and others"), whether used in regular text or (more often) in bibliographical references, should be treated like *etc.* If *et al.* follows a single item, however (e.g., "Jones et al."), it requires no preceding or following comma. Note that neither *etc.* nor *et al.* is italicized in normal prose (see the first example above).

6.21 ***Omitting serial commas before ampersands.*** When an ampersand is used instead of the word *and* (as in company names), the serial comma is omitted.

Winken, Blinken & Nod is a purveyor of nightwear.

Commas with Relative Clauses

6.22 ***Restrictive and nonrestrictive clauses—"which" versus "that."*** A relative clause is said to be restrictive if it provides information that is essential to the meaning of the sentence. Restrictive relative clauses are usually introduced by *that* (or *who/whom/whose*) and are never set off by commas from the rest of the sentence. The pronoun *that* may occasionally be omitted (but need not be) if the sentence is just as clear without it, as in the second example (before "I").

The version of the manuscript that the editors submitted to the publisher was well formatted.
The book I have just finished is due back tomorrow; the others can wait.
I prefer to share the road with drivers who focus on the road rather than on what they happen to be reading.

A relative clause is said to be nonrestrictive if it could be omitted without obscuring the identity of the noun to which it refers or otherwise changing the meaning of the rest of the sentence. Nonrestrictive relative clauses are usually introduced by *which* (or *who/whom/whose*) and are set off from the rest of the sentence by commas.

The final manuscript, which was well formatted, was submitted to the publisher on time.
Ulysses, which I finished early this morning, is due back on June 16.
I prefer to share the road with illiterate drivers, who are unlikely to read books while driving.

Although *which* can be substituted for *that* in a restrictive clause (a common practice in British English), many writers preserve the distinction between restrictive *that* (with no commas) and nonrestrictive *which* (with commas). See also 5.220 under *that; which*.

Commas with Appositives

6.23 ***Restrictive and nonrestrictive appositives.*** A word, abbreviation, phrase, or clause that is in apposition to a noun (i.e., provides an explanatory equivalent) is normally set off by commas if it is nonrestrictive—that is, if it can be omitted without obscuring the identity of the noun to which it refers.

K. Lester's only collection of poems, *An Apocryphal Miscellany*, first appeared as a series of mimeographs.
This year's poet laureate, K. Lester, spoke first.
Ursula's husband, Jan, is also a writer.

Ursula's son, Clifford, had been a student of Norman Maclean's. (Ursula has only one son.)

If, however, the word or phrase is restrictive—that is, provides essential information about the noun (or nouns) to which it refers—no commas should appear.

O'Neill's play *The Hairy Ape* was being revived. (O'Neill wrote a number of plays.)
The renowned poet and historian K. Lester scheduled a six-city tour for April.
Caligula's sister Drusilla has been the subject of much speculation. (Caligula had more than one sister.)

See also 5.21.

Commas with Parenthetical and Descriptive Phrases

6.24 ***Commas with parenthetical elements.*** If only a slight break is intended, commas should be used to set off a parenthetical element inserted into a sentence as an explanation or comment. If a stronger break is needed or if there are commas within the parenthetical element, em dashes (6.82) or parentheses (6.92) should be used.

All the test participants, in spite of our initial fears, recovered.
The Hooligan Report was, to say the least, a bombshell.
The most provocative, if not the most important, part of the statement came last.
Most children fail to consider the history behind new technologies, if they think of it at all.

6.25 ***Commas with "however," "therefore," "indeed," and so forth.*** Commas—sometimes paired with semicolons (see 6.55)—are traditionally used to set off adverbs such as *however*, *therefore*, and *indeed*. When the adverb is essential to the meaning of the clause, or if no pause is intended or desired, commas are not needed (as in the last two examples).

A truly efficient gasoline-powered engine remains, however, a pipe dream.
Indeed, not one test subject accurately predicted the amount of soup in the bowl.
but
If you cheat and are therefore disqualified, you may also risk losing your scholarship.
That was indeed the outcome of the study.

6.26 ***Commas with restrictive and nonrestrictive phrases.*** A phrase that is restrictive—that is, essential to the meaning (and often the identity) of the noun it belongs to—should not be set off by commas. A nonrestrictive phrase, however, should be enclosed in commas (or, if at the end of a sentence, preceded by a comma). See also 6.22.

The woman with the guitar over her shoulder is my sister.
but
My sister, with her guitar over her shoulder, turned to the drummer and gave the signal to begin.

6.27 ***Commas with "such as" and "including."*** The principles delineated in 6.26 apply also to phrases introduced by *such as* or *including*. Phrases introduced by these terms are set off by commas when they are used nonrestrictively (as in the first two examples below) but not when they are used restrictively (as in the last example).

The entire band, including the matutinal lead singer, overslept the noon rehearsal.
Some words, such as *matutinal* and *onomatopoetic*, are best avoided in everyday speech.
but
Words such as *matutinal* and *onomatopoetic* are best avoided in everyday speech.

Commas with Independent Clauses

6.28 ***Commas with independent clauses joined by conjunctions.*** When independent clauses are joined by *and*, *but*, *or*, *so*, *yet*, or any other conjunction, a comma usually precedes the conjunction. If the clauses are very short and closely connected, the comma may be omitted unless the clauses are part of a series. These recommendations apply equally to imperative sentences, in which the subject (*you*) is omitted but understood (as in the fifth and last examples). (For the use of a semicolon between independent clauses, see 6.54.)

We activated the alarm, but the intruder was already inside.
All watches display the time, and some of them do so accurately.
Do we want to foster creativity, or are we interested only in our intellectual property?
The bus never came, so we took a taxi.
Wait for me at the bottom of the hill on Buffalo Street, or walk up to Eddy Street and meet me next to the yield sign.

Donald cooked, Sally trimmed the tree, and Maddie and Cammie offered hors d'oeuvres.

but

Electra played the guitar and Tambora sang.

Raise your right hand and repeat after me.

6.29 ***Commas with compound predicates.*** A comma is not normally used between the parts of a compound predicate—that is, two or more verbs having the same subject, as distinct from two independent clauses (see 6.28). A comma may occasionally be needed, however, to prevent a misreading (as in the last example).

He printed out a week's worth of crossword puzzles and arranged them on his clipboard.

Kelleher tried to contact the mayor but was informed that she had stopped accepting unsolicited calls.

but

She recognized the man who entered the room, and gasped.

Commas with Dependent Clauses

6.30 ***Comma preceding main clause.*** A dependent clause that precedes a main clause should be followed by a comma.

If you accept our conditions, we shall agree to the proposal.

6.31 ***Comma following main clause.*** A dependent clause that follows a main clause should *not* be preceded by a comma if it is restrictive, that is, essential to the meaning of the main clause. For instance, in the first example below, it is *not* necessarily true that "we will agree to the proposal"; it is, however, true that "we will agree" to it "if you accept our conditions."

We will agree to the proposal if you accept our conditions.

Paul was astonished when he heard the terms.

He wasn't running because he was afraid; he was running because he was late.

If the dependent clause is merely supplementary or parenthetical, it should be preceded by a comma. Such distinctions are occasionally tenuous. In fact, as the third example below makes clear, the meaning in such cases can depend entirely on the presence or absence of a comma (compare with the third example above). If in doubt, rephrase.

I'd like the *tom yum*, if you don't mind.
At last she arrived, when the food was cold.
He didn't run, because he was afraid to move.
or
Because he was afraid to move, he didn't run.

6.32 ***"And if," "that if," and the like.*** When two conjunctions appear next to each other (e.g., *and if*, *but if*), they need not be separated by a comma. See also 6.30, 6.31.

Burton examined the documents for over an hour, and if Smedley had not intervened, the forgery would have been revealed.
They decided that if it rained, they would reschedule the game.

Commas with Two or More Adjectives Preceding a Noun

6.33 ***Commas with coordinate adjectives.*** As a general rule, when a noun is preceded by two or more adjectives that could, without affecting the meaning, be joined by *and*, the adjectives are normally separated by commas. Such adjectives, which are called coordinate adjectives, can also usually be reversed in order and still make sense. If, on the other hand, the adjectives are not coordinate—that is, if one or more of the adjectives is essential to (i.e., forms a unit with) the noun being modified—no commas are used.

Shelly had proved a faithful, sincere friend. (Shelly's friendship has proved faithful *and* sincere.)
It is going to be a long, hot, exhausting summer. (The summer is going to be long *and* hot *and* exhausting.)
She has a young, good-looking friend. (Her friend is young *and* good-looking.)
but
She has many young friends.
He has rejected traditional religious affiliations.
She opted for an inexpensive quartz watch.

6.34 ***Commas with repeated adjectives.*** When an adjective is repeated before a noun, a comma normally appears between the pair.

Many, many people have enjoyed the book.

Commas with Introductory Words and Phrases

6.35 ***Commas with introductory participial phrases.*** An introductory participial phrase should be set off by a comma unless the sentence is inverted and the phrase immediately precedes the verb.

Exhilarated by the morning's work, she skipped lunch and headed for the ocean.
Failing in their quest, the team resolved to train harder in the off-season.
but
Running along behind the wagon was the archduke himself!

6.36 ***Commas with introductory adverbial phrases.*** An introductory adverbial phrase is often set off by a comma but need not be unless misreading is likely. Shorter adverbial phrases are less likely to merit a comma than longer ones.

After reading the note, Henrietta turned pale.
On the other hand, his vices could be considered virtues.
After 1956 such complaints about poor fidelity became far less common.
but
Before eating, the members of the committee met in the assembly room.
To Anthony, Blake remained an enigma.

A comma should *not* be used if the introductory adverbial phrase immediately precedes the verb it modifies.

Before the footlights stood one of the most notorious rakes of the twenty-first century.

6.37 ***Commas with "oh" and "ah."*** A comma usually follows an exclamatory *oh* or *ah* unless it is followed by an exclamation mark or forms part of a phrase (e.g., "oh boy," "ah yes"). No comma follows vocative *oh* or (mainly poetic and largely archaic) *O*. See also 7.45.

Oh, you're right!
Ah, here we are at last!
Oh no! Ah yes! Oh yeah?

Oh mighty king!
"O wild West Wind . . ."

6.38 ***Commas with direct address.*** A comma is used to set off names or words used in direct address and informal correspondence (in formal correspondence, a colon usually follows the name).

Ms. Jones, please come in.
James, your order is ready.
I am not here, my friends, to discuss personalities.
Hello, Ms. Philips.
Dear Judy, . . .

6.39 ***"Yes," "no," and the like.*** A comma should follow an introductory *yes*, *no*, *well*, and the like, except in certain instances more likely to be encountered in informal prose or dialogue.

Yes, it is true that 78 percent of the subjects ate 50 percent more than they reported.
No, neither scenario improved the subjects' accuracy.
Well then, we shall have to take a vote.
but
No you will not!

Other Uses of the Comma

6.40 ***Commas with "not" phrases.*** When a phrase beginning with *not* is interjected in order to clarify a particular noun, commas should be used to set off the phrase. See also 6.41.

We hoped the mayor herself, not her assistant, would attend the meeting.
It's you they want, not him.

6.41 ***Commas with "not . . . but," "not only . . . but," and the like.*** With an interjected phrase of the type *not . . . but* or *not only . . . but*, commas are usually unnecessary.

They marched to Washington not only armed with petitions and determined to get their senators' attention but also hoping to demonstrate their solidarity with one another.
Being almost perfectly ambidextrous, she wore not one watch but two.

If, however, such a phrase seems to require special emphasis or clarification (usually a matter of editorial judgment), commas may be used to set off the *not* phrase. Alternatively, a dash may be used in place of the first comma.

She was in the habit of placing her orders months ahead of the competition—not only as a matter of personal pride, but also to bolster her credibility as an early adopter.

6.42 ***Commas with "the more," "the less," and so on.*** A comma is customarily used between clauses of *the more . . . the more* type. Shorter phrases of that type, however, rarely merit commas.

The more I discover about the workings of mechanical movements, the less I seem to care about the holy grail of perfectly accurate timekeeping.
but
The more the merrier.

6.43 ***Commas with "that is," "namely," "for example," and similar expressions.*** Expressions of the type *that is* are traditionally followed by a comma. They may be preceded by an em dash or a semicolon, or the entire phrase they introduce may be enclosed in parentheses or em dashes.

There are simple alternatives to the stigmatized plastic shopping bag—namely, reusable cloth bags and foldable carts.
The committee (that is, its more influential members) wanted to drop the matter.
Keesler managed to change the subject; that is, he introduced a tangential issue.
Bones from various small animals—for example, a squirrel, a cat, a pigeon, and a muskrat—were found in the doctor's cabinet.

When *or* is used in a sense analogous to *that is* (to mean "in other words"), the phrase it introduces is usually set off by commas.

The compass stand, or binnacle, must be situated within the helmsman's field of vision.

The abbreviations *i.e.* ("that is") and *e.g.* ("for example"), if used in formal writing, should be confined to parentheses or notes and followed by a comma.

The most noticeable difference between male and female ginkgo trees (i.e., the presence of berries in the latter) is also the species' most controversial feature.

6.44 ***Commas between homonyms.*** For ease of reading and subject to editorial discretion, two words that are spelled alike but have different functions may be separated by a comma if such clarification seems desirable.

Let us march in, in twos.
Whatever is, is good.
but
"It depends on what *means* means."

6.45 ***Commas with dates.*** In the month-day-year style of dates, commas must be used to set off the year. In the day-month-year system—useful in material that requires many full dates (and standard in British English)—no commas are needed. Where month and year only are given, or a specific day (such as a holiday) with a year, neither system uses a comma. For dates used adjectivally, see 5.82. See also 9.30–37. For the year-month-day (ISO) date style, see 9.37.

The performance took place on February 2, 2006, at the State Theatre in Ithaca.
Bradford gradually came to accept the verdict. (See his journal entries of 6 October 1999 and 4 January 2000.)
In March 2008 she turned seventy-five.
On Thanksgiving Day 1998 they celebrated their seventy-fifth anniversary.

6.46 ***Commas with addresses and place-names in text.*** Commas are used to set off the individual elements in addresses or place-names that are run in to the text. In a mailing address, commas should be used as sparsely as possible (e.g., no comma appears between a street name and an abbreviation such as SW or before a postal code; see first example); if in doubt, consult the applicable postal service. For place-names used adjectivally, see 5.67.

Proofs were sent to the author at 743 Olga Drive NE, Ashtabula, OH 44044, on May 2.
Waukegan, Illinois, is not far from the Wisconsin border.
The plane landed in Kampala, Uganda, that evening.

Some institutional names include place-names set off by commas. When such a name appears in the middle of a clause, a second comma is required to set off the place-name. See also 6.81.

California State University, Northridge, has an enrollment of . . .
but
The University of Wisconsin–Madison has an enrollment of . . .

6.47 ***"Jr.," "Sr.," and the like.*** Commas are not required around *Jr.* and *Sr.*, and they are never used to set off II, III, and the like when these are used as part of a name. In an inverted name, however (as in an index; see 16.41), a comma is required before such an element, which comes last.

John Doe Sr. continues to cast a shadow over his son.
Jason Deer III has turned over stewardship of the family business to his cousin.
but
Doe, John, Sr.
Stag, Jason, III

If commas must be used with *Jr.* or *Sr.*, rephrase as needed to avoid the possessive.

6.48 ***"Inc.," "Ltd.," and the like.*** Commas are not required around *Inc.*, *Ltd.*, and such as part of a company's name. A particular company may use such commas in its corporate documentation; articles and books about such companies, however, should generally opt for a consistent style rather than make exceptions for particular cases.

QuartzMove Inc. was just one such company named in the suit.

6.49 ***Commas to indicate elision.*** A comma is often used to indicate the omission of a word or words readily understood from the context.

In Illinois there are seventeen such schools; in Ohio, twenty; in Indiana, thirteen.
Thousands rushed to serve him in victory; in defeat, none.

The comma may be omitted if the elliptical construction is clear without it.

One student excels at composition, another at mathematics, and the third at sports.
Jasper missed her and she him.

6.50 ***Commas with quotations.*** Material quoted in the form of dialogue or from text is traditionally introduced with a comma (but see 6.63, 13.17). If a quotation is introduced by *that*, *whether*, or a similar conjunction, no comma is needed.

It was Thoreau who wrote, "One generation abandons the enterprises of another like stranded vessels."
She replied, "I hope you aren't referring to us."
Was it Stevenson who said that "the cruelest lies are often told in silence"?
He is now wondering whether "to hold, as 'twere, the mirror up to nature."

For the location of a comma in relation to closing quotation marks, see 6.9. For quoted maxims and proverbs, see 6.51. For detailed discussion and illustration of the use or omission of commas before and after quoted material, including dialogue, see 13.18, 13.48–56, and the examples throughout chapter 13.

6.51 *Commas with maxims and proverbs.* With maxims, proverbs, mottoes, and other familiar expressions, commas are used or omitted in the same way as with appositives (6.23), unless an expression is being attributed directly to a speaker or writer (in which case the rules in 6.50 and 13.18 apply). Whether such expressions are enclosed in quotation marks depends largely on the syntax of the sentence in which they appear. See also 8.197.

The motto "All for one and one for all" appears over the door.
Tom's favorite proverb, "A rolling stone gathers no moss," proved wrong.
It is untrue that a rolling stone gathers no moss.

6.52 *Commas with questions.* A question is sometimes included within another sentence either directly or indirectly—not as a quotation but as part of the sentence as a whole. A direct question (unless it comes at the beginning of a sentence) is usually introduced by a comma. A direct question may take an initial capital letter if it is relatively long or has internal punctuation.

Suddenly he asked himself, where am I headed?
The question on everyone's mind was, how are we going to tell her?
Legislators had to be asking themselves, Can the fund be used for the current emergency, or must it remain dedicated to its original purpose?

If the result seems awkward, rephrase as an indirect question. An indirect question does not require a question mark, nor does it need to be set off with a comma. Indirect questions are never capitalized (except at the beginning of a sentence). See also 6.66–70.

Suddenly he asked himself where he was headed.
The question of how to tell her was on everyone's mind.
Ursula wondered why her watch had stopped ticking.
Where to find a reliable clock is the question of the hour.

6.53 *Commas relative to parentheses and brackets.* When the context calls for a comma at the end of material in parentheses or brackets, the comma should follow the closing parenthesis or bracket. A comma never precedes a closing parenthesis. (For its rare appearance before an opening parenthesis, see the examples in 6.123.) Rarely, a comma may appear inside and immediately before a closing bracket as part of an editorial interpolation (as in the last example; see also 13.57).

After several drummers had tried out for the part (the last having destroyed the kit), the band decided that a drum machine was their steadiest option.

Her delivery, especially when she would turn to address the audience (almost as if to spot a long-lost friend), was universally praised.

"Conrad told his assistant [Martin], who was clearly exhausted, to rest."

"The contents of the vault included fennel seeds, tweezers, [straight-edged razors,] and empty Coca-Cola cans."

Semicolons

6.54 ***Use of the semicolon.*** In regular prose, a semicolon is most commonly used between two independent clauses not joined by a conjunction to signal a closer connection between them than a period would.

She spent much of her free time immersed in the ocean; no mere water-*resistant* watch would do.

Though a gifted writer, Miqueas has never bothered to master the semicolon; he insists that half a colon is no colon at all.

For the use of the semicolon in index entries, see 16.96, 16.17. For its use in parenthetical text citations, see 15.29. For its use with a second subtitle of a work, see 14.98.

6.55 ***Semicolons with "however," "therefore," "indeed," and the like.*** Certain adverbs, when they are used to join two independent clauses, should be preceded by a semicolon rather than a comma. These transitional adverbs include *however*, *thus*, *hence*, *indeed*, *accordingly*, *besides*, *therefore*, and sometimes *then* (see also 6.56). A comma usually follows the adverb but may be omitted if the sentence seems just as effective without it (see also 6.36).

The accuracy of Jesse's watch was never in question; besides, he was an expert at intuiting the time of day from the position of the sun and stars.

Kallista was determined not to miss anything on her voyage; accordingly, she made an appointment with her ophthalmologist.

The trumpet player developed a painful cold sore; therefore plans for a third show were scrapped.

6.56 ***Semicolons with "that is," "for example," "namely," and the like.*** A semicolon may be used before expressions such as *that is*, *for example*, or *namely* when they introduce an independent clause. For an example, see 6.43. See also 6.55.

6.57 ***Semicolons before a conjunction.*** Normally, an independent clause introduced by a conjunction is preceded by a comma (see 6.28). In formal prose, a semicolon may be used instead—either to effect a stronger, more dramatic separation between clauses or when the second independent clause has internal punctuation.

Frobisher had always assured his grandson that the house would be his; yet there was no provision for this bequest in his will.

Garrett had insisted on remixing the track; but the engineer's demands for overtime pay, together with the band's reluctance, persuaded him to accept the original mix.

6.58 ***Semicolons in a complex series.*** When items in a series themselves contain internal punctuation, separating the items with semicolons can aid clarity. If ambiguity seems unlikely, commas may be used instead (see 6.18). See also 6.123.

The membership of the international commission was as follows: France, 4; Germany, 5; Great Britain, 1; Italy, 3; United States, 7.

The defendant, in an attempt to mitigate his sentence, pleaded that he had recently, on doctor's orders, gone off his medications; that his car—which, incidentally, he had won in the late 1970s on *Let's Make a Deal*—had spontaneously caught on fire; and that he had not eaten for several days.

but

She decided to buy three watches—an atomic watch for travel within the United States, a solar-powered, water-resistant quartz for international travel, and an expensive self-winding model for special occasions.

Colons

6.59 ***Use of the colon.*** A colon introduces an element or a series of elements illustrating or amplifying what has preceded the colon. Between independent clauses it functions much like a semicolon, and in some cases either mark may work as well as the other; use a colon sparingly, however, and *only* to emphasize that the second clause illustrates or amplifies the first. (The colon should generally convey the sense of "as follows.") The colon may sometimes be used instead of a period to introduce a series of related sentences (as in the third example below).

The watch came with a choice of three bands: stainless steel, plastic, or leather.

They even relied on a chronological analogy: just as the Year II had overshadowed 1789, so the October Revolution had eclipsed that of February.

Yolanda faced a conundrum: She could finish the soup, pretending not to care that what she had thought until a moment ago was a vegetable broth was in fact made from chicken. She could feign satiety and thank the host for a good meal. Or she could use this opportunity to assert her preference for a vegan diet.

For use of the em dash instead of a colon, see 6.82. For the use of colons with subtitles, see 14.97. For the use of colons in indexes, see 16.95. For other uses of the colon—in source citations, URLs, mathematical expressions, and other settings—consult the index or search the online edition of this manual.

6.60 ***Space after colon.*** In typeset matter, no more than one space should follow a colon. Further, in some settings—as in a source citation between a volume and page number with no intervening date or issue number (see 14.186), a biblical citation, or a ratio—*no* space should follow a colon. See also 6.7.

6.61 ***Lowercase or capital letter after a colon.*** When a colon is used within a sentence, as in the first two examples in 6.59, the first word following the colon is lowercased unless it is a proper name. When a colon introduces two or more sentences (as in the third example in 6.59), when it introduces a speech in dialogue or an extract (as in the examples in 6.63), or when it introduces a direct question, the first word following it is capitalized.

6.62 ***Colons with "as follows" and other introductory phrases.*** A colon is normally used after *as follows*, *the following*, and similar expressions. (For lists, see 6.121–26.)

The steps are as follows: first, make grooves for the seeds; second, sprinkle the seeds; third, push the earth back over the grooves; fourth, water generously.

Kenzie's results yield the following hypotheses: First, . . . Second, . . . Third, . . .

6.63 *Colons to introduce speech or quotations.* A colon is often used to introduce speech in dialogue.

Michael: The incident has already been reported.
Timothy: Then, sir, all is lost!

A colon may also be used instead of a comma to introduce a quotation, either where the syntax of the introduction requires it or to more formally introduce the quotation. For the use of the comma with quotations, see 6.50. See also 13.17.

Julian Duguid, author of *Green Hell* (1931), starts his book boldly: "When a man yields to the urge of Ishmael . . ."

6.64 *Colons with formal direct address.* At the beginning of a speech or a formal communication, a colon usually follows the identification of those addressed. For use of a comma, see 6.38.

Ladies and Gentlemen:
To Whom It May Concern:
Dear Credit and Collections Manager:

6.65 *Some common misuses of colons.* Many writers assume—wrongly—that a colon is always needed before a series or a list. In fact, if a colon intervenes in what would otherwise constitute a grammatical sentence—even if the introduction appears on a separate line, as in a list (see 6.121–26)—it is probably being used inappropriately. A colon, for example, should *not* be used before a series that serves as the object of a verb. When in doubt, apply this test: to merit a colon, the words that introduce a series or list must themselves constitute a grammatically complete sentence.

The menagerie included cats, pigeons, newts, and deer ticks.
not
The menagerie included: cats, pigeons, newts, and deer ticks.

Nor should a colon normally be used after *namely*, *for example*, and similar expressions (see 6.43).

Question Marks

6.66 *Use of the question mark.* The question mark, as its name suggests, is used to indicate a direct question. It may also be used to indicate editorial doubt (e.g., regarding a date or facts of publication; see 14.138) or (occasionally) at the end of a declarative or imperative sentence in order to express surprise, disbelief, or uncertainty. See also 6.72, 6.116, 6.118.

Who will represent the poor?
Thomas Kraftig (1610?–66) was the subject of the final essay.
This is your reply?

6.67 ***Question mark within a sentence.*** A question mark is used to mark the end of a direct question within a sentence. If the question does not begin the sentence, it need not start with a capital letter (but see 6.52).

Is it worth the risk? he wondered.

For the omission of a comma following a question mark, see 6.119.

6.68 ***Indirect questions.*** An indirect question never takes a question mark. See also 6.52.

He wondered whether it was worth the risk.
How the two could be reconciled was the question on everyone's mind.

When a question within a sentence consists of a single word, such as *who*, *when*, *how*, or *why*, a question mark may be omitted, and the word is sometimes italicized.

She asked herself why.
The question was no longer *how* but *when*.

6.69 ***Requests as questions.*** A request disguised as a question does not require a question mark. Such formulations can usually be reduced to the imperative.

Would you kindly respond by March 1.
or
Please respond by March 1.

6.70 ***Question marks in relation to surrounding text and punctuation.*** A question mark should be placed inside quotation marks, parentheses, or brackets only when it is part of (i.e., applies to) the quoted or parenthetical matter. See also 6.10, 6.120.

The ambassador asked, "Has the Marine Corps been alerted?"
Why was Farragut trembling when he said, "I'm here to open an inquiry"?

Emily (had we met before?) winked at me.
Why did she tell him only on the morning of his departure (March 18)?
"What do you suppose he had in mind," inquired Newman, "when he said, 'You are all greater fools than I thought'?"

Exclamation Points

6.71 ***Use of the exclamation point.*** An exclamation point (which should be used sparingly to be effective) marks an outcry or an emphatic or ironic comment. See also 6.116, 6.118.

Heads up!
The procedure resulted in a 3 percent increase—a far cry from the 50 percent predicted by the doomsayers!

6.72 ***Exclamation rather than question.*** A sentence in the form of a direct question can often be styled as an exclamation simply by using an exclamation point rather than a question mark.

How could you possibly believe that!
When will I ever learn!

6.73 ***Exclamation point as editorial protest or amusement.*** Writers and editors should be aware that an exclamation point added in brackets to quoted matter to indicate editorial protest or amusement is likely to be interpreted as contemptuous; unless such a sentiment is intended, this device should be avoided. The Latin expression *sic* ("thus") should be reserved to indicate an error in the source that might be taken as an error of transcription. See 13.59.

6.74 ***Exclamation points with quotation marks, parentheses, or brackets.*** An exclamation point should be placed inside quotation marks, parentheses, or brackets only when it is part of the quoted or parenthetical matter.

The performer walked off the stage amidst cries of "Brava!"
She actually wants me to believe the manufacturer's claim that her watch is "water resistant to 300 meters"!
Alex Ramirez (I could have had a stroke!) repeated the whole story.

Hyphens and Dashes

6.75 ***Hyphens and dashes compared.*** Hyphens and the various dashes all have their specific appearance (shown below) and uses (discussed in the following paragraphs). The hyphen, the en dash, and the em dash are the most commonly used. Though many readers may not notice the difference—especially between an en dash and a hyphen—correct use of the different types is a sign of editorial precision and care. These characters are easy enough to create with modern software, but publications must be proofread carefully for any conversion errors along the way from manuscript to published work. See also 2.12, 2.13, 2.93.

hyphen -   en dash –   em dash —   2-em dash ——   3-em dash ———

Hyphens

6.76 ***Hyphens in compound words.*** The use of the hyphen in compound words and names and in word division is discussed in 5.91 and in chapter 7, especially 7.31–43 and 7.77–85. See also 6.80.

6.77 ***Hyphens as separators.*** A hyphen is used to separate numbers that are not inclusive, such as telephone numbers, social security numbers, and ISBNs. (For hyphens with dates, see 9.37.) It is also used to separate letters when a word is spelled out letter by letter, in dialogue, in reference to American Sign Language (see 11.144–54), and elsewhere.

1-800-621-2376 *or* (1-800) 621-2376
0-226-10389-7
"My name is Phyllis; that's p-h-y-l-l-i-s."
A proficient signer can fingerspell C-O-L-O-R-A-D-O in less than two seconds.

Hyphens can also appear in URLs and e-mail addresses. A hyphen must not be added to such a string when it breaks at the end of a line (see 2.12, 7.42).

En Dashes

6.78 ***En dash as "to."*** The principal use of the en dash is to connect numbers and, less often, words. With continuing numbers—such as dates, times, and page numbers—it signifies *up to and including* (or *through*). For the sake of parallel construction, the word *to*, never the en dash, should be used if the word *from* precedes the first element in such a pair; similarly, *and*, never the en dash, should be used if *between* precedes the first element.

The years 1993–2000 were heady ones for the computer literate.
For documentation and indexing, see chapters 14–16.
In Genesis 6:13–21 we find God's instructions to Noah.
Join us on Thursday, 11:30 a.m.–4:00 p.m., to celebrate the New Year.
I have blocked out December 2009–March 2010 to complete my manuscript.
Her articles appeared in *Postwar Journal* (3 November 1945–4 February 1946).
but
She was in college from 1998 to 2002 (*not* from 1998–2002).

In other contexts, such as with scores and directions, the en dash signifies, more simply, *to*.

The London–Paris train leaves at two o'clock.
On November 20, 1966, Green Bay defeated Chicago, 13–6.
The legislature voted 101–13 to adopt the resolution.

For more on dates and times, see 9.30–37, 9.38–41. For more on number ranges, see 9.60. For the slash, see 6.105.

6.79 ***En dash with an unfinished number range.*** An en dash may be used to indicate a number range that is ongoing—for example, to indicate the dates of a serial publication or to give the birth date of a living person. No space intervenes between the en dash and the mark of punctuation that follows.

The Chicago translation of *The Mahābhārata* (1973–) is projected to run to ten volumes.
Jack Stag (1950–) *or* Jack Stag (b. 1950)

6.80 ***En dashes with compound adjectives.*** The en dash can be used in place of a hyphen in a compound adjective when one of its elements consists of an open compound or when both elements consist of hyphenated compounds (see 7.78). This editorial nicety may go unnoticed by the majority of readers; nonetheless, it is intended to signal a more comprehensive link than a hyphen would. It should be used sparingly, and only when a more elegant solution is unavailable. As the first two examples illustrate, the distinction is most helpful with proper compounds, whose limits are established within the larger context by capitalization. The relationship in the third example, though clear enough, depends to some small degree on an en dash that many readers will perceive as a hyphen connecting *music* and *influenced*. The relationships in the fourth example, though also clear enough, are less awkwardly conveyed with a comma.

the post–World War II years
Chuck Berry–style lyrics
country music–influenced lyrics (*or* lyrics influenced by country music)
a quasi-public–quasi-judicial body (*or, better,* a quasi-public, quasi-judicial body)

A single word or prefix should be joined to a hyphenated compound by another hyphen rather than an en dash; if the result is awkward, reword.

non-English-speaking peoples
a two-thirds-full cup (*or, better,* a cup that is two-thirds full)

An abbreviated compound is treated as a single word, so a hyphen, not an en dash, is used in such phrases as "US-Canadian relations" (Chicago's sense of the en dash does not extend to *between*).

6.81 ***Other uses for the en dash.*** The en dash is sometimes used as a minus sign, but minus signs and en dashes are distinct characters (defined by the Unicode standard as U+2212 and U+2013, respectively; see 11.2, 12.9). Both the characters themselves and the spacing around them may differ; moreover, substituting any character for another may hinder searches in electronic publications. Thus it is best to use the correct character, especially in mathematical copy. In certain scientific disciplines, the en dash may sometimes be used where one would normally expect a hyphen (see *Scientific Style and Format*; bibliog. 1.1). Some universities that have more than one campus use the en dash to link the campus location to the name of the university.

the University of Wisconsin–Madison
the University of Wisconsin–Milwaukee

Em Dashes

6.82 ***Em dashes instead of commas, parentheses, or colons.*** The em dash, often simply called the dash, is the most commonly used and most versatile of the dashes. Em dashes are used to set off an amplifying or explanatory element and in that sense can function as an alternative to parentheses (second and third examples), commas (fourth and fifth examples), or a colon (first example)—especially when an abrupt break in thought is called for.

It was a revival of the most potent image in modern democracy—the revolutionary idea.
The influence of three impressionists—Monet, Sisley, and Degas—is obvious in her work.
The chancellor—he had been awake half the night—came down in an angry mood.
She outlined the strategy—a strategy that would, she hoped, secure the peace.
My friends—that is, my former friends—ganged up on me.

To avoid confusion, the em dash should never be used within or immediately following another element set off by an em dash (or pair of em dashes). Use parentheses or commas instead.

The Whipplesworth conference—which had already been interrupted by three demonstrations (the last bordering on violence)—was adjourned promptly.
or
The Whipplesworth conference—which had already been interrupted by three demonstrations, the last bordering on violence—was adjourned promptly.

6.83 ***Em dash between noun and pronoun.*** An em dash is occasionally used to set off an introductory noun, or a series of nouns, from a pronoun that introduces the main clause.

Consensus—that was the will-o'-the-wisp he doggedly pursued.
Broken promises, petty rivalries, and false rumors—such were the obstacles he encountered.
Darkness, thunder, a sudden scream—nothing alarmed the child.
Kingston, who first conceived the idea; Barber, who organized the fundraising campaign; and West, who conducted the investigation—those were the women most responsible for the movement's early success.

6.84 ***Em dashes to indicate sudden breaks.*** An em dash or a pair of em dashes may indicate a sudden break in thought or sentence structure or an interruption in dialogue. (Where a faltering rather than sudden break is intended, suspension points may be used; see 13.39.)

"Will he—can he—obtain the necessary signatures?" asked Mill.
"Well, I don't know," I began tentatively. "I thought I might—"
"Might what?" she demanded.

If the break belongs to the surrounding sentence rather than to the quoted material, the em dashes must appear outside the quotation marks.

> "Someday he's going to hit one of those long shots, and"—his voice turned huffy—"I won't be there to see it."

6.85 ***Em dashes with "that is," "namely," "for example," and similar expressions.*** An em dash may be used before expressions such as *that is* or *namely*. For examples, see 6.43; see also 6.56.

6.86 ***Em dashes in place of commas.*** In modern usage, if the context calls for an em dash where a comma would ordinarily separate a dependent clause from an independent clause, the comma is omitted. Likewise, if an em dash is used at the end of quoted material to indicate an interruption, the comma can be safely omitted before the words that identify the speaker.

> Because the data had not been fully analyzed—let alone collated—the publication of the report was delayed.
>
> "I assure you, we shall never—" Sylvia began, but Mark cut her short.

6.87 ***Em dashes with other punctuation.*** In modern usage, a question mark or an exclamation point—but never a comma, a colon, or a semicolon, and rarely a period (see 14.46)—may precede an em dash.

> Without further warning—but what could we have done to stop her?—she left the plant, determined to stop the union in its tracks.
>
> Only if—heaven forbid!—you lose your passport should you call home.

6.88 ***Em dashes in lieu of quotation marks.*** Em dashes are occasionally used instead of quotation marks to set off dialogue (à la writers in some European languages). Each speech starts a new paragraph. No space follows the dash.

> —Will he obtain the necessary signatures?
>
> —Of course he will!

6.89 ***Em dashes in indexes.*** For the use of em dashes in an index, see 16.27.

2-Em and 3-Em Dashes

6.90 ***2-em dash.*** A 2-em dash represents a missing word or part of a word, either omitted to disguise a name (or occasionally an expletive) or else missing from or illegible in quoted or reprinted material. When a whole word is missing, space appears on both sides of the dash. When only part of a word is missing, no space appears between the dash and the existing part (or parts) of the word; when the dash represents the end of a word, a space follows it (unless a period or other punctuation immediately follows). See also 7.62, 13.57.

"The region gives its —— to the language spoken there."
Admiral N—— and Lady R—— were among the guests.
David H——h [Hirsch?] voted aye.

Although a 2-em dash sometimes represents material to be supplied, it should not be confused with a blank line to be filled in; a blank in a form should appear as an underscore (e.g., ____).

6.91 ***3-em dash.*** In a bibliography, a 3-em dash followed by a period represents the same author or editor named in the preceding entry (see 14.63–67, 15.17–19).

McCloskey, Deirdre N. *The Bourgeois Virtues*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2006.
———. *Crossing: A Memoir*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1999.

Parentheses

6.92 ***Use of parentheses.*** Parentheses—stronger than a comma and similar to the dash—are used to set off material from the surrounding text. Like dashes but unlike commas, parentheses can set off text that has no grammatical relationship to the rest of the sentence.

He suspected that the noble gases (helium, neon, etc.) could produce a similar effect.
Intelligence tests (e.g., the Stanford-Binet) are no longer widely used.
Our final sample (collected under difficult conditions) contained an impurity.
Wexford's analysis (see chapter 3) is more to the point.
Dichtung und Wahrheit (also known as *Wahrheit und Dichtung*) has been translated as *Poetry and Truth*.
The disagreement between Johns and Evans (its origins have been discussed elsewhere) ultimately destroyed the organization.

For parenthetical references to a list of works cited, see 15.20–30. For parenthetical references following quoted material, see 13.62–70. For parentheses in notes and bibliographies, see chapter 14. For parentheses in mathematics, see chapter 12, especially 12.26–35. For roman versus italic type, see 6.5.

6.93 ***Parentheses for glosses or translations.*** Parentheses are used to enclose glosses of unfamiliar terms or translations of foreign terms—or, if the term is given in English, to enclose the original word. In quoted matter, brackets should be used (see 6.97). See also 7.50, 11.6.

A drop folio (a page number printed at the foot of a page) is useful on the opening page of a chapter.

The term you should use for 1,000,000,000 is *mil millones* (billion), not *billón* (trillion).

German has two terms for eating—one for the way humans eat (*essen*) and another for the way animals eat (*fressen*).

6.94 ***Parentheses to enclose numbers or letters.*** Parentheses are used to enclose numerals or letters marking divisions in lists that are run in to the text (see 6.123) or to mark certain sublevels in an outline (see 6.126).

6.95 ***Parentheses within parentheses.*** Although the use of parentheses within parentheses (usually for bibliographic purposes) is permitted in some publications—especially in law—Chicago prefers brackets within parentheses (see 6.99). (British style is to use parentheses within parentheses.) For parentheses in mathematics, see 12.26.

6.96 ***Parentheses with other punctuation.*** An opening parenthesis should be preceded by a comma or a semicolon only in an enumeration (see 6.123); a closing parenthesis should never be preceded by a comma, a semicolon, or a colon. A question mark, an exclamation point, and closing quotation marks precede a closing parenthesis if they belong to the parenthetical matter; they follow it if they belong to the surrounding sentence. A period precedes the closing parenthesis if the entire sentence is in parentheses; otherwise it follows. (Avoid enclosing more than one sentence within another sentence; see 6.13.) Parentheses may appear back to back (with a space in between) if they enclose entirely unrelated material; sometimes, however, such material can be enclosed in a single set of parentheses, usually separated by a semicolon. See also table 6.1. For parentheses in documentation, see chapters 14 and 15.

Having entered (on tiptoe), we sat down on the nearest seats we could find.
Come on in (quietly, please!) and take a seat.
On display were the watchmakers' five latest creations (all of which Shellahan coveted).
Five new watches were on display. (Shellahan coveted the battery-powered quartz model.)
Strabo is probably referring to instruction (διδασκαλία) (Jones et al. 2008).

Brackets and Braces

6.97 ***Use of square brackets.*** Square brackets (in the United States usually just called brackets) are used in scholarly prose mainly to enclose material—usually added by someone other than the original writer—that does not form a part of the surrounding text. Specifically, in quoted matter, reprints, anthologies, and other nonoriginal material, square brackets enclose editorial interpolations, explanations, translations of foreign terms, or corrections. Sometimes the bracketed material replaces rather than amplifies the original word or words. For brackets in mathematical copy, see 12.26. See also 13.57–61.

"They [the free-silver Democrats] asserted that the ratio could be maintained."
"Many CF [cystic fibrosis] patients have been helped by the new therapy."
Satire, Jebb tells us, "is the only [form] that has a continuous development."
[This was written before the discovery of the Driscoll manuscript.—Ed.]

If quoted matter already includes brackets of its own, the editor should so state in the source citation (e.g., "brackets in the original"); see 13.60 for an analogous situation with italics.

6.98 ***Square brackets in translated text.*** In a translated work, square brackets are sometimes used to enclose a word or phrase in the original language to avoid ambiguity. (Translators should use this device sparingly.)

The differences between society [*Gesellschaft*] and community [*Gemeinschaft*] will now be analyzed.

6.99 ***Square brackets for parentheses within parentheses.*** Chicago prefers square brackets as parentheses within parentheses, usually for bibliographic purposes. For mathematical groupings, see 12.26.

(For further discussion see Richardson's excellent analysis [1999] and Danneberger's survey [2000].)

6.100 ***Square brackets in phonetics.*** Square brackets may be used to enclose a phonetic transcription.

The verb *entretenir* [ãtrətnir], like *keep*, is used in many idioms.

6.101 ***Square brackets with other punctuation.*** For brackets with other punctuation, most of the same principles apply as for parentheses (see 6.96). For their use in enclosing editorial interpolations, however, the appearance of other punctuation and its position relative to the brackets will depend on the source.

The original letter, the transcription of which was incomplete, probably read as follows: "[Dear Jacob,] It's been seventy years since I last set eyes on you [. . .]"

6.102 ***Angle brackets and braces.*** The term *angle brackets* is used here to denote the mathematical symbols for less than (<) and greater than (>) paired to work as delimiters (<. . .>). (True mathematical angle brackets, ⟨ and ⟩, not readily available from most keyboards, are reserved for mathematical notation; see, for example, 12.55.) Angle brackets are most often used to enclose tags in certain markup languages (e.g., XML). By extension, some manuscript editors opt for angle brackets—unlikely to appear elsewhere in a typical word-processed manuscript—to enclose generic instructions for typesetting (see 2.78). Although angle brackets are sometimes used to set off URLs and e-mail addresses (e.g., in message headers in e-mail applications), Chicago discourages this practice for regular prose. Angle brackets are also occasionally used instead of brackets in textual studies to indicate missing or illegible material (see 6.97). Braces, {}, often called curly brackets, provide yet another option for enclosing data and are used in various ways in certain programming languages. They are also used in mathematical and other specialized writing (see, e.g., 12.28). They are not interchangeable with parentheses or brackets. See the example phrases throughout chapter 5 for one possible use of braces.

Slashes

6.103 ***Other names for the slash.*** The slash (/)—also known as virgule, solidus, slant, or forward slash, to distinguish it from a backward slash, or backslash (\)—has various distinct uses. For a discussion of the niceties associated with the various terms, see Richard Eckersley et al., *Glossary of Typesetting Terms* (bibliog. 2.7).

6.104 ***Slashes to signify alternatives.*** A slash most commonly signifies alternatives. In certain contexts it is a convenient (if somewhat informal) shorthand for *or*. It is also used for alternative spellings or names. Where one or more of the terms separated by slashes is an open compound, a space before and after the slash can be helpful.

he/she
his/her
and/or

Hercules/Heracles
Margaret/Meg/Maggie
World War I / First World War

Occasionally a slash can signify *and*—though still usually conveying a sense of alternatives.

an insertion/deletion mutation
an MD/PhD program
a Jekyll / Hyde personality

6.105 ***Slashes with two-year spans.*** A slash is sometimes used in dates instead of an en dash (see 6.78), or even in combination with an en dash, to indicate the last part of one year and the first part of the next. See also 9.63.

The winter of 1966/67 was especially severe.
Enrollment has increased between 1998/99 and 2001/2.
The fiscal years 2005/6–2009/10 were encouraging in several respects.

6.106 ***Slashes with dates.*** Slashes (or periods or hyphens) are used informally in all-numeral dates (e.g., 3/10/02), but this device should be avoided in formal publications to prevent ambiguity: Americans usually put the month first, but other countries do not (e.g., Canadians and Europeans put the day first). If an all-numeral format must be used, use the ISO standard date format (year, month, date, in the form YYYY-MM-DD; see 9.37).

6.107 ***Slashes in abbreviations.*** A slash may stand as shorthand for *per*, as in "110 km/sec," "$450/week," or, in certain abbreviations, in lieu of periods, as in "c/o" (in care of).

6.108 ***Slashes as fraction bars.*** A slash can be used to mean "divided by" when a fraction bar is inappropriate or impractical. When available, single-glyph fractions may be used (e.g., ½ *rather than* 1/2). See also 12.45.

6.109 ***Slashes to show line breaks in quoted poetry.*** When two or more lines of poetry are quoted in regular text, slashes with space on each side are used to show line breaks. See also 13.27.

> "Thou hast not missed one thought that could be fit, / And all that was improper dost omit."

6.110 ***Slashes in URLs and other paths.*** Slashes are used in URLs and other paths to separate directories and file names. Spaces are never used in such contexts. In typeset paths, line breaks may occur before a slash but not between two slashes (see 7.42). Some operating systems use backward slashes (or backslashes, \) or colons rather than, or in addition to, slashes. See also 14.11.

http://www.loc.gov/index.html

Quotation Marks

6.111 ***Quotation marks relative to other punctuation and text.*** For the location of closing quotation marks in relation to other punctuation, see 6.9–11. For the use of quotation marks with a comma, see 6.50; with a colon, 6.63; with a question mark, 6.70; with an exclamation point, 6.74. For a full discussion of quotation marks with dialogue and quoted matter, see 13.9–10, 13.17–19, 13.28–47. For the use of quotation marks with single words or phrases to signal some special usage, see 7.55, 7.57, 7.58. For quotation marks in French, see 11.32, 11.33; in German, 11.44; in Italian, 11.52; in Spanish, 11.79. For quotation marks with titles of certain types of works, see the examples in chapter 8.

6.112 ***Typographer's or "smart" quotation marks.*** Published works should use directional (or "smart") quotation marks, sometimes called typographer's or "curly" quotation marks. These marks, which are available in any modern word processor, generally match the surrounding typeface. For a variety of reasons, including the limitations of typewriter-based keyboards and of certain software programs, these marks are often rendered incorrectly. Care must be taken that the proper mark—left or right, as the case may be—has been used in each instance. All software also includes a "default" mark ("); in published prose this unidirectional mark, far more portable than typographer's marks, nonetheless signals a lack of typographical sophistication. Proper directional characters should also be used for single quotation marks (‘’). The Unicode numbers are as follows: left double quotation mark (“), U+201C; right double quotation mark (”), U+201D; left single quotation mark (‘), U+2018; right single quotation mark or apostrophe (’), U+2019 (see 11.2). See also 6.114.

Apostrophes

6.113 ***Use of the apostrophe.*** The apostrophe has three main uses: to indicate the possessive case, to stand in for missing letters or numerals, and—more rarely—to form the plural of certain expressions. For more on the possessive case, see 7.15–28, 5.19. For contractions, see 7.29. For plurals, see 7.5–14—especially 7.14.

6.114 ***“Smart” apostrophes.*** Published works should use directional (or “smart”) apostrophes. In most typefaces, this mark will appear as a raised (but not inverted) comma. The apostrophe is the same character as the right single quotation mark (defined for Unicode as U+2019; see 6.112). Thanks to the limitations of conventional keyboards and many software programs, the apostrophe has been one of the most abused marks in punctuation—especially in the last generation or so. There are two common pitfalls: using the “default” unidirectional mark ('), on the one hand, and using the left single quotation mark, on the other. The latter usage in particular should always be construed as an error. Some software programs automatically turn a typed apostrophe at the beginning of a word into a left single quotation mark; authors and editors need to be vigilant in overriding such automation and producing the correct mark, and typesetters need to take care not to introduce errors of their own. (If necessary, consult your software’s help documentation or special characters menu.)

We spent the ’90s (*not* ‘90s) in thrall to our gadgets.
Where’d you get ’em (*not* ‘em)?

6.115 ***Apostrophes relative to other punctuation.*** An apostrophe (’) is considered part of the word (or number) in which it appears. An apostrophe should not be confused with a single closing quotation mark; when a word ends in an apostrophe, no period or comma should intervene between the word and the apostrophe.

The last car in the lot was the Smiths’.

Multiple Punctuation Marks

6.116 ***Likely combinations.*** The use of more than one mark of punctuation at the same location usually involves quotation marks, em dashes, parentheses, or brackets in combination with periods, commas, colons, semicolons, question marks, or exclamation points. For quotation marks see 6.9–11, 6.50, 6.63, 6.70, 6.74. For em dashes see 6.86, 6.91. For parentheses and brackets see 6.82, 6.95, 6.96, 6.99, 6.101, 6.123. See also table 6.1.

6.117 ***Abbreviation-ending periods with other punctuation.*** When an expression (such as an abbreviation) that takes a period ends a sentence, no additional period follows (see 6.14). Of course, when any other mark of punctuation is needed immediately after the period, both the period and the additional mark appear.

The study was funded by Mulvehill & Co.
Johnson et al., in *How to Survive*, describe such an ordeal.

6.118 ***Periods with question marks or exclamation points.*** A period (aside from an abbreviating period; see 6.117) never accompanies a question mark or an exclamation point. The latter two marks, being stronger, take precedence over the period. This principle continues to apply when the question mark or exclamation point is part of the title of a work, as in the final example (cf. 6.119).

Their first question was a hard one: "Who is willing to trade oil for water?"
What did she mean when she said, "The foot now wears a different shoe"?
She owned two copies of *Will You Please Be Quiet, Please?*

6.119 ***Commas with question marks or exclamation points.*** When a question mark or exclamation point appears at the end of a quotation where a comma would normally appear, the comma is omitted (as in the first example below; see also 6.52). When, however, the title of a work ends in a question mark or exclamation point, a comma should also appear if the grammar of the sentence would normally call for one. This departure from previous editions of the manual overrides aesthetic considerations not only to recognize the syntactic independence of titles but also the potential for clearer sentence structure—especially apparent in the final example, where the comma after *Help!* separates it from the following title. (The occasional awkward result may require rewording.) Compare 6.118. See also 14.105, 14.178.

"Are you a doctor?" asked Mahmoud.

but

"Are You a Doctor?," the fifth story in *Will You Please Be Quiet, Please?*, treats modern love.

All the band's soundtracks—*A Hard Day's Night*, *Help!*, *Yellow Submarine*, and *Magical Mystery Tour*—were popular.

6.120 ***Question mark with exclamation point.*** In the rare case of a question or exclamation ending with a title or quotation that ends in a question mark or exclamation point, include both marks only if they are different and the sentence punctuation seems essential. See also 6.72.

Have you seen *Help!*?
Who shouted, "Long live the king!"?
I just love *Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf?*!
but
Who starred opposite Richard Burton in *Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf?*
Who wrote "Are You a Doctor?"
Where were you when you asked, "Why so blue?"

Lists and Outline Style

6.121 ***Lists and outlines—general principles.*** All items in a list should be constructed of parallel elements. Unless introductory numerals or letters serve a purpose—to indicate the order in which tasks should be done, to suggest chronology or relative importance among the items, to facilitate text references, or, in a run-in list, to clearly separate the items—they may be omitted. Where similar lists are fairly close together, consistent treatment is essential.

6.122 ***Run-in versus vertical lists.*** Lists may be either run in to the text or set vertically (outline style). Short, simple lists are usually better run in, especially if the introduction and the items form a complete grammatical sentence (see 6.123). Lists that require typographic prominence, that are relatively long, or that contain items of several levels (see 6.126) should be set vertically.

6.123 ***Run-in lists.*** If numerals or letters are used to mark the divisions in a run-in list, enclose them in parentheses. If letters are used, they are sometimes italicized (within roman parentheses; see 6.5). If the introductory material forms a grammatically complete sentence, a colon should precede the first parenthesis (see also 6.59, 6.62, 6.65). The items are separated by commas unless any of the items requires internal commas, in which case all the items will usually need to be separated by semicolons (see 6.58). When each item in a list consists of a complete sentence or several sentences, the list is best set vertically (see 6.124).

The qualifications are as follows: a doctorate in physics, five years' experience in a national laboratory, and an ability to communicate technical matter to a lay audience.

Compose three sentences to illustrate analogous uses of (1) commas, (2) em dashes, and (3) parentheses.

For the duration of the experiment, the dieters were instructed to avoid (a) meat, (b) bottled drinks, (c) packaged foods, and (d) nicotine.

Data are available on three groups of counsel: (1) the public defender of Cook County, (2) the member attorneys of the Chicago Bar Association's Defense of Prisoners Committee, and (3) all other attorneys.

You are advised to pack the following items: (*a*) warm, sturdy outer clothing and enough underwear to last ten days; (*b*) two pairs of boots, two pairs of sneakers, and plenty of socks; and (*c*) three durable paperback novels.

6.124 ***Vertical lists—punctuation and format.*** A vertical list is best introduced by a complete grammatical sentence, followed by a colon (but see 6.125). Items carry no closing punctuation unless they consist of complete sentences. If the items are numbered, a period follows the numeral and each item begins with a capital letter. (When items in a numbered list consist of very long sentences, or of several sentences, and the list does not require typographic prominence, the items may be set in regular text style as numbered paragraphs, with only the first line indented, punctuated as normal prose.) To avoid long, skinny lists, short items may be arranged in two or more columns. If items run over a line, the second and subsequent lines are usually indented (flush-and-hang style, also called hanging indention, as used in bibliographies and indexes). In a numbered or bulleted list, runover lines are aligned with the first word following the numeral or bullet. An alternative to indenting runover lines is to insert extra space between the items.

Your application must include the following documents:

a full résumé
three letters of recommendation
all your diplomas, from high school to graduate school

a brief essay indicating why you want the position and why you consider yourself qualified for it
two forms of identification

An administrative facility can be judged by eight measures:

image
security
access
flexibility
quality
functional organization
design efficiency
environmental systems

Each of these measures is discussed below.

Compose three sentences:
1. To illustrate the use of commas in dates
2. To distinguish the use of semicolons from the use of periods
3. To illustrate the use of parentheses within dashes

To change the date display from "31" to "1" on the day following the last day of a thirty-day month, the following steps are recommended:
1. Pull the stem out to the time-setting position (i.e., past the date-setting position).
2. Make a mental note of the exact minute (but see step 4).
3. Turn the stem repeatedly in a clockwise direction through twenty-four hours.
4. If you are able to consult the correct time, adjust the minute hand accordingly, and press the stem all the way in on the exact second. If you are not able to consult the correct time, settle on a minute or so past the time noted in step 2.

Use the control panel on your printer to manage basic settings:
- Control toner usage by turning EconoMode on or off.
- Adjust print quality by changing the Resolution Enhancement technology and Print Density settings.
- Manage printer memory by changing the Image Adapt and Page Protect settings.

6.125 ***Vertical lists punctuated as a sentence.*** In a numbered vertical list that completes a sentence begun in an introductory element and that consists of phrases or sentences with internal punctuation, semicolons may be used between the items, and a period should follow the final item. Each item begins with a lowercase letter. A conjunction (*and* or *or*) before the final item is optional. Such lists, often better run in to the text, should be set vertically only if the context demands that they be highlighted.

Reporting for the Development Committee, Jobson reported that

1. a fundraising campaign director was being sought;
2. the salary for this director, about $50,000 a year, would be paid out of campaign funds; and
3. the fundraising campaign would be launched in the spring of 2005.

If bullets were used instead of numbers in the example above, the punctuation and capitalization would remain the same.

6.126 ***Vertical lists with subdivided items (outlines).*** Where items in a numbered list are subdivided, both numerals and letters may be used. Any runover lines should be aligned with the first word following the numeral.

Applicants will be tested for their skills in the following areas:

1. Punctuation
    a. Using commas appropriately
    b. Deleting unnecessary quotation marks
    c. Distinguishing colons from semicolons
2. Spelling
    a. Using a dictionary appropriately
    b. Recognizing homonyms
    c. Hyphenating correctly
3. Syntax
    a. Matching verb to subject
    b. Recognizing and eliminating misplaced modifiers
    c. Distinguishing phrases from clauses while singing the "Conjunction Junction" song

In the following example, note that the numerals and letters denoting the top three levels are set off by periods and those for the lower four by single or double parentheses, thus distinguishing all seven levels by punctuation as well as indention. Note also that numerals are aligned vertically on the last digit.

 I. Historical introduction
II. Dentition in various groups of vertebrates
  A. Reptilia
    1. Histology and development of reptilian teeth
    2. Survey of forms
  B. Mammalia
    1. Histology and development of mammalian teeth
    2. Survey of forms
      a) Primates
        (1) Lemuroidea
        (2) Anthropoidea
          (a) Platyrrhini
          (b) Catarrhini
            i) Cercopithecidae
            ii) Pongidae
      b) Carnivora
        (1) Creodonta
        (2) Fissipedia
          (a) Ailuroidea
          (b) Arctoidea
        (3) Pinnipedia
      c) Etc. . . .

In a list with fewer levels, one might dispense with capital roman numerals and capital letters and instead begin with arabic numerals. What is important is that readers see at a glance the level to which each item belongs. Note that each division and subdivision should normally contain at least two items.

7 *Spelling, Distinctive Treatment of Words, and Compounds*

Overview 7.1
Plurals 7.5
Possessives 7.15
  The General Rule 7.15
  Exceptions to the General Rule 7.19
  Particularities of the Possessive 7.22
Contractions and Interjections 7.29
Word Division 7.31
A* and *An*, *O* and *Oh 7.44
Ligatures 7.46
Italics, Capitals, and Quotation Marks 7.47
  Emphasis 7.47
  Foreign Words 7.49
  Highlighting Key Terms and Expressions 7.54
  Words and Letters Used as Words 7.58
  Music: Some Typographic Conventions 7.66
  Computer Terms 7.72
Compounds and Hyphenation 7.77

Overview

7.1 *Recommended dictionaries.* For general matters of spelling, Chicago recommends using *Webster's Third New International Dictionary* and the latest edition of its chief abridgment, *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary* (referred to below as *Webster's*). If more than one spelling is given, or more than one form of the plural (see 7.6), Chicago normally opts for the first form listed (even for equal variants), thus aiding consistency. If, as occasionally happens, the *Collegiate* disagrees with the *Third International*, the *Collegiate* should be followed, since it represents the latest lexical research. For further definitions or alternative spellings, refer to a standard dictionary such as the *American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language* or *Random House Webster's College Dictionary*. At least for spelling, one source should be used consistently throughout a single work. (For full bibliographic information on these and other English dictionaries, see bibliog. 3.1.)

7.2 *Spellings peculiar to particular disciplines.* Where a variant spelling carries a special connotation within a discipline, the author's preference should be respected. For example, "archeology," though it is listed as an equal variant of "archaeology" in *Webster's*, is the spelling insisted on by certain specialists. In the absence of such a preference, Chicago prefers the first-listed "archaeology." (*Webster's* separates equal variants by *or*; secondary variants are preceded by *also*.)

7.3 *Non-US spelling.* In English-language works by non-US authors that are edited and produced in the United States, editors at Chicago generally change spelling used in other English-speaking countries to American spelling (e.g., *colour* to *color*, *analyse* to *analyze*). Since consistency is more easily maintained by this practice, few authors object. In quoted material, however, spelling is left unchanged (see 13.7).

7.4 *Supplementing the dictionary.* Much of this chapter is devoted to matters not easily found in most dictionaries: how to form the plural and possessive forms of certain nouns and compounds; how to break words at the end of a printed line, especially those that are not listed in the dictionary; when to use capitals, italics, or quotation marks for distinctive treatment of words and phrases; and, perhaps most important but placed at the end of the chapter for easy reference (7.85), when to use hyphens with compound words, prefixes, and suffixes.

Plurals

7.5 ***Standard plural forms.*** Most nouns form their plural by adding *s* or—if they end in *ch*, *j*, *s*, *sh*, *x*, or *z*—by adding *es*. Most English speakers will not need help with such plural forms as *thumbs*, *churches*, *fixes*, or *boys*, and these are not listed in standard dictionary entries, including those in *Webster's Collegiate*. (All inflected forms are listed in *Webster's Third New International*; moreover, the online versions of most dictionaries accommodate the correct plural forms in their search engines.) Most dictionaries do, however, give plural forms for words ending in *y* that change to *ies* (*baby*, etc.); for words ending in *o* (*ratio*, *potato*, etc.); for certain words of Latin or Greek origin such as *crocus*, *datum*, or *alumna*; and for all words with irregular plurals (*child*, *leaf*, etc.).

7.6 ***Alternative plural forms.*** Where *Webster's* gives two forms of the plural—whether as primary and secondary variants, like *zeros* and *zeroes*, or as equal variants, like *millennia* and *millenniums*—Chicago normally opts for the first. In some cases, however, different forms of the plural are used for different purposes. A book may have two *indexes* and a mathematical expression two *indices*, as indicated in the *Webster's* entry for *index*.

7.7 ***Plurals of compound nouns.*** *Webster's* gives the plural form of most compounds that are tricky (*fathers-in-law*, *coups d'état*, *courts-martial*, *chefs d'oeuvre*, etc.). For those not listed, common sense can usually provide the answer.

bachelors of science
masters of arts
spheres of influence
child laborers

7.8 ***Plurals of proper nouns.*** Names of persons and other capitalized nouns normally form the plural by adding *s* or *es*. Rare exceptions, including the last example, are generally listed in *Webster's*.

Tom, Dick, and Harry; *pl.* Toms, Dicks, and Harrys
the Jones family, *pl.* the Joneses
the Martinez family, *pl.* the Martinezes
the Bruno family, *pl.* the Brunos
Sunday, *pl.* Sundays
Germany, *pl.* Germanys
Pakistani, *pl.* Pakistanis
but
Romany, *pl.* Romanies

An apostrophe is never used to form the plural of a family name: "The Jeffersons live here" (*not* "Jefferson's"). For the apostrophe in the possessive form of proper nouns, see 7.16.

7.9 ***Plural form for Native American group names.*** According to current preference, names of Native American groups usually form their plural by adding *s*. In earlier writings the *s* was often omitted (indeed, *Webster's* has continued to present both forms as equal variants).

the Hopis of northeastern Arizona (*not* Hopi)
the language spoken by Cherokees
but
the languages of the Iroquois

7.10 ***Singular form used for the plural.*** Names ending in an unpronounced *s* or *x* are best left in the singular form.

the seventeen Louis of France
the two Dumas, father and son
two Charlevoix (*or, better,* two towns called Charlevoix)

7.11 ***Plural form of italicized words.*** If italicized terms—names of newspapers, titles of books, and the like—are used in the plural, the *s* is normally set in roman. A title already in plural form, however, may be left unchanged. In case of doubt, avoid the plural by rephrasing.

two *Chicago Tribune*s and three *Milwaukee Journal-Sentinel*s
several *Madame Bovary*s
too many *sic*s
but
four *New York Times*

The plural endings to italicized foreign words should also be set in italics.

Blume, Blumen *cheval, chevaux* *señor, señores*

7.12 ***Plural form for words in quotation marks.*** The plural of a word or phrase in quotation marks may be formed in the usual way (without an apostrophe—a departure from Chicago's former preference). If the result is awkward, reword. Chicago discourages a plural ending following a closing quotation mark.

How many more "To be continueds" (*not* "To be continued"s) can we expect?
or, better,
How many more times can we expect to see "To be continued"?

7.13 ***Plurals of noun coinages.*** Words and hyphenated phrases that are not nouns but are used as nouns usually form the plural by adding *s* or *es*. (If in doubt, consult an unabridged dictionary like *Webster's Third New International*, which indicates the preferred inflected forms for most nouns, including all of the examples below.)

ifs and buts
dos and don'ts
threes and fours
thank-yous
maybes
yeses and nos

7.14 ***Plurals for letters, abbreviations, and numerals.*** Capital letters used as words, numerals used as nouns, and abbreviations usually form the plural by adding *s*. To aid comprehension, lowercase letters form the plural with an apostrophe and an *s*. For some exceptions beyond those listed in the last three examples, see 10.43; see also 10.55 (for the International System). For the omission of periods in abbreviations like "BS," "MA," and "PhD," see 10.4. See also 7.58–65.

the three Rs
x's and *y*'s
the 1990s
IRAs
URLs
BSs, MAs, PhDs
vols.
eds.
but
p. (page), pp. (pages)
n. (note), nn. (notes)
MS (manuscript), MSS (manuscripts)

Possessives

The General Rule

7.15 ***Possessive form of most nouns.*** The possessive of most *singular* nouns is formed by adding an apostrophe and an *s*. The possessive of *plural* nouns (except for a few irregular plurals, like *children*, that do not end in *s*) is formed by adding an apostrophe only. For the few exceptions to these principles, see 7.19–21. See also 5.19.

the horse's mouth a bass's stripes puppies' paws children's literature
a herd of sheep's mysterious disappearance

7.16 ***Possessive of proper nouns, letters, and numbers.*** The general rule extends to proper nouns, including names ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, in both their singular and plural forms, as well as letters and numbers.

SINGULAR FORMS

Kansas's legislature
Chicago's lakefront
Marx's theories
Jesus's adherents
Berlioz's works
Tacitus's *Histories*
Borges's library
Dickens's novels
Malraux's masterpiece
Josquin des Prez's motets

PLURAL FORMS

the Lincolns' marriage
the Williamses' new house
the Martinezes' daughter
dinner at the Browns' (*that is, at the Browns' place*)

LETTERS AND NUMBERS

FDR's legacy
1999's heaviest snowstorm

7.17 ***Possessive of words and names ending in unpronounced "s."*** In a return to Chicago's earlier practice, words and names ending in an unpronounced *s* form the possessive in the usual way (with the addition of an apostrophe and an *s*). This practice not only recognizes that the additional *s* is often pronounced but adds to the appearance of consistency with the possessive forms of other types of proper nouns.

Descartes's three dreams
the marquis's mother
François's efforts to learn English
Vaucouleurs's assistance to Joan of Arc
Albert Camus's novels

7.18 ***Possessive of names like "Euripides."*** In a departure from earlier practice, Chicago no longer recommends the traditional exception for proper classical names of two or more syllables that end in an *eez* sound. Such names form the possessive in the usual way (though when these forms are spoken, the additional *s* is generally not pronounced).

Euripides's tragedies
the Ganges's source
Xerxes's armies

Exceptions to the General Rule

7.19 ***Possessive of nouns plural in form, singular in meaning.*** When the singular form of a noun ending in *s* is the same as the plural (i.e., the plural is uninflected), the possessives of both are formed by the addition of an apostrophe only. If ambiguity threatens, use *of* to avoid the possessive.

politics' true meaning
economics' forerunners
this species' first record (*or, better,* the first record of this species)

The same rule applies when the name of a place or an organization or a publication (or the last element in the name) is a plural form ending in *s*, such as *the United States*, even though the entity is singular.

the United States' role in international law
Highland Hills' late mayor
Callaway Gardens' former curator
the National Academy of Sciences' new policy

7.20 ***"For . . . sake" expressions.*** For the sake of euphony, a few *for . . . sake* expressions used with a singular noun that ends in an *s* end in an apostrophe alone, omitting the additional *s*.

for goodness' sake
for righteousness' sake

Aside from these traditional formulations, however, the possessive in *for . . . sake* expressions may be formed in the normal way.

for expedience's sake
for appearance's sake (*or* for appearances' sake [plural possessive] *or* for the sake of appearance)
for Jesus's sake

7.21 ***An alternative practice for words ending in "s."*** Some writers and publishers prefer the system, formerly more common, of simply omitting the possessive *s* on all words ending in *s*—hence "Dylan Thomas' poetry," "Etta James' singing," and "that business' main concern." Though easy to apply and economical, such usage disregards pronunciation and is therefore not recommended by Chicago.

Particularities of the Possessive

7.22 ***Joint versus separate possession.*** Closely linked nouns are considered a single unit in forming the possessive when the thing being "possessed" is the same for both; only the second element takes the possessive form.

my aunt and uncle's house
Gilbert and Sullivan's *Iolanthe*
Minneapolis and Saint Paul's transportation system

When the things possessed are discrete, both nouns take the possessive form.

my aunt's and uncle's medical profiles
Dylan's and Jagger's hairlines
New York's and Chicago's transportation systems
Gilbert's or Sullivan's mustache

7.23 ***Compound possessives.*** In compound nouns and noun phrases the final element usually takes the possessive form, even in the plural.

student assistants' time cards
my daughter-in-law's address
my sons-in-law's addresses

7.24 ***Possessive with genitive.*** Analogous to possessives, and formed like them, are certain expressions based on the old genitive case. The genitive here implies *of*.

in three days' time
an hour's delay (*or* a one-hour delay)
six months' leave of absence (*or* a six-month leave of absence)

7.25 ***Possessive versus attributive forms.*** The line between a possessive or genitive form (see 7.24) and a noun used attributively—to modify another noun—is sometimes fuzzy, especially in the plural. Although terms such as *employees' cafeteria* sometimes appear without an apostrophe, Chicago dispenses with the apostrophe only in proper names (often corporate names) that do not use one or where there is clearly no possessive meaning.

children's rights
farmers' market

women's soccer team
boys' clubs
taxpayers' associations (*or* taxpayer associations)
consumers' group (*or* consumer group)
but
Publishers Weekly
Diners Club
Department of Veterans Affairs

7.26 ***Possessive with gerund.*** A noun followed by a gerund (see 5.110) may take the possessive form in some contexts. This practice, usually limited to proper names and personal nouns or pronouns, should be used with caution. For an excellent discussion, see "Possessive with Gerund," in *Fowler's Modern English Usage* (bibliog. 1.2). The possessive is most commonly used when the gerund rather than the noun that precedes it can be considered to be the subject of a clause, as in the first four examples below. In the fifth example, *Fathers* is clearly the subject of the sentence and *assuming* is a participle (verb form) rather than a gerund (noun form); the possessive would therefore be incorrect.

Fathers' assuming the care of children has changed the traditional household economy.
We all agreed that Jerod's running away from the tigers had been the right thing to do.
Our finding a solution depends on the nature of the problem.
Eleanor's revealing her secret (*or* Eleanor's revelation) resulted in a lawsuit.
but
Fathers assuming the care of children often need to consult mothers for advice.

When the noun or pronoun follows a preposition, the possessive is usually optional.

She was worried about her daughter (*or* daughter's) going there alone.
I won't put up with him (*or* his) being denigrated.
The problem of authors (*or* authors') finding the right publisher can be solved.

7.27 ***Possessive with "of."*** The possessive form may be preceded by *of* where *one of several* is implied. "A friend of Dick's" and "a friend of his" are equally acceptable. See also 5.20.

7.28 ***Possessive with italicized or quoted terms.*** As with plurals, when an italicized term appears in roman text, the possessive *s* should be set in roman. When the last element is plural in form, add only an apostrophe (see 7.19). Chicago discourages, however, attempting to form the possessive of a term enclosed in quotation marks (a practice that is seen in some periodical publications where most titles are quoted rather than italicized).

the *Atlantic Monthly*’s editor
the *New York Times*’ new fashion editor
Gone with the Wind’s admirers
but
admirers of “Ode on a Grecian Urn”

Contractions and Interjections

7.29 ***Contractions.*** In contractions, an apostrophe normally replaces omitted letters. Some contractions, such as *won’t* or *ain’t*, are formed irregularly. Colloquialisms such as *gonna* or *wanna* take no apostrophe (there being no obvious place for one). *Webster’s* lists many common contractions, along with alternative spellings and, where appropriate, plurals. Note that an apostrophe—the equivalent of a right single quotation mark (’ not ‘)—is always used to form a contraction (see 6.114).

singin’　　gov’t　　’tis (*not* ‘tis)　　dos and don’ts　　rock ’n’ roll

7.30 ***Interjections.*** As with contractions, *Webster’s* lists such interjections as *ugh*, *er*, *um*, and *sh*. For those not found in the dictionary—or where a different emphasis is required—plausible spellings should be sought in literature or invented.

atchoo!　　shhh!

Word Division

7.31 ***Dictionary word division.*** For end-of-line word breaks, as for spelling and plural forms, Chicago turns to *Webster’s* as its primary guide. The dots between syllables in *Webster’s* indicate where breaks may be made; in words of three or more syllables, there is usually a choice of breaks. The paragraphs in this section are intended merely to supplement, not to replace, the dictionary’s system of word division—for example, by suggesting preferred breaks where more than one might be possible. For division of foreign words (other than those given in an English dictionary), see chapter 11. The advice in this section applies only to published works, especially print works; word breaks should not be applied at the manuscript stage (see 2.12).

7.32 ***Words that should not be divided.*** Single-syllable words, including verb forms such as *aimed* and *helped*, are never divided. Since one-letter divisions are not permissible, such words as *again*, *enough*, and *unite* cannot be divided. Words that may be misread if divided, such as *water*, *women*, and *prayer*, should be divided only with reluctance.

7.33 ***Dividing according to pronunciation.*** In the usage preferred by Chicago and reflected in *Webster's*, most words are divided according to pronunciation rather than derivation.

knowl-edge (*not* know-ledge)
democ-racy *or* de-mocracy (*not* demo-cracy)

Special attention should be paid to breaks in certain words with multiple meanings and pronunciations, such as *proj-ect* (noun) and *pro-ject* (verb).

7.34 ***Dividing after a vowel.*** Unless a resulting break affects pronunciation, words are best divided after a vowel. When a vowel forms a syllable in the middle of a word, it should run in to the first line if possible. Diphthongs are treated as single vowels (e.g., the *eu* in *aneurysm*).

criti-cism (*rather than* crit-icism)
liga-ture (*rather than* lig-ature)
an-tipodes *or* antipo-des (*rather than* antip-odes)
aneu-rysm (*rather than* an-eurysm)

7.35 ***Dividing compounds, prefixes, and suffixes.*** Hyphenated or closed compounds and words with prefixes or suffixes are best divided at the natural breaks.

poverty- / stricken (*rather than* pov- / erty-stricken)
thanks-giving (*rather than* thanksgiv-ing)
dis-pleasure (*rather than* displea-sure)
re-inforce (*rather than* rein-force)

7.36 ***Dividing words ending in "ing."*** Most gerunds and present participles may be divided before the *ing*. When the final consonant before the *ing* is doubled, however, the break occurs between the consonants. For words ending in *ling*, check the dictionary.

certify-ing
giv-ing
dab-bing
run-ning
fiz-zling
bris-tling

7.37 ***Two-letter word endings.*** Two-letter word endings are best *not* carried over to a second line.

losses (*rather than* loss-es)
sur-prises (*rather than* surpris-es)

It is, however, not only permissible but customary to carry over certain two-letter word endings in some foreign languages.

7.38 ***Dividing proper nouns and personal names.*** Proper nouns of more than one element, especially personal names, should be broken, if possible, between the elements rather than within any of the elements. If a break within a name is needed, consult the dictionary. Many proper nouns appear, with suggested divisions, in the listings of biographical and geographical names in *Webster's Collegiate*. For fuller treatment, consult *Merriam-Webster's Biographical Dictionary* (bibliog. 4.1) and *Merriam-Webster's Geographical Dictionary* (bibliog. 4.2). Those that cannot be found in a dictionary should be broken (or left unbroken) according to the guidelines elsewhere in this section. If pronunciation is not known or easily guessed, the break should usually follow a vowel.

Alek-sis   Heitor Villa- / Lobos (*or, better,* Heitor / Villa-Lobos)   Ana-stasia

A personal name that includes initials should be broken after the initials. A break before a number or *Jr.* or *Sr.* should be avoided.

Frederick L. / Anderson
M. F. K. / Fisher
Elizabeth II (*or, if necessary,* Eliza- / beth II)

7.39 ***Dividing numerals.*** Large numbers expressed as numerals are best left intact. To avoid a break, reword the sentence. If a break must be made, however, it should come only after a comma and never after a single digit. See also 12.23.

1,365,- / 000,000 *or* 1,365,000,- / 000

7.40 ***Dividing numerals with abbreviated units of measure.*** A numeral used with an abbreviated unit of measure is best left intact; either the numeral should be carried over to the next line or the abbreviation should be moved up. (Numerals used with spelled-out units of measure, which tend to form longer expressions, may be broken across a line as needed.)

345 m   24 kg   55 BCE   6:35 p.m.

7.41 ***Division in run-in lists.*** A number or letter, such as (3) or (c), used in a run-in list (see 6.123) should not be separated from the beginning of what follows it. If it occurs at the end of a line, it should be carried over to the next line.

7.42 ***Dividing URLs and e-mail addresses.*** In printed works, it is often necessary to break an e-mail address or a uniform resource identifier such as a URL at the end of a line. Such a break should be made between elements if at all possible: *after* a colon or a double slash; *before or after* an equals sign or an ampersand; or *before* a single slash, a period, or any other punctuation or symbols. To avoid confusion, an address that contains a hyphen should never be broken at the hyphen; nor should a hyphen be added to break an e-mail address or URL. If a particularly long element must be broken to avoid a seriously loose line, it should be broken between syllables according to the guidelines offered above. See also 6.8, 14.12. (Authors should not break URLs in their manuscripts; see 2.12.)

http://
www.chicagomanualofstyle.org/
or
http://www
.chicagomanualofstyle.org/
or
http://www.chicago
manualofstyle.org/

7.43 ***Hyphenation and appearance.*** For aesthetic reasons, no more than three succeeding lines should be allowed to end in hyphens. (Such hyphens are sometimes referred to as a hyphen stack.) And though hyphens are necessary far more often in justified text, word breaks may be needed in material with a ragged right-hand margin to avoid exceedingly uneven lines. (In manuscript preparation, however, word breaks should always be avoided; see 2.12, 2.109.) End-of-line hyphenation is rarely necessary in online publications, except those modeled on or otherwise representing the printed page.

A and *An*, *O* and *Oh*

7.44 ***"A" and "an."*** The indefinite article *a*, not *an*, is used in American English before words beginning with a pronounced *h*. See also 5.72.

a hotel	a historical study
but	
an honor	an heir

Before an abbreviation, a numeral, or a symbol, the use of *a* or *an* depends on (or, conversely, determines) how the term is pronounced. In the first example below, MS would be pronounced *em ess*; in the second, it would be pronounced *manuscript*. In the last two examples, 007 would be pronounced *oh oh seven* and *double oh seven*, respectively.

an MS treatment (a treatment for multiple sclerosis)
a MS in the National Library
an NBC anchor
a CBS anchor
a URL
an @ sign
an 800 number
an 007 field (in a library catalog)
a 007-style agent

7.45 ***"O" and "oh."*** The vocative O (largely obsolete) is always capitalized, whereas the interjection *oh* is capitalized only when beginning a sentence or standing alone. See also 6.37.

"Thine arm, O Lord, in days of old . . ."
Where, oh where, have you been?
Oh! It's you!

Ligatures

7.46 ***When to use ligatures.*** The ligatures æ (*a* + *e*) and œ (*o* + *e*) should not be used in Latin or transliterated Greek words. Nor should they be used in words adopted into English from Latin, Greek, or French (and thus to be found in English dictionaries).

aesthetics
Encyclopaedia Britannica (contrary to corporate usage)
oedipal
a trompe l'oeil mural
a tray of hors d'oeuvres
Emily Dickinson's oeuvre

The ligature æ (along with other special characters) is, however, needed for spelling Old English words in an Old English context. And the ligature *œ* is needed for spelling French words in a French context. (See also 11.12.)

Ælfric   es hæl   le nœud gordien   *Œuvres complètes*

Italics, Capitals, and Quotation Marks

Emphasis

7.47 ***Italics for emphasis.*** Use italics for emphasis only as an occasional adjunct to efficient sentence structure. Overused, italics quickly lose their force. Seldom should as much as a sentence be italicized for emphasis, and never a whole passage. In the first example below, the last three words, though clearly emphatic, do not require italics because of their dramatic position at the end of the sentence.

The damaging evidence was offered not by the arresting officer, not by the injured plaintiff, but by the boy's own mother.

On the other hand, the emphasis in the following example depends on the italics:

It *was* Leo!

7.48 ***Capitals for emphasis.*** Initial capitals, once used to lend importance to certain words, are now used only ironically (but see 8.93).

"OK, so I'm a Bad Mother," admitted Mary cheerfully.

Capitalizing an entire word or phrase for emphasis is rarely appropriate. If capitals are wanted—in dialogue or in representing newspaper headlines, for example—small caps rather than full capitals look more graceful. Note that "capitalizing" a word means setting only the initial letter as a capital. Capitalizing a whole word, LIKE THIS, is known as "setting in full caps." Setting a word in small capitals—or "small caps"—results in THIS STYLE. (For the use of small capitals in representing terms in American Sign Language, see 11.144–54.) See also 10.8.

"Be careful—WATCH OUT!" she yelled.
We could not believe the headline: POLAR ICE CAP RETURNS.

Foreign Words

7.49 ***Italics for unfamiliar foreign words and phrases.*** Italics are used for isolated words and phrases in a foreign language if they are likely to be unfamiliar to readers (but see 7.52). If a foreign word becomes familiar through repeated use throughout a work, it need be italicized only on its first occurrence. If it appears only rarely, however, italics may be retained.

The *grève du zèle* is not a true strike but a nitpicking obeying of work rules.
Honi soit qui mal y pense is the motto of the Order of the Garter.

An entire sentence or a passage of two or more sentences in a foreign language is usually set in roman and enclosed in quotation marks (see 13.71).

7.50 ***Parentheses and quotation marks for foreign words and phrases.*** A translation following a foreign word, phrase, or title is enclosed in parentheses or quotation marks. See also 6.93, 11.6, 14.109.

The word she wanted was *pécher* (to sin), not *pêcher* (to fish).

The Prakrit word *majjao*, "the tomcat," may be a dialect version of either of two Sanskrit words: *madjaro*, "my lover," or *marjaro*, "the cat" (from the verb *mrij*, "to wash," because the cat constantly washes itself).

Leonardo Fioravanti's *Compendio de i secreti rationali* (Compendium of rational secrets) became a best seller.

In linguistic and phonetic studies a definition is often enclosed in single quotation marks with no intervening punctuation; any following punctuation is placed *after* the closing quotation mark. (For a similar usage in horticultural writing, see 8.129.)

The gap is narrow between *mead* 'a beverage' and *mead* 'a meadow'.

7.51 ***Proper nouns.*** Foreign proper nouns are not italicized in an English context.

A history of the Comédie-Française has just appeared.
Mexico City's Ángel de la Independencia is known familiarly as "El Ángel."
Leghorn—in Italian, Livorno—is a port in Tuscany.

7.52 ***Roman for familiar foreign words.*** Foreign words and phrases familiar to most readers and listed in *Webster's* should appear in roman (*not* italics) if used in an English context; they should be spelled as in *Webster's*. German nouns, if in *Webster's*, are lowercased. (See also 7.53.)

pasha	in vitro	recherché	de novo
weltanschauung	a priori	the kaiser	eros and agape

but
He never missed a chance to *épater les bourgeois*.

If a familiar foreign term, such as *mise en scène*, should occur in the same context as a less familiar one, such as *mise en bouteille* (not listed in *Webster's*), either both or neither should be italicized, so as to maintain internal consistency.

7.53 ***Roman for Latin words and abbreviations.*** Commonly used Latin words and abbreviations should not be italicized.

ibid.   et al.   ca.   passim

Because of its peculiar use in quoted matter, *sic* is best italicized.

"mindful of what has been done here by we [*sic*] as agents of principle"

Highlighting Key Terms and Expressions

7.54 ***Italics for key terms.*** Key terms in a particular context are often italicized on their first occurrence. Thereafter they are best set in roman.

The two chief tactics of this group, *obstructionism* and *misinformation*, require careful analysis.

7.55 ***"Scare quotes."*** Quotation marks are often used to alert readers that a term is used in a nonstandard (or slang), ironic, or other special sense. Nicknamed *scare quotes*, they imply, "This is not my term" or "This is not how the term is usually applied." Like any such device, scare quotes lose their force and irritate readers if overused. See also 7.56, 7.57.

On a digital music player, a "track" is really just a separately encoded file in a directory.
"Child protection" sometimes fails to protect.

In works of philosophy, single quotation marks are sometimes used for similar purposes, but Chicago discourages that practice unless it is essential to the author's argument and not confusing to readers.

7.56 ***"So-called."*** A word or phrase preceded by *so-called* need not be enclosed in quotation marks. The expression itself indicates irony or doubt. If, however, it is necessary to call attention to only one part of a phrase, quotation marks may be helpful.

So-called child protection sometimes fails to protect.
Her so-called mentor induced her to embezzle from the company.
but
These days, so-called "running" shoes are more likely to be seen on the feet of walkers.

7.57 ***Common expressions and figures of speech.*** Quotation marks are rarely needed for common expressions or figures of speech (including slang). Reserve them, if at all, for phrases borrowed verbatim from another context or terms used ironically (see 7.55).

Myths of paradise lost are common in folklore.
I grew up in a one-horse town.
Only techies will appreciate this joke.
but
Though she was a lifetime subscriber to the *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, she was not one to ask "for whom the bell tolls."

Words and Letters Used as Words

7.58 ***Words and phrases used as words.*** When a word or term is not used functionally but is referred to as the word or term itself, it is either italicized or enclosed in quotation marks. Proper nouns used as words, on the other hand, are usually set in roman.

The term *critical mass* is more often used metaphorically than literally.
What is meant by *neurobotics*?
The *i* in the name iPod is supposed to invoke the Internet.

Although italics are the traditional choice, quotation marks may be more appropriate in certain contexts. (And in some electronic environments, quotation marks may be more portable or otherwise practical than italics.) In the first example below, italics set off the foreign term, and quotation marks are used for the English. In the second example, quotation marks help to convey the idea of speech.

The Spanish verbs *ser* and *estar* are both rendered by "to be."
Many people say "I" even when "me" would be more correct.

7.59 ***Letters as letters.*** Individual letters and combinations of letters of the Latin alphabet are usually italicized.

the letter *q*
a lowercase *n*
a capital *W*
The plural is usually formed in English by adding *s* or *es*.
He signed the document with an *X*.
I need a word with two *e*'s and three *s*'s.

Roman type, however, is traditionally used in two common expressions (see also 7.14).

Mind your p's and q's!
dotting the i's and crossing the t's

Roman type is always used for phonetic symbols. For details, consult Geoffrey K. Pullum and William A. Ladusaw, *Phonetic Symbol Guide* (bibliog. 5).

7.60 ***Scholastic grades.*** Letters used to denote grades are usually capitalized and set in roman type. No apostrophe is required in the plural (see also 7.14).

She finished with three As, one B, and two Cs.

7.61 ***Plurals of letters.*** As an aid to legibility (compare "two *a*s in *llama*" with "two *a*'s in *llama*"), the plural of single lowercase letters is formed by adding an apostrophe before the *s*. The *s* is roman even when the letter is italic. Capital letters, however, do not normally require an apostrophe in the plural. To prevent misreading, avoid beginning a sentence with the plural of "A" or "I." See also 7.14.

There really are two *x*'s in Foxx.

the three Rs

7.62 ***Letters standing for names.*** A letter used in place of a name is usually capitalized and set in roman type. If it bears no relation to an actual name, it is not followed by a period.

Let us assume that A sues B for breach of contract . . .

If a single initial is used to abbreviate an actual name, it is usually followed by a period; if used to conceal a name, it may be followed by a 2-em dash and no period (see 6.90). If no punctuation follows the dash, it must be followed by a space.

Professor D. will be making his entrance shortly.
Senator K—— and Representative L—— were in attendance.

If two or more initials are used as an abbreviation for an entire name, no periods are needed. See also 8.4, 10.12.

Kennedy and Johnson soon became known as JFK and LBJ.

7.63 ***Letters as shapes.*** Letters that are used to represent shapes are capitalized and set in roman type (an S curve, an L-shaped room). (Using a sans serif font in a serif context, as is sometimes done, does not necessarily aid comprehension and, unless the sans serif perfectly complements the serif, tends to look clumsy.)

7.64 ***Names of letters.*** When legibility cannot be counted on, editors and proofreaders occasionally need to name letters ("a cue, not a gee"). The name of a letter, as distinct from the letter itself, is usually set in roman type, without quotation marks. The following standard spellings are drawn from *Webster's Collegiate*. With vowels, which are not named in standard dictionaries, it may be best to give an example ("*a* as in *apple*"). (For the names of special characters, see chapter 11, esp. tables 11.1 and 11.2.)

b	bee	*g*	gee	*l*	el	*q*	cue	*v*	vee	*z*	zee
c	cee	*h*	aitch	*m*	em	*r*	ar	*w*	double-u		
d	dee	*j*	jay	*n*	en	*s*	ess	*x*	ex		
f	ef	*k*	kay	*p*	pee	*t*	tee	*y*	wye		

7.65 ***Rhyme schemes.*** Lowercase italic letters, with no space between, are used to indicate rhyme schemes or similar patterns.

The Shakespearean sonnet's rhyme scheme is *abab, cdcd, efef, gg*.

Music: Some Typographic Conventions

7.66 ***Suggested reference for music publishing.*** Music publishing is too specialized to be more than touched on here. Authors and editors requiring detailed guidelines may refer to D. Kern Holoman, *Writing about Music* (bibliog. 1.1). For an illustration of typeset music, see figure 3.5. For styling the titles of musical works, see 8.188–92. For a more general reference work, consult *The New Grove Dictionary of Music and Musicians* and the other Grove musical dictionaries, available from Oxford Music Online (bibliog. 5).

7.67 ***Musical pitches.*** Letters standing for musical pitches (which in turn are used to identify keys, chords, and so on) are usually set as roman capitals. The terms *sharp*, *flat*, and *natural*, if spelled out, are set in roman type and preceded by a hyphen. Editors unfamiliar with musicological conventions should proceed with caution. In the context of harmony, for example, some authors may regard a hyphenated "C-major triad" as being based on the note rather than the key of C. See also 7.70.

middle C
the key of G major
the D-major triad *or* D major triad
an F augmented triad (an augmented triad on the note F)
G-sharp *or* G♯
the key of B-flat minor *or* B♭ minor
Beethoven's E-flat Major Symphony (the *Eroica*)
an E string

A series of pitches are joined by en dashes.

The initial F–G–F–B♭

7.68 ***Octaves.*** In technical works, various systems are used to designate octave register. Those systems that group pitches by octaves begin each ascending octave on C. In one widely used system, pitches in the octave below middle C are designated by lowercase letters: c, c♯, d, . . . , a♯, b. Octaves from middle C up are designated with lowercase letters bearing superscript numbers or primes: c^1, c^2, and so on, or c′, c″, and so on. Lower octaves are designated, in descending order, by capital letters and capital letters with subscript numbers: C, C_1, C_2. Because of the many systems and their variants in current use, readers should be alerted to the system employed (e.g., by an indication early in the text of the symbol used for middle C). Technical works on the modern piano usually designate all pitches with capital letters and subscripts, from A_1 at the bottom of the keyboard to C_{88} at the top. Scientific works on music usually designate octaves by capital letters and subscripts beginning with C_0 (middle C = C_4). When pitches are otherwise specified, none of these systems is necessary.

middle C A 440 the soprano's high C

To indicate simultaneously sounding pitches (as in chords), the pitches are listed from lowest to highest and are sometimes joined by plus signs.

C + E + G

7.69 *Chords.* In the analysis of harmony, chords are designated by roman numerals indicating what degree of the scale the chord is based on.

V (a chord based on the fifth, or dominant, degree of the scale)
V^7 (dominant seventh chord)
iii (a chord based on the third, or mediant, degree of the scale)

Harmonic progressions are indicated by capital roman numerals separated by en dashes: IV–I–V–I. While roman numerals for all chords suffice for basic descriptions of chordal movement, in more technical writing, minor chords are distinguished by lowercase roman numerals, and other distinctions in chord quality and content are shown by additional symbols and arabic numerals.

7.70 *"Major" and "minor."* In some works on musical subjects where many keys are mentioned, capital letters are used for major keys and lowercase for minor. If this practice is followed, the words *major* and *minor* are usually omitted.

7.71 *Dynamics.* Terms indicating dynamics are usually given in lowercase, often italicized: *piano*, *mezzo forte*, and so on. Where space allows, the spelled-out form is preferred in both text and musical examples. Symbols for these terms are rendered in lowercase boldface italics with no periods: ***p***, ***mf***, and so on. "Editorial" dynamics—those added to a composer's original by an editor—are sometimes distinguished by another font or by parentheses or brackets.

Computer Terms

7.72 ***Application-specific variations.*** In the realm of computer hardware and software—where nomenclature and function are closely related—typographic conventions for expressing the names of particular keys, commands, and other computer terms vary across systems and applications. The paragraphs in this section offer a few common patterns. It is important not only to practice consistency in using a particular style or font to refer to a particular element but also to consider the usage followed within a specific system or application.

7.73 ***Capitalization for keys and menu items.*** The basic alphabet keys as well as all named keys are capitalized even if they are lowercased on a particular keyboard. Menu items and icon names are usually spelled and capitalized as in a particular application. Acronyms for file formats are rendered in full capitals.

The function key F2 has no connection with the keys F and 2.
The Option key on a Mac is similar to the Alt key on a typical PC.
Choosing Cut from the Edit menu is an alternative to pressing Ctrl+X.
Save the file as a PNG or a GIF, not as a JPEG.

7.74 ***Keyboard combinations and shortcuts.*** To indicate that different keys are to be pressed simultaneously (as in a keyboard shortcut), use the plus sign or the hyphen—according to the practice of the particular operating system or application in question—without a space on either side. Spell out *Shift*, *Hyphen*, and *Space*—and anything else that might otherwise be ambiguous. (The capital S in the first two examples below does not indicate that the Shift key should be pressed as part of the combination.)

To save, press Ctrl+S.
To save, press Command-S.
If the screen freezes, press Ctrl+Alt+Delete.
To empty the trash without a prompt, press Option-Shift-Command-Delete.

7.75 ***Distinguishing words to be typed and other elements.*** When a greater prominence than capitalization is called for, boldface, italics, color, or some other scheme may be used to distinguish elements. A single treatment may be applied across different types of elements. In general, avoid quotation marks lest they be interpreted as part of the element they enclose. If quotation marks must be used, any punctuation that is not part of the quoted expression should appear outside the quotation marks (as in the second example; see also 6.9).

To insert a thorn, choose **Symbol** from the **Insert** tab, then enter **00FE** in the character code field.
Click on **Save As**; name your file "appendix A, v. 10".

Directory paths, file names, variables, and other computer-related syntax are sometimes distinguished by a monospaced font such as Courier.

Use `$OLDPWD` to indicate your previous working directory.

For related matters in computer writing, see Eric S. Raymond, "Hacker Writing Style," in *The New Hacker's Dictionary* (bibliog. 5).

7.76 ***Terms like "web" and "Internet."*** In keeping with Chicago's recommendations elsewhere (see 8.67), generic terms that are capitalized as part of the official name of a system or an organization may be lowercased when used alone or in combination. (In a departure, Chicago now considers *web* to be generic when used alone or in combination with other generic terms.) Abbreviations for file formats are normally presented in full capitals (see also 10.52). For treatment of the names of keys and menu items, see 7.73. For terms such as *e-mail*, see 7.85.

Macintosh; PC; personal computer
hypertext transfer protocol (HTTP); a transfer protocol; hypertext
Internet protocol (IP); the Internet; the net; an intranet
the Open Source Initiative (the corporation); open-source platforms
the World Wide Web Consortium; the World Wide Web; the web; a website; a web page

Compounds and Hyphenation

7.77 ***To hyphenate or not to hyphenate.*** Far and away the most common spelling questions for writers and editors concern compound terms—whether to spell as two words, hyphenate, or close up as a single word. Prefixes (and occasionally suffixes) can be troublesome also. The first place to look for answers is the dictionary. This section, including the hyphenation guide in 7.85, offers guidelines for spelling compounds not necessarily found in the dictionary (though some of the examples are drawn from *Webster's*) and for treatment of compounds according to their grammatical function (as nouns, adjectives, or adverbs) and their position in a sentence. See also 5.91.

7.78 ***Some definitions.*** An open compound is spelled as two or more words (*high school*, *lowest common denominator*). A hyphenated compound is spelled with one or more hyphens (*mass-produced*, *kilowatt-hour*, *non-English-speaking*). A closed (or solid) compound is spelled as a single word (*birthrate*, *notebook*). A permanent compound is one that has been accepted into the general vocabulary and can be found in the dictionary (like all but one of the examples in this paragraph thus far). A temporary compound is a new combination created for some specific, often one-time purpose (*dictionary-wielding*, *impeachment hound*); such compounds, though some eventually become permanent, are not normally found in the dictionary. Not strictly compounds but often discussed with them are words formed with prefixes (*antigrammarian*, *postmodern*); these are dealt with in section 4 of 7.85. (For examples of combining forms—a type of prefix in which a word like *electric* is modified to form a combination like *electromagnetic*—see section 2 of 7.85, under *combining forms*.)

7.79 ***The trend toward closed compounds.*** With frequent use, open or hyphenated compounds tend to become closed (*on line* to *on-line* to *online*). Chicago's general adherence to *Webster's* does not preclude occasional exceptions when the closed spellings have become widely preferred by writers (e.g., *website*) and pronunciation and readability are not at stake.

7.80 ***Hyphens and readability.*** A hyphen can make for easier reading by showing structure and, often, pronunciation. Words that might otherwise be misread, such as *re-creation* or *co-op*, should be hyphenated. Hyphens can also eliminate ambiguity. For example, the hyphen in *much-needed clothing* shows that the clothing is greatly needed rather than abundant and needed. Where no ambiguity could result, as in *public welfare administration* or *graduate student housing*, hyphenation is unnecessary.

7.81 ***Compound modifiers before or after a noun.*** When compound modifiers (also called phrasal adjectives) such as *open-mouthed* or *full-length* precede a noun, hyphenation usually lends clarity. With the exception of proper nouns (such as *United States*) and compounds formed by an adverb ending in *ly* plus an adjective (see 7.82), it is never incorrect to hyphenate adjectival compounds before a noun. When such compounds *follow* the noun they modify, hyphenation is usually unnecessary, even for adjectival compounds that are hyphenated in *Webster's* (such as *well-read* or *ill-humored*).

7.82 ***Adverbs ending in "ly."*** Compounds formed by an adverb ending in *ly* plus an adjective or participle (such as *largely irrelevant* or *smartly dressed*) are not hyphenated either before or after a noun, since ambiguity is virtually impossible. (The *ly* ending with adverbs signals to the reader that the next word will be another modifier, not a noun.)

7.83 ***Multiple hyphens.*** Multiple hyphens are usually appropriate for such phrases as *an over-the-counter drug* or *a winner-take-all contest*. If, however, the compound modifier consists of an adjective that itself modifies a compound, additional hyphens may not be necessary. The expressions *late nineteenth-century literature* and *early twentieth-century growth* are clear without a second hyphen. (Similar expressions formed with *mid*—which Chicago classifies as a prefix—do not follow this pattern; see 7.85, section 4, under *mid*.) See also section 3, under *century*.

7.84 ***Omission of part of a hyphenated expression.*** When the second part of a hyphenated expression is omitted, the hyphen is retained, followed by a space.

fifteen- and twenty-year mortgages
Chicago- or Milwaukee-bound passengers
but
a five-by-eight-foot rug (a single entity)

Omission of the second part of a solid compound follows the same pattern.

both over- and underfed cats
but
overfed and overworked mules (*not* overfed and -worked mules)

7.85 ***Hyphenation guide for compounds and words formed with prefixes.*** When using this guide (a return to the tabular format of earlier editions of this manual), consult the preceding paragraphs in this section (7.77–85)—especially if a relevant example cannot be found. In general, Chicago prefers a spare hyphenation style: if no suitable example or analogy can be found either in this section or in the dictionary, hyphenate only if doing so will aid readability. Each of the four sections of the following table is arranged alphabetically (by first column). The first section deals with compounds according to category; the second section, with compounds according to parts of speech. The third section lists examples for words commonly used as elements in compounds. The fourth section lists common prefixes, most of which join to another word to form one unhyphenated word; note especially the hyphenated exceptions, not all of which agree with *Webster's*. (Compounds formed with suffixes—e.g., *nationhood*, *penniless*—are almost always closed.)

Category/specific term	*Examples*	*Summary of rule*
1. COMPOUNDS ACCORDING TO CATEGORY		
age terms	a *three-year-old* a *five-year-old* child a *fifty-five-year-old* woman a group of *eight-* to *ten-year-olds* but *seven years old* *eighteen years of age*	Hyphenated in both noun and adjective forms (except as in the last two examples); note the space after the first hyphen in the fourth example (see 7.84). The examples apply equally to ages expressed as numerals.
chemical terms	*sodium chloride* *sodium chloride* solution	Open in both noun and adjective forms.
colors	*emerald-green* tie *reddish-brown* flagstone *blue-green* algae *snow-white* dress *black-and-white* print but his tie is *emerald green* the stone is *reddish brown* the water is *blue green* the clouds are *snow white* the truth isn't *black and white*	Hyphenated before but not after a noun. This departure from Chicago's former usage serves both simplicity and logic.
compass points and directions	*northeast* *southwest* *east-northeast* a *north–south street* *the street runs north–south*	Closed in noun, adjective, and adverb forms unless three directions are combined, in which case a hyphen is used after the first. When *from* . . . *to* is implied, an en dash is used (see 6.78).
ethnic terms. See **proper nouns and adjectives relating to geography or nationality** in section 2.		
foreign phrases	an *a priori* argument a *Sturm und Drang* drama *in vitro* fertilization a *tête-à-tête* approach	Open unless hyphens appear in the original language.

Category/specific term	*Examples*	*Summary of rule*
1. COMPOUNDS ACCORDING TO CATEGORY (continued)		
fractions, compounds formed with	a *half hour* a *half-hour* session a *quarter mile* a *quarter-mile* run an *eighth note*	Noun form open; adjective form hyphenated. See also **numbers** in this section and **half** in section 3.
fractions, simple	*one-half* *two-thirds* *three-quarters* *one twenty-fifth* *one and three-quarters* a *two-thirds* majority *three-quarters* done a *one twenty-fifth* share	Hyphenated in noun, adjective, and adverb forms, except when second element is already hyphenated. See also **number + noun** and 9.14.
number + abbreviation	the *33 m* distance a *2 kg* weight a *3 ft. high* wall	Always open. See also **number + noun**.
number + noun	a *hundred-meter* race a *250-page* book a *fifty-year* project a *three-inch-high* statuette it's *three inches high* a *one-and-a-half-inch* hem *one and a half inches* a *five-foot-ten* quarterback *five feet ten [inches tall]* *five- to ten-minute* intervals	Hyphenated before a noun, otherwise open. Note the space after the first number in the last example. See also **number + abbreviation**. See also 9.13.
number + percentage	*50 percent* a *10 percent* raise	Both noun and adjective forms always open.
number, ordinal, + noun	on the *third floor* *third-floor* apartment *103rd-floor* view *fifth-place* contestant *twenty-first-row* seats	Adjective form hyphenated before a noun, otherwise open. See also **century** in section 3.
number, ordinal, + superlative	a *second-best* decision *third-largest* town *fourth-to-last* contestant he arrived *fourth to last*	Hyphenated before a noun, otherwise open.
numbers, spelled out	*twenty-eight* *three hundred* *nineteen forty-five* *five hundred fifty*	Twenty-one through ninety-nine hyphenated; others open. See also **fractions, simple**.
relationships. See **foster, grand, in-law,** and **step** in section 3.		

Category/specific term	*Examples*	*Summary of rule*
1. COMPOUNDS ACCORDING TO CATEGORY (continued)		
time	at *three thirty* the *three-thirty* train a *four o'clock* train the *5:00 p.m.* news	Usually open; forms such as "three thirty," "four twenty," etc., are hyphenated before the noun.
2. COMPOUNDS ACCORDING TO PARTS OF SPEECH		
adjective + noun	*small-state* senators a *high-quality* alkylate a *middle-class* neighborhood the neighborhood is *middle class*	Hyphenated before but not after a noun.
adjective + participle	*tight-lipped* person *high-jumping* grasshoppers *open-ended* question the question was *open ended*	Hyphenated before but not after a noun.
adverb ending in *ly* + participle or adjective	a *highly paid* ragpicker a *fully open* society he was *mildly amusing*	Open whether before or after a noun.
adverb not ending in *ly* + participle or adjective	a *much-needed* addition it was *much needed* a very *well-read* child *little-understood* rules a *too-easy* answer the *best-known* author the *highest-ranking* officer the *worst-paid* job a *lesser-paid* colleague the *most efficient* method a *less prolific* artist a *more thorough* exam the *most skilled* workers (most in number) but the *most-skilled* workers (most in skill) a *very much needed* addition	Hyphenated before but not after a noun; compounds with *more*, *most*, *less*, *least*, and *very* usually open unless ambiguity threatens. When the adverb rather than the compound as a whole is modified by another adverb, the entire expression is open.
combining forms	*electrocardiogram* *socioeconomic* *politico-scientific* studies the *practico-inert*	Usually closed if permanent, hyphenated if temporary. See 7.78.
gerund + noun	*running shoes* *cooking class* *running-shoe* store	Noun form open; adjective form hyphenated. See also **noun + gerund**.
noun + adjective	*computer-literate* accountants *HIV-positive* men the stadium is *fan friendly* she is *HIV positive*	Hyphenated before a noun; usually open after a noun.

Category/specific term	*Examples*	*Summary of rule*
2. COMPOUNDS ACCORDING TO PARTS OF SPEECH (continued)		
noun + gerund	*decision making* a *decision-making* body *mountain climbing* *time-clock-punching* employees a *Nobel Prize–winning* chemist (see 6.80) *bookkeeping* *caregiving* *copyediting*	Noun form usually open; adjective form hyphenated before a noun. Some permanent compounds closed (see 7.78).
noun + noun, single function (first noun modifies second noun)	*student nurse* *restaurant owner* *directory path* *tenure track* *tenure-track* position *home-rule* governance *shipbuilder* *gunrunner* *copyeditor*	Noun form open; adjective form hyphenated before a noun. Some permanent compounds closed (see 7.78).
noun + noun, two functions (both nouns equal)	*nurse-practitioner* *philosopher-king* *city-state* *city-state* governance	Both noun and adjective forms always hyphenated.
noun + numeral or enumerator	*type A* a *type A* executive *type 2* diabetes *size 12* slacks a *page 1* headline	Both noun and adjective forms always open.
noun + participle	a *Wagner-burdened* repertoire *flower-filled* garden a *clothes-buying* grandmother a day of *clothes buying*	Hyphenated before a noun, otherwise open.
participle + noun	*chopped-liver* pâté *cutting-edge* methods their approach was *cutting edge*	Adjective form hyphenated before but not after a noun.
participle + *up, out,* and similar adverbs	*dressed-up* children *burned-out* buildings *ironed-on* decal we were *dressed up* that decal is *ironed on*	Adjective form hyphenated before but not after a noun. Verb form always open.
phrases, adjectival	an *over-the-counter* drug a *matter-of-fact* reply an *up-to-date* solution sold *over the counter* her tone was *matter of fact* his equipment was *up to date*	Hyphenated before a noun; usually open after a noun.

Category/specific term	*Examples*	*Summary of rule*
2. COMPOUNDS ACCORDING TO PARTS OF SPEECH (continued)		
phrases, noun	*stick-in-the-mud* *jack-of-all-trades* a *flash in the pan*	Hyphenated or open as listed in *Webster's*. If not in the dictionary, open.
proper nouns and adjectives relating to geography or nationality	*African Americans* *African American* president a *Chinese American* *French Canadians* *South Asian Americans* the *Scotch Irish* the *North Central* region *Middle Eastern* countries but *Sino-Tibetan* languages the *Franco-Prussian* War the *US-Canada* border *Anglo-American* cooperation *Anglo-Americans*	Open in both noun and adjective forms, unless the first term is a prefix or unless *between* is implied. See also 8.38.
3. COMPOUNDS FORMED WITH SPECIFIC TERMS		
ache	*toothache* *stomachache*	Always closed.
all	*all out* *all along* *all over* an *all-out* effort an *all-American* player the book is *all-encompassing* but we were *all in* [tired]	Adverbial phrases open; adjectival phrases usually hyphenated both before and after a noun.
book	*reference book* *coupon book* *checkbook* *cookbook*	Closed or open as listed in *Webster's*. If not in the dictionary, open.
borne	*waterborne* *food-borne* *e-mail-borne* *mosquito-borne*	Closed if listed as such in *Webster's*. If not in *Webster's*, hyphenated; compounds retain the hyphen both before and after a noun.
century	the *twenty-first century* *fourteenth-century* monastery *twenty-first-century* history a *mid-eighteenth-century* poet *late nineteenth-century* politicians her style was *nineteenth century*	Noun forms always open; adjectival compounds hyphenated before but not after a noun. See also **old** (below), **mid** (in section 4), and 7.83.

Category/specific term	*Examples*	*Summary of rule*
3. COMPOUNDS FORMED WITH SPECIFIC TERMS (continued)		
cross	a *cross section* a *cross-reference* *cross-referenced* *cross-grained* *cross-country* *crossbow* *crossover*	Many compounds formed with *cross* are in *Webster's* (as those listed here). If not in *Webster's*, noun, adjective, adverb, and verb forms should be open.
e	*e-mail* *e-book* *eBay*	Hyphenated except with proper nouns. See also 8.163.
elect	*president-elect* *vice president elect* *mayor-elect* *county assessor elect*	Hyphenated unless the name of the office consists of an open compound.
ever	*ever-ready* help *ever-recurring* problem *everlasting* he was *ever eager*	Usually hyphenated before but not after a noun; some permanent compounds closed.
ex	*ex-partner* *ex-marine* *ex–corporate executive*	Hyphenated, but use en dash if *ex-* precedes an open compound.
foster	*foster mother* *foster parents* a *foster-family* background	Noun forms open; adjective forms hyphenated.
free	*toll-free* number *accident-free* driver the number is *toll-free* the driver is *accident-free*	Compounds formed with *free* as second element are hyphenated both before and after a noun.
full	*full-length* mirror the mirror is *full length* three *bags full* a *suitcase full*	Hyphenated before a noun, otherwise open. Use *ful* only in such permanent compounds as *cupful*, *handful*.
general	*attorney general* *postmaster general* *lieutenants general*	Always open; in plural forms, *general* remains singular.
grand, great-grand	*grandfather* *granddaughter* *great-grandmother* *great-great-grandson*	*Grand* compounds closed; *great* compounds hyphenated.

Category/specific term	*Examples*	*Summary of rule*
3. COMPOUNDS FORMED WITH SPECIFIC TERMS (continued)		
half	*half-asleep* *half-finished* a *half sister* a *half hour* a *half-hour* session *halfway* *halfhearted*	Adjective forms hyphenated before and after the noun; noun forms open. Some permanent compounds closed, whether nouns, adjectives, or adverbs. Check *Webster's*. See also **fractions** in section 1.
house	*schoolhouse* *courthouse* *safe house* *rest house*	Closed or open as listed in *Webster's*. If not in the dictionary, open.
in-law	*sister-in-law* *parents-in-law*	All compounds hyphenated; only the first element takes a plural form.
like	*catlike* *childlike* *Christlike* *bell-like* a *penitentiary-like* institution	Closed if listed as such in *Webster's*. If not in *Webster's*, hyphenated; compounds retain the hyphen both before and after a noun.
mid. See section 4.		
near	in the *near term* a *near accident* a *near-term* proposal a *near-dead* language	Noun forms open; adjective forms hyphenated.
odd	a *hundred-odd* manuscripts *350-odd* books	Always hyphenated.
old	a *three-year-old* a *105-year-old* woman a *decade-old* union a *centuries-old* debate a child who is *three years old* the debate is *centuries old*	Noun forms hyphenated. Adjective forms hyphenated before a noun, open after. See also **age terms** in section 1.
on	*online* *onstage* *ongoing* *on-screen* *on-site*	Sometimes closed, sometimes hyphenated. Check *Webster's* and hyphenate if term is not listed. See also 7.79.
percent	*5 percent* a *10 percent* increase	Both noun and adjective forms always open.

Category/specific term	*Examples*	*Summary of rule*
3. COMPOUNDS FORMED WITH SPECIFIC TERMS (continued)		
pseudo. See section 4.		
quasi	a *quasi corporation* a *quasi-public* corporation *quasi-judicial* *quasiperiodic* *quasicrystal*	Noun form usually open; adjective form usually hyphenated. A handful of permanent compounds are listed in *Webster's*.
self	*self-restraint* *self-realization* *self-sustaining* *self-conscious* the behavior is *self-destructive* *selfless* *unselfconscious*	Both noun and adjective forms hyphenated, except where *self* is followed by a suffix or preceded by *un*. Note that *unselfconscious*, Chicago's preference, is contrary to *Webster's*.
step	*stepbrother* *stepparent* *step-granddaughter* *step-great-granddaughter*	Always closed except with *grand* and *great*.
style	dined *family-style* *1920s-style* dancing danced *1920s-style* *Chicago-style* hyphenation according to *Chicago style* *headline-style* capitalization use *headline style*	Adjective and adverb forms hyphenated; noun form usually open.
vice	*vice-consul* *vice-chancellor* *vice president* *vice presidential* duties *vice admiral* *viceroy*	Sometimes hyphenated, sometimes open, occasionally closed. Check *Webster's* and hyphenate if term is not listed.
web	a *website* a *web page* *web-related* matters	Noun form open or closed, as shown; if term is not in any dictionary, opt for open. Adjective form hyphenated. See also 7.76.
wide	*worldwide* *citywide* *Chicago-wide* the canvass was *university-wide*	Closed if listed as such in *Webster's*. If not in *Webster's*, hyphenated; compounds retain the hyphen both before and after a noun.

4. WORDS FORMED WITH PREFIXES

Compounds formed with prefixes are normally closed, whether they are nouns, verbs, adjectives, or adverbs. A hyphen should appear, however, (1) before a capitalized word or a numeral, such a *sub-Saharan*, *pre-1950*; (2) before a compound term, such as *non-self-sustaining*, *pre–Vietnam War* (before an open compound, an en dash is used; see 6.80); (3) to separate two *i*'s, two *a*'s, and other combinations of letters or syllables that might cause misreading, such as *anti-intellectual*, *extra-alkaline*, *pro-life*; (4) to separate the repeated terms in a double prefix, such as *sub-subentry*; (5) when a prefix or combining form stands alone, such as *over-* and *underused*, *macro-* and *microeconomics*. The spellings shown below conform largely to *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*. Compounds formed with combining forms not listed here, such as *auto*, *tri*, and *para*, follow the same pattern.

ante	antebellum, antenatal, antediluvian
anti	antihypertensive, antihero, *but* anti-inflammatory, anti-Hitlerian
bi	binomial, bivalent, bisexual
bio	bioecology, biophysical, biosociology
co	coequal, coauthor, coeditor, coordinate, cooperation, coworker, *but* co-op, co-opt
counter	counterclockwise, counterrevolution
cyber	cyberspace, cyberstore
extra	extramural, extrafine, *but* extra-administrative
fold	fourfold, hundredfold, *but* twenty-five-fold, 150-fold
hyper	hypertension, hyperactive, hypertext
infra	infrasonic, infrastructure
inter	interorganizational, interfaith
intra	intrazonal, intramural, *but* intra-arterial
macro	macroeconomics, macromolecular
mega	megavitamin, megamall, *but* mega-annoyance
meta	metalanguage, metaethical, *but* meta-analysis (not the same as *metanalysis*)
micro	microeconomics, micromethodical
mid	midthirties, a midcareer event, midcentury, *but* mid-July, the mid-1990s, the mid-twentieth century, mid-twentieth-century history
mini	minivan, minimarket
multi	multiauthor, multiconductor, *but* multi-institutional
neo	neonate, neoorthodox, Neoplatonism, neo-Nazi (*neo* lowercase or capital and hyphenated as in dictionary; lowercase and hyphenate if not in dictionary)
non	nonviolent, nonevent, nonnegotiable, *but* non-beer-drinking
over	overmagnified, overshoes, overconscientious
post	postdoctoral, postmodernism, posttraumatic, *but* post-Vietnam, post–World War II (see 6.80)
pre	premodern, preregistration, prewar, preempt, *but* pre-Columbian, Pre-Raphaelite (*pre* lowercase or capital as in dictionary; lowercase if term is not in dictionary)
pro	proindustrial, promarket, *but* pro-life, pro-Canadian

4. WORDS FORMED WITH PREFIXES (continued)	
proto	protolanguage, protogalaxy, protomartyr
pseudo	pseudotechnocrat, pseudomodern, *but* pseudo-Tudor
re	reedit, reunify, reproposition, *but* re-cover, re-creation (as distinct from *recover*, *recreation*)
semi	semiopaque, semiconductor, *but* semi-invalid
sub	subbasement, subzero, subcutaneous
super	superannuated, supervirtuoso, superpowerful
supra	supranational, suprarenal, supraorbital, *but* supra-American
trans	transsocietal, transmembrane, transcontinental, transatlantic, *but* trans-American
ultra	ultrasophisticated, ultraorganized, ultraevangelical
un	unfunded, unneutered, *but* un-English, un-unionized
under	underemployed, underrate, undercount

8 Names and Terms

Overview 8.1
Personal Names 8.3
  General Principles 8.3
  Non-English Names in an English Context 8.7
Titles and Offices 8.18
Epithets, Kinship Names, and Personifications 8.33
Ethnic, Socioeconomic, and Other Groups 8.37
Names of Places 8.43
  Parts of the World 8.44
  Political Divisions 8.50
  Topographical Divisions 8.52
  Public Places and Major Structures 8.55
Words Derived from Proper Names 8.59
Names of Organizations 8.61
  Governmental Bodies 8.61
  Political and Economic Organizations and Movements 8.65
  Institutions and Companies 8.67
  Associations 8.69
Historical and Cultural Terms 8.70
  Periods 8.70
  Events 8.74
  Cultural Movements and Styles 8.78
  Acts, Treaties, and Government Programs 8.79
  Legal Cases 8.81
  Awards 8.82
  Oaths and Pledges 8.83
  Academic Subjects, Courses of Study, and Lecture Series 8.84
Calendar and Time Designations 8.87
Religious Names and Terms 8.90
  Deities and Revered Persons 8.90
  Religious Groups 8.95
  Religious Writings 8.102
  Religious Events, Concepts, Services, and Objects 8.107

Military Terms 8.111
- *Forces and Troops* 8.111
- *Wars, Revolutions, Battles, and Campaigns* 8.112
- *Military Awards* 8.114

Names of Ships and Other Vehicles 8.115

Scientific Terminology 8.118
- *Scientific Names of Plants and Animals* 8.118
- *Vernacular Names of Plants and Animals* 8.127
- *Genetic Terms* 8.130
- *Geological Terms* 8.133
- *Astronomical Terms* 8.136
- *Medical Terms* 8.142
- *Physical and Chemical Terms* 8.146

Brand Names and Trademarks 8.152

Titles of Works 8.154
- *Capitalization, Punctuation, and Italics* 8.155
- *Books and Periodicals* 8.166
- *Articles in Periodicals and Parts of a Book* 8.175
- *Poems and Plays* 8.179
- *Pamphlets and Reports* 8.183
- *Unpublished Works* 8.184
- *Movies, Television, and Radio* 8.185
- *Electronic Publications* 8.186
- *Musical Works* 8.188
- *Works of Art and Exhibitions* 8.193

Signs and Mottoes 8.196

Overview

8.1 ***Chicago's preference for the "down" style.*** Proper nouns are usually capitalized, as are some of the terms derived from or associated with proper nouns. For the latter, Chicago's preference is for sparing use of capitals—what is sometimes referred to as a "down" style. Although *Brussels* (the Belgian city) is capitalized, Chicago prefers *brussels sprouts*—which are not necessarily from Brussels (see 8.60). Likewise, *President Obama* is capitalized, but *the president* is not (see 8.18–32). (In certain nonacademic contexts—e.g., a press release—such terms as *president* may be capitalized.)

8.2 ***Italics and quotation marks.*** Chicago prefers italics to set off the titles of major or freestanding works such as books, journals, movies, and paintings. This practice extends to cover the names of ships and other craft, species names, and legal cases. Quotation marks are usually reserved for the titles of subsections of larger works—including chapter and article titles and the titles of poems that have been collected into a series. Some titles—for example, of a book series or a website, under which any number of works or documents may be collected—are neither italicized nor placed in quotation marks. For more on the titles of works, including matters of capitalization and punctuation, see 8.154–95.

Personal Names

General Principles

8.3 ***Personal names—additional resources.*** For names of well-known deceased persons, Chicago generally prefers the spellings in *Merriam-Webster's Biographical Dictionary* or the biographical section of *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary* (referred to below as *Webster's*). For living persons, consult *Who's Who* or *Who's Who in America*, among other sources. (See bibliog. 4.1 for these and other useful reference works.) Where different spellings appear in different sources (e.g., W. E. B. DuBois *versus* W. E. B. Du Bois), the writer or editor must make a choice and stick with it. The names of known and lesser-known persons not in the standard references can usually be checked and cross-checked at any number of officially sponsored online resources (e.g., for authors' names, online library catalogs or booksellers). The name of a living person should, wherever possible, correspond to that person's own usage.

8.4 ***Capitalization of personal names.*** Names and initials of persons, real or fictitious, are capitalized. A space should be used between any initials, except when initials are used alone. See also 7.62, 10.12.

Jane Doe
George S. McGovern
P. D. James
M. F. K. Fisher
Malcolm X
LBJ

Unconventional spellings strongly preferred by the bearer of the name or pen name (e.g., bell hooks) should usually be respected in appropriate contexts (library catalogs generally capitalize all such names). E. E. Cummings can be safely capitalized; it was one of his publishers, not he himself, who lowercased his name. Most editors will draw the line at beginning a sentence with a lowercased name and choose either to rewrite or to capitalize the first letter for the occasion.

8.5 ***Names with particles.*** Many names include particles such as *de*, *d'*, *de la*, *von*, *van*, and *ten*. Practice with regard to capitalizing and spacing the particles varies widely, and confirmation should be sought in a biographical dictionary or other authoritative source. When the surname is used alone, the particle is usually retained, capitalized or lowercased and spaced as in the full name (though always capitalized when beginning a sentence). *Le*, *La*, and *L'* are always capitalized when not preceded by *de*; *the*, which sometimes appears with the English form of a Native American name, is always lowercased. See also 8.7, 8.8, 8.9, 8.10, 8.11, 8.14, 8.33.

Alfonse D'Amato; D'Amato
Diana DeGette; DeGette
Walter de la Mare; de la Mare
Paul de Man; de Man
Thomas De Quincey; De Quincey
Page duBois; duBois
W. E. B. DuBois; DuBois (but see 8.3)
Daphne du Maurier; du Maurier
Robert M. La Follette Sr.; La Follette
John Le Carré; Le Carré
Pierre-Charles L'Enfant; L'Enfant
Anwar el-Sadat; Sadat
Abraham Ten Broeck; Ten Broeck
the Prophet (Tenskwatawa)
Robert van Gulik; van Gulik
Stephen Van Rensselaer; Van Rensselaer
Wernher von Braun; von Braun

8.6 ***Hyphenated and extended names.*** A hyphenated last name or a last name that consists of two or more elements should never be shorn of one of its elements. For names of prominent or historical figures, *Webster's* and other reliable alphabetical listings usually indicate where the last name begins.

Victoria Sackville-West; Sackville-West
Ralph Vaughan Williams; Vaughan Williams (*not* Williams)

Ludwig Mies van der Rohe; Mies van der Rohe (*not* van der Rohe); Mies
but
John Hope Franklin; Franklin
Charlotte Perkins Gilman; Gilman

For unhyphenated compound names of lesser-known persons for whom proper usage cannot be determined, use only the last element (including any particle[s]; see 8.5). But see 8.11.

Non-English Names in an English Context

8.7 ***French names.*** The particles *de* and *d'* are lowercased (except at the beginning of a sentence). When the last name is used alone, *de* (but not *d'*) is often dropped. Its occasional retention, in *de Gaulle*, for example, is suggested by tradition rather than logic. (When a name begins with closed-up *de*, such as *Debussy*, the *d* is always capitalized.)

Jean d'Alembert; d'Alembert
Alfred de Musset; Musset
Alexis de Tocqueville; Tocqueville
but
Charles de Gaulle; de Gaulle

When *de la* precedes a name, *la* is usually capitalized and is always retained when the last name is used alone. The contraction *du* is usually lowercased in a full name but is retained and capitalized when the last name is used alone. (When a name begins with closed-up *Du*, such as *Dupont*, the *d* is always capitalized.)

Jean de La Fontaine; La Fontaine
René-Robert Cavelier de La Salle; La Salle
Philippe du Puy de Clinchamps; Du Puy de Clinchamps

When the article *le* accompanies a name, it is capitalized with or without the first name.

Gustave Le Bon; Le Bon

Initials standing for a hyphenated given name should also be hyphenated.

Jean-Paul Sartre; J.-P. Sartre; Sartre

Since there is considerable variation in French usage, the guidelines and examples above merely represent the most common forms.

8.8 ***German and Portuguese names.*** In the original languages, particles in German and Portuguese names are lowercased and are usually dropped when the last name is used alone. But in English contexts, if another form is widely known, it may be used instead.

Alexander von Humboldt; Humboldt
Maximilian von Spee; Spee
Heinrich Friedrich Karl vom und zum Stein; Stein
Ludwig van Beethoven; Beethoven
Agostinho da Silva; Silva
but
Vasco da Gama; da Gama

8.9 ***Italian names.*** Particles in Italian names are most often uppercased and retained when the last name is used alone.

Gabriele D'Annunzio; D'Annunzio
Lorenzo Da Ponte; Da Ponte
Luca Della Robbia; Della Robbia

In many older aristocratic names, however, the particle is traditionally lowercased and dropped when the last name is used alone.

Beatrice d'Este; Este
Lorenzo de' Medici; Medici

8.10 ***Dutch names.*** In English usage, the particles *van*, *van den*, *ter*, and the like are lowercased when full names are given but usually capitalized when only the last name is used.

Joannes van Keulen; Van Keulen
Pieter van den Keere; Van den Keere
Vincent van Gogh; Van Gogh
Gerard ter Borch; Ter Borch

8.11 ***Spanish names.*** Many Spanish names are composed of both the father's and the mother's family names, usually in that order, sometimes joined by *y* (and). When the given name is omitted, persons with such names are usually referred to by both family names but sometimes by only one (usually, but not always, the first of the two family names), according to their own preference. It is never incorrect to use both.

José Ortega y Gasset; Ortega y Gasset *or* Ortega
Pascual Ortiz Rubio; Ortiz Rubio *or* Ortiz
Federico García Lorca; García Lorca (known among speakers of English, however, as Lorca)

Spanish family names that include an article, a preposition, or both are treated in the same way as analogous French names.

Tomás de Torquemada; Torquemada
Manuel de Falla; Falla
Bartolomé de Las Casas; Las Casas
Gonzalo Fernández de Oviedo; Fernández de Oviedo

Traditionally, a married woman replaced her mother's family name with her husband's (first) family name, sometimes preceded by *de*. If, for example, María Carmen Mendoza Salinas married Juan Alberto Peña Montalvo, she could change her legal name to María Carmen Mendoza (de) Peña or, if the husband was well known by both family names, to María Carmen Mendoza (de) Peña Montalvo. Many modern women in Spanish-speaking countries, however, no longer take their husband's family name. For alphabetizing, see 16.84.

8.12 ***Russian names.*** Russian family names, as well as patronymics (the name preceding the family name and derived from the name of the father), sometimes take different endings for male and female members of the family. For example, Lenin's real name was Vladimir Ilyich Ulyanov (given name, patronymic, family name); his sister Maria was Maria Ilyinichna Ulyanova. In Russian sources (and, by extension, their English translations), often only the given name and patronymic are used; in such instances the patronymic should not be confused either for a middle name or for the family name.

8.13 ***Hungarian names.*** In Hungarian practice the family name precedes the given name—for example, Molnár Ferenc, Kodály Zoltán. In English contexts, however, such names are usually inverted—Ferenc Molnár, Zoltán Kodály. In some cases, the family name includes an initial—for example, É. Kiss Katalin. When such a name is inverted for English contexts (i.e., to become Katalin É. Kiss), the initial should not be confused for a middle initial. When such a name is inverted, as for an index, it is properly listed under the initial (see 16.79).

8.14 ***Arabic names.*** Surnames of Arabic origin (which are strictly surnames rather than family names) are often prefixed by such elements as *Abu*, *Abd*, *Ibn*, *al*, or *el*. Since these are integral parts of a name, just as *Mc* or *Fitz* are parts of certain names, they should not be dropped when the surname is used alone. Capitalization of such elements varies widely, but terms joined with a hyphen may usually be lowercased. See also 11.99, 11.100, 16.76.

Syed Abu Zafar Nadvi; Abu Zafar Nadvi
Abdul Aziz Ibn Saud; Ibn Saud
Tawfiq al-Hakim; al-Hakim

Names of rulers of older times, however, are often shortened to the first part of the name rather than the second.

Harun al-Rashid; Harun (al-Rashid, "Rightly Guided," was Harun's *laqab*, a descriptive name he took on his accession to the caliphate)

8.15 ***Chinese names.*** In Chinese practice, the family name comes before the given name. (This practice should be followed in English contexts with names of Chinese persons but not with those of persons of Chinese origin whose names have been anglicized.) For use of the Pinyin and Wade-Giles systems of transliteration, see 11.102–10.

Chiang Kai-shek; Chiang (Wade-Giles)
Mao Tse-tung; Mao (Wade-Giles)
Li Bai; Li (Pinyin)
Du Fu; Du (Pinyin)
but
Anthony Yu; Yu
Tang Tsou; Tsou

8.16 ***Japanese names.*** In Japanese usage the family name precedes the given name. Japanese names are sometimes westernized, however, by authors writing in English or persons of Japanese origin living in the West.

Tajima Yumiko; Tajima
Yoshida Shigeru; Yoshida
but
Noriaki Kurosawa; Kurosawa

8.17 ***Other Asian names.*** In some Asian countries, people are usually known by their given name rather than by a surname or family name. The Indonesian writer Pramoedya Ananta Toer, for example, is referred to in short form as Pramoedya (not as Toer). For further examples, see 16.77, 16.81, 16.85, 16.86. If in doubt, use the full form of a name in all references or consult an expert or consult the usage in a reputable source that discusses the person in question.

Titles and Offices

8.18 ***Titles and offices—the general rule.*** Civil, military, religious, and professional titles are capitalized when they immediately precede a personal name and are thus used as part of the name (typically replacing the title holder's first name). In formal prose and other generic text (as opposed to promotional or ceremonial contexts or a heading), titles are normally lowercased when following a name or used in place of a name (but see 8.19). For abbreviated forms, see 10.11–27.

President Lincoln; the president
General Bradley; the general
Cardinal Newman; the cardinal
Governors Quinn and Paterson; the governors

Although both first and second names may be used after a capitalized title (President Abraham Lincoln; but see 8.20)—and though it is perfectly correct to do so—Chicago prefers to avoid such usage in formal prose, especially with civil, corporate, and academic titles (see 8.21, 8.26, 8.27). Note also that once a title has been given, it need not be repeated each time a person's name is mentioned.

John F. Kerry, senator from Massachusetts; Senator Kerry; Kerry

8.19 ***Exceptions to the general rule.*** In promotional or ceremonial contexts such as a displayed list of donors in the front matter of a book or a list of corporate officers in an annual report, titles are usually capitalized even when following a personal name. Exceptions may also be called for in other contexts for reasons of courtesy or diplomacy.

Maria Martinez, Director of International Sales

A title used alone, in place of a personal name, is capitalized only in such contexts as a toast or a formal introduction, or when used in direct address.

Ladies and Gentlemen, the Prime Minister.
I would have done it, Captain, but the ship was sinking.
Thank you, Mr. President.

8.20 ***Titles used in apposition.*** When a title is used in apposition before a personal name—that is, not alone and as part of the name but as an equivalent to it, usually preceded by *the* or by a modifier—it is considered not a title but rather a descriptive phrase and is therefore lowercased.

the empress Elizabeth of Austria (*but* Empress Elizabeth of Austria)
German chancellor Angela Merkel (*but* Chancellor Merkel)
the German-born pope Benedict XVI
former president Carter
former presidents Reagan and Ford
the then secretary of state Colin Powell

8.21 ***Civil titles.*** Much of the usage below is contradicted by the official literature typically generated by political offices, where capitalization of a title in any position is the norm (see 8.19). In formal academic prose, however, civil titles are capitalized only when used as part of the name (except as noted). See also 10.13.

the president; George Washington, first president of the United States; President Washington; the presidency; presidential; the Washington administration; Washington; Gloria Macapagal Arroyo, president of the Philippines; President Arroyo; Arroyo
the vice president; John Adams, vice president of the United States; Vice President Adams; vice-presidential duties
the secretary of state; Hillary Clinton, secretary of state; Secretary of State Clinton *or* Secretary Clinton
the senator; the senator from New York; New York senator Kirsten E. Gillibrand (see 8.20); Senator Gillibrand; Senators Gillibrand and Schumer; Senator Mikulski, Democrat from Maryland (*or* D-MD)
the representative; the congressman; the congresswoman; Jesse Jackson Jr., representative from Illinois *or* congressman from Illinois; Congressman Jackson *or* Rep. Jesse Jackson Jr. (D-IL); Kay Granger, representative from Texas; Congresswoman Granger; the congresswoman *or* the representative; Representatives Jackson and Granger
the Speaker; Nancy Pelosi, Speaker of the House of Representatives; Speaker Pelosi (*Speaker* is best capitalized in all contexts to avoid conflation with generic speakers)
the chief justice; John G. Roberts Jr., chief justice of the United States; Chief Justice Roberts (see also 8.63)

the associate justice; Ruth Bader Ginsburg, associate justice; Justice Ginsburg; Justices Ginsburg and Stevens
the chief judge; Timothy C. Evans, chief judge; Judge Evans
the ambassador; Robert Holmes Tuttle, ambassador to the Court of St. James's *or* ambassador to the United Kingdom; Ambassador Tuttle
the governor; Joe Manchin, governor of the state of West Virginia; Governor Manchin
the mayor; Richard M. Daley, mayor of Chicago; Mayor Daley
the state senator; Teresa Fedor, Ohio state senator; the Honorable Teresa Fedor
the state representative (same pattern as state senator)
the governor general of Canada; the Right Honourable Michaëlle Jean
the finance minister; Pranab Kumar Mukherjee, finance minister of India; Mukherjee
the prime minister; the Right Honourable Pierre Elliott Trudeau, former prime minister of Canada; Gordon Brown, the British prime minister
the premier (of a Canadian province); the Honourable Brad Wall
the member of Parliament (UK and Canada); Jane Doe, member of Parliament, *or, more commonly,* Jane Doe, MP; Jane Doe, the member for West Hamage
the chief whip; Nathi Mthethwa, chief whip of the African National Congress; Mthethwa
the foreign secretary (UK); the foreign minister (other nations); the British foreign secretary; the German foreign minister (not used as a title preceding the name)
the chancellor; Angela Merkel, chancellor of Germany; Chancellor Merkel
the chancellor of the exchequer (UK); Alistair Darling; Chancellor Darling
the Lord Privy Seal (UK; always capitalized)

For use of *the Honorable* and similar terms of respect, see 8.32, 10.18.

8.22 ***Titles of sovereigns and other rulers.*** Most titles of sovereigns and other rulers are lowercased when used alone. See also 8.31.

King Abdullah II; the king of Jordan
Queen Elizabeth; Elizabeth II; the queen (in a British Commonwealth context, the Queen)
the Holy Roman emperor
Nero, emperor of Rome; the Roman emperor
Hamad ibn Isa al-Khalifah, king of Bahrain; King Hamad
the shah of Iran
the sharif of Mecca
the paramount chief of Basutoland
Wilhelm II, emperor of Germany; Kaiser Wilhelm II; the kaiser
the führer (Adolf Hitler)
Il Duce (used only of Benito Mussolini; both *i* and *d* capitalized)

8.23 *Military titles.* As is the case with civil titles, military titles are routinely capitalized in the literature of the organization or government with which they are associated. Nonetheless, in formal academic prose, most such titles are capitalized only when used as part of a person's name. Occasional exceptions may be made if ambiguity threatens. See also 10.13.

the general; General Ulysses S. Grant, commander in chief of the Union army; General Grant; the commander in chief
the general of the army; Omar N. Bradley, general of the army; General Bradley
the admiral; Chester W. Nimitz, fleet admiral; Admiral Nimitz, commander in chief of the Pacific Fleet
the chairman; Michael G. Mullen, chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff; Admiral Mullen
the captain; Captain Frances LeClaire, company commander
the sergeant; Sergeant Carleton C. Singer; a noncommissioned officer (NCO)
the warrant officer; Warrant Officer John Carmichael
the chief petty officer; Chief Petty Officer Tannenbaum
the private; Private T. C. Alhambra
the British general; General Sir Guy Carleton, British commander in New York City; General Carleton

For abbreviations, often used when a title precedes a name and appropriate in material in which many military titles appear, see 10.15.

8.24 *Quasi-military titles.* Titles and ranks used in organizations such as the police, the merchant marine, or the Salvation Army are treated the same way as military titles.

the chief of police; Frederick Day, Parkdale chief of police; Chief Day
the warden; Jane Simmons, warden of the state penitentiary; Warden Simmons

8.25 *Religious titles.* Religious titles are treated much like civil and military titles (see 8.21, 8.23).

the rabbi; Rabbi Avraham Yitzhak ha-Kohen Kuk; the rabbinate
the cantor *or* hazzan; Deborah Bard, cantor; Cantor Bard
the sheikh; Sheikh Ibrahim el-Zak Zaky
the imam; Imam Shamil
the ayatollah; Ayatollah Khomeini
the Dalai Lama (traditionally capitalized); *but* previous dalai lamas
the sadhu; the guru; the shaman
the pope; Pope Benedict XVI; the papacy; papal

the cardinal; Francis Cardinal George *or, less formally,* Cardinal George; the sacred college of cardinals
the patriarch; Cyrillus Lucaris, patriarch of Constantinople; the patriarchate
the archbishop; the archbishop of Canterbury; Archbishop Williams (*or, in this case,* Dr. Williams)
the bishop; the bishop of Toledo; Bishop Donnelly; bishopric; diocese
the minister; the Reverend Shirley Stoops
the rector; the Reverend James Williams (see also 10.18, 8.32)

8.26 ***Corporate and organizational titles.*** Titles of persons holding offices such as those listed below are rarely used as part of a name. If a short form is required, either the generic term or simply a personal name suffices.

the chief executive officer; Pat Beldos, chief executive officer of Caterham Industries; the CEO
the director; Gabriel Dotto, director of the Michigan State University Press
the school superintendent; Janice Bayder, superintendent of Coriander Township High School District
the secretary-treasurer; Georgina Fido, secretary-treasurer of the Kenilworth Kennel Society

8.27 ***Academic titles.*** Academic titles generally follow the pattern for civil titles (see 8.21).

the professor; Françoise Meltzer, professor of comparative literature; Professor Meltzer
the chair; Jonathan M. Hall, chair of the Department of Classics; Professor Hall (but see 8.29)
the provost; Thomas F. Rosenbaum, provost of the University of Chicago; Rosenbaum
the president; Robert J. Zimmer, president of the University of Chicago; Zimmer *or* President Zimmer
the dean; John W. Boyer, dean of the College at the University of Chicago (*the College* is an official division of the University of Chicago); Dean Boyer
named professorships; Wendy Doniger, Mircea Eliade Distinguished Service Professor of the History of Religions in the Divinity School; Professor Doniger; Anthony Grafton, Dodge Professor of History, Princeton University; Professor Grafton
the professor emeritus (masc.); the professor emerita (fem.); professors emeriti (masc. or masc. and fem.); professors emeritae (fem.); Professor Emerita Neugarten (note that *emeritus* and *emerita* are honorary designations and do not simply mean "retired")

8.28 ***Other academic designations.*** Terms denoting student status are lowercased.

freshman *or* first-year student	sophomore	junior	senior

Names of degrees, fellowships, and the like are lowercased when referred to generically. See also 10.20.

a master's degree; a doctorate; a fellowship; master of business administration (MBA)

8.29 ***Descriptive titles.*** When preceding a name, generic titles that describe a person's role or occupation—such as *philosopher* or *historian*—should be lowercased and treated as if in apposition (see 8.20). Compare 8.27.

the historian William McNeill (*not* Historian McNeill)

8.30 ***Civic and academic honors.*** Titles denoting civic or academic honors are capitalized when following a personal name. For awards, see 8.82; for abbreviations, see 10.21.

Laurence L. Bongie, Fellow of the Royal Society of Canada; the fellows

8.31 ***Titles of nobility.*** Unlike most of the titles mentioned in the previous paragraphs, titles of nobility do not denote offices (such as that of a president or an admiral). Whether inherited or conferred, they form an integral and, with rare exceptions, permanent part of a person's name and are therefore usually capitalized. The generic element in a title, however (duke, earl, etc.), is lowercased when used alone as a short form of the name. (In British usage, the generic term used alone remains capitalized in the case of royal dukes but not in the case of nonroyal dukes; in North American usage such niceties may be disregarded.) For further advice consult *The Times Style and Usage Guide* (bibliog. 1.1), and for a comprehensive listing consult the latest edition of *Burke's Peerage, Baronetage, and Knightage* (bibliog. 4.1). See also 8.22.

the prince; Prince Charles; the Prince of Wales
the duke; the duchess; the Duke and Duchess of Windsor
the marquess; the Marquess of Bath; Lord Bath
the marchioness; the Marchioness of Bath; Lady Bath
the earl; the Earl of Shaftesbury; Lord Shaftesbury; Anthony Ashley Cooper, 7th (*or* seventh) Earl of Shaftesbury; previous earls of Shaftesbury
the countess (wife of an earl); the Countess of Shaftesbury; Lady Shaftesbury

the viscount; Viscount Eccles; Lord Eccles
Baroness Thatcher; Lady Thatcher (a conferred title)
Dame Judi Dench; Dame Judi (a conferred title)
the baron; Lord Rutland
the baronet; the knight; Sir Paul McCartney; Sir Paul (*not* Sir McCartney)
Lady So-and-So [husband's last name] (wife of a marquess, earl, baron, or baronet)
Lady Olivia So-and-So (daughter of a duke, marquess, or earl); Lady Olivia
the Honourable Jessica So-and-So (daughter of a baron)
the duc de Guise (lowercased in accordance with French usage); François de Lorraine, duc de Guise
the count; Count Helmuth von Moltke *or* Graf Helmuth von Moltke; the Count of Toulouse *or* the comte de Toulouse

Note that marquesses, earls, viscounts, barons, and baronesses are addressed, and referred to after first mention, as Lord or Lady So-and-So, at least in British usage. The following entry, drawn from *Burke's Peerage, Baronetage, and Knightage*, illustrates the complexities of British noble nomenclature:

The 5th Marquess of Salisbury (Sir Robert Arthur James Gascoyne-Cecil, K.G., P.C.), Earl of Salisbury, Wilts; Viscount Cranborne, Dorset, and Baron Cecil of Essendon, Rutland; co-heir to the Barony of Ogle

8.32 ***Honorifics.*** Honorific titles and respectful forms of address are capitalized in any context. For the use of many such terms in formal correspondence, see "Forms of Address," a comprehensive listing at the back of the print edition of *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*. For abbreviations, see 10.18. See also 8.25.

the Honorable Olympia J. Snowe (US senator, member of Congress, etc.)
the Right Honourable Stephen Harper (Canadian prime minister)
the First Gentleman; the First Lady
the Queen Mother
Pandit Nehru
Mahatma Gandhi
Her (His, Your) Majesty; His (Her, Your) Royal Highness
the Most Reverend William S. Skylstad (Roman Catholic bishop)
Your (Her, His) Excellency
Mr. President; Mrs. President; Ms. President
Madam Speaker
Your Honor
but
sir, ma'am my lord, my lady

Epithets, Kinship Names, and Personifications

8.33 *Epithets (or nicknames) and bynames.* A descriptive or characterizing word or phrase used as part of, or instead of, a person's name is capitalized. A *the* used as part of such a name is not capitalized (except, e.g., at the beginning of a sentence).

the Great Emancipator (Abraham Lincoln)
the Sun King (Louis XIV)
the Wizard of Menlo Park (Thomas Edison)
Stonewall Jackson
Old Hickory (Andrew Jackson)
the Young Pretender (Charles Edward Stuart)
the Great Commoner (William Jennings Bryan)
Catherine the Great
Babe Ruth
the Swedish Nightingale (Jenny Lind)
Ivan the Terrible

When used in addition to a name, an epithet is enclosed in quotation marks and placed either within or after the name. Parentheses are unnecessary.

George Herman "Babe" Ruth
Jenny Lind, "the Swedish Nightingale"
Ivan IV, "the Terrible"

8.34 *Epithets as names of characters.* In references to works of drama or fiction, epithets or generic titles used in place of names are normally capitalized.

John Barrymore performed brilliantly as Chief Executioner.
Alice encounters the Red Queen and the Mad Hatter.

8.35 *Kinship names.* Kinship names are lowercased unless they immediately precede a personal name or are used alone, in place of a personal name. Used in apposition, however, such names are lowercased (see 8.20).

my father and mother
the Brontë sisters
Let's write to Aunt Maud.
I believe Grandmother's middle name was Marie.

Please, Dad, let's go.
but
She adores her aunt Maud.

Kinship terms used in connection with religious offices or callings are treated similarly.

The note referred to a certain Brother Thomas, one of the brothers from the Franciscan monastery, . . .

8.36 ***Personifications.*** The poetic device of giving abstractions the attributes of persons, and hence capitalizing them, is rare in today's writing. The use of capitals for such a purpose is best confined to quoted material.

"The Night is Mother of the Day, / The Winter of the Spring, / And ever upon old Decay / The greenest mosses cling." (John Greenleaf Whittier)
but
In springtime, nature is at its best.
It was a battle between head and heart; reason finally won.

Ethnic, Socioeconomic, and Other Groups

8.37 ***Ethnic and national groups and associated adjectives.*** Names of ethnic and national groups are capitalized. Adjectives associated with these names are also capitalized. For hyphenation or its absence, see 8.38.

Aborigines; an Aborigine; Aboriginal art
African Americans; African American culture (see also 8.39)
American Indians; an American Indian (see text below)
Arabs; Arabian
Asians; Asian influence in the West; an Asian American
the British; a British person *or, colloquially,* a Britisher, a Brit
Caucasians; a Caucasian (see also 8.39)
Chicanos; a Chicano; a Chicana
European Americans
the French; a Frenchman; a Frenchwoman
French Canadians
Hispanics; a Hispanic
Hopis; a Hopi; Hopi customs
Inuit; Inuit sculpture
Italian Americans; an Italian American neighborhood

Jews; a Jew; Jewish ethnicity (see also 8.95)
Latinos; a Latino; a Latina; Latino immigration
Native Americans; Native American poetry (see text below)
New Zealanders; New Zealand immigration
Pygmies; a Pygmy; Pygmy peoples
Romanies; a Romany; the Romany people

Many among those who trace their roots to the aboriginal peoples of the Americas prefer *American Indians* to *Native Americans*, and in certain historical works *Indians* may be more appropriate. Canadians often speak of *First Peoples* (and of *First Nations*). See also 7.9.

8.38 ***Compound nationalities.*** Whether terms such as *African American*, *Italian American*, *Chinese American*, and the like should be spelled open or hyphenated has been the subject of considerable controversy, the hyphen being regarded by some as suggestive of bias. Chicago doubts that hyphenation represents bias, but since the hyphen does not aid comprehension in such terms as those mentioned above, it may be omitted unless a particular publisher requires it. See also the table at 7.85, section 2, under *proper nouns and adjectives relating to geography or nationality*.

8.39 ***Color.*** Common designations of ethnic groups by color are usually lowercased unless a particular publisher or author prefers otherwise. See also 8.37.

black people; blacks; people of color
white people; whites

8.40 ***Class.*** Terms denoting socioeconomic classes or groups are lowercased.

the middle class; a middle-class neighborhood
the upper-middle class; an upper-middle-class family
blue-collar workers
the aristocracy
the proletariat
homeless people

8.41 ***Generation.*** Terms denoting generations are best lowercased.

the me generation
baby boomer(s); baby busters
generation X; generation Y; generation Z
the MTV generation

8.42 ***Physical characteristics.*** Terms describing groups or individuals according to a physical characteristic or a disability are usually lowercased.

wheelchair users   blind persons   deaf children

Some writers capitalize *deaf* when referring to people who identify themselves as members of the distinct linguistic and cultural group whose primary language is ASL—the Deaf community—and lowercase it when referring to people who have a hearing loss or to those deaf people who prefer oral methods of communication. See also 11.144.

Names of Places

8.43 ***Names of places—additional resources.*** For the spelling of names of places, consult *Merriam-Webster's Geographical Dictionary* (bibliog. 4.2). Since names of countries and cities often change, however, even the most recent edition of such a reference work cannot be current in every detail. Moreover, not all writers will be in agreement on the proper form of every place-name (e.g., some will insist on Burma rather than Myanmar). For country names, the US Central Intelligence Agency's *World Factbook*—continually updated—is a good place to start (bibliog. 4.2). For historical works, writers and editors should attempt to use the form of names appropriate to the period under discussion.

Parts of the World

8.44 ***Continents, countries, cities, oceans, and such.*** Entities that appear on maps are always capitalized, as are adjectives and nouns derived from them. An initial *the* as part of a name is lowercased in running text, except in the rare case of an initial *the* in the name of a city.

Asia; Asian
Ireland; Irish
California; Californian
Chicago; Chicagoan
Atlantic Ocean; Atlantic
South China Sea
the North Pole
the Netherlands; Dutch
but
The Hague

8.45 ***Points of the compass.*** Compass points and terms derived from them are lowercased if they simply indicate direction or location. But see 8.46.

pointing toward the north; a north wind; a northern climate
to fly east; an eastward move; in the southwest of France; southwesterly

8.46 ***Regions of the world and national regions.*** Terms that denote regions of the world or of a particular country are often capitalized, as are a few of the adjectives and nouns derived from such terms. The following examples illustrate not only the principles sketched in 8.1 but also variations based on context and usage. For terms not included here or for which no suitable analogy can be made, consult *Webster's* or an encyclopedia: if an otherwise generic term is not listed there (either capitalized or, for dictionary entries, with the indication *capitalized* next to the applicable subentry), opt for lowercase. Note that exceptions based on specific regional, political, or historical contexts are inevitable and that an author's strong preference should usually be respected. See also 8.45.

the Swiss Alps; the Australian Alps; the Alps; an Alpine village (if in the European or Australian Alps); Alpine skiing; *but* alpine pastures in the Rockies (see also 8.52)

Antarctica; the Antarctic Circle; the Antarctic Continent

the Arctic; the Arctic Circle; Arctic waters; a mass of Arctic air (*but* lowercased when used metaphorically, as in "an arctic stare"; see 8.60)

Central America, Central American countries; central Asia; central Illinois; central France; central Europe (*but* Central Europe when referring to the political division of World War I)

the continental United States; the continent of Europe; *but* on the Continent (used to denote mainland Europe); Continental cuisine; *but* continental breakfast

the East, eastern, an easterner (referring to the eastern part of the United States or other country); the Eastern Seaboard (or Atlantic Seaboard), East Coast (referring to the eastern United States); the East, the Far East, Eastern (referring to the Orient and Asian culture); the Middle East (*or*, formerly more common, the Near East), Middle Eastern (referring to Iran, Iraq, etc.); the Eastern Hemisphere; eastern Europe (*but* Eastern Europe when referring to the post–World War II division of Europe); east, eastern, eastward, to the east (directions)

the equator; equatorial climate; the Equatorial Current; Equatorial Guinea (formerly Spanish Guinea)

the Great Plains; the northern plains; the plains (*but* Plains Indians)

the Midwest, midwestern, a midwesterner (as of the United States)

the North, northern, a northerner (of a country); the North, Northern, Northerner (in American Civil War contexts); Northern California; North Africa, North African countries, in northern Africa; North America, North American, the North American continent; the North Atlantic, a northern Atlantic route; the Northern Hemisphere; the Far North; north, northern, northward, to the north (directions)

the Northeast, the Northwest, northwestern, northeastern, a northwesterner, a northeasterner (as of the United States); the Pacific Northwest; the Northwest Passage the poles; the North Pole; the North Polar ice cap; the South Pole; polar regions (*see also* Antarctica; the Arctic)

the South, southern, a southerner (of a country); the South, Southern, a Southerner (in American Civil War contexts); the Deep South; Southern California; the South of France (region); Southeast Asia; South Africa, South African (referring to the Republic of South Africa); southern Africa (referring to the southern part of the continent); south, southern, southward, to the south (directions)

the Southeast, the Southwest, southeastern, southwestern, a southeasterner, a southwesterner (as of the United States)

the tropics, tropical; the Tropic of Cancer; the Neotropics, Neotropical (of the New World biogeographical region); the subtropics, subtropical

the Upper Peninsula (of Michigan); the upper reaches of the Thames

the West, western, a westerner (of a country); the West Coast; the West, Western (referring to the culture of the Occident, or Europe and the Western Hemisphere); west, western, westward, to the west (directions)

8.47 ***Popular place-names or epithets.*** Popular names of places, or epithets, are usually capitalized. Quotation marks are not needed. Some of the following examples may be used of more than one place. None should be used in contexts where they will not be readily understood. See also 8.33.

Back Bay
the Badger State
the Badlands
the Bay Area
the Beltway
the Bible Belt
the Cape
the Delta
the East End
the Eastern Shore
the Eternal City
the Fertile Crescent
the Gaza Strip
the Gulf
the Holy City
the Jewish Quarter
the Lake District
the Left Bank
the Loop (Chicago)
the Old World
the Panhandle
the Promised Land
the Rust Belt
Silicon Valley
Skid Row
the South Seas
the South Side
the Sun Belt
the Twin Cities
the Upper West Side
the Village (Greenwich Village)
the West End
the Wild West
the Windy City

Certain terms considered political rather than geographical need not be capitalized. Some editorial discretion is advisable, however. In reference to Soviet-era global politics, for example, the following terms might be suitably capitalized:

the iron curtain *or* Iron Curtain
the third world *or* Third World

8.48 ***Urban areas.*** Generic terms used for parts of urban areas are not capitalized.

the business district the inner city

But when *greater* is used with the name of a city to denote a whole metropolitan area, it is capitalized.

Greater Chicago (*but* the greater Chicago metropolitan area)
Greater London

8.49 ***Real versus metaphorical names.*** *Mecca* is capitalized when referring to the Islamic holy city, as is *Utopia* when referring to Thomas More's imaginary country. Both are lowercased when used metaphorically. See also 8.60.

Stratford-upon-Avon is a mecca for Shakespeare enthusiasts.
She is trying to create a utopia for her children.

Political Divisions

8.50 ***Political divisions—capitalization.*** Words denoting political divisions—from *empire*, *republic*, and *state* down to *ward* and *precinct*—are capitalized when they follow a name and are used as an accepted part of the name. When preceding the name, such terms are usually capitalized in names of countries but lowercased in entities below the national level (but see 8.51). Used alone, they are usually lowercased.

the Ottoman Empire; the empire
the British Commonwealth; Commonwealth nations; the Commonwealth (*but* a commonwealth)
the United States; the Republic; the Union
the United Kingdom; Great Britain; Britain (*not* the kingdom)
the Russian Federation (formerly the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics; the Soviet Union); Russia; the federation
the Republic of South Africa (formerly the Union of South Africa); South Africa; the republic
the Fifth Republic (France)
the Republic of Indonesia; the republic
the Republic of Lithuania; the republic
the Federal Democratic Republic of Ethiopia; the republic; the State of the Gambella Peoples; the state
the Commonwealth of Australia; the commonwealth; the state of New South Wales; the Australian Capital Territory

the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico
Washington State; the state of Washington
the New England states
the province of Ontario
Jiangxi Province
Massachusetts Bay Colony; the colony at Massachusetts Bay
the British colonies; the thirteen colonies
the Indiana Territory; the territory of Indiana
the Northwest Territory; the Old Northwest
the Western Reserve
Lake County; the county of Lake; the county; county Kildare (Irish usage)
New York City; the city of New York
the City (the old city of London, now the financial district, always capitalized)
Shields Township; the township
the Eleventh Congressional District; the congressional district
the Fifth Ward; the ward
the Sixth Precinct; the precinct

8.51 ***Governmental entities.*** In contexts where a specific governmental body rather than the place is meant, the words *state*, *city*, and the like are usually capitalized when used as part of the full name of the body. See also 8.50.

She works for the Village of Forest Park.
That is a City of Chicago ordinance.
but
Residents of the village of Forest Park enjoy easy access to the city of Chicago.

Topographical Divisions

8.52 ***Mountains, rivers, and the like.*** Names of mountains, rivers, oceans, islands, and so forth are capitalized. The generic term (*mountain*, etc.) is also capitalized when used as part of the name. In the plural, it is capitalized when it is part of a single name (Hawaiian Islands) and when it is used of two or more names, whether beginning with the generic term (Mounts Washington and Rainier) or—in a return to earlier editions of this manual—when the generic term comes second and applies to two or more names (e.g., the Illinois and the Chicago Rivers). Such capitalization signals unambiguously that the generic term forms part of each proper noun. See also 8.55.

Walden Pond
Silver Lake
Lake Michigan; Lakes Michigan and Erie; the Great Lakes
the Illinois River; the Illinois and the Chicago Rivers
the Nile River valley; the Nile valley; the Nile delta; the Mississippi River valley; the Mississippi delta (where *river* forms part of the proper names but *valley* and *delta* do not)
the Bering Strait
the Mediterranean Sea; the Mediterranean
the Pacific Ocean; the Pacific and the Atlantic Oceans
the Great Barrier Reef
the Hawaiian Islands; Hawaii; *but* the island of Hawaii
the Windward Islands; the Windwards
the Iberian Peninsula
Cape Verde
the Black Forest
Stone Mountain
Mount Washington; Mount Rainier; Mounts Washington and Rainier
the Rocky Mountains; the Rockies (see also 8.46)
Death Valley; the Valley of Kings
the Continental Divide
the Horn of Africa
the Indian subcontinent (a descriptive rather than proper geographical name)

8.53 ***Generic terms for geographic entities.*** When a generic term is used descriptively (or in apposition; see 8.20) rather than as part of a name, or when used alone, it is lowercased.

the Amazon basin
along the Pacific coast (*but* the West Coast; see 8.46)
the California desert
the river Thames
the Hudson River valley

8.54 ***Foreign terms for geographic entities.*** When a foreign generic term forms part of a geographic name, the equivalent English term should not be included.

the Rio Grande (*not* the Rio Grande River)
Fujiyama (*not* Mount Fujiyama)
Mauna Loa (*not* Mount Mauna Loa)
the Sierra Nevada (*not* the Sierra Nevada Mountains)

Public Places and Major Structures

8.55 *Thoroughfares and the like.* The names of streets, avenues, squares, parks, and so forth are capitalized. The generic term is lowercased when used alone but—in a return to earlier editions of this manual—capitalized when used as part of a plural name (see also 8.52).

Broadway
Fifty-Fifth Street; Fifty-Seventh and Fifty-Fifth Streets
Hyde Park Boulevard; the boulevard
Interstate 80; I-80; an interstate highway
the Ishtar Gate; the gate
Jackson Park; the park
London Bridge; the bridge
the Mall (in London)
Park Lane
Pennsylvania Avenue; Carnegie and Euclid Avenues
Piccadilly Circus
the Spanish Steps; the steps
Tiananmen Square; the square
US Route 66; Routes 1 and 2; a state route

See also 9.51–53.

8.56 ***Buildings and monuments.*** The names of buildings and monuments are generally capitalized. The generic term is usually lowercased when used alone but capitalized when used as part of a plural name (as in the fifth example; see also 8.52, 8.55).

the Babri Mosque; the mosque
the Berlin Wall; the wall
Buckingham Fountain; the fountain
the Capitol (where the US Congress meets, *as distinct from* the capital city)
the Chrysler Building; the building; the Empire State and Chrysler Buildings
the Houses of Parliament
the Jefferson Memorial; the memorial
the Leaning Tower of Pisa
the Pyramids (*but* the Egyptian pyramids)
Shedd Aquarium; the aquarium
the Stone of Scone
Symphony Center; the center
Tribune Tower; the tower

the Washington Monument; the monument
Westminster Abbey; the abbey
the White House

Though major works of art are generally italicized, some massive works of sculpture are regarded primarily as monuments and therefore not italicized (see 8.193).

the Statue of Liberty; the statue
Mount Rushmore National Memorial; Mount Rushmore
the Colossus of Rhodes; the colossus

8.57 ***Rooms, offices, and such.*** Official names of rooms, offices, and the like are capitalized.

the Empire Room (*but* room 421)
the Amelia Earhart Suite (*but* suite 219)
the Lincoln Bedroom
the Oval Office
the West Wing of the White House

8.58 ***Foreign names for places and structures.*** Foreign names of thoroughfares and buildings are not italicized and may be preceded by English *the* if the definite article would appear in the original language.

the Champs-Elysées
the Bibliothèque nationale
the Bois de Boulogne
Unter den Linden (never preceded by *the*)
the Marktstrasse
the Piazza delle Terme

Words Derived from Proper Names

8.59 ***When to capitalize.*** Adjectives derived from personal names are normally capitalized. Those in common use may be found in *Webster's*, sometimes in the biographical names section (e.g., *Aristotelian*, *Jamesian*, *Machiavellian*, *Shakespearean*). If not in the dictionary, adjectives can sometimes be coined by adding *ian* (to a name ending in a consonant) or *an* (to a name ending in *e* or *i*)—or, failing these, *esque*. As with Foucault and Shaw, the final consonant sometimes undergoes a transformation as an aid to pronunciation. If a name does not seem to lend itself to any such coinage, it is best avoided. See also 8.60, 8.78.

Baudelaire; Baudelairean
Bayes; Bayesian
Dickens; Dickensian
Foucault; Foucauldian
Jordan; Jordanesque (à la Michael Jordan)
Kafka; Kafkaesque
Marx; Marxist
Mendel; Mendelian
Rabelais; Rabelaisian
Sartre; Sartrean
Shaw; Shavian

8.60 ***When not to capitalize.*** Personal, national, or geographical names, and words derived from such names, are often lowercased when used with a *nonliteral* meaning. For example, the cheese known as "gruyère" takes its name from a district in Switzerland but is not necessarily from there; "swiss cheese" (lowercase *s*) is a cheese that resembles Swiss emmentaler (which derives its name from the Emme River valley). Although some of the terms in this paragraph and the examples that follow are capitalized in *Webster's*, Chicago prefers to lowercase them in their nonliteral use. See also 8.78.

anglicize
arabic numerals
arctics (boots)
bohemian
brie
brussels sprouts
cheddar
delphic
diesel engine
dutch oven
epicure
frankfurter
french dressing
french fries
french windows
gruyère
herculean
homeric
india ink

italic type
italicize
jeremiad
lombardy poplar
manila envelope
morocco leather
pasteurize
pharisaic
philistine, philistinism
platonic (but see 8.78)
quixotic
roman numerals
roman type
scotch whisky; scotch
stilton
swiss cheese (not made in Switzerland)
venetian blinds
vulcanize
wiener

Names of Organizations

Governmental Bodies

8.61 ***Legislative and deliberative bodies.*** The full names of legislative and deliberative bodies, departments, bureaus, and offices are capitalized (but see 8.64). Adjectives derived from them are usually lowercased, as are many of the generic names for such bodies when used alone (as on subsequent mentions). For generic names used alone but not listed here, opt for lowercase. For administrative bodies, see 8.62; for judicial bodies, see 8.63. See also 11.8.

the United Nations General Assembly; the UN General Assembly; the assembly
the League of Nations; the league
the United Nations Security Council; the Security Council; the council
the United States Congress; the US Congress; the Ninety-Seventh Congress; Congress; 97th Cong.; congressional
the United States Senate; the Senate; senatorial; the upper house of Congress
the House of Representatives; the House; the lower house of Congress
the Electoral College
the Committee on Foreign Affairs; the Foreign Affairs Committee; the committee
the Illinois General Assembly; the assembly; the Illinois legislature; the state senate
the Chicago City Council; the city council
the British Parliament (or UK Parliament); Parliament; an early parliament; parliamentary; the House of Commons; the Commons; the House of Lords; the Lords
the Crown (the British monarchy); Crown lands
the Privy Council (*but* a Privy Counsellor)
the Parliament of Canada; Parliament; the Senate (upper house); the House of Commons (lower house)
the Legislative Assembly of British Columbia; the National Assembly of Quebec *or* Assemblée nationale du Québec
the Dáil Éireann (lower house of the Irish parliament)
the Assemblée nationale *or* the National Assembly (present-day France); the (French) Senate; the parliamentary system; the Parlement de Paris (historical)
the States General *or* Estates General (France and Netherlands, historical)
the Cortes (Spain; a plural form in Spanish but used as a singular in English)
the Cámera de Diputados (the lower house of Mexico's congress)
the Bundestag (German parliament); the Bundesrat (German upper house); the Reichstag (imperial Germany)
the House of People's Representatives; the House of Federation; the Council of Ministers (Ethiopia)

the Dewan Perwakilan Rakyat *or* House of Representatives; the Majelis Permusyawaratan Rakyat *or* People's Consultative Assembly (Indonesia)
the European Parliament; the Parliament

8.62 ***Administrative bodies.*** The full names of administrative bodies are capitalized. Adjectives derived from them are usually lowercased, as are many of the generic names for such bodies when used alone. See also 8.61.

the Bureau of the Census; census forms; the census of 2000
the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; the CDC (abbreviation did not change when "and Prevention" was added to name)
the Department of the Interior; the Interior
the Department of State; the State Department; the department; departmental
the Department of the Treasury; the Treasury
the Federal Bureau of Investigation; the bureau; the FBI
the Federal Reserve System; the Federal Reserve Board; the Federal Reserve
the National Institutes of Health; the NIH; the National Institute of Mental Health; the NIMH
the Occupational Safety and Health Administration; OSHA
the Office of Human Resources; Human Resources
the Peace Corps
the United States Postal Service; the Postal Service; the post office
the Illinois State Board of Education; the board of education
the Ithaca City School District; the school district; the district

8.63 ***Judicial bodies.*** The full name of a court, often including a place-name, is capitalized. Subsequent references to a court (or district court, supreme court, etc.) are lowercased, except when referring to a supreme court at the national level.

the United States (*or* US) Supreme Court; the Supreme Court; *but* the court
the United States Court of Appeals for the Seventh Circuit; the court of appeals
the Arizona Supreme Court; the supreme court; the supreme courts of Arizona and New Mexico
the District Court for the Southern District of New York; the district court
the Court of Common Pleas (Ohio); the court
the Circuit Court of Lake County, Family Division (Illinois); family court
the Supreme Court of Canada; the Supreme Court; the court
the Birmingham Crown Court; Dawlish Magistrates' Court (England)
the Federal Supreme Court (Ethiopia)

States, counties, and cities vary in the way they name their courts. For example, *court of appeals* in New York State and Maryland is equivalent to *supreme court* in other states; and such terms as *district court*, *circuit court*, *superior court*, and *court of common pleas* are used for similar court systems in different states. Generic names should therefore be used only after the full name or jurisdiction has been stated.

8.64 ***Government entities that are lowercased.*** Certain generic terms associated with governmental bodies are lowercased. Compare 8.50.

administration; the Carter administration
brain trust
cabinet (*but* the Kitchen Cabinet in the Jackson administration)
city hall (the municipal government and the building)
civil service
court (a royal court)
executive, legislative, or judicial branch
federal; the federal government; federal agencies
government
monarchy
parlement (French; *but* the Parlement of Paris)
parliament, parliamentary (*but* Parliament, usually not preceded by *the*, in the United Kingdom)
state; church and state; state powers

Political and Economic Organizations and Movements

8.65 ***Organizations, parties, alliances, and so forth.*** Official names of national and international organizations, alliances, and political movements and parties are capitalized (e.g., "the Labor Party in Israel"). Words like *party*, *union*, and *movement* are capitalized when they are part of the name of an organization. Terms identifying formal members of or adherents to such groups are also usually capitalized (e.g., "a Socialist"; "a Republican"). Names of the systems of thought and references to the adherents to such systems, however, are often lowercased (e.g., "an eighteenth-century precursor of socialism"; "a communist at heart"). Nonliteral or metaphorical references are also lowercased (e.g., "fascist parenting techniques"; "nazi tendencies"). For consistency, however—as in a work about communism in which the philosophy, its adherents, the political party, and party members are discussed—capitalizing the philosophy, together with the organization and its adherents, in both noun and adjective forms, will prevent editorial headaches.

the African National Congress party (*party* is not part of the official name); the ANC

Arab Socialist Baʿth Party; the Baʿth Party; the party; Baʿthists

Bahujan Samaj Party; the BSP

Bolshevik(s); the Bolshevik (*or* Bolshevist) movement; bolshevism *or* Bolshevism (see text above)

Chartist; Chartism

the Communist Party (*but* Communist parties); the party; Communist(s); Communist countries; communism *or* Communism (see text above)

the Democratic Party; the party; Democrat(s) (party members or adherents); democracy; democratic nations

the Entente Cordiale (signed 1904); the Entente; *but* an entente cordiale

the Ethiopian Somali Democratic League; the league; the party

the European Union; the EU; the Common Market

the Fascist Party; Fascist(s); fascism *or* Fascism (see text above)

the Federalist Party; Federalist(s) (US history); federalism *or* Federalism (see text above)

the Free-Soil Party; Free-Soiler(s)

the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade; GATT

the Green Party; the party; Green(s); the Green movement

the Hanseatic League; Hansa; a Hanseatic city

the Holy Alliance

the Know-Nothing Party; Know-Nothing(s)

the Labour Party; Labourite(s) (members of the British party)

the League of Arab States; the Arab League; the league

the Libertarian Party; Libertarian(s); libertarianism *or* Libertarianism (see text above)

Loyalist(s) (American Revolution; Spanish Civil War)

Marxism-Leninism; Marxist-Leninist(s)

the National Socialist Party; National Socialism; the Nazi Party; Nazi(s); Nazism

the North American Free Trade Agreement; NAFTA (see 10.6)

the North Atlantic Treaty Organization; NATO

the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development; the OECD; the organization

the Popular Front; the Front; *but* a popular front

the Populist Party; Populist(s); populism *or* Populism (see text above)

the Progressive Party; Progressive movement; Progressive(s); progressivism *or* Progressivism (see text above)

the Quadruple Alliance; the alliance

the Rashtriya Janata Dal; the RJD (National People's Party)

the Republican Party; the party; the GOP (Grand Old Party); Republican(s) (party members or adherents); republicanism; a republican form of government

the Social Democratic Party; the party; Social Democrat(s)

the Socialist Party (*but* Socialist parties); the party; Socialist(s) (party members or adherents); socialism *or* Socialism (see text above)
the United Democratic Movement; the movement
the World Health Organization; WHO

8.66 ***Adherents of unofficial political groups and movements.*** Names for adherents of political groups or movements other than recognized parties are usually lowercased.

anarchist(s)
centrist(s)
independent(s)
moderate(s)
mugwump(s)
opposition (*but* the Opposition, in British and Canadian contexts, referring to the party out of power)
but
the Left; members of the left wing; left-winger(s); on the left
the Right; members of the right wing; right-winger(s); on the right
the Far Left
the Far Right
the radical Right

Institutions and Companies

8.67 ***Institutions and companies—capitalization.*** The full names of institutions, groups, and companies and the names of their departments, and often the shortened forms of such names (e.g., the Art Institute), are capitalized. A *the* preceding a name, even when part of the official title, is lowercased in running text. Such generic terms as *company* and *university* are usually lowercased when used alone (though they are routinely capitalized in promotional materials, business documents, and the like).

the University of Chicago; the university; the University of Chicago and Harvard University; Northwestern and Princeton Universities; the University of Wisconsin–Madison
the Department of History; the department; the Law School
the University of Chicago Press; the press
the Board of Trustees of the University of Chicago; the board of trustees; the board
the Art Institute of Chicago; the Art Institute
the Beach Boys; the Beatles; the Grateful Dead, the Dead; the Who (*but* Tha Eastsidaz)

Captain Beefheart and His Magic Band; the band
the Cleveland Orchestra; the orchestra
the General Foods Corporation; General Foods; the corporation
the Green Bay Packers; the Packers
the Hudson's Bay Company; the company
the Illinois Central Railroad; the Illinois Central; the railroad
the Library of Congress; the library
the Manuscripts Division of the library
the Museum of Modern Art; MOMA; the museum
the New York Stock Exchange; the stock exchange
Skidmore, Owings & Merrill; SOM; the architectural firm
the Smithsonian Institution; the Smithsonian
Miguel Juarez Middle School; the middle school

8.68 ***Names with unusual capitalization.*** Parts of names given in full capitals on the letterhead or in the promotional materials of particular organizations may be given in upper- and lowercase when referred to in other contexts (e.g., "the Rand Corporation" rather than "the RAND Corporation"). Company names that are spelled in lowercase letters in promotional materials may be capitalized (e.g., DrKoop.net rather than drkoop .net). Names like eBay and iPod, should they appear at the beginning of a sentence or heading, need not take an initial capital in addition to the capitalized second letter. See also 8.153.

Associations

8.69 ***Associations, unions, and the like.*** The full names of associations, societies, unions, meetings, and conferences, and often the shortened forms of such names, are capitalized. A *the* preceding a name, even when part of the official title, is lowercased in running text. Such generic terms as *society* and *union* are usually lowercased when used alone.

the Congress of Industrial Organizations; CIO; the union
the Fifty-Seventh Annual Meeting of the American Historical Association; the annual meeting of the association
Girl Scouts of the United States of America; a Girl Scout; a Scout
the Independent Order of Odd Fellows; IOOF; an Odd Fellow
Industrial Workers of the World; IWW; the Wobblies
the International Olympic Committee; the IOC; the committee
the League of Women Voters; the league
the National Conference of Christians and Jews; the conference
the National Organization for Women; NOW; the organization

the New-York Historical Society (the hyphen is part of the official name of the society); the society
the Quadrangle Club; the club
the Textile Workers Union of America; the union

On the other hand, a substantive title given to a single meeting, conference, speech, or discussion is enclosed in quotation marks. For lecture series, see 8.86.

"Making Things Better with XML," a panel discussion presented at the AAUP Annual Meeting on June 27, 2008

Historical and Cultural Terms

Periods

8.70 ***Numerical designations for periods.*** A numerical designation of a period is lowercased unless it is considered part of a proper name. For the use of numerals, see 9.34.

the twenty-first century
the nineteen hundreds
the nineties
the quattrocento
the second millennium BCE
but
the Eighteenth Dynasty (Egypt)
the Fifth Republic

8.71 ***Descriptive designations for periods.*** A descriptive designation of a period is usually lowercased, except for proper names. For traditionally capitalized forms, see 8.72.

ancient Greece
the antebellum period
antiquity
the baroque period
the colonial period
a golden age
the Hellenistic period
imperial Rome
modern history
the romantic period (see also 8.78)
the Shang dynasty (considered an era rather than a political division; see 8.50)
the Victorian era

8.72 ***Traditional period names.*** Some names of periods are capitalized, either by tradition or to avoid ambiguity. See also 8.74.

the Augustan Age
the Common Era
the Counter-Reformation
the Dark Ages
the Enlightenment
the Gay Nineties
the Gilded Age
the Grand Siècle
the High Middle Ages (*but* the early Middle Ages, the late Middle Ages)
the High Renaissance
the Jazz Age
the Mauve Decade
the Middle Ages (*but* the medieval era)
the Old Kingdom (ancient Egypt)
the Old Regime (*but* the ancien régime)
the Progressive Era
the Reformation
the Renaissance
the Restoration
the Roaring Twenties

8.73 ***Cultural periods.*** Names of prehistoric cultural periods are capitalized. For geological periods, see 8.133–35.

the Bronze Age
the Ice Age
the Iron Age
the Stone Age

Similar terms for modern periods are often lowercased (but see 8.72).

the age of reason
the age of steam
the information age
the nuclear age

Events

8.74 ***Historical events and programs.*** Names of many major historical events and programs are conventionally capitalized. Others, more recent or known by their generic descriptions, are usually lowercased. If in doubt, do not capitalize. For wars and battles, see 8.112–13; for religious events, 8.107; for acts and treaties, 8.79.

the Boston Tea Party
the Cold War (*but* a cold war, used generically)
the Cultural Revolution
the Great Chicago Fire; the Chicago fire; the fire of 1871
the Great Depression; the Depression
the Great Fire of London; the Great Fire
the Great Plague; the Plague (*but* plague [the disease])
(President Johnson's) Great Society
the Industrial Revolution
the New Deal
Prohibition
Reconstruction
the Reign of Terror; the Terror
the South Sea Bubble
the War on Poverty
but
the baby boom
the civil rights movement
the crash of 1929
the Dreyfus affair
the gold rush

8.75 ***Speeches.*** A very few speeches have attained the status of titles and are thus traditionally capitalized. Others are usually lowercased.

Washington's Farewell Address
the Gettysburg Address
the annual State of the Union address
Franklin Roosevelt's second inaugural address
the Checkers speech
Martin Luther King Jr.'s "I Have a Dream" speech

8.76 ***Meteorological and other natural phenomena.*** Named hurricanes and other tropical cyclones are capitalized, as are many other named meteorological phenomena. If in doubt, consult a dictionary or encyclopedia. Natural phenomena identified generically by a place-name or a year are usually lowercased.

Cyclone Becky; the 2007 cyclone
Hurricane Katrina; the 2005 hurricane
El Niño
the Northridge earthquake of 1994

Use the pronoun *it*, not *he* or *she*, when referring to named storms, hurricanes, and the like (notwithstanding the practice of using male and female proper names to refer to such events).

8.77 ***Sporting events.*** The full names of major sporting events are capitalized.

the Kentucky Derby; the derby
the NBA Finals; the finals
the Olympic Games; the Olympics; the Winter Olympics
the World Cup

Cultural Movements and Styles

8.78 ***Movements and styles—capitalization.*** Nouns and adjectives designating cultural styles, movements, and schools—artistic, architectural, musical, and so forth—and their adherents are capitalized if derived from proper nouns. (The word *school* remains lowercased.) Others may be lowercased, though a few (e.g., Cynic, Scholastic, New Criticism) are capitalized to distinguish them from the generic words used in everyday speech. Some of the terms lowercased below may appropriately be capitalized in certain works if done consistently—especially those that include the designation "often capitalized" in *Webster's*. (But if, for example, *impressionism* is capitalized in a work about art, other art movements must also be capitalized—which could result in an undesirable profusion of capitals.) For religious movements, see 8.96. See also 8.59.

abstract expressionism
Aristotelian
art deco
art nouveau
baroque
Beaux-Arts (derived from École des Beaux-Arts)
camp
Cartesian
Chicago school (of architecture, of economics, of literary criticism)
classicism, classical
conceptualism
cubism
Cynicism; Cynic
Dadaism; Dada
deconstruction
Doric
Epicurean (see text below)
existentialism
fauvism
formalism
Gothic (*but* gothic fiction)
Gregorian chant
Hellenism
Hudson River school
humanism
idealism
imagism
impressionism

Keynesianism
mannerism
miracle play
modernism
mysticism; mystic
naturalism
neoclassicism; neoclassical
Neoplatonism
New Criticism
nominalism
op art
Peripatetic (see text below)
philosophe (French)
Platonism
pop art
postimpressionism
postmodernism
Pre-Raphaelite
Reaganomics
realism
rococo
Romanesque
romanticism; romantic
Scholasticism; Scholastic; Schoolmen
scientific rationalism
Sophist (see text below)
Stoicism; Stoic (see text below)
structuralism
Sturm und Drang (*but* storm and stress)
surrealism
symbolism
theater of the absurd
transcendentalism

Some words capitalized when used of a school of thought are lowercased when used metaphorically.

epicurean tastes
peripatetic families
she's a sophist, not a logician
a stoic attitude

Acts, Treaties, and Government Programs

8.79 ***Formal names of acts, treaties, and so forth.*** Formal or accepted titles of pacts, plans, policies, treaties, acts, programs, and similar documents or agreements are capitalized. Incomplete or generic forms are usually lowercased. For citing the published text of a bill or law, see 14.294, 14.295.

the Fifteenth Amendment (to the US Constitution); the Smith Amendment; the amendment
the Articles of Confederation
the Bill of Rights
the Brady law
the Constitution of the United States; the United States (*or* US) Constitution; the Constitution (usually capitalized in reference to the US Constitution); Article VI; the article (see also 9.29)
the Illinois Constitution; the constitution
the Constitution Act, 1982 (Canada)

the Corn Laws (Great Britain)
the Declaration of Independence
the due process clause
the Equal Rights Amendment (usually capitalized though not ratified); ERA; *but* an equal rights amendment
the Family and Medical Leave Act of 1993; FMLA; the 1993 act
the Food Stamp Act of 1964; food stamps
the Hawley-Smoot (*or* Smoot-Hawley) Tariff Act; the tariff act
Head Start
impeachment; the first and second articles of impeachment
the Marshall Plan
the Mayflower Compact; the compact
Medicare (lowercase in Canada); Medicaid
the Monroe Doctrine; the doctrine
the Munich agreement (1938); Munich
the New Economic Policy; NEP (Soviet Union)
the Open Door policy
the Peace of Utrecht
the Reform Bills; the Reform Bill of 1832 (Great Britain)
the Social Security Act; Social Security (*or, generically,* social security)
Temporary Assistance for Needy Families; TANF
Title VII *or* Title 7
Treaty for the Renunciation of War, *known as* the Pact of Paris *or* the Kellogg-Briand Pact; the pact
the Treaty of Versailles; the treaty
the Treaty on European Union (official name); the Maastricht treaty (informal name)
the Wilmot Proviso

8.80 ***Generic terms for pending legislation.*** Informal, purely descriptive references to pending legislation are lowercased.

The anti-injunction bill was introduced on Tuesday.

Legal Cases

8.81 ***Legal cases mentioned in text.*** The names of legal cases are italicized when mentioned in text. The abbreviation *v.* (versus) occasionally appears in roman, but Chicago recommends italics. In footnotes, legal dictionaries, and contexts where numerous legal cases appear, they are sometimes set in roman. For legal citation style, see 14.281–317.

Bloomfield Village Drain Dist. v. Keefe	*Miranda v. Arizona*

In discussion, a case name may be shortened.

the *Miranda* case (or simply *Miranda*)

Awards

8.82 *Capitalization for names of awards and prizes.* Names of awards and prizes are capitalized, but some generic terms used with the names are lowercased. For military awards, see 8.114.

the 2010 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine; a Nobel Prize winner; a Nobel Prize–winning physiologist (see 6.80); a Nobel Peace Prize; the Nobel Prize in Literature
the 2010 Pulitzer Prize for Commentary; a Pulitzer in journalism
an Academy Award; an Oscar
an Emmy Award; she has three Emmys
the Presidential Medal of Freedom
a Guggenheim Fellowship (*but* a Guggenheim grant)
an International Music Scholarship
National Merit Scholarship awards; Merit Scholarships; Merit Scholar

Oaths and Pledges

8.83 *Lowercase for oaths and pledges.* Formal oaths and pledges are usually lowercased.

the oath of citizenship
the Hippocratic oath
the presidential oath of office
marriage vows
but
the Pledge of Allegiance

Academic Subjects, Courses of Study, and Lecture Series

8.84 *Academic subjects.* Academic subjects are not capitalized unless they form part of a department name or an official course name or are themselves proper nouns (e.g., English, Latin).

She has published widely in the history of religions.
They have introduced a course in gender studies.

He is majoring in comparative literature.
She is pursuing graduate studies in philosophy of science.
but
Jones is chair of the Committee on Comparative Literature.

8.85 ***Courses of study.*** Official names of courses of study are capitalized.

I am signing up for Archaeology 101.
A popular course at the Graham School of General Studies is Basic Manuscript Editing.
but
His ballroom dancing classes have failed to civilize him.

8.86 ***Lectures.*** Names of lecture series are capitalized. Individual lectures are capitalized and usually enclosed in quotation marks. See also 8.69.

This year's Robinson Memorial Lectures were devoted to the nursing profession.
The first lecture, "How Nightingale Got Her Way," was a sellout.

Calendar and Time Designations

8.87 ***Days of the week, months, and seasons.*** Names of days and months are capitalized. The four seasons are lowercased (except when used to denote an issue of a journal; see 14.180). For centuries and decades, see 8.70.

Tuesday
November
spring
fall
the vernal (*or* spring) equinox
the winter solstice

8.88 ***Holidays.*** The names of secular and religious holidays or officially designated days or seasons are capitalized.

All Fools' Day
Christmas Day
Earth Day
Election Day
Father's Day
the Fourth of July, the Fourth
Good Friday
Halloween
Hanukkah
Holy Week
Inauguration Day
Independence Day
Kwanzaa
Labor Day
Lent
Lincoln's Birthday
Martin Luther King Jr. Day
Memorial Day
Mother's Day
National Poetry Month

New Year's Day
New Year's Eve
Passover
Presidents' Day
Ramadan
Remembrance Day (Canada)
Rosh Hashanah
Saint Patrick's Day
Thanksgiving Day
Yom Kippur
Yuletide
but
D-day
a bank holiday

8.89 *Time and time zones.* When spelled out, designations of time and time zones are lowercased (except for proper nouns). Abbreviations are capitalized. See also 9.38–41.

eastern standard time; EST
central daylight time; CDT
mountain standard time; MST
Pacific daylight time; PDT
Greenwich mean time; GMT
daylight saving time; DST

Religious Names and Terms

Deities and Revered Persons

8.90 *Deities.* Names of deities, whether in monotheistic or polytheistic religions, are capitalized.

Allah
Astarte
Freyja
God
Itzamna
Jehovah
Mithra
Satan (*but* the devil)
Serapis
Yahweh

Some writers follow a pious convention of not fully spelling out the name of a deity (e.g., *G-d*). This convention should be respected when it is practical to do so.

8.91 *Alternative names.* Alternative or descriptive names for God as supreme being are capitalized. See also 8.92.

Adonai
the Almighty
the Deity
the Holy Ghost *or* the Holy Spirit *or* the Paraclete
the Lord

Providence
the Supreme Being
the Trinity

8.92 ***Prophets and the like.*** Designations of prophets, apostles, saints, and other revered persons are often capitalized.

the Buddha
the prophet Isaiah
Jesus; Christ; the Good Shepherd; the Son (*or* son) of man
John the Baptist
the Messiah
Muhammad; the Prophet
Saint John; the Beloved Apostle
the Virgin Mary; the Blessed Virgin; Mother of God
but
the apostles
the patriarchs
the psalmist

8.93 ***Platonic ideas.*** Words for transcendent ideas in the Platonic sense, especially when used in a religious context, are often capitalized. See also 7.48.

Good; Beauty; Truth; the One

8.94 ***Pronouns referring to religious figures.*** Pronouns referring to God or Jesus are not capitalized. (Note that they are lowercased in most English translations of the Bible.)

They prayed to God that he would deliver them.
Jesus and his disciples

Religious Groups

8.95 ***Major religions.*** Names of major religions are capitalized, as are their adherents and adjectives derived from them.

Buddhism; Buddhist
Christianity; Christian; Christendom (see also 8.97)
Confucianism; Confucian
Hinduism; Hindu

Islam; Islamic; Muslim
Judaism; Jew; Jewry; Jewish
Shinto; Shintoism; Shintoist
Taoism; Taoist; Taoistic
but
atheism
agnosticism

8.96 ***Denominations, sects, orders, and religious movements.*** Like the names of major religions, names of denominations, communions, sects, orders, and religious movements are capitalized, as are their adherents and adjectives derived from them. See also 8.98.

the Amish; Amish communities
Anglicanism; the Anglican Communion (*see also* Episcopal Church)
Baptists; a Baptist church; the Baptist General Convention; the Southern Baptist Convention
Catholicism (*see* Roman Catholicism)
Christian Science; Church of Christ, Scientist; Christian Scientist
the Church of England (*but* an Anglican church)
the Church of Ireland
Conservative Judaism; a Conservative Jew
Dissenter (lowercased when used in a nonsectarian context)
Druidism; Druid (sometimes lowercased)
Eastern Orthodox churches; the Eastern Church (*but* an Eastern Orthodox church)
the Episcopal Church; an Episcopal church; an Episcopalian
the Episcopal Church of Scotland
Essenes; an Essene
Gnosticism; Gnostic
Hasidism; Hasid (singular); Hasidim (plural); Hasidic
Jehovah's Witnesses
Jesuit(s); the Society of Jesus; Jesuitic(al) (lowercased when used pejoratively)
Methodism; the United Methodist Church (*but* a United Methodist church); Wesleyan
Mormonism; Mormon; the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints (Utah); Community of Christ (Missouri)
Nonconformism; Nonconformist (lowercased when used in a nonsectarian context)
Old Catholics; an Old Catholic church
the Order of Preachers; the Dominican order; a Dominican
Orthodox Judaism; an Orthodox Jew
Orthodoxy; the (Greek, Serbian, etc.) Orthodox Church (*but* a Greek Orthodox church)

Protestantism; Protestant (lowercased when used in a nonsectarian context)
Puritanism; Puritan (lowercased when used in a nonsectarian context)
Quakerism; Quaker; the Religious Society of Friends; a Friend
Reform Judaism; a Reform Jew
Roman Catholicism; the Roman Catholic Church (*but* a Roman Catholic church)
Satanism; Satanist
Seventh-Day Adventist; Adventist; Adventism
Shiism; Shia; Shiite
Sufism; Sufi
Sunnism; Sunni; Sunnite
Theosophy; Theosophist; the Theosophical Society
Vedanta
Wicca; Wiccan
Zen; Zen Buddhism

8.97 ***"Church" as institution.*** When used to refer to the institution of religion or of a particular religion, *church* is usually lowercased.

church and state
the early church
the church in the twenty-first century
the church fathers

Church is capitalized when part of the formal name of a denomination (e.g., the United Methodist Church; see other examples in 8.96) or congregation (e.g., the Church of St. Thomas the Apostle).

8.98 ***Generic versus religious terms.*** Many terms that are lowercased when used generically, such as *animism*, *fundamentalism*, or *spiritualism*, may be capitalized when used as the name of a specific religion or a sect.

a popular medium in turn-of-the-century Spiritualist circles
but
liberal versus fundamentalist Christians

8.99 ***Religious jurisdictions.*** The names of official divisions within organized religions are capitalized. The generic terms used alone are lowercased.

the Archdiocese of Chicago; the archdiocese
the Eastern Diocese of the Armenian Church
the Fifty-Seventh Street Meeting; the (Quaker) meeting
the Holy See
the Missouri Synod; the synod

8.100 *Buildings.* The names of the buildings in which religious congregations meet are capitalized. The generic terms used alone are lowercased.

Babri Mosque; the mosque
Bethany Evangelical Lutheran Church; the church
Temple Emanuel; the temple; the synagogue
Nichiren Buddhist Temple; the temple

8.101 *Councils, synods, and the like.* The accepted names of historic councils and the official names of modern counterparts are capitalized.

the Council of Chalcedon (*or* the Fourth Ecumenical Council)
the General Convention (Episcopal)
the Second Vatican Council; Vatican II
the Synod of Whitby

Religious Writings

8.102 *Scriptures.* Names of scriptures and other highly revered works are capitalized but not usually italicized (except when used in the title of a published work).

the Bhagavad Gita (*or* Bhagavad Gītā)
the Bible (*but* biblical)
the Book of Common Prayer
the Dead Sea Scrolls
the Hebrew Bible
Koran; Koranic (*or, less commonly,* Qur'an; Qur'anic)
the Mahabharata (*or* Mahābhārata)
Mishnah; Mishnaic
Sunna
Talmud; Talmudic
Tripitaka
the Upanishads
the Vedas; Vedic
but
sutra(s)

8.103 *Other names and versions for bibles.* Other names and versions of the Hebrew and Christian bibles are usually capitalized but not italicized.

the Authorized Version *or* the King James Version
the Breeches (*or* Geneva) Bible

Codex Sinaiticus
Complutensian Polyglot Bible
the Douay (*or* Rheims-Douay) Version
the Holy Bible
Holy Writ (sometimes used figuratively)
the New English Bible
the New Jerusalem Bible
the New Revised Standard Version
Peshitta
the Psalter (*but* a psalter)
the Septuagint
the Vulgate
but
scripture(s); scriptural

8.104 ***Books of the Bible.*** The names of books of the Bible are capitalized but never italicized. The word *book* is usually lowercased, and the words *gospel* and *epistle* are usually capitalized. But in a work in which all three terms are used with some frequency, they may all be treated alike, either lowercased or capitalized. See also 9.27, 10.45–51.

Genesis; the book of Genesis
Job; the book of Job
2 Chronicles; Second Chronicles; the second book of the Chronicles
Psalms (*but* a psalm)
John; the Gospel according to John
Acts; the Acts of the Apostles
1 Corinthians; the First Epistle to the Corinthians

8.105 ***Sections of the Bible.*** Names of sections of the Bible are usually capitalized but not italicized.

the Hebrew scriptures *or* the Old Testament
the Christian scriptures *or* the New Testament
the Apocrypha; Apocryphal (*or, generically,* apocryphal)
the Epistles; the pastoral Epistles
the Gospels; the synoptic Gospels
the Pentateuch *or* the Torah; Pentateuchal
Hagiographa *or* Ketuvim; hagiographic

8.106 ***Prayers, creeds, and such.*** Named prayers, canticles, creeds, and such, as well as scriptural terms of special importance, are usually capitalized. Parables and miracles are usually lowercased.

the Decalogue; the Ten Commandments; the first commandment
Kaddish; to say Kaddish
the Lord's Prayer; the Our Father
Luther's Ninety-Five Theses
the Nicene Creed; the creed
Salat al-Fajr
the Sermon on the Mount
the Shema
but
the doxology
the parable of the prodigal son
the miracle of the loaves and fishes
the star of Bethlehem

Religious Events, Concepts, Services, and Objects

8.107 ***Religious events and concepts.*** Religious events and concepts of major theological importance are often capitalized. Used generically, such terms are lowercased.

the Creation
the Crucifixion
the Diaspora
the Exodus
the Fall
the Hegira
the Second Coming
but
Most religions have creation myths.
For the Romans, crucifixion was a common form of execution.

Doctrines and principles are usually lowercased.

atonement
dharma
original sin
resurrection

8.108 ***Heaven, hell, and so on.*** Terms for divine dwelling places, ideal states, places of divine punishment, and the like are usually lowercased (though they are often capitalized in a purely religious context). See also 8.49.

heaven
hell
limbo
nirvana
outer darkness
paradise
the pearly gates
purgatory
but
Eden
Elysium
Hades
Olympus

8.109 ***Services and rites.*** Names of services and rites are usually lowercased (though they may be capitalized in strictly religious contexts; if in doubt, consult *Webster's*).

baptism
bar mitzvah
bat mitzvah
confirmation
morning prayer; matins
the seder
the sun dance
vespers

Terms denoting the Eucharistic sacrament, however, are traditionally capitalized, though they may be lowercased in nonreligious contexts.

the Eucharist
Holy Communion
Mass; to attend Mass; High Mass; Low Mass; *but* three masses are offered daily

8.110 ***Objects.*** Objects of religious use or significance are usually lowercased, especially in nonreligious contexts.

altar
ark
chalice and paten
mandala
mezuzah
rosary
sacred pipe
sanctuary
stations of the cross

Military Terms

Forces and Troops

8.111 ***Armies, battalions, and such.*** Titles of armies, navies, air forces, fleets, regiments, battalions, companies, corps, and so forth are capitalized. Unofficial but well-known names, such as Green Berets, are also capitalized. Words such as *army* and *navy* are lowercased when standing alone, when used collectively in the plural, or when not part of an official title. Note that many of the lowercased terms below are routinely capitalized in official or promotional contexts (see also 8.18).

the Allies (World Wars I and II); the Allied forces
American Expeditionary Force; the AEF
Army Corps of Engineers; the corps
Army of Northern Virginia; the army
Army of the Potomac
Army Special Forces
the Axis powers (World War II)
Canadian Forces (unified in 1968)
the Central powers (World War I)
Combined Chiefs of Staff (World War II)
Confederate army (American Civil War)
Continental navy (American Revolution)
Eighth Air Force; the air force
Fifth Army; the army
First Battalion, 178th Infantry; the battalion; the 178th
French Foreign Legion
Green Berets
Joint Chiefs of Staff
the Luftwaffe; the German air force
National Guard
Pacific Fleet (US, World War II)
Red Army (Russian, World War II); Russian army
the Resistance; the French Resistance; a resistance movement
Rough Riders
Royal Air Force; RAF; British air force
Royal Canadian Air Force (until 1968; *see* Canadian Forces)
Royal Canadian Mounted Police; the Mounties; a Mountie
Royal Canadian Navy (until 1968; *see* Canadian Forces)
Royal Navy; the British navy
Royal Scots Fusiliers; the fusiliers
Seventh Fleet; the fleet
Thirty-Third Infantry Division; the Thirty-Third Division; the division
Union army (American Civil War)
United States (*or* US) Army; the army
United States Coast Guard; the Coast Guard *or* the coast guard
United States Marine Corps; the Marine Corps *or* the marine corps; the US Marines; a marine
United States Navy; the navy
United States Army Signal Corps; the Signal Corps *or* the signal corps

Wars, Revolutions, Battles, and Campaigns

8.112 ***Wars and revolutions.*** Names of most major wars and revolutions are capitalized. The generic terms are usually lowercased when used alone.

American Civil War; the War between the States
American Revolution; American War of Independence; the revolution (sometimes capitalized); the Revolutionary War
Crusades; the Sixth Crusade; a crusader
French Revolution; the Revolution of 1789; the Revolution (usually capitalized to distinguish the Revolution of 1789 from the revolutions in 1830 and 1848); revolutionary France
Great Sioux War; the Sioux war
Gulf War
Korean War; the war
Mexican Revolution; the revolution
Napoleonic Wars
Norman Conquest; the conquest of England
the revolution(s) of 1848
Russian Revolution; the revolution
Seven Years' War
Shays's Rebellion
Six-Day War
Spanish-American War
Spanish Civil War
Vietnam War
War of 1812
Whiskey Rebellion
World War I; the First World War; the Great War; the war
World War II; the Second World War; World Wars I and II; the First and Second World Wars; the two world wars

8.113 ***Battles and campaigns.*** Some of the names of major battles and campaigns that have entered the general lexicon are capitalized. In other, more generic descriptions, only proper names are capitalized. For names not included here, consult an encyclopedia.

Battle of Britain
Battle of the Bulge (*or* Battle of the Ardennes)
Battle of Bunker Hill; Bunker Hill; the battle
battle of Vimy Ridge
the Blitz

European theater of operations; ETO
Mexican border campaign
Operation Devil Siphon
third battle of Ypres
Vicksburg Campaign
western front (World War I)

Military Awards

8.114 ***Medals and awards.*** Specific names of medals and awards are capitalized. For civil awards, see 8.82.

Congressional Medal of Honor; Medal of Honor
Croix de Guerre (sometimes lowercased)
Distinguished Flying Cross; DFC
Distinguished Service Order; DSO
Purple Heart
Silver Star
Victoria Cross; VC

Names of Ships and Other Vehicles

8.115 ***Ships and other named vessels.*** Names of specific ships and other vessels are both capitalized and italicized. Note that when such abbreviations as USS (United States ship) or HMS (Her [or His] Majesty's ship) precede a name, the word *ship* or other vessel type should not be used. The abbreviations themselves are not italicized. For much useful information, consult Eric Wertheim, *The Naval Institute Guide to Combat Fleets of the World* (bibliog. 5).

Mars global surveyor; Mars polar lander; *Phoenix* Mars lander; *Phoenix*
the space shuttle *Discovery*
the *Spirit of St. Louis*
HMS *Frolic*; the British ship *Frolic*
SS *United States*; the *United States*
USS *SC-530*; the US ship *SC-530*

Every US Navy ship is assigned a hull number (according to a system formally implemented in 1920), consisting of a combination of letters (indicating the type of ship) and a serial number. Where necessary to avoid confusion between vessels of the same name—in a work on naval history, for example—the numbers should be included at first mention. Smaller ships such as landing craft and submarine chasers are individually numbered but not named.

USS *Enterprise* (CVN-65) was already on its way to the Red Sea.

8.116 ***Other vehicle names.*** Names of makes and classes of aircraft, models of automobiles and other vehicles, names of trains or train runs, and names of space programs are capitalized but not italicized.

Acela Express | Concorde | Project Apollo
Boeing 747 | Metroliner | Toyota Prius

8.117 ***Pronouns referring to vessels.*** When a pronoun is used to refer to a vessel, the neuter *it* or *its* (rather than *she* or *her*) is preferred. See also 5.41, 8.76.

Scientific Terminology

Scientific Names of Plants and Animals

8.118 ***Scientific style—additional resources.*** The following paragraphs offer only general guidelines. Writers or editors requiring detailed guidance should consult *Scientific Style and Format* (bibliog. 1.1). The ultimate authorities are the *International Code of Botanical Nomenclature* (*ICBN*), whose guidelines are followed in the botanical examples below, and the *International Code of Zoological Nomenclature* (*ICZN*) (see bibliog. 5). Note that some fields, such as virology, have slightly different rules. Writers and editors should try to follow the standards established within those fields.

8.119 ***Genus and specific epithet.*** Whether in lists or in running text, the Latin names of species of plants and animals are italicized. Each *binomial* contains a genus name (or *generic name*), which is capitalized, and a species name (also called *specific name* or *specific epithet*), which is lowercased (even if it is a proper adjective). Do not confuse these names with phyla, orders, and such, which are not italicized; see 8.125.

The Pleistocene saber-toothed cats all belonged to the genus *Smilodon*.

Many species names, such as *Rosa caroliniana* and *Styrax californica*, reflect the locale of the first specimens described.

The pike, *Esox lucius*, is valued for food as well as sport.

For the grass snake *Natrix natrix*, longevity in captivity is ten years.
Certain lizard taxa such as *Basiliscus* and *Crotaphytus* are bipedal specialists.

8.120 ***Abbreviation of genus name.*** After the first use the genus name may be abbreviated to a single capital letter. If two or more species of the same genus are listed together, the abbreviation may be doubled (to indicate the plural) before the first species, though repeating the abbreviation with each species is more common. But if species of different genera beginning with the same letter are discussed in the same context, abbreviations may not be appropriate.

Two methods allow us to estimate the maximum speeds obtained by *Callisaurus draconoides* in the field. Irschick and Jayne (1998) found that stride durations of both *C. draconoides* and *Uma scoparia* do not change dramatically after the fifth stride during accelerations from a standstill.

The "quaking" of the aspen, *Populus tremuloides*, is due to the construction of the petiole; an analogous phenomenon has been noted in the cottonwood, *P. deltoides*.

Among popular species of the genus *Cyclamen* are *CC. coum, hederifolium*, and *persicum* . . . [or, more commonly, *C. coum, C. hederifolium*, and *C. persicum* . . .]

Studies of *Corylus avellana* and *Corokia cotoneaster* . . . ; in further studies it was noted that *Corylus avellana* and *Corokia cotoneaster* . . .

8.121 ***Subspecies and varieties.*** A subspecific zoological name or epithet, when used, follows the binomial species name and is also italicized. If the two names are the same, the first one may be abbreviated.

Noctilio labialis labialis (or *Noctilio l. labialis*)

Trogon collaris puella

In horticultural usage, the abbreviations "subsp." (or "ssp."), "var.," and "f." (none of them italicized) are inserted before the subspecific epithet or variety or form name. See also 8.122.

Buxus microphylla var. *japonica*
Hydrangea anomala subsp. *petiolaris*
Rhododendron arboreum f. *album*

8.122 ***Unspecified species and varieties.*** The abbreviations "sp." and "var.," when used without a following element, indicate that the species or variety is unknown or unspecified. The plural "spp." is used to refer to a group of species. The abbreviations are *not* italicized.

Rhododendron spp.

Rosa rugosa var.

Viola sp.

8.123 ***Author names.*** The name of the person who proposed a specific epithet is sometimes added, often abbreviated, and never italicized. A capital *L.* stands for Linnaeus.

Diaemus youngi cypselinus Thomas
Euchistenes hartii (Thomas)
Felis leo Scop.
Molossus coibensis J. A. Allen
Quercus alba L.

The parentheses in the second example mean that Thomas described the species *E. hartii* but referred it to a different genus.

8.124 ***Plant hybrids.*** The crossing of two species is indicated by a multiplication sign (×; *not* the letter *x*) between the two species names, with space on each side. Many older primary plant hybrids are indicated by a multiplication sign immediately before the specific epithet of the hybrid, with space only before it.

Magnolia denudata × *M. liliiflora* (crossing of species)
Magnolia ×*soulangeana* (hybrid name)

8.125 ***Higher divisions.*** Divisions higher than genus—phylum, class, order, and family—are capitalized but *not* italicized. (The terms *order*, *family*, and so on are not capitalized.) Intermediate groupings are treated similarly.

Chordata (phylum)
Chondrichthyes (class)
Monotremata (order)
Ruminantia (suborder)
Hominidae (family)
Felinae (subfamily)
Selachii (term used of various groups of cartilaginous fishes)
The new species *Gleichenia glauca* provides further details about the history of Gleicheniaceae.

8.126 ***English derivatives.*** English words derived from the taxonomic system are lowercased and treated as English words.

carnivore(s) (from the order Carnivora)
hominid(s) (from the family Hominidae)
irid(s) (from the family Iridaceae)
feline(s) (from subfamily Felinae)
astilbe(s) (from the genus *Astilbe*)
mastodon(s) (from the genus *Mastodon*)

Vernacular Names of Plants and Animals

8.127 ***Plants and animals—additional resources.*** For the correct capitalization and spelling of common names of plants and animals, consult a dictionary or the authoritative guides to nomenclature, the *ICBN* and the *ICZN*, mentioned in 8.118. In general, Chicago recommends capitalizing only proper nouns and adjectives, as in the following examples, which conform to *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*:

Dutchman's-breeches
jack-in-the-pulpit
mayapple
Cooper's hawk
rhesus monkey
Rocky Mountain sheep

8.128 ***Domestic animals and horticultural categories.*** Either a dictionary or the guides to nomenclature *ICZN* and *ICBN* should be consulted for the proper spelling of breeds of domestic animals and broad horticultural categories.

German shorthaired pointer
Hereford
Maine coon *or* coon cat
Thoroughbred horse (*but* purebred dog)
Rhode Island Red
boysenberry
rambler rose

8.129 ***Horticultural cultivars.*** Many horticultural cultivars (cultivated varieties) have fanciful names that must be respected since they may be registered trademarks.

the Peace rose
a Queen of the Market aster

In some horticultural publications, such names are enclosed in single quotation marks; any following punctuation is placed *after* the closing quotation mark. If the English name follows the Latin name, there is no intervening punctuation. For examples of this usage, consult any issue of the magazine *Horticulture* (bibliog. 5).

> The hybrid *Agastache* 'Apricot Sunrise', best grown in zone 6, mingles with sheaves of cape fuchsia (*Phygelius* 'Salmon Leap').

Genetic Terms

8.130 ***Genetic nomenclature—additional resources.*** Only the most basic guidelines can be offered here. Writers or editors working in the field of genetics should consult the *AMA Manual of Style* or *Scientific Style and Format* (both in bibliog. 1.1) and online databases including the HUGO Gene Nomenclature Database and the Mouse Genome Database (both in bibliog. 5).

8.131 ***Genes.*** Names of genes, or gene symbols, including any arabic numerals that form a part of such symbols, are usually italicized. (Italicization helps differentiate genes from entities with similar names.) Symbols for genes contain no Greek characters or roman numerals. Human gene symbols are set in full capitals, as are the gene symbols for other primates. Mouse and rat gene symbols are usually spelled with an initial capital. Gene nomenclature systems for other organisms (yeast, fruit flies, nematodes, plants, fish) vary. Symbols for proteins, also called gene products and often derived from the symbols of the corresponding genes, are set in roman.

HUMAN GENES
BRCA1
GPC3
IGH@ (the symbol @ indicates a family or cluster)
SNRPN

MOUSE GENES
Cmv1
Fgf12
Rom1
Wnt1
NLP3 (gene symbol); NLP3p (encoded protein; note *p* suffix)
GIF (gene symbol); GIF (gastric intrinsic factor)

Only a very few gene symbols contain hyphens.

HLA-DRB1, for human leukocyte antigen D-related β chain 1

8.132 ***Enzymes.*** Enzyme names consist of a string of italic and roman characters. The first three letters, which represent the name of the organism (usually a bacterium) from which the enzyme has been isolated, are italicized. The roman numeral that follows represents the series number. Sometimes an upper- or lowercase roman letter or an arabic numeral (or both), representing the strain of bacterium, intervenes between the name and series number.

*Ava*I *Bam*HI *Cla*I *Eco*R *Hin*dIII *Sau*3AI

Geological Terms

8.133 ***Geological terms—additional resources.*** The following paragraphs offer only the most general guidelines. Writers or editors working in geological studies should consult US Geological Survey, *Suggestions to Authors of the Reports of the United States Geological Survey*, and *Scientific Style and Format* (both listed in bibliog. 1.1).

8.134 ***Formal versus generic geological terms.*** Formal geological terms are capitalized in both noun and adjective forms; terms used generically are not. The generic terms *eon*, *era*, and the like are lowercased or omitted immediately following a formal name. Eons are divided into eras, eras into periods, periods into epochs, and epochs into stages. The term *ice age* is best lowercased in scientific contexts because of the uncertainty surrounding any formal use of the term (cf. *Little Ice Age*); but see 8.73.

the Archean (eon)
the Mesoproterozoic (era)
the Tertiary period of the Cenozoic (era)
the Paleocene (epoch)
Pleistocene-Holocene transition
the second interglacial stage *or* II interglacial
Illinoian glaciation

The modifiers *early*, *middle*, or *late* are capitalized when used formally but lowercased when used informally.

Early Archean	*but*
Middle Cambrian	early Middle Cambrian
Late Quaternary	in late Pleistocene times

8.135 ***Stratigraphy.*** Formal stratigraphic names are capitalized. For prehistoric cultural terms, see 8.73.

Fleur de Lys Supergroup
Ramey Ridge Complex
Niobrara Member
Morrison Formation

Astronomical Terms

8.136 ***Astronomical terms—additional resources.*** The following paragraphs offer only the most general guidelines. Writers or editors working in astronomy or astrophysics should consult *Scientific Style and Format* (bibliog. 1.1) and the website of the International Astronomical Union.

8.137 ***Celestial bodies.*** The names of galaxies, constellations, stars, planets, and such are capitalized. For *earth*, *sun*, and *moon*, see 8.139, 8.140.

Aldebaran
Alpha Centauri *or* α Centauri
the Big Dipper *or* Ursa Major *or* the Great Bear
Cassiopeia's Chair
the Crab Nebula
the Magellanic Clouds
the Milky Way
the North Star *or* Polaris, polestar
85 Pegasi
Saturn
but
Halley's comet
the solar system

8.138 ***Catalog names for celestial objects.*** Celestial objects listed in well-known catalogs are designated by the catalog name, often abbreviated, and a number.

Bond 619 Lalande 5761 Lynds 1251 *or* L1251 NGC 6165

8.139 ***"Earth."*** In nontechnical contexts the word *earth*, in the sense of our planet, is usually lowercased when preceded by *the* or in such idioms as "down to earth" or "move heaven and earth." When used as the proper name of our planet, especially in context with other planets, it is capitalized, and *the* is usually omitted.

Some still believe the earth is flat.
The gender accorded to the moon, the sun, and the earth varies in different mythologies.
Where on earth have you been?
The astronauts have returned successfully to Earth.
Does Mars, like Earth, have an atmosphere?

8.140 ***"Sun" and "moon."*** The words *sun* and *moon* are usually lowercased in nontechnical contexts and always lowercased in the plural.

The moon circles the earth, as the earth circles the sun.
Some planets have several moons.

Some publications in the fields of astronomy and related sciences, however, routinely capitalize these words when used as proper nouns. (See also 8.137.)

8.141 *Descriptive terms.* Merely descriptive terms applied to celestial objects or phenomena are not capitalized.

aurora borealis *or* northern lights
gegenschein
interstellar dust
the rings of Saturn

Medical Terms

8.142 *Medical terms—additional resources.* The following paragraphs offer only the most general guidelines. Medical writers or editors should consult the *AMA Manual of Style* or *Scientific Style and Format* (both in bibliog. 1.1).

8.143 *Diseases, procedures, and such.* Names of diseases, syndromes, diagnostic procedures, anatomical parts, and the like are lowercased, except for proper names forming part of the term. Acronyms and initialisms are capitalized.

acquired immunodeficiency syndrome *or* AIDS
Alzheimer disease (see below)
computed tomography *or* CT
Down syndrome (see below)
finger-nose test
islets of Langerhans
non-Hodgkin lymphoma (see below)
ultrasound; ultrasonography

The possessive forms *Alzheimer's*, *Down's*, *Hodgkin's*, and the like, though less common in medical literature, may be preferred in a general context. For x-rays and radiation, see 8.150.

8.144 *Infections.* Names of infectious organisms are treated like other specific names (see 8.118–26). Names of conditions based on such names are neither italicized nor capitalized.

Microorganisms of the genus *Streptococcus* are present in the blood of persons with streptococcal infection.

The larvae of *Trichinella spiralis* are responsible for the disease trichinosis.

8.145 ***Drugs.*** Generic names of drugs, which should be used wherever possible in preference to brand names, are lowercased. Brand names must be capitalized; they are often enclosed in parentheses after the first use of the generic name. For guidance, consult the *AMA Manual of Style* and *Scientific Style and Format* (bibliog. 1.1) and *USP Dictionary of USAN and International Drug Names* (bibliog. 5). For brand names and trademarks, see 8.152.

The patient takes weekly injections of interferon beta-1a (Avonex) to control his multiple sclerosis.

Physical and Chemical Terms

8.146 ***Physical and chemical terms—additional resources.*** The following paragraphs offer only the most general guidelines for nontechnical editors. Writers or editors working in physics should consult *The AIP Style Manual* (bibliog. 1.1) or, among other journals, *Physical Review Letters*; those working in chemistry should consult *The ACS Style Guide* (bibliog. 1.1).

8.147 ***Laws and theories.*** Though usage varies widely, Chicago recommends that names of laws, theories, and the like be lowercased, except for proper names attached to them.

Avogadro's hypothesis (*or* Avogadro's law)
the big bang theory
Boyle's law
(Einstein's) general theory of relativity
Newton's first law

8.148 ***Chemical names and symbols.*** Names of chemical elements and compounds are lowercased when written out. Symbols, however, are capitalized and set without periods; the number of atoms in a molecule appears as a subscript. For a list of symbols for the elements, including atomic numbers, see 10.66.

ozone; O_3
sodium chloride; NaCl
sulfuric acid; H_2SO_4
tungsten carbide; WC

8.149 *Mass number.* In formal chemical literature, the mass number appears as a superscript to the left of the symbol. In work intended for a general audience, however, it may follow the symbol, after a hyphen, in full size.

^{14}C (formal style); C-14 *or* carbon-14 (informal style)
^{238}U (formal style); U-238 *or* uranium-238 (informal style)

8.150 *Radiations.* Terms for electromagnetic radiations may be spelled as follows:

β-ray (noun or adjective) *or* beta ray (in nonscientific contexts, noun or adjective)
γ-ray (noun or adjective) *or* gamma ray (in nonscientific contexts, noun or adjective)
x-ray (noun, verb, or adjective)
cosmic ray (noun); cosmic-ray (adjective)
ultraviolet ray (noun); ultraviolet-ray (adjective)

Note that the verb *to x-ray*, though acceptable in a general context, is not normally used in scholarly medical literature, where writers would more likely speak of obtaining an x-ray film, or a radiograph, of something, or of subjecting something to x-ray analysis.

8.151 *Metric units.* Although the spellings *meter*, *liter*, and so on are widely used in the United States, some American business, government, or professional organizations have adopted the European spellings (*metre*, *litre*, etc.). Chicago's publications show a preference for the traditional American spellings. For abbreviations used in the International System of Units, see 10.54–62.

Brand Names and Trademarks

8.152 *Trademarks.* Brand names that are trademarks—often so indicated in dictionaries—should be capitalized if they must be used. A better choice is to substitute a generic term when available. Although the symbols ® and ™ (for registered and unregistered trademarks, respectively) often accompany trademark names on product packaging and in promotional material, there is no legal requirement to use these symbols, and they should be omitted wherever possible. (If one of these symbols must be used at the end of a product name, it should appear before any period, comma, or other mark of punctuation.) Note also that some companies encourage the use of both the proper and the generic term in reference to their products ("Kleenex facial tissue," not just "Kleenex") and discourage turning product names into verbs, but these restrictions, while they may be followed in corporate documentation, are not legally binding. (In fact, *Webster's* includes entries for lowercase verbs *google* and *xerox*.) For computer-related names and terms, see 7.76.

Bufferin; buffered aspirin
Coca-Cola; cola
Google; search engine; search
Jacuzzi; whirlpool bath
Kleenex; (facial) tissue
Levi's; jeans
Ping-Pong; table tennis
Pyrex; heat-resistant glassware
Scrabble
Vaseline; petroleum jelly
Xerox; photocopier; copy

More information about registered trademarks can be found on the websites of the US Patent and Trademark Office and the International Trademark Association.

8.153 ***Names like eBay and iPod.*** Brand names or names of companies that are spelled with a lowercase initial letter followed by a capital letter (eBay, iPod, iPhone, etc.) need not be capitalized at the beginning of a sentence or heading, though some editors may prefer to reword. This departure from Chicago's former usage recognizes not only the preferred usage of the owners of most such names but also the fact that such spellings are already capitalized (if only on the second letter). Company or product names with additional, internal capitals (sometimes called "midcaps") should likewise be left unchanged (GlaxoSmithKline, HarperCollins, LexisNexis). See also 8.4.

eBay posted strong earnings.
User interfaces varied. iTunes and its chief rival, Amazon.com, . . .

In text that is set in all capitals, such distinctions are usually overridden (e.g., EBAY, IPOD, HARPERCOLLINS); with a mix of capitals and small capitals, they are preserved (e.g., eBay).

Titles of Works

8.154 ***Treatment of titles in text and notes—overview.*** The following guidelines apply primarily to titles as they are mentioned or cited in text or notes. They apply to titles of books, journals, newspapers, and websites as well as to shorter works (stories, poems, articles, etc.), divisions of longer works (parts, chapters, sections), unpublished works (lectures, etc.), plays and films, radio and television programs, musical works, and artworks. For details on citing titles in bibliographies and reference lists, see chapters 14 and 15.

Capitalization, Punctuation, and Italics

8.155 ***Capitalization of titles of works—general principles.*** Titles mentioned or cited in text or notes are usually capitalized headline-style (see 8.157). For aesthetic purposes, titles appearing on the cover or title page or at the head of an article or chapter may deviate from Chicago's rules for the capitalization of titles. For capitalization of foreign titles, see 11.3.

8.156 ***Principles and examples of sentence-style capitalization.*** In sentence-style capitalization only the first word in a title, the first word in a subtitle, and any proper names are capitalized. This style is commonly used in library catalogs and in the reference lists of some journals (see 15.13) and is the style recommended for most foreign titles (see 11.3). It is also useful for some types of subheads (see 2.17), including those that include terms (such as species names) that require their own internal capitalization (but note that the specific epithet remains lowercase in headline style; see 8.157, rule 7). See also 8.160.

The house of Rothschild: The world's banker, 1849–1999
Crossing *Magnolia denudata* with *M. liliiflora* to create a new hybrid: A success story

8.157 ***Principles of headline-style capitalization.*** The conventions of headline style are governed mainly by emphasis and grammar. The following rules, though occasionally arbitrary, are intended primarily to facilitate the consistent styling of titles mentioned or cited in text and notes:

1. Capitalize the first and last words in titles and subtitles (but see rule 7), and capitalize all other major words (nouns, pronouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, and some conjunctions—but see rule 4).
2. Lowercase the articles *the*, *a*, and *an*.
3. Lowercase prepositions, regardless of length, except when they are used adverbially or adjectivally (*up* in *Look Up*, *down* in *Turn Down*, *on* in *The On Button*, *to* in *Come To*, etc.) or when they compose part of a Latin expression used adjectivally or adverbially (*De Facto*, *In Vitro*, etc.).
4. Lowercase the conjunctions *and*, *but*, *for*, *or*, and *nor*.

5. Lowercase *to* not only as a preposition (rule 3) but also as part of an infinitive (*to Run*, *to Hide*, etc.), and lowercase *as* in any grammatical function.
6. Lowercase the part of a proper name that would be lowercased in text, such as *de* or *von*.
7. Lowercase the second part of a species name, such as *fulvescens* in *Acipenser fulvescens*, even if it is the last word in a title or subtitle.

For examples, see 8.158. For hyphenated compounds in titles, see 8.159.

8.158 ***Examples of headline-style capitalization.*** The following examples illustrate the numbered rules in 8.157. All of them illustrate the first rule; the numbers in parentheses refer to rules 2–7.

Mnemonics That Work Are Better Than Rules That Do Not
Singing While You Work
A Little Learning Is a Dangerous Thing (2)
Four Theories concerning the Gospel according to Matthew (2, 3)
Taking Down Names, Spelling Them Out, and Typing Them Up (3, 4)
Tired but Happy (4)
The Editor as Anonymous Assistant (5)
From *Homo erectus* to *Homo sapiens*: A Brief History (3, 7)
Defenders of da Vinci Fail the Test: The Name Is Leonardo (2, 3, 6)
Sitting on the Floor in an Empty Room (2, 3), *but* Turn On, Tune In, and Enjoy (3, 4)
Ten Hectares per Capita, *but* Landownership and Per Capita Income (3)
Progress in In Vitro Fertilization (3)

8.159 ***Hyphenated compounds in headline-style titles.*** The following rules apply to hyphenated terms appearing in a title capitalized in headline style. For reasons of consistency and editorial efficiency, Chicago no longer advises making exceptions to these rules for the rare awkward-looking result (though such niceties may occasionally be observed in display settings, as on the cover of a book). For rules of hyphenation, see 7.77–85.

1. Always capitalize the first element.
2. Capitalize any subsequent elements unless they are articles, prepositions, coordinating conjunctions (*and*, *but*, *for*, *or*, *nor*), or such modifiers as *flat* or *sharp* following musical key symbols.
3. If the first element is merely a prefix or combining form that could not stand by itself as a word (*anti*, *pre*, etc.), do not capitalize the second element unless it is a proper noun or proper adjective.
4. Capitalize the second element in a hyphenated spelled-out number (*twenty-one* or *twenty-first*, etc.) or hyphenated simple fraction (*two-thirds* in *two-thirds*

> *majority*). This departure from previous Chicago recommendations recognizes the functional equality of the numbers before and after the hyphen.

The examples that follow demonstrate the numbered rules (all the examples demonstrate the first rule; the numbers in parentheses refer to rules 2–4).

Under-the-Counter Transactions and Out-of-Fashion Initiatives (2)
Bed-and-Breakfast Options in Upstate New York (2)
Record-Breaking Borrowings from Medium-Sized Libraries (2)
Cross-Stitching for Beginners (2)
A History of the Chicago Lying-In Hospital (2; "In" functions as an adverb, not a preposition)
The E-flat Concerto (2)
Self-Sustaining Reactions (2)
Anti-intellectual Pursuits (3)
Does E-mail Alter Thinking Patterns? (3)
A Two-Thirds Majority of Non-English-Speaking Representatives (3, 4)
Ninety-Fifth Avenue Blues (4)
Atari's Twenty-First-Century Adherents (4)

Under another, simplified practice that is not recommended by Chicago, only the first element and any subsequent element that is a proper noun or adjective are capitalized.

8.160 ***Titles containing quotations.*** When a direct quotation of a sentence or an independent clause is used as a title, headline-style capitalization may be imposed, even for longer quotations. This departure from Chicago's earlier practice aids identification of titles. See also 14.104.

"We All Live More Like Brutes Than Like Humans": Labor and Capital in the Gold Rush

8.161 ***Italics versus quotation marks for titles.*** The choice of italics or quotation marks for a title of a work cited in text or notes is determined by the type of work. Titles of books and periodicals are italicized (see 8.166); titles of articles, chapters, and other shorter works are set in roman and enclosed in quotation marks (see 8.175).

Many editors use *The Chicago Manual of Style*.
Refer to the article titled "A Comparison of MLA and APA Style."

For treatment of book series and editions, see 8.174; for poems and plays, see 8.179–82; for unpublished works, see 8.184; for movies, television, and radio, see 8.185; for websites and blogs, see 8.186–87; for musical works, see 8.188–92; for works of art and exhibitions, see 8.193–95. For foreign titles, see 11.3–8.

8.162 ***Subtitle capitalization.*** A subtitle, whether in sentence-style or headline-style capitalization, always begins with a capital letter. Although on a title page or in a chapter heading a subtitle is often distinguished from a title by a different typeface, when referred to it is separated from the title by a colon. When an em dash rather than a colon is used, what follows the em dash is not normally considered to be a subtitle, and the first word is not necessarily capitalized. See also 14.98.

"Manuals of Style: Guidelines, Not Strangleholds" (headline style)
Tapetum character states: Analytical keys (sentence style)
but
Chicago—a Metropolitan Smorgasbord

8.163 ***Permissible changes to titles.*** When a title is referred to in text or notes or listed in a bibliography or reference list, its original spelling (including non-Latin letters such as π or γ) and hyphenation should be preserved, regardless of the style used in the surrounding text. Capitalization may be changed to headline style (8.157) or sentence style (8.156), as applicable. As a matter of editorial discretion, an ampersand (&) may be changed to *and*, or, more rarely, a numeral may be spelled out (see 14.96). On title pages, commas are sometimes omitted from the ends of lines for aesthetic reasons. When such a title is referred to, such commas should be added, including any comma omitted before a date that appears on a line by itself at the end of a title or subtitle. (Serial commas need be added only if it is clear that they are used in the work itself; see 6.18.) If title and subtitle on a title page are distinguished by typeface alone, a colon must be added when referring to the full title. A dash in the original should be retained; however, a semicolon between title and subtitle may usually be changed to a colon. (For two subtitles in the original, see 14.98. For older titles, see 14.106.) The following examples illustrate the way titles and subtitles are normally punctuated and capitalized in running text, notes, and bibliographies using headline capitalization. The first three are books, the fourth is an article.

Disease, Pain, and Sacrifice: Toward a Psychology of Suffering
Melodrama Unveiled: American Theater and Culture, 1800–1850

Browning's Roman Murder Story: A Reading of "The Ring and the Book"
"Milton Friedman's *Capitalism and Freedom*—a Best-Seller for Chicago"

For titles within titles (as in the third and fourth examples above), see 8.171, 8.175.

8.164 ***Titles in relation to surrounding text.*** A title, which is considered to be a singular noun, always takes a singular verb. Moreover, any punctuation that is part of the title should not affect the punctuation of the surrounding text (with the exception of a sentence-ending period, which should be omitted after a title ending in a question mark or exclamation point; see 6.118). See also 6.23, 6.119, 8.172.

The Waves is not a typical novel. (singular verb in spite of plural in title)
Her role in *Play It Again, Sam* confirmed her stature. (no comma after *Sam*)
Three stories she never mentioned were "Are You a Doctor?," "The Library of Babel," and "Diamond as Big as the Ritz." (comma after first title in spite of the question mark)

8.165 ***Double titles connected by "or."*** Old-fashioned double titles (or titles and subtitles) connected by *or* are traditionally referred to as in the first example, less traditionally but more simply as in the second. Chicago prefers the first form, but either form is acceptable if used consistently.

England's Monitor; or, The History of the Separation
England's Monitor, or The History of the Separation

Books and Periodicals

8.166 ***Treatment of book and periodical titles.*** When mentioned in text, notes, or bibliography, the titles and subtitles of books and periodicals are italicized and capitalized headline-style (see 8.157), though some publications may require sentence style for reference lists (see 8.156, 15.13). A book title cited in full in the notes or bibliography may be shortened in text (e.g., a subtitle may be omitted). For short titles in notes, see 14.25.

8.167 ***An initial "a," "an," or "the" in book titles.*** An initial *a*, *an*, or *the* in running text may be dropped from a book title if it does not fit the surrounding syntax. When in doubt, or if the article seems indispensable, it should be retained.

Fielding, in his introduction to *The History of Tom Jones, a Foundling,* announces himself as a professional author.
Fielding's *History of Tom Jones* . . .
That dreadful *Old Curiosity Shop* character, Quilp . . .
but
In *The Old Curiosity Shop,* Dickens . . .
In L'Amour's *The Quick and the Dead* . . .

8.168 ***An initial "the" in periodical titles.*** When newspapers and periodicals are mentioned in text, an initial *the*, even if part of the official title, is lowercased (unless it begins a sentence) and not italicized. Foreign-language titles, however, retain the article in the original language—but only if it is an official part of the title. (In citation form, an initial *the* is dropped from periodical titles, but foreign-language articles are retained; see 14.210, 14.211.)

She reads the *Chicago Tribune* on the train.
We read *Le Monde* and *Die Zeit* while traveling in Europe.
Did you see the review in the *Frankfurter Allgemeine*?

8.169 ***"Magazine" and other descriptive terms.*** A word like *magazine*, *journal*, or *review* should be italicized only when it forms part of the official name of a particular periodical. When such a word functions as an added descriptive term, it is treated as part of the surrounding text.

She used to subscribe to *Newsweek* and the *Partisan Review*; now she gets all her information from blogs.
I read it both in *Time* magazine and in the *Wall Street Journal*.
but
His article was reprinted in the *New York Times Magazine*.

8.170 ***Periodical titles in awards, buildings, and so forth.*** When the name of a newspaper or periodical is part of the name of a building, organization, prize, or the like, it is not italicized.

Los Angeles Times Book Prize   Chicago Defender Charities   Tribune Tower

8.171 ***Italicized terms and titles within titles.*** Any term within an italicized title that would itself be italicized in running text—such as a foreign word, a genus name, or the name of a ship—should be set in roman type (*reverse italics*). A title of a work within a title, however, should remain in italics and be enclosed in quotation marks. See also 8.163, 8.115, 8.119, 14.103.

From Tyrannosaurus rex *to King Kong: Large Creatures in Fact and Fiction*
The Big E: The Story of the USS Enterprise
A Key to Whitehead's "Process and Reality"

8.172 ***Title not interchangeable with subject.*** The title of a work should not be used to stand for the subject of a work.

Dostoevsky wrote a book about crime and punishment (*not* . . . about *Crime and Punishment*).
Edward Wasiolek's book on Dostoevsky's *Crime and Punishment* is titled *"Crime and Punishment" and the Critics*.
In their book *The Craft of Translation*, Biguenet and Schulte . . . (*not* In discussing *The Craft of Translation*, Biguenet and Schulte . . .)

8.173 ***Multivolume works.*** Titles of multivolume books are treated in the same manner as titles of single-volume works, as are named titles of individual volumes. The word *volume* may be abbreviated in parentheses and notes; it is capitalized (and never abbreviated) only if part of the title. For treatment of multivolume works in bibliographies and reference lists, see 14.121–27. See also 8.174.

The Day of the Scorpion, volume 2 of *The Raj Quartet*
Art in an Age of Counterrevolution, 1815–1848 (vol. 3, *A Social History of Modern Art*)
the fourth volume of *Encyclopaedia Britannica*

8.174 ***Series and editions.*** Titles of book series and editions are capitalized but not italicized. The words *series* and *edition* are capitalized only if part of the title. See also 14.128–32.

the Loeb Classical Library
a Modern Library edition
Late Editions: Cultural Studies for the End of the Century
the Crime and Justice series
a book in the Heritage of Sociology Series

Articles in Periodicals and Parts of a Book

8.175 ***Articles, stories, chapters, and so on.*** Titles of articles and features in periodicals and newspapers, chapter and part titles, titles of short stories or essays, and individual selections in books are set in roman type and enclosed in quotation marks. (If there are quotation marks in the original title, single quotation marks must be used, as in the fourth example.)

John S. Ellis's article "Reconciling the Celt" appeared in the *Journal of British Studies*.
In chapter 3 of *The Footnote*, "How the Historian Found His Muse," Anthony Grafton . . .
"Tom Outland's Story," by Willa Cather, . . .
The article "Schiller's 'Ode to Joy' in Beethoven's Ninth Symphony" received unexpected attention.

Titles of regular departments or columns in periodicals, however, are set in roman (see also 14.202, 14.205).

In this week's Talk of the Town, Lizzie Widdicombe features . . .

8.176 ***Collected works.*** When two or more works, originally published as separate books, are included in a single volume, often as part of an author's collected works, they are best italicized rather than placed in quotation marks.

The introduction to the *Critique of Pure Reason* in Kant's *Collected Works* . . .

8.177 ***Terms like "foreword," "preface," and so on.*** Such generic terms as *foreword*, *preface*, *acknowledgments*, *introduction*, *appendix*, *bibliography*, *glossary*, and *index*, whether used in cross-references or in reference to another work, are lowercased and set in roman type.

The author states in her preface that . . .
For further documentation, see the appendix.
Full details are given in the bibliography.
The book contains a glossary, a subject index, and an index of names.

8.178 ***Numbered chapters, parts, and so on.*** The words *chapter*, *part*, *appendix*, *table*, *figure*, and the like are lowercased and spelled out in text (though sometimes abbreviated in parenthetical references). Numbers are given in arabic numerals, regardless of how they appear in the original. If letters are used, they may be upper- or lowercase (following the original) and are sometimes put in parentheses. See also 9.27–29.

This matter is discussed in chapters 4 and 5.
The Latin text appears in appendix B.

The range is presented numerically in table 4.2 and diagrammed in figure 4.1.
These connections are illustrated in table A3.
Turn to section 5(a) for further examples.

Poems and Plays

8.179 ***Titles of poems.*** Titles of most poems are set in roman type and enclosed in quotation marks. A very long poetic work, especially one constituting a book, is italicized and not enclosed in quotation marks.

Robert Frost's poem "The Housekeeper" in his collection *North of Boston*
Dante's *Inferno*

In a stand-alone literary study where many poems, short and long, are mentioned, it may be better to set all their titles in italics.

8.180 ***Poems referred to by first line.*** Poems referred to by first line rather than by title are capitalized sentence-style, even if the first word is lowercased in the original, but any words capitalized in the original should remain capitalized. See also 8.156, 16.145.

E. E. Cummings, in "My father moved through dooms of love," . . . ("my" is lowercased in the original)
"Shall I compare thee to a Summer's day?"

8.181 ***Titles of plays.*** Titles of plays, regardless of the length of the play, are italicized.

Shaw's *Arms and the Man*, in volume 2 of his *Plays: Pleasant and Unpleasant*

8.182 ***Divisions of plays or poems.*** Words denoting parts of long poems or acts and scenes of plays are usually lowercased, neither italicized nor enclosed in quotation marks. Numbers are arabic, regardless of the original.

canto 2 stanza 5 act 3, scene 2

Pamphlets and Reports

8.183 ***Titles of freestanding publications.*** Titles of pamphlets, reports, and similar freestanding publications are treated much like books (see 8.166, 14.249)—italicized when mentioned or cited in text or notes.

Common Sense, first published anonymously . . .
The CDC's *Third National Report on Human Exposure to Environmental Chemicals*, available online . . .

Unpublished Works

8.184 ***Titles of unpublished works.*** Titles of unpublished works—theses, dissertations, manuscripts in collections, unpublished transcripts of speeches, and so on—are set in roman type, capitalized as titles, and enclosed in quotation marks. Names of manuscript collections take no quotation marks. The title of a not-yet-published book that is under contract may be italicized, but the word *forthcoming* (or *in press* or some other equivalent term), in parentheses, must follow the title. For speeches, see 8.75. See also 15.42.

In a master's thesis, "Charles Valentin Alkan and His Pianoforte Works," . . .
"A Canal Boat Journey, 1857," an anonymous manuscript in the Library of Congress Manuscripts Division, describes . . .
Letters and other material may be found in the Collis P. Huntington Papers at the George Arents Library of Syracuse University.
Gianfranco's *Fourth Millennium* (forthcoming) continues this line of research.

Movies, Television, and Radio

8.185 ***Titles of movies and television and radio programs and series.*** Titles of movies and of television and radio programs and series are italicized. A single episode in a television or radio series is set in roman and enclosed in quotation marks.

Gone with the Wind
The Godfather, Part II (see also 9.44)
PBS's *Sesame Street*
The Ten O'Clock News, WGBH's long-running program
WFMT's *From the Recording Horn*
"Casualties," an episode in *The Fortunes of War*, a *Masterpiece Theatre* series
but
the ten o'clock news

The names of broadcast networks, channels, and the like are set in roman.

Voice of America
Sirius Satellite Radio
the Discovery Channel
the Sundance and Disney channels

Electronic Publications

8.186 ***Websites and web pages.*** General titles of websites mentioned or cited in text or notes are normally set in roman, headline-style, without quotation marks. An initial *the* in such titles should be lowercased in midsentence. Titled sections, pages, or special features on a website should be placed in quotation marks. Titles of the types of works discussed elsewhere in this chapter (i.e., books, journals, etc.) should usually be treated the same whether they are published in print or online. Some websites share the name of a printed counterpart, and others (such as *Wikipedia*) are analogous to one of the types of works discussed elsewhere in this chapter; these titles should be styled accordingly. See also 14.243–46.

Project Gutenberg; Jane Austen's *Emma*, available as an audiobook from Project Gutenberg
the Internet Movie Database; IMDb (note lowercase *b*); IMDb's page for *Live and Let Die*; "Roger Moore (I)"; the page for well-known Bond portrayer Roger Moore
Google; Google Maps; the "Google Maps Help Center"
Facebook, MySpace, and other social-networking sites
The Chicago Manual of Style Online; the online edition of *The Chicago Manual of Style*; "Chicago Style Q&A"; "New Questions and Answers"
Encyclopaedia Britannica Online; the online version of *Encyclopaedia Britannica*
Wikipedia; *Wikipedia*'s "Let It Be" entry; *Wikipedia*'s entry on the Beatles' album *Let It Be*
the *Oxford English Dictionary Online*; the *OED Online*; the online version of the *Oxford English Dictionary*

Many websites either do not have a formal title or do not have a title that distinguishes it as a website. These can usually be identified according to the entity responsible for the site along with a description of the site and, in some cases, a short form of the URL (e.g., http://www.apple.com/ might be referred to in running text as Apple.com).

The website for Apple Inc.; Apple.com
Microsoft's website; Microsoft.com
the website for the University of Chicago Press, Books Division

8.187 ***Blogs and blog entries.*** Titles of named blogs, like the titles of journals and other periodicals (see 8.161), should be italicized. An initial "the" should be treated as part of the title (compare 8.168). Titles of blog entries should be placed in quotation marks (untitled entries should be referred to by date). For citing blogs (and comments to blogs) in notes and bibliographies, see 14.243–46.

The Pour; "A Beaujolais Maker's Pain," in *The Pour*, a blog by Eric Asimov in the *New York Times*
Wasted Food; "Friday Buffet," in *Wasted Food*, a blog by Jonathan Bloom

The titles of named podcasts, video blogs, and similar electronic formats mentioned or cited in text or notes can generally be styled according to an analogy to blogs. The name of a regular, ongoing feature or publication should be italicized; individually titled pieces should be placed in quotation marks. For more examples, see 14.221, 14.280.

"Visiting Priest Shows Family How Grace Is Done," on *Onion Radio News* (podcast)

Musical Works

8.188 *Musical works—additional resources.* The following paragraphs are intended only as general guidance for citing musical works. Writers or editors working with highly musicological material should consult D. Kern Holoman, *Writing about Music* (bibliog. 1.1). For a more general reference work, consult *The New Grove Dictionary of Music and Musicians* and the other Grove musical dictionaries, available from Oxford Music Online (bibliog. 5). For typographic conventions used in musicology, see 7.66–71.

8.189 *Operas, songs, and the like.* Titles of operas, oratorios, tone poems, and other long musical compositions are italicized and given standard title capitalization. Titles of songs and other shorter musical compositions are set in roman and enclosed in quotation marks, capitalized in the same way as poems (see 8.179, 8.180).

"La vendetta, oh, la vendetta" from *The Marriage of Figaro*
the "Anvil Chorus" from Verdi's *Il Trovatore*
Handel's *Messiah*
Rhapsody in Blue
Finlandia
"All You Need Is Love" (a song by the Beatles)
"So What" (a composition by Miles Davis)
"The Star-Spangled Banner"
"Oh, What a Beautiful Mornin' " from *Oklahoma!*
"Wohin?" from *Die schöne Müllerin*

8.190 *Instrumental works.* Many instrumental works are known by their generic names—*symphony*, *quartet*, *nocturne*, and so on—and often a number or key or both. Such names are capitalized but not italicized. A descriptive title, however, is usually italicized if referring to a full work, set in roman and in quotation marks if referring to a section of a work. The abbreviation *no.* (number; plural *nos.*) is set in roman and usually lowercased. (For letters indicating keys, see 7.67.)

B-flat Nocturne; Chopin's nocturnes
the Menuetto from the First Symphony; the third movement
Concerto no. 2 for Piano and Orchestra; the second movement, Allegro appassionato, from Brahms's Second Piano Concerto; two piano concertos
Bartók's Concerto for Orchestra (or *Concerto for Orchestra*)
Bach's Mass in B Minor
Hungarian Rhapsody no. 12; the Twelfth Hungarian Rhapsody
Charles Ives's Piano Sonata no. 2 (Concord, Mass., 1840–60); the *Concord* Sonata
Symphony no. 6 in F Major; the Sixth Symphony; the *Pastoral* Symphony
Air with Variations ("The Harmonious Blacksmith") from Handel's Suite no. 5 in E
Elliott Carter's String Quartet no. 5 and his *Figment* for cello
Augusta Read Thomas's Triple Concerto (*Night's Midsummer Blaze*)

8.191 ***Opus numbers.*** The abbreviation *op.* (opus; plural *opp.* or *opera*) is set in roman and usually lowercased. An abbreviation designating a catalog of a particular composer's works is always capitalized (e.g., BWV [Bach-Werke-Verzeichnis]; D. [Deutsch] for Schubert; K. [Köchel] for Mozart; WoO [Werke ohne Opuszahl], assigned by scholars to certain unnumbered works). When *op.* or a catalog number is used restrictively (see 6.26), no comma precedes it.

Sonata in E-flat, op. 31, no. 3; Sonata op. 31
Fantasy in C Minor, K. 475; Fantasy K. 475

8.192 ***Recordings.*** The official title of an album (and sometimes a title under which it has come to be known) is italicized; that of the performer or ensemble is set in roman. Individual items on the album—songs, movements, and the like—are treated as illustrated in the paragraphs above. See also 14.276–77.

On *The Art of the Trumpet*, the New York Trumpet Ensemble plays . . .
The single "Revolution" should not be confused with "Revolution 1," an earlier take of the song that appeared on *The Beatles* (aka *The White Album*).
Miles Davis's *Kind of Blue* is one of the most influential jazz records ever made.
His Majestie's Clerkes' *Hear My Prayer: Choral Music of the English Romantics* includes Vaughan Williams's Mass in G Minor.

Works of Art and Exhibitions

8.193 ***Paintings, statues, and such.*** Titles of paintings, drawings, photographs, statues, and other works of art are italicized, whether the titles are original, added by someone other than the artist, or translated. The names of works of antiquity (whose creators are often unknown) are usually set in roman.

Rothko's *Orange Yellow Orange*
Leonardo da Vinci's *Mona Lisa* and *The Last Supper*
North Dome, one of Ansel Adams's photographs of Kings River Canyon
Hogarth's series of drawings *The Rake's Progress*
Michelangelo's *David*
the Winged Victory
the Venus de Milo

8.194 ***Cartoons.*** Titles of regularly appearing cartoons or comic strips are italicized.

The Far Side *Doonesbury* *Rudy Park* *Dilbert*

8.195 ***Exhibitions and such.*** Titles of world's fairs and other large-scale exhibitions and fairs are capitalized but not italicized. Smaller exhibitions (e.g., at museums) and the titles of exhibition catalogs (often one and the same) are italicized.

the Great Exhibition of the Works of All Nations; the Great Exhibition of 1851; London's Crystal Palace Exhibition; the exhibition
the World's Columbian Exposition
the Century-of-Progress Expositions (included more than one fair)
the New York World's Fair
but
A remarkable exhibition, *Motor Cycles*, was mounted at the Guggenheim Museum.
We saw the exhibition *Ansel Adams at 100* when visiting the Museum of Modern Art.
We decided to buy the catalog *Ansel Adams at 100*, by John Szarkowski.

Signs and Mottoes

8.196 ***Signs and notices.*** Specific wording of common short signs or notices is capitalized headline-style in running text. A longer notice is better treated as a quotation.

The door was marked Authorized Personnel Only.
She encountered the usual Thank You for Not Smoking signs.
We were disturbed by the notice "Shoes and shirt required of patrons but not of personnel."

8.197 ***Mottoes.*** Mottoes may be treated the same way as signs. If the wording is in another language, it is usually italicized and only the first word capitalized. See also 6.51.

The flag bore the motto Don't Tread on Me.
My old college has the motto *Souvent me souviens*.
The motto "All for one and one for all" appears over the door.

9 *Numbers*

Overview 9.1

Numerals versus Words 9.2

- *General Principles* 9.2
- *Large Numbers* 9.8
- *Physical Quantities* 9.13
- *Percentages and Decimal Fractions* 9.18
- *Money* 9.21
- *Numbered Divisions in Publications and Other Documents* 9.27
- *Dates* 9.30
- *Time of Day* 9.38
- *Numbers with Proper Names and Titles* 9.42
- *Addresses and Thoroughfares* 9.51

Plurals and Punctuation of Numbers 9.54

Inclusive Numbers 9.58

Roman Numerals 9.64

Overview

9.1 *Overview and additional resources.* This chapter summarizes some of the conventions Chicago observes in handling numbers, especially in making the choice between spelling them out and using numerals. Such a choice should be governed by a number of factors, including whether the number is large or small, whether it is an approximation or an exact quantity, what kind of entity it stands for, and what context it appears in. Sometimes the goal of consistency must give way to readability (e.g., at the beginning of a sentence; see 9.5). The guidelines in this chapter apply mainly to general works and to scholarly works in the humanities and social sciences, where numeric quantities are relatively infrequent. But even in scientific and other technical contexts, numerals can never totally replace spelled-out numbers. For more detailed treatment of numbers in technical contexts, consult *Scientific Style and Format* (bibliog. 1.1). See also 9.13–17.

Numerals versus Words

General Principles

9.2 *Chicago's general rule—zero through one hundred.* In nontechnical contexts, Chicago advises spelling out whole numbers from zero through one hundred and certain round multiples of those numbers. Most of the rest of this chapter deals with the exceptions to this rule and special cases. For hyphens used with spelled-out numbers, see 7.85, section 1. For some additional considerations, consult the index, under *numbers*. For numerals in direct discourse, see 13.42. For an alternative rule, see 9.3.

Thirty-two children from eleven families were packed into eight vintage Beetles.
Many people think that seventy is too young to retire.
The property is held on a ninety-nine-year lease.
According to a recent appraisal, my house is 103 years old.
The three new parking lots will provide space for 540 more cars.
The population of our village now stands at 5,893.

9.3 *An alternative rule—zero through nine.* Many publications, including those in scientific or journalistic contexts, follow the simple rule of spelling out only single-digit numbers and using numerals for all others (but see

9.7). Most of the exceptions to the general rule (9.2) also apply to this alternative rule.

9.4 ***Hundreds, thousands, and hundred thousands.*** Any of the whole numbers mentioned in 9.2 followed by *hundred*, *thousand*, or *hundred thousand* are usually spelled out (except in the sciences)—whether used exactly or as approximations. See also 9.8.

Most provincial theaters were designed to accommodate large audiences—from about seven hundred spectators in a small city like Lorient to as many as two thousand in Lyon and Marseille.
A millennium is a period of one thousand years.
The population of our city is more than two hundred thousand.
Some forty-seven thousand persons attended the fair.
but
The official attendance at this year's fair was 47,122.

9.5 ***Number beginning a sentence.*** When a number begins a sentence, it is always spelled out. To avoid awkwardness, a sentence can often be recast. In the first example, some writers prefer the form *one hundred and ten*; Chicago's preference is to omit the *and*.

One hundred ten candidates were accepted.
or
In all, 110 candidates were accepted.

If a year must begin a sentence, spell it out; it is usually preferable, however, to reword. Avoid *and* in such expressions as *two thousand one*, *two thousand ten*, *two thousand fifty*, and the like (see also 9.30).

Nineteen thirty-seven was marked, among other things, by the watershed eleventh edition of Bartlett's *Familiar Quotations*.
or, better,
The year 1937 . . .

If a number beginning a sentence is followed by another number of the same category, spell out only the first or reword.

One hundred eighty of the 214 candidates had law degrees; the remaining 34 were doctoral candidates in fish immunology.
or, better,
Of the 214 candidates, 180 had law degrees; the remaining 34 were doctoral candidates in fish immunology.

9.6 *Ordinals.* The general rule applies to ordinal as well as cardinal numbers. Note that Chicago prefers, for example, *122nd* and *123rd* (with an *n* and an *r*) over *122d* and *123d*. The latter, however, are common especially in legal style (see 14.281–317). The letters in ordinal numbers should *not* appear as superscripts (e.g., 122nd *not* 122nd).

Gwen stole second base in the top half of the first inning.
The restaurant on the forty-fifth floor has a splendid view of the city.
She found herself in 125th position out of 360.
The 122nd and 123rd days of the strike were marked by a rash of defections.
The ten thousandth child to be born at Mercy Hospital was named Mercy.

In the expression "*n*th degree," Chicago style is to italicize the *n* (see also 7.59).

9.7 *Consistency and flexibility.* Where many numbers occur within a paragraph or a series of paragraphs, maintain consistency in the immediate context. If according to rule you must use numerals for one of the numbers in a given category, use them for all in that category. In the same sentence or paragraph, however, items in one category may be given as numerals and items in another spelled out. In the first example, the numerals 50, 3, and 4 would normally be spelled out (see 9.2); in the second and third examples, 30,000 and 2,000, respectively, would normally be spelled out (see 9.4; see also 9.8). For numerals in direct discourse, see 13.42.

A mixture of buildings—one of 103 stories, five of more than 50, and a dozen of only 3 or 4—has been suggested for the area.
In the second half of the nineteenth century, Chicago's population exploded, from just under 30,000 in 1850 to nearly 1.7 million by 1900.
Between 1,950 and 2,000 people attended the concert.

To avoid a thickly clustered group of spelled-out numbers, numerals may be used instead in exception to the general rule.

Large Numbers

9.8 *Millions, billions, and so forth.* Whole numbers used in combination with *million*, *billion*, and so forth usually follow the general rule (see 9.2). See also 9.4. For monetary amounts, see 9.21–26; for the use of superscripts in scientific contexts, see 9.9.

The city had grown from three million in 1960 to fourteen million in 1990.

The survey was administered to more than half of the city's 220 million inhabitants.

The population of the United States recently surpassed three hundred million.

To express fractional quantities in the millions or more, a mixture of numerals and spelled-out numbers is used. In the second example below, the number fourteen is expressed as a numeral for the sake of consistency (see 9.7).

By the end of the fourteenth century, the population of Britain had probably reached 2.3 million.

According to some scientists, the universe is between 13.5 and 14 billion years old.

Note that *billion* in some countries (including, until recently, Great Britain) means a million million (a trillion in American usage), not, as in American usage, a thousand million; in this alternate system, the prefix *bi-* indicates twelve zeros (rather than the American nine), or twice the number of zeros in one million. Likewise, *trillion* indicates eighteen zeros (rather than the American twelve), *quadrillion* twenty-four (rather than the American fifteen), and so on. Editors working with material by British or other European writers may need to query the use of these terms. See 5.220 under *billion; trillion*.

9.9 ***Powers of ten.*** Large round numbers may be expressed in powers of ten, especially in scientific writing. This system is known as scientific notation. For further examples, consult *Scientific Style and Format* (bibliog. 1.1).

$10^2 = 100$

$10^3 = 1{,}000$

$10^6 = 1{,}000{,}000$

$10^9 = 1{,}000{,}000{,}000$

$10^{12} = 1{,}000{,}000{,}000{,}000$

$5.34 \times 10^8 = 534{,}000{,}000$

Inversely, very small numbers may be expressed in negative powers of ten.

$10^{-2} = 0.01$

$10^{-3} = 0.001$

$10^{-6} = 0.000001$

$10^{-9} = 0.000000001$

$10^{-12} = 0.000000000001$

$5.34 \times 10^{-8} = 0.0000000534$

9.10 ***"Mega-," "giga-," "tera-," and so forth.*** According to the International System of Units (*Système international d'unités*, abbreviated internationally as SI), very large quantities may also be indicated in some contexts by the use of the prefixes *mega*- (million), *giga*- (billion), *tera*- (trillion), and so on, as part of the unit of measure. Inversely, very small numbers may be expressed by *milli*- (thousandth), *micro*- (millionth), *nano*- (billionth), and so on. These expressions are often formed with symbols (e.g., *M*, for *mega*-, as in MB, *megabytes*). In astrophysical contexts, the abbreviations *Myr* and *Gyr*, standing for megayear (one million years) and gigayear (one billion years), are sometimes used. See also 9.9. For a complete list of SI prefixes, see 10.57. See also 9.11.

3 terahertz = 3×10^{12} hertz   7 Gyr = 7×10^{9} years

9.11 *Binary systems.* Bases other than ten are common especially in computing, where numbers are usually expressed with bases that are powers of two (e.g., binary, octal, or hexadecimal). When such numbers are used, the base if other than ten should be indicated. Abbreviations *b* (binary), *o* (octal), and *h* (hexadecimal) may precede the number with no intervening space. Alternatively, the base can be expressed as a subscript. In the following example, the four-digit base-ten number is expressed without a comma, following SI usage:

b11110010001 = 1937   *or* $11110010001_2 = 1937_{10}$

Note that terms such as *megabyte*, when used as binary multiples, are approximations—a megabyte was originally equal to 1,048,576 bytes. Current SI usage dictates that such prefixes refer to positive powers of ten (where a megabyte is equal to 1,000,000 bytes). If binary multiples must be referred to, the first two letters of the prefix plus *bi* should be used (*kibibyte*, *mebibyte*, *gibibyte*, etc.).

9.12 *Use of "dex."* The term *dex* is sometimes used in scientific notation as shorthand for *decimal exponent*.

Errors of 3 dex (i.e., 10^3) can lead to dangerous misconceptions.

Physical Quantities

9.13 ***Physical quantities in general contexts.*** In nontechnical material, physical quantities such as distances, lengths, areas, and so on are usually treated according to the general rule (see 9.2). See also 9.15.

Within fifteen minutes the temperature dropped twenty degrees.
The train approached at seventy-five miles an hour.

Some students live more than fifteen kilometers from the school.
Three-by-five-inch index cards are now seldom used in index preparation.
She is five feet nine (*or, more colloquially,* five foot nine *or* five nine).

It is occasionally acceptable to depart from the general rule for certain types of quantities that are commonly (or more conveniently) expressed as numerals; such a departure, subject to editorial discretion, must be consistently applied for like quantities across a work. See also 9.7. For the absence of the hyphen in the second example below, see 7.85, section 2, under *noun + numeral or enumerator*.

a 40-watt bulb
a size 14 dress
a 32-inch inseam
a fuel efficiency of 80 miles per gallon (or 3 liters per 100 kilometers)

9.14 ***Simple fractions.*** Simple fractions are spelled out. For the sake of readability and to lend an appearance of consistency, they are hyphenated in noun, adjective, and adverb forms. In the rare event that individual parts of a quantity are emphasized, however, as in the last example, the fraction is spelled open. See also 7.85, section 1, under *fractions, simple*. For decimal fractions, see 9.19.

She has read three-fourths of the book.
Four-fifths of the students are boycotting the class.
I do not want all of your material; two-thirds is quite enough.
A two-thirds majority is required.
but
We divided the cake into four quarters; I took three quarters, and my brother one.

9.15 ***Whole numbers plus fractions.*** Quantities consisting of whole numbers and simple fractions may be spelled out if short but are often better expressed in numerals (especially if a symbol for the fraction is available, as in the examples here). For decimal fractions, see 9.19. For fractions in mathematical text, see 12.45. See also 9.17, 10.69.

We walked for three and one-quarter miles.
I need 6⅞ yards of the silk fabric.
Lester is exactly 3 feet 5¼ inches tall.
Letters are usually printed on 8½″ × 11″ paper.

9.16 ***Abbreviations and symbols.*** If an abbreviation or a symbol is used for the unit of measure, the quantity is always expressed by a numeral. Such usage is standard in mathematical, statistical, technical, or scientific text, where physical quantities and units of time are expressed in numerals, whether whole numbers or fractions, and almost always followed by an abbreviated form of the unit (see also 10.52–71). Any writer or editor working with highly technical material should consult *Scientific Style and Format* or the *AMA Manual of Style* (bibliog. 1.1). Note that hyphens are never used between the numeral and the abbreviation or symbol, even when they are in adjectival form (see 7.85, section 1, under *number + abbreviation*). In the last example, note the use of symbols for prime and double prime, which are *not* equivalent to the apostrophe and quotation mark.

50 km (kilometers); a 50 km race
21 ha (hectares)
4.5 L (liters)
85 g (grams)
240 V (volts)
10°C, 10.5°C
3′6″

A unit of measurement used *without* a numeral should always be spelled out, even in scientific contexts.

We took the measurements in kilojoules (*not* kJ).

9.17 ***Units for repeated quantities.*** For expressions including two or more quantities, the abbreviation or symbol is repeated if it is closed up to the number but not if it is separated. See also 10.52. For the use of spaces with SI units and abbreviations or symbols, see 10.61.

35%–50%   3°C–7°C   6⅝″ × 9″   2 × 5 cm

Percentages and Decimal Fractions

9.18 ***Percentages.*** Except at the beginning of a sentence, percentages are usually expressed in numerals. In nontechnical contexts, the word *percent* is generally used; in scientific and statistical copy, the symbol % is more common.

Fewer than 3 percent of the employees used public transportation.
With 90–95 percent of the work complete, we can relax.
A 75 percent likelihood of winning is worth the effort.
Her five-year certificate of deposit carries an interest rate of 5.9 percent.
Only 20% of the ants were observed to react to the stimulus.
The treatment resulted in a 20%–25% increase in reports of night blindness.

Note that *percent*, an adverb, is not interchangeable with the noun *percentage* (1 percent is a very small percentage). Note also that no space appears between the numeral and the symbol %.

9.19 ***Decimal fractions and use of the zero.*** Large or complex fractions are expressed as numeric decimal fractions (compare 9.14). When a quantity equals less than 1.00, a zero normally appears before the decimal point as an aid to readability, particularly in scientific contexts and especially if quantities greater than 1.00 appear in the same context. (Note that a unit of measure with a quantity of less than zero is generally pronounced as if it were plural; see also 10.68.)

a mean of 0.73
the ratio 0.85
The average number of children born to college graduates dropped from 2.3 to 0.95 per couple.

In contexts where decimal quantities must be 1.00 or less, as in probabilities, correlation coefficients, and the like, a zero is typically omitted before the decimal point. For zeros with decimal points in tables, see 3.70.

$p < .05$ $R = .10$

By a similar token, the zero is routinely omitted in baseball batting averages and firearm calibers.

Ty Cobb's average was .367.
They found and confiscated a .38 police special and a .22-caliber single-shot rifle.

9.20 ***Decimal places—European practice.*** In European countries, except for Great Britain, the decimal point is represented by a comma. A thin, fixed space, not a comma, separates groups of three digits, whether to the left or to the right of the decimal point. (In electronic publications, a nonbreaking space may be used.) This practice reflects European-style SI usage (see 9.56). Canadians increasingly follow SI usage, retaining the decimal point (or, in French-language contexts, the comma) but using a thin space to separate groups of three digits. In US publications, US style should be followed, except in direct quotations. See also 10.61.

36 333,333 (European style)
36 333.333 (Canadian style)
36,333.333 (US and British style)

Money

9.21 ***Words versus monetary symbols and numerals.*** Isolated references to amounts of money are spelled out for whole numbers of one hundred or less, in accordance with the general principle presented in 9.2. See also 9.3.

seventy-five cents = 75¢ fifteen dollars = $15 seventy-five pounds = £75

Whole amounts expressed numerically should include zeros and a decimal point only when they appear in the same context with fractional amounts (see also 9.19). Note the singular verb in the second example.

Children can ride for seventy-five cents.
The eighty-three dollars was quickly spent.
The instructor charged €125 per lesson.
Prices ranged from $0.95 up to $10.00.

For larger amounts, see 9.25.

9.22 ***Non-US currencies using the dollar symbol.*** In contexts where the symbol $ may refer to non-US currencies, these currencies should be clearly identified.

three hundred Canadian dollars = C$300 *or* Can$300
$749 in New Zealand dollars = NZ$749
If you subtract A$15.69 from US$25, . . .
ninety-eight Mexican pesos = Mex$98

In more formal usage, the International Organization for Standardization's three-letter currency codes (e.g., USD for United States dollars, CAD for Canadian dollars, NZD for New Zealand Dollars, and AUD for Australian dollars) may be more appropriate. See also 9.24. For a complete list, consult the ISO website. Also consult *Scientific Style and Format* or the *United States Government Printing Office Style Manual* (bibliog. 1.1). Where the context makes clear what currency is meant, the dollar sign alone is enough.

9.23 ***British currency.*** The basic unit of British currency is the pound, or pound sterling, for which the symbol is £. One-hundredth of a pound is a penny (plural *pence*), abbreviated as *p* (no period).

fifteen pounds = £15 fifty pence = 50p £4.75, £5.00, and £5.25

Until the decimalization of British currency in 1971, the pound was divided into shillings (s.) and pence (d.).

Ten pounds, fifteen shillings, and sixpence = £10 15s. 6d.
twopence halfpenny = 2½d.

9.24 ***Other currencies.*** Most other currencies are handled the same way as US currency, with a decimal point between the main unit and subunits (e.g., EUR 10.75). When letters rather than symbols are used, a space separates the letter(s) from the numeral.

forty euros (*or, in European Union documents,* 40 euro) = EUR 40 (*or* €40)
95 (euro) cents (*or, in European Union documents,* 95 cent)
725 yen = ¥725
65.50 Swiss francs = SF 65.50

Before adoption of the euro, monetary symbols included *F* (French franc), *DM* (deutsche mark), and *Lit* (Italian lira), among others. The International Organization for Standardization defines three-letter codes (including EUR) for most countries. See also 9.22.

9.25 ***Large monetary amounts.*** Sums of money of more than one hundred dollars are normally expressed by numerals or, for numbers of a million or more, by a mixture of numerals and spelled-out numbers, even for whole numbers (compare 9.4, 9.8).

An offer of $1,000 once seemed low; we eventually agreed to pay more than fifteen times that amount.
Most of the homes that went into foreclosure were valued at more than $95,000.
She signed a ten-year, $250 million contract.
The military requested an additional $7.3 billion.
The marquess sold his ancestral home for £25 million.

In certain financial contexts, thousands are sometimes represented by *K*.

Three-bedroom condominiums are priced at $350K.

9.26 ***Currency with dates.*** In contexts where the value of a currency in any particular year is relevant to the discussion, the date may be inserted in parentheses, without intervening space, after the currency symbol. When letters alone are used, spaces intervene before and after the parentheses (see also 9.22, 9.24).

US$(1992)2.47
£(2002)15,050
but
USD (1992) 2.47

Numbered Divisions in Publications and Other Documents

9.27 ***Page numbers, chapter numbers, and so forth.*** Numbers referring to pages, chapters, parts, volumes, and other divisions of a book, as well as numbers referring to illustrations or tables, are set as numerals. Pages of the front matter are usually in lowercase roman numerals; those for the rest of the book are in arabic numerals (see 1.5–8). For the use of en dashes with number ranges, see 6.78. For documentation style, see chapters 14 and 15. See also 8.178.

The preface will be found on pages vii–xiv and the introduction on pages 1–35.
See part 3, especially chapters 9 and 10, for further discussion; see also volume 2, table 15 and figures 7–9.
Upon completion of step 3, on page 37, the reader is asked to consult appendix B, table 7.

Biblical references are given in numerals only; chapter and verse are separated by a colon with no space following it. For abbreviations, see 10.45–51.

Acts 27:1
Exodus 20:3–17
Psalm 121; Psalms 146–50
2 Corinthians 11:29–30
Gen. 47:12

9.28 ***Volume, issue, and page numbers for periodicals.*** References to volumes, issues, and pages of a journal are usually made, in that order, with arabic numerals; the words *volume* and *page* are usually omitted. See also 14.170–217.

Their article appeared in *Current Anthropology* 49, no. 1 (2008): 87–114.

9.29 ***Numbered divisions in legal instruments.*** Arabic or roman numerals are sometimes used to distinguish divisions within legal instruments and other documents. When in doubt about a reference to a legal document, use arabic numerals or, if possible, consult the document itself for guidance. A mixture of arabic and roman numerals sometimes distinguishes smaller from larger divisions. For legal style in source citations, see 14.281–317.

They have filed for Chapter 11 protection from creditors.
Proposition 20 will be voted on next week.
A search of Title IX (of the Education Amendments of 1972) turns up no mention of athletics.
Do you have a 401(k)?
In paragraph 14(vi) of the bylaws, . . .
According to the Constitution of the United States, article 2, section 4 (*or* Article II, Section 4), . . .
but
the Fifth Amendment (*or* Amendment V)

Dates

9.30 ***The year alone.*** Years are expressed in numerals unless they stand at the beginning of a sentence (see 9.5), in which case rewording may be a better option. For eras, see 9.35.

We all know what happened in 1776.
Records for solar eclipses go back at least as far as 3000 BCE.
Twenty twenty (*or* Two thousand twenty) should be a good year for clairvoyants.
or, better,
The year 2020 should be a good year for clairvoyants.

9.31 ***The year abbreviated.*** In informal contexts, the first two digits of a particular year are often replaced by an apostrophe (not an opening single quotation mark).

the spirit of ’76 (*not* ‘76)   the class of ’06

9.32 ***Month and day.*** When specific dates are expressed, cardinal numbers are used, although these may be pronounced as ordinals. For the month-day-year date form versus the day-month-year form, see 6.45.

May 26, 2008, was a sad day for film buffs.
The *Watchmaker's Digest* (11 November 2011) praised the new model's precision.

When a day is mentioned without the month or year, the number is usually spelled out in ordinal form.

On November 5, McManus declared victory. By the twenty-fifth, most of his supporters had deserted him.

9.33 *Centuries.* Particular centuries are spelled out and lowercased. See also 9.35.

the twenty-first century
the eighth and ninth centuries
from the ninth to the eleventh century
the eighteen hundreds (the nineteenth century)

9.34 *Decades.* Decades are either spelled out (as long as the century is clear) and lowercased or expressed in numerals. Chicago calls for no apostrophe to appear between the year and the *s*.

the nineties   the 1980s and 1990s (*or, less formally,* the 1980s and '90s)

Note that the first decade of any century cannot be treated in the same way as other decades. "The 1900s," for example, could easily be taken to refer to the whole of the twentieth century. To refer to the second decade (i.e., without writing "second decade"), an expression like "the 1910s" might be used if absolutely necessary, but "the teens" should be avoided. Note also that some consider the first decade of, for example, the twenty-first century to consist of the years 2001–10; the second, 2011–20; and so on. Chicago defers to the preference of its authors in this matter. See also 8.70, 9.63.

the first decade of the twenty-first century (*or* the years 2000–2009)
the second decade of the twenty-first century (*or* the years 2010–19)

9.35 *Eras.* Era designations, at least in the Western world, are usually expressed in one of two ways: either CE ("of the Common Era") and BCE ("before the Common Era"), or AD (*anno Domini*, "in the year of the Lord") and BC ("before Christ"). Other forms include AH (*anno Hegirae*, "in the year of [Muhammad's] Hegira," or *anno Hebraico*, "in the Hebrew year"); AUC (*ab urbe condita*, "from the founding of the city [Rome]"); and—for archaeological purposes—BP ("before the present"). Note that the Latin abbreviations AD and AH precede the year number, whereas the others follow it. Choice of the era designation depends on tradition, academic discipline, or personal preference. These abbreviations often appear in small capitals, sometimes with periods following each letter. For consistency with the guidelines in chapter 10, Chicago recommends full capitals and no periods; see also 10.39.

Herod Antipas (21 BCE–39 CE) was tetrarch of Galilee from 4 BCE until his death.
Britain was invaded successfully in 55 BC and AD 1066.
The First Dynasty appears to have lasted from 4400 BP to 4250 BP in radiocarbon years.
Mubarak published his survey at Cairo in 1886 (AH 1306).
The campsite seems to have been in use by about 13,500 BP.
Rome, from its founding in the eighth century BCE, . . .

Note that the second half of a pair of inclusive dates used with BCE or BC, where the higher number comes first, should be given in full to avoid confusion (e.g., "350–345 BCE"). See also 9.63.

9.36 ***All-numeral dates and other brief forms.*** For practical reasons, all-numeral styles of writing dates (5/10/99, etc.) should not be used in formal writing (except with certain dates that may be known that way: e.g., 9/11, for September 11, 2001). Whereas in American usage the first numeral refers to the month and the second to the day, in the usage of other English-speaking countries and of most European languages it is the other way around. When quoting letters or other material dated, say, 5/10/03, a writer must first ascertain and then make it clear to readers whether May 10 or October 5 is meant (not to mention 1903 or 2003). In text, therefore, the full date should always be spelled out (see 9.32). In documentation and in tables, if numerous dates occur, months may be abbreviated, and the day-month-year form, requiring no punctuation, may be neater (e.g., 5 Oct 2003). See also 10.40. For ISO style, see 9.37.

9.37 ***ISO style for dates.*** The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) recommends an all-numeral style consisting of year-month-day (i.e., from largest component to smallest), hyphenated. The year is given in full, and the month or day, if one digit only, is preceded by a zero. Thus January 19, 2010, appears as 2010-01-19. Among other advantages, this style allows dates to be sorted correctly in an electronic spreadsheet and other applications.

Time of Day

9.38 ***Numerals versus words for time of day.*** Times of day in even, half, and quarter hours are usually spelled out in text. With *o'clock*, the number is always spelled out. In the third example, the *a* before *quarter* is optional.

Her day begins at five o'clock in the morning.
The meeting continued until half past three.
He left the office at a quarter of four (*or* a quarter to four).
We will resume at ten thirty.
Cinderella almost forgot that she should leave the ball before midnight. (See also 9.39.)

Numerals are used (with zeros for even hours) when exact times are emphasized. Chicago recommends lowercase a.m. (*ante meridiem*) and p.m. (*post meridiem*), though these sometimes appear in small capitals, with or without periods.

The first train leaves at 5:22 a.m. and the last at 11:00 p.m.
She caught the 6:20 p.m. flight.
Please attend a meeting in Grand Rapids, Michigan, on December 5 at 10:30 a.m. (EST).

For more on time zones, see 10.42.

9.39 ***Noon and midnight.*** Except in the twenty-four-hour system (see 9.40), numbers should never be used to express noon or midnight (except, informally, in an expression like *twelve o'clock at night*). Although noon can be expressed as 12:00 m. (m. = *meridies*), very few use that form. And the term 12:00 p.m. is ambiguous, if not illogical. In the second example below, note the double date for clarity.

The meeting began at 9:45 a.m. and was adjourned by noon.
Rodriguez was born at midnight, August 21–22.

9.40 ***The twenty-four-hour system.*** In the twenty-four-hour system of expressing time (used in Europe and in the military), four digits always appear, often with no punctuation between hours and minutes.

1200 = noon
2400 *or* 0000 = midnight
0001 = 12:01 a.m.
1438 = 2:38 p.m.
At 1500 hours (*or* 1500h) we started off on our mission.
General quarters sounded at 0415.

9.41 ***Seconds and dates included.*** A variation of the twenty-four-hour system shows hours, minutes, and seconds separated by colons; it also shows fractions of a second following a period. This format may be preceded by an ISO-style date (see 9.37).

09:27:08.6 = 27 minutes, 8.6 seconds after 9:00 a.m.
2010-01-19 16:09:41.3 = January 19, 2010, at 9 minutes, 41.3 seconds after 4:00 p.m.

For further details, consult *Scientific Style and Format* (bibliog. 1.1).

Numbers with Proper Names and Titles

9.42 ***Numerals for monarchs, popes, and so forth.*** Sovereigns, emperors, popes, and Orthodox patriarchs with the same name are differentiated by numerals, traditionally roman.

Elizabeth II Benedict XVI

In continental European practice, the numeral is sometimes followed by a period (e.g., Wilhelm II.) or a superscript (e.g., François Ier) indicating that the number is an ordinal. In an English context, the roman numeral alone should appear. See also 11.30.

9.43 ***Numerals with personal names.*** Some personal names are followed by a roman numeral or an arabic ordinal numeral. No punctuation precedes the numeral unless the name is inverted (as in an index entry). For *Jr.*, see 6.47.

Adlai E. Stevenson III
Michael F. Johnson 2nd
but
Stevenson, Adlai E., III

9.44 ***Numbers for sequels.*** Numerals are often used to designate the sequel to a novel or a movie or to differentiate two chapter titles dealing with the same subject matter. When quoting such titles, follow the usage—roman or arabic (or spelled out)—reflected in the source itself.

The Godfather; *The Godfather, Part II*; *The Godfather, Part III*
Jaws; *Jaws 2*; *Jaws 3-D*
chapter 9, "Alligator Studies in the Everglades—I"
chapter 10, "Alligator Studies in the Everglades—II"

9.45 *Vehicle and vessel numbers.* Boats and the like differentiated by a number usually take a roman numeral, spacecraft an arabic numeral. See also 8.115–16.

Bluebird III *Mariner 9*

9.46 *Successive governments.* Ordinal numbers designating successive dynasties, governments, and other governing bodies are spelled out if one hundred or less.

Eighteenth Dynasty
Fifth Republic
Second Continental Congress
Second International
Ninety-Seventh United States Congress
111th Congress

9.47 *Numbered political and judicial divisions.* Ordinal numbers designating political or judicial divisions are spelled out if one hundred or less.

Fifth Ward Twelfth Congressional District Tenth Circuit 101st Precinct

9.48 *Numbered military units.* Ordinal numbers designating military units are spelled out if one hundred or less.

Fifth Army
Fourth Infantry Division
First Corps Support Command
101st Airborne Division

9.49 *Numbered places of worship.* Ordinal numbers that are part of the names of places of worship are spelled out.

Fourth Presbyterian Church Twenty-First Church of Christ, Scientist

9.50 *Unions and lodges.* Numbers designating local branches of labor unions and fraternal lodges are usually expressed in arabic numerals after the name. Commas are generally omitted.

Chicago Typographical Union No. 16
American Legion Post 21
United Auto Workers Local 890

Addresses and Thoroughfares

9.51 *Numbered highways.* State, federal, and interstate highways are designated by arabic numerals. Names for state routes vary from state to state. See also 8.55.

US Route 41 (*or* US 41)
Interstate 90 (*or* I-90)
Illinois Route 50 (*or* Illinois 50; IL 50); Route 50
M6 motorway (England)

9.52 ***Numbered streets.*** Names of numbered streets, avenues, and so forth are usually spelled out if one hundred or less. For the use of *N*, *E*, *SW*, and the like, see 10.35. See also 8.55.

First Avenue
Ninety-Fifth Street
122nd Street

9.53 ***Building and apartment numbers.*** Building numbers, in arabic numerals, precede the street name. For readability, text usage may differ slightly from an address on an envelope. For preferred forms of addresses in the United States, consult the website of the US Postal Service.

They lived in Oak Park, at 1155 South Euclid Avenue, for almost ten years.
She now lives in unit 114A, 150 Ninth Avenue, with an unrivaled view of the city.
Our office is at 1427 East Sixtieth Street, Chicago, Illinois.
Please mail a copy of the German-language edition to 1427 E. 60th St., Chicago, IL 60637.

When a building is referred to in running text by its address, the number is often spelled out.

One Thousand Lake Shore Drive
One IBM Plaza

Plurals and Punctuation of Numbers

9.54 ***Plural numbers.*** Spelled-out numbers form their plurals as other nouns do (see 7.5).

The contestants were in their twenties and thirties.
The family was at sixes and sevens.

Numerals form their plurals by adding *s*. No apostrophe is needed.

Among the scores were two 240s and three 238s.
Jazz forms that were developed in the 1920s became popular in the 1930s.

9.55 ***Comma between digits.*** In most numerals of one thousand or more, commas are used between groups of three digits, counting from the right. (In scientific writing, commas are often omitted from four-digit numbers.) See also 9.56.

1,512 32,987 4,000,500

No commas are used in page numbers, line numbers (e.g., in poetry and plays), addresses, and years (though years of five digits or more do include the comma). See also 9.35.

Punctuation conventions can be found on page 1535 of the tenth edition.
Our business office is at 11030 South Langley Avenue.
Human artifacts dating from between 35,000 BP and 5000 BP have been found there.

9.56 ***Space between digits.*** In the International System of Units (SI units), thin, fixed spaces rather than commas are used to mark off groups of three digits, both to the left and to the right of the decimal point (represented by a comma in many non-English settings). (In electronic publications, a nonbreaking space may be used.) In numbers of only four digits either to the left or the right of the decimal point, no space is used (except in table columns that also include numbers having five or more digits). This system is far more common in Europe than in the United States. See also 9.20, 9.55.

3 426 869
0.000 007
2501.4865 (no space is used with four-digit sequences)

For more on SI units, see Ambler Thompson and Barry N. Taylor, *Guide for the Use of the International System of Units (SI)*, and *The International System of Units*, a brochure published in English and French by the Bureau International des Poids et Mesures and available online (see bibliog. 2.4).

9.57 ***Numbered lists and outline style.*** For the use of numerals (arabic and roman) and letters to distinguish items in lists, see 6.121–26.

Inclusive Numbers

9.58 ***When to use the en dash.*** An en dash used between two numbers implies *up to and including*, or *through*. For more on the use of the en dash, see 6.78–81.

Please refer to pages 75–110.
Here are the figures for 2001–10.
Campers were divided into age groups 5–7, 8–10, 11–13, and 14–16.

9.59 ***When not to use the en dash.*** If *from* or *between* is used before the first of a pair of numbers, the en dash should not be used; instead, *from* should be followed by *to* or *through*, *between* should be followed by *and*.

from 75 to 110 (*not* from 75–110)
from 1898 to 1903
from January 1, 1898, through December 31, 1903
between about 150 and 200

Inclusive spelled-out numbers should be joined by *to*, not by an en dash.

women aged forty-five to forty-nine years
sixty- to seventy-year-olds

9.60 ***Abbreviating, or condensing, inclusive numbers.*** Inclusive numbers are abbreviated according to the principles illustrated below (examples are page or serial numbers, which do not require commas). This system, used by Chicago in essentially this form since the first edition of this manual, is efficient and unambiguous. See also 9.61, 6.78.

FIRST NUMBER	SECOND NUMBER	EXAMPLES
Less than 100	Use all digits	3–10 71–72 96–117
100 or multiples of 100	Use all digits	100–104 1100–1113
101 through 109, 201 through 209, etc.	Use changed part only	101–8 808–33 1103–4
110 through 199, 210 through 299, etc.	Use two digits unless more are needed to include all changed parts	321–28 498–532 1087–89 1496–500 11564–615 12991–3001

To avoid ambiguity, inclusive roman numerals are always given in full.

xxv–xxviii   cvi–cix

9.61 ***Alternative systems for inclusive numbers.*** A foolproof system is to give the full form of numbers everywhere (e.g., 234–235, 25039–25041). Another practice, more economical, is to include in the second number only the changed part of the first (e.g., 234–5, 25000–1). Chicago, however, prefers the system presented in 9.60.

9.62 ***Inclusive numbers with commas.*** When inclusive numbers with commas are abbreviated, and only numbers in the hundreds place and below change, the rules described in 9.60 should apply. If a change extends to the thousands place or beyond, it is best to repeat all digits.

6,000–6,018   12,473–79   1,247,689–710   1,247,689–1,248,125

9.63 ***Inclusive years.*** Inclusive years may be abbreviated following the pattern illustrated in 9.60. When the century changes, however, or when the sequence is BCE, BC, or BP (diminishing numbers), all digits must be presented. See also 9.35.

1897–1901
the war of 1914–18
fiscal year 1997–98 (*or* 1997/98; see 6.105); FY 1997–98
the winter of 2000–2001
in 1504–5
327–321 BCE (a six-year span)
327–21 BCE (a 306-year span)
115 BC–AD 10
15,000–14,000 BP

In book titles it is customary but not obligatory to repeat all digits; when mentioning or citing a title, the form of the original should be respected.

Roman Numerals

9.64 ***Roman numerals—general principles.*** Table 9.1 shows the formation of roman numerals with their arabic equivalents. The general principle is that a smaller letter before a larger one subtracts from its value, and a smaller letter after a larger one adds to it; a bar over a letter multiplies its value by one thousand. Roman numerals may also be written in lowercase letters (i, ii, iii, iv, etc.). In older sources, a final *i* was often made like a *j* (vij, viij); citations to roman numeral page numbers in older works should follow the original usage.

TABLE 9.1 Roman and arabic numerals

Arabic	Roman	Arabic	Roman	Arabic	Roman
1	I	17	XVII	200	CC
2	II	18	XVIII	300	CCC
3	III	19	XIX	400	CD
4	IV	20	XX	500	D
5	V	21	XXI	600	DC
6	VI	22	XXII	700	DCC
7	VII	23	XXIII	800	DCCC
8	VIII	24	XXIV	900	CM
9	IX	30	XXX	1,000	M
10	X	40	XL	2,000	MM
11	XI	50	L	3,000	MMM
12	XII	60	LX	4,000	$\text{M}\overline{\text{V}}$
13	XIII	70	LXX	5,000	$\overline{\text{V}}$
14	XIV	80	LXXX	10,000	$\overline{\text{X}}$
15	XV	90	XC	100,000	$\overline{\text{C}}$
16	XVI	100	C	1,000,000	$\overline{\text{M}}$

9.65 ***The advent of subtrahends (back counters).*** The use of subtrahends (back counters) was introduced during the Renaissance. Note that IIII, not IV, still appears on some clock faces. The Romans would have expressed the year 1999, for example, as MDCCCCLXXXXVIIII. A more modern form, approved by the US government and accepted (if reluctantly) by classical scholars, is MCMXCIX (*not* MIM, considered a barbarism).

9.66 ***Chicago's preference for arabic rather than roman numerals.*** Chicago uses arabic numerals in many situations where roman numerals were formerly common, as in references to volume numbers of books and journals or chapters of books (see 9.28). Most of the exceptions are treated elsewhere, as follows: for the use of roman numerals in the front matter of books, see 1.4, 1.6, 9.27; in legal instruments, 9.29; with the names of monarchs, prelates, and such, 9.42; with personal names, 9.43; in titles of sequels, 9.44; with names of certain vessels, 9.45; and in outline style, 6.126.

10 *Abbreviations*

Overview 10.1

Names and Titles 10.11

- *Personal Names and Titles* 10.11
- *Firms and Companies* 10.22
- *Agencies and Organizations* 10.24
- *Saints and Personal Names with "Saint" or "St."* 10.26

Geographical Terms 10.28

- *Names of Countries* 10.32
- *Addresses* 10.34
- *Compass Points, Latitude, and Longitude* 10.36

Designations of Time 10.38

Scholarly Abbreviations 10.43

Biblical Abbreviations 10.45

Technology and Science 10.52

- *The International System of Units* 10.54
- *Astronomy* 10.63
- *Chemical Elements* 10.66
- *US Measure* 10.67

Business and Commerce 10.72

Overview

10.1 ***Abbreviations—additional resources.*** This chapter provides guidance for using abbreviations and symbols in general and scholarly writing. It also offers some guidance in technical work, especially for the generalist editor confronted with unfamiliar terms. For abbreviations not listed here, Chicago recommends *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary* (bibliog. 3.1); Dean Stahl and Karen Kerchelich, *Abbreviations Dictionary* (bibliog. 4.7); and the multivolume *Acronyms, Initialisms, and Abbreviations Dictionary* (bibliog. 4.7). Authors and editors of technical material will need to refer to more specialized manuals, starting with *Scientific Style and Format* (bibliog. 1.1).

10.2 ***Acronyms, initialisms, contractions.*** The word *acronym* refers to terms based on the initial letters of their various elements and read as single words (AIDS, laser, NASA, scuba); *initialism* refers to terms read as a series of letters (AOL, NBA, XML); and *contraction* refers to abbreviations that include the first and last letters of the full word (Mr., amt.). (For the type of contractions normally formed with apostrophes, see 7.29.) The definitions are not perfect. For example, sometimes a letter in an initialism is formed not, as the term might imply, from an initial letter but rather from an initial sound (as the *X* in XML, for extensible markup language), or from the application of a number (W3C, for World Wide Web Consortium). Furthermore, an acronym and initialism are occasionally combined (JPEG), and the line between initialism and acronym is not always clear (FAQ, which can be pronounced either as a word or as a series of letters). In this chapter the umbrella term *abbreviation* will be used for all three, as well as for shortened (i.e., abbreviated) forms (ibid., vol., prof., etc.), except where greater specificity is required. (Occasionally, a *symbol* abbreviates a term, as in © for *copyright*. On the other hand, abbreviations for units are often referred to as symbols in SI usage; see 10.54–62.)

10.3 ***When to use abbreviations.*** Outside the area of science and technology, abbreviations and symbols are most appropriate in tabular matter, notes, bibliographies, and parenthetical references. Even in regular prose, a number of expressions are almost always abbreviated and may be used without first spelling them out. Many of these will be listed as main entries with pronunciation (rather than as abbreviations) in the latest edition of *Webster's* (e.g., DNA, GPS, HMO, HTML, IQ, JPEG, laser, Ms., NASA). Others, though in more or less common use (CGI, FDA, HVAC, MLA), should generally be spelled out at first occurrence—at least in formal text—as a courtesy to those readers who might not easily recognize them. The use of less familiar abbreviations should be limited to those terms that occur frequently enough to warrant abbreviation—roughly five times or more within an article or chapter—and the terms must be spelled out on their first occurrence. (The abbreviation usually follows immediately, in parentheses, but it may be introduced in other ways; see examples. Such an abbreviation should not be offered only once, never to be used again.) Writers and editors should monitor the number of different abbreviations used in a document; readers trying to keep track of a large number of abbreviations, especially unfamiliar ones, will benefit from a list of abbreviations (see 1.43, 2.21). For rules concerning the plural form of various abbreviations, see 7.14. For abbreviations preceded by *a*, *an*, or *the*, see 7.44, 10.9.

Among recent recommendations of the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) are . . .
According to the weak law of large numbers (WLLN) . . .
The National Aeronautics and Space Administration was founded in 1958. Since its inception, NASA has . . .
The benefits of ERISA (Employee Retirement Income Security Act) are familiar to many.

10.4 ***Periods with abbreviations.*** In using periods with abbreviations, Chicago recommends the following general guidelines in nontechnical settings. For the use of space between elements, see 10.5.

1. Use periods with abbreviations that end in a lowercase letter: p. (page), vol., e.g., i.e., etc., a.k.a., a.m., p.m., Ms., Dr., et al. (*et* is not an abbreviation; *al.* is). An exception may be made for the few academic degrees that end in a lowercase letter (e.g., DLitt, DMin); see 10.20 and rule 3.
2. Use periods for initials standing for given names: E. B. White; do not use periods for an entire name replaced by initials: JFK.
3. Use no periods with abbreviations that appear in full capitals, whether two letters or more and even if lowercase letters appear within the abbreviation: VP, CEO, MA, MD, PhD, UK, US, NY, IL (*but see rule* 4).
4. In publications using traditional state abbreviations, use periods to abbreviate *United States* and its states and territories: U.S., N.Y., Ill. Note, however, that Chicago recommends using the two-letter postal codes (and therefore US) wherever abbreviations are used; see 10.28. For Canadian provinces and territories, see 10.29. See also 14.286.

Note that the British and the French (among others) omit periods from contractions (Dr, assn, Mme). Note also that a slash is occasionally used instead of periods (as in *c/o* or *n/a*) but more often denotes *per* (see 6.107). Units of measure in nontechnical settings are usually spelled out. In scientific usage, periods are generally omitted for abbreviated units of measure and other technical terms: see 10.52–71.

10.5 ***Space or no space between elements.*** No space is left between the letters of initialisms and acronyms, whether lowercase or in capitals. Space is usually left between abbreviated words, unless an abbreviated word is used in combination with a single-letter abbreviation. For personal names, see 10.12.

RN
C-SPAN
YMCA

Gov. Gen.
Mng. Ed.
Dist. Atty.

but
S.Dak. (but see 10.28)
S.Sgt.

10.6 ***Capitals versus lowercase for acronyms and initialisms.*** Initialisms tend to appear in all capital letters, even when they are not derived from proper nouns (HIV, VP, LCD). With frequent use, however, acronyms—especially those of five or more letters—will sometimes become lowercase (scuba); those that are derived from proper nouns retain an initial capital. Chicago generally prefers the all-capital form, unless the term is listed otherwise in *Webster's*.

NAFTA (*not* Nafta)

On the other hand, if the words in a spelled-out version of an acronym or initialism are not derived from proper nouns or do not themselves constitute a proper noun (as in the official name of an organization), they should generally be lowercased, even when they appear alongside the abbreviated form.

transmission-control protocol/Internet protocol (TCP/IP)

10.7 ***Italic versus roman type for abbreviations.*** Chicago italicizes abbreviations only if they stand for a term that would be italicized if spelled out—the title of a book or periodical, for example. Common Latin abbreviations are set in roman (see also 7.53).

OED (*Oxford English Dictionary*)
JAMA (*Journal of the American Medical Association*)
ibid. etc. e.g. i.e.

10.8 ***Small versus full-size capitals for acronyms and initialisms.*** Some book designs call for small capitals rather than full-size capitals for acronyms and initialisms (e.g., NASA rather than NASA). Though such usage may be considered desirable for a book that includes many acronyms and initialisms, Chicago does not generally recommend it. If small capitals must be used, the decision of what to mark should be made by the editor, who should apply small capitals on the final manuscript (e.g., using a word processor's small capitals feature). In general, small capitals should be limited to acronyms or initialisms mentioned in running text. Avoid applying small capitals to such items as two-letter postal codes in notes or bibliographies or to roman numerals (e.g., following a personal name). Editors and typesetters should be aware that small capitals are not treated in the same way across all software and coding platforms: some applications use lowercase letters presented (or "styled") as small capitals, whereas in other systems small capitals are based on uppercase letters. See also 10.39, 10.42. For the use of small capitals for emphasis, see 7.48.

10.9 ***"A," "an," or "the" preceding an abbreviation.*** When an abbreviation follows an indefinite article, the choice of *a* or *an* is determined by the way the abbreviation would be read aloud. Acronyms are read as words and are rarely preceded by *a*, *an*, or *the* ("member nations of NATO"), except when used adjectivally ("a NATO initiative"). Initialisms are read as a series of letters and are often preceded by an article ("member nations of the EU"). See 10.2; see also 7.44.

an HMO
a UFO
a NATO member
a LOOM parade
an AA meeting
a AA battery (pronounced "double A")
an NAACP convention
an NBA coach
an HIV test
an MS symptom (a symptom of multiple sclerosis)
but
a MS by . . . (would be read as "a manuscript by . . .")

10.10 ***Ampersands.*** No space is left on either side of an ampersand used within an initialism.

R&D   Texas A&M

Names and Titles

Personal Names and Titles

10.11 *Personal names.* Normally, abbreviations should not be used for given names. A signature, however, should be transcribed as the person wrote it.

Benj. Franklin Geo. D. Fuller Ch. Virolleaud

10.12 *Initials in personal names.* Initials standing for given names are followed by a period and a space. A period is normally used even if the middle initial does not stand for a name (as in Harry S. Truman).

Roger W. Shugg P. D. James M. F. K. Fisher

If an entire name is abbreviated, space and periods are usually omitted.

FDR (Franklin Delano Roosevelt)
MJ (Michael Jordan)
but
H.D. (pen name for Hilda Doolittle, with periods but no space between initials)

10.13 *Abbreviating titles before names.* Many civil or military titles preceding a full name may be abbreviated. Preceding a surname alone, however, they should be spelled out. See also 8.18.

Rep. Dan Lipinski; Representative Lipinski
Sen. Kirsten E. Gillibrand; Senator Gillibrand
Rear Adm. Carol M. Pottenger; Rear Admiral Pottenger

10.14 *Civil titles.* The following abbreviations, among others, may precede a full name where space is tight:

Ald.
Assoc. Prof.
Asst. Prof.
Atty. Gen.
Fr. (father)
Gov.
Insp. Gen.
Judge Adv. Gen.
Pres.
Prof.
Sr. (sister)
Supt.

10.15 *US military titles.* The US military omits periods in the official abbreviated forms of its ranks. The abbreviations for a given title may vary across branches. The army, for example, uses *SSG* for *staff sergeant*; the air force and marines prefer *SSgt*. (In the examples below, such variants are not presented.) In general contexts, however, including military history, traditional abbreviations—which tend not to vary across the armed forces—are preferred. The following very selective list merely illustrates the difference between military usage and traditional forms. Where no traditional abbreviation is appropriate before a name, use the full form.

ADM	Adm.	2LT	2nd Lt.
A1C	Airman First Class	LG	Lt. Gen.
BG	Brig. Gen.	LTC	Lt. Col.
CDR	Cdr.	MAJ	Maj.
COL	Col.	MG	Maj. Gen.
CPT	Capt.	MSG	M.Sgt. (master sergeant)
CWO	Chief Warrant Officer	PO	Petty Officer
GEN	Gen.	SGT	Sgt.
LT	Lt.	SSG	S.Sgt. (staff sergeant)
1LT	1st Lt.	WO	Warrant Officer

For the latest official forms of rank insignia, consult the website of the US Department of Defense. In addition, there are many reference books containing more detailed lists of abbreviations and terms, some of which are published regularly. See, for example, Timothy Zurick, *Army Dictionary and Desk Reference* (bibliog. 5).

10.16 ***Social titles.*** Social titles are always abbreviated, whether preceding the full name or the surname only. (The spelled-out forms *Mister* or *Doctor* might be used without a name—as in direct address.)

Ms.	Mr.	*but*
Mrs.	Dr. Jekyll	Thank you, Doctor.
Messrs.		

Social titles are routinely omitted in most prose, though a few periodicals in particular persist in using them. When an academic degree or professional designation follows a name, such titles are always omitted.

Jennifer James, MD (*not* Dr. Jennifer James, MD)

Similarly, the now somewhat archaic abbreviation *Esq.* (Esquire) is used only after a full name and never when *Mr.*, *Dr.*, or the like precedes the name.

10.17 ***French social titles.*** Note the presence or absence of periods after the following French forms used with either a full name or a surname only. (*Mme* and *Mlle* are considered contractions; in French usage, periods are often omitted for all four titles.)

M. MM. Mme Mlle

When *Monsieur, Messieurs, Madame*, or *Mademoiselle* is used without a name, in direct address, it is spelled out (and, in French usage, generally lowercased).

10.18 ***"Reverend" and "Honorable."*** The abbreviations *Rev.* and *Hon.* are traditionally used before a full name when *the* does not precede the title. With *the*, such titles should be spelled out.

Rev. Sam Portaro; the Reverend Sam Portaro
Hon. Henry M. Brown; the Honorable Henry M. Brown

With a last name only, such titles are normally omitted. The construction "Reverend So-and-So," however, is common, especially in informal prose or speech.

Rev. Jane Schaefer; Schaefer (*or* Reverend Schaefer)
the Honorable Patricia Birkholz; Birkholz

10.19 ***"Jr.," "Sr.," and the like.*** The abbreviations *Jr.* and *Sr.*, as well as roman or arabic numerals such as III or *3rd*, after a person's name are part of the name and so are retained in connection with any titles or honorifics. Note that these abbreviations are used only with the full name, never with the surname only. See also 6.47, 9.43.

Jordan Balfence Jr. spoke first. After Mr. Balfence relinquished the podium, . . .
Zayd Zephyr III, MBA, spoke last. In closing, Mr. Zephyr reiterated . . .

10.20 ***Academic degrees.*** Chicago recommends omitting periods in abbreviations of academic degrees (BA, DDS, etc.) unless they are required for reasons of tradition or consistency with, for example, a journal's established style. In the following list of some of the more common degrees, periods are shown only where uncertainty might arise as to their placement. Spelled-out terms, often capitalized in institutional settings (and on business cards and other promotional items), should be lowercased in normal prose. See also 8.28.

AB	artium baccalaureus (bachelor of arts)
AM	artium magister (master of arts)

BA	bachelor of arts
BD	bachelor of divinity
BFA	bachelor of fine arts
BM	bachelor of music
BS	bachelor of science
DB	divinitatis baccalaureus (bachelor of divinity)
DD	divinitatis doctor (doctor of divinity)
DDS	doctor of dental surgery
DLitt *or* DLit	doctor litterarum (doctor of letters; doctor of literature)
DMD	dentariae medicinae doctor (doctor of dental medicine)
DMin	doctor of ministry
DO	doctor of osteopathy *or* osteopathic physician
DVM	doctor of veterinary medicine
EdM	educationis magister (master of education)
JD	juris doctor (doctor of law)
LHD	litterarum humaniorum doctor (doctor of humanities)
LittD	litterarum doctor (doctor of letters)
LLB (LL.B.)	legum baccalaureus (bachelor of laws)
LLD (LL.D.)	legum doctor (doctor of laws)
LLM (LL.M.)	legum magister (master of laws)
MA	master of arts
MBA	master of business administration
MD	medicinae doctor (doctor of medicine)
MDiv	master of divinity
MFA	master of fine arts
MS	master of science
MSN	master of science in nursing
MSW	master of social welfare *or* master of social work
PhB	philosophiae baccalaureus (bachelor of philosophy)
PhD	philosophiae doctor (doctor of philosophy)
PhG	graduate in pharmacy
SB	scientiae baccalaureus (bachelor of science)
SM	scientiae magister (master of science)
STB	sacrae theologiae baccalaureus (bachelor of sacred theology)

These designations are set off by commas when they follow a personal name.

David H. Pauker, JD, attended Northwestern University Law School.

10.21 ***Professional, religious, and other designations.*** Abbreviations for many other designations, professional and otherwise, follow the pattern of academic degrees, for which Chicago recommends dispensing with periods.

Spelled-out terms, often capitalized in institutional settings, are lowercase unless they designate the proper name of an organization. (See 10.20.)

CNM	certified nurse midwife
FAIA	fellow of the American Institute of Architects
FRS	fellow of the Royal Society
JP	justice of the peace
LPN	licensed practical nurse
MP	member of Parliament
OFM	Order of Friars Minor
OP	Ordo Praedicatorum (Order of Preachers)
RN	registered nurse
SJ	Society of Jesus

These designations, like academic degrees, are set off by commas when they follow a personal name.

Joan Hotimlanska, LPN, will be working on the second floor.

Firms and Companies

10.22 ***Some commonly used generic abbreviations.*** All of the abbreviations in the following list may be found in *Webster's* and other standard dictionaries. Use periods, or not, according to the recommendations in 10.4. See also 10.72.

Assoc.
Bros.
Co.
Corp.
Inc.
LLC (limited liability company)
LLP (limited liability partnership)
LP (limited partnership)
Ltd.
Mfg.
PLC (public limited company)
RR (railroad)
Rwy. *or* Ry. (railway)

Abbreviations of foreign-language terms omit the period if they are contractions (see 10.2).

Cia (Sp. *compañia*)   Cie (Fr. *compagnie*)

10.23 ***Company names.*** Abbreviations and ampersands are appropriate in notes, bibliographies, tabular matter, and the like. See also 14.141.

Ginn & Co. JPMorgan Chase & Co. Moss Bros. Rand Corp.

In running text, company names are best given in their full forms. It should be noted, however, that some full forms include ampersands and abbreviations. If in doubt, especially with reference to contemporary firms, look up the company name at a corporate website or other authoritative source. Such elements as *Inc.*, *& Co.*, and *LLC* may be omitted unless relevant to the context.

Brooks Brothers was purchased and later resold by Marks & Spencer.
JPMorgan Chase operates in more than sixty countries.
AT&T Corporation was once known as the American Telephone and Telegraph Company.

Agencies and Organizations

10.24 ***Associations and the like.*** Both in running text (preferably after being spelled out on first occurrence) and in tabular matter, notes, and so forth, the names of many agencies and organizations, governmental and fraternal, are commonly abbreviated. Whether acronyms or initialisms (see 10.2), such abbreviations appear in full capitals and without periods. For *a*, *an*, or *the*, with abbreviations, see 10.9.

AAUP
AFL-CIO
ERISA
EU (European Union)
HMO (*pl.* HMOs)
WHO
WTO (*formerly* GATT)

10.25 ***Broadcasting companies.*** Call letters, often derived from the name of a broadcasting company, are always capitalized but do not take periods.

ABC CBS HBO KFTV MTV NBC TBS WFMT WTTW

Saints and Personal Names with "Saint" or "St."

10.26 ***Names of saints.*** The word *Saint* is often abbreviated (*St.*, pl. *SS.*) before the name of a Christian saint; it should normally be spelled out in formal prose but need not be if space is at a premium. (But see 10.27.) The choice for one or the other should be implemented consistently.

Saint (*or* St.) Teresa
Saints (*or* SS.) Francis of Paola and Francis of Sales

10.27 *Personal names with "Saint" or "St."* When *Saint* or *St.* forms part of a personal name, the bearer's usage is followed. See also 10.31.

Augustus Saint-Gaudens
Muriel St. Clare Byrne

Geographical Terms

10.28 *US states and territories.* In running text, the names of states, territories, and possessions of the United States should always be spelled out when standing alone and preferably (except for DC) when following the name of a city: for example, "Lake Bluff, Illinois, was incorporated in 1895." In bibliographies, tabular matter, lists, and mailing addresses, they are usually abbreviated. In all such contexts, Chicago prefers the two-letter postal codes to the conventional abbreviations. Note that if traditional abbreviations must be used, some terms may not be subject to abbreviation. See also 10.4.

AK	Alaska *or* Alas.
AL	Ala.
AR	Ark.
AS	American Samoa
AZ	Ariz.
CA	Calif.
CO	Colo.
CT	Conn.
DC	D.C.
DE	Del.
FL	Fla.
FM	Federated States of Micronesia
GA	Ga.
GU	Guam
HI	Hawaii
IA	Iowa
ID	Idaho
IL	Ill.
IN	Ind.
KS	Kans.
KY	Ky.
LA	La.
MA	Mass.
MD	Md.
ME	Maine
MH	Marshall Islands
MI	Mich.
MN	Minn.
MO	Mo.
MP	Northern Mariana Islands
MS	Miss.
MT	Mont.
NC	N.C.
ND	N.Dak.
NE	Neb. *or* Nebr.
NH	N.H.
NJ	N.J.
NM	N.Mex.
NV	Nev.
NY	N.Y.
OH	Ohio
OK	Okla.
OR	Ore. *or* Oreg.
PA	Pa.
PR	P.R. *or* Puerto Rico

PW	Palau	VA	Va.
RI	R.I.	VI	V.I. *or* Virgin Islands
SC	S.C.	VT	Vt.
SD	S.Dak.	WA	Wash.
TN	Tenn.	WI	Wis. *or* Wisc.
TX	Tex.	WV	W.Va.
UT	Utah	WY	Wyo.

10.29 ***Canadian provinces and territories.*** Canadian provinces and territories are normally spelled out in text (e.g., "Kingston, Ontario, is worth a visit") but may be abbreviated in bibliographies and the like—using the two-letter postal abbreviations, which have the advantage of applying to both the English and French forms.

AB	Alberta
BC	British Columbia *or* Colombie-Britannique
MB	Manitoba
NB	New Brunswick *or* Nouveau-Brunswick
NL	Newfoundland and Labrador *or* Terre-Neuve-et-Labrador
NS	Nova Scotia *or* Nouvelle-Écosse
NT	Northwest Territories *or* Territoires du Nord-Ouest
NU	Nunavut
ON	Ontario
PE	Prince Edward Island *or* Île-du-Prince-Édouard
QC	Quebec *or* Québec
SK	Saskatchewan
YT	Yukon

10.30 ***Comma with city plus state.*** When following the name of a city, the names of states, provinces, and territories are enclosed in commas, whether they are spelled out (as in running text) or abbreviated (as in tabular matter or lists). In an exception to the rule, no comma appears between the postal code and a zip code. See also 6.46, 6.17.

Bedford, PA, and Jamestown, NY
but
Send the package to J. Sprocket, 3359 Fob Dr., Quartz, IL 60000.

10.31 ***Place-names with "Fort," "Mount," "Saint," and the like.*** Generic terms as elements of geographic names should be abbreviated only where space is at a premium. *San* and *Santa* (e.g., San Diego, Santa Barbara) are never abbreviated. For French place-names with *Saint*, see 11.29.

Fort (Ft.) Myers
Mount (Mt.) Airy
Port (Pt.) Arthur
Saint (St.) Louis
Saint (St.) Paul

Names of Countries

10.32 ***When to abbreviate country names.*** Names of countries are spelled out in text but may be abbreviated in tabular matter, lists, and the like. Use discretion in forming the abbreviations and make sure they are defined below the table (or in some fashion) if there is any possibility of confusion (see 3.74–78). The examples below reflect entries in standard dictionaries (all are listed in *Webster's*, with the exception of *Swed.*, which is listed in *American Heritage*). In certain technical applications, it may be advisable to use either the two-letter or three-letter standard abbreviations based on the English names of countries as defined by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO 3166-1, alpha-2 and alpha-3, respectively). For these lists, consult the ISO website. For *US*, see 10.33.

Fr.
Ger.
Isr.
It.
Neth.
Russ.
Sp.
Swed.
UAE (United Arab Emirates)
UK

Note that before reunification (in 1990) East Germany was generally known as the GDR (German Democratic Republic) or DDR (Deutsche Demokratische Republik), and West Germany as the FRG (Federal Republic of Germany) or BRD (Bundesrepublik Deutschland). The former Soviet Union was abbreviated USSR (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics).

10.33 ***"US" versus United States.*** In running text, spell out *United States* as a noun; reserve *US* for the adjective form only (in which position the abbreviation is generally preferred). See also 10.4.

US dollars	*but*
US involvement in China	China's involvement in the United States

Addresses

10.34 ***Mailing addresses—postal versus standard abbreviations.*** Standard abbreviations preferred by the US Postal Service (first column) are in all caps and do not use periods; these forms are most appropriate for mailing addresses. In tabular matter and the like, Chicago prefers the form of abbreviations presented in the second column. For those not listed here, consult a dictionary. For a complete list of abbreviations preferred by the

USPS, consult their website. In running text, spell out rather than abbreviate. See also 10.35.

AVE	Ave.	PO Box	PO Box
BLDG	Bldg.	RD	Rd.
CT	Ct.	RM	Rm.
DR	Dr.	RTE	Rte.
EXPY	Expy.	SQ	Sq.
HWY	Hwy.	ST	St.
LN	Ln.	STE	Ste. (*or* Suite)
PKWY	Pkwy.	TER	Ter. (*or* Terr.)
PL	Pl.		

10.35 ***Compass points in mailing addresses.*** Single-letter compass points accompanying a street name are normally followed by a period; two-letter ones are not. (The US Postal Service does not use periods for either; see 10.34; see also 10.4.) Note that when used in an address, the abbreviations *NE*, *NW*, *SE*, and *SW* remain abbreviated even in running text (there is no comma before them when they follow a street name). The *N* in the third example is a street name and not a compass point.

1060 E. Prospect Ave.
456 NW Lane St.
I stayed in a building on N Street SW, close to the city center.

A compass point that is the name (or part of the name) of a street or a place-name must never be abbreviated (e.g., South Ave., Northwest Hwy., South Shore Dr., West Bend, East Orange). For the use of numerals in addresses, see 9.52, 9.53.

Compass Points, Latitude, and Longitude

10.36 ***Compass points.*** Points of the compass may be abbreviated as follows, without periods (but see 10.35). In formal, nontechnical text, however, these terms are usually spelled out.

N, E, S, W, NE, SE, SW, NW, NNE, ENE, ESE, etc.
N by NE, NE by N, NE by E, etc.

10.37 ***"Latitude" and "longitude."*** In nontechnical contexts, the words *latitude* and *longitude* are never abbreviated in running text or when standing alone.

longitude 90° west   the polar latitudes

Global positioning coordinates are expressed in a variety of ways (though latitude is always given first). Some systems use a minus sign (or hyphen) to indicate south or west. Others use decimal minutes. The following three coordinates are equivalent. The comma is often omitted.

36 25.217, -44 23.017   N 36°25′13″, W 44°23′01″   N 36 25.217, W 44 23.017

In technical work, the abbreviations *lat* and *long*, usually without periods, may be used when part of a coordinate. They can sometimes be dropped, since the compass point identifies the coordinate.

lat 42°15′09″ N, long 89°17′45″ W
lat 45°16′17″ S, long 116°40′18″ E
The chart showed shoal water at 19°29′59″ N, 107°45′36″ W.

Note that primes (′) and double primes (″), *not* quotation marks, are used. For greater detail, consult *Scientific Style and Format* (bibliog. 1.1).

Designations of Time

10.38 ***Other discussions.*** For units of time (seconds, minutes, etc.), see 10.71. For numerical designations of dates and times of day, see 9.31, 9.34, 9.36, 9.38–41.

10.39 ***Systems of chronology.*** The following abbreviations are used in running text and elsewhere. Although these have traditionally appeared in small capitals (with or without periods), Chicago recommends full capitals without periods, in keeping with the general guidelines in this chapter (see 10.4; see also 10.8). The first four precede the year number; the others follow it. See also 9.35.

AD	anno Domini (in the year of [our] Lord)
AH	anno Hegirae (in the year of the Hegira); anno Hebraico (in the Hebrew year)
AM	anno mundi (in the year of the world) (not to be confused with ante meridiem; see 10.42)
AS	anno salutis (in the year of salvation)
AUC	ab urbe condita (from the founding of the city [Rome, in 753 BCE])

BC	before Christ
BCE	before the Common Era
BP	before the present
CE	Common Era
MYA	million years ago
YBP	years before the present

10.40 ***Months.*** Where space restrictions require that the names of months be abbreviated, one of the following systems is often used. The second and third, which take no periods, are used respectively in computer systems and indexes of periodical literature. In formal prose, Chicago prefers the first.

Jan.	*or*	Jan	*or*	Ja	July	*or*	Jul	*or*	Jl
Feb.	*or*	Feb	*or*	F	Aug.	*or*	Aug	*or*	Ag
Mar.	*or*	Mar	*or*	Mr	Sept.	*or*	Sep	*or*	S
Apr.	*or*	Apr	*or*	Ap	Oct.	*or*	Oct	*or*	O
May		May	*or*	My	Nov.	*or*	Nov	*or*	N
June	*or*	Jun	*or*	Je	Dec.	*or*	Dec	*or*	D

10.41 ***Days of the week.*** Where space restrictions require that days of the week be abbreviated, one of the following systems is often used. The second (common in computer code) and third use no periods. In formal prose, Chicago recommends the first.

Sun.	*or*	Sun	*or*	Su	Thurs.	*or*	Thu	*or*	Th
Mon.	*or*	Mon	*or*	M	Fri.	*or*	Fri	*or*	F
Tues.	*or*	Tue	*or*	Tu	Sat.	*or*	Sat	*or*	Sa
Wed.	*or*	Wed	*or*	W					

10.42 ***Time of day.*** The following abbreviations are used in text and elsewhere. Though these sometimes appear in small capitals (with or without periods), Chicago prefers the lowercase form, with periods, as being the most immediately intelligible. For further explanation and examples, see 9.38, 9.40. See also 10.4.

a.m.	*ante meridiem* (before noon)
m.	*meridies* (noon [rarely used])
p.m.	*post meridiem* (after noon)

The abbreviations *a.m.* and *p.m.* should not be used with *morning*, *afternoon*, *evening*, *night*, or *o'clock*. (See also 7.85, section 1, under *time*.)

10:30 a.m. *or* ten thirty in the morning
11:00 p.m. *or* eleven o'clock at night

Time zones, where needed, are usually given in parentheses—for example, 4:45 p.m. (CST).

GMT	Greenwich mean time	MST	mountain standard time
EST	eastern standard time	MDT	mountain daylight time
EDT	eastern daylight time	PST	Pacific standard time
CST	central standard time	PDT	Pacific daylight time
CDT	central daylight time		

Scholarly Abbreviations

10.43 ***Scholarly abbreviations.*** Scholarly abbreviations and symbols such as those listed in this section are normally confined to bibliographic references, glossaries, and other scholarly apparatus. If used in running text, they should be confined to parentheses or notes. Some can stand for several terms; only the terms likely to be encountered in scholarly works (mainly in the humanities) and serious nonfiction are included here. The choice between different abbreviations for one term (e.g., *L.* and *Lat.* for *Latin*) depends on the writer's preference, context, readership, and other factors; if in doubt, choose the longer form. Note that Latin abbreviations are normally set in roman. Note also that *ab*, *ad*, *et*, and other Latin terms that are complete words take no periods. See also 10.4, 7.53. For terms used more commonly in science and technology, see 10.52.

abbr.	abbreviated, -ion
ab init.	*ab initio*, from the beginning
abl.	ablative
abr.	abridged, abridgment
acc.	accusative
act.	active
add.	addendum
ad inf.	*ad infinitum*
ad init.	*ad initium*, at the beginning
ad int.	*ad interim*, in the intervening time
adj.	adjective
ad lib.	*ad libitum*, at will (often used without a period)
ad loc.	*ad locum*, at the place
adv.	adverb

aet. *or* aetat.	*aetatis*, aged
AFr.	Anglo-French
AN	Anglo-Norman
anon.	anonymous (see 14.79, 14.80)
app.	appendix
arch.	archaic
art.	article
AS	Anglo-Saxon
b.	born; brother
Bd.	*Band* (Ger.), volume
bib.	Bible, biblical
bibl.	*bibliotheca*, library
bibliog.	bibliography, -er, -ical
biog.	biography, -er, -ical
biol.	biology, -ist, -ical
bk.	book
c.	century; chapter (in law citations)
c. *or* cop.	copyright (see 10.44)
ca. *or* c.	*circa*, about, approximately (*ca.* preferred for greater clarity)
Cantab.	*Cantabrigiensis*, of Cambridge
cet. par.	*ceteris paribus*, other things being equal
cf.	*confer*, compare ("see, by way of comparison"; should not be used when *see* alone is meant)
chap. *or* ch.	chapter
col.	color (best spelled out); column
colloq.	colloquial, -ly, -ism
comp.	compiler (*pl.* comps.), compiled by
compar.	comparative
con.	*contra*, against
conj.	conjunction; conjugation
cons.	consonant
constr.	construction
cont.	continued
contr.	contraction
corr.	corrected
cp.	compare (rarely used; *cf.* is far more common)
d.	died; daughter
Dan.	Danish
dat.	dative
def.	definite; definition
dept.	department
deriv.	derivative
d.h.	*das heisst*, namely (used only in German text)

d.i.	*das ist*, that is (used only in German text)
dial.	dialect
dict.	dictionary
dim.	diminutive
dist.	district
div.	division; divorced
do.	ditto
dram. pers.	*dramatis personae*
Dr. u. Vrl.	*Druck und Verlag*, printer and publisher
DV	*Deo volente*, God willing; Douay Version (see 10.51)
ea.	each
ed.	editor (*pl.* eds.), edition, edited by (never add *by* after *ed.*: either "ed. Jane Doe" or "edited by Jane Doe"; use *eds.* only after, never before, the names of two or more editors; see examples throughout chapter 14)
EE	Early English
e.g.	*exempli gratia*, for example (not to be confused with *i.e.*)
ellipt.	elliptical, -ly
ency. *or* encyc.	encyclopedia
eng.	engineer, -ing
Eng.	English
engr.	engraved, -ing
enl.	enlarged
eq.	equation (*pl.* eqq. *or* eqs.; see also 10.44)
esp.	especially
et al.	*et alii* (or *et alia*), and others (normally used of persons; no period after *et*)
etc.	*et cetera*, and so forth (normally used of things)
et seq.	*et sequentes*, and the following
ex.	example (*pl.* exx. *or* exs.)
f. *or* fem.	feminine; female
f.	*für* (Ger.), for
fasc.	fascicle
ff.	and following (see 14.156)
fig.	figure
fl.	*floruit*, flourished (used with a date to indicate the productive years of a historical figure whose birth and death dates are unknown)
fol.	folio
Fr.	French
fr.	from
fut.	future
f.v.	*folio verso*, on the back of the page

Gael.	Gaelic
gen.	genitive; genus
geog.	geography, -er, -ical
geol.	geology, -er, -ical
geom.	geometry, -ical
ger.	gerund
Ger. *or* G.	German
Gk.	Greek
hist.	history, -ian, -ical
HQ	headquarters
ibid.	*ibidem*, in the same place (see 14.29)
id.	*idem*, the same (see 14.30)
i.e.	*id est*, that is (not to be confused with *e.g.*)
IE	Indo-European
ill.	illustrated, -ion, -or
imp. *or* imper.	imperative
incl.	including
indef.	indefinite
indic.	indicative
inf.	*infra*, below (best spelled out)
infin.	infinitive
in pr.	*in principio*, in the beginning
inst.	instant (this month); institute, -ion
instr.	instrumental
interj.	interjection
intrans.	intransitive
introd. *or* intro.	introduction
irreg.	irregular
It.	Italian
L.	Latin; left (in stage directions)
l.	left; line (*pl.* ll., but best spelled out to avoid confusion with numerals 1 and 11)
lang.	language
Lat. *or* L.	Latin
lit.	literally
loc.	locative
loc. cit.	*loco citato*, in the place cited (best avoided; see 14.31)
loq.	*loquitur*, he or she speaks
m.	male; married; measure (*pl.* mm.)
m. *or* masc.	masculine
marg.	margin, -al
math.	mathematics, -ical
MHG	Middle High German

mimeo.	mimeograph, -ed
misc.	miscellaneous
MM	Maelzel's metronome
m.m.	*mutatis mutandis*, necessary changes being made
Mod.E.	Modern English
MS (*pl.* MSS)	*manuscriptum* (pl. *manuscripta*), manuscript
mus.	museum; music, -al
n.	*natus*, born; note, footnote (*pl.* nn.); noun
nat.	national; natural
NB, n.b.	*nota bene*, take careful note (capitals are illogical but often used for emphasis)
n.d.	no date; not determined
neg.	negative
neut.	neuter
no. (*pl.* nos.)	number
nom.	nominative
non obs.	*non obstante*, notwithstanding
non seq.	*non sequitur*, it does not follow
n.p.	no place; no publisher; no page
n.s.	new series
NS	New Style (dates)
ob.	*obiit*, died
obs.	obsolete
occas.	occasional, -ly
OE	Old English
OFr.	Old French
OHG	Old High German
ON	Old Norse
op. cit.	*opere citato*, in the work cited (best avoided; see 14.31)
o.s.	old series
OS	Old Style (dates)
Oxon.	*Oxoniensis*, of Oxford
p.	page (*pl.* pp.); past (*also* pa.)
para. *or* par.	paragraph (see 10.44)
pass.	passive
pa. t.	past tense
path.	pathology, -ist, -ical
perf.	perfect
perh.	perhaps
pers.	person, -al
pers. comm.	personal communication
pl.	plate (best avoided; see 3.9); plural

p.p.	past participle
ppl.	participle
PPS	*post postscriptum*, a later postscript
prep.	preposition
pres.	present
pron.	pronoun
pro tem.	*pro tempore*, for the time being (often used without a period)
prox.	*proximo*, next month
PS	*postscriptum*, postscript
pt.	part
pub.	publication, publisher, published by
QED	*quod erat demonstrandum*, which was to be demonstrated
quar. *or* quart.	quarter, -ly
q.v.	*quod vide*, which see (used only in a cross-reference *after* the term referred to; cf. *s.v.*)
R.	*rex*, king; *regina*, queen; right (in stage directions)
r.	right; recto; reigned
refl.	reflexive
repr.	reprint, -ed
rev.	review; revised, revised by, revision (never add *by* after *rev.*: either "rev. Jane Doe" or "revised by Jane Doe")
RIP	*requiescat in pace*, may he or she rest in peace
s.	son; substantive, -ival
s.a.	*sine anno*, without year; *sub anno*, under the year
sc.	scene; *scilicet*, namely; *sculpsit*, carved by
Sc. *or* Scot.	Scottish
s.d.	*sine die*, without setting a day for reconvening; stage direction
sd.	sound
sec.	section (see 10.44); *secundum*, according to
ser.	series
s.h.	speech heading
sing. *or* sg.	singular
s.l.	*sine loco*, without place (of publication)
s.n.	*sine nomine*, without name (of publisher)
sociol.	sociology, -ist, -ical
Sp.	Spanish
s.p.	speech prefix
st.	stanza
subj.	subject, -ive; subjunctive
subst. *or* s.	substantive, -al
sup.	*supra*, above
superl.	superlative

supp. *or* suppl.	supplement
s.v. (*pl.* s.vv.)	*sub verbo*, *sub voce*, under the word (used in a cross-reference *before* the term referred to; cf. *q.v.*)
syn.	synonym, -ous
t.	*tome* (Fr.), *tomo* (Sp.), volume
techn.	technical, -ly
theol.	theology, -ian, -ical
t.p.	title page
trans.	translated by, translator(s) (never add *by* after *trans.*: either "trans. Jane Doe" or "translated by Jane Doe"); transitive
treas.	treasurer
TS	typescript
ult.	*ultimatus*, ultimate, last; *ultimo*, last month
univ.	university
usw.	*und so weiter*, and so forth (equivalent to *etc.*; used only in German text)
ut sup.	*ut supra*, as above
v.	verse (*pl.* vv.); verso; versus; *vide*, see
v. *or* vb.	verb
v.i.	*verbum intransitivum*, intransitive verb; *vide infra*, see below
viz.	*videlicet*, namely
voc.	vocative
vol.	volume
vs. *or* v.	versus (in legal contexts use *v.*)
v.t.	*verbum transitivum*, transitive verb
yr.	year; your

10.44 ***A few scholarly symbols.*** The symbols below often appear in bibliographies and other scholarly apparatus rather than their equivalent abbreviations (see 10.43).

©	copyright
=	equals, the same as (for examples, see 10.49)
¶ (*pl.* ¶¶)	paragraph
§ (*pl.* §§)	section

Biblical Abbreviations

10.45 ***Biblical abbreviations—additional resources.*** For authoritative guidance in many biblical areas not covered here, consult *The SBL Handbook of Style* (bibliog. 1.1). For citing scriptural references in notes and bibliographies, see 14.252–55.

10.46 ***Books of the Bible in text and notes.*** In running text, books of the Bible are generally spelled out. See also 9.27.

The opening chapters of Ephesians constitute a sermon on love.
Jeremiah, chapters 42–44, records the flight of the Jews to Egypt.
According to Genesis 1:27, God created man in his own image.

In parenthetical citations or in notes, or where many such references appear in the text, abbreviations are appropriate.

My concordance lists five instances of the word *nourish*: Gen. 47:12, Ruth 4:15, Isa. 44:14, Acts 7:21, and 1 Tim. 4:6.

10.47 ***Biblical abbreviations and short forms—an overview.*** For traditional abbreviations and commonly used shorter forms for books of the Bible, see 10.48, 10.49, 10.50. (Note that the shorter forms have no periods.) The listing is alphabetical, both for easier reference and because the order varies slightly in the Jewish, Protestant, and Roman Catholic versions of the Bible. Alternative names for the same books are indicated by an equals sign (see 10.44).

10.48 ***The Old Testament.*** See also 10.47.

Amos *or* Am	Amos
1 Chron. *or* 1 Chr	1 Chronicles
2 Chron. *or* 2 Chr	2 Chronicles
Dan. *or* Dn	Daniel
Deut. *or* Dt	Deuteronomy
Eccles. *or* Eccl	Ecclesiastes
Esther *or* Est	Esther
Exod. *or* Ex	Exodus
Ezek. *or* Ez	Ezekiel
Ezra *or* Ezr	Ezra
Gen. *or* Gn	Genesis
Hab. *or* Hb	Habakkuk
Hag. *or* Hg	Haggai
Hosea *or* Hos	Hosea
Isa. *or* Is	Isaiah
Jer. *or* Jer	Jeremiah
Job *or* Jb	Job

Joel *or* Jl	Joel
Jon. *or* Jon	Jonah
Josh. *or* Jo	Joshua
Judg. *or* Jgs	Judges
1 Kings *or* 1 Kgs	1 Kings
2 Kings *or* 2 Kgs	2 Kings
Lam. *or* Lam	Lamentations
Lev. *or* Lv	Leviticus
Mal. *or* Mal	Malachi
Mic. *or* Mi	Micah
Nah. *or* Na	Nahum
Neh. *or* Neh	Nehemiah
Num. *or* Nm	Numbers
Obad. *or* Ob	Obadiah
Prov. *or* Prv	Proverbs
Ps. (*pl.* Pss.) *or* Ps (*pl.* Pss)	Psalms
Ruth *or* Ru	Ruth
1 Sam. *or* 1 Sm	1 Samuel
2 Sam. *or* 2 Sm	2 Samuel
Song of Sol. *or* Sg	Song of Solomon (= Song of Songs)
Zech. *or* Zec	Zechariah
Zeph. *or* Zep	Zephaniah

10.49 ***The Apocrypha.*** The books of the Apocrypha are accepted in Roman Catholic versions of the Bible, though not in Jewish and Protestant versions. Some are not complete in themselves but are continuations of books listed in 10.48. Where no abbreviation is given, the full form should be used. See also 10.47.

Bar. *or* Bar	Baruch
Ecclus.	Ecclesiasticus (= Sirach)
1 Esd.	1 Esdras
2 Esd.	2 Esdras
Jth. *or* Jdt	Judith
1 Macc. *or* 1 Mc	1 Maccabees
2 Macc. *or* 2 Mc	2 Maccabees
Pr. of Man.	Prayer of Manasses (= Manasseh)
Sir. *or* Sir	Sirach (= Ecclesiasticus)
Sus.	Susanna
Tob. *or* Tb	Tobit
Ws	Wisdom (= Wisdom of Solomon)
Wisd. of Sol.	Wisdom of Solomon (= Wisdom)

10.50 ***The New Testament.*** See also 10.47.

Acts	Acts of the Apostles
Apoc.	Apocalypse (= Revelation)
Col. *or* Col	Colossians
1 Cor. *or* 1 Cor	1 Corinthians
2 Cor. *or* 2 Cor	2 Corinthians
Eph. *or* Eph	Ephesians
Gal. *or* Gal	Galatians
Heb. *or* Heb	Hebrews
James *or* Jas	James
John *or* Jn	John (Gospel)
1 John *or* 1 Jn	1 John (Epistle)
2 John *or* 2 Jn	2 John (Epistle)
3 John *or* 3 Jn	3 John (Epistle)
Jude	Jude
Luke *or* Lk	Luke
Mark *or* Mk	Mark
Matt. *or* Mt	Matthew
1 Pet. *or* 1 Pt	1 Peter
2 Pet. *or* 2 Pt	2 Peter
Phil. *or* Phil	Philippians
Philem. *or* Phlm	Philemon
Rev. *or* Rv	Revelation (= Apocalypse)
Rom. *or* Rom	Romans
1 Thess. *or* 1 Thes	1 Thessalonians
2 Thess. *or* 2 Thes	2 Thessalonians
1 Tim. *or* 1 Tm	1 Timothy
2 Tim. *or* 2 Tm	2 Timothy
Titus *or* Ti	Titus

10.51 ***Versions and sections of the Bible.*** Versions and sections of the Bible are usually abbreviated in the form of initialisms, especially when they consist of more than one word.

Apoc.	Apocrypha
ARV	American Revised Version
ASV	American Standard Version
AT	American Translation
AV	Authorized (King James) Version
CEV	Contemporary English Version
DV	Douay Version

ERV	English Revised Version
EV	English version(s)
HB	Hebrew Bible
JB	Jerusalem Bible
LXX	Septuagint
MT	Masoretic Text
NAB	New American Bible
NEB	New English Bible
NJB	New Jerusalem Bible
NRSV	New Revised Standard Version
NT	New Testament
OT	Old Testament
RSV	Revised Standard Version
RV	Revised Version
Syr.	Syriac
Vulg.	Vulgate
WEB	World English Bible

Technology and Science

10.52 ***Miscellaneous technical abbreviations.*** The following list, which cannot aim to be comprehensive, includes some abbreviations used in various branches of the physical and biological sciences and in technical writing. Some, such as *PC* and *DVD*, are also in wide general use. Abbreviations used in highly specialized areas have generally been omitted, as have most adjectival forms. Many of the abbreviations for units are identical to or compatible with those used in the International System of Units, or SI (see 10.54–62). Periods are omitted in any context (compare 10.4). The capitalization given below, based largely on current usage, sometimes departs from that used in *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary* (see bibliog. 3.1). The first letter of abbreviations derived from proper names (e.g., A [ampere], V, Wb, and the *C* in °C) are usually capitalized (though the spelled-out term is lowercased—unless it follows the word "degree," as in "degree[s] Celsius"), as are the prefix letters for *mega-* (M), *giga-* (G), *tera-* (T), and so on (see 10.57). Plurals do not add an *s* (10 A, 5 ha). With few exceptions (mainly abbreviations with degree symbols), a space usually appears between a numeral and an abbreviation (22 m *but* 36°C); see also 10.61. For units with repeated quantities, see 9.17. For statistical abbreviations, see 10.53. For traditional US units of measure, see 10.67–71. See also 9.16.

A	ampere; adenine (in genetic code)
Å	angstrom
ac	alternating current
AF	audio frequency
Ah	ampere-hour
AM	amplitude modulation
ASCII	American Standard Code for Information Interchange
atm	atmosphere, -ic
av *or* avdp	avoirdupois
bar	bar (no abbreviation)
Bé *or* °Bé	degree Baumé
bhp	brake horsepower
BMI	body mass index
bp	boiling point; base pair
bps	bits per second
Bps	bytes per second
Bq	becquerel
Btu	British thermal unit
C	coulomb; cytosine (in genetic code)
°C	degree Celsius
cal	calorie
Cal	kilocalorie (in nonscientific contexts; *see also* kcal)
cc	cubic centimeter (in clinical contexts; *see also* cm^3)
cd	candela
CD	compact disc
cgs	centimeter-gram-second system (SI)
Ci	curie
cm	centimeter
cM	centimorgan
cm^3	cubic centimeter (in scientific contexts; *see also* cc)
cp	candlepower
CP	chemically pure
cps *or* c/s	cycles per second
CPU	central processing unit
cu	cubic
d	day; deuteron
Da	dalton
dB	decibel
dc	direct current
DNS	domain name system
DOI	Digital Object Identifier (a registered trademark)
DOS	disk operating system
dpi	dots per inch

DVD	digital versatile (*or* video) disc
dyn	dyne
emf	electromotive force
erg	erg (no abbreviation)
eV	electron volt
F	farad
°F	degree Fahrenheit
FM	frequency modulation
fp	freezing point
FTP	file transfer protocol
g	gram; gas
G	guanine (in genetic code)
Gb	gigabit
GB	gigabyte
Gbps	gigabits per second
GeV	10^9 electron volts
GIF	graphic interchange format
GIS	geographic information system
GPS	global positioning system
Gy	gigayear; gray (joule per kilogram)
H	henry (*pl.* henries)
h	hour; helion
ha	hectare
hp	horsepower
HTML	hypertext markup language
HTTP	hypertext transfer protocol
Hz	hertz
IP	Internet protocol
IR	infrared
IU	international unit
J	joule
JPEG	*from* Joint Photographic Experts Group (file format)
K	kelvin (no degree symbol used); kilobyte (in commercial contexts)
kat	katal
kb	kilobar (DNA); kilobase (RNA)
kb *or* kbit	kilobit
KB *or* K	kilobyte
Kbps	kilobits per second
kc	kilocycle
kcal	kilocalorie (in scientific contexts; *see also* Cal)
KE	kinetic energy
kg	kilogram

kHz	kilohertz
kJ	kilojoule
km	kilometer
kmh *or* kmph	kilometers per hour
kn	knot (nautical mph)
kW	kilowatt
kWh	kilowatt-hour
L	liter (capitalized to avoid confusion with numeral 1)
lm	lumen
lx	lux
m	meter
M	molar; metal
Mb	megabase; megabit
MB	megabyte
Mbps	megabits per second
Mc	megacycle
mCi	millicurie
MeV	million electron volts
mg	milligram
MIDI	musical instrument digital interface
mks	meter-kilogram-second system (SI)
mL	milliliter
mol	mole
mp	melting point
MPEG	*from* Moving Pictures Experts Group (file format)
mpg	miles per gallon
mph	miles per hour
MP3	*from* MPEG-1 Audio Layer 3 (file format)
MP4	*from* MPEG-4 Part 14 (file format)
N	newton; number (often italic; see also 10.53)
neg	negative
nm	nanometer; nautical mile
Ω	ohm
OCR	optical character recognition
OS	operating system
Pa	pascal
pc	parsec
PC	personal computer
PDF	portable document format
PE	potential energy
pF	picofarad
pH	negative log of hydrogen ion concentration (measure of acidity)
PNG	*from* portable network graphics (file format)

pos	positive
ppb	parts per billion
ppm	parts per million
ppt	parts per trillion; precipitate
R	electrical resistance
°R	degree Réaumur
rad	radian
RAM	random-access memory
RF	radio frequency
ROM	read-only memory
rpm *or* r/min	revolutions per minute
s	second
S	siemens
SGML	standard generalized markup language
soln	solution
sp gr	specific gravity
sq	square
sr	steradian
std	standard
STP	standard temperature and pressure
Sv	sievert
t	metric ton (10^3 kg); triton (nucleus of tritium)
T	tesla; thymine (in genetic code)
Tb	terabit
TB	terabyte
Tbps	terabits per second
TCP/IP	transmission-control protocol/Internet protocol
temp	temperature
U	uracil (in genetic code)
UCS	universal character set
URI	uniform resource identifier
URL	uniform resource locator
USB	universal serial bus
UV	ultraviolet
V	volt
W	watt
Wb	weber
wt	weight
w/v	weight per volume
w/w	weight per weight
XML	extensible markup language
y	year
Z	atomic number (often italic)

10.53 ***Statistics.*** The following abbreviations are used in statistical material, especially in tables. They are often italicized. See also 12.57, 12.58, and table 12.3.

ANCOVA	analysis of covariance
ANOVA	analysis of variance
CI	confidence interval
CL	confidence limit
CLT	central limit theorem
df, DF, *or* dof	degrees of freedom
GLIM	generalized linear model
IQR	interquartile range
LS	least squares
MLE	maximum likelihood estimate
MS	mean square
N	number (of population)
n	number (of sample)
ns	not (statistically) significant
OLS	ordinary least squares
OR	odds ratio
p	probability
r	bivariate correlation coefficient
R	multivariate correlation coefficient
R^2	coefficient of determination
RMS	root mean square
sd *or* SD	standard deviation
se *or* SE	standard error
sem *or* SEM	standard error of the mean
SS	sum of squares
SSE	error sum of squares
SST	total sum of squares
WLLN	weak law of large numbers
$\bar{x}$ or $\bar{X}$	mean value
χ^2	chi-square distribution

The International System of Units

10.54 ***SI units.*** The International System of Units (*Système international d'unités*, abbreviated internationally as SI) is an expanded version of the metric system. It is in general use among the world's scientists and in many other areas. The following paragraphs discuss only the basics. For the latest official guidelines, consult *The International System of Units*, a brochure published in English and French by the Bureau International des Poids et Mesures and available online. For further guidance, see Ambler Thompson and Barry N. Taylor, *Guide for the Use of the International System of Units* (bibliog. 2.4); and *Scientific Style and Format* (bibliog. 1.1).

10.55 ***SI units—form.*** No periods are used after any of the SI symbols for units, and the same symbols are used for both the singular and the plural. Most symbols are lowercased; exceptions are those that stand for units derived from proper names (e.g., A, for *ampere*) and those that must be distinguished from similar lowercased forms. All units are lowercased in their spelled-out form except for degree Celsius (°C).

10.56 ***Base SI units.*** There are seven fundamental, or base, SI units. Note that although *weight* and *mass* are usually measured in the same units, they are not interchangeable. Weight is a force due to gravity that depends on an object's mass. Note also that no degree sign is used with the symbol K.

QUANTITY	*UNIT*	*SYMBOL*
length	meter	m
mass	kilogram	kg
time	second	s
electric current	ampere	A
thermodynamic temperature	kelvin	K
amount of substance	mole	mol
luminous intensity	candela	cd

Not to be confused with the symbols for base *units* are the corresponding symbols for base *quantities*. These symbols, which represent variable quantities, appear in italic type (e.g., l, length; m, mass; t, time).

10.57 ***SI prefixes.*** Prefixes, representing a power of ten, are added to the name of a base unit to allow notation of very large or very small numerical values. The units so formed are called multiples and submultiples of SI units. For example, a kilometer, or km, is equal to a thousand meters (or 10^3 m), and a millisecond, or ms, is equal to one-thousandth of a second (or 10^{-3} s). The following prefixes, with their symbols, are used in the international system. Note that in three cases the final vowel of an SI prefix is omitted: kΩ, kilohm (*not* kiloohm); MΩ, megohm (*not* megaohm); ha, hectare (*not* hectoare).

FACTOR	PREFIX	SYMBOL	FACTOR	PREFIX	SYMBOL
10^{24}	yotta	Y	10^{-1}	deci	d
10^{21}	zetta	Z	10^{-2}	centi	c
10^{18}	exa	E	10^{-3}	milli	m
10^{15}	peta	P	10^{-6}	micro	μ
10^{12}	tera	T	10^{-9}	nano	n
10^{9}	giga	G	10^{-12}	pico	p
10^{6}	mega	M	10^{-15}	femto	f
10^{3}	kilo	k	10^{-18}	atto	a
10^{2}	hecto	h	10^{-21}	zepto	z
10^{1}	deka	da	10^{-24}	yocto	y

These prefixes should not be used to indicate powers of two (as in the field of electrical technology, or computing). If binary multiples must be used, the first two letters of the SI prefixes must be followed by *bi*, to form *kibi-* (Ki), *mebi-* (Mi), *gibi-* (Gi), *tebi-* (Ti), *pebi-* (Pi), and *exbi-* (Ei). See also 9.11.

10.58 *Grams.* Although for historical reasons the kilogram rather than the gram was chosen as the base unit, prefixes are applied to the term *gram*—megagram (Mg), milligram (mg), nanogram (ng), and so forth.

10.59 ***Derived units expressed algebraically.*** Derived units are expressed algebraically in terms of base units or other derived units (see also 10.60).

DERIVED UNIT	IN TERMS OF SI BASE UNITS
square meter	m^2
cubic meter	m^3
meter per second	m/s
meter per second squared	m/s^2
kilogram per cubic meter	kg/m^3

10.60 ***Derived units with special names.*** Certain derived units have special names and symbols. Several of the most common—hertz (Hz), volt (V), watt (W), and so forth—are listed in 10.52. These are used in algebraic expressions to denote further derived units. A few are listed below. Note the raised dot in the second expression.

DERIVED UNIT	SYMBOL	IN TERMS OF SI BASE UNITS
joule per kelvin	J/K	$m^2\ kg\ s^{-2}\ K^{-1}$
newton meter	$N \cdot m$	$m^2\ kg\ s^{-2}$
newton per meter	N/m	$kg\ s^{-2}$

A derived unit can often be expressed in different ways. For example, the weber may be expressed either as Wb or, in another context, in terms of the volt second (V · s).

10.61 ***SI units and abbreviations—spacing.*** Only numbers between 0.1 and 1,000 should be used to express the quantity of any SI unit. Thus 12,000 meters is expressed as 12 km (not 12 000 m), and 0.003 cubic centimeters as 3 mm^3 (not 0.003 cm^3). (For the use of spaces rather than commas between groups of digits in SI units, see 9.56.) In SI usage as in general usage, a space usually appears between the numeral and any abbreviation or symbol; however, contrary to general usage, SI usage stipulates a space before a percentage sign (%) or before a degree symbol used with a C (compare the advice toward the end of 10.52). SI usage also stipulates a space between expressions of degrees, minutes, and seconds (compare 10.37). Many publications do not observe these exceptions, and Chicago does not require them in its publications.

22° 14′ 33″ *but* 22 °C 0.5 % (*not* 0.5%)

10.62 ***Non-SI units accepted for use.*** Certain widely used units such as liter (L, capitalized to avoid confusion with the numeral 1), metric ton (t), and hour (h) are not officially part of the international system but are accepted for use within the system.

Astronomy

10.63 ***Astronomy—additional resources.*** Astronomers and astrophysicists employ the international system of measure supplemented with special terminology and abbreviations. The paragraphs in this section offer a minimum of examples for the generalist. Additional guidelines may be found at the website of the International Astronomical Union.

10.64 ***Celestial coordinates.*** Right ascension, abbreviated RA or α, is given in hours, minutes, and seconds (abbreviations set as superscripts) of sidereal time. Declination, abbreviated δ, is given in degrees, minutes, and seconds (using the degree symbol, prime, and double prime) of arc north (marked + or left unmarked) or south (marked −) of the celestial equator. Note the abbreviations (set as superscripts) and symbols used.

$14^{h}6^{m}7^{s}$ −49°8′22″

Decimal fractions of the basic units are indicated as shown.

$14^{h}6^{m}7^{s}.2$ $+34^{\circ}.26$

10.65 ***Some other astronomical abbreviations.***

AU *or* ua	astronomical unit (mean earth–sun distance)
lt-yr	light-year (9.46×10^{12} km)
pc	parsec (parallax second: 3.084×10^{13} km)
kpc	10^{3} pc
Mpc	10^{6} pc
UT *or* UTC	universal time

Chemical Elements

10.66 ***Naming conventions for chemical elements.*** The International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) is the recognized body that formally approves element names. Each element bears a number (reflecting the number of protons in its nucleus) as well as a name—as in "element 106," also known as seaborgium. This number is an important identifier in cases where formal names are in dispute; between 1995 and 1997, for example, the American Chemical Society and IUPAC adopted different names for some of the same elements. The differences were reconciled, and the list that follows reflects names and symbols approved by IUPAC. Names for undiscovered or unconfirmed elements (as of publication, 111, roentgenium, was the last confirmed element) are provisionally assigned using Latin for the digits of their atomic number (e.g., *ununbium*, one-one-two, for element 112). The elements in the following list are arranged in alphabetical order by common name. If the symbol is based on a term other than the common name—for example, Sb (*stibium*) for antimony—the term is added in parentheses. Although the names of elements are always lowercased, the symbols all have an initial capital. No periods are used. In specialized works, the abbreviations commonly appear in text as well as in tables, notes, and so forth. See also 8.148, 8.149.

89	Ac	actinium
13	Al	aluminum (US), aluminium (IUPAC)
95	Am	americium
51	Sb	antimony (*stibium*)
18	Ar	argon
33	As	arsenic
85	At	astatine
56	Ba	barium
97	Bk	berkelium
4	Be	beryllium
83	Bi	bismuth

107	Bh	bohrium
5	B	boron
35	Br	bromine
48	Cd	cadmium
20	Ca	calcium
98	Cf	californium
6	C	carbon
58	Ce	cerium
55	Cs	cesium
17	Cl	chlorine
24	Cr	chromium
27	Co	cobalt
29	Cu	copper
96	Cm	curium
110	Ds	darmstadtium
105	Db	dubnium
66	Dy	dysprosium
99	Es	einsteinium
68	Er	erbium
63	Eu	europium
100	Fm	fermium
9	F	fluorine
87	Fr	francium
64	Gd	gadolinium
31	Ga	gallium
32	Ge	germanium
79	Au	gold (*aurum*)
72	Hf	hafnium
108	Hs	hassium
2	He	helium
67	Ho	holmium
1	H	hydrogen
49	In	indium
53	I	iodine
77	Ir	iridium
26	Fe	iron (*ferrum*)
36	Kr	krypton
57	La	lanthanum
103	Lr	lawrencium
82	Pb	lead (*plumbum*)
3	Li	lithium
71	Lu	lutetium
12	Mg	magnesium
25	Mn	manganese
109	Mt	meitnerium
101	Md	mendelevium
80	Hg	mercury (*hydrargyrum*)
42	Mo	molybdenum
60	Nd	neodymium
10	Ne	neon
93	Np	neptunium
28	Ni	nickel
41	Nb	niobium
7	N	nitrogen
102	No	nobelium
76	Os	osmium
8	O	oxygen
46	Pd	palladium
15	P	phosphorus
78	Pt	platinum
94	Pu	plutonium
84	Po	polonium
19	K	potassium (*kalium*)
59	Pr	praseodymium
61	Pm	promethium
91	Pa	protactinium
88	Ra	radium
86	Rn	radon
75	Re	rhenium
45	Rh	rhodium
111	Rg	roentgenium
37	Rb	rubidium
44	Ru	ruthenium
104	Rf	rutherfordium
62	Sm	samarium
21	Sc	scandium
106	Sg	seaborgium
34	Se	selenium
14	Si	silicon
47	Ag	silver (*argentum*)
11	Na	sodium (*natrium*)
38	Sr	strontium
16	S	sulfur

73	Ta	tantalum
43	Tc	technetium
52	Te	tellurium
65	Tb	terbium
81	Tl	thallium
90	Th	thorium
69	Tm	thulium
50	Sn	tin (*stannum*)
22	Ti	titanium
74	W	tungsten (*wolfram*)
112	Uub	ununbium
116	Uuh	ununhexium
118	Uuo	ununoctium
115	Uup	ununpentium
114	Uuq	ununquadium
117	Uus	ununseptium
113	Uut	ununtrium
92	U	uranium
23	V	vanadium
54	Xe	xenon
70	Yb	ytterbium
39	Y	yttrium
30	Zn	zinc
40	Zr	zirconium

US Measure

10.67 ***Periods with abbreviations of US measure.*** In the rare instances in which abbreviations for US units of measure are used in scientific copy, they are usually set without periods; in nonscientific contexts, periods are customary. See also 10.4.

10.68 ***Plural forms for abbreviations of US measure.*** Abbreviations of US units of measure, like their scientific counterparts, are identical in the singular and the plural. See also 10.71.

10 yd.   5 lb.   8 sq. mi.

Note that the unit of measure in such expressions as 0.5 yd. and 1.5 yd. is generally pronounced as if it were plural (i.e., point five yards; one point five yards).

10.69 ***Length, area, and volume.*** In the following examples, note that the proper symbols for foot and inch are prime (′) and double prime (″), *not* the single (') and double (") quotation mark:

LENGTH		*AREA*		*VOLUME*	
in. *or* ″	inch	sq. in.	square inch	cu. in.	cubic inch
ft. *or* ′	foot	sq. ft.	square foot	cu. ft.	cubic foot
yd.	yard	sq. yd.	square yard	cu. yd.	cubic yard
rd.	rod	sq. rd.	square rod		
mi.	mile	sq. mi.	square mile		

There is no space in such expressions as the following (for 6 *ft.* 1 *in.*):

6′1″

Exponents are sometimes used with abbreviations to designate area or volume, but only when no ambiguity can occur.

425 ft.^{2} (= 425 sq. ft. *not* 425 ft. by 425 ft.)   638 ft.^{3} (= 638 cu. ft.)

10.70 ***Weight and capacity.*** The US system comprises three systems of weight and mass: avoirdupois (the common system), troy (used mainly by jewelers), and apothecaries' measure. Although confusion is unlikely, an abbreviation can, if necessary, be referred to the appropriate system thus: lb. av., lb. t., lb. ap. Also, the systems of capacity measure used in the United States and the British Commonwealth differ (an American pint being more than three ounces smaller than a British pint, for example), but the same abbreviations are used.

WEIGHT OR MASS	
gr.	grain
s.	scruple
dr.	dram
dwt.	pennyweight
oz.	ounce
lb. *or* #	pound
cwt.	hundredweight
tn.	ton

LIQUID MEASURE	
min. *or* ♍	minim
fl. Dr. *or* f. ʒ	fluid dram
fl. oz. *or* f. ℥	fluid ounce
gi.	gill
pt.	pint
qt.	quart
gal.	gallon
bbl.	barrel

DRY MEASURE	
pt.	pint
qt.	quart
pk.	peck
bu.	bushel

As with length and so forth, abbreviations do not change in the plural.

12 gal.   3 pt.

10.71 ***Time.*** The following abbreviations, though not limited to the US system of measure, are used mainly in nontechnical contexts:

sec.	second	h. *or* hr.	hour	mo.	month
min.	minute	d. *or* day	day	yr.	year

In nontechnical writing, the plurals of these abbreviations, unlike those of length, area, weight, and the like, are often formed by adding an *s*.

5 secs.   12 hrs. *or* 12 h.   15 yrs.

Business and Commerce

10.72 ***Commercial terms—some examples.*** Like many other abbreviations in nonscientific contexts, periods for abbreviations of commercial terms are normally used in lowercased forms (see 10.4). See also 10.43–44, 10.67–71. For company names, see 10.22.

acct.	account, -ant
agt.	agent
a.k.a.	also known as
amt.	amount
AP	amounts payable
APR	annual percentage rate
AR	amounts receivable
ASAP	as soon as possible
att.	attached, -ment
attn.	attention
a.v. *or* AV	ad valorem
bal.	balance
bbl.	barrel(s)
bcc	blind carbon copy *or* blind copy, -ies
bdl. *or* bdle.	bundle
bl.	bale(s)
BS	bill of sale
bu.	bushel(s)
c. *or* ct.	cent
cc	carbon copy *or* copy, -ies
c.l. *or* CL	carload
c/o	in care of
COD	cash on delivery
COLA	cost-of-living adjustment
CPI	consumer price index
CPM	cost per thousand (*mille*)
cr.	credit, -or
ctn.	carton
cttee. *or* comm.	committee

d/b/a	doing business as
dis.	discount
dist.	district
distr.	distributor, -ion
DJIA	Dow Jones Industrial Average
doz.	dozen
dr.	debtor
dstn.	destination
ea.	each
EEO	equal employment opportunity
EOE	equal opportunity employer
EOM	end of month
exec.	executive
f.a.s. *or* FAS	free alongside ship
f.o.b. *or* FOB	free on board
FY	fiscal year
GAAP	generally accepted accounting principles
GL	general ledger
GM	general manager; genetically modified
gro.	gross
inst.	instant (this month)
inv.	invoice
IPO	initial public offering
JIT	just in time
LBO	leveraged buyout
LCL	less-than-carload lot
LIFO	last in, first out
M and A *or* M&A	mergers and acquisitions
mdse.	merchandise
mfg.	manufacturing
mfr.	manufacturer
mgmt.	management
mgr.	manager
MO	mail order; money order
msg.	message
mtg.	meeting
mtge.	mortgage
NA *or* n/a	not applicable; not available
NGO	nongovernmental organization
nt. wt.	net weight
OJT	on-the-job training
OS	operating system; out of stock
OTC	over the counter

P and H *or* P&H	postage and handling
pd.	paid
pkg.	package
POE	port of embarkation; port of entry
POP	point of purchase
POS	point of sale; point of service
PP	parcel post
ppd.	postpaid; prepaid
pr.	pair
QA	quality assurance
Q&A	question and answer
QC	quality control
qtr.	quarter
qty.	quantity
®	registered trademark (see 8.152)
recd. *or* rec'd	received
S and H *or* S&H	shipping and handling
SM	unregistered service mark
std.	standard
TBA	to be announced
TBD	to be determined
™	unregistered trademark (see 8.152)
treas.	treasurer, -y
ult.	ultimo (last month)
VAT	value-added tax
whsle.	wholesale

11 *Foreign Languages*

Overview 11.1

Titles and Other Proper Names 11.3

Languages Using the Latin Alphabet 11.9

- *African Languages* 11.14
- *Albanian* 11.16
- *Croatian and Bosnian* 11.18
- *Czech* 11.20
- *Danish* 11.22
- *Dutch* 11.24
- *Finnish* 11.26
- *French* 11.28
- *German* 11.41
- *Hungarian* 11.49
- *Italian* 11.51
- *Latin* 11.59
- *Norwegian* 11.65
- *Polish* 11.67
- *Portuguese* 11.70
- *Romanian and Moldavian* 11.72
- *Serbian and Montenegrin* 11.74
- *Spanish* 11.76
- *Swedish* 11.86
- *Turkish and Azeri* 11.88

Languages Usually Transliterated (or Romanized) 11.91

- *Arabic* 11.96
- *Chinese and Japanese* 11.102
- *Hebrew* 11.111
- *Russian* 11.118
- *South Asian Languages* 11.129

Classical Greek 11.130

- *Breathings and Accents* 11.132
- *Punctuation and Numbers* 11.136
- *Word Division* 11.138

Old English and Middle English 11.142

American Sign Language 11.144

Overview

11.1 *Scope and organization.* This chapter provides guidelines for presenting foreign-language text in English-language publications. These guidelines are general: authors or editors working with languages in which they are not fluent should seek additional guidance from someone who is. More than two dozen languages are covered, with those languages that commonly appear and those that present complex problems being treated most fully. The chapter begins with some typographic matters—capitalization, italics, and so forth—that apply to most of the languages discussed (see 11.3–8). It then deals with languages using the Latin alphabet; transliterated (or romanized) languages; classical Greek; Old English and Middle English; and American Sign Language. Individual languages or groups of languages are presented in alphabetical order within their particular sections.

11.2 *Unicode.* Many of the letters and symbols required by the world's languages are included in a widely used standard for character encoding called Unicode. The Unicode standard (published as a book of the same name, by the Unicode Consortium; bibliog. 2.7), which is widely supported by modern operating systems and browsers and many other applications (including many wordprocessors) and is required by such standards as XML, assigns a unique identifying hexadecimal number (or code point) and description to tens of thousands of characters. Even fonts with Unicode character mapping, however, typically support only a subset of the Unicode character set. For this reason, it is desirable to determine at the outset which characters will be needed for a publication. Table 11.1 lists special characters, with Unicode numbers and abbreviated descriptions, needed for each of the languages treated in this chapter that use the Latin alphabet. Table 11.2 lists special characters that may be needed for certain transliterated languages. For Russian (Cyrillic) and Greek characters, see tables 11.3, 11.4, and 11.5. Unicode numbers mentioned in text should be prefixed by U+ (e.g., U+00E0 for *à*).

Titles and Other Proper Names

11.3 *Capitalization of foreign titles.* For foreign titles of works, whether these appear in text, notes, or bibliographies, Chicago recommends a simple rule: capitalize only the words that would be capitalized in normal prose—first word of title and subtitle and all proper nouns. That is, use *sentence style* (see 8.156). This rule applies equally to titles using the Latin alphabet and to transliterated titles. For examples, see 14.107. For exceptions, see 14.193, 11.24, 11.42. For variations in French, see 11.30.

11.4 ***Punctuation of foreign titles.*** When a foreign title is included in an English-language context, the following changes are permissible: a period (or, more rarely, a semicolon) between title and subtitle may be changed to a colon (and the first word of the subtitle may be capitalized); guillemets (« »; see 11.32, 11.79) may be changed to standard quotation marks; and any space between a word and a mark of punctuation that follows may be eliminated. Commas should not be inserted (even in a series or before dates) or deleted, nor should any other mark of punctuation be added or deleted. See also 8.163.

11.5 ***Italic versus roman type.*** Titles of works in languages that use the Latin alphabet (including transliterated titles) are set in italic or roman type according to the principles set forth in 8.154–95—for example, books and periodicals italic; poems and other short works roman.

Stendhal's *Le rouge et le noir* was required reading in my senior year.
We picked up a copy of the *Neue Zürcher Zeitung* to read on the train.
She published her article in the *Annales de démographie historique*.
Strains of the German carol "Es ist ein' Ros' entsprungen" reached our ears.
Miguel Hernández's poem "Casida del sediento" has been translated as "Lament of the Thirsting Man."

11.6 ***Foreign titles with English translation.*** When the title of a foreign work is mentioned in text, an English gloss often follows in parentheses (see 6.93). If the translation has not been published, the English should be capitalized sentence-style (as in the first example below; see 8.156) and should appear neither in italics nor within quotation marks. A published translation, however, is capitalized headline-style (as in the second example; see 8.157) and appears in italics or quotation marks depending on the type of work (see 8.154–95). For translations of foreign titles in notes and bibliographies, see 14.108. See also 11.7.

Leonardo Fioravanti's *Compendio de i secreti rationali* (Compendium of rational secrets) became a best seller.
Proust's *À la recherche du temps perdu* (*Remembrance of Things Past*) was the subject of her dissertation.

11.7 ***Translated titles.*** Whether to use the original title of a foreign work or the translated title when discussing a work in text depends on context and readership. In a general work, titles that are widely known in their English translation could be cited in English first, with the original following in parentheses; in some cases, the original might be omitted entirely. Some authors prefer to cite all foreign titles in an English form, whether or not they have appeared in English translation. As long as the documentation makes clear what has been published in English and what has not, translated titles standing in for the original may be capitalized headline-style and treated like other English-language titles (see 8.157, 8.161). See also 11.6.

A Chinese textbook, *Elementary Learning* (*Xiao xue*), has gained a wide following.

Molière's comedy *The Miser* may have drawn on an obscure, late-medieval French treatise, *The Evils of Greed*, recently discovered in an abandoned château.

11.8 *Foreign institutions.* If given in the original language, names of foreign institutions and businesses are presented in roman type and capitalized according to the usage of the country concerned. Such usage may be difficult to determine; if in doubt, opt for sentence-style capitalization (see 8.156). If translated, such names are capitalized according to English usage.

He is a member of the Société d'entraide des membres de l'ordre national de la Légion d'honneur.

He was comforted to learn of the Mutual Aid Society for Members of the National Order of the Legion of Honor.

Original (or transliterated) names of institutions presented as glosses should not be italicized.

The number of cases adjudicated by the Supreme People's Court of the People's Republic of China (Zhonghua renmin gongheguo zuigao renmin fayuan) has increased sharply.

Languages Using the Latin Alphabet

11.9 *Capitalization—English versus other languages.* Capitalization is applied to more classes of words in English than in any other Western language (but see 8.1). The remarks under "Capitalization" in the sections that follow suggest some of the ways other languages differ from English in their use of capitals. Except where stated to the contrary, the language in question is assumed to lowercase all adjectives (except those used as proper nouns), all pronouns, months, and days of the week. In addition, capitals are used more sparingly than in English for names of offices, institutions, and so on. Translated terms, however, are subject to Chicago's recommendations for capitalization of names and terms (see chapter 8). For foreign personal names, see 8.7–17.

11.10 *Punctuation—original language versus English context.* The remarks in this chapter about punctuation point out the more obvious departures from what is familiar to English speakers. They apply to foreign-language contexts—books, articles, or lengthy quotations wholly in a foreign language (as in the examples in 11.34). In English-language contexts and translations of foreign-language works, English-style punctuation is generally used. For example, the tightly spaced suspension points (to indicate omissions or breaks in thought) common in French, Italian, and Spanish publications should be converted to spaced periods in English publications. (For ellipses, see 13.48–56.) English-style quotation marks will replace the guillemets or whatever is used in the original, and em dashes used to introduce dialogue need not be followed by a space. One exception is the punctuation at the beginning of Spanish questions and exclamations (see 11.78), which may be preserved if entire sentences are presented in Spanish (but omitted when the passage is translated).

11.11 *Word division.* Anyone who has ever read a book in English that was composed and printed in a non-English-speaking country knows how easy it is to err in word division when working with a language not one's own. The following general rules, however, apply to foreign languages as well as to English: (1) Single-syllable words should never be broken. (2) No words should be broken after one letter, nor should a single letter be carried over to another line (see also 7.37). (3) Hyphenated words and solid compounds should be broken at the hyphen or between elements, if at all possible. See also 7.32, 7.35; for proper nouns, see 7.38. Specific rules for some of the languages covered in this chapter appear in the relevant sections below.

11.12 *Special characters.* Foreign words, phrases, or titles that occur in an English-language work must include any special characters that appear in the original language. Those languages that use the Latin alphabet may include letters with accents (diacritical marks), ligatures, and, in some cases, alphabetical forms that do not normally occur in English. Table 11.1 lists the special characters that might be required for each language treated in this section. Many authors will have access to Unicode-compliant software (see 11.2) and will therefore be able to reproduce each of these characters without the addition of any specialized fonts. Authors

TABLE 11.1. Special characters (and Unicode numbers) for languages using the Latin alphabet

Character (and Unicode number)	Description	Languages that use it
„ (201E), “ (201C)	double low-9 quotation mark, left double quotation mark	German
« (00AB), » (00BB)	double angle quotation marks (guillemets)	French, German (reversed), Italian, Spanish
À (00C0), à (00E0)	A/a with grave	French, Italian, Portuguese
Á (00C1), á (00E1)	A/a with acute	Czech, Hungarian, Portuguese, Spanish
Â (00C2), â (00E2)	A/a with circumflex	French, Moldavian, Portuguese, Romanian, Turkish
Ã (00C3), ã (00E3)	A/a with tilde	Portuguese
Ä (00C4), ä (00E4)	A/a with diaeresis	Finnish, German, Swedish
Å (00C5), å (00E5)	A/a with ring above	Danish, Norwegian, Swedish
Ā (0100), ā (0101)	A/a with macron	Latin
Ă (0102), ă (0103)	A/a with breve	Latin, Moldavian, Romanian
Ą (0104), ą (0105)	A/a with ogonek	Polish
Æ (00C6), æ (00E6)	ligature Æ/æ	Danish, Norwegian, Old English and Middle English
Ɓ (0181), ɓ (0253)	B/b with hook	Hausa
Ç (00C7), ç (00E7)	C/c with cedilla	Albanian, Azeri, French, Portuguese, Turkish
Ć (0106), ć (0107)	C/c with acute	Bosnian, Croatian, Montenegrin, Polish, Serbian
Č (010C), č (010D)	C/c with caron (haček)	Bosnian, Croatian, Czech, Montenegrin, Serbian
Ð (00D0), ð (00F0)	eth	Old English and Middle English
Ď (010E), ď (010F)	D/d with caron (haček)	Czech
Đ (0110), đ (0111)	D/d with stroke	Bosnian, Croatian, Montenegrin, Serbian
Ɗ (018A), ɗ (0257)	D/d with hook	Hausa
È (00C8), è (00E8)	E/e with grave	French, Italian, Portuguese
É (00C9), é (00E9)	E/e with acute	Czech, French, Hungarian, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish
Ê (00CA), ê (00EA)	E/e with circumflex	French, Portuguese
Ë (00CB), ë (00EB)	E/e with diaeresis	Albanian, French
Ē (0112), ē (0113)	E/e with macron	Latin
Ĕ (0114), ĕ (0115)	E/e with breve	Latin
Ę (0118), ę (0119)	E/e with ogonek	Polish
Ě (011A), ě (011B)	E/e with caron (haček)	Czech
Ȝ (021C), ȝ (021D)	yogh	Old English and Middle English
Ə (018F), ə (0259)	schwa	Azeri
Ğ (011E), ğ (011F)	G/g with breve	Azeri, Turkish
Ì (00CC), ì (00EC)	I/i with grave	Italian, Portuguese
Í (00CD), í (00ED)	I/i with acute	Czech, Hungarian, Portuguese, Spanish
Î (00CE), î (00EE)	I/i with circumflex	French, Moldavian, Romanian
Ï (00CF), ï (00EF)	I/i with diaeresis	French, Portuguese
Ī (012A), ī (012B)	I/i with macron	Latin

TABLE 11.1. *(continued)*

Character (and Unicode number)	Description	Languages that use it
Ĭ (012C), ĭ (012D)	I/i with breve	Latin
İ (0130)	I with dot above	Azeri, Turkish
ı (0131)	dotless i	Azeri, Turkish
Ƙ (0198), ƙ (0199)	K/k with hook	Hausa
Ł (0141), ł (0142)	L/l with stroke	Polish
Ñ (00D1), ñ (00F1)	N/n with tilde	Spanish
Ń (0143), ń (0144)	N/n with acute	Polish
Ň (0147), ň (0148)	N/n with caron (haček)	Czech
Ò (00D2), ò (00F2)	O/o with grave	Italian, Portuguese
Ó (00D3), ó (00F3)	O/o with acute	Czech, Hungarian, Polish, Portuguese, Spanish
Ô (00D4), ô (00F4)	O/o with circumflex	French, Portuguese
Õ (00D5), õ (00F5)	O/o with tilde	Portuguese
Ö (00D6), ö (00F6)	O/o with diaeresis	Azeri, Finnish, German, Hungarian, Swedish, Turkish
Ø (00D8), ø (00F8)	O/o with stroke	Danish, Norwegian
Ō (014C), ō (014D)	O/o with macron	Latin
Ŏ (014E), ŏ (014F)	O/o with breve	Latin
Ő (0150), ő (0151)	O/o with double acute	Hungarian
Œ (0152), œ (0153)	ligature Œ/œ	French
Ř (0158), ř (0159)	R/r with caron (haček)	Czech
Ś (015A), ś (015B)	S/s with acute	Polish
Ş (015E), ş (015F)	S/s with cedilla	Azeri, Turkish
Ș (0218), ș (0219)	S/s with comma below	Moldavian, Romanian
Š (0160), š (0161)	S/s with caron (haček)	Bosnian, Croatian, Czech, Montenegrin, Serbian
ß (00DF)	sharp S (eszett)	German
Ț (021A), ț (021B)	T/t with comma below	Moldavian, Romanian
Ť (0164), ť (0165)	T/t with caron (haček)	Czech
Þ (00DE), þ (00FE)	thorn	Old English and Middle English
Ù (00D9), ù (00F9)	U/u with grave	French, Italian, Portuguese
Ú (00DA), ú (00FA)	U/u with acute	Czech, Hungarian, Portuguese, Spanish
Û (00DB), û (00FB)	U/u with circumflex	French, Turkish
Ü (00DC), ü (00FC)	U/u with diaeresis	Azeri, French, German, Hungarian, Portuguese, Spanish, Turkish
Ů (016E), ů (016F)	U/u with ring above	Czech
Ū (016A), ū (016B)	U/u with macron	Latin
Ŭ (016C), ŭ (016D)	U/u with breve	Latin
Ű (0170), ű (0171)	U/u with double acute	Hungarian
Ý (00DD), ý (00FD)	Y/y with acute	Czech
Ƴ (01B3), ƴ (01B4)	Y/y with hook	Hausa
Ź (0179), ź (017A)	Z/z with acute	Polish
Ż (017B), ż (017C)	Z/z with dot above	Polish
Ž (017D), ž (017E)	Z/z with caron (haček)	Bosnian, Croatian, Czech, Montenegrin, Serbian

should nonetheless supply a list of special characters used within a manuscript (see 2.15) to ensure the correct conversion to a particular font required for publication or, for electronic projects, to ensure compliance across systems that may not support Unicode. If type is to be reproduced from an author's hard copy, marginal clarifications may be needed for handwritten accents or special characters. In either case, use table 11.1 to correctly identify the character by name and Unicode number (e.g., for Đ or đ, indicate "D with stroke [U+0110]" or "d with stroke [U+0111]"). Such positive identification of special characters from manuscript through final proofreading stage is crucial, as conversion problems are always possible and in some settings are inevitable. For diacritical marks used in transliteration, see 11.94.

11.13 ***International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA).*** Phonetic symbols using IPA notation are based on the Latin alphabet and are defined for Unicode (see 11.2). For the latest version of the IPA alphabet, consult the website of the International Phonetic Association. For additional information on the subject of phonetics, including treatment of other systems of notation, consult Geoffrey K. Pullum and William A. Ladusaw, *Phonetic Symbol Guide* (bibliog. 5).

African Languages

11.14 ***African capitalization and punctuation.*** Most African languages—with the exception, most notably, of Arabic (11.96–101)—use the Latin alphabet and follow English capitalization and punctuation. The most widespread of these is Swahili, spoken by many different ethnic groups in eastern and central Africa. Hausa, Fulfulde, Yoruba, Igbo, Wolof, and Bambara are also spoken by millions, largely in western Africa; the same is true for Kikongo (or Kongo) and Lingala in the Congo-Zaire region and of Amharic and Somali in the Horn of Africa region. Amharic and other Ethiopian Semitic languages such as Tigrinya use the Ge'ez alphabet, not covered here. Xhosa and other "click" languages spoken in southern Africa do not follow English capitalization. The names of African languages themselves vary widely from ethnic group to ethnic group and from region to region. It is now standard practice to capitalize the names of African languages in the traditional way—for example, Kiswahili rather than KiSwahili or KISwahili. Xhosa speakers refer to and spell their language "isiXhosa" but "Isixhosa" (sometimes "Isizhosa") is also found in English-language publications.

11.15 ***African special characters.*** Swahili uses no additional letters or diacritics. Among the more than two thousand other African languages, however, many rely on diacritics and phonetic symbols to stand for sounds that cannot be represented by letters or combinations of letters. Hausa, which is spoken by millions of people across western Africa, requires the following special characters (see also table 11.1):

Ɓɓ, Ɗɗ, Ƙƙ, Ƴƴ

In Nigeria, both the upper and the lowercase *y* with a "hook" are represented instead with an apostrophe (*'Y 'y*). Additional diacritics, too numerous to be listed here, may be needed in other African languages. Languages such as French, Portuguese, and Arabic that are used in Africa are dealt with in separate sections in this chapter.

Albanian

11.16 ***Albanian capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9.

11.17 ***Albanian special characters.*** Since 1972 a single, unified Albanian orthography has been in use. The following special characters are needed for Albanian:

Çç, Ëë

Croatian and Bosnian

11.18 ***Croatian and Bosnian capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9.

11.19 ***Croatian and Bosnian special characters.*** The former Serbo-Croatian language used both Latin and Cyrillic alphabets. The modern Bosnian and Croatian standard languages use only the Latin version of that same alphabet. The following special characters are needed for Bosnian and Croatian (see also 11.74–75):

Čč, Ćć, Đđ, Šš, Žž

Although the substitution of *dj* for *đ* is sometimes seen (e.g., in informal correspondence), standard orthographic practice in all the successor languages of Serbo-Croatian distinguishes these two consistently.

Czech

11.20 ***Czech capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9.

11.21 ***Czech special characters.*** Czech, a Slavic language written in the Latin alphabet, uses many diacritical marks to indicate sounds not represented by this alphabet.

Áá, Čč, Ďď, Éé, Ěě, Íí, Ňň, Óó, Řř, Šš, Ťť, Úú, Ůů, Ýý, Žž

Danish

11.22 ***Danish capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9. The polite personal pronouns *De*, *Dem*, and *Deres* (now used ever more rarely) and the familiar *I* are capitalized in Danish. Until the mid-twentieth century, common nouns were capitalized, as in German, but they no longer are.

11.23 ***Danish special characters.*** Danish has three additional alphabetic letters, which require special characters (see also table 11.1).

Åå, Ææ, Øø

Dutch

11.24 ***Dutch capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9. For the capitalization of particles with personal names, see 8.10. Proper adjectives (as well as nouns) are capitalized as in English. When a word beginning with the diphthong *ij* is capitalized, both letters are capitals: *IJsland*. When a single letter begins a sentence, it is lowercased, but the next word is capitalized: *'k Heb niet* . . .

11.25 ***Dutch special characters.*** Dutch requires no special characters.

Finnish

11.26 ***Finnish capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9.

11.27 ***Finnish special characters.*** Finnish requires two umlauted vowels (see also table 11.1).

Ää, Öö

Because Swedish is the second official language in Finland, the Finnish alphabet taught in schools and the standard keyboard used in Finland include the Swedish *a* with ring above (or overcircle).

Å å

French

11.28 ***French—additional resources.*** As is the case with many languages, there is considerable variation in French publications with respect to capitalization and punctuation. For excellent advice, with frequent reference to the Académie française and numerous examples from literature, consult the latest edition of *Le bon usage*, known to many by the name of its original editor, Maurice Grevisse (bibliog. 5). Further guidance may be had at the website of the Académie française itself.

11.29 ***French capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9. Generic words denoting roadways, squares, and the like are lowercased, whether used alone or with a specific name as part of an address. Only the proper name is capitalized.

le boulevard Saint-Germain   la place de l'Opéra   13, rue des Beaux-Arts

In most geographical names, the generic word is lowercased and the modifying word capitalized.

la mer Rouge   le pic du Midi

Names of buildings are usually capitalized.

l'Hôtel des Invalides   le Palais du Louvre

In names of organizations and institutions, only the first substantive and any preceding modifier are capitalized, but not the preceding article (except at the beginning of a sentence).

l'Académie française   la Légion d'honneur   le Grand Théâtre de Québec

In hyphenated names, both elements are capitalized.

la Comédie-Française   la Haute-Loire

Names of religious groups are usually lowercased.

un chrétien   des juifs

In names of saints, the word *saint* is lowercased. But when a saint's name is used as part of a place-name or the name of a church or other institution, *saint* is capitalized and hyphenated to the following element.

le supplice de saint Pierre   *but*   l'église de Saint-Pierre

Adjectives formed from proper nouns are usually lowercased.

une imagination baudelairienne

11.30 ***Titles of French works.*** French publications vary in the way they capitalize titles of works. Chicago recommends sentence-style capitalization (see 8.156), the rule followed by Grevisse, *Le bon usage* (see 11.3, 11.28). (An exception may be made for titles of journals and periodicals, which are often capitalized headline-style; see 14.193.) Note that a superscripted ordinal letter should remain in the superior position, as in the last example (cf. 14.96).

L'Apollon de Bellac: Pièce en un acte
L'assommoir
L'exil et le royaume
Les Rougon-Macquart
Le père Goriot
Paris au XXe *siècle*

For another practice—in which the first substantive (noun or noun form) and any preceding article or modifier are capitalized—consult *French Review*, *PMLA*, or *Romanic Review* (bibliog. 5). For punctuation in titles, see 11.4.

11.31 ***Spacing with French punctuation.*** In French typeset material, fixed thin spaces generally occur before colons, semicolons, question marks, and exclamation marks; between guillemets (« ») and the text they enclose (see 11.32); and after an em dash used to introduce dialogue (see 11.34). In electronic documents, fixed (i.e., nonbreaking) spaces are used to avoid stranding a mark at the beginning of a line. In an English context, where the typographic conventions of the publication as a whole should be observed, such spacing need not be duplicated. (If for any reason French spacing is required, however, it must be followed consistently and according to French practice for all marks.) See also 11.10.

11.32 ***French use of guillemets.*** For quotation marks, the French use guillemets (« »), often with a fixed thin space (or, especially in electronic documents, a regular nonbreaking space) to separate the guillemets from the quoted matter (but see 11.10). In English-language publications, such spaces need not be used (see 11.31). Such tags as *écrit-il* or *dit-elle* are often inserted within the quoted matter without additional guillemets. Only punctuation belonging to the quoted matter is placed within the closing guillemets; other punctuation follows them.

«Mission accomplie?» a-t-il demandé.
En ce sens, «avec» signifie «au moyen de».
À vrai dire, Abélard n'avoue pas un tel rationalisme: «je ne veux pas être si philosophe, écrit-il, que je résiste à Paul, ni si aristotélicien que je me sépare du Christ».

As in English, when a quotation (other than a block quotation) continues for more than one paragraph, opening guillemets appear at the beginning of each additional paragraph. Closing guillemets appear only at the end of the last paragraph. See also 11.33.

11.33 ***Quotation marks in French.*** For quotations within quotations, double (or sometimes single) quotation marks are used. Formerly, additional guillemets were used, with opening guillemets repeated on each runover line. (Note that when guillemets are used, if the two quotations end simultaneously, only one set of closing guillemets appears.)

«Comment peux-tu dire, "Montre-nous le père"?»

It should perhaps be noted that regular quotation marks are seen increasingly in French contexts in lieu of guillemets—especially in e-mail correspondence and other electronic settings. This usage is considered informal.

11.34 ***French dialogue.*** In dialogue, guillemets are often replaced by em dashes. In French publications, the dash is usually followed by a thin space; in English publications, the space is not necessary (see 11.31). Such dashes are used before each successive speech but are not repeated at the end of a speech. To set off a quotation within a speech, guillemets may be used.

—Vous viendrez aussitôt que possible? a-t-il demandé.
—Tout de suite.
—Bien. Bonne chance!

—Tu connais sans doute la parole «De l'abondance du cœur la bouche parle».
—Non, je ne la connais pas.

11.35 ***French suspension points and ellipses.*** The French often use suspension points to indicate interruptions or breaks in thought. In French practice, these dots are generally unspaced; in English contexts, they may be spaced in the manner of English-style suspension points or ellipses (see 13.48–56). Suspension points are also used in lieu of *and so forth*. See also 11.10.

> «Ce n'est pas que je n'aime plus l'Algérie . . . mon Dieu! un ciel! des arbres! . . . et le reste! . . . Toutefois, sept ans de discipline . . .»

To indicate omissions, the French use unspaced dots enclosed in brackets, with thin spaces between the brackets and the dots. In English contexts, the dots may be spaced in the manner of English-style ellipses (see 13.56).

> «Oh, dit-elle avec un mépris écrasant, des changements intellectuels! [. . .]»
> Les deux amis se réunissaient souvent chez Luc [. . .].

11.36 ***French word division—vowels.*** In French, a word is divided after a vowel wherever possible. One-letter syllables at the ends or beginnings of lines should be avoided (see 11.11).

ache-ter (*not* a-cheter)
in-di-vi-si-bi-li-té
tri-age

Two or more vowels forming a single sound, or diphthong, are never broken.

écri-vain
fouet-ter
Gau-guin
éloi-gner
vieux

11.37 ***French word division—consonants.*** A division is normally made between two adjacent consonants, whether the same or different.

der-riè-re
feuil-le-ter
ba-lan-cer
Mal-raux
ob-jet
par-ler
but
qua-tre
ta-bleau

Groups of three adjacent consonants are normally divided after the first.

es-prit
res-plen-dir

11.38 ***French words containing apostrophes.*** Division should never be made immediately after an apostrophe.

jus-qu'au
au-jour-d'hui

11.39 ***French words best left undivided.*** Since there are as many syllables in French as there are vowels or diphthongs (even if some are unsounded except in poetry), the French break words that appear to English speakers to be of only one syllable (e.g., *fui-te*, *guer-re*, *sor-tent*). French practice also permits division after one letter (e.g., *é-tait*). In English-language publications, however, such breaks should be avoided, since they may confuse readers not fluent in French. Words of four or fewer letters should in any case be left undivided. See also 7.32.

11.40 ***French special characters.*** French employs the following special characters (see also table 11.1):

Àà, Ââ, Çç, Éé, Èè, Êê, Ëë, Îî, Ïï, Ôô, Œœ, Ùù, Ûû, Üü

Although French publishers often omit accents on capital letters (especially *A*) and may set the ligature Œ as two separate letters (*OE*), all the special characters needed for French—including capitalized forms—are available in most software and in most fonts, and they should appear where needed in English works. This practice, advocated by the Académie française, is helpful to readers who may not be familiar with French typographic usage.

German

11.41 ***The new German orthography.*** The new rules for German orthography (including spelling and capitalization) adopted in 1998 and made mandatory in 2005 have been controversial. Some publications have continued to follow traditional rules, or a combination of house style and traditional rules, whereas others have adopted the new rules. Some book publishers honor the preference of their authors and, by a similar token, do not update spelling when reprinting older works. Material quoted from German should therefore reflect the spelling in the source. For principles and details of the new orthography, consult the latest edition of *Duden: Die deutsche Rechtschreibung* (bibliog. 5). The recommendations and examples in this section reflect the new orthography.

11.42 ***German capitalization.*** In German, all nouns and words used as nouns are capitalized, whether in ordinary sentences or in titles of works (see 11.3).

ein Haus
die Weltanschauung
das Sein
Deutsch (the German language)
eine Deutsche (a German woman)
etwas Schönes

Adjectives derived from proper names are generally lowercased. Exceptions include invariable adjectives ending in *er* (often referring to a city or region) and adjectives that themselves are part of a proper name. For further exceptions, consult *Duden* (see 11.41).

die deutsche Literatur
nordamerikanische Sprachen
die platonischen Dialoge
but
eine berühmte Berliner Straße
der Nahe Osten
der Deutsch-Französische Krieg

The pronouns *Sie*, *Ihr*, and *Ihnen*, as polite second-person forms, are capitalized. As third-person pronouns they are lowercased. The familiar second-person forms *du*, *dich*, *dein*, *ihr*, *euch*, and so on—once routinely capitalized—are now lowercased.

11.43 ***German apostrophes.*** An apostrophe is used to denote the colloquial omission of *e*.

wie geht's
was gibt's
hab' ich

Although an apostrophe rarely appears before a genitive *s*, an apostrophe is used to denote the omission of the *s* after proper names ending in an *s* sound (*ce*, *s*, *ss*, *ß*, *tz*, *x*, or *z*) or in a silent *s*, *x*, or *z*.

Alice' Geburtstag
Jaspers' Philosophie
Cixous' Theaterstücke
Leibniz' Meinung

11.44 ***German quotation marks.*** In German, quotations usually take reversed guillemets (» «); split-level inverted quotation marks („ “); or, in Switzerland, regular guillemets (see 11.32). Other punctuation is placed outside the closing quotation marks unless it belongs to the quoted matter.

Eros bedeutet für sie primär »zusammen-sein mit« und nicht »anschauen«.
Denn: „An die Pferde“, hieß es: „Aufgesessen!“

11.45 ***German word division—vowels.*** In German, division is made after a vowel wherever possible. See also 11.11.

Fa-brik
hü-ten
Bu-ße

Two vowels forming a single sound, or diphthong, are never broken.

Lau-ne
blei-ben

11.46 ***German word division—consonants.*** Two or more adjacent consonants, whether the same or different, are divided before the last one unless they belong to different parts of a compound (see also 11.11).

klir-ren
Was-ser
Verwand-te
Meis-ter
but
Morgen-stern

The consonant combinations *ch*, *ck*, *ph*, *sch*, and *th* are not divided unless they belong to separate syllables. (Until the 1998 spelling change, *st* was subject to this rule. The combination *ck*, on the other hand, used to be changed at the end of a line to *kk* and divided between the *k*'s.)

Mäd-chen
Zu-cker
Philo-so-phie
rau-schen
but
Klapp-hut
Häus-chen

11.47 ***German word division—compounds.*** Compound words should be divided between their component elements whenever possible (see also 11.11).

Meeres-ufer
mit-einander
Rasier-apparat
Tür-angel

11.48 ***German special characters.*** For setting German in roman type (the old Gothic or Fraktur type having long been out of use), the eszett, or sharp *s* (*ß*), and three umlauted vowels are needed (see also table 11.1).

Ää, Öö, ß, Üü

Although umlauted vowels are occasionally represented by omitting the accent and adding an *e* (*ae*, *Oe*, etc.), the availability of umlauted characters in text-editing software makes such a practice unnecessary. The eszett (*ß*), also widely available, must not be confused with, or replaced by, the Greek beta (β). In the new spelling it is replaced by *ss* in certain words. Consult a German dictionary published after 1998. In German-speaking areas of Switzerland, the eszett is rarely used.

Hungarian

11.49 ***Hungarian capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9.

11.50 ***Hungarian special characters.*** Hungarian requires several varieties of accented vowels (see also table 11.1).

Áá, Éé, Íí, Óó, Öö, Őő, Úú, Üü, Űű

Italian

11.51 ***Italian capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9. In Italian, a title preceding a proper name is normally lowercased.

il commendatore Ugo Emiliano   la signora Rossi

In commercial correspondence, the formal second-person pronouns are capitalized in both their nominative forms, *Lei* (singular) and *Voi* (plural), and their objective forms, *La* (accusative singular), *Le* (dative singular), and *Vi* (accusative and dative plural). The older singular and plural forms *Ella* (*Le*, *La*) and *Loro* (*Loro*, *Loro*) are handled the same way. These pronouns are capitalized even in combined forms.

Posso pregarLa di farmi una cortesia?
Vorrei darLe una spiegazione.

11.52 ***Italian quotations and dialogue.*** Italian uses guillemets (*virgolette a caporale*) to denote quoted matter, but usually without the space between guillemets and quoted text that appears in many French publications. Regular quotation marks are also frequently used in Italian—sometimes as scare quotes (see 7.55) in the same text in which guillemets are used for quotations. Note that the period is correctly placed *after* the closing *caporali*.

«Cosa pensi del fatto che io possa diventare "un qualcosa di imperial regio"? Questo non è proprio possibile».

In dialogue, em dashes are sometimes used, as in French. The dash is used before each successive speech. Unlike French, however, another dash is used at the end of the speech if other matter follows in the same paragraph. The spaces that typically surround the dashes in Italian texts need not be used in English contexts (see 11.10).

—Avremo la neve,—annunziò la vecchia.
—E domani?—chiese Alfredo, voltandosi di scatto dalla finestra.

11.53 ***Italian apostrophes.*** An apostrophe is used to indicate the omission of a letter. A space should appear after an apostrophe that follows a vowel; after an apostrophe that follows a consonant, however, *no* space should appear.

po' duro   de' malevoli   l'onda   all'aura

11.54 ***Italian suspension points and ellipses.*** Italian, like French, uses suspension points to indicate interruptions or breaks in thought. To indicate omitted material (i.e., an ellipsis), the dots are enclosed in brackets. Though Italian typography usually calls for unspaced dots, in English publications Chicago recommends spaced dots for suspension points and ellipses (see 13.48–56). See also 11.10.

Voglio . . . quattro milioni.   Davvero? [. . .] Non ci avevo pensato.

11.55 ***Italian word division—vowels.*** In Italian, division is made after a vowel wherever possible. One-letter syllables at the ends or beginnings of lines should be avoided (see 11.11).

acro-po-li (*not* a-cropoli)   mi-se-ra-bi-le   ta-vo-li-no

Consecutive vowels are rarely divided, and two vowels forming a single sound, or diphthong, are never divided.

miei   pia-ga   Gio-van-ni   Giu-sep-pe   pau-sa   gio-iel-lo

11.56 ***Italian word division—consonants.*** Certain consonant groups must never be broken: *ch*, *gh*, *gli*, *gn*, *qu*, *sc*, and *r* or *l* preceded by any consonant other than itself.

ac-qua-rio
fi-glio
la-ghi
na-sce
pa-dre
rau-che
ri-flet-te-re
so-gna-re

Three groups of consonants, however, may be divided: double consonants; the group *cqu*; and any group beginning with *l*, *m*, *n*, or *r*.

bab-bo
af-fre-schi
ac-qua
cal-do
cam-po
com-pra
den-tro
par-te

11.57 ***Italian word division—words containing apostrophes.*** Division should never be made immediately after an apostrophe (but see 11.53).

dal-l'accusa   del-l'or-ga-no   quel-l'uomo   un'ar-te   l'i-dea

11.58 ***Italian special characters.*** In Italian, the following special characters are required (see also table 11.1):

Àà, Èè, Éé, Ìì, Òò, Ùù

Although the grave accent on capitalized vowels is sometimes dropped, in stressed final syllables it must be retained to avoid confusion.

CANTÒ (he sang)   CANTO (I sing)   PAPÀ (daddy)   PAPA (pope)

If an accented capital is not available, an apostrophe may be used in place of the accent on stressed final (or single) vowels.

E' (it is)   E (and)   PAPA' (daddy)

Latin

11.59 ***Latin capitalization—titles of works.*** In English-speaking countries, titles of ancient and medieval Latin works are capitalized in sentence style—that is, only the first word in the title or subtitle, proper nouns, and proper adjectives are capitalized (see 8.156).

De bello Gallico   *De viris illustribus*   *Cur Deus homo?*

Renaissance and modern works or works in English with Latin titles are usually capitalized in the English fashion (i.e., headline style; see 8.157). (If there is any doubt about the era to which the title belongs, opt for sentence style.)

Novum Organum   *Religio Medici*

11.60 ***Latin word division—syllables.*** A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs (*ae*, *au*, *ei*, *eu*, *oe*, *ui*, and, in archaic Latin, *ai*, *oi*, *ou*) and should be divided between syllables (see also 11.11).

na-tu-ra   cae-li-co-la   in-no-cu-us

11.61 ***Latin word division—single consonants.*** When a single consonant occurs between two vowels, the word is divided before the consonant unless it is an *x*. Note that *i* and *u* sometimes act as consonants (and, when they do, are sometimes written as *j* and *v*).

Cae-sar   me-ri-di-es   in-iu-ri-or (*or* in-ju-ri-or)   *but*   lex-is

11.62 ***Latin word division—multiple consonants.*** When two or more consonants come together, the word is divided before the last consonant, except for the combinations in the examples below.

om-nis   cunc-tus

The combinations *ch*, *gu*, *ph*, *qu*, and *th* are treated as single consonants and thus never separated.

co-phi-nus   lin-gua   ae-qua-lis

The following consonant groups are never broken: *bl*, *br*, *chl*, *chr*, *cl*, *cr*, *dl*, *dr*, *gl*, *gr*, *phl*, *phr*, *pl*, *pr*, *thl*, *thr*, *tl*, and *tr*.

pan-chres-tus   li-bris   ex-em-pla   pa-tris

11.63 ***Latin word division—compounds.*** Compound words are first separated into their component elements; within each element the foregoing rules apply.

ab-rum-po   ad-est   red-eo   trans-igo

11.64 ***Latin special characters.*** Latin requires no special characters for setting ordinary copy. Elementary texts, however, usually mark the long vowels with a macron and, occasionally, the short vowels with a breve, as follows. (See also table 11.1.)

Āā, Ăă, Ēē, Ĕĕ, Īī, Ĭĭ, Ōō, Ŏŏ, Ūū, Ŭŭ

Norwegian

11.65 ***Norwegian capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9. The polite personal pronouns *De*, *Dem*, and *Deres* (now used ever more rarely) are capitalized in Norwegian.

Until the mid-twentieth century, common nouns were capitalized (as in German), but they no longer are.

11.66 ***Norwegian special characters.*** Norwegian requires the same special characters as Danish (see also table 11.1).

Åå, Ææ, Øø

Polish

11.67 ***Polish capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9. In formal address the second-person plural pronoun *Państwo* (you) is capitalized, as are related forms.

Czekam na Twój przyjazd. (I await your arrival.)
Pozdrawiam Cię! (Greetings to you!)

11.68 ***Polish word division.*** Division of Polish words is similar to that of transliterated Russian (see 11.118–28). Division normally follows syllabic structure.

kom-pli-ka-cja sta-ro-pol-ski

Note that the conjunction *i* (and) should never appear at the end of a line but must be carried over to the beginning of the next—a print nicety that need not be maintained in electronic publications (e.g., by the use of a nonbreaking space after every instance of *i* to prevent a line break).

11.69 ***Polish special characters.*** Polish requires the following special characters (see also table 11.1):

Ąą, Ćć, Ęę, Łł, Ńń, Óó, Śś, Źź, Żż

Since Ą, Ę, and Ń never occur at the beginning of a word, these capitalized forms would be needed only if an entire word were capitalized.

Portuguese

11.70 ***Portuguese capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9. Titles and nouns or adjectives denoting nationality are capitalized as in Spanish (see 11.77).

11.71 ***Portuguese special characters.*** Portuguese requires the following special characters (except that European Portuguese does not use Ü or ü):

Àà, Áá, Ââ, Ãã, Çç, Èè, Éé, Êê, Ìì, Íí, Ïï, Òò, Óó, Ôô, Õõ, Ùù, Úú, Üü

Accented capitals, sometimes dropped in Portuguese running text, should always be used when Portuguese is presented in an English context.

Romanian and Moldavian

11.72 ***Romanian and Moldavian capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9.

11.73 ***Romanian and Moldavian special characters.*** Romanian and Moldavian are now both written using the same Latin orthography. The following special characters are needed for Romanian and Moldavian:

Ââ, Ăă, Îî, Șș, Țț

Note that Șș and Țț—Latin *Ss* and *Tt* with comma below—often appear instead with a cedilla, though the comma is correct. *Ââ* and *Îî* represent identical sounds but have different etymological origins. The use of *Ââ* has been restricted, eliminated, and reinstated in whole or in part during various orthographic reforms. Writers and editors, therefore, should take care to determine whether a spelling is conditioned by the specific time when it was used or whether it is preferable to follow the current norm.

Serbian and Montenegrin

11.74 ***Serbian and Montenegrin capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9.

11.75 ***Serbian and Montenegrin special characters.*** The former Serbo-Croatian language used both Latin and Cyrillic alphabets. In the modern Montenegrin standard language, both versions of that alphabet are official. In the modern Serbian standard language, the Cyrillic version of that same alphabet is official. The following special characters are needed when using the Latin version (see also 11.18–19):

Ćć, Čč, Đđ, Šš, Žž

Although the substitution of *dj* for *đ* is sometimes seen (e.g., in informal correspondence), standard orthographic practice in all the successor languages of Serbo-Croatian distinguishes these two consistently.

Spanish

11.76 ***Spanish—additional resources.*** There is considerable variation in Spanish publications throughout the world with respect to capitalization, punctuation, and other matters. For further guidance, consult María Moliner, *Diccionario de uso del español* (bibliog. 5). One may also consult the extensive resources at the website of the Real Academia Española.

11.77 ***Spanish capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9. In Spanish, a title preceding a proper name is normally lowercased. When abbreviated, however, titles are in uppercase.

el señor Jaime López
la señora Lucía Moyado de Barba
doña Perfecta

but
el Sr. López

Nouns as well as adjectives denoting membership in nations are lowercased, but names of countries are capitalized.

los mexicanos
la lengua española
Inglaterra

11.78 ***Spanish question marks and exclamation points.*** A question or an exclamation in Spanish is preceded by an inverted question mark or exclamation point and followed by a regular mark.

¿Qué pasa, amigo?
¡Olvídalo en ese caso!

If a vocative or dependent construction precedes a question or exclamation, it is written as follows:

Amigo, ¿qué pasa?
En ese caso, ¡olvídalo!

Because the opening marks are so integral to Spanish punctuation, they should be retained even when Spanish is being quoted in an English context (see 11.10).

11.79 ***Spanish guillemets and quotation marks.*** For quotation marks, Spanish traditionally uses guillemets (« »). Only punctuation belonging to the quoted matter is placed within the closing guillemets; other punctuation follows them. Within a quotation, em dashes may be used to set off words identifying the speaker. In Spanish publications, the opening dash is usually *preceded* by a space; the closing dash is then *followed* by a space unless immediately followed by punctuation. In English contexts, such spaces need not be used (see also 11.10).

«Vino el negocio a tanto—comenta Suárez—, que ya andaban muchos tomados por el diablo».

In lexical studies, single quotation marks are used for glosses (see 7.50). It should also be noted that English-style quotation marks rather than guillemets are increasingly encountered in Spanish publications, especially in electronic environments.

11.80 ***Spanish dialogue.*** In dialogue, an em dash (or, less frequently, a guillemet) introduces each successive speech. Any other matter that follows the quoted speech in the same paragraph should be preceded by a dash or a comma. See also 11.79.

—Esto es el arca de Noé, afirmó el estanciero.
—¿Por qué estas aquí todavía?—preguntó Juana alarmada.

11.81 ***Spanish suspension points and ellipses.*** In Spanish, as in French, suspension points are used to indicate interruptions or breaks in thought. In Spanish publications, these dots are generally unspaced; in English contexts, they may be spaced in the manner of English-style suspension points or ellipses (see 13.48–56). To indicate omitted material (that is, to serve as ellipses), the dots are enclosed in brackets. See also 11.10.

Hemos comenzado la vida juntos . . . quizá la terminaremos juntos también . . .
La personalidad más importante del siglo XIX es Domingo Faustino Sarmiento [. . .], llamado el hombre representante del intelecto sudamericano. [. . .] El gaucho [. . .] servía de tema para poemas, novelas, cuentos y dramas.

11.82 ***Spanish word division—vowels.*** In Spanish, division is made after a vowel whenever possible. See also 11.11.

ca-ra-co-les mu-jer re-cla-mo se-ño-ri-ta

Two or more vowels that form a single syllable (a diphthong or a triphthong) may not be divided.

cam-bias fue-go miau tie-ne viu-da

If adjacent vowels belong to separate syllables, however, they are divided between syllables.

ba-úl cre-er pa-ís te-a-tro

11.83 ***Spanish word division—consonants.*** If two adjacent consonants form a combination that would generally not occur at the beginning of a Spanish word, the break is made between them.

ac-cio-nis-ta ad-ver-ten-cia al-cal-de an-cho efec-to is-leño

The consonant groups *bl, br, cl, cr, dr, fl, fr, gl, gr, pl, pr,* and *tr*—all pairs that can occur at the beginning of Spanish words—are inseparable (unless each belongs to a different element of a compound; see 11.84, 11.11).

ci-fra
co-pla
im-po-si-ble
le-pra
li-bro
ma-dre
ne-gro
no-ble
pa-tria
re-fle-jo
re-gla
se-cre-to
te-cla

Groups of three consonants not ending with one of the inseparable pairs listed above always have an *s* in the middle. They are divided after the *s*.

cons-pi-rar cons-ta ins-tan-te obs-cu-ro obs-tan-te

Spanish *ch* and *ll* were long considered single characters, alphabetized as such, and never divided. The Spanish Royal Academy has now declared that these combinations are to be alphabetized as two-letter groups, and new publications have adopted this convention. Along with *rr*, however, they still cannot be divided, since they represent single sounds. For details, consult Real Academia Española, *Ortografía de la lengua española* (bibliog. 5).

ci-ga-rri-llo mu-cha-cho

11.84 ***Dividing Spanish compounds.*** Compound words are often but not always divided between their component parts.

des-igual
in-útil
mal-es-tar
trans-al-pi-no
semi-es-fe-ra
bien-aven-tu-ra-do
sub-lu-nar
sub-ra-yar
but
no-so-tros

11.85 ***Spanish special characters.*** Spanish employs the following special characters (see also table 11.1):

Áá, Éé, Íí, Ññ, Óó, Úú, Üü

Swedish

11.86 ***Swedish capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9. In Swedish the second-person pronouns *Ni* and *Er*, traditionally capitalized in correspondence, are now lowercased in all contexts.

11.87 ***Swedish special characters.*** Swedish requires the following special characters (see also table 11.1):

Ää, Åå, Öö

Turkish and Azeri

11.88 ***Turkish spelling.*** Modern Turkish has undergone a number of orthographic reforms since the original change to the Latin alphabet in 1928. Differences in the spellings of a name or word can therefore depend on the time period. Writers and editors should take care to determine whether a spelling is conditioned by the specific time when it was used or whether it is preferable to follow the current norm.

11.89 ***Turkish and Azeri capitalization.*** See 11.3, 11.9. In Turkish, as in English, the names of months and days of the week are capitalized. Azeri is similar to Turkish except for the differences noted in 11.90.

11.90 ***Turkish and Azeri special characters.*** Turkish requires the following special characters:

Ââ, Çç, Ğğ, İ, ı, Öö, Şş, Ûû, Üü

The Azeri (Azerbaijani) standard alphabet in use since 1992 is identical to Turkish except for the presence of *Qq* and *Xx* (lacking in Turkish), the absence of vowels with circumflex, and the addition of the schwa.

Çç, Əə, Ğğ, İ, ı, Öö, Şş, Üü

Note that there are dotted and undotted varieties of both the capital and the lowercase *i*. A dotted lowercase *i* retains its dot when capitalized.

Languages Usually Transliterated (or Romanized)

11.91 *Transliteration.* In nonspecialized works it is customary to transliterate—that is, convert to the Latin alphabet, or romanize—words or phrases from languages that do not use the Latin alphabet. These languages include Arabic, Chinese, Hebrew, Japanese, Russian, and other living languages as well as ancient languages such as Greek and Sanskrit. For discussion and illustration of scores of alphabets, see Peter T. Daniels and William Bright, eds., *The World's Writing Systems* (bibliog. 5). For alphabetic conversion, the most comprehensive resource is the Library of Congress publication *ALA-LC Romanization Tables* (bibliog. 5), available online. Do not attempt to transliterate from a language unfamiliar to you.

11.92 *Character sets for non-Latin alphabets.* Modern word-processing software readily allows users to key in words in several of the non-Latin alphabets used in the languages mentioned in the previous paragraph—for example, Cyrillic, Greek, and Hebrew. For a given alphabet, there may be a variety of character sets available in a variety of typefaces, but authors who want to include such copy should opt for the correct Unicode characters if at all possible (see 11.2), after consulting their publisher. See also 2.15.

11.93 *Proofreading copy in non-Latin alphabets—a warning.* Anyone unfamiliar with a language that uses a non-Latin alphabet should exercise extreme caution in proofreading even single words set in that alphabet. Grave errors can occur when similar characters are mistaken for each other. If in doubt, editors should query the author; when referring to a given character or diacritical mark, it may be advisable to consult the Unicode number and description (see 11.2).

11.94 *Diacritics—specialized versus general contexts.* Nearly all systems of transliteration require diacritics—including, in the languages discussed below, macrons, underdots, and overdots, to name just a few. Except in linguistic studies or other highly specialized works, a system using as few diacritics as are needed to aid pronunciation is easier on readers, publisher, and author. Most readers of a nonspecialized work on Hindu mythology, for example, will be more comfortable with Shiva than Śiva or with Vishnu than Viṣṇu, though many specialists would want to differentiate the *Sh* in Shiva from the *sh* in Vishnu as distinct Sanskrit letters. For nonspecialized works, the transliterated forms without diacritics that are listed in any of the latest editions of the Merriam-Webster dictionaries are usually preferred by readers and authors alike.

11.95 ***Italics versus roman for transliterated terms.*** Transliterated terms (other than proper names) that have not become part of the English language are italicized. If used throughout a work, a transliterated term may be italicized on first appearance and then set in roman. Words listed in the dictionary are usually set in roman. See also 7.49–53.

The preacher pointed out the distinction between agape and eros.
but
Once the Greek words *erōs* and *agapē* had been absorbed into the English language, it became unnecessary to italicize them or to use the macrons.

Arabic

11.96 ***Arabic transliteration.*** There is no universally accepted form for transliterating Arabic. One very detailed system may be found in the *ALA-LC Romanization Tables* (bibliog. 5). Another system is followed by the *International Journal of Middle East Studies* (bibliog. 5). Having selected a system, an author should stick to it with as few exceptions as possible. In the following examples, only the hamza (ʾ) and the ʿayn (ʿ) are used (see 11.97). Letters with underdots and some of the other special characters used in transliteration from Arabic are included in table 11.2. (The Arabic alphabet may be found in the alphabet table in *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary* [bibliog. 3.1], among other sources.)

11.97 ***The hamza and the ʿayn.*** The hamza (ʾ) and the ʿayn (ʿ) frequently appear in transliterated Arabic words and names. Writers using hamzas or ʿayns must on every occurrence make it clear, by coding or by careful instructions to the editor or typesetter, which of the two marks is intended. It should be noted that the Arabic characters are not the same as the ones used for transliteration; see table 11.2 for the preferred Unicode characters for hamza and ʿayn in transliteration. The hamza is sometimes represented—especially in nonspecialized works—by an apostrophe, as in Qur'an, and the ʿayn by a single opening quotation mark ('ayn). (Since an ʿayn often occurs at the beginning of a word, a quotation mark must be used with caution.) Most transliteration systems drop the hamza when it occurs at the beginning of a word (anzala *not* ʾanzala).

TABLE 11.2. Special characters (and Unicode numbers) for transliterated Arabic, Hebrew, Japanese, and South Asian languages

Character (and Unicode number)	Description	Languages that use it
ʹ (02B9)	soft sign (modifier letter prime)	Arabic, Hebrew
ʿ (02BF)	ʿayn *or* ʿayin (represented by modifier letter left half ring)	Arabic, Hebrew
ʾ (02BE)	alif (hamza) *or* ʾalef (represented by modifier letter right half ring)	Arabic, Hebrew
Ā (0100), ā (0101)	A/a with macron	Arabic, Hebrew, Japanese, South Asian languages
Ǎ (01CD), ǎ (01CE)	A/a with caron (haček)	Hebrew
Á (00C1), á (00E1)	A/a with acute	Arabic
Æ (00C6), æ (00E6)	ligature Æ/æ	South Asian languages
Ǣ (01E2), ǣ (01E3)	Æ/æ with macron	South Asian languages
Ḍ (1E0C), ḍ (1E0D)	D/d with dot below	Arabic, South Asian languages
Ē (0112), ē (0113)	E/e with macron	Hebrew, Japanese, South Asian languages
Ě (011A), ě (011B)	E/e with caron (haček)	Hebrew
ə (0259)	small schwa	Hebrew
Ḥ (1E24), ḥ (1E25)	H/h with dot below	Arabic, Hebrew, South Asian languages
Ī (012A), ī (012B)	I/i with macron	Arabic, Hebrew, Japanese, South Asian languages
Ḳ (1E32), ḳ (1E33)	K/k with dot below	Arabic, Hebrew
Ḷ (1E36), ḷ (1E37)	L/l with dot below	South Asian languages
Ḹ (1E38), ḹ (1E39)	L/l with dot below and macron	South Asian languages
Ṃ (1E42), ṃ (1E43)	M/m with dot below	South Asian languages
N̄ (004E+0304), n̄ (006E+0304)	N/n with macron (combining character)	South Asian languages
Ṅ (1E44), ṅ (1E45)	N/n with dot above	South Asian languages
Ṇ (1E46), ṇ (1E47)	N/n with dot below	South Asian languages
Ō (014C), ō (014D)	O/o with macron	Hebrew, Japanese, South Asian languages
Ṛ (1E5A), ṛ (1E5B)	R/r with dot below	South Asian languages
Ṝ (1E5C), ṝ (1E5D)	R/r with dot below and macron	South Asian languages
Ś (015A), ś (015B)	S/s with acute	Hebrew, South Asian languages
Ṣ (1E62), ṣ (1E63)	S/s with dot below	Arabic, South Asian languages
Ṭ (1E6C), ṭ (1E6D)	T/t with dot below	Arabic, Hebrew, South Asian languages
Ū (016A), ū (016B)	U/u with macron	Arabic, Hebrew, Japanese, South Asian languages
Ṿ (1E7E), ṿ (1E7F)	V/v with dot below	Hebrew
Ẓ (1E92), ẓ (1E93)	Z/z with dot below	Arabic

11.98 ***Arabic spelling.*** Isolated references in text to well-known persons or places should employ the forms familiar to English-speaking readers.

Avicenna (*not* Ibn Sina)   Damascus (*not* Dimashq)   Mecca (*not* Makkah)

11.99 ***The Arabic definite article.*** Though there is considerable variation across publications, Chicago recommends joining the Arabic definite article, *al*, to a noun with a hyphen.

al-Islam   al-Nafud   Bahr al-Safi   al-Qaeda (*or* al-Qaida)

In speech the sound of the *l* in *al* is assimilated into the sounds *d*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *sh*, *t*, and *z*. Where rendering the *sound* of the Arabic is important (for example, when transliterating poetry), the assimilations are often shown, as in the examples below. In most other situations, the article-noun combination is written without indication of the elision, as above.

an-Nafud   Bahr as-Safi

Some authors drop the *a* in *al* and replace it with an apostrophe when it occurs after a long syllable (Abū ’l-Muhallab). Some also drop the *a* when it occurs connected with a particle (wa ’l-layl).

11.100 ***Arabic capitalization.*** Since the Arabic alphabet does not distinguish between capital and lowercase letter forms, practice in capitalizing transliterated Arabic varies widely. Chicago recommends the practice outlined in 11.3: capitalize only the first word and any proper nouns. This practice applies to titles of works as well as to names of journals and organizations. Note that *al*, like *the*, is capitalized only at the beginning of a sentence or a title.

ʿAbd al-Rahman al-Jabarti, *ʿAjaʾib al-athar fi al-tarajim wa al-akhbar* (The marvelous remains in biography and history)

For citing and alphabetizing Arabic personal names, see 8.14, 16.76.

11.101 ***Arabic word division.*** Breaking transliterated Arabic words or names at the ends of lines should be avoided wherever possible. If necessary, a break may be made after *al* or *Ibn*. A break may be made after two letters if the second has an underdot (e.g., *iṭ-baq*). Breaks must never be made between the digraphs *dh*, *gh*, *kh*, *sh*, or *th* unless both letters have underdots. Nor should breaks be made before or after a hamza. Aside from these niceties, the rules governing English word division may be followed (see 7.31–43).

Chinese and Japanese

11.102 *Chinese romanization.* The Hanyu Pinyin romanization system, introduced by the Chinese in the 1950s, has largely supplanted both the older Wade-Giles system and the place-name spellings of the *Postal Atlas of China* (last updated in the 1930s), making Pinyin the standard system for romanizing Chinese. Representing sounds of Chinese more explicitly, Pinyin has been widely accepted as the system for teaching Chinese as a second language. As of 2000, the Library of Congress issued new romanization guidelines reflecting the conversion of its entire online catalog records for the Chinese collection to comply with Pinyin. Although a few scholars, long familiar with Wade-Giles or other older systems, have not switched to Pinyin in their writings, Chicago joins librarians in urging that Pinyin now be used in all scholarly writing about China or the Chinese language. (In some contexts it may be helpful to the reader to add the Wade-Giles spelling of a name or term in parentheses following the first use of the Pinyin spelling.) The *ALA-LC Romanization Tables* (bibliog. 5) available online from the Library of Congress should be used with caution by anyone unfamiliar with Chinese.

11.103 *Exceptions to Pinyin.* Even where Pinyin is adopted, certain place-names, personal names, and other proper nouns long familiar in their older forms may be presented that way in English texts. Or, for greater consistency, the old spelling may be added in parentheses after the Pinyin version. If in doubt, consult the latest edition of *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*; names not listed there in older forms should be presented in Pinyin. Editors who wish to alter spellings should do so in consultation with the author.

11.104 *Apostrophes, hyphens, and tone marks in Chinese romanization.* Pinyin spellings often differ markedly from the older ones. Personal names are usually spelled without apostrophes or hyphens, but an apostrophe is sometimes used to avoid ambiguity when syllables are run together (as in Xi'an to distinguish it from Xian), except in contexts where tone marks are used. Note that the Pinyin romanization system of the Library of Congress does not include tone marks (the system of accents on certain vowels prescribed by the Hanyu Pinyin system of 1962).

11.105 ***Some common Chinese names.*** Some names frequently encountered are listed below.

Dynasties

WADE-GILES	PINYIN
Chou	Zhou
Ch'in	Qin
Ch'ing	Qing
Sung	Song
T'ang	Tang
Yüan	Yuan

Personal names

WADE-GILES	PINYIN
Fang Li-chih	Fang Lizhi
Hua Kuo-feng	Hua Guofeng
Lin Piao	Lin Biao
Lu Hsün	Lu Xun
Mao Tse-tung	Mao Zedong
Teng Hsiao-p'ing	Deng Xiaoping

The names Sun Yat-sen and Chiang Kai-shek, among a few others, usually retain the old spellings.

Geographical names

WADE-GILES	POSTAL ATLAS	PINYIN
Kuang-tung	Kwangtung	Guangdong
Pei-ching (Pei-p'ing)	Peking (Peiping)	Beijing
Shang-hai	Shanghai	Shanghai
Su-chou	Soochow	Suzhou
Ta-lien	Dairen	Dalian

11.106 ***Japanese romanization.*** The Japanese language in its usual written form is a mixture of Chinese characters (called *kanji* in Japanese) and two *kana* syllabaries. (A syllabary is a series of written characters, each used to represent a syllable.) Since romanized Japanese, *rōmaji*, was introduced into Japan in the sixteenth century, a number of systems of romanization have been developed. The one in most common use since the early part of the Meiji period (1868–1912) is the modified Hepburn (or *hyōjun*) system. This system is used in *Kenkyūsha's New Japanese–English Dictionary* (bibliog. 3.2) and most other Japanese–English dictionaries (and is the basis of the Japanese romanization tables available online from the Library of Congress); outside Japan, it is also used almost exclusively, notably in Asian collections in libraries throughout the world.

11.107 ***Modified Hepburn system.*** In the modified Hepburn system (after James Curtis Hepburn, 1815–1911), an apostrophe is placed after a syllabic *n* that is followed by a vowel or *y*: *Gen'e*, *San'yo*. A macron is used over a long vowel in all Japanese words except well-known place-names (e.g., Tokyo, Hokkaido, Kobe) and words such as "shogun" and "daimyo" that have entered the English language and are thus not italicized. (When the pronunciation of such names or words is important to readers, however, macrons may be used: Tōkyō, Hokkaidō, Kōbe, shōgun, daimyō.) Hyphens should be used sparingly: *Meiji jidai-shi* (or *jidaishi*) *no shinkenkyū. Shinjuku-ku* (or *Shinjukuku*) *no meisho.*

11.108 ***Chinese and Japanese—capitalization and italics.*** Although capital letters do not exist in Japanese or Chinese, they are introduced in romanized versions of these languages where they would normally be used in English (see chapter 8). Personal names and place-names are capitalized. In hyphenated names, only the first element is capitalized in romanized Chinese, though both elements may be capitalized in Japanese. Common nouns and other words used in an English sentence are lowercased and italicized (see 7.49, 7.50). Names of institutions, schools of thought, religions, and so forth are capitalized if set in roman, lowercased if set in italics.

Donglin Academy; the Donglin movement

Buddhism, Taoism, feng shui [see 7.52], and other forms . . .

Under the Ming dynasty the postal service was administered by the Board of War (*bingbu*) through a central office in Beijing (*huitong guan*).

The heirs of the Seiyūkai and Minseitō are the Liberal and Progressive parties of Japan.

It was Genrō Saionji (the *genrō* were the elder statesmen of Japan) who said . . . (note that *genrō* is both singular and plural)

11.109 ***Titles of Japanese and Chinese works.*** As in English, titles of books and periodicals are italicized, and titles of articles are set in roman and enclosed in quotation marks (see 8.154–95). The first word of a romanized title is always capitalized, as are many proper nouns (especially in Japanese).

Chen Shiqi, *Mingdai guan shougongye de yanjiu* [Studies on government-operated handicrafts during the Ming dynasty], . . .

Hua Linfu, "Qingdai yilai Sanxia diqu shuihan zaihai de chubu yanjiu" [A preliminary study of floods and droughts in the Three Gorges region since the Qing dynasty], *Zhongguo shehui kexue* 1 (1999): 168–79.

Okamoto Yoshitomo, *Jūrokuseiki Nichi-Ō kōtsūshi no kenkyū* [Study of the intercourse between Japan and Europe during the sixteenth century], . . .

Akiyama Kenzō, "Goresu wa Ryūkyūjin de aru" [The Gores and the Ryūkyūans], *Shigaku-Zasshi* (or *Shigaku Zasshi*) . . .

11.110 ***Inclusion of Chinese and Japanese characters.*** Chinese and Japanese characters, immediately following the romanized version of the item they represent, are sometimes necessary to help readers identify references cited or terms used. They are largely confined to bibliographies and glossaries. Where needed in running text, they may be enclosed in parentheses. The advent of Unicode has made it easier for authors to include words in non-Latin alphabets in their manuscripts, but publishers need to be alerted of the need for special characters in case particular fonts are needed for publication (see 11.2).

Harootunian, Harry, and Sakai Naoki. "Nihon kenkyū to bunka kenkyū" 日本研究と文化研究. *Shisō* 思想 7 (July 1997): 4–53.

Hua Linfu 華林甫. "Qingdai yilai Sanxia diqu shuihan zaihai de chubu yanjiu" 清代以來三峽地區水旱災害的初步研究 [A preliminary study of floods and droughts in the Three Gorges region since the Qing dynasty]. *Zhongguo shehui kexue* 中國社會科學 1 (1999): 168–79.

That year the first assembly of the national Diet was held and the Imperial Rescript on Education (*kyōiku chokugo* 教育勅語) was issued.

Hebrew

11.111 ***Hebrew transliteration systems.*** There are several acceptable romanization systems for Hebrew, including the one in the *ALA-LC Romanization Tables* (see bibliog. 5). Any such system may be used, but it is the author's responsibility to use it consistently in a given work. (The Hebrew alphabet may be found in the alphabet table in *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary* [bibliog. 3.1], among other sources.)

11.112 ***Diacritics in transliterated Hebrew.*** In transliterated Hebrew, the following accents and characters are sometimes needed: underdots (Ḥḥ, Ḳḳ, Ṭṭ, Ṿṿ); macrons (Āā, Ēē, Īī, Ōō, Ūū); acute accents (Śś); hačeks, or carons (Ăă, Ĕĕ); and superscript ə (ᵊ). The ʾalef and the ʿayin may be represented in the same way as the Arabic hamza and ʿayn (see 11.97 and table 11.2). In some systems, a prime (soft sign) may also be needed.

11.113 ***Hebrew prefixes.*** In Hebrew, several prepositions, conjunctions, and articles appear as prefixes. Some authors use apostrophes or hyphens after these prefixes in romanized text and some do not. (In Hebrew, no such marker is used.) Either approach is acceptable if used consistently.

11.114 ***Hebrew capitalization and italics.*** The Hebrew alphabet has no capital letters, and there is no universally used system for capitalizing romanized Hebrew. Writers may follow normal English usage—capitalizing proper names, book titles, and so forth (see 11.3, 11.9). Some writers eschew capitalization altogether. As always, the author must ensure internal consistency. For italics in romanized Hebrew, the normal English usage may also be followed (see 11.5).

11.115 ***Hebrew word division.*** For romanized Hebrew, or Hebrew words incorporated into English, the principles set forth in 7.31–43 may be followed. When a double consonant occurs at the point of division, one consonant goes with each division.

Rosh Ha-shana   Yom Kip-pur

11.116 ***Unromanized Hebrew phrases.*** Hebrew is read from right to left. In English sentences that contain an unromanized Hebrew phrase, the Hebrew order is maintained within the sentence. (Modern operating systems can often handle a mix of left-right and right-left input in the same context.)

The first phrase in Lamentations is איכה ישבה בדד (How she sits in solitude!).

If a line break occurs within a Hebrew phrase, the words must still be read right to left on each line. Thus, if the Hebrew phrase in the example above had to be broken, the Hebrew words would appear to be in a different order.

The first phrase in Lamentations is איכה ישבה
בדד (How she sits in solitude!).
or
The first phrase in Lamentations is איכה
ישבה בדד (How she sits in solitude!).

As a safeguard, the author should highlight all the words in Hebrew phrases and furnish detailed instructions on dealing with line breaks.

11.117 ***A note on Hebrew vowels.*** Most Hebrew vowels are not letters; they are marks attached to the letters, most of which are consonants. In Hebrew texts the vowel marks (as well as dots that modify the pronunciation of consonants) rarely appear. Among texts in which the marks do appear are prayer books, printed Bibles, and poetry.

Russian

11.118 ***Russian transliteration.*** Of the many systems for transliterating Russian, the most important are summarized in table 11.3. Journals of Slavic studies generally prefer a “linguistic” system that makes free use of diacritics and ligatures. In works intended for a general audience, however, diacritics and ligatures should be avoided. For general use, Chicago recommends the system of the United States Board on Geographic Names. Regardless of the system followed, the name spellings in *Merriam-Webster's Biographical Dictionary* (bibliog. 4.1) and *Merriam-Webster's Geographical Dictionary* (bibliog. 4.2) should prevail.

Catherine the Great
Chekhov
Dnieper River
Moscow
Nizhniy (*or* Nizhni) Novgorod
Tchaikovsky

11.119 ***Russian capitalization.*** Capitalization conventions in Cyrillic are much like those of French and should be preserved in transliteration. Pronouns, days of the week, months, and most proper adjectives are lowercased. Geographic designations are capitalized when they apply to formal institutions or political units but otherwise lowercased.

Tverskaya guberniya
tverskoye zemstvo
Moskovskiy universitet
russkiy kompozitor

11.120 ***Titles of Russian works.*** Only the first word and any proper nouns are capitalized in titles.

N. A. Kurakin, *Lenin i Trotskiy*
O. I. Skorokhodova, *Kak ya vosprinimayu i predstavlyayu okruzhayushchiy mir* [How I perceive and imagine the external world]

Note that in the original Cyrillic, titles are set in ordinary type; the Cyrillic *kursiv* is used more sparingly than our italic and never for book titles. In transliterations, however, italic should be used.

11.121 ***Russian quotations and dialogue.*** Russian generally resembles French in its use of guillemets (« ») for dialogue and quoted material and of dashes for dialogue (see 11.32, 11.34).

«Bozhe, bozhe, bozhe!» govorit Boris.

—S kem ya rabotayu?
—S tovarishchem.
—Kak my rabotayem?
—S interesom.

TABLE 11.3. Russian alphabet (and Unicode numbers) and romanization

Basic Russian (Cyrillic) alphabet (and Unicode numbers)				
Upright	Cursive[1]	US Board on Geographic Names	Library of Congress	"Linguistic" system
А (0410), а (0430)	*А, а*	a		
Б (0411), б (0431)	*Б, б*	b		
В (0412), в (0432)	*В, в*	v		
Г (0413), г (0433)	*Г, г*	g		
Д (0414), д (0434)	*Д, д*	d		
Е (0415), е (0435)	*Е, е*	ye,[2] e	e	e
Ё (0401), ё[3] (0451)	*Ё, ё*	yë,[2] ë (00EB)	ë	e, ë
Ж (0416), ж (0436)	*Ж, ж*	zh		ž
З (0417), з (0437)	*З, з*	z		
И (0418), и (0438)	*И, и*	i		
Й (0419), й (0439)	*Й, й*	y	ĭ (012D)	j
К (041A), к (043A)	*К, к*	k		
Л (041B), л (043B)	*Л, л*	l		
М (041C), м (043C)	*М, м*	m		
Н (041D), н (043D)	*Н, н*	n		
О (041E), о (043E)	*О, о*	o		
П (041F), п (043F)	*П, п*	p		
Р (0420), р (0440)	*Р, р*	r		
С (0421), с (0441)	*С, с*	s		
Т (0422), т (0442)	*Т, т*	t		
У (0423), у (0443)	*У, у*	u		
Ф (0424), ф (0444)	*Ф, ф*	f		
Х (0425), х (0445)	*Х, х*	kh		x
Ц (0426), ц (0446)	*Ц, ц*	ts	t͡s[4]	c
Ч (0427), ч (0447)	*Ч, ч*	ch		č
Ш (0428), ш (0448)	*Ш, ш*	sh		š
Щ (0429), щ (0449)	*Щ, щ*	shch		šč
Ъ (042A), ъ[5] (044A)	*Ъ, ъ*	” (201D)[6]	ʺ (02BA)[7]	ʺ (02BA)[7]
Ы (042B), ы[5] (044B)	*Ы, ы*	y		
Ь (042C), ь[5] (044C)	*Ь, ь*	’ (2019)[8]	ʹ (02B9)[9]	ʹ (02B9)[9]
Э (042D), э (044D)	*Э, э*	e	ė (0117)	è (00E8)
Ю (042E), ю (044E)	*Ю, ю*	yu	i͡u[4]	ju
Я (042F), я (044F)	*Я, я*	ya	i͡a[4]	ja

NOTE: The Library of Congress and "linguistic" systems employ the same characters as the US Board system except where noted.

[1] The Unicode numbers are the same for the upright and cursive characters; the differences in appearance depend on the italic version of a given typeface. [2] Initially and after a vowel or ъ or ь.

[3] Not considered a separate letter; usually represented in Russian by *e*.

[4] Character tie, sometimes omitted, may be produced by using the combining double inverted breve (U+0361).

[5] Does not occur initially. [6] Right double quotation mark. [7] Modifier letter double prime.

[8] Right single quotation mark. [9] Modifier letter prime.

To set off a quotation within a speech, guillemets may be used, as in French. For an example, see 11.34.

11.122 ***Russian suspension points.*** Suspension points are used as in French (see 11.35) to indicate interruptions or breaks in thought.

Ya . . . vy . . . my tol'ko chto priyekhali.

In Russian, an exclamation point or a question mark often takes the place of one of the dots; this convention may be regularized to three dots in English publications.

Mitya! . . . Gde vy byli? . . .

11.123 ***Russian uses of the dash.*** A dash is sometimes inserted, with a space on either side, between subject and complement when the equivalent of *is* or *are* is omitted.

Moskva — stolitsa Rossii.

Similarly, a dash, preceded and followed by a word space, is used in place of a verb omitted because it would be identical to the preceding verb.

Ivan i Sonya poyedut v Moskvu poyezdom, Lev i Lyuba — avtobusom.

11.124 ***Russian word division—general.*** Transliterated Russian should be divided according to the rules governing word division in the Cyrillic original. The rules in this section are adapted from the transliteration system of the United States Board on Geographic Names.

11.125 ***Combinations not to be divided in Cyrillic transliteration.*** Combinations representing single Cyrillic letters—*ch, kh, sh, shch, ts, ya, ye, yë, yu, zh*—should never be divided, nor should combinations of a vowel plus short *i* (or *yod*, transliterated *y*): *ay, ey, yey*, and so on.

11.126 ***Division between Russian consonants.*** Words may be divided between single consonants or between a consonant and a consonant combination.

ubor-ku chudes-nym mol-cha sred-stvo mor-skoy

The following consonant combinations are not normally divided: *bl, br, dr, dv, fl, fr, gl, gr, kl, kr, ml, pl, pr, sk, skr, skv, st, str, stv, tr, tv, vl, vr, zhd.*

They may, however, be divided if they fall across the boundary of a prefix and a root or other such units (e.g., ob-lech', ras-kol).

11.127 ***Division of Russian words after prefixes or between parts.*** Words may be divided after a prefix, but generally the prefix itself should not be divided.

bes-poryadok pere-stroyka za-dat' pred-lozhit' pro-vesti obo-gnat'

Compound words should be divided between parts.

radio-priyëmnik gor-sovet kino-teatr

11.128 ***Division of Russian words after vowel or diphthong.*** Words may be divided after a vowel or a diphthong before a single (Cyrillic) consonant.

Si-bir' voy-na Gorba-chev da-zhe

Division after a vowel may also be made before a consonant combination.

puteshe-stvennik khi-trit' pro-stak ru-brika

South Asian Languages

11.129 ***South Asian special characters.*** Transliteration of the principal South Asian languages requires some or all of the following special characters (see also table 11.2):

Āā, Ææ, Ǣǣ, Ḍḍ, Ēē, Ḥḥ, Īī, Ḷḷ, Ḹḹ, Ṃṃ, Ṇṇ, Ṅṅ, N̄n̄, Ōō, Ṛṛ, Ṝṝ, Ṣṣ, Śś, Ṭṭ, Ūū

Increasingly, however, writers using South Asian languages are employing a simplified style that does not use diacritics at all—for example, substituting *sh* for various *s*'s, ignoring subscript dots for dental consonants, and omitting macrons altogether.

Classical Greek

11.130 ***Transliterating Greek.*** Isolated Greek words and phrases in works not dealing with ancient Greece are usually transliterated. Table 11.4 shows the Greek alphabet (with Unicode numbers) and corresponding Latin-

TABLE 11.4. Greek alphabet (and Unicode numbers) and romanization

Name of letter	Greek alphabet (and Unicode numbers)	Transliteration
Alpha	Α (0391), α (03B1)	a
Beta	Β (0392), β (03B2)	b
Gamma	Γ (0393), γ[1] (03B3)	g
Delta	Δ (0394), δ[2] (03B4)	d
Epsilon	Ε (0395), ε (03B5)	e
Zeta	Ζ (0396), ζ (03B6)	z
Eta	Η (0397), η (03B7)	ē (0113)
Theta	Θ (0398), θ[3] (03B8)	th
Iota	Ι (0399), ι (03B9)	i
Kappa	Κ (039A), κ (03BA)	k
Lambda	Λ (039B), λ (03BB)	l
Mu	Μ (039C), μ (03BC)	m
Nu	Ν (039D), ν (03BD)	n
Xi	Ξ (039E), ξ (03BE)	x
Omicron	Ο (039F), ο (03BF)	o
Pi	Π (03A0), π (03C0)	p
Rho	Ρ (03A1), ρ (03C1)	r; *initially*, rh; *double*, rrh
Sigma	Σ (03A3), σ (03C3), ς[4] (03C2)	s
Tau	Τ (03A4), τ (03C4)	t
Upsilon	Υ (03A5), υ (03C5)	u; *often* y, *exc. after* a, e, ē, i
Phi	Φ (03A6), φ[5] (03C6)	ph
Chi	Χ (03A7), χ (03C7)	kh, ch
Psi	Ψ (03A8), ψ (03C8)	ps
Omega	Ω (03A9), ω (03C9)	ō (014D)

[1] Note that γγ becomes ng, and γκ becomes nk.

[2] Sometimes appears as ∂ (U+2202, partial differential), but mainly in mathematical contexts.

[3] Also ϑ (U+03D1). [4] Final letter. [5] Also ϕ (U+03D5).

alphabet letters. In transliteration, all Greek accents are omitted. The macron is used to distinguish the long vowels eta (*ē*) and omega (*ō*) from the short vowels epsilon (*e*) and omicron (*o*). The iota subscript is transliterated by an *i* on the line, following the vowel it is associated with (ἀνθρώπῳ, *anthrōpōi*). The rough breathing is transliterated by *h*, which precedes a vowel or diphthong and follows the letter *rho* (as in the English word *rhythm*). The smooth breathing is ignored, since it represents merely the absence of the *h* sound. If a diaeresis appears in the Greek, it also appears in transliteration. Transliterated Greek words or phrases are usually italicized unless the same words occur frequently, in which case they may be italicized at first mention and then set in roman.

11.131 *Typesetting Greek.* Authors who need to present Greek should use a Unicode enabled font if at all possible (see 11.2). Publishers need to make sure that a Greek font is available for publication; Greek may need to be set in a slightly different size to make it visually match the surrounding type. Greek is normally not set in italics. Extra white space must occasionally be added where more than one diacritic appears over a vowel.

Breathings and Accents

11.132 ***Greek breathing marks.*** When Greek is set in the Greek alphabet, every initial vowel or diphthong or rho must be marked with a breathing, either rough (῾, dasia) or smooth (᾿, psili). The breathing mark is placed over the initial lowercase vowel (or the second vowel of a diphthong). It is placed to the left of capital letters. Note that a single quotation mark cannot function as a breathing because it is the wrong size and does not sit close enough to the letter.

αὗτε ἕτεραι Ἕλλην ἥβη Ἶρις ὑπέχω ὠκύς ῥᾴδιος

11.133 ***Greek accent marks.*** There are three Greek accent marks: acute, or oxia (΄); circumflex, or perispomeni, either tilde-shaped or rounded (˜ or ˆ), depending on the typeface; and grave, or varia (`). Accents in Greek occur only over vowels. The circumflex occurs only on the two final syllables of a word. The grave accent occurs only on the last syllable. Like breathings, accents are placed over lowercase vowels, over the second vowel of a diphthong, and to the left of capital vowels. A diaeresis is used to indicate that two successive vowels do not form a diphthong but are voiced separately (as in French *naïf*).

11.134 ***Unaccented Greek words.*** With two exceptions, all Greek words are marked with accents—usually one, occasionally two (see below). The first exception is a group of monosyllabic words called proclitics, which are closely connected with the words following them. The proclitics are the forms of the definite article ὁ, ἡ, οἱ, αἱ; the prepositions εἰς, ἐν, ἐκ (ἐξ); the conjunctions εἰ, ὡς; and the adverb οὐ (οὐκ, οὐχ). The second exception is a group called enclitics, short words pronounced as if part of the word preceding them. Enclitics usually lose their accents (Ἀρταξερξής τε), and in certain circumstances the word preceding them gains a second accent (φοβεῖταί τις).

11.135 ***Greek vowels.*** Vowels complete with breathing marks and accents, in all combinations, are an integral part of every Greek font used in publishing. Each font, for example, should be able to provide, for lowercase eta, η, ή, ῆ, ὴ, ἠ, ἡ, ἤ, ἢ, ἥ, ἣ, ἦ, ἧ, and, for uppercase eta, H, Ἠ, Ἡ, Ἤ, Ἢ, Ἥ, Ἣ, Ἦ, Ἧ. Additional symbols are needed for scholarly works dealing with ancient manuscripts or papyri. Consult the latest Unicode character charts for Greek alphabets.

Punctuation and Numbers

11.136 ***Greek punctuation.*** In Greek the period and comma are the same as in English; the colon and semicolon are both represented by a midlevel dot (·); the question mark is represented by a semicolon. The apostrophe (which looks almost like a smooth breathing mark) is used as an elision mark when the final vowel of one word is elided before a second word beginning with a vowel. In English texts, quoted words or passages in the Greek alphabet, of whatever length, should not be enclosed in quotation marks.

11.137 ***Greek numbers.*** Numbers, when not written out, are represented in ordinary Greek text by the letters of the alphabet, supplemented by three additional, obsolete Greek letters—stigma, koppa, and sampi: ϛʹ = 6, ϙʹ = 90, ϡʹ = 900. The diacritical mark resembling a prime (and defined for Unicode as the Greek numeral sign, U+0374) distinguishes the letters as numerals and is added to a sign standing alone or to the last sign in a series. For example, ριαʹ means 111. For thousands, the foregoing signs are used with a different diacritical mark (the Greek lower numeral sign, U+0375): ͵α = 1,000, ͵αριαʹ = 1,111, ͵βσκβʹ = 2,222. See table 11.5.

TABLE 11.5. Greek numerals

1	αʹ	13	ιγʹ	30	λʹ	600	χʹ
2	βʹ	14	ιδʹ	40	μʹ	700	ψʹ
3	γʹ	15	ιεʹ	50	νʹ	800	ωʹ
4	δʹ	16	ιϛʹ	60	ξʹ	900	ϡʹ[3]
5	εʹ	17	ιζʹ	70	οʹ	1,000	͵α
6	ϛʹ[1]	18	ιηʹ	80	πʹ	2,000	͵β
7	ζʹ	19	ιθʹ	90	ϙʹ[2]	3,000	͵γ
8	ηʹ	20	κʹ	100	ρʹ	4,000	͵δ
9	θʹ	21	καʹ	200	σʹ	10,000	͵ι
10	ιʹ	22	κβʹ	300	τʹ	100,000	͵ρ
11	ιαʹ	23	κγʹ	400	υʹ		
12	ιβʹ	24	κδʹ	500	φʹ		

[1] Stigma (U+03DB); also represented with digamma (U+03DD): ϝʹ.

[2] Archaic koppa (U+03D9); also represented with koppa (U+03DF): ϟʹ.

[3] Sampi (U+03E1); formerly disigma (double sigma).

Word Division

11.138 ***Greek word division—consecutive vowels.*** Diphthongs (αι, αυ, ει, ευ, ηυ, οι, ου, υι, ωυ) are never divided. But two consecutive vowels that do not form a diphthong are divided.

θε-ά-ο-μαι   υἱ-ός   παύ-ε-τε   νε-ώς

11.139 ***Greek word division—single consonants.*** When a single consonant occurs between two vowels, the word is divided before the consonant.

φω-νή   κε-φα-λίς   μέ-γα   δέ-δω-κεν   μή-τηρ

11.140 ***Greek word division—two or more consonants.*** If a consonant is doubled, or if a mute is followed by its corresponding aspirate (πφ, βφ, κχ, γχ, τθ, δθ), the word is divided after the first consonant.

θά-λασ-σα   συγ-χαί-ρω

If the combination of two or more consonants begins with a liquid (λ, ρ) or a nasal (μ, ν), division is made after the liquid or nasal.

ἔμ-προ-σθεν   (*but before* μν: μέ-μνημαι)

All other combinations of two or more consonants *follow* the division.

πρᾶ-γμα   τέ-χνη   βα-θμός   αἰ-σχρός
βι-βλί-ον   δά-κτυ-λος   σκῆ-πτρον   βά-κτρον

11.141 ***Greek word division—compound words.*** Compound words are divided between parts; within each part the above rules apply. The commonest type of compound word begins with a preposition or a prefix.

ἀμφ-   ἀφ-   ὑπ-   ἐξ-έβαλον
ἀν-   ἐφ-   ὑφ-   καθ-ίστημι
ἀπ-   κατ-   δύσ-μορφος

Old English and Middle English

11.142 ***Special characters in Old and Middle English.*** Several Old English or Middle English letters not used in modern English occur in both lowercase and capital forms (see also table 11.1).

Ðð Edh or eth Þþ Thorn

Both edh and thorn represent voiced or unvoiced *th*, as in *them* or *three*.

Ȝȝ Yogh; occurs in Old English representing *g* as in *good*, *y* as in *year*, or *gh* as in *light* and *thought*. Yogh sometimes occurs in Middle English representing *y* as in *year* and *gh* as in *light* and *thought*, but normally not *g* as in *good*.

Ææ Ligature; should *not* be printed as two letters in Old English names and text (Ælfric).

Authors should use the correct Unicode characters for the ligature and for edh, thorn, and yogh, and should provide their publisher with a list of these and any other special characters (see 11.2). For the Latin small esh (ʃ), see 13.7.

11.143 ***Ampersand and wynn.*** In Old English and Middle English texts a sort of stylized seven (the Tironian *et*) may be found for *and*, but the modern ampersand may be substituted for this. In Old English texts Ƿ or ƿ (wynn) is found for *w*; the modern *w* is often substituted for this.

American Sign Language

11.144 ***Signed languages.*** The visual-gestural languages used by deaf people in different parts of the world are called signed languages. Signed languages are quite different from spoken languages (although there may be regional effects of language contact), and a particular signed language may or may not share the same national or geographic boundaries as spoken languages in the same locations. The individual elements of these languages are known as signs.

11.145 ***Components of signs.*** Signs have five major articulatory components—handshape, location, orientation, movement, and (in some cases) distinctive nonmanual signals.

11.146 ***Writing ASL.*** Many formal systems for writing signed languages exist; however, none has been adopted for use by large numbers of deaf signers. This section offers an overview of some the most frequently employed conventions for written transcription of signing. For additional resources, see Charlotte Baker-Shenk and Dennis Cokely, *American Sign Language: A Teacher's Resource Text on Grammar and Culture*; and Clayton

Valli, Ceil Lucas, and Kristin J. Mulrooney, *Linguistics of American Sign Language: An Introduction* (bibliog. 5).

11.147 *Glosses in ASL.* The written-language transcription of a sign is called a *gloss*. Glosses are words from the spoken language written in small capital letters: WOMAN, SCHOOL, CAT. (Alternatively, regular capital letters may be used.) When two or more written words are used to gloss a single sign, the glosses are separated by hyphens. The translation is enclosed in double quotation marks.

The sign for "a car drove by" is written as VEHICLE-DRIVE-BY.

One obvious limitation of the use of glosses from the spoken/written language to represent signs is that there is no one-to-one correspondence between the words or signs in any two languages.

11.148 *Compound signs.* Some combinations of signs have taken on a meaning separate from the meaning of the individual signs. Various typographical conventions are used to indicate these compounds, including a "close-up" mark or a plus sign. Depending on the transcription system, the sign for "parents" might be glossed as follows:

MOTHER⁀FATHER *or* MOTHER+FATHER

11.149 *Fingerspelling.* For proper nouns and other words borrowed from the spoken language, the signer may fingerspell the word, using the handshapes from a manual alphabet. (There are numerous fingerspelling alphabets used by different signed languages, among them the American Manual Alphabet.) Fingerspelled words may be transcribed in any of the following ways:

fs-JOHN *or* J-O-H-N *or* j-o-h-n

11.150 *Lexicalized signs.* Over time, some fingerspelled words have taken on the quality of distinct signs, either by omission of some of the individual letter signs or by a change in the orientation or movement of the letter signs. These lexicalized signs are represented by the "pound" symbol (#): #WHAT, #BACK, #DO.

11.151 *Handshapes.* Most of the handshapes of American Sign Language are described by the corresponding alphabetic or numerical handshape or a variation thereof. For example, APPLE is made with an X handshape; CREATE is made with a 4 handshape; ANY is made with an Open A handshape; YELL is made with a Bent 5 handshape. Handshapes without a clear relative in the fingerspelling or number system are labeled idiosyncratically according to the transcription system in use. For example, SARCASTIC is made with the HORNS handshape; AIRPLANE is made with the ILY handshape. Handshapes for signed languages that do not use the American Manual Alphabet are often described in relation to the ASL handshapes.

11.152 ***Transcriptions of signed sentences.*** Signed sentences are written as a sequence of glosses, often with the spoken/written-language translation underneath in italics or quotation marks or both. (For examples, see 11.153, 11.154.) Punctuation is generally omitted from sentence transcriptions (though not from the translations). Some writers, however, add question marks and exclamation points, and a comma may be used to indicate a short pause in the sentence.

11.153 ***Pronouns, possessives, and reference.*** Pronouns are commonly transcribed either as IX (since these are frequently produced with the "index" finger) or as PRO. Either of these is followed by indication of person and sometimes number. A similar convention is used with the possessive marker, sometimes glossed as POSS. There are varying conventions about how to indicate person and number. Thus, a third-person singular pronoun in ASL (equivalent to English "he," "she," or "it") might be glossed as IX$_{3p}$, IX-3p, or PRO.3. A second-person plural pronoun could be glossed as IX$_{2p\text{-}pl}$. Subscripted indices are often used to show signs articulated in the same location or to indicate coreferential noun phrases. The following example indicates that *he* and *his* refer back to the same person:

IX$_{3p_i}$ LOSE POSS$_{3p_i}$ HOUSE
He lost his house.

11.154 ***Nonmanual signals.*** Nonmanual gestures may be labeled based on anatomical behavior or grammatical interpretive function. These gestures, indicated by various abbreviations and terms, are typeset in a smaller font followed by a half-point rule above the ASL sentence. For example, the label *whq* is commonly used to refer to the facial expression that marks questions involving "who," "what," "when," "where," "how," or "why." This expression consists of a cluster of features that include furrowed brows and slightly squinted eyes. In the example below, *whq* occurs over the entire question (i.e., the expression is articulated simultaneously with all of the manual signs over which the line extends). In the same example, the label *rap hs* indicates a rapid headshake that occurs simultaneously with the sign WHO. Correct alignment is critical to an accurate transcription.

whq
rap hs
fs-JOHN SEE YESTERDAY WHO
Whom did John see yesterday?

12 Mathematics in Type

Overview 12.1

Style of Mathematical Expressions 12.3

- *General Usage* 12.3
- *Signs and Symbols* 12.9
- *Punctuation* 12.18
- *Mathematical Expressions in Display* 12.21
- *Numeration* 12.24
- *Delimiters* 12.26
- *Subscripts and Superscripts* 12.36
- *Summations and Integrals* 12.39
- *Radicals* 12.43
- *Fractions* 12.45
- *Matrices and Determinants* 12.50
- *Scalars, Vectors, and Tensors* 12.52
- *Definitions, Theorems, and Other Formal Statements* 12.56
- *Probability and Statistics* 12.57

Preparation and Editing of Paper Manuscripts 12.60

Overview

12.1 *Additional resources.* This chapter is mainly intended to provide guidance to authors and editors working in the sciences who have occasional need to compose or edit mathematical expressions. Those who work exclusively with mathematics should consult Ellen Swanson's *Mathematics into Type* and Donald Knuth's *TeXbook*, among the other sources listed in bibliog. 2.4.

12.2 *Tools.* Many authors in mathematics and related quantitative fields prepare their manuscripts in LaTeX, a freely available, device-independent document markup and preparation system developed in the 1980s. In LaTeX, which is designed to work with the TeX typesetting system developed by Donald Knuth, a properly coded manuscript will generate equation numbers, cross-references, and many other elements automatically. Manuscript editors working with LaTeX documents (generally on paper) should have some understanding of how the markup works to avoid, for example, marking unnecessary changes or instructions and to know when a particular change can be indicated globally. A good place to start for more information is the LaTeX website. Manuscripts that include only the occasional in-line or displayed equation, on the other hand, are usually prepared using a word processor's equation editor. For marking mathematical copy on paper manuscripts, see 12.60–67.

Style of Mathematical Expressions

General Usage

12.3 *Standards for mathematical copy.* The author and editor should give careful attention to matters of style, usage, sense, meaning, clarity, accuracy, and consistency. Authors should use correct terminology and notation and should carefully follow the conventions of their special fields, and editors should query any apparent typographical or grammatical violations. As a general rule, mathematical copy, including displayed equations, should "read" as clearly and grammatically as any other kind of copy. The signs for simple mathematical operations and relations have direct verbal translations: $a < b$ reads "a is less than b"; $a > b$ reads "a is greater than b"; $a + b = c$ reads "a plus b equals c." The translation is not always straightforward, however, as is the case with $df(x)/dx$, which means "the derivative of the function f of x with respect to x" and is not the quotient of two numbers $df(x)$ and dx. Moreover, mathematical notation is often abbreviated: the pair of inequalities $a < b$ and $b < c$ is usually written $a < b < c$. In mathematics it is also standard to read terms with indices, such as x_i ("x sub i"), as plural or singular depending on the context (e. g., "for a unique x_i" and "for all the x_i" are both grammatically correct). Use this convention wherever possible to avoid ugly mixtures of italic mathematics and roman "s" in forming a plural.

12.4 ***Consistency of notation.*** Notation should be consistent and unambiguous: the same symbol should denote the same thing whenever it occurs and not be used for more than one thing. Typographical distinctions should also be made consistently; for example, if uppercase italic letters A, B, and C are used to denote sets and lowercase italic letters x, y, and z to denote the elements of sets, then a, b, and c should not be used for sets at another place without good reason.

12.5 ***Words versus symbols in text.*** In general, mathematical symbols may be used in text in lieu of words, and such statements as "$x \geq 0$" should not be rewritten as "x is greater than or equal to zero." Nonetheless, symbols should not be used as a shorthand for words if the result is awkward or ungrammatical. In the phrase

> the vectors $r_1, \ldots, r_n, \neq 0$,

the condition "$\neq 0$" is better expressed in words:

> the nonzero vectors $r_1, \ldots, r_n$

or

> the vectors $r_1, \ldots, r_n$, all nonzero,

depending on the emphasis desired. Moreover, logical symbols should generally not appear in text:

> $\exists$ a minimum value of the function f on the interval $[a, b]$

should be replaced by

> there exists a minimum value of the function f on the interval $[a, b]$

or

> the function f has a minimum value on the interval $[a, b]$.

See also 12.7.

12.6 *Concise expression.* Mathematical symbols should not be used superfluously. For example, in the first statement the symbol n is extraneous, as are the parentheses in the second statement:

> There is no integer n between 0 and 1.
> This quantity is bounded above by the sum $(a + b)$.

As a general rule, no letter standing for a mathematical object should be used only once. Symbols that appear to be redundant may be qualified later in the same discussion, however, and editors should never delete a symbol without explicit instruction from the author.

12.7 *Sentence beginning with a mathematical symbol.* Mathematical symbols should not begin a sentence, especially if the preceding sentence ended with a symbol, since it may be difficult to tell where one sentence ends and another begins. For example, it is difficult to read

> Assume that $x \in S$. S is countable.

If a sentence starting with a symbol cannot easily be rephrased, the appropriate term for the symbol can be inserted in apposition at the beginning of the sentence:

> Assume that $x \in S$. The set S is countable.

If the sentences are closely related, a semicolon may be used to connect them:

> A function f is even if $f(-x) = f(x)$; f is odd if $f(-x) = -f(x)$.

12.8 *Adjacent mathematical symbols.* Mathematical symbols in adjacent mathematical expressions should be separated by words or punctuation (or both), for the reasons discussed in 12.7:

> Suppose that $a = bq + r$, where $0 \le r < b$.

Signs and Symbols

12.9 ***Mathematical characters.*** The smallest units of mathematical writing are mathematical signs and symbols, which include letters and numbers. Table 12.1 lists some of the standard mathematical characters and their verbal translations. Unicode numbers are included, where applicable (see also 11.2), as are the LaTeX commands for producing each character. (It should be noted that old-style figures [like this: 1938] should be avoided in mathematical contexts; lining figures [like this: 1938] should be used instead. See also 3.84, item 4.)

12.10 ***Letters and diacritical marks.*** Ordinary italic letters are used to represent various kinds of mathematical objects. The set of letters can be greatly extended by the use of diacritics (including accents), such as $\hat{a}$, $\tilde{a}$, $\bar{a}$, $\check{a}$, $\dot{a}$, $\ddot{a}$, $\breve{a}$, and $\vec{a}$. All such diacritics and additional characters are considered to be separate from the letters they modify, rather than forming a single glyph. (Note that when an *i* or a *j* appears with a diacritical mark—e.g., with an overbar or a circumflex—the dotless *i* or *j* should be used.) Double diacritics may also be used; for example, $\bar{\bar{a}}$, and $\dot{\bar{a}}$. These can, however, be difficult to center over a letter and, in combination with capital letters, may interfere with descenders from the line above, so they should be avoided if possible. Marks over or beneath several letters or groups of letters—for example, overlines, underlines, overbraces, and underbraces—are frequently encountered in mathematics, as are other types of stacked expressions.

12.11 ***Italic letters and kerning.*** Although italic letters are used to denote mathematical objects, mathematical expressions require special treatment in typesetting. In particular, contiguous italic letters must never be kerned. To this end—and as a general aid to readability—fonts intended for mathematics are typically designed so that italic letters are less slanted than they might otherwise be (and, therefore, unlikely to crowd or overlap other typeset elements). Contiguous letters that form an abbreviation—e.g., “Aut” for “automorphism group”—should be set roman; see also 12.17.

12.12 ***Letters and fonts.*** The number of symbols can be extended by using letters from other alphabets, most often the Greek alphabet, and by representing letters from the Latin alphabet in other fonts and typefaces. Examples of characters from four fonts and typefaces commonly used in mathematics are

GREEK	*SCRIPT*	*BOLDFACE ITALIC*	*BOLDFACE GREEK*
$\mathrm{AB}\Gamma\Lambda\alpha\beta\gamma\delta$	$\mathscr{ABCD}\mathit{abcd}$	$\boldsymbol{ABCDabcd}$	$\boldsymbol{\mathrm{AB}\Gamma\Lambda\alpha\beta\gamma\delta}$

TABLE 12.1 Common mathematical signs and symbols (with Unicode numbers and LaTeX commands)

Sign/ symbol	Name	Unicode	LaTeX
OPERATIONS			
+	Plus sign	002B	+
−	Minus sign	2212	-
×	Multiplication sign	00D7	\times
·	Middle dot (multiplication)	00B7	\cdot
÷	Division sign	00F7	\div
∕	Division slash	2215[a]	/[b]
∘	Ring operator (composition)	2218	\circ
∪	Union	222A	\cup
∩	Intersection	2229	\cap
±	Plus or minus	00B1	\pm
∓	Minus or plus	2213	\mp
∗	Asterisk operator (convolution)	2217[c]	\ast
⊛	Circled asterisk operator (convolution)	229B	\circledast
⊕	Circled plus (direct sum, various)	2295	\oplus
⊖	Circled minus (various)	2296	\ominus
⊗	Circled times (various)	2297	\otimes
⊙	Circled dot operator (various)	2299	\odot
∶	Ratio	2236[d]	\colon
∐	Coproduct or amalgamation	2210	\amalg
RELATIONS			
=	Equals sign	003D	=
≠	Not equal to	2260	\neq
≈	Almost equal to, asymptotic to	2248	\approx
≅	Approximately equal to, isomorphic to	2245	\approxeq
<	Less than	003C	<
≪	Much less than	226A	\ll
>	Greater than	003E	>
≫	Much greater than	226B	\gg
≤	Less than or equal to	2264	\leq
≥	Greater than or equal to	2265	\geq
≡	Identical to, congruent to	2261	\equiv
≢	Not identical to, not congruent to	2262	\nequiv
∣	Divides, divisible by	2223[e]	\divides
∼	Tilde operator (similar to, asymptotically equal to)	223C[f]	\sim
≔	Colon equals (assignment)	2254	\coloneqq
∈	Element of	2208	\in
∉	Not an element of	2209	\notin
⊂	Subset of	2282	\subset
⊆	Subset of or equal to	2286	\subseteq
⊃	Superset of	2283	\supset

TABLE 12.1 *(continued)*

Sign/ symbol	Name	Unicode	LaTeX
RELATIONS (continued)			
⊇	Superset of or equal to	2287	\supseteq
∝	Proportional to	221D[g]	\propto
≐	Approaches the limit, definition	2250	\doteq
→	Tends to, maps to	2192	\rightarrow
←	Maps from	2190	\leftarrow
↦	Maps to	21A6	\mapsto
↪	Maps into	21AA	\hookrightarrow
↩	Maps into	21A9	\hookleftarrow
OPERATORS			
∑	Summation	2211[h]	\sum
∏	Product	220F[i]	\prod
∫	Integral	222B[j]	\int
∮	Contour integral	222E	\oint
LOGIC			
∧	And, conjunction	2227	\wedge
∨	Or, disjunction	2228	\vee
¬	Not sign (negation)	00AC	\neg
⇒	Implies	21D2	\Rightarrow
→	Implies	2192	\rightarrow
⇔	If and only if	21D4	\Leftrightarrow
↔	If and only if	2194	\leftrightarrow
∃	There exists (existential quantifier)	2203	\exists
∀	For all (universal quantifier)	2200	\forall
⊦	Assertion	22A6	\vdash
∴	Hence, therefore	2234	\therefore
∵	Because	2235	\because
RADIAL UNITS			
′	Minute (prime)	2032	\prime
″	Second (double prime)	2033	\second
°	Degree	00B0	\degree
CONSTANTS			
π	Pi (≈3.14159265)	03C0	\pi
e	Base of natural logarithms (≈2.71828183)	0065[k]	e
GEOMETRY			
⊥	Perpendicular to (up tack)	22A5	\perp
∥	Parallel to	2225[l]	\parallel
∦	Not parallel to	2226	\nparallel
∠	Angle	2220	\angle
∢	Spherical angle	2222	\sphericalangle
≚	Equiangular to	225A	\veedoublebar

TABLE 12.1 *(continued)*

Sign/ symbol	Name	Unicode	LaTeX
MISCELLANEOUS			
i	Square root of −1	0069[m]	i
′	Prime	2032	\prime
″	Double prime	2033	\second
‴	Triple prime	2034	\third
√	Square root, radical	221A	\sqrt
∛	Cube root	221B	\sqrt[3]
!	Factorial	0021	!
‼	Double factorial	203C	!!
∅	Empty set, null set	2205[n]	\varnothing[o]
∞	Infinity	221E	\infty
∂	Partial differential	2202	\partial
∆	Increment, Laplace operator	2206	\triangle
∇	Nabla, del; also Laplace operator (with superscript 2)	2207	\nabla
□	d'Alembert operator (white square)	25A1	\square

NOTE: Where an alternate symbol is given in a note, the symbol listed in the table is preferred.

[a] Also fraction slash (2044) or solidus (002F).

[b] LaTeX also defines \slash, which permits a line break after the slash.

[c] Also asterisk (002A). [d] Also colon (003A).

[e] Also vertical line (007C) or Latin letter dental click (01C0). [f] Also tilde (007E).

[g] Also α (Greek small letter alpha, 03B1). [h] Also Σ (Greek capital letter sigma, 03A3).

[i] Also Π (Greek capital letter pi, 03A0). [j] Also ʃ (Latin small letter esh, 0283). [k] Italic "e."

[l] Also Latin letter lateral click (01C1) or double vertical line (2018). [m] Italic "i."

[n] Also Latin capital letter O with stroke (00D8). [o] Also \emptyset.

Lowercase script characters are often not available, though they have been defined for the mathematical alphabets in Unicode (see also 11.2). See also 12.64 for marking fonts on paper manuscripts.

12.13 ***List of unusual characters.*** Before editing begins, it may be advisable, depending on the typesetter and the publisher's knowledge of the typesetter's resources, to prepare a list of unusual mathematical signs, symbols, and special characters used in the manuscript. This is preferably done by the author but may be done by the editor. In preparing an electronic manuscript, the author should make a list of any special, nonstandard fonts. A copy should be given to the publisher, who will check with the typesetter to make sure the necessary characters are available. If some are not, the author may be asked to use more accessible forms; if that is impossible, the typesetter must be asked to obtain or generate the characters needed.

12.14 ***Special mathematical symbols.*** Many mathematical symbols have a reserved meaning: π stands for the number 3.14159265 . . . , e for the number 2.71828183 . . . , and i for the square root of -1. The symbols $\forall$, $\exists$, $\in$, $\subset$, and $\varnothing$ are used in all mathematical disciplines. Double-struck (blackboard) symbols are reserved for familiar systems of numbers: $\mathbb{N}$ for the natural numbers, $\mathbb{Z}$ for the integers ($\mathbb{Z}^+$ is the same as $\mathbb{N}$), $\mathbb{Q}$ for the rational numbers, $\mathbb{R}$ for the real numbers, and $\mathbb{C}$ for the complex numbers.

12.15 ***Signs for binary operations and relations.*** *Binary operations* act as conjunctions to combine two mathematical expressions. Examples of binary operation signs are + (plus sign), − (minus sign), · (multiplication dot), × (multiplication cross), ÷ (division sign), / (solidus or slash), and ∘ (composition sign). *Binary relations* act as verbs and express a relationship between two mathematical expressions. Examples of relation signs are = (equals), ≠ (does not equal), > (is greater than), and < (is less than).

12.16 ***Basic spacing in mathematics.*** Mathematics isn't simply read left to right in a machine-like manner, and one should be able to see the parts of an equation if it is properly set. Good mathematical spacing helps to indicate grouping: things that are more closely related should be set more tightly than things that are less closely related. Such spacing will vary according to the elements being set. In simple expressions, however, absolute spacing may be called for. Signs for binary operations (i.e., conjunctions); symbols of integration, summation, or union; and signs for binary relations (i.e., verbs) are preceded and followed by medium spaces:

$$x^n + y^n = z^n, \qquad X \cup \varnothing = X, \qquad (a \circ b) \circ c = a \circ (b \circ c).$$

No space follows a binary operation or relation sign when it is modifying a symbol (i.e., used as an adjective):

$$-1, \qquad +\infty, \qquad \times 5, \qquad >7.$$

In subscripts and superscripts, no space precedes or follows operation or relation signs:

$$x^{a+b}, \qquad y^{c-2}.$$

Commas used between coordinate points or in lists should be followed by a medium space (see 12.19). See also A.22.

12.17 ***Functions.*** For a list of abbreviated functions, see table 12.2. These abbreviations are followed by a thin space unless the argument is enclosed in delimiters, or fences (see 12.26), in which case they are usually closed up to the opening delimiter:

$$\ln 2\pi, \qquad \sin(x + y), \qquad \min(x_1, x_2).$$

Limits are set as subscripts to the right of the abbreviation in text and below the abbreviation in display:

$$\lim\nolimits_{x \to a} f(x), \quad \lim_{x \to a} f(x),$$

$$\max\nolimits_{a_i \in S}(a_i), \quad \max_{a_i \in S}(a_i).$$

TABLE 12.2. Standard abbreviated notations in mathematical copy

sin	Sine	sn	Elliptic function, sn
cos	Cosine	cn	Elliptic function, cn
		dn	Elliptic function, dn
tan	Tangent	tg	Tangent[a]
cot	Cotangent	ctg	Cotangent[a]
sec	Secant	csc	Cosecant
sinh	Hyperbolic sine	cosh	Hyperbolic cosine
tanh	Hyperbolic tangent	coth	Hyperbolic cotangent
$\sin^{-1}$	Inverse sine	arcsin	Inverse sine
log	Common logarithm ($\log_{10}$)	ln	Natural logarithm
lg	Binary logarithm ($\log_2$)	$\log_e$	Natural logarithm, alternate form
sgn	Sign	arg	Argument
det or Det	Determinant	Tr	Trace (also Sp, or *spur*)
Re, $\Re$	Real part	Im, $\Im$	Imaginary part
curl	Curl; vector operator, same as $\nabla \times$	div	Divergence; vector operator, same as $\nabla \cdot$
prob or Pr	Probability	mod	Modulo (as in $a \bmod b$)
inf	Infimum; greatest lower bound	sup	Supremum; least upper bound
isom	Isomorphism	Hom	Homeomorphism
min	Minimum	max	Maximum
gcd	Greatest common divisor	lcm	Least common multiple
dex	Decimal exponent; from $10^{-1.5}$ to 10^{-3} is 1. 5 dex	norm	Norm; $\operatorname{norm}(a) = \|\|a\|\|$
dim or Dim	Dimension	ker	Kernel
wrt	With respect to[b]	iff	If and only if[b]
Var or var	Variance	Cov or cov	Covariance

[a] Frequently used by non-North American authors.

[b] Used in informal notation.

Punctuation

12.18 ***Mathematical expressions and punctuation.*** Mathematical equations, whether run in with the text or displayed on a separate line, are grammatically part of the text in which they appear. Thus, equations must be edited not only for the correct presentation of the mathematical characters but also for correct grammar in the sentence. Punctuation of mathematical expressions requires special attention. For example, if several expressions (i.e., a "list" of expressions) appear in a single display, they should be separated by commas or semicolons. For example,

$$\begin{gathered} x_1 + x_2 + x_3 = 3, \\ x_1x_2 + x_2x_3 + x_3x_1 = 6, \\ x_1x_2x_3 = -1. \end{gathered}$$

Consecutive lines of a single multiline expression, however, should not be punctuated:

$$\begin{aligned} (|a + b|)^2 = (a + b)^2 &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \\ &\le a^2 + 2|a||b| + b^2 \\ &= |a|^2 + 2|a||b| + |b|^2 \\ &= (|a| + |b|)^2. \end{aligned}$$

Equations must carry ending punctuation if they end a sentence. All ending punctuation and the commas and semicolons separating expressions should be aligned horizontally on the baseline, even when preceded by constructs such as subscripts, superscripts, or fractions.

12.19 ***Elided lists.*** In elided lists, commas should come after each term in the list and after the ellipsis points if the list has a final term. For example,

$y = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ not $y = 0, 1, 2\ldots;$

$x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$ not $x_1, x_2, \ldots x_n.$

The ellipsis points should be on the baseline when the terms of the list are separated by commas. Use a medium space after each comma.

12.20 ***Elided operations and relations.*** In elided sums or elided relations, the ellipsis points should be vertically centered between the operation or relation signs. For example,

$$x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n \quad \text{not} \quad x_1 + x_2 + \ldots + x_n;$$

$$a_1 < a_2 < \cdots < a_n \quad \text{not} \quad a_1 < a_2 < \ldots < a_n.$$

Multiplication is often signified by the juxtaposition of the factors without a multiplication sign between them. That is,

$$abc \quad \text{means} \quad a \cdot b \cdot c.$$

When the multiplication sign is not explicit, the elided product may be denoted with ellipsis points either on the baseline or vertically centered:

$$a_1 a_2 \ldots a_n \quad \text{or} \quad a_1 a_2 \cdots a_n.$$

The second alternative is commonly used in displays with built-up factors:

$$\phi(n) = n\left(1 - \frac{1}{p_1}\right)\left(1 - \frac{1}{p_2}\right)\cdots\left(1 - \frac{1}{p_k}\right).$$

If the multiplication dot is present, then ellipsis points should be on the baseline and not centered. For example,

$$a_1 \cdot a_2 \cdot \ldots \cdot a_n \quad \text{not} \quad a_1 \cdot a_2 \cdot \cdots \cdot a_n.$$

If the multiplication cross is present, then ellipsis points should be centered. For example,

$$a_1 \times a_2 \times \cdots \times a_n.$$

Multiplication signs are always used when the factors need to be separated:

$$1 \times 2 \times \cdots \times 10.$$

In some contexts (such as for numbers) the use of the multiplication cross rather than the dot is merely a matter of preference, but in many other contexts (such as for vectors) multiplication dots and crosses have completely different meanings and cannot be used interchangeably.

Mathematical Expressions in Display

12.21 ***Displaying mathematical expressions.*** Mathematical expressions should be *displayed*—that is, set on a separate line clear of text—if they are important to the exposition, if they are referenced, or if they are difficult to read or typeset in the body of the text. If different mathematical expressions are displayed on the same line, the expressions should be separated by spacing, together with words or punctuation:

If $a = b$, then for all real numbers x,

$$a + x = b + x, \qquad ax = bx, \qquad -a = -b.$$

If different mathematical expressions are displayed on separate consecutive lines, regardless of whether there is an intervening word between two of the equations, each expression can usually be centered:

If $a = b$, then for all real numbers x,

$$a + x = b + x,$$

$$ax = bx,$$

$$-a = -b.$$

It should be noted that equals signs or other relation signs will not necessarily line up:

$$-\mu m_i^S - M_{iH} - M_{iL} + \frac{m_i^R}{r_i} = -I,$$

$$-\mu m_{iL}^M - \frac{m_{iL}^M}{T} + M_{iL} = 0,$$

$$-\mu m_{iH}^M - \frac{m_{iH}^M}{T} + M_{iH} = 0,$$

$$-\mu m_i^R - \frac{m_i^R}{r_i} + \frac{m_i^M}{T} = 0.$$

Some groups of displayed expressions, however, will be easier to read if they are lined up along an equals sign or other relational sign—for example, if only one of the lines includes an expression to the left of the equals sign or if all the expressions to the left of the equals sign are of the same length. For an example, see the three-line displayed expression in the next paragraph (12.22).

12.22 ***Qualifying clauses for displayed expressions.*** Qualifying clauses may be presented in several ways. If the main expression is displayed, the qualifying clause may also be displayed (separated from the expression by an em space or more):

> If f is a constant function, then
>
> $$f'(a) = 0 \quad \text{for all } a \in \mathbb{R}.$$

The qualifying clause may appear in the text, following the displayed main expression:

> Suppose that the prime factorization of the integer a is given by
>
> $$a = p_1^{k_1} \cdots p_r^{k_r},$$
>
> where the p_i are distinct prime numbers and $k_i > 0$.

The qualifying clause may appear in the text, preceding the displayed main expression:

> For all real numbers a and b,
>
> $$|a + b| \leq |a| + |b|.$$

And qualifying clauses may themselves include displayed expressions:

> Suppose that assumptions 1 and 2 hold. Then a competitive equilibrium satisfies the following three differential equations:
>
> $$\frac{\dot{c}(t)}{c(t)} = \frac{1}{\theta}[(1 - \alpha_1)\gamma\eta(t)^{1/\varepsilon}\lambda(t)^{\alpha_1}\kappa(t)^{-\alpha_1}\chi(t)^{-\alpha_1} - \delta - \rho] - \frac{m_1}{\alpha_1},$$
>
> $$\frac{\dot{\chi}(t)}{\chi(t)} = \lambda(t)^{\alpha_1}\kappa(t)^{1-\alpha_1}\chi(t)^{-\alpha_1}\eta(t) - \chi(t)^{-1}c(t) - \delta - n - \frac{m_1}{\alpha_1},$$
>
> $$\frac{\dot{\kappa}(t)}{\kappa(t)} = \frac{[1 - \kappa(t)]\{\Delta[\dot{\chi}(t)/\chi(t)] + m_2 - (\alpha_2/\alpha_1)m_1\}}{(1 - \varepsilon)^{-1} + \Delta[\kappa(t) - \lambda(t)]},$$

where

$$\eta(t) \equiv \gamma^{\varepsilon/(\varepsilon-1)}\left\{1+\left(\frac{1-\alpha_1}{1-\alpha_2}\right)\left[\frac{1-\kappa(t)}{\kappa(t)}\right]\right\}^{\varepsilon/(\varepsilon-1)},$$

with initial conditions $\chi(0)$ and $\kappa(0)$, and also satisfies the transversality condition

$$\lim_{t\to\infty}\exp\left\{-\left[\rho-\frac{(1-\theta)m_1}{\alpha_1}-n\right]t\right\}\chi(t)=0.$$

12.23 ***Breaking displayed expressions.*** Long mathematical expressions may break badly at the end of a line and thus may need to be displayed. Even in displayed form, however, some long expressions may not fit on one line. In such cases, displayed expressions may be broken before a relation or operation sign. Examples of such signs are

Operation signs (conjunctions): $+ - \times \div \pm \cup \cap$
Relation signs (verbs): $= \neq > < \geq \leq \rightarrow \supset \subset \in \simeq \equiv$

See table 12.1 for a more complete list. In displayed expressions, runover lines are aligned on the relation signs, which should be followed by thick spaces:

$$\begin{aligned} h(x) &= (x-\alpha)(x-\beta)(x-\gamma) \\ &= x^3-(\alpha+\beta+\gamma)x^2+(\alpha\beta+\alpha\gamma+\beta\gamma)x-\alpha\beta\gamma. \end{aligned}$$

If a runover line begins with an operation sign, the operation sign should be lined up with the first character to the right of the relation sign in the line above it, followed by a medium space:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\pi}{4} = {} & \frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{3\times 2^3}+\frac{1}{5\times 2^5}-\frac{1}{7\times 2^7}+\frac{1}{9\times 2^9}-\frac{1}{11\times 2^{11}}+\cdots \\ & +\frac{1}{3}-\frac{1}{3\times 3^3}+\frac{1}{5\times 3^5}-\frac{1}{7\times 3^7}+\frac{1}{9\times 3^9}-\cdots \\ & +\frac{1}{4}-\frac{1}{3\times 4^3}+\frac{1}{5\times 4^5}-\frac{1}{7\times 4^7}+\cdots. \end{aligned}$$

For additional rules on breaking expressions, consult Ellen Swanson, *Mathematics into Type* (bibliog. 2.4).

Numeration

12.24 *Numbering displayed mathematical expressions.* Mathematical expressions that are referred to later in the text should be numbered or otherwise labeled. Displayed mathematical expressions that present important results are often numbered or labeled, as are important steps in a calculation or proof. All numbered mathematical expressions must be displayed. Displayed equations are usually centered on the line (without regard to the equation number or label). The number or label, enclosed in parentheses to prevent misreading, is usually put at the right margin, but it may be placed at the left margin.

> Hence it is apparent that
>
> $$1^3 + 2^3 + \cdots + n^3 = (1 + 2 + \cdots + n)^2. \qquad (1.1)$$

In cross-references, display numbers or labels are enclosed in parentheses to match the marginal enumerations:

> Recalling equation (1.1), we may conclude that . . .
> *or*
> Recalling (1.1), we may conclude that . . .

A range of equations is referred to by giving the first and last equation numbers, joined by an en dash:

> From equations (2)–(5) we obtain . . .

12.25 *Methods of numeration.* Displayed mathematical expressions may be numbered or labeled, as may definitions, theorems, lemmas, and other formal parts of the exposition. A simple numbering system offers a convenient and space-saving method of cross-reference. In texts with many displayed equations, double or triple numeration is usually preferred. In this system, the displayed expressions in each chapter are labeled with the chapter number first, followed by the section number (if any), followed by the statement number, starting with number 1 (1.1.1, 1.1.2, . . . , 1.2.1, 1.2.2, . . . , etc.). If, on the other hand, single numeration is used (e.g., in a text with relatively few displayed equations), the displays are still usually numbered starting over with 1 in each chapter. It should be noted that definitions, theorems, lemmas, and so forth are usually numbered together, in a single sequence, and apart from displayed equations (e.g., definition 4.1, lemma 4.2, lemma 4.3, proposition 4.4, corollary 4.5).

Delimiters

12.26 ***Common delimiters.*** Three sorts of symbols are commonly used to group mathematical expressions: parentheses ( ), brackets [ ], and braces { }. They are used in pairs, and their normal order is {[( )]}. When necessary, the sequence of delimiters can be extended by large parentheses, brackets, and braces as follows:

$$\Big\{\Big[\Big(\big\{\big[\big(\quad\big)\big]\big\}\Big)\Big]\Big\}$$

In text, the braces are sometimes omitted from this sequence. Angle brackets, vertical bars, and double vertical bars carry special mathematical significance and should not be used to supplement the sequence of common delimiters.

12.27 ***Functional notation.*** In functional notation, nested pairs of parentheses are used instead of brackets or braces to indicate grouping:

$$(f \circ g \circ h)(x) = f(g(h(x))).$$

12.28 ***Set notation.*** Braces are used to delimit the elements of a set, and other delimiters should not be substituted. For example,

$$\{a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n\}$$

denotes the set consisting of n objects $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$, and

$$\{x : x \in D\}$$

denotes the set of all elements x in a set D. In the second example (called "set-builder" notation), the condition that defines the set follows the colon. A vertical bar is sometimes used instead of the colon to delimit the condition.

12.29 ***Ordered set notation.*** In ordered set notation, parentheses are used as delimiters. For example,

$$(a, b)$$

denotes the ordered pair of objects a and b, where a is the first element in the pair and b is the second element. More generally,

$$(a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n)$$

denotes the ordered n-tuple of objects $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$. This notation is standard, and other delimiters should not be substituted.

12.30 *Intervals.* In interval notation, parentheses are used to delimit an open interval, that is, one that does not include its endpoints; for example, (a, b) denotes the set of all real numbers between a and b, not including either a or b. Brackets are used to delimit a closed interval, that is, an interval that includes its endpoints. The notation $(a, b]$ signifies the interval not including a but including b, while $[a, b)$ denotes the interval including a but not including b. Parentheses and brackets in interval notation should not be replaced with other delimiters. (According to an alternative convention, $]a, b[$ denotes an open interval, $[a, b[$ an interval that includes a but not b, etc. This should not be changed if the author has used it consistently.)

12.31 *Delimiters denoting inner product.* Parentheses are sometimes used to denote the inner product of two vectors: $(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w})$. Angle brackets are also used as notation for the inner product: $\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w} \rangle$. See also 12.52–54.

12.32 *Binomial coefficients.* The notation $\binom{n}{k}$, "n choose k," is called the binomial coefficient and stands for the number of ways k objects can be chosen from among a collection of n objects. It is defined by

$$\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!},$$

where n and k are positive integers and the notation ! stands for the factorial function,

$$n! = n \times (n-1) \times \cdots \times 1.$$

12.33 *Vertical bars.* Vertical bars serve several special purposes. The modulus or absolute value of x is denoted $|x|$. The notation $|\mathbf{u}|$ is used for the "length" of a vector $\mathbf{u}$ in a Euclidean vector space; this is sometimes called the norm of $\mathbf{u}$ and written with a double vertical bar, $||\mathbf{u}||$. Vertical bars are used to denote the cardinal number of a set. The notation $|A|$ can signify the determinant of a matrix A, which is also denoted det A.

12.34 *Single vertical bar.* A single vertical bar with limits is used to denote the evaluation of a formula at a particular value of one of its variables. For example,

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin x\,dx = -\cos x\Big|_{x=0}^{x=\pi/2} = -\cos\pi/2 - (-\cos 0) = 1.$$

12.35 ***Cases.*** Displayed mathematical expressions that present a choice between alternatives may be grouped using a single brace and are punctuated as follows:

$$|a| = \begin{cases} a, & a \geq 0; \\ -a, & a < 0. \end{cases}$$

Another acceptable style is

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x \geq 0, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

As a general rule, each alternative is equivalent to a clause in ordinary language and should be punctuated as such. If the alternatives are very long, they may be stated as separate equations:

$$\begin{aligned} I(t) = {} & Ae^{\Gamma_1(t-t_p)}\{1 + \varepsilon_1 \cos[2\pi f(t - t_p)]\} \\ & + B\{1 + \varepsilon_2 \cos[2\pi f(t - t_p)]\}, \quad t \leq t_p, \qquad \text{(1a)} \\ I(t) = {} & Ae^{-\Gamma_2(t-t_p)}\{1 + \varepsilon_1 \cos[2\pi f(t - t_p)]\} \\ & + B\{1 + \varepsilon_2 \cos[2\pi f(t - t_p)]\}, \quad t > t_p. \qquad \text{(1b)} \end{aligned}$$

Subscripts and Superscripts

12.36 ***Simple subscripts and superscripts.*** Inferior and superior indices, exponents, and other subscript and superscript symbols occur very frequently in mathematical copy and are indispensable for concise expression in mathematics. Examples are

$$x_1, \quad x^2, \quad 2^x, \quad x', \quad x_{ij}y_{jk}, \quad x^{ab}, \quad a^xb^y, \quad x''_{12}.$$

Multiple indices are written without commas between them unless there is a possibility of confusion: x_{ij} instead of $x_{i,j}$, but $x_{1,2}$ if there is a possibility of confusing the subscripts "1, 2" and "12." Abbreviations or words that serve as labels in subscripts or superscripts are usually set in roman type:

$$x_{\mathrm{min}}, \quad u_{\mathrm{av}}.$$

12.37 *Complex subscripts and superscripts.* Subscripts and superscripts may themselves have subscripts and superscripts. For example,

$$x_{a_k},\quad x_{a_k^2},\quad 2^{x^2},\quad 2^{x_i^2}.$$

Mathematical expressions may occur as subformulas in the superior or inferior positions. For example,

$$x^{a+b},\quad a^{-x}b^{(y-z)^2},\quad a_{2n}^{x'y'},\quad 2^{\sqrt{n}}.$$

12.38 *Alignment of subscripts and superscripts.* Subscripts and superscripts may be stacked

$$x_i^n,\quad x_{ij}^{mn}$$

or staggered

$$X^{ab}{}_{cd},\quad X_{ij}{}^{kl}.$$

Because there are standard conventions for raising and lowering indices in some branches of mathematics, most especially in tensor calculus, the relative position between superior and inferior indices must be respected. For example,

$$T^i{}_j$$

(the tensor arising from T^{ij} by lowering its second index) and

$$T_i{}^j$$

(the tensor arising from T^{ij} by lowering its first index) are different and must be clearly distinguished. Neither should be written T_j^i. Ordinary punctuation marks carrying special meaning may occur in subscripted or superscripted expressions. For instance,

$$T^i{}_{,j}\quad\text{and}\quad T^i{}_{;j}$$

have precise mathematical meanings and should not be changed. In tensor expressions, the symbol $R_{[i,j]}$ is not the same as $R_{(i,j)}$, and they should not be interchanged. See also 12.54.

Summations and Integrals

12.39 ***Summation sign.*** The summation sign Σ is used to stand for a sum, finite or infinite, of terms. For example, the sums

$$a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_n \quad \text{and} \quad a_1 + a_2 + \cdots$$

may be written

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} a_i,$$

respectively. The variable i in the expressions above is called the index of summation. The subformulas below and above the summation sign are called the limits of summation and indicate where the summation begins and, if it is finite, ends. Summation limits are sometimes omitted if it is clear from the context what the limits are; for example, if all vectors are stated to be of size n and all matrices are of size $n \times n$, it is acceptable to write

$$y_i = \sum_{j} a_{ij} x_j.$$

When a summation sign occurs in text, its limits are placed to the right of the summation sign to avoid spreading the lines of text: $\sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i$.

12.40 ***Product sign.*** Product notation follows similar conventions. The products

$$a_1 \cdot a_2 \cdot \ldots \cdot a_n \quad \text{and} \quad a_1 \cdot a_2 \cdot \ldots$$

may be written

$$\prod_{i=1}^{n} a_i \quad \text{and} \quad \prod_{i=1}^{\infty} a_i,$$

respectively, and in text the limits are placed to the right of the product symbol to avoid spreading lines: $\prod_{i=1}^{n} a_i$.

12.41 ***Integral sign.*** The integral sign $\int$ is used to denote two sorts of integrals, called definite and indefinite. The definite integral is the integral of a function f on an interval $[a, b]$. This integral is denoted

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx.$$

The numbers a and b are called the lower and upper limits of integration, and dx is called the element of integration or the differential. The limits of integration are often placed to the right of the integral sign in both text and display. The indefinite integral is denoted

$$\int f \quad \text{or} \quad \int f(x)\,dx,$$

without limits of integration. In more advanced texts the definite integral is written

$$\int\limits_{D} f(x)\,dx,$$

where D is the set of integration. For a function of two variables, it is common to denote an integral over both variables by a double integral sign:

$$\int\limits_{a}^{b}\int\limits_{c}^{d} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy.$$

Triple integrals may be used if the integration is performed in three variables.

12.42 ***Spacing around differentials.*** Thin spaces are placed before and after differentials:

$$dV = r^2 \sin\theta\,dr\,d\theta\,d\phi.$$

Differential expressions appearing in derivatives must be closed up to the slash:

$$dx/dt.$$

Radicals

12.43 ***Radical signs.*** The radical sign $\surd$ is used to denote the square root. A horizontal bar extends from the top of the radical sign to the end of the radicand:

$$\sqrt{2}, \quad \sqrt{\sin^2 x + \cos^2 x}.$$

In display, the radical sign extends vertically to accommodate a built-up radicand:

$$\sqrt{\frac{\ln n}{n}}.$$

The radical sign may be used to denote cube and higher-order roots. For these roots, a superscript-sized number or letter is nested within the radical sign:

$$\sqrt[3]{5},\quad \sqrt[n]{n!}.$$

12.44 ***Radical signs in text.*** Radical signs can be used in text if the radicand is a simple expression: $a = m + n\sqrt{3}$. If the radicand is more complex or if the text design uses tight leading, radical signs can give the page a crowded look or interfere with descending letters in the line above. One remedy is to substitute the appropriate exponent, using delimiters to indicate the extent of the radicand. For example,

$$\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$$

may be replaced by

$$(a^2 + b^2)^{1/2}.$$

Fractions

12.45 ***Fractions in text.*** Fractions are set in text with a slash to separate the numerator and denominator:

$$1/2,\quad 2/3,\quad 1/10,\quad 97/100,\quad \pi/2,\quad 11/5,\quad a/b.$$

Some common numerical fractions may be set as case fractions (text-sized fractions with a horizontal bar):

$$\tfrac{1}{2},\quad \tfrac{2}{3},\quad \tfrac{1}{10}.$$

Fractions should be enclosed in parentheses if they are followed by a mathematical symbol or expression:

$$(a/b)x.$$

For simple algebraic fractions in text, the slash should be used rather than the horizontal fraction bar. For example,

$$(ax + b)/(cx + d) \quad \text{not} \quad \tfrac{ax+b}{cx+d}.$$

The slash connects only the two groups of symbols immediately adjacent to it. Thus, $a + b/c$ means

$$a + \frac{b}{c} \quad \text{not} \quad \frac{a + b}{c},$$

which should be written $(a + b)/c$.

12.46 ***Fractions in display.*** In displayed mathematical expressions, all fractions should be built up unless they are part of a numerator or denominator or in a subscript or superscript:

$$\left| x^2 \sin \frac{1}{x} \right| < \frac{1}{10} \quad \text{not} \quad |x^2 \sin \tfrac{1}{x}| < \tfrac{1}{10}.$$

Fractions that include summation, product, or integral signs should always be displayed. For example:

$$\frac{\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2n} x \, dx}{\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2n+1} x \, dx}.$$

If there are no built-up fractions in the display, common numerical fractions may be set as case fractions:

$$|a - b| < \tfrac{1}{10}.$$

12.47 ***Fractions in subscripts and superscripts.*** Fractions in subscripts and superscripts should always use the slash, both in text and in display:

$$x^{a/b}, \quad y_{3/2}.$$

12.48 ***Multiple and multilevel fractions.*** If a mathematical expression contains more than one fraction, it should be displayed, and the horizontal bar should be used for the principal fraction sign:

$$\frac{ax + b}{cx + d} = \frac{px + q}{rx + s}.$$

Fractions should preferably be limited to two levels:

$$\frac{a/b+c}{p/q+r} \quad \text{not} \quad \frac{\frac{a}{b}+c}{\frac{p}{q}+r}.$$

Continued fractions, that is, expressions of the form $a_1 + 1/b_1$, where $b_1 = a_2 + 1/b_2$, $b_2 = a_3 + 1/b_3$, and so on, are displayed:

$$a_1 + \cfrac{1}{a_2 + \cfrac{1}{a_3 + \cfrac{1}{a_4 + \cdots}}}.$$

12.49 ***Rewriting fractions using exponents.*** There are times when it is desirable to represent the denominator of a fraction without using a fraction rule or a slash. This may be done by using delimiters followed by the exponent −1:

$$ab(cd)^{-1} \quad \text{instead of} \quad \frac{ab}{cd}.$$

If there is already an exponent in the denominator, it can be changed to its negative:

$$ab(cd)^{-2} \quad \text{instead of} \quad \frac{ab}{(cd)^2}.$$

If an exponential expression, particularly in text, is very complex, it may be rewritten in a simpler form. An exponential term such as

$$e^{(2\pi i \Sigma n_j)/\sqrt{x^2+y^2}}$$

can be rewritten using the abbreviation *exp*:

$$\exp\left[\left(2\pi i \sum n_j\right)/(x^2+y^2)^{1/2}\right].$$

Matrices and Determinants

12.50 ***Matrices.*** Matrices are arrays of terms displayed in rectangular arrangements of rows and columns and enclosed on the left and right by either large brackets or parentheses:

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix} \text{ or } \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{pmatrix}.$$

The notation should be consistent. The horizontal lists of entries are called the rows of the matrix, and the vertical lists the columns. A matrix with m rows and n columns is called an $m \times n$ matrix. A matrix consisting of a single row is called a row matrix or a row vector; a matrix consisting of a single column is a column matrix or a column vector. For example,

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & b & c \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{bmatrix}$$

are row and column matrices, respectively. The transpose of a matrix A, denoted A^T, is the matrix obtained by interchanging the rows and columns of A. For example,

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{21} & \cdots & a_{m1} \\ a_{12} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{m2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{1n} & a_{2n} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{pmatrix}$$

is the transpose of the $m \times n$ matrix given above. Column matrices such as

$$\begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{bmatrix}$$

may be represented in text as $(a, b, c)^T$, col. (a, b, c), or the column vector (a, b, c), and a $2 \times n$ (for small n) matrix may be set, for example, as $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} a & c \\ b & d \end{smallmatrix}\right)$. Most matrices and determinants are displayed, however. In-line matrices cannot be broken on the line, and display matrices cannot be broken across the column or page.

12.51 ***Determinants.*** If A is a square matrix, the determinant of A, denoted $|A|$ or det A, is a function that assigns a specific number to the matrix A. If A is an $n \times n$ matrix, the determinant of A is represented by

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{2n} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix}.$$

Vertical bars are used to distinguish the determinant of A from the matrix A. The Jacobian matrix has a reserved notation:

$$J = \frac{\partial(f_1, f_2, \ldots, f_n)}{\partial(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)}.$$

Its determinant (usually referred to as the Jacobian) is denoted as

$$\left|\frac{\partial(f_1, f_2, \ldots, f_n)}{\partial(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)}\right|.$$

Scalars, Vectors, and Tensors

12.52 ***Scalars, vectors, and tensors defined.*** Three basic quantities often encountered in scientific mathematical material are scalars, vectors, and tensors. Scalars, usually denoted by lowercase italic or Greek letters, are ordinary numbers and are treated as such. Vectors are quantities that have direction as well as magnitude, and they are often denoted by boldface letters or by an arrow diacritic to distinguish them from scalars:

$$\mathbf{r} \text{ or } \vec{r}.$$

Because authors do not always follow these conventions, editors should be prepared to query. A vector may be written as the sum of its components:

$$\mathbf{r} = \sum_i r_i \hat{\mathbf{e}}^i.$$

The circumflex over the ***e*** is used to denote a vector of length 1, called a unit vector. Tensors are multidimensional quantities that extend the vector concept. A scalar is a tensor of rank 0, and a vector is a tensor of rank 1.

12.53 ***Vector and tensor multiplication.*** Vector and tensor multiplication employs a special notation that is relatively easy to identify in text. The inner or dot product of two vectors **u** and **w** is denoted $\mathbf{u} \boldsymbol{\cdot} \mathbf{w}$; the dot product is signified by the boldface multiplication dot. The vector or cross product of two vectors **u** and **w** is denoted $\mathbf{u} \boldsymbol{\times} \mathbf{w}$; the cross product is signified by the boldface multiplication cross. The multiplication dot and multiplication cross are not interchangeable for vectors as they are for ordinary multiplication. The standard notation for the tensor product of tensors T and S is $T \otimes S$. Index notation for vectors and tensors usually takes the following form:

$$S = S_{jk}\boldsymbol{e}^j\boldsymbol{e}^k,$$

$$T^{i\cdots m}_{k\cdots l} = A^{i\cdots m}_{k\cdots n}B^n_l,$$

$$b^i = a^i_j c^j.$$

Note the correspondence of the indices in these expressions (see 12.38 for discussion of index positioning). The Einstein convention has been used here, which implies summation over the repeated index. Thus

$$c_k = \sum_j a^j b_{jk} \quad \text{is the same as} \quad c_k = a^j b_{jk}$$

unless otherwise stated.

12.54 ***Additional tensor notation.*** Two additional special notations are used to differentiate tensors. One is $A^i{}_{,j}$, where the subscript comma indicates a coordinate (or "ordinary") derivative. The other is $A^i{}_{;j}$, where the subscript semicolon indicates the covariant derivative. See also 12.38.

12.55 ***Dirac notation.*** A special form of the inner product, used especially in physics, is the Dirac bracket notation,

$$\langle a|b\rangle,$$

which can also be used in combination with operators, as in $\langle a|\mathbf{T}|b\rangle$ (which is not the same as $\langle a\mathbf{T}b\rangle$) or $\langle \mathbf{T}a|b\rangle$. The combinations $\langle a|$ and $|b\rangle$ are also used to denote dual vectors and vectors, respectively.

Definitions, Theorems, and Other Formal Statements

12.56 ***Formal statements in text.*** For definitions, theorems, propositions, corollaries, lemmas, axioms, and rules, it is common practice to set the head in caps and small caps and the text (including symbolic expressions but not including numerals, which are always set in roman) in italics, sometimes indented from the left margin. Numbers for these statements, unlike those for equations, are not enclosed in parentheses, and in cross-references the numbers are also not enclosed.

> DEFINITION. A permutation *is a one-to-one transformation of a finite set into itself.*

(In a definition, the term being defined is set in roman type in order to distinguish it from the rest of the text; alternatively, the term can be set in italics and the text in roman.)

> THEOREM 1. *The order of a finite subgroup is a multiple of the order of every one of its subgroups.*
>
> COROLLARY. *If p and q are distinct prime numbers and a is an integer not divisible by either p or q, then*
>
> $$a^{(p-1)(q-1)} \equiv 1 \pmod{pq}.$$
>
> LEMMA 2. *The product of any two primitive polynomials is itself primitive.*
>
> AXIOM. *Every set of nonnegative integers that contains at least one element contains a smallest element.*
>
> RULE 4.4. *The length of a vertical segment joining two points is given by the difference of the ordinates of the upper and the lower points.*

The text of proofs, examples, remarks, demonstrations, and solutions is usually set in roman, with only variables and other such letters in italics. The heads, however, are set in caps and small caps.

> PROOF. Let $A = B$. Hence $C = D$.
>
> SOLUTION. If $y = 0$, then $x = 5$.

Proofs of theorems often end with the abbreviation QED or a special symbol, □ or ■.

Probability and Statistics

12.57 ***Probability.*** The notation $\Pr(A)$ or $P(A)$ is used to denote the probability of an event A. The sample space, that is, the set of all possible outcomes of a given experiment, is usually denoted Ω. An event A is a subset of the sample space: $A \subseteq \Omega$. The elements of the sample space are usually denoted ω. The conditional probability of event A relative to event B—that is, the probability that event A occurs given that event B has occurred—is written

$$\Pr(A \mid B) \quad \text{or} \quad P(A \mid B).$$

Variance is denoted $\mathrm{Var}(X)$ and covariance is denoted $\mathrm{Cov}(X, Y)$. Both the variance and the covariance functions may be expressed with lowercase letters.

12.58 *Means and standard deviations.* The population mean is often given a special symbol in statistics, $\mu(X)$. The sample mean is denoted by $\bar{x}$. In evaluating an expression, be careful not to substitute angle brackets, $\langle X \rangle$, for an overbar, $\bar{x}$. They can mean very different things. The population standard deviation (the most common measure of dispersion) is denoted by σ (Greek lowercase sigma), and the sample standard deviation is more commonly denoted by s; sd or SD may be used to distinguish it from se or SE, for standard error. The arithmetic mean is most frequently written in physical sciences literature as $\langle A \rangle$ or $\bar{A}$ and the cumulant as $\langle\langle A \rangle\rangle$. Several abbreviations are used in stochastic theory and probability theory without special definition: a.e., almost everywhere; a.c., almost certainly; a.s., almost surely. See table 12.3 for statistical notation.

12.59 *Uncertainties.* Uncertainties in quantities are usually written with a plus or minus sign (±): 2.501 ± 0.002 or, if there is an exponent, $(6.157 \pm 0.07) \times 10^5$ or $10^{4.3 \pm 0.3}$. However, there are cases in which the bounds rather than the range are given, and these may be unequal; hence,

$$\ldots \text{where } D/H = 1.65^{+0.11}_{-0.08} \times 10^{-5} \ldots.$$

Uncertainties may also be specified as se for standard error, 1σ (or a larger multiple) or sd for standard deviation. Finally, separation into random and systematic uncertainties is written as

$$71.0 \pm 5.0 \text{ (random)} \pm 2.5 \text{ (sys)}$$

or $71.0^{+5.0}_{-4.8}$ (random) $^{+2.1}_{-1.8}$ (sys) for asymmetric bounds. When such expressions occur in an exponent, it is preferable to write a separate expression for the exponent (see 12.49).

TABLE 12.3. Statistical notation

GREEK ALPHABET			
α	Probability of rejecting a true null hypothesis (type I error)	$\mu(X)$	Mean of the population
β	Probability of accepting a false null hypothesis (type II error)	Σ	Sum of
κ	Cumulant; also kappa statistic	σ	Population standard deviation
		σ^2	Population variance
		χ^2	Value for the chi-squared distribution
LATIN ALPHABET			
df, DF, dof	Degrees of freedom	se, SE	Standard error
F	*F*-ratio	sem, SEM	Standard error of the mean
H	Value from the Kruskal-Wallis test	t	Value from Student's *t*-test
H_0	Null hypothesis	T	Value from the Wilcoxon matched-pairs signed-rank test
ln	Natural logarithm	U	Value from the Mann-Whitney test
log	Logarithm to base 10	W_s	Value from the Wilcoxon rank sum test
mse, MSE	Mean squared error	z	Value from the normal distribution
p, P, Pr	Probability		
r_P	Pearson correlation coefficient		
r_S	Value from the Spearman rank-order test		
s, sd, SD	Sample standard deviation		

Preparation and Editing of Paper Manuscripts

12.60 ***Format of paper manuscripts.*** Manuscripts for mathematical articles and books should be printed out one-sided and double-spaced, on 8½ × 11-inch white paper, with 1¼-inch margins for text and 2-inch margins for display work. The print quality should be 300 dots per inch or better. If handwritten equations or symbols are to be inserted in the printout, allow generous space for them. Since the editor will need to provide instructions to the typesetter, there should be ample margins.

12.61 ***Setting from the author's hard copy.*** In the event that the publisher cannot use the electronic files prepared by the author, and to the extent that a manuscript shows all the necessary characters, symbols, and signs as they should appear, the typesetter may simply be instructed to follow the author's hard copy. Any unusual characters not achieved in the manuscript must be marked or identified. Authors should supply the highest-quality printout possible.

12.62 *Marking italic type.* The editor of a mathematical text should either underline all copy that is to be set in italics or give general instructions to the typesetter to set all single-letter mathematical objects in italics unless they are marked otherwise. The general instructions to the typesetter should also specify italic type for letters used in subscripts or superscripts. If italics have been used in the manuscript, the editor can instruct the typesetter to follow the copy.

12.63 *Common abbreviations.* Abbreviations for common functions, geometric points, units of measurement, and chemical elements, which are set in roman type, should be marked as roman by the editor only where ambiguity could occur. For a list of some frequently used abbreviations, see table 12.2.

12.64 *Marking single letters in other type styles.* Special marking must be used when single letters representing mathematical objects are to be set in any typeface other than italics. A mathematical text may require the use of some roman letters, usually to indicate properties different from those expressed by the same letters in italics. Underlining is the standard method of indicating italics, but it can be used instead, with instructions to the typesetter, to indicate letters that are to be in roman. If, however, the editor does not use general instructions but underlines all letters to be set italic, then letters not underlined will be set, as implied, in roman type. Double underlining is used to indicate small capitals. Wavy underlining is used for boldface. Color codes are often used to indicate other typefaces. For example, red underlining or circling can be used for Fraktur, blue for script, green for sans serif, and so forth. The general instructions to the typesetter must clearly explain the marking and coding system used. If a photocopy must be made of the edited manuscript for estimating by the typesetter or for querying the author, avoid color coding.

12.65 *Mathematics fonts.* Boldface, script, Fraktur, and sans serif are frequently used in mathematical expressions.

BOLDFACE	*SCRIPT*	*FRAKTUR*	*SANS SERIF*
ABCD	𝒜ℬ𝒞𝒟	𝔄𝔅ℭ𝔇	𝖠𝖡𝖢𝖣

Double-struck, or blackboard, characters are often used for special mathematical symbols—for example, $\mathbb{N}$, $\mathbb{Z}$, $\mathbb{Q}$, $\mathbb{R}$, $\mathbb{C}$ (see 12.14).

12.66 ***Marking subscripts and superscripts.*** As long as inferior and superior characters have been marked in a few places by the symbols ∨ and ∧ (see examples below), and new characters or symbols are identified when they first appear, a typesetter should have no difficulty interpreting the manuscript. If the spatial relationship of terms is not clearly shown in a typed or handwritten expression, the terms should be marked to avoid ambiguity. For example, given the copy

$$X^{k}_{t1},$$

it may not be clear from the manuscript whether this means

$$X^{k}_{t1} \quad\text{or}\quad X^{k}_{t^{1}} \quad\text{or}\quad X^{k}_{t_{1}}.$$

The expression should therefore be marked in one of the following ways for complete clarity:

$$X^{\overset{k}{\vee}}_{\overset{\wedge}{t1}} \quad\text{or}\quad X^{\overset{k}{\vee}}_{\overset{\wedge}{t\underset{\vee}{1}}} \quad\text{or}\quad X^{\overset{k}{\vee}}_{\overset{\wedge}{t_{\overset{\wedge}{1}}}}.$$

The examples above show the subscripts and superscripts aligned, or stacked. See 12.38 for discussion and examples of staggered subscripts and superscripts.

12.67 ***Examples of marked copy.*** Figure 12.1 shows a page of a paper manuscript as marked initially by the author and then by the editor before being sent to the typesetter. The author's marks merely identify ambiguous symbols. Figure 12.2 shows that same page set in type. Figure 12.3 shows the LaTeX source code that would generate the first part of figure 12.2. Signs and symbols that could be misread by the typesetter should be clearly identified on a paper manuscript by marginal notations or in a separate list. For lists of symbols and special characters commonly used in mathematics, see table 12.1. Illegible handwriting and unidentifiable signs and symbols can reduce composition speed and result in time-consuming and costly corrections. Certain letters, numbers, and symbols can easily be misread, especially when Greek, Fraktur, script, and sans serif letters are handwritten rather than typed. Some of the characters that cause the most difficulty are shown in table 12.4.

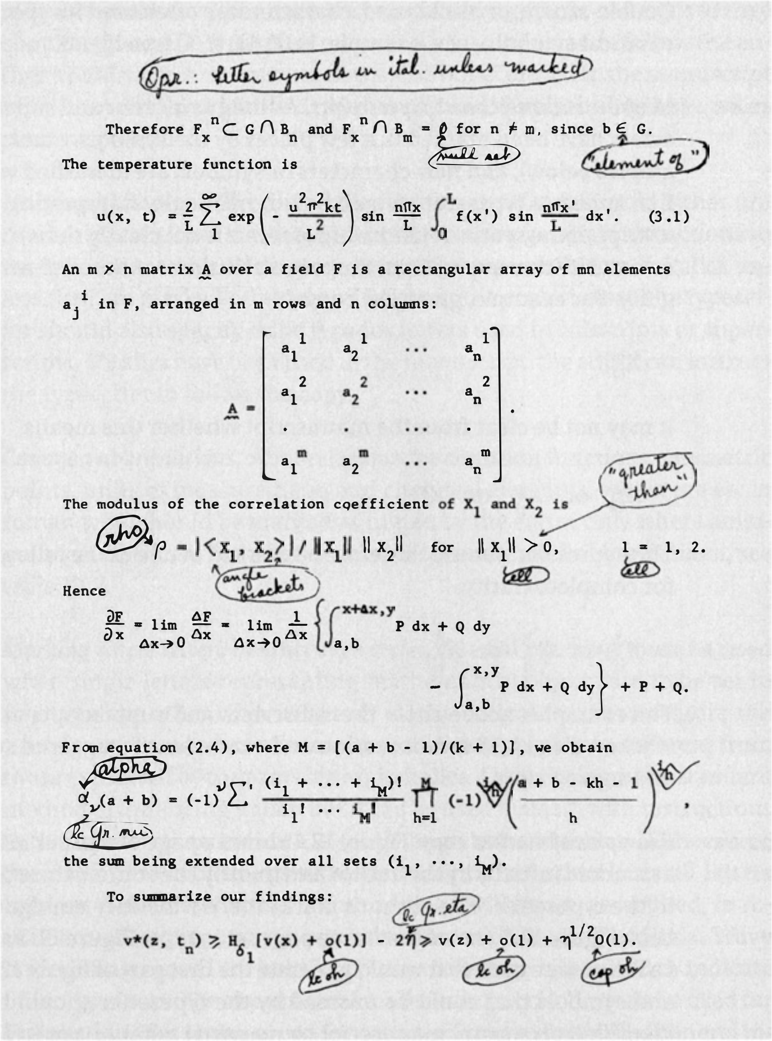

Opr.: letter symbols in ital. unless marked

Therefore $F_x^n \subset G \cap B_n$ and $F_x^n \cap B_m = \underset{\text{null set}}{\emptyset}$ for $n \neq m$, since $b \underset{\text{"element of"}}{\in} G$.

The temperature function is

$$u(x,\ t) = \frac{2}{L}\sum_{1}^{\infty} \exp\left(-\frac{u^2\pi^2kt}{L^2}\right) \sin\frac{n\pi x}{L}\int_0^L f(x') \sin\frac{n\pi x'}{L}\,dx'. \qquad (3.1)$$

An $m \times n$ matrix $\underset{\sim}{A}$ over a field F is a rectangular array of mn elements a_j^i in F, arranged in m rows and n columns:

$$\underset{\sim}{A} = \begin{bmatrix} a_1^1 & a_2^1 & \cdots & a_n^1 \\ a_1^2 & a_2^2 & \cdots & a_n^2 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdots & \cdot \\ a_1^m & a_2^m & \cdots & a_n^m \end{bmatrix}.$$

The modulus of the correlation coefficient of X_1 and X_2 is

$$\underset{\text{rho}}{\rho} = |\underset{\text{angle brackets}}{\langle} X_1,\ X_2 \rangle| \,/\, \|X_1\|\ \|X_2\| \quad \text{for} \quad \|X_{\underset{\text{ell}}{1}}\| \overset{\text{"greater than"}}{>} 0, \qquad \underset{\text{ell}}{1} = 1,\ 2.$$

Hence

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0}\frac{\Delta F}{\Delta x} = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0}\frac{1}{\Delta x}\left\{\int_{a,b}^{x+\Delta x,y} P\,dx + Q\,dy - \int_{a,b}^{x,y} P\,dx + Q\,dy\right\} + P + Q.$$

From equation (2.4), where $M = [(a + b - 1)/(k + 1)]$, we obtain

$$\underset{\text{alpha}}{\alpha}_{\underset{\text{lc Gr. nu}}{\nu}}(a + b) = (-1)^{\nu}\sum{}' \frac{(i_1 + \cdots + i_M)!}{i_1! \cdots i_M!}\prod_{h=1}^{M}(-1)^{i_h}\binom{a + b - kh - 1}{h}^{i_h},$$

the sum being extended over all sets $(i_1,\ \cdots,\ i_M)$.

To summarize our findings:

$$v^*(z,\ t_n) \gtrsim H_{\delta_1}[v(x) + \underset{\text{lc oh}}{o}(1)] - 2\overset{\text{lc Gr. eta}}{\eta} \geq v(z) + \underset{\text{lc oh}}{o}(1) + \eta^{1/2}\underset{\text{cap oh}}{O}(1).$$

FIGURE 12.1. An example of typewritten and hand-marked mathematical copy. (Note that this page is not intended to make mathematical sense but is merely meant to illustrate some of the issues that may arise in preparing mathematical copy.)

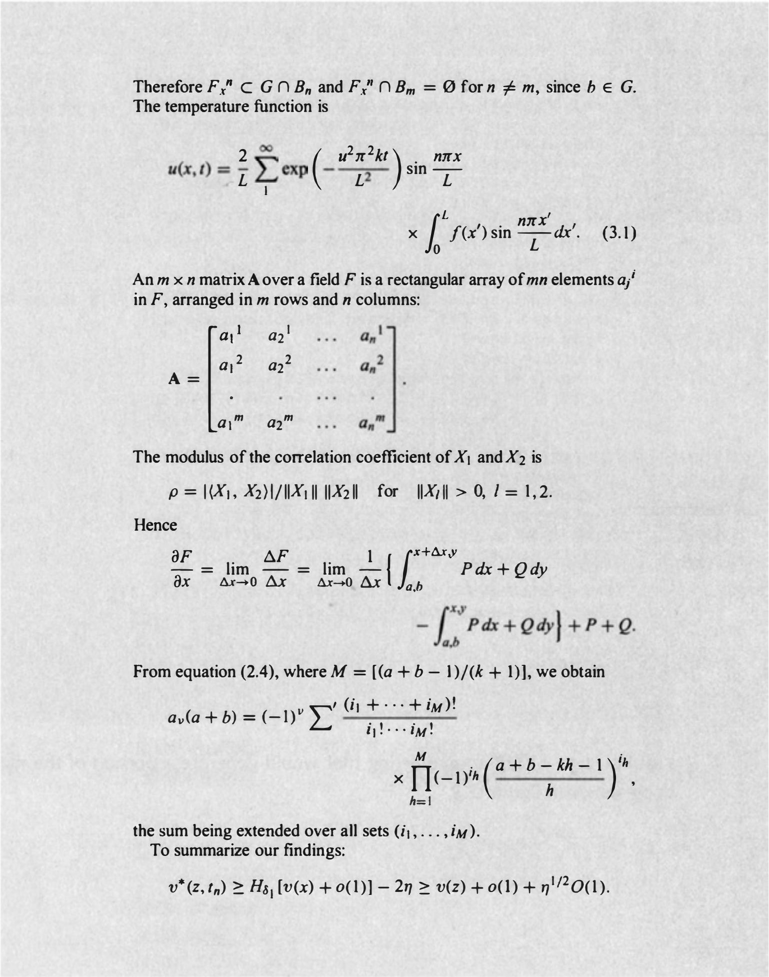

Therefore $F_x{}^n \subset G \cap B_n$ and $F_x{}^n \cap B_m = \emptyset$ for $n \neq m$, since $b \in G$. The temperature function is

$$u(x,t) = \frac{2}{L}\sum_{1}^{\infty} \exp\left(-\frac{u^2\pi^2 kt}{L^2}\right) \sin\frac{n\pi x}{L}$$
$$\times \int_0^L f(x') \sin\frac{n\pi x'}{L} dx'. \quad (3.1)$$

An $m \times n$ matrix $\mathbf{A}$ over a field F is a rectangular array of mn elements $a_j{}^i$ in F, arranged in m rows and n columns:

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} a_1{}^1 & a_2{}^1 & \dots & a_n{}^1 \\ a_1{}^2 & a_2{}^2 & \dots & a_n{}^2 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \dots & \cdot \\ a_1{}^m & a_2{}^m & \dots & a_n{}^m \end{bmatrix}.$$

The modulus of the correlation coefficient of X_1 and X_2 is

$$\rho = |\langle X_1, X_2\rangle| / \|X_1\| \, \|X_2\| \quad \text{for} \quad \|X_l\| > 0,\ l = 1, 2.$$

Hence

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{\Delta F}{\Delta x} = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{1}{\Delta x} \left\{ \int_{a,b}^{x+\Delta x, y} P\,dx + Q\,dy \right.$$
$$\left. - \int_{a,b}^{x,y} P\,dx + Q\,dy \right\} + P + Q.$$

From equation (2.4), where $M = [(a + b - 1)/(k + 1)]$, we obtain

$$a_\nu(a + b) = (-1)^\nu \sum{}' \frac{(i_1 + \cdots + i_M)!}{i_1! \cdots i_M!}$$
$$\times \prod_{h=1}^{M} (-1)^{i_h} \left(\frac{a + b - kh - 1}{h}\right)^{i_h},$$

the sum being extended over all sets $(i_1, \dots, i_M)$.

To summarize our findings:

$$v^*(z, t_n) \geq H_{\delta_1}[v(x) + o(1)] - 2\eta \geq v(z) + o(1) + \eta^{1/2}O(1).$$

FIGURE 12.2. The page of manuscript shown in figure 12.1 set in type.

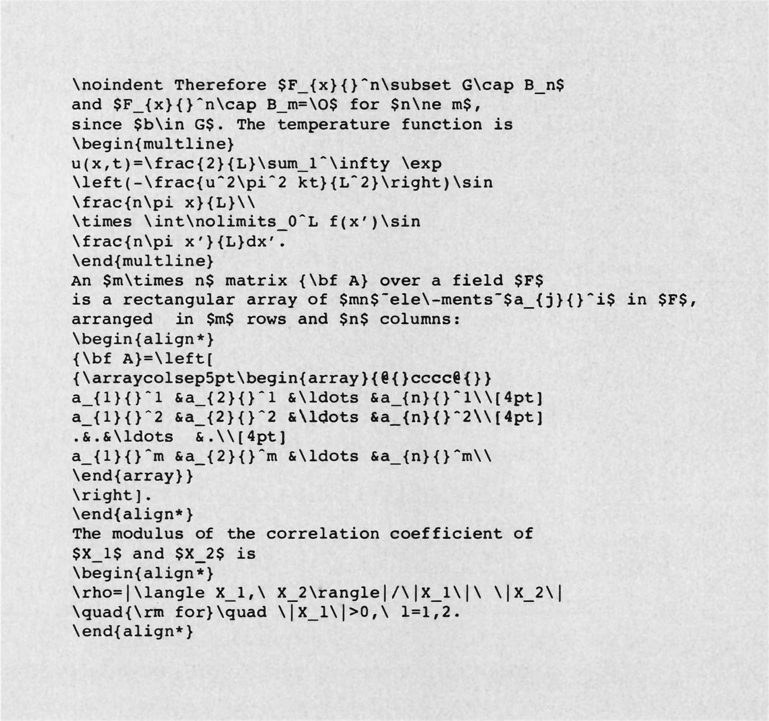

```
\noindent Therefore $F_{x}{}^n\subset G\cap B_n$
and $F_{x}{}^n\cap B_m=\O$ for $n\ne m$,
since $b\in G$. The temperature function is
\begin{multline}
u(x,t)=\frac{2}{L}\sum_1^\infty \exp
\left(-\frac{u^2\pi^2 kt}{L^2}\right)\sin
\frac{n\pi x}{L}\\
\times \int\nolimits_0^L f(x')\sin
\frac{n\pi x'}{L}dx'.
\end{multline}
An $m\times n$ matrix {\bf A} over a field $F$
is a rectangular array of $mn$~ele\-ments~$a_{j}{}^i$ in $F$,
arranged  in $m$ rows and $n$ columns:
\begin{align*}
{\bf A}=\left[
{\arraycolsep5pt\begin{array}{@{}cccc@{}}
a_{1}{}^1 &a_{2}{}^1 &\ldots &a_{n}{}^1\\[4pt]
a_{1}{}^2 &a_{2}{}^2 &\ldots &a_{n}{}^2\\[4pt]
.&.&\ldots  &.\\[4pt]
a_{1}{}^m &a_{2}{}^m &\ldots &a_{n}{}^m\\
\end{array}}
\right].
\end{align*}
The modulus of the correlation coefficient of
$X_1$ and $X_2$ is
\begin{align*}
\rho=|\langle X_1,\ X_2\rangle|/\|X_1\|\ \|X_2\|
\quad{\rm for}\quad \|X_1\|>0,\ 1=1,2.
\end{align*}
```

FIGURE 12.3. LaTeX source listing that would generate a portion of the mathematical copy shown in figure 12.2.

TABLE 12.4. Potentially ambiguous mathematical symbols

Symbols set in type[a]	Marginal notation to operator[b]	Remarks and suggestions for manuscript preparation
a	lc "aye"	
α	lc Gr. alpha	
$\propto$	proportional to	Leave medium space before and after $\propto$ and all binary operation signs ($=$, $\leq$, $\in$, $\cap$, $\subset$, etc.).
∞	infinity	
B	cap "bee"	
β	lc Gr. beta	
χ	lc Gr. chi	
X	cap "ex"	
x	lc "ex"	
$\times$	"times" or "mult"	Leave medium space before and after × and all other operation signs (+, −, ÷, etc.). Do not add space when such signs as −, +, or ± are used to modify symbols or expressions (−3, ±1, etc.). Do not add space when operations appear as subscripts or superscripts.
δ	lc Gr. delta	
∂	partial differential	Simpler to use printer's term "round dee."
d	lc "dee"	
ε	lc Gr. epsilon	
$\in$	"element of"	
η	lc Gr. eta	
n	lc "en"	
γ	lc Gr. gamma	
τ	lc Gr. tau	
r	lc "ar"	
t	lc "tee"	
ι	lc Gr. iota	Avoid using ι and i together because of similarity in print.
i	lc "eye"	
κ	lc Gr. kappa	
k	lc "kay"	
K	cap Gr. kappa	
K	cap "kay"	
l	lc "el"	In some fonts, l and 1 look identical; note "el" but leave numeral unmarked; ℓ should not be used if l is available.
ℓ	script "el"	
1	numeral 1	

TABLE 12.4 *(continued)*

Symbols set in type[a]	Marginal notation to operator[b]	Remarks and suggestions for manuscript preparation
ν	lc Gr. nu	Avoid using ν and v together because of similarity in print.
v	lc "vee"	
O	cap "oh"	Asymptotic upper bounds $O(x)$ and $o(x)$ may occur together.
o	lc "oh"	
0	zero	
Ο	cap Gr. omicron	
ο	lc Gr. omicron	
°	degree sign	
Λ	cap Gr. lambda	
∧	wedge	
ϕ, φ	lc Gr. phi	
∅	empty or null set	
∏	product	
Π	cap Gr. pi	
π	lc Gr. pi	
ρ	lc Gr. rho	
p	lc "pee"	
∑	summation	
Σ	cap Gr. sigma	
θ, ϑ	lc Gr. theta	Preference for form ϑ should be specified by author; θ more commonly used.
Θ	cap Gr. theta	
U	cap "you"	
∪, ⋃	union symbol	
υ	lc Gr. upsilon	
μ	lc Gr. mu	
ν	lc Gr. nu	
u	lc "you"	
ω	lc Gr. omega	
ϖ	round lc Gr. pi	
w	lc "double-u"	
Z	cap "zee"	
z	lc "zee"	
2	numeral 2	

TABLE 12.4 *(continued)*

Symbols set in type[a]	Marginal notation to operator[b]	Remarks and suggestions for manuscript preparation
′	prime	Use apostrophe for prime if no prime available.
^{1}	superscript 1	In handwritten formulas, take care to distinguish prime from superscript 1 and comma from subscript 1.
,	comma	
$_1$	subscript 1	
—	em dash	Use two hyphens for em dash; no space on either side (except in LaTeX, where a double hyphen produces an en dash).
−	minus sign	To indicate subtraction, leave medium space on each side of sign; omit space after sign if negative quantity is represented.
–	en dash	
	multiplication dot	Use centered period for multiplication dot, allowing medium space on each side; do not show space around a center dot in a chemical formula ($CO_3 \cdot H_2$).

NOTE: Symbols and letters that are commonly mistaken for each other are arranged in groups.

[a] Letters in mathematical expressions will automatically be set in italics unless marked otherwise.

[b] Only if symbols, letters, or numbers are badly written or rendered in the manuscript is it necessary to identify them for the typesetter.

13 *Quotations and Dialogue*

Overview 13.1

Permissible Changes to Quotations 13.7

Quotations in Relation to Text 13.9

- *Run In or Set Off* 13.9
- *Assimilation into the Surrounding Text* 13.11
- *Initial Capital or Lowercase Letter* 13.13
- *Introductory Phrases and Punctuation* 13.17
- *Paragraphing* 13.20
- *Poetry* 13.23

Quotation Marks 13.28

- *Double or Single* 13.28
- *Run-In Quotations of More Than One Paragraph* 13.30
- *Quotation Marks Omitted* 13.34
- *Speech, Dialogue, and Conversation* 13.37
- *Drama, Discussions and Interviews, and Field Notes* 13.44

Ellipses 13.48

Interpolations and Clarifications 13.57

Citing Sources in Text 13.62

- *Sources Following Run-In Quotations* 13.66
- *Sources Following Block Quotations* 13.68

Foreign-Language Quotations 13.71

Overview

13.1 ***Scope of this chapter—and where else to look.*** This chapter offers recommendations for incorporating words quoted from other sources—and, to a lesser degree, for presenting speech and other forms of dialogue—in text. For the use of quotation marks for purposes other than direct quotation, see the discussions throughout 7.47–76. For quotation marks with titles of works, see the discussions in 8.154–95. For citing the sources of quotations, discussed only peripherally here, see chapters 14 and 15. For formatting block quotations in a manuscript, see 2.18, 2.19; for the manuscript editor's responsibilities regarding quoted material, see 2.58. For quotation marks in relation to surrounding text and punctuation, see 6.6, 6.9–11.

13.2 ***Quotations and modern scholarship.*** Few ideas spring up on their own, and the act of assimilating the words of others is central to modern scholarship. In the words of Jacques Barzun and Henry F. Graff, "Quoting other writers and citing the places where their words are to be found are by now such common practices that it is pardonable to look upon the habit as natural, not to say instinctive. It is of course nothing of the kind, but a very sophisticated act, peculiar to a civilization that uses printed books, believes in evidence, and makes a point of assigning credit or blame in a detailed, verifiable way."[1] The observation holds true in a world where more and more ideas are created, published, shared, and archived electronically.

13.3 ***Giving credit and seeking permission.*** Whether quoting, paraphrasing, or using others' ideas to advance their own arguments, authors should give explicit credit to the source of those words or ideas. This credit often takes the form of a formal citation incorporated into a note or parenthetical reference. For a full discussion of documentation, see chapters 14 and 15. In addition, written permission may be needed, especially for direct quotations, as follows: for more than a line or two of a poem or a song lyric in copyright; for prose quotations of, say, more than three paragraphs or for many short passages from a work in copyright; or for any excerpt from certain unpublished materials (letters, e-mail messages, and so forth). For more information about permissions, consult chapter 4, especially 4.69–91.

---

[1] *The Modern Researcher*, 5th ed. (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1992), 273.

13.4 ***When to paraphrase rather than quote.*** Authors drawing on the work of others to illustrate their arguments should first decide whether direct quotation or paraphrase will be more effective. Too many quotations with too little commentary can pose a distraction, and readers may choose to skip over long or frequent quotations. And in some cases, authors who notice an error in a passage they wish to quote should paraphrase the original, eliminating the error. For "silent correction," see 13.7 (item 5); for *sic*, see 13.59.

13.5 ***When quotation and attribution is unnecessary.*** Commonly known or readily verifiable facts, proverbs, and other familiar expressions can be stated without quotation or attribution unless the wording is taken directly from another source. Authors, of course, must be absolutely sure of such facts, and editors should flag anything that seems suspicious (see 13.6). No source need be cited for such statements as the following:

On April 14, 1865, a few days after Lee's surrender, Lincoln was assassinated.
No one can convince the young that practice makes perfect.
If reading maketh a full man, Henry is half-empty.

See also 6.51.

13.6 ***Ensuring accuracy of quotations.*** It is impossible to overemphasize the importance of meticulous accuracy in quoting from the works of others. Authors should check every direct quotation against the original or, if the original is unavailable, against a careful transcription of the passage. This should be done *before* the manuscript is submitted to the publisher. Though manuscript editors will often query apparent errors of transcription, they typically will not have access to an author's sources. Moreover, it takes far less time for authors to accurately transcribe quotations during the writing stage than for authors or editors to go back to the original sources once a work is submitted for publication. See also 2.30, 2.132.

Permissible Changes to Quotations

13.7 ***Permissible changes to punctuation, capitalization, and spelling.*** Although in a direct quotation the wording should be reproduced exactly, the following changes are generally permissible to make a passage fit into the syntax and typography of the surrounding text. See also 13.8.

1. Single quotation marks may be changed to double, and double to single (see 13.28); punctuation relative to quotation marks should be adjusted accordingly (see 6.9). Guillemets and other types of quotation marks in a foreign language may be changed to regular single or double quotation marks (see 13.71).
2. The initial letter may be changed to a capital or a lowercase letter (see 13.13–16).
3. A final period may be omitted or changed to a comma as required, and punctuation may be omitted where ellipsis points are used (see 13.48–56).
4. Original note reference marks (and the notes to which they refer) may be omitted unless omission would affect the meaning of the quotation. If an original note is included, the quotation may best be set off as a block quotation (see 13.9), with the note in smaller type at the end, or the note may be summarized in the accompanying text. Authors may, on the other hand, add note references of their own within quotations.
5. Obvious typographic errors may be corrected silently (without comment or *sic*; see 13.59), unless the passage quoted is from an older work or a manuscript source where idiosyncrasies of spelling are generally preserved. If spelling and punctuation are modernized or altered for clarity, readers must be so informed in a note, in a preface, or elsewhere.
6. In quoting from early printed documents, the archaic Latin ʃ (small letter esh, Unicode character U+0283, similar to the integral sign), used to represent a lowercase *s* at the beginning or in the middle but never at the end of a word ("Such goodneʃs of your juʃtice, that our ʃoul . . ."), may be changed to a modern *s*. Similarly, *Vanitie and Vncertaintie* (a quoted title) may be changed to *Vanitie and Uncertaintie*, but writers or editors without a strong background in classical or Renaissance studies should generally be wary of changing *u* to *v*, *i* to *j*, or vice versa. See also 11.61, 11.142–43.

13.8 ***Permissible changes to typography and layout.*** The following elements of typography and layout may be changed to assimilate a quotation to the surrounding text:

1. The typeface or font should be changed to agree with the surrounding text.
2. Words in full capitals in the original may be set in small caps, if that is the preferred style for the surrounding text. (See also 10.8.)
3. In dialogue, names of speakers may be moved from a centered position to flush left.
4. Underlined words in a quoted manuscript may be printed as italics, unless the underlining itself is considered integral to the source or otherwise worthy of reproducing.
5. In quoting correspondence, such matters as paragraph indention and the position of the salutation and signature may be adjusted.

For paragraph indention in block quotations, see 13.20. For reproducing poetry extracts, see 13.23–27. For permissible changes to titles of books, articles, poems, and other works, see 8.163.

Quotations in Relation to Text

Run In or Set Off

13.9 ***Run-in versus block quotations.*** Quoted text may be either run in to the surrounding text and enclosed in quotation marks, "like this," or set off as a block quotation, or extract. Block quotations, which are not enclosed in quotation marks, always start a new line. They are further distinguished from the surrounding text by being indented (from the left and sometimes from the right) or set in smaller type or a different font from the text. These matters are normally decided by the publisher's designer or by journal style. Authors preparing block quotations should simply use the indention feature of their word processors (see 2.18). For poetry, see 13.23–27.

13.10 ***Choosing between run-in and block quotations.*** In deciding whether to run in or set off a quotation, length is usually the deciding factor. In general, a short quotation, especially one that is not a full sentence, should be run in. A hundred words or more (at least six to eight lines of text in a typical manuscript) can generally be set off as a block quotation. Other criteria apply, however. A quotation of two or more paragraphs is best set off (see 13.20–22), as are quoted correspondence (if salutations, signatures, and such are included), lists, and any material that requires special formatting. If many quotations of varying length occur close together, running them all in may make for easier reading. But where quotations are being compared or otherwise used as entities in themselves, it may be better to set them all as block quotations, however short. Poetry is set off far more often than prose (see 13.23–27).

Assimilation into the Surrounding Text

13.11 ***Logical and grammatical assimilation.*** In incorporating fragmentary quotations into a text, phrase the surrounding sentence in such a way that the quoted words fit into it logically and grammatically, quoting only as much of the original as is necessary.

The narrator's constant references to "malicious code and obsolete data" detract from a more fundamental issue—that we are dumping "the burden of human history" onto computer hard drives. It is this vision of the future that is most alarming: "If (when?) we run out of sources of electricity," she asks, "will we forget who we are?"

13.12 *Integrating tenses and pronouns.* In quoting verbatim, writers need to integrate tenses and pronouns into the new context.

[*Original*] Mr. Moll took particular pains to say to you, gentlemen, that these eleven people here are guilty of murder; he calls this a cold-blooded, deliberate and premeditated murder.

[*As quoted*] According to Darrow, Moll had told the jury that the eleven defendants were "guilty of murder" and had described the murder as "cold-blooded, deliberate and premeditated."

Occasional adjustments to the original may be bracketed. This device should be used sparingly, however.

Mr. Graham has resolutely ducked the issue, saying he won't play the game of rumormongering, even though he has "learned from [his] mistakes."

Initial Capital or Lowercase Letter

13.13 *Changing capitalization to suit syntax—an overview.* Aside from proper nouns and some of the words derived from them (see 8.1), words in English publications are normally lowercased unless they begin a sentence (or, often, a line of poetry). To suit this requirement, the first word in a quoted passage must often be adjusted to conform to the surrounding text. In most types of works, this adjustment may be done silently, as such capitalization does not normally affect the significance of the quoted matter, which is assumed to have been taken from another context. In some types of works, however, it may be obligatory to indicate the change by bracketing the initial quoted letter; for examples of this practice, appropriate to legal writing and some types of textual commentary, see 13.16.

13.14 *Initial capital or lowercase—run-in quotations.* When a quotation introduced midsentence forms a syntactical part of the sentence, it begins with a lowercase letter even if the original begins with a capital.

Benjamin Franklin admonishes us to "plough deep while sluggards sleep."

With another aphorism he reminded his readers that "experience keeps a dear school, but fools will learn in no other"—an observation as true today as then.

When the quotation has a more remote syntactic relation to the rest of the sentence, the initial letter remains capitalized.

As Franklin advised, "Plough deep while sluggards sleep."

His aphorism "Experience keeps a dear school, but fools will learn in no other" is a cogent warning to people of all ages.

On the other hand, if a quotation that is only a part of a sentence in the original forms a complete sentence as quoted, a lowercase letter may be changed to a capital if appropriate. In the example that follows, "those" begins midsentence in the original (see 13.15).

Aristotle put it this way: "Those who are eminent in virtue usually do not stir up insurrections, always a minority."
but
Aristotle believed that "those who are eminent in virtue usually do not stir up insurrections, always a minority."

13.15 ***Initial capital or lowercase—block quotations.*** The consideration of whether to lowercase a capital letter beginning a block quotation is exactly the same as it is for run-in quotations (see 13.14): the initial letter of a block quotation that is capitalized in the original may be lowercased if the syntax demands it. In the following example, the quotation from Aristotle in the Jowett translation (Modern Library) begins in the original with a capital letter and a paragraph indention. See also 13.20.

In discussing the reasons for political disturbances, Aristotle observes that

> revolutions also break out when opposite parties, e.g. the rich and the people, are equally balanced, and there is little or no middle class; for, if either party were manifestly superior, the other would not risk an attack upon them. And, for this reason, those who are eminent in virtue usually do not stir up insurrections, always a minority. Such are the beginnings and causes of the disturbances and revolutions to which every form of government is liable. (*Politics* 5.4)

On the other hand, the capital should be retained—or a lowercase letter should be changed to a capital—if the syntax requires it. See also 13.17.

In discussing the reasons for political disturbances, Aristotle makes the following observations:

> Revolutions also break out when opposite parties, e.g. the rich and the people, are equally balanced, and there is little or no middle class; . . .

13.16 ***Brackets to indicate a change in capitalization.*** In some legal writing, textual commentary, and other contexts, it is considered obligatory to indicate any change in capitalization by brackets. This practice, easy enough to apply in any context but unnecessary in most, must be practiced consistently throughout a work.

According to article 6, section 6, she is given the power "[t]o extend or renew any existing indebtedness."

"[R]eal estates may be conveyed by lease and release, or bargain and sale," according to section 2 of the Northwest Ordinance.

Let us compare Aristotle's contention that "[i]nferiors revolt in order that they may be equal, and equals that they may be superior" (*Politics* 5.2), with his later observation that "[r]evolutions also break out when opposite parties, e.g. the rich and the people, are equally balanced" (5.4).

Introductory Phrases and Punctuation

13.17 ***Colon preceding a quotation.*** A formal introductory phrase, such as *thus* or *as follows*, is usually followed by a colon.

The role of the author has been variously described. Henry Fielding, at the beginning of his *History of Tom Jones*, defines it thus: "An author ought to consider himself, not as a gentleman who gives a private or eleemosynary treat, but rather as one who keeps a public ordinary, at which all persons are welcome for their money."

13.18 ***Comma preceding a quotation.*** When it is simply a matter of identifying a speaker, a comma is used after *said*, *replied*, *asked*, and similar verbs; a colon, though never wrong in such instances, should be used sparingly (e.g., to introduce quotations that consist of more than one sentence).

Garrett replied, “I hope you are not referring to me.”

Fish writes, “What [the students] did was move the words out of a context (the faculty club door) in which they had a literal and obvious meaning into another context (my classroom) in which the meaning was no less obvious and literal and yet was different.”

13.19 ***Period rather than colon preceding a quotation.*** Unless introduced by *thus*, *as follows*, or other wording that requires a colon, a block quotation may be preceded by a period rather than a colon. Such usage should be applied consistently.

He then took a clearly hostile position toward Poland, having characterized it as a Fascist state that oppressed the Ukrainians, the Belorussians, and others.

> Under present conditions, suppression of that state will mean that there will be one less Fascist state. It will not be a bad thing if Poland suffers a defeat and thus enables us to include new territories and new populations in the socialist system.

Paragraphing

13.20 ***Block quotations of more than one paragraph.*** Quoted material of more than a paragraph, even if very brief, is best set off as a block quotation. (For a less desirable alternative, see 13.30.) A multiparagraph block quotation should generally reflect the paragraph breaks of the original. But if the first paragraph quoted includes the beginning of that paragraph, it need not start with a first-line paragraph indention. Subsequent paragraphs in the quotation should be indicated either by first-line paragraph indention or (less desirably) by extra line space between the paragraphs (see also 13.22). The following example, from Jane Austen's *Pride and Prejudice*, includes four full paragraphs:

He began to wish to know more of her, and as a step towards conversing with her himself, attended to her conversation with others. His doing so drew her notice. It was at Sir William Lucas's, where a large party were assembled.

“What does Mr. Darcy mean,” said she to Charlotte, “by listening to my conversation with Colonel Forster?”

“That is a question which Mr. Darcy only can answer.”

“But if he does it any more I shall certainly let him know that I see what he is about. He has a very satirical eye, and if I do not begin by being impertinent myself, I shall soon grow afraid of him.”

If the first part of the opening paragraph were to be omitted, it would still begin flush left. For ellipsis points at the beginning of paragraphs, see 13.54.

13.21 ***Block quotations beginning in text.*** A long quotation may begin with a few words run in to the text. This device should be used only when text intervenes between the quoted matter in the text and its continuation.

"There is no safe trusting to dictionaries and definitions," observed Charles Lamb.

> We should more willingly fall in with this popular language, if we did not find *brutality* sometimes awkwardly coupled with *valour* in the same vocabulary. The comic writers . . . have contributed not a little to mislead us upon this point. To see a hectoring fellow exposed and beaten upon the stage, has something in it wonderfully diverting. ("Popular Fallacies," *Essays of Elia*, 277)

"In short," says Crane, summarizing Gordon's philosophy,

> there has been "almost a continual improvement" in all branches of human knowledge; . . .

A permissible alternative is to set off the entire quotation, enclosing the intervening words of text in brackets.

> There is no safe trusting to dictionaries and definitions [observed Charles Lamb]. We should more willingly . . .

13.22 ***Text following a block quotation.*** If the text following a block quotation is a continuation of the paragraph that introduces the quotation, it begins flush left. If the resuming text begins a new paragraph, it receives a paragraph indention. In works where all new paragraphs appear flush left, however, it may be necessary to impose extra line spacing before new paragraphs following block quotations.

Poetry

13.23 ***Setting off poetry.*** Two or more lines of verse are best set off as a block quotation (cf. 14.33). A poetry quotation, if isolated, is often visually centered on the page between the left and right margins (usually relative to the longest line), but if two or more stanzas of the same poem appear on the same page, a uniform indention from the left may work better (see 13.24).

A half line to a full line of space should appear between stanzas. Within each piece or stanza, the indention pattern of the original should be reproduced (but indention should be distinguished from runover lines; see 13.25). For placement of the source, see 13.69.

Sure there was wine
Before my sighs did drie it: there was corn
Before my tears did drown it.
Is the yeare onely lost to me?
Have I no bayes to crown it?
No flowers, no garlands gay? all blasted?
All wasted?
(George Herbert, "The Collar")

If the quotation does not begin with a full line, space approximating the omitted part should be left.

there was corn
Before my tears did drown it.

13.24 ***Uniform indention for poetry.*** Where all or most poetic quotations consist of blank verse (as in studies of Shakespeare) or are very long, uniform indention from the left margin usually works best (e.g., a left indention that matches the one, if any, used for prose extracts).

I have full cause of weeping, but this heart
Shall break into a hundred thousand flaws
Or ere I'll weep. O Fool! I shall go mad.

13.25 ***Long lines and runovers in poetry.*** Runover lines (the remainder of lines too long to appear as a single line) are usually indented one em from the line above, as in the following quotation from Walt Whitman's "Song of Myself":

My tongue, every atom of my blood, form'd from this
soil, this air,
Born here of parents born here from parents the same,
and their parents the same,
I, now thirty-seven years old in perfect health begin,
Hoping to cease not till death.

Runover lines, although indented, should be distinct from new lines deliberately indented by the poet (as in the Herbert poem quoted in 13.23).

Generally, a unique and uniform indent for runovers will be enough to accomplish this.

13.26 ***Quotation marks in poems.*** In a departure from its former practice, Chicago no longer recommends "clearing" quotation marks at the start of a line of poetry—that is, placing them outside the alignment of the poem, with lines left-aligned as if the quotation marks were not there. Quotation marks at the start of a line should instead be aligned with the other lines in the excerpt.

> He holds him with his skinny hand.
> "There was a ship," quoth he.
> "Hold off! unhand me, grey-beard loon!"
> Eftsoons his hand dropt he.

13.27 ***Run-in poetry quotations.*** If space or context in the text or in a note requires that two or more lines be run in, the lines are separated by a slash, with one space on either side (in printed works, a thin space to an en space).

> Andrew Marvell's praise of John Milton, "Thou has not missed one thought that could be fit, / And all that was improper does omit" ("On *Paradise Lost*"), might well serve as our motto.

For running in more than one stanza (to be avoided if at all possible), see 13.32.

Quotation Marks

Double or Single

13.28 ***Quotations and "quotes within quotes."*** Quoted words, phrases, and sentences run into the text are enclosed in double quotation marks. Single quotation marks enclose quotations within quotations; double marks, quotations within these; and so on. (The practice in the United Kingdom and elsewhere is often the reverse: single marks are used first, then double, and so on.) When the material quoted consists entirely of a quotation within a quotation, only one set of quotation marks need be employed (usually double quotation marks). For permissible changes from single to double quotation marks and vice versa, see 13.7 (item 1); see also 13.61. For dialogue, see 13.37. For technical uses of single quotation marks, see 7.50, 8.129.

> "Don't be absurd!" said Henry. "To say that 'I mean what I say' is the same as 'I say what I mean' is to be as confused as Alice at the Mad Hatter's tea party. You remember what the Hatter said to her: 'Not the same thing a bit! Why you might just as well say that "I see what I eat" is the same thing as "I eat what I see"!'"

Note carefully not only the placement of the single and double closing quotation marks but also that of the exclamation points in relation to those marks in the example above. Question marks and exclamation points are placed just within the set of quotation marks ending the element to which such terminal punctuation belongs. For the placement of other punctuation—commas, periods, question marks, and so on—in relation to closing quotation marks, see 6.9–11.

13.29 ***Quotation marks in block quotations.*** Although material set off as a block quotation is not enclosed in quotation marks, quoted matter *within* the block quotation is enclosed in double quotation marks—in other words, treated as it would be in text (see 13.28). An author or editor who changes a run-in quotation to a block quotation must delete the opening and closing quotation marks and change any internal ones. The following examples illustrate the same material first in run-in form and then as a block quotation:

> The narrator then breaks in: "Imagine Bart's surprise, dear reader, when Emma turned to him and said, contemptuously, 'What "promise"?'"

> The narrator then breaks in:
>
> > Imagine Bart's surprise, dear reader, when Emma turned to him and said, contemptuously, "What 'promise'?"

Similarly, converting a block quotation to a run-in quotation requires adding and altering quotation marks. For interpolations that include quoted matter, see 13.61.

Run-In Quotations of More Than One Paragraph

13.30 ***Quotation marks across paragraphs.*** If quoted material of more than one paragraph cannot be set as a block quotation (which is normally much preferred; see 13.10), quotation marks are needed at the beginning of ***each*** paragraph but at the end of only the *final* paragraph. (Note that each successive paragraph must begin on a new line, as in the original.) The same practice is followed in dialogue when one speaker's remarks extend over more than one paragraph.

13.31 *Quotations within quotations across paragraphs.* If a run-in quoted passage contains an interior quotation that runs for more than one paragraph, a single quotation mark appears at the beginning and end of the interior quotation, and both double and single quotation marks appear before each new paragraph belonging to it. If the interior quotation concludes at the same point as the including one, the single closing quotation mark precedes the double one.

13.32 *Running in more than one stanza of poetry.* A quotation that spans more than one stanza should be presented as an extract if at all possible (see 13.23). If it must be run in to the text (set off by quotation marks), two slashes (//) should appear between stanzas. For the use of the slash between run-in lines of poetry, see 13.27.

13.33 *Running in letters.* A letter quoted in its entirety should be set off as a block quotation. In the undesirable event that it must be run in, it should carry opening quotation marks before the first line (including the salutation) and before each paragraph. Closing marks appear only after the last line (often the signature). See 13.30.

Quotation Marks Omitted

13.34 *Epigraphs.* Quotation marks are not used around epigraphs (quotations used as ornaments preceding a text rather than as illustration or documentation). Like block quotations, epigraphs receive a distinctive typographic treatment—often being set in a smaller typeface and indented from the right or left, and sometimes italicized. Treatment of sources, which are usually set on a separate line, also varies, though more than one epigraph used in the same work should receive consistent treatment. For more on sources, see 13.68–70. See also 1.36.

Oh, what a tangled web we weave,
When first we practice to deceive!
—Sir Walter Scott

> It is a truth universally acknowledged, that a single man in possession of a good fortune, must be in want of a wife.
>
> Jane Austen, *Pride and Prejudice*

13.35 ***Decorative initials ("drop caps" and raised initials).*** When the first word of a chapter or section opens with a large raised or dropped initial letter, and the first words of the chapter or section consist of a run-in quotation, the opening quotation mark is often omitted.

> OF THE MAKING OF MANY BOOKS there is no end," declared an ancient Hebrew sage, who had himself magnificently aggravated the situation he was decrying.

If the opening quotation mark is included, it should appear in the same size and with the same vertical alignment as the regular text.

13.36 ***Maxims, questions, and the like.*** Maxims, mottoes, rules, and other familiar expressions, sometimes enclosed in quotation marks, are discussed in 6.51 and 8.197. Questions that do not require quotation marks are discussed in 6.52 and 6.67.

Speech, Dialogue, and Conversation

13.37 ***Direct discourse.*** Direct discourse or dialogue is traditionally enclosed in quotation marks. A change in speaker is usually indicated by a new paragraph, as in the following excerpt from *Huckleberry Finn*:

> "Ransomed? What's that?"
>
> "I don't know. But that's what they do. I've seen it in books; and so of course that's what we've got to do."
>
> "But how can we do it if we don't know what it is?"
>
> "Why, blame it all, we've *got* to do it. Don't I tell you it's in the books? Do you want to go to doing different from what's in the books, and get things all muddled up?"

If one speech (usually a particularly long one) occupies more than a paragraph, opening quotation marks are needed at the beginning of each new paragraph, with a closing quotation mark placed at the end of only the *final* paragraph (see also 13.30).

13.38 ***Single-word speech.*** Words such as *yes*, *no*, *where*, *how*, and *why*, when used singly, are not enclosed in quotation marks except in direct discourse. See also 6.68.

Ezra always answered yes; he could never say no to a friend.
Please stop asking why.
but
"Yes," he replied weakly.
Again she repeated, "Why?"

13.39 *Faltering or interrupted speech.* Suspension points—also used to indicate an ellipsis—may be used to suggest faltering or fragmented speech accompanied by confusion or insecurity. In the examples below, note the relative positions of the suspension points and other punctuation. (For the use of suspension points to indicate ellipses, see 13.48–56.)

"I . . . I . . . that is, we . . . yes, *we* have made an awful blunder!"
"The ship . . . oh my God! . . . it's sinking!" cried Henrietta.
"But . . . but . . . ," said Tom.

Interruptions or abrupt changes in thought are usually indicated by em dashes. See 6.84.

13.40 *Alternatives to quotation marks.* In some languages, em dashes are used to present dialogue; for examples, see 11.34, 11.52, 11.80, 11.121. For the use of guillemets (« »), see 11.32, 11.44, 11.52, 11.79, 11.121.

13.41 *Unspoken discourse.* Thought, imagined dialogue, and other interior discourse may be enclosed in quotation marks or not, according to the context or the writer's preference.

"I don't care if we have offended Morgenstern," thought Vera. "Besides," she told herself, "they're all fools."

Why, we wondered, did we choose this route?

The following passage from James Joyce's *Ulysses* illustrates interior monologue and stream of consciousness without need of quotation marks:

Reading two pages apiece of seven books every night, eh? I was young. You bowed to yourself in the mirror, stepping forward to applause earnestly, striking face. Hurray for the Goddamned idiot! Hray! No-one saw: tell no-one. Books you were going to write with letters for titles. Have you read his F?

13.42 *Numerals in direct discourse.* In quoting directly from spoken sources (e.g., interviews, speeches, or dialogue from a film or a play), or when writing direct discourse for a drama or a work of fiction, numbers that might otherwise be rendered as numerals can often be spelled out. This practice requires editorial discretion. Years can usually be rendered as numerals, as can trade names that include numerals. And for dialogue that includes more than a few large numbers, it may be more practical to use numerals. See also 9.2, 9.7.

Jarred's answer was a mix of rage and humiliation: "For the last time, I do not have seven hundred thirty-seven dollars and eleven cents! I don't even have a quarter for the parking meter, for that matter."

Like most proofreaders, she is a perfectionist. "I'm never happy with a mere ninety-nine and forty-four one-hundredths percent."
but
"Do you prefer shopping at 7-Eleven or Circle K?"

"I didn't get around to reading *Nineteen Eighty-Four* until 1985," he finally admitted.

13.43 ***Indirect discourse.*** Indirect discourse, which paraphrases dialogue, takes no quotation marks. See also 6.52.

Tom told Huck they had to do it that way because the books said so.
Very well, you say, but is there no choice?

Drama, Discussions and Interviews, and Field Notes

13.44 ***Drama.*** In plays, the speaker's name is usually set in a font distinct from the dialogue—caps and small caps, for example, or all small caps. The dialogue is not enclosed in quotation marks and is usually set in flush-and-hang style, or hanging indention (the style most often used in bibliographies and indexes and illustrated in the following examples).

R. ROISTER DOISTER. Except I have her to my wife, I shall run mad.
M. MERYGREEKE. Nay, "unwise" perhaps, but I warrant you for "mad."

Stage directions are usually italicized.

ALGERNON. That is quite a different matter. She is my aunt. (*Takes plate from below.*) Have some bread and butter. The bread and butter is for Gwendolen. Gwendolen is devoted to bread and butter.
JACK, *advancing to table and helping himself.* And very good bread and butter it is too.

13.45 ***Shared lines and runover lines in verse drama.*** In quoted excerpts, any indention used to indicate a single line of verse shared between two speakers in a play should be replicated (as in the example below, where the line begun by Barnardo is finished by Marcellus). Runover lines may be indicated as in poetry by an indention of one em or more from the line above (see also 13.25).

Barnardo.
  It would be spoke to.
Marcellus.   Speak to it, Horatio.
Horatio.
  What art thou that usurp'st this time of night,
  Together with that fair and warlike form
  In which the majesty of buried Denmark
  Did sometimes march? By heaven, I charge thee,
    speak.

13.46 ***Discussions and interviews.*** The transcription of a discussion or an interview is treated in much the same way as drama (see 13.44). Interjections such as "laughter" are italicized and enclosed in brackets (rather than parentheses). Paragraph indention is usually preferred to flush-and-hang style, though flush-and-hang, which allows easier identification of the speaker, may work better if several speakers' names appear and the comments are relatively brief. Though speakers' names are usually followed by a period, a colon may be used instead.

Interviewer. You weren't thinking that this technology would be something you could use to connect to the Office of Tibet in New York or to different Tibet support groups in Europe?

Respondent. No. Nobody seemed to have anything to do with GreenNet in the Tibet world at that time. That came much later. That's not really right. I specifically wasn't interested in connecting to the community of Tibet martyrs and fellow sufferers [*laughs*] and the emotional pathological there-but-for-the-grace-of-god-go-I people.

An author's previously unpublished transcriptions of interviews or discussions can usually be edited for such matters as capitalization, spelling, and minor grammatical slips or elisions. If an author has imposed more significant alterations, these should be explained in a note, a preface, or elsewhere. Previously published transcriptions should be quoted as they appear in the original source.

13.47 ***Field notes.*** An author's transcriptions of unpublished field notes (the author's own or those of a colleague or assistant) pose a special case. Unlike quotations from published sources or transcriptions of interviews, field notes need not be presented verbatim—whether they are presented as quotations or woven into the text. Rather, they should be edited for consistency—with other notes and with the surrounding text—in matters of spelling, capitalization, punctuation, treatment of numbers, and so forth. And even if the author is in possession of signed releases, any otherwise anonymous subjects or informants should generally be presented under pseudonyms; a note should be appended to the text to indicate that this is the case. Editors should query authors if it is not clear that appropriate provisions have been made.

Ellipses

13.48 ***Ellipses defined.*** An *ellipsis* is the omission of a word, phrase, line, paragraph, or more from a quoted passage. Such omissions are made of material that is considered irrelevant to the discussion at hand (or, occasionally, to adjust for the grammar of the surrounding text). Chicago style is to indicate such omissions by the use of three spaced periods (but see 13.51) rather than by another device such as asterisks. These points (or dots) are called ellipsis points when they indicate an ellipsis and suspension points when they indicate suspended or interrupted thought (see 13.39). They must always appear together on the same line (through the use of nonbreaking spaces, available in most software applications), along with any following punctuation; if an ellipsis appears at the beginning of a line, any preceding punctuation (including a period) will appear at the end of the line above. If they prefer, authors may prepare their manuscripts using the single-glyph three-dot ellipsis character on their word processors (Unicode 2026), usually with a space on either side; editors following Chicago style will replace these with spaced periods.

13.49 ***Danger of skewing meaning.*** Since quotations from another source have been separated from their original context, particular care needs to be exercised when eliding text to ensure that the sense of the original is not lost or misrepresented. A deletion must not result in a statement alien to the original material. And in general, ellipses should not be used to join two statements that are far apart in the original. Accuracy of sense and emphasis must accompany accuracy of transcription.

13.50 ***When not to use ellipsis points.*** Ellipsis points are normally *not* used (1) before the first word of a quotation, even if the beginning of the original sentence has been omitted; or (2) after the last word of a quotation, even if the end of the original sentence has been omitted, unless the sentence as quoted is deliberately incomplete (see 13.53).

13.51 ***Ellipses with periods.*** A period is added *before* an ellipsis to indicate the omission of the end of a sentence, unless the sentence is deliberately incomplete (see 13.53). Similarly, a period at the end of a sentence in the original is retained before an ellipsis indicating the omission of material immediately following the period. What precedes and, normally, what follows the four dots should be grammatically complete sentences as quoted, even if part of either sentence has been omitted. A complete passage from Emerson's essay "Politics" reads:

> The spirit of our American radicalism is destructive and aimless: it is not loving; it has no ulterior and divine ends; but is destructive only out of hatred and selfishness. On the other side, the conservative party, composed of the most moderate, able, and cultivated part of the population, is timid, and merely defensive of property. It vindicates no right, it aspires to no real good, it brands no crime, it proposes no generous policy, it does not build, nor write, nor cherish the arts, nor foster religion, nor establish schools, nor encourage science, nor emancipate the slave, nor befriend the poor, or the Indian, or the immigrant. From neither party, when in power, has the world any benefit to expect in science, art, or humanity, at all commensurate with the resources of the nation.

The passage might be shortened as follows:

> The spirit of our American radicalism is destructive and aimless. . . . On the other side, the conservative party . . . is timid, and merely defensive of property. . . . It does not build, nor write, nor cherish the arts, nor foster religion, nor establish schools.

Note that the first word after an ellipsis is capitalized if it begins a new grammatical sentence. Some types of works require that such changes to capitalization be bracketed; see 13.16. See also 13.56.

13.52 ***Ellipses with other punctuation.*** Other punctuation appearing in the original text—a comma, a colon, a semicolon, a question mark, or an exclamation point—may precede or follow three (but never four) ellipsis points. Whether to include the additional mark of punctuation depends on whether keeping it aids comprehension or is required for the grammar of the sentence. Placement of the other punctuation depends on whether the omission precedes or follows the mark; when the omission precedes it, a nonbreaking space should be used between the ellipsis and the mark of punctuation to prevent the mark from carrying over to the beginning of a new line (see 13.48). Note that this before-or-after distinction is usually *not* made with periods, where—without the aid of brackets (see 13.56)—it is likely to go unnoticed (see 13.51).

> It does not build, . . . nor cherish the arts, nor foster religion.

> As to *Endymion*, was it a poem . . . to be treated contemptuously by those who had celebrated, with various degrees of complacency and panegyric, *Paris*, and *Woman*, and *A Syrian Tale* . . . ? Are these the men who . . . presumed to draw a parallel between the Rev. Mr. Milman and Lord Byron?

> When a species . . . increases inordinately in numbers in a small tract, epidemics . . . often ensue: and here we have a limiting check independent of the struggle for life. But even some of these so-called epidemics appear to be due to parasitic worms . . . : and here comes in a sort of struggle between the parasite and its prey.

13.53 ***Deliberately incomplete sentence.*** Three dots are used at the end of a quoted sentence that is deliberately left grammatically incomplete.

> Everyone knows that the Declaration of Independence begins with the sentence "When, in the course of human events . . ." But how many people can recite more than the first few lines of the document?

> Have you had a chance to look at the example beginning "The spirit of our American radicalism . . ."?

Note that no space intervenes between a final ellipsis point and a closing quotation mark.

13.54 ***Whole or partial paragraphs omitted.*** The omission of one or more paragraphs within a quotation is indicated by four ellipsis points at the end of the paragraph preceding the omitted part. (If that paragraph ends with an incomplete sentence, only three points are used; see 13.53.) If the first part of a paragraph is omitted within a quotation, a paragraph indention and three ellipsis points appear before the first quoted word. It is thus possible to use ellipsis points both at the end of one paragraph and at the beginning of the next, as illustrated in the following excerpt from Alexander Pope's "Letter to a Noble Lord":

I should be obliged indeed to lessen this respect, if all the nobility . . . are but so many hereditary fools, if the privilege of lords be to want brains, if noblemen can hardly write or read. . . .

Were it the mere excess of your Lordship's wit, that carried you thus triumphantly over all the bounds of decency, I might consider your Lordship on your Pegasus, as a sprightly hunter on a mettled horse. . . .

. . . Unrivalled as you are, in making a figure, and in making a speech, methinks, my Lord, you may well give up the poor talent of making a distich.

13.55 ***Ellipsis points in poetry and verse drama.*** Omission of the end of a line of verse is indicated by four ellipsis points if what precedes them is a complete grammatical sentence, otherwise by three. The omission of a full line or of several consecutive lines within a quoted poem or drama in verse is indicated by one line of widely spaced dots approximately the length of the line above (or of the missing line, if that is determinable). See also 13.23–27.

Type of the antique Rome! Rich reliquary
Of lofty contemplation . . .
(Edgar Allan Poe, "The Coliseum")

She would dwell on such dead themes, not as one who remembers,
But rather as one who sees.
. . . .
Past things retold were to her as things existent,
Things present but as a tale.
(Thomas Hardy, "One We Knew")

This royal throne of kings, this sceptred isle,
. . . .
This blessed plot, this earth, this realm, this England.
(*Richard II*, 2.1.40–50)

13.56 ***Bracketed ellipses.*** Especially in languages that make liberal use of suspension points, it is a common practice to bracket ellipses (see, e.g., 11.35; see also 11.10). In an English context where both ellipses and suspension points are needed, the latter may be explained at each instance in a note (e.g., "suspension points in original"); for more than a few such instances, authors may choose instead to bracket ellipses, but only after explaining such a decision in a note, a preface, or elsewhere. The rules for placing bracketed ellipses are the same as the rules outlined in the rest of this section, with one exception—a period is placed before or after the ellipsis depending on its placement in the original. Compare the passage that follows to the passages in 13.51.

> The spirit of our American radicalism is destructive and aimless [. . .]. On the other side, the conservative party [. . .] is timid, and merely defensive of property. [. . .] It does not build, nor write, nor cherish the arts, nor foster religion, nor establish schools.

Note that a space appears before an opening bracket; a space appears after a closing bracket except when a period, comma, or other mark of punctuation follows. Within brackets, the sequence is bracket-period-space-period-space-period-bracket. Nonbreaking spaces are needed only for the two spaces between the periods within the brackets.

Interpolations and Clarifications

13.57 ***Missing or illegible words.*** In reproducing or quoting from a document in which certain words are missing or illegible, an author may use ellipsis points (see 13.48–56), a bracketed comment or guess (sometimes followed by a question mark), or both. If ellipsis points alone are used (useful for a passage with more than a few lacunae), their function as a stand-in for missing or illegible words must be explained in the text or in a note. If a bracketed gloss comes from a different source, the source must be cited in a note or elsewhere. See also 6.97.

> If you will assure me of your . . . [illegible], I shall dedicate my life to your endeavor.

> She marched out of the door, headed for the [president's?] office.

A 2-em dash (see 6.90), sometimes in combination with an interpolated guess, may also be used for missing material. As with ellipsis points, this device should be used consistently and should be explained (in prefatory material or a note).

> I have great marvel that ye will so soon incline to every man his device and [counsel and ——] specially in matters of small impor[tance ——] yea, and as [it is] reported [unto me——] causes as meseemeth th[a——] nothing to [——]ne gentlewomen.

13.58 ***Bracketed clarifications.*** Insertions may be made in quoted material to clarify an ambiguity, to provide a missing word or letters (see 13.57), to correct an error, or, in a translation, to give the original word or phrase where the English fails to convey the exact sense. Such interpolations, which should be kept to a minimum lest they irritate or distract readers, are enclosed in brackets (never in parentheses). See also 6.97, 13.12.

> Marcellus, doubtless in anxious suspense, asks Barnardo, "What, has this thing [the ghost of Hamlet's father] appear'd again tonight?"

> "Well," said she, "if Mr. L[owell] won't go, then neither will I."

> Saha once remarked of Nehru that "his position in this country can be described by a phrase which Americans use with respect to Abraham Lincoln [read: George Washington], 'first in war, first in peace.'"

13.59 ***"Sic."*** Literally meaning "so," "thus," "in this manner," and traditionally set in italics, *sic* may be inserted in brackets following a word misspelled or wrongly used in the original. This device should be used only where it is relevant to call attention to such matters (and especially where readers might otherwise assume the mistake is in the transcription rather than the original) or where paraphrase or silent correction is inappropriate (see 13.4, 13.7 [item 5]).

> In September 1862, J. W. Chaffin, president of the Miami Conference of Wesleyan Methodist Connection, urged Lincoln that "the confiscation law past [*sic*] at the last session of Congress should be faithfully executed" and that "to neglect this national righteousness" would prove "disastrous to the American people."

Sic should *not* be used merely to call attention to unconventional spellings, which should be explained (if at all) in a note or in prefatory material. Similarly, where material with many errors and variant spellings (such as a collection of informal letters) is reproduced as written, a prefatory comment or a note to that effect will make a succession of *sic*s unnecessary.

13.60 ***"Italics added."*** An author wishing to call particular attention to a word or phrase in quoted material may italicize it but must tell readers what has been done, by means of such formulas as "italics mine," "italics added," "emphasis added," or "emphasis mine." This information appears either in parentheses following the quotation or in a source note to the quotation. If there are italics in the original of the passage quoted, the information is best enclosed in brackets and placed directly after the added italics. Consistency in method throughout a work is essential.

> You have watched the conduct of Ireland in the difficult circumstances of the last nine months, and that conduct I do not hesitate to risk saying on your behalf has evoked in every breast a responsive voice of sympathy, and an increased conviction that we may deal freely *and yet deal prudently* with our fellow-subjects beyond the Channel. Such is your conviction. (William Ewart Gladstone, October 1891; italics added)

> In reality not one didactic poet has ever yet attempted to use any parts or processes of the particular art which he made his theme, unless in so far as they seemed susceptible of poetic treatment, and only *because* they seemed so. Look at the poem of *Cyder* by Philips, of the *Fleece* by Dyer, or (which is a still weightier example) at the *Georgics* of Virgil,—does any of these poets show the least anxiety for the *correctness of your principles* [my italics], or the delicacy of your manipulations, in the worshipful arts they affect to teach? (Thomas De Quincey, "Essay on Pope")

Occasionally it may be important to point out that italics in a quotation were indeed in the original. Here the usual phrase is "italics in the original" or, for example, "De Quincey's italics."

13.61 ***Interpolations requiring quotation marks.*** Occasionally a bracketed or parenthetical interpolation that includes quotation marks appears in material already enclosed in quotation marks. In such cases, the double/single rule (see 13.28) does not apply; the quotation marks within the brackets may remain double.

> "Do you mean that a double-headed calf ["two-headed calf" in an earlier version] has greater value than two normal calves? That a freak of nature, even though it cannot survive, is to be more highly treasured for its rarity than run-of-the-mill creatures are for their potential use?"

Citing Sources in Text

13.62 ***Use of parentheses with in-text citations.*** If the source of a direct quotation is not given in a note, it is usually placed in the text in parentheses. Although the source normally follows a quotation, it may come earlier if it fits more smoothly into the introductory text (as in the second example in 13.63). The examples in this section focus on full and short forms of parenthetical citation that may be needed in shorter works with no notes or bibliography or to provide in-text citations to a frequently quoted work. The advice in this section on placement relative to surrounding text is applicable to both systems of citation recommended by Chicago: notes and bibliography (chapter 14) and author-date (chapter 15).

13.63 ***Full in-text citation.*** An entire source may be given in parentheses immediately following a quotation, or some of the data may be worked into the text, with details confined to parentheses. See also 6.99. For more on the proper form for full citations, see 14.18.

> "If an astronaut falls into a black hole, its mass will increase, but eventually the energy equivalent of that extra mass will be returned to the universe in the form of radiation. Thus, in a sense, the astronaut will be 'recycled'" (Stephen W. Hawking, *A Brief History of Time: From the Big Bang to Black Holes* [New York: Bantam Books, 1988], 112).

> In the preface to their revision of *The Complete Plain Words* by Sir Ernest Gowers (Penguin Books, 1986), Sidney Greenbaum and Janet Whitcut admit that "Gowers' frequent use of the first person pronoun 'I' presents a difficulty for revisers," since Fraser, having decided to retain the "I," tried "to distinguish the 'I' of Gowers from the 'I' of Fraser by listing in his preface the parts of the book that were wholly or mainly written by each of the authors."

13.64 ***The use of "ibid." with subsequent in-text citations.*** If a second passage from the same source is quoted close to the first and there is no intervening quotation from a different source, *ibid.* (set in roman) may be used in the second parenthetical reference (e.g., "ibid., 114"); *ibid.* alone may be used if the reference is to the same page. Avoid overusing *ibid.*: for more than the occasional repeated reference to the same source—as in an extended discussion of a work of fiction—only a parenthetical page number is necessary. If a quotation from another source has intervened, a shortened reference may be given (e.g., "Hawking, *Brief History of Time*, 114"). For more on shortened citations, see 14.24–31; for the use of *ibid.* in notes, see 14.29.

13.65 ***Frequent reference to a single source cited in a note.*** In a work containing notes, the full citation of a source may be given in a note at first mention, with subsequent citations made parenthetically in the text. This method is especially suited to literary studies that use frequent quotations from a single source. In a study of *Much Ado about Nothing*, for example, the note would list the edition and include wording such as "Text references are to act, scene, and line of this edition." A parenthetical reference to act 3, scene 4, lines 46–47, would then appear as in the example below. In references to a work of fiction, page numbers alone may be given.

"Ye light o' love with your heels! then, if your husband have stables enough, you'll see he shall lack no barns," says Beatrice (3.4.46–47).

Where a number of such sources (or different editions of a single source) are used in the same work, the title (or edition) may need to be indicated in the parenthetical references; it may be advisable to devise an abbreviation for each and to include a list of the abbreviations at the beginning or end of the work (see 14.54, 14.55). See also 14.260, 14.267, 14.43.

Sources Following Run-In Quotations

13.66 ***Punctuation following source.*** After a run-in quotation, the source is usually given after the closing quotation mark, followed by the rest of the surrounding sentence (including any comma, semicolon, colon, or dash; but see 13.67) or the final punctuation of that sentence.

With his "Nothing will come of nothing; speak again" (1.1.92), Lear tries to draw from his youngest daughter an expression of filial devotion.

It has been more than a century since Henry Adams said: "Fifty years ago, science took for granted that the rate of acceleration could not last. The world forgets quickly, but even today the habit remains of founding statistics on the faith that consumption will continue nearly stationary" (*Education*, 493).

Has it been more than a century since Henry Adams observed that "fifty years ago, science took for granted that the rate of acceleration could not last" (*Education*, 493)?

A parenthetical reference need not immediately follow the quotation as long as it is clear what it belongs to. For examples, see 13.63 (second example), 13.65. See also 15.25.

13.67 ***Question mark or exclamation point preceding source.*** When a quotation comes at the end of a sentence and is itself a question or an exclamation, that punctuation is retained within the quotation marks, and a period is still added after the closing parentheses. (Compare the third example in 13.66.)

And finally, in the frenzy of grief that kills him, Lear rails, "Why should a dog, a horse, a rat, have life, / And thou no breath at all?" (5.3.306–7).

Sources Following Block Quotations

13.68 *Punctuation preceding source.* The source of a block quotation is given in parentheses at the end of the quotation and in the same type size. The opening parenthesis appears *after* the final punctuation mark of the quoted material. No period either precedes or follows the closing parenthesis. See also 6.99, 15.25.

> If you happen to be fishing, and you get a strike, and whatever it is starts off with the preliminaries of a vigorous fight; and by and by, looking down over the side through the glassy water, you see a rosy golden gleam, the mere specter of a fish, shining below in the clear depths; and when you look again a sort of glory of golden light flashes and dazzles as it circles nearer beneath and around and under the boat; . . . and you land a slim and graceful and impossibly beautiful three-foot goldfish, whose fierce and vivid yellow is touched around the edges with a violent red—when all these things happen to you, fortunate but bewildered fisherman, then you may know you have been fishing in the Galapagos Islands and have taken a Golden Grouper. (Gifford Pinchot, *To the South Seas* [Philadelphia: John Winston, 1930], 123)

Shortened references are treated in the same way as full ones. If a qualifier such as *line*, *vol.*, or *p.* is required at the beginning of the shortened reference, it should be lowercased as with sources to run-in quotations.

> At last the fish came into sight—at first a mere gleam in the water, and then his full side. This was not even a distant cousin to the fish I thought I was fighting, but something else again entirely. (p. 142)

13.69 *Parenthetical citations with poetry extracts.* In order not to interfere with a poem's layout and overall presentation, parenthetical citations following poetry extracts are dropped to the line below the last line of the quotation. They may be centered on the last letter of the longest line of the quotation or set flush with the left margin of the poem; an additional line space may be added. Other positions are also possible (as in the examples in 13.23 and 13.70), as long as consistency and clarity are preserved.

> Now more than ever seems it rich to die,
> To cease upon the midnight with no pain,
> While thou art pouring forth thy soul abroad
>   In such an ecstasy!
> (Keats, "Ode to a Nightingale," stanza 6)

13.70 ***Shortened references to poetry extracts.*** Shortened references to poetry are treated the same way as full ones. A quotation from Edmund Spenser's *The Faerie Queene*, once the reader knows that reference is to book, canto, and stanza, might appear thus:

Who will not mercie unto others shew,
How can he mercy ever hope to have?
(6.1.42)

Foreign-Language Quotations

13.71 ***Typographic style of foreign quotations.*** Quotations in a foreign language that are incorporated into an English text are normally treated like quotations in English, set in roman type and run in or set off as block quotations according to their length. They are punctuated as in the original except that quotation marks replace guillemets (or their equivalents), and spacing relative to punctuation is adjusted to conform to the surrounding text (see 11.10). For isolated words and phrases, see 7.49. For excerpts from the original language following an English translation, see 13.73.

The narrator's "treinta o cuarenta molinos de viento" become Quixote's "treinta, o pocos más, desaforados gigantes"—a numerical correspondence that lets the reader trust, at the very least, the hero's basic grasp of reality.

If em dashes are used for dialogue in the original (see 11.34, 11.52, 11.80, 11.121), they should be retained in a block quotation but may be replaced by quotation marks if only a phrase or sentence is quoted.

13.72 ***Whether translation is needed.*** Whether to provide translations of quoted passages depends on the linguistic abilities of the likely readers. For example, in a work to be read by classicists, Latin or Greek sources may be quoted freely in the original. Or in a literary study of, say, Goethe, quotations from Goethe's work may be given in the original German only. For a wider readership, translations should be furnished.

13.73 ***Where to place translations.*** A translation may follow the original in parentheses—or, as in 13.74, the original may follow a translation. Quotation marks need not be repeated for the parenthetical translation (or parenthetical original, as the case may be); any internal quotation marks, however, should be included (as in the second example). See also 6.93, 7.50. If a long sentence or more than one sentence appears in parentheses or brackets, as in the second example, closing punctuation of both the original and the translation should remain distinct.

> A line from Goethe, "Wer nie sein Brot mit Tränen aß" (Who never ate his bread with tears), comes to mind.

> À vrai dire, Abélard n'avoue pas un tel rationalisme: "je ne veux pas être si philosophe, écrit-il, que je résiste à Paul, ni si aristotélicien que je me sépare du Christ." (As a matter of fact, Abelard admits no such rationalism. "I do not wish to be so much of a philosopher," he writes, "that I resist Paul, nor so much of an Aristotelian that I separate myself from Christ.")

13.74 *Source plus translation.* When both a source and a translation are required in text, the source may be placed in parentheses, with the original (or translation, as the case may be) following, separated by a semicolon. The following example quotes a thirteenth-century author writing in Middle Dutch. See also 13.66–67.

> Hadewijch insists that the most perfect faith is "unfaith," which endlessly stokes desire and endlessly demands love from God. "Unfaith never allows desire to rest in any faith but always distrusts her, [feeling] that she is not loved enough" (letter 8:39; Ende ontrowe en laet gegherten niewers ghedueren in gheenre trowen, sine mestrout hare altoes, datse niet ghenoech ghemint en es).

If adding a translation or the original in text creates too much clutter, it may be placed in a note, in which case it is enclosed in quotation marks but not in parentheses or brackets (see 13.75).

13.75 *Including original-language version in note.* In many works, quotations from a foreign-language source need appear only in translation. Should the original be necessary, it can be placed in a note. If the parenthetical passage in the second example in 13.73 were to appear in text without the French, as either a run-in or a block quotation, a note could read as follows:

> 4. "À vrai dire, Abélard n'avoue pas un tel rationalisme: 'je ne veux pas être si philosophe, écrit-il, que je résiste à Paul, ni si aristotélicien que je me sépare du Christ.'"

See also 13.28.

13.76 *Crediting the translation.* When quoting a passage from a foreign language that requires a translation, authors should use a published English translation if one is available and give credit to the source of that translation, including the title of the translation, the translator's name, relevant bibliographic details, and page number (see 14.109). Authors providing their own translations should so state, in parentheses following the translation, in a note, or in the prefatory material—for example, "my translation" or "Unless otherwise noted, all translations are my own." See also 11.6, 11.7.

13.77 ***Adjusting translations.*** An author using a published translation may occasionally need to adjust a word or two. "Translation modified" or some such wording must then be added in parentheses or in a note (see also 13.60). In addition, it is recommended that such modifications be indicated by square brackets (see 13.57, 13.58). These devices should be used sparingly. If a published translation is unsuitable for the author's purpose, it should be abandoned and all quoted passages newly translated.

13.78 ***Editing translations.*** Quotations from published translations can be edited only with respect to the permissible changes described in 13.7. In new translations furnished by the author, however, capitalization, punctuation, spelling, and idiom may be adjusted for consistency with the surrounding text.

13.79 ***The sin of retranslation.*** Never should a passage from a work originally published in English (or any other language, for that matter) be retranslated from a foreign-language version. For example, an author quoting from a German study of Blackstone's *Commentaries* that quotes from Blackstone in German must track down the original Blackstone passages in English and reproduce them. If unable to locate the original, the author must resort to paraphrase.

Part Three: Documentation

14 Documentation I: Notes and Bibliography

Source Citations: An Overview 14.1

- *Considerations for Electronic Sources* 14.4

Notes and Bibliography: Basic Format, with Examples and Variations 14.14

Notes 14.19

- *Note Numbers* 14.19
- *Shortened Citations* 14.24
- *Commentary and Quotations in Notes* 14.32
- *Footnotes versus Endnotes* 14.38
- *Two Sets of Notes* 14.44
- *Unnumbered Notes* 14.47
- *Remedies for Excessive Annotation* 14.51

Bibliographies 14.56

- *Overview* 14.56
- *Arrangement of Entries* 14.60
- *The 3-Em Dash for Repeated Names in a Bibliography* 14.63

Books 14.68

- *Author's Name* 14.72
- *Title* 14.93
- *Chapters or Other Parts of a Book* 14.111
- *Edition* 14.118
- *Multivolume Works* 14.121
- *Series* 14.128
- *Facts of Publication* 14.133
    - [PLACE OF PUBLICATION 14.134
    - [PUBLISHER'S NAME 14.139
    - [DATE OF PUBLICATION 14.149
- *Page, Volume, and Other Locating Information* 14.154
- *Electronic Books* 14.166

Periodicals 14.170

- *Journals* 14.175
- *Magazines* 14.199
- *Newspapers* 14.203
- *Reviews* 14.214

Interviews and Personal Communications 14.218

Unpublished and Informally Published Material 14.224

Theses, Dissertations, Papers, and the Like 14.224

Manuscript Collections 14.232

Websites and Blogs 14.243

Special Types of References 14.247

Dictionaries and Encyclopedias 14.247

Pamphlets and the Like 14.249

Scriptural References 14.252

Classical Greek and Latin References 14.256

Classic English Poems and Plays 14.267

Musical Scores 14.269

Databases 14.271

Citations Taken from Secondary Sources 14.273

Audiovisual Materials 14.274

Sound Recordings 14.276

Video Recordings 14.278

Legal and Public Documents 14.281

Cases and Court Decisions 14.288

Constitutions 14.292

Legislative and Executive Documents 14.293

Canada 14.305

United Kingdom 14.309

International Entities 14.316

Source Citations: An Overview

14.1 ***The purpose of source citations.*** Ethics, copyright laws, and courtesy to readers require authors to identify the sources of direct quotations or paraphrases and of any facts or opinions not generally known or easily checked (see 13.1–6). Conventions for documentation vary according to scholarly discipline, the preferences of publishers and authors, and the needs of a particular work. Regardless of the convention being followed, the primary criterion of any source citation is sufficient information either to lead readers directly to the sources consulted or, for materials that may not be readily available, to positively identify the sources used, whether these are published or unpublished, in printed or electronic form.

14.2 ***Chicago's two systems of source citation.*** This chapter describes the first of Chicago's two systems of documentation, which uses a system of notes, whether footnotes or endnotes or both, and usually a bibliography. The notes allow space for unusual types of sources as well as for commentary on the sources cited, making this system extremely flexible. Because of this flexibility, the notes and bibliography system is preferred by many writers in literature, history, and the arts. Chicago's other system—which uses parenthetical author-date references and a corresponding reference list as described in chapter 15—is nearly identical in content but differs in form. The author-date system is preferred for many publications in the sciences and social sciences but may be adapted for any work, sometimes with the addition of footnotes or endnotes. For journals, the choice between systems is likely to have been made long ago; anyone writing for a journal should consult the specific journal's instructions to authors (and see 14.3).

14.3 ***Other systems of source citation.*** Among other well-known systems are those of the Modern Language Association and the American Psychological Association, both of which use variations of the author-date system (described in chapter 15), and that of the American Medical Association. The AMA uses a numbered list of references cited in the text by reference number; the text numbers appear as superior figures like note reference numbers. Guidelines and examples for these three systems are to be found in the manuals of those associations. *Scientific Style and Format*, published by the Council of Science Editors (CSE), also furnishes useful guidelines on both the author-date system and numbered references (see bibliog. 1.1 for these and other style manuals). Many journals and serials—including some of those published by the University of Chicago Press—either follow one of these styles or have their own styles, often based on or similar to the systems mentioned here and in 14.2. For legal and public documents, Chicago recommends *The Bluebook: A Uniform System of Citation*, published by the Harvard Law Review Association; see 14.281–317.

Considerations for Electronic Sources

14.4 *Electronic resource identifiers.* When citing electronic sources consulted online, Chicago recommends—as the final element in a citation that includes all the components described throughout this chapter and in chapter 15—the addition of a URL[1] or DOI.[2] Either of these elements has the potential to lead readers directly to the source cited, and authors are encouraged to record them as part of their source citations. Publishers, however, will have their own requirements, which may depend on the type of work and the uses to which it will be put. For example, publishers of electronic journals may provide hyperlinks to cited electronic sources as a matter of course—a process that authors facilitate when they provide resource identifiers with their source citations. Publishers of printed books, on the other hand, may require a URL or DOI only in citations of sources that may otherwise be difficult to locate. Authors are therefore advised to consult their publishers early in the publication process. The information in this section—together with the examples of URLs and DOIs throughout this chapter—is intended to provide guidance for those authors and publishers who wish to include them as part of their research or publications or both. For citing electronic sources on fixed media such as CD-ROMs, see 14.166, 14.168, 14.276, 14.279.

14.5 *Uniform resource locators (URLs).* A uniform resource locator, or URL—for example, http://www.chicagomanualofstyle.org/—is designed to lead a reader directly to an Internet source. For URL syntax, see 14.11 and 14.12. For examples of URLs in source citations, see 14.18 (under *Journal Article*), 14.167, 14.169, and throughout the discussions on periodicals (14.170–217), interviews and personal communications (14.218–23), websites and blogs (14.243–46), audiovisual materials (14.274–80), and elsewhere. Note that it is never sufficient simply to provide a URL (or other resource locator); as far as they can be determined, the full facts of publication should always be recorded first. Although a URL has the potential to lead readers directly to the source cited, it is also the most vulnerable element in a citation; the source to which a URL points is apt to move to a different location on the web or to disappear altogether. Readers need to be able to judge the nature and authority of any source from the full facts of publication as detailed throughout this chapter and chapter 15.

---

[1] For more information about URLs, consult the website of the World Wide Web Consortium. See also 14.5.

[2] For more information about DOIs, consult the websites of the International DOI Foundation and CrossRef. See also 14.6.

14.6 *Digital Object Identifiers (DOIs).* One of a number of standards addressing the need for more reliable resource identifiers is that of the Digital Object Identifier (DOI). A DOI is a unique and permanent name assigned to a piece of intellectual property such as a journal article or book (or a component thereof), in any medium in which it is published. (The term "digital" refers to the identifier and not necessarily to the object.) A DOI consists of a prefix assigned by a DOI registration agency such as CrossRef and—following a forward slash—a name assigned by the publisher. For example, 10.1086/529076 identifies the article entitled "Before Democracy: The Production and Uses of Common Sense," by Sophia Rosenfeld, published in the March 2008 issue of the *Journal of Modern History*. At a minimum, typing or pasting the DOI into the DOI resolver available at the website of the International DOI Foundation or from CrossRef .org (or into a search engine that supports DOIs) will redirect you to a URL where the article may be found. (Alternatively, appending a DOI to http://dx.doi.org/ in the address bar of an Internet browser will lead to the source. For example, http://dx.doi.org/10.1086/529076 will resolve to the Rosenfeld article mentioned above.) Authors should include DOIs rather than URLs for sources that make them readily available. The examples included throughout the discussion on journals (14.175–98) may be applied to other types of sources as necessary, including books (see 14.167, 14.248).

14.7 *Access dates.* An access date—that is, the self-reported date on which an author consulted a source—is of limited value: previous versions will often be unavailable to readers; authors typically consult a source any number of times over the course of days or months; and the accuracy of such dates, once recorded, cannot readily be verified by editors or publishers. Chicago does not therefore require access dates in its published citations of electronic sources unless no date of publication or revision can be determined from the source (see 14.8). For such undated sources—or for any source that seems likely to change without notice—authors are encouraged, as an additional safeguard, to archive dated copies, either as hard copy or in electronic form. Because some publishers in some disciplines—in particular, research-intensive fields such as science and medicine—*do* require access dates, authors should check with their publishers early on, and it never hurts to record dates of access during research. (Students are typically required to include access dates for citations of online sources in their papers.) For examples, see 14.185, 14.245, and 14.248.

14.8 ***"Last modified" and other revision dates.*** Some electronic documents will include a date on each page or screen indicating the last time the document was modified or revised. There are no accepted standards for this practice, and for formally published material the date of publication is generally more important. A revision date should be included, however, if it is presented as the de facto date of publication or is otherwise the only available date. Such dates may be particularly useful for citing wikis and other continuously updated works. For an example, see 14.248.

14.9 ***Authority and permanence.*** Much as they do for printed publications, authors must weigh the authority of any electronic sources they choose to cite. Electronic content presented without formal ties to a publisher or sponsoring body has the authority equivalent to that of unpublished or self-published material in other media. Moreover, such content is far more likely to change without notice—or disappear altogether—than formally published materials. On the other hand, self-published material from an authority on a given subject—relatively inaccessible before the advent of blogs—may have a great deal of validity. Authors should note, moreover, that *anything* posted on the Internet is "published" in the sense of copyright and must be treated as such for the purposes of complete citation and clearance of permissions, if relevant (see 4.2, 4.60–65).

14.10 ***Publications available in more than one medium.*** In many cases the contents of the print and electronic forms of the same publication are intended to be identical. Moreover, publishers are encouraged to note explicitly any differences between the two (see 1.73). In practice, because there is always the potential for differences, intentional or otherwise, authors should cite the version consulted. Chicago recommends including a URL or DOI to indicate that a work was consulted online; for other nonprint items, the medium should be indicated (e.g., CD-ROM). Note, however, that alternate electronic formats offered by a single publisher from the same website—for example, PDF and HTML versions of the journal article mentioned in 14.6—do *not* constitute separate sources. The URL for each such version will generally differ, but the DOI will not. In fact, a DOI serves readers by pointing to each medium in which a work is published. (Though a print source may list a DOI, authors need not record it as part of their research unless their publisher or discipline requires it.)

14.11 ***URLs and other such elements in relation to surrounding text.*** URLs, DOIs, e-mail addresses, and the like are unique strings that contain no spaces. URLs should be presented in full, beginning with the protocol (usually *http*, for *hypertext transfer protocol*, or *ftp*, for *file transfer protocol*). Even if it follows a period, the first letter of the protocol (e.g., the *h* in *http*) is not capitalized; likewise, *doi* preceding a DOI in a source citation is never capitalized. (In running text, avoid beginning a sentence with a URL or DOI; see also 8.186.) The capitalization of the remaining components varies; because some resource identifiers are case sensitive, they should not be edited for style (but see 14.244). A "trailing slash" (/), the last character in a URL pointing to a directory, is part of the URL. Other punctuation marks that follow a URL or other such identifier will readily be perceived as belonging to the surrounding text. Citations that include such an element should therefore be punctuated normally. Though angle brackets or other "wrappers" are standard with e-mail addresses or URLs in some applications, these are unnecessary in the context of notes and bibliographies or in running text (see also 6.8).

14.12 ***URLs or DOIs and line breaks.*** In a printed work, if a URL or DOI has to be broken at the end of a line, the break should be made *after* a colon or a double slash (//); *before* a single slash (/), a tilde (~), a period, a comma, a hyphen, an underline (_), a question mark, a number sign, or a percent symbol; or *before or after* an equals sign or an ampersand. Such breaks help to signal that the URL or DOI has been carried over to the next line. A hyphen should never be added to a URL or DOI to denote a line break, nor should a hyphen that is part of a URL or DOI appear at the end of a line. It is usually unnecessary to break URLs or DOIs in electronic publications (except in PDFs and other formats modeled on the printed page), and authors should avoid forcing them to break (with hard returns or other devices) in their manuscripts (see 2.12). See also 7.42.

http://press-pubs.uchicago
.edu/founders/
http://www.jstor.org/stable
/2921689
http://www.time.com/time/magazine/article/0,9171
,920400,00.html
http://wardsix.blogspot.com/2008/07/two
atlantic-essays.html
doi:10.1086
/ahr.113.3.752

14.13 ***Source citation software.*** A number of software programs promise to automate the task of formatting source citations. The best of these programs can help authors save time transcribing and organizing citations. Moreover, a growing number of online documents include preformatted citations, sometimes designed to work in conjunction with source citation software. The variety of sources typically cited in a scholarly work, however, nearly always precludes an acceptable result from software alone. Authors are therefore strongly encouraged to review their citations for consistency, accuracy, and completeness according to the forms recommended in this chapter or chapter 15. Moreover, citations in manuscripts submitted to publishers should be presented as ordinary text, stripped of any of the underlying codes (e.g., fields or hyperlinks) used in creating or organizing them. (An author's review should generally occur *after* this conversion to ordinary text.) See also 2.20.

Notes and Bibliography: Basic Format, with Examples and Variations

14.14 ***Notes and bibliography—an overview.*** In the system favored by many writers in the humanities, bibliographic citations are provided in notes, preferably supplemented by a bibliography. The notes, whether footnotes or endnotes, are usually numbered and correspond to superscripted note reference numbers in the text (but see 14.48); in electronic works, notes and note numbers are usually hyperlinked. If the bibliography includes all works cited in the notes, the notes need not duplicate the source information in full because readers can consult the bibliography for publication details and other information. In works with no bibliography or only a selected list, full details must be given in a note at first mention of any work cited; subsequent citations need only include a short form. For examples of the difference in format between note citations and bibliography entries, see 14.18. For a detailed discussion of notes, see 14.19–55. For shortened references, see 14.24–31. For a detailed discussion of bibliographies, see 14.56–67.

Full citation in a note:

1. Newton N. Minow and Craig L. LaMay, *Inside the Presidential Debates: Their Improbable Past and Promising Future* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2008), 24–25.

Shortened citation in a note:

8. Minow and LaMay, *Presidential Debates*, 138.

Entry in a bibliography:

Minow, Newton N., and Craig L. LaMay. *Inside the Presidential Debates: Their Improbable Past and Promising Future*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2008.

Note citations are styled much like running text, with authors' names in normal order and the elements separated by commas or parentheses. In bibliographies, where entries are listed alphabetically, the name of the first author is inverted, and the main elements are separated by periods.

14.15 ***Basic structure of a note.*** A footnote or an endnote generally lists the author, title, and facts of publication, in that order. Elements are separated by commas; the facts of publication are enclosed in parentheses. Authors' names are presented in standard order (first name first). Titles are capitalized headline-style (see 8.157), unless they are in a foreign language (see 11.3). Titles of larger works (e.g., books and journals) are italicized; titles of smaller works (e.g., chapters, articles) or unpublished works are presented in roman and enclosed in quotation marks (see 8.161). Such terms as *editor/edited by*, *translator/translated by*, *volume*, and *edition* are abbreviated.

14.16 ***Basic structure of a bibliography entry.*** In a bibliography entry the elements are separated by periods rather than by commas; the facts of publication are not enclosed in parentheses; and the first-listed author's name, according to which the entry is alphabetized in the bibliography, is usually inverted (last name first). As in a note, titles are capitalized headline-style unless they are in a foreign language; titles of larger works (e.g., books and journals) are italicized; and titles of smaller works (e.g., chapters, articles) or unpublished works are presented in roman and enclosed in quotation marks. Noun forms such as *editor*, *translator*, *volume*, and *edition* are abbreviated, but verb forms such as *edited by* and *translated by*—abbreviated in a note—are spelled out in a bibliography. (Cf. 14.15.)

14.17 ***Page numbers and other locators.*** In notes, where reference is usually to a particular passage in a book or journal, only the page numbers (often a single page number) pertaining to that passage are given. In bibliographies, no page numbers are given for books; for easier location of journal articles or chapters or other sections of a book, the beginning and ending page numbers of the entire article or chapter are given. Electronic sources do not always include page numbers (and some that do include them repaginate according to user-defined text size). For such unpaginated works, it may be appropriate in a note to include a chapter or paragraph number (if available), a section heading, or a descriptive phrase that follows the organizational divisions of the work. In citations of shorter electronic works presented as a single, searchable document, such locators may be unnecessary.

14.18 ***Notes and bibliography—examples and variations.*** The examples that follow are intended to provide an overview of the notes and bibliography style, featuring books and journal articles as models. Each example includes a numbered note and a corresponding bibliography entry. Some examples also include a shortened form of the note, suitable for subsequent citations of a source already cited in full. In practice, in works that include a bibliography that lists in full all sources cited, it is acceptable to use the shortened form in the notes even at first mention. For advice on constructing short forms for notes, see 14.24–31. For many more examples, consult the sections dealing with specific types of works throughout this chapter.

BOOK WITH SINGLE AUTHOR OR EDITOR

For a book with a single author, invert the name in the bibliography but not in the notes. Punctuate and capitalize as shown. Note the shortened form in the second note. Note also that actual page numbers cited are usually included in a note but not in a bibliography entry, unless the entry is for a chapter, in which case the page range in which the item appears is included (see "Chapter in an Edited Book," below; see also 9.58–63).

1. Michael Pollan, *The Omnivore's Dilemma: A Natural History of Four Meals* (New York: Penguin, 2006), 99–100.

18. Pollan, *Omnivore's Dilemma*, 3.

Pollan, Michael. *The Omnivore's Dilemma: A Natural History of Four Meals*. New York: Penguin, 2006.

A book with an editor in place of an author includes the abbreviation *ed.* (*editor*; for more than one editor, use *eds.*). Note that the shortened form does not include *ed.*

1. Joel Greenberg, ed., *Of Prairie, Woods, and Water: Two Centuries of Chicago Nature Writing* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2008), 42.

33. Greenberg, *Prairie, Woods, and Water*, 326–27.

Greenberg, Joel, ed. *Of Prairie, Woods, and Water: Two Centuries of Chicago Nature Writing*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2008.

BOOK WITH MULTIPLE AUTHORS

For a book with two authors, note that only the first-listed name is inverted in the bibliography entry.

2. Geoffrey C. Ward and Ken Burns, *The War: An Intimate History, 1941–1945* (New York: Knopf, 2007), 52.

Ward, Geoffrey C., and Ken Burns. *The War: An Intimate History, 1941–1945*. New York: Knopf, 2007.

For a book with three authors, adapt as follows:

15. Joyce Heatherton, James Fitzgilroy, and Jackson Hsu, *Meteors and Mudslides: A Trip through . . .*

Heatherton, Joyce, James Fitzgilroy, and Jackson Hsu. *Meteors and Mudslides: A Trip through . . .*

For a book with four or more authors, list all the authors in the bibliography entry. Word order and punctuation are the same as for two or three authors. In the note, however, cite only the name of the first-listed author, followed by *et al.* See also 14.76.

72. Dana Barnes et al., *Plastics: Essays on American Corporate Ascendance in the 1960s . . .*

101. Barnes et al., *Plastics . . .*

BOOK WITH AUTHOR PLUS EDITOR OR TRANSLATOR

In a book with an editor or translator in addition to the author, *ed.* or *trans.* in the note becomes *Edited by* or *Translated by* in the bibliography entry. See also 14.88.

1. Gabriel García Márquez, *Love in the Time of Cholera*, trans. Edith Grossman (London: Cape, 1988), 242–55.

18. García Márquez, *Cholera*, 33.

García Márquez, Gabriel. *Love in the Time of Cholera*. Translated by Edith Grossman. London: Cape, 1988.

CHAPTER IN AN EDITED BOOK

When citing a chapter or similar part of an edited book, include the chapter author; the chapter title, in quotation marks; and the editor. Precede the title of the book with *in*. Note the location of the page range for the chapter in the bibliography entry. See also 14.111–17.

1. Glenn Gould, "Streisand as Schwarzkopf," in *The Glenn Gould Reader*, ed. Tim Page (New York: Vintage, 1984), 310.

19. Gould, "Streisand as Schwarzkopf," 309.

Gould, Glenn. "Streisand as Schwarzkopf." In *The Glenn Gould Reader*, edited by Tim Page, 308–11. New York: Vintage, 1984.

JOURNAL ARTICLE

Citations of journals include the volume and issue number and date of publication. The volume number follows the italicized journal title in roman and with no intervening punctuation. A specific page reference is included in the notes; the page range for an article is included in the bibliography. In the full citation, page numbers are preceded by a colon. If a journal is paginated consecutively across a volume or if the month or season appears with the year, the issue number may be omitted (as in the second and third sets of examples below).

89. Walter Blair, "Americanized Comic Braggarts," *Critical Inquiry* 4, no. 2 (1977): 331–32.

111. Blair, "Americanized Comic Braggarts," 335.

Blair, Walter. "Americanized Comic Braggarts." *Critical Inquiry* 4, no. 2 (1977): 331–49.

The DOI in the following example indicates that the article was consulted online; it is preferred to a URL (see also 14.5, 14.6). Note that *DOI*, so capitalized when mentioned in running text, is lowercased and followed by a colon (with no space after) in source citations. Shortened citations for subsequent references to an online source follow the forms for printed books and journals.

1. William J. Novak, "The Myth of the 'Weak' American State," *American Historical Review* 113 (June 2008): 758, doi:10.1086/ahr.113.3.752.
3. Novak, "Myth," 770.

Novak, William J. "The Myth of the 'Weak' American State." *American Historical Review* 113 (June 2008): 752–72. doi:10.1086/ahr.113.3.752.

For articles that have not been assigned a DOI (or if the DOI cannot be determined), include a URL. The URL in the following example—consulted through the academic journals archive JSTOR—was listed along with the article as a more stable (and shorter) alternative to the URL that appeared in the browser's address bar. For access dates (not shown here), see 14.185.

12. Wilfried Karmaus and John F. Riebow, "Storage of Serum in Plastic and Glass Containers May Alter the Serum Concentration of Polychlorinated Biphenyls," *Environmental Health Perspectives* 112 (May 2004): 645, http://www.jstor.org/stable/3435987.

Karmaus, Wilfried, and John F. Riebow. "Storage of Serum in Plastic and Glass Containers May Alter the Serum Concentration of Polychlorinated Biphenyls." *Environmental Health Perspectives* 112 (May 2004): 643–47. http://www.jstor.org/stable/3435987.

Notes

Note Numbers

14.19 ***Numbers in text versus numbers in notes.*** Note reference numbers in text are set as superior (superscript) numbers. In the notes themselves, they are normally full size, not raised, and followed by a period. (In manuscripts, superscripted numbers in both places—the typical default setting in the note-making feature of a word processor—are perfectly acceptable.)

"Nonrestrictive relative clauses are parenthetic, as are similar clauses introduced by conjunctions indicating time or place."[1]

1. William Strunk Jr. and E. B. White, *The Elements of Style*, 4th ed. (New York: Allyn and Bacon, 2000), 3.

14.20 ***Sequencing of note numbers and symbols.*** Notes, whether footnotes or endnotes, should be numbered consecutively, beginning with 1, throughout each article and for each new chapter—not throughout an entire book unless the text has no internal divisions. Where only a handful of footnotes appear in an entire book or, perhaps, just one in an article, symbols may be used instead of numbers. Usually an asterisk is enough, but if more than one note is needed on the same page, the sequence is * † ‡ §. For using a combination of numbers and symbols for two sets of notes, see 14.44–46. For notes to tables and other nontextual matter, which are usually handled independently of the notes to the text, see 3.74–78.

14.21 ***Placement of note number.*** A note number should generally be placed at the end of a sentence or at the end of a clause. The number normally follows a quotation (whether it is run in to the text or set as an extract). Relative to other punctuation, the number follows any punctuation mark except for the dash, which it precedes.

"This," wrote George Templeton Strong, "is what our tailors can do."[1]

The bias was apparent in the Shotwell series[3]—and it must be remembered that Shotwell was a student of Robinson's.

Though a note number normally follows a closing parenthesis, it may on rare occasion be more appropriate to place the number inside the closing parenthesis—if, for example, the note applies to a specific term within the parentheses.

(In an earlier book he had said quite the opposite.)[2]

Men and their unions, as they entered industrial work, negotiated two things: young women would be laid off once they married (the commonly acknowledged "marriage bar"[1]), and men would be paid a "family wage."

14.22 ***Note numbers with chapter and article titles and subheads.*** In books, a note number should never appear within or at the end of a chapter title. A note that applies to an entire chapter should be unnumbered and is preferably placed at the foot of the first page of the chapter, preceding any numbered notes (see 14.47–50). Some journals publishers, on the other hand, prefer to tie such notes more explicitly to a particular article title by placing a note reference number (or symbol) with the title and the corresponding note. In a departure from previous recommendations, Chicago no longer objects to this practice with journal article titles. Moreover, the occasional note reference appearing with a subhead within a book chapter or an article is now considered acceptable, though some editors will prefer to move it into the text that follows the subhead.

14.23 ***Multiple citations and multiple references.*** A note number cannot reappear out of sequence; the substance of a note that applies to more than one location must be repeated under a new note number. To avoid such repetition, especially for a longer discursive note, a cross-reference may be used—though these must be checked carefully before publication. (See also 14.24–31.)

18. See note 3 above.

Although more than one note reference should never appear at a single location (such as[5, 6]), a single note can contain more than one citation or comment (see 14.52). (A system of numbered references used by many medical publications, however, requires such multiple reference numbers; for more on this system, consult the *AMA Manual of Style* [bibliog. 1.1].)

Shortened Citations

14.24 ***Purpose of shortened citations.*** To reduce the bulk of documentation in scholarly works that use footnotes or endnotes, subsequent citations of sources already given in full should be shortened whenever possible. The short form, as distinct from an abbreviation, should include enough information to remind readers of the full title or to lead them to the appropriate entry in the bibliography. (Some short forms are not covered here: for citing different chapters in the same work, see 14.113; for letters, see 14.117; for legal citations, see 14.287. Other short forms may be patterned on the examples in this section.)

14.25 ***Basic structure of the short form.*** The most common short form consists of the last name of the author and the main title of the work cited, usually shortened if more than four words, as in examples 4–6 below. For more on authors' names, see 14.27. For more on short titles, see 14.28. For more on journal articles, see 14.196.

1. Samuel A. Morley, *Poverty and Inequality in Latin America: The Impact of Adjustment and Recovery* (Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1995), 24–25.

2. Regina M. Schwartz, "Nationals and Nationalism: Adultery in the House of David," *Critical Inquiry* 19, no. 1 (1992): 131–32.

3. Ernest Kaiser, "The Literature of Harlem," in *Harlem: A Community in Transition*, ed. J. H. Clarke (New York: Citadel Press, 1964).

4. Morley, *Poverty and Inequality*, 43.

5. Schwartz, "Nationals and Nationalism," 138.

6. Kaiser, "Literature of Harlem," 189–90.

14.26 ***Cross-reference to full citation.*** When references to a particular source are far apart, readers encountering the short form may be helped by a cross-reference to the original note (especially in the absence of a full bibliography). Repeating the full details in each new chapter, formerly a common practice in scholarly works, is seldom necessary. These cross-references must be checked carefully before the work is published.

95. Miller, *Quest*, 81 (see chap. 1, n. 4).

14.27 ***Short form for authors' names.*** Only the last name of the author, or of the editor or translator if given first in the full reference, is needed in the short form. Full names or initials are included only when authors with the same last name must be distinguished from one another. Such abbreviations as *ed.* or *trans.* following a name in the full reference are omitted in subsequent references. If a work has two or three authors, give the last name of each; for more than three, the last name of the first author followed by *et al.*

1. Kathryn Petras and Ross Petras, eds., *Very Bad Poetry* . . .

2. Joseph A. Bellizzi, H. F. Kruckeberg, J. R. Hamilton, and W. S. Martin, "Consumer Perceptions of National, Private, and Generic Brands," . . .

3. Petras and Petras, *Very Bad Poetry* . . .

4. Bellizzi et al., "Consumer Perceptions," . . .

14.28 ***Short form for titles.*** The short title contains the key word or words from the main title. An initial *A* or *The* is usually omitted. The order of the words should not be changed (for example, *Daily Notes of a Trip around the World* should be shortened not to *World Trip* but to *Daily Notes* or *Around the World*). Titles of four words or fewer are seldom shortened. The short title is italicized or set in roman and quotation marks according to the way the full title appears.

The War Journal of Major Damon "Rocky" Gause
(Short title) *War Journal*

"A Brief Account of the Reconstruction of Aristotle's *Protrepticus*"
(Short title) "Aristotle's *Protrepticus*"

Kriegstagebuch des Oberkommandos der Wehrmacht, 1940–1945
(Short title) *Kriegstagebuch*

In short titles in languages other than English, no word should be omitted that governs the case ending of a word included in the short title. If in doubt, ask someone who knows the language.

14.29 ***"Ibid."*** The abbreviation *ibid.* (from *ibidem*, "in the same place") usually refers to a single work cited in the note immediately preceding. It must never be used if the preceding note contains more than one citation. It takes the place of the name(s) of the author(s) or editor(s), the title of the work, and as much of the succeeding material as is identical. If the entire reference, including page numbers or other particulars, is identical, the word *ibid.* alone is used (as in note 7 below). The word *ibid.* (italicized in this paragraph only because it is a word used as a word—see 7.58) is capitalized at the beginning of a note and followed by a period. To avoid a succession of *ibid.* notes, the content of notes 6–8, 10, and 11 below might instead be placed parenthetically in the text in place of the note references (see 13.64).

5. Farmwinkle, *Humor of the Midwest*, 241.
6. Ibid., 258–59.
7. Ibid.
8. Ibid., 333–34.
9. Losh, *Diaries and Correspondence*, 1:150.
10. Ibid., 2:35–36.
11. Ibid., 2:37–40.

Ibid. may also be used within one note in successive references to the same work.

8. Morris Birkbeck, "The Illinois Prairies and Settlers," in *Prairie State: Impressions of Illinois, 1673–1967, by Travelers and Other Observers*, ed. Paul M. Angle (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1968), 62. "The soil of the Big-prairie, which is of no great extent notwithstanding its name, is a rich, cool sand; that is to say, one of the most desirable description" (ibid., 63).

14.30 ***"Idem."*** When several works by the same person are cited successively in the same note, *idem* ("the same," sometimes abbreviated to *id.*), has sometimes been used in place of the author's name. Except in legal references, where the abbreviation *id.* is used in place of *ibid.*, the term is rarely used nowadays. Chicago discourages the use of *idem*, recommending instead that the author's last name be repeated.

14.31 ***"Op. cit." and "loc. cit."*** *Op. cit.* (*opere citato*, "in the work cited") and *loc. cit.* (*loco citato*, "in the place cited"), used with an author's last name and standing in place of a previously cited title, are rightly falling into disuse. Consider a reader's frustration on meeting, for example, "Wells, op. cit., 10" in note 95 and having to search back to note 2 for the full source or, worse still, finding that *two* works by Wells have been cited. Chicago disallows both *op. cit.* and *loc. cit.* and instead uses the short-title form described in 14.28.

Commentary and Quotations in Notes

14.32 ***Citations plus commentary.*** When a note contains not only the source of a fact or quotation in the text but related substantive material as well, the source comes first. A period usually separates the citation from the commentary. Such comments as "emphasis mine" are usually put in parentheses. See also 13.60.

11. Shakespeare, *Julius Caesar*, act 3, sc. 1. Caesar's claim of constancy should be taken with a grain of salt.

12. Little, "Norms of Collegiality," 330 (my italics).

14.33 ***Quotation within a note.*** When a note includes a quotation, the source normally follows the terminal punctuation of the quotation. The entire source need not be put in parentheses, which involves changing existing parentheses to brackets (see 6.99) and creating unnecessary clutter.

14. One estimate of the size of the reading public at this time was that of Sydney Smith: "Readers are fourfold in number compared with what they were before the beginning of the French war. . . . There are four or five hundred thousand readers more than there were thirty years ago, among the lower orders." *Letters*, ed. Nowell C. Smith (New York: Oxford University Press, 1953), 1:341, 343.

Long quotations should be set off as extracts in notes as they would be in text (see 13.10). In notes, more than three lines of poetry should be set off (but see 13.23; see also 13.27).

14.34 ***Substantive notes.*** Substantive, or discursive, notes may merely amplify the text and include no sources. Such notes may augment any system of documentation, including the author-date system (see chapter 15). When a source is needed, it is treated as in the example in 14.33 or, if brief and already cited in full, may appear parenthetically, as in the following example:

1. Ernst Cassirer takes important notice of this in *Language and Myth* (59–62) and offers a searching analysis of man's regard for things on which his power of inspirited action may crucially depend.

14.35 ***Paragraphing within long notes.*** To avoid page makeup problems, very long footnotes should be avoided (see 14.39). No such bar exists for endnotes, however, and very long endnotes should be broken into multiple paragraphs as an aid to reading. Authors and editors should first consider, however, whether such a note would be more effective if shortened or at least partially incorporated into the text. See also 14.40.

14.36 ***Footnotes that break across pages in a printed work.*** When a footnote begins on one page and continues on the next, the break should be made in midsentence lest readers miss the end of the note; a short rule appears above the continued part (see fig. 14.1). This advice applies only to the published form of a work (and is something that is generally imposed at the typesetting stage). At the manuscript stage, authors and editors should let the note-making feature in their word-processing software determine any such breaks.

14.37 ***"See" and "cf."*** Notes are often used to invite readers to consult further resources. When doing so, authors should keep in mind the distinction between *see* and *cf.*, using *cf.* only to mean "compare" or "see, by way of comparison." Neither term is italicized in notes (though *see* is italicized in indexes; see 16.22).

22. For further discussion of this problem, see Jones, *Conflict*, 49.
23. Others disagree with my position; cf. Fisher and Ury, *Getting to Yes*, 101–3.

Footnotes versus Endnotes

14.38 ***Footnotes and endnotes—an overview.*** As their name suggests, footnotes appear at the foot of a page. In a journal, endnotes appear at the end of an article; in a book, at the end of a chapter or, more commonly, at the back of the book. (In multiauthor books, where the notes may differ in kind and

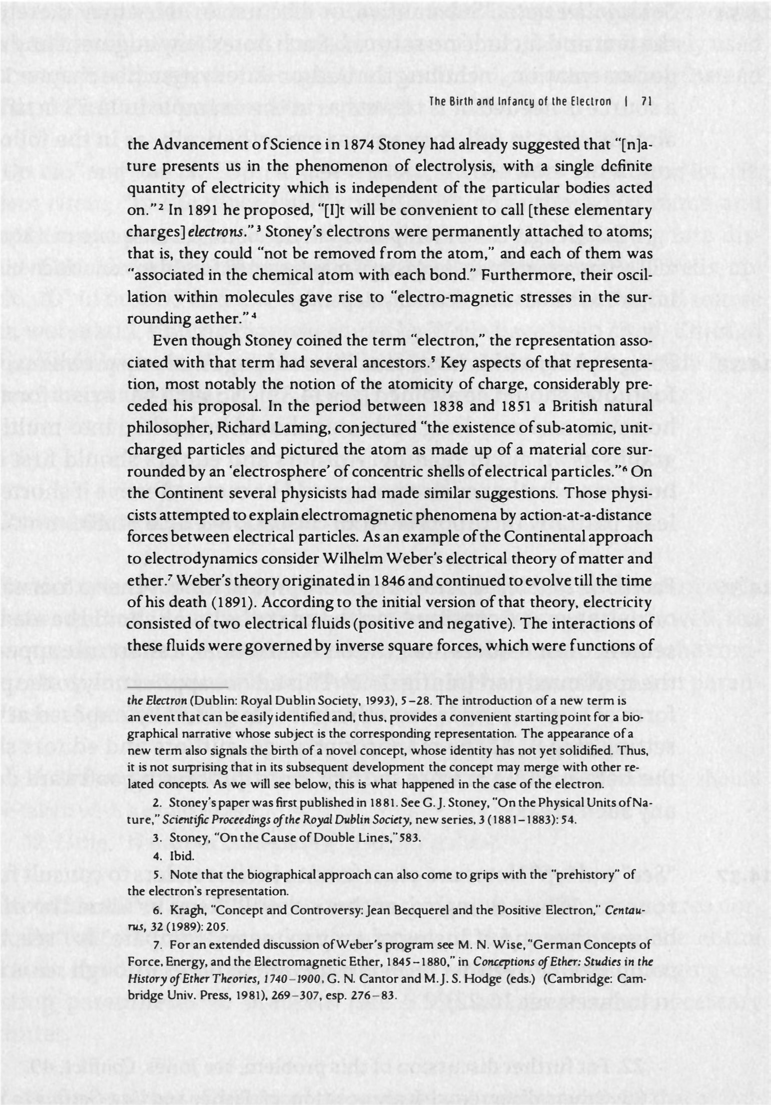

The Birth and Infancy of the Electron | 71

the Advancement of Science in 1874 Stoney had already suggested that "[n]ature presents us in the phenomenon of electrolysis, with a single definite quantity of electricity which is independent of the particular bodies acted on."[2] In 1891 he proposed, "[I]t will be convenient to call [these elementary charges] *electrons*."[3] Stoney's electrons were permanently attached to atoms; that is, they could "not be removed from the atom," and each of them was "associated in the chemical atom with each bond." Furthermore, their oscillation within molecules gave rise to "electro-magnetic stresses in the surrounding aether."[4]

Even though Stoney coined the term "electron," the representation associated with that term had several ancestors.[5] Key aspects of that representation, most notably the notion of the atomicity of charge, considerably preceded his proposal. In the period between 1838 and 1851 a British natural philosopher, Richard Laming, conjectured "the existence of sub-atomic, unit-charged particles and pictured the atom as made up of a material core surrounded by an 'electrosphere' of concentric shells of electrical particles."[6] On the Continent several physicists had made similar suggestions. Those physicists attempted to explain electromagnetic phenomena by action-at-a-distance forces between electrical particles. As an example of the Continental approach to electrodynamics consider Wilhelm Weber's electrical theory of matter and ether.[7] Weber's theory originated in 1846 and continued to evolve till the time of his death (1891). According to the initial version of that theory, electricity consisted of two electrical fluids (positive and negative). The interactions of these fluids were governed by inverse square forces, which were functions of

---

the Electron (Dublin: Royal Dublin Society, 1993), 5–28. The introduction of a new term is an event that can be easily identified and, thus, provides a convenient starting point for a biographical narrative whose subject is the corresponding representation. The appearance of a new term also signals the birth of a novel concept, whose identity has not yet solidified. Thus, it is not surprising that in its subsequent development the concept may merge with other related concepts. As we will see below, this is what happened in the case of the electron.

[2] Stoney's paper was first published in 1881. See G. J. Stoney, "On the Physical Units of Nature," *Scientific Proceedings of the Royal Dublin Society*, new series, 3 (1881–1883): 54.

[3] Stoney, "On the Cause of Double Lines," 583.

[4] Ibid.

[5] Note that the biographical approach can also come to grips with the "prehistory" of the electron's representation.

[6] Kragh, "Concept and Controversy: Jean Becquerel and the Positive Electron," *Centaurus*, 32 (1989): 205.

[7] For an extended discussion of Weber's program see M. N. Wise, "German Concepts of Force, Energy, and the Electromagnetic Ether, 1845–1880," in *Conceptions of Ether: Studies in the History of Ether Theories, 1740–1900*, G. N. Cantor and M. J. S. Hodge (eds.) (Cambridge: Cambridge Univ. Press, 1981), 269–307, esp. 276–83.

FIGURE 14.1. A page of text with footnotes; the first note is continued from the previous page (with a short rule above it). See 14.36.

length, and where chapters may be reprinted separately, they are usually placed at the end of the chapter to which they pertain.) At the manuscript stage, authors can work with whichever form seems most convenient, though notes should be created with a word processor's note function to facilitate renumbering when notes are added or deleted (see also 2.20). For footnotes to tables, see 2.28, 3.74–78. For notes in previously published material, see 2.42.

14.39 *Footnotes—pros and cons.* Readers of scholarly printed works usually prefer footnotes for ease of reference. This is especially true where the notes are closely integrated into the text and make interesting reading, or if immediate knowledge of the sources is essential to readers. The limiting factor in printed works is page makeup—it can be difficult or impossible to fit a close succession of long footnotes onto the pages they pertain to, especially in an illustrated work (a basic requirement for all footnotes is that they at least begin on the page on which they are referenced). There is also the matter of appearance; a page consisting almost exclusively of footnotes is daunting. For some remedies, see 14.51–55.

14.40 *Endnotes—pros and cons.* Endnotes, which pose no page makeup challenges beyond those of ordinary text, obviate many of the disadvantages of footnotes in printed works (see 14.39). Because of this flexibility, and because pages free of footnotes are less intimidating to many readers, publishers' marketing and sales staff may recommend endnotes in books directed to general as well as scholarly or professional readers. Nonetheless, because general readers may be disappointed to find a third or more of a book devoted to endnotes, authors still need to aim for a healthy balance between text and notes (i.e., by limiting the temptation to include an excessive number of discursive notes). The main problem with endnotes is that of finding a particular note. This difficulty (usually not encountered in electronic texts, where text and notes are linked) can be ameliorated by informative running heads (see 14.42).

14.41 *Endnote placement.* Endnotes to each chapter of a book are often best grouped in the end matter, following the text and any appendixes and preceding the bibliography if there is one (see 1.4). The main heading is simply "Notes," and the group of notes to each chapter is introduced by a subhead bearing the chapter number or title or both (see fig. 14.2). In a book that has a different author for each chapter, or whose chapters may be published separately, endnotes normally appear at the end of each chapter. In a journal, they appear at the end of each article. In the latter two cases, a subhead "Notes" usually appears between text and notes (see fig. 14.3).

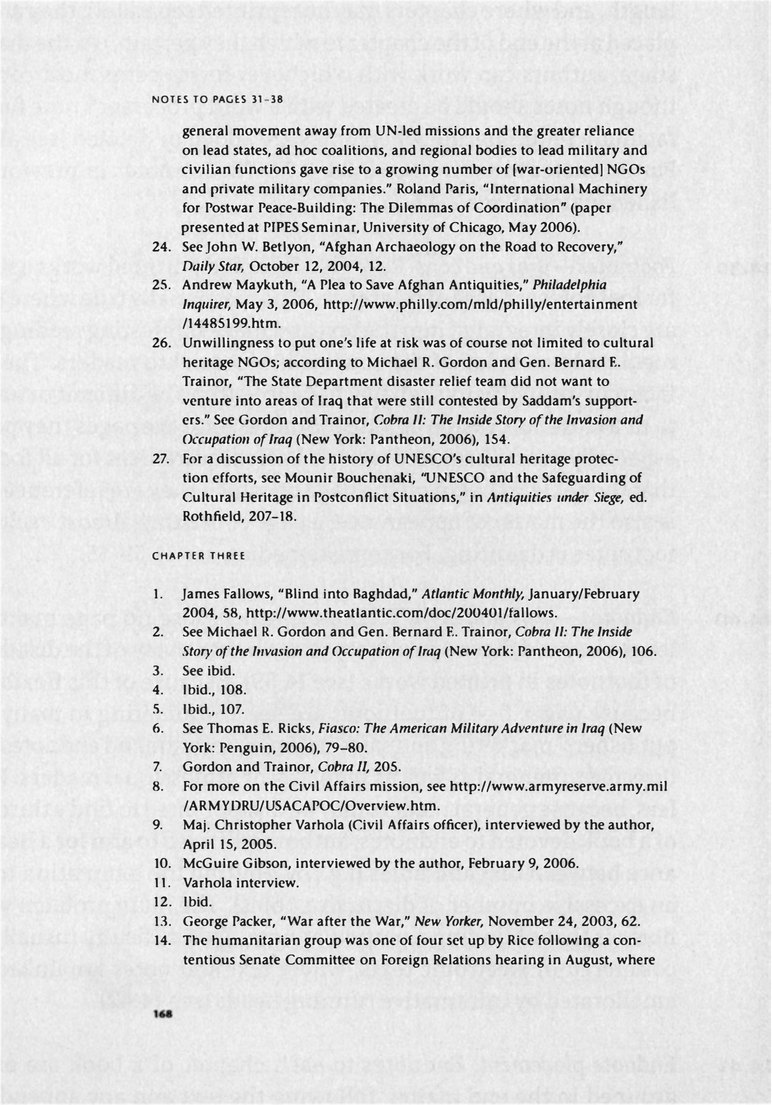

NOTES TO PAGES 31–38

general movement away from UN-led missions and the greater reliance on lead states, ad hoc coalitions, and regional bodies to lead military and civilian functions gave rise to a growing number of [war-oriented] NGOs and private military companies." Roland Paris, "International Machinery for Postwar Peace-Building: The Dilemmas of Coordination" (paper presented at PIPES Seminar, University of Chicago, May 2006).

24. See John W. Betlyon, "Afghan Archaeology on the Road to Recovery," *Daily Star,* October 12, 2004, 12.
25. Andrew Maykuth, "A Plea to Save Afghan Antiquities," *Philadelphia Inquirer,* May 3, 2006, http://www.philly.com/mld/philly/entertainment/14485199.htm.
26. Unwillingness to put one's life at risk was of course not limited to cultural heritage NGOs; according to Michael R. Gordon and Gen. Bernard E. Trainor, "The State Department disaster relief team did not want to venture into areas of Iraq that were still contested by Saddam's supporters." See Gordon and Trainor, *Cobra II: The Inside Story of the Invasion and Occupation of Iraq* (New York: Pantheon, 2006), 154.
27. For a discussion of the history of UNESCO's cultural heritage protection efforts, see Mounir Bouchenaki, "UNESCO and the Safeguarding of Cultural Heritage in Postconflict Situations," in *Antiquities under Siege,* ed. Rothfield, 207–18.

CHAPTER THREE

1. James Fallows, "Blind into Baghdad," *Atlantic Monthly,* January/February 2004, 58, http://www.theatlantic.com/doc/200401/fallows.
2. See Michael R. Gordon and Gen. Bernard E. Trainor, *Cobra II: The Inside Story of the Invasion and Occupation of Iraq* (New York: Pantheon, 2006), 106.
3. See ibid.
4. Ibid., 108.
5. Ibid., 107.
6. See Thomas E. Ricks, *Fiasco: The American Military Adventure in Iraq* (New York: Penguin, 2006), 79–80.
7. Gordon and Trainor, *Cobra II,* 205.
8. For more on the Civil Affairs mission, see http://www.armyreserve.army.mil/ARMYDRU/USACAPOC/Overview.htm.
9. Maj. Christopher Varhola (Civil Affairs officer), interviewed by the author, April 15, 2005.
10. McGuire Gibson, interviewed by the author, February 9, 2006.
11. Varhola interview.
12. Ibid.
13. George Packer, "War after the War," *New Yorker,* November 24, 2003, 62.
14. The humanitarian group was one of four set up by Rice following a contentious Senate Committee on Foreign Relations hearing in August, where

168

FIGURE 14.2. A page of endnotes, with a subhead introducing the notes to a new chapter and a running head showing the text pages on which the notes are referenced. See 14.41, 14.42.

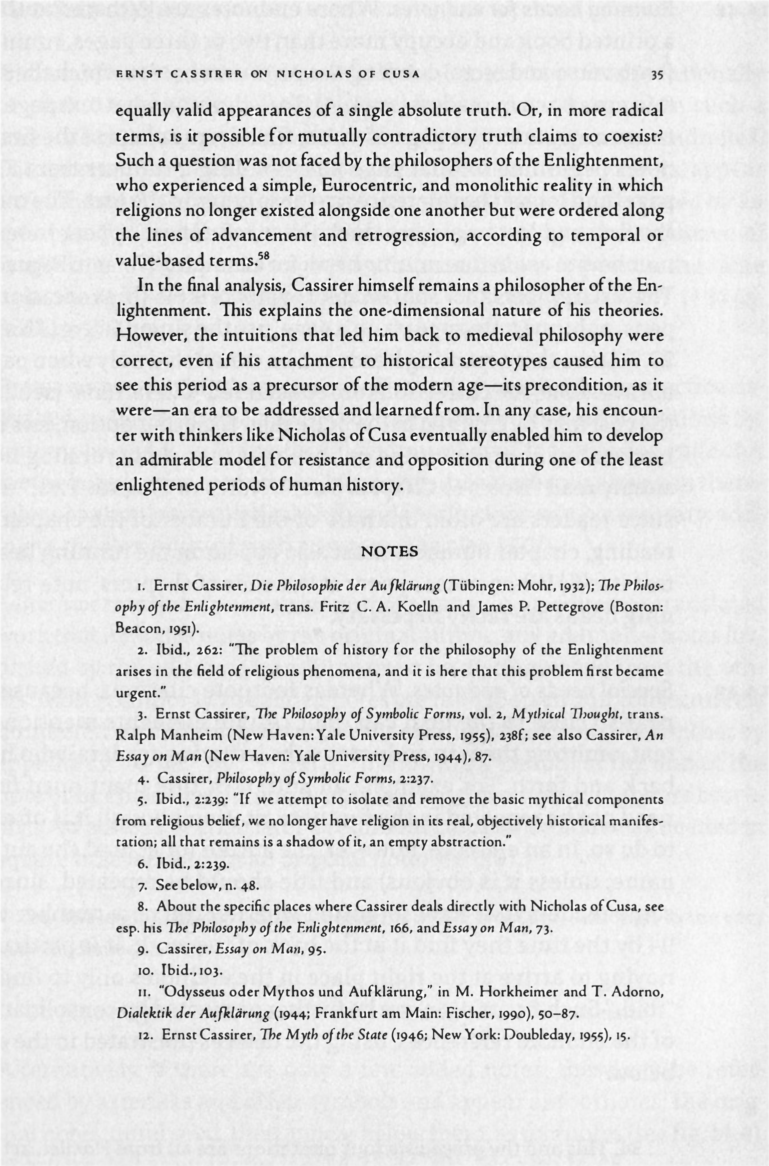

ERNST CASSIRER ON NICHOLAS OF CUSA 35

equally valid appearances of a single absolute truth. Or, in more radical terms, is it possible for mutually contradictory truth claims to coexist? Such a question was not faced by the philosophers of the Enlightenment, who experienced a simple, Eurocentric, and monolithic reality in which religions no longer existed alongside one another but were ordered along the lines of advancement and retrogression, according to temporal or value-based terms.[58]

In the final analysis, Cassirer himself remains a philosopher of the Enlightenment. This explains the one-dimensional nature of his theories. However, the intuitions that led him back to medieval philosophy were correct, even if his attachment to historical stereotypes caused him to see this period as a precursor of the modern age—its precondition, as it were—an era to be addressed and learned from. In any case, his encounter with thinkers like Nicholas of Cusa eventually enabled him to develop an admirable model for resistance and opposition during one of the least enlightened periods of human history.

NOTES

1. Ernst Cassirer, *Die Philosophie der Aufklärung* (Tübingen: Mohr, 1932); *The Philosophy of the Enlightenment*, trans. Fritz C. A. Koelln and James P. Pettegrove (Boston: Beacon, 1951).
2. Ibid., 262: "The problem of history for the philosophy of the Enlightenment arises in the field of religious phenomena, and it is here that this problem first became urgent."
3. Ernst Cassirer, *The Philosophy of Symbolic Forms*, vol. 2, *Mythical Thought*, trans. Ralph Manheim (New Haven: Yale University Press, 1955), 238f; see also Cassirer, *An Essay on Man* (New Haven: Yale University Press, 1944), 87.
4. Cassirer, *Philosophy of Symbolic Forms*, 2:237.
5. Ibid., 2:239: "If we attempt to isolate and remove the basic mythical components from religious belief, we no longer have religion in its real, objectively historical manifestation; all that remains is a shadow of it, an empty abstraction."
6. Ibid., 2:239.
7. See below, n. 48.
8. About the specific places where Cassirer deals directly with Nicholas of Cusa, see esp. his *The Philosophy of the Enlightenment*, 166, and *Essay on Man*, 73.
9. Cassirer, *Essay on Man*, 95.
10. Ibid., 103.
11. "Odysseus oder Mythos und Aufklärung," in M. Horkheimer and T. Adorno, *Dialektik der Aufklärung* (1944; Frankfurt am Main: Fischer, 1990), 50–87.
12. Ernst Cassirer, *The Myth of the State* (1946; New York: Doubleday, 1955), 15.

FIGURE 14.3. Chapter endnotes (first page of notes only), prefaced by the subhead "Notes." See 14.41.

14.42 *Running heads for endnotes.* Where endnotes are gathered at the back of a printed book and occupy more than two or three pages, running heads (both verso and recto) carrying the page numbers to which the notes pertain are a boon to readers (see 1.14). To determine what text page numbers to use on a particular page of notes, find the numbers of the first and last notes beginning on that page (disregarding a runover from a previous page) and locate the references to these notes in the text. The numbers of the first and last pages on which these references appear in text are the numbers to use in the running head: for example, "Notes to Pages 123–125." The last number is *not* abbreviated; compare 9.60. (If, as occasionally happens, only one note appears on a page, use the singular: e.g., "Note to Page 23.") Since these running heads can be completed only when page proofs are available, the corrections are considered "alterations" (see 2.131), and the cost may be charged to the publisher. (Another option, less useful for readers but cheaper for the publisher, is to include running heads that simply read "Notes to Chapter One," "Notes to Chapter Two," and so on; since readers are often unaware of the number of the chapter they are reading, chapter numbers must also appear in the running heads of the text itself.) When notes appear at the ends of chapters, note-related running heads are rarely necessary.

14.43 *Special needs of endnotes.* Whereas footnote citations, because they appear so close to the text, can omit certain elements mentioned in the text, omitting them in endnotes risks irritating readers, who have to go back and forth. For example, an author or title mentioned in the text need not be repeated in the footnote citation, though it is often helpful to do so. In an endnote, however, the author (or at least the author's last name, unless it is obvious) and title should be repeated, since at least some readers may have forgotten whether the note number was 93 or 94 by the time they find it at the back of the work. It is particularly annoying to arrive at the right place in the endnotes only to find another "ibid." Such frustration can be further prevented by consolidating some of the endnote references, using the devices illustrated in the examples below.

> 34. This and the preceding four quotations are all from *Hamlet*, act 1, sc. 4.
>
> 87. Barbara Wallraff, *Word Court: Wherein Verbal Virtue Is Rewarded, Crimes against the Language Are Punished, and Poetic Justice Is Done* (New York: Harcourt, 2000), 34. Further citations of this work are given in the text.

The device in the second example should be used only if the source is clear from the text, without reference to the endnotes. See also 13.65.

Two Sets of Notes

14.44 ***Endnotes plus footnotes.*** In a heavily documented work it is occasionally helpful to separate substantive notes from source citations. In such a case, the citation notes should be numbered and appear as endnotes. The substantive notes, indicated by asterisks and other symbols, appear as footnotes. The first footnote on each printed page is referenced by an asterisk. If more than one footnote begins on a page, the sequence of symbols is * † ‡ §. Should more than four such notes appear on the same page, the symbols are doubled for the fifth to the eighth notes: ** †† ‡‡ §§. See also 3.77.

14.45 ***Footnotes plus author-date citations.*** The rather cumbersome practice described in 14.44 may be avoided by the use of author-date citations for sources (see 14.2 and chapter 15) and numbered footnotes or endnotes for the substantive comments. Moreover, the numbered notes can themselves contain parenthetical author-date citations when necessary, adding to the flexibility of such a system. See also 15.30.

14.46 ***Editor's or translator's notes plus author's notes.*** In an edited or translated work that includes notes by the original author, any additional notes furnished by the editor or translator must be distinguished from the others. Most commonly, the added notes are interspersed and consecutively numbered with the original notes but distinguished from them either by appending "—Ed." or "—Trans." (following a period) at the end of the note or by enclosing the entire note, except the number, in square brackets. (An editor's or translator's comment can also be added as needed in square brackets within an original note; see 6.97.)

> 14. Millicent Cliff was Norton Westermont's first cousin, although to the very last she denied it.—Ed.
>
> *or*
>
> 21. [The original reads *gesungen*; presumably *gesunken* is meant.]

Alternatively, if there are only a few added notes, these can be referenced by asterisks and other symbols and appear as footnotes; the original notes, numbered, then appear below them, as footnotes (see fig. 14.4), or are treated as endnotes (see 14.38, 14.20). See also 14.48.

Unnumbered Notes

14.47 ***Unnumbered notes in relation to numbered notes.*** Footnotes without numbers or symbols always precede any numbered notes on the same printed

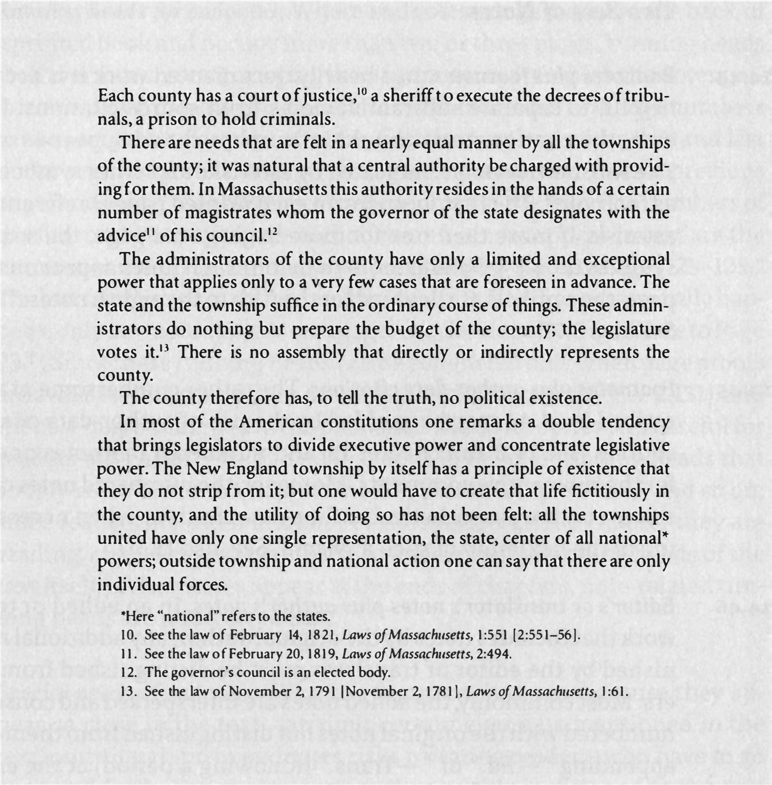

Each county has a court of justice,[10] a sheriff to execute the decrees of tribunals, a prison to hold criminals.

There are needs that are felt in a nearly equal manner by all the townships of the county; it was natural that a central authority be charged with providing for them. In Massachusetts this authority resides in the hands of a certain number of magistrates whom the governor of the state designates with the advice[11] of his council.[12]

The administrators of the county have only a limited and exceptional power that applies only to a very few cases that are foreseen in advance. The state and the township suffice in the ordinary course of things. These administrators do nothing but prepare the budget of the county; the legislature votes it.[13] There is no assembly that directly or indirectly represents the county.

The county therefore has, to tell the truth, no political existence.

In most of the American constitutions one remarks a double tendency that brings legislators to divide executive power and concentrate legislative power. The New England township by itself has a principle of existence that they do not strip from it; but one would have to create that life fictitiously in the county, and the utility of doing so has not been felt: all the townships united have only one single representation, the state, center of all national* powers; outside township and national action one can say that there are only individual forces.

*Here "national" refers to the states.

10. See the law of February 14, 1821, *Laws of Massachusetts*, 1:551 [2:551–56].

11. See the law of February 20, 1819, *Laws of Massachusetts*, 2:494.

12. The governor's council is an elected body.

13. See the law of November 2, 1791 [November 2, 1781], *Laws of Massachusetts*, 1:61.

FIGURE 14.4. Translator's footnote referenced by an asterisk, followed by author's numbered notes. Notes referenced by symbols always precede numbered notes, regardless of the order in which the symbols and numbers appear in the text. See 14.46.

page. They most often appear on the opening page of a chapter or other main division of a work. In a work with endnotes in which an unnumbered footnote is not an option, an unnumbered endnote—to be used with caution because it is easily missed—should appear immediately before note 1 to the relevant chapter. An example of such a note would be a note applying to a book epigraph (see 1.36), which would precede the endnotes to the first chapter and appear under a heading "Epigraph." Notes to chapter epigraphs can be handled similarly. Source notes, biographical notes, and other unnumbered notes pertaining to an entire chapter or section—which appear as footnotes—are treated in 14.49 and 14.50.

14.48 ***Notes keyed to text by line or page numbers.*** In some works—translations and editions of the classics, for example, or books intended for a more general audience—it may be desirable to omit note numbers in the text. Any necessary notes may then be keyed to the text by line or page number, or both, usually followed by the word or phrase being annotated. (Line numbers are used as locators only if line numbers appear in the text.) Such notes may appear as footnotes or endnotes. The keywords may be distinguished from the annotation typographically (e.g., with italics or boldface) and separated from the annotation by a colon or the use of brackets or other devices. Quotation marks, if used at all, should be reserved for keywords that are themselves direct quotations in the text. See figures 14.5, 14.6.

14.49 ***Unnumbered source notes.*** In anthologies and other collections of previously published material, or in largely new publications that contain one or more previously published chapters, the source of each reprinted piece may be given in an unnumbered footnote on the first printed page of the chapter, preceding any numbered footnotes. If the other notes are endnotes, the source note should remain a footnote, and it must do so if it carries a copyright notice. For material still in copyright, the note should include the original title, publisher or journal, publication date, page numbers or other locators, and—very important—mention of permission from the copyright owner to reprint. It may also include a copyright notice if requested. Some permissions grantors demand particular language in the source note. For exercising discretion versus acceding literally to the grantor's request, see 3.31, which deals with illustrations but applies equally to text. In many cases, wording can be adjusted for consistency as long as proper credit is given. The following examples show various acceptable forms. See also 4.98.

Reprinted with permission from Steven Shapin, *The Scientific Revolution* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1996), 15–64.

If an article or chapter is reprinted under a different title:

Originally published as "Manet in His Generation: The Face of Painting in the 1860s," *Critical Inquiry* 19, no. 1 (1992): 22–69, © 1992 by The University of Chicago. All rights reserved. Reprinted by permission.

If an article or chapter has been revised:

Originally published in a slightly different form in *The Metropolis in Modern Life*, ed. Robert Moore Fisher (New York: Doubleday, 1955), 125–48. Reprinted by permission of the author and the publisher.

If a work is in the public domain (such as government publications):

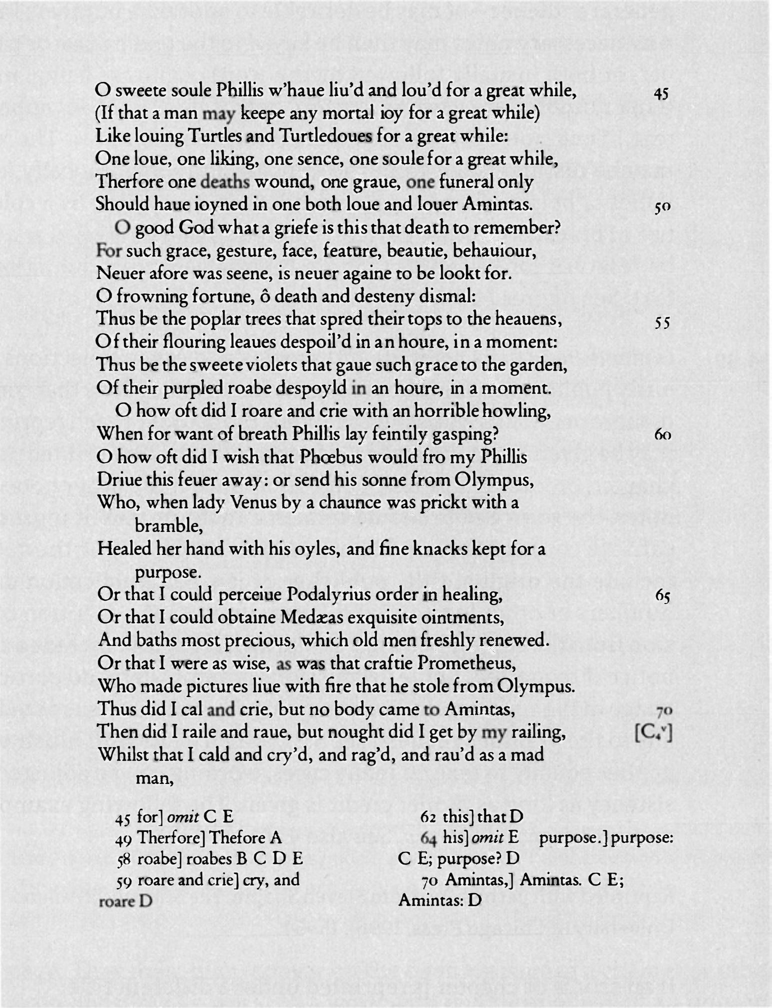

O sweete soule Phillis w'haue liu'd and lou'd for a great while,
(If that a man may keepe any mortal ioy for a great while)
Like louing Turtles and Turtledoues for a great while:
One loue, one liking, one sence, one soule for a great while,
Therfore one deaths wound, one graue, one funeral only
Should haue ioyned in one both loue and louer Amintas.
O good God what a griefe is this that death to remember?
For such grace, gesture, face, feature, beautie, behauiour,
Neuer afore was seene, is neuer againe to be lookt for.
O frowning fortune, ô death and desteny dismal:
Thus be the poplar trees that spred their tops to the heauens,
Of their flouring leaues despoil'd in an houre, in a moment:
Thus be the sweete violets that gaue such grace to the garden,
Of their purpled roabe despoyld in an houre, in a moment.
O how oft did I roare and crie with an horrible howling,
When for want of breath Phillis lay feintily gasping?
O how oft did I wish that Phœbus would fro my Phillis
Driue this feuer away: or send his sonne from Olympus,
Who, when lady Venus by a chaunce was prickt with a
bramble,
Healed her hand with his oyles, and fine knacks kept for a
purpose.
Or that I could perceiue Podalyrius order in healing,
Or that I could obtaine Medæas exquisite ointments,
And baths most precious, which old men freshly renewed.
Or that I were as wise, as was that craftie Prometheus,
Who made pictures liue with fire that he stole from Olympus.
Thus did I cal and crie, but no body came to Amintas,
Then did I raile and raue, but nought did I get by my railing, [$C_4{}^v$]
Whilst that I cald and cry'd, and rag'd, and rau'd as a mad
man,

45 for] *omit* C E
49 Therfore] Thefore A
58 roabe] roabes B C D E
59 roare and crie] cry, and roare D
62 this] that D
64 his] *omit* E purpose.] purpose: C E; purpose? D
70 Amintas,] Amintas. C E; Amintas: D

FIGURE 14.5. Footnotes keyed to line numbers—a device best used with verse. (With prose, the notes cannot be numbered until the text has been typeset.) See 14.48.

Reprinted from Ambler Thompson and Barry N. Taylor, *Guide for the Use of the International System of Units (SI)* (Gaithersburg, MD: National Institute of Standards and Technology, 2008), 38–39.

14.50 ***Unnumbered biographical notes and acknowledgments.*** In journals or multiauthor works, a brief biographical note on the author or authors may appear as an unnumbered note on the first page of each article or chap-

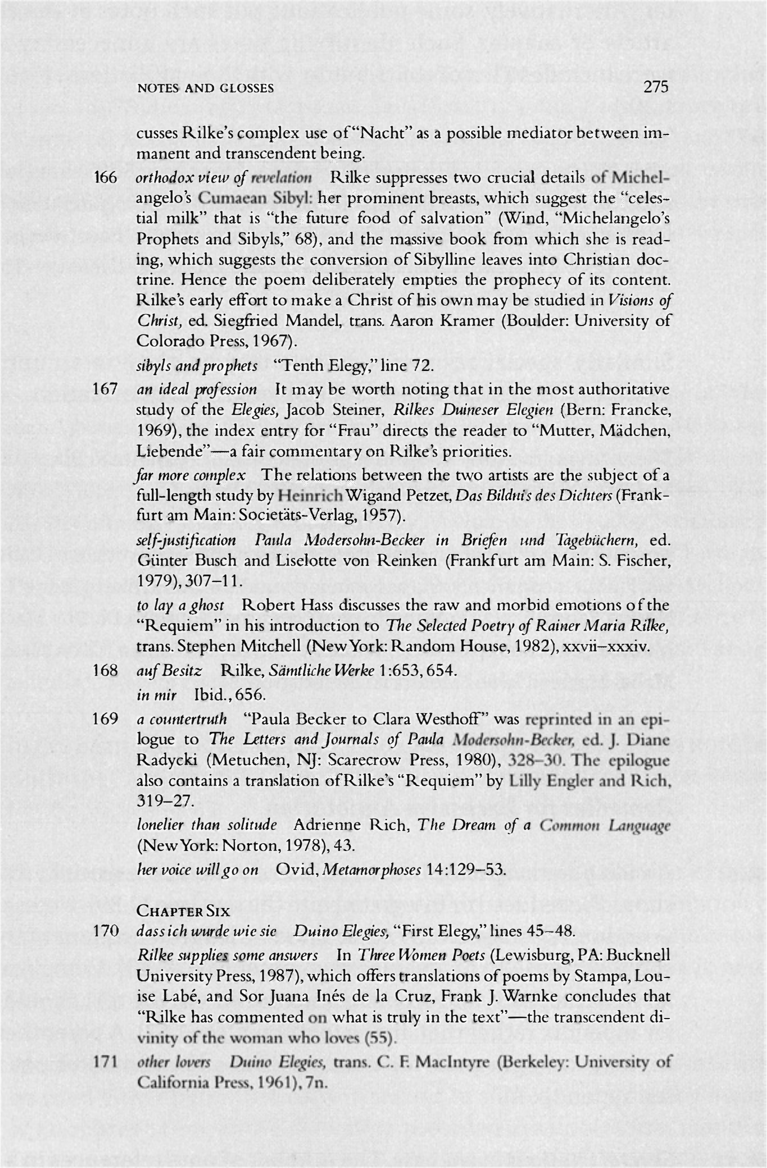

NOTES AND GLOSSES 275

cusses Rilke's complex use of "Nacht" as a possible mediator between immanent and transcendent being.

166 *orthodox view of revelation* Rilke suppresses two crucial details of Michelangelo's Cumaean Sibyl: her prominent breasts, which suggest the "celestial milk" that is "the future food of salvation" (Wind, "Michelangelo's Prophets and Sibyls," 68), and the massive book from which she is reading, which suggests the conversion of Sibylline leaves into Christian doctrine. Hence the poem deliberately empties the prophecy of its content. Rilke's early effort to make a Christ of his own may be studied in *Visions of Christ,* ed. Siegfried Mandel, trans. Aaron Kramer (Boulder: University of Colorado Press, 1967).

sibyls and prophets "Tenth Elegy," line 72.

167 *an ideal profession* It may be worth noting that in the most authoritative study of the *Elegies,* Jacob Steiner, *Rilkes Duineser Elegien* (Bern: Francke, 1969), the index entry for "Frau" directs the reader to "Mutter, Mädchen, Liebende"—a fair commentary on Rilke's priorities.

far more complex The relations between the two artists are the subject of a full-length study by Heinrich Wigand Petzet, *Das Bildnis des Dichters* (Frankfurt am Main: Societäts-Verlag, 1957).

self-justification *Paula Modersohn-Becker in Briefen und Tagebüchern,* ed. Günter Busch and Liselotte von Reinken (Frankfurt am Main: S. Fischer, 1979), 307–11.

to lay a ghost Robert Hass discusses the raw and morbid emotions of the "Requiem" in his introduction to *The Selected Poetry of Rainer Maria Rilke,* trans. Stephen Mitchell (New York: Random House, 1982), xxvii–xxxiv.

168 *auf Besitz* Rilke, *Sämtliche Werke* 1:653, 654.

in mir Ibid., 656.

169 *a countertruth* "Paula Becker to Clara Westhoff" was reprinted in an epilogue to *The Letters and Journals of Paula Modersohn-Becker,* ed. J. Diane Radycki (Metuchen, NJ: Scarecrow Press, 1980), 328–30. The epilogue also contains a translation of Rilke's "Requiem" by Lilly Engler and Rich, 319–27.

lonelier than solitude Adrienne Rich, *The Dream of a Common Language* (New York: Norton, 1978), 43.

her voice will go on Ovid, *Metamorphoses* 14:129–53.

CHAPTER SIX

170 *dass ich wurde wie sie* *Duino Elegies,* "First Elegy," lines 45–48.

Rilke supplies some answers In *Three Women Poets* (Lewisburg, PA: Bucknell University Press, 1987), which offers translations of poems by Stampa, Louise Labé, and Sor Juana Inés de la Cruz, Frank J. Warnke concludes that "Rilke has commented on what is truly in the text"—the transcendent divinity of the woman who loves (55).

171 *other lovers* *Duino Elegies,* trans. C. F. MacIntyre (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1961), 7n.

FIGURE 14.6. Endnotes keyed to page numbers, with key phrases italicized. See 14.48.

ter. Alternatively, some publications put such notes at the end of the article or chapter. Such identifying notes are unnecessary when the work includes a list of contributors with their affiliations. (See also 1.62, 1.20.)

Alice Y. Kaplan teaches in the Department of Romance Studies at Duke University. She is the author of *Reproductions of Banality: Fascism, Literature, and French Intellectual Life* (1986); *Relevé des sources et citations dans "Bagatelles pour un massacre"* (1987); a memoir, *French Lessons* (1993); and *The Collaborator: The Trial and Execution of Robert Brasillach* (2000).

Similarly, special acknowledgments may be given in an unnumbered note, sometimes appended to the biographical information.

The authors gratefully acknowledge the assistance of Janni R. Blazer of the Chain and Fob Archive in the preparation of this chapter.

Michael Saler is assistant professor of history at the University of California, Davis. For their comments and assistance the author would like to thank T. W. Heyck, Norma Landau, D. L. LeMahieu, Fred Leventhal, Chun Li, Dianne Macleod, Peter Mandler, Paul Robinson, Peter Stansky, Meredith Veldman, Chris Waters, and the Mabel Macleod Lewis Memorial Foundation.

Remedies for Excessive Annotation

14.51 ***Avoiding overlong notes.*** Lengthy, discursive notes—especially footnotes—should be reduced or integrated into the text (see 14.39). Notes presented as endnotes can generally accommodate lengthier commentary, but this should be limited in a judicious manner (see 14.40). Complicated tabular material, lists, and other entities not part of the text should be put in an appendix rather than in the footnotes (see 1.57). A parenthetical note in the text might read, for example, "For a list of institutions involved, see appendix A."

14.52 ***Several citations in one note.*** The number of note references in a sentence or a paragraph can sometimes be reduced by grouping several citations in a single note. The citations are separated by semicolons and must appear in the same order as the text material (whether works, quotations, or whatever) to which they pertain. Take care to avoid any ambiguity as to what is documenting what.

Text:

Only when we gather the work of several scholars—Walter Sutton's explications of some of Whitman's shorter poems; Paul Fussell's careful study of structure in "Cradle"; S. K. Coffman's close readings of "Crossing Brooklyn Ferry" and "Passage to India"; and the attempts of Thomas I. Rountree and John Lovell, dealing with "Song of Myself" and "Passage to India," respectively, to elucidate the strategy in "indirection"—do we begin to get a sense of both the extent and the specificity of Whitman's forms.[1]

Note:

1. Sutton, "The Analysis of Free Verse Form, Illustrated by a Reading of Whitman," *Journal of Aesthetics and Art Criticism* 18 (December 1959): 241–54; Fussell, "Whitman's Curious Warble: Reminiscence and Reconciliation," in *The Presence of Walt Whitman*, ed. R. W. B. Lewis (New York: Columbia University Press, 1962), 28–51; Coffman, "'Crossing Brooklyn Ferry': A Note on the Catalog Technique in Whitman's Poetry," *Modern Philology* 51 (May 1954): 225–32; Coffman, "Form and Meaning in Whitman's 'Passage to India,'" *PMLA* 70 (June 1955): 337–49; Rountree, "Whitman's Indirect Expression and Its Application to 'Song of Myself,'" *PMLA* 73 (December 1958): 549–55; and Lovell, "Appreciating Whitman: 'Passage to India,'" *Modern Language Quarterly* 21 (June 1960): 131–41.

In the example above, authors' given names are omitted in the note because they appear in the text. For inclusion of names in endnotes versus footnotes, see 14.43.

14.53 *Parenthetical text references.* Another way to reduce the number of notes is to cite sources (usually in parentheses) in the text. A combination of *Ibid.* and page numbers for subsequent citations of the same source may be dealt with in the same way—that is, cited in the text rather than in notes (see 14.29). For discussion and examples, see 13.62–70.

14.54 *Abbreviations for frequently cited works.* A frequently mentioned work may be cited either parenthetically in text or in subsequent notes by means of an abbreviation, with full citation provided in a note at first mention. (This practice is more helpful with footnotes than with endnotes.) See also 13.65, 14.55, 14.24–31.

2. François Furet, *The Passing of an Illusion: The Idea of Communism in the Twentieth Century*, trans. Deborah Furet (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1999), 368 (hereafter cited in text as *PI*).

(Subsequent text references) "In this sense, the Second World War completed what the First had begun—the domination of the great political religions over European public opinion," Furet points out (*PI*, 360). But he goes on to argue . . .

An abbreviation differs from a short title (see 14.28) in that words may be abbreviated and the word order changed.

3. Nathaniel B. Shurtleff, ed., *Records of the Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay in New England (1628–86)*, 5 vols. (Boston, 1853–54), 1:126 (hereafter cited as *Mass. Records*).

4. *Mass. Records*, 2:330.

14.55 ***List of abbreviations.*** Where many abbreviations of titles, manuscript collections, personal names, or other entities are used in a work—say, ten or more—they are best listed alphabetically in a separate section. In a book, the list may appear in the front matter (if footnotes are used) or in the end matter preceding the endnotes (if these are used). It is usually headed "Abbreviations" and should be included in the table of contents (see 1.4, 1.43). Where only a few abbreviations are used, these are occasionally listed as the first section of the endnotes (see fig. 14.7) or at the head of the bibliography. Titles that are italicized in the notes or bibliography should be italicized in their abbreviated form in the list of abbreviations and elsewhere.

Bibliographies

Overview

14.56 ***Relationship of bibliographies to notes.*** Although not all annotated works require a bibliography, since full details can be given in the notes, an alphabetical bibliography serves a number of purposes. Specifically, a full biography that includes all the sources cited in the text, in addition to providing an overview of the sources and therefore an indication of the scope of an author's research, can serve as a convenient key to shortened forms of the notes (see 14.14, 14.24). In electronic publications, a full bibliography can significantly streamline the process of creating links to works cited and, in turn, can enable publishers of those cited works to identify and create "cited by" links.

14.57 ***Format and placement of bibliography.*** A bibliography arranged in a single alphabetical list is the most common and usually the most reader-friendly

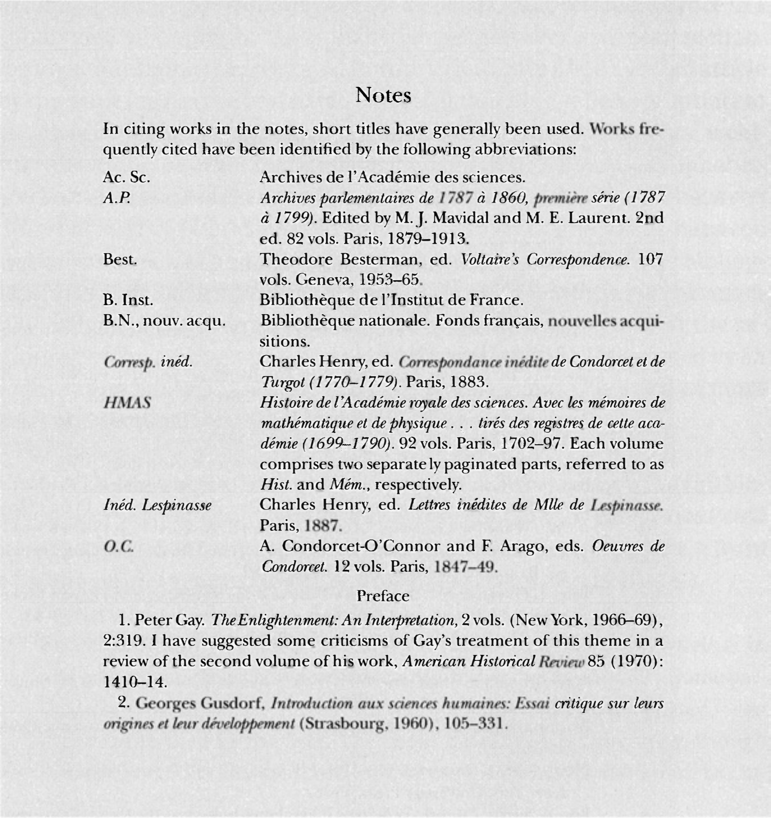

Notes

In citing works in the notes, short titles have generally been used. Works frequently cited have been identified by the following abbreviations:

Ac. Sc.	Archives de l'Académie des sciences.
A.P.	*Archives parlementaires de 1787 à 1860, première série (1787 à 1799).* Edited by M. J. Mavidal and M. E. Laurent. 2nd ed. 82 vols. Paris, 1879–1913.
Best.	Theodore Besterman, ed. *Voltaire's Correspondence.* 107 vols. Geneva, 1953–65.
B. Inst.	Bibliothèque de l'Institut de France.
B.N., nouv. acqu.	Bibliothèque nationale. Fonds français, nouvelles acquisitions.
Corresp. inéd.	Charles Henry, ed. *Correspondance inédite de Condorcet et de Turgot (1770–1779).* Paris, 1883.
HMAS	*Histoire de l'Académie royale des sciences. Avec les mémoires de mathématique et de physique . . . tirés des registres de cette académie (1699–1790).* 92 vols. Paris, 1702–97. Each volume comprises two separately paginated parts, referred to as *Hist.* and *Mém.*, respectively.
Inéd. Lespinasse	Charles Henry, ed. *Lettres inédites de Mlle de Lespinasse.* Paris, 1887.
O.C.	A. Condorcet-O'Connor and F. Arago, eds. *Oeuvres de Condorcet.* 12 vols. Paris, 1847–49.

Preface

1. Peter Gay. *The Enlightenment: An Interpretation,* 2 vols. (New York, 1966–69), 2:319. I have suggested some criticisms of Gay's treatment of this theme in a review of the second volume of his work, *American Historical Review* 85 (1970): 1410–14.

2. Georges Gusdorf, *Introduction aux sciences humaines: Essai critique sur leurs origines et leur développement* (Strasbourg, 1960), 105–331.

FIGURE 14.7. A short list of abbreviations preceding endnotes. See 14.55.

form for a work with or without notes to the text. All sources to be included—books, articles, dissertations, papers—are alphabetically arranged in a single list by the last names of the authors (or, if no author or editor is given, by the title or a keyword readers are most likely to seek). In a printed work, a bibliography is normally placed at the end, preceding the index. In a multiauthor book or a textbook, each chapter may be followed by a brief bibliography. For an illustration, see figure 14.8; for the arrangement of entries, see 14.60–62. For division into sections, see 14.58.

14.58 ***Dividing a bibliography into sections.*** A bibliography may occasionally be divided into sections—but only if doing so would make the reader's job significantly easier. Where readers need to refer frequently from notes

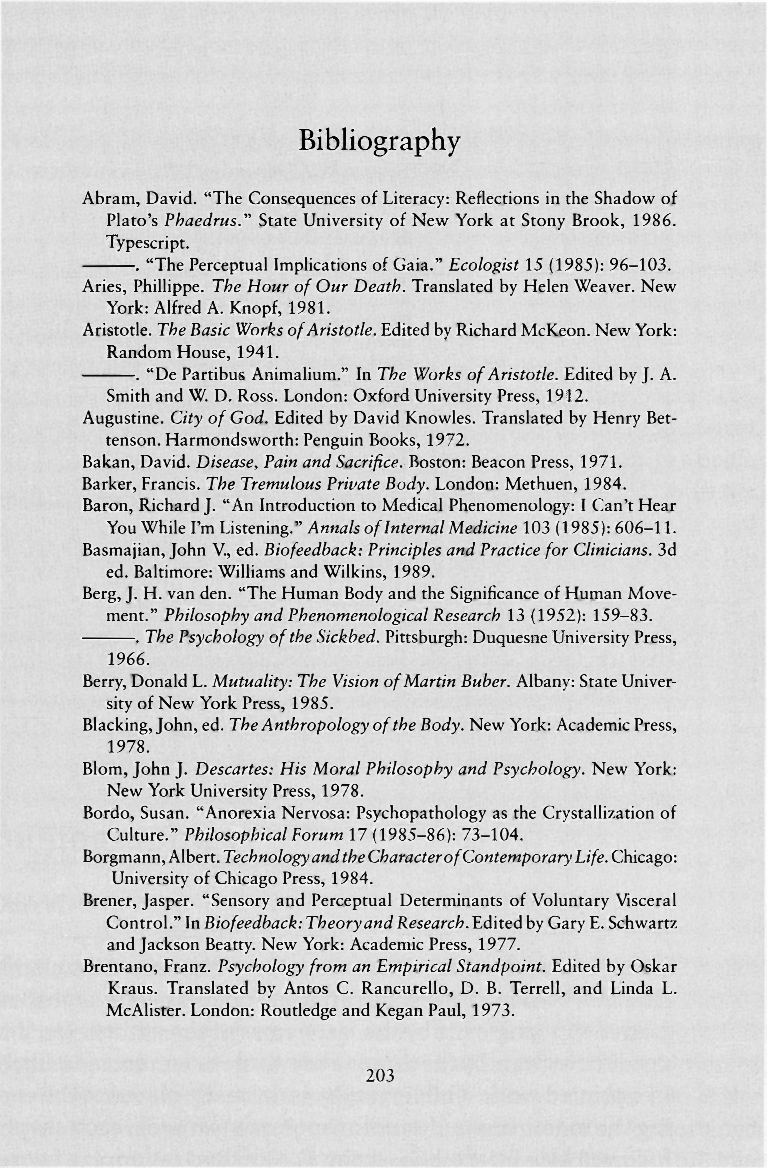

Bibliography

Abram, David. "The Consequences of Literacy: Reflections in the Shadow of Plato's *Phaedrus*." State University of New York at Stony Brook, 1986. Typescript.

———. "The Perceptual Implications of Gaia." *Ecologist* 15 (1985): 96–103.

Aries, Phillippe. *The Hour of Our Death*. Translated by Helen Weaver. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1981.

Aristotle. *The Basic Works of Aristotle*. Edited by Richard McKeon. New York: Random House, 1941.

———. "De Partibus Animalium." In *The Works of Aristotle*. Edited by J. A. Smith and W. D. Ross. London: Oxford University Press, 1912.

Augustine. *City of God*. Edited by David Knowles. Translated by Henry Bettenson. Harmondsworth: Penguin Books, 1972.

Bakan, David. *Disease, Pain and Sacrifice*. Boston: Beacon Press, 1971.

Barker, Francis. *The Tremulous Private Body*. London: Methuen, 1984.

Baron, Richard J. "An Introduction to Medical Phenomenology: I Can't Hear You While I'm Listening." *Annals of Internal Medicine* 103 (1985): 606–11.

Basmajian, John V., ed. *Biofeedback: Principles and Practice for Clinicians*. 3d ed. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins, 1989.

Berg, J. H. van den. "The Human Body and the Significance of Human Movement." *Philosophy and Phenomenological Research* 13 (1952): 159–83.

———. *The Psychology of the Sickbed*. Pittsburgh: Duquesne University Press, 1966.

Berry, Donald L. *Mutuality: The Vision of Martin Buber*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1985.

Blacking, John, ed. *The Anthropology of the Body*. New York: Academic Press, 1978.

Blom, John J. *Descartes: His Moral Philosophy and Psychology*. New York: New York University Press, 1978.

Bordo, Susan. "Anorexia Nervosa: Psychopathology as the Crystallization of Culture." *Philosophical Forum* 17 (1985–86): 73–104.

Borgmann, Albert. *Technology and the Character of Contemporary Life*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1984.

Brener, Jasper. "Sensory and Perceptual Determinants of Voluntary Visceral Control." In *Biofeedback: Theory and Research*. Edited by Gary E. Schwartz and Jackson Beatty. New York: Academic Press, 1977.

Brentano, Franz. *Psychology from an Empirical Standpoint*. Edited by Oskar Kraus. Translated by Antos C. Rancurello, D. B. Terrell, and Linda L. McAlister. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1973.

203

FIGURE 14.8. The first page of a bibliography for a book. See 14.57.

to bibliography, a continuous alphabetical list is far preferable, since in a subdivided bibliography the alphabetizing starts over with each section. Rarely should books be separated from articles, since a book and an article by the same author are best listed close together. It may be appropriate to subdivide a bibliography (1) when it includes manuscript sources, archival collections, or other materials that do not fit into a straight alphabetical list; (2) when readers need to see at a glance the distinction between different kinds of works—for example, in a study of one writer, between works by the writer and those about him or her; or (3) when the bibliography is intended primarily as a guide to further reading (as in this manual). When divisions are necessary, a headnote should appear at the beginning of the bibliography, and each section should be introduced by an explanatory subhead (see fig. 14.9). No source should be listed in more than one section. For alphabetizing, see 14.60–62.

14.59 *Kinds of bibliographies.* Though Chicago generally recommends a full bibliography for book-length works, any of the bibliography categories listed here may be suited to a particular type of work. (For reference lists, a form of bibliography adapted to the author-date system, see 15.10–16.)

1. **Full bibliography.** A full bibliography includes all works cited, whether in text or in notes, other than personal communications (see 14.222). Some particularly relevant works the author has consulted may also be listed, even if not mentioned in the text. The usual heading is Bibliography, though Works Cited or Literature Cited may be used if no additional works are included.
2. **Selected bibliography.** If, for whatever reason, the author does not wish to list all works cited, the title must so indicate: either Selected Bibliography or (less frequently) Select Bibliography may be used or, if the list is quite short, Suggested Readings or Further Readings. A headnote should explain the principles of selection. See figure 14.9.
3. **Annotated bibliography.** Generally more convenient for readers than a bibliographic essay (see next item) is an annotated bibliography. Annotations may simply follow the publication details (sometimes in brackets if only a few entries are annotated) or may start a new line, often with a paragraph indention. See figure 14.10.
4. **Bibliographic essay.** Less formal than an annotated bibliography is a bibliographic essay, in which the author treats the literature discursively. Since works are not alphabetized, subject divisions may freely be made (see 14.58). Such an essay may be particularly suited to certain types of archival sources that do not easily lend themselves to an alphabetical list. It may be included in addition to a bibliography, in which case it should come first. If works discussed in the essay are listed in the bibliography, they may be given in

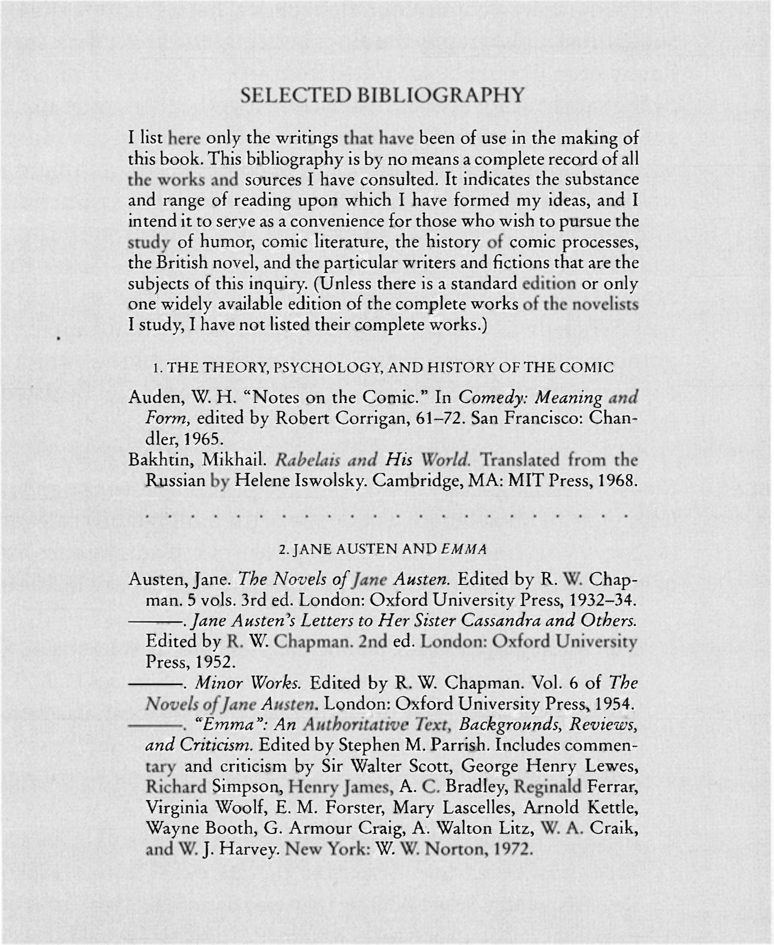

SELECTED BIBLIOGRAPHY

I list here only the writings that have been of use in the making of this book. This bibliography is by no means a complete record of all the works and sources I have consulted. It indicates the substance and range of reading upon which I have formed my ideas, and I intend it to serve as a convenience for those who wish to pursue the study of humor, comic literature, the history of comic processes, the British novel, and the particular writers and fictions that are the subjects of this inquiry. (Unless there is a standard edition or only one widely available edition of the complete works of the novelists I study, I have not listed their complete works.)

1. THE THEORY, PSYCHOLOGY, AND HISTORY OF THE COMIC

Auden, W. H. "Notes on the Comic." In *Comedy: Meaning and Form,* edited by Robert Corrigan, 61–72. San Francisco: Chandler, 1965.

Bakhtin, Mikhail. *Rabelais and His World.* Translated from the Russian by Helene Iswolsky. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 1968.

. . . .

2. JANE AUSTEN AND *EMMA*

Austen, Jane. *The Novels of Jane Austen.* Edited by R. W. Chapman. 5 vols. 3rd ed. London: Oxford University Press, 1932–34.

———. *Jane Austen's Letters to Her Sister Cassandra and Others.* Edited by R. W. Chapman. 2nd ed. London: Oxford University Press, 1952.

———. *Minor Works.* Edited by R. W. Chapman. Vol. 6 of *The Novels of Jane Austen.* London: Oxford University Press, 1954.

———. *"Emma": An Authoritative Text, Backgrounds, Reviews, and Criticism.* Edited by Stephen M. Parrish. Includes commentary and criticism by Sir Walter Scott, George Henry Lewes, Richard Simpson, Henry James, A. C. Bradley, Reginald Ferrar, Virginia Woolf, E. M. Forster, Mary Lascelles, Arnold Kettle, Wayne Booth, G. Armour Craig, A. Walton Litz, W. A. Craik, and W. J. Harvey. New York: W. W. Norton, 1972.

FIGURE 14.9. The opening page of a bibliography divided into sections, with an author's note explaining the principle of selection. See 14.58, 14.59.

shortened form (as in notes). If there is no bibliography, the essay must include full facts of publication, whether or not the titles also appear in the notes. For an illustration, see figure 14.11.

5. **List of works by one author.** A list of works by one author, usually titled Published Works [of So-and-So] or Writings [of So-and-So], is most often arranged chronologically. If several titles are listed for each year, the dates may appear as subheads.

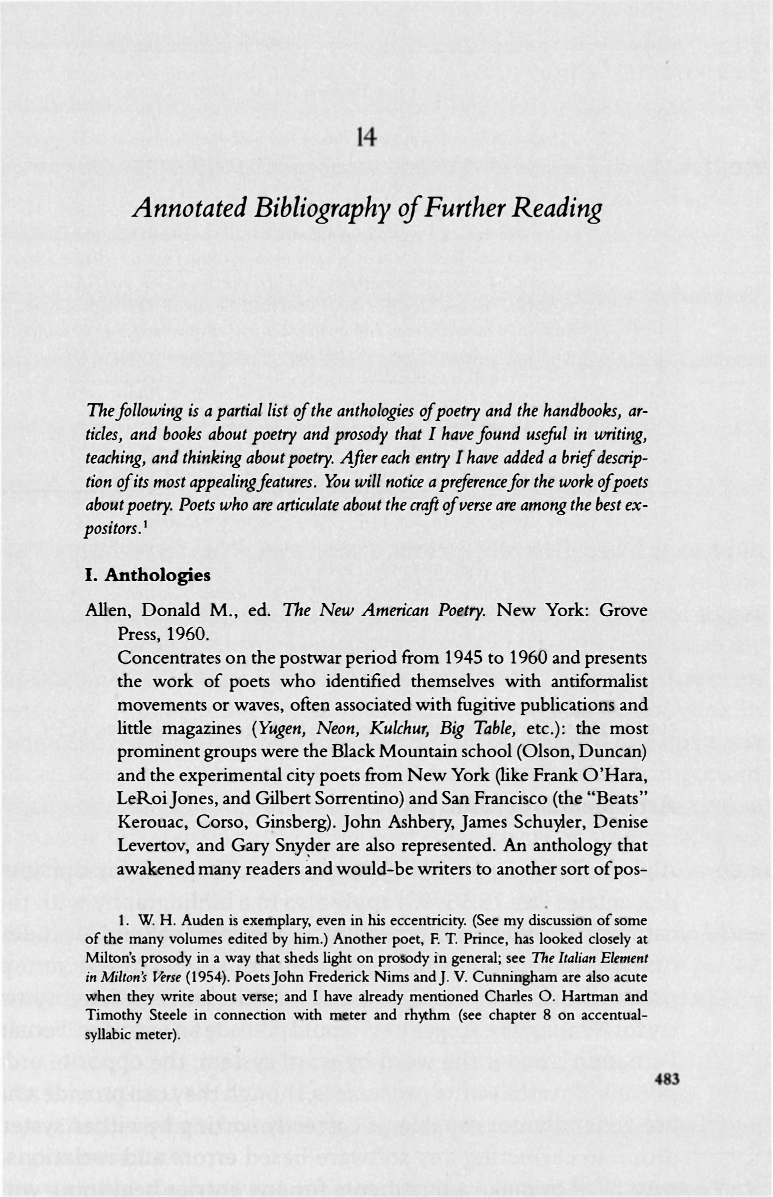

14

Annotated Bibliography of Further Reading

The following is a partial list of the anthologies of poetry and the handbooks, articles, and books about poetry and prosody that I have found useful in writing, teaching, and thinking about poetry. After each entry I have added a brief description of its most appealing features. You will notice a preference for the work of poets about poetry. Poets who are articulate about the craft of verse are among the best expositors.[1]

I. Anthologies

Allen, Donald M., ed. *The New American Poetry.* New York: Grove Press, 1960.

Concentrates on the postwar period from 1945 to 1960 and presents the work of poets who identified themselves with antiformalist movements or waves, often associated with fugitive publications and little magazines (*Yugen, Neon, Kulchur, Big Table,* etc.): the most prominent groups were the Black Mountain school (Olson, Duncan) and the experimental city poets from New York (like Frank O'Hara, LeRoi Jones, and Gilbert Sorrentino) and San Francisco (the "Beats" Kerouac, Corso, Ginsberg). John Ashbery, James Schuyler, Denise Levertov, and Gary Snyder are also represented. An anthology that awakened many readers and would-be writers to another sort of pos-

---

[1] W. H. Auden is exemplary, even in his eccentricity. (See my discussion of some of the many volumes edited by him.) Another poet, F. T. Prince, has looked closely at Milton's prosody in a way that sheds light on prosody in general; see *The Italian Element in Milton's Verse* (1954). Poets John Frederick Nims and J. V. Cunningham are also acute when they write about verse; and I have already mentioned Charles O. Hartman and Timothy Steele in connection with meter and rhythm (see chapter 8 on accentual-syllabic meter).

FIGURE 14.10. Part of the first section of an annotated bibliography. See 14.59.

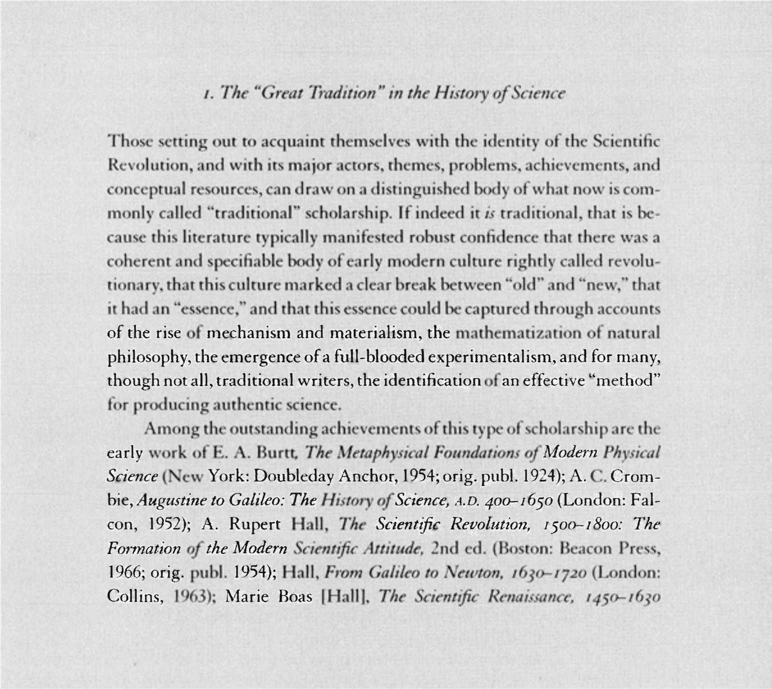

1. The "Great Tradition" in the History of Science

Those setting out to acquaint themselves with the identity of the Scientific Revolution, and with its major actors, themes, problems, achievements, and conceptual resources, can draw on a distinguished body of what now is commonly called "traditional" scholarship. If indeed it *is* traditional, that is because this literature typically manifested robust confidence that there was a coherent and specifiable body of early modern culture rightly called revolutionary, that this culture marked a clear break between "old" and "new," that it had an "essence," and that this essence could be captured through accounts of the rise of mechanism and materialism, the mathematization of natural philosophy, the emergence of a full-blooded experimentalism, and for many, though not all, traditional writers, the identification of an effective "method" for producing authentic science.

Among the outstanding achievements of this type of scholarship are the early work of E. A. Burtt, *The Metaphysical Foundations of Modern Physical Science* (New York: Doubleday Anchor, 1954; orig. publ. 1924); A. C. Crombie, *Augustine to Galileo: The History of Science, A.D. 400–1650* (London: Falcon, 1952); A. Rupert Hall, *The Scientific Revolution, 1500–1800: The Formation of the Modern Scientific Attitude*, 2nd ed. (Boston: Beacon Press, 1966; orig. publ. 1954); Hall, *From Galileo to Newton, 1630–1720* (London: Collins, 1963); Marie Boas [Hall], *The Scientific Renaissance, 1450–1630*

FIGURE 14.11. Part of the first section of a bibliographic essay. See 14.59.

Arrangement of Entries

14.60 ***Alphabetical order for bibliography entries.*** The rules for alphabetizing index entries (see 16.56–93) apply also to a bibliography, with the modifications described in this section and in 14.63–67. As for index entries, Chicago recommends the letter-by-letter system unless your publisher prefers the word-by-word system. Under the letter-by-letter system, an entry for "Fernández, Angelines" would precede an entry for "Fernán Gómez, Fernando"; under the word-by-word system, the opposite order would prevail. Note that word processors, though they can provide a head start, are generally not capable of correctly sorting by either system. In addition to correcting any software-based errors and variations, authors may need to make adjustments for any entries beginning with a 3-em dash (see 14.63).

14.61 ***Single author versus several authors.*** A single-author entry precedes a multiauthor entry beginning with the same name. Only the name of the first author is inverted.

Kogan, Herman. *The First Century: The Chicago Bar Association, 1874–1974*. Chicago: Rand McNally, 1974.

Kogan, Herman, and Lloyd Wendt. *Chicago: A Pictorial History*. New York: Dutton, 1958.

14.62 ***Author with different coauthors.*** Successive entries by two or more authors in which only the first author's name is the same are alphabetized according to the coauthors' last names.

Brooks, Daniel R., and Deborah A. McLennan. *The Nature of Diversity: An Evolutionary Voyage of Discovery*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2002.

Brooks, Daniel R., and E. O. Wiley. *Evolution as Entropy*. 2nd ed. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1986.

The 3-Em Dash for Repeated Names in a Bibliography

14.63 ***The 3-em dash and sorting—advice to authors.*** The advice in this section, which explains how to use the 3-em dash to stand in for repeated bibliography entries under the same name, applies only to the final stages of a book or article. Authors generally should not use the 3-em dash for repeated names until the final manuscript of the bibliography has been produced. Among other potential pitfalls, 3-em dashes do not work in computerized sorts (i.e., *all* entries with 3-em dashes will line up in one place). Moreover, an incorrectly applied dash may obscure an important detail—for example, the abbreviation *ed.* or *trans.* Often the best course is to leave this step up to the editor and concentrate on transcribing accurate, complete entries. See also 6.91.

14.64 ***The 3-em dash for one repeated name.*** For successive entries by the same author, editor, translator, or compiler, a 3-em dash (followed by a period or comma, depending on the presence of an abbreviation such as *ed.*) replaces the name after the first appearance. See also 14.67.

Judt, Tony. *A Grand Illusion? An Essay on Europe*. New York: Hill and Wang, 1996.

———. *Reappraisals: Reflections on the Forgotten Twentieth Century*. New York: Penguin Press, 2008.

———, ed. *Resistance and Revolution in Mediterranean Europe, 1939–1948*. New York: Routledge, 1989.

Squire, Larry R. "The Hippocampus and the Neuropsychology of Memory." In *Neurobiology of the Hippocampus*, edited by W. Seifert, 491–511. New York: Oxford University Press, 1983.

———. *Memory and Brain*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1987.

14.65 ***The 3-em dash for more than one repeated name.*** The 3-em dash can stand for the same two or more authors (or editors or translators, etc.) as in the previous entry, provided they are listed in the same order. Note that the second-listed work is *authored* by (rather than *edited* by) Marty and Appleby; abbreviations for editor, translator, and so forth cannot be replaced by the 3-em dash and must always be listed explicitly.

Marty, Martin E., and R. Scott Appleby, eds. *Fundamentalisms Comprehended*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1995.

———. *The Glory and the Power: The Fundamentalist Challenge to the Modern World*. Boston: Beacon Press, 1992.

but

Comaroff, Jean, and John Comaroff, eds. *Modernity and Its Malcontents: Ritual and Power in Postcolonial Africa*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1993.

Comaroff, John, and Jean Comaroff. *Of Revelation and Revolution*. 2 vols. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1991–97.

14.66 ***The 3-em dash for an institutional name.*** The 3-em dash may also be used for institutional or corporate authors. Note that identical titles must be repeated. See also 14.8.

Unicode Consortium. *The Unicode Standard*. Version 5.0. Edited by Julie D. Allen et al. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Addison-Wesley, 2007.

———. *The Unicode Standard*. Version 5.1.0. Last updated December 16, 2008. http://www.unicode.org/versions/Unicode5.1.0/.

14.67 ***Alphabetical order for titles by the same author.*** In a bibliography (as opposed to a reference list; see 15.17), titles by the same author are normally listed alphabetically. An initial *the*, *a*, or *an* is ignored in the alphabetizing. Note that *all* works by the same person (or by the same persons in the same order)—whether that person is editor, author, translator, or compiler—appear together, regardless of the added abbreviation.

Ginger, Ray. *The Bending Cross: A Biography of Eugene Victor Debs*. New Brunswick, NJ: Rutgers University Press, 1949.

———. *Six Days or Forever? Tennessee v. John Thomas Scopes*. Chicago: Quadrangle Books, 1969.

Monmonier, Mark. *Coast Lines: How Mapmakers Frame the World and Chart Environmental Change*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2008.

———. *From Squaw Tit to Whorehouse Meadow: How Maps Name, Claim, and Inflame*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2006.

Mulvany, Nancy C. "Copyright for Indexes, Revisited." *ASI Newsletter* 107 (November–December 1991): 11–13.

———, ed. *Indexing, Providing Access to Information—Looking Back, Looking Ahead: Proceedings of the 25th Annual Meeting of the American Society of Indexers*. Port Aransas, TX: American Society of Indexers, 1993.

———. "Software Tools for Indexing: What We Need." *Indexer* 17 (October 1990): 108–13.

A bibliography of works by a single author (Writings of So-and-So), however, is usually arranged chronologically. (For an example, see section 2 in fig. 14.9.) Two or more titles published in any one year are arranged alphabetically.

Books

14.68 ***Books as a model for other sources.*** Much of the advice in the section on books will pertain to other sources as well. Their long history as a formal publication ensures, in particular, that the variations in author names (14.72–92) and titles (14.93–110) will serve as a model for constructing documentary notes and bibliography entries for many other types of sources. Rather than repeat this information for each type of source, then, cross-references will be provided in those sections to the appropriate paragraph(s) in this section on books whenever applicable.

14.69 ***Elements to include when citing a book.*** A full reference must include enough information to enable an interested reader to locate the book. Most references contain at least some information not strictly needed for that purpose but potentially helpful nonetheless. The elements listed below are included, where applicable, in full documentary notes and bibliography entries. The order in which they appear will vary slightly according to type of book, and certain elements are sometimes omitted; such variation will be noted and illustrated in the course of this chapter.

1. Author: full name of author(s) or editor(s) or, if no author or editor is listed, name of institution standing in their place
2. Title: full title of the book, including subtitle if there is one
3. Editor, compiler, or translator, if any, if listed on title page in addition to author
4. Edition, if not the first
5. Volume: total number of volumes if multivolume work is referred to as a whole; individual number if single volume of multivolume work is cited, and title of individual volume if applicable
6. Series title if applicable, and volume number within series if series is numbered

7. Facts of publication: city, publisher, and date
8. Page number or numbers if applicable
9. For electronic books consulted online, a URL or DOI, or, for other types of electronic books, an indication of the medium consulted (e.g., DVD, CD-ROM); see 14.4–13

14.70 ***Flexibility and consistency.*** As long as a consistent style is maintained within any one work, logical and defensible variations on the style illustrated here are acceptable if agreed to by author and publisher. Such flexibility, however, is rarely possible in journal publication, which calls for adherence to the established style of the journal in question. See also 14.3.

14.71 ***Foreign bibliographic terms and abbreviations.*** When books in a language other than English are cited in an English-language work, terms used for volume, edition, and so on may be translated—but only if the author or editor has a firm grasp of bibliographic terms in the foreign language. It is often wiser to leave them in the original. “Ausgabe in einem Band,” for example, may be rendered as “one-volume edition” or simply left untranslated. Moreover, abbreviations such as “Bd.” and “t.” (German and French/Spanish equivalents of *vol.*, respectively) that are likely to have been recorded that way in a library catalog may best be left in that form. If in doubt, check a major catalog such as that of the Library of Congress or WorldCat.

Author’s Name

14.72 ***Form of author’s name.*** Authors’ names are normally given as they appear on the title pages of their books. Certain adjustments, however, may be made to assist correct identification (unless they conflict with the style of a particular journal or series). First names may be given in full in place of initials. If an author uses his or her given name in one cited book and initials in another (e.g., “Mary L. Jones” versus “M. L. Jones”), the same form, preferably the fuller one, should be used in all references to that author. To assist alphabetization, middle initials should be given wherever known. Degrees and affiliations following names on a title page are omitted.

14.73 ***Authors preferring initials.*** For authors who always use initials, full names should not be supplied—for example, T. S. Eliot, M. F. K. Fisher, O. Henry (pseud.), P. D. James, C. S. Lewis, J. D. Salinger, H. G. Wells. Note that space is added between initials. (Exceptions may be made for special cases like

H.D.—the pen name for Hilda Doolittle.) In some instances, a cross-reference may be appropriate (see 14.84). See also 10.12. Very rarely, a portion of an author's given name omitted on the title page is supplied in brackets in a bibliography entry. This practice should be limited to authors who may be known by both forms: for example, R. S. Crane may be listed as R[onald] S. Crane.

14.74 ***Monarchs, saints, and the like.*** Authors known only by their given names (i.e., and not by any surname) are listed and alphabetized by those names. Such titles as "King" or "Saint" are omitted.

Augustine. *On Christian Doctrine*. Translated by D. W. Robertson Jr. Indianapolis: Bobbs-Merrill, 1958.

Elizabeth I. *Collected Works*. Edited by Leah S. Marcus, Janel Mueller, and Mary Beth Rose. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2000.

14.75 ***One author.*** In a note, the author's name is given in the normal order. In a bibliography, where names are arranged alphabetically, it is inverted (last name first). See also 14.18.

1. David Shields, *The Thing about Life Is That One Day You'll Be Dead* (New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 2008).

2. Roger Martin du Gard, *Lieutenant-Colonel de Maumort*, trans. Luc Brébion and Timothy Crouse (New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 2000).

Martin du Gard, Roger. *Lieutenant-Colonel de Maumort*. Translated by Luc Brébion and Timothy Crouse. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 2000.

Shields, David. *The Thing about Life Is That One Day You'll Be Dead*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 2008.

14.76 ***Two or more authors (or editors).*** Two or three authors (or editors) of the same work are listed in the order used on the title page. In a bibliography, only the first author's name is inverted, and a comma must appear both before and after the first author's given name or initials. Use the conjunction *and* (not an ampersand).

5. Sue-Ellen Jacobs, Wesley Thomas, and Sabine Lang, eds., *Two-Spirit People: Native American Gender Identity, Sexuality, and Spirituality* (Urbana: University of Illinois Press, 1997), 32.

6. Steven D. Levitt and Stephen J. Dubner, *Freakonomics: A Rogue Economist Explores the Hidden Side of Everything* (New York: William Morrow, 2005), 20–21.

7. Jacobs, Thomas, and Lang, *Two-Spirit People*, 65–71.

Jacobs, Sue-Ellen, Wesley Thomas, and Sabine Lang, eds. *Two-Spirit People: Native American Gender Identity, Sexuality, and Spirituality*. Urbana: University of Illinois Press, 1997.

Levitt, Steven D., and Stephen J. Dubner. *Freakonomics: A Rogue Economist Explores the Hidden Side of Everything*. New York: William Morrow, 2005.

For works by or edited by four to ten persons, all names are usually given in the bibliography. Word order and punctuation are the same as for two or three authors. In a note, only the name of the first author is included, followed by *et al.* with no intervening comma.

4. Jeri A. Sechzer et al., eds., *Women and Mental Health* (Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1996), 243.

7. Sechzer et al., *Women and Mental Health*, 276.

For works with more than ten authors—more common in the natural sciences—Chicago recommends the policy followed by the *American Naturalist* (see bibliog. 5): only the first seven should be listed in the bibliography, followed by *et al.* (Where space is limited, the policy of the American Medical Association may be followed: up to six authors' names are listed; if there are more than six, only the first three are listed, followed by *et al.*)

14.77 ***Two or more authors (or editors) with same family name.*** When two or more authors (or editors) share the same family name, the name is repeated.

3. Christopher Kendris and Theodore Kendris, *501 Spanish Verbs*, 6th ed. (Hauppauge, NY: Barron's Educational Series, 2007), 88.

47. Kendris and Kendris, *501 Spanish Verbs*, 191–92.

14.78 ***Author's name in title.*** When the author's name appears in the title or subtitle of a cited work (such as an autobiography), the note citation may begin with the title. The bibliography entry, however, should begin with the author's name, even though it is repeated in the title. See also 14.87.

5. *Clapton: The Autobiography* (New York: Broadway Books, 2007), 212.

6. *The Letters of George Meredith*, ed. C. L. Cline, 3 vols. (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1970), 1:125.

7. *Illumination and Night Glare: The Unfinished Autobiography of Carson McCullers*, ed. Carlos L. Dews (Madison: University of Wisconsin Press, 1999), 44–45.

Clapton, Eric. *Clapton: The Autobiography*. New York: Broadway Books, 2007.

McCullers, Carson. *Illumination and Night Glare: The Unfinished Autobiography of Carson McCullers*. Edited by Carlos L. Dews. Madison: University of Wisconsin Press, 1999.

Meredith, George. *The Letters of George Meredith*. Edited by C. L. Cline. 3 vols. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1970.

14.79 ***Anonymous works—unknown authorship.*** If the author or editor is unknown, the note or bibliography entry should normally begin with the title. An initial article is ignored in alphabetizing.

8. *A True and Sincere Declaration of the Purpose and Ends of the Plantation Begun in Virginia, of the Degrees Which It Hath Received, and Means by Which It Hath Been Advanced* (London, 1610).

9. *Stanze in lode della donna brutta* (Florence, 1547).

Stanze in lode della donna brutta. Florence, 1547.

A True and Sincere Declaration of the Purpose and Ends of the Plantation Begun in Virginia, of the Degrees Which It Hath Received, and Means by Which It Hath Been Advanced. London, 1610.

Although the use of *Anonymous* is generally to be avoided, it may stand in place of the author's name in a bibliography in which several anonymous works need to be grouped. In such an instance, *Anonymous* or *Anon.* (set in roman) appears at the first entry, and 3-em dashes (see 14.64) are used thereafter. (The dashes do not necessarily imply the same anonymous author.)

Anonymous. *Stanze in lode della donna brutta*. Florence, 1547.

———. *A True and Sincere Declaration of the Purpose and Ends of the Plantation Begun in Virginia*, . . . 1610.

14.80 ***Anonymous works—known authorship.*** If the authorship is known or guessed at but was omitted on the title page, the name is included in brackets.

10. [Samuel Horsley], *On the Prosodies of the Greek and Latin Languages* (London, 1796).

11. [Ebenezer Cook?], *Sotweed Redivivus; or, The Planter's Looking-Glass*, by "E. C. Gent" (Annapolis, 1730).

[Cook, Ebenezer?]. *Sotweed Redivivus; or, The Planter's Looking-Glass*. By "E. C. Gent." Annapolis, 1730.

[Horsley, Samuel]. *On the Prosodies of the Greek and Latin Languages*. London, 1796.

14.81 ***Pseudonyms—unknown authorship.*** If an author's real name is not known, *pseud.* (roman, in brackets) may follow the name. (In a text citation, *pseud.* is omitted.)

Centinel [pseud.]. Letters. In *The Complete Anti-Federalist*, edited by Herbert J. Storing. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1981.

14.82 ***Pseudonyms—known authorship.*** A widely used pseudonym is generally treated as if it were the author's real name.

Eliot, George. *Middlemarch*. Norton Critical Editions. New York: Norton, 1977.

Twain, Mark. *The Prince and the Pauper: A Tale for Young People of All Ages*. New York: Harper & Brothers, 1899.

The real name, if of interest to readers, may follow the pseudonym in brackets. See also 14.84.

Le Carré, John [David John Moore Cornwell]. *The Quest for Karla*. New York: Knopf, 1982.

Stendhal [Marie-Henri Beyle]. *The Charterhouse of Parma*. Trans. C. K. Scott-Moncrieff. New York: Boni and Liveright, 1925.

14.83 ***Pseudonyms rarely used.*** If the author's real name is better known than the pseudonym, the real name should be used. If needed, the pseudonym may be included in brackets, followed by *pseud*.

Brontë, Charlotte. *Jane Eyre*. London, 1847.

or

Brontë, Charlotte [Currer Bell, pseud.]. *Jane Eyre*. London, 1847.

14.84 ***Cross-references for pseudonyms.*** In some cases, a cross-reference from a real name to a pseudonym, or vice versa, may be desired. Italicize words like *See*.

Twain, Mark. *See* Clemens, Samuel.

If a bibliography includes two or more works published by the same author but under different pseudonyms, all may be listed under the real name followed by the appropriate pseudonym in brackets, with cross-references under the pseudonyms (see also 14.64). Alternatively, they may be listed under the pseudonyms, with a cross-reference at the real name to each pseudonym.

Ashe, Gordon. *See* Creasey, John.

Creasey, John [Gordon Ashe, pseud.]. *A Blast of Trumpets*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1976.

——— [Anthony Morton, pseud.]. *Hide the Baron*. New York: Walker, 1978.

——— [Jeremy York, pseud.]. *Death to My Killer*. New York: Macmillan, 1966.
Morton, Anthony. *See* Creasey, John.
York, Jeremy. *See* Creasey, John.
or
Ashe, Gordon [John Creasey]. *A Blast of Trumpets*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1976.
Creasey, John. *See* Ashe, Gordon; Morton, Anthony; York, Jeremy.

14.85 ***Descriptive phrase as "author."*** A descriptive phrase standing in place of the author is treated in much the same way as a pseudonym (see 14.81). An initial *The* or *A* may be omitted.

11. Cotton Manufacturer, *An Inquiry into the Causes of the Present Long-Continued Depression in the Cotton Trade, with Suggestions for Its Improvement* (Bury, UK, 1869), 4–5.

Cotton Manufacturer. *An Inquiry* . . .

14.86 ***Alternative real names.*** When a writer has published under different forms of his or her name, the works should be listed under the name used on the title page—unless the difference is merely the use of initials versus full names (see 14.72). Cross-references are occasionally used.

Doniger, Wendy. *The Bedtrick: Tales of Sex and Masquerade*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2000.
———. *See also* O'Flaherty, Wendy Doniger.

If a person discussed in the text publishes under a name not used in the text, a cross-reference may be useful.

Overstone, Lord. *See* Loyd, Samuel Jones.

14.87 ***Editor in place of author.*** When no author appears on the title page, a work is listed by the name(s) of the editor(s), compiler(s), or translator(s). In full note citations and in bibliographies, the abbreviation *ed.* or *eds.*, *comp.* or *comps.*, or *trans.* follows the name, preceded by a comma. In shortened note citations and text citations, the abbreviation is omitted.

3. Glenn Young, ed., *The Best American Short Plays, 2002–2003* (New York: Applause, 2007), 94.
4. Theodore Silverstein, trans., *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1974), 34.
5. Young, *Best American Short Plays*, 97–98; Silverstein, *Sir Gawain*, 38.

Silverstein, Theodore, trans. *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1974.

Young, Glenn, ed. *The Best American Short Plays, 2002–2003*. New York: Applause, 2007.

On the other hand, certain well-known reference works may be listed by title rather than by editor; for an example, see 14.247.

14.88 ***Editor or translator in addition to author.*** The edited, compiled, or translated work of one author is normally listed with the author's name appearing first and the name(s) of the editor(s), compiler(s), or translator(s) appearing after the title, preceded by *edited by* or *ed.*, *compiled by* or *comp.*, or *translated by* or *trans.* Note that the plural forms *eds.* and *comps.* are never used in this position. Note also that *edited by* and the like are usually spelled out in bibliographies but abbreviated in notes. If a translator as well as an editor is listed, the names should appear in the same order as on the title page of the original. When the title page carries such phrases as "Edited with an Introduction and Notes by" or "Translated with a Foreword by," the bibliographic or note reference can usually be simplified to "Edited by" or "Translated by." See also 14.78, 14.112, 14.109.

6. Yves Bonnefoy, *New and Selected Poems*, ed. John Naughton and Anthony Rudolf (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1995).

7. Rigoberta Menchú, *Crossing Borders*, trans. and ed. Ann Wright (New York: Verso, 1999).

8. *Four Farces by Georges Feydeau*, trans. Norman R. Shapiro (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1970).

10. Theodor W. Adorno and Walter Benjamin, *The Complete Correspondence, 1928–1940*, ed. Henri Lonitz, trans. Nicholas Walker (Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1999).

Adorno, Theodor W., and Walter Benjamin. *The Complete Correspondence, 1928–1940*. Edited by Henri Lonitz. Translated by Nicholas Walker. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1999.

Bonnefoy, Yves. *New and Selected Poems*. Edited by John Naughton and Anthony Rudolf. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1995.

Feydeau, Georges. *Four Farces by Georges Feydeau*. Translated by Norman R. Shapiro. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1970.

Menchú, Rigoberta. *Crossing Borders*. Translated and edited by Ann Wright. New York: Verso, 1999.

14.89 ***"With the assistance of" and the like.*** The title page of some edited books carries information that must be dealt with ad hoc. The usual formats, phrases, and abbreviations may not work. If a title page lists, for example, one editor, followed in smaller type by "Associate Editor So-and-So" and "Assistant Editor So-and-So," the secondary names may be included with such wording as "With the assistance of So-and-So and So-and-So" (or simply omitted). For ghostwritten books, *with* is usually sufficient.

Chaucer Life-Records. Edited by Martin M. Crow and Clair C. Olson from materials compiled by John M. Manly and Edith Rickert, with the assistance of Lilian J. Redstone et al. London: Oxford University Press, 1966.

Cullen, John B. *Old Times in the Faulkner Country*. In collaboration with Floyd C. Watkins. Chapel Hill: University of North Carolina Press, 1961.

Prather, Marla. *Alexander Calder, 1898–1976*. With contributions by Arnauld Pierre and Alexander S. C. Rower. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1998.

Rodman, Dennis. *Walk on the Wild Side*. With Michael Silver. New York: Delacorte Press, 1997.

Schellinger, Paul, ed. *Encyclopedia of the Novel*. With the assistance of Christopher Hudson and Marijke Rijsberman. 2 vols. Chicago: Fitzroy Dearborn, 1998.

Williams, Joseph M. *Style: Toward Clarity and Grace*. With two chapters coauthored by Gregory G. Colomb. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1995.

14.90 ***Editor versus author.*** Occasionally, when an editor or a translator is more important to a discussion than the original author, a book may be listed under the editor's name. (See also 14.88.)

Eliot, T. S., ed. *Literary Essays*. By Ezra Pound. New York: New Directions, 1953.

14.91 ***Authors of forewords and the like.*** Authors of forewords or introductions to books by other authors are included in notes and bibliography entries only if the foreword or introduction is of major significance.

Hayek, F. A. *The Road to Serfdom*. With a new introduction by Milton Friedman. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1994.

For specific citation of a foreword or an introduction, see 14.116.

14.92 ***Organization as author.*** If a publication issued by an organization, association, or corporation carries no personal author's name on the title page, the organization is listed as author in a bibliography, even if it is also given as publisher. (But cf. 14.79.)

University of Chicago Press. *The Chicago Manual of Style*. 16th ed. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2010.

World Health Organization. *WHO Editorial Style Manual*. Geneva: World Health Organization, 1993.

Title

14.93 ***Additional discussion of titles.*** The section "Titles of Works" in chapter 8 (8.154–95), though focusing on the way titles of books as well as other materials are treated when mentioned in running text, is obviously relevant to documentation and provides additional discussion and examples.

14.94 ***Italics for book titles.*** Book titles and subtitles are italicized. For titles within titles, see 14.102.

Gilbert, Elizabeth. *Eat, Pray, Love: One Woman's Search for Everything across Italy, India, and Indonesia*. New York: Viking, 2006.

14.95 ***Capitalization of book titles.*** English-language book titles and subtitles are capitalized headline-style. In headline style, the first and last words of title and subtitle and all other major words are capitalized. For a more detailed definition and more examples, see 8.157. For hyphenated compounds in headline style, see 8.159. For headlines in newspapers, see 14.204.

The Fifth Miracle: The Search for the Origin and Meaning of Life
How to Do It: Guides to Good Living for Renaissance Italians

For foreign-language titles, which are usually capitalized sentence-style, see 14.107.

14.96 ***Some permissible changes to titles.*** The spelling, hyphenation, and punctuation in the original title should be preserved, with the following exceptions: words in full capitals on the original title page (except for initialisms or acronyms) should be set in upper- and lowercase; headline-style or sentence-style capitalization should be applied as applicable; and, subject to editorial discretion, an ampersand may be changed to *and*. Numbers should remain spelled out or given as numerals according to the original (*Twelfth Century* or *12th Century*) unless there is a good reason to make them consistent (but *12th* may be changed to *12th*). For more on permissible changes to titles, including the addition of colons and commas (including serial commas), see 8.163. For older titles, see 14.106. See also 14.97.

14.97 ***Subtitles—the colon.*** A colon, also italicized, is used to separate the main title from the subtitle. A space follows the colon. The subtitle, like the title, always begins with a capital letter. See also 8.162, 8.163.

Weiss, Andrea. *In the Shadow of the Magic Mountain: The Erika and Klaus Mann Story*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2008.

Although in European bibliographic style a period often separates title from subtitle, English-language publications need not follow that convention for foreign titles. See also 14.107.

Fausts Himmelfahrt: Zur letzten Szene der Tragödie

14.98 ***Two subtitles.*** If, as occasionally happens, there are two subtitles in the original (an awkward contingency), a colon normally precedes the first and a semicolon the second. The second subtitle also begins with a capital.

Sereny, Gitta. *Cries Unheard: Why Children Kill; The Story of Mary Bell*. New York: Metropolitan Books / Henry Holt, 1999.

14.99 ***Use of "or" with double titles.*** Old-fashioned double titles (or titles and subtitles) connected by *or* are traditionally separated by a semicolon, with a comma following *or*, and less traditionally but more simply by a single comma preceding *or*. Chicago prefers the first form.

England's Monitor; or, The History of the Separation
or, less formally,
England's Monitor, or The History of the Separation

14.100 ***"And other stories" and such.*** Such tags as *and other stories* or *and other poems* are treated as part of the main title but usually separated from the title story, poem, essay, or whatever by a comma, even when such comma does not appear on the title page. The first part of the title is *not* enclosed in quotation marks.

34. Norman Maclean, *A River Runs through It, and Other Stories* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1976), 104.

When the main title ends with a question mark or exclamation point, the comma is omitted. See also 14.105.

26. Herrlee Glessner Creel, *What Is Taoism? and Other Studies in Chinese Cultural History* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1970), 34.

14.101 ***Dates in titles.*** When not introduced by a preposition (e.g., "from 1920 to 1945"), dates in a title or subtitle are set off by commas, even if differentiated only by type style on the title page. If a colon has been used in the original, however, it should be retained. (Note that commas should not be added to foreign titles before dates.)

Sundiata, Ibrahim. *Brothers and Strangers: Black Zion, Black Slavery, 1914–1940*. Durham, NC: Duke University Press, 2003.

14.102 ***Titles within titles.*** Titles of long or short works appearing within an italicized title are enclosed in quotation marks, regardless of how such titles would appear alone. For a title within an article or a chapter title, see 14.177.

22. Allen Forte, *The Harmonistic Organization of "The Rite of Spring"* (New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1978).

23. Roland McHugh, *Annotations to "Finnegans Wake"* (Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1980).

Quotation marks within a book title do not, of course, always denote another title.

24. *"Race," Writing, and Difference*, ed. Henry Louis Gates Jr. and Kwame Anthony Appiah (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1986).

14.103 ***Italicized terms within titles.*** When terms normally italicized in running text, such as species names or names of ships or foreign words (but *not* titles of works; see 14.102), appear within an italicized title, they are set roman ("reverse italics"; see 8.171). When, however, such a term makes up the entire title, it should be italicized. For an italicized term within an article or a chapter title, see 14.177.

Stafford, Edward Peary. *The Big E: The Story of the USS* Enterprise. New York: Random House, 1962.

Van Wagenen, Gertrude, and Miriam E. Simpson. *Postnatal Development of the Ovary in* Homo sapiens *and* Macaca mulatta *and Induction of Ovulation in the Macaque*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1973.

Weigel, Detlef, and Jane Glazebrook. Arabidopsis: *A Laboratory Manual*. Cold Spring Harbor, NY: Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, 2002.

but

Hume, Christine. *Musca domestica*. Boston: Beacon Press, 2000.

14.104 ***Quotation marks in titles.*** A quotation used as a book title should be enclosed in quotation marks only if it appears that way in the source (i.e., on the title page or its equivalent). Headline-style capitalization should be used. See also 8.160.

Bruccoli, Matthew J., ed. *"An Artist Is His Own Fault": John O'Hara on Writers and Writing*. Carbondale: Southern Illinois University Press, 1977.

14.105 ***Question marks or exclamation points in book titles.*** When a main title ends with a question mark or an exclamation point, no colon is added before any subtitle. When the question mark or exclamation point is within quotation marks, however, retain a colon before the subtitle (see third example below). Any punctuation other than a period required by the surrounding text, note, or bibliography entry should be retained (see fourth, fifth, and sixth examples). This slight departure from Chicago's former usage recognizes the syntactical independence of a title within a phrase or sentence (see 6.119).

1. Yogi Berra, *What Time Is It? You Mean Now? Advice for Life from the Zennest Master of Them All*, with Dave Kaplan (New York: Simon & Schuster, 2002), 63.

2. Alison Oram, *Her Husband Was a Woman! Women's Gender-Crossing and British Popular Culture* (London: Routledge, 2007), 183.

3. Edward Buscombe, *"Injuns!": Native Americans in the Movies* (London: Reaktion, 2006), 12.

14. Buscombe, *"Injuns!,"* 114–15.

44. Berra, *What Time Is It?*, 55–56.

66. Oram, *Her Husband Was a Woman!*, 184.

When a title ending with a question mark or an exclamation mark would normally be followed by a period, the period is omitted; see 6.118.

Hornby, Nick. *Vous descendez?* Translated by Nicolas Richard. Paris: Plon, 2005.

14.106 ***Older titles and very long titles.*** Titles of works published in the eighteenth century or earlier may retain their original punctuation, spelling, and capitalization (except for whole words in capital letters, which should be given an initial capital only). Very long titles may be shortened in a bibliography or a note, omissions being indicated by three ellipsis dots within a title and four at the end (see 13.51).

Escalante, Bernardino. *A Discourse of the Navigation which the Portugales doe make to the Realmes and Provinces of the East Partes of the Worlde. . . .* Translated by John Frampton. London, 1579.

Ray, John. *Observations Topographical, Moral, and Physiological: Made in a Journey Through part of the Low-Countries, Germany, Italy, and France: with A Catalogue of Plants not Native of England . . . Whereunto is added A Brief Account of Francis Willughby, Esq., his Voyage through a great part of Spain.* [London], 1673.

14.107 ***Non-English titles.*** Sentence-style capitalization is strongly recommended for non-English titles (see 11.3). Capitalize the first word of a title or subtitle and any word that would be capitalized in the original language (e.g., *Wahrheit*, *Sowjetunion*, and *Inquisición* in examples 2 and 3). Writers or editors unfamiliar with the usage of the language concerned, however, should not attempt to alter capitalization without expert help. For English forms of foreign cities, see 14.137.

1. Danielle Maisonneuve, Jean-François Lamarche, and Yves St-Amand, *Les relations publiques: Dans une société en mouvance* (Sainte-Foy, QC: Presses de l'Université de Québec, 1998).

2. Gabriele Krone-Schmalz, *In Wahrheit sind wir stärker: Frauenalltag in der Sowjetunion* (Frankfurt am Main: Fischer Taschenbuch Verlag, 1992).

3. Daniel Muñoz Sempere, *La Inquisición española como tema literario: Política, historia y ficción en la crisis del antiguo régimen* (Woodbridge, UK: Tamesis, 2008).

4. G. Martellotti et al., *La letteratura italiana: Storia e testi*, vol. 7 (Milan: Riccardo Ricciardi, 1955).

5. Ljiljana Piletić Stojanović, ed., *Gutfreund i češki kubizam* (Belgrade: Muzej savremene umetnosti, 1971).

14.108 ***Translated title supplied by author or editor.*** If an English translation of a title is needed, it follows the original title and is enclosed in brackets, without italics or quotation marks. It is capitalized sentence-style regardless of the bibliographic style followed. (In running text, parentheses are used instead of brackets; see 11.6.) See also 14.110.

7. Henryk Wereszycki, *Koniec sojuszu trzech cesarzy* [The end of the Three Emperors' League] (Warsaw: PWN, 1977); includes a summary in German.

Pirumova, Nataliia Mikhailovna. *Zemskoe liberal'noe dvizhenie: Sotsial'nye korni i evoliutsiia do nachala XX veka* [The zemstvo liberal movement: Its social roots and evolution to the beginning of the twentieth century]. Moscow: Izdatel'stvo "Nauka," 1977.

14.109 ***Original plus published translation.*** A published translation is normally treated as illustrated in 14.88. If, for some reason, both the original and the translation need to be cited, either of the following forms may be used, depending on whether the original or the translation is of greater interest to readers:

Furet, François. *Le passé d'une illusion*. Paris: Éditions Robert Laffont, 1995. Translated by Deborah Furet as *The Passing of an Illusion* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1999).

or

Furet, François. *The Passing of an Illusion*. Translated by Deborah Furet. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1999. Originally published as *Le passé d'une illusion* (Paris: Éditions Robert Laffont, 1995).

14.110 ***Unpublished translation of title standing in for original.*** In those rare instances when a title is given only in translation and no published translation of the work is cited, the original language must be specified.

8. N. M. Pirumova, *The Zemstvo Liberal Movement: Its Social Roots and Evolution to the Beginning of the Twentieth Century* [in Russian] (Moscow: Izdatel'stvo "Nauka," 1977).

Chapters or Other Parts of a Book

14.111 ***Chapter in a single-author book.*** When a specific chapter (or other titled part of a book) is cited in the notes, the author's name is followed by the title of the chapter (or other part), followed by *in*, followed by the title of the book. The chapter title is enclosed in quotation marks. Either the inclusive page numbers (see 9.60) or the chapter or part number is usually given also. In the bibliography, either the chapter or the book may be listed first. For a multiauthor work, see 14.112. See also 14.160.

1. Brendan Phibbs, "Herrlisheim: Diary of a Battle," in *The Other Side of Time: A Combat Surgeon in World War II* (Boston: Little, Brown, 1987), 117–63.

8. John Samples, "The Origins of Modern Campaign Finance Law," chap. 7 in *The Fallacy of Campaign Finance Reform* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2006).

33. Samples, "Campaign Finance Law," 30–31.

Phibbs, Brendan. "Herrlisheim: Diary of a Battle." In *The Other Side of Time: A Combat Surgeon in World War II*, 117–63. Boston: Little, Brown, 1987.

Samples, John. "The Origins of Modern Campaign Finance Law." Chap. 7 in *The Fallacy of Campaign Finance Reform*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2006.

or

Samples, John. *The Fallacy of Campaign Finance Reform*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2006. See esp. chap. 7, "The Origins of Modern Campaign Finance Law."

14.112 ***Contribution to a multiauthor book.*** When one contribution to a multiauthor book is cited, the contributor's name comes first, followed by the title of the contribution in roman, followed by *in* (also roman), followed by the title of the book in italics, followed by the name(s) of the editor(s). In a bibliography entry, the inclusive page numbers are usually given also (as in the second example below). In notes and bibliographies, the contribution title is enclosed in quotation marks. For several contributions to the same book, see 14.113.

3. Anne Carr and Douglas J. Schuurman, "Religion and Feminism: A Reformist Christian Analysis," in *Religion, Feminism, and the Family*, ed. Anne Carr and Mary Stewart Van Leeuwen (Louisville, KY: Westminster John Knox Press, 1996), 14.

Ellet, Elizabeth F. L. "By Rail and Stage to Galena." In *Prairie State: Impressions of Illinois, 1673–1967, by Travelers and Other Observers*, edited by Paul M. Angle, 271–79. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1968.

14.113 ***Several contributions to the same book.*** If two or more contributions to the same multiauthor book are cited, the book itself, as well as the specific contributions, may be listed in the bibliography. The entries for the individual contributions may then cross-refer to the book's editor, thus avoiding clutter. In notes, details of the book may be given the first time it is mentioned, with subsequent references in shortened form (see also 14.26).

4. William H. Keating, "Fort Dearborn and Chicago," in *Prairie State: Impressions of Illinois, 1673–1967, by Travelers and Other Observers*, ed. Paul M. Angle (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1967), 84–87.

27. Sara Clarke Lippincott, "Chicago," in Angle, *Prairie State*, 362–70.

Draper, Joan E. "Paris by the Lake: Sources of Burnham's Plan of Chicago." In Zukowsky, *Chicago Architecture*, 107–19.

Harrington, Elaine. "International Influences on Henry Hobson Richardson's Glessner House." In Zukowsky, *Chicago Architecture*, 189–207.

Zukowsky, John, ed. *Chicago Architecture, 1872–1922: Birth of a Metropolis*. Munich: Prestel-Verlag in association with the Art Institute of Chicago, 1987.

14.114 ***Book-length work within a book.*** If the cited part of a book would normally be italicized if published alone (see 8.161, 8.181), it too may be italicized.

3. Thomas Bernard, *A Party for Boris*, in *Histrionics: Three Plays*, trans. Peter K. Jansen and Kenneth Northcott (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1990).

14.115 ***Chapter originally published elsewhere.*** When a chapter that was originally published as an article in a journal is cited, only the book version need be cited. If the original publication is of particular interest, details may be added to the entry in the bibliography after such wording as "originally published as" (see 14.190, first example).

14.116 ***Introductions, prefaces, afterwords, and the like.*** If the reference is to a generic title such as *introduction*, *preface*, or *afterword*, that term (lowercased unless following a period) is added before the title of the book. See also 8.177.

1. Valerie Polakow, afterword to *Lives on the Edge: Single Mothers and Their Children in the Other America* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1993).

If the author of the introduction or other part is someone other than the main author of a book, that author comes first, and the author of the book follows the title. In a bibliography entry, include the page number range for the part cited, as shown in the second example below. See also 14.91.

6. Francine Prose, introduction to *Word Court: Wherein Verbal Virtue Is Rewarded, Crimes against the Language Are Punished, and Poetic Justice Is Done*, by Barbara Wallraff (New York: Harcourt, 2000).

Mansfield, Harvey, and Delba Winthrop. Introduction to *Democracy in America*, by Alexis de Tocqueville, xvii–lxxxvi. Translated and edited by Harvey Mansfield and Delba Winthrop. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2000.

14.117 ***Letters in published collections.*** A reference to a letter (or memorandum or similar communication) in a published collection begins with the names of the sender and the recipient, in that order, followed by a date and sometimes the place where the communication was prepared. The word *letter* is unnecessary, but other forms, such as reports or memoranda, should be specified. The title of the collection is given in the usual form for a book. For date forms, see 6.45, 9.32. For unpublished communications, see 14.222.; see also 14.239.

1. Adams to Charles Milnes Gaskell, Baden, 22 September 1867, in *Letters of Henry Adams, 1858–1891*, ed. Worthington Chauncey Ford (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1930), 133–34.

2. EBW to Harold Ross, memorandum, 2 May 1946, in *Letters of E. B. White*, ed. Dorothy Lobrano Guth (New York: Harper & Row, 1976), 273.

3. Adams to Gaskell, London, 30 March 1868, 141.

Adams, Henry. *Letters of Henry Adams, 1858–1891*. Edited by Worthington Chauncey Ford. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1930.

White, E. B. *Letters of E. B. White*. Edited by Dorothy Lobrano Guth. New York: Harper & Row, 1976.

When it is necessary to include a single letter in a bibliography, it is listed under the writer's name only.

Jackson, Paulina. Paulina Jackson to John Pepys Junior, 3 October 1676. In *The Letters of Samuel Pepys and His Family Circle*, edited by Helen Truesdell Heath, no. 42. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1955.

Edition

14.118 ***Editions other than the first.*** When an edition other than the first is used or cited, the number or description of the edition follows the title in the listing. An edition number usually appears on the title page and is repeated, along with the date of the edition, on the copyright page. Such wording as *Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged* is abbreviated in notes and bibliographies simply as *2nd ed.*; *Revised Edition* (with no number) is abbreviated as *rev. ed.* Other terms are similarly abbreviated. Any volume number mentioned follows the edition number. For the use of the word *edition* and Chicago's preferences, see 1.26. For inclusion of the original date of an older work cited in a modern edition, see 14.119.

1. Karen V. Harper-Dorton and Martin Herbert, *Working with Children, Adolescents, and Their Families*, 3rd ed. (Chicago: Lyceum Books, 2002), 43.

2. Florence Babb, *Between Field and Cooking Pot: The Political Economy of Marketwomen in Peru*, rev. ed. (Austin: University of Texas Press, 1989), 199.

3. Elizabeth Barrett Browning, *Aurora Leigh: Authoritative Text, Backgrounds and Contexts, Criticism*, ed. Margaret Reynolds, Norton Critical Editions (New York: Norton, 1996). All subsequent citations refer to this edition.

Strunk, William, Jr., and E. B. White. *The Elements of Style*. 4th ed. New York: Allyn and Bacon, 2000.

14.119 ***Reprint editions and modern editions.*** Books may be reissued in paperback by the original publisher or in paper or hardcover by another company. In bibliographic listings, if the original publication details—particularly the date—are relevant, include them. If page numbers are mentioned, give the date of the edition cited unless pagination is the same. The availability of a paperback or an electronic version (see 14.166), the addition of new material, or other such matters can be added as needed. Modern editions of Greek, Latin, and medieval classics are discussed in 14.256–66; modern editions of English classics in 14.267–68; online editions of books in 14.166–69.

22. Ernest Gowers, *The Complete Plain Words*, 3rd ed. (London: H.M. Stationery Office, 1986; Harmondsworth, UK: Penguin Books, 1987), 26. Citations refer to the Penguin edition.

23. Jacques Barzun, *Simple and Direct: A Rhetoric for Writers*, rev. ed. (1985; repr., Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1994), 152–53.

Bernhardt, Peter. *The Rose's Kiss: A Natural History of Flowers*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2002. First published 1999 by Island Press.

Emerson, Ralph Waldo. *Nature*. 1836. Facsimile of the first edition, with an introduction by Jaroslav Pelikan. Boston: Beacon, 1985.

Fitzgerald, F. Scott. *The Great Gatsby*. New York: Scribner, 1925. Reprinted with preface and notes by Matthew J. Bruccoli. New York: Collier Books, 1992. Page references are to the 1992 edition.

National Reconnaissance Office. *The KH-4B Camera System*. Washington, DC: National Photographic Interpretation Center, 1967. Now declassified and also available online, http://www.fas.org/irp/imint/docs/kh-4_camera_system.htm.

Schweitzer, Albert. *J. S. Bach*. Translated by Ernest Newman. 2 vols. 1911. Reprint, New York: Dover, 1966.

14.120 ***Microform editions.*** Works issued commercially in microform editions, including dissertations, are treated much like books. The form of publication, when needed, is given after the facts of publication. (In the first example below, the page number is to the printed text; the other numbers indicate the fiche and frame, and the letter indicates the row.)

5. Beatrice Farwell, *French Popular Lithographic Imagery, 1815–1870*, vol. 12, *Lithography in Art and Commerce* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1997), text-fiche, p. 67, 3C12.

Tauber, Abraham. *Spelling Reform in the United States*. Ann Arbor, Mich.: University Microfilms, 1958.

Microform or other photographic processes used only to preserve printed material need not be mentioned in a citation. The source is treated as it would be in its published version.

Multivolume Works

14.121 *Volume numbers and page numbers.* In documentation, volume numbers are always given in arabic numerals, even if in the original work they appear in roman numerals or are spelled out. If the volume number is immediately followed by a page number, the abbreviation *vol.* is omitted and a colon separates the volume number from the page number with no intervening space. See the examples throughout this section.

14.122 *Citing a multivolume work as a whole.* When a multivolume work is cited as a whole, the total number of volumes is given after the title of the work (or, if an editor as well as an author is mentioned, after the editor's name). If the volumes have been published over several years, the dates of the first and last volumes are given, separated by an en dash (see 9.63). See also 14.78.

Aristotle. *Complete Works of Aristotle: The Revised Oxford Translation*. Edited by J. Barnes. 2 vols. Bollingen Series. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1983.

Byrne, Muriel St. Clare, ed. *The Lisle Letters*. 6 vols. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1981.

James, Henry. *The Complete Tales of Henry James*. Edited by Leon Edel. 12 vols. London: Rupert Hart-Davis, 1962–64.

14.123 *Citing a particular volume in a note.* If a particular volume of a multivolume work is cited, the volume number and the individual volume title, if there is one, are given in addition to the general title. If volumes have been published in different years, only the date of the cited volume is given.

36. Muriel St. Clare Byrne, ed., *The Lisle Letters* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1981), 4:243.

37. *The Complete Tales of Henry James*, ed. Leon Edel, vol. 5, *1883–1884* (London: Rupert Hart-Davis, 1963), 32–33.

The different treatment of the volume numbers in the examples above is prescribed by logic: all six volumes of the Byrne work appeared in 1981 under the same title, whereas volume 5 of the James tales carries an additional title with a publication date not shared by all volumes in the set. See also 14.127.

14.124 *Citing a particular volume in a bibliography.* If only one volume of a multivolume work is of interest to readers, it may be listed alone in a bibliography in either of the following ways:

Pelikan, Jaroslav. *The Christian Tradition: A History of the Development of Doctrine*. Vol. 1, *The Emergence of the Catholic Tradition (100–600)*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1971.

or

Pelikan, Jaroslav. *The Emergence of the Catholic Tradition (100–600)*. Vol. 1 of *The Christian Tradition: A History of the Development of Doctrine*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1971.

The publication date (or date range; see 14.122) should normally correspond to the last-mentioned title. See also 14.126, 14.151.

14.125 *Chapters and other parts of individual volumes.* Specific parts of individual volumes of multivolume books are cited in the same way as parts of single-volume books.

38. "Buddhist Mythology," in *Mythologies*, ed. Yves Bonnefoy (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1991), 2:893–95.

For references to the entire chapter, a chapter number, if available, may replace page numbers; for example, "vol. 2, chap. 6."

14.126 *One volume in two or more books.* Occasionally, if it is very long, a single volume of a multivolume work may be published as two or more physical books. The reference must then include book as well as volume number.

39. Donald Lach, *Asia in the Making of Europe*, vol. 2, bk. 3, *The Scholarly Disciplines* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1977), 351.

Harley, J. B., and David Woodward, eds. *The History of Cartography*. Vol. 2, bk. 2, *Cartography in the Traditional East and Southeast Asian Societies*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1994.

or

Harley, J. B., and David Woodward, eds. *Cartography in the Traditional East and Southeast Asian Societies*. Vol. 2, bk. 2, of *The History of Cartography*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1987–.

14.127 *Authors and editors of multivolume works.* Some multivolume works have both a general editor and individual editors or authors for each volume. When individual volumes are cited, the editor's (or translator's) name follows that part for which he or she is responsible.

40. Herbert Barrows, *Reading the Short Story*, vol. 1 of *An Introduction to Literature*, ed. Gordon N. Ray (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1959).

41. *The Variorum Edition of the Poetry of John Donne*, ed. Gary A. Stringer, vol. 6, *The "Anniversaries" and the "Epicedes and Obsequies,"* ed. Gary A. Stringer and Ted-Larry Pebworth (Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1995).

42. *Orestes*, trans. William Arrowsmith, in *Euripides IV* (unnumbered vol.), in *The Complete Greek Tragedies*, ed. David Grene and Richmond Lattimore (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1958), 185–288.

Note the different capitalization and punctuation of *edited by* in the following alternative versions, analogous to the treatment of a chapter in a multiauthor book (see 14.112). (Certain multivolume works may, for bibliographical purposes, more conveniently be treated as series; see 14.130.)

Donne, John. *The Variorum Edition of the Poetry of John Donne*. Edited by Gary A. Stringer. Vol. 6, *"The Anniversaries" and the "Epicedes and Obsequies,"* edited by Gary A. Stringer and Ted-Larry Pebworth. Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1995.

or

Donne, John. *The "Anniversaries" and the "Epicedes and Obsequies."* Edited by Gary A. Stringer and Ted-Larry Pebworth. Vol. 6 of *The Variorum Edition of the Poetry of John Donne*, edited by Gary A. Stringer. Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1995.

Ray, Gordon N., ed. *An Introduction to Literature*. Vol. 1, *Reading the Short Story*, by Herbert Barrows. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1959.

or

Barrows, Herbert. *Reading the Short Story*. Vol. 1 of *An Introduction to Literature*, edited by Gordon N. Ray. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1959.

Series

14.128 ***Series titles, numbers, and editors.*** Including a series title in a citation often helps readers decide whether to pursue a reference. But if books belonging to a series can be located without the series title, it may be omitted to save space (especially in a footnote). If the series title is included, it is capitalized headline-style, but it is neither italicized nor put in quotation marks or parentheses. The series editor is usually omitted, but see 14.129, 14.130. Some series are numbered; many are not. The number (if any) follows the series title with no intervening comma unless *vol.* or *no.* is used. These abbreviations may be omitted, however, unless both are needed in a single reference (see last example below), or unless a series editor or other notation intervenes (see 14.130, third example). For a foreign-language series, use sentence style (see 11.3 and third example below).

1. Gershon David Hundert, *The Jews in a Polish Private Town: The Case of Opatów in the Eighteenth Century*, Johns Hopkins Jewish Studies (Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1992).

Fowler, Melvin L. *The Cahokia Atlas: A Historical Atlas of Cahokia Archaeology*. Studies in Illinois Archaeology 6. Springfield: Illinois Historic Preservation Agency, 1989.

Grenier, Roger. *Les larmes d'Ulysse*. Collection l'un et l'autre. Paris: Gallimard, 1998.

Wauchope, Robert. *A Tentative Sequence of Pre-Classic Ceramics in Middle America*. Middle American Research Records, vol. 1, no. 14. New Orleans, LA: Tulane University, 1950.

14.129 ***Series editor.*** The name of the series editor is usually omitted. When included, it follows the series title.

Howell, Martha C. *The Marriage Exchange: Property, Social Place, and Gender in Cities of the Low Countries, 1300–1550*. Women in Culture and Society, edited by Catharine R. Stimpson. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1998.

14.130 ***Series or multivolume work?*** Certain works may be treated bibliographically either as a multivolume work or as a series of volumes, depending on whether the emphasis is on the group of books as a whole (as in the first two examples) or on single volumes (as in the second two).

Boyer, John W., and Julius Kirshner, eds. *Readings in Western Civilization*. 9 vols. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1986–87.

Grene, David, and Richmond Lattimore, eds. *The Complete Greek Tragedies*. 9 vols. (unnumbered). Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1942–58.

Cochrane, Eric W., Charles K. Gray, and Mark Kishlansky. *Early Modern Europe: Crisis of Authority*. Readings in Western Civilization, edited by John W. Boyer and Julius Kirshner, vol. 6. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1987.

Euripides. *Orestes*. Translated by William Arrowsmith. In *Euripides IV*, edited by David Grene and Richmond Lattimore. The Complete Greek Tragedies. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1958.

14.131 ***Multivolume work within a series.*** If a book within a series consists of more than one volume, the number of volumes or the volume number (if reference is to a particular volume) follows the book title.

Ferrer Benimeli, José Antonio. *Masonería, iglesia e ilustración*. Vol. 1, *Las bases de un conflicto (1700–1739)*. Vol. 2, *Inquisición: Procesos históricos (1739–1750)*. Publicaciones de la Fundación Universitaria Española, Monografías 17. Madrid, 1976.

14.132 ***"Old series" and "new series."*** Some numbered series have gone on so long that, as with certain long-lived journals, numbering has started over again, preceded by *n.s.* (new series), *2nd ser.* (second series), or some similar notation, usually enclosed in commas. (A change of publisher may also be the occasion for a change in series designation.) Books in the old series may be identified by *o.s.*, *1st ser.*, or whatever complements the notation for the new series.

3. Charles R. Boxer, ed. *South China in the Sixteenth Century*, Hakluyt Society Publications, 2nd ser., vol. 106 (London: Hakluyt, 1953).

Palmatary, Helen C. *The Pottery of Marajó Island, Brazil*. Transactions of the American Philosophical Society, n.s., 39, pt. 3. Philadelphia: American Philosophical Society, 1950.

Facts of Publication

14.133 ***Place, publisher, and date.*** Traditionally the facts of publication for books include the place (city), the publisher, and the date (year). These elements are put in parentheses in a note but not in a bibliography. A colon appears between place and publisher. In a note or a bibliography, the date follows the publisher, preceded by a comma. See also 14.18.

1. E. M. Forster, *Howards End* (London: Edward Arnold, 1910).

Smith, Zadie. *On Beauty*. New York: Penguin Press, 2005.

PLACE OF PUBLICATION

14.134 ***Place and date only, for books published before 1900.*** For books published before 1900, it is acceptable to omit publishers' names and to include only the place and date of publication. A comma, not a colon, follows the place. See also 14.138, 14.143.

2. Oliver Goldsmith, *The Vicar of Wakefield* (Salisbury, 1766).

Cervantes Saavedra, Miguel de. *El ingenioso hidalgo Don Quixote de la Mancha*. 2 vols. Madrid, 1605–15.

14.135 ***Place—city.*** The place to be included is the one that usually appears on the title page but sometimes on the copyright page of the book cited—the city where the publisher's main editorial offices are located. Where two or more cities are given ("Chicago and London," for example, appears on the title page of the print edition of this manual), only the first is normally included in the documentation.

Berkeley: University of California Press
Los Angeles: J. Paul Getty Trust Publications
New York: Macmillan
New York: Oxford University Press
Oxford: Clarendon Press

14.136 ***When to specify state, province, or country.*** If the city of publication may be unknown to readers or may be confused with another city of the same name, the abbreviation of the state, province, or (sometimes) country is usually added. *Washington* is traditionally followed by *DC*, but other major cities, such as Los Angeles and Baltimore, need no state abbreviation. (For countries not easily abbreviated, spell out the name.) Chicago's preference is for the two-letter postal codes (IL, MA, etc.), but some publishers continue to prefer the conventional state abbreviations (Ill., Mass., etc.). See 10.4, 10.28. For Canadian provinces and territories, see 10.29.

Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press
Cambridge, MA: MIT Press
Cheshire, CT: Graphics Press
Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall
Harmondsworth, UK: Penguin Books
Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press
New Haven, CT: Yale University Press
Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press
Reading, MA: Perseus Books
Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution Press
Waterloo, ON: Wilfrid Laurier University Press
but
Cambridge: Cambridge University Press

When the publisher's name includes the state name, the abbreviation is not needed.

Chapel Hill: University of North Carolina Press

14.137 *Foreign city names.* Current, commonly used English names for foreign cities should be used whenever such forms exist.

Belgrade (*not* Beograd)	Prague (*not* Praha)
Cologne (*not* Köln)	Rome (*not* Roma)
Mexico City (*not* México)	The Hague (*not* den Haag)
Milan (*not* Milano)	Turin (*not* Torino)
Munich (*not* München)	Vienna (*not* Wien)

14.138 *"No place."* For older works, when the place of publication is not known, the abbreviation *n.p.* (or *N.p.* if following a period) may be used before the publisher's name. If the place can be surmised, it may be given with a question mark, in brackets. See also 14.134.

(n.p.: Windsor, 1910)   ([Lake Bluff, IL?]: Vliet & Edwards, 1890)

PUBLISHER'S NAME

14.139 *Preferred form of publisher's name.* The publisher's name may be given either in full (e.g., as printed on the title page of the book) or in a somewhat abbreviated form. The shorter forms are preferred in most bibliographies (see 14.140). The form should, however, reflect the publisher's name at the date of publication, not the current name if the name has changed. Most publishers' names at the time of publication can be double-checked through any number of reputable sources, including the catalogs of the Library of Congress, WorldCat, and the *Books in Print* resources available through R. R. Bowker (see bibliog. 4.5). For reprint and other editions, see 14.118–20.

14.140 *Abbreviations and omissible parts of a publisher's name.* In notes and bibliography, an initial *The* is omitted from a publisher's name, as are such abbreviations as *Inc.*, *Ltd.*, or *S.A.* following a name. *Co.*, *& Co.*, *Publishing Co.*, and the like are also omitted. Such corporate features of a publisher's name—often subject to many changes over the years—are far less important in leading a reader to the source consulted than the publication date, and attempting to include them will invariably lead to inconsistencies. A given name or initials preceding a family name, however, may be retained, as may terms such as *Sons*, *Brothers*, and so forth. *Books* is usually retained (Basic Books, Riverhead Books). The word *Press* can sometimes be omitted (for example, Pergamon Press and Ecco Press can be abbreviated to Pergamon and Ecco, but Free Press and New Press—whose names might be confusing without *Press*—must be given in full). *Press* should not be omitted from the name of a university press because the university itself may issue publications independent of its press. The word *University* may be abbreviated to *Univ.* if done consistently.

Houghton Mifflin *not* Houghton Mifflin Co.
Little, Brown *not* Little, Brown & Co.
Macmillan *not* Macmillan Publishing Co.

Note that there is no comma in Houghton Mifflin, but there is one in Little, Brown. Likewise, Harcourt, Brace has a comma, but Harcourt Brace Jovanovich does not. If in doubt, consult one of the sources mentioned in 14.139.

14.141 ***"And" or ampersand in publisher's name.*** Either *and* or *&* may be used in a publisher's name, regardless of how it is rendered on the title page. It is advisable to stick to one or the other throughout a bibliography. Unless an ampersand is used in a foreign publisher's name, the foreign word for *and* must be used.

Duncker und Humblot *or* Duncker & Humblot
Harper and Row *or* Harper & Row

14.142 ***Foreign publishers' names.*** No part of a foreign publisher's name should be translated, even though the city has been given in its English form.

Mexico City: Fondo de Cultura Económica, 1981
Munich: Delphin Verlag, 1983
Paris: Presses Universitaires de France, 1982

Note that abbreviations corresponding to *Inc.* or *Ltd.* (German *GmbH*, for example) are omitted (see 14.140). Capitalization of a publisher's name should follow the original unless the name appears in full capitals there; in that case, it should be capitalized headline-style; if in doubt about the correct capitalization, consult one of the sources mentioned in 14.139.

14.143 ***Publisher unknown or work privately published.*** When the publisher is unknown, use just the place (if known) and date (see 14.134). Privately printed works should be cited with as much information as is known (e.g., Topeka, KS: privately printed, 1890 *or, if applicable,* Topeka, KS: printed by author, 1890).

14.144 ***Parent companies, imprints, and such.*** When a parent company's name appears on the title page in addition to the publisher's name or imprint, only the latter need be used in a bibliographical listing (but see 14.146).

For example, the title page of a 1995 edition of *Old New York: Four Novellas*, by Edith Wharton, bears the imprint "Scribner Paperback Fiction"; below that appears "Published by Simon & Schuster." (The cities listed are New York, London, Toronto, and Sydney.) The spine carries "Scribner Paperback Fiction" (but not Simon & Schuster). The copyright page gives an address for Simon & Schuster and further explains that (for the time being) Scribner Paperback Fiction is a trademark of Macmillan Library Reference USA. Such complex arrangements are common in book publishing. Cite the work as follows:

Wharton, Edith. *Old New York: Four Novellas.* New York: Scribner Paperback Fiction, 1995.

If it is not clear which name to list, check with one of the catalogs listed in 14.139 to see which publisher is listed there, being careful to find the entry in the catalog that matches the facts of publication for the item in question. If this is not possible, or if it remains unclear which name to list, include both, separated by a slash (/) with a space on either side.

14.145 ***Joint imprint.*** For books published jointly by a consortium and an individual member, the name of the consortium may be followed by that of the member, the two names separated by a slash (with space either side). (To save space, however, it is acceptable to list only the name of the consortium.)

MacDougall, Pauleena. *The Penobscot Dance of Resistance: Tradition in the History of a People.* Hanover, NH: University Press of New England / University of New Hampshire Press, 2004.

14.146 ***Special academic imprint.*** Some academic publishers issue certain books through a special publishing division or under a special imprint. In such instances the imprint may be given after the publisher's name, separated by a slash (with space on either side).

Gray, Jason. *Photographing Eden: Poems.* Athens: Ohio University Press / Swallow Press, 2008.

In some cases, however, the wording of such an imprint should conform to language specified by the publisher (on the title page or elsewhere).

Buell, Lawrence. *Emerson.* Cambridge, MA: Belknap Press of Harvard University Press, 2003.

14.147 ***Copublication.*** When books are published simultaneously (or almost so) by two publishers, usually in different countries, only one publisher need be listed—the one that is more relevant to the users of the citation. For example, if a book copublished by a British and an American publisher is listed in the bibliography of an American publication, only the American publication details need be given. If for some reason (e.g., as a matter of historical interest), information is included for both publishers, a semicolon should be used as a separator. (Occasionally, the dates of publication will be different; in such cases, record both.) For reprints, see 14.119.

Lévi-Strauss, Claude. *The Savage Mind*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press; London: Weidenfeld and Nicolson, 1962.

14.148 ***Distributed books.*** For a book published by one company and distributed by another, the name on the title page should be used. Since distribution agreements are sometimes impermanent, the distributor's name is best omitted unless essential to users of a bibliography.

Willke, Helmut. *Smart Governance: Governing the Global Knowledge Society*. Frankfurt am Main: Campus Verlag, 2007. Distributed by University of Chicago Press.

Wording on the title page such as "Published by arrangement with . . . ," if it is of particular interest, may be included in a similar manner.

DATE OF PUBLICATION

14.149 ***Publication date—general.*** For books, only the year, not the month or day, is included in the publication date. The date is found on the title page or, more commonly, on the copyright page. It is usually the same as the copyright date. If two or more copyright dates appear in a book, the first being those of earlier editions or versions, the most recent indicates the publication date. Chicago's books normally carry both copyright date and publication date on the copyright page. For any edition other than the first, both the edition and the date of that edition must be included in a listing (see 14.118–20).

14. *The Chicago Manual of Style*, 16th ed. (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2010), 7.85; cf. 15th ed. (2003), 7.90.

Turabian, Kate L. *A Manual for Writers of Term Papers, Theses, and Dissertations*. 7th ed. Revised by Wayne C. Booth, Gregory G. Colomb, and Joseph M. Williams. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2007.

14.150 ***New impressions and renewal of copyright.*** The publication date must not be confused with the date of a subsequent printing or a renewal of copyright. Such statements on the copyright page as "53rd impression" or "Copyright renewed 1980" should be disregarded. For new editions as opposed to new impressions, see 1.26; for reprints, see 14.119.

14.151 ***Multivolume works published over more than one year.*** When an entire multivolume, multiyear work is cited, the range of dates is given (see 6.78). If the work has not yet been completed, the date of the first volume is followed by an en dash (with no space between the en dash and the punctuation that follows; see 6.79). See also 9.63. If a single volume is cited, only the date of that volume need appear. See also 14.121–27.

78. *The Collected Works of F. A. Hayek*, vol. 9, *Contra Keynes and Cambridge: Essays, Correspondence* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1995), 44–45.

Hayek, F. A. *Contra Keynes and Cambridge: Essays, Correspondence*. Vol. 9 of *The Collected Works of F. A. Hayek*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1988–.

Tillich, Paul. *Systematic Theology*. 3 vols. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1951–63.

14.152 ***"No date."*** When the publication date of a printed work cannot be ascertained, the abbreviation *n.d.* takes the place of the year in the publication details. A guessed-at date may either be substituted (in brackets) or added. See also 14.138.

Boston, n.d.
Edinburgh, [1750?] *or* Edinburgh, n.d., ca. 1750

A work for which no publisher, place, or date can be determined or reasonably guessed at should be included in a bibliography only if accompanied by the location where a copy can be found (e.g., "Two copies in the Special Collections Department of the University of Chicago Library").

14.153 ***"Forthcoming."*** When a book is under contract with a publisher and is already titled, but the date of publication is not yet known, *forthcoming* is used in place of the date. Although *in press* is sometimes used (strictly speaking for a printed work that has already been typeset and paginated), Chicago recommends the more inclusive term, which can also be used for nonprint media, for any work under contract. If page numbers are available, they should be given. Books not under contract are treated as unpublished manuscripts (see 14.224–46).

91. Jane Q. Author, *Book Title* (Place: Publisher, forthcoming).

92. John J. Writer, *Another Book Title* (Place: Publisher, forthcoming), 345–46.

Contributor, Anna. "Contribution." In *Edited Volume*, edited by Ellen Editor. Place: Publisher, forthcoming.

When a publication that cites a forthcoming title is reprinted, the citation need not be updated. For a revised edition, on the other hand, the citation can be updated to provide the final facts of publication, but only after direct quotations and other details have been checked for accuracy against the published source.

Page, Volume, and Other Locating Information

14.154 ***Arabic versus roman numerals.*** As the examples throughout this chapter (and chapter 15) suggest, arabic numerals should be used wherever possible in documentation—for volumes, chapters, and other divisions—regardless of the way the numerals appear in the works cited, with the notable exception of pages numbered with roman numerals in the original (usually lowercased, in the front matter of a book). Occasional exceptions are made, for example, in certain legal contexts (see 14.292).

21. See the article "Feathers," in *Johnson's Universal Cyclopaedia*, rev. ed. (New York: A. J. Johnson, 1886), vol. 3.

22. Jerome Kagan, "Introduction to the Tenth-Anniversary Edition," in *The Nature of the Child* (New York: Basic Books, 1994), xxii–xxiv.

14.155 ***Ranges, or inclusive numbers.*** For Chicago's preferred style in expressing a range of pages, paragraphs, or similar divisions, see 9.60. First and last numbers should be used rather than first number plus *ff.* (but see 14.156).

Chicago Manual of Style, 16th ed., 14.154–65.

14.156 ***Using or avoiding "ff." and "passim."*** Only when referring to a section for which no final number can usefully be given should *ff.* ("and the following pages, paragraphs, etc.") be resorted to. Instead of the singular *f.*, the subsequent number should be used (e.g., "140–41" *not* "140f."). Similarly, *passim* ("here and there") is to be discouraged unless it follows a stated range of pages within which there are more than three or four precise references ("324–32 passim"). When used, *ff.* has no space between it and the preceding number and is followed by a period; *passim*, being a complete word, takes no period. Neither is italicized. (For *passim* in indexes, see 16.13.)

14.157 ***Abbreviations for "page," "volume," and so on.*** In citations, the words *page*, *volume*, and the like are usually abbreviated and often simply omitted (see 14.158). The most commonly used abbreviations are *p.* (pl. *pp.*), *vol.*, *pt.*, *chap.*, *bk.*, *sec.*, *n.* (pl. *nn.*), *no.*, *app.*, and *fig.*; for these and others, see chapter 10, especially 10.43. Unless following a period, all are lowercased, and none is italicized unless an integral part of an italicized book title. All the abbreviations mentioned in this paragraph, except for *p.* and *n.*, form their plurals by adding *s*.

A Cry of Absence, chap. 6 *A Dance to the Music of Time*, 4 vols.

14.158 ***When to omit "p." and "pp."*** When a number or a range of numbers clearly denotes the pages in a book, *p.* or *pp.* may be omitted; the numbers alone, preceded by a comma, are sufficient. Where the presence of other numerals threatens ambiguity, *p.* or *pp.* may be added for clarity. (And if an author has used *p.* and *pp.* consistently throughout a work, there is no need to delete them.) See also 14.159.

Charlotte's Web, 75–76
but
Complete Poems of Michelangelo, p. 89, lines 135–36

14.159 ***When to omit "vol."*** When a volume number is followed immediately by a page number, neither *vol.* nor *p.* or *pp.* is needed. The numbers alone are used, separated by a colon. A comma usually precedes the volume number, except with periodicals (see 14.180; see also 14.181) and for certain types of classical references (see 14.256–66). For more on volume numbers, see 14.121–27. For citing a particular volume, with and without the abbreviation *vol.*, see 14.123.

The Complete Tales of Henry James, 10:122

14.160 ***Page and chapter numbers.*** Page numbers, needed for specific references in notes and parenthetical text citations, are usually unnecessary in bibliographies except when the piece cited is a part within a whole (see 14.111–17) or a journal article (see 14.183). If the chapter or other section number is given, page numbers may be omitted. The total page count of a book is not included in documentation. (Total page counts do, however, appear in headings to book reviews, catalog entries, and elsewhere. For book review headings, see 1.92.)

14. Claire Kehrwald Cook, "Mismanaged Numbers and References," in *Line by Line: How to Edit Your Own Writing* (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1985), 75–107.

15. Nuala O'Faolain, *Are You Somebody? The Accidental Memoir of a Dublin Woman* (New York: Holt, 1996), chap. 17.

14.161 ***Signed signatures.*** Some books printed before 1800 did not carry page numbers, but each signature (a group of consecutive pages) bore a letter, numeral, or other symbol (its "signature") to help the binder gather them in correct sequence. In citing pages in books of this kind, the signature symbol is given first, then the number of the leaf within the signature, and finally *r* (*recto*, the front of the leaf) or *v* (*verso*, the back of the leaf). Thus, for example, G6v identifies one page, G6r–7v a range of four pages.

14.162 ***Folio editions.*** In some early books the signatures consisted of folios—one large sheet folded once. Each folio thus had two sheets, or four pages. The sheets were numbered only on the front, or recto, side. Page citation therefore consists of sheet number plus *r* (*recto*) or *v* (*verso*)—for example, 176r, 231v, 232r–v; or, if entire folios are cited, fol. 49, fols. 50–53. See also 14.161, 14.236.

14.163 ***Line numbers.*** The abbreviations *l.* (line) and *ll.* (lines) can too easily be confused with the numerals 1 and 11 and so should be avoided. *Line* or *lines* should be used or, where it has been made clear that reference is to lines, simply omitted (see 13.65).

44. Ogden Nash, "Song for Ditherers," lines 1–4.

14.164 ***Citing numbered notes.*** Notes are cited with the abbreviation *n* or *nn*. The usage recommended here is also used for indexes (see 16.111, 16.112, 16.113). If the note cited is the only footnote on a particular page or is an unnumbered footnote, the page number is followed by *n* alone.

45. Anthony Grafton, *The Footnote: A Curious History* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1997), 72n, 80n.

If there are other notes on the same page as the note cited, a number must be added. In this case the page number is followed by *n* or (if two or more consecutive notes are cited) *nn*, followed by the note number (or numbers or, in rare cases, an asterisk or other symbol). No intervening space or punctuation is required.

46. Dwight Bolinger, *Language: The Loaded Weapon* (London: Longman, 1980), 192n23, 192n30, 199n14, 201nn16–17.

47. Richard Rorty, *Philosophical Papers* (New York: Cambridge University Press, 1991), 1:15n29.

14.165 ***Citing illustrations and tables.*** The abbreviation *fig.* may be used for *figure*, but *table*, *map*, *plate*, and other illustration forms are spelled out. The page number, if given, precedes the illustration number, with a comma between them.

50. Richard Sobel, ed., *Public Opinion in US Foreign Policy: The Controversy over Contra Aid* (Boston: Rowman and Littlefield, 1993), 87, table 5.3.

Electronic Books

14.166 ***Books downloaded from a library or bookseller.*** The majority of electronically published books offered for download from a library or bookseller will have a printed counterpart. Because of the potential for differences, however, authors must indicate that they have consulted a format other than print. This indication should be the *last* part of a full citation that follows the recommendations for citing printed books as detailed throughout this section. See also 14.4–13.

Austen, Jane. *Pride and Prejudice*. New York: Penguin Classics, 2007. Kindle edition.
Austen, Jane. *Pride and Prejudice*. New York: Penguin Classics, 2008. PDF e-book.
Austen, Jane. *Pride and Prejudice*. New York: Penguin Classics, 2008. Microsoft Reader e-book.
Austen, Jane. *Pride and Prejudice*. New York: Penguin Classics, 2008. Palm e-book.

The printed counterpart to the Penguin Classics e-book offerings would be cited as follows (note the different publication date):

Austen, Jane. *Pride and Prejudice*. New York: Penguin Classics, 2003.

Each of the Penguin Classics editions (as the books' documentation makes clear) is based on the 1813 edition published by T. Egerton. Though such information is optional, it may be included as follows (see 14.119):

Austen, Jane. *Pride and Prejudice*. London: T. Egerton, 1813. Reprint, New York: Penguin Classics, 2008. PDF e-book.

Note that electronic formats do not always carry stable page numbers (e.g., pagination may depend on text size), a factor that potentially limits their suitability as sources. In lieu of a page number, include an indication of chapter or section or other locator. See also 14.17.

1. Jane Austen, *Pride and Prejudice* (New York: Penguin Classics, 2008), Microsoft Reader e-book, chap. 23.

14. Austen, *Pride and Prejudice*, chap. 24.

14.167 ***Books consulted online.*** When citing the online version of a book, include the URL—or, if available, DOI—as part of the citation (see 14.5, 14.6). The URL or DOI should be the *last* part of a full citation based on the principles outlined throughout this section on citing books. Note the reference to section headings in lieu of page numbers in notes 2 and 4 (see 14.17).

1. Elliot Antokoletz, *Musical Symbolism in the Operas of Debussy and Bartok* (New York: Oxford University Press, 2008), doi:10.1093/acprof:oso/9780195365825.001.0001.

2. Joseph Sirosh, Risto Miikkulainen, and James A. Bednar, "Self-Organization of Orientation Maps, Lateral Connections, and Dynamic Receptive Fields in the Primary Visual Cortex," in *Lateral Interactions in the Cortex: Structure and Function*, ed. Joseph Sirosh, Risto Miikkulainen, and Yoonsuck Choe (Austin, TX: UTCS Neural Networks Research Group, 1996), under "Dynamic Receptive Fields," http://nn.cs.utexas.edu/web-pubs/htmlbook96/.

3. Antokoletz, *Musical Symbolism*.

4. Sirosh, Miikkulainen, and Bednar, "Self-Organization of Orientation Maps," under "Conclusion."

Antokoletz, Elliot. *Musical Symbolism in the Operas of Debussy and Bartok*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2008. doi:10.1093/acprof:oso/9780195365825.001.0001.

Sirosh, Joseph, Risto Miikkulainen, and James A. Bednar. "Self-Organization of Orientation Maps, Lateral Connections, and Dynamic Receptive Fields in the Primary Visual Cortex." In *Lateral Interactions in the Cortex: Structure and Function*, edited by Joseph Sirosh, Risto Miikkulainen, and Yoonsuck Choe. Austin, TX: UTCS Neural Networks Research Group, 1996. http://nn.cs.utexas.edu/web-pubs/htmlbook96/.

14.168 ***Books on CD-ROM and other fixed media.*** Citations of books on CD-ROM and other fixed media should carry an indication of the medium.

1. *The Chicago Manual of Style*, 15th ed. (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2003), CD-ROM, 1.4.

Hicks, Rodney J. *Nuclear Medicine: From the Center of Our Universe*. Victoria, Austral.: ICE T Multimedia, 1996. CD-ROM.

14.169 ***Freely available electronic editions of older works.*** Books and other documents that have fallen out of copyright are often freely available online. Such sources, while convenient, are not necessarily authoritative. It may not be possible to tell, for example, which edition was used to prepare the online text. When such information about a text is *not* available—and even when it is—consider consulting a printed edition. In the James example below, Project Gutenberg notes that their text is based on the 1909 New York edition of *The Ambassadors* (see 14.119). For the Whitman example, though electronic page images of the first edition (discoloration and all) were consulted—amounting, in a way, to having consulted the printed book without having handled it—it is still advisable to include a URL. See also 14.17.

1. Walt Whitman, *Leaves of Grass* (New York, 1855), 22, http://www.whitmanarchive.org/published/LG/1855/whole.html.
2. Henry James, *The Ambassadors* (1909; Project Gutenberg, 1996), bk. 6, chap. 1, ftp://ibiblio.org/pub/docs/books/gutenberg/etext96/ambas10.txt.

James, Henry. *The Ambassadors*. Reprint of the 1909 New York edition, Project Gutenberg, 1996. ftp://ibiblio.org/pub/docs/books/gutenberg/etext96/ambas10.txt.
Whitman, Walt. *Leaves of Grass*. New York, 1855. http://www.whitmanarchive.org/published/LG/1855/whole.html.

Note that there is no place of publication in the James note example. Such information is less likely to accompany online works, and it may be dispensed with without the use of "n.p." (for "no place") when it cannot be readily determined.

Periodicals

14.170 ***"Periodicals" defined.*** The word *periodical* is used here to include scholarly and professional journals, popular magazines, and newspapers. Periodicals are far more likely than books to be consulted in electronic form. Except for the addition of a URL or DOI, the citation of an online periodical is the same as that recommended for printed periodicals. (Some publishers may also require access dates for sources consulted online.) See examples of such information, and special considerations, under specific types of periodicals. See also 14.4–13.

14.171 ***Information to be included.*** Citations of periodicals require some or all of the following data:

1. Full name(s) of author or authors
2. Title and subtitle of article or column
3. Title of periodical
4. Issue information (volume, issue number, date, etc.)
5. Page reference (where appropriate)
6. For online periodicals, a URL or, if available, a DOI (see 14.5, 14.6, 14.184)

Indispensable for newspapers and most magazines is the specific date (month, day, and year). For journals, the volume and year plus the month or issue number are usually cited. Additional data make location easier. See also 14.70.

14.172 ***Journals versus magazines.*** In this manual, *journal* is used for scholarly or professional periodicals available mainly by subscription (e.g., *Library Quarterly*, *Journal of the American Medical Association*). Journals are normally cited by volume and date (see 14.180). *Magazine* is used here for the kind of weekly or monthly periodical—professionally produced, sometimes specialized, but more accessible to general readers—that is available either by subscription or in individual issues at bookstores or newsstands or online (e.g., *Scientific American*, the *New Yorker*). Magazines are normally cited by date alone (see 14.199). If in doubt whether a particular periodical is better treated as a journal or as a magazine, use journal form if the volume number is easily located, magazine form if it is not.

14.173 ***Punctuation in periodical citations.*** In notes, commas appear between author; title of article; title of magazine, newspaper, or journal; and URL or DOI (for sources consulted online). In bibliographies, periods replace these commas. For more examples, see 14.18 and elsewhere in this chapter. Note that *in* is *not* used between the article title and the journal title. (*In* is used only with chapters or other parts of books; see 14.111, 14.112.)

1. Hope A. Olson, "Codes, Costs, and Critiques: The Organization of Information in *Library Quarterly*, 1931–2004," *Library Quarterly* 76, no. 1 (2006): 20, doi: 10.1086/504343.

34. Olson, "Codes, Costs, and Critiques," 22–23.

Olson, Hope A. "Codes, Costs, and Critiques: The Organization of Information in *Library Quarterly*, 1931–2004." *Library Quarterly* 76, no. 1 (2006): 19–35. doi:10.1086/504343.

14.174 ***Page numbers in periodical citations.*** In bibliography entries, the first and last pages of an article are given (for inclusive numbers, see 9.58, 9.60). In notes and text citations, only specific pages need be cited (unless the article as a whole is referred to). In some electronic formats, page numbers will be unavailable, in which case a section heading or other locator may be appropriate (see 14.17).

Journals

14.175 ***Journal article—author's name.*** Authors' names are normally given as they appear at the heads of their articles. Adjustments can be made, however, as indicated in 14.72. Most of the guidelines offered in 14.72–92 apply equally to authors of journal articles. For the treatment of two or more authors, see 14.76.

14.176 ***Journal article—title.*** Titles of articles are set in roman (except for words or phrases that require italics, such as species names or book titles; see 14.177); they are usually capitalized headline-style and put in quotation marks. As with a book, title and subtitle are separated by a colon. See also 8.154–95. For examples, see 14.18 and the paragraphs below. For shortened forms of article titles, see 14.196.

Menjívar, Cecilia. "Liminal Legality: Salvadoran and Guatemalan Immigrants' Lives in the United States." *American Journal of Sociology* 111, no. 4 (2006): 999–1037. doi:10.1086/499509.

14.177 ***Italics and quotation marks within article titles.*** Book titles and other normally italicized terms remain italicized within an article title. A term normally quoted is enclosed in single quotation marks (since it is already within double quotation marks). Retain both double and single quotation marks, if any, in short citations. See also 8.163, 8.175.

23. Judith Lewis, "'Tis a Misfortune to Be a Great Ladie': Maternal Mortality in the British Aristocracy, 1558–1959," *Journal of British Studies* 37, no. 1 (1998): 26–53, http://www.jstor.org/stable/176034.

44. Lewis, "'Tis a Misfortune to Be a Great Ladie,'" 32.

Loften, Peter. "Reverberations between Wordplay and Swordplay in *Hamlet*." *Aeolian Studies* 2 (1989): 12–29.

14.178 ***Question marks or exclamation points in article titles.*** As with book titles (see 14.105), when a main title ends with a question mark or an exclamation point, no colon is added before any subtitle unless the question mark or exclamation point is followed by a closing quotation mark (as in the third example). Note the comma before the page number in the shortened citations (second and fourth examples). This departure from Chicago's former usage aids readability and consistency; see 6.119.

1. C. Daniel Batson, "How Social Is the Animal? The Human Capacity for Caring," *American Psychologist* 45 (March 1990): 336.
2. Batson, "How Social Is the Animal?," 337.
3. Daniel Bertrand Monk, "'Welcome to Crisis!': Notes for a Pictorial History of the Pictorial Histories of the Arab Israeli War of June 1967," *Grey Room* 7 (Spring 2002): 139, http://www.jstor.org/stable/1262596.
4. Monk, "'Welcome to Crisis!,'" 140.

When a title ending with a question mark or an exclamation mark would normally be followed by a period, however, the period is omitted; see 6.118.

Abrams, Marshall. "How Do Natural Selection and Random Drift Interact?" *Philosophy of Science* 74 (December 2007): 666–79. doi:10.1086/525612.

14.179 ***Title of journal.*** Titles of journals are italicized and capitalized headline-style. They are usually given in full—except for the omission of an initial *The*—in notes and bibliographies (e.g., *Journal of Business*). With foreign-language journals and magazines, an initial article should be retained (e.g., *Der Spiegel*). Occasionally an initialism, such as *PMLA*, is the official title and is never spelled out. In some disciplines, especially in science and medicine, journal titles are routinely abbreviated (e.g., *Plant Syst Evol*), unless they consist of only one word (e.g., *Science*, *Mind*); see 15.44. Chicago recommends giving titles in full unless a particular publisher or discipline requires otherwise.

14.180 ***Journal volume, issue, and date.*** Most journal citations include volume, issue number or month, and year. The volume number, set in roman, follows the title without intervening punctuation; arabic numerals are used even if the journal itself uses roman numerals. The issue number may be omitted if pagination is continuous throughout a volume or when a month or season precedes the year. Nonetheless, it is never wrong to include the issue number, and doing so can be a hedge against other errors. When the issue number is given, it follows the volume number, separated by a comma and preceded by *no*. The year, sometimes preceded by an exact date, a month, or a season, appears in parentheses after the volume number (or issue number, if given). Seasons, though not capitalized in running text (see 8.87), are capitalized in source citations. Months may be abbreviated or spelled in full (as here); seasons are best spelled out (see also 10.40). Neither month nor season is necessary when the issue number is given, though it is never incorrect to include it.

2. David Meban, "Temple Building, *Primus* Language, and the Proem to Virgil's Third *Georgic*," *Classical Philology* 103, no. 2 (2008): 153, doi:10.1086/591611.

18. Jeanette Kennett, "True and Proper Selves: Velleman on Love," *Ethics* 118 (January 2008): 215, doi:10.1086/523747.

23. Boyan Jovanovic and Peter L. Rousseau, "Specific Capital and Technological Variety," *Journal of Human Capital* 2 (Summer 2008): 135, doi:10.1086/590066.

Jovanovic, Boyan, and Peter L. Rousseau. "Specific Capital and Technological Variety." *Journal of Human Capital* 2 (Summer 2008): 129–52. doi:10.1086/590066.

Kennett, Jeanette. "True and Proper Selves: Velleman on Love." *Ethics* 118 (January 2008): 213–27. doi:10.1086/523747.

Meban, David. "Temple Building, *Primus* Language, and the Proem to Virgil's Third *Georgic*." *Classical Philology* 103, no. 2 (2008): 150–74. doi:10.1086/591611.

Where a span of months or seasons is given, use an en dash (e.g., September–December 2010); consecutive months are sometimes indicated by a slash (March/April).

1. Dean Amadon, "Ecology and the Evolution of Some Hawaiian Birds," *Evolution* 1 (March–June 1947): 65–66, http://www.jstor.org/stable/2405404.

14.181 ***No volume number or date only.*** When a journal uses issue numbers only, without volume numbers, a comma follows the journal title.

Beattie, J. M. "The Pattern of Crime in England, 1660–1800." *Past and Present*, no. 62 (1974): 47–95.

When only a date is available, it becomes an indispensable element and should therefore not be enclosed in parentheses; a comma follows the journal title and the date.

Saberhagen, Kelvin. "Lake Superior Beluga?" *Sturgeon Review*, Winter 1928, 21–45.

14.182 ***Forthcoming articles.*** If an article has been accepted for publication by a journal but has not yet appeared, *forthcoming* stands in place of the year and the page numbers. Any article not yet accepted should be treated as an unpublished manuscript (see 14.228).

4. Margaret M. Author, "Article Title," *Journal Name* 98 (forthcoming).

Author, Margaret M. "Article Title." *Journal Name* 98 (forthcoming).

If an article is published by a journal electronically ahead of the official publication date, use the posted publication date. In such cases, information about pagination may not yet be available.

Black, Steven. "Changing Epidemiology of Invasive Pneumococcal Disease: A Complicated Story." *Clinical Infectious Diseases* 47. Published electronically July 14, 2008. doi:10.1086/590002.

14.183 ***Journal page references.*** In citing a particular passage in a journal article, only the pages concerned are given. In references to the article as a whole (as in a bibliography), first and last pages are given.

4. Paul Thompson, "Democracy and Popular Power in Beijing," *Radical America* 22 (September–October 1988): 22.

Gold, Ann Grodzins. "Grains of Truth: Shifting Hierarchies of Food and Grace in Three Rajasthani Tales." *History of Religions* 38, no. 2 (1998): 150–71.

Most electronic journals provide page numbers. Where this is not the case, another type of locator such as a subheading may become appropriate in a note. None, however, is required. See also 14.17.

15. Jamison, Shelly, "I(nternet) Do(mains): The New Rules of Selection," *Culture Critique* 3, no. 5 (2009), under "Park Avenue Revisited."

14.184 ***Electronic journal articles—URL or DOI.*** Many of the examples in this section include a URL or a DOI at the end of the citation. A DOI, if it is available, is preferable to a URL. If using a URL, use the address that appears in your browser's address bar when viewing the article (or the abstract) unless a shorter, more stable form of the URL is offered along with the electronic article. Note that a single DOI assigned to a journal article as a whole applies to that article in any medium, print or electronic. Nonetheless, unless their publisher or discipline requires otherwise, authors need only include an article's DOI to indicate that an electronic version was cited. (Because the DOI points to all available formats simultaneously, it is not necessary to specify *which* electronic format was cited—e.g., PDF or HTML.) See also 14.4–13.

4. Frank P. Whitney, "The Six-Year High School in Cleveland," *School Review* 37, no. 4 (1929): 268, http://www.jstor.org/stable/1078814.

5. María de la Luz Inclán, "From the ¡*Ya Basta!* to the *Caracoles*: Zapatista Mobilization under Transitional Conditions," *American Journal of Sociology* 113, no. 5 (2008): 1318, doi:10.1086/525508.

Inclán, María de la Luz. "From the ¡*Ya Basta!* to the *Caracoles*: Zapatista Mobilization under Transitional Conditions." *American Journal of Sociology* 113, no. 5 (2008): 1316–50. doi:10.1086/525508.

Whitney, Frank P. "The Six-Year High School in Cleveland." *School Review* 37, no. 4 (1929): 267–71. http://www.jstor.org/stable/1078814.

14.185 ***Electronic journal articles—access dates.*** Access dates are not required by Chicago in citations of formally published electronic sources, for the reasons discussed in 14.7. Some publishers and some disciplines, however, may require them. When they are included, they should immediately precede the DOI or URL, separated from the surrounding citation by commas in a note and periods in a bibliography entry. This departure from Chicago's earlier recommendation recognizes the increasing importance of uniform placement of URLs and DOIs in source citations.

1. Patrick G. P. Charles et al., "SMART-COP: A Tool for Predicting the Need for Intensive Respiratory or Vasopressor Support in Community-Acquired Pneumonia," *Clinical Infectious Diseases* 47 (August 1, 2008): 377, accessed July 17, 2008, doi:10.1086/589754.

3. Charles et al., "SMART-COP," 378–79.

Charles, Patrick G. P., Rory Wolfe, Michael Whitby, Michael J. Fine, Andrew J. Fuller, Robert Stirling, Alistair A. Wright, et al. "SMART-COP: A Tool for Predicting the Need for Intensive Respiratory or Vasopressor Support in Community-Acquired Pneumonia." *Clinical Infectious Diseases* 47 (August 1, 2008): 375–84. Accessed July 17, 2008. doi:10.1086/589754.

For citing articles credited to more than ten authors, see 14.76.

14.186 ***Article page numbers in relation to volume or issue numbers.*** When page numbers immediately follow a volume number, separated only by a colon, no space follows the colon. But when parenthetical information intervenes, a space follows the colon. (This rule applies to other types of volumes as well; see, e.g., 14.121.)

Social Networks 14:213–29
Critical Inquiry 19 (Autumn): 164–85

When, as occasionally happens, the page number follows an issue number, a comma—not a colon—should be used.

Diogenes, no. 25, 84–117.

14.187 ***Special issues.*** A journal issue (occasionally a double issue) devoted to a single theme is known as a special issue. It carries the normal volume and issue number (or numbers if a double issue). Such an issue may have an editor and a title of its own. An article within the issue is cited as in the first example; a special issue as a whole may be cited as in the second example.

42. Sassler, Sharon, "Learning to Be an 'American Lady'? Ethnic Variation in Daughters' Pursuits in the Early 1900s," in "Emergent and Reconfigured Forms of Family Life," ed. Lora Bex Lempert and Marjorie L. DeVault, special issue, *Gender and Society* 14, no. 1 (2000): 201–2, http://www.jstor.org/stable/190427.

Good, Thomas L., ed. "Non-Subject-Matter Outcomes of Schooling." Special issue, *Elementary School Journal* 99, no. 5 (1999).

14.188 ***Supplements.*** A journal supplement, unlike a special issue (see 14.187), is numbered separately from the regular issues of the journal. Like a special issue, however, it may have a title and author or editor of its own.

MacDonald, Glenn, and Michael S. Weisbach. "The Economics of Has-Beens." In "Papers in Honor of Sherwin Rosen," supplement, *Journal of Political Economy* 112, no. S1 (2004): S289–S310. doi:10.1086/380948.

14.189 ***Articles published in installments.*** Articles published in parts over two or more issues may be listed separately or in the same entry, depending on whether the part or the whole is cited.

68. George C. Brown, ed., "A Swedish Traveler in Early Wisconsin: The Observations of Fredrika Bremer," pt. 1, *Wisconsin Magazine of History* 61 (Summer 1978): 312.

69. Ibid., pt. 2, *Wisconsin Magazine of History* 62 (Autumn 1978): 50.

Brown, George C., ed. "A Swedish Traveler in Early Wisconsin: The Observations of Fredrika Bremer." Pts. 1 and 2. *Wisconsin Magazine of History* 61 (Summer 1978): 300–318; 62 (Autumn 1978): 41–56.

14.190 ***Article appearing in two publications.*** Chapters in books have sometimes begun their lives as journal articles, or vice versa. Revisions are often made along the way. The version actually consulted should be cited in a note or text citation, but annotation such as the following, if of specific interest to readers, may follow the citation. See also 14.49.

Previously published as "Article Title," *Journal Title* 20, no. 3 (2009): 345–62.

A slightly revised version appears in *Book Title*, ed. E. Editor (Place: Publisher, 2010), 15–30.

14.191 ***Place where journal is published.*** If a journal might be confused with another with a similar title, or if it might not be known to the users of a bibliography, add the name of the place or institution where it is published in parentheses after the journal title.

87. Diane-Dinh Kim Luu, "Diethylstilbestrol and Media Coverage of the 'Morning After' Pill," *Lost in Thought: Undergraduate Research Journal* (Indiana University South Bend) 2 (1999): 65–70.

Garrett, Marvin P. "Language and Design in *Pippa Passes*." *Victorian Poetry* (West Virginia University) 13, no. 1 (1975): 47–60.

14.192 ***Translated or edited article.*** A translated or edited article follows essentially the same style as a translated or edited book (see 14.87, 14.88).

1. Arthur Q. Author, "Article Title," trans. So-and-So, *Journal Title* . . .

Author, Arthur Q. "Article Title." Edited by So-and-So. *Journal Title* . . .

14.193 ***Foreign-language article and journal titles.*** Titles of foreign-language articles, like foreign book titles, are usually capitalized sentence-style (see 8.156) but according to the conventions of the particular language (see 14.107). German, for example, capitalizes common nouns in running text as well as in titles (see 11.42). Journal titles may either be treated the same way or, if an author has done so consistently, be capitalized headline-style. An initial definite article (*Le*, *Der*, etc.) should be retained, since it may govern the inflection of the following word. Months and the equivalents of such abbreviations as *no.* or *pt.* are usually given in English (but see 14.71).

22. Dinda L. Gorlée, "¡Eureka! La traducción como un descubrimiento pragmático," *Anuario filosófico* 29, no. 3 (1996): 1403.

23. Marcel Garaud, "Recherches sur les défrichements dans la Gâtine poitevine aux XIe et XIIe siècles," *Bulletin de la Société des antiquaires de l'Ouest*, 4th ser., 9 (1967): 11–27.

Note the capitalization of *Société* (the first word of an organization name) and *Ouest* (the West). Headline-style capitalization of the two journal titles would call for *Anuario Filosófico* and *Bulletin de la Société des Antiquaires de l'Ouest*.

14.194 ***Translated article titles.*** If an English translation is added to a foreign-language article title, it is enclosed in brackets, without quotation marks, and capitalized sentence-style. If a title is given only in English translation, however, the original language must be specified. See also 14.108, 14.110.

1. W. Kern, "Waar verzamelde Pigafetta zijn Maleise woorden?" [Where did Pigafetta collect his Malaysian words?], *Tijdschrift voor Indische taal-, land- en volkenkunde* 78 (1938): 271–73.

Chu Ching and Long Zhi. "The Vicissitudes of the Giant Panda, *Ailuropoda melanoleuca* (David)." [In Chinese.] *Acta Zoologica Sinica* 29, no. 1 (1983): 93–104.

14.195 ***New series for journal volumes.*** New series in journal volumes are identified by *n.s.* (new series), *2nd ser.*, and so forth, as they are for books (see 14.132). Note the comma between the series identifier and the volume number.

23. "Letter of Jonathan Sewall," *Proceedings of the Massachusetts Historical Society*, 2nd ser., 10 (January 1896): 414.

Moraes, G. M. "St. Francis Xavier, Apostolic Nuncio, 1542–52." *Journal of the Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society*, n.s., 26 (1950): 279–313.

14.196 ***Short titles for articles.*** In subsequent references to journal articles, the author's last name and the main title of the article (often shortened) are most commonly used. In the absence of a full bibliography, however, the journal title, volume number, and page number(s) may prove more helpful guides to the source. See also 14.177.

24. Pablo Cotler and Christopher Woodruff, "The Impact of Short-Term Credit on Microenterprises: Evidence from the *Fincomun-Bimbo* Program in Mexico," *Economic Development and Cultural Change* 56 (July 2008): 831, doi:10.1086/588169.

26. Cotler and Woodruff, "Short-Term Credit," 840.

or

26. Cotler and Woodruff, *Economic Development and Cultural Change* 56:840.

14.197 ***Abstract.*** An abstract is treated like a journal article, but the word *abstract* must be added.

Hoover, Susan E., Junichi Kawada, Wyndham Wilson, and Jeffrey I. Cohen. "Oropharyngeal Shedding of Epstein-Barr Virus in the Absence of Circulating B Cells." Abstract. *Journal of Infectious Diseases* 198 (August 1, 2008). doi:10.1086/589714.

14.198 ***Electronic enhancements to journal articles.*** Electronic-only enhancements to journal articles—including sound or video files and appendixes—can be cited in notes as follows:

3. "Ghost Dancing Music," Naraya no. 2, MP3 audio file, cited in Richard W. Stoffle et al., "Ghost Dancing the Grand Canyon," *Current Anthropology* 41, no. 1 (2000), doi:10.1086/300101.

11. "RNA/DNA Quantitation Methods," appendix A (online only), Daniel I. Bolnick and On Lee Lau, "Predictable Patterns of Disruptive Selection in Stickleback in Postglacial Lakes," *American Naturalist* 172 (July 2008), doi:10.1086/587805.

See also 14.274–80.

Magazines

14.199 ***Citing magazines by date.*** For the use of *magazine* as against *journal*, see 14.172. Many of the guidelines for citing journals apply to magazines also. Weekly or monthly (or bimonthly) magazines, even if numbered by volume and issue, are usually cited by date only. The date, being an essential element in the citation, is not enclosed in parentheses. While a specific page number may be cited in a note, the inclusive page numbers of an article may be omitted, since they are often widely separated by extraneous material. When page numbers are included, a comma rather than a colon separates them from the date of issue.

1. Beth Saulnier, "From Vine to Wine," *Cornell Alumni Magazine*, September/October 2008, 48.

2. Jill Lepore, "Just the Facts, Ma'am: Fake Memoirs, Factual Fictions, and the History of History," *New Yorker*, March 24, 2008, 81.

See also 14.202 and the guidelines for newspapers (14.203–13).

14.200 ***Online magazine articles.*** For magazine articles consulted online, include a URL (or DOI, if available) at the end of a citation. See also 14.4–13, 14.184.

1. Wendy Cole and Janice Castro, "Scientology's Largesse in Russia," *Time*, April 13, 1992, http://www.time.com/time/magazine/article/0,9171,975290,00.html.

14.201 ***Magazine article titles.*** Titles of magazine articles are treated like titles of journal articles: they are capitalized headline-style, set in roman, and placed in quotation marks. See 14.176; see also 8.157.

1. Michael Frank, "La Concha Revival: San Juan's Tropical Modernist Gem Makes a Comeback," *Architectural Digest*, August 2009, 103–4.

14.202 ***Magazine departments.*** Titles of regular departments in a magazine are capitalized headline-style but not put in quotation marks.

2. Rebecca Mead, "Isn't It Romantic?," Talk of the Town (Ink), *New Yorker*, July 21, 2008, http://www.newyorker.com/talk/2008/07/21/080721ta_talk_mead.
3. Debra Klein, Focus on Travel, *Newsweek*, April 17, 2000.

Wallraff, Barbara. Word Fugitives. *Atlantic Monthly*, July/August 2008.

A department without a named author is best cited by the name of the magazine.

Gourmet. Kitchen Notebook. May 2000.

Newspapers

14.203 ***Newspaper citations—basic elements.*** The name of the author (if known) and the headline or column heading in a daily newspaper are cited much like the corresponding elements in magazines (see 14.199–202). The month (often abbreviated), day, and year are the indispensable elements. Because a newspaper's issue of any given day may include several editions, and items may be moved or eliminated in various editions, page numbers may usually be omitted (for an example of a page number in a citation, see 14.209). In a note or bibliographical entry, it may be useful to add "final edition," "Midwest edition," or some such identifier. If the paper is published in several sections, the section number or name may be given (e.g., sec. 1). To cite an article consulted online, include the URL; in some cases, it may be advisable to shorten a particularly unwieldy URL to end after the first single forward slash (i.e., the slash that follows a domain extension such as *.com*).

1. Editorial, *Philadelphia Inquirer*, July 30, 1990.

2. Mike Royko, "Next Time, Dan, Take Aim at Arnold," *Chicago Tribune*, September 23, 1992.

3. Christopher Lehmann-Haupt, "Robert Giroux, Editor, Publisher and Nurturer of Literary Giants, Is Dead at 94," *New York Times*, September 6, 2008, New York edition.

4. "Pushcarts Evolve to Trendy Kiosks," *Lake Forester* (Lake Forest, IL), March 23, 2000.

5. Julie Bosman, "Jets? Yes! Sharks? ¡Sí! in Bilingual 'West Side,'" *New York Times*, July 17, 2008, http://www.nytimes.com/2008/07/17/theater/17bway.html.

14.204 ***Newspaper headlines.*** Since headlines are often grammatical sentences, sentence-style capitalization is preferred in the headlines of many major newspapers. In documentation, however, Chicago recommends headline style for citing headlines in notes and bibliographies for the sake of consistency with other titles. See also 8.156, 8.157.

"Justices Limit Visiting Rights of Grandparents in Divided Case"

Headlines presented entirely in full capitals in the original are usually converted to upper- and lowercase in documentation (but see 7.48).

14.205 ***Regular columns.*** Many regular columns carry headlines as well as column titles. When such columns are cited, both may be used or, to save space, the column title alone.

5. Marguerite Fields, "Want to Be My Boyfriend? Please Define," Modern Love, *New York Times*, May 4, 2008, http://www.nytimes.com/2008/05/04/fashion/04love.html.

or

5. Marguerite Fields, Modern Love, *New York Times*, May 4, 2008, http://www.nytimes.com/2008/05/04/fashion/04love.html.

14.206 ***Citing in text rather than in a bibliography.*** Newspapers are more commonly cited in notes or parenthetical references than in bibliographies. A list of works cited need not list newspaper items if these have been documented in the text. No corresponding entry in a bibliography would be needed for the following citation (nor would it be necessary in such a case to include information about edition or, for an article consulted online, a URL):

In an article discussing the end of Favre's second-straight postretirement season—this time with the Minnesota Vikings—Pat Borzi reminds us that when it comes to the aging quarterback's uncertain prospects for yet another season, "there is final, and there is Favre" (*New York Times*, January 25, 2010).

If, for some reason, a bibliography entry were included, it would appear as follows:

Borzi, Pat. "Retirement Discussion Begins Anew for Favre." *New York Times*, January 25, 2010. http://www.nytimes.com/2010/01/26/sports/football/26vikings.html?emc=eta1.

14.207 ***Unsigned newspaper articles.*** Unsigned newspaper articles or features are best dealt with in text or notes. But if a bibliography entry should be needed, the name of the newspaper stands in place of the author.

1. "In Texas, Ad Heats Up Race for Governor," *New York Times*, July 30, 2002.

New York Times. "In Texas, Ad Heats Up Race for Governor." July 30, 2002.

14.208 ***Letters to the editor.*** Published letters to the editor are treated generically, without headlines.

6. Brian Sheridan, letter to the editor, *Los Angeles Times*, September 7, 2008.

14.209 ***Weekend supplements, magazines, and the like.*** Articles from Sunday supplements or other special sections are treated in the same way as magazine articles—that is, cited by date. They are usually dealt with in notes or parenthetical references rather than in bibliographies. Citations of print editions may include a specific page reference (see 14.199).

45. David Frum, "The Vanishing Republican Voter," *New York Times Magazine*, September 7, 2008, New York edition, MM48.

14.210 ***Names of newspapers.*** An initial *The* is omitted (see 8.168). A city name, even if not part of the name of an American newspaper, should be added, italicized along with the official title. The name (usually abbreviated) of the state or, in the case of Canada, province may be added in parentheses if needed. Odd cases may call for special treatment.

Chicago Tribune
Hackensack (NJ) Record
Ottawa (IL) Daily Times
Saint Paul (Alberta or *AB) Journal*
but
Oregonian (Portland, OR)

For such well-known national papers as the *Wall Street Journal* or the *Christian Science Monitor*, no city name is added.

14.211 ***Names of foreign newspapers.*** Names of cities not part of the titles of foreign newspapers may be added in parentheses after the title, not italicized. An initial *The*, omitted in English-language papers, is retained in titles of foreign-language papers if the article is part of the name. Foreign newspaper names, like those of foreign journals, are often capitalized headline-style. When in doubt, however, use sentence style.

Frankfurter Zeitung
La Crónica de Hoy (Mexico City)
Times (London)
Guardian (Manchester)
Le Monde

14.212 ***News services.*** Names of news services, as opposed to newspapers, are capitalized but not italicized.

the Associated Press (AP)
United Press International (UPI)

1. Associated Press, "Afraid of Laundry? You Will Be after Reading This," *USA Today*, July 17, 2008, http://www.usatoday.com/news/topstories/2008-07-17-861610133_x.htm.

14.213 ***News releases.*** A news release is treated like an article in a magazine (see 14.199–202), its title set in roman and placed in quotation marks.

6. National Transportation Safety Board, "NTSB Chairman Commends FAA on Major Advancement in Aviation Safety," news release, July 16, 2008, http://www.ntsb.gov/Pressrel/2008/080716.html.

Reviews

14.214 ***Reviews—elements of the citation.*** In citations of reviews, the elements are given in the following order:

1. Name of reviewer if the review is signed
2. Title of the review, if any (a headline should be included only if needed for locating the review)
3. The words *review of*, followed by the name of the work reviewed and its author (or composer, or director, or whomever) or sponsor (network, studio, label, etc.)
4. Location and date (in the case of a performance)
5. The listing of the periodical in which the review appeared

If a review is included in a bibliography, it is alphabetized by the name of the reviewer or, if unattributed, by the name of the periodical (see 14.217). See also 14.215.

14.215 ***Book reviews.*** Cite book reviews by author of the review and include book title and author(s) or editor(s). Follow applicable guidelines for citing periodicals.

1. Ben Ratliff, review of *The Mystery of Samba: Popular Music and National Identity in Brazil*, by Hermano Vianna, ed. and trans. John Charles Chasteen, *Lingua Franca* 9 (April 1999): B13–B14.

2. David Kamp, "Deconstructing Dinner," review of *The Omnivore's Dilemma: A Natural History of Four Meals*, by Michael Pollan, *New York Times*, April 23, 2006, Sunday Book Review, http://www.nytimes.com/2006/04/23/books/review/23kamp.html.

Sorby, Angela. Review of *Songs of Ourselves: The Uses of Poetry in America*, by Joan Shelley Rubin. *American Historical Review* 113 (April 2008): 449–51. doi:10.1086/ahr.113.2.449.

14.216 ***Reviews of plays, movies, television programs, concerts, and the like.*** Reviews of plays, concerts, movies, and the like may include the name of a director in addition to any author, producer, sponsor, or performer, as applicable.

3. Ben Brantley, review of *Our Lady of Sligo*, by Sebastian Barry, directed by Max Stafford-Clark, Irish Repertory Theater, New York, *New York Times*, April 21, 2000, Weekend section.

4. Jon Pareles, review of *Men Strike Back* (VH1 television), *New York Times*, April 18, 2000, Living Arts section.

5. David Denby, review of *WALL-E*, Disney/Pixar, *New Yorker*, July 21, 2008, http://www.newyorker.com/arts/critics/cinema/2008/07/21/080721crci_cinema_denby.

6. Pareles, review of *Men Strike Back*.

Kozinn, Allan. Review of concert performance by Timothy Fain (violin) and Steven Beck (piano), 92nd Street Y, New York. *New York Times*, April 21, 2000, Weekend section.

14.217 ***Unsigned reviews.*** Unsigned reviews are treated similarly to unsigned articles (see 14.207). If such a review must appear in the bibliography, it is listed under the name of the periodical.

34. Unsigned review of *Geschichten der romanischen und germanischen Völker*, by Leopold von Ranke, *Ergänzungsblätter zur Allgemeinen Literatur-Zeitung*, February 1828, nos. 23–24.

Ergänzungsblätter zur Allgemeinen Literatur-Zeitung. Unsigned review of *Geschichten der romanischen und germanischen Völker*, by Leopold von Ranke. February 1828, nos. 23–24.

Interviews and Personal Communications

14.218 ***Interviews and personal communications—order of attribution.*** In whatever form interviews or personal communications exist—published, broadcast, preserved in audiovisual form, available online—the citation normally begins with the name of the person interviewed or the person from whom the communication was received. The interviewer or recipient, if mentioned, comes second.

14.219 ***Unpublished interviews.*** Unpublished interviews are best cited in text or in notes, though they occasionally appear in bibliographies. Citations should include the names of both the person interviewed and the interviewer; brief identifying information, if appropriate; the place or date of the interview (or both, if known); and, if a transcript or recording is available, where it may be found. Permission to quote may be needed; see chapter 4.

7. Andrew Macmillan (principal adviser, Investment Center Division, FAO), in discussion with the author, September 1998.

8. Benjamin Spock, interview by Milton J. E. Senn, November 20, 1974, interview 67A, transcript, Senn Oral History Collection, National Library of Medicine, Bethesda, MD.

9. Macmillan, discussion; Spock, interview.

14.220 ***Unattributed interviews.*** An interview with a person who prefers to remain anonymous or whose name the author does not wish to reveal may be cited in whatever form is appropriate in context. The absence of a name should be explained (e.g., "All interviews were conducted in confidentiality, and the names of interviewees are withheld by mutual agreement").

10. Interview with health care worker, March 23, 2010.

14.221 ***Published or broadcast interviews.*** An interview that has already been published or broadcast is treated like an article in a periodical or a chapter in a book. Interviews consulted online should include a URL or similar identifier and, for audiovisual materials, an indication of the medium (see 14.4–13). See also 14.277, 14.280.

117. "*Mil Máscaras*: An Interview with Pulitzer-Winner Junot Díaz (*The Brief Wondrous Life of Oscar Wao*)," by Matt Okie, *Identitytheory.com*, September 2, 2008, http://www.identitytheory.com/interviews/okie_diaz.php.

118. McGeorge Bundy, interview by Robert MacNeil, *MacNeil/Lehrer NewsHour*, PBS, February 7, 1990.

119. Darcey Steinke, interview by Sam Tanenhaus and Dwight Garner, *New York Times Book Review*, podcast audio, April 22, 2007, http://podcasts.nytimes.com/podcasts/2007/04/20/21bookupdate.mp3.

Bellour, Raymond. "Alternation, Segmentation, Hypnosis: Interview with Raymond Bellour." By Janet Bergstrom. *Camera Obscura*, nos. 3–4 (Summer 1979): 89–94.

If an interview is included or excerpted in the form of a direct quotation within an article or chapter by the interviewer, the interviewer's name may come first.

120. Michael Fortun and Kim Fortun, "Making Space, Speaking Truth: The Institute for Policy Studies, 1963–1995" (includes an interview with Marcus Raskin and Richard Barnet), in *Corporate Futures*, ed. George E. Marcus, Late Editions 5 (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1998), 257.

14.222 ***Personal communications.*** References to conversations (whether face-to-face or by telephone) or to letters, e-mail or text messages, and the like received by the author are usually run in to the text or given in a note. They are rarely listed in a bibliography. For references to electronic mailing lists, see 14.223. See also 13.3.

In a telephone conversation with the author on January 6, 2009, lobbyist Pat Fenshaw admitted that . . .

2. Constance Conlon, e-mail message to author, April 17, 2000.

An e-mail address belonging to an individual should be omitted. Should it be needed in a specific context, it must be cited only with the permission of its owner. For breaking an e-mail address at the end of a line, see **7.42**.

14.223 ***Electronic mailing lists.*** To cite material from an electronic mailing list, include the name of the list, the date of the individual posting, and a URL where the archive can be found. Additional information such as a file name or number may be appropriate. Citations of such material should generally be limited to text and notes.

17. John Powell to Grapevine mailing list, April 23, 1998, no. 83, http://www.electriceditors.net/grapevine/archives.php.

18. Edela Fontane to LLTI@listserv.dartmouth.edu, June 2, 2008, no. 8865a, Language Learning and Technology International Information Forum, http://listserv.dartmouth.edu/scripts/wa.exe?A0=LLTI.

Unpublished and Informally Published Material

Theses, Dissertations, Papers, and the Like

14.224 ***Theses and dissertations.*** Titles of unpublished works appear in quotation marks—not in italics. This treatment extends to theses and dissertations, which are otherwise cited like books. The kind of thesis, the academic institution, and the date follow the title. Like the publication data of a book, these are enclosed in parentheses in a note but not in a bibliography. If the document was consulted online, include a URL or, for documents retrieved from a commercial database, give the name of the database and, in parentheses, any identification number supplied or recommended by the database. For dissertations issued on microfilm, see **14.120**. For published abstracts of dissertations, see **14.197**.

1. Ilya Vedrashko, “Advertising in Computer Games” (master’s thesis, MIT, 2006), 59, http://cms.mit.edu/research/theses/IlyaVedrashko2006.pdf.

5. Vedrashko, “Advertising in Computer Games,” 61–62.

Choi, Mihwa. "Contesting *Imaginaires* in Death Rituals during the Northern Song Dynasty." PhD diss., University of Chicago, 2008. ProQuest (AAT 3300426).

14.225 ***Unpublished manuscripts.*** Titles of unpublished manuscripts, like the titles of other unpublished works, appear in quotation marks. (For manuscripts under contract but not yet published, see 14.153.) Include the words *unpublished manuscript* and the date of the version consulted, if possible (for electronic files, a last-saved or last-modified date may be appropriate). End the citation with an indication of format(s).

1. Nora Bradburn, "Watch Crystals and the Mohs Scale" (unpublished manuscript, December 3, 2008), LaTeX and Excel files.

Cotter, Cory. "The Weakest Link: The Argument for On-Wrist Band Welding." Unpublished manuscript, last modified December 3, 2008. Microsoft Word file.

14.226 ***Lectures, papers presented at meetings, and the like.*** The sponsorship, location, and date of the meeting at which a speech was given or a paper presented follow the title. This information, like that following a thesis title, is put in parentheses in a note but not in a bibliography.

2. Stacy D'Erasmo, "The Craft and Career of Writing" (lecture, Northwestern University, Evanston, IL, April 26, 2000).

Teplin, Linda A., Gary M. McClelland, Karen M. Abram, and Jason J. Washburn. "Early Violent Death in Delinquent Youth: A Prospective Longitudinal Study." Paper presented at the Annual Meeting of the American Psychology-Law Society, La Jolla, CA, March 2005.

A paper included in the published proceedings of a meeting may be treated like a chapter in a book (see 14.125). If published in a journal, it is treated as an article (see 14.175–98).

14.227 ***Poster papers.*** Papers presented at poster sessions are treated like other unpublished papers.

Rohde, Hannah, Roger Levy, and Andrew Kehler. "Implicit Causality Biases Influence Relative Clause Attachment." Poster presented at the 21st CUNY Conference on Human Sentence Processing, Chapel Hill, NC, March 2008.

14.228 ***Working papers and other unpublished works.*** Most unpublished papers can be treated in much the same way as a dissertation or thesis (14.224) or a lecture, paper, or other presentation (14.226).

4. Deborah D. Lucki and Richard W. Pollay, "Content Analyses of Advertising: A Review of the Literature" (working paper, History of Advertising Archives, Faculty of Commerce, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, 1980).

Dyer, Lee, and Jeff Ericksen. "Complexity-Based Agile Enterprises: Putting Self-Organizing Emergence to Work." CAHRS Working Paper 08-01, School of Industrial and Labor Relations, Center for Advanced Human Resource Studies, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY, 1980. http://digitalcommons.ilr.cornell.edu/cahrswp/473.

In the second example above the term *working paper* is part of a formal series title, therefore capitalized (see 14.128–32). Unless the item is available online, it is sometimes useful to add *photocopy* or otherwise indicate the form in which an unpublished document may be consulted.

Alarcón, Salvador Florencio de. "Compendio de las noticias correspondientes a el real y minas San Francisco de Aziz de Río Chico . . . de 20 de octobre [1771]." Photocopy, Department of Geography, University of California, Berkeley.

14.229 *Preprints.* Not being subject to peer review, preprints are treated as unpublished material. See also 1.106.

Lein, Matthias. "Characterization of Agostic Interactions in Theory and Computation." Preprint, submitted July 10, 2008. http://xxx.lanl.gov/abs/0807.1751.

14.230 *Patents.* Patents are cited under the names of the creators and dated by the year of filing.

Iizuka, Masanori, and Hideki Tanaka. Cement admixture. US Patent 4,586,960, filed June 26, 1984, and issued May 6, 1986.

14.231 *Private contracts, wills, and such.* Private documents are occasionally cited in notes but rarely in bibliographies. More appropriately they are referred to in text (e.g., "Marcy T. Feldspar, in her will dated January 20, 1976, directed . . .") or in notes. Capitalization is usually a matter of editorial discretion.

4. Samuel Henshaw, will dated June 5, 1806, proved July 5, 1809, no. 46, box 70, Hampshire County Registry of Probate, Northampton, MA.

5. Agreement to teach in the Publishing Program of the Graham School, University of Chicago, signed by Jemma Granite, May 29, 2010.

Manuscript Collections

14.232 ***Overview and additional resources.*** The 1987 edition of the *Guide to the National Archives of the United States* offers the following advice: "The most convenient citation for archives is one similar to that used for personal papers and other historical manuscripts. Full identification of most unpublished material usually requires giving the title and date of the item, series title (if applicable), name of the collection, and name of the depository. Except for placing the cited item first [in a note], there is no general agreement on the sequence of the remaining elements in the citation. . . . Whatever sequence is adopted, however, should be used consistently throughout the same work" (761). This advice has been extended by the leaflet *Citing Records in the National Archives of the United States* (available at the National Archives and Records Administration website), which includes advice on citing textual and nontextual records, including electronic records. See also bibliog. 4.5. It should be noted that citations of collections consulted online (which remain a relative rarity given the cost of digitizing the miscellaneous, nonstandard items typical of most manuscript collections) will usually be the same as citations of physical collections, aside from the addition of a URL or DOI (see 14.4–13).

14.233 ***Note forms versus bibliography entries.*** In a note, the main element of a manuscript citation is usually a specific item (a letter, a memorandum, or whatever) and is thus cited first. In a bibliography, the main element is usually either the collection in which the specific item may be found, the author(s) of the items in the collection, or the depository for the collection. (Entries beginning with the name of the collection or the last name of the author—which sometimes overlap—tend to be easiest to locate in a bibliography.)

38. James Oglethorpe to the Trustees, 13 January 1733, Phillipps Collection of Egmont Manuscripts, 14200:13, University of Georgia Library.

39. Alvin Johnson, memorandum, 1937, file 36, Horace Kallen Papers, YIVO Institute for Jewish Research, New York.

40. Revere's Waste and Memoranda Book (vol. 1, 1761–83; vol. 2, 1783–97), Revere Family Papers, Massachusetts Historical Society, Boston.

Egmont Manuscripts. Phillipps Collection. University of Georgia Library.
Kallen, Horace. Papers. YIVO Institute for Jewish Research, New York.
Revere Family Papers. Massachusetts Historical Society, Boston.

Specific items are not included in a bibliography unless only one item from a collection is cited. For more examples, see 14.240, 14.241.

14.234 ***Specific versus generic titles for manuscript collections.*** In notes and bibliographies, quotation marks are used only for specific titles (e.g., "Canoeing through Northern Minnesota"), but not for generic names such as *report* or *minutes*. Generic names of this kind are capitalized if part of a formal heading actually appearing on the manuscript, lowercased if merely descriptive. Compare 14.240, example notes 46–49.

14.235 ***Dates for manuscript collections.*** Names of months may be spelled out or abbreviated, as long as done consistently (see 10.40). If there are many references to specific dates, as in a collection of letters or diaries, the day-month-year form (8 May 1945), used in some of the examples below, will reduce clutter. See also 6.45.

14.236 ***Folios, page numbers, and such for manuscript collections.*** Older manuscripts are usually numbered by signatures only or by folios (*fol., fols.*) rather than by page (see 14.161, 14.162). More recent ones usually carry page numbers; if needed, the abbreviations *p.* and *pp.* should be used to avoid ambiguity. Some manuscript collections have identifying series or file numbers, which may be included in a citation.

14.237 ***"Papers" and "manuscripts."*** In titles of manuscript collections, the terms *papers* and *manuscripts* are synonymous. Both are acceptable, as are the abbreviations *MS* and (pl.) *MSS*. If it is necessary to distinguish a typescript or computer printout from a handwritten document, the abbreviation *TS* may be used.

14.238 ***Location of depositories.*** The location (city and state) of such well-known depositories as major university libraries is rarely necessary (see examples in 14.240).

University of Chicago Library
Oberlin College Library

14.239 ***Collections of letters and the like.*** A note citation of a letter starts with the name of the letter writer, followed by *to*, followed by the name of the recipient. Given names may be omitted if the identities of sender and recipient are clear from the text. (Identifying material may be added if appropriate; see 14.219.) The word *letter* is usually omitted—that is, understood—but other forms of communication (telegram, memorandum) are specified. If such other forms occur frequently in the same collection, it may be helpful to specify letters also. For capitalization and the use of quotation marks, see 14.234. For date form, see 6.45, 9.32. See also 14.117, 14.222, 14.242.

14.240 ***Examples of note forms for manuscript collections.***

40. George Creel to Colonel House, 25 September 1918. Edward M. House Papers, Yale University Library.

41. James Oglethorpe to the Trustees, 13 January 1733, Phillipps Collection of Egmont Manuscripts, 14200:13, University of Georgia Library (hereafter cited as Egmont MSS).

42. Burton to Merriam, telegram, 26 January 1923, Charles E. Merriam Papers, University of Chicago Library.

43. Minutes of the Committee for Improving the Condition of the Free Blacks, Pennsylvania Abolition Society, 1790–1803, Papers of the Pennsylvania Society for the Abolition of Slavery, Historical Society of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia (hereafter cited as Minutes, Pennsylvania Society).

44. Hiram Johnson to John Callan O'Laughlin, 13 and 16 July 1916, 28 November 1916, O'Laughlin Papers, Theodore Roosevelt Collection, Harvard College Library.

45. Memorandum by Alvin Johnson, 1937, file 36, Horace Kallen Papers, YIVO Institute for Jewish Research, New York.

46. Undated correspondence between French Strother and Edward Lowry, container 1-G/961 600, Herbert Hoover Presidential Library, West Branch, IA.

47. Memorandum, "Concerning a Court of Arbitration," n.d., Philander C. Knox Papers, Manuscripts Division, Library of Congress.

48. Joseph Purcell, "A Map of the Southern Indian District of North America" [ca. 1772], MS 228, Ayer Collection, Newberry Library, Chicago.

49. Louis Agassiz, report to the Committee of Overseers . . . [28 December 1859], Overseers Reports, Professional Series, vol. 2, Harvard University Archives.

50. Gilbert McMicken to Alexander Morris, 29 November 1881, Glasgow (Scotland), Document 1359, fol. 1r, Alexander Morris Papers, MG-12-84, Provincial Archives of Manitoba, Winnipeg.

The content of subsequent citations of other items in a cited manuscript collection (short forms) will vary according to the proximity of the earlier notes, the use of abbreviations, and other factors. Absolute consistency may occasionally be sacrificed to readers' convenience.

51. R. S. Baker to House, 1 November 1919, House Papers.

52. Thomas Causton to his wife, 12 March 1733, Egmont MSS, 14200:53.

53. Minutes, 15 April 1795, Pennsylvania Society.

14.241 ***Examples of bibliography entries for manuscript collections.*** The style of the first six examples below is appropriate if more than one item from a collection is cited in the text or notes. In the second and third examples, commas are added after the initials to avoid misreading. See also 14.233.

Egmont Manuscripts. Phillipps Collection. University of Georgia Library.

House, Edward M., Papers. Yale University Library.

Merriam, Charles E., Papers. University of Chicago Library.

Pennsylvania Society for the Abolition of Slavery. Papers. Historical Society of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia.

Strother, French, and Edward Lowry. Undated correspondence. Herbert Hoover Presidential Library, West Branch, IA.

Women's Organization for National Prohibition Reform. Papers. Alice Belin du Pont files, Pierre S. du Pont Papers. Eleutherian Mills Historical Library, Wilmington, DE.

If only one item from a collection has been mentioned in text or in a note and is considered important enough to include in a bibliography, the entry will begin with the item.

Dinkel, Joseph. Description of Louis Agassiz written at the request of Elizabeth Cary Agassiz. Agassiz Papers. Houghton Library, Harvard University.

14.242 ***Letters and the like in private collections.*** Letters, memoranda, and such that have not been archived may be cited like other unpublished material. Information on the depository is replaced by such wording as "in the author's possession" or "private collection," and the location is not mentioned.

Websites and Blogs

14.243 ***Websites and blogs—overview.*** For the purposes of this discussion, *website* refers to the collection of documents made available at a specific location on the World Wide Web by an individual or organization. (The term *web page*, on the other hand, is used to refer to any one of the "pages," or subdocuments, that can be viewed within a website.) Formal citations should normally be limited to the documents themselves—for example, the articles, books, and other published documents offered by the websites of university publishers and other formal organizations and discussed elsewhere in this chapter. A weblog—or blog—is a category of website that has evolved to include a few more or less standard components, including dated entries and dated comments. Citations of blog entries and comments are therefore similar to citations of articles in periodicals (see 14.246).

14.244 ***Titles for websites and blogs.*** Websites should be referred to in text and notes by specific title (if any), by the name of the sponsor or author, or by a descriptive phrase. Some sites refer to themselves by their domain name (the first part of a URL, following the double slash and ending in a domain-type indication such as *.com*, *.edu*, or *.org*); such monikers, which are not case sensitive, are often shortened and capitalized in a logical way (e.g., *www.nytimes.com* becomes *NYTimes.com*; *www.google.com* becomes *Google*). Titles of websites are generally set in roman without quotation marks and capitalized headline-style, but titles that are analogous to books or other types of publications may be styled accordingly. Titled sections or pages within a website should be placed in quotation marks. Specific titles of blogs—which are analogous to periodicals—should be set in italics; titles of blog entries (analogous to articles in a periodical) should be in quotation marks. For additional examples, see 8.186–87.

the website of the *New York Times*; the *New York Times* online; NYTimes.com
The Chicago Manual of Style Online; "Chicago Style Q&A"
Google; Google Maps; the "Google Maps Help Center"
The Becker-Posner Blog; "Should Dogs Get $8 Billion from the Helmsley Estate?," blog entry by Richard Posner, July 13, 2008

14.245 ***Citations of website content.*** For original content from online sources other than the types of formally published documents discussed elsewhere in this chapter, include as much of the following as can be determined: the title or a description of the page (see 14.244), the author of the content (if any), the owner or sponsor of the site, and a URL. Also include a publication date or date of revision or modification (see 14.8); if no such date can be determined, include an access date (see 14.7). Citations of site content are best relegated to notes; in works with no notes, they may be included in the bibliography. Some editorial discretion will be required.

14. "WD2000: Visual Basic Macro to Assign Clipboard Text to a String Variable," revision 1.3, Microsoft Help and Support, last modified November 23, 2006, http://support.microsoft.com/kb/212730.

15. "Google Privacy Policy," last modified October 14, 2005, accessed July 19, 2008, http://www.google.com/intl/en/privacypolicy.html.

16. "McDonald's Happy Meal Toy Safety Facts," McDonald's Corporation, accessed July 19, 2008, http://www.mcdonalds.com/corp/about/factsheets.html.

17. Barack Obama's Facebook page, accessed July 19, 2008, http://www.facebook.com/barackobama.

18. "Style Guide," *Wikipedia*, last modified July 18, 2008, http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Style_guide.

Microsoft Corporation. "WD2000: Visual Basic Macro to Assign Clipboard Text to a String Variable." Revision 1.3. Microsoft Help and Support. Last modified November 23, 2006. http://support.microsoft.com/kb/212730.

If a site ceases to exist before publication, or if the information cited is modified or deleted, such information should be included in the text or note.

As of July 18, 2008, Hefferman was claiming on her Facebook page that . . . (a claim that had disappeared from her page by September 1, 2008) . . .

4. "Biography," on Pete Townshend's official website, accessed December 15, 2001, http://www.petetownshend.co.uk/petet_bio.html (site discontinued).

14.246 ***Citations of blog entries.*** Citations of blog entries should include the author of the entry; the name of the entry, in quotation marks; the title or description of the blog (see 14.244); and a URL. Citations of a comment should start with the identity of the commenter and the date of the comment (if a time stamp appears with the comment), the words "comment on," and the citation information for the related entry. If the blog entry has been cited previously, use a shortened form; see 14.25. There is no need to add *pseud.* after an apparently fictitious name of a commenter; it may be assumed that the identity of any commenter may be an alias. If known, the identity can be given in the text or in the citation (in square brackets; see 14.82). Blogs that are part of a larger publication should also include the name of that publication. Add the word *blog* in parentheses after the name of the blog (unless the word *blog* is part of the name). Citations of blog entries are generally relegated to the notes; a frequently cited blog, however, may be included in the bibliography.

1. Mike Nizza, "Go Ahead, Annoy Away, an Australian Court Says," *The Lede* (blog), *New York Times*, July 15, 2008, http://thelede.blogs.nytimes.com/2008/07/15/.

2. SteveCO, comment on Nizza, "Go Ahead, Annoy Away."

16. Matthew Lasar, "FCC Chair Willing to Consecrate XM-Sirius Union," *Ars Technica* (blog), June 16, 2008, http://arstechnica.com/news.ars/post/20080616-fcc-chair-willing-to-consecrate-xm-sirius-union.html.

19. AC, July 1, 2008 (10:18 a.m.), comment on Rhian Ellis, "Squatters' Rights," *Ward Six* (blog), June 30, 2008, http://wardsix.blogspot.com/2008/06/squatters-rights.html.

Ellis, Rhian, J. Robert Lennon, and Ed Skoog. *Ward Six* (blog). http://wardsix.blogspot.com/.

Special Types of References

Dictionaries and Encyclopedias

14.247 ***Dictionaries and encyclopedias.*** Well-known reference books, such as major dictionaries and encyclopedias, are normally cited in notes rather than in bibliographies. The facts of publication are often omitted, but the edition (if not the first) must be specified. References to an alphabetically arranged work cite the item (not the volume or page number) preceded by *s.v.* (*sub verbo*, "under the word"; pl. *s.vv.*)

1. *Encyclopaedia Britannica*, 15th ed., s.v. "salvation."
2. *Oxford English Dictionary*, 2nd ed. (CD-ROM, version 3.0), s.v. "hoot(e)nanny, hootananny."
3. *Dictionary of American Biography*, s.v. "Wadsworth, Jeremiah."

Certain reference works, however, may appropriately be listed with their publication details. (For examples of how to cite individual entries by author, see 14.248.)

4. *The Times Style and Usage Guide*, comp. Tim Austin (London: Times Books, 2003), s.vv. "police ranks," "postal addresses."
5. *MLA Style Manual and Guide to Scholarly Publishing*, 3rd ed. (New York: Modern Language Association of America, 2008), 6.8.2.

Diccionario de historia de Venezuela. 2nd ed. 4 vols. Caracas: Fundación Polar, 1997.

Garner, Bryan A. *Garner's Modern American Usage*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2003.

14.248 ***Dictionaries and encyclopedias online.*** Online versions of encyclopedias should be cited like their printed corollaries. In addition, in the absence of a posted publication or revision date for the cited entry, supply an access date. If the article includes a recommended form for the URL, include it; otherwise, include a short form of the URL (as in the second example) from which interested readers may enter the search term. If a DOI for the article is available, use that instead. Well-known online reference works, such as major dictionaries and encyclopedias, are normally cited, like their printed counterparts, in notes rather than in bibliographies. The facts of publication are often omitted, but signed entries may include the name of the author. See also 14.5, 14.6.

1. *Encyclopaedia Britannica Online*, s.v. "Sibelius, Jean," accessed July 19, 2008, http://original.britannica.com/eb/article-9067596.

2. *Grove Music Online*, s.v. "Toscanini, Arturo," by David Cairns, accessed July 19, 2008, http://www.oxfordmusiconline.com/.

3. *Wikipedia*, s.v. "Stevie Nicks," last modified July 19, 2008, http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stevie_Nicks.

4. *Merriam-Webster OnLine*, s.v. "mondegreen," accessed July 19, 2008, http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/mondegreen.

For certain reference works—particularly those with substantial, authored entries—it may be appropriate to cite individual entries by author, much like contributions to a multiauthor book (see 14.112). Such citations may be included in a bibliography.

Baldwin, Olive, and Thelma Wilson. "Ann Catley (1745–1789)." In *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography*. Oxford University Press, 2004–. Accessed October 8, 2009. doi:10.1093/ref:odnb/4895.

Isaacson, Melissa. "Bulls." In *Encyclopedia of Chicago*, edited by Janice L. Reiff, Ann Durkin Keating, and James R. Grossman. Chicago Historical Society, 2005. http://www.encyclopedia.chicagohistory.org/pages/184.html.

Masolo, Dismas. "African Sage Philosophy." In *Stanford Encyclopedia of Philosophy*. Stanford University, 1997–. Article published February 14, 2006. http://plato.stanford.edu/entries/african-sage/.

Pamphlets and the Like

14.249 ***Pamphlets, reports, and the like.*** Pamphlets, corporate reports, brochures, and other freestanding publications are treated essentially as books. Data on author and publisher may not fit the normal pattern, but sufficient information should be given to identify the document. For special issues of journals, see 14.187. For access dates, see 14.7. For the use of ampersands in company names, see 10.23.

34. Hazel V. Clark, *Mesopotamia: Between Two Rivers* (Mesopotamia, OH: Trumbull County Historical Society, 1957).

35. *Lifestyles in Retirement*, Library Series (New York: TIAA-CREF, 1996).

36. Merrill Lynch & Co., *2008 Proxy Statement*, accessed April 9, 2009, http://www.ml.com/annualmeetingmaterials/2007/ar/pdfs/2008Proxy.pdf.

14.250 ***Exhibition catalogs.*** An exhibition catalog is often published as a book and is treated as such.

Mary Cassatt: Modern Woman. Edited by Judith A. Barter. Chicago: Art Institute of Chicago, in association with Harry N. Abrams, 1998. Published in conjunction with the exhibition of the same name, shown at the Boston Museum of Fine Arts, the National Gallery in Washington, DC, and the Art Institute of Chicago.

or, if space is tight,

Mary Cassatt: Modern Woman. Edited by Judith A. Barter. Chicago: Art Institute of Chicago, with Harry N. Abrams, 1998. Exhibition catalog.

A brochure—the kind often handed to visitors to an exhibition—may be treated similarly.

14.251 ***Loose-leaf services.*** Documentation of material obtained through loose-leaf services is handled like that of books.

13. Commerce Clearing House, 1990 *Standard Federal Tax Reports* (Chicago: Commerce Clearing House, 1990), 20, 050.15.

Scriptural References

14.252 ***Biblical references—additional resource.*** Any scholarly writer or editor working extensively with biblical material should consult the latest edition of *The SBL Handbook of Style* (bibliog. 1.1), which offers excellent advice and numerous abbreviations.

14.253 ***Bible chapter and verse.*** References to the Jewish or Christian scriptures usually appear in text citations or notes rather than in bibliographies. Parenthetical or note references to the Bible should include book (in roman and usually abbreviated), chapter, and verse—never a page number. A colon is used between chapter and verse. Note that the traditional abbreviations use periods but the shorter forms do not. For guidance on when to abbreviate and when not to, see 10.46. For full forms and abbreviations, see 10.48, 10.49, 10.50.

Traditional abbreviations:

4. 1 Thess. 4:11, 5:2–5, 5:14.
5. Heb. 13:8, 13:12.
6. Gen. 25:19–36:43.

Shorter abbreviations:

7. 2 Sm 11:1–17, 11:26–27; 1 Chr 10:13–14.   8. Jo 5:9–12; Mt 26:2–5.

14.254 *Versions of the Bible.* Since books and numbering are not identical in different versions, it is essential to identify which version is being cited. For a work intended for general readers, the version should be spelled out, at least on first occurrence. For specialists, abbreviations may be used throughout. For abbreviations of versions, see 10.51.

6. 2 Kings 11:8 (New Revised Standard Version).
7. 1 Cor. 6:1–10 (NRSV).

14.255 *Other sacred works.* References to the sacred and revered works of other religious traditions may, according to context, be treated in a manner similar to those of biblical or classical works. Citations of transliterated texts should indicate the name of the version or translator. The Koran (or Qur'an) is set in roman, and citations of its sections use arabic numerals and colons (e.g., Koran 19:17–21). Such collective terms as the Vedas or the Upanishads are normally capitalized and set in roman, but particular parts are italicized (e.g., the *Rig-Veda* or the *Brihad-Aranyaka Upanishad*). For authoritative usage, consult *History of Religions,* an international journal for comparative historical studies (bibliog. 5).

Classical Greek and Latin References

14.256 *Where to cite classical references.* Classical primary source references are ordinarily given in text or notes. They are included in a bibliography only when the reference is to information or annotation supplied by a modern author (see 14.260, 14.265).

The eighty days of inactivity reported by Thucydides (8.44.4) for the Peloponnesian fleet at Rhodes, terminating before the end of Thucydides's winter (8.60.2–3), suggests . . .

14.257 *Identifying numbers in classical references.* The numbers identifying the various parts of classical works—books, sections, lines, and so on—remain the same in all editions, whether in the original language or in translation. (In poetry, line content may vary slightly from the original in some translations.) Arabic numerals are used. Where letters also are used, they are usually lowercased but may be capitalized if the source being cited uses capitals. Page numbers are omitted except in references to introductions, notes, and the like supplied by a modern editor or to specific translations. See also 14.259, 14.264.

1. Ovid, *Amores* 1.7.27.
2. Aristotle, *Metaphysics* 3.2.996b5–8; Plato, *Republic* 360e–361b.

14.258 ***Abbreviations in classical references.*** Abbreviations of authors' names as well as of works, collections, and so forth are used extensively in classical references. The most widely accepted standard for abbreviations is the list included in *The Oxford Classical Dictionary* (bibliog. 5). When abbreviations are used, these rather than *ibid.* should be used in succeeding references to the same work. (Abbreviations are best avoided when only two letters are omitted, and they must not be used when more than one writer could be meant—Hipponax or Hipparchus, Aristotle or Aristophanes.)

3. Thuc. 2.40.2–3.
4. Pindar, *Isthm.* 7.43–45.

14.259 ***Punctuation in classical references.*** In a departure from earlier recommendations, Chicago recommends placing a comma between the name of a classical author (abbreviated or not) and the title of a work. No punctuation intervenes, however, between title and identifying number (or between author and number when the author is standing in for the title). Numerical divisions are separated by periods with no space following each period. Commas are used between two or more references to the same source, semicolons between references to different sources, and en dashes between continuing numbers. If such abbreviations as *bk.* or *sec.* are needed for clarity, commas separate the different elements.

5. Aristophanes, *Frogs* 1019–30.
6. Cic., *Verr.* 1.3.21, 2.3.120; Caes., *B Gall.* 6.19; Tac., *Germ.* 10.2–3.
7. Hdt. 7.1.2.
8. Sappho, *Invocation to Aphrodite*, st. 1, lines 1–6.

14.260 ***Citing specific editions of classical references.*** Details of the edition used, along with translator (if any) and the facts of publication, should be either specified the first time a classical work is cited or given elsewhere in the scholarly apparatus. If several editions are used, the edition (or an abbreviation) should accompany each citation. Although many classicists will recognize a well-known edition merely from the last name of the editor or translator, a full citation, at least in the bibliography, should be furnished as a courtesy.

8. Epictetus, *Dissertationes*, ed. Heinrich Schenkl (Stuttgart: Teubner, 1916).

9. Herodotus, *The History*, trans. David Grene (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1987).

10. Solon (Edmonds's numbering) 36.20–27.

14.261 ***Titles of classical works and collections.*** Titles of works and published collections are italicized whether given in full or abbreviated (see 14.258). Latin and transliterated Greek titles are capitalized sentence-style (see 8.156, 11.3, 11.59).

11. Cato's uses of *pater familias* in *Agr.* (2.1, 2.7, 3.1, 3.2) are exclusively in reference to estate management. For the *diligens pater familias* in Columella, see *Rust.* 1.1.3, 1.2.1, 5.6.37, 9.1.6, 12.21.6.

12. *Scholia graeca in Homeri Odysseam*, ed. Wilhelm Dindorf (Oxford, 1855; repr. 1962).

13. *Patrologiae cursus completus, series graeca* (Paris: Migne, 1857–66).

14.262 ***Superscripts in classical references.*** In classical references, a superior figure is sometimes used immediately after the title of a work (or its abbreviation), and preceding any other punctuation, to indicate the number of the edition.

14. Stolz-Schmalz, *Lat. Gram.*^{5} (rev. Leumann-Hoffmann; Munich, 1928), 390–91.

15. *Ausgewählte Komödien des T. M. Plautus*^{2}, vol. 2 (1883).

In former practice, the letters accompanying numerals in citations of classical works (see 14.257) sometimes appeared as superscripts (e.g., 3.2.996^{b}5–8).

14.263 ***Collections of inscriptions.*** Arabic numerals are used in references to volumes in collections of inscriptions. Periods follow the volume and inscription numbers, and further subdivisions are treated as in other classical references.

16. *IG* 2^{2}.3274. [= *Inscriptiones graecae*, vol. 2, 2nd ed., inscription no. 3274]

17. *IG Rom.* 3.739.9–10. [*IG Rom.* = *Inscriptiones graecae ad res romanas pertinentes*]

18. *POxy.* 1485. [= *Oxyrhynchus papyri*, document no. 1485]

Some collections are cited only by the name of the editor. Since the editor's name here stands in place of a title, no comma is needed.

19. Dessau 6964.23–29. [= H. Dessau, ed., *Inscriptiones latinae selectae*]

14.264 ***Fragments of classical texts.*** Fragments of classical texts (some only recently discovered) are not uniformly numbered. They are published in collections, and the numbering is usually unique to a particular edition. Two numbers separated by a period usually indicate fragment and line. The editor's name, often abbreviated in subsequent references, must therefore follow the number.

20. Empedocles, frag. 115 Diels-Kranz.
21. Anacreon, frag. 2.10 Diehl.
22. Hesiod, frag. 239.1 Merkelbach and West.
23. Anacreon, frag. 5.2 D.
24. Hesiod, frag. 220 M.-W.

In citations of two or more editions of the same set of fragments, either parentheses or an equals sign may be used.

25. Pindar, frag. 133 Bergk (frag. 127 Bowra).
or
26. Pindar, frag. 133 Bergk = 127 Bowra.

14.265 ***Modern editions of the classics.*** When Greek, Latin, or medieval classics are cited by page number, the edition must be specified, and the normal rules for citing books are followed. See also 14.260.

35. Propertius, *Elegies*, ed. and trans. G. P. Goold, Loeb Classical Library 18 (Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1990), 45.

Aristotle. *Complete Works of Aristotle: The Revised Oxford Translation*. Edited by J. Barnes. 2 vols. Bollingen Series. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1983.

Maimonides. *The Code of Maimonides, Book 5: The Book of Holiness*. Edited by Leon Nemoy. Translated by Louis I. Rabinowitz and Philip Grossman. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1965.

14.266 ***Medieval references.*** The form for classical references may equally well be applied to medieval works.

27. Augustine, *De civitate Dei* 20.2.
28. Augustine, *The City of God*, trans. John Healey (New York: Dutton, 1931), 20.2.
29. *Beowulf*, lines 2401–7.

30. Abelard, *Epistle 17 to Heloïse* (Migne, *PL* 180.375c–378a).

31. *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*, trans. Theodore Silverstein (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1974), pt. 3, p. 57.

Classic English Poems and Plays

14.267 ***Citing editions of classic English poems and plays.*** Classic English poems and plays can often be cited by book, canto, and stanza; stanza and line; act, scene, and line; or similar divisions. Publication facts can then be omitted. For frequently cited works—especially those of Shakespeare, where variations can occur in wording, line numbering, and even scene division—the edition is normally specified in the first note reference or in the bibliography. The edition must be mentioned if page numbers are cited (see 14.265).

1. Chaucer, "Wife of Bath's Prologue," *Canterbury Tales*, fragment 3, lines 105–14.

2. Spenser, *The Faerie Queene*, bk. 2, canto 8, st. 14.

3. Milton, *Paradise Lost*, bk. 1, lines 83–86.

4. *King Lear*, ed. David Bevington et al. (New York: Bantam Books, 2005), 3.2.49–60. References are to act, scene, and line.

Dryden, John. *Dramatic Essays*. Everyman's Library. New York: Dutton, 1912.

Shakespeare, William. *Hamlet*. Edited by Ann Thompson and Neil Taylor. Arden Shakespeare, 3rd ser. London: Thomson Learning, 2006.

14.268 ***Short forms for citing classic English poems and plays.*** A citation may be shortened by omitting *act*, *line*, and the like, as long as the system used has been explained. Arabic numerals are used, separated by periods. In immediately succeeding references, it is usually safer to repeat all the numbers. The author's name may be omitted if clear from the text. For citing sources in text, see 13.65, 14.54, 14.55.

5. Pope, *Rape of the Lock*, 3.28–29.

6. *Lear* (Bevington), 4.1.1–9, 4.1.18–24.

7. "Wife of Bath's Prologue," 115–16.

Musical Scores

14.269 ***Published scores.*** Published musical scores are treated in much the same way as books.

1. Giuseppe Verdi, *Il corsaro* (*melodramma tragico* in three acts), libretto by Francesco Maria Piave, ed. Elizabeth Hudson, 2 vols., *The Works of Giuseppe Verdi*, ser. 1, *Operas* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press; Milan: G. Ricordi, 1998).

Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus. *Sonatas and Fantasies for the Piano*. Prepared from the autographs and earliest printed sources by Nathan Broder. Rev. ed. Bryn Mawr, PA: Theodore Presser, 1960.

Schubert, Franz. "Das Wandern (Wandering)," *Die schöne Müllerin (The Maid of the Mill)*. In *First Vocal Album* (for high voice). New York: G. Schirmer, 1895.

In the last example above, the words and titles are given in both German and English in the score itself. See also 14.108.

14.270 ***Unpublished scores.*** Unpublished scores are treated in the same way as other unpublished material in manuscript collections (see 14.232–42).

2. Ralph Shapey, "Partita for Violin and Thirteen Players," score, 1966, Special Collections, Joseph Regenstein Library, University of Chicago.

Databases

14.271 ***Library and other commercial databases.*** When citing items such as news or journal articles obtained through a third-party commercial database that archives and offers such material whether by subscription or otherwise, follow the recommendations in the sections on the applicable publication type. In addition, include a URL, but only if the database includes a recommended stable or persistent form with the document (as in the third example). Otherwise, include the name of the database and, in parentheses, any identification number provided with the source (as in the second and fourth examples). For items that do not include a publication or revision date, include an access date. For theses and dissertations, see 14.224.

2. Beth Daley, "A Tale of a Whale: Scientists, Museum Are Eager to Study, Display Rare Creature," *Boston Globe*, June 11, 2002, third edition, LexisNexis Academic.

3. *Encyclopedia of Animals*, s.v. "emperor penguin," accessed June 21, 2008, EBSCO Animals (9500100510).

4. William Maiben, "A Tombeau for John Lennon, 1940–1980," *Perspectives of New Music* 19, nos. 1/2 (Autumn 1980–Summer 1981): 533, http://www.jstor.org/stable/832614.

Howard, David H. "Hospital Quality and Selective Contracting: Evidence from Kidney Transplantation." *Forum for Health Economics and Policy* 11, no. 2 (2008). PubMed Central (PMC2600561).

14.272 ***Scientific databases.*** In the sciences especially, it has become customary to cite databases by listing, at a minimum, the name of the database, a descriptive phrase or record locator (such as a data marker or accession number) indicating the part of the database being cited or explaining the nature of the reference, an access date, and a URL. In bibliographies, list under the name of the database.

1. NASA/IPAC Extragalactic Database (object name IRAS F00400+4059; accessed October 6, 2009), http://nedwww.ipac.caltech.edu/.

2. GenBank (for RP11-322N14 BAC [accession number AC017046]; accessed October 6, 2009), http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Genbank/.

GenBank (for RP11-322N14 BAC [accession number AC017046]; accessed October 6, 2009). http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Genbank/.

NASA/IPAC Extragalactic Database (object name IRAS F00400+4059; accessed October 6, 2009). http://nedwww.ipac.caltech.edu/.

Citations Taken from Secondary Sources

14.273 ***Citations taken from secondary sources.*** To cite a source from a secondary source ("quoted in . . .") is generally to be discouraged, since authors are expected to have examined the works they cite. If an original source is unavailable, however, both the original and the secondary source must be listed.

1. Louis Zukofsky, "Sincerity and Objectification," *Poetry* 37 (February 1931): 269, quoted in Bonnie Costello, *Marianne Moore: Imaginary Possessions* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1981), 78.

Audiovisual Materials

14.274 ***Audiovisual materials—elements to include.*** Documentation of a recording usually includes some or all of the following pieces of information: the name of the composer, writer, performer, or other person primarily responsible for the content; the title, in italics or quotation marks, as applicable (see 8.192); the name of the recording company or publisher;

any identifying number of the recording; indication of medium (compact disc, audiocassette, audiovisual file, etc.); and the copyright date or date of production or performance. Recordings consulted online should include a URL or DOI (see 14.5, 14.6). Supplementary information, such as the number of discs in an album and the duration of the recording, as applicable, may also be given.

14.275 *Discographies.* Discographies are specialized bibliographies that list audiovisual materials such as audio recordings, video recordings, and multimedia packages. For advice on discographies, consult Suzanne E. Thorin and Carole Franklin Vidali, *The Acquisition and Cataloging of Music and Sound Recordings* (bibliog. 5). For an example, see figure 14.12.

Sound Recordings

14.276 *Musical recordings.* For the typographic treatment of musical compositions in running text, see 8.188–92. Those guidelines, however, do not necessarily apply to recordings when listed in a discography (see fig. 14.12), bibliography, or note. *Symphony* or *sonata*, for example, is capitalized when part of the title of a recording. If the conductor or performer is the focus of the recording or is more relevant to the discussion than the composer, either one may be listed first. For the date, include the date of the recording, the copyright date or published date included with the recording, or both. If a date cannot be determined from the recording (a common problem with some LPs and other older media), consult a library catalog or other resource; citations without a date are generally unacceptable. If no date can be found, use "n.d." (for *no date*).

1. *The Fireside Treasury of Folk Songs*, vol. 1, orchestra and chorus dir. Mitch Miller, Golden Record A198:17A–B, 1958, 33⅓ rpm.

2. New York Trumpet Ensemble, with Edward Carroll (trumpet) and Edward Brewer (organ), *Art of the Trumpet*, recorded at the Madeira Festival, June 1–2, 1981, Vox/Turnabout, PVT 7183, 1982, compact disc.

3. Richard Strauss, *Don Quixote*, with Emanuel Feuermann (violoncello) and the Philadelphia Orchestra, conducted by Eugene Ormandy, recorded February 24, 1940, Biddulph LAB 042, 1991, compact disc.

4. Billie Holiday, vocal performance of "I'm a Fool to Want You," by Joel Herron, Frank Sinatra, and Jack Wolf, recorded February 20, 1958, with Ray Ellis, on *Lady in Satin*, Columbia CL 1157, 33⅓ rpm.

Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus. *Don Giovanni*. Orchestra and Chorus of the Royal Opera House, Covent Garden. Sir Colin Davis. With Ingvar Wixell, Luigi Roni,

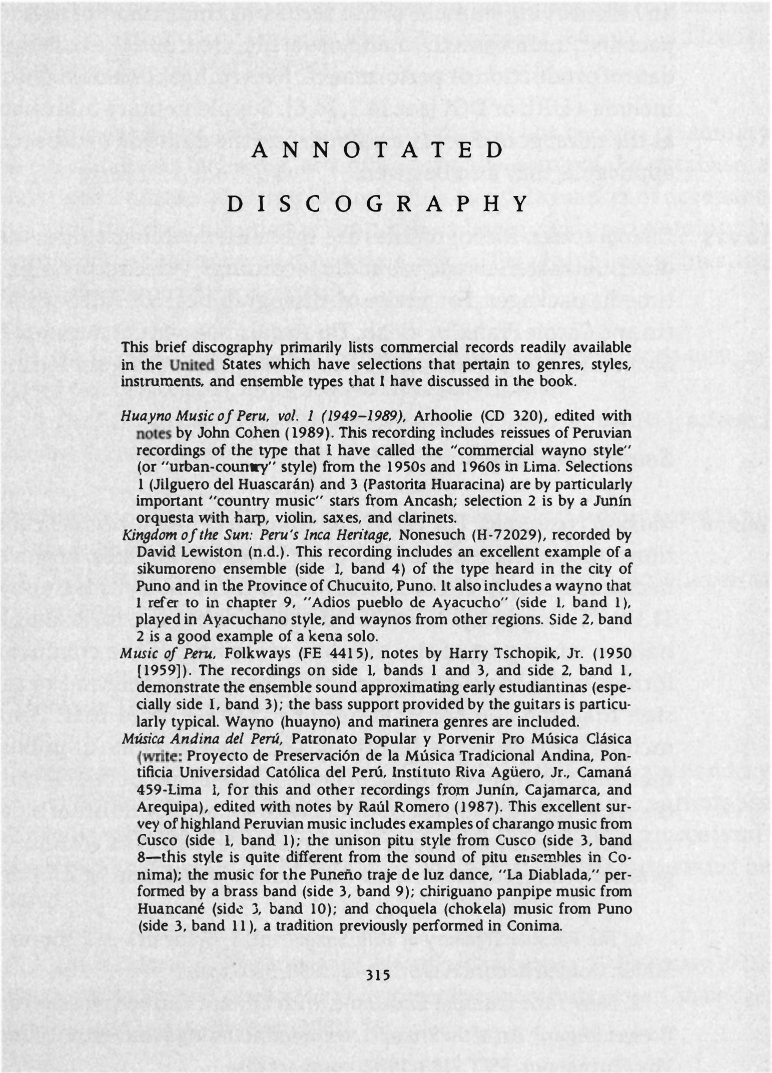

ANNOTATED DISCOGRAPHY

This brief discography primarily lists commercial records readily available in the United States which have selections that pertain to genres, styles, instruments, and ensemble types that I have discussed in the book.

Huayno Music of Peru, vol. 1 (1949–1989), Arhoolie (CD 320), edited with notes by John Cohen (1989). This recording includes reissues of Peruvian recordings of the type that I have called the "commercial wayno style" (or "urban-country" style) from the 1950s and 1960s in Lima. Selections 1 (Jilguero del Huascarán) and 3 (Pastorita Huaracina) are by particularly important "country music" stars from Ancash; selection 2 is by a Junín orquesta with harp, violin, saxes, and clarinets.

Kingdom of the Sun: Peru's Inca Heritage, Nonesuch (H-72029), recorded by David Lewiston (n.d.). This recording includes an excellent example of a sikumoreno ensemble (side 1, band 4) of the type heard in the city of Puno and in the Province of Chucuito, Puno. It also includes a wayno that I refer to in chapter 9, "Adios pueblo de Ayacucho" (side 1, band 1), played in Ayacuchano style, and waynos from other regions. Side 2, band 2 is a good example of a kena solo.

Music of Peru, Folkways (FE 4415), notes by Harry Tschopik, Jr. (1950 [1959]). The recordings on side 1, bands 1 and 3, and side 2, band 1, demonstrate the ensemble sound approximating early estudiantinas (especially side 1, band 3); the bass support provided by the guitars is particularly typical. Wayno (huayno) and marinera genres are included.

Música Andina del Perú, Patronato Popular y Porvenir Pro Música Clásica (write: Proyecto de Preservación de la Música Tradicional Andina, Pontificia Universidad Católica del Perú, Instituto Riva Agüero, Jr., Camaná 459-Lima 1, for this and other recordings from Junín, Cajamarca, and Arequipa), edited with notes by Raúl Romero (1987). This excellent survey of highland Peruvian music includes examples of charango music from Cusco (side 1, band 1); the unison pitu style from Cusco (side 3, band 8—this style is quite different from the sound of pitu ensembles in Conima); the music for the Puneño traje de luz dance, "La Diablada," performed by a brass band (side 3, band 9); chiriguano panpipe music from Huancané (side 3, band 10); and choquela (chokela) music from Puno (side 3, band 11), a tradition previously performed in Conima.

315

FIGURE 14.12. The first page of a discography. See 14.275.

Martina Arroyo, Stuart Burrows, Kiri Te Kanawa, et al. Recorded May 1973. Philips 422 541-2, 1991, 3 compact discs.

Pink Floyd. *Atom Heart Mother*. Capitol CDP 7 46381 2, 1990, compact disc. Originally released in 1970.

Rubinstein, Artur. *The Chopin Collection*. RCA Victor/BMG 60822-2-RG, 1991, 11 compact discs. Recorded 1946, 1958–67.

Weingartner, Felix von (conductor). *150 Jahre Wiener Philharmoniker*. Preiser Records, PR90113 (mono), 1992, compact disc. Recorded in 1936. Includes Beethoven's Symphony no. 3 in E-flat Major and Symphony no. 8 in F Major.

Recordings are usually listed in a separate discography (see fig. 14.12) rather than in a bibliography. If included in a bibliography, they are best grouped under an appropriate subhead (see 14.58).

14.277 ***Recordings of literature, lectures, and such.*** Recordings of drama, prose or poetry readings, lectures, and the like are treated much the same as musical recordings. Facts of publication, where needed, follow the style for print media. For electronic sources, include information about the medium; online sources should include a URL or similar identifier (see 14.4–13). See also 14.280.

1. Dylan Thomas, *Under Milk Wood*, performed by Dylan Thomas et al., Caedmon TC-2005, 1953, 33⅓ rpm, 2 LPs.

2. Harry S. Truman, "First Speech to Congress," April 16, 1945, transcript and Adobe Flash audio, 18:13, Miller Center of Public Affairs, University of Virginia, http://millercenter.org/scripps/archive/speeches/detail/3339.

3. Calvin Coolidge, "Equal Rights" (speech), copy of an undated 78 rpm disc, ca. 1920, Library of Congress, "American Leaders Speak: Recordings from World War I and the 1920 Election, 1918–1920," RealAudio and WAV formats, http://memory.loc.gov/ammem/nfhtml/nforSpeakers01.html.

4. Eleanor Roosevelt, "Is America Facing World Leadership?," convocation speech, Ball State Teacher's College, May 6, 1959, radio broadcast, Windows Media Audio, 47:46, http://libx.bsu.edu/cdm4/item_viewer.php?CISOROOT=/ElRoos&CISOPTR=0&CISOBOX=1&REC=2.

Auden, W. H. *Selected Poems*. Read by the author. Spoken Arts 7137, 1991. Audiocassette.

Schlosser, Eric. *Fast Food Nation: The Dark Side of the All-American Meal*. Read by Rick Adamson. New York: Random House Audible, 2004. Audiobook, 8 compact discs; 9 hrs.

Video Recordings

14.278 ***Slides and filmstrips.*** Citations of slides and filmstrips should indicate creator (if credited), title, publisher, date, and information about the medium.

1. Louis J. Mihalyi, *Landscapes of Zambia, Central Africa* (Santa Barbara, CA: Visual Education, 1975), 35 mm slides, 40 frames.

The Greek and Roman World. Chicago: Society for Visual Education, 1977. Filmstrip, 44 min.

14.279 *DVDs and videocassettes.* Citations of video recordings, like citations of sound recordings, will vary according to the nature of the material. Any facts relevant to identifying the item should be included. Indexed scenes are treated as chapters and cited by title or by number. Ancillary material, such as critical commentary, is cited by author and title. Note that in the *Monty Python* example, the citation is of material original to the 2001 edition, so the original release date of the film (1975) is omitted.

7. Michael Curtis and Gregory S. Malins, "The One with the Princess Leia Fantasy," *Friends*, season 3, episode 1, directed by Gail Mancuso, aired September 19, 1996 (Burbank, CA: Warner Home Video, 2003), DVD.

8. "Crop Duster Attack," *North by Northwest*, directed by Alfred Hitchcock (1959; Burbank, CA: Warner Home Video, 2000), DVD.

Cleese, John, Terry Gilliam, Eric Idle, Terry Jones, and Michael Palin. "Commentaries." Disc 2. *Monty Python and the Holy Grail*, special ed. DVD. Directed by Terry Gilliam and Terry Jones. Culver City, CA: Columbia Tristar Home Entertainment, 2001.

Handel, George Frideric. *Messiah*. Atlanta Symphony Orchestra and Chamber Chorus, Robert Shaw. Performed December 19, 1987. Ansonia Station, NY: Video Artists International, 1988. Videocassette (VHS), 141 min.

14.280 *Online multimedia.* Citations of online multimedia must thoroughly identify the material cited by incorporating the elements discussed and exemplified throughout this section; it is never enough simply to cite an electronic file name or URL, though this information should be included as well. If no date can be determined from the source, include the date the material was last accessed. (See also 14.4–13.) If the material is a recording of a speech or other performance, or if it is a digital version of a published source, include information about the original performance or source. Whether to list information about the original or the digitized copy first will depend on the information available and is usually up to the author. Include an indication of the source type (e.g., "video") and length. Note the idiosyncratic capitalization and spacing in the second example, preserved as an aid to identifying the source; this approach, if used at all, should be reserved for sources that have no ties to any publishing body (and any outright errors should be indicated in the text or note; see also 13.59). See also 14.277, 14.198. For an example of a podcast, see 14.221.

1. A. E. Weed, *At the Foot of the Flatiron* (American Mutoscope and Biograph Co., 1903), 35 mm film, from Library of Congress, *The Life of a City: Early Films of New York, 1898–1906*, MPEG video, 2:19, http://lcweb2.loc.gov/ammem/papr/nychome.html.

2. "HOROWITZ AT CARNEGIE HALL 2-Chopin Nocturne in Fm Op.55," YouTube video, 5:53, from a performance televised by CBS on September 22, 1968, posted by "hubanj," January 9, 2009, http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=cDVBtuWkMS8.

Harwood, John. "The Pros and Cons of Biden." *New York Times* video, 2:00. August 23, 2008. http://video.on.nytimes.com/?fr_story=a425c9aca92f51bd19f2a621fd93b5e266507191.

Pollan, Michael. "Michael Pollan Gives a Plant's-Eye View." Filmed March 2007. TED video, 17:31. Posted February 2008. http://www.ted.com/index.php/talks/michael_pollan_gives_a_plant_s_eye_view.html.

Legal and Public Documents

14.281 ***Recommended stylebooks.*** Citations in predominantly legal works generally follow one of two guides: (1) *The Bluebook: A Uniform System of Citation*, published by the Harvard Law Review Association and available online (with a subscription); or (2) the *ALWD Citation Manual: A Professional System of Citation*, prepared and published by the Association of Legal Writing Directors and Darby Dickerson (see bibliog. 1.1). For Canada, see 14.305. *The Bluebook* is the most widely used citation guide; its conventions predominate in law reviews. The *ALWD Citation Manual* differs in some elements and aims to be somewhat simpler. Chicago recommends using one of these systems for citing legal and public documents—including cases, constitutions, statutes, and other government documents—even in works with a predominantly nonlegal subject matter. This departure from Chicago's previous recommendations recognizes the ubiquity of these systems in legal publications, commercial databases, and government archives. Any editor working extensively with legal and public documents should have one of these manuals on hand. Most of the examples of legal-style citations in this section are based on *The Bluebook* (exceptions are made for secondary sources and certain unpublished government documents; see 14.303, 14.304, 14.308, 14.315).

14.282 *Legal and public documents online.* *The Bluebook* includes specific recommendations for citing electronic sources. In general, however, for citations to cases, constitutions and statutes, and other such materials, print sources are preferred. Sources consulted through commercial databases such as Westlaw or LexisNexis may also be cited; these are treated like print sources but with the addition of the database name and any identification number (or, in the case of constitutions and statutes, information about the currency of the database). For examples, see 14.288. *The Bluebook* also provides advice for citing Internet sources, including documents available from government archives outside the United States. In general, such citations should follow the format for printed sources with the addition of a URL. Access dates ("last visited" in *Bluebook* parlance) are recommended only for undated documents. This advice is similar to Chicago's recommendations (see 14.4–13). For examples, see 14.317. Authors who need to cite more than a few electronic sources in *Bluebook* style should consult that manual. For documents in a national archive, any citations to electronic versions should generally be limited to those made available by the archive itself or through a commercial database.

14.283 *Note form for legal-style citations.* Almost all legal works use notes for documentation and few use bibliographies. The examples in this section, based on the recommendations in *The Bluebook*, are accordingly given in note form only. Any work so cited need not be listed in a bibliography. Works using the author-date style (chapter 15) and citing only a handful of legal and public documents may limit those citations to the text, using citation sentences and clauses that include the same information as footnotes, as suggested in *The Bluebook*; those with more than a very few legal-style citations, however, may need to supplement the author-date system with footnotes or endnotes. See 15.54–55.

14.284 *Typefaces in legal-style citations.* In *Bluebook* style, italics are used for titles of articles and chapters (a major difference from nonlegal usage), uncommon words or phrases in languages other than English (but not such well-known terms as *de facto* or *habeas corpus*), certain introductory signals indicating a cross-reference (such as *See*), subsequent case history (such as *cert. denied*; see 14.290), and procedural phrases (such as *In re*). Italics are also used for case names mentioned in running text. All other material, including case names in citations (but see 14.288), is presented in roman. In formal *Bluebook* style, caps and small caps are used for the titles of books and their authors and for the names of periodicals and newspapers. The examples in this section use a simpler style advocated by some law reviews, substituting upper- and lowercase roman type for caps and small caps. It should be noted that the examples in this section are limited to legal and public documents. Though *Bluebook*-style citations to books, articles, and other types of secondary sources may be appropriate in works with predominantly legal subject matter, these are not covered here (but see 14.303).

14.285 ***Page numbers and other locators in legal-style citations.*** In *Bluebook* style, for most authorities the first page number is cited, following the name of the authority (usually abbreviated) and usually with no intervening punctuation; references to specific page numbers follow the first page number, separated by a comma. Some authorities are cited by section (§) or paragraph (¶) number; references to specific pages within such sections follow a comma and are preceded by *at*.

14.286 ***Abbreviations in legal-style citations.*** Most abbreviations in *The Bluebook* use periods or apostrophes. In citations (but not in running text), *Bluebook* style uses *2d* and *3d* rather than *2nd* and *3rd* and capitalizes abbreviations like *No.* and *Sess.* Works that otherwise follow Chicago style—which differs on some of these points (see, e.g., 10.4)—should, for legal citations, follow the style of the examples in this section, which illustrate *Bluebook* style. The following example cites a decision by the United States Court of Appeals for the Seventh Circuit, reported in volume 206 of the *Federal Reporter*, third series, beginning on page 752, with the citation specifically referring to footnote 1 on that page. For more abbreviations, consult *The Bluebook*.

1. NLRB v. Somerville Constr. Co., 206 F.3d 752, 752 n.1 (7th Cir. 2000).

It should be noted that in running text, most terms should be spelled out—including terms such as *chapter*, *part*, *article*, *section*, *paragraph*, and so forth (but, in case names, not *v.* or common abbreviations such as *Co.* and *Inc.*). See also 8.79, 8.81.

14.287 ***Short forms for legal-style citations.*** *The Bluebook* allows certain short forms for subsequent citations to the same source. In general, it limits this use to those items that have been cited within the previous five notes. Short forms include case names reduced to the name of only one party (usually the plaintiff or the nongovernmental party); statutes and legislative documents identified only by name or document and section numbers; treaties identified only by name (or sometimes a short form thereof); and the use of *id.* (in italics). Cases are the most readily shortened forms; examples are included in the section that treats them (14.288–91). Works that cite only a few legal documents may be better off using the full form for each citation. See also 14.24–31.

Cases and Court Decisions

14.288 *Cases or court decisions—basic elements.* Case names, including the abbreviation *v.*, are set roman in notes; short forms in subsequent citations are italicized (as are case names mentioned in running text). Full citations include volume number (arabic), abbreviated name of the reporter, the ordinal series number of the reporter (if applicable), the abbreviated name of the court (if not specified by the reporter) and the date together in parentheses, and other relevant information (see 14.291). A single page number designates the opening page of a decision; an additional number designates an actual page cited. In a shortened citation, *at* is used to cite a particular page (example 18); absence of *at* implies reference to the decision as a whole (example 19). See also 14.287.

16. United States v. Christmas, 222 F.3d 141, 145 (4th Cir. 2000).
17. Profit Sharing Plan v. Mbank Dallas, N.A., 683 F. Supp. 592 (N.D. Tex. 1988).
18. *Christmas*, 222 F.3d at 145.
19. *Profit Sharing Plan*, 683 F. Supp. 592.

When a commercial electronic database is cited, include the docket number, name of the database, and any identifying date and number supplied by the database. References to page or screen numbers are preceded by an asterisk. Short forms may include only the database identifier. See also 14.282.

20. McNamee v. Dep't of the Treasury, No. 05-6151-CV, 2007 U.S. App. LEXIS 12016 (2d Cir. May 23, 2007).
21. Horn v. Pub. Water Supply Dist. No. 8, No. WD 63889, 2005 WL 119835 (Mo. Ct. App. Jan. 21, 2005).
22. *McNamee*, 2007 U.S. App. LEXIS 12016, at *5.
23. *Horn*, 2005 WL 119835, at *3.

14.289 *United States Supreme Court decisions.* All Supreme Court decisions are published in the *United States Supreme Court Reports* (abbreviated U.S.) and are preferably cited to that reporter. Cases not yet published therein may be cited to the *Supreme Court Reporter* (S. Ct.), which publishes decisions more quickly. Because the court's name is identified by the reporter, it is not repeated before the date.

24. AT&T Corp. v. Iowa Utils. Bd., 525 U.S. 366 (1999).

25. Brendlin v. California, 127 S. Ct. 2400 (2007).

26. *AT&T*, 525 U.S. at 366–67.

14.290 ***Lower federal-court decisions.*** Lower federal-court decisions are usually cited to the *Federal Reporter* (F.) or to the *Federal Supplement* (F. Supp.). If relevant, the Supreme Court's grant or denial of certiorari may be indicated.

27. United States v. Dennis, 183 F. 201 (2d Cir. 1950).

28. City of Las Vegas v. Walsh, 124 P.3d 203 (Nev. 2005), *cert. denied*, 547 U.S. 1071 (2006).

29. Eaton v. IBM Corp., 925 F. Supp. 487 (S.D. Tex. 1996).

30. *Dennis*, 183 F. at 202.

31. *Walsh*, 124 P.3d at 215.

14.291 ***State- and local-court decisions.*** Decisions of state and local courts are cited much like federal-court decisions. If both the official and the commercial reporters are cited, they are separated by a comma. If the court's name is identified unambiguously by the reporter, it is not repeated before the date. If a case was decided in a lower court, the abbreviated court name appears before the date. Note that a space is used after a two- or three-letter abbreviated reporter name—"Cal. 2d" (*California Reports*, second series)—but not after initialisms like "A." or "N.Y.S." in "A.2d" (*Atlantic Reporter*) or "N.Y.S.2d" (*New York Supplement*).

32. Williams v. Davis, 27 Cal. 2d 746 (1946).

33. *Id.* at 747.

34. Henningsen v. Bloomfield Motors, Inc., 32 N.J. 358, 161 A.2d 69 (1960).

35. Stambovsky v. Ackley, 572 N.Y.S.2d 672 (App. Div. 2007).

36. *Williams*, 27 Cal. 2d 746.

Constitutions

14.292 ***Constitutions.*** In citations to constitutions, the article and amendment numbers appear in roman numerals; other subdivision numbers are in arabic. (For nonlegal style see 9.29.) In *Bluebook* style the name of the constitution is capitalized; other abbreviations are lowercased.

37. U.S. Const. art. I, § 4, cl. 2.

38. U.S. Const. amend. XIV, § 2.

39. Ariz. Const. art. VII, § 5.
40. Ark. Const. of 1868, art. III, § 2 (superseded 1874).

Legislative and Executive Documents

14.293 *Legislative documents—abbreviations.* Abbreviations for United States legislative documents include "Cong." (Congress), "H." (House), "S." (Senate), and other standard abbreviations for such terms as document, session, resolution, and so forth. Unless it is not clear from the context, "U.S." may be omitted. For lists of abbreviations and many examples, consult *The Bluebook*. See also 14.286.

14.294 *Laws and statutes.* Bills or joint resolutions that have been signed into law—"public laws," or statutes—are first published separately, as slip laws, and then collected in the annual bound volumes of the *United States Statutes at Large* (abbreviated in legal style as Stat.), where they are referred to as session laws. Later they are incorporated into the *United States Code* (U.S.C.).

17. Homeland Security Act of 2002, Pub. L. No. 107-296, 116 Stat. 2135 (2002).
18. Homeland Security Act of 2002, 6 U.S.C. § 101 (2002).

14.295 *Bills and resolutions.* Congressional bills (proposed laws) and resolutions are published in pamphlet form (slip bills). In citations, bills or resolutions originating in the House of Representatives are abbreviated "H.R." or "H.R. Res.," and those originating in the Senate, "S." or "S. Res." The title of the bill (if there is one) is followed by the bill number, the congressional session, a section number (if relevant), and the year of publication in parentheses. Authors wishing to cite a bill that has since been enacted should cite it as a statute (see 14.294).

16. Homeland Security Act of 2002, H.R. 5005, 107th Cong. (2002).

14.296 *Hearings.* Records of testimony given before congressional committees are usually published with titles, which should be cited in full and set in italics. The relevant committee should be listed as part of the title. Note that *Before*—which Chicago would normally lowercase in a title (see 8.157)—is capitalized according to *Bluebook* style, which capitalizes prepositions of more than four letters. Include the number of the Congress, the page number cited (if any), the date in parentheses, and the speaker's name, title, and affiliation in parentheses. Note that *The Bluebook* does not require a session number for citations to *House Reports* published as of the 60th Congress, where an odd-numbered year indicates a first session and an even year a second session.

11. *Homeland Security Act of 2002: Hearings on H.R. 5005, Day 3, Before the Select Comm. on Homeland Security,* 107th Cong. 203 (2002) (statement of David Walker, Comptroller General of the United States).

14.297 ***Congressional reports and documents.*** In *Bluebook* style, numbered reports and documents are cited by the number of Congress, which is joined to the document number by a hyphen. House and Senate reports are abbreviated "H.R. Rep." or "S. Rep."; documents are cited to "H.R. Doc." or "S. Doc." A specific page reference, if needed, is added following *at*. The year of the report or document is placed in parentheses. Additional information (e.g., to indicate a conference report) follows the year, in parentheses. If not mentioned in text, a title and author (if any) may be included in the citation.

8. Select Comm. on Homeland Security, Homeland Security Act of 2002, H.R. Rep. No. 107-609, pt. 1 (2002).
9. H.R. Rep. No. 106-661, at 9 (2000) (Conf. Rep.).
10. S. Doc. No. 77-148, at 2–5 (1941).

14.298 ***Congressional debates since 1873.*** Since 1873, congressional debates have been published by the government in the *Congressional Record*. Daily issues are bound in paper biweekly and in permanent volumes (divided into parts) yearly. Since material may be added, deleted, or modified when the final volumes are prepared, pagination will vary between the different editions. Whenever possible, citation should be made to the permanent volumes. Note that, following *Bluebook* style, italics are not used for the name of the publication. The page number (preceded by "H" or "S," for House or Senate, in the daily edition) is followed by the date, which is placed in parentheses. If the identity of a speaker is necessary, include it in parentheses.

16. 147 Cong. Rec. 19,000 (2001).
17. 148 Cong. Rec. S10,491 (daily ed. Oct. 16, 2002) (statement of Sen. Dodd).

14.299 ***Records of congressional debates before 1873.*** Until 1873, congressional debates were privately printed in *Annals of the Congress of the United States* (covering the years 1789–1824; also known by other names), *Register of Debates* (1824–37), and *Congressional Globe* (1833–73). In citing the date, refer to the year covered rather than the date of publication. Note that the *Globe* is normally cited by session, whereas the *Annals* and *Debates* are cited by volume number. As with citations to the *Congressional Record*, the titles are abbreviated and not italicized.

5. Cong. Globe, 39th Cong., 2d Sess. 39 (1866).
6. 42 Annals of Cong. 1697 (1824).
7. 3 Reg. Deb. 388 (1827).

14.300 ***State laws and municipal ordinances.*** The titles of state codes (compilations) for laws and municipal ordinances are set in roman type. A name is included in parentheses where necessary to indicate the version of a code cited. The date following a code (or the version of a code) indicates the year the volume was updated or supplemented to include the law being cited. Form of citation will vary by state. The date a specific law was passed may be included in parentheses at the end of the citation. For an exhaustive treatment of state-by-state variations, consult *The Bluebook*.

41. Ohio Rev. Code Ann. § 3566 (West 2000).

42. An Act Guaranteeing Governmental Independence, Ky. Rev. Stat. Ann. § 520.020 (LexisNexis 1985) (passed Jan. 3, 1974).

14.301 ***Presidential documents.*** Presidential proclamations, executive orders, vetoes, addresses, and the like are published in the *Weekly Compilation of Presidential Documents* (Weekly Comp. Pres. Doc.) and in the *Public Papers of the Presidents of the United States* (Pub. Papers). Proclamations and executive orders are also carried in the daily *Federal Register* (Fed. Reg.) and then published in title 3 of the *Code of Federal Regulations* (C.F.R.).

25. Proclamation No. 8214, 73 Fed. Reg. 1439 (Jan. 8, 2008).
26. Exec. Order No. 11,609, 3 C.F.R. 586 (1971–75).

Some executive orders and proclamations become part of the *United States Code* and are best so cited. For more examples, consult *The Bluebook*.

14.302 ***Treaties.*** The texts of treaties signed before 1950 are published in *United States Statutes at Large*; the unofficial citation is to the *Treaty Series* (T.S.) or the *Executive Agreement Series* (E.A.S.), each of which assigns a number to a treaty covered. Those signed in 1950 and later appear in *United States Treaties and Other International Agreements* (U.S.T., 1950–), or *Treaties and Other International Acts Series* (T.I.A.S., 1945–), which also assigns a number. Treaties involving more than two nations may be found in the *United Nations Treaty Series* (U.N.T.S., 1946–) or, from 1920 to 1946, in the *League of Nations Treaty Series* (L.N.T.S., 1920–46). These and other sources are listed in *The Bluebook*. Titles of treaties are set in roman and capitalized headline-style (recall that *The Bluebook* capitalizes prepositions of more than four letters). An exact date indicates the date of signing and is therefore preferable to a year alone, which may differ from the year the treaty was published in one of the works above. Page numbers are given where relevant.

34. Treaty Banning Nuclear Weapon Tests in the Atmosphere, in Outer Space and Under Water, U.S.-U.K.-U.S.S.R., Aug. 5, 1963, 14 U.S.T. 1313.

35. Convention Concerning Military Service, Den.-Italy, July 15, 1954, 250 T.I.A.S. 3516, at 45.

14.303 ***Secondary sources and freestanding publications.*** For the generalist citing legal and public documents that appear in secondary sources or as freestanding publications, *Bluebook* style should generally *not* be followed. Moreover, any source that is analogous to a secondary source—including not just books or articles but also pamphlets and other titled publications—can be cited by title and author (if any) rather than in an abbreviated form. The following examples are not meant to be exhaustive. Those who are required to follow *Bluebook* style should consult that manual, whose recommendations differ.

1. *Journals of the Continental Congress, 1774–1789*, ed. Worthington C. Ford et al. (Washington, DC, 1904–37), 15:1341.

2. *JCC* 25:863.

3. *House Miscellaneous Document no. 210, 53d Cong., 2d sess., in Compilation of the Messages and Papers of the Presidents, 1789–1897*, ed. J. D. Richardson (Washington, DC: Government Printing Office, 1907), 4:16.

4. *Public Papers of the Presidents of the United States: Herbert Hoover, 1929–1933*, 4 vols. (Washington, DC: Government Printing Office, 1974–77), 1:134.

5. *Median Gross Rent by Counties of the United States, 1970*, prepared by the Geography Division in cooperation with the Housing Division, Bureau of the Census (Washington, DC, 1975).

6. US Department of the Treasury, *Report of the Secretary of the Treasury Transmitting a Report from the Register of the Treasury of the Commerce and Navigation of the United States for the Year Ending the 30th of June, 1850*, 31st Cong., 2d sess., House Executive Document 8 (Washington, DC, 1850–51).

7. Ralph I. Straus, *Expanding Private Investment for Free World Economic Growth*, special report prepared at the request of the Department of State, April 1959, 12.

8. Illinois General Assembly, Law Revision Commission, *Report to the 80th General Assembly of the State of Illinois* (Chicago, 1977), 14–18.

Unlike most of the legal-style citations discussed elsewhere in this section, public documents published in secondary sources or as freestanding works may be suitable for inclusion in a bibliography.

Continental Congress. *Journals of the Continental Congress, 1774–1789.* Edited by Worthington C. Ford et al. 34 vols. Washington, DC, 1904–37.

14.304 ***Unpublished government documents.*** For general guidelines and many examples that can be adapted to government documents, see 14.232–42. Most unpublished documents of the United States government are housed in the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA) in Washington, DC, or in one of its branches. All, including films, photographs, and sound recordings as well as written materials, are cited by record group (RG) number. A list of the record groups and their numbers is given in the *Guide to the National Archives of the United States*, augmented by the leaflet *Citing Records in the National Archives of the United States* (available at the National Archives website), which includes advice on citing its electronic records (see bibliog. 4.5). Names of specific documents are given in quotation marks.

40. Senate Committee on the Judiciary, "Lobbying," file 71A-F15, RG 46, National Archives.

41. National Archives Branch Depository, Suitland, MD, Records of the National Commission on Law Observance and Enforcement, RG 10.

Canada

14.305 ***Canadian reference works.*** The major reference work for citing Canadian public documents and legal cases in a Canadian context is the *Canadian Guide to Uniform Legal Citation*, edited and published (in English and French) by the Carswell / McGill Law Journal (see bibliog. 1.1). Also valuable are Douglass T. MacEllven, Michael J. McGuire, Neil A. Campbell, and John N. Davis, *Legal Research Handbook*, 5th edition (bibliog. 5); *Canadian Almanac and Directory* (bibliog. 4.4); and Gerald L. Gall, F. Pearl Eliadis, and France Allard, *The Canadian Legal System*, 5th edition (bibliog. 5). Authors citing more than a few Canadian authorities should consult one of these works. Additional resources may be found online through LexUM, a service provided through the University of Montreal. For citing the occasional example in a US context, *The Bluebook* (see 14.281) provides some recommendations and examples.

14.306 ***Canadian legal cases.*** The following examples illustrate *Bluebook* style. The basic elements are similar to those used in US law citations; the date is enclosed in square brackets, followed by the volume number if pertinent, the abbreviated name of the reporter, and the page number. Canadian Supreme Court cases since 1876 are cited to *Supreme Court Reports* (S.C.R.); cases after 1974 should include the volume number of the reporter. Federal court cases are cited to *Federal Courts Reports* (F.C., 1971–) or *Exchequer Court Reports* (Ex. C.R., 1875–1971). Cases not found in any of these sources are cited to *Dominion Law Reports* (D.L.R.). Add "Can." in parentheses if it is not clear from the context or the citation.

10. Robertson v. Thomson Corp., [2006] 2 S.C.R. 363 (Can.).
11. Boldy v. Royal Bank of Canada, [2008] F.C. 99.

14.307 ***Canadian statutes.*** Federal statutes appear in the *Revised Statutes of Canada* (R.S.C.), a consolidation that is published every fifteen or twenty years; in the interim they are cited as session laws in the annual *Statutes of Canada* (S.C.). Citation elements are similar to US statutes: the name of the act, the abbreviated name of the compilation, chapter number (in *R.S.C.*, the chapter number includes the initial letter of the name of the act), section number if applicable, and publication date. Add "Can." in parentheses if it is not clear from the context or the citation.

12. Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act, R.S.C., ch. C-36, s. 5 (1985) (Can.).
13. Canada Elections Act, 2000 S.C., ch. 9.

14.308 ***Unpublished Canadian government documents.*** The Library and Archives Canada (LAC) houses the unpublished records of the federal government, both individually written and institutional, as well as historically significant documents from the private sector. The guide to the entire LAC collections is available online, as are the archives for each province and territory. For citing unpublished materials, see the guidelines and examples in 14.232–42.

United Kingdom

14.309 ***UK reference works.*** The catalogs of the National Archives (the official archive for England, Wales, and the central UK government), available online, extend to the documents of the former Public Record Office, the Historical Manuscripts Commission, the Office of Public Sector Information, and Her Majesty's Stationery Office (HMSO), among others. The UK

Parliament also makes its catalogs available online. Printed guides include the *Guide to the Contents of the Public Record Office*; Frank Rodgers, *A Guide to British Government Publications*; and John E. Pemberton, ed., *The Bibliographic Control of Official Publications* (all in bibliog. 4.5). For citing UK legal and public documents in a US context, *The Bluebook* (see 14.281) provides an overview.

14.310 ***UK legal cases.*** In *Bluebook* style, the basic elements in citations to UK legal cases are similar to those used in US law citations: the name of the case, in roman (cases involving the Crown use the abbreviation "R" for Rex or Regina); the date, which is enclosed in parentheses when the volumes of the reporter are numbered cumulatively, or in square brackets when the year is essential to locating the case (there is either no volume number or the volumes for each year are numbered anew, not cumulatively); the abbreviated name of the reporter; and the opening page of the decision. If the court is not apparent from the name of the reporter, or if the jurisdiction is not clear from context, include either or both, as necessary, in parentheses. Until recently, the courts of highest appeal in the United Kingdom (except for criminal cases in Scotland) had been the House of Lords (H.L.) and the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council (P.C.). In 2005, the Supreme Court of the United Kingdom was established. In 2009 it assumed the jurisdiction of the Appellate Committee of the House of Lords and the devolution jurisdiction of the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council. Most cases are cited to the applicable report in the *Law Reports*, among these the Appeal Cases (A.C.), Queen's (King's) Bench (Q.B., K.B.), Chancery (Ch.), Family (Fam.), and Probate (P.) reports. For other reports applicable to cases dating back to AD 1094, consult *The Bluebook*.

10. R v. Dudley and Stephens, (1884) 14 Q.B.D. 273 (D.C.).
11. Regal (Hastings) Ltd. v. Gulliver and Ors, [1967] 2 A.C. 134 (H.L.) (Eng.).

14.311 ***UK parliamentary publications.*** Parliamentary publications include all materials issued by both houses of Parliament, the House of Commons (H.C.) and the House of Lords (H.L.): journals of both houses (sometimes abbreviated *CJ* and *LJ*); votes and proceedings; debates; bills, reports, and papers; and statutes.

14.312 ***UK statutes.*** More often cited in notes than in bibliographies, the Acts of Parliament are identified by title (in roman), year (also include the regnal year for statutes enacted before 1963), and chapter number (c. for chapter; arabic numeral for national number, lowercase roman for local). Monarchs' names in regnal-year citations are abbreviated as follows: Car. (Charles), Edw., Eliz., Geo., Hen., Jac. (James), Phil. & M., Rich., Vict., Will., W. & M. The year precedes the name; the monarch's ordinal, if any, follows it (15 Geo. 6), both in arabic numerals. An ampersand is used between regnal years and between names of dual monarchs (1 & 2 W. & M.). *The Bluebook* advises including the jurisdiction if it is not clear from the context or the citation (example 8).

7. Act of Settlement, 1701, 12 & 13 Will. 3, c. 2.
8. Consolidated Fund Act, 1963, c. 1 (Eng.).
9. Manchester Corporation Act, 1967, c. xl.

The three chief compilations of statutory material for the United Kingdom are the following:

- *The Statutes of the Realm*. Statutes from 1235 through 1948, with the exception of the years 1642–60.
- *Acts and Ordinances of the Interregnum*, ed. C. H. Firth and R. S. Rait, 3 vols. (London, 1911). Statutes for the years 1642–60.
- *Public General Acts and Measures*, published annually since 1831 by HMSO.

An additional source is the UK Statute Law Database, which has been available to the public since 2006 and is published with authority of the British Crown; the Statute Law Database draws on *The Statutes of the Realm* and its official revisions.

14.313 ***Publication of UK parliamentary debates.*** Before 1909, debates from both houses were published together; since then they have been published in separate series.

Hansard Parliamentary Debates, 1st series (1803–20)
Hansard Parliamentary Debates, 2d series (1820–30)
Hansard Parliamentary Debates, 3d series (1830–91)
Parliamentary Debates, 4th series (1892–1908)
Parliamentary Debates, Commons, 5th series (1909–80)
Parliamentary Debates, Commons, 6th series (1980/81–)
Parliamentary Debates, Lords, 5th series (1909–)

In *Bluebook* style, cite the volume number and series and include the year and column number. In the third example, H.C. stands for House of Commons. (In the first two examples, no such indication is necessary.)

1. 249 Parl. Deb. (3d ser.) (1879) 611–27.
2. 13 Parl. Deb. (4th ser.) (1893) 1273.
3. 407 Parl. Deb., H.C. (5th ser.) (1944–45) 425–46.

Although no longer the official name, *Hansard* (less often, *Hansard's*) is still sometimes used in citations to all series of parliamentary debates. Such usage is best avoided, however.

14.314 *UK command papers.* Command papers are so called because they originate outside Parliament and are ostensibly presented to Parliament "by command of Her [His] Majesty." The different abbreviations for "command" indicate the series and must not be altered. No *s* is added to the plural (Cmnd. 3834, 3835).

No. 1 to No. 4222 (1833–69)
C. 1 to C. 9550 (1870–99)
Cd. 1 to Cd. 9239 (1900–1918)
Cmd. 1 to Cmd. 9889 (1919–56)
Cmnd. 1–9927 (1956–86)
Cm. 1– (1986–)

Command papers may consist of a pamphlet or several volumes. If not clear from the context, the author of the report is included. Dates may include a month or just a year.

4. HM Treasury, The Basle Facility and the Sterling Area, 1968, Cmnd. 3787, at 15–16.

5. First Interim Report of the Committee on Currency and Foreign Exchanges after the War, 1918, Cd. 9182.

6. Review Body on Doctors' and Dentists' Remuneration, Thirteenth Report, 1983, Cmnd. 8878.

14.315 *Unpublished UK government documents.* For general guidelines and many examples, which can be adapted to government documents, see 14.232–42. The main depositories for unpublished government documents in the United Kingdom are the National Archives (NA) and the British Library (BL), both in London. Their catalogs are available online through the websites of the National Archives and the British Library. (The British Library is a division of the British Museum; before it was called the British Library, citations to documents housed therein used the abbreviation BM.) References usually include such classifications as Admiralty (Adm.), Chancery (C), Colonial Office (CO), Exchequer (E), Foreign Office (FO), or State Papers (SP) as well as the collection and volume numbers and, where relevant, the folio or page number(s). Among important collections in the British Library are the Cotton Manuscripts (with subdivisions named after Roman emperors, e.g., Cotton MSS, Caligula [Calig.]

D.VII), the Harleian Manuscripts, the Sloane Manuscripts, and the Additional Manuscripts (Add. or Addit.).

10. Patent Rolls, 3 Rich. 2, pt. 1, m. 12d (Calendar of Patent Rolls, 1377–1381, 470).

11. Hodgson to Halifax, 22 Feb. 1752, NA, CO 137:48.

12. Clarendon to Lumley, 16 Jan. 1869, NA, FO Belgium/133, no. 6.

13. [Henry Elsynge], "The moderne forme of the Parliaments of England," BL, Add. MSS 26645.

14. Minutes of the General Court, 17 Apr. 1733, 3:21, BL, Add. MSS 25545.

15. Letter of a Bristol Man, BL, Add. MSS 33029:152–55.

International Entities

14.316 *Intergovernmental bodies. The Bluebook* outlines the main reporters for international courts (such as the International Court of Justice), commissions, and tribunals. Also included are abbreviations for intergovernmental bodies such as the United Nations (and its principal organs), the European Union, and those devoted to specific areas such as human rights, trade, and health. The basic elements of citations to international law cases are similar to those used in US law citations (see 14.288–91); for examples, consult *The Bluebook*. (In addition to intergovernmental bodies, *The Bluebook* covers about three dozen foreign jurisdictions.) For treaties, see 14.302.

14.317 *International legal and public documents online.* The United Nations makes many of its documents available online (in English)—including those published by the General Assembly and the Security Council and dating back to the first General Assembly in 1946. *The Bluebook* provides guidance primarily for citing documents in the Official Records, but it considers the United Nations website an acceptable alternative. Many of the documents published by the United Nations and other intergovernmental bodies are issued in the form of reports. In general, list by the authorizing body (and the author or editor where appropriate), the topic or title of the paper, and the date. Series and publication numbers, place of publication, and a page reference may be included. Abbreviations may be used in notes and, to avoid duplication, in bibliographies (UN = United Nations, LoNP = League of Nation Papers, WTO = World Trade Organization, and so forth). Include a URL as the final element in the citation (see 14.4–13).

1. United Nations Security Council (SC), Resolution 7, "The Spanish Question," June 26, 1946, http://www.un.org/documents/sc/res/1946/scres46.htm.

2. SC, Resolution 1731, "The Situation in Liberia," ¶ 4(a), Dec. 20, 2006, http://www.un.org/Docs/sc/unsc_resolutions06.htm.

3. UN General Assembly, Resolution 45/1, "Admission of the Principality of Lichtenstein to Membership in the United Nations," Sept. 18, 1990, http://www.un.org/Depts/dhl/res/resa45.htm.

15 *Documentation II: Author-Date References*

Overview 15.1

Author-Date References: Basic Format, with Examples and Variations 15.5

Reference Lists and Text Citations 15.10

- *Reference Lists* 15.10
- *The 3-Em Dash for Repeated Names in a Reference List* 15.17
- *Text Citations* 15.20

Author-Date References: Special Cases 15.31

- *Books* 15.32
  - [AUTHOR'S NAME 15.32
  - [TITLE 15.37
  - [EDITION, VOLUME, OR COLLECTION 15.38
  - [FACTS OF PUBLICATION 15.41
- *Periodicals* 15.43
- *Unpublished and Informally Published Material* 15.48
- *Citations Taken from Secondary Sources* 15.52
- *Audiovisual Materials* 15.53
- *Legal and Public Documents* 15.54

Overview

15.1 *The scope of this chapter.* This chapter describes the second of Chicago's two systems of documentation, which uses parenthetical author-date references and a corresponding reference list. Because this system is similar in many respects to the notes and bibliography system discussed in chapter 14, much of the information from that chapter is not repeated here. For an introduction to source citations in general, including a discussion of systems other than the two recommended by Chicago, readers are encouraged to consult the overview in chapter 14 (14.1–13).

15.2 *Uniform treatment in author-date references and notes and bibliography.* In a departure from previous editions of this manual, Chicago now recommends a uniform treatment for the main elements of citation in both of its systems of documentation. In particular, the forms recommended in chapter 14 for authors' names (full names rather than initials) and titles of works (headline-style capitalization and use of quotation marks and italics) are now identical in the author-date system, as are recommendations regarding the use of abbreviations. Other differences remain unchanged—namely, the author-date system's use of parenthetical text citations rather than citations in notes and, in the bibliography (called a reference list), a different placement for the year of publication. For the use of notes with the author-date system, see 15.30.

15.3 *Notes and bibliography entries as models for author-date references.* Most of the examples in chapter 14 are readily adapted to the author-date style—in almost all cases by a different ordering or arrangement of elements. Most reference list entries are identical to entries in a bibliography except for the position of the year of publication, which in a reference list follows the author's name. Unlike bibliography entries (see 14.59), each entry in the reference list must correspond to a work cited in the text. Text citations differ from citations in notes by presenting only the author's last name and the year of publication, followed by a page number or other locator, if any. This chapter, by focusing on these and other differences, will allow readers to adapt any of the examples in chapter 14 to the author-date system.

15.4 *Considerations for electronic sources.* For a detailed discussion of URLs and DOIs, access dates and revision dates, and other considerations for citing electronic sources, see 14.4–13. For most electronic sources, Chicago recommends the addition of a URL or DOI following the full facts of publication. For examples in the author-date style, see 15.9, under *Journal Article*.

For more examples, see 14.167, 14.169, and throughout the discussions on periodicals (14.170–217) and elsewhere in chapter 14. Some citations will require an access date; for examples, see 14.245, 14.248, 15.51.

Author-Date References: Basic Format, with Examples and Variations

15.5 ***The author-date system—overview.*** The author-date system is used by many in the physical, natural, and social sciences and is recommended by Chicago for works in those areas. Sources are cited in the text, usually in parentheses, by the author's last (family) name, the publication date of the work cited, and a page number if needed. Full details appear in the reference list—usually titled "References" or "Works Cited"—in which the year of publication appears immediately after the author's name (see fig. 15.1). This arrangement makes it easy to follow a text citation to the corresponding full source in the reference list. (In electronic works, text entries may be hyperlinked to their corresponding reference list entries.)

Text citations:

As legal observers point out, much dispute resolution transpires outside the courtroom but in the "shadow of the law" (Mnookin and Kornhauser 1979). . . . Here we empirically demonstrate that workers' and regulatory agents' understandings of discrimination and legality emerge not only in the shadow of the law but also, as Albiston (2005) suggests, in the "shadow of organizations."

Reference list entries:

Albiston, Catherine R. 2005. "Bargaining in the Shadow of Social Institutions: Competing Discourses and Social Change in the Workplace Mobilization of Civil Rights." *Law and Society Review* 39 (1): 11–47.

Mnookin, Robert, and Lewis Kornhauser. 1979. "Bargaining in the Shadow of the Law: The Case of Divorce." *Yale Law Journal* 88 (5): 950–97.

For more examples of text citations and reference list entries, see 15.9. For a detailed discussion of reference lists, see 15.10–16 and 15.17–19. For text citations, see 15.20–30.

15.6 ***Basic structure of a reference list entry.*** In a reference list entry, the year of publication is the second element, following the author's name. Oth-

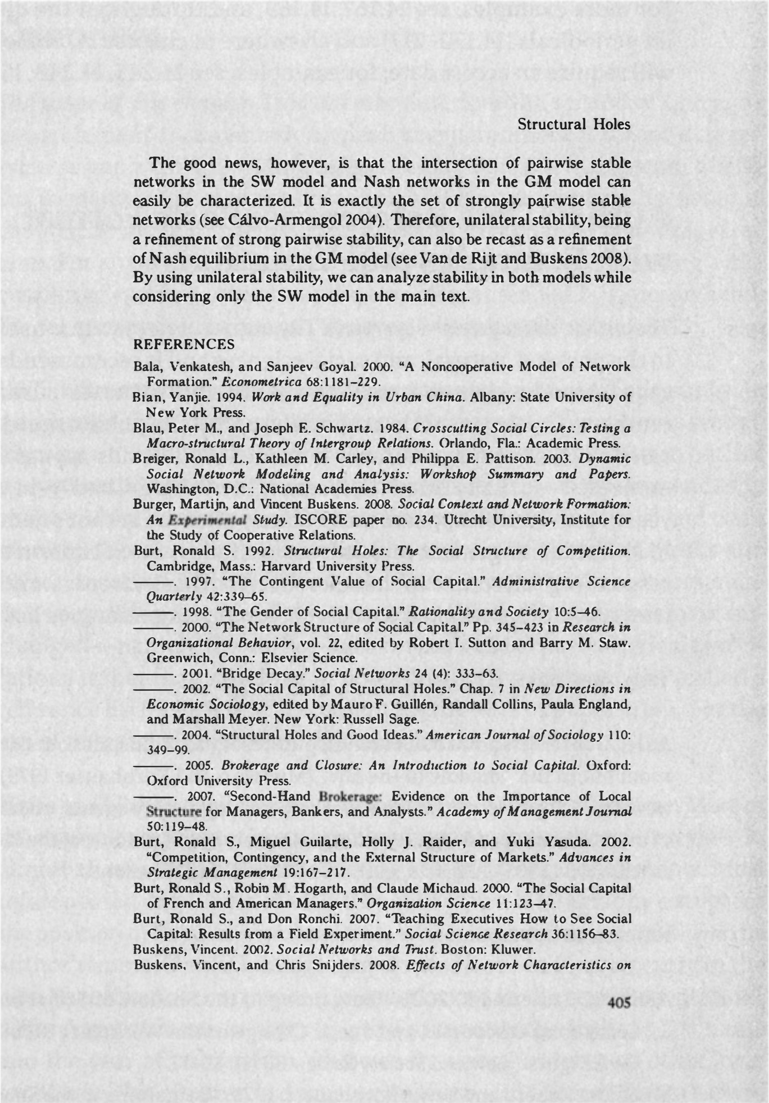

Structural Holes

The good news, however, is that the intersection of pairwise stable networks in the SW model and Nash networks in the GM model can easily be characterized. It is exactly the set of strongly pairwise stable networks (see Cálvo-Armengol 2004). Therefore, unilateral stability, being a refinement of strong pairwise stability, can also be recast as a refinement of Nash equilibrium in the GM model (see Van de Rijt and Buskens 2008). By using unilateral stability, we can analyze stability in both models while considering only the SW model in the main text.

REFERENCES

Bala, Venkatesh, and Sanjeev Goyal. 2000. "A Noncooperative Model of Network Formation." *Econometrica* 68:1181–229.

Bian, Yanjie. 1994. *Work and Equality in Urban China.* Albany: State University of New York Press.

Blau, Peter M., and Joseph E. Schwartz. 1984. *Crosscutting Social Circles: Testing a Macro-structural Theory of Intergroup Relations.* Orlando, Fla.: Academic Press.

Breiger, Ronald L., Kathleen M. Carley, and Philippa E. Pattison. 2003. *Dynamic Social Network Modeling and Analysis: Workshop Summary and Papers.* Washington, D.C.: National Academies Press.

Burger, Martijn, and Vincent Buskens. 2008. *Social Context and Network Formation: An Experimental Study.* ISCORE paper no. 234. Utrecht University, Institute for the Study of Cooperative Relations.

Burt, Ronald S. 1992. *Structural Holes: The Social Structure of Competition.* Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press.

———. 1997. "The Contingent Value of Social Capital." *Administrative Science Quarterly* 42:339–65.

———. 1998. "The Gender of Social Capital." *Rationality and Society* 10:5–46.

———. 2000. "The Network Structure of Social Capital." Pp. 345–423 in *Research in Organizational Behavior*, vol. 22, edited by Robert I. Sutton and Barry M. Staw. Greenwich, Conn.: Elsevier Science.

———. 2001. "Bridge Decay." *Social Networks* 24 (4): 333–63.

———. 2002. "The Social Capital of Structural Holes." Chap. 7 in *New Directions in Economic Sociology*, edited by Mauro F. Guillén, Randall Collins, Paula England, and Marshall Meyer. New York: Russell Sage.

———. 2004. "Structural Holes and Good Ideas." *American Journal of Sociology* 110: 349–99.

———. 2005. *Brokerage and Closure: An Introduction to Social Capital.* Oxford: Oxford University Press.

———. 2007. "Second-Hand Brokerage: Evidence on the Importance of Local Structure for Managers, Bankers, and Analysts." *Academy of Management Journal* 50:119–48.

Burt, Ronald S., Miguel Guilarte, Holly J. Raider, and Yuki Yasuda. 2002. "Competition, Contingency, and the External Structure of Markets." *Advances in Strategic Management* 19:167–217.

Burt, Ronald S., Robin M. Hogarth, and Claude Michaud. 2000. "The Social Capital of French and American Managers." *Organization Science* 11:123–47.

Burt, Ronald S., and Don Ronchi. 2007. "Teaching Executives How to See Social Capital: Results from a Field Experiment." *Social Science Research* 36:1156–83.

Buskens, Vincent. 2002. *Social Networks and Trust.* Boston: Kluwer.

Buskens, Vincent, and Chris Snijders. 2008. *Effects of Network Characteristics on*

405

FIGURE 15.1. Part of a reference list for a journal article in the social sciences. See 15.5, 15.6, 15.10–16.

erwise, a reference list entry is structured like an entry in a bibliography (see 14.16): the elements are separated by periods, and the first-listed author's name, according to which the entry is alphabetized in the reference list, is usually inverted (last name first). Titles are capitalized headline-style unless they are in a foreign language (see 8.157, 11.3); titles of larger works such as books and journals are italicized; and titles of smaller works such as journal articles are presented in roman and enclosed in quotation marks (see 8.161). Noun forms such as *editor*, *translator*, *volume*, and *edition* are abbreviated, but verb forms such as *edited by* and *translated by* are spelled out.

15.7 ***Basic structure of an in-text citation.*** In the author-date system, a citation in the text usually appears in parentheses and includes only the first two elements in a reference list—the author and the year of publication (hence the name of the system), with no intervening punctuation. In addition, a page number or other locator may be added, following a comma. Terms such as *editor* or *translator*, abbreviated in a reference list, are not included in a text citation.

15.8 ***Page numbers and other locators.*** In text citations, where reference is usually to a particular passage in a book or journal, only the page number(s) pertaining to that passage are given. In reference lists, no page numbers are given for books; for easier location of journal articles or chapters or other sections of a book, the beginning and ending page numbers of the entire article or chapter are given. Electronic sources do not always include page numbers (and some that do include them repaginate according to user-defined font sizes). For such works without fixed pagination, it may be appropriate in text to cite a chapter or paragraph number (if available), a section heading, or a descriptive phrase that follows the organizational divisions of the work. For examples, see 15.22. For citations of shorter electronic works presented as a single, searchable document, such locators may be unnecessary.

15.9 ***Author-date references—examples and variations.*** The examples that follow are intended to provide an overview of the author-date system, featuring books and journal articles as models. Each example includes a reference list entry and a corresponding text citation. For the sake of consistency, text citations are presented in parentheses, though they do not always appear that way in practice (see 15.27). For more examples, consult the sections dealing with specific types of works throughout this chapter.

BOOK WITH SINGLE AUTHOR OR EDITOR

For a book with a single author, invert the name in the reference list; in the text, include only the last name. Punctuate and capitalize as shown. To cite a specific passage, a page number or range is included in a text citation (separated from the year by a comma) but not in a reference list, unless the entry is for a chapter, in which case the page range on which the item appears is included (see "Chapter in an Edited Book," below; see also 9.58–63).

Pollan, Michael. 2006. *The Omnivore's Dilemma: A Natural History of Four Meals*. New York: Penguin.

(Pollan 2006, 99–100)

A book with an editor in place of an author includes the abbreviation *ed.* (*editor*; for more than one editor, use *eds.*). Note that the text citation does not include *ed.*

Greenberg, Joel, ed. 2008. *Of Prairie, Woods, and Water: Two Centuries of Chicago Nature Writing*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

(Greenberg 2008, 42)

BOOK WITH MULTIPLE AUTHORS

For a book with two authors, only the first-listed name is inverted in the reference list.

Ward, Geoffrey C., and Ken Burns. 2007. *The War: An Intimate History, 1941–1945*. New York: Knopf.

(Ward and Burns 2007, 52)

For a book with three authors, adapt as follows:

Heatherton, Joyce, James Fitzgilroy, and Jackson Hsu. 2008. *Meteors and Mudslides: A Trip through . . .*

(Heatherton, Fitzgilroy, and Hsu 2008, 188–89)

For a book with four or more authors, include all the authors in the reference list entry (see also 14.76). Word order and punctuation are the same as for two or three authors. In the text, however, cite only the last name of the first-listed author, followed by *et al.* (see also 15.28).

(Barnes et al. 2008, 118–19)

BOOK WITH AUTHOR PLUS EDITOR OR TRANSLATOR

In the reference list, do not abbreviate *Edited by* or *Translated by*. See also 14.88.

García Márquez, Gabriel. 1988. *Love in the Time of Cholera*. Translated by Edith Grossman. London: Cape.

(García Márquez 1988, 242–55)

CHAPTER IN AN EDITED BOOK

In citations of a chapter or similar part of an edited book, include the chapter author; the chapter title, in quotation marks; and the editor. Precede the title of the book with *In*. Note the location of the page range for the chapter in the reference list entry. See also 14.111–17.

Gould, Glenn. 1984. "Streisand as Schwarzkopf." In *The Glenn Gould Reader*, edited by Tim Page, 308–11. New York: Vintage.

(Gould 1984, 310)

JOURNAL ARTICLE

Citations of journals include the volume and issue number and date of publication. The volume number follows the italicized journal title in roman and with no intervening punctuation. A specific page reference is included in the text; the page range for an article is included in the reference list, preceded by a colon. The issue number often appears in parentheses (as in the first pair of examples below). If a journal is paginated consecutively across a volume or if the month or season is included in the reference list entry, however, the issue number (or month or season) may be omitted (as in the second and third pairs of examples).

Blair, Walter. 1977. "Americanized Comic Braggarts." *Critical Inquiry* 4 (2): 331–49.

(Blair 1977, 331–32)

For citations of journals consulted online, Chicago recommends the inclusion of a DOI or a URL; the DOI is preferred to a URL (see 14.5, 14.6). Note that *DOI*, so capitalized when mentioned in running text, is lowercased and followed by a colon (with no space after) in source citations.

Novak, William J. 2008. "The Myth of the 'Weak' American State." *American Historical Review* 113:752–72. doi:10.1086/ahr.113.3.752.

(Novak 2008, 758)

When no DOI has been provided along with the article at the site where it is consulted (even if one has been assigned), include a URL. The URL in the following example—consulted through the online journals archive JSTOR—was listed along with the article as a more stable (and shorter) alternative to the URL that appeared in the browser's address bar:

Karmaus, Wilfried, and John F. Riebow. 2004. "Storage of Serum in Plastic and Glass Containers May Alter the Serum Concentration of Polychlorinated Biphenyls." *Environmental Health Perspectives* 112 (May): 643–47. http://www.jstor.org/stable/3435987.

(Karmaus and Riebow 2004, 645)

Reference Lists and Text Citations

Reference Lists

15.10 *Function and placement of reference lists.* In the author-date system, the reference list is the prime vehicle for documentation. The text citations (see 15.20–30) are merely pointers to the full list. A reference list, like other types of bibliographies (see 14.59), is normally placed at the end of a work, preceding the index, if there is one. In a multiauthor book, a textbook, or a journal article, each chapter or article may be followed by its own reference list, in which case the list is preceded by a subhead such as References or Literature Cited.

15.11 *Alphabetical arrangement of reference list entries.* A reference list is always arranged alphabetically (except in a numbered reference system; see 14.3) and should generally not be divided into sections. (Types of sources that are not readily adapted to author-date style are often better cited in notes;

see, for example, 15.54–55.) All sources are listed by the last names of the authors (or, if no author or editor is given, by the title or by a keyword readers are most likely to seek). Rules for alphabetizing an index (see 16.56–93) apply also to a reference list, with the modifications described in 14.61, 14.62, and 15.17–19. For an illustration, see figure 15.1.

15.12 ***Authors' names in reference list entries.*** In a reference list as in a bibliography, use the form of authors' names as they appear on the title page or at the head of an article or chapter, with the exceptions noted in 14.72–92; see also 14.175. This treatment brings Chicago's author-date system into conformity with the style recommended for notes and bibliographies in chapter 14. Some publications, especially in the natural sciences, use initials rather than full given names (see 15.43). Where this practice is followed, an exception should be made where two authors share the same initials and last name. For text citations, see 15.21.

15.13 ***Titles in reference list entries.*** Titles and subtitles of books and articles in reference lists should be treated according to the rules set forth in 8.154–95 (see also 11.3). This is also the treatment recommended for titles in chapter 14, bringing Chicago's author-date system into conformity with the style for notes and bibliographies. It is recognized, however, that some publications—particularly journals in the natural sciences—prefer sentence-style treatment for titles (see 8.156), tend not to use quotation marks or italics, and abbreviate journal titles (see 15.44).

15.14 ***Placement of dates in reference list entries.*** Because the text citations consist of the last name of the author or authors (or that of the editor or translator) and the year of publication, the year in the reference list appears directly after the name, not with the publication details. This arrangement facilitates easy lookup of reference list entries.

Choi, Stephen J., and G. Mitu Gulati. 2008. "Bias in Judicial Citations: A Window into the Behavior of Judges?" *Journal of Legal Studies* 37 (January): 87–129. doi:10.1086/588263.

Heinrich, Larissa. 2008. *The Afterlife of Images: Translating the Pathological Body between China and the West*. Durham, NC: Duke University Press.

15.15 ***Abbreviations in reference list entries.*** Chicago's primary recommendations for the use of abbreviations in reference lists are now identical to the recommendations for bibliographies outlined in chapter 14. Spell out such phrases as *edited by* or *translated by*, which are capitalized if following a period. On the other hand, noun forms such as *editor* (*ed.*), and *transla-*

tor (*trans.*) are always abbreviated in reference lists, as are such standard bibliographical terms as *volume* (*vol.*), number (*no.*), and so forth. Abbreviations may be used with greater frequency as long as they are used consistently. For example, *University* may be abbreviated to *Univ.*, and months given with journal citations may be abbreviated (see 10.40). See also 15.43, 15.44.

15.16 ***Single author versus several authors—reference list order.*** As in a bibliography, a single-author entry precedes a multiauthor entry beginning with the same name. Only the first author's name is inverted. Successive entries by two or more authors in which only the first author's name is the same are alphabetized according to the coauthors' last names (regardless of how many coauthors there are).

Edelman, Lauren B. 1992. "Legal Ambiguity and Symbolic Structures: Organizational Mediation of Civil Rights Law." *American Journal of Sociology* 97 (6): 1531–76.

Edelman, Lauren B., Sally Riggs Fuller, and Iona Mara-Drita. 2001. "Diversity Rhetoric and the Managerialization of the Law." *American Journal of Sociology* 106 (6): 1589–641.

Edelman, Lauren B., and S. M. Petterson. 1999. "Symbols and Substance in Organizational Response to Civil Rights Law." *Research in Social Stratification and Mobility* 17:107–35.

Edelman, Lauren B., Christopher Uggen, and Howard S. Erlanger. 1999. "The Endogeneity of Legal Regulation: Grievance Procedures as Rational Myth." *American Journal of Sociology* 105 (2): 406–54.

The 3-Em Dash for Repeated Names in a Reference List

15.17 ***Chronological order for repeated names in a reference list.*** For successive entries by the same author(s), translator(s), editor(s), or compiler(s), a 3-em dash replaces the name(s) after the first appearance. The entries are arranged chronologically by year of publication in ascending order, *not* alphabetized by title (as in a bibliography; see 14.67). Undated works designated *n.d.* or *forthcoming* follow all dated works (see 15.41, 15.42). See also 14.63.

Schuman, Howard, and Jacqueline Scott. 1987. "Problems in the Use of Survey Questions to Measure Public Opinion." *Science* 236:957–59.

———. 1989. "Generations and Collective Memories." *American Sociological Review* 54:359–81.

Note that the 3-em dash *cannot* stand in for the same two or more authors as in the previous entry if they appear in a different order. The following two entries are alphabetized as if they are by two different sets of authors:

Comaroff, Jean, and John Comaroff, eds. 1993. *Modernity and Its Malcontents: Ritual and Power in Postcolonial Africa*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
Comaroff, John, and Jean Comaroff. 1991–97. *Of Revelation and Revolution*. 2 vols. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

15.18 ***The 3-em dash with edited, translated, or compiled works.*** The 3-em dash replaces the preceding name or names only, not an added *ed.*, *trans.*, *comp.*, or whatever. The chronological order is maintained, regardless of the added abbreviation.

Woodward, David. 1977. *The All-American Map: Wax Engraving and Its Influence on Cartography*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
———, ed. 1987. *Art and Cartography: Six Historical Essays*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
———. 1996. *Catalogue of Watermarks in Italian Printed Maps, ca. 1540–1600*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

Woodward is the author of the first and third items, editor of the second.

15.19 ***Reference list entries with same author(s), same year.*** Two or more works by the same author in the same year must be differentiated by the addition of *a*, *b*, and so forth (regardless of whether they were authored, edited, compiled, or translated), and are listed alphabetically by title. Text citations consist of author and year plus letter.

Fogel, Robert William. 2004a. *The Escape from Hunger and Premature Death, 1700–2100: Europe, America, and the Third World*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2004.
———. 2004b. "Technophysio Evolution and the Measurement of Economic Growth." *Journal of Evolutionary Economics* 14 (2): 217–21. doi:10.1007/s00191-004-0188-x.

(Fogel 2004b, 218)
(Fogel 2004a, 45–46)

When works by the same two or more authors list their names in a different order, then *a*, *b*, and so forth cannot be used. See 15.17.

Text Citations

15.20 *Agreement of text citation and reference list entry.* For each author-date citation in the text, there must be a corresponding entry in the reference list under the same name and date. It is the author's responsibility to ensure such agreement as well as the accuracy of the reference (see 2.29). Among other things, specific page references to a journal article, when given in a text citation, must fall within the range of pages given for the article in the reference list entry. Manuscript editors can help authors by cross-checking text citations and reference lists and rectifying or querying any discrepancies or omissions (see 2.60).

15.21 *Text citations—basic form.* An author-date citation in running text or at the end of a block quotation consists of the last (family) name of the author, followed by the year of publication of the work in question. In this context, *author* may refer not only to one or more authors or an institution but also to one or more editors, translators, or compilers. No punctuation appears between author and date. Abbreviations such as *ed.* or *trans.* are omitted. See also 15.22.

Text citations:

(Woodward 1987)
(Schuman and Scott 1987)

References:

Schuman, Howard, and Jacqueline Scott. 1987. "Problems in the Use of Survey Questions to Measure Public Opinion." *Science* 236:957–59.
Woodward, David, ed. 1987. *Art and Cartography: Six Historical Essays*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

Where two or more works by different authors with the same last name are listed in a reference list, the text citation must include an initial (or two initials or a given name if necessary).

Text citations:

(C. Doershuk 2010) (J. Doershuk 2009)

References:

Doershuk, Carl. 2010. . . . Doershuk, John. 2009. . . .

15.22 ***Page and volume numbers or other specific locators in text citations.*** When a specific page, section, equation, or other division of the work is cited, it follows the date, preceded by a comma. When a volume as a whole is referred to, without a page number, *vol.* is used. For volume plus page, only a colon is needed. The *n* in the Fischer and Siple example below indicates "note" (see 14.164). The last example shows how one might cite a section of a work that contains no page or section numbers or other numerical signposts—the case for some electronic documents (see 15.8).

(Piaget 1980, 74)
(LaFree 2010, 413, 417–18)
(Johnson 1979, sec. 24)
(Fowler and Hoyle 1965, eq. 87)
(García 1987, vol. 2)
(García 1987, 2:345)
(Barnes 1998, 2:354–55, 3:29)
(Fischer and Siple 1990, 212n3)
(Hellman 1998, under "The Battleground")

Some journals omit page numbers in citations of other journal articles except when citing a direct quotation.

15.23 ***Additional material in text citations.*** The parentheses that enclose a text citation may also include a comment, separated from the citation by a semicolon.

(Mandolan 2009; *t*-tests are used here)

15.24 ***Text citations in relation to surrounding text and punctuation.*** Except at the end of block quotations (see 15.25), author-date citations are usually placed just before a mark of punctuation. See also 15.27.

Recent literature has examined long-run price drifts following initial public offerings (Ritter 1991; Loughran and Ritter 1995), stock splits (Ikenberry, Rankine, and Stice 1996), seasoned equity offerings (Loughran and Ritter 1995), and equity repurchases (Ikenberry, Lakonishok, and Vermaelen 1995).

Where the author's name appears in the text, it need not be repeated in the parenthetical citation. Note that the date should immediately follow the author's name, even if the name is used in the possessive. This slight departure from advice in earlier editions of the manual serves the logic and economy of the author-date style.

> Fiorina et al. (2005) and Fischer and Hout (2006) reach more or less the same conclusions. In contrast, Abramowitz and Saunders (2005) suggest that the mass public is deeply divided between red states and blue states and between churchgoers and secular voters.
>
> Tufte's (2001) excellent book on chart design warns against a common error.

15.25 ***Text citations in relation to direct quotations.*** Although citation of a source normally follows a direct quotation, it may precede the quotation—especially if such a placement allows the date to appear with the author's name.

> As Edward Tufte points out, "A graphical element may carry data information and also perform a design function usually left to non-data-ink" (2001, 139).
>
> *or*
>
> As Edward Tufte (2001, 139) points out, "A graphical element may carry data information and also perform a design function usually left to non-data-ink."

When the source of a block quotation is given in parentheses at the end of the quotation, the opening parenthesis appears *after* the final punctuation mark of the quoted material. No period either precedes or follows the closing parenthesis.

> If you happen to be fishing, and you get a strike, and whatever it is starts off with the preliminaries of a vigorous fight; and by and by, looking down over the side through the glassy water, you see a rosy golden gleam, the mere specter of a fish, shining below in the clear depths; and when you look again a sort of glory of golden light flashes and dazzles as it circles nearer beneath and around and under the boat; . . . and you land a slim and graceful and impossibly beautiful three-foot goldfish, whose fierce and vivid yellow is touched around the edges with a violent red—when all these things happen to you, fortunate but bewildered fisherman, then you may know you have been fishing in the Galapagos Islands and have taken a Golden Grouper. (Pinchot 1930, 123)

See also 13.68–70.

15.26 ***Several references to the same source.*** When the same page (or page range) in the same source is cited more than once in one paragraph, the parenthetical citation can be placed after the last reference or at the end of the paragraph (but preceding the final period). When referring to different pages in the same source, however, include a full parenthetical citation at the first reference; subsequent citations need only include page numbers.

Complexion figures prominently in Morgan's descriptions. When Jasper compliments his mother's choice of car (a twelve-cylinder Mediterranean roadster with leather and wood-grained interior), "his cheeks blotch indignantly, painted by jealousy and rage" (Chaston 2000, 47). On the other hand, his mother's mask never changes, her "even-tanned good looks" (56), "burnished visage" (101), and "airbrushed confidence" (211) providing the foil to the drama in her midst.

15.27 ***Syntactic considerations with text citations.*** An author-date citation is a form of bibliographic shorthand that corresponds to a fully cited work; it does not refer to a person. Note how, in the examples in 15.24 and 15.25, the wording distinguishes between authors and works. A locution such as "in Smith 2009," though technically proper, is usually best avoided except as part of a parenthetical citation. Reword—for example, "Smith's (1999) study indicates that . . ." Note that square brackets should be used in parenthetical text references that require additional parentheses, as in the second example (see 6.99).

There are at least three works that satisfy the criteria outlined in Smith's (1999) study (see Rowen 2006; Bettelthorp 2004a; Choi 2008).

These processes have, in turn, affected the way many Latin Americans are treated in the United States (see, e.g., Haviland [2003, 767] on how US courts disregard the existence of indigenous languages and "reluctantly" make allowance only for Spanish in translation services).

15.28 ***Text citations of works with more than three authors.*** For more than three authors (or in some science publications, more than two), only the name of the first author is used, followed by *et al.* (and others). Note that *et al.* is not italicized in text citations.

(Schonen et al. 2009)
According to the data collected by Schonen et al. (2009), . . .

If a reference list includes another work of the same date that would also be abbreviated as "Schonen et al." but whose coauthors are different persons or listed in a different order, the text citations must distinguish between them. In such cases, the first two authors (or the first three) should be cited, followed by *et al.*

(Schonen, Baker, et al. 2009)   (Schonen, Brooks, et al. 2009)

Alternatively, a shortened title, enclosed in commas, may be added. In the following examples, *et al.* refers to different coauthors, so *a*, *b*, and so on cannot be used (see 15.19):

(Schonen et al., "Tilting at Windmills," 2009)
(Schonen et al., "Gasoline Farmers," 2009)

For treatment of multiple authors in a bibliography or reference list, see 14.76, 15.9.

15.29 ***Multiple text references.*** Two or more references in a single parenthetical citation are separated by semicolons. The order in which they are given may depend on what is being cited, and in what order, or it may reflect the relative importance of the items cited. If neither criterion applies, alphabetical or chronological order may be appropriate. Unless the order is prescribed by a particular journal style, the decision is the author's.

(Armstrong and Malacinski 1989; Beigl 1989; Pickett and White 1985)

Additional works by the same author(s) are cited by date only, separated by commas except where page numbers are required.

(Whittaker 1967, 1975; Wiens 1989a, 1989b)
(Wong 1999, 328; 2000, 475; García 1998, 67)

15.30 ***Author-date system with notes.*** Where footnotes or endnotes are used to supplement the author-date system, source citations within notes are treated in the same way as in text (see fig. 15.2).

10. James Wilson has noted that "no politician ever lost votes by denouncing the bureaucracy" (1989, 235). Yet little is actually ever done to bring major reforms to the system.

For the use of notes with legal-style citations, see 15.54. For more on footnotes and endnotes, see 14.19–55.

Author-Date References: Special Cases

15.31 ***Items not necessarily covered in chapter 14.*** The majority of examples in chapter 14 can be adapted to the author-date system with relative ease (see 15.3). This section focuses on special cases not necessarily covered there or for which a suitable author-date form may not be apparent.

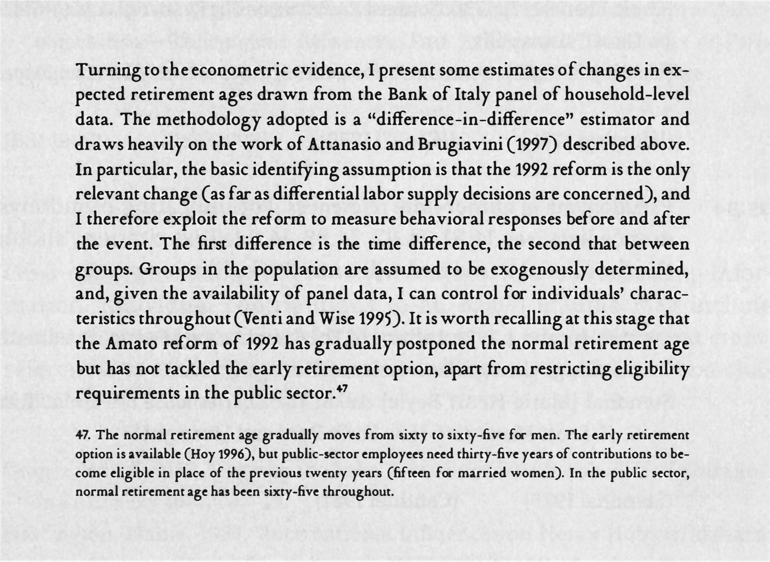

Turning to the econometric evidence, I present some estimates of changes in expected retirement ages drawn from the Bank of Italy panel of household-level data. The methodology adopted is a "difference-in-difference" estimator and draws heavily on the work of Attanasio and Brugiavini (1997) described above. In particular, the basic identifying assumption is that the 1992 reform is the only relevant change (as far as differential labor supply decisions are concerned), and I therefore exploit the reform to measure behavioral responses before and after the event. The first difference is the time difference, the second that between groups. Groups in the population are assumed to be exogenously determined, and, given the availability of panel data, I can control for individuals' characteristics throughout (Venti and Wise 1995). It is worth recalling at this stage that the Amato reform of 1992 has gradually postponed the normal retirement age but has not tackled the early retirement option, apart from restricting eligibility requirements in the public sector.[47]

47. The normal retirement age gradually moves from sixty to sixty-five for men. The early retirement option is available (Hoy 1996), but public-sector employees need thirty-five years of contributions to become eligible in place of the previous twenty years (fifteen for married women). In the public sector, normal retirement age has been sixty-five throughout.

FIGURE 15.2. A sample of text with both parenthetical text citations and a footnote. See 15.30.

Books

AUTHOR'S NAME

15.32 ***Anonymous works—unknown authorship.*** If the author or editor is unknown, the reference list entry should normally begin with the title. An initial article is ignored in alphabetizing. Text citations may refer to a short form of the title but must include the first word (other than an initial article). See also 14.79.

Stanze in lode della donna brutta. 1547. Florence.

A True and Sincere Declaration of the Purpose and Ends of the Plantation Begun in Virginia, of the Degrees Which It Hath Received, and Means by Which It Hath Been Advanced. 1610. London.

(*True and Sincere Declaration* 1610)
(*Stanze in lode della donna brutta* 1547) *or* (*Stanze* 1547)

15.33 ***Anonymous works—known authorship.*** As in notes and bibliographies (see 14.80), bracket a name in reference lists and text citations if the authorship is known or guessed at but was omitted on the title page.

[Cook, Ebenezer?]. 1730. *Sotweed Redivivus; or, The Planter's Looking-Glass*. By "E. C. Gent." Annapolis.

[Horsley, Samuel]. 1796. *On the Prosodies of the Greek and Latin Languages*. London.

([Horsley] 1796) ([Cook?] 1730)

15.34 ***Pseudonyms in author-date references.*** For indicating pseudonyms in reference lists, see 14.81, 14.82, 14.83, 14.84. Text citations should refer to the first-listed name and will omit the indication *pseud.*

Centinel [pseud.]. 1981. Letters. In *The Complete Anti-Federalist*, edited by Herbert J. Storing. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

Stendhal [Marie-Henri Beyle]. 1925. *The Charterhouse of Parma*. Translated by C. K. Scott-Moncrieff. New York: Boni and Liveright.

(Stendhal 1925) (Centinel 1981)

See also 14.85, 14.86.

15.35 ***Editor in place of author in text citations.*** For works listed by editor(s) or compiler(s) or translator(s) in a reference list, abbreviations such as *ed.* or *eds.*, *comp.* or *comps.*, or *trans.* following the name are omitted in text citations.

Silverstein, Theodore, trans. 1974. *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

Soltes, Ori Z., ed. 1999. *Georgia: Art and Civilization through the Ages*. London: Philip Wilson.

(Silverstein 1974) (Soltes 1999)

15.36 ***Organization as author in author-date references.*** If a publication issued by an organization, association, or corporation carries no personal author's name on the title page, the organization may be listed as author in the reference list, even if it is also given as publisher. To facilitate shorter parenthetical text citations, the organization may be listed under an abbreviation, in which case the entry must be alphabetized under that abbreviation (rather than the spelled-out name) in the reference list.

BSI (British Standards Institution). 1985. *Specification for Abbreviation of Title Words and Titles of Publications*. London: BSI.

ISO (International Organization for Standardization). 1997. *Information and Documentation—Bibliographic References.* Part 2, *Electronic Documents or Parts Thereof*. ISO 690-2. New York: American National Standards Institute.

(BSI 1985) (ISO 1997)

TITLE

15.37 ***Cross-references to other titles in reference lists.*** To avoid repeating information, individual contributions to an edited volume may include cross-references to an entry for the volume as a whole. Note that cross-references to other titles in the reference list take the form of text citations but without any parentheses.

Draper, Joan E. 1987. "Paris by the Lake: Sources of Burnham's Plan of Chicago." In Zukowsky 1987, 107–19.

Harrington, Elaine. 1987. "International Influences on Henry Hobson Richardson's Glessner House." In Zukowsky 1987, 189–207.

Zukowsky, John, ed. 1987. *Chicago Architecture, 1872–1922: Birth of a Metropolis*. Munich: Prestel-Verlag in association with the Art Institute of Chicago.

This approach is best used only if more than a few individual contributions to the same volume are cited or if the volume itself is also cited in the text. Otherwise, include full publication details in the entry for each individual contribution. See also 14.112.

Draper, Joan E. 1987. "Paris by the Lake: Sources of Burnham's Plan of Chicago." In *Chicago Architecture, 1872–1922: Birth of a Metropolis*, edited by John Zukowsky, 107–19. Munich: Prestel-Verlag in association with the Art Institute of Chicago.

EDITION, VOLUME, OR COLLECTION

15.38 ***Reprint editions and modern editions—more than one date.*** When citing a reprint or modern edition in the author-date system, it is sometimes desirable to include the original date of publication. Whether or not any information about the original publication is included, the original date is listed first, in parentheses. If the pagination of the original edition does not match that of the reprint, indicate the edition cited.

Austen, Jane. (1813) 2003. *Pride and Prejudice*. London: T. Egerton. Reprint, New York: Penguin Classics. Citations refer to the Penguin edition.

Darwin, Charles. (1859) 1964. *On the Origin of Species*. Facsimile of the first edition, with an introduction by Ernest Mayr. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

Maitland, Frederic W. (1898) 1998. *Roman Canon Law in the Church of England*. Reprint, Union, NJ: Lawbook Exchange.

The parentheses are rendered as square brackets in the in-text citation (see 6.99).

(Austen [1813] 2003)   (Darwin [1859] 1964)   (Maitland [1898] 1998)

For more than one work by the same author, the first date determines placement in the reference list (see 15.17).

Maitland, Frederic W. (1898) 1998. *Roman Canon Law in the Church of England*. Reprint, Union, NJ: Lawbook Exchange.

———. (1909) 1926. *Equity, Also the Forms of Action at Common Law: Two Courses of Lectures*. Edited by A. H. Chaytor and W. J. Whittaker. Reprint, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

When the original date is less important to the discussion, use the date of the modern source. The date of original publication may be included at the end of the reference list entry but need not be.

Trollope, Anthony. 1977. *The Claverings*. With a new introduction by Norman Donaldson. New York: Dover. First published 1866–67.

———. 1983. *He Knew He Was Right*. 2 vols. in one. New York: Dover. First published 1869.

(Trollope 1977)   (Trollope 1983)

15.39 ***Multivolume works published over more than one year.*** When an entire multivolume, multiyear work is cited, the range of dates is given. In a reference list, the date for an individual volume should be included in addition to the range for the work as a whole. If the work has not yet been completed, the date of the first volume is followed by an en dash (with no space between the en dash and the punctuation that follows). In text citations of volumes listed individually in the reference list, the volume number is *not* included with references to specific page numbers. See also 14.121–27. For en dashes with numbers, see 6.78, 6.79, 9.63.

Hayek, F. A. 1995. *Contra Keynes and Cambridge: Essays, Correspondence*. Vol. 9 of *The Collected Works of F. A. Hayek*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1988–.

Tillich, Paul. 1951–63. *Systematic Theology*. 3 vols. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

(Tillich 1951–63, 1:133)   (Hayek 1995, 124–25)

15.40 ***Letters in published collections.*** In the author-date system, letters in published collections should be cited by the date of the collection. The dates of individual correspondence should be woven into the text. The material in the examples to 14.117 could be cited as follows:

Adams, Henry. 1930. *Letters of Henry Adams, 1858–1891*. Edited by Worthington Chauncey Ford. Boston: Houghton Mifflin.

White, E. B. 1976. *Letters of E. B. White*. Edited by Dorothy Lobrano Guth. New York: Harper & Row.

In a letter to Charles Milnes Gaskell from London, March 30, 1868 (Adams 1930, 141), Adams wrote . . .

White (1976, 273) sent Ross an interoffice memo on May 2, 1946, pointing out that . . .

FACTS OF PUBLICATION

15.41 ***"No date" in author-date references.*** When the publication date of a printed work cannot be ascertained, the abbreviation *n.d.* takes the place of the year in the reference list entry and text citations. Though it follows a period in the reference list, *n.d.* remains lowercased to avoid conflation with the author's name; in text citations, it is preceded by a comma. A guessed-at date may be substituted (in brackets). See also 14.138, 15.51.

Nano, Jasmine L. [1750?] *Title of Work* . . .
———. n.d. *Title of Another Work* . . .

(Nano [1750?])   (Nano, n.d.)

15.42 ***"Forthcoming" in author-date references.*** Like *n.d.* (see 15.41), *forthcoming* can stand in place of the date in author-date references to books under contract with a publisher and already titled but for which the date of publication is not yet known. If page numbers are available, they should be given as needed. Books not under contract are treated as unpublished manuscripts (see 14.225). In text citations, *forthcoming* is preceded by a comma. See also 14.153.

Faraday, Carry. Forthcoming. "Protean Photography." In *Seven Trips beyond the Asteroid Belt*, edited by James Oring. Cape Canaveral, FL: Launch Press.

(Faraday, forthcoming)

Periodicals

15.43 ***Publications preferring initials for authors' names.*** The reference lists in some journals (especially in the natural sciences) always use initials instead of given names. When periods are used, space appears between them (Wells, H. G.); when periods are omitted, as in some journals' styles, no comma intervenes between last name and initials, and no space appears between the initials (Wells HG).

15.44 ***Publications preferring abbreviations for journal titles.*** In many publications in the sciences, journal titles are abbreviated (often with periods omitted) unless they consist of only one word. Standard abbreviations for scientific journals may be found in *BIOSIS Serial Sources* (bibliog. 5) and through PubMed, a service of the US National Library of Medicine (bibliog. 4.5), among other reference works. For a partial list of standard abbreviations of frequently used journal title words, see the latest edition of *Scientific Style and Format* or the *AMA Manual of Style* (bibliog. 1.1).

15.45 ***Publications preferring sentence-style capitalization for titles.*** Especially in the natural sciences, many publications that use a version of the author-date style prefer sentence-style capitalization for all titles (except, usually, the titles of journals, which are often abbreviated; see 15.44). In sentence style, only the first word in a title or a subtitle and any proper names are capitalized (see 8.156). In addition, works that prefer this style may eschew quotation marks for chapter or article titles (sometimes dispensing also with italics for book titles). Though Chicago now recommends headline style and the use of quotation marks or italics in both its systems of documentation, these forms can be readily adapted to other, sparer systems.

15.46 ***Parentheses with issue number.*** As discussed elsewhere (e.g., 15.9, under *Journal Article*; see also 14.180), the issue number may be omitted if pagination is continuous throughout a volume or when a month or season is included. When volume and issue number alone are used, the issue number is placed in parentheses. When only an issue number is used, it is not enclosed in parentheses.

Meyerovitch, Eva. 1959. "The Gnostic Manuscripts of Upper Egypt." *Diogenes*, no. 25: 84–117.

Morasse, Sébastien, Helga Guderley, and Julian J. Dodson. 2008. "Paternal Reproductive Strategy Influences Metabolic Capacities and Muscle Development of Atlantic Salmon (*Salmo salar* L.) Embryos." *Physiological and Biochemical Zoology* 81 (4): 402–13. doi:10.1086/589012.

15.47 ***Newspapers and magazines in reference lists.*** It is usually sufficient to cite newspaper and magazines articles entirely within the text—a strategy that is identical in form in both systems of citation. See 14.206. If, for some reason, a reference list entry is needed, the year of publication is separated from the month and day (if any).

Carey, Benedict. 2008. "For the Brain, Remembering Is Like Reliving." *New York Times*, September 4. http://www.nytimes.com/2008/09/05/science/05brain.html.

Kauffman, Stanley. 1989. Review of *A Dry White Season* (film), directed by Euzhan Palcy. *New Republic*, October 9, 24–25.

Unpublished and Informally Published Material

15.48 ***Unpublished interviews and personal communications.*** In a parenthetical citation, the terms *personal communication* (or *pers. comm.*), *unpublished data*, and the like may be used after the name(s) of the person(s) concerned, following a comma. Reference list entries are unneeded, though each person cited must be fully identified elsewhere in the text. Initials may be used for first names. The abbreviation *et al.* should be avoided in such citations.

(Julie Cantor, pers. comm.)
(A. P. Møller, unpublished data; C. R. Brown and M. B. Brown, unpublished data)

15.49 ***Manuscript collections in the author-date style.*** When citing manuscript collections in the author-date style, it is unnecessary to use *n.d.* (no date) in place of the date. Dates of individual items should be mentioned in the text, when applicable.

Egmont Manuscripts. Phillipps Collection. University of Georgia Library.
Kallen, Horace. Papers. YIVO Institute for Jewish Research, New York.

Oglethorpe wrote to the trustees on January 13, 1733 (Egmont Manuscripts), to say . . .

Alvin Johnson, in a memorandum prepared sometime in 1937 (Kallen Papers, file 36), observed that . . .

If only one item from a collection has been mentioned in the text, however, the entry may begin with the writer's name (if known). In such a case, the use of *n.d.* may become appropriate. See also 15.41.

Dinkel, Joseph. n.d. Description of Louis Agassiz written at the request of Elizabeth Cary Agassiz. Agassiz Papers. Houghton Library, Harvard University.

(Dinkel, n.d.)

15.50 ***Patents or other documents cited by more than one date.*** Cite patents and other documents that include more than one date as follows (note that the year of issue is repeated to avoid ambiguity):

Iizuka, Masanori, and Hideki Tanaka. 1986. Cement admixture. US Patent 4,586,960, filed June 26, 1984, and issued May 6, 1986.

15.51 ***Access dates with website content.*** To cite an undated online document in a reference list, use an access date rather than *n.d.* (no date). See also 14.7, 14.245, 15.41.

Evanston Public Library Board of Trustees. 2008. "Evanston Public Library Strategic Plan, 2000–2010: A Decade of Outreach." Evanston Public Library. Accessed July 19. http://www.epl.org/library/strategic-plan-00.html.

(Evanston Public Library 2008)

Citations Taken from Secondary Sources

15.52 ***"Quoted in" in author-date references.*** If an original source is unavailable, and "quoted in" must be resorted to, mention the original author and date in the text, and cite the secondary source in the reference list entry. The text citation would include the words "quoted in."

Costello, Bonnie. 1981. *Marianne Moore: Imaginary Possessions*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

In Louis Zukofsky's "Sincerity and Objectification," from the February 1931 issue of *Poetry* magazine (quoted in Costello 1981) . . .

Audiovisual Materials

15.53 ***Citing audiovisual materials in author-date format.*** Chicago recommends a more comprehensive approach to dating audiovisual materials than in previous editions of the manual (see 14.274, 14.276). Though citations in the author-date system have therefore become somewhat easier to format, it is often more appropriate to list such materials in running text and group them in a separate section or discography; see 14.275. Older sources are more likely to have been consulted in the form of a digital copy; though authors should cite the format consulted, it is generally useful to give information about the original source, if available. Moreover, the date of the original recording should be privileged in the citation. Whom to list as "author" depends on the focus of the citation and is a matter of authorial discretion.

Coolidge, Calvin. [1920?] "Equal Rights" (speech). Copy of 78 rpm disc in RealAudio and WAV formats from the Library of Congress, "American Leaders Speak: Recordings from World War I and the 1920 Election, 1918–1920." http://memory.loc.gov/ammem/nfhtml/nforSpeakers01.html.

Holiday, Billie. 1958. "I'm a Fool to Want You" (vocal performance). By Joel Herron, Frank Sinatra, and Jack Wolf. Recorded February 20, with Ray Ellis. On *Lady in Satin*, Columbia CL 1157, 33⅓ rpm.

Pink Floyd. 1970. *Atom Heart Mother*. Capitol CDP 7 46381 2, 1990, compact disc.

Weingartner, Felix von (conductor). 1936. *150 Jahre Wiener Philharmoniker*. Preiser Records, PR90113 (mono), 1992, compact disc. Includes Beethoven's Symphony no. 3 in E-flat Major and Symphony no. 8 in F Major.

(Coolidge [1920?])
(Holiday 1958)
(Pink Floyd 1970)
(Weingartner 1936)

Legal and Public Documents

15.54 ***Using notes for legal and public documents.*** Almost all legal works use notes for documentation and few use bibliographies. Any work using the author-date style that needs to do more than mention the occasional source in the text should therefore use supplementary footnotes or endnotes; see 15.30. This advice does not extend to documents that are cited in secondary sources or as freestanding works (see 14.303), since these are readily adaptable to the author-date system (see 15.3). For a full discussion of legal and public documents, including examples, see 14.281–317.

15.55 ***Citing legal and public documents in text.*** Works with only a handful of citations to legal and public documents may be able to limit these to the text, using the forms detailed in 14.281–317. Note that in legal style, parentheses within parentheses are used (see also 6.95).

> In *NLRB v. Somerville Constr. Co.* (206 F.3d 752 (7th Cir. 2000)), the court ruled that . . .

> In the *Congressional Record* for that day (147 Cong. Rec. 19,000 (2001)), Senator Conrad Burns was reported as saying that . . .

In order to avoid such awkward constructions in the text, however, Chicago advises using notes for citations to legal and public documents whenever possible (see 14.283).

16 Indexes

Overview 16.1

Components of an Index 16.9

Main Headings, Subentries, and Locators 16.9

Cross-References 16.15

Run-In versus Indented Indexes 16.24

General Principles of Indexing 16.29

Indexing Proper Names and Variants 16.32

Indexing Titles of Publications and Other Works 16.47

Alphabetizing 16.56

Letter by Letter or Word by Word? 16.58

General Rules of Alphabetizing 16.62

Subentries 16.68

Personal Names 16.71

Foreign Personal Names 16.76

Names of Organizations and Businesses 16.88

Names of Places 16.90

Punctuating Indexes: A Summary 16.94

The Mechanics of Indexing 16.101

Before Indexing Begins: Tools and Decisions 16.101

When to Begin 16.108

What Parts of the Work to Index 16.109

Marking Proofs and Preparing Entries 16.117

Editing and Refining the Entries 16.126

Submitting the Index 16.131

Editing an Index Compiled by Someone Else 16.132

Typographical Considerations for Indexes 16.135

Examples of Indexes 16.141

Overview

16.1 ***The back-of-the-book index as model.*** This chapter offers basic guidelines for preparing and editing an index. Much of the advice—modeled on the requirements for a back-of-the-book index for a printed-and-bound scholarly monograph—applies also to indexes for journals and other types of works. General principles of indexing are covered, as are the specifics of Chicago's preferred style in matters of typography, alphabetizing, and the like.

16.2 ***Why index?*** In this age of search engines, the question "Why index?" is frequently asked. For a printed-and-bound book, the answers are clear. A good index gathers all the key terms and subjects (grouping many of the former under the conceptual and thematic umbrella of the latter), sorts them alphabetically, provides cross-references to and from related terms, and includes specific page numbers or other locators. This painstaking intellectual labor serves readers of any book-length text, whether it is published on paper or online. An index, a highly organized, detailed counterpart to a table of contents and other navigational aids, is also insurance—in searchable texts—against fruitless queries and unintended results.

16.3 ***Who should index a work?*** The ideal indexer sees the work as a whole, understands the emphasis of the various parts and their relation to the whole, and knows—or guesses—what readers of the particular work are likely to look for and what headings they will think of. The indexer should be widely read, scrupulous in handling detail, analytically minded, well acquainted with publishing practices, and capable of meeting almost impossible deadlines. Although authors know better than anyone else their subject matter and the audience to whom the work is addressed, not all can look at their work through the eyes of a potential reader. Nor do many authors have the technical skills, let alone the time, necessary to prepare a good index that meets the publisher's deadline. Some authors produce excellent indexes. Others would do better to enlist the aid of a professional indexer.

16.4 ***The indexer and deadlines.*** Most book indexes have to be made between the time page proofs are issued and the time they are returned to the typesetter—usually about four weeks. (For an illustration of how indexing fits into the overall publishing process for books, see 2.2.) An author preparing his or her own index will have to proofread as well as index the work in that short time span. Good indexing requires reflection; the indexer needs to stop frequently and decide whether the right choices have been made. A professional indexer, familiar with the publisher's requirements, may be better equipped for such reflection. For journals that publish a volume index (see 1.103), the indexer may have several months to prepare a preliminary index, adding entries as new issues of the journal arrive. The final issue in the volume is typically indexed from page proofs, however, and the indexer may have as little as a week to work on the last issue and prepare the final draft of the index.

16.5 *The role of software in indexing.* A concordance—or a complete list of terms (typically minus articles, propositions, and other irrelevant elements), with page references—can be produced for any manuscript by any number of word-processing programs. Such concordances are mainly unhelpful; in fact, the assumption that an index rather than a concordance can be generated from an electronic document without significant human intervention is false. Most indexes for publications destined for print are produced from scratch, typically from paginated page proofs, either electronic or hard copy, generated by a page-layout program. Word processors are typically used in entering and editing terms and locators in a separate document and can provide rudimentary help in the process of sorting entries and managing cross-references. Dedicated word processors for indexers can automate many of the formatting and cross-referencing tasks particular to indexing and are a good investment especially for professional indexers (see 16.104). See also 16.7.

16.6 *Single versus multiple indexes.* A single, comprehensive index—one that includes concepts and names of persons and other subjects—is recommended for most works. Certain publications, however, such as journals and lengthy scientific works that cite numerous authors of other studies, may include an index of named authors (see 16.115) in addition to a subject index. An anthology may include an author-and-title index, and a collection of poetry or hymns may have an index of first lines as well as an index of titles. It is generally an advantage if two or more indexes appearing in one work are visually distinct from one another so that users know immediately where they are. In a biological work, for example, the headings in the index of names will all be in roman type and will begin with capital letters, and there will be no subentries, whereas most of the headings in the general subject index will begin lowercase and many subentries will appear; and if there is a taxonomic index, many headings will be in italics. Separate running heads should be used, indicating the title of each index (e.g., Index of Names, Index of Subjects).

16.7 *Embedded indexes.* An embedded index consists of key terms anchored with underlying codes to particular points in the text of an electronic publication. These terms can facilitate a reader's queries to a search engine in much the same way that a good subject index gathers keywords under subject headings to increase the chances that a reader will be led only to the relevant areas of a text. For example, a search for the word "because" in a properly coded online encyclopedia might lead to those passages that discuss the Beatles' *Abbey Road* song "Because" rather than to every instance of the omnipresent conjunction. The principles of selection for embedded indexes are similar to those for traditional back-of-the-book indexes. In fact, some publishers anchor traditional back-of-the-book indexes to the files that drive their print publications in order to facilitate hyperlinked and page-independent indexes for concurrent or future electronic editions.

16.8 ***Resources for indexers.*** For greatly expanded coverage of the present guidelines, along with alternative methods, consult the second edition of Nancy Mulvany's *Indexing Books* (bibliog. 2.5). Anyone likely to prepare a number of indexes should acquire that work. For further reference, see Hans H. Wellisch, *Indexing from A to Z*, and Linda K. Fetters, *Handbook of Indexing Techniques* (bibliog. 2.5).

Components of an Index

Main Headings, Subentries, and Locators

16.9 ***Main headings for index entries.*** The main heading of an index entry is normally a noun or noun phrase—the name of a person, a place, an object, or an abstraction. An adjective alone should almost never constitute a heading; it should rather be paired with a noun to form a noun phrase. A noun phrase is sometimes inverted to allow the keyword—the word a reader is most likely to look under—to appear first. The heading is typically followed by page (or paragraph) numbers (see 16.13) and sometimes a cross-reference (see 16.15–23). For capitalization, see 16.11.

agricultural collectivization, 143–46, 198
Aron, Raymond, 312–14
Bloomsbury group, 269
Brest-Litovsk, Treaty of, 61, 76, 85
Cold War, 396–437
Communist Party (American), 425
Communist Party (British), 268
imperialism, American, 393, 403
police, Soviet secret. *See* Soviet secret police
war communism, 90, 95, 125
World War I, 34–61
Yalta conference, 348, 398

16.10 ***Index subentries.*** An entry that requires more than five or six locators (page or paragraph numbers) is usually broken up into subentries to spare readers unnecessary excursions. A subentry, like an entry, consists of a heading (usually referred to as a subheading), page references, and, rarely, cross-references. Subheadings often form a grammatical relationship with the main heading, whereby heading and subheading combine into a single phrase, as in the first example below. Other subheadings form divisions or units within the larger category of the heading, as in the second example. Both kinds can be used within one index. See also 16.127. For sub-subentries, see 16.27, 16.28.

capitalism: and American pro-Sovietism, 273, 274; bourgeoisie as symbol of, 4, 13; as creation of society, 7; Khrushchev on burying, 480; student protests against, 491, 493

Native American peoples: Ahualucos, 140–41; Chichimecs, 67–68; Huastecs, 154; Toltecs, 128–36; Zapotecs, 168–72

16.11 ***Initial lowercase letters in main headings.*** The first word of a main heading is normally capitalized only if capitalized in text—a proper noun (as in the second example in 16.10), a genus name, the title of a work, and so on. Traditionally, all main headings in an index were capitalized. Chicago recommends this practice only where the subentries are so numerous that capitalized main headings make for easier navigation. Indexes in the sciences, however, should generally avoid initial capitals because the distinction between capitalized and lowercased terms in the text may be crucial.

16.12 ***Initial lowercase letters in subheadings.*** Subheadings are always lowercased unless, as in the second example in 16.10, the keyword is capitalized in text (a proper noun, a genus name, the title of a work, etc.).

16.13 ***Locators in indexes.*** In a printed work, locators are usually page numbers, though they can also be paragraph numbers (as in this manual), section numbers, or the like. When discussion of a subject continues for more than a page, paragraph, or section, the first and last numbers (inclusive numbers) are given: 34–36 (if pages), 10.36–41 (if paragraphs), and so on (see 16.14). The abbreviations *ff.* or *et seq.* should never be used in an index. Scattered references to a subject over several pages or sections are usually indicated by separate locators (34, 35, 36; *or* 8.18, 8.20, 8.21). Though the term *passim* has often been used to indicate scattered references over a number of not necessarily sequential pages or sections (e.g., 78–88 passim), individual locators are preferred. For use of the en dash, see 6.78.

16.14 ***Inclusive numbers in indexes.*** Publishers vary in their preferences for the form of inclusive numbers (also known as continuing numbers). Although the simplest and most foolproof system is to give the full form of numbers everywhere (e.g., 234–235), Chicago prefers its traditional system (presented below), which is efficient and unambiguous. The system is followed in all examples in this chapter. Whichever form is used in the text should be used in the index as well.

FIRST NUMBER	*SECOND NUMBER*	*EXAMPLES*
Less than 100	Use all digits	3–10 71–72 96–117
100 or multiples of 100	Use all digits	100–104 1100–1113
101 through 109, 201 through 209, etc.	Use changed part only	101–8 808–33 1103–4
110 through 199, 210 through 299, etc.	Use two digits unless more are needed to include all changed parts	321–28 498–532 1087–89 1496–500 11564–615 12991–3001

Roman numerals are always given in full—for example, xxv–xxviii, cvi–cix. For use of the en dash between numerals, see 6.78; see also 9.58, 9.59.

Cross-References

16.15 ***Cross-references in indexes—general principles.*** Cross-references are of two main kinds—*see* references and *see also* references. Both are treated differently according to whether they refer to a main heading or to a subheading. *See* and *see also* are set in italics (but see 16.22). Cross-references should be used with discretion; an overabundance, besides irritating the reader, may signal the need for consolidation of entries.

16.16 ***"See" references and "double posting."*** *See* references direct a reader from, for example, an informal term to a technical one, a pseudonym to a real name, an inverted term to a noninverted one. They are also used for variant spellings, synonyms, aliases, abbreviations, and so on. The choice of the term under which the full entry appears depends largely on where readers are most likely to look. *See* references should therefore be given only where the indexer believes many readers might otherwise miss the full entry. Further, the indexer and anyone editing an index must make certain that no *see* reference merely leads to another *see* reference (a "blind cross-reference"). If, on the other hand, the entry to which the *see* reference refers is about the same length as the *see* reference itself, it is often more useful to omit the *see* reference and simply give the page numbers under both headings. Such duplication (or "double posting") will save readers a trip.

FBI (Federal Bureau of Investigation), 145–48
Federal Bureau of Investigation, 145–48
rather than
Federal Bureau of Investigation. *See* FBI

See also 16.46.

16.17 ***"See" references following a main heading.*** When a *see* reference follows a main heading, as it usually does, it is preceded by a period and *See* is capitalized. If two or more *see* references are needed, they are arranged in alphabetical order and separated by semicolons. They reflect the capitalization and word order of the main heading.

adolescence. *See* teenagers; youth
American Communist Party. *See* Communist Party (American)
baking soda. *See* sodium bicarbonate
Clemens, Samuel. *See* Twain, Mark
de Kooning, Willem. *See* Kooning, Willem de
Den Haag ('s Gravenhage). *See* Hague, The
Lunt, Mrs. Alfred. *See* Fontanne, Lynn
Mormons. *See* Latter-day Saints, Church of Jesus Christ of
Roman Catholic Church. *See* Catholicism
The Hague. *See* Hague, The
Turwyn. *See* Terouenne
universities. *See* Harvard University; Princeton University; University of Chicago
van Gogh, Vincent. *See* Gogh, Vincent van
Virgin Queen. *See* Elizabeth I

16.18 ***"See" references following a subheading.*** When a *see* reference follows a subheading, it is put in parentheses and *see* is lowercased.

statistical material, 16, 17, 89; coding
of, for typesetter (*see* typesetting);
proofreading, 183

This usage applies to both run-in and indented indexes, and to subsubentries. See 16.27, 16.28.

16.19 ***"See" references to a subheading.*** Most *see* references are to a main entry, as in the examples in 16.17. When a cross-reference directs readers to a subentry under another main heading, *see under* may be used.

lace making. *See under* Bruges
Pride and Prejudice. *See under* Austen, Jane

An alternative, to be used when a *see under* reference might fail to direct readers to the right spot, is to drop the word *under* and add the wording of the subheading, following a colon. (Although a comma is sometimes used, a colon is preferred.) The wording of the cross-reference must correspond to that of the relevant subheading so that readers can find it quickly.

lace making. *See* Bruges: lace making
Pride and Prejudice. *See* Austen, Jane:
Pride and Prejudice

16.20 ***"See also" references.*** *See also* references are placed at the end of an entry when *additional* information can be found in another entry. In run-in indexes, they follow a period; in indented indexes, they appear on a separate line (see 16.26). *See* is capitalized, and both words are in italics. If the cross-reference is to a subentry under another main heading, the words *see also under* may be used. If two or more *see also* references are needed, they are arranged in alphabetical order and separated by semicolons. As with *see* references, *see also* references must never lead to a *see* reference.

copyright, 95–100. *See also* permission to reprint; source notes
Maya: art of, 236–43; cities of, 178;
present day, 267. *See also under* Yucatán

If *see also under* does not work in a particular context—for example, when one of the *see also* references is to a main entry and another to a subentry—the word *under* should be dropped and the wording of the subentry added after a colon.

Maya: art of, 236–43; cities of, 178. *See*
also Mexican art; Yucatán: Maya

When a *see also* reference comes at the end of a subentry—a rare occurrence, and somewhat distracting—it is put in parentheses and *see* is lowercased.

equality: as bourgeois ideal, 5–6, 7;
contractual quality, 13; in democra-
cy's definition, 24 (*see also* democ-
racy); League of the Rights of Man
debate on, 234–35

16.21 ***Correspondence between cross-references and headings.*** All cross-referenced headings (and subheadings, if used) should generally be cited in full, with capitalization, inversion, and punctuation exactly as in the heading referred to. But a long heading may occasionally be shortened if no confusion results. For example, in an index with frequent references to Beethoven, "*See also* Beethoven, Ludwig van" could be shortened to "*See also* Beethoven" if done consistently.

16.22 ***Italics for "see," "see also," and so forth.*** The words *see*, *see under*, and *see also* are normally italicized. But if what follows (e.g., a book title or a foreign word) is in italics, the words are preferably set in roman to distinguish them from the rest of the cross-reference. This is not necessary when they follow italics.

Austen, Jane. See *Pride and Prejudice*
but
Pride and Prejudice. *See* Austen, Jane

16.23 ***Generic cross-references.*** Both *see* and *see also* references may include generic references; that is, they may refer to a type of heading rather than to several specific headings. The entire cross-reference is then set in italics.

public buildings. *See names of individ-*
ual buildings
sacred writings, 345–46, 390–401,
455–65. *See also specific titles*

When generic cross-references accompany specific cross-references, the former are placed last, even if out of alphabetic order. The conjunction *and* is normally used, following a semicolon (even if the generic cross-reference follows only one other cross-reference).

dogs, 35–42. *See also* American Kennel Club; shelters; *and individual breed names*

Run-In versus Indented Indexes

16.24 ***Flush-and-hang formatting for indexes.*** Indexes are generally formatted in flush-and-hang (or hanging-indention) style. The first line of each entry, the main heading, is set flush left, and any following lines are indented. When there are subentries, a choice must be made between run-in and indented styles (see 16.25, 16.26). In print publications (and electronic works modeled on the printed page), indexes are usually set in multiple columns. In manuscripts, however, columns should not be used (see 16.131).

16.25 ***Run-in style for indexes.*** In run-in style, the subentries follow the main entry and one another without starting a new line. They are separated by semicolons. If the main heading is immediately followed by subentries, it is separated from them by a colon (see first example below). If it is immediately followed by locators, these are preceded by a comma and followed by a semicolon (see second example below). Further examples of run-in entries may be seen in 16.10, 16.20, 16.141.

coordinate systems: Cartesian, 14; distance within, 154–55; time dilation and, 108–14. *See also* inertial systems; moving systems

Sabba da Castiglione, Monsignor, 209, 337; on cosmetics, 190; on whether to marry, 210–11; on wives' proper behavior, 230–40, 350

Chicago and many other scholarly publishers generally prefer run-in style because it requires less space. It works best, however, when there is only one level of subentry (but see 16.27). For the examples above in indented style, see 16.26.

16.26 ***Indented style for indexes.*** In indented style (also known as stacked style), each subentry begins a new line and is indented (usually one em). No colon appears before the first subheading, and subentries are not separated by semicolons. Runover lines must therefore be further indented (usually two ems) to distinguish them clearly from subentries; whether runover lines belong to the main entry or to subentries, their indention should be the same. (Indention is always measured from the left margin, not from the first word in the line above.) *See also* cross-references belonging to the entry as a whole appear at the end of the list of subentries (as shown in the first example below). A *see* or *see also* reference belonging to a specific subentry is placed in parentheses at the end of the subentry, as in run-in indexes (see 16.18, 16.20). See also 16.23.

coordinate systems
  Cartesian, 14
  distance within, 154–55
  time dilation and, 108–14
  See also inertial systems; moving
    systems

Sabba da Castiglione, Monsignor,
    209, 337
  on cosmetics, 190
  on whether to marry, 210–11
  on wives' proper behavior, 230–
    40, 350

Indented style is usually preferred in scientific works and reference works (such as this manual). It is particularly useful where sub-subentries are required (see 16.28).

16.27 ***Sub-subentries in run-in indexes.*** If more than a handful of sub-subentries are needed in an index, the indented format rather than the run-in type should be chosen. A very few, however, can be accommodated in a run-in index or, better, avoided by repeating a keyword (see example A). If repetition will not work, subentries requiring sub-subentries can be indented, each starting a new line but preceded by an em dash flush with the margin; the sub-subentries are then run in (see example B). Em dashes are *not* used where only one level of subentry is needed.

Example A (run-in index: sub-subentries avoided)

Inuits: language, 18; pottery, 432–37;
  tradition of, in Alaska, 123; tradi-
  tion of, in California, 127

Example B (run-in index: subentries requiring sub-subentries indented with em dash, sub-subentries run in)

Argos: cremation at, 302; and Danaos
  of Egypt, 108; Middle Helladic, 77;
  shaft graves at, 84
Arkadia, 4; Early Helladic, 26, 40; My-
  cenaean, 269, 306

armor and weapons
—attack weapons (general): Early
  Helladic and Cycladic, 33; Myce-
  naean, 225, 255, 258–60; from shaft
  graves, 89, 98–100; from tholos
  tombs, 128, 131, 133

—body armor: cuirass, 135–36, 147, 152, 244, 258, 260, 311; greaves, 135, 179, 260; helmets, 101, 135, 147, 221, 243, 258
—bow and arrow, 14, 99, 101, 166, 276
Asine: Early Helladic, 29, 36; Middle Helladic, 74; Mycenaean town and trade, 233, 258, 263; tombs at, 300

16.28 ***Sub-subentries in indented indexes.*** In an indented index, sub-subentries are best run in (see example A below). If, in a particular index, running them in makes the index hard to use, they have to be indented more deeply than the subentries (example B). When the first method is used, runover lines need not be indented more than the standard two ems, already a fairly deep indention. When the second is used, runover lines have to be indented three ems, which may result in some very short lines. See also 16.142, 16.143.

Example A (indented index: run-in sub-subentries)

- nutritional analysis of bamboo, 72–81
  - digestible energy, 94–96, 213–14, 222
  - inorganic constituents: minerals, 81, 83–85, 89; silica (*see* silica levels in bamboo); total ash, 73, 79, 80, 91, 269, 270
  - methods used, 72–73
  - organic constituents, 73–79, 269, 270; amino acids, 75–76, 86, 89; amino acids compared with other foods, 77; cellulose, 73, 78, 269, 270; crude protein, 73–75, 80, 89–91, 213, 269, 270; standard proximate analysis of, 78–80; vitamin C, 78, 79

Example B (indented index: sub-subentries indented)

- nutritional analysis of bamboo, 72–81
  - digestible energy, 94–96, 213–14, 222
  - inorganic constituents
    - minerals, 81, 83–85, 89
    - silica (*see* silica levels in bamboo)
    - total ash, 73, 79, 80, 91, 269, 270
  - methods used, 72–73
  - organic constituents, 73–79, 269, 270
    - amino acids, 75–76, 86, 89
    - amino acids compared with other foods, 77
    - cellulose, 73, 78, 269, 270
    - crude protein, 73–75, 80, 89–91, 213, 269, 270
    - standard proximate analysis of, 78–80
    - vitamin C, 78, 79

If sub-sub-subentries are required (which heaven forbid!), style B must be used, and they must be run in.

General Principles of Indexing

16.29 ***Style and usage in the index relative to the work.*** Each index is a tool for one particular work. By the time the index is prepared, the style used in the work has long been determined, and the index must reflect that style. If British spelling has been used throughout the text, it must be used in the index. Shakspere in the text calls for Shakspere in the index. Hernando Cortez should not be indexed as Cortés. Older geographical terms should not be altered to their present form (Constantinople to Istanbul, Siam to Thailand, etc.). The use of accents and other diacritical marks must be observed exactly as in the text (Schönberg *not* Schoenberg). Only in the rare instance in which readers might not find information sought should a cross-reference be given. Any terms italicized or enclosed in quotation marks in the text should be treated similarly in the index. If inclusive numbers are given in full in the text (see 16.14; see also 9.61), that style should be used in the index.

16.30 ***Choosing indexing terms.*** The wording for all headings should be concise and logical. As far as possible, terms should be chosen according to the author's usage. If, for example, the author of a philosophical work uses *essence* to mean *being*, the main entry should be under *essence*, possibly with a cross-reference from *being*. If the terms are used interchangeably, the indexer must choose one; in this case a cross-reference is imperative. An indexer relatively unfamiliar with the subject matter may find it useful to ask the author for a brief list of terms that must appear in the index, though such terms will usually suggest themselves as the indexer proceeds through the proofs. Common sense is the best guide. For journals, terms may have been established in advance, either by a predetermined list of keywords within the discipline or by previous journal indexes (see 1.104). See also 16.21.

16.31 ***Terms that should not be indexed.*** Although proper names are an important element in most indexes, there are times when they should be ignored. In a work on the history of the automobile in the United States, for example, an author might write, "After World War II small sports cars like the British MG, often owned by returning veterans, began to make their appearance in college towns like Northampton, Massachusetts, and Ann Arbor, Michigan." An indexer should resist the temptation to index these place-names; the two towns mentioned have nothing to do with the theme of the work. The MG sports car, on the other hand, should be indexed, given the subject of the work. Similarly, names or terms that occur in passing references and scene-setting elements that are not essential to the theme of a work need not be indexed. (An exception might be made if certain readers of a publication would be likely to look for their own names in the index. Occasional vanity entries are not forbidden.)

Indexing Proper Names and Variants

16.32 ***Choosing between variant names.*** When proper names appear in the text in more than one form, or in an incomplete form, the indexer must decide which form to use for the main entry and which for the cross-reference (if any) and occasionally must furnish identifying information not given in the text. Few indexes need to provide the kind of detail found in biographical or geographical dictionaries, though reference works of that kind will help in decision making.

16.33 ***Indexing familiar forms of personal names.*** The full form of personal names should be indexed as they have become widely known. (Any variant spelling preferred in the text, however, must likewise be preferred in the index; see 16.29.) Note that brackets are used in the following examples to distinguish Chicago's editorial glosses from parenthetical tags such as those in some of the examples in 16.34, 16.35, 16.36, 16.37, and 16.38, which would actually appear in a published index.

Cervantes, Miguel de [*not* Cervantes Saavedra, Miguel de]
Fisher, M. F. K. [*not* Fisher, Mary Frances Kennedy]
London, Jack [*not* London, John Griffith]
Poe, Edgar Allan [*not* Poe, E. A., *or* Poe, Edgar A.]

But in a work devoted to, say, M. F. K. Fisher or Cervantes, the full form of the name should appear in the index.

16.34 ***Indexing pseudonyms.*** Persons who have used pseudonyms or other professional names are usually listed under their real names. If the pseudonym has become a household word, however, it should be used as the main entry, with the real name in parentheses if it is relevant to the work; a cross-reference is seldom necessary.

Æ. *See* Russell, George William
Ouida. *See* Ramée, Marie Louise de la
Ramée, Marie Louise de la (pseud. Ouida)
Russell, George William (pseud. Æ)

but
Molière (Jean-Baptiste Poquelin)
Monroe, Marilyn (Norma Jean Baker)
Twain, Mark (Samuel Langhorne Clemens)
Voltaire (François-Marie Arouet)

16.35 ***Indexing persons with the same name.*** Persons with the same name should be distinguished by a middle initial (if either has one) or by a parenthetical tag.

Campbell, James
Campbell, James B.
Field, David Dudley (clergyman)
Field, David Dudley (lawyer)
Pitt, William (the elder)
Pitt, William (the younger)

In works that include many persons with the same last name (often a family name), parenthetical identifications are useful. For example, in *Two Lucky People*, by Milton Friedman and Rose D. Friedman (University of Chicago Press, 1998), the following identifications appear:

Friedman, David (son of MF and RDF)
Friedman, Helen (sister of MF)
Friedman, Janet (daughter of MF and RDF)
Friedman, Milton (MF)
Friedman, Rose Director (RDF)
Friedman, Sarah Ethel Landau (mother of MF)

16.36 ***Indexing married women's names.*** A married woman who is known variously by her birth name or by her married name, depending on context, should be indexed by her birth name unless the married name is the more familiar. A married woman who uses both birth and married names together is usually indexed by her married name (unless the two names are hyphenated). Parenthetical clarifications or cross-references may be supplied as necessary.

Marinoff, Fania (Mrs. Carl Van Vechten)
Sutherland, Joan (Mrs. Richard Bonynge)
Van Vechten, Fania. *See* Marinoff, Fania
but
Besant, Annie (née Wood)
Browning, Elizabeth Barrett
Clinton, Hillary Rodham

16.37 ***Indexing monarchs, popes, and the like.*** Monarchs, popes, and others who are known by their official names, often including a roman numeral, should be indexed under the official name. Identifying tags may be omitted or expanded as appropriate in a particular work.

Anne, Queen
Benedict XVI (pope)
Elizabeth II (queen)

16.38 ***Indexing princes, dukes, and other titled persons.*** Princes and princesses are usually indexed under their given names. Dukes, earls, and the like are indexed under the title. A cross-reference may be needed where a title differs from a family name.

Charles, Prince of Wales
Cooper, Anthony Ashley. *See* Shaftesbury, 7th Earl of
Shaftesbury, 7th Earl of (Anthony Ashley Cooper)
William, Prince

Unless necessary for identification, the titles *Lord* and *Lady* are best omitted from an index, since their use with given names is far from simple. *Sir* and *Dame*, while easier to cope with, are also unnecessary in most indexes. Brackets are used here to denote Chicago's editorial glosses (see 16.33).

Churchill, Winston [*or* Churchill, Sir Winston]
Hess, Myra [*or* Hess, Dame Myra]
Thatcher, Margaret [even if referred to as Lady Thatcher in text]

But in a work dealing with the nobility, or a historical work such as *The Lisle Letters* (University of Chicago Press, 1981), from which the following examples are taken, titles may be an appropriate or needed element in index entries. The last two examples illustrate distinctions for which expert advice may be needed.

Arundell, Sir John
Audley, Thomas Lord
Grey, Lady Jane ["Lady Jane Grey" in text]
Whethill, Elizabeth (Muston), Lady ["Lady Whethill" in text]

16.39 ***Clerical titles in index entries.*** Like titles of nobility, such abbreviations as *Rev.* or *Msgr.* should be used only when necessary for identification (see 16.38).

Cranmer, Thomas (archbishop of Canterbury)
Councell, George E. (rector of the Church of the Holy Spirit)
Jaki, Rev. Stanley S.
Manniere, Msgr. Charles L.

16.40 ***Academic titles and degrees in index entries.*** Academic titles such as *Professor* and *Doctor*, used before a name, are not retained in indexing, nor are abbreviations of degrees such as *PhD* or *MD*.

16.41 ***"Jr.," "Sr.," "III," and the like in index entries.*** Abbreviations such as *Jr.* are retained in indexing but are placed after the given name and preceded by a comma.

King, Martin Luther, Jr.
Stevenson, Adlai E., III

16.42 ***Indexing saints.*** Saints are indexed under their given names unless another name is equally well or better known. Parenthetical identifications or cross-references (as well as discretion) may be needed. See also 16.75.

Aquinas. *See* Thomas Aquinas, Saint
Borromeo, Saint Charles
Catherine of Siena, Saint
Chrysostom, Saint John
Thomas, Saint (the apostle)
Thomas Aquinas, Saint

16.43 ***Indexing persons whose full names are unknown.*** Persons referred to in the work by first or last names only should be parenthetically identified if the full name is unavailable.

John (Smith's shipmate on *Stella*)
Thaxter (family physician)

16.44 ***Indexing incomplete names or names alluded to in text.*** Even if only an epithet or a shortened form of a name is used in the text, the index should give the full form.

TEXT	*INDEX*
the lake	Michigan, Lake
the bay	San Francisco Bay
the Village	Greenwich Village
the Great Emancipator	Lincoln, Abraham

16.45 ***Indexing confusing names.*** When the same name is used of more than one entity, identifying tags should be provided.

New York (city) *or* New York City
New York (state) *or* New York State

16.46 ***Indexing abbreviations and acronyms.*** Organizations that are widely known under their abbreviations should be indexed and alphabetized according to the abbreviations. Parenthetical glosses, cross-references, or both should be added if the abbreviations, however familiar to the indexer, may not be known to all readers of the particular work. Lesser-known organizations are better indexed under the full name, with a cross-reference from the abbreviation if it is used frequently in the work. See also 16.16.

EEC (European Economic Community)
MLA. *See* Modern Language Association
NATO

Indexing Titles of Publications and Other Works

16.47 ***Typographic treatment for indexed titles of works.*** Titles of newspapers, books, journals, stories, poems, artwork, musical compositions, and such should be treated typographically as they appear in text—whether italicized, set in roman and enclosed in quotation marks, or simply capitalized (see also 8.154–95).

16.48 ***Indexing newspaper titles.*** English-language newspapers should be indexed as they are generally known, whether or not the city of publication appears on the masthead. The name is italicized, as in text, and *The* is omitted. If necessary, a city of publication may be added in parentheses following the title.

Chicago Sun-Times
Christian Science Monitor
Cleveland Plain Dealer
New York Times
Times (London)
Wall Street Journal

For foreign-language newspapers, any article (*Le*, *Die*, etc.) normally follows the name, separated by a comma (but see 16.52). The city of publication may be added parenthetically, following the title.

Monde, Le (Paris)
Prensa, La (Buenos Aires)
Süddeutsche Zeitung, Die

16.49 ***Indexing magazine and journal titles.*** Magazines and journals are indexed in the same way as newspapers (see 16.48). *The* is omitted in English-language publications, but the article is included, following the name, in foreign ones (but see 16.52).

JAMA (*Journal of the American Medical Association*)
New England Journal of Medicine
Spiegel, Der
Time

16.50 ***Indexing authored titles of works.*** A published work, a musical composition, or a piece of art that merits its own main entry should also be indexed under the name of its creator, often as a subentry. The main heading is followed by the creator's name in parentheses (except in an index in which all titles cited have the same creator).

Look Homeward, Angel (Wolfe), 34–37
Wolfe, Thomas: childhood, 6–8; early literary influences on, 7–10; *Look Homeward, Angel*, 34–37; and Maxwell Perkins, 30–41

Several works by a single creator are sometimes treated as subentries under a new main heading, following a main entry on the creator. This device is best employed when many works as well as many topics are listed. Separate main entries may also be included for the works.

Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus, 49–51, 55–56; early musical compositions of, 67–72, 74–80; to Italy with father, 85–92; Salzburg appointment, 93–95; in Vienna, 98–105

Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus, works of: *La clemenza di Tito*, 114; *Don Giovanni*, 115; *Idomeneo*, 105–6; *Jupiter* Symphony, 107; *The Magic Flute*, 111–13; *The Marriage of Figaro*, 109–12

16.51 ***Indexing English-language titles beginning with an article.*** In titles beginning with *A*, *An*, or *The*, the article is traditionally placed at the end of the title, following a comma, when the title forms a main heading. When such a title occurs as a subheading, it appears in its normal position in a run-in index, where inversion would be clumsy and unnecessary, but is inverted in an indented index for easier alphabetic scanning.

Professor and the Madman, The (Winchester), 209–11
Winchester, Simon: *Pacific Rising*, 190–95; *The Professor and the Madman*, 209–11; *The River at the Center of the World*, 211–15

Winchester, Simon
  Pacific Rising, 190–95
  Professor and the Madman, The, 209–11
  River at the Center of the World, The, 211–15

See also 16.56.

16.52 ***Indexing foreign-language titles beginning with an article.*** Since initial articles in foreign titles sometimes modify the following word, they are usually retained in an index. In publications intended for a general audience, especially those that mention only a few such titles, it is acceptable to list the titles in the index exactly as they appear in the text, without inversion and alphabetized according to the article.

Eine kleine Nachtmusik (Mozart), 23
La bohème (Puccini), 211

In a more specialized work, or any work intended for readers who are likely to be well versed in the languages of any foreign titles mentioned in the text, the titles may be inverted as they are in English (see 16.51). According to this practice, the articles follow the rest of the title in main headings but remain, as in English titles, in their normal position in run-in subheadings. In both positions, the articles are ignored in alphabetizing.

bohème, La (Puccini), 211
clemenza de Tito, La (Mozart), 22
kleine Nachtmusik, Eine (Mozart), 23
Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus: *La clemenza de Tito*, 22; *Eine kleine Nachtmusik*, 23
trovatore, Il (Verdi), 323
but
"Un deux trois" (Luboff), 47 [alphabetize under *U*]

An indexer unfamiliar with the language of a title should make sure that the article is indeed an article and not a number (see last example above). French *un* and *une*, for example, and German *ein* and *eine* can mean *one* as well as *a*.

16.53 ***Indexing titles beginning with a preposition.*** Unlike articles, prepositions beginning a title always remain in their original position and are never dropped, whether in English or foreign titles—nor are they ignored in alphabetizing.

For Whom the Bell Tolls
Por quién doblan las campanas

16.54 ***Indexing titles ending with a question mark or exclamation point.*** A question mark or exclamation point at the end of an indexed title should be followed by a comma wherever a comma is called for by the syntax of the heading. This slight departure from previous editions of the manual favors logic over aesthetic considerations. See also 16.94, 6.119.

Carver, Raymond, 23–27, 101, 143–44;
"Are You a Doctor?," 25; *Will You Please Be Quiet, Please?*, 25–27, 143.
See also Iowa Writers' Workshop

16.55 ***Subtitles in index entries.*** Subtitles of books or articles are omitted both in main headings and in subheadings unless essential for identification.

Alphabetizing

16.56 ***Alphabetizing main headings—the basic rule.*** To exploit the virtues of alphabetizing and thus ease the way for readers, the first word in a main heading should always determine the location of the entry. This principle occasionally entails inversion of the main heading. Thus, for example, *A Tale of Two Cities* is inverted as *Tale of Two Cities, A* and alphabetized under T, where readers would be inclined to look first. See also 16.9, 16.51, 16.52. For subentries, see 16.68–70.

16.57 ***Computerized sorting.*** Few computerized sorting options—and none of the standard options available with ordinary word processors—can perfectly conform to either system of alphabetization as described here. Some dedicated indexing programs, on the other hand, have been specially programmed to sort according to the letter-by-letter or word-by-word system in conformance with the detailed guidelines presented in this section. Those using a word processor to create their indexes will have to edit the finished product for the glitches and inconsistencies that invariably remain. See also 16.104, 16.67.

Letter by Letter or Word by Word?

16.58 ***Two systems of alphabetizing—an overview.*** The two principal modes of alphabetizing—or sorting—indexes are the *letter-by-letter* and the *word-by-word* systems. A choice between the two should be made before indexing begins, though occasionally an indexer will find, as indexing progresses, that a change from one to the other is appropriate. (Such a change would of course need to be applied to the entire index.) Dictionaries are arranged letter by letter, library catalogs word by word (though online catalogs can often be sorted by other criteria, such as format or availability). Chicago, most university presses, and many other publishers have traditionally preferred the letter-by-letter system but will normally not impose it on a well-prepared index that has been arranged word by word. In an index including many open compounds starting with the same word, the word-by-word system may be easier for users (the word-by-word system is customary in telephone directories). Both systems have their advantages and disadvantages, and few users are confused by either. Most people simply scan an alphabetic block of an index until they find what they are looking for. The indexer must understand both systems, however, and the following paragraphs offer guidelines for each. For a fuller discussion, consult Nancy Mulvany, *Indexing Books* (bibliog. 2.5).

16.59 *The letter-by-letter system.* In the letter-by-letter system, alphabetizing continues up to the first parenthesis or comma; it then starts again after the punctuation point. Spaces and all other punctuation marks are ignored. Both open and hyphenated compounds such as *New York* or *self-pity* are treated as single words. The order of precedence is one word, word followed by a parenthesis, word followed by a comma, then (ignoring spaces and other punctuation) word followed by a number, and word followed by letters. The index to this manual, in accordance with Chicago's traditional preference, is arranged letter by letter.

16.60 *The word-by-word system.* In the word-by-word system, alphabetizing continues only up to the end of the first word (counting hyphenated compounds as one word), using subsequent words only when additional headings begin with the same word. As in the letter-by-letter system, alphabetizing continues up to the first parenthesis or comma; it then starts again after the punctuation point. The order of precedence is one word, word followed by a parenthesis, word followed by a comma, word followed by a space, then (ignoring other punctuation) word followed by a number, and word followed by letters.

16.61 *The two systems compared.* In both systems a parenthesis or comma (in that order) interrupts the alphabetizing, and other punctuation marks (hyphens, slashes, quotation marks, periods, etc.) are ignored. The columns below illustrate the similarities and differences between the systems.

LETTER BY LETTER	*WORD BY WORD*
NEW (Neighbors Ever Watchful)	NEW (Neighbors Ever Watchful)
NEW (Now End War)	NEW (Now End War)
New, Arthur	New, Arthur
New, Zoe	New, Zoe
new-12 compound	New Deal
newborn	new economics
newcomer	New England
New Deal	new math
new economics	New Thorndale
newel	new town
New England	New Year's Day
"new-fangled notions"	new-12 compound
Newfoundland	newborn
newlyweds	newcomer
new math	newel
new/old continuum	"new-fangled notions"
news, lamentable	Newfoundland
News, Networks, and the Arts	newlyweds
newsboy	new/old continuum
news conference	news, lamentable
newsletter	*News, Networks, and the Arts*
News of the World (Queen)	news conference
news release	*News of the World* (Queen)
newt	news release
NEWT (Northern Estuary Wind Tunnel)	newsboy
New Thorndale	newsletter
new town	newt
New Year's Day	NEWT (Northern Estuary Wind Tunnel)

General Rules of Alphabetizing

16.62 ***Alphabetizing items with the same name.*** When a person, a place, and a thing have the same name, they are arranged in normal alphabetical order.

hoe, garden	London, England
Hoe, Robert	London, Jack

Common sense must be exercised. If Amy London and Carolyn Hoe were to appear in the same index as illustrated above, adjustments in the other entries would be needed.

garden hoe
hoe. *See* garden hoe
Hoe, Carolyn
Hoe, Robert
London (England)
London, Amy
London, Jack

16.63 ***Alphabetizing initials versus spelled-out names.*** Initials used in place of a given name come before any spelled-out name beginning with the same letter.

Oppenheimer, J. Robert
Oppenheimer, James N.
Oppenheimer, K. T.
Oppenheimer, Katharine S.

16.64 ***Alphabetizing abbreviations.*** Acronyms, initialisms, and most abbreviations are alphabetized as they appear, not according to their spelled-out versions, and are interspersed alphabetically among entries. See also 16.46, 16.75.

faculty clubs
FBI
Feely, John
LBJ. *See* Johnson, Lyndon B.
NATO
North Pole
NOW (National Organization for Women)

16.65 ***Alphabetizing headings beginning with numerals.*** Isolated entries beginning with numerals are alphabetized as though spelled out. (For numerals occurring in the middle of a heading, see 16.61, 16.66.)

1984 (Orwell) [*alphabetized as* nineteen eighty-four]
125th Street [*alphabetized as* one hundred twenty-fifth street]
10 Downing Street [*alphabetized as* ten downing street]

If many numerals occur in an index, they may be listed together in numerical order at the beginning of the index, before the *A*s.

16.66 ***Alphabetizing similar headings containing numerals.*** When two or more similar headings with numerals occur together, they are ordered numerically, regardless of how they would be spelled out.

Henry III
Henry IV
Henry V

L7
L44
L50

section 9
section 44
section 77

The *L* entries above would be placed at the beginning of the *L* section. See also 16.61.

16.67 ***Alphabetizing accented letters.*** Words beginning with or including accented letters are alphabetized as though they were unaccented. (Note that this rule is intended for English-language indexes that include some foreign words. The alphabetizing practices of other languages are not relevant in such instances.)

Ubeda
Über den Gipfel
Ubina

Schoenberg
Schomberg
Schönborn

This system, more than adequate for most English-language indexes, may need to be supplemented by more comprehensive systems for indexes that contain many terms in other languages. The Unicode Consortium has developed extensive specifications and recommendations for sorting (or collating) the characters used in many of the world's languages. For more information, refer to the latest version of the *Unicode Collation Algorithm*, published by the Unicode Consortium (bibliog. 5). See also 11.2.

Subentries

16.68 ***Alphabetical order of subentries.*** Introductory articles, prepositions, and conjunctions are disregarded in alphabetizing subentries (but see 16.53), whether the subentries are run in or indented. To preserve the alphabetic logic of the keywords, avoid substantive introductory words at the beginnings of subheadings (e.g., "*relations* with," "*views* on").

Churchill, Winston: as anti-Fascist,
  369; on Curzon line, 348, 379; and
  de Gaulle, 544n4

In indented style, where alphabetizing functions more visually, it may be better to dispense with such introductory words or to invert the headings, amplifying them as needed. The subheadings from the first example could be edited for a run-in index as follows:

Churchill, Winston
  anti-Fascism of, 369
  Curzon line, views on, 348, 379
  de Gaulle, relations with, 544n4

16.69 *Numerical order of subentries.* Occasional subentries demand numerical order even if others in the same index (but not the same entry) are alphabetized.

Daley, Richard J. (mayor): third term,
205; fourth term, 206–7
flora, alpine: at 1,000-meter level, 46,
130–35; at 1,500-meter level, 146–
54; at 2,000-meter level, 49, 164–74

16.70 *Chronological order of subentries.* In a run-in index, the subentries for the subject of a biography may be arranged chronologically rather than alphabetically so as to provide a quick summary of the subject's career and to avoid, for example, a subheading "death of" near the beginning of the entry. This system should be used with caution, however, and only when the biographical and chronological logic is obvious from the subentries.

Personal Names

16.71 *Indexing names with particles.* In alphabetizing family names containing particles, the indexer must consider the individual's personal preference (if known) as well as traditional and national usages. *Merriam-Webster's Biographical Dictionary* (bibliog. 4.1) is an authoritative guide for well-known persons long deceased; library catalogs and encyclopedias are far broader in scope. Cross-references are often advisable (see 16.17). Note the wide variations in the following list of actual names arranged alphabetically as they might appear in an index. See also 8.5, 16.76, 16.84.

Beauvoir, Simone de
Ben-Gurion, David
Costa, Uriel da
da Cunha, Euclides
D'Amato, Alfonse
de Gaulle, Charles
di Leonardo, Micaela
Keere, Pieter van den
Kooning, Willem de
La Fontaine, Jean de
Leonardo da Vinci
Medici, Lorenzo de'
Van Rensselaer, Stephen

Charles de Gaulle is a good example of the opportunity for occasional editorial discretion: *Webster's* and the Library of Congress, for example, list the French statesman under "Gaulle"; the entry in *American Heritage* is under "de Gaulle"—the usage normally preferred by Chicago.

16.72 ***Indexing compound names.*** Compound family names, with or without hyphens, are usually alphabetized according to the first element (but see 16.36). See also 8.6, 8.11, 16.83, 16.84.

Lloyd George, David
Mies van der Rohe, Ludwig
Sackville-West, Victoria
Teilhard de Chardin, Pierre

16.73 ***Indexing names with "Mac" or "Mc."*** Names beginning with *Mac* or *Mc* are alphabetized letter by letter, as they appear.

Macalister, Donald
MacAlister, Paul
Macauley, Catharine
Macmillan, Harold
Madison, James
McAllister, Ward
McAuley, Catherine
McMillan, Edwin M.

16.74 ***Indexing names with "O'."*** Names beginning with *O'* are alphabetized as if the apostrophe were missing.

Onassis, Aristotle
O'Neill, Eugene
Ongaro, Francesco dall'

16.75 ***Indexing names with "Saint."*** A family name in the form of a saint's name is alphabetized letter by letter as the name is spelled, whether *Saint*, *San*, *St.*, or however. A cross-reference may be useful if *Saint* and *St.* are far apart in an index. See also 16.42, 16.93.

Sainte-Beuve, Charles-Augustin
Saint-Gaudens, Augustus
Saint-Saëns, Camille
San Martin, José de
St. Denis, Ruth
St. Laurent, Louis Stephen

Foreign Personal Names

16.76 ***Indexing Arabic names.*** Modern Arabic names consisting of one or more given names followed by a surname present no problem.

Himsi, Ahmad Hamid
Sadat, Anwar

Arabic surnames prefixed by *al* or *el* (the) are alphabetized under the element following the particle; the article is treated like *de* in French names.

Hakim, Tawfiq al-
Jamal, Muhammad Hamid al-

Names beginning with *Abu*, *Abd*, and *Ibn*, elements as integral to the names as *Mc* or *Fitz*, are alphabetized under those elements.

Abu Zafar Nadvi, Syed
Ibn Saud, Abdul Aziz

Context and readership may suggest cross-references. For example, in an index to a work likely to have readers unfamiliar with Arabic names, a cross-reference may be useful (i.e., "al-Farabi. *See* Farabi, al-").

16.77 ***Indexing Burmese names.*** Burmese persons are usually known by a given name of one or more elements and should be indexed under the first element. If the name is preceded in text by a term of respect (*U*, *Daw*, etc.), that term either is omitted or follows in the index.

Aung San Suu Kyi [alphabetize under *A*]
Thant, U [alphabetize under T]

16.78 ***Indexing Chinese names.*** Chinese names should be indexed as spelled in the work, whether in the pinyin or the Wade-Giles system. Cross-references are needed only if alternative forms are used in the text. Since the family name precedes the given name in Chinese usage, names are not inverted in the index, and no comma is used.

Li Bai [pinyin; alphabetize under *L*]
Mao Tse-tung [Wade-Giles; alphabetize under *M*]

Persons of Chinese ancestry or origin who have adopted the Western practice of giving the family name last are indexed with inversion and a comma.

Kung, H. H. Tsou, Tang

16.79 ***Indexing Hungarian names.*** In Hungarian practice the family name precedes the given name—for example, Bartók Béla, Molnár Ferenc. In English contexts, however, such names are usually inverted; in an index they are therefore reinverted, with a comma added.

Bartók, Béla Molnár, Ferenc

Family names beginning with an initial should be indexed under the initial (see also 8.13).

É. Kiss, Katalin

16.80 *Indexing Indian names.* Modern Indian names generally appear with the family name last and are indexed accordingly. As with all names, the personal preference of the individual as well as usage should be observed.

Gandhi, Mohandas Karamchand
Krishna Menon, V. K.
Narayan, R. K.

16.81 *Indexing Indonesian names.* Usage varies. Some Indonesians (especially Javanese) use only a single, given name. Others use more than one name; even though the given name comes first, these are often indexed like Chinese names, with no inversion or punctuation (see third and fourth examples). Indonesians with Muslim names and certain others whose names may include a title or an honorific are indexed by the final element, with inversion. The indexer must therefore ascertain how a person's full name is referred to in text and which part of the name is used for a short reference.

Habibi, B. J.
Hatta, Mohammed
Marzuki Darusman
Pramoedya Ananta Toer
Suharto
Sukarno
Suryokusumo, Wiyono

16.82 *Indexing Japanese names.* In Japanese usage the family name precedes the given name; names are therefore not inverted in the index, and no comma is used. If the name is westernized, as it often is by authors writing in English, the family name comes last. The indexer must therefore make certain which practice is followed in the text so that the family name always appears first in the index.

Tajima Yumiko [alphabetize under *T*]
Yoshida Shigeru [alphabetize under *Y*]
but
Kurosawa, Noriaki [referred to in text as Noriaki Kurosawa]

16.83 *Indexing Portuguese names.* The Portuguese, unlike the Spanish (see below), index surnames by the last element. This does not include the designations *Filho* (son), *Neto* (grandson), and *Júnior*, which always follow the second family name.

Câmara Júnior, José Mattoso
Jucá Filho, Cândido
Martins, Luciana de Lima
Silva Neto, Serafim da
Vasconcellos, J. Leite de

Where both Portuguese and Spanish names appear in the same context, cross-references may be necessary.

16.84 ***Indexing Spanish names.*** In Spain and in some Latin American countries a double family name is often used, of which the first element is the father's family name and the second the mother's birth name (*her* father's family name). The two names are sometimes joined by *y* (and). Such compound names are alphabetized under the first element. Cross-references will often be needed, especially if the person is generally known under the second element or if the indexer is uncertain where to place the main entry. *Webster's* is a good guide for persons listed there. Where many Spanish names appear, an indexer not conversant with Spanish or Latin American culture should seek help.

García Lorca, Federico
Lorca, Federico García. *See* García Lorca, Federico
Ortega y Gasset, José
Sánchez Mendoza, Juana

When the particle *de* appears in a Spanish name, the family name, under which the person is indexed, may be either the preceding or the following name (depending in part on how a person is known). If it is not clear from the text and the name is not in *Webster's* or otherwise widely known, a cross-reference will be needed.

Balboa, Vasco Núñez de
Esquivel de Sánchez, María
Fernández de Navarrete, Juan
Fernández de Oviedo, Gonzalo

Traditionally, a married woman replaced her mother's family name with her husband's (first) family name, sometimes preceded by *de*. Her name should be alphabetized, however, by the first family name (her father's).

Mendoza de Peña, María Carmen [woman's name after marriage]
Mendoza Salinas, María Carmen [woman's name before marriage]
Peña Montalvo, Juan Alberto [husband's name]

In telephone directories and elsewhere, some women appear under the husband's family name, but this is not a recommended bibliographic or indexing practice. Many modern women in Spanish-speaking countries no longer take the husband's family name. See also 8.11.

16.85 *Indexing Thai names.* Although family names are used in Thailand, Thais are normally known by their given names, which come first, as in English names. The name is often alphabetized under the first name, but practice varies. Seek expert help.

Sarit Thanarat [*or* Thanarat, Sarit]
Sivaraksa, Sulak [*or* Sulak Sivaraksa]
Supachai Panitchpakdi

16.86 *Indexing Vietnamese names.* Vietnamese names consist of three elements, the family name being the first. Since Vietnamese persons are usually referred to by the last part of their given names (Premier Diem, General Giap), they are best indexed under that form.

Diem, Ngo Dinh [*cross-reference under* Ngo Dinh Diem]
Giap, Vo Nguyen [*cross-reference under* Vo Nguyen Giap]

16.87 *Indexing other Asian names.* Throughout Asia, many names derive from Arabic, Chinese, the European languages, and other languages, regardless of where the bearers of the names were born. In the Philippines, for example, names follow a Western order, giving precedence to the family name, though the names themselves may be derived from local languages. In some parts of Asia, titles denoting status form part of a name as it appears in written work and must be dealt with appropriately. When the standard reference works do not supply an answer, query the author.

Names of Organizations and Businesses

16.88 *Omission of article in indexed names of organizations.* In indexing organizations whose names begin with *the* (which would be lowercased in running text), the article is omitted.

Sutherland Group
University of Chicago

16.89 *Indexing personal names as corporate names.* When used as names of businesses or other organizations, full personal names are not inverted, and the corporate name is alphabetized under the first name or initials. An organization widely known by the family name, however, should be indexed under that name. In both instances, cross-references may be appropriate.

A. G. Edwards & Sons, Inc. [alphabetize under *A*]
Penney, J. C. *See* J. C. Penney Company, Inc.
Saphir, Kurt. *See* Kurt Saphir Pianos, Inc.
but
John G. Shedd Aquarium. *See* Shedd Aquarium

A personal name and the name of that person's company should be indexed separately.

Morgan, Junius S., 39, 42–44; J. S.
  Morgan & Company, 45–48
J. S. Morgan & Company, 45–48. *See*
  also Morgan, Junius S.

Names of Places

16.90 ***Indexing names beginning with "Mount," "Lake," and such.*** Proper names of mountains, lakes, and so forth that begin with a generic name are usually inverted and alphabetized under the nongeneric name.

Geneva, Lake
Japan, Sea of
McKinley, Mount

Names of cities or towns beginning with topographic elements, as well as islands known as "Isle of . . . ," are alphabetized under the first element.

Isle of Pines
Isle of Wight
Lake Geneva, WI
Mount Vernon, NY
Valley Forge

16.91 ***Indexing names beginning with the definite article.*** Aside from a very few cities such as The Hague (unless the Dutch form *Den Haag* is used; see 16.92) or The Dalles, where *The* is part of the formal name and thus capitalized, an initial *the* used informally with place-names is omitted in indexing. See also 8.44.

Bronx
Hague, The
Loop (Chicago's downtown)
Netherlands
Ozarks
Philippines

16.92 ***Indexing names beginning with foreign definite articles.*** Names of places beginning with *El*, *Le*, *La*, and such, whether in English- or non-English-speaking countries, are alphabetized according to the article.

Den Haag
El Dorado
El Paso
La Crosse
La Mancha
Le Havre
Les Baux-de-Provence
Los Alamos

16.93 ***Indexing names of places beginning with "Saint."*** Names of places beginning with *Saint*, *Sainte*, *St.*, or *Ste.* should be indexed as they appear in the text—that is, abbreviated only if abbreviated in text. Like personal names, they are alphabetized as they appear. Cross-references may be appropriate (e.g., "Saint. *See* St.," or vice versa). Note that French hyphenates place-names with *Saint*. See also 10.31, 11.29.

Saint-Cloud (in France)
Sainte-Foy
Saint-Luc
St. Cloud (in Florida)
Ste.-Anne-de-Beaupré
St. Louis
St. Vincent Island

Punctuating Indexes: A Summary

16.94 ***Comma in index entries.*** In both run-in and indented indexes, when a main heading is followed immediately by locators (usually page or paragraph numbers; see 16.13), a comma appears before the first locator. Commas appear between locators. Commas are also used when a heading is an inversion or when a main heading is qualified, without subentries. The second example illustrates three uses of the comma. For the role of commas in alphabetizing, see 16.61.

lighthouses, early history of, 40–42
Sabba da Castiglione, Monsignor, 209,
  337; on cosmetics, 190, 195, 198

16.95 ***Colon in index entries.*** In a run-in index, when a main heading is followed immediately by subentries, a colon appears before the first subheading.

In an indented index, no punctuation is used after the main heading. A colon is also used in a cross-reference to a subentry. See also 16.20.

Maya: art of, 236–43; cities of, 178. *See also* Yucatán: Maya	Maya art of, 236–43 cities of, 178 *See also* Yucatán: Maya

16.96 ***Semicolon in index entries.*** When subentries or sub-subentries are run in, they are separated by semicolons. Cross-references, if more than one, are also separated by semicolons.

astronomy: Galileo's works on, 20–
21, 22–23, 24; skills needed in, 548–
49. *See also* Brahe, Tycho; comets;
Flamsteed, John

16.97 ***Period in index entries.*** In a run-in index a period is used only before *See* (or *See under*) or *See also* (or *See also under*). In an indented index a period is used only before *See*. When a *see* or *see also* reference in parentheses follows a subheading or a subentry in either a run-in or an indented index, no period is used. No period follows the final word of any entry. For examples, see 16.17, 16.20, 16.19, 16.143.

16.98 ***Parentheses in index headings.*** Parentheses enclose identification or supplementary information. For the role of parentheses in alphabetizing, see 16.61.

Charles I (king of England)
Charles I (king of Portugal)
Of Human Bondage (Maugham)

16.99 ***Em dash in index entries.*** For use of the em dash in run-in indexes that require occasional sub-subentries, see example B in 16.27.

16.100 ***En dash in index entries.*** The en dash is used for page ranges and all other inclusive locators (e.g., "dogs, 135–42"). For abbreviating inclusive numbers in indexes, see 16.14. See also 6.78, the index to this manual, and examples throughout this chapter.

The Mechanics of Indexing

Before Indexing Begins: Tools and Decisions

16.101 *Schedule for indexing.* Anyone making an index for the first time should know that the task is intensive and time-consuming. An index for a three-hundred-page book could take as much as three weeks' work or more. See also 16.4.

16.102 *Indexing from page proofs.* For a printed work, the indexer must have in hand a clean and complete set of proofs before beginning to index. Some indexers prefer also to have a PDF version of the proofs so that they can search for specific terms (see 16.105). For a journal volume, the work may begin when the first issue to be indexed has been paginated, and it may continue for several months, until page proofs for the final issue in the volume have been generated. For an electronic work, unless the index is produced by coding the electronic files, a printout showing both content and locators may be required. See also 16.108, 16.117–25.

16.103 *Publisher's indexing preferences.* Before beginning work, the indexer should know the publisher's preferences in such matters as alphabetizing, run-in or indented style, inclusive numbers, handling of numeric headings, and the like (all matters dealt with in earlier sections of this chapter). For a journal volume index, the style is likely to be well established, and the indexer must follow that style. If the publisher requests an index of a particular length, the indexer should adjust the normal editing time accordingly. See also 16.131.

16.104 *Indexing tools.* The dedicated indexing programs used by many professional indexers automate such tasks as cross-referencing and the collation of entries and subentries and include special options for alphabetizing—for example, to exclude certain words or characters and to conform to either the letter-by-letter or word-by-word system (see 16.58). Such programs, however, tend to require more learning time than most authors can afford (see 16.4). Fortunately, an index can be prepared according to the guidelines in this chapter by simply entering terms and locators into a separate document using an ordinary word processor—though cross-references and alphabetizing, in particular, will need to be checked manually throughout the process (see 16.57; see also 16.5). For the latest information about tools for indexing, consult the website of the American Society for Indexing.

16.105 *Using the electronic files to index.* Publishers' policies vary as to whether they can agree to supply indexers with page proofs in electronic form. Some publishers may agree to provide a searchable PDF—which can be helpful in double-checking that additional instances of particular terms have not been overlooked. Some indexers may prefer also to highlight and refer to the PDF rather than a paper copy as they create the index. It should be noted, however, that an index cannot be automatically "generated" from a PDF and that there is no substitute for rereading the whole work. See also 16.5, 16.119.

16.106 *Formatting index entries.* Consult with the publisher up front to determine whether a run-in or indented index is required (see 16.24–28) and whether there are any other specific requirements. Format the manuscript accordingly, using a flush-and-hang style (see 16.24). See also 16.131.

16.107 *Indexing the old-fashioned way.* Before the advent of word processors (and their cutting-and-pasting and sorting functions), indexers used to handwrite or type preliminary entries and subentries on 3″ × 5″ index cards, then alphabetize and edit the cards, and finally type the index, while further refining it, on 8½″ × 11″ sheets. For details, consult Nancy Mulvany, *Indexing Books* (bibliog. 2.5), or the thirteenth or fourteenth edition of this manual (no longer in print but available in large libraries). The procedures described in the following sections can be adapted to the index-card method.

When to Begin

16.108 *Preliminary indexing work.* Although some planning can be done at the manuscript stage, most indexes are prepared as soon as a work is in final, paginated form, or "page proofs." It is crucial, in fact, that indexing not begin until pagination is final. For indexes in which the locators are paragraph or section numbers rather than page numbers, however, earlier iterations of the final or near-final manuscript can often be used to get a head start. Authors who are not preparing their own indexes may compile a list of important terms for the indexer, but doing much more is likely to cause duplication or backtracking.

What Parts of the Work to Index

16.109 *Indexing the text, front matter, and back matter.* The entire text of a book or journal article, including substantive content in notes (see 16.110), should be indexed. Much of the front matter, however, is not indexable—title page, dedication, epigraphs, lists of illustrations and tables, and acknowledgments. A preface, or a foreword by someone other than the author of the work, may be indexed if it concerns the subject of the work and not simply how the work came to be written. A true introduction, whether in the front matter or, more commonly, in the body of the work, is always indexed (for introduction versus preface, see 1.42). Book appendixes should be indexed if they contain information that supplements the text, but not if they merely reproduce documents that are discussed in the text (the full text of a treaty, for example, or a questionnaire). Appendixes to journal articles are indexed as part of the articles. Glossaries, bibliographies, and other such lists are usually not indexed.

16.110 ***Indexing footnotes and endnotes.*** Notes, whether footnotes or endnotes, should be indexed only if they continue or amplify discussion in the text (substantive notes). Notes that merely contain source citations documenting statements in the text (reference notes) need not be indexed.

16.111 ***Endnote locators in index entries.*** Endnotes in printed works are referred to by page, the letter *n* (for *note*), and—extremely important—the note number, with no internal space (334n14). If two or more consecutive notes are referred to, two *n*'s and an en dash are used (e.g., 334nn14–16). Nonconsecutive notes on the same page are treated separately (334n14, 334n16, 334n19). Occasionally, when reference to a note near the end of one chapter of a book is followed by reference to a note near the beginning of the next, nonchronological order will result (334n19, 334n2). To avoid the appearance of error, the chapter number may be added in parentheses after the lower note number.

cats, 334n19, 334n2 (chap. 9), 335n5

16.112 ***Footnote locators in index entries.*** Footnotes in a printed work are generally referred to in the same way as endnotes. When a footnote is the only one on the page, however, the note number (or symbol, if numbers are not used) may be omitted (156n). Note numbers should never be omitted when several notes appear on the same page. If there is indexable material in a text passage and in a related footnote, only the page number need be given. But if the text and the footnote materials are not connected, both text and note should be cited (156, 156n, 278, 278n30).

16.113 ***Indexing notes spanning more than one printed page.*** For endnotes or footnotes that continue onto another page, normally only the first page number is given. But if the reference is specifically to a part of a note that appears on the second page, the second page number should be used. Referring to a succession of notes, however, may require inclusive page numbers (e.g., 234–35nn19–23).

16.114 ***Indexing parenthetical text citations.*** Documentation given as parenthetical author-date citations in text is not normally indexed unless the citation documents an otherwise unattributed statement in the text (see 16.110). Any author discussed in text should be indexed. In some fields it is customary to index every author *named* in the text; check with the publisher on the degree of inclusiveness required. See also 16.115.

16.115 ***Indexing authors' names for an author index.*** Author indexes are more common in disciplines that use a variation of the author-date system (see chapter 15). Since most authors are cited in text by last name and date only, full names must be sought in the reference list. Occasional discrepancies between text and reference list, not caught in editing, have to be sorted out or queried, adding to the time it takes to create an author index. Is L. W. Dinero, cited on page 345, the same person as Lauren Dinero, discussed on page 456? If so, should she be indexed as Dinero, Lauren W.? (Answer: only if all or most authors are indexed with full first names—a situation that may be determined by the reference list.) Where a work by two or more authors is cited in text, the indexer must determine whether each author named requires a separate entry. Should Jones, Smith, and Black share one index entry, or should three entries appear? And what about Jones et al.? Chicago recommends the following procedure: Make separate entries for each author whose name appears in text. Do not index those unfortunates whose names are concealed under *et al.* in text.

TEXT CITATIONS	*INDEX ENTRIES*
(Jones, Smith, and Black 1999)	Black, M. X., 366
(Sánchez et al. 2001)	Cruz, M. M., 435
(Sánchez, Cruz, et al. 2002)	Jones, E. J., 366
	Sánchez, J. G., 435, 657
	Smith, R. A., 366

16.116 ***Indexing illustrations, tables, charts, and such.*** Illustrative matter may be indexed if it is of particular importance to the discussion, especially when such items are not listed in or after the table of contents. References to illustrations may be set in italics (or boldface, if preferred); a headnote should then be inserted at the beginning of the index (see 16.141 for an example). Such references usually follow in page order.

reptilian brain, 199, 201–3, *202*, 341,
477, 477–81

Alternatively, references to tables may be denoted by *t*, to figures by *f*, plates by *pl*, or whatever works (all set in roman, with no space following the page number). Add an appropriate headnote (e.g., "The letter *t* following a page number denotes a table"). If the number of an illustration is essential, it is safer to use *table*, *fig.*, and so on, with no comma following the page number.

authors and printers, 88 table 5, 89–
90, 122–25, 122 fig. 7
titi monkeys, 69, 208t, 209t, 210f

Marking Proofs and Preparing Entries

16.117 ***Beginning to highlight and enter terms.*** After a perusal of the table of contents and the work as a whole, an indexer should begin highlighting terms to be used as main headings or subheadings. This is normally done by hand-marking a set of proofs. Inexperienced indexers are advised to mark the proofs—at least in the early stages—with the same kind of detail as is illustrated in figure 16.1. Most indexers prefer to mark one section (or chapter or journal issue) at a time and—using a word processor or dedicated indexing software (see 16.104)—to enter and alphabetize the marked terms in that section before going on to the next section. The notes belonging to the section, even if endnotes, should be checked and, if necessary, indexed at the same time (see 16.110). As the indexer becomes more skilled in marking the proofs, less underlining and fewer marginal notes may suffice.

16.118 ***Deciding how many terms to mark.*** The number of terms to mark on any one printed page obviously depends on the kind of work being indexed. As a very rough guide, an average of five references per text page in a book will yield a modest index (one-fiftieth the length of the text), whereas fifteen or more will yield a fairly long index (about one-twentieth the length of the text or more). If the publisher has budgeted for a strictly limited number of pages, the indexer should work accordingly. Remember that it is always easier to drop entries than to add them; err on the side of inclusiveness. See also 16.30, 16.31, 16.103, 16.109–16.

16.119 ***How to mark index entries.*** To visualize the method advocated here, suppose you are indexing a chapter from Wayne Booth's *For the Love of It*

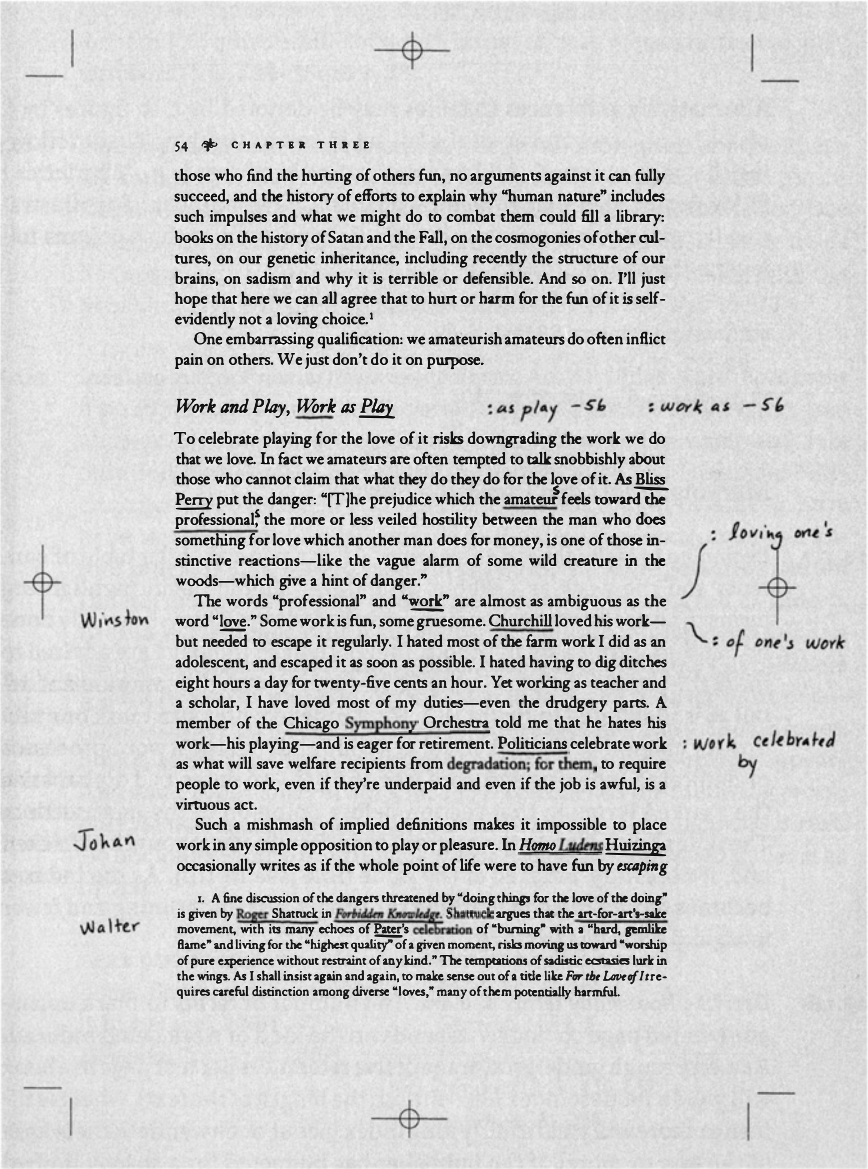
: as play –56
: work as –56
s
s
: loving one's
: of one's work
Winston
: work celebrated by
Johan
Walter

54 CHAPTER THREE

those who find the hurting of others fun, no arguments against it can fully succeed, and the history of efforts to explain why "human nature" includes such impulses and what we might do to combat them could fill a library: books on the history of Satan and the Fall, on the cosmogonies of other cultures, on our genetic inheritance, including recently the structure of our brains, on sadism and why it is terrible or defensible. And so on. I'll just hope that here we can all agree that to hurt or harm for the fun of it is self-evidently not a loving choice.[1]

One embarrassing qualification: we amateurish amateurs do often inflict pain on others. We just don't do it on purpose.

Work and Play, Work as Play

To celebrate playing for the love of it risks downgrading the work we do that we love. In fact we amateurs are often tempted to talk snobbishly about those who cannot claim that what they do they do for the love of it. As Bliss Perry put the danger: "[T]he prejudice which the amateur feels toward the professional, the more or less veiled hostility between the man who does something for love which another man does for money, is one of those instinctive reactions—like the vague alarm of some wild creature in the woods—which give a hint of danger."

The words "professional" and "work" are almost as ambiguous as the word "love." Some work is fun, some gruesome. Churchill loved his work—but needed to escape it regularly. I hated most of the farm work I did as an adolescent, and escaped it as soon as possible. I hated having to dig ditches eight hours a day for twenty-five cents an hour. Yet working as teacher and a scholar, I have loved most of my duties—even the drudgery parts. A member of the Chicago Symphony Orchestra told me that he hates his work—his playing—and is eager for retirement. Politicians celebrate work as what will save welfare recipients from degradation; for them, to require people to work, even if they're underpaid and even if the job is awful, is a virtuous act.

Such a mishmash of implied definitions makes it impossible to place work in any simple opposition to play or pleasure. In *Homo Ludens* Huizinga occasionally writes as if the whole point of life were to have fun by *escaping*

---

[1] A fine discussion of the dangers threatened by "doing things for the love of the doing" is given by Roger Shattuck in *Forbidden Knowledge*. Shattuck argues that the art-for-art's-sake movement, with its many echoes of Pater's celebration of "burning" with a "hard, gemlike flame" and living for the "highest quality" of a given moment, risks moving us toward "worship of pure experience without restraint of any kind." The temptations of sadistic ecstasies lurk in the wings. As I shall insist again and again, to make sense out of a title like *For the Love of It* requires careful distinction among diverse "loves," many of them potentially harmful.

FIGURE 16.1. Sample page of proof from Wayne Booth's *For the Love of It*, marked up for indexing. See 16.117–25.

(University of Chicago Press, 1999), a consideration of work and play and work as play (see fig. 16.1). You have read through the chapter once and now have to go back and select headings and subheadings for indexing this particular section (of which only the first paragraphs are shown here). You decide that the whole section (pp. 54–56) will have to be indexed under both *work* and *play*, so you mark the section head as shown. (On the marked proofs, a colon separates a proposed principal heading from a proposed subheading.) Going down the page, you underline *Bliss Perry* (which will of course be inverted—Perry, Bliss—as a heading; similarly for the other personal names). You also underline *amateur* and *professional* (modifying them to the plural). In the second paragraph, you underline *work* and *love*, with proposed subheads, and *Churchill* (noting the first name in the margin). You decide to index *Chicago Symphony Orchestra*—which in another work might be tangential but here ties in with the book's major subtheme of musical performance and appreciation—and also mark *politicians*, with proposed subhead. You underline *Huizinga* (adding "Johan" in the margin) and the work *Homo Ludens*, which might also be a subheading under "Huizinga, Johan." In the note, you mark two names (supplying a first name for Pater), one title, and one additional term (see also 16.110).

16.120 ***Planning index subentries.*** For each term marked, you should make an effort to write in a modification—a word or phrase that narrows the application of the heading, hence a potential subentry. Although some such modifications may eventually be dropped, they should be kept on hand in case they are needed. Otherwise you may end up with some headings that are followed by nothing but a long string of numbers, which makes for an all but useless index entry. The modifications can be altered and added to as the indexing proceeds.

16.121 ***Recording inclusive numbers for index terms.*** If a text discussion extends over more than one page, section, or paragraph, both beginning and ending numbers—which will depend on what locator system is being used (see 16.13)—must be written in. See also 16.14.

16.122 ***Typing and modifying index entries.*** Most entries at this stage will include three elements: a heading, a modification (or provisional subentry), and a locator (page or paragraph number). While typing, you will probably modify some of the headings and add, delete, or alter subheadings and locators. After typing each entry, read it carefully against the page proofs—in particular, checking that the page numbers or other locators are correct. You are unlikely to have time to read your final index manuscript against the marked-up proofs, though you should certainly retain the proofs for reference until the work has been published. See also 16.106.

16.123 *Alphabetizing entries as part of the indexing process.* Many indexers alphabetize as they type; others let their software do it, intervening as necessary. By this time the indexer should have decided whether to use the letter-by-letter or the word-by-word system (see 16.58–61). If the system chosen proves unsatisfactory for the particular work as the index proceeds, a switch can be made if the publisher agrees. See also 16.57.

16.124 *Final check of indexed proofs.* After typing all the entries, read quickly through the marked-up proofs once again to see whether anything indexable has been omitted. You may find some unmarked items that seemed peripheral at the time but now, in the light of themes developed in later chapters, declare themselves to be significant. Or you may have missed major items. Now is the time to remedy all omissions.

16.125 *Noting errors during indexing.* Although not engaged to proofread, the indexer has to read carefully and usually finds a number of typographical errors and minor inconsistencies. If indexing a book (rather than a journal volume, most of which will already have been published), keep track of all such errors and send a list to the publisher (who will be very grateful) when, or before, submitting the index.

Editing and Refining the Entries

16.126 *Refining the terms for main headings.* The assembled entries must now be edited to a coherent whole. You have to make a final choice among synonymous or closely related terms—*agriculture*, *farming*, or *crop raising*; *clothing*, *costume*, or *dress*; *life*, *existence*, or *being*—and, if you think necessary, prepare suitable cross-references to reflect those choices. For journals, the terms may have been established in the indexes for previous volumes and should be retained.

16.127 *Main entries versus subentries.* You also have to decide whether certain items are best treated as main entries or as subentries under another heading. Where will readers look first? In a work dealing with schools of various kinds, such terms as *kindergarten*, *elementary school*, *middle school*, and *public school* should constitute separate entries; in a work in which those terms appear but are not the primary subject matter, they may better be treated as subentries under *school*. An index with relatively few main entries but masses of subentries is unhelpful as a search tool.

Furthermore, in an indented index an excessively long string of subentries may begin to look like a set of main entries, so that users lose their way alphabetically. Promote subentries to main entries and use the alphabet to its best advantage.

16.128 ***When to furnish subentries.*** Main headings unmodified by subentries should not be followed by more than five or six locators. If, for example, the draft index of a work on health care includes an entry like the first example below, it should be broken up into a number of subentries, such as those in the second example, to lead readers quickly to the information sought. The extra space needed is a small price to pay for their convenience.

hospitals, 17, 22, 23, 24, 25, 28, 29–31, 33, 35, 36, 38, 42, 91–92, 94, 95, 96, 98, 101, 111–14, 197
hospitals: administration of, 22, 96; and demand for patient services, 23, 91–92; efficiency of, 17, 29–31, 33, 111–14; finances of, 28, 33, 36, 38, 42, 95, 112; and length of patient stay, 35, 94, 98, 101, 197; quality control in, 22–25, 31

16.129 ***How to phrase subheadings.*** Subheadings should be as concise and informative as possible and begin with a keyword likely to be sought. *A*, *an*, and *the* are omitted whenever possible. Example A below, *not* to be emulated, shows poorly worded and rambling subheadings. Example B shows greatly improved subentries that conserve space. Example C adds sub-subentries, making for quicker reference but requiring more space (see 16.27, 16.28). For arrangement of subentries, see 16.68–70.

Example A (*not* to be emulated)

house renovation
balancing heating system, 65
building permit required, 7
called "rehabbing," 8
correcting overloaded electrical circuits, 136
how wallboard is finished, 140–44
installing ready-made fireplace, 191–205
painting outside of house adds value, 11
plumbing permit required, 7
removing paint from doors and woodwork, 156–58
repairing dripping faucets, 99–100
replacing clogged water pipes, 125–28
replacing old wiring, 129–34
separate chimney required for fireplace, 192
straightening sagging joists, 40–42
termite damage to sills a problem, 25
three ways to deal with broken plaster, 160–62
violations of electrical code corrected, 135
what is involved in, 5

Example B (improvement with fairly inclusive subentries)

house renovation, 5, 8
  electrical repairs, 129–34, 135, 136
  fireplace, installing, 191–205
  heating system, balancing, 65
  legal requirements, 7, 135, 192
  painting and decorating, 11, 156–58
  plaster repair, 160–62
  plumbing repairs, 99–100, 125–28
  structural problems, 25, 40–42
  wallboard, finishing, 140–44

Example C (improvement with sub-subentries)

house renovation, 5, 8
  electrical repairs: circuit overload, 136; code violations, 135; old wiring, 129–34
  heating system: balancing, 65; fireplace installation, 191–205
  legal requirements: electrical code, 135; permits, 7; separate chimney for fireplace, 192
  painting and decorating: painting exterior, 11; stripping woodwork, 156–58
  plumbing repairs: clogged water pipes, 125–28; dripping faucets, 99–100
  structural problems: sagging joists, 40–42; termite damage, 25
  wall and ceiling repairs: broken plaster, 160–62; wallboard, finishing, 140–44

If it looks as though an index is going to require a great many sub-subentries, the indexer should check with the publisher before proceeding.

16.130 ***Checking cross-references against edited index headings.*** As a final or near-final step in editing the index, make sure that all cross-references match the edited headings. See also 16.15–23.

Submitting the Index

16.131 ***Index submission format.*** Having carefully proofread the draft and checked alphabetical order and all cross-references, punctuation, and capitalization to ensure consistency—and having produced an index of the required length, if one has been specified—you will now send the final draft to the publisher. If the publisher requires a printout, allow margins of at least one inch both left and right, and leave the text unjustified. Do not format the index in columns. Use hard returns only at the end of each entry and, for an indented-style index (see 16.26), at the end of each subentry. Use single line spacing, and apply hanging indents using your software's indention feature (see 16.24; see also 2.22). Do not impose end-of-line hyphenation (see 2.12). If there is more than one index, give each an appropriate title (Author Index, Subject Index, etc.) and save each in a separate file. To avert disaster, keep a copy of the final draft that you send to the publisher, as well as your marked-up proofs, until the work has been published. Send the publisher a list of any errors you have found (see 16.125).

Editing an Index Compiled by Someone Else

16.132 ***What to do with a very bad index.*** Editing a well-prepared index can be a pleasure. Little work should be needed. A poorly prepared one, however, presents serious problems. As an editor, you cannot remake a really bad index. If an index cannot be repaired, you have two choices: omit it or have a new one made by another indexer (at additional cost)—thereby delaying publication.

16.133 ***Index-editing checklist.*** Editing an index requires some or all of the following steps, not necessarily in the order given here. Note that it is not necessary to check every heading and every locator against the work—which would take forever—but it is necessary to read the index carefully and to refer to the page proofs (or final electronic version) from time to time.

1. Check headings—in both the main entries and subentries—for alphabetical order.
2. Check the spelling, capitalization, and font (i.e., italics or roman) of each heading, consulting the page proofs if in doubt.
3. Check punctuation—commas, colons, semicolons, en dashes, etc.—for proper style and consistency (see 16.94–100).
4. Check cross-references to make sure they go somewhere and that headings match (see 16.21). Make sure they are needed; if only a few locators are involved, substitute these for the *see* reference (see 16.16). Ensure that the placement of all cross-references within entries is consistent.
5. Add cross-references you believe are necessary.
6. Check to make sure there are no false locators such as "193–93" or "12102" (and figure out whether these may be the product of a typo) and make sure the locators to each main heading and subheading are in ascending order.
7. Check subentries for consistency of order, whether alphabetical or chronological. See 16.68–70.

8. If some entries seem overanalyzed (many subentries with only one locator or, worse, with the same locator), try to combine some of them if it can be done without sacrificing their usefulness. If subheadings are more elaborately worded than necessary, try to simplify them.
9. If awkward or unnecessary sub-subentries appear, correct them by adding appropriate repeated subentries or by adjusting punctuation (see 16.27, 16.28).
10. Look for long strings of unanalyzed locators and break them up, if possible, with subentries (see 16.10, 16.129).
11. Evaluate the accuracy of locators by a random check of five to ten entries. If more than one error shows up, consult the author or the indexer; every locator may have to be rechecked.
12. If the index needs trimming, delete any entries (and cross-references thereto) that you know from your work on the book are trivial, such as references to persons or places used only as examples of something. But be careful. You may offend someone or let yourself in for a lot of work. A handful of unnecessary entries, if they are very short, does not mar an otherwise good index.

16.134 *Instructions for typesetting the index.* At this stage the publisher will have prepared specifications for typesetting the index, and few further instructions are needed. To avoid problems, a brief note such as the following (for an indented index to a book) may be prefixed to the index manuscript after consulting the detailed specifications:

> Set two columns, flush and hang, ragged right; indent subentries one em; indent runovers two ems; preserve en dashes between continuing numbers; leave one line space between alphabetical blocks. Set headnote across both columns. See publisher's design specifications for size and measure.

For an example of a headnote, see 16.141.

Typographical Considerations for Indexes

16.135 *Type size and column width for indexes.* In print works, indexes are usually set in smaller type than the body of the work, often two sizes smaller. That is, if the body copy is set in ten-on-twelve-point type, and the extracts, bibliography, and appendixes in nine-on-eleven, the index will probably be set in eight-on-ten. Indexes are usually set in two columns; with a type page twenty-seven picas wide, the index columns will each be thirteen picas, with a one-pica space between them. In large-format print works, however, the index may be set in three or even four columns.

16.136 ***Ragged right-hand margin for indexes.*** For very short lines, such as those in an index, justifying the text usually results in either gaping word spaces or excessive hyphenation, making for difficult reading. Chicago therefore sets all indexes without justification ("ragged right").

16.137 ***Index indention.*** All runover lines are indented, whether the subentries are run in or indented. In indexes with indented subentries (see 16.26), runover lines have to be indented more deeply than the subentries; all runovers, whether from a main entry or a subentry (or even a sub-subentry, should these too be indented), should be indented equally from the left margin. Thus, in an indented index the subentries may be indented one em, the sub-subentries two ems, and the runovers for all entries three ems. (For avoiding sub-subentries, see 16.27, 16.28.) All these matters, however, must be determined before type is set.

16.138 ***Fixing bad breaks in indexes.*** The final, typeset index should be checked for bad breaks. A line consisting of only one or two page numbers should not be left at the top of a column, for example. A single line at the end of an alphabetic section (followed by a blank line) should not head a column, nor should a single line at the beginning of an alphabetic section remain at the foot of a column. Blemishes like these are eliminated by rebreaking entries or transposing lines from one column to another, by adding to the white space between alphabetic sections, and sometimes by lengthening or shortening all columns on facing pages by one line.

16.139 ***Adding "continued" lines in an index.*** If an entry breaks at the foot of the last column on a right-hand page (a recto) and resumes at the top of the following left-hand page (a verso), the main heading should be repeated, followed by the word *continued* in parentheses, above the carried-over part of the index.

ingestive behavior (*continued*)
  network of causes underlying, 68;
    physiology of, 69–70, 86–87; in
    rat, 100; in starfish, 45, 52–62

In an indented index with indented sub-subentries it may be necessary to repeat a subentry if the subentry has been broken.

house renovation (*continued*)
  structural problems (*continued*)
    termite damage, 25–27
    warped overhangs, 46–49

16.140 ***Making typographic distinctions in index entries.*** A complicated index can sometimes be made easier to read by using different type styles or fonts. If, for example, names of writers need to be distinguished from names of literary characters, one or the other might be set in caps and small caps. Page references to illustrations might be in italic type (see 16.116) and references to the principal treatment of a subject in boldface. If devices of this kind are used, a headnote to the index must furnish a key (see 16.141, 16.143).

Examples of Indexes

16.141 ***A run-in index with italicized references to figures and tables.*** Run-in indexes are the most economical of the five formats exemplified in this section. Note the italic page references and the headnote explaining their use. Boldface could also be used for that purpose (see 16.143). For more examples and further discussion, see 16.25, 16.27, 16.94–100. See also 16.68, 16.140.

Page numbers in italics refer to figures and tables.

Abbot, George, 241–42
ABC, printing of, 164
abridgment: cases of, 246n161; as offense, 455–56, 607; of *Philosophical Transactions*, 579n83; restrictions on, 226, 227; works as, *302–3*, *316*, 316–17
Abridgement (Croke), *302–3*
Abridgment (Rolle), *316*, 316–17
absolutism: absence of in England, 48; arbitrary government and, 251–52, 252n182; Cromwell and, 273–74; Hobbes and, 308; patronage and, 24; property and, 253, 255; royal authorship of laws and, 312, 317, 336n29; royal prerogative and, 251, 253–54
Académie Royale des Sciences (France), 436, 491n91, 510, 554

If occasional sub-subentries are required in a run-in index, you may resort to the style illustrated in 16.27, example B, using em dashes.

16.142 ***An indented index with run-in sub-subentries.*** For further examples and discussion, see 16.28. See also 16.68.

American black bear
compared with giant panda: activity, 216–17; habitat, 211–12; home range, 219; litter size, 221; movement patterns of males, 124–26, 219

  delayed implantation in, 191
  reproductive flexibility of, 221
  See also bears
amino acid content of bamboo, 75–76, 86, 89; compared with other foods, 77
artificial insemination, 179
Ascaris schroederi, 162
Asiatic black bear
  constructing sleeping nests, 140
  giant panda serologically close to, 228
  See also bears

16.143 ***An indented index with indented sub-subentries and highlighted definitions.*** Note the deep indention for runover lines (see 16.137). A boldface page number indicates that the term is defined on that page (explained in a headnote at the beginning of the index). Italics could also be used for that purpose (see 16.141). For further discussion and examples, see 16.28. See also 16.68, 16.140.

Page numbers for definitions are in boldface.

brightness temperatures, 388, 582, 589, 602
bright rims, **7**, 16, 27–28 (*see also* nebular forms)
B stars, **3**, 7, 26–27, 647
bulbs (in nebulae). *See* nebular forms
cameras, electronic, 492, 499
carbon flash, 559
Cassiopeia A (3C461). *See* radio sources; supernovae
catalogs
  of bright nebulae, 74
  of dark nebulae, 74, 120
    Lundmark, 121
    Lynds, 123
    Schoenberg, 123
  Herschel's (of nebulae), 119
  of planetary nebulae, 484–85, 563
    Perek-Kohoutek, 484, 563
    Vorontsov-Velyaminov, 484
  of reflection nebulae, 74
  3C catalog of radio sources, revised, 630
central stars. *See* planetary nebulae
Cerenkov radiation, **668**, 709
chemical composition, 71. *See also* abundances; *and names of individual elements*

If occasional sub-sub-subentries are essential (they should be avoided if at all possible), they must be run in to the sub-subentries in the same way as sub-subentries are run in at 16.28, example A.

16.144 ***An index of first lines.*** Unless all the poems, hymns, or songs indexed have very short lines, indexes of this kind are often set full measure (rather than in multiple columns) for easier reading. Letter-by-letter alphabetizing is normally used. Note that lines beginning with *A*, *An*, or *The* are alphabetized under A or T.

After so long an absence, 295
A handful of red sand, from the hot clime, 108
An old man in a lodge within a park, 315
Beautiful valley! through whose verdant meads, 325
From this high portal, where upsprings, 630
O'er all the hill-tops, 617
Of Prometheus, how undaunted, 185
O hemlock tree! O hemlock tree! how faithful are thy branches, 614
There is no flock, however watched and tended, 107
The young Endymion sleeps Endymion's sleep, 316

16.145 ***An index with authors, titles, and first lines combined.*** To distinguish the elements, authors' names may be set in caps and small caps, titles of poems in italics, and first lines in roman type, sentence style, without quotation marks. If needed, a headnote to this effect could be furnished. Letter-by-letter alphabetizing should be used.

Cermak, it was, who entertained so great astonishment, 819
Certain she was that tigers fathered him, 724
CHESTERVILLE, NORA M., 212
Come, you whose loves are dead, 394
Coming Homeward Out of Spain, 73
Commemorate me before you leave me, Charlotte, 292
Complaint of a Lover Rebuked, 29
COMPTON, WILBER C., 96
Confound you, Marilyn, confound you, 459

In a general index, poem titles would be set in roman and enclosed in quotation marks, as in text or notes (see 8.179, 8.180).

Appendix A: Production and Digital Technology

Overview A.1

Markup A.6

General Principles A.6

XML A.11

Design A.16

The Electronic Workflow A.23

Introduction A.23

When Should XML Be Introduced into the Process? A.27

Source Files A.31

Options for Presenting Content A.35

Print Technologies A.41

Overview

A.1 *Understanding the process.* This appendix, which is intended to give authors and editors an overview of the production process and the technologies involved, begins where the discussion of manuscript editing in chapter 2 ends. Production—of a book or a journal article, for publication in electronic or printed form—generally begins once an edited manuscript is considered final. Many of the details of what subsequently happens to the edited manuscript depend on the hardware and software that are used to turn it into a finished publication. Authors and editors do not necessarily need to understand production processes in all their detail, but anyone who works with designers, typesetters, information technology specialists, and other production personnel should have a basic understanding of what they do. For more detailed coverage of production processes, consult the sources listed in the bibliography, sections 2.6 and 2.7.

A.2 *Divisions of labor.* Though most of the physical aspects of producing a publication are now accomplished with software, publishing has become if anything more complex than it once was. And, whereas many of the traditional divisions of labor are still firmly in place, new tasks—particularly in information technology—have been added to the mix. Designers still create a typographic and visual format for a work that is appropriate for the content of that work in a particular medium. Production controllers continue to coordinate the efforts of in-house staff and vendors to ensure timely publication, within budget, and adherence to acceptable manufacturing and electronic publication standards. Meanwhile, editors and authors—once their main roles are done—continue to play a key role in reviewing a publication at various stages of production. But, increasingly, programmers and other IT specialists have come to play an important role, developing and maintaining systems for document conversion and typesetting as well as many other aspects of electronic publication. In fact, much of the discussion below—especially of electronic markup and other more technical aspects of production—assumes the indispensable role of IT specialists in the production process.

A.3 *Terminology.* Many design and production terms are derived from the technologies and processes used before the advent of computers. The word *leading*—synonymous with *line spacing*—once referred to actual strips of metal inserted between lines of type. The term *font* once referred to a specific size and cut (e.g., twelve-point italic) of a particular type family, or *typeface* (once literally the surface, or face, of a piece of type); now that type is rendered and scaled by software, the terms are often used interchangeably. Similarly, the terms *typesetting* and *composition* have become interchangeable, both referring to the process of arranging words and images on a screen more or less as they are intended to appear in published form. Even the term *markup*, which now often refers to the tags used in XML (extensible markup language) and other markup languages to describe the structure and label the components of an electronic document, has its antecedent in pencil markup on paper typescripts and proof. For definitions of these terms and others used throughout this discussion, see appendix B.

A.4 *Preparing for more than print.* If computers have become the primary tool in the production of virtually all published works, they have also increasingly come to play a role in how readers find, buy, read, and share publications. Publishers face a growing demand for electronic versions of the books and journals they produce—whether as web-based publications or in an e-book format or for full-text storage in searchable electronic archives. It is to the advantage of publishers, then, to tailor their production processes to allow for the delivery of any work in any format—electronic or printed—ideally from a single set of source files. XML—which, as an open standard for electronic markup, is available to any publisher—provides the most promising means to date for achieving such flexibility. Moreover, any manuscript that has been consistently marked up with one of the methods described in chapter 2 (see 2.78–80) can become part of an XML production workflow. This appendix assumes that even those who do not work with XML might benefit from an introduction to XML and a more general consideration of electronic markup languages.

A.5 *The journals publishing model.* The XML workflow outlined below grows in part out of the experience of publishers of scholarly journals, many of whom have had to respond to a demand for simultaneous print and electronic publication that dates to the 1990s. A journal, because it tends to maintain the same format from issue to issue, is particularly well suited to an XML workflow. Once implemented, the same sets of tags and the same procedures (some of which have been developed specifically for the scholarly publishing industry and enjoy broad support) can be reused and refined as necessary, leading to certain economies of scale. Book publishers can streamline their production processes to accommodate a similar, if less straightforward, approach, but the decision to adopt an XML workflow may ultimately be based on the demand for electronic book formats. On the other hand, publishers of web-based works such as the online edition of this manual can benefit from the fact that XML was initially designed to facilitate HTML presentations (see A.12). For a discussion of print technologies, which have changed little in recent years, see A.41–50.

Markup

General Principles

A.6 *What is markup?* Markup comprises the labels or annotations that are applied to a manuscript or other document in order to identify its structure and its components. There are four basic ways to apply markup, and these techniques are described in chapter 2 from the point of view of the manuscript editor. Briefly, they include markup by pencil on paper; generic markup in a word processor, which is similar to paper markup except that it is typed into the document (see 2.78); word-processing styles (see 2.79); and markup in a formal language such as XML (see 2.80). All of these share a fundamental purpose: to identify each element of a manuscript, from chapter numbers to chapter titles, subheads, paragraphs for running text and block quotations, emphasized text, entries in a bibliography, and so forth. Markup, in the most basic sense, allows a typesetter to interpret a manuscript and—design specifications in hand—format it for publication as an article, book, or other type of publication.

A.7 *Semantic and functional markup.* A formal markup language describes the structure of a document and identifies its components. This type of markup is sometimes referred to as *semantic* markup because it names the parts of a document rather than describing their appearance. To take one example, though the title *Origin of Species* might be distinguished from the surrounding text by italics, more meaningful markup would label it as a book title. Such markup would not only differentiate book titles from other types of italicized text (such as names of species or emphasized terms) but would allow them to be presented in something other than the customary italics if desired—for example, boldface or underscored. In fact, matters of presentation—the *appearance* of the text—are best defined in a separate document called a style sheet (see A.9). On the other hand, markup doesn't ultimately need to be associated with any typographic characteristic or other type of formatting. It can be purely functional. For example, the title *Origin of Species* might be tagged to include the keyword *evolution*—facilitating queries to search engines in an electronic publication (see 16.8). Moreover, some markup may have formatting or functionality associated with it in one medium but not another. For example, markup that determines hyperlinked text—graphically distinct and clickable in an electronic document—may not be evident on the printed page.

A.8 *Document type definitions.* The formal definition of a document's structure—among other things, the names of all of its elements and the rules that govern their markup—is encoded in a document type definition (DTD) or other schema. The process of creating a DTD is roughly analogous to the one that a designer follows to identify and design each element of a book. But DTDs—which take considerable time and expertise to develop—must also be programmed to define every possible relationship among the elements in order to establish rules about the document's structure. For example, a DTD may require that any element tagged as a "list" contain at least two "items," or that any "image" tag point to the name of a file in a specific directory. Marked-up documents can be analyzed with the help of parsing programs to make sure they conform to a specific DTD, allowing for the ready identification and correction of some kinds of tagging errors. Once developed, a DTD can be reused for similar documents of the same type—for example, book-length monographs or articles in a scholarly journal. Many organizations use industry-standard DTDs for publishing and archiving their articles or books. For example, certain journal publishers rely on the family of DTDs developed for the National Library of Medicine (which also includes a DTD for books).

A.9 *Style sheets.* While a DTD describes the structure of the tagged elements in a formally marked-up document, a style sheet provides the formatting specifications that define and automate their presentation—that is, how they look on the screen or on the page. (For a different meaning of style sheet, see 2.52.) A formally marked-up document published in more than one medium—for example, print and HTML—will need a different style sheet for each in order to specify typefaces, layouts, and other features appropriate to each medium. Meanwhile, the document itself—its markup plus text and any illustrations or other components—does not need to be altered for either presentation. This separation of content from presentation—though it is never perfect (see A.17)—is one of the primary benefits of an XML-based production workflow (see A.24). Style sheets are prepared (generally by IT specialists in collaboration with designers) in one of several programming languages, such as CSS (cascading style sheets), which can be used to describe how the components of an HTML document look and function in a particular browser or how the document prints on a laser printer. Another language, XSL (extensible style sheet language), not only defines presentation but also enables the conversion of XML documents to other formats, including HTML. Vendors of e-book formats generally have their own style sheets, and any style sheet may be reused or adapted for similar types of documents.

A.10 *Metadata.* Metadata—or data about data—is a part of any marked-up document. Publishers generally include certain types of bibliographic metadata—for example, creator, title, publication date, description, and keywords—some or all of which may be displayed within (or alongside) their publications. Such metadata is a lot like the information that once resided in a library's card-catalog system and can facilitate discovery by search engines. More specific categories of metadata may be appropriate depending on the publication. For example, file format descriptions, language(s) of publication, and security level (to specify who can access the content) may be encoded in a document as needed. With the help of software, metadata can be derived, or extracted, from the markup of a publication before, during, and after production for a variety of purposes. For example, metadata about a document's revision status can help track the versions of a document through the proofreading and testing stages. Other types of metadata—for example, the DOIs of journal articles in a reference list—can facilitate linking of source citations to information about the actual location of the texts to which they refer (see also 14.6). For more information on metadata, including information about best practices, consult the website of the Dublin Core Metadata Initiative, an organization responsible for developing standards related to electronic resource description.

XML

A.11 *What is XML?* XML (an abbreviation for extensible markup language) is a detailed specification for defining and marking up the logical structure of any type of document—in other words, it is a metalanguage that provides rules for naming and defining the parts of a document and their relationship to each other. It has been in development since the mid-1990s by various working groups of the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C). XML is an open standard, meaning it is available for free to the general public through the website of the W3C. As described in 2.80, XML markup requires that each element in a document, including the document as a whole, be enclosed between a pair of opening and closing tags. XML does not contain a standard set of tags; rather, it allows users to create unique tags customized for any type of document: chapters, journal articles, catalog entries, database records, and so forth. For examples of XML markup, see figures A.1 and A.2.

A.12 ***SGML, HTML, XML—a brief history.*** XML traces its origins to SGML, which stands for standard generalized markup language. SGML became an international standard in 1986, defined by the International Organization for Standardization as ISO 8879, after which it became the primary specification according to which many publishers marked up and maintained electronic versions of their documents. Such a standard was originally developed to ensure that governments and other organizations could maintain electronic archives that would be relatively impervious to changes in technology. Like XML, SGML is a metalanguage—in the case of SGML, a comprehensive set of rules not just for naming and defining the parts of a document but for developing other, related markup languages. One such language is HTML (hypertext markup language), which was introduced in the early 1990s as a set of presentation tags for preparing documents for web browsers. HTML tags (often in conjunction with a style sheet; see A.9) work much like typesetting codes for print publications, determining how a document will appear, not on the page, but on the screen. Soon after the introduction of HTML, XML was developed as a refinement of SGML that would make it easier to prepare documents for use on the web.

A.13 ***Why XML?*** As outlined in A.12, XML was initially developed as a simplified version of SGML that would facilitate conversion to HTML for publishing on the web. As electronic formats have proliferated, some publishers have found it advantageous to use XML as the basis of their publications in order to make them available for other purposes, such as electronic archives and various e-book formats. Like SGML but unlike HTML, XML can be adapted to describe any type of document and does not depend on any specific software or format. This flexibility can facilitate the presentation of content in ways that were not possible at initial publication—a potential hedge against changing technologies. To take an early example, HTML for tables did not exist in the early 1990s; tables on the web were presented only as static images rather than as text. Publishers who at that time were using SGML to tag such things as the arrangement of cells into rows and columns were prepared to regenerate full-text HTML tables in their web publications as this functionality became available in later versions of HTML (but see A.33). A similar phenomenon is taking place for mathematical expressions marked up in MathML (mathematical markup language, an application of XML) that cannot be displayed by all web browsers. See also A.34.

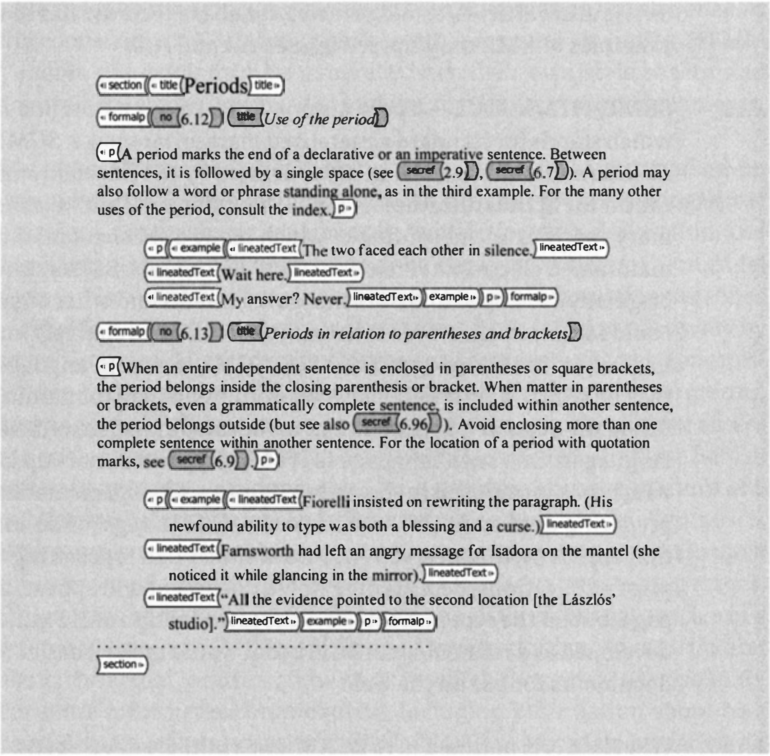
section
title
title
formalp
no
title
p
secref
secref
p
p
example
lineatedText
lineatedText
lineatedText
lineatedText
lineatedText
lineatedText
example
p
formalp
formalp
no
title
p
secref
secref
p
p
example
lineatedText
lineatedText
lineatedText
lineatedText
lineatedText
lineatedText
example
p
formalp
section

Periods

6.12 *Use of the period*

A period marks the end of a declarative or an imperative sentence. Between sentences, it is followed by a single space (see 2.9, 6.7). A period may also follow a word or phrase standing alone, as in the third example. For the many other uses of the period, consult the index.

The two faced each other in silence.
Wait here.
My answer? Never.

6.13 *Periods in relation to parentheses and brackets*

When an entire independent sentence is enclosed in parentheses or square brackets, the period belongs inside the closing parenthesis or bracket. When matter in parentheses or brackets, even a grammatically complete sentence, is included within another sentence, the period belongs outside (but see also 6.96). Avoid enclosing more than one complete sentence within another sentence. For the location of a period with quotation marks, see 6.9.

Fiorelli insisted on rewriting the paragraph. (His newfound ability to type was both a blessing and a curse.)
Farnsworth had left an angry message for Isadora on the mantel (she noticed it while glancing in the mirror).
“All the evidence pointed to the second location [the Lászlós’ studio].”

……

FIGURE A.1. An example of XML markup in a graphical interface, showing two numbered paragraphs from the section on periods in chapter 6 of this manual. Compare figure A.2.

A.14 ***XML elements and attributes.*** An XML document, simply stated, consists of elements and attributes. An *element* is really just a specific part of the document—in other words, any part that has been labeled with a pair of XML tags. Elements might include such items as document title, section headings, paragraphs, titles of works, terms marked for emphasis (and destined to be italicized or otherwise distinguished from the surrounding text), names of authors, and cross-references. An XML *attribute* is included inside the opening tag for an XML element and provides additional information about that element. For example, a document may include various lists, each tagged with a pair of “list” tags. These lists could be further distinguished from each other by attributes that identify the type of list—“ordered” versus “unordered,” for example. An associated style sheet would recognize the attributes and format the two kinds of lists differently—for example, the “ordered list” as a list numbered with

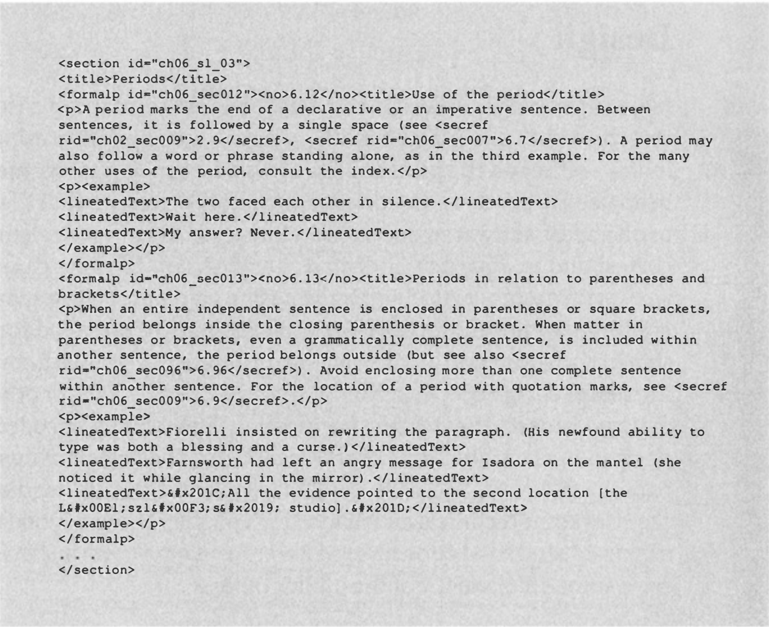

```
<section id="ch06_sl_03">
<title>Periods</title>
<formalp id="ch06_sec012"><no>6.12</no><title>Use of the period</title>
<p>A period marks the end of a declarative or an imperative sentence. Between
sentences, it is followed by a single space (see <secref
rid="ch02_sec009">2.9</secref>, <secref rid="ch06_sec007">6.7</secref>). A period may
also follow a word or phrase standing alone, as in the third example. For the many
other uses of the period, consult the index.</p>
<p><example>
<lineatedText>The two faced each other in silence.</lineatedText>
<lineatedText>Wait here.</lineatedText>
<lineatedText>My answer? Never.</lineatedText>
</example></p>
</formalp>
<formalp id="ch06_sec013"><no>6.13</no><title>Periods in relation to parentheses and
brackets</title>
<p>When an entire independent sentence is enclosed in parentheses or square brackets,
the period belongs inside the closing parenthesis or bracket. When matter in
parentheses or brackets, even a grammatically complete sentence, is included within
another sentence, the period belongs outside (but see also <secref
rid="ch06_sec096">6.96</secref>). Avoid enclosing more than one complete sentence
within another sentence. For the location of a period with quotation marks, see <secref
rid="ch06_sec009">6.9</secref>.</p>
<p><example>
<lineatedText>Fiorelli insisted on rewriting the paragraph. (His newfound ability to
type was both a blessing and a curse.)</lineatedText>
<lineatedText>Farnsworth had left an angry message for Isadora on the mantel (she
noticed it while glancing in the mirror).</lineatedText>
<lineatedText>&#x201C;All the evidence pointed to the second location [the
L&#x00E1;szl&#x00F3;s&#x2019; studio].&#x201D;</lineatedText>
</example></p>
</formalp>
. . .
</section>
```

FIGURE A.2. Another view of figure A.1, showing the XML markup as plain text.

arabic numerals starting at 1 and the "unordered list" as a bulleted list (see also A.9). Another type of attribute might specify a URL for a textual element to facilitate the creation of a hyperlink.

A.15 ***XML character references.*** An XML character reference is a plain-text placeholder for a special character that may be unavailable in a particular software program or from a particular input device (e.g., a keyboard). Character references are set off from the surrounding text by an ampersand and a semicolon. By default, XML supports references defined by the Unicode standard. For example, a multiplication sign (defined by Unicode as U+00D7) can be represented in XML as the character reference &#x00D7; (the #x signals the hexadecimal Unicode code point). In a program that interprets the XML document, the character reference would display as a multiplication sign (×). Alternatively, character references can consist of names taken from other ISO standard character sets—for example, &eacute; or &alpha; (which resolve to é and α, respectively)—when these are specified in the DTD (see A.8). (Some special characters that may not display properly for all users may need to be rendered as images; see A.34.) For more on Unicode, see chapter 11 (esp. 11.2).

Design

A.16 *Mapping markup to design.* In the most basic sense, markup describes the structure and content of a work, whereas a design determines how it looks—either on the printed page or on a screen. Whatever method has been used to mark up an edited manuscript—generic codes (electronic or on paper), software-generated style tags, or XML—each element must correspond to a particular design specification. In some cases, editors work with designers to identify the design elements before a manuscript is submitted for production. For projects that are intended for publication in both print and on the web, two different designs with corresponding sets of design specifications will be necessary. If XML or other formal markup is used, the design specifications are usually encoded for production in electronic style sheets (see A.9). (The design of dust jackets, paperback covers, and packaging for electronic storage media—which requires some technical and marketing considerations beyond the scope of this appendix—is not covered here. For works covering these topics, see sections 2.6 and 2.7 of the bibliography.)

A.17 *Some limitations of style sheets.* Electronic style sheets, as described in A.9, provide a means of rendering a formally marked-up document according to a set of design specifications, but they cannot predict certain factors that might affect the published document's appearance, such as where line and page breaks will fall. When used to produce printed publications, style sheets are usually supplemented with a publisher's preferred set of rules for composition and page makeup (see fig. A.3). As with conventionally typeset print publications, these rules direct typesetters to make small adjustments in a page-layout program to fix such things as loose lines and uneven facing pages and to reposition images to fit the available space. Additional adjustments may be necessary to achieve precise alignment in tables or other textual environments with complex layouts (see A.33). Such tweaks made in the files for the printed publication will not be reflected either in the style sheets or in the tagged source files (see A.31–34) for any electronic version and may be difficult to achieve online without resorting to images. For most types of electronic publications, however, publishers have come to accept inevitable variations in spacing and other aspects of presentation that might depend on a particular browser or device and that cannot be controlled for in a style sheet.

A.18 *Determining length.* For printed books, publishers will often specify a target page count (usually for a specific, often standard, trim size—e.g., 6″ × 9″), taking into account the length of the manuscript. Designers must

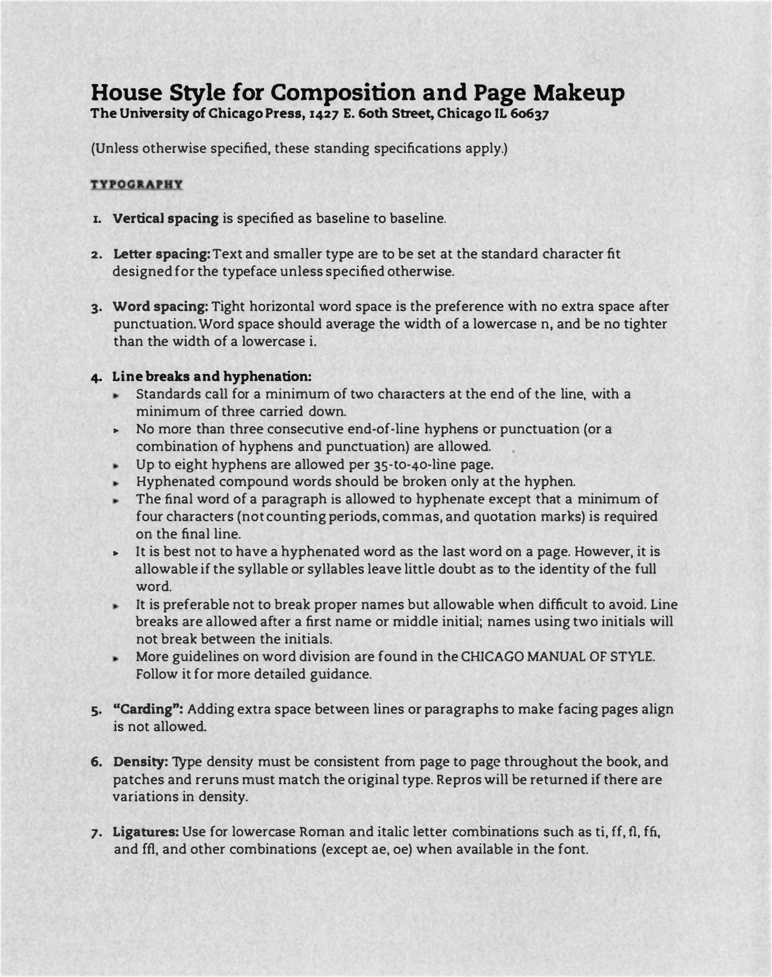

House Style for Composition and Page Makeup
The University of Chicago Press, 1427 E. 60th Street, Chicago IL 60637

(Unless otherwise specified, these standing specifications apply.)

TYPOGRAPHY

1. **Vertical spacing** is specified as baseline to baseline.

2. **Letter spacing:** Text and smaller type are to be set at the standard character fit designed for the typeface unless specified otherwise.

3. **Word spacing:** Tight horizontal word space is the preference with no extra space after punctuation. Word space should average the width of a lowercase n, and be no tighter than the width of a lowercase i.

4. **Line breaks and hyphenation:**
   - Standards call for a minimum of two characters at the end of the line, with a minimum of three carried down.
   - No more than three consecutive end-of-line hyphens or punctuation (or a combination of hyphens and punctuation) are allowed.
   - Up to eight hyphens are allowed per 35-to-40-line page.
   - Hyphenated compound words should be broken only at the hyphen.
   - The final word of a paragraph is allowed to hyphenate except that a minimum of four characters (not counting periods, commas, and quotation marks) is required on the final line.
   - It is best not to have a hyphenated word as the last word on a page. However, it is allowable if the syllable or syllables leave little doubt as to the identity of the full word.
   - It is preferable not to break proper names but allowable when difficult to avoid. Line breaks are allowed after a first name or middle initial; names using two initials will not break between the initials.
   - More guidelines on word division are found in the CHICAGO MANUAL OF STYLE. Follow it for more detailed guidance.

5. **"Carding":** Adding extra space between lines or paragraphs to make facing pages align is not allowed.

6. **Density:** Type density must be consistent from page to page throughout the book, and patches and reruns must match the original type. Repros will be returned if there are variations in density.

7. **Ligatures:** Use for lowercase Roman and italic letter combinations such as ti, ff, fl, ffi, and ffl, and other combinations (except ae, oe) when available in the font.

FIGURE A.3. Sample set of rules for composition and page makeup (*continues overleaf*).

figure out type sizes, spacing, and margins that will result in a book that comes close to this target. The traditional way to determine this is to start by getting a character count, or castoff, and dividing this count by the target number of characters per printed page. Since each category of text will likely be given its own set of type characteristics, the designer needs not just a total character count for the work but a count broken down by type of material (e.g., text, extracts, appendix, notes, and bibliography). Some designers will prefer instead to look at the entire manuscript in a page-layout program, where decisions about type sizes and layout can be

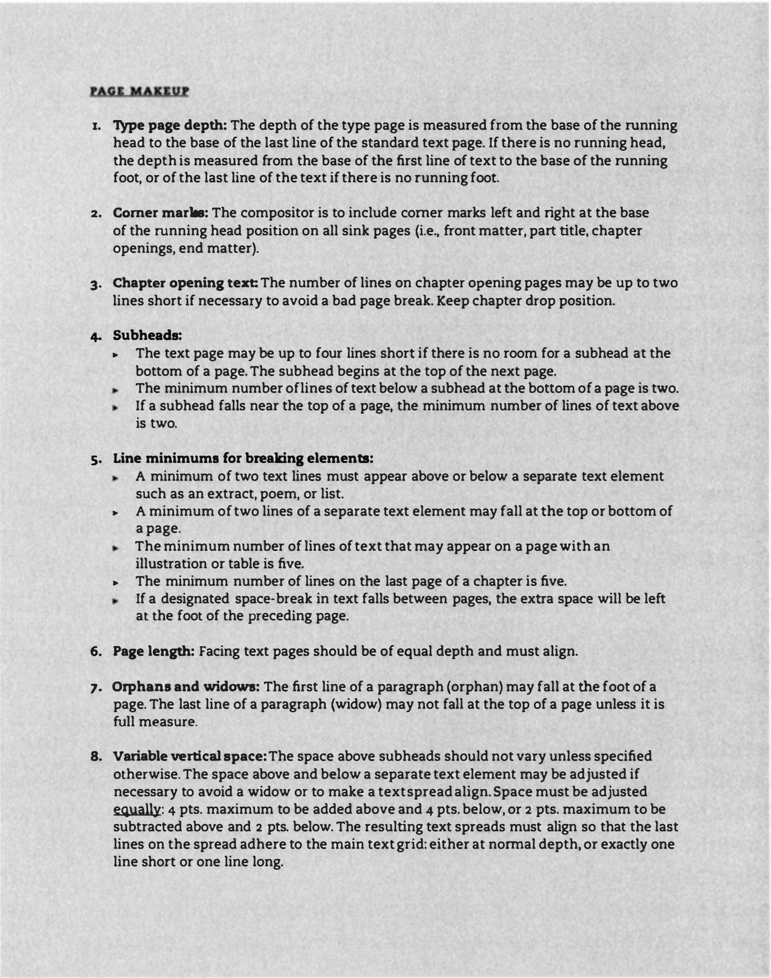

PAGE MAKEUP

1. **Type page depth:** The depth of the type page is measured from the base of the running head to the base of the last line of the standard text page. If there is no running head, the depth is measured from the base of the first line of text to the base of the running foot, or of the last line of the text if there is no running foot.

2. **Corner marks:** The compositor is to include corner marks left and right at the base of the running head position on all sink pages (i.e., front matter, part title, chapter openings, end matter).

3. **Chapter opening text:** The number of lines on chapter opening pages may be up to two lines short if necessary to avoid a bad page break. Keep chapter drop position.

4. **Subheads:**
   - The text page may be up to four lines short if there is no room for a subhead at the bottom of a page. The subhead begins at the top of the next page.
   - The minimum number of lines of text below a subhead at the bottom of a page is two.
   - If a subhead falls near the top of a page, the minimum number of lines of text above is two.

5. **Line minimums for breaking elements:**
   - A minimum of two text lines must appear above or below a separate text element such as an extract, poem, or list.
   - A minimum of two lines of a separate text element may fall at the top or bottom of a page.
   - The minimum number of lines of text that may appear on a page with an illustration or table is five.
   - The minimum number of lines on the last page of a chapter is five.
   - If a designated space-break in text falls between pages, the extra space will be left at the foot of the preceding page.

6. **Page length:** Facing text pages should be of equal depth and must align.

7. **Orphans and widows:** The first line of a paragraph (orphan) may fall at the foot of a page. The last line of a paragraph (widow) may not fall at the top of a page unless it is full measure.

8. **Variable vertical space:** The space above subheads should not vary unless specified otherwise. The space above and below a separate text element may be adjusted if necessary to avoid a widow or to make a text spread align. Space must be adjusted equally: 4 pts. maximum to be added above and 4 pts. below, or 2 pts. maximum to be subtracted above and 2 pts. below. The resulting text spreads must align so that the last lines on the spread adhere to the main text grid: either at normal depth, or exactly one line short or one line long.

FIGURE A.3. *(continued)*

made and the resulting page count determined at the same time. For the most accurate result, it is best to use the final, edited manuscript. Whatever method is used, it is important also to account for illustrations, tables, and other nontextual material. For journals, which have fixed designs and page allotments, the total number of articles must be adjusted to fill each issue. For electronic-only publications, length is less of a consideration from a production standpoint, though it is always an editorial and design consideration.

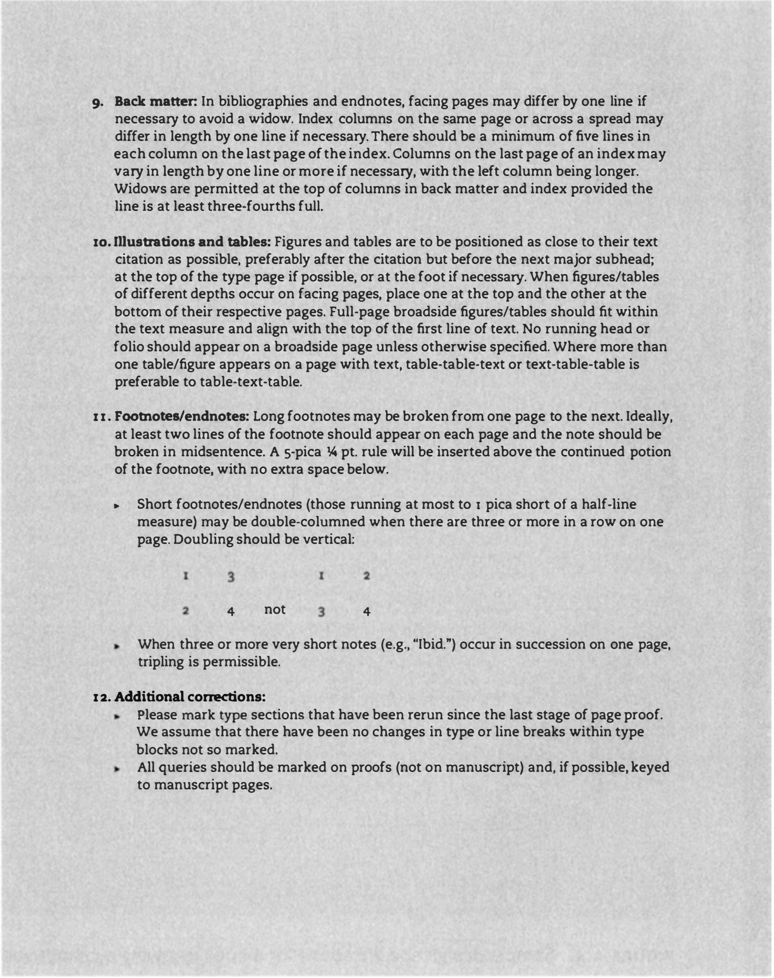

9. **Back matter:** In bibliographies and endnotes, facing pages may differ by one line if necessary to avoid a widow. Index columns on the same page or across a spread may differ in length by one line if necessary. There should be a minimum of five lines in each column on the last page of the index. Columns on the last page of an index may vary in length by one line or more if necessary, with the left column being longer. Widows are permitted at the top of columns in back matter and index provided the line is at least three-fourths full.

10. **Illustrations and tables:** Figures and tables are to be positioned as close to their text citation as possible, preferably after the citation but before the next major subhead; at the top of the type page if possible, or at the foot if necessary. When figures/tables of different depths occur on facing pages, place one at the top and the other at the bottom of their respective pages. Full-page broadside figures/tables should fit within the text measure and align with the top of the first line of text. No running head or folio should appear on a broadside page unless otherwise specified. Where more than one table/figure appears on a page with text, table-table-text or text-table-table is preferable to table-text-table.

11. **Footnotes/endnotes:** Long footnotes may be broken from one page to the next. Ideally, at least two lines of the footnote should appear on each page and the note should be broken in midsentence. A 5-pica ¼ pt. rule will be inserted above the continued potion of the footnote, with no extra space below.

    - Short footnotes/endnotes (those running at most to 1 pica short of a half-line measure) may be double-columned when there are three or more in a row on one page. Doubling should be vertical:

      1 3 1 2

      2 4 not 3 4

    - When three or more very short notes (e.g., "Ibid.") occur in succession on one page, tripling is permissible.

12. **Additional corrections:**
    - Please mark type sections that have been rerun since the last stage of page proof. We assume that there have been no changes in type or line breaks within type blocks not so marked.
    - All queries should be marked on proofs (not on manuscript) and, if possible, keyed to manuscript pages.

FIGURE A.3. *(continued)*

A.19 ***Design specifications for printed works.*** A complete design for a book or other work should include full type specifications and representative layouts for all the various categories of text. Common elements might include the front (or preliminary) matter; a chapter opening page; two or more facing pages showing primary textual elements such as running text, extracts, subheads, footnotes, illustrations, running heads, and folios; and the back (or end) matter (including, as relevant, the appendix, endnotes, glossary, bibliography, and index). See figure A.4 for an ex-

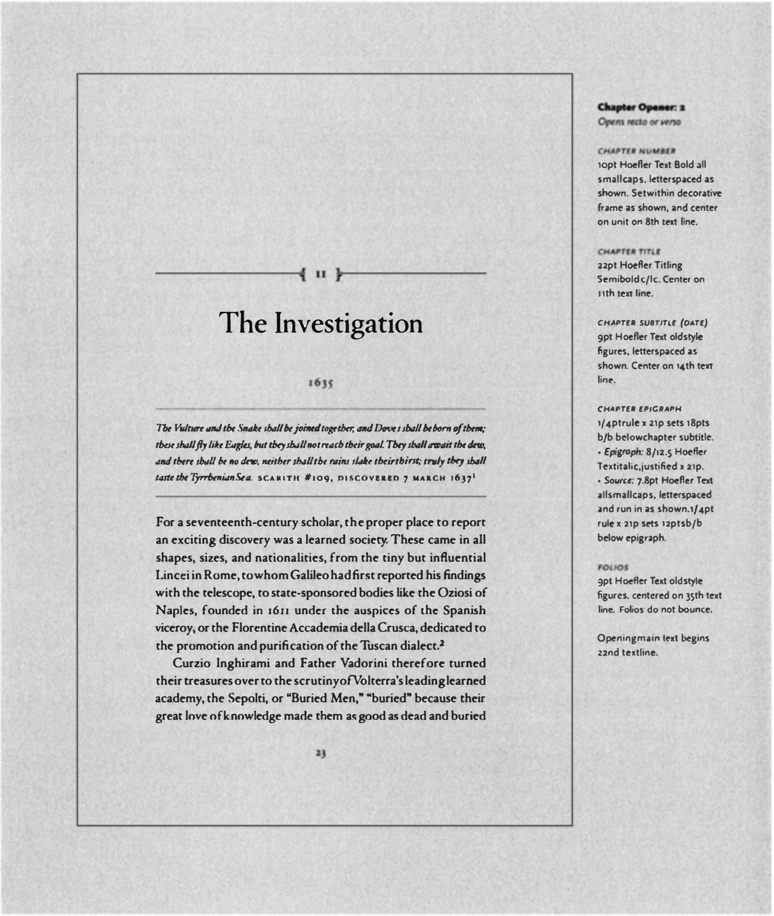

11

The Investigation

1635

The Vulture and the Snake shall be joined together, and Doves shall be born of them; these shall fly like Eagles, but they shall not reach their goal. They shall await the dew, and there shall be no dew, neither shall the rains slake their thirst; truly they shall taste the Tyrrhenian Sea. SCARITH #109, DISCOVERED 7 MARCH 1637[1]

For a seventeenth-century scholar, the proper place to report an exciting discovery was a learned society. These came in all shapes, sizes, and nationalities, from the tiny but influential Lincei in Rome, to whom Galileo had first reported his findings with the telescope, to state-sponsored bodies like the Oziosi of Naples, founded in 1611 under the auspices of the Spanish viceroy, or the Florentine Accademia della Crusca, dedicated to the promotion and purification of the Tuscan dialect.[2]

Curzio Inghirami and Father Vadorini therefore turned their treasures over to the scrutiny of Volterra's leading learned academy, the Sepolti, or "Buried Men," "buried" because their great love of knowledge made them as good as dead and buried

23

Chapter Opener: 2
Opens recto or verso

CHAPTER NUMBER
10pt Hoefler Text Bold all smallcaps, letterspaced as shown. Set within decorative frame as shown, and center on unit on 8th text line.

CHAPTER TITLE
22pt Hoefler Titling Semibold c/lc. Center on 11th text line.

CHAPTER SUBTITLE (DATE)
9pt Hoefler Text oldstyle figures, letterspaced as shown. Center on 14th text line.

CHAPTER EPIGRAPH
1/4pt rule x 21p sets 18pts b/b below chapter subtitle.
- *Epigraph:* 8/12.5 Hoefler Text italic, justified x 21p.
- *Source:* 7.8pt Hoefler Text all smallcaps, letterspaced and run in as shown. 1/4pt rule x 21p sets 12pts b/b below epigraph.

FOLIOS
9pt Hoefler Text oldstyle figures, centered on 35th text line. Folios do not bounce.

Opening main text begins 22nd text line.

FIGURE A.4. Sample design specifications for a book, showing a chapter-opening page and a page for an index.

ample of a partial text design for a printed book showing marginal type specifications. Before typesetting, the final, edited manuscript is checked by the editor against the design specifications to make sure that each element has been properly accounted for. If an electronic style sheet will be used to encode these specifications for typesetting, it must also include every element in every possible context that might signal a design change (see also A.9).

A.20 ***Design specifications for web-based works.*** In addition to identifying every element of the work in every context—as for a print publication—the

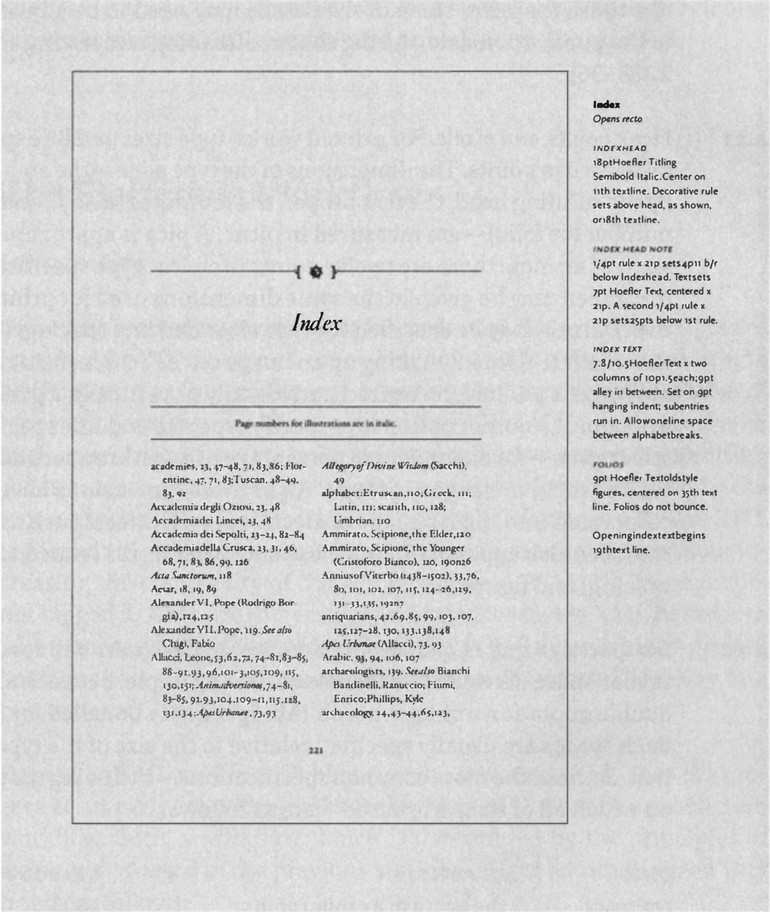

Index

Page numbers for illustrations are in italic.

academies, 23, 47–48, 71, 83,86; Florentine, 47, 71, 83;Tuscan, 48–49, 83, 92
Accademia degli Oziosi, 23, 48
Accademiadei Lincei, 23, 48
Accademia dei Sepolti, 23–24, 82–84
Accademiadella Crusca, 23, 31, 46, 68, 71, 83, 86, 99, 126
Acta Sanctorum, 118
Aesar, 18, 19, 89
Alexander VI, Pope (Rodrigo Borgia),124,125
Alexander VII, Pope, 119. *See also* Chigi, Fabio
Allacci, Leone,53,62,72, 74–81,83–85, 88–91,93,96,101–3,105,109, 115, 130,151; *Animadversiones*,74–81, 83–85, 91,93,104,109–11,115,128, 131,134; *Apes Urbanae*, 73,93
Allegoryof Divine Wisdom (Sacchi), 49
alphabet:Etruscan,110;Greek, 111; Latin, 111; search, 110, 128; Umbrian, 110
Ammirato, Scipione,the Elder,120
Ammirato, Scipione, the Younger (Cristoforo Bianco), 120, 190n26
Anniusof Viterbo (1438–1502), 33,76, 80, 101, 102, 107, 115, 124–26,129, 131–33,135, 192n7
antiquarians, 42,69,85, 99, 103, 107, 125,127–28, 130, 133,138,148
Apes Urbanae (Allacci), 73, 93
Arabic, 93, 94, 106, 107
archaeologists, 139. *See also* Bianchi Bandinelli, Ranuccio; Fiumi, Enrico;Phillips, Kyle
archaeology, 24,43–44,65,123,

221

Index
Opens recto

INDEXHEAD
18ptHoefler Titling Semibold Italic.Center on 11th textline. Decorative rule sets above head, as shown, on18th textline.

INDEX HEAD NOTE
1/4pt rule x 21p sets4p11 b/r below Indexhead. Textsets 7pt Hoefler Text, centered x 21p. A second 1/4pt rule x 21p sets25pts below 1st rule.

INDEX TEXT
7.8/10.5HoeflerText x two columns of 10p1.5each;9pt alley in between. Set on 9pt hanging indent; subentries run in. Allowoneline space between alphabetbreaks.

FOLIOS
9pt Hoefler Textoldstyle figures, centered on 35th text line. Folios do not bounce.

Openingindextextbegins 19thtext line.

FIGURE A.4. *(continued)*

design for an electronic work must identify any additional elements required for the presentation, including such things as navigational elements, additional copyright statements, and help screens. Some of these elements, such as error messages and titles in browsers, will be generated by a particular web browser or other program, and the degree of control that a designer has over their appearance may be limited. In fact, designs for electronic works are not like those for print. Specifications for print assume fixed layouts and predictable results; those for electronic works must take into account the technical limitations of particular software programs and devices at the time of publication. Therefore, though the design for an electronic work might start with a set of specifications like those for print, some of the details may need to be adjusted closer to the publication date, during the proofreading and testing stages (see 2.133–36).

A.21 *Picas, points, and pixels.* For printed works, type sizes and line spacing are measured in points. The dimensions of the type page—the area occupied by the running head, the text proper, the footnotes (if any), and the page number (or folio)—are measured in picas. A pica is approximately one-sixth of an inch; there are twelve points in a pica. Type specifications for the screen may be given in the same dimensions used for print; alternatively, pixels may be specified for type sizes and line spacing. (A pixel is the smallest element making up an image on the screen; for a resolution of 72 pixels per inch measured horizontally or vertically, a pixel is equal to a point.) Another option is to specify type size and line spacing in relative terms—for example, as a percentage of a web browser's default size for a particular category of type. All of these dimensions have been incorporated into the language of electronic style sheets such as CSS (see A.9). See also appendix B (for these and other terms related to size and spacing) and figure A.4.

A.22 *Em spaces, en spaces, and so forth.* Sometimes designers will specify a particular space between two elements—for example, between single and double quotation marks, where a thin space may be called for (see 6.11). Such spaces are usually specified relative to the size of the type in question. Some of the more common specifications—including the em space, on which all of them are based—are as follows:

UNIT	*DEFINITION*	*UNICODE NUMBER*
em space	the width of a capital M in a given font at a given size	2003
en space	half the size of an em	2002
thick space	one-third of an em	2004
medium (or mid) space	one-fourth of an em	2005
thin space	a fifth (or sometimes a sixth) of an em	2009
hair space	thinner than a thin space	200A

All of these distinctions can be achieved for the printed page in page-layout or typesetting programs. They can also be specified in a limited way in electronic style sheets—for example, as an instruction to increase (or decrease) the spacing between all the letters or words in a particular type of paragraph. To date, however, though these spaces have been defined for Unicode, they are not available in many fonts, limiting their usefulness in electronic documents and publications. See also 11.2.

The Electronic Workflow

Introduction

A.23 *Converting marked-up manuscripts for production.* Many manuscripts are imported directly from word-processing software to a desktop publishing platform such as QuarkXPress or Adobe's InDesign or one of a number of typesetting systems used by commercial vendors of publishing services. Such conversions have typically involved replacing generic typesetting codes or word-processing styles with corresponding codes used by the typesetting system. Many of these same applications can now use XML tags in addition to their own systems of markup (though not without increasing the complexity of the workflow; see A.25, A.31). Manuscripts not tagged in XML are increasingly being converted to XML in order to take advantage of its downstream flexibility (e.g., for publishing a printed book on the web or in various e-book formats for which XML may be a requirement). See also A.27–30.

A.24 *Steps in an XML workflow.* Publishers who introduce XML into the process at an early stage can make it the basis of their entire production workflow. Such a workflow, which is determined by the principles of markup discussed in the previous sections, might be summarized very briefly as follows:

1. XML tags are added to a manuscript in conformance with a DTD (see A.8). This can be done before or after the manuscript editing stage (see A.27–30).
2. Meanwhile, any artwork is scanned and converted as necessary to the recommended file formats and resolutions for publication in print and electronic formats. XML tags that indicate the correct versions of each publication-ready file must be included in the manuscript. These are similar to generic figure-placement callouts in an edited manuscript (see 2.27).
3. The XML-tagged file—that is, the marked-up manuscript from step 1—can be converted to a variety of formats and, in conjunction with the artwork from step 2, typeset for print, on the one hand, and, on the other, used as the basis of one or more electronic formats. In each case, a particular style sheet determines what the presentation will look like (see A.9).

For an illustration of such a workflow, see figure A.5. For a broader outline of the publishing process—one that factors in editing and proofreading stages—see 2.2.

A.25 *Where does proofreading fit in?* In any workflow, the final output—whether print or electronic—needs to be proofread, as detailed in chapter 2 (see 2.97–136). For simultaneous print and electronic publication, there are a number of options for doing this. Especially for longer works, it can be expedient to proofread the work as it is typeset for print first. Corrections made during the proofreading process are incorporated into the XML file used for typesetting. Then, the corrected XML (including any index produced during the proofreading stage) can be converted to HTML, e-book formats, and any other electronic version using a range of style sheets and conversion programs. This saves the trouble of having to proofread print and electronic versions from scratch simultaneously, though the electronic versions still need to be carefully reviewed and tested (see 2.133–36). Alternatively, the print and electronic versions can be produced and proofread simultaneously, an option especially suited to shorter works such as journal articles.

A.26 *Cyclical workflow for web-based publications.* Like the traditional workflow followed for print publications before the advent of computerized typesetting, the electronic workflow described above, which focuses on print publications and electronic books and journals, is essentially linear. Web-based publications that require the development and implementation of functional and navigational features generally follow a different model—one that allows for technological design, engineering, testing, release, and maintenance of the website itself, apart from the content that will be presented on the site. Web-development workflows tend to be cyclical, allowing for the refinement of features to improve usability and to optimize the presentation. While a full discussion of this process is beyond the scope of this appendix, authors, editors, designers, and other publishing professionals who become involved in web-based projects should be prepared to adapt to the processes and requirements of that environment.

When Should XML Be Introduced into the Process?

A.27 *Who applies the markup?* To date, few editors and even fewer authors work directly with XML markup. Most of the coding that goes into such markup—not to mention the DTDs, style sheets, and converters that are used to implement it—requires an immersion in software and pro-

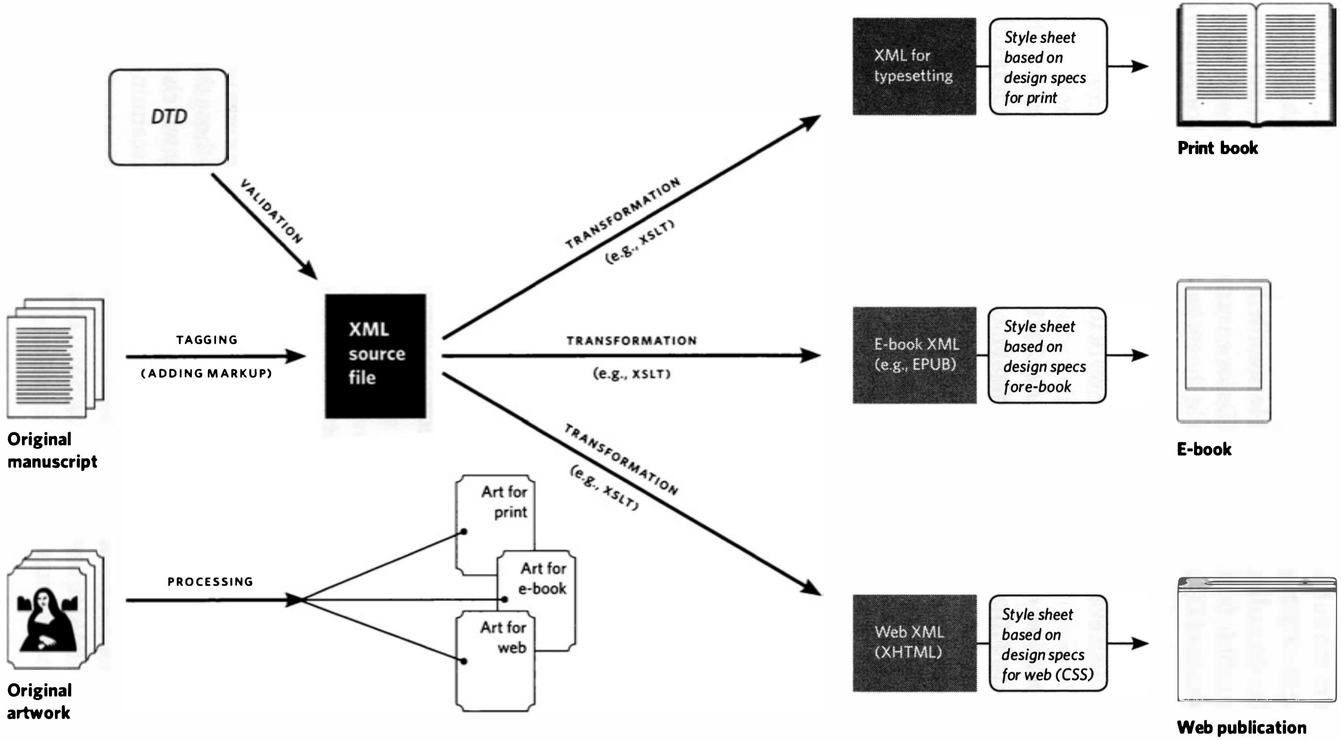

DTD
VALIDATION
Original manuscript
TAGGING
(ADDING MARKUP)
XML source file
Original artwork
PROCESSING
Art for print
Art for e-book
Art for web
TRANSFORMATION
(e.g., XSLT)
TRANSFORMATION
(e.g., XSLT)
TRANSFORMATION
(e.g., XSLT)
XML for typesetting
Style sheet based on design specs for print
Print book
E-book XML (e.g., EPUB)
Style sheet based on design specs fore-book
E-book
Web XML (XHTML)
Style sheet based on design specs for web (CSS)
Web publication

FIGURE A.5. A simplified XML workflow, in which an XML-tagged book manuscript is used as the basis of print, e-book, and web versions of the publication. Any artwork is processed and converted as appropriate and integrated into each version before publication.

gramming that is generally the arena of IT specialists. Thus, it usually falls to the publisher or one of its vendors to apply the XML. This can be done at various points in the production process, each with its benefits and costs, as discussed below. Meanwhile, IT specialists are also typically responsible for developing DTDs (or ensuring compliance with existing or standard DTDs), writing style sheets (or making modifications to existing style sheets), and coordinating the systems that allow a publisher to maintain an archive of the latest versions of the electronic files used to publish every version of every work in its inventory.

A.28 *Author's final manuscript converted to XML before editing.* There are advantages to introducing XML markup to a manuscript before it is edited. Manuscript editors are in many ways closest to the content; they are therefore in a good position to ensure the quality of the markup. A publisher may invest in XML tools that facilitate traditional and new editing tasks by allowing editors who have little knowledge of XML syntax to modify content and structure without invalidating the underlying code. Such an approach is especially suited to a journal publisher, where each article can be marked up in essentially the same manner and according to the same DTD and style sheet for each issue. Book publishers, on the other hand, might develop sets of templates that correspond to different types of books.

A.29 *Edited manuscript converted for typesetting.* Typesetters who have converted their internal processes to use XML will usually convert generic word-processing files to XML when they get them. Manuscript editors can help this along, using word-processor styles or generic tagging in a consistent manner even if they do not use XML. Some publishers further facilitate this process by providing editors with word-processing style templates that map to XML tags for a specific document type such as a book or journal article.

A.30 *XML added to files after typesetting.* There are two scenarios for adding XML to files after the typesetting of a print publication is completed: (1) the typesetter's electronic files are used to create the XML (for example, by deriving XML from a program such as QuarkXPress or Adobe's InDesign); or (2) XML is derived from PDF files—either those that are required to print the work or, in the case of older works for which there are no suitable electronic files, those that are obtained from scanning printed pages. Publishers who do this need to implement quality-assurance procedures (QA) to test the resulting XML, much as is done for any new electronic publication. See also 2.133–36.

Source Files

A.31 *XML source files.* XML source files comprise the XML text files and any electronic files for illustrations or audiovisual materials that, in conjunction with style sheets, converters, and an array of software programs, can be rendered in published form in a variety of media. As the basis of an electronic workflow, these files should accurately reflect the *content* of a published work, including any subsequent changes thereto. For example, if it is necessary to correct an error in the text of an HTML version of a journal article or a chapter in a book, it is not enough to make the correction in the HTML file; the correction must also be made in the corresponding XML source file to ensure that it will be reflected in any future versions of the work generated from that source. If extensive corrections are required, it may be better to make them in the source files and then reconvert them to HTML. Any changes to the way the content is presented, on the other hand, are usually made in a style sheet or, for some types of adjustments in printed works, with a page-layout or typesetting program (see A.9, A.17).

A.32 *Illustrations.* Electronic versions of files for such nontext items as illustrations or audiovisual materials may be needed in various sizes (thumbnails, medium resolution, high resolution, low bit rate, high bit rate, etc.) to allow for optimal presentation in various media. All of these versions should be derived either from high-resolution bitmapped graphics in a lossless format such as TIFF (e.g., for photographic images) or from vector-based graphics (e.g., for line art created in a program such as Adobe Illustrator). The richer the source, the higher the level of quality not only in print but on the screen, where image files are typically downsampled (i.e., prepared at a lower resolution) and compressed for faster downloading and rendering. Moreover, it should be noted that once information is discarded from a file (e.g., using a lossy compression format such as JPEG), it cannot be recovered. And, though resolution requirements for the screen are lower than those for print, the original, high-quality source files should always be retained, as they are more likely to meet requirements for republishing the work in alternative formats in the future. Many publishers provide authors with guidelines for preparing and submitting artwork; Chicago makes detailed guidelines available on its books and journals websites. See also 3.15.

A.33 *Tables.* Tables are generally marked up and included as part of the XML source files with the rest of the text. In online publications, the HTML tables derived from this markup are sometimes supplemented by image files or PDF versions of the same (often derived from pages typeset for print). Though not strictly necessary, this can be desirable because, to date, HTML table markup does not include layout options sufficient to achieve all of the typesetting niceties discussed in chapter 3, such as certain types of character alignment within a column. Meanwhile, the character data in the rough-hewn HTML tables derived from XML can be useful—for example, the data can be cut and pasted or otherwise exported into spreadsheets and other tools for efficient verification of results. It is important to keep track of each version of a table: any correction must not only be made in the XML source file but also reflected in any published version of the table.

A.34 *Mathematical expressions.* Although XML may be used to typeset math—tagged using MathML—complex, built-up mathematical expressions are not generally rendered for online publications directly from MathML or XML-based HTML. Though browser support for MathML continues to improve, math in web publications is typically presented using bitmapped images, which can be derived from typeset pages when they are available. Otherwise, the images must be derived from math-editing tools in word-processing applications such as Microsoft Word or LaTeX (see 12.2). As with tables, it is important to make sure that the MathML in the source file reflects any changes or adjustments made to the embedded images.

Options for Presenting Content

A.35 *Print.* Print remains the preferred medium for many types of publications. From the standpoint of a typical publisher's electronic workflow, however, it has become one option among several. For a discussion of the technologies of printing, including considerations for paper selection and binding, see A.41–50.

A.36 *Web.* Two standards have emerged for presenting publications on the web: full-text web presentations and PDF (portable document format). Full-text presentations, usually in HTML (or XHTML; see A.37), are especially common for journals, particularly those in the scientific, technical, and medical fields (so-called STM publications), and for reference works. Such presentations, by taking advantage of all the textual and audiovisual functionality of modern browsers, are extremely flexible. On the other hand, they are costly, requiring a lot of maintenance to adapt to changing technologies and evolving standards. PDF, because it presents fixed layouts and typefaces that match the printed page, is easier to produce and maintain, especially as a supplement to print. In fact, printed publications generally must be submitted to the printer as PDF files, and optimizing these files for electronic publication is a relatively straightforward process (e.g., using a PDF-creation program such as Adobe Acrobat). Journals that publish on the web typically provide PDF versions of their articles accompanied either by full-text HTML versions or, to facilitate search engines and other services, by HTML metadata (sometimes accompanied by an abstract). See also A.10.

A.37 *Converting XML to HTML.* To create a full-text web presentation, the XML source files must be converted to HTML. As noted in A.12, HTML is a set of tags that function much like typesetting codes for web presentations. Usually in conjunction with CSS (see A.9), it tells a browser how to format and display content and facilitates linking. XML files are converted, or transformed, to HTML using scripts, often in XSLT (extensible stylesheet language transformations), a language that allows XML to be converted to a variety of formats. If you are reading this online, you are viewing XHTML (HTML defined as an application of XML) derived from XML source files for the purpose of web presentation.

A.38 *E-book formats.* Publishers have an increasing number of options for offering content in an e-book format. For works also published in print, PDF-based e-books are the most straightforward. More sophisticated e-book formats include International Digital Publishing Forum's EPUB, DAISY (digital accessible information system, a format for digital talking books), and such proprietary formats as Microsoft Reader (LIT) and Amazon Kindle (AZW). Conversion to each of these formats can be facilitated by XML-encoded source files (see A.31–34).

A.39 *Additional publishing options.* Book chapters, journal articles, and even smaller components of a complete publication can be presented and sold on their own, separately from the publication in which they originally appeared. This has always been true of print publications—for example, the University of Chicago Press offers an offprint of the indexing chapter that appears in this manual—but digital technology has greatly expanded the possibilities for such derivative works. For example, a medical publisher might group together all the articles that, according to their metadata, are about Tamiflu-resistant flu strains and sell them as a new publication. Such "virtual" publications can be assembled automatically from a publisher's source files or they can be curated by content experts—or some combination of the two strategies. Electronic content can also be sold in smaller pieces. Journal articles are often published one at a time, when they are ready—in advance of, or independently of, the print publication. This approach facilitates the way readers tend to find articles: thanks to search engines and citation-linking networks such as CrossRef, much of the traffic coming into journal sites goes directly to single articles.

A.40 ***Digital rights management strategies.*** Publishers who present their content in electronic form face challenges from those who might attempt to copy and redistribute electronic materials in violation of copyright law. To ensure that copyright holders and publishers are fairly compensated for their intellectual property, on the one hand, while providing content to readers in an easily accessible manner, on the other, publishers can employ a number of strategies. These strategies—which include technologies such as encrypted passwords, user-authentication schemes, and digital watermarks—are collectively referred to as digital rights management (DRM). Essentially, DRM can be seen as the intersection between copyright law, distribution models, and technology. Some of the legal aspects of electronic distribution and licensing are discussed in chapter 4 (see 4.56, 4.57, 4.60 [especially *Electronic rights* and *Rights for educational use*], 4.61, 4.62). The technological aspects of DRM will depend on the software used to implement it and on the medium of publication. For a detailed overview of these considerations and others, consult *The Columbia Guide to Digital Publishing* (bibliog. 2.7).

Print Technologies

A.41 ***Electronic markup and print.*** The principles of electronic markup occupy a central place in the production of publications intended for print. The advantages of applying XML before or during typesetting, as outlined above—even if a book or journal is initially intended only for print distribution—can be central to a goal of being prepared to republish the same content in electronic form or to make it available to electronic archives and search engines. The difference is that for print, the product is physical. Whereas the appearance of an electronic publication might vary depending on the device and software used to view it, a printed book or journal is a unique artifact with a permanent design. The physical aspects of the production of printed works—the details of which have changed little since the last edition of this manual—are the subject of this section.

A.42 ***The role of PDF in the print process.*** To date, most printed publications rely on PDF (portable document format) to display the final publication on-screen before it is sent to the printer. PDF presents fonts, images, layout, and pagination exactly as they will appear on the printed page. This makes it an essential tool in the proofing process. After a book or article is typeset, first proof is generated as PDF and supplied to authors, editors, and indexers either as a printout or for on-screen review. One or more rounds of revised proof can be offered in the same manner. Moreover, PDF tends to obviate the need to review printer's proof—what was once commonly referred to as bluelines—because the files used by the printer are typically the same as those generated by the typesetter. Nonetheless, the PDF files themselves must be print-ready. Among other things, it is important to check that the latest versions of files are present; that they are properly and consistently named; that any specialized fonts have been embedded or otherwise included; that any images have been provided as high-resolution files appropriate for printing; and that all specifications regarding paper, trim size, resolution, and so forth have been provided. See also 2.100–106.

A.43 ***Preliminary presswork, or "prepress."*** The prepress phase includes all the steps that a printer takes from the time it receives the final files (and any other materials, such as artwork, needed for printing) to the time the publication is put on press, or printed. These days, the final electronic files received by the printer that have been reviewed by the typesetter, designer, and others at the publisher need no further review. But for works in which the reproduction quality of the illustrations is critical, the printer may supply a high-quality proof that can be checked for contrast and quality and, if applicable, color.

A.44 ***Paper selection.*** Paper comes in varying weights, sizes, shades, coatings, and degrees of opacity and smoothness (i.e., finish). In consultation with the printer or a paper merchant, the publisher must determine which type of paper best suits a particular publication and which will print on and run through a given printing press most efficiently. Other considerations include cost, availability, and durability of the paper. Publications printed on acid-free paper have a longer life expectancy than those that are not, and they may carry a notice on the copyright page indicating their compliance with the durability standards of the American National Standards Institute (see 1.34). For environmental considerations, see A.46.

A.45 ***Paper sizes.*** Paper is manufactured to standard roll and sheet sizes. Because printing presses and bindery equipment are set up to accommodate these roll and sheet sizes with minimal waste of paper, publishers usually find it most economical to choose one of a handful of corresponding trim sizes for their books and journals—in the United States, these are 5½ × 8½ inches, 6⅛ × 9¼ inches, 7 × 10 inches, and 8½ × 11 inches. Publications requiring a nonstandard trim size will generally cost more. Note that the dimensions for the type page (that part of the page occupied by the text, the running head, and the folio, if any) must leave adequate margins for the given trim size and, if required, allow for illustrations to bleed.

A.46 *Paper and the environment.* Environmental issues have come to play a significant role in paper selection. Most works can be printed on recycled paper, generally a combination of virgin fiber and pre- and postconsumer wastepaper. Using papers certified by the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) is another way to minimize environmental impacts. FSC is a nonprofit organization widely regarded as ensuring the best practices in forest management. Publishers who use recycled and FSC-certified papers not only contribute to the reduction of greenhouse gas emissions but also minimize the negative impact on endangered forests and forest-dependent communities. Also important are the bleaching methods used to make papers, which employ varying amounts of chlorine and chlorine derivatives, the use of which contributes to the formation of dioxins and other hazardous substances. Processed chlorine-free (PCF) papers are recycled papers that have been produced with no chlorine or derivatives beyond what may have been used originally to produce the recovered wastepaper. A totally chlorine-free (TCF) process can be used on virgin fibers. Elemental chlorine-free (ECF) and enhanced ECF papers are bleached using a chlorine derivative (chlorine dioxide) in order to minimize hazardous by-products but are less safe than TCF or PCF papers. Publishers wishing to learn more about the environmental impact of paper purchasing should seek the advice of the Forest Stewardship Council. Additional resources include the US-based Green Press Initiative and the Canadian-based Canopy.

A.47 *Offset printing.* The most common method for producing books is through offset printing, or offset lithography. This process involves the transfer of images (text, illustrations, and any other marks that will be distinct from the background color of the page) from metal plates to paper through an intermediate cylinder. The images are usually imposed directly onto the photosensitive plates using the typesetter's electronic files (referred to as computer-to-plate technology, or CTP) or, using an older process, by contact with film negatives (also typically generated from the typesetter's files). Ink is applied to each plate, and the inked images are offset onto the paper through the rubber-blanketed intermediate cylinder (see fig. A.6). The printing press itself may be either sheet-fed, using sheets

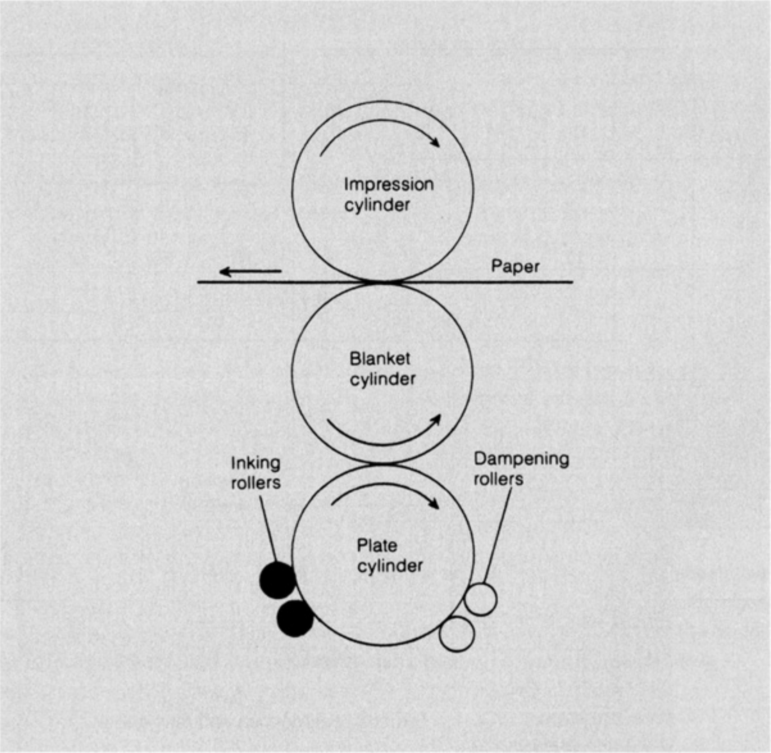

FIGURE A.6. Principle of offset printing. A plate is wrapped around and fastened to the plate cylinder. Water applied by the dampening rollers adheres only to the background area of the plate; ink applied by the inking rollers adheres only to the dry image of the type on the plate. As the plate cylinder revolves, it transfers the ink to the rubber blanket of the blanket cylinder, which in turn transfers (or offsets) it onto the paper, which is held in place by the impression cylinder.

of paper that have been precut, or web-fed, using rolls of paper that will be folded and trimmed at the end of the printing stage.

A.48 *Digital printing.* In digital printing, images are printed directly onto paper through ink jets or thermal transfer using either powder- or liquid-based toners. The quality of the reproduction is typically not as high as that achieved through the offset process (though the gap has closed), but digital printing makes it economically viable to print small quantities of a publication on demand (as few as one), preferably from archived electronic files, and can reduce the publisher's cost of warehousing unsold stock. Digital printing also makes it feasible to customize each copy.

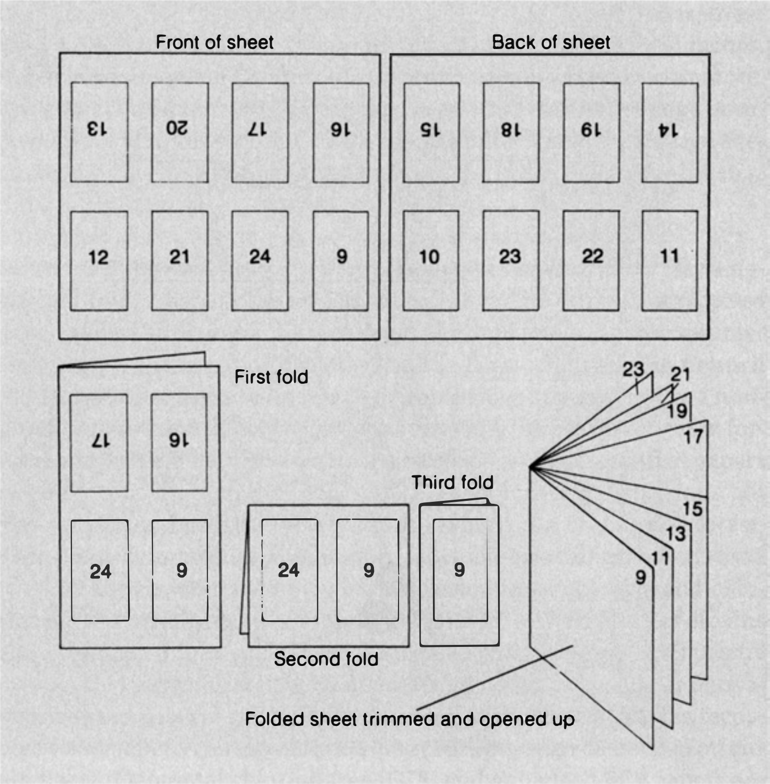
Front of sheet
Back of sheet
13
20
17
16
12
21
24
9
15
18
19
14
10
23
22
11
First fold
17
16
24
9
Third fold
24
9
9
Second fold
23
21
19
17
15
13
11
9
Folded sheet trimmed and opened up

FIGURE A.7. A sheet consisting of sixteen printed pages. After being folded, the pages fall into proper numerical sequence.

Short-run digital copies of books can be bound either as hardcover or paperback editions.

A.49 ***Folded and gathered sheets (F&Gs).*** Before binding can begin, the press sheets, or printed sheets, that emerge from the printing press must be folded and trimmed. A press sheet has printed pages on both sides, and when it is folded in half, and then in half again—continuing until only one page is showing—all the pages fall into proper sequence in a process known as imposition (see fig. A.7). The folded sheet, called a signature, usually consists of thirty-two pages, but this number may vary depending on the bulk and flexibility of the paper and the size of the offset printing press. When all the signatures have been gathered in the proper order, they are referred to as folded and gathered sheets, or F&Gs. The F&Gs can then be bound in either hardcover or paperback format. (Pub-

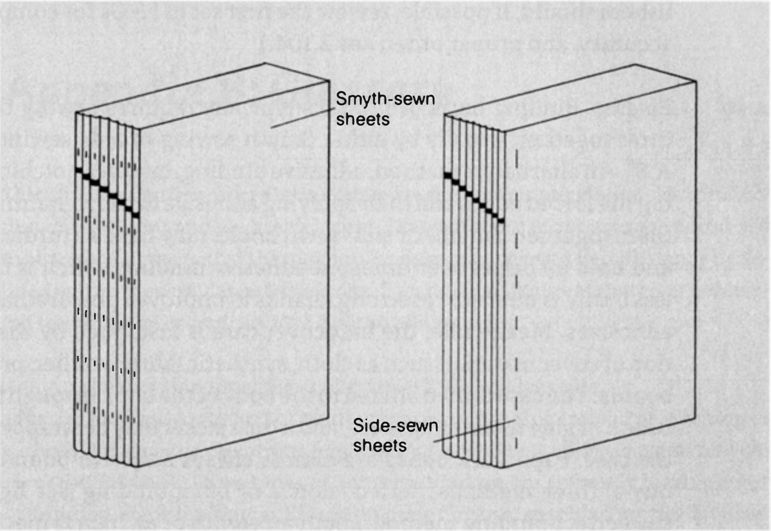
Smyth-sewn
sheets
Side-sewn
sheets

FIGURE A.8. Two methods of sewing used in binding. In Smyth sewing the sheets are stitched individually through the fold; in side sewing they are stitched from the side, close to the spine. The black rectangles printed on the folds in both methods help the binder recognize whether a signature is missing, duplicated, out of order, or upside down.

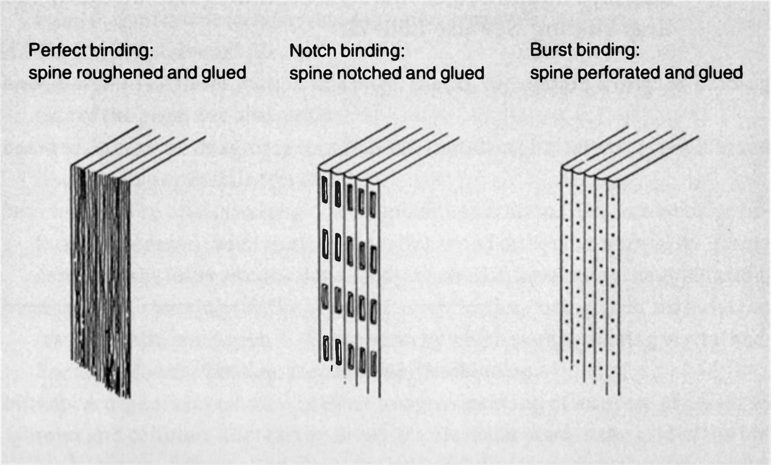
Perfect binding:
spine roughened and glued
Notch binding:
spine notched and glued
Burst binding:
spine perforated and glued

FIGURE A.9. Three methods of adhesive binding: perfect, notch, and burst binding.

lishers should, if possible, review the first set of F&Gs for completeness, accuracy, and proper order; see 2.104.)

A.50 *Binding.* Binding hardcover books typically requires sewing the signatures together, usually by either Smyth sewing or side sewing (see fig. A.8). An alternative method, adhesive binding, involves notching or fraying the folded edges and then applying adhesive to the signatures to hold them together. Smyth- or side-sewn books may have a sturdier binding and hold up better over time, but adhesive binding, which is faster and less costly, is often just as strong, thanks to improved polyurethane-based adhesives. Meanwhile, the hardcover case is fashioned by the application of cover material (such as cloth, synthetic fabric, leather, or paper) to boards. The case is then affixed to the body of the book through the application of glue to the endpapers, and a dust jacket may be wrapped around the case. Paperback books are almost always adhesive-bound through one of three methods: perfect, notch, or burst binding (see fig. A.9). In the perfect-binding method, about an eighth of an inch is mechanically roughened off the spine of the tightly gathered F&Gs, reducing them to a series of separate pages. The roughened spine is then coated with a flexible glue, and a paper cover is wrapped around the pages. In the other two methods, the spine is either scored by a series of notches (notch binding) or perforated (burst binding) and then force-fed with glue. Unlike perfect binding, these methods prevent the loss of part of the back margin and ensure that signatures remain intact, reducing the risk of pages coming loose. For paperbound books of higher quality, the signatures can be sewn and the covers (sometimes with flaps) then affixed, as with adhesive-bound books; this style of binding is known as flexibinding or limp binding. See also 1.66–71.

Appendix B: Glossary

This glossary focuses on key terms related to the typography, design, and production of both print and electronic works. Many of these terms are too specialized to be treated in the text of the manual; for terms not covered here that may be defined within the text, consult the index. For additional sources that treat publishing terminology, consult section 2 of the bibliography.

AA. An abbreviation for *author's alteration*. See also ***alteration***.

adhesive binding. A method of binding that employs glue instead of stitching to hold the pages or signatures together and is widely used for journals and paperback books. Three types of adhesive binding are currently used: perfect binding, notch binding, and burst binding. Contrast ***case binding***; ***flexibinding***.

alteration. A change from the manuscript copy introduced in proof, as distinguished from a *correction* made to eliminate a typesetter's or printer's error. See also ***AA***; ***DA***; ***EA***.

arabic numerals. The familiar digits used in arithmetical computation. In many type fonts arabic numerals are available in two forms: *lining*, or *aligning* (1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0), and *old style* (1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0), abbreviated OS and characterized by ascenders and descenders. Contrast ***roman numerals***.

artwork. Illustrative material (photographs, drawings, maps, and so forth) intended for reproduction.

ascender. The portion of a lowercase letter that extends above the *x-height*, as in *b* and *d*. Contrast ***descender***; see also ***arabic numerals***.

ASCII file. See ***plain-text file***.

back margin. The inner margin of a page; that is, the margin along the binding side of the page. See also ***gutter***.

baseline. In type, an imaginary common line that all capital letters, x-heights, and lining arabic numerals rest on.

beta testing. The final checking of a computer application (such as a website) before it is released. Such testing is ideally carried out under normal operating conditions by users who are not directly involved in developing the application.

binding. (1) A covering for the pages of a publication, using such materials as leather, cloth, and paper. (2) The process by which such a covering is attached. See also ***adhesive binding***; ***case binding***; ***flexibinding***.

bitmap. A digital representation of an image consisting of an array of pixels, in rows and columns, that can be saved to a file. Each pixel in the grid of the bitmap contains information about the color value of its position, which is used, for example, to display an image on a monitor or print it to a page. Compare ***vector graphic***.

blanket. In offset printing, the resilient rubber covering of the blanket cylinder, which receives the ink impression from the plate cylinder and offsets it onto the paper.

blind embossing. See ***embossing***.

blind folio. See ***folio***.

blind stamping. See ***stamping***.

block quotation. Quoted material set off typographically from the text (see 13.9). Also called *extract*. Contrast ***run in***.

bluelines. An abbreviation for *blueline proof*; also called *blues* or (in Europe and Asia) *ozalids*. A type of photographic proof generated by a printing firm either from repro or from the typesetter's electronic files. See also ***digital proof***.

boards. Stiffening material used in binding to form the foundation of the cover; formerly wood, now generally a paper product such as binder's board (the finest quality), pasted board (often used in case binding), or chipboard (low quality). Redboard is used for flexible bindings. The bare board is sheathed in one of a variety of cover materials.

body text. The running text of a work, as distinguished from the display text used for chapter openings, subheads, and so forth.

boldface. Type that has a darker and heavier appearance than standard type (as in the entries in this list of key terms).

broadside. Designed to be read or viewed normally when the publication is turned ninety degrees. In University of Chicago Press practice, the *left* side of a broadside table or illustration is at the *bottom* of the page. Because most publications are longer than they are wide, broadside images are usually landscape, but not all landscape images are broadside. See also ***landscape***.

browser. See ***web browser***.

bulk. The thickness of paper measured in number of pages per inch; also used loosely to indicate the thickness of a publication, excluding the cover.

burst binding. A type of adhesive binding in which the untrimmed spine is perforated and force-fed with glue.

caps. An abbreviation for *capital letters*. See also ***small caps***.

case. A hard cover or binding made by a case-making machine or by hand and usually printed, stamped, or labeled before being glued to the gathered endpapers that are attached to the signatures. A case that is covered entirely by one type of material is a one-piece case; a case in which the spine is covered by one type of material and the front and back cover boards by another (often in a different color) is a three-piece case.

case binding. A method of encasing a book in a rigid cover, or *case*. The gathered signatures can be Smyth sewn or side sewn together or adhesive-bound; endpapers are glued to the first and last signatures; a hinge of heavy gauze (the *super*) is glued to the spine of the sewn signatures; and the case is secured to the book by being glued to the flaps of the super and to both endpapers. Contrast ***adhesive binding***; ***flexibinding***.

castoff. An estimate of the space, or number of printed pages, that a manuscript will occupy when typeset.

character. A letter, numeral, symbol, or mark of punctuation.

character count. An approximate measure of the length of a manuscript made by multiplying the number of characters and spaces in an average line by the number of lines in the manuscript. The "character count" feature of many word-processing programs can also provide such a total.

character encoding. A set of machine-readable numbers or other elements—or *code points*—that correspond to a set of alphanumeric characters and symbols such that they can be interpreted by a computer. See also ***Unicode***.

character reference. A plain-text placeholder defined for a markup language such as SGML, HTML, or XML and used to refer to a special character that is unavailable in a particular character encoding or from a particular input device such as a keyboard. See also A.15.

clothbound. Bound with a rigid cover, usually cloth wrapped around boards. Contrast ***paperback***.

CMYK. An abbreviation for the basic colors used in process color printing—cyan (C), magenta (M), and yellow (Y), plus black (K)—to approximate all the colors in the spectrum.

code. A generic marker that identifies a particular type of text throughout a manuscript. A code is usually associated with a set of formatting instructions specified by the designer and followed by the typesetter. See also ***tag***.

colophon. A statement, usually at the back of a publication (as in this manual), about the materials, processes, and individuals or companies involved in its preparation, production, and manufacturing. The term is also used to refer to a publisher's logo as it often appears on the title page and spine of a book.

color printing. See ***process color printing***.

color separation. (1) The analysis of color copy for reproduction in terms of the three process colors (plus black) to be used in printing; separation is achieved by shooting through filters or by electronic scanning. (2) A film negative or positive, or a digital file, so produced for preparation of the printing plate. See also ***process color printing***.

comp. An abbreviation for *comprehensive layout*, as for a dust jacket, and also for *composition* or *compositor*.

compositor. See ***typesetter***.

computer-to-plate (CTP) technology. A process in which print-ready electronic files are imposed directly onto offset printing plates, thus eliminating the need for an intermediate stage involving film.

contact proof. A photographic proof used to show the reproduction quality of an image. Also called *velox*.

continuous tone. An image, such as a photograph, with gradations of tone from dark to light, in contrast to an image formed of pure blacks and whites, such as a pen-and-ink drawing. See also ***halftone***.

cover. The two hinged parts of a binding, front and back, and the center panel, or *spine*, that joins them; also the four surfaces making up the covers in this sense, when used to carry printed matter. See also ***dust jacket***.

crop. To cut down an illustration, such as a photograph, to improve the appearance of the image by removing extraneous areas.

CSS. An abbreviation for *cascading style sheets*. A style sheet language used to define the presentation of a document marked up in HTML or another formal markup language.

cyan. A greenish blue, one of the three primary colors (plus black) used in process color printing. See also ***CMYK***.

DA. An abbreviation for *designer's alteration*. See also ***alteration***.

descender. The portion of a lowercase letter that extends below the x-height, as in *g* and *p*. Contrast ***ascender***; see also ***arabic numerals***.

die. See ***stamping***.

digital printing. A type of printing in which the transfer of electronic images to paper is accomplished with ink-jet or laser printers. Contrast ***offset printing***.

digital proof. A type of proof generated directly from electronic files and typically output on a laser printer. See also ***bluelines***.

display type. Type used for title pages, chapter openings, subheads, and so on, usually distinguished from the type used for body text by a different, often larger font. See also ***body text***.

DOI. An abbreviation for *Digital Object Identifier*, a unique alphanumeric string (e.g., 10.1086/597483) assigned to a publication or other unit of intellectual property. As a *digital identifier*, a DOI also provides a means of looking up the current location(s) of such an object on the Internet.

DRM. An abbreviation for *digital rights management*. Refers to a system designed to protect copyrighted electronic works from unauthorized use, copying, or distribution. See also A.40.

drop cap. An uppercase character set in a type size larger than the text and "dropped," or nested, into lines of text, usually as the first character in the opening paragraph of a chapter or other section of text.

drop folio. See ***folio***.

DTD. An abbreviation for *document type definition*. In a markup language such as XML, a set of rules about the structure of a document that dictate the relationship among different tags and allowable text or elements within specified tags. Also called *schema*. See also ***tag***.

dust jacket. Also called *jacket*. A protective wrapping, usually made of paper, for a clothbound book; its *flaps*, which fold around the front and back covers, usually carry promotional copy. See also ***cover***.

EA. An abbreviation for *editor's alteration*. See also ***alteration***.

ECF. An abbreviation for *elemental chlorine-free*. Refers to paper bleached with a chlorine derivative that releases hazardous substances, including dioxin, into the environment. Contrast ***PCF***; ***TCF***.

edition. (1) A publication in its original form, or any subsequent reissue of the publication in which its content is significantly revised. (2) More informally, a term used to refer to each format in which a publication appears (for example, a book published in both cloth and paperback bindings, or a journal published in both electronic and print forms). However, the designation *second edition* would not be applied to the secondary format, or to a second or subsequent *impression* of the publication, in the absence of significant content changes. See also 1.26; ***impression***; ***reprint***.

em. A unit of type measurement equal to the point size of the type in question; for example, a six-point em is six points wide. See also ***point***.

embossing. Forming an image in relief (that is, a raised image) on a surface such as a case or a paper cover or dust jacket. If the process does not involve metallic leaf or ink, it is called *blind embossing*. See also ***stamping***.

em dash. A short typographical rule measuring the width of an em. See also 6.82–89.

en. A unit of type measurement half the size of an em.

en dash. A short typographical rule measuring the width of an en. See also 6.78–81.

endpapers. Folded sheets pasted or, rarely, sewn to the first and last signatures of a book; the free leaves are then pasted to the inside of the front and back covers to secure the book within the covers. Sometimes endpapers feature printed text or illustrations. Also called *endsheets*.

EPS. An abbreviation for *encapsulated PostScript*. A type of file used to encode graphics so they can be embedded in a larger PostScript file.

extract. See ***block quotation***.

F&Gs. See ***folded and gathered sheets***.

figure. An illustration printed with the text (hence also called a *text figure*), as distinguished from a plate, which is printed separately. More generally, *figure* is used to refer to any illustration in a published work, including charts (but not tables).

file. A block of digital information with a unique name and location in a computer system or external storage medium (such as a disk) that can be accessed and manipulated by users of the system or by the system itself. Programs, documents, and images are all examples of data stored in files.

flaps. See ***dust jacket***.

flexibinding. Also called *limp binding*. A method of binding in which the pages or signatures are sewn together and the lightweight cover (sometimes with flaps) is then affixed, as in adhesive binding. The result is a publication that is lighter and less bulky than a casebound book but sturdier and more flexible than an adhesive-bound paperback. Contrast ***adhesive binding***; ***case binding***.

flush. Even, as with typeset margins. Lines that are set *flush left* are aligned vertically along the left-hand margin; lines set *flush right* are aligned along the right-hand margin. Contrast ***ragged right***.

flush-and-hang style. A copy-setting style in which the first line of each paragraph begins flush left and subsequent, or runover, lines are indented (as in this list of key terms). Also referred to as *hanging indention* or *hanging indent*.

folded and gathered sheets. Also called *F&Gs* or *sheets*. The collection of all printed signatures in a publication, folded into imposed page sequence and gathered for binding. See also ***signature***.

folio. A page number, often placed at the outside of the running head at the top of the page. If it is placed consistently at the bottom of the page, the number is a *foot folio*; if it is placed at the bottom of the page on display pages only, it is a *drop folio*. A folio counted in numbering pages but not printed (as on the title page) is a *blind folio*; any folio printed is an *expressed folio*.

font. A complete assortment of a given size and style of type, usually including capitals, small capitals, and lowercase together with numerals, punctuation marks, ligatures, and the commonly used symbols and accents. The italic of a typeface is considered a part of the equipment of a font of type but is often spoken of as a separate font. Often used as a synonym for ***typeface***.

foot folio. See ***folio***.

four-color process. See ***process color printing***.

FTP. An abbreviation for *file transfer protocol*. The protocol, or set of instructions and syntax, for moving files between computers on the Internet.

gallery. A section of illustrations grouped on consecutive pages rather than scattered throughout the text.

galley proof. Proof showing typeset material but without final pagination. The term, an anachronism, once referred to the long, narrow columns of type, or "galleys," prepared by a printer before pages were composed, by hand. See also ***page proof***.

GIF. An abbreviation for *graphic interchange format*. A file format for compressing and storing bitmapped graphics that contain line art or text for viewing on-screen. See also ***PNG***; compare ***JPEG***.

gutter. The two inner margins (back margins) of facing pages of a book or journal.

hairline rule. A very thin rule—whose width is variously defined as one-quarter point, one-half point, or one-fifth of an em.

halftone. An image formed by breaking up a continuous-tone image, such as a photograph, into a pattern of dots of varying sizes. When printed, the dots, though clearly visible through a magnifying glass, merge to give an illusion of continuous tone to the naked eye.

halftone screen. A grid used in the halftone process to break an image up into dots. The fineness of the screen is denoted in terms of lines per inch, as in *a 133-line screen*.

hanging indention. See ***flush-and-hang style***.

hard copy. A paper copy of text, artwork, or other material, as opposed to a copy that has been stored in digital form.

hardcover binding. See ***case binding***.

head margin. The top margin of a page.

HTML. An abbreviation for *hypertext markup language*. A specific set of tags used to describe the structure of hypertext documents that make up most web pages. Web browsers interpret these tags to display text and graphics. HTML is an application of SGML.

HTTP. An abbreviation for *hypertext transfer protocol*. The protocol, or set of instructions and syntax, for retrieving files on the Internet and for enabling links between such files.

hypertext. The organization of digital information into associations connected by links. In a hypertext environment, objects such as text and images can contain links to other objects in the same file or in external files, which users can choose to follow. See also ***HTML***; ***HTTP***.

impression. (1) The inked image on the paper created during a single cycle of a press; the speed of a sheet-fed printing press is given in terms of impressions per hour. (2) A single printing of a publication; that is, all the copies printed at a given time. See also 1.26; ***edition***; ***reprint***.

indent. To set a line of type so that it begins or ends inside the normal margin. In *paragraph* indention the first line is indented from the left margin and the following lines are set full measure. In *hanging* indention (also referred to as *flush and hang*) the first line is set full measure and the following lines are indented. See also ***flush-and-hang style***.

Internet. A global, public network of computers and computer networks that communicate using TCP/IP (transmission control protocol/Internet protocol).

italic. A slanted type style suggestive of cursive writing (*like this*). Contrast ***roman***.

jacket. See ***dust jacket***.

JPEG. An abbreviation for *Joint Photographic Experts Group*. A file format commonly used to compress and store bitmapped graphics that contain photographic and other continuous-tone images for viewing on-screen. Compare ***GIF*** and ***PNG***.

justified. Spaced out to a specified measure, as with printed lines, so that left and right margins are aligned. Contrast ***ragged right***.

kern. The part of a letter that extends beyond the edge of the type body and overlaps the adjacent character, as the *j* in *adjacent* or the *T* in *To*.

kerning. The selective adjustment of space between particular characters (called "letterspacing") to improve appearance or ease of reading.

landscape. Having a greater dimension in width than in length, as with an image or a document. Contrast ***portrait***; see also ***broadside***.

layout. A designer's plan of how the published material, including illustrative content, should appear.

leading. Also called *line spacing*. The visual space between lines of type, usually measured in points from baseline to baseline. This word, derived from the element *lead*, rhymes with "heading."

letterspacing. See ***kerning***.

ligature. A single character formed by joining two characters, such as œ, *fi*, or *ff*. Older, more decorative forms (such as *ct*—a *c* joined to a *t* by a loop) are known as *quaint characters*.

line art. Copy for reproduction that contains only solid blacks and whites, such as a pen-and-ink drawing. Contrast ***continuous tone***.

line spacing. See ***leading***.

lining numbers. See under ***arabic numerals***.

lowercase. The uncapitalized letters of a font. Contrast ***uppercase***.

macro. A sequence of operations that is defined for reuse in a computer program. In word processing, a macro can be used to perform complex or repetitive tasks. Short for *macroinstruction*.

makeup. Arranging of type lines and illustrations into page form.

margin. The white space surrounding the printed area of a page, including the back, or gutter, margin; the head, or top, margin; the fore-edge, or outside, margin; and the tail, foot, or bottom, margin. Contrast ***type page***.

markup. (1) A sequence of characters, often called *tags* or *codes*, that indicate the logical structure of a manuscript or provide instructions for formatting it. (2) The insertion of such tags in an electronic manuscript; also, traditionally, editing and coding a paper manuscript.

MathML. An application of XML for tagging mathematical expressions.

measure. The length of the line (usually in picas) in which type is set. *Full measure* refers to copy set the full width of the type page. *Narrow measure* refers to a block of copy (such as a long quotation) indented from one or both margins to distinguish it from surrounding full-measure copy, or to copy set in short lines for multicolumn makeup.

metadata. Data about data. The metadata for a given publication may include, among other things, copyright information, an ISBN or ISSN, a volume or issue number, and keywords—including the title and creator of the work and a description. Metadata is a component of markup languages such as SGML, HTML, and XML.

notch binding. A type of adhesive binding in which the untrimmed spine is notched and force-fed with glue.

OCR. An abbreviation for *optical character recognition*. A technology that converts images of text (as from a scan of a printed page) into character data that can be manipulated like any other digital text.

offprint. An article, chapter, or other excerpt from a larger work issued as a separate unit.

offset printing. Also called *offset lithography*. The most common type of printing used for books and journals. The pages to be printed are transferred either photographically or through computer-to-plate technology to a thin, flexible metal plate, curved to fit one of the revolving cylinders of a printing press. The image on this plate is then transferred to, or *offset* onto, the paper by means of a rubber blanket on another cylinder. Contrast ***digital printing***.

old-style numbers. See under ***arabic numerals***.

opacity. The measurement of transparency of paper. The higher a paper's opacity, the less tendency there is for text and images printed on one side of a sheet to show through to the other side.

orphan. The first line of a paragraph stranded at the bottom of a page or column. An orphan can be avoided by changes in wording or spacing to the text that precedes it. Contrast ***widow***.

overlay. A hinged flap of paper or transparent plastic covering a piece of artwork. It may be there merely to protect the work (and sometimes includes instructions), or it may bear type or other artwork intended for reproduction along with what lies underneath.

page proof. Proof showing typeset material that has been paginated to reflect the placement of text, illustrations, and other design elements. Some publications may require one or more stages of *revised page proof* for checking corrections.

paperback. Bound with a cover stock rather than a cloth-and-board cover. Also called *paperbound*. Contrast ***clothbound***.

pattern matching. In word processing, a search or search-and-replace operation that uses a formal syntax to find every instance of a specified string of text or "pattern" and, conditionally, replace it with a different string. In computer programming, such patterns are known as *regular expressions*.

PCF. An abbreviation for *process chlorine-free*. Refers to recycled papers bleached without using chlorine or chlorine derivatives beyond what may have been used originally to produce the recovered wastepaper. Contrast ***ECF***; compare ***TCF***.

PDF. An abbreviation for *portable document format*. An Adobe Systems file format—and now a formal, open standard (ISO 32000)—for stable, device-independent delivery of electronic documents. Preserving such elements as fonts, formatting, and pagination, PDF is used not only as the basis for many printed publications but also as a format for electronic publications, including many journal articles and e-books. See also ***PostScript (PS)***.

PE. An abbreviation for *printer's error*. See also ***printer's error (PE)***.

perfect binding. A type of adhesive binding that involves mechanically roughening off about an eighth of an inch from the spine of the folded and gathered sheets. This treatment produces a surface of intermingled fibers to which an adhesive is applied, and a cover (usually paper) is wrapped around the pages.

pica. A unit of type measurement equal to twelve points (approximately one-sixth of an inch).

pixel. See ***resolution***.

plain-text file. An informal term for a file that contains data encoded using only letters, numerals, punctuation marks, spaces, returns, line breaks, and tabs with no additional formatting or special characters. Plain-text files are often referred to as ASCII files, although newer encoding schemes may be used, and other kinds of data (such as XML) can also be stored as plain-text files.

plate. (1) An image-bearing surface that, when inked, will produce one whole page or several pages of printed matter at a time. (2) A printed illustration, usually of high quality and produced on special paper, pasted or bound into a publication; when so printed, plates are numbered separately from other illustrations.

PNG. An abbreviation for *portable network graphic*. A file format for compressing and storing bitmapped graphics that contain line art or text for viewing onscreen. See also ***GIF***; compare ***JPEG***.

point. (1) The basic unit of type measurement—0.01384 (approximately one seventy-second) of an inch. (2) A unit used in measuring paper products employed in printing and binding—0.001 inches.

portable document format. See **PDF**.

portrait. Having a greater dimension in length than in width, as with an image or a document. Contrast ***landscape***.

PostScript (PS). An Adobe Systems programming language used to describe pages (in terms of trim size, font, placement of graphics, and so forth) and to tell output devices how to render the data. Portable Document Format (PDF), a descendant of PostScript, is somewhat more flexible. See also **PDF**.

prepress. The processes undertaken by a printing firm between the receipt of the electronic files and any other materials from the publisher (or its typesetter) and the printing of the publication.

preprint. Part of a book or journal printed and distributed or posted online before publication for promotional purposes or, in time-sensitive fields such as science and medicine, to mitigate the delay of publication schedules. See also ***offprint***.

press sheet. Also called *printed sheet* or *running sheet*. In offset printing, a large sheet of paper that emerges from the press with pages printed on both sides, each side printed from a single plate. The sheet must then be folded so that the pages fall into proper sequence. See also ***signature***.

presswork. The actual printing of a publication, as distinguished from composition, which precedes it, and binding, which follows.

printer's error (PE). An error made by the typesetter (or *compositor*), as distinguished from an *alteration* made in proof by the author, editor, or designer.

process color printing. The halftone reproduction of full-color artwork or photographs using several plates (usually four), each printing a different color. Each plate is made with a halftone screen. *Process colors* are cyan, magenta, and yellow, plus black (CMYK). See also ***halftone screen***.

proof. The printed copy made from electronic files, plates, negatives, or positives and used to examine and correct a work's text, illustrations, and design elements before final printing. A publication may involve several stages of proof; see ***bluelines***; ***contact proof***; ***digital proof***; ***galley proof***; ***page proof***; ***repro***.

protocol. A standard set of instructions and syntax that define the rules by which documents are shared between computers over a network. See also ***FTP***; ***HTTP***; ***Internet***.

PS. See ***PostScript (PS)***.

ragged right. Set with an uneven right-hand margin, as with printed lines. Contrast ***justified***.

recto. The front side of a leaf; in a book or journal, a right-hand page. To *start recto* is to begin on a recto page, as a preface or an index normally does. Contrast ***verso***.

redline. In word processing, a document in which changes (additions and deletions) are shown, or "tracked," by the application of text attributes such as strikethrough, underlining, boldface, or color. Often used as a verb: *to redline*. Also called *legal blackline*.

reprint. A publication in its second or subsequent printing, or *impression*. A reprint may include corrections or new material or both and may be published in a format different from the original printing (for example, as a paperback rather than a clothbound book). The extent of the changes usually determines whether the reprint is considered a new *edition* of the publication. See also ***edition***; ***impression***.

repro. An abbreviation for *reproduction copy*. A type of photographic proof generated by the typesetter that reflects the changes made in page proof. Many typesetters now provide final laser proof, generated from the electronic files, instead of repro.

resolution. (1) The number of pixels per unit of measure used to form an image. In the United States, image resolution is calculated per inch; the more pixels per inch, the higher the quality of the image. (2) The number of actual dots per unit of measure at which an image or page is output, usually by a printer or an image-setting device. In the United States, output resolution is usually expressed per inch; the more dots per inch, the higher the quality of the output.

roman. The primary type style (like this), as distinguished from italic (*like this*).

roman numerals. Numerals formed from traditional combinations of roman letters, either capitals (I, II, III, IV, etc.) or lowercase (i, ii, iii, iv, etc.). Contrast ***arabic numerals***.

run in. (1) To merge a paragraph or line with the preceding one. (2) To set quoted matter continuously with text rather than setting it off as a block quotation.

running heads. Copy set at the top of printed pages, usually containing the title of the publication or chapter, chapter number, or other information. Such copy is sometimes placed at the bottom of the pages, in which case it is referred to as *running feet*.

runover. (1) The continuation of a heading, figure legend, or similar copy onto an additional line. (2) In flush-and-hang material, all lines after the first line of a particular item. (3) Text that is longer than intended, running onto another page, or reset material that is longer than the material it was meant to replace.

saddle stitching. Also called *saddle wiring*. A method of binding that involves inserting thread or staples through the folds of gathered sheets, as in pamphlets and magazines.

sans serif. A typeface with no serifs (like this). See also ***serif***.

scale. To calculate (after cropping) the proportions and finish size of an illustration and the amount of reduction or enlargement needed to achieve this size.

scan. To produce a digital bitmap of an image (text or graphics) using a device that senses alternating patterns of light and dark and of color. The resolution and scaling percentage of the desired output should be considered before the image is scanned.

schema. See ***DTD***.

screen. A halftone screen; also the dot pattern in the printed image produced by such a screen.

serif. A short, light line projecting from the top or bottom of a main stroke of a letter; originally, in handwritten letters, a beginning or finishing stroke of the pen. See also ***sans serif***.

sewing. The process of stitching signatures together as part of binding. See also ***side sewing***; ***Smyth sewing***.

SGML. An abbreviation for *standard generalized markup language*, an international standard for constructing sets of tags. SGML is not a specific set of tags but a system for defining *vocabularies of tags* (the names of the tags and what they mean) and using them to encode documents. See also ***tag***; ***XML***.

sheet-fed press. A printing press using paper in sheet form. Contrast ***web-fed press***.

sidehead. A subhead that (1) lies partly outside the margin of the text and is set on a line of its own; (2) lies wholly outside the text margin; or (3) begins a paragraph and is continuous with the text. A subhead of the third sort is sometimes called a *run-in sidehead*. See also ***run in***.

side sewing. In binding, a method of sewing that involves stitching the signatures from the side, close to the spine, before attaching the case. Libraries typically rebind books in this manner. A side-sewn book is more durable than a Smyth-sewn book but will not open flat. See also ***Smyth sewing***.

signature. A press sheet as folded, ready for binding. A signature is usually thirty-two pages but may be only sixteen, eight, or even four pages if the paper stock is very heavy, or sixty-four pages if the paper is thin enough to permit additional folding. The size of the press also affects the size of the signature. See also ***folded and gathered sheets***; ***press sheet***.

small caps. An abbreviation for *small capitals*. Capital letters set at the x-height of a font (LIKE THIS), usually for display.

Smyth sewing. A method of sewing that involves stitching the signatures individually through the fold before binding them. A Smyth-sewn book has the advantage of lying flat when open, unlike a side-sewn or perfect-bound book. See also ***perfect binding***; ***side sewing***.

spec. An abbreviation for *specification* (plural *specs* or *spex*)—as in *design specs.* See A.16–22.

spine. The "back" of a bound publication; that is, the center panel of the binding, hinged on each side to the two covers, front and back, and visible when the book or journal is shelved. Typically the title of the publication is printed on the spine. Also called the *backbone.*

spread. Two facing pages, a verso and a recto.

stamping. Imprinting the spine of a case and sometimes the front cover with hard metal dies. Stamping may involve ink, foil, or other coloring material; if it does not, it is called *blind stamping*. See also ***embossing***.

stub. The left-hand column of a table. See 3.49–67.

style sheet. (1) A set of programming instructions that, in conjunction with a markup language such as XML or HTML, determine how a document is presented on a screen, on a printed page, or in another medium such as speech. (2) A record of terms kept by a manuscript editor to document particular usages for a specific manuscript (see 2.52). See also ***CSS***.

subhead. A heading, or title, for a section within a chapter or an article. Subheads are usually set in type differing in some way from that of the text; for example, in boldface, all capitals, caps and small caps, or upper- and lowercase italic. See also ***sidehead***.

subscript. A small numeral, letter, fraction, or symbol that prints partly below the baseline, usually in mathematical material or chemical formulas.

superscript. A small numeral, letter, fraction, or symbol that prints partly above the x-height, often in mathematical or tabular material or to indicate a footnote or endnote.

tag. (1) In SGML and languages derived from SGML, a generic marker used to specify and (when paired) delimit an element in the structure of a document. The process of adding tags to a manuscript is known as *tagging* or *markup.* (2) More informally, a synonym for *code*. See also ***code***; ***markup***; ***SGML***; ***XML***.

TCF. An abbreviation for *totally chlorine-free*. Refers to paper bleached without using chlorine or chlorine derivatives. Contrast ***ECF***; compare ***PCF***.

thin space. A very small space, defined as one-fifth (or sometimes one-sixth) of an em, added between characters. See A.22.

thumbnail. A miniature rendition of a page or an image. In electronic publications, a thumbnail is often used to indicate a link to a larger electronic object.

TIFF. An abbreviation for *tagged image file format*. A file format developed by Aldus and Microsoft and used to store bitmapped graphics, including scanned line art, halftones, and color images.

trim size. The dimensions, usually in inches, of a full page in a printed publication, including the margins.

typeface. A collection of fonts with common design or style characteristics. A typeface may include roman, italic, boldface, condensed, and other fonts. The various typefaces are designated by name: Baskerville, Caslon, and Times Roman, for example. See also ***font***.

type page. The area of a typeset page occupied by the type image, from the running head to the last line of type on the page or the folio, whichever is lower, and from the inside margin to the outside margin, including any area occupied by sideheads.

typesetter. A person, firm, facility, or machine that prepares books, articles, or other documents for publication. The term, now somewhat of an anachronism, has its origins in the composing—or "setting"—of individual pieces of type, by hand, and binding them together to make individual pages. Also called *compositor*.

type styles. See ***boldface***; ***italic***; ***roman***.

Unicode. A system of character encoding developed by the Unicode Consortium and incorporated into the ISO standard for universal multiple-octet coded characters (ISO/IEC 10646). See 11.2. See also ***character encoding***.

unjustified. See ***ragged right***.

uppercase. The capital letters of a font. Contrast ***lowercase***.

URL. An abbreviation for *uniform resource locator*, or the address used to locate a document on the Internet (e.g., http://www.press.uchicago.edu/).

vector graphic. A digital representation of an image defined by shapes such as lines and curves rather than by pixels. Line art is typically created, edited, and scaled as a vector graphic. Contrast ***bitmap***.

verso. The back side of a leaf; in a book or journal, a left-hand page. Contrast ***recto***.

web browser. A computer program designed to access information on the Internet or on a local network. See also ***HTML***; ***web page***.

web-fed press. A printing press using paper in roll form. Contrast ***sheet-fed press***.

web page. A virtual document delivered via the World Wide Web and viewed in a web browser.

website. A collection of closely related and hyperlinked web pages maintained by an individual or organization.

widow. A short, paragraph-ending line appearing at the top of a page. Widows should be avoided when possible by changes in wording or spacing that either remove the line or lengthen it. Contrast ***orphan***.

wiki. A website designed to allow visitors to edit and contribute content.

World Wide Web. Also called *the web*. The Internet's most widely used information-retrieval service. The World Wide Web uses hypertext transfer protocol (HTTP) to allow users to request and retrieve documents (web pages and multimedia objects) from other computers on the Internet.

x-height. In type, a vertical dimension equal to the height of the lowercase letters (such as *x*) without ascenders or descenders.

XHTML. An application of XML for producing HTML that conforms to the rules established for a particular XML-based document. See also ***HTML***.

XML. An abbreviation for *extensible markup language*. A subset of the SGML standard, used for structuring documents and data on the Internet. See also **SGML**.

XSL. An abbreviation for *extensible style sheet language*. A family of style sheet languages used to define the presentation of XML documents and their conversion, or transformation, into other formats such as HTML (using XSLT, extensible style sheet transformations).

Bibliography

Works on Writing and Editing 1
- *Style* 1.1
- *Grammar and Usage* 1.2
- *Research and Writing* 1.3

Works on Publishing 2
- *Manuscript Editing and Proofreading* 2.1
- *Illustrations* 2.2
- *Rights and Permissions* 2.3
- *Mathematics* 2.4
- *Indexing* 2.5
- *Design* 2.6
- *Production* 2.7
- *The Publishing Industry* 2.8

Dictionaries 3
- *English Dictionaries* 3.1
- *Foreign-Language Dictionaries* 3.2

General Reference Works 4
- *Biography* 4.1
- *Geography* 4.2
- *Encyclopedias* 4.3
- *Almanacs and Yearbooks* 4.4
- *Guides to Books, Periodicals, and Other Sources* 4.5
- *Quotations* 4.6
- *Abbreviations* 4.7

Miscellaneous Works Cited in Text 5

BIBLIOGRAPHY

The works listed here are a starting point for writers, editors, and others involved in publishing who would like more information about topics covered in this manual. The list includes all the works cited in the text as further resources along with other useful references. Although some make recommendations that diverge from those of this manual, they reflect the specific demands of different disciplines and the evolving traditions of writing, editing, and publishing. As with all reference sources, readers should carefully evaluate their suitability for a given purpose.

1 *Works on Writing and Editing*

1.1 STYLE

The ACS Style Guide: Effective Communication of Scientific Information. 3rd ed. Edited by Anne M. Coghill and Lorrin R. Garson. Washington, DC: American Chemical Society, 2006.

AIP Style Manual. 4th ed. New York: American Institute of Physics, 1990. Also available at http://www.aip.org/pubservs/style/4thed/toc.html.

ALWD Citation Manual: A Professional System of Citation. 3rd ed. Edited by the Association of Legal Writing Directors and Darby Dickerson. New York: Aspen, 2006.

AMA Manual of Style: A Guide for Authors and Editors. 10th ed. Edited by Cheryl Iverson. New York: Oxford University Press, 2007. Also available at http://www.amamanualofstyle.com/.

ASM Style Manual for Journals and Books. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology, 1991.

The Associated Press Stylebook and Briefing on Media Law. 44th ed. Edited by Darrell Christian, Sally Jacobsen, and David Minthorn. New York: Associated Press, 2009. Also available at http://www.apstylebook.com/.

The Bluebook: A Uniform System of Citation. 18th ed. Cambridge, MA: Harvard Law Review Association, 2005. Also available at http://www.legalbluebook.com/.

Canadian Guide to Uniform Legal Citation. 6th ed. In English and French. Toronto, ON: Carswell / McGill Law Journal, 2006.

Catholic News Service. *CNS Stylebook on Religion: Reference Guide and Usage Manual*. 3rd ed. Washington, DC: Catholic News Service, 2006.

The Complete Guide to Citing Government Information Resources: A Manual for Writers and Librarians. Rev. ed. Edited by Diane L. Garner and Diane H. Smith. Bethesda, MD: Congressional Information Service for the Government Documents Round Table, American Library Association, 1993.

CSE Manual. See *Scientific Style and Format*.

Editing Canadian English. 2nd ed. Prepared for the Editors' Association of Canada / Association canadienne des réviseurs by Catherine Cragg, Barbara Czarnecki, Iris Hossé Phillips, Katharine Vanderlinden, and Sheila Protti. Toronto, ON: Macfarlane Walter and Ross, 2000.

Garner, Bryan A. *The Elements of Legal Style*. 2nd ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2002.

Holoman, D. Kern. *Writing about Music: A Style Sheet*. 2nd ed. Berkeley: University of California Press, 2008.

ISO (International Organization for Standardization). *Information and Documentation—Bibliographic References*. Part 2, *Electronic Documents or Parts Thereof*. ISO 690-2. New York: American National Standards Institute, 1997. Under revision.

Lipson, Charles. *Cite Right: A Quick Guide to Citation Styles—MLA, APA, Chicago, the Sciences, Professions, and More*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2006.

MHRA Style Guide: A Handbook for Authors, Editors, and Writers of Theses. 2nd ed. London: Modern Humanities Research Association, 2008. Also available at http://www.mhra.org.uk/.

Microsoft Manual of Style for Technical Publications. 3rd ed. Redmond, WA: Microsoft Press, 2004.

MLA Style Manual and Guide to Scholarly Publishing. 3rd ed. New York: Modern Language Association of America, 2008.

The New York Public Library Writer's Guide to Style and Usage. New York: HarperCollins, 1994.

The New York Times Manual of Style and Usage. Rev. ed. Edited by Allan M. Siegal and William G. Connolly. New York: Three Rivers Press, 1999.

The Oxford Style Manual. Edited by Robert Ritter. New York: Oxford University Press, 2003. Combines *The Oxford Guide to Style* and *The Oxford Dictionary for Writers and Editors*.

Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association. 6th ed. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 2009.

Reporting on Religion 2: A Stylebook on Religion's Best Beat. Edited by Diane Connolly and Debra L. Mason. Westerville, OH: Religion Newswriters, 2007.

Sabin, William A. *The Gregg Reference Manual: A Manual of Style, Grammar, Usage, and Formatting*. 10th ed. Boston: McGraw-Hill, 2005. Also available online at http://www.gregg.com/.

The SBL Handbook of Style: For Ancient Near Eastern, Biblical, and Early Christian Studies. Edited by Patrick H. Alexander. Peabody, MA: Hendrickson, 1999. Also available at http://www.sbl-site.org/publications/publishingwithsbl.aspx.

Scientific Style and Format: The CSE Manual for Authors, Editors, and Publishers. 7th ed. Compiled by the Style Manual Committee of the Council of Science Editors. Reston, VA: Council of Science Editors in cooperation with the Rockefeller University Press, 2006.

Strunk, William, Jr., and E. B. White. *The Elements of Style*. 4th ed. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2000.

Style Manual for Political Science. Rev. ed. Washington, DC: American Political Science Association Committee on Publications, 2006.

The Times Style and Usage Guide. Rev. ed. Compiled by Tim Austin. London: Times Books, 2003.

Turabian, Kate L. *A Manual for Writers of Research Papers, Theses, and Dissertations: Chicago Style for Students and Researchers*. 7th ed. Revised by Wayne C. Booth, Gregory G. Colomb, Joseph M. Williams, and University of Chicago Press editorial staff. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2007.

———. *Student's Guide to Writing College Papers*. 4th ed. Revised by Gregory G. Colomb, Joseph M. Williams, and the University of Chicago Press editorial staff. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2010.

United States Government Printing Office Style Manual. 30th ed. Washington, DC: Government Printing Office, 2008. Also available at http://www.gpoaccess.gov/style manual/index.html.

The University of Chicago Manual of Legal Citation. 2nd ed. Edited by the *University of Chicago Law Review*. 2000. An updated version is available at http://lawreview .uchicago.edu/.

US Geological Survey. *Suggestions to Authors of the Reports of the United States Geological Survey*. 7th ed. Revised and edited by Wallace R. Hansen. Washington, DC: Government Printing Office, 1991. Also available at http://www.nwrc.usgs.gov /lib/lib_sta.htm.

Walker, Janice R., and Todd Taylor. *The Columbia Guide to Online Style*. 2nd ed. New York: Columbia University Press, 2006.

The Wall Street Journal Guide to Business Style and Usage. Edited by Paul R. Martin. London: Free Press, 2002.

Words into Type. 3rd ed. Based on studies by Marjorie E. Skillin, Robert M. Gay, and other authorities. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1974.

1.2 GRAMMAR AND USAGE

Aitchison, James. *Cassell Dictionary of English Grammar*. 2nd ed. London: Cassell, 2001.

Baron, Dennis. *Grammar and Gender*. New Haven: Yale University Press, 1986.

Bernstein, Theodore M. *The Careful Writer: A Modern Guide to English Usage*. New York: Atheneum, 1965.

———. *Miss Thistlebottom's Hobgoblins: The Careful Writer's Guide to the Taboos, Bugbears, and Outmoded Rules of English Usage*. New York: Farrar, Straus and Giroux, 1971.

Burchfield, Robert W. *Unlocking the English Language*. New York: Hill and Wang, 1991.

Copperud, Roy H. *American Usage and Style: The Consensus*. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1980.

Ebbitt, Wilma R., and David R. Ebbitt. *Index to English*. 8th ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 1990.

The Elements of Internet Style: The New Rules of Creating Valuable Content for Today's Readers. Rev. ed. of *E-What?* Alexandria, VA: EEI Press; New York: Allworth Press, 2007.

Follett, Wilson. *Modern American Usage: A Guide*. Revised by Erik Wensberg. New York: Hill and Wang, 1998.

Fowler, H. W. *A Dictionary of Modern English Usage*. 2nd ed. Revised and edited by Sir Ernest Gowers. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1965. (See also *Fowler's Modern English Usage*.)

Fowler's Modern English Usage. 3rd ed. rev. Edited by R. W. Burchfield. New York: Oxford University Press, 2004.

Garner, Bryan A. *Garner's Modern American Usage*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2003.

Gordon, Karen Elizabeth. *The Deluxe Transitive Vampire: The Ultimate Handbook of Grammar for the Innocent, the Eager, and the Doomed*. New York: Pantheon, 1993.

———. *The New Well-Tempered Sentence: A Punctuation Handbook for the Innocent, the Eager, and the Doomed*. New York: Ticknor and Fields, 1993.

Gowers, Ernest. *The Complete Plain Words*. Edited by Sidney Greenbaum and Janet Whitcut. Boston: David R. Godine, 1988.

Greenbaum, Sydney. *Oxford English Grammar*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1996.

Hale, Constance. *Sin and Syntax: How to Craft Wickedly Effective Prose*. New York: Broadway Books, 1999.

Hale, Constance, and Jessie Scanlon, eds. *Wired Style: Principles of English Usage in the Digital Age*. Rev. ed. New York: Broadway Books, 1999.

Johnson, Edward D. *The Handbook of Good English*. New York: Pocket Books, 1991.

Maggio, Rosalie. *Talking about People: A Guide to Fair and Accurate Language*. Phoenix: Oryx Press, 1997.

Merriam-Webster's Dictionary of English Usage. Springfield, MA: Merriam-Webster, 1994.

O'Conner, Patricia T. *Woe Is I: The Grammarphobe's Guide to Better English in Plain English*. 3rd ed. New York: Riverhead Books, 2009.

The Oxford Dictionary of English Grammar. Edited by Sylvia Chalker and Edmund Weiner. New York: Oxford University Press, 1998.

Palmer, Frank. *Grammar*. 2nd ed. New York: Penguin, 1984.

Schwartz, Marilyn. *Guidelines for Bias-Free Writing*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1995.

Trask, R. L. *Language: The Basics*. 2nd ed. New York: Routledge, 1999.

Trimble, John R. *Writing with Style: Conversations on the Art of Writing*. 2nd ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2002.

Wallraff, Barbara. *Word Court: Wherein Verbal Virtue Is Rewarded, Crimes against the Language Are Punished, and Poetic Justice Is Done*. New York: Harcourt, 2000.

Walsh, Bill. *Lapsing into a Comma: A Curmudgeon's Guide to the Many Things That Can Go Wrong in Print—and How to Avoid Them*. Chicago: Contemporary Books, 2000.

Williams, Joseph M. *Style: Toward Clarity and Grace*. With two chapters coauthored by Gregory G. Colomb. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1995.

Zinsser, William. *On Writing Well: The Classic Guide to Writing Nonfiction*. 7th ed. New York: HarperCollins, 2006.

1.3 RESEARCH AND WRITING

Barzun, Jacques, and Henry F. Graff. *The Modern Researcher*. 6th ed. Belmont, CA: Thomson/Wadsworth, 2004.

Becker, Howard S. *Writing for Social Scientists: How to Start and Finish Your Thesis, Book, or Article*. 2nd ed. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2007.

Booth, Wayne C., Gregory G. Colomb, and Joseph M. Williams. *The Craft of Research*. 3rd ed. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2008.

Cook, Claire Kehrwald. *Line by Line: How to Improve Your Own Writing*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1985.

Day, Robert A., and Barbara Gastel. *How to Write and Publish a Scientific Paper*. 6th ed. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 2006.

Germano, William. *From Dissertation to Book*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2005.

Harman, Eleanor, Ian Montagnes, Siobhan McMenemy, and Chris Bucci, eds. *The Thesis and the Book: A Guide for First-Time Academic Authors*. 2nd ed. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2003.

Lanham, Richard A. *Revising Prose*. 5th ed. New York: Pearson Longman, 2007.

Lerner, Betsy. *The Forest for the Trees: An Editor's Advice to Writers*. New York: Riverhead Books, 2000.

Lipson, Charles. *How to Write a BA Thesis: A Practical Guide from Your First Ideas to Your Finished Paper*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2005.

Luey, Beth, ed. *Revising Your Dissertation: Advice from Leading Editors*. Updated ed. Berkeley: University of California Press, 2007.

McMillan, Victoria E. *Writing Papers in the Biological Sciences*. 4th ed. Boston: Bedford/St. Martin's, 2006.

2 Works on Publishing

2.1 MANUSCRIPT EDITING AND PROOFREADING

Anderson, Laura. *McGraw-Hill's Proofreading Handbook*. 2nd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2006.

Butcher, Judith, Caroline Drake, and Maureen Leach. *Butcher's Copy-Editing: The Cambridge Handbook for Editors, Copy-Editors, and Proofreaders*. 4th ed. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2006. Also available as an e-book.

Copyediting. Bimonthly newsletter published by McMurry, Inc. Also available at http://www.copyediting.com/.

Einsohn, Amy. *The Copyeditor's Handbook: A Guide for Book Publishing and Corporate Communications*. 2nd ed. Berkeley: University of California Press, 2006.

Judd, Karen. *Copyediting: A Practical Guide*. 3rd ed. Menlo Park, CA: Crisp Learning, 2001.

Lyon, Jack M. *Microsoft Word for Publishing Professionals*. West Valley City, UT: Editorium, 2008.

Norton, Scott. *Developmental Editing: A Handbook for Freelancers, Authors, and Publishers*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2009.

Saller, Carol Fisher. *The Subversive Copy Editor: Advice from Chicago (or, How to Negotiate Good Relationships with Your Writers, Your Colleagues, and Yourself)*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2009.

Smith, Peggy. *Mark My Words: Instruction and Practice in Proofreading*. 3rd ed. Alexandria, VA: EEI Press, 1997.

Stainton, Elsie Myers. *The Fine Art of Copyediting*. 2nd ed. New York: Columbia University Press, 2002.

Stoughton, Mary. *The Copyeditor's Guide to Substance and Style*. 3rd ed. Alexandria, VA: EEI Press, 2006.

2.2 ILLUSTRATIONS

Briscoe, Mary Helen. *Preparing Scientific Illustrations: A Guide to Better Posters, Presentations, and Publications*. 2nd ed. New York: Springer-Verlag, 1996.

CBE Scientific Illustration Committee. *Illustrating Science: Standards for Publication*. Bethesda, MD: Council of Biology Editors, 1988.

Monmonier, Mark. *Mapping It Out: Expository Cartography for the Humanities and Social Sciences*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1993.

Ross, Ted. *The Art of Music Engraving and Processing: A Complete Manual, Reference, and Text Book on Preparing Music for Reproduction and Print*. Miami: Hansen Books, 1970.

Tufte, Edward R. *Envisioning Information*. Cheshire, CT: Graphics Press, 1990.

———. *The Visual Display of Quantitative Information*. 2nd ed. Cheshire, CT: Graphics Press, 2001.

———. *Visual Explanations: Images and Quantities, Evidence and Narrative*. Cheshire, CT: Graphics Press, 1997.

Zweifel, Frances W. *A Handbook of Biological Illustration*. 2nd ed. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1988.

2.3 RIGHTS AND PERMISSIONS

Bielstein, Susan M. *Permissions, a Survival Guide: Blunt Talk about Art as Intellectual Property*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2006.

Fischer, Mark A., E. Gabriel Perle, and John Taylor Williams. *Perle and Williams on Publishing Law*. 3rd ed. Gaithersburg, MD: Aspen Law and Business, 1999.

Goldstein, Paul. *Goldstein on Copyright*. 3rd ed. New York: Aspen, 2005. Loose-leaf updates.

Kaufman, Roy S. *Publishing Forms and Contracts*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2008.

Kirsch, Jonathan. *Kirsch's Handbook of Publishing Law*. Los Angeles: Acrobat Books, 1996.

Nimmer, Melville. *Cases and Materials on Copyright and Other Aspects of Entertainment Litigation, Including Unfair Competition, Defamation, Privacy*. 7th ed. Newark, NJ: LexisNexis Matthew Bender, 2006.

———. *Nimmer on Copyright*. Rev. ed. 11 vols. Newark, NJ: LexisNexis Matthew Bender, 2005. Loose-leaf updates.

Nimmer, Melville, and Paul Edward Gellner, eds. *International Copyright Law and Practice*. Newark, NJ: LexisNexis Matthew Bender, 2004. Loose-leaf updates.

Patry, William F. *Copyright Law and Practice*. Washington, DC: Bureau of National Affairs, 1994. Annual supplements.

———. *The Fair Use Privilege in Copyright Law*. 2nd ed. Washington, DC: Bureau of National Affairs, 1995.

Strong, William S. *The Copyright Book: A Practical Guide*. 5th ed. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 1999.

2.4 MATHEMATICS

Clapham, Christopher, and James Nicholson. *Concise Dictionary of Mathematics*. 3rd ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005.

Higham, Nicholas J. *Handbook of Writing for the Mathematical Sciences*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics, 1998.

The International System of Units (SI). 8th ed. Sèvres: Bureau International des Poids et Mesures, 2006. Also available at http://www.bipm.org/en/si/si_brochure/.

Knuth, Donald E. *The TeXbook*. Boston: Addison-Wesley, 2000.

Lamport, Leslie. *LaTeX: A Document Preparation System; User's Guide and Reference Manual*. 2nd ed. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1999.

A Manual for Authors of Mathematical Papers. 8th ed. Providence, RI: American Mathematical Society, 1990.

Mittelbach, Frank, and Michel Goossens. *The LaTeX Companion*. 2nd ed. Boston: Addison-Wesley, 2004.

Spivak, Michael. *The Joy of TeX: A Gourmet Guide to Typesetting with the AMS-TeXMacro Package*. 2nd ed. Providence, RI: American Mathematical Society, 1990.

Steenrod, Norman E., Paul R. Halmos, Menahem M. Schiffer, and Jean A. Dieudonné. *How to Write Mathematics*. Providence, RI: American Mathematical Society, 1981.

Swanson, Ellen. *Mathematics into Type*. Updated edition by Arlene O'Sean and Antoinette Schleyer. Providence, RI: American Mathematical Society, 1999.

Thompson, Ambler, and Barry N. Taylor. *Guide for the Use of the International System of Units (SI)*. Gaithersburg, MD: National Institute of Standards and Technology, 2008. Also available at http://physics.nist.gov/Pubs/SP811/.

2.5 INDEXING

Ament, Kurt. *Indexing: A Nuts-and-Bolts Guide for Technical Writers*. Norwich, NY: William Andrew, 2001.

Booth, Pat F. *Indexing: The Manual of Good Practice*. Munich: K. G. Saur, 2001.

Browne, Glenda, and Jon Jermey. *The Indexing Companion*. Melbourne: Cambridge University Press, 2007.

Fetters, Linda K. *Handbook of Indexing Techniques: A Guide for Beginning Indexers*. 3rd ed. Corpus Christi, TX: FimCo Books, 2001.

Mulvany, Nancy. *Indexing Books*. 2nd ed. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2005.

Wellisch, Hans H. *Indexing from A to Z*. 2nd ed. New York: H. W. Wilson, 1995.

2.6 DESIGN

Bringhurst, Robert. *The Elements of Typographic Style*. 3rd ed. Point Roberts, WA: Hartley and Marks, 2004.

Chappell, Warren, and Robert Bringhurst. *A Short History of the Printed Word*. 2nd ed. Point Roberts, WA: Hartley and Marks, 1999.

Dowding, Geoffrey. *Finer Points in the Spacing and Arrangement of Type*. Rev. ed. Point Roberts, WA: Hartley and Marks, 1995.

Gill, Eric. *An Essay on Typography*. Boston: David R. Godine, 1988.

Hendel, Richard. *On Book Design*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1998.

Hochuli, Jost, and Robin Kinross. *Designing Books: Practice and Theory*. Rev. ed. London: Hyphen Press, 2003.

Johnston, Edward. *Writing and Illuminating and Lettering*. 1946; repr., New York: Dover, 1995.

Lynch, Patrick J., and Sarah Horton. *Web Style Guide: Basic Design Principles for Creating Web Sites*. 3rd ed. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 2009.

McLean, Ruari. *The Thames and Hudson Manual of Typography*. New York: Thames and Hudson, 1992.

Tschichold, Jan. *The Form of the Book: Essays on the Morality of Good Design*. Point Roberts, WA: Hartley and Marks, 1995.

———. *The New Typography*. New ed. Berkeley: University of California Press, 2006.

Williamson, Hugh. *Methods of Book Design*. 3rd ed. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1983.

2.7 PRODUCTION

Bann, David. *The All New Print Production Handbook*. New York: Watson-Guptill, 2007.

Beach, Mark, and Eric Kenly. *Getting It Printed*. 4th ed. Cincinnati: HOW Design Books, 2004.

The Bookman's Glossary. 6th ed. Edited by Jean Peters. New York: R. R. Bowker, 1983.

Burdett, Eric. *The Craft of Bookbinding*. Newton Abbot, UK: David and Charles, 1978.

The Columbia Guide to Digital Publishing. Edited by William E. Kasdorf. New York: Columbia University Press, 2003.

Dreyfus, John. *Into Print: Selected Writings on Printing History, Typography, and Book Production*. Boston: D. R. Godine, 1995.

Eckersley, Richard, Richard Angstadt, Charles M. Ellertson, Richard Hendel, Naomi B. Pascal, and Anita Walker Scott. *Glossary of Typesetting Terms*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1994.

Extensible Markup Language (XML). 5th ed. Edited by Tim Bray, Jean Paoli, C. M. Sperberg-McQueen, Eve Maler, and François Yergeau. World Wide Web Consortium (W3C) recommendation, November 26, 2008. Available at http://www.w3.org/TR/xml/.

Friedl, Jeffrey E. F. *Mastering Regular Expressions*. 3rd ed. Sebastopol, CA: O'Reilly, 2006.

Glaister, Geoffrey Ashall. *Encyclopedia of the Book*. 2nd ed. New Castle, DE: Oak Knoll Press, 2001.

Hackos, JoAnn, and Dawn Stevens. *Standards for Online Communication*. New York: John Wiley, 1997.

Kinross, Robin, Jaap van Triest, and Karel Martens, eds. *Karel Martens: Printed Matter*. 2nd ed. London: Hyphen Press, 2002.

Lee, Marshall. *Bookmaking: Editing, Design, Production*. 3rd ed. New York: Norton, 2004.

National Information Standards Organization. *Journal Article Versions (JAV): Recommendations of the NISO/ALPSP JAV Technical Working Group*. In partnership with the Association of Learned and Professional Society Publishers. April 2008. Available at http://www.niso.org/publications/rp/RP-8-2008.pdf.

Pocket Pal: A Graphic Arts Production Handbook. 19th ed. Memphis, TN: International Paper Company, 2003.

Rogondino, Michael, and Pat Rogondino. *Process Color Manual: 24,000 CMYK Combinations for Design, Prepress, and Printing*. San Francisco: Chronicle Books, 2000.

Romano, Frank J. *Pocket Guide to Digital Prepress*. Albany, NY: Delmar Thomson Learning, 1995.

Unicode Consortium. *The Unicode Standard*. Version 5.0. Edited by Julie D. Allen, Joe Becker, Richard Cook, Mark Davis, Michael Everson, Asmus Freytag, John H. Jenkins, et al. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Addison-Wesley, 2007. Available at http://www.unicode.org/.

XML. See *Extensible Markup Language*.

XML.com: XML from the Inside Out. O'Reilly Media. http://www.xml.com/.

2.8 THE PUBLISHING INDUSTRY

Derricourt, Robin. *An Author's Guide to Scholarly Publishing*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1996.

Germano, William. *Getting It Published: A Guide for Scholars and Anyone Else Serious about Serious Books*. 2nd ed. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2008.

Greco, Albert N. *The Book Publishing Industry*. 2nd ed. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum, 2005.

ILMP (International Literary Market Place). Medford, NJ: Information Today. Published annually. Also available at http://www.literarymarketplace.com/lmp/us/index_us.asp.

Journal of Electronic Publishing. Published quarterly by the University of Michigan Library. http://www.journalofelectronicpublishing.org/.

Journal of Scholarly Publishing. Published quarterly by the University of Toronto Press. Also available at http://www.utpjournals.com/jsp/jsp.html.

LMP (Literary Market Place). Medford, NJ: Information Today. Published annually. Also available at http://www.literarymarketplace.com/lmp/us/index_us.asp.

Luey, Beth. *Handbook for Academic Authors*. 5th ed. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2009.

Rabiner, Susan, and Alfred Fortunato. *Thinking Like Your Editor: How to Write Great Serious Nonfiction—and Get It Published*. New York: W. W. Norton, 2002.

Suzanne, Claudia. *This Business of Books: A Complete Overview of the Industry from Concept through Sales*. 4th ed. Tustin, CA: WC Publishing, 2003.

3 *Dictionaries*

3.1 ENGLISH DICTIONARIES

American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language. 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000.

Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary. 11th ed. Springfield, MA: Merriam-Webster, 2003. Also available at http://www.merriam-webster.com/.

New Oxford American Dictionary. 2nd ed. Edited by Erin McKean. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005. Also available at http://www.oxfordamericandictionary.com/.

Oxford English Dictionary. 2nd ed. 20 vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989. Also available at http://www.oed.com/.

Random House Webster's College Dictionary with CD-ROM. New York: Random House Reference, 2005.

Roget's II: The New Thesaurus. 3rd ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1995.

Roget's 21st Century Thesaurus in Dictionary Form. 3rd ed. Edited by Barbara Ann Kipfer. New York: Delta Trade Paperbacks, 2005.

Shorter Oxford English Dictionary. 6th ed. 2 vols. New York: Oxford University Press, 2007.

Webster's New World College Dictionary. 4th ed. Cleveland: Webster's New World, 2001.

Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language, Unabridged. Springfield, MA: Merriam-Webster, 1993. Also available at http://www.merriam-webster.com/.

3.2 FOREIGN-LANGUAGE DICTIONARIES

ABC Chinese–English Comprehensive Dictionary. Edited by John DeFrancis. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2003.

Cassell's Italian Dictionary. Compiled by Piero Rebora, Francis M. Guercio, and Arthur L. Hayward. New York: John Wiley, 1994.

Kenkyūsha's New Japanese–English Dictionary. 5th ed. Tokyo: Kenkyūsha, 2003.

Larousse French–English, English–French Dictionary. New ed. Edited by Janice McNeillie. Paris: Larousse, 2007.

Minjung's Essence English–Korean Dictionary. 10th ed. Elizabeth, NJ: Hollym International Corp., 2008.

Oxford English–Arabic Dictionary of Current Usage. Edited by N. S. Doniach. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1972.

Oxford German Dictionary: German–English, English–German. 3rd ed. Edited by Werner Scholze-Stubenrecht, J. B. Sykes, M. Clark, and O. Thyen. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2008.

Oxford-Hachette French Dictionary. 4th ed. Edited by Marie-Hélène Corréard et al. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2007.

Oxford Latin Dictionary. Combined ed. Edited by P. G. W. Glare. New York: Oxford University Press, 1982.

Oxford-Paravia Italian Dictionary. 2nd ed. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2006.

Oxford Russian Dictionary. 4th ed. Edited by Marcus Wheeler, Boris Unbegaun, Paul Falla, and Della Thompson. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2007.

Oxford Spanish Dictionary. 4th ed. Edited by Beatriz Galimberti Jarman and Roy Russell. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2008.

The University of Chicago Spanish Dictionary. 5th ed. Edited by David Pharies. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2002.

4 General Reference Works

4.1 BIOGRAPHY

American Men and Women of Science. 25th ed. Edited by Katherine H. Nemeh. Farmington Hills, MI: Thomson/Gale, 2008.

American National Biography. New York: Oxford University Press, 2000–. Updated quarterly. http://www.anb.org/.

Burke's Peerage, Baronetage, and Knightage. 107th ed. Multiple vols. London: Burke's Peerage, 1826–.

Canadian Who's Who. Toronto: University of Toronto Press. Published annually, with semiannual supplements.

Concise Dictionary of National Biography: From Earliest Times to 1985. 3 vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1992.

Dictionary of American Biography. 11 vols. New York: Scribner's, 1995. Supplements.

Dictionary of Canadian Biography. 14 vols. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1966–. Supplements.

Directory of American Scholars. 10th ed. 6 vols. Detroit: Gale Group, 2002.

International Who's Who. London: Europa. Published annually.

Marquis Who's Who on the Web. New Providence, NJ: Marquis Who's Who. Continually updated. http://www.marquiswhoswho.com/.

Merriam-Webster's Biographical Dictionary. Springfield, MA: Merriam-Webster, 1995.

Oxford Dictionary of National Biography. 60 vols. Prepared under various editors. New York: Oxford University Press, 1885–2004. Also available at http://www.oxforddnb.com/.

Who's Who: An Annual Biographical Dictionary. New York: St. Martin's Press. Published annually.

Who's Who in America. Chicago: A. N. Marquis. Published biennially. See also *Marquis Who's Who on the Web*.

4.2 GEOGRAPHY

Cambridge World Gazetteer: A Geographical Dictionary. Edited by David Munro. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1990.

Columbia Gazetteer of North America. Edited by Saul B. Cohen. New York: Columbia University Press, 2000.

Merriam-Webster's Geographical Dictionary. 3rd ed. Springfield, MA: Merriam-Webster, 1997.

Omni Gazetteer of the United States of America. Edited by Frank R. Abate. Detroit: Omnigraphics, 1991.

Oxford Atlas of the World. 16th ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2009.

The Times Comprehensive Atlas of the World. 12th ed. London: Times Books, 2007.

The World Factbook. Washington, DC: Central Intelligence Agency. Continually updated. https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/.

4.3 ENCYCLOPEDIAS

Britannica Concise Encyclopaedia. Rev. ed. Chicago: Encyclopaedia Britannica, 2006.

Canadian Encyclopedia. 2000 ed. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1999. Also available at http://www.thecanadianencyclopedia.com/.

Columbia Encyclopedia. 6th ed. New York: Columbia University Press, 2000.

Encyclopedia Americana. 30 vols. Danbury, CT: Scholastic Library, 2006.

The New Encyclopaedia Britannica. 15th ed. 32 vols. Chicago: Encyclopaedia Britannica, 2007. Also available at http://www.britannica.com/.

Wikipedia: The Free Encyclopedia. San Francisco: Wikimedia Foundation. http://en.wikipedia.org/.

4.4 ALMANACS AND YEARBOOKS

Canadian Almanac and Directory. Toronto: Grey House. Published annually.

Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc. *Time Almanac*. New York: Time Home Entertainment. Published annually.

The Europa World of Learning. London: Routledge. Published annually. Also available at http://www.worldoflearning.com/.

Europa World Year Book. London: Europa. Published annually. Also available at http://www.europaworld.com/pub/.

New York Times Almanac. New York: Penguin Group. Published annually.

The Statesman's Yearbook. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan. Published annually. Also available at http://www.statesmansyearbook.com/public/.

Whitaker's Almanack. London: Stationery Office. Published annually.

World Almanac and Book of Facts. New York: World Almanac Books. Published annually.

4.5 GUIDES TO BOOKS, PERIODICALS, AND OTHER SOURCES

ABI/Inform Complete. Ann Arbor, MI: ProQuest Information and Learning. http://www.proquest.com/.

Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules. 2nd ed. Chicago: American Library Association; Ottawa: Canadian Library Association; London: Chartered Institute of Library and Information Professionals, 2002. Loose-leaf update, 2005.

Ashley, Lowell E. *Cataloging Musical Moving Image Material: A Guide to the Bibliographical Control of Videorecordings and Films of Musical Performances and Other Music-Related Moving Image Material*. Canton, MA: Music Library Association, 1996.

Australian Books in Print. Melbourne: D. W. Thorpe. Published annually.

Bibliographic Index. New York: H. W. Wilson. Published semiannually. Also available, as *Bibliographic Index Plus*, at http://www.hwwilson.com/databases/biblio.htm.

Book Review Digest. New York: H. W. Wilson. Published monthly, except for February and July, with annual cumulations. Also available, as *Book Review Digest Plus*, at http://www.hwwilson.com/databases/brdig.htm.

Book Review Index. Detroit: Gale Research Company. Published monthly, with quarterly and annual cumulation.

Books in Print. New York: R. R. Bowker. Published annually. Also available at http://www.booksinprint.com/.

Bowker's British Books in Print. New Providence, NJ: R. R. Bowker. Published annually. From 1988 to 2003 titled *Whitaker's Books in Print: The Reference Catalogue of Current Literature*; before 1988 titled *British Books in Print*.

Canadian Books in Print. Toronto: University of Toronto Press. Published annually.

Catalog of U.S. Government Publications. Washington, DC: GPO Access. http://catalog.gpo.gov/.

Dissertation Abstracts International. Ann Arbor, MI: University Microfilms International. Published monthly with annual cumulation.

Guide to Reference. 12th ed. Edited by Bob Kieft. Chicago: American Library Association, 2008. http://www.guidetoreference.org/.

Guide to the Contents of the Public Record Office. 3 vols. London: Her Majesty's Stationery Office, 1963–1968.

Guide to the National Archives of the United States. Washington, DC: Archives, 1987. Also available at http://www.archives.gov/.

Guide to U.S. Government Publications. Edited by Donna Batten. Formerly known as *Andriot*. Detroit: Gale Research Company. Updated annually.

Humanities Index. New York: H. W. Wilson. Published quarterly with annual cumulation. Also available at http://www.hwwilson.com/.

Index Islamicus. Leiden: Brill. Published quarterly with quinquennial cumulation. Also available at http://www.indexislamicus.com/.

Library of Congress Subject Headings. Washington, DC: Library of Congress Cataloging Distribution Service. Published annually. Also available at http://classweb.loc.gov/.

Livres disponibles [French books in print]. Paris: Cercle de la librairie, 1977–2004.

The New Walford Guide to Reference Resources. 9th ed. 3 vols. London: Facet, 2005–10.

New York Times Index. New York: New York Times Company. Annual cumulations.

PAIS International in Print. New York: Public Affairs Information Service. Published monthly, with every fourth issue being cumulative.

Pemberton, John E., ed. *The Bibliographic Control of Official Publications*. New York: Pergamon, 1982.

Periodical Title Abbreviations. 17th ed. Vol. 1, by abbreviation. Vol. 2, by title. Detroit: Thomson/Gale, 2007.

PubMed. Bethesda, MD: US National Library of Medicine. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/.

Reader's Guide to Periodical Literature. New York: H. W. Wilson. Published annually. Also available at http://www.hwwilson.com/.

Rodgers, Frank. *A Guide to British Government Publications*. New York: H. W. Wilson, 1980.

Schmeckebier, Laurence F., and Roy B. Eastin. *Government Publications and Their Use*. 2nd ed. Washington, DC: Brookings Institution, 1969.

Science Citation Index. Philadelphia: Institute for Scientific Information. Published bimonthly with annual cumulations. Also available at http://scientific.thomson.com/.

Social Science Index. New York: H. W. Wilson. Published quarterly with annual cumulation. Also available at http://www.hwwilson.com/.

UKOP: Catalogue of United Kingdom Official Publications. London: Chadwyck-Healey. Continually updated. http://www.ukop.co.uk/.

Ulrich's International Periodicals Directory. New York: R. R. Bowker. Published annually. Supplemented quarterly by *Ulrich's Update*. Also available at http://www.ulrichsweb.com/.

Verzeichnis Lieferbarer Bücher [German books in print]. Frankfurt am Main: Verlag der Buchhändler-Vereinigung. Published annually. Also available at http://www.vlb.de/.

4.6 QUOTATIONS

Bartlett, John. *Bartlett's Familiar Quotations: A Collection of Passages, Phrases, and Proverbs Traced to Their Sources in Ancient and Modern Literature*. 17th ed. Edited by Justin Kaplan. Boston: Little, Brown, 2002.

Crystal, David, and Hilary Crystal. *Words on Words: Quotations about Language and Languages*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2000.

The Oxford Dictionary of Quotations. 7th ed. Edited by Elizabeth Knowles. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2009.

4.7 ABBREVIATIONS

Acronyms, Initialisms, and Abbreviations Dictionary: A Guide to Acronyms, Abbreviations, Contractions, Alphabetic Symbols, and Similar Condensed Appellations. 39th ed. 4 vols. Edited by Bohdan Romanenchuk. Detroit: Thomson/Gale, 2008.

Davis, Neil M. *Medical Abbreviations: 30,000 Conveniences at the Expense of Communication and Safety*. 14th ed. Warminster, PA: Neil M. Davis Associates, 2009.

Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms: Includes US Acronyms and Abbreviations and NATO Terms (English Only). Washington, DC: Joint Chiefs of Staff, 1998. Amended version available at http://www.dtic.mil/doctrine/dod_dictionary/.

Jablonski, Stanley. *Jablonski's Dictionary of Medical Acronyms and Abbreviations*. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders, 2008.

Stahl, Dean, and Karen Kerchelich. *Abbreviations Dictionary*. 10th ed. Originated by Ralph De Sola. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2001.

Webster's Guide to Abbreviations. Springfield, MA: Merriam-Webster, 1985.

5 Miscellaneous Works Cited in Text

ALA-LC Romanization Tables: Transliteration Schemes for Non-Roman Scripts. Compiled and edited by Randall K. Barry. Washington, DC: Library of Congress, 1997. Also available at http://www.loc.gov/catdir/cpso/roman.html.

American Naturalist. Journal published monthly by the University of Chicago Press for the American Society of Naturalists. http://www.journals.uchicago.edu/toc/an/current.

Baker-Shenk, Charlotte, and Dennis Cokely. *American Sign Language: A Teacher's Resource Text on Grammar and Culture*. Washington, DC: Gallaudet University Press, 1991.

BIOSIS Serial Sources. Philadelphia: BIOSIS. Published annually through 2005. Current titles available at http://scientific.thomson.com/.

Daniels, Peter T., and William Bright, eds. *The World's Writing Systems*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1996.

Duden: Die deutsche Rechtschreibung. 24th ed. Vol. 1. Mannheim: Dudenverlag, 2006.

French Review. Journal published bimonthly by the American Association of Teachers of French.

Gall, Gerald L., F. Pearl Eliadis, and France Allard. *The Canadian Legal System*. 5th ed. Scarborough, ON: Carswell, 2004.

Grevisse, Maurice. *Le bon usage: Grammaire française*. 14th ed. Edited by André Goosse. Paris: Duculot, 2008.

History of Religions. Journal published quarterly by the University of Chicago Press. http://www.journals.uchicago.edu/toc/hr/current.

Horticulture. Magazine published ten times a year by F+W Publications.

HUGO Gene Nomenclature Database. http://www.genenames.org/.

International Code of Botanical Nomenclature (Vienna Code). Prepared and edited by John McNeill et al. Regnum vegetabile 146. Königstein, Germany: Koeltz, 2006. Also available at http://ibot.sav.sk/icbn/main.htm.

International Code of Zoological Nomenclature. 4th ed. London: International Trust for Zoological Nomenclature, 1999. Also available at http://www.iczn.org/iczn/index.jsp.

International Journal of Middle East Studies. Journal published quarterly by Cambridge University Press for the Middle East Studies Association of North America. Also available at http://www.jstor.org/journals/00207438.html.

MacEllven, Douglass T., Michael J. McGuire, Neil A. Campbell, and John N. Davis. *Legal Research Handbook*. 5th ed. Markham, ON: LexisNexis Butterworths, 2003.

Moliner, María. *Diccionario de uso del español*. 3rd ed. Madrid: Gredos, 2007.

Mouse Genome Database. Mouse Genome Informatics. http://www.informatics.jax.org/.

The New Grove Dictionary of Music and Musicians. 2nd ed. 29 vols. Edited by Stanley Sadie. New York: Grove, 2001. Also available at http://www.oxfordmusic online.com/.

The Oxford Classical Dictionary. 3rd ed. rev. Edited by Simon Hornblower and Anthony Spawforth. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2003.

Physical Review Letters. Published semimonthly by the American Physical Society. http://prl.aps.org/.

PMLA. Journal published bimonthly by the Modern Language Association of America. http://www.mla.org/pmla.

Pullum, Geoffrey K., and William A. Ladusaw. *Phonetic Symbol Guide*. 2nd ed. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1996.

Raymond, Eric S. *The New Hacker's Dictionary*. 3rd ed. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 1996.

Real Academia Española. *Ortografía de la lengua española*. Madrid: Espasa, 1999. Also available at http://www.rae.es/.

Romanic Review. Journal published quarterly by the Columbia University Department of Romance Languages.

Thorin, Suzanne E., and Carole Franklin Vidali. *The Acquisition and Cataloging of Music and Sound Recordings: A Glossary*. Canton, MA: Music Library Association, 1984.

Unicode Collation Algorithm. By Mark Davis and Ken Whistler. Unicode Technical Standard no. 10. Unicode Consortium, 2008. http://www.unicode.org/reports /tr10/tr10-18.html.

USP Dictionary of USAN and International Drug Names. Rockville, MD: US Pharmacopeial Convention. Revised annually. Available at http://www.usp.org /products/dictionary/.

Valli, Clayton, Ceil Lucas, and Kristin J. Mulrooney. *Linguistics of American Sign Language: An Introduction*. 4th ed. Washington, DC: Gallaudet University Press, 2005.

Wertheim, Eric. *The Naval Institute Guide to Combat Fleets of the World: Their Ships, Aircraft, and Systems*. 15th ed. Annapolis, MD: Naval Institute Press, 2007.

Zurick, Timothy. *Army Dictionary and Desk Reference*. 3rd ed. Mechanicsburg, PA: Stackpole Books, 2004.

Index

References are to paragraph numbers except where specified as table, figure (fig.), or page number (p.). Page numbers in the online edition link directly to terms in the glossary (appendix B).

- *a* and *an*
  - abbreviations and, 7.44, 10.9
  - acronyms and, 10.9
  - appropriate use of, 5.72, 5.220, 7.44
  - coordinate nouns and, 5.73
  - disregarded in alphabetizing, 14.67, 16.51–52, 16.56, 16.68, 16.88
  - as indefinite articles, 5.68, 5.70–71
  - meaning affected by, 5.73–74, 5.76
  - in proper names, 16.88
  - in titles, 14.67, 16.51–52, 16.56
  - when to drop from titles in running text, 8.167–68
  - which to use, *a* vs. *an*, 5.72
  - *See also* articles (definite and indefinite)
- AAs (author's alterations), 2.67, 2.131–32, p. 891
- abbreviations, general, 10.1
  - *a*, *an*, or *the*, which to use, 7.44, 10.9
  - alphabetizing of, 1.43, 14.55, 16.64, 16.93, fig. 1.8, fig. 14.7
  - chart labels, 3.43–44
  - commas with: academic and professional designations, 10.4, 10.16, 10.20–21; addresses, mailing, 6.46, 10.28, 10.30; *e.g.* and *i.e.*, 5.220; *etc.* and *et al.*, 6.20; *Inc.*, *Ltd.*, and such, 6.48; *Jr.*, *Sr.*, and such, 6.47
  - compound, 6.80
  - definitions and uses, 10.2–3
  - after first occurrence of spelled-out version, 1.43, 10.24
  - frequently cited works, 13.65, 14.54–55, fig. 14.7
  - indexing of: acronyms, 16.46, 16.49, 16.64; periodical titles, 16.49
  - journal titles, 14.179, 15.13, 15.44, 16.49
  - lists of: alphabetizing, 1.43, 14.55, 16.64, fig. 1.8, fig. 14.7; cross-checking, 2.29; format and placement, 1.43, 2.21, fig. 1.8; for frequently cited works, 13.65, 14.54–55, fig. 14.7
- abbreviations, general (*continued*)
  - numbers with, 9.16–17
  - plurals of, 7.14
  - publication details, 1.21
  - punctuation with: ampersands, 6.21, 10.10; commas (*see under* commas with, *above*); hyphens vs. en dashes for compound, 6.80; periods with or not, 10.4; slashes, 6.107; surrounding text and, 6.117
  - short title compared with, 14.54
  - spelled out: capitals vs. lowercase, 10.6; guidance on, 10.3; marking manuscript for, 2.90; marking proofs for, 2.126
  - typographic considerations: capitals vs. lowercase, 10.6; italic vs. roman type, 10.7; line breaks, 7.40; small vs. full-size capitals, 10.8, 10.24, 10.39, 10.42; space or no space, 10.5
  - word division, 7.40
  - *See also* acronyms; contractions; initialisms
- abbreviations, specific
  - Bible: books, Apocrypha, 10.49; books, New Testament, 10.50; books, Old Testament, 10.48; books, citing in text and notes, 10.46; resources on, 10.45; sections and versions of, 10.51; short forms, 10.47
  - binary systems, 9.11
  - business and commerce, 10.22–23, 10.72
  - in documentation of: classical references, 14.258–59, 14.264, 14.266; dictionary and encyclopedia

abbreviations, specific (*continued*)
  entries, 14.247–48; editor, translator, and such, 15.6, 15.15; English poems and plays (short forms), 14.268; frequently cited works, 13.65, 14.54–55, fig. 14.7; journal titles, 14.179, 15.13, 15.44; legal-style citations (*see below*); organization names, 15.36; publishers' names, 14.139–40
  file formats (e.g., HTTP), 7.76
  genus, subspecies, and such, 8.120–23
  geographical terms: *avenue*, *street*, and such, 10.34; Canadian provinces and territories, 10.29; city plus state, comma with, 10.30; compass points, 10.35–36; country names, 10.32; latitude and longitude, 10.37; place-names with *Fort*, *Saint*, and such, 10.31; *US*, when to use, 10.33; US states and territories, 10.4, 10.28
  legal-style citations, 14.286; cases and court decisions, 14.288–91, 14.306; constitutions, 14.292
  mathematical expressions, 12.17, 12.63, table 12.2
  names and titles: academic and professional designations, 10.4, 10.16, 10.20–21; agencies and organizations, 10.24–25; author names, 1.18; civil titles, 10.13–14; firms and companies, 10.22–23; given names, 10.11; initials, 10.12; military, 10.15; *Rev.* and *Hon.*, 10.18; *Saint*, *St.*, and such, 10.26–27, 10.31, 11.29, 16.75, 16.90, 16.93; social, 10.16–17
  page, *volume*, and such, 14.157
  Rev. and *Hon.*, 10.18
  scholarly words, 10.43
  scientific and technical: astronomical and astrophysical, 10.64–65; chemical elements, 10.66; latitude and longitude, 10.37; miscellaneous technical, list of, 10.52; periods omitted, 10.4; resources, 10.1; SI units, 10.52, 10.54–62; statistics, 10.53; US measurements, 10.67–71
  states and territories (US), 10.4, 10.28
  stub column of tables, 3.60
  time designations: *a.m.* and *p.m.*, 9.38–40, 10.42; chronology systems, 9.35, 9.63, 10.39; days of the week, 10.41; months, 10.40; numerical, 9.31, 9.34, 9.36, 9.38–41; time of day, 10.42; units (seconds, minutes, etc.), 10.71
  time zones, 8.89, 10.42
  See also postal codes; *and under specific abbreviations* (e.g., Jr. ["Junior"])
abridgements
  copyright issues, 4.14, 4.69
  editing materials from, 2.58
abstractions, 8.36, 8.93
abstracts
  copyright issues and, 4.60
  description, 1.88, 1.90
  documentation of, 14.197
  hyperlinks to, 1.83, fig. 1.11
  submitted with manuscript, 2.3
academic concerns
  course names, 8.85
  degrees and affiliations: abbreviations, 10.4, 10.16, 10.20–21; of author, 1.49, 1.88, 1.94; capitalization, 8.28, 10.20–21; in contributors' list, 1.62, fig. 1.10; indexing of, 16.40; omitted in documentation of works, 14.72; use of, 1.18, 1.20
  honors and awards, 8.30, 8.82
  institutions and departments: capitalization, 8.67, 8.84; in documentation of dissertations, theses, lectures, and such, 14.224, 14.226; place-names with, 6.46, 6.81; special imprints of, 14.146 (*see also* institutions; universities)
  letter grades, 7.60
  student status terms, 8.28
  subjects and disciplines: authorities in specific, 8.118; specific course names, 8.85; spellings peculiar to, 7.2; treatment of names, 8.84–85
  titles and offices, 8.27, 8.29
  See also lectures and lecture series; universities
accents. *See* diacritical marks; special characters
access dates
  online journal articles, 14.7, 14.185
  online legal and public documents, 14.282

access dates (*continued*)
  online reference works, 14.248
  undated online documents, 15.51
acknowledgments
  on copyright page, 1.19, 1.30–31, fig. 1.1, figs. 1.3–4
  of data sources, 3.75
  of grants and subventions, 1.19, 1.31, 1.40, fig. 1.1
  illustration credits in, 3.29
  in journals, 1.85, 1.88
  material appropriate for, 1.42
  and indexing, 16.109
  of permissions, 4.98–99
  in preface, 1.40
  references to, 8.177
  separate section for, 1.41
  in table notes, 3.75
  in unnumbered notes, 14.50
acronyms
  a, *an*, or *the*, which to use, 7.44, 10.9
  capitalization of, 10.6
  definition and use, 10.2, 10.14
  disease and medical terms, 8.143
  indexing of, 16.46, 16.49, 16.64
  journal titles, 14.179, 15.13, 15.44, 16.49
  small vs. full-size capitals for, 10.8, 10.24
  space omitted in, 10.5
  See also abbreviations; initialisms
active voice, 5.18, 5.104, 5.115, 5.188
acts and treaties
  documentation of, 14.287, 14.302
  treatment in text, 8.65, 8.79–80
  See also legal documents; public documents
AD (*anno Domini*), and such, 9.35, 9.63, 10.39
additions and insertions
  marking manuscript for, 2.91–92
  marking proofs for, 2.122, 2.124, fig. 2.6
  stetting or reversal of, 2.127
address, spoken. *See* dialogue; direct address; speech; speeches
addresses, e-mail, 14.11
  hyperlinks to, 1.114
  hyphenation issues, 6.77
  line breaks in, 7.42
  punctuation of, 6.8
  See also addresses, mailing; URLs (uniform resource locators)
addresses, mailing
  abbreviations: *avenue*, *street*, and such, 10.34; city plus state, comma with, 10.30; compass points, 10.35; provinces and territories (Canada), 10.29; states and territories (US), 10.28
  compass points in, 10.35
  numbers in, 9.51–53
  publishers', 1.18–19, 1.21
  treatment in text, 6.46, 10.28, 10.30
  See also addresses, e-mail; compass points and directions; geographical terminology
adjectives, 5.66–94
  adverbs compared with, 5.156
  articles as limiting adjectives: articles defined, 5.68; *a* vs. *an*, 5.72; coordinate nouns with, 5.73; definite, 5.69, 5.73; indefinite, 5.70–71; meaning affected by, 5.74, 5.76; omitted, 5.76; as pronoun substitute, 5.77; zero (implicit), 5.75
  avoiding biases in uses, 5.230
  coinage of, 8.59
  compound, 6.80
  dates as, 5.82
  definitions, 5.66
  degrees: comparative, 5.84, 5.86; equal and unequal comparisons, 5.87; positive or absolute, 5.83; superlative, 5.85–86; uncomparable, 5.88
  derivations: from legislative bodies, 8.61; from place-names (e.g., *Californian*), 5.67, 8.44; from proper names, 8.59–60
  ethnic and national group names with, 8.37
  functional variations of, 5.92–94
  idiomatic uses, 5.75
  infinitives as, 5.105
  as interjections, 5.210
  irregular, 5.86
  nouns as/as nouns, 5.22, 5.25, 5.92, 5.226, 7.25
  participles and participial phrases as, 5.89, 5.109
  position: basic rules, 5.78; dates and, 5.82; meaning affected by, 5.74, 5.76; when modifying pronoun,

adjectives (*continued*)
    5.80; after possessive pronoun, 5.79; predicate, 5.78, 5.81
  predicate, 5.78, 5.81
  prepositional phrase as, 5.173, 5.175
  pronominal, 5.65
  pronouns and, 5.29, 5.47, 5.65, 5.77, 5.79–80
  proper, 5.67
  punctuation: commas, 5.90, 6.33–34; dates in text, 5.82; hyphenation, 5.91, 6.80
  repeated, 6.34
  sex-specific labels as, 5.226
  special types: coordinate, 5.90, 6.33; participial, 5.89, 5.109; phrasal (compound modifier), 5.78, 5.91, 7.81
  as verbs, 5.93
administrative bodies, 8.62, 11.8. *See also* business and commerce; governmental entities; institutions; organizations
adverbs, 5.153–68
  adjectives compared with, 5.156
  as conjunctions, 5.202
  definition, 5.153
  degrees: comparative, 5.160; intensifiers, 5.164; irregular, 5.162; positive, 5.159; superlative, 5.161; uncomparable, 5.163
  flat, 5.157
  formation of, 5.154–55
  infinitives as, 5.105
  as interjections, 5.210
  introductory phrases, 6.36
  -ly ending, 5.91, 5.154, 5.160–61, 5.167, 7.82
  nouns as, 5.24–25, 5.154
  participial phrases as, 5.109
  phrasal and compound, 5.158, 6.36, 7.82
  position: intransitive verbs modified by, 5.166; linking verbs and, 5.167; meaning affected by, 5.165; placement considerations, 5.165; in verb phrases, 5.168
  prepositional phrases: as, 5.173, 5.175; compared with, 5.100, 5.156, 5.180; replaced by, 5.186
  punctuation with, 6.25, 6.36, 6.55
  sentences beginning with, 5.207
  simple, 5.157
adverbs (*continued*)
  suffixes, 5.154–55
  transitional (*however*, *therefore*, and such), 5.207, 6.25, 6.55
  verb phrases modified by, 5.102
  See also infinitives; participles and participial phrases
advertisements in journals, 1.72, 1.78, 1.82
African languages, 11.14–15. *See also* Arabic language
afterwords, 1.26, 1.52, 14.91, 14.116
agents, literary, 4.18
age terms, hyphenation guide, 7.85
ah, 6.37
AH (*anno Hegirae*), and such, 9.35, 9.63, 10.39
aircraft, 8.2, 8.115–16. *See also* vehicles and vessels
a.k.a., 10.72
Albanian language, 11.16–17
alignment
  checking facing pages for, 2.114
  marking proofs for, 2.124
  of subscripts and superscripts, 12.21–22, 12.38
  tables: cells, 3.68–72, figs. 3.19–21; decimal points, 3.70, 3.84, fig. 3.13, figs. 3.15–16, fig. 3.20
  See also lists; margins; tables
all rights reserved, 1.19, 1.22, 4.40, figs. 1.1–4
alphabetizing, 16.56, 16.62–67
  abbreviations and abbreviations lists, 1.43, 14.55, 16.64, 16.93, fig. 1.8, fig. 14.7
  accented letters (diacritical marks and special characters), 16.29, 16.67
  bibliographies, 2.60, 14.57, 14.60–62, 14.64–65, 14.67, fig. 14.8
  business names, 16.88–89
  compound words, 16.59–60, 16.72, 16.84
  computerized sorting options, 16.5, 16.57, 16.104, 16.123
  cross-references, 16.17, 16.20
  dates, 16.65
  elements to disregard in, 14.67, 16.48, 16.51–52, 16.56, 16.68, 16.88, 16.91
  foreign words, 16.67
  glossaries, 1.60
  indexes: main headings, 16.56; subentries, 16.68

alphabetizing (*continued*)
  letter-by-letter: basics of, 16.58–59; bibliographies, example of, 14.60; word-by-word compared, 16.61, 16.123
  names: abbreviations and acronyms, 16.64; basic rules, 16.71–76; compound, 16.72; foreign, 16.67, 16.76–87; initials vs. spelled-out, 16.63, 16.79; list of contributors, 1.62, fig. 1.10; *Mac* or *Mc* with, 16.73; monarchs, popes, and such, 16.37; nobility, titles, and such, 16.38, 16.66; numerals in (e.g., Henry III), 16.66; *O'* with, 16.74; with particles, 16.71, 16.84; personal, as corporate names, 16.89; *Saint*, *St.*, and such, 16.75, 16.93; same, of person, place, and thing, 16.62
  names, foreign personal, 16.76–87; Arabic, 16.76; Asian, generally, 16.87; Burmese, 16.77; Chinese, 16.78; Hungarian, 16.79; Indian, 16.80; Indonesian, 16.81; Japanese, 16.82; Portuguese, 16.83; Spanish, 16.84; Thai, 16.85; Vietnamese, 16.86
  numerals, 16.65–66
  organization names, 16.46, 16.88–89
  place-names, 16.90–93
  punctuation and, 16.59–61
  reference lists, 2.60, 14.61–62, 15.11, fig. 15.1
  titles of nobility and such, 16.66
  titles of works, 16.48–49, 16.51–52, 16.56
  word-by-word: basics of, 16.58, 16.60; bibliographies, example of, 14.60; letter-by-letter compared, 16.61, 16.123
alphabets
  character sets for Latin, 11.12, table 11.1
  character sets for non-Latin, 11.92, 11.110, tables 11.2–11.4
  dictionary tables of, 11.96, 11.111
  in mathematical expressions, 12.12
  modernizing archaic letters, 13.7
  proofreading copy in non-Latin, 11.92
  See also Arabic language; Cyrillic alphabet; Greek language; Hebrew language; International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA); Latin alphabet; letters (alphabet); transliteration; Unicode standard; *and names of other languages*
alterations
  author's (AAs), 2.67, 2.131–32, p. 891
  definition, p. 891
  designer's (DAs), 2.131, p. 894
  editor's (EAs), 2.131–32, p. 894
  printer's errors (PEs) and, 2.131, p. 900
a.m. and *p.m.*, 9.38–40, 10.42
American Indians, 7.9, 8.37
American Medical Association (AMA), 10.7, 14.3, 14.76
American National Standards Institute (ANSI), 1.34, A.44
American Psychological Association (APA), 3.46, 3.78, 14.3
American Sign Language (ASL), 11.144–54
  Deaf and *deaf*, 8.42
  fingerspelling in, 6.77, 11.149
  resources on, 11.146
  signed languages, defined, 11.144
  signs: components of, 11.145; compound, 11.148; glosses of, 11.147–54; handshapes, 11.151; lexicalized, 11.150; nonmanual, 11.154; pronouns, possessives, and reference, 11.153
  transcriptions and writing of, 11.146–54
American Society for Indexing (ASI), 16.104
ampersands
  changed to *and*, 8.163
  in company names, 10.23
  initialisms with, 10.10
  in Old and Middle English, 11.143
  in publishers' names, 14.141
  serial comma omitted before, 6.21
  spacing with, 10.10
  in URLs and e-mail addresses, 7.42
  See also *and*; conjunctions
and
  ampersand changed to, 8.163
  appropriate use of, 5.220
  between with, 6.78, 9.59
  both with, 5.195, 5.214
  coordinate adjectives separated by, 5.90
  in generic cross-references of indexes, 16.23
  or with, 5.220

and (*continued*)
  pronoun and antecedent with, 5.32–34
  in publisher's name, 14.141
  punctuation with, 6.18, 6.28–29
  sentences beginning with, 5.206
  serial commas and, 6.18–19
  slash instead of, 6.104
  two or more authors (or editors) in documentation, 14.76
  See also ampersands; conjunctions
and if, 6.32
and/or, 5.220
and other stories, 14.100
and so forth or *and the like*, 6.20, 11.35
angle brackets
  in generic markup, 2.15, 2.27, 2.78
  for *less than* and *more than*, 3.81
  in mathematical expressions, 6.102, 12.26, 12.28, 12.31, 12.55, 12.58
  with URLs, 6.8, 14.11
  in XML, 6.102, fig. A.2
  See also brackets
animals
  domestic breeds, 8.128
  scientific names: authorities on, 8.118; author names in, 8.123; divisions higher than genus, 8.125; English derivatives from taxonomic system, 8.126; genus, species, and subspecies, 8.119–21; unspecified species and varieties, 8.122
  vernacular names, 8.127–29
  See also scientific and technical terminology
animations, 1.100, 2.4. *See also* audiovisual materials
Annals of the Congress of the United States, 14.299
annotated bibliographies, 14.59, fig. 14.10
annotations
  as copyrightable, 4.5
  excessive, 2.59, 14.51–55
  See also documentation; notes
announcements in journals, 1.83, 1.85, 1.93
anonymity of research subjects, 13.47
anonymous works
  abbreviation of *anonymous*, 10.43
  copyright of, 4.24
  documentation of: known authorship, 14.80, 15.33; unattributed interviews, 14.220; unknown authorship, 14.79, 15.32
  use of *anonymous*, 14.79
ANSI (American National Standards Institute), 1.34
anthologies
  author-and-title index of, 16.6
  as collective works, 4.8
  copyright issues and, 4.55, 4.60, 4.90
  editorial additions bracketed in, 6.97
  material copyrightable in, 4.5
  permissions and fees for, 4.101
  unnumbered source notes in, 3.31, 14.49
  See also collected works; compilations; derivative works; previously published materials
aphorisms. *See* figures of speech; maxims
Apocrypha
  abbreviations of books, 10.49
  capitalization, 8.105
  See also Bible
apostrophes, 6.113–15
  in foreign languages: African languages, 11.15; Chinese, 11.104; French, 11.38; German, 11.43; Hebrew, 11.113; Italian, 11.53, 11.57–58; Japanese, 11.107
  and manuscript cleanup, 2.77
  marking on manuscript, 2.91
  marking on proofs, 2.129
  other punctuation with: generally, 6.115; periods or commas, 6.115; single closing quotation mark, 6.9
  in plurals: abbreviations, 7.14; letters as letters, 7.14, 7.59–61; noun coinages, 7.13; proper nouns, 7.8; words in quotation marks, 7.12
  in possessives: basic use, 5.50; compounds, 7.23; *for . . . sake* expressions, 7.20; general rule, 7.15; genitive case, 7.24; gerunds, 7.26; italicized or quoted words, 7.28; nouns, proper, 7.16–18; nouns ending in *eez* sound, 7.18; nouns plural in form, singular in meaning, 7.19; nouns used attributively, 7.25; *of*, 7.27; two nouns as unit, 7.22; words ending in unpronounced *s*, 7.17

apostrophes (*continued*)
  "smart," 6.114, 7.29
  uses, other, 6.113; abbreviated decades (e.g., '70s), 9.34; abbreviated years, 9.31; contractions, 7.29; hamza vs., 11.97; inappropriate, 5.47, 5.50, 6.114, 7.60; nouns, genitive, 5.12, 5.19–20
appendixes
  chronologies as, 1.58, fig. 1.9
  content and format of, 1.57
  figures or illustrations in, numbering of, 3.11
  indexing of, 16.109
  multiple, 1.47
  note materials moved to, 14.51
  numbering of, 8.178
  online alternative to, 1.57
  part title for, 1.47
  references to, 8.177
  running heads for, 1.13
  web-based publications, 1.117
  as work made for hire, 4.10
appositives, 5.21, 6.23, 6.51
Arabic language, 11.96–101
  capitalization, 11.100
  definite article, *al*, 11.99
  hamza and ʿayn, 11.97, 11.101, 11.112, table 11.2
  names: alphabetizing, 16.76; treatment, 8.14
  spelling, 11.98
  transliteration, 11.99; resources on, 11.96
  word division, 11.101
arabic numerals
  building and apartment numbers, 9.53
  Chicago's preference for, 9.66
  columns in tables, 3.54
  definition, p. 891
  documentation and references: chapters, figures, and such, 8.178, 14.154; classical Greek and Latin references, 14.256–66; parts of poems and plays, 8.182, 14.267–68; ranges (inclusive), 9.60–61, 14.155; volume numbers of multivolume works, 14.121–27; when to use, 14.154
  highways and streets, 9.51–52
  illustrations, 3.12, fig. 3.7
arabic numerals (*continued*)
  line breaks and, 7.39
  manuscript page numbers, 1.4, 1.7, 1.45–46, 2.35
  numbered divisions in publications and documents, 9.27–29
  roman numerals compared with, table 9.1
  spelled out: alternative rule, 9.3; beginning a sentence, 9.5; Chicago's general rule, 9.2; consistency, readability, and flexibility, 9.7; direct discourse, 13.42; fractions, 9.14–15; hundreds, thousands, and hundred thousands (round numbers), 9.4; hyphens with, 7.85; marking manuscript for, 2.90; marking proofs for, 2.126; ordinals, 9.6; physical quantities, 9.13; *to* vs. en dash with, 9.59
  See also inclusive (or continuing) numbers; numbers; roman numerals
archaeology, 7.2, 9.35
archival practices, 1.107, 2.86–87. *See also* backup copies
archives
  electronic sources, 14.282
  unpublished government documents, 14.232, 14.304, 14.308
  See also legal documents; legal-style citations; letters (correspondence); manuscript collections; public documents; unpublished and informally published materials
articles (definite and indefinite)
  a vs. *an*, 5.72
  abbreviations and, 7.44, 10.9
  acronyms and, 7.44, 10.9
  in alphabetizing, disregarded, 14.67, 16.48, 16.51–52, 16.56, 16.68, 16.88, 16.91
  appropriate use of, 5.72, 5.220, 7.44
  in Arabic, 11.99, 16.76
  in blog titles, 8.187
  celestial bodies and, 8.137
  coordinate nouns with, 5.73
  definite, 5.69, 5.71, 5.73, 16.91–92
  definition, 5.68
  dropping of, 5.76, 8.167–68, 14.28, 14.179, 14.210

- articles (definite and indefinite) (*continued*)
  - *earth* with, 8.139
  - in foreign names for places and structures, 8.58
  - gender indicated by, 5.14
  - implicit, 5.75
  - indefinite, 5.70–71
  - indexing: articles disregarded, 16.48, 16.51–52, 16.56, 16.68, 16.88, 16.91; first lines, 16.144; organization and business names, 16.88; personal and foreign names, 16.76, 16.91–92; place-names, 16.91–92; in subentries, 16.51, 16.68, 16.129; titles of newspapers and periodicals, 16.48–49; titles of works, 16.51–52, 16.56
  - as limiting adjectives: articles defined, 5.68; *a* vs. *an*, 5.72; coordinate nouns with, 5.73; definite, 5.69, 5.73; indefinite, 5.70–71; indefinite, in specific reference, 5.71; meaning affected by, 5.73–74, 5.76; omitted, 5.76; as pronoun substitute, 5.77; zero (implicit), 5.75
  - meaning affected by, 5.73–74, 5.76
  - names with: articles disregarded in alphabetizing, 16.88; capitalized or not, 8.67, 8.69; publisher's, in documentation, 14.140; titles and *the*, 8.20, 8.29, 8.35, 10.18
  - newspaper and periodical titles beginning with, 8.168, 14.179, 14.210, 16.48–49
  - organization and business names with, 8.67, 16.88
  - place-names with, 8.58, 16.91–92
  - preceding mass noun followed by prepositional phrase, 5.9
  - as pronoun substitute, 5.77
  - in titles in running text, 8.167–68
  - zero (implicit), 5.75
  - See also *a* and *an*; *the*
- articles (journal)
  - abstracts of, 1.88, 1.90
  - copyright lines in, 1.97
  - corrections to, 1.105
  - endnotes in, 14.38, 14.41
  - first-page information, 1.88, 1.97, 1.98
  - illustrations and tables in, 1.99–100
  - "in press" versions, 1.73
- articles (journal) (*continued*)
  - making changes to after submission, 2.5
  - note referring to entire, 1.48, 14.22
  - photocopying of, 1.97, 4.88–91
  - publishing agreement for, 4.55–58, fig. 4.2
  - subheads in, 1.91
  - substantive editing of, 2.47–48
  - table of contents in, 1.83
  - titles: editing of, 2.55; note reference numbers and, 14.22; proofreading of, 2.110, 2.130; quotation marks for, 8.161, 8.175
  - unique identifiers for, 1.74
  - *See also* abstracts; articles, documentation of; articles, electronic; chapters; journals; offprints
- articles, documentation of, 14.171–72
  - abstracts, 14.197
  - access dates, 14.7, 14.185
  - authors' names, 14.175, 15.12, 15.43
  - authors' names, initials, 15.43
  - basic examples and variations, 14.18, 15.9
  - electronic enhancements to articles, 14.198
  - foreign-language considerations, 14.179, 14.193
  - forthcoming articles, 14.182
  - installments of (several parts), 14.189
  - newspaper and magazine articles, 15.47
  - no volume number, or date only, 14.181
  - page numbers, 14.183, 14.186
  - papers presented at meetings, 14.226
  - place of publication, 14.191
  - preprints, 14.229
  - previously published articles, 14.190
  - special issues, 14.187
  - supplements, 14.188
  - titles of articles, 14.176–78; question marks and exclamation points in, 14.178; sentence-style capitalization, when to use, 15.45; shortened citations, 14.25, 14.28, 14.196; translated titles, 14.192, 14.194
  - URLs and DOIs, 1.74, 14.18, 14.184, 14.198, 15.9
  - volume, issue, and date, 14.180, 14.186, 15.46
  - *See also* journals: titles

- articles, electronic
  - abstracts of, 1.83
  - copyright lines, 1.97
  - forthcoming, 14.182
  - home pages for, 1.79, 1.82
  - hyperlinks within, 1.83, 1.89
  - maintaining context of, 1.80
  - options for publishing, A.39
  - page-numbering, 1.76
  - preprints, 1.73, 1.106, 14.229
  - in printed journal's table of contents, 1.83
  - publication history of, 1.98
  - table of contents for, 1.83, fig. 1.11
  - as version of record, 1.105
  - web-based publication of, 1.111
  - *See also* articles (journal); articles, documentation of; journals, electronic; preprints
- art styles and movements, 8.78. *See also* cultural movements and styles
- artwork
  - author's inventory of, 3.17
  - commissioned, 3.32
  - continuous-tone, 3.3, figs. 3.1–2
  - copyright issues, 4.15, 4.94
  - covers and jackets: credit lines, 1.70, 1.78; fair use of, 4.83; permissions, 4.94–97
  - creators' names, indexing of, 16.50
  - credit lines for, 1.70, 1.78, 3.32
  - cropping, scaling, and shading, 3.19
  - definition, p. 891
  - dimensions of original, noted, 3.27
  - fair use of, 4.83
  - identification for publisher, 3.16
  - permissions for, 4.94–97
  - prints vs. scans, 2.24
  - professionally created scans, 3.15
  - publisher's check and inventory of, 3.18
  - redrawn by publisher, 3.20
  - submission to publisher, 3.3–4, 3.15–17
  - titles of: cartoons, 8.194; exhibition catalogs, 8.195, 14.250; indexing, 16.50; paintings, statues, and such, 8.193
  - use of term, 3.1
  - in XML workflow, fig. A.5
  - *See also* captions; illustrations
- *as*, *as if*, 5.181, 5.201
- ascender, defined, p. 891
- ASCII file (plain-text file), defined, p. 899
- Asian names
  - Burmese, 16.77
  - Chinese, 8.15, 11.105, 11.108, 16.78
  - Indian, 16.80
  - Indonesian, 8.17, 16.81
  - Japanese, 8.16, 11.107–8, 16.82
  - other, 8.17, 16.87
  - Thai, 16.85
  - Vietnamese, 16.86
  - *See also* South Asian languages
- ASL. *See* American Sign Language (ASL)
- *as–so*, *so–as*, 5.195, 5.214
- associations. *See* organizations
- asterisks
  - for footnotes, 14.20, 14.44, 14.46, fig. 14.4
  - in legal-style citations, 14.288
  - in tables, 3.77–78, fig. 3.22
  - for text breaks, 1.56, 2.8
- astronomical and astrophysical terminology
  - abbreviations in, 10.64–65
  - celestial bodies, 8.137–41, 10.64
  - descriptive terms, 8.141
  - *earth*, 8.139
  - *Myr* and *Gyr*, 9.10
  - resources on, 8.136, 10.63
  - *sun* and *moon*, 8.140
  - *See also* scientific and technical terminology; metric system
- *as well as*, 5.133, 5.201, 6.18
- attribution
  - fair-use doctrine and, 4.69, 4.71, 4.85, 4.98–99
  - moral right of, 4.15
  - *See also* credits and credit lines; documentation; permissions
- audiobooks, 14.277. *See also* audiovisual materials; sound recordings
- audiovisual materials
  - abbreviations for terms (e.g., DVD and MIDI), 10.52
  - animations, 1.100, 2.4
  - archival practices for, 1.107
  - contributions to, as work made for hire, 4.10
  - discographies, 14.275, fig. 14.12
  - documentation of: author-date references, 15.53; basic elements to include, 14.274; books downloaded,

audiovisual materials (*continued*)
    14.166; CD-ROMS, 14.166, 14.168; discographies, 14.275, fig. 14.12; DVDs and videocassettes, 14.279; electronic enhancements, 14.198; literary and lecture recordings and such, 14.277; musical recordings, 14.276; online multimedia, 14.280; podcasts, 8.187, 14.221; radio, 8.185, 14.221; slides and filmstrips, 14.278; sound recordings, 14.276–77; video recordings, 14.278–80
  electronic journals that include, 1.100
  subdivision of copyright for, 4.33
  subsidiary rights for, 4.60
  titles of, 8.192
  video clips and files, 1.100, 1.107, 2.4
  See also movies and film; musical works; sound recordings; television and television programs
author-and-title index, 16.6
author-date reference system
  agreement of text citations and reference lists, 15.20
  audiovisual materials, 15.53
  authors' names: anonymous works, 15.32–33; different authors with same last name, 15.21; editor in place of author, 15.6, 15.15, 15.18, 15.35; examples and variations, 15.9; more than three authors, in-text citations, 15.28; more than three authors, reference list, 15.9, 15.12; organizations as, 15.36; proper form of name to use, 15.12, 15.43; pseudonyms, 15.34; single vs. several, order for, 15.16; 3-em dash for, 15.17–19
  author's responsibility for cross-checking, 2.29, 15.20
  basic format, 15.1, 15.5, fig. 15.1; authors' names (*see above*); examples and variations, 15.9; in-text citation structure, 15.7, 15.21; page numbers and locators, 15.8; reference list entry structure, 15.6, 15.21
  cross-references, 15.37
  disciplines that use, 14.2
  edition, volume, or collection, 15.38–40
  electronic sources, 15.4; access dates, 15.51; locators for, 15.8
author-date reference system (*continued*)
  examples and variations, 15.9
  legal and public documents, 15.54–55
  legal-style citations, 14.283
  multiauthor books, 15.10
  notes and bibliography entries as models for, 14.1–13, 15.1, 15.3
  notes used with, 14.45, 15.30, fig. 15.2
  periodicals: abbreviated journal titles, 15.13, 15.44; initials for authors' given names, 15.43; issue number in parentheses, 15.46; newspapers and magazines, 15.47; sentence-style capitalization for titles of works, 15.45
  publication date: basic structure and punctuation, 15.6, 15.9, 15.12, 15.24; editions with multiple, 15.38; *forthcoming*, 15.17, 15.42; letters in published collections, 15.40; multivolume works published over several years, 15.39; "no date," 15.41; references arranged by, 15.17–19
  secondary sources, quotations from, 15.52
  syntactic considerations with, 15.27
  titles of books, 15.37
  unpublished and informally published materials, 15.48–51
  websites and web pages, 15.4, 15.8, 15.51
  See also documentation; reference lists; text citations; titles of works in documentation; *and specific materials to document*
authors
  academic degrees and affiliations, 1.49, 1.88, 1.94
  accuracy of, 2.7, 2.53, 13.6
  alterations on proofs (AAs), 2.67, 2.131–32, p. 891
  backup copies of manuscript as responsibility of, 2.4, 2.37
  biographical notes (*see* biographical notes)
  copyright (*see* copyright)
  field notes of, 13.47
  financial assistance for, 1.31, 1.40
  illustration credits and, 3.30, 3.32 (*see also* credits and credit lines)
  indexing as responsibility of, 2.2, 2.67, 16.3–4, 16.104, 16.108

authors (*continued*)
  interviews by, 13.46 (*see also* interviews and discussions)
  notes of, 14.46
  own work used by, 4.62, 4.71
  papers in collection of, 14.242
  permissions as responsibility of, 3.28, 4.68–87, 13.3 (*see also* permissions)
  previous publications on copyright page, 1.17
  proofreading as responsibility of, 2.97–99
  publication process and schedule for, 2.2, A.2, figs. 2.1–2
  royalties, 4.36, 4.51, 4.53, 4.60, 4.63, 4.100
  warranties made by, 4.68
  websites of, 1.106, 1.114
  See also authors' names; author's review of copyedited manuscript; contributors; manuscript preparation guidelines for authors; proofreading; publishing agreement
author's alterations (AAs), 2.67, 2.131–32, p. 891
authorship, in copyright. *See* copyright
authors' names
  abbreviations of, 1.18
  alternative forms of, 14.86
  in books and periodicals: book review and book notes sections, 1.92; chapter opening page, 1.49; copyright notice, 4.41; covers and jackets, 1.66, 1.67, 1.68; epigraphs, 1.36; forewords and introductions, 1.39; journals and journal articles, 1.77, 1.83, 1.88, 1.94, fig. 1.11; multiauthor volumes, 1.37, 1.62, 16.115, fig.1.10; running heads, 1.77; in table of contents, 1.37, 1.83, fig. 1.11; title page, 1.18
  cross-checking of, 2.29
  documentation, author-date references: anonymous works, 15.32–33; basic form, 15.12; chronological order for single author with multiple titles, 14.67; different authors with same last name, 15.21; editor in place of author, 15.6, 15.15, 15.18, 15.35; examples and variations, 15.9; initials vs. full names, 14.73, 15.12, 15.43; more than three authors, in-text citations, 15.28; more than three authors, reference list, 15.9; organizations as authors, 15.36; proper form of name to use, 15.12, 15.43; pseudonyms, 15.34; same author, same year, 15.19, 15.28; single vs. several authors, order for, 15.16; 3-em dashes and, 2.13, 6.91, 15.17–19
  documentation, notes and bibliography: ad hoc handling of unusual cases, 14.89; alphabetical order, 14.57, 14.60–62, 14.65, 14.67, fig. 14.8; alternative real names, 14.86; anonymous works, 14.79–80; authors preferring initials, 14.73; in classical references, 14.258–59; descriptive phrase as "author," 14.85; different coauthors with, 14.62; editor in place of author, 14.87; editor or translator in addition to author, 14.88; editor vs. author, 14.90; examples and variations, 14.18; in forewords, prefaces, and such, 14.91, 14.116; form of, generally, 14.72; in journal articles, 14.175–76; in magazine articles, 14.202; in magazine departments, 14.202; monarchs, saints, and such, as authors, 14.74, 16.42; in multivolume works, 14.122–24, 14.126–27; in newspaper articles, 14.203, 14.205–7; organization as, 14.66, 14.92; pseudonyms and cross-references, 14.81–84; punctuation of, 6.20, 14.63; in reference work entries, 12.248, 14.247–48; repeated names, 14.64–67; in reviews, 14.214–16; shortened forms, 14.25–27, 14.196; single author, 14.75; single vs. several authors, 14.61; 3-em dashes and, 2.13, 6.91, 14.63–67, 14.79; in title of work, 14.78; two or more authors (or editors), 14.76; two or more authors (or editors) with same family name, 14.77; "with the assistance of" and such, 14.89
  hyperlinks from, 1.114
  index of, 16.6, 16.115, 16.145

authors' names (*continued*)
  initials vs. full version of, 1.18, 14.25–27, 14.73, 15.12, 15.43
  proofreading of, 2.105, 2.130
  in scientific names, 8.123
  uniform treatment across documentation systems, 15.2
  See also anonymous works; contributors; pseudonyms and pseudonymous works
author's review of copyedited manuscript, 2.2, 2.67–69, 2.85, 2.97
  communications and queries from manuscript editor, 2.53–54, 2.57–58, 2.61, 2.66, 2.83, 2.89, fig. 2.4; bias-free language issues, 5.224; cover letter and instructions, 2.67, 2.81; early contact, 2.65; on paper manuscripts, 2.89; sample of editing, 2.65
  version of record, 2.84
  See also markings, editorial; redlining (tracking and showing changes)
automobiles, 8.116. *See also* vehicles and vessels
auxiliary verbs. *See under* verbs
awards and prizes
  announcements of, 1.93
  civic, 8.82
  military, 8.114
  names: periodical titles in, 8.170; treatment of, 8.30
axes, *x* and *y*, 3.42, 3.49, fig. 3.8
Azeri language, 11.88–90

back margin, defined, p. 891
back matter, 1.4, 1.57–65
  abbreviations lists, 1.43, fig. 1.8
  acknowledgments, 1.41
  added later in production process, 1.8
  appendixes, 1.53
  bibliographies or reference lists, 1.61
  chronologies, 1.58, fig. 1.9
  colophons, 1.64
  contributors lists, 1.62, fig. 1.10
  editor's notes, 1.44
  electronic publications, 1.117
  endnotes, 1.59
  glossaries, 1.60
  illustration credits, 3.29
  indexable material in, 16.109
  indexes, 1.63
back matter (*continued*)
  pagination of, 1.4, 1.7–8
  recto vs. verso for elements, 1.4
  running heads for, 1.13–14
  in table of contents, 1.37
  in web-based publications, 1.117
  See also many of the above elements under their own headings
backup copies
  author's, 2.5, 2.37
  editor's and publisher's, 2.75, 2.77, 2.86
  See also archival practices
bar codes, 1.66, 1.71, 1.78, fig. 1.13
baseline, defined, p. 891
battles, campaigns, wars, and such, 8.112–13
BC, *AD*, and such, 9.35, 9.63, 10.39
because, 5.201
Berne Convention, 4.2, 4.29, 4.38
beta testing, defined, p. 891
between . . . and, 6.78, 9.59
be-verbs (*be*, *is*, *are*, *was*, etc.)
  contractions with, 5.103
  forms and tenses of, 5.98, 5.151–52
  as linking verbs, 5.43, 5.99
  noun or pronoun following, 5.17
bi-, 5.220
bias-free language, 5.221–30
  advice for achieving, 5.225
  avoiding biases other than gender, 5.223, 5.230
  avoiding gender bias, 5.34, 5.222, 5.45–46, 5.226–29
  editor's attention to, 2.48, 5.224
Bible
  abbreviations, 10.47; of *Bible* and *biblical*, 10.43; books of Bible, 10.46, 10.48–50; chapter and verse, 14.253; resources on, 10.45, 14.252; versions and sections of Bible, 10.51, 14.254
  books of, 8.104, 10.46–50
  capitalization of, 8.102
  in Hebrew language, 11.116–17
  named parts of (e.g., Sermon on the Mount), 8.106
  versions and sections of, 8.103, 8.105, 10.51, 14.254
  See also biblical citations
biblical citations
  abbreviations in, 10.45–51
  chapter and verse, 14.253

biblical citations (*continued*)
  punctuation of, 6.60, 9.27
  resources on, 14.252
  versions of Bible in, 14.254
  See also Bible
bibliographic essays, 14.59, fig. 14.11
bibliographies, 14.56–67
  alphabetical arrangement of entries: authors with different coauthors, 14.62, 14.65; authors with multiple works, 14.64, 14.67; example of, fig. 14.8; letter-by-letter vs. word-by-word, 14.60; readability of, 14.57; single vs. several authors, 14.61
  authors' names (*see* authors' names)
  editing and checking, 2.29, 2.53, 2.77, 2.60–61
  format: flush-and-hang style (hanging indention), 1.61, 2.11, 2.22, fig. 14.8; headnotes, 14.58, fig. 14.9; placement and example, 14.57, fig. 14.8; 3-em dashes and, 2.13, 6.91, 14.63–67, 14.79
  hyperlinks in, 1.102
  notes in relation to, 14.56
  and indexing, 16.109
  reference lists compared with, 14.67, 15.3
  references to, 8.177
  sections in, 14.58, 14.276, fig. 14.9
  special types: annotated, 14.59, fig. 14.10; bibliographic essays, 14.59, fig. 14.11; discographies, 14.275, fig. 14.12; single-author, 14.67
  styling of entries, 14.16–18
  3-em dashes in, 2.13, 6.91, 14.63–67, 14.79
  as work made for hire, 4.10
  works appropriate for inclusion, 2.60
  See also documentation; note numbers; notes; notes and bibliography system; reference lists; titles of works in documentation; *and specific types of sources*
billion, 5.220
bills, legislative, 14.295. *See also* laws and statutes; legislation
binary systems, 9.11
binding, A.50
  definition, p. 891
  types: adhesive, fig. A.9; burst, p. 892;
binding (*continued*)
  case or hardcover, p. 892; limp or flexi-, p. 895; notch, p. 898; perfect, p. 899; saddle stitched, p. 902; sewn, fig. A.8
biographical notes
  components of, 1.17, 1.20
  of contributors, 1.49, 1.62, 1.94, 14.50, fig. 1.10
  on copyright page, 1.19, fig. 1.1, figs. 1.3–4
  on covers or jackets, 1.67–68
  of editors, compilers, and such, 1.20
  proofreading of, 2.105
  in unnumbered notes, 14.50
bitmap, defined, A.32, p. 891
blind (unexpressed) folios, 1.5–7, 1.45, 1.48, 3.6
block quotations
  capitalization in, 13.13–16
  coding of, example, 2.71
  definition, p. 892
  generic markup of, 2.78
  manuscript preparation guidelines for, 2.18–19
  note references or notes within, 13.7
  in notes, 14.33
  paragraphing of, 13.20–22, 13.54
  of poetry: format, 13.23; generic markup, 2.78; indention, 13.24; long lines and runovers, 13.25; manuscript preparation guidelines for, 2.19; parenthetical citations in, 13.69–70; quotation marks in poems, 13.26; vs. run-in, 13.10
  proofreading of, 2.110
  punctuation in: brackets, 13.12, 13.16; colons, 6.61, 6.63, 13.17; commas, 6.50, 13.18; ellipsis points, 13.54; periods, 13.19; quotation marks, 13.26
  quotation beginning or continued in text, 13.21–22
  run-in: vs. block quotations, 13.9–10; of more than one stanza, 13.32; slashes for line breaks, 6.109
  text citations for, 13.68–70
  See also documentation; text citations
blogs and blog entries
  documentation of, 14.243–46
  treatment in text, 8.187

blogs and blog entries (*continued*)
  See also hyperlinks; URLs (uniform resource locators); web-based publications; websites and web pages
Bluebook, The (Harvard Law Review Association), 14.3, 14.281–87
bluelines, defined, p. 892
blurb, author's. *See* biographical notes
boats. *See* vehicles and vessels
body text, defined, p. 892
boldface
  definition, p. 892
  in manuscript, 2.14
  marking manuscript for, 2.94
  marking proofs for, 2.110, 2.128
  in relation to surrounding text, 6.3
  uses: dynamics in music writing, 7.71; indexes, 16.140–41, 16.143
book-club rights, 4.60
book notes section, 1.92. *See also* reviews
books
  back matter: acknowledgments, 1.41; appendixes, 1.57; bibliographies and reference lists, 1.61; chronologies, 1.58, fig. 1.9; colophons, 1.64; endnotes, 1.59; glossaries, 1.60; indexes, 1.63; list of contributors, 1.49, 1.62, 1.94, 2.38, 14.50, fig. 1.10
  determining length of, A.18
  divisions of, 1.4, 1.47; for letters and diaries, 1.51; pagination of, 1.7; for poetry, 1.50; running heads in, 1.11; in table of contents, 1.37, fig. 1.5 (*see also* parts of, *below*)
  documentation of, examples and variations, 14.14–18, 15.9
  documentation of, notes and bibliography: author's name, 14.72–92; chapters and other parts of, 14.111–17; edition, 14.118–20; electronic books, 14.166–69; elements to include, 14.69; flexibility and consistency, 14.70; foreign bibliographic terms and abbreviations, 14.71; as model for other materials, 14.68; multivolume works, 14.121–27; page, volume, and such, 14.154–65; series, 14.128–32; title, 14.93–110
  documentation of, author-date reference system, 15.32–41
books (*continued*)
  electronic and print compared, 1.2
  front matter: acknowledgments, 1.41; author's signature, 1.40; copyright page, 1.19–34, figs. 1.1–4; epigraph, 1.36; foreword, 1.39; frontispiece, 1.17, 1.38; half title page, 1.116; introduction appropriate to, 1.42; list of illustrations and tables, 1.38, figs. 1.6–7; lists of abbreviations, 1.43, fig. 1.8; prefaces, 1.40; publisher's, translator's, and editor's notes, 1.44; series title page, 1.116; table of contents, 1.37, fig. 1.5; title page, 1.16–18
  ISBN of, 1.13, 1.19, 1.32, 1.71, fig. 1.13
  page numbers in, 1.5–8, 1.45, 9.27–29, 14.154
  parts of, 1.4; appendixes, 1.57; back matter, 1.4, 1.7; chapter openings, 1.7, 1.48; chapters, 1.48; concluding elements, 1.52; dedication, 1.6, 1.35; epigraphs, 1.36; front matter, 1.4, 1.6; galleries, 1.5; generic terms for, 3.5, 8.177; illustrations and tables, 1.7, 1.38; introductions, 1.42, 1.46; recto and verso pages, 1.4, 1.48, 1.50; second half title, 1.7, 1.45; subheads, 1.53–56; table of contents, 1.37, fig. 1.5 (*see also many of the above elements under their own headings*)
  publication process and schedule, 2.2, A.2, figs. 2.1–2
  running heads in, 1.9–15
  signatures in, 1.40, 14.161
  See also books, electronic; covers of journals and paperback books; electronic publications; documentation; hardcover books; publications in multiple formats; titles of works; web-based publications
books, electronic
  documentation of: CD-ROMs and fixed media, 14.166, 14.168; consulted online, 14.167, 14.169; downloaded from library or bookseller, 14.166
  electronic and print compared, 1.2
  ISBN of, 4.60
  options for publishing as, A.38
  readers, 14.166

books, electronic (*continued*)
  style sheets of, A.9
  See also electronic publications; publications in multiple formats; web-based publications
Bosnian language, 11.18–19
botanical terminology
  cultivated varieties (cultivars), 8.129
  domestic breeds, 8.128
  example of illustration, fig. 3.3
  scientific names: authorities on, 8.118; author names, 8.123; divisions higher than genus, 8.125; English derivatives from taxonomic system, 8.126; genus, species, and subspecies, 8.119–21; hybrids, 8.124; unspecified species and varieties, 8.122
  vernacular names, 8.127–29
  See also scientific and technical terminology
both–and, 5.195, 5.214
braces in mathematical expressions, 6.102, 12.26, 12.28. *See also* brackets
brackets, 6.97–102
  angle brackets: for generic markup, 2.15, 2.27, 2.78; for *less than* and *more than*, 3.81; in mathematical expressions, 6.102, 12.26, 12.28, 12.31, 12.55, 12.58; for URLs, 6.8, 14.11; in XML, 6.102, fig. A.2
  Dirac bracket notation, 12.55
  in documentation: for author's name, 14.73, 14.80; for foreign-language titles, 14.108, 14.110; within parentheses, 15.27, 15.38; for pseudonyms, 14.81–84, 15.34; for publication details, surmised, 14.138, 14.152
  generic markup within, 2.78
  italic vs. roman type, 6.5
  other punctuation with, 6.101; commas, 6.53; ellipsis points, 13.56; exclamation points, 6.73–74; parentheses, 6.95, 15.27, 15.38; periods, 6.13; question marks, 6.70; suspension points, 11.54
  other uses: glosses or translations, 6.93; interpolations and clarifications, 6.97, 13.57–59, 13.61; missing or illegible words, 13.57; within parentheses, 6.95, 6.99; phonetics, 6.100; quotations, 13.12, 13.16, 13.46; with *sic*, 13.59; in translated text, 6.93, 6.98; URLs, 6.8, 14.11
  in relation to surrounding text, 6.5
  See also parentheses; punctuation
brand names
  capitalization, 8.68, 8.153, 8.152
  in computer writing, 7.76
  drugs, 8.145
  generic terms for, 8.152
  See also trademarks
breathing marks, 11.130, 11.132
bridges and such, 8.55
British style
  billion in, 5.220
  contractions, 10.4
  dates, 6.45
  decimal places, 9.20
  double consonants in past indicative, 5.138
  parentheses within parentheses, 6.95
  past tense and past participle, 5.98
  quotation marks, 6.9, 13.28
  spelling, 7.3, 16.29
  titles of nobility, 8.31
  which and *that*, 6.22
  See also European style; United Kingdom
broadcast networks, channels, and such, 8.185, 10.5, 10.25
broadside
  definition, p. 892
  for tables, 2.112, 3.84–85
brochures. *See* pamphlets, brochures, and reports
buildings, 8.56
  apartment numbers and, 9.53
  names of: French, 11.29; in periodical titles, 8.170
  religious, 8.100, 9.49
  schools, 8.67
bullets, 2.32, 6.124–25
Burmese names, 16.77
burst binding, defined, p. 892
business and commerce
  abbreviations used in, 10.22–23, 10.72
  in documentation: corporate features omitted from names in, 14.140, 14.142; databases, 14.271–72;

business and commerce (*continued*)
    imprints, parent companies, and such, 14.144–48; news services, 14.212; private contracts and such, 14.231; reports, brochures, and such, 14.249
  generic terms vs. proper names, 7.76
  names: abbreviations of, 10.22–23, 10.25; alphabetizing of, 16.88–89; ampersands in, 10.23; articles in, 8.67, 16.88; capitalization of, 8.67–68; foreign-language, 11.8; *Inc.*, *Ltd.*, and such with, 6.48, 10.22–23; indexing of, 16.46, 16.88–89; punctuation of, 6.117; spelled out in running text, 10.23; unusual names (e.g., eBay), 8.68, 8.153
  titles and offices in, 8.26
  See also governmental entities; institutions; organizations
but
  punctuation with, 6.28–29, 6.41
  sentences beginning with, 5.206, 5.220
bylaws, 9.29. *See also* legal documents

ca. ("circa"), 7.53, 10.43
calendar designations. *See* dates
call letters, 10.25
callouts (illustrations and tables)
  cross-checking of, 2.29, 2.62–63, 3.16
  definition and format, 2.23, 2.27, 3.8
  in electronic file cleanup, 2.77
  placement, 3.8
calls for papers, 1.85, 1.93
can, *could*, and *may*, 5.143, 5.220
Canada
  courts, 14.306
  currency, 9.22
  First Peoples, 8.37
  legal documents: legal cases, 14.306; resources and reference works on, 14.281, 14.305; statutes, 14.307; unpublished government documents, 14.308
  numbers: *billion*, 5.220; decimal places, 9.20
  provinces and territories: abbreviations, 10.29; when to include in documentation, 14.136
Canadian Supreme Court, 14.306
capitalization
  of abbreviations, 2.21, 10.6, 10.52
  academic concerns, 8.28, 8.67, 8.84, 10.20–21
  of acronyms and initialisms, 10.6
  of Bible books and such, 8.102, 10.6, 10.46–51
  of brand names, 8.152
  of computer terms, 7.73–76
  consistency in text and illustrations, 2.63
  of cultural movements and styles, 8.59–60, 8.78
  in documentation, 8.166, 14.18, 14.95; author-date references, 15.6–9, 15.45, fig. 15.1; book titles and subtitles, 8.157, 8.162, 14.95, 14.97–98; classical references, 14.261; foreign-language article and journal titles, 14.193; journal article titles, 14.176; journal titles, 14.179; magazine article titles, 14.201; magazine departments, 14.202; newspaper headlines, 14.204; newspaper names, 14.211; news services, 14.212; *and other stories* and such, 14.100; specific vs. generic titles for manuscript collections, 14.234; website and blog titles, 14.244 (*see also under* titles of works in documentation)
  editor's note on, 1.44
  ellipsis points and, 13.51
  for emphasizing words, 7.48
  foreign languages, 11.5–9, 14.193; Arabic, 11.100; Azeri, 11.89; Chinese, 11.108; Danish, 11.22; Dutch, 11.24; French, 11.29–30; German, 7.52, 11.41–42; Hebrew, 11.114; Italian, 11.51; Japanese, 11.108; Latin, 11.59; Norwegian, 11.65; Polish, 11.67; Portuguese, 11.70; Russian, 11.119; Spanish, 11.77; Swedish, 11.86; Turkish, 11.89
  of generic term with two or more proper names, 8.52, 8.55
  of geographical terms: compass points and terms, 8.45–46; continents, countries, cities, oceans, and such, 5.67, 8.44, 8.52; popular names and epithets for, 8.47; real vs.

- capitalization (*continued*)
  - metaphorical names, 8.49; regions, 8.46, 8.53; urban areas, 8.48
  - in glossaries, 2.21
  - in illustration labels and keys, 3.20
  - in indexes: cross-references, 16.17, 16.20; main heading and subentries, 16.9–12, 16.17
  - of interjections and exclamations, 7.45
  - in lists, 2.21, 6.124–25
  - marking manuscript for, 2.94
  - marking proofs for, 2.128
  - of names, 8.1–2; businesses, 8.67–68; institutions, 8.67, 8.84; museums, institutions, and such, 8.67, 8.84; particles with, 8.5, 8.7–10; personal, 8.3–6; popes, 8.25; *reverend*, *honorable*, and such, 8.25, 8.31–32; unusual capitalization in, 8.68, 8.153; words derived from, 8.59–60
  - of nouns: common, 5.5; proper, 5.6
  - permissible changes to, 8.163, 13.7–8, 14.96
  - of political divisions, 8.50–51
  - questions within another sentence, 6.52
  - quotations: changes in, 13.13, 13.16; initial capital or lowercase letter, 13.14–15; in titles of works, 8.160
  - sparing use of ("down" style), 8.1, 8.46
  - of subheads, 1.54, 2.56, 8.156
  - in tables, 3.52, 3.57
  - technical abbreviations, 10.52
  - of trademarks, 8.152
  - URLs, DOIs, and such in text, 8.68, 14.11–12
  - of words for Platonic ideas (e.g., Truth), 8.93
  - *See also* capital letters; headline-style capitalization; lowercase letters; sentence-style capitalization
- capital letters
  - drop caps, 13.35, p. 894
  - full, 7.48; abbreviations for *avenue*, *street*, and such, 10.34; compass points in addresses, 10.35; and emphasis, 7.48; era abbreviations, 9.35, 9.63, 10.39; letters as shapes, 7.63; letters as words, plurals of, 7.14; letters standing for names, 7.62; musical elements, 7.67–68, 7.70; preferred to small caps, 9.35, 10.8, 10.24, 10.39, 10.42, 14.284; scholastic letter grades, 7.60
  - initial, decorative, 13.35
  - plurals of, 7.14, 7.60
  - small: emphasizing words, 7.48; full caps preferred to, 9.35, 10.8, 10.24, 10.39, 10.42, 14.284; glosses in ASL, 11.147–54; in indexes, 16.140, 16.145; in mathematical copy, 12.56; after ornamental text break, 1.56; proofreading and marking proofs, 2.110, 2.128
  - *See also* letters (alphabet)
- captions, 3.21–28
  - capitalization, punctuation, and spacing, 3.21–24, 3.29
  - for charts, 3.43
  - credit lines in: author as source of illustration, 3.30; material from agency, 3.35, 4.95–97; material in public domain, 3.34; material obtained free of charge, 3.33; material that requires permission, 3.31; material that was adapted, 3.36; material that was commissioned, 3.32, 4.69; placement at end, 3.29; source and permission, 3.28
  - definition, 3.7
  - electronic enhancements noted in, 3.26
  - examples of, fig. 3.1, figs. 3.3–5
  - formal titles of works in, 3.22
  - journal cover, inside, 1.78
  - locators (e.g., *above*, *left*) in, 3.24
  - manuscript and editorial concerns: cross-checking, 2.29; editing, 2.63; generic markup, 2.78; guidelines for authors, 2.3, 2.23; proofreading, 2.112; separate file for, 2.23, 3.18; working numbers, 2.25, 3.13
  - original dimensions noted in, 3.27
  - separating illustration number from, 3.23
  - shortened for lists of illustrations, 3.39
  - syntax of, 3.21
- carets, 2.91, 2.129
- cartoons, 8.194
- cascading style sheets (CSS), A.9, A.21, A.37, p. 894
- case, defined, p. 892

case binding, defined, p. 892
castoff, defined, p. 893
Cataloging-in-Publication (CIP) data, 1.19, 1.33, fig. 1.1, figs. 1.3–4
catalogs
  archival (UK), 14.309, 14.315
  astronomical, 8.138
  exhibitions, 8.195, 14.250
  foreign names, 14.71
  libraries, 8.195, 11.102, 14.139, 14.250
  musical, 8.191, 14.275
cc, 10.72
CD-ROMs
  documentation of, 14.166, 14.168
  ISBN for, 1.32
  subsidiary rights for, 4.60
CE, *BCE*, and such, 9.35, 9.63, 10.39
celestial bodies, 8.137–41, 10.64
centuries
  first vs. later decades of, 9.34
  numerical designations for, 8.70
  spelled out and lowercased, 9.33
  See also historical and cultural terminology
cf. ("compare"), 10.43, 14.37
chapter numbers, 1.48
  arabic numerals for, 8.178, 14.154
  chap. with, 14.157
  consecutive, across parts of book, 1.47
  generic markup of, 2.78
  in index locators, 16.111
  in notes, 14.160
  pagination and, 9.27
  proofreading of, 2.110
  in running heads for endnotes, 1.14, 14.42
chapters
  abbreviation of term, 10.43, 14.157
  appendixes at end of, 1.57
  conclusions as, 1.52
  cross-references to, in multiauthor volumes, 15.37
  decorative initials for first word, 13.35
  division into, 1.48
  documentation of, 14.18, 15.9; chapter endnotes, 14.38, 14.41, fig. 14.3; chapter in multiauthor book, 14.112; chapter in multivolume work, 14.125; chapter in single-author book, 14.111; chapter originally published elsewhere, 14.115, fig.
chapters (*continued*)
    1.4; several contributions to same book, 14.113
  endnotes for each, 14.38, 14.41, fig. 14.3
  epigraphs at opening of, 1.36
  multiple authors of, 1.49
  naming of, 1.46
  note referring to entire, 1.48, 2.20, 14.22
  numbering of, 1.47–48, 1.52, 8.178
  offprints of, 1.48
  openers of, 1.36, 1.45, 1.48, 13.35
  pagination of, 1.7, 1.45, 1.48
  publishing agreement for, 4.53, 4.59, fig. 4.1
  reference lists or bibliographies for each, 14.57, 15.10
  references to, 2.32, 8.178, 15.37
  running heads for, 1.11, 1.15
  in table of contents, 1.37, fig. 1.5
  unnumbered source notes for, 1.48, 3.31, 14.49
  as works made for hire, 4.53
  See also articles (journal); articles, documentation of; chapter numbers; chapter titles
chapter titles, 1.48
  editing, 2.55
  generic markup, 2.78
  manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.16
  note reference numbers and, 1.48, 2.20, 14.22
  proofreading, 2.110, 2.130
  in quotation marks, 8.161
  in table of contents, 1.37, fig. 1.5
character, defined, p. 893
character count, defined, p. 893
character encoding, defined, p. 893
character reference, defined, p. 893
characters, fictional, 5.123, 8.34, 8.36. *See also* dialogue; literary works
characters, special. *See* diacritical marks; special characters
charts and graphs
  as alternative to table, 3.47
  appropriate use and definition of, 3.40
  axes and curves in, 3.42, 3.49, fig. 3.8
  consistency: of style, 3.41; with text, 2.63
  credit line for commissioned, 3.32
  examples of, figs. 3.8–10

charts and graphs (*continued*)
  fair use of, 4.84
  genealogical and pedigree, 3.45, fig. 3.10
  indexing of, 16.116
  labels on, 3.43–44
  as line art, 3.4, 3.40
  preparation of electronic files, 3.42
  symbols or patterns used in, 3.25, figs. 3.8–9
  titles of, 3.43
  See also illustrations; tables
chemical terminology
  abbreviations, 10.64
  laws and theories, 8.147
  mass number, 8.149
  metric units, 8.151
  names and symbols, 8.148, 10.66
  resources on, 8.146, 10.66
Chinese language
  capitalization and italics, 11.108
  characters of, 11.110
  names: alphabetizing, 16.78; common, list of, 11.105; treatment, 8.15, 11.108
  titles of works, 11.109
  transliteration, 11.102–4
  See also Pinyin system; Wade-Giles system
chronological order
  in bibliographies and reference lists, 2.60, 14.67, 15.17
  for index subentries, 16.70
  for letters and diaries, 1.51
chronologies, 1.58, fig. 1.9
Church, church, 8.97, 8.100. *See also* religions and religious concerns
CIP (Cataloging-in-Publication) data, 1.19, 1.33, fig. 1.1, figs. 1.3–4
circa, 7.53, 10.43
circling
  editorial marking, 2.90–91, 2.121, 2.124–26
  infinity symbol, 1.34
  proofreader's marking, 2.118
citation. *See* documentation
citation management software, 1.83, 14.13
cities and towns
  administrative agencies and departments, 8.62
  judicial bodies, 8.63, 14.291
  laws and ordinances, 14.300, 14.312
cities and towns (*continued*)
  legislative bodies, 8.61
  names: in addresses, punctuation of, 6.46, 10.28, 10.30; alphabetizing, 16.90–93; capitalization, 5.67, 8.44, 8.52; English forms of foreign cities, 14.137; *Fort, Mount, Saint*, and such, 10.31, 11.29, 16.90, 16.93; as locations of manuscript collections, 14.238; in newspaper names, 14.210–11, 16.48; on title page, 1.18
  numbered divisions of, 9.47
  See also civil and civic concerns; governmental entities; place of publication
civil and civic concerns
  awards and honors, 8.30, 8.82
  committee minutes and such, 14.240
  holidays, 8.88
  public places and structures: buildings and monuments, 8.56; foreign names for, 8.58; rooms, offices, and such, 8.57; thoroughfares and such, 8.55
  titles and offices, 8.18, 8.21, 10.13–14
  See also cities and towns; governmental entities
class, socioeconomic, 8.40. *See also* peoples
classical works
  abbreviations in, 14.258–59, 14.264, 14.266
  capitalization of, 14.261
  documentation: abbreviations, 14.258; authors' names, 14.258–59; collections of inscriptions, 14.263; editions, 14.119, 14.260, 14.262, 14.265, 14.267; editors' names, 14.260, 14.263–65; electronic editions, 14.169; English poems and plays, 14.267–68; fragments of texts, 14.264; Greek and Latin references, 14.256–66; identifying numbers in, 14.257; medieval references, 14.266; modern editions of, 14.265; poems and plays, 14.260, 14.267–68; punctuation in, 14.259; reprint editions, 14.119; specific editions, 14.260, 14.262, 14.267; superscripts in, 14.262; text citations, 14.256; titles of, 14.257, 14.259, 14.261; translators' names, 14.260, 14.265–66

- classical works (*continued*)
  - introductions to, 1.46
  - medieval references, special characters in, 7.46, 11.142–43
  - Old and Middle English, 7.46, 11.142–43
  - resources on, 14.258
  - *See also* Greek language, including classical; Latin language
- clauses
  - adverbial, 6.25, 6.36, 6.55
  - dependent, 6.30–32
  - independent, 6.28–29, 6.54–57
  - as nouns, 5.25
  - parallel structure in, 5.212
  - personal pronoun as subject of, 5.42
  - punctuation of, 5.21, 6.22–23, 6.26, 6.28–32, 6.54–57
  - relative, 6.22
  - restrictive and nonrestrictive, 5.21, 6.22–23, 6.26
  - *See also* conjunctions; phrases
- clerical titles
  - indexing of, 16.39
  - terms of respect (e.g., Rev.), 8.25, 8.32, 10.18
  - *See also* religions and religious concerns
- climate, named events of, 8.76
- close-up mark, 2.122, fig. 2.6
- clothbound, defined, p. 893
- CMYK, defined, p. 893
- *Code of Federal Regulations*, 14.301
- codes
  - computer, 2.59–60, 2.78–79
  - currency, 9.22, 9.24
  - definition, p. 893
  - legal, 14.300–301
  - for typefaces, 12.64
  - type specifications, 2.71
  - zip, 10.30
  - *See also* bar codes; codes and coding; postal codes; Unicode standard
- codes and coding
  - in cleanup process, 2.36, 2.59–60, 2.77–79
  - list of, 2.74
  - in markup process, 2.55–56, 2.70–71, 2.78, 2.96, 6.102
  - mathematical example of, 12.67, figs. 12.1–3
- codes and coding (*continued*)
  - *See also* codes; markings, editorial; markup tags and languages; production and digital technology; XML (extensible markup language)
- coinages, 7.13, 8.59
- collected works
  - classical inscriptions as, 14.263
  - documentation of, 15.38–40
  - titles of separate works in, 8.176
  - *See also* compilations; derivative works; edited works; previously published materials
- collections. *See* manuscript collections; public documents; unpublished and informally published materials
- collective works
  - contributions to, as work made for hire, 4.10
  - copyright of, 4.8, fig. 1.4
  - definition, 4.8
  - publishing agreement for contributors to, 4.53, fig. 4.1
- colloquialisms, 7.29, 7.57, 7.59. *See also* figures of speech; maxims
- colons, 6.59–65
  - capitalization and, 6.61
  - common misuses of, 6.65
  - em dashes instead of, 6.82
  - marking manuscript for, 2.90
  - other punctuation with: ellipsis points, 13.52; parentheses, 6.96; quotation marks, 6.10, 6.63
  - spacing and, 2.9, 2.11, 6.60, 14.121, 14.125, 14.159, 14.186
  - uses: appropriate, 6.59; after *as follows* and other introductory phrases, 6.62; in biblical citations, 14.253–54; in double or multiple numeration, 1.55; in formal direct address, 6.64; in indexes, 16.19–20, 16.25, 16.95; introducing run-in lists, 6.123; with publication details, 6.64, 14.186; introducing quotations or speech, 6.61, 6.63, 13.17; in ratios, 6.60; between titles and subtitles, 1.18, 8.162, 14.97; between volume and page numbers, 14.121, 14.125, 14.159, 14.186
  - when to omit, 14.178
  - *See also* punctuation; semicolons

colophons (logos)
  on covers or jackets, 1.66–68
  definition, p. 893
  on title page, 1.18
colophons (publication details), defined, 1.64, p. 893
color
  continuous tone vs. halftone images, 3.3, 3.6, figs. 3.1–2, p. 894
  in editing paper-only manuscripts, 2.88
  in electronic journals, 1.100
  for ethnic groups, 8.39
  hyphenation guide on, 7.85
  illustrations in, 1.5, 2.34, 3.15
  for journal covers, 1.78
  for proofreading marks, 2.120
  of punctuation, in relation to surrounding text, 6.3
color separation, defined, p. 893
columns
  avoiding multiple, 2.21
  in indexes, 1.63, 16.24, 16.135, 16.138
  in vertical lists, 6.124
  See also magazines; newspapers; tables
command papers (UK), 14.314
commas, 6.16–53
  with abbreviations: academic and professional designations, 10.4, 10.16, 10.20–21; addresses, mailing, 6.46, 10.28, 10.30; *e.g.* and *i.e.*, 5.220; *etc.* and *et al.*, 6.20; *Inc.*, *Ltd.*, and such, 6.48; *Jr.*, *Sr.*, and such, 6.47
  with clauses: adverbial, 6.25, 6.55; dependent, 6.30–32; independent, 6.28–29; relative, 6.22; restrictive and nonrestrictive, 5.21, 6.22–23, 6.26
  in documentation: *and other stories* and such, 14.100; classical references, 14.259; magazine dates and page numbers, 14.199; *or* with double titles, 14.99; page and issue numbers, 14.186; titles of works, 6.17, 14.99, 14.101; titles of works with question marks or exclamation points, 14.178
  em dashes instead of, 6.82, 6.86
  marking manuscript for, 2.90
  marking proofs for, 2.129
  other punctuation with: apostrophes, 6.115; brackets, 6.53; ellipsis points, 13.52; exclamation points, 6.119; parentheses, 6.53, 6.96; question marks, 6.52, 6.119; quotation marks, 6.9, 6.50
  other uses: addresses, 6.46, 10.28, 10.30; adverbial phrases, 6.36; *and if*, *that if*, and such, 6.32; appositives, 5.21, 6.23; compound predicates, 6.29; conjunctions joining independent clauses, 6.28; coordinate adjectives, 5.90, 6.33–34; dates, 5.82, 6.17, 6.45; decimal places in non-US styles, 9.20; direct address, 6.38; editorial interpolations, 6.53; elision indicated by, 6.49; homonyms, 6.44; *however*, *therefore*, *indeed*, and such, 6.25; *including*, 6.27; indexes, 16.25, 16.94; interjections, 5.208, 6.37; introductory phrases, 6.35–36; main clause and, 6.31; maxims and proverbs, 6.51; *the more*, *the less*, and such, 6.42; "not" phrases, 6.40–41; numbers, 9.55, 9.62; pairs of commas, 6.17; parenthetical elements, 6.24–27, 6.31, 6.43; participial phrases, 6.35; place-names, 6.46; preceding main clause, 6.30; questions, 6.52; quotations, 6.50, 13.18; run-in list items separated by, 6.123; *such as*, 6.27; *that is*, *namely*, *for example*, and such, 6.43, 6.65; *which* vs. *that* and, 6.22
  pairs of, 6.17
  parentheses compared with, 6.92
  vs. semicolons, 6.19
  serial: argument for using, 6.18; *etc.* and *et al.* with, 6.20; omitted with ampersands, 6.21; semicolons instead of commas, 6.19
  when to omit, 6.119, 14.105
  See also punctuation
commercial terms and abbreviations, 10.72
common expressions. *See* figures of speech; maxims
common-law copyright, 4.2, 4.15, 4.19, 4.22, 4.25
communications. *See* interviews and discussions; personal communications

comp, defined, p. 893
companies. *See* business and commerce; organizations
comparison/degrees, 5.201. *See also* adjectives: degrees; adverbs: degrees
compass points and directions
  abbreviations, 10.36
  in addresses and geographical terms, 10.35–36
  capitalization, 8.45–46
  hyphenation guide on, 7.85
  latitude and longitude, 10.37
compilations, 2.40
  illustrations in, 2.44
  notes in, 2.42
  permissible changes to, 2.41, 2.58, 13.7–8
  permissions for, 4.101
  source notes for, 2.43
  as work made for hire, 4.10
  See also collected works; compilers; derivative works; edited works; previously published materials
compiled by, when to abbreviate or spell out, 10.43, 14.87–88, 15.13, 15.35
compilers
  abbreviation of term in documentation, 10.43, 14.87–88, 15.18, 15.35
  in addition to author, 14.88
  biographical notes on, 1.20
  copyright and, 4.8
  notes on changes, 2.41
  permissions as responsibility of, 4.101
  in place of author, 14.87, 15.35
  3-em dash for, 14.64–65
  when to abbreviate or spell out term, 10.43, 14.87–88, 15.18, 15.35
  See also compilations; manuscript preparation guidelines for authors
compositors and composition. *See* design and production; production and digital technology; typesetters and typesetting; typographic considerations
compounds
  adjectives as, 6.80
  adverbs as, 5.158, 7.82
  alphabetizing of, 16.59–60, 16.72, 16.84
  in ASL, 11.148
  bias-free language and, 5.228
  capitalization in titles of works, 8.159
  closed compounds, trend toward, 7.79
compounds (*continued*)
  definitions of, 7.78
  en dashes in, 6.80
  ethnic group names, 8.38
  foreign languages: French, 11.29; German, 11.46–47; Greek, 11.141; Latin, 11.63; Spanish, 11.84
  hyphenation: appropriate use, 7.77, 7.79; en dashes, when to use, 6.80; guide for, 7.85; multiple hyphens, 7.83; omission of part of expression, 7.84; personal names, 8.6; readability issues, 7.80; and word breaks, 2.109
  -*ly* and, 7.82
  modifiers before or after noun, 7.81
  names, proper, 16.72
  omission of second part of, 7.84
  parallel structure and, 5.212
  person pronouns (-*self* forms), 5.48–49
  plurals of, 7.7
  possessives of, 7.23
  pronouns, relative, 5.62
  readability of, 7.80
  resources on, 7.1
  types of, 7.78
  word division and, 2.109, 7.31–43, 7.80, 11.46–47
  See also hyphens and hyphenation; prefixes; suffixes; word division
computer software
  alternative licensing arrangements for, 4.57
  conversion errors, 2.77, 2.110
  digital rights management (DRM) and, A.40
  publisher's manuscript preparation guidelines and, 2.7
  specific types: for citations, 1.83, 14.13; for artwork, 3.4, 3.15, A.32; for indexing, 16.5, 16.57, 16.104, 16.123; for mathematical copy, 12.2, 12.9, A.13, A.34, table 12.1; noted for electronic files, 2.4, 14.225; for typesetting and desktop publishing, A.23
  See also computer terminology; databases; production and digital technology; redlining (tracking and showing changes); Unicode standard; word processing

computer terminology, 7.72–76
  abbreviations for, 10.52
  application-specific variations in, 7.72
  binary systems, 9.11
  capitalization, 7.73–76
  font in, 7.75
  keyboard combinations and shortcuts, 7.74
  macros (macroinstructions), 2.76, p. 898
computer-to-plate (CTP) technology, defined, p. 893
concert reviews, 14.214, 14.216
conclusions, format of, 1.52
concordance, defined, 16.5
conferences
  announcements of, 1.85, 1.93
  names of, 8.69
  papers presented at, 14.226
  places of, 14.226–28
  poster papers at, 14.227
  See also proceedings of conferences and symposia; speeches; unpublished and informally published materials; working papers
conflicts of interest, 1.88
Congress, *congressman*, 8.21
Congressional Globe, 14.299
Congressional Record, 14.298
conjunctions, 5.192–207
  adverbs as, 5.202
  as and *as if* as, 5.181
  beginning a sentence with, 5.206–7
  compound predicates joined by, 6.29
  definition, 5.192
  however, beginning a sentence with, 5.207
  independent clauses and, 6.28, 6.57
  in index subentries, 16.68
  as interjections, 5.210
  prepositions compared with, 5.180
  punctuation with, 6.18–19, 6.28–29, 6.32, 6.57
  quotations in text and, 6.50
  relative pronouns as, 5.203
  types: adversative (contrasting), 5.197; coordinating, 5.194; copulative (additive), 5.196; correlative, 5.195, 5.214; disguised, 5.205; disjunctive (separative), 5.198; expletive, 5.204; final (illative), 5.199; simple vs.
conjunctions (*continued*)
    compound, 5.193; subordinating, 5.200–201
  in vertical lists, 6.125
  See also *and*; *but*; *or*
constitutions and amendments, 8.79, 9.29, 14.292
contact proof, defined, p. 893
continents, 5.67, 8.44, 8.52
continued lines, 3.85, 16.139, fig. 3.25
continuous tone, defined, p. 894
contractions
  apostrophes in, 7.29
  definition and use, 5.102–3, 10.2
  non-US style, 10.4
  possessives vs., 5.50
contracts, private, 14.231
contracts, publication. *See* publishing agreement
contributors
  biographical notes, 1.49, 1.62, 1.94, 14.50, fig. 1.10
  chapters of, as works made for hire, 4.53
  cross-checking names of, 2.29
  information for, 1.84
  journal submission by, 1.78, 1.82, 1.84, 2.1, 2.3, 2.33
  lists of: biographical notes vs., 14.50; format and placement of, 1.49, 1.62, 1.94, fig. 1.10; volume editor's responsibility for, 2.38
  publishing agreement for, 2.39, 4.53, 4.55–57, fig. 4.1
  See also authors' names; manuscript preparation guidelines for authors
conversation. *See* dialogue; direct address; speech
copy, types of, 2.107
copyediting. *See* manuscript editing; manuscript editors
copyright, 4.2–49
  accuracy and candor in process, 4.48
  alternatives to, 4.57
  assignment or licensing of, 4.33–37
  authorship varieties: collective works, 4.8; individual and joint authors, 4.7, 4.12; "life plus seventy" rule, 4.22, 4.24–25; original owner, 1.22, 4.6, 4.11, 4.41; rights

copyright (*continued*)
  of, 4.13–18; varieties of, 4.7–12; works made for hire, 4.9–12, 4.23
  benefits of registering, 4.49
  changes in, 1.24
  deposit requirements, 4.46
  digital rights management and, A.40
  dual system of, 4.19
  duration: jointly authored works, 4.22; lengthened in 1978, 4.20; for works created after 1977, 4.22–24; for works created before 1978, 4.19, 4.25–29
  extensive paraphrasing under, 4.82
  of foreign works, 4.28–29, 4.33
  law relevant to, 4.2, 4.10, 4.19, 4.25
  material covered by, 4.3, 4.5
  for new editions, 4.27
  of online materials, 4.2, 14.9
  ownership of, 1.22, 4.6, 4.7–18, 4.30–31, 4.41
  preregistration, 4.49
  of previously published materials, 2.43
  of public-domain works, 4.21
  publisher's responsibilities for, 4.31
  "reasonable effort" to correct mistakes, 4.45
  registration of, 4.4, 4.47
  renewal of, 1.24, 4.19, 4.26, 4.30–32, 4.40, 14.150
  subsidiary rights: author's electronic use of own works, 4.62; author's retention of, 4.18; basic rights vs., 4.17; categories of, 4.60; economic considerations, 4.61–62, 4.65; electronic-rights licensing, 4.61; Public Access Policy and, 4.64; university licenses, 4.63 (*see also* subsidiary rights)
  symbol for, 1.22, 4.40, 10.44
  termination of transfers under, 4.37
  works ineligible for, 4.11
  See also copyright notice; copyright page, contents of; credits and credit lines; fair-use doctrine; intellectual property rights; licenses for copyrighted works; permissions; publishing agreement
Copyright Act (and amendments), 1.19, 4.2, 4.20, 4.88–90
Copyright Clearance Center (CCC), 1.74, 1.97, 4.91
copyright lines, journals
  components of, 1.97
  for individual articles, 1.74, 1.97
  ISSN in, 1.97
  placement of, 1.78, 1.88
copyright management information, 4.15
copyright notice
  components, 1.22, 4.40–45, fig. 1.2
  different regimes of, 4.2, 4.39
  mistakes in, 4.45
  necessity for, 4.26
  in notes, unnumbered, 3.31, 14.49
  old rules, removed, 4.38
  placement of, 1.19, 4.42, figs. 1.1–4
  types of material: derivative works, 4.44; electronic publications, 1.97; government-produced works, 4.43; journals, 1.74, 1.78, 1.88, 1.97, 4.42; photocopied material, 4.89–90
copyright page, contents of
  acknowledgments, 1.19, 1.30–31
  author's previous publications, 1.17
  biographical notes, 1.20
  changes and renewals, 1.24
  CIP data, 1.19, 1.33, fig. 1.1, figs. 1.3–4
  copyright dates of previous editions, 1.23
  copyright notice, 1.22, 4.40
  country of printing, 1.19, 1.27
  credits, 1.30, 1.70, 3.29, 4.71
  editions, 1.23, 1.25–26, 14.118
  examples, figs. 1.1–4
  grant information, 1.31, 1.40
  impression, 1.23–25, 1.28
  ISBN, 1.32
  pagination omitted from, 1.6
  paper durability statement, 1.19, 1.34
  permissions, 1.30, 4.71
  proofreading of, 2.130
  publication date, 1.21–22, 1.25, 14.149
  publisher's address, 1.19, 1.21
  publishing history, 1.25
  running heads omitted from, 1.10
  translation information, 1.29, fig. 1.3
  See also copyright notice
corporations. *See* business and commerce; organizations
Council of Science Editors (CSE), 14.3

counties, judicial bodies of, 8.63
countries
  adjectives from names, 5.67, 8.44
  regions of, 8.46, 8.53
  when to abbreviate names, 10.32–33
  when to include in documentation, 14.136
  See also cities and towns; governmental entities; states (US); *and specific countries*
courses of study, 8.85
courtesy, in credit lines, 3.32–33, 3.36, 4.98
courts
  Canadian, 14.306
  international, 14.316
  names and terms, treatment in text, 8.63
  UK courts, 14.310
  US federal, 14.290
  US state and local, 14.291
  US Supreme Court, 14.289
  See also legal cases; legal-style citations; public documents
cover, defined, p. 894
covers of journals and paperback books
  artwork: credit lines, 1.70, 1.78; fair use of, 4.83; permissions, 4.94–97
  author's previous publications, 1.17
  biographical information, 1.20
  colophons (logos), 1.66–68
  country of printing, 1.27
  credit lines, 1.70, 1.78
  endpapers, 1.68
  gatefolds or French flaps, 1.67
  ISBNs and bar codes, 1.32, 1.66, 1.71, 1.78, fig. 1.13
  journal covers and spine, description of, 1.78, 1.108
  promotional copy (marketing) on, 1.67–68
  proofreading of, 2.105–6, 2.130
  See also hardcover books: jackets
Creative Commons, 4.57
credits and credit lines
  for author as source, 3.30
  fair-use doctrine and, 4.77, 4.85
  format of, 4.98
  importance of, 4.69, 4.71
  placement of, 1.30, 3.29, 4.98, 14.49; copyright page, 1.30; cover or jacket artwork, 1.70, 1.78
credits and credit lines (*continued*)
  proofreading of, 2.105
  source and permissions, 3.28, 4.98
  types of material: adapted material, 3.36; agency material, 3.35, 4.95–97; commissioned material, 3.32, 4.69; cover or jacket artwork, 1.70, 1.78; illustrations, 3.28–36; obtained free of charge, 3.33; public-domain work, 3.34; translations of quoted materials, 13.76; works that require permission, 3.31
  See also permissions; source lines and notes
criminal cases. *See* legal cases
Croatian language, 11.18–19
crop, defined, p. 894
CrossRef (database), 1.117, 14.6, A.39
cross-references, in bibliographies and reference lists
  alternative real names, 14.86
  authors preferring initials, 14.73
  pseudonyms, 14.84
  several chapters from same book, 15.37
cross-references, in indexes
  accuracy, 16.130
  alphabetizing of, 16.17, 16.20
  and used with generic, 16.23
  appropriate use of, 16.15, 16.20, 16.76, 16.84, 16.126
  blind, 16.16
  capitalization of, 16.17, 16.20
  checking and editing, 16.130, 16.133
  double posting vs., 16.16
  generic, 16.23
  in indented style, 16.26, 16.28
  italics in, 16.15, 16.20, 16.22–23
  for names, 16.36, 16.38, 16.42, 16.46, 16.71, 16.76, 16.78, 16.84, 16.89
  for organization and business names, 16.88–89
  placement and punctuation of, 16.17–20, 16.26, 16.95–98
  in run-in style, 16.25
  "*see also*" and "*see also under*," 16.20–23, 16.26
  "*see*" and "*see under*," 16.16–19, 16.26
  shortened, 16.21
  single vs. multiple indexes and, 16.6
  subentries and, 16.10, 16.18–20

cross-references, in text
  cf. and *see*, 14.37
  checking and editing, 2.29, 2.32, 2.57
  mathematical copy, 12.24–25
  mathematical definitions, theorems, and such, 12.56
  notes and citations, 14.23, 14.26
  proofreading, 2.130
  specific page numbers, 2.32, 2.57
  web-based publications, 1.113–14
CSS (cascading style sheets), A.9, A.21, A.37, p. 894
cultural movements and styles
  descriptive designations, 8.71
  period names, 8.72–73
  treatment in text, 8.59–60, 8.78
  See also historical and cultural terminology
curly braces in mathematical expressions, 6.102, 12.26, 12.28. *See also* brackets
currency
  British and other non-US, 9.23–24
  dates with, 9.26
  dollar symbol in non-US, 9.22
  K abbreviation in, 9.25
  large amounts of, 9.25
  noun phrases for, 5.25
  resources on, 9.22
  words vs. symbols and numerals for, 9.21
  See also bar codes
curves
  in graphs, 3.42, 3.49, fig. 3.8
  letters describing (e.g., S curve), 7.63
cyan, defined, p. 894
Cyrillic alphabet
  capitalization and, 11.119
  character sets, 11.92, table 11.3
  languages using, 11.18, 11.75
  titles of works, 11.120
  transliteration, 11.118, table 11.3
  word division and, 11.124–28
  See also Russian language
Czech language, 11.20–21

daggers and double daggers (symbols), 3.77
dangling terms
  gerunds, 5.113
  infinitives, 5.107
  participles, 5.112
Danish language, 11.22–23
DAs (designer's alterations), 2.131, p. 894
dashes
  length of, compared, 6.75
  marking manuscript for, 2.93
  parentheses compared with, 6.92
  preceding epigraph source, 1.36, 13.34
  typing, in manuscript preparation, 2.13
  See also em dashes; en dashes; hyphens and hyphenation; punctuation; 3-em dashes; 2-em dashes
databases
  in documentation: of cases and court decisions, 14.288; of legal and public documents, 14.282, 14.312; library and commercial databases, 14.271; scientific databases, 14.272
  online: copyright issues and, 4.46, 4.55–56, 4.60; electronic-rights licensing and, 4.61; in place of index, 1.104; search for copyright owner via, 4.75; web-based project documented in, 2.136; web-based works cross-referenced via, 1.117
dates
  abbreviations: days of the week, 10.41; months, 10.40; years, 9.31, 9.63
  adjectival use of, 5.82
  all-numeral style, 6.45, 6.106, 9.36–37
  alphabetizing of, 16.65
  avoiding ambiguity in, 6.106, 9.36
  centuries, 8.70, 9.33–34
  currency with, 9.26
  days of the week, 8.87, 10.41
  decades, 9.34
  in documentation: access dates, 14.7, 14.185, 14.248, 14.282, 15.51; of committee minutes, memoranda, and such, 8.183, 14.240–41; of DVDs and videocassettes, 14.279; of journals, 14.180–81; of magazines, 14.199; of manuscript collections, 14.234; of newspapers, 14.203, 14.205–9; of patents, 14.230; of periodicals, 14.171; of sound recordings, 14.276–77; of unpublished materials, 14.225–28, 14.304, 14.308; of websites and blogs, 14.244–46; years, in reference lists, 15.12
  fiscal year (FY), 6.105, 9.63
  in foreword, 1.39
  holidays, 8.88

dates (*continued*)
  incomplete, 6.79
  months, 8.87, 9.32, 10.40, 14.80
  numbers for: decades, 9.34; eras, 9.35, 9.63; ISO all-numeral style, 9.37; month and day, 9.32; month-day-year and other forms, 6.45, 6.106, 9.36–37; year abbreviated, 9.31; year alone, 9.30
  periods: centuries, 8.70, 9.33–34; cultural, 8.73; decades, 9.34; descriptive designations, 8.71; eras, 9.35, 9.63, 10.39; geological, 8.134; numerical designations for, 8.70; traditional names for, 8.72
  in preface, 1.40
  punctuation: commas, 5.82, 6.17, 6.45, 14.199; en dashes, 6.78–79; hyphens, 9.37; slashes, 6.105–6
  in titles of works, 14.101
  uncertain, 6.66
  unknown date of death, 6.79
  work period known (fl.), 10.43
  years: abbreviated (e.g., '76), 9.31; inclusive range of, 9.58, 9.63; incomplete range of, 6.79; placement in reference lists, 15.12; plurals of, 7.14; sentence beginning with, 9.5; slash with two-year spans, 6.105; uncertain, 6.66; unknown date of death, 6.79; words vs. numerals for, 9.30; work period known (fl.), 10.43
  See also publication date; time
days of the week, 8.87, 10.41. *See also* dates
dead (foul) copy or proofs, 2.102, 2.107
deadlines
  indexing, 16.4, 16.101
  proofreading, 2.99
  publication schedule, 2.2, A.2, figs. 2.1–2
Deaf, *deaf*, 8.42
debates, documentation of
  governmental bodies, 8.61, 8.64
  UK parliamentary, 14.313
  US congressional, 14.298–99
decades, 9.34
decimal points
  in celestial coordinates, 10.64
  dex (*decimal exponent*), 9.12
  in double and multiple numeration, 1.55

decimal points (*continued*)
  with millions, billions, and so forth, 9.8, 9.25
  in monetary amounts, 9.21, 9.23–26
  number of places in, non-US style, 9.20
  in tables, alignment of, 3.70, 3.84, fig. 3.13, figs. 3.15–16, fig. 3.20
  in twenty-four-hour system, 9.40–41
  use of zero and, 9.19
  See also fractions
dedications
  format and placement of, 1.6, 1.35
  omitted in indexing, 16.109
  running heads omitted from page, 1.10
definite article. *See* articles (definite and indefinite)
definitions
  highlighted in index, 16.143
  mathematical, 12.56
  numbering of, 12.25
  punctuation of, 7.50
  See also dictionaries; glossaries
degrees (academic). *See* academic concerns: degrees and affiliations
degrees (measurement), abbreviations for, 10.52–53, 10.55. *See also* International System of Units (Système international d'unités, SI); measurement, US; metric system
deities, 8.90–91, 8.94. *See also* religions and religious concerns; religious works
deletions
  marking manuscript for, 2.91–92, 2.121, fig. 2.6
  stetting or reversal of, 2.127
departments
  administrative type, 8.62
  capitalization, 14.202
  in magazines, 8.175, 14.202
  See also academic concerns: institutions and departments
derivative works
  copyright issues and, 4.30, 4.44
  electronic works created with addition of hyperlinks, video data, and such, 4.60
  license to make, 4.33
  material copyrightable in, 4.5
  public-domain work in, 4.21
  publishing options for, A.39–40
  relicensing of, 4.30

derivative works (*continued*)
  rights of copyright owner and, 4.14
  See also collected works; compilations; edited works; previously published materials
descender, defined, p. 894
design and production
  em spaces, en spaces, and such, A.22
  of journals, 1.78, 1.108, 1.110
  length determinations, A.18
  manuscript preparation: checklist, 2.74; markup, 2.55–56, 2.70–71, 2.78, 2.96, 6.102; pagination, 2.72; running heads, 2.73; type specifications, 2.71
  mapping markup to, A.16
  picas, points, and pixels, A.21, pp. 899, 900
  printed works, specifications, 1.64, A.19, fig. A.4
  style sheets, A.9, A.17, fig. A.3
  terminology in, A.3
  of web-based publications, specifications, 1.112, 2.135, A.20
  See also illustrations; print technologies; production and digital technology; typesetters and typesetting; typographic considerations
designer's alterations (DAs), 2.131, p. 894
developmental editing, 2.45
dex (*decimal exponent*), 9.12
diacritical marks
  alphabetizing and, 16.29, 16.67
  author's list of, 2.3, 11.12, 12.13
  in foreign languages, 11.2, 11.12, tables 11.1–5 (*see also specific languages*)
  manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.3, 2.15, 11.12, 12.13
  in mathematical expressions, 12.10, 12.13
  proofreading, 2.110, 2.129
  software and fonts for, 2.15
  transliterations, specialized vs. general contexts, 11.94
  XML character references for, A.15
  See also diphthongs; ligatures; symbols, specific; Unicode standard
diaeresis (Greek), 11.130, 11.133
diagrams
  genealogical, 3.45
  text references and callouts for, 2.27
diagrams (*continued*)
  wording of, 2.63
  See also charts and graphs; illustrations
dialect, 5.23, 5.218, 10.43
dialogue
  alternatives to quotation marks in, 13.40
  dialect in, 5.218
  direct discourse, 13.37, 13.42
  in drama, 13.44–45
  fair use and, 4.80
  faltering or interrupted, 6.16, 6.84, 13.39, 13.48
  in field notes, 13.47
  flush-and-hang style in, 13.44–45
  in foreign-language materials: French, 11.34–35; Italian, 11.52; Russian, 11.121; Spanish, 11.78–81
  indirect discourse, 13.43
  interjections in, 5.208
  in interviews and discussions, 13.46
  numerals in, 13.42
  paragraphing of, 13.30–33
  permissible changes to, 13.8
  punctuation of: colon preceding, 6.61, 6.63; ellipsis and suspension points, 13.39, 13.51–56; em dashes, 6.88, 13.39; quotation marks, 13.30–33, 13.37–43
  single-word speech, 13.38
  titles and offices of people in, 8.19
  unspoken discourse, 13.41
  See also direct address; quotations; speech
diaries, chronological order of, 1.51. *See also* letters (correspondence); manuscript collections
dictionaries
  abbreviations in, 10.1, 10.32
  as alphabetizing guides, 16.71
  alphabetizing letter-by-letter in, 16.58
  for alphabet tables, 11.96, 11.111
  biographical, 7.38, 8.3, 16.71, 16.84
  contractions in, 7.29
  documentation of, 14.247–48
  for forms of address, 8.32
  geographical, 7.38, 8.43
  music, 7.66, 8.188
  noun coinages, plurals of, 7.13
  online versions, 1.111, 1.113, 1.114, 7.5, 7.66

dictionaries (*continued*)
  organizing principle of, 1.116
  for plant and animal names, 8.118, 8.127
  plural forms in, 7.5–9, 7.13
  problematic words and, 5.220
  recommended, 2.51, 2.109, 5.220, 7.1–2
  running heads in, 1.12
  supplements to, 7.4
  for technical abbreviations, 10.52
  word division and, 7.31
  See also encyclopedias; reference works
die copy, 2.105
Digital Library Federation, 1.107
Digital Object Identifiers. *See* DOIs (Digital Object Identifiers)
digital printing, defined, A.48, p. 894
digital proofs, defined, p. 894
digital rights management (DRM), A.40, p. 894
digital technology. *See* production and digital technology
diphthongs
  capitalization, 11.24
  foreign languages: Dutch, 11.24; French, 11.36; German, 11.45; Greek, 11.138; Italian, 11.55; Latin, 11.60; Russian, 11.128; Spanish, 11.82
  never divided, 7.34, 11.36, 11.45, 11.82, 11.138
Dirac bracket notation, 12.55
direct address
  numerals in, 13.42
  punctuation: colons, 6.64; commas, 6.38; quotation marks, 13.37–39
  titles and offices of people in, 8.19, 10.17
  See also dialogue; quotations; speech
directions. *See* compass points and directions
direct quotations. *See* block quotations; direct address; quotations; run-in quotations
disciplines and subjects
  capitalization for course names, 8.85
  as descriptive titles for persons, 8.29
  spellings peculiar to, 7.2
  treatment of names, 8.84–85
  See also academic concerns; scholarly works, generally
discographies, 14.275, fig. 14.12
discussions. *See* dialogue; direct address; interviews and discussions; personal communications; speech; transcriptions
diseases, infections, procedures, and such, 8.143–44
display
  pages, 1.6, 1.10–11, 1.15
  type and punctuation, 6.14, p. 894
dissertations and theses
  abstracts of, 14.197; documentation of, 14.224; lectures and papers treated as, 14.226; microform editions, 14.120; URLs, 14.224; working papers treated as, 14.228
  titles of, in text, 8.184
distance, abbreviations for, 10.52. *See also* measurement, US; metric system; physical quantities
distribution
  contract concerning, 4.50
  copyright owner's right of, 4.13
  documentation of, 14.148
  license for, 4.33
  subsidiary rights to, 4.60
ditto marks, 3.60, 10.43
division of words. *See* word division
divisions of books. *See* books: divisions of
documentation
  basic elements, 14.69
  basic systems, 14.2–3
  books as model for other materials, 14.68
  editing of, 2.60–61
  flexibility and consistency, 2.61, 14.70
  purpose of, 14.1
  remedies for excessive: abbreviations for frequently cited works, 14.54–55, fig. 14.7; avoiding overlong notes, 14.51; combining notes, 14.52; text citations, 14.53
  resources on, 14.3
  shortened citations (*see* shortened citations)
  source citation software, 1.83, 14.13
  unusual cases in, 14.89
  See also author-date reference system; bibliographies; credits and credit lines; notes; notes and bibliography system; reference lists; source lines and notes; *and specific items to document* (e.g., books; newspapers)

document comparison software, 2.82, 2.85
document type definitions (DTDs), A.8–9, A.27, p. 894. *See also* codes and coding; markup tags and languages; tags; XML (extensible markup language)
DOIs (Digital Object Identifiers), 1.74, 14.4, 14.6, 14.10, 15.4, p. 894
  in documentation: of books, 14.167; of dictionary and encyclopedia entries, 14.248; of journal articles, 14.18, 14.184–85, 15.9
  International DOI Foundation, 14.6
  for journal articles, 1.79, 1.97
  as metadata, A.10
  treatment in text, 14.11–12; when to capitalize, 14.18
  See also URLs (uniform resource locators)
dollars. *See* currency
double posting, 16.16 (*see also* cross-references, in indexes)
"down" style (capitalization), 8.1, 8.46
drama
  divisions of, 8.182
  documentation of: classical works, 14.260, 14.267–68; frequently cited works, 13.65, 14.54; reviews, 14.214, 14.216; short forms for, 14.268
  ellipsis points in, 13.55
  quotation of, 13.44–45, 13.55
  titles of, 8.181
  See also classical works; dialogue; speech
drawings. *See* artwork; charts and graphs; illustrations; line art
DRM (digital rights management), A.40, p. 894
drop caps, 13.35, p. 894
drop folios, 1.5, 1.6, 1.7, 1.48
drug names, 8.145
DTDs. *See* document type definitions (DTDs)
dust jackets, 1.69, p. 894. *See also* covers of journals and paperback books; hardcover books: jackets
Dutch language, 8.10, 11.24–25
DVDs, documentation of, 14.279. *See also* audiovisual materials
dynasties, 9.46, 11.105
each, 5.32, 5.64, 5.220
earth
  continents and oceans, 5.67, 8.44, 8.52
  when to capitalize, 8.139
  See also compass points and directions; geographical terminology
EAs (editor's alterations), 2.131–32, p. 894
East, *eastern*, 8.45–46
e-books. *See* books, electronic; electronic publications
economic terminology and periods
  financial, abbreviations of, 10.72
  organizations, alliances, and such, 8.65, 8.69
  unofficial groups, 8.40–41, 8.66
  See also business and commerce; institutions; organizations
edited by
  on title page, 1.18
  when to abbreviate or spell out, 14.15–16, 14.88, 14.127, 15.6, 15.15
edited works, 4.53, fig. 4.1. *See also* collected works; compilations; derivative works; editors; multiauthor volumes
editing, types of, 1.109, 2.45–48. *See also* manuscript editing
editions
  abbreviation of term, 14.15–16, 14.118, 15.6, 15.15
  copyright issues, 1.25, 4.5, 4.27
  on copyright page, 1.19, 1.23, 1.25, fig. 1.2
  definition and preferences concerning, 1.26, p. 895
  documentation of: in classical references, 14.260, 14.262, 14.267; of copublications, 14.147; of dictionaries and encyclopedias, 14.247; of electronic books, 14.166–69; folio, page citation for, 14.162, 14.236; microform, 14.120; of newspapers, 14.203; other than first, 14.118; publication date, 14.149; reprint and modern, 14.119; reprint and modern, more than one date, 15.38
  facsimile, 1.46
  impression compared with, 1.23, 1.26
  number of, 1.18, 1.67
  preface for new, 1.40

editions (*continued*)
  publishing agreement on subsequent, 4.51
  styling of titles, 8.174
editorial board, list of, 1.78, 1.81
editorial interpolations and additions, 6.53, 6.66, 6.73, 6.97
editorials, 1.96. *See also* letters to the editor
editorial style of journal, 1.109, 2.61
editorial *we*, 5.45
editors
  abbreviation of term, 10.43, 14.15–16, 14.64–65, 14.87–88, 15.6, 15.15
  anthology permissions and, 4.101
  biographical notes on, 1.20
  collective works and copyright ownership of, 4.8
  interpolations, clarifications, and additions of, 6.97, 13.57–61
  of journals, 1.78, 1.83, 1.85, 1.96
  manuscript preparation guidelines for, 2.38–39
  notes of, 1.44, 1.88, 14.46
  preface by, 1.40
  publishing agreement and, 4.53, 4.58
  web-based publications and, 1.112
  See also authors; editors' names; manuscript editors; manuscript preparation guidelines for authors; multiauthor volumes
editor's alterations (EAs), 2.131–32, p. 894
editors' names
  on covers or jackets, 1.66, 1.67, 1.68
  in documentation, 14.18, 15.9; abbreviation of term, 14.15–16, 14.64–65, 14.87–88, 15.6, 15.15, 15.18; in addition to author, 14.88; author vs., 14.90; of book reviews, 14.215; of classical references, 14.260, 14.263–65; of journal supplements, 14.188; of multivolume works, 14.122–23, 14.126–27; omission of *editor* in text citations, 15.7; in place of author, 14.87, 15.35; of series of volumes, 14.128–29; of special issues of journals, 14.187; text citations, 15.35
  form of, 1.18
  in multiauthor volumes, 1.62
  proofreading of, 2.130

editors' names (*continued*)
  shortened citation of, 14.25–27
  See also authors' names
educational use of materials
  author's own work in electronic format, 4.62
  copyright issues, 4.60
  customized course packs, 4.90
  fair-use doctrine, 4.88–91
e.g.
  i.e. compared with, 5.220
  meaning of, 10.43
  punctuation with, 6.43
  roman type for, 10.7
either–or, 5.32–34, 5.195, 5.214
electronic files
  archival practices for, 1.107
  backups of, 2.37, 2.75, 2.77, 2.86
  cleaning up, 2.36, 2.50, 2.60, 2.76–77
  conversion of, A.28–29
  as copyrightable, 4.3
  creating separate vs. single, 2.33
  directory considerations, 2.34
  document comparison software, 2.82, 2.85
  edited manuscript sent as, 2.68
  illustrations and tables, preparation of: artwork, prints vs. scans, 2.24; digital files, 3.15, A.32; identified for publisher, 3.16; notes and source notes, 2.28; numbering of, 2.25–26; preparation of charts, 3.42; preparation of tables, 3.46; separate files for each component, 2.23, 2.33, 3.16; submission to publisher, 3.3–4, 3.15; text references and callouts, 2.27; in XML workflow, A.24, fig. A.5
  indexer's use of, 16.102, 16.105
  index submitted as, 16.131
  for mathematical copy, 12.2
  MP3 audio files, 10.52, 14.198, 14.221
  naming of, 2.34, 2.75
  numbering pages in, 2.35
  password-protection of, 2.84
  prepress proofs generated from, 2.104, A.43
  slashes in names and paths, 6.110
  terminology for, 7.76, 14.225
  version control, 2.5, 2.84
  See also keyboarding; manuscript

electronic files (*continued*)
    editing; PDF (portable document format) files; redlining (tracking and showing changes); word processing
electronic mailing lists, 14.223. *See also* e-mail; URLs (uniform resource locators)
electronic publications, 1.2
  authority and permanence of, 14.9
  copyright: authors' use of own, 4.62; deposit requirements, 4.46; new editions, 1.26; relevant law, 4.2, 4.10; right of public display, 4.13; rights, 4.33; rights licensing, in publishing agreement, 4.61; subsidiary rights, 4.60; transfers of rights, 4.55
  documentation of, 15.4; access dates, 14.7, 14.185, 14.248; CD-ROMs and fixed media, 14.166, 14.168; consulted online, 14.167; downloaded from library or bookseller, 14.166; editions of older works, 14.169; examples of, 14.18, 15.9; identifiers for, 14.4–6, 14.11–12, 14.170–71; "last modified" and other revision dates, 14.8; page numbers and other locators, 14.17; "print" elements in, 1.116; source citation software and, 1.83, 14.13; versions in other media, 14.10
  ISBNs for, 1.32
  periodicals as, 14.170–71
  production process considerations, A.4
  proofing and testing of, 2.133–36
  submission requirements for, 2.4
  text and other components: embedded indexes, 1.117, 16.7, 16.102, A.7; illustrations, 1.100, 3.8, 3.37, A.32; mathematical expressions, A.34; notes, 14.14; running heads, 1.11; tables, 1.99, 3.47, 3.74, A.33
  titles of, 8.186–87
  unique identifiers for (URLs and DOIs), 1.74, 14.18, 14.184, 14.198, 15.9
  See also articles, electronic; books, electronic; DOIs (Digital Object Identifiers); hyperlinks; journals, electronic; online media; URLs (uniform resource locators); web-based publications
elisions, 6.49, 12.19–20. *See also* ellipsis points
ellipses, defined, 13.48. *See also* ellipsis points
ellipsis points, 13.48–56
  cleanup process and, 2.77
  danger of skewed meaning with, 13.49
  definition and use, 13.48
  editing of, 2.58, 13.48
  foreign-language uses: French, 11.35; Italian, 11.54; Spanish, 11.81
  other punctuation with, 13.52; adjustments to, 13.7, 13.53; brackets, 13.56; periods, 13.51; in poetry and verse drama, 13.55; whole or partial paragraphs omitted, 13.54
  spacing of, 11.54, 13.48
  suspension points converted to, 11.10, 11.35
  uses, other: in deliberately incomplete sentences, 13.53; in drama, 13.55; in mathematical expressions, 12.19–20; for partial or whole paragraphs, 13.54; in poetry, 13.55; in quotations, 13.7, 13.51–56; shortening very long titles, 14.106; in table cells, 3.65, fig. 3.15, fig. 3.18
  when not to use, 13.50
  See also suspension points
em, defined, p. 895
e-mail
  addresses, 14.11; hyperlinks to, 1.114; hyphenation issues, 6.77; line breaks, 7.42; punctuation with, 6.8
  documentation of: mailing list materials, 14.223; messages and personal communications, 14.222, 15.48
em dashes, 6.82–89
  in cleanup process, 2.77
  definition, p. 895
  in foreign languages: French, 11.31, 11.34; other punctuation with, 11.10; for quotations, 13.71; Russian, 11.121, 11.123; Spanish, 11.79–80
  keyboarding for manuscript, 2.13
  length of, 6.75
  marking manuscript for, 2.93
  marking proofs for, 2.129
  other punctuation with, 6.84, 6.87, 11.10

- em dashes (*continued*)
  - uses, other: in indexes, 16.27, 16.99; instead of commas, parentheses, or colons, 6.82, 6.86; instead of quotation marks, 6.88; to set off "not" phrase, 6.41; between subject and pronoun, 6.83; in subtitles, 8.162; for sudden breaks, 6.84, 13.39; for table cells with no data, 3.65, fig. 3.15; before *that is*, *namely*, *for example*, and such, 6.43, 6.85
  - *See also* dashes; en dashes; hyphens and hyphenation; 3-em dashes; 2-em dashes
- emphasis
  - added to original quotation, 13.60
  - capitals for, 7.48
  - italics for, 7.47, 7.54
  - in notes, 14.32
  - quotation marks for, 7.57
  - scare quotes for, 7.55, 11.52, 14.102
  - *so-called* and, 7.56
  - for words used as words, 7.58
- em spaces
  - in design specifications, A.22
  - marking for, 2.123
  - in runover lines of index, 16.28
- encyclopedias
  - documentation of, 14.247–48
  - entries in, as work made for hire, 4.10
  - *See also* dictionaries; reference works
- en dashes, 6.78–81
  - accurate use of, 2.13
  - definition, p. 895
  - length of, 6.75
  - marking manuscript for, 2.93
  - marking proofs for, 2.129
  - punctuation and spacing with, 6.79
  - slash instead of, 6.105
  - uses: in compound adjectives, 6.80; in harmonic progressions, 7.69; in inclusive dates, 6.78–79, 14.122, 14.151; in inclusive numbers, 3.81, 6.78, 9.27, 9.34, 9.58, 16.100; in indexes, 16.100; as minus sign, 6.81; in musical pitch series, 7.67; for place-names within institutional names, 6.46; as *to*, 6.78; for unfinished number range, 6.79; when not to use, 9.59
- en dashes (*continued*)
  - *See also* dashes; em dashes; hyphens and hyphenation; inclusive (or continuing) numbers
- end matter. *See* back matter
- endnotes
  - basic approach, 14.38, 14.40
  - editing of, 2.59
  - footnotes used with, 14.44–46, fig. 14.4
  - footnotes vs., 14.38–43, figs. 14.2–3
  - format and examples of, 1.59, 14.41, figs. 14.2–3
  - keyed to line or page numbers, 14.48, fig. 14.6
  - length considerations for, 14.51
  - manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.20
  - numbering of, 14.19–23
  - in previously published materials, 2.42
  - running heads: checking proofs for, 2.111; definition and importance, 1.9; description of, 1.14, 1.59, 14.42; example of, fig. 14.2; preparation of, 2.73
  - special needs of, 14.43
  - *See also* footnotes; notes; shortened citations
- endpapers, defined, 1.68, p. 895
- English language
  - abbreviation of *English*, 10.43
  - Old and Middle, 7.46, 11.142–43
  - *See also* British style; classical works
- en spaces, in design specifications, A.22
- environmental issues in publishing, A.46
- enzyme names, 8.132
- epigraphs
  - fair use and, 4.80
  - format and placement of, 1.36, 13.34
  - notes to, 1.36, 1.48, 14.47
  - omitted in indexing, 16.109
  - pagination omitted from page, 1.6
  - as part of chapter displays, 1.48
  - quotation marks omitted from, 13.34
  - running heads omitted from page, 1.10
- epilogues, 1.52
- epithets, 8.33–34, 8.47
- equals signs
  - in genealogical tables, 3.45, fig. 3.10
  - scholarly use of, 10.44
  - in URLs and e-mail addresses, 7.42
  - *See also* mathematical expressions

equal-space mark, 2.122
equation. *See* mathematical expressions
eras, 9.35, 9.63, 10.39. *See also* periods of time
errata
  books, 1.65, 2.104
  journals, 1.86–87, 1.105
errors
  avoiding of, 2.53, 2.105, 13.5
  correction of, 1.28
  elimination of, 2.2
  in file conversion, 2.77, 2.110
  indexer's notation of, 16.125
  in prepress proofs, 2.104, A.43
  proofreading for, 2.108
  in quotations, 13.7
  responsibility assigned for, 2.131–32
  See also alterations; errata; permissible changes to quoted materials; proofreading
eszett, 11.48
et al.
  appropriate use of, 5.220
  in documentation: author-date references, 15.24, 15.28; four or more authors, 14.76; shortened citations, 14.27
  indexing authors' names and, 16.115
  meaning of, 10.43
  punctuation with, 6.20, 6.117, 10.4
  roman type for, 7.53
etc. (*et cetera*)
  appropriate use of, 5.220
  meaning of, 10.43
  punctuation with, 6.20
  roman type for, 10.7
ethnic groups, 7.9, 8.37–38. *See also* countries; peoples
et seq., 10.43, 16.13
Europe
  currency, 9.21, 9.24
  resources on EU, 14.316
European style
  all-numeral dates, 9.36–37
  decimal places, 9.20
  metric units, spelling of, 8.151
  numerals with sovereigns, 9.42
  space between digits, 9.56
  twenty-four-hour system of time, 9.40–41
  See also British style
events
  historical, 8.74
  natural phenomena, 8.76
  religious, 8.88, 8.107, 8.109
  speeches, 8.75
  sporting, 8.77
every, 5.32
exclamation points, 6.71–74
  marking proofs for, 2.129
  other punctuation with: brackets, 6.73–74; commas, 6.119; ellipsis points, 13.52; em dashes, 6.87; parentheses, 6.74, 6.96; periods, 6.118; question marks, 6.120; quotation marks, 6.10, 6.74, 13.28, 13.67
  uses: appropriate, 6.71; direct question, 6.72; editorial protest or amusement, 6.73; inverted, in Spanish works, 11.10, 11.78; sentence or phrase with *oh* and *ah*, 6.37; in titles of works, 6.118–19, 14.78, 14.100, 14.105, 16.54
  See also interjections and exclamations; punctuation
exhibitions, 8.195, 14.250
exponents
  abbreviations with, 10.69
  dex (*decimal exponent*), 9.12
  rewriting fractions using, 12.49
  See also mathematical expressions
expression, defined in copyright, 4.5
extracts. *See* block quotations

facsimile edition, 1.46
fact-checking, 2.53, 13.5
fair-use doctrine
  Chicago's guidelines for, 4.87
  general rules, 4.79
  legal overview, 4.77
  photocopying and, 1.97, 4.88–91
  and specific materials: attribution of, 4.85, 4.98–99; charts, tables, and graphs, 4.84; epigraphs, 4.80; interior monologues, 4.80; paraphrasing of, 4.82, 13.4; pictorial and graphic, 4.83; unpublished works, 4.81
  statements on, 1.78
  validity of "rules of thumb," 4.78
  when permissions are unnecessary, 4.86

fair-use doctrine (*continued*)
- *See also* acknowledgments; credits and credit lines; permissible changes to quoted materials; source lines and notes

F&Gs (folded and gathered proofs), 2.104, A.49, fig. A.7, p. 896
federal court decisions. *See* legal cases; legal-style citations; public documents
Federal Register, 14.301
ff., 10.43, 14.156, 16.13
fiction
- characters in, 5.123, 8.34, 8.36
- copyright registration forms for, 4.47
- subsidiary rights for motion pictures, 4.60
- trademark protection and, 4.16
- *See also* dialogue; literary works

field notes, 13.47
figures (figs.)
- abbreviation of term, 10.43, 14.157, 14.165
- definition, p. 895
- documentation of, 14.165
- text references to, 3.9
- use of term, 3.1, 3.5, 3.23
- *See also* artwork; captions; illustrations; numbers

figures of speech
- quotation marks omitted from, 13.5, 13.36
- treatment of, 7.57, 7.59, 8.197

files, defined, p. 895. *See also* computer software; electronic files
file transfer protocol (FTP), 14.11–12, p. 896
film. *See* audiovisual materials; movies and film; online media
filmstrips, documentation of, 14.278
financial terminology, 10.72. *See also* business and commerce; currency; economic terminology and periods; institutions; organizations
Finnish language, 11.26–27
first lines
- indexes of, 16.6, 16.144–45
- references to, 8.180

fiscal year (FY), 6.105, 9.63
fl. (*floruit*), 10.43
fl (*flush left*), 2.124
flexibinding, defined, p. 895
flush, defined, p. 896
flush-and-hang style (hanging indention)
- for bibliographies, 1.61, 2.22, fig. 14.8
- definition, p. 896
- for glossaries, 2.21
- for indexes, 16.24, 16.106, 16.131
- for lists of abbreviations, 2.21
- for play (dialogue) excerpts, 13.44–45
- for reference lists, 1.61, 2.22
- runover lines in, 2.11, 2.22
- for vertical lists, 6.124
- *See also* indented style (indexes); run-in style (indexes)

flush left or right
- marking manuscript for, 2.95
- marking proofs for, 2.124
- *See also* margins

flyleaf, 1.68
folded and gathered proofs (F&Gs), 2.104, A.49, fig. A.7, p. 896
folios
- definition, p. 896
- folio editions, 14.162, 14.236
- manuscript collections, 14.236
- *See also* page numbers (folios)

fonts (typefaces)
- cautions concerning, 2.15
- in cleanup process, 2.77
- definition, pp. 896, 902
- design specifications for, A.21
- history of terms, A.3
- marking proofs for changes to, 2.128
- old Gothic or Fraktur type, 11.48, 12.64–65, 12.67
- permissible changes to, 13.8
- proofreading of, 2.110, 2.128
- sans serif, p. 902
- serif, p. 902
- *See also* boldface; italics; roman (type)

footnotes
- author-date references with, 14.45
- basic approach, 14.38–39
- checking on proofs, 2.130
- editing of, 2.59
- endnotes used with, 14.44–46, fig. 14.4
- endnotes vs., 14.38–43, figs. 14.2–3
- keyed to line or page numbers, 14.48, fig. 14.5
- length considerations, 14.35–36, 14.51, fig. 14.1
- manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.20

footnotes (*continued*)
  numbering of, 14.19–23
  in previously published materials, 2.42
  pros and cons of, 14.39
  for tables, 2.28, 3.74–78, fig. 3.14, fig. 3.22, fig. 3.24
  unnumbered, 1.49, 14.47
  See also endnotes; notes; shortened citations
foreign-language materials
  capitalization, 11.3, 11.6–7, 11.59, 14.107, 14.193
  copyright for, 4.28–29, 4.33, 4.60, 4.70
  in documentation: bibliographic terms, 14.71; English forms of cities (place of publication), 14.137; journal articles, 14.192–94; newspaper names, 14.211; publisher's name, 14.142; series titles, 14.128; titles of works (*see* titles of works, *below*)
  English context considered, 11.4, 11.10
  IPA notation, 11.13
  permissible changes to, 8.163, 8.167, 11.4, 11.10, 13.7, 13.77–78
  punctuation: brackets, 14.108; em dashes, 6.88; exclamation points, 11.78, 11.122; guillemets, 11.4, 11.10; question marks, 11.78, 11.122, 11.136; quotation marks, 6.9; suspension points, 11.10, 11.35, 11.54, 11.81, 11.122
  quotations from, 13.71; original-language version in note, 13.75; retranslation caution, 13.79; translation adjusted, 13.77; translation credited, 13.76; translation edited, 13.78; translation plus source, 13.74; typographic style of, 13.71; where to place translation, 13.73; whether to include translation, 13.72
  special characters, generally, 11.2, 11.12, tables 11.1–5
  titles of works: brackets for, 14.108; capitalization, 11.3, 11.6–7, 11.59, 14.107, 14.193–94; cautions about shortening, 2.73; indexing of, 16.48–49, 16.52–53; italic vs. roman type, 11.5, 11.30, 11.59, 11.109, 11.120, 14.108–10; original plus published translation, 14.109; original spelling preserved, 8.163; permissible changes to, 8.163, 11.4, 11.10; translated title supplied by author or editor, 14.108; unpublished translation of title standing for original, 14.110; use of original vs. translated title, 11.7
  titles of works, specific languages: Chinese, 11.109; French, 11.30; Japanese, 11.109; Latin, 11.59; Russian, 11.120
  See also diacritical marks; diphthongs; foreign-language names; foreign words and phrases; guillemets; ligatures; symbols, specific; Unicode standard; *and specific languages*
foreign-language names
  personal: indexing of, 16.76–87; particles with, 8.5; treatment in English context, 8.7–17
  personal, by group: Arabic, 8.14; Asian, generally, 16.87; Burmese, 16.77; Chinese, 8.15, 11.103, 11.105, 11.108, 16.78; Dutch, 8.10; French, 8.7; German, 8.8; Hungarian, 8.13, 16.79; Indian, 16.80; Indonesian, 8.17, 16.81; Italian, 8.9; Japanese, 8.16, 11.107–8, 16.82; Portuguese, 8.8, 16.83; Russian, 8.12; Spanish, 8.11, 16.84; Thai, 16.85; Vietnamese, 16.86
  proper names, other: companies and businesses, 10.22; definite articles in place-names, 16.92; English forms of city names, 14.137; generic term in geographic names, 8.54; institutions, 11.8; newspaper names, 14.211; nouns, roman for, 7.51; places and structures, 8.58; publisher's names, 14.142
foreign rights, 4.28–29, 4.33, 4.60, 4.70
foreign words and phrases
  alphabetizing of, 16.67, 16.92
  bibliographic terms, 14.71
  first use of, 7.49, 7.54, 11.95
  generic terms in geographic names, 8.54
  glossaries of, 1.60
  glosses or translations for, 6.93, 7.50
  italics for unfamiliar words, 7.49–50, 7.52
  ligatures in, 7.46

foreign words and phrases (*continued*)
  as mottoes, 8.197
  plurals of, 7.11
  punctuation: brackets, 6.93; parentheses and quotation marks, 6.93, 7.50, 7.55
  roman type: familiar words, 7.52; Latin words, 7.49–50, 7.52–7.53; proper nouns, 7.51
  word division: general principles, 11.11; Arabic, 11.101; French, 11.36–39; German, 11.45–47; Greek, 11.138–41; Hebrew, 11.115; Italian, 11.55–57; Latin, 11.60–63; Polish, 11.68; Russian, 11.124–28; Spanish, 11.82–84; two-letter word endings, 7.37
forewords
  appropriate use of, 5.220
  documentation of, 14.91, 14.116
  editor's, 1.40
  format of, 1.39
  indexing of, 16.109
  material appropriate for, 1.42
  mentioned on covers or jackets, 1.67
  references to, 8.177
  as work made for hire, 4.10
for example, 6.43, 6.56, 6.65, 6.85
formatting manuscript for submission. *See* manuscript preparation guidelines for authors
forms of address, 6.64, 8.32, 10.16–17. *See also* dialogue; direct address; speech
Fort
  abbreviations of, 10.31
  French place-names with, 11.29
  indexing of, 16.90, 16.93
forthcoming
  appropriate use of term, 8.184, 14.153
  in notes and bibliographies, 14.182
  in reference lists, 15.17, 15.42
foul (dead) copy or proofs, 2.102, 2.107
fr (*flush right*), 2.124
fractions
  case, 12.45
  hyphenation of, 7.85
  mathematical copy: in display, 12.46; multiple and multilevel, 12.48; rewritten with exponents, 12.49; subscripts and superscripts, 12.47; in text, 12.45
fractions (*continued*)
  simple, 9.14–15
  slash with, 6.108, 12.45, 12.47
  symbols for, 6.108
  whole numbers with, 9.15
  See also decimal points
Fraktur type, 11.48, 12.64–65, 12.67
France, currency, 9.24. *See also* French language
French flaps (gatefolds), 1.67
French language, 11.28–40
  abbreviations, 10.17, 10.43
  capitalization, 11.29–30
  decimal places, 9.20
  dialogue, 11.34
  ligatures, 7.46
  proper names, 8.7, 11.29
  punctuation: em dashes, 11.34; guillemets, 11.32; periods omitted from contractions, 10.4; quotation marks, 11.33; spacing with, 11.31–32; suspension points and ellipses, 11.35
  resources on, 11.28, 11.30
  Saint in place-names, 11.29
  social titles, 10.17
  special characters, 11.40
  titles of works: capitalization, 11.30; indexing of, 16.48, 16.52
  word division: consonants, 11.37; vowels, 11.36; words best not divided, 11.39; words with apostrophes, 11.38
frontispiece
  caption for, 3.22
  pagination and use, 1.17, 1.38
front matter, 1.4, 1.16–44
  abbreviations list in, 1.43, fig. 1.8
  acknowledgments, 1.85
  biographical notes, 1.17, 1.20
  chronologies, 1.58, fig. 1.9
  contributors list, 1.62
  copyright information (*see* copyright notice; copyright page)
  dedication, 1.35
  editing of, 2.54
  editorials, 1.96
  in electronic journals, 1.81–86
  epigraph and epigraph source, 1.36
  foreword, 1.39
  frontispiece, 1.17, 1.38, 3.22
  illustrations list, 1.38, 3.37, figs. 1.6–7

front matter (*continued*)
  indexing of, 16.109
  information for contributors, 1.84
  introduction appropriate to, 1.42
  pagination of, 1.4, 1.6, 1.8, 1.17
  preface, 1.40
  publisher's, translator's, and editor's notes, 1.44
  running heads, 1.10, 1.15
  series title, 1.4, 1.17
  special issue noted, 1.78, 1.83, 1.85
  table of contents, 1.37, 1.83, fig. 1.5
  title page, 1.16–18
  of web-based publications, 1.115
  See also many of the above elements under their own headings
FTP (file transfer protocol), 14.11–12, p. 896
full caps (capitals)
  abbreviations for *avenue*, *street*, and such, 10.34
  abbreviations for eras, 9.35, 9.63, 10.39
  compass points in addresses, 10.35
  computer keys and menu items, 7.73–74
  and emphasis, 7.48
  letters as shapes, 7.63
  letters as words, plurals of, 7.14
  letters standing for names, 7.62
  musical elements, 7.67–68, 7.70
  preferred to small caps, 9.35, 10.8, 10.24, 10.39, 10.42, 14.284
  scholastic letter grades, 7.60
  See also capital letters

galleries
  definition, p. 896
  list of illustrations in, 3.38
  manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.25
  noted in table of contents, 1.37, 1.38, fig. 1.7
  numbering illustrations in, 3.14
  placement of, 3.6
  plates in, 3.5
  unpaginated, 1.5, 3.6, fig. 1.7
galley proofs, 2.101, p. 896
gatefolds (French flaps), 1.67
gender
  definition of noun gender, 5.14
  pronouns: antecedents of different genders, 5.34; of indeterminate gender, 5.45; *it*, third-person singular, 5.41
  when to use language for specific, 5.229
  See also bias-free language
genealogical charts, 3.45, fig. 3.10. *See also* charts and graphs
generic markup, 2.55–56, 2.70–71, 2.78, 2.96, 6.102. *See also* markup tags and languages
genetics, 8.130–32
genitives
  definition and uses of, 5.12, 5.19–20
  form of, 5.39
  possessives, 7.24
  prepositional phrase replaced by, 5.187
  pronoun and gender in, 5.41
  See also possessives
genus and species
  abbreviation of genus name, 8.120
  authorities on, 8.118
  author names and, 8.123
  divisions higher than genus, 8.125
  English derivatives from, 8.126
  italics for, 8.2, 8.119, 8.171
  plant hybrids, 8.124
  subspecies and varieties, 8.121
  unspecified species and varieties, 8.122
geographical terminology
  abbreviation of *geography*, 10.43
  abbreviations: *avenue*, *street*, and such, 10.34; Canadian provinces and territories, 10.29; city plus state, comma with, 10.30; compass points, 10.35–36; country names, 10.32; latitude and longitude, 10.37; place-names with *Fort*, *Saint*, and such, 10.31, 11.29, 16.90, 16.93; US, when to use, 10.33; US states and territories, 10.28
  continents, countries, cities, oceans, and such, 5.67, 8.44, 8.52
  foreign terms for, 8.54, 11.29
  generic terms for, 8.53
  generic terms with proper names, 8.52, 8.55, 11.59
  real vs. metaphorical names, 8.49
  regions, 8.46, 8.53
  urban areas, 8.48
  See also compass points and directions; place-names

- geological terminology
  - abbreviation of *geology*, 10.43
  - formal vs. generic, 8.134
  - resources on, 8.133
  - stratigraphy, 8.135
- German language, 11.41–48
  - articles (parts of speech), 16.52
  - *billion*, 5.220
  - capitalization, 7.52, 11.41–42, 14.193
  - names, 8.8
  - new orthography of, 11.41
  - nouns, 7.52, 11.42
  - punctuation, 11.43–44
  - special characters, 11.48
  - titles of works, indexing of, 16.48, 16.52
  - word division: compounds, 11.47; consonants, 11.46; vowels, 11.45
- Germany
  - currency, 9.24
  - formerly GDR (German Democratic Republic) and FRG (Federal Republic of Germany), 10.32
  - *See also* German language
- gerunds
  - dangling, 5.113
  - definition, 5.110
  - as nouns, 5.25
  - participles compared with, 5.111
  - possessives with, 7.26
  - word division, 7.36
  - *See also* participles and participial phrases
- ghostwritten books, documentation of, 14.89
- GIF, defined, p. 896
- glossaries
  - format and alphabetizing, 1.60, 2.21
  - and indexing, 16.109
  - punctuation, 2.21
  - references to, 8.177
  - in web-based publications, 1.114
- glosses
  - ASL signs, 11.147–54
  - foreign-language titles and words, 6.93, 7.50, 7.55, 11.6–7
  - names in indexes, 16.34–39, 16.42–46, 16.62, 16.98
  - *See also* interpolations and clarifications; parenthetical elements; translations and translated works
- governmental entities
  - abbreviations of, 10.24–25
  - acts and treaties of, 8.65, 8.79–80, 14.287, 14.302
  - administrative, 8.62
  - capitalization of, 8.51, 8.64
  - courts: basic elements in documentation, 14.288; Canadian, 14.306; international, 14.316; names and terms, treatment in text, 8.63; UK courts, 14.310; US federal, 14.290; US state and local, 14.291; US Supreme Court, 14.289
  - judicial, 8.63
  - legislative and deliberative, 8.61, 14.293–96
  - loose-leaf services of, 14.251
  - numbers for successive governing bodies, 9.46
  - programs of, 8.65, 8.74, 8.79
  - public-domain works produced by, 4.19, 4.43, 4.64
  - titles and offices of people, 8.18, 8.21
  - *See also* cities and towns; civil and civic concerns; countries; institutions; laws and statutes; legal cases; legislation; presidential documents; public documents; states (US); unpublished and informally published materials
- Government Printing Office (GPO), 9.22, 14.303
- grades, scholastic, 7.60
- grammar
  - definitions, 5.1
  - parts of speech, 5.3
  - parts of speech, abbreviations of, 10.43
  - schools of thought, 5.2
  - "usage" compared with, 5.216
  - *See also* adjectives; adverbs; conjunctions; interjections and exclamations; nouns; prepositions; pronouns; verbs; word usage
- grants and subventions, 1.19, 1.31, fig. 1.1
- graphs, fair use of, 4.84. *See also* charts and graphs
- Great Britain. *See* British style; United Kingdom
- Greek language, including classical, 11.130–41
  - abbreviation of *Greek*, 10.43

Greek language, including classical (*continued*)
  breathings and accents: accent marks, 11.130, 11.133; breathing marks, 11.130, 11.132; unaccented words, 11.134; on vowels, 11.130, 11.135
  character sets for, 11.92, 11.130–31, table 11.4
  numbers, 11.137, table 11.5
  punctuation, 11.136
  resources on, 11.130
  typesetting issues, 11.131
  word division: compounds, 11.141; consecutive vowels, 11.138; single consonants, 11.139; two or more consonants, 11.140
  See also classical works
guillemets
  permissible changes to, 11.4, 11.10
  spacing with, 11.31–32, 11.52
  uses: French, 11.31–35; German, 11.44; Italian, 11.52; Russian, 11.121; Spanish, 11.79
gutter, defined, p. 896

hairline rule, defined, p. 896
hair space, defined, A.22
half titles
  content of, 1.16
  editing of, 2.54
  pagination of, 1.6–7, 1.16
  placement in book, 1.4
  proofreading of, 2.130
  running heads omitted from, 1.10
  second half title, 1.7, 1.45
halftones, 3.3, 3.6, figs. 3.1–2, p. 896
halftone screen, defined, p. 896
hanging indention. *See* flush-and-hang style
Hansard Parliamentary Debates (UK), 14.313
Hanyu Pinyin system. *See* Pinyin system
hard copy, defined, p. 897
hardcover books
  clothbound covers: definition, p. 893; description of, 1.66; endpapers, 1.68; proofreading of, 2.105, 2.130
  jackets (dust jackets), 1.69, p. 894; artwork, 1.70, 1.78, 4.96–97; author's previous publications, 1.17; biographical information, 1.20; country of printing, 1.27; credit lines for artwork, 1.70, 1.78; ISBN and bar codes, 1.32, 1.66, 1.71; proofreading of, 2.105, 2.130
  See also covers of journals and paperback books
Hausa language, 11.14–15
have, has, had, 5.126–27, 5.145
he, him, his, 5.45–47, 5.50, 5.222
headings
  alphabetizing, 16.56, 16.65–66
  for letters and diaries, 1.51
  with note numbers, 14.22
  proofreading of, 2.110, 2.130
  punctuation in, 6.14
  See also subheads; index entries
headlines, 7.48, 14.204–5
headline-style capitalization, 8.157–58, 8.166
  book titles, 14.95
  foreign-language, 11.6–7, 11.30, 11.59
  hyphenated compounds, rules and examples, 8.159, 11.29
  instrumental works, 8.190
  newspapers, 14.204
  notices, signs, and mottoes, 8.196–97
  for quotations in titles, 14.104
  series titles, 8.2, 8.174, 14.128
  subheads, 2.56
  table titles, 3.52–53
  titles in captions, 3.21–22
  translated title, 14.110
  unpublished titles, 8.184
  website titles, 8.186
  See also sentence-style capitalization
head margin, defined, p. 897
headnotes
  for bibliographies with sections, 14.58, fig. 14.9
  for indexes, 16.116, 16.140–41, 16.143
  for previously published materials, 2.43
heaven, *hell*, and such, 8.108
Hebrew language, 11.111–17
  capitalization and italics, 11.114
  character sets for, 11.92
  diacritics, 11.112
  prefixes, 11.113
  transliteration systems, 11.111
  unromanized phrases in, 11.116
  vowels in, 11.117
  word division, 11.115
he or she, *him or her*, 5.46–50, 5.220, 5.225

her, hers, 5.46–50
herself, 5.48–49
highways and interstates
  abbreviations of, 10.34
  names of, 8.55, 11.29
  numbers of, 9.51–52
  See also addresses, mailing
himself, 5.48–49
historic, historical, 5.220, 7.44
historical and cultural terminology
  abbreviations, 10.43
  academic subjects, lectures, and such, 8.84–86
  acts, treaties, and government programs, 8.65, 8.74, 8.79–80, 14.287, 14.302
  awards, 8.82, 8.114
  events: historical, 8.74; meteorological and other natural phenomena, 8.76; religious, 8.88, 8.107, 8.109; speeches, 8.75; sporting, 8.77
  movements and styles: capitalization, 8.59–60; coinage of adjectives for, 8.59; treatment in text, 8.59–60, 8.78
  oaths and pledges, 8.83
  periods: centuries, 8.70, 9.33–34; cultural, 8.73; decades, 9.34; descriptive designations, 8.71; eras, 9.35, 9.63, 10.39; numerical designations, 8.70; traditional names, 8.72
  See also economic terminology and periods; legal cases; political terminology
holidays, 8.88
home pages. *See* websites and web pages
Honorable, Hon., 8.31–32, 10.18
honors and honorifics, 8.30–32. *See also* titles and offices
horticultural terminology. *See* botanical terminology
however, 5.207, 6.25, 6.55
HTML
  corrections in, A.31
  definition, p. 897
  electronic journals in, 1.72
  standards for, A.36–37
  tables in, A.33
  web-based publications, 1.111
  XML and, A.5, A.12–13, A.37
HTTP (hypertext transfer protocol), 14.11–12, p. 897
humanities style. *See* documentation; notes and bibliography system
Hungarian language, 8.13, 11.49–50, 16.79
hybrids, plant, 8.124
hyperlinks, 1.114
  added to printed work, 4.60
  to citations and outside resources, 1.102
  description of, 1.89
  between errata and text, 1.86
  full bibliography useful in creating, 14.56
  to illustrations, 1.100, 3.8
  in journals, generally, 1.79, 1.82, 1.89, 1.102, 14.4
  markup for, A.7
  to notes, 14.14
  and tables, 1.99
  and tables of contents, 1.82, 1.83, fig. 1.11
  testing of, 2.134–35
  thumbnail sketches and, 4.83
  See also DOIs (Digital Object Identifiers); e-mail; URLs (uniform resource locators)
hypertext, defined, p. 897. *See also* HTTP (hypertext transfer protocol)
hyphens and hyphenation
  abbreviations with, 10.5
  appropriate use of, 7.77
  capitalization issues, 8.159, 11.29
  in compound words, 5.91, 7.31–43, 7.77–85; adverbs ending in *-ly*, 7.82; en dash vs. hyphen, 6.80; guide to, 7.85; headline-style titles, 8.159, 11.29; and line breaks, 2.109; multiple hyphens, 7.83; nationalities, hyphens not used, 8.38; before or after noun, 7.81; second part unexpressed, 7.84; trend toward closed, 7.79; types of compounds, 7.78
  dashes compared with, 6.75
  en dash vs., in compound adjectives, 6.80
  foreign languages: Chinese, 11.104; French, 11.29; Hebrew, 11.113; Japanese, 11.107
  guide to, 7.85
  manuscript and editorial concerns: cleanup process, 2.77; guidelines

hyphens and hyphenation (*continued*)
    for authors, 2.12; marking manuscript, 2.93; marking proofs, 2.129; proofreading, 2.102, 2.109, 2.113; soft vs. hard hyphens, 2.93; stacks of, 2.109, 2.113, 7.43; typographic considerations, 7.43; word division, 7.35
  personal names with, 8.6
  readability as key to, 7.80, 7.83, 7.85
  URLs, DOIs, and such in text, 2.12, 6.77, 7.42, 14.11–12
  uses, other: all-numeral dates, 6.45, 6.106, 9.36–37; Arabic article *al*, 11.99; double or multiple numeration, 1.55; fractions, simple, 9.14; keyboard combinations and shortcuts, 7.74; music writing, 7.67; noun plus numeral or enumerator, 7.85, 9.13; phrasal adjectives, 5.91; separators (numbers and letters), 6.77
  See also compounds; dashes; em dashes; en dashes; punctuation; 3-em dashes; 2-em dashes

I (pronoun)
  antecedent absent, 5.28
  appropriate use of, 5.220
  as first-person singular, 5.38
  misuse of, 5.36
  than with, 5.179
ibid.
  meaning of, 10.43
  roman type for, 7.53, 10.7
  uses: notes, 14.29; shortened citations, 14.29; text citations, 13.64
ice age, 8.83, 8.134
id. (*idem*), 10.43, 14.30, 14.287
idioms, prepositional, 5.189–90. *See also* dialect; movements and styles
i.e.
  e.g. compared with, 5.220
  meaning of, 10.43
  punctuation with, 6.43
  roman type for, 10.7
if, 5.121. *See also* conjunctions
if–then, 5.195, 5.214
if–whether, 5.220
illustrations, 3.3–45
  acquisition of: adapted material, 3.36; commercial agency material, 3.35, 4.95–97; commissioned material, 3.32; material obtained free of charge, 3.33; previously published material, 2.44; public-domain material, 3.34; published work needing permission, 3.31; works made for hire, 3.32, 4.10, 4.69
  definition, 3.1
  documentation of, 14.165
  electronic enhancements noted for, 3.26
  electronic files, preparation of: artwork, prints vs. scans, 2.24; digital files, 3.15, A.32; identified for publisher, 3.16; numbering of, 2.25; preparation of charts, 3.42; separate files for each component, 2.23, 2.33, 3.16; submission to publisher, 2.3–4, 3.3–4, 3.15–17; text references and callouts, 2.27
  examples of, figs. 3.1–10
  fair use of, 4.83
  galleries: list of illustrations in, 3.38; manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.25; noted in table of contents, 1.37–38, fig. 1.7; numbering illustrations in, 3.14; placement of, 3.6; plates in, 3.5; unpaginated, 1.5, 3.6, fig. 1.7
  indexing of, 16.116, 16.140–41
  manuscript and editorial concerns: cleanup process, 2.77; cross-checking, 2.29; editing of, 2.63; guidelines for authors, 2.23–2.25, 2.27, 3.15–20; inventory of artwork, 3.16–18; markup, A.32; placement, 2.59, 3.8; proofreading, 2.104, 2.112; text references and callouts, 2.23, 2.27, 2.29, 2.62–63, 3.8–9, 3.16
  numbering: arabic numerals for, 3.12, fig. 3.7; continuous vs. separate, 3.10; conventions of, 2.25; double or multiple numeration, 1.55, 3.11; in galleries, 3.14; separating caption from, 3.23; text references to, 3.9; working (temporary) numbers, 3.13
  original dimensions noted for, 3.27
  pagination of, 1.7, 1.38, 2.112

illustrations (*continued*)
  parts, identification of, 3.12, 3.24, fig. 3.7
  plates: definition, 3.5; indexing of, 16.116; lists of, 1.38, fig. 1.7; numbering of, 2.25; text references to, 3.9; use of term, 3.23
  references to numbered, 8.178
  reproduction of: continuous tone vs. halftone type, 3.3, 3.6, figs. 3.1–2, p. 894; cropping, scaling, and shading, 3.19; previously published material, 2.44; prints vs. scans for, 2.24; professionally created scans, 3.15; publisher's redrawing of, 3.20
  running heads and, 1.15, 2.112
  symbols or patterns used in, 3.25, figs. 3.8–9
  tables compared with, 3.2
  types: color, 1.5, 2.34, 3.15; continuous tone, 3.3, figs. 3.1–2; line art, 3.4, 3.20, 3.40, figs. 3.3–4, fig. 3.6; musical examples, 3.4, fig. 3.5; text figures and plates as, 3.5
  unnumbered, 3.13, fig. 3.3
  as works made for hire, 3.32, 4.10, 4.69
  See also artwork; captions; charts and graphs; credits and credit lines; lists of illustrations and tables; tables
image agencies, 3.35, 4.95–97
images. *See* artwork; illustrations
impressions
  copyright dates of, 1.19, 1.23–25, fig. 1.1
  definition, 1.26, p. 897
  edition compared with, 1.23, 1.26
  numbering of, 1.28, figs. 1.1–2
  and publication date, 14.150
  See also reprints
imprints
  definition, 1.18
  types, 14.144–46
  See also publisher's name
Inc., 6.48, 10.22, 10.23, 14.140, 14.142
including, 6.27, 10.43
inclusive (or continuing) numbers
  abbreviating and condensing, 9.60–61, 16.14
  with abbreviations and symbols, 9.17
  appropriate use of, 16.13, 16.121
  commas with, 9.62
  in documentation, 14.111–13, 14.155
  en dashes, when not to use, 9.59
inclusive (or continuing) numbers (*continued*)
  en dashes, when to use, 3.81, 6.78–79, 9.27, 9.34, 9.58, 16.100
  vs. *ff.*, 14.155
  index locators, 16.13–14, 16.29, 16.100, 16.113, 16.121
  page numbers, chapter numbers, and such, 9.27, 14.111–13, 14.155
  repeated quantities and, 9.17
  in tables, 3.81
  in titles of works, 9.63
  unfinished ranges of, 6.79
  words between, 9.59
  years, 9.58, 9.63
  See also numbers
indefinite article. *See* articles (definite and indefinite)
indented style (indexes)
  continued lines, 16.139
  cross-references, 16.26, 16.28
  description, 16.26
  examples, 16.28, 16.129, 16.142–43
  indention guidelines, 16.137
  keyboarding of, 16.131
  punctuation in, 16.26, 16.28
  runover lines, 16.28, 16.137
  sub- and sub-subentries, 16.26, 16.28, 16.68, 16.142–43
indention
  in cleanup process, 2.77
  definition of *indent*, p. 897
  flush-and-hang format, 16.24, 16.106, 16.131
  marking space for, 2.95, 2.123
  proofreading for, 2.110
  of quotations: interviews and discussions, 13.46; permissible changes to, 13.8; play excerpts, 13.44–45; poetry extracts, 2.19, 13.24; prose extracts, 2.18
  of vertical lists, 2.11, 6.124
  See also block quotations; flush-and-hang style; indented style (indexes); margins; quotations; tables
index cards, 16.107
index entries
  cross-references: accuracy of, 16.130; alphabetizing, 16.17, 16.20; *and* used with generic, 16.23; appropriate use

index entries (*continued*)
    of, 16.15, 16.20, 16.76, 16.84, 16.126; blind, 16.16; capitalization, 16.17, 16.20; checking and editing, 16.130, 16.133; double posting vs., 16.16; generic, 16.23; in indented style, 16.26, 16.28; italics in, 16.15, 16.20, 16.22–23; for names, 16.36, 16.38, 16.42, 16.46, 16.71, 16.76, 16.78, 16.84, 16.89; for organization and business names, 16.88–89; placement and punctuation, 16.17–20, 16.26, 16.95–98; in run-in style, 16.25; "*see also*" and "*see also under*" type, 16.20–23, 16.26; "*see*" and "*see under*" type, 16.16–19, 16.26; shortened, 16.21; single vs. multiple indexes and, 16.6; subentries and, 16.10, 16.18–20
  examples: authors' names, 16.115; first lines, 16.144–45; highlighted definitions, 16.143; indented style for subentries, 16.27; indented style with indented sub-subentries, 16.28, 16.143; indented style with run-in sub-subentries, 16.28, 16.129, 16.142; run-in style with italicized references, 16.141; run-in style with sub-subentries, 16.27; run-in subentries, 16.27
  locators: appropriate use of, 16.13; chapter numbers with, 16.111; *ff.* with, 16.13; inclusive (or continuing), 16.13–14, 16.29, 16.100, 16.113, 16.121; italics and boldface for, 16.116, 16.140–41, 16.143; long strings of, 16.120, 16.127–28; with main headings, 16.9; across multiple volumes, 1.8; for notes, 14.164, 16.109–13, 16.117; number per entry, 16.120, 16.128; number per page, 16.118; pagination final for, 16.108; paragraph numbers as, 16.13, 16.108; punctuation of, 16.94, 16.100; for scattered entries, 16.13; for subentries, 16.10
  main headings: alphabetizing, 16.56 (*see also* alphabetizing); appropriate choices for, 16.126–29; checking of, 16.133; cross-references following,

index entries (*continued*)
    16.17; definition and use, 16.9; headings beginning with numerals, 16.65; initial lowercase letters, 16.11; inversion and, 16.9, 16.56; noun or noun phrase for, 16.9; similar headings with numerals, 16.66; subentries vs., 16.127; title beginning with article as, 16.48–49, 16.51–52, 16.56; typing and modifying, 16.122
  punctuation: cross-references, 16.17–20, 16.26, 16.95–98; indented styles, 16.26, 16.28; inversions, 16.94; locators, 16.94, 16.100; parenthetical elements, 16.18, 16.20, 16.34–39, 16.42–46, 16.62, 16.98, 16.111, 16.139; run-in style, 16.25, 16.27; sub- and sub-subentries, 16.27–28, 16.95–96
  sub- and sub-subentries: alphabetizing, 16.68 (*see also* alphabetizing); appropriate choices for, 16.127–29; articles in, 16.51, 16.68, 16.129; checking, 16.133; chronological order, 16.70; cross-reference placement and, 16.18–20, 16.26; definition and use, 16.10; indention, 16.137; initial lowercase letters in, 16.12; main headings vs., 16.127; marking proofs for, 16.120; numerical order, 16.69; phrasing of, 16.129; punctuation, 16.27–28, 16.95–96; run-in vs. indented style, 16.24–28, 16.141–43; typing and modifying, 16.122; when to use, 16.120, 16.128
  See also alphabetizing; indexes; indexing
indexes
  author's responsibility for, 2.2, 2.67, 16.3–4, 16.104, 16.108
  continued lines, 16.139
  deadlines for, 2.2, 16.4, 16.101
  editing of, 2.64, 16.124, 16.126–30, 16.132–34
  flush-and-hang format, 16.24, 16.106, 16.131
  headnotes for, 16.116, 16.140–41, 16.143
  length of, 16.103, 16.118, 16.133
  order of multiple indexes, 1.63
  placement of, 1.63

indexes (*continued*)
    proofreading of, 2.103
    publisher's preferences in format and length, 16.103, 16.106
    quality of, 16.132
    references to, 8.177
    repagination issues, 2.115
    run-in vs. indented styles, 16.24–28
    running heads for, 1.13, 16.6
    single vs. multiple indexes, 16.6, 16.115, 16.131
    submission format of, 16.131
    types: author-and-title, for anthologies, 16.6; authors' names, 16.6, 16.115, 16.145; embedded, 1.117, 16.7, 16.102, A.7; first lines, 16.6, 16.144–45; journals, 1.102–4, 16.4, 16.6, 16.30, 16.126; multivolume works, 1.8; single vs. multiple, 16.6, 16.115, 16.131; web-based publications, 1.117
    typographical considerations: bad breaks, 7.33, 16.138; *continued* lines, 16.139; distinguishing different types of entries and locators, 16.116, 16.140–41, 16.143; instructions for typesetting, 16.134; margins, 16.136; repagination, 2.115; running heads, 1.13, 16.6; separate vs. consecutive pagination in multivolume works, 1.8; type size and column width, 1.63, 16.135
    value of, 16.2
    as works made for hire, 4.10
    See also alphabetizing; index entries; indexing
indexing
    appropriate material for (what to index), 16.109–16
    articles, definite and indefinite: in first lines, 16.144; in organization and business names, 16.88; in personal and foreign names, 16.76, 16.91–92; in place-names, 16.91–92; in subentries, 16.51, 16.68, 16.129; titles of newspapers and periodicals beginning with, 16.48–49; titles of works beginning with, 16.51–52, 16.56; when to disregard, 16.48, 16.51–52, 16.56, 16.68, 16.88, 16.91
indexing (*continued*)
    from first proofs, 2.101, 2.103, 2.115
    mechanics: alphabetizing, 16.56, 16.68, 16.90–93 (*see also* alphabetizing); checking cross-references, 16.130; computer software, 16.5, 16.57, 16.104, 16.123; editing and refining entries, 16.124, 16.126–30; editing someone else's index, 16.132–33; keyboarding entries, 16.106–7, 16.122–23, 16.131; marking proofs, 16.117–21, fig. 16.1; noting errors in text, 16.125; pagination issues, 2.101, 2.103, 2.115, 16.108; preliminary indexing, 16.108; preparation, 16.101–7; publisher's preferences and, 16.103, 16.106; submitting index, 16.131; typesetting instructions, 16.134; what to index, 16.31, 16.109–16
    names, proper: abbreviations and acronyms as, 16.46, 16.64; academic titles and degrees in, 16.40; articles at beginning of, 16.76, 16.91–92; clerical titles, 16.39; compound, 16.72; cross-references for, 16.36, 16.38, 16.42, 16.46, 16.71, 16.76, 16.78, 16.84, 16.89; familiar forms of, 16.33, 16.71; foreign, 16.67, 16.76–87; *Fort*, *Mount*, *Saint*, and such, 16.90, 16.93; glosses (parenthetical information) for, 16.34–39, 16.42–46, 16.62, 16.98; hyphens in, 16.72; incomplete or unknown, 16.43–44; initials vs. spelled-out, 16.63, 16.79; *Jr.*, *Sr.*, *III*, and such with, 16.41; *Mac*, *Mc* with, 16.73; as main entry, 16.9; married women's, 16.36; monarchs, popes, and such, 16.37; nobility, titles, and such, 16.38, 16.66; numerals in (e.g., Henry III), 16.66; organizations and businesses, 16.46, 16.88–89; *O'* with, 16.74; particles with, 16.71, 16.84; passing mentions of, 16.31; person, place, and thing with same name, 16.35, 16.45, 16.62; personal, 16.71–76; personal, as corporate names, 16.89; place-name, old vs. present form, 16.29; place-name,

indexing (*continued*)
        from shortened form in text, 16.44; pseudonyms, 16.34; *Saint*, *St*., and such, 16.75, 16.93; saints (e.g., Saint Francis), 16.42; variants of, 16.32
    notes, foot- or end-, 14.164, 16.109–13, 16.117
    publication process and schedules, 2.2, 16.4, 16.101
    punctuation, basic rules, 16.94–100
    resources on, 16.8, 16.71, 16.84
    term choices: considerations in, 16.4; editing of, 16.124, 16.126–30; marking proofs for, 16.117–20, fig. 16.1; material considered in, 16.109–16; noun or noun phrase as, 16.9; passing mentions omitted, 16.31; reflective of text, 16.29–30; style and usage, 16.29; type of material and, 16.118
    titles of publications and works: article at beginning of, 16.48–49, 16.51–52, 16.56; with authors, 16.50; authors, first lines, and titles, 16.145; foreign-language, 16.48–49, 16.52–53; periodicals, 16.48–49; preposition at beginning of, 16.53; question mark or exclamation at end of, 16.54; separate index of titles, 16.6; in specialized works, 16.52; subtitles omitted, 16.55; typographic treatment of, 16.47
    See also alphabetizing; index entries; indexes
India, names in, 16.80
Indonesia, names in, 8.17, 16.81
infinitives
    as adjectives and adverbs, 5.105
    dangling, 5.107
    definition, 5.104
    gerunds as, 5.110
    as nouns, 5.25
    personal pronoun as subject of, 5.42
    split, 5.106, 5.168
information technology specialists, A.2, A.27–30
initialisms
    a, *an*, or *the*, which to use, 7.44, 10.9
    ampersands in, 10.10
    capitals vs. lowercase for, 10.6
    definition and use, 10.2, 10.24
initialisms (*continued*)
    for disease and medical terms, 8.143
    for journal titles, 14.179, 15.13, 15.44, 16.49
    plurals of, 7.14
    small vs. full-size capitals for, 10.8, 10.24
    space omitted in, 10.5
    for television and radio networks, 8.185, 10.5, 10.25
    for versions and sections of Bible, 10.51
    See also abbreviations; acronyms
initials
    decorative, in text, 13.35
    in and as names: in author's preface, 1.40; in documentation of works, 14.73, 15.12, 15.43; for hyphenated given name, 8.7; punctuation and spacing of, 7.62, 8.4, 10.4, 10.12; spelled-out vs. initials, 16.63, 16.79, 16.115; word division and, 7.38
    spacing of, 7.62, 8.4, 10.4, 10.12, 14.73
in press, 1.73, 8.184, 14.153. See also *forthcoming*
inscriptions, collections of, 14.263
insertions. *See* additions and insertions
institutions
    church as, 8.97
    names: academic, 6.46; as authors, 14.66; capitalization, 8.67, 8.84; in documentation of dissertations, theses, lectures, and such, 14.224, 14.226; foreign-language, 11.8, 11.29; place-names within, 6.46, 6.81; possessive form of, 7.19; unusual names, 8.68, 8.153
    titles and offices in, 8.24, 8.26–27
    See also academic concerns; business and commerce; governmental entities; organizations; universities
intellectual property rights
    basic vs. subsidiary, 4.17–18
    derivative works and performance, 4.14
    originality, 4.3, 4.5, 4.68
    public display, 4.13, 4.33
    reproduction and distribution, 4.13–14, 4.33, 4.50, 4.60
    subdivision of, 4.33
    trademark protection, 4.16
    See also copyright; subsidiary rights

- interior monologues, 4.80, 13.41. *See also* dialogue; speech
- interjections and exclamations, 5.208–11
  - abbreviation of *interjection*, 10.43
  - capitalization, 7.45
  - definition, 5.208, 5.211
  - functional variation and, 5.210
  - as informal and colloquial, 5.209
  - punctuation with, 5.208, 6.37
  - in quotations of interviews and discussions, 13.46
  - spelling of, 7.30
  - *See also* exclamation points
- International Organization for Standardization (ISO)
  - archival practices, 1.107
  - country name abbreviations, 10.32
  - currency codes, 9.22
  - ISBNs, 1.32
  - SGML standard, A.12
  - standard date format, 6.106, 9.37
- International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA), 11.13
- International Standard Book Number (ISBN)
  - on copyright page, 1.19, 1.32, fig. 1.1
  - on covers and jackets, 1.71
  - for electronic books, 4.60
  - examples of, fig. 1.13
  - hyphenation of, 6.77
  - International ISBN Agency, 1.71
  - proofreading of, 2.105
  - United States ISBN Agency, 1.71
- International Standard Serial Number (ISSN), 1.19, 1.74, 1.78, 1.97
- International System of Units (Système international d'unités, SI)
  - abbreviations: base quantities and units, 10.56; derived units expressed algebraically, 10.59; derived units with special names, 10.60; form of, 10.55; grams, 10.58; non-SI units, 10.62; prefixes, 10.57; spacing, 10.61; symbols for, 10.2
  - American vs. European spellings, 8.151
  - *mega-*, *giga-*, *tera-*, and other prefixes, 9.10–11, 10.52, 10.57
  - resources on, 9.56, 10.54
  - spaces and spacing, 9.56, 10.61
  - *See also* metric system
- Internet
  - abbreviations of related terms, 10.52
  - definition, p. 897
  - images from, 3.15
  - protocol, 14.11–12, p. 901
  - treatment of term, 7.76
  - *See also* addresses, e-mail; blogs and blog entries; electronic publications; hyperlinks; URLs (uniform resource locators); web-based publications; websites and web pages
- interpolations and clarifications, 13.57–61
  - additions and insertions, 13.58
  - emphasis added to original quotation, 13.60
  - missing or illegible words, 13.57
  - punctuation for: brackets, 6.97, 13.57–59, 13.61; quotation marks, 13.61; 2-em dashes, 13.57
  - *sic*, 6.5, 6.73, 7.53, 13.59
  - *See also* permissible changes to quoted materials
- interrogatives
  - comma with, 6.52
  - conjunctions and, 5.201–3
  - contractions in, 5.102
  - exclamations as, 6.72
  - indirect, 5.201, 6.68
  - pronouns and, 5.52–53
  - question mark with, 6.66–67, 6.70
  - requests reframed as, 6.69
  - within sentences, 6.52, 6.61, 6.67–68
  - *See also* question marks
- interviews and discussions
  - by authors, 13.46
  - documentation of: order of attribution, 14.218; published or broadcast interviews, 14.221; unattributed interviews, 14.220; unpublished interviews, 14.219, 15.48
  - punctuation of quotations, 6.50, 13.18, 13.46
  - *See also* dialogue; direct address; personal communications; speech; transcriptions
- in-text citations. *See* block quotations; parenthetical elements; text citations
- introductions
  - documentation of, 14.91, 14.116
  - indexing of, 16.109
  - to journal special issues, 1.96

introductions (*continued*)
    location and format of, 1.42, 1.45–47
    to parts of text, 1.37, 1.47
    for previously published materials, 2.43
    references to, 8.177
inversion of names
    bibliographies and reference lists: first author's name only, 14.61, 14.76; single author, 14.75
    indexes: foreign personal names, 16.76–87; main headings, 16.9, 16.56; personal names, 16.9, 16.94; place-names, 16.90; punctuation of, 16.94
inversion of titles beginning with articles, 16.48–49, 16.51–52, 16.56
ISBN. *See* International Standard Book Number (ISBN)
ISO. *See* International Organization for Standardization (ISO)
ISSN (International Standard Serial Number), 1.19, 1.74, 1.78, 1.97
issue numbers
    documentation of, 14.180–81, 14.186, 15.46
    numerals for, 9.28, 14.180
Italian language, 11.51–58
    abbreviation of *Italian*, 10.43
    capitalization, 11.51
    punctuation: apostrophes, 11.53, 11.57–58; guillemets and quotation marks, 11.52; suspension points and ellipses, 11.54
    quotations and dialogue, 11.52
    special characters, 11.58
    treatment of names, 8.9
    word division: consonants, 11.56; vowels, 11.55; words with apostrophes, 11.57
italics
    added to original quotation, 13.60
    definition, p. 897
    within italicized titles, reversed, 8.171, 14.103
    marking manuscript for, 2.94
    marking proofs for, 2.128
    plurals of words in, 7.11
    possessives and terms in, 7.28
    proofreading of, 2.110
    and punctuation, 6.2, 6.5
    for titles and subtitles, 8.2, 8.161, 8.166, 14.94; blogs, 8.187; books, 14.94, 14.103, 14.177; cartoons and comic strips, 8.194; legal cases in text, 8.81; legal-style citations, 14.284; long poems, 8.179; movies and television, 8.185; newspapers, 14.210–11; operas and long musical compositions, 8.189; paintings, statues, and such, 8.193; pamphlets and reports, 8.183; photographs, 8.193; plays, 8.181; separate works gathered into collected works, 8.176
    vs. underlining, in manuscript preparation, 2.14
    uses, other: abbreviations of italicized terms, 2.21; base quantities, 10.56; emphasizing words, 7.47, 7.54, 13.60; first occurrence of foreign terms, 7.49–50, 7.54; foreign terms, 7.49–50, 7.52, 7.54, 11.95; gene names, 8.131; genus and species, 8.119–21, 8.171; glossary terms, 2.21; in index cross-references, 16.15, 16.20, 16.22–23; in index references to illustrations, 16.116, 16.140; for letters as letters (e.g., *a*), 7.59, 10.7; locators (e.g., *above*, *left*) in captions, 3.24; mathematical copy, 12.10–12, 12.56, 12.62; music dynamics, 7.71; *N*, *n*, in tables, 3.70, 3.73, 3.83, fig. 3.20; rhyme schemes, 7.65; *sic*, 6.5, 6.73, 7.53, 13.59; statistical material in tables, 10.53, 12.57–58, table 12.3; totals (in tables), 3.61, fig. 3.15; words and phrases used as words, 7.58
    See also foreign-language materials; foreign words and phrases
Italy, currency, 9.24. *See also* Italian language
it is I, *it is me*, 5.220
its, *it's*, 2.108, 5.47, 5.50, 5.220

jackets of books. *See* covers of journals and paperback books; hardcover books: jackets
Japan, currency of, 9.24
Japanese language
    capitalization and italics, 11.108
    characters of, 11.110

- Japanese language (*continued*)
  - diacritical marks, 11.107
  - names: alphabetizing, 16.82; treatment, 8.16, 11.107–8
  - resources on, 11.106
  - titles of works, 11.109
  - transliteration (Hepburn system), 11.106–7
- jargon. *See* dialect; slang and jargon
- Javanese names, 16.81
- Jewish Bible. *See* Bible
- joint works, 4.7, 4.12, 4.51
- journals, 1.72–117
  - as collective works, 4.8
  - components: abstracts, 1.88, 1.90; acknowledgments, 1.85, 1.93; announcements, 1.83, 1.85, 1.93; articles and other text, 1.87–98; book review and book notes sections, 1.92; copyright lines, 1.97; covers, 1.78, 1.81; editorials, 1.96; electronic-only features listed, 1.73; front matter, 1.81–86; hyperlinks, 1.102; illustrations, 1.78, 1.99–100; indexes, 1.102–4, 16.4, 16.6, 16.30, 16.126; letters to the editor, 1.95; majors and minors, 1.87; masthead, 1.78, 1.81; pagination, 1.76; running heads or feet, 1.77; subheads, 1.91; table of contents, 1.78, 1.83, 1.86, fig. 1.11; tables, 1.99, 3.58, 3.62, 3.70, 3.84; volume numbers, 1.83, fig. 1.11
  - contributors: biographical notes, 1.94, 14.50; communications with, 2.65; information for, 1.84; list of, 1.94; manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.1, 2.33; publishing agreement, 4.55–58, fig. 4.2; submission requirements, 1.78, 1.82, 2.3
  - copyright of, 1.74, 1.78, 1.88, 1.97, 4.42
  - definition, 14.172
  - design, 1.78, 1.108, 1.110
  - documentation style in, 1.101–2, 14.2, 14.70
  - editorial policy, 1.78, 1.84
  - editorial style, 1.109, 2.46, 2.61, 14.70
  - electronic and print formats for, 1.72–73, 3.26
  - errata and corrections, 1.86, 1.105
  - foreign-language, 14.192–94
  - identified by volume and date, 1.74
- journals (*continued*)
  - ISSN, 1.19, 1.74, 1.78, 1.97
  - new series of, 14.195
  - online-only material, 1.107
  - organizing principle, 1.75
  - papers presented at meeting as articles in, 14.226
  - production schedule, 2.99, A.5, fig. 2.2
  - proofreading of, 2.99, 2.130
  - publishing agreement, 4.55–58, fig. 4.2
  - redesign, 1.110
  - special issues, 1.78, 1.83, 1.85, 1.96, 14.187
  - subscription information, 1.78, 1.81, 1.104
  - subsidiary rights, 4.60
  - supplements, 14.188
  - symposia proceedings as, 4.59
  - titles, 8.166, 14.179; *a* and *an*, when to drop in running text, 8.167; abbreviations and initialisms of, 14.179, 15.13, 15.44, 16.49; foreign-language considerations, 14.179; indexing of, 16.49; initial *the* in, 8.168; italicized terms within, 8.171; italics and capitalization, 14.176, 14.179; *magazine*, *journal*, *review*, and such, 8.169; in names of awards and prizes, 8.170; series and editions, 8.174, 14.195; shortened, 15.13, 15.44; similar names, 14.191; subjects compared with, 8.172
  - trademark protection, 4.16
  - treatment of term, 8.169
  - version control, 1.105
  - volume, defined, 1.75
  - volume editor's responsibilities, 2.38–39
  - work made for hire in, 4.10
  - XML workflow of, A.5
  - *See also* abstracts; articles (journal); contributors; covers of journals and paperback books; journals, electronic; *and many of the above elements under their own headings*
- journals, electronic
  - components: errata and corrections, 1.86, 1.105; front matter, 1.82; home pages, 1.79, 1.82; hyperlinks, 1.79, 1.82, 1.89, 1.102, 14.4; illustrations, 1.100; indexes, 1.104; pagination,

journals, electronic (*continued*)
        1.76; running heads, 1.77; table of contents, 1.83, fig. 1.11; tables, 1.99; unique identifiers for, 1.74
    considerations for, 1.111–17
    copyright, 1.74, 1.97
    design changes, 1.110
    documentation of: access dates, 14.7, 14.185; page references, 14.183; URLs and DOIs, 1.74, 14.18, 14.184, 14.198, 15.9 (*see also* articles, documentation of)
    DTDs for, A.8
    formats, 1.72
    maintaining context of, 1.80
    material not applicable to print, 1.107
    noting difference between print and, 1.73, 3.26
    preprints, 1.73
    standards for, A.36–37
    version control, 1.105
    See also articles, electronic; hyperlinks
JPEG, defined, A.32, p. 897
Jr. ("Junior")
    indexing of, 16.41
    line breaks and, 7.38
    punctuation and spacing, 6.47, 10.19
JSTOR (academic journals archive), 14.18
judicial bodies
    basic elements in documentation, 14.288
    Canadian courts, 14.306
    international courts, 14.316
    names and terms, treatment in text, 8.63
    numbered divisions of, 9.47
    UK courts, 14.310
    US courts, 14.289–91
    See also legal cases; legal-style citations; public documents
justification
    indexes, 16.131, 16.136
    manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.10
    marking proofs for, 2.124
    words in table columns, 3.71, fig. 3.19
    See also margins
justified, defined, p. 897

K, 9.25
kern, defined, p. 897
kerning, 12.11, p. 897
keyboarding, combinations and shortcuts, 7.74. *See also* computer software; electronic files; manuscript editing: electronic editing mechanics; manuscript preparation guidelines for authors; word processing
keys, computer, 7.73
keys, musical, 7.70
keys to illustrations (legends)
    capitalization and consistency, 3.20
    captions compared with, 3.21
    definition, 3.7
    letters in, 3.7, 3.12, 3.24, figs. 3.6–7
    See also labels
keywords
    in abstracts, 1.90
    context-sensitive searching for, 1.104, 1.113, 1.117
    in journal indexes, 16.30, 16.126
    in shortened running heads, 2.73
kinship names, 8.35
Koran (Qur'an), 8.102, 11.97, 14.255

l. (line) and *ll.* (lines), 14.163
labels
    captions compared with, 3.21
    in charts, abbreviations, 3.43–44
    in illustrations and keys, 3.7, 3.12, 3.24, figs. 3.3–4, figs. 3.6–7
    marked on line art to be redrawn, 3.20
    of *x* and *y* axes, 3.42, 3.49, fig. 3.8
    See also keys to illustrations (legends)
labor unions, 8.69, 9.50
landscape, defined, p. 897
LaTeX, 12.2, 12.9, A.34, fig. 12.3, table 12.1
Latin alphabet
    IPA notation, 11.13
    languages using, generally, 11.9–11
    Unicode and special characters, 11.2, 11.12, table 11.1
    See also transliteration; *and specific languages*
Latin language, 11.59–64
    abbreviations in, 10.7, 10.43
    capitalization, 11.59
    for provisional chemical elements, 10.66
    roman type for terms in, 7.53
    special characters, 11.2, 11.12, 11.64, table 11.1

Latin language (*continued*)
  titles of works in, 11.59
  word division: compounds, 11.63; consonants, 11.61–62; syllables, 11.60
  See also classical works; genus and species; scientific and technical terminology
latitude, 10.37. *See also* compass points and directions
laws and statutes
  bills and resolutions compared, 14.295
  Canadian, 14.306–7
  short forms for names, 14.287
  UK, 14.312
  US federal, 14.294
  US state and municipal, 14.300
  See also legal documents; public documents
laws and theories
  mathematical, 12.56
  schools of thought, 8.78
  scientific, 8.147
  See also philosophical terms and movements; scientific and technical terminology
layout, defined, p. 897
leaders (several spaced periods), 3.62, fig. 3.16. *See also* ellipsis points; suspension points
leading
  definition, 2.122, p. 898
  history of term, A.3
least, 5.85–87, 5.161
leaves, book, 1.3. *See also* folios; page numbers (folios)
lectures and lecture series
  documentation of, 14.226, 14.277, 14.280
  treatment in text, 8.86
  See also speeches
legal cases
  documentation: abbreviations, 14.286; basic elements, 14.288; Canadian cases, 14.306; italics, 14.284; notes and text citations, 15.54–55; short forms, 14.287; UK courts, 14.310; US courts, 14.289–91
  treatment in text, 8.81
legal documents
  Canada: legal cases, 14.306; resources and reference works on, 14.281, 14.305; statutes, 14.307; unpublished, 14.308
  contracts, wills, and such, 14.231
  international entities, 14.316–17
  numbered divisions in, 9.29
  online resources, 14.317
  United Kingdom: command papers, 14.314; legal cases, 14.310; online sources, 14.309; parliamentary debates, 14.313; parliamentary publications, 14.311; resources and reference works on, 14.281, 14.309; statutes, 14.312; unpublished, 14.315
  United States: abbreviations, 14.293; bills and resolutions, 14.295; congressional reports and documents, 14.297; debates before 1873, 14.299; debates since 1873, 14.298; generalist and secondary source writing about, 14.303; hearings, 14.296; laws and statutes, 14.294; municipal ordinances, 14.300; notes and text citations, 15.54–55; state laws, 14.300; unpublished, 14.304
  See also laws and statutes; legal cases; legal-style citations
legal-style citations
  abbreviations in, 14.286
  cases and court decisions, 13.310, 14.288–91, 14.306
  constitutions, 14.292
  note form, 14.283
  page numbers and locators, 14.285
  resources and stylebooks on, 14.3, 14.281–82
  short forms, 14.287
  typefaces, 14.284
  when not to use, 14.303
  See also courts; laws and statutes; legal cases; legal documents
legends, defined, 3.7. *See also* captions; keys to illustrations (legends)
legislation
  abbreviations, 14.293
  bills and resolutions, 14.295
  debates on, 14.298–99
  formal and generic names for, 8.79–80
  generalist and secondary source writing about, 14.303
  hearings on, 14.296

legislation (*continued*)
  published text of, 14.294–95
  short forms for names, 14.287
  state, 14.300
  See also acts and treaties; laws and statutes; public documents
legislative and deliberative bodies
  abbreviations of, 14.293, 14.295
  hearings of, 14.296
  names and terms for, 8.61
  See also laws and statutes; legislation; public documents
length (measurement). *See* International System of Units (Système international d'unités, SI); measurement, US; metric system
length (publications)
  books, A.18
  indexes, 16.103, 16.118, 16.133
  notes, 14.35–36, 14.51, fig. 14.1
  running heads, 2.73
  table titles, 3.52–53
less, 5.84, 5.86–87, 5.160, 6.42
less, fewer, 5.220
letters (alphabet)
  archaic, 13.7
  hyphens to separate, 6.77
  illustration parts designated by, 3.7, 3.12, 3.24, figs. 3.3–4, figs. 3.6–7
  as letters, 7.59
  in lists and outlines, 6.94, 6.123, 6.126
  marking spacing changes between, 2.122
  for multiple appendixes, 1.57
  in music writing, 7.67–71
  names of (spelled-out pronunciations), 7.64
  for notes applying to parts of tables, 3.77
  plurals of, 7.14, 7.59–61
  possessives of, 7.16
  in rhyme schemes, 7.65
  in run-in lists, 6.123
  as scholastic grades, 7.60
  as shapes (e.g., S curve), 7.63
  spellings for, 7.64
  standing for proper names (e.g., A——), 7.62
  See also alphabetizing; alphabets; capital letters; diacritical marks; initialisms; initials
letters (correspondence)
  chronological order, 1.51
  copyright issues, 4.19
  documentation of: approach and resources, 14.232, 14.239; date forms, 6.45, 9.32; examples, 14.240–41; "private collection" or "author's possession" and such, 14.242; published collections, 14.117, 15.40; shortened citations, 14.117; unpublished collections, 14.222
  editorial clarifications to, 13.58
  missing or illegible words, 13.57
  multiple paragraphs quoted, 13.33
  permissible changes, 13.7–8
  permissions for use, 4.74, 4.76
  sic in, 13.59
  See also manuscript collections; personal communications
letters to the editor, 1.95, 14.208. *See also* editorials
LexisNexis, 8.153, 14.271, 14.282, 14.288
libel, 4.51, 4.68
libraries, 14.271, 16.58. *See also* archival practices; manuscript collections
Library of Congress, 1.33, 4.46. *See also* Cataloging-in-Publication (CIP) data
licenses for copyrighted works
  alternative arrangements for, 4.57
  electronic works, 4.60–62
  exclusive vs. nonexclusive, 4.34
  goals of parties to, 4.35
  handling requests for, 4.66
  payment for, 4.36
  rights file as record of, 4.67
  subsidiary rights and, 4.17, 4.33
  termination of, 4.37
  universities' claim to, 4.63
  See also copyright; intellectual property rights; permissions; publishing agreement; subsidiary rights
"life plus seventy" rule, 4.22, 4.24–25
ligatures, 7.46, 11.40, 11.142, p. 898
like, as, 5.181, 5.220
line art
  charts and graphs as, 3.4, 3.40
  definition, p. 898
  examples of, figs. 3.3–4, fig. 3.6
  publisher's redrawing of, 3.20
  See also illustrations
line editing. *See* manuscript editing

line numbers
  avoiding use of *l.*, *ll.*, 14.163
  edition number with, 14.267
  footnotes keyed to, fig. 14.5
  format of, 14.163
  frequent references to single source, 13.65
  as locators, 14.48
  punctuation of, 9.55
lines (rules)
  above continued footnotes, 14.36, fig. 14.1
  avoided in illustrations, 3.19
  in tables, 3.50, 3.55–56, 3.72, 3.84, figs. 3.13–14, fig. 3.16
lines (text)
  blank, 1.56, 2.8, 2.95
  in cleanup process, 2.77
  indention, symbol for, 2.123
  marking manuscript for, 2.95
  proofreading of, 2.113–14
  spacing in manuscript, 2.6, 2.8, 2.18–21, 2.88
  as text break, 1.56, 2.8
  See also justification; leading; spaces and spacing
links. *See* hyperlinks
lists, 6.121–26
  abbreviations and ampersands in, 10.3, 10.23–24, 10.28, 14.141
  as alternative to tables, 3.51
  elided in mathematical expressions, 12.19
  format, 2.21
  placement of, 1.43, 2.59, fig. 1.8
  as quoted material, 13.10
  run-in: punctuation and format, 6.94, 6.123; vertical compared with, 6.122; word division in, 7.41
  stub entries as, in tables, 3.58
  titles and offices of people in, 8.19
  vertical: punctuation and format, 2.11, 6.124–26; vs. run-in, 6.122–23
  See also bibliographies; contributors: lists of; lists of abbreviations; lists of illustrations and tables; outlines; reference lists
lists of abbreviations
  alphabetizing, 1.43, 14.55, 16.64, fig. 1.8, fig. 14.7
  cross-checking, 2.29
lists of abbreviations (*continued*)
  format and placement, 1.43, 2.21, fig. 1.8
  for frequently cited works, 13.65, 14.54–55, fig. 14.7
lists of illustrations and tables
  appropriate use of, 1.38, 3.37
  artwork inventory linked to, 3.17
  captions shortened for, 3.39
  for electronic works, 1.100
  format and placement, 1.38, 3.29, 3.37, figs. 1.6–7
  for galleries, 3.38
  numbering of, 3.11, 3.14
  proofreading of, 2.112
  See also credits and credit lines
literary agents, 4.18
literary works
  characters in, 5.123, 8.34, 8.36
  copyright registration forms for, 4.47
  cultural terms for (e.g., deconstruction), 8.78
  dialect in, 5.218
  fair use of, 4.79–80, 4.82
  frequent reference to single, 13.65, 14.54
  sound recordings of, 14.277
  titles: indexing of, 16.50, 16.98; numbers for sequels, 9.44
  trademark protection and, 4.16
  See also block quotations; classical works; fiction; plays; poetry; quotations; titles of works
literature cited. *See* documentation
loc. cit., 10.43, 14.31
locators
  in captions (e.g., *above*, *left*), 3.24
  in classical references (*see* classical works: locators)
  in documentation, generally, 14.14, 14.17, 15.8, 15.22
  in electronic works: accession numbers for databases, 14.224, 14.272; section headings as, 14.17, 14.174; URLs and DOIs, 14.184 (*see also* hyperlinks)
  in index entries (*see* index entries: locators)
  in legal-style citations, 14.285
  See also page numbers (folios)
logo, publisher's, 1.18, 1.66–68
longitude, 10.37. *See also* compass points and directions

lowercase letters
  abbreviations ending with, 10.4
  for chart labels, 3.43
  definition, p. 898
  "down" style, 8.1, 8.46
  for *foreword*, *index*, and such, 8.177–78
  for generations, 8.41
  in index entries, 16.9–12
  for kinship terms, 8.35
  marking manuscript for, 2.94
  marking proofs for, 2.128
  for musical elements, 7.68, 7.70
  for names like eBay, 8.68, 8.153
  for physical characteristics, 8.39, 8.42
  for socioeconomic class, 8.40
  words with nonliteral meanings but derived from proper names, 8.60
  See also sentence-style capitalization
Ltd., 6.48, 10.22, 14.140, 14.142
-ly, words ending in
  adjectives with, 5.155
  adverbs with, 5.91, 5.154, 5.157, 5.160–61
  hyphenation not needed with, 7.81–82
lyrics, fair-use doctrine and, 4.80. *See also* musical works

Mac, *Mc*, 16.73
macroinstructions (macros), 2.76, p. 898
magazines
  copyright notice, 4.42
  definition, 14.172
  documentation of, 14.171–72; article titles, 14.201; dates, 14.199; newspaper, 14.209; online articles, 14.200; page numbers, 14.199; regular departments, 8.175, 14.202; in text or reference lists, 15.47
  indexing names of, 16.49
  treatment of term, 8.169
  See also journals; newspapers; periodicals
mailing addresses
  abbreviations: *avenue*, *street*, and such, 10.34; city plus state, comma with, 10.30; compass points in, 10.35; provinces and territories (Canada), 10.29; states and territories (US), 10.28
  numbers in, 9.51–53
  publisher's, 1.18–19, 1.21

mailing addresses (*continued*)
  punctuation in running text, 6.46, 10.28, 10.30
  See also compass points and directions; e-mail; geographical terminology
mailing lists, electronic, 14.223
main headings. *See under* index entries
majors and minors (periodicals), 1.87
manuscript
  abbreviation of term, 7.44, 10.43, 14.237
  conversion of files, A.28–29
  estimating book length from, A.18
  making changes after submission, 2.5, 2.6
  numbering pages of, 2.35
  paper for, 2.6
  version of record, 2.5, 2.84
  See also electronic files; manuscript collections; manuscript editing; manuscript preparation guidelines for authors; markings, editorial; word processing
manuscript collections
  abbreviations of, 14.55, fig. 14.7
  documentation of, 14.225, 14.232; author-date references, 15.49; collections of letters and such, 14.239–42; dates for, 14.235; folios, page numbers, and such, 14.236; locations of depositories, 14.238; note forms vs. bibliographic entries, 14.233, 14.240–41; one vs. several items cited from a collection, 14.241; *papers* and *manuscripts* (terms), 14.237; "private collection" or "author's possession" and such, 14.242; resources on, 14.232; specific vs. generic collection titles, 14.234
  noncopyright restrictions on, 4.76
  quotations from: editorial clarifications in, 13.58; missing or illegible words, 13.57; multiple paragraphs, 13.33; permissible changes, 13.7–8; permissions for, 4.74, 4.76; *sic*, use of, 13.59
  titles of, 8.184, 14.234, 14.237
  See also letters (correspondence); unpublished and informally published materials

- manuscript editing, 2.45–96
  - basics, 2.1; author queries, 2.57–58, 2.61, 2.66, 2.83, fig. 2.4; author's review, 2.67–69, 2.85; dictionary and reference works, 2.51; errors and fact-checking, 2.53, 2.105, 13.5; estimating time for, 2.49; manuscript vs. developmental editing, 2.45; mechanical editing, 1.109, 2.45, 2.46; stages of editing, 2.50; style sheet, 2.52, fig. 2.3; substantive editing, 2.45, 2.47–48; volume editor's responsibilities, 2.38–39
  - checking consistency and format: cross-checking, 2.29–32; en dash, 2.13; note citations against reference lists and bibliographies, 2.29, 2.60–61, 15.20; permissions against manuscript, 4.72; style sheet, 2.52, fig. 2.3; subhead hierarchy, 2.56; text citations against reference lists, 2.29, 2.60–61, 15.20; titles and subtitles against table of contents, 2.55
  - electronic editing mechanics: backup copies, 2.37, 2.75, 2.77, 2.86; cleaning up files, 2.36, 2.50, 2.60, 2.76–77; document comparison software, 2.82, 2.85; final checks and preparation, 2.86; global changes, 2.66, 2.77; markup, 2.55–56, 2.70–71, 2.78–80, 2.96, 6.102, A.29; software-generated styles, 2.79; version control, 2.5, 2.84 (*see also* redlining [tracking and showing changes]; word processing)
  - paper-only: author queries, 2.89; conventions of, 2.88; example, fig. 2.5; keeping a clean copy, 2.87; manuscript format considerations for, 2.6, 2.8; mathematical copy, 12.60–67, figs. 12.1–2; note renumbering, 2.59; style sheet for, 2.52, fig. 2.3 (*see also* markings, editorial)
  - preparing final manuscript for production: checklist for, 2.74; final checks in, 2.86; markup and type specifications, 2.55–56, 2.70–71, 2.78, 2.96, 6.102; pagination, 2.72; running heads, 2.73
- manuscript editing (*continued*)
  - specific parts: captions, 2.63; cross-references, 2.57; front matter, 2.54; illustrations and placement, 2.63; indexes, 2.64, 16.132–34; mathematical copy, 12.1–2, 12.13, 12.60–67; notes, text citations, bibliographies, and reference lists, 2.59–61; quotations and previously published material, 2.58, 13.6; subheads, 2.56; tables (*see below*); titles of parts, chapters, and articles, 2.55
  - tables: adjusting and checking, 2.29, 3.79, 3.84, figs. 3.23–24; basic approach, 2.62; *continued* lines and repeated column heads, 3.85, fig. 3.25; *N*, *n*, 3.70, 3.73, 3.83, fig. 3.20; number ranges, 3.81; *percent*, *percentage*, 3.80; signs and symbols in, 3.80–82
  - *See also* manuscript editors; manuscript preparation guidelines for authors; production and digital technology
- manuscript editors
  - communications with authors: bias-free language issues, 5.224; checking author's changes, 2.69; comments and queries on manuscript, 2.53–54, 2.57–58, 2.61, 2.66, 2.83, 2.89, fig. 2.4; cover letter and instructions, 2.67, 2.81; early contact, 2.65; edited manuscript and, 2.68, 2.85; permissions double-checked, 4.72; sample of editing, 2.65; sending edited manuscript, 2.68, 2.85
  - discretion and flexibility, 2.45, 2.48, 2.56, 2.61
  - post-proofreading tasks of, 2.98
  - production process role, 2.2, A.2
  - schedule for editing, 2.49
  - software knowledge, 2.76
  - *See also* manuscript editing
- manuscript preparation guidelines for authors, 2.1, 2.3–44
  - basics: accuracy and consistency, 2.7, 2.53, 13.6; changes after submission, 2.5, 2.6; checklist, 2.3; indexing as responsibility of authors, 2.2, 2.67, 16.3–4, 16.104, 16.108;

manuscript preparation guidelines for authors (*continued*)
    letter to publisher, 2.14, 2.36; list of special characters, 2.3, 2.15, 11.12, 12.13; proofreading before submission, 2.97; publication process and schedule for, 2.2, A.2, figs. 2.1–2; submission requirements, 2.3–6, 2.35
  cross-checking tasks: checklist of, 2.29; cross-references, 2.32; quotations, 2.30, 13.6; URLs, 2.31
  electronic files: accuracy and consistency, 2.7, 2.78; backups, 2.5, 2.37; embedded and hidden comments removed, 2.36; naming, 2.34; numbering pages in, 2.35; separate vs. single, 2.33; source citation coding removed, 14.13 (*see also* electronic files)
  formatting: abbreviations list, 2.21; bibliographies and reference lists, 2.22; chapter and other titles, 2.16; glossaries, 1.60, 2.21; hyphens and dashes, 2.12–13; italics, underline, and boldface, 2.14; justification and margins, 2.10; keyboarding, combinations and shortcuts, 7.74; notes, 2.20; ordinal numbers (e.g., 122nd), 9.6; poetry and prose extracts (block quotations), 2.18–19; publisher's guidelines, 2.7; spaces, tabs, and hard returns within paragraphs, 2.11, 2.18–19; spacing between lines, 2.6, 2.8; spacing between words, 2.9, 2.11; special characters, 2.3, 2.15, 11.12, 12.13; subheads, 2.17 (*see also* electronic files)
  illustrations and tables: artwork, prints vs. scans, 2.24; identification and inventory of artwork, 3.16–17; notes and source notes, 2.28; numbering of, 2.25–26; preparation of tables, 3.46; separate files for each component, 2.23, 2.33; submission to publisher, 3.3–4, 3.15; text references and callouts for, 2.23, 2.27, 2.29, 2.62–63, 3.8–9, 3.16 (*see also* illustrations; tables)
  special types of works: compilations

manuscript preparation guidelines for authors (*continued*)
    and previously published materials, 2.40–44; multiauthor volumes or journals, 2.38–39
  See also author's review of copyedited manuscript; mathematical copy; permissions; proofreading; version control
maps
  callouts for, 2.27
  credit lines for, 3.32
  keys to, 3.7
  lists of, 1.38
  numbering of, 3.10
  place-names on, 2.57, 3.20
  preparation for reproduction, 3.20
  symbols or patterns used in, 3.25
  as works made for hire, 4.10
  See also illustrations
marginal comments, 2.90
margins
  back margin and gutter, pp. 891, 896
  in cleanup process, 2.77
  definition, p. 898
  head margin, p. 897
  justification: definition, p. 897; flush left (ragged right), 2.10, 3.71, fig. 3.19, p. 901; indexes, 16.131, 16.136; marking proofs for, 2.124; words in table columns, 3.71, fig. 3.19
  manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.10
  marking proofs for, 2.124
markings, editorial, 2.87–88, fig. 2.5
  author queries, 2.53–54, 2.57–58, 2.61, 2.66, 2.83, 2.89, fig. 2.4
  capitalizing and lowercasing, 2.94
  circling, 2.90–91, 2.121, 2.124–26
  close-up mark, 2.122, fig. 2.6
  dashes and hyphens, 2.93
  em spaces, 2.123
  indention and spacing, 2.95
  insertions, deletions, and substitutions, 2.91, 2.121–22, 2.124, 2.127
  italics and boldface marks, 2.94
  keeping a clean copy, 2.87
  marking or coding elements, 2.96
  markup, 2.71
  note renumbering, 2.59
  position or alignment changes, 2.124

markings, editorial (*continued*)
  punctuation changes, 2.92
  "run in," 2.123
  style sheet for, 2.52, fig. 2.3
  See also codes and coding; proofreader's marks
markup tags and languages
  abbreviations of, 10.52
  brief history of, A.12
  conversion of, A.23
  converting generic to XML, A.27–30
  definition, A.6, p. 898
  general principles: document type definitions (DTDs), A.8; metadata, A.10; semantic and functional uses, A.7; style sheets, A.9, A.17, fig. A.3
  mapping to design specifications, A.16
  print technologies and, A.41
  standard practices and archival issues, 1.107
  tables checked for, 3.84
  types: formal languages, 2.80; generic, 2.55–56, 2.70–71, 2.78, 2.96, 6.102; software-generated styles, 2.79; XML, A.11–15, figs. A.1–2
  use of term, A.3
  workflow outline, A.5, A.24, fig. A.5
  See also generic markup; HTML; SGML; XML
masthead, journal, 1.78
mathematical copy
  abbreviations: in mathematical expressions, 12.17, 12.63, table 12.2; of *mathematics*, 10.43; statistics, 10.53, 12.57–58, table 12.3
  formal statements of definitions, theorems, and such, 12.56
  in letters to the editor, 1.95
  manuscript preparation: author's role in, 12.13, 12.60; computer software for, 12.2; examples of, 12.67, figs. 12.1–3; fonts and diacriticals, 12.10–13, 12.65; format, 12.60; kerning, 12.11; LaTeX, 12.2, 12.9, A.34, table 12.1; marking subscripts and superscripts, 12.66; special marking of typeface, 12.64
  markup of, A.13, A.34
  probabilities, correlations, and such, 9.19
  radical signs in, 12.44
mathematical copy (*continued*)
  resources on, 12.1–2, 12.23
  sentences beginning with mathematical symbols, 12.7
  symbols, 12.9, tables 12.1, 12.4; angle brackets, 6.102, 12.26, 12.28, 12.31, 12.55, 12.58; braces, 6.102, 12.26, 12.28; slashes, 6.108, 12.45, 12.47; true angle brackets for mathematical notation, 12.55; words vs., 12.5
  See also decimal points; fractions; International System of Units (Système international d'unités, SI); measurement, US; metric system; scientific and technical works
mathematical expressions
  abbreviations in, 12.17, 12.63, table 12.2
  breaks in, 12.23
  centering, 12.21
  computer software for, 12.2, 12.9, A.13, A.34, table 12.1
  consistency of notation, 12.4
  definitions, theorems, and such, 12.25, 12.56
  delimiters: binomial coefficients, 12.32; cases, 12.35; common, 12.26; functional notation, 12.27; functions enclosed by, 12.17; inner product denoted by, 12.31; intervals, 12.30; radicals in text, 12.44; rewriting fractions using exponents, 12.49; set notation, 12.28–29; vertical bars, 12.33–34
  determinants in, 12.51
  in display, 12.21; alternative cases, 12.35; fractions, 12.46–49; line breaks, 12.23; numbering of, 12.24–25; qualifying clauses, 12.22; radicals, 12.43–44
  elided lists, operations, and relations, 12.19–20
  markup of, A.13, A.34
  matrices in, 12.50
  means in, 12.58
  numeration systems for, 1.55, 12.24–25
  operations and relations, 12.20, 12.23
  probability and statistics, 12.57–59, table 12.3
  proofreading of, 2.110
  punctuation with, 6.102, 12.18–20, 12.26, 12.28

mathematical expressions (*continued*)
  qualifying clauses in, 12.22
  radical signs, 12.43–44
  scalars, vectors, and tensors: additional tensor notation, 12.54; definitions, 12.52; Dirac bracket notation, 12.55; placement and punctuation, 12.38; vector and tensor multiplication, 12.53
  signs and symbols, 12.9, tables 12.1, 12.4: angle brackets, 6.102, 12.26, 12.28, 12.31, 12.55, 12.58; binary operations and relations, 12.15; brackets and parentheses, 12.17–18, 12.20, 12.22–24, 12.26–32, 12.35, 12.38, 12.45, 12.50, 12.54; conciseness of, 12.6; consistency of, 12.4; differentials, spacing around, 12.42; fonts and diacriticals in, 12.10–13, 12.65; functions, 12.17, table 12.2; integrals, 12.41; multiplication, 12.20; operations and relations, 12.23; products, 12.40; radicals, 12.43–44; sentences and, 12.7; special, 12.13–14; summations, 12.39; verbal translations of, 12.3; vertical bars, 12.18, 12.22, 12.33–34, 12.46, 12.51; words vs., 12.5
  spacing in, 12.8, 12.16, 12.21, 12.42
  standard deviations in, 12.58
  standards for, 12.3
  statistical material, 10.53, 12.57–58, table 12.3
  subscripts and superscripts: alignment, 12.21–22, 12.38; complex, 12.37; determinants, 12.51; in fractions, 12.49; fractions in, 12.47; marking, 12.66; simple, 12.36; spacing, 12.16; uncertainties expressed as, 12.59; vector and tensor multiplication, 12.53
  summations and integrals, 12.39–42
  in tables, 3.82
  uncertainties, 12.59
  See also decimal points; fractions
MathML, A.13, A.34, p. 898
matrix (table), 3.66, figs. 3.17–18
maxims, 6.51, 7.57, 8.197, 13.5, 13.36. *See also* figures of speech
may, *might*, 5.143, 5.146, 5.220
Mc, *Mac*, 16.73
me, 5.36, 5.55, 5.179, 5.220
means, notation of, 10.53, 12.58, table 12.3. *See also* tables
measure, defined, p. 898
measurement, US
  dividing numerals with, 7.40
  in general contexts, 9.13
  length, area, and volume, 10.69
  periods with, 10.67
  physical quantities, 9.13–17
  plurals of, 10.68
  repeated quantities, 9.17
  simple fractions, 9.14
  time, 10.71
  weight and capacity, 10.70
  whole numbers plus fractions, 9.15
  See also decimal points; fractions; International System of Units (Système international d'unités, SI); mathematical expressions; metric system
mechanical editing, 1.109, 2.45, 2.46. *See also* manuscript editing
medical terminology
  diseases, procedures, and such, 8.143
  drugs, 8.145
  infections, 8.144
  resources on, 8.142
medieval works, 7.46, 11.142–43, 14.266. *See also* classical works
meetings. *See* conferences; proceedings of conferences and symposia; speeches; unpublished and informally published materials; working papers
memoranda
  documentation of, 14.117, 14.240, 14.242
  treatment in text, 8.183
  See also pamphlets, brochures, and reports
metadata, A.10, A.36, A.38, p. 898
meteorological phenomena, 8.76
metric system
  abbreviations in, 10.52, 10.54–62
  dividing numerals with abbreviations, 7.40
  US vs. European spellings, 8.151
  See also International System of Units (Système international d'unités, SI)
Mexico, currency, 9.22
microform editions, 4.60, 14.120
mid-, 7.83, 7.85

Middle English, 7.46, 11.142–43
military terminology, 8.18
  armies, battalions, and such, 8.111, 9.48
  battles and campaigns, 8.113
  medals and awards, 8.114
  numbered military units, 9.48
  resources on, 10.15
  ships and other craft, 8.2, 8.115
  titles and ranks: abbreviation of, 10.13, 10.15; treatment in text, 8.18, 8.23–24
  twenty-four-hour system, 9.40–41
  wars and revolutions, 8.112
minus signs, 2.129, 6.81
Modern Language Association, 14.3
Moldavian language, 11.72–73
monarchs. *See* sovereigns and other rulers
money
  British and other non-US, 9.23–24
  dates with currency, 9.26
  dollar symbol in non-US currencies, 9.22
  K abbreviation in, 9.25
  large amounts of, 9.25
  noun phrases for, 5.25
  resources on, 9.22
  words vs. symbols and numerals for, 9.21
  See also bar codes
Montenegrin language, 11.74–75
month-day-year vs. day-month-year forms, 6.45, 6.106, 9.36–37. *See also* dates; time
months
  abbreviations, 10.40
  capitalization, 8.87
  dates in text, 9.32
  in documentation, 14.80
  See also dates
monuments, 8.56. *See also* sculpture
mood, of verbs, 5.117–20, 5.141
moon, 8.140
more, 5.84, 5.86–87, 5.160, 6.42
mosques, 8.56, 8.100
most, 5.85–87, 5.161
motion pictures. *See* audiovisual materials; movies and film
mottoes. *See* figures of speech; maxims
Mount and mountains, 8.52, 8.54, 10.31, 16.90
movements and styles, 8.78
  capitalization, 8.59–60
  coinage of adjectives for, 8.59
  descriptive designations for, 8.71
  period names, 8.72–73
  See also economic terminology and periods; historical and cultural terminology; political terminology
movies and film
  characters in, writing about, 5.123
  contributions to, as work made for hire, 4.10
  documentation of: author-date references, 15.53; DVDs and videocassettes, 14.279; filmstrips, 14.278; online, 14.280; reviews, 14.214, 14.216
  right of public performance and, 4.14
  sequels to, 9.44
  subsidiary rights and, 4.60
  titles of, 8.185
  See also audiovisual materials; television and television programs
MP3 audio files, 10.52, 14.198, 14.221
multiauthor volumes
  authors' names in, 1.49, 1.62, 1.94, 2.29, 16.115, fig. 1.10
  components: appendixes, 1.57; biographical notes (*see* biographical notes); contributors (*see* contributors); illustrations, numbering of, 3.11; notes, 1.59; table of contents, 1.37–38; unnumbered source notes, 3.31, 14.49
  documentation: bibliographies for each chapter, 14.57; biographical notes, 14.50; cross-references for chapters, 15.37; endnotes for each chapter, 14.38, 14.41, fig. 14.3; particular chapter in, 14.18, 14.112, 15.9; placement of reference lists in, 15.10; shortened citations for multiple chapters, 14.113; unnumbered source notes in, 3.31, 14.49
  editor's responsibilities, 2.29, 2.38–39
  publishing agreement for, 4.53, 4.59, fig. 4.1
  symposium proceedings as, 4.59
  See also manuscript preparation guidelines for authors; previously published materials

multimedia, electronic. *See* audiovisual materials; electronic publications; online media; publications in multiple formats
multiplication signs
  mathematical expressions, 12.20
  plant hybrids, 8.124
  Unicode character for, A.15, table 12.1
multivolume works
  components: acknowledgments, 1.41; pagination, 1.8; titles and volume numbers, 8.173
  consistent style across, 2.46, 2.56
  documentation of: authors' and editors' names, 14.127; chapters and parts of individual volumes, 14.125; one volume in two or more books (or parts), 14.126; particular volume in bibliography, 14.124; particular volume in note, 14.123; published over several years, 14.122–24, 14.151, 15.39; within series, 14.131; series compared with, 14.130; volume and page numbers, 14.121; work as whole, 14.122
  See also series of volumes; volumes and volume numbers
municipalities
  administrative agencies and departments, 8.62
  judicial bodies, 8.63, 14.291
  laws and ordinances, 14.300, 14.312
  legislative bodies, 8.61
  names: in addresses, punctuation, 6.46, 10.28, 10.30; alphabetizing, 16.90–93; capitalization, 5.67, 8.44, 8.52; English forms of foreign cities, 14.137; *Fort*, *Mount*, *Saint*, and such in, 10.31, 11.29, 16.90, 16.93; location of manuscript collections, 14.238; in newspaper names, 14.210–11, 16.48; on title page, 1.18
  titles and offices, 8.18, 8.21, 10.13–14
  See also civil and civic concerns; governmental entities; place of publication
museums, 4.94, 8.67
musical group names, 8.67
musical works
  documentation of: performances, 14.214, 14.216, 14.280, 15.53; published scores, 14.269; recordings, 14.276; unpublished scores, 14.270
  fair-use doctrine and, 4.80
  indexes of first lines of songs, 16.6, 16.144–45
  titles: indexing of, 16.50; instrumental works, 8.190; operas, songs, and such, 8.189; opus numbers, 8.191; recordings, 8.192; resources on, 8.188
  See also audiovisual materials; sound recordings
music writing
  abbreviations for terms in, 10.52
  letters used: chords, 7.69; dynamics, 7.71; major and minor keys, 7.70; musical pitches, 7.67; octaves, 7.68
  musical examples in, 3.4, fig. 3.5
  resources on, 7.66
  titles of works: indexing of, 16.50; instrumental works, 8.190; operas, songs, and such, 8.189; opus numbers, 8.191; recordings, 8.192; resources on, 8.188
my and *mine*, 5.47, 5.50

N, *n*, in tables, 3.70, 3.73, 3.83, fig. 3.20
n., *nn.* (note, notes), 14.157, 14.164, 16.111–12
n/a (not applicable), 3.65
namely, 6.43, 6.56, 6.65, 6.85
names, personal
  abbreviations: academic and professional designations, 10.4, 10.16, 10.20–21; author names, 1.18; civil titles, 10.13–14; given names, 10.11; initials, 10.12; list of, 14.55, fig. 14.7; *Jr.*, *Sr.*, *III*, and such with, 6.47, 7.38, 10.19, 16.41; military, 10.15; punctuation and spacing, 10.12; *Rev.* and *Hon.*, 10.18; social, 10.16–17
  alphabetizing, basic rules, 16.71–76 (*see also* alphabetizing)
  alternative spellings indicated, 6.104
  articles in, 16.76, 16.91–92
  capitalization, 8.4
  clerical titles with, 16.39
  consistency in spelling, 8.3
  deities and such, 8.90–91, 8.94

names, personal (*continued*)
  epithets, 8.33–34
  familiar forms, 11.98, 11.118, 14.73, 16.33, 16.71
  hyphenated and extended, 8.6, 16.36, 16.72
  incomplete or unknown, 16.43–44
  indexing (*see under* indexing)
  initials (*see* initials)
  kinship terms and, 8.35
  letters standing for, 7.62
  in list of contributors, 1.62, fig. 1.10
  Mac or *Mc* in, 16.73
  married women's, 8.11, 16.36
  monarchs, popes, and such, 16.37
  nobility, titles, and such, 16.38, 16.66
  non-English: in English context, 8.7–17; indexing of, 16.67, 16.76–87; particles with, 8.5, 11.24
  nonliteral use, 8.60
  numerals with, 9.42–43, 16.66
  O' in, 16.74
  particles with, 8.5, 8.7–10, 16.71, 16.84
  patronymic, 8.12
  personal usage preferences, 8.3–4
  personifications, 8.36
  as phrasal adjectives, 5.91
  plurals of, 7.8, 7.10
  possessive forms of, 7.16–18, 7.21
  pseudonyms, 14.81–84, 15.34, 16.34
  resources on, 7.38, 8.3, 16.71, 16.84
  Saint, *St.*, and such, 10.26–27, 10.31, 16.75, 16.93
  saints (e.g., Saint Francis), 8.92, 10.26, 14.74, 16.42
  2-em dash to indicate omitted, 6.90
  word division, 7.38
  words derived from, 8.59–60
  See also authors' names; contributors; editors' names; titles and offices; translators' names
names, proper
  abbreviations: agencies and organizations, 10.24–25; firms and companies, 10.22–23; indexing of, 16.46
  articles in, 16.88
  associations, 8.69
  beginning with lowercase letter, 8.68, 8.153
  brand names and trademarks, 4.16, 7.76, 8.68, 8.145, 8.152–53

names, proper (*continued*)
  broadcast networks, channels, and such, 8.185, 10.5, 10.25
  continents, countries, cities, oceans, and such, 5.67, 8.44, 8.52
  disease names, 8.143
  epithets, 8.47
  foreign names, 7.51, 8.54, 8.58, 11.29
  Fort, *Mount*, *Saint*, and such in, 10.31, 11.29, 16.90, 16.93
  governmental bodies, 8.61–64
  in historical period designations, 8.70–72
  hyphens in, 16.72
  indexing (*see under* indexing)
  laws and theories (e.g., Boyle's law), 8.147
  mountains, rivers, and such, 8.52, 8.54, 10.31, 16.90
  newspapers and periodicals, 7.11, 16.48–49
  numbers with, 9.42–50
  personal (*see* names, personal)
  political and economic organizations, and such, 8.65, 8.69
  political divisions (national, state, city), 1.27, 8.50–51
  popular names for places, 8.47
  possessives of, 7.19, 7.25
  public places and monuments, 8.55–58
  real vs. metaphorical, 8.49, 8.108
  regions, 8.46, 8.53
  religious, 8.90–92
  ships and other craft, 8.2, 8.115–17
  variants of, 16.32
  word division, 7.38
  words derived from, 5.67, 8.1, 8.44, 8.46, 8.59–60
  See also business and commerce: names; institutions: names; names, personal; organizations: names; place-names
National Information Standards Organization (NISO), 1.34, 1.105. *See also* International Organization for Standardization (ISO)
nationality, terms for, 8.37–38. *See also* countries; peoples
nations. *See* countries; governmental entities; nationality
Native Americans, 7.9, 8.37

natural phenomena, named events, 8.76
n.d. (no data), 3.65
n.d. (no date), 10.43, 14.152, 14.276, 15.17, 15.41
neither–nor, 5.32–34, 5.195, 5.214
Netherlands. *See* Dutch language
networks, broadcast, 8.185, 10.5, 10.25. *See also* television and television programs
new series (*n.s.*), 10.43, 14.132, 14.195
newspapers
  copyright issues, 4.8, 4.10
  documentation of: in author-reference system, 15.47; basic information needed, 14.171, 14.203; headlines and headline-style in, 14.204; letters to the editor, 14.208; names of foreign papers, 14.211; names of papers, 14.210; news services, 14.212; online multimedia, 14.280; regular columns, 14.205; in text vs. bibliography, 14.206; unsigned articles, 14.207; weekend supplements, magazines, and such, 14.209
  names: as author, 14.207; city name in, 14.210–11, 16.48; foreign-language, 14.211; indexing of, 16.48; initial *the* in, 8.168, 14.210–11; italics for, 14.210; as part of building or award names, 8.170; plurals of, 7.11
news releases, 14.213
news services, 14.212
New Testament
  books listed, 10.50
  capitalization, 8.105
  See also Bible
New Zealand, currency, 9.22
nicknames, 8.33–34, 8.47
9/11 (September 11, 2001), 9.36
no, 5.32, 5.65, 6.39
no. (musical works), 8.190
nobility
  alphabetizing names of, 16.66
  indexing names of, 16.38, 16.66
  resources on, 8.31
  titles in text, 8.31
  See also sovereigns and other rulers
no data (*n.d.*), 3.65
no date (*n.d.*), 10.43, 14.152, 14.276, 15.17, 15.41
"no derivatives" clause, 4.57
noncommercial clause, 4.57
none, 5.32, 5.64, 5.65, 5.220
noon and midnight, 9.39
no place (*n.p.*), 10.43, 14.138, 14.169
North, *northern*, 8.45–46
Norwegian language, 11.65–66
not, 5.102, 6.40–41
notch binding, defined, p. 898
note numbers
  basic format, 14.15
  keyed to line or page numbers, 14.48, figs. 14.5–6
  multiple citations and references, 14.23
  placement of, 14.21–22, 14.48
  and punctuation, 14.21
  reducing number of, 14.52
  renumbering of, 2.59
  sequencing of numbers and symbols, 14.20, 14.44, 14.47, fig. 14.4
  single or several consecutive, 14.164
  symbols instead of, 14.20, 14.44, 14.47, fig. 14.4
  in tables, 2.28, 3.76–77
  in text vs. in notes, 14.19
  volume and pages numbers with, 14.164
notes, 14.19–55
  abbreviation of term, 14.157, 14.164, 16.111–12
  abbreviations and ampersands in, 10.3, 10.23–24, 10.28, 10.46–51
  added to quotations, 13.7
  author-date reference system with, 14.45, 15.30, fig. 15.2
  authors' names (*see* authors' names)
  biblical citations in, 10.46–51, 14.253–54
  bibliographies in relation to, 14.56
  citations plus commentary in, 14.32
  converted in cleanup process, 2.77
  cross-checking of, 2.29
  cross-references to, 14.23
  editing of, 2.59, 2.60–61
  of editor or translator plus author, 14.46, fig. 14.4
  electronic enhancements cited in, 14.198
  foot- plus end-, 14.44–46, fig. 14.4
  foot- vs. end-, 14.38–43, fig. 14.2, fig. 14.3
  format of, 1.59
  frequent reference to single source, 13.65

notes (*continued*)
  generic markup of, 2.78
  indexing of, 14.164, 16.109–13, 16.117
  keyed to line or page numbers, 14.48, figs. 14.5–6
  manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.20
  multiple citations in single, 14.23, 14.52
  numbering: multiple citations and references, 14.23; placement of, 14.21; sequencing of numbers and symbols, 14.20, 14.44, 14.47, fig. 14.4; in tables, 2.28, 3.76–77; in text vs. in notes, 14.19; with titles and subheads, 14.22; unnumbered notes in relation to, 14.47
  original-language quotations in, 13.75
  page, volume, and other locating information: abbreviations for *page*, *volume*, and such, 14.157; arabic vs. roman numerals, 14.154; *ff.* and *passim*, 14.156; folio editions, 14.162; illustrations and tables, 14.165; line numbers, 14.163; numbered notes, 14.164; page and chapter numbers, 14.160; ranges (inclusive numbers), 14.111–13, 14.155; signed signatures, 14.161; specific pages, 14.174; when to omit *p.* and *pp.*, 14.158; when to omit *vol.*, 14.159
  paragraphing in, 14.35
  part title for, 1.47
  in previously published materials, 2.42
  proofreading, 14.36, fig. 14.1
  publication facts (*see* publication details)
  quotation within note, 14.33
  quotations with original references to, 13.7
  referenced in text citations, 15.22
  remedies for excessive: abbreviations for frequently cited works, 14.54–55, fig. 14.7; avoiding overlong, 14.51; several citations in single, 14.52; text citations, 14.53
  scholarly symbols in, 10.44
  see and *cf.* in, 14.37
  substantive (or discursive) type of, 14.34, 14.44, 16.110
  for tables (*see under* tables)

notes (*continued*)
  titles of works in (*see* titles of works in documentation)
  unnumbered: acknowledgments in, 14.50; biographical notes in, 1.49, 14.50; for epigraphs, 1.36, 1.48, 14.47; keyed to text by line or page numbers, 14.48, figs. 14.5–6; numbered notes in relation to, 14.20, 14.44, 14.47, fig. 14.4; referring to entire chapter, 1.48, 14.22; source notes in, 1.49, 14.47, 14.49
  in web-based publications, 1.117
  See also documentation; endnotes; footnotes; notes and bibliography system; *and specific materials to document*
notes and bibliography system
  basic format: bibliography entry, 14.16; books as model for other materials, 14.68; elements to include, 14.69; examples and variations, 14.18; flexibility and consistency, 14.70; notes, 14.15; page numbers and other locators, 14.17
  disciplines that use, 14.2
  examples and variations, 14.18
  flexibility of, 14.1
  relationship of notes and bibliographies in, 14.56
  See also bibliographies; documentation; notes; shortened citations; titles of works in documentation; *and specific materials to document*
not only–but also, 5.195, 5.214
nouns, 5.4–25
  adjective pronoun as modifier, 5.65
  adjectives as, 5.22, 5.25, 5.92, 5.226, 7.25
  adverbs as, 5.24–25, 5.154
  agreement of personal pronoun with, 5.40
  appositive, 5.21
  articles with coordinate, 5.73
  attributive, 5.22
  case: definition, 5.12; function of, 5.16; genitive, 5.12, 5.19–20; nominative, 5.17; objective (accusative), 5.18
  coinages, 7.13
  definitions: generally, 5.4; common (concrete, abstract, and collective), 5.5; count, 5.7; mass (noncount),

nouns (*continued*)
  5.8; noun-equivalents and substantives, 5.10; proper, 5.6
  em dash between pronoun and introductory, 6.83
  functional variations of, 5.22–25
  gerunds as, 5.25
  indexing of, 16.9, 16.62
  as interjections (exclamatory), 5.210
  mass noun with prepositional phrase, 5.9
  non-noun words and phrases as, 5.25
  plurals: alternative forms, 7.6; compounds, 7.7; numbers, 7.14, 9.54; proper, 7.8; with singular meaning, 7.19; standard forms, 7.5
  possessives, 7.15 (*see also* possessives)
  prepositional phrase as, 5.173
  properties: case, 5.12; gender, 5.14; list of, 5.11; number, 5.13, 5.130–31; person, 5.15
  series of, and articles, 5.73
  titles of works as singular, 8.164
  verbs as, 5.23
  See also names, personal; names, proper; place-names; pronouns
noun-to-verb transitions, 5.23
n.p. (no place, no publisher, no page), 10.43, 14.138, 14.169
n.s. (new series), 10.43, 14.132, 14.195
nth degree, 9.6. *See also* ordinal numbers
numbering
  appendixes, 1.57
  captions, 2.25, 3.13
  chapters, 1.47–48, 1.52, 8.178
  double or multiple, 1.55, 2.25–26, 3.11, 3.51, 12.25
  of lists, 6.94
  manuscript pages in electronic file, 2.35
  of mathematical expressions, 12.24–25
  paragraphs, 1.116
  sections and subsections, 1.55, 1.116, 16.13
  subhead considerations, 1.55
  See also chapter numbers; illustrations; issue numbers; note numbers; numbers; page numbers (folios); pagination; tables
numbers
  abbreviations and symbols with, 9.16–17
numbers (*continued*)
  addresses and thoroughfares, 9.51–53
  alignment, in tables, 3.70, 3.84, fig. 3.13, figs. 3.15–16, fig. 3.20
  alphabetizing in indexes, 16.65–66
  a or *an* with, 7.44
  basic principles, 9.1–2; alternative rule, 9.3; consistency, flexibility, and readability, 9.1, 9.7, 9.13–14, 9.19
  commas between digits, 9.55
  dates: all-numeral style, 6.45, 6.106, 9.36–37; centuries, 8.70, 9.33–34; decades, 9.34; eras, 9.35, 9.63; month and day, 9.32; periods, 8.70; year abbreviated, 9.31; year alone, 9.30
  editorial uses: chart labels, 3.44; divisions in publications and documents, 9.27–29; indexes, 16.65–66; lists, 6.94, 6.123–26; notes applying to specific parts of table, 3.77; outlines, 6.94, 6.126
  full style, 9.61
  Greek, 11.137, table 11.5
  hundreds, thousands, and hundred thousands, 9.4, 9.55
  hyphenation guide, 7.85
  hyphens to separate, 6.77
  inclusive (or continuing) (*see* inclusive [or continuing] numbers)
  large, 9.8–12
  line breaks and, 7.39
  million, *billion* (US vs UK), 9.8
  in names and titles: military units, 9.48; monarchs, popes, and such, 9.42; personal names, 9.43, 10.19; places of worship, 9.49; political and judicial divisions, 9.47; sequels, 9.44; successive governments and dynasties, 9.46; unions and lodges, 9.50; vehicles and vessels, 9.45
  nd, *th*, and *rd* in ordinals (e.g., 122nd), 9.6
  old-style, avoided in tabular matter, 3.84
  physical quantities: abbreviations and symbols, 9.16–17, 10.52, 10.69–70; repeated quantities, 9.17; simple fractions, 9.14; spelled out, 9.13; whole numbers plus fractions, 9.15
  plurals of, 7.14, 9.54
  possessive forms of, 7.16

numbers (*continued*)
  ranges (*see* inclusive [or continuing] numbers)
  resources on, 9.1
  sentence beginning with, 9.5
  sequencing of symbols and, 14.20, 14.44, 14.47, fig. 14.4
  space between digits, 9.56
  spelled out: alternative rule, 9.3; consistency, readability, and flexibility, 9.7; direct discourse, 13.42; fractions, 9.14–15; general rule, 9.2; hundreds, thousands, and hundred thousands (round numbers), 9.4; hyphens with, 7.85; marking manuscript for, 2.90; marking proofs for, 2.126; *to* with inclusive numbers, 9.59; number beginning a sentence, 9.5; ordinals, 9.6; physical quantities, 9.13
  in titles of works, 14.96
  uses, other: binary systems, 9.11; decimal fractions, 9.19–20; *dex* with, 9.12; historical periods, 8.70; mass, in chemical terms, 8.149; *mega-*, *giga-*, *tera-*, and such, 9.10–11, 10.52, 10.57; monetary amounts, 9.21–26; ordinals, 9.6; percentages, 9.18; powers of ten, 9.9; telephone numbers, 6.77
  See also arabic numerals; chapter numbers; currency; decimal points; fractions; inclusive (or continuing) numbers; International System of Units (Système international d'unités, SI); issue numbers; line numbers; mathematical expressions; measurement, US; metric system; note numbers; numbering; ordinal numbers; page numbers (folios); roman numerals; subscripts; superscripts; volumes and volume numbers
number sign, 3.77, 14.12
numerals. *See* arabic numerals; numbering; numbers; roman numerals
numerical order, subentries in, 16.69

O', 16.74
O and *oh*, 6.37, 7.45
oaths, 8.83
oceans, 5.67, 8.44, 8.52
o'clock, 9.38–39, 10.42
OCR (optical character recognition), 2.40, 10.52, p. 898
of, 7.24, 7.27
offprints, 1.48, A.39, p. 898
offset printing
  continuous-tone images in, 3.3, figs. 3.1–2
  definition, p. 898
  description, A.47, fig. A.6
of-genitive, 5.20, 5.187
of whom, *of which*, 5.60–61
Old English, 7.46, 11.142–43
old series (*o.s.*), 14.132
Old Testament
  books listed, 10.48
  capitalization, 8.105
  See also Bible
online media
  documentation of: audiovisual materials, generally, 14.274; books, 14.167, 14.169; dictionaries and encyclopedias, 14.247–48; legal and public documents, 14.282; multimedia, 14.280; sound recordings, 14.277
  titles of, 8.186–87
  See also electronic publications
only, 5.182
op. (musical works), 8.191
op. cit., 10.43, 14.31
open-source model, 4.57
operas, 8.189. *See also* musical works
optical character recognition (OCR), 2.40, 10.52, p. 898
or
  in double titles of works, 8.165, 14.99
  pronoun and antecedent with, 5.32–34
  punctuation with, 6.28, 6.43
  slash instead of, 6.104
  See also conjunctions
ordinal numbers, 9.6
  day of the month as, 9.32
  in foreign languages, 11.30
  in legal-style citations, 14.286
  numbered streets, 9.52
  permissible changes to, 14.96
  personal names with, 9.43, 10.19
  successive governments and dynasties, 9.46
  styling of, 9.6

organizations
  abbreviations used in, list of, 10.72
  names: abbreviations, 10.24; acronyms, 16.64; articles in, 8.67, 16.88; as authors, 14.92, 15.36; in documentation, 14.92, 15.36; foreign-language, 11.8, 11.29; indexing of, 16.46, 16.64, 16.88–89; numbered branches of, 9.50; periodical titles in, 8.170; place-names within, 6.46, 6.81; possessives of, 7.19; treatment in text, 8.61–69
  political and economic organizations and movements, 8.65–66, 8.69
  titles and offices in, 8.24, 8.26
  See also business and commerce; governmental entities; institutions
original expression and originality, 4.3, 4.5, 4.68. *See also* intellectual property rights
ornaments for text break, 1.56
orphans (lines), 2.113, p. 899
"orphan works" problem, 4.75
o.s. (*old series*), 14.132
outlines
  basic principles, 6.121
  parts of a book, 1.4
  publishing process, 2.2, fig. 2.1, fig. 2.2
  punctuation and format, 6.94, 6.126
  See also lists
Oxford comma, 6.18–21. *See also* commas

p., *pp.*, 10.43, 14.157–58
page
  abbreviation of term, 10.43, 14.157–58
  bad breaks in, 16.138
  checking overall appearance, 2.113–14
  design specifications, A.18, figs. A.3–4
  See also page numbers (folios); pagination; proofs
page numbers (folios)
  appropriate use of, 1.5, 9.27
  blind or unexpressed, 1.5–7, 1.45, 1.48, 3.6
  cross-checking text citations and reference lists for, 2.29, 15.20
  cross-references to specific pages within same text, 2.32, 2.57
  in documentation, 14.14–17, 15.8; agreement of text citations and reference lists, 15.20; arabic vs. roman numerals, 14.154; block quotations, 15.25; chapters and contributions accompanied by, 14.111–13; electronic books, 14.166–69; *ff.* and *passim*, 14.156; *ibid.* with, in shortened citations, 14.29; inclusive, 14.111–13, 14.155; legal-style citations, 14.285, 14.288; magazine articles, 14.199; multiple references to same source, 15.26; multivolume works, 14.121, 14.123, 14.125–27; in notes, 14.160; *p.* and *pp.*, 14.157–58; periodicals, 14.174, 14.183; placement of, 15.22; reprint and modern editions, 14.119; volume and note numbers with (e.g., 10:122), 14.159, 14.164, 14.186
  drop, 1.5, 1.6, 1.7, 1.48
  "dummy," 1.76
  inclusive range of, 3.81, 6.78, 9.27, 9.34, 9.58, 14.111–13, 14.155, 16.100
  location of, 1.5
  of manuscript, 2.35
  in multivolume works, 1.8
  proofreading of, 2.111, 2.130
  in running heads for endnotes, 1.14, 1.59, 2.73, 2.111, 14.42, fig. 14.2
  in table of contents, 1.37, fig. 1.5
  in web-based publications, 1.116
  See also inclusive (or continuing) numbers; locators
page proof, defined, p. 899. *See also* proofs
pagination
  basic guidelines for, 1.5–8
  blind or unexpressed, 1.5–7, 1.45, 1.48, 3.6
  determining page 1, 1.45
  of final manuscript for production, 2.72
  of folio editions, 14.162
  index preparation and, 16.108
  journals, 1.76
  multivolume works, 1.8
  parts of books: appendixes, 1.57; back matter, 1.4, 1.7; chapter openings, 1.7, 1.48; concluding elements, 1.52; dedication, 1.6, 1.35; epigraphs, 1.36; front matter, 1.4, 1.6; galleries, illustrations and tables, 1.7, 1.38,

pagination (*continued*)
    2.112; introduction in front matter, 1.42; introduction in main text, 1.46; part-title page with text, 1.7; second half title, 1.7, 1.45; text and back matter, 1.4, 1.7, 1.46
  proofreading for correct, 2.111–12
  recto pages: always odd-numbered, 1.3, 1.5; beginning of gallery, 3.6; definition, p. 901; index's first page, 1.63; journal's first page, 1.76; in offprint planning, 1.48; parts of book starting on, 1.4, 1.48, 1.50; running heads for, 1.10, 1.11, 1.14
  in signed signatures, 14.161
  specified on final manuscript for production, 2.72–73
  verso pages: always even-numbered, 1.3, 1.5; blank after half title, 1.17; definition, p. 904; journal's last page, 1.76; page after second half title, 1.45; parts of book starting on, 1.4; running heads for, 1.10, 1.11, 1.14; series information on, 1.17
  See also page numbers (folios)
paintings, 8.193. *See also* artwork
pamphlets, brochures, and reports, 14.249
  art exhibition catalogs, 14.250
  congressional reports and such, 14.297
  in manuscript collections, 14.240–41
  in private collections, 14.242
  in published collections, 14.117
  titles of, 8.183
paper
  environmental issues, A.46
  opacity, p. 899
  selection and standards, 1.34, A.44
  sizes of, A.45
  trim size, p. 903
  See also photocopying
paperback rights, 4.60
paperbacks, 4.60, p. 899. *See also* covers of journals and paperback books
paper durability statement, 1.19, 1.34, fig. 1.1, figs. 1.3–4
paper-only editing. *See* manuscript editing: paper-only
papers, unpublished, 14.226–27. *See also* unpublished and informally published materials
paragraph mark, 2.95, 2.123, 10.44
paragraphs
  conjunction at beginning of, 5.206
  marking manuscript for, 2.95
  marking proofs for, 2.123
  notes with multiple, 14.35
  numbering of, 1.116
  numbers of, as locators, 14.155, 16.13, 16.108
  quotations: block, 13.20–22, 13.54; ellipsis points at beginning of, 13.54; partial or whole paragraphs omitted, 13.54; quotation marks for direct discourse, 13.37; run-in, 13.30–31
  software-generated styles, 2.79
  symbols for, 2.95, 2.123, 10.44
paragraph style, in indexes. *See* run-in style (indexes)
parallel structure, 5.212
  auxiliary verbs and, 5.215
  lists and outlines, 6.121
  paired joining terms and, 5.214
  prepositions and, 5.213
  subheads, 2.56
paraphrasing, 4.82, 13.4
parentheses, 6.92–96
  em dashes instead of, 6.82
  italic vs. roman type, 6.5
  marking proofs for, 2.129
  other punctuation with, 6.96; brackets, 6.95, 6.99; commas, 6.53, 6.96; exclamation points, 6.74, 6.96; periods, 6.13; question marks, 6.70
  in relation to surrounding text, 6.5
  uses: abbreviations, first use of, 10.3; brand names, 8.145; clarifying use of italics or emphasis, 13.60; documentation of journal articles, 14.173, 14.180–85, 15.46; enclosing numbers or letters in lists, 6.94, 6.123; glosses or translations, 7.50; mathematical expressions, 12.26–27, 12.29; multiple sets of parentheses, 6.95, 6.99; note reference numbers and, 14.21; table titles and heads, 3.53–54, fig. 3.12; telephone numbers, 6.77; text citations for quotations, 13.62–70; translations of quotations, 13.73–74

- parentheses (*continued*)
  - *See also* glosses; parenthetical elements; punctuation; text citations
- parenthetical elements
  - indexes: chapter numbers in note citations, 16.111; *continued* lines, 16.139; cross-references, 16.18, 16.20; names with, 16.34–39, 16.42–46, 16.62, 16.98
  - punctuation of, 6.24–27, 6.31, 6.43, 13.62
  - quotations, sources for: block quotations, 13.68–70; foreign-language materials, 13.71–79; frequent references to single source, 13.65; full citation for, 13.63; *ibid.* with, 13.64; punctuation of, 13.62; run-in quotations, 13.66–67
  - scholarly abbreviations in, 10.43
  - in table titles and heads, 3.53–54, fig. 3.12
  - *See also* text citations
- Parliament (UK), 14.310–13
- participles and participial phrases
  - as adjectives, 5.89, 5.109
  - adverbs as, 5.109
  - *be*-verbs with, 5.151
  - dangling, 5.112
  - disguised conjunctions as, 5.205
  - formation of, 5.108–9, 5.136, 5.139
  - gerunds compared with, 5.111
  - as nouns, 5.25
  - past, 5.89, 5.139
  - prepositions and, 5.171
  - present, 5.136
  - punctuation of, 6.35
  - word division, 7.36
  - *See also* gerunds
- particles
  - names with: capitalization, 8.5, 8.7–10; foreign names with, 8.7–9, 11.24, 11.99; indexing, 16.71, 16.84
  - in phrasal verbs, 5.100
  - in prepositional adverbs, 5.156
- parties, political, 8.65
- parts and part titles
  - articles, stories, chapters, and such, 8.175, 8.178
  - collected works, 8.176
  - division into, 1.47, fig. 1.5
  - documentation of, 14.154, 14.157
- parts and part titles (*continued*)
  - editing of, 2.55
  - forewords, prefaces, and such, 8.177
  - introductions to, 1.37
  - in letters and diaries, 1.51
  - manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.16
  - numerals for, 9.27
  - pagination, 1.4, 1.7, 1.45
  - part-title page with text, 1.7
  - in poetry, 1.50
  - references to, 8.177–78
  - running heads in, 1.11, 1.15
  - second half title, 1.7, 1.45
  - in table of contents, 1.37, fig. 1.5
  - *See also* chapters
- parts of books. *See* books: parts of
- *Party*/*party*, 8.65
- *passim*, 7.53, 14.156, 16.13
- passive voice, 5.104, 5.115, 5.188
- patents, 14.230, 15.50
- pattern matching, p. 899
- PDF (portable document format) files
  - definition, p. 899
  - e-books as, A.38
  - edited manuscript sent as, 2.68, 2.84
  - electronic journals as, 1.72
  - indexer's use of, 16.102, 16.105
  - manuscript submission via, 2.5
  - prepress proofs as, 2.104, A.43
  - print process and, A.42
  - stable page numbers in, 1.116
  - web-based publications as, A.36
  - XML and, A.30
- pedigree charts, 3.45, fig. 3.10. *See also* charts and graphs
- peoples
  - class, 8.40
  - colors designating, 8.39
  - compound nationalities, 8.38
  - descriptive titles for, 8.29
  - epithets and nicknames, 8.33–34
  - ethnic and national groups, 7.9, 8.37–38
  - generations, 8.41
  - kinship names, 8.35
  - personifications, 8.36
  - physical characteristics, 8.42
  - *See also* bias-free language; names, personal; titles and offices
- *per*, vs. slash, 6.107

percent, *percentage*, 3.80, 9.18
perfect binding, defined, p. 899
performance works, audiovisual
  documentation of, 14.214, 14.216, 14.280, 15.53
  rights and, 4.14, 4.60
periodicals
  copyright registration forms for, 4.47
  definition, 14.170
  documentation of: abbreviated journal titles, 14.179, 15.13, 15.44; basic information needed, 14.171; initials for authors' given names, 15.43; issue number in parentheses, 15.46; journals vs. magazines, 14.172; magazines, 14.199–202, 15.47; newspapers, 15.47; page numbers in citations, 14.174; punctuation in citations, 14.173; reviews, 14.214–17; sentence-style capitalization for titles of works, 15.45
  ISSN for, 1.19, 1.74, 1.78, 1.97
  regular departments or columns, 8.175, 14.202
  serial rights, 4.60
  titles: abbreviations of, 10.7, 16.49; articles and features within, 8.175; indexing of, 16.49; initial *the* in, 8.168; italics for, 8.161; *magazine*, *journal*, *review*, and such, 8.169; as part of building or award names, 8.170; sentence-style capitalization, 15.45; treatment in text, 8.166
  volume, issue, and page numbers in, 9.28
  See also journals; magazines; newspapers; reviews
periods (punctuation), 6.12–15
  abbreviations with, 5.220, 10.4, 10.20, 10.22
  marking manuscript for, 2.90
  marking proofs for, 2.129
  other punctuation with: brackets, 6.13; closing quotation marks, 6.9; ellipsis points, 13.51; exclamation points, 6.118; parentheses, 6.13, 6.96; question marks, 6.118; 3-em dashes (in bibliography), 6.91
  permissible changes to, 11.4, 13.7
  single space after, 2.9, 2.11, 6.7
  uses, 6.12; captions, 3.21, 3.23; colon vs., preceding quotation, 13.19; double or multiple numeration, 1.55, 2.25–26, 3.11, 3.51, 12.25; indexes, 16.97; initials of personal names, 7.62, 8.4, 10.4, 10.12; outlines and lists, 6.124–26; publishing history on copyright page, 1.25; run-in subheads, 2.17; US measure, 10.67
  when to omit, 6.14, 6.117, 14.105, 14.178
  See also ellipsis points; punctuation; suspension points; URLs (uniform resource locators)
periods of time
  cultural, 8.73
  decades, 9.34
  descriptive designations, 8.71
  eras, 9.35, 9.63, 10.39
  geological, 8.134
  numerical designations, 8.70
  traditional period names, 8.72
  See also dates; time
permissible changes to quoted materials
  basic approach, 2.41
  capitalization, 8.163, 13.7–8, 14.96
  cautions about, 2.41, 2.58
  foreign-language materials, 8.163, 11.4, 11.10
  initial *a*, *an*, or *the*, 8.167
  punctuation, 8.163, 11.4, 11.10, 13.7, 13.28–29, 14.96
  spelling, 13.7
  titles of works, 8.163, 8.167, 11.4, 11.10, 14.96
  translations and, 13.77–78
  typography and layout, 13.8
  See also interpolations and clarifications
permissions, 4.1
  acknowledgment of, 1.40, 3.31, 4.98–99, 14.49
  vs. attribution alone, 4.85–86
  author's and editor's responsibilities for, 2.3, 2.38, 4.68, 13.2–3
  on copyright page, 1.19, 1.30, 4.71, fig. 1.4
  definition, 4.17
  digital rights management and, A.40
  fees and record keeping, 4.72, 4.91–92, 4.94, 4.97, 4.100–101

permissions (*continued*)
  manuscript and editorial concerns, 2.3, 2.63
  obtaining permissions: archives' restrictions, 4.76; automating process of, 4.91; basic principles, 4.69–71, 4.92; beyond immediate use, 4.71, 4.73; communications on, 4.92–97; missing copyright owner, 4.75; "orphan works" problem, 4.75; sample letters, 4.93, fig. 4.3
  publisher's handling of, 4.66–67
  signed releases and field notes, 13.47
  special types of material: archival material, 4.76; author's previously published material, 4.62, 4.71; compilations, 4.101; illustrations, 3.18, 3.28, 3.29, 3.31, 4.94–97; interviews, 14.219–20; unpublished works, 4.74, 4.76
  US Supreme Court on, 4.86
  See also acknowledgments; copyright; credits and credit lines; fair-use doctrine; source lines and notes
personal communications, 14.218, 14.222–23, 15.48
personifications, 5.41, 8.36
PEs (printer's errors), 2.131, p. 900
Philippines, names in, 16.87
philosophical terms and movements, 7.55, 8.78, 8.93
phonetics, 6.100, 7.50, 11.13
photocopy, use of term, 14.228
photocopying
  cautions about, 2.6, 2.40, 2.89
  classroom and educational use, 4.60, 4.88, 4.90
  copyright issues, 4.17, 4.34, 4.55, 4.60, 4.62, 4.88, 4.90
  fair-use doctrine and, 1.97, 4.88–91
  of illustrations as record, 3.18
  by libraries, 4.89
  of manuscript, 2.6, 2.68, 2.88
  process and fees for, 1.97
  See also print-on-demand titles
photographs
  callouts for, 2.27
  commissioned, 3.32
  copyright registration forms for, 4.47
  fair use of, 4.83
  halftones, 3.3, 3.6, figs. 3.1–2, p. 896
photographs (*continued*)
  permissions and credit lines for, 3.28–29, 3.32, 4.94–97
  previously published, 2.44
  reproduction-quality prints, 2.24
  titles of, 8.193
  See also illustrations
photomicrographs, 3.27
phrases
  adjectives and, 5.78, 5.91, 7.81
  adverbs and, 5.154, 5.158, 6.36, 7.82
  articles as affecting meaning of, 5.74
  interjected, 6.41–42
  introductory, 6.35–36
  monetary amounts, as nouns, 5.25
  parallel structure in, 5.212
  parenthetical and descriptive, 6.24–27
  punctuation: colons, 6.62; commas, 6.24–27, 6.30–31, 6.35–36, 6.40–42; periods, 6.12; quotation marks, 7.57
  restrictive and nonrestrictive, 5.21, 6.22–23, 6.26
  used as words, 7.58
  verbs and, 5.100, 5.168, 5.177
  See also clauses; conjunctions; parenthetical elements; prepositions
physical characteristics, 8.42
physical quantities
  abbreviations and symbols, 9.16–17, 10.52, 10.69–70
  repeated quantities, 9.17
  simple fractions, 9.14
  spelled out, 9.13
  whole numbers plus fractions, 9.15
  See also International System of Units; measurement, US; metric system
physical science terminology
  chemical names and symbols, 8.148, 10.66
  laws and theories, 8.147
  mass number, 8.149
  metric units, 8.151
  radiations, 8.150
  resources on, 8.146
  See also scientific and technical terminology
pica, defined, A.21, p. 899
Pinyin system
  alphabetizing, 8.15, 16.78
  apostrophes, hyphens, and tone marks, 11.104

- Pinyin system (*continued*)
  - common names, list of, 11.105
  - exceptions to, 11.103
  - widespread use of, 11.102
  - *See also* Chinese language; Wade-Giles system
- pixel (resolution), A.21, p. 901
- place, conjunctions as indicating, 5.201–2
- place-names
  - adjectival use of, 5.67, 8.44
  - alphabetizing of, 16.90–93
  - continents, countries, cities, oceans, and such, 5.67, 8.44, 8.52
  - in documentation: manuscript collection depositories, 14.238; meetings and conferences, 14.226–28
  - in foreword, 1.39
  - *Fort*, *Mount*, *Saint*, and such, 10.31, 11.29, 16.90, 16.93
  - indexing: alphabetizing, 16.90–93; definite article with, 16.91–92; *Fort*, *Mount*, *Saint*, and such, 16.90, 16.93; old vs. present forms, 16.29; person or thing with same, 16.62; from shortened form in text, 16.44; two places with same name, 16.45
  - institutional names with, 6.46, 6.81
  - on maps, 2.57, 3.20
  - old vs. present forms, 16.29
  - plurals of, 7.8, 7.10
  - political divisions, 8.50–51
  - popular names and epithets, 8.47
  - possessives of, 7.16–19
  - public places and structures, 8.55–58
  - and punctuation, 6.17, 6.46
  - real vs. metaphorical names, 8.49
  - regions, 8.46, 8.53
  - resources on, 8.43
  - urban areas, 8.48
  - word division, 7.38
  - *See also* geographical terminology; maps; place of publication
- place of publication
  - basic format, 14.133
  - books published before 1900, 14.134
  - city in, 14.135
  - country of printing vs., 1.27
  - English names for foreign city names, 14.137
  - journals, 14.191
  - "no place," 10.43, 14.138, 14.169
- place of publication (*continued*)
  - online works without, 14.169
  - state, province, or country, when to specify, 14.136
  - surmised, 14.138
- plagiarism, 4.68, 4.85
- plain-text file, defined, p. 899
- planets, 8.137–41. *See also* earth
- plants
  - cultivated varieties (cultivars), 8.129
  - domestic breeds, 8.128
  - scientific names: authorities on, 8.118; author names, 8.123; divisions higher than genus, 8.125; English derivatives from taxonomic system, 8.126; genus, species, and subspecies, 8.119–21; hybrids, 8.124; unspecified species and varieties, 8.122
  - vernacular names, 8.127–29
  - *See also* scientific and technical terminology
- plates
  - definitions, 3.5, p. 900
  - indexing of, 16.116
  - lists of, 1.38, fig. 1.7
  - numbering, 2.25
  - text references to, 3.9
  - when to use or omit term, 3.23
  - *See also* credits and credit lines; galleries; illustrations
- Platonic ideas, 8.93
- plays
  - divisions of, 8.182
  - documentation of: classical works, 14.260, 14.267–68; frequently cited works, 13.65, 14.54; reviews, 14.214, 14.216; short forms, 14.268
  - ellipsis points in verse drama, 13.55
  - quotation of, 13.44–45, 13.55
  - titles of, 8.181
  - *See also* classical works; dialogue; speech
- pledges, 8.83
- plurals
  - abbreviations, 7.14, 10.52, 14.157
  - alternative forms, 7.6
  - letters (alphabet), 7.14, 7.59–61
  - Native American group names, 7.9
  - nouns: coinages, 7.13; compound, 7.7; proper, 7.8–11; singular sense with, 7.19

plurals (*continued*)
  numbers, 7.14, 9.54
  phrasal adjectives and, 5.91
  resources on, 7.1
  singular form for, 7.10
  standard forms, 7.5
  technical abbreviations, 10.52
  topographical divisions, 8.52
  units of measure: less than zero, 9.19; time (e.g., seconds), 10.71; US measurements, 10.68, 10.70
  words in quotation marks, 7.12
  words or phrases in italics, 7.11
plus sign, 7.68, 7.74
p.m. and *a.m.*, 9.38–40, 10.42
PNG, defined, p. 900
podcasts, 8.187, 14.221
poetry
  abbreviations in (e.g., *v.* for *verse*), 10.43
  documentation: classical works, 14.260, 14.267–68; editions in, 14.257; short forms for, 14.268; sound recordings of, 14.277; text citations for, 13.69–70
  fair use of, 4.79–80
  first lines: indexes of, 16.6, 16.144–45; references to, 8.180
  format of books of, 1.50, 8.179
  interjections in, 5.208
  proofreading of, 2.110
  quotations from: ellipsis points and, 13.55; format, 13.23; generic markup, 2.78; indention, 13.24; long lines and runovers, 13.25; manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.19; in notes, 14.33; parenthetical citations for, 13.69–70; quotation marks in poems, 13.26; run-in vs. block, 13.10; run in to text, 13.23, 13.26–27; running in of more than one stanza, 13.32; slashes for line breaks, 6.109
  rhyme schemes, 7.65
  terms (e.g., *canto*, *stanza*), 8.182
  titles of poems, 8.179
  See also classical works
point, defined, A.21, p. 900. *See also* ellipsis points; periods (punctuation); suspension points
Polish language, 11.67–69
political terminology
  divisions (empire, republic, ward, and such), 8.50
  geographical entities in, 8.47
  organizations, parties, alliances, and such, 8.65, 8.69, 9.47
  unofficial groups and movements, 8.66
  See also governmental entities
popes, 8.25, 9.42, 16.37
portable document format (PDF) files. *See* PDF (portable document format) files
portrait, defined, p. 900
Portuguese language
  capitalization, 11.70
  names: alphabetizing of, 16.83; treatment of, 8.8
  special characters, 11.71
possessives, 7.15–28
  adjectives after, 5.79
  vs. attributive form, 7.25
  basic rule and exceptions, 7.15, 7.19–21
  of compounds, 7.23
  consistency in forms of, 7.17
  definition and uses of, 5.19
  for . . . sake expressions, 7.20
  genitive with, 7.24
  with gerunds, 7.26
  has, have to denote, 5.145
  of italicized words, 7.28
  joint and separate possession, 7.22
  of with, 7.27
  of letters, 7.16
  in names of diseases, 8.143
  of proper nouns, 7.16–21, 7.25
  of nouns plural in form, singular in meaning, 7.19
  of numbers, 7.16
  prepositions and, 7.27
  of pronouns: adjectives after, 5.79; formation of, 5.64; personal, 5.47–50
  of quoted words, 7.28
  of words ending in unpronounced *s*, 7.17
  See also genitives
Postal Atlas system, 11.102, 11.105
postal codes
  abbreviations: *avenue*, *street*, and such, 10.34; Canadian provinces and territories, 10.29; compass points, 10.35; US states and territories, 10.28
  punctuation with, 6.46, 10.28, 10.30

postal codes (*continued*)
  when to include in documentation, 14.136
  zip code with, 10.30
  See also addresses, mailing
poster papers, 14.227. *See also* unpublished and informally published materials
PostScript (PS), defined, p. 900
pound sign (#), 3.77, 14.12
predicates
  adjective, 5.78, 5.81
  as linking verbs, 5.99
  nominative, 5.17
  prepositional phrases and, 5.175
  punctuation of compound, 6.29
prefaces
  author's and editor's, order for, 1.40
  documentation of, 14.116
  editorial method explained in, 1.44
  foreword compared with, 5.220
  illustration credits in, 3.29
  indexing of, 16.109
  material appropriate for, 1.42
  multiauthor volumes and, 2.38
  new, noted on title page, 1.26
  references to, 8.177
  running heads for, 1.10
  second or subsequent editions or reprintings, 1.40
prefixes
  Arabic names with, 8.14, 16.76
  definition, 7.78
  division of words with, 7.35
  Greek language, 11.141
  Hebrew language, 11.113
  hyphenation: for compound, 6.80, 7.79, 8.159; guide to, 7.85; multiple hyphens, 7.83; omission of part of expression, 7.84; readability, 7.80; resources on, 7.77
  mid- as, 7.83
  numerical expressions with, 9.8, 9.10–11, 10.52, 10.58
  Russian language, 11.126–27
  in SI units, 9.11, 10.57
  words formed with, 7.78
prehistoric cultural periods, 8.73
preliminary pages. *See* front matter
prepositions, 5.169–91
  adverbs and, 5.100, 5.156, 5.173, 5.175, 5.180, 5.186
prepositions (*continued*)
  appropriate use of, 5.191
  complex, 5.172
  definitions, 5.169, 5.173, 5.180
  ending sentence with, 5.176
  functional variation, 5.180
  of-genitive, 5.20, 5.187
  idiomatic uses, 5.189–91
  in indexing, 16.53, 16.68
  like, 5.181
  limiting use of, 5.183–88
  mass noun followed by, 5.9
  nouns used as adjectives, 5.22
  parallel structure of, 5.213
  personal pronouns and, 5.42, 5.179
  prepositional phrases: active voice to eliminate, 5.188; adverbs and, 5.173, 5.175, 5.180, 5.186; avoiding overuse of, 5.183; clashing (repeated), 5.177; cutting and replacing unnecessary, 5.184–87; definition, 5.173; elliptical, 5.178; function, 5.174; pronoun affected by, 5.179
  simple and compound, examples, 5.170
  as verbs, 5.100, 5.156, 5.177
prepress (preliminary presswork), 2.104, A.43, p. 900
preprints
  definition, 1.73, 1.106, p. 900
  documentation of, 14.229
  pagination, 1.76
President, *president*, 8.18, 8.20–21, 8.27
presidential documents
  orders and proclamations, 14.301
  programs, 8.74
  speeches, 8.75
  treaties, 8.65, 8.79–80, 14.287, 14.302
press sheets, 2.104, A.49, fig. A.7, p. 900
presswork, defined, p. 900
previously published materials
  of authors, on copyright page, 1.17, fig. 1.4
  compilations, 2.40; illustrations, 2.44; notes in, 2.42; permissible changes to, 2.41, 2.58, 13.7–8; permissions for, 4.101; preparation of, 2.40; source notes for, 2.43; as work made for hire, 4.10
  documentation of, 14.49, 14.115, 14.190
  editing of, 2.58

previously published materials (*continued*)
  unnumbered source notes in, 3.31, 14.49
  See also collected works; derivative works; edited works
price, 1.92, 1.97. *See also* bar codes; currency
print and electronic publishing model, 1.2, 2.80, A.5, A.25, fig. A.5. *See also* publications in multiple formats
printer's errors (PEs), 2.131, p. 900
print-on-demand titles, 1.28, A.39
print technologies
  digital printing, A.48, p. 894
  electronic markup and, A.41
  environmental issues, A.46
  folded and gathered sheets (F&Gs), 2.104, A.49, fig. A.7, p. 896
  offset lithography, A.47, fig. A.6
  paper selection, A.44
  paper sizes, A.45
  prepress (preliminary presswork) in, 2.104, A.43, p. 900
  role of PDFs in, A.42
  sheet-fed press, p. 902
  terminology in, 1.26, A.3
  web-fed press, p. 904
  See also binding; production and digital technology
prizes and awards
  announcements of, 1.93
  civil, 8.82
  military, 8.114
  names of: periodical titles in, 8.170; treatment of, 8.30
probability
  mathematical copy and expressions, 9.19, 10.53, 12.57–59, table 12.3
  punctuation in tables, 3.78, fig. 3.22
proceedings of conferences and symposia
  as collective works, 4.8
  details in front matter, 1.17
  documentation of, 14.226
  publishing agreement for, 4.53, 4.59, fig. 4.1
  table of contents, 1.38
  See also conferences; multiauthor volumes; special issues, journal
process color printing, defined, p. 900
production and digital technology
  design: em spaces, en spaces, and such, A.22; length determinations, A.18; mapping markup to, A.16; picas, points, and pixels, A.21; specifications, A.19–20, fig. A.4; style sheets, A.9, A.17, fig. A.3 (*see also* design and production)
  markup tags and languages, generally, A.6–10
  print technologies: binding, A.50, figs. A.8–9; digital printing, A.48; electronic markup and, A.41; environmental issues, A.46; folded and gathered sheets (F&Gs), 2.104, A.49, fig. A.7, p. 896; offset lithography, A.47, fig. A.6; paper selection, A.44; paper sizes, A.45; prepress (preliminary presswork) in, 2.104, A.43; role of PDFs in, A.42; terminology in, 1.26, A.3
  publishing format options, A.39; converting XML to HTML, A.37; digital rights management and, A.40; e-book formats, A.38; print, A.35; web, A.36
  resources on, A.1
  workflow, A.1; converting marked-up manuscripts, A.23; divisions of labor, A.2; outline, A.5, A.24, fig. A.5; preparing for multiple formats, A.4; proofreading, A.25; source files, A.31–34; style sheets and, A.9, A.17, fig. A.3; terminology, A.3; web-based cycles, A.26; XML in, A.11–15, A.27–30
  See also markup tags and languages; XML (extensible markup language)
production controllers, A.2
professional titles, abbreviations, 10.16, 10.20–21
programs, names of, 8.65, 8.74. *See also* conferences; governmental entities; pamphlets, brochures, and reports
programs, software. *See* computer software
prologues. *See* introductions
pronouns, 5.26–65
  adjectives and, 5.29, 5.47, 5.65, 5.77, 5.79–80
  antecedents: absent, 5.28; adjective as, 5.29; definition and agreement, 5.27, 5.30; demonstrative pronoun,

pronouns (*continued*)
  5.51; different genders, 5.34; multiple, 5.33; pronoun number and, 5.31–32; relative pronoun, 5.57–58
  article as substitute for, 5.77
  bias-free language issues and, 5.47, 5.222, 5.225, 5.227
  case of, 5.12, 5.35–36
  classes: adjective, 5.47, 5.65; demonstrative (deictic), 5.51; indefinite, 5.64; interrogative, 5.52–53; list of, 5.37; personal (*see* personal, *below*); relative (*see* relative, *below*)
  compound, 5.48
  conjunctions with, 5.192
  contractions vs. possessive, 5.50
  definition and uses of, 5.26–29
  demonstrative (deictic), 5.51
  distributive, 5.64
  em dash between introductory noun and, 6.83
  gender bias and, 5.47
  for God or Jesus, 8.94
  indefinite, 5.64
  integration of quoted material into text and, 13.12
  as interjections, 5.210
  interrogative, 5.52–53
  for named natural events, 8.76
  personal: agreement of noun with, 5.40; case of, 5.42–44; changes in form (nominative, objective, genitive), 5.39; compound (-*self* forms), 5.48–49; form of, 5.38; gender and, 5.41, 5.47; after linking verb, 5.43; misuse of, 5.36; possessive, 5.47–50; rules of, 5.42–44; singular *they*, 5.47; special uses of, 5.45; after *than* or *as*, 5.44
  personal, in foreign languages: Danish, 11.22; German, 11.42; Italian, 11.51; Norwegian, 11.65; Polish, 11.67; Swedish, 11.86
  possessive, 5.47–50
  prepositional phrases and, 5.179
  properties: antecedents of different genders, 5.34; case of, 5.12, 5.35–36; list of, 5.30; multiple antecedents, 5.33; number and antecedent, 5.31–32; number and verb, 5.130–31

pronouns (*continued*)
  reflexive and intensive, 5.49
  relative: antecedent of, 5.57–58; case with, 5.55; compound, 5.62; as conjunctions, 5.203; definition, 5.54; after *one*, 5.59; positional nuances, 5.56; possessive forms of, 5.60; *whose* and *of which*, 5.61; *who* vs. *whom*, 5.63
  -*self* forms of, 5.48–49
  for ships and other craft, 8.117
  singular "they," 5.47
proofreader's marks, 2.116–29
  capitalization changes, 2.128
  circling comments and instructions, 2.118
  conventions in, 2.116
  deletions, 2.121, 2.127
  examples, figs. 2.6–7
  for extensive changes, 2.119
  font changes, 2.128
  items to be spelled out, 2.126
  legibility, 2.120
  paragraph and indention changes, 2.95, 2.123
  placement of, 2.117
  position or alignment (justification) changes, 2.95, 2.124
  punctuation changes, 2.121, 2.129
  spacing between letters or words, 2.122
  stet, 2.127
  transposition of items, 2.125
  See also markings, editorial
proofreading, 2.97–136
  approach to, 2.1
  assigning responsibility for errors in, 2.131–32
  definition, 2.97
  double-checking in, 2.130
  editor's style sheet for, 2.108–9
  examples, figs. 2.6–7
  extensive changes after, 2.119
  indexer's assistance in, 16.125
  process and checks: comparing copy with proofs, 2.86, 2.107; illustrations and tables, 2.112; master set and routing of corrected version, 2.100; overall appearance, 2.113; page numbers, 2.111; queries and instructions in, 2.113, 2.115, 2.116,

proofreading (*continued*) 2.118; quotations, 2.110; running heads, 2.73, 2.111; for sense, 2.115; spelling errors, 2.108; stages of proof, 2.100–106; text alignment on page, 2.114; typeface and font, 2.110; word breaks and hyphenation, 2.109, 7.33
  responsibility for, 2.39, 2.98
  revised proofs, 2.102
  schedule for, 2.2, 2.99, A.25
  specific types of material: compilations, 2.40; copy in non-Latin alphabets, 11.93; electronic publications, 2.133–36
  standard for, 2.116
  See also proofreader's marks; proofs
proofs
  definition, p. 900
  digital, p. 894
  of index, 2.103, 16.122
  indexing from, 16.101–2, 16.105, 16.108, 16.117–25
  marking, for indexing, 16.117–21, fig. 16.1
  running heads for endnotes, 2.111
  stages: book cover and jacket, 2.105; F&Gs, 2.104, A.49, fig. A.7, p. 896; first pages and "galley" proofs, 2.101; index, 2.103, 16.122; journal cover, 2.106; master set maintained, 2.100; prepress and press, 2.104, A.43; revised, 2.102
  See also proofreader's marks; proofreading
proper nouns
  capitalization, 5.6
  definition, 7.6
  foreign languages, 7.51
  plurals, 7.8–11
  possessives, 7.16–21, 7.25
  word division and, 7.38
  See also names, personal; names, proper
protocol (Internet), 14.11–12, p. 901. *See also* FTP (file transfer protocol); HTTP (hypertext transfer protocol)
proverbs (maxims), 6.51, 7.57, 8.197, 13.5, 13.36. *See also* figures of speech
provinces, Canadian, 14.136
pseudonyms and pseudonymous works
  abbreviation of term, 14.81
  copyright, 4.24
  documentation: author-date references, 15.34; cross-references for, 14.84; descriptive phrase treated as author, 14.85; known authorship, 14.82; rarely used pseudonym, 14.83; unknown authorship, 14.81
  of human research subjects, 13.47
  indexing of, 16.34
Public Access Policy (NIH), 4.64
publication agreement. *See* publishing agreement
publication date
  in book review and book notes sections, 1.92
  documentation, author-date references: basic structure and punctuation, 15.6, 15.9, 15.12, 15.24; letters in published collections, 15.40; multivolume works published over several years, 15.39; "no date," 15.41, 15.51; references arranged by, 15.17–19; reprint and modern editions, more than one date, 15.38
  documentation, notes and bibliography: basic format, 14.133, 14.149; books published before 1900, 14.134; multivolume works published over several years, 14.122, 14.151; new impressions and renewal of copyright, 14.150; "no date," 14.152; punctuation in, 6.60, 14.186; specific volume of multivolume works, 14.123
  forthcoming, 8.184, 14.153, 14.182, 15.17, 15.42
  identification of, 1.26
  location in works: copyright notice, 1.22, 4.40; copyright page or title page, 1.18–19, 1.21–22, 1.25; journals, 1.78, 1.83
  "no date" (*n.d.*), 10.43, 14.152, 14.276, 15.17, 15.41
publication details
  abbreviations in, 1.21
  absence of, 14.152
  basic formats, 14.133, 14.149, 15.6, 15.9, 15.12, 15.24

publication details (*continued*)
  in book review and book notes sections, 1.92
  for classical references, 14.260, 14.262, 14.267
  country of printing, 1.27
  of electronic works, 1.79, 1.98
  form of work (e.g., text-fiche), 14.120
  in journals, 1.78, 1.83
  See also copyright; documentation; editions; place of publication; publication date; publisher's name
publications in multiple formats
  articles electronically published before print versions, 14.182
  considerations in, 1.111
  copyright issues, 1.26, 4.33, 4.60, A.40
  differences among versions, 1.73
  digital rights management and, A.40
  documentation considerations, 14.10, 14.182, 14.184, 14.198
  embedded indexes for, 1.117, 16.7, 16.102, A.7
  illustrations: electronic enhancements noted in print versions, 3.26; markup of, A.32; printed text references to online-only, 3.9
  ISBNs for, 1.32
  mathematical expressions, A.13, A.34
  options: additional options, A.39; converting XML to HTML, A.37; digital rights management and, A.40; e-book formats, A.38; print, A.35; web, A.36
  production process and workflow: basic outline, A.5, A.24, fig. A.5; considerations in, A.4; conversion of files, A.23; cyclical nature of, A.26; formal markup languages, 2.80; proofreading, A.25; source files, A.31–34; style sheets for, A.9, A.17, fig. A.3; tables in, A.33; XML applied, A.27–30
  See also design and production; DOIs (Digital Object Identifiers); electronic files; production and digital technology; XML (extensible markup language)
public display, copyright and, 4.13–14, 4.33
public documents
  acts and treaties, 8.65, 8.79–80, 14.287, 14.302
  in author-date references, 15.54–55
  bills and resolutions, 14.295
  Canadian, 12.281, 14.136, 14.305–8
  congressional debates and hearings, 14.297–99
  constitutions, 8.79, 9.29, 14.292
  courts, 13.310, 14.288–91, 14.306, 14.316
  generalist and secondary source writing about, 14.303
  hearings, 14.296–97
  international entities, 14.316–17
  loose-leaf services, 14.251
  municipal ordinances, 14.300, 14.312
  online, 14.282, 14.312
  presidential, 14.301
  resources on, 14.281, 14.305, 14.309
  short forms for names, 14.287
  unpublished, 14.304, 14.308, 14.315
  See also laws and statutes; legal cases; legal-style citations; legislation; presidential documents; United Kingdom; United States
public-domain works
  definition, 4.26
  derivative works based on, 4.21
  determining whether a work is, 4.22–24
  documentation of, 14.49
  foreign works as, 4.28
  government-produced, 4.19, 4.43, 4.64
  illustrations, 3.34
  quotations from, 4.69
  when works become, 4.19–20
public laws. *See* laws and statutes; legislation
public places and structures
  buildings and monuments, 8.56
  foreign names for, 8.58
  rooms, offices, and such, 8.57
  thoroughfares and such, 8.55
publishers
  address, 1.18–19, 1.21
  archival practices of, 1.107
  as author, 14.92
  copublications, 14.147
  digital rights management strategies, A.40
  distribution arrangements, 14.148

publishers (*continued*)
  fair-use "rules of thumb" and, 4.78
  grants for, 1.31
  joint imprints, 14.145
  logos, 1.18, 1.66–68
  main editorial offices, 14.135
  manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.7
  notes on text, 1.44
  parent companies, imprints, and such, 14.144
  permissions from out-of-business, 4.75
  right to make copies and distribute works, 4.13
  See also copyright; publication details; publisher's name; publishers' websites; publishing agreement
publisher's name
  documentation of: abbreviations and omissible parts of name, 14.139–40, 14.142; *and* or ampersand in, 14.141; basic format, 14.133; changes in and resources on, 14.139; copublications, 14.147; distributed books, 14.148; foreign names, 14.142; imprints, parent companies, and such, 1.18, 14.144–46; preferred form, 14.139; unknown or privately published work, 14.143; when to omit, 14.134
  location in works: book review and book notes sections, 1.92; copyright notice, 4.41; covers and jackets, 1.66, 1.67, 1.68; edition details, 1.25; journals, 1.78; title page, 1.18
  See also publishers; publishers' websites
publishers' websites
  fair-use guidelines on, 4.87
  journal information on, 1.57
  journals searchable on, 1.104
  permissions process facilitated by, 4.91
  public-domain rules on, 4.21
  URL on copyright page, 1.21
publishing agreement
  author's alterations limited by, 2.132
  author's responsibilities: fair use, 4.77–87; permissions, 4.69–76; warranties, 4.68
  basic provisions, 4.51
  copyright owner's rights and, 4.13–18
  examples of, figs. 4.1–2
publishing agreement (*continued*)
  foreign rights and, 4.60
  illustrations noted in, 3.15
  journal and symposia contributions: alternative licensing arrangements, 4.57; basics, 4.53, 4.59; editors and, 4.58; less than full rights, 4.56; transfers of rights, 4.55
  multiauthor volumes and, 2.39
  new books: basic book-contract provisions, 4.51; edited works, 4.53, fig. 4.1; option clauses, 4.52; other contracts for special kinds of works, 4.54
  noncommercial or no derivatives clauses, 4.57
  publisher's responsibilities: copyright tasks, 4.31; rights and permissions requests, 4.66–67; subsidiary rights, 4.17–18, 4.60–65
  rights to reproduction and distribution, 4.50
  subsidiary rights: author's electronic use of own works, 4.62; author's retention of, 4.18; basic rights vs., 4.17; categories of, 4.60; economic considerations, 4.61–62, 4.65; electronic-rights licensing, 4.61; granting permissions for, 4.66–67; Public Access Policy and, 4.64; university licenses, 4.63
  See also copyright; intellectual property rights; licenses for copyrighted works; permissions
publishing schedule
  basic schedule, 2.2, A.2, figs. 2.1–2
  indexing, 16.4, 16.101
  journals, 2.99, A.5, fig. 2.2
  manuscript editing, 2.49
  proofreading, 2.99, A.25
punctuation
  author queries about, 2.66
  basic approach to, in relation to surrounding text, 6.1–8
  cleanup process and, 2.77
  English vs. other language contexts, 11.10
  fonts, color, and, 6.2–6
  and italics, 6.2
  marking manuscript for, 2.90–92, 2.92
  marking proofs for, 2.121, 2.129

punctuation (*continued*)
- multiple marks at same place, 6.116–20, table 6.1
- permissible changes to, 8.163, 11.4, 11.10, 13.7, 13.28–29, 14.96
- of URLs, DOIs, and such in text, 6.8, 14.11–12
- *See also* abbreviations; brackets; colons; commas; dashes; ellipsis points; exclamation points; guillemets; hyphens and hyphenation; parentheses; periods (punctuation); question marks; quotation marks; quotations; semicolons; slash and slashes; suspension points; typographic considerations

quantities. *See* International System of Units (Système international d'unités, SI); measurement, US; metric system; numbers; physical quantities; scientific and technical terminology

queens. *See* sovereigns and other rulers

queries. *See* author's review of copyedited manuscript

question marks, 6.66–70
- in documentation: article titles, 14.178; place of publication, surmised, 14.138; text citations, 13.67
- vs. exclamation mark, 6.72
- inverted, in Spanish works, 11.10, 11.78
- marking proofs for, 2.129
- other punctuation with, 6.70, 14.178; brackets, 6.70; commas, 6.25, 6.119; ellipsis points, 13.52; em dashes, 6.87; exclamation points, 6.120; parentheses, 6.70, 6.96; periods, 6.118; quotation marks, 6.10, 6.70
- in relation to surrounding text, 6.70
- in titles of works, 6.118–19, 14.100, 14.105, 16.54
- uses, other: editorial doubt, 6.66, 14.138; indirect questions, 6.68; interpolation for missing or illegible words, 13.57; requests as questions, 6.69; within sentences, 6.67–68
- when to omit, 6.68–69
- *See also* interrogatives; punctuation

quotation marks
- alternatives to, 6.88, 13.40
- basic approach, 8.2

quotation marks (*continued*)
- "clearing," in poetry, 13.26
- closing, 6.9–11, table. 6.1
- directional or "smart," 6.112
- double or single, 7.50, 7.55, 13.28–29, 13.31 (*see also* single, *below*)
- editing of, 2.58
- em dashes instead of, 6.88
- marking manuscript for, 2.77
- marking proofs for, 2.129
- other punctuation with, 6.9–11, 6.111, table 6.1; colons, 6.10, 6.63; commas, 6.9, 6.50; ellipses, 13.39; em dashes, 6.84; exclamation points, 6.10, 6.74, 13.28; parentheses, 6.96; periods, 6.9; question marks, 6.70; quotation marks (single and double), 8.175, 13.28–29; semicolons, 6.10
- paragraphing issues, 13.20–22, 13.30–33, 13.54
- permissible changes to, 13.7
- plurals of words in, 7.12
- possessives and terms in, 7.28
- primes and double primes compared with, 10.37
- in relation to surrounding text, 6.6, 6.50–51
- "scare," 7.55, 11.52, 14.102
- single: in article titles, 14.177; for definitions, 7.50; double next to, 6.11, 8.175; double vs., 7.50, 7.55, 13.28–29, 13.31; foreign words and phrases, 7.50; horticultural cultivars, 8.129
- speech, dialogue, and conversation: alternatives to quotation marks, 13.40; dialogue and quoted matter, 13.9–10, 13.17–19, 13.28–47; direct discourse, 13.37, 13.42; discussions and interviews, 13.46; drama, 13.44–45; indirect discourse, 13.43; single-word speech, 13.38; unspoken discourse, 13.41
- uses, other: article titles, 8.175, 14.176–77, 14.201; block quotations, 13.20–22, 13.54; chapter titles, 14.111–13; common expressions and figures of speech, 7.57; in computer writing, 7.75; conference or speech titles, 8.69; episodes and segments

quotation marks (*continued*)
  in television and radio, 8.185; epithets and nicknames, 8.33; field notes, 13.47; first lines of poems, 8.180; foreign-language materials, 11.32–33, 11.44, 11.52, 11.79; interpolations, 13.61; news releases, 14.213; poetry, 8.179–80, 13.26; run-in quotations, 13.30–33; *so-called* and, 7.56; songs and shorter musical compositions, 8.189; source citation placement and, 13.66–67; titles of works, 8.161, 14.102, 14.104; titles within titles, 8.171, 14.102; unpublished materials, 14.224–26, 14.304; website sections and blog entries, 8.187, 14.244; words and phrases used as words, 7.58
  when to omit, 13.34–36, 13.43
  See also guillemets; punctuation; quotations

quotations
  basic principles: accuracy critical to, 2.7, 13.6; attribution and fair use, 4.60, 4.69, 4.71, 4.85; commonly known facts and expressions, 13.5; credit and permission for, 13.3; danger of skewed meaning, 13.49–50; in modern scholarship, 13.2; paraphrase vs. quotation, 4.82, 13.4; resources on, 13.1
  capitalization, 13.13–16
  in context of original, 4.77, 4.79
  cross-checking of, 2.30, 13.6
  documentation in text: block quotations, 13.68–70, 15.25; errors in original source, 13.7, 13.59; foreign-language materials (*see below*); frequent references to single source, 13.65; full citation for, 13.63; *ibid.* in, 13.64; parentheses with, 13.62; placement of, 13.69; run-in quotations, 13.66–67
  editing and author queries about, 2.58, 2.66
  editorial additions to, 6.97, 13.58; for added italics or emphasis, 13.60; errors and, 13.7; missing or illegible words, 13.57; quotation marks for, 13.61; *sic*, 6.5, 6.73, 7.53, 13.59; square brackets for, 6.97, 13.57–59, 13.61
  errors in original source, 13.7, 13.59
  foreign-language materials: French, 11.32–33; original-language version in note, 13.75; retranslation issue, 13.79; Russian, 11.121; translation credited, 13.76; translations adjusted, 13.77; translations edited, 13.78; translations plus source, 13.74; typographic style of, 13.71; where to place translations, 13.73; whether translation is needed, 13.72
  foreign terms in, 6.93
  length of, 13.10
  original spelling in, 7.3
  paragraphing: block quotations, 13.20–22, 13.54; run-in quotations, 13.30–33
  paraphrasing vs., 4.82, 13.4
  permissible changes (*see* permissible changes to quoted materials)
  poetry, 13.23–27
  punctuation: brackets, 6.93, 6.97, 13.16, 13.57–59; closing quotation marks, 6.9–11; colons, 6.61, 6.63, 13.17; commas, 6.50, 13.18; ellipsis points, 13.7, 13.48–56, 13.54; periods, 13.19; quotation marks (*see* quotation marks); slashes, 13.27; when to omit quotation marks, 13.34–36
  quotations within quotations, 13.28–29
  relation to text: assimilation of quotations into text, 13.11–12; initial capital or lowercase letter, 13.13–16, 13.14–15; introductory phrases before, 13.17–19; paragraphing issues, 13.20–22, 13.30–33, 13.54; poetry, 13.23–27
  run-in vs. block, 13.9–10
  sic with, 6.5, 6.73, 7.53, 13.59
  in titles of works, 8.160, 14.104
  See also block quotations; dialogue; direct address; documentation; ellipsis points; epigraphs; fair-use doctrine; guillemets; interpolations and clarifications; maxims;

quotations (*continued*)
    permissible changes to quoted materials; poetry; punctuation; quotation marks; run-in quotations; speech
quoted in, 15.52
Qur'an (Koran), 8.102, 11.97, 14.255

race, 8.38–39. *See also* peoples
radiations, 8.150
radio and radio programs, 8.185, 14.221
ragged right, defined, p. 901. *See also* justification; margins
ranges (numbers). *See* inclusive (or continuing) numbers
ratios, 6.60
recto pages
  always odd-numbered pages, 1.3, 1.5
  beginning of gallery, 3.6
  definition, p. 901
  first journal page, 1.76
  first page of index, 1.63
  in folio editions, 14.162
  in offprint planning, 1.48
  parts of book starting on, 1.4, 1.48, 1.50
  proofreading for correct use of, 2.111–12
  running heads for, 1.10, 1.11, 1.14
  in signed signatures, 14.161
  specified on final manuscript for production, 2.72–73
  See also page numbers (folios); pagination; verso pages
redline, defined, p. 901
redlining (tracking and showing changes)
  author's review of, 2.68
  conventions of, 2.14, 2.81
  document comparison software compared with, 2.82, 2.85
  example of, fig. 2.4
  explained in cover letter, 2.67
  final check of, 2.86
  removed before submission of manuscript, 2.36
  when not to use, 2.77, 2.81
  See also manuscript editing; word processing
reference lists
  authors' names (*see* authors' names)
  basic format, 15.5–6, 15.21, fig. 15.1; examples and variations, 15.9; flush-and-hang style, 1.61, 2.22; function and placement, 15.10; page numbers and locators, 15.8
  bibliographies compared with, 14.67, 15.3
  in cleanup process, 2.77
  cross-checking of, 2.29
  cross-references to other titles in, 15.37
  editing of, 2.60–61
  hyperlinks in, 1.102
  in multiauthor books, 15.10
  order of entries: alphabetical, 14.61–62, 15.11, fig. 15.1; chronological, 14.67, 15.17; same-author, same-year works, 15.19; single vs. several authors, 15.16; works with multiple publication dates, 15.38
  publication details: editions with multiple, 15.38; *forthcoming* works, 15.17, 15.42; letters in published collections, 15.40; multivolume works published over several years, 15.39; "no date," 15.17, 15.41
  scholarly symbols in, 10.44
  secondary sources quoted, 15.52
  text citations checked against, 15.20
  3-em dash: chronological order for repeated names, 15.17; with edited, translated, or compiled works, 15.18; with same author, same year, 15.19
  See also author-date reference system; bibliographies; documentation; text citations; titles of works in documentation
reference works
  documentation of, 14.247–48
  for manuscript editing, 2.51
  web-based, 1.111–17, 14.248, A.36–37
  See also catalogs; dictionaries; encyclopedias
regions, national and world, 8.46, 8.53. *See also* geographical terminology; place-names; political terminology
religions and religious concerns
  buildings, 8.97, 8.100, 9.49
  concepts: generic vs. religious, 8.98, 8.107; heaven, hell, and such, 8.108; Platonic ideas, 8.93

religions and religious concerns (*continued*)
  events: holidays, 8.88; services and rites, 8.109; theologically important (e.g., the Exodus), 8.107
  groups: *Church* and *church*, 8.97; councils, synods, and such, 8.101; denominations, sects, orders, and movements, 8.96; jurisdictions and divisions of, 8.99; major religions, 8.95
  names and titles, 8.18, 8.25; abbreviations for designations, 10.21; alternatives to God, 8.91; deities, 8.90; in foreign languages, 11.29; indexing of, 16.37, 16.39; kinship terms for clergy, 8.35; numbered places of worship, 9.49; numerals with, 9.42, 9.49; popes and such, 8.25, 9.42, 16.37; pronouns for, 8.94; prophets, 8.92; *Reverend*, *Rev.*, and such, 8.25, 8.32, 10.18, 16.39
  objects of, 8.110
  See also Bible; biblical citations; Qur'an; religious works
religious works
  documentation of: chapter and verse, 14.253; resources on, 14.252, 14.255; versions of the Bible, 14.254
  Qur'an (Koran), 8.102, 11.97, 14.255
  treatment in text: books and sections of the Bible, 8.104; concepts, 8.93, 8.98, 8.108; doctrines and principles, 8.107; other names and versions for bibles, 8.103; prayers, creeds, and such, 8.104; scriptures, 8.102
  Upanishads, 8.102, 14.255
  See also religions and religious concerns; Bible; biblical citations
reports. *See* pamphlets, brochures, and reports
reprint rights, in publishing agreement, 4.55, 4.60
reprints
  copyright dates of, 1.23–26
  definition, p. 901
  edition compared with, 1.23, 1.26
  editorial additions in, 6.97
  identification number of, 1.28, figs. 1.1–2
  introduction for, 1.46
reprints (*continued*)
  preface for, 1.40
  unnumbered footnote on source of, 1.49
  See also impressions
repro, defined, p. 901
reproduction, copyright and, 4.13, 4.33, 4.50, 4.60. *See also* photocopying
resolution (pixels), A.21, p. 901
resolutions, 14.295. *See also* legislation; United States Congress
restrictive and nonrestrictive clauses, 5.21, 6.22–23, 6.26
Reverend, *Rev.*
  abbreviation, 10.18, 10.43
  capitalization, 8.25, 8.32
  indexing of, 16.39
reverse italics, 8.171
reviews
  basic format, 1.92
  documentation of: elements needed, 14.214; reviews of books, 14.215; reviews of plays, movies, concerts, and such, 14.216; unsigned reviews, 14.217
  quoted on paperback covers, 1.67
revised and expanded, 1.26
revised edition. *See* editions
revised proofs, 2.100, 2.102
revolutions, 8.112
rhyme schemes, 7.65
rights. *See* copyright; intellectual property rights; publishing agreement; subsidiary rights
rivers, 8.52–54
roads and thoroughfares
  abbreviations of, 10.34
  names of, 8.55, 11.29
  numbers of, 9.51–52
  See also addresses, mailing
roman (type)
  article and chapter titles in, 8.161
  definition, p. 901
  familiar foreign terms, 7.52
  italicized terms within titles, 8.171, 14.103
  journal and magazine article titles in documentation, 14.176, 14.201
  references to foreword, index, and such, 8.177–78
Romanian language, 11.72–73

- romanization. *See* transliteration
- roman numerals, 9.64, 9.66
  - arabic numerals compared with, table 9.1
  - capitals: enzyme names, 8.132; personal names, 9.43; sequels, 9.44; sovereigns and such, 9.42; vessels and such, 9.45
  - definition, p. 901
  - in documentation, when to use, 14.154
  - full style for inclusive ranges, 9.60, 16.14
  - musical chords, 7.69
  - pagination: back matter added later, 1.8; front matter, 1.4, 1.6, 1.8
  - subtrahends (back counters), 9.65
  - *See also* arabic numerals; numbers
- rooms, offices, and such, 8.57
- royalties, author's
  - contract concerning, 4.51, 4.63
  - failure to pay, 4.36
  - multiauthor works, 4.53
  - paperbacks, 4.60
  - permissions fees from, 4.100
- royalty. *See* nobility; sovereigns and other rulers
- rulers. *See* sovereigns and other rulers
- rules (lines)
  - above continued footnotes, 14.36, fig. 14.1
  - avoided in illustrations, 3.19
  - in tables, 3.50, 3.55–56, 3.72, 3.84, figs. 3.13–14, fig. 3.16
- run in, defined, p. 901
- run-in lists, 6.94, 6.122–23, 7.41
- run-in quotations
  - block vs., 13.9–10
  - capitalization, 13.13–14, 13.16
  - citations for, 13.66–67
  - converting block quotations to, 13.29
  - initial capital or lowercase letter, 13.14
  - logical and grammatical assimilation into text, 13.11–12
  - multiple paragraphs in, 13.30–32
  - in notes, 14.33
  - poetry, 13.23, 13.26–27
  - punctuation: brackets, 13.16; colons, 13.17; commas, 13.18; quotation marks, 13.28; slash, 13.27
  - *See also* text citations
- run-in style (indexes)
  - *continued* lines, 16.139
  - cross-references, 16.25
  - description, 16.25
  - examples, 16.141
  - flush-and-hang format, 16.24, 16.106, 16.131
  - indention guidelines, 16.137
  - sub- and sub-subentries, 16.15, 16.27
  - *See also* flush-and-hang style
- running feet, 1.9, 1.77
- running heads
  - choice of content for, 1.12, 2.73
  - definition, 1.9, p. 901
  - omission of, 1.11, 1.15, 1.48, 2.112
  - preparation of manuscript for production, 2.73
  - proofreading of, 2.111
  - shortening of, 2.73
  - specific instances: appendixes, 1.13; back matter, 1.13; electronic works, 1.11, 1.77; endnotes, 1.14, 1.59, 2.73, 2.111, 14.42, fig. 14.2; front matter, 1.10, 1.13; illustrations and, 1.15, 2.112; indexes, 1.13, 16.6; journals, 1.77; tables and, 1.15, 2.112, 3.84, 3.85; text, 1.11; web-based publications, 1.116
- runover, defined, p. 901
- runover lines
  - definition, p. 901
  - hanging indention of, 2.11
  - indexes, 16.25–28, 16.137, 16.141
  - outlines, 6.126
  - poetry extracts, 2.19, 13.25
  - stub column (tables), 3.59
  - verse drama quotations, 13.45
  - vertical lists, 6.124
- Russian language, 11.118–28
  - alphabet (Cyrillic), table 11.3
  - capitalization, 11.119
  - names: familiar forms, 11.118; treatment in text, 8.12
  - punctuation, 11.121–23
  - quotations and dialogue, 11.121
  - resources on, 11.118
  - titles of works, 11.120
  - transliteration, 11.118, table 11.3
  - word division: generally, 11.124; combinations not to be divided, 11.125;

Russian language (*continued*)
        consonants, 11.126; after prefixes or between parts, 11.127; after vowel or diphthong, 11.128

Saint, *St.*, and such
    abbreviations of, 10.26–27, 10.31, 16.93
    alphabetizing of, 16.75, 16.93
    personal names with, 10.27, 16.75, 16.93
    place-names with, 10.31, 11.29, 16.90, 16.93
    when to spell out, 10.26
    See also saints
saints
    as authors, 14.74
    indexing names of, 16.42
    treatment in text, 8.92, 10.26, 14.74
Sanskrit letters, 11.94
sans serif, defined, p. 902
scale, defined, p. 902
scan, defined, p. 902
"scare quotes," 7.55, 11.52, 14.102
schedules. *See* publishing schedule
schemas. *See* document type definitions (DTDs)
scholarly works, generally
    abbreviations and symbols used in, 7.53, 10.43–44
    anonymity of research subjects in, 13.47
    books and journals as core, 1.1–2
    conflicts of interest noted in, 1.88
    fair-use tradition in, 4.60, 4.80
    licensing revenue as supporting, 4.62
    retaining original meaning of quotations, 13.49
    role of quotations in, 13.2
    role of source citations in, 14.1
schools
    building names, 8.67
    of thought, 8.78
scientific and technical terminology, 10.54–62
    abbreviations, resources, 10.1
    authorities and style guides for, 8.118, 8.127, 8.130, 8.133, 8.136, 8.142, 8.146, 14.3
    See also International System of Units (Système international d'unités, SI); measurement, US; metric system; *and names of specific disciplines* (e.g., chemical terminology)
scientific and technical works
    authorities and style guides for, 8.118, 8.127, 8.130, 8.133, 8.136, 8.142, 8.146, 14.3
    author's warranties on, 4.68
    documentation of: access dates for URLs in, 14.7, 14.185; author-date references preferred, 14.3, 15.5; databases, 14.272; *et al.* in, 14.76; initials for authors' given names, 15.12, 15.43; numbered reference system in, 14.23; titles of works in sentence-style capitalization, 8.166, 15.13, 15.45
    illustrations: numbering of, 2.25, 3.11; photomicrographs as, 3.27
    indexes for, 1.103–4, 16.6, 16.11, 16.26
    journals: abstracts, 1.88, 1.90; letters to the editor, 1.95
    manuscript circulation of drafts, 1.106
    numbers, generally, 9.3
    sections and subsections in, 1.55
    standards for web-based, A.36–37
    subhead levels in, 1.54
    tables in, 3.47
    titles: abbreviations of journal, 15.13, 15.44; sentence-style capitalization, 8.166, 15.13, 15.45
    See also computer terminology; mathematical copy; mathematical expressions
screen, defined, p. 902
scriptural references, 8.102–3. *See also* religious works
sculpture, 8.56, 8.193
search engines
    electronic journals, 1.72, 1.104
    indexes compared with, 16.2, 16.7
    web-based publications, 1.112–13
seasons, 8.87, 14.180. *See also* dates
secondary sources, 14.273, 14.303, 15.52
section mark, 3.77, 10.44
sections and subsections
    abbreviations of *section*, 10.43, 14.157
    bibliographies, cautions about, 14.58, fig. 14.9
    newspapers, 14.203
    numbering of, 1.55, 1.116, 16.13
    openings, decorative initials for, 13.35
    reference lists, cautions about, 15.11
    symbol for, 3.77, 10.44
    use of term, 1.47

see, 14.37, 16.22. *See also* cross-references

self-published materials, 14.9

semicolons, 6.54–58

  in documentation: more than one subtitle, 14.98; *or* with double titles and, 14.99; in text citations with additional material, 15.23

  other punctuation with: closing quotation marks, 6.10; ellipsis points, 13.52; parentheses, 6.96

  serial comma replaced by, 6.19, 6.58

  uses: in complex series, 6.19, 6.58; before conjunction, 6.57; before *however*, *therefore*, *indeed*, and such, 6.55; independent clauses, 6.54–57; indexes, 16.17, 16.25, 16.96; lists, 6.123, 6.125; before *that is*, *namely*, *for example*, and such, 6.43, 6.56

  See also colons; punctuation

sentences

  beginning with: conjunctions, 5.206–7; mathematical symbols, 12.7; number, 9.5; percentage, 9.18; year, 9.30; *yes* or *no*, 6.39, 13.38

  complex series in, 6.58

  deliberately incomplete, 13.53

  ellipsis points after complete, 13.51

  elliptical construction of, 6.49

  list format and, 6.123–24

  mathematical expressions and, 12.7, 12.18

  parallel structure in, 5.212–15

  in parentheses, 6.13, 6.24, 6.96

  pauses or breaks, 6.16, 6.84, 11.10 (*see also* interjections and exclamations)

  preposition at end of, 5.176

  questions within, 6.52, 6.61, 6.67–68

  series of related, 6.59, 6.61

  types of (declarative and imperative), 6.12, 6.69

  URLs within, 6.8

  See also clauses; words

sentence-style capitalization, 8.156

  titles of works: basic principles and examples, 8.156; foreign-language, 11.3, 11.5–7, 14.107–9, 14.193; French publications, 11.30; Latin works, 11.59; periodicals preferring article titles in, 15.45; translations, 14.194

  uses: captions, 3.21; chart titles, 3.43; first lines of poems, 8.180; foreign institutions, 11.8; subheads, 1.54; tables, 3.52–53, 3.57

sentence-style capitalization (*continued*)

  See also headline-style capitalization

September 11, 2001, 9.36

sequels, numbers for, 9.44

Serbian language, 11.74–75

serial commas, 6.18–21. *See also* commas

serial publications, copyright registration forms for, 4.47. *See also* periodicals

serial rights, first or second, 4.60

series of elements in sentence

  ampersands and, 6.21

  colons to introduce, 6.59, 6.65

  commas within, 6.18–21, 8.163

  em dash and, 6.83

  semicolons within, 6.19, 6.58, 6.123

series of lectures. *See* lectures and lecture series

series of volumes

  documentation of, 14.128; editors, 14.128–29; multivolume works compared with, 14.130; multivolume work within, 14.131; "old series" and "new series," 14.132, 14.195; titles and numbers, 14.128

  ISBN for, 1.32

  titles of series: in book review and book notes sections, 1.92; capitalized but not italicized, 8.2, 8.174, 14.128; on covers or jackets, 1.67; in front matter, 1.4, 1.17; proofreading of, 2.105; *working paper* as part of, 14.228

  See also multivolume works; volumes and volume numbers

serif, defined, p. 902

SGML, A.12–13, p. 902

shall, *should*

  forms and tenses of, 5.125, 5.128, 5.149

  ought compared with, 5.148, 5.220

s/he, 5.47, 5.222, 5.227

she, *her*, and *hers*, 5.46–50

ships and other craft, 8.2, 8.115–17. *See also* vehicles and vessels

shortened citations, 14.24–31

  abbreviated title compared with, 14.54

  authors' names, 14.27

  basic approach, 14.24–25

  chapters, 14.113

  cross-reference to full citation, 14.26

  ibid. in, 14.29

shortened citations (*continued*)
  idem, *op. cit.*, *loc. cit.*, discouraged, 14.30–31
  letters in published collections, 14.117
  multiple chapters from same book, 14.26, 14.113
  in notes, 14.43
  poetry extracts, 13.70
  subsequent text citations, 13.64–65
  titles, 14.25, 14.28, 14.106, 14.196
SI. *See* International System of Units (Système international d'unités, SI); metric system
sic, 6.5, 6.73, 7.53, 13.59
signatures (book), 3.6, 14.161, p. 902
signatures (name), 1.40, 10.11
signed languages, defined, 11.144. *See also* American Sign Language (ASL)
signs, quotation of, 8.196. *See also* symbols, general
Sir, *Dame*, 8.31–32, 16.38
slang and jargon
  adjective-to-verb transitions in, 5.93
  grammar vs., 5.216
  interjections and exclamations as, 5.209, 5.211
  noun-to-verb transitions in, 5.23
  simple adverbs in, 5.157
  they as singular, 5.47
  they without antecedent, 5.28
  treatment of, 7.57
  See also dialect; figures of speech; word usage
slant. *See* slash and slashes
slash and slashes, 6.103–10
  in abbreviations, 6.107, 10.4
  alternatives signified by, 6.104
  in dates, 6.105–6
  in fractions, 6.108, 12.45, 12.47
  marking manuscript for, 2.94
  between poetry lines, 6.109, 13.27, 13.32
  in two-year spans, 6.105
  in URLs, DOIs, and such, 6.110, 14.11–12
  See also punctuation
slides, documentation of, 14.278. *See also* audiovisual materials
small caps (capitals)
  definition, p. 902
  emphasizing words, 7.48
small caps (capitals) (*continued*)
  full caps preferred to, 9.35, 10.8, 10.24, 10.39, 10.42, 14.284
  glosses in ASL, 11.147–54
  indexes, 16.140, 16.145
  mathematical copy, 12.56
  after ornamental text break, 1.56
  proofreading and marking proofs for, 2.110, 2.128
  See also capital letters
so, 5.206, 6.28, 13.59
so-called, 7.56
social titles, 10.16–17
socioeconomic terminology. *See* peoples
software. *See* computer software
solidus. *See* slash and slashes
songs, 8.189. *See also* musical works
sort, *sorts*, 5.51
sound recordings
  contributions to, as work made for hire, 4.10
  discographies, 14.275, fig. 14.12
  documentation of, 14.276–77, 15.53
  titles of, 8.192
  See also audiovisual materials
source citation software, 1.83, 14.13
source lines and notes
  editing of, 2.58, 2.63, 2.66
  epigraphs, 1.36, 1.48, 14.47
  fair-use doctrine and, 4.85
  format, 3.75
  illustrations, 2.63, 3.29
  importance of, 4.69, 4.71
  poetry extracts, 2.19
  previously published materials, 2.43
  tables, 2.28, 3.75
  unnumbered notes for, 1.49, 14.47, 14.49
  See also credits and credit lines; documentation
South, *southern*, 8.45–46
South Asian languages, 11.129
sovereigns and other rulers
  Arabic rulers of older times, 8.14
  as authors, 14.74
  indexing of, 16.37, 16.64, 16.98
  numerals for, 9.42
  titles of, 8.22
  UK legal cases and, 14.310
  See also nobility
Soviet Union, former, 10.32

sp, 2.90
sp., *spp.*, 8.122
spacecraft, 8.116, 9.45. *See also* vehicles and vessels
spaces and spacing
  abbreviations and, 10.5, 10.12, 10.69
  ampersands with, 10.10
  in cleanup process, 2.77
  after colon, 2.9, 14.121
  decimal places, 9.20
  design specifications on, A.22
  double quotation marks, 6.11
  ellipsis or suspension points, 11.54, 13.48, 13.51–56
  em spaces, A.22; in impression number, 1.28; marking for, 2.123; runover lines of indented-style index, 16.28
  en spaces, A.22
  foreign-language materials and quotations, 11.31–32, 11.79–81, 13.71–79
  indexes: omitted in note numbers, 16.111–12; runover lines, indented style, 16.28; submission format, 16.131
  initials, 7.62, 8.4, 10.4, 10.12, 14.73
  marking manuscript for, 2.95
  marking proofs for, 2.122
  mathematical expressions, 12.8, 12.16, 12.21, 12.42
  numbers, between digits, 9.56
  within paragraphs, 2.11
  parentheses, back to back, 6.96
  after punctuation, 2.9, 6.7, 6.12, 6.60, 14.121
  between sentences, 2.9
  SI units and abbreviations, 10.61
  slashes for line breaks in poetry, 6.109
  slash in open compound, 6.104
  technical abbreviations, 10.52
  thin, A.22, p. 903
  vertical lists, 6.124
  between words and sentences, 2.9, 2.11
  See also leading; lines (text); margins
Spanish language, 11.76–85
  abbreviation of *Spanish*, 10.43
  capitalization, 11.77
  dialogue, 11.80
  names: alphabetizing, 16.84; treatment of, 8.11
  punctuation: em dashes, 11.80; guillemets and quotation marks, 11.79–80; question marks and exclamation points, inverted, 11.10, 11.78; suspension points and ellipses, 11.81
  resources on, 11.76, 11.83
  special characters, 11.85
  word division: compounds, 11.84; consonants, 11.83; vowels, 11.82
speakers' names, 13.8, 13.37, 13.44, 13.46, 14.298. *See also* dialogue; drama; lectures and lecture series; speech
spec (specification), defined, p. 903
special characters
  alphabetizing and, 16.29, 16.67
  author's list of, 2.3, 11.12, 12.13
  foreign languages: generally, 11.2, 11.12, tables 11.1–5; African languages, 11.15; Albanian, 11.17; Arabic, 11.97, 11.101; Azeri, 11.90; Bosnian, 11.19; Croatian, 11.19; Czech, 11.21; Danish, 11.23; Finnish, 11.27; French, 11.40; German, 11.48; Greek, 11.130, 11.132–35; Hebrew, 11.112; Hungarian, 11.50; Italian, 11.58; Japanese, 11.107; Latin, 11.64; Moldavian, 11.73; Montenegrin, 11.75; Norwegian, 11.65; Old and Middle English, 11.142; Polish, 11.69; Portuguese, 11.71; Romanian, 11.73; Serbian, 11.75; South Asian languages, 11.129; Spanish, 11.85; Swedish, 11.87; Turkish, 11.90
  manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.3, 2.15, 11.12, 12.13
  mathematical expressions, 12.10, 12.13, table 12.1
  proofreading and marking proofs, 2.110, 2.129
  software or special fonts, 2.15
  transliterations, specialized vs. general contexts, 11.94
  XML character references for, A.15
  See also diphthongs; ligatures; mathematical expressions; symbols, specific; Unicode standard
special issues, journal
  components, 1.78, 1.83, 1.85, 1.96
  documentation, 14.187

species. *See* genus and species
speech
  direct discourse, 13.37, 13.42
  discussions and interviews, 13.46
  faltering or interrupted speech, 13.39
  field notes, 13.47
  indirect discourse, 13.43
  numerals in direct discourse, 13.42
  pause, interruption, or faltering, 6.16, 6.84, 13.39, 13.48
  play excerpts, 13.44–45
  punctuation: colons, 6.61, 6.63, 13.17; commas, 13.18; ellipsis and suspension points, 13.39, 13.51–56; em dashes, 13.39; quotation marks, 13.37–43
  single-word speech, 13.38
  unspoken discourse, 13.41
  See also dialogue; direct address; quotations
speeches
  documentation of, 14.226, 14.280, 14.301, 15.53
  online media, 14.280
  presidential, 14.301
  transcripts, 8.184
  treatment of names and titles, 8.69, 8.75, 8.184
  See also lectures and lecture series
spelling
  of alphabet letters, 7.64
  author queries about, 2.66
  common errors of, 2.108
  in computer writing, 7.76
  consistency, 2.63, 2.86
  contractions, 7.29
  discipline-specific, 7.2
  editor's note on, 1.44
  foreign language reforms in, 11.41, 11.89
  in indexes, 16.29, 16.33, 16.71
  interjections, 7.30
  metric units, 8.151
  non-US, 7.3
  permissible changes, 13.7
  personal names, 14.73, 16.33, 16.71; foreign, 11.98, 11.118
  proofreading of, 2.108
  resources on, 7.1
  retaining original in quotations, 7.3
  sic and, 13.59
  US vs. British, 8.151, 16.29
spelling (*continued*)
  See also plurals; possessives; word division; *and specific languages*
spell-out mark, 2.126
spine and spine copy, 1.66–68, 1.78
  definition, p. 903
spiritual leaders. *See* clerical titles; religions and religious concerns
split infinitives, 5.106, 5.168. *See also* infinitives
sports concerns
  events, 8.77
  numbers (e.g., batting averages), 9.19
  teams and organizations, 8.67, 8.69
square brackets. *See* brackets
Sr. ("Senior")
  indexing of, 16.41
  line breaks and, 7.38
  punctuation and spacing, 6.47, 10.19
stage directions, 13.44
stamping, defined, p. 903
standard deviations, notation of, 10.53, 12.58, table 12.3. *See also* tables
states (US)
  abbreviations and postal codes, 10.4, 10.28
  in addresses, punctuation, 6.46, 10.28, 10.30
  constitutions, 8.79, 14.292
  laws, 14.300
  when to capitalize, 8.50
  when to include in documentation, 14.136
statistics
  abbreviations in, 10.53, table 12.3
  mathematical expressions of, 12.57–59, table 12.3
  means and standard deviations, 10.53, 12.58, table 12.3
  probability, 12.57
  See also mathematical copy; mathematical expressions
statutes. *See* laws and statutes
stet, 2.85, 2.127
stock agencies, material from, 3.35, 4.95–97
stratigraphy, 8.135. *See also* geological terminology
stream of consciousness, 13.41
streets, avenues, and such
  abbreviation of terms, 10.34
  compass points with names of, 10.35

streets, avenues, and such (*continued*)
  numbers of, 9.52
  treatment of names, 8.55
  See also addresses, mailing; compass points and directions; highways and interstates; roads and thoroughfares
stub column
  definition, p. 903
  uses, 3.57–62, 3.68, fig. 3.13, figs. 3.15–18, fig. 3.21
  See also tables
style
  definition, 2.46
  mechanical editing for, 1.109, 2.45–46
style sheets (editorial)
  definition, p. 903
  manuscript editing, 2.52, fig. 2.3
  proofreader's use of, 2.108–9
style sheets (electronic), A.9, A.17, A.37, p. 903
subentries. *See* index entries: sub- and sub-subentries
subheads
  appropriate use, 1.53
  capitalization, 1.54, 2.56, 8.156
  cross-checking of, 2.29
  definition, p. 903
  editing of, 2.56
  first sentence after, 1.53
  generic markup of, 2.78
  levels, placement, and typographic style, 1.54
  manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.17
  note reference numbers and, 14.22
  numbers with or instead of, 1.55
  period at end omitted, 2.17
  proofreading of, 2.110, 2.130
  run-in, 1.54
  as running heads, 1.12
  sidehead, p. 902
  specific uses: appendix, 1.57; endnotes, 1.59; journal articles, 1.91; list of illustrations, fig. 1.6; stub entries with (tables), 3.58; table of contents, 1.37
subscripts
  chemical symbols, 8.148
  definition, p. 903
  mathematical expressions: alignment, 12.21–22, 12.38; complex, 12.37; determinants, 12.51; in fractions, 12.49; fractions in, 12.47; marking, 12.66; simple, 12.36; spacing, 12.16; uncertainties expressed as, 12.59; vector and tensor multiplication, 12.53
  musical octaves, 7.68
  See also superscripts
subsidiary rights
  author's electronic use of own works, 4.62
  author's retention of, 4.18
  basic rights vs., 4.17
  categories of, 4.60
  economic considerations, 4.61–62, 4.65
  electronic-rights licensing, 4.61
  foreign, 4.60, 4.70
  granting permissions for, 4.66–67
  moral, 4.15
  Public Access Policy and, 4.64
  translation, 4.60
  university licenses, 4.63
  See also copyright; intellectual property rights; permissions
substantive editing, 2.45, 2.47–48
subtitles
  basic approach, 8.166
  capitalization, 8.157, 8.162, 14.95, 14.97–98
  cross-checking of, 2.29
  documentation of, 14.94–99
  editing of, 2.55
  indexing principle on, 16.55
  italics for book, 14.94–95
  or as connecting, 8.165
  permissible changes to, 8.163, 11.4
  placement: chapters, 1.48; half-title, 1.16; omitted on clothbound covers, 1.66; paperback covers, 1.67, 1.68; title page, 1.18
  punctuation: colons, 8.162, 14.97; semicolons, 8.165, 14.98
  with sequel numbers, 9.44
  two or more, 8.165, 14.98–99
such as, 6.27
suffixes
  adjectives with: comparative forms, 5.84–87; list of, 5.66; phrasal, 7.81
  adverbs with: comparative forms,

suffixes (*continued*)
  5.160–61; forms with or without, 5.154–55
  bias-free language and, 5.228
  division of words with, 7.35
  and hyphenation, 7.79–80, 7.85
  pronouns: personal (*-self* forms), 5.48–49; relative (*-ever*), 5.62–63
  resources on, 7.77
  See also compounds
sun, 8.140
superscripts
  celestial coordinates, 10.64
  classical references, 14.262
  definition, p. 903
  mathematical expressions: alignment, 12.21–22, 12.38; complex, 12.37; determinants, 12.51; in fractions, 12.49; fractions in, 12.47; marking, 12.66; simple, 12.36; spacing, 12.16; uncertainties expressed as, 12.59; vector and tensor multiplication, 12.53
  musical octaves, 7.68
  note reference numbers, 14.14, 14.19
  See also subscripts
supplements
  dictionaries, 7.4
  journals, 14.188
  newspapers, 14.209
suspension points
  brackets with, 13.56
  converted to spaced periods (ellipsis points), 11.10, 11.35
  definition and use, 13.39, 13.48
  faltering or interrupted speech, 13.39, 13.48
  foreign-language uses, 11.10; French, 11.35; Italian, 11.54; Russian, 11.122; Spanish, 11.81
  spacing of, 11.54, 13.48
  See also ellipsis points
s.v. (*sub verbo*), 1.116, 10.43, 14.247–48
Swahili language, 11.14–15
Swedish language, 11.27, 11.86–87
syllabary, defined, 11.106
symbols, general
  a or *an* with, 7.44
  editing, in tables, 3.80–82
  in illustrations or captions, 3.7, 3.25, fig. 3.6, fig. 3.8, fig. 3.9
symbols, general (*continued*)
  as labels, 3.7, 3.44, fig. 3.6
  as note references, 14.20, 14.44, 14.47, fig. 14.4
  for notes applying to specific parts of table, 3.77
  numbers with, 9.16–17
  for page numbers to be supplied later, 2.32
  in stubcolumn of tables, 3.60
  See also markings, editorial; mathematical expressions; proofreader's marks; special characters
symbols, specific
  alignment, vertical and horizontal, 2.124
  ampersands (&) (*see* ampersands)
  angle brackets (*see* angle brackets)
  asterisks (*see* asterisks)
  bullets, 2.32, 6.124–25
  carets, 2.91, 2.129
  celestial coordinates, 10.64
  chemical, 8.148–49, 10.66
  circled infinity (paper durability), 1.34
  copyediting (*see* markings, editorial)
  copyright, 1.22, 4.40, 10.44
  currency, 9.21–26
  daggers and double daggers, 3.77
  degrees, 9.16, 10.37, 10.64
  delete mark, 2.121, fig. 2.6
  em space, 2.123
  equal space, 2.122
  eszett (ß) compared with Greek beta (β), 11.48
  genes and enzymes, 8.131–32
  less than, more than, 3.81
  mathematical (*see* mathematical expressions: signs and symbols)
  measurement units, 9.17
  monetary, 9.21–26
  multiplication crosses (dimensions), 3.27
  multiplication sign, 8.124, 12.20
  number sign (or pound sign, #), 3.77, 14.12
  ohm, 10.52, 10.57
  ornamental text breaks, 1.56
  paragraph, 2.95, 2.123, 10.44
  percent, 3.80, 9.18
  phonetic, 7.59
  plant hybrids, 8.124

- symbols, specific (*continued*)
  - plus sign, 7.68, 7.74
  - position or alignment changes, 2.95, 2.124
  - pound (ASL), 11.150
  - pound sterling, 9.21, 9.23–24
  - primes and double primes, 9.16–17, 10.37, 10.64, 10.69, 11.137, 12.36
  - on proofs (*see* proofreader's marks)
  - radiations, 8.150
  - scholarly, 10.44
  - section, 3.77, 10.44
  - SI, 10.56–57, 10.60–61
  - space, 2.95, 2.122
  - spell-out mark, 2.126
  - technical, 10.52
  - trademarks, 8.152
  - transpose, 2.92, 2.125
  - vertical bars, 12.18, 12.22, 12.33–34, 12.46, 12.51
  - *wynn* (Old English), 11.143
- symposia. *See* conferences; lecture and lecture series; proceedings of conferences and symposia; speeches; unpublished and informally published materials; working papers
- syntax
  - captions, 3.21
  - parallel structure in, 5.212–15
  - stub entries of tables, 3.57
  - text citations, considerations with, 15.27
- Système international d'unités (SI). *See* International System of Units

- table of contents
  - abbreviations list noted in, 1.43
  - chapters with different authors in, 1.37
  - components of, 1.37, fig. 1.5
  - for electronic works, 1.81, 1.83, fig. 1.11
  - errata noted in, 1.65, 1.86
  - example, fig. 1.5
  - format of, 1.83
  - galleries noted in, 1.37–38, fig. 1.7
  - journals, 1.78, 1.82–83, fig. 1.11
  - multiauthor volumes, 2.38
  - pagination, 1.37
  - permissions process and, 4.101
  - placement of, 1.37, 1.78
  - proofreading of, 2.110, 2.130
  - running heads after first page of, 1.10
- table of contents (*continued*)
  - subheads in or not, 1.37
  - web-based publications, 1.113, 1.115
- tables, 3.46–85, figs. 3.11–25
  - abbreviations and ampersands in, 3.54, 3.60, 3.65
  - alignment in, 3.68–72
  - appropriate use of, 3.47
  - basic structure, 3.49, fig. 3.11
  - body and cells: alignment and formatting, 3.68–72, figs. 3.19–21; empty, 3.63, 3.65, fig. 3.15, fig. 3.17; multiple values in single, 3.67, fig. 3.13; numbers in, 3.70; rows of, 3.70, fig. 3.19; words in, 3.71
  - broadside, 2.112, 3.84–85
  - callouts to, 2.27
  - checking and adjusting, 3.84
  - columns: alignment of, 3.68–72, fig. 3.19; *continued* lines and repeated heads of, 3.85, fig. 3.25; data in, 3.64; empty cells, 3.63, 3.65, fig. 3.15, fig. 3.17; heads of, 3.54–56, 3.69, figs. 3.13–14; in matrix, 3.66, figs. 3.17–18; multiple values in single cells, 3.67; stub, 3.57–62, 3.68, fig. 3.13, figs. 3.15–18, fig. 3.21; totals, averages, and means, 3.72, fig. 3.21
  - consistency in and across, 3.48, 3.57, 3.72, 3.79
  - *continued* lines in, 3.85, fig. 3.25
  - definition, 3.2
  - documentation of, 14.165
  - editing, 2.62; adjusting and checking, 2.29, 3.79, 3.84, figs. 3.23–24; cleanup process for, 2.77; *continued* lines and repeated column heads, 3.85, fig. 3.25; *N*, *n*, 3.70, 3.73, 3.83, fig. 3.20; number ranges, 3.81; signs and symbols in, 3.80–82
  - electronic files: preparation of tables, 3.46; separate files for each component, 2.23, 2.33, 3.16; submission to publisher, 3.3–4, 3.15
  - in electronic publications, 1.99
  - fair use of, 4.84
  - heads: alignment, 3.69; cut-in, 3.56, fig. 3.14; format, 3.54; parenthetical information in, fig. 3.12; repeated, 3.85, fig. 3.25; rules to separate,

tables (*continued*)
3.50; signs and symbols in, 3.82; spanner, 3.55, fig. 3.13, fig. 3.16; stub, 3.57
  indention in, 3.59, 3.61, 3.72, fig. 3.15, fig. 3.21
  indexing of, 16.116, 16.141
  lists of, 1.38, 3.37, fig. 1.6
  manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.3, 2.20, 2.23, 2.26–27
  markup of, A.13, A.33
  matrixes, 3.66, figs. 3.17–18
  "not applicable" and "no data available" in, 3.65
  notes and source notes, 3.75; contents of, 3.53, 3.64; description, 2.28; numbered separately from text, 2.20; order and placement, 3.74; shortened references in, 3.75; on significance (probability) levels, 3.78, fig. 3.22; to specific parts of table, 3.74, 3.77; to whole table, 3.74, 3.76
  numbering of, 1.55, 2.26, 3.51–52, 3.54
  number ranges in, 3.81
  pagination and, 1.7
  placement of, 2.59
  preparation of, 3.46
  proofreading of, 2.112, 2.124
  punctuation: significance (probability) levels, 3.78, fig. 3.22; stub entries, 3.57–58; title and number, 3.52
  references to numbered, 8.178
  rules in, 3.50, 3.55–56, figs. 3.13–14
  running heads and, 1.15, 2.112, 3.84–85
  runover lines in, 3.59
  signs and symbols in, 3.80–82
  stub column and entries, 3.57–62, 3.68, fig. 3.13, figs. 3.15–18
  text references to, 3.51
  titles of, 3.52–54, fig. 3.12
  totals in, 3.50, 3.61, 3.72–73, figs. 3.15–16, fig. 3.21
  See also captions; illustrations; lists of illustrations and tables
tabs, 2.11, 2.77. *See also* margins
tags
  definition, p. 903
  formal markup, 2.80
  in manuscript editing, 2.55, 2.78–79
  See also codes and coding; markup tags and languages; production and digital technology; XML (extensible markup language)
taxonomic indexes, 16.6
technical writing. *See* computer terminology; scientific and technical terminology; scientific and technical works
technology. *See* audiovisual materials; computer software; computer terminology; mathematical copy; production and digital technology; scientific and technical works
telephone conversations. *See* personal communications
telephone numbers, 6.77
television and television programs
  broadcast networks, 8.185, 10.5, 10.25
  interviews on, 14.221
  reviews of, 14.214, 14.216
  titles of programs and episodes, 8.185
temperature, abbreviations and degree symbol, 9.16, 10.37, 10.52, 10.55, 10.64
territories, 10.4, 10.28–29, 14.136. *See also* geographical terminology
tests (examinations), 4.10
text. *See* books; electronic publications; journals; manuscript preparation guidelines for authors
textbooks, 1.9, 4.70, 4.72, 4.100
text citations
  abbreviations in, 10.3, 13.65, 14.54
  abbreviations listed for, 14.55
  additional material in, 15.23
  agreement of reference list entries with, 15.20
  authors' names: anonymous works and, 15.32–33; different authors with same last name, 15.21; editor in place of, 15.35; *et al.* in citation and/or text, 15.24, 15.28; more than three, 15.28; not repeated in citation if in text already, 15.24; organization as, 15.36; pseudonyms as, 15.34; same author, same year, 15.19, 15.28 (*see also* authors' names)
  basic approach: examples and variations, 15.9; format, 15.5, 15.7, 15.21, fig. 15.1; function, 15.10; order within citation, 15.29; page, volume numbers, and other locators in,

- text citations (*continued*)
  - 15.8, 15.22; page numbers only in, 15.26; placement in text, 15.24–26
  - biblical citations in, 10.46–51, 14.253–54
  - classical Greek and Latin references in, 14.256
  - indexing and, 16.6, 16.114–15
  - multiple references in single citation, 15.29
  - multiple references to same source, 15.26
  - newspapers in, 14.206
  - publication facts in, 15.17, 15.24, 15.39–42
  - punctuation: brackets, 15.27, 15.38; commas, 15.7, 15.9, 15.22, 15.28, 15.29, 15.41, 15.42; parentheses, 13.62–70; semicolons, 15.23, 15.27, 15.29
  - reducing notes by using, 14.53
  - in relation to surrounding text, 15.24–25
  - syntactic considerations with, 15.27
  - year plus *a*, *b*, *c* in, 15.19, 15.28
  - *See also* author-date reference system; block quotations; documentation; reference lists; titles of works in documentation
- text references to illustrations and tables. *See* callouts (illustrations and tables)
- Thai names, 16.85
- *than*, 5.179, 5.201
- *that*
  - appropriate use of, 5.220
  - in phrasal conjunction (e.g., *provided that*), 5.193
  - preposition with, 5.169
  - as pronoun, 5.51, 5.54, 5.58
  - punctuation with, 6.22
  - quotations following, 6.50
  - in subordinating conjunctions, 5.201
  - *which* vs., 5.220, 6.22
- *that if*, 6.32
- *that is*, 6.43, 6.56, 6.65, 6.85
- *the*
  - alphabetizing, *the* disregarded in, 14.67, 16.48, 16.91
  - Arabic equivalent of, 16.76
  - in blog titles, 8.187
  - celestial bodies and, 8.137
  - coordinate nouns and, 5.73
- *the* (*continued*)
  - definition of articles, 5.68–69
  - *earth* and, 8.139
  - with epithets, 8.33
  - with ethnic and national group names, 8.37
  - in foreign names for places and structures, 8.58
  - implicit, 5.75
  - indexing: disregarded, 16.48–49, 16.91; first lines, 16.144; organization and business names, 16.88; place-names, 16.91
  - in journal titles, 14.179
  - meaning affected by, 5.74, 5.76
  - in place-names, 8.58, 16.91
  - in publisher's names, 14.140
  - with *Rev.* and *Hon.*, 10.18
  - in titles in running text, 8.167–68
  - titles of people preceded by, 8.20, 8.29, 8.35, 10.18
  - *See also* articles (definite and indefinite)
- *their*, *theirs*, 5.47, 5.50, 5.220
- *their*, *they're*, *there*, 5.50, 5.220
- theorems, numbering of, 12.25
- theories. *See* laws and theories
- *therefore*, 6.25, 6.55
- theses. *See* dissertations and theses
- *they*
  - antecedents and, 5.28
  - as singular, 5.47, 5.222, 5.227
  - special uses of, 5.45
- thin space, defined, A.22, p. 903
- 3-em dashes
  - in bibliographies, for repeated names, 6.91, 14.64–67
  - and computer sorting, 14.63
  - keyboarding for manuscript, 2.13
  - length of, 6.75
  - in reference lists, for repeated names, 15.17–19
- thumbnails, 4.83, p. 903
- *thus*, 13.17, 13.59
- TIFF, defined, A.32, p. 903
- time
  - abbreviations: *a.m.* and *p.m.*, 9.38–40, 10.42; days of the week, 10.41; eras, 9.35, 9.63, 10.39; months, 10.40; noon and midnight, 9.39; numerical designations, 9.31, 9.34, 9.36, 9.38–41; time of day, 10.42;

time (*continued*)
    time zones, 10.42; units (seconds, minutes, etc.), 10.71; word division and, 7.40
  chronology systems, 9.35, 9.63, 10.39
  of day: abbreviation, 10.42; en dashes with, 6.78; noon and midnight, 9.39; numerals vs. words, 9.38; seconds and dates included with, 9.41; twenty-four-hour system, 9.40–41
  hyphenation of expressions, 7.85
  periods: cultural, 8.73; decades, 9.34; descriptive designations, 8.71; eras, 9.35, 9.63, 10.39; geological, 8.134; numerical designations, 8.70; traditional period names, 8.72
  spelled out, 9.38
  time zones, 8.89, 10.42
  See also dates
title page
  across two pages, 1.17
  author of foreword on, 1.39
  authors', editors', and translators' names on, 1.18, 14.86
  edition number on, 1.18, 1.26, 14.118
  journal special issue, 1.85
  multiauthor volumes, 2.38
  new preface noted on, 1.26
  pagination omitted from, 1.6
  permissible changes to title when citing, 8.163, 14.96
  proofreading of, 2.130
  publication date on, 14.149
  publisher's name on, 1.18, 14.135
  running heads omitted from, 1.10
titles and offices
  abbreviations (*see* abbreviations)
  academic, 8.27–29 (*see also* academic concerns)
  in apposition (before name), 8.20, 8.29, 8.35
  Arabic rulers of older times, 8.14
  basic rule and exceptions, 8.18–19
  civic and academic honors, 8.30
  civil, 8.18, 8.21, 10.13–14
  descriptive, 8.29
  "down" style of, 8.1
  honorifics, 8.32
  military and quasi-military, 8.18, 8.23–24
  names replaced by, 8.18–19
titles and offices (*continued*)
  nobility, dukes, and such: alphabetizing, 16.66; indexing, 16.38; treatment in text, 8.31
  organizational and corporate, 8.26
  religious: abbreviations, 10.18; indexing, 16.39; treatment in text, 8.25, 8.32
  saints, 8.92, 10.26, 14.74, 16.42
  social, 10.16–17
  sovereigns, popes, and such: indexing, 16.37; treatment in text, 8.22
titles of works, 8.154–55, 8.166
  abbreviations of, 10.7
  alphabetizing of, 16.48–49, 16.51–52, 16.56
  articles (definite and indefinite) at beginning of, 8.167–68, 16.48–49, 16.51–52, 16.56
  articles (journal) and parts of books, 8.175–78
  artworks and exhibitions, 8.193–95
  in award and building names, 8.170
  blogs and blog entries, 8.187
  book review and book notes sections, 1.92
  books and periodicals, 8.166–74
  capitalization: basic principles, 8.155, 8.166; double titles connected by *or*, 8.165; foreign works, 11.3, 11.5–9; headline-style principles and examples, 8.157–58; hyphenated compounds in headline-style, 8.159; quotations in titles, 8.160; sentence-style principles and examples, 8.156; subtitles, 8.157, 8.162
  in captions, 3.21–22
  conferences, meetings, or speeches, 8.69
  cross-checking of, 2.29
  documentation (*see* titles of works in documentation)
  double titles connected by *or*, 8.165
  electronic publications, 8.186–87
  in epigraph source, 1.36
  foreign-language materials (*see under* foreign-language materials)
  inclusive years in, 9.63
  indexing (*see under* indexing)
  italicized terms within, 8.171
  italics for, 8.161, 8.166

titles of works (*continued*)
  movies, television, and radio, 8.185
  multivolume works, 8.173
  musical works, 8.188–92
  original spelling preserved, 8.163
  pamphlets and reports, 8.183
  permissible changes to, in citations, 8.163, 8.167, 11.4, 11.10
  plurals of, 7.11
  poems and plays, 8.179–82
  possessives of, 7.28
  proofreading of, 2.105, 2.130
  punctuation: colons, 1.18, 8.162; commas, 6.17; double titles connected by *or*, 8.165; exclamation points, 6.118–19, 16.54; italics or quotation marks, 8.2, 8.161; question marks, 6.118–19, 16.54; quotations in titles, 8.160; in relation to surrounding text, 8.164
  as running heads, 1.11, 1.77
  in running text, 8.164
  sequels, 9.44
  series and editions, 8.2, 8.174
  shortening of, 8.166
  subject compared with, 8.172
  subtitles, 8.157, 8.162
  titles within titles, 8.171
  trademark protection of, 4.16
  unpublished works, 8.184
  websites and web pages, 8.186
  See also bibliographies; chapter titles; covers of journals and paperback books; half titles; reference lists; title page
titles of works in documentation
  author-date references: anonymous works, 15.32–33; capitalization, 15.13; cross-references, 15.37; examples and variations, 15.9; sentence-style capitalization, 15.45
  notes and bibliography system: abbreviations of, 14.55, fig. 14.7; alphabetical order for works of single author, 14.67; anonymous works, 14.79–80; author's name in title, 14.78; capitalization, 14.95, 14.97–98, 14.193; chapters and contributions including, 14.111–13; classical references, 14.257, 14.261; dates in, 14.101; double titles connected by *or*, 14.99; electronic publications, 14.166–69; exclamation points in, 14.100, 14.105; italicized terms within, 14.103; italics for, 14.94, 14.103, 14.177; magazine articles, 14.201; manuscript collections, 14.233–34; non-English, 14.107, 14.193; older and very long titles, 14.106; *or* with double titles, 14.99; *and other stories* and such with, 14.100; pamphlets and reports, 14.240–41; permissible changes to, 14.96; question marks in, 14.100, 14.105; quotation marks within, 14.102, 14.104; in reviews, 14.214–17; series and editions, 14.128; subtitles, 14.94–95, 14.97–98; titles within titles, 14.102; translated titles, 14.108–10
  uniform treatment across documentation systems, 15.2
to
  en dash for, 6.78
  in infinitive, 5.104–7
tone marks, 11.104
totals, in tables, 3.50, 3.61, 3.72–73, figs. 3.15–16, fig. 3.21
tracking. *See* redlining (tracking and showing changes)
trade books, defined, 4.18
trademarks
  capitalization and symbols, 8.152
  copyright issues and, 4.16
  lowercase letters beginning, 8.68, 8.153
  See also brand names
trains, 8.116. *See also* vehicles and vessels
transcriptions, 10.11, 13.6, 13.46–47
translated by, when to abbreviate or spell out, 14.15–16, 14.88, 15.6, 15.15
translation rights, 4.60
translations and translated works
  copyright of, 1.19, 1.29, 4.14, fig. 1.3
  credit for, 13.76
  documentation of: foreign-language article and journal titles, 14.108–10, 14.193–94; translated articles, 14.192
  editing of, 2.58, 13.78
  glosses or translations of terms, 6.93, 6.98, 7.50, 7.55
  notes on, 1.44

translations and translated works (*continued*)
  punctuation, 6.93, 6.98
  quotations: adjusting translations, 13.77; credit for translation, 13.76; editing translations, 13.78; original-language version in note, 13.75; retranslation, 13.79; source plus translation, 13.74; typographic style of, 13.71; where to place translations, 13.73; whether translation is needed, 13.72
  retranslation, 13.79
  titles of works: headline vs. sentence style for, 11.6; non-English titles, 14.107; original plus published translation, 14.109; original vs. translated, 11.7; translated title supplied by author or editor, 14.108; unpublished translation of title standing for original, 14.110
  as works made for hire, 4.10
translations of foreign terms
  capitalization, 11.9
  glosses, 6.93, 6.98, 7.50, 7.55
  punctuation, 11.10
  word division, 11.11
translators
  abbreviation of term, 10.43, 14.15–16, 14.64–65, 14.87–88, 15.6, 15.15, 15.18
  notes of, 1.44, 14.46, fig. 14.4
  See also editors; manuscript preparation guidelines for authors
translators' names
  on covers or jackets, 1.67
  documentation of: abbreviation of term, 10.43, 14.15–16, 14.64–65, 14.87–88, 15.6, 15.15, 15.18; author plus, 14.88; author vs., 14.90; classical references, 14.260, 14.265–66; examples and variations, 14.18, 15.9; name in place of author, 15.35; omission of term in text citations, 15.7; in shortened citations, 14.25–27
  on title page, 1.18
transliteration
  character sets for non-Latin alphabets, 11.92, 11.110
  citing religious works in, 14.255
  diacritical marks in, 11.94
  italics vs. roman type for terms in, 11.95
transliteration (*continued*)
  proofreading copy in non-Latin alphabets, 11.93
  resources, 11.91, 11.96, 11.102, 11.106, 11.111, 11.118
  of titles of works and institutions, 11.3–8
  Unicode characters, tables 11.2–3
  See also Arabic language; Chinese language; Hebrew language; Japanese language; Russian language; South Asian languages
transportation concerns. *See* business and commerce; highways and interstates; vehicles and vessels
transpose mark, 2.92, 2.125
treaties and acts
  documentation, 14.287, 14.302
  treatment in text, 8.65, 8.79–80
  See also legal documents; legislation; public documents
Turkish language, 11.88–90
2-em dashes
  length of, 6.75
  with letters standing for names (e.g., A——), 7.62
  for missing or illegible words, 13.57
  for omitted personal names, 6.90
typefaces. *See* fonts (typefaces)
type page, defined, p. 904
typesetters and typesetting
  adjusting and checking tables (checklist), 3.84, figs. 3.23–24
  checklist for manuscript preparation for design, 2.74
  computer software for, A.23
  definition of *typesetter*, p. 904
  errors assigned to, 2.131
  indexes and, 16.134
  instructions to: on electronic manuscript, 2.78; on page proofs, 2.113, 2.115, 2.116, 2.118; on paper manuscript, 2.90
  musical examples prepared by, 3.4, fig. 3.5
  See also codes and coding; design and production; production and digital technology; typographic considerations
type size
  appendixes, 1.57
  bibliographies and reference lists, 1.61

type size (*continued*)
  endnotes, 1.59
  indexes, 1.63, 16.135
  title and subtitle, 1.18
type specifications
  books, 2.70–71
  checking proofs for, 2.113
  journals, 1.108, 1.110
  style sheets for, A.9, A.17, A.37, fig. A.3
  See also design and production; typesetters and typesetting
type styles. *See* boldface; capital letters; fonts (typefaces); italics; roman (type)
typographic considerations
  abbreviations, 10.8
  captions, 3.9, 3.21–24, 3.29
  concluding elements, 1.52
  digital artwork submission, 3.15
  epigraphs, 13.34
  foreword, 1.39
  Greek language, 11.131
  illustration numbers, 3.9
  illustrations, 3.19
  indexes, 1.63, 16.6, 16.47, 16.115, 16.131, 16.135–40
  journals, 1.78
  line and word breaks, 7.31–43
  list format, 6.122
  majors and minors in journals, 1.87
  mathematical copy, 12.60–67
  music writing, 7.66–71
  ornaments for text break, 1.56
  preface, 1.40
  publisher's, translator's, and editor's notes, 1.44
  punctuation, fonts, and relation to surrounding text, 6.2–6
  special characters and foreign alphabets, 11.1–2, 11.12
  subheads, 1.54
  table of contents and lists of illustrations, 1.38
  tables, 3.48, 3.52, 3.58, 3.84
  word division, 7.33, 7.43
  See also design and production; production and digital technology

undated works, when to use *n.d.* (no date), 10.43, 14.152, 14.276, 15.17, 15.41. *See also* access dates; publication date
underlining, 2.14, 2.94, 13.8
Unicode Consortium, 16.67
Unicode standard, 2.15
  character sets for non-Latin alphabets, 11.92, 11.110
  definition of Unicode, p. 904
  en dash and minus sign distinguished, 6.81
  foreign alphabets and special characters, 11.2, 11.12, 11.131, tables 11.1–5
  mathematical signs and symbols, 12.9, table 12.1
  "smart" apostrophes, 6.114
  "smart" quotation marks, 6.112
  spaces defined in, A.22
  special characters with Latin alphabet, table 11.1
  transliterations, tables 11.2 and 11.3
  XML character references and, A.15
uniform resource locators. *See* URLs (uniform resource locators)
United Kingdom
  command papers, 14.314
  courts, 14.310
  currency, 9.21, 9.23, 9.26
  legal cases, 14.310
  legal resources and reference works on, 14.281, 14.309
  legislative bodies, 14.309–13
  millions, billions, and trillions in, 9.8, 9.25
  Parliament of, 14.309–13
  statutes, 14.312
  unpublished documents, 14.315
  See also British style
United Nations, 8.61, 14.302, 14.316, 14.317
United States
  laws and statutes, 4.2, 4.10, 4.19, 4.25, 14.294, 14.300
  possessive form of, 7.19
  US, when to use, 10.33
  See also governmental entities; public documents
United States Code (U.S.C.), 14.294, 14.301
United States Congress
  abbreviations for, 14.293, 14.295
  bills and resolutions, 14.295
  copyright provisos of, 4.25, 4.39
  debates before 1873, 14.299
  debates since 1873, 14.298
  documents and reports, 14.297
  fair use and, 4.90

United States Congress (*continued*)
  hearings, 14.296
  members, 8.18, 8.21
  numbered electoral districts, 9.47
  numbers for successive terms and sessions, 9.46
  presidential vetoes, 14.301
  terms for, 8.61
  See also acts and treaties; laws and statutes; legal documents; legislation
United States Constitution
  legal-style citation of, 14.292
  names for parts of, 8.79
  numbered divisions of, 9.29
United States Copyright Office
  deposit and registration with, 4.4, 4.46–49
  fair use and, 4.90
  online services and forms of, 4.47
  search of records, 4.26, 4.75
  See also copyright
United States courts
  lower federal, 14.290
  state and local, 14.291
  Supreme Court, 14.289
United States House of Representatives
  documents, bills, and resolutions of (e.g., "H.R."), 14.293, 14.295
  members of, 8.21
  terms for, 8.61
  See also United States Congress
United States Patent and Trademark Office, 8.152, 14.230, 15.50
United States Postal Service, 10.28, 10.30, 10.34–35. *See also* postal codes
United States Senate
  documents, bills, and resolutions of (e.g., "S"), 14.293, 14.295
  members of, 8.18, 8.21
  terms for, 8.61
  See also United States Congress
United States Supreme Court, 4.86, 14.289
United States vs. *US*, which to use, 10.33
Universal Product Code. *See* bar codes
universities
  abbreviation of term, 10.43, 14.140
  nonexclusive licenses claimed by, 4.63
  in publisher's name, 14.140
  special imprints of, 14.146
  student status terms, 8.28
  See also academic concerns
unpublished and informally published materials
  copyright duration for, 4.25
  definitions, 14.153
  documentation of: article not yet accepted, 14.182; contracts, wills, and such, 14.231; format noted for electronic, 14.225; government and public, 14.304, 14.308, 14.315; interviews and personal communications, 14.219, 15.48; lectures and papers presented at meetings, 14.226; manuscript collections, 14.232–42, 15.49; musical works, 14.270; patents, 14.230, 15.50; poster papers, 14.227; theses, dissertations, working papers, and such, 14.224–29; US legislative documents, 14.304; websites and blogs, 14.243–46, 15.51
  fair use of, 4.81
  permission to use, 4.74
  titles of, 8.184
  See also blogs and blog entries; dissertations and theses; interviews and discussions; legal documents; letters (correspondence); manuscript collections; personal communications; public documents; websites and web pages
Upanishads, 8.102, 14.255
uppercase, defined, p. 904. *See also* capitalization; capital letters
URLs (uniform resource locators), 14.4–5, 15.4, p. 904
  abbreviation of, 10.52
  authority and permanence, 14.9
  cross-checking of, 2.29, 2.31
  DOIs vs., 14.184
  listed in print journals, 1.78
  manuscript preparation guidelines, 2.3, 2.12, 7.42
  publisher's, on copyright page, 1.21
  treatment in text: capitalization, 8.68; hyphenation, 2.12, 6.77, 7.42, 14.11–12; line breaks, 2.12, 7.42, 14.12; punctuation, 6.8, 14.11–12; slashes, 6.110; syntax, 14.11–12
  in web-based publications, 1.114
  as website identifier, 8.186
  See also access dates; DOIs (Digital

- URLs (uniform resource locators) (*continued*) Object Identifiers); electronic publications
- usage. *See* word usage
- *US* vs. *United States*, which to use, 10.33

- *v.*, 8.81, 14.288
- *var.*, 8.122
- vector graphic, defined, p. 904
- vehicles and vessels
  - names, 8.2, 8.115–17
  - numbers, 9.45
- verbs, 5.95–152
  - active or passive voice, 5.18, 5.104, 5.115, 5.188
  - adjectives as, 5.93
  - auxiliary (modal or helping): *can*, 5.143; contractions with, 5.103; definition, 5.101, 5.142; *do*, 5.144; *have*, 5.145; *may*, *might*, 5.146; *must*, 5.147; *ought*, 5.148; parallel structure in, 5.215; *shall*, *should*, 5.149; *will*, *would*, 5.150
  - *be*-verbs (*be*, *is*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *been*, *being*, and *am*): contractions with, 5.103; forms and tenses, 5.98, 5.151–52; as linking verbs, 5.43, 5.99; noun or pronoun following, 5.17
  - conjugation: definition, 5.134; imperative, 5.141; past indicative, 5.124, 5.138; past participles, 5.98, 5.139; past subjunctive, 5.140; present participles, 5.136; present subjunctive, 5.137; verb stem (present indicative), 5.123, 5.135; voice and progressive conjugation, 5.116
  - for count nouns, 5.7
  - definitions: action and nonaction, 5.95; auxiliary verbs, 5.101, 5.142; conjugation, 5.134; contractions, 5.103; ergative, 5.97; linking (copula or connecting), 5.43, 5.99, 5.167; phrasal, 5.100; phrases of auxiliary plus principal verbs, 5.102, 5.168; principal and auxiliary (modal), 5.101, 5.142; regular and irregular, 5.98; tenses, 5.122; transitive and intransitive, 5.18, 5.96, 5.115, 5.166
  - *-ed* vs. *-t* for past tense and past participle, 5.98

- verbs (*continued*)
  - finite, 5.35, 5.131
  - indefinite pronouns and, 5.64
  - integration of quoted material into text and, 13.12
  - as interjections, 5.210
  - with measurements, 10.68
  - nouns and, 5.8–9, 5.18, 5.23
  - participles and gerunds, 5.108–13
  - personal pronouns and, 5.42–43
  - phrasal adjectives following, 5.91
  - properties: active and passive voice, 5.115; agreement in person and number, 5.131, 5.132; imperative mood, 5.119, 5.141, 5.225; indicative mood, 5.118, 5.121; list of, 5.114; misleading connectives, 5.133; mood, 5.117–20; number, 5.130–31, 5.132; person, 5.129, 5.131; predicate nominative and, 5.132; progressive conjugation and voice, 5.116; subjunctive mood, 5.120–21; tenses (*see below*)
  - in references to works, 5.123, 8.164
  - singular vs. plural, 5.64
  - tenses: definition, 5.122; future, 5.125; future perfect, 5.128; past, 5.98, 5.124, 5.137, 5.138–40; past indicative, 5.124, 5.138; past perfect (pluperfect), 5.127, 5.140; present, 5.123, 5.135–36; present indicative, 5.123, 5.135; present perfect, 5.126
  - *See also* adverbs; infinitives
- vernacular names, 8.127–29
- version control
  - archival practices and, 1.107
  - in author's review of electronic manuscript, 2.84
  - corrections to journal articles, 1.105
  - manuscript submission requirements, 2.5
  - multiauthor volume contributions, 2.38
  - preprints and, 1.106
- verso pages
  - always even-numbered pages, 1.3, 1.5
  - blank after half-title, 1.17
  - definition, p. 904
  - in folio editions, 14.162
  - journal's last page, 1.76
  - page after second half title, 1.45

verso pages (*continued*)
  parts of book starting on, 1.4, 1.17
  proofreading for correct use of, 2.111–12
  running heads for, 1.10, 1.11, 1.14
  in signed signatures, 14.161
  specified on final manuscript for production, 2.72–73
  See also page numbers (folios); pagination; recto pages
vertical bars in mathematical expressions, 12.18, 12.22, 12.33–34, 12.46, 12.51
vertical lists
  punctuation and format, 2.11, 6.124–26
  run-in compared with, 6.122, 6.123
videoblogs, 8.187
video data, 4.60
video recordings
  clips and files, 1.100, 1.107, 2.4
  documentation, 14.278–80
Vietnamese names, 16.86
virgule. *See* slash and slashes
viz., 10.43
voice (active or passive), 5.18, 5.104, 5.115, 5.188
volume editor. *See* editors; editors' names; manuscript preparation guidelines for authors; multiauthor volumes
volumes and volume numbers
  abbreviations of *volume*, 10.43, 10.69, 14.15–16, 14.121, 14.157–58, 15.6, 15.15
  documentation of: arabic numerals for, 9.28, 14.154, 14.180; journals, 14.180–81; multivolume works, 14.121–27; page and note numbers with, 14.159, 14.164, 14.186; text citations, 15.22; when to omit *vol.*, 14.158
  front matter in series of volumes, 1.17
  identification of, 1.78
  multivolume works and treatment of, 8.173
  pagination in, 1.76
  See also journals; multivolume works; series of volumes

Wade-Giles system
  alphabetizing, 8.15, 16.78
  common names, list of, 11.105
  Pinyin favored over, 11.102
  See also Chinese language; Pinyin system
wars, revolutions, battles, and such, 8.112–13
we, *you*, *they*, 5.45
web (term), 7.76
web-based publications
  cyclical workflow in, A.26
  design specifications for, A.20
  digital rights management and, A.40
  functional features, 1.112, 1.114
  HTML vs. PDF for, A.36
  navigation as organizing principle for, 1.113
  note-taking capabilities with, 1.112
  production process considerations, A.4
  proofing and testing of, 2.133–36
  revision dates on, 14.8
  suitability for medium, 1.111
  text and other components: end-of-line hyphenation, 7.43; folios, running heads, and such, 1.116; front matter, 1.115; hyperlinks, 1.114; indexes, notes, and back matter, 1.117
  See also electronic publications; HTML; publications in multiple formats
web browser, defined, p. 904
web-fed press, defined, p. 904
websites and web pages
  of authors, 1.106, 1.114
  copyright of, 4.2, 14.9
  definitions, 14.243, p. 904
  documentation of: access dates for, 14.7; author-date references, 15.51; basic approach, 14.243; site discontinued before publication, 14.245; titles, 14.244
  of electronic journals, 1.79, 1.82–83
  legal and public documents on, 14.317
  permissions processing via, 4.91
  photographic permissions via, 4.95
  posting copies of published works, 4.90
  preprints on, 1.106
  publishers', 1.21, 1.57, 1.104, 4.21, 4.87, 4.91
  revision dates for continually updated, 14.8, A.10
  titles of, 8.2, 8.186–87, 14.244
  See also blogs and blog entries; electronic publications; HTML; hyperlinks; URLs (uniform resource locators); web-based publications
well, 5.208, 6.39

- *West, western*, 8.45–46
- *whether*, 5.201, 5.220, 6.50
- *which*
  - preposition with, 5.169
  - as pronoun, 5.28, 5.52–54, 5.57–58, 5.60–62
  - punctuation of, 6.22
  - *that* vs., 5.220, 6.22
- *who, whom, whose*, 5.28, 5.52–56, 5.58, 5.60–63, 5.169, 5.220, 6.68
- *whoever, whomever, whichever, whatever*, 5.62–63, 5.220
- *whose, who's*, 5.50, 5.220
- *why*, 5.201, 5.208, 6.68
- widows (lines), 2.113–14, p. 904
- wiki, defined, p. 904
- *will, would*, 5.103, 5.125, 5.128, 5.137, 5.150
- wills, documentation of, 14.231
- wire frames (design mockups), 2.135
- word division, 7.31–43
  - abbreviated units of measure, 7.40
  - basic rules, 7.31, 11.11
  - compounds, prefixes, and suffixes, 2.109, 7.35
  - diphthongs never divided, 7.34, 11.36, 11.45, 11.82, 11.138
  - foreign words: generally, 11.11; Arabic, 11.101; French, 11.36–39; German, 11.45–47; Greek, 11.138–41; Hebrew, 11.115; Italian, 11.55–57; Latin, 11.60–63; Polish, 11.68; Russian, 11.124–28; Spanish, 11.82–84
  - *-ing* ending, 7.36
  - numerals, 7.39–40
  - pronunciation as basis for, 7.33
  - proofreading for bad breaks, 2.109, 7.33
  - proper nouns and personal names, 7.38
  - run-in lists, 7.41
  - two-letter runovers, 7.37
  - typographic considerations, 7.33, 7.43
  - URLs and e-mail addresses, 7.42
  - after vowel, 7.34, 7.38
  - words not appropriate for, 7.32, 11.39
- word processing
  - alphabetizing options, 16.5, 16.57, 16.104
  - commenting functions, 2.36, 2.81, 2.83
  - document comparison, 2.82, 2.85
  - formatting codes, 2.59–60, 2.78–79
  - global changes, 2.66, 2.77
  - hyphenation function, 2.12
- word processing (*continued*)
  - indention, 2.11, 2.18, 2.19, 2.22, 13.9
  - keyboarding, combinations and shortcuts, 7.74
  - macroinstructions (macros), 2.76, p. 898
  - note function, 2.20, 2.83, 14.38
  - pattern-matching strategies, 2.77
  - special characters, 2.15, 11.92, 11.110
  - spell checking, 2.108
  - styles, 2.17, 2.79
  - 3-em dashes and sorting functions, 14.63
  - *See also* manuscript editing; redlining (tracking and showing changes)
- word-processing software. *See* computer software
- words
  - coinages of, 7.13, 8.59
  - emphasizing particular, 7.47–48, 7.54–58, 11.52, 13.60, 14.102
  - en dash to connect, 6.78, 6.80–81
  - italicized on first use, 7.49, 7.54, 11.95
  - missing or illegible in original source, 13.57
  - numerals vs., 9.2–3
  - phonetic transcription of, 6.100
  - problematic, list of, 5.220
  - scare quotes for, 7.55, 11.52, 14.102
  - *so-called* with, 7.56
  - spacing between, 2.9, 2.11, 2.122
  - 2-em dash to indicate omitted, 6.90
  - words and letters used as, 7.58–65
  - *See also* compounds; foreign words and phrases; hyphens and hyphenation; sentences; word division; word usage
- word usage, 5.216–20
  - dialect and, 5.23, 5.218
  - good usage vs. common usage, 5.220
  - grammar compared with, 5.216
  - myths and misunderstandings, 5.168, 5.176, 5.206
  - preposition usage, 5.191
  - problematic words and phrases, list of, 5.220
  - traditional view of, 5.219
  - *See also* bias-free language; British style; European style; grammar; slang and jargon; *and specific parts of speech*

working papers, 14.228. *See also* unpublished and informally published materials
works cited lists, 15.5. *See also* reference lists
works made for hire
  contributors' chapters as, 4.53
  copyright issues, 4.9–12, 4.23, 4.37
  credit line for, 3.32
  employer as author of, 4.9
  illustrations as, 3.32, 4.69
world, parts of
  compass points and terms, 8.45–46
  continents, countries, cities, oceans, and such, 5.67, 8.44, 8.52
  political divisions, 8.50–51
  popular names and epithets for, 8.47
  real vs. metaphorical names, 8.49
  regions, 8.46, 8.53
  urban areas, 8.48
  See also place-names
world rights, 4.70
World Wide Web, defined, p. 904
World Wide Web Consortium (W3C), A.11

x-height, p. 904
Xhosa language, 11.14–15
XHTML, A.37, p. 904
XML (extensible markup language), A.11, p. 905
  character references in, A.15
  design specifications and, A.16
  elements and attributes, A.14; examples, figs. A.1–2
  as formal markup language, 2.80
  generic markup compared, 2.78
  origins of, A.12
  production workflow, A.13, A.24; conversion of files, A.23; outline, A.5, A.24, fig. A.5; steps preceding, A.25–26; style sheets and, A.9, A.17, fig. A.3; XML applied in, A.27–30
  source files: corrections in, A.31; illustrations, A.32; mathematical expressions, A.13, A.34; tables, A.13, A.33
  after typesetting, A.30
  See also markup tags and languages; production and digital technology
XSL (extensible style sheet language), A.9, p. 905
XSLT (extensible style sheet language transformations), A.37

years
  abbreviated (e.g., '76), 9.31
  inclusive range of, 9.58, 9.63
  incomplete range, 6.79
  placement in reference lists, 15.12
  plurals of, 7.14
  sentence beginning with, 9.5
  slash with two-year spans, 6.105
  uncertain, 6.66
  unknown date of death, 6.79
  words vs. numerals for, 9.30
  work period known (fl.), 10.43
  See also dates; publication date; time
you, your, yours, and you're, 5.28, 5.45, 5.47, 5.50, 5.220

zero (0), 9.19, 9.21, 9.40–41
zip codes, 10.30. *See also* addresses, mailing; postal codes
zoological terminology
  domestic breeds, 8.128
  scientific names: authorities on, 8.118; author names in, 8.123; divisions higher than genus, 8.125; English derivatives from taxonomic system, 8.126; genus, species, and subspecies, 8.119–21; unspecified species and varieties, 8.122
  vernacular names, 8.127–29
  See also scientific and technical terminology

The Chicago Manual of Style

Typeset by Graphic Composition, Inc., Bogart, Georgia
Printed and bound by Edwards Brothers, Ann Arbor, Michigan

Composed in Mitja Miklavčič's FF Tisa and Hoefler & Frere-Jones's Whitney
Printed on 50# Glatfelter Offset
Bound in Arrestox Linen

DISTRIBUTED BY THE CHICAGO DISTRIBUTION CENTER